FRONTISPIECE

PORTLOCK'S NEW COLLECTI[illegible] VOYAGES AND TRAVELS

TRAVELS
VOYAGES
ROSS
ANSON
BRUCE
PHIPPS
BYRON
HUNTER
A
H
New Collection of
MODERN VOYAGES & TRAVELS
Published
By ROYAL AUTHORITY

Hamilton delin. Scott Sculpt.

This Elegant Design represents HISTORY *Writing* NARRATIVES *of the respective* VOYAGES & TRAVELS *contained in this Work, & the emblematical representations of the* FOUR QUARTERS *of the* WORLD, *surrounding the* GLOBE, *point out the* EXTENSIVE *Nature of this* UNDERTAKING, *& the authentic Journals & memorable Exploits of the most eminent* NAVIGATORS & TRAVELLERS *to all the* VARIOUS PARTS *of the* UNIVERSE.

Published by Alex.r Hogg, Feb.y 22. 1794.

A
NEW, COMPLETE, AND
UNIVERSAL COLLECTION OF
AUTHENTIC AND ENTERTAINING
VOYAGES AND TRAVELS
TO ALL THE VARIOUS PARTS OF
THE WORLD.

CONTAINING

(Among other VOYAGES and TRAVELS undertaken for Discovery, Conqueſt, Settlement, or the Opening of Trade)

COMPLETE NARRATIVES of the following Moſt Important JOURNALS, *viz.*

New Hiſtorical JOURNALS of the VOYAGES of Captains PHILLIP, KING, BALL, WHITE, and HUNTER, in the Ships *Sirius*, *Supply Tender*, *Juliana Tranſport*, &c. to BOTANY-BAY, PORT JACKSON, SYDNEY COVE, NEW SOUTH WALES, NORFOLK ISLAND, &c. in the SOUTHERN OCEAN, giving a circumſtantial, uſeful, and entertaining Account of the preſent Tranſactions at thoſe Parts of the World, where *Colonies* and *Settlements* have been formed by the Engliſh Government for the *Puniſhment* of *Convicts* condemned to *Tranſportation*.

Captain WILSON's valuable Voyage from MACOA to the PELEW ISLANDS, in the Weſtern Part of the PACIFIC OCEAN, where they were ſhipwrecked in the *Antelope*, a Packet belonging to the *Eaſt-India Company*.

PORTLOCK and DIXON's Voyages to the North Weſt Coaſt of AMERICA and ROUND the WORLD, in the *King George* and *Queen Charlotte*—the Reſult of which are New Diſcoveries of the utmoſt importance to the Engliſh Nation and the World at large.

Captains MEARS, TIPPING, and DOUGLAS's Voyages, in the Ships *Nootka*, *Sea-Otter*, *Felice*, and *Iphigenia*, from BENGAL and CHINA to the North Weſt Coaſt of AMERICA—for the ſurther Improvement of *Navigation*, and to extend the *Commerce* of the *Britiſh Empire*.

BRISSON and SAUGNIER's Voyages to the Coaſt of AFRICA, containing an intereſting Account of their Shipwreck on board various Veſſels, and of their Slavery; with an Account of the Manners and Cuſtoms of the *Arabs* of the *Deſert*, and of the *Slave Trade*, as carried on at *Senegal* and *Galam*. Tranſlated from the French.

ROCHON's Voyage to MADAGASCAR and the EAST INDIES, including, among a great Fund of general Information, authentic Memoirs of the *Chineſe Trade* and *Merchandize*. Tranſlated from the Abbe Rochon, Member of the Academy of Sciences of Paris and Peterſburgh, Aſtronomer of the Marine, Keeper of the Philoſophical Cabinet, &c. &c.

The intereſting Journal of Lieutenant BLIGH's Voyage, in his Majeſty's Ship *Bounty*, for the purpoſe of conveying the *Bread Fruit Tree* from the *South Sea Iſlands* to the *Weſt Indies*, including a Narrative of the Mutiny on board the Bounty—and the Narrative of Lieutenant Bligh's ſubſequent Voyage with Part of the Crew in the Ship's Boat, from *Toſoa*, one of the *Friendly Iſlands*, to *Timor*, a Dutch Settlement in the *Eaſt Indies*.

HAMILTON's Voyage ROUND the WORLD in the *Pandora* Frigate, in purſuit of the Mutineers, who piratically carried off the Bounty.

Captain COOK's Voyages Complete, in his Majeſty's Ships the *Endeavour*, *Reſolution*, *Adventure*, and *Diſcovery*, to the SOUTH SEAS and ROUND the WORLD, for making New Nautical, Philoſophical, Geographical, and Hiſtorical Diſcoveries in the various Iſlands of the *Southern Hemiſphere* and the great *Pacific Ocean*—for diſcovering the ſuppoſed *Southern Continent*, &c.—to aſcertain the Practicability of a *North-Weſt Paſſage* from *Europe* to the *Eaſt Indies*, between the Continents of *Aſia* and *America*—and to determine their Poſition, Extent, Diſtance, &c. &c. &c.

Sir FRANCIS DRAKE's Celebrated Voyages ROUND the WORLD, performed by himſelf and Aſſiſtants, in the Ships *Pelican*, *Elizabeth*, *Marygold*, *Swan*, and *Chriſtopher*.

The Celebrated Lord ANSON's Voyage ROUND the WORLD, in his Majeſty's Ship the *Centurion*, having Aſſiſtants under his Command in the Ships *Glouceſter*, *Pearl*, *Severn*, *Wager*, *Trial*, and Store Ships.

Lord BYRON's Remarkable Voyage ROUND the WORLD, in his Majeſty's Ship the *Dolphin*, accompanied by Capt. MOUAT, in the *Tamar* Sloop, principally for making Diſcoveries between the *Cape of Good Hope* and the *Straits of Magellan*; including, among a great Fund of uſeful Knowledge, a particular Account of that Gigantic Part of the Human Race the *Patagonians*.

Captain WALLIS's Valuable Voyages to the SOUTH SEAS, in the *Swallow*, *Prince Frederick*, &c. for making Diſcoveries.

The Voyage of PHILIP CARTERET, Eſq. ROUND the WORLD, in his Majeſty's Ship the *Swallow*, in which is included an Account of his Perilous Situation on the Weſtern Extremity of the *Magellanic Straits*, who, notwithſtanding the bad ſailing and ſhattered Condition of the *Swallow*, continued his Voyage, after ſeparating from Capt. Wallis, and accompliſhed the complete Circumnavigation of the *Globe*.

Lord MULGRAVE's Voyage towards the NORTH POLE, in his Majeſty's Ship the *Racehorſe*; with the Journal of Capt. LUTWICH, who accompanied him in the *Carcaſe* Sloop; together with an Account of the ſeveral Voyages previouſly undertaken for the Diſcovery of a North Eaſt Paſſage to *China* and *Japan*.

BRUCE's Moſt Celebrated TRAVELS Complete into ABYSSINIA, to diſcover the *Source* of the River *Nile*, in *Egypt*.

HODGES's Curious Travels, or Tour, in INDIA, including entire New Deſcriptions of the Manners, Cuſtoms and Preſent State of the Coaſt of *Coromandel*, *Madras*, *Bengal*, *Calcutta*, *Benares*, *Bidjegur*, *Allahabad*, *Lucknow*, *Fyzabad*, *Oud*, *Dowlah*, *Agra*, &c.

Hiſtory of FOUR TRAVELS or JOURNEYS into the Country of the HOTTENTOTS and CAFFRARIA, by Lieutenant PATTERSON, who having in the Courſe of his Travels viſited many Parts in that Quarter, not hitherto explored by Europeans, has by this Publication added many Facts and New Diſcoveries to the Public Stock of Hiſtorical and Geographical Knowledge.

New Travels through ARABIA and other Countries in the EAST. - Tranſlated from the original of M. NEIBUHR, Captain of Engineers in the ſervice of the King of Denmark.

New Travels in the UNITED STATES of AMERICA. Tranſlated from the French of M. BRISSOT de WARVILLE, who lately ſuffered unfortunately by the Guillotine in France.

Alſo, New TOURS and TRAVELS through FRANCE, AUSTRIAN NETHERLANDS, HOLLAND, SPAIN, ITALY, SWEDEN, POLAND, &c. &c. together with a New TOUR or SURVEY of the RUSSIAN EMPIRE according to its preſent Newly regulated State divided into different Governments.—Likewiſe the Subſtance of all other Eminent Navigators and Travellers, ſuch as Morſe, Parkinſon, Lutwich, Moore, Hanway, Howard, Drummond, Pocock, Shaw, Carver, Dalrymple, Burnet, Baretti, Thickneſs, Twiſs, Bridone, Wraxhall, Johnſon, Pennant, Smollet, Forſter, Furneaux, Banks, Solander, Bouganville, Keate, Roſs, Anbury, &c. &c. &c. Together with other Voyages and Travels too numerous to mention in this Title Page.

Deſcribing, in the moſt accurate Manner, (upon an entire New and Intereſting Plan) every Place worthy of Notice in

EUROPE, ASIA, AFRICA, and AMERICA.

The Whole Compiled from the Original Journals of the Reſpective Voyagers and Travellers.—And Newly Written

By WILLIAM HENRY PORTLOCK, Esq.

Aſſiſted by Many OFFICERS and GENTLEMEN engaged in the Various Undertakings of which this Work is Compoſed.

To all, who Nature's handieſt Works admire,
And fain a Fund of Knowledge would acquire,
The Author dedicates with due Reſpect
His Book—which will be found, he hopes, Correct;
Such who by Health or Fortune are deny'd
T' explore thoſe Iſlands happier Men have try'd,
May enter now the ſcientific Road,
And learn at Home *the Secrets found* Abroad!

Thus may the Reader in his Cloſet trace
The many Wonders of each diſtant Place;
Th' Exploits of Engliſh Heroes—which excite
Not only Admiration, but Delight!
And while of ſtrange Adventures, Dangers, Deeds,
Diſcoveries, and various Scenes, he reads;
To Thoſe who hold up all the Globe to View,
He muſt confeſs that Praiſe is juſtly due!

LONDON:
Printed for ALEX. HOGG, at the *KING's-ARMS*, No. 16, *PATERNOSTER-ROW*;
And Sold by all other Bookſellers and Newſcarriers in *England*, *Wales*, *Scotland*, and *Ireland*.

BRITISH MUSEUM

New COLLECTION *of* VOYAGES *and* TRAVELS.

The PREFACE.

IT muſt be acknowledged by perſons of every capacity, the fact being indiſputably notorious, that there is no Work which the pen can produce of more utility and entertainment, as a faithful Journal or Record of thoſe extraordinary Adventures and daring Diſcoveries, which have been both made and improved, by our ſeveral great and intrepid Navigators. It is true, that I cannot preſume to the credit of ALL the Diſcoveries herein contained, though without arrogance, I think I may ſay, that I have had ſome ſhare in the fatigue and dangers of making ſeveral; it being therefore my deſign to furniſh the Public with a complete View of the WORLD, I confeſs that beſides my own labour to derive information, I am indebted to ſeveral Noble Gentlemen for their kind aſſiſtance and attention: I ſay NOBLE, though without TITLES, ſeeing that their own Worth, Abilities, and Merit, have raiſed them to Diſtinction and Command, and have conſequently acquired more Fame than ever Birth or hereditary Honors could beſtow. With ſuch a ſtore of Information united, I hope therefore to complete a Taſk which in itſelf will be ample Compenſation.

I acknowledge that the Public have, from time to time, been preſented with Narratives of many curious Voyages and Travels well worthy our peruſal and encouragement; but theſe are naturally confined to ſome PARTICULAR parts of the World: the Readers of ſuch detached Publications muſt either abide in the SOUTH or the NORTH, in the EAST or the WEST; or if they are taken ROUND THE WORLD, they are only introduced to ſuch parts as are within the knowledge of the Voyager. It is my ambition to make the curious Reader acquainted with the moſt important Voyages to ALL the different parts of the World; not that I can pretend indeed to have had ocular proof of every Diſcovery myſelf, becauſe that is a labour no Hercules, if allowed only the common length of life could ever accompliſh; but becauſe I am in poſſeſſion of ſo many intereſting accounts (ſome of which have never been made public) by thoſe ingenious perſons of veracity and ſpirit, who in ſerving their Country have ſo eſſentially ſerved me, and will, I preſume, in this Undertaking ſerve the Public; though want of time, as ſtill they would fain employ the remainder as before, has prevented them from communicating their own Hiſtories with that accuracy and attention which Publications of this kind require. I have been induced to undertake the arduous taſk, eſpecially as the uncertainty of health prevents me from proſecuting thoſe Nautical Exploits, which before occupied my leiſure, when Novelty inſpired my heart, and "Youthful Admiration vented itſelf freely;" conſequently being obliged to return to a domeſtic life, I am ſtill eager to apply it to the Improvement and Advantage of the Public.

As the diſpoſitions of ſeveral are inclined to hear and learn all that can improve as well as entertain, and as no Curioſity whatever is more praiſe-worthy than an eagerneſs for ſuch Diſcoveries, a volume of this nature muſt be acknowledged highly acceptable, particularly as it is not in the power of all the Curious to acquire ocular demonſtration of the many Beauties of thoſe remote places which are herein laid open to the view. Every man has not the ability, though poſſeſt of the inclination, to leave his own native Country for the ſake of examining Foreign Parts; for a ſea-faring life not only requires a competent degree of Reſolution, but alſo the greateſt bleſſing of life, a good Conſtitution: this Work will therefore particularly gratify the Curioſity of ſuch who cannot otherwiſe be ſatisfied; and it muſt be undoubtedly the greateſt Satisfaction to all ſuch anxious Enquirers, to be able in a few hours to be acquainted with thoſe ſeveral places which have coſt Months and Years in exploring: nay, to be introduced, as it were, without fear or apprehenſion into thoſe very Iſlands, to diſcover which our Adventurers have ſurmounted many inconceivable Dangers.

A Knowledge of the World is the chief forerunner of that which is ſo ſtrongly recommended, A KNOWLEDGE OF OURSELVES; from an acquaintance with foreign Cuſtoms, Manners, &c. we derive much uſeful Information of Mankind; we ſee ourſelves in a variety of ſhapes; this Mirror informs us what man *has been*, and compariſon muſt ſhew what man IS! nor is that all, a faithful Record like this enforces the duties of Religion, it diſplays the glorious work of Providence, the omnipotence of Heaven, and above all, the bleſſings of Chriſtianity! for ſurely when we meet with the poor ignorant Natives of Deſert Iſlands, we muſt feel, or be inſenſible indeed, a grateful ſomething in our hearts, that we by diſtinguiſhed grace and favour ſhould be ſo enlightened, while theſe poor Wretches walk in abſolute barbariſm and utter darkneſs! Such ſentiments muſt ſtrongly recommend this Undertaking; the moſt hardened Unbeliever will, on peruſing the Diſcoveries herein contained, be convinced that there is "A Power above which Nature cries aloud in all her Works."

The Information derived from Voyages, which have been undertaken for the laudable purpoſe of Diſcovery, is manifold and extenſive; there is a ſecret pleaſure in contemplating thoſe ancient and modern Enterprizes, which lead to a full and perfect Knowledge of the Globe, whereby we are acquainted with the various tribes which inhabit many places hitherto unknown, with an account of Animals ſtrange and uncommon, and alſo of Vegetables, &c. equally ſurpriſing.

The unbounded liberality by which our Navigators have been lately encouraged, muſt and undoubtedly will be a perpetual memento of Honour and Fame which ſhall diſtinguiſh the Reign of his preſent Majeſty. In former Annals the few experiments which were made, begun merely through motives of Ambition or Avarice, but our late Adventurers have been induced to continue thoſe Experiments, and hand down to Poſterity the fruits of their Exertions, for the Improvement of Hiſtory, Geography, and Science; and when we conſider the innumerable dangers which have been encountered in exploring untraverſed Oceans, in travelling through unknown Countries, in diſcovering unthought-of Iſlands, in becoming acquainted with New Nations, and in being able to complete the Geography of the Whole World, we muſt admire the magnanimity of the actors, which ſhall remain an everlaſting Monument of the Patronage with which they were honored.

There is nothing awakens an eager Curioſity or excites a Spirit of Enquiry ſo much as the relations of Voyages and Travels, nor can that ſpirited Curioſity be diſappointed when both Novelty and Variety unite to engage the Attention and elucidate the Hiſtory of Mankind.

NEW COLLECTION of VOYAGES and TRAVELS.

The PREFACE.

What can be more intereſting to Man than the Hiſtory of himſelf? if unacquainted with the World, he is then "fixed to one ſpot, and rots juſt where he grew." Mankind, by the different accounts of Navigators and Travellers, is entertained by various pictures of his own ſpecies, and from theſe pictures many inſtructive leſſons may be derived; particularly when we read of inhabitants, who without any other aſſiſtance than their own natural good ſenſe, have not only emerged from the gloomy ſhade of Infidelity and Barbariſm, but have alſo attained that perfection of Religion and Propriety, which have conſtituted at laſt the Eſſence of *real* Civilization. Nations which are now the moſt poliſhed, have acquired their enſightened refinement by very ſlow degrees, and through long periods of intervening ages.

A taſte for diſcoveries in every way is certainly the characteriſtic of an enlightened age, but it is inconteſtably confeſſed that of all kind of Knowledge, that of the Globe we inhabit is the moſt uſeful acquirement; beſides it is the only one we can ever hope of carrying to Perfection, ſeeing it conſiſts only of poſitive things, the number of which is limited, notwithſtanding they are many. Various parts of Europe have been long concealed, and places but a ſmall diſtance from us long unknown, till explored and diſcovered by our bold Travellers, whoſe Zeal was neither damped nor Efforts repreſſed, though much difficulty appeared in penetrating into ſome of the inland parts.

The Utility of a good Collection of Voyages and Travels muſt be obvious to perſons of every claſs and denomination; it would therefore be needleſs and unprofitable to expatiate on the advantages of a Work of this Kind. Valuable books are hereby prevented from being loſt, alſo ſcarce ones rendered common; miſtakes of many rectified, doubts of ſeveral cleared up, and the beſt Authors relating to all parts of the World are, with Illuſtrations and Improvements, united into one body. It muſt alſo be obſerved, that whatever Authors have been referred to, whether ancient or modern, are and have been men of reſpectability and eſteem, otherwiſe their aſſiſtance would have been unavailing; *facts* and not *ſtories* ſhould be the object of every Hiſtorian, nor is there occaſion to call in the artificial aid of Romance when Nature herſelf has ſupplied us with *Works* worthy the commemoration of *Words*. Many Compilations have indeed been offered to the Public very undeſerving either notice or encouragement: it is not a number of Volumes, ſwelled with unintereſting accounts and trivial relations, compoſed from the memoranda of unſteady man, which deſerve the approbation of a diſcerning Public. That writer who is prolix is as much to be cenſured as the one who is too brief. Much ſhould be contained in a moderate ſpace, by which means the Curioſity of the Reader is not only kept alive, but immediately gratified; whereas ſuperfluities exhauſt the patience, and Enquiries conſequently ceaſe before they attain ſufficient Satiſfaction. Notwithſtanding there are many ancient Collections extant, yet as materials are very much increaſed, on account of the ſeveral late Diſcoveries; ſuch Additions and Improvements muſt undoubtedly render a NEW ONE highly acceptable, being abſolutely neceſſary, on account of the Modern Voyages and Travels, which are of ſuch an important Nature.

It is not, in theſe our glorious annals, with a proſpect of enlarging private dominion, or ſatisfying vain ambitious views, that the receſſes of the Globe are inveſtigated; but to gratify a laudable Curioſity and promote general Knowledge. Our bold Voyagers have traverſed the World to viſit new tribes of their Fellow-creatures, not as enemies but friends, to relieve their wants, bring them from darkneſs into light, and communicate to them our ſuperior attainments. Thoſe recent Voyages, which have been made under the patronage of our preſent King, have not, it is preſumed, been entirely uſeleſs. How many ignorant Iſlands have been enlightened by the introduction of our Engliſh manners: from the uncommon objects exhibited to them, and the frequent opportunities of intercourſe, new materials have been furniſhed them for the exerciſe of their Reaſon, and their ſtock of Ideas naturally enlarged. Is it not probable that the Savage Natives, upon comparing themſelves with their Engliſh Viſitors, became ſoon conſcious of their extreme inferiority, endeavoured to emerge from their brutal ſtate, throw off all ferocious appearance, and riſe nearer to a level with thoſe who left behind them ſo many marks of their Generoſity, Humanity, and Spirit? The Britons when firſt viſited by the Phœnicians, are deſcribed to have been as ſavage as any of the uncivilized natives of Tongataboo or Otaheite; it is therefore very likely that the Britons may, in due progreſs of time, ſpread thoſe bleſſings of civilization which they themſelves have thus acquired, and be the happy means of aboliſhing the many abominable repaſts, and almoſt equally abominable ſacrifices, which are too common among the Inhabitants of diſtant Iſlands.

Near Twenty Years have elapſed ſince any COLLECTION of VOYAGES and TRAVELS has been publiſhed, and during that ſpace of time ſo many detached Voyages as well as Travels have been preſented to the Public, that a Work upon the preſent plan (including all the MODERN VOYAGES and TRAVELS) is now abſolutely neceſſary and much wanted by readers of every claſs and denomination.

The pleaſure attending the peruſal of Works of this kind, have made them more univerſally read than any other branch of Polite Literature. In a good COLLECTION of VOYAGES and TRAVELS, we have all the entertaining incidents of the moſt romantic Novel, with all the evidence of the moſt authentic Hiſtory. It is a happy circumſtance in this kind of reading, that it gratifies that thirſt of knowledge which it excites, and that as we read on, we find new reaſon to wonder and to admire.

The moſt ample fortune of the richeſt man, and the longeſt life of the moſt laborious traveller, attended with all that Succeſs which his moſt ſanguine Expectations could hope for, would be inſufficient to make him acquainted with the twentieth part of what will be found in this New Work; which is recommended to the Public as a faithful narrative of indubitable Facts; and on ſuch eaſy terms as to be within the power of every perſon to purchaſe.

It is by the aid of Voyages and Travels that the ſtudious, the delicate, the infirm, thoſe whoſe age, ſex, diſpoſition of mind, or habit of body, renders incapable of encountering the dangers and inconveniences of long Voyages and wearifome Journies, may paſs with eaſe over lonely Desarts, vaſt Mountains, and interpoſing Seas; view the moſt diſtant Lands, and become acquainted with all the Nations of the peopled earth: thus reaping in their cloſets the fruits of thoſe accumulated labours, which have employed the moſt adventurous Spirits for a long ſucceſſion of ages. Nay, it is to the enterpriſing Spirit of VOYAGERS and TRAVELLERS, that every enlightened Nation in the World is indebted for that ſtate of Geographical, Hiſtorical, and Philoſophical Knowledge, of which they can now boaſt.

In a word, if there be any Merit in blending the Uſeful with the Agreeable; if conveying the moſt valuable Knowledge, in the moſt pleaſing manner, can merit Attention, this NEW UNIVERSAL COLLECTION of VOYAGES and TRAVELS bids fair to enſure the complete Approbation of the Public.

W. H. PORTLOCK.

A

GENERAL HISTORICAL ACCOUNT
OF THE
RISE AND PROGRESS OF NAVIGATION,

From the Earlieſt and moſt Authentic Period of Intelligence.

AS the race of Man have been ordained by Providence for ſocial as well as rational creatures, it ſeems to have been the grand deſign of God and Nature, that after having multiplied and repleniſhed the earth, they ſhould hold intercourſe with each other, and thereby derive ſuch mutual advantages, as without a miraculous intervention could never otherwiſe ariſe to any ſeparate community. It may poſſibly be objected, that if this were really the deſign of Heaven, men would not have been ſcattered at a diſtance from each other, with intervening wilds, deſarts, mountains, and vaſt oceans to divide them; but upon an examination of the diſpenſations of Providence, this ſeeming weighty objection will vaniſh. Man is a Being capable of improvement, and intended to be conſtantly employed in exertions either of his corporeal or mental faculties. It is for the brute creation alone, to remain, from their firſt period of exiſtence, in their wilds and foreſts, till death aſſimilates them with their original duſt. Man has a nobler claim, by arts enabled to remove the apparent obſtacles of nature, to viſit diſtant lands, and from experience to reap advantage and uſeful improvement, and, in all the various changes of the world, ſtill to find employment for his rational faculties, and induſtrious efforts, thereby diſplaying thoſe gracious attributes with which Heaven has endued him.

The preſent appearance of this terraqueous globe is not that which it always exhibited: beſides the general deluge ſo fully deſcribed in Holy Scripture, we have authentic accounts of partial deluges, dreadful earthquakes, and other phœnomena, which from time to time have wrought amazing changes on the face of the earth, by levelling mountains, elevating valleys, rending aſunder vaſt continents, producing new iſlands, burying vaſt tracts of land beneath the ocean, and cauſing the ſea in other places to retire, and the dry land to appear. How far theſe changes may have conduced to the ſeparation of mankind in ſome places, and to the aſſociating them in others, is a matter, perhaps, worthy the diſcuſſion of the philoſophical enquirer. Whether the various nations of the peopled earth were ſeparated by ſuch vaſt tracts of ocean in the antediluvian world, is more than we can take upon us to determine; but it ſeems clear that after the general deluge, men were fearful of truſting themſelves upon the world of waters even for ages, till by ſlow degrees they were convinced of the utility, when numbers had experienced the advantages of a certain confined navigation peculiar to thoſe ages, and were thereby encouraged to extend them.

The taſk would be both prolix and unneceſſary to enter now into a detail of the expeditions of all the deſcendants of Noah, and the chiefs of fabulous times, of which all the accounts are ſo mixed with fable, that it is ſcarcely poſſible for the moſt accurate inveſtigator to diſtinguiſh and ſeparate truth from error. Of this ſort are the expeditions of the Cretan Jupiter againſt the Sidonians, of Perſeus into Africa againſt Meduſa, with others, too tedious here to mention. The relation of the voyage of Jaſon in the ſhip Argo, ſaid to be the firſt large veſſel built by the Greeks, is likewiſe immerſed in fabulous obſcurity: it is only to be concluded that the Argonauts ſailed under a brave commander of the name of Jaſon, to eſtabliſh ſome branches of uſeful commerce at Colchis and elſewhere, and to clear the ſeas of many troubleſome and dangerous pirates.

We have every reaſon to believe by the authorities of both ſacred and profane hiſtory, that the Phœnicians were the firſt, and for a long period of time the moſt ſucceſsful of the ancient navigators. We find the King of Tyre, whoſe ſubjects were of that nation, aſſiſting King Solomon with gold and curious materials for building the famous temple at Jeruſalem.—Though the virtue of the magnetic needle was totally unknown in thoſe days, yet it is morally certain that theſe bold navigators not only coaſted along the neighbouring ſhores of the Mediterranean, but ſailed Southward to Africa, and North as far as Britain, trading for tin to the coaſt of Cornwall, at a time when the exiſtence of this iſland was not known to the greater part of the nations inhabiting the continent. The Aſſyrians, Egyptians and other ancient ſtates, are reported to have had great fleets before the days of David or even of Moſes.—The accounts of the naval power of Semiramis are to be ſuſpected as fabulous; that the Egyptians and ſome other nations have been repreſented as covering the ſeas with their fleets, may probably have ariſen from the number of Phœnician veſſels employed in their ſervice.—The Greeks who learned other arts from them, acquired that of navigation among the reſt, and almoſt as ſoon as they were formed into ſtates, began to think of making themſelves reſpectable for their fleets, with which they repeatedly defeated thoſe of the Perſians, and made themſelves maſters of the Eaſtern coaſts of the Mediterranean, while the Phœnicians were employed in trading and planting colonies in various other parts of the world.

The famous Carthage, a colony from Tyre, from ſmall beginnings roſe to high eſtimation for her naval power, by which means, in a great meaſure ſhe was enabled to contend with Rome for the empire of the world. But the indefatigable induſtry, unwearied application, and boundleſs thirſt of conqueſt which marked the character of the Romans, cauſed them at laſt to triumph. Though at firſt they were little ſkilled in maritime affairs, to which their ancient genius had not led them, yet finding themſelves thus powerfully oppoſed by a people whoſe great reſources were in trade, and whoſe naval ſtrength contributed chiefly to their ſupport: they reſolved on manning great fleets, in which, though at firſt they were unſucceſsful, they were at length enabled to combat their enemies, as it were upon their own element, and finally gave them ſuch a terrible overthrow as induced them to accept of ſuch a peace as the conquerors were diſpoſed to grant.—The fleets at this time conſiſted of galleys of various ſizes, with ſeveral benches of rowers, and were filled with ſoldiers who fought with their uſual weapons of war, to which were added various engines peculiar to their ſituation, and ſome of the galleys had towers, from whence they ſhot or threw darts, ſtones, and other miſſiles. By the help of theſe, they could make ſafe approaches to the walls of towns in *offenſive* war, and when attacked in their own veſſels could carry on a *defenſive* with as great ſecurity as if they were on ſhore.

Though by perſeverance and aſſiduities the Romans had overcome great obſtacles, and were become maſters at ſea, yet we do not find that their genius led them towards *diſcovery*.—Conqueſt engroſſed their ideas, and as the then known world had furniſhed ſufficient employment for their arms, and put them in poſſeſſion of an empire, which was at laſt too extenſive for them to preſerve entire, they were little ſolicitous of penetrating farther, and exploring unknown regions in the manner of the more modern Europeans for the ſatisfaction of a laudable curioſity.

That diſtinguiſhed power which the Romans thus wreſted from the Greeks and Carthaginians they preſerved till the diviſion of the empire, after which it began to decline.—The diſtant provinces revolted.—The nations ſhook off the yoke of the conquerors; barbarians whoſe names were almoſt unknown, poured in upon the various parts of the divided empire; Rome ſinking under her own weight, was at laſt ſacked by the Goths, and Conſtantinople taken by the Saracens, which event put an end to the Eaſtern empire, in the reign of Michael Palæologus.

Hence originated that conſequence which the Arabs derived.—Though at firſt apparently enemies to learning and the arts, yet as they extended their power, they became encouragers of them, and, while the deſtruction of the Weſtern empire had involved Europe in ignorance and diſtraction, theſe people began to cultivate uſeful knowledge, and to carry on an extenſive trade with divers nations, though in ſhips of a very ſlight conſtruction. Nor did the Diviſion of the Arabian empire prove the extinction of this commerce, which long ſurvived the deſtruction of the Khalifate, and the remains of which were yet viſible to the Portugueſe when they entered the Indian ſeas, along whoſe coaſts the pilots, it is ſaid, were found to have the uſe of ſea charts, and even that of the compaſs, the diſcovery of which was then ſo recent in Europe.

During this period the rival Republics of Genoa and Venice, were almoſt the only powers that attended to trade and navigation in the Weſtern World, the cruſades abroad, and the feudal ſyſtem which prevailed amongſt the moſt reſpectable powers at home, joined to their inteſtine diviſions, proving moſt unfavourable to the arts, and prolonging that night of ignorance, whoſe ſhades began to be diſpelled about the 15th century. The conqueſts of Jenghiz Khan, and the wars of the ſucceſſors of Saladin, as well as thoſe of Tamerlane, had ſucceſſively kept Aſia in a ferment; and the two Republics maintained their naval conſequence, till the Venetians at length prevailed, and ſecured to themſelves the ſovereignty of the inner ſeas.—Before a way to India was opened by the Cape of Good Hope, the great market for ſpices, drugs, and other valuable commodities of the Eaſt, was fixed at the city of Malakka, from whence they were fetched for the uſe of the Weſtern nations as far as the Red Sea.—But the diſcoveries of the Portugueſe turned the channel of this trade, and in effect proved fatal to the wealth and power of the Venetians, which had been the wonder, nay, the envy of Europe for a long ſucceſſion of years.

This change may properly be attributed to the directive power of the * magnetic needle, firſt diſcovered about the year 1300. Who was the author of this diſcovery is uncertain; but it is generally aſcribed to an inhabitant of Amalfi, in the kingdom of Naples, of whoſe name there is no authentic account.—Indeed, whoever the perſon was, his claim could be only as a mere diſcoverer of this property, which was not applied by the Portugueſe for the purpoſes of navigation till about the year 1405.

When Prince Henry, third ſon of King John of Portugal, returned from the ſiege of Ceuta, he conceived ſuch a violent deſire of making new diſcoveries that he ſpent near ten years in cauſing attempts of that nature to be made, in the proſecution of which he appeared to have at heart, a ſcheme for reſtoring the trade with Aſia, by finding out a paſſage round Africa to the Weſt Indies, which muſt neceſſarily divert it from its old channel, and prove moſt beneficial to thoſe who firſt accompliſhed an undertaking ſo arduous and enterpriſing.

This Prince, it is ſaid, was the more encouraged to proceed in his ſcheme by the information of certain Moors, concerning the ſituation of the Southern coaſts of Africa, of which no European adventurers had any knowledge, none of them having ventured beyond Cape Nao, ſo called from being conſidered as the utmoſt boundary of their navigation toward that quarter of the globe. But no obſtacles appearing ſufficient in the eyes of Prince Henry, who every day grew more bent upon his deſign, in the year 1417, he cauſed two veſſels to be fitted out for the purpoſe of diſcovery; they ran 60 leagues beyond Cape Nao to Cape Bojador, where being diſcouraged by a ſwelling ſea, breaking on the ſands, they returned, and the Prince ſent out, in 1418, Juan Gonzales Zarco, and Triſtan Vaz Teixeira, gentlemen of his houſhold, in a ſmall ſhip, with orders to coaſt along the coaſt of Barbary, till they had paſſed the Cape, and diſcover all the land which the Arabs ſaid reached beyond the equinoctial line: but their veſſel was driven by a ſtorm out of her courſe, till, accidentally, they made an iſland which they called Puerto Santo, or Holy Iſland, on account of their deliverance. The Prince, on their return, pleaſed with their diſcovery, ſent them thither again, together with Bartholomew Pereſtrello, with cattle; as alſo corn and plants; but the intention was defeated by the fecundity of a couple of rabbits, theſe animals multiplying ſo exceedingly, as to deſtroy what was planted; and thus a circumſtance ſo trifling, rendered the project of a ſettlement abortive. The year following, the ſame gentlemen made another voyage, in which they diſcovered the iſland of Madeira, where they found a chapel, tomb, and ſtone, erected by an Engliſhman, who, flying from his country with a woman whom he loved, was driven thither by ſtreſs of weather; the ſhip taking advantage of a favouring gale, having left the young couple behind them[*]. The land being covered with woods, the Portugueſe ſet fire to them, to clear it: theſe are ſaid to have burnt for ſeven years, and when the iſland was at laſt ſettled, wood became one of the ſcarceſt articles in the country.—A courſe of time being neceſſary for furniſhing the new ſettlements, it was not till 15 years afterwards that Gilianez paſſed the dreadful Cape Bojador, beyond which he ſailed 30 leagues, and the year following, proceeded 12 leagues farther, returning with a quantity of ſea wolves ſkins, but, on their landing, the inhabitants fled for fear of them, nor would they return though every perſuaſive means to retain them were made uſe of.

---

* The load-ſtone or magnet, as ſome ſay, was firſt found in Magneſia, a country of Lydia; according to others, the Magneſians were only the firſt who diſcovered its property of attracting iron. It is well known to have two poles, which conſtantly incline to thoſe of the world, if nothing intervene to alter their direction. This property is found to be communicable, and hence the nautical needle once properly touched points conſtantly towards the pole, unleſs ſome maſs of interpoſing iron, or ſomewhat of a magnetic nature, interpoſes to prevent its direction. The cauſe of this wonderful effect is one of thoſe ſecrets which it has pleaſed Heaven hitherto to conceal from the prying ſearchers into nature's volume. This wonder is augmented by another, namely, the different variations of the compaſs, which are found by obſerving the ſun and ſtars, and appear not to be guided by parallels of latitude, nor regulated by meridians; ſome have attributed this to certain magnetic qualities in certain mountains: ſome to a principle of magnetiſm in the earth communicable from the pole in different degrees, at different diſtances.—But what tends to overthrow theſe various opinions, and ſeems almoſt to mock conjecture, is a variation of the variation itſelf, as it continues not the ſame at all times even in the ſame ſituations. On the whole, from whatſoever hidden powers in nature the cauſe of magnetiſm originates, it is to its effects, as employed in framing the mariner's compaſs, that mankind owe the diſcovery of a new world.

The prince ſtill continuing to purſue his plan, Antony Gonzales, in the year 1442, by his order, coaſted as far as Cape Blanco. Nunho Triſtan paſſing ſtill further, diſcovered one of the iſlands of Arguim, called Adeget, and another, to which the name De Los Garzas was given.

In 1447 Dinis Fernandez diſcovered Cabo Verde, or Cape Verde; but venturing up the river which the Spaniards called Rio Grande, he was cut off by the natives, as were alſo the chief part of his company.

After this Alvaro Fernandez ſailed 40 leagues farther; and thus Prince Henry had the ſatisfaction of ſeeing his plans ſucceſſively executed, till death removed him in the midſt of them; after which they were purſued by his nephew, Alfonſo V. in whoſe reign Gonzalo de Vello diſcovered the iſlands called Azores, which are eight in number, viz. St. Michael, St. Mary, Jeſus, or Tereſa, Gracioſa, Pico, Fayal, Flores, and Corvo, lying nearly in the ſame latitude with Liſbon.

The ſucceeding year the iſlands of Cape Verde were diſcovered by Antonio Nole, a Genoeſe, in the ſervice of Portugal. Theſe iſlands lie about 100 leagues to the Weſtward of Cape Verde, and are called Brava, Bonaviſta, du Sal, St. Nicholao, St. Lucia, St. Vincent, and St. Antonio: the iſles Maya, and S. Philip, and S. Jacob, were alſo diſcovered by him.

In 1471 John de Santeren and Peter de Eſcobar, went to the place called Mina, on account of the gold trade there, and proceeded from thence to Cape St. Catharine. The ſame year Ferdinand Po found out an iſland which he called Hermoſa, a name which it has ſince loſt, but retains that of him who diſcovered it. The iſlands St. Thomas, Anna Bom, and Principe, were diſcovered about this time.

At this period the King of Portugal took upon him the title of *Lord of Guinea*.—It had heretofore been the cuſtom to ſet up wooden croſſes in the new diſcovered countries, but this prince ordered that ſtone ones ſhould be in future erected by the captains, whereon his own name and theirs were to be inſcribed. The firſt of theſe captains was called Cam: paſſing Cape Catharine, he came to the river Congo, ſailing up which, he found by the ſigns of the blacks, that they had a king, who lived at a diſtance from the ſea coaſt, This being all the information he could get, he returned home; where being arrived, and bringing ſome of the natives with him, King John gave them many preſents, and ordered Cam to proceed again to Congo, and endeavour the converſion of the people, who were all heathens.—In this he happily ſucceeded, and returning to Congo, being admitted to the King of that place, perſuaded him to ſend ſome of the ſons of his chief men to Portugal, to be baptized and to be inſtructed in all the principles of Chriſtianity.

After the expiration of a few years, the King of Benin, a territory ſituate between fort St. George and Congo, pretending a deſire to be converted to chriſtianity, ſent an embaſſy to the King of Portugal, deſiring to have prieſts for their inſtruction: the ambaſſador, among other things informed King John, that 250 leagues beyond their country, reigned a powerful prince, called Ogane, by whom the kings of Benin were confirmed in their royalty, their meſſengers receiving from him a ſtaff, with a head and a croſs, like that of Malta; but added, that the perſons receiving theſe, never were allowed to behold his face, his foot only being put out from behind a curtain, in token of his acquieſcence with their wiſhes.

The ſurpriſing relations of a certain prince called Preſter John, reigning in thoſe parts, being at that time current in Europe, King John concluded this muſt be that very extraordinary perſonage.—To ſatisfy himſelf in this particular, as well as to get ſome account of India, Peter de Covillam, and

---

[*] The lady died ſoon afterwards, and Macham, with his companions, having paid this tribute to her memory, made a boat out of the trunk of a tree, in which without ſails or oars, he paſſed over to Africa; the Moors preſented him to their king, who ſent him to the King of Caſtile.

Alonſo de Payva, were ſent over land for intelligence: by way of Grand Cairo they went to Tor on the coaſt of Arabia, where they ſeparated, Covillam ſetting out for India, and Payva for Ethiopia, both agreeing to meet again at Grand Cairo, by a certain appointed time: the former proceeded to Cananor, Calicut, and Goa, paſſing from thence to Soſala, and afterwards to Aden, at the mouth of the Red Sea, on the ſide of Arabia; when, coming at laſt to Grand Cairo, he found the companion of his travels was no more; from hence he ſent the king an account of his proceedings by a Jew come from Portugal, and afterwards went into Ethiopia, where he was kindly entertained, but was never permitted to return from thence.

About the ſame time that theſe ſet out by land, Bartholomew Diaz put to ſea, with three ſhips: he diſcovered the mountains called Serra Prada, and paſſed on in ſight of a bay, which he named *De los Vaqueros*, on account of the great herds of cattle that he ſaw there; he touched afterwards at the iſland of Santa Cruz, entered the mouth of the river Del Infante, and at laſt came to the famous Cape which is the utmoſt ſouthern boundary of Africa; to this Cape he gave the name of Tormentoſo, on account of the ſtorms which he there met with. But King John changed the appellation to that of Cabo de Buena Eſperanza, on account of the hopes he entertained of diſcovering a paſſage round it by ſea to the Eaſt Indies: however this (which was of more conſequence than finding out Preſter John's dominions) did not take place in the reign of King John, who, having fixed the Portugueſe dominion in Guinea, died, and King Emanuel ſucceeded him.

As ſoon as this monarch began his reign Vaſquez de Gama, being intruſted with the command of three ſhips and a tender, paſſed the Cape, and made his way to India by ſea: previous to which, Chriſtopher Columbus had ſailed to the Weſt Indies; the new world was thus diſcovered, and the conqueſt of Mexico and Peru was the attendant conſequence.

In 1494, Sebaſtian Cabot diſcovered North America, in the reign of Henry VII. of England.—In the year 1500, Brazil was firſt found out by Peter Alvarez Cabral, who was ſent on an expedition with 1200 men, to gain footing in India, but was driven by a ſtorm on that part of the coaſt of South America; and in 1519, Ferdinand Maghellan found a paſſage from the Weſtern to the Southern ocean, by thoſe Straits to which the name of their unfortunate diſcoverer was afterwards given.

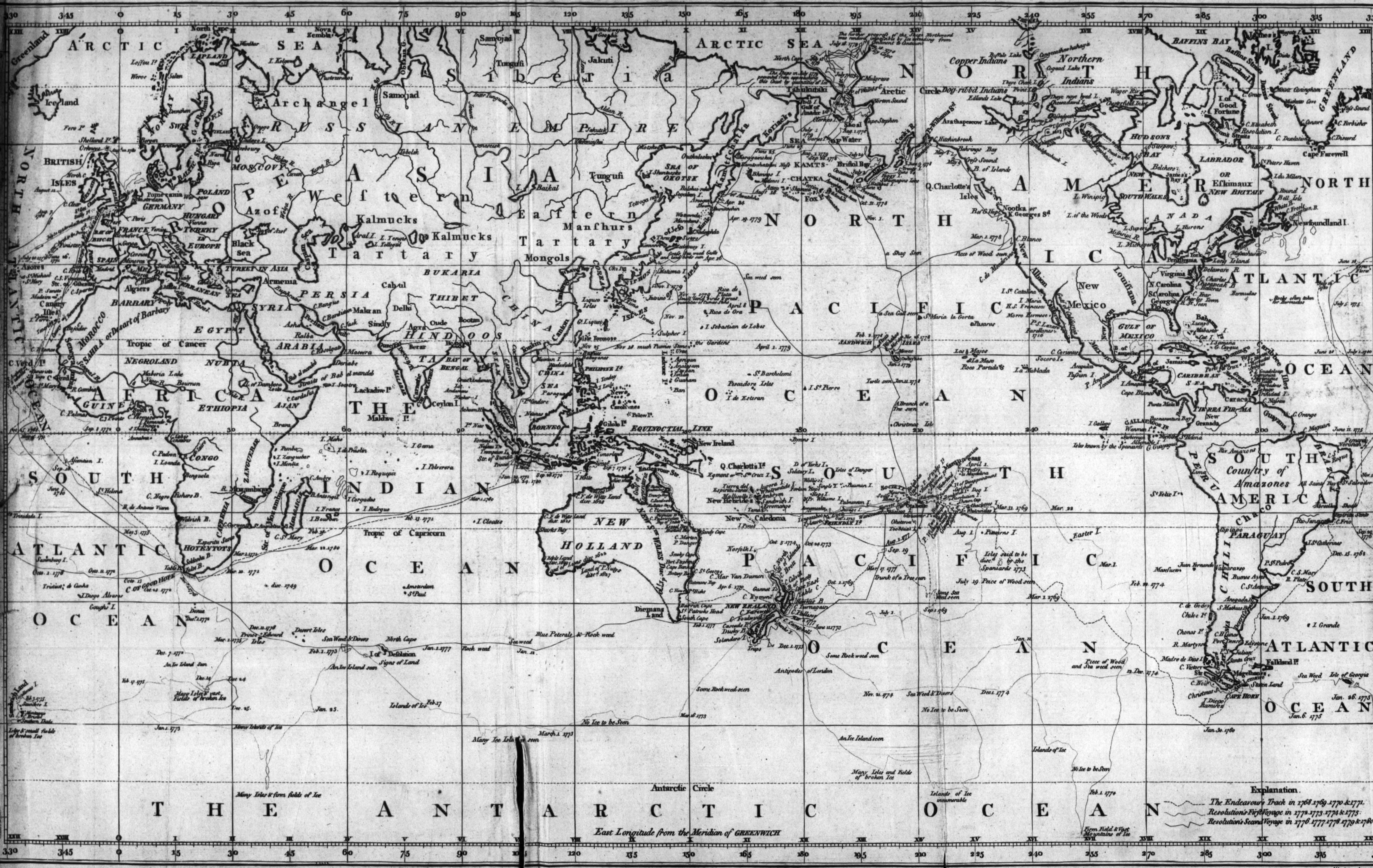
Theſe happy beginnings cauſed happier continuations, each ſucceeding period furniſhed new diſcoveries of the Engliſh, the Dutch, French, and in effect all the nations of Europe, whoſe ſituation would permit them; eagerly followed the example of the ſucceſsful Portugueſe and Spaniards, who, equally jealous of them, and of each other, took all manner of pains to preſerve their dominion where they had gained footing, and as much as poſſible to thwart all thoſe who adopted the plan of making new diſcoveries. But notwithſtanding this, we find the Dutch, at various periods, buſy in ſettling themſelves in India, and ſecuring the poſſeſſion of the ſpice trade. In 1600, an Engliſh Eaſt-India company was eſtabliſhed by Queen Elizabeth; ſettlements in Aſia were alſo obtained. A great part of the continent of North America, firſt diſcovered by Sebaſtian Cabot, was alſo peopled after that time by Britiſh ſubjects: nor were the French idle, they alſo got footing in Aſia, the Weſt-Indies, and North America, in ſpite of all the obſtacles that at firſt appeared to hinder them; while the Portugueſe and Spaniards, eſpecially the latter, often found themſelves much embarraſſed to preſerve their new poſſeſſions. A paſſage being opened from the Atlantic to the South Sea, by Cape Horn and the Straits of Maghellan, and the poſſibility of circumnavigating the globe, which before exiſted in idea, confirmed by experience, the ſettlements on the coaſts of the Pacific Ocean were expoſed to aſſaults from enemies whom the Spaniards little expected to viſit them in thoſe ſeas, the riches of the new world being alone ſufficient to excite them to ſuch an undertaking. Drake, Candiſh, and others, following the track, afterwards ſailed round the world, and to their diſcoveries much has been added by **MODERN NAVIGATORS**. All theſe, together with all that is found remarkable in the relations of voyagers and travellers of former date, will be comprized in the following ſheets; we ſhall therefore forbear to dwell upon the ſubject here, as we have already given the reader a ſummary account of the undertakings of thoſe firſt adventurers, whoſe names will ever be momentos of their fame and magnanimity.

Having thus given a General Account of the Riſe and Progreſs of Navigation, we ſhall now proceed with the work itſelf, in which will be included all the valuable and important Voyages and Travels by the moſt eminent Navigators and Travellers, whoſe diſcoveries forming an æra the moſt remarkable in the hiſtory of navigation, have poured the treaſures of ſurrounding worlds into the lap of Europe, and thereby laid the foundation of her preſent grandeur and refinement, which have already attained the very ſummit of perfection.

To gratify the Public curioſity reſpecting the new diſcoveries in that immenſe tract in the Southern clime called New Holland, and the conſequence of planting a Colony there, we ſhall commence with the valuable VOYAGES of Captains PHILLIP, HUNTER, &c. to BOTANY BAY, PORT JACKSON, &c. though in date more modern than other Articles.

A NEW GENERAL CHART of the WORLD,

Exhibiting the DISCOVERIES made by Captains *Jas. COOK, DRAKE, ANSON, MULGRAVE, KING, WILSON, MEARES, PORTLOCK, DIXON, PHILLIP, HUNTER &c.*


ARCTIC SEA
Siberia
RUSSIAN EMPIRE
EUROPE
ASIA
Western Tartary
Eastern Tartary
Kalmucks
Manshurs
Mongols
CHINA
PERSIA
ARABIA
HINDOOS
AFRICA
ETHIOPIA
NORTH AMERICA
SOUTH AMERICA
NEW HOLLAND
NEW ZEALAND
NORTH PACIFIC OCEAN
SOUTH PACIFIC OCEAN
THE INDIAN OCEAN
NORTH ATLANTIC OCEAN
SOUTH ATLANTIC OCEAN
ATLANTIC OCEAN
Greenland
Iceland
BRITISH ISLES
Tropic of Cancer
Tropic of Capricorn
EQUINOCTIAL LINE
Antarctic Circle
THE ANTARCTIC OCEAN
East Longitude from the Meridian of GREENWICH
Explanation.
The Endeavour's Track in 1768.1769.1770.&1771.
Resolution's First Voyage in 1772.1773.1774.&1775.
Resolution's Second Voyage in 1776.1777.1778.1779.&1780.

London, Published by Alexr. Hogg at the Kings Arms, No. 16, Paternoster Row, Feby. 22nd. 1794.

T. Conder Sculpt.

A NEW AND COMPLETE COLLECTION OF THE MOST REMARKABLE VOYAGES AND TRAVELS TO ALL THE VARIOUS PARTS OF THE WORLD:

WHICH HAVE BEEN UNDERTAKEN AND ACCOMPLISHED
BY BRITISH NAVIGATORS AND TRAVELLERS:
Including particularly all thoſe Performed in the Reign of His Preſent Britannic Majesty, *GEORGE* III. together with ſome Journals tranſlated from the French, &c.

The NEW, GENUINE, and COMPLETE HISTORY of the JOURNALS of VOYAGES to NEW SOUTH WALES;

AS UNDERTAKEN AND PERFORMED
By Captains Phillip, Hunter, King, Lieut. Ball, Surgeon White, &c. &c.
Comprizing all the Discoveries of their Predecessors, and every recent Information, received ſince their valuable Adventures, contained in the
JOURNALS and VOYAGES
Of our late enterpriſing Commanders, Officers, &c. relative to *BOTANY-BAY, PORT JACKSON, NORFOLK ISLAND,* &c. with particular Accounts of all the adjacent Places.
Being an Entire New History of theſe Celebrated Excursions and Discoveries, more Full and Circumſtantial than any hitherto Publiſhed,
And Embelliſhed with a Variety of moſt Elegant COPPER-PLATES, drawn and engraved by eminent Artiſts.

INTRODUCTION.

NO diſcovery ever tended to ſo much public utility as that of Botany-Bay, the credit of which, we muſt acknowledge, belongs entirely to the great and enterpriſing hero, Captain James Cook, who in his firſt voyage round the world explored all the eaſt coaſt of New Holland, to which he gave the title of New South Wales. The only ſhore his veſſel had then in view was that part which is now known by the name of Botany-Bay. It would be uſeleſs here to mention thoſe tranſactions, which muſt of courſe be repeated when giving an account of his adventures; ſuffice it to ſay, that he was the diſcoverer of Botany-Bay, and the firſt who imagined any advantage could be made of this harbour.

The number of unhappy convicts with whom our ſeveral goals were filled, and whom the laws of their country condemned to temporary puniſhment, rendered it abſolutely neceſſary that there ſhould be ſome diſtant place appointed to tranſport ſuch offenders. The dread of goal ſickneſs, the alarm of inſurrections at home, and above all the impoſſibility of decreaſing the number of felons, &c. without the remedy of thus ſending them away, were indeed ſtrong inducements for adopting this ſalutary plan. Certainly our country laboured under a very grievous inconvenience when obliged to retain thoſe criminals, who not only abounded, but were ſad examples; beſides, the dread of being exiled is in a great meaſure a diſcouragement to vice. On this account, and it muſt be acknowledged with no little propriety, it was ſuggeſted to government that this new-diſcovered place, Botany-Bay, was the beſt and ſafeſt for the reception of thoſe unfortunate wretches who are juſtly deprived of their liberty, either for ever, or for ſuch length of time as juſtice thinks proper to limit. Thus might good reſult from evil, ſeeing that by the abſence of ſuch criminals we might in time, not only fertilize a land that was hitherto unknown, but make it perhaps a proſperous nation.

No place then ſeemed better adapted for this purpoſe than Botany-Bay, ſo called from the quantity of plants which are there collected. The country is deſcribed to be woody, low, and level; yet according to information there are but two kinds of timber wood. The trees are remarkable for their ſize, in which they far exceed ours; though one ſort, it is ſaid, has a reſemblance to the Engliſh oak, the reſt have ſome ſimilitude to the pine; from the former, the wood of which is remarkably heavy and dark-coloured, proceeds a reddiſh gum like dragon's blood; the latter, which is alſo hard and heavy, ſeems much of the ſame nature as the American live oak.

The harbour lies in the middle of the land, and may be ſeen ſouthward at ſome diſtance; the entrance is about a quarter of a mile, and lies to the W. N. W. The ſpot where our new ſettlement is made lies in latitude 34 deg. ſouth, and in longitude from Greenwich 151 deg. 23 min. It is ſafe, convenient and extenſive, though ſeveral ſteep rocky cliffs appear on the ſea coaſt.

The woods are very much frequented with animals and birds. There are ſeveral kinds of the former; that which is called the Kangaroo, is moſt worthy of notice: the fleſh is exceedingly delicate, and ſeems to the taſte like good mutton. There are ſome which weigh 140 pounds; the tail 40 inches long, and 17 in circumference at the root. This animal is exceedingly ſtrong, and, when hunted, ſprings and leaps with great agility, though it never lets its fore feet, which are very ſhort, come near the ground in running. The ſtrength of this animal lies in its hind quarters, and it frequently uſes its tail in its defence, and as often its claws and teeth. The dog is much ſwifter, and is but a ſhort time in chaſing the Kangaroo. As ſoon as this animal is ſeized by the hound, he turns about, and catching hold with the nails of his fore paws, ſprings up and gives the dog ſuch a violent blow with the claws of his hind feet as generally to overcome him; however the dogs, being naturally ferocious, frequently kill the Kangaroos in hunting them: indeed the dogs are ſo exceedingly ſavage, that no correction whatever can cure it: they will worry a pig, or ſnap off the head of a fowl, in defiance to their maſter; notwithſtanding, when domeſticated, they are very good-natured, though they retain this ferocity. The Opoſſum reſembles the Kangaroo in ſtrength, form, colour, &c. Theſe animals are equally as numerous: they have pouches, or falſe bellies, for the ſafety of their young in time of danger: the rats in like manner, which have ſome reſemblance to the Kangaroos: in ſhort, there is ſuch ſimilarity in theſe animals, that it is naturally ſuppoſed the different ſexes of each kind have a promiſcuous intercourſe; ſo indeed we may judge of the fiſh, as it is a common thing to find a Skait's head and ſhoulders to the hind parts of a Shark, or a Shark's head to the body of a large Mullet, and ſometimes to the flat body of a Sting-ray. There is ſhell-fiſh here in great abundance, particularly Oyſters, Muſcles, Cockles, &c. undoubtedly the chief food on which the natives ſubſiſted. The fowls of the air are, in like manner, a combination of different kinds; but chiefly that of the Parrots: ſome have been frequently ſeen with the legs and feet of a Parrot, the head and neck of the ſame form and colour of a common Sea-gull, and the wings and tail like a Hawk; thoſe that are moſt like the Parrots are remarkable for their beautiful plumage. There are beſides ſeveral Crows, a vaſt number of Hawks, Pigeons, Quails, and a variety of ſmaller birds. Among the large ones, is a ſtrange kind, firſt imagined to be the Oſtrich, but now believed either the Emew or Caſſowary. There is alſo a quantity of water-fowl near the mouth of the harbour, of an unknown kind, reſembling the Pelican, and are black and white. Inſects are equally abundant here: the Centipede, Scorpion, Spider, Ant, &c. &c. The plants and flowers diſplay a great variety, and three different kinds of leaves may be ſeen upon one tree.

Government having deemed Botany Bay the moſt convenient, and beſt ſuited for their intended purpoſe, wiſely and immediately decreed it the habitation for convicts under ſentence of tranſportation.— This leads us to a new account of theſe voyages, the commencement, adventures and ſucceſs of which ſhall be the ſubjects of the enſuing Chapters.

BOOK I.

CHAPTER I.

The Veſſels appointed for the Firſt Voyage to BOTANY BAY *with Convicts—Number of Criminals—Proviſions taken in at the Mother-bank—Leave taken of the Hyena—An extraordinary Accident—Captain* PHILLIP'*s kindneſs to the Convicts—A Conſpiracy formed among them—The Detection—Principals puniſhed—Anchorage at Santa Cruz—Marquis Branceforte's Politeneſs, Attention, Invitation, &c.—Eſcape of a Convict—His Diſappointments—Recapture—Remarks on* SANTA CRUZ, LAGUNA, *&c.—The Equator croſſed—Cape Trio—Anchorage—Ingenuity of a Convict—Viceroy's great politeneſs and attention—Strange Cuſtoms to avoid Smuggling—Prince of Brazil's birth-day celebrated—Deſcription of* RIO DE JANEIRO*—Anchorage at Table Bay—Live Stock taken in—Captain* PHILLIP *goes aboard the Supply—Takes leave of the Sirius—makes for* BOTANY BAY *before the Sirius - Condition of the Convicts—Latitudes, Longitudes, &c.*

HIS Majeſty's veſſel the Sirius, which lay in the dock at Deptford, a very large and convenient ſhip, of about 540 tons burthen, which mounted 20 guns, and was remarkably well built; and the Supply armed tender, which was a brig, and one of thoſe veſſels lately employed in conveying naval ſtores from one of his Majeſty's dock-yards to another, a ſtrong little veſſel, very flat-floored, roomy, and which mounted eight guns, and had a deep waiſt, were the appointed veſſels for this excurſion. Accordingly, October the 25th, 1786, the command of the ſhip Sirius was given to Arthur Phillip, Eſq; and that of the Supply armed tender to Lieutenant Henry Lidgbird Ball. The Sirius's complement of men was 160; that of the Supply 55.

It was intended, when theſe two veſſels had performed the deſigned voyage, and the criminals conveyed to the place of their deſtination, that they ſhould be retained in the country for ſuch employments as were neceſſary, until relieved by the arrival of other veſſels from England.

December the 9th, the Sirius being ready to fall down the river, her moorings were ſlipped, and ſhe ſailed down to Long-Reach, where her guns and ordnance ſtores were taken in.

January the 30th, 1787, two tranſports dropped down to Long-Reach, one with female and the other with male convicts: theſe, in order to tranſact ſome private buſineſs, proceeded as low as Graveſend, where the next day they were joined by the Sirius, and a little after upon reaching the Nore by his Majeſty's armed tender Supply. Here, it is neceſſary to obſerve, that John Hunter, Eſq; who had been previouſly employed in the equipment of thoſe ſhips, was now appointed ſecond Captain of the Sirius, with the rank of Poſt Captain, empowered with authority to command her during the occaſional abſence of Capt. Phillip, nevertheleſs to be ſubſervient to his orders and directions.

February the 4th, on account of contrary winds and bad weather, theſe veſſels were detained in the Downs for a fortnight; at the expiration of which time they ventured out; and about the 21ſt the Sirius, Supply and tranſports arrived on the Mother-bank: here it was deemed proper to rendezvous; the ſtore-ſhips being in readineſs. All neceſſary orders were now iſſued forth; and when the Agent for tranſports, Lieut. John Shortland, had executed his commiſſion, and the Maſters of the different ſhips now received their charges, they ſailed from the Mother-bank on the 13th; attended with ſix tranſports, having ſix hundred male and two hundred female convicts on board, and three ſtore-ſhips, with a large quantity of proviſions. Major Robert Roſs, who was appointed Lieutenant Governor of the new ſettlement, was commandant of the battalion;

lion; and there were a hundred and ſixty marines, with their proper officers, to conduct the tranſports; alſo a ſurgeon, with three aſſiſtants, ſupplied with neceſſary medicines, &c. to be employed as occaſion required. His Majeſty's ſhip the Hyena, under Captain De Courſey, was likewiſe appointed to ſee theſe veſſels a hundred leagues to the weſtward, or as far as Capt. Phillip deemed needful. The ſhips, on account of an eaſterly wind, were obliged to run out at the Needles, though it was intended to go through St. Helen's: they had pleaſant weather down the Channel, but the wind continued very changeable, which was the occaſion of ſome delay. On the 21ſt Capt. Phillip delivered his diſpatches to Captain De Courſey; and, after three cheers, leave was taken of the Hyena: it was now hazy weather, the wind being, as it was ſome days before, in the S. W. quarters: the veſſels were, therefore, but ſlow in their progreſs, it requiring particular attention to keep together with all the tranſports.

An extraordinary accident now happened to Corporal Baker, of the marines, who, on laying a loaded muſket down, which he had juſt taken out of the arms cheſt, was wounded by it in the inner ankle of the right foot: the bones, after being a good deal ſhattered, turned the ball, which, though changing its direction, ſtill retained ſuch force as to go through a harneſs caſk full of beef at ſome diſtance, and after that to kill two geeſe that were on the other ſide of it. Notwithſtanding the danger of ſuch a wound, yet the Corporal, being a young man of a good conſtitution, ſo well recovered it as to be able in three months to return to his duty, with the perfect uſe of the wounded leg.

Such was the conſiderate humanity of Captain Phillip, that he ſuffered the male convicts to be releaſed from their chains, in order that they might be more comfortable, and be enabled to frequently waſh and keep themſelves clean. It was now ſuggeſted by the commanding marine officer on board one of the tranſports, and likewiſe the maſter of the ſhip, that a conſpiracy was formed by ſome of the convicts on board the Scarborough, who had taken an advantage of Captain Phillip's indulgence, and meditated an inſurrection: their intentions, as diſcovered, were to have quitted the fleet in the night-time, and make ſuch uſe of the ſhip as their future conſiderations might determine: however, this daring intention was happily diſcovered, before the attempt was put into execution, by the ingenuity and penetration of the marines, the ringleaders immediately corrected with ſome ſeverity on board the Sirius, all parties divided, and heavy irons again applied to thoſe who deſerved them.

The wind was ſtill precarious; at laſt, after ſome heavy rain, it became more ſettled, inclining to the N. W. This advantageous change improved the progreſs of the veſſels, which was then at the rate of about four miles an hour.

On the 29th, the weather changing again for the worſe, it was deemed adviſeable to make to the iſlands of Porto Sancto and Madeira. On June 1ſt, contrary to all expectation, the veſſels reached the Salvages, and on the 3d had paſſed the rocks, the air ſtill continuing variable; in a ſhort time after they reached the iſland of Teneriffe, making on to Santa-Cruz, as it was the Captain's wiſh to effect an anchorage before dark, his men being unacquainted with the place. In the evening, about half paſt ſix, they anchored in 15 fathoms water. It had been underſtood that the ground all over this bay was foul; proper care was therefore taken to obviate any danger, though the labour was unneceſſary, as the ſuppoſition was erroneous.

The next morning an officer was diſpatched by Capt. Phillip to the Governor of this iſland, with information (according to cuſtom) of whom they were, and what they wanted; though, previous to the anchorage, certain officers had come on board the Sirius to make theſe enquiries, it being a ceremony ſeldom, if ever, neglected. Marquis Branceforte, who was the Governor, and Captain-General of the whole of the Canary Iſlands, received this meſſenger with extreme courteſy, and politely returned anſwer to Captain Phillip, that he ſhould command every refreſhment the iſland could afford, and he ſincerely hoped that the place might be capable of ſupplying him with ſuch articles as he had moſt occaſion for. Commodore Phillip, the Poſt-Captain, and ſeveral other officers, now waited upon the Governor, to return him thanks. The Marquis repeated his civilities, and received them with every mark of politeneſs and reſpect. A ſhort time after he came on board the Sirius himſelf, with his attendants, and remained there about an hour, making enquiries (during converſation) about the extent of our intended voyage, and ſituation of the place for which we were making. Some ſhort time after this, he ſent an invitation to Captain Phillip, and his friends, to dine with him. Accordingly the Captain, and his principal officers, (in number about twelve) accepted the invitation, and were exceedingly hoſpitably and politely entertained. The Marquis is a genteel man, of an animated countenance, an eaſy and graceful deportment, and poſſeſſed very much of the dignity of a Spaniard.

Every proper advantage was taken of their ſtay in this iſland; during which time the ſhip's crew and convicts were ſupplied with freſh proviſions, of which there was great abundance, but a ſcarcity of vegetables and fruit, only a few pumpkins, onions, potatoes, &c. could be procured.

Capt. Phillip's intention was not to have exceeded four days here at moſt; but his ſtay was unavoidably longer, the watering of the ſhips being as tedious as it was a neceſſary buſineſs, and what ſtill added to the delay was, that only two boats could be loaded at one time. One evening, when it was rather dark, and all hands employed in clearing a boat of water, a convict, of the name of Powel, having dropt away from the ſhip unperceived, now contrived to ſlip into a ſmall boat; when at ſome diſtance from the veſſel, he then exerted all his ſtrength, and by means of his oars ſoon reached a foreign Eaſt-India ſhip, which lay near the ſhore: he now offered himſelf as a ſeaman; but his expectations of getting off in this veſſel were diſappointed, as they rejected his ſervices: baffled in his hopes, and apprehenſive of being ſoon miſſed, he deemed it neceſſary to leave this veſſel, and by concealment elude ſearch. He landed to the weſtward of the town; but on an unfortunate place, ſurrounded with inacceſſible rocks, where there was a good deal of ſurf. The convicts being now muſtered as uſual, at ſetting the watch, the officer of marines miſſing this man, immediately ſent word to Captain Phillip. Next morning the Captain ſent an officer to the Governor, requeſting his aſſiſtance in recovering this deſerter. The Marquis inſtantaneouſly iſſued orders for that purpoſe; and early in the morning boats were diſpatched from the ſhips, to ſearch for that one which the convict had taken: as they had alſo rowed along-ſhore to the weſtward, they immediately perceived it beating on the rocks; accordingly they advanced to get her, and being naturally induced to look about the place, perceived the convict, who had not been able to aſcend the precipice, concealing himſelf in the clift of a rock. The officer forthwith preſented a loaded gun at him, declaring if he did not immediately deſcend, and get into the boat, he would ſhoot him. This menace had the deſired effect: he inſtantly complied; and, when taken on board, puniſhed and put in irons during the remainder of their anchorage; but having afterwards preſented a petition to Captain Phillip, he was releaſed from his confinement.

It is now neceſſary to make ſome curſory obſervations on this iſland, and its adjacent places. The city of Laguna, which is reckoned the capital, is about three or four miles diſtance from Santa Cruz:

the roads thereto are exceedingly bad, and the ſtreets of the city irregular and croſs each other at right angles, ſome of which are remarkable wide, but the buildings are in general good; the plain on which Laguna ſtands is pleaſant and fertile, the ſoil is rich, and it contains many gardens. Notwithſtanding, it is ſurrounded by ſuch high mountains, which occaſion many torrents of water in time of rain, that it is deemed exceedingly unwholeſome; on which account few people of conſequence inhabit the place, though once the eſtabliſhed reſidence of many of diſtinction. Among the buildings are two pariſh churches, which have ſhort ſquare ſteeples, but which appear above all the other buildings; there are two nunneries and three or four convents; there is a conduit in the middle of the town to ſupply the inhabitants with water. The Peak is a mountain very much celebrated for its amazing height.

The bay of Santa Cruz is defended by ſeveral ſmall batteries of four or five guns each, they are placed at a particular diſtance from one another, and cloſe to the water-ſide; their principal fort near the landing-place is a ſtrong work; it is imagined that on the whole they mount near one hundred pieces of cannon. The chief ſtreet in this town is ſo broad as to reſemble a ſquare; the buildings are irregular; the governor's houſe, which makes but a poor appearance, ſtands at the upper end; at the lower end there is a ſquare monument, which was erected in commemoration of the appearance of Notre Dame to the Guanches, the original inhabitants of the iſland. Santa Cruz is the principal ſeat of commerce; all the officers of juſtice reſide in the place; the manufactures are very few, and conſiſt chiefly of taffeties, gauze, coarſe linens, blankets, garters, &c. The principal dependance of the inhabitants is on their wine, oil, corn, and every kind of ſtock for ſhipping. The women wear veils, and ſome of them are ſo abandoned and ſhameleſs as to exceed even the proſtitutes of London; indeed all the ladies are addicted to intrigue.

June 9th, the watering being now completed, orders were iſſued for every perſon of the fleet to return to his reſpective ſtation; and at ten o'clock the ſucceeding morning they proceeded on their voyage with a favourable wind. On the 18th of this month they reached the iſland of Bonaviſta, with an intention to anchor in Port Praya bay, in the iſland of St. Jago; the weather was exceedingly hazy, and on account of contrary winds and many unfavourable circumſtances, the attempt was given over as impracticable: accordingly they ſteered ſouthward with an intention to croſs the equator, but on account of the ſeverity of the weather it was impoſſible to gain ground; therefore ſtanding off at a greater diſtance from the coaſt of Africa, they were for ſeveral days without advancing; thus delayed with wavering winds it was not till July 14th in the evening that they croſſed the equator: but the wind afterwards made ample compenſation, by blowing ſteadily from Eaſt-ſouth-eaſt to Eaſt, otherwiſe they muſt have fallen in with the coaſt of Brazil, which would not only have been the cauſe of much delay, but be attended with great danger.

During this dark, cloudy, and unpleaſant weather, the company entertained themſelves at intervals with fiſhing; they caught two or three bonitoes. The boatſwain ſtruck with a pair of grains out of the cabin-window a moſt beautiful fiſh about ten pounds weight; it ſomewhat reſembled a ſalmon in ſhape, but differed in the tail, which was more forked; it was of a fine yellow colour; when firſt taken out of the water it diſplayed two beautiful ſtripes of green on each ſide, which after ſome ſhort time changed to a delightful blue and ſo continued; there was nothing particular in the internal formation of this fiſh, except that the heart was larger, and its reſpirations contracted and dilated longer than ever appeared in any other aquatic animal. The ſailors having never before ſeen a fiſh of this kind, and it being conſequently a non-deſcript, gave it the appellation of the Yellow-Tail.

Aug. 3d. Having now made Cape Trio, they found it impoſſible to get hold of anchorage, and ſo proceeded on to Rio de Janeiro Sugar-loaf. On the 5th a boat came along-ſide in which there were three Portugueze and ſix ſlaves; one Thomas Barret, a convict, was diſcovered to have paſſed, with great ingenuity, in trafficking with theſe people, ſome quarter dollars which by the aſſiſtance of others he had coined out of a few old buckles, pewter ſpoons, buttons, &c. during his paſſage from Teneriffe; the fraud had been ſo inimitably executed, that had the metal been a little better it muſt have paſſed; the apparatus whereby this cheat was accompliſhed were ſought in vain, and conſidering the diſadvantages he laboured under, it is wonderful how he could accompliſh it. The characters of thoſe artful villains, and the crimes they had committed, were explained to the injured Portugueze for fear they might entertain an unfavourable opinion of the reſt of the Engliſhmen. On the 6th of Auguſt the convoy anchored for the night in water fourteen fathoms deep in the iſlands which lie off the harbour: as Captain Phillip was ſome years ago on this coaſt, commander of a Portugueze man of war, during which time he behaved very gallantly, he was of courſe extremely popular here, and thereby recommended to the notice of the court of Liſbon.

The next morning an officer was diſpatched to the town to wait on the viceroy and give him the uſual information, and in the afternoon the Sirius with the whole convoy ſailed into the harbour. Freſh proviſions were immediately provided for the ſhips' companies, marines, and convicts; rice in lieu of bread, alſo vegetables and fruits, particularly oranges, which abounded here.

Much civility and politeneſs were teſtified at this place. Some ſhort time after Captain Phillip's arrival, his officers paid their reſpects to the viceroy, who ſeemed very deſirous to render every thing as comfortable and pleaſant as poſſible, conſiſtent with his inſtructions from the court of Portugal, relative to all foreigners; and indeed ſo far he extended this civility as to break through an old eſtabliſhed rule of the place, it being the cuſtom in order to prevent ſmuggling, a crime puniſhed here with the greateſt ſeverity, for guard-boats to row conſtantly night and day, when foreign veſſels come into the harbour; and whenever boats are ſent on ſhore by thoſe foreign ſhips, to put a ſoldier into the boat, who continues on board her during her ſtay; alſo, when any foreign officer lands, an officer from the guard attends him wherever he goes: it muſt therefore be acknowledged as none of theſe ſpies were allowed to watch Captain Phillip and his officers, nor even any reſtraint attempted in the beginning, but every officer permitted to walk wherever he pleaſed (a liberty never granted to ſtrangers), nor any centinels placed even in the boats of the tranſports, that the reſpect which was paid was both extraordinary and unuſual; however the maſters of the tranſports and their ſailors were attended by theſe men when they went on ſhore. Much ceremony was uſed upon conducting the company to the palace; they were attended by an officer and a friar; as they paſſed the guard on duty the colours were laid at the feet of the commodore, which was a token of the greateſt reſpect; they were then introduced to a large anti-chamber crouded with officers, ſoldiers, and domeſtics; ſome ſhort time after a curtain, hung over the door of the preſence-chamber was drawn aſide, and each introduced in his turn to the viceroy by the commodore. The viceroy was ſeated ſo awkwardly that his back was to moſt of the officers. As to the room it was far from magnificent or elegant. The viceroy was a ſtout corpulent perſon, middle aged, and of few words.

Six female convicts were now by the commodore's order removed from the Friendſhip into the Charlotte, on account of their good behaviour, and the ſame number returned to the Friendſhip in their ſtead, whoſe conduct had been exceptionable; this was done with a view to ſeparate the good and bad. A private in the marines of the name of Cornelius Connell was ſentenced by a court-martial to be whipped, for having improper intercourſe with ſome of the female convicts; alſo, Thomas Jones for endeavouring to make a centinel betray his truſt in ſuffering him to go among the women; but as he bore a good character previous to this circumſtance, he was recommended to mercy, and conſequently forgiven by the commanding officer. John Jones and James Reily, privates, were accuſed of ſimilar offences, but acquitted for want of evidence.

The 15th of Auguſt being a day of great parade and merriment among the Portugueze, the ſame was now obſerved by the inhabitants of Rio de Janeiro, who appeared in their beſt and richeſt attire between the city and the church of St. Gloria. Perſons of all ranks joined in the crowd; Gloria church was decorated with various flowers, and moſt brilliantly illuminated; the people generally ſtopped here and obſerved ſome religious ceremonies: this parade continued the whole day, and concluded with fireworks and rockets.

In religion they are very exact, and introduce many unaccountable cuſtoms. Conſecrated beads are hawked about. The women of the lower claſs are very fond of intrigue, but thoſe of high ranks are prudent and reſerved.

A private marine, James Baker, was puniſhed for endeavouring to get paſſed on ſhore one of the artificial dollars, which, no doubt, he had procured from ſome of the convicts, being the ſame of thoſe before mentioned.

There is a ſmall iſland about a mile and a half diſtance from where the ſhips lay, called Enchados, where Captain Phillip and his friends were permitted during their ſtay to erect a tent, for the ſake of landing a few of the aſtronomical inſtruments, neceſſary for aſcertaining the rate of the time-keeper; the weather however was too unfavourable for experiments.

Auguſt 21ſt. This being the anniverſary of the Prince of Brazil's birth-day, every compliment was paid the viceroy uſual on the occaſion, who in return behaved with particular attention; nor were Captain Phillip and the other gentlemen by any means deficient in their endeavours to deſerve his politeneſs.

September 3d, the watering of the convoy and every other buſineſs being completed, all the perſons of the fleet were ſummoned together, and the ſignal given for unmooring. As ſoon as the Sirius had got within about half a mile of Fort Santa Cruz, ſhe was ſaluted by the caſtle there with twenty-one guns, which high and diſtinguiſhed compliment ſhe anſwered with one of the ſame number.

The veſſels having now got clear without the iſlands before night, ſoon reached the harbour of Rio de Janeiro, which is very extenſive and commodious; ſo convenient in reſpect to bays that ſeveral ſhips may find ſecurity here in bad weather.

Rio de Janeiro is ſo called from St. Januarius's day, on which it is ſaid to have been diſcovered; it is the capital of the Portugueze ſettlements in South America, and is ſituated on the weſt ſide of a river; the principal ſtreet, which is like a ſquare, on the ſouth ſide of which ſtands the viceroy's palace, is broad and well built; it is called Strait-ſtreet, and contains a number of large ſhops and a convent, belonging to the Benedictine friars; the reſt are narrow, and for the moſt part interſect each other at right angles: the houſes are commonly two, ſometimes three ſtories high; people of reſpectability live in the upper part, thoſe of the lower claſs inhabit the ſhops, for whoſe ſervice they are intended. The city and harbour are ſtrongly defended, but with little judgment; every thing of the proviſion kind is very reaſonable; the inhabitants are chearful and pleaſant; the women, though remarkably thin and pale, are delicately ſhaped, have good teeth, and beautiful long hair. The churches are very good, and remarkable for their decorations. The different mechanics of this place carry on their buſineſs in diſtinct parts of the town, as there are particular ſtreets ſet apart for particular trades. Before the veſſels left this port, they were ſupplied with ſeveral ſeeds and plants for which the town is remarkable.

After leaving Rio de Janeiro the winds were very changeable, and after the firſt two or three days unfavourable; the weather was for the moſt part thick and hazy, of courſe unpropitious for remarks. October 12th, the wind becoming a ſtrong weſterly, there was ſome expectation of making land, ſeven or eight leagues from which it proved 115 fathoms over a black ſandy bottom, and at five leagues diſtance 90, over ſand with ſmall ſtones. October 14th all the convoy anchored in Table Bay, Cape of Good Hope, and next morning at ſun-riſe by Captain Phillip's command the fort was ſaluted by thirteen guns, which was anſwered by the ſame number.

Table Bay being the laſt port that refreſhments could be had from, during this voyage, it was now wiſely determined to lay in ſuch quantities of articles as were needful, and could be conveniently lodged in the veſſels, both for preſent and future conſumption; but notwithſtanding the Dutch Governor Mynheer Van Graaf received the commodore and officers with the greateſt courteſy and politeneſs, ſtill there was ſuch an unaccountable delay, owing to a tedious ceremony, that nearly a fortnight had expired before a ſatisfactory anſwer was given whether the convoy could have thoſe ſupplies that were neceſſary for their expedition; and no doubt had not Captain Phillip perſevered in his entreaties there would have been greater delay, or perhaps ſome evaſion; but his induſtrious zeal ſurmounted all ſupineneſs, and at laſt procured ſuch things and in ſuch quantities as were neceſſary and convenient.

On board the Sirius were embarked ſix cows with calf; two bulls, one of which was about ſeven months old, alſo a number of ſheep, goats, hogs, poultry, &c.

On board one of the tranſports three mares, each having a colt of ſix months old, and a young ſtallion; all the officers of the tranſports provided themſelves with as much live ſtock as poſſible, not for the ſake of partaking thereof during their voyage, but with a view of ſtocking their little farms in the country which they were ſeeking, it being their chief conſideration to commence as rich as poſſible, for which reaſon they intended during their voyage to ſubſiſt chiefly upon the ſalt proviſions, and reſerve the live ſtock for their arrival; there was alſo a number of cattle put on board the ſtock ſhips; alſo corn and other neceſſaries: it was however regretted, that there was not ſufficient room for a larger quantity, as they could only ſupply thoſe places which had been filled before with the proviſions already conſumed.

After the ſupplies had been granted, Captain Phillip and ſeveral of the officers (as many as could conveniently attend him) were invited by his Excellency Mynheer Van Graaf, the governor, to an elegant and ſumptuous dinner at his town reſidence, which is delightfully ſituated nearly in the centre of an extenſive garden, which being remarkably pleaſant and well ſhaded, is very much frequented by perſons of every deſcription, particularly thoſe of reſpectability. There are ſeveral other walks about Cape Town, but all inferior to this. On approaching the Cape of Good Hope, Table Land, a very remarkable mountain, ſo called from its reſemblance to a table, may in clear weather be ſeen at ſome diſtance: on account of the heat and aſcent it is a very fatiguing expedition to go on the top of it; however, when accompliſhed, the view from the ſummit makes ample compenſation for the labour. To deſcend this mountain is nearly as difficult as going it up. There were ſome runaway Negroes diſcovered round a fire on the clift of a moſt ſtupendous rock, ſecure from the power of their maſters, it being impoſſible for any perſon to come near them: how they reached this place of ſecurity is matter of great aſtoniſhment; here they remain all day unmoleſted, and during the night, as reported, make excurſions and commit depredations on the inhabitants.

From September to March, which is here the mild ſummer ſeaſon, this Table Land is ſometimes on a ſudden covered with a white cloud, which by ſome is called ſpreading of the table-cloth. On the firſt appearance of this the ſhips in Table Bay make preparations, by ſtriking yards and topmaſts, and placing every thing in a comfortable ſtate.

The Sugar Loaf, a round hill, by ſome called the Lion's Head, one part of which is called the Lion's Rump, is ſomewhat weſtward of the Table Land, divided by a ſmall valley on the right hand ſide of Table Bay; this hill very much reſembles a lion with his head erect, whence originated that name: there is a flag ſtaff placed on each ſide, to apprize the governor of the approach of veſſels.

Charles's Mount, likewiſe called the Devil's Tower, inclines eaſtward, ſeparated by a ſmall chaſm from the Table Land; there are ſeveral guſts of wind ſuppoſed to iſſue from it when it partakes of the cap that covers Table Land, from this originated its ſecond appellation. As this ſight is generally in the morning, it is a common ſaying among the facetious number of ſailors (the Devil's Tower being very near Table Land) that the black gentleman is now going to breakfaſt; this humour is varied if the phænomenon appears in the middle of the day, for then they ſay, he is going to dinner; and if in the evening, they obſerve the cloth is ſpread for ſupper.

Cape Town is very extenſive, well built, and in a good ſtyle; the ſtreets, which are wide, interſect each other at right angles; the houſes in general are built of ſtone; the mortar which is uſed is a kind of glutinous earthy compound; their buildings are afterwards plaiſtered with much ſkill and neatneſs, and white-waſhed with lime. The height of the houſes but ſeldom exceeds two ſtories, on account of the violence of the wind, which ſometimes ſhakes them to the very foundation, and therefore inſtead of being tiled or ſlated, they are commonly thatched, though on account of fires which frequently happen, ſome have preferred tiles or ſlates. The lower parts of the houſes are neat and well furniſhed, but the upper apartments are chiefly bare. The ſtreets are in general rough and unpaved; the parts before the houſes are commonly flagged, or with a few trees planted around forming an agreeable ſhade.

The caſtle and principal fortreſs ſtand cloſe to a wooden quay, which runs a few paces into the ſea, and which on account of ſome excellent water that is conveyed by pipes, is very convenient for watering ſhips. In the caſtle there are good accommodations for the troops and many of the civil officers.

There are two churches, one large and another ſmall; the larger for the Calviniſts who are the prevailing ſect, and the ſmaller for the Lutherans: they are both unadorned. There is a very handſome hoſpital at the upper end of the town cloſe to the company's garden, to which the convaleſcents have free acceſs, and reap the benefit of a pure wholeſome air. The inhabitants take great delight in gardens, and keep them in excellent order; there are ſeveral public buildings, particularly the ſtables and a houſe for ſlaves; the former is a handſome row of neat buildings, which hold an incredible number of horſes; the latter is exceedingly extenſive, wherein there are ſeparate apartments for the male and female ſlaves, and which afford them a comfortable retirement after the fatigues of the day.

The militia conſiſt both of horſe and foot; the officers are choſen annually; crimes are puniſhed by fines or forfeitures; their dreſs is chiefly long blue coats with white metal buttons. The men are ſtout and robuſt; the women lively, free, and good-natured: they reſemble the Engliſh very much in manners and dreſs.

November the 11th, Captain Phillip gave a public dinner to ſeveral gentlemen of the town, and the officers of the fleet. An unforeſeen accident having detained the Dutch Governor in the country, prevented him from being one of the party. A band of muſic was provided on ſhore upon the occaſion, while chearfulneſs and good humour added to the harmony.

As the trouble of laying in the neceſſary ſtores was now over, preparations were made for ſailing, and on the 13th of the month they weighed anchor, and ſtood out of the bay: the gales were S. S. E. S. E. and S. in conſequence of which there were ſtrong apprehenſions ſome of the cattle would periſh.

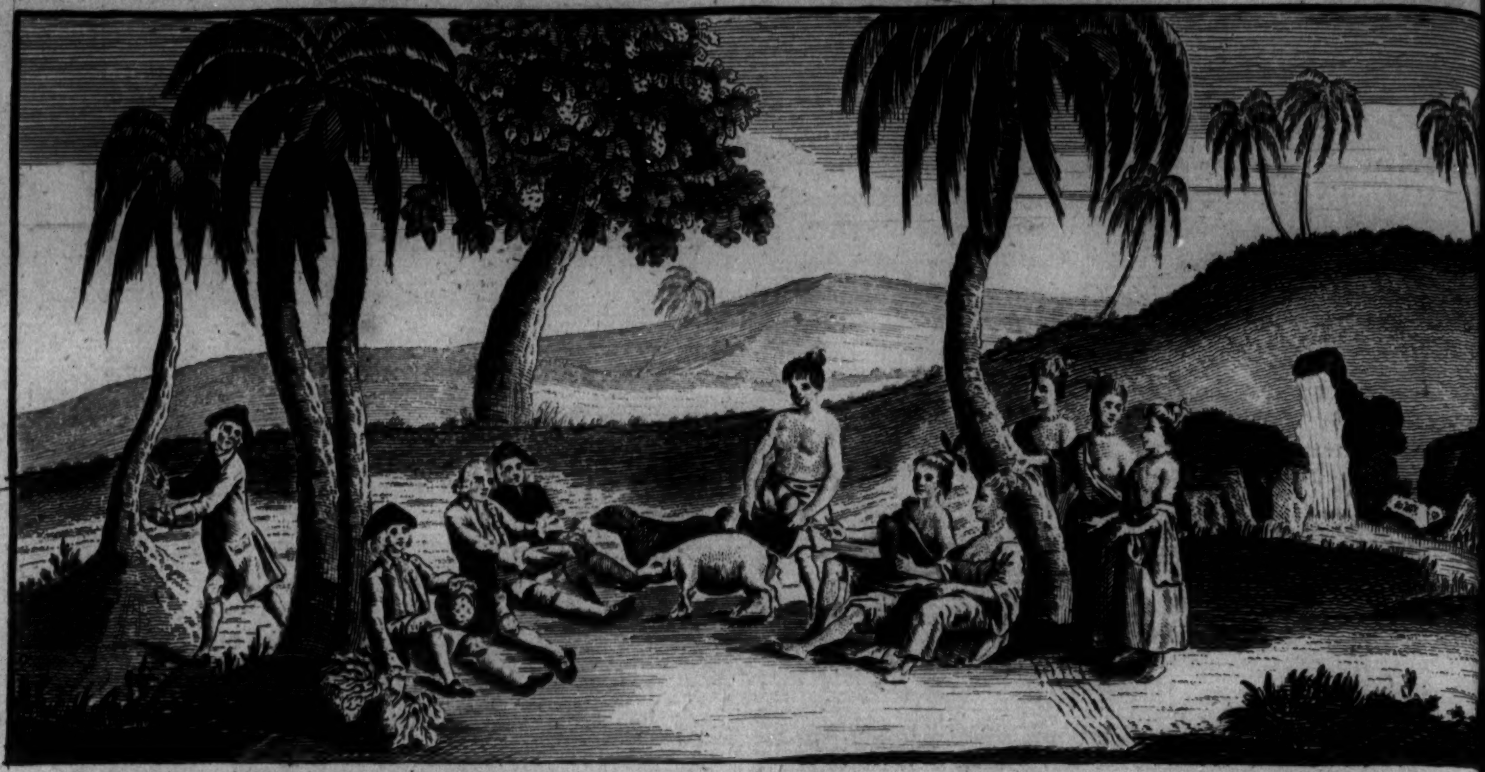
One of the ſeamen on board the Prince of Wales fell from the top-ſail yard the 22d of this month, and was loſt. As the veſſel was ſailing very faſt, and it being exceedingly dark, there was no probability of ſaving him.

November the 25th, as ſome of the convoy ſailed very heavy, Captain Phillip thought it prudent to embark on board the Supply, with a few choſen friends from the Sirius, in order to proceed in that veſſel to the coaſt of New South Wales, and arrive as ſoon as poſſible before the reſt: he took with him Lieut. King, Mr. Dawes, &c. alſo ſeveral carpenters, ſawyers, blackſmiths, &c. with a view to examine the place, and make every preparation that was neceſſary before the coming of the remaining crew. Major Roſs, the Lieutenant Governor, having already fixed upon the moſt eligible ſpot for building upon, intending to erect occaſional huts for the preſervation of the ſtores when the convoy arrived, deemed it neceſſary, as ſeveral hands would be required, to take with them a number of artificers; three therefore of the beſt-ſailing tranſports, (viz. the Alexander, Friendſhip, and Scarborough,) which were under the command of Lieut. Shortland, the agent, received orders to quit the convoy, and endeavour to reach Botany Bay as expeditiouſly as poſſible. Major Roſs, and the adjutant, removed into the Scarborough, and the reſt of the veſſels were left to the direction of the Sirius, now under the command of Capt. Hunter. The commodore and his company having put their reſolutions into execution, took leave of the Sirius, and though the Supply and other ſhips were conſiderably a-head the next day, it was ſome time before the Sirius loſt ſight of her.

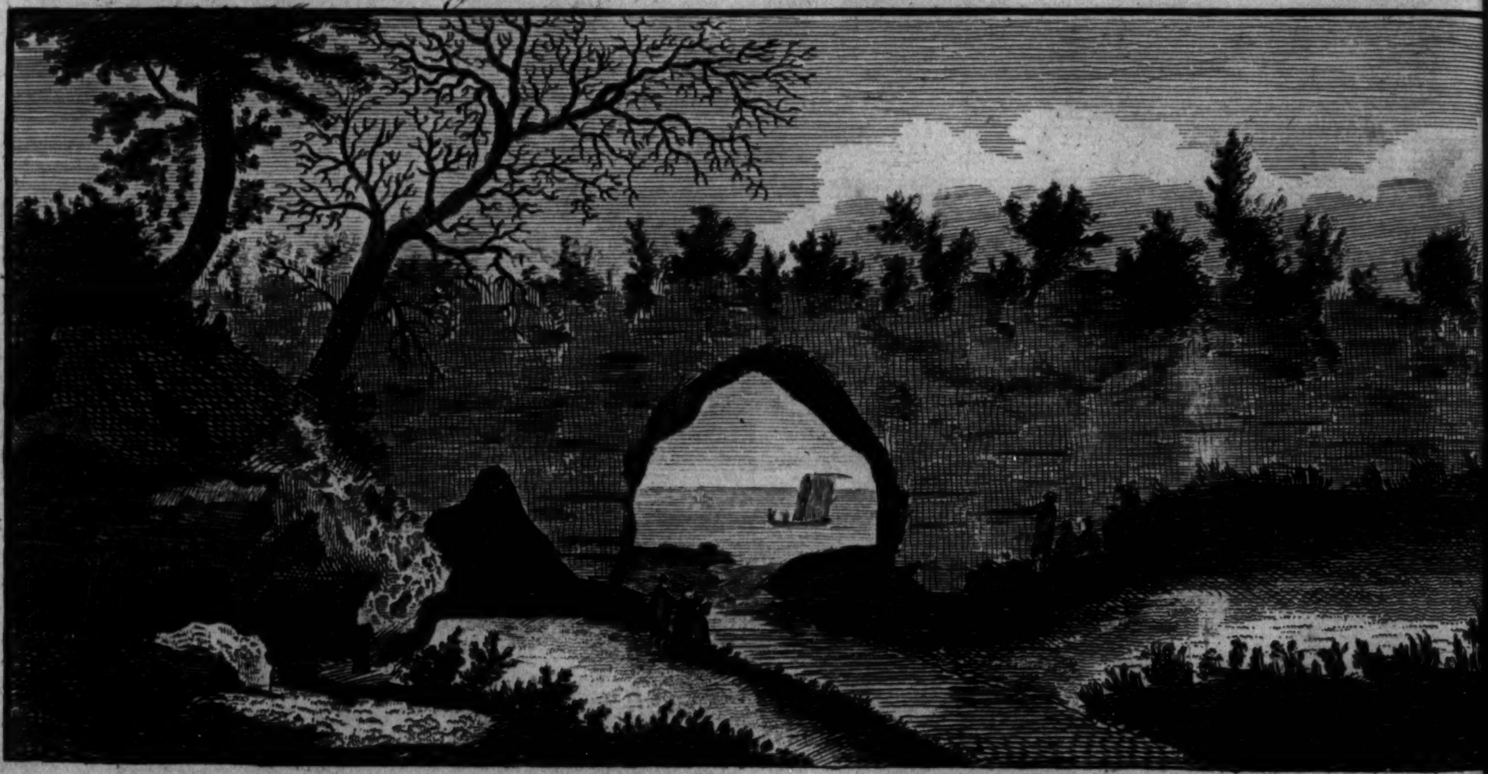
It is neceſſary now to take a review of the convicts, whoſe healthineſs during this part of the voyage was remarkable: only ſix died between England and Teneriffe, which is allowed to be the moſt trying part, to people unaccuſtomed to warm climates; particularly as they were obliged to live upon ſalt proviſions; ſeveral of thoſe who were loſt had been afflicted with diſeaſes before they embarked, conſequently there could be but little hopes of their recovery: very few were in fevers, and only about twenty or thirty who had any violent ſymptoms of the ſcurvy. Among the convicts who died, was one Iſmael Coleman; worn out by debility and lowneſs

BRITISH
7 FE 90
MUSEUM

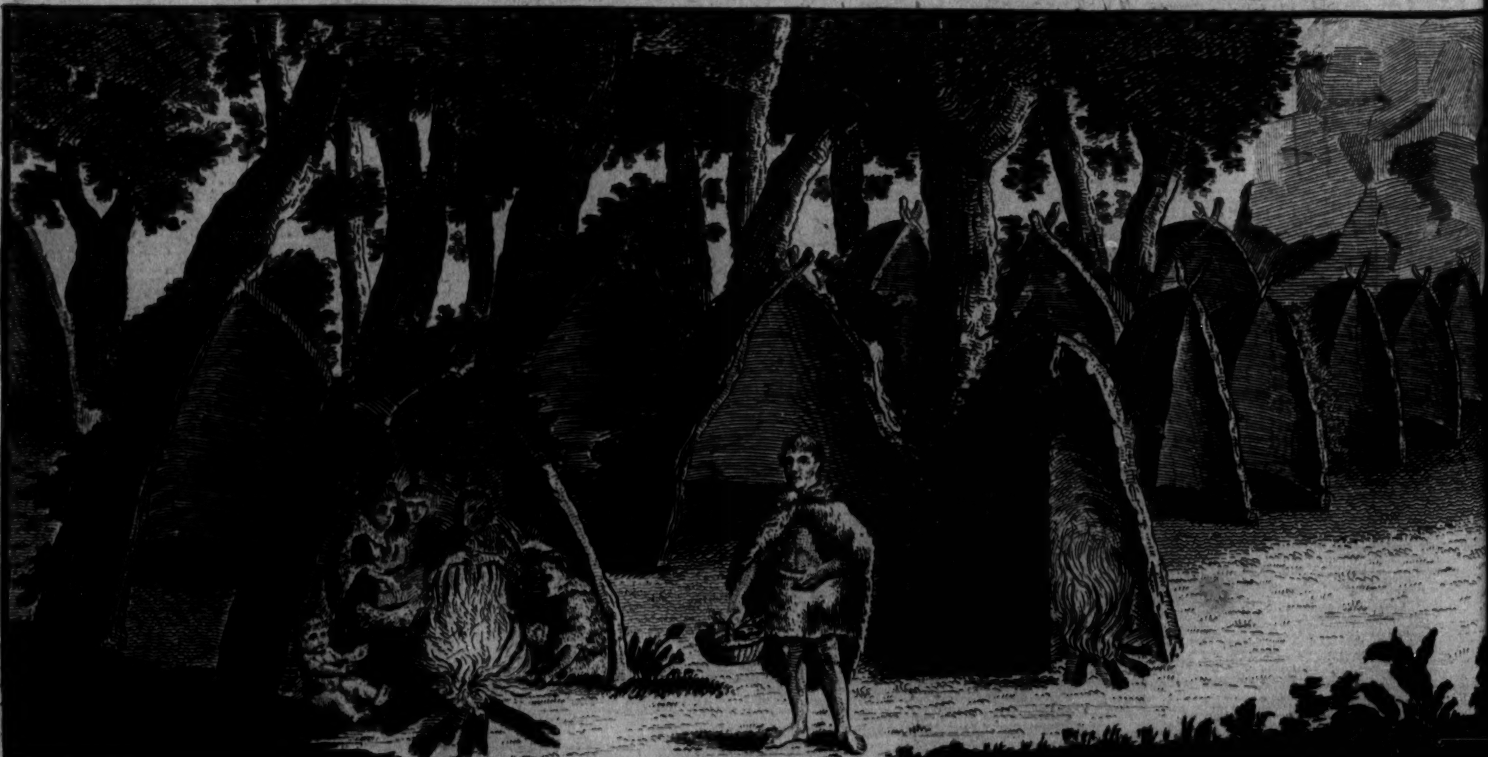
London Published by Alex.r Hogg at the King's Arms No. 16 Paternoster Row.



Mr. BANKS, *receiving a* Visit *from the* King *of* DUKE of YORK's ISLAN



View *of* A PERFORATED ROCK, *in* TOLAGO BAY.



View *of* A Town *in the* Island *of* TERRA DEL FUEGO.

of ſpirits, he died without a pang! alſo James Clerk, who died of a dropſy; he had been tapped ten days before, and diſcharged twelve quarts of water. At the Mother-bank, a ſporatic diſeaſe appeared among the marines and convicts: alſo an epidemic dyſentery among the convicts, after leaving the Cape of Good Hope, which found its way among the marines, and about Chriſtmas became moſt violent; however, by great attention and cleanlineſs, this contagion was ſuppreſſed; only one man, Daniel Creſſwell, among the troops intended for the garriſon, died of this diſorder; from the commencement of which to his death, being eleven days, he was in the greateſt agony, and nothing could yield him momentary eaſe. There was one William Brown, who was a very well-behaved convict, that was loſt: he was bringing ſome of his linen from the bowſprit-end, which he hung there to dry, and by ſome means or other fell overboard. The ſhip was inſtantly hove to, and a boat ſent out, but without effect: notwithſtanding every exertion, particularly of Lieut. Ball, of the Supply, he periſhed: ſome on the forecaſtle ſaw the veſſel go over him, which of courſe rendered his fate inevitable. One Catherine Pryor, a convict, was delivered of a ſon, during this part of the voyage.

It is now proper to give the curious reader the longitudes and latitudes of thoſe iſlands that were paſſed, as nearly and correctly as poſſible.

The Salvages, according to obſervation, were,
In latitude 30 deg. 10 min. north.
In longitude 15 deg. 9 min. weſt.

The iſland of Teneriffe appeared on the road
In latitude 28 deg. 29 min. 5 ſec. north.
In longitude 16 deg. 18 min. weſt.

Iſland of Sal,
In latitude 16 deg. 38 min. north.
In longitude 22 deg. 5 min. weſt.

Iſland of Bonaviſta, north end,
In latitude 16 deg. 13 min. north.
In longitude 22 deg. 51. min. weſt.

Ditto, ſouth end;
In latitude 16 deg. north.
Variation of the compaſs 11 deg. 19 min. weſt.

Iſland of Mayo, of the Cape de Verde,
In latitude 15 deg. 10 min. north.
In longitude 23 deg. weſt.

Port Praya, a bay on the iſland of St. Jago,
In latitude 14 deg. 54 min. north.
In longitude 23 deg. 37 min. weſt.

The Equator, when croſſed, was,
In longitude 26 deg. 10 min. weſt.
Variation 5 deg.

The harbour of Rio de Janeiro
In latitude 22 deg. 54 min. ſouth.
In longitude 43 deg. 19 ſouth.

Cape of Good Hope, in Table Bay,
In latitude 33 deg. 55 min. ſouth.
In longitude 18 deg. 24 min. 30 ſec. eaſt.
Variation of the compaſs 21 deg. 52 min. weſt.

CHAPTER II.

The Convoy proceed on their Voyage, under the direction of Capt. Hunter—Remarks on the Weather—Uncommon Birds—Luminous Figures on the Sea—Strange Animals—A melancholy Accident—Extraordinary guſt of Wind—Conſequent Accidents—Land ſeen—Sail made for the Bay—Anchorage—Sirius and Supply meet—Univerſal joy—Natives ſurpriſed—Captain Phillip, &c. examine the South-ſhore—Account of the Anchorage-place—Latitudes and Longitudes—Succeſs of the Commodore's ſearch—Broken Bay preferred to Botany Bay—The reaſon—The Artificers employed—Natives become familiar with the Lieutenant Governor—Their Behaviour—Kind of Weapons, &c.—Deſcription of their Perſons—Ornaments—Remarks on the Females—Interview between the Natives and Captain Hunter, &c.—Their Threats—Second Interview—Their Gaiety and Good-nature—Another Meeting—Conſequent Remarks—Their ſurpriſe at the exploſion of a Piſtol—An Introduction to the Women by Captain Hunter's perſeverance—The Men's unwillingneſs to expoſe them—Alarmed for their Safety—Manner of protecting them—Women's Behaviour—Their mode of ſheltering themſelves—Uſe of Fires—Way of hunting, fiſhing, living, &c. &c.

AS ſoon as Capt. Phillip left the fleet, Captain Hunter ſteered to the ſouthward, being of opinion that they had hitherto kept in too northerly a parallel to inſure ſtrong and laſting weſterly winds. The weather ſtill continued changeable; ſome times very heavy, and at intervals clear, but on the whole unfavourable: on account of the damp and cold, ſeveral female convicts on board the Prince of Wales were ſeverely troubled with the ſcurvy; which afterwards broke out in the Charlotte, particularly among thoſe who had been previouſly afflicted with the dyſentery: this, however, was got under, by the care and attention of Surgeon White, who on this occaſion gave large portions of the eſſence of malt, and ſome wine, which had been given by Lord Sydney and Mr. Nepean.

During this part of the paſſage, ſeveral whales appeared of an uncommon ſize; ſome birds of the albatroſs and peteral kind, ſuppoſed to have been a ſpecies of ſea-hawks; alſo ſome ſeals, and other oceanic birds, with many of thoſe called Mother Cary's chickens.

Whenever it was hazy weather, in order to prevent any ſeparation between the heavy-ſailing ſhips and the Sirius, the convoy kept as cloſe as poſſible: the ſea was covered over with luminous figures, ſuppoſed to have proceeded from that animal of a jellylike nature called the Blubber, or from the ſpawn of fiſh.

January 6th, 1788, Capt. Hunter, intending to run in for land, they were deceived by one of the tranſports, (the Lady Penryhn) who having puſhed a little a-head, made the ſignal for ſeeing land; which only proved to be a fog-bank. On the 7th, the Prince of Wales being the headmoſt, made the ſame ſignal, and at laſt it became general.

A conſiderable number of animals were now diſcovered, at firſt taken for ſeals, but upon ſtricter examination they appeared different, at leaſt from thoſe that may be ſeen on the coaſt of America and Newfoundland; theſe having long heads, which were tapered to the noſe, and remarkable whiſkers: they now and then raiſed themſelves half out of the water, and as often leaped out entirely to look about them; in ſhort, they were ſomething of the ſea-otter ſpecies.

In running in with the land, which was ſomewhat high, ſeveral ſmall heaps of ſnow were to be ſeen, which was rather extraordinary for the time of year. This part of the coaſt was rough, craggy, and irregular: very few trees to be diſcovered. Some eminences, or pieces of land, ſuppoſed to be iſlands, were perceived eaſtward of the eaſtwardmoſt rock, that is called Mewſtone. The wind at this period was ſo violent from the N. N. E. and N. that the veſſels were under cloſe-reefed main-top-ſail and fore-ſail; but there being much thunder, lightning and rain afterwards, the wind changed to the S. W. quarter, and the weather became clear. In ſteering eaſtward, along ſhore, they approached the weſtward-moſt point of a large bay called Storm-bay, alſo Swilly, eaſtward to which is a ſmall rock called Eddyſtone. Advancing ſtill eaſtward, there were ſeveral trees mere ſtumps to be ſeen, whitiſh and without leaves: there was alſo an appearance of ſmall pieces of verdure about Storm-bay; and on the eaſt point of land which forms this bay there was a large fire, the only indication that the place was inhabited, as none of the natives could be ſeen.

A melancholy accident happened on board the Fiſhburne; the boatſwain, having too freely celebrated the new year, was rather intoxicated with the grog, and as the ſhip was labouring much, fell from the top-ſail yard, by which he was moſt ſeverely bruiſed: in conſequence of the ſcurvy, with which this man was previouſly afflicted, a mortification enſued, and he died January the 8th. The loſs of this man was very much lamented by the captain of the ſhip, who placed no ſmall value upon his abilities, and conſequently regretted there had been no ſurgeon in his ſhip, as he attributed his death to the want of timely aſſiſtance. On the next day Edward Thompſon, a convict, died: this man was worn out with long confinement and grief; as he ſeemed very ſorry for his paſt miſconduct, and anxious to make atonement, there is every reaſon to think that if he had lived he would have been a valuable member to the new ſociety.

January the 10th, an extraordinary guſt of wind occaſioned much confuſion: the convoy having too much ſail out, were obliged to let go their tacks and ſheets; in conſequence of which the Prince of Wales had her main-yard carried away in the ſlings: another loſt her jibb; another had her three topſails blown from the yards: the main-ſail of the Sirius was ſplit, and had not the men been remarkably active, the maſts would have certainly gone over the ſide. Had this ſquall continued, the veſſels muſt have ſuffered conſiderably: ſome delay conſequently enſued, but when theſe accidents were repaired, they proceeded to reach the coaſt, taking advantage of every ſlant of wind.

The wind ſtill inclined to the ſouthward and weſtward, and the ſea was very rough and unpleaſant. Several birds at this time were ſeen; alſo a large whale, and many ſeals, which, though frequently fired at, never betrayed the leaſt fear or concern, though the balls dropped near them; from this, it was evident, they were never before ſo attacked: not one during the firings was killed.

The ſtrongeſt exertions were made to get to the weſtward, and on the 19th land was ſeen over Red Point: as it was impoſſible to get in that night, the convoy, by order of Captain Hunter, came within hail, and they ſtood off and on till four o'clock the next morning, when they made ſail for the bay, and anchored at eight o'clock in water eight fathoms deep; the Supply and the three tranſports were now diſcovered: the former had arrived the 18th; and the Alexander, Friendſhip, and Scarborough the 19th; they had not thereſore that advantage of the Sirius as was expected. It was now cauſe of univerſal joy in having thus reached the deſtined port without any material accident; the people were all as healthy as could be expected.

Some of the natives who were on ſhore ſeemed ſurpriſed at the approach of the veſſels, they aſſembled together, and by pointing their ſpears ſeemed to threaten. In the evening the boats landed on the north ſide to provide water and graſs, where an officer's guard was placed to prevent the men from wandering or behaving improperly with the natives.

When Captain Hunter had anchored, he waited upon Commodore Phillip in the Supply; they and ſeveral other officers accordingly landed, with a view to examine the ſouth ſhore, and fix on the moſt promiſing places for building: the natives followed the boat as they were rowing along the ſhore, but on her putting in, they ran away and abſconded in the woods. However, ſome of the gentlemen had a ſhort converſation with a few, but they appeared very ſhy and diſtruſtful, though condeſcending and civil.

Though the place for anchorage here is very extenſive, yet it is in ſuch a manner expoſed to eaſterly winds without any ſhelter, that it is exceedingly inconvenient; the water is four, five, ſix, ſeven, and eight fathoms deep. Where the veſſels anchored was on a north ſhore of a ſandy bay. Cape Banks E. S. E. Point Solander S. S. E. The entrance of the bay between theſe two lands W. S. W. The ground is clear and good. The ſpot of four fathoms is higher up the bay, and would be very convenient for a few ſhips; but as there is a flat of twelve feet, and that depth but very narrow, they would require to be properly lightened in order to get over it.

During the remainder of this voyage the latitudes and longitudes agreed perfectly with thoſe ſtated by Captains Cook and Furneaux, viz.

South Weſt Cape,
In latitude 43 deg. 37 min. ſouth.
In longitude 146 deg. 7 min. eaſt of Greenwich.
South Cape,
In latitude 43 deg. 42 min. ſouth.
In longitude 146 deg. 56 min. eaſt.
Taſmen's Hill,
In latitude 43 deg. 33 min. ſouth.
In longitude 147 deg. 28 min. eaſt.
Storm Bay,
In latitude 44 deg. 3 min. ſouth.
In longitude 146 deg. eaſt.
Swilly Iſland or Rock,
In latitude 43 deg. 55 min. ſouth.
In longitude 147 deg. 6 min. eaſt.
Adventure Bay,
In latitude 42 deg. 21 min. 20 ſec. ſouth.
In longitude 147 deg. 29 min. eaſt.

According to the niceſt obſervations were found,

Cape Howe,
In latitude 37 deg. 30 min. ſouth.
In longitude 150 deg. eaſt.
Red-Point,
(according to Captain Cook's determination)
In latitude 34 deg. 29 min. ſouth.

Captains Phillip, Hunter, and their company, proceeded along the coaſt to the northward; for as they did not think Botany Bay, which at preſent required much improvement, an advantageous ſpot for an infant ſettlement, they were ſtudious in ſeeking Broken Bay (as called by Captain Cook) with hopes of finding a more promiſing country and a better harbour. They ſpent two or three days in their ſearch, and giving the preference to this place, it ſeeming far ſuperior to any other round Botany Bay, the commodore was determined to make it the place of his reſidence, and thus reſolved they returned to their veſſels.

During Commodore Phillip's abſence, the Lieutenant Governor called together all the artificers among the convicts, and others, and commanded them to clear the ground, dig ſaw-pits, mark the places, and in ſhort perform every thing that was neceſſary in promoting their plan. The ſpot which had been fixed upon for the town, and which was undoubtedly the beſt to be found, was very poor and ſwampy, and indifferently ſupplied with water. As ſoon as the men began to work, the natives frequently, though cautiouſly, mixed with them; by degrees they became familiar, though ſtill they retained their ſhyneſs: when they ſaw ſome of the men hauling in the ſeine, they were greatly aſtoniſhed at the quantity of fiſh that was taken: joy was apparently mixed with their ſurpriſe; but as ſoon as the fiſh were taken out of the water, they endeavoured to ſeize it: this the officer of the boat prevented, which ſeemingly diſpleaſed them; he gave to each a part: for ſome time they did not reliſh this fair proceeding; but being at laſt convinced of its equity, were at length reconciled. After this they became pacific and good-natured, though each of them always carried ſome ſort of a weapon, ſometimes a ſtick with a ſhell at the end, other times a ſpear and long dart; ſeveral had curious manufactured ſhields, made of the bark of trees, and pointed with the bones of fiſh: with theſe they warded off, or turned their own weapons. They were terrified at the exploſion of the guns, and in conſequence thereof ſhunned the ſoldiers, or any perſon in a red coat, or other appearance of a military dreſs.

The natives of Botany Bay have been deſcribed by ſome as fooliſh and void of curioſity, but they appeared quite the contrary, being both lively and inquiſitive. The men are from five feet ſix inches to five feet nine inches high, exceedingly active, though ſmall in their limbs; thin, ſtraight, and well made: they paid extraordinary attention to the Engliſh dreſs, which created among them no little aſtoniſhment; they took the hat for a part of the head, and the cloaths for ſkins; they evince wonderful agility in throwing their weapons, which fly with the greateſt rapidity. Captain Hunter ſaw a ſtrong young man throw a lance full ninety yards; their lances are generally ten feet long. The men wear their beards, which like their hair is curly and ſhort; the women are not ſo tall or ſo thin as the men, but are in general well made; they are chiefly of a ſooty colour, ſome though are as light as a Mulatto. Their appearance is rather diſguſting, as they are in general filthy and dirty; they have broad noſes, wide mouths, and thick lips; their ſkin being of a greaſy nature, every kind of filth adheres to it: they never think of waſhing themſelves, for when they do go into the water it is either by accident or for the ſake of proviſion. They have ſome notion of ornaments, as the men thruſt a piece of bone or wood through their noſe, in conſequence of which their noſtrils are widened: they alſo paint their bodies; the moſt valiant have encircling ſtripes upon their breaſts and backs, which appear at a diſtance like croſs-belts; many have red and white ſtreaks all over their bodies, with an intent, it is ſuppoſed, to intimidate by their appearance; ſome have circles of white round their eyes; ſeveral a horizontal ſtreak acroſs their forehead; ſome narrow white ſtreaks round the body, with a broad line down the middle of the back and belly, and down each arm, thigh, and leg: theſe white ſtreaks upon a black ſkin appear exceedingly ghaſtly and frightful: the colours they uſe are red and white; the former is extracted from a kind of red earth which they have in great abundance, and the latter from a fine pipe-clay. The men ſcarify their bodies, chiefly their breaſts and ſhoulders, in performing which they raiſe the ſkin conſiderably. The women in general want the two lower joints of the little finger of the left hand; this defect (which is unaccountable) has been diſcovered in old women, young women who have had no children, and in girls about eight or nine years of age; however the fingers have been ſeen perfect in females of all ages: they are remarkable for good teeth; their hair is ſtrong, ſhort, and curly, and as they have no idea of keeping it clean, is always matted and naſty. Men, women, and children, go entirely naked.

When Captain Hunter, Mr. Bradley, and others, were taking a ſurvey of the harbour, a great number of the natives had aſſembled together, and on their attempting to land, in order to aſcertain a few angles, they appeared by their ſigns and menaces extremely hoſtile and outrageous, looking upon them, no doubt, as bold preſumptuous invaders; they collected additional forces from the woods, till at laſt their number was ſo increaſed, that the captain and lieutenant deemed it rather dangerous to attempt any acquaintance with them, particularly as they were inadequate in number, for there were no more with Captain Hunter than three officers and ten ſeamen, with only three muſkets among them: however in a few days after Captain Hunter came to the ſame place better prepared for an interview; only a few of the natives at this time appeared, and that at ſome diſtance; it was ſuppoſed that their parties were abſconding behind the woods, the captain endeavoured with ſigns expreſſive of good-nature and amability to court their friendſhip: having previouſly ſtationed two marine centinels on the Neck, in order to prevent a ſurpriſe. Some of the company being diſpoſed for food, a fire was made in a very convenient ſpot of ground which projected; this rouſed the curioſity of the natives, and ſeven of them being at length won by the kindly invitations of Captain Hunter, &c. embarked in canoes and came over; however being ſtill timid they ſtood at a diſtance: they laid by their lances, which encouraged Captain Hunter to approach them, and by holding up his hands to ſhew them he was unarmed, and offering them preſents, they became leſs diffident and ſhook hands. The mariners who were under arms by the boats intimidated them not a little, which Captain Hunter perceiving ordered them to ground them; this was ſufficient encouragement; the natives appeared very gay and friendly, ſat down among them, warmed themſelves by the fire, ate and drank of their proviſions, but they did not ſeem much to reliſh them.

Another time when Captain Hunter, Lieutenants Ball and King, Surgeon White, Mr. Dawes, &c. went on ſhore, they met about thirty natives, who afterwards encreaſed to about eighty, armed with lances and ſticks, but who, after ſome mutual ſigns and friendly geſtures, were quite tame and good-natured. Their leader, who appeared to be the moſt reſolute, ſtuck the end of his ſhield in the ſand, in order to ſhew them the uſe of it, though the company could not prevail upon him to throw his ſpear; whereupon Surgeon White fired a piſtol at it, the ball went through it; the leader and his party were greatly alarmed at the exploſion, and more ſurpriſed at ſeeing the hole which the ball had made in the ſhield; this ſeemed to increaſe their averſion to the Engliſh weapons. They became exceedingly noiſy afterwards, though far from quarrelſome, were much delighted with the preſents they received, but which in a ſhort time they forgot, having left them careleſly on the beach. A number of females was now perceived at ſome diſtance; they were concealed in the woods, and were peeping at intervals from their concealments, but as it was totally againſt the will of the men that they ſhould advance, who, as it appeared, were lords and maſters over them, and yet like good-natured huſbands, alarmed for their ſafety, they never once ventured to join the company. Captain Hunter, by ſigns, expreſſed a deſire to be introduced to them, but the men would not agree; it was then ſignified to them that they wanted to make the women preſents, which they very cunningly offered to take to them, ſtill unwilling that the females ſhould join them: however Captain Hunter, with a peremptory air, made them underſtand, that without they came themſelves to receive them, they ſhould not have any. A veteran now among the natives, who ſeemed the governor of the party, gave his permiſſion that they ſhould advance; the women immediately acquieſced with apparent joy and good-humour; but no ſooner was this permiſſion granted, than about twenty other ſtrange men attended them from the wood, armed with lances and ſhields, and painted according to the cuſtom of their warriors: theſe came, as it was imagined, to defend the women from any injury or inſult: having drawn themſelves up in a line on the beach, and that in a manner which indeed beſpoke much diſcipline and regularity: as a token of peace, if not provoked, each man held up a green bough in his hand. There were likewiſe two very ſtout armed men placed as centinels upon the rock, who, as they never quitted their ſtation till the interview was over, had orders, no doubt, to be particularly vigilant. The women expreſſed much ſatisfaction at this meeting, though their timidity at intervals was evident, for even when they laughed they trembled, as apprehenſive of ſome danger; they were extremely delighted with their preſents, and while Captain Hunter and his friends were decorating them out with rags, beads, &c. they laughed moſt immoderately: the women were in general young, being from eighteen to twenty-two or thereabouts.

At other times the natives have been ſo good-natured and familiar as to dance and ſing among the Engliſh, and to imitate their language and manners, while the Engliſh were imitating theirs: in ſhort, they appeared ſo docile, gentle, and pacific, that little doubt could be entertained of being able in due time to conciliate their friendſhip and confidence.

Theſe people have no idea of erecting or building any kind of place to ſhelter themſelves from rain and cold; they have no fixed habitation, but take their reſt wherever they can, and whenever they pleaſe. In times of rain and cold, they ſeek ſhelter in the hollow rocks upon the ſea ſhore, the cavities of which are crumbly and ſoft, eſpecially ſuch (and which on this occaſion are the moſt deſirable) that are not expoſed to the ſeverity of the weather: they generally make a fire in them before they lie down, which communicates ſuch an immenſe heat, that the rock contains the warmth for a conſiderable time; herein they ſleep together.

Sometimes may be ſeen in the woods, when the country is not very rocky, or the rocks not inviting, a kind of habitation formed of the bark of trees, which is ſo extenſive as to contain a whole family: this is generally their defence in winter, and as they lie very cloſe, they keep one another warm: but theſe hollow places in the trees were originally deſigned for hunting kanguroos, who always take refuge in them; and as the natives in purſuit make a fire at the bottom of the tree, while others climb to the top with ſticks ready for an attack, the animal, to avoid ſuffocation, runs out and generally becomes a prey: in this manner the natives employ themſelves and get their food: they ſometimes make ſuch large fires that the conflagration extends ſeveral miles; this occaſions a general diſturbance among the kanguroos, and accordingly ſeveral of them fall victims: but there is another reaſon aſſigned for their making theſe fires. The underwood or bruſh grows ſo rapidly in this country, that when the natives feel themſelves incommoded by ſuch an inconvenience (for as they are naked the underwood muſt certainly be very diſagreeable), this remedy is occaſionally adopted to clear thoſe places which they moſt frequent. The trees in the woods have been diſcovered entirely black, being ſo ſcorched with theſe fires: they likewiſe account for thoſe great ſmokes, which on the voyage have been ſeen at a diſtance.

The natives have frequently altercations among themſelves, and in all their quarrels with one another, they put themſelves under the direction of a commander, whom they chooſe in their own way; notwithſtanding which they aſſociate in tribes of many families together, although they diſperſe when in ſearch of food, but ſhortly aſſemble when there is any danger.

Their methods of kindling fire are doubtful. Some authors have declared that they produce fire with great facility, while others have obſerved that it was very laborious to them. No diſcovery could at preſent be made to aſcertain which account is more correct, but it is the general opinion that they keep fire conſtantly burning.

They chiefly ſubſiſt on what the ſea affords, and fiſh with ſpears or fiſh-gigs, which are ſomewhat longer than their war-lances. The women alſo are employed with lines and hooks; the former are manufactured from the bark of different trees, which are of a tough ſtringy nature; the latter from the talons of hawks, &c. or the inſide of different ſhells. The women undergo great dangers in the courſe of this employment, as they frequently venture in old ſhattered boats with two or three children with them, and enter the moſt terrific parts of the ſea: if the mother has an infant it lies acroſs her lap, and according to the manner ſhe ſits, it is there perfectly ſecure. The men very often lie acroſs the canoes with their faces in the water, as they have thus a better view of the fiſh, and having their fiſh-gigs prepared, are ready to ſtrike whenever they ſee any, ſeldom or ever miſſing their aim; they alſo dive for ſhell-fiſh.

They always broil their food, and ſome of each party are appointed for that employment: as ſoon as theſe perſons make ready a fire for cooking, they attend thoſe who are fiſhing; the divers who remain ſome time under water, throw what they catch upon the ſhore, which theſe perſons take away in order to dreſs. They have no idea of boiling fiſh, as appears from one of the natives having put his hand into a pot of boiling water, which one of the ſailors had put on the fire with fiſh in it, to take it out, and having ſcalded his hand, he was as much aſtoniſhed as he was hurt.

They have no notion of religion, nor do the ſun, moon, or ſtars attract their attention; they burn their dead, as has been teſtified by Captain Hunter, who when employed on the ſurvey of a diſtant branch of Port Jackſon, being informed by ſome of the boat's crew, that they perceived ſomething on a riſing ground which reſembled a new-made grave, had it immediately opened, and diſcovered a conſiderable quantity of white aſhes, with a piece of a ſcull and jaw-bone, which had not been entirely conſumed by the fire. This grave was no more than about ſix inches under ground; the earth which covered it was raiſed to an equal height; the captain had the aſhes, &c. reſtored to their place.

The natives are not to be frequently ſeen in March and April, nor could it be aſcertained where they retire. It was ſuppoſed that from Port Jackſon they proceeded farther to the north, following the ſun for the ſake of a warmer climate: the land affords but a ſcanty ſubſiſtence, and therefore the ſea-coaſt is the only part of the country which is moſt inhabited; the ſea is their principal reſource for ſupport. They ſometimes feed upon a fruit about the ſize of a cherry, yellow when half ripe, and black when full grown. The tree which produces it, is rather ſhort, but full and buſhy at the top; it taſtes ſomething like a fig. They alſo roaſt and chew the fern-root, and have frequently been ſeen accompanied by dogs of the wolf-kind, but of a reddiſh colour, which appeared as tame and good-natured to their maſters as ours.

What tho' unciviliz'd, theſe natives ſtray,
As full of glee to-morrow as to-day!
For all they do, for all they know or get,
For all they have, to nature they're in debt!
If then they wear the aſpect of a foe,
Why be amaz'd, for can they better know?
The wonder is, when they as friends appear,
And in ſuch friendſhips rival Chriſtians here!

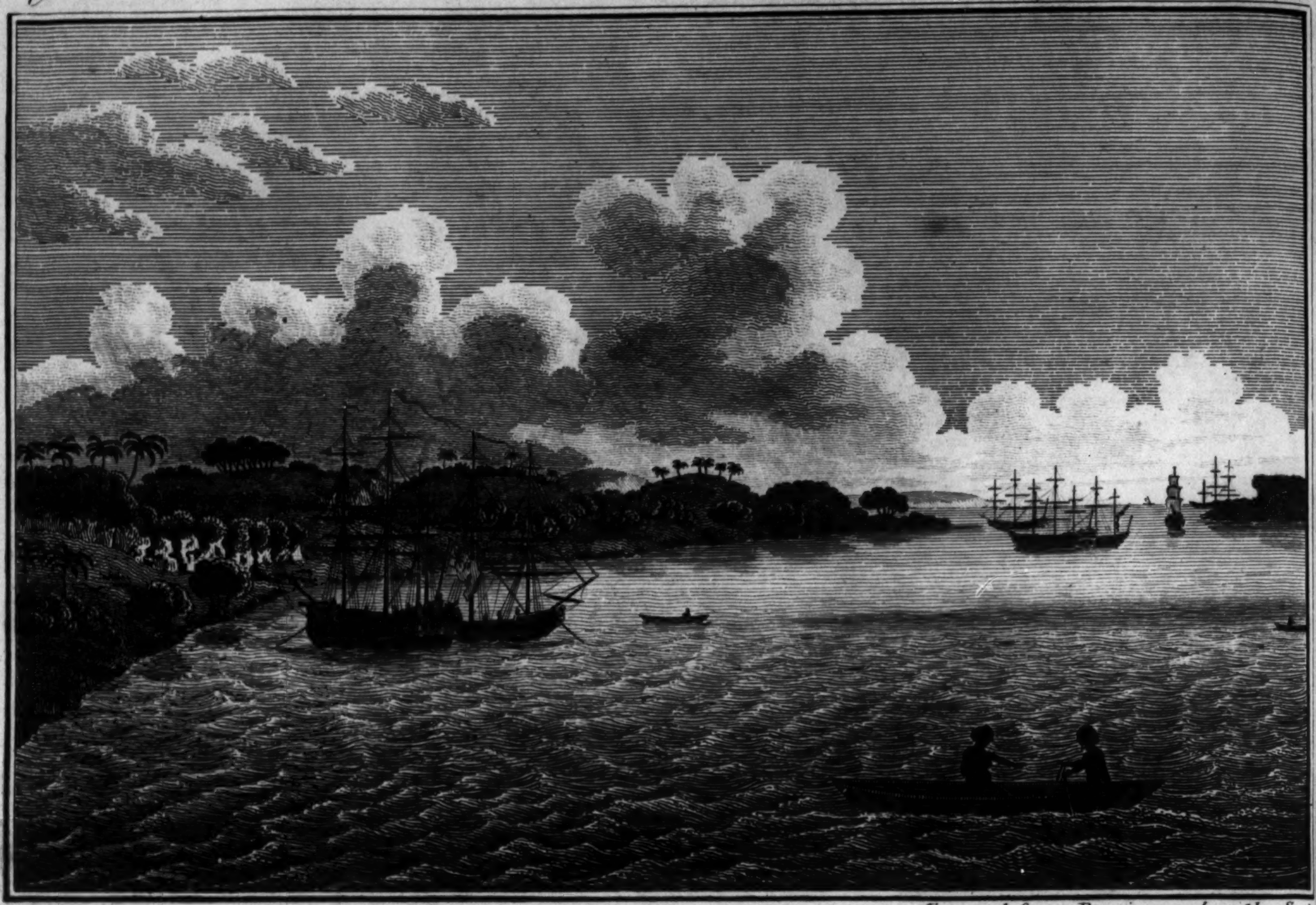
Having thus far deviated, in order to give a perfect and circumſtantial account of the inhabitants, it is now proper to take a retroſpect of the propoſals and plan of the new ſettlement, the progreſs and ſucceſs of which ſhall be the ſubject of the next chapter.

CHAP.

BRITISH 7 FE 90 MUSEUM

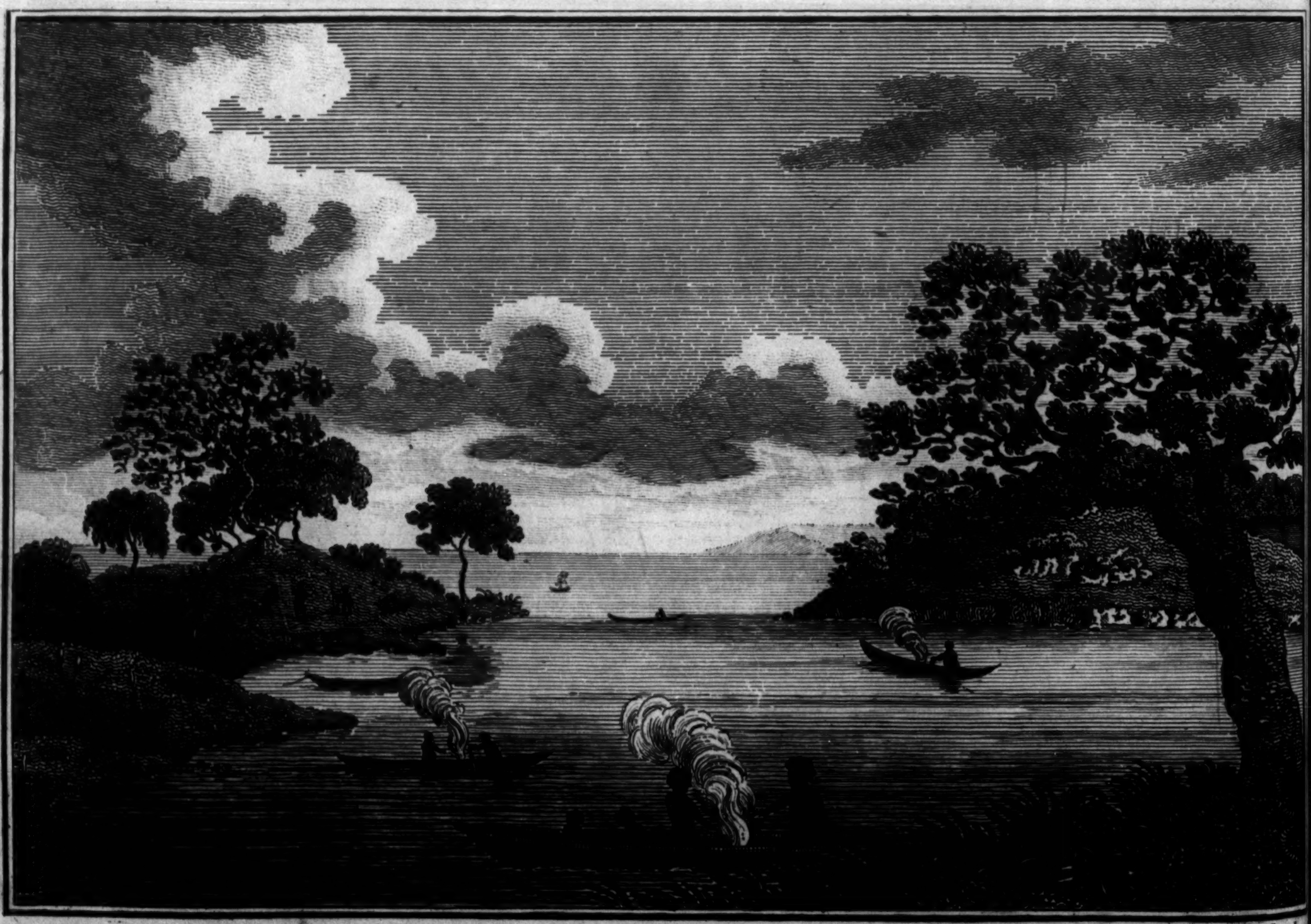
BRITISH 7 FE 90 MUSEUM

Engraved for PORTLOCK'S *New* COLLECTION *of* VOYAGES *&* TRAVELS.



Engraved from a Drawing made on the Spot.

View of BOTANY BAY, *in* NEW SOUTH WALES.



Engraved from a Drawing made on the Spot.

View in PORT JACKSON, NEW SOUTH WALES

Published by Alex^r. Hogg. March 1. 1794.

CHAPTER III.

Port Jackſon deemed the moſt eligible place for the new ſettlement—Two large French ſhips ſeen in diſtreſs—Commodore Phillip ſails for Port Jackſon—The French ſhips ſeen again—Captain Hunter ſends to their relief—An Account of them—Some of their Officers murdered by the Natives of Maſuna—Other Misfortunes—Sirius anchored at Port Jackſon—Deſcription of PORT JACKSON, *and* SIDNEY COVE *Harbours—Convenience of Sidney Cove Harbour—Reaſon why Captain Cook preferred Botany Bay—Engliſh colours diſplayed upon their general meeting—Preparations for building—Hoſpital Tents erected——The urgent occaſion for them—Vegetables ſown, but withered—Diſagreeable Weather—Conſequences of Thunder and Lightning—Storehouſes began—Some Convicts miſſed—Celebration of the New Government—Royal Commiſſion read—Act of Parliament—Patents under the Great Seal—Concluſion of the Ceremony—Governor's Speech to the Convicts—His Encouragement to Induſtry, Morality, &c.—His Menaces againſt Vice—Recommends Marriage—Acclamations—Happy Effects of the Speech—The Governor celebrates the day—A party go to Botany Bay—Intelligence of the Convicts who were miſſed—Firſt ſitting of the Criminal Court—Slow progreſs of the Buildings—Mr. King's appointment—He and a ſmall detachment are ſent to Norfolk Iſland, in the Supply—Deſign of this miſſion—Inſtructions to the Superintendant previous to his departure—Trials at the Criminal Court—An Execution—Pardons on certain Conditions, &c.*

AS Captain Phillip had given the preference to Port Jackſon, deeming it the moſt eligible place for forming the intended ſettlement, he was reſolved to remove there, when ſufficient water and graſs were provided for the live ſtock. During theſe preparations, two large ſhips with French colours were ſeen exerting their utmoſt to get into the bay; but their endeavours were fruitleſs, the wind being too ſtrong againſt them: on account of the hazineſs of the weather, the fleet loſt ſight of them.

January the 25th, the commodore, with a choſen number of ſeamen, went on board the Supply tender, to ſail for Port Jackſon. The convoy was again left to the care of Capt. Hunter, who when the weather permitted was to follow him with all the tranſports and victuallers. The next day the French ſhips were ſeen in the offing, ſtanding in for the bay: upon which Capt. Hunter ſent a boat out with an officer to aſſiſt them in coming in; and ſome ſhort time after, the wind becoming favourable, they found ſafe anchorage. Theſe ſhips were the Aſtrolabe and the Bouſſale, which ſailed from France in the year 1786, under the command of Meſſieurs de la Peyrouſe and De L'Angle. Captain Clonnard, the French commodore's captain, who commanded the Artois, that was taken by the Bienfaiſant, waited upon Captain Hunter, and informed him that they had unfortunately loſt at Maſuna, one of the Navigator's Iſles, Captain De L'Angle, the ſecond in command, and ten other officers, with two boats' crews, who were murdered by the natives, as vindictive as they were numerous. On this account they were induced to make for this port, with hopes to put in, and build ſome boats, which they had already in frames. The murderers, it ſeems, had, before that unfortunate day, been very friendly and familiar; but ſome miſunderſtanding having taken place between the natives and ſeamen, (from which ſide the inſult originated is unknown) a dreadful quarrel enſued, and the ſailors having before neglected keeping the boats afloat, the officers and crew were ſo expoſed to the ferocity of theſe people, and ſo ſuddenly attacked, that they muſt all have been inevitably ſacrificed, had not a ſmall boat at hand taken up thoſe who had quitted the ſhore and truſted themſelves to their ſwimming. During this terrible maſſacre, ſeveral of the natives fell, and ſeveral were wounded: the boats were loſt.. The aſſaults had been made with ſtones, which were thrown with extraordinary force and aim. Theſe veſſels had ſailed in June, 1785, from France. After touching the iſle of Santa Catherina, on the coaſt of Brazil, they had gone into the Pacific Ocean, by the extremity of South America; where they had run along by the coaſts of Chili and California. From thence they proceeded to Eaſter Iſland, Nootka Sound, Cook's River, Kamſchatka, Manilla, the Navigator's Iſles, Sandwich, and the Friendly Iſlands. They could not land at Norfolk Iſland on account of the ſurf, though they had anchored there. Beſides the accident above-mentioned, two boats' crews unfortunately periſhed in a ſurf on the north-weſt coaſt of America: none of their people had been loſt by ſickneſs. Monſieur Clonnard, on their firſt ſetting out, was the commodore's firſt lieutenant; but, in conſequence of their loſs, he was promoted.

The Sirius having worked out of the bay with the convoy, at ten o'clock weighed, and anchored in the evening in Port Jackſon. Some of the veſſels had been a little damaged, in running foul of each other in the working out: they were however ſoon aſſembled in Sidney Cove, ſo called by the governor.

Captain Cook had not viſited Port Jackſon; he only ſaw it from the coaſt, about the diſtance of two or three miles: there is no doubt, if he had explored the place, but he would have found it a harbour ſuperior to any ever yet diſcovered; it has ſoundings ſufficient for the largeſt ſhips, and ſpace enough to accommodate with ſafety any number: it gradually extends into a capacious, beautiful baſon, running chiefly in a weſtern direction, about thirteen miles into the country, containing upwards of a hundred ſmall coves, formed by narrow necks of land, which project in ſuch a manner as to ſhelter from all winds. Sidney Cove, which lies on the ſouth ſide of the harbour, between five and ſix miles from the entrance, being the ſmalleſt and the moſt convenient, (as veſſels, let them be ever ſo loaded, could eaſily get into it, and heave out cloſe to the ſhore) was therefore reckoned the beſt for building the town in: the ſoil about the rocks is good; in other parts of various qualities: between Botany Bay and Sidney Cove it is ſandy, and full of ſwamps.

It is not to be wondered at, why Botany Bay ſhould have been held in a more advantageous light by Captain Cook than by Captain Phillip: the former came with a ſmall veſſel, and only required temporary ſhelter and refreſhment for a few; but the latter had numbers to provide for, who alſo required a permanent ſituation. He was therefore obliged to ſeek a place where veſſels of magnitude could lie in ſecurity, and with eaſe approach the ſhore: for this reaſon Port Jackſon was found, upon examination, preferable. Captain Cook was ſtruck with the appearance of Botany Bay, which is indeed pictureſque and beautiful; but there was ſomething more eſſential to be ſought at this time than outward ſhow, a place fit for the immediate reception of exiled multitudes, who after they had eſtabliſhed a reſidence in the moſt convenient ſpot, might then extend their labours, and both improve and fertilize every adjacent iſland.

The Supply had arrived the day before the Sirius, when the commodore, and every perſon that could be ſpared, were buſily employed in clearing the ground for the encampment. Upon their general meeting, the Engliſh colours were diſplayed; when Governor Phillip, ſeveral officers and private men, drank his Majeſty's health, and ſucceſs to the government, at the foot of the flag-ſtaff.

On the 27th, every man was put to his employment; there was no loſs of time. Captain Phillip marked the places for the buildings, ſtorehouſes, &c. while proper overſeers were appointed to keep the convicts from ſtraggling, and to take ſuch into cuſtody as were wilfully retarding the buſineſs. Indeed, the neceſſary operations were more laborious then were at firſt imagined: it was as arduous a taſk to remove the trees, on account of their magnitude, as it was to fell them. The weather was indeed very favourable, but inclined to be warm. There had been a temporary habitation already formed in frame-work, with other materials, for the governor, brought from England: theſe were immediately landed, and put together as expeditiouſly as poſſible. A convenient place was ſoon formed for the cattle, which were accordingly landed: hoſpital-tents were likewiſe erected, and the neceſſity of them too ſoon diſcovered; for though the paſſage had been attended with little ſickneſs, and few deaths, yet after landing the ſcurvy and dyſentery raged with ſo much virulence, that in many inſtances the complaints proved fatal: what ſtill added to the affliction of the patients was, that on account of the inconveniences of the place little aſſiſtance could be given them. A piece of ground had been encloſed, for the purpoſe of raiſing vegetables; but this not being a proper ſeaſon for ſowing, they withered a little after they appeared.

Very diſagreeable weather began with the month of February: the rain was moſt remarkably heavy, and the thunder and lightning tremendous. On the 2d of the month ſome pigs and ſheep were killed by the lightning under a tree, where a place for their ſhelter had been erected, and the tree itſelf rent to pieces. A centinel, whoſe poſt was near another tree, adjoining the camp, was very much hurt by a flaſh of lightning.

On the 5th they began to erect ſtorehouſes. Some of the convicts were miſſed this morning: it was immediately ſuſpected that they returned to Botany Bay, in hopes of being taken on board the French ſhips, theſe veſſels being in great want of hands, on account of the loſſes they ſuſtained.

February 7th; this was the memorable day for eſtabliſhing the new government: all poſſible ſolemnity was therefore obſerved. A ſpace had been cleared, and every one aſſembled to hear the governor's commiſſion for eſtabliſhing a criminal court of judicature, admiralty-court, &c. &c. publicly read: for this purpoſe the military were drawn up, and under arms; the convicts placed apart by themſelves, while thoſe appointed for principal officers ſtood near the perſon of the governor. Mr. D. Collins, the judge-advocate, then read the royal commiſſion, ſetting forth “ that by this Arthur Phillip, Eſq; was conſtituted and appointed captain-general and governor in chief in and over the territory called New South Wales, extending from the northern cape, or extremity of the coaſt called Cape York, in the latitude of 10 deg. 37 min. ſouth, to the ſouthern extremity of the ſaid territory of New South Wales, or South Cape, in the latitude of 43 deg. 39 min. ſouth, and of all the country inland to the weſtward as far as the 135th deg. of eaſt longitude, reckoning from the meridian of Greenwich, including all the iſlands adjacent in the Pacific Ocean, within the latitudes aforeſaid of 10 deg. 37 min. ſouth, and 43 deg. 39 min. ſouth; and of all towns, garriſons, caſtles, forts, and all other fortifications or other military works, which may be hereafter erected upon the ſaid territory, or any of the ſaid iſlands." The act of parliament was next read for eſtabliſhing the courts of judicature; alſo the patents under the great ſeal, authoriſing proper perſons to aſſemble and hold ſaid courts whenever there was occaſion. The ceremony concluded with three volleys, by the troops under arms. Upon which Governor Phillip advancing, complimented the ſoldiers for their fidelity and good conduct, and then turning to the convicts, addreſſed them in words to the following tendency:

“ Let ſerious reflection, I requeſt, now point out
“ the happy advantages of your preſent ſituation.
“ Conſider, that the greater part of you have already
“ forfeited your lives to the juſtice of your country;
“ but, through the great lenity of its laws, you are
“ now ſo ſituated, that by induſtry and good behaviour
“ you may here regain thoſe advantages and
“ eſtimation in ſociety, of which you have lately
“ deprived yourſelves in your former habitation!
“ Now you have not only every encouragement to
“ atone for your paſt miſconduct, but are happily
“ removed from every temptation that may provoke
“ to guilt. In this infant ſettlement, there is little
“ that one man can plunder another of; and if any
“ perſon ſhould be ſo hardened, ſo preſumptuous,
“ as to be guilty of diſhoneſt attempts, the detection
“ muſt be as ſudden as infallible, in ſo ſmall a ſociety!
“ It is out of my power to promiſe the leaſt ſign of
“ mercy, to thoſe who may be ſo vilely vicious. I
“ cannot upon any account, under theſe circumſtances,
“ behave in the ſmalleſt degree favourable,
“ to ſuch who ſhould preſume to offend againſt the
“ peace and good order of the ſettlement. All that
“ mercy can do, you have already experienced; and
“ certainly no good can be expected from any, whom
“ neither paſt warnings, nor the peculiarities of their
“ preſent ſituation, can reſtrain from vice! I muſt
“ therefore aſſure ſuch offenders, that the rigour of
“ the law ſhall undoubtedly be put in force; while
“ every encouragement ſhall be given to all thoſe
“ whoſe behaviour and conduct promiſe reformation,
“ and every man be rewarded according to his deſert!
“ As there is no crime which promotes a general
“ profligacy of manners ſo much as an indiſcriminate
“ and illegal intercourſe between the ſexes,
“ ſuch therefore ſhall always meet with the utmoſt
“ ſeverity; and I requeſt that, to avoid a vice which
“ is every way injurious to ſociety, you will, whenever
“ opportunities offer, be ready and willing to enter
“ into the matrimonial ſtate; marriage is the great
“ forerunner of domeſtic happineſs and tranquillity.
“ Believe me, that I ſhall be ever proud and eager to
“ countenance and aſſiſt all thoſe who manifeſt their
“ willingneſs to conform to the laws of morality and
“ religion. Honeſty, obedience, and induſtry, will
“ no doubt render your ſituations comfortable and
“ tranquil; whereas a contrary line of conduct muſt
“ ſubject you to ignominy, diſgrace, and puniſhment!
“ It ſhall always be my unremitting care
“ and aſſiduity to promote, as much as poſſible, the
“ happineſs of all thoſe who are under this government,
“ and to render the ſettlement in New South
“ Wales both advantageous and honourable."

The governor's addreſs was heard with profound attention; and, when he concluded, the acclamations were general! The ſpeech had its deſired effect, for no leſs than fourteen marriages took place among the convicts, in the courſe of the ſucceeding nine days. Governor Phillip now went to review the troops on the ground, previouſly cleared for a parade: he afterwards gave a dinner to the officers, in celebration of the firſt day of his government.

The next day ſeveral of the gentlemen of the garriſon made a party to Botany Bay by land, to viſit the French officers. They were received with every mark of hoſpitality and politeneſs. The convicts who were miſſed at Port Jackſon had been (as it was now diſcovered) at Botany Bay: they were in hopes of getting away in the French ſhips; they offered themſelves upon any terms, but their ſervices were rejected; they were conſequently obliged to return, and were almoſt ſtarved to death, having delayed as long as poſſible to avoid the puniſhment they deſerved. A man, and a woman named Anne Smith, were never heard of. The French commodore had given his honour that he would not admit any of them on board his veſſels.

This day the criminal court ſat for the firſt time, conſiſting of the judge-advocate and ſix officers of his Majeſty's forces by land or ſea. There were ſeveral convicts tried for felony; ſome were acquitted, and ſome found guilty, who were puniſhed accordingly.

February 12th, very heavy rains began to fall; the people were of courſe anxious to erect their temporary ſhelters. The number of artificers being inadequate to the work, as only ſixteen carpenters could be hired from all the ſhips, and but twelve of the convicts were of that profeſſion, (the greater part of whom were indiſpoſed) it was impoſſible to complete either the barracks for the men, or the huts for the officers, agreeable to their wiſhes. Governor Phillip was ſtill obliged to remain in his temporary houſe of canvas, which was by no means full proof againſt rain and wind. It being the deſire of ſome of the officers, (whoſe preſence with the battalion prevented their attendance on the governor before) the commiſſions were read a ſecond time. Upon which the lieutenant-governor, and judge-advocate, were ſworn juſtices of the peace: to the office of ſuperintendant and commandant of Norfolk Iſland, and the ſettlement to be made upon it, governor Phillip appointed Philip Gidley King, Eſq; ſecond lieutenant of his Majeſty's ſhip Sirius, and one whom the commodore very much eſteemed.

February 14th, Lieut. King, and only a ſmall detachment, conſiſting of Mr. Cunningham, (maſter's mate) Mr. Jameſon, (ſurgeon's firſt mate of the Sirius) ſix marines, and a few male and female convicts, with two men who underſtood the cultivation and dreſſing of flax, were ſent out in the Supply to ſettle on a ſmall iſland to the N. W. of the New Zealand, which had no inhabitants, and was called by Capt. Cook (who firſt diſcovered and approved of it) Norfolk Iſland, in honour to the noble family of that title. They were furniſhed with ſtores and proviſions of every kind for ſix months, alſo with tools for cutting down the timber, which was the chief deſign of this miſſion: however the nature of this ſettlement will be much better comprehended by a peruſal of the inſtructions which were delivered to the ſuperintendant by the governor, previous to his departure, and which are as follow:

“ Inſtructions *for* Philip Gidley King, *Eſq; Superintendant and Commandant of the Settlement of* Norfolk Iſland.

“ With theſe inſtructions you will receive my commiſſion, appointing you to ſuperintend and command the ſettlement to be formed in Norfolk Iſland, and to obey all ſuch orders as you ſhall from time to time receive from me, his Majeſty's Governor in Chief, and Captain General of the territory of New South Wales and its dependencies, or from the Lieutenant-Governor in my abſence.

“ You are therefore to proceed in his Majeſty's armed tender Supply, whoſe commander has my orders to receive you, with the men and women, ſtores and proviſions neceſſary for forming the intended ſettlement; and on your landing on Norfolk Iſland you are to take upon you the execution of the truſt repoſed in you, cauſing my commiſſion, appointing you ſuperintendant over the ſaid ſettlement, to be publicly read.

“ After having taken the neceſſary meaſures for ſecuring yourſelf and people, and for the preſervation of the ſtores and proviſions, you are immediately to proceed to the cultivation of the flax plant, which you will find growing ſpontaneouſly on the iſland: as likewiſe to the cultivation of cotton, corn, and other plants, with the ſeeds of which you are furniſhed, and which you are to regard as public ſtock, and of the increaſe of which you are to ſend me an account, that I may know what quantity may be drawn from the iſland for public uſe, or what ſupplies it may be neceſſary to ſend hereafter. It is left to your diſcretion to uſe ſuch part of the corn that is raiſed as may be found neceſſary; but this you are to do with the greateſt œconomy; and as the corn, flax, cotton, and other grains are the property of the Crown, and as ſuch are to be accounted for, you are to keep an exact account of the increaſe, and you will in future receive directions for the diſpoſal thereof.

“ You are to inform yourſelf of the nature of the ſoil, what proportion of land you find proper for the cultivation of corn, flax, and cotton, as likewiſe what quantity of cattle may be bred on the iſland, and the number of people you judge neceſſary for the above purpoſe. You will likewiſe obſerve what are the prevailing winds in the different ſeaſons of the year, the beſt anchorage according to the ſeaſon, the riſe and fall of the tides, likewiſe when the dry and rainy ſeaſons begin and end.

“ You will be furniſhed with a four-oared boat, and you are not on any conſideration to build, or to permit the building of any veſſel or boat whatever that is decked; or of any boat or veſſel that is not decked, whoſe length of keel exceeds twenty feet: and if by any accident any veſſel or boat that exceeds twenty feet keel ſhould be driven on the iſland, you are immediately to cauſe ſuch boat or veſſel to be ſcuttled, or otherwiſe rendered unſerviceable, letting her remain in that ſituation until you receive further directions from me.

“ You will be furniſhed with ſix months proviſions, within which time you will receive an additional ſupply, but as you will be able to procure fiſh and vegetables, you are to endeavour to make the proviſions you receive ſerve as long as poſſible.

“ The convicts being the ſervants of the Crown, till the time for which they are ſentenced is expired, their labour is to be for the public; and you are to take particular notice of their general good or bad behaviour, that they may hereafter be employed or rewarded according to their different merits.

“ You are to cauſe the Prayers of the Church of England to be read with all due ſolemnity every Sunday, and you are to inforce a due obſervance of religion and good order, tranſmitting to me, as often as opportunity offers, a full account of your particular ſituation and tranſactions.

“ You are not to permit any intercourſe or trade with any ſhips or veſſels that may ſtop at the iſland, whether Engliſh or of any other nation, unleſs ſuch ſhips or veſſels ſhould be in diſtreſs, in which caſe you are to afford them ſuch aſſiſtance as may be in your power.

“ Given under my hand, at Head Quarters in
Port Jackſon, New South Wales, this 12th
day of February, 1788.

(Signed)

“ARTHUR PHILLIP.”

February 27, 28, and 29. Theſe days were chiefly taken up with trials at the criminal court. The governor found with much regret, though with little ſurpriſe, that it was particularly eſſential to adhere to juſtice, and enforce the penal laws, for the preſervation of the community committed to his care. Thomas Barrett, Henry Lovel, and Joſeph Hall were indicted for feloniouſly and fraudulently taking away from the public ſtore, beef and peas, the property of the crown: they were found guilty upon the cleareſt evidence, and having received ſentence of death, were taken to the place of execution about ſix o'clock the ſame evening: the Rev. Mr. Johnſon attended, to whom Barrett confeſſed his guilt, and acknowledged that he long ago deſerved the ignominious death which he was now about to ſuffer: he was launched into eternity, but Lovel and Hall were reſpited until ſix o'clock the next evening, at which time they were in like manner brought to the fatal tree, where the governor ſent them by the judge-advocate their pardon, on condition that they ſhould be baniſhed to ſome deſert iſland. Daniel Gordon and John Williams, both blacks, were found guilty of ſtealing wine, the property of Mr. Clarke; the Court recommended Williams on account of his ignorance and youth to mercy, accordingly he received the governor's pardon: Gordon had his ſentence of death changed to baniſhment, when he accompanied Lovel and Hall to the gallows. John Freeman, a convict, was found guilty of ſtealing ſeven pounds of flour from another convict: when according to his ſentence he was at the tree, with the rope about his neck, he was offered a reprieve on condition that he would become hangman, and perform all the neceſſary duties of common executioner during his ſtay in the country. It was ſome time before he could be prevailed upon to accept this pardon; at laſt he conſented, but with extreme reluctance. His accomplice William Sheerman was ſentenced to be whipped, and received three hundred laſhes.

CHAPTER IV.

Weather in March—The Governor explores Broken Bay—Some Account thereof—Meetings with the Natives—One of the Females falls in love with the Governor's great coat—Her cheerfulneſs—Account of an Old Man and a Youth—Their Civility—The Old Man's theft—Governor's diſpleaſure—The Native's valour—Account of the Timber—Departure of the French Ships—Death of Father Le Receveur—Inſcription over his Grave—Lieutenant Ball arrived from Norfolk Iſland—Lord Howe's Iſland—Remarkable Turtle—Deſcription of Norfolk Iſland—Salubrity of the Climate—Three Tranſports diſcharged—The Governor's firſt Excurſion in April to explore the Country—His ſecond—Succeſs thereof—Curſory Remarks.

THE month of March introduced very diſagreeable weather, which continued variable throughout; there were frequently ſtrong gales from the ſouthward and ſouth-eaſt, moiſt and hazy weather with a very high ſea; both mornings and evenings inclined to be cold; the thermometer from 60 deg. to 75 deg. On the 2nd inſtant the governor went with a long-boat and cutter to explore the broken land, called by Captain Cook Broken Bay, about eight miles to the northward of Port Jackſon, and remarkable for its extent.

The natives being very numerous here, though friendly-inclined, the governor deemed it adviſeable the firſt night to repoſe in the boats which lay within a rocky point in the north-weſt part of the bay. The next morning they paſſed a bar, which had only water for ſmall veſſels, and entered a very capacious branch, from which the ebb-tide flowed with ſuch vehemence, that the boats could not poſſibly reſiſt the ſtream. In this place the water was remarkable for depth. Not having leiſure to ſeek a channel for the boats among banks of ſand and mud, this place of courſe was not ſo ſufficiently examined as to admit of a minute deſcription: the land in the upper part of this branch was ſwampy and low, it was the reſort of ſeveral birds, particularly one of an uncommon kind, called the hooded gull. From the north-weſt branch, they proceeded to the ſouth-weſt, having croſſed the bay; the entrance thereof is bold, and affords good ſhelter for ſhipping: the ſoundings are ſeven fathom, which increaſed upon their proceeding, ſo that there is plenty of water for heavy veſſels. There were large trees on the tops of the mountains: the land was higher than that at Port Jackſon; equally covered with timber, but more rocky: there is excellent water near the ſouthern entrance into the bay, to which the commodore accordingly gave the name of Pitt Water. Continual rains prevented a ſtricter ſearch. During this excurſion they had ſeveral meetings with the natives. One of the females fell in love with the governor's great coat, and practiſed every artful means to induce him to give it to her; ſhe danced, played, wept, and immediately after laughed. Being however appeaſed, ſhe became exceedingly cheerful and loquacious; frequently joined their party, and ſung for them in a manner not unpleaſing. The male natives were very friendly, and conſtantly aſſiſted in lighting the fires.

On account of the heavy ſqualls of wind and inceſſant rains, there was great difficulty in getting round the headland which ſeparates the branches, on viſiting the ſouthern branch of Broken Bay. An ineffectual attempt was made to land, there not being water ſufficient for the boat: on endeavouring to approach the rocks, two natives, an old man and a youth, who were ſtanding thereon, perceiving how anxiouſly the Engliſh were labouring to get under land, pointed out with much ſolicitude the deepeſt water: they afterwards brought them fire, and were deſirous to ſerve them. The old man conducted two of the officers to a diſtant cave, but they did not venture to go in, notwithſtanding all the intreaties and perſuaſions which the old man expreſſed by ſigns; this was afterwards regretted, as they found next day that the cave was large enough to contain their party, and would have been a comfortable ſhelter from the rain; this friendly old native was rewarded with preſents: in a day or two after this old man, his ſon, and other natives came to dance and ſing. His excellency gave them preſents as uſual; but in the evening a ſpade was miſſed, and the governor having found it in the poſſeſſion of this old man, thought proper to ſhow ſome marks of his diſpleaſure on account of the theft; accordingly, pointing to the ſpade, he gave him a few trifling ſlaps, and puſhed him away with indignation; the offender immediately ſeized a ſpear, and advancing towards the governor, threatened revenge; but finding his menaces diſregarded, he threw it down and departed: at this time there were ſeveral officers and men with the governor, ſo that the bravery of this aged native was remarkable. He appeared with the reſt of the natives the next day, but in order to convince him of his error, he was leſs noticed than his companions.

March 9th. Having now explored the country as much as the weather would permit, Governor Phillip returned from Broken Bay to Port Jackſon. It was his intention to return by land for the ſake of ſeeking a part of the country which was free from timber, but the conſtant rain rendered his deſign at preſent impracticable.

The chief employments now going on were erecting ſtore-houſes and huts of cabbage-trees for the men; theſe buildings were very much retarded for the want of good timber, for though all the trees were as remarkable for their circumference as their ſize, yet they are ſo crooked, ſo rotten and broken, that very few could be found of any ſervice; indeed it appeared fit for nothing elſe than fire-wood, for which it was excellent, as it kindled inſtantaneouſly. The appearance of theſe trees is very deceitful, as they might be ſuppoſed fit for any uſe whatever, yet, what is very extraordinary, not a piece thereof, though cut ever ſo thin and ever ſo well dried, will float in water: it is of ſuch a heavy nature, without being truly ſolid, that the water inſtantly penetrates, with which and its own natural weight, it ſinks to the bottom like a ſtone, immediately on immerſion. Though this country is deficient in timber, it amply repays in ſtone, which is moſt excellent for building; but unfortunately no kind of mortar can as yet be found to unite it. All the lime that could be poſſibly extracted from ſhells was procured for the intended reſidence of the governor, but it was very inſufficient towards the completion thereof.

March 10th. The French ſhips ſailed from Botany Bay. Count De la Peyrouſe had completed two long-boats, and the French being as buſily employed as the Engliſh, of courſe there was little intercourſe between them. Thoſe veſſels returned towards the north, where they were to make another voyage. During their ſtay in Botany Bay Father Le Receveur died; this French Abbé had come out as a naturaliſt in the Aſtrolabe; the wounds which he received during the unfortunate rencounter at the Navigator's Iſlands were the cauſe of his untimely diſſolution: his grave was but humble, a common head-ſtone was lightly ſtuck into the looſe earth which covered it. There was a board nailed againſt a tree adjoining to it with the following inſcription:

Hic jacet Le Receveur,
E. F. F. Minimis Galliæ Sacerdos,
Phyſicus in circumnavigatione
Mundi,
Duce De la Peyrouſe,
Ob. 17th Feb. 1788.

As the painting on this board was either waſhed away by the rain, or deſtroyed by the natives, the inſcription was, with ſome alterations, engraved on a piece of copper, and affixed to the ſame tree by the governor's command, whoſe intention it alſo was to ſubſtitute a handſome head-ſtone on a future day.

March 19th. Lieutenant Ball arrived in the Supply tender from Norfolk Iſland, which he made on the 29th of the preceding month with great difficulty and danger. He was about five days off the coaſt before he could diſcover a place where he could poſſibly land the ſtores; ſo great and manifold was the violence of the ſurf and the rocks of the ſhore, which almoſt ſurround the iſland. In this paſſage was diſcovered an unknown iſland in lat. 31 deg. 36 min. ſouth, and in long. 39 deg. 4 min. eaſt, which was named Lord Howe's Iſland by Lieutenant Ball; it is about twenty miles in circumference, and very barren. The lieutenant would have ſtopped at this port, but found the landing as difficult as at Norfolk Iſland. In his return to Port Jackſon he examined it more particularly; he found anchorage at the weſt ſide, but the bottom was coral rock: there was an abundance of turtle upon a ſandy beach; eighteen of which (the ſmalleſt not weighing leſs than 150 lb.) he brought with him, and they were highly acceptable to the ſick people in the hoſpital.

Norfolk Iſland is about ſeven leagues in circumference: it is one entire wood, overſpread with pines, the moſt remarkable for ſtraightneſs, ſize and grandeur. There being a great quantity of ſcattered pumice ſtone mixed with the earth, there is ſome reaſon to imagine that the iſland was originally formed by the eruption of volcanic matter from the bed of the ſea. Near the middle of this iſland there is a ſmall mountain, named by the commandant Mount Pitt, whence a copious ſtream flows through a very delightful valley, which makes ſeveral diviſions, each of which retains ſufficient force for the purpoſe of turning mills: beſides this, there are many other ſprings of excellent clear water. The conſtancy of breezes from the ſea moderates the natural heat of the climate: ſo that by ſuch temperature it is pure and ſalubrious. Nothing can thrive ſo well as vegetables here, one crop always ſucceeding another: the leaves of the trees are ſo good, that they are an excellent ſubſtitute for graſs, being equally as well reliſhed by the ſheep, hogs, goats, &c. and on which they both thrive and fatten.

Nature, uncourted, more than generous ſeems;
Witneſs the ſtately pines—the purling ſtreams;
The air ſalubrious, and the noble ſoil,
Which amply compenſates the ſower's toil:
Now bounteous heaven ſends refreſhing rain,
From time to time its verdure to maintain:
And tho' no graſs adorns the fertile ground,
The leaves of trees as good as graſs are found.
Here vegetation flouriſhes indeed!
Crops after crops alternately ſucceed.
Bleſt clime! whoſe ſun keeps off the zephyrs rude:
Whoſe heats by conſtant breezes are ſubdu'd!
Such thy mild temperature throughout the year,
That every winter ſummer doth appear.

March 25th, the Scarborough, Lady Penrhyn, and Charlotte, tranſports, were diſcharged from government ſervice, being previouſly cleared of all their ſtores: they were left to their commanders free-will, who were about to depart for China in order to load home for tea, being ſo appointed by the Eaſt-India Company.

The month of April was much the ſame as that of March in reſpect to weather, which ſtill continued variable. The mornings were cloudy, and the rain generally fell at night, with ſoutherly and ſouth-eaſt winds; but when the wind changed to the weſtward or north-weſt, it was then fair and pleaſant; when calm, it was very hot in the middle of the day, but the mornings and evenings were cold. Thermometer from 68 deg. to 72 min.

The chief events of this month were two excurſions, which were made by Governor Phillip for the purpoſe of exploring the country. The firſt was on the 15th, when his Excellency, attended by Lieutenants Ball, George Johnſton, the judge-advocate, Surgeon White, three ſoldiers, and two ſeamen, ſet out with proviſions for four days, and landed at the head of Small Cove, called Shell Cove, near the entrance of the harbour on the north ſide: they arrived to a large lake, ſurrounded by extenſive bogs and marſhes, which rendered the examination thereof exceedingly laborious: but as the governor was deſirous to acquire all the knowledge of the place that he poſſibly could, they were frequently up to their waiſts in water. On this lake they perceived a black ſwan of a very handſome kind, larger than a common one, and formed as beautiful. Being obliged to deſiſt from their deſign, they proceeded a mile or two northward along to the ſea-ſhore: they then fell in with a ſmall ſalt-water lagoon; after rounding which, and proceeding four or five miles weſtward, they paſſed a ſwamp, and arrived to an immenſe wood, which diſplayed a variety of large high trees, which were at a conſiderable diſtance from each other. Though there was ſome appearance of meadow land here, the ſoil was far from being good: the graſs, which was of a ſour nature, grew together in thick buſhes. In this place, by the governor's orders, they pitched their tents adjoining a ſwamp, for the ſake of being occaſionally ſupplied with water, which was far from being good or clear. A large fire was kept before the tents, as it was very cold, and there was a heavy dew: during the night they were very much teazed with muſkitoes, which were no doubt allured there by the fires. The next day they proceeded many miles inland towards the weſt: they here diſcovered an attempt at ſculpture by the natives, having found ſeveral large ſtones with various figures cut thereon, conſiſting of repreſentations of themſelves in different poſtures, fiſhes, ainmals, animals, &c. Much ingenuity appeared in theſe likeneſſes, eſpecially when proper allowance was made for the deficiency of tools. They walked ſeveral miles, and in the evening fell in with the north-weſt branch of Port Jackſon harbour. The ſeamen were ſo fatigued, eſpecially as their ſhoes were very bad, that they could proceed no further: they returned, therefore, with Lieut. Ball and a marine, to the ſhips, being ſupplied with a competency of proviſions by the governor: the reſt purſued their journey weſtward by the water-ſide, in hopes of ſoon finding better land; but were obliged in the evening to pitch their tents in a moſt melancholy deſert place, near a ſteep valley, where there was a freſh water ſtream: here they waſhed their ſhirts and ſtockings, dreſſed their proviſions, and refreſhed themſelves.

The next morning, April 17th, they put by their tents and remaining proviſions, being now reduced to a ſmall quantity of rum and bread, and proceeded weſtward about fourteen miles into the country, in ſearch of land that had better water, but without ſucceſs: under ſuch circumſtances they deemed it prudent to return to their tents in time, which they removed a little further down to the flowing of the ſtream. It rained this evening very heavily, which was attended with much thunder and lightning.

April 18th, early in the morning, they renewed their journey; proceeding down the river, they were obliged to climb prodigious heights, and wade through ſeveral tides, which rendered this day's march exceedingly laborious. After being very much ſpent and fatigued, they were agreeably ſurpriſed with the ſight of two boats, which Captain Hunter had ſent out to meet them, and by whom they were informed that the ſeamen (who had been obliged through fatigue to return with Lieut. Ball) had arrived ſafe at the ſhip the day after they left them. The governor's ſteward had ſent proviſions, which was very acceptable: they went on board the boats, and rowed down the river till they reached a little cove, where they dined with no little ſatisfaction; after which they embarked again, and about ſix o'clock in the evening were in Sydney Cove.

During this excurſion, the country was found barren and rocky: there were ſo many obſtacles on the hills, that both aſcending and deſcending were difficult, and in many places impracticable. When about fifteen miles diſtant from the ſea-coaſt, there was an excellent view of the inland country and its mountains, ſeveral of which at this time received their names from the governor; the moſt northern he called Carmarthen hills, the moſt ſouthern Lanſdown hills, and one which lay between theſe Richmond hill.

Another excurſion took place on the 22d of this month. The ſame party, with the addition of Lieutenant Creſſwell and ſix privates, landed in the morning at the head of the harbour, with proviſions for ſeven days, intending to examine the country weſtward: they were now equipped much better than before, having ſpare ſhoes, trowſers, ſhirts, &c. Every man carried his own allowance: the ſoldiers, in addition to theirs, carried two tents with the poles, a camp kettle, &c. They had alſo a ſmall hand hatchet, for the purpoſe of marking the trees as they went along, that they might be a direction for their return. It ſeemed a good country at the firſt ſetting out, but they ſhortly arrived at a very cloſe cover, which after long endeavouring to paſs through, they were obliged to leave, lamenting their fruitleſs attempt. They pitched their tents near ſome ſtagnant water: during the night it thundered, lightened, and rained. The governor, who had not perfectly recovered from the fatigue of his laſt expedition, was ſuddenly ſeized in the night with violent pains in his ſide and loins: he was much better in the morning, and the day being remarkably fine, would not be diſſuaded from purſuing his intentions. By keeping cloſe to the banks of a ſmall creek for about four miles, they were at length able to paſs the cover. After which they fell in with a branch of Port Jackſon, which had not been diſcovered till then; on the bank of which there was very excellent graſs, and here and there ſome plants, which reſembled the indigo. They proceeded along this branch weſtward for ſome miles, till at laſt they arrived to a freſh water ſtream: here they encamped; and Capt. White having ſhot a white cockatoo, and two crows, they made a kettle of ſoup, which they thought exceeding good. It thundered, lightened, and rained, as it did the night before. The country hitherto examined was delightful; ſometimes riſing in ſmall hills, which added much to its beauty: the ſoil was excellent; the trees, which were immenſely large, were about twenty to forty feet diſtance from each other, diſencumbered with underwood, which is ſo common in the rocky places.

April 24th, they proceeded to trace the river, and diſcovered a quarry of ſlates, which afterwards proved unfit for uſe: they were induced, through the apprehenſion of rain, to pitch their tents about four in the afternoon, having previouſly ſhot a couple of crows, and ſome loraquets: their ducks being picked, they ſtuffed them with ſmall ſlices of ſalt beef, and roaſted them, than which nothing could eat better. The evening having cleared up, this night proved dry. An unaccountable noiſe, reſembling the human voice, was frequently heard, but whence it proceeded could not be diſcovered. This country was by no means ſo excellent as that already paſſed, nor was the water ſo abundant and clear, though it was far from being bad. The next day they ſowed ſome ſeeds, and then proceeded about four miles weſt: here they found an humble hut, which evidently belonged to ſome of the natives, though it appeared to be a long time uninhabited: at a little diſtance from this, there were three others, deſerted in like manner. A tree was alſo diſcovered burning, which Lieut. Ball imagined to have been ſet on fire by lightning, as there was not the leaſt ſign of a native being at preſent in the place: there were three kanguroos near this burning tree. The company, though much tired, ſtill went on about two miles further, in hopes of meeting with good water; but herein diſappointed, they were obliged to encamp about four o'clock near a ſtagnant pool, where the ground was ſo exceedingly parched and dry, on account of the continual fires in this country, and the extreme heat of the weather, that it was with the greateſt difficulty they could thruſt the poles or drive the tent-pegs into it. A number of beautiful loraquets and paroquets frequented the trees hereabouts, on account of the height of which the guns could not reach them. Theſe birds made ſuch a chattering noiſe, that it was almoſt impoſſible to hear one another ſpeak.

April 26th, they proceeded this morning ſtill weſtward, and met another tree on fire, which, and the appearance of others which had been burned, led them now to imagine that it was done by ſome unperceived natives for the purpoſe of enſnaring the kanguroos. They croſſed a water-courſe, and having aſcended a very pleaſant eminence, where there were no trees to incommode the proſpect, Carmarthen and Lanſdown hills were plain to the view. The country round this hill was ſo delightful, that it was called by the governor Belle Veüe; in a valley beneath which was perceived a fire, with ſome ſcraps of a ſalt root, ſufficient proof that ſome of the natives had been there lately: from this they croſſed another water-courſe, and aſcended another hill, but from whence nothing could be ſeen, on account of the thickneſs of the ſurrounding wood.

The proviſions being nearly exhauſted, it was deemed adviſeable to return, though much againſt the inclination of the company, who would fain have reached the oppoſite hills, had they been ſufficiently ſupplied with ſtores. By the marks which had been made on the trees, they were ſafely guided on their way back. As they were returning they ſaw a hollow tree on fire, out of which the ſmoke aſcended as through a chimney, and which proved upon near examination to have been ſet on fire by the natives, there being ſeveral combuſtibles diſcovered. Having ſhot two crows (according to cuſtom) and ſome loraquets, they pitched their tents in the evening, and made a comfortable ſupper; this night was clear and fine, and the ſame unaccountable voice, which was heard before, was now repeated, which, as well as the ear could diſtinguiſh, proceeded from the ſame ſpot.

April 27th. As the ſtores were juſt ſpent, they hurried back as faſt as poſſible, it being rather a diſagreeable ſituation in caſe of miſſing the right path; but by the marked trees they were ſafely conducted back. The utmoſt extent of this excurſion, upon a direct line, was not more than thirty-three miles, though there had been five days ſpent upon it. On the way they perceived the dung of an animal as large as that of a horſe, but more like that of a hog intermixed with graſs. As the night was faſt approaching, the governor was apprehenſive that the boats, which he ordered to attend daily, might be returning for that day before he could reach them. Lieutenants Johnſon and Creſwell, with a marine, were therefore ordered to go a-head, and ſecure whatever proviſions were ſent up; alſo to command the boats to be out early the next morning: theſe gentlemen had very fortunately reached the place in time; they returned with a ſeaſonable ſupply of proviſions to thoſe they left behind, and the parties being re-united, they encamped about a mile's diſtance from the place where the boats were to meet them. The governor before this having got a fall into a pit, which had been concealed by long graſs, was again indiſpoſed, and had a relapſe of his former complaint. In the evening they returned to Sydney Cove.

As the governor's indiſpoſition ſtill continued, (for his complaint was very much increaſed by this laſt journey) he deemed it abſolutely neceſſary to allow himſelf the reſpite of a few days before he encountered ſo much fatigue again; for as it was the wiſh of every one to ſeek a river, the diſcovery of which was ſo important, another expedition had been already planned with a view, if poſſible, to reach either Lanſdown or Carmarthen hills.

When they had returned from this laſt excurſion, the governor was very much diſpleaſed to find, that five ewes and a lamb had been killed during his abſence, very near the camp and in the middle of the day; live ſtock being at this time very precious, the loſs of any was therefore a very ſerious conſequence: the cauſe of this misfortune was unknown; it was conjectured that ſome dogs belonging to the natives had been the occaſion; others attributed it, but without ſo much reaſon, to the natives themſelves. The live ſtock at preſent conſiſted of 87 chickens, 122 fowls, 35 ducks, 29 geeſe, 18 turkies, 5 rabbits, 25 pigs, 49 hogs, 19 goats, 29 ſheep, 5 cows, 2 bulls, 3 colts, 3 mares, and one ſtallion.

CHAPTER V.

Weather in May—Thefts puniſhed—James Bennet executed for robbery—Departure of the three Tranſports—One of the Natives ſhaved—Small quantity of Vegetables ſown—Foundation Stone laid of the Commodore's private Houſe—Inſcription for the Wall—William Ayres and Peter Burn attacked by the Natives—Diſappointment of Turtle—Two puniſhed for an aſſault—Meeting with an old man and a girl—William Okey and Samuel Davis murdered by the Natives—Governor's Concern—Determination—Search for the Murderers—Deſpair of ſucceeding—Interview with a number of Natives—Their Tokens of Anger—Confidence and Friendſhip—Governor's Behaviour—Parting between the Engliſh and Natives—Reaſon for ſuppoſing Landſdown Hills inhabited—Freſh accounts of the late Affray—A Native murdered—Several wounded—Proclamation—A ſevere Loſs attending the Live Stock.

THE beginning of May was attended with much bad weather; ſtrong gales from ſouth to ſouth-eaſt, generally attended with rain in the night: the middle of the month was fair and ſettled for ſeveral days together, with a regular land and ſea-wind. About the cloſe of the month the wind prevailed between S. W. and S. E. the weather being then unſettled, and frequent ſhowers of rain, which generally fell in the night: there was but little wind or warm weather in the day-time. The thermometer from 56 deg. to 67 deg.

May 1ſt. Several trifling thefts were brought before the criminal court, and thoſe who were found guilty ſentenced to receive corporeal puniſhment. James Bennet, a young man but an old offender, was executed for robbing a tent belonging to the Charlotte tranſport of ſugar, and other articles. At the tree he made a confeſſion of his guilt, and acknowledged other crimes.

The three tranſports, Lady Penrhyn, Charlotte, and the Scarborough, which were bound to China, ſailed May 5th, 6th, and 8th. On the 6th the Supply tender ſailed to Lord Howe's Iſland for ſome turtle, in order to make ſoup for ſeveral who were ſorely afflicted with the ſcurvy; there being at this time upwards of two hundred, who were ſo bad that they could not be employed.

Several of the natives came along-ſide the Sirius, and by ſigns expreſſed a deſire to have their beards taken off. One of them, with the greateſt patience, and without the leaſt apprehenſion, ſuffered the ſhip's barber to ſhave him, and ſeemed very much delighted during the operation.

As the clearing of the ground was not only attended with much time but great difficulty, it was impoſſible to pay any extraordinary attention to vegetables; at preſent no more than about eight or ten acres with wheat and barley were ſown: the Lieutenant-Governor and others had previouſly made uſe of ſome ground for the ſupport of their own live ſtock, in the labour of which they were occaſionally aſſiſted by the convicts, according to the governor's command. The foundation-ſtone of a private houſe for the commodore was laid, and a plate of copper with the following inſcription upon it, was intended to be placed in the wall:

"ARTHUR PHILLIP, Eſq.
Captain-General in and over his Majeſty's Territory
of New South Wales and its Dependencies,
Arrived in this Country on the 18th day of
January, 1788, with the firſt Settlers;
And on the 15th day of May, in the ſame year,
the firſt of theſe Stones was laid."

May 21ſt. One of the convicts, William Ayres, who was for ſome time in an ill ſtate of health, was permitted by Surgeon White to go into the country, a little diſtance from the camp, in ſearch for herbs to make himſelf ſome tea; late in the evening he was brought to the hoſpital, dangerouſly wounded by the natives, having one of their ſpears ſticking in his loins, which he received while he was ſtooping with his back to his adverſary; this weapon ſtuck ſo faſt, and was barbed in ſuch a manner, that it could not poſſibly be ſtirred; it had penetrated the fleſh near three inches, and it was by the dint of cutting very deep that the ſpear could poſſibly be extracted. When Surgeon White had performed this operation, Ayres ſaid, that he had been wounded by three of the natives, who came upon him unawares: there was one Peter Burn who attended him in the ſame employment; this man was attacked by another party, who dragged him along in apparent diſtreſs, with his head bleeding: the ſituation of Ayres rendered it impoſſible for him to aſſiſt his companion; for after he was wounded he was beat in a moſt cruel manner, the clothes ſtripped from his back, which they carried off, telling him by ſigns, as he interpreted, that he might now go home to his friends. A ſhirt and a hat were afterwards found in one of the huts of the natives, which were both pierced with ſpears, and which, it was conjectured, belonged to Peter Burn. Neither the man, nor any remains of him, could ever be found. The governor would not be perſuaded but that the natives had been inſulted by theſe convicts, and conſequently provoked to ſuch outrage; but Ayres declared that neither he nor his companion were aggreſſors.

May 25th. The Supply tender returned from Lord Howe's Iſland, being very unfortunate in their miſſion, as not one turtle could they procure. The weather ſhe met with was ſo exceedingly ſqually, that ſhe was obliged to cut away her beſt bower anchor, but ſuffered no other damage: this diſappointment of the turtle was very much to be lamented, as numbers were languiſhing under the ſcurvy, ſeveral of whom died.

26th. There were two men belonging to the Sirius, tried for aſſaulting and beating in a moſt terrible manner another of the ſame veſſel, while he was performing his duty: they were found guilty, and ſentenced to receive five hundred laſhes; but in conſideration of the weak ſtate they were in, being very much afflicted with the ſcurvy, part of the ſentence was only inflicted.

28th. Captain Hunter, his firſt lieutenant, and the ſurgeon of the Sirius, went to the point of land which forms the north-head of Port Jackſon. In the courſe of this excurſion they met an old man with a girl about four years old, who were lying on the ground, and were at firſt endeavouring to conceal themſelves; after a little acquaintance the old man began to examine the ſurgeon's gun, who deſirous to ſhew him the utility of it, fired at a bird which immediately fell. The native was exceedingly alarmed at the exploſion, but when the bird was given him he forgot his fears, and having about half broiled it, with part of its feathers on, he devoured it, entrails and bones, in a moſt ravenous manner. The child's apprehenſions ſtill continued, and every now and then ſhe would hide behind the old man to eſcape notice.

30th. William Okey and Samuel Davis, two men who had been employed in gathering ruſhes for thatch, at ſome diſtance from the camp, were found dead by Captain Campbell of the Marines, who went up to the harbour to procure ſome ruſhes from them. Their bodies were conveyed to the hoſpital, one of which (Okey's) was ſo mangled, that it exhibited the moſt ſhocking marks of cruelty: he had four ſpears in his body; there was one which had been lodged ſo deep in his breaſt, that it was with the greateſt difficulty extracted; two others were equally faſt. His ſkull was divided, out of which his brains had dropt; his eyes were gone, and he was otherwiſe terribly abuſed. Davis had but few marks of violence about him, and as he was neither ſtiff nor cold, when brought to the hoſpital, could not have been long dead. It was conjectured that the firſt injury had been offered by theſe unfortunate men, eſpecially by Okey, whoſe ſufferings had been greater; this was the cauſe of much concern and uneaſineſs to the governor, who was in hopes of conciliating the affections of the natives, and eſtabliſhing a friendly intercourſe with them: he was however determined to examine more particularly into the buſineſs, and if the murderers or accomplices could be detected, to make known his diſpleaſure; the tools of the ruſh-cutters having been carried away, he was in hopes that theſe would lead to a diſcovery: the attempt was certainly worth making, for if he could find the aſſailants, he might not only convince them of their unwarrantable proceedings, but prevent future accidents of the ſame nature, and render permanent their mutual confidence and harmony. The next day was appointed for the experiment; the governor went out with a ſmall party, in number about twelve, and landed at the place where the murder was committed: after a fruitleſs ſearch here and about twenty miles further, they deſpaired of ſucceeding, not having ſeen one native for the whole day.

When they arrived to the north ſhore of Botany Bay, they diſcovered about twenty canoes, which were employed in fiſhing: none of thoſe canoes had joined the party, according to their expectations, when they had encamped for the night; and the next morning, though they perceived above double the number of canoes which were drawn upon the beach, they could not ſee any perſon that belonged to them. The governor, deeming further ſearch but loſs of time, was now about returning to Port Jackſon: on his way, near the ſea coaſt, he met a vaſt number of the natives at the mouth of a cave, who were as much ſurpriſed as the Engliſh at this unexpected meeting. The governor had ſcarce time to order his men to halt, when ſeveral of them came out to meet him in arms: their leader, by ſigns, commanded the governor and his party to retire, ſeemingly threatening them if they diſobeyed; however, when he ſaw the governor lay down his ſword, and advance towards him alone, in a friendly manner, he immediately gave his ſpear away, and received him with the greateſt good-nature. In about a few minutes, the governor and his party were ſurrounded by two hundred and twelve natives, who followed the example of their leader, having laid aſide their ſpears and ſtone hatchets, and ſhaking hands in the moſt friendly manner: there was no appearance of treachery or deceit, nor any inclination to take advantage of the inferior number of the Engliſh. Several women and children were ſeen at a diſtance, ſome of whom were introduced by the men, to receive what little preſents the governor had to give. There was no cauſe to ſuſpect that any of theſe people were concerned in the murder, as they not only appeared averſe to hoſtility, but very much inclined to amity. On their firſt approach the governor was induced, by their tokens of anger and ſuperiority of number, to command the ſoldiers to fix their bayonets, and obſerve a cloſe march down the hill, in caſe of danger. There were but ſix ſoldiers, beſides two armed convicts, who were taken as guides. The natives did not betray the leaſt apprehenſion at ſeeing theſe men, though in general they are afraid of ſoldiers. The women were ſo delighted with the preſents they had received, that they danced and threw themſelves into ſtrange poſtures.

Governor Phillip was now introduced by their leader, who was reſpectfully attended by the reſt of the natives, to the fineſt ſtream of water that had been yet diſcovered; the cove into which it ran was very much expoſed to the ſea. One of the natives, an old man, and who had been the moſt familiar, perceiving the governor's party approaching another cove, entreated by ſigns their permiſſion to go before; this being readily complied with, he aſcended the hill, and making an uncommon noiſe, held up both his hands; whereupon another large body of the natives aſſembled in a bay, about the diſtance of half a mile: the Engliſh, however, declined deſcending the cove, it being out of their way; they therefore parted with their new friends in the moſt amicable manner. During this excurſion, there was ſome ſmoke ſeen on the top of Lanſdown hills, between thoſe of Botany Bay and Port Jackſon, which was a certain indication of the place being inhabited. About ſun-ſet they arrived to their camp.

It was afterwards diſcovered, upon further enquiries, that one of the natives had been murdered, and ſeveral wounded, in the affray between the ruſh-cutters and them: this ſeemed to corroborate the governor's opinion, that the provocation had been given by the former; whereupon, on his return, he had a reward of emancipation proclaimed to any convict who ſhould diſcover and prove the real truth of the matter. Notwithſtanding this proclamation had not the deſired effect of being attended with any real ſatisfaction, ſtill it promiſed to be of much ſervice, by deterring others from ſimilar acts of future violence.

About this time a ſevere misfortune attended the live ſtock; two bulls and two cows, which belonged to government, and two cows which belonged to the governor, being the only animals (except one cow) of this kind in the colony, were miſſed: this loſs was very much lamented, as it was irreparable for ſome time. One Edward Corbett, who ſtole a frock, having eloped, was alſo ſuſpected for driving them off to ſome diſtant wood; but as they had been left for a time by the man who was appointed to take care of them, it is very probable that they ſtrayed away of themſelves: they were traced to ſome diſtance, but never could be recovered.

CHAPTER VI.

Weather in June—Firſt Celebration of his Majeſty's Birth-day—Governor gives a dinner—General Exultation—The baniſhed Convicts pardoned—Bonfires, &c.—Territory nominated—Several Thefts committed during the Feſtivity—Burn and Aſcott proſecuted for an aſſault—Acquitted for want of evidence—Corbett's return, after an elopement, and being outlawed—His confeſſion of a theft—Sufferings through hunger—His account of the Natives—Their burning a human body—Their diſtreſs for food—Decree of Outlawry revoked—Referred to the Criminal Court—Sentenced to be hanged—Samuel Payton likewiſe condemned for Robbery—His Confeſſion—Their Execution—Pathetic and eloquent Addreſs to the Spectators—Increaſe of the Scurvy—Scarcity of Fiſh—Surgeon White's report—Weather in July—Natives greedy with hunger—A proof of their diſtreſs—Act of violence in ſeizing Fiſh—Cockſwain's prudence—A cauſe tried before a Civil Court of Judicature—Verdict given for the Plaintiffs—Supply ſails for Norfolk Iſland—Four Tranſports for England—Surgeon White and Maſter of Golden Grove victualler meet ſome Natives—Mark of unuſual delicacy—A party of Convicts attacked by the Natives—Their Danger, and Eſcape—A terrible Accident—A Convict wounded by the Natives—His miraculous Eſcape—Another interview with the Natives—Occaſional Remarks—Sudden Alarm.

THE month of June began with very fine and pleaſant weather, attended with land and ſea breezes, but it was ſucceeded with great ſtorms and much rain, the wind being chiefly from the S. E. quarter. Thermometer from 52 deg. to 63 deg.

June 4th. This being the firſt celebration of his Majeſty's birth-day in New South Wales, it was attended with more than common feſtivity, as all ranks were very particular in their demonſtrations of loyalty, which concluded with general hilarity and order. By the governor's command, the Sirius and Supply, at ſun-riſe, fired each a ſalute of twenty-one guns; the ſame was repeated in the middle of the day, and at ſun-ſet. After the King's ſhips had done firing at one o'clock, the tranſports fired five guns each. The marines on ſhore were under arms at twelve, and fired three vollies, which were ſucceeded with three cheers. This ceremony being over, the lieutenant-governor and all the officers paid their reſpects to Governor Phillip, at his houſe; where they all met again at dinner, during which muſic was playing the moſt loyal tunes: his Majeſty's health, and the Royal family's, were drank in rotation. Throughout the ſettlement, this was a day of univerſal feſtivity, a holiday to every labourer; and that the exultation might be general, the governor granted a full pardon to the four convicts who had been reprieved from death on condition of being baniſhed: theſe men were immediately recalled from their exile, to have their ſhare of the conviviality: large bonfires were lighted, and every countenance diſplayed both joy and ſatisfaction. By the governor's command, every ſoldier had a pint of porter, beſides his common allowance of grog; and every convict half a pint of ſpirits, made into grog; that they might all drink their Royal maſter's health.

During this ſcene of loyalty and good-humour, the governor publicly nominated the part of the territory which he had taken poſſeſſion of, Cumberland county. This title had been previouſly fixed upon, but not till now publiſhed.

Though it might naturally be imagined, that the moſt evil-diſpoſed would have been amuſed from their vicious inclinations, on ſuch a day of harmony and pleaſure, yet ſo depraved and abandoned were the majority of convicts, that they took advantage of this general mirth, and committed ſeveral thefts; they not only robbed many of the officers, but even one another: neither lenity nor ſeverity ſeemed to have effect upon theſe wretches.

June 10th, Patrick Burn, and John Aſcott, were proſecuted by Lieut. G. W. Maxwell and Mr. Keller, of the Sirius, for having been concerned with other convicts in riotouſly attacking and aſſaulting ſeveral ſeamen belonging to the men of war: for want of ſufficient evidence, they were acquitted.

On the 24th of this month, Edward Corbett, one of the convicts who had been concerned in the thefts on his Majeſty's birth-day, and who for fear of detection abſconded the next morning, returned to the camp almoſt periſhing with hunger. This being the man who was ſuſpected for driving off the cows, he was a few days before his return outlawed: the ſuſpicion immediately took place after his elopement: he acknowledged his having ſtolen a frock, (the robbery with which he was charged) but declared his innocence of the cows. When he ran away, he was in hopes of being able to live in the woods; but to his grief found the impoſſibility of ſuch a deſign: he had frequently met a party of the natives, who never uſed him ill, though they were never very kind to him; one, that behaved the moſt friendly, gave him a fiſh, and then by ſigns adviſed him to go home: once he was apprehenſive that they would burn him; on which account he ran away, being much alarmed at ſeeing the head of a man in a large fire, and other remains of a human body, which was conjectured to be Burn's, who was carried off by the natives ſome time ago, when Ayres was wounded; however ſeveral, particularly the governor, doubted theſe reports, for there never was reaſon to ſuſpect any of the natives were cannibals: Corbett, however, in their vindication, added, that they appeared at that time in great diſtreſs for food; he had ſeen four of them languiſhing away who had periſhed through hunger. If therefore they did make occaſional uſe of human fleſh, they were compelled by dire neceſſity! Corbett's appearance was ample demonſtration of the ſufferings which he endured; the decree however by which he was outlawed was revoked, and he was referred to the criminal court, to be tried for the theft he had committed. As he pleaded guilty, he was accordingly ſentenced to be hanged. Another convict, Samuel Payton, was likewiſe condemned with him, for having ſtolen on the 4th of June ſeveral ſhirts, ſtockings, combs, &c. His trial had been poſtponed, on account of a wound he received in his head from Captain-Lieutenant Meredith, who detected him in his tent, when he returned from the bonfire; in conſequence of this wound he was for ſome time ſenſeleſs: while Surgeon White attended him, he frequently importuned him to confeſs his guilt, and accomplices; but he denied the robbery, though he could give no plauſible reaſon for being found in the captain-lieutenant's tent: however, after condemnation, he not only confeſſed, but diſcovered where ſeveral of the articles were. Corbett and Payton addreſſed the ſpectators at the fatal tree, acknowledging the juſtice of their ſentence, which they had long deſerved, and recommending their fate as a caution to others. Payton ſpoke in a very affecting, ſublime, and correct manner: they both died exceedingly penitent. The execution of theſe two unfortunate men, who were about twenty-two and twenty-four years of age, ſeemed to have made no ſmall impreſſion on the minds of thoſe convicts who were preſent.

The erection of huts was now the chief concern, for as the ſeaſon was remarkably wet, tents were found very uncomfortable; theſe huts were only temporary, being compoſed of very periſhable materials. There were ſeveral violent ſtorms of thunder and lightning. On account of the ſcarcity of fiſh (for fiſh never abounds here at the cold ſeaſon of the year) they were obliged to ſubſiſt for the chief part upon ſalt proviſions; this, no doubt, was the great cauſe of the ſcurvy, which now became almoſt general. The gum which is extracted from the trees, Surgeon White found in all caſes of a violent dyſentery, of the greateſt ſervice.

June 30th. This day Surgeon White made the following report:

Marines ſick in the hoſpital - - -	4
Convaleſcents in the hoſpital - -	2
Marines ſick in camp - - - - -	18
Convaleſcents ſick in camp - - -	6
Wives and children of marines do. do. -	6
Marines dead from the time of embarkation to landing - - - - -	1
Woman - - - - - - - - -	1
Child - - - - - - - - - -	1
Marines dead ſince landing - - -	3
Children - - - - - - - - -	2
Convicts ſick in the hoſpital - - -	20
Convaleſcents do. do. - - - -	4
Convicts ſick in camp - - - - -	26
Convaleſcents do. do. - - - -	16
Male convicts dead from the time of embarkation to landing - - - -	36
Female do. do. do. - - -	4
Convicts' children do. do. -	5
Male convicts dead ſince landing -	20
Female do. do. do. - - -	8
Convicts' children do. do. - - - -	8
Convicts unable to work - - - - -	52
Total dead - - - - - - - - - -	89

The month of July began as the laſt ended, a continuance of bluſtering rainy weather: in the middle of the month it was leſs windy, though dull and cloudy; towards the end it became fair weather, with weſterly winds. Thermometer from 52 deg. to 63 deg.

The ſcorbutic patients were worſe this month; the want of freſh food was very much lamented, and the ſcarcity of fiſh was as ſeverely felt by the natives as the Engliſh, as they were equally ſick and miſerable. Whenever any of the birds that were ſhot were given them, they were ſo greedy as frequently to eat them without being plucked, or ſcarce warmed with the fire. A proof of their diſtreſs was apparent on the 9th of June: a party of them arrived to the place where the Sirius's boat had been to haul the ſeine; theſe natives were armed, and notwithſtanding it was cuſtomary, by the governor's orders, to give part of whatſoever was caught (let it be ever ſo little) to the natives that were preſent, which always ſatisfied them, yet theſe men, without trying any fair means to obtain their purpoſe, began to threaten the crew, and ſeize with violence what fiſh they had caught: ſeveral ſtood at a diſtance to throw their ſpears, if any reſiſtance was made; however the cockſwain with much prudence ſuffered them to take whatever they choſe, on which they departed with much ſatisfaction and good-humour. After this act of violence, the firſt that was known, an officer was always ſent down the harbour with the boat.

A cauſe now came on to be tried, for which the governor had called a civil court of judicature, conſiſting of the Judge-Advocate, Rev. Mr. Johnſon, and Surgeon White. This was a complaint made againſt Duncan Sinclair, Maſter of the Alexander tranſport, by Henry Coble and his wiſe Suſanna (two convicts) for not having delivered a parcel, which was ſent on board the Alexander by a Mrs. Jackſon, containing wearing apparel, books, &c. value twenty pounds, intended for the uſe of Henry Coble, his wife, and child. It was proved by the defendant's confeſſion, that this parcel had been received on board; and by further evidence, that this packet had come aſunder, and the books which had fallen out of it had been delivered to the convict. A verdict was given for the plaintiffs, and the maſter of the tranſport obliged to compenſate the loſs which plaintiffs, Coble and his wiſe, ſuſtained, which was the value of fifteen pounds; five pounds being allowed for the books which were received.

July 13th. The Supply tender ſailed for Norfolk Iſland with proviſions, &c. for the people there. Four tranſports, viz. the Alexander, Friendſhip, Prince of Wales, and the Borrowdale victualler, ſailed for England; it was their intention to go northward, and paſs through the Streights of Macaſſar and Sunda, it being too early in the ſeaſon to attempt going round Van Diemen's Land, alſo to endeavour to get weſtward by that tract, or go eaſtward by Cape Horn.

On the 21ſt, Surgeon White and the maſter of the Golden Grove victualler, went down the harbour to look for a cabbage-tree, in order to cover the ſurgeon's hut. When returning they met three canoes that had been out fiſhing; they approached them, whereupon the natives appeared ſuddenly alarmed, and were making off with as much haſte as poſſible; but as they were deſirous to convince them that their fears were groundleſs, the ſurgeon and his companion rowed after them with an intention of giving them ſome preſents, and courting their favour. As ſoon as they had reached them, an old woman that was among them began to throw her fiſh in a great hurry overboard, but ſhe afterwards found by their behaviour that there was no cauſe for apprehenſion. She had a young girl with her, and what was very remarkable and uncommon, the girl had a long apron on, this being a mark of delicacy which was unuſual. The girl was by no means alarmed, ſhe was very free, and laughed immoderately, apparently delighted either with the preſents received, or her old female guardian's timidity.

A party of convicts who had been ſent to gather ſome herbs, particularly a vegetable like balm, which was very good and pleaſant, were, croſſing the country to Botany Bay, met by a vaſt number of natives, who were all armed: the convicts, being inferior in number, dreaded to meet them, they conſequently took to flight, and were purſued by the natives upwards of two miles; had they been overtaken, in all probability, they would have been murdered, as the natives have generally inſulted thoſe whom they have had in their power: theſe people were accompanied with dogs.

A terrible accident happened on the 23d, the blackſmith's ſhop took fire: the wood which compoſed it being of a very combuſtible nature, like the generality of the timber, the flames became exceedingly fierce, and in a few minutes ſpread ſo rapidly, that it was with great difficulty the bellows and other tools were preſerved.

July 29th. A convict was ſeverely wounded in the breaſt by a party of the natives; had he not plunged into the ſea and ſaved himſelf by ſwimming, they would certainly have murdered him: he was conveyed to the hoſpital as ſoon as poſſible. Surgeon White extracted a piece of a broken ſpear, which had penetrated the ſcalp, under his ear, and gave him exquiſite pain: he was very faint, having loſt a quantity of blood.

Some little time after this, three canoes, with a man and woman in each, came almoſt near the point where the hoſpital is erected, to fiſh. Surgeon White, and his aſſiſtants, approached them: they did not betray the leaſt fear, but on the contrary were very free and friendly: they were greatly pleaſed with ſome of the preſents they received, and others they ſlighted. One of the women had an infant between her knees, for whom ſhe ſolicited ſomething with the moſt piteous ſigns. The ſurgeon gave her a piece of the linen he had to bind up the wounds of his patients, which ſhe accepted with perfect ſatiſfaction, and tied it round the child's head. One of the ſheep was lying dead at ſome little diſtance; this caught the attention of one of the men, who ſeemed rather curious to know what it was: they then proceeded to fiſh, in which they were very ſucceſsful. During the intervals, they danced and ſung. What is ſomewhat remarkable, theſe people, eſpecially the females, imitated the Engliſh language in a moſt diſtinct manner, and indeed much better than the Engliſh could theirs. While each party was thus mutually entertained, the natives in an abrupt manner were paddling away: the cauſe of this ſudden alarm was the appearance of the gunner of the Supply, who at the ſurgeon's requeſt laid down his gun. Upon this the natives were reconciled, and immediately reſumed their ſports: they afterwards parted in a very friendly manner.

CHAPTER VII.

Weather in Auguſt—Celebration of the Prince of Wales's Birth-day—Occaſional joy—A ſubſtitute for Tea—A Convict beaten and wounded by a party of the Natives—His Eſcape—The Governor and a party make an excurſion—Land in Manly Cove—Interview with the Natives—Preſents acceptable—A delay—A fine Duck ſhot—They arrive to the ſouthern branch of Broken Bay—Return to the Sea-ſhore—Acres of Land fit for cultivation diſcovered—Shyneſs of the Natives at Pitt Water—An ingeniouſly conſtructed Hut diſcovered—Superiority of its Furniture—Opinions in conſequence thereof—Interview with other Natives—Their Good-nature—Beans diſcovered—Boiled, and reliſhed—The Governor and Surgeon ſeized with a violent vomiting—Encampment for the night—Return to Manly Cove—Surpriſe of ſome Natives—Timidity of the Girls—Kindneſs of an old Man—Occaſional Remarks—Attention of a Female Native to Surgeon White—Her Coquetry—Surgeon White ſhoots a Hawk—The Governor gives it to one of the Girls—Cockſwain's Information—Hoſtilities among the Natives—Lamentations of the Women—Arrival at Sydney Cove—A Report—Impoſition of one Dailey, a Convict—His Propoſal, Trick, Project, and Story—He abſconds—The Deception apparent—Dailey ſecured, examined, and whipped—He carries on the Deception—Is frightened into a Confeſſion—Examined again, and puniſhed—Arrival of the Supply—Remarks on her Paſſage—Natives deſtroy ſome Cattle—Weather in September—A Phænomenon—Preparations for diſpatching the Sirius to the Cape of Good Hope.

THE month of Auguſt commenced with rainy, cold and cloudy weather; in the morning a hoary froſt: ſoutherly and ſouth-eaſt winds. About the middle it was fair and moderate, and towards the end fair and pleaſant, with light and variable winds. Thermometer from 56 deg. to 72 deg.

The 12th of Auguſt, being his Royal Highneſs the Prince of Wales's birth-day, the ſame was celebrated with every due reſpect. A ſalute of twenty-one guns was fired from the Sirius and Supply, and all the officers of the ſettlement and ſhips dined with the governor: there were bonfires in the evening, and other demonſtrations of joy.

On the 16th, a convict was ſent out to gather a creeping kind of vine, which runs a great extent along the ground, which is called Sweet Tea: the leaf is about the ſize, and ſomewhat like a bay-leaf; the ſtalk rather ſlender; the taſte very agreeable, reſembling liquorice: in ſhort, it is an excellent ſubſtitute for tea, and as it doubtleſs ſweetens the blood, much preferable, when the violence of the ſcurvy is conſidered. After this man had gone a mile from the camp, he was met by a party of natives, about fourteen, who were returning from the wood with cork, which they had been cutting either for their huts or canoes; they were conſequently without their ſpears, having no other inſtruments with them than ſome ſtone hatchets and ſhell ſticks, which they employ for this purpoſe: they attacked the convict, wounded him with one of the ſhell ſticks, and beat him; after this maltreatment, they made him ſtrip, with a view, no doubt, to deprive him of his clothes, perhaps would have murdered him, but providentially a report of two muſquets, which were fired at ſome diſtance, alarmed the aſſailants, who ran precipitately away.

Auguſt 22d, Governor Phillip went with a ſmall party, conſiſting of Lieutenants George Johnſon, Creſſwell, Surgeon White, and ſix ſoldiers, to examine the coaſt between Port Jackſon and Broken Bay: they landed in Manly Cove; they perceived, at ſome diſtance from the ſhore, about twenty canoes, with two perſons in each, but theſe men were ſo intent upon fiſhing, that they were very indifferent about the Engliſh. When ſhe landed, they ſaw three times that number: theſe natives immediately approached, and behaved exceedingly kind; they were very ready to join their aſſiſtance, and one in particular, who was a black man, helped to carry the tents. There were ſome ſtockings among the preſents that were given them, which ſeemed highly acceptable, as the extreme cold made theſe poor wretches fully ſenſible of the advantage of being clothed. On proceeding along the coaſt ſix miles northward, they were delayed near two hours, having ſent back their boats, on account of a piece of water, which was ſomewhat deep, owing to the fullneſs of the tide. One of the natives, an old man, behaved with the greateſt good-nature, and pointed out the ſhalloweſt part of the lagoon, but it was ſome time before they could wade it through, on account of the rapidity of the tide. A very fine duck was ſhot, which was dreſſed for ſupper; the company refreſhed themſelves on a little hill adjoining a cabbage-tree ſwamp, which ſupplied them with a ſufficiency of cabbage to render the ſalt proviſions agreeable.

On the 23d, about twelve o'clock, they renewed their march, and arrived to the ſouth branch of Broken Bay; but as their ſtock of proviſions was inſufficient to undertake a further journey round this part of the country, which was not only extenſive but remarkably rugged, they returned to the ſea ſhore: they diſcovered from the entrance of Port Jackſon to Broken Bay, ſeveral acres of land which were fit for cultivation; the coaſt is free from wood, and the ſoil very rich. When they reached Pitt Water they ſaw a few natives, who were ſo ſhy or timid as to run away and conceal themſelves. One of their huts at Broken Bay was very ingeniouſly conſtructed; the furniture, conſiſting of nets, ſpears, hatchets, &c. were much ſuperior to any before ſeen: there were likewiſe two or three pieces of coarſe linen, which they had either received or ſtolen from ſome of the Engliſh: in ſhort this was the moſt convenient and comfortable hut that was yet diſcovered. One of the gentlemen thought it might be the reſidence of a leader or chief; but it was the general opinion, that no diſtinction is known among them, nor that they have any fixed places of reſidence, but indiſcriminately take poſſeſſion of the firſt hut or ſhelter that offers itſelf. At ſome diſtance from this hut they diſcovered ſeveral armed natives, who were very friendly and good-natured. On the ſandy beach the gentlemen gathered ſome beans, and ſtopping to refreſh themſelves they boiled, and reliſhed them very much; however Governor Phillip and Surgeon White were ſeized with a moſt violent vomiting about an hour after, and were obliged to clear their ſtomachs, by drinking large quantities of warm water: none of the reſt were the leaſt affected, though all partook of them.

On the 24th they encamped for the night in a very convenient place, which abounded with cabbage-trees, and near which there was good water; the graſs was long, dry, but ſour; having on their return along the coaſt killed ſome birds, they made ſoup of them, which proved exceeding good.

Early the next morning they went by an unfrequented path to the ſouthern branch of Broken Bay, at the head of which, there was a freſh water river, which took its riſe out of a diſtant ſwamp: the country hereabouts was rough and inacceſſible. When they returned to Manly Cove, they diſcovered ſome natives in a hut, who were much ſurpriſed at their appearance, eſpecially the children; the old men ſeemed rather diſpleaſed when the Engliſh looked at the girls, who at this time were crying; on which account the gentlemen withdrew: one of the old men followed them and behaved very kind; when at dinner, he took ſhare of every kind of the proviſions, but would not eat before them. A vaſt number of natives, men, women, and children, ſoon aſſembled; they all behaved in a very amicable manner: the women, when unperceived by the men, would make very free; there were two among them who were ſcarred on the ſhoulders like the men; this was rather uncommon. All of them (except one old woman) had the uſual mutilation of the little finger; it was likewiſe remarked that the female children and ſome of the grown-up girls, wore a ſlight kind of covering before them, (but by no means ſuch perfect aprons as that which was ſeen upon a girl before-mentioned) while the females who were fit for connection were entirely naked. Every gentleman ſingled out a female, and gave her ſome preſents; when the Engliſh were afterwards engaged with the men, the women began to broil their fiſh, of which they had a large quantity: one, who had been particularized by Surgeon White, gave him ſome of the fiſh which ſhe was eating; indeed ſhe behaved in a very coquetting manner, eſpecially when the ſurgeon was decorating her head with ſtripes of his hand and neck-kerchiefs, which he had torn on purpoſe: he even cut away the buttons of his coat to give them, as ſhe took a liking to them. A hawk had now alighted upon one of the trees, the natives ſeemed very anxious for the Engliſh to kill it, whereupon Surgeon White ſhot it: the report of the gun created the uſual terror; ſome ran away; being however ſoon reconciled, they were highly delighted at ſeeing the hawk in the governor's poſſeſſion, who immediately preſented it to one of the young girls, who ſeemed to be the moſt reſpected among them. On the arrival of the boats, the cockſwain informed the gentlemen, that they had ſeen upwards of two hundred natives, who had met (as it firſt appeared) for the purpoſe of exerciſing themſelves; they divided into two parties, each having a leader; the leaders now advanced, threw their ſpears, and were ſucceeded by others, who went alternately through the ſame manœuvres; this conflict laſted for near two hours: the ſport, as it ſeemed at firſt, became at laſt very ſerious, for they attacked each other in a moſt violent manner, while the women ran up and down making terrible lamentations: the boat's crew perceived one of the natives walk off with a ſpear in his ſide, and from the groans of the women, they imagined others were wounded. There was a ſpear thrown by ſome of the natives, who were concealed, at the crew, while the boat was returning cloſe along the ſhore, but on account of the ſurpriſing force with which it was hurled, it providentially flew over the boat a conſiderable way. It was late in the evening before the gentlemen arrived in Sydney Cove.

A report had now prevailed in the ſettlement, that one Dailey, a convict, had diſcovered a gold mine near the entrance of the harbour. While the governor was abſent, this man had informed the lieutenant-governor and the judge-advocate, that he had found a quantity of yellow-coloured ore, which upon being examined proved to contain a proportion of gold: for this diſcovery he claimed his freedom, and that of a female convict, their paſſage to England, and a pecuniary compenſation. This ſtory was told with ſo much plauſibility, that the gentlemen he made application to did not refuſe it credence; however, they ſaid, that he could not expect any thing till he had put them in poſſeſſion of the mine, and they made no doubt but the governor, on his return, would reward him in the moſt ample manner. Dailey, however, evaded all interrogations: he declared, he would not give the deſired account to any one but the governor himſelf, when he returned, and that only upon condition the reward he demanded for ſo great a diſcovery was ſecured to him before he gave the information. Upon this the lieutenant-governor declared, if he did not ſhow what part of the country it was in, he ſhould be puniſhed. After ſome heſitations, he propoſed that an officer ſhould be ſent with him, (for the mine, he pretended, was in the lower part of the harbour, near the ſea-ſhore) and he would ſhow the place to the officer. A boat was immediately ordered from the Sirius, and an officer, with a corporal and a few private ſoldiers, directed to attend him wherever he was pleaſed to go. They landed according to his directions, when he begged leave to withdraw, pretending a ſudden occaſion; inſtead of returning to the officer and his men, he haſtened immediately back to the camp, as he well knew the road, and was artful enough to perſuade Captain Campbell (the officer) to ſend the boats away, under pretence that he ſhould not leave the mine, till there was a ſtrong guard ſent down for its protection; and, for that reaſon, one of the ſoldiers was to have been diſpatched by land, to aſſure the lieutenant-governor of the veracity of the diſcovery. Dailey arrived to the camp early in the afternoon, and informed the lieutenant-governor that he had left the officer in poſſeſſion of the mine, and that he was diſpatched by Capt. Campbell for another guard: ſtill the lieutenant-governor doubted, but amuſed Dailey with promiſes: the impoſtor, foreſeeing the miſcarriage of his ſcheme, haſtened to his own tent, took a few things out of it and abſconded. Lieutenant Paulden had received orders to attend Dailey to Captain Campbell, but before the guard was ready to ſet out Captain Campbell and his party, who had waited ſeveral hours for Dailey's return, ſearching and hallooing through the woods for the cheat, returned very much fatigued and exceedingly vexed at the impoſition. The deception was now apparent, and hunger having obliged Dailey to leave his concealment, his reward was very contrary to his expectations; he was immediately ſecured with two others who were ſuſpected to be his accomplices, and having undergone a private and ſtrict examination, ordered to be ſeverely whipped. Dailey notwithſtanding perſiſted that his late aſſertion was true, and pretended that his motive for deceiving the officer, was through an apprehenſion he would not receive the reward he demanded, which he thought himſelf ſure of upon an application to the governor. He was threatened with a repetition of the whipping every week, between the intervals to be put to hard labour, and inceſſantly loaded with heavy irons, if he attempted to carry on the deception; notwithſtanding which he ſtill perſiſted, and when the governor returned, Lieutenant J. Johnſton was ſuffered to accompany him to the place where the pretended mine was. Previous to their ſetting out Lieutenant G. Johnſtone aſſured Dailey, that if he attempted to deceive him as he had done Capt. Campbell, or preſume to move three yards from him or his party, he ſhould inſtantly be ſhot. When he found this officer loading his gun with ball, he began to be ſomewhat alarmed, and acknowledged the impoſition; confeſſing that the ſpecimens which he had produced were compoſed of braſs and gold, which he had filed for the purpoſe and melted down. The ſilverſmith who tried the ore had ſeparated the parts, and conſequently diſcovered a ſmall quantity of gold. He was accordingly brought back, examined again, and puniſhed as before; afterwards he was ſet at liberty, but obliged to wear the initial of *rogue* upon his back. It was imagined indeed that this convict was inſane, but his cunning was too deep for that of a madman. When he circulated the report of the mine, he pretended that he had ſold ſeveral pounds weight of the ore to the maſter and ſailors of the Golden Grove: this artful addition to the tale rendered the ſtory more plauſible, and orders were conſequently iſſued that none of the ſailors ſhould leave the ſhips after ſun-ſet.

The Supply arrived on the 26th inſtant, after a rough, tedious, and diſagreeable paſſage: ſhe had landed the ſtores, with much difficulty, but not in a place of ſafety. So dangerous is the entering and embarking from this iſland, that Mr. Cunningham, a midſhipman of the Sirius, and three ſeamen, were loſt in a boat, owing to the violence of the ſurf: there is not an harbour capable of admitting even a ſmall veſſel with ſecurity, and the anchorage is likewiſe bad.

Some of the natives having diſcovered a few goats belonging to the Supply browſing near the hoſpital, threw a ſpear and killed a kid, with which they made off: they afterwards deſtroyed a he-goat belonging to the governor, and ſeized every opportunity that offered of deſtroying the cattle: they had been alſo violent with ſome of the convicts, but carefully avoided any that were armed with muſquets, or dreſſed in military clothes.

It was very cloudy and rainy weather in September, till about the 20th; after that there were very ſtrong gales from the ſouth-eaſt quarter.

A phænomenon appeared on the 5th of this month, uncommon in the ſouthern hemiſphere, which was an Aurora Auſtralis, about half after ſix in the evening.

Governor Phillip ſignified to Capt. Hunter his intention of diſpatching the Sirius very ſoon to the Cape of Good Hope, in order to purchaſe ſuch quantity of proviſions as ſhe was capable of carrying; for which purpoſe he deſired the captain to take from her ſome of her guns, and whatever articles could be ſpared, that ſhe might be lightened, and have as much room as poſſible for the freſh ſtores: accordingly, eight guns, with their carriages, 24 rounds of ſhot for each gun, 20 half barrels of powder, an anchor, and ſeveral other things, were put on ſhore at Sydney Cove; alſo the ſhip's long-boat, as Captain Hunter was to purchaſe another when he arrived at the Cape. On the 30th inſtant Capt. Hunter received his final orders, and made preparations for his voyage, for the ſake of relating which we ſhall take a temporary leave of the new ſettlement.

BOOK II.

CHAPTER I.

Captain Hunter ſails for the Cape of Good Hope—Departure of the Golden Grove—The Captain prefers the Eaſtern Paſſage—Changeable Wind and Weather—A ſerious Report of the Carpenter—Conjectures thereupon—An allowance of Wort given for the Scurvy—They fall in with dangerous Ice Iſlands—Captain finds Diego Ramirez to be a fabulous Iſland—Scurvy very violent—Deaths of two Seamen—Anchorage in Table Bay—Politeneſs and Attention of the Governor—Captain Hunter's Attention to the Sick and Invalids—Arrival of a Dutch India Ship—Information—Arrival of a Dutch Frigate—Account of Lieutenant Shortland—His Misfortunes, Diſtreſs, &c.—Arrival of the Alexander—Informations confirmed—Stores provided—Leak ſtopped with difficulty—Departure from the Cape of Good Hope—The Weather, Wind, &c. &c.—A Tempeſt, with the Conſequences—Situation critical and dangerous—Embayed—Great Difficulties—Veſſel leaky—Marie Iſlands paſſed—Arrival at Port Jackſon—Curſory Remarks—Directions for ſailing into Port Jackſon, by Capt. Hunter.

CAPTAIN HUNTER having received his final orders, the Sirius was unmoored on the 1ſt of October. Governor Phillip and his friends dined on board her; and it being an eaſt wind, ſhe worked down to the lower anchorage: in the evening the governor and other gentlemen took leave, and on the 2d ſhe put to ſea, with a ſouth-weſt wind, and the ſame day the Golden Grove ſailed for Norfolk Iſland, with a reinforcement of male and female convicts; two free men, as gardeners; a midſhipman from the Sirius, to ſupply the room of the late Mr. Cunningham; a ſerjeant, corporal, and ſix privates; alſo a competency of proviſions for eighteen months.

As ſoon as they were clear of the harbour, the wind changed more to the ſouthward; the weather became foul and hazy, and there were ſome ſtrong gales. A very ſerious report was made by the carpenter, ſignifying that the veſſel already made water, though it was previouſly imagined that ſhe was remarkably firm. It is not to be wondered, that Capt. Hunter was exceedingly concerned at this information, as the voyage now entered upon was of the greateſt moment, for the ſcarcity of flour, as well as other neceſſaries, rendered it abſolutely urgent, the ſtock of this article being by no means adequate to the quantity of ſalt beef and pork; indeed the ſhip's crew, for want of proper nutriment, were not ſufficiently ſtrong to undertake thoſe hardſhips which are attendant on a leaky veſſel: the governor had entirely left the route of this voyage to Capt. Hunter's choice, but gave ſome intimations of preferring the weſtern route, which, as it had never been attempted, did by no means meet the approbation of Capt. Hunter, eſpecially as he deemed his veſſel not adequate to the taſk of making experiments, and likewiſe was inclined to think that ſuch a voyage would have been both tedious and dangerous, for delay would certainly have been attended with much danger, on account of the unhealthy ſituation of the men: the captain, therefore, judged proper to purſue the track of his predeceſſors, and by making an eaſtern paſſage, paſs to the ſouthward of New Zealand, and round Cape Horn.

For two days they ſtood off to the eaſtward, with hopes of advancing ſeveral leagues; but the wind remaining in the ſame point, and the weather continuing hazy and foul, their progreſs was ſtill ſlow. On the 5th, the wind veered to S. S. E. and being now about 70 leagues from the coaſt, they tacked about, and ſtood to the S. W. notwithſtanding this change of wind, the weather remained the ſame.

It became abſolutely neceſſary to pump the veſſel every two hours, as ſhe made water from ten to twelve inches, chiefly upon the larboard. Captain Hunter imagining the leak to be ſomewhere about the ſtarboard bow, near the ſurface of the water, was in hopes, when the weather became moderate, and the water ſmooth, that it might be eaſily ſtopped. Another report from the captain rendered him ſtill more ſanguine in his expectations, as he underſtood the leak was under the after-part of the fore channel, and it was ſuſpected to proceed from one of the butt-holes being corroded by the copper which had been taken off upon the veſſels being firſt ſheathed.

On the 6th the weather became more clear; about noon the wind ſhifted to E. and E. by N. the veſſel ſteered S. S. E. The wind (as it was wiſhed) came next to N. E. and N. but ſtill the weather was as before.

The crew were now ſerved with ſlops, as it became rather cold, and it was expected, from the track which it was neceſſary to take, that it would be ſtill colder. On the 9th the wind became ſettled in the S. W. quarter, and the veſſel ſteered a courſe for the ſouth cape of New Zealand, which on the 12th they paſſed; but the weather ſtill continuing foul, they did not attempt to make it, but ſtood aloof about a degree and half to the ſouthward of it. The wind now came from the N. W. quarter, attended with continual ſqualls, heavy rain, and cold weather. Several birds were ſeen at this time. The ſhip's company, according to the directions of Mr. Worgan the ſurgeon, who deemed the eſſence of malt of great ſervice, had now a proper allowance of wort.

The wind continued for ſeveral days light and variable, ſometimes from the ſouth and ſouth-eaſt, and ſometimes from the northward: the weather as uſual. On the 2d it became rather fair, the wind being then weſtward: ſeveral divers were ſeen in the day, and heard at night. In ſailing from New Zealand to Cape Horn, Capt. Hunter kept in a parallel between the tracks of the Reſolution and Adventure, in hopes of falling in with them, if any iſland lay between the parallels in which thoſe ſhips ſailed. The weather and winds became equally variable; and, by the frequent ſhiftings of the latter, the ſea was in great confuſion.

From the 2d of November to the 6th, the winds were from N. by W. to N. N. E. From the 7th until the 17th the weather was very variable; and, in like manner, the wind, which was between the S. E. and S. W. quarters, attended continually with very heavy ſnow and hail, and ſtrong gales: theſe ſhowers were, in general, accompanied with furious ſqualls.

On the 18th the wind veered to the weſt, and the weather became ſomewhat fair; there were ſome gentle breezes: from this to the 24th, they very often fell in with mountains of ice, and on this day the ice iſlands were ſo numerous, that they were often obliged to change their courſe: the weather was ſtill hazy and foul, but there were freſh gales, which became the ſucceeding day (25th) ſo ſtrong, as to occaſion many heavy ſqualls. They were now approaching Cape Horn, and Capt. Hunter underſtanding, from the charts of Terra del Fuego, that there was an iſland bearing from the Cape about S. S. W. called Diego Ramirez, diſtant about twelve leagues from the land: he deemed it moſt proper to proceed in the way of making it, being deſirous of expediting his voyage as ſoon as poſſible, on account of the urgent neceſſity thereof. On the 26th, about noon, they were exactly in the parallel of Diego Ramirez; but, as they continued their courſe N. E. the captain was convinced that there is no ſuch iſland in exiſtence. Still they encountered ſeveral mountains of ice; and frequently met with divers and ſeals. On the 27th the wind inclined to the northward, and from that to the N. E. attended with ſome freſh gales: they had now got but a very ſmall diſtance to the eaſtward of the Cape. From this to the 12th of December, the wind was in the N. E. quarter, which conſtancy near Cape Horn was deemed uncommon. This day one of the ſeamen, Henry Fitz-Gerald, died: he was afflicted with ſome complaint in his lungs, but his chief ailment was the ſcurvy, which was at preſent ſo general as to be truly alarming, eſpecially as there was nothing on board to afford any relief, except the eſſence of malt, which was very inſufficient, on account of both the violence and continuance of this diſorder.

On the morning of the 13th they paſſed a moſt remarkable large ice iſland, imagined to have been 350 feet in its perpendicular height, and about three miles in length. The wind changed ſuddenly to the 16th, attended with a ſteady gale; on the 19th it blew very ſtrong from W. N. W. and on account of ſome frequent ſhowers of rain changed to the S. W. quarter; the weather likewiſe changing from hazy to fair. Having been twenty-eight days among the ice, and made about 800 leagues, this day they got out from among the ice iſlands, which undoubtedly would have been very dangerous in the night time, but that the nights were very ſhort in high latitudes, and ſcarcely any darkneſs. They had now ſtrong weſterly winds, which were very favourable, and on Chriſtmas-day they arrived upon the meridian of Greenwich. Another ſeaman, John Shine, died on the 30th; and the ſucceeding day another, Joſeph Caldwell: both periſhed on account of the ſcurvy. This evening they made a ſhort trip off till midnight, when they tacked about and ſtood for land again, which they ſaw early on the next morning; the neareſt was diſtant about four leagues, and the Table Mountain about ten S. by E. they had fallen to leeward on account of the continuance of a ſtrong wind from the ſouthward.

On the 1ſt of January, 1789, they ſtood along ſhore to the ſouthward, and were a-breaſt of Ro-in's Iſland in the afternoon. They endeavoured ow, but in vain, to fetch round the reef and get nto Table Bay.

It was Captain Hunter's wiſh to bring the ſhip o anchor before night, in order to give ſome rereation to the men, who, on account of their unealthy ſituation, were ſcarcely able to perform he neceſſary duties; accordingly he ran round the orth end, and anchored right off the flag-ſtaff nd landing-place in nine fathoms water coarſe ground.

A boat was diſpatched with the firſt lieutenant n ſhore to the iſland, in order to make ſome neceſſary enquiries of the commanding officer there; e was received and treated with the greateſt civility by the officer, who very politely gave him every information he could, but that in the moſt imperfect manner, as the officer could not ſpeak a word of Engliſh, nor did the lieutenant underſtand Dutch. A baſket of fruit was very kindly ſent by the officer as ſome refreſhment after a long voyage; this was divided among the ſick, who till now were very apprehenſive they were not in port.

On the 2nd of January they got under way and ſailed up to Table Bay with a fine wind from the northward, where, about ten o'clock in the morning, they anchored in water about ſeven fathoms and a half, and moored a cable each way. A meſſage was now received from Governor Van de Graaff, to inform Captain Hunter, that he was heartily welcome to all the articles he wanted, of which there was fortunately great abundance; it was therefore requeſted of the captain that he would ſignify what and how much he ſtood in need of, and orders ſhould be immediately iſſued for the ſupplies to be prepared.

About forty invalids were landed under the care of Mr. Worgan, and comfortable places prepared for the ſick, according to the directions of the captain, who was very anxious for their ſpeedy recovery, as he required the ſervices of all a-board, to return as expeditiouſly as poſſible.

On the 9th, a Dutch India ſhip arrived here, whence it was underſtood that one of the tranſports, the Prince of Wales, and the Borrowdale ſtore-ſhip, had arrived at Rio Janeiro ſingly, in the greateſt diſtreſs on account of the ſevere ſickneſs and diſſolution of ſeveral on board of her; in ſhort, the men were ſo exceedingly weak, that it was with the utmoſt difficulty they could bring their veſſels into a place of ſecurity. On the 19th a Dutch frigate from Batavia likewiſe brought an account of Lieutenant Shortland's arrival at that port, about the 7th of December, 1788, with a ſingle ſhip; the crew had ſuffered ſo much through ſevere ſickneſs, that the majority of them had died upon their paſſage, and the officers were obliged to join their aſſiſtance in ſecuring the veſſels and handing the ſails; but the moſt diſtreſſing part of the information was, that Lieutenant Shortland was neceſſitated to ſink the other ſhip which accompanied him, for the ſake of uniting both crews, which notwithſtanding was ſcarcely ſufficient to man one; had not this been done, neither of the veſſels could have reached Batavia. On his arrival there were only four out of the two crews that were able even to ſtand upon deck.

On the 18th of February as Captain Hunter was preparing to ſet ſail, he was agreeably ſurpriſed by the arrival of Lieutenant Shortland in the Alexander tranſport, which he diſcovered as he was going off from the ſhore coming round Green Point. This interview was productive of great pleaſure on both ſides; the lieutenant had confirmed every thing which the Dutch frigate had imparted relative to his misfortunes; he was almoſt five months on his paſſage to Batavia. Previous to his departure from Port Jackſon, he had been in company with the two veſſels of which the Dutch Indiaman had given an account.

During the captain's ſtay in Table Bay, he experienced much polite attention from the governor and other officers of the ſettlement. On the 20th of February he ſailed for Port Jackſon; having provided about ſix months ſtore of flour for the whole ſettlement, with other neceſſary articles; previous to the embarking of theſe the veſſel had been heeled for the purpoſe of ſtopping the leak, which was attended with great difficulty at firſt, but by the dint of perſeverance and labour was at length accompliſhed. The principal hole, for there were ſeveral ſmall ones, which was about an inch, was carefully ſtopped up with a wooden plug, which was afterwards covered with copper: notwithſtanding all this precaution, the veſſel ſtill made water, it being impoſſible at preſent to remedy its defects.

After leaving the Cape of Good Hope the wind continued for ſeveral days ſouthward, the weather foul and hazy; the truſſel-trees of the main-topmaſt having been ſprung on the 20th, after ſtriking they were unrigged, and new ones fitted; there were now very heavy gales and a tumultuous ſea, the wind from N. N. E. and N. ſtill continuing very unfavourable till the 20th, when it ſhifted weſtward; but when they were ſeizing this opportunity of making all the ſail they could, it ſuddenly ſhifted to the ſouthward, attended with a violent blaſt. Captain Hunter was in hopes, as they were near Van Diemen's Land, to be able to croſs it, and complete his return in a ſhort time; but the blaſt became a tempeſt, the ſea was more tumultuous while the weather was moſt remarkably foul. The next day the fore, main, and mizzen ſtay-ſails were all ſplit by the violence of the wind; on account of this misfortune they were forced to apply the reefed fore-ſail and balanced mizzen, alſo to hand the fore-ſail for ſome time. This tempeſt increaſing inſtead of abating, rendered their ſituation both critical and dangerous; there were three days that they ſaw no ſun, nor a ſtar at night: it having cleared a little in the horizon, about half paſt three in the afternoon, there was land ſeen bearing eaſt; they conſequently wore the ſhip and ſtood to the weſtward; the wind was now S. S. E. ſtill continuing violent. After ſeveral conjectures, fears, and experiments, they found themſelves embayed, the ſea ſwelling in a moſt alarming manner, the weather ſtill foul, and a black gloomy proſpect before them: every one was now ordered to keep on deck; the ſhip carrying all the canvaſs it could poſſibly bear, and upon the appearance of land under the lee, the men were prepared to wear and lay the ſhip's head the other way; ignorant of the part of coaſt they were upon, the deplorable ſituation of the crew can better be conceived than expreſſed. Every man now expected his laſt moment, not knowing what oppoſitions of rocks might be in the way, or how ſoon the ſhip might ſtrike! Notwithſtanding the deſpair and apprehenſions ſo natural upon ſuch a dreadful occaſion, the ſailors behaved with uncommon reſolution, and executed their orders with the greateſt facility. Reaſon in ſpite of horror prevailed; the men knew that if the veſſel was loſt they muſt all periſh alike, for the eſcape of any one individual was impoſſible; impreſſed therefore with this idea, they united all their exertions for the benefit of all. It was wonderful what a preſs of ſail the veſſel bore: the cloſe-reefed fore and top-ſails were ſet over the reefed courſes; the wind was rather favourable near two points, and the veſſel ſeemed ſomewhat better in her preſent ſituation; but the ſwelling of the ſea, the fury of the gale, and the hazineſs of the weather, rendered the proſpect black and melancholy!

Every officer and man were upon the look out. The captain, anxious for the preſervation of thoſe who were with him, exerted his utmoſt to revive their drooping ſpirits: he was anxiouſly looking from the quarter-deck to the leeward; he ſaw, but with ſilence, the looming of a very rocky mountain: this was likewiſe obſerved by the ſailors who were upon the look-out, and who immediately gave the ſignal of land; but the captain very nobly affecting an air of indifference, made light of it, aſſuring them as it was upon the beam it could be productive of no danger: the preſſure of ſail almoſt buried the veſſel in the ſea. After ſome time, and much difficulty, they found themſelves near Taſman's Head, which paſſing, they endeavoured to weather Maria's Iſlands: they were now headed with the wind; which change would have been inevitably fatal before: the taſk of pumping was exceedingly laborious upon the men, but abſolutely neceſſary, as the veſſel made much water. Having, in a moſt wonderful and miraculous manner, accompliſhed their purpoſe of weathering Maria's Iſlands, they ſtood eaſtward, with the hopes of gaining an offing from the coaſt; the veſſel at this time was very weak, as it ſuffered much material damage. The wind now veered to S. E. and E. S. E. which brought them again upon a lee-ſhore; but as the land was within twenty leagues, and the ſtrong gales had ceaſed, their apprehenſions were in a great meaſure abated.

On the 26th of April, the wind became northward, attended with ſtrong gales and violent ſqualls: thus it continued till the 2d of May, when it veered to the ſouthward, then to the eaſtward. They made land on the 6th in the morning, in latitude 33 deg. 30 min. ſouth, and were in ſight of the entrance into Port Jackſon on the 8th. On the 9th they anchored in Sydney Cove, where they found the Supply armed tender.

" Remarks *and* Directions *for ſailing into* Port
" Jackson, *by Captain* John Hunter, *of th*
" *Sirius.*

" IN coming in with Port Jackſon, you will not " immediately diſcover where the harbour is; ſteer " right in for the outer points, for there is not any " thing in the way but what ſhows itſelf by the ſea " breaking on it, except a reef on the ſouth ſhore, " which runs off a ſmall diſtance only: when you " are paſt this reef, and are abreaſt the next point " on the ſame ſide, you will open to the ſouthward " of an extenſive branch of the harbour, into which " you will ſail, taking care to keep the ſhore on " either ſide well on board, for there is a reef which " dries at low-water, and lies very near the mid-" channel, right off the firſt ſandy cove on the eaſt " ſhore: this reef is pretty broad athwart, as well " as up and down the channel, and ſhoals very " gradually: the marks for it are the outer north " point and inner ſouth point touching, Green " Point will then be on, with a remarkable notch " in the back land. To avoid it to the eaſtward, " paſs the inner ſouth head a cable's length from it; " and when you open any part of the ſandy beach " of Camp Cove, haul ſhort in for it until you bring " the inner north head and inner ſouth head on " with each other; that mark will carry you up in " five and ſix fathom: but if you cannot weather " the reef, tack and ſtand into Camp Cove, which " ſhoals gradually. If you paſs to the weſtward of " the reef, ſteer in for Middle Cape, which is ſteep " too; then ſteer up for the next point above it, " on the ſame ſide: when you are that length, you " may take what part of the channel you pleaſe, or " anchor where you like.

" It flows full, and changes a quarter paſt eight,
" Riſes 4 6 neap tide,
" Ditto 6 0 ſpring ditto."

CHAPTER II.

Occurrences during Captain Hunter's abſence—Murder of Cooper Handley—A general Court-Martial convened—Reſult thereof—A Marine loſt—Conſequent ſuppoſition—A Convict puniſhed for Theſt—Return of the Golden Grove—Her diſaſters—Maſter's and Boat's crew's danger—Murder of Thomas Bulmore—Natives in the Small-Pox—Their deplorable ſituation—Several found dead in melancholy attitudes—Two Children and their Fathers (Natives) brought to the Hoſpital—Death of the old Men—Recovery of the Children—Death of Capt. Shea—Six Marines tried for Robbery—Found guilty, and executed—Governor's plan to reconcile the Natives—One of them brought to his houſe by force—Cloathed, and entertained—He becomes familiar—Dines with Captain Hunter—Sickens of the Small-Pox—His Death—A viſit to Broken Bay—Occaſional Remarks—Return to Port Jackſon—Another viſit—Succeſs thereof—Events—The Sail-maker of the Sirius found—His Account.

THE following are the moſt remarkable occurrences which happened at the new ſettlement during the abſence of Capt. Hunter.

On the 4th of October, 1788, Cooper Handley, a convict, who went out with an armed party of marines to gather ſweet tea, and other herbs, ſtrayed away from his party, and being afterwards met by the natives, was murdered. The marines heard the noiſe of the natives, and the groans of Handley, but could not find the place where he was in time to preſerve his life: they purſued the murderers, but did not overtake them. Having returned with his body moſt ſhockingly mutilated, it was in the evening ſent out to be interred, attended by a party of ſoldiers and convicts, according to the command of the governor.

On the 10th there was a general court-martial, convened by his excellency's warrant. As ſoon as the deputy judge-advocate and the members were aſſembled, they all concurred in opinion that though the governor had full power and authority to grant and hold court-martials among regular troops, yet as a corps of marines, amenable to the inſtructions iſſued from the board of admiralty, and under the influence of a particular code of laws, they could not proceed to trial, the ſaid board not having delegated any part of their authority over the marine corps (particularly that of granting and holding court-martials) to the governor, neither did any part of the act of parliament for inſtituting a colony in New South Wales contain directions relative to the ſaid ſubject in any degree: the marine inſtructions, with reſpect to court-martials, ſtate, that no general court-martial can be ordered but by the Lord High Admiral, or the commiſſioners for executing the office; nor any ſentence be carried into execution, until approved of by him or them, unleſs the marines, as in America, ſhould be by act of parliament conſidered as a part of the army, which is not the caſe here.

On the 28th a marine went to gather ſweet tea, and ſome herbs, but never returned, nor could any information of him be ever had; it was ſuſpected, as he departed unarmed, that he was murdered by the natives.

On the 7th of November a convict received five hundred laſhes for ſtealing eight pennyworth of ſoap, which belonged to another convict, according to the ſentence of the criminal-court.

On the 10th the Golden Grove returned from Norfolk Iſland, with timber and ſome other articles for the governor. During her ſtay there, ſo unſafe is every harbour in the whole iſland, ſhe was obliged to cut her cable and ſtand to ſea: the maſter of the ſhip was ſwamped in the ſurf, and his boat's crew and himſelf had nearly periſhed.

Thomas Bulmore, a private marine, died on the 11th, in conſequence of ſome ſevere blows he received from another, who was tried for his life on the 17th, and for want of ſufficient proof acquitted.

Unfortunately the ſmall-pox had found acceſs among the natives, whoſe ſituation therein was exceedingly deplorable. Several of them, men, women, and children, were found dead: it was ſuppoſed, as none of theſe people were ſeen marked with the ſmall-pox, that they were ſtrangers to the diſorder till now, and conſequently unacquainted with any remedies for it; indeed it was very apparent, from the poſitions of thoſe that were dead, that they were deſerted by their friends, who, no doubt, were diſguſted with their appearance. Several were found ſitting on their haunches with their heads ſtooped between their knees, others reclining on rocks or any kind of eminence that offered itſelf; in ſhort, their attitudes were as various as they were melancholy. A woman was found with her face on the ſand between her feet, while her knees were drawn up to her ſhoulders: there were two children, a boy and a girl, of about eight and ten years of age, and two old men, who were ſuppoſed to be their fathers, found in a periſhing ſituation; they were brought to the hoſpital; the two men died in a ſhort time, but the children recovered, and ſeemed very thankful for the attention that was ſhewn them.

Captain Shea, of the marines, died of a galloping conſumption; his loſs was very much regretted. Six marines were tried and found guilty of robbing the public ſtores; it was proved upon trial, that theſe men had been often guilty of this practice, being ſeduced by ſome women convicts with whom they had a connection. Notwithſtanding the loſs of theſe men was very much to be lamented, they were however executed.

The continual attacks, murders, and depredations of the natives, ſo alarmed the governor, that he was reſolved on trying every experiment to conciliate their confidence and friendſhip: he now imagined that by entertaining two or three of theſe natives, cloathing and keeping them entirely as if they were part of his own family, it would in a great meaſure remove their enmity and fears; for this purpoſe Lieutenant Ball, of the Supply, and Lieutenant George Johnſton, were ſent with two boats down the harbour: according to their wiſhes they met a native who was tolerably well made, and about thirty years of age; he was very familiar with the gentlemen, and while they were amuſing him with preſents, one of the ſeamen, according to his inſtructions, whipped a rope round his neck, and inſtantaneouſly dragged him into the boat; the man was exceedingly alarmed; he ſcreamed in ſuch a manner as to aſſemble ſeveral of his friends, who immediately made uſe of their ſpears, but without effect: however, the officers endeavoured to appeaſe him; they removed the rope to his leg, and when they brought him to the governor's houſe, they put an iron upon his leg, in order to prevent his eſcape, and which he was led to believe was an ornament. As the governor and all preſent were particularly attentive to him, he became cheerful, and in time reconciled to his ſituation. His ſuppoſed ornament was ſoon taken away, as it evidently incommoded his leg, and he was permitted to go wherever he pleaſed. The name of this native was Ara-ba-noo; he was remarkably docile, having learned in a ſhort time all the gentlemen's names.

At this time there was a number of huts erected, and the gardens were ſo improved as to promiſe, in due ſeaſon, a very extenſive farm: there was a great quantity of ground already cleared upon Roſe-hill for the cultivation of corn; but the difficulties in bringing cultivation to perfection were almoſt inſurmountable; the want of ſufficient hands to accompliſh the neceſſary labour was, in a great meaſure, the chief cauſe of its being retarded; add to which, the ſcarcity of water, particularly at Roſe-hill, where there is very little, and that little very bad: the corn, when ſown, made a moſt promiſing appearance at firſt; but as ſoon as it attained two or three feet height, it was ſo miſerable as to be worth nothing: indeed if it had been good, the rats, which are a very great plague in this country, would have deſtroyed it.

Captain Hunter, upon his return, having waited on the governor to pay his reſpects, to his no little aſtoniſhment, perceived Ara-ba-noo drinking tea with his excellency and friends; he was very genteely dreſſed, and ſeemed perfectly acquainted with the uſe of a cup and ſaucer. Ara-ba-noo in a very ſhort time learned Captain Hunter's name, and appeared to be remarkably attached to him.

On the 10th of May, 1789, the governor and his family dined with Captain Hunter, alſo Ara-ba-noo, who behaved exceedingly well, and was very loquacious. It was acknowledged by all the preſent company, that he was an agreeable companion.

On the ſucceeding day Ara-ba-noo ſickened of the ſmall-pox. Surgeon White was exceedingly attentive to him, but in ſpite of all his care he died on the 16th, and was univerſally lamented: he was buried, by command of the governor, in a very genteel manner.

The governor, deſirous to explore again ſome parts of the harbour of Broken Bay, made a party on the 6th of June, which conſiſted of himſelf, Captains Hunter, Johnſton, Collins, Surgeon White, Meſſrs. Worgan, Fowell, and a few armed attendants: they landed on the north part of Port Jackſon, and at ſix o'clock in the morning proceeded northward on the ſea-coaſt; previous to this Mr. Kellie was diſpatched with two boats, containing ſuch a quantity of proviſions as they deemed ſufficient.

Their march was at firſt very fatiguing, owing to the roughneſs of the paths, and the ſeveral aſcents of hills: the carriage of their proviſions too, which was no ſmall burthen, rendered their journey ſtill more tireſome.

About four o'clock they reached the ſouth branch of Broken Bay, and were not a little pleaſed with the ſafe arrival of their boats, which contained their ſupplies.

The company was at preſent too much fatigued to go on further: in order to reſt and refreſh themſelves, they pitched their tents, and having been very ſucceſsful at this time in catching fiſh, they made a hearty dinner, and reſted for the remainder of the day.

The next morning they reached Pitt Water, and here they delayed ſo long in exploring this and the adjacent places, that it was afterwards judged too late to proſecute their march, ſo they returned to the place where they had refreſhed themſelves the preceding day, and paſſed this night as before.

The boats crews diſcovered, on their rambles, ſeveral natives almoſt periſhing in the ſmall-pox: particularly a female who was lying on the wet graſs in a moſt miſerable ſituation. The governor and his friends, when informed of her miſery, went to ſee her, made a fire for her, dried the graſs, broiled ſome fiſh and birds which they had ſhot, and gave her refreſhment; the poor wretch appeared exceedingly thankful: they now left her to repoſe herſelf; and having renewed their viſit, found her with an infant lying on the gound; her maternal affection was extremely moving: the gentlemen gave her refreſhments again, and in the morning repeated their kindneſs.

This day, June 8th, the governor and his party embarked in the boats, and croſſed the bay to the north branch: they landed on the weſt ſhore, where they dined; they then took the eaſt ſide, and having met with many mangroves and ſhoals, returned and encamped on the weſt ſhore.

Early on the 9th they took the northward direction, and after rowing about ſeven miles up the head of the harbour, and meeting ſeveral extenſive ſhoals, they approached the north entrance, and pitched their tents for the night: the two ſucceeding days were ſpent in exploring the north harbour, during which time they were very ſucceſsful in catching fiſh, eſpecially a kind of mullet, which was exceedingly good, and on which account the iſland received the name of Mullet. The governor and Capt. Hunter continued their examination for the day, while the reſt of the party remained in the tents. They remained two nights in Mullet Iſland.

Early the next morning they proceeded to examine a point of high land, which they ſuppoſed an iſland; in this they were not deceived: they had the ſatisfaction alſo of making freſh diſcoveries. Having pitched their tents in the beſt place they could find, (but by no means a deſireable ſituation) they refreſhed and reſted themſelves: they did not renew their examination the next day till rather late, on account of the hazineſs of the weather; time, therefore, did not admit of much penetration: the next day was equally diſagreeable; they therefore made for Pitt Water, where they encamped. The governor ſought the mother and child whom he had relieved in this place; but as they were gone, he was in hopes ſhe was ſo well recovered as to be no longer diſguſting to her friends.

The wind being northerly, they ſailed at midnight for home, and early the next morning proceeded by land: about three o'clock they reached the north cove of Port Jackſon.

Another viſit to Broken Bay was undertaken on the 28th of June, by the ſame party, with the additional number of five marines. In the courſe of this expedition nothing material occurred, as they were only reviewing the places which they had ſeen before. They met with two little children at Mullet Iſland, almoſt ſtarved to death, who were very grateful for the relief which was beſtowed them: they alſo met with ſeveral dead natives on the way; many of whom were ſo waſted, that they were meer ſkeletons. After a fortnight's ramble, Captain Hunter's ſhoes were entirely worn out with the roughneſs of the ground, ſo that he was determined to return to Broken Bay, where the boats were waiting; the reſt of the party, except Capt. Collins, who wiſhed to join Captain Hunter, were inclined to walk about the head of the north-weſt harbour. While Captains Hunter and Collins were about entering into this determination, two of the gentlemen, who were deſirous to croſs through the wood to the Sirius, where there were about 400 yards of water. They accordingly made preparations for ſwimming: each tied his ſhirt, breeches, and ſhoes, up in a handkerchief, and threw the bundle acroſs his ſhoulders; then, having taken a glaſs of rum, they plunged in, and ſwam for the oppoſite ſhore; but one of the gentlemen, being ſuddenly ſeized with the cramp, was obliged to drop his bundle, which was conſequently loſt. They made as much expedition as poſſible to go on board the ſhip, for fear, on account of being ſo long naked, they might get a ſevere cold. They ſent a boat for the other gentlemen, who were very happy at its appearance, being at this time exceedingly fatigued.

During this expedition, the ſudden report of a great gun cauſed an alarm among the gentlemen; and as it was naturally ſuſpected to proceed from ſome perſon who had gone aſtray in the woods, it was repeatedly anſwered. Another report awakened their attention, and they all fired ſeveral times together; they ſtill imagined that they heard an equal repetition of the reſponſes, which ſounded as afar off. By perſeverance, they approached the place whence the firings proceeded; and as they frequently called out together, they heard at laſt a faint voice at ſome little diſtance; this encouraged them to go on, and they ſoon diſcovered the loſt perſon, who proved to be one Peter White, ſail-maker to the Sirius, who had been abſent four days. He was ſo exhauſted with grief and hunger, that he could ſcarcely ſtand: he had only four ounces of biſcuit when he left the veſſel, ſome of which he had ſtill remaining. It was a long time before he was quite recovered. The gentlemen gave him refreſhments. As ſoon as he was able to ſpeak, he told them, that the flint of his gun was ſo bad, he could not get it to ſtrike fire all the preceding day, when he wanted to ſhoot ſome birds for his ſupport: on the approach of night, being very cold, he endeavoured to ſtrike fire with it again; and notwithſtanding he had laboured ſo long in vain before, yet now he fortunately ſucceeded; the next day he could do no good with it; but when he wanted to anſwer the gentlemen's firing, it never miſſed. Such was the wonderful preſervation of this man, who was truly ſenſible of the great mercies of Providence, convinced that, had it not been for divine interpoſition, he muſt have inevitably periſhed!

What tho' adverſities bear 'gainſt us hard,
Still heav'n can ſend relief, as well as guard!

CHAPTER III.

Defects of the Sirius repaired—Removed, &c. from Sydney Cove—Survey of Broken Bay—The ſame of Botany Bay—Allowance of Proviſions curtailed—John Mara found—His melancholy ſituation—Manner in which he was loſt—Francis Hill loſt—Searched for in vain—Conjectures thereupon—Hoſtile diſpoſition of the Natives curbed—Sirius removed again to Sydney Cove—Two Natives ſeized—Meeting between them and the Children—Deſcription of them—One of them meditates his eſcape—Effects it—Remarks and Directions for ſailing into Botany Bay—Alſo for ſailing into Broken Bay.

THE Sirius had now undergone ſome neceſſary repairs: Captain Phillip, who examined her, declared ſhe was in a very weak condition; her upper works were particularly defective. The carpenters were continually on board her; and the crew were chiefly employed in cutting down timber for her uſe. At this time ſhe lay in Careening Cove, a convenient part on the north ſide of the harbour; her removal from Sydney Cove being judged abſolutely neceſſary.

Captain Hunter, agreeable to the wiſhes of the governor, (while the Sirius was repairing) went with a party of the gentlemen belonging to the ſettlement to make a ſurvey of Broken Bay. This was in the middle of Auguſt. Their examination continued about ſixteen days; during which time they penetrated and ſounded every place with the utmoſt attention. About the ſame time (in September) they took a ſurvey of Botany Bay, and had a very delightful excurſion, as the weather at this time was moſt remarkably pleaſant.

On the 1ſt of November, orders were iſſued to curtail the allowance of proviſions one-third. This was deemed abſolutely neceſſary, there being at preſent only a ſupply for five months; and though proviſions were ſhortly expected from England, yet it was impoſſible to tell what delays or accidents might attend thoſe ſtore-ſhips. About this time one John Mara, the gunner's mate, was miſſing; he was frequently ſearched for, but in vain; it was ſuppoſed that he either loſt himſelf in the woods, or had been murdered by the natives: he was, however, found by Captain Hunter, the third day after his abſence, ſitting upon a rock; but in ſuch a languiſhing ſtate, that he was ſcarcely able to attend the captain to the boat. It ſeems, this man, having been put on ſhore one evening, to fill ſome caſks with water, was overcome with the grog he drank, and fell faſt aſleep near the ſtream: he did not awake till it was night-time, when, being very much alarmed, he imprudently endeavoured to come out of the wood; but, on account of the darkneſs of the night, unfortunately went further into it He continued rambling for two days, full of deſpair and apprehenſion, particularly as he was unarmed, and conſequently in danger of being attacked by the natives. The third day he had reached the water-ſide; but was ſo exhauſted, that, had it not been for the timely diſcovery of Capt. Hunter, he muſt certainly have died.

On the 6th of November, Mr. Francis Hill, one of the maſter's mates, loſt himſelf in an attempt to walk round the Sirius, though he had already accompanied the gentlemen in this walk the three preceding days. Parties were ſent in ſearch for him, but without effect; and as he could never be heard of, it was concluded that the natives had deſtroyed him, eſpecially as they were ſo hoſtilely inclined of late, that ſeveral have found it neceſſary to fire in their own defence, and wound two or three of them, which ſomewhat curbed this diſpoſition, and created a proper awe.

On the 7th of November, the Sirius was moved back to Sydney Cove; and on the 25th Lieutenant Bradley, by command of the governor, went again in ſearch of a native or two, in order to be domeſticated, as Ara-ba-noo was, that the Engliſh and natives might be thereby reconciled. The two children, who had been preſerved from the ſmall-pox, were accounted too young as yet to promote this deſired reconciliation; they were however very happy in their ſituation, and ſeemed to comprehend ſome of the Engliſh language. As the lieutenant and his party approached the north part of the harbour, according to their wiſhes they met with two natives; theſe men ſeemed very cheerful and familiar, nor was it any difficult matter to ſecure them: they were however very much alarmed upon being ſeized, and made all the reſiſtance in their power: their hands were untied, upon which their fears ſeemed to diminiſh; and when conducted to the governor, the kind treatment they received removed entirely their apprehenſions. As ſoon as the infant natives perceived them, they expreſſed a deal of joy, and called them both by their names: they likewiſe knew the children, whom they called A-ba-roo (the girl) and Nan-bar-ry (the boy). One of theſe natives, as was underſtood from the children, was a diſtinguiſhed chief; his name was Co-al-by, about 35 years of age; the other was called Ba-na-lang, about 25; and it was ſuppoſed that Ba-na-lang was under ſome reſtraint in the preſence of Co-al-by, as he was very ſilent whenever the chief looked at him, and apparently ſubmiſſive to his will.

On the evening of the 12th of December, when it was very dark, theſe two natives and their keepers were at ſupper: Co-al-by was only pretending to eat, as he was now meditating his eſcape at the outſide of the door, the reſt being within. Having by ſome means looſened the rope from the iron ſhackle which was rivetted on his leg, he inſtantaneouſly jumped over the paling of the yard, and eluded all ſearch. At this time he was very genteelly dreſſed, ſo that the governor was exceedingly diſpleaſed with his keeper. Ba-na-lang, however, became more lively and familiar, after the abſence of Co-al-by.

Remarks *and* Directions *for ſailing into* BOTANY BAY, *by Captain* JOHN HUNTER, *of the Sirius.*

"The anchorage in this bay is extenſive, and the paſſage into it eaſy. There is a cluſter of rocks, which lie S. S. E. about two cables length from a little bare iſland, on the north ſhore; on which the ſea frequently breaks very high; but if you keep Cape Banks open, you will avoid them. Both ſhores are bold to, till you come thus high. A little above Point Southerland (ſouth ſhore) is another cluſter of rocks, which to avoid, in turning, keep the land below this point open: from both the north and ſouth ſides, and from the bottom of the bay, the flats run off a great diſtance, from four to fifteen feet water. This river, in ſome parts, has good depth, and that near and within its entrance; but higher up it is all ſhoal water, and full of knowles of ſand. It is only to be navigated by boats."

Remarks *and* Directions *for ſailing into* BROKEN BAY, *by the ſame.*

"The entrance of Broken Bay lies in latitude 33 deg. 34 min. ſouth, and longitude 151 deg. 27 min. eaſt; the bay is large and clear; the diſtance, from north to ſouth head, is two miles, and the depth is eight, ten, and twelve fathoms; but as you run up the bay it ſhoals to ſix, ſeven, and five fathoms. Juſt within the north head of the bay is the entrance of the northern branch, which, from the ſhoalneſs of the water, is only navigable for boats, or ſmall veſſels; the channel going in is very narrow, occaſioned by a long ſpit of ſand, which extends from a low ſandy point on the weſt ſide of the entrance, and on which, when the wind is from the eaſtward, the ſea breaks very high. A little within the ſouth head of the bay is the entrance of the Southern Branch, or Pitt Water; this is a good harbour, though the entrance is rendered rather narrow by a ſhoal bank, which extends from the eaſtern point full two-thirds acroſs; keep the weſt ſhore on board, which is pretty bold, and is a high, ſteep, rocky point, and ſteer right up the branch; three fathoms is the moſt you will have at low water, and that depth is only in the narrows, which are of very ſhort extent, for as you run up you very ſoon deepen to four, five, ſix, and eight fathoms; to the ſhoal which narrows the entrance, it is very gradual ſoundings. When you are above the ſecond point on the weſt ſhore, you have good depth of water, and good room; you may run up in mid-channel, without fear; both ſhores are pretty bold to, except off the points, from ſome of which it is ſhoal a ſmall diſtance: in this branch there are ſeveral coves, in which a ſhip might lighten and careen; there is alſo freſh water in various parts of this harbour, with wood in abundance, and fiſh may be caught in all the ſandy bays. The entrance of this branch is divided from the S. W. arm by ſeveral rocky points; the land over them high and ſteep; between which are ſome ſmall ſandy bays; and right off the mouth of this arm is a very high rocky iſland, of but ſmall extent; its eaſtern end is very high and perpendicular: this iſland is a good mark, for any part of the bay may be known, with certainty, by the ſituation of it, which the chart will point out. If a ſtranger were coming in here for ſhelter in a gale of wind, I would recommend his puſhing up the ſouth-weſt arm, and ſteering in for the iſland, which is now called Mount Elliot, from its ſimilarity to the north end of Gibraltar Rock: you may paſs on either ſide, but the ſouth ſide is faireſt for going up the S. W. arm; keep mid-channel between the iſland and ſouth ſhore: this ſhore is ſo bold, that you may run within two cables length of it. In your way up you will perceive a branch on the north ſide, which runs up north-weſt;

“ when thus high, you are above a bank or middle ground, on which the leaſt water is 16 feet; you may, by keeping near the ſhore, paſs on either ſide of this ſhoal, which has gradual ſoundings to it; the ſouth ſide has moſt room, and deepeſt water; the north ſide has five fathoms: when above this, you may keep in the middle, if you wiſh to go higher, and the leaſt water will be five or ſix fathoms for ſeveral miles higher: from this ſouth-weſt arm ſeveral branches extend, moſt of which have good depth of water, but the chart will be the beſt guide. If you wiſh to enter the north-weſt branch, enter it by keeping the larboard ſhore on board; and for ſome diſtance up, as from the ſtarboard ſhore, a ſhoal extends one-third of the diſtance over.”

CHAPTER IV.

An Alarm—Sirius and Supply ſent to Norfolk Iſland—Previous Account of the Progreſs made in Norfolk Iſland—Commencement of that Settlement—The Commandant's Commiſſion read—Convicts addreſſed—Storehouſe and temporary Dwellings erected—Wheat ſown—Regulations for the preſervation of good Order—Robberies—Puniſhments—Buſineſs retarded by Accidents—Seven poiſoned by eating ſome Beans—Their Recovery—A ſerious Misfortune—Murmuring among the Convicts—One puniſhed for Sedition—Allowance of Proviſions curtailed—Seaſonable Supply—Sad Misfortune—Queſtions from the Governor—Anſwers from the Commandant—Encouragement to the Convicts—A Letter from the Governor publicly read—Number of Settlers—All places explored—Name of the firſt Male Child that was born—Cockſwain of the Cable loſt—Found—His miſerable ſituation—Articles of War read—Conſpiracy amongſt the Convicts diſcovered—Their Scheme—Diſſimulation—Commandant's conſequent Addreſs to the Convicts—Orders publiſhed—Oath of Allegiance indiſcriminately adminiſtered—A violent Hurricane—Much Damage—Additional Number of Convicts arrived—Arrival of Lieutenant John Creſſwell, and fourteen Privates—A Female Convict whipped, and re-whipped—A Convict deſirous to ſettle in the Iſland, after his time of Tranſportation—The Commandant's Indulgence—Lieut. Creſſwell's Houſe erected—Freſh Orders for the preſervation of Harmony, &c.

THE time having now expired when the ſtore-ſhips which were expected from England ſhould have arrived, a general conſternation took place; their exhauſted ſtate of proviſions rendered this diſappointment very alarming. The Governor, ſeeing the neceſſity of dividing the ſettlement, propoſed ſending an additional number from Port Jackſon to Norfolk Iſland. Orders were therefore iſſued forth for the preparation of the Sirius and Supply to execute this ſalutary deſign, under the direction of Captain Hunter.

It will not be amiſs firſt of all to appriſe the reader of the progreſs which had been made in Norfolk Iſland, by thoſe few perſons who were ſent there in February 1788, with Lieut. King, as mentioned in the third chapter of our firſt book.

As ſoon as this party had landed, Lieutenants King and Ball explored the iſland, for the purpoſe of fixing on the moſt commodious place for the new ſettlement. Lieut. King gave the preference to the ſhore cloſe to the beach, which was overſpread with iris; within which was an impenetrable foreſt, remarkable for its good ſoil: here the ſettlement was commenced, but on account of the ſcarcity of hands the progreſs of building was very ſlow.

After divine ſervice on the firſt Sunday, which was performed by Lieut. King himſelf, his commiſſion from the governor was publicly read, and the uſual ceremony took place. He then addreſſed the convicts, in a ſpeech of equal tendency with Governor Phillip's on the ſame occaſion; and every man received that employment which was moſt adapted to his abilities. Inſtead of a bell, to ſummon them to church, a man was appointed to make a noiſe on the head of an empty caſk.

In the ſpace of about two months the ſtorehouſe was erected, and in the courſe of a little time temporary dwellings for the people: the garden-ground was alſo turned up, and a ſmall quantity of wheat ſown.

As it required no little rigour to keep the convicts within bounds, who were continually neglecting their buſineſs, and idleing thoſe who were diſpoſed to labour; the commandant, for the preſervation of good order and regularity, thought it highly eſſential to eſtabliſh a certain number of regulations, and enforce a ſtrict attention thereto. One Sunday therefore, after performing divine ſervice as uſual, he read to them the following orders.

“As it is highly neceſſary, for the preſervation of good order, regularity, and cleanlineſs, to eſtabliſh certain rules and regulations, the following are to be obſerved, and performed with the ſtricteſt attention.

“I. No perſon is to abſent himſelf from public worſhip, which will begin every Sunday morning at eleven o'clock, in the commandant's houſe; when every one will come clean and orderly, and behave themſelves devoutly.

“II. The hours of work are as follow, until further orders: to begin work at day-light, and work till half paſt ſeven; at half paſt eight, to work again until half paſt eleven; and then to work again at two until ſun-ſet.

“III. In order to encourage the cultivation of gardens, every one will have the Saturdays to clear away and cultivate gardens for themſelves; and thoſe who are induſtrious will be encouraged, but thoſe who miſapply that indulgence will be deprived of it.

“IV. On application, at the proper time of the year, ſeeds will be diſtributed to thoſe who have cleared away garden-ground; and thoſe who raiſe the greateſt quantity of ſeeds and vegetables will be encouraged and rewarded.

“V. The women are to ſweep round the houſes or tents every morning, and to cook the victuals for the men; and every perſon is ſtrictly forbid cleaning any fiſh or fowls in or near the houſes, but to go to the ſea-ſide for that purpoſe.

“VI. Every perſon is ſtrictly forbid going near Turtle Bay; and thoſe who are found in it, or going there, will be inſtantly and ſeverely puniſhed.

“VII. The women are to collect the dirty linen belonging to the men every Friday, and to return each man his proper linen, waſhed and mended, on the Sunday morning.

“VIII. No perſon is to cut down or deſtroy any banana tree.

“IX. Exchanging or ſelling cloaths by the convicts, is ſtrictly forbid. As their cloathing is the property of the crown, they are not to diſpoſe of it. A diſobedience of this order will be deemed a theft, and meet with a ſuitable puniſhment. It is recommended to every one to be careful of their cloathing and bedding, as accidents may happen which may prevent a ſpeedy ſupply.

“X. Great care is to be taken of all the tools; each man taking his axe or hoe to his tent, or delivering them to the ſtore-keeper, that they may not be injured by the weather.

“XI. As the future welfare of every perſon on

“ this iſland depends on their good behaviour, it is “ recommended to them to perſevere in that willing “ diſpoſition to work which they have hitherto ſhewn; “ and, above all, to be honeſt and obliging towards “ each other, which will recommend them to thoſe “ who may have it in their power, and who have a “ wiſh and inclination to ſerve them: but the diſ- “ honeſt, or idle, may not only aſſure themſelves of “ being totally excluded from any preſent or future “ indulgences, but alſo that they will be chaſtiſed, “ either by corporal puniſhment on the iſland, or “ be ſent to Port Jackſon, to be tried by a criminal “ court there.”

Notwithſtanding the menace in the laſt article, ſeveral were detected in robberies. John Batchelor, one of the marines, ſtole ſome rum out of the commandant's tent: he was puniſhed with three dozen laſhes, and the quantity of rum which he had taken deducted from his allowance. A convict boy, about fifteen years of age, was guilty of the ſame theft: he received an hundred laſhes. Another convict was found ſtealing a hatch of eggs from under a hen, which was ſitting on them: he received thirty-ſix laſhes.

In order to facilitate the buſineſs, every artiſt was employed; but ſome unforeſeen accidents retarded the work, particularly a duſt which fell from the trees, and occaſioned many ſore eyes; one man was entirely blinded by it; beſides ſeveral were laid up with violent colds. There were alſo two ſawyers, a carpenter, and three convicts, who were poiſoned by eating ſome beans, which they boiled, and afterwards fried with butter: they were ſeized with violent vomitings, and pains in their ſtomach; however by the aſſiſtance of the ſurgeon, who applied a large quantity of ſweet oil, they recovered, but continued ſo weak that they could not work for ſeveral days: theſe beans were certainly the ſame kind of thoſe which had been eaten by Governor Phillip and Surgeon White, on one of their excurſions, when they were ſeized with the like complaint as before mentioned.

A very ſerious misfortune attended the live ſtock: five ewes died of the ſcab, and two of the ſows periſhed with eating a poiſonous herb. There remained one ewe, one goat, two ſows, two boars, four hens, one cock, three ducks, and one drake.

As there was ſome murmuring among the convicts in reſpect to the receipt of proviſions, one of them received forty laſhes for uttering ſeveral threatening expreſſions of a ſeditious tendency: theſe men were ſo inconſiderate, that they did not underſtand the neceſſity of ſtinted allowances, though the commandant took every opportunity to recommend œconomy.

About five months after their arrival, ſeveral huts were finiſhed. Proviſions, at this time, were ſo low, that the common allowances were curtailed; but the ſeaſonable arrival of the Supply (which by *ſupplying* fully anſwered her title) was the occaſion of much joy. A ſad misfortune, however, damped this pleaſure; the loſs of Mr. Cunningham, (as mentioned in a former chapter) with a few others, who having been diſpatched to aſſiſt the Supply's boat in caſe of danger, were ſwept away weſtward by the ſide, and overſet by a heavy ſurf. They were all loſt, except one man, who was a convict, and had narrowly eſcaped.

For the reader's better information it will be neceſſary to ſubjoin the commandant's anſwers to the governor's ſeveral queſtions, which he received and returned by the Supply: the following is a correct copy of both.

Queſtions *by* GOVERNOR PHILLIP, *addreſſed to* P. G. KING, *Eſq; Superintendant and Commandant of the ſettlement of* NORFOLK ISLAND.

1. “ IN what time do you think the iſland will “ be able to ſupport the people you have with you, “ independent of ſupplies from this ſettlement?

2. “ Do you wiſh to have more people ſent you, “ and what number of men and women do you wiſh “ to have, in addition to thoſe you have already?

3. “ In what time do you think the iſland will be “ able to maintain the additional number of people “ you wiſh to have ſent you?

4. “ What ground have you in cultivation?

5. “ Have you diſcovered the flax plant?

6. “ How many acres of clear ground have you “ found in the iſland?

7. “ Have you any place round the iſland at which “ a veſſel of thirty or forty tons can remain at an- “ chor in ſecurity all the year round?

8. “ How far will it be poſſible to load any ſhip “ hereafter with ſpars for ſhips of the line: I mean “ in reſpect to the great difficulty I am told there is “ to land any thing on the iſland, or to take any “ thing off?

9. “ How does your ſtock thrive, and what does “ the iſland produce?

10. “ What live ſtock do you wiſh to have ſent “ you?

11. “ Are thoſe who are with you ſatisfied, or do “ they wiſh to be relieved?

12. “ What weather have you in general?

13. “ What are the prevailing winds?

14. “ Have you been at the ſmall iſlands?

15. Are there any animals on the iſland, and what “ kind are they?

16. “ Have you found any lime or chalk there?

17. “ Have you been ſupplied with fiſh?”

Anſwers *to the above* Queſtions, *by* LIEUT. KING, *addreſſed to* ARTHUR PHILLIP, *Eſq; Capt. General and Governor in chief in and over the territory called* NEW SOUTH WALES.

1. “ From the excellence of the ſoil, and the “ preſent appearances, the iſland will produce more “ than a ſufficiency of grain in two years: animal “ food depends on the ſupply and breed of ſtock; “ and cloathing on the flax-plant being brought to “ work.

2. “ With twenty more men, and women in pro- “ portion excluſive, I ſhould be able to make a little “ progreſs in clearing and cultivating the ground.

3. “ I think in two years, but in three at moſt, “ as anſwered by the firſt queſtion.

4. “ Two acres and an half in barley, and one “ acre in garden-ground: in September I ſhall have “ an acre in Indian corn and rice.

5. “ Yes: ſome bundles of the flax-plant, which “ I put into water on the 17th of March, were taken “ up the 27th of July; when we found that the thick “ vegetable of the fibres had rotted away, but ſtill “ they were covered with an hard woody ſubſtance, “ from which we have ineffectually tried to ſeparate “ the flaxy part, which I have no doubt would make “ good cordage, canvas, and linen, as it appears to “ be of a fine and ſtrong texture. Some lines were “ made of it, which were tolerably ſtrong and good; “ but the want of a method to ſeparate the woody “ part from the flax, will be a great hindrance to its “ being made uſeful.

6. “ Not a yard ſquare.

7. “ None; without removing to the lee ſide of “ the iſland, as the wind changes. Anchorage is “ good all round the iſland, as the bottom is a coral “ ſand: at about two miles from the land, the circular “ depth is 22 fathoms. An harbour might be made, “ by cutting a channel through the reef about 400 “ feet long; but it would be neceſſary to blow up “ ſome ſunken rocks, to facilitate the entry: if it “ ſhould ever be thought proper to do this, five “ veſſels of ſeven feet draught might lie all the year “ round in ſecurity within the reef; they will not “ be able to enter but in the fineſt weather, with the “ wind from N. E. to N. W. and then they muſt “ warp in; perhaps leſs difficulty will be found when “ I am informed of the ſtate of the weather during “ the ſummer months.

8. "I cannot anſwer this queſtion ſo fully as I could wiſh, until I am acquainted with the ſtate of the weather during the ſummer months. In fine weather, with the wind at N. E. ſpars of any dimenſions may be ſent off from Sydney Bay, by mooring a boat without the reef, and hauling the ſpars off. I have great reaſon to ſuppoſe anchorage will be very ſafe off Sydney Bay in the ſummer. I think veſſels might be built and launched in Ball Bay; and when the flax-plant can be brought to work, cordage and ſails can be made of the fineſt and ſtrongeſt ſort.

9. "Of the ſtock I brought with me, five ewes are dead with the ſcab, and two ſows poiſoned; the reſt are all very thriving, and likely to do well. The productions of the iſland are, timber for the conſtruction of veſſels, pines for maſting them, and, when the flax-plant can be worked, a ſufficiency of cordage for the navy of Great-Britain, which needs no cultivation, as the iſland abounds with it, and freſh leaves ſhoot from the roots. Pigeons, parrots, parroquets, and other birds, are in abundance: the ſea abounds with fiſh, and probably we may have turtle during the ſummer months. A number of banana trees have been found on the iſland.

10. "Stock of any kind would be acceptable for breeding. I have no ſhe-goats. The leaves of the trees and underwood afford ample and wholeſome food for many animals, and the fern-tree, which is very plentiful, is very good food for hogs.

11. "Every one is ſatisfied, and no perſon wiſhes to be relieved.

12. "During the months of March and April, we had very fine weather; ſince when it has been variable; and when the wind has been at S. and S. W. the air was raw and cold. The full and change of the moon has generally been accompanied with very heavy gales of wind and torrents of rain, from the N. E. or S. W. both of which have been very violent at times. We have had no thunder or lightning, nor ice.

13. "The winds have been variable; weſterly winds appear to be moſt frequent during the winter, and I have great reaſon to ſuppoſe eaſterly winds are conſtant during the ſummer.

14. "I have been round Nepean Iſland once, but could not land on it, the wind being weſterly, which made a great break in the ſmall ſandy bay which lies on the S. W. ſide of that iſle. My not having men to row, and the uncertainty of the weather, has prevented my going to Phillip Iſle.

15. "None but rats, which are deſtructive, and have been very numerous; but now they are much thinned.

16. "None.

17. "Fiſh in great numbers, and of a large ſize, abound all round the iſland. Some turtle were caught ſoon after I landed; but the approach of cold weather drove them off. I have not been able to ſend the boat off ſo often as I wiſhed, not having men to row; but when ſhe has gone out, a plentiful ſupply of fiſh has been obtained."

The time was now chiefly employed in erecting huts; as an encouragement to the convicts, they had permiſſion to build houſes for themſelves, from the time of landing until the 30th of October: thoſe of the beſt characters were allowed to build theirs in the vale, and to clear away the adjoining ground for their own uſe. A letter from the governor to the commandant was publicly read, enjoining him to make regular reports of the convicts, particularly of ſuch whoſe conduct was reprehenſible; and ſetting forth, that ſuch who were content to remain as ſettlers, after the limited time of tranſportation, ſhould have every encouragement; and further advantages be given to all ſuch, who not being convicts, are ſtill willing to become inhabitants of the ſettlement.

The preſent ſettlers conſiſted of a midſhipman, ſurgeon's firſt mate, aſſiſtant ſurgeon, three ſeamen, a carpenter, ſerjeant, corporal, ſix private marines, 29 male convicts, 17 female ditto, two children. Total 64.

Every opportunity was taken of exploring the iſland, and all adjacent places: Ball Bay, Sydney Bay, Mount Pitt, Nepean Iſland, &c. The firſt male child that was born on this iſland (Jan. 8th, 1789,) was chriſtened Norfolk. On the 18th of January the cockſwain of the cable, who had been loſt in the woods for four days, as he was returning from Ball Bay, was found by a party who were out on purpoſe, naked and lacerated; he was ſo exhauſted, that they were obliged to carry him home: he kept his bed for ſeveral days.

Irregularities among the convicts ſtill continuing, the articles of war were read to them; the next day Robert Webb, a ſeaman belonging to the Sirius, and Elizabeth Anderſon, a convict, diſcovered a conſpiracy among the convicts, who had entered into a ſcheme to take poſſeſſion of the public ſtores, ſecure either the Supply, Royal Grove, or any other veſſel that came in their way, and make their eſcape out of the iſland. It appeared, upon a ſtrict examination, that all the convicts (except two rope-makers and a carpenter) were concerned in this diabolical ſcheme, which had been planned on their paſſage from Port Jackſon to Norfolk Iſland; but, in order to evade ſuſpicion, they teſtified every apparent ſatisfaction with their commandant's authority, who in conſequence thereof was too indulgent to them. There was only one of them, Thomas Watts, who behaved (before this diſcovery) unruly and abuſive: he received 24 laſhes, for refuſing to work. The ringleaders, Samuel Picket and William Francis, were put in irons; and the ſucceeding Sunday, after prayers, the commandant thus addreſſed the convicts:

"If you will vouchſafe to conſider ſeriouſly for a few moments, you muſt certainly become truly ſenſible of the abſurdity of your plan, even ſuppoſing that you did make yourſelves maſters of a veſſel: you muſt have encountered the worſt of dangers, which in all probability would have been fatal to the whole banditti; then, when too late, you would have repented of having left behind thoſe advantages you might have enjoyed in this iſland, if honeſt and induſtrious. Let me then, I conjure you, for your own ſakes, to remove all impious ideas; the execution of which muſt be your ruin: let your future conduct wipe away the preſent impropriety of your behaviour. I ſhall always be happy to encourage and countenance thoſe who are honeſt, regular, and pains-taking; but all of the contrary deſcription ſhall be made dreadful and ſevere examples. Such who ſteal and plunder the gardens and grounds, ſhall ever meet with juſt puniſhment."

After this Addreſs, the following Orders were publiſhed:

1. "The commandant ſtrictly forbids any officer, ſoldier, free perſon, or convict, male or female, ever abſenting themſelves from the camp or town, for ten minutes together, without having firſt obtained leave from the officer charged with the guard, who will obtain the commandant's leave, on a ſlate which will be kept in the guard-houſe for that purpoſe.

2. "Every perſon returning from that leave is to acquaint the officer of the guard of their return.

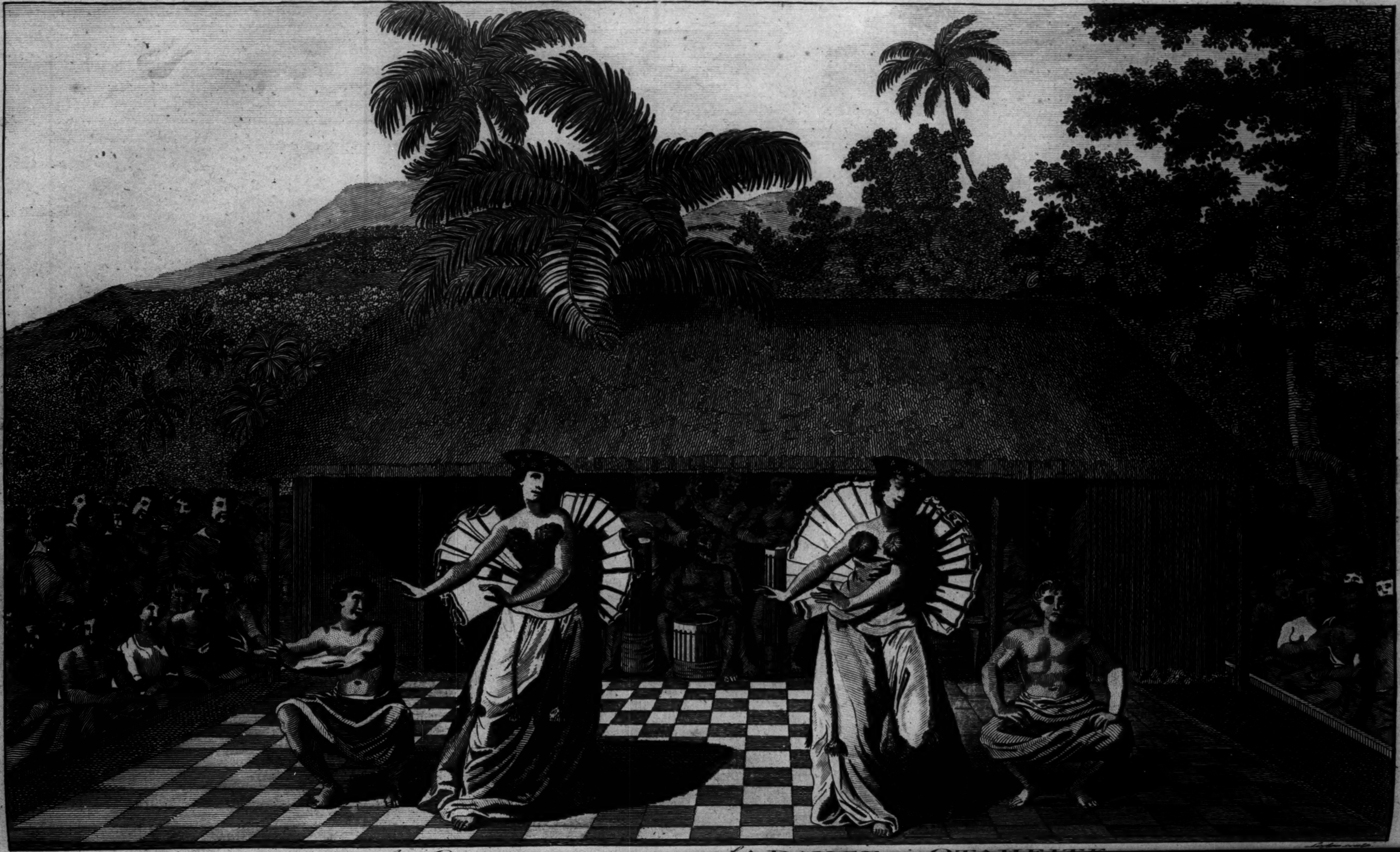
3. "Every convict who is obſerved to go over the hill to the farm, without having obtained leave, or going to work there, will be fired at by the centinel.

4. "The convicts, and not more than three together, are to build houſes for themſelves at their leiſure hours, in ſuch places as will be pointed out.

5. "No perſon, for the future, will be ſuffered to live out of the camp.

BRITISH
7 FE 40
MUSEUM

London Published by Alexr. Hogg at the Kings Arms No. 16 Paternoster Row.



Webber delin.

An Exact Representation of A DANCE in OTAHEITE

6. “ John Thompſon, and Samuel Rickett, are “ diſpoſſeſſed of their garden-ground, in conſe- “ quence of their ill-behaviour.”

After this, the oaths of allegiance were adminiſtered to all the free people indiſcriminately, in preſence of the convicts.

About the latter end of February a violent hurricane was the occaſion of much damage. Several had a very narrow eſcape of their lives, owing to the fall of many of the trees, which meaſured 180 feet in length, and were carried to a conſiderable diſtance. The ſtores were very much hurt: a fine Engliſh ſow, and a litter of ſeven pigs, belonging to the commandant, and three ſows and two boars belonging to the crown, periſhed by the falling of a tree upon the hog-ſtye.

An additional number of convicts arrived in the Supply, which now encreaſed the before-mentioned number of inhabitants by thirty: they ſtill continued irregular, and inclined to plunder; on which account corporal puniſhment was inflicted upon every detection.

Lieut. John Creſſwell, and 14 privates, arrived here in June: the governor had ordered the lieutenant to be under the command of Lieut. King; and in caſe of the preſent commander's death, or abſence, the government of the iſland was to devolve on him.

A female convict, who received fifty laſhes for a defraud, received double the number the ſucceeding day, for a ſimilar offence. Notwithſtanding all theſe exemplary puniſhments, they ſtill continued their wicked courſe, ſome few excepted, who were accordingly rewarded for their good behaviour.

Some of the convicts, whoſe time of tranſportation was expired, were ſatisfied to remain ſettlers: one in particular, Richard Phillimore, who was a ſober induſtrious man, after a month's conſideration, which the commandant gave him, was perfectly ſatisfied to remain in the iſland; he had his choice of the ground to reſide on, and a ſow with young and ſome poultry given him by the commandant.

A houſe for Lieut. Creſſwell was erected; and, for the preſervation of harmony and regularity, the commandant read the following orders, after divine ſervice on Sunday the 16th of Auguſt:

I. “ All perſons on the iſland are regularly to “ attend muſter and divine ſervice, unleſs prevented “ by ſickneſs: a diſobedience of this order will be “ puniſhed, by extra-work, or by ſtopping a day's “ proviſions for the firſt offence; which, if repeated, “ will be puniſhed by corporal chaſtiſement.

II. “ No perſons are to abſent themſelves from “ their quarters, either by night or day, except they “ have obtained leave, or are going to their reſpective work; and if any one is obſerved lurking “ about after the watch is ſet, he will be fired at “ by the centinel.

III. “ The working hours are to be regularly “ attended to, and all perſons abſent from their “ work, after the drum beats for that purpoſe, will “ loſe a portion of the time they may ſave from “ their taſks; and, in caſe of a ſecond offence, they “ will be ſeverely puniſhed.

IV. “ The taſks will be continued as uſual, and “ the time ſaved by the gangs is at their own diſ- “ poſal: thoſe who diſtinguiſh themſelves by em- “ ploying their time in cultivating their gardens, “ and clearing ground for their own uſe, will meet “ with encouragement and reward.

V. “ If the overſeers, or the greateſt part of any “ gang, ſhould have reaſon to complain of the idle- “ neſs of any one man belonging to that gang, and “ the complaint ſhould be found juſt, the offender “ will be ſeverely puniſhed.

VI. “ Thoſe who render themſelves unable to “ work by their neglect or obſtinacy, in not build- “ ing themſelves warm huts, or who cut themſelves “ through careleſſneſs, will have a part of their pro- “ viſions ſtopped until they are able to go to work “ again.

VII. “ All the tools and utenſils are to be returned “ regularly every night to the ſtore-houſe when the “ retreat beats; and any perſon who is found ſe- “ creting any tool, or any article of the King's ſtores, “ or committing any robbery whatever, will, on de- “ tection and conviction, receive ſuch puniſhment “ on the iſland as his Majeſty's juſtices of the peace “ may judge the offence deſerves; or the offender “ will be ſent to Port Jackſon, to be tried by the “ criminal court, as the commandant may judge “ proper.

VIII. “ It is recommended to every one to be “ very careful of their cloathing; and every free “ perſon, or convict, is ſtrictly forbid buying or ſel- “ ling any article of ſlop cloathing: thoſe who diſ- “ obey this order will be proſecuted, for buying or “ ſelling the King's ſtores, whether free people or “ convicts.

IX. “ Whenever it may be neceſſary to make any “ complaint, the perſon making the complaint is “ to inform the corporal of the guard, who will “ immediately report it; when the commandant “ (or, in his abſence, Lieut. John Creſſwell) will “ hear the complaint, and decide upon it.

X. “ Diſobedience of orders, inſolence to officers “ or overſeers, or any other improper behaviour, “ tending to the diſturbance of the peace, or hin- “ drance of the King's ſervice, will meet with ſevere “ puniſhment; and a regular, honeſt, good beha- “ viour, will meet with encouragement and reward.”

CHAPTER V.

Diviſion of the Settlement takes place—Sirius and Supply ſent to Norfolk Iſland—Number on board of each—Their good Voyage—Cauſe of great Joy in the Iſland—Joy changed to Sorrow—Lieut. Governor Roſs appointed to ſupply the Commandant's place—Reaſon—Sudden change of Wind and Weather—Conſequences—The Sirius drove to the back of a Reef—Strikes—In Danger—Attempt to ſave the Proviſion—A Wreck—Martial Law proclaimed—Lives of the Crew ſaved—Exertions for the preſervation of the Stores—The Ship fired by two Convicts—Fire extinguiſhed by another—Culprits ſecured—Proviſions ſaved—Veſſel entirely quitted—Entered afterwards—Caſks and Parcels ſaved—Anecdote of the Sirius—Supply ſails for Port Jackſon—Univerſal Anxiety—A Council held—Orders iſſued—Apprehenſions—Three Convicts puniſhed for rebellious Reſolutions—General Deſpondency—Debilitated ſtate of the People—An Alarm—Conſequent Joy—A Diſappointment—Arrival of the Juſtinian and Surpriſe—Information—Proviſions landed—An Accident—Seven drowned—Some recovered—Additional number of Convicts ſent—Departure of the Veſſels—Guns of the Sirius ſaved—Arrival of the Supply—Loſs at Batavia—Departure of the Officers and Crew of the Sirius in the Supply.

HAVING thus far deviated, to acquaint the reader with the firſt tranſactions at Norfolk Iſland, in order that he may be the better informed of the progreſs of that ſettlement; I ſhall now purſue the buſineſs which concluded the third Chapter.

It has been already hinted, that the delay of the long-expected arrivals from England cauſed a general alarm at Port Jackſon, and proviſions being ſo very ſcanty, that Governor Phillip was conſequently determined to divide the ſettlement; for which purpoſe the Sirius and Supply were prepared for ſea, under the command of Captain Hunter, the lieutenant-governor: a company of marines, and the officers, with 186 convicts, baggage, &c. were on board the Sirius; alſo a company of marines, with 20 convicts, were on board the Supply, with Lieut. Ball, commander thereof, under Capt. Hunter. They were allowed as much proviſions, &c. as could be ſpared.

On the 6th of March, 1790, they left Port Jackſon, and as the wind was from the weſtward, they made Lord Howe's Iſland in three days. On the 13th of March they made Norfolk Iſland. The appearance of the Sirius and Supply created great joy among Lieut. King's party, who naturally ſuppoſed that the expected relief had arrived from England. As a great ſea was running in the bay, and the wind blowing ſtrong from S. W. their landing in Sydney Bay was at preſent impracticable: accordingly they bore up for Ball Bay, where Lieut. King met them. His hopes concerning the expected arrivals from England were ſoon cruſhed, as he had the mortification to hear that no relief had as yet been obtained. Governor Phillip had ſent letters to Lieut. King, by Lieut. Ball, of the Supply, to acquaint him, that Lieut. Governor Roſs was appointed to take the command at Norfolk Iſland, as Lieut. Ball's return to England was deemed abſolutely neceſſary, to give ſome neceſſary informations to his Majeſty's miniſters: he however continued his command of the iſland (by the lieutenant-governor's deſire) till his departure. The veſſels went round to Caſcade Bay, and the people were landed on the 15th.

As the veſſels were working up to the iſland, the wind ſuddenly veered to the eaſtward, and the weather became remarkably foul: the Sirius and Supply having parted, the latter ſtood in for the iſland on the 19th. The Sirius now hove-to, and made ſail; but on account of the ſtrength of the current, could not ſurmount the difficulties attending a reef of ſunken rocks near Point Roſs: by an unfortunate change of the wind to the S. E. ſhe was drove to the back of this reef. Upon this all the boats were employed; but only two boats of proviſions could at preſent be got out: additional after-ſail were applied without effect; ſhe ſtruck upon the reef, and, according to the carpenter's report, remained in imminent danger: the maſts were now cut away, and every poſſible means taken to preſerve as much of the proviſions as could be come at, which were left upon the gun-deck for the purpoſe of throwing them overboard, in hopes they might be floated on ſhore. As the wind was blowing ſtill ſtronger, and the gale encreaſing, it was recommended by Lieut. Ball for every perſon to quit the ſhip, in anſwer to a note which he received from Capt. Hunter by the ſurgeon's mate, who was hauled upon ſhore through a very tremendous ſurf, by means of a grating flung to a wooden heart fixed on a hawſer from the ſhip, which was faſtened to a tree on the ſhore: three or four ſailors were faſtened to this, and by the aſſiſtance of the people on ſhore were landed. The captain and Mr. Waterhouſe were got on ſhore together: the former was ſo much exhauſted, that he was near quitting his hold, when he got footing on the reef: it being very dark, the firſt and ſecond lieutenant, with ſeveral of the ſailors, were obliged to remain on board all night.

As ſoon as the veſſel ſtruck, the marines and convicts were aſſembled by drums, and the martial law proclaimed, ſetting forth that whoever committed any depredations, killed any animal or fowl, ſhould be ſeverely and immediately puniſhed. There were ſeveral neceſſary regulations ordered by Lieutenant Governor Roſs, by which means the ſtorehouſes and barn were well defended.

The next day the lives of every perſon were ſaved; ſeveral however were much bruiſed in eſcaping: the ſailors, who were landed the laſt, ſaid the forepart of the ſhip was under water, as ſhe gave way in the lower deck from the ſide; but that the chief part of the proviſions were on deck, and might be ſaved: ſome hopes were therefore entertained of being able to ſave theſe, and ſeveral other things. The weather becoming more moderate, and the ſurf conſequently running leſs heavy, ſome of the ſailors who ſwam well were determined to uſe all their exertions for the preſervation of the ſtores: alſo two convicts offered their aſſiſtance to ſave the live ſtock. Some poultry, and a number of pigs, by their means, were put on ſhore; but as theſe men remained on board, ſpite of ſignals for their return, a convict carpenter went ſpontaneouſly to oblige them to quit the wreck: theſe men had ſet fire to the ſhip, which deſtroyed the gun-deck, but which was put out by the carpenter. One of them was quite intoxicated, when he was hauled on ſhore: they were both ordered into confinement, in order to be tried for the conflagration.

The chief part of the proviſions were now ſaved, and as it became too dangerous for any perſon to remain longer on board, the veſſel was entirely quitted; however, by her being ſo much lightened, and her ſmall bower cape cut by the rocks, ſhe was continually ſhifting about, and coming nearer the ſhore, was frequently entered, with leſs danger. At this time the parcels and caſks were ſaved, and every thing that could be got preſerved. She was then very much daſhed to pieces; notwithſtanding her remains were to be ſeen for ſeveral months after.

The following anecdote of the Sirius is related by Lieut. King.

"She was built in the River, for an Eaſt Country ſhip; and, in loading her, ſhe took fire, and was burnt down to her wales. The Government wanting a roomy veſſel, to carry ſtores abroad in 1781, purchaſed her bottom, which was rebuilt with ſuch ſtuff as during the war could be found. She went two voyages as the Barwick ſtoreſhip; and, without any repairs, ſhe was reported, when the preſent expedition was thought of, as fit for the voyage to New Holland, when ſhe was named the *Sirius*."

On the 24th, the weather being calm and pleaſant, Lieutenants King, Waterhouſe, and Powel, with 20 of the crew which belonged to the Sirius, went on board the Supply, and ſailed for Port Jackſon; Lieut. Roſs being now in poſſeſſion of the command of the iſland.

According to the proclamation of the law martial, all capital offences were puniſhable by death: this, no doubt, was the happy means of preventing much plunder. The number of people now left upon this iſland began to be ſeriouſly alarmed for their future ſubſiſtence: every day they were upon the look-out, in anxious expectation of relief. Near two months elapſed, without any ſigns of ſuccour. On the 14th of May, the lieutenant-governor held a council, compoſed of officers, by whom it was unanimouſly agreed that the following orders ſhould be publiſhed:

"At a meeting of the governor and council, held to conſider of the very exhauſted ſtate of the proviſions in this ſettlement, and to conſult upon what means are the moſt proper to be purſued, in order to preſerve life until ſuch time as we may be relieved by ſome arrivals from England, of which we have been ſo long in expectation, but probably diſappointed by ſome unfortunate accident having happened to the ſhips intended for this country: the ſtate of the proviſions having been laid before the council; and the alarming ſituation of the ſettlement having been taken into the moſt ſerious conſideration, the following ratio of proviſions was unanimouſly reſolved, and ordered to take place on Saturday the 15th inſtant, viz.

"Flour, three pounds per week for every grown

“ perſon; beef one pound and an half per ditto, or in lieu of beef 17 ounces of pork; rice, one pound per ditto. Children above twelve months old half the above ratio: children under twelve months old one pound and an half of flour, and a pound of rice, per week.

“ In future, all crimes which may by any three members of the council be conſidered as not of a capital nature, will be puniſhed at their diſcretion, by a farther reduction of the preſent allowance of proviſions.”

It was in vain to look for relief from any other quarter then Port Jackſon, this part of the ocean being unfrequented: day after day now paſſing without any proſpect of a ſail, it was apprehended that even the preſent ſcanty allowance of proviſions muſt in time be reduced. At this time the people chiefly ſubſiſted upon a kind of aquatic bird, which was now remarkably numerous, and was juſtly nominated the Bird of Providence; though of a fiſhy nature, it was very much reliſhed, eſpecially the eggs: upwards of three thouſand of theſe birds were taken every night.

Notwithſtanding their diſtreſſing ſituation, they did not forget on the fourth of June to celebrate his Majeſty's birth-day, which they did with as much ſatisfaction as their deplorable condition would admit of.

A convict, who had been ſent on the 6th of July to catch ſome birds, was ſtripped of his cloaths by three others, who had combined together to remain in the woods, and commit depredations. As ſoon as a report of this was made, two parties of marines were diſpatched by the lieutenant-governor, and two parties of ſeamen by Capt. Hunter, to apprehend them: they were immediately ſecured by the latter; and, as the court-martial was determined to make examples of theſe convicts, they received each three hundred laſhes.

Towards the latter end of July a general deſpondency took place; the birds now became ſcarce, and a very ſmall portion of victuals remained: on account of the inſufficiency of food, the people were alſo in a very debilitated ſtate.

On the 4th of Auguſt, the appearance of a ſail cauſed a general alarm: it was now univerſal joy and hope; but this hope and joy were ſoon blaſted, as the veſſel, which had an Engliſh enſign flying, was, notwithſtanding all their ſignals of diſtreſs, making ſail from the iſland. Abſolute deſpair was the reſult of this diſappointment.

However, three days after, the diſcovery of two veſſels, which proved to be the Juſtinian and the Surpriſe from Port Jackſon, removed all their apprehenſions. Information was received from the maſters of theſe veſſels, that his Majeſty's ſhip the Guardian was loſt in her paſſage to Port Jackſon with proviſions, and that conſequently the Gorgon was in preparation to bring farther ſupplies. Four ſhips, the Lady Juliana, Neptune, Surpriſe, and Scarborough, had arrived with 980 convicts, and proviſions for the ſettlement in New South Wales, about the beginning of June.

Though every care was taken to prevent any accident in landing the proviſions, yet, on the 17th of Auguſt, one of the boats, on making for ſhore, was thrown into a reef, by the ſudden violence of ſeveral heavy ſurfs; and, notwithſtanding there were ſeveral people on ſhore, yet ſeven perſons were drowned: three beſides, that were brought to land apparently dead, were recovered by the ſurgeon's exertions; two of whom were women. The perſons loſt conſiſted of two of the boat's crew, three women convicts, a child, and a convict man, who periſhed in endeavouring to ſave the women.

An additional number of convicts, about 200, were ſent to Norfolk Iſland, in theſe veſſels; and, as the weather was exceedingly favourable, they were cleared in 23 days. On the 30th of Auguſt they proceeded on their voyage to China.

About the beginning of the year 1791 an attempt was made to ſave the guns and carriage, which were ſtill lying in the remains of the Sirius: dangerous as this attempt may ſeem, yet as the ſurfs had made conſiderable alterations on the wreck, it was found, though difficult, not impracticable. Except two carronades, which had been carried away by the fall of the maſts, every thing was got on ſhore by a traveller upon a nine-inch hawſer.

Towards the latter end of this month the Supply armed tender arrived; ſhe had been, on her return from Norfolk Iſland, diſpatched to Batavia, for the purpoſe of hiring a veſſel for the relief of the ſettlement; the particulars of which we ſhall have occaſion to mention in our next Chapter. While at Batavia, the crew were ſo ill, that ſeveral were loſt by fevers, among whom were Lieut. Fowel, and Mr. Roſs, late of the Sirius, much lamented. It being governor Phillip's pleaſure, that the officers and crew of the Sirius ſhould return in the Supply to Port Jackſon, Captain Hunter accordingly embarked with them, and left Norfolk Iſland on the 11th of February.

Such is the acknowledged ſalubrity of Norfolk Iſland, that all who were there were moſt remarkably healthy: two children at a birth were very common, and even women in advanced years, who imagined themſelves paſt child-bearing, have been frequently brought to bed of fine promiſing infants.

CHAPTER VI.

Tranſactions at Port Jackſon—An Excurſion into the Country—Several Convicts loſt—A brick Column begun—Account of the two native Children—Ba-na-lang's Eſcape—His proficiency in Engliſh Manners—He ſends a Preſent to the Governor—The Governor goes to give him a general Invitation—Ba-na-lang's and Co-al-by's Behaviour—One of the Natives alarmed at the Governor—Throws a Spear, and wounds him—Mr. Waterhouſe's Attention—The ſudden Hoſtility terminated—Balmain pronounces the Governor out of Danger—The Governor's Orders—Motives—Ba-na-lang's Concern—Viſits the Governor—He and Co-al-by become conſtant Gueſts—They introduce their Wives and Families—A general Intercourſe—Conſequent Diſcoveries—Ba-na-lang determined to chaſtiſe his Wife—Prevailed upon to forgive her—Ba-na-lang conſents to live in the Settlement—The Intercourſe more general—Ba-na-lang's vindictive Diſpoſition—Goes to beat a Woman with a Hatchet—Threats and Entreaties unavailing—Followed by the Governor, &c.—Girl protected—Ba-na-lang reconciled to her—His Wife conſequently exaſperated—Corrected by her Huſband—Convicts ſtill rebellious and diſhoneſt—Five elope—Two executed—The Weather—Ba-na-lang ſuſpected for Deceit and Cunning—His Behaviour myſterious—Natives ſtill perſiſt in throwing Spears—A Game-keeper wounded—Large Party ſent out in purſuit of the Offenders—Their Directions—Unable to apprehend any—Sent out again—As unſucceſsful as before—Some Natives detected in ſtealing Potatoes—They throw a Fiz-gig—Orders to apprehend them—Three Muſquets diſcharged—Ba-na-lang accuſed of Robbery—Three ſtray Convicts puniſhed—One of them ſtrays again—Never found—Number of Deaths, &c.—Ba-na-lang accuſed—Denies the Charge—Confuted—He becomes inſolent—Departs in Anger—Steals a Hatchet—The Body of a Native, wounded by the diſcharge of the Muſquets, brought to the Hoſpital—Found to be the Tranſgreſſor's—Game-keeper's Death—Dutch Veſſel ready for Sea—Maſter offers to ſell or lett her—His exorbitant Demands—Becomes more moderate—Governor hires it—Ba-na-lang appears at the Hoſpital—Endeavours to vindicate himſelf—Meets the Governor—

Is forgiven, but kept at a diſtance—A Fiſhing-boat in danger—Crew ſaved—The Natives' Good-nature—Ba-na-lang's Aſſiduity—Thereby reſtored to the Governor's good graces—Natives and Engliſh very familiar—Co-al-by and Ba-la-derry attend the Governor, &c. on an Excurſion—Captain Hunter prepares for his return to England—A ſecond Excurſion—Grants of Land given to Settlers—A Soldier loſes himſelf—Is conducted by two Natives to Sydney—A Traffic between the Natives and Engliſh for Bread and Fiſh—Nearly terminated by the Imprudence of ſome of the Convicts—The Offenders puniſhed—One of the Convicts wounded by a Native—Arrival of the Mary-Ann Tranſport—A Centinel detected ſtealing Wine—His Eſcape from being hanged—Is whipped—Twenty-ſeven Convicts become Settlers—A Diſturbance between them and the Natives—Arrival of the Matilda and Atlantic Tranſports—Salamander, William and Ann—Weakneſs of the Convicts—Deaths, Sickneſs—Account of the Land.

IN the mean time the people at Port Jackſon, though they had not ſo much cauſe for apprehenſion and terror as the unfortunate ſettlers in Norfolk Iſland, were notwithſtanding very much depreſſed at the long delay of the veſſels expected from England: however all their fears were diſpelled, and their late ſorrows forgot, upon their arrival, though the loſs of the Guardian was very much lamented by his excellency.

An excurſion into the country was made by ſeveral officers in Auguſt 1790: they explored the greater part of Proſpect hill, and the head of Nepean river. Several convicts were loſt in the woods; one of whom was never found.

On 7th of September, a ſpot of riſing ground being choſen from the ſouth head, for the purpoſe of erecting a brick column, to ſhew the maſters of ſhips (who were unacquainted with the coaſt) the beſt place for entrance, as the flag-ſtaff, which was the preſent direction, was not only liable to be blown down, but could not be diſcerned at the ſmalleſt diſtance. This plan was accordingly adopted, and the work immediately begun.

The two native children, who had been preſerved from the ſmall-pox by Surgeon White, were now very tractable, and content with their ſituation: the boy lived with Mr. White, and the girl with the chaplain's wife. Ba-na-lang, the attendant to Co-al-by, (who had made his eſcape) became ſo free and apparently happy, that he was permitted to walk wherever he pleaſed; but he ſoon availed himſelf of an opportunity, and one evening, having taken off his clothes, left them behind and departed. He was dreſſed on week days in a coarſe red kerſey jacket, and a pair of trowſers; but on Sundays in nankeen: the former habit was intended by the governor to convince him of the comfort and uſe of clothes in cold weather: previous to his elopement, he uſed frequently to walk with the governor, and occaſionally wear his ſword, which the governor would give him in order to eſtabliſh a more permanent acquaintance. He could not bear ſpirits, and was exceedingly angry if any one gave him ever ſo little in water: he was fond of wine, and ſhortly learned the neceſſary accompliſhments of drinking healths, bowing, &c. After his departure, he had been frequently met with Co-al-by: though they were ſometimes afraid of being retaken, yet they were always glad to ſee their late friends. Ba-na-lang once ſent a large piece of a whale, which they had caught, and on which numbers were aſſembled to feaſt, to the governor; who being now very deſirous to renew the intimacy between them, went down the harbour to give them a general invitation, and aſſure them that they might return to their own friends whenever they liked: for this reaſon he was only followed by one ſeaman, who was loaded with ſome meat. When he ſaw Ba-na-lang, he ſcarcely knew him, being much altered by ſeveral wounds which he had received, and which he was very proud of ſhowing. Co-al-by alſo exhibited his leg in a triumphant manner, to let him ſee that the iron which had been rivetted on it for his ſecurity was taken off: he alſo expreſſed by ſigns much ſatisfaction at Ba-na-lang's eſcape, and laughed heartily at the trick which he had played upon him. The governor, however, truſting too much to their generoſity, incautiouſly approached, in this unprotected manner, another native, who had been a ſtranger, and conſequently alarmed at his excellency's appearance, notwithſtanding all his endeavours to remove his apprehenſions; this man, therefore, ſeizing a ſpear, which had been previouſly laid upon the ground by Ba-na-lang, fixed it on a throwing ſtick, and inſtantaneouſly diſcharged it at the governor: it entered the right ſhoulder, juſt above the collar-bone, and came out behind the ſhoulder blade: it was with the utmoſt pain and difficulty he reached the boat, as the ſpear, which could not at this time be extracted, was remarkably long. After ſome ſtruggle, Mr. Waterhouſe broke it, notwithſtanding the danger of ſtopping, there being now ſeveral ſpears flying about. The governor fired a pocket piſtol, and the cockſwain (who at this time approached) a muſquet, which fortunately terminated this ſudden hoſtility: the point of the ſpear was extracted by Mr. Bulmain, who afforded very great ſatisfaction to every anxious enquirer, by aſſuring them that no fatal conſequences need be dreaded.

Though Governor Phillip iſſued forth orders to apprehend (if poſſible) the native who wounded him, it was not with a vindictive deſign, but on the contrary to keep him, and convince him that there was no harm intended him. It was ſtrictly commanded by the governor, that no one ſhould fire on the natives, except in his own defence, and unleſs they were the firſt aggreſſors in throwing their ſpears.

When Ba-na-lang had met with a party of the Engliſh, after this circumſtance, he ſeemed very much concerned, and enquired if the governor was dead. When informed of the contrary, he promiſed to come and ſee him; which he did, and likewiſe promiſed to revenge the injury.

Ba-na-lang and Co-al-by, upon an aſſurance that they ſhould never be detained, had accepted the governor's invitation, and became conſtant gueſts. A general intercourſe ſucceeded theſe confidential viſits; and the two natives were at laſt ſo familiar with the Engliſh, that they introduced their wives and families to them: this mutual harmony furniſhed freſh inſtances of the natives' diſpoſitions and manners. It was found that the men uſed the women exceedingly cruel: the huſbands frequently beat their wives, and ſometimes killed them, while their relations would ſeem quite indifferent about the buſineſs, nor ever interpoſe in behalf of the ſuffering females. It ſeems the beginning of courtſhips is always a good beating, which the girls very patiently endure: the women, however, are very obſtinate, and though aware of the conſequences, prone to offend. It was with the greateſt difficulty the governor and his friends could prevent Ba-na-lang from chaſtiſing his wife, who had in a fit of paſſion broke a valuable fiz-gig: he calmly declared that he ſhould be under the neceſſity of killing her, and meditated revenge for a long time; he was however prevailed upon to forgive her, which chriſtian virtue theſe people are totally ignorant of. Indeed there were ſeveral natives under Mr. White's care in the hoſpital: men, who had ſuffered in fighting with each other, and women through the chaſtiſement of their huſbands.

Ba-na-lang and his family became at length ſo gracious with the Engliſh, that they conſented to live in a hut, which was erected for them on the eaſtern point of the Cove. As they were frequently viſited by other natives, of courſe a more general intercourſe took place. Several natives would frequently viſit the ſettlement at the ſame time, and breakfaſt at the governor's in the yard, where fire and meat were always prepared.

Such was the vindictive diſpoſition of Ba-na-lang, that he was determined, for ſome unknown offence, to beat a woman with a hatchet. Neither threats nor entreaties could diſſuade him from his ſanguinary purpoſe: he was therefore followed by the governor, judge-advocate, a ſerjeant, &c. who were determined to protect the girl. They took the hatchet from him, and gave him a cane: however, as he was remarkably outrageous, it was deemed prudent to take away even the cane. Notwithſtanding all this precaution, he found the means to ſnatch a wooden ſword, and ſtrike the poor girl with it, who was lying either aſleep or hiding her face through fear, and, before the ſerjeant was able to diſarm him, he repeated the blow: the girl was conveyed away, under the protection of Lieut. Ball, Surgeon White, &c. None of her friends or relations ſeemed the leaſt concerned at her fate, but on the contrary were very ſolicitous that the hatchet, ſword, &c. which were taken from Ba-na-lang, ſhould be returned to him.

The governor endeavoured to impreſs the horror of murder upon the mind of Ba-na-lang, but in vain: he even threatened him, that if he took away any one's life, he ſhould be put to death for it; but this menace had ſeemingly very little effect. In the courſe of time, however, he was reconciled to the girl, which reconciliation did not a little exaſperate Ba-na-lang's wife, by whom the poor girl was ſtill in danger of loſing her life: but the huſband ſoon corrected his lady with a violent box on her ear, and ſent her roaring away. The girl was detained by the governor's command, till all marks of animoſity had ſubſided.

Notwithſtanding the men beat the women in this unfeeling manner, they profeſs a very great affection for each other. In every caſe of diſobedience, the men will be revenged; but when that vindictive temper is once ſatiated, the injuries on both ſides are immediately forgotten.

The convicts ſtill continued as rebellious and diſhoneſt as ever. On the 26th of September, 1790, five of theſe wretches, who had taken a punt from Roſe-hill to come down on the look-out, exchanged it for a four-oared boat, and made off undiſcovered. Their intention, as ſuppoſed, was to go along the coaſt to the northward, in order to reach ſome of their friendly iſlands; but not being aware of the attending danger, there is very little doubt but that they periſhed in the preſumptuous attempt. On the 28th of October two convicts were executed, for robbing a hut, and dangerouſly wounding the owner, who made reſiſtance.

Hitherto the weather was ſo remarkably dry, that rain was very much wanting: the new moon in the beginning of November was attended with ſome few ſhowers, which became very frequent towards the latter end of the month, and the beginning of December; but the latter end of this month was moſt remarkably hot.

Notwithſtanding the favourable opinion which the governor entertained of the natives, he began to ſuſpect Ba-na-lang both deceitful and cunning: this man would frequently repreſent ſome tribes of the natives as very bad, deſerving death; yet he was conſtantly in their company, and very free with them; in ſhort, there was ſo much contradiction and ambiguity about Ba-na-lang, that his behaviour was very myſterious.

As ſeveral of the natives ſtill perſiſted in throwing ſpears and wounding the Engliſh, eſpecially ſuch as were undefended, the governor found it expedient, though contrary to his inclination, to make a few ſevere examples, in order to terminate this evil. At this time Lieut. Ball's game-keeper was dangerouſly wounded by a native; therefore, on the 14th of December, a party, conſiſting of two captains, two lieutenants, four non-commiſſioned officers, and forty privates, were ſent out in purſuit of the offender, attended with the ſurgeon and a ſurgeon's mate, belonging to the Sirius; with alſo three perſons who were with the game-keeper at the time of his being wounded, and the only men that could aſcertain the culprit. It was deemed the beſt way to ſend out a large party, to prevent any reſiſtance of the natives, or attempt to reſcue whatever perſons it might be judged proper to ſecure. The officer of this party had directions to ſeize ſix of them, and in caſe they did not ſurrender themſelves, to put them to death on the ſpot: likewiſe every ſpear that was found they were commanded to break, and leave the remains of them for the natives to ſee: none of the party were to hold up their hands, or ſhow any other ſign of friendſhip; and they were upon no account to hurt the women or children. They had been out three days, but could apprehend none, for the natives as ſoon as ever they ſaw them at a diſtance, fled, and eluded all ſearch. They went out again on the 22d, and ſtaid two days, but were as unſucceſsful as before. On the 28th ſome of the natives, who had been frequently entertained at Sydney Cove, were detected in ſtealing potatoes; and one of them threw a fiz-gig at the owner of them, on his attempting to drive them out of his garden: this culprit had been long remarked for his intrepidity: he and his followers made it a cuſtom to demand bread at every hut, and threaten the owners thereof in caſe of refuſal. To prevent therefore a continuance of ſuch daring depredations, a ſerjeant and ſix privates were ſent in purſuit of the offenders, particularly him who threw the fiz-gig: this party was followed by the governor, and two or three officers. Two men were laid hold of, but they eſcaped, and one of them throwing a club, which was miſtaken for a ſpear, three muſquets were diſcharged. Two women who were there were brought away, in order to lead to a diſcovery. Theſe women, upon examining the fiz-gig, confeſſed to whom it belonged, and declared the owner to be a ſpirited, inſolent man.

Ba-na-lang was now accuſed by two coloniſts of having robbed them of ſome fiſh they had caught. He, his wife, and ſiſter, were returning from the Governor's, where they had dined; they had ſpears along with them, and the coloniſts were unarmed. Orders were conſequently iſſued, that no boat ſhould leave the Cove unarmed, nor that any of the natives ſhould be admitted to that place whence the potatoes had been ſtolen.

There were three convicts found, who had been ſeveral days loſt; and as they had gone into the woods without orders, they received a due number of laſhes; notwithſtanding which one of them committed the ſame fault again: whether he could not find his way back, was afraid to return, and ſo periſhed with hunger, or was murdered by the natives, cannot be aſcertained, but he was never found. The number of thoſe perſons loſt this year is as follows:

In ſickneſs, - -	142
In the woods, - - -	4
Executed, - - - -	4
Drowned, - - - -	6
	156

Ba-na-lang, not ſuppoſing the governor had heard of his crime, called as uſual on the 3d of January, 1791. When accuſed by his excellency, he denied the charge; but, upon being confuted, became inſolent and outrageous. He then wiſhed to make it up with the governor; but finding he would not ſhake hands with him, he grew very ſavage, and vowed vengeance for the death of a native, who had been wounded by the party who had fired the muſquets when ſent to apprehend the perſons who had ſtolen the potatoes. He departed in great anger; and aggravated his crime by ſtealing a hatchet, with which he made off. In the evening a party were ſent to ſee if the wounded native was really dead, and whether or not to convey him to the hoſpital. His body was brought: upon examination it was found to be that of the tranſgreſſor, therefore his death was not much regretted. The game-keeper, who had been wounded, died on the 20th of this month.

The Dutch veſſel, which had been hired at Batavia for the purpoſe of bringing proviſions to the colony, was ready for ſea on the 5th of February. The maſter of this veſſel now offered her for ſale, or to lett her for freight; but knowing how much ſhe was wanted, he was moſt exorbitant in his demands. There being no attention paid to thoſe propoſals, he became more moderate: at length the governor conſented to give twenty ſhillings per ton for his veſſel.

Ba-na-lang, ſome little time after he had ſtolen the hatchet, contrary to every one's expectation, appeared again at the hoſpital, where he enquired if the governor was angry, and if he might viſit his houſe: he artfully inſinuated that another had taken the hatchet, and endeavoured to vindicate himſelf by falſehoods. After this he met the governor, who forgave him, but would not permit him to enter his houſe: indeed it was the governor's intention, in order to keep up a friendly intercourſe, to take very little notice of paſt offences.

On the 28th of February, a fiſhing-boat, in working up the harbour, having met with a ſudden gale of wind, filled, but (being an Engliſh cutter) ſhe did not ſink. There were four natives in the boat at the time, conſiſting of a young woman, a girl, and two children. When the accident happened, the woman immediately put the children on her ſhoulders, and ſwam to ſhore with them: ſhe was followed by the girl, and as many of the crew as were capable of ſwimming. Some of the natives, who were witneſſes of this diſaſter, aſſembled, and very good-naturedly gave their aſſiſtance: among theſe was Ba-na-lang, who, to do him juſtice, was particularly aſſiduous. By their means, not only every life was ſaved, but likewiſe the oars and other articles. This office of humanity reſtored Ba-na-lang to the governor's good graces; his former miſconduct being entirely overlooked, he was entertained at his houſe as uſual, and conſequently the former acquaintance was renewed between the Engliſh and natives: indeed the number of viſitors ſo much encreaſed, and their mutual confidence became at laſt ſo great, that both natives and Engliſh were frequently ſeen walking together. Co-al-by, and another young man, called Bal-la-derry, who was a conſtant gueſt, attended the governor, Lieutenants Tench, Dawes, one captain, two ſerjeants, eight ſoldiers, three convicts, &c. on an excurſion into the country: by being accompanied with theſe two natives, they had frequent opportunities of converſing with others; but when they had rambled for about five days, they were very deſirous of returning; accordingly the gentlemen, though inclined to delay longer, thought it prudent to acquieſce with their wiſhes.

March 25th. Preparations were now making by Capt. Hunter for his return to England. The governor had commanded the maſter of the ſhip to call at Norfolk Iſland, provided it would not be attended with much delay, and to take on board the diſpatches of lieutenant-governor Roſs. The account of this voyage we ſhall reſerve for our next Chapter, and proceed in giving the moſt recent tranſactions at Port Jackſon.

The weather becoming ſomewhat fair in June, 1791, Lieutenants Tench and Dawes, and two ſoldiers, made a ſecond excurſion; and, after ſome neceſſary diſcoveries, returned the ſixth day.

Grants of land were now given to thoſe who became ſettlers, under proper titles. To James Ruſe were allowed thirty acres, called the Experiment Farm. One hundred and forty ditto to William Scaffer, who came from England as a ſuperintendant; this was entitled the Vineyard. Sixty ditto to Robert Webb and William Reid, called Webb's and Reid's Farms, &c. &c.

A ſoldier, who had been out with others to collect ſome ſweet tea, having left his party, went aſtray in the woods. He was met by ſeveral natives, who avoided him, as he had his gun; two, however, who had been viſitors at the ſettlement, recollected the ſoldier, and joined him: to court their favour, and induce them to ſhew him the way to Parramatta, (a part between Roſe-hill and the landing-place in the creek, ſo called by the natives, and which title, by command of the governor, it retained) he offered them preſents; theſe they refuſed, and would have departed, had he not likewiſe offered his gun, which one of them took as ſecurity, and then conducted him to Sydney, obſerving by ſigns that Parramatta was too far off. On reaching Sydney, the native voluntarily returned the ſoldier his gun, nor would they accept any preſent for their trouble.

As the natives were particularly fond of bread and vegetables, a very neceſſary traffic took place between them and the Engliſh; by which means the governor was in hopes of eſtabliſhing an excellent fiſh-market at Parramatta, for as the natives caught an abundance of fiſh, (frequently more than they could make uſe of) and which the Engliſh often ſtood in need of, they were very happy in exchanging the ſurplus for bread, &c. This traffic continued for many days, but by the imprudence of ſome convicts it was nearly put an end to. It ſeems theſe men, in diſobedience to the governor's orders, had deſtroyed the canoe of a certain native, who was remarkably active in catching fiſh: he had ſet a great value on this canoe, and having painted himſelf with red, (according to their cuſtom when angered) he came and complained to the governor, uttering the moſt violent threats. The villains being apprehended, were puniſhed in his preſence; and as he ſuppoſed one of them was put to death, his revenge was ſatiated. After this ſeveral ſpears were thrown at ſome of the convicts, when alone or unarmed: one man was wounded by Bal-la-derry, the owner of the canoe, as the natives confeſſed, for they are always ready to acknowledge any offender.

On the 9th of July the Mary-Ann tranſport arrived with 141 women, and ſix children; alſo ſtores, &c. Only three perſons were loſt on the paſſage.

On the 16th a centinel (who was a mariner) was detected by the ſerjeant ſtealing wine in a cellar: previous to his trial, he offered himſelf as evidence for the crown, and charged two others with having been frequently guilty of the like practice; but this man's evidence being inſufficient, he thereby only ſaved his own life, and the others were acquitted. Being tried afterwards by a battalion court-martial, he was ſentenced to be whipped, and drummed out of the corps. Thoſe whom he accuſed, had been accuſed before in like manner, and acquitted for the ſame reaſon.

On the 18th twenty-ſeven convicts, who had conſented to become ſettlers after the expiration of their time, took poſſeſſion of their allotments, and began to build their huts. Twelve of them were allowed ſituations at the foot of Proſpect-hill, and fifteen northward of the creek leading to Parramatta. In order to guard againſt the natives, who might be inclined to hurt them, as they had many opportunities here, there were ſome muſquets diſtributed among them. Shortly after, one of the ſettlers at Proſpect-hill, being alarmed at the ſudden appearance of ſeveral natives, diſcharged his muſquet, and ran away. The natives, ſeeing him take to flight, advanced and ſet fire to his hut, that had been juſt erected. Upon this another of the ſettlers took his muſquet, and firing at the natives, made them retreat. After this a party of ſoldiers were ſent out, for the further ſecurity of the ſettlers.

The Matilda tranſport arrived on the firſt of Auguſt, with an enſign, twenty privates, 205 male convicts, proviſions, &c. She was only five months coming from England, and though her paſſage was remarkably good, yet a ſerjeant and 24 convicts died; ſeveral were ſick, and all the reſt in an emaciated ſtate. On the 20th arrived the Atlantic tranſport, with a ſerjeant, 17 privates, 200 male convicts, proviſions, &c. A ſoldier was loſt in a gale of wind, and 18 convicts died: there were very few ſick, but all in general weak. The next day arrived the Salamander, with 12 privates, 154 male convicts, ſtores, &c. The crew were very weak. On the 28th arrived the William and Ann tranſport, with a ſerjeant, 13 privates, with ſome of their wives and children; 180 male convicts, proviſions, &c. Seven convicts died on the paſſage, and 36 were ſick.

The convicts were in ſuch a weak ſtate when landed, that numbers of them were ſhortly carried to the hoſpital. On the 1ſt of September there were 285 under medical treatment: there were alſo ſeveral ſeamen very ill of a dangerous fever, which was imagined to have been communicated by the convicts.

The natives ſtill continued their viſits at the governor's, ſometimes very gracious, and ſometimes in diſgrace. It was, however, deemed expedient to keep them in awe of the muſquets.

In November 42 convicts died; about 500 were ſick at Parramatta, and about 200 at Sydney. At this time the following parcels of land were in or ready for cultivation at Parramatta:

351 acres,	2 roods,	5 perches,	in maiſe.
44 ditto,	1 ditto,	8 ditto,	in wheat.
6 ditto,	1 ditto,	30 ditto,	in barley.
1 ditto,			in oats.
2 ditto,		3 ditto,	in potatoes.
4 ditto,	2 ditto,		fit for cultivation.
4 ditto,	2 ditto,	15 ditto,	planted chiefly with vines.
91 ditto,	3 ditto,	2 ditto,	in cultivation by the ſettlers.
28 ditto,			in cultivation by officers of the civil and military.
134 ditto,			incloſed and prepared for feeding cattle.
6 ditto,			the governor's garden, partly ſown, maiſe and wheat.
80 ditto,			garden-ground belonging to individuals.
17 ditto,			land in cultivation by the New South Wales corps.
130 ditto,			intended for turnips.

CHAPTER VII.

Capt. Hunter's Departure in the Waakſambeyd Tranſport—Number of the Crew, &c.—Suggeſtions—They endeavour to make for Norfolk Iſland—Repulſed by an eaſterly Wind—A Conſultation—Effects thereof—Norfolk Iſland relinquiſhed—Iſle of Pines made—A Miſtake—Ill Conſequences—A critical Situation—Five ſmall Iſlands diſcovered—A Cluſter of ditto, called Lord Howe's Group—Six Canoes ſeen—Deſcription of the People in them—Three ſmall Iſlands diſcovered—Sir Charles Hardy's ditto—A vexatious Diſappointment—Becalmed—Meeting with ſeveral Canoes—Natives friendly and good-natured—A remarkable Proof of their Honeſty—A ſmall Cove diſcovered—Anchorage—Aſſembly of the Natives—Deſcription of them—Their Weapons, &c.—Water taken in—Natives help them—One of them becomes troubleſome—Stimulates his Companions to Hoſtility—A Conflict—Muſquets diſcharged—Natives alarmed, and diſperſed—Peace reſtored—Their Marks of Concern, Submiſſion, &c. &c.—Their Song of Friendſhip—Several ſhaved—Deſcription of the Iſland—Departure from the Bay—Name and Deſcription of it—A Suſpicion concerning the Water—Thought to be without Foundation—Sandwich Iſland diſcovered—Foul Weather—Changeable Wind—Two of the Admiralty Iſlands diſcovered—Five Canoes met—Deſcription of them and the Natives—The Interview ſuddenly terminated—Gale of Wind—Aſſurance of Safety—Iſlands diſcovered—Progreſs ſlow—Death of a Seaman—Allowance of Water reduced—A Conſultation held—Conſequent Reſolutions—Phillip Iſlands diſcovered—Alſo Part of New Carolines, as ſuppoſed—Rain—Advantage taken thereof—Coaſt of Mindanao perceived—Palmas Iſland—Hummock ditto—A Boat ſent out to meet them—The Reſult—Anchorage—Ship watered—Civility of the Inhabitants—Viſit from the Raja—His Reception—The Maſter of the Ship's Requeſt—The Raja's ſeeming Compliance—His Viſit repeated—Maſter of the Ship incenſed with the Raja—Proceeds to Violence—Captain Hunter's Interference, and Advice—Perverſeneſs of the Maſter—A violent Altercation—Smart Fire commenced—Raja and his Attendants make off—Departure of the Veſſel—A Seaman left behind—Maſter's Conduct cenſured—Deſcription of Hummock Iſland, Inhabitants, &c.—Paolo Sanguy Iſlands diſcovered—Iſland of Celibes made—A heavy Squall—Iſland of Bonnao, &c. ſeen—A ſudden Alarm—Apprehenſion groundleſs—Two large Proas ſeen—Suſpected to be piratical Veſſels—Wind variable—Ground perceptible under the Ship—Brothers paſſed—Drawn into a Bight—Caraman Java Iſlands made—Whirlwinds and Water Spouts—Boomkins Iſlands—Anchor in Batavia Road—Liſt of the Latitudes and Longitudes.

MARCH 27th, 1791, Capt. Hunter left Port Jackſon, in the Waakſamheyd tranſport. The governor, and ſeveral civil and military officers, accompanied him down the harbour, and took leave of him when he reached the lower part: they had ſixteen weeks proviſions with them, and the crew conſiſted of 123 perſons. It was Captain Hunter's wiſh to enter the Molucca Iſlands, and water at Timor; he diſapproved very much of touching at Batavia, as it was productive of ſo much ſickneſs, which would at preſent be of the moſt ſerious conſequence, on account both of their crouded ſtate and their ſcarcity of neceſſaries. He deemed it imprudent to call at Norfolk Iſland, except it could be done without much delay, ſeeing their ſtock was ſo ſmall; and therefore concluded it their moſt judicious way to make the beſt uſe of what time they had, and ſail for either Mauritius or the Cape of Good Hope. As the wind had changed upon their ſetting out, they were obliged to anchor until the next morning, when by a land-wind they got clear out of the harbour.

In order to gratify the wiſhes of the governor, (whoſe orders it was however not to loſe much time in the attempt) the maſter of the ſhip endeavoured to make for Norfolk Iſland: he perſevered till the 18th of April, and was repulſed by a very ſtrong eaſterly wind when only within 25 leagues of it. Captain Hunter now aſſembled the maſter of the veſſel and the officers, to take into conſideration the preſent ſituation of the ſhip, and conſult on the beſt method of proceeding. The caſks which contained their water, being haſtily made of very wretched ſtuff, now leaked in ſuch a terrible manner, that there was above three weeks allowance of water loſt already, and it was naturally ſuppoſed that this loſs would be increaſing every week; agreeable therefore to Capt. Hunter's wiſh, all thoughts of making for Norfolk Iſland were relinquiſhed, and on the 23d of April they reached the Iſle of Pines, but could not weather it on account of a ſtrong northwardly eaſt wind: unacquainted with this coaſt, and having no book of information with them, they miſtook the iſland for the Prince of Wales's Foreland, S. W. part of New Caledonia, and bore away with an intention of running along the weſtern coaſt thereof: thus deceived, they ran into great danger, having frequently diſcovered land and low iſlands a-head. Upon examination, they found themſelves in a very deep bay between the iſle eaſtward, and threatened by a dangerous reef on the weſt; it being a critical ſituation, they were determined to go round the reef, for it was impoſſible to find a channel through it, as the ſea was breaking very high on every part. When it was dark they tacked, and during the night every perſon was kept upon deck. At this time they were fully convinced of their miſtake. As they kept working all night to windward, they found the next morning at day-light that they had gained conſiderable ground, for the wind had varied ſeveral points, which was of the moſt eſſential ſervice. They carried a preſs of ſail, and having weathered the reef, about two or three miles paſſed without it: they then ſteered to the N. W. then N. E. with a view of paſſing between Queen Charlotte's Iſlands and that large piece of land lately diſcovered. On the 10th of May there was land ſeen about ſeven leagues diſtance, bearing W. N. W. this proved to be, upon a nearer approach, about five ſmall iſlands, which ſeeming only one at a diſtance, was ſuppoſed to be Carteret's Iſland. As there had been no knowledge of theſe iſlands before, Capt. Hunter gave them the name of Stewart's Iſlands, after the Hon. Keith Stewart. It was not known whether they were inhabited or not; but two of them, which were the largeſt, were ſuppoſed to be about three miles in length: they abounded in trees, among which was the cocoa-nut.

A great cluſter of iſlands were diſcovered on the 14th, ſome very extenſive; 32 were counted from the maſt-head, but in all probability there were more. Capt. Hunter gave them the name of Lord Howe's Groupe. About half a dozen canoes were alſo ſeen coming off, with large triangular ſails: one of them, containing nine men, approached the veſſel, but would not touch or come along-ſide of her. Some nails, &c. were thrown into their boat, which afforded them apparent ſatisfaction: they, in return, threw ſome cocoa-nuts on board the veſſel; in an hour after they departed. Theſe people were of a dark copper hue, very robuſt, and remarkably clean: they wore (which was very extraordinary) artificial beards, their own appearing to be ſhaved quite cloſe; at the end of which hung a row of ſmall bones, which ſeemed like teeth at a diſtance, making apparently two mouths: their hair was tied in a knot, on the back of their head: they had bones through their noſtrils, and their ſkin was marked, according to the cuſtom of the natives.

On the 18th in the morning, there were three ſmall iſlands diſcovered, and ſeveral others in the courſe of the day. They ſeemed to lie in the direction of S. E. and N. E. and were ſuppoſed to be either the nine iſlands mentioned by Captain Carteret, or thoſe which Lieutenant Shortland ſaw. Sir Charles Hardy's iſland was diſcovered on the 19th. The veſſel being a very heavy ſailing one, they were very ſlow in their progreſs, eſpecially as the weather was unfavourable. A light breeze riſing eaſtward on the 22nd, they wiſhed to take advantage of it, and make for Wallis's Iſland, but could not proceed more than a knot and a half, having no ground with 130 fathoms line, and therefore unable of forcing the ſhip on, nor could they reach anchorage in Gower's Harbour, though within three miles of it: they therefore bore away, in hopes of fetching Carteret's Harbour; which, as laid down in the chart, was four leagues from Wallis's Iſland: but this account, it ſeems, was erroneous, and they did not diſcover their miſtake, till it was impoſſible to retract. They now ran along the ſhore, with a view of anchoring, but could not find bottom, though they were cloſe in; this diſappointment was exceedingly vexatious, as their preſent allowance of water was very inſufficient for the remainder of their long voyage: it was therefore Captain Hunter's determination to try the coaſt of New Britain, and on the 22nd they were within three leagues of the ſhore; being becalmed, Mr. Keltie was ſent in the boat to try to get bottom near the ſhore for anchorage. A light breeze having ſucceeded the calm, the veſſel met the boat, but the Captain was exceedingly mortified to hear from Mr. Keltie, that there was no poſſibility of anchoring there: they then without delay made for the Duke of York's Iſland, and having reached the ſouth-eaſt part thereof, were ſoon convinced there was no anchoring there. Next day, the 23d, they met with ſeveral canoes, on account of the ſlender condition of which, the natives avoided the ſhip, being aware of the danger of ſtriking againſt her: but they appeared very friendly and good-natured. One of theſe canoes approached the boat, and underſtanding that the Engliſh wanted water, took a keg from them, with which they went to ſhore, filled it, and returned with it immediately to the boat. The officer gave them another keg, which he meant they ſhould keep as a compenſation for their trouble: but this was filled in like manner, and brought back with the greateſt expedition. Theſe people ſeemed to be remarkably honeſt, nor would they accept of any trifling preſents, without making ſome return.

Having now ran round the weſtern ſide of the iſland, they diſcovered a ſmall cove, and upon examination found anchorage here, in twenty-one fathoms ſoft ground. This bay being ſurrounded with canoes, and a great number of the natives having aſſembled on the ſhore, it was deemed prudent to make ready the ſhip's guns for fear of any hoſtility. The people were well made, very ſtout, robuſt, and of a light copper colour; their hair appeared woolly and naſty, owing to their manner of dreſſing it with greaſe and powder, both white and red, with which it is ſo loaded, that the ſight is exceedingly diſagreeable: they were entirely naked, ſeveral were ſcarified upon their arms and ſhoulders, and hollow reeds thruſt through their noſtrils. Their chief weapons were lances thrown by the hand, about ten feet long; they alſo carried ſtones with them, about the ſize of eggs, which they throw with great exactneſs from their ſlings. They had alſo a kind of muſical inſtrument, doubtleſs intended for entertainment: their vocal muſic was far more harmonious than their inſtrumental. They ſeemed to be perfectly ſenſible of honors and diſtinctions, for ſeveral were more reſpected than others: the women were in general ordinary.

There was no appearance of hoſtility at firſt, on the contrary, thoſe natives, though exceedingly clamorous, were diſpoſed to be very friendly: they aſſiſted the men in the boat to find water, which was done by digging holes in the ſandy beach, and therein ſinking the caſks, which immediately filled; they introduced them to a place where there was a conſiderable flow of excellent freſh water. As they were now determined to lay in a ſufficiency, for that purpoſe they delayed four days. On the firſt night a very ſtrict watch was kept, and the natives were equally vigilant; they ſung their watch-word, and the continual reſponſes made very harmonious echoes. The next morning the ſame buſineſs was repeated; twelve men being ſent armed to defend the waterers, in caſe of danger. This day the natives were encreaſed in number, and the majority appeared with lances, ſtones, ſlings, &c. One who was all over white with powder, and evidently a great chief among them, became very troubleſome, nor could he be appeaſed with any of the preſents which were offered them. The men endeavoured all in their power to court his favour, but in vain: this native was ſo apparently enraged at their preſence, that he ſtimulated the reſt to hoſtility, and they now appeared determined to drive the Engliſh away. Several took out their boxes of red powder, which they blew all over; an emblem, it ſeems, of their diſpleaſure, and an inclination to quarrel. Some of the natives retired; and ſeveral ſtones were now flung. Upon this the armed men diſcharged their muſquets, which was anſwered by ſeveral ſhots from the ſhip, boat, &c. The guns not being known to the natives, but miſtaken for clubs, had now ſuch powerful effect, that they all ran away full of terror, and ſeveral who were in canoes jumped inſtantaneouſly into the water and ſwam away. It is ſuppoſed that ſome of them were wounded, as they were afterwards remarkably condeſcending, and full of awe. The Engliſh continued filling their caſks, without any further moleſtation; and on the fourth day their watering was completed. The men having had directions to fire whenever any of the natives were ſeen in the woods, frequently diſcharged their muſquets, and prevented any further attacks. On the laſt evening of their ſtay, when the ſailors were departing from ſhore, the natives aſſembled; as did many canoes at an awful diſtance, holding up green boughs, the emblem of peace and friendſhip: they appeared extremely anxious for a reconciliation, and took every means to prove their concern for the provocation they had given. There was therefore a boat ſent from the veſſel, with every ſign of amity: on their landing, the natives retired, having previouſly piled upon the beach their peace-offering, conſiſting of ſugar-canes, cocoa-nuts, &c. &c. and what was very remarkable, two little dogs, male and female, were left on the top of this heap, with their mouths and feet tied: there was alſo a palm-tree ſtuck in the middle, with the head forced down. This was ſuppoſed to be a token of ſubmiſſion. Peace being re-eſtabliſhed, all the natives aſſembled, and joined in a ſong of friendſhip; which was indeed true harmony: they alſo both gave and received trifles: they ſeemed to diſregard iron, which is in general eſteemed by natives, preferring pieces of linen or cloth, eſpecially ſuch as were of lively colours. Several were ſhaved by the barber, and expreſſed great ſatisfaction during the operation. Their muſic, though it boaſts not of variety, is by no means diſcordant; they generally adhere to one tone, and though hundreds are ſinging together, the niceſt connoiſſeur cannot diſcover the leaſt deviation in the ſound: when they have finiſhed, they make a noiſe like the barking of dogs, by which they mean to teſtify their friendſhip.

There was not much time for exploring this iſland, but from the little which was diſcovered, there is every reaſon to think that the ſoil is excellent, and productive of ſeveral plants. The natives ſeem to have ſome notion of cultivation; in this, however, they are aſſiſted more by nature than art. Their huts evince much ingenuity; they are, for the moſt part, erected of bamboo, near the ſhade of a cluſter of cocoa-nuts: they have a manner of clearing the ground which is fixed upon for their reſidence, and of encloſing it with a kind of railing: a part of this ground is appropriated to a garden, where may be found the yam, banana, plantain, ſugar-cane, &c. &c. The iſland, though not conſiſting of high land, is far from being low: it is remarkable for abundance of wood, which was reported by the carpenter of the Sirius, who was ſent to examine it, to be in general of the ſame nature of the cabbage-tree or palm in Port Jackſon; but there was one kind, he ſaid, which appeared ſomewhat like the ebony, that was remarkably hard and good.

The maſter of the veſſel gave theſe natives two Engliſh pointers, male and female, and a cock and a hen, which he had received at Port Jackſon, and with which theſe people were highly delighted: he now prepared for ſailing, and in the morning at ten o'clock on the 27th they left the bay, which was called Port Hunter, after the captain. This bay, though not extenſive, is nevertheleſs ſafe and convenient, particularly at this time. It is ſituated N. W. of the iſland; and in part of it there is anchorage from 25 to 15 fathoms. It is the worſt ground at the ſhoal water: in that part of 20 fathoms it is ſoft. As the ſalt water is very near the watering-place, it created a ſuſpicion that what they had taken was brackiſh, eſpecially as it was remarkably ſoft; but Captain Hunter imputed this ſuppoſition to mere prejudice, as there was not the leaſt inconvenience derived from it.

They now proceeded N. W. by W. and W. N. W. and diſcovered Sandwich Iſland the next morning, bearing N. W. This iſland appeared high, and well covered with wood. The extraordinary peaked hill, which Capt. Carteret takes notice of, was ſeen on the north ſide. At night they ſteered W. by N. deeming it ſafe to keep aloof of the Portland Iſlands; but in the morning, finding themſelves more to the northward than they imagined, they hauled up W. by S. and paſſed the iſlands, which are nine in number, low, but covered with wood, at about four miles diſtance. The weather became very foul on the night of the 30th of May; and the wind, which was changeable, threatened much rain: there were, however, only a few ſmall ſhowers. Early the next morning (May 31ſt) one of the Admiralty Iſlands were ſeen, bearing N. W. by W. and afterwards another from the maſt-head, bearing W. It was now their wiſh to bring-to for the night; being however becalmed, their progreſs was very ſlow. They met with five large canoes, containing each eleven men; five of whom appeared warriors or chiefs, being ornamented (according to their cuſtom) with paint, &c. theſe were ſtanding in the middle of their canoes: however, on approaching the veſſel, they diſcovered no inclination to hoſtility, but would not come on board, though invited: they were very willing to exchange their arrows, darts, ſhells, &c. for other trifles. Theſe people wore a wrapper round their waiſt; and their hair, which ſeemed of a woolly nature, was turned up, and tied at the top. One of them ſeemed very anxious to be ſhaved; which knowledge of the operation fully evinced a late acquaintance with ſome Engliſh. Their canoes were very ingeniouſly fitted up; being from about 40 to 50 feet long. This interview was ſuddenly terminated, by a black heavy ſquall, which alarmed them in ſuch a manner that they all haſtily made for land.

There being now a ſmart gale of wind, they endeavoured to clear theſe iſlands before night: they made all the ſail poſſible, and met with land in every direction. The night was very dark, and the rain inceſſant. As they were weſtward of the Admiralty Iſlands, they deemed themſelves clear of St. George's Channel, and perfectly ſafe.

On the 3d of June they diſcovered two iſlands, about two points from the ſtarboard beam; and another the next morning: from thoſe they ſteered to the N. W. and W. N. W. the wind very changeable, and the weather equally variable: there being alſo a diſagreeable head ſea, their progreſs was very ſlow. After this the wind was ſet in from W. N. W. to W. S. W. and from the 19th they had been ſetting to the eaſtward, at the rate of 39 miles every day. One of the ſeamen, William Phillips, died on the 30th.

On the 11th of July the allowance of water was obliged to be reduced, and each man had only two purſer's quarts, which was to anſwer every purpoſe for 24 hours. This diſtreſſing ſcarcity was much aggravated by the heat of the weather.

On the 13th a conſultation was held, to conſider on what was beſt to be done. It was univerſally deemed improper to perſevere in a tedious attempt of reaching Macaſſar, ſeeing that the proviſions and water which remained could only ſupply them for ten weeks at moſt, at the half allowance; and if the caſks were leaky, the water would be ſhort even of that; beſides, the Dutch captain obſerved, that when they did reach the Molucca Iſlands, their number could not poſſibly be ſupplied nearer than Batavia: it was therefore deemed their moſt eligible plan to make either for the port of Manilla, or endeavour to fetch Macao in China; the latter, however, was rather a doubtful experiment, ſeeing that the veſſel was ſo leewardly.

Land was diſcovered on the 14th, bearing north; which proved to be two iſlands nearly joined together by a long ſandy ſpit above water, and on account of the projection of others, muſt be very dangerous at night-time: they ſeemed to be quite alone, about five miles aſunder. A few natives were ſeen, who ran away at ſight of the ſhip. Capt. Hunter called theſe Phillip Iſlands, after the governor of New South Wales.

Three iſlands were diſcovered on the 17th of July. A ridge of rocks, about half a mile in breadth, were perceived from the maſt-head to ſtretch from the veſſel to the ſouthward, towards the iſlands: they had, however, 15 fathoms of water, and preſently after 20. Theſe iſlands were ſuppoſed to be part of the New Carolines.

On the 23d the weather became very unſettled, attended with heavy rains. Every one took advantage of theſe ſhowers, and endeavoured to ſave as much water as poſſible, by ſpreading his blanket or rug. This weather continued till the 30th: the wind then veered to W. and W. by S. with which they ſtood ſouthward, with hopes of fetching the Baſhee Iſlands. On the 2d of Auguſt the wind was W. N. W. they then ſtood to the S. W. On the 6th the coaſt of Mindanao was perceived from S. to N. W. by S. An iſland was diſcovered on the 8th, bearing ſouth five or ſix leagues: this from its ſituation was conjectured to be the iſland of Palmos. Being ſouthward of Cape Auguſtine, they carried all the ſail poſſible, to get to the weſtward. It was now found that the land, which was taken for one iſland the preceding day, was three; that which is weſtmoſt is very high, and is called Hummock Iſland: it appears about ſix miles long, from north to ſouth. The next eaſtward thereof is not ſo high, but about the ſame length; and the eaſtmoſt of the three is a confined round ſpot, overſpread with ſhrubs and trees. They paſſed between the ſmall iſland and the next; the channel being previouſly tried by a boat, which was found both clear and ſafe. During the remainder of the day, they continued to work between the ſouth point of Mindanao and theſe iſlands. A boat, with twelve men on board, was ſent in the afternoon to meet them, from Hummock Iſland. When they approached the veſſel, they aſked ſeveral queſtions; which were anſwered by the maſter of the ſhip, and ſome of his own crew, who were Javaneſe, in the Malay language. It appeared that the inhabitants of this place were upon friendly terms with the Dutch; therefore the articles which were required were accordingly promiſed. The maſter of the ſhip was deſired to give them a letter, containing every neceſſary information; which they were to deliver to the Raja, under whoſe government theſe iſlands were. A larger boat was ſent out in the evening, to have ſome converſation with them; but as it was dark, they did not chooſe to come on board the veſſel. In the morning of the 11th, they ſtood in for Hummock Iſland, and at noon found anchorage in 22 fathoms water, about a mile's diſtance from the ſhore. An anſwer to the letter was brought from the Raja, in the ſame canoe which had been ſent out the preceding day with Dutch colours, ſignifying (in the Malay language) that their wiſhes ſhould be complied with.

They now proceeded without delay to water the ſhip; while ſeveral canoes were ſent from the ſhore with a great ſtore of neceſſaries: poultry, goats, fruits, &c. were immediately bargained for. The natives behaved exceedingly friendly, and were remarkably courteous to thoſe who were employed on ſhore.

Notice was ſent that the Raja intended to viſit the veſſel; and for that purpoſe he came in a large boat, which was covered with an awning of ſplit bamboo: he was very reſpectably attended; and, on his arrival, ſaluted with five guns. During the Raja's viſit, a party of ten men armed were placed on the top of the round-houſe abaft. The Raja and his attendants were ſhewn to the cabin, where every due reſpect was paid them. The Raja now produced his commiſſion, whereby he proved himſelf in a great meaſure ſupported by the Dutch Eaſt India Company in his authority over theſe iſlands. Seeing therefore that the Dutch Company's intereſt was ſo well eſtabliſhed in theſe iſlands, the maſter of the veſſel was encouraged to requeſt of the Raja a proper quantity of rice, which was very much wanted: this ſolicitation continued for ſome time. The Raja promiſed to viſit them the next day, and bring ſuch articles as were wanted. The maſter, upon taking leave, gave him a very rich piece of ſilk, and a volley was fired upon his return to the boat.

On the 14th, which was the next day, the Raja repeated his viſit, according to promiſe; but the ſcanty meaſure he produced of rice and ſago powder (which would ſcarce have been ſix days maintenance for two men) ſo incenſed the maſter of the ſhip, who was of a very haſty, ungovernable diſpoſition, that he was reſolved to detain the Raja until his requeſt was complied with. Capt. Hunter endeavoured to diſſuade him from ſuch violence; and urged him rather to renew his requeſt, than to make a *demand*, and in caſe of refuſal to intimate that he would make a proper report thereof to the Governor and Council at Batavia: the captain very ſhrewdly imagining that ſuch threat would have a much better effect than a haſty quarrel, particularly as the people on deck were unprepared for an attack.

The converſation being renewed between the Raja and maſter of the ſhip, the latter ſtill appeared perverſe and violent; and the Raja, ſeeing the long-boat hoiſted in, and ſome cutlaſſes brought upon deck, according to the maſter's orders, became ſomewhat alarmed, which his attendants perceiving, inſtantaneouſly aſſembled their companions, who approached with drawn daggers. An aged attendant upon the Raja, who held him by the ſleeve, drew his dagger, and was prevented by the Raja from ſtabbing the maſter of the veſſel, who immediately ſnatched up a hanger in his defence, and vehemently called out for ſmall arms. Captain Hunter, though he condemned the maſter's conduct, drew his ſword; and a number of his ſailors, who were on the fore-part of the deck, and had been, previous to this, trading with the natives, immediately armed themſelves with clubs, handſpikes, &c. while ſome of the officers got up the ſmall-arms, and commenced a ſmart fire. The Raja jumped from the gunwale into his boat, followed by his attendants, who immediately cut the rope which held them, and pulled away from the veſſel with the greateſt expedition. Several of the natives made their eſcape by ſwimming. The boat, which had been ſent to ſhore for the purpoſe of water, returned at this critical period. Several of the natives, and it is ſuppoſed the Raja, were wounded; but not a man on board the veſſel ſuffered the leaſt injury: the maſter's violence and imprudence were notwithſtanding very much cenſured. One ſeaman was unfortunately left behind; but as he was a Javaneſe, and underſtood the Malay language, it is poſſible that he might have ſaved his life, if he did not fall a ſacrifice to rage and revenge.

Theſe iſlands are exceedingly fertile, particularly Hummock Iſland, where the Raja reſides. They abounded in rice, bees-wax, honey, ſugar-cane, pine apple, oranges, mango, jack, limes, ſago, cocoa-nut, Indian corn, tobacco, peas, potatoes, &c. alſo very fine fowls, goats, dogs, parrots, &c. The inhabitants were much of the ſame ſize, colour, form, &c. of the Malay: they wore jackets and trowſers, and a kind of turban. Their daggers, which had wooden ſcabbards, hung in a ſaſh. A diſeaſe like the leproſy was very prevalent among them; and a kind of dry ſcurf, like the ſcales of fiſh, rendered their ſkin offenſive to the eye.

In the evening, (eight o'clock) they weighed from the road and put to ſea, and the wind being weſtward they ſteered to the ſouthward. Early the next morning they diſcovered a ſmall iſland, bearing S. W. in three hours after two others; and in the ſpace of ſix hours more there were ſeven in ſight, bearing from S. W. to W. N. W. A large iſland a-head was ſeen in the evening, and a number of ſmall ones; one of which was about a mile's diſtance, called Poolo Sanguy: this is a large tract of high land.

On the 25th they made the iſland of Celebes, and were within nine leagues of the land thereof the 27th. The weather at preſent was very ſultry, and there was but little wind, and that little from S. W. There was a very heavy ſquall on the 29th, which obliged them to clew all up. The iſland of Bonneo was perceptible on the 30th; and a ſmall iſland, ſuppoſed to be one of thoſe which are laid down to the ſouthward of the Taba Iſlands, and near in upon the coaſt. There was a violent ſquall of thunder, lightning, and rain, on the 31ſt. On the 1ſt of Sept. at night, it being very dark, there was a ſudden alarm; ſomething being diſcovered on the weather-quarter like a large row-boat: the people were in expectation of a pirate, and accordingly kept themſelves in readineſs; but as this apprehenſion was groundleſs, it was afterwards concluded that it had been a large tree, or the remains of a wrecked veſſel, which were floating.

On the 7th there were two large proas ſeen in the S. W. at firſt they were divided, but they preſently joined each other, and ſtood in for land. It was ſuppoſed they were trading veſſels; but, for fear of their being pirates, the crew were in readineſs to encounter them all the night.

The wind continued very variable; ſometimes S. S. W. to W. N. W. and at other times (particularly night-time) from S. S. E. to S. On the 11th the ground was ſuddenly perceptible under the ſhip: it could not have been more than five or ſix fathoms; but they were ſoon afterwards in ten or twelve. They paſſed the Brothers next day, and ſtood on to the S. W. being drawn into a conſiderable bight, formed of the ſouth part of Borneo and a large iſland called Poolo La'oot, they were obliged to ſtand off and on, the winds being very trifling: at this time, ſeeing that they dropped in ſo faſt upon the ſhore, they were apprehenſive that they would be obliged to anchor; which loſs of time would have been of conſiderable conſequence. When they got out of this bight, and were eaſtward of the Brothers, they endeavoured to fetch the Celebes ſhore. After meeting with many changes of wind, which cauſed no little trouble and vexation, there was ground diſcovered under the ſhip on the 19th: they had ten fathoms over a very rocky bottom, which was quite perceptible. They now ſteered W. S. W. which they continued for about fourteen leagues. On the 23d they made the Caraman Java Iſlands: the next day they met with ſome whirlwinds and water-ſpouts, which however they got clear of by a ſudden ſmart breeze of wind. From Caraman Java they ſteered weſtward, and made the Boomkin's Iſlands on the 25th. Having paſſed three miles within them, the ſhore of Java was diſcovered; and on the 27th they anchored in Batavia road, being exactly ſix months on their paſſage.

The following is a liſt of the latitudes and longitudes of the different places ſeen in the courſe of this voyage, from Port Jackſon by the northern route:

Reef from the S. E. point of New Caledonia, called by Capt. Cook Queen Charlotte's Foreland,

In latitude	23 deg. 00 min.	ſouth.
In longitude	167 deg. 18 min.	eaſt.

Stewart's Iſlands, (center)

In latitude	8 deg.	26	ſouth.
In long.	163	18	eaſt.

Bradley's Shoals,

In latitude	6	52	ſouth.
In long.	161	6	eaſt.

Lord Howe's Group, ſouth ſide,

In latitude	5	30	ſouth.
In long.	159	25	eaſt.

Five Iſlands and two large rocks, ſuppoſed to have been Carteret's nine iſlands, ſouth end,

In latitude	4	53	ſouth.
In long.	155	20	eaſt.

Appearance of a ſtraight through very high land weſtward, ſuppoſed to have been Shortland's or Bougainville's paſſage,

In latitude	5	25	ſouth.
In long.	154	30	eaſt.

Sir Charles Hardy's Iſland,

In latitude	4	41	ſouth.
In long.	154	20	eaſt.

Lord Anſon's Iſland,

In latitude	5	8	ſouth.
In long.	154	31	eaſt.

Cape St. George's, New Ireland,

In latitude	4	52	ſouth.
In long.	153	13	eaſt.

Port Hunter, on the Duke of York's Iſland, ſituated in the narroweſt part of the paſſage between New Britain and New Ireland, and which appears to be named Iſle of Man in Capt. Carteret's chart by miſtake,

In latitude	4	7	30 ſec. ſouth.
In long.	152	42	eaſt.

S. W. point of Sandwich Iſland,

In latitude	2	58	ſouth.
In long.	150	27	eaſt.

Portland Iſlands (center of the group)

In latitude	2	38	ſouth.
In long.	149	8	eaſt.

Part of the Admiralty Iſlands,

From latitude	2	38	ſouth,
To ditto	1	59	ſouth.
From long.	147	52	eaſt.
To ditto	146	30	eaſt.

Phillip Iſlands,

In latitude	8	6	north.
In long.	140	3	eaſt.

The ſuppoſed iſlands belonging to the New Carolines.

In latitude	9	33	north.
In long.	137	30	eaſt.

North end of the iſland St. John, off the eaſt coaſt of Mindanao,

In latitude	9	30	north.
In long.	126	32	eaſt.

Iſland

Iſland of Palmas,			
In latitude	5 deg.	30 min.	north.
In long.	127		eaſt.
Hummock Iſland, N. E. part,			
In latitude	5	27	north.
In long.	125	12	eaſt.
Poolo Sanguy, north end,			
In latitude	3	44	north.
In long.	125	11	eaſt.
Celebes Iſland, N. W. part,			
In latitude	1	22	north.
In long.	121		eaſt.
Borneo Iſland, projecting point,			
In latitude	1	2	north.
In long.	119		eaſt.
Small iſland on the coaſt of Celebes,			
In latitude	000	3	ſouth.
In long.	119	54	eaſt.
The Triangles lat.	2	58	ſouth.
In long.	117	53	eaſt.

Two Brothers, off S. E. point of Borneo,			
In latitude	3 deg.	41 min.	ſouth.
In long.	117		eaſt.
Borneo, S. part, lat.	4	15	ſouth.
In long.	115	16	eaſt.
An iſland, ſuppoſed to be Poolo La'oot,			
In latitude	4	56	ſouth.
In long.	115	40	eaſt.
Ditto, ſuppoſed to be Solembo.			
In latitude	5	42	ſouth.
In long.	114	24	eaſt.
Caraman Java, ſouth ſide,			
In latitude	5	21	ſouth.
In long.	110	33	eaſt.
Bomkin's Iſlands, ditto,			
In latitude	5	56	ſouth.
In long.	108	21	eaſt.
Keeling's or Cocas Iſlands, ditto.			
In latitude	12	6	ſouth.
In long.	98	3	eaſt.

CHAPTER VIII.

A Letter from the Shebander to Captain Hunter—Purport of the Contents—Captain waits upon the Shebander—Accompanies him to the Governor—His Buſineſs and Requeſt made known—Governor's Anſwer and Scruples—Captain urges the Neceſſity of his Application—Is referred to the Council—His Application written in Dutch—Improved by the Shebander—Leave given Capt. Hunter to purchaſe the Veſſel—Terms agreed upon between him and the Proprietor—Obſervations—Sailors taken ill of a Fever—Nature of it—Deaths of four Seamen—Indiſpoſition of ſeveral—The Proprietor's Attention—Captain ſails to the Iſland of Onruſt—Stores taken in—Departure—Straight of Sunda cleared—Cape Lugullus made—Anchorage in Table Bay—Wind tempeſtuous—Veſſel breaks looſe—Cables cut—Put to Sea—Signal of Diſtreſs hoiſted—Anſwered—Relieved—A Supply of Hawſers and Anchors—Veſſel ſecured—Detained—Defects remedied—Proviſions laid in—Orders to proceed—Run down to Robins Iſland—Becalmed—Obliged to anchor—Make for Sea—St. Helena Iſland ſeen—Ship moored—Anchorage—An Officer ſent to the Governor—Governor's Politeneſs and Attention—Captain lands—Is ſaluted—Kindly received—Departure—Arrival at Portſmouth—Extract of a Letter from Captain Hunter—The beſt Courſe from New South Wales to Europe deſcribed—Concluſion.

CAPTAIN HUNTER now received a letter from the Shebander, the reported owner of the Waakſamheyd Tranſport, requeſting he would call upon him early the next morning, in order to be introduced to the governor; and being appriſed of the captain's buſineſs and intentions by the maſter of the ſhip, who had waited upon him immediately after his arrival, he further adviſed him not to write to the governor, but endeavour to have matters ſettled by a perſonal interview, as ſuch meaſures, in his opinion, were always attended with leſs delay. According to the invitation in this letter, the captain waited upon the Shebander, having previouſly committed to writing the nature of his buſineſs, in order that the Shebander (who underſtood the Engliſh language) might be the better able to repreſent to the governor the purport of captain Hunter's requeſt.

The contents of Captain Hunter's writing, were chiefly to inform the governor of the loſs of the Sirius, and the neceſſity of having employed the Waakſamheyd Tranſport, in order to convey to that port the officers and crew of the loſt veſſel, who had been on a voyage in his Majeſty's ſervice, with an intention of obtaining the governor's permiſſion to return to England in the ſaid Tranſport, after they had obtained the neceſſary ſupplies, for which purpoſe the captain ſolicited that the Waakſamheyd Tranſport might be refitted as ſoon as poſſible, and leave granted for them to proceed.

In anſwer to this, it was obſerved by the governor, that the veſſel was Dutch property, and it was contrary to their eſtabliſhed rules to permit any ſuch veſſel to proceed from thence to Europe, in the capacity of a Tranſport. The captain however urged the neceſſity of the application, and begged he would conſider that it was for the accommodation of his Britannic Majeſty, and not any one individual that he was making this requeſt. However the captain's application was obliged to be referred to the council, the governor not being capable of doing any thing of himſelf. On this account, it was written in the Dutch language by the Shebander, who, by the way of facilitating the buſineſs, ſuggeſted one additional paragraph, which he deemed the moſt likely method of obtaining the veſſel; this was, "That if it was ſtill deemed inconſiſtent with the regulations of the company, to ſuffer the veſſel to be hired for the purpoſe propoſed, they would be ſo kind to grant their permiſſion that the captain might purchaſe it of the proprietor, provided they could agree about terms." The captain attended the governor and council, and after ſome ſhort conſultation, the former returned anſwer, that it was the council's pleaſure, he might, if he found it agreeable, purchaſe the veſſel. Now the proprietor (Mr. Engelhard) and Captain Hunter, had previouſly agreed upon the terms, ſo that all further delay was obviated.

The property of this veſſel muſt appear to every reader, as it did to Captain Hunter, of a very myſterious nature. At firſt (when in Port Jackſon) the maſter of the veſſel was willing to diſpoſe of it without the permiſſion of either the proprietor, or the company. Previous to the captain's arrival at Batavia, he underſtood that it belonged to one individual, Mr. Engelhard, and afterwards he was informed that it was the property of the company, and therefore ſubject to their eſtabliſhed regulations. Theſe contradictions can only be reconciled by a ſuppoſition that all thoſe who have any material appointments under the company, have full power and authority to uſe their name when it anſwers any private intereſt.

Previous to the captain's departure, ſeveral of the ſailors were taken very ill of a fever, which was very prevalent in this town. The patient was thereby reduced to ſuch a weakly condition, as not to be able to ſtand or walk; it likewiſe occaſioned ſuch a ſickneſs at the ſtomach, that every kind of food was diſagreeable; add to which, that it was of ſuch a ſtubborn nature, as rendered it exceedingly difficult to be removed. One Daniel Puddle, ſeaman, died on the 19th of October; Terence Burne, ditto, on the 26th; at which time there were twenty-two indiſpoſed. Robert Henderſon, ſeaman, died on the 14th of November; and Edward Moore, ditto, on the 11th of December.

Mr. Egenhard having evinced the greateſt attention and liberality in reſpect to the equipment of the veſſel, it was ready for ſea October the 20th, where having left the road, they ſailed to the Iſland of Onruſt, where they anchored, and took in their ſtores. They left Onruſt on the 22nd, and in four days cleared the Straits of Sunda: they now ſteered S. W. and made Cape Lagullus on the 15th of December, and anchored in Table Bay, at the Cape of Good Hope, on the 17th.

The wind now became ſo violent from the ſouth-eaſt, that they could not poſſibly fetch their upper anchorage. Thus it continued for ſeveral days, particularly on the 20th, when it was ſo remarkably furious that the veſſel broke looſe from the two bower anchors: it was in vain to truſt any longer to anchors, which had no effect, eſpecially as there was not the leaſt abatement of the wind: the veſſel was toſſed to and fro by every gale that blew: the captain, apprehenſive of being drove upon the reef off Robin's Iſland, in the night, immediately had both cables cut, and fortunately ran to ſea under the fore-ſail before it was dark. The weather now became fair, and the wind quite calm; therefore with the view of recovering the bay again, they made ſail. In the evening of the 22nd, they were cloſe round Green Point; and having but one ſmall anchor remaining, hoiſted the ſignal of diſtreſs, which was anſwered with ſeveral guns by his Majeſty's Ship Providence, the Aſſiſtant armed Tender, and Pitt Tranſport, which were in the bay. Theſe veſſels immediately ſent out all their boats; ſeveral others were likewiſe ſent by ſome Engliſh Whalers and Americans, who ſupplied them with hauſers and anchors: and by the great exertions and attention of all the commanders of theſe ſhips, Captain Hunter and his company were now in ſafety: their veſſel was ſecured by anchors and cables which they received from the ſhore, for their own anchors were loſt.

Being detained here through the weakly condition of the ſick, Captain Hunter took this opportunity of having a ſpare top-maſt converted into a mizen-maſt, which was ſoon completed; ſome other defects being alſo found, were at this time remedied.

A quantity of proviſions for four months being completed on January 13, 1792, Captain Hunter iſſued orders that all thoſe who were ſufficiently recovered ſhould appear on board, and proceed upon the voyage: five men were obliged to continue in their ſick quarters, being ſtill too weak for labour. A ſmart breeze from S. S. E. enabled them to run down to Robin's Iſland, where, on account of a ſudden calm, they were obliged to anchor. They made for ſea on the 19th, the wind being S. W. and perceived the Iſland of St. Helena on the fourth of February. In the evening they moored ſhip, and anchored in fourteen fathoms and a half off James's Valley.

An officer was ſent on ſhore to deliver the captain's reſpects to the governor, according to the uſual ceremony. The governor when acquainted with the accidents the captain had met with, immediately wrote to him in a very polite ſtyle, expreſſing great concern for what he had heard; and likewiſe aſſuring him that every refreſhment which the iſland produced, ſhould be very much at the ſervice of his ſeamen, for the ſpeedy recovery of their health and ſtrength. The captain landed the next day with a ſalute of eleven guns, and met with a very kind reception from the governor and his family, who were particularly attentive and friendly, both to him and all his officers.

During their ſtay in this iſland, they received a quantity of freſh beef for the ſhip's company, and having completed their water, they departed on the 13th, and arrived at Portſmouth, April 22nd.

It will be neceſſary to ſubjoin here an extract of a letter from John Hunter, Eſq. to the Right Honourable the Lords Commiſſioners of the Admiralty; wherein the captain has given his opinion on the beſt courſe from New South Wales to Europe, and which it is preſumed, will be found both inſtructive and entertaining information.

“ The paſſage from England to the Cape of Good Hope is already ſo well known that it would be ſuperfluous in me to make any obſervations upon it. From the Cape to our ſettlement at Port Jackſon, the navigation is now much better known, than it was when the firſt convoy to that country was left in my charge; it is a plain and eaſy track; any perſon who is acquainted with the common rules of navigation, and finding the variations of the compaſs, may, with the neceſſary look-out, run acroſs that extenſive ocean without danger: I have ſailed over it twice, and it has been croſſed by many other ſhips ſince. The advantage of being able to aſcertain the ſhip's place in longitude, by obſervations of the moon, will ever be ſatisfactory, but more particularly through ſo vaſt a tract of ſea, in which the error of the log may conſiderably accumulate, when ſhips arrive upon that coaſt where the land lies ſo nearly in a north and ſouth direction, there can be no difficulty in diſcovering what part of the coaſt they are upon, their latitude obſerved will always point that out, by applying to the general chart, given from the authority of that moſt correct and able navigator Captain Cook. When they arrive off Botany-Bay, Port Jackſon, or Broken-Bay, they will I hope receive ſome aſſiſtance into any of theſe harbours, from the ſurveys done by me, copies of which I delivered to the governor, as the different harbours were completed, in order that fair copies might, as early as he ſhould judge proper, be tranſmitted home: but that nothing in my power may be wanting to aſſiſt thoſe who may be ſtrangers on their arrival off that part of the coaſt, ſeparate copies of thoſe ports, with directions more full than were given with the firſt, will be delivered at your lordſhip's board, with this, and alſo a copy of the three harbours, on one ſheet, connected with the intermediate coaſt.

“ It is the return from that country immediately for Europe, by the ſafeſt, moſt certain, and expeditious route, that ſhould be the object of our particular attention. The paſſage from Van Diemen's Land weſtward, to the Cape of Good Hope, has never yet been attempted; we can therefore ſay but little upon it; ſome, however, are of opinion, that a paſſage may be made that way with as much eaſe and expedition as by any other route. I confeſs that I differ from theſe opinions: I admit that the paſſage may be made; but I think, whenever it is tried, that it will be found tedious, and fatiguing to the ſhip's company. The ſhip which purſues that route ſhould be ſtrong and well found, and her crew healthy and capable of bearing much blowing, and ſome cold weather. It is not from a ſingle voyage that we are to judge of the eligibility of this paſſage; it will happen in ſome ſeaſons that the wind may be more favourable for making that paſſage than in others; but it is on the general prevalence of weſterly winds here, and the “heavy ſea which is conſtantly rolling from the weſtward, that I conceive this route may be tedious and fatiguing; and on which account I give the preference to the ſouthern route by Cape Horn. This paſſage has been frequently tried, and never yet failed of being ſafe and expeditious; the other never having yet been tried, leaves in my mind ſome doubt of its certainty and expedition, and a ſtrong ſuſpicion, that whenever it is, it may be found twice out of three times, attended with the difficulties I have hinted at; but if from repeated experience it ſhould be found to be as practicable, expeditious, and certain, as ſome imagine, it will no doubt be preferable to all the others, as being a ſhorter diſtance.

“This paſſage will of courſe be attempted only in the Summer months: for admitting a ſhip to have gained ſo much to the weſtward, as to enable her to clear the weſt coaſt of New Holland, and to ſtretch to the northward, until ſhe falls into the ſouth-eaſt trade wind, ſhe will carry this trade in the Summer-time probably quite home to the Cape; but in the Winter, north-weſt winds prevail in the neighbourhood of that coaſt, which would exceedingly retard her arrival there.

“The paſſage ſouthward by Cape Horn, I have ſailed, and as a proof of the prevalence of weſterly winds in thoſe high latitudes, I made my voyage to the Cape of Good Hope, in ninety-one days, from Port Jackſon, although I was ſo unlucky as to be detained beating off Cape Horn for ſeventeen days, with a north-eaſt wind; which I believe is not very common there. This is rather a long voyage to be performed in that time, and yet I think it will be done twice in three times in leſs, although a diſtance of about 3300 leagues.

“The northern paſſage, which can only be attempted during the winter ſeaſon, in the ſouthern hemiſphere, on account of the periodical trade winds in the Indian ſeas, and undertaken in ſuch time as to enſure their reaching Batavia before the ſetting in of the weſterly winds there, which is generally in the middle or end of October. The dangers, currents, calms, and other delays to which we are liable in theſe little known ſeas, and of which we had much experience in the Waakſamheyd tranſport, is the ſubject of the preceding narrative, which was written particularly for the information of your lordſhips, and principally with a view of ſhewing the very great uncertainty of an expeditious voyage to Europe by that paſſage. I ſailed from Port Jackſon in March, and I can take upon me, without, I hope, being ſuppoſed to have preſumed too much on my own judgment and experience, to aſſert, that a ſhip leaving that port in the end of September, or beginning of October, taking her route by Cape Horn, would have reached England as ſoon as I have.

“If ever government ſhould find it neceſſary to ſend ſhips to that country, which may be intended to return immediately from thence to England, I beg leave to ſuggeſt to your lordſhips, that the particular ſeaſons in the ſouthern hemiſphere ſhould be conſidered, in order to prevent thoſe delays in the return of the ſhips which muſt inevitably attend their ſailing at an unfavourable time.

“If ſuch ſhips leave England in February, or earlier, if found more convenient, they ſhould refreſh at Rio de Janeiro, in preference to the Cape of Good Hope; as by the time they could arrive at the Cape the N. W. winds will be ſetting in there, which will oblige them to go into the Falſe bay; this will conſiderably encreaſe their expences, and probably occaſion ſome delay: ſail immediately from Rio de Janeiro for the coaſt of New South Wales, where, if they are not uncommonly unfortunate, they will arrive early in September; this is giving them good time.

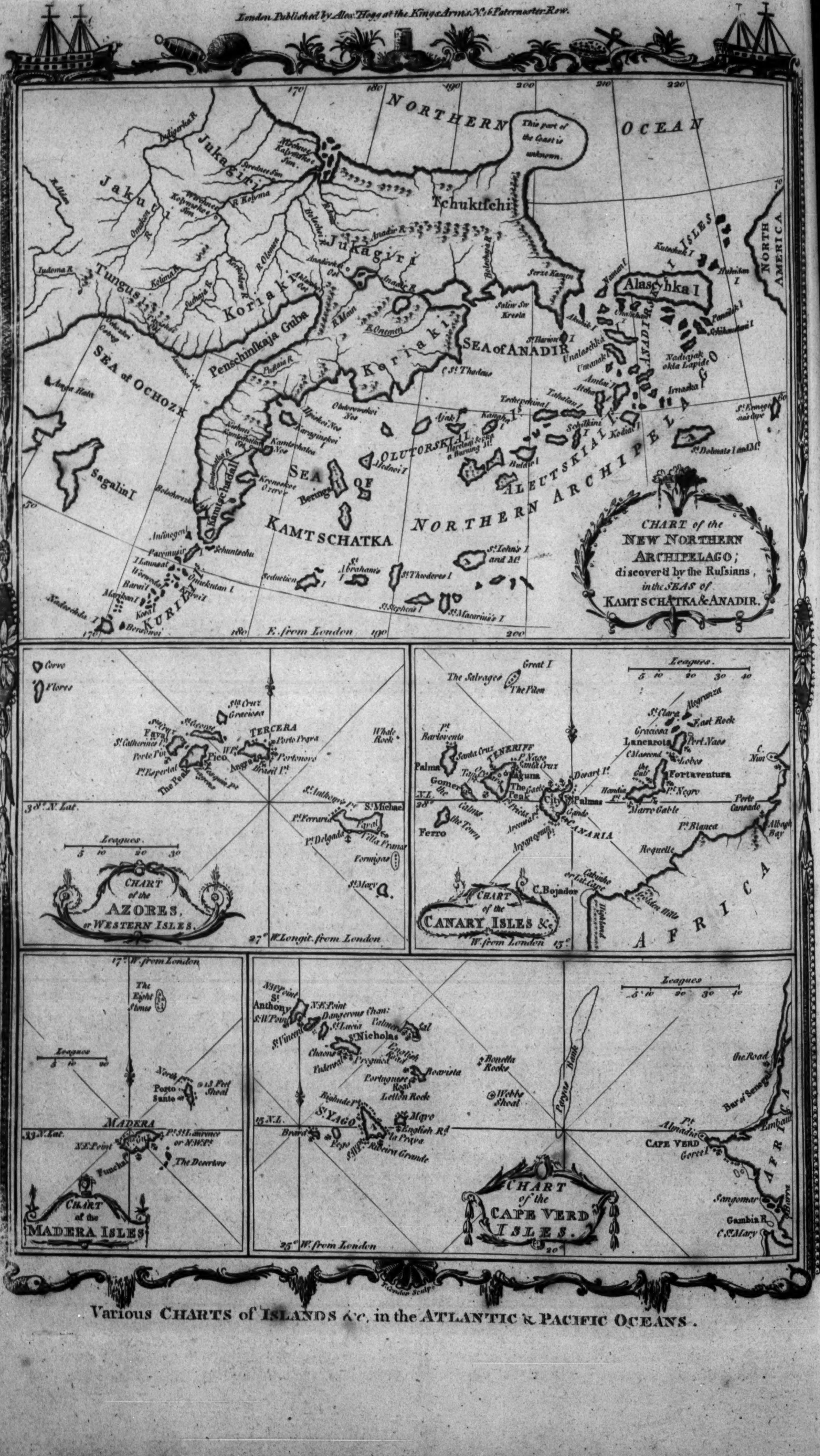
“They will then have time to clear, ballaſt, and to refreſh their people for ſix weeks or two months, and return by Cape Horn; or, if the weſtern paſſage be found preferable, the ſeaſon will be equally favourable for it. If they ſhould take their route by Cape Horn, as they will no doubt require to refreſh ſomewhere in their voyage home, they may either ſtop at Santa Catherina or Rio Janeiro, on the Brazil coaſt, or go to the Cape; in this caſe I would recommend the Cape, as more convenient, in more reſpects than one. If they are ſickly, there they may get a ſupply of men, which it is well known they cannot at either of the other places; and in ſailing from the Cape homeward they will have the advantage of being to windward; however, if as late as April, they would probably prefer Brazil. If water only be wanted, that could be had at Falkland's Iſlands.

“The ſhips upon this ſervice will, no doubt, be under the inconvenience of coming upon the coaſt of New South Wales in ſome of the winter months; we have ſome bad weather on that coaſt in the winter, and ſome ſmart gales of wind; the eaſterly gales always bring thick or hazy weather: I would recommend the not making too free with the coaſt, until they be near the parallel of their port. In ſteering in for Port Jackſon, if they ſhould fall to leeward, either with a northerly or ſoutherly wind, they can avail themſelves of either Botany-bay or Broken-bay, Port Jackſon being the center harbour.”

Having thus far related (in a more ſatisfactory and ample manner than has been hitherto publiſhed) all the chief occurrences, relative to thoſe inſtructive Voyages to and from Port Jackſon, &c. which are not only entertaining, but on account of their public utility doubly intereſting, we ſhall now, agreeable to promiſe, proceed with our further relations, and give in the ſecond place (with the ſame accuracy and regularity) the valuable and remarkable Voyage of Capt. Wilſon, from Macao to the Pelew Iſlands, and ſo on.——The great encouragement and liberality already beſtowed upon this undertaking, are alone ſufficient to call forth all the exertions of the Author to complete in the beſt manner this univerſal Collection. It is with no little pride that he exults in the ſatisfaction, which has been already teſtified by the Public, even with the little that has been ſeen: in order therefore to make his triumph ſtill greater, it ſhall be his unremitting ſtudy at preſent to be able hereafter to boaſt that the *more* they have read, the MORE they are delighted.

BRITISH
7 FE 89
MUSEUM

London. Published by Alex.r Hogg at the Kings Arms No. 16 Paternoster Row.


NORTHERN OCEAN
This part of the Coast is unknown.
NORTH AMERICA
Jakuti
Jukagiri
Tungusi
Koriaki
Tchuktchi
Penschinskaja Guba
SEA of OCHOZK
Sagalin I
SEA of ANADIR
Alasçhka I
Unalaschka
Umanak
KAMTSCHATKA
Kamtschatka
Beringa I
SEA of KAMTSCHATKA
OLUTORSKIAI
ALEUTSKIAI I.
NORTHERN ARCHIPELAGO
KURILE
St. John's I and Mt.
St. Theodores I
St. Abraham's I
St. Stephens I
St. Macarius's I
Seduction I
Schuntschu
Bolscheresk
170
180
190
200
210
220
E. from London
CHART of the NEW NORTHERN ARCHIPELAGO; discover'd by the Russians, in the SEAS of KAMTSCHATKA & ANADIR.
Corvo
Flores
Sta. Cruz
Graciosa
St. George
Fayal
St. Catherines Pt.
Porto Pin
Pico
The Peak
TERCERA
Angra
Porto Praya
Portonovo
Brasil Pt.
Whale Rock
St. Anthony's Pt.
St. Michael
Pt. Ferraria
Pt. Delgada
Villa Franca
Formigas
St. Mary
38° N. Lat.
Leagues
5
10
20
30
27° W. Longit. from London
CHART of the AZORES, or WESTERN ISLES.
Great I
The Salvages
The Piton
Pt. Barlovento
Palma
Santa Cruz
TENERIFF
Santa Cruz
Laguna
The Peak
Gomera
Ferro
CANARIA
City
Palmas
Decart I.
Allegranza
St. Clara
East Rock
Graciosa
Lancarota
Port Naos
Lobos
Fortaventura
Pt. Negro
Marro Gable
Pt. Blanca
Requelle
Porto Canado
C. Non
C. Bojador
28° N. L.
Leagues
5
10
20
30
40
W. from London
15°
AFRICA
CHART of the CANARY ISLES &c.
17° W. from London
The Eight Stones
Leagues
5
10
20
Porto Santo
MADERA
Funchal
Pt. St. Lawrence or N. W. Pt.
N. E. Point
The Deserters
33 N. Lat.
CHART of the MADERA ISLES.
St. Anthony
St. Vincent
St. Lucia
Dangerous Chan.
St. Nicholas
Sal
Boavista
Bonetta Rocks
Webbs Shoal
Pargos Bank
Mayo
St. YAGO
Brava
Fogo
Porto Praya
Ribeira Grande
English Rd.
Lisbon Rock
15 N. L.
Leagues
5
10
20
30
40
25° W. from London
20°
The Road
Bar of Senegal
Pt. Almadie
CAPE VERD
Goree I.
Sangomar
Gambia R.
C. St. Mary
AFRICA
CHART of the CAPE VERD ISLES.
T. Conder Sculp.

Various CHARTS of ISLANDS &c. in the ATLANTIC & PACIFIC OCEANS.

A NEW, GENUINE, AND COMPLETE

HISTORY OF
The Wreck of the *Antelope* Packet,

On a VOYAGE from MACAO;
UNDER THE COMMAND OF
Captain HENRY WILSON,
In the Service of the Honourable EAST-INDIA COMPANY:
WITH FULL AND CIRCUMSTANTIAL ACCOUNTS OF

The PELEW ISLANDS,

The *King*, *Raa Kook*, *Arra Kooker*, *Lee Boo*, and other Inhabitants.

Including all the ADVENTURES, DISCOVERIES, INFORMATION, &c. contained in the JOURNALS and COMMUNICATIONS of
Captain WILSON, GEORGE KEATE, Eſq. Surgeon SHARP, and ſeveral of the other OFFICERS and GENTLEMEN.

Being an Entire New HISTORY of this Unfortunate WRECK, Immediate DISTRESSES, Wonderful DELIVERANCE, and Intereſting ADVENTURES, more Accurate and Full than any hitherto Publiſhed.

Which, with the ſeveral other VOYAGES and TRAVELS to be included in this Collection, will be Embelliſhed with a Variety of Moſt Elegant COPPER-PLATES, Drawn and Engraved by Eminent Artiſts.

INTRODUCTION.

THE diſcovery of the Pelew Iſlands has been entirely owing to the wreck of the Antelope: there has been ſome curſory mention of this place, it is true, in the Spaniſh and other Hiſtories, but never till now was there a ſatisfactory account. All informations derived from former relations, are not only trivial, but erroneous, as may appear from the following remarks:

Theſe iſlands, which, as ſuppoſed, were firſt of all obſerved by ſome of the Spaniards of the Phillipines, were by them called the Palos Iſlands, Palos ſignifying in Spaniſh, a *maſt*; on account of the tall palm-trees, for which this place is remarkable, and which at a diſtance reſembled the maſts of ſhips. All the ſeveral iſlands of this Archipelago have derived their names from the Spaniards, though now the majority are chiefly known by the title of the New Carolines, which were diſcovered in the year 1696, as appears from the writings of the Jeſuit miſſionaries; whereby it ſeems, that ſome of the inhabitants of Spain, venturing too far to ſea, had been driven by a ſtorm to one of the Phillipines: this diſcovery was the occaſion of a veſſel called the Holy Trinity, being afterwards fitted out at Manilla by order of Philip V. to carry two miſſionaries there, les Peres Duberon and Cortel; when they had paſſed Sonſorol, one of the Carolines, an altercation aroſe between the Captain, Don Padilla and the miſſionaries, wherein the latter contended to go on ſhore in the chaloupe, to fix the croſs, and ſtubbornly perſevered in the attempt. The veſſel, as no anchorage could be found, unable any longer to encounter the force of the winds and currents, was obliged after a few days to quit her ſtation, and leave the reverend fathers behind. There is alſo an account of another veſſel being ſent, which foundered at ſea, and all the crew periſhed except one Indian, who, by ſome miraculous means got back to Manilla, and made known the fatal accident. In theſe writings there is alſo an account of a boat, belonging to the Carolines, which was driven by a tempeſt to Guahan, one of the Mariannes, in 1721; where, being detained, Catova (who was afterwards killed by the people of the Carolines) endeavoured to acquire ſome knowledge of their language and country; and from theſe natives, derived an imperfect account of the Pelew Iſlands. He records that this Archipelago was divided into five provinces, and that theſe iſlands formed the fifth diviſion: then, upon the authority of theſe natives, who acknowledged, that they had no communication with thoſe people, he adds, "They are an inhuman ſavage race; the men and women go entirely naked, and feed upon human fleſh; this is the reaſon" (as given by the natives) "that the inhabitants of the Carolines looked upon them with deteſtation, as the enemies of mankind; and with whom they held it dangerous to have any intercourſe."

From this accidental acquaintance, the four-fifths of theſe iſlands were called by the Spaniards New Carolines; but being reported by the miſſionaries as unprofitable, they were of courſe neglected by the Spaniſh monarchy. The account, as given by the natives, of the *fifth* part, was indeed ſufficient to deter them from all enquiries; but it is evident that theſe people knew nothing of the Pelew inhabitants: at leaſt, if they were *then* inhuman, ſavage, and enemies of mankind, they are *now* of a contrary deſcription. Perhaps, through ſome miſtake or other, they entertained a notion of their being cannibals, and therefore avoided them. Be this as it may, it is plain, on account of this imputation, thoſe iſlands remained in total obſcurity, being only known by the appellation of Palos, which the Spaniards had given them. They do not lie indeed in the way of any of the circum-navigators; ſometimes they have been perceived at a diſtance, by veſſels making the eaſtern paſſage to and from China againſt the monſoons, but it is evident that none of theſe veſſels anchored there, or had intercourſe with any of the natives. It is thought that Captain Carteret approached them the neareſt of all. However, the great aſtoniſhment which the inhabitants of theſe iſlands betrayed upon ſeeing *white* people, is ſufficient demonſtration they were unacquainted with any of that colour; and we may therefore naturally conclude the crew of the Antelope were the firſt Europeans that they ever ſaw. How far they have been unjuſtly cenſured by their neighbours of the other diviſions, will appear in the following Chapters. It is a matter of doubt, whether thoſe who have ſo wantonly ſtyled them ſavage, inhuman, and inimical to mankind, have ever yet demonſtrated ſo much natural courteſy, humanity, and philanthropy, as have been diſcovered in theſe people, too long unknown.

Why be aſtoniſhed at a ſavage race,
Who want the light of godlineſs and grace?
No, NATURE's children rather ſhould ſurpriſe,
And bid our wonder at *their* wonders riſe:
Thoſe ſelf-taught people, of unruffled mind,
Humane by nature, and by nature kind;
Who, tho' like us, ne'er bleſt as to receive
The GOSPEL's rays can yet inſtructions give,
And teach even *enlighten'd* Chriſtians how to [*live*.

CHAPTER I.

The Antelope's Departure from Macao—Obliged to anchor again—Anchor weighed—Set ſail—A high Sea—The Weather—Baſhee Iſlands perceived—Foretop-maſt ſprung—Weather variable—A calm—The Chineſe Men exerciſed—A Storm—Cattle loſt—Weather fine—A Squall—Alarm of Breakers—General Confuſion and Anxiety—Veſſel filled with Water—Orders given—A violent Storm—Punctuality and Expedition of the Men—Fortitude and Humanity of the Captain—His Recommendation—Their chearful Conſent—Moderate Refreſhment—Mutual Conſolation—A ſmall Iſland diſcovered—Other Iſlands eaſtward—Boats manned and loaded—Mr. Benger, and others, depart in them—Injunctions—A Raft begun—Much Diſquietude—Mr. Benger's return—Agreeable News—Raft completed—A Man loſt—Pinnace, Jolly Boat, and Raft filled—People aſſembled—Their Departure—Deplorable Situation of the People in the Raft—Their Exertions—Strength exhauſted—A Miſtake—Arrival of the Pinnace—Occurrences, &c.

IN the month of June, 1783, Capt. Henry Wilſon arrived at Macao, in the Antelope packet, of about 300 tons burthen, belonging to the Honourable Eaſt-India Company. The veſſel being refitted with all poſſible expedition, the captain received his diſpatches, and, after the uſual buſineſs and ceremonies, they weighed anchor July 20th; but the weather turning out very foul and unſettled, were a few hours after obliged to anchor in ſeven fathoms. The next morning, the wind being from the E. N. E. they again weighed anchor, and ſet ſail. Having met with a very high ſea, they were obliged to lay-to, and ſecure their live ſtock, &c. The weather continued very unſettled; in general, cloudy and dark. There was much rain, thunder, and lightning. On the 25th they perceived the Baſhee Iſlands, bearing from S. E. to E. N. E. They went round the northermoſt iſland the next day, but on account of the hazineſs of the weather they had a very imperfect view of the iſlands. The foretop-maſt being ſprung, the ſails were taken in, the topgallant-maſt got down, and preparations making to get down the top-maſt, which on account of the hazineſs of the weather could not be effected till the next day, when the veſſel was alſo dried and aired, and the cattle and ſtock ſecured; a good part of which had periſhed.

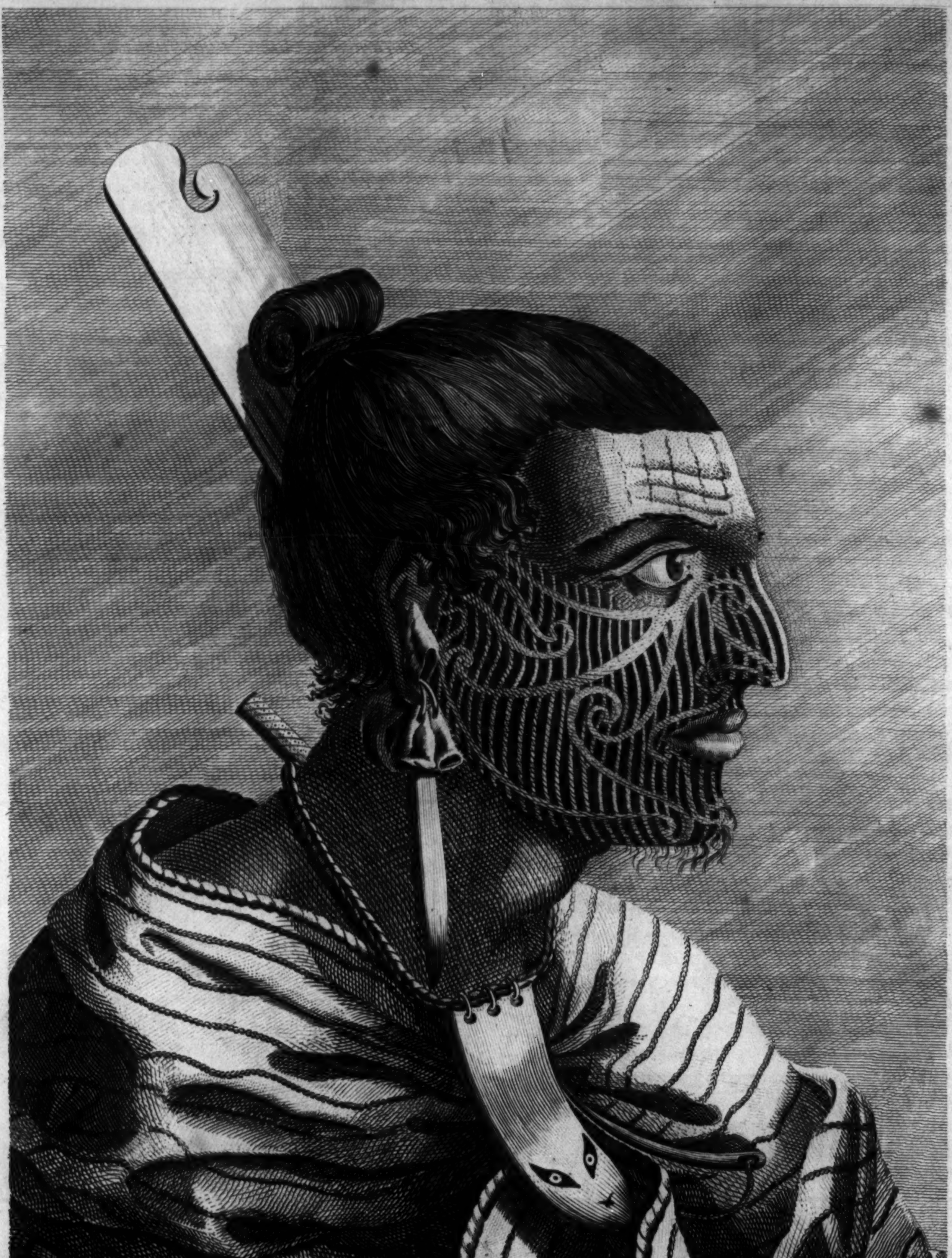
For a while they had good weather, and a favourable wind, which afterwards changed, and remained very variable. A calm took place on the 1ſt of Auguſt, when ſome of the Chineſe men, who were on board, were ſent out by the captain in the Jolly-boat to row awhile, that they might acquire a knowledge of the oars: the weather now continued fair, and the wind moderate, for two days. On the 7th a ſtorm aroſe, which was of a ſhort duration; but notwithſtanding the cattle all periſhed, except one bullock. After this the weather became ſo fine, that they proceeded on their voyage with the greateſt cheer and happineſs.

On the 10th there was much thunder, lightning, and rain. The chief mate, Mr. Benger, whoſe turn it was to watch on the deck, had lowered the top-ſails; at this time the captain was in bed, nor did Mr. Benger deem it neceſſary to have him called, as the ſquall appeared but of little conſequence. An alarm of breakers was given by the man on the look-out, but ſo ſhort was the notice, that there was no poſſibility of avoiding them. So great was the ſhock upon this occaſion, that the captain and all the other gentlemen immediately forſook their beds to learn the cauſe: they ſaw, with the greateſt conſternation, the breakers along-ſide, and the rocks which were making their appearance through them. The veſſel taking a heel, was in about an hour's time filled with water up to her lower deck hatchways. Orders were inſtantly given to bring upon deck what proviſions were likely to be ſpoiled, and to preſerve them with a covering from the rain; alſo to ſecure the ſmall-arms, gunpowder, ammunition, &c. While this was accompliſhing, others, according to orders, were eaſing the veſſel, which was in danger of overſetting, of her mizen-maſt, the main and foretop-maſts, and lower yards; the boats were likewiſe hoiſted out, with two men in each, to take care of the proviſions, &c. which were put in them. At this critical period there was a violent ſtorm, which added not a little to the dreadful ſcene. The men were, however, remarkably attentive, and executed their orders with uncommon punctuality and expedition. The captain, round whom the people thronged with looks of anxiety and terror, behaved with the greateſt fortitude and humanity, endeavouring to revive the drooping ſpirits of his crew with ſoothing expreſſions: he ſtrongly recommended that they would abſtain from ſpirituous liquors; to which they chearfully conſented; but as they were exceedingly wet and fatigued, each perſon was refreſhed with a biſcuit and two glaſſes of wine. The tedious hours of night now paſſed on in mutually endeavouring to conſole each other. Each man had taken what quantity of clothes it was convenient to him to ſecure; and every individual ſtrictly conformed to the captain's command, to abſtain from ſpirituous liquors.

At dawn of day they diſcovered a ſmall iſland to the ſouthward, diſtance about four leagues; and a little after ſome other iſlands were ſeen to the eaſtward. Upon this the boats were manned, and loaded in the beſt manner: Mr. Benger, and a few others, were diſpatched in theſe, to explore the neareſt iſland; they were likewiſe enjoined to court the

BRITISH
7 FE 90
MUSEUM

Engraved for PORTLOCK's *New* COLLECTION *of* VOYAGES *and* TRAVELS.



T King Sculp.

Portrait of
A NEW ZEALAND CHIEF,
His **FACE** *being ingeniously* **TATAWED,** & Ornamented
according to the Custom of the Country.

Publiſhed by Alexr. Hogg March 8. 1794.

friendſhip and confidence of the natives, if they met any; and to avoid all hoſtility, unleſs neceſſity proved it urgent. Thoſe who remained in the veſſel were immediately at work to get the booms overboard, and make a raft for their ſecurity, as the ſituation of the Antelope was ſuch that every hour they expected ſhe would go to pieces. As there was a ſmart gale, they became now very apprehenſive about the boats, whoſe delay cauſed much diſquietude. Theſe fears were, however, removed in the afternoon, by their appearance; and their ſpirits revived, by Mr. Benger's aſſurance that there was not only a ſecure harbour, which afforded a comfortable ſhelter from the wind, but alſo ſome excellent freſh water: he further added, that there was no appearance of any inhabitants. Five men were left with the ſtores upon ſhore. The crew were now ſo encouraged with theſe agreeable tidings, that they renewed their work with renovated ſpirits, and in a ſhort time the raft, which they begun during the departure of the boats, were completed: after which they refreſhed themſelves again with bread and wine. One Godfry Minks was however loſt, having fallen overboard while cutting the rigging of the mizzen-maſt, which had been entangled in the mizzen-chains: every method was taken to ſave him, but in vain.

The pinnace and jolly-boat were ſoon filled with proviſions, ſmall-arms, and ammunition; likewiſe the raft which they had finiſhed loaded with as much proviſions and ſtores as it could carry with ſafety. The boatſwain was now deſired to ſummon all the people from the ſhip, who, notwithſtanding the captain's repeated entreaties to leave her, were ſtill anxious to ſecure all that could be got, eſpecially the carpenter, who was ſo buſy in collecting his tools, &c. that he remained below after the pinnace and raft were gone, and was abſolutely forced into the jolly-boat by the captain, ſo intent was he upon the preſervation of every neceſſary.

The raft was taken in tow by the pinnace, and was awhile aſſiſted by the jolly-boat, which however was ſo heavy laden as to be incapable of giving further aid; it accordingly proceeded alone to the ſhore, where they found the five men who had been left with the ſtores, and who had been employed in preparing the place for the reception of their fellow ſufferers. Thoſe people who had truſted themſelves to the raft, were for a long time in a deplorable ſituation: in clearing the reef, they were frequently out of ſight of the pinnace, and obliged to tie themſelves, and cling with all their ſtrength to the raft, for fear of being waſhed off by the tremendous ſurf and riſe of the ſea: during this the poor Chineſe, who were unaccuſtomed to ſuch fatigue and cold, were making a moſt lamentable noiſe: after clearing the reef, their progreſs was ſomewhat more agreeable, but in approaching the land a ſtrong current obliged them to uſe their utmoſt exertions; their ſtrength being however exhauſted, in the unavailing attempt of reſiſtance, it was judged expedient that the pinnace ſhould take the people from off the raft, which addition double banked the oars of the pinnace, and relieved the rowers; but they were conſequently ſo burthened, as to be ſcarcely able to keep above water: they were now cloſe under a rocky coaſt, in 16 fathom water. By this time the jolly-boat had laid her cargo in ſhore, and Captain Wilſon, and four others, were returning in her to aſſiſt the pinnace and raft; it was very dark, and the pinnace having but ſlowly advanced, was hailed by the jolly-boat at a diſtance; but this was returned with ſuch a ſhrill halloo, owing to their faintneſs and languor, that they were ſuppoſed to be natives, for the people on ſhore had now ſome reaſon to think that the iſland was inhabited: on account of this miſtake, Captain Wilſon and his company returned with all poſſible expedition to the cove: however, on the arrival of the pinnace, all theſe apprehenſions ceaſed. They ſhook hands, kindled a fire, and refreſhed themſelves with cheeſe, biſcuits, and water. The boats were hauled on ſhore, and a watch ſet, for fear of being ſurpriſed by any of the natives; but, on account of the heavy rain and wind, and more eſpecially the diſtreſſing thoughts of their diſmal ſituation, this night proved exceedingly tedious and uncomfortable. Several of the people, through the ſeverity of their labour, and the condition of their clothes, which were both wet and ſtiff, had ſuch a violent itching in their ſkins, as to occaſion painful ſores.

Early in the morning the pinnace and jolly-boat were ſent to the raft; but, on account of the violence of the wind, found it impracticable to bring it up; they, however, got from it the remainder of the proviſions and ſails. In the afternoon there was a calm; during which the boats were ſo fortunate as to recover ſome rice, and other proviſions, from the wreck. The weather became heavy again, and it was thought, as the wales had ſtarted out of their places, that the veſſel muſt ſoon fall to pieces. This was very melancholy news, as expectations had been formed of her floating, and being thereby enabled to repair her. This hope being blaſted, the deplorable ſituation of the company now aggravated their gloomy reflections: having, however, procured their clothes from the wreck, they felt themſelves more comfortable than the preceding night.

CHAPTER II.

Employment of the Men—Appearance of two Canoes—Interview with the Natives—Captain's Behaviour—Invites them to Breakfaſt—Invitation accepted—Fortunate Event—A Friendſhip contracted—Their Curioſity—Surpriſe—The Captain's Caution—Wiſhes fruſtrated—Natives delighted—The Captain's Brother choſen to be introduced to the King—His Departure in the Natives Canoe—Raa Kook, and the Interpreter, remain behind—Natives aſſiſt the Engliſh in their Work—A Propoſition of the Captain's—Approved of by the Officers—The Wreck plundered by the Natives—Raa Kook's conſequent Indignation and Uneaſineſs—The laudable Fortitude and Affection of the Sailors—Return of Arra Kooker, with one of the Princes—Death of three of the Natives—Preſent to the Captain—King's Meſſage—Return of Mr. M. Wilſon—Account of his Expedition and Reception—General Delight and Satisfaction—Account of the Wreck being plundered—Raa Kook's Behaviour thereupon—A Viſit from the King—Ceremony—He and the Captain embrace—King's Courteſy, &c.—Captain's Preſent—The Engliſh ſtill apprehenſive—The Men exerciſed for the King's Amuſement—Univerſal Surpriſe—King, &c. highly entertained—His Majeſty bewildered, and penſive—The Engliſh alarmed by a Shriek—Accounted for—King's Departure—A hideous Noiſe—Sailors take up Arms—Their Apprehenſions groundleſs—Natives and Engliſh ſing—Deſcriptions of the King—His Brothers—Natives, &c.—Their Ornaments, Diſtinctions, Manners, &c.

THE men were now employed in improving their tents, and drying their ſtores and proviſions: the wind being ſtill boiſterous, the boats were prevented from venturing to ſea. Early in the morning, Auguſt the 12th, the captain and his linguiſt, Tho. Roſe, a native of Bengal, and who paſſed for a Portugueſe, received notice that ſome natives were approaching in two canoes. The captain enjoined the people, who were apparently alarmed, to remain quiet and out of ſight, but prepared for the worſt, in caſe that he and his interpreter were ill received. The canoes had advanced with the greateſt caution; and Roſe was deſired by the captain to addreſs them in the Malay language, which he did: they ſeemed ſomewhat ſurpriſed, and not to comprehend what he ſaid; one of them, however, who very fortunately underſtood the language, enquired in the Malay tongue whether they were friends or enemies. Roſe, according to his injunctions, replied, "that they were friends, unfortunate Engliſhmen, who had loſt their veſſel on the reef, and had landed here for their preſervation." Theſe words were explained to the people by their interpreter; upon which, after ſome heſitation, they ſtepped out of their canoes, and were met by the captain, who for that purpoſe waded into the water, and after embracing them, introduced them to his unfortunate countrymen. There were eight natives; two of which were the king's brothers. They ſtill retained ſome apprehenſion, and were very cautious in all their proceedings, having left a man behind in each canoe. At this time the people were preparing their breakfaſt. The captain prudently diſperſed his men, for fear their number might create an alarm, and prevailed upon the natives to ſit down in the tent and breakfaſt with him, his linguiſt, and only two others. They chearfully complied; and, by the very fortunate event of each party having an interpreter, a favourable friendſhip was contracted. It ſeems this Malay, who had been kept and favoured by the king, had been a year ago thrown on this iſland by a tempeſt, in the courſe of which time he became acquainted with their language. This being the firſt time, as it appeared evident, of their having ſeen a white man, their ſurpriſe could only be equalled by their curioſity: they examined very particularly the coats and waiſtcoats of the Engliſh, and were not a little aſtoniſhed to find them only a covering, being unaccuſtomed themſelves to any, nor were they leſs ſurpriſed at the whiteneſs of their bodies underneath, and the blueneſs of their veins.

Theſe people having ventured themſelves on ſhore unarmed, the captain deemed it highly imprudent to let them ſee their fire-arms, for fear of creating any diffidence or ſuſpicion; he therefore gave his private directions to have them removed, but was fruſtrated in his hopes of concealing them, for one of them having found a bullet, and enquiring its uſe, underſtood from his interpreter the meaning of it, and was further informed of the great beauty and ingenuity of their muſquets: this excited their curioſity ſo much, that it was found expedient to ſhew them one. They expreſſed great ſatisfaction at ſeeing it; and were equally delighted with the appearance of two dogs, as they had never ſeen any quadrupeds before, except ſome grey rats.

It was deemed adviſeable that one of the Engliſh ſhould accompany theſe natives to Pelew, in order to be introduced to their King, that he might be able to form ſome idea of the Engliſh, before he was viſited by the whole party, which might have too formidable appearance, and conſequently make an unfavourable impreſſion. Mr. Mathias Wilſon, the captain's brother, was the choſen perſon: this gentleman chearfully conſented to accompany the natives, and being previouſly inſtructed by the captain, and poſſeſſed of ſome proper preſents for his majeſty, he departed about noon in their canoe, the other canoe and three men remaining behind; alſo the King's elder brother, Raa Kook, and the interpreter.

The Engliſh were ſtill employed in rendering their temporary dwellings more commodious. They were frequently aſſiſted by the natives, who ſhewed them where the beſt water was to be procured, and as theſe people felt no longer any reſtraint, they not only ſuffered themſelves to be conducted round the cove, but readily aſſiſted their new viſitors in helping them occaſionally over every rugged path; for though the Engliſh could ſcarcely bear to walk in thoſe flinty places, yet either through habit or a leſs ſenſibility of pain the natives ſeemed to think nothing of it.

This evening, in ruminating upon their ſerious ſituation, and the danger of uſing ſtrong liquors, which might not only be the cauſe of uneaſineſs among themſelves, but if it came in the way of the inhabitants likewiſe intoxicate them, and be productive of univerſal harm, it was prudently propoſed by the captain to ſtave all the liquor caſks which were on board the wreck, and inſtead of endeavouring to ſave any, chearfully commit them to the waves. This propoſition was univerſally approved of by the officers, particularly as ſome of the men had been already inebriated after the wreck, conſequently clamorous and elated. Capt. Wilſon was therefore reſolved to make his wiſhes known the next morning to all the ſhip's company.

Auguſt 13th, the boatſwain ſummoned all perſons to work, by winding his pipe, the ſound of which not only ſurpriſed, but very much delighted the natives. On account of the badneſs of the weather, Capt. Wilſon's brother was not expected to return. The pinnace was ſent off to the wreck, and did not come back till it was dark; when they reported that ſeveral articles, particularly iron, had been taken out of her by the natives, who had alſo made free with the cheſt of medicines, and carried away ſeveral bottles: the moſt uſeful medicines, however, had been previouſly ſecured by Surgeon Sharp. This intelligence was likewiſe imparted to Raa Kook, who expreſſed much indignation and uneaſineſs at his people's conduct. The captain was apprehenſive that they might deſtroy themſelves, by a miſapplication of the medicines; but Raa Kook ſeemed deſirous that they might, as a juſt puniſhment for their behaviour: he declared that this treachery ſhould be properly ſtated to the King, who, he was ſure, would prevent its ever happening again. This noble chief had put on an uniform coat, and a pair of trowſers, which the captain had given him, and ſeemed highly delighted at being in an Engliſh dreſs: unaccuſtomed, however, to apparel, he could not long bear the confinement of it. When he had taken them off, he therefore put them carefully up among his collection of curioſities.

The captain took the earlieſt opportunity of aſſembling his men, and recommending the immediate deſtruction of the liquor. The ready aſſent and obedience of the ſailors, is almoſt incredible: they acknowledged themſelves that they might not uſe it always with diſcretion, and accordingly haſtened to obey their captain's command, which they did with ſuch chearfulneſs and reſolution, as teſtified not only a laudable fortitude, but the real affection which they bore their commander.

The next morning (Aug. 14th) Arra Kooker, the King's brother, returned with one of his nephews, and informed Raa Kook that three men had died of the medicine articles which they had taken out of the wreck; but the general did not regret this, deeming it a juſt puniſhment for their infidelity. He was accompanied with another canoe, loaded with ready-boiled yams and cocoa-nuts for Captain Wilſon; at the ſame time informing him, that Mr. M. Wilſon would ſpeedily return. The King's ſon delivered his father's meſſage, which being interpreted, ſignified, that the Engliſh were not only welcome to ſtay as long as they liked in his country, but had full leave and permiſſion to build a veſſel, either where they were, or were pleaſed to remove to, under his dominion; and that during their ſtay they ſhould always command his protection. Upon this the general introduced the Prince to the Engliſh, who with the greateſt eagerneſs and delight began to notice every tranſaction.

Mr. M. Wilſon returned in a ſhort time after, to the great ſatisfaction of all his friends, who began to be ſomewhat apprehenſive for his ſafety. The account of his expedition and reception, we think proper to lay before the readers in his own words.

"When the canoe in which I went away came near the iſland where the King lived, a vaſt concourſe of the natives ran out of their houſes to ſee me come on ſhore; the King's brother, who accompanied me, took me by the hand, and conducted me from the landing-place up to the town, where there was a mat ſpread upon a ſquare pavement, on which he by ſigns directed me to ſit down. I obeyed, and in a little time the King appeared; which being notified to me by his brother, I aroſe, and made my obeiſance after the manner of eaſtern nations, lifting up my hands to my head, and inclining my body forward; to which he did not ſeem to pay any attention. After this ceremony, I offered the King the preſents my brother had ſent by me, which he received in a very gracious manner.——His brother, Arra Kooker, now talked a good deal with him, which I conceived was to acquaint him with our diſaſter, and our numbers; after which the King eat ſome of the ſugar-candy, ſeemed to reliſh it, and diſtributed a little of it to ſeveral of his chiefs, and then directed all the things to be taken away and carried to his own houſe; which being done, he ordered refreſhments to be brought, which conſiſted of a cocoanut filled with warm water, and ſweetened with moloſſes; after taſting it, he commanded a little boy who was near him to climb a cocoa-tree and gather freſh nuts, he cleared one from the huſks, and taſting the milk thereof, bade the little boy preſent it to me, making ſigns to me to ſend it back when I had drank; he afterwards broke the nut in two, eat a little, and returned it to me to eat of it.

"I now found myſelf ſurrounded by a vaſt concourſe of both ſexes: much converſation took place between the King, his brother, and the chiefs who were with him. As their eyes were repeatedly directed to me, I concluded I was the the ſubject of it. Taking off my hat by accident, all who were preſent ſeemed ſtruck with aſtoniſhment, which I perceiving, unbuttoned my waiſtcoat, and took my ſhoes from my feet, in order that they might ſee they were no part of my body; being of opinion, that at firſt ſight of me, they entertained a notion that my clothes conſtituted a part of my perſon; for, when undeceived in this, they came nearer to me, ſtroaked me, and put their hands into my boſom to feel my ſkin.

"It being now grown rather dark, the King, his brother, ſeveral others, and myſelf retired into a houſe, where there was a ſupper brought in of yams boiled whole, on a ſtand or ſtool with a rim or edge round it of three or four inches high: in a diſh or wooden bowl was a kind of pudding made alſo of yams boiled and beat together, juſt as we maſh potatoes, of which they put three or four in a bowl or diſh. They had likewiſe ſome ſhell-fiſh, but of what kind I could not make out. They conducted me after ſupper to another houſe at ſome diſtance from the firſt, where I found at leaſt forty or fifty men and women; I was led thither by a female, who, when I had entered the houſe, made ſigns to me to ſit or lie down on a mat that was ſpread, as I underſtood, on the floor for me to ſleep on. After the reſt of the company had ſatisfied their curioſity by viewing me very accurately, they all went to ſleep, and I laid myſelf down on the mat, drawing another mat over me, which I ſuppoſed was placed there for that purpoſe, reſting my head on a block of wood, which ſerves the people here as a pillow. Unable to ſlumber, I lay perfectly ſtill; and ſome conſiderable time after, when all ſeemed quiet, about eight men aroſe, and began to make two great fires at each end of the houſe (which was not divided by partitions, but formed one large habitation). This operation of theirs, I confeſs, alarmed me very much; indeed, I thought of nothing leſs than that the natives were going to roaſt me, and that they had only laid themſelves down that I might alſo drop aſleep, and intended to ſeize me in that ſituation. —However, being ſurrounded by a danger which there was no poſſibility of eſcaping, I collected all my fortitude, and, recommending myſelf to the Supreme Diſpoſer of all events, I expected every moment to meet my fate; when, to my great ſurprize, after ſitting a little while and warming themſelves, I perceived they all retired again to their mats, nor got up any more till day-break, when I aroſe and walked about, encircled by great numbers of men, women, and children. It was not long before the King's brother joined me, and went with me to ſeveral houſes, where I was entertained with yams, cocoa-nuts, and ſweetmeats.—Being after this conducted to the King, I ſignified to him by geſtures that I much wiſhed to go back to my brother; he perfectly underſtood me, and explained to me by ſigns that the canoes could not go out, there being too much wind and ſea. To deſcribe the firſt he pointed up to the trees, and blew ſtrongly with his mouth; and, to mark the too great force of the ſea on the canoes, he joined his two hands together with the palms upwards, then lifted them up, and turned them the reverſe way, to expreſs to me that the canoes would overſet.—The remainder of the day I ſpent in walking about the iſland, and obſerving its produce. I found it conſiſted chiefly of yams and cocoa-nuts; the former they cultivate with great care in large plantations, in ſwampy watery ground, like the rice in India. The cocoa-nut trees grow very near to their houſes, as does alſo the beetle-nut, which they chew as tobacco."

It is impoſſible to expreſs the general delight and ſatisfaction which this gentleman's account afforded. The captain immediately preſented a ſilk coat and a pair of blue trowſers to the King's ſon, which he put on. Though Arra Kooker, his uncle, could not bear the confinement of trowſers, he took a liking to a white ſhirt, which was immediately given him, and which he no ſooner dreſſed himſelf in, but he began to ſkip about with ſo much glee, as to create conſiderable diverſion, not only by the contraſt of the linen and his ſkin, but alſo by his mimickry and humour, which were abundant.

Two boats were ſent off with Mr. Barker to the wreck, but came back with the jolly-boat, on account of the unſettled weather. In the evening the pinnace returned with ſome articles which they had preſerved, and informed the captain that there were ſeveral canoes about the veſſel, and ſome of the natives had been detected in plundering her: this being communicated to Raa Kook, Arra Kooker, and the king's ſon, were immediately diſpatched in a canoe, to threaten and diſperſe them.

For fear of any attack from the inhabitants of adjoining iſlands, it was deemed adviſeable to appoint a regular guard every night; previous to which, for fear of creating any alarm among the natives, this cuſtom, with its utility, was communicated to the king's brothers, and prince, who accordingly went to ſee the guard turn out, and were highly delighted with their manœuvres.

The next day the Engliſh were appriſed of a viſit intended them by the king: while in anxious expectation, ſeveral canoes appeared at a diſtance, who were all armed; others ſurrounded the harbour, where they lay-to: at laſt the king's canoe came, attended with two at each ſide; while the rowers were ſplaſhing about the water, and flouriſhing their paddles with aſtoniſhing agility. Upon his advancing, the canoes in the harbour ſounded their conch-ſhells. Captain Wilſon (underſtanding it was the ceremony) went to meet the king, and was carried by two of his men through the water. He then entered the king's canoe, and embraced him: their interpreters being with them, the captain renewed his requeſt of being permitted to build a veſſel, and received the ſame courteous anſwer, in addition to which, the king obſerved that the iſland he was then on, was deemed unhealthy, and that probably they might be inſulted by ſome of the natives of the other iſlands, who were at war with him: therefore he recommended a removal to the place of his reſidence, where he ſhould be under his immediate protection. Captain Wilſon however obſerved, that ſuch removal would be attended with much inconvenience, particularly as the wreck was ſo near this iſland, that they could, whenever the weather permitted, be able to ſave ſome articles from the wreck; but he added, that if he found any inconvenience from the unhealthineſs of the ſituation, that he would avail himſelf of his polite offer. The King was very much pleaſed with this reply, and accepted a ſcarlet coat which the captain preſented him. He then went on ſhore, but manifeſted the ſame reſerve and caution which his brothers did at firſt; when ſeated his train, being about three hundred, attended, and in a little time his Majeſty became more affable. He drank a cup of tea, but did not much reliſh it; other preſents were made him.

Several of the Engliſh ſtill retained their doubts and apprehenſions, and as every chief among the retinue had looked ſtedfaſtly upon ſome particular perſon, it was immediately ſuggeſted that they were planning their deſtruction, but it was afterwards diſcovered that each was then chooſing an individual to be his friend.

The King was as much delighted with every thing he ſaw, as his brothers had been. For his further amuſement Captain Wilſon commanded his men to be under arms, and drawn up on the beach, then to be exerciſed by the chief mate. This was accordingly done: they went through all the poſitions of their exerciſe, and fired three vollies. The exploſion of the muſquets created univerſal ſurpriſe among them: the king was afterwards ſhewn the effect of theſe guns by Mr. Benger, who ſhot one of their fowls in his preſence. They were very much aſtoniſhed at ſeeing the bird drop, and examined it with great wonder and attention.

The King, his brothers, and the reſt of the chiefs, were highly entertained with every thing they ſaw, particularly a grind-ſtone, the tea-kettle, iron pot, bellows, frying-pan, &c. The novelty of theſe things ſo worked upon the mind of his Majeſty, that he was frequently loſt in thought; and being informed of the great variety of nations there was, began for the firſt time to be ſurpriſed at the magnitude of the world: he was bewildered, and for a long time penſive! The general, his brother, took great pains to ſhew him every thing, and expatiated much upon the Engliſh contrivances.

When the King was about departing, a ſudden loud ſhriek was given by his attendants, which did not a little alarm ſome of the Engliſhmen, who were apprehenſive of a ſudden attack. This was, however, a ſignal for aſſembling his train; who were accordingly united with ſurpriſing expedition. Raa Kook, the Prince, and five canoes with about twenty natives, remained behind. The King's departure was attended with as much ceremony as his arrival. After the guard was ſet, Raa Kook, the Prince, and natives, made ſuch a hideous noiſe, that the ſailors immediately ſeized their arms, and the captain was informed by Surgeon Sharp and Mr. Barker, that his men were apprehenſive that the natives had ſome treacherous deſign, and were giving the ſignal for others to aſſiſt them. The captain begged them to be calm, and appear undiſmayed, till he enquired into the cauſe, which he was very happy to find was only a prelude to their manner of ſinging. Each verſe was given out by Raa Kook, which was ſung by the next chief, all the natives joining in chorus. At their requeſt, the Engliſh ſung ſeveral ſongs, (particularly ſea-ones) with which they were much delighted. Each party now went to reſt, but there were many among the Engliſh who had not yet overcome their doubts and fears.

The King, like the reſt of the natives, went entirely naked: he carried an iron hatchet on his ſhoulder, which created much wonder among the Engliſh, as all their other hatchets were made of ſhells; but as they ſeem to have a great notion of reſpect and diſtinction, it was ſuppoſed that iron was in the higheſt eſtimation. Their ſovereign appeared gentle and gracious, though poſſeſſed of proper dignity. The chiefs had bones on their wriſts, by way of ornament; and the ring which Capt. Wilſon wore on his finger, was imagined by them to be the ornamental mark of his rank and dignity. Arra Kooker appeared to be about forty: he was ſhort in ſtature, but remarkably fat, and poſſeſſed of great humour and ſpirits: his countenance was very expreſſive and lively. Raa Kook was a chief of amiable principles, and evidently poſſeſſed of a nice ſenſe of honour. His nephew was about twenty-one. This young man was extremely well made, but had loſt his noſe. The natives are in general of a deep copper colour: their ſkins gloſſy and ſoft, on account of the cocoa-nut oil, which they frequently uſed externally. They were of a middling ſtature, well made and muſcular; very majeſtic in their walk: their teeth were black with chewing the beetle-nut and chinam: their legs very much tattooed. The hair was of a fine black, exceedingly long and rolled up behind in a becoming manner. None but the King's younger brother had a beard, it being cuſtomary with them to pluck it out by the roots, except when very ſtrong and thick. Abba Thulle, the King, was the firſt perſon in the government: every mark of diſtinction was paid him, and even the greateſt chiefs humiliated themſelves before him. He had ſeveral iſlands over which he ruled. Raa Kook was the next in power, and would have ſucceeded the King in caſe of his death. Arra Kooker was next; and if theſe brothers had died during the reign of Abba Thulle, Qui Bell, and the reſt of the King's ſons, would then have reigned in their turns. There was a particular chief, or Rupack, who always attended the King. This office did not ſeem hereditary, but delegated: he was always the firſt chief that was conſulted. The number of chiefs is very conſiderable. It is an honour ſolely conferred by the King; the ceremony of which we ſhall have occaſion to mention hereafter. Every man has private property, and every family occupy a part of land for their maintenance. The women are rather domeſtic, but exceedingly courteous and attentive. They are chiefly employed in making mats. The Queen has a dwelling of her own.

Both ſexes were very expert at ſwimming, particularly the men, who were excellent divers. A plurality of wives was allowable, but the general number was two. They had ſome kind of contract, which was as binding as marriage. The King had five wives: Raa Kook had three. Women, during their pregnancy, never ſleep with their huſbands. They ſeem to have no idea of religion, and yet are inclined to ſuperſtition. In their funerals, the body is committed to the earth in a very decorous manner, being attended by a due number of women, whoſe lamentations on this occaſion are very violent.

CHAPTER III.

King's chief Attendant pays the Engliſh a Viſit—Accepts a Cutlaſs—Made to return it—Much Uneaſineſs—An Inſinuation—Seemingly corroborated—Captain goes to take Leave of his Majeſty—Their Fears and Surpriſe increaſed—The Natives indifferent and reſerved—A viſible Alteration—The Engliſh much diſtreſſed—An Explanation—Honour and Delicacy—A Requeſt of the King's—Four or five Engliſh wanted by the Natives to join them in battle—Captain's Reply of compliance—All Gloomineſs baniſhed—King delighted—Engliſh reſume their Labour—The building of the new Veſſel—Kindneſs of the Engliſh to their Captain—Captain's Gratitude—Occupations appointed—The King calls for the five Men that were promiſed—All the Engliſh vie for the Preference—Names of the five choſen—Their Dreſs, &c.—Their Departure with the Natives—A Barricade formed—Weather—Progreſs in building the new Veſſel—A Caſk of Arrack preſerved—Name of the new Veſſel—Celebration of her—Arrival of ſtrange Natives—Their Delight, and Departure—Return of the Engliſh from battle—Preſents from the King—Account of his Hoſpitality, Victory, &c.—Ten Men requeſted on a future Occaſion—Name of the Iſland where the Engliſh are—The King gives it to the Engliſh—The Captain takes poſſeſſion of it—Is invited to Pelew—Apologizes for not being able to go—Sends his Brother, &c. to congratulate the King—Jolly-boat ſent out—Some of the Company benighted—Found—Captain explores the Iſland—Return of his Brother, &c.—A Paſſage diſcovered through the Reeſ for the new Veſſel.

THIS morning (Auguſt 16th) the King's chief attendant paid the Engliſh a viſit, and was highly entertained with a view of their operations. He ſeemed deſirous for a cutlaſs, which Captain Wilſon thought prudent to give him; but Raa Kook perceiving it in his hand, was much diſpleaſed with his acceptance thereof, and made him return it. This circumſtance, though trivial, occaſioned much uneaſineſs afterwards. The Malay (who was interpreter to the King) being an artful, jealous man, inſinuated to the Engliſh that they had highly offended the King and his brothers, by neglecting to give them preſents of equal worth, when they preſented his chief with ſuch a valuable thing as a cutlaſs. Capt. Wilſon therefore ſeized an opportunity of offering a remnant of cloth to the brothers, but their indifference and cool acceptance thereof ſeemed to corroborate the account of their diſpleaſure. After this, the captain underſtanding the King was on his return to Pelew, (for till now he remained at the back of the iſland, about a mile's diſtance from the cove), the propriety thereof being ſuggeſted to him, took Roſe his interpreter and four others with him in the jolly boat, to take leave of his Majeſty. Their fears and ſurpriſe were much encreaſed by the equal coolneſs of the King: there was a viſible alteration both in his manners and behaviour, which much diſtreſſed the Engliſh, who began now to think that theſe people were not only eaſily diſpleaſed, but of an inconſiſtent nature. However, this ſeeming indifference, this ſuppoſed coolneſs, were the reſult of honour and delicacy. The King had a requeſt to make, of the greateſt conſequence, yet neither he nor his brothers had collected ſufficient fortitude to aſk it; at laſt, but with much difficulty, it was made known. The King, who was ſhortly to go to battle againſt an iſland that had offended him, wanted the company of four or five of Captain Wilſon's men, to aſſiſt him with their muſquets. The captain made anſwer by his interpreter, "That all the enemies of the King he looked upon as his own; and therefore hoped his Majeſty would look upon the Engliſh as his own people, and uſe his pleaſure." This reply baniſhed all gloomineſs; every face reſumed its wonted gaiety, and the Engliſh and natives became as friendly and good-humoured as before. The King ſaid he would call for the men the next day, as preparations were already making for the battle, which was to take place in five days. The captain, upon communicating what had paſſed to his friends, was urged to return to the King, and aſſure him the men were ready whenever he was pleaſed to command them. The captain immediately acquieſced; and his Majeſty was highly delighted with the readineſs of the Engliſh. Thus apprehenſion was at an end, and every perſon betook himſelf to labour with an enlivened countenance.

Every neceſſary preparation was made for building the new veſſel. A piece of wood was already provided for a ſtern, and another for a ſtern-poſt. In the afternoon ſome of the floor timbers were laid; alſo the keel; ſtem and ſtern-poſt ſquared. During the preſence of the natives, they had the prudence to conceal their tools; for if they had been coveted by any of them, they muſt conſequently have ſuffered much embarraſſment, either by a refuſal, which might have terminated their friendſhip, or a compliance, which would have totally deſtroyed their hopes of a departure. Mr. Barker, ſecond officer, who very fortunately underſtood the nature of this buſineſs, contributed all his aſſiſtance in deſigning the veſſel, which for ſake of expedition was determined to be a ſchooner. Every one conſented to work according to the beſt of his abilities, under the command of Captain Wilſon, who though, according to maritime laws, had loſt all his authority with that of the veſſel, was however obliged, by the entreaties of his men, to retain his power, and remain their commander as before. The captain, impreſſed by gratitude, inſiſted however, that all puniſhments ſhould be decided by the majority of voices. Mr. Barker, by the captain's deſire, was to give what directions he thought proper for the ſpeedy conſtruction of the new veſſel; alſo to appoint for each man his employment. Mr. M. Wilſon and Surgeon Sharp were accordingly appointed to fell trees, in which they were frequently aſſiſted by the captain himſelf. The boatſwain, who had been a blackſmith, was put to his old occupation; and the mate directed to aſſiſt him. The Chineſe were ordered to carry loads, and be occaſional meſſengers: neceſſity ſometimes obliged them to change their employments. They continued at labour till it was dark, and then united at the great tent, where the captain read prayers; thankſgivings having never been neglected.

When the king came for the men that were promiſed, the captain voluntarily offered to be one, but his people objected to this, as his life was too precious at this critical moment to be riſqued. Every one vied for the preference: but the following five men, John Cummin (who was third mate), Nicholas Tyacke, James Bluett, Madan Blanchard, and Thomas Dulton, who were firſt in their application, were the perſons appointed for this expedition. Theſe men were accordingly clad in blue jackets, they had cock'd hats with blue cockades, muſquets and ammunition: Thomas Roſe accompanied them as an interpreter. They went into ſeparate canoes, the king and chiefs having taken one man each: four natives were left behind by the king. As they were leaving the ſhore, the Engliſh who attended them to the water-edge, gave them three cheers, which were returned both by the King and his men, upon underſtanding the nature of it.

The Engliſh took the favourable opportunity of their abſence, to advance their undertaking as much as poſſible. The boats continually viſited the wreck, and ſeldom returned without ſome articles preſerved. A barricade was formed in front of the tents towards the ſea: every neceſſary preparation was taken in caſe of an attack, and two ſwivels were mounted on the ſtumps of two trees, which could be directed to any point. The weather was very changeable, every fine day being generally ſucceeded with a ſhowery one: their progreſs in building the new veſſel was ſurpriſingly rapid, eſpecially when every diſadvantage is conſidered. A caſk of arrack belonging to Mr. Barker, which had not been perceived when the others were ſtaved, was brought among other articles, in the boats. It was delivered up to the captain, who agreed that this ſhould be preſerved in the tent, and each man be allowed a pint of grog every evening after his labour, during its continuance. The veſſel being now begun (which was to be called the Relief), on Auguſt 22d ſhe was celebrated, and every perſon allowed a double allowance of grog, to drink ſucceſs to her.

Auguſt 23. Four canoes full of men came aſhore. At firſt it was ſuſpected they were ſome of the king's enemies: it was evident, however, that curioſity brought them to ſee the Engliſh. Captain Wilſon paid them great attention, conducting them round the cove, and ſhowing every thing that was deemed worthy their obſervation. Theſe men, whoſe fears made them at firſt very cautious, appeared highly delighted, and went away without either ſeeking or accepting any preſents.

The ſix men who attended the King to battle, were abſent nine days. They returned this day in the afternoon, accompanied by Raa Kook the King's brother, with ſeveral baſkets of yams, cocoa-nuts, ſweet-meats, &c. for the captain and his friends. They met with a hearty reception, as every one was glad of their ſafe return: they declared that they were treated with much hoſpitality and kindneſs during their ſtay with the King. That they did not proceed to battle till the 21ſt, as all the King's canoes had not been got together: the Engliſh went in five different ones, and proceeded eaſtward near a dozen leagues. Their number conſiſted of about a thouſand men, in one hundred and fifty canoes: the enemies number could not be aſcertained. Previous to action, Raa Kook had ſome converſation with the enemy; but his propoſals being received with indifference, the ſignal of war was given: whereupon the Engliſh fired, and the enemy ſeeing one of their men fall, they knew not how, were in the greateſt confuſion; thoſe on ſhore took to flight, and thoſe in canoes jumped into the water, and ſwam away. After a few more ſhots they were entirely diſperſed. The King was highly delighted with this triumph: it being too late to return, they ſpent the remainder of the evening among a few ſmall creeks: the next day they arrived ſafe at Pelew, where feaſts and entertainments were prepared. Previous to their departure from Pelew, they were entertained by the King with ſtewed turtle, who took this opportunity of intimating a wiſh to have ten men on a future occaſion; as a repetition of the battle was judged neceſſary.

It was promiſed him that the matter ſhould be mentioned to the captain. The King attended the Engliſh down to the water-ſide, and took leave of them in the moſt polite manner.

By command of the captain, theſe men had the ſhare of grog which was due to them during their abſence, and which they ſhared with their comrades, while true joy and hilarity became univerſal.

Oroolong, which was the name of the iſland on which the Engliſh were, was now reſigned to Capt. Wilſon for the Engliſh by the King; in teſtimony of which voluntary donation, the captain this day after breakfaſt had the Britiſh pendant hoiſted, and by the way of taking poſſeſſion, three volleys of ſmall arms were fired. This grant of the iſland was made public by the King himſelf, who at the ſame time invited the captain to Pelew, but as his preſence was ſo much needed in Oroolong, an apology was made; his brother Mr. M. Wilſon, Mr. Benger, Thomas Roſe, and one of the Chineſe (who were accompanied by Raa Kook), were ſent to congratulate the King upon his victory. As the Chineſe are allowed to be the beſt botaniſts, this China man was ſent with a view of making curſory obſervations on the produce of the iſland.

Auguſt 17th the jolly-boat was ſent out to haul the ſeine, but they got no fiſh: alſo to bring home ſome timbers and cabbages, if any could be found; in this laſt article they ſucceeded ſo well, that what they had dreſſed for ſupper was reckoned exceedingly good. Some of the people who aſſiſted in cutting the timbers, having preferred walking home inſtead of returning in the jolly-boat, accordingly ſet out on their march long before the departure of the boat, and were ſo long abſent after the boat's arrival, as to occaſion much uneaſineſs and apprehenſion. Several were diſpatched with lanthorns to ſeek them, who hallooed every now and then, to recover thoſe benighted travellers: fortunately the men who were gone aſtray, heard their voices, and prudently ſtopped till their companions had advanced. Had they proceeded one ſtep further, their fate muſt have been inevitable, as they were then on the brink of a moſt terrible precipice! Their return was the occaſion of much joy, and their wonderful eſcape of hearty thankſgivings!

The next day the captain had a ſpot of ground cleared on the top of the hill, that he might be able from that, every fine day to make his neceſſary obſervations. Previous to this, he had gone round the iſland in the jolly-boat, to examine the ſhores. It was plain from ſome traces of ancient plantations which were diſcovered, that this iſland had formerly been inhabited. A ſteep rock overſpread with trees of a very fragrant nature, forms the northern ſide. The bay and harbour lie eaſt and weſt, and it was ſuppoſed that the iſland is no more than three miles in circumference. The captain was anxious to diſcover a good paſſage for the Relief, as it was apprehended by ſome of his people that there was no paſſage whereby ſhe might get clear over, ſeeing that the Relief muſt be of a tolerable ſize for the conveyance of themſelves, ſtores, &c. to China. This anxiety therefore occaſioned a ſtrict look-out, nor did the captain let any opportunity ſlip him which promiſed the leaſt information.

The men were ſtill buſy in the advancement of the new veſſel; the departure of Arra Kooker (who left the iſland to-day) gave them a more favourable opportunity of proceeding. The next day the captain's brother, Raa Kook, Mr. Benger, Roſe, and the China man returned in two canoes: and declared that both their reception and treatment during their ſtay at Pelew, manifeſted the utmoſt cordiality and moſt perfect hoſpitality.

As the captain, in making his obſervations, had imagined there was a paſſage apparently good right out from the weſt point of the iſland, Mr. Cummin was ſent in the jolly-boat, on the 30th in the afternoon, to aſcertain the truth. He returned with the pleaſing intelligence that he had found (at low water) near three feet and a half of water, through a narrow paſſage without the reef; and as it roſe eight or nine upon a ſpring-tide, of courſe there muſt be twelve feet of water, which was more than the Relief would require when finiſhed: they had alſo found ſeven fathom water without the reef, and three within the ſhoaleſt part. This information afforded ſo much cheer and ſatisfaction, that every one reſumed his labour with additional alacrity and ſpirits.

CHAPTER IV.

Captain Wilſon pays a Viſit to Pelew, accompanied by his Son, Meſſ. Sharp and Davis—Raa Kook's Attention—Refreſhments provided—Their Arrival—Ceremony—Compliment paid them—King appriſed of their Arrival—Their Meeting—Preſents made the King—Women flock to ſee the Engliſh—Deſcription of the Chiefs Wives—Captain introduced to the Queen's Dwelling—Her Politeneſs—Attends Raa Kook to his own Houſe—Remarks—One of the Rupacks brings the Surgeon to ſee a ſick Child—The Father's Gratitude—A Council of State held—Deſcription of the Manner—Reſult thereof—King renews his Requeſt—Ten Engliſhmen are promiſed to attend him to battle—Occaſion of the War—Every thing done for the Entertainment of the Engliſh—A Dance, &c.—A Supper—Univerſal Hilarity—Departure of the Engliſh—Leave taken, &c.—Arrival at Oroolong—Materials preſerved from the Wreck—Names of thoſe choſen to attend the King on his ſecond Expedition—A Viſit from the King—A Preſent of Fiſh, &c.—King's Surpriſe—Delighted with the Barricade—Admires the Swivel Guns—Six-pounder fired—Effects of the Exploſion—The King treated—His Wiſh to have one of the Swivel Guns lent him—The Impracticability of uſing it pointed out—Additional Preſent of Fiſh—King departs with the Men—Change of Weather—Return of the Engliſh from battle—Account of one of the Canoes being overſet—Mr. M. Wilſon and John Duncan in danger—Relieved by the Natives—Mr. M. Wilſon's Account of the ſecond Expedition—Of the Preparations for the Battle—Enemy diſpoſed for War—The King's Stratagem—Happy Effects—Six Canoes and nine Priſoners taken—Priſoners put to Death, &c. &c.

AS the captain was under the neceſſity of paying a viſit to the King, he determined to ſet out for Pelew on the 30th; previous to which he dreſſed himſelf in the company's uniform, and after breakfaſt, it being Sunday, read prayers in the great tent, while Raa Kook and the other natives, who were waiting to attend the captain to their iſland, ſtrictly conformed to that ſilence and ſolemnity which the ceremony required, kneeling (according to their faſhion) and ſtanding whenever the Engliſh did. After prayers, the captain fixed upon his ſon, Meſſ. Sharp and Davis, to attend him, and then taking leave of his people, ſet off about eight o'clock in the morning in the jolly-boat, accompanied by Raa Kook in a canoe with his people. When within a few miles of Pelew, the chief paddled away and got a-head of them, then ſtepping a while on ſhore, returned again, and preſently after another canoe met them with refreſhments. When in ſight of Pelew, the Engliſh hoiſted their colours, and fired three guns: they approached the ſhore about one o'clock, where they ſaw, in compliment to them, a white flag, which was ſtuck on a pole, it being ſome of the cloth that had been given to the King. When they landed they fired three guns again, and fixed their colours in the ground: they were then conducted to a houſe by Raa Kook, who ſent immediately a meſſenger to the King to appriſe him of their arrival. The beſt kind of refreſhments which they could provide were laid before them, and every thing placed in due order preparatory to the King's arrival: on his appearance, the captain roſe and embraced him. They then ſat down, (the King by the ſide of the captain) and partook of the proviſions: after which Capt. Wilſon preſented his Majeſty with a few preſents he had brought with him for that purpoſe. There was a great aſſembly of natives, whom no doubt curioſity had brought together, but who behaved with the greateſt reſpect, eſpecially in the preſence of Abba Thulle. The Engliſh attended the King up to the town, their colours being carried before them; for they were anxious to diſplay as much ceremony as poſſible, for the purpoſe of making a proper impreſſion upon the natives. They were introduced to a large ſquare pavement, which was ſurrounded with huts. The wives of the Rupacks aſſembled here, to ſee the Engliſh. Theſe women are of a lighter colour than the generality of their ſex; their breaſts and faces are rubbed over with turmeric, and they boaſt of a few ornaments.

The captain was attended by Raa Kook to the Queen's dwelling; it having been ſignified by a meſſage, that ſhe wiſhed for the interview. The Queen converſed with the Engliſh out of her window; and ſent them a broiled pigeon; which, on account of its ſcarcity, is held by the natives in great eſtimation. She took great notice of their dreſs, and particularly their ſkins. Though, as it has been obſerved before, the King had five wives, yet it appeared from the Queen's ſituation that one was poſſeſſed of greater dignity than all the reſt. Raa Kook now introduced the captain to his own houſe, which he no ſooner entered than he was welcomed by a little family, for whom he evinced the greateſt affection. This chief's wife alſo brought in a broiled pigeon, of which the captain and his friends chearfully partook in return for the compliment. Having met with much hoſpitality and attention, the Engliſh retired for the night. The next day every opportunity was taken by the natives to prove their friendſhip and reſpect: by deſire of one of the Rupacks, Surgeon Sharp attended him to his dwelling, and examined a child of his who was afflicted with boils. The gratitude of the father, and his anxiety to render every thing comfortable to his gueſt, are inexpreſſible!

A council of ſtate was held this day, by command of the King, on the large ſquare pavement in the open air. All the chiefs attended, ſitting on a ſtone; that which the King ſat on being the higheſt, and near which was another ſtill higher for him to lean againſt: thoſe of inferior rank had humble ſtations. The captain and his friends were now in an oppoſite houſe, where they had a full view of this grand council. The ſpeakers were on each ſide, who mutually delivered their ſentiments: it was evident that the buſineſs on which they were debating was carried by a large majority. As ſoon as they broke up, the King returned to the captain, and renewed his requeſt of having ten of his men, for a repetition of the battle: this was chearfully complied with. The occaſion of this war was the murder of one of the King's brothers, and two chiefs, at a feaſt which was celebrated at Artingall, (the iſland againſt which war was proclaimed). Theſe people, inſtead of making ſome atonement for the outrage which had been done, on the contrary granted their protection to the murderers. Every thing that could be thought on to contribute to the entertainment of the Engliſh was ſtudiouſly practiſed by the King, his chiefs, and their attendants; nor were the women leſs anxious to encreaſe this feſtivity. There was a dance of the warriors; and two large tubs of a ſweet liquor provided for their mutual participation. After this a ſupper was prepared, and univerſal hilarity crowned the night.

The captain had determined on returning to Oroolong, but it being very bad weather both the 2d and 3d of this month, he was obliged to poſtpone his intention till the 4th, during which the natives were ſtill as zealous in entertaining their gueſts as before.

The King would fain have detained the Engliſh longer, but finding them anxious to return, he at laſt aſſented. The jolly-boat had been loaded with refreſhments, the beſt which the iſland could afford, previous to their embarking. They departed about two o'clock, having given their kind hoſts three cheers, which was returned by the natives, even the King himſelf, who on this occaſion joined with the croud, and made himſelf a conſpicuous actor. They arrived at Oroolong about nine o'clock, where they were received with unfeigned gladneſs. The captain was exceedingly happy to find that his people, during his abſence, were not only very induſtrious, but had enjoyed the utmoſt harmony among themſelves.

The boats were regularly ſent to the wreck, and frequently brought home ſome materials: among other neceſſaries which were thus preſerved, were a large quantity of coals; alſo planks, nails, &c.

The ſame eagerneſs was expreſſed as before by the captain's people to be the choſen perſons that ſhould attend the King on his ſecond expedition; it was at laſt agreed upon, and Meſſ. M. Wilſon, Benger, Harvey, Steward, Roberts, Duncan, Tyacke, Blanchard, Wilſon, and Dulton, who were appointed, enjoined to keep themſelves in readineſs.

On the 7th the King paid a viſit to Oroolong: his brothers, and ſeveral other chiefs, attended. They had brought in their canoe ſome fiſh, of an unknown kind, but remarkably fine, which they had caught; it was in high eſtimation with the natives, and by the Engliſh allowed to be very good. The King was very much ſurpriſed at the conſtruction of the new veſſel, having had no idea before of its intended magnitude: he was alſo delighted with the barricade which was formed, and likewiſe the ſix-pounder and ſwivel-guns; theſe he beheld with the greateſt ſurpriſe and admiration. The ſix-pounder was fired at the requeſt of the King; the exploſion of which made them keep their fingers on their ears for ſeveral minutes together. After this his Majeſty was treated with ſherbet; and he then retired to his canoes, obſerving that he ſhould return with his boats at high water for the men who were promiſed him.

The King ſeemed very anxious to have one of the ſwivel-guns lent him, imagining that the execution which it would do would totally defeat his enemies; but the impracticability of uſing it in a canoe was pointed out to him by the captain.

Some time after this the King returned, and brought an additional preſent of fiſh, and a fine turtle. The number of men he deſired being now ready, they embarked, and departed for Pelew.

The weather, which had been hitherto fine, was now changed; the rain being both conſtant and heavy, attended with a violent wind, thunder and lightning.

On the 15th Meſſ. Benger, Harvey, Steward, and Roberts returned about ten o'clock in the morning in a canoe, with an account that the war was over, and that the reſt of their companions, who were all ſafe, would ſoon arrive. Theſe tidings afforded much joy, and in the evening the remainder of the party came in other canoes.

Meſſ. Wilſon and Duncan, with four natives, had been overſet in their canoe, by a ſudden ſquall of wind: two of the natives had, with one hand, ſecured the two muſquets, and ſupported Wilſon and Duncan, who could not ſwim, with the other; the remaining two were, in the mean time, making a ſmall raft with the bamboos, &c. As ſoon as the reſt of the canoes had put their people on ſhore, they haſtened to the relief of Meſſ. Wilſon and Duncan, who with ſtruggling and clinging to the raft for near two hours were exceedingly faint and quite ſpent. A cartouch-box, and two bayonets, were loſt. The natives who had thus ſaved theſe two Engliſhmen were inſtantly rewarded by the captain with preſents agreeable to their taſte.

This ſecond expedition was attended with as much ſucceſs as the firſt: for the ſatisfaction of the curious reader we ſhall give Mr. M. Wilſon's account of it in his own words, this gentleman having been preſent during the whole action, and the circumſtances being frequently related by him among his friends.

" We reached Pelew the ſame night that we left Oroolong, it being the King's pleaſure to proceed directly on his way to Artingall; but, as the weather was very unfavourable, it was repreſented to him how injurious the rain would be to the fire-arms, upon which he cheerfully declined his intention till the ſucceeding day. We were entertained at the ſame houſe where the captain and Surgeon Sharp had been, and treated with the greateſt reſpect and attention.

" The King, Raa Kook, Arra Kooker, all the Rupacks and great officers, with the Engliſh, were aſſembled the next day in the evening on the cauſeway. The canoes being now prepared we proceeded to the ſhore and embarked, attended by a number of old men, women, and children, whoſe curioſity and intereſt had brought them together. Our departure from the land was announced by the loud ſounding of a conch-ſhell. There were ſeveral other canoes ſent to different parts of the iſland to unite various forces that had been already collected, and were in readineſs in ſome remote creeks to attend the King: as ſoon, therefore, as the ſignal was given, they joined us. The number of canoes were now above two hundred. We proceeded to Artingall; but a few hours before day-light ſtopped at one of the King's iſlands, where we went aſhore, and having placed ſome mats on the ground, ſlept for near three hours. We then returned to our canoes, and after paſſing through a great number of narrow intricate channels, reached Artingall a little before day-break. As the natives of Pelew never attack their enemies in the dark, or take them by ſurpriſe, we ſtopped here till the ſun was riſen; upon which a canoe with four men, each having a white feather in his hair, was diſpatched to the enemy's ground calling a parley. Theſe men are in the capacity of heralds, either demanding an audience or bringing terms, and till their return all ſigns of hoſtility are ſuſpended.

" The king of Artingall had already received notice from the king of Pelew that a renewal of the battle was intended; he had been, therefore, previouſly prepared for our coming. When the ſignal of parley had been given a canoe came from the enemy: it was demanded by Raa Kook that the king of Artingall ſhould ſubmit to thoſe terms which had been already propoſed by his brother, as an atonement for the murder which had been committed by his people. The canoe departed with this meſſage, and returned immediately after with a flat refuſal from the king, who declared himſelf ready for war; upon this Abba Thulle, who had been dreſſed in the ſcarlet coat which the captain had given him, ſtood up in his canoe, ordered the conch to be ſounded, and gave a ſignal for all his forces to prepare for the attack by waving his chinam ſtick in the air.

" During this, the king of Artingall aſſembled his men by ſignals, and ſounded their conch-ſhells in defiance, but were by no means willing to leave the ſhore and commence an attack. The ten Engliſhmen were in ten canoes, one being with the King, another with his brother, and the chiefeſt Rupacks having one each. The Engliſh were armed with muſquets, bayonets, piſtols, and cutlaſſes.

" There were ſeveral light canoes, containing four men each, who were conſtantly employed in conveying commands from ſquadron to ſquadron.

dron. Their agility was ſo ſurpriſing that they were called by the Engliſh the *frigate* canoes.

“ The enemy having ſtill retained their ſtation, and apparently reſolved upon not quitting the ſhore, the King of Pelew was convinced of the impropriety of attacking them under ſuch defence; and accordingly diſpatched ſome of the *frigate* canoes, to order a ſquadron to be concealed under a piece of diſtant high land, and not to make their appearance till a certain ſign was given. This being ſecretly done, a few ſpears were exchanged; when ſuddenly Abba Thulle, pretending an alarm, ſounded the conch-ſhell, and counterfeited a flight, his canoe ſetting the example, and the reſt following with the greateſt velocity.

“ This appearance of cowardice encouraged the enemy to a purſuit. They quitted the ſhore in great haſte, to overtake their antagoniſts; and while they were warm in the chace, the concealed ſquadron appeared, to their no little aſtoniſhment and confuſion, and having cut off all retreat, the enemy found themſelves ſorely entangled. Upon this the King turned round, and giving the ſignal for his canoes to form themſelves into proper diviſions, the attack became both general and warm. The ſpears flew about very thick, and the Engliſh kept up a continual fire, which did not add a little to their embaraſſment, as they could not conceive by what means their people fell, when there was no appearance of a ſpear in them. Such was the effect of the firing of the muſquets, that the enemy's forces did not know what they were doing: as there is ſeldom more than one good ſpearman in each canoe, the reſt being only employed to paddle and guide it, if they are once put out of their way their confuſion is generally attended with a defeat. When the guns were fired, the people of Pelew began to ſhout ſo much, and halloo with joy, that the enemies fears were naturally encreaſed, and finding they were no longer able to make reſiſtance, betook themſelves to a real flight; herein they were for ſome time impeded, by the ſquadron that had been concealed; this ſubjected them to many wounds and diſaſters; however, as their numbers were not adequate to that of the enemy, the people of Artingall at laſt got to their land. There were, during the conflict, ſix canoes taken, and nine priſoners, which is accounted a very great victory, it being very ſeldom any are made captive, as the vanquiſhed always endeavour to carry away the wounded, and even the bodies of thoſe that are killed, that they may not be expoſed in triumph by their victors. There was a Rupack among theſe priſoners: as ſoon as he was taken, the Pelew people endeavoured all in their power to deprive him of the bone on his wriſt; but the heroic chief defended the mark of his dignity with uncommon courage, till at laſt he loſt his life in the ſtruggle. When his body was brought to Pelew, his head was cut off, and ſtuck upon a bamboo, fixed up before the King's houſe.

“ There were two priſoners in the canoe with me, one had his thigh broken with a ſpear, and the other was wounded in ſeveral places; they were commanded to ſit down in the bottom of the canoe; the one whoſe thigh was broken complied, but the other refuſed; upon which one of the natives haſtily ſnatched my bayonet, and plunged it into his body: he died without a groan.

“ Whenever any one is captured, he unties his hair, which was collected before in a great bunch on the top of his head, and pulls it over his face, patiently waiting the doom which is inevitable, it being always the rule to put priſoners to death.

“ A wounded priſoner, who was in the canoe with Mr. Benger, had his life prolonged for about two hours, by means of his entreaties; however one of the King's people (who had been wounded by the enemy) no ſooner ſaw him, than he ſnatched the Malay's dagger, and plunged it inſtantly into his breaſt, before Mr. Benger was aware of his intention. This priſoner met his fate with the greateſt fortitude; and could not help gazing at the Engliſh during the hours of his diſſolution. The ſurpriſe of ſeeing a white man apparently amuſed the pains of death.

“ The King ſtopped at ſeveral ſmall iſlands (on his way to Pelew) which belonged to him, for the ſake of declaring his victory, and expoſing the dead bodies of his priſoners. All theſe people manifeſted the greateſt joy; and brought out refreſhments, the beſt which the place could afford. When the King reached Pelew, the conch was ſounded, to appriſe the people of his arrival; it was now dark, and there was ſome delay before all the canoes were aſſembled. A great quantity of refreſhments was provided, and univerſal joy teſtified on the occaſion. There were ſongs and dances for the greateſt part of the night. The natives attributed their ſucceſs to our men, as they frequently repeated the word *Englees* in their ſongs.

“ The number which the enemy loſt could not be aſcertained; it was univerſally believed to have been conſiderable. Not one man of Pelew was killed; a few were wounded. The bodies of the priſoners were expoſed for ſeveral days, till at laſt they became very offenſive; they were then either thrown into the ſea or buried.”

According to all the obſervations which the Engliſh could make during this expedition, the iſland of Artingall was thought to be the largeſt of any yet ſeen. As ſoon as Mr. M. Wilſon had communicated the particulars of the battle, he informed his brother that it was the King's intention to pay the Engliſh another viſit in the courſe of a few days.

CHAPTER V.

The Wreck continually viſited—Materials occaſionally preſerved—Fifteen Bags of Rice recovered—King of Pelew's Apology—His Preſent—Progreſs of the new Veſſel—Engliſh unſucceſsful in Fiſhing—Arrival of Raa Kook, and two Chiefs—Their Decorum at Divine Service—Another Requeſt of the King's—The Malay's Artifice—Captain's Complaints reſpecting the Cartridges—King's ſeeming Inattention, &c.—Raa Kook's Confuſion—Vindication—Reaſon for putting their Priſoners to Death—Propoſal—The Captain perfectly ſatisfied—Admires Raa Kook's Candour and Sincerity—The Chief's Son wounded—Surgeon Sharp promiſes to viſit him—Raa Kook's Departure—A Swivel-gun and ten Men lent him for a third Expedition—Names of the Men—A Volunteer—An Accident—Timely Diſcovery—Danger prevented—Surgeon Sharp goes to Pelew, to ſee Raa Kook's Son that is wounded—His Return—Agreeable Intelligence—Brings home the Ship's Coppers—Account of his Viſit to the Generals—Is acquainted of his Son's Death—Arrival of the Engliſh from the Battle—Mr. M. Wilſon's Account thereof—Every Attempt in vain to provoke the Enemy's Appearance—Begin at laſt to defend themſelves—Execution of the Swivel-gun—Enemy's Houſes in Flames—Arra Kooker's Bravery—Defended by the Engliſh—Courage of the Enemy—Five Canoes deſtroyed—The Stone on which the King of Artingall ſits carried away, &c. &c.—Mr. Barker's Fall—Captain Wilſon pays a Viſit to the ſtrange Rupacks—His Reception—Entertainment, &c.—Raa Kook fires a Gun—Conſequence of the Shock—Captain's return to Oroolong, &c.

AS the Antelope ſtill kept together, the boats were continually viſiting her, and ſeveral materials of eſſential ſervice were occaſionally preſerved, particularly planks and ſpike-nails. There were alſo fifteen bags of rice recovered, which at this time was very acceptable, for the men were not only undergoing the moſt fatiguing work, but at this time were alſo obliged to put up with ſhort allowance.

The King of Pelew ſent an apology to Captain Wilſon for not having paid him a viſit ſince his laſt conqueſt, having been detained by the congratulations of ſeveral iſlands, whoſe compliments he was obliged to receive. He alſo ſent a quantity of yams, and a jar of moloſſes as a preſent.

The progreſs of the new veſſel was ſtill rapid; the planking of her was in great forwardneſs, and the men, ſtimulated with the hope of ſoon treading on Engliſh ground, purſued their taſk every day with freſh vigour, and perſevered with uncommon aſſiduity.

It is remarkable that whenever the Engliſh hauled the ſeine, they were always unſucceſsful, yet the natives never failed in catching fiſh. Either the Engliſh were not aware of the places where they were to be found in, or were ignorant of the proper bait.

Preſents were continually coming from Pelew. On the 28th of September Raa Kook arrived at Oroolong with two chiefs of the neighbouring iſlands in three canoes: they brought with them three jars of moloſſes, yams, cocoa-nuts, &c. At the time of their arrival the Engliſh were juſt going to prayers. The inhabitants of Pelew attended divine ſervice, and behaved with every due decorum; Raa Kook having enjoined all his people to obſerve the ſtricteſt ſilence. As ſoon as Captain Wilſon had done reading, Raa Kook importuned him for fifteen men for the King, and the uſe of one of the ſwivel-guns (which was ſtill coveted), as Abba Thulle having collected all his new allies together, was deſirous to make the third expedition, and by avenging himſelf on all his enemies, render his victory complete. At this time there having been ſome things hinted to the captain through the artifice of the Malay, whom the King kept at Pelew, as interpreter to aſſiſt him in his converſation with the Engliſh, and who imagining his intereſt with the King was ſomewhat abated ſince the arrival of the Engliſh, artfully endeavoured (as before) to ſow diſcord between the parties, and for this purpoſe, lately intimated to Captain Wilſon ſome matters which he was in hopes would diſpleaſe him, and render both the Engliſh and natives mutually jealous; the captain therefore availing himſelf of this opportunity to bring matters to an explanation, began with obſerving the cool manner in which the King and his people departed on their laſt expedition, and complained much of the cartridges, and one of the ſix-pounders, that were then taken unknown to him, eſpecially the former, which was at preſent a ſcarce article. He then mentioned the Malay's intimation, which was, that the King expected the ſame homage to be paid him by the Engliſh as was by his own ſubjects. This intelligence, he added, very much diſturbed his people, and he expreſſed great aſtoniſhment at the King's ſeeming inattention in ſending home the Engliſhmen who were before ſent, without any Rupacks to accompany them; the conſequence of which was, that his brother and another man were very near being drowned, and notwithſtanding the exertions of the boat-men, ſeveral articles loſt. He then animadverted on the cruelty of putting their priſoners to death, which was quite contrary to Engliſh principles, and to which he could never agree.

Raa Kook was exceedingly hurt at theſe complaints, his countenance ſpoke his feelings, and aſſuring the captain that he would ſtate the whole truth, hoped it would be a ſufficient vindication. In reſpect to the paper and cartouch-boxes, it was apprehended that they had not ſufficient ammunition, which induced them to take more: that all poſſible means were taken to recover the paper which had been carried away from the ſhip, but it being ſo wet it was thrown away by the natives as entirely uſeleſs. He added, that the white cloth which had been given to the King, Arra Kooker, and himſelf, was ſtill untouched, and ſhould be returned for the purpoſe of making cartridges. In reſpect to the Engliſh being ſent away without any chiefs, it was owing to Mr. Benger's haſte and anxiety; who, notwithſtanding their entreaties, would not wait till other canoes were got ready. As to the ſix-pounder, it was not *taken*, but only *borrowed* to gratify the curioſity of ſeveral ſtrangers who had viſited the King, and whom the King was unwilling to bring to Oroolong, for fear of interrupting the Engliſh in their buſineſs. He alſo declared that it was the King's laſt injunction, that this great gun ſhould be immediately returned. As to any homage being expected from the Engliſh, it was quite contrary to the King's expectations or notions, he never deſired, he never would permit it! Their priſoners they were under the diſagreeable neceſſity of putting to death for their own perſonal ſafety, as formerly having eſcaped, they behaved ſo treacherous as to do them great miſchief: however, it was propoſed by Raa Kook that they ſhould in future be ſurrendered to the Engliſh, to do whatever they pleaſed with them.

The captain liſtened to the chief with the greateſt attention, and admiring his candour and ſincerity, aſſured him he was perfectly ſatisfied with his declaration. He then departed to conſult with his officers reſpecting the King's requeſt. They all deemed it expedient that the captain ſhould conſent to lend the ſwivel-gun and men; only inſtead of fifteen, they thought ten a ſufficient number, as the abſence of any perſon at this critical time was of material conſequence. The captain immediately returned, and Raa Kook was highly delighted with his compliance. They all ſat down to ſupper in the greateſt good-humour, and Raa Kook's two friends being very much fatigued, they retired to reſt in their veſſel, it being obſerved by Raa Kook that the tent was too ſmall.

In the morning Raa Kook acquainted the ſurgeon that his ſon was wounded in the laſt battle; part of the ſpear was broken in his foot, and he wanted Mr. Sharp to ſee if he could extract it. As it was much ſwelled, the ſurgeon adviſed it to be conſtantly fomented, and promiſed to take the earlieſt opportunity of viſiting him. Mr. Sharp would have accompanied him that evening, but three of his own people (who were their beſt hands) were at this time dangerouſly ill.

Ten Engliſhmen were appointed to attend Raa Kook on this third expedition, which was intended to be of the greateſt conſequence, as all the Rupacks of the adjoining iſlands were to accompany the King. Raa Kook departed about noon, taking the ſwivel-gun and Engliſhmen with him, who were Meſſrs. M. Wilſon, Cummin, John Blanch (the gunner, whoſe preſence was deemed neceſſary in order to manage the ſwivel-gun), John Meal, James Swift, N. Tyacke, M. Blanchard, Thomas Whitfield, Thomas Wilſon, and Thomas Dulton. Mr. Devis alſo accompanied them as a volunteer.

As the veſſel had been already planked up as high as the bends, they now began to trench under her bottom, with a view to plank to the keel; however, the tide having in the beginning of the night roſe higher than uſual, broke into the trench, and the blocks were very near being waſhed away from under the veſſel. This accident, which would certainly have deſtroyed all their labours, was very fortunately diſcovered in time, and the people were all employed the ſucceeding day to reinſtate the blocks, and accompliſh the veſſel's ſecurity, which was not effected till the 2nd of October.

Mr. Sharp's patients having been now recovered, he went, agreeable to his promiſe, and the deſire of the captain, in the jolly-boat, (which was ſent to Pelew for proviſions) in order to ſee if he could render any ſervice to Raa Kook's wounded ſon. The jolly-boat was detained four days by the bad weather. She returned on the 6th, with the agreeable intelligence of thoſe men who had been lent to the King being ſafe and well, after a ſucceſsful action, reported to be the ſevereſt yet fought, and during which the inhabitants of Artingall made a wonderful reſiſtance; but that the King of Pelew was as uſual victorious, and had therefore detained the men till their feaſting, &c. was over. Mr. Sharp brought home the ſhip's coppers, which had been carried away by the natives from the wreck, and were reſtored by the King's orders. When the ſurgeon viſited Raa Kook, the chief met him with a dejected countenance. Mr. Sharp produced the inſtruments he had brought with him to extract the ſpear that was in his ſon's foot, and conſequently expreſſed a deſire to ſee him; upon which the chief, ſenſible of his humanity, bowed, endeavoured to ſhake off his grief, and reſuming a more enlivened countenance, introduced the ſurgeon to a number of chiefs who were there aſſembled, and from whom Mr. Sharp ſoon underſtood that his viſit was now unneceſſary: the youth, who was about eighteen, having had the ſpear at laſt extracted, when the ſwelling ſubſided, was determined on being one in this laſt battle, wherein he received a dart in his body, of which he immediately died.

The day after Mr. Sharp's arrival, the 11 Engliſh who had joined in this battle returned, and teſtified the greateſt ſatisfaction with the reception which they had met.

This battle was begun in the ſame manner as the others; but as there is ſomething both novel and intereſting in the concluſion, we ſhall here ſubjoin thoſe particulars as they have been related by Mr. M. Wilſon. This gentleman's information is as follows, in his own words:

"When we came to Artingall, we could ſee no canoes: there was notice given repeatedly of our arrival; but every attempt was at preſent in vain, to provoke the enemy's appearance. Upon this we landed, and advanced a little way from the ſea-ſhore. The King remained in his canoe, to give his occaſional orders to the *frigate* ones; and the command of the troops was now ſubmitted to Raa Kook. The Engliſh were entreated not to land; but as they ſaw the enemy beginning to defend themſelves, they jumped upon ſhore to aſſiſt their friends, and beſieged ſeveral huts belonging to the enemy. The natives had prepared with great judgment and ingenuity a canoe for the purpoſe of fixing therein the ſwivel-gun, which being directed againſt the enemy's huts, was conſtantly played upon them. The enemy were ſoon diſlodged by the muſquetry which covered the Pelew people; and by ſome unknown means one of their huts was inſtantaneouſly in flames. The people of Artingall, ſtill bold in their reſiſtance, frequently ruſhed down with a ſhower of ſpears, but were as often repelled by the briſk firing of the Engliſh, which not only immediately diſperſed them, but muſt undoubtedly have deſtroyed a conſiderable number. Arra Kooker was the moſt remarkable for his enterpriſing ſpirit: he aſcended a hill in ſight of the canoes, and perceiving one of the enemy's party coming down, concealed himſelf behind a buſh till he had paſſed, and then purſuing him down the declivity, gave him ſuch a violent blow with his wooden ſword, as laid him in an inſtant proſtrate at his feet. He was forthwith dragging him a priſoner to his canoe, which ſeveral of the other party perceiving, were ruſhing down upon their antagoniſt to his relief, and Arra Kooker would certainly have fallen a victim in this unequal conflict, had not Tho. Wilſon, with great preſence of mind, haſtened to his relief, and preſented his muſquet at the approaching enemy, the ſight of which ſo alarmed them, that they inſtantly turned and took to flight. At this time the whole ſtock of ammunition had been expended in covering the landing, and Wilſon had actually no charge in his muſquet when he preſented it, otherwiſe he would have fired: the circumſtance, however, was the more fortunate, and Wilſon's bravery the more conſpicuous.

"The enemy, notwithſtanding their defeat, manifeſted true courage and magnanimity throughout the engagement: they defended the houſe that was in flames till it was juſt ready to fall; and as an inſtance of the equal temerity of the Pelew people, one of them on this occaſion ran to the houſe while it was burning, and tearing off ſome of the brands which were on fire, adminiſtered the flames to an adjoining hut, where ſeveral of the enemy had taken refuge. The materials of their building being of a very combuſtible nature, it immediately took fire, and was burnt down to the ground. The man who was ſo daring as to accompliſh this, had the good fortune to return to his companions without the leaſt hurt. The King rewarded him for his bold atchievement, by immediately placing a ſtring of beads in his ears with his own hands, and afterwards on his return to Pelew making him an inferior Rupack, as theſe chiefs always riſe according to their merit.

"There were five canoes belonging to the enemy deſtroyed during this action, which they hauled on ſhore; alſo their cauſeway, which is much broader and longer than that at Pelew. Several of the enemy were killed: their dwellings for the moſt part burnt down; and, beſides other damage, the ſtone on which the King of Artingall ſits when in council was taken away. This was looked upon as the greateſt part of the victory; and was the occaſion of much rejoicing on their return to Pelew. Notwithſtanding this triumph was ſuperior to the former ones, yet the joy was not ſo great or univerſal, for the death of Raa Kook's gallant ſon, and another heroic youth, were ſo truly felt and lamented, as to abate in a great meaſure the pleaſures of their conqueſt. There were alſo about 30 or 40 of Abba Thulle's people wounded, ſeveral of whom died as ſoon as they returned to Pelew."

This account of Mr. M. Wilſon's contributed not a little to the ſatisfaction of the captain's people, as they were conſequently raiſed ſtill higher in the eſtimation of the natives, who gratefully acknowledged their aſſiſtance, and imputed all their ſucceſs to the Engliſh.

On the 8th Mr. Benger unfortunately fell from one of the ſcaffolds on his back, and was much hurt: he was immediately conveyed to a tent, where Mr. Sharp attended.

The King having invited Capt. Wilſon, in order to introduce him to the ſtrange Rupacks who attended him on this laſt expedition, the captain accordingly took with him his ſon Henry Wilſon, alſo Roſe and Dulton, and accompanied Raa Kook, who was waiting for that purpoſe with two canoes at Oroolong. As ſoon as they left the harbour they tarried for other canoes, which had been out fiſhing. Upon their arrival, ſome of the fiſh which had been caught (among which was a turtle) was ſent back to Oroolong, for the uſe of the tents, and the remainder they took with them to Pelew, where they arrived about ten o'clock at night. The King had departed about an hour before to Emungs (an iſland ſo called) which was the reſidence of thoſe Rupacks; but Qui Bill, the King's ſon, was enjoined to wait for the captain, and to conduct him to this great iſland. Capt. Wilſon being however much indiſpoſed, begged leave to decline the journey till the next day.

Early the next morning they embarked in Raa Kook's canoe; who on this occaſion took with him two of his wives; and about noon they approached the mouth of a rivulet, which ran up into the iſland of Emungs. Raa Kook's canoe was now adorned with ſhells, and notice given of his arrival by ſounding his conch.

They were frequently in danger of being a-ground in getting into this rivulet, which was both narrow and ſhallow. This the natives ſeemed much to dread, and took all poſſible means of avoiding, having frequently got out of the canoe in order to track it. When they had advanced about a mile up the creek, they came in ſight of ſome huts. The conch-ſhell was again ſounded, upon which three or four young men appeared; but upon ſeeing the Engliſh, were ſo alarmed, that they immediately retreated. Two of Raa Kook's attendants were conſequently ordered to go up to the huts, which they did, and ſhortly after returned with a piece of board, on which Capt. Wilſon was ſeated, and carried to ſhore. At this time the canoe was a-ground, and Raa Kook accordingly walked at his ſide, and conducted the captain to a large hut, round which there was a great throng of natives, who had aſſembled for the ſake of ſeeing theſe white men, who had gained them the battle. In order to gratify their curioſity, they made a ſtay here of about half an hour, and thence went the diſtance of a quarter of a mile, where they found the King and the Rupacks in a large public building. Abba Thulle made ſigns to the captain to ſit down: here they remained for about two hours. From this they went to the habitation of the Rupack of the town, who was a venerable chief, unable to walk. They remained here for half an hour, and partook of refreſhments, which were laid upon a low table. After this they returned to the great houſe, where other refreſhments were prepared. A number of men and women then danced; during which the latter made a moſt hideous noiſe. Two butlers ſerved the ſupper. It is worthy obſervation, that none of the Rupacks, or others, offered to eat till the King gave his permiſſion; nor did any of them lie down to ſleep, till he was firſt covered with his mat. The dancing continued the whole night, which prevented the Engliſh from enjoying much reſt. Among the entertainments of the next day, there was alſo a mock-fight, and a warlike dance, with ſpears in their hands; in the courſe of which the chief of the band brought four large ſpears, and preſented them at different times to Captain Wilſon; alſo a curious ſword, inlaid with ſhells: the delivery of each was preceded by ſome ſhort ſpeech; after which the donor reſumed his place in the dance. This entertainment laſted for an hour.

The captain having now perceived ſome human ſkulls, which were placed over the outſide of the doors at the ends of the great houſe, was curious to know by what means they were there; and having deſired Roſe to enquire of Raa Kook, was informed that a little while ago, during the abſence of the ſuperior Rupacks and chiefs of Emungs, who had departed on ſome particular occaſion to another iſland, and had taken with them a conſiderable number of the inhabitants, a party of the enemy had ſecretly entered their town, and deſtroyed ſeveral of the people, (who had not time to eſcape into the woods) and afterwards ſet their dwellings on fire. The King, Abba Thulle, when informed of this treachery, without loſs of time aſſembled all his canoes and warriors, and before theſe ſpies had time to effect their eſcape, they were unexpectedly ſurrounded by the King's forces, who attacked them with ſuch vehemence, that ſeveral were killed, others having taken to flight, ſome into the woods, and ſome in their canoes: very few, however, eſcaped. At about this critical period, the Rupacks who had been abſent with their company, returned to Emungs, and aſſiſting the attack, it was renewed with freſh vigour, while the Artingall people loſt all their chiefs, whoſe heads were thus expoſed as an example to all treacherous enemies.

During Captain Wilſon's ſtay, there was continual dancing and merriment. On the 12th, the captain having ſignified his deſire of returning to Oroolong, the conch-ſhell was ſounded early in the morning, and the canoes were immediately prepared. Previous to their departure they were all aſſembled in the great houſe, and Raa Kook being deſirous of firing a gun, was accordingly indulged in his requeſt, but not aware of the ſhock that would enſue, he held the muſquet in ſuch a looſe manner, that upon being diſcharged, it came with great violence againſt his ſhoulder; upon which, he not only dropt the muſquet, but fell himſelf upon his back. This created univerſal aſtoniſhment, nor could Raa Kook imagine how the Engliſh could fire their guns with ſuch eaſe and facility, when he was neither able to ſtand nor hold one when diſcharged. Some little time after this they embarked, and it being almoſt high water, paſſed the creek with eaſe: one of the Rupacks who was going northward, now took leave of his friends, and carried away about nine canoes in his train. The king and his train (which were about forty canoes) returned to the ſouthward. There being a violent ſquall of wind about ten o'clock, attended with thunder, lightning, and rain, every canoe was obliged to ſhift for itſelf. The natives having an antipathy to rain, had rather ſwim and be completely wet, than bear the dropping of it; which, as ſuppoſed, occaſions a tickling, or ſome other diſagreeable ſenſation on their fleſh. Accordingly the boatmen in the canoe where the captain was, jumped overboard as ſoon as ever it began to rain, holding the canoe with one hand. During the thunder, Raa Kook's two wives who accompanied the captain, ſeemed much alarmed, and between every flaſh of lightning hid their faces under his boot-cloak, where they muttered ſomething, ſuppoſed to have been a prayer or ejaculation: Raa Kook covered himſelf with his mat. The weather ſtill continuing heavy, they made for ſhore. As ſoon as they were landed, the boat-men took two pieces of wood, and rubbing them with much violence together, kindled a fire with remarkable expedition. When the rain was gone they arrived where the King was, who had a dinner of boiled fiſh prepared, ſomewhat like mullet. At one o'clock they all landed at an iſland called Aramalorgoo, where they had refreſhments, and were entertained with another warlike dance. Having reembarked they came to another place, called Emillegue: this was a large iſland, ſituated about a mile from the ſea-ſhore, and appeared to be a diſtinct government, as the chief of the iſland, who was a jolly-looking old Rupack, was paid every kind of reſpect and attention. A formal invitation came from him to our canoes, and the company ſolicited to land: the King, however, declined going on ſhore, but was willing that every one elſe ſhould. They were treated here with much hoſpitality and kindneſs, invited to ſeveral houſes, where there were broiled pigeons prepared, and an entertainment of dancing. It being dark when they were returning to their canoes, they were attended by the people with lighted torches in their hands, who aſſiſted them with the greateſt civility over all the uneven paths.

The captain and his party arrived at Pelew about ten o'clock, but as the King's canoe had not yet come in, none of the people attempted to go on ſhore, or remove any thing from the boats. This ceremony was even obſerved by the King's brothers; however, Raa Kook informed the captain that the Engliſh were exempt from all their regulations: however the captain ſtill retained his place, out of compliment to the King. They repaired to the houſe at the water-ſide, where they ſpent the night. A council was held by the King, his brothers, and the ſuperior Rupacks, before they went to ſleep; and the next day, before breakfaſt, the King aſked the captain if he were willing to let the Engliſh go once more with him to battle? The captain obſerved, that he could not give a poſitive anſwer with propriety till he had conſulted his own people at Oroolong, for before his departure ſeveral of his men were ſick, and if on his return they ſhould be worſe, or others indiſpoſed, a compliance at preſent would be totally impoſſible; but if the health of his men permitted, they ſhould attend him with the greateſt pleaſure. The King was perfectly ſatisfied with this reply, and enquired why the jolly-boat was not oftener ſent to Pelew for refreſhments. In anſwer to this, the captain obſerved, that they were obliged to ſink their other boat at the head of the Relief, in making a bank to keep off the tide, and conſequently the jolly-boat being their only one at preſent, ſhe could not be ſo conveniently ſpared.

This day (the 13th) the weather becoming clear, the Engliſh, accompanied with Raa Kook, left Pelew at eleven, and arrived about four o'clock in the afternoon at Oroolong.

The captain was very happy to find, on his return, the great advancement of the new veſſel; alſo the recovery of Mr. Barker after his fall, who was now able to walk about. Raa Kook remained at Oroolong, but ſent away the canoes that accompanied him, for fear the number of inhabitants might impede the Engliſh in their work.

CHAPTER VI.

The Cook and two Chineſe puniſhed with a Cobbing—Their Crimes—Deſcription of a Cobbing—Raa Kook's Conduct—He accompanies the Engliſh to the Wreck—A female Native viſits Oroolong—Her Curioſity—Departure—News from Artingall—Propoſals of Peace—Raa Kook's Satisfaction—King viſits Oroolong—Brings his youngeſt Daughter, and a Company of Women—One of them remarkable for her Beauty, &c.—Proves to be one of the King's Wives—Engliſh attentive to her—The King imputes all his Victories to the Engliſh—Curſory Obſervations—Makes a Requeſt—The Captain partly complies—The King's Satisfaction—Further Obſervations of the Captain—King retires—Reaſon—Sends the Captain an Invitation from the Watering-place—His Acceptance of it—Motive of the Invitation—King viſits the Wreck—Captain Wilſon invites three of the Artingall Inhabitants to Breakfaſt—Are introduced by Raa Kook—Their Aſtoniſhment, Behaviour, &c.—Preſents of Fiſh from the King Raa Kook's Indiſpoſition—Capt. Wilſon and Surgeon Sharp viſit him—A Boil on his Arm—The Surgeon dreſſes it—King returns to Pelew—Is accompanied with Mr. Devis and the Engliſh Interpreter—The King's Requeſt, and Promiſe—Sends paint for the Veſſel—Progreſs of the Relief—Surgeon Sharp goes to Pelew to viſit Raa Kook—King's Gratitude for their Attention—Viſit from ten Canoes—Their Conduct and Familiarity—Behaviour of an old Rupack, &c.—Arrival of ſeveral Canoes—Return of Mr. Devis—Intelligence—Names of thoſe appointed for the Expedition—Arrival of the King—His Departure with the Engliſh—A tremendous Storm—Occaſion of much Diſquietude—Arrival of the Rupack Arra Zook—His Information—No Engagement—Inhabitants of Pelelew ſue for Peace—The Chiefs warm Reception—Arrival of John Duncan—The Peace concluded—A Meſſage from the King—Propoſal to the Engliſh to viſit Pelelew Iſland—Their Acceptance, and previous Caution—Their Reception—Deſcription of the Iſland—Return to Oroolong, &c.—Names of the Iſlands whence the Canoes came from that joined the King—Raa Kook's abrupt Departure—Surgeon Sharp, &c. go to Pelew—Returns with a Preſent of Torches, &c.—His Information—Deſcription of the King of Pelelew—Meſſage to the Engliſh from Abba Thulle—The Engliſh entertain Suſpicions in conſequence thereof—The Captain's Arguments to remove them—Ineffectual—Their deſperate Intention—Fears partly removed—Mr. Sharp, &c. diſpatched with a Meſſage to the King—Veſſel ready to be launched—An extraordinary Propoſal from Blanchard—Perſiſts therein—His Character—Character of Roſe, &c.

ON the 15th of October the cook, and two Chineſe, were ordered to receive a particular number of ſtripes with a battledore, (which puniſhment was called a *cobbing*). This was decreed by a majority, according to the manner that puniſhments, at the captain's requeſt, were to be decided. The cook had frequently ſpoiled the rice; and one of the Chineſe and he were ſuſpected of ſecretly appropriating ſome of each ſmall quantity of meat that was boiled to their own uſe: the other China-man had wounded one of his countrymen on the head with a ſtone. As this treacherous behaviour certainly deſerved due chaſtiſement, the men were therefore ordered to be ſtripped, and tied againſt the tree. Raa Kook, who was preſent, ſeemed ſomewhat concerned at the preparations, and ſolicited their forgiveneſs; but the neceſſity of puniſhment being obſerved, he readily admitted the juſtice of it, and even waited to ſee it executed. As the puniſhment inflicted was far from ſevere, Raa Kook did not think it of ſerious conſequence; on the contrary, he laughed heartily at the lamentable cries of the Chineſe, when they were receiving their *cobbing*.

Raa Kook had accompanied a party of the Engliſh in the jolly-boat to the wreck: during their abſence three canoes arrived at the watering-place, in one of which was a woman, the firſt that was ever ſeen at Oroolong: ſhe beheld every thing with the greateſt attention and ſurpriſe, particularly the new veſſel, the cook's kitchen, and the ſmith's ſhop. The men waited in their canoes till ſhe had ſatisfied her curioſity, which ſeemed to get the better of her timidity; for though ſhe approached every place with the greateſt caution, ſhe could not refrain from cloſely examining it. She walked about for ſome ſhort time, and then returned to her canoe. On account of the abſence of Raa Kook, the Engliſh could never learn who ſhe was. As none of the men who accompanied her were ever ſeen at Pelew, it was ſuppoſed they came from Emillegue.

News was diſpatched to Raa Kook and the Engliſh, that the chief miniſter of Artingall had arrived at Pelew with propoſals of peace: this intelligence gave Raa Kook great ſatisfaction.

On the 17th the King paid a viſit to Oroolong: he brought with him his youngeſt daughter, Erre Beſs; who was attended with eight or nine women. Preſents of yams, cocoa-nuts, ſweetmeats, &c. were brought as uſual. The King's daughter appeared to be about nine years of age: her father led her by the hand on ſhore, and appeared to be paſſionately fond of her. Raa Kook attended the other females, and introduced them to the Engliſh: one of theſe was remarkable for the graceful manner of her walking; ſhe was young, and ſuperior to all the reſt for elegance and beauty: in ſhort, her appearance made ſuch an impreſſion on the Engliſh, that they could not refrain from enquiring who ſhe was.

They were informed by Raa Kook that her name was Ludee, and ſhe was one of the King's wives. The Engliſh were very aſſiduous in ſhowing her every thing worthy of her obſervation, and ſhe teſtified the ſame degree of ſurpriſe and delight as did the reſt of the natives on their firſt introduction. By command of the captain, a canvaſs was ſpread in the cove for the King, the chief, his brother, and the ladies. A diſh of fiſh was laid before them, and ſome boiled rice, which was ſweetened with moloſſes, and was very much reliſhed by the King and his party.

The King now informed the captain that he was at peace with moſt of his neighbours, but that he looked upon himſelf as entirely indebted to the Engliſh guns for that happineſs. He was however apprehenſive that on the departure of the Engliſh, theſe people knowing his defenders were gone, might be tempted to renew their hoſtilities, and become troubleſome. He therefore requeſted the captain would, before he embarked in his new veſſel, leave him ten guns and a ſmall quantity of powder (it being all that he would aſk of him), that he might be able to defend his ſubjects from any future attacks. The captain expatiated much upon their ſcarcity of muſquets, obſerving that the Engliſh were at that time at war with ſeveral nations, and conſequently they were in danger of being attacked by ſome of their enemies on their paſſage home. He was afraid that it would not be in his power to ſpare ten muſquets, but that at all events he would leave his majeſty five, upon their taking leave. The King was perfectly ſatisfied with this reply, and the captain further obſerved, that if any of his neighbours ſhould attempt a renewal of their hoſtilities, he was welcome to ſay, "that the Engliſh, mindful of the generoſity of the King of Pelew and his ſubjects, are determined if any inſult be offered to them during their abſence, to return again to this iſland with a greater number of men and muſquets, in a much larger veſſel, and totally deſtroy ſuch enemies and their iſlands." After this, the King retired with his retinue to the back of the iſland, for he was unwilling that the Engliſh ſhould be incommoded by the number of his attendants, or that through him the progreſs of their veſſel ſhould be retarded. However, he was not long at this watering-place before he wiſhed for the captain's company: accordingly he ſent him an invitation, which the captain accepted, and took with him Meſſrs. Sharp and Devis: the chief reaſon that the captain was ſent for, was to give him a ſhare of ſome fine fiſh that had been caught. They ſtaid with the King till ſun-ſet, when by his own deſire, for fear of their being benighted, the three gentlemen took leave of him. The next day the King viſited the wreck, and left five or ſix canoes with the women at the watering-place: ſome tea was ſent to the King, from the captain, by the time he returned to ſhore. At this time there were three of the Artingall inhabitants with the King (as they were now on the moſt amicable terms): theſe were invited by Captain Wilſon to breakfaſt with him. They came accompanied by Raa Kook who introduced them: they appeared aſtoniſhed at every thing they ſaw, and when ſhewn the muſquets, ſix-pounder, &c. they ſeemed to deſcribe by very expreſſive ſigns what numbers of their countrymen theſe weapons had deſtroyed: they did not however betray the leaſt reſentment, but on the contrary ſhook hands with the Engliſh as if they had always been friends. Preſents of fiſh were continually ſent to the captain from the King, which were very acceptable, as the Engliſh were not only unſucceſsful in fiſhing, but at this time they were upon ſhort allowance.

The next day Raa Kook was ſo ill that he could not come to breakfaſt. Captain Wilſon and Surgeon Sharp went to the watering-place to ſee him: there was a large boil on his arm, which the ſurgeon fomented and dreſſed: in conſequence of the pain thereof he was very feveriſh; however, in the evening he was was much better. The King ſeemed greatly concerned for his brother, and was exceedingly thankful to Surgeon Sharp for his attention to him.

The next day (October 21) the King fixed on his return to Pelew, and requeſted the company of Thomas Roſe and another Engliſhman: this the captain readily granted, and Mr. Devis was appointed to go with the interpreter. The King further requeſted that the Engliſh would give him due notice of their departure, as it was his wiſh to ſend two of his people with them to England. He likewiſe promiſed to ſend them colours to paint their new veſſel. Raa Kook, on account of his indiſpoſition, was much preſſed by the captain and ſurgeon to ſtay at Oroolong till he was perfectly recovered, but he ſaid that his preſence was abſolutely neceſſary at Pelew, which led the Engliſh to imagine that a council of ſome conſequence was to be held. He promiſed however that his return ſhould be ſpeedy.

The paint which the King had promiſed, was ſent by the jolly-boat the next day: it conſiſted of red and yellow ochre. After enjoining the boatmen to take care of the baſkets for fear they might get wet, he deſired them to inform the captain that he would ſhortly return to Oroolong, and bring ſome men with him to aſſiſt in painting the veſſel.

The caulking of the bottom of the veſſel was now completed, and alſo the planking of the topſides; after this her upper works were immediately caulked, and the ſteps fixed for the maſts.

On the 24th the jolly-boat was ſent to Pelew with Surgeon Sharp, in order to viſit Raa Kook and ſee how his arm was. It was alſo intended that Meſſ. Devis and Roſe ſhould return in the boat: however as Mr. Devis wiſhed to remain till the King went againſt Pelelew, that being the iſland which was at preſent at variance with Abba Thulle, Mr. Sharp returned the next day without him. Raa Kook's arm was much better, though it was roughly handled by one of the Pelew ſurgeons. Mr. Sharp, after dreſſing the wound, left him ſome other dreſſings, with proper directions to be uſed occaſionally. The King was ſo highly pleaſed with the attention that was ſhewn his brother, that he loaded the boat with yams and ſweetmeats: he alſo ſent five young wild ducks that were juſt fledged, and which were the only ones that the Engliſh ever ſaw in theſe iſlands.

The caulking of the outſide of the veſſel was now finiſhed, and on the 26th her bottom was breamed: they purſued their labour with great ſpirits, and every week their progreſs was conſiderable. Ten canoes came into the harbour to-day. It was ſuppoſed at firſt that they were enemies to the King; however, they proved the contrary, as they were going to join Abba Thulle on his expedition. They were very courteous to the Engliſh, and preſented them with yams of a different kind to any yet ſeen: they were in return treated with ſherbet, and every thing that was imagined might pleaſe, was exhibited. Theſe people teſtified the ſame ſurpriſe, but not that timidity which the other natives did on their firſt interview with the Engliſh; and as they did not ſeem ſo much ſtruck with the colour of the white men as their neighbours, there is no doubt but they were appriſed by their friends of every thing, which, though it made them more curious, rendered the novelty leſs. Among theſe was a venerable Rupack, who was introduced to the captain's tent, where he perceived a book, with which he diverted himſelf for ſome time, reckoning the leaves; this he repeated two or three times, but could ſeldom exceed fifty. At laſt his patience being exhauſted, he threw it away, ſhewing by ſigns that there were too many. Their ſtay was about two hours.

Several canoes arrived from Pelew on the 27th, in one of which Mr. Devis returned, and reported that almoſt every iſland had united their ſtrength with Abba Thulle, and there were at preſent upwards of three hundred canoes at Pelew, which, previous to his departure, were ſeparated in three diviſions, and making all neceſſary preparations for their immediate expedition; two of theſe diviſions were to proceed to Pelelew, and the other (which were to be joined by the King and his brother) were to come to Oroolong for the Engliſh. The reaſon that Mr. Devis did not wait for the King was his wiſh to ſeize the opportunity of viewing this formidable fleet. The following Engliſhmen were appointed to attend the natives on this expedition: the captain's brother, T. Wilſon, N. Tyacke, M. Blanchard, James Swift, T. Whitfield, John Duncan, Thomas Dulton, William Steward, and William Roberts. They accordingly prepared themſelves for the King's coming, who arrived at Oroolong about four o'clock in the afternoon. The Engliſh having embarked in ſeparate canoes, now departed with three cheers.

The two ſucceeding days introduced very heavy weather, there was much thunder, lightning, and rain; and the tremendous ſtorm which took place on the 29th occaſioned great diſquietude among the Engliſh, who began now to be alarmed for the ſafety of their abſent countrymen. On the 30th the rain abated; there was notwithſtanding a ſmart breeze from S. E. and the weather ſtill remained cloudy. A canoe or two were ſeen to-day; at midnight, the weather having become very fine, a canoe was perceived near the harbour, it was hailed by the guard, and the people therein replied *Englees*; permiſſion was accordingly granted for its entrance into the cove. The Rupack Arra Zook was in this, who informed the Engliſh that there was no engagement at Pelelew, as on Abba Thulle's approach the inhabitants all laid down their ſpears and ſued for peace: this chief met with a very warm reception from the Engliſh, both for his good news, and as he was a favourite with the captain and Mr. Sharp. The next day another canoe brought word that the fleet was on their return; a ſhort while after two others arrived with John Duncan, who confirmed the news of the peace, which had been concluded by Arra Kooker, who for that purpoſe went to Pelelew. A meſſage came to the Engliſh from the King that if any of them were deſirous to ſee the iſland of Pelelew Arra Kooker ſhould accompany them there. It was for ſome time a matter of ſurpriſe why neither the King himſelf or Raa Kook offered to eſcort them there; but on a future explanation it was made known that the honour and condeſcenſion would be too great if either the king or the chief, who was next in rank, were to pay the iſland a viſit. This being underſtood, ſeveral of the Engliſh were deſirous to viſit this iſland; but they had agreed in private to take with them their arms, nor upon any occaſion to ſeparate when they landed, for fear there might be ſome deception intended, and that they might be ſurpriſed, notwithſtanding the confirmation of the peace, by theſe ſtrangers. They were accompanied by ſeveral of the Pelew inhabitants, and their reception at Pelelew beſpoke the people to be more friends than enemies. This iſland is defended by a ſtone wall about ten or twelve feet high, with a foot-bank of ſtone behind; the water near the ſhore is ſo ſhallow that no canoes can get in except at high-water. It is a very pleaſant iſland; the land, which is ſuppoſed to be fertile, is more level than hilly. The Engliſh proceeded from this to Pelew, where they found the kings of Pelew and Pelelew on the moſt friendly footing. Raa Kook and a number of canoes came with the Engliſh to Oroolong, Abba Thulle, with the king of Pelelew, having gone to his own iſland, which was called Cooroora, of which Pelew was the capital. The ſeveral canoes which had prepared to attend the King in this laſt expedition came from Emungs, Aramalorgoo, Emillegue, Arraguy, Cooroora, Caragaba, Pethoull, and Oroolong, called the Engliſhmen's iſland. Raa Kook's departure from the Engliſh was at this time very abrupt, but he pleaded urgent buſineſs at Pelew. Surgeon Sharp and four Engliſhmen went in the jolly-boat in the evening to congratulate the King on the good news of the peace, and alſo to bring home ſome torches which Raa Kook had promiſed, and which the Engliſh were very deſirous of, in order to reſerve their candles for their voyage. Their ſtay was about two days; they returned in the evening, while the people were at prayers, with the torches, ſweetmeats, &c. &c. Mr. Sharp reported that there were great feaſtings and rejoicings at Pelew, and that the Rupack of Pelelew was ſtill there. The king of Pelelew, he obſerved, was an elderly man, and rough in his manners; his hair was grey, and he wore his beard like a Jew; he was alſo tattooed up to the navel. Mr. Sharp alſo obſerved that he was commiſſioned by Abba Thulle, the King, to ſay he would in the courſe of four days pay the Engliſh a viſit, in order to paint the veſſel, and that he would ſtay with them till their departure, which every one hoped would be ſoon, as the Relief was in great forwardneſs.

It has been generally remarked that whenever the mind is agitated, with expectation, it is ſuſceptible of the leaſt alarm; there never was a ſtronger inſtance of this than at preſent. The Engliſh, who were now elate with the hope of ſoon reaching their native land, were ſtruck with apprehenſion at the leaſt thing that ſtarted, even the moſt diſtant idea of impeding their courſe; accordingly this meſſage received from the King was productive of much uneaſineſs—their ſuſpicions were immediately awakened, and they began to think that the King and his party entertained a notion of preventing their departure (on account of their great utility to them), by violently taking poſſeſſion of their new veſſel, and ſeizing their arms. Captain Wilſon endeavoured all in his power to remove thoſe idle apprehenſions, and pointed out the improbability that thoſe people, who have been hitherto ſo noble, ſo generous, and ſincere, ſhould be on a ſudden ſo cruel, ſo treacherous, and artful: there never, he remarked, was a real cauſe for miſtruſt, and he was very ſorry to find that his men ſhould now give way to any; he therefore urged them, for their own ſakes, to ſhake off thoſe fears, nor to let thoſe who have been all along their friends, and who they are fooliſhly afraid will be on a ſudden their enemies, perceive thoſe ſuſpicions, leſt, when acquainted with the cauſe, they might entertain notions they would not otherwiſe have thought of, and, perhaps, tempt them to realize the danger which he was very ſure was now quite diſtant from their ideas: thus by their own indiſcretion they might occaſion what otherwiſe would never have occurred. The captain alſo expatiated upon the folly of their reſiſtance, if any ſuch deſign was in agitation, for even when the veſſel was launched the natives could hinder their departure, by depriving them of the ſpring of freſh water, which muſt of courſe put a termination to all their hopes; and if they were to aſſemble in the iſland with any ſuch hoſtile intention, the Engliſh muſt know that their ammunition would ſoon be expended, and that it would be impoſſible for them to ſupport a conteſt of any duration. The captain, though he expreſſed himſelf according to the dictates of reaſon and prudence, found all his arguments at preſent ineffectual; his men ſtill retained their fears, and could not be perſuaded but that the natives really intended to detain them. Theſe ſuſpicions were very much increaſed by the appearance of two canoes near the harbour, neither of which came in: this circumſtance was unuſual, it ſeemed ſufficient to corroborate their fears. The ſwivels and ſix-pounder were now loaded with grape-ſhot, and a ſtrict watch appointed to prevent any ſudden attack. A long conſultation was alſo held, when it was reſolved that every one ſhould ſtill continue to be vigilant, that all the ſmall arms ſhould be charged with ball, and all the cartouch-boxes filled with loaded cartridges: it was however further reſolved that every man ſhould diſguiſe his ſentiments before the natives, nor betray the leaſt apprehenſion of any ſuch deſign, except an unuſual number of canoes ſhould be ſeen entering the bay, or any of the natives come with ſpears: that in ſuch caſe every man was then at liberty to uſe whatever means his prudence might ſuggeſt in his own defence. Theſe reſolutions were alſo ſucceeded with a determination ſtill more deſperate: it was intended if there appeared the leaſt inclination to detain them to ſacrifice the King, the noble, generous Abba Thulle, and his brave benevolent brothers, with all the reſt of the chiefs, in order to occaſion general confuſion! Thus were the nice feelings of honour deſtroyed by that perturbation which was occaſioned by the hope of being ſoon delivered, and the dread of being for ever detained! Happy it is that their fears were not encreaſed by ſome ſeeming corroboration that might have tempted them to put their wild reſolve into execution, and bring an everlaſting diſgrace upon their name!

Previous to this they had conſidered on the beſt method of launching the Relief, as this indeed was their chiefeſt concern; for ſhould any accident have happened to the new veſſel during this operation, it would have been impoſſible for them to renew their labour, as their tools were now worn out, and all the materials that could be got were already procured from the wreck. It was therefore agreed to lay ways; and as the veſſel was nearly finiſhed, they proceeded to cut down trees for the blocks and launching-ways.

Though the captain's arguments to remove the fears of his countrymen had not their due weight at firſt, yet when the people began to conſider ſeriouſly, they were ſoon convinced of their force, and fortunately indeed the deſperate reſolves of a moment were but momentary! cool reflections weakened their apprehenſions, and the next day the Engliſh and natives met with their uſual gaiety and friendſhip.

Surgeon Sharp, and Mr. M. Wilſon were commiſſioned by the captain to inform the King, that the Engliſh were in hopes of ſailing in about a week. There was a letter, which Mr. Sharp was deſired to read in the preſence of the two interpreters, who were to explain it to the King; the contents of which ſignified, that the Engliſh hoped for the honour of ſeeing the King and his chiefs before their departure, that they might return them perſonal thanks for all their kind favours, and aſſure them that as ſoon as they reached their own country they would make a public acknowledgment of their ſervices and protection: the tools and the muſquets (which the King wiſhed to have) were alſo promiſed to be delivered to him immediately after the veſſel was launched.

While the captain was thus inſtructing his brother and the ſurgeon, one of the ſeamen, M. Blanchard, (who had accompanied the natives in every expedition) deſired the King might alſo be informed, that it was his intention to ſtay behind, and remain with his ſubjects at Pelew. It ſeems this man was ſo delighted with the inhabitants, and their manners, that he often declared to his companions his intention of making the place his reſidence: it was his wiſh, he ſaid, to partake of all the preſent labour of the Engliſh, and for that purpoſe he would chearfully aſſiſt in the building of the new veſſel, but on their departure he would bid them for ever farewell! Blanchard, however, was ſuppoſed at this time to be jeſting, though he never once varied in his language: however, upon his application to the captain at this critical juncture, he was found to be ſerious. The captain uſed every argument in his power to diſſuade him from his purpoſe; but his reſolution was unalterable. Capt. Wilſon alſo deſired his companions to uſe their influence with him, and if poſſible make him change his intentions: but the men, after work, acquainted the captain that all their entreaties were unavailing, and that he was ſeriouſly determined to ſtay with the natives.

Blanchard was a man of a ſingular character: he was about twenty years of age, and notwithſtanding he was inclined to gravity, yet poſſeſſed of a conſiderable ſhare of dry humour. It was well known that he had formed no particular attachment on the iſland, which rendered the circumſtance of his determined ſtay the more remarkable. He was univerſally beloved, being good-tempered, inoffenſive, and ever ready to oblige. It is to be regretted, that he did not know how to read or write, as he might have been able to have taught the natives.

The captain, in hopes that Blanchard would ſtill be diſſuaded from his deſign, deſired Roſe (who was to accompany Meſſ. Wilſon and Sharp) to take no notice of his propoſal as yet to the King. The captain wiſely intended, if Blanchard perſiſted in his determination, to make it appear to the King as a great favour. The gentlemen departed about ten o'clock, with Tho. Roſe, their interpreter. This man was poſſeſſed of a great fund of pleaſantry and humour, and as he had the happy means of pleaſing the natives, became a general favourite among them. He was very much eſteemed by the captain, for his remarkable attention, fidelity, and great abilities.

CHAPTER VII.

Return of the Pinnace with the King, Erre Beſs, Raa Kook, &c.—Abba Thulle's Satisfaction at the King's Letter—The Malay's artful Remark—Raa Kook's ſevere Rebuke—The King's Indignation—Tools diſtributed by the King—A Meſſenger to the King—Purport thereof—King's Mode of Reply—The Reaſon why the King, &c. came in the Pinnace—The Boat promiſed to the King—The Natives paint the Veſſel—Preparations for launching her—Meſſage to the Captain from the King—His Deſire—The Name of the new Veſſel changed from the RELIEF *to* OROOLONG*—The King's Satisfaction—Blanchard determined to make known his Propoſal to the King himſelf—His Wiſh communicated by the Captain—Received in a moſt gracious Manner—Raa Kook paints the Stern—An Attempt to launch the Oroolong—Ineffectual—Poſtponed—King's Promiſes to Blanchard—All aſſembled to ſee the Veſſel launched—Their Succeſs—Natives and Engliſh mutually delighted—Meſſage from the King to Captain Wilſon—Offers to make him a Rupack—Captain expreſſes much Happineſs in being admitted a Chief—The Ceremony—Univerſal Joy—King's Addreſs to the Captain—Captain congratulated—Natives delighted—King's Orders—His Propoſal of ſending his Son, Lee Boo, to England—Expatiates upon his good Qualities—The Captain's Reply, which gives apparent Satisfaction—Raa Kook ſeeks Permiſſion to accompany the Engliſh—Is refuſed—Reaſons—His Uneaſineſs—One of the Natives ſolicits the Captain to be taken in his Veſſel—His Application reported to the King—Abba Thulle's abſolute Denial, with the Reaſons—Engliſh ready to depart—Mutual Preſents—An Inſcription nailed to a Board, and affixed to a Tree—King renews his Requeſt for the Muſquets—Takes notice of the Miſtruſt of the Engliſh—Effects of the Rebuke—Lee Boo's Arrival—Is introduced to the Captain—The Father's Speech—Capt. Wilſon's Advice to Blanchard.*

THE next day being the 7th of November, the pinnace returned with the King, his favourite daughter Erre Beſs, Raa Kook, and ſeveral of the chiefs. Mr. Sharp had read the captain's letter according to his directions to the King, which was explained to him by the interpreters. Abba Thulle expreſſed great ſatisfaction at the politeneſs of the Engliſh, and was highly delighted with the tools which were ſent to him as a preſent by the captain in the pinnace. It was remarked however by the Malay, that the muſquets were not ſent by the Engliſh according to their promiſe; for which he was ſeverely rebuked by Raa Kook, who (as it was afterwards repreſented to Surgeon Sharp) thus addreſſed him:

"Wretch, the Engliſh are not, like thee, poſſeſſed of two tongues; they have honourably kept their word, by ſending theſe tools, and notice of their departure; while thou, oh thou piece of deceit! have brought diſgrace upon us all, by adviſing the King to ſend boiled yams to the Engliſh, leſt, in ſending them raw, they ſhould thereby ſtock themſelves, and depart without giving notice and leaving behind thoſe things which they had promiſed."

The King and all the Rupacks felt the full force of this rebuke, and Abba Thulle beheld the Malay with ſo much ſtern indignation, that he immediately withdrew from his preſence. After this their wonted good-humour returned; and every one, even the King's attendants, had abundance of refreſhments. The tools were diſtributed by the King among his chiefs. Mr. Sharp alſo reported, that a meſſenger arrived from one of the neighbouring iſlands about two in the morning previous to their departure to the King; on whoſe account Abba Thulle was awakened by one of his attendants, who brought in a lighted torch and introduced the meſſenger. This was to enquire when the Engliſh intended to ſail, as ſome of the northern chiefs intended to make them preſents of the beſt articles which their land produced, in addition to their ſtores. The King delivered this meſſenger a piece of cord for thoſe chiefs, on which were tied as many knots as there were days before the Engliſh meant to leave Oroolong. The King, his daughter, and attendants, ſet out at firſt in canoes; but, on account of a violent gale, were obliged to make to ſhore for ſhelter. Raa Kook, who had accompanied Meſſ. Wilſon and Sharp, was ſo delighted with the eaſe and ſteadineſs of the pinnace, that he requeſted his friends would prevail upon the King to go on board her. It was by theſe means that Abba Thulle, his daughter, chief miniſter, &c. arrived with the Engliſh. Upon their admiring their comfortable ſituation, in the pinnace, the Engliſh informed the King that it was their captain's intention to make that boat a preſent to him, upon their departure. The King ſeemed very thankful for the intended gift, and deſired his people to take notice how the ſails were managed.

The King had brought with him ſeveral preſents; and he and his brother, according to their promiſe, ſet their people about painting the new veſſel, which was at this time preparing to be launched.

Every thing was ready the ſucceeding day for launching the new veſſel. The King and his chiefs ſat in view of her; and, after ſome converſation among themſelves, a meſſage came to the captain that the King wanted him. Captain Wilſon immediately attended; when the King expreſſed a deſire that inſtead of an Engliſh name the veſſel ſhould have a Pelew one, and he wiſhed her to be called Oroolong, in remembrance of the iſland where ſhe was built. Upon this the captain ſent for his officers and people, and having communicated the King's requeſt, it was univerſally approved of. The name of Oroolong was accordingly adopted, which ſeemed to give the King great ſatiſfaction.

The captain was now ſecretly informed, by ſome of his people, that Blanchard, underſtanding his meſſage had not been delivered, was reſolved upon ſpeaking to the King himſelf, and requeſting his permiſſion to remain at Pelew. Captain Wilſon, ſeeing he was abſolutely reſolved, and that all entreaties to prevent him were in vain, aſſured him that his requeſt ſhould be immediately made known: upon which he came to the King, and told him, that in return for the hoſpitality which he and his ſubjects had ſhewn him, he would leave one of his men with him, to take care of the guns and other articles which he intended to preſent him with on their departure. This propoſal appearing to the King as a freſh proof of their eſteem, was received in a moſt gracious manner, and Blanchard, according to his ardent wiſh, introduced to his new friends.

Raa Kook, who was the moſt buſy in painting the veſſel, was directed by the King in decorating the ſtern, on each ſide of which he made two circles, one within another, in black and white, with ſome little zigzag ornaments hanging from them.

An attempt was made in the evening (Nov. 8th) to launch the veſſel, but as they found it impoſſible to move her till the tide began to fall, they poſtponed their intention, with the hope of being able to diſcover and remove every obſtruction by the next tide.

Blanchard appeared as much delighted with being allowed to remain at Pelew, as the King was in having him. Abba Thulle promiſed to make him a Rupack, and give him two wives, with a houſe and plantations; aſſuring him, at the ſame time, that he ſhould always be with himſelf and his brothers.

The next day, the weather being very favourable, they began to try their work, and were happy to find that their preparations promiſed well. A meſſage was diſpatched to the King who came with all his attendants to ſee the veſſel launched. The tide ebbed remarkably low the preceding night: about ſeven o'clock the next morning, in the midſt of fears, hopes, and tremblings, ſhe was got afloat. The Engliſh gave three huzzas; which were joined by the natives, who appeared equally intereſted; and by this their anxiety diſſipated, in a great meaſure, all the ſuſpicions of the Engliſh. The Oroolong was immediately hauled into a dock, that had been dug for her, and by breakfaſt-time ſhe was ſafely moored. After breakfaſt they got up ſhears, and took in the maſts, water-caſks, ſix-pounders, &c. The remainder of what tools could be ſpared was preſented to the King. In the afternoon, when the flood-tide came in, ſhe was hauled into the baſon in about five fathom water. In the night they got on board their proviſions, ſtores, ammunition, &c. and early the next morning their anchors, cables, &c.

This day (Nov. 10th) Captain Wilſon received a meſſage from the King, requeſting the pleaſure of his company at the watering-place. He waited upon him according to invitation, and was informed that it was the King's intention to inveſt him with the order of the Bone, and make him in form a Rupack of the firſt diſtinction, before he left the iſland. Capt. Wilſon declared himſelf fully ſenſible of the honour intended him, and expreſſed much happineſs in being admitted a chief of Pelew. Upon this the ceremony commenced: the King and all the Rupacks ſat down under ſome large trees, and the captain was placed at a diſtance. Raa Kook, who received the Bone, approached him, and preſenting it from the King, deſired to know which hand he moſt generally uſed; which the captain proving to be the right hand, by throwing a ſtone, the bone was applied to his left one, to ſee if it was large enough for his hand to ſlip through; but not anſwering, it was made wider. Notice being then given that it would now do, he was joined by the chief miniſter and the other Rupacks in the performance. Raa Kook made a ſtring faſt to each of the fingers of the captain's left hand, and then rubbing the hand with oil, the chief miniſter ſtood behind the captain and held him faſt by the ſhoulders; the different ſtrings were paſſed then through the bone by Raa Kook, who gave them to another Rupack: upon which they both endeavoured to draw his hand through. Every one was now ſilent except the King, who was occaſionally hinting ſome means to expedite this operation. At laſt by Raa Kook's compreſſing the captain's hand as much as he could, it was fairly got through, which occaſioned univerſal joy. The captain was then addreſſed by the King in the following manner:

“ You are to rub that bone bright every day, to preſerve it as a teſtimony of the rank in which it is held, and on every occaſion you ſhall defend with the utmoſt valour this mark of dignity, which you muſt never ſuffer to be torn from your arm, but with the loſs of life.”

As ſoon as the ceremony was concluded, the captain was congratulated by the Rupacks as one of themſelves, while the reſt of the natives who aſſembled around the new chief, ſeemed highly delighted, calling him *Englees Rupack*.

Orders were now iſſued by the King that none of his own people but the chiefs ſhould go on board the new veſſel, for fear of incommoding the Engliſh: however, the inferior natives were permitted to paddle along-ſide of her, and view her from their canoes. Raa Kook and Arra Kooker went on board, while ſhe was carried to the weſt ſide of the iſland, and moored in ſix fathom, adjoining the well of freſh water. There was ſome fiſh offered the captain in the veſſel, but as there was no convenience at preſent for dreſſing it on board, he went to ſhore and partook of it with the king.

The King had ſome time ago intimated his intention of ſending two of his people to England with the captain, as ſoon as the veſſel was ready to ſail. He had now been conſidering his promiſe, and was at laſt reſolved upon committing to the care of Captain Wilſon his ſecond ſon Lee Boo; that he might improve himſelf in the Engliſh manners, and be able on his return home, to benefit his own country; the father expatiated much upon the good qualities of this youth, and was likewiſe joined by his brothers in commendation of him. The captain aſſured Abba Thulle, that he looked upon this propoſition as a ſingular mark of his great confidence and eſteem, and that the young prince ſhould conſequently be treated by him with the ſame tenderneſs and affection as if he was his own ſon. This reply of the captain's gave the King apparent ſatiſfaction.

Raa Kook, it ſeems, had before this urged the King his brother to permit him to accompany his new friends to England, but this was refuſed by the King on account of his being the next heir, and the conſequent inconvenience that muſt ariſe from his own death if he were abſent. Raa Kook, though convinced by his brother of the impropriety of his requeſt, was notwithſtanding ſorely diſappointed: there was a viſible gloom which clouded his countenance, that was before ſo gay and chearful. He could not bear the thoughts of bidding his friends farewell; and ſaw with the utmoſt regret the preparations making for their departure, for now they were watering the veſſel, bending the ſails, finiſhing the fire-place, and in ſhort, getting the veſſel ready for ſea.

A nephew of the King, ſon of that brother whoſe murder at Artingall was the occaſion of the war which was now terminated, made application to Captain Wilſon (Nov. 11) for leave to accompany him and his people to England. This young man was ſo attached to the Engliſh, that he was continually with them, and had aſſimilated himſelf to all their ways and manners. Captain Wilſon, however, declined giving any poſitive anſwer, till the King was conſulted, obſerving that Abba Thulle had already ſpoken to him of his ſon, Lee Boo, and another man. When the buſineſs was made known to the King, he ſeemed exceedingly diſpleaſed at his nephew's application: he repreſented him as having a roving diſpoſition, and being unworthy of any one's patronage. The young man, ſtill anxious to depart with the Engliſh, made perſonal application to the King; but Abba Thulle abſolutely refuſed his permiſſion, in words to the following tendency:—“ You are a worthleſs man, undutiful, and neglectful of your mother; you have for wives good and deſerving women, and yet to theſe, as well as to all your relations, you behave ill; for which you have been juſtly expoſed throughout the whole iſland. You are aſhamed of your conduct, and that is the reaſon you would fly from your family; but inſtead of having my conſent, on the contrary I requeſt the captain not to countenance you: you ſhall ſtay at home, and may the ſenſe of ſhame amend your life!”

It was intended by the Engliſh to depart from the iſland a day before the time they reported, as it was their wiſh to avoid the multitudes of ſtrangers who were expected; the captain fearing that his men might be incommoded by the number of their canoes, and their paſſage over the reef be conſequently attended with danger. The King was therefore informed, that the weather and wind being favourable, and the veſſel ready, he intended to ſail the next day, which was the 12th. Abba Thulle was exceedingly concerned at this information, as all the chief Rupacks had been informed (by the knots on the cord before mentioned) that it was to be the 13th; and conſequently the Engliſh would loſe the preſents that were intended for them. Capt. Wilſon, however, obſerved, that they had already a competency of ſtores, and as the wind was favourable, he begged his permiſſion to depart the next day. Though the King was very much concerned, he endeavoured to overcome it, and inſiſted, as it was the laſt day, that the captain and his people would dine with him on ſhore; which invitation they chearfully accepted. After dinner, a Newfoundland dog, which the Engliſh brought with them, was made a preſent to Arra Kooker, as he frequently expreſſed a great deſire to have it. Mr. Barker alſo drew a plan for a new veſſel, at the deſire of this chief, who was determined with the Engliſh tools to build one, if poſſible, where the Oroolong was formed. Captain Wilſon was now obliged to go on board, and reprimand two of his men, who had a quarrel. Upon informing the King the reaſon of his departure, Abba Thulle obſerved, “ that there were bad men in every country.”

The following Inſcription was cut upon a plate of copper, and having been nailed to a thick board, was affixed to a tree which was near the place where the Oroolong was built:

The Honourable Engliſh Eaſt-India Company's
Ship the ANTELOPE,
HENRY WILSON, Commander,
Was loſt upon the reef north of this iſland,
In the night between the 9th and 10th of Auguſt:
Who here built a veſſel,
And ſailed from hence the 12th of Nov. 1783.

When the King was made acquainted with the meaning of this inſcription, he aſſured the captain that it ſhould always abide, as a memorial of the Engliſh having been there; and if by any accident it ſhould happen to fall, he further promiſed that it ſhould be taken care of and preſerved at Pelew. After this he explained the nature of it to his ſubjects, and commanded every attention to be paid it.

The King now renewed his requeſt reſpecting the guns, remarking as before, that when the Engliſh were gone, his enemies might malevolently renew their hoſtilities. The captain haſtened immediately to his people, to urge the propriety of fulfilling their promiſe immediately; but their ſuſpicions were not quite eradicated, and they were unwilling to give up the arms till the laſt moment. Upon the captain's informing the King that his requeſt ſhould be granted the next day, Abba Thulle plainly perceived the reaſon of this heſitation, and calmly aſked the captain if the Engliſh were afraid to truſt him with five guns? "Why (added he) are " theſe ſuſpicions? Have I given any cauſe for " them? I was never afraid of you, but eagerly " courted your friendſhip, and why afraid of me? " Had I been inclined to harm you, I would have " done it long ago, for you have been at all times " in my power; however that power I have hitherto exerciſed in your ſervice, and is it poſſible that " after all you cannot confide in me even now?"

Such was the keenneſs, the juſtice of this rebuke, that every one of them felt its force. The Engliſh accordingly deſired the captain, that, in order to convince the King they could have no ſuſpicions, his requeſt might be immediately granted. A meſſenger was ſent on board therefore for the articles; and the King was preſented with five muſquets, five cutlaſſes, and about a barrel of gunpowder, with a proportionable quantity of flints and balls. The captain alſo made him a preſent of his own fowling-piece; the effect of which having been frequently witneſſed upon the birds, &c. the King was highly delighted therewith.

Lee Boo, the King's ſecond ſon, arrived in the evening, brought from Pelew by his elder brother, Qui Bill. He was introduced to the captain by his father; then to the officers. Such was the good-humour and affability painted in this youth's countenance, that every one preſent was immediately captivated with his appearance. His canoe was loaded with refreſhments for the Engliſh; particularly a baſket of a fruit reſembling an apple, the firſt of the kind which the Engliſh had ſeen there, and which was in great eſtimation among the natives: they were at this time juſt coming in ſeaſon. The captain gave one to each of his men, and carefully reſerved the remainder for his young friend, to treat him on his paſſage.

Lee Boo ſat for ſome time near his father, who was continually diſcourſing with him about his voyage. It was underſtood that the King was giving him inſtructions reſpecting his future conduct in England, with true parental affection. After this he ſeized an opportunity of addreſſing the captain, and delivered his ſentiments in words to the following purport:

"I know when my ſon Lee Boo arrives in " England there will be ſo much to ſee, and he of " courſe will be ſo very eager, that novelty and " admiration may doubtleſs incline him to ramble; " but I ſhall depend upon your attention to moderate that eagerneſs, and reſtrain his paſſions: " notwithſtanding I wiſh him to derive all the " information that is neceſſary, nay all that is eſſential to conſtitute him one of yourſelves, an Engliſhman! As to our parting, I have already revolved that in my mind: I have frequently conſidered the ſubject, and am prepared for the worſt. " I know that he muſt enter diſtant countries very " unlike his own, and conſequently muſt be expoſed to all thoſe dangers which reſult from " change. He may meet with diſeaſes which to " us are unknown, and being unprepared for thoſe " maladies, peradventure he may die; but we muſt " all die, whether in England or Pelew.—Death is " our inevitable doom, and what ſignifies it whether " my ſon dies here or there? The humanity which " you have diſplayed upon every occaſion among " us, is ſufficient for me to confide in: I know that " when Lee Boo is ſick, you will adminiſter all the " relief in your power; and if he ſhould die, for " death is the fate of all, which the moſt ſkilful " cannot prevent, never let it deter either you, " your brother, your ſon, your chiefs, or even the " meaneſt of your countrymen, from viſiting theſe " iſlands upon any future occaſion. The return " of any of my friends would give me the greateſt " ſatisfaction. I ſhall rejoice to ſee you or yours " again, or any of your people. You ſhould always meet a hearty reception."

The King's ſublimity and eloquence on this occaſion made no little impreſſion on Capt. Wilſon's mind, who repeated his former declaration, that as he would henceforth look upon Lee Boo as his own ſon, he ſhould be conſequently treated with every parental attention: he would be a father to the youth, having experienced ſo much kindneſs and liberality from the youth's own father!

On the approach of night, Capt. Wilſon took an opportunity of converſing awhile with Blanchard, adviſing him by all means to render himſelf as uſeful as poſſible to the natives, and to conduct himſelf with ſtrict propriety. He conjured him never to forget in this ſituation that he was a chriſtian, but to continue thoſe acts of devotion which his religion requires: he was alſo conjured never to forget the ſabbath, but ſtrictly to adhere to all the precepts of chriſtianity. The captain further remarked, that as he might be able to recover ſome other articles from the wreck, he ſhould endeavour to benefit the natives by working iron, &c. and in taking care of the arms and ammunition he left them, which would be of the greateſt conſequence to them. He likewiſe exhorted him to be always covered, as he would thereby ſupport a ſuperiority of character among the natives, who in conſequence thereof could not forget he was an Engliſhman. On this account the captain furniſhed him with as much clothes as he could conveniently ſpare, and recommended to him when they were worn out to make himſelf trowſers of mats, which he might eaſily get at Pelew, and be thus enabled to preſerve that decency to which he was accuſtomed.

The captain now enquired, if he thought of any thing which he would wiſh to have: Blanchard, upon this, mentioned one of the ſhip's compaſſes, and requeſted to have the maſts, ſails, oars, and the reſt of the things belonging to the pinnace, as that boat was to be left. Theſe were promiſed to be granted, as ſoon as they had towed the veſſel over the reef.

Blanchard, upon leaving the captain, returned to the natives, who were very induſtrious, eſpecially the Rupacks that were preſent, in rendering the place as agreeable and commodious to him as poſſible. Nor were their endeavours loſt upon their young countryman, who already appeared perfectly ſatisfied with their manners, and reconciled to his new ſituation.

The Engliſh being ſo full of their departure, did not enjoy much repoſe this night; every man was picturing in his mind the fond idea of being again united with his dear relations and friends in his own country; and the natural apprehenſions reſulting from the dread of a diſappointment rendered their agitation of mind inexpreſſible. The natives were equally reſtleſs; the thoughts of parting ſo ſuddenly with their friends occaſioned much uneaſineſs. The King was contemplating on the departure of his ſon, and the chiefs who were with him on the great loſs they would ſuſtain in the Engliſh. In ſhort, it was a night of mutual perturbation, the Engliſh ſtill doubting the practicability of their return, and the natives regretting moſt ſincerely their departure.

CHAPTER VIII.

The Morning of Departure—The Signal for Sailing—The Generoſity of the King and Natives—The Veſſel loaded—The Captain goes on board—The Engliſh return Thanks—Account of the Servant intended for Lee Boo—Doubts of getting the Oroolong over the Reef—The Veſſel eaſed—A Canoe given to the Engliſh—Lee Boo under Mr. Sharp's Care—His Attachment to him—They proceed towards the Reef—Natives too kind—Blanchard's Attention to his Countrymen—His Indifference of parting with them—Attention of the Natives in guiding the Veſſel—King bleſſes Lee Boo, &c.—Embraces the Captain—Takes Leave in a cordial Manner—His Departure—Raa Kook's Concern—Oroolong clears the Reef—Affecting parting of the Engliſh and Natives—Weather—Wind—The Captain's and Surgeon's Attention io Lee Boo—His Notions of Delicacy—Is Sea-ſick—Conſiderations upon reſtoring their Proviſions—Change of Weather—Baſhee Iſlands diſcovered—In the China Sea—Part of Formoſa ſeen—Land ditto—Soundings got—Anchorage—Lee Boo's Remarks—Much delighted—Veſſel conducted between the Iſlands of Macao—An Engliſh Jack hoiſted—Kindneſs of the Officers of the Portugueſe Veſſels—Mr. M'Intyre's Humanity and Attention—Agreeable Information—A Portugueſe Gentleman introduces Lee Boo to his Family—The Prince's Surpriſe, Benevolence, &c.—His Admiration of a Houſe—Affable and good-natured among the Ladies—Aſtoniſhed at ſeeing himſelf in a Looking-Glaſs—His Behaviour in conſequence thereof—The Engliſh accommodated—Anecdotes of Lee Boo—Letters to the Captain—Departure of Capt. Wilſon, Lee Boo, &c. in the Walpole—The Oroolong diſpoſed of—Adventures at Canton—Mr. Sharp departs in the Laſcelles—Others in the York—Capt. Wilſon and Lee Boo in the Morſe—Adventures at St. Helena—Arrival of the Laſcelles—They reach the Iſle of Wight—Arrival at Portſmouth—Domeſtic Occurrences—Anecdotes and Death of Lee Boo.

UPON the morning of departure, Wedneſday, Nov. 12th, the Engliſh jack was hoiſted at the maſt-head of the veſſel, and one of the ſignals fired as a ſignal for ſailing. Abba Thulle, upon underſtanding this, ordered the canoes to take on board ſweetmeats, cocoa-nuts, &c. while ſeveral others lay along-ſide the Oroolong, with preſents from the different natives; ſo that had the northern Rupacks added their intended gifts, the ſhip would never have contained them. When the veſſel was loaded, the captain went on board; the King having promiſed to follow him ſoon, with Lee Boo, in his canoe. Capt. Wilſon took this favourable opportunity of making all his ſeamen kneel down, and return thanks to the Almighty, for having thus granted the means of deliverance, and ſupporting their ſpirits during their afflictions; alſo imploring his further grace to proſper their future endeavours. The King, his ſon, and chiefs, arrived while the captain and his people were praying; but till they had finiſhed, they remained near the entrance of the houſe, and kept profound ſilence, being ſenſible of what the Engliſh were about.—It is neceſſary here to obſerve, that one of the conditions for eſtabliſhing peace at Pelew, was for the King of that iſland to ſurrender two Malays whom he had to the King of Pelew: this was no doubt urged by the Malay who was Abba Thulle's interpreter. The condition being granted, one of them (whoſe name was Boyam) was now appointed to attend Lee Boo on his voyage, and be to him a ſervant. Boyam accordingly accompanied his young maſter to the veſſel.

As the Oroolong was remarkably loaded with ſea ſtores, it was doubted whether in this her ſituation ſhe was capable of getting over the reef. After conſidering ſome ſhort time upon this, it was deemed expedient to eaſe her: accordingly they landed the two ſix-pounders, and left behind the jolly-boat, which they deemed of little uſe to them, as ſhe wanted to be repaired. The King being informed of this, diſpatched his eldeſt ſon, Qui Bill, on ſhore, to provide the Engliſh with a canoe of a proper ſize, with which he ſhortly returned.

The King put his ſon Lee Boo under Mr. Sharp's care, till the Oroolong had reached China. The young man immediately became attached to the ſurgeon, and conſtantly kept cloſe to his ſide.

They now proceeded towards the reef, while the multitude of canoes which were aſſembled on both ſides was incredible: the natives therein continually imploring the Engliſh to take ſomething from them in remembrance; and theſe ſupplications were made in ſuch a piteous manner, that though there was a ſuperfluity already, the Engliſh could not reſiſt their importunities.

Blanchard, who had got into the pinnace to take the veſſel in tow, was remarkably kind and attentive to his countrymen; he gave them all the aſſiſtance in his power to the very laſt, and frequently wiſhed them a proſperous voyage, yet he appeared quite indifferent of parting with them, nor teſtified the leaſt regret, though he was leaving his friends for ever!

The pinnace was preceded by ſeveral canoes in order to point out the ſafeſt track for the veſſel; while others, according to the directions of the King, were ſtationed at the reef to mark the deepeſt water. The King accompanied them almoſt to the reef, then made a ſignal for a canoe to come along-ſide; bleſſing Lee Boo, he wiſhed him happy and proſperous: the youth received his father's bleſſing with grateful tears. Then when Captain Wilſon had finiſhed his directions to the ſeamen, the King embraced him with the greateſt tenderneſs; ſhook all the officers by the hand, and took his leave in the following noble and cordial manner:

"You are happy becauſe you are going home,
"I feel myſelf happy becauſe you are happy, and
"yet I feel myſelf unhappy becauſe you are going
"away."

This being ſucceeded with repeated aſſurances of his hearty wiſhes for a ſucceſsful voyage, he departed in his canoe attended with his chiefs; but Raa Kook with his attendants would ſee the Engliſh clear of danger to the outſide of the reef. Happily the Oroolong cleared it without the leaſt difficulty: they then took leave of Raa Kook, who, with all the reſt of the natives, appeared extremely affected at their departure. The canoes having now ſurrounded that of their King's, the people therein gazed at the Oroolong as long as they could with aching eyes, while the Engliſh were ſo overcome with their generoſity and attention, as to be ſcarcely able to give them three cheers.

They now hauled up along the back of the reef N. W. by N. Though there were ſome light ſqualls and rain, ſtill the weather was tolerable both the 13th and 14th; the wind variable from E. to S. E. with which they ſteered to the northward.

The firſt night Lee Boo ordered Boyam to bring his mat upon deck, but he was preſently provided by Mr. Sharp with a warmer covering: he was very much ſurpriſed the next morning at ſeeing no land. The captain now preſented him with a ſhirt, waiſtcoat, and a pair of trowſers, which he always made uſe of when he underſtood that nakedneſs was offenſive to the Engliſh, and at laſt he came to have ſuch notions of delicacy, that he would never dreſs or undreſs in any one's preſence: he was ſo cleanly that he waſhed himſelf ſeveral times in one day. At firſt he was very ſea-ſick: Captain Wilſon gave him one of the apples, which he looked upon as a great indulgence, this fruit being ſo rare. His ſickneſs however ſoon abating, he became quite affable and happy.

On the 15th the weather, though cloudy, was favourable: there was a ſwell from the N. E. As the weather ſtill continued fair, and the wind from the N. E. and E. they endeavoured on the 17th to make more room by re-ſtowing their proviſion and ſtores: while they were doing this they diſcovered that the leak was under the end of one of the floor-timbers. At firſt it was deemed beſt to cut it away, in order to come at and ſtop it from within: but upon further conſideration they declined the intention, for fear a plank might ſtart, and the veſſel conſequently ſink. At night the weather changed, attended with violent ſqualls and rain: they kept under an eaſy ſail. There was no appearance of land. The weather continued very unſettled from the 18th to the 24th: ſtill rain and ſqualls; the wind varying at times to the eaſtward, ſouthward, and S. W. with heavy clouds, lightning, &c. On the 23d the wind ſhifted to the N. E. and the next day the weather became fair and moderate. On the 25th they hauled up to the northward, and diſcovered Baſhee Iſlands, bearing W. N. W. about three leagues diſtance. The wind having changed to the northward, they bore away through a paſſage between the iſlands, and were at noon in the China ſea. The next morning part of the iſland Formoſa was ſeen. On the 27th it was ſtill fair weather, but there was a ſwell from the northward, with which they were much wet: in the afternoon there was a freſh gale, and having been ſo long accuſtomed to hot weather, they now felt the cold more ſenſibly. At eight o'clock the next evening they ſaw land, bearing N. by W. At one o'clock the next morning, being the 29th, the wind blowing briſkly, they got ſoundings at 25 fathom, ſoft ground; and about ſeven o'clock they ſaw land, bearing from N. by E. to W. S. W. They ſtood in amongſt the iſlands, ſteering to the weſtward; and at ſix o'clock in the evening, in company with ſome Chineſe veſſels, they anchored in 10 fathom water.

Lee Boo, during this paſſage, made ſeveral remarks, and was very eager in learning the names of the iſlands they had paſſed. He was now quite delighted at the ſight of land, and the multitude of boats which were on the water.

The veſſel was conducted the next morning (Nov. 30) between the iſlands to Macao, by a pilot whom the captain procured. As ſoon as they were in ſight of it, they hoiſted an Engliſh jack at the maſt-head; which when the officers of the Portugueſe veſſels (who were at anchorage in the Typa) perceived, they immediately ſent out their boats to meet the Engliſh with refreſhments and aſſiſtants, as they conjectured, from the ſize of the veſſel, that it was part of the crew who had been wrecked. One of the officers was ſo polite, as to wait with his boat to take the captain on ſhore to the governor. The governor at this time was particularly engaged, and having ſent an apology to the captain, acquainted him by the officer on duty that he was heartily welcome to the port of Macao. The captain was now informed, that the honourable Company's ſupracargoes were all up at Canton, and no Engliſhman was at preſent in Macao, except Mr. M‘Intyre. The captain immediately repaired to that gentleman, whoſe friendſhip he had before experienced, and who on this occaſion behaved to him with the greateſt humanity and attention. Proviſions were ſent on board the veſſel, by Mr. M‘Intyre's orders, to the officers and ſeamen, with every other neceſſary that was required.

Capt. Wilſon now wrote to the Company's ſupracargoes a full account of the wreck, his arrival and ſituation. He was very happy in being informed that peace was eſtabliſhed in Europe; and that there were at preſent a number of Engliſh and other veſſels at Whampoa; alſo that ſome of the Company's veſſels were ready to ſail.

Mr. M‘Intyre and a friend of his, who was a Portugueſe gentleman, accompanied the captain on board the Oroolong, bringing with them a ſufficiency of proviſions ready dreſſed. They returned in the evening, with Lee Boo, and all the officers except the chief mate, whoſe ſtay in the veſſel was deemed neceſſary. The Portugueſe gentleman was highly delighted with the Pelew prince, and introduced him to his family, calling him the New Man. Lee Boo, ſince their anchorage, ſeemed aſtoniſhed at every thing he ſaw: he was ſurpriſed at the magnitude of the Portugueſe veſſels; he alſo diſplayed the natural benevolence of his heart, in beſtowing the beſt things he had to the poor Tartar women, who ſurround every veſſel upon its arrival to beg. The Prince's aſtoniſhment was much more encreaſed when he entered this gentleman's houſe: he was ſilent with admiration; the walls, cieling, decorations of the room, &c. ſurpaſſed his comprehenſion. On his introduction to the ladies, he was quite affable and good-natured, and behaved with the greateſt eaſe and politeneſs. The Engliſh, as ſoon as they had landed, congratulated each other upon their happy eſcape: the Prince ſeemed to participate of their joy, by expreſſing the ſame delight; in ſhort, his behaviour rendered him agreeable to every one, and Mr. M‘Intyre took great pains in ſhewing him every thing he thought could pleaſe him. There was a large looking-glaſs, in particular, which caught his attention; this having reflected almoſt his whole perſon, the Prince was aſtoniſhed at ſeeing himſelf: he laughed, retired, then returned, and was in ſhort quite loſt in wonder: at laſt, ſuppoſing there was ſome one behind the glaſs, he ſlily endeavoured to detect him; but obſerving it was faſtened quite cloſe to the wall, he ſtood confounded: upon this a ſmall one was brought in; he ſaw his face in this; but ſeeing no one behind it, could not conceive the meaning. Thus the evening was paſſed in mutual ſurpriſe and entertainment.

As Capt. Wilſon was unwilling to encroach upon the hoſpitality of Mr. M‘Intyre, he was deſirous of providing a temporary reſidence for his people elſewhere, which by Mr. M‘Intyre's aſſiſtance was at laſt accompliſhed, and the crew of the Oroolong, except one officer and a few men who remained on board, were accommodated with a houſe (and all ſuitable neceſſaries) which belonged to an Engliſh gentleman then at Canton. The men who were left on board were alternately relieved.

Lee Boo's curioſity was fully gratified the ſucceeding day: he was aſtoniſhed at every thing he ſaw, eſpecially the horſes, being unaccuſtomed (as before obſerved) to quadrupeds; but when he ſaw ſome gentlemen who were riding, his ſurpriſe was inexpreſſible. It was no difficult matter to prevail upon him to get on a horſe's back, and having rode a few paces, he was ſo delighted with the animal, that he requeſted one of them might be ſent to his uncle Raa Kook.

Capt. Wilſon in a ſhort time received letters from the ſupra-cargoes, wherein he was adviſed to diſpoſe of the Oroolong and ſtores, as it was impoſſible for her to come up to Whampoa, according to the rules of the Chineſe government, without duty and port charges being paid, which were conſiderable. Mr. M‘Intyre then undertook to diſpoſe of the Oroolong; while Captain Churchill, of the Walpole, accommodated Capt. Wilſon and his people, (except Mr. Benger and half a dozen others, whoſe ſtay at Macao was thought neceſſary till the veſſel was ſold) with a paſſage up to Whampoa. A ſhort time after the captain's departure, the Oroolong was put up to auction, and ſold for 700 Spaniſh dollars. Captain Wilſon, &c. were about ſix days in Canton before Mr. Benger and his party came up. They arrived in one of the country boats, accompanied by Mr. M‘Intyre, and were moſt cordially received by Lee Boo, who having perceived the boat from a window, ſprang from his chair without appriſing any one of the reaſon, and with uncommon expedition ran to the river to welcome his friends.

Lee Boo's curioſity was highly gratified during his ſtay at Canton. As every day afforded ſome novel attraction, his admiration of the Engliſh ſtill encreaſed. Mr. Sharp, who had been hitherto his guardian, now reſigned his charge to Captain Wilſon, and came home in the Laſcelles under Captain Wakefield. Captain Wilſon and Lee Boo embarked in the Morſe under Captain Joſeph Elliot, while the reſt of the people went on board in different veſſels, but the majority of them embarked in the York under Captain Blanchard.

Captain Elliot was exceedingly attentive to Lee Boo during the voyage, which the prince returned with much grateful courteſy. In order to engrave upon his memory every thing that was told him, he would make ſome knots upon a cord, which knots he would be continually referring to, when deſirous of aiding his recollection; and as he frequently recurred to this cord, it uſed to be wittily obſerved by the officers of the Morſe, that he was reading his journal.

As ſoon as they arrived at St. Helena, Lee Boo was exceedingly pleaſed with the ſoldiers and cannon on the fortifications. He rode on horſeback into the country according to his own requeſt, during which he ſat well, and though he galloped, betrayed not the leaſt fear of falling, but on the contrary ſeemed highly delighted with the exerciſe. During their ſtay at Morſe, Surgeon Sharp arrived in the Laſcelles, and was received in the moſt cordial manner by Lee Boo, who jumped from a window, as before, to welcome him. In approaching the Britiſh Channel he was aſtoniſhed at the number of veſſels he met. Having arrived at the Iſle of Wight, Captain Wilſon and his party quitted the Morſe, and coming between the Needles in a boat, landed at Portſmouth July 14, 1784.

Though domeſtic occurrences are quite foreign to our deſign, yet this relation would undoubtedly be imperfect were we not to add ſome remarks on Lee Boo, while in England.

This prince was not only pleaſed with every thing he ſaw, but rendered himſelf pleaſing to every individual he met. He was brought to the captain's houſe in Rotherhithe by Mr. M. Wilſon in a coach. This machine and its utility ſtruck him very forcibly: he called it a little houſe drawn with horſes. He was quite delighted with his four-poſt bed, and ſaid the Engliſh had houſes for every thing. "All fine country—fine ſtreet—fine coach—and houſe upon houſe up to ſky—" The captain's family were particularly partial to him, and he in return was equally affectionate to them. His adopted father he always called captain, but to Mrs. Wilſon he gave the tender appellation of mother. In company he was both polite and affable: indeed he made it his ſtudy to render himſelf agreeable every where. He was generous, mild, and compaſſionate, his charity was however guided by diſcretion: the aged he always relieved, but the young beggar he rebuked for not working.

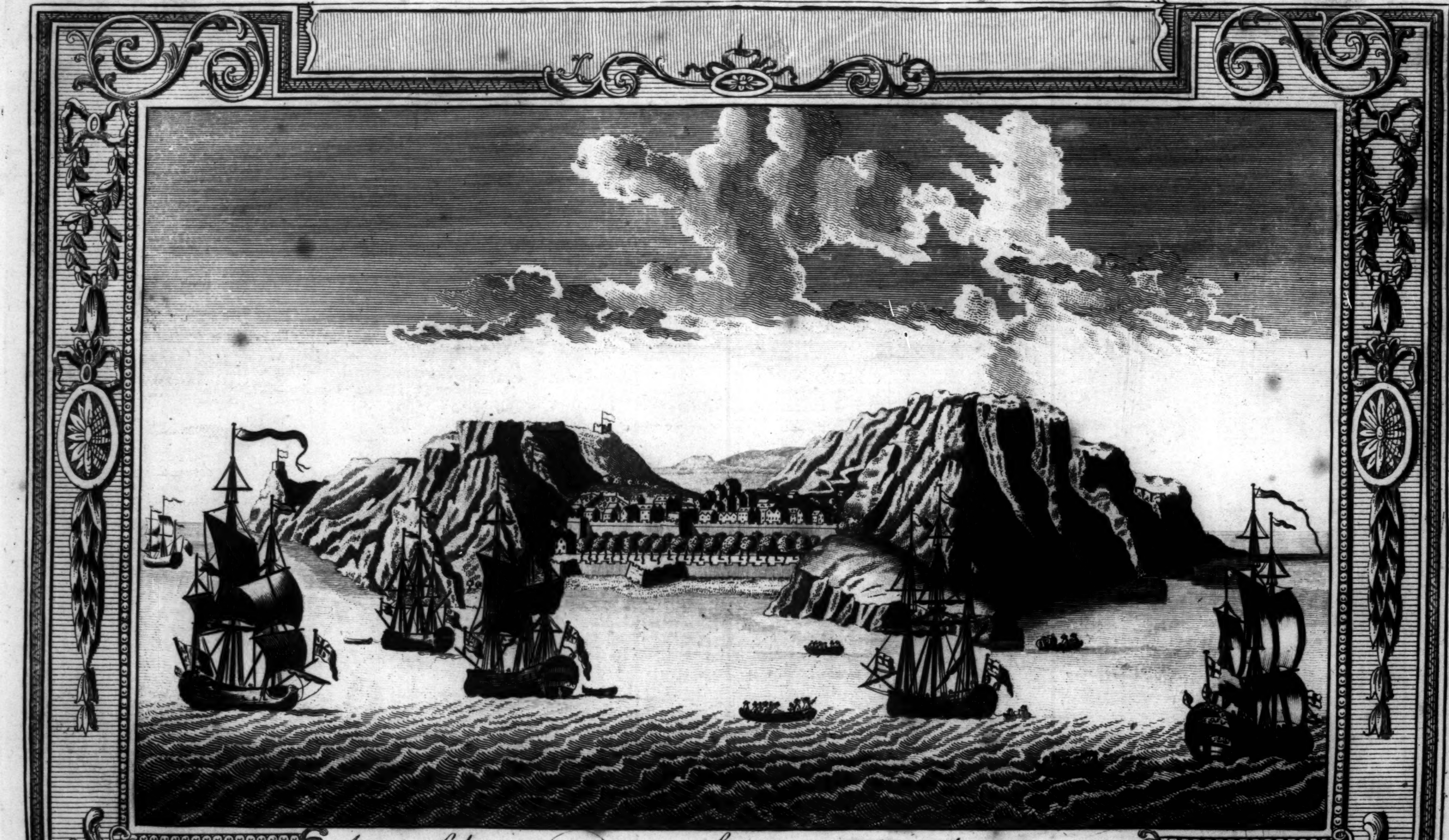
His ſervant Boyam having proved to be a worthleſs diſhoneſt man, was ſent to Sumatra, while Thomas Roſe ſupplied his place. Lee Boo was very happy with this exchange, as he was diſguſted with Boyam. The captain's ſon and the prince always lived like brothers, and one day there being a difference between the father and ſon, Lee Boo was ſo extremely affected that he could not be reconciled till he had joined their hands.

The prince was very fond of tea, but had an averſion to coffee: however, he propoſed drinking it, if it was Captain Wilſon's pleaſure. Having once ſeen a man intoxicated, he was very much concerned for his ſickneſs, but when acquainted with the cauſe, was ever after an enemy to liquor. He always appeared uneaſy when his friends were drinking, and if offered any himſelf, remarked that it was not fit for *gentlemen*.

Captain Wilſon was afraid to introduce him to any public entertainments till he was inoculated, and this operation was poſtponed till the prince ſhould be better acquainted with the Engliſh language, that he might be the leſs alarmed at this offenſive diſorder. Unfortunately he was ſeized with the ſmall-pox while unprepared, and notwithſtanding every attention was paid him, his diſſolution became inevitable. While on the bed of death, he expreſſed the moſt unfeigned regard for Captain Wilſon and his family, and having taken Surgeon Sharp by the hand, thus cordially expreſſed himſelf, "Good friend, when you go to Pelew tell Abba Thulle that Lee Boo take much drink to make ſmall-pox go away, but he die; that the captain and mother very kind, all Engliſh very good men, am much concerned I could not ſpeak to the King the number of fine things the Engliſh have got." He died univerſally lamented! and his death being made known to the India-Houſe, Captain Wilſon received orders that his funeral ſhould be as decent and reſpectable as poſſible. He was buried at Rotherhithe church-yard, and the following inſcription was ſoon after erected over his grave by order of the India Company.

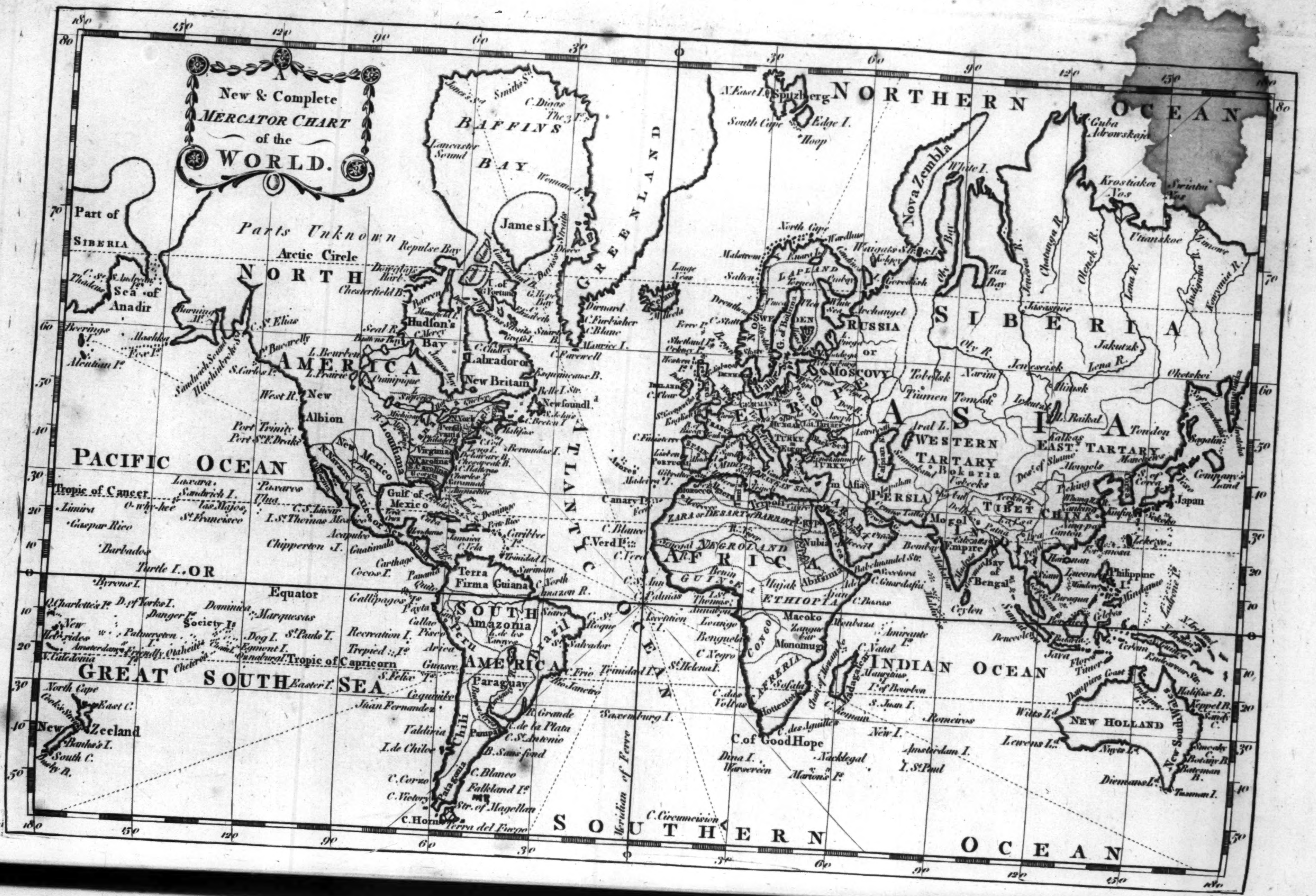
"To the Memory
Of Prince Lee Boo,
A native of the Pelew or Palos Iſlands, and Son
to Abba Thulle, Rupack or King of the
Iſland Cooroora a,
Who departed this life on the 27th of Dec. 1784,
Aged 20 Years.
This Stone is inſcribed
By the Honourable United East-India Company
As a Teſtimony of Eſteem,
For the humane and kind treatment afforded by
His Father to the Crew of their Ship the
Antelope, Captain Wilson,
Which was wrecked off that Iſland in the Night of
the 9th of Auguſt, 1783.
Stop reader ſtop, let Nature claim a tear,
A Prince of *mine*, Lee Boo, lies buried here!"

Having now given an accurate Account of Wilſon's intereſting adventures at Pelew, which it is preſumed will be found more ſatisfactory and correct than all the voluminous Relations hitherto publiſhed: the Reader ſhall next be preſented with the very valuable Voyages of Portlock and Dixon, including all the conſequent Adventures, Diſcoveries, &c. while the ſame exactneſs and attention which have ſo evidently marked the former Numbers, ſhall be carefully continued throughout this much-admired Undertaking.



A View of the Town and Island of S^t. HELENA, in the Atlantic Ocean; belonging to the English East India Company.

Published by Alex^r. Hogg, N^o. 16 Paternoster Row.

A
New & Complete
MERCATOR CHART
of the
WORLD.
NORTHERN OCEAN
Part of SIBERIA
Sea of Anadir
Parts Unknown
Arctic Circle
NORTH AMERICA
BAFFINS BAY
GREENLAND
James I.
Hudson's Bay
Labrador
New Britain
New Albion
New Mexico
Gulf of Mexico
PACIFIC OCEAN
Tropic of Cancer
ATLANTIC OCEAN
Equator
Terra Firma
Guiana
SOUTH AMERICA
Amazonia
Peru
Brazil
Paraguay
Chili
Patagonia
Tropic of Capricorn
GREAT SOUTH SEA
New Zeeland
Falkland Is.
Str. of Magellan
C. Horn
Terra del Fuego
Meridian of Ferro
SOUTHERN OCEAN
Spitzberg
Nova Zembla
EUROPE
Lapland
Sweden
Russia or Moscovy
Turky
AFRICA
Zara or Desart
Barbary
Negroland
Guinea
Ethiopia
Congo
Caffraria
C. of Good Hope
Madagascar
ASIA
SIBERIA
WESTERN TARTARY
EAST TARTARY
Persia
Arabia
Mogul Empire
Tibet
China
Japan
Bay of Bengal
INDIAN OCEAN
Philippine Is.
NEW HOLLAND
New South Wales

A NEW, COMPLETE, AND GENUINE

HISTORY OF
A Voyage ROUND the WORLD,
IN THE
KING GEORGE and QUEEN CHARLOTTE;
UNDER THE COMMAND OF
Captains PORTLOCK *and* DIXON.
Undertaken and Performed in 1785, 1786, 1787, and 1788.
WITH FULL AND CIRCUMSTANTIAL ACCOUNTS OF
The North Weſt COAST of AMERICA;
Including all the ADVENTURES, DISCOVERIES, INFORMATION, &c. contained in the JOURNALS and COMMUNICATIONS of
Capt. PORTLOCK, Surgeon HOGGAN, Capt. DIXON, Surgeon LAUDER, and ſeveral of the other OFFICERS and GENTLEMEN.

Being an Entire New HISTORY of all thoſe Intereſting OCCURRENCES, EMOLUMENTS, &c. met with and acquired by the *King George's Sound Company*, in carrying on a FUR TRADE from the WESTERN COAST of AMERICA to CHINA, more Accurate and Full than any hitherto Publiſhed.

Which, with the ſeveral other VOYAGES and TRAVELS to be included in this Collection, will be Embelliſhed with a Variety of Elegant COPPER-PLATES, Drawn upon the Spot, and Engraved by Eminent Artiſts.

INTRODUCTION.

THE principal motive for the following Voyage Round the World was the extenſion of commerce. Adventurers before were generally guided by a thirſt after glory; or a rapacious view of acquiring wealth: theſe views, however, are beneath a Britiſh nation. We deſpiſe the *Spaniſh* mode of exciting the reſentment of natives, and incurring their diſpleaſure; it being the wiſh of Engliſhmen to gain the affection of ſtrangers, and conciliate their eſteem.

The ſeveral voyages which have been undertaken under the patronage of Government, have been of late encouraged for the benefit of mankind in general; and every well-wiſher to his country muſt certainly rejoice when he contemplates the ſucceſs with which they have been attended, and the conſequent improvement of navigation.

During Capt. Cook's laſt voyage to the Pacific Ocean, beſides many ſcientific advantages of which it was productive, it was attended with one very material diſcovery, that promiſed no little emolument to our kingdom; this was the trading for furs of a very valuable kind on the N. W. coaſt of America. However, the diſcovery which was made in the year 1780 did not meet with that attention then which it ſo highly merited; for though it was obvious that immenſe wealth might be acquired by ſuch a ſcheme, yet as it required ſpirit and activity, as well as patience and perſeverance, of courſe it was ſome time before any were found who were capable of the undertaking. In May 1785 a ſociety of gentlemen reſolved upon accompliſhing the buſineſs with becoming reſolution. This ſociety conſiſted of Richard Cadman Etches, and ſeveral traders of reſpectability, who entered into a commercial partnerſhip, under the title of *King George's Sound Company*, for carrying on a fur-trade from the weſtern coaſt of America to China. For the execution of this, a licence was obtained from the South-Sea Company, (who poſſeſs an excluſive privilege of trading in the Northern Pacific Ocean): at the ſame time another of a ſimilar tendency from the Eaſt-India Company; who at the ſame time engaged to give them a freight of teas from Canton. Thus enjoying the ſole right of carrying on this traffic to its utmoſt extent, they immediately purchaſed two veſſels, one a ſhip of 320 tons, and the other a ſnow of 200 ditto; theſe being the ſize and burthen which the experienced Capt. Cook recommended, as the moſt proper for diſtant employments. They were immediately put into dock, and fitted out with all poſſible expedition, in order to undertake this highly neceſſary voyage to the N. W. coaſt of America.

The proprietors appointed Nathaniel Portlock captain of the larger veſſel, and George Dixon of the ſmaller: theſe gentlemen having attended Captain Cook in his laſt voyage into the Pacific Ocean, and conſequently deemed the moſt competent for the preſent undertaking. There were ſeveral other officers, of well-known experience and abilities, that were to aſſiſt and facilitate this enterpriſe; the novelty of which had already attracted and procured the patronage of ſeveral perſons, both of reſpectability and knowledge. The larger veſſel was called by the Secretary of the Treaſury the King George; and the ſmaller was named the Queen Charlotte, by the Preſident of the Royal Society. The ſons of ſeveral gentlemen of eminence were put under the care of thoſe reſpective captains, for the ſake of being initiated in navigation, and inſtructed in a ſea-faring life; in ſhort the undertaking met with ſuch univerſal approbation, that it received the hearty good wiſhes of ſeveral noble perſonages, particularly the Right Hon. Lord Mulgrave, Sir Joſeph Banks, Mr. Roſe, &c. Theſe encouragements ſo ſtimulated the proprietors to proſecute their laudable undertaking with due ſpirit and vigour, that nothing was left untried or unattempted, that promiſed the leaſt forwardneſs to the buſineſs. It was intended that whatever furs might be procured in their traffic on the American coaſt ſhould be diſpoſed of in China, ſubject to the immediate controul of the Eaſt-India Company's ſupra-cargoes; and on account of this conſignment, it was further intended that both veſſels ſhould be freighted home on the Company's account. Having thus far introduced the reader to the chief objects of this voyage, we ſhall now proceed in our accurate and faithful account of it.

BOOK I.

CHAPTER I.

Stores and various Antiſcorbutics laid in—They proceed down the River—Anchorage—Articles of Agreement read—Men refuſe to ſign—Reaſon—Capt. Portlock's powerful Arguments—They conſent—Two of the Crew diſcharged—Anchorage in Margate Roads—In the Deal—Under Dungeneſs—Wonderful Eſcape of a young Gentleman—Arrival at Spithead—Spare Anchors, &c. purchaſed—Anchor in St. Helen's—The Caſkets in view—Becalmed, and drifted within a Mile of them—Anchors unavailing—Tide turned—Danger over—Anchored in Guernſey Road—Spirits, &c. provided—Seven Iſles ſeen—Something ſeen on the Water—Brought on board—Explanation thereof—Abreaſt of Funchal Bay—Meet with the Grampus—One of the Crew diſcharged—Two of the Canary Iſlands—Carpenters employed in caulking—Iſland Bonaviſta—Anchorage in Port Praya Bay—The Captain Moor haughty—Becomes civil—Obliging Behaviour of the People—Live Stock, &c. purchaſed—Price of Bullocks—Politeneſs of a Merchant—Weigh Anchor and make ſail—Wonderful Preſervation of a Boy—A Shark caught—Capt. Dixon comes on board the King George—Captain Portlock's Intentions—Dixon's Return to the Queen—Ships Companies indulged—Tempeſtuous Weather—Falkland's Iſlands ſeen—A Rock ditto—Miſtaken for a Veſſel—Deſcription and Name thereof—Two ſmall Iſlands diſcovered—Deſcription thereof—Mate ſent in the Whale Boat to ſound a-head—A Signal of Danger—Ditto for a Harbour—Mate's Account upon his Return—Anchor at Port Egmont.

ON the 29th of Auguſt 1785, all the ſtores being got on board, and a plentiful ſtock of various antiſcorbutics provided, through the liberality of the proprietors, for the preſervation of the people's health; they weighed anchor, and ſtood down the river for Graveſend, where they came to anchor again; there were about 60 on board the King George, and 32 on board the Queen Charlotte. Their progreſs was now very near being retarded by a diſagreement between the commander in chief for the voyage, Captain Portlock, and the men; for as ſoon as the articles of agreement were read by the former to both the ſhips' companies, they refuſed to ſign without a greater advance of wages than is uſually allowed; this the captain would not comply with, and having uſed very powerful arguments, they at laſt conſented, except two of the King George's crew, who were conſequently diſcharged.

On the 30th, the men received what wages were due, with a month's advance. They then weighed anchor, ſtood for the Downs, with a freſh ſouthweſterly wind, and anchored about eight o'clock in the evening in Margate Roads. Early the next morning they proceeded towards the Downs, with the ſame wind, and anchored in Deal, where they laid in ſome freſh beef and other neceſſaries.

September the 2nd, they ſtood towards the Channel; but the wind being then contrary, they anchored the next evening under Dungeneſs. Charles Gilmore (one of the young gentlemen under Captain Portlock's care) being at the main-top-maſt-head, and attempting to come down by the top-maſt back-ſtay, unfortunately loſt his hold, when he was almoſt at the top, and fell directly into the main-chains; his eſcape was, however, wonderful, as he was not in the leaſt hurt, nor did he diſcover any alarm when he fell.

Having weighed anchor on the 4th, they arrived at Spithead on the 7th, where they remained a week in purchaſing ſpare anchors, and a variety of other articles; alſo in ſupplying themſelves with water, &c.

Preparations were making to ſail on the 15th; the next day they bore up for St. Helen's, and anchored there in the evening; they proceeded the next day; the weather continuing from this time to the 19th thick and hazy, with inceſſant rain. On the 20th, the Caſkets, which are a heap of rocks reſembling *Caſkets*, were in view E. N. E. and being quite becalmed, they were drifted by the tide within a mile of them. Though there were ſoundings about twenty fathoms, yet as the bottom was hard rocks their anchors were unavailing; the tide turned about nine o'clock, and then all fear of danger was over. About ſix o'clock on the evening of the 21ſt they anchored in Guernſey Road. Here they ſtaid till the 24th, in providing a quantity of ſpirits, Port wine, cyder, &c. alſo in removing ſome of the ſtores from the King George into the Queen Charlotte.

On the 25th, the wind being S. E. the pilots came on board: they unmoored and got ready to heave on head, when the wind ſuddenly changed to S. S. W. upon which the topgallant-maſts were ſtruck, and got down upon deck. In the evening the wind got round to the northward. They got under ſail the next day, and proceeded with a favourable wind.

The ſeven iſles were ſeen on the 27th: the weather continued heavy till the 30th. This day Capt. Portlock ſignified his intention to Capt. Dixon of ſteering W. S. W. as long as the wind was favourable.

Oct. 2d. There being ſomething ſeen floating on the water at a diſtance, every perſon was anxious to know what it was; but there being very little wind, the veſſel could not reach it. The men in the Queen Charlotte were reſolved on finding out what it was, and two or three determined (as it was not convenient to hoiſt out the boat) to jump overboard and ſwim to it: this Capt. Dixon oppoſed, as he was apprehenſive of ſharks: however, as the ſuppoſed prize was drifting away, he conſented, and two of the men immediately ſwam after it, and brought it on board. It was a large caſk, which when opened proved to be a hogſhead of claret; it was entirely covered over with barnacles, which had eat holes almoſt through it.

On the 16th were ſeen two of the Canary Iſlands, Palmo and Fezzo, bearing S. by E. and about twelve leagues diſtance. On the 19th the carpenters were buſily employed in caulking, as the decks leaked very much.

Early on the 24th the iſland Bonaviſta was ſeen: they anchored at noon in Port Praya bay, St. Jago, in eight fathom. Here they repleniſhed their water, and procured freſh proviſions, with other neceſſaries.

At firſt the commander of the fort, ſtiled the captain Moor, was very haughty and reſerved; but upon receiving ſomething from Captains Portlock and Dixon, who alſo intimated their deſign of waiting on the governor, and reporting his unkindneſs, he became civil, and granted permiſſion for what they wanted. Indeed the captains left nothing undone that could poſſibly expedite the buſineſs. The people of Praya were very well behaved, and ſeemed anxious to oblige. Several hogs, goats, ſheep, turkeys, &c. with a quantity of oranges, were purchaſed at their market. Captain Portlock being deſirous to purchaſe ſome bullocks, applied to the only dealer for beef there, who was a gentleman acting as agent for a mercantile houſe in Liſbon: the price of theſe bullocks, which were rather ſmall, were ten dollars each; which Capt. Portlock thinking too much, only bargained for one. Such, however, was the politeneſs of the merchant, that it was with the greateſt difficulty he could prevail upon him to accept the money for it.

On the 27th and 28th, the crew of each veſſel were permitted to go on ſhore and recreate themſelves: half the company went one day, and the other half the ſucceeding day; the ſailors were attended by an officer, to prevent any diſputes between them and the natives.

On the 29th they unmoored, and taking leave of the Diana, and a brig from Martinico, which had arrived the preceding day, they made ſail and ſtood out of the bay, the wind being eaſterly. The weather was variable from the 4th of November to the 12th; during which the ſhips' company were alternately ſerved with ſweet-wort, krout, and portable ſoup, for the preſervation of their health.

On the 15th, David Gilmore, a boy of ten years old, fell overboard from the weather main ſhrouds. Every means were taken to ſave him, and, conſidering that he was 200 yards from the ſhip, and not able to ſwim, it was wonderful how he kept above water for near ten minutes, for the arrival of the boat, when he was taken up, quite exhauſted with ſtruggling. Early the next morning a ſhark was caught, with the greateſt part of a large porpoiſe in his maw. How fortunate for Gilmore that he had not appeared the preceding day!

On the 24th Captain Dixon came on board the King George. Captain Portlock now acquainted him, that he intended to touch at Port Egmont in Falkland's Iſlands, in order to refit and water the veſſels. This being mutually agreed upon, Captain Dixon returned to the Queen Charlotte in the evening.

The ſhips' companies were now indulged with an allowance of tea, coffee, and ſugar; alſo vinegar, which was very acceptable with ſome fiſh, which they frequently caught.

Nothing material occurred till the 11th of December, when there was ſuch a heavy gale of wind that they were obliged to cloſe-reef their top-ſails and main-ſail: afterwards it was more moderate. There was another heavy gale W. S. W. on the 21ſt, while the ſea was breaking in a very extraordinary manner. The weather continued tempeſtuous till the 2d of January, when they ſaw Falkland's Iſlands, bearing from S. to S. E. about ſeven leagues diſtance.

On the 3d a rock, which was whitened over with the dung of birds, was ſeen from the maſt-head. It was ſuppoſed to be at firſt a veſſel under ſail, bearing S. E. This rock is ſituated about three leagues from the land, and is called Eddyſtone.

On the 4th, in the forenoon, two ſmall iſlands were diſcovered, bearing S. by E. and S. by W. The weſtermoſt land was about four leagues diſtance, and the eaſtermoſt near eight ditto; latitude 51 deg. 10 min. ſouth. They had ſoundings in 32 fathom water over a bottom of mud covered with ſand: there was a reef joining the two iſlands, and a rocky ſhoal, which ran out about a mile from each extreme.

On the 5th a fine opening appeared to the S. W. from which Captain Portlock expected a good harbour. He ſent Mr. Macleod, his firſt mate, in the whale-boat, to ſound a-head.

The Queen being appriſed of the ſignals that were to be made, kept a-head of the King George. At half paſt ſeven Mr. Macleod fired a piſtol: this being a ſignal of danger, the Queen ſtood off the land, and tacked occaſionally, for the purpoſe of attending to the motions of the boat. About half paſt nine Mr. Macleod hoiſted a flag at the top of the high land, which was the ſignal for a harbour. Capt. Portlock immediately made a ſignal for the boat to return, in order to hear the mate's account previous to any attempt.

Mr. Macleod, upon his return, reported that the harbour was a good one. At the time that he made the ſignal for ſhoal water, he was in ſeven fathom water, over a bed of rocks covered with weeds, which aſcended to the ſurface, and were ſituated near the middle of the channel.

They ſtood in for harbour under an eaſy ſail, and both veſſels came to anchor at Port Egmont, about eleven o'clock, in 17 fathom water, over a ſandy bottom.

CHAPTER II.

The Captains examine the Watering-place—Obſervations—Veſſels ſecured—Watering Buſineſs begun—Ballaſt procured for the Queen—Continual Interruptions cauſing Delay—Excurſions on Shore—Deſcription of the Country—Ruins of a Town—Some Vegetables—A wild Hog, &c.—Watering completed—Anchor weighed—Anchorage in Carcaſs Iſland—Deſcription of the Harbour—Heavy Guſts of Wind—Loop's Head paſſed—Anchorage in States Bay—Sailors recreate themſelves on Shore—Anchor weighed—Staten's Land ſeen—Loſt—Seen again—A Rippling a-head—Occaſion thereof—Several Seals ſeen—A very remarkable Fiſh ſtruck—They change their Courſe—Reaſon—Capt. Portlock's Indulgence to his Men, for their good Conduct—Hammocks and Bed-clothes aired—Obliged to carry more Sails than they can well bear—Gammoning of the Queen's Bowſprit gone—Secured with a new one—Seals about the King—Veſſel cleaned and aired—Rigging repaired—Sails and Canvas got upon Deck—Allowance of Water by Capt. Dixon—Weather variable—Captain Portlock ſends a Boat for Capt. Dixon—Reſult of their Meeting—Their Appointment—Appearance of a Trade-Wind—Allowance of Cyder—A ſtrange Sail ſeen—The Armourer's Forge got on Deck the Queen—Carpenters employed—A Diſappointment—King George paſſes the Equator—A Number of Sharks caught by the Queen—A favourable Reſpite from Salt Proviſions—Second Mate on board the Queen taken ill—Scurvy appears—Capt. Dixon ill—Owhyhee ſeen—Natives in their Canoes—A Traffic—Large Fires ſeen—Behaviour of the Natives—Their Viſit—Captains' Determination—Anchorage of both Veſſels—Inconvenience of watering—Supplied by the Inhabitants—Occaſional Remarks.

CAPTAINS Portlock and Dixon now went on ſhore, to examine the watering-place which the mate, Mr. Macleod, had pointed out: it was ſituated on the north ſhore. The water was remarkably good, but the acceſſes thereto ſo rocky, it was apprehended that the caſks would ſuffer a material injury. The captains walked along ſhore, taking the eaſtward direction, with a view of finding a more eligible ſpot: every path however was equally ſtony and dangerous.

Capt. Portlock repeated his ſearch the next day, taking the weſt direction: afterwards, with Captain Dixon, he proceeded to ſound the bay; Portlock taking the ſouthern ſhore, and Dixon the northern.

Not being able to find any water ſo convenient as that which lay northward, they proceeded to ſecure their veſſels, and complete their watering buſineſs, which commenced the next day, Jan. 7th. The company of the Queen were likewiſe employed in fetching ſtones, to put in her hold by way of ballaſt, as ſhe was not ſufficiently deep in the water. Though the men exerted their utmoſt to expedite theſe employments, they were notwithſtanding delayed by the continual interruptions of blowing, ſqually weather.

The people, in order to recreate themſelves, were frequently permitted by turns to make excurſions on ſhore. The country was in a wild ſtate, and there was no appearance of cultivation. There were very few inſects, and no trees to be ſeen; but there was the root of a long coarſe graſs, which ſerved as excellent fuel. There were the ruins of a town diſcovered; near which was the appearance of a garden, with a few flowers. They found ſome vegetables, potatoes, horſe-radiſh, celery, ſhalots, &c. but in a very degenerate ſtate. They met a hog, but could not catch him, he was ſo wild: after this they ſaw ſeveral; alſo a bullock, cow, &c.

The watering was completed on the 9th; and their other buſineſs occupied them till the 14th. The wind was in general S. W. the weather heavy, and attended with much rain.

The crew of both veſſels were alternately permitted to recreate themſelves on ſhore, from the 16th to the 19th; which was indeed the chief refreſhment they enjoyed here, as the country was very barren.

Early on the 19th they weighed anchor, and made ſail with a moderate breeze at ſouth, directing their courſe for Swan Iſland; but as the wind afterwards inclined to S. W. they worked through the paſſage between Saunders's Iſland and Low Iſlands. The next day was quite calm, attended with a thick fog; but as it ſoon cleared up, they paſſed between Beachy Iſland and the eaſternmoſt of the middle rocks; they anchored at noon with the beſt bower in weſt point harbour of Carcaſs Iſland, in ſeven fathom, over a ſandy bottom. This harbour is eſteemed the beſt in the world, being not only eaſy of acceſs, but ſheltered from every wind. When moored, the north point bore W. N. W. one mile diſtant; and the weſt point of Weſt Point Iſland W. half N. three leagues diſtant.

They remained here till the next day, as the wind and weather were unfavourable. They then proceeded, and being afterwards directly oppoſite the S. W. point of Weſt Iſland, were obliged ſuddenly to clew all up and keep the veſſel large, on account of ſome heavy guſts of wind, which came from the very high land: this however, after rounding the point, they got clear of. They paſſed Loop's Head at one o'clock, and ſtood into State's Bay: there are ſeveral fine harbours in this bay. At three o'clock they anchored with the beſt bower, in 18 fathom water, over a muddy bottom.

On the 22d, the ſailors of both veſſels were permitted to recreate themſelves on ſhore. Early the next morning they weighed anchor, and made ſail with a fine ſoutherly breeze.

From the 24th to the 26th the weather was moderate, but hazy, and the winds north-weſterly.

On the 26th Staten's Land was ſeen very high, bearing ſouth, about ſix leagues diſtant. The weather becoming tempeſtuous and thick, they loſt ſight of land; but on its clearing up at eight oclock, it appeared again; and they accordingly made ſail to run in for it: however, the hazy weather having returned again, they ſhortened ſail, and took the northward direction. They tacked at midnight, and at two o'clock the next day Staten's Land appeared again; the extremes bearing from S. S. W. to S. E. by S. about ſix leagues diſtance. About nine o'clock they ſaw a rippling a-head, which obliged them to ſhorten ſail and bear up: this, as it was afterwards diſcovered, was occaſioned by a current ſetting to the northward; upon which they again hauled to the ſouthward, and made ſail. The weather continued very ſtormy and tempeſtuous from the 28th to the 30th; the wind veering from S. E. to W. During this there were ſeveral ſeals ſeen. From the 31ſt to the 4th of February the weather was more moderate, and there were light breezes from the ſouthward. Capt. Portlock ſtruck a very remarkable fiſh; the hind part and tail of which were exactly like thoſe of a ſhark, and its noſe had the reſemblance of a porpoiſe. Having now made a good offing from Cape Horn, they changed their courſe to N. W. it being the captain's wiſh to get ſtill further to the weſtward, that in caſe of weſterly winds they might keep well clear of the continent.

On the 5th the people had one pound and a half of freſh pork each, in addition to their allowance of ſalt proviſions; with an half allowance of brandy extra. This indulgence of Captain Portlock was to teſtify his approbation of their conduct during the time they had been under his command. They continued their voyage, without making any conſiderable progreſs for a fortnight, as the wind was generally in the weſtern board, blowing freſh and in ſqualls; the weather very ſtormy, and unſettled. Every change of wind was preceded by a ſudden ſquall, and then ſucceeded by a calm, both of ſhort continuance.

The ſailors hammocks and bed-clothes were brought upon deck on the 22d to be aired, the weather being this day remarkably fine.

On the 25th there was a very ſtrong breeze from the N. W. when they were obliged to carry more ſail than the veſſels could well bear, in order to prevent their being driven to the eaſtward.

On the 27th Capt. Dixon having found that the gammoning of the Queen's bowſprit was gone, immediately ſhortened ſail, and got it ſecured with a new one.

On the 28th there were ſome ſeals ſeen about the King: there were alſo ſome rock-weed, and the branch of a tree floating in the ſea. The King George was well cleaned between decks, and properly aired with good fires on the 5th of March: her rigging, which had been much damaged with the late tempeſtuous weather, was repaired on the 27th; alſo the ſails and canvas, which were wet, got upon deck and aired. The ſame day Captain Dixon put his men to two quarts allowance of water each per day, beſides an extra allowance three times a week for peaſe, as the time of their next anchorage was very uncertain.

The weather continued very variable, ſometimes hazy and tempeſtuous, and at other times temperate and pleaſant.

On the 21ſt Capt. Portlock ſent a boat for Capt. Dixon, who returned in it, and came on board the King George. They agreed to ſtand on directly for Los Majos, where they were in hopes of being able to refit their veſſels, and refreſh the crew; inſtead of running down to the Sandwich Iſlands, which were entirely out of their way: beſides they had ſome reaſon to expect both a good harbour and water there. The captains now appointed Owhyhee as the place of rendezvous, in caſe they were ſeparated before their arrival at Los Majos. They were to wait for each other ten days, and if they did not meet then, they were to proceed to King George's Sound.

On the 25th the weather was very fine, and there was a comfortable breeze at E. S. E. The appearance of this trade-wind encouraged the captains to make for Los Majos agreeable to their reſolution. This day the King George was well ſcraped fore and aft, aired and waſhed with vinegar. Each man on board the King and Queen were allowed now a pint of cyder every day beſides his uſual quantity of ſpirits, which was very acceptable as it was exceedingly warm.

A ſtrange ſail was ſeen on the 25th in the evening to the N. W. ſhe appeared to be either a brig or a ſnow. Both veſſels ſhowed a light, and the ſtrange ſail hoiſted a light too: however ſhe paſſed nearly within call of the Queen at ten o'clock, and was preſently out of ſight. She was ſuppoſed to be a Spaniſh veſſel going to Boldivia or Conception, on the coaſt of Chili.

April 5th the Queen Charlotte got the armourer's forge on deck. When fixed up, ſundry things were made for the veſſel's uſe, and alſo for their future traffic.

On the 6th the carpenters of the Queen were employed in making ports for guns, and fixtures for ſwivels.

On the 10th the King George paſſed a turtle, and as the crew were very anxious for a freſh meal, Mr. Macleod was ſent in the whale-boat after it. When brought on board, they found by its putrefied ſtate that it had been dead for ſome time; of courſe it was returned to the ſea, and the people were very much diſappointed. However, in five days after they picked up a very fine one, which weighed ſixty-five pounds; this came juſt in time to celebrate Eaſter-Sunday, which was the ſucceeding day.

As the cyder was now expended on board the King, the men had a pint of ſweet-wort each day in lieu thereof: on the 20th the King paſſed the equator.

About this time the allowance of water was encreaſed to three quarts each day, on board the Queen. The crew of this veſſel caught a great number of ſharks, with which the ſailors made chouder: they alſo got a turtle. However, Captain Portlock's veſſel being more fortunate in this reſpect, ſeveral turtles were occaſionally ſent by him to Captain Dixon, by which means the ſhips' companies had a favourable reſpite from ſalt proviſions.

The veſſels now kept eaſtward, in order to fetch Los Majos. The winds continued variable, and the weather extremely ſultry.

Hitherto the people of both veſſels had enjoyed a good ſtate of health. However, the ſcurvy now began to appear, in ſpite of every precaution to prevent it. The boatſwain (Mr. Brown) on board the King George, was ſo bad, that his recovery was deſpaired of. Several on board the Queen were very much afflicted: Captain Dixon was exceedingly ill, and likewiſe Mr. Turner the ſecond mate.

Captain Portlock went on board the Queen, to viſit Captain Dixon. On his return to the King, he ſent him a caſk of fine mould with ſallad growing in it; likewiſe ſome garden-ſeeds (which was in a great meaſure the relief of the boatſwain), and ſeveral other antiſcorbutics.

On the 7th they were near the place where the Iſland Partida is ſuppoſed to be: there was however no appearance of land, which renders the exiſtence of ſuch place doubtful.

On the 12th of May, Mr. Brown the boatſwain on board the King was out of danger, and Captain Dixon likewiſe grew better, though ſlowly.

As there was a fine trade-breeze, they ſteered W. by S. and on the 23d endeavoured to make Owhyhee, which is the principal of the Sandwich Iſlands.

On the 24th at ſeven o'clock, Owhyhee was in view; the eaſt point bearing N. W. by W. about ſix leagues diſtant. The E. and S. E. parts of this iſland are apparently fertile and pleaſant, but the S. and the S. W. parts ſeem the contrary.

While the King George was running along ſhore within three miles of the land, ſhe was ſurrounded by a number of the natives in their canoes: they had a few hogs of a ſmall ſize, ſome plantains, and a number of excellent fiſhing-lines, which they chearfully exchanged for beads, and pieces of iron: they did not ſeem then the leaſt inclined to hoſtility or theft; on the contrary, when they had diſpoſed of all they had got to part with, they took leave with apparent ſatisfaction.

When the veſſel approached land, ſhe was accoſted by another number of canoes, who brought hogs and other refreſhments, which were likewiſe exchanged for pieces of iron.

On the 25th when it was dark, there was a great number of fires obſerved on ſhore. Captain Portlock, as he had lately perceived the natives to be ſhy and diſtant, and knowing it to be their cuſtom to light fires by way of offerings to their gods, when diſpoſed to fight, was apprehenſive of ſome meditated danger, particularly as the natives ſeemed equally ſuſpicious, and began to think theſe Engliſh were come to revenge the untimely death of Capt. Cook.

It was the captain's wiſh to anchor in Karakakooa, but was delayed by an unfavourable wind: but a light breeze ſpringing up at N. W. they ſtood in for the bay. About noon an inferior chief came on board, who ſaid that Tereeoboo the late king was dead, and that the preſent king was Maiha Maiha. He requeſted the captain to come on ſhore, which he declined. Several canoes now came alongſide, and the natives grew very troubleſome. The veſſel was very much retarded in her progreſs, by their hanging round her. In the mean time the Queen, after ſtanding along the ſhore two days, was in like manner ſurrounded by the natives of both ſexes, with whom they trafficked for various commodities. Both the King and Queen came to anchor on the 26th in the afternoon.

The natives continued to be exceedingly troubleſome: beſides hogs and plantains, they diſpoſed of a quantity of ſalt potatoes, taro, &c. Their fires appeared again at night, and there was a conſtant buſtle among them on ſhore.

While Captain Dixon was making preparations for the watering, he was acquainted by Captain Portlock of his apprehenſions relative to the natives, who now became ſo troubleſome that he was obliged to place centinals with cutlaſſes to prevent their boarding them; he was of opinion that it was impoſſible to do any thing on ſhore without a ſtrong guard, and ſuch meaſure he again imagined, would be attended with fatal conſequences. It was alſo underſtood, that the watering place was tabooed. In ſhort, the captains mutually agreed upon leaving Karakakooa as ſoon as poſſible.

On the 27th there being orders to unmoor, in which they were retarded by the concourſe of natives, there were ſix four-pounders, and ſix ſwivels fired, with a view of diſperſing them; their colours were alſo hoiſted, and the veſſel was tabooed; which effectually alarmed the natives, who inſtantaneouſly fled: many canoes during their precipitation were overſet, while thoſe who were in them, were obliged to ſwim for ſhore.

They now unmoored without any interruption, and began about twelve o'clock to warp out of the bay to the weſtward. When diſtant about three leagues from Karakakooa, they brought to; intending to ſtand off and on for about a day, in order to traffic with the natives.

A briſk trade commenced early the next morning, when a quantity of fine hogs, and vegetables of different kinds were procured. They alſo began to purchaſe water in calabaſhes, which was an article at preſent of the greateſt conſequence, and the refreſhments which they had already procured, were of infinite ſervice to the ſick, who were now recovering apace.

On the 29th the natives ſtill continued to traffic, while the veſſels ſtood to the N. N. W. for the ſake of enabling the canoes to keep up with them. At this time Karakakooa bore N. E. by E. about eight leagues diſtant, and the high land of Mowee, which they were making for, was now in ſight. At ſix o'clock in the afternoon a freſh breeze ſprung up at N. E. which occaſioning a croſs ſwell, obliged the canoes to leave the veſſels, and make quickly for ſhore.

It was ſuppoſed that the unkindneſs of the natives proceeded from a recollection of thoſe loſſes which they ſuſtained after the melancholy death of Captain Cook: however, the reaſon that they urged for their unwillingneſs to admit the Engliſh on ſhore was, that all their chiefs, being engaged in war with a neighbouring iſland, were abſent, and on that account they could not ſuffer ſtrangers to land.

On the 30th, the weather being very unſettled, and it ſtill being doubtful whether they ſhould be able to compleat their watering at any of the Sandwich Iſlands, which conſiſt of ſeven, viz. Owhyhee, Mowee, Morotai, Ranai, Woahoo, Attoui, and Oneehow, the allowance of water was conſequently curtailed to two quarts per day. About noon the king was joined by a few canoes from Ranai, but they had nothing of conſequence to diſpoſe of. Captain Portlock now entertained hopes of anchoring in a bay ſituated on the weſt ſide of Morotoi, being within three leagues of the weſt end; but the wind failing, and the day being far advanced, he could not accompliſh his deſign. In the mean time the Queen kept ſtanding for Woahoo. About eight o'clock ſhe was nearly up to the King.

Early on the 31ſt they wore, and ſtood in for the land; but, when it was day-light, they were exceedingly mortified to find that they had been driven about nine leagues in the night to the S. W. This baffled Captain Portlock's expectation of anchoring at Morotoi; and he was apprehenſive of not being able ſoon to weather the eaſt point of Woahoo, which was at preſent the neareſt anchorage: reſolving, however, to make the attempt, he ſtood in for the eaſt point of that iſland, under all the ſail they could carry, with a moderate breeze at E. N. E. Appearances were greatly in favour of the King; but the Queen Charlotte being a conſiderable way on her companion's lee quarter, her poſſibility of weathering the iſland was exceedingly doubtful. Upon this the King George tacked, and ſtood towards her. The Queen, about half paſt eleven, drove in ſhore; but Capt. Dixon, finding the attempt was ineffectual, tacked; which likewiſe induced the King to tack immediately afterwards. At noon the S. E. part bore W. S. W. five miles diſtant; and the N. E. part N. W. about four leagues.

This iſland appears high and craggy between the S. E. and N. E. points. It is divided into ſeveral high rocks, where there is ſuppoſed to be a tolerable ſhelter.

Finding it impracticable to get round the N. E. point of the iſland, without conſiderable delay, they bore away on the 1ſt of June for the S. E. point, where there was every appearance of an excellent anchorage. They hauled round the point, and ſtood in for the bay. The whale-boat was now diſpatched by Captain Portlock to ſound.

They anchored about half after one in the afternoon, in 12 fathom water, over a ſandy bottom. Captain Portlock called this bay King George's: the eaſt point he called Point Dick, in honour of Sir John Dick, the firſt patron of this voyage; this bore E. by N. one mile and a half. The weſt point he called Point Roſe, after George Roſe, Eſq; ſecretary of the treaſury, and their ſecond patron: this bore W. S. W. half W. about two leagues; and the bottom of the bay N. two miles diſtant. They had preſently a number of canoes along-ſide, who bartered ſome cocoa-nuts, ſugar-cane, plantains, ſweet-root, &c. for a few trinkets, and pieces of iron. Hogs and vegetables were much ſcarcer here than at Owhyhee. On account of a freſh breeze, which came on in the evening, at E. N. E. thoſe canoes departed.

Early in the morning (June 2d) a number of canoes viſited the veſſels again; theſe brought ſome vegetables, and a few ſmall hogs. Several of the natives of both ſexes had been induced to this viſit through curioſity.

The captain went on ſhore early in the morning to ſeek a watering-place, which was now their chief object; their next conſideration was to procure accommodations for the ſick. They landed on ſome rocks juſt round Point Dick without being in the leaſt interrupted by the inhabitants; but, on the contrary, received with great politeneſs, and ſatisfied in all their enquiries. They conducted them to ſome freſh water, which was lodged in a kind of baſon, formed by the rocks, about fifty yards from the place where they landed; but there was ſo little as not to afford even a temporary ſupply. They then informed the Engliſh that a larger quantity was to be had at ſome diſtance to the weſtward; the captains accordingly proceeded in their ſearch, but met with ſo many diſaſters on account of ſeveral little ſalt-water rivers, which impeded their progreſs, that they almoſt deſpaired of accompliſhing their wiſhes. Every circumſtance rendered the watering exceedingly inconvenient here; Captain Portlock, therefore, reſolved upon ſending two boats to examine the weſtern part of the bay, and diſcover, if poſſible, a good landing-place, and convenient watering.

Mr. Hill now received orders from Captain Portlock to purchaſe every refreſhment that came in his way, for the uſe of the company; accordingly this gentleman, during the captain's abſence, procured ſeveral hogs, ſugar cane, vegetables, &c. of the natives.

As there was no poſſibility of being able to water the ſhips with their own boats, Captain Dixon ſuggeſted to Captain Portlock the probability of being ſupplied by the natives, as thoſe people had ſeveral gourds in their canoes and calabaſhes full of water. It was, therefore, deemed expedient to induce the Indians to bring off water to the veſſels; at leaſt a ſufficiency for the preſent. Theſe people were indeed ſo fond of traffic that they readily complied, and for the ſake of buttons, nails, and ſuch like trifles, willingly employed themſelves in bringing water. For a ſmall or middling-ſized calabaſh, containing about two or three gallons, they gave a ſmall nail; for larger-ſized, larger nails; and ſo on in proportion. In this very ſingular manner both veſſels were completely ſupplied with water, not only at a trivial expence, but without either wearing or endangering their boats, caſks, or tackling; alſo preſerving their men from wet, and catching cold.

During the time they were taking in water, the people of both veſſels were buſied in ſetting up the rigging fore and aft, ſcraping the ſhips' ſides, and other neceſſary employments. Their preſent ſituation being the moſt eligible one that appeared about theſe iſlands, they reſolved on not quitting it until they had completed all their buſineſs.

The ſick people belonging to the Queen were taken on ſhore by the ſurgeon, who thought that the land-air would be of ſervice to them; they were, however, obliged ſoon to return, on account of the heat of the weather, and the concourſe of the natives. The next day the ſick of the King were taken on ſhore for recreation; theſe were likewiſe incommoded by the multitudes which curioſity brought about them.

A few of the inferior chiefs came on board the

King George without any ſcruples; but none of the great ones paid them a viſit. There was an old prieſt, who conſtantly viſited Captain Portlock, and always brought a ſmall pig, and a branch of the cocoa-nut, by way of preſent.

On the 4th the watering buſineſs was completed; a great plenty having been brought by the inhabitants with the greateſt facility. It was Capt. Portlock's opinion, that this was the moſt ſafe and expeditious method any body could adopt, of watering a veſſel in theſe places.

It was now determined to proceed to Oneehow, in order to get a ſupply of yams, for which that iſland is famous. On the 5th they weighed anchor, and ſtood to the weſtward, under an eaſy ſail, with a moderate breeze at N. E. The bay eaſtward, which appeared to be excellent, was called Queen Charlotte's. Attoui was ſeen on the 6th, and at noon the high point upon the S. E. end bore W. N. W. at nine leagues diſtance; Whaboo was ſtill in ſight. The winds were now variable, and the weather cloſe and ſultry. On the 7th they bore away, and made ſail with a fine breeze from the eaſtward: in the afternoon they were abreaſt of Wymoa Bay, Attoui, where they intended to anchor; however, the wind blowing very ſtrong from the S. E. Captain Portlock deemed it unſafe to ride in the anchoring, ſo wore and ſtood for Oneehow, under all the ſail they could carry; the extreme of which at four o'clock bore from N. N. W. half W. to S. W. by W. about four leagues diſtant from the neareſt land. They tacked occaſionally during the night; and on the 8th, about ten o'clock, came to anchor in Yam Bay, Oneehow, ſo called from its abundance of yams, 17 fathom water over a ſandy bottom. The north point of the bay bore N. N. E. and the ſouth point S. by E. a mile and a half diſtant from ſhore. There is a fine ſandy beach about the middle of the bay, within a quarter of a mile of which a ſhip may moor in ſeven and eight fathom water, over a fine ſandy bottom: boats may alſo land with great facility and ſafety.

They were immediately viſited by the inhabitants, who brought them a plentiful ſupply of yams; beſides ſome ſmall pigs, ſweet potatoes, &c. which they bartered for beads, nails, &c. The ſick were taken on ſhore, and there not being ſuch a number of inhabitants here as in the other iſlands, and theſe few kept under proper order by the chief, they enjoyed the benefit of the land-air without any moleſtation. The captains were deſirous to lay in a good ſtock of yams, and plenty of hogs for ſalting.

The name of the principal chief at this iſland is Abbenooe. He viſited the captains, and recollected Captain Portlock, whom he had ſeen before. He ſeemed very much attached to the company, and on his account they were better accommodated.

Captain Portlock, accompanied by this chief as a guide, went on ſhore in ſearch of freſh water. After examining ſome wells, he made an excurſion into the country, the chief ſtill attending him, with a few of the natives. Previous to this, ſix perſons had been appointed to trade with the natives during his abſence; and, on his return, the captain found that a briſk trade had been carried on. As Abbenooe had received ſeveral preſents for his kind attention, he was ſtill more anxious to render them his ſervice; and on the 10th the captains were very agreeably ſurpriſed, by the appearance of ſeveral large double canoes, full of fine hogs, ſugar-cane, taro, &c. which Abbenooe had ſent to Attoui for, where the king of Oneehow was at this time. Preſents were immediately ſent to the king, for his generous conſideration.

There was no time loſt in making the beſt bargains: 30 hogs were procured on the 12th, which weighed about 60 lb. each.

A ſufficient quantity of meat was ſalted, and ſome excellent bacon made of the pork. There were about 10 tons of fine yams on board the King, and eight ditto on board the Queen. Every thing being thus completed, they prepared to ſail with all poſſible ſpeed.

This iſland appeared well cultivated. It produces ſugar-cane, ſweet potatoes, a ſweet root called by the natives Tee, but yams are the chief commodity. There are a few trees, ſcattered without any order; ſome 15 feet high, and proportionably thick; the bark ſmooth, and the branches extenſive; the leaves round, and their fruit ſomething like walnuts. There were others about nine feet high, with fine pink-coloured bloſſoms. There were others producing nuts like horſe-cheſnuts, which ſerve the natives for candles, as they burn well and give excellent light.

Among the refreſhments theſe iſlands produce, that of the ſweet-root, called the Tee, is the moſt remarkable: it ſerved to make excellent beer. This drink (which was very good) was of great benefit to ſuch as were afflicted with the ſcurvy. The ſugar-cane was brewed in the ſame manner, which made very wholeſome drink, but it was not ſo agreeable to the taſte as the Tee-beer.

CHAPTER III.

Leave taken of Abbenooe and the Natives—Captain Portlock goes on board the Queen—A Rendezvous appointed—Colour of the Water changed—Seals ſeen—Whales, Porpoiſes, &c.—They make for Cook's River—Eclipſe of the Moon—The King George cleaned, &c.—Soundings—No Bottom—Bottom—Galicia Whales ſeen—The Barren Iſlands—Iſland Hermogenes ſeen—A great Gun heard—Anſwered—Another heard—Various Conjectures—A Boat comes from Shore with Ruſſians—Preſents from and to the Ruſſian Chief and Capt. Portlock—Anchorage—No Inhabitants—Fine Wood and Water—Parties diſpatched to cut Wood, &c.—The Captains repair to the Ruſſian Factory—Watering completed—Fine Salmon procured—Deſcription of the Country—Some Bears ſeen—Veſſels prepared for Sea—Kennel Coal diſcovered—Anchor weighed—Signal for the Queen to anchor—Obeyed—Account of Mount Volcano—Anchorage in Trading Bay—Meeting with one Canoe—Behaviour of the Indian—Arrival of ſeveral Indians—Signs of Peace—A Trade carried on—Natives deſirous for the Engliſh to land—Capt. Portlock invites a Chief on board—His Heſitation—Condition—Scruples conquered—Several of the Indians go on board—Captain grants the Chief's Requeſt—Indians kind and familiar—A very briſk Trade—Natives inclined to Thievery—Inſtances—Capt. Portlock's conſequent Orders—Determines to quit Cook's River—Reaſon—Paſſage along the Coaſt—Anchorage—Several ſmall Canoes viſit them—The Indians want the Engliſh to join them in battle againſt the Ruſſians—Captain's Refuſal—His Preſents—Remarks on Cook's River, the Inhabitants, &c.

ON the 13th, about five o'clock in the morning, they unmoored, and at eight o'clock weighed and got under ſail, ſtanding with a freſh breeze at N. E. out of the bay. Their colours were hoiſted, and ten guns fired, by way of taking leave of Abbenooe and the reſt of the natives of this iſland.

On the 15th they were clear of the land, and changed their courſe to N. and N. by E. The weather for ſeveral days was cloſe and ſultry, but on the 20th it became clear and pleaſant, attended with a fine eaſterly breeze: from the 23d to the 28th there were very ſtrong breezes, with rain; the wind veering from S. W. to N. W. the weather was thick and hazy. This day, in the forenoon, Capt. Portlock went on board the Queen Charlotte, in order to appoint a rendezvous in caſe of ſeparation. The captains agreed on a ſituation in Cook's River, near Cape Bede; which cape forms the ſouth ſide of a deep inlet, and Anchor Point the north ſide. This was choſen with an expectation of finding a good harbour there, and knowing that whatever veſſel arrived firſt would be able to make ſignals to the other on her entering the river. From the 29th to the 1ſt of July, the winds were light and variable, attended with thick fogs and ſmall rain.

On the 2d the water altered its colour, and ſeveral ſeals were ſeen playing about both veſſels. There was a piece of wood floating on the water on the 3d, with ſeveral birds on it: there were alſo ſeveral whales, porpoiſes, and a great number of petrels, ſeen. The wind was now N. W. attended with much rain; towards noon the weather cleared up.

From this time to the 7th, their progreſs was greatly retarded by the wind keeping to the northward and weſtward; after this it ſhifted to the ſouthward, and they now made for the entrance of Cook's River. The winds continued from S. E. to S. W. till the 11th, when, in the evening, the moon was totally eclipſed; but, on account of the fogginеſs of the night, they could not ſee it.

The ſtock of yams on board the Queen were expended on the 13th; which was of ſerious conſequence, as it ſerved them for both bread and potatoes. The weather being very fine on the 14th, the King was well cleaned fore and aft, aired with good fires, &c. The next day, the water altering its colour very much, they frequently ſounded with 90 to 120 fathom, and could get no bottom. On the 16th the Queen ſounded likewiſe, and could get no bottom till the afternoon, when there was bottom 55 fathom, of black rock, ſhells and ſand. The land was in ſight at eight o'clock, from N. to S. S. W. about eight leagues diſtance. There were ſeveral Galicia whales ſeen near the ſhore. This land proved to be (on the 18th) the barren iſlands ſituated at the entrance of Cook's River. In the afternoon the iſland Hermogenes was ſeen, bearing from S. S. W. to W. at three leagues diſtance.

On the 19th, at eleven o'clock in the forenoon, they made the entrance of Cook's River, leaving the barren iſles to the ſouthward and eaſtward. They now intended, if poſſible, to make Anchor Point, before they let go their anchor. At ſeven in the evening, the report of a great gun was heard, from a bay nearly abreaſt of them, about four miles diſtance. There were now various conjectures, ſome thinking they were Engliſhmen, and others that they were French. Captain Portlock hoiſted colours, and fired a gun: he anſwered the ſignal again, and then they heard another ſhot. At ſeven o'clock a boat came from ſhore to the King George, and the people proved to be Ruſſians. There being no perſon on board that underſtood the Ruſſian language, they were not able to get any ſatisfactory information. The party conſiſted of about 25 men: they were accompanied by ſeven Indians in their canoes, who ſeemed to be on friendly terms with them. The Ruſſian chief brought Captain Portlock a quantity of fine ſalmon; which compliment the captain returned by a preſent of ſome beef, pork, and brandy.

On the 20th they came to anchor in 35 fathom water, as the crews required both food and exerciſe. Though there was not the leaſt appearance of any inhabitants, they found a very convenient place, which promiſed an ample ſupply of both wood and water: parties were accordingly diſpatched the ſucceeding day to cut down wood and fill water, while the captains repaired in the King George's whale-boat to the Ruſſian factory, to pick up what intelligence they could reſpecting the furs and other ſubjects for enquiry.

They completed their watering, as the place was ſo very convenient, on the 21ſt: they then proceeded to cut wood, and at intervals recreated themſelves with walking on ſhore.

The people on board the Queen frequently attempted to catch fiſh with a hook and line, but were very unſucceſsful. Captain Portlock having had a ſeine on board, procured large quantities of fine ſalmon, which were divided with the Queen. The weather was now very unſettled, and the wind variable.

This country is exceedingly mountainous: the diſtant hills, which are remarkably high, are covered all over with ſnow; thoſe ſloping down neareſt the ſhore are covered with pines, intermixed with birch, and ſeveral other trees and ſhrubs. It was very cold, damp, and diſagreeable, and the whole place appeared barren and dreary. As there were ſome huts diſcovered, which appeared but lately deſerted, it was naturally ſuppoſed that the inhabitants were frightened away by the Ruſſians. There were about a dozen bears ſeen, but they kept at ſuch a diſtance that none of them could be ſhot.

Every thing being completed on the 25th, the veſſels were prepared for ſea; previous to which the captains went to look into a bay, ſituated to the eaſtward of the north point of the harbour: this was found to be a very good one. There were ſoundings in eight, twelve, and fourteen fathom water, over a bottom of fine black ſand. There were alſo diſcovered two veins of kennel coal, which being tried was found to burn exceeding well. On this account the place of preſent anchorage acquired the appellation of Coal Harbour.

On the 26th, early in the morning, they weighed anchor, and ſtood out for the main river; the captains being aſſured of meeting with furs, if they could find inhabitants, and there being no doubt but that there were ſome northward. The wind now came to the northward and weſtward: as the Queen was northward of the King, ſhe was able to lie out, which the King could not accompliſh. When ſhe got clear out, Captain Portlock made her a ſignal to anchor; which ſhe obeyed. At noon the weather grew moderate; yet, on account of the ſhifting of the winds, and the uncertainty of the tide, it was with the greateſt difficulty this veſſel joined the Queen: they were carried very rapidly by the tide to the N. E. into a deep opening, which is formed by the land to the N. E. of Point Bede and Anchor Point. Towards evening on the 27th, they came-to, with the ſtream anchor, in 20 fathom water, over a rocky bottom.

Anchor Point bearing N. 33 deg. E. 5 miles diſtant.
Volcano Mount, N. 86 deg. weſt.
N. Land in ſight on the weſtern ſhore, N. 24 deg. W.
A ſeeming opening on the W. ſide, N. 63 deg. W.

Mount Volcano now vomited a prodigious deal of ſmoke; but there was not the leaſt appearance of any fiery eruption, and notwithſtanding the adjacent country ſeemed very pleaſant, there were no ſigns of the coaſt being inhabited on either ſide the river. This ſeemed to corroborate the ſuppoſition that the Ruſſians, who were in Coal Harbour, had quarrelled with and diſperſed the natives.

About three o'clock in the afternoon of the 28th they anchored in eleven fathom water, over a ſandy bottom. As the land on the weſtern ſide near the ſhore was to all appearance very pleaſant, Captain Portlock thinking it moſt probable that it was inhabited, determined to ſtand over and look for anchorage. They had ſoundings from 20 to 25 fathom of water, over a rocky bottom: at ſix o'clock they had 13 fathom over a ſhingly bottom, where they came-to with the beſt bower.

As ſoon as they had anchored, one canoe, with only one man, came along-ſide the Queen: he had nothing to diſpoſe of but a little dried ſalmon, which he gave for a few beads. It was ſuſpected that this man came on purpoſe to learn their intentions, as he ſeemed very curious; however, when he underſtood

ſtood that they were inclined to trade peaceably, and was likewiſe ſhewn the articles which they had to barter with, he ſeemed very happy on the occaſion, and promiſed that the people ſhould bring plenty of furs by the next day's ſun. Accordingly, two large canoes, with twenty perſons each, accompanied with ſeveral ſmall ones, that had only one or two in each, came early the next morning. On their approaching, they joined in a ſong, holding up green plants, and extending their arms, as a ſign of peace. Several of theſe Indians were painted in a very diſguſting manner; their noſes, ears, and lips, (which were cut) were adorned with ſmall blue beeds or teeth. Theſe people traded in a very quiet, honeſt manner; they brought about 20 ſea-otter ſkins, and a few cloaks made of the earleſs marmot, and very neatly ſewed together. They ſeemed very deſirous for the Engliſh to land. Captain Portlock requeſted one of them, who ſeemed a chief, to come on board: at firſt he heſitated, but at laſt promiſed he would, if the captain would ſend one of his men as an hoſtage into his canoe. While he was making this condition, one of his people ventured on board without any entreaty; preſently after the chief himſelf, with ſeveral others, who followed his example. Captain Portlock, however, agreeable to the chief's requeſt, and to convince them all that they were perfectly ſafe, ſent one of his people into their boat; and as the natives were particularly kind and familiar, he reſolved on keeping this ſituation for a few days.

On the 30th they had ſeveral canoes along-ſide them, from whom they purchaſed ſome very good ſea-otter ſkins, marmot cloaks, racoons, foxes, bears, &c. they alſo bargained for ſome excellent freſh ſalmon: thus they carried on a very briſk trade, the Indians ſtill behaving in the moſt quiet and peaceable manner: however, when an opportunity offered, they committed many little thefts; ſome of them, who were on board the King George on the 3d of Auguſt, ſtole a hook from a block-ſtrap, and a grinding-ſtone handle, which being iron, were irreſiſtible temptations. Captain Portlock, however, took no notice of thoſe ſmall depredations, but gave orders to his men to be very vigilant, and prevent any future loſſes.

An elderly chief paid Capt. Dixon a viſit on board his veſſel, and informed him that they and the Ruſſians had a battle, in which the latter were worſted. He told the captain, that from the difference in their dreſs, he knew his men belonged to another nation, and for that reaſon they were by no means inclined to quarrel with them. This chief was accompanied by ſeveral other Indians, who intimated that all their furs were gone; but that they would ſhortly ſend to the adjacent iſlands for more. The occaſion of this ſcarcity was no doubt owing to the Ruſſians, who drained them previous to their altercation. It was not known how the quarrel between the natives and Ruſſians originated; but it was conjectured that the former had offended their viſiters, by committing ſome depredations.

Captain Portlock reſolved upon taking the firſt opportunity of quitting Cook's River, and proceed to Prince William's Sound, where he was in hopes of meeting with plenty of furs.

There were ſtrong breezes from the S. S. W. which were attended with much rain: the weather continued thus till noon on the 7th, when it became more moderate. They were then viſited by a few canoes, who ſupplied the ſhips with a large quantity of ſalmon. In the afternoon Captain Portlock went on board the Queen, and adviſed Captain Dixon to weigh anchor the next morning. They accordingly weighed, and were making ſail; when Capt. Portlock diſpatched his third mate, Mr. Hayward, with a meſſage, that as the weather was unfavourable, they had better keep their ſituation ſtill. Upon this they moored ſhip again, with their beſt bower.

This day (the 8th) they were viſited by ſeveral Indians; but nothing of any conſequence occurred.

As the weather became more moderate on the 9th, they prepared for ſailing with the firſt fair wind. Accordingly, at three o'clock the next morning they began to unmoor, as there was now a light breeze from the N. N. E. On account of a very rapid tide ſetting to the S. W. and the wind inclined to the ſouthward, they were obliged to anchor in 11 fathom water, over a bottom of fine dark and rather muddy ſand. The Queen came-to at the ſame time, about half a mile to the weſtward of the King. There was a dry ſhoal, bearing S. W. right in the direction of the tide's courſe; to avoid this was Captain Portlock's chief motive for anchoring: at low-water it was dry for about a mile and a half, extending from N. E. to S. W. The whale-boat being diſpatched to ſound all around, the land weſtward of this ſhoal was found very high, and covered in ſeveral places with ſnow. There were alſo ſome rocks ſeen; ſo that, upon the whole, it is more dangerous to navigate this river than has been hitherto imagined.

One of the natives having rendered himſelf particularly uſeful during their ſtay in the bay, by procuring ſeveral furs, acquired the appellation of *Factor*. This man with ſome others came off in their canoes, from a town near the ſouth point of Trading Bay, and paid Captain Portlock another viſit. At preſent they had nothing but a few ſalmon to diſpoſe of: but the factor's chief motive for ſeeing the captain, was to ſolicit his aſſiſtance againſt the Ruſſians. He urged his requeſt in the moſt perſuaſive manner, but the captain expatiating upon the neceſſity of his immediate departure, did not comply. This diſappointment was not a little mortifying: however, to divert the factor from his concern, the captain gave him ſeveral preſents, particularly a horſeman's cap, which he put on with great exultation, and was both envied and extolled by all his gazing countrymen. A few trifles were likewiſe given to the other Indians, by Captain Portlock, in order to make amends for his non-compliance.

At five o'clock in the morning of the 11th, they weighed anchor, and kept ſtanding down the river. At eight o'clock they perceived two Ruſſian boats, which at a diſtance were ſuppoſed to be ſome of the natives' canoes: there were eighteen men in each boat, ſteering for the iſland to the ſouthward. It ſeems to be their plan to ſubjugate the poor Indians, and then exact as great a quantity of ſkins as they can get by way of tribute. However, as the natives are in ſo many parties, and the adjacent iſlands ſo numerous, this ſtratagem muſt certainly be dangerous in the end.

It was remarkably foggy from the 17th to the 19th. On the 17th the extremes of Montague bore N. 45 deg. E. and N. 9 deg. E. they were then three miles and a half from the neareſt land. On the 19th Montague Iſland was ſeen about nine o'clock, the N. E. point bearing N. 39 deg. E. about four leagues diſtant.

Being faſt towards ſome ſmall iſlands and rocks, they were obliged to tack, and ſtand to the S. S. E. yet though they had a three knot breeze, and carried all the ſail they poſſibly could for about three hours, it was with the greateſt difficulty they could keep clear of the rocks. The captain would have anchored, but deemed 84 fathoms water, which they then had, too great a depth. Notwithſtanding the boats were a-head to tow the ſhip, they could not poſſibly make the entrance, though they had every expectation before of getting into the paſſage. The wind was very unfavourable, and they plied conſtantly with but little advantage: the weather was continually thick and hazy: thus they kept beating about the coaſt till the 23d of September, without being able to get into any harbour.

Though the captains experienced much diſagreeable and ſtormy weather during their ſtay in Cook's River, yet it was their opinion, that the climate is not in general ſo ſevere as it is ſuppoſed to be, for notwithſtanding the ſmart breezes they met with, the air was mild and temperate. Cook's River produces native ſulphur, ginſeng, ſnake-root, black-lead, coal, and very fine ſalmon; there were ſome berries of ſeveral ſorts, particularly black-berries, equal to thoſe in England, which the natives frequently brought.

The inhabitants ſeem not to have fixed on any particular ſpot for their reſidence, but are ſcattered about here and there, as beſt ſuits their convenience or inclination. 'Tis moſt probable they are divided into clans or tribes, as in every large canoe there was at leaſt one perſon of ſuperior authority to the reſt, who not only directed their traffic, but kept them in a proper degree of ſubordination. In their manners they ſeemed harmleſs and inoffenſive; but this might probably be occaſioned by the different treatment they met with now, to what the Ruſſians had uſed them to. Their weapons are bows and arrows, and ſpears; theſe are very uſeful in hunting, as well as fighting; the fleſh of the various beaſts they kill ſerving them for food, as their ſkins do for cloathing. One would reaſonably ſuppoſe that the ſkins of large beaſts, as bears, wolves, &c. would be held in the greateſt eſtimation as cloaths by theſe people: this however is not the caſe, the greater part wearing cloaks made of marmot-ſkins, very neatly ſewed together, one cloak containing perhaps more than one hundred ſkins: it is moſt likely that their women's time is principally taken up in employments like theſe. Beſides the ſea-otter, here are bears, wolves, foxes, racoons, marmots, or field-mice, muſquaſh, ermine, &c. &c. but the marmot and fox ſeem to be in the greateſt plenty. The trade theſe people are fondeſt of for their ſkins, is toes, and light blue beads, ſcarcely any other ſort (though they had their choice of a very great variety) being taken the leaſt notice of.

In their perſons, theſe people are of a middle ſize, and well proportioned; their features appear regular, but their faces are ſo bedaubed with dirt and filth, that it is impoſſible to ſay what ſort of complexion they have. That perſon ſeems to be reckoned the greateſt beau amongſt them, whoſe face is one entire piece of ſmut and greaſe, and his hair well daubed with the ſame compoſition. It has been already obſerved, that their noſes and ears are ornamented with beads, or teeth, if they cannot procure any thing elſe: that they have likewiſe a long ſlit cut in the under lip, parallel with the mouth, which is ornamented much in the ſame manner with the noſe and ears; this it was diſcovered was always in proportion to the perſon's wealth. The Queen's company ſaw only one woman, and the people with her behaved with great civility, and attended her with great reſpect: her face, contrary to the general cuſtom, was tolerably clean, and her complexion and features far from diſagreeable: indeed there are much worſe-looking women in England. The King's crew ſaw three. Their ſmall canoes are ſo conſtructed, as to hold but one, or at moſt two perſons; and both theſe and the large ones are covered with ſkins.

CHAPTER IV.

Captains determined to try for the Entrance by Cape Hinchinbrooke—Breezes, Weather, &c.—Capt. Portlock ill—His conſequent Intentions—Viſited by Capt. Dixon—The Queen Charlotte takes the lead—Mount Fairweather ſeen—They change their Courſe—Make for Croſs Sound—Diſappointed—A Miſtake—Allowance of Water by Captain Portlock—Cape Edgecombe ſeen—Expectation of making the Bay of Iſlands—Finding a good Port—Attempt fruitleſs—A Ledge of Rocks perceived—The Reef cleared—Reſolved to ſteer for King George's Sound—An Iſland diſcovered—Another—Split Rock—Whale-boat ſent to ſound—Signal for her to return—Off King George's Sound—A Canoe with two Indians—Preſents made them—Few Fiſh bought—Beating off and on—A violent Hurricane—Remarkable Claps of Thunder—Uncommon Flaſhes of Lightning—Veſſels labour exceedingly—The Meteors called Compaſants flying about—The Queen Charlotte in Danger of the Breakers—Out of Danger—No Probability of getting into the Sound—Captain Portlock's Reſolution—Communicates his Intention to Captain Dixon—They give up George's Sound, and bear away for Sandwich Iſlands—King George obliged to cloſe-reef her Top-ſails—Maintop-ſail ſplit—Another bent, &c.—A fiery Meteor playing about the Queen—Sailors alarmed—Owhyhee's high Mountains ſeen—Three large Sharks caught—Several Canoes ſeen—Prevented from reaching the Veſſel—Natives hold up Signals of Peace—Whale-boat ſent out—Meeting with the Indians—Trade carried on—Dexterity in Thieving—Friendly Departure—Birds, &c. ſeen—Return of the Boat—Mr. Macleod's Account—Deſcription of the Iſland, &c.—Captain Portlock conſults Captain Dixon—Their Determination—A Canoe in Danger—The Indians ſaved—Their Gratitude—Whahoo ſeen—Anchorage in King George's Bay.

THE Captains finding it impracticable to get into Prince William's Sound by the S. W. paſſage, being at preſent too far to the eaſtward, were determined to try for the entrance by Cape Hinchinbrooke, as the weather was now moderate, and there was a favourable breeze.

There were freſh north-eaſterly breezes, with ſqually weather, from the 29th of Auguſt to the 3d of September. On the 4th, Captain Portlock, finding himſelf very ill, diſpatched the whale-boat for Capt. Dixon, intending that if his indiſpoſition continued, and he was thereby prevented from keeping the deck, the Queen Charlotte ſhould take the lead, and make for Croſs Sound; from thence to Cape Edgecombe, and afterwards to King George's Sound, where it was previouſly determined to winter, and build during their ſtay a ſhalop of about 60 or 70 tons burthen. Capt. Dixon immediately viſited Captain Portlock, and promiſed he would faithfully follow whatever directions he might be pleaſed to give.

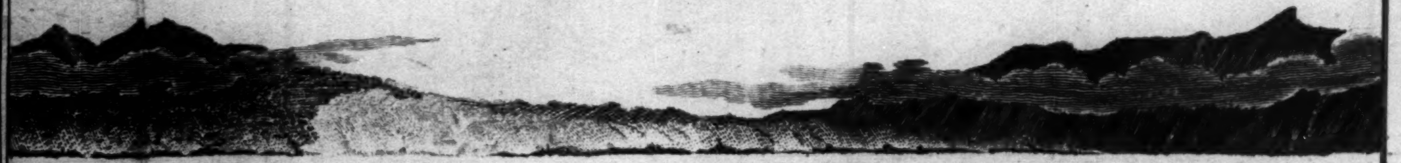
On the 9th Captain Portlock was ſo ill, as not to be able to keep the deck; accordingly the Queen took the lead. Mount Fairweather was ſeen in the forenoon, bearing E. N. E. As the wind was E. S. E. they changed their courſe to N. E. in order to make Croſs Sound; but a meſſage came from Capt. Dixon, to acquaint Captain Portlock, that their expectations of making Croſs Sound were baffled, there being no appearance of a port in this ſituation, agreeable to that which is laid down in Capt. Cook's chart, for it ſeems Capt. Cook miſtook a deep valley with low land in it for an opening in the land. Accordingly they tacked, and ſtood to the ſouthward. They ſaw land right ahead, at 11 o'clock in the forenoon; which at two o'clock bore from N. W. to E. by S. about ſix miles diſtance.

On account of the long continuance of bad weather, and the precariouſneſs of making a port on the coaſt, Captain Portlock deemed it expedient on the 11th to put the ſhip's company to an allowance of water, two quarts each per day.

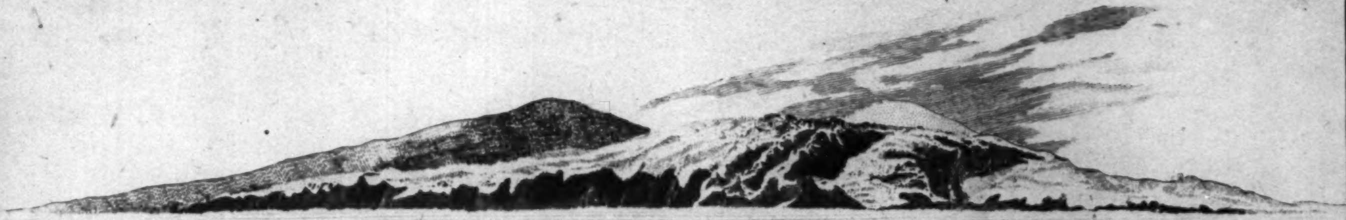
On the 13th they ſteered E. N. E. in order to make the land near Cape Edgecombe; and as their ſails and rigging were very much damaged with the heavy gales, &c. they were the more eagerly bent upon making this harbour.

BRITISH MUSEUM 7 FE 60

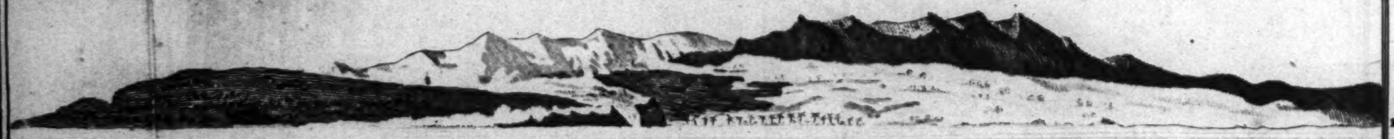
London Published by Alex.r Hogg at the Kings Arms No. 10 Paternoster Row.



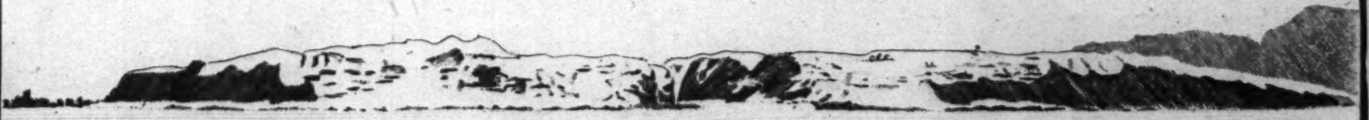
View of the N.E. part of MOWEE when the Isthmus bears W.S.W. 4 miles off Shore.



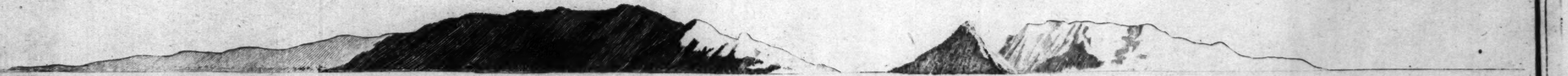
View of the S.E. ſide of OWHYEE when the East Point bears N b W. 4 lea.s distant.



View from the ⚓ at ATOOI.

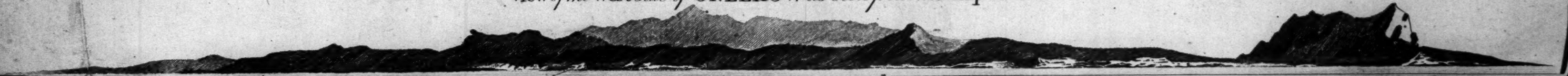


View from the ⚓ at WOAHOO.



View of the Island ATOOI when the Peaked Hill bears N.14.W. 13 leagues distant.

View of the West side of ONEEHOW as seen from the Ship at ⚓.



On the 14th there was land ſeen, bearing from E. by N. to N. W. about 14 miles diſtance. About noon Cape Edgecombe bore S. 60 deg. E. about ten miles diſtance.

They kept ſteering to the weſtward, in expectation of finding the Bay of Iſlands, where they had great hopes of making a good port; but even this attempt was fruitleſs, for when they had got within two leagues of the land they could not ſee the leaſt appearance of an harbour, or even a ſafe bay. A ledge of rocks was perceived northward of the veſſels, ſtretching ſome diſtance from the ſhore: as they were falling in with theſe very faſt, through the rapidity of the current, Capt. Dixon found it neceſſary to haul off ſhore to the weſtward, and the wind backing a little to the ſouthward, they were enabled to clear the reef.

The weather ſtill continued exceedingly bad and tempeſtuous, though at intervals ſomewhat moderate: they plied with variable winds, but finding no likelihood of meeting with a harbour near Cape Edgecombe, and as the ſeaſon was now ſlipping away very faſt, they declined making any further attempts for the Bay of Iſlands, and reſolved to ſteer for King George's Sound: notwithſtanding, they intended to keep in with the coaſt, that if any harbour was accidentally met with, the opportunity might not be loſt.

On the 18th they were well in with the land, when they were convinced that there was no harbour, nor was there the leaſt appearance of the place being inhabited. The wind continued favourable, and the weather became moderate.

On the 21ſt an iſland was diſcovered, bearing N. E. by E. half E. about ſix leagues diſtant. In latitude 50 deg. 47 min. and in longitude 129 deg. 28 min. another was ſeen in the afternoon, which bore N. 28 deg. W. about five leagues diſtant; alſo another N. 45 deg. E. about 10 leagues ditto. A large ſhark was now along-ſide the Queen.

On the 22d they ſtood to the eaſtward, with a freſh breeze from the N. W. At ſome diſtance to the weſtward of the Point there is a rock, which ſeemed to be joined by a low reef to the coaſt: this was called Split Rock. The eaſternmoſt point of land bore N. N. E. and from that to Woody Point the coaſt forms a kind of bay, covered with pines, ſome of which looked very beautiful: the land next the ſea was low, and tolerably level. On approaching the ſhore, Capt. Portlock diſpatched the whale-boat to ſound; but at half paſt two, as there was no appearance of ſhelter, he made a ſignal for her to return. They were now about three miles from ſhore, in 34 fathoms, over a foul bottom.

On the 23d they were off King George's Sound. They met a canoe about two o'clock, coming off from ſhore, with two Indians, who could not be perſuaded to enter the ſhip. Capt. Portlock made them a few preſents, and bought ſome fiſh of them. They then made for that part of the coaſt which lies between Woody Point and King George's Sound. At five o'clock the north point of the entrance into King George's Sound bore N. 73 deg. E. the breakers that lie off that point E. half N. about three leagues diſtant: the eaſternmoſt land in ſight, S. 73 deg. E. about nine leagues diſtant, and the weſternmoſt land W. by N. half N. 13 leagues diſtant.

They were now very anxious to make this harbour, and perſiſted with great eagerneſs and aſſiduity: the 24th and the 25th they ſtill kept beating off and on. On the 26th about three o'clock in the morning, the wind ſhifted to the S. E. and there was a moſt violent hurricane. The claps of thunder were remarkably loud, and the flaſhes of lightning ſo uncommonly fierce, that between every interval, the people on deck were blinded for a conſiderable time, every flaſh leaving a ſtrong ſulphurous ſtench behind; this brought on a very heavy ſea, which occaſioned the veſſels to ſtrain and labour exceedingly. The meteors called by ſailors compaſants, were at each maſt-head, and at every yard-arm. Theſe gave a light at leaſt equal to the ſame number of lights hung aloft: they were likewiſe flying about on all parts of the rigging. In about three hours the ſtorm abated, but there was ſtill a very heavy ſea, and ſome light baffling winds, with thick hazy weather, which prevented them from ſtanding in for the ſhore. About ten o'clock the land near the entrance into King George's Sound was viſible, bearing from N. W. to E. about nine miles diſtant.

There were ſtill variable winds, rain, and intervening calms, with a heavy ſwell ſetting right in ſhore, which rendered it neceſſary to keep from land as much as poſſible, particularly as there runs a reef of breakers for two miles to the northward from the point of the harbour, and about two miles from ſhore.

On the 27th a freſh gale ſprung up at S. E. by E. attended with thick rainy weather. The King George now ſtood to the N. E. by E. the Queen ſtood directly for the harbour and made ſail, but there being a heavy ſwell from the ſouthward, they were ſet unawares on the breakers, which rendered their ſituation ſomewhat alarming. However they were out of danger about eleven o'clock. The King George being to the ſouthward of the Queen, Captain Portlock felt no apprehenſions on his own account.

The next day there being the ſame heavy ſwell to encounter, it was impoſſible to make the harbour, and Captain Portlock ſeeing no probability of getting into the ſound this ſeaſon, was determined, particularly as his men were very much exhauſted for want of recreation, and the ſails and rigging exceedingly damaged, to leave the coaſt and ſtand immediately for Sandwich Iſlands. Accordingly about ſeven o'clock, he hailed the Queen Charlotte, and communicated his determination to Captain Dixon: at the ſame time directing him to ſteer S. S. W. or S. by W. if the wind permitted. The harbour now bore E. N. E. about ſeven leagues diſtant.

On the 29th they were enabled by a freſh breeze which ſprung up from the weſtward, to follow Captain Portlock's directions. They proceeded towards Sandwich Iſlands for ſeveral days, without meeting any thing worthy of notice, during which, the winds were variable.

On the 9th of November the wind blew very freſh and in ſqualls from the S. E. there was much rain, lightning, &c. they were obliged in the King George to cloſe-reef their top-ſails, but before it was accompliſhed, the main-top-ſail was ſplit: another was immediately bent and cloſe-reefed; after this, they had variable winds and unſettled weather.

On the 11th there was a kind of fiery meteor ſeen playing about the Queen Charlotte, which did not a little alarm the ſailors, who judged it an ill omen.

On the 14th the high mountain on the Iſland of Owhyhee was ſeen with ſome patches of ſnow on its top, bearing W. S. W. half W. about 30 leagues diſtant. This day the Queen Charlotte caught three large ſharks.

On the 17th as they ran along the coaſt, ſeveral canoes were ſeen, who were diſcouraged from their attempt to approach the veſſel, on account of the heavy ſea and ſmart gales.

They now approached the north point of the iſland, and in rounding the point, ſounded, and had 16 fathoms water, over a bottom of white ſand and beds of coral rock, but there was no ſhelter for ſhips to anchor under; nor was it ſafe, on account of a heavy ſwell proceeding from ſome ſteep black rocks, againſt which the ſurf beats with great vehemence.

By means of a gentle breeze, they ran along very near the ſhore, where a number of natives of both ſexes had aſſembled, holding up ſlips of white cloth, as a token of amity and peace. Captain Portlock expecting to find good ſhelter in a bay ſituated on the weſt ſide of the iſland, ſent his firſt mate Mr. Macleod in the whale-boat to examine the bay; meanwhile the ſhips lay-to, in order to trade with the natives: by this means they had an opportunity of obtaining the different produce of the iſland, ſuch as hogs, bread-fruit, plantains, cocoa-nuts, taro, wild geeſe, fowls, and a great quantity of excellent ſalt, for which they gave nails, toes, and other trifles: the trade which they carried on was ſo briſk, that within a few hours they had large quantities of every thing.

During the whole day, the natives traded in a very honeſt, fair manner; but thoſe who attended their merchants could not refrain from thieving: their natural propenſity for picking and ſtealing had taught them much art and ſagacity. One of them, with peculiar dexterity, ſtole a boat-hook out of a boat along-ſide, though at the ſame time there was a keeper in her: another fellow alſo crept up the rudder-chains, and ſtole the azimuth compaſs out of one of the cabin-windows, and got clear off, notwithſtanding there was a perſon appointed to watch them over the ſtern. There were ſeveral other articles likewiſe pilfered; indeed it was impoſſible for the captains' men to prevent it, as there were very near, if not more, than 250 canoes about the veſſel, which certainly contained upwards of a thouſand people.

At five in the afternoon Mr. Macleod returned. He reported that there was no ſafe anchorage in the bay; and that there was not only a bad bottom of coral and ſand, but that the harbour was alſo entirely expoſed to ſouth-weſterly winds. This being the caſe, their intention of anchoring at Owhyhee was laid aſide: they determined, however, to keep near this point a day or two, if the wind would permit, in order to lay in a good ſtore of hogs, which were in great abundance here.

This part of the iſland affords but few cocoa-nuts or plantains: thoſe vegetables which are in greateſt plenty are, ſweet potatoes, bread-fruit, &c. Here and there are little ſpots of white ſandy beach, where the natives generally keep their canoes. The adjacent country is very pleaſant, and there appeared to be ſeveral villages, which were ſituated among fine groves of cocoa-nut trees. Among the various curioſities brought by the natives to ſell, was a kind of baſkets, about 18 inches high, and five or ſix ditto in diameter, of a circular form, and very neatly manufactured: the wicker-work of which they were made was frequently variegated with twigs of a red colour, and had a good effect in appearance. Theſe baſkets were quite new to the Engliſh, as they never met with any of them before.

During the 18th they lay-to and plied occaſionally, as was moſt convenient, during their trading buſineſs. The men were very buſy in killing and ſalting hogs for ſea-ſtore. There were light, variable airs, ſometimes calm, attended with ſtrong lightning to the weſtward.

On the 19th, in the forenoon, Captain Portlock went in his whale-boat on board the Queen Charlotte, in order to conſult Capt. Dixon reſpecting the beſt manner of proceeding. This being a very fine promiſing day, Capt. Portlock propoſed making his viſit longer than uſual. As their veſſels were very light, on account of their water being nearly expended, and their rigging fore and aft very much damaged, they thought it neceſſary to quit their preſent ſituation as ſoon as poſſible, and were determined to proceed for King George's Bay, Whoahoo, where they were in hopes of lying well ſheltered, and having an opportunity of repairing their hulls and rigging.

On account of a ſtrong breeze ſpringing up from the S. W. Capt. Portlock returned to his own veſſel much ſooner than he intended: they then bore away to the northward, hoping to paſs to the eaſtward, and run down for Whoahoo. Some few canoes, which had been along-ſide the veſſel, now paddled for ſhore, on account of the ſmartneſs of the gale. The extremes of Mowee bore N. by W. half W. and W. by N. about four leagues diſtant.

When they were within two leagues of Mowee, they ſaw a canoe to the S. W. making after them. She had a ſmall mat up for a ſail, and was paddling very hard. Seeing her diſtreſs, the King brought-to, and picked her up. There were four men in this canoe, and a great quantity of potatoes, plantains, &c. They underſtood that theſe men were natives of Mowee, who on perceiving the veſſels ſtanding in for the eaſt part of it, in hopes of bringing their little cargo to a good market, had accordingly put off therewith; but meeting with foul weather, and a ſtrong contrary wind, after they bore away from the iſland, they could not poſſibly return to ſhore, and therefore ſet their little ſail, and uſed every effort in their power to reach the King. Their canoe, when they came along-ſide, was almoſt full of water, and the men ſo exhauſted with fatigue, that the ſailors were obliged to help them up the veſſel's ſide. Their things were got ſafe into the ſhip; their canoe hauled in upon deck, and every exertion uſed in order to recover them, which fortunately had the deſired effect. Theſe poor men were exceedingly grateful, for the favours and attention which they experienced.

In the evening the wind, which blew S. W. encreaſed to a ſtrong gale, which was attended with much thunder, lightning, and rain. Accordingly, they lay-to during the night, under a cloſe-reefed maintop-ſail, wearing occaſionally, and taking every method to guard againſt any miſchief they might receive from ſudden ſtorms.

On the 20th the weather was more moderate; the wind ſtill the ſame. About noon the breeze leſſened, and there was a calm. They were now joined by ſeveral canoes; but what they brought to ſell was very trifling. They had light, baffling winds, with alternate calms; on which account they kept ſtanding along ſhore, in order to purchaſe whatever refreſhments were brought to them by the natives: but the weather being very unſettled, no canoes ventured near them till about noon on the 22d: they were then viſited by a number of both large and ſmall ones, from Mowee and Morotoi; of whom various articles were purchaſed, for the ſhip's uſe. At this time the extremes of Mowee bore from S. W. to S. E. by E. four leagues diſtant; and the extremes of Morotoi W. half S. and W. S. W. half S. five leagues. Theſe people, who came from Mowee and Morotoi, ſeemed to admire the Engliſh veſſels more than any of the other inhabitants. It is probable, therefore, that theſe people were unacquainted with Engliſh ſhips.

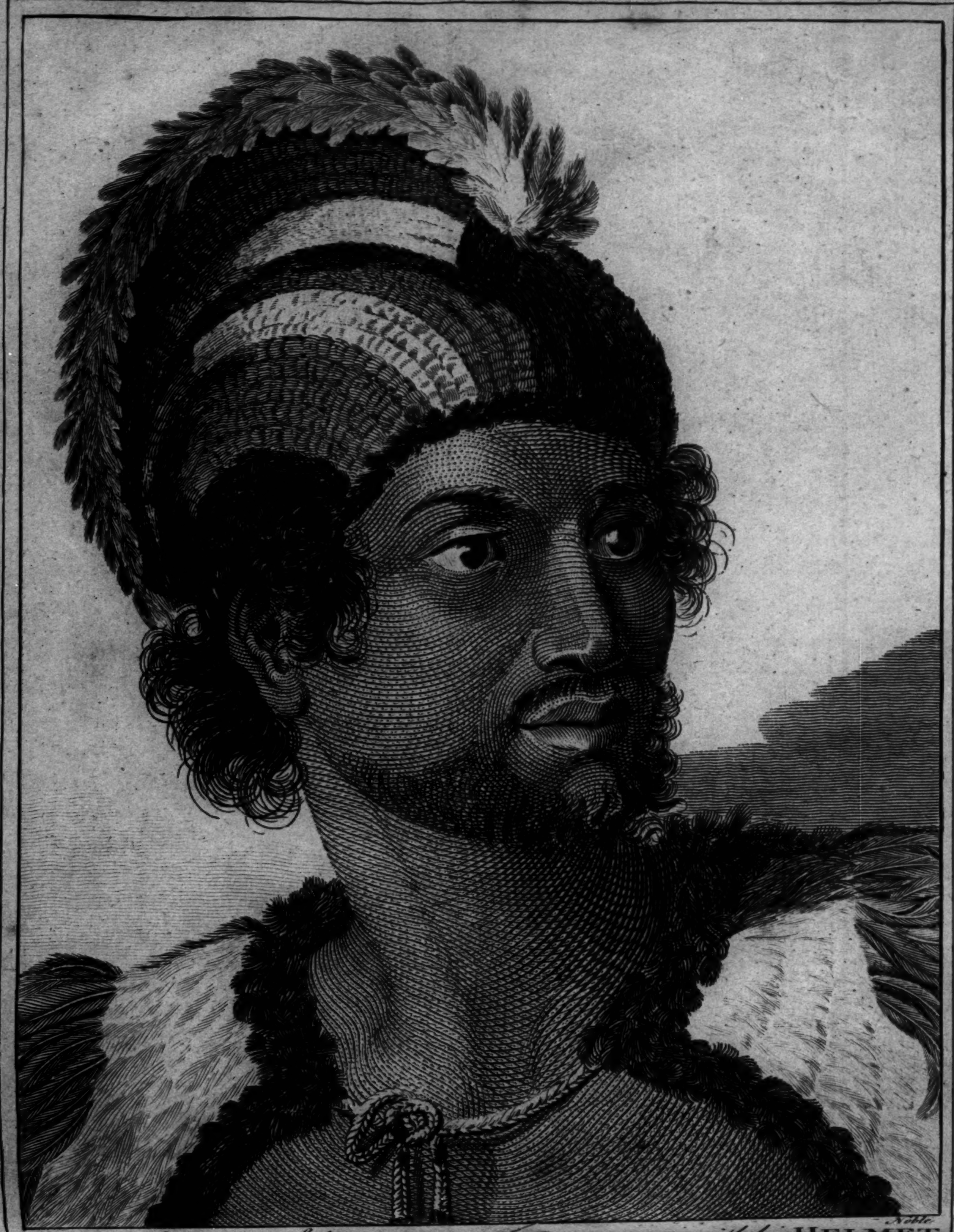
On the 23d, the Indians who had been ſaved by the King now determined on going to ſhore, as the weather was clear and pleaſant: Captain Portlock endeavoured to prevail upon them to remain on board till the next day, as he wiſhed to have an opportunity of ſtanding cloſe in ſhore, when at the ſame time they might have departed with greater ſafety: however they made light of the diſtance to ſhore, though it was five leagues, and were very anxious on taking the preſent opportunity. The Engliſh, accordingly, loaded them with preſents before their departure, ſo that theſe poor fellows had not much occaſion to regret their late misfortune.

Nov. 24th. The wind ſtill kept to the ſouthward, and the weather remained unſettled. They wore, and ſtood to the S. S. W.

For the greateſt part of the next day the winds were light and variable. In the evening a freſh breeze ſprung up from the ſouthward, which continued with very little alteration during the 26th and 27th: indeed the wind among theſe iſlands ſeemed never to blow from one point for any duration; nor could any dependance be placed at this

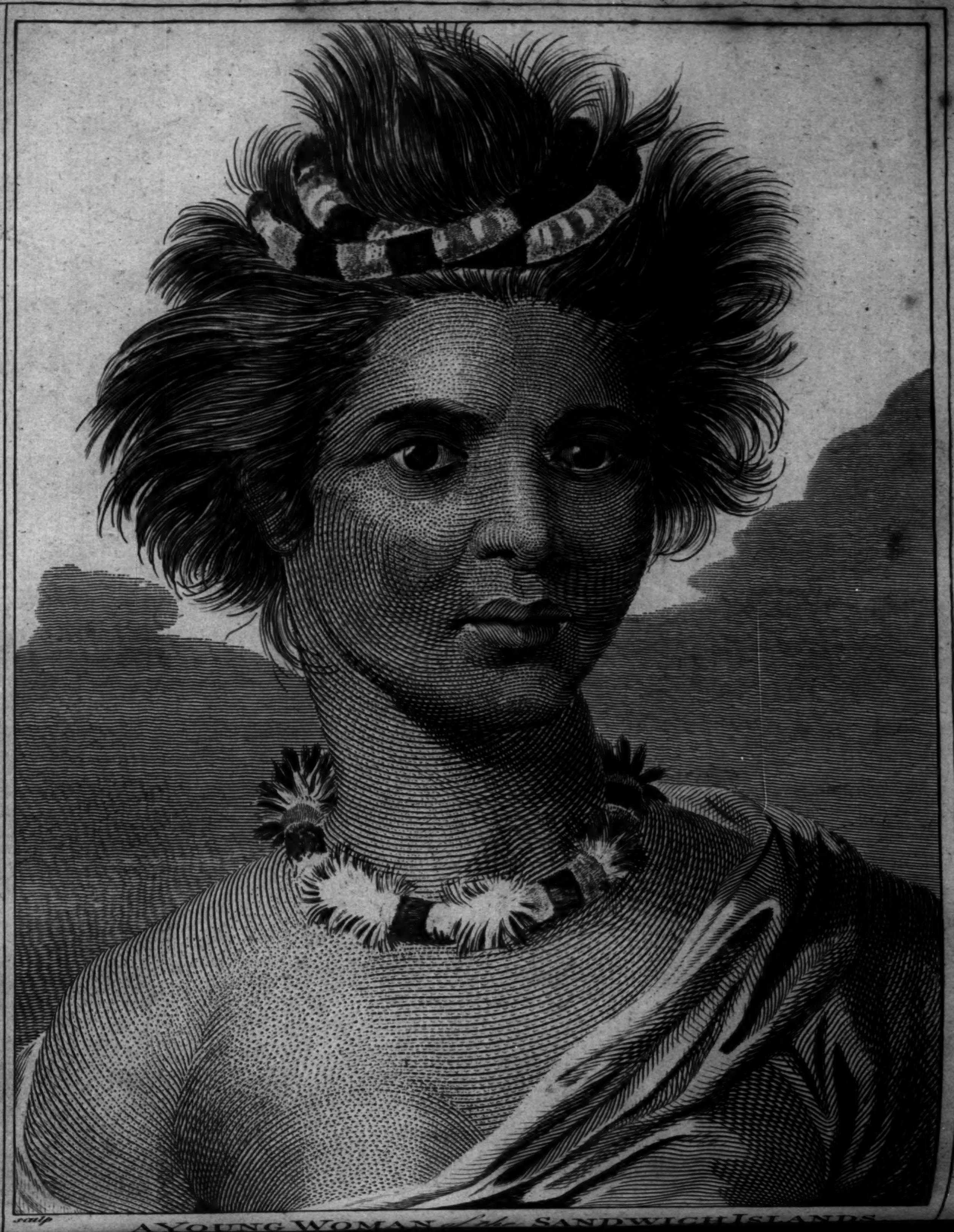
BRITISH MUSEUM

London Published by Alex.r Hogg at the Kings Arms N.o 16 Paternoster Row.



Noble

Portrait of A MAN of the SANDWICH ISLANDS with his HELMET



sculp

A YOUNG WOMAN of the SANDWICH ISLANDS

time of the year upon a ſteady trade-wind, ſometimes they had eaſterly winds, then ſoutherly, S. W. W. N. W. and in ſhort all round the compaſs, juſt as they opened different points of land.

On the 28th they were within four miles of Morotoi, where ſeveral canoes came along-ſide, of whom were purchaſed ſome ſmall hogs, taro, potatoes, &c. In the afternoon there were ſome refreſhing ſhowers of rain, which rendered the weather more agreeable than it had been for ſome time paſt.

On the 29th, about eight o'clock in the morning, Whoahoo was ſeen; and at noon the Eaſt Hummock bore W. S. W. about eight leagues diſtant. During the afternoon they kept ſtanding along the coaſt of Morotoi.

On the 30th they bore away for Whoahoo; the weſt end of Morotoi bore S. 45 deg. E. and Whoahoo S. W. was about two leagues diſtant. At four o'clock they hauled Round Dick's Point; and at five o'clock came to anchor in King George's Bay, with the beſt bower, in 12 fathoms, over a bottom of grey ſand, intermixed with ſmall red ſpecks; and moored with the ſtream anchor, in 11 fathoms. At this time the ſhips' company were in good health, and excellent ſpirits.

CHAPTER V.

Application made to the Natives for Water—Water, Hogs, Vegetables, &c. tabooed by the King's Orders—Captain Portlock ſends a Preſent to the King, and his Friend the Prieſt—His Meſſage to the former—A Viſit from the latter—His Information—Departure—Return with the King—His Behaviour to the Engliſh—Orders—The Taboo taken off—Employments—Another Viſit from the King and Prieſt—Deſcription of the Yava Root—Information from one of the old Prieſt's Attendants—Captains' Determination in conſequence thereof—The Queen's Watering completed—The King viſits Captain Dixon—Deſcription of the King—His Nephews, &c.—The King George's Watering completed—Sharks caught, and preſented to the Engliſh—Mr. Hayward and Mr. White ſent out in the Long-boat—The Prieſt's Warning—A Viſit from the King—Captains' Caution—Behaviour before the King—Shews him the Effects of their Fire-Arms—Strange Conduct of the Prieſt—Return of the Boat—Mate's Information—Piapia and Towanooha importune Capt. Portlock to take them to Attoui—His Compliance—Further Behaviour of the Indians—The Engliſh take leave of them—Depart from Whoahoo—Anchor in Wymoa Bay—Surrounded by Canoes—Excurſion on Shore—Occurrences—Refreſhments procured—Mutual Preſents—A Viſit from the King—Deſcription of him—Piapia and Towanooha introduced to the King by the Captain—Account of ſome Chiefs—Captain Portlock goes on Shore—Ceremony of the Taboora—Remarks—Excurſions on Shore—Heavy Gale—Three Invalids left on Shore—Anchorage—The Invalids brought back on board—Anchorage in Wymoa Bay—Anecdotes relative to the Natives—King orders a Houſe to be built for Capt. Portlock—Departure from Attoui—Deſcription of the Country—Arrival at Oneehow—The King George's Anchors recovered—Curſory Obſervations—Departure from the Sandwich Iſlands.

AS ſoon as they had anchored, they ſaw a few canoes, but they had nothing material to diſpoſe of. Application was now made to them for water, on the ſame terms as before; which they would gladly have complied with, but that not only the water, but alſo hogs, vegetables, &c. were tabooed by the king's orders.

On this account Capt. Portlock deemed it adviſeable to court the king's favour. Accordingly, he ſent a preſent to the king, and another to his old acquaintance the prieſt, with a meſſage that as they wanted both water and refreſhments, his majeſty was moſt humbly ſolicited to take off the taboo, that they might have a ſupply of thoſe articles upon reaſonable terms.

On the 1ſt of December, by day-light, a few canoes came along-ſide of the veſſels, with ſome vegetables and water, (notwithſtanding the taboo) which they purchaſed as before for nails. The people of the Queen began now to overhaul their rigging fore and aft, it being very much out of order.

This day the prieſt paid a viſit to Captain Portlock: on their meeting, he handed up a ſmall pig, which is a general token of friendſhip and peace: he then informed the captain, that the king was preparing to viſit him, and that when he returned again to the ſhore, the taboo would be taken off, and they might be accommodated by the natives with every thing they wanted. For this information the captain made him a preſent; and alſo gave him another for the king, which he requeſted he would deliver to his majeſty with his own hand. The prieſt departed about ten o'clock, and returned again at eleven, accompanied with ſeveral large and ſmall canoes; a little after appeared a very large canoe, which was paddled by ſixteen ſtout men, in which was the king and all the principal chiefs. Though there was much ſtate and ceremony in his coming, yet when he embarked on board the King George he laid aſide all his dignity, and would not permit any of his attendants to follow him, till the captain had granted his permiſſion. The king had brought ſome hogs and vegetables by way of preſent, and his chiefs likewiſe a few articles. The captain, in return, gave them preſents agreeable to their fancy.

Taheeterre (which was the king's name) remained on board for ſome time; he then gave orders that the Engliſh ſhould be furniſhed with every thing they wanted. At evening he took his leave, and was followed by all the reſt of the canoes.

In conſequence of the king's orders the taboo was taken off, and the natives now brought a plentiful ſupply of water, hogs, vegetables, &c. accordingly one party of Captain Portlock's men were employed in ſalting pork, while another were repairing the rigging; the carpenters were alſo at work in decking the long-boats.

On the 3d Taheeterre paid Captain Portlock another viſit: alſo the prieſt who was conſtantly on board, and was remarkable for drinking large quantities of yava. He had generally two men with him, for the purpoſe of chewing this root for him, and they were employed ſo conſtantly that their jaws were continually tired.

The yava is a root ſomewhat reſembling liquorice in ſhape and colour, but totally different in taſte. None but the chiefs, or arees, have the king's permiſſion to uſe it. Theſe never chew it themſelves, but thus employ their ſervants to chew and adminiſter it. He firſt begins with chewing a ſufficient quantity, till it is well maſticated: then it is put into a neat wooden bowl made for the purpoſe, and a ſmall quantity of water being poured over, it is well ſqueezed, and the liquor always ſtrained through a piece of cloth. When thus completed, the ſervant gives it to his maſter, and it is drank with the greateſt reliſh. This root is of an intoxicating nature, and ſeems rather to ſtupify, than exhilarate the ſpirits: its effects are very pernicious, as was apparent in the old prieſt, who in conſequence thereof, was exceedingly debilitated, while his body was covered over with a white ſcurf, which had the appearance of a leproſy.

One of the old prieſt's attendants, who was employed in preparing the yava, informed Captain Portlock, that to the weſtward of Point Roſe, in Queen Charlotte's Bay, there was a very agreeable harbour, where veſſels could lie in great ſecurity. The captain was accordingly determined to ſend the long-boat, as ſoon as the carpenter had finiſhed it, to examine it, intending to remove the ſhips there immediately, if it anſwered this yava-chewer's deſcription. This man, whoſe proper name was Towanooha, notwithſtanding his occupation of chewing yavas, poſſeſſed conſiderable property on the iſland, and was indeed a very intelligent man: he told the captain that when the boat was ready to go, he would very gladly accompany his mate, in order to point out the place. Captain Portlock returned his thanks, and readily accepted his polite offer.

This day about noon the Queen's company had completed their water, and could have procured a great deal more, the natives ſtill bringing it with the greateſt avidity. Indeed this is not to be wondered at, if we conſider the great value they ſet on iron, and that water coſts them only the trouble of fetching from ſhore.

Beſides nails, the Engliſh found buttons very uſeful in their traffic with theſe people. To the credit of the men be it ſpoken, they looked on them as things of no value; but the females ſaw them in a very different point of view, and were exceedingly fond of wearing them round their wriſts and ancles as bracelets, calling them Booboo, and ſometimes Poreema. As gallantry is perhaps equally prevalent here, as in more civilized nations, the men frequently preferred buttons to nails (contrary to their better judgment) in their traffic. This is an inconteſtible proof, that the power of beauty is not confined within the narrow limits of our polite European circles, but has equal influence all over the world.

In the forenoon of the 4th, Taheeterre, the king, paid Captain Dixon a viſit. He came in a large double canoe, attended by two young men, who, as it was underſtood, were his nephews, and a number of other chiefs.

The king is a good-looking man, and appears about forty-five or fifty years old: he is tall, ſtraight, and well-made, but his eyes ſeem rather weak, and affected with a kind of rheum; but whether this is owing to diſeaſe, or to a temporary cold, cannot be aſcertained. Though he frequently ate with the Engliſh, he never could be perſuaded to touch either wine nor ſpirits; nor did he ever make uſe of the yava, water being always his drink. None of the chiefs had any thing ſtriking in their appearance, though it was eaſy to ſee that they were above the common rank. The king's nephews were by far the fineſt men that were ſeen at any of the iſlands: they are not brothers. Piapia, the elder, being ſon to the king of Attoui; and Myaro, the younger, ſon to a ſiſter of Teereterre. Piapia is about five feet nine inches high, ſtraight, and well proportioned: his legs and thighs very muſcular, his ſtep firm, and rather graceful; and there is a dignity in his deportment which ſhews him to be a perſon of the firſt conſequence. His countenance is free and open, but rather disfigured by the want of three foreteeth, which, as it was underſtood, were broke for the loſs of a relation, it being the cuſtom here for the arees, or chiefs, to part with a tooth at the death of a friend; his legs, thighs, arms, and various parts of his body, are tattooed in a very curious manner. Myaro is nearly as tall as his couſin, but caſt in a more delicate mould: he walks erect and ſtately, and his ſtep is very graceful and majeſtic.

Captain Dixon preſented the king with ſeveral preſents, having received from his majeſty the ſame marks of favour which he had beſtowed upon Capt. Portlock. The king alſo repeated his viſit to the King George, and in addition to his preſents, brought a quantity of very fine mullet. This day Captain Portlock's company had completed their watering. They were alſo ſupplied with fire-wood by the natives.

On the 5th four or five ſharks were caught, and preſented to the Indians, by whom they are greatly eſteemed.

The people were all buſily employed both on the 5th and 6th, with taking in wood, overhauling the rigging, killing and ſalting hogs, &c. &c.

From the 7th to the 11th there was no material occurrence, except that the old prieſt was ſtill a conſtant viſitor. During this time they had freſh gales from the N. E. and E. N. E. with frequent ſqualls and unſettled weather. The ſurf now ran ſo very high on the beach, that a few canoes, who had ventured off, were nearly overſet, and of courſe obliged to give up their deſign; two of them who had got along-ſide of the King, after they had diſpoſed of their articles, were making for ſhore, but not being able to land, were compelled to return to the ſhip, and ſtay on board for the night.

The carpenters having finiſhed the long-boat on the 12th, Captain Portlock ſent it out according to his former reſolution, with Mr. Hayward, his third mate, and Mr. White, who was Captain Dixon's third mate, to make an accurate ſurvey of the bay: Towanooha (according to his promiſe) accompanied them as pilot.

The behaviour of the prieſt became now very ſtrange and myſterious: he appeared uneaſy and reſtleſs, and upon Captain Portlock's enquiring the reaſon, intimated that the king Taheeterre was a bad man, and deſigned to do the Engliſh miſchief: he pointed to a diſtant building, where he ſaid the king and chiefs were going to make great offerings to their different gods, and if they were at all encouraged by their oracles, they would immediately attack the Engliſh; he therefore adviſed the captain, in a very friendly manner, to be upon his guard. Captain Portlock, accordingly, ordered a conſtant watch to be kept on the cables; though, at the ſame time, he doubted the information, as neither the king nor his chiefs ever betrayed the leaſt inclination to hoſtility.

The next day the king, and a number of chiefs, viſited Captain Portlock, who was well prepared for an attack, if offered; but, on the contrary, the natives behaved with their uſual familiarity and good-nature. The king, however, took notice of thoſe preparations, which were made in caſe of violence, and diſcourſed with his attendants about the fire-arms: after ſome time, he appeared deſirous to know the effects of them; and Captain Portlock judged it prudent to gratify his curioſity; accordingly he took a loaded piſtol, and killed a pig that was at ſome diſtance, to the great aſtoniſhment of the king and chiefs, who were all alarmed at the exploſion, and more ſo at the fatal wound which the pig received. The king ſtaid for about two hours on board, and then took his leave. If any attack had been meditated, there is little doubt but the impreſſion which this piſtol had evidently made upon their minds, removed all hoſtile intentions. The prieſt came on board ſoon after the king's departure, and ſtill expatiated upon the evil deſigns of Taheeterre. He then left Captain Portlock, and viſited Captain Dixon, where he repeated his former intimations.

Meſſrs. Hayward and White returned on the 15th, in the long-boat. They reported that there was no convenient anchorage in any part of the bay, and that there was from ſixty-ſix to ſeventy fathom water, cloſe in ſhore. The country, he added, was very pleaſant, and the town where (according to Towanooha's information) the king chiefly reſides, very large: it was called Whyteetee.

Not a ſingle native came near the veſſel now for two days: it was accordingly ſuſpected that they were tabooed. The ſhips' crews were buſily employed about their rigging, and getting the veſſels ready for ſea.

On the 17th the old prieſt viſited both veſſels, and appeared more than ever exaſperated with the king. He ſaid that the king and chiefs had made their offerings to their gods, and conſulted them; but that the gods were good for nothing, and they themſelves villains.

Captain Portlock was now ſtrongly ſolicited by Piapia and Towanooha to take them along with him to Attoui. The captain, knowing it was agreeable to the king, (who had lately ſignified the ſame wiſh) gave his conſent, and they immediately repaired to land, to equip themſelves for the paſſage. After this, Towanooha no longer looked upon himſelf as the prieſt's ſervant, but drank as freely of the yava root as his former maſter. Towards evening the natives were ſeen pulling to pieces their new-built houſe; and about eight o'clock there was a general conflagration on ſhore. The next day (the 18th) Captain Portlock enquired of the prieſt what the reaſon of theſe fires was? The old man told him, that the chiefs had quarrelled with their gods, and had therefore burnt them and their houſes together.

Several canoes now came to the veſſels, and brought a ſupply of various articles; but no ſatisfactory account could then be learned why the taboo was laid on, or wherefore the women were not ſuffered to come near the veſſels, with whom the ſailors had lately indulged themſelves: however, it was afterwards underſtood that one of their women had been detected in eating pork on board the King George, which being deemed among the natives a crime of the firſt magnitude, the poor wretch was offered a ſacrifice to appeaſe the wrath of their gods. The myſterious conduct of the prieſt was likewiſe accounted for by the following information, which was likewiſe the cauſe of the ſtrict taboo. The king had juſt built a houſe, as a repoſitory for all thoſe articles which his countrymen might get from the Engliſh in the courſe of their traffic. Every thing was ordered to be depoſited in this new-erected edifice; one half of which was to be appropriated to the king's own uſe. During the iſſuing of theſe orders, the bay, &c. were tabooed.

Piapia and Towanooha having now prepared themſelves for their paſſage, came on board the King George. Some ſhort time after the King and his attendants came on board, to requeſt the captain to take care of his nephew; and on his arrival at Attoui to put him under the care of Taaao, who was the king's brother. Taheeterre having taken leave of the Engliſh, and of Piapia, in the moſt cordial manner, returned to ſhore. In the afternoon every thing was ready for ſailing.

About midnight on the 17th, the Queen Charlotte's ſmall cable parted in a ſudden guſt of wind; on which they let go their beſt bower. On heaving in the cable, they found it very much hurt, which ſome ſuppoſed had been done by the foulneſs of the bottom; others that it had been previouſly cut by ſome of the natives. The next day they ſearched for their anchor, but did not find it till noon, the buoy being ſunk. They exerted their utmoſt to get it on board, and had nearly effected their purpoſe, when ſuddenly a ſquall came on and ſnapt the hawſer, which they had bent to that part of the cable, remaining to the anchor when it was almoſt at the bows. They were greatly diſcouraged by this vexatious circumſtance, and deſpaired of being ever able to recover it, as there was every appearance of tempeſtuous weather; however the next morning being very fine, they got it on board. They now found it impoſſible to keep their preſent ſituation, without damaging their cables; ſo that it was determined to leave this iſland, and ſteer for Attoui as ſoon as poſſible.

On the 19th they began to unmoor; Capt. Portlock made the ſignal to the Queen to weigh anchor, which ſhe did: at night the ſignal was made to her to anchor again, as the King's beſt bower cable had been cut by the Indians, which of courſe retarded their progreſs. The Queen accordingly ſtretched in the bay, and came-to cloſe by the King George.

On the 20th the King George being a-weigh, the Queen accordingly weighed, and made ſail, ſtanding out of the bay, with a moderate breeze at N. E.

On the 21ſt they had a ſtrong breeze from the N. E. and on the 22d were in ſight of Attoui. About three o'clock the King George anchored in 25 fathom; but as the Queen Charlotte was preparing to do the ſame, by checking the cable too ſoon, ſhe dragged it off the bank, and could not get it to catch again with a whole cable out; therefore got her head off ſhore, hove her anchor up, and made ſail. About five o'clock ſhe came-to in a very good ſituation, near three miles N. W. of the King George, in 18 fathom water, over a ſandy and partly muddy bottom. The King George lay eaſtward of Wymoa, about two miles diſtant from ſhore.

Soon after their anchorage they were viſited by a number of canoes, who were well loaded with taro, potatoes, cocoa-nuts, ſugar-cane, hogs, &c. they alſo brought a plentiful ſupply of excellent water. This iſland produces no yams, and very little bread-fruit.

On the 24th, Captain Portlock, with his two paſſengers and a ſailor, went on ſhore to Wymoa, in order to explore the place. He was received by the inhabitants in a very friendly manner, and was alſo joined by a few chiefs, by whoſe means the croud were kept at a reſpectful diſtance. When they had walked about three miles, they ſat down to ſome refreſhments: Captain Portlock was now invited to dine with Tiaana; but, anxious to find out a good bay, he declined his polite invitation; he promiſed, however, to ſee him on his return. The captain diſappointed in his ſearch for a harbour, now determined on coming back; however he and his companions being very much fatigued, they took up their lodging for the night in a very comfortable dwelling, belonging to Abbenooe, where they were well entertained.

The next day they reached the ſhore, a-breaſt of the Queen Charlotte. The captain's companions walked down to Wymoa, while he, being anxious to get on board, took a canoe, and viſited the Queen Charlotte: thence he proceeded in his whale-boat, which he found there, and got on board the King George about noon.

In the mean time the ſhips' crews had procured large quantities of proviſions, and ſeveral fine hogs. There were alſo a variety of curioſities purchaſed, viz. caps, cloaks, mats, fiſhing-lines, hooks, necklaces, bags, graſs-rope, &c.

On the 25th Captain Portlock was viſited by Tiaana, who behaved exceedingly friendly: he told him that the king, Abbenooe, and ſeveral chiefs intended ſhortly to pay him a viſit. This day the ſailor, whom Captain Portlock left on ſhore with his paſſengers, returned. Piapia and Towanooha ſtill remained among the natives for a day longer.

On the 28th Abbenooe came on board the King George, and brought two canoes, loaded with different kinds of proviſions, as a preſent for both veſſels. After ſtaying ſome time with Captain Portlock he went on board the Queen Charlotte to pay his reſpects to Captain Dixon. In the evening he returned again to the King George, where he remained for the night, and likewiſe the next day, on account of the ſqually weather. On the 30th he went on ſhore, and ſhortly after returned with Taaao, and ſeveral of the chiefs. His majeſty brought a very handſome preſent, for which the captain made an ample return.

The captain now introduced Piapia and Towanooha to the king, who were immediately taken under his protection.

The king was about forty-five years of age; he was ſtout and well made; he ſeemed poſſeſſed of more underſtanding and good-nature than any of the natives. His behaviour to the Engliſh diſplayed much friendſhip and magnanimity. As ſoon as they left Captain Portlock, they viſited Captain Dixon. His majeſty was attended by Abbenooe, who, when he had left Taaao on ſhore, returned to the King George, where he ſlept in a cot that was hung on purpoſe for him in a cabin.

The next day the king repeated his viſits, accompanied by his uncle, an elderly man, and a chief of great conſequence; his name was Nee-heow-hooa. He was the greateſt warrior that was in any of the iſlands. This veteran appeared hardy, though a cripple, and covered all over with wounds: one eye he had loſt, and the other was decaying, by reaſon of his wounds. Mr. Hoggan, at the deſire of Captain Portlock, dreſſed his wounds, and gave him ſome freſh dreſſings to apply daily. After a few hours, the king, his uncle, and their retinue, took their leave.

January 1ſt there were no canoes to be ſeen, on account of a taboora being laid on, which is a kind of tax that the king impoſes on the property of thoſe ſubjects whoſe plantations are near at hand; by which means a certain portion of their different produce is exacted. Captain Portlock was brought by Abbenooe to ſee the ceremony, which was remarkable for its great order and regularity, but more eſpecially for the good-humour and chearfulneſs of the people who were paying their contributions, which were all collected in ſeparate heaps.

As ſoon as the taboora was finiſhed, the king ordered the ſeveral heaps to be made into two parcels, which when done he preſented to Capt. Portlock, for the uſe of the veſſels, and deſired that the captain would ſend his boat for them. This being the moſt valuable preſent that was ever made, as it conſiſted of every thing the iſland produced, was accepted by the captain with much thanks and reſpect. The king retired to his reſidence, and Capt. Portlock and Abbenooe returned to the King George in the long-boat.

On the 4th the King George's crew caught an immenſe ſhark, which required much difficulty in getting on board. It was 13 feet and a half long, eight feet and a half broad, and ſix feet the liver. There were 48 young ones in her, about eight inches long; two whole turtles, weighing about 60 lb. each, ſeveral ſmall pigs, and a great quantity of bones. This fiſh was given to the natives, (by whom it was deemed a valuable preſent) but the liver was kept for oil.

On the 5th the king paid Capt. Portlock another viſit. He brought with him his eldeſt ſon, who was a fine boy, about twelve years of age: his name was Taaevee. This was intended as a farewell viſit, as the king was about leaving the iſland for a while. He left injunctions with Abbenooe to take care that the Engliſh ſhould be accommodated with every thing they wanted. The king was likewiſe attended with his uncle, who, in gratitude to the ſurgeon for the kindneſs he ſhewed him, preſented both Mr. Hoggan and the captain with a large double canoe full of hogs; nor could this noble veteran be prevailed upon to receive any thing in exchange.

Capt. Dixon imagining the iſland afforded plenty of game, (which he was very fond of) took ſeveral opportunities of going on ſhore with his gun in one of the Indian canoes, attended only by one ſervant. The owner of this canoe (who had occaſionally ſupplied the Queen Charlotte with water) was highly ſenſible of the honour which the captain had done him, and was not a little proud to think that his canoe ſhould have the preference of any of the reſt. Notwithſtanding, Capt. Dixon did not find game very plenty; he brought home a few ducks, and a kind of water-hen.

From this to the 10th, they were employed in purchaſing wood, proviſions, &c. They had ſome pleaſant weather, and light, variable winds. Capt. Portlock now made the ſignal for weighing anchor, as it was intended to make Oneehow the firſt opportunity; however, as the wind was baffling, the King George re-anchored very near the ſame ſituation.

On the 11th, about five o'clock in the morning, they weighed and made ſail, ſtanding directly for Oneehow, with a ſtrong breeze ſpringing up at E. S. E. They were in ſtrong expectations of anchoring at Oneehow by three o'clock; but the wind ſuddenly ſhifting to the weſtward, they were diſappointed in their hope.

On the 16th the King George came to anchor in Ya[illegible] Bay, with the beſt bower, in 15 fathom water, over a bottom of coarſe ſand. The Queen Charlotte did not come to anchor till the 27th, owing to her being very foul, and conſequently obliged to ply between the iſlands, making longer or ſhorter boards, as circumſtances required.

Capt. Portlock, the next day after he had anchored, went on ſhore in the whale-boat, accompanied by Abbenooe: on account of the violence of the ſurf, they were obliged to row in under the reef, and not finding a place where the boat could lie at her anchor with ſafety, they went into a canoe to go on ſhore, which was ſuddenly overſet by the ſurf, ſo that they were obliged to ſwim for land. The country appeared now very barren. Towards evening they returned on board.

Capt. Portlock permitted his crew to go on ſhore and recreate themſelves: three of them being in a very poor ſtate of health, were allowed to remain on ſhore in a comfortable houſe, which was provided on purpoſe by Abbenooe, and where they were ſupplied with every neceſſary refreſhment. The reſt returned at their appointed time.

On the 27th the three invalids returned to the King George. During their ſtay on ſhore they were treated exceedingly well by the natives.

On the 29th Captain Portlock made the ſignal for weighing anchor; it being judged proper to make Wymoa-Bay, Attoui, which they did on the 30th, and came to anchor the next day, the King with her ſmall bower, and the Queen with both, in 29 fathom, over a bottom of fine muddy black ſand.

February 1. A meſſenger was now ſent to the king by Abbenooe, to acquaint him of the veſſels' arrival.

For ſeveral days the men were variouſly employed. Two chiefs who were on board the King George, at the requeſt of the captain, diſplayed their wonderful dexterity in exerciſing their ſpears. All who were ſpectators ſhuddered at the dangers to which they expoſed themſelves, and were ſurpriſed at their expertneſs in parrying off the blows.

On the 6th it was reported to Captain Portlock by Abbenooe, that the king had given directions for a houſe to be built on the iſland for him, in whatever ſituation was moſt agreeable: the captain for ſome time declined accepting the favour; but, being earneſtly preſſed by his friend, he was obliged not only to comply, but even to go on ſhore and chuſe the ſituation. As ſoon as the ſpot was fixed upon, the workmen were immediately employed. By deſire of the captain a large flat ſtone was brought and placed near the intended edifice, whereon the captain cut the initials of his name, the name alſo of his country, with the day of the month and year: this he requeſted the artiſts to place on the center of the houſe. The captain alſo requeſted to have windows that would admit both the light and air, for according to their mode of building thoſe conveniencies are excluded, which renders their dwellings very cloſe and unwholeſome, on account of the hot weather, which is ſo prevalent. The natives, however, think nothing of this; for whenever they find themſelves incommoded by the heat, they plunge into the water, be it night or day, in order to cool themſelves. When every thing was ſettled reſpecting the building, the captain proceeded up the valley, attended by a great concourſe of both ſexes, who behaved with the greateſt good-nature and decorum. The captain returned to his veſſel in the long-boat, accompanied by ſome chiefs and Abbenooe, who was now remarkably attached to both the ſhips' companies.

The people were now employed in taking in proviſions, which Abbenooe had previouſly prepared for putting into their boats. On the 8th the king viſited Captain Portlock, attended by ſeveral large canoes; and from the King George, accompanied by Captain Portlock, he proceeded to the Queen Charlotte, in order to ſee Captain Dixon. The weather was now very cloſe and ſultry.

The Engliſh and natives were now on ſuch good terms, that the former always appeared on ſhore unarmed; conſequently the latter were under no apprehenſions of danger, and a mutual confidence accordingly took place.

On the 9th, there being a freſh breeze from the ſouthward, as the captains were reſolved, on the firſt opportunity, to get out of the bay, both veſſels now weighed. They were for ſome time retarded by bad weather and croſs winds.

On the 16th, in the afternoon, the Queen Charlotte came to anchor in Yam Bay, in 29 fathom water, over a ſandy bottom. At five o'clock the next morning the King George likewiſe anchored.

Their intention for anchoring here was to recover, if poſſible, two anchors which Capt. Portlock had left behind. Accordingly, as the weather was very fine, and the ſea tolerably ſmooth, the boats from both ſhips were ſent out to look for them: fortunately they found them, and both the King George's anchors were immediately got on board.

They were ſurrounded by ſeveral canoes, who ſupplied them upon eaſy terms, and in a very ample manner, with yams, water, &c.

From this to the 23d they had variable winds, and ſeveral calms: during which time they had weighed anchor, and ſtretched towards the N. W. intending if poſſible to make Attoui, and recover the Queen Charlotte's anchor that was left there. From the 23d to the 26th they were ſtanding off and on, making longer or ſhorter boards, as occaſion required. On the 26th they worked through the paſſage between Ouihoora and Attoui. On the 28th the weather being fine, and the wind favourable, they anchored in Wymoa Bay, with a ſmall bower, in thirty-ſeven fathom, over a ſandy bottom.

The whale-boat was now ſent out to ſearch for the anchor, but all their endeavours to recover it were unſucceſsful. The boat was afterwards diſpatched to ſhore for ſome taro.

The month of March commenced with very fine and moderate weather. The people were very buſy in procuring proviſions: but the inhabitants were tabooed. It was ſuppoſed that the king began to think that the Engliſh were encroaching too much, and was therefore induced by policy to adopt theſe meaſures, of ſending the intruders away.

A man of ſome conſequence among the natives, came on board the King George, who was particularly civil, and earneſtly requeſted the captain to take him into the veſſel with him. Captain Portlock was induced, by his repeated ſolicitations, to comply; and intended either to leave him on theſe iſlands, at their next touching, or to bring him to England. His name was No-ho-mi-ti-hee-tee. While he was addreſſing the captain, one of the king's meſſengers, whoſe name was Poo-a-re-a-ree, overheard him ſay that he was poſſeſſed of ſeveral valuables, which he preſented to his aged father. Poo-a-re-a-ree accordingly ſeized an opportunity of ſeeing the old man alone, and demanded his treaſure. The veteran denied his poſſeſſions, having previouſly buried them in a ſecret place: upon this, Poo-a-re-a-ree ſeized him by the throat, and vowed vengeance. The old man, to avoid being murdered, diſcovered all, and was accordingly plundered: about this critical time No-ho-mi-ti-hee-tee had returned to ſhore from the captain's, and became acquainted with the whole, yet awed by the great conſequence of the king's meſſenger, who is next to the king himſelf, and always ſways when his majeſty is abſent, he did not dare to interfere, but immediately haſtened to the captain, and in the moſt melancholy manner reported the robbery. He wanted Captain Portlock to puniſh the thief: however the captain did not ſee him after the commiſſion of his offence, and could do nothing. The grieved ſon having likewiſe taken a ſudden leave of the captain, it was never known how this affair terminated.

It being the captain's determination to quit theſe friendly iſlands for the ſecond time, it may be neceſſary here to give a deſcription of this country.

The country of Attoui is tolerably level, and for the ſpace of two miles very dry. The ſoil is a light red earth, which if properly cultivated it was thought would produce excellent potatoes; however, in its preſent ſituation, it is entirely covered with long, coarſe graſs. It is ſuppoſed that the inhabitants find plenty of ground near their habitations, which is more conveniently ſituated for their various purpoſes.

A tappa is a tolerable large village, which is ſituated behind a long row of cocoa-nut trees, which afford the inhabitants a moſt excellent ſhelter from the violent heat of the noon-day ſun. Amongſt theſe cocoa trees there is a good deal of wet, ſwampy ground, which is well laid out in plantations of taro and ſugar-cane. It is in this village that the inhabitants carry on their manufactures.

The place where they bury their dead, is a high wooden pile, ſeemingly of a quadrangular form, on the ſide of a hill. This is called a morai, and is entirely appropriated to the purpoſe of interring.

The river is not one hundred yards over, in the wideſt place, in ſeveral others it is much narrower; it glides along in a ſmooth pellucid ſtream, ſcarcely perceptible, except in rainy weather, the eaſtern ſhore being ſteep and rocky.

The rocks are for the greateſt part covered with a thin ſtrata, of the light red earth before-mentioned, and which are doubtleſs waſhed into the river beneath, by every ſmart ſhower of rain, ſo that the water of this river is conſtantly muddy, and its ſtream rapid.

The ſhips' crews having got all the proviſions they could procure, both veſſels weighed on the 3d, and came to ſail. They now ſtood out of the bay, with an intention of proceeding to the coaſt.

CHAPTER VI.

They proceed to the North-Weſt Coaſt—An unfortunate Accident—They reach the Shore of Montague Iſland—Motive for anchoring—Viſited by five Canoes—Behaviour of the Natives—The Engliſh ſurpriſed at their Notions of the Engliſh Language and Manners—They ſteal Fiſhing-lines—Wood and Water procured—Barren State of the Country—No Appearance of Inhabitants—The Captains examine the Coaſt—Unſucceſsful—They examine again——Previous Orders left with Mr. Macleod—Obeyed—Anchor in Hanning's Bay—Green Iſlands avoided—Anchor in Montague Iſland—Capt. Portlock diſappointed—The King George's Stream Anchor broke—Various Operations—A Viſit from one Indian—From five—The Captain's Encouragement—Capt. Dixon's Particulars of an Excurſion—Curſory Obſervations—Reſolutions—Viſit from ſeveral Natives—Audacious Thefts—The Veſſels leave Montague Iſland, and ſeparate—The King George arrives at Hinchinbroke Cove—The Queen Charlotte arrives at Port Mulgrave—Various Occurrences.

FROM the 3d to the 5th they had very foggy weather, which now becoming clear, the Queen Charlotte's people were employed in getting in a new jigger-maſt, as the old one had been carried away. As there was ſome iron-work required, the armourer was likewiſe put to work; but a ſudden roll of the ſhip threw his anvil overboard. This was a very unfortunate accident, as there were only a few toes at preſent made, which article was ſo highly eſſential in their traffic.

From this to the 24th of April there was little variety, except the wind and weather, which were continually changing. They now ſtood in for the S. W. point of Montague Iſland, with a light breeze at N. W. under all the ſail they could make. They kept the ſhore of Montague Iſland, where there was ſoon an appearance of a good bay, for which they made. This harbour is ſituated about ſix leagues within the S. W. point of Montague Iſland, and nearly a-breaſt on the iſland that forms the weſt ſide of the channel. Captain Portlock diſpatched the whale-boat in order to examine this bay, being deſirous to anchor, as he perceived two ſingle canoes at ſome diſtance up the bay, which led him naturally to ſuppoſe that the place was inhabited, and conſequently that there might be ſome buſineſs done. The boat returned in about an hour, and the mate reported that they could ride in with the greateſt ſecurity; accordingly they came to anchor in 20 fathoms, over a muddy bottom, about four o'clock: they moored with their beſt bower in 21 fathom, over the ſame bottom. The S. point of the bay now bore S. W. by S. two miles and a half diſtant, and the N. point N. N. W. half W. two miles. Their diſtance from the nearer ſhore was about one mile.

In the evening they were viſited by five canoes, ſome with one man, and others with two, but they brought no traffic of any kind. They were ornamented with beads of various colours, and ſaluted the Engliſh in a very friendly manner. They were very much delighted with the barking of ſome dogs that were in the veſſel, upon which they began to whiſtle, and call out, *Towzer! Towzer! here! here!* This Engliſh manner of addreſſing dogs created much wonder in the veſſels, as none of the crews could account for their having any idea of the Engliſh language and manners. Theſe viſitors, before their departure, took the liberty of ſtealing ſeveral fiſhing-lines that were hanging overboard.

On the 25th the boats were ſent on ſhore for wood and water; theſe were eaſily procured, but though the ſeine was hauled no fiſh could be got.

On the 26th there were ſeveral men ſent on ſhore to gather ſhell-fiſh, which was the only refreſhment that could at preſent be procured. The country was entirely covered with ſnow. Several wild geeſe and ducks were ſeen, but there were none within ſhot. From ſome cuts that were found in the wood it was evident that the Ruſſians had been here.

As there was now no appearance of inhabitants, Captain Portlock was determined on leaving the bay. On the 27th they unmoored; but meeting with contrary winds, were obliged to run into the bay again and anchor.

The captains now reſolved on examining the coaſt of Montague Iſland up towards the ſound, which they did immediately after anchoring; but did not diſcover the leaſt trace of inhabitants. They accordingly returned to their veſſels. During this excurſion they had ſeen ſome gulls and eagles of the white-headed ſpecies: likewiſe ſeveral ſmall birds.

On the 1ſt of May, as the captains were deſirous of examining every place where there was any likelihood of meeting inhabitants, they went out again in the whale-boats; Captain Portlock having previouſly left orders with Mr. Macleod to weigh anchor during his abſence, if the wind proved favourable. A number of the people of both veſſels had permiſſion to recreate themſelves on ſhore, but as there was a ſudden S. W. breeze, the ſignal was immediately made for them to return, when Mr. Macleod, according to the captain's orders, gave alſo the ſignal to unmoor: they therefore made ſail, ſtanding up the channel towards Prince William's Sound. At ſix o'clock they were cloſe in ſhore, and came to anchor in a bay to the eaſtward, in 21 fathoms, over a muddy bottom. About four hours after, the captains returned, being as unſucceſsful as before, in their ſurvey. This bay where the ſhips were now lying, was called Hanning's Bay, after the family ſo called, who were chief ſupporters of the preſent undertaking.

On the 2d there being a S. W. breeze, they weighed, and ſtood up the channel towards Prince William's Sound. About two o'clock they approached the Green Iſlands: this paſſage is very dangerous in the night, or bad weather, as the channel is ſcarcely a mile in the broadeſt part, free from ſunken rocks. At ſix o'clock they paſſed three beds of kelp, near which there was ſhoal water. It was now dead low water. About nine o'clock they got into a bay in Montague Iſland, where they anchored in 21 fathoms water, over a muddy bottom, and moored with the ſtream anchor to the N. E. in 14 ditto.

On the 3d the King George's carpenter was ſent on ſhore to cut down ſome trees for ſawing into plank. Captain Portlock alſo went up the bay, to ſound and examine it; but meeting with no natives, returned on board not a little diſappointed.

Early on the 4th they unmoored, and began to warp towards the head of the bay. When the King George was heaving up their ſtream anchor, the ſtock broke cloſe to the ſhank, and rendered it good for nothing. In the afternoon they came-to with the beſt bower, in eight fathom water, and moored the veſſel with a ſtream cable to a tree on ſhore. The next day was employed in various operations.

On the 6th a ſingle canoe, with one Indian, appeared; but he had nothing to diſpoſe of. This viſitor received a preſent, in order to encourage others to come, and as he departed in ſeeming good humour, future viſits were every moment expected.

It was apprehended by Capt. Dixon, that part of the Queen Charlotte's falſe keel was knocked off, by a ſhock which ſhe lately received againſt a whale, as it was ſuppoſed: however, upon examination, all was diſcovered ſafe: her ſheathing was ſomewhat worm-eaten, but every thing elſe was in good order.

There were a great number of ducks and geeſe flying about: but the captains were unwilling to fire at them, for fear of alarming the Indians.

On the 8th they were viſited by three canoes, which contained five Indians. They had nothing, however to diſpoſe of, except two river otter-ſkins and two ſeal-ſkins, which Capt. Portlock purchaſed, and gave them alſo a preſent, by way of encouragement.

The boats having been ſent out a few days before this with Captain Dixon, in order to acquire every neceſſary information, they returned on the 10th. The following are the particulars of this excurſion, according to the captain's journal.

The captain intended firſt to make Hinchinbroke Cove, and to proceed from thence to Snug Corner Cove, where there was the greateſt probability of meeting with inhabitants. He went with the two whale-boats and the King George's long-boat; but bad weather coming on, he was obliged to put into Cove in Montague Iſland about eight o'clock; in about an hour after the weather cleared up, and he proceeded round the N. E. end of the iſland into a large bay. Here he found ſome inhabitants on a hunting party, who, as he afterwards underſtood, belonged to Cape Hinchinbroke. As it was late in the afternoon, he came to anchor in the long-boat, and made the whale-boats faſt, one at each ſide.

As the Indians did not depart when night came on, Capt. Dixon ordered ſix hands to keep watch, and the remainder to have their arms ready, ſo that he might call them at a moment's notice. The Indians ſculked about till near two o'clock, waiting no doubt for an opportunity to cut the boats off; but finding the men attentive to all their motions, they then left them.

At four o'clock in the morning of the 6th, the captain weighed, and ſtood over for Cape Hinchinbroke, where he came to anchor at half paſt ten. At this place he found ſeveral Indians, and purchaſed a few ſea-otter ſkins. The Indians frequently pointed towards Snug Corner Cove, and endeavoured to make him underſtand that a veſſel lay at anchor there. Though this circumſtance ſtrongly excited his curioſity, and made him particularly anxious to know whether this piece of intelligence was true, yet the day being by this time far ſpent, he determined to keep his preſent ſituation during the night, as the weather was very unpromiſing; ſo that their ſtanding for Snug Corner Cove, under ſuch circumſtances, would be attended with ſome degree of danger and difficulty.

A ſtrict and vigilant look-out was more neceſſary this night, if poſſible, than they had found it the preceding one. The Indians, whom they had traded with for furs during the afternoon, were a different tribe from that which was met with in the bay at the N. E. end of Montague Iſland: their behaviour was very daring and inſolent, though they did not directly attack the Engliſh, and they did not leave the boats till day-light the next morning. There is no doubt but that a ſight of the various articles the captain had brought to trade with theſe people, occaſioned them to lurk about the whole night, in hopes of obtaining a booty; but finding themſelves diſappointed, they paddled away, ſeemingly much diſcontented.

Early in the morning of the 7th, the captain ſet out for Snug Corner Cove; but the wind during the whole day being very light, the long-boat made little way, ſo that the whale-boats were obliged to take her in tow; this retarded his paſſage ſo much, that he did not arrive in the cove till eleven o'clock in the evening. Contrary to his expectation, he found no veſſel in the cove, neither did he perceive any of the inhabitants; notwithſtanding which, he ordered the ſame ſtrict watch to be kept as before, well remembering that the Diſcovery was boarded by the natives in this very cove, during Capt. Cook's laſt voyage, in open day.

During the night, none of the inhabitants came near them; but at day-light in the morning of the 8th, two Indians came along-ſide in a canoe, and gave the captain to underſtand that there was a ſhip at no great diſtance; at the ſame time they offered to conduct him to her for a ſtring of beads. Glad to accept this propoſal, he willingly embraced their offer, and ſet off with the whale-boats, leaving the long-boat at anchor, as he was afraid ſhe would only retard his progreſs, and he was exceedingly anxious to know whether there really was a veſſel in this part, or whether the Indians had been amuſing him with a falſe report.

He had not got far before the weather grew very bad, and his guides gave him the ſlip: however, he continued the ſearch along ſhore till twelve o'clock, by which time he had got into the entrance of a large bay, and the weather growing very ſqually, with heavy ſtorms of ſnow and ſleet, he thought it moſt adviſeable to return to the long-boat, where he arrived about three o'clock.

At half paſt ſix o'clock, ſix canoes came into the cove where they lay, and told the captain there was a ſhip not far off, to which they were going, and offered to ſhew him the way: the weather was then very bad, but as they were going up the inlet, and not out to ſea, as his other guides had done in the morning, he ſet out with them in his own whale-boat, leaving the other whale-boat, and the long-boat, in the cove.

At ten o'clock in the evening, they arrived in the creek where the veſſel he ſo much wiſhed to ſee lay. He found her to be a ſnow, called the Nootka, from Bengal, commanded by a Capt Meares, under Engliſh colours.

Capt. Meares had wintered in the creek where Capt. Dixon found him, and his veſſel was faſt in the ice. The ſcurvy had made ſad havock amongſt his people, he having loſt his ſecond and third mates, the ſurgeon, boatſwain, carpenter, cooper, ſail-maker, and a great number of the fore-maſt men, by that dreadful diſorder; and the remaining part of his crew were ſo enfeebled at one time, that Capt. Meares himſelf was the only perſon on board able to walk the deck.

It gave him very great pleaſure to find two veſſels ſo near, who could aſſiſt him in ſome meaſure in his diſtreſs; and Capt. Dixon had no leſs ſatisfaction in aſſuring him, that he ſhould be furniſhed with every neceſſary he could poſſibly ſpare. As Capt. Meares's people were now getting better, he deſired Captain Dixon not to take the trouble of ſending any refreſhments to him, as he would viſit them very ſhortly in his own boat.

Capt. Dixon left the Nootka at three o'clock in the morning of the 9th, and got to his boats about eight: at ten o'clock he weighed, and ſtood down for their ſhips, being now convinced that there was no proſpect of his meeting with any furs of conſequence. Towards noon it grew nearly calm, and the whale-boats were obliged to take the long-boat in tow.

While they were proceeding in this manner acroſs the ſound, ſome canoes joined them, and one of the Indians had a few ſea-otter ſkins, which he offered to ſell. Happening to caſt his eyes on a frying-pan, which the captain's people in the long-boat had to dreſs their victuals with, he requeſted to have it in barter; accordingly, it was offered him, but he abſolutely refuſed to take it entire, and deſired them to break off the handle, which he ſeemed to regard as a thing of ineſtimable value, and rejected the bottom part with contempt.

Towards ſix o'clock, the wind freſhening, the whale-boats were caſt off, and ſoon afterwards the weather grew very rough, with conſtant ſnow and ſleet, which occaſioned the boats to ſeparate. The night was very ſtormy, and the captain did not get on board his own veſſel till four o'clock in the morning of the 10th.

Captain Meares, accompanied by his firſt mate, Mr. Roſs, waited upon Captain Portlock, in their own boat: he met with a very hearty reception, and exchanged ſome bags of rice for other articles, which he and his company were in great want of. Capt. Meares mentioned that ſeveral ſhips had, at different times, been trading on the coaſt, from India and China. This information gave Capt. Portlock much uneaſineſs; for as there had been ſo many before-hand, it was natural to ſuppoſe that the Indians were at preſent drained of their furs, and conſequently their intended traffic would be much hurt. As Captain Portlock likewiſe underſtood that another ſhip was expected to arrive at King George's Sound early in June next, he deemed it expedient that the King George and Queen Charlotte ſhould ſeparate. A conſultation accordingly took place with Captains Portlock and Dixon, and it was at laſt agreed upon that the Queen Charlotte ſhould puſh on for King George's Sound, in order to get the ſtart of the expected veſſel. Meſſ. Hayward and Hill, with ſix of the beſt men, were likewiſe to make for Cook's River, in the King George's long-boat, while the King George was to ſtay in Prince William's Sound till the boat's return. Meſſ. Hayward and Hill were to meet Captain Portlock in Hinchinbroke cove, before the 20th of July: if they exceeded that time, they were to endeavour to procure for themſelves and men a paſſage to China from this ſound; but if they could not find a veſſel that was that way bound, they were then to proceed immediately to Kodiac, and procure a paſſage to Europe by way of Aſia.

On the 11th all hands were buſily employed in wooding, watering, brewing, and working in the hold. The watering was completed in the afternoon.

In order to aſſiſt Captain Meares in carrying his veſſel to China, Capt. Portlock lent him two good ſeamen, George Willis and Tho. Dixon, who chearfully acquieſced to go on board the Nootka. Theſe men were to be returned at China. Capt. Meares was likewiſe furniſhed with a large ſupply of refreſhments of every kind, particularly cocoa-nuts, for the ſake of his ſick people. At five o'clock the captain, and his firſt mate, Mr. Roſs, took leave of Capt. Portlock. The particulars relative to Captain Meares's miſfortunes, are reſerved for our future account of that voyage.

The 12th. Every thing was now getting ready for ſailing. At ſix o'clock in the evening Meſſrs. Hayward and Hill ſet off in the long-boat for Cook's River, being furniſhed with ſix weeks proviſions.

On the 13th ſeveral canoes viſited the veſſels; in one of them was a chief of great conſequence, whoſe name was Sheenaawa. There was no trade, though every one was buſy; the Indians in thieving, and the Engliſh in watching: theſe were the moſt audacious thieves that were yet met; their very children were expert in the art. Captain Portlock perceiving their intention to pillage the boat, was obliged to ſend out the whale-boat ready armed, in order to prevent it. The captain's motive for admitting the chief and his people on board his veſſel, was in hopes that ſuch indulgence would encourage them to bring furs: theſe rogues, however, while they ſung and danced, in order to amuſe the captain's people, were conveying every moveable away: at firſt they began to ſteal iron and clothes, and then every thing they could meet with. Whenever detected in a theft, they relinquiſhed it without any kind of concern, but they could hardly be prevailed upon to reſtore any thing that they were once in poſſeſſion of: the captain was at laſt induced, by compulſive means, to make them ſtop their depredations; and now having left the veſſel, and ſeeing the Queen Charlotte's whale-boat lying at anchor about two miles off, where ſome of the crew were fiſhing, theſe Indians paddling out of the bay, made directly up to them, and finding them unarmed, preſently ſeized their fiſhing-lines, and were about forcing their anchor out of the boat: upon this, Capt. Portlock diſpatched his whale-boat and yawl, well manned, to prevent their deſigns. Capt. Dixon likewiſe fired a ſwivel gun, and the plunderers were immediately diſperſed, but not without carrying off ſome ſpoils. One of theſe Indians attempted to run a ſpear through a young man in the boat, becauſe he refuſed to give up his line: he was, however, prevented by their chief, who was fortunately contented with plundering in quiet.

Capt. Dixon having taken leave of Capt. Portlock, early on the 14th they weighed; the King George ſteered for Hinchinbroke, and the Queen Charlotte kept ſtanding for the paſſage between Cape Hinchinbroke and Montague Iſland.

On the 15th the King George came to anchor, with the beſt bower, in ſeven fathom water, over a muddy bottom, and moored with the ſmall bower.

The Queen Charlottle having been delayed with the baffling winds, did not reach Port Mulgrave till the 23d. She anchored about eight o'clock at night, in the northward point, with the ſmall bower, in 65 fathoms, over a muddy bottom.

BOOK II.

CHAPTER I.

Adventures of the King George continued—Appearance of the Country—Excellent Sea-Otter Skins purchaſed—Capt. Portlock examines the Harbour—Sees the Enſign flying—Returns on board—Five Canoes along ſide—A few more Skins purchaſed—Captain Portlock determined to apply to Capt. Meares for a Supply of Articles to barter with—Fixes on the ſecond Mate for the Expedition—The Carpenter and others build a Punt for it—Crabs and Muſcles procured—Several Canoes—Various Employments—A Viſit from two Canoes—Information—Great Uneaſineſs—Fears removed—Meſſ. Creſsleman and Briant ſent on a trading Expedition—A Party ſent to ſow ſome Seeds—Return of Meſſ. Creſsleman and Briant—Their Account—A plundering Party—Prudence of the Boats' Crews—Whale-boat and Yawl ſent to aſſiſt the Nootka—Meſſ. Hayward and Hill returned—Their Account—Sent out again—The Surgeon and ſick People go on Shore—A Quantity of fine Halibut and Cod—A Viſit from a Party of Indians—Manners of the Indians—Character of their Chief—His ſingular Requeſt—Complied with—Herrings and Salmon caught—Return of the Whale-boat and Yaul—Unſucceſsful—Wonderful Number of Salmon caught—The ſick People recreated—Return of the Long-boat—Wood and Water completed—Anchor weighed—Proceed along the Coaſt—Anchorage—Viſited by Natives—Various Occurrences—Long-boat ſent on an Expedition—Two Natives ſleep on Board—The Captain's Apprentice on Shore—A fair Trade carried on—Natives dine with the Captain—Viſited by another Tribe—Remarks.

THE King George and Queen Charlotte being now ſeparated, we muſt accordingly divide our relations of their adventures till they meet again; therefore, for the preſent, we ſhall follow the King George.

On the 16th, early in the morning, they hove up the ſmall bower, and having hauled the ſhip within ſhore of the beſt bower, re-anchored again, in five fathoms, over a muddy bottom, and moored the ſhip head and ſtern.

The appearance of the country was very unpromiſing, the land being covered with very deep ſnow. There were two freſh-water rivulets at the head of the harbour, doubtleſs productive of ſalmon in due ſeaſon.

In the courſe of this day, ſeveral canoes came along-ſide, with ſome fiſh and ſea-otter ſkins. There were about twelve ſea-otter ſkins (of excellent quality) purchaſed, but at a moſt exorbitant price.

On the 18th Capt. Portlock went in the whale-boat to examine the harbour: he was for ſome time engaged in this buſineſs, but when within ſight of his veſſel, he perceived the enſign flying, which was the appointed ſignal to ſignify a viſit from the natives; accordingly, he returned on board, (having poſtponed his preſent buſineſs) and perceived ſome canoes along-ſide, of whom he purchaſed a few more ſkins of the ſame excellence. He enquired if there were any ſalmon in the freſh-water rivulets; but was informed that it was not yet the time, till the ſnow which covered the hills was melted.

Capt. Portlock not being in poſſeſſion of articles which were likely to make a good market in the way of traffic, was determined to apply to Captain Meares for a ſupply, in return for the favours he had ſhewn him: the captain firſt intended to make this application in perſon, but apprehended his abſence might be of material conſequence, as his firſt mate, Mr. Macleod, whom he generally ſent on private buſineſs, or was occaſionally entruſted with the care of the veſſel, was now ſo ill as to be incapable of either undertaking an expedition, or minding the ſhip for any length of time: he was therefore determined to ſend his ſecond mate, Mr. Creſſleman, with the whale-boat and yaul, on board the Nootka. But now another difficulty aroſe, for as they had no boat left by the ſhip, nor any other way of getting on ſhore but in the Sandwich iſland canoe, which was both difficult and dangerous to manage, it was accordingly deemed expedient to contrive ſome ſafer kind of conveyance: the carpenter therefore, aſſiſted by ſeveral other hands, began to build a punt of twelve feet long, ſix feet wide, and about three feet deep: the captain approved of the plan very much, as this punt could not fail to be uſeful in wooding and watering while the boats were abſent.

As the harbour afforded very fine crabs and muſcles, a number of the people were ſent to procure ſome, and they returned in the evening with a good quantity of each. Several canoes came along-ſide with a trading party, who brought ſome very good ſea-otter ſkins and a few indifferent ones. The weather being fine, all their operations on ſhore went briſkly forward; one part were employed cutting wood, another ſawing plank, and the carpenter, with his aſſiſtants, about the punt.

On the 22d two canoes viſited them, and brought a few good ſkins. The captain now underſtood that the adjacent country was called Tacklaccimuke, and that it was inhabited by a tribe, the name of whoſe chief was Nootuck, and the name of another chief belonging to the ſame tribe was Coocha. Three canoes belonging to Nootuck's tribe came to the ſhip the next day, but brought nothing except a few halibuts.

The whale-boat returned on the 25th from the ſound; they had parted with the yaul juſt off the north point of the bay. The next day they had a very heavy gale of wind, and the yaul not making her appearance, it gave them great uneaſineſs, as her crew were not only expoſed to the weather, but might probably be driven out of the ſound and all periſh: neither could the whale-boat be ſent to look for and aſſiſt them, without running a great riſk of loſing her crew likewiſe. However, the weather growing moderate on the 27th, the whale-boat was ſent in ſearch of the yaul, with proper refreſhments for her crew, and at nine o'clock both boats came along-ſide; the yaul's crew in a much better ſtate than could be expected. The whale-boat met the yaul at the entrance of the bay, making an effort to get in, which muſt have been a fruitleſs one, had they not met and taken them in tow; for the boats were ſcarcely got along-ſide before it began to rain and blow as violently as before.

From this to the 30th bad weather prevented any buſineſs from going forward on ſhore. During this interval only three canoes came along-ſide, with cod and halibut ſufficient to ſerve the ſhip's company one day, and a few middling ſea-otter ſkins. The weather now growing moderate, the parties reſumed their different employments on ſhore.

On the 4th of June Meſſrs. Creſſleman and Bryant were ſent with the whale-boat and yaul, on a trading expedition, up an opening between the harbour they lay in and Snug Corner Cove, by which means they were likely to obtain part of the trade intended for the Nootka. Juſt as night came on a few Indians came along-ſide with ſome halibut and cod, but no furs.

On the 6th, the weather being fine, a party was ſent to dig a piece of ground for a garden, on a ſmall iſland ſituated in the entrance of the cove, and which was named Garden Iſland. After the ground was ready, a variety of ſeeds were ſown in it, ſuch as onion, cabbage, Scotch kale, ſavoy, radiſh, thyme, purſlane, ſpinach, celery, cauliflour, muſtard, turnip, creſs and rape, with peas, beans, French beans, lettuce, oats, barley, &c. The ſoil being tolerably good, it would be rather extraordinary if, among ſo great a variety, nothing ſhould come to perfection. In the evening the whale-boat and yaul returned from their expedition, with a few very good ſkins, which they purchaſed of a chief whoſe name was Sheenaawa, and who was conjectured to be the ſame perſon who paid them a viſit at Montague Iſland. The captain intended them for a longer trip, but it ſeems they unluckily got into a large flat bay, where the boats grounded, and before they could extricate themſelves from the ſhoals the tide ebbed, and left them dry for near two miles round.

Sheenaawa and his tribe, which conſiſted of near two hundred men, ſaw their ſituation and paid them a viſit, moſt of them armed with knives and ſpears. The boats' crews at firſt were greatly alarmed at their ſituation; but their fears rather ſubſided, when they found that plunder was what the Indians wanted: this they endeavoured to prevent, but at the ſame time kept their plunderers in good temper; which was the moſt prudent method the people could poſſibly have taken, for had they acted in any other manner, and ſtrove to have prevented them from ſtealing by force, not a man in either boat could have eſcaped the vengeance of their numerous opponents. This plundering party obtained an excellent booty in their own eſtimation; they ſtole moſt of the trading articles, two muſquets, two piſtols, and ſome of the people's cloaths; but what old Sheenaawa ſeemed to regard as a thing of ineſtimable value, was Mr. Creſſleman's quadrant, which he ſeized, together with his ephemeris and requiſite tables. It was at this time, that they purchaſed the ſkins juſt mentioned: Sheenaawa's people affecting to traffic as a ſort of introduction to their depredations.

On the 9th, Captain Portlock being at Garden Iſle, ſaw the Nootka turning in towards the port; on this, the whale-boat and yaul were immediately ſent to her aſſiſtance; and in the afternoon, ſhe anchored juſt without the King George.

On the 10th ſome Indians came into the bay, and appeared ſhy on ſeeing the Nootka, which could not be accounted for any other way, than they having fired at ſome of the natives juſt before they left Sutherland's Cove, and wounded one of them. Captain Meares went on board the King George, to requeſt of Captain Portlock to ſend ſome of his men on board the Nootka, to examine her maſts, pumps, ſides, &c. and otherwiſe aſſiſt him, which was complied with.

On the 11th the long-boat returned from Cook's River, having been very ſucceſsful. Meſſrs. Hayward and Hill aſſuring Capt. Porlock, that much more buſineſs might be done in another trip; as ſoon as the boat was cleared, he ordered her to be fitted out with proviſions, and an aſſortment of trade, for a ſecond expedition. After the boat's arrival in Cook's River, ſoon after getting above Point Bede, they fell in with a body of Kodiac Indians, who they ſuppoſed were hunting on account of the Ruſſians; but they ſaw no Ruſſian party, and the inhabitants in the river behaved in a friendly manner. Early next morning the boat ſailed again for Cook's River, with poſitive orders to return by the 20th of July.

On the 19th, at one o'clock, the Nootka being ready for ſailing, weighed anchor, and ſtood out for the cove. Spruce-beer, which was now in good order, was daily ſerved out; and the ſick people found great benefit from it.

On the 20th, Surgeon Hoggan, and thoſe people who had been ill, through the dampneſs of the weather, took a walk on ſhore, and gathered a good quantity of water-creſſes, which they found growing near the freſh-water rivulets. The people caught plenty of flounders along-ſide, with hook and line; theſe, together with crabs, which were now very fine, proved an excellent change from ſalt proviſions. Some of them, in fiſhing along-ſide for flounders, caught ſeveral cod and halibut: on this, the canoe was ſent, on the 22d, at ſome diſtance into the bay, to try for them, and they ſoon returned with a quantity of fine halibut and cod. This ſucceſs induced them to ſend her out frequently with a fiſhing party, and they caught conſiderably more than what was ſufficient for daily conſumption, ſo that the remainder was ſalted for ſea-ſtore. In the afternoon, a party of Indians viſited the ſhip, bringing a few ſea-otter ſkins; they pointed to the S. W. and gave them to underſtand that plenty of furs might be procured from that quarter. On this, Captain Portlock diſpatched the whale-boat and yaul on the 24th, on a trip to the S. W. part of the Sound, with proviſions for a month, and a proper aſſortment of trade. Some of the people, who had leave to go on ſhore, aſcended the higheſt hills in the neighbourhood; on the ſides of which they found good quantities of ſnake-root, and a variety of flowers in full bloom. In the evening they obſerved two Indian boats, and ſeveral canoes, come into the bay: they landed on a ſandy beach, about three miles diſtant from the ſhip. Early next morning their new viſitors came along-ſide: the party conſiſted of about 25 perſons. Their chief appeared to be a well-diſpoſed man, rather low in ſtature, with a long beard, and ſeemed about 60 years of age: he was entirely diſabled on one ſide, probably by a paralytic ſtroke; his name was Taatucktellingnuke; the country he came from was called Cheeneecock, and ſituated in the S. W. part of the Sound. The old man made Captain Portlock a preſent of a good ſkin, but had little to ſell except a few ſalmon. The whole of this party were very friendly, and well diſpoſed. The country where Sheenaawa and his tribe take up their reſidence is called Taaticklagmute: they, it ſeems, are the moſt powerful tribe about the Sound, and hated by all their neighbours, with whom they are continually at variance. Theſe Indians lodged in temporary huts, compoſed only of a few ſticks and a little bark: the principal part of their food was fiſh, and by way of variety they eat the inner rind of the pine-bark dried, but their greateſt luxury was a kind of rock-weed covered with the ſpawn of ſome fiſh or other, of which they gathered and ate great quantities; they alſo eat the inner rind of the angelica and hemlock roots, which though poiſon to Engliſhmen, by conſtant and habitual uſe, becomes to them familiar and ſerviceable.

The party who were daily ſent out to fiſh for cod and halibut had their hooks and lines often broke by large ground ſharks; ſeveral of them were killed, but they were of no uſe, their livers yielding ſcarcely any oil.

On the 26th, Taatucktellingnuke viſited the ſhip, and was particularly anxious to take one or two of the people with him on ſhore to ſpend the night, offering at the ſame time to leave ſome of his people on board as hoſtages till their return. Capt. Portlock complied with this ſingular requeſt, and gave two of the people leave to accompany him on ſhore: he left three of his tribe on board, being deſirous to convince them that he intended no harm. This friendly old chief came, early the next morning, on board in one of his boats; and, after exchanging hoſtages, and receiving a few preſents, he went on ſhore highly pleaſed.

On the 30th, in hauling the ſeine, they caught a large quantity of herrings, and ſome ſalmon: the herrings, though ſmall, were very good; and two hogſheads of them were ſalted for ſea-ſtore.

On the 6th of July at noon, the whale-boat and yaul returned from their expedition, without the leaſt ſucceſs, not having ſeen a ſingle canoe during their trip. Captain Portlock was now convinced that nothing could be done by ſending the boats on another expedition, and expecting the long-boat's return in a few days, after which he intended to get to ſea as quick as poſſible, all hands were ſet to work in getting the ſhip ready. Large quantities of ſalmon were daily caught, but the unſettled ſtate of the weather not permitting them to cure it on board, the boatſwain was ſent with a party on ſhore, to build a kind of houſe to ſmoke them in.

On the 9th the houſe was finiſhed, and the boatſwain, with his party, were employed in ſmoking ſalmon; they had ſufficient room to hang 600 fiſh up conveniently, and ſeven fires being conſtantly burning, they were cured very well.

On the 11th the ſeine was frequently hauled, and not leſs than 2000 ſalmon were caught at each haul; indeed, they were now in ſuch numbers along the ſhores, that any quantity whatever might be caught with the greateſt eaſe.

On the 21ſt Captain Portlock took ſeveral of the people who were lately recovered from ſickneſs on ſhore, to take a walk and gather water-creſſes. This little excurſion had a wonderfully good effect on every one; they ſat down on the graſs and made a hearty meal on fried pork and ſalmon; and, by way of ſallad, had an abundance of water-creſſes: they likewiſe gathered a ſufficient quantity to ſerve every perſon on board. Near the place where they landed was a freſh-water lake, in which there was abundance of ſalmon, and not far from it was a piece of wild wheat growing, at leaſt two feet high, amongſt which they found the water-creſſes. This wheat, with proper care, might certainly be made an uſeful article of food. They returned on board in the evening without ſeeing any Indians.

Next day at noon, the long-boat came along-ſide, and all her crew in good health. In this trip they had experienced a great deal of very bad weather, and had not met with ſuch good ſucceſs as they expected. They fell in with numbers of the Kodiac Indians, who always behaved in the moſt friendly manner, as did all the inhabitants of the river.

On the 24th they completed their wood and water, and every thing from the ſhore was got on board. They lopped all the branches off the higheſt tree on Garden Iſland, and fixed a ſtaff about ten feet long at the top, with a wooden vane on it, and near the bottom was inſcribed the ſhip's name, with the year and day of the month.

On the 26th, every thing being ready for ſea, they weighed anchor at two o'clock in the morning, and ſtood out of the cove. On quitting the harbour, (which obtained the name of Port Etches) Capt. Portlock at firſt intended to ſtand out of the Sound by way of Cape Hinchinbroke; but on opening that paſſage the weather looked very thick and dirty, on which he came to the reſolution of puſhing for the paſſage on the weſt ſide of Montague Iſland. Accordingly they ſtood to the S. W. but meeting with contrary winds, did not get through till the morning of the 31ſt, when they were well clear of the land, the S. W. point of Montague Iſland being three leagues diſtant.

We ſhall here relate ſome few obſervations which have been made by Captain Portlock on Prince William's Sound; but as we ſhall be obliged to renew our deſcription of this place in the voyages of Capt. Cook, we ſhall there give a more copious account of the manners, cuſtoms, &c. of the natives.

The men are ſhort in ſtature, with flat faces and noſes, and ill-ſhaped legs; but they have good teeth, good eyes, and a good ſcent. They wear their hair, (which is black and ſtraight) very long; but they cut it upon the death of a relation or friend, which is the only way whereby they denote mourning. There is very little difference between the women and the men. They are fond of ornaments, like moſt of the inhabitants of other iſlands; yet notwithſtanding their partiality to finery, they are very filthy in neglecting their perſons, and conſequently becoming louſy; and as a further proof of their naſtineſs, they frequently make uſe of thoſe vermin whenever there is a ſcarcity of food.

The men are particularly attentive to the women; they are exceedingly happy when their ladies receive any preſents, but highly provoked if there are any liberties taken with them. It is unneceſſary to make any remarks on their thieving diſpoſition, as the reader has had proofs of that; but we muſt add, that inſtead of dexterity in thieving being held in diſgrace among them, it is on the contrary in high eſtimation, and he that is the moſt notorious is the moſt admired. The profeſſed thief is curiouſly daubed with paint, in order to attract the notice and admiration of ſpectators, and give his fingers an opportunity of pilfering. They ſlip their arms occaſionally from out of the ſleeves of thoſe frocks of ſkins which they always wear, and under theſe frocks conceal their ſtolen articles, till they can convey them to their canoes: yet, notwithſtanding this pilfering inclination, they are a good kind of people, and would no doubt be ſoon corrected of this vice, if the intercourſe between them and the Engliſh had been of any duration.

The country abounds with large trees of the pine kind, a ſort of hazel, and a great quantity of alder: there is alſo a great deal of fruit-buſhes, bilberry, raſberry, ſtrawberry, alderberry, red and black currant buſhes, &c. They have alſo plenty of wild celery, water-creſſes, ſour dock, ſhepherd's purſe, angelica, hemlock, wild peas, &c. None of the ſeed which the Engliſh had ſown produced any thing while they were there. The alder-buds were once uſed by the Engliſh as greens; they boiled exceedingly well and tender, and were much reliſhed, but for a day and a half the partakers thereof were well purged: on ſome it acted as an emetic. The buds of the young black currant-buſhes, mixed with the pine tops, made very pleaſant tea.

The inhabitants live upon whatever fiſh and animals they can get. They dry their fiſh in the ſun, having no other way of preſerving it: their freſh fiſh they roaſt before a fire. They dreſs their animal food in baſkets or wooden veſſels, by putting thereto red-hot ſtones. They eat the vegetables their country affords, and the inner bark of the pine-tree.

Their winter habitations are ill contrived, being from four to ſix feet high, ten feet long, eight feet broad, or thereabouts, built with thick plank, and the crevices filled up with dry moſs. In theſe confined dwellings a great number live together. In the ſummer they wander about, and occaſionally ſhelter in ſmall ſheds erected of a few ſticks covered with a little bark, or their canoes.

A fuller deſcription of their weapons, cuſtoms, and dialect, ſhall be given in Capt. Cook's voyages.

Having got clear of the paſſage into Prince William's Sound, they proceeded E. S. E. with a light breeze from the weſtward, which changing afterwards to the ſouthward, they ſteered E. by N. The weather was now very pleaſant.

On the 3d every advantage was taken of the fine weather: the ſailors' hammocks were got upon deck; the ſhip aired with fires, being previouſly ſcraped fore and aft, and ſprinkled with vinegar.

Their progreſs to Cape Edgecombe was ſo retarded afterwards, by the wind ſhifting to the eaſtward, that the captain was now reſolved to ſeek a port near the ſituation in which Capt. Cook places Croſs Sound.

On the 5th Mount Fairweather bore N. 10 deg. W. near twenty leagues diſtant. This is the higheſt land on this part of the coaſt, and forms ſeveral mountains.

On the 6th, an opening in the land was diſcovered, ſituated eight leagues to the S. E. of Croſs Cape. The land ſeemed to be compoſed of low, woody iſlands, among which appeared ſeveral places for good ſhelter. On approaching it they had 20 and 25 fathoms over a muddy bottom, and there were ſome high barren rocks juſt in the entrance.

They were followed by a large Indian boat, with 12 people in her, three of whom were men, and the reſt women and children. Theſe people were, no doubt, led by curioſity to view the ſhip. The King George having run up towards the N. W. part of the harbour, after paſſing a ſmall iſland near the north ſhore covered with trees, they anchored about noon with the ſmall bower, in 31 fathoms, over a muddy bottom, and moored with the beſt bower to the eaſtward, entirely land-locked.

The boat which had followed them now came along-ſide, ſinging and extending their arms as tokens of peace: their language was totally different from that ſpoken by the natives in Prince William's Sound; nor were they marked with paint, as is the cuſtom in the Sound and River. Their boat was made of a large pine-tree, the inſide of which was neatly cut out, and the body ingeniouſly tapered away towards the ends until they came to a point.

The captain gave his new viſiters ſome preſents, and by ſhewing them a ſea-otter's ſkin, and making ſigns, expreſſed a deſire to have ſome: they, in return, expreſſed an inclination to ſerve him.

The captain having ſeen among their poſſeſſions a tin kettle and ſome towels, much like thoſe which belonged to Capt. Dixon, he was inclined to think that the Queen Charlotte had touched near this neighbourhood, eſpecially as he underſtood from theſe natives that they had received thoſe gifts from a veſſel which had been in a port eaſtward of Cape Edgecombe, and which had two maſts. As Capt. Portlock had intended to ſend the long-boat on a trading expedition, he was now reſolved to fit her out with all poſſible diſpatch, as it was probable the Queen Charlotte might be ſomewhere about the Cape.

As ſoon as the Indians received their preſents, they left the ſhip, and went on ſhore; they returned immediately after, with a few good dry ſea-otter ſkins; but they were not ſo particular in dreſſing and ſtretching them as the natives of Prince William's Sound and Cook's River: one of their dreſſed ſkins being ſhewn to a chief among theſe Indians, he knew immediately whence it came, and alſo deſcribed what ſort of people thoſe in the Sound were, informing the captain that they had a frequent intercourſe with them, in the courſe of which ſome quarrels aroſe, and battles were conſequently the iſſue.

The daggers which theſe people uſe in battle can ſtab at either end, having three, four, or five inches tapered to a ſharp point above the hand.

When evening approached, the Indians were about taking their leave again; but as they were deſirous to ſecure the captain's friendſhip, they propoſed leaving one of their party on board for the night, and taking one of his people on ſhore. This the captain chearfully acquieſced with, as theſe men were neither inclined to thievery or miſchief, and it was alſo a favourable opportunity of making ſome neceſſary diſcoveries relative to their country and manners. One of the captain's men was accordingly ſent with them on ſhore, while for his greater ſecurity two Indians (who were handſome, good-looking men, and appeared to be brothers) were retained. During their ſtay on board, they behaved remarkably well.

Early on the 7th, the Indians returned with the man they had taken away the night before, but they brought very little trade. The perſon who went on ſhore with them reported, that their reſidence was at the foot of a hill, near a river of freſh water, which iſſued out of an adjacent valley. Their houſe, for they had but one, appeared to be only a temporary habitation, and they ſeemed to have but few articles of trade amongſt them.

About this time the long-boat was hoiſted out, and having been properly equipped, was ſent on a trading expedition towards Cape Edgecombe, and among the iſlands to the S. E. of that cape, with the ſame party that went with her to Cook's River. They had orders to return in 17 days; and in caſe they met with the Queen Charlotte, to deſire Capt. Dixon to return with them, and ſtay in the offing till the King George was ready to join her; it being now Captain Portlock's intention to leave the coaſt about the latter end of the month, and proceed for China, unleſs they met with a better trade.

On the 8th the carpenter was ſent on ſhore, to cut down ſome white cedar, with which the country abounded, for the purpoſe of ſawing into ſheathing boards. The remainder of the ſhip's company were put to ſeveral neceſſary employments.

A ſmall canoe, with one man and a woman in her, came along-ſide this day; but they had nothing to diſpoſe of: they ſtaid for a ſhort time, and then returned on ſhore, to inform their tribe (as it was ſuppoſed) of the ſhip's being in the harbour. The Indian boat repeated their viſit towards evening, and the two young men who before ſlept on board were now deſirous of ſpending another night in the veſſel. The captain readily complied with their deſire; and one of his apprentices, Joſeph Woodcock, ſlept on ſhore with the natives. The Indians took up their abode that night in a ſmall bay near the ſhip, where there was a hut erected, which was far more miſerable than their other habitation.

The whale-boat caught ſome ſalmon to-day, ſome of which was exceedingly good, and others were very bad, with a diſagreeable colour, which were thrown away.

The ſmall canoe which came in the morning with the man and woman in her, repeated her viſit about eight o'clock; ſhe was accompanied with two large boats, which contained about 25 men, women, and children. Theſe people behaved exceedingly well, and promiſed to bring ſome good furs the next morning. They ſung for about an hour, and when they took their leave retired to the ſmall bay where the Indian boat went. Some had built temporary huts, and others ſheltered themſelves among the rocks. The next morning they fulfilled their promiſe, and brought with them ſome good ſea-otter and a quantity of fine black ſkins. As this tribe did not ſhew the leaſt thieving diſpoſition, ſeveral of them were admitted on board, and they traded very fairly. It being dinner-time, and every thing accordingly prepared in the cabin, the captain aſked his new viſiters to partake; they readily accepted his invitation, and ſo well did they reliſh the victuals, that they were obliged in a ſhort time to repleniſh the diſhes. During the ſecond courſe theſe gueſts eat as hearty as before. When they had ſatisfied themſelves, they then admired the veſſel, and in a ſhort time after returned to ſhore, highly delighted with their entertainment, and ſome preſents which they had received.

Another Indian boat, from the N. W. appeared in the afternoon, with two men, a boy about twelve years old, and a young child. One of the men appeared to be a perſon of conſequence, being remarkably majeſtic and well-looking. There were ſome good ſea-otter ſkins, and ſeveral wild geeſe bought of theſe Indians, who were adorned with ornaments quite different from any hitherto ſeen.

When they had finiſhed trading, the good-looking fellow, who ſeemed to be a chief, requeſted the captain's permiſſion to ſtay on board with the young lad for that night. Captain Portlock immediately acquieſced, and ſent Joſeph Woodcock on ſhore with the other man and child.

The next morning (the 10th) this man and boy took their leave of the Engliſh; the former aſſuring the captain that he would in ten days time viſit him again, and bring with him more ſea-otter ſkins.

CHAPTER II.

Trade ſtill carried on—Indian Tea diſcovered—Captain Portlock viſits the Indians' Reſidence—Some of the Natives marked with the Small-Pox—Employments—Return of the Long-Boat—Their Account—James Blake ſaved by John M'Coy—The Captain ſurveys part of the Sound—Deſcription of an Edifice—A Viſit from the ſuppoſed Chief, who acts different Characters—Natives fond of Joſeph Woodcock—The King George weighs Anchor, and ſtands out of the Sound—Character of the North-Weſt Natives—They weigh, and come to ſail—Owhyhee ſeen—Viſited by ſeveral Canoes—Puſh on for Attoui—Edge away for Wymoa Bay—The Hogs of that Iſland tabooed—News of the Nootka and Queen Charlotte—Captain Dixon's Letter tabooed—A Meſſenger diſpatched to the King—Capt. Portlock anchors at Oneehow—Viſited by the King, &c.—Obſervations, Remarks, &c.—Anchor weighed—They proceed to China.

ON the 11th Auguſt another ſtrange tribe came into the Sound from the eaſtward, in two large boats, conſiſting of 25 men, women, and children. They diſpoſed of a few ſmall black ſkins, and ſome good ſea-otter ditto. When they had ſatisfied their curioſity, they retired to a convenient houſe on ſhore, in a bay not far from the ſhip, which was well covered with cedar-bark; for this tribe did not herd with the other Indians.

On the 12th ſome of the ſhip's company were ſent on ſhore, to recreate themſelves. This party, in their ramble, diſcovered a quantity of Indian tea: which, upon trial, proved an excellent ſubſtitute for their other tea, which by this time was nearly expended. Captain Portlock, in the forenoon, went in the whale-boat with Mr. Whilbye and one of the young Indians, (who were conſtant viſiters) in order to viſit their reſidence. After proceeding a conſiderable way up the Sound, they arrived at the Indian's habitation about noon, and found one ſmall temporary houſe and the ruins of two others, which had been much larger, and appeared to have been made uſe of as winter habitations. On the beach was a large boat, capable of holding thirty perſons, and three others to hold ten people each. From this circumſtance, the captain expected to have ſeen a numerous tribe, and was quite ſurpriſed to find only three men, three women, the ſame number of girls, and two boys about 12 years old, and two infants. The oldeſt of the men was very much marked with the ſmall-pox; as was a girl, who appeared to be about 14 years old. The old man endeavoured to deſcribe the exceſſive torments he endured whilſt he was afflicted with the diſorder that had marked his face, and gave Captain Portlock to underſtand that it happened ſome years ago: he ſaid the diſtemper carried off great numbers of the inhabitants, and that himſelf had loſt ten children by it. He had ten ſtrokes tattooed on one of his arms, which were ſo many marks for the number of children he had loſt.

As none of the children under ten or twelve years of age were marked, there is great reaſon to ſuppoſe the diſorder raged but little more than that number of years; and as the Spaniards were on this part of the coaſt in 1775, it is very probable that theſe poor wretches caught this fatal infection. They were amongſt them in the height of ſummer, and probably they caught the diſorder about the month of Auguſt. To ſee their manner of living at that ſeaſon of the year, one would think it a miracle that any of them eſcaped with their lives: men, women and children were all huddled together in a cloſe houſe near a large fire, and entirely ſurrounded with ſtinking fiſh: round the houſe, for at leaſt one hundred yards, and all along the banks of a little creek that ran down by this miſerable dwelling, were ſtrewed with ſtinking fiſh; and in ſeveral places were beds of maggots a foot deep, and ten or twelve feet in circumference; nay, the place had ſuch a dreadfully offenſive ſmell, that even the young Indian himſelf, though habituated to ſuch wretched ſcenes from his earlieſt infancy, having now been abſent a few days, could not bear it, but earneſtly entreated the captain to return on board.

The ſufferings of the poor Indians, when the diſorder was at its height, muſt have been inconceivable; and no doubt the country was nearly depopulated, it being at preſent very thinly inhabited. A number of the Indians who came into the Sound from the eaſtward were marked with the ſmall-pox, and one man in particular had loſt an eye by that diſorder; but none of the natives from the weſtward had the leaſt traces of it. Theſe circumſtances make it probable that the veſſel, from which theſe unfortunate Indians caught the infection, was in a harbour ſomewhere about Cape Edgecombe; and none of the natives to the weſtward of this ſound having any intercourſe with her, by that means happily eſcaped the diſorder.

On the 13th another party of the ſhip's company went on ſhore to recreate themſelves. They alſo brought home ſome Indian tea: ſome very fine ſea-otter ſkins were alſo purchaſed of the natives this day.

On the 14th every perſon was employed, ſome in wooding and watering, and others in fiſhing; the carpenters in ſawing cedar, &c.

On the 15th, the long-boat returned from her expedition to the eaſtward of Cape Edgecombe, when they had brought ſome pretty good ſea-otter ſkins. The people with whom they bartered had a number of articles, the ſame as thoſe on board the King George; ſuch as tin kettles, rings, &c. ſo that it was pretty evident the Charlotte had been in that neighbourhood. Whilſt they were at anchor, and buſied in putting the boat to rights, ſome of the Indians cut their cable, and afterwards made for the ſhore. The people in the long-boat purſued them, and deſtroyed their canoes; but the Indians fled into the woods with precipitation. On the long-boat's return, James Blake, one of the people, fell overboard, but was providentially ſaved by another of the crew, John M'Coy, ſwimming to him with an oar, by which he kept himſelf above water till they got him on board.

On the 16th and 17th the people were employed as uſual, and on the 18th, Captain Portlock went in the whale-boat to ſurvey part of the ſound, and landing in a ſmall bay, found a ſort of monument, erected probably to the memory of ſome diſtinguiſhed chief. This edifice was compoſed of four poſts, each about twenty feet long, and ſtuck in the ground, about ſix feet diſtant from each other. About twelve feet from the ground there was a rough boarded floor, in the middle of which, an Indian cheſt was depoſited; and on that part of the edifice which pointed up the ſound, there was painted the reſemblance of a human face. As none of the inhabitants were near, they intended to examine the cheſt; but on one of the boat's crew attempting to get up for that purpoſe, the whole fabric had like to have given way, on which he deſiſted, as Captain Portlock was not willing to deſtroy a building that probably was looked on by the Indians as ſacred. The captain returned on board in the afternoon: during his abſence Mr. Hill had purchaſed a few excellent ſkins.

On the 20th, their late viſiter from the N. W. made his appearance in a large boat, along with about twenty men and women, and twelve children. This ſuppoſed chief came along-ſide with great parade, and ſinging in their uſual way, and by way of addition, their ſinging was accompanied by inſtrumental muſic, ſuch as a large old cheſt for a drum, and two rattles. He was dreſſed in an old cloth cloak that formerly had been ſcarlet, with ſome old gold fringe about the ſhoulders, and ornamented with buttons down each ſide: with this coat, and his hair full of white down, (which they always wear when in full dreſs) he diſplayed great importance. He had beſides in his boat, another old dreſs that was compoſed of different coloured pieces, and worn chiefly by his wife. The chief did not produce any thing for ſale, but ſoon went on ſhore, probably to ſort his trade, for he ſoon returned; but did not come on board until he had entertained them with ſinging; during which time, the chief acted different characters, and always changed his dreſs for each repreſentation; at the ſame time, ſome of his people held up a large mat by way of ſcene, to prevent them on board from ſeeing what was going on behind the curtain. At one time he appeared in the character of a warrior, with all the ferocity of an Indian about him; and at another time, he repreſented a woman, in which character he wore a very curious maſk, repreſenting a woman's face. After this entertainment was over, the chief and ſome of his people went on board, and trade commenced. During the day, Captain Portlock bought about twenty-five pieces of good ſea-otter ſkins; but the chief traded in ſo very tedious a manner, that he could not purchaſe the whole of his furs before the evening came on. The chief remained on board with one of his people; and as he required a hoſtage, Joſeph Woodcock was ſent on ſhore with his party.

Woodcock having frequently been on ſhore as an hoſtage, was well known to the natives, and they ſeemed very fond of his company. On one of theſe occaſions, he remained amongſt the Indians for three days, during which time he had an opportunity of ſeeing their cuſtoms and mode of living. Their filth and naſtineſs were beyond conception; their food, which conſiſted chiefly of fiſh, was mixed up with ſtinking oil, and other ingredients equally diſagreeable; and the remains of every meal were thrown into a corner of their hut, upon a heap of the ſame kind that was in a ſtate of putrefaction, which, together with large quantities of fat and ſtinking oil, cauſed a very loathſome and offenſive ſmell; and what rendered it ſtill worſe, the ſame apartment ſerved them both to eat and ſleep in.

This uncomfortable ſituation, frequently induced Woodcock to take a ramble into the woods; but he was always narrowly watched by ſome of his new companions, who ſeemed to apprehend that he was endeavouring to make his eſcape from them. Once in particular, having rambled a conſiderable diſtance from the Indians place of reſidence, he begun to amuſe himſelf with whiſtling, not expecting, if the natives heard him, it could poſſibly be a matter of offence; but in this he was miſtaken, for ſeveral of them immediately ran up to him and inſiſted upon his giving over: at firſt he did not comprehend their meaning, and went on with his whiſtling; however, one of them ſoon put a ſtop to it, by laying his hand on Woodcock's mouth, being apprehenſive that he meant the whiſtling as a ſignal for ſome of his companions to come for him. Except their watching him ſo cloſely, they always treated him with great kindneſs, and at meal-times gave him what they conſidered as choice dainties; mixing his fiſh with plenty of ſtinking oil, which in their opinion gave it an additional and moſt agreeable reliſh; and he found it no eaſy matter to perſuade them to let him eat his fiſh without ſauce.

On the 21ſt trade again commenced, and the chief at laſt diſpoſed of all his furs. Captain Portlock finding the adjacent neighbourhood was ſtript of all their furs, determined to go to ſea the firſt opportunity. Accordingly, in the morning of the 22d, they weighed anchor, and ſtood out of the Sound.

This party from the N. W. were much more addicted to thieving than any of the Indians in the Sound; and it was aſtoniſhing to ſee with what patience they would wait, when once they had fixed on any thing to ſteal, and with what dexterity they would convey their booty away. One fellow took a liking to Captain Portlock's drinking-mug, and he got it under his frock; but, unfortunately for the poor fellow, it happened to be half full of beer, a part of which ſpilling over, diſcovered the thief. Notwithſtanding two people were conſtantly in the cabin to watch the Indians, one fellow found an opportunity to get a cutlaſs under his frock, and was not diſcovered till he was going down the ſide of the ſhip; and another found means to ſteal four pair of worſted ſtockings, with which he got out of the ſhip undiſcovered. The men are about the ſize of Europeans: their aſpect is fierce and ſavage; this and their dreſs give them an appearance of warriors. They uſe daggers, and long-pointed ſpears; are eaſily provoked, and are very vindictive when enraged. On account of ſome trifling diſagreements in trade, the captain was frequently threatened: however, as he kept his piſtols ready charged before him, he was prudently guarded againſt any violent attack. Theſe natives, it is ſuppoſed, are unacquainted with polygamy, as not even a chief was ſeen with more than one woman, to whom he appeared particularly attentive and affectionate.

The women at this Sound, (which has obtained the name of Portlock's Harbour) disfigure themſelves in a moſt extraordinary manner, by making an inciſion in the under lip, in which they wear a piece of wood of an oval form: they wear them large in proportion to their age, and ſome old women had them as large as a tea-ſaucer. The weight of this trencher weighs the lip down, and leaves all the lower teeth entirely expoſed; which gives them a very diſagreeable appearance. When eating, they generally take more in the mouth than they can ſwallow, and after maſticating it, they put part on the piece of wood, and take it in occaſionally as they empty their mouths. The children have their lips bored when about two years old, and wear a piece of copper-wire to prevent it from cloſing; this they wear until they are about fourteen years old, when they take out the wire and introduce a piece of wood nearly the ſize of a button. Both ſexes (as is the general characteriſtic among the Indians) are addicted to indolence and lazineſs, are fond of dirt and filth, and differ but little in their manners and cuſtoms from thoſe of Prince William's Sound: were it not for their naſtineſs, the women are very engaging; their carriage is modeſt, and their features in general pleaſing. Their apparel is the ſame of that worn by the men. Long hair is deemed a great ornament: the women wear theirs either clubbed behind, or tied up in a bunch on the crown of their head: the men wear theirs ſometimes tied, but more generally looſe, dreſſed with birds' down. The wives dreſs their huſbands' hair, and alſo keep their treaſures. The men and women eat together.

On the 22d they weighed, and came to ſail; the next day they cleared the rocks, and on the 24th they ſtood to the S. W. by S. the land in ſight; the wind S. E. by S. the weather thick and rainy. Nothing remarkable occurred during their paſſage from the coaſt to Sandwich Iſlands. Sept. 27th they ſaw Owhyhee, about eight leagues diſtant.

On the 28th they were viſited by ſeveral canoes, who brought in great abundance the different productions of their iſland. A quantity of hogs, vegetables, &c. were purchaſed.

The King George now left Owhyhee, and puſhed on for Attoui.

On the 1ſt of October, after it was dark, ſeveral Indians were heard calling after the Engliſh, and preſently a canoe was ſeen paddling towards the veſſel: ſhe was from Mowee, but had nothing to diſpoſe of; after ſtaying a few minutes along-ſide the ſhip, ſhe returned towards the ſhore. This canoe was ſo very ſmall, that ſhe could hardly contain the two men who were in her.

October 3d, they were about two leagues from the ſouth point of Attoui; on which they edged away for Wymoa Bay. In running along-ſhore they met with ſeveral canoes, from whom it was underſtood that their king was at Oneehow, and that before he left the iſland he had tabooed the hogs. Capt. Portlock was alſo informed, that the Nootka and Queen Charlotte had been at that iſland; that the former did not anchor, but proceeded to Oneehow, where ſhe lay; and that the latter remained but two days in the bay. The captain was likewiſe informed, that Captain Dixon had left a letter for him with Abbenooe, which lay at his houſe in Wymoa. This induced the captain to ſtretch in for the bay, and being about a mile from the ſhore, brought the maintop-ſail to the maſt.

Tahiree the king's ſon came on board, and informed the captain that the letter was tabooed in the houſe, conſequently the captain muſt wait till Abbenooe arrived, or ſent directions for its delivery. As this was the caſe, Captain Portlock bore away for Oneehow, where he came to anchor on the 4th, with a view of procuring all the yams that he could, until the meſſenger who was ſent for the letter arrived. The king's ſon and a chief of ſome conſequence, named Tabooaraanee, accompanied the captain to Oneehow.

About two in the afternoon, the king, Abbenooe, and ſeveral chiefs, came on board, and brought with them a quantity of yams and potatoes. Tabooaraanee the chief (who belonged to Owhyhee) was received very cordially by the king and his people. Abbenooe informed Captain Portlock, that the letter which was at Wymoa ſhould be ſent for immediately, and inſiſted upon the captain's ſtaying at Oneehow, till the meſſenger returned, which would be in the courſe of thirty-ſix hours. A canoe was accordingly diſpatched for it, and during its ſtay a briſk trade was carried on: they were likewiſe ſupplied with water by the natives. The captain's boats returned in the evening, not having made any great purchaſe. One of the crew had loſt his ſhoe in the ſurf, and Abbenooe being informed of the place where he had dropt it, would, in ſpite of all intreaties to the contrary, go in ſearch thereof, though it was now evening, and the wind blowing very freſh: for this old man obſerved that one ſhoe was of no uſe, and accordingly he went to ſeek it. In leſs than an hour he returned with the ſhoe and buckle, and exulted not a little upon his ſucceſs.

The time was now diverted with different accounts: Tabooaraanee the chief, informed Captain Portlock that he was preſent when Captain Cook was killed. A great number of the people were wounded from the fire at different times, the majority of whom periſhed. Several of the chiefs upon the return of the Engliſh, were afraid that they came to reſent their countryman's fall. The chief alſo ſhowed the captain a dagger, ſimilar to that with which Captain Cook ſuffered. This chief was a tall, well-made, handſome fellow.

On the 6th, there was a letter brought on board by a chief, which was left by a Mr. David Roſs, chief mate of the Nootka. This day they had completed their watering.

On the 7th the meſſenger whom Abbenooe ſent for Capt. Dixon's letter, returned from Attoui. It was immediately delivered to Capt. Portlock.

The following are Captain Portlock's ſentiments upon the inhabitants and iſland, with his directions to other navigators. As to a minute deſcription of the natives, their perſons, houſes, canoes, cuſtoms, civil, military and religious, he refers the reader to the voyages of Captains Cook and King, which voyages the reader will find more ample and ſatisfactory in this work than in any other edition.

"I adviſe all thoſe whoſe buſineſs may lead them to theſe iſlands, for the purpoſe of watering and refreſhing, to make the iſland of Owhyhee, a little to the ſouthward of the eaſt point, and run down the ſouth ſide of the iſland: there is no danger but what ſhews itſelf, nor indeed did I perceive any that lay half a mile from the ſhore, until you come the length of the ſouth point. There is off that point a reef that runs off about a mile, which is eaſily diſcovered by breakers and coloured water. In this run you may get ſmall hogs and vegetables enough for preſent ſupply; and after hauling round the ſouth point you will begin to get a ſupply of ſalt, which article cannot be procured at the eaſtern part of the iſland; I mean not after you get to the eaſtward and northward of Karakakooa Bay; and as you draw towards Karakakooa, you will get a plentiful ſupply of fine hogs, bread-fruit, and ſweet potatoes, taro, ſugar-cane, and cocoa-nuts.

"This iſland is not famous for the ſweet-root; and between Karakakooa and the ſouth point you may procure all the refreſhments the iſland affords, and you may alſo get the natives to bring off freſh water enough for preſent uſe. Take care they do not cheat you, by filling their callabaſhes with ſalt water, which they will do, and ſell it, if you are not careful in taſting: ſeveral of my people were cheated this way. And hereabouts is the ſituation I would recommend for ſalting pork; you will have the open and unconfined air, and at the ſame time moderate breezes and ſmooth water, which enable the canoes to come off with greater care and ſafety with their hogs and ſalt.

"From this part I would adviſe the navigator to run for the weſt end of Ranai, (the bearings and diſtances of theſe iſlands from each other will be found by conſulting the chart of them in Capt. Cook's laſt voyage) and from that point ſail directly for the weſt point of Morotoi. Should night come on, there is anchorage to the northward of the weſt point of Morotoi, ſheltered from the prevailing winds. After leaving this iſland, ſail directly for the S. E. point of Woahoo, and on rounding that point anchor in King George's Bay. If found neceſſary to ſtay there any time, it would be adviſeable to buoy the cables. At this iſland I would adviſe the watering and wooding buſineſs to be done, not by ſending on ſhore for either article, but by encouraging the natives to bring them to the veſſel.

"To give any further directions reſpecting the navigation among theſe iſlands would be ſuperfluous, as every particular on that head may be collected from the detail of occurrences during our ſecond viſit to them. I cannot help obſerving, that I think their ſituation and produce may be productive of material benefit to our new ſettlement at Botany Bay, and at the ſame time be a conſiderable ſaving to government in the articles of proviſions, which may be purchaſed here at a trifling expence."

On the 4th of November they paſſed the iſlands of Saypan and Tinian. The white cattle, which Lord Anſon ſays the iſland of Tinian ſo much abounds with, were ſeen grazing on the plains. Both theſe iſlands appeared remarkably beautiful, on account of their abounding in trees.

From this to the 18th, nothing material happened. Early this morning they were ſurrounded by a number of Chineſe fiſhing-boats; and ſoon afterwards a Chineſe veſſel was ſeen ſteering towards them. They ſhortened ſail, and a boat was ſent on board her for a pilot: ſhe ſoon returned with one, who having made his terms with captain Portlock, conveyed the ſhip to Macao-roads.

On the 20th, at half paſt ten, they came to anchor with the beſt bower, in nine fathoms, muddy bottom. The city of Macao bearing N. W. half N. diſtant about ſix leagues.

On the 21ſt they weighed and ſtood towards Macao, and at half paſt four anchored with the beſt bower in four fathoms and a half, muddy bottom, in Macao-road. The town bearing E. by S. three leagues diſtant. The whale-boat was ſent on ſhore to Macao at five in the morning: ſhe returned with a letter from Capt. Dixon, whoſe adventures during this ſeparation ſhall be the ſubject of our two ſucceeding chapters.

CHAPTER III.

Proceedings of the Queen Charlotte—Anchorage—Deſcription and Name of the Harbour—Viſited by the Natives—Their Character—Manners, Ornaments, &c.—Deſcription of their Huts—Singular Way of depoſiting their Dead—Their Language—Scarcity of Furs, &c.—The Queen Charlotte weighs Anchor—Arrives at Norfolk Sound—Deſcription of the Place—Various Remarks upon the Natives, &c.—The Veſſel weighs Anchor—Proceeds along the Coaſt—Anchorage—Deſcription of Port Banks—Various Tranſactions—Departure—Meet with Natives—A briſk Trade—Heppah Iſland diſcovered—Remarks—Trade kept up—Deſcription of one of the Chiefs—The Indians attempt to ſteal Furs—Two Engliſh Veſſels met—Brief Account of the American Coaſt—Character of the Natives, &c.

WHEN the Queen Charlotte took leave of the King George, ſhe kept coaſting along, in hopes of meeting with an harbour on her paſſage to King George's Sound. Nothing material occurred till the 22d of May, when there being every ſign of an inlet, and conſequently a likelihood of meeting with inhabitants and a good trade, Capt. Dixon was determined to try it; but as the weather was very unfavourable, the examination was poſtponed till the next morning, when about ſix o'clock the whale-boat was hoiſted out, and Mr. Turner, the ſecond mate, ſent into the bay, which bore N. N. E. for the purpoſe of finding an anchoring-place.

In about two hours Mr. Turner returned, and informed the captain that he had diſcovered an excellent harbour, and ſeen a number of inhabitants. Upon this the yaul was hoiſted out, and ſent a-head with the whale-boat, in order to tow the veſſel into the bay; but, after ſtruggling for ſome time, they found all their towing was to no purpoſe, as the tide was very ſtrong againſt them. They then began to warp up the bay; but their progreſs was very ſlow, as it was eight o'clock in the evening when they came to anchor with the ſmall bower, in 65 fathoms water, over a muddy bottom, about a mile's diſtance from ſhore.

While warping into the bay, they were viſited by ſeveral canoes. Thoſe canoes were quite different from thoſe in Prince William's Sound, being conſtructed altogether of wood, much in the form of the Engliſh whale-boats, and finiſhed in a very neat manner.

On the 24th there were a great number of natives ſeen on the beach, near the entrance of a narrow creek, which appeared to lead a great diſtance into the country, and widened as it advanced in ſhore. Thoſe natives made ſignals to the Engliſh to come on ſhore. There was alſo a ſmoke ſeen at a ſmall diſtance round the point, proceeding from behind ſome pines: the captain imagining this to be the chief reſidence of the Indians, went in the whale-boat to ſurvey the place, in hopes of finding a more convenient anchorage: he met with ſeveral inhabitants, and a few temporary huts. They weighed anchor at eight o'clock, and began to ply into the harbour to the northward, having now a freſh eaſterly breeze. In the forenoon they anchored in eight fathom water, over a ſoft muddy bottom, cloſe to the ſhore, and very near two large huts. In this harbour they were comfortably ſheltered from wind and weather, being completely land-locked. The iſlands which ſurrounded, were entirely free from ſnow: thoſe iſlands formed ſeveral creeks and harbours. There was ſome high mountainous land to the northward and weſtward covered with ſnow, and which appeared to be part of the continent: there were a great many pine-trees of different ſpecies, witch-hazel, bruſhwood, &c. Their vegetation was at preſent in too young a ſtate to admit of any judgment on its quality. There were ſeveral ſhrubs of different kinds ſpringing up: alſo a few wild-geeſe and ducks, which the captain occaſionally ſhot, to the great ſurprize of the inhabitants. This harbour, which was in latitude 59 deg. 32 min. N. and in longitude 140 deg. W. was named by Capt. Dixon Port Mulgrave, in honour of the Right Honourable Lord Mulgrave.

During their ſtay here, they were conſtantly viſited by the natives. They were greatly pleaſed at the arrival of the ſhip; and underſtanding that they were come for furs, an old man brought ten excellent ſea-otter ſkins, which he ſold for towees. This circumſtance, together with their ſeeing very few ornaments amongſt the Indians, gave them reaſon to expect a good traffic; but a few days convinced them that their conjectures were built on a ſandy foundation, for they procured very few valuable furs, and the Indians were remarkably tedious in their trading: four or ſix of them would come along-ſide in a canoe, and wait an hour before they produced any thing to ſell; they then by ſignificant ſhrugs, would hint at having ſomething to diſpoſe of, and wiſh to ſee what would be given in exchange, even before their commodity was expoſed to view. If this manœuvre did not ſucceed, a few trifling pieces of old ſea-otter ſkins were produced, and a conſiderable time was taken up in concluding the bargain. This harbour was calculated to contain about ſeventy inhabitants, including women and children; they in general are about the middle-ſize; their limbs ſtraight and well-ſhaped; but like the other inhabitants on the coaſt, are particularly fond of painting their faces with a variety of colours; ſo that it is no eaſy matter to diſcover their real complexion: however, one woman was prevailed on by perſuaſion and a trifling preſent, to waſh her face and hands, and the alteration it made in her appearance was abſolutely ſurpriſing; her countenance had all the chearful glow of an Engliſh milk-maid; and the healthy red which fluſhed her cheek, was even beautifully contraſted with the whiteneſs of her neck: her eyes were black and ſparkling; her eye-brows the ſame colour, and moſt beautifully arched; her forehead ſo remarkably clear, that the tranſlucent veins were ſeen meandring even in their minuteſt branches: in ſhort, ſhe was what would be reckoned handſome, even in England. But this ſymmetry of features is entirely deſtroyed by a cuſtom extremely ſingular, and which has never been mentioned by any navigators whatever: an aperture is made in the thick part of the under-lip, and increaſed by degrees in a line parallel with the mouth, and equally long. In this aperture, a piece of wood is conſtantly wore, of an elliptical form, about half an inch thick; the ſuperficies not flat, but hollowed out on each ſide like a ſpoon, but not quite ſo deep; the edges are likewiſe hollowed in the form of a pulley, in order to fix this precious ornament more firmly in the lip, which by this means is frequently extended at leaſt three inches horizontally, and conſequently diſtorts every feature in the lower part of the face. This curious piece of wood is worn only by the women, and ſeems to be conſidered as a mark of diſtinction, it not being worn by all indiſcriminately, but only by thoſe who appeared in a ſuperior ſtation to the reſt.

Their huts are the moſt wretched that can be conceived: they are formed of a few poles ſtuck in the ground, without order or regularity, encloſed and covered with looſe boards; and ſo little care is taken in their conſtruction, that they are quite inſufficient to keep out the ſnow or rain; the numerous chinks and crannies ſerve, however, to let out the ſmoke, no particular aperture being left for that purpoſe. The inſide of theſe dwellings exhibits a complete picture of dirt and filth, indolence and lazineſs; in one corner are thrown the bones and remaining fragments of victuals left at their meals; in another, are heaps of fiſh, pieces of ſtinking fleſh, greaſe, oil, &c. In ſhort, the whole ſerved to ſhew in how wretched a ſtate it is poſſible for human beings to exiſt; and yet theſe people appear contented with their ſituation, and probably enjoy a greater portion of tranquillity than is to be found under the gilded roofs of the moſt deſpotic monarch. 'Tis probable, that the chief reaſon why theſe Indians take no greater pains in the ſtructure of their habitations is, that their ſituation is merely temporary; no ſooner does the maſter of a tribe find game begin to grow ſcarce, or fiſh not ſo plentiful as he expected, than he takes down his hut, puts the boards into his canoe, and paddles away to ſeek out for a ſpot better adapted to his various purpoſes; which having found, he preſently erects his dwelling in the ſame careleſs manner as before.

The whale-boat was one day ſent out with ſeven people to catch halibut, which are very plentiful at this place, but their ſucceſs was greatly inferior to that of two Indians who were fiſhing at the ſame time; which is rather extraordinary, if we conſider the apparent inferiority of their tackle to that of Captain Dixon's people. Their hook is a large ſimple piece of wood, the ſhank at leaſt half an inch in diameter; that part which turns up, and which forms an acute angle, is conſiderably ſmaller, and brought gradually to a point; a flat piece of wood, about ſix inches long, and near two inches wide, is neatly laſhed to the ſhank, on the back of which is rudely carved the repreſentation of an human face. 'Tis not likely that this was altogether intended as an ornament to their hooks, but that it is intended as a kind of Deity to inſure their ſucceſs in fiſhing, which is conducted in a ſingular manner: they bait their hook with a kind of fiſh, called by the ſailors *ſquids*, and having ſunk it to the bottom, they fix a bladder to the end of the line as a buoy, and ſhould that not watch ſufficiently, they add another. One man is ſufficient to look after five or ſix of theſe lines: when he perceives a fiſh bite he is in no great hurry to haul up his line, but gives him time to be well hooked, and when the fiſh is hauled up to the ſurface of the water, he knocks him on the head with a ſhort club provided for that purpoſe, and afterwards ſtows his prize away at his leiſure. This is done to prevent the halibut (which ſometimes are very large) from damaging, or perhaps upſetting his canoe in their dying ſtruggles.

They dreſs their victuals by putting heated ſtones into a kind of wicker-baſket, amongſt pieces of fiſh, ſeal, porpoiſe, &c. and covered up cloſe; ſometimes they make broth, and fiſh-ſoup by the ſame method, which they always preferred to boiling; though Captain Dixon gave them ſome braſs pans, and pointed out the mode of uſing them. The Indians are particularly fond of chewing a plant which appears to be a ſpecies of tobacco; not content, however, with chewing it in its ſimple ſtate, they generally mix lime along with it, and ſometimes the inner rind of the pine-tree, together with a reſinous ſubſtance extracted from it. About a mile and a half from where the ſhip lay at anchor were a number of white rails, on a level piece of ground; at that diſtance they appeared to be conſtructed with ſuch order and regularity, that Captain Dixon concluded them beyond the reach of Indian contrivance, and conſequently, that they were erected by ſome civilized nation: willing to be ſatisfied in this particular, he took an opportunity of going to the ſpot, and to his great ſurprize, found it to be a kind of burying-place, if that it may be called ſo, where dead bodies are not depoſited in the earth.

The manner in which they diſpoſe of their dead is very remarkable: they ſeparate the head from the body, and wrapping them in furs, the head is put into a ſquare box, and the body into a kind of oblong cheſt. At each end of the cheſt which contains the body, a thick pole, about ten feet long, is drove into the earth in a ſlanting poſition, ſo that the upper ends meet together, and are firmly laſhed with a kind of rope prepared for that purpoſe. About two feet from the top of this arch, a ſmall piece of timber goes acroſs, and is very neatly fitted to each pole: on this piece of timber the box which contains the head is fixed, and ſtrongly ſecured with rope: the box is frequently decorated with two or three rows of ſmall ſhells, and ſometimes both, which are very neatly and ingeniouſly let into the wood, and is painted with various colours by way of additional ornaments; the poles, however, are uniformly painted white. Theſe poles are ſometimes fixed upright in the earth, and on each ſide the body; the head, however, is always ſecured in the manner already deſcribed. The Engliſh during their ſtay had no opportunity of learning what ceremony was made uſe of in thus depoſiting their dead.

Their language is quite different from that of Prince William's Sound, or Cook's River. It is very uncouth and difficult to pronounce. Theſe people are in general very cloſe and uncommunicative. It was ſome time before their ſcanty ſtock of furs was known, as they had cunning enough to conceal their poverty. The different ſorts of furs purchaſed here were the ſea-otter, land-beaver, and a few cloaks, made from the earleſs marmot. They were bought with towees, beads, &c. Their large canoes are by no means ſo neatly conſtructed as the ſmall one, being formed of one large tree, which is rudely excavated, and reduced to no particular ſhape; yet large enough to contain twelve or fourteen people.

The captain having got all the furs that were here to be purchaſed, determined on leaving Port Mulgrave the firſt opportunity. Accordingly on the 4th of June they carried a ſmall anchor a-head, and warped out of the harbour. Having then made ſail they ſtood out of the ſound.

The wind having kept to the eaſtward for ſeveral days they plied to the ſouthward. On the 10th the wind ſhifted to the S. W. and now they ſtood in for the coaſt. The next day they ſaw Cape Edgecombe, and they had the proſpect of an excellent harbour; but as night was far advanced they did not attempt to anchor.

On the 12th the whale-boat was hoiſted out, and ſent a-head to ſound. There was now a large boat full of people ſeen at a great diſtance; ſomething like a white flag was hoiſted up, and various conjectures were made of the people, ſome thinking them Ruſſians, others Spaniards. Upon a nearer view the boat proved to be an Indian canoe, and the ſuppoſed flag was a tuft of white feathers, which was erected by theſe Indians on the top of a pole as a ſignal of friendſhip and peace. There were ſome furs purchaſed of theſe viſiters, who informed the captain that the adjacent harbour was very populous, and that there were a quantity of furs there. The whale-boat returned about ſix o'clock, when the yaul was hoiſted out, and both boats ſent a-head for the purpoſe of towing the veſſel into the bay.

They now ſtood right in for a bay, which they ſaw to the northward, and which appeared well ſheltered. The whale-boat was ſent out again, with Mr. Turner, up the ſound to look for a harbour, and the yaul was ſent into the bay a-head, with Mr. White, to examine the ſoundings. Mr. White returned firſt, and reported that there was excellent anchorage in eight to twelve fathoms, over a ſandy bottom. At twelve o'clock they came to anchor at eight fathoms. The whale-boat returned about four in the afternoon, and Mr. Turner reported that there were ſeveral good harbours, but that it was in general rocky bottom: the captain deemed it therefore beſt to keep his preſent ſituation. Mr. Turner further reported that he ſaw a large cave, formed by nature in the ſide of a mountain, about four miles to the northward of the anchoring-birth: curioſity prompted him to go on ſhore, in order to examine it, as there appeared ſomething, which, at a diſtance looked bright and ſparkling. On getting into the cave, he found the object which attracted his attention, to be a ſquare box, with a human head in it, depoſited in the manner already deſcribed at Port Mulgrave: the box was very beautifully ornamented with ſmall ſhells, and ſeemed to have been left there recently, being the only one in the place.

This harbour, which was called Norfolk Sound, is a very extenſive place; but how far it ſtretches to the northward is uncertain. The ſhore here, in common with the reſt of the coaſt, abounds with pines. There is alſo greater quantities of the witch-hazel here than had been hitherto met with. There were alſo various kinds of flowering-trees and ſhrubs; amongſt which were wild-gooſeberries, currents, and raſberries; wild-parſley is found in great plenty, and they frequently picked great quantities of it, which eat excellently, either as a ſallad, or boiled among ſoup. The ſaranne, or wild lilly-root, grows here in great plenty and perfection. There were very few wild-ducks or geeſe ſeen here, and thoſe ſhy and difficult of approach. Captain Dixon was frequently on ſhore with his fowling-piece, but he ſhot any thing that came in his way, indiſcriminately; his motive being rather to ſhew the Indians the effects of fire-arms, than to purſue game; and the event ſhewed that his intention was completely anſwered. The inhabitants frequently caught halibut: and large quantities of ſalmon were frequently ſeen hung up on ſhore to dry; but they were not willing to ſell it, which ſhews that fiſh is a principal and favourite article of food here: a few ſalmon, indeed, were bought, but they were of a very inferior kind to thoſe met with in Cook's River. Fiſh, however, being the only freſh proviſion in their power to obtain, the boat was frequently ſent out with ſix hands, to catch fiſh for the ſhip's company; and they were always tolerably ſucceſsful, catching great numbers of fine rock-fiſh, and ſome hake, but very few halibut. There are great quantities of muſcles in ſome parts of the ſound, together with a few crabs, ſtar-fiſh, &c.

On the 15th a number of canoes, full of inhabitants, came along-ſide: after a conſiderable time ſpent in ſinging, a briſk trade commenced, and they bought a number of ſea-otter ſkins. The people ſeemed far more lively and alert, than thoſe they had left at Port Mulgrave; and from every appearance, they had reaſon to expect an excellent trade at this place. Towees were the article of traffic held in the firſt eſtimation by the natives; but they always refuſed ſmall ones, wanting them in general from eight to fourteen inches long. Beſides theſe, they traded with pewter baſons, hatchets, howels, buckles, rings, &c. Of theſe, the baſons were beſt liked; for though the hatchets and howels were obviouſly the beſt tools theſe people could poſſibly have had, yet they were only taken in exchange for furs of inferior value. Beads of every ſort were conſtantly refuſed with contempt, when offered by way of barter, and would ſcarcely be accepted of as preſents. Amongſt the people who came to trade, was an old man, who ſeemed remarkably intelligent: he gave them to underſtand, that a good while ago there had been two veſſels at anchor near this place, one of which was conſiderably larger than the Queen Charlotte; that they carried a great number of guns, and that the people reſembled them in colour and dreſs. He ſhewed Captain Dixon a white ſhirt they had given him, and which he ſeemed to regard as a great curioſity: on examining it, the captain found it to be made after the Spaniſh faſhion, and immediately judged theſe veſſels deſcribed by the Indian to be Spaniards, who were on this coaſt in 1775. Though trade principally engaged Captain Dixon's attention, yet a variety of neceſſary employments were carried on, and parties were frequently ſent on ſhore to cut fire-wood, fill water, &c. &c.

Though the natives were very civil at firſt, and ſuffered the people to follow their various employments unmoleſted; yet they ſoon grew very troubleſome, attempting to pick their pockets, and even to ſteal their ſaws and axes, in the moſt open and daring manner: indeed they could ſcarcely be reſtrained from theſe proceedings without violence; which it was neither the captain's intereſt or inclination to offer, if it could poſſibly be avoided. Luckily, the natives had frequently ſeen him ſhoot birds, and as the people went on ſhore well armed, the ſight of a few muſkets kept the Indians in a kind of awe.

The number of inhabitants were eſtimated at four hundred and fifty, including women and children. Their make, ſhape, and features, are pretty much the ſame with thoſe at Port Mulgrave. Their faces are alſo painted with a variety of colours. The women ornament, or rather diſtort their lips, in the ſame manner as has already been deſcribed; and it ſhould ſeem, that the female who is ornamented with the largeſt piece of wood, is moſt reſpected by her friends, and the community in general. This curious operation of cutting the under-lip of the females never takes place during their infancy, but ſeems confined to a peculiar period of life. When the girls arrive at the age of fourteen or fifteen, the center of the under-lip, in the thick part of the mouth, is ſimply perforated, and a piece of copper-wire introduced to prevent the aperture from cloſing: the aperture afterwards is lengthened from time to time in a line parallel with the mouth, and the wooden ornaments are enlarged in proportion, till they are frequently increaſed to three, and even four inches in length, and nearly as wide; but this generally happens when the matron is advanced in years, and conſequently the muſcles are relaxed. Their traffic, and indeed all their concerns, appear to be conducted with great order and regularity: they conſtantly came along-ſide to trade at day-light in the morning: and never failed to ſpend more than half an hour in ſinging, before the traffic commenced. The chief of a tribe has the entire management of all the trade belonging to his people, and takes infinite pains to diſpoſe of their furs advantageouſly. Should a different tribe come along-ſide to trade whilſt he is engaged in traffic, they wait with patience till he has done; and if, in their opinion, he has made a good market, they frequently employ him to ſell their ſkins; ſometimes, indeed, they are jealous of each other, and uſe every precaution to prevent their neighbours from obſerving what articles they obtain in exchange for their commodities. About twelve o'clock they conſtantly left the ſhip and went on ſhore, where they ſtaid about an hour, which time was taken up in eating. This evidently ſhews that they have at leaſt one *fixed* meal in the day, and that it is regulated by the ſun: they likewiſe frequently left the ſhip about four in the afternoon; but this time was not ſo exactly obſerved as at noon. When the traffic of the day is pretty well over they begin to ſing, and never leave off till the approach of night: thus beginning and ending the day in the ſame manner. One peculiar cuſtom is practiſed by the traders here, totally different from that of any other part of the coaſt: the moment a chief has concluded a bargain, he repeats the word *Coo Coo* thrice, with quickneſs, and is immediately anſwered by all the people in his canoe, with the word *Whoah*, pronounced in a tone of exclamation, but with greater or leſs energy, in proportion as the bargain he has made is approved of. One of the chiefs, who came one day with ſome furs, happening to caſt his eyes on a piece of Sandwich Iſland cloth, which hung up in the ſhrouds to dry, became very importunate to have it given him. The man to whom the cloth belonged parted with it very willingly, and the Indian was perfectly overjoyed with his preſent. After ſelling what furs he had brought with great diſpatch, he immediately left the ſhip and paddled on ſhore, without ſinging a parting ſong, as is generally the cuſtom.

Early the next morning he appeared along-ſide dreſſed in a coat made of the Sandwich Iſland cloth, given him the day before, and cut exactly in the form of their ſkin-coats, which greatly reſembled a waggoner's frock, except the collar and wriſt-bands. The Indian was very proud of his newly-acquired dreſs; and the captain greatly pleaſed with this proof of theſe people's ingenuity and diſpatch. The coat fitted exceedingly well; the ſeams were ſewed with all the ſtrength the cloth would admit of, and with a degree of neatneſs equal to that of an Engliſh mantua-maker.

On their endeavouring to get the meaning of ſome words in the Indian language from one of the chiefs, and pointing to the ſun, he gave them to underſtand, that notwithſtanding their apparent ſuperiority, in poſſeſſing various uſeful articles which the Indians did not, yet that their origin was the ſame; that they both came from above, and that the ſun animated and kept alive every creature in the univerſe. This man had, no doubt, ſome idea of a Supreme Being; and if the probability of their morning and evening hymn, being intended as a kind of adoration to that Supreme Being, be admitted, it will ſerve to give no very inadequate idea of their religion. Beſides their ordinary dreſs, the natives at this place have a peculiar kind of cloaks, made purpoſely to defend themſelves from the inclemency of the weather; they appear to be made of reeds, ſewed very cloſely together, and are exactly the ſame with thoſe wore by the inhabitants of New Zealand. The furs purchaſed at this place were about 200 excellent ſea-otter ſkins, a good quantity of inferior pieces of ſea-otter, together with a large parcel of indifferent pieces and ſlips; about 100 good ſeals, and a great number of fine beaver tails.

On the 22d Capt. Dixon determined to leave the harbour the firſt opportunity; and the next day, a light breeze coming on from the weſtward, they weighed and got under ſail. It was the captain's intention to keep well in with the land all along the coaſt, in order to examine every place where there was a probability of finding inhabitants. At ſix o'clock, a fine entrance preſenting itſelf to the E. N. E. they ſtood in for it, and ſoon afterwards came to anchor in a ſecure harbour, completely land-locked, and within muſket-ſhot of the ſhore. Though this appeared a moſt eligible ſpot for the natives to take up their abode in, yet no people were to be ſeen; on this a four-pounder was fired in the evening, in order to excite the curioſity of the inhabitants, if there ſhould be any within hearing.

On the 24th Capt. Dixon went in the whale-boat to look for inhabitants in the adjacent creeks and harbours. A paſſage up a corner of the bay, to the eaſtward of their ſtation, firſt engaged his attention; but he returned without ſucceſs. The creek run a conſiderable diſtance inland, and terminated at the foot of a mountain, from whence it received a copious ſupply of freſh water. Near this place were the veſtiges of an Indian hut, which ſeemed to have been recently taken away, and probably had been the reſidence of ſome hunting party. Various kinds of flowers and flowering ſhrubs were ſpringing up in the valley near the rivulet, and though no inhabitants were found here, yet the place ſeems peculiarly eligible for a ſummer reſidence, and the more ſo as there is a probability of meeting with fine ſalmon in due ſeaſon. The captain called this harbour Port Banks, in honour of Sir Joſeph Banks. The land to the northward and ſouthward riſes to an elevation ſufficient to convey every idea of winter; and though its ſides are perpetually covered with ſnow, yet the numerous pines, which ever and anon pop out their buſhy heads, entirely diveſt it of that dreary and horrific caſt with the barren mountains to the N. W. of Cook's River. To the eaſtward, the land is conſiderably lower, and the pines appear to grow in the moſt regular and exact order; theſe, together with the buſh-woods and ſhrubs on the ſurrounding beaches, form a moſt beautiful contraſt to the higher land, and render the appearance of the whole both pleaſing and romantic.

On the 26th they weighed anchor, and as it was calm the boats were ſent a-head to tow the veſſel out of the bay. They now ſtood out of the harbour, keeping cloſe in with the coaſt.

On the 27th they ſaw land, which had the appearance of two rocky iſlands, bearing N. E. They ſteered directly for theſe, and on approaching the land flattered themſelves with the hope of meeting a fine bay; but Mr. Turner having been diſpatched in the whale-boat to examine it, on his return declared that the greateſt part thereof was ſhoal water, and that there was no convenient place for anchorage. The weather was now thick and hazy, and there were frequent ſqualls. They kept ſtanding to the ſouthward. On the 28th they ſaw land: from this time they plied occaſionally, the weather being ſtill hazy. On the 30th they ſaw an iſland to the northward, which bore from N. E. by E. to E. by N. about four leagues diſtant. On the 1ſt of July, about noon, they ſaw a deep bay, which bore N. E. by E. the extreme point to the northward N. E. by N. and the eaſternmoſt land S. E. about ſeven leagues diſtant. They made every effort to reach this bay, but without effect; however they ſtood in for the land cloſe by the wind, with their ſtarboard tacks on board.

About ſeven o'clock ſeveral canoes full of Indians came along-ſide the veſſel. Theſe diſplayed a quantity of excellent beaver cloaks, but which at firſt they did not ſeem inclined to diſpoſe of, though offered various articles in exchange by the Engliſh. They were ſo attentive in admiring the ſhip, that they could not liſten to any propoſals; but when their curioſity was gratified they then began to trade, and the captain, for the value of a few towees, was ſoon in poſſeſſion of all their ſkins, cloaks, &c. From theſe people the captain underſtood that the iſland was very thickly inhabited, and that there were plenty of furs to be had on ſhore.

The captain accordingly made for ſhore, and when within a mile thereof he perceived the village where theſe people dwelt: it conſiſted of about ſix huts, which were regularly built, and pleaſantly ſituated; but the ſhore being rocky, afforded no place for anchorage. They now advanced towards a promiſing bay, which opened to the eaſtward; but could not poſſibly make it, on account of the wind and tide: accordingly, they hove-to, for the ſake of trading with the natives, who by this time were aſſembled about the veſſel, in ten canoes, to the number of about 120. Several beautiful ſea-otter, and other excellent ſkins, were bought; and as all the natives were eager in ſelling their goods, a briſk trade was carried on. About 300 ſea-otter ſkins were purchaſed in one hour. As ſoon as buſineſs was over, they made ſail, and ſtood out for the bay, with the hopes of making the harbour the next morning.

On the 3d the ſame Indians repeated their viſit, but they had nothing now to diſpoſe of.

On the 5th, a freſh tribe of Indians came along-ſide, of whom were purchaſed a number of excellent cloaks. Theſe people bargained for pewter baſons, braſs pans, tin kettles, &c. but the other tribe preferred towees.

Capt. Dixon now judged it more advantageous to ply along-ſhore occaſionally than come to anchor, eſpecially as he had every reaſon to conclude that the natives did not live together in one ſocial community, but were ſcattered about in different tribes, and probably at enmity with each other. The Indians did not leave the ſhip till evening came on, and then promiſed to return the next morning with more furs; which they did, and which they diſpoſed of with the ſame facility as before. The furs in each canoe ſeemed to be a diſtinct property, and the people were particularly careful to prevent their neighbours from ſeeing what articles they bartered for. Meeting now with a freſh tribe of Indians, Capt. Dixon was convinced that coaſting along ſhore to the eaſtward was attended with better and ſpeedier ſucceſs than lying at anchor could poſſibly be.

On the 7th, being cloſe in-ſhore, a number of canoes were ſeen putting off; on which they ſhortened ſail, and lay-to for them. The place theſe people came from had a very ſingular appearance, and on examining it narrowly, it was found that they lived in a very large hut, built on a ſmall iſland, and well fortified after the manner of an hippah, on which account this place was diſtinguiſhed by the name of Hippah Iſland. The tribe who inhabit this hippah ſeem well defended by nature from any ſudden aſſault of their enemies; for the aſcent to it from the beach is ſteep, and difficult of acceſs: and the other ſides are well barricadoed with pines and bruſh-wood. Notwithſtanding which, they have been at infinite pains, in raiſing additional fences of rails and boards; ſo that they muſt ſurely repel any tribe who ſhould dare to attack their fortification. A number of circumſtances had occurred, ſince their firſt trading in Cloak Bay, which ſerved to ſhew that the inhabitants at this place were of a more ſavage diſpoſition, and had leſs intercourſe with each other, than any Indians met with on the coaſt; and there was great reaſon to ſuſpect that they were cannibals in ſome degree. Capt. Dixon no ſooner ſaw the fortified hut juſt mentioned, than this ſuſpicion was ſtrengthened, as it was, he ſaid, built exactly on the plan of the hippah of the ſavages at New Zealand. The people, on coming along-ſide, traded very quietly, and ſtrongly importuned thoſe of the Queen Charlotte to go on ſhore: at the ſame time giving them to underſtand, (pointing towards the eaſt) that if they viſited that part of the coaſt, the inhabitants there would cut off their heads.

A number of excellent cloaks, and ſome good ſkins, were purchaſed from this party, which conſiſted of not more than 36 people, and as they were well armed with knives and ſpears, it is probable they expected to meet their enemies, being equally prepared for war or trade.

Trade being over, Capt. Dixon proceeded to the eaſtward, and on the 9th fell in with another tribe of Indians; from whom he purchaſed ſome very good cloaks, and a few good ſkins. In one of the canoes was an old man, who appeared to have ſome authority over the reſt, though he had nothing to diſpoſe of: he gave them to underſtand, that in another part of theſe iſlands, (pointing to the eaſtward) he could procure a plentiful ſupply of furs: on which Capt. Dixon gave him a light-horſeman's cap; this preſent added greatly to his conſequence, and procured him the envy of his companions in the other canoes, who beheld the cap with a longing eye, and ſeemed to wiſh it in their poſſeſſion. There were likewiſe a few women amongſt them, who all ſeemed pretty well advanced in years: their under lips were diſtorted in the ſame manner as thoſe of the women at Port Mulgrave and Norfolk Sound, and the pieces of wood were particularly large. One of theſe lip-pieces appearing to be peculiarly ornamented, Captain Dixon wiſhed to purchaſe it, and offered the old woman to whom it belonged a hatchet; but this ſhe refuſed with contempt: towees, baſons, and ſeveral other articles, were afterwards ſhewn to her, and conſtantly rejected. The captain began now to deſpair of making his wiſhed-for purchaſe, and had nearly given it up, when one of the people happening to ſhew the old lady a few buttons, which looked remarkably bright, ſhe eagerly embraced the offer; and was now altogether as ready to part with her wooden ornament, as before ſhe was deſirous of keeping it. This curious lip-piece meaſured three and 7-8ths inches long, and two and 5-8ths inches in the wideſt part; it was inlaid with a ſmall pearly ſhell, round which was a rim of copper. In ſtanding along-ſhore to the eaſtward, they met with different tribes of Indians, with whom they traded much in the ſame manner as before.

They now kept cloſe in with the ſhore, and on the 13th were viſited by a freſh party, conſiſting of about 36; of whom ſome excellent ſkins and cloaks were purchaſed: when theſe Indians had diſpoſed of their articles, they could not be prevailed on to quit the veſſel, though ſhe was making ſail: however, on account of a thick fog which came on, they paddled away, being about eight miles from the coaſt. The weather continued thick and foggy from this to the 20th; during which time they met with ſeveral canoes, and purchaſed for knives, buckles, braſs pans, &c. ſome furs and cloaks, but of an inferior kind to thoſe hitherto bought.

On the 23d they met eight canoes, containing near a hundred people; of whom they purchaſed a few good cloaks and ſkins.

On the 24th eleven canoes came along-ſide, containing near 180 men, women, and children, which was by far the greateſt concourſe of people they had ſeen at any one time; but curioſity, it ſeems, had chiefly induced the natives to viſit the ſhip at that time, for they brought ſcarcely any thing to ſell: indeed, till now, they ſeldom had ſeen any women or children in the trading parties; for the men, probably expecting to meet with their adverſaries, for the moſt part left the women and children behind, that they might be out of danger.

The land which they had been cruiſing along for ſome time was now judged to be a group of iſlands; and as it was pretty evident that no more trade could be expected on that ſide, Capt. Dixon purpoſed ſtanding round a point to the S. E. in order to try what the oppoſite ſide afforded.

After proceeding round the point, they fell in with ſeveral tribes of Indians, who brought ſome very good furs: ſeveral of whom they knew to be their old friends.

On ſtanding round the iſlands, land was ſeen to the eaſtward, which they ſuppoſed to be the continent; and on the 29th, the tide ſetting out from that land, it frequently drove large patches of ſea-weed, long graſs, and pieces of wood, by the veſſel, which made them conclude that there is a large river ſetting out from that part of the coaſt. The river called Los Reys, by De Fonte, is near this place; and though what he ſays about it is almoſt incredible, yet, from the above circumſtance, it appears very probable that there are deep inlets into the country.

On the 29th no leſs than eighteen canoes came along-ſide, containing more than 200 people. This was not only the greateſt concourſe of traders they had ſeen, but what rendered the circumſtance additionally pleaſing was the great quantity of excellent furs they brought, and the facility with which they traded.

There was amongſt theſe traders an old chief, whom they had ſeen on the other ſide theſe iſlands, and who now appearing to be of the firſt conſequence, Captain Dixon permitted him to come on board. The moment he got on the quarter-deck, he began to tell a long ſtory, the purport of which was, that he had loſt in battle the cap which had been given him; and, by way of corroborating this circumſtance, he ſhewed ſeveral wounds which he had received in defending his property. Notwithſtanding this, he begged for another cap, intimating at the ſame time that he would never loſe it but with his life. The captain, willing to gratify his ambition, made him a preſent of another, and found it was not beſtowed in vain, for he became extremely uſeful to them in their traffic: whenever any diſpute or miſtake aroſe, in the unavoidable hurry occaſioned by ſo great a number of traders, they always referred the matter to him, and were conſtantly ſatisfied with his determination.

On Capt. Dixon pointing to the eaſtward, and aſking the old man whether any furs were to be procured there, he gave the captain to underſtand, that it was a different nation from his, and that he did not even underſtand their language, but was always at war with them; that he had killed great numbers, and had many of their heads in his poſſeſſion. The old fellow ſeemed to take particular pleaſure in relating theſe circumſtances, and took uncommon pains to make Capt. Dixon comprehend his meaning: he cloſed his relation with adviſing him not to go near that part of the coaſt, for that the inhabitants there would certainly deſtroy him and his people.

The captain endeavoured to learn how the Indians diſpoſed of the bodies of their enemies who were ſlain in battle; and though he could not clearly underſtand the chief, yet there is ſome reaſon to think that theſe poor wretches are feaſted on by the victors. The heads are always preſerved, as ſtanding trophies of victory.

This chief had the moſt ſavage aſpect of any yet ſeen; and his whole appearance ſufficiently marked him as a proper perſon to lead on a tribe of cannibals. His ſtature was above the common ſize; his body ſpare and thin; and though at firſt ſight he appeared lank and emaciated, yet his ſtep was bold and firm, and his limbs apparently ſtrong and muſcular; his eyes were large and goggling, and ſeemed ready to ſtart out of their ſockets; his forehead deeply wrinkled, not merely by age, but from a continual frown; all this, joined to a long viſage, hollow cheeks, high elevated cheek-bones, and a natural ferocity of temper, formed a countenance not eaſily beheld without ſome degree of emotion: however, he proved very uſeful, in conducting the traffic ſo as to give general ſatisfaction; and the intelligence he gave Captain Dixon, and the methods he took to make himſelf underſtood, ſhewed him to poſſeſs a ſtrong natural capacity. Beſides at leaſt 350 ſkins, which were procured from this party, they brought ſeveral racoon cloaks, each cloak conſiſting of ſeven racoon ſkins, neatly ſewed together;

they had alſo a good quantity of oil, in bladders of various ſizes, from a pint to a gallon: this was a moſt excellent ſort for the lamp, was perfectly ſweet, and chiefly collected from the fat of animals. Towards evening, theſe numerous tribes of Indians having diſpoſed of every ſaleable article, they left the ſhip and paddled for the ſhore.

On the 30th eight canoes came off to the ſhip, but they brought very few furs, and thoſe of an inferior quality, intimating at the ſame time that their ſtock was nearly exhauſted. Some of them had been out on a fiſhing party, and caught a number of halibut, which proved a ſeaſonable refreſhment to the ſhip's company.

Hitherto all the people that had been met with at theſe iſlands, though evidently of a ſavage diſpoſition, had behaved in a quiet, orderly manner; but this evening they gave a convincing proof of their miſchievous diſpoſition, and that in a manner which ſhewed a conſiderable degree of cunning. The people who had got the halibut to ſell artfully prolonged their traffic more than was cuſtomary, and endeavoured by various means to engage the attention of the people on board. In the mean time ſeveral canoes paddled ſlily a-ſtern, and ſeeing ſome ſkins piled againſt one of the cabin-windows, one of the Indians thruſt his ſpear through it, in order to ſteal the furs, but perceiving the noiſe alarmed thoſe on deck, they paddled away with precipitation: Capt. Dixon, however, willing to make them ſenſible that he was able to puniſh attempts of this ſort, even at a diſtance, ordered ſeveral muſkets to be fired after them, but did not perceive that they were attended with any fatal effects.

As no further trade was expected from this part, Capt. Dixon deemed it expedient to make for King George's Sound, eſpecially as the time was nearly at hand when he expected to join Captain Portlock at that place.

On the 1ſt of Auguſt they were viſited by a canoe which contained fourteen people: they had nothing to ſell, and came merely on purpoſe to inform the captain that one of their companions was dead, in conſequence of a wound he received when the muſquets were fired; but notwithſtanding they entertained no enmity againſt the Engliſh, and were ſtill willing to be on good terms with them. They did not betray the leaſt apprehenſion when they came along-ſide, but on the contrary, were very ſtrenuous in aſſuring the Engliſh that they were not at variance with them.

On the 2d Cape St. James bore S. S. W. about four leagues diſtant. In the afternoon at five o'clock the rocks off the cape bore S. 36 deg. W. about two leagues diſtant. On account of a heavy ſwell proceeding from the S. E. attended with a calm, they were for ſome time in a critical ſituation, as the weather was drifting directly upon the rocks; and what ſtill added to their danger, was the extreme hazineſs of the weather, which prevented them from diſcerning any object, even at the ſmalleſt diſtance. In the courſe of four hours the fog very fortunately diſperſed, and the ſwell abated: the rocks bearing S. W. were then not quite a mile diſtant. The boats were now ſent a-head to tow the veſſel: they had ſoundings now from 75 to 100 fathoms over a rocky bottom: afterwards finding no bottom with a line of 120 fathoms, they concluded themſelves ſafely over the rocks. They now ſtood on for King George's Sound.

On the 3d the boats were taken in, and the people permitted to reſt. In an hour after the watch being alarmed with the noiſe of the ſurf beating againſt the rocks, the people were inſtantly called up, and the boats hoiſted out again, to tow the veſſel a-head: the weather was ſtill hazy. In the evening they were clear of all danger, Cape St. James bearing W. half S. about five leagues diſtant.

The weather continued thick and foggy for ſeveral days. On the 6th Woody Point was ſeen bearing N. W. by W. about four leagues diſtant, and a ſplit rock off the point N. 28 deg. W.

On the 8th they ſaw a ſail, and preſently after a a ſmaller veſſel in company, which they imagined to be the King George and her long-boat. However, on coming up with them, they proved to be the Prince of Wales and Princeſs Royal, two veſſels from London, which had been fitted out by the proprietors of the King George and the Queen Charlotte. Captain Dixon underſtanding from theſe veſſels, which had been in King George's Sound, that the King George was not arrived there, deemed it unneceſſary to make the Sound, and therefore determined on proceeding to Sandwich Iſlands.

On the 9th they took leave of the Prince of Wales and Princeſs Royal, and ſhaped a courſe for their next deſtination.

We ſhall conclude this chapter with ſome general obſervations which were made by the Queen Charlotte, relative to the Coaſt of America, and which, in addition to what has been ſaid, and will be introduced on future occaſions, muſt give the reader a perfect and ſatisfactory idea of the place.

This extenſive country exhibits upon the whole, a picture of a large continued foreſt. It is covered with pines of different ſpecies, intermixed with alder, birch, witch-hazel, &c. beſides various kinds of bruſh-wood: and the valleys and low grounds, which are expoſed to the ſun, and ſheltered from the wind, afford wild currants, gooſeberries, raſberries, and various other flowery ſhrubs. The ſoil on the hills is a kind of compoſt, conſiſting of rotten moſs and old decayed trees. This is frequently waſhed down into the vallies by the ſudden melting of the ſnow, and there incorporating with a light ſand, forms a ſoil in which moſt of the Engliſh garden productions might be cultivated with ſucceſs.

It is impoſſible to aſcertain the number of inhabitants the coaſt, from Cook's River to King George's Sound, may contain; but from a moderate computation, there cannot be leſs than ten thouſand; indeed, appearances might warrant the conjecture of there being more, as the women appear very prolific, and the people are totally free from that long catalogue of diſeaſes, which luxury and intemperance have introduced amongſt more civilized nations. But then it muſt be remembered, that neighbouring tribes are generally at war with each other; and theſe commotions, both from the nature of their weapons, and the ſavage diſpoſition of the people, muſt be attended with fatal conſequences; beſides, there is reaſon to ſuppoſe, that numbers are yearly loſt at ſea, as they go out to a very conſiderable diſtance from the land on fiſhing-parties, and ſhould bad weather ſuddenly come on, it is impoſſible for their canoes to live. Theſe circumſtances certainly tend to depopulate the country, and in ſome meaſure account for its being ſo thinly inhabited.

The hair of both ſexes is long and black, and would be an ornament to them, were it not for the large quantities of greaſe and red ochre conſtantly rubbed into it, which not only gives it a diſguſting appearance, but affords a never-failing harbour for vermin. Sometimes, indeed, the women keep their hair in decent order, parting it from the forehead to the crown, and tying it behind after the manner of a club. The young men have no beards; but this does not ariſe from a natural want of hair on that part, for the old men had beards all over the chin, and ſome of them had whiſkers on each ſide the upper-lip. As this ſuppoſed defect amongſt the natives of America has occaſioned much ſpeculative enquiry amongſt the learned and ingenious, every opportunity was taken of learning how it was occaſioned; and they were given to underſtand, that the young men got rid of their beards by plucking them out, but as they advance in years the hair is ſuffered to grow. It might be imagined, that the children of theſe ſavages would enjoy the free and unreſtrained uſe of their limbs from their earlieſt infancy: this, however, is not altogether the caſe. Three pieces of bark are faſtened together, ſo as to form a kind of chair; the infant after being wrapped in furs, is put into this chair, and laſhed ſo cloſe, that it cannot alter its poſture even with ſtruggling; and the chair is ſo contrived, that when a mother wants to feed her child, or give it the breaſt, there is no occaſion to releaſe the infant from its ſhackles. Soft moſs is uſed by the Indian nurſe to keep her child clean; but little regard is paid to this article, and the poor infants are often terribly excoriated; and this neglect is apparent even in children of ſix or ſeven years old.

Ornaments ſeem to differ in particular places, more than dreſs. The aperture, or ſecond mouth above the chin, ſeems confined to the men of Cook's River and Prince William's Sound; whilſt the wooden ornament in the under-lip is wore by the women only, in that part of the coaſt from Port Mulgrave to Queen Charlotte's Iſlands. Beſides the ornaments already mentioned, the Indians are very fond of maſks or viſors, and various kinds of caps, all which are painted with different devices; ſuch as birds, beaſts, fiſhes, and ſometimes repreſentations of the human face; they have likewiſe many of theſe devices carved in wood, and ſome of them are far from being ill executed. Theſe curioſities are greatly valued, and are carefully packed in neat ſquare boxes, that they may the more conveniently be carried about. Whenever any large party came to trade, theſe treaſures were firſt produced, and the principal perſons dreſſed out in all their finery, before the ſinging commenced. In addition to this, the chief (who always conducts this vocal concert) puts on a large coat made of the elk ſkin, tanned, round the lower part of which is one or ſometimes two rows of dried berries, or the beaks of birds, which make a rattling noiſe whenever he moves. In his hand he has a rattle, or more commonly a contrivance to anſwer the ſame end, which is of a circular form, about nine inches in diameter, and made of three ſmall ſticks bent round at different diſtances from each other; great numbers of birds' beaks and dried berries are tied to this curious inſtrument, which is ſhook by the chief with great glee, and in his opinion makes no ſmall addition to the concert. Their ſongs generally conſiſt of ſeveral ſtanzas; to each of which is added a chorus. The beginning of each ſtanza is given out by the chief alone; after which both men and women join, and ſing in octaves, beating time regularly with their hands or paddles: mean while the chief ſhakes his rattle, and makes a thouſand ridiculous geſticulations, ſinging at intervals in different notes from the reſt; and this mirth generally continues near half an hour, without intermiſſion.

It is hard to ſay whether or no they make uſe of any hieroglyphics, to perpetuate the memory of events; but their numerous drawings of birds and fiſhes, and more eſpecially their carved repreſentations of animals and human faces, warrant a ſuppoſition of the kind. Many of theſe carvings are well proportioned, and executed with a conſiderable degree of ingenuity, which appears rather extraordinary amongſt a people ſo remote from civilized refinement.

It is unknown when iron was introduced on this coaſt, but it muſt doubtleſs be a conſiderable time ago, and their implements certainly are not of Engliſh manufacture; ſo that there is little doubt of their being obtained from the Ruſſians. Their knives are ſo very thin, that they bend them into a variety of forms, which anſwer their every purpoſe nearly as well as if they had recourſe to a carpenter's tool-cheſt.

Among their manufactures, there is a kind of variegated blanket, or cloak, ſomething like the Engliſh horſe-cloths; which do not appear to be wove, but made entirely by hand, and are neatly finiſhed. Theſe cloaks are made of wool, collected from the ſkins of beaſts killed in the chace; they are held in great eſtimation, and only wore on extraordinary occaſions. Beſides the ſkin-coats, wore in common, they have large cloaks purpoſely for wear, made of the elk ſkin, tanned, and wore double, ſometimes three-fold.

Theſe people, notwithſtanding their uncultivated ſtate, have a notion of gaming. The gaming implements, which were ſeen, conſiſted of 52 ſmall round bits of wood, differently marked with red paint, and about three inches long: two perſons play with theſe, and the game conſiſts in putting them in particular places. One man at Port Mulgrave loſt his ſpear, knife, and ſeveral towees, in about an hour: notwithſtanding, the unfortunate gameſter was very patient and quiet.

They calculate time by the moons; and remember extraordinary events for a generation. Two or three different languages are ſpoken on the coaſt; but from the information gained from the old chief at Queen Charlotte's Iſland, it is ſuppoſed that they are not generally underſtood. Though every tribe at Queen Charlotte's Iſland is governed by its reſpective chief, yet they are divided into families, which ſeem to have regulations of their own. The chief uſually trades for the whole tribe; but upon any diſagreement, every family claim a right to diſpoſe of their own furs; which the chief immediately aſſents to. Whether the chief is allowed any thing for his trouble, is unknown.

Some of the natives were very jealous of their wives, and would ſeldom permit them to come on board: other huſbands were ſo kind, that they obliged their ladies to accept of the leaſt invitation. The women are particularly fond of their children.

CHAPTER IV.

A Number of Canoes met—A briſk Trade—An audacious Thief puniſhed—Ship's Company afflicted with Scurvy—Whahoo ſeen—Viſited by their old Acquaintance—Their Friendſhip—Anecdotes—Remarks—Additional Obſervations on the People—Proceed for China—Paſs three Iſlands—In ſight of the Lima Iſlands—Anchor in Macao Roads—Proceed to Wampoa—Tranſactions—Meet the King George.

AUGUST 9th Woody Point bore N. by E. ſeven leagues diſtant: from this to the 12th the weather was tolerably fine, and they had a ſmart breeze at N. W. After this the winds were changeable, and there were frequent calms.

Sept. 2d they ſteered due weſt, in order to make Owhyhee, which they ſaw on the 5th, bearing from S. S. W. to W. one-fourth N. about 14 leagues diſtant.

On the 6th they bore away to the weſtward, where they met a number of canoes coming from ſhore: accordingly they hove-to, and purchaſed ſeveral ſmall hogs, and a quantity of potatoes.

In about three hours the canoes encreaſed, and a briſk trade was carried on. Several of the Indians, both for the ſake of plunder, and to gratify their curioſity, climbed up the veſſel's ſide: one of them, whoſe audacity in thieving was remarkable, ſeized a poker which belonged to the armourer's forge, and jumped overboard. He ſwam away with great exultation, bearing off his prize, notwithſtanding it was repeatedly demanded: the captain immediately ordered his men to fire at the offender, conſcious that if he over-looked ſuch an outrageous theft, the reſt of the natives would be encouraged to act in the ſame manner, and it would be impoſſible to withſtand their depredations. Several muſquets were diſcharged, and the culprit was ſeverely wounded. The captain now intreated his countrymen to bring him on board, aſſuring them that no further harm ſhould be offered him: when he was brought, Surgeon Lauder dreſſed his wounds. His under-lip was ſeverely lacerated by a ball which ſtruck his under-jaw: he ſeemed very thankful to the ſurgeon for his attention, and petitioned the captain for a towee, which was given to him. This affair did not in the leaſt intimidate the Indians, for they ſtill continued their trade as if nothing had happened.

The captain now plied off and on occaſionally, in order to procure a good ſupply of hogs, vegetables, &c. for he did not think it worth his while to anchor at this iſland.

Several of the ſhip's company at this time were very much afflicted with the ſcurvy: there was ſcarcely any perſon without ſome touches thereof, and many were laid up with it. Happy it was that they had ſuch an extraordinary good paſſage from the American Coaſt to Owhyhee, it being reckoned a very good paſſage in five weeks, and this was performed in leſs than a month, for had they been any longer delayed, there is no doubt but ſeveral of the indiſpoſed would have periſhed. However, the ſeaſonable ſupply of freſh pork, vegetables, &c. did them conſiderable ſervice. It was ſuppoſed that this ſcorbutic complaint was in a great meaſure accelerated by the vaſt quantities of halibut, which the people ſalted while on the coaſt, and always eat (at no kind of allowance) in preference to the ſhip's beef and pork.

On the 7th they kept plying occaſionally as before, by which means they procured an ample ſupply of proviſions by the evening.

On the 8th they ſtood along the ſhore for the weſternmoſt point of the iſland, which was about five leagues diſtant, bearing ſouth. They were followed by a number of canoes, which for the ſake of a freſh ſteady breeze, they left behind. At one o'clock they hove-to, being well in with the S. W. point: the people took this opportunity of trading for curioſities: they alſo purchaſed a quantity of line for the ſhip's uſe. In two hours after they made ſail, and bore up for Whahoo, where they intended to take in wood and water. At ſix o'clock the ſmall iſland Tahoura bore N. 60 deg. W. about eight leagues diſtant. At noon the W. end of Ranai bore N. 10 deg. W. about 10 miles diſtant: ſeveral canoes came from Ranai, of whom they purchaſed ſome fiſhing-lines. On account of ſome heavy ſqualls in the evening, they were obliged to cloſe-reef the top-ſails, and ſingle-reef the main-ſail: at night the weather grew moderate.

On the 10th Whahoo was ſeen right a-head, and at twelve o'clock they came-to with the beſt bower, in eight and a half fathom water, over a ſandy bottom interſperſed with rocks. They did not mean to ſtay any longer here than was barely neceſſary to procure wood and water. Several canoes came along-ſide, and ſome of the natives were ſent on ſhore for water; but there was very little brought, as every thing was tabooed by the king. They were viſited by additional canoes in the evening, but they conſiſted chiefly of females, who became very fond of the Engliſh, and granted them favours as before. The people were now employed in getting the rigging fore and aft.

The next day Abbenooe came on board, to inform his old friends that the king would ſhortly pay them a viſit, and afterwards they ſhould be ſupplied with water and proviſions.

The king Tahieterre accordingly came about noon, with his nephew Myaro, and the uſual number of attendants: his majeſty brought a fine hog, and ſome cocoa-nuts, as a preſent; and in return he received from the captain ſome towees, &c. &c. Tahieterre enquired after Captain Portlock, and appeared very anxious to ſee him again; Myaro and ſome of the chiefs alſo enquired after Piapia, whom they left at Attoui.

As ſoon as the king went on ſhore, the natives were ſent with a conſiderable quantity of water, and the next day they ſupplied them with wood, fruit, &c. they alſo brought a few hogs, vegetables, &c. The king and his attendants repeated their viſit about noon, bringing and receiving preſents as before.

Having now completed their wooding and watering buſineſs, they weighed anchor on the 13th, and made ſail to Attoui. At this time Abbenooe and his attendants were on board, and as they were not willing to take the old man to Attoui, they made ſeveral boards in the bay. However in a few hours the prieſt's canoe came along-ſide, and afterwards another with the king and his retinue. His majeſty now came on board, and expreſſed much concern at their going away ſo ſoon: he obſerved that they were expeditiouſly ſupplied with wood and water in conſequence of his commands, and that Captain Portlock (whom he called Po-pote) ſhould meet with the ſame attention whenever he arrived. The captain, in order to ſhew himſelf ſenſible of his goodneſs, preſented his majeſty with a few axes and ſaws, which were highly acceptable. The king was much delighted at ſeeing the veſſel under ſail, and admired greatly the activity of the ſailors. When nearly a-breaſt Whit-ti-tee Bay (which was the king's reſidence), he took his leave, with many profeſſions of friendſhip.

On the 15th they ſaw the king's Mount, Attoui, bearing N. W. by W. half W. nine leagues diſtant. The next day they were within two miles of the eaſt ſide of Attoui: they were now viſited by a great number of canoes, which brought them potatoes, taro, &c. which were purchaſed for nails. Several here were ſo rejoiced to ſee their old acquaintance, that they could not refrain from tears. What a picture of true friendſhip!

No baſe diſſimulation ſways the heart,
Nor know they aught of wheedling flattery's art,
Still foes or friends, they *are* as they have *been*,
And nothing ſay, but what they really *mean!*

The captain now heard that Abbenooe and his ſon were on ſhore at Attoui, and having come-to with the ſmall bower in 19 fathom water, over a ſandy bottom, about two miles to the eaſtward of their former ſituation. They were viſited by the ſon Tyheera, who reported that a veſſel had been there ſince the Queen Charlotte left Attoui, by whom they were uſed very ill, the captain thereof having killed ſeveral of his countrymen; on which account, his father, not knowing the Queen Charlotte at ſo great a diſtance, was afraid to leave the ſhore. Upon Captain Dixon's declaring that no trade ſhould be carried on till Abbenooe was preſent, the ſon diſpatched a canoe for his father, and hoiſted a ſignal to aſſure him all was well. In about half an hour the old prieſt arrived, and expreſſed much happineſs on ſeeing his friends. He regretted very much the abſence of Captain Portlock.

On the 17th they were ſurrounded with canoes, who ſupplied them with a great quantity of fine hogs and vegetables. The next day they received viſits from ſeveral chiefs. Due notice was given of the king's viſit, who came on board in the forenoon, with his daughter and two nieces, his attendants ſinging all the way.

Tiaao was greatly pleaſed to ſee them again, and enquired particularly after Po-pote. He ſeemed ſolicitous to accommodate them with every thing the iſland afforded; and, indeed, all the chiefs vied with each other in ſupplying their various wants. Amongſt the many inſtances of kindneſs and good-natured attention they met with at this time from the chiefs in general, an action of No-ho-mi-ti-hee-tee muſt not be omitted, as it does him the greateſt honour, and would reflect credit even on a perſon of education and refined ſenſibility. No-ho-mi-ti-hee-tee had been often on board when they were laſt at Attoui, and by that means was perſonally acquainted with all the people: being naturally curious and inquiſitive, he now took an opportunity of going amongſt them, to aſk a number of queſtions about the voyage. On going down between decks, he met with the carpenter, who had been troubled with a lingering diſorder for a conſiderable time, and at preſent was very weak and poorly: his pale countenance and emaciated figure affected poor No-ho-mi-ti-hee-tee very ſenſibly; a tear of pity ſtole unheeded down his cheek, and he began to enquire about his complaint in a tone of tenderneſs and compaſſion; ſeeing him very weak and infirm, he gently chafed and preſſed the ſinews and muſcles of his legs and thighs, and gave him all the conſolation in his power: preſently afterwards he came upon deck, called his canoe, and went on ſhore in a hurry, without taking leave of any perſon on the quarter-deck, which was contrary to his uſual cuſtom; but he returned very ſhortly, bringing a fine fowl along with him, which he immediately carried down to the carpenter; told him to have it dreſſed immediately, and he hoped it would make him better in a day or two. No-ho-mi-ti-hee-tee's father having been plundered by the king's meſſenger of the valuables which his ſon gave him, as before mentioned; it is neceſſary here to obſerve that the culprit was afterwards put to death, by order of the king, upon a complaint being made by the chief.

At noon a freſh breeze ſpringing up from the northward, Captain Dixon wiſhed to embrace this opportunity of weighing anchor; but on looking over his ſtock of vegetables, it was judged neceſſary to procure a further ſupply. No ſooner were the king and chiefs informed of this circumſtance, than they all went on ſhore, promiſing to return ſhortly with great plenty of taro; accordingly, by three o'clock they all returned, each bringing a large double canoe, loaded with taro and ſugar-cane, ſo that now they were completely furniſhed with every neceſſary article the iſland afforded. The expedition and diſpatch with which this laſt taro was brought, and their free and generous manner in bringing it on board, both ſurpriſed and pleaſed Captain Dixon, and he was not ſlow in making ſuitable returns. To the king he gave a *pahou*, a large baize cloak edged with ribbon, and a very large towee; which pleaſed him ſo much, that he began to think himſelf the greateſt monarch in the univerſe. The other chiefs were rewarded with towees, axes, and ſaws, entirely to their ſatisfaction. The ladies too (of whom they had no ſmall number on board) were liberally ornamented with buttons and beads; in ſhort, all parties were perfectly pleaſed, and were profuſe in their profeſſions of kindneſs and acknowledgment.

Notwithſtanding all that has been ſaid relative to this iſland and the inhabitants, we think it neceſſary here to inſert ſome occaſional remarks which were made by Captain Dixon and his company. He informs us, that theſe people, in their temper and diſpoſition, are harmleſs, inoffenſive, and friendly; not ſubject to paſſion, or eaſily provoked: in their manners they are lively and chearful, ever ready to render any little ſervice in their power even to ſtrangers, and purſue every thing they undertake with unremitting diligence and application. When attached to any perſon, they are ſteady in their friendſhip; and are not eaſily tempted to neglect the intereſt of a perſon for whom they have once profeſſed a regard. Their language is ſoft, ſmooth, and abounds with vowels: in their converſation with each other, it appears very copious; and they ſpeak with great volubility, when converſing with each other; but when converſing with their viſitors they only make uſe of thoſe words which are moſt expreſſive and ſignificant. The Sandwich Iſlanders, in general, are about the middle ſize; their limbs ſtraight, and well proportioned. Some of the chiefs, and particularly the women, are inclined to corpulency, and their ſkin is ſmoother and ſofter than thoſe of the common rank; but this is owing to want of exerciſe, and an unlimited indulgence in the article of food. They are in general of a nut colour, though ſome of the women are fairer, and their hands and fingers are remarkably ſmall and delicate. Both ſexes go naked, except about the waiſt: the men wear a narrow piece of cloth, called a *marow*, barely ſufficient to cover the adjacent parts. The *ahou*, or women's dreſs, is much larger, and generally reaches from the waiſt to the middle of the thigh. The beards of the men are ſuffered to grow; their hair is cut cloſe on each ſide of the head, but grows long from the forehead to the back of the neck, ſomewhat reſembling an helmet. The women cut theirs quite cloſe behind, and on the top of the head: the front is turned up in the form of a toupee, and is frequently daubed with cocoa-nut oil, and lime made from ſhells, which often gives it a ſandy, diſagreeable colour. Sometimes, by way of ornament, they wear a wreath of flowers, fancifully diſpoſed, about the head; inſtead of a bracelet, a ſhell is tied round the wriſt, and a fondneſs for this ornament has rendered buttons ſo much eſteemed by theſe gay damſels in general; the neck too is decorated with various ſorts of ſhells, faſtened on ſtrings after the manner of a necklace. But the moſt beautiful ornament worn by the women is a necklace, or araia, made from the variegated feathers of the humming-bird, which are fixed on ſtrings ſo regular and even as to have a ſurface equally ſmooth as velvet; and the rich colour of the feathers gives it an appearance equally rich and elegant. The caps and cloaks worn by the men are ſtill ſuperior in beauty and elegance. The cloaks are, in general, about the ſize of thoſe wore by the Spaniards; the ground is net-work, and the feathers are ſewed on in alternate ſquares, or triangular forms of red and yellow, which have a moſt brilliant appearance. The ground of the caps is wicker-work, in the form of a helmet; the elevated part, from the forehead to the hind part of the neck, is about a hand's breadth, and generally covered with yellow feathers; the ſides of the cap with red. This cap, together with the cloak, has an appearance equally ſplendid, if not ſuperior, to any ſcarlet and gold whatever. Theſe truly elegant ornaments are ſcarce, and only poſſeſſed by chiefs of high rank, who wear them on extraordinary occaſions. There are cloaks of an inferior kind, which have only a narrow border of red and yellow feathers, the reſt being covered with feathers of the tropic and man of war bird. Nor are theſe caps and cloaks, though confeſſedly elegant in a ſuperior degree, the only proofs of invention and ingenuity ſhewn by theſe people in matters of ornament. Their mats are made with a degree of neatneſs equal to any of European manufacture, and prettily diverſified with a variety of figures ſtained with red. Thoſe uſed to ſleep on are plain, and of a coarſer kind, but made with an equal degree of neatneſs and regularity. Cloth is another article which gives theſe Indians equal ſcope for fancy and invention. It is made from the Chineſe paper-mulberry tree, and when wet (it being of a ſoft malleable ſubſtance) is beat out with ſmall ſquare pieces of wood, from 12 to 18 inches wide, and afterwards ſtamped with various colours, and a diverſity of patterns, the neatneſs and elegance of which would not diſgrace the window of a London linen-draper. The different colours with which their cloth is ſtamped are extracted from vegetables found in the woods. There is another kind of cloth, much finer than the above, and beat out to a greater extent; it is of a white colour, and frequently wore by the Aree women, in addition to the ahou. Fans and fly-flaps are uſed by both ſexes. The fans are uſually made of the cocoa-nut fibres, neatly wove; the mounting is of a ſquare form, and the handle frequently decorated with hair. The fly-flaps are very curious; the handles are decorated with alternate pieces of wood and bone, which at a diſtance has the appearance of finiered work: the upper part, or flap, is the feathers of the man of war bird. Fiſh-hooks are made of the pearl oyſter-ſhell, and ſo contrived as to ſerve for both hook and bait: thoſe intended for ſharks are conſiderably larger, and made of wood. The form of their gourds or calabaſhes is ſo very various, that they certainly make uſe of art to give them different ſhapes: ſome are of a globular form, with a long narrow neck like a bottle; others are tall and circular, but of equal width from top to bottom; others again, though narrower towards the mouth, yet are ſufficiently wide to admit the hand: many of theſe are very prettily ſtained with undulated lines, which at a diſtance appear like paint. Their houſes greatly reſemble an hay-ſtack in ſhape, and are neatly thatched with flags or ruſhes: the door-place is ſo very low, that they are obliged to enter almoſt double. They have no better contrivance for a door, than a few temporary boards. The inſide of their dwellings are kept neat and clean; a coarſe mat is ſpread on the floor, and as they have no ſeparate apartments, that part of the room appropriated for repoſe is rather elevated, and covered with mats of a finer ſort. The houſhold utenſils are placed on a wooden bench, and conſiſt of gourds and wooden bowls and diſhes, which, in general, conſtitute the whole of their furniture. Thoſe who are poſſeſſed of hogs or fowls keep them in ſmall out-houſes appropriated for that purpoſe. The method univerſally practiſed to dreſs their victuals is baking, which is done in the following manner: a hole is dug in the ground, ſufficiently deep to anſwer the purpoſe of an oven; at the bottom of which a number of hot ſtones are laid; theſe being covered with leaves, whatever they want to dreſs is laid on them; more leaves are now laid on, and another layer of hot ſtones being added, the oven is covered. If a hog is baked, the belly is always filled with hot ſtones. Cuſtom has rendered this mode of dreſſing victuals ſo very familiar, that they can tell the exact time when any thing is ſufficiently done; and in baking yams or taro they far excelled them on board the Charlotte. They alſo dreſs the young tops of taro, ſo as to be an excellent ſubſtitute for greens, though on board they could never boil them ſo as to eat palatably. The canoes are not only finiſhed with neatneſs and ingenuity, but at the ſame time are laſting proofs of perſeverance and induſtry. They are made of a ſingle tree, and are from 12 to 40 or 50 feet long. The hollowing theſe trees, and bringing each end to a proper point, with their rude unfaſhioned tools, muſt be a work of time and unremitting attention: they are in general about an inch thick, and heightened with additional boards neatly fitted round the ſides. The ſingle canoes are ſteadied by an outrigger, and the double ones are held together by ſemicircular poles, firmly laſhed to each part of the canoe; over theſe, and parallel with the canoe, is a kind of platform, which ſerves to carry hogs, vegetables, or any thing they want to convey from one place to another, and at the ſame time is a convenient ſeat for the principal perſons of both ſexes, whilſt the towtows, who paddle, always ſit in the body of the canoe. Their paddles are about four or five feet long, and greatly reſemble a baker's pail. They are very dexterous at catching fiſh: and have a number of wooden images repreſenting human figures, which they eſteem as their gods; but it is a matter of doubt whether religion is held in any great eſtimation amongſt them, for every god among the iſlands might be purchaſed for a few towees. Sometimes their yava diſhes are ſupported by three of theſe little wooden images; and this is reckoned a maſterpiece in their carving.

Theſe people appear ſubject to very few diſeaſes; and though they doubtleſs have been injured by their connection with Europeans, yet ſo ſimple is their manner of living, that they pay little regard to this circumſtance, and ſeem to think it an affair of no conſequence. It is probable that moſt of their diſorders proceed from an immoderate uſe of yava; it weakens the eyes, covers the body with a kind of leproſy, debilitates and emaciates the whole frame, makes the body paralytic, haſtens old age, and, no doubt, brings on death itſelf.

Their ſongs, or heevas, rather reſemble a quick energetic manner of ſpeaking, than ſinging; and the performers ſeem to pay more attention to the motions of the body, than the modulations of the voice. The women are the moſt frequent performers in this kind of merriment; they begin their performance ſlow and regular, but by degrees it grows briſker and more animated, till it terminates in convulſions of laughter. It is very evident that theſe people have not the leaſt idea of melody, as the tones and modulation in all their ſongs are invariably the ſame; however, there ſeems to be ſome degree of invention in the compoſition of the words, which are often on temporary ſubjects; and the frequent peals of laughter are, no doubt, excited by ſome witty alluſion contained in them. They have drums, which ſometimes are beat as an addition to their heevas; theſe are about 12 or 16 inches high, ſeveral holes are cut in the ſides, and a hog's ſkin, and ſometimes a ſhark's, is ſtrained over one end: the ſounds however are dull and heavy.

On the 18th of September every thing was ready for making ſail; and having cleared the bay, their friends repaired to their canoes, and took leave of the Engliſh in the moſt affectionate manner: they now ſteered S. by E. with a freſh breeze at E. N. E. The next day they ſteered S. S. W.

There was little variety during this voyage: the weather was very changeable. There were two ſevere ſqualls on the 12th of October; but which providentially did no harm. On the 22d they ſaw two iſlands; one bearing N. 55 deg. W. and the other N. 80 deg. W. about four leagues diſtant. On approaching the land they ſaw three iſlands, ſuppoſed to be Tinian, Aguigan, and Saypan, according to Anſon's deſcription: the E. end of Tinian bearing N. 30 deg. E. about four leagues diſtant; the W. end of Aguigan N. W. by N. about four miles ditto; and the peak of Saypan N. N. E. ditto. Then appeared a ſmall iſland at the W. end of Aguigan. As theſe iſlands are entirely free from rocks or ſhoals, they are a very comfortable harbour for veſſels, and may be entered in the night-time with much ſecurity, provided the weather be moderate. Tinian is by far the largeſt, almoſt extending from S. E. to N. W. It has a beautiful appearance, and is ſaid to afford variety of refreſhments. Saypan is the next in extent. Aguigan is very narrow, and ſeems to be only ſix miles long.

From this to November, the weather continued ſqually, and the nights very dark. On the 4th they ſaw the Botel Tabago Xima Iſlands.

On the 7th they ſaw land, bearing N. W. about five leagues diſtant. In the forenoon they paſſed ſix Chineſe fiſhing-boats: in the afternoon they met a great number, and about five o'clock perceived the large rock, Pedro Blanco, bearing W. about ten miles diſtant.

On the 8th, the land which they ſaw the preceding day proved to be the Lema Iſlands, bearing from N. E. to W. N. W. about five leagues diſtant. Theſe iſlands are very numerous; but dreary and barren to the view. They ſaw at a diſtance ſeveral Chineſe boats; and having made a ſignal for a pilot, an old China-man came on board: he produced ſeveral certificates, and after ſome time agreed to convey the veſſel to Macao for thirty dollars, being twenty leſs than his firſt demand. After this ſeveral pilots came on board; and it was now underſtood that before they proceeded to Canton it was neceſſary to obtain a permit from the cuſtom-houſe; during which time they were obliged to anchor at Macao, in ſix fathom water, over a ſoft muddy bottom.

On the 9th Capt. Dixon went in the whale-boat to Macao, in order to procure the permit. He returned the next day about noon, being delayed through the remarkable tardineſs of the Chineſe. The captain brought with him a pilot, to convey the veſſel to Canton: upon which the old Chinaman was diſcharged. They weighed anchor at one o'clock, and made ſail with a favourable wind and tide, proceeding towards the Bocca Tygris, which they paſſed on the 14th, and anchored in five fathoms and a half. They were now viſited by an officer in a mandarine boat, whoſe buſineſs it is to prevent any illegal trade. The next morning they weighed anchor, and made ſail: the winds being light and variable, the boats were ſent out a-head to tow the veſſel. On the 16th, about ſix o'clock in the morning, they came to anchor at the bottom of Whampoo Roads, in four fathoms and a half: the captain now went in a Chineſe paſſage-boat to Canton, for the purpoſe of learning from the Eaſt-India Company's ſupercargoes the beſt manner of facilitating their buſineſs. At eleven o'clock they weighed, and began to warp through the fleet up the river; about three they anchored with the ſmall bower, in four fathoms and a half, over a muddy bottom, mooring with the ſtream-anchor. The people were now employed in unbending the ſails, and other neceſſary buſineſs, while the captain was buſy in procuring freſh proviſions, which at this place is no eaſy matter, on account of the numerous impoſitions which are practiſed. The captain, during his ſtay, was informed that nothing could be done with reſpect to the furs, till the ſuperintendant of the Chineſe cuſtoms had been on board to meaſure the veſſel, which would not take place till the King George, which was hourly expected, arrived.

A Captain Taſker, from Bombay, whoſe veſſel lay near the Queen Charlotte, very kindly furniſhed Captain Dixon with beef for the preſent; for whenever the officer ſupplied a ſhip, he always modeſtly *demanded* a gratuity of 300 dollars, beſides a very handſome profit he derived from his catering. The ſhip's company were now allowed two pounds of beef each per day, with greens. The vegetables were procured from the cuſtom-houſe boat; and a leger of arrack was purchaſed from a Dutchman, for 45 dollars. The officer, however, having found out Captain Taſker's generoſity, put a ſtop to it; conſequently the ſhip's company were about to return to their ſalt proviſions, as the captain was reſolved not to indulge the officer's *modeſt* demand: however Mr. Moore, firſt mate of the Royal Admiral, (Capt. Huddart) upon underſtanding the buſineſs, undertook to ſupply them with beef, on condition that their boat was ſent for it every day: this polite offer was readily accepted, and a quantity of beef every morning conveyed from the Royal Admiral to the Queen Charlotte.

On the 23d Capt. Dixon went to Canton, where he was informed that the King George was arrived at Macao: he returned the ſame evening, and the next day went in the whale-boat, with ſeven men, to meet the King George, and render her every poſſible aſſiſtance. On the 25th the King George and Queen Charlotte were together.

CHAPTER V.

Proceedings of the King George and Queen Charlotte—Death of Mr. Macleod—Veſſels meaſured—Capt. Portlock's Surpriſe at meeting an old Acquaintance—Mutual Joy—Anecdotes of Tiaana—Queen Charlotte ſurveyed, and repaired—Diſpoſal of the Furs—Teas ſent on board—Deſcription of Canton, &c.—Departure of the Veſſels from Macao—Death of Surgeon Lauder—They proceed through the Straits of Banca and Sunda—King George and Queen Charlotte part—Particulars of each—They meet at St. Helena—Their Departure—Five of the King George's Crew nearly poiſoned—Arrival in England—Concluſion.

As ſoon as the King George had anchored, Capt. Dixon viſited Capt. Portlock, and thoſe gentlemen communicated to one another their ſucceſs.

On the 26th Captains Portlock and Dixon went to Canton, and were aſſured by Mr. Browne, preſident of the ſupercargoes, that the ſuperintendant of the China cuſtoms (John Tuck, as he is commonly called) would come as ſoon as poſſible to meaſure the veſſels, after which their buſineſs ſhould be diſpatched with the utmoſt expedition. The captains returned from Canton on the 27th.

On the 29th Mr. Macleod, firſt mate of the King George, died, in conſequence of an old complaint in the urethra: he was taken ill on the 28th, with drinking ſome ſtale porter after dinner on board the Locko Indiaman, which occaſioned a relapſe of his diſorder. He was buried on Frenchman's Iſland, in the forenoon of the 30th.

On the 2d of December the ſuperintendant, or John Tuck, came down from Canton and meaſured the veſſels; after which a factory was hired at Canton, and on the 5th the cargo of both veſſels were ſent up there.

As the Queen Charlotte's company were ſometimes diſappointed in receiving beef from the Royal Admiral, they were ſupplied now by Captain Portlock, who had agreed with an officer for freſh proviſions on his arrival in the river.

Captain Portlock, a little after his arrival, paid a viſit to a Mr. Cox, who was an Engliſh gentleman reſident in Canton. The captain was very much ſurpriſed to meet with his old friend Tiaana here, whom he became acquainted with at the Sandwich Iſlands; nor was Tiaana leſs aſtoniſhed at ſeeing the captain, whom he embraced in the moſt cordial and affectionate manner. As ſoon as his tranſports of joy ſubſided, he aſked ſeveral queſtions reſpecting the people at the iſlands, and informed the captain that he accompanied Captain Meares, who brought him to Macao, and placed him under the care of Mr. Roſs, his chief mate, to whom Tiaana was particularly attached.

During his ſtay, Tiaana was introduced to every place worthy his notice: he was dreſſed in a cloak and a fine feathered cap, and carried always a ſpear in his hand, to ſhew he was a perſon of conſequence. Afterwards, by the perſuaſion of Mr. Roſs, he wore a light ſattin waiſtcoat, and a pair of trowſers. He frequently attended the places of divine worſhip, where he behaved with the greateſt decorum, kneeling, ſtanding, &c. according to the different ceremonies of the congregation. The cuſtoms and manners of the Chineſe often provoked the indignation of Tiaana, and he was once going to throw the pilot overboard during his voyage, being offended with his behaviour: notwithſtanding this warm diſpoſition, he diſplayed ſeveral inſtances of generoſity and humanity. Being once at an entertainment, which was given by Capt. Taſker, of the Milford, he was after dinner moved with compaſſion, at ſeeing a number of poor Tartars (who were in ſmall ſapans about the veſſel, according to cuſtom) aſking alms; he ſolicited Capt. Taſker's permiſſion to give them ſome food, remarking that it was a great ſhame to let poor people want victuals, and that in his country they had no beggars. According to his importunities, there was a collection made of all the broken victuals, and Tiaana went himſelf to diſtribute it among them, which he did in the moſt equal and impartial manner.

Tiaana was ſix feet two inches in height, exceedingly well made, but inclined to corpulency: he had a pleaſing, animated countenance, fine piercing eyes, and other expreſſive features: he was univerſally admired; and, previous to his departure for Attoui, the gentlemen of Canton furniſhed him with bulls, cows, ſheep, goats, rabbits, turkies, &c. &c. alſo oranges, mangoes, and different kinds of plants, with inſtructions for their cultivation: every thing that could be acceptable, or would be of importance to his country, was added to his cargo.

The time was now employed in diſpoſing the furs and repairing the veſſels. On the 20th of January, 1788, two Eaſt-India captains ſurveyed the Queen Charlotte, by orders of the ſupercargoes, previous to their ſending any teas on board; and as they did not judge her properly ſecured, directions were accordingly given to remedy all the defects, for the expediting which a carpenter and caulker were ſent to aſſiſt them. On the 23d ſhe was rendered complete, and a cargo of teas were ſent on board each veſſel. Their principal furs were delivered to the Eaſt-India company's ſugercargoes for 50000 dollars, and the inferior ones were purchaſed by an old Chineſe merchant, whoſe name was Chichingua.

Canton is extremely populous, but reckoned unhealthy. The lower kind of people live chiefly on rice, and now and then a little fiſh; but the rich indulge themſelves with every luxury. Their vegetables conſiſt of carrots, greens, turnips, potatoes, cabbages, &c. and notwithſtanding there is an abundance of theſe, yet the poor people ſeldom meet with them. They have plenty of beef, mutton, pork, geeſe, ducks, fowls, &c. The men wear their hair remarkably long, in a neat triple plait; while infants, their heads are frequently ſhaved. The women dreſs their hair, which is long, in neat circular folds on the top of the head, in a conical form. Thoſe of the higher claſs, wear different ornaments. As ſmall feet are eſteemed a great beauty among the ladies, they are cramped up from their infancy, and thereby frequently rendered cripples. Their artiſts are both ingenious and expert: their language difficult to be underſtood; their method of writing is in columns from the top to the bottom, always beginning at the right hand margin, and concluding at the left. In reſpect to numbers, they reckon every thing by tens, and inſtead of figures to caſt up ſums, uſe wooden balls, which run on ſmall ſpindles in a kind of open box, which they are very expert in. Their chief money is Spaniſh dollars. Their religion is idolatry, as every family have their houſhold god, which is an image generally fixed in ſome conſpicuous place, and decorated with various ornaments: in the night-time a light is kept conſtantly burning near this image. The people of rank keep a number of wives, polygamy being allowable; but no foreigner is allowed to have any connection with them, on pain of impriſonment or a heavy fine.

Notwithſtanding theſe people are very remarkable for painting, architecture, &c. yet they are totally ignorant of muſic. Every thing in China is ſold by weight.

February 6th they weighed and came to ſail, wiſhing to lie below the ſhipping, that they might be ready to go down the river when the pilot came on board, which he did at nine o'clock; they then warped down the river, with a light breeze from the N. E. and anchored during dinner-time. Three of the King George's men (Robert Spencer, John Harriſon, and Tho. Potts) ſtole a boat from alongſide the ſhip, and abſented themſelves. Mr. Hayward was immediately diſpatched with another boat to look for them: he found them near the Bankſhells; they went for the purpoſe of buying liquor, and purchaſed ſufficient to have kept all the crew drunk for ſome time. Theſe men, ſince the veſſel's arrival at Whampoo, were remarkable for their drunkenneſs, and conſequent idleneſs.

The next day they were occaſionally towing down the river. On the 8th they paſſed through the Bocca Tigris, with a freſh breeze at N. W. On the 9th they ſtood down Macao-roads to the ſouthward. The pilot was now diſcharged: from this to the 13th the weather was for the moſt part fair.

Several on board the King George were laid up with fluxes and fevers, which were imputed by the ſurgeon to their frequent intoxications at Whampoo: however, on the 14th, they were all upon the recovery.

On the 16th they ſteered S. W. by S. with a view of making the iſland Pulo Sapata.

The ſurgeon and cooper's mate belonging to the Queen Charlotte were now taken very ill. Captain Portlock and his ſurgeon viſited them the next day, and took with them ſome port wine. It was intended to remove the ſick of the Queen Charlotte to the King George, that they might have the benefit of the ſurgeon's attendance, Mr. Lauder being now totally incapable of performing his duty: however, as they were in a fair way of recovery, this removal was afterwards deemed unneceſſary. Capt. Portlock returned to his veſſel on the 18th. The Queen Charlotte now made three inches of water an hour, and as her leak ſeemed to increaſe, Capt. Portlock deemed it neceſſary to ſtay by her till ſhe was further examined.

On the 20th they ſaw the iſland Pulo Sapata, bearing S. W. about four leagues diſtant. On the 25th they ſaw the iſlands of Aramba, extending from E. N. E. to S. E. by E. about four leagues diſtant.

On the 26th Surgeon Hoggan, at the deſire of Capt. Portlock, viſited Surgeon Lauder on board the Queen Charlotte; this gentleman ſtill continuing very ill. In the afternoon, at ſix o'clock, the iſland Panſang bore N. W. by W. about five leagues diſtant.

On the 27th they ſaw Dominis, bearing S. W. Pula-Taya bearing S. 45 deg. W. and the Peak of Linging N. 64 deg. W.

On the 28th, at half paſt eleven, the Queen Charlotte hoiſted her colours half-maſt high. The King George accordingly ſhortened ſail, and ſpoke to her. Capt. Portlock was now informed that Mr. Lauder was dead. At noon they ſaw the three iſlands, which extended from S. by E. to E. N. E. the neareſt diſtant about three miles, and the fartheſt ſeven leagues.

Nothing material occurred during the remainder of this month. On the 1ſt of March they were joined by the Lanſdown Indiaman, Captain Storey, from China, bound to London.

On the 2d they had variable ſoundings from ten to three fathoms over muddy and ſandy bottoms. On the 3d they ſtood over to the Sumatra ſhore, and were driven very near a ſhoal that lies between the Iſland of Luſpura, and the firſt point of Sumatra, by a ſtrong tide ſetting to the S. E. Both the King George and Queen Charlotte paſſed it over in three fathoms, but the Lanſdown ſtruck, and ſtuck faſt, upon which ſhe made a ſignal of diſtreſs. The King George and Queen Charlotte now anchored in ſix fathoms, and hoiſted out their boats to give aſſiſtance, but the Queen Charlotte's whale-boat was ſcarcely in the water, before ſhe filled; ſhe was therefore hoiſted in again to be repaired by the carpenter. In a ſhort time after this, the Lanſdown made a ſignal for further aſſiſtance. Captain Portlock accordingly diſpatched four of his men with an officer in the yaul, and Captain Dixon went himſelf in his own boat. The yaul returned in about an hour's time, and Captain Dixon early the next morning. The Lanſdown had grounded on the ſmall ſhoals off Luſpura, but was ſoon hove off without any damage.

The Queen Charlotte now hove ſhort, in order to be ready whenever Captain Portlock ſhould make the ſignal for weighing: at twelve o'clock they weighed and made ſail: the weather was now cloudy, and they had conſtant lightning. On the 7th they ſaw the Siſters bearing S. W. by W. about four leagues diſtant. On the 8th the Lanſdown was almoſt out of ſight. The next day they had very ſqually weather, with continual thunder and lightning: at mid-night the King George loſt ſight of the Queen, but recovered her at day-light. Several of the ſhip's company were now very ill with fluxes, and on the 11th the King George loſt her armourer's mate, Thomas Pafford, who was buried in the evening. The whale-boat was ſent out by Captain Portlock to look for ſome turtle about the reef, but returned the next day without ſucceſs.

On the 14th the iſland of Java extended from S. E. by E. to S. about five or ſix leagues diſtant. The next day the boats were ſent on ſhore for water, alſo to cut wood: the ſick people were likewiſe ſent with them to recreate themſelves. The next day their wooding and watering were completed. The wood was obtained from North Iſland, where there are no inhabitants to prevent its being cut; the water from the Sumatra ſhore, which was remarkably good.

North Iſland is only two miles in circumference: it is entirely covered with trees of various kinds, and conſequently a refuge for the feathered tribe. Sumatra is inhabited by Malays, who abide here for the purpoſe of trading with thoſe veſſels which occaſionally anchor in the adjacent roads; and likewiſe to prey upon the wrecks. Some turtle was purchaſed from one of their boats, for the ſhip's uſe.

On the 30th Captain Portlock ſent for Captain Dixon, and they now agreed to part, and make each of them the beſt of their way to St. Helena. On the 1ſt of April they loſt ſight of each other: during this month and the greater part of June, the weather was very bad, attended with thunder, lightning, and rain.

May 16th the Queen Charlotte's pumps were choaked up, which was very unfortunate, as the veſſel, when on the ſtarboard-tack, made a good deal of water: however, the ſtarboard-pump was immediately hoiſted up, and as it was found choaked with the ſand, which had been uſed as a flooring for the teas (and which, owing to the tempeſtuous weather, had worked through the cieling), nine inches were cut from its bottom, and being thus cleared, it was immediately got down again. The Queen's company had been hitherto upon a ſtinted allowance of water, but as the weather was now ſo remarkably ſtormy, they were permitted to take as much as they wanted.

Captain Dixon, by advice of the officers, had the fore-hold broke open, in order to examine that part. The tea that had been lodged there, was dry and in good order, nor was there the leaſt appearance of any water being lodged in that part of the veſſel: the larboard pump was hoiſted up, and cleared of ſand. May 18th they found a leak under the counter, upon which they got up a number of articles which were ſtowed in the run, and of little conſequence, and hove them overboard. The weather ſtill continued very ſqually.

The King George, in doubling the Cape of Good Hope, kept much nearer the land than the Queen had done, and conſequently did not experience a continuance of ſo much bad weather. June 12th the King George ſaw the iſland of St. Helena, bearing W. by N. about ſeven leagues diſtant. On the 13th they ſhortened ſail and brought-to, there being a briſk breeze at S. E. with heavy weather. The whale-boat was now ſent on ſhore with an officer, to inform the governor of the veſſel's arrival. In about two hours the boat returned, with the governor's directions to come in: upon this, they made ſail for the bay, and at five in the evening anchored with the ſmall bower, in 13 fathoms, and moored with the beſt bower in 19 ditto, to the N. W. over a fine black muddy bottom. The carpenters were employed in repairing the ſheathing, cleaning the bottom, &c. &c. while the reſt were buſy in receiving freſh proviſions on ſhore, &c. The people were permitted to recreate themſelves on ſhore.

On the 18th the King George had completed her water, and the Queen Charlotte had juſt arrived, which prevented Captain Portlock from ſailing that day, as he intended. The next day the King George, having received the governor's diſpatches, made ſail, having previouſly ſaluted the garriſon with nine guns, which was returned with an equal number. They had now a continuance of moderate breezes from the S. E. On the 25th five of Capt. Portlock's men having eat hearty of bonettos for dinner, which had been caught at St. Helena, ſalted and hung up, they were ſeized in about an hour's time with violent pains in their heads, their bodies were very much ſwelled and inflamed, and an eruption appeared upon their ſkins. Sweet oil was adminiſtered, which ſpeedily removed thoſe alarming complaints. In the evening they were nearly recovered: the remainder of this poiſonous fiſh was thrown overboard.

Nothing material now occurred to either veſſel, while proceeding for England. On the 22d of Auguſt the King George arrived; and on the 17th of September the Queen Charlotte, both ſhips' companies being well and in good ſpirits.

As the grand motive for this voyage was to trade for furs, with an expectation of acquiring emolument adequate to their labour and dangers, it will no doubt be enquired whether this deſign was fully anſwered. Though the King George's Sound Company have not obtained any wonderful gain from this voyage, yet they have been ſo far gainers, that it is evident this branch of commerce, inſtead of being a loſing one, muſt be exceedingly profitable and lucrative to every enterpriſing merchant who is willing to engage therein. Proper allowance muſt be made for the inexperience of the *firſt* adventurers: it could not be expected that the King George would immediately anſwer the utmoſt extent of the Company's wiſhes. The King George and Queen Charlotte brought home upwards of two thouſand ſea-otter ſkins, which ſold from eighty to ninety dollars each, beſides a large quantity of inferior furs.

Having now furniſhed our readers in the moſt complete manner, with Captains Portlock and Dixon's intereſting Voyage Round the World in the King George and Queen Charlotte, and regularly given the Adventures of each (which were never before properly united), we ſhall proceed with the Voyages of Captains Meares, Tipping, and Douglas, in the Nootka, &c. &c. as the moſt proper to ſucceed Captain Portlock's, on account of their meeting, which has been already mentioned.

A NEW, COMPLETE, AND GENUINE
HISTORY OF
THE INTERESTING VOYAGES FROM
BENGAL and CHINA
TO THE
North Weſt COAST of AMERICA,
IN THE
NOOTKA and SEA-OTTER;
UNDER THE COMMAND OF
Captains MEARES *and* TIPPING.
Undertaken and Performed in 1786 and 1787.
AND IN THE
FELICE and IPHIGENIA;
UNDER THE COMMAND OF
Captains DOUGLAS *and* MEARES,
Made in the Years 1788 and 1789.
INCLUDING MANY NEW AND ADDITIONAL ACCOUNTS OF
The North Weſt COAST of AMERICA;
With all the INFORMATIONS, DISCOVERIES, ADVENTURES, &c. contained in the JOURNALS and COMMUNICATIONS of the ſeveral OFFICERS and GENTLEMEN therein concerned.

Being an Entire New HISTORY of the DISTRESSES and MISFORTUNES of the *Nootka* and *Sea-Otter*, and the ſeveral ADVANTAGES derived from the *Felice* and *Iphigenia*, with reſpect both to the IMPROVEMENT of NAVIGATION and EXTENT of COMMERCE, more Accurate and Full than any Accounts hitherto Publiſhed.

Which, with the ſeveral other VOYAGES and TRAVELS to be included in this Collection, will be Embelliſhed with a Variety of Elegant COPPER-PLATES, Drawn upon the Spots, and Engraved by Eminent Artiſts.

INTRODUCTION.

THE following commercial expedition was particularly ſupported by ſeveral perſons of diſtinction at Bengal, whoſe liberal encouragement on this occaſion Capt. Meares has gratefully acknowledged.

January 20th, 1786, there were two veſſels purchaſed for the ſake of this expedition. They were fitted out by the commercial zeal of Britiſh ſubjects in the ports of the Eaſt: the firſt was called the Nootka, of 200 tons, which was to be commanded by Capt. Meares; and the other the Sea-Otter, of 100 ditto, to be commanded by William Tipping, a lieutenant of the royal navy.

A committee was now appointed by the proprietors to arrange the neceſſary preparations for this voyage, when (on the 20th of February) two offers were propoſed, viz. to freight the Sea-Otter with opium to Malacca, and to convey Mr. Burke, Pay-Maſter General of the King's forces in India, with his ſuite, to Madras in the Nootka. As the former of theſe offers, it was calculated, would be productive of about three thouſand rupees, and for the conveyance of Mr. Burke the ſame ſum was to be paid, the committee readily accepted them, and it was now intended as ſoon as poſſible to make ſail.

At this time all kinds of ſtores and proviſions were extremely ſcarce at Bengal: there was barely a ſufficiency laid in for twelve months. They expected ſome aſſiſtance from Madras, which was to complete their equipment for eighteen months.

The Nootka was ſtrongly manned, but the men were ſuch as neceſſity made choice of. The ſhip's company were about forty, including the purſer, ſurgeon, five officers, boatſwain, and ten Laſcars, who embarked at Madras. Capt. Meares was very much diſappointed in not being able to get a carpenter, eſpecially as he experienced the diſagreeable conſequences of wanting ſo uſeful an artizan.

Captain Tipping was to proceed from Malacca to the N. W. coaſt of America, where it was intended that the Nootka and Sea-Otter ſhould meet.

It is neceſſary here to obſerve, that theſe were voyages of commerce, and not of diſcovery; notwithſtanding which, this commercial undertaking boaſts of ſo many incidents, that to the reader it may *diſcover* ſomething novel and original.

a CHAP.

CHAPTER I.

The Nootka proceeds on her Paſſage—Arrives at Madras—Proceed for Malacca—Death of the Boatſwain—Arrival—Proviſions, &c. laid in—Enter the China Seas—Anchor at Grafton Iſle—Departure—Driven among five Iſlands—In Danger on every ſide—Eſcape—Alarmed—Again—A thick Fog—In immenſe Danger for four Days—Anchor at Ounalaſhka—Remarks—Difficulties—Viſited by the Natives—They become troubleſome—Are diſperſed—A Fall of Snow—Several ſick—Deaths of the Surgeon and Pilot—Conſequent Diſtreſſes—Horrid Situation of the Nootka and Crew—Viſited by Capt. Dixon—Aſſiſted by Captain Portlock—Thaw of the Ice—Recovery of the Sick—Young Female Native purchaſed—Weather becomes clear—The Iſland of Owhybee made—Tiaana taken on board—Loſs of the Sea-Otter, and Crew.

ON the 2d of March, 1786, the Nootka got under ſail, and in the evening Mr. Burke and his ſuite came on board. They now proceeded on their voyage; in ten days they loſt ſight of land, and on the 27th arrived in Madras: nothing material occurred during the time, except the expedition of their paſſage, which was remarkable. They now landed their paſſengers, and procured neceſſary additions of ſtores and proviſions.

On the 7th of April they prepared to put to ſea: they now proceeded for Malacca: this paſſage was remarkably tedious, and the crew very much afflicted with the ſcurvy; the boatſwain, who was one of the moſt uſeful hands on board, died: they did not arrive at Malacca till the 23d of May; previous to which Captain Tipping, having completed all his buſineſs here, ſailed for America. They now procured another ſupply of proviſions; and laid in a quantity of wood and water. On the 29th they put to ſea, and entered in a few days the China ſeas, proceeding with a ſtrong S. W. monſoon.

On the 22d of June they ſaw Baſhee Iſlands; and on the 26th anchored at Grafton Iſle, in ſix fathom water, about a mile diſtant from ſhore. This bay is ſmall, but very pleaſant: it is ſurrounded by high land, handſomely cultivated. A large village is near the water, on a gentle eminence; which, together with the trees, mountains, and a rivulet, form a ſcene romantic and beautiful.

Theſe iſles were taken poſſeſſion of by the Spaniards in 1782, who expected to have found ſome rich metals in them. The natives ſeemed very free and inoffenſive. Captain Meares, during his ſtay, which was four days, was treated very civilly by the governor and his garriſon, who did not prevent his trading with the natives. They procured here a quantity of hogs, goats, ducks, fowls, yams, potatoes, &c. for pieces of iron.

They left theſe iſlands on the 1ſt of July, and proceeded along the Japan Iſles. On the 1ſt of Auguſt they ſaw the iſles of Amlue and Atcha: they made for the former, and anchored there two days, during which time they were viſited by the Ruſſians and natives.

In their paſſage to Ounalaſhka, they were driven among five iſlands, called Pat Sopka; and as they now could not ſee their way, on account of a continued fog, they were ſurrounded with dangers on every ſide: they had, however, a fortunate eſcape. Theſe iſlands are uninhabited, and ſeem to be nothing more than huge maſſes of entire rock: two of them bear the reſemblance of a ſugar-loaf.

On the 5th of Auguſt they met ſome canoes who were fiſhing for whales. On the 6th at night they were alarmed by hearing the ſurge of the ſea upon the ſhore: they tacked and ſtood on for two hours, and were alarmed again with the ſame noiſe: they tacked again, and ſaw ſome land at day-break over the maſt-head, which was covered with ſnow. A thick fog continued for four days; during which time they were endeavouring, but in vain, to obtain a paſſage; every way ſeemed to be blocked againſt them. In this diſtreſſing ſituation, they were continually alarmed with the hoarſe daſhing of the ſurges; and as there were no ſoundings, their fears were inexpreſſible. On the 6th the fog diſperſed: their joy could now only be equalled by their awe at ſeeing the immenſe danger they eſcaped. As it was impoſſible, on account of the ſtrong current, to go ſouthward by the channel through which they came, they bore up and went to the northward. Having got as far to the eaſtward as Ounalaſhka, they were enabled by a ſtrong N. wind to get through between Unamah and Ounalaſhka. As ſoon as they got round to the S. ſide of the iſland, a Ruſſian came and piloted their veſſel into an harbour.

On the 20th of Auguſt they left Ounalaſhka, and proceeded down the continent, with a view of paſſing the Shumagin Iſlands, which they ſaw on the 27th. Several canoes came to them from the ſhore, which was about four leagues diſtant: the dreſs and manners of the people, as well as the conſtruction of the canoes, appeared to be the ſame as thoſe of the Fox iſles.

On the 28th they propoſed to make one port to the weſtward of Cook's River. They ſteered for a large opening which they ſaw, and which ſeemed to be formed by an iſland, and appeared very extenſive on being approached. In expectation of being viſited by the natives, they continued their courſe for about twenty leagues up the ſtrait, and at laſt met with a canoe which had three people it in, one of whom proved to be a Ruſſian ſeaman. This man came on board the Nootka, and gave them ſome neceſſary information, but which was by no means agreeable, as it was contrary to their expectations of a good trade.

They continued their paſſage through the ſtraits, which were called Petrie's Strait, in honour of William Petrie, Eſq; they are upwards of 10 leagues in length, and 15 in breadth. They anchored in Cape Douglas, and were ſhortly viſited by a number of canoes, of whom they purchaſed two or three otter-ſkins.

They were now detained by ſeveral heavy gales of wind, but were determined the very firſt opportunity to quit the river, and to proceed to Prince William's Sound, in order to winter there if poſſible.

On their arrival at Snug Corner Cove, in Prince William's Sound, the weather was very boiſterous, nor did they ſee a native for three days, which led them to imagine that the inhabitants had retired from the coaſt, and were gone to the ſouthward during the cold weather. Captain Meares from ſeeing ſome wood which had been freſh cut on ſhore, concluded that his partner Captain Tipping had been here before him, and was now gone for China: in this ſituation they were oppreſſed with difficulties; the badneſs of the weather diſcouraged them from proceeding, and from the dreary proſpect of this place, they could neither expect trade or refreſhments: the ſeamen were exceedingly diſſatisfied and unhappy. However, on the 4th of October they met with ſeveral canoes, the natives were exceedingly affable and generous: from theſe they underſtood that the Sea-Otter had been here, and that Captain Tipping had purchaſed ſeveral ſkins.

As they were now ſatisfied that the ſound was inhabited, they were determined to look for a harbour where they might ſtay during the winter. The boats were accordingly ſent out; and the next day they found a very commodious one, about 15 miles E. N. E. from their preſent ſituation; where they anchored on the 7th. The people were now employed in cleaning and airing the veſſel.

They were conſtantly viſited by the natives, who frequently exhibited their dexterity at thieving.

About the middle of the month they collected a few ſkins; but the natives were at laſt ſo numerous that they became abſolutely troubleſome, and the Engliſh were rather perplexed how to behave, as they were deſirous to avoid hoſtilities; however, on the 25th, as they continued to increaſe, and not only incommoded the Engliſh in ſpite of all their ſignals, but even endeavoured to ſteal their axes, there were two guns preſented, which had the deſired effect: afterwards a twelve-pound cannonade was fired with grape-ſhot, the exploſion of this created ſo much alarm that half of them overſet their canoes in making their eſcape; upon which they became quiet, and ſeveral fine ſea-otter ſkins were afterwards purchaſed.

There were now frequent falls of ſnow, which prevented them from covering the veſſel with ſpars, and cloſing it in all round the ſides, as was intended. Hitherto they caught a quantity of ſalmon, but now they were leaving the ſmall rivers. They were occaſionally ſupplied by the natives with ſome mountain ſheep, which were the only land animals that were ſeen there. About the beginning of November the fiſh had entirely deſerted the creeks and coves, nor were there any birds to be ſeen: the mountains were all white with ſnow, and the veſſel ſurrounded with ice: the people frequently ſkaited, which afforded them no little recreation; but when the ſnow became as deep on the ice as it was on the ſhore, they were obliged to give over this exerciſe and amuſement.

The natives ſtill continued very friendly, but could not refrain from their itch of ſtealing, which of courſe made the Engliſh particularly careful. All the ſhip's crew were at preſent in good health.

Their ſituation was now extremely unpleaſant; there was no proſpect of any conſolation, being bereſt of all neceſſary ſupport and recreation.

The beginning of the year added to their troubles, by increaſing the cold: they were frequently obliged to keep fires night and day, but the ſmoke which proceeded from a temporary ſtove, formed of one of their forges, was at laſt ſo offenſive, that in conſequence thereof ſeveral of the crew fell ſick. About the beginning of the month a dozen kept their beds, and towards the end two dozen, among whom was the ſurgeon, whoſe indiſpoſition was of great conſequence: four of theſe unfortunate people ſhortly died. The number of the ſick increaſed in February, and four more were loſt. Their ſtock of proviſions too were nearly exhauſted, while ſorrow and apprehenſion became general.

Notwithſtanding the ſeverity of the weather, they were conſtantly viſited by the natives, who had no other clothing but frocks made of the ſkins of ſea-otters and ſeals to defend them from the cold. They ſeemed to be as much diſtreſſed for proviſions as the Engliſh; and were greatly concerned for thoſe of Captain Meares's men that died.

The ſucceeding month was ſtill cold and raw: the number of the ſick increaſed, and the ſcurvy raged with additional violence. About the middle of the month the ſurgeon and the pilot died. Their ſituation now was truly lamentable, being deprived by the loſs of the former of that medical aſſiſtance which was at preſent ſo much wanted; ſeveral of the indiſpoſed received great benefit from exerciſe, and the juice of the pine-tree. Capt. Meares was now obliged to perform the duties of a ſurgeon, according to the beſt of his abilities; but ſo great was their preſent calamity, that dead bodies were continually dragged upon the ſledge on which they fetched the wood, and committed to chaſms in the ice: the groans of the dying filled the veſſel, and their mournful condition repreſented a ſcene of horror; their cordial proviſions were long expended, and the only things that could be adminiſtered to the ſick were biſcuit, rice, and a ſmall quantity of flour: crows and ſea-gulls were rare delicacies. Two or three eagles were killed, and eſteemed delicious food: they were obliged alſo to kill, with great reluctance, a male and a female goat, who were made pets of during the voyage, in order to ſerve the ſick with broth, which they kept for fourteen days. This month ſtill continued cold and ſevere; the beginning of the next was the ſame; but about the middle thereof there were ſome heavy ſoutherly gales, which promiſed a favourable change of weather; notwithſtanding which the ſick people grew worſe, and the three Laſcars, with four Engliſhmen, died.

About the 30th of April the natives brought them ſome herring and ſea-fowl, which were diſtributed among the ſick, and exceedingly well reliſhed: every encouragement was given to the natives to continue their bounty; who now began to conſole the Engliſh with an aſſurance that the cold would ſoon be gone; the gradual appearance of the ſun ſeemed to confirm their declaration; and on the beginning of May a wonderful change took place, both in the people and the weather. Several of the ſeamen, who had been very much reduced, were now miraculouſly recovered, chiefly owing to the ſalutary effects of the pine-juice.

On the 17th of May the king of the iſland, with his retinue, came on board in great ſtate, to congratulate the Engliſh on the return of ſummer. Capt. Meares now underſtood that two veſſels had been ſeen at ſea; which comfortable intelligence was confirmed on the 19th, by the arrival of two canoes, conducting a boat with Capt. Dixon, of the Queen Charlotte: his preſence afforded univerſal joy. Capt. Meares ſent a letter to Capt. Portlock, requeſting his aſſiſtance per ſavour of Capt. Dixon: however, a few hours after Capt. Dixon's departure, Capt. Meares thinking that his preſence would have greater weight, had the long-boat hoiſted out, in order to proceed to the King George; and, notwithſtanding the boat was in a deplorable and dangerous way, yet the captain, with five of his men, and a firſt officer, ventured in her, and by the providential fineneſs of the weather got along-ſide the King George about three o'clock the following evening, the boat being half full of water: the boat was afterwards caulked by the King George's carpenter, and rendered fit for their return to the Nootka. Captain Meares brought back with him ſome brandy, gin, flour, molaſſes, &c. which Capt. Portlock delivered to him for the uſe of his men.

On the 12th of May the weather became very pleaſant. The main body of ice being thawed, the veſſel now ſwung to her anchors: the ſick were recovering apace, except two, who were ſo far gone as to baffle the utmoſt attention: vegetables, as yet, were not attainable, the ſnow not being quite gone. On the 17th the ice was entirely thawed.

They were conſtantly viſited by the natives, and the King and his chiefs. His majeſty brought a young woman, and offered her for ſale: the captain purchaſed her for an axe and a ſmall quantity of glaſs beads. She remainded on board the Nootka near four months, apparently content with her ſituation. The captain underſtanding that ſhe belonged to a tribe who lived to the ſouthward, intended, while coaſting along in queſt of furs, to have reſtored her to her country people; but unforeſeen misfortunes prevented this humane deſign.

The reader has been already preſented with a deſcription of thoſe natives: we ſhall, however, add ſome occaſional remarks, which were made by Capt. Meares during his long ſtay in thoſe iſlands.

“ The people are remarkably ferocious, and poſſeſs an uncommon degree of inſenſibility to pain: of this there was a very ſingular proof on the following occaſion; ſeveral broken glaſſes having been thrown out of the veſſel with other rubbiſh, one of the natives, in ſearching among them for what he might deem worthy of preſervation, cut his foot in a very ſevere manner. The Engliſh wanted him to dreſs the wound according to their "but he and his companions inſtantly turned the "whole into ridicule, and to ſhew their diſregard "of pain, they took ſome of the glaſs and ſcarified "their legs and arms in a moſt extraordinary "manner."

After having buried 23 men in this unfortunate cove, they left it with great pleaſure on the 21ſt of June. The crew now conſiſted of only 24 people, including the captain, his officers, and two ſailors whom they got from Capt. Portlock; and notwithſtanding ſome of theſe people were not quite recovered from their late illneſs, yet they were ſo elate with their departure, that they were all now in high ſpirits. On the 22d they got out to ſea, and for ten days could get no farther to the ſouthward than 57 deg. Several of the people were now laid up with ſwelled legs, from being ſo frequently wet upon deck. Captain Meares, therefore, judged it prudent to ſtand in for land; and accordingly made for a very high peak, of a ſingular form, about forty leagues diſtant. As ſoon as they approached the ſhore, they were viſited by ſeveral canoes, which were made quite different to thoſe in the Sound, being conſtructed of a ſolid tree, from 50 to 70 feet in length, but no broader than the tree itſelf. The inhabitants were likewiſe of ſingular manners and appearance: the women were particularly hideous and uncommon; they were ornamented, or more properly ſpeaking diſfigured, in the ſame manner as the natives of Prince William's Sound, though unacquainted with thoſe people. This is the firſt time they were ever ſeen by any navigator.

The weather becoming very clear, they proceeded with a northerly wind to Owhyhee: indeed, had it not been ſo fine and favourable, in all probability they never ſhould have reached the Sandwich Iſlands, owing to the miſerable condition of the veſſel: beſides, the crew were not quite recovered, ſome being ſtill laid up, one of whom was loſt; however, as ſoon as they entered this ſalubrious clime, every complaint vaniſhed.

They remained at theſe iſlands about a month, during which they experienced much hoſpitality and kindneſs from the natives, ſeveral of whom when they were about to depart ſtrongly ſolicited to accompany them. Capt. Meares conſented to take Tiaana, the king's brother, who embarked with them, to the great diſſatiſfaction of the other chiefs, who envied his departure. The character of this native has been already given in the preceding voyage.

On the 2d of Sept. they left Sandwich Iſlands, and on the 20th of October arrived in the Typa, an harbour near Macao, after a very favourable voyage.

They had ſcarcely come to anchor, when there was every ſign of a ſtorm; which, if it had taken place before their arrival, their veſſel, on account of its ſhattered ſtate, could never have encountered. The people likewiſe, on account of ſo long an abſence, being entirely unacquainted with the political ſtate of the nation, were very much alarmed at ſeeing two French veſſels of war in thoſe ſeas; and as they ſaw ſeveral boats filled with troops coming off from them, they concluded the worſt: however, their apprehenſions of meeting with enemies were, after ſome time, removed. Now freſh calamities took place: the ſtorm which threatened became ſo very violent, that the Calypſo, one of the French veſſels, could ſcarcely keep her place with five anchors; how great, therefore, muſt be the Nootka's danger, that had only one anchor left: they were obliged to run her aſhore, as the only way of preſerving her; and by the generous aſſiſtance of Count de Kergarieu, the officers and ſeamen of the Calypſo frigate, they were happily enabled to accompliſh their ſafety.

Captain Meares now anxiouſly enquired after his partner; but there being no intelligence whatever of Captain Tipping, it was concluded that the Sea-Otter and her crew periſhed.

CHAPTER II.

Two Veſſels fitted out—Their Names and Commander—Crew, &c.—They leave Typa—Proceed to Sea—The Iphigenia ſprung a Leak—Her Foremaſt dangerouſly ſprung—Apprehenſions—The Iphigenia in a critical Situation—The Captain's Determination—Proceed along the Coaſt of Luconia—Goat Iſland ſeen—Alſo Luban Iſlands, &c. &c.—The Veſſels put in a State of Defence againſt Pirates—Captain Douglas's Men afflicted with the Scurvy—The Iſland of Panay paſſed—A Mutiny on board the Felice—Its happy Suppreſſion—The Sandwich Iſlanders taken ill—Death and Character of the Woman—Cattle deſtroyed—Anchorage at Magindanao—The Carpenters employed in repairing the Iphigenia—A China-man loſt—An Invitation from the Governor—Accepted—A kind Reception—Invitation to a Ball—Behaviour and Character of the People.

IN January, 1788, Captain Meares (by the aſſiſtance of ſome Britiſh merchants reſident in India) purchaſed and fitted-out two veſſels in the beſt manner: they were ſtrongly built, copper-bottomed, &c. in order to endure every kind of ſeverity; they were called the Felice and Iphigenia. The Felice was of 230 tons burthen, and to be commanded by Captain Meares: the Iphigenia, of 200 ditto, to be commanded by Captain Douglas.

The crews conſiſted of Europeans and Chineſe: the latter, being eſteemed induſtrious and hardy, were taken by way of experiment. Among theſe were artificers of every denomination, eſpecially ſmiths, carpenters, &c. both Chineſe and European, to the number of forty. The Chineſe were, in all, fifty; ſeveral others ſolicited to embark, but the above number was deemed ſufficient. Proviſions of the moſt ſalutary kind were laid in, beſides a ſufficient ſtock of warm cloathing, &c. A great quantity of uſeful animals were alſo taken on board, for the ſervice of Tiaana's countrymen; every perſon being anxious to teſtify their regard for this amiable Indian. On board of each veſſel were embarked ſix cows and three bulls, four bull and cow calves, ſeveral goats, turkies, rabbits, pigeons, &c. &c. alſo ſeveral lime and orange-trees, which were deſtined for Attoui.

Beſides Tiaana, there were other natives of Sandwich Iſles, that had been brought to China by different veſſels, who were now received on board in order to reſtore them to their country: they conſiſted of a woman of the iſland of Owhyhee, whoſe name was Winee: ſhe enjoyed but a very poor ſtate of health; alſo a man and a boy of the iſland of Mowee; the man was very robuſt and ſtrong: there was likewiſe another of King George's Sound.

On the 22d of January both veſſels weighed from the Typa, with a view of proceeding to ſea; but being diſappointed in their deſign by a ſudden calm, were obliged to re-anchor. In the evening, about nine o'clock, being favoured with a S. E. breeze, the Felice made a ſignal for weighing: accordingly they put to ſea, and continued ſtanding to the Grand Ladrone till midnight, when the Felice was obliged to ſhorten ſail, in order to keep up with the Iphigenia, which was now conſiderably aſtern. At this time there was a great fog; on which account they were more careful not to ſeparate; notwithſtanding (the fog ſtill continuing) Captain Meares loſt ſight of the Iphigenia the next night: as ſoon as the fog cleared away, ſhe was perceived about a league to leeward of them. The Felice fired ſeveral times, that the other might judge of her ſituation.

They now kept eaſtward, in order to make the coaſt of Luconia; the Felice being frequently obliged to ſhorten ſail, as the Iphigenia was not able to keep her: this ſuggeſted to Captain Meares the neceſſity of their parting company, when they had got clear of the Soloo Sea.

The Iphigenia had now ſprung a leak above the copper, which obliged Captain Douglas to keep one pump going. This accident occaſioned much uneaſineſs, for fear it might diſcourage the ſeamen, who are too frequently influenced by ſuperſtitious ideas: the captain was therefore reſolved to remedy it the firſt favourable opportunity.

The Chineſe were exceedingly ſea-ſick, and the cattle began to droop, by the continual tumbling of the veſſel: as it was therefore deemed impoſſible to preſerve them all during ſo long a voyage, and being at preſent in want of freſh food, they judged it expedient to kill two of them now, and provide comfortable meſſes for the ſick crew. They intended, if poſſible, to preſerve two cows and a bull, and one bull and one cow calf, which they hoped would become inured to the voyage.

On the 25th the Iphigenia ſpread abroad the ſignal of diſtreſs; upon which the Felice bore up and ſpoke to her. It was underſtood that her foremaſt was ſo dangerouſly ſprung, that it was neceſſary to ſecure it immediately: it was impoſſible, however, to afford her any aſſiſtance at preſent, as the ſea ran very high, and the wind was remarkably ſtrong. Indeed, the preſent ſituation of the Iphigenia, on account of the tempeſtuous weather, and the ſhoals which ſurrounded, occaſioned no ſmall apprehenſions.

The weather being equally tempeſtuous on the 26th, no aſſiſtance could yet be afforded. There was a ſtage erected round her maſt-head; but, on account of the great hollow ſea, ſhe was in a very critical ſituation.

Two fine goats on board the Felice were cruſhed, by a ſudden roll of the veſſel. Another of the cattle was alſo killed for the crew.

On the 27th Captain Meares underſtood from his partner, that the head of the Iphigenia's foremaſt was entirely rotten, and that it was with the utmoſt difficulty the carpenters could keep it in a ſtate of ſecurity: however, before night, her fore-top was ſeen over-head, and her lower rigging ſet up.

They now determined, on the firſt opportunity, to call a ſurvey of the carpenters, and deemed it expedient to make for Samboingan, on the ſouthern extremity of Magindanao, in order to repair the Iphigenia's maſt, or build a new one, if the old was condemned.

The iſland of Luconia was ſeen on the 28th; previous to this they were apprehenſive of falling in with the ſhoals. Towards evening it became calm, and at night they had a freſh breeze from the S. W. They now ſtood off and on the ſhore about ſix or ſeven leagues, and ſaw ſeveral fires, which continued burning during the greater part of the night.

The 29th the land bore from N. N. E. to S. S. E. about ſix leagues diſtant. It ſeemed very mountainous, and for the moſt part covered with wood: by the great quantity of ſmoke which was ſeen, the place was undoubtedly inhabited. The weather was now pleaſant, and the ſea remarkably ſmooth.

On the 30th they ſtood to the S. by E. in order to make Goat Iſland, guarding againſt the ſhoals which lay to the northward of that iſland. Goat Iſland was ſeen the next day, bearing N. E. by N. about ſix leagues diſtant. It appeared of a moderate height, and well covered with wood, but there was no ſign of any inhabitants.

As the weather was very favourable, they now took this opportunity of defending the veſſels againſt pirates, with whom thoſe ſeas are infeſted. The guns were accordingly mounted, and a proper quantity of powder and ammunition provided. At this time the maſts of the Iphigenia were alſo ſurveyed; and ſhe was ſupplied with neceſſary articles by the Felice, for her defence.

The carpenters having ſurveyed the Iphigenia, returned to the Felice, and declared the maſt to be totally unfit for the voyage; indeed it was very much feared whether it would carry her to Samboingan: all that was poſſible they did to ſecure it.

At noon the iſland of Mindoro was ſeen, which bore S. E. by E. about ten leagues diſtant. They had now a ſtrong eaſterly wind, proceeding from the Luban mountains. They made for the ſhore of Mindoro; but as the wind ſtill continued from the E. they were greatly afraid of being drove in with the Calamine Iſlands, which are not only numerous, but attended with much danger. They kept up as much ſail as poſſible, and fortunately reached Mindoro about midnight: as it was now dark and ſqually, the ſignal was made to the Iphigenia to heave-to, with her head off ſhore: Captain Meares deemed it too hazardous to run on an unknown coaſt with theſe diſadvantages. There was a fierce gale, and no ground with a hundred fathom line. The inhabitants had lighted ſeveral fires along the ſhores on the tops of the mountains, which continued burning all night.

The iſland of Mindoro is very extenſive; ſeveral parts ſeem very mountainous, and others moderately high. There is little doubt but what the place is very well inhabited, by reaſon of the continual and numerous fires which were ſeen: thoſe parts which were diſtinctly ſeen were exceedingly delightful. The groves of trees, verdant hills, extenſive lawns, &c. &c. diſplayed a moſt luxuriant and romantic proſpect.

The next morning (Feb. 1ſt) the Iphigenia was four leagues a-head the Felice, but her partner having made ſail, joined her by noon. Mindoro now bore S. E. by E. about ſix leagues diſtant. At night the wind was ſtill fierce, and the ſea rough, which occaſioned ſome apprehenſion for the maſts and yards. In order to clear the Calamine Iſlands, they hauled cloſe under the ſhore of Mindoro. The fires on the mountains were now more numerous than they were the preceding night.

On the 2d, about nine o'clock, they ſaw the Calamine Iſlands, which bore S. W. to S. E. about 17 leagues diſtant. As the weather was very favourable, they kept the ſhores of the Philippines, carrying a conſtant preſs of ſail.

The ſcurvy had now made its appearance on board the Iphigenia. Several of the ſeamen were ill, and particularly the carpenter and two of the quarter-maſters: there were ſeveral alarming ſymptoms, particularly the ſwelling of their legs, and their gums becoming putrid. Every antiſcorbutic that they had was applied, and ſpruce-beer given in the room of ſpirits. The ſalt proviſions were always carefully ſoaked before they were made uſe of: rice and peas alternately boiled every day, and tea and ſugar given for breakfaſt. There was alſo a plentiful allowance of water, and great pains taken to preſerve cleanlineſs.

On the 3d, having loſt ſight of Mindoro, they ſaw the iſland of Paney about noon, which bore from N. E. by E. to S. E. about nine leagues diſtant. They had now agreeable weather, and a N. E. wind. On the 4th they ranged up this iſland, about four leagues diſtant from land, and their latitude 10 deg. 36 min. N. They had no ſoundings with eighty fathom line.

The country had a very rich appearance, and ſeveral villages were ſeen on the declivity of the hills. The houſes appeared both neatly and regularly built, and their fine verdure and rivulets formed a moſt delightful ſcene. No canoe, or fiſhing-boat, was however ſeen.

A mutiny was now diſcovered on board the Felice, but (before it was productive of any fatal effects) it was immediately cruſhed by gentle means. The circumſtances were inſerted in the log-book of the veſſel, in order to ſtamp a degree of diſgrace upon the authors, it being Captain Meares opinion that ſhame is in many caſes more efficacious than even ſevere puniſhment.

The natives of Owhyhee, who were on board, were exceedingly ill: Winee, the woman, had caught a fever, and the generous Tiaana, from his conſtant attendance upon her, was alſo confined to his bed: indeed the woman was ſo bad, that there were no hopes of her recovery. All that remained therefore to be done for her, was to make her diſſolution as eaſy as poſſible: ſhe expired on the 5th of February. Tiaana was ſo exceedingly moved with her death, that it was greatly apprehended his health would have materially ſuffered on the occaſion. He had received from his poor country-woman, the day before her death, a plate looking-glaſs, a china baſon and bottle, and a gown, hoop, cap, petticoat, &c. for his wife: this was a token of gratitude for his kind attention to her. The reſt of her property ſhe left to her father and mother, and were accordingly entruſted to Tiaana to be delivered to them.

The ſtock of cattle was now conſiderably reduced, through the bad weather. All the goats except two had periſhed; and only one bull, one cow, and one cow calf, now remained.

On the 5th the ſouthern extremity of Point de Naſſo bore E. N. E. about ſeven leagues diſtant. During night they ſteered to the ſouthward and eaſtward; and on the 6th, at day-break, they made the ſouthern extremity of the iſland of Magindanao, which bore eaſt, about eight leagues diſtant. This iſland ſeemed very high and mountainous. They had no ground with 100 fathom line. They now ſteered for Samboingan.

On the 7th, at noon, they ſaw the iſland of Baſilan, which had a very remarkable appearance, on account of a number of hills of a conical form: one of them (which being the higheſt was the moſt conſpicuous) reſembled the cap of a Chineſe mandarin. At half paſt four they made Samboingan; but the tide of ebb being ſtrongly againſt them, the ſignal was made for anchoring, which they did in 11 fathoms, over a muddy bottom, about two miles diſtant from the fort, and within a quarter of a mile from the ſhore.

The boats were now hoiſted out, and the carpenters ſent to ſurvey the wood of the country: on their return they reported, that the timber was not only fit for their purpoſe, but they could get as much as they wanted. The next morning they were ſent again, with an officer and a ſtrong party of men, to cut down ſome ſpars for top-ſail yards, and ſteering ſail-booms, for the Felice. An equal number were diſpatched by the Iphigenia, to cut a foremaſt; while the pinnace was employed in ſounding and ſurveying the channel: they found from five to thirty fathoms, over a rocky bottom.

The carpenters returned about noon, with a top-ſail yard and the booms; a foremaſt was alſo cut for the Iphigenia. A China-man, who accompanied them, having ſtrayed into the woods, was loſt, and ſuppoſed to have been ſeized by the Malayans, as the place where the men were at work was infeſted by ſeveral of theſe ſavages, well armed.

An officer arrived from the governor, to compliment the captains on their arrival, and invite them to an entertainment, which was prepared on purpoſe: he likewiſe gave ſome neceſſary information relative to the places which abounded with the beſt wood and water, and aſſured the captains that the governor would render them every aſſiſtance in his power. Meares and Douglas returned their hearty thanks, and accepted of the governor's polite invitation.

In was now reſolved that the veſſels ſhould moor nearer to the village; accordingly they weighed, and anchored abreaſt of Fort Caldera, where they were ſaluted with nine guns; which compliment was immediately returned.

When the captains, with their officers, &c. waited upon the governor, according to invitation, they were received with the greateſt politeneſs, and every attention paid them. The governor was attended by three prieſts, one, who was old, had been a long time reſident in the iſland; the other two were young. They had plenty of refreſhments, according to the Spaniſh faſhions; and were alſo ſupplied with ſweetmeats, cordials, and every thing that the iſland afforded, for the uſe of the veſſels.

On the 10th, the governor ſent two gallies, completely armed, to accompany the boats of both veſſels, which were now diſpatched for the ſake of cutting another foremaſt for the Iphigenia, as the former was diſapproved of. The boats were likewiſe well manned and armed, in order to be defended againſt the Malayans, who were continually on the watch to commit depredations. The people on board the veſſels were in the mean time employed in their different neceſſary operations. The carpenters, &c. returned with a very fine tree. During the excurſion, they met with no enemy.

The captains had now reſolved between themſelves to ſeparate, for as the Iphigenia could not poſſibly be ready for ſea ſome time, Captain Meares thought his ſtay not only unneceſſary, but would be a delay of ſome conſequence; accordingly the Felice was provided with every thing ſhe wanted, in order to leave Samboingan as ſoon as poſſible.

The native of King George's Sound remained on board the Felice, but Tiaana was now conſigned to Captain Douglas's care, as it was intended that the Iphigenia ſhould bend her courſe to his native country. It was hoped alſo that the novelty of the ſcenes on ſhore would amuſe Tiaana, and remove that grief which the death of Winee had occaſioned.

They received on board the Felice ſeveral fine hogs, and a quantity of rice, vegetables, fruit, &c. as they intended to put to ſea as ſoon as the weather was favourable. Captain Meares, previous to his departure, ſent an invitation to the governor, in return for his politeneſs: this was very readily accepted; and the captain's company, and that of his friends, were likewiſe requeſted to a ball which the governor intended to give that evening.

When the governor and his ſuite viſited the captains, according to invitation, every exertion was uſed to render the place as agreeable and comfortable as poſſible, in return for the many favours which he had ſhewn them. On his going on ſhore, he expreſſed great ſatisfaction at the attention that was paid him.

On the 11th, at four o'clock, the Felice hove ſhort, the tide being then in their favour, with a freſh breeze from the northward; one of the anchors had hooked a rock, and in endeavouring to diſentangle it from its hold, the cable gave way, and it was unfortunately loſt. The Iphigenia gave her partner three cheers, as the Felice was paſſing cloſe to her under ſail, which were accordingly returned.

The following is a correct deſcription of the ball which the governor had prepared for his viſiters the night before the Felice's departure: alſo Captain Meares's account of the country.

“The governor's ball commenced at eight o'clock in the evening: the company met at his houſe. The ladies, who were eſcorted by a number of young men of Samboingan, were dreſſed after the manner of the iſland, which borders on (as we may ſuppoſe it to be borrowed from) the faſhions of Manilla. It conſiſted of a veil, which fell gracefully to the ancles, and was ſo arranged as to heighten real charms, and to make one fancy beauty even where nature had denied it. The arms alone were bare; but the folds were ſo contrived as half to diſcover the boſom, while the entire figure, in all the ſimplicity of nature, could not be deſcribed, as being concealed from the exploring eye. Their ancles and wriſts were adorned with bracelets of gold, which gave (as may be ſuppoſed) ſomewhat of a richneſs to an appearance that was already elegant. Many of them were extremely handſome; nor did certain arch looks, which appeared to be habitual, though they were heightened by the dance, render them leſs agreeable. The fandango was performed in its utmoſt perfection: the minuet was not diſgraced by their motions; and Engliſh country dances, ſeveral of which were performed in compliment to the Engliſh, have been often exhibited with far leſs grace and agility in many of our beſt aſſemblies, than in this diſtant and remote corner of the Phillippine Iſlands. This amuſement laſted till twelve o'clock, when all the company retired, with every appearance of the moſt perfect ſatisfaction.

“For ſuch means of innocent amuſement, the people are indebted to the venerable padre, who himſelf joined in the dance. Indeed it would have been not only to the honour of Spain, but of the religion it profeſſes, if ſuch men had been employed, who, like this amiable prieſt, could make their miſſions a ſource of comfort and happineſs, inſtead of accompanying them with that ſeverity of diſcipline, and cruelty of compulſion, which renders converſion inſincere or miſunderſtood, and is in ſuch direct oppoſition to the mild and benevolent ſpirit of Chriſtianity.

“The village or town of Samboingan is ſituated on the banks of a ſmall rivulet, which empties itſelf immediately into the ſea; and is agreeably ſhaded by groves of cocoa-trees. The number of its inhabitants are about 1000, among which are included the officers, ſoldiers, and their reſpective families. In its environs there are ſeveral ſmall look-out houſes, erected on poſts of 12 feet high, in all of which a conſtant guard is kept; ſo that it appears as if the Spaniards were in a continual ſtate of enmity with the natives.

“The houſes are built of thoſe ſimple materials which are of very general uſe in the Eaſtern ſeas. They are erected on poſts, and built of bamboo, covered with mats: the lower apartments ſerve for their hogs, cattle, and poultry, and the upper ones are occupied by the family. Nor did it a little excite our aſtoniſhment, that the Spaniards, inſtead of creating an emulation and improvement among the natives, from their own ſuperior knowledge of the arts and conveniencies of life, ſhould inſenſibly ſink into the manners and cuſtoms of the very people whoſe ignorance they affect to deſpiſe. But, though their houſes have but little to boaſt, their piety has produced a decent church, which is built of ſtone. The fort is a very poor place of defence; and is, as far as they could judge, in an abſolute ſtate of decay; for the governor's cautious ſpirit took care to keep them from any particular examination of it. Towards the land, its whole defence conſiſted of a ſimple barrier, with two or three pieces of cannon. To a very moderate force, indeed, this place would become an eaſy capture: indeed the Felice and Iphigenia might, without any aſſiſtance, have rendered the Spaniſh power very precarious in this ſettlement. The military force conſiſted of from 150 to 200 ſoldiers, natives of Manilla; in which place alſo the governor himſelf was born.——They appeared to be in a ſtate of diſcipline by no means unworthy of the fortreſs which they garriſoned.

“Samboingan is the Botany Bay of the Philippines, and crimes of a certain nature are puniſhed there by baniſhment to this place. We did not ſee any of the delinquents, but we had reaſon to ſuſpect that there were ſeveral in ſome kind of cloſe confinement.

“Inconſiderable, however, as this ſettlement may appear, the governor is ſuppoſed to clear 30,000 dollars in the three years of his reſidence there. This advantage he derives from furniſhing the ſoldiers with cloathing and proviſion,—from gold duſt, cinnamon, ſpices, and other contraband goods.

“The conduct of the inhabitants was governed by the moſt pleaſing decorum, for which they are ſolely indebted to the civilizing ſpirit of the old padre, as his two fellow-labourers in the ſpiritual vineyard were rather calculated to deprave than improve the poor people committed to their charge: indeed the former was of that amiable, conciliating diſpoſition, which is ſo well adapted to the cultivation of ſavage manners. We were equally ſurpriſed at hearing a very tolerable band of muſic, which was compoſed of natives of the country: it conſiſted of four violins, two baſſoons, with ſeveral flutes and mandolins. This unexpected orcheſtra were acquainted with ſome of the ſelect pieces of Handel; they knew many of our Engliſh country-dances, and ſeveral of our popular and favourite tunes; but in performing the Fandango, they had attained a degree of excellence that the niceſt ears of Spain would have heard with pleaſure. The Malayans poſſeſs, in common with other ſavage nations, a ſenſibility to the charms of muſic, and are even capable of attaining no inconſiderable degree of perfection in that delightful ſcience.

“Magindanao is a very extenſive iſland, about 120 miles in breadth, and 160 in length. It is a fertile, luxuriant ſoil. There are in ſome places very high mountains, and ſeveral delicious paſtures, where vaſt herds of cattle roam at large. There are ſeveral large lakes in the middle of the iſland; the borders of which are inhabited by tribes of ſavage natives, who think themſelves as great as the ſovereign of Magindanao, and equally free and independent. They are conſtantly at war with the Mahometans, who are the chief inhabitants of this iſland. They are called Hilloonas, and profeſs no kind of religion, but live in a ſtate of barbariſm and ignorance.

“Theſe people are called by the Spaniards, *Negros del Monte*, or Negroes of the Mountain, on account of their reſemblance to the race of Africa, both in their perſons and manners. They are ſuppoſed to be the original lords of Magindanao, and, indeed, of all the Philippines; the Iſla de Negros, or Iſle of Negroes, is, in particular, entirely peopled by them, where they are at conſtant enmity with the Spaniards. The Mahometan natives of the iſland are a robuſt people, of a deep copper colour, and are eſteemed intelligent merchants. If the Hilloonas are believed to have been the original inhabitants of Magindanao, it is very reaſonable to ſuppoſe that they fled to the mountains to preſerve their liberty, when they were invaded by the Mahometan hoſts, which ſpread like locuſts, during the thirteenth and fourteenth centuries, over the eaſtern archipelago. Their ſavage ignorance and barbarous diſpoſitions ſeem to have become ſo habitual, as to leave them without the leaſt deſire, or, perhaps, without even the leaſt idea of any ſuperior degree of intellectual nature. The miſſionaries whom the zeal for infidel converſion, ſo well known in the Roman Catholic Church, employed to preach Chriſtianity to theſe inhuman people, were inſtantly ſeized and murdered by them.

“The ſovereign of Magindanao is a powerful prince, and has ſeveral inferior chiefs who acknowledge him as their head. Nevertheleſs there are others of them who refuſe ſubmiſſion to him, and are conſequently in a continual ſtate of war; ſo that peace, at leaſt, does not appear to be one of the bleſſings of this iſland. The Spaniards, indeed, aſſert their right to the entire dominion of Magindanao, but it is mere aſſer-

“tion; for though they have theſe forts, &c. on the iſland, it is by no means in a ſtate of ſubjection to their nation. The city of Magindanao is ſituated on the S. E. ſide of the iſland, has a river capable of admitting ſmall veſſels, and carries on a conſiderable trade with Manilla, Sooloo, Borneo, and the Moluccas. Their exports are rice, tobacco, bees-wax and ſpices; in return for which they receive coarſe cloths of Coromandel, China-ware and opium. This city uſed formerly to be viſited by European veſſels of ſmall burthen; but it was a conſiderable time ſince any of them had been there. The governor ſaid, that the Iphigenia and the Felice were the only European ſhips that had been ſeen in theſe ſeas during a courſe of ſeveral years.

“The iſland is well wooded; many parts of it towards the ſea-coaſt are covered with impenetrable foreſts: in others, the woods are ſcattered with a pleaſing irregularity, contributing not only to the beauty of the country, but to its comfort and convenience, by ſhading the hills and vallies from the ſcorching heat of the ſun. The ſpecies of trees that are moſt abundant, are the teake, the poone, and the larch; but its moſt valuable and precious growth, is the cinnamon tree, which is to be found in every part of the iſland, and is of a quality by no means inferior to that of Ceylon.

“The air of Magindanao is eſteemed ſalubrious, particularly in the vicinity of the ſea. The heat there is not, in any degree, ſo intenſe as might be expected, in a country which is ſituated on the very verge of the torrid zone. The prevalence of the eaſterly winds on that part of the coaſt which is waſhed by the Pacific Ocean, renders the air cool and pleaſant, the trade-wind blowing inceſſantly on its ſhores. It acts, indeed, with ſo much power as to ſweep the whole breadth of the iſland; and though in its paſſage it loſes much of its ſtrength, it retains a ſufficient degree of force to afford refreſhing breezes to the inhabitants of the weſtern ſhore. The interior parts are much colder, from a very cloudy atmoſphere, which frequently hangs over the ſummits of the mountains in thick and humid vapours. The ſoil, which is very exuberant, is ſuited to the cultivation of the whole vegetable tribes. Rice is produced in the greateſt abundance. The yam and ſweet potatoe are cultivated in the higheſt perfection. Here are alſo to be found the cocoa-nut, pumble-noſe, mangoes, the jack, the plantain, oranges, limes, and, in ſhort, every fruit that is produced in climates of the ſame parallel. Indeed nature has been extremely bountiful to the inhabitants, in producing for them the great variety of tropical productions, without any demand upon their toil and labour.

“Here are alſo gold mines, which are ſuppoſed to be of conſiderable value; and it may be naturally imagined that a knowledge or ſuſpicion of this circumſtance firſt induced the Spaniards to ſettle on this iſland: but as the natives are ignorant of the art of forming mines, they remain unexplored by them; and, as the Engliſh were informed, little, if any gold has been obtained, but what has been waſhed down by the autumnal torrents from the mountains which the Hilloonas inhabit, and who are in poſſeſſion of thoſe parts which are believed to contain the precious ore. But theſe mountaineers are too numerous and reſolute to reſign a ſituation they have maintained ſo long, without a ſevere and bloody ſtruggle, and the Spaniſh power is, at preſent, far too feeble to make any attempt to diſlodge them.

“Every part of the iſland abounds with buffaloes, cows, hogs, goats, &c. It affords alſo great variety of fowls, and a ſpecies of duck, whoſe head is of a fine ſcarlet colour. Here are alſo a ſmall breed of horſes, remarkable for their ſpirit. The natives, however, principally employ buffaloes in the various branches of huſbandry and agriculture. The people of Magindanao univerſally chew the betel and areka, but make a more moderate uſe of opium than any other inhabitants of the eaſtern ſeas.

“The proas of the Malayans are numerous and powerful; they carry from fifty to two hundred men; and the conſequence of their deſultory expeditions is bloodſhed, carnage, and captivity to the people of the defenceleſs towns and villages whom they ſurpriſe, or the unfortunate crews of veſſels which they may chance to capture.”

CHAPTER III.

Proceedings of the Felice—Meet with perilous Iſlands—Proceed along the Coaſt of Riou—Jelolo Mountains ſeen—Gulph of Chiauw—Clear of all Danger—Iſland of Wagiew ſeen—A favourable Wind—People encouraged—Another Group of Iſlands—Several Canoes—Behaviour of two—Deſcription of the People—Freewill Iſlands ſeen—Meet five hundred Natives—Their Confidence and Cheer, &c.—They come on board—Departure from the Iſlands—Tempeſtuous Weather—The Foremaſt ſprung—Secured—Deſtruction of Cattle—A new Veſſel deſigned—A Tempeſt—Land ſeen—Iſlands diſcovered—A huge Rock miſtaken for a Veſſel, which they called Lot's Wife—Continual Storms, &c.—The American Coaſt ſeen—All the Crew employed in relieving the Veſſel—Anchorage in Friendly Cove.

WE ſhall now leave the Iphigenia, while repairing, and follow the Felice; then, for the ſatisfaction of our readers, relate their occurrences ultimately.

Captain Meares, having delivered ſome neceſſary inſtructions to Capt. Douglas, proceeded along the coaſt. They loſt ſight of Samboingan on the 12th of February at day-break, and at ſun-ſet could ſcarcely ſee the iſland of Magindanao. They loſt ſight entirely of the S. W. extremity thereof the next evening. The weather was now cloſe and hazy, and the winds variable: at night there was much rain. They continued their courſe to the ſouthward and eaſtward.

On the 15th they conjectured themſelves near a body of land, on account of the ſmoothneſs of the ſea: on which account they made every neceſſary preparation to avoid any danger that might threaten. By the light of the moon, they very fortunately perceived themſelves within half a mile of an iſland, which was covered with white ſand, and almoſt on a level with the water. They immediately put the helm a-weather, and bore up to leeward. There were no ſoundings with 100 fathom lines, which conſequently renders thoſe low ſandy iſlands very perilous, eſpecially in a dark night, as the navigator, for want of ſoundings, may not have timely notice of the danger. As ſoon as they loſt ſight of this iſland, they proceeded E. S. E. with a freſh gale from the N. E.

On the 17th land was ſeen a-head, about twelve leagues diſtant. The next day they were cloſe in with the iſland of Morinlay, but wanted a favourable wind. They bore up for the channel between the iſlands Riou and Jelolo; then proceeded along the coaſt of Riou, about two miles diſtant. Though the land appeared well covered with wood, there was no ſign of inhabitants.

The lofty mountains of Jelolo had now a tremendous appearance. The great gulph of Chiauw was under their lee, while ſeveral low, ſandy iſlands, connected with ſhoals, were about five leagues off Morinlay, in the channel along which they ſteered. They paſſed thoſe iſlands, every attention being paid to the ſoundings, and the men continually on the look-out. The ſhoals, which were about four miles diſtant, were quite apparent, and as the ſurf was rolling in a dreadful manner over them, conveyed many alarming ideas. Their ſoundings were from ſix to eight fathoms; and when out of the channel from 14 to 30, over a hard ſandy bottom. The iſlands are about five leagues in extent, N. and S. Being now clear of all danger, they made for the S. end of Morinlay, and continued their courſe to the E. S. E. with a N. E. wind, which was invariable, as well as the ſtrong currents ſetting to the S. and S. W.

On the 22d they ſaw the iſland of Wagiew, which bore from S. E. by W. to W. about ſix leagues diſtant. The weather was ſtill ſultry, and the winds light. Having thus for a month endured a tedious and dangerous navigation, they were now approaching an iſland which they feared would alſo render it unprofitable. The people already began to feel the ſad effects of the warm weather; and were not a little diſcouraged by the appearance of a tedious paſſage to America. Every means were applied to keep down the ſcurvy.

On the 23d a favourable wind revived the drooping ſpirits of the men: they accordingly changed their courſe to the N. E. and in a little time got a conſiderable diſtance from Wagiew. Another group of iſlands were now ſeen, very extenſive, covered with wood, and ſurrounded with ſhoals and reefs of rocks, bearing from N. W. to N. E. by E. about five miles diſtant. Several canoes were ſeen paddling between the reefs, two of which, with five men in each, approached the veſſel, and called out *Tatee, tatee!* but no entreaties could prevail on them to come along-ſide. They beheld the ſhip with the greateſt ſurpriſe, and threw themſelves into the ſtrangeſt poſitions. Theſe people were jet black, and woolly headed, like thoſe at Papua: they were ſtout, and well made: their features like thoſe of the African negroes. Their canoes were very narrow, and long: to keep them on a ballance, a large out-rigger ran out on one ſide, with net-work between, made with ſtrong cord, which was evidently worked from the rind of the cocoa-nut. As theſe iſlands had not been placed on the charts, Captain Meares called them the *Tatee* Iſles, after the word which the natives made uſe of. At noon they left thoſe iſlands; the wind being ſtill favourable.

On the 27th they ſaw Freewill Iſles, being four, and the largeſt no more than five leagues in appearance: alſo a large village, ſituated on the ſhore of the iſland, ſeemingly an entire uncultivated foreſt.

They were viſited by ſeveral canoes, containing at leaſt 500 natives, all of whom were men. The canoes were built in the ſame manner as thoſe of the Sandwich Iſlands, and held half a dozen or ſeven people. The people alſo poſſeſſed the ſame manners, and ſpoke the ſame language. They came alongſide the veſſel in a very free and friendly manner, and cheerfully exchanged a quantity of cocoa-nuts and coir-line for ſmall bits of iron, which they received with reiterated expreſſions of joy.

They continued their courſe to the N. E. with a gentle breeze from the W. N. W.

On the 28th the wind was changeable, and the weather ſqually. The next day they diſcovered land from the maſt-head; and, upon examination, found it to be the Freewill Iſlands. This circumſtance was not believed at firſt, till it was confirmed by the return of ſome of their late friends, who brought a very handſome preſent of cocoa-nuts, and could hardly be perſuaded to take any thing in return for it.

On the 1ſt of March they loſt ſight of theſe iſlands, but ſtill experienced the ſame diſagreeable weather, and ſeveral ſqualls of rain, in conſequence of which, the crew were very much dejected, and ſeveral of them laid up with colds, &c. Their progreſs was exceedingly ſlow, owing to the violent currents. Every means were ſtill practiſed to ſupppreſs the ſcurvy, and a plentiful allowance of water continued.

On the 3d while the weather was extremely tempeſtuous, they diſcovered the foremaſt dangerouſly ſprung below the hounds, while the veſſel pitched exceedingly, owing to a heavy ſail. The top-maſt and top-gallant-maſt were now got down on deck, and the ſails unbent: every one, particularly the carpenters, were now employed to remedy this evil.

The majority of the cattle were likewiſe deſtroyed by the rolling of the veſſel; the goats were all killed in one day: ſeveral plants intended for the Sandwich Iſlands, were likewiſe loſt. The weather ſtill continued ſtormy and unfavourable. On the 5th the maſt of the veſſel was ſecured; they kept ſtanding to the N. W.

As ſoon as the weather became favourable, they overhauled their ſails; and alſo prepared two new complete ſuits of ſails new roped, lined, and middle-ſtitched: they alſo repaired their old ones. All the people on board, coopers, armourers, &c. were likewiſe employed.

It was now intended immediately on their arrival in King George's Sound, to build a ſloop of fifty tons, which would be of the greateſt uſe, not only in collecting furs, but exploring the coaſt when occaſion required. The carpenters were therefore employed in preparing the moulds and model: the plan was immediately laid, and a party from the crew ſelected, who were to be left on ſhore with the artificers, while employed in building the veſſel. It was thought neceſſary to make the arrangements ſoon, that there might be no delay when the operations were begun.

The month of April commenced with extreme bad weather, rain, thunder, lightning, &c. On the 2d the ſea was remarkably rough, and the veſſel was pitched ſo heavy, that ſhe ſuffered great damage, her head-rails were carried away, &c. As there was every appearance of a violent ſtorm approaching, the top-gallant yards and maſts were got down, and the main-ſail furled, the top-ſails were cloſe-reefed, and the mizen balanced; the main-top-ſail was kept abroad, the reſt handed. When the ſtorm took place the veſſel's head was kept to the N. E. there were heavy ſqualls from the S. E. and S. W. both very violent, but the latter more prevalent in this ſituation, it was expected every minute that the maſts would be ſhattered to pieces. They ſet the fore-ſail in order to ſcud before the ſtorm: the veſſel plowed her way remarkably faſt, and they were obliged to heave-to in a high ſea. As ſoon as this awful tempeſt was over, they ſcudded to the N. E. with a ſmart breeze from the S. W.

On the 3d the weather became calm, but the ſtorm returned at noon, and the ſea was as high as ever. At night it became moderate again: they ſtood to the N. E. till the 4th, the wind having ſhifted to the E. S. E. afterwards it fixed itſelf in the N. E. quarter: the weather became fine, and they ſtood to the N. W. They now ſaw land bearing E. N. E. about eight leagues diſtant.

On the 5th they ſteered to the N. E. the wind having ſhifted to the S. E. They thought they ſaw ſomething like land to the E. S. E. but on account of the hazineſs of the weather, they were not ſure whether it was land or a fog-bank: however, in a little time they were convinced it was land. It appeared to be a barren iſland of no great extent, about ſix miles diſtant: they ſailed along the ſhores of this iſland, and preſently after ſaw another: the fog ſtill continued, and there was a ſtrong breeze with much rain. They could not ſee the direct number of thoſe iſles, but as they perceived a large grampus ſpouting up water cloſe to the ſhore, they called them Grampus Iſles. The weather continued tempeſtuous till the 6th, when it grew clear. It now became as cold, as before it was warm: accordingly they reduced the allowance of water without any inconvenience. Having now a favourable wind, they proceeded to the north as faſt as poſſible: ſeveral ſmall iſlands were ſeen on the 9th. In the morning at nine o'clock they thought they ſaw a large veſſel under a great crowd of ſail: They concluded it was a galleon bound to China from New Spain, accordingly they began to write ſeveral letters, to inform their friends in China of their welfare; but when they were within two leagues of the object, this ſuppoſed galleon was a huge rock, that was ſtanding alone in the middle of the water. The firſt who diſcovered the deception, diverted himſelf for a long time with the different obſervations which were made by the ſailors, one of whom began to fancy that he ſaw her colours. This rock, which is one of the moſt wonderful that was ever ſeen, was called Lot's Wife, as it reſembled a pillar of ſalt upon a near view. At noon they were a-breaſt of it: it then bore E. N. E. about four miles diſtant.

This rock diſplayed a very awful ſight: it roſe almoſt perpendicular to the height of about 350 feet. A ſmall black rock appeared a little above the water, about 50 yards from its weſtern edge. On the S. E. ſide there were caverns, into which the waves rolled with moſt tremendous fury. As they met with a piece of a canoe floating on the water, they were in hopes of ſoon meeting land. From this to the 23d, there were continual ſtorms; the wind then became moderate, and the weather ſomewhat fair. There were ſtill ſeveral ſhowers of ſnow and hail. On the 24th they had another fierce ſtorm, attended with heavy rain: the veſſel ſtrained exceedingly in her rolling, and her rigging was very much damaged. The next day the wind ſhifted to the W. N. W. and the weather became moderate: indeed they had now a continual ſucceſſion of gales, alſo of clear and ſtormy weather, during the remainder of this month.

The month of May introduced very pleaſant weather: they purſued their courſe to the eaſtward. About the 5th they had occaſional ſqualls, and threatening fogs. The ſqualls of hail and ſnow became very frequent about the 8th.

On the 10th they kept running during the night under a preſs of ſail directly in for the American coaſt, which appeared on the 11th, bearing E. by S. about 13 leagues diſtant. There was a ridge of vaſt mountains on the continent, the tops of which were buried in the clouds; and which illuminated the atmoſphere, by the reflection of ſnow, with which it was covered over. When within four leagues of the land, the wind ſhifted to the S. E. by E. upon which they tacked, and ſtood for ſea.

The Princeſs Royal, of London, was now ſeen under the weather land of the ſound, bearing down to them.

There were ſeveral heavy guſts, and continual ſqualls, on the 11th; which prevented them from carrying any ſail: theſe ſqualls were attended with hail and ſnow, and at laſt terminated in a ſtorm. They had now loſt ſight of land, and the veſſel had ſo exceedingly ſtrained, that two pumps were diſabled, and there were ſix feet water in the hold. The ſtorm did not abate till the next day at noon; in conſequence of which the ſhip was in great diſtreſs, being very much wore, and bailing the water from the hold, which was ſtill increaſing. They ſtood in for land, which they ſaw again at ſeven o'clock in the evening: but finding they had been blown to leeward by the ſtorm, they were obliged, mortifying as it was, to re-tack, and ſtand out again for ſea, with a N. N. W. wind, the ſound bearing N. E. about ſeven leagues diſtant. The night being very ſtormy, the crew were employed in bailing the water out of the pumps, it being then impoſſible to repair the pumps: they alſo lay-to, under the reefed foreſail.

The next day was equally ſtormy, and the veſſel as much diſtreſſed as before: ſhe wore, and her head pointed in for the land. The weather moderated about eight o'clock; upon which they made ſail, and at ten o'clock anchored (to their great ſatisfaction) in Friendly Cove, in King George's Sound, a-breaſt of the village of Nootka, within 100 yards of the ſhore, in four fathoms. In this comfortable harbour they enjoyed themſelves, and the weather ſtill continuing ſtormy, felt no little ſolace in being thus happily ſecured.

We ſhall now return to the Iphigenia, and inform our readers in the ſucceeding chapter how ſhe has been employed during this tedious paſſage of the Felice from China to the N. W. coaſt of America. After which we ſhall reſume the account of her conſort; and thus give the proceedings of each veſſel in a regular manner.

CHAPTER IV.

Proceedings of the Iphigenia—The extraordinary Behaviour of the Governor of Samboingan—Captain Douglas's Men arreſted—Ship ſeized—The Governor's unreaſonable Demand—The Captain's Behaviour—Buſineſs ſettled—Departure of the Veſſel, without taking Leave—A tedious Paſſage—Dangerous Reef of Rocks—A ſmall Iſland—Make for Land—Viſited by ſeveral Canoes—Deſcription of the Iſland, Natives, &c.—Recovery of Tiaana—Death of Tawnee—Various Occurrences—Two Iſlands ſeen—Several Canoes——Arrival at the Pelew Iſlands—Concern of the Natives at the Veſſel's not ſtopping—Amleck Iſland ſeen—Land miſtaken for Trinity Iſland—A Hurricane—Particulars of their Progreſs—Viſited by two Canoes—A Boat ſent on Shore—Dealings with ſome of the Natives—A ſhort Allowance, &c. &c.

AS ſoon as the Felice had departed, all hands on board the Iphigenia were employed in making ready for ſea; but the governor now, who had been ſo exceedingly polite before, became all of a ſudden ungenerous and aſſuming. Capt. Douglas having received ſome cattle, bags of rice, and a quantity of vegetables, waited on the governor and invited him to dinner, meaning to preſent him with ſome bars of iron, which Capt. Meares left behind on purpoſe, underſtanding that they were the moſt acceptable gifts. This invitation was accepted by the governor; and during the entertainment, he appeared as quite agreeable as before; but underſtanding that the principal part of the cargo conſiſted of iron, he meditated artful means of procuring this valuable acquiſition, as in Magindanao it purchaſes gold. The governor invited the company in the evening to a ball. The next day Capt. Douglas ſent his officer on ſhore, to know what demand was made for the articles received, the veſſel being now ready for ſea: it was ſuppoſed that the account would be about 250 dollars: however the officer was informed that the whole of the demand was expected to be paid in iron, which ſhould be weighed according to his pleaſure. As the officer was about returning with this anſwer, he was arreſted by a file of ſoldiers and conveyed to a dark priſon. The captain wondering at the extraordinary delay of his officer, ſent another boat to learn the cauſe; theſe people were likewiſe arreſted and detained, while a large proa, with fifty men, was diſpatched to ſeize the Iphigenia. At firſt the captain was almoſt inclined to ſink the proa; but knowing that his people on ſhore would conſequently ſuffer, he gave them quiet poſſeſſion of the veſſel, and went on ſhore to the governor to enquire the reaſon of thoſe extraordinary proceedings. The governor informed the captain that he was determined to ſecure his payment, and therefore the veſſel ſhould not depart till the iron which he demanded was put on ſhore. In vain Captain Douglas remonſtrated, the governor would hear no reaſon. The captain then returned on board, and ordered ſeventy-eight bars of iron to be landed (which was half of what he had): he alſo collected 120 dollars in the veſſel; but the governor would accept of nothing but iron, which the captain at laſt peremptorily refuſed, and declared that if he perſiſted in ſuch a diſhoneſt demand the veſſel ſhould be immediately thrown upon his hands: this alarmed the governor, who forthwith accepted the iron and dollars; but refuſed, even now, to releaſe the the people whom he had put into confinement till he had received ſome wine, which was promiſed him, and which was accordingly delivered. On account of this cruel delay the Iphigenia did not leave Samboingan till the 22nd. She weighed anchor without firing a gun.

She had now a very tedious paſſage, and was obliged to proceed with the greateſt care, on account of the numerous iſlands which they conſtantly approached.

On the 2d of March ſhe fell in with a dangerous reef of rocks, which extend E. and W. about ten miles; they were not clear of them till the 6th. They proceeded now to the northward and eaſtward.

On the 9th they ſaw a ſmall iſland, bearing E. half N. about 12 leagues. A great number of lights were ſeen on the ſhore.

On the 10th, they made for land, and were viſited by ſeveral canoes, which at firſt kept at a reſpectful diſtance, holding up cocoa-nuts in their hands as a ſignal of peace. They were ſoon perſuaded to come on board, and teſtified by their great aſtoniſhment that they had never ſeen a veſſel before. From theſe people it was underſtood that plenty of good water was to be had at the iſland; it was therefore deemed adviſable to ſtop here a day and get a ſupply.

They were reviſited by the canoes in the afternoon, who brought with them cocoa and taro-root, which they exchanged for iron.

This iſland conſiſted of low land: it is about a league in circumference, and well covered with verdure and cocoa-nuts. The produce of the iſland is unknown, as there was nothing ſeen but cocoa-nuts and taro-root. There was one tree ſo remarkably tall that it appeared at a diſtance like a veſſel under ſail.

The natives are ſtout and robuſt, there ſeemed to be about two hundred in number. One of them ſeemed very anxious to have a piſtol which he ſaw; but upon the captain's diſcharging it, he was ſo greatly alarmed that he would not touch it afterwards, notwithſtanding he kiſſed the barrel to ſhew his reſpect for it. Their canoes are the ſame of thoſe at the Sandwich Iſlands, and the men ſeem equally as active in the water.

Tiaana was now entirely recovered; but Tawnee, another Sandwich Iſlander, who attended Tiaana during his illneſs, was now exceedingly ill himſelf, and in ſpite of all the care which was beſtowed on him died the 23d. Several of the crew were likewiſe ill.

As the winds continued light and variable, they made to the northward on the 28th, being determined to land the ſick as ſoon as poſſible.

They had now frequent ſqualls of rain and variable weather for ſeveral days.

On the 4th of April they ſaw two low iſlands, alſo ſome land about twelve leagues diſtant. As they were at preſent in want of wood and other neceſſaries, the captain intended to take the firſt opportunity of ſupplying the veſſel, accordingly they made for this land, which ſeemed likely to afford them a place of ſecurity; however, on nearer approach, it proved to be a cluſter of iſlands, upon which they altered their courſe, and made for two low iſlands.

In the evening they were viſited by ſeveral canoes, who exchanged ſome taro and cocoa-nuts for knives, nails, &c. Several others after this appeared, and the ſame traffic was continued; ſome of the natives, however, having got a few nails in their poſſeſſion, refuſed to make any compenſation, upon which Captain Douglas fired a muſket over their heads, and the culprits were ſo alarmed that they immediately jumped into the water, and hid themſelves under the lee of their canoe; thoſe that were innocent kept their places, nor betrayed the leaſt ſign of fear.

They were now among the Pelew Iſlands, a deſcription of which has been already given in Captain Wilſon's voyage. Captain Douglas was, however, unacquainted with the misfortunes of the Antelope, nor could he underſtand why ſo many canoes followed the Iphigenia, upon her departure from the iſlands, wherein the people expreſſed an eager anxiety to diſcourſe with her; but as the veſſel's ſituation was critical, on account of the rocks, there was no attention paid to their cries, whereupon one of the natives diſcovered the greateſt diſtreſs, which bordered upon abſolute frenzy. It was afterwards ſuppoſed that this was the king Abba Thulle, who, perhaps, was expecting the return of his ſon Lee Boo.

The largeſt of the two iſlands was called by Capt. Douglas Moore's Iſland, in honour of his friend Mr. Hugh Moore, bearing S. by E. half E. about ſix leagues diſtant. Two others were called Good Look-out Iſlands, bearing W. S. W. half S. about four leagues diſtant. Theſe were low and ſandy.

They continued for ſome days looking out for a harbour; but not meeting with a commodious one, the Captain gave up the idea for fear his arrival at the coaſt of America might be too late.

On the 30th they ſaw the Iſland of Amluke, bearing N. by E. about 24 leagues diſtant.

On the 3d of May, as they were approaching land, and expecting a viſit from the natives, they now cleaned their fire-arms.

On the 5th they thought they ſaw Trinity Iſland; but on the 9th it appeared to be an iſland forming part of the coaſt between Foggy Iſland and Trinity Iſland. The hills were covered with ſnow: the low lands ſeemed to poſſeſs good verdure, but there were no trees to be ſeen.

On the 10th they ſaw land, bearing E. N. E. about 10 leagues diſtant. This land was called Cape Collings.

On the 11th they ſaw the Iſland of Kodiack, and the next day Trinity Iſland. They directed their courſe through the paſſage between Trinity Iſland and the main, with a fine breeze from N. N. W. they had regular ſoundings from ſeven to ſeventeen fathoms, over a fine ſandy bottom.

They were viſited by a native in a ſmall canoe, who complimented them after the Ruſſian manner. A ſhort time after another canoe, with one man, came up; he offered them the ſkin of a grey fox for a few beads, which he ſeemed very well pleaſed with; but as he was not able to faſten the ſkin in time to the veſſel, which at this time was making rapidly, he took it back with him.

The jolly-boat was now diſpatched with an officer (Mr. Adamſon) on ſhore, to get ſome fiſh. He procured ſome halibut from the natives, who requeſted ſnuff in return, holding out their boxes to be filled. Theſe people, though they poſſeſſed much of the Ruſſian appearance, were Kodiack hunters, or natives of Cook's river; though about two years ago, the latter ſeemed highly averſe to ſnuff.

On the 16th they ſaw Cape Greville, bearing W. about nine leagues diſtant. The extremities of the land from the Iſland of St. Hermogenes bore N. W. by N. ten leagues to the S. W. by W. They paſſed Barren Iſlands at midnight.

On the 17th in the morning they were viſited by two canoes from Point Bede, and a little while after by a Ruſſian from the ſame place, with a few Kodiack hunters. They brought ſome freſh ſalmon, for which they had a little brandy and tobacco.

When they ran up Cook's River, they were viſited by ſeven or eight canoes; but ſuch was the poverty of this place, that not a bit of fur was to be had. On account of a ſtrong tide, they were obliged to anchor in five fathoms and a half, about two miles from ſhore.

The boat was now hoiſted out, in order to go on ſhore to look for the watering-place, and obſerve the behaviour of the natives. On landing, they found a ſmall river running by the ſide of the huts, and the natives very ſhy. About fifty or threeſcore of them ſat baſking in the ſun, on the oppoſite ſide of the river, who took no notice whatever of the boat's crew. As the Iphigenia was in great want of wood, water, and fiſh, it was abſolutely neceſſary to remain in their preſent ſituation, till a ſufficient ſupply was obtained of theſe eſſential articles.

On the 18th they moved the ſhip higher up, ſo as to lie oppoſite the mouth of this river; but before the tide became favourable ſhe touched the ground; they therefore run out the kedge, hove-up immediately, ſlipped the hawſer, and made ſail, when they found a bank on the outſide with only two fathoms and a half: it being at this time low water, the boat was ſent a-head to ſound; when they ran up the river about eighteen miles, and came-to with the ſtream, over a ſandy bottom, and about a mile and an half from the ſhore, which had a ſteep beach. The boat was then ſent to find out the moſt convenient place for watering.

They were now reviſited by ſeveral canoes which they ſaw yeſterday: and though the natives had nothing to ſell, they continued near the ſhip till the evening. Some of them, indeed, caught a few ſalmon, which were purchaſed with beads. It appeared as if theſe people were on the watch to prevent any of the natives up Cook's river from viſiting the ſhip.

On the 19th they were employed in brewing, wooding, watering, &c.

On the 20th they ſighted the anchor and moored ſhip, when all hands were employed in wooding and watering. The net was alſo hauled into the mouth of the river for ſalmon, but without ſucceſs.

On the 21ſt five canoes came down the river, and the people in them called out *Noota, Noota,* as ſoon as they got along-ſide the ſhip. Five otter-ſkins were purchaſed of theſe people, but they would take nothing except broad bar-iron; two feet of which were paid for each ſkin.

It appeared as if they were at war with the Ruſſians and Kodiack hunters, each of them being armed with a couple of daggers. They earneſtly entreated the captain to go higher up the river; and gave him to underſtand that it was from the report of his guns, which he ordered to be fired morning and evening, that they knew of his arrival. They alſo informed him that they had got a conſiderable quantity of Natunichucks, or ſea-otter ſkins, but were afraid to bring them down, on account of the Ruſſians.

On the 23d their watering was completed. The long-boat alſo having received ſome damage, ſhe was hauled up on the beach, and the carpenters and caulkers employed in repairing her; they were likewiſe ſet to work to prepare a couple of maſts and yards for her, as it was intended to diſpatch her up the river as high as Point Poſſeſſion, on the information of the natives.

On the 24th, the long-boat being finiſhed, ſhe was launched, and diſpatched, with the turn of the tide, well manned and armed, on her intended expedition, under the command of the chief officer.

The captain ordered them to proceed up as high as Point Poſſeſſion; to look into moſt of the ſmall bays or low lands in ſearch of inhabitants, and to barter his iron or beads for ſea-otter ſkins, black foxes ſkins, and ſalmon. If he met with any Ruſſians, he was inſtructed to treat them with civility; but at the ſame time to be upon his guard, and not to ſuffer either them or the natives to enter into his boat. In caſe of bad weather, or if by any unforeſeen accident he ſhould be detained four or five days, Captain Douglas mentioned his deſign, at the end of that time, to follow him with the ſhip up the river to Point Poſſeſſion; and that he ſhould fire guns to give him notice of his approach. The officer, however, was ordered to do his utmoſt to return to the ſhip at the end of five days.

The captain likewiſe ſent the carpenter and caulker on ſhore to procure ſome ſpars for oars, which were very much wanted; but for which they were under the neceſſity of tracing the banks of the river to a conſiderable diſtance, before they could find any that would anſwer their purpoſe. When theſe people returned on board, they declared, that as the long-boat turned the point, they heard the diſcharge of eleven great guns. Though Captain Douglas was, in ſome degree, alarmed when he firſt received this intelligence; yet, as he had been informed, by a Ruſſian who went on board the Iphigenia at Point Bede, that none of his countrymen were ſo high up the river; and as the long-boat, if ſhe had been attacked, would have returned, the wind being fair to come back to the ſhip, it was concluded, as it afterwards turned out, that theſe great guns were nothing more than muſquets, which the people had fired at ſome ducks, and whoſe report was conveyed by the wind, which blew right to the place where the carpenters were at work.

On the 25th they were viſited by two canoes, which brought a ſea-otter cut through the middle, and otherwiſe mangled. It appeared as if theſe natives thought that the fleſh was wanted, and not the ſkin; but no ſatisfactory explanation could be obtained, as they did not underſtand any words that were addreſſed to them; and indeed gave no cauſe for ſuppoſing that they had ever traded with any European people. They had not a ſingle bead of any kind in their poſſeſſion; and the few which were now given them ſeemed to attract that kind of admiration which is awakened by objects that have been never, or at leaſt ſeldom, ſeen before.

On the 26th two canoes came from the ſouthward; in one of which was the Ruſſian who had paid the Iphigenia a viſit from Point Bede. He brought a preſent of ſome ſalmon, which was returned by a ſmall parcel of tobacco. In the afternoon twelve double canoes came along-ſide from the ſouthward; the people in them were Kodiack hunters, but they had neither ſkins nor fiſh, though they promiſed to bring ſome of the latter in the morning.

On the 27th the long-boat returned, having obtained nothing but one very indifferent ſea-otter ſkin, and about two dozen of ſplit ſalmon. The officer, Mr. Adamſon, reported, that as high up the river as 60 deg. 42 min. N. he met with Ruſſians and Kodiack hunters, who followed him from village to village, and had got entire poſſeſſion of the river. At ſix o'clock the ſhip was unmoored; and, on the turn of the tide, they weighed anchor and dropped down the river.

They now ſtood to the ſouthward and eaſtward, with light winds and calms. Both captain and ſeamen were now on a ſhort allowance, owing to the diſappointment in ſalmon.

On the 2d of July the veſſel laboured exceedingly, owing to a heavy ſwell, and their progreſs along the coaſt was very ſlow.

On the 6th they ſaw Montague Iſland, the extremities of which bore from N. by E. to N. by W. The captain wiſhed to avoid this iſland, on account of the ſunken rocks which lie in the inner paſſage; but, owing to a violent contrary wind, he was obliged to direct his courſe there. On the 7th they were within a mile and a half of the iſland. On the 8th they were in the mid channel, between Montague Iſland and the Green Iſlands. They now ſtood in for Snug Corner Bay, where they anchored on the 9th, in five fathom water, and where we ſhall now leave the Iphigenia and return to the Felice.

CHAPTER V.

Proceedings of the Felice continued—Camekala's Reception—Deſcription of Maquilla and Callicum—A Spot of Ground given to the Engliſh for a Houſe that is begun—Natives aſſiſt the Artiſts—Maquilla and his Chiefs ape the European Faſhions—The Grindſtone ſtolen—A general Commotion—The Pinnace ſtolen—Inſtructions given to the Commanding Officer, reſpecting the new Veſſel they put to Sea—Occurrences—Deſcription of Wacananiſh, and the Iſlands—Sudden Confuſion, Preſents, &c.—Departure of the Veſſel, and her Progreſs.

DURING this time the Felice was viſited by ſeveral natives, who aſſembled for the ſake of admiring the veſſel. Captain Meares uſed every inſinuating means of attracting them; nor were his endeavours ineffectual, being conſtantly viſited by a number of canoes, who ſupplied them with fiſh.

Camekala, the native who was on board the Felice, was exceedingly happy in being reſtored to his country: the abſence, however, of his brother Maquilla, and another relation, Callicum, (who were chiefs of conſequence, and on a viſit) gave him ſome uneaſineſs. Camekala being dreſſed in a ſcarlet coat with braſs buttons, a cocked hat with a ſmart cockade, good linen, &c. attracted the notice of all his countrymen: he was welcomed on ſhore by the whole body of inhabitants, who made a moſt terrible noiſe on the occaſion. His relations teſtified great joy at this meeting, eſpecially an old aunt, who almoſt wept herſelf blind.

As ſoon as theſe ſalutations were over, they went to the king's houſe, where a magnificent feaſt was prepared; but Camekala being lately accuſtomed to the Engliſh cookery, did not much reliſh his countrymen's entertainment. The evening was celebrated with ſongs and dancing. Early in the evening the Engliſh returned on board.

Maquilla and Callicum, the relations of Camekala, who had been on a viſit of ceremony to Wicananiſh, a prince of great conſequence of a tribe to the ſouthward, returned on the 16th of May, attended with twelve war-canoes, containing each about 18 men, cloathed from the neck to the ancle with beautiful ſea-otter ſkins; their hair powdered with white down, and their faces bedaubed with red and black ochre. Maquilla, the chief, ſtood in the middle, with a high cap on, ornamented with feathers. They approached the veſſel with a ſong, which was exceedingly melodious, as they were remarkably correct in reſpect to the tone and time: their action was likewiſe very expreſſive, as they beat time with their paddles againſt the gunwale of the boat. Twice they paddled round the veſſel; then brought their canoes along-ſide; while Maquilla and Callicum came on board. On receiving ſome preſents which were made them, they threw off their ſea-otter garments, which they laid at the feet of the donors, and remained naked: in return, they were preſented with blankets to cover them, which they accepted, and deſcending into their canoes took their leave. Maquilla ſeemed to be about 30 years old, with a good open countenance, and well made. Callicum was about 40, and likewiſe poſſeſſed of good features. Their attendants were very comely men.

A ſpot of ground was now granted to the Engliſh by Maquilla, for the purpoſe of building a houſe for their accommodation on ſhore. This was partly erected on the 28th, the natives having aſſiſted in bringing timber, &c.

On the 5th of June the neceſſary buſineſs of the veſſel was done, wood, water, &c. was brought on board. A very briſk trade was likewiſe carried on for furs; but there was ſuch a fickleneſs in their traffic as occaſioned ſome trouble.

On the 6th the Engliſh were invited on ſhore by Maquilla, who, on this occaſion, was dreſſed in an European ſuit of clothes and a ruffled ſhirt, which were given him by Camekala; his hair was powdered and queued. The chiefs who attended had alſo ſome part of an Engliſh dreſs, and in imitating the European faſhions of bowing, taking off the hat, &c, they afforded no little entertainment.

On the 7th the grindſtone was ſtolen; application was made to Maquilla for its recovery, but in vain: as, therefore, there was no remedy, the theft, though of ſome importance, was over-looked.

On the 10th, as the natives were about to remove to a bay, about two miles from the ſound, where there was a great quantity of fiſh, a general commotion took place in the village, and in a ſhort time half the houſes diſappeared. Theſe houſes are ſo conſtructed that their removal requires but little trouble. About this time the pinnace, a very large fine boat, was ſtolen: large rewards were offered for her recovery, but all in vain. It was ſuppoſed that ſhe was broken up for the ſake of the nails, &c.

On the 11th preparations were made for ſailing, the weather being now fine and pleaſant, previous to which the officers and party, who were to remain on ſhore to compleat the new veſſel, were landed, and neceſſary inſtructions given to the commanding officer. This veſſel was now in great forwardneſs.

Due notice was given Maquilla of the Felice's intended departure; he was acquainted that her return would be in about four months, when it was ſuppoſed the new veſſel would be ready. His attention and friendſhip were earneſtly requeſted to the party who were left on ſhore, and in order to ſecure his attachment he was promiſed all the goods and chattels belonging to the houſe upon their final departure from the coaſt. Maquilla readily complied with their requeſts. They now ſet ſail, intending to trace the ſouthern part of the coaſt from King George's Sound, and purſued their courſe to the S. E. with the long-boat in tow. The wind becoming contrary the veſſel tacked, and violent and ſqually weather enſued.

On the 13th they ſaw the hill above Wicananiſh, which reſembles a ſugar-loaf: it bore N. E. by E. about ſeven leagues diſtant. As they ſtood in for the ſhore they were viſited by ſeveral canoes, ſome of which contained about twenty men, who were comely and brawny, and dreſſed in beautiful ſea-otter ſkins. Two of them came along-ſide the veſſel, and the people in them readily came on board. There were two chiefs, Hannah and Ditootche, who were remarkably handſome; they earneſtly invited the Engliſh to Wicananiſh: upon receiving ſome preſents theſe chiefs took their leave.

In a little time the weather broke up, and they now ſtood along the ſhore. Preſently after they were viſited by another number of canoes, in the foremoſt of which was Wicananiſh, who readily came on board, and in a moſt excellent manner piloted the veſſel into his harbour. They anchored between the main and the iſlands, where they were well ſheltered. They now purchaſed of the natives wild-onions, berries, fiſh, &c.

On the 14th, as the weather was very fine, the captain and a party explored the iſland. They were invited by the chief to an entertainment, where they were received by a great concourſe of women and children.

Wicananiſh, in a very hoſpitable manner, met them half way from the entrance, and conducted them to a ſeat near his own, where they indulged their curioſity.

The chief's houſe was encloſed with a vaſt area. It contained a large ſquare, boarded up cloſe on all ſides to the height of twenty feet, with planks of an uncommon breadth and length. Three enormous trees, rudely carved and painted, formed the rafters, which were ſupported at the ends and in the middle by gigantic images, carved out of huge blocks of timber. The ſame kind of broad planks covered the whole to keep out the rain; but they were ſo placed as to be removed at pleaſure, either to receive the air and light, or let out the ſmoke. In the middle of this ſpacious room were ſeveral fires, and beſide them large wooden veſſels filled with fiſh ſoup. Large ſlices of whale's fleſh lay in a ſtate of preparation to be put in ſimilar machines filled with water, into which the women, with a kind of tongs, conveyed hot ſtones from very fierce fires, in order to make it boil: heaps of fiſh were ſtrewed about, and in this central part of the place, which might very properly be called the kitchen, ſtood large ſeal-ſkins filled with oil, from whence the gueſts were ſerved with that delicious beverage. The trees that ſupported the roof were of a ſize which would render the maſt of a firſt-rate man of war diminutive, on a compariſon with them; it was wonderful how ſuch ſtrength as muſt be neceſſary to raiſe thoſe enormous beams, could be found by a people wholly unacquainted with mechanic powers. The door by which this extraordinary fabric was entered, was the mouth of one of theſe huge images, which, large as it may be ſuppoſed, was not diſproportioned to the other features of this monſtrous viſage. They aſcended by a few ſteps on the outſide, and after paſſing this extraordinary kind of portal, deſcended down the chin into the houſe, where they found new matter for aſtoniſhment in the number of men, women, and children, who compoſed the family of the chief; which conſiſted of at leaſt eight hundred perſons. Theſe were divided into groupes, according to their reſpective offices, which had their diſtinct places aſſigned them. The whole of the building was ſurrounded by a bench, about two feet from the ground, on which the various inhabitants ſat, eat and ſlept. The chief appeared at the upper end of the room, ſurrounded by natives of rank, on a ſmall raiſed platform, round which were placed ſeveral large cheſts, over which hung bladders of oil, large ſlices of whale's fleſh, and proportionable gobbets of blubber. Feſtoons of human ſculls, arranged with ſome attention to uniformity, were diſpoſed in almoſt every part where they could be placed, and were conſidered as a very ſplendid decoration of the royal apartment.

As ſoon as the Engliſh appeared, the gueſts had made a conſiderable advance in their banquet. Before each perſon was placed a large ſlice of boiled whale, which, with ſmall wooden diſhes filled with oil and fiſh ſoup, and a large muſcle-ſhell, by way of ſpoon, compoſed the œconomy of the table. The ſervants were buſily employed in preparing to repleniſh the ſeveral diſhes as they were emptied, and the women in picking and opening the bark of a tree, which ſerved the purpoſe of towels. If the luxury of this entertainment is to be determined by the voraciouſneſs with which it was eaten, and the quantity that was ſwallowed, it muſt be conſidered as the moſt luxurious feaſt that was ever beheld. Even the children, and ſome of them were not more than three years old, poſſeſſed the ſame rapacious appetite for oil and blubber as their fathers. The women, however, are forbidden from eating at theſe ceremonials.

As ſoon as the feaſt was over, the Engliſh were deſired to ſhew the preſents which they intended for the chief: a great variety of articles, brought for that purpoſe, were accordingly diſplayed; among which were ſeveral blankets, and two copper tea-kettles. The eyes of the whole aſſembly were rivetted on theſe unuſual objects, and a guardian was immediately aſſigned to the two tea-kettles, who, on account of their extraordinary value and beauty, was ordered to place them with great care in the royal coffers, which conſiſted of large cheſts rudely carved, and fancifully adorned with human teeth. About 50 men now advanced in the middle of the area, each of them holding up before us a ſea-otter ſkin, of near ſix feet in length, and the moſt jetty blackneſs. As they remained in this poſture, the chief made a ſpeech, and giving his hand in token of friendſhip, informed the Engliſh that theſe ſkins were the return he propoſed to make for our preſent, and accordingly ordered them to be immediately ſent to the ſhip.

The chief appeared to be entirely ſatisfied with the preſents he had received; and the Engliſh were equally pleaſed with his magnificence and politeneſs. When about to take leave, the ladies of the chief's family advanced towards the Engliſh from a diſtant part of the building, whither they had retired during the entertainment. Two of them had paſſed the middle age, but the other two were young, and the beauty of their countenances was ſo powerful as to predominate over the oil and red ochre which, in a great meaſure, covered them. One of the latter, in particular, diſplayed ſo ſweet an air of diffidence and modeſty, that no diſguſt of colour, or deformity of dreſs, could preclude her from awakening an intereſt even in minds cultured to refinement. As the Engliſh had not, very fortunately, diſpoſed of all the treaſure they had brought on ſhore, they preſented the ladies with a few beads and ear-rings that remained.

From this to the 17th a briſk trade was carried on with the natives. The chief generally paid the Felice a viſit every day, and both natives and Engliſh lived on very friendly terms. The natives brought them abundance of fiſh of various kinds, ſalmon and ſalmon-trout of the beſt flavour, cod, halibut, rock-fiſh, and herrings freſh from the ſea; the women and children alſo ſold them cray-fiſh, berries, wild onions, ſallads, and other eſculent plants.

On the 17th the Engliſh were invited by Wicananiſh on ſhore, to engage in a barter for furs. As ſoon as they had landed, they were conducted, as before, to his houſe, where they found the number of his family to be rather increaſed than diminiſhed. No form or ceremony, however, was now employed; the whole family ſeemed to enjoy a ſociable intercourſe with each other; the women were permitted to eat with the men, and the whole company appeared with the familiarity of unbeſmeared faces, ſo that the Engliſh had an opportunity of examining the comelineſs of one ſex, and the beauty of the other.

The ſea-otter ſkins and other furs were now produced, to the number of thirty, and of the moſt beautiful kind; which, after a conſiderable deal of negociation, were at length purchaſed; for the Engliſh found, to their coſt, that theſe people, like thoſe of Nootka, poſſeſſed all the cunning neceſſary to the gains of mercantile life. The ſame rage for preſents prevailed here as in the Sound, and even the ladies would interfere in making a bargain, and retard the concluſion of it till they had been gratified with additional donations.

When Capt. Meares was about to embark, there was a ſudden and univerſal confuſion throughout the village; a conſiderable number of canoes were inſtantly filled with armed men, and being launched in a moment, were paddled to the ſhip. At firſt the captain was apprehenſive that ſome broil had taken place between the natives and the crew; but it appeared that a matter of political jealouſy, reſpecting ſome of their neighbours, was the cauſe of this ſudden commotion. Some ſtrangers having ventured to viſit the ſhip without the knowledge of Wicananiſh, the chief had ordered his people to fall upon the intruders, one of whom they had now ſeized and brought on ſhore; and though the Engliſh made the moſt earneſt interceſſion in his behalf, and even proceeded to threats on the occaſion, he was quickly deſtroyed. They are ſo remarkably fierce and cruel to each other, as to be totally unacquainted with mercy and forgiveneſs.

From this to the 20th they had very bad weather, and conſtant rain. As it cleared up in the evening, they got under ſail, and was piloted again by Wicananiſh (who came on board on purpoſe) into a harbour which was named Port Cox, the boats being ſent a-head to ſound. They now anchored in a very commodious harbour.

The inhabitants here were very numerous, and as they were of a bold, intrepid nature, the Engliſh thought it highly prudent to be particularly careful and vigilant. On the 21ſt, therefore, they diſplayed their arms, and ſeveral blunderbuſſes. Wicananiſh, on ſeeing this, departed from the veſſel in a great rage, and refuſed not only to trade himſelf, but prohibited his people: peace however was reſtored the next day, by ſome preſents which were made him, and which were returned by the chief in a very grateful manner.

On the 28th the inhabitants of the village were about removing.

From a canoe which arrived from King George's Sound, with a preſent from Maquilla, the captain had the ſatisfaction to hear, that his people who were there were in good health and ſpirits, and the new veſſel in great forwardneſs.

They now weighed anchor, and purſued their courſe along ſhore; the weather was fine, and there was a light weſterly breeze.

Captain Meares, in his deſcription of Wicananiſh, &c. relates "that the harbour affords good ſhelter and anchorage. An archipelago of iſlands ſeems to extend from King George's Sound to this place, and ſtill further to the ſouthward. The channels between theſe iſlands are innumerable; but the neceſſary occupations of the ſhip would not allow us time to ſend out boats for the purpoſe of examining them: it is ſuppoſed, however, that there is no channel for ſhips but that which was entered, and which is an exceeding good one.

"Theſe iſlands are covered thick with wood, with but very few clear ſpots, at leaſt that we could diſcern. The ſoil is rich, producing wild berries, and other fruit in great abundance. The timber is of uncommon ſize, as well as beauty, and applicable to any purpoſe. There are ſeveral groves, almoſt every tree of which was fit for maſts of any dimenſions. Among a great variety of other trees that were obſerved, there were the red oak, the larch, the cedar, black and white ſpruce fir, &c.

"The men are very cunning, and practiſe much artifice. The women, in particular, would play a thouſand tricks, and treat the diſcovery of their fineſſe with an arch kind of pleaſantry that baffled reproach. They were very ſuperior in perſonal charms to the ladies of Nootka, and poſſeſſed a degree of modeſty which is not often to be found among the ſavage nations; but no entreaty or temptation could prevail on them to come on board the ſhip.

"The people of Wicananiſh are alſo very ſuperior in point of induſtry and activity to thoſe of King George's Sound. At day-break, without regard to the weather, the village was always empty; the men were employed in killing the whale, hunting the ſea-otter, or catching fiſh, and the women were in the woods, gathering berries, or traverſing the ſands and rocks in ſearch of cray and ſhell-fiſh.

"Beſides two villages, there were ſeveral other places of reſidence, to which the chief occaſionally reſorted, according to the ſeaſon of the year, the calls of neceſſity, or the invitations of pleaſure. In one of theſe places there were about 26 houſes, each of which were capable of containing 100 inhabitants."

CHAPTER VI.

Departure from Wicananiſh—Proceed to the Southward along the Shore—Viſited by a Number of Natives—Their ſavage Appearance—The Chief ſurly and diſagreeable—Their rude and violent Behaviour to the Long-boat—Re-viſited—None of them invited on board—Viſited by other Canoes—Cape Flattery ſeen—Bay of Queenhithe—A diſagreeable Situation—Releaſed by a favourable Wind—Remarkable Land viſited by Strangers—Deſcription of them—Continue their Courſe—Curſory Obſervations—Poſſeſſion taken of John De Fuca Straits in the King's Name—Anchor in Port Effingham—Viſited by the Natives—Occaſional Remarks—Long-boat diſpatched to explore the Straits of De Fuca—A violent Conflict with thoſe People—Captain's Men return wounded—Injury not mortal—Account of the Attack—Departure from Port Effingham—Anchor in Friendly Cove—Account of the Party that were left there—Progreſs of the new Veſſel—A Mutiny happily terminated—The Mutineers made to work—They proceed to Port Cox—Anchor there—Remarks—Their Return to Friendly Cove.

THEY now left Wicananiſh, and proceeded to the ſouthward along the coaſt. The natives were exceeding chagrined at their departure. In their courſe they perceived ſeveral villages, and were occaſionally viſited by canoes, the people ſomewhat reſembling thoſe of Port Cox in their manners and perſons. They arrived at the entrance of a great inlet, called John De Fuca, after its original diſcoverer, ſeeming to be about 14 leagues broad, and hove-to off a ſmall iſland which formed the entrance of this ſtrait, adjoining which was a remarkable rock that reſembled an obeliſk. They were ſhortly viſited by a number of natives, of a very ſavage appearance. Their chief Tatootche, who was among the number of viſiters, was exceedingly ſurly and diſagreeable: his face was entirely black, and covered with a kind of ſand that glittered. He would hardly permit his people to trade with the Engliſh, and when he received a preſent made no return.

The long-boat was diſpatched well armed and manned to look for an anchoring-place, but returned in the evening after a fruitleſs ſearch. The iſland was a ſolid rock, and bore a deceitful appearance. The boat, during her excurſion, was frequently incommoded by the natives, who committed many rude and violent depredations. The captain's men were prevented by the prudence of the officer from retaliating.

They continued their courſe to the ſouthward, ſtanding along the ſhore with fine weather. They then entered John De Fuca ſtraits.

On the 30th about 400 natives, with their chief, came from the iſland of Tatootche. They went ſeveral times round the veſſel, admiring her; but as the Engliſh did not like Tatootche's conduct, there were none of them invited on board. Theſe people, after ſinging a very melodious ſong, returned to their iſland, and the Felice ſtill continued her courſe to the ſouthward, with a gentle breeze. As they ſteered onwards, they were continually ſurrounded by canoes, from villages on the high banks of the ſea. Theſe people earneſtly invited the veſſel to their reſpective ſhores: they could not, however, be prevailed upon to come on board the veſſel.

Theſe villages were numerous and extenſive, yet there was no bay that promiſed the leaſt ſecurity: the land appeared exceedingly wild.

Cape Flattery was ſeen at a diſtance in the evening: this place ſeemed likewiſe deſtitute of any ſecure bay.

On the 1ſt of July, in the morning, they ſaw the bay of Queenhithe, where the crew of the boat belonging to the Imperial Eagle were deſtroyed. It was now ſo very gloomy, that they could not ſee the village; neither did they perceive any canoes, or inhabitants. Deſtruction Iſland, which is low, flat, and without a ſingle tree, was ſeen about a mile diſtant from the iſland. They ſteered to the S. W. and were embayed with thick weather and rain; they could neither anchor, on account of a heavy ſwell which rolled into the bay, nor expect to weather the weſterly land on account of the great weſterly ſwell: as the better tack, they therefore ſtood till noon to the S. S. E. afterwards to the W. N. W. then kept under a preſs of ſail, with hopes of weathering Deſtruction Iſland. The weather now clearing up, they ſaw the iſland a point under their lee-bow, about a mile and a half diſtant, while a heavy ſea was drifting them faſt in with the ſhore: they immediately caſt anchor, in a very wild ſituation, on a muddy bottom, but where it was impoſſible that the anchor could hold long, on account of the continual rolling of the ſea.

This ſituation was rendered ſtill more diſagreeable, by the conſtant reflections on the cannibals of Queenhithe, to whoſe ſavage cruelty they were nearly expoſed: however the wind ſuddenly veering to the S. S. E. they were enabled to tack, and ſteer off the ſhore with a flowing ſheet. In the evening, thinking they had ſufficient offing, they wore and ſtood in again for land.

On the 2d they ſaw land, bearing E. about ſeven leagues diſtant: it was called Saddle Hill, on account of its ſtrong reſemblance to a ſaddle. They were prevented from making this land, owing to the bad weather, which endangered the long-boat that they had ſtowed aſtern. The wind ſhifted to the S. W. the next day, and then they ſtood in for land.

On the 4th the land was ſeen, bearing from N. to N. E. It was remarkably high in the northern quarter; therefore this mountain was called Olympus. It was covered with ſnow.

On the 5th they ſtill kept ſtanding in for land. At noon they were within two miles of the ſhore, but the place ſeemed dreary, and there was no ſign of inhabitants: the land was low and flat. They were in a ſhort time, however, convinced that the place was inhabited, by the appearance of a canoe with a man and boy; they came along-ſide the veſſel, which now hove-to, but could not be perſuaded to come on board. They made them ſome preſents, and in return received two ſea-otter ſkins.

Theſe people reſembled thoſe of Nootka in their dreſs and manners, but were without ornaments: their language ſounded quite different; they had, however, an idea of trade.

As there was now a likelihood of trade, they became anxious to find an harbour: accordingly they coaſted it along the ſhore, and were in expectation of meeting a good port at Cape St. Roe, which lay on a high bluff promontory, which they doubled on the 6th, though they did not ſee the leaſt appearance of an inhabitant. There was now a proſpect of a promiſing bay, the boundaries of which were formed of high land at a great diſtance. As they ſteered in breakers were ſeen right a-head, which extended acroſs the bay as ſeen from the maſt head; they therefore hauled out, and directed their courſe to the oppoſite ſhore, in order to ſee if there was any channel. This promontory was called Cape Diſappointment, and the harbour Deception Bay. It was now proved that no ſuch river as St. Roe exiſts.

Not being able to find any place of ſhelter for the veſſel, they bore up for a diſtant head-land, keeping their courſe within two miles of ſhore. As they ſailed along, they perceived many ſpacious lawns, and the land had a very delightful appearance: notwithſtanding, there was not the leaſt appearance of any inhabitants. A large opening now appeared, but being cloſed by a low ſandy beach nearly level with the ſea, they were diſappointed again in finding an harbour. This they called Quickſand Bay, and the adjoining head-land Cape Grenville. The diſtant ſoutherly head-land was called Cape Look-out. This cape, which is very high, terminates abruptly in the ſea. There are three large remarkable rocks about two miles diſtance therefrom: they were about a quarter of a mile diſtant from each other, and were called the Three Brothers. They now proceeded to the northward, as their progreſs to the ſouthward was ſo unfortunate. They did not make land till the 10th of July: then they perceived the high land which formed the eaſtern ſhore, in the ſtraits of De Fuca.

On the 11th they diſpatched the long-boat to ſeek an anchoring-place: ſhe returned with a favourable report, and piloted them into a fine ſpacious harbour, formed by a number of iſlands, which were rather high, and well wooded: they anchored in eight fathoms, over a muddy bottom, well ſecured from the wind and ſea. They called this place Port Effingham, in honour of Lord Effingham.

They were now viſited by ſeveral canoes, which contained a large number of natives: of theſe they purchaſed an abundance of fiſh, and plenty of wild berries and onions. They alſo took poſſeſſion of the ſtraits of John de Fuca, in the name of the King of Great-Britain, agreeable to the general form.

On the 13th they were viſited again by the natives, who brought them furs of different kinds; alſo fiſh, &c. The long-boat was diſpatched to explore the ſtraits of De Fuca.

On the 20th the long-boat returned; but how ſurpriſed was the captain, to find that his men were ſeverely wounded, in a violent conflict with the natives of the ſtraits: this occaſioned their ſudden return. The attack was begun by the ſavages: they boarded the boat, with the deſign of taking her, in two canoes, containing between forty and fifty men, who were moſt probably ſome of their choiceſt warriors. Several other canoes alſo remained at a ſmall diſtance, to aſſiſt in the attempt; and the ſhore was every where lined with people, who diſcharged at their veſſel continual ſhowers of ſtones and arrows. A chief in one of the canoes, who encouraged the advance of the others, was moſt fortunately ſhot in the head with a ſingle ball, while in the very act of throwing a ſpear of a moſt enormous length at the cockſwain. This circumſtance cauſed the canoes to draw back, and deprived the natives who were already engaged of that ſupport which muſt have enſured them the victory. Indeed, it is wonderful how the boat's company, which conſiſted only of thirteen men, and who were attacked with the moſt courageous fury by ſuperior numbers, eſcaped the numerous weapons which were conſtantly diſcharged from the ſhore.

In this engagement the natives behaved with a ſpirit and reſolution that reſiſted the uſual terror of fire-arms among a ſavage people; for the conteſt was cloſe, and for ſome time the Engliſh fought for their lives. One of them had been ſingled out by an individual ſavage for his victim, and a fierce engagement took place between them. The native was armed with a ſtone bludgeon, and the ſailor with a cutlaſs. They both manifeſted, for ſome time, equal courage and dexterity; but if an intervening oar had not broke a blow, armed with all the force of his enemy, the Engliſhman muſt have ſunk beneath it. It however failed of its object, and gave him an opportunity, by a ſevere ſtroke of the cutlaſs, to deprive the native of an arm, who, notwithſtanding ſuch a loſs, and ſeveral other wounds, contrived to ſwim from the boat, indebted for his life to the noble mercy of his conqueror, who diſdained to kill him in the water. The ſeaman who was wounded in the leg, continued, during the action, with the arrow in his fleſh; and without attempting to rid himſelf of the torturing weapon, became, by his courageous and active exertions, a very principal inſtrument in preſerving the boat.

The whole attention of the veſſel was now transferred to their wounded people; but though ſeveral of them were much hurt, they were conſoled with finding that no mortal injury had been received by any. The officer was wounded by a barbed arrow in the head, which would have killed him on the ſpot, if a thick hat had not deadened the force of the weapon. One of the ſeamen was pierced in the breaſt, and another in the calf of the leg, into which the arrow had entered ſo far as to render a very large inciſion abſolutely neceſſary, in order to diſcharge it. A fourth received a wound very near the heart, but the weapon which gave it very fortunately fell ſhort of the vital parts. The reſt of the people were bruiſed in a terrible manner, by the ſtones and clubs of the enemy; even the boat itſelf was pierced in a thouſand places by arrows, many of which remained in the awning that covered the back part of it, and which, by receiving the arrows, and breaking the fall of large ſtones thrown from ſlings, in a great meaſure ſaved the captain's party from inevitable deſtruction.

While returning down the ſtraits, they were met by a ſmall canoe, wherein there were two men who belonged to the tribe of Wicananiſh; of theſe they purchaſed ſome fiſh; but theſe vile ſavages having offered for ſale two human heads, which were apparently juſt cut off, and which they underſtood to be the heads of two people belonging to Tatootche whom they murdered, ſo diſguſted the Engliſh that they held theſe natives in the utmoſt deteſtation during their ſtay with them.

They now prepared for joining their party in King George's Sound, as their endeavours to diſcover the extent of the ſtraits were at preſent ineffectual.

On the 21ſt, in the morning, they put to ſea, and were entirely clear of the Sound by noon.

Port Effingham is an exceeding commodious harbour. There is excellent timber on the coaſt for building veſſels. There are ſeveral places of ſhelter about the ſound, though the ſound is not near ſo extenſive as that of Nootka.

On the 22d they ſtood to the S. W. and the next day to the W. N. W. to make land.

On the 24th the weather became ſo bad, that they could not poſſibly cloſe with the ſhore.

On the 25th, the weather being clear, the entrance of King George's Sound was ſeen bearing E. N. E. about ſix leagues diſtant.

On the 26th they anchored in Friendly Cove, after an abſence of one month and 25 days, where they found their party on ſhore ſafe and well, who were equally rejoiced at the ſafety and welfare of the Felice. The new veſſel was in great forwardneſs; the chief part of her iron-work being done: ſhe was completely in frame, her ſides planked, decks laid, &c.

The building of this new veſſel having created much curioſity among the natives, ſeveral parties of ſtrangers came to ſee it. This gave the Engliſh many opportunities of collecting a quantity of furs.

Captain Meares was very happy to find that Maquilla had ſtrictly fulfilled all his promiſes, and that Callicum during his abſence had teſtified great attention and friendſhip towards his people, by whoſe immediate orders they were regularly ſupplied with fiſh, and other proviſions. They were not, however, a little alarmed, during the Felice's abſence, by a report which ſome of the people of Wicananiſh had brought to them, inſinuating that a great part of the Felice's crew was deſtroyed by the natives of Tatootche. As this ſtory was related previous to the action of the long-boat with the people of the ſtraits, it proved to be a mere fabrication, but for what purpoſe is unknown.

On the 27th the crew were permitted to recreate themſelves on ſhore, the weather being remarkably fine. The next day they returned to their labour, with their uſual ſpirits.

It was now agreed upon to proceed again to ſea, in order to viſit Port Cox, and renew their commercial buſineſs there; this intention was, however, fruſtrated, by the boatſwain and ſome of the boatmen belonging to the veſſel, who had re-commenced a dangerous mutiny. It ſeems that ever ſince the firſt attempt the arms had been removed from the quarter-deck to the cabin: it was the mutineers' intention to ſeize the arms, and put the firſt officer to death, the reſt of the people at this time being employed on ſhore; but the officer having fortunately gained the cabin before them, whereto the arms had been removed, he defended the door with a loaded blunderbuſs, until ſome of the officers, who were ſitting on the quarter-deck of the new veſſel, being alarmed by his cries for aſſiſtance, immediately armed themſelves, and haſtened on board the veſſel. Thus prepared, they turned the crew on deck, where they ſoon diſcovered the ringleaders in the buſineſs. Menaces being uſed of puniſhing thoſe who perſiſted to be diſobedient, the men who were inclined to ſerve the captain were therefore warned to ſeparate from the diſobedient; accordingly, on their preſenting their arms, the crew joined the captain, leaving the ringleaders, who conſiſted of the boatſwain and eight others, that obſtinately refuſed to return to their duty. The captain (as now the veſſel was perfectly ſecure) being unwilling to ſhed any blood, gave them their choice either to go into irons or be turned on ſhore with the ſavages; the latter being preferred, they were accordingly landed, with every thing that belonged to them, by which means good order was again reſtored.

The party on ſhore were prohibited from having any communication with theſe rebellious men, nor were they, on any pretence, to admit them, or any of them, into the houſe. A ſtrict watch was alſo kept on board.

On the 29th one of the ſailors made a voluntary confeſſion of this buſineſs. They had bound themſelves by a paper, which almoſt all the crew had ſigned, to get poſſeſſion of the ſhip as ſoon as poſſible, quit the coaſt of America, and ſteer their courſe to the Sandwich Iſlands, thence to ſome port where they might diſpoſe of the cargo. The writing being deſtroyed, their intentions with reſpect to the officers were not known; no doubt, they were either to be murdered, or to be left at Nootka. The ſailors who had joined in the mutiny declared, that they were obliged to conſent, through the menaces of the ringleaders.

From the loſs of thoſe ſeamen who had rebelled, they were prevented from making another voyage to Port Cox, as intended; ſo that now their chief object was to finiſh the new veſſel as ſoon as poſſible.

The mutineers had built themſelves a large hut, where they reſided, and a canoe (which the captain had purchaſed) was ſent them, in order to enable them to catch fiſh. Maquilla and Callicum came on board the day after the mutiny, and being ſtruck with the magnitude of their offence, was equally ſurpriſed at the lenity which was ſhewn them. Maquilla requeſted permiſſion to put the mutineers to death; which requeſt was treated with the ſtrongeſt marks of diſpleaſure. Callicum propoſed taking them into his houſe: this the captain readily conſented to, on an aſſurance that no perſonal injury ſhould be offered them. The next day they were accordingly employed by Callicum in fetching water and other menial ſervices, during which they were attended by low-conditioned natives, to watch and keep them to this duty. As they had parted with ſome of their clothes before this to procure fiſh, the remainder of them were taken away by the chiefs, and they were now obliged to labour for their own maintenance, as well as for that of their new maſters.

On the 6th of Auguſt the Princeſs Royal was ſeen. She diſappeared afterwards. The captain now reſolved to proceed to Port Cox, as he was apprehenſive the Princeſs Royal might get the furs which were collected for him: accordingly, he renewed his promiſes with Maquilla and Callicum, and as they were now going to war againſt an enemy (more powerful and numerous than themſelves) at ſome diſtance to the northward, the captain promiſed to furniſh them with fire-arms and ammunition, which would inſure their victory, provided they ſtill continued kind to his men. This propoſal not only confirmed their friendſhip, but animated them with new vigour. The captain was alſo promiſed, that inſtead of putting to death their captives, as was the general practice, they would make them ſlaves, like the mutineers.

They now prepared for war, while the power that Maquilla carried with him conſiſted of twenty war-canoes, containing each thirty ſtout men, who were frightfully painted.

Captain Meares, previous to his departure for Port Cox, gave ſome neceſſary inſtructions to thoſe men whom he left behind: he likewiſe ſtrictly prohibited their having any connection with the mutineers.

After they had cleared the mouth of the Sound, they ſaw the Princeſs Royal within two miles of them: the boat was hoiſted out, and Capt. Meares paid her a viſit: he was received by Capt. Duncan in a very friendly manner: after ſome private converſation, they parted. The Princeſs Royal purſued her courſe to the S. S. E. and the Felice continued along-ſhore. In the evening Capt. Meares was obliged to tack and ſtand to ſea, by reaſon of a contrary wind. On the 10th they got down a-breaſt of Port Cox, and found the Princeſs Royal had arrived a few hours before in a ſmall bar-harbour. The Felice entered Port Cox.

On the 11th the long-boat was diſpatched to Wicananiſh, with preſents. This chief had removed to his winter-quarters, which were about 35 miles diſtant from the veſſel. The boat came back in the evening, with preſents in return: the next day ſhe was diſpatched again, with ſeveral articles to trade, and did not return till the 14th. The following is extracted from the officer's account of the ſucceſs of his trade; with a deſcription of the winter-reſidence of Wicananiſh.

On the morning of the 13th he arrived at Clioquatt, which conſiſted, like the other towns, of ſuch houſes as are already deſcribed, but more commodiouſly conſtructed, poſſeſſing a greater ſhare of their rude magnificence than any which were yet ſeen. It was very large and populous; and the dwelling of the chief much more capacious than that which he occupied in the village near the ſea, when they firſt viſited his territories. The inhabitants were, at this time, buſily employed in packing up fiſh in mats, ſecuring the roes of them in bladders, cutting whales into ſlices, and melting down blubber into oil, which they poured into ſeal-ſkins. All this mighty preparation was the provident ſpirit of catering for the winter: and the incredible quantities of theſe various proviſions which the Engliſh ſaw collected, promiſed, at leaſt, that famine would not be an evil of the approaching ſeaſon. On theſe ſhores the winter is the happy portion of the year, which is appropriated to luxury and eaſe; nor are they then ever arouſed into action, but to take ſome of thoſe enormous whales, which, at that ſeaſon, frequent their ſeas, in order to feaſt any of the neighbouring chiefs who may come to viſit them.

Wicananiſh received all the preſents which the captain had ſent, with expreſſions of extreme ſatisfaction; particularly a copper tea-kettle which was honoured with his peculiar attention: it was borne away by him with an air of triumph, to be placed among his treaſures; and with repeated declarations, that no conſideration whatever ſhould again induce him to yield up ſuch a valuable depoſit. Twelve braſs-hilted ſwords were likewiſe among their preſents, which were favoured with the moſt grateful admiration; and a great variety of articles had been purpoſely manufactured to ſuit the fancy of the women, who vied with each other in their cordial attentions to the Engliſh. A more briſk trade was then carried on with the inhabitants than had been hitherto experienced; a conſiderable quantity of furs were obtained, and the boat returned well freighted with the produce of the voyage, and her people perfectly ſatisfied with their reception from Wicananiſh.

On the 18th the long-boat was again diſpatched to the town, to take their farewell meſſage, and, which was of more conſequence, their farewell preſent to Wicananiſh. The captain on this occaſion intended to prove the diſintereſtedneſs of his friendſhip, by ſelecting ſuch a variety of articles as would ſuit even the moſt varying fancy of this fickle people. To theſe were alſo added ſeveral coats, profuſely trimmed with buttons, and the head of a large copper ſtill. This ſumptuous preſent was ordered to be made without receiving any thing in return.

On the 19th in the evening the boat returned, having punctually executed the captain's orders; and having brought a meſſage from the chief, that he propoſed to viſit the ſhip the next day; and therefore begged the captain to defer his departure for the purpoſe of receiving him.

On the 20th Wicananiſh, attended by his brother, his two ſons, three of his wives, and a great number of people from the town, who attended their chief, in order to gain another opportunity of trading with the Engliſh, accordingly paid the captain a viſit; no ſmall quantity of furs were, at this time, procured from them. The chief preſented them with ſeveral ſea-otter ſkins of the moſt valuable kind; and, though there was every reaſon to believe that he intended to rival the Engliſh in generoſity, by refuſing to receive any return; he could not bring himſelf to ſend back a couple of muſquets, and a quantity of ammunition, which were too tempting to be reſiſted by the delicacy of his ſentiments, and might prove too uſeful in defending himſelf againſt his powerful neighbour, Tatootche, not to be received with the moſt grateful ſatisfaction. He enquired, in the moſt affectionate manner, how many moons would paſs away before their return; and ſolicited the captain, in the ſtrongeſt terms, to prefer his port and harbour to every other.

One of his ſons, a young man of about nineteen years of age, expreſſed a very earneſt deſire to depart with the captain; but this offer he thought it prudent to decline, from a recollection of the anxiety he had ſuffered on Tiaana's account. This youth was the moſt pleaſing, in his figure and appearance, of any perſon that had been ſeen on the American coaſt. He not only appeared to be very quick and ſagacious, but even to poſſeſs an amiable and docile diſpoſition.

Wicananiſh and his people took their leave with every token of ſincere regret, and repeated entreaties that the captain would ſoon return.

On the 20th the Felice put to ſea, and on the 24th arrived ſafe at King George's Sound, where ſhe anchored in her old ſituation. The captain not only found that his men were all well, but they had been remarkably diligent, the veſſel being now in great forwardneſs. The mutineers were ſtill ſervants to the natives.

We ſhall now return to the Iphigenia, whom we left at Snug Corner Bay, in order to bring her again in company with her conſort.

CHAPTER VII.

Proceedings of the Iphigenia continued—She leaves Snug Corner Bay—Her ſlow Progreſs—Long-boat ſent out—Loſe ſight of her—Run down towards her—Take her in—Mount St. Elias perceived—Jolly-boat ſent out—Returns with a Canoe—A Viſit from the Natives—Iſlands of Ice—Viſits repeated—An extraordinary Inſtance of Vengeance and Intrepidity—Several Skins purchaſed—Anchorage in Sea-Otter Harbour—Boats ſent out—People employed—Anchorage at Port Meares—Three Chiefs invited to Dinner—Paſs Roſe Point—Joins the Felice at Nootka Sound—Arrangements made—Repentance of the Mutineers—Taken again on board—Veſſels ſeparate again.

AS ſoon as the crew of the Iphigenia had compleated their wooding, watering, &c. on the 14th of July they weighed anchor, and turned out of the Cove: the weather was now calm and cloudy. On the 18th they ſtood for the S. end of Kay's Iſland. The ſucceeding morning they were cloſe in with the Cape, when they had from 10 to 20 fathoms over a clayey bottom.

On the 22d they ſtood in for land, bearing N. N. E. about 16 leagues diſtance, in order to ſhew themſelves to the natives; and thus, the weather being changeable, the Iphigenia proceeded to run parallel with the coaſt, ſometimes near and at other times at a great diſtance from land.

On the 31ſt they made ſail towards low land, where they ſaw ſmoke. As the weather was now clear, the long-boat was ſent out, in order to explore the bay, and make every neceſſary enquiry. They had from 10 to 15 fathom water, over a rocky bottom. The Iphigenia having loſt ſight of the long-boat (which was driven out to ſea) now wore and ran down towards her. In about an hour and a half they got ſight of her, and in an hour after came along-ſide, when ſhe was ſtruggling with a heavy ſea. She was now hoiſted in, and they made ſail.

On the 2d of Auguſt land was ſeen; and in the afternoon they perceived Mount St. Elias bearing N. W. by W. about 20 leagues diſtant.

The jolly-boat was ſent out the next morning, to look about the ſhore and ſeek for inhabitants. She returned about noon, accompanied with near thirty natives in a large canoe. Upon this the Iphigenia anchored with her beſt bower, in 27 fathoms, over a fine bottom. This was called Tiaana's bay, in honour of that chief. Several dreſſes of ſea-otter ſkins, &c. were purchaſed of the natives.

On the 5th they were re-viſited by the ſame party, who brought ſome inferior dreſſes, but which notwithſtanding were purchaſed, with a quantity of ſalmon. At nine o'clock they weighed anchor, and proceeded along the ſhore. Tiaana was now very anxious to return to Owhyhee, as the preſent climate did not agree with him. Though he had as much cloathing on him as he could carry, yet he was ſcarcely able to bear the cold.

On the 6th they were high up the Sound, and thinking they ſaw ſome iſlands at a diſtance, the jolly-boat was ſent out, and on her return it was underſtood that they were iſlands of ice.

They were now viſited by one native, who notwithſtanding the ſeverity of the weather was quite naked. The captain gave him a hat, a pair of trowſers, and a jacket, with which he was ſo delighted, that he offered to ſhew them the village whereof he was an inhabitant. As it was very dark and hazy, the captain piloted the veſſel himſelf, which was no eaſy taſk. About 11 at night they came-to, in 17 fathoms, over a rocky bottom.

The next morning they were viſited by five canoes, of whom ſome dreſſes and 40 ſea-otter ſkins were purchaſed. Theſe people were ſuch arch dealers, that the captain was obliged to give them their own price.——The following extraordinary account of female vengeance and intrepidity, is related by Captain Douglas.

“ One of the chiefs having unintentionally interrupted a canoe, in which was a woman, from coming cloſe to the ſhip, ſhe ſeized a paddle, and ſtruck him ſo violently with it on the head, that he was almoſt diſabled from employing a ſimilar inſtrument to ward off the blows which followed. In this manner they continued their conteſt, ſhe in ſtriking, and he in defending himſelf, for near half an hour; when Captain Douglas, in order to put an end to this ſingular fray, fired a muſquet over their heads, with concomitant ſigns of his diſpleaſure, but without effect: for the woman now ſtepped into the canoe of the man, who appeared to be in a ſtate of complete humiliation, and pulling out a knife from ſome part of her dreſs, ſhe ſpoke for ſome time, and then cut him acroſs the thigh. Though the blood guſhed in ſtreams from the wound, ſhe was about to repeat her violence, when Capt. Douglas interfered in ſuch a manner as to oblige this vengeful dame to return to her own boat, and give the bleeding object of her vengeance an opportunity to paddle away to the ſhore. During the whole of this engagement, if it may deſerve that name, not one of the men dared to interfere; nay it appeared that they were in ſuch an entire ſtate of ſubmiſſion to female controul, that they could not diſpoſe of a ſkin till the women had granted them the neceſſary permiſſion.”

On the 8th they were viſited by eight canoes, of whom a large number of ſea-otter ſkins were purchaſed. They now weighed anchor and made ſail, proceeding S. E. along the ſhore. They ſaw a large bay in the afternoon; but there being no ſign of inhabitants, they tacked and ſtood out. They alſo ſaw another the next day, which likewiſe proved deſerted: accordingly they made ſail, and on the 11th ran acroſs the mouth of a large bay, which forms two capes: the ſouthern one is high, and called Cape Adamſon; the other to the N. is low towards the ſea, but gradually increaſes to a great height: this is called Cape Barnett. Cape Adamſon lies in latitude 55 deg. 28 min. N. in long. 226 deg. 21 min. E. Cape Barnett in lat. 55 deg. 39 min. N. in long. 226 deg. 4 min. E. They proceeded a great way up the bay, and entering the mouth of a ſtrait paſſage, ſteered to the N. In the evening they anchored with the beſt bower, in 17 fathoms, over a ſandy bottom, about half a mile diſtant from ſhore. The veſſel was now entirely land-locked, and the bay was called Sea-Otter Harbour, from the great quantity of thoſe animals which were ſeen in the water.

On the 12th the jolly and long-boats were ſent out; the firſt to ſound, and the other to look for a watering-place. The long-boat returned without ſucceſs; however the captain diſcovered a plentiful run of good water on the oppoſite ſhore. There were no natives to be ſeen, though ſeveral places where there had been fires. The people were now employed in overhauling the rigging, cutting wood, getting water, &c.

The captain went out in the jolly-boat to explore the head of the ſtraits, and returned in the evening, without making any material diſcovery. They ſteered through the mouth of the ſtraits.

On the 13th they ſaw a ſmall iſland about two miles in circumference, S. S. E. eight miles diſtant. It was called Douglas Iſland. There were a few others, low and rocky, lying off its N. and S. ends. They paſſed Douglas Iſland with clear weather, but a thick fog came on ſoon after, juſt as they were ſteering in for a bay, which bore N. E. by N. From this bay they were preſently viſited by two canoes, of whom they purchaſed 26 ſea-otter ſkins, made in dreſſes, and a few birds.

On the 14th the weather became ſomewhat clear, and they made for ſhore. In the afternoon they got within a ſmall iſland, that was about a quarter of a mile diſtant from the main land; where they were becalmed.

They were now viſited by two large canoes, containing each about 40 people; with theſe there was a chief, and as they approached the veſſel they ſung a very pleaſing chorus. The ſhip was driving down at this time very faſt towards the iſland, which was under her lee, owing to an adverſe tide: the chief was accordingly requeſted to take the rope, and tow the veſſel higher up the bay; which he immediately performed, while his party ſtill continued their chorus. The Iphigenia anchored in 23 fathoms, over a bottom of ſhells and ſand. This bay was called Port Meares. It has two large arms or branches of the ſea: the one turns N. N. E. and the other about N. N. W.

From this to the 17th a briſk trade was carried on: a quantity of ſea-otter ſkins was purchaſed. Theſe natives were exceedingly kind, and remarkably honeſt.

On the 18th they were viſited by the natives of the northern branch of the ſea, who approached the veſſel with a chorus like their neighbours. Of theſe about 60 excellent ſkins, made into dreſſes, were purchaſed.

On the 20th the captain invited three of the chiefs to dinner: they ſeemed highly pleaſed with their entertainment, and communicated as much information as they were capable of. This afternoon they weighed and made ſail, proceeding to the S. E. At night the weather became thick, ſo they hove-to, with the veſſel's head to the northward and weſtward.

The next morning, the weather clearing up, they wore and made ſail to the S. E. They now ran along the ſhore, with a freſh breeze from the weſtward, making for a bay which the natives had directed them to: they had from nine to 11 fathoms. The fog came on again very thick, and as they ſaw land from the maſt-head, trending due N. they were reſolved to know if this land joined the main, or if there were any paſſage; accordingly they ſet a preſs of ſail, and ſteered for the bluff high land, that bore N. At this time there were no canoes to be ſeen. Towards evening it cleared up, ſo that they had a perfect view of both ſides. They paſſed a ſandy point, which was called Point Roſe, and diſcovered that the land did not join the main, but formed a large iſland, which took a ſoutherly direction.

On the 23d, ſeeing no canoes, they ſtood to the S. E. having land on both ſides. The weather was now clear.

On the 25th they loſt ſight of land, and were now determined to ſteer at once for Nootka Sound, the entrance of which they were cloſe in with the preceding evening; but it falling calm, and the tide getting out, they anchored with their beſt bower in 23 fathoms.

On the 27th they ſtood in for the ſound, and about 11 o'clock anchored in Friendly Cove, where they joined the Felice.

This meeting was productive of ſo much hilarity, that by the command of the captains, it was made a holiday. At this time the crew of the Iphigenia were quite recovered from that diſorder under which they laboured when they parted with the Felice: Tiaana was likewiſe in good health and ſpirits. On this day it happened that Maquilla and Callicum returned victors from their war-expedition, which did not add a little to the general joy. As there were ſeveral baſkets in their canoes which they would not open, it was apprehended (as it afterwards proved) to contain the heads of thoſe enemies who were ſlain: the number of which were about thirty: Maquilla alſo loſt ſome of his men. The muſquets which the Engliſh had lent them, were now returned: the ammunition had been entirely expended, for they had fired ſeveral times, by which means they gained the victory.

The artificers of the Iphigenia were likewiſe employed, as well as thoſe of the Felice, in completing the new veſſel. Every hand was now buſy in forwarding this ſchooner, and alſo in preparing the other two veſſels for ſea, as it was intended as ſoon as the new veſſel was launched, that the Felice ſhould proceed to China, and the Iphigenia with the ſchooner perform the reſt of their commercial concerns.

On the 7th of September Maquilla and Callicum viſited Captains Meares and Douglas, and informed them, that they with all their people ſhould remove to their winter reſidence, which was about thirty miles diſtant from the veſſels.

The diſmal ſituation of the mutineers began now to be conſidered: theſe unhappy wretches earneſtly implored forgiveneſs, and made many promiſes of future fidelity. Notwithſtanding the great danger there was in taking back thoſe men, yet the captains thought it too cruel to leave them behind. On conditions therefore of forfeiting the wages which were due for nine months; and that their future pay ſhould be proportioned to their good behaviour, they were admitted to their former ſituation: they were however divided among the two crews, in order to leſſen the power of communication. The boatſwain who had likewiſe added theft to his offence, was put under confinement in the houſe on ſhore, this being deemed abſolutely neceſſary.

The chiefs, Maquilla and Callicum, now came to take their final leave. They were preſented with a muſquet, ſome ammunition, a few blankets, and other tokens of reward.

On the 17th a ſail was ſeen in the offing: as it was ſuppoſed to be the Princeſs Royal, the long-boat was diſpatched to her aſſiſtance. However, inſtead of the Princeſs, it proved to be a ſloop named the Waſhington, from Boſton in New England, of about 100 tons burthen, which they conveyed into the ſound.

A little time after this the boatſwain broke looſe from his confinement, having ſtolen ſeveral articles, with which he eſcaped into the woods. It was afterwards underſtood, that the maſter of the Waſhington ſupported him in his concealment, and when an opportunity arrived, received him on board his veſſel, in which he did duty before the maſt.

On the 20th the veſſel was complete, and ready to be launched: Maquilla, Callicum, and a numerous body of his people came from their winter reſidence to ſee it. This veſſel was named the North Weſt America, it being the firſt that was ever built and launched in this part of the globe. On the gun being fired, the veſſel ſtarted from the ways with uncommon velocity, and was nearly making her way out of the harbour, had not the boats towed her to her intended ſituation. It ſeems they had forgotten to place an anchor and cable on board to bring her up, as is the general cuſtom in launching a veſſel. Tiaana was on board the veſſel when launched, and expreſſed the greateſt aſtoniſhment and delight. All the natives were ſtruck with wonder; nor were the Chineſe carpenters leſs aſtoniſhed, being totally unacquainted with this laſt operation.

A commander, officers and crew were appointed for the North Weſt America, and ſhe received ſtores from both the Felice and Iphigenia.

On the 24th the Felice was ready for ſea, and the following orders were given to Captain Douglas by Captain Meares.

“ On your return to Macao ſeal up your log-book, charts, plans, &c. &c. and forward them to Daniel Beale, Eſq; Canton, who is the oſtenſible agent for the concern; and you have the moſt particular injunctions not to communicate or give copies of any charts or plans that you may make, as your employers aſſert a right to all of them, and as ſuch will claim them.

“ Should you, in the courſe of your voyage, meet with the veſſels of any other nation, you will have as little communication with them as poſſible; ſhould they be of ſuperior force, and deſire to ſee your papers, you will ſhew them. You will be on your guard againſt ſurpriſe. Should they be either Ruſſian, Engliſh, Spaniſh, or any other civilized nation, and be authoriſed to examine your papers, you will permit them, and treat them with civility and friendſhip; but at the ſame time you muſt be on your guard. Should they attempt to ſeize you, or even carry you out of your way, you will prevent it by every means in your power, and repel force by force: you will on your arrival proteſt publicly, before a proper officer, againſt ſuch illegal procedure, and aſcertain, as near as you can, the value of your cargo and veſſel, and ſend ſuch proteſt, with a full account of the tranſaction, to us at China.

“ Should you, in ſuch conflict, have the ſuperiority, you will then take poſſeſſion of the veſſel that attacked you, as alſo her cargo, and bring both, with the officers and crew, to China, that they may be condemned, and their crews puniſhed as pirates.”

Having now ſent all the ſtores they could ſpare on board the Iphigenia, and received in return her cargo of furs, &c. they took their farewell: the officers, &c. of the Iphigenia, and North Weſt America, having on this occaſion come on board the Felice; and on the 24th, after three cheers from each veſſel, the Felice put to ſea, and another ſeparation took place.

CHAPTER VIII.

Departure of the Felice from the Sound—A Storm—An Alarm—Conſequent Uneaſineſs—Spars and Booms launched overboard—Veſſel eaſed—Proceed with greater Facility—Arrive at Toe-yah-yah Bay—Viſited by Canoes—Quantity of Proviſions purchaſed—Information—Proceed to Attoui and Oneeheow—Anchor in Wymoa Bay—Occaſional Viſits—Feelings of the Natives on Tiaana's Account—Political State of the Iſlands—Death of Tiaana meditated—Communication with the Engliſh prohibited—Proceed to Oneeheow—Surrounded by old Friends—A Letter left for Captain Douglas—Proviſions laid in—Departure—The Iſland of Botol Tobago Xima—A Storm—Arrive at China—Tranſactions of the Iphigenia and the Schooner, during the Abſence of the Felice—They quit Nootka Sound—A Meeting between Tiaana and his Brother—Anchor in Karakakooa Bay—Viſit from the King and Queen—The North Weſt America parts from her Cable—Divers procured to recover it—The Iphigenia parts from hers—Conſequent Conjectures—Tiaana takes leaves of the Captain, and is landed with all his Goods, &c. in Owhyhee.

THE night after the Felice left King George's Sound there was a great ſtorm, accompanied with a very heavy mountainous ſea: the veſſel laboured exceedingly. On the 25th, about four o'clock in the morning, they were greatly alarmed with a ſuppoſition that the ſhip had ſprung a dangerous leak, for at firſt there was four feet water in the hold, which gained ſo in four hours that it was got above the ground tier of caſks. The men were conſtantly employed at the pumps, which were at laſt choaked with the ſmall ballaſt. They now baled the water from all the hatchways, while the carpenters were repairing the pumps. The progreſs of the veſſel was very ſlow, ſhe was ſo heavy with the water in her hull: at this time there was a violent gale from the N. W. and they proceeded to the ſouthward.

The water in the veſſel now increaſed in ſuch a manner, that they were very much alarmed. They brought the ſhip to under the cloſe-reefed main-top-ſail, on the larboard tacks. All the ſpars and booms on the lee ſide of the deck were immediately launched overboard, by orders of the captain. When the veſſel was put on the other tack, the ſame operation was performed on the other ſide: this being done, they diſcovered that their paſt danger proceeded from the great weight of timber lodged on the deck, which with the heavy rolling ſea had opened her ſeams and admitted the water. Thus remedied, however, ſhe was capable of proceeding with greater eaſe and rapidity.

Nothing material occurred after this. On the 15th of October they made the iſland of Owhyhee. On the 17th they diſcovered land bearing from E. S. E. to W. N. W. about ſix leagues diſtant: they now hove-to for the night, and the next day very early in the morning bore up, and proceeded under a gentle ſail to cloſe in with the land: they hove-to in the entrance of Toe-yah-yah Bay, which is ſituated on the weſtern ſide of the iſland. They were ſoon viſited by a number of canoes, of whom were purchaſed a quantity of hogs, pigs, taro-root, plantains, ſugar-cane, fowls, &c. &c. This was a very ſeaſonable relief, as the Felice was in great want of proviſions, owing both to their tedious paſſage, and the large portion of ſtores which were given to the Iphigenia. The boats were all filled with hogs, upwards of 400 of which were now purchaſed with vegetables, &c. They were viſited by only one chief, who came in a double canoe paddled along by twelve men: he was accompanied by his wife, and two daughters. This chief ſent on board the Felice ſome large hogs and a quantity of cocoa-nuts, and preſently after came on board, when the captain made him a ſuitable return.

From this chief it was underſtood that old Tereeoboo was poiſoned, and that he was ſucceeded by Tiaana's uncle. This revolution was the occaſion of a very dreadful war between the people of Owhyhee, and thoſe of the iſland of Mowee, under the government of Titeeree. The chief was now informed, that Tiaana was on his way home in another veſſel, and the captain willing to inſure him a good reception, delivered, in the preſence of a numerous body of natives, a preſent, which he ſaid was a mark of Tiaana's attachment to his uncle: it was accepted with due reverence, and publicly tabooed.

As they intended to ſupply themſelves in the moſt ample manner with pork in this iſland, and then proceed to Oneehow and procure a ſufficient quantity of yams, a briſk trade was accordingly carried on with the natives, and in a ſhort time they had purchaſed a plenty to ſuffice them till their arrival at China. They therefore made ſail and proceeded to Attoui and Oneehow, though it was not without much difficulty that they got clear of the natives: they were prevented by light winds, from reaching Attoui till the 23d, on which day at noon they anchored in Wymoa Bay. During their paſſage by other iſlands, they were frequently viſited by canoes, from whom they got young pigs, ſugar-canes, &c. The canoes were prevented from approaching the veſſel when anchored in Wymoa Bay, on account of a violent ſtorm: the next day, however, as the weather was more moderate, though ſtill tempeſtuous, they were viſited by two men and a girl in a ſmall canoe, of whom they purchaſed a ſmall pig and ſome cocoa-nuts. Theſe people on their firſt interview with the captain, burſt into tears when enquiring for Tiaana. They informed the captain that Taheo on account of his old age reſigned his government to Abineei, who was the avowed enemy of Tiaana. In conſequence of which, Tiaana's brother (Namaatehow) had fled with his family to a diſtant part of the iſland to eſcape the tyranny of Taheo, and therefore war was pronounced on both ſides. A proclamation was now iſſued by Taheo that Tiaana ſhould be put to death if he landed, and all his ſubjects were forbid to have any communication with the veſſel which it was imagined brought home Tiaana; but notwithſtanding the prohibition, theſe people ventured out, with a view of apprizing Tiaana of his danger.

As no other canoes ventured out, it was deemed unneceſſary to ſtay here any longer; accordingly they weighed and proceeded to Oneehow, where they anchored on the 25th in the evening. They were here ſurrounded with old friends of both ſexes, particularly the faithful Friday, who procured them a quantity of large yams (though at this time very ſcarce), and ſeveral other neceſſary articles. The captain left a letter with Friday for Captain Douglas, to apprize him of the political ſtate of Attoui, and direct him how to act with reſpect to Tiaana, that he might be ſecure from the menaces of his unnatural brother.

On the 27th they prepared for their departure, and having weighed anchor purſued their voyage, with a wind from the E. N. E. From this to the 20th of November nothing material occurred. Preparations were now making for thoſe tempeſtuous ſeas which they were about to enter.

On the 1ſt of December they made the Iſlands of Botol Tobago Xima. The weather was now thick and unpleaſant, and as the clouds were exceedingly dark there was every appearance of an approaching ſtorm, which came on at eight o'clock, attended with violent rain; they were now obliged to run the veſſel in order to avoid the China Seas. They purſued their courſe to the S. W. the ſtorm ſtill continuing, and what was ſtill worſe, increaſing in ſuch a manner that they could hardly carry any ſail at all.

As there was no ſight of land on the 2d they imagined they were conſiderably advanced in the China Sea; they hauled up N. W. by W. in order to make the coaſt of China, which was ſeen on the 4th, and on the 5th in the evening they anchored in the roads of Macao.

The Iphigenia remained in Friendly Cove after the departure of the Felice till the 27th of October, on account of the neceſſary preparations in equipping the North Weſt America for ſea; but as nothing particular occurred during this interval, we ſhall, therefore, paſs it over.

The Iphigenia and North Weſt America proceeded on their way to the Sandwich Iſlands, and on the 6th of December were in ſight of Owhyhee, juſt about the time when the Felice had made Macao.

When they had arrived off Mowee they were viſited by ſeveral canoes, by whom they were ſupplied with hogs, plantains, yams, &c. This was a very ſeaſonable relief, as their proviſions were now nearly expended.

A preſent of hogs was ordered for the ſhip by Harwallenee, brother-in-law to Tiaana, as ſoon as ever he was informed of his arrival. At the requeſt of Tiaana an invitation was ſent to Harwallenee, and Tiaana now dreſſed himſelf in his beſt apparel in order to receive him. Their meeting was extremely affectionate, and felt by every ſpectator. Harwallenee requeſted Captain Douglas to remain with him a few days, promiſing he ſhould be ſupplied with whatever proviſions he wanted; but as the captain could find no ſecure anchorage he was obliged (though reluctantly) to decline his politeneſs.

On the 7th Tiaana was viſited by ſeveral friends, and on the 8th a number of canoes came off from Toe-yah-yah Bay with hogs, fowls, &c. There was now very heavy rain, and they loſt ſight of the North Weſt America; but in ſeven hours after recovered her. The Iphigenia then hove-to till the North Weſt America came up. Tiaana was now viſited by ſeveral relations, and the captain received a preſent from the king, with the aſſurance of a viſit as ſoon as he had anchored.

On the 10th they made for the bay. One of the the chiefs, who had viſited Tiaana, now went to invite the king, by his particular deſire; about two in the afternoon the king approached the veſſel in a large double canoe, attended by twelve others of the ſame ſize, beautifully adorned with feathers. As ſoon as he came on board, Captain Douglas ſaluted him with ſeven guns. After crying over Tiaana for a conſiderable time, the king preſented Captain Douglas with a moſt beautiful fan, and two long-feathered cloaks. The light winds and number of canoes hanging on the ſhip, prevented her from from making any way through the water: ſo that it became a matter of neceſſity to requeſt his majeſty to taboo the ſhip, with which he readily complied, deſiring permiſſion, at the ſame time, for himſelf and ſeveral of the chiefs to ſleep on board.

They continued working into the bay till two o'clock in the morning; when they dropped anchor in twenty-one fathoms water, at the diſtance of three-quarters of a mile from ſhore. The king profeſſed the warmeſt friendſhip for the captain of the Iphigenia, declared that the iſland ſhould belong to him while he remained there, and, to prove the ſincerity of his regard, exchanged names with him. But however flattering all theſe attentions might be, Captain Douglas thought it not impoſſible but that ſome attempt might be made to ſeize the ſchooner, as ſhe appeared to be ſmall, and her crew few in number; he therefore, in the evening, carried the king on board the North Weſt America, when by ſaluting him with all her guns, and other explanations concerning the poſſibility of defending her, when attacked, by retiring to cloſe quarters, the difficulty of getting poſſeſſion of her muſt have appeared very evident to the royal viſiter. When, however, Tiaana explained to him the manner and time in which ſhe was built, he intreated that a carpenter might be left at Owhyhee to aſſiſt Tiaana in forming ſuch another; and, indeed, ſo earneſt were the requeſts of them both on this ſubject, that it was neceſſary to make ſomething of a conditional promiſe, at leaſt, for their preſent ſatisfaction.

On the 12th the captains of both ſhips, Douglas and Funter, accompanied the king and Tiaana in the jolly-boat on ſhore. They were met on the beach by three prieſts, who chaunted a kind of ſong, and preſented a ſmall hog and cocoa-nut; the former of which was given by the king to Capt. Douglas. This ceremony continued about ten minutes; after which they were introduced into a large houſe ſpread with mats, and a kind of party-coloured cloth; when, after the repetition of theſe ceremonies, and the prieſt had chaunted a third ſong, two baked hogs were brought in, of which the Engliſh alone eat, and then proceeded to take a walk, in which they were not interrupted by a ſingle perſon, as all the natives were tabooed on the occaſion, and of courſe confined to their houſes.

During this excurſion nothing was ſeen worthy notice. It being extremely hot, they returned and dined with the king, on freſh fiſh and potatoes. The other chiefs ſat at ſome diſtance during dinner, and made their meal on roaſted dogs, taro-roots and potatoes; as at this ſeaſon of the year even the chiefs are forbidden to eat hogs and fowls, from the king down to the loweſt eree. In the evening the king and queen returned with Captain Douglas on board the Iphigenia, as they conſidered it the higheſt honour to ſleep in his cot.

On the 17th the men were chiefly employed in killing and ſalting down the hogs; but as the coppers on board for heating the water were very ſmall, they made but ſlow progreſs in this neceſſary occupation.

On the 14th the ſchooner came under the ſtern of the Iphigenia; when Capt. Funter gave the very diſagreeable intelligence that ſhe had parted her cable. After having moored her to the Iphigenia, Tiaana was requeſted to go on ſhore, and entreat the king to ſend off his divers, in order to recover the anchor; and at eight o'clock he came off with them. The ſchooner having lain in 30 fathom water, and not having loſt more than three or four fathoms of cable, a very great depth muſt have remained for the natives to have explored, in order to ſucceed in the buſineſs about which they were to be employed. The following ceremony, however, was to be performed before they entered upon their ſearch: when their canoes were arrived at the place where the anchor lay, ſeveral calabaſhes with taro-root were preſented by a chief to ſix men, who employed about half an hour at the repaſt; when one of the chiefs who accompanied them gave three loud yells, and waved a piece of white cloth over his head: at this ſignal the ſix men plunged into the ſea, and diſappeared in a moment. Four of the ſix remained beneath the water about five minutes; the fifth continued about a minute longer, and when he came up was almoſt exhauſted: two men immediately ſeized and dragged him to the boat. In the mean time there was no appearance of the ſixth, who was conſidered as loſt, when he was ſeen near the ſurface of the water, but ſinking down again; three of the divers, however, plunged inſtantly after him, and brought him up, but in a ſenſeleſs ſtate, and with ſtreams of blood iſſuing from his mouth and noſtrils. It was ſome time before he was ſufficiently recovered to inform them that he had not only got hold of the cable, but had cleared it. This man, according to the account of Captain Funter, of the North Weſt America, was beneath the water the ſpace of ſeven minutes and an half. It appeared, however, that the anchor was in too great a depth of water to afford any proſpect of its being recovered. Theſe people were amply rewarded for their exertions.

Captain Douglas having given orders to right the anchor, thought it prudent to move further in towards the village of Kowrowa, and dropped anchor in 20 fathom water, about a quarter of a mile from the ſhore; but, finding it to be bad ground, a warp was run out, and the ſhip hauled into 14 fathom water.

On the 15th the jolly-boat was ſent to ſound, when, on its being diſcovered that the ground was by no means clear of the coral rock, on the Kowrowa ſide, they weighed anchor, and warped the ſhip oppoſite Sandy Bay, on the Karakakooa ſide, where they dropped the bower anchor in 20 fathom water, with a bottom of grey ſand.

As the king had given Tiaana a large tract of land in Owhyhee, where he might live in a ſtate of honour and ſecurity till the reigning diſtractions and jealouſies of the government of Attoui had ſubſided, Tiaana was now reſolved to remain in this iſland.

On the 19th, as there was every appearance of a ſtorm, the captain was determined to get under way, and go in ſearch of ſome place, among the other iſlands, where the veſſels might lie in ſafety. In the morning, therefore, they unmoored the ſhip; but, in heaving the ſmall bower, they found the cable had parted. On the very inſtant this diſcovery was made, the king and his chiefs ſecretly quitted the ſhip and paddled haſtily to the ſhore. As the clinch was cut, to all appearance, by deſign, there was little doubt on whom to fix the miſchief: Tiaana, therefore, was ſent to inform the king of the circumſtance, as well as the ſuſpicions connected with it; and that if the anchor was not found, his town ſhould be blown about his ears. This threat had the deſired effect, for in a ſhort time Tiaana returned with a party of divers, who, after a repetition of the ceremonies already deſcribed, leaped into the water and diſappeared. The longeſt period which any of them remained under water was four minutes, but no anchor was to be ſeen. They were ſent down a ſecond time, with the ſame ſucceſs: at length the buoy-rope was hooked with a ſmall grapnel, ſo that the divers had now no excuſe whatever as to the uncertainty where the anchor lay; accordingly two of them went down with a three and half inch rope, and bent it in 20 fathoms as well as if they had been on ſhore; ſo that this important object was fortunately recovered, the loſs of which would have been very diſtreſſing, as they had only one bower left, and an heavy ſheet-anchor, but without any cable of ſufficient ſtrength to bring the latter to the bows.

On the 20th, as they were heaving up the anchor, in order to get an offing, an heavy ſquall appearing to be brewing from the weſtward, the king, accompanied by Tiaana and ſeveral chiefs, came on board; but the former, when he found that we ſhot out from the bay, thought it time to depart, and accordingly left the ſhip, attended by upwards of 100 canoes.

Upon getting an offing they hove-to, and the weather becoming clear, Tiaana's treaſures were ordered to be landed. Tiaana, after entreating Capt. Douglas again and again to bring his family from Attoui to Owhyhee, took a moſt affectionate leave of him and the whole crew, who had ſo long been his conſtant companions and friends, and who were equally concerned at this parting. As Tiaana left the ſhip, accompanied by a numerous train of his relations in their reſpective canoes, Capt. Douglas ordered a ſalute of ſeven guns, as a mark of eſteem to that reſpectable chief, and immediately made ſail to the N. W.

The greateſt indignity which can be offered to any of theſe natives, and which is occaſionally practiſed by the great againſt the inferior, is to ſtrike or kick them. One day the king being on board the Iphigenia while Captain Douglas was ſhaving, his majeſty was requeſted by his attendants to undergo the ſame operation; but this not being agreeable to the king's diſpoſition, he took the requeſt in dudgeon, and thought proper to kick them all one after the other, not only without remorſe, but even without mercy.

On the 21ſt they made for Mowee, and ſteering for the weſt point of the iſland, came to anchor in the evening, in five fathoms and a half, over a bottom of ſand and ſhells.

CHAPTER IX.

Proceedings of the Iphigenia—Natives attempt to cut her Cable—Captain ſends a Preſent to the King—A Viſit from the King—Preſents—Another Viſit—Anchors and Cables ſtolen—Reſtored through Menaces—Joined by the North Weſt America—Employments—Iſland of Attoui ſeen—Anchor in Wymoa Bay—Behaviour of the King and Natives—Captain informed of their dangerous Deſigns—Conſequent Threats—They run over to Woahoo—Anchorage—They make Owhyhee—Viſited by Tiaana—Political Situation of the Country unfolded—A Requeſt of Tiaana's—Complied with—Fire-arms and Ammunition preſented to the King and Tiaana—A Quarrel among the Captain's Men—Obſtinacy of Jones—Diſappointed in making Yam Bay—A Conſpiracy—Diſcovery—Bird Iſland—Arrival at Nootka Sound—Conduct of the Spaniſh Commander—Iphigenia ſeized, &c.—Her Departure—Proceeds to the Northward—Viſited by Natives—Anchorage—Various Accounts—A Conſpiracy among the Natives—Diſcovered by the Women—Cox Channel paſſed—Trade carried on—Return to the Sandwich Iſlands—A Deſign formed againſt the Engliſh by the King, &c. of Owhyhee—Their Eſcape—Curſory Remarks—Proceed to China—Arrive off Macao—Concluſion.

WHILE, at anchor off the Iſland of Mowee the natives attempted to cut the Iphigenia's cable, for which one of them was ſeverely corrected. After having ſpent ſeveral days in beating about for a good anchoring-place, they worked round the S. E. end of the Iſland of Woahoo, and on the 30th in the evening were cloſe in with a large bay. The next day, on account of a heavy ſea, they were obliged to make ſail, and puſh out from the land. Afterwards they tacked, and ſtood in, for the purpoſe of finding good anchorage; the jolly-boat was diſpatched to ſound a diſtant bay, and having given the ſignal for anchorage, the Iphigenia ran in, and on the 1ſt of January 1789 anchored in eleven fathoms.

The captain now ſent a preſent to Titeeree, the king, and an invitation to ſee him. The king paid the Iphigenia a viſit in the afternoon. He was ſaluted on his arrival with five guns, and another preſent given him. The hogs, &c. having been tabooed, his majeſty now promiſed that the taboo ſhould be taken off, and that they ſhould be immediately ſupplied with what they wanted.

On the 2d the king repeated his viſit, and brought a very handſome preſent of hogs, fiſh, a turtle, taro-root, potatoes, &c. he returned on ſhore in the afternoon. Some ſhort time after his departure Captain Douglas followed him in the jolly-boat. The king received him very kindly, and took him round the village to ſhew him every curioſity. On the captain's taking leave of the king he was promiſed another royal viſit the next day. Accordingly on the 3d the king came again on board the Iphigenia, and brought another turtle, ſome hogs, &c. but notwithſtanding he behaved with the greateſt kindneſs and good-nature, he contrived, even in the midſt of a violent gale of wind, to heave up, and get on ſhore two anchors, with their cables. As this was a loſs of the utmoſt conſequence, and, ſituated as they were, would have prevented their future progreſs, it became abſolutely neceſſary to be very ſerious in their endeavours to recover them. The king did not attempt to hide the theft; and the people whom Captain Douglas ſent the next day to him to demand the reſtoration of the anchors and cables, ſaw them lying in his houſe; indeed they ſeem to have been taken with no other view than to compel Captain Douglas to leave ſome of his armourers at Woahoo, as the condition of their being reſtored. However, the anchors, &c. were regained, on preſenting the king with a piſtol, a muſquet, and a ſmall quantity of ammunition; accompanied alſo with ſome very neceſſary menaces, that if he did not reſtore the articles he had taken, he would immediately burn his town, and deſtroy the inhabitants.

The North Weſt America, not being able to keep up with the Iphigenia, had been for ſeveral days beating off the W. point of the iſland till the 10th, when ſhe joined her conſort.

From this to the 25th they were employed in laying in proviſions, alſo wooding, watering, &c. In the afternoon the two veſſels got under way, and ſtood out of the bay.

On the 26th they ſaw the Iſland of Attoui, bearing W. by N. half N. They had a ſtrong current againſt them, with a weſterly wind during night.

On the 29th they anchored in Wymoa Bay in twenty-three fathoms, over a muddy bottom.

Upon the appearance of the Iphigenia and North Weſt America, Taheo, the king, and all the chiefs, had gone to a conſiderable diſtance up in the country, dreading the effects of Tiaana's anger, who, they had been informed, was on board one of the veſſels, and had tabooed every thing on ſhore; but as it was underſtood that the chief, whoſe vengeance was ſo much dreaded, had been left at Owhyhee, meſſengers were immediately ſent after Taheo, who, in conſequence of this information, returned in about three days to Wymoa; and on his arrival, ſeveral canoes were ſent off with hogs, potatoes, and yams, for which a moſt exorbitant price was demanded. A couple of hatchets, or eighteen inches of bar iron, was expected even for an hog but of a middle ſize. This exorbitant diſpoſition aroſe principally from the ſuggeſtions of a boy, whoſe name was Samuel Hitchcock, who had run away from Captain Colnett, and was become a great favourite with Taheo himſelf; indeed, ſo great was his influence with the king, that one of the natives having ſtolen from him a ſmall piece of cloth which he wore round his middle. Taheo ordered the culprit to be purſued to the mountains, whither he had fled, and when the wretched creature was taken, both his eyes were torn from their ſockets, a pahoo was then driven through his heart, and his fleſh ſtripped from the bones, as a bait for ſharks.

Notwithſtanding Taheo returned to Wymoa, he ſtill retained apprehenſions as to his ſafety; nor would he accept of Captain Douglas's invitation to come on board the Iphigenia; but feigned, as an excuſe, that he had been ill uſed by the crew of a ſhip ſome time before. This alarm, indeed, in a ſhort time ſubſided, and he paid his occaſional viſits to the ſhip, and a friendly communication, at leaſt to all appearance, took place between the Engliſh and the inhabitants.

However the captain now received ſecret information that the king, and Abinui his miniſter, were forming dangerous deſigns againſt him and his people. He was particularly cautioned againſt a poiſonous root well known to the inhabitants of the Sandwich Iſlands, which, when ground to powder, might be eaſily ſcattered about the ſhip, or thrown upon their cloaths, without being obſerved, and whoſe power is of ſuch a deadly nature, that if the ſmalleſt quantity ſhould be inhaled by the mouth or noſtrils, the conſequence is immediate death. Captain Douglas, therefore, though he did not very much ſuſpect any murderous intention in Taheo, or the natives, thought it a prudent precaution, at all events, to make known his intention, if any attempt was made to poiſon any of the proviſions ſold to them, that not only his iſland, but every inhabitant therein ſhould be deſtroyed.

After they had laid in a quantity of hogs and roots (but which were by no means equal to their expectations, being inſufficient for their immediate neceſſities)

neceſſities) and had made proper repairs in their ſails, cordage, &c. &c. they determined to proceed to Oneeheow; and as Namitahaw, with ſix of his relations, and four women, expreſſed their wiſhes to accompany Tiaana's wife and child to Owhyhee, the captain took them all on board, in the expectation that they would be of great ſervice to him in procuring ſuch proviſions as he wanted, in the iſland which he now purpoſed to make.

On the 18th of February the Iphigenia and North Weſt America got under way; but as the wind continued weſterly the captain thought it moſt prudent to run over to Woahoo. As they became now ſo ſcanty in proviſions as to require a neceſſary ſupply, on the 21ſt they bore away for Woahoo, and anchored in the ſame place as before on the 23d.

The king now came on board, and ſome of the paſſengers having informed him of the price paid for proviſions at Attoui, he was diſpoſed to imitate the exorbitant demands of the neighbouring iſland; and no inconſiderable quantity of powder and ſhot, for thoſe were now become the favourite articles, was demanded for a ſingle hog; ſo that very peremptory methods were obliged to be employed in order to procure the neceſſary ſupplies. Indeed it was found that manaces had always the deſired effect.

On the 24th, having a favourable wind, the captain took this opportunity of making Owhyhee, where he hoped not only to meet with a greater quantity of proviſions, but alſo more reaſonable prices.

On the 2d of March, when they were about two leagues from ſhore, they were viſited by Tiaana, who came on board from a part of the iſland called Toee-Hye; when he had embraced his wife and child, he conducted the ſhip into a bay called by the natives Tiroway, where they anchored in ſixteen fathom of water, over a fine ſand. In the evening, by the provident care of Tiaana, they received a conſiderable quantity of refreſhments.

On the 3d the jolly-boat was ſent to ſound the bay, when good ground was found all acroſs it, from fourteen to twenty-two fathoms of water, over a fine brown ſand. The king having been on a fiſhing party did not arrive till four in the afternoon; he was accompanied by his queen and daughter, in two diſpatch boats, having quitted his heavy canoes and attendants. He appeared to be overjoyed at their return, expreſſed his hopes that Tiaana had paid them all proper attention in his abſence, and aſſured them that his power in the iſland, and all he himſelf poſſeſſed in it, was at their command. Indeed, the quantity of proviſion with which he cauſed them to be furniſhed, and his anxious endeavours to forward the wiſhes of Captain Douglas in every thing, proved, beyond a doubt the ſincerity of his profeſſions.

On the 4th Tiaana, Tome-homy-haw, and ſeveral other chiefs, came on board the Iphigenia, and ſoon after the whole company were diſmiſſed by the king, except Tiaana; who having thrown a feathered cloak over Captain Douglas, in the name of the ſovereign and himſelf, began to unfold the ſecrets of their political ſituation. Setting forth that Taheo, king of Attoui, and Titeeree, the ſovereign of Mowee, Ranai, Morotoi, and Woahoo, had entered into a compact with Terreemoweeree, the ſurviving ſon of Terreeoboo, who lived on the weather-ſide of the iſland, to diſpoſſeſs Tome-homy-haw of his rank and power, for no other reaſon but becauſe he had permitted Tiaana to fix his ſettlement at Owhyhee: that Taheo had been furniſhed by the Captains Portlock, Dixon, &c. with a quantity of arms and ammunition, on an expreſs condition that he would not afford any ſupplies whatever to Captain Meares and his aſſociates; for the truth of which information, he appealed to the reception which that gentleman had lately found on putting into the iſland of Attoui, where he could not obtain any refreſhments of any kind. The ſpeech, which was of conſiderable length, concluded with entreating Captain Douglas to leave two of his men behind him, till his return from America, together with a ſwivel-gun, his own fowling-piece, and whatever other arms and ammunition could be ſpared by him. The preparations which Captain Douglas had ſeen at the other iſlands, and the great demand he had experienced for powder, ſhot, and muſquets, induced him to give ſome credit to the ſcheme which Tiaana had juſt mentioned: he, therefore, complied with that part of the requeſt which related to the fire-arms, and immediately ordered the carpenter on ſhore, to form a ſtage on one of the largeſt double canoes, to receive the ſwivel: which being finiſhed, the next day was brought along-ſide the Iphigenia, when the gun was mounted; but it was with great difficulty that the king could prevail on his people to keep their paddles in their hands while he diſcharged the piece.

On the 6th early in the morning, the wind being from the ſouthward and eaſtward, a ſignal was made for the king to come on board, when they got under way, ſteering for the bay of Toee-Hye. His majeſty was accompanied by his queen, Tiaana, and other principal chiefs, while thoſe of an inferior rank attended the ſhip in a fleet of thirty canoes. At half paſt five in the afternoon, they anchored in ten fathoms of water, oppoſite the village of Toee-Hye. The king and his company went on ſhore in the evening.

On the 7th, the king ſent the captain a preſent of thirty hogs, a quantity of ſalt, cocoa-nuts, potatoes, and taro. As the trade-wind was now blowing freſh, Captain Douglas requeſted that he might, if poſſible, be favoured with immediate ſupplies, as he was in haſte to ſail for America. Tome-homy-haw, therefore, diſpatched meſſengers up the country, with orders for every one who had an hog to bring it immediately to the village, on pain of death: and at ten the next morning, he himſelf came off with a preſent of fifty hogs, ſome of which weighed fifteen ſtone. In the courſe of the day other neceſſary articles were ſent on board; particularly twelve geeſe. In the evening Captain Douglas, after preſenting ſome fire-arms and ammunition to the king and Tiaana, took his leave of them; and at midnight got under way.

On the 9th they proceeded to Woahoo, where having got a conſiderable quantity of wood, and mad ſome addition to the ſtock of taro and ſugar-cane, they continued their courſe to Attoui; and on the 12th in the evening, came to an anchor about two miles to the eaſtward of the anchoring-ground.

On the 13th early in the morning they got the boats out, and towed the ſhip into her former birth. Taheo and the other principal chiefs were gone to Punna, and Abinui was the only perſon of conſequence remaining at Wymoa, who ſent a preſent of an hog on board, but did not think proper to accompany it.

On the 14th the long-boat was ſent on ſhore for water, when the men on duty got to quarrelling with ſo much violence, as to draw their knives againſt each other; and when Mr. Viana attempted to part them, a ſeaman, of the name of Jones, threatened to knock him down. Captain Douglas ordered Jones to immediate puniſhment; to which, with the moſt horrid execrations, he refuſed to ſubmit, and run for the fore-top, in expectation of meeting with the blunderbuſſes which were generally kept there primed and loaded, in caſe of an attack from the natives, but was prevented from gaining his object by Captain Douglſs, who fired a piſtol over his head, and threatened him with a ſecond diſcharge if he proceeded another ſtep. As it was very evident that ſeveral of the ſhip's crew were diſpoſed to ſupport him, he was ordered either to deliver himſelf up to puniſhment, or inſtantly to leave the ſhip; which he did without the leaſt heſitation, and tranquillity was immediately reſtored.

Their watering being now completed, they got under way for Oneeheow, in order to obtain a ſupply of yams. But as they could not make Yam Bay, on account of contrary winds, they were forced to bear up for the other bay; and on the 15th they anchored in 13 fathoms of water.

Captain Douglas being now informed of a deſign agitated by ſeveral of the ſeamen to go off with the jolly-boat, gave orders to the officers to keep a ſtrict watch; nevertheleſs, during the night, the quarter-maſter and two of the ſailors had got on ſhore in ſome of the canoes that were along-ſide. They had formed a plan to get off with the boat, and at the ſame time to ſet fire to the ſhip; but being prevented in their diabolical enterpriſe, they had taken an opportunity to eſcape to the iſland: two of them, however, by the active zeal of honeſt Friday, the before mentioned native of Oneeheow, were ſhortly brought back to the ſhip; but the quarter-maſter, who was the ringleader in the miſchief, could not be brought off on account of the ſurf, and was therefore left behind: for ſuch was the ſituation of both veſſels, being in want of many neceſſary articles (the North Weſt America having alſo loſt her anchor) that though, according to Captain Meares's inſtructions, Capt. Douglas was to have proceeded to the northward, he was under the neceſſity of proceeding immediately to the coaſt of America, where he had every reaſon to hope he ſhould meet with a ſhip from China.

They had now procured a ſufficiency of yams for a month; accordingly, on the 18th, the veſſels proceeded together to the N. W. from N. N. E. On the 19th land was ſeen, which bore the form of a paddle: it was high at each end, and low in the middle. It is barren on N. E. and W. ſides: on the S. it is covered with verdure; and as it only ſeemed acceſſible to birds, was therefore called Bird iſland.

As the compaſſes flew about each way four or five points in a moment, it was impoſſible to ſteer the veſſel for three days together. During this voyage they were likewiſe upon ſhort allowance.

On the 20th of April the Iphigenia ſtood in for the Sound. The next day one Aching, a ſeaman, died, in conſequence of a fall.

On the 24th a ſail was ſeen in the offing. Captain Douglas ſent out his long-boat, and found her to be the North Weſt America. She anchored about noon in the cove. The next day her ſails were unbent, and all hands employed to ſtop her leaks.

On the 26th ſhe was re-fitted out for trade, and diſpatched to the northward on the 29th, for the purpoſe of procuring commodities, and exploring the archipelago of St. Lazarus.

On the 6th of May a Spaniſh ſhip of war called the Princeſſa, commanded by Don Stephen Joſeph Martinez, mounting 26 guns, anchored in Nootka Sound; and on the 13th ſhe was joined by a Spaniſh ſnow of 16 guns, called the St. Carlos, loaded with cannon, &c. Capt. Douglas had been invited on board the Princeſſa, and brought the commodore a preſent. Theſe gentlemen, with Captain Kendrick, who arrived from Moweena, took a walk after dinner. After this the ſame party dined with Captain Kendrick, &c. The captain, his officers, the Spaniſh commodore, &c. dined alſo with Capt. Douglas.

Capt. Arrow, who commanded the Spaniſh ſnow St. Carlos, requeſted Captain Douglas's company to dinner on the day of his arrival; but the captain, being indiſpoſed, declined the invitation: he was, however, viſited by the commodore, Captains Kendrick and Arrow, &c. in the evening.

On the 14th the Spaniſh commodore ſent for Captain Douglas and Mr. Viana on board the Princeſſa. As ſoon as the captain was on board, he took out a paper, and told him, that it was the King of Spain's orders to take all the veſſels he met with on the coaſt of America, and that he was now his priſoner. The captain urged the diſtreſs they were in before they reached the harbour; the veſſel without cables; no pitch nor tar on board, to ſtop her leaks; no bread on board, nor any thing to live on but ſalt pork; that if he had ſteered for any port in South America, the Spaniards would not have ſeized his veſſel, but ſupplied him with the neceſſaries he was in want of, agreeable to the laws of nations; to take him a priſoner in a foreign port, that the King of Spain had never laid claim to, was a piece of injuſtice that no nation had ever attempted before: but that, ſooner than be detained as a priſoner, (although the veſſel had like to have foundered before they got into the harbour) if he would give him permiſſion, he would inſtantly leave the port. This was denied. Forty or fifty men, with ſome officers, went on board, hoiſted the Spaniſh colours, and took poſſeſſion of the Iphigenia. The keys of the captain's cheſt were demanded; his charts, journals, papers, and in ſhort every thing that was in the veſſel they took poſſeſſion of: he was not ſo much as allowed to go on board. He was told that his papers were bad; that they mentioned he was to take all Engliſh, Ruſſian and Spaniſh veſſels that were of inferior force to the Iphigenia, and ſend or carry their crews to Macao, there to be tried for their lives as pirates. The captain told him they had not interpreted the papers right; that though he did not underſtand Portugueſe, he had ſeen a copy of them in Engliſh at Macao, which mentioned, if he was attacked by any of thoſe three nations, to defend himſelf, and if he had the ſuperiority to ſend the captain and crew to Macao, to anſwer for the inſult they offered. The padries and the clerk read the papers over, and ſaid they had interpreted the papers right.

On the 15th Captain Kendrick came down from Moweena: Captain Douglas having been informed that Capt. Kendrick was privy to his being taken priſoner, and that it was ſettled when the Spaniſh commodore was laſt at Moweena, when he came on board the Iphigenia he refuſed to ſee him. This being reported to the Spaniſh commodore, he was ordered, at ten o'clock at night, (although very unwell) to turn out, and carry his bed on board the Spaniſh ſnow, it both raining and blowing at the time. Here he remained for ſome time, without any body to ſpeak to: his ſervant, who was a Manilla-man, and ſpoke the language very well, was not permitted to come near him, for fear of his diſcovering ſome of their proceedings that was carrying on. In ſhort, they ſtole a number of things, and afterwards laid the blame on his ſervant. His people were divided between the two veſſels, and every method made uſe of to entice them to enter. The ſails were bent, and ſome new running rigging wove. A captain was appointed, and officers, to carry him to St. Blas. His officers were to be detained, and one half of his people on board the two Spaniſh ſhips, and he was requeſted to chooſe the quieteſt of his men to go along with him. A liſt of them he was deſired to give to the commodore, as they were to ſail in a few days. This he would not comply with, but told him he might ſend home if he thought proper; that the Iphigenia was not fit to go to ſea till ſhe was caulked, and her leaks ſtopped. This they immediately ſet about. After taking every thing out of her, copper, iron, trade of every kind, and all the Sandwich Iſland pork, they filled the after-hold with ſand ballaſt, that they had been at ſo much pains to get out. The ſchooner North Weſt America, and the Felice, being daily expected in, none of them were permitted to ſpeak to the natives, although he found an opportunity to ſpeak to Maquilla, and the other chiefs, as did Mr. Ingraham, chief officer of the Columbia. They requeſted them to have boats ready to go off to Captains Meares and Funter, and acquaint them not to come into Nootka. They inſtantly ſhifted their village about four miles to the northward, ſo that Captain Douglas was in great hopes both Captains Meares and Funter would have intelligence of his being captured. One of his people on board the Iphigenia, the ſervant, was bargaining with the natives for ſome fiſh they had in their boat; the Spaniards, not underſtanding what was ſaid, ordered him on board the commodore's ſhip, and put him into the ſtocks, where he was ſtrictly examined, and threatened ſeverely, if he did not tell whether he had requeſted the natives to go and caution Captains Meares and Funter not to come into Nootka. When they found he had not mentioned any thing about the other veſſels, they wanted to know if the natives had not told him they had ſeen a veſſel in the offing: he anſwered they had not. He was after this ſet at liberty, but ordered never to converſe with the Indians, nor ſpeak to them in future. Captain Douglas afterwards had a conference with Captain Kendrick; he denied being acceſſary to his being taken; that the Spaniſh commodore had mentioned to him he would take Capt. Meares priſoner as ſoon as he arrived in the harbour; that he had ſaid every thing, and made uſe of all his intereſt to prevent the buſineſs.

On the 22d the irons arrived from Moweena, which were made by Captain Kendrick's armourer. They were now to proceed inſtantly to St. Blas, and Captain Douglas was once more requeſted to chooſe one half of his men, as the other half was to remain with his officers. Finding not one of them would enter, or deſert him, he declined giving the preference to any. Before they ſailed, he requeſted his own private papers might be delivered up, likewiſe a copy of his ſhip papers, which was promiſed him. The interpreter, when he came to that part which mentions his defending himſelf in caſe he was attacked, and, if he had the ſuperiority, to carry the aggreſſors to Macao to be tried for the inſult, mentioned to the commodore, in his preſence, that he thought the papers very good. Capt. Douglas told him, if that was the only cauſe he had to alledge againſt him, it would not be difficult for him to caſt him in any court of juſtice in Europe. He had now got every thing out of her that he took a liking to; and what things he had belonging to himſelf he robbed him of in as gentle a manner as he poſſibly could, by letting him know he muſt have his gold watch, his ſectant, ſtove, charts, &c. &c. He now propoſed to return the veſſel, and ſupply the captain with proviſions to carry him to the Sandwich Iſlands, if he would ſign a paper that was already prepared and preſented him. This he refuſed to comply with, till he had witneſſes, and knew the contents of the paper. Mr. How, ſupercargo of the Columbia, was requeſted to write a letter to Captain Kendrick and Mr. Ingraham, to come down from Moweena to be witneſſes to the papers he was to ſign.

On the 24th they arrived; the papers were interpreted to Capt. Douglas, which mentioned that the commodore arrived on ſuch a day, and found him in the bay of St. Lawrence, Nootka; that he was in diſtreſs, and in want of every thing; that he had not ſtopped his navigation, but ſupplied him with every neceſſary he was in want of to carry him to the Sandwich Iſlands. This paper Capt. Douglas refuſed ſigning, for two reaſons; one was, he had not only ſtopped him in his navigation, but had taken poſſeſſion of the ſhip, and every thing that belonged to her; another was, the Spaniards could lay no claim to a port they had never before ſeen, nor had any of the King of Spain's veſſels ever entered. The commodore ſaid, in the year 1775 he was ſecond officer on board a king's frigate that was on diſcovery, that ſaw the port, and named it the bay of St. Lawrence. Captain Douglas told him, having the chart of that voyage by him, he begged leave to differ in opinion from him. If he did not chuſe to ſign the papers, the commodore then ſaid, he would keep the veſſel, and ſend her along the coaſt as a privateer, to trade with the natives. The papers were inſtantly laid aſide, and Capt. Kendrick went up to Moweena. The ſame evening the commodore told him his orders were to take Captain Kendrick, if he ſhould fall in with him any where in thoſe ſeas; and mentioned it as a great ſecret, that he would take both him and the ſloop Waſhington, as ſoon as ſhe arrived in port.

On the 24th, and ſucceeding day, there was a violent ſtorm; the commodore requeſted Captain Douglas would go on board the Iphigenia with his officers and people, and ſecure her: having nothing on board to ſecure her with, he declined having any thing to do with her; the commodore was therefore under the neceſſity of ſending two eight-inch hawſers, and making her faſt to Hog Iſland. As he was not permitted to go on ſhore, he did not know much of what was carrying forward there; they were buſy in erecting forts on Hog Iſland, and, by what he learned, they were cutting down large trees to build houſes. The commodore acquainted him, that laſt year, when he was at Oonalaſhka, Mr. Iſmyloff told him, he expected three veſſels from Kamtſchatka, with a number of men; that on their arrival at Oonalaſhka, he was to take the command, and conduct them to Nootka Sound, where they were to form a ſettlement; that he expected to arrive at Nootka by the middle of July, or 1ſt of Aug. 1789; that two Ruſſian frigates were to ſail from Peterſburgh by the way of Cape Horn, and join them in Nootka Sound, with ſtores and other neceſſaries that they might want. On his arrival at St. Blas laſt year, he ſent an expreſs to the viceroy, who ordered him to ſail immediately for Nootka, and erect forts to keep the Ruſſians out. He likewiſe acquainted him, that in the year 1786 two Engliſh veſſels were caſt away, one was drove aſhore at her anchors on the iſland Maidenoi Oſtroff; that all the hands periſhed, except three men that happened to be on ſhore; they were ſent overland to Peterſburgh. The officers of the other veſſel being on ſhore, they put to ſea, and as there was no perſon on board that could navigate the veſſel, ſhe was never afterwards ſeen or heard of. As they now had got poſſeſſion of Capt. Douglas's charts and journals, the Spaniſh commodore intended to ſend the St. Carlos, Capt. Arrow, to the northward, as ſoon as they could get her bottom cleaned and her ſides caulked. Capt. Kendrick was likewiſe ready for ſea, and he was going to puſh to the northward. Captain Douglas's people were after him every hour in the day, requeſting that he would ſign the papers, that they might get on board their own veſſel. Although the commodore had promiſed to ſupply him with what he thought would be neceſſary to carry him to the Sandwich Iſlands, and made this promiſe before Mr. How and Mr. Ingraham, ſtill there was no dependance to be put on his word; however, on the 26th this paper was once more produced, and Capt. Douglas was under the neceſſity of ſigning it.

On the 26th Capt. Douglas carried his people on board, and took poſſeſſion of the Iphigenia: he was not above half an hour on board, when a meſſage came that he was wanted on board the Princeſſa. When he went on board, he was told by Don Joſeph Stephen Martinez (in the preſence of Mr. Ingraham) that, although he had given him back the Iphigenia, he would not permit him to ſail till the arrival of the ſchooner North Weſt America, and that he muſt ſell her to him for the price that Capt. Kendrick and his officers ſhould ſet on her. The captain told him the ſchooner did not belong to him; that he had no power to ſell her, and that he might act as he thought proper on the occaſion. In the afternoon the Spaniards left the ſhip, each carrying off what he could lay his hands on.

Captain Douglas was ſtill detained from proceeding to ſea, until the arrival of the North Weſt America; it being inſiſted upon that he ſhould diſpoſe of her for 400 dollars, this being the price which one of the American captains had ſet upon her. After much ſolicitation, he obtained a ſcanty ſupply of ſtores and proviſions; for which it was demanded he ſhould give bills on his owners. The prices far exceeded either the quality or quantity of the articles.

As the North Weſt America did not return ſo ſoon as was expected, Don Martinez inſiſted that Captain Douglas ſhould order it to be delivered to him for the uſe of his Catholic Majeſty; and as the captain had not liberty to depart till he acquieſced, he wrote a letter of an evaſive nature, and left it for Captain Funter, which the commodore, being ignorant of the Engliſh language, was ſatisfied with.

The Iphigenia being at laſt free, on the 3d of June quitted Friendly Cove, and continued her courſe to the northward, with the wind at S. E. On the 5th it was very foggy weather; which cleared away on the 6th. They now ſaw a ſmall barren iſland, which they loſt ſight of in the afternoon, when they were ſurrounded with a number of ſmall iſlets and rocks; upon which they bore up, to look out for ſome place of ſhelter before night. They paſſed between a low iſland and the main land; being becalmed and ſet down by the current to a ſmall iſland, where there were no ſoundings with 80 fathoms, the boats were hoiſted out, and the veſſel towed clear of the iſland into 26 fathoms, when they anchored over a muddy bottom.

On the 7th a ledge of rocks was ſeen above water, (it being now low water) within leſs than a cable's length of the veſſel: upon which they weighed anchor (a freſh breeze ſpringing up) and worked out of the ſound. They afterwards anchored in 55 fathoms at the entrance of the ſound. At noon they weighed again, and ſtood to the S. W. The weather was now clear and fair.

Early in the afternoon they perceived a canoe paddling towards the ſhip; upon which they ſhortened ſail, and purchaſed three dreſſes of ſea-otter ſkins. The Captain, underſtanding from theſe natives that there were more ſkins to be had at an adjoining village, accordingly wore and ſtood to the N. E. in company with the canoe. In the evening they anchored in 35 fathoms, oppoſite to a village which ſtands upon a high rock. Captain Douglas called this place Fort Pitt, as it has the appearance of a fort. In latitude 54 deg. 58 min. in long. 229 deg. 43 min. E.

The captain bought ſeveral ſea-otter ſkins of the natives here, and the next day when trade ceaſed he weighed anchor and ſtood to the weſtward. The captain called this large ſound Buccleugh's Sound; where there are ſeveral arms and branches, ſome of which take an eaſterly direction, and run as far as the eye could ſee; a few others took a northerly direction, and were in the captain's opinion joined with Port Meares and Sea-Otter Sound. A low iſland, which lies off Cape Farmer, was called Petri's Iſland; and an high mountain on the weſt ſide of the ſound was called Mount St. Lazaro. They made ſail at night, to clear a ſmall rocky iſland that lies off Cape Murray. They now ſteered right up the ſound, paſſing about eight iſlands which lay in the middle of it. In the afternoon an officer was ſent out in the long-boat, to ſound and diſcover a place of ſecurity: he returned in about three hours, and reported that there was a very fine cove about four miles higher up the ſound. In the evening they anchored in 15 fathom water, over a bottom of ſand and ſhells.

This harbour the captain thinks is by much the beſt on the coaſt of America. The entrance of it is about half a mile from ſhore to ſhore; off which an iſland is ſituated of about a mile in circumference, ſo that a veſſel may lay there ſecure from all winds. At the bottom of the Cove, which is about two miles from the entrance, there is a very fine beach, and there is alſo a ſmall iſland in the middle of it, round which the tide flows. It was called Haines's Cove. In latitude 54 deg. 57 min. N. and in long. 228 deg. 3 min. E.

From this to the 17th they were employed in purchaſing furs, fiſh, oil, &c. and making ſome neceſſary repairs to the ſhip and rigging.

On the 17th an altercation having taken place between the chiefs of the two villages, on different ſides of the cove, they made preparations for war; but the bloody conflict ſeemed to have been prevented by the women, who having quarrelled among themſelves for near an hour, reconciled thereby the hoſtile parties. One of theſe chiefs with his attending canoes, paddled round the Iphigenia, and ſaluted the captain with a pleaſing ſong: this was underſtood as a compliment to the captain for not having meddled in the buſineſs. The other party haſtened to ſhore, and were congratulated by the women and children, who teſtified no ſmall triumph on the occaſion.

On the 19th they weighed anchor, and made ſail out of the cove. The weather was now cloudy, but moderate: the wind from the S. W. At noon there was an appearance of an inlet, which bore S. S. W. and they ſtood acroſs a deep bay: their ſoundings were irregular. They called this M'Intyre's Bay; in latitude 53 deg. 58 min. N. in longitude 228 deg. 6 min. E.

On the 20th the long-boat was diſpatched to the head of the bay, to explore the place. The officer on his return reported, that toward the head of the bay a bar run acroſs, on which the long-boat got a-ground, but that there appeared a large ſound within it.

They were viſited by ſeveral canoes, of whom they purchaſed a ſtock of furs. The weather now became thick and hazy.

The long-boat was diſpatched again in the afternoon well armed and manned, in order to ſeek an anchorage, and examine the place. After this, the captain perceiving about a dozen canoes, which were followed by ſeveral others, he made ſail after the long-boat, which by this time had given a ſignal for anchorage. They anchored in 25 fathoms, about two miles diſtant from ſhore, and the ſame from a ſmall barren iſland, which was the reſidence of Blackow Coneehaw, a chief whom Captain Douglas had ſeen in his laſt voyage, and who now came with his attendants, and welcomed his arrival with a grand chorus of two hundred voices: this done, he exchanged names with the captain, which is a great compliment among theſe chiefs.

This night they were viſited by two canoes, theſe dropped down with the tide, as it was imagined, and lay on their paddles, with hopes of finding the Engliſh aſleep: finding themſelves, however, diſcovered, and being threatened with deſtruction if they did not keep off, they made for ſhore with great precipitation.

On the 21ſt they ſtood up the inlet, and anchored in 18 fathoms: this was called Cox's Channel. The long-boat was diſpatched to ſound: there were no ſoundings with 80 fathoms of line, but about the rocks there were from 20 to 30 fathoms.

Several female natives having been invited on board, they informed the captain this night, that there was a deſign formed againſt him by the ſame party whom they drove away the preceding night, and whoſe number was very conſiderable, to ſurpriſe them as ſoon as the lights were extinguiſhed, and make an attempt upon the veſſel; it was likewiſe their intention to cut off all their heads. The captain accordingly gave private directions to the gunner, who, when the lights were put out, perceived a canoe coming out from among the rocks, upon which he gave the alarm, by firing a gun, which was accompanied by ſeveral muſquets, which obliged the canoe to make haſtily for ſhore.

On the 22d they were viſited by the old chief Blackow Coneehaw, who was peculiarly ornamented on the occaſion, having four ſkins of the ermine hanging from each ear, and one from his noſe. Captain Douglas reported to him the proceedings of laſt night, upon which the chief aſſured him, that his motive for living at preſent along-ſide the veſſel, was for the ſake of giving her occaſional aſſiſtance: that the tribe which offered this violence inhabited the oppoſite ſhore, and it was by his command the women had appriſed the captain of their intentions: he moreover adviſed Captain Douglas to deſtroy theſe people if they repeated their malevolence. This old chief, who was one of great diſtinction and conſequence, behaved exceedingly friendly and polite to the captain.

On the 23d they ran acroſs the channel to a ſmall harbour, which is called Beal's Harbour, on the Tartanee ſide; here they anchored in 19 fathoms, about a cable's length from the ſhore.

From this to the 27th they were employed in purchaſing ſkins, and making preparations for their departure. They were obliged to cut up the hatchbars and chain-plates, as their ſtock of iron had been taken away by the Spaniſh Commodore.

On the 26th the chief went on ſhore to procure a freſh ſupply of proviſions for the captain. The next day he returned, and the captain gave orders to unmoor: they now ſteered through Cox's Channel, while ſeveral canoes kept them in tow: having by the rapidity of the tide got out, they hove-to. Several ſkins were now purchaſed of the natives for jackets, coats, trowſers, kettles, pots, frying-pans, baſons, &c. &c. as the iron which belonged to the chain-plate was now objected to, on account of its brittleneſs, which rendered it to them of no utility in manufacturing it. Indeed, the captain loſt a great quantity of furs, for the want of iron, and other neceſſary articles of trade.

The village of Tartanee has an exceeding beautiful and romantic appearance: there are evident ſigns of former cultivation. The tribe is alſo very numerous.

They now quitted Nootka Sound, and proceeded to the Sandwich Iſlands; during which, nothing occurred worthy of relation.

Having reached Owhyhee, a very dangerous deſign was formed by the chiefs of this place to deſtroy the captain and his crew, and plunder the veſſel. This villainous plan was happily prevented by the prudent and manly behaviour of the captain. The treacherous chiefs intended to have executed their evil purpoſe on board the veſſel, for which reaſon the ring-leaders had now introduced themſelves on board. Some had daggers in their hand, and one of them a piſtol; in ſhort, they were all ſecretly armed, and each had ſome vile part in this intended maſſacre allotted to him to perform. The king's elder brother and Aropee were the perſons fixed upon to deſtroy the captain, the king's younger brother to murder the boatſwain, and Pareeonow, one of the chiefs, to make away with Mr. Adamſon, who was the principal officer: the reſt were to ſtab each a particular ſailor, and throw all that remained alive into the ſea. The natives were now to lie ſtill in their canoes, till the chiefs on board gave them a ſignal for the attack. It was alſo intended when the veſſel had been pulled to pieces, to carry the remains into the mountains, and conceal them, for fear ſtrangers might be deterred from viſiting the iſland hereafter.

This diabolical deſign was revealed to the captain by Tiaana, with tears and lamentations, who, though he could not prevent their intentions, nobly refuſed to have any ſhare in the conſpiracy: however, he was ſo cloſely watched by the conſpirators, that it was with the greateſt difficulty he found an opportunity for the diſcovery.

The captain was ſoon convinced of their treachery, by their ſecretly conveying away the queen from the veſſel: however, he wiſely concealed his apprehenſions, nor at preſent betrayed the leaſt appearance of diſtruſt; knowing that if he gave an abrupt alarm, his people might drive theſe diſappointed aſſaſſins to deſpair, and perhaps bring on the evil which he wiſhed to avoid: he was therefore determined to adopt a more quiet method, which would be productive of leſs danger; accordingly, under ſome pretences, he got the piſtol from one of the chiefs, and the daggers one by one from the reſt, and having thus completely armed himſelf by diſarming his enemies, waited patiently the arrival of Tiaana, to conſult with him how he ſhould proceed. As ſoon as he arrived, the captain took him alone into his cabin, and bolting the door, inſiſted upon a full diſcovery of every thing. Tiaana, in the greateſt diſtreſs, fell at his feet, and laid the whole blame upon the king, recommending at the ſame time that the captain ſhould put him inſtantly to death: upon this the captain jumped on board with a loaded piſtol in each hand, and the chiefs finding themſelves not only detected, but baffled in their intentions, inſtantly hurried into their canoe, and left the veſſel with the greateſt expedition.

All intercourſe between the Engliſh and natives would certainly have terminated now, was it not abſolutely neceſſary to procure proviſions for the remainder of their voyage. Accordingly, an humble apology was accepted of from the king, who threw all the blame upon his chiefs, and an occaſional communication renewed with the natives, the Engliſh ſtill retaining their utmoſt care and prudence. A quantity of hogs, fruit, &c. were now laid in. The king humbly requeſted the captain's forgiveneſs before his departure; while Tiaana ſtill continued to lament the treachery of his countrymen. The captain readily ſhook hands with all, in hopes that as atonement for the paſt they might give their friendſhip and protection to whatever Britiſh veſſels may hereafter reach this iſland.

On the 28th they anchored in Wittee Bay, in the iſland of Woahoo. The rudder-chains were cut up, in order to purchaſe proviſions of ſeveral canoes by whom they were now viſited.

From this to the 4th of October nothing material occurred, when they anchored ſafe in the roads of Macao.

The North Weſt America, during her voyage amongſt the Charlotte Iſles, had procured about 215 excellent ſea-otter ſkins, and about the ſame number of inferior ones: ignorant of the tranſactions which had taken place between Capt. Douglas and the Spaniſh commodore during her abſence, ſhe returned to King George's Sound on the 9th of June, 1789: immediately on her appearance, Don Joſeph Stephen Martinez ſent out ſeveral boats manned and equipped for war, and conveyed the North Weſt America into the ſound, where they anchored her cloſe to the Spaniſh ſhips of war; they then took poſſeſſion of the ſchooner, her cargo, &c. All the ſea-otter ſkins were taken out of her, and put on board the Princeſs Royal, for their own uſe and advantage. Captain Funter and his men were made priſoners, and removed to the Spaniſh ſhips of war, where they were confined.

At laſt they were permitted by Don Martinez to return to China, in the American ſhip Columbia, where they arrived on the 2d of November 1789.

Such are the intereſting Voyages of Captains Meares, Tipping, Douglas, &c. which are herein fully and properly united, for the ſatisfaction of our NUMEROUS *Readers. We are happy, or to uſe a more ſignificant expreſſion,* PROUD *to think that the fruits of our labour, already exhibited, have acquired* UNIVERSAL *approbation. To retain that Accuracy and Attention which have ſo ſtrongly recommended our Collection will be the greateſt mark of Gratitude which we can ſhew As we have, therefore, began, ſo we mean to continue. Our Readers ſhall next be preſented with a* NEW *tranſlation of Saugnier and Briſſon's voyages to the coaſt of America; which we preſume will be found equally intereſting, entertaining and correct as any of the preceding narratives.*

NEW, COMPLETE, AND GENUINE

HISTORIES OF
Voyages to the COAST of AFRICA,

Undertaken and Performed in 1783, 1784, 1785, and 1786,

By Meſſrs. ***SAUGNIER*** *and* ***BRISSON,***

IN THE

DEUX AMIES, St. FRANCOIS de SALES, GUSTAVUS ADOLPHUS, FURET, St. CATHERINE, &c.

UNDER THE COMMAND OF

Captains CARSIN, SENECAL, MARE, DUBUISON, LE TURC, &c.

With Full and Circumſtantial ACCOUNTS of their SHIPWRECK, Subſequent SLAVERY, Various DISTRESSES, &c.

Including ſome Intereſting DETAILS of the MANNERS of the ARABS of the DESERT, the EMPIRE of MOROCCO, &c. &c.

Being an Entire New HISTORY of the ADVENTURES and HAZARDS of *SAUGNIER,* &c. with an Impartial ACCOUNT of the SLAVE TRADE as carried on at SENEGAL and GALAM, Fully and Accurately Tranſlated from the FRENCH, by W. H. PORTLOCK, Eſq.

Which, with the ſeveral other VOYAGES and TRAVELS to be included in this Collection, will be Embelliſhed with a Variety of Elegant COPPER-PLATES, Drawn upon the Spots, and Engraved by Eminent Artiſts.

INTRODUCTION.

THE hero of the Voyage of our firſt book (Saugnier) after completing his ſtudies, and having no turn for the eccleſiaſtical profeſſion, for which he was deſigned, reſolved on ſeizing the firſt opportunity that offered to indulge his juvenile thirſt for fame. He received a tolerable education; but from the narrowneſs of his circumſtances it was a matter of doubt what line of life he ſhould purſue. His parents were then endeavouring to ſettle one of his brothers, who bought a grocer's ſtock in trade at a very reaſonable rate. M. Saugnier ſtaid with him on condition of paying his board, worked hard, and after a year's apprenticeſhip he was capable of earning wages at other ſhops in Paris, and in this way he paſſed ſeven years of his life with different grocers. Becoming weary at laſt of this dull life, and not being anxious to enter the church, he ſtill retained an ardent inclination of trying his fortune in the colonies.

Two of his countrymen having projected a plan of ſettling at Senegal, M. Saugnier was very deſirous to join in their ſcheme, but then he wanted money; and as he well knew his parents would never indulge his romantic intentions, he pretended to them that he was about entering into treaty with a grocer's ſtock in trade. This having met their approbation, they advanced what money was ſuppoſed to be neceſſary at firſt, and this was all, indeed, he could obtain.

At Nantz the Marquis de Biccaria (of a Swiſs family) ſecond captain of the African battalion, was waiting for the Catherine, a veſſel belonging to M. Aubry de la Foſſe, the head of a commercial houſe in Senegal. The officer made a verbal agreement with M. Aubry, for M. Saugnier's and his companions paſſage, at 300 livres each. Accordingly, when the veſſel was ready, they ſet off; but as ſoon as they arrived at Nantz, M. Aubry underſtanding that it was their intention to ſettle at Senegal, became conſequently alarmed at a competition in the colony, which might be prejudicial to the intereſts of his own houſe; he therefore demanded 1000 livres for the paſſage of each, without even allowing them any baggage but their trunks. M. Saugnier and his friends objected to theſe unexpected conditions, and were reſolved to wait a more favourable opportunity. After delaying a fortnight at Nantz, they heard that there were veſſels frequently fitted out at Bourdeaux for Senegal; where they accordingly repaired, travelling on foot behind their baggage. At Rochelle they put their things on board a Bourdeaux hoy, and proceeded on their journey. When they arrived at Bourdeaux, they began to be very uneaſy about their clothes, &c. as they had not the precaution to inſure their effects; however in three weeks their baggage arrived ſafe, which afforded no little ſatisfaction, as by this time their money was nearly expended, and they had not a change of clothes.

Count de Repentigny, brigadier of the king's armies, formerly colonel of the regiment, and afterwards governor of the French poſſeſſions in Africa, procured a paſſage immediately for M. Saugnier's two friends, on board the Bayonnoiſe, while M. Saugnier was on the point of returning home in deſpair; however the Chevalier de Freſnel, a gentleman of Picardy, having received orders to remain in France, M. Saugnier obtained his vacant place on board the Deux Amies, a veſſel Dutch-built, of about 300 tons burthen, and commanded by Capt. Carſin.

BOOK I.

CHAPTER I.

M. Saugnier embarks on board the Deux Amies—Violent Storms—Care of the Veſſel ſubmitted to the Lieutenant—His Imprudence—Captain alarmed—Evil remedied—A terrible Shock—Boatſwain's Agility—Mate's Intrepidity—Account of the People where they are wrecked—Their Cruelty to the Mate—The Captain's Reſolves—Barge overſet—Long-boat loſt—Intrepidity of the Cooper—Captain becomes deſperate—M. Bardon's Reſolution—The Captain attempts his own Life—Bardon drowned—M. Saugnier, and others, ſwim to Shore—Behaviour of the Moors—Sufferings of M. Saugnier.

M. Saugnier embarked on board the Deux Amies the 19th of December, 1783: they were ten days in the river, detained by contrary winds. They ſailed in company with the Bayonnoiſe; but towards evening loſt ſight of her. They met with violent ſtorms on their reaching Cape Finiſterre, and were conſequently obliged to lay-to for five days. They now intended to put into the neareſt port, but as the wind abated they proceeded again to ſea.

On the 7th of January, 1784, as the wind and weather were now very favourable, the captain perceiving no danger, and exceedingly fatigued with the hardſhips of the preceding days, ſubmitted the care of his veſſel to his lieutenant, an inexperienced youth, while he retired to his cabin to repoſe. This young man, intoxicated with the idea of commanding a watch, let the helmſman ſteer as he pleaſed. The veſſel ſoon felt the ill conſequence of this negligence, and the captain, arouſed by a ſhock which he received, inſtantaneouſly ran upon deck, and remedied the miſchief with wonderful preſence of mind. Every thing being now ſafe, and the weather ſtill fine, the captain, after giving his lieutenant ſome inſtructions, ſubmitted the veſſel to his care again.

On the 14th the mate, taking the lieutenant's watch, ſaw land about three leagues diſtant, for which they were running with the wind abaft. They took the lofty mountains for Mogadore, where there are none at all: however, they ſoon diſcovered that they were thoſe of Wel de Non.

In conſequence of the lieutenant's imprudence, the crew began to murmur, and ſeveral ſailors declared the veſſel was in imminent danger, which proved to be the caſe on the 17th of January, at four o'clock in the morning, juſt after the lieutenant's watch had been relieved, without any one's having ſeen the land.

All the people in the cabins haſtened on deck, on account of the terrible ſhock occaſioned by their ſtriking on the ſand-bank, but nothing could be diſtinguiſhed; horrible cries were heard on every ſide, and the ſailors ran about the deck, not knowing what they were doing. One laid hold of a hen-coop, and another of the rigging, while the ſea broke entirely over them; the darkneſs of the night, the fury of the waves, the officers' ignorance of the place where they had run the ſhip a-ground, and death before their eyes, deprived them of all recollection, and drove them to deſpair.

The ſhip, being Dutch built, made very little water at firſt: about half after five, being much beat by the breakers, which followed one another inceſſantly, ſhe made a great deal, and the danger appeared more urgent. The boatſwain perceiving that ſhe continued upright, and wiſhing to keep her in that poſition, cut away the maſts, and laboured to lighten the veſſel, that ſhe might drive nearer and nearer to the ſhore.

The captain now put a ſtop to all buſineſs, that they might come to ſome kind of reſolution in theſe embarraſſed circumſtances. They knew not where they were. Some aſſerted that they were aſhore on one of the Canary Iſlands, and others on the coaſt of Africa. Being recovered, however, from their firſt fright, their whole attention was turned to the ſafeſt means of reaching the land, be it wherever it was.

They were about a quarter of a league from it, nor could they diſtinguiſh any thing on the ſhore. M. Decham, the maſter's mate, about 19 years of age, of a bold and intrepid diſpoſition, now tied the deep ſea-line round his waiſt, that it might ſerve him to tow a ſomewhat thicker rope aſhore, that would have been a great aſſiſtance to the crew in caſe of the ſhip's going to pieces, and bravely leaped into the ſea.

The rocks, among which he was obliged to ſwim, obliged him to let go the line; ſo that his courage was unavailing. Overcome with fatigue and cold, he ſheltered himſelf from the wind in a caſk that was now carried to the beach by the ſea. As ſoon as he entered it, they ſaw an animal running along the ſea-ſide, which thoſe in the ſhip ſuppoſed a tiger; it was a dog belonging to ſome Moors, who ſoon after made their appearance.

Thoſe who occupy the country where they were wrecked are called Mongcarts, governed by chiefs of hordes, but who acknowledge no ſovereign but the Emperor of Morocco, to whom however they pay no tribute, and whoſe very laws they do not obſerve. Theſe people are miſerably poor, deſtitute of every thing, and live only upon what they can find or ſteal. The earth they inhabit being inſufficient to ſupply their wants, they eagerly ſeize every thing that ſeems likely to ſatisfy them. They came running down in crowds to the ſea-ſide, and made a moſt hideous noiſe. Upon which the wretched Decham left his caſk, and throwing himſelf into the ſea, attempted to ſwim back to the ſhip; but he was ſoon ſtopped by the Moors, who purſued him. They forced him back to the beach, ſtripped him of his ſhirt, and led him to the top of the hill. The crew now ſtanding on the fore part of the ſhip, ſtretched out their arms towards them, and implored their mercy; but their weak voices did not reach them, nor did they take notice of their geſtures. They ſaw them with their glaſſes make a hole in the ſand, wherein they put the wretched Decham, and covered him.

He was guarded by two men, while the others returned to the beach; part of them leaped into the ſea, and ſwam towards the veſſel; the reſt were employed in picking up the fragments of the caſks which the ſailors had thrown overboard. They then put fire to them, ran to fetch Decham, and carried him between four, and expoſed him to the flames. They now handed him about from one to another, ſometimes ſuſpending him by the feet, and at other times holding him tranſverſely. Being joined by another party, they began to dance round the fire, and make a horrid noiſe.

The ſailors, not being able to conceive their reaſons for thus tantalizing their countryman, ſuppoſed they were about killing in order to eat him. Indeed their imagination worked ſo ſtrong, that ſome declared they ſaw them tearing him to pieces, and concluding them to be cannibals, they became deaf to all orders and advice, and declared that if they came on board they would fight while they had life. Thus, impreſſed with fear and the workings of fancy, they were for ſome time before they could be prevailed upon to lighten their veſſel, and put their arms in order. As ſoon, however, as they began, the captain ordered them to leave off, with view of repairing well armed in parties to the beach. For this purpoſe the barge was hoiſted out, and four ſailors, who were reſolved to make a deſperate defence, went into her, being provided with two ſwivels loaded with cartridge ſhot. However, this project failed, by the overſetting of the barge. The men were ſaved by ropes, which were thrown out. They now reſolved upon uſing the long-boat, and ſuggeſted the idea of laying a deck over her; the Captain ſuppoſing by theſe means to reach the Canary Iſlands, while others thought it would be eaſier to make Senegal; which opinion at laſt prevailed. After all their ſtruggling, they were only able to nail on a few planks, and having now hoiſted her out, they moored her along-ſide with ſtout ropes, for fear of its overſetting like the barge. Their proviſions, arms, money, &c. were now put on board. They embarked, but were ſoon obliged to get out again, the ſea ran ſo very high, and one of the ropes by which ſhe was moored breaking, ſhe daſhed with great violence againſt the ſhip's ſide: however ſhe was moored again, but became ſo full of leaks that it was impoſſible to hoiſt her in: they were therefore obliged to leave her to the mercy of the waves. The Moors perceiving her nearly upon the beach, ſeized and hauled her over the ſand, and having taken every thing out of her, ſet fire to her. The crew, ignorant of their cuſtoms and laws, looked upon this as the greateſt cruelty and indignity.

The veſſel made but little progreſs, and was ſtill ſuffering perceptibly: ſhe beat towards the middle; her deck was looſened, and every thing threatened a ſpeedy deſtruction. What ſtill increaſed the crew's conſternation, was the little proſpect there appeared of an aſylum upon ſhore, even if they were ſo fortunate as to reach it.

The cooper, who was a man of amazing intrepidity, and an excellent ſwimmer, declaring that ſuſpence was to him more terrible than death itſelf, propoſed ſwimming aſhore, and told his friends that he would make them a ſignal if the Moors did not kill him. His ſurpriſing reſolution aſtoniſhed all, and he leaped without any heſitation into the ſea. About a dozen Moors went to meet him, and having aſſiſted him in reaching the beach, there ſtripped him of his ſhirt, and expoſed him as they had Decham to a fire, while they danced round him, making a hideous noiſe. After this ceremony he was conveyed from the crew's ſight, who were ſtill in a ſtate of ignorance whether he was killed or not.

Captain Carſin, who had hitherto ſupported his fate with becoming fortitude, now loſt all his patience, and deſperately reſolved upon blowing up the veſſel; this however M. Bardon, ſecond lieutenant of the African battalion, oppoſed: this gentleman with a drawn ſword, ſeconded by the officers, threatened to deſtroy any man that would approach the magazine, where there were ſeveral thouſand weight of powder. Upon this the captain became cool, and begged forgiveneſs: the crew now retired to the fore part of the veſſel. Meſſrs. Saugnier, Follie, a cabin-boy, and a landſman ſtill watched the motions of the captain, who threw himſelf upon his bed, then roſe, came upon deck, and was ſo alarmed at the dances and fires of the Moors, that he returned to his bed, began to pray, and leaning down his head, diſcharged two piſtols in his mouth. At firſt he was thought dead, but the ſurgeon having dreſſed his wounds, perceived that he had miſſed the vital parts. The crew were, however, exceedingly diſcouraged by his lacerated countenance, and ſome propoſed tying a ſwivel round his waiſt, and throwing him into the ſea, leſt the Moors ſhould aſcribe his wounds to them. This cruel reſolve was however over-ruled.

The next morning at break of day, the mate aſſembled all hands on deck, and they were now employed in making a raft, intending to wait for the ebb-tide.

The Moors perceiving all quiet upon deck, about 11 o'clock ſwam to the veſſel with an intention of boarding her. The crew upon hearing their noiſe, threw out ropes to them and took them on board: they now paid no attention to anſwers or queſtions, but proceeded immediately to plunder. The crew finding themſelves diſappointed in obtaining aſſiſtance, and anxious to reach land, got the reſt into the water about two o'clock: ten only could find room therein, four of whom were waſhed off by the violence of the ſurf, and M. Bardon in conſequence thereof drowned. The Moors who leaped inſtantaneouſly overboard, preſerved two of the others, and the mate who was the fourth, returned to the veſſel. The others, among whom was the captain, landed ſafe, and were conducted by the Moors to a hill, where they had kindled a fire, and there ſtripped and left them. Thoſe that remained on board were now employed about another raft, which could only contain five perſons, four of whom reached the ſhore without any accident, the other was aſſiſted by a Moor.

Only ſix now remained in the wreck, among whom was M. Saugnier: there was no poſſibility of making another raft, ſo that it was ſuggeſted to get aſhore by the help of bundles, which were thrown into the ſea. Saugnier was the firſt who made the attempt, and his good ſucceſs encouraged the remainder to follow his example, which they did with equal ſafety.

They were all aſſembled on the hill round a great fire, where they were left by the Moors for half an hour. On their return, which was about half an hour after, they examined them according to cuſtom, and conducted them half a a league up the country. Here they divided, one party having returned towards the beach, while M. Saugnier and the reſt of his fellow-ſufferers were left with the other, who began to diſpute among themſelves, who ſhould be maſters of thoſe intended ſlaves.

They now ruſhed upon them with drawn daggers, while the helpleſs wretches, thinking they were about to deſtroy them, and anxious to procraſtinate their lives a little longer, took to flight. They were purſued by the Moors, who were ſtruggling one with the other to ſeize them. A bloody conflict enſued: ſeveral of the French were deſperately wounded. Two Moors, who had ſtopped M. Saugnier, furiouſly contended with each other, while one inſiſted that he was his ſlave; this provoking the other, he endeavoured to ſettle the diſpute by ſtabbing M. Saugnier, who parrying off the blow that was made at him, had two fingers hurt by the ſabre. His adverſary, ſeizing this opportunity, proved his claim by murdering this aſſaſſin.

M. Saugnier was now led by his new maſter to the place where his relations, wives, ſlaves, &c. were. They applied fire to his wound, which ſtopped the progreſs of the poiſon, and ſtanched the blood; alſo plants dipped in turtle oil, which effected a perfect cure.

As the Moors ſtill continued to diſpute among themſelves upon every trifling buſineſs, M. Saugnier every now and then ſuppoſed that they were ſacrificing his wretched fellow-ſufferers. Two of his countrymen he ſaw knocked down by his ſide; and while they were bringing faggots to renew the fire, and ſtones to ſupport it, he began to think that they were preparing torments: however their dreſſing his wound partly removed his apprehenſions. Still he was tormented by the women, who were dancing round him, expreſſing both joy and wonder. Out of curioſity, they plucked his hair. In the evening they gave him ſome milk to drink, which was very acceptable.

The Arabs of Laara were the only perſons preſent at the wreck, but notwithſtanding they were obliged to ſhare the ſpoils with the Moors of Biladulgarid, which is a well-armed warlike nation, known alſo by the name of Monſelemines. It was to an Arab of this nation that M. Saugnier was ſlave.

CHAP.

CHAPTER II.

M. Saugnier forms the Project of eſcaping—Effects it—Meets another Party of Moors—Their Behaviour to him—Is carried away by a Moor—Taken from that Moor by others—Their Intentions of ſelling him—Tedious travelling—Diſappointed in their Purpoſe—Obliged to return—Their Kindneſs and Humanity to M. Saugnier—Deſcription of the Country, Cuſtoms, &c.—M. Saugnier ſold—His Occupations—Sold again—His Sufferings, Anxiety, &c.—Sold again—Sets off for Cape Non—Termination of his Sufferings—No longer a Slave, but attended like a Maſter—Is allowed to ſee his Countrymen—Propoſals for his Liberty by the Engliſh and French Merchants—M. Saugnier, and five of his Countrymen redeemed—How his Countrymen were previouſly treated—Their mutual Congratulations—Further Adventures.

THE unfortunate ſlaves were the day after their captivity permitted by their maſters to aſſemble upon the beach. Thoſe who belonged to the Arabs of Zaara were treated with the greateſt kindneſs, and allowed either ſkins or ſome of the clothes which their maſters had plundered from the wreck to cover them. M. Saugnier, and the reſt who belonged to the Monſelemines, were all naked: this naturally led M. Saugnier to ſuppoſe that thoſe who belonged to the former tribe poſſeſſed a more comfortable ſituation; and underſtanding that theſe people were accuſtomed to ſee Europeans in the river of Senegal and at Portandie, he conceived hopes that if he belonged to them he might meet with an opportunity of being carried to Senegal.

Impreſſed with this idea, he began to form the project of eſcaping from the place where his maſter kept his wives and ſervants. As he was very little watched, about nine o'clock in the morning he made for the interior part of the country, though ignorant where he was going. Scarce had he travelled half a league, when he was met by a party of Moors: theſe men conducted him to their tents, which were full of camels and goats. They covered him with goat-ſkins ſewed together, and gave him milk to drink.

Though exceedingly fatigued, he paſſed two nights without ſleep. All day he was obliged to walk; at night they ſtopped to reſt themſelves.

One day, as ſoon as the ſun appeared, the camels were prepared. A Moor now obliged M. Saugnier to get up behind him, and having left all the reſt of the party behind by the ſea-ſide, he continued to travel in this way, without knowing what for or where he was going.

He arrived about the middle of the day at other tents, where he was permitted to reſt himſelf after the fatigue of the preceding days. Here he remained only two days, for three well-armed Arabs (who were naked) took him away by violence, and proceeded towards the ſouth. They croſſed ſeveral rivers, and after a tedious march of 16 days they ſtopped. On the firſt day the blood which iſſued from M. Saugnier's feet had marked the ground. Upon ſeeing this the Arabs drew out the thorns which were in them, and having ſcraped the ſoles of his feet with their daggers, plaiſtered them over with ſand and tar, by which means he was enabled to walk without any pain.

Theſe people intended to ſell M. Saugnier to the veſſels that come to Senegal to buy gum; but the war which then raged between the princes of thoſe cantons prevented the execution of their deſign. Three days they ſpent in a wood of gum trees. Finding it impoſſible to ſell him at Senegal, they returned by the ſame way they came, and after a journey of 30 days they arrived at their tent. During this laborious march, M. Saugnier's food was milk, mixed with camel's urine, and a little barley-meal or millet ſtirred up in brackiſh water.

There is very excellent land in the foreſt, which, if cultivated, would no doubt produce all the neceſſaries of life. They found an abundance of truffles, which M. Saugnier reliſhed very much; the Moors, in whoſe company he was, often procuring them for him. Being accuſtomed to live on milk, they contented themſelves with that of their camels, and chearfully denied themſelves thoſe roots on his account. Indeed M. Saugnier was uſed exceedingly well by his conductors; they treated him with humanity, and procured him whatever ſeemed to pleaſe him the moſt, whenever it was in their power.

M. Saugnier was ſo ſincerely attached to them, that it was not without regret he ſaw them ſet off the day after their arrival; nor did he ever ſee them again. During the journey, when they ſtopped in the evening, they went themſelves in queſt of wood for the night, and left him to take care of the camels and baggage: very often too, when they perceived he was much fatigued, they would ſtop two or three hours till he reſted.

The horde to which he belonged conſiſted of 52 tents, ſometimes united, ſometimes divided, according as the convenience of paſturage required. Theſe tents are made of a black and ſtout ſtuff, woven of goat's and camel's hair, and about 18 inches wide; they are ſewed together, and two croſs ſticks ſupport the tent. All their furniture conſiſts of ſome ſtraw ropes for their cattle, an earthen pot to warm their milk or boil their meat, a ladle, a mat, a knife, a pike, and a great ſtone, which ſerves them as a hammer to drive in the pins of the tent. Thus happy, though poor, they live in perfect tranquillity. The men keep their flocks, &c. the women ſpin, dreſs their victuals, &c. Both ſexes wear goat-ſkins alike.

The finery of the men conſiſts in the beauty of their arms, ſuch as ſabres, daggers, and muſkets, and in a ſtring of large white chryſtal; that of the women in necklaces of amber, coral, or glaſs beads of every kind, in gold or ſilver ear-rings, according to their wealth, &c.

M. Saugnier paſſed two days without being deſired to do any work; on the third he was ſent to fetch wood for the tent. For this purpoſe an old cord was given him, and a child accompanied him, to ſhew him which was the beſt for the purpoſe.

Notwithſtanding the whole country be covered with buſhes, they are ſo careful in preſerving them, that they never touch a green ſtick. M. Saugnier was frequently two whole hours ſeeking dead wood; and when his faggot was ſufficient for the day's conſumption he carried it to the tent, while his naked ſhoulders, lacerated by the burthen, uſed to be bloody all over.

Pleaſed with his punctuality and aſſiduity in furniſhing the neceſſary quantity of wood, he was next employed in making butter. For this purpoſe they put their milk in a goat's ſkin, ſuſpend it on three ſticks, and ſhake it for about two hours. Such was his buſineſs during his ſtay with theſe people.

An opportunity at laſt arrived of diſpoſing of M. Saugnier, when his maſter received a barrel of meal, and an iron bar about nine feet long, in exchange for his perſon.

Early the next day they ſet off, and walked for nine ſucceſſive days. It is the cuſtom of all the people of Africa to begin their journey at ſun-riſe, and not to ſtop till it is about to ſet. In the daytime they eat nothing but a ſmall wild fruit reſembling the jujube-tree, which is in great plenty.

As ſoon as each day's journey was over, M. Saugnier was obliged, like the negro ſlaves, to go and fetch wood, to keep them warm during the night, and to protect them from the ſerpents and wild beaſts that over-run the country. A little barley-meal, mixed up, as before, with brackiſh water, was now his only food.

Theſe people are all exceedingly kind and hoſpitable. When a ſtranger arrives, they greet him with the ſalutation of friendſhip, and often deny themſelves food, for the ſake of ſupplying him with refreſhments.

As ſoon as M. Saugnier had arrived among the Moors in rebellion againſt the Emperor of Morocco, he was ſold again. His new maſter gave him no reſt, ſending him the very next day to keep his camels, the care of the goats being generally entruſted to children. Thus abandoned to his own reflections, and totally ignorant of the fate of his fellow-ſufferers, he paſſed every day in the midſt of the mountains.

His long tedious journies left him without an idea of the country he was in, and the hope of his deliverance began to vaniſh. He ſaw no period to his misfortunes; they grew more and more intolerable; his ſtrength perceptibly diminiſhed, and every time he changed his maſter, he found it ſtill a change for the worſe.

Each evening, on his return to the tent, plenty of camel's milk was given him, but the unfrequency of his meals, and the poorneſs of this fare, would certainly never have ſufficed to keep up his ſtrength, if he had not, during the day, provided ſome truffles, and other wild roots, which neceſſity had made him acquainted with while on the road with his firſt maſters.

M. Saugnier was ſold again, his health being already impaired, and was conducted by his new maſter to his tent, where he did not remain long. Being very poor, he carried him to a neighbouring market, to endeavour to make ſome profit by his perſon. He there met with an Arab, who bought him for two young camels, and ſold him at the market the day after. He received money in exchange.

In Zaara trade is only carried on by barter. It was in this place that M. Saugnier ſaw money for the firſt time: the ſight of which revived his hopes, as he began to think he was not far from a civilized ſtate.

Every new maſter now treated him worſe than the laſt; while, by being thus handed over, he was approaching the Morocco dominions, where he would have had ſtill more to ſuffer, if he had been unfortunate enough to belong to any one but the Emperor.

When it was dark they ſet off, and took their way towards Cape Non. Four Arabs, who were at the market while the Moor was buying him, lay in wait for them when the night was coming on. They were only armed with their daggers, and as M. Saugnier's preſent maſter knew them, he had no diſtruſt of their intentions. Seeing one of them in the act of ſtabbing him, M. Saugnier cried out; his maſter avoided the blow, and ſhot his adverſary dead. The others immediately attacked him; M. Saugnier now ran to his aſſiſtance, and with the help of his ſtick, ſtretched one of them at his feet; he ſtabbed him inſtantly, while the two others fled. They took nothing but the daggers of the two that were killed, and continued their journey. This maſter inſtead of ſelling M. Saugnier, as was his intention, now turned him over to his brother, who was remarkably rich.

Here terminated his ſufferings. He was obeyed by the negro ſlaves; the women gave him every thing he could deſire; he had no longer any work to do; and if he went out with the cattle it was for his own pleaſure.

M. Saugnier began to have ſome knowledge of the Arabic, and was promiſed to be conducted to *Hali Laze*, the chief of Glimi, that he might be conveyed, as ſoon as poſſible, to the country ſubject to the dominion of the Emperor of Morocco. He remained eight days at his houſe without belonging to him; at length, however, he bought him for a hundred and fifty dollars, all in little pieces, of the value of ten *ſous*. As theſe pieces were fifteen hundred in number, for fear of any miſtake, M. Saugnier and his maſter counted them over for two days running.

The chief of Glimi had a houſe, which in that country might well paſs for a ſuperb palace. He had a great number of negroes, negreſſes, horſes, cows, camels, and almoſt every thing that is to be ſeen in their farm-houſes. He had been formerly at Paris, in the ſuit of an Embaſſador of Morocco; reaſons of diſcontent, and the ſtronger one of ſaving his head, had forced him to take the command of the Moors in rebellion againſt the Emperor, and he reſiſted the power of that prince by the force of arms.

This chief treated M. Saugnier well, exacted no labour from him, and gave him clothes: he was now ſheltered from the inclemency of the air, and had ſtraw given him, of which he made a bed. He had two meals a day: indeed he had food in abundance, and frequently ſhared his dinner either with a ſailor of Provence, who happened to be then at Glimi, or with M. Lanaſpeze, their mate, and ſon of the owner; for on the market-days M. Saugnier was allowed to have ſome of his countrymen to regale. He uſed to aſk the women for victuals, and was never refuſed. This treatment ſoon reſtored our hero to his wonted ſtrength and health.

Propoſals were now made for M. Saugnier's liberty, by the French and Engliſh merchants who were ſettled at Mogadore, as ſoon as they were informed of his misfortune by the different brokers who were diſperſed about the country for the ſake of commerce; and Bentahar, a Moor, who lodged at his maſter's, bought him for 180 dollars. M. Saugnier was witneſs to the bargain, and argued himſelf concerning the price of his ranſom; nor did the Moor buy him, but on the aſſurance M. Saugnier gave him that he would be paid by the French merchants, the moment he ſhould make himſelf known at Mogadore.

At the ſame time five of his companions were got together, namely, M. Follie, a native of Paris, and officer of adminiſtration of colonies, whom he purchaſed for 250 dollars. M. Decham, maſter's mate, a native of Bourdeaux, and the firſt who got aſhore, coſt him 95 dollars. The boatſwain and two ſailors were ſold for only 85 or 90 each.

From the moment M. Saugnier left the wreck till his arrival at Glimi, the principal city of Cape Non, he was ignorant of the fate of the reſt of the crew.

Their mate, M. Lanaſpeze, was in the ſame place, but left free from all conſtraint by his maſters. He was not bought, though it could not be aſcertained what motive could prevent Bentahar from entering into treaty for his ranſom. As ſoon as he heard of M. Saugnier's arrival he came to ſee him, and found him in the outward court-yard: he looked like a walking ſpectre. At firſt M. Saugnier did not recollect him, nor did he remember him; tanned by the ſun, wearing their hair and beards like the Moors, and dreſſed in their faſhion, there was nothing ſurpriſing in their being ſo much altered. In a few moments, however, they were in one another's arms. Their words died away upon their lips; but the tears that trickled down their cheeks expreſſed the warmth of their ſentiments. They paſſed the whole day together, and related their ſufferings to each other with ſatisfaction.

M. Saugnier underſtanding M. Follie was in the ſame town with them, ſet off immediately, accompanied by the mate and ſeveral Moors, and repaired to the place where he was detained. M. Follie belonged to a cruel Moor, who treated him with the greateſt barbarity; he ſlept upon the hard ground, and was denied the ſmalleſt liberty. Little accuſtomed to ſatigue, he was covered with ſores, the conſequence of the blows given him by the Moors, to force him to walk beyond his ſtrength.

There was in the ſame place a ſailor of Provence, belonging to their ſhip, who was claimed by no maſter; he lived ſometimes with one, ſometimes with another, nobody giving him the leaſt moleſtation. Bentahar was in hopes that he would ſet off with them, and thought he ſhould have him without a ranſom; but the very day of their departure he was removed up the country, without their knowing what became of him. He loſt his liberty by his own fault, in keeping for ever with the Moors. No doubt he found himſelf obliged to remain, at the very moment it would have been the moſt eaſy for him to obtain his liberty.

M. Saugnier learned from his fellow-ſlaves, that they had all been uneaſy as to his fate; that ſeveral perſons inſiſted they had ſeen him killed; that this general perſuaſion of the crew had induced them to acquaint the French conſul with his death; that they had as yet no information reſpecting thoſe who had followed their maſters to the ſouth of Africa; that as to themſelves, they had met with horrible treatment; that they had been forced by hard blows to unload the ſhip; that they had been obliged to grind corn, fetch wood, and attend the cattle; and that they were cruelly beat for the ſmalleſt fault, without even knowing they had done amiſs. The wounds with which they were covered but too well confirmed the truth of their recital.

While they congratulated M. Saugnier on having eſcaped ſuch rigorous treatment, they told him that the Moors, after fighting to know who ſhould be their maſters, had at length ſet fire to the wreck; that ſeveral Arabs had been killed by ſplinters from the ſhip, from whence they had not taken out the powder; that many of their people had been wounded; and that the captain, after having lived twelve days with no ſuſtenance but a little brandy, had been knocked on the head upon the beach. Perhaps the report of his fate was as ill-founded as that of M. Saugnier's, for M. Follie was the only one of all the crew who certified his death.

The city of Glimi was the firſt place where they met with Jews: they were very numerous there, as well as in all the towns between that place and St. Croix, almoſt all the trade that is carried on paſſing through their hands. The Mahometans of theſe cantons treat them like ſlaves. Cruel as was the Arab, M. Follie's maſter, and however determined in his enmity to the Chriſtians, he told that gentleman to ſuffer nothing from the Jews, who had gone his halves in the purchaſe.

When M. Follie lived with the Jew, M. Saugnier uſed to go and ſee him without any reſerve, accompanied, it is true, by Moors attached to the intereſts of his maſter; nor did the Jew ever dare to refuſe M. Follie leave to go out and walk with him. The Moors that accompanied him were ſurpriſed they ſhould aſk it, and gave him to underſtand that he might go out when he pleaſed, and that they would beat the Jew, if he dared to offer him the ſmalleſt affront.

The Jew of Glimi, whoſe name was Good Jacob, had received orders from Meſſ. Cabaner and Depra to aſſiſt theſe unfortunate people; the letter imported that he might ſpend 200 ounces of ſilver to ſupply their wants. They did not know that by the word ounce is underſtood in Barbary a little piece of money of about the value of ten *ſous*; and as the letter was written in French and Arabic, M. Saugnier perſuaded his maſter that 200 dollars were the ſum the Jew was ordered to ſpend on their account. He put a muſket-ball in one ſcale, and in the other ſmall pieces of money till they amounted to the ſame weight. Induced by this repreſentation, the Arabs obliged the Jew to dreſs them in the moſt elegant manner.

Their miſtake was of the greateſt uſe to them, and guarded them againſt the exceſſive cold on the ſummit of Mount Atlas, which they were obliged to croſs, and which is at all times covered with ſnow.

M. Saugnier's ſhare of the expence amounted to about 15 dollars and a half. M. Follie, M. Lanaſpeze, and himſelf, were the only three who had Mooriſh cloaks.

It being out of the power of M. Lanaſpeze to accompany M. Saugnier and his party; at the time of parting Lanaſpeze gave Saugnier nine Louis d'ors in gold, his watch-chain, and a ſeal, which he had fortunately concealed from his maſter's knowledge, by holding the little parcel in his hands when he was ſtripped, and then concealing it in the ſand. Afterwards, when permitted to put on an old pair of breeches, he put the parcel into his pocket, where he ſtill kept it.

CHAPTER III.

M. Saugnier and five of his Companions at liberty—They ſet off for Mogadore—Dread of being ſurpriſed—Go to the Houſe of ſome Jews—Roads very bad—Journey ſevere—They meet with an uninhabited Houſe—Ruins of a Town—Arrival at St. Croix—Meet a good Reception—Conducted to the Houſe of Meſſ. Cabanes and Depras—Deſcription of the City of Mogadore, St. Croix, &c.—Of the Governor of Mogadore—A remarkable Inſtance of Jealouſy—The Emperor in a Rage—Bentahar takes to flight—His Anger appeaſed—M. Saugnier, &c. reduced to Slavery again, but more tranquil than before—Orders to ſet off for Morocco—Arrival—Prior's contumely—Their Appearance before the Emperor—His Kindneſs—Gives them their Liberty—Remarks thereupon—Further Kindneſs of the Emperor—They ſet off, and paſs through Cities of Barbary—A ſtrange Puniſhment—Paſs the River of Lions—See ſeveral Places—Set off for Cadiz—Embark on board the St. Francois de Sales—Arrive at Oſtend—Set off for Dunkirk—Delay at Liſle—Arrive at St. Quintin.

M. SAUGNIER, and five of his companions, having been now redeemed, by the great care of Bentahar the Arab, they ſet off for Mogadore, with no little ſatisfaction. They proceeded as far as St. Croix, (which the Arabs call Agader) having travelled by night for fear of being ſurpriſed by the Arabs, and becoming their ſlaves again.

When about half a league from Glimi they croſſed a ſmall rivulet of clear water, and now leaving the road which was the greateſt thoroughfare, they repaired to a large houſe on the plain, from whence they proceeded (ſtill by night) to a very thick wood. They were five days on the road between Glimi and St. Croix.

The following day they went to the houſe of ſome Jews, which was ſituated on an eminence; here they paſſed the night, and from thence entered defiles, running parallel to the ſea. As the roads were very bad, obſtructed by mountains and thick woods, this day's journey was exceedingly ſevere.

They forded a ſmall river about eight leagues from St. Croix, near which they found an houſe built in the French manner, which was then uninhabited. Half a league from this are the ruins of a town, which ſeems by its ſituation and extent to have been once a place of conſequence. They could not learn the name thereof. They now deſcended to well cultivated plains, which brought them to the ſea-ſide. They then croſſed the river which waters the walls of St. Croix on their camels.

As ſoon as they had reached St. Croix, each Chriſtian was obliged to pay about five ſous. That town contains nothing remarkable. It was formerly one of the moſt commercial of all Barbary; but it is now almoſt in ruins, and only defended by a miſerable fort, with twelve pieces of cannon, and even theſe are of no ſervice.

They ſlept near a fountain, the work of the Portugueſe, who was once in poſſeſſion of the country. From thence they continued their journey without accident, notwithſtanding the difficulty of roads cut through the rocks, and the precipices and foreſts of the Atlas mountains, the chain of which begins at St. Croix de Barbarie.

They met with a very good reception from the Engliſh merchants to whom they were addreſſed, and who conducted them to the French houſe of Meſſrs. Cabanes and Depras. They found on their arrival there the moſt ſatisfactory letters from M. Mure, the French vice-conſul, reſiding at Salle, who, having nothing ſo much at heart as their deliverance, had employed every means to redeem them from ſlavery without making known his intentions.

The city of Mogadore, ſo called by the Chriſtians, from the name of a ſmall iſland, which is ſituated to the ſouth of it, and in which conſiſts the goodneſs of the harbour, is only known to the Arabs by that of Souera. It is a new town, and the only place where the Chriſtians have full liberty of trade. It runs out into the ſea on a rock, and is ſurrounded by ſand on every ſide; towards the harbour it has three ſtrong batteries for its defence, the principal one of twenty-four pounders of the ſame number.

There are about two hundred and fifty French renegadoes, all in the pay of the Emperor, who have the care of theſe batteries. The town is inhabited by Chriſtians of every nation, by Jews, to whom the Emperor advances a capital, and by Moors, engaged in trade. It is the beſt fortified and moſt commercial of the whole empire of Morocco. The Chriſtians have two prieſts there of the Spaniſh miſſion, and enjoy their religion without any moleſtation.

A great trade was formerly carried on at St. Croix de Barbarie, but the reigning Emperor, the founder of Mogadore, ordered the merchants to remove to the latter town, and St. Croix is now a wilderneſs.

M. Saugnier cannot conceive the motive that prevents the French from giving their real names to the towns of this country. Every thing in that regard is totally changed. St. Croix is only known to the Arabs by the name of Agader, Mogadore by that of Souera, and ſo on. The name given to thoſe cities in France not being known in the country, the French travellers who viſit Barbary are frequently perplexed.

When the governor of Mogadore was informed of their arrival, he ſent for them to his houſe. The governor is a man of a mild and affable diſpoſition, can neither write nor read, and owes his elevation to the poſt he holds to the ſignal marks of bravery he ſhewed in the preſence of the Emperor. He had their names taken down by the Mahometan prieſts, and ſent off a courier immediately, to inform the Emperor of their arrival.

The Emperor, on receiving the news, fell into a dreadful fit of rage. Two months before he had given the moſt poſitive orders to the governors of the provinces in the vicinity of the deſert, to uſe their utmoſt endeavours to extricate them from the hands of the wandering Arabs.

Being remarkably jealous of his authority, he looked upon this affair as an attack upon it; nor could he bear the idea of Chriſtians being more readily obeyed, in his own dominions, than himſelf. He broke out into threats, condemned to death the Arab, whom the Engliſh had ſent to their aſſiſtance, wrote to the merchants in the ſevereſt terms, threatening to burn alive the firſt perſon who, from that time, ſhould dare to interfere in the redemption of a captive of any nation whatever. In conſequence of this the captains of all the ſhips in the road were forbid to receive M. Saugnier and his companions; a ſtrict watch was kept over them, nor were they ſuffered to go to any diſtance from the city.

The Arab, Bentahar, having received timely information of the Emperor's deſigns, and of the ſentence of death pronounced againſt him, ſaved his life and his fortune by a haſty retreat to the people who had kept M. Saugnier and the reſt in ſlavery.

However, a few preſents, ingeniouſly adminiſtered to the favourite ſultanas, ſoon diſpelled the anger of the prince. He was made to underſtand that the French had not been bought by the merchants, but that their relations, informed of their misfortunes, had ſent them the neceſſary ſums of money; and that, ignorant of his laws and will, they might themſelves, without meaning to offend him, have entered into treaty for their ranſom.

Theſe arguments had due weight, but he was determined to have them in his power; therefore, on the 15th of May, the governor of Mogadore ſent for them to the public ſquare. There, by order of his maſter, he repaid the French merchants the money they advanced for their deliverance. He told them that the Emperor pardoned them, as well as the Arab, whom they had employed to put an end to their diſtreſs; he then delivered them into their hands, after having made known to the people that they belonged to the Emperor.

Though a while ago they were free, they were now again reduced to ſlavery; they were not, however, required to work. The manner in which they were received by the governor, the reſpect ſhewn them by the Moors, the liberty they were left at to go where they pleaſed, the accounts they heard of the reſt of the crew, every thing in ſhort contributed to reſtore tranquillity to their minds, and make them eaſy.

This was the firſt time they received French dreſſes. A coat, waiſtcoat, and breeches of blue cloth, three ſhirts, two handkerchiefs, a ſilk cravat, a hat, a night-cap, and two pair of ſhoes, were given to each of them; an expence that might amount to thirty-ſix dollars a-piece.

They had been told that the Emperor's ſon, the governor of Teroudan, had advanced towards Cape Non, at the head of an army of eight thouſand men. His orders were to get the French, either by money or by force. They conceived hopes that this enterpriſe would be attended with ſucceſs; but the French merchants were of a different opinion. They told them that the delay in the execution of the Emperor's orders is ſolely occaſioned by the avarice of that prince. He generally employs the Jews to advance the neceſſary money, and does not reimburſe them. He thinks them but too happy to have an opportunity of obeying him at the expence of their fortune, and from thence ariſes the tardineſs with which the individuals of that nation are ſure to proceed.

On the 15th of June they received orders to ſet off for Morocco. A numerous caravan ſerving as an eſcort to the royal treaſure, ariſing from the cuſtoms paid by foreign ſhips that put in at Mogadore, inſured the ſafety of their arrival.

The Engliſh and French merchants were the only perſons that came to take leave of them; they left them with tears in their eyes, and promiſed them all the aſſiſtance in their power, in caſe they ſhould not be able to obtain their freedom from the Emperor.

This journey from Mogadore to Morocco, was neither tedious nor laborious; in quality of the Emperor's ſlaves, a mule was given to each of them, not without great diſpleaſure on the part of the Moors to whom they belonged. The ſovereign never pays; and theſe people inſtead of ſelling their commodities at Mogadore, were obliged to follow them to Morocco.

The Jew, the Emperor's principal ſcribe, had orders to ſupply their wants. In the evening of their arrival this wretch wanted to oblige them to unload the camels, fetch wood, &c. but the Alcaide, who commanded the caravan, perceiving it, ordered the Moors to take care of the French, ill treated the Jews, and forbad them to follow the caravan (of which they availed themſelves for the ſafety of their merchandize) at leſs than half a league diſtance.

On the 20th of June they arrived at Morocco, much fatigued by the heat, that had killed three Jews, and four camels. The Alcaide wiſhed, on their arrival, to conduct them to the Emperor; but that prince had ſet off in the morning, at the head of an army of 12000 men, to puniſh the rebels, who had beat his lieutenant, and taken refuge on Mount Atlas. The Emperor not being at Morocco, M. Saugnier and his party were entruſted to the care of the prieſts of the Spaniſh miſſion, who had a convent in the quarter of the Jews.

The prior, according to that pride ſo peculiar to his nation, treated them with inſupportable haughtineſs. He highly extolled their good fortune, in experiencing the kindneſs of his *community*; treated them rather like ſlaves than Chriſtians, and refuſed them even the things of the firſt neceſſity, although M. Mure, their vice-conſul, had ſent him a ſufficient ſum to defray their expences.

Happily indeed the Emperor's abſence was not long. His preſence had reduced the rebels to a ſenſe of their duty; he heard of the people's arrival, wiſhed to ſee them immediately, and on the 28th of June they had the happineſs of appearing in his preſence.

The Emperor was now employed in exerciſing his troops. He immediately put a ſtop to the evolutions, ordered the French to approach his perſon, ſpoke to them with a kindneſs they little expected, queſtioned them concerning the names of the places in which they had been ſeparated from their fellows in misfortune, and about thoſe of the maſters to whom they belonged, and promiſed to ſend them in a ſhort time to France. He enquired into the manner in which they were treated at the convent; and, on hearing their complaints, entruſted them to the care of the Kailebes Baſha, making his head reſponſible for any complaint that might be made. They remained about eight days in the city of Morocco, all the inhabitants ſhewing them the greateſt marks of kindneſs.

This town is large and populous, but ill-built; the houſes are very low, and the ſtreets very narrow. There are a number of ſquares, in which all bargains are made.

M. Saugnier and his companions being the Emperor's ſlaves, their perſons were held ſacred by the Moors; and accordingly they ſaw, without difficulty, every curioſity in the capital. Among the things they remarked was a very lofty tower, to the top of which a man can aſcend on horſeback; and though Morocco is ſituated in a plain, it is to be ſeen at the diſtance of ten leagues.

On the 5th of July, the Baſha having received orders to prepare his troops, they appeared again before the Emperor, who gave them their liberty, which being unexpected afforded them no little joy.

At this time there was a talk of war with France: the commercial houſe at Mogadore no longer hoiſted the white flag. It was ſaid that the French were determined to have ſatisfaction for the inſult offered to M. Chenier, conſul at Sallee, whom the Emperor had driven from his preſence in the rudeſt manner. Meſſ. Cabanes and Depras, of Mogadore, were remitting all the money they could to France; and M. Royer, of Marſeilles, having abandoned his houſe, had juſt taken ſhipping for Europe.

The very reaſons that ſeemed likely to prolong their ſervitude were, no doubt, thoſe that haſtened their liberty. The Emperor, wiſhing to make amends for his fault, was therefore induced to ſet this people free: perhaps they might owe their deliverance to gratitude, for news had juſt been brought to Morocco that 200 Moors had been aſſiſted by a veſſel from Marſeilles, after having tried all the Italian and Mahometan ports in vain; that the aſſiſtance of which they ſtood in need had been every where refuſed them; that they would have died of want but for the aſſiſtance of the Marſeilles ſhip, and that they were then performing quarantine in that port, from whence they would ſet off to return to their own country when an opportunity arrived.

Be this as it may, the Emperor having ordered them a gratification of three dollars each, they ſet off on the 5th, well mounted, and with an eſcort of 800 foot and 200 horſe.

The Mooriſh ſoldiers took care to pitch their tent every day near that of the general. With this eſcort they paſſed through the greateſt part of the cities of Barbary, their little army being every where augmented by freſh reinforcements, and received with honour in every town.

In the town they found a Marſeilles captain, who had turned renegado, to avoid, according to the Emperor's law, a puniſhment of 500 ſtripes, for being ſhipwrecked near this place, as the Emperor pretends it muſt be done on purpoſe, it being impoſſible, he thinks, that veſſels can run aſhore on his coaſt. Thoſe captains who are on their way to Barbary are exempt from this puniſhment.

They encamped before Azemor, where they made ſome ſtay. The Baſha hired 300 men, and having given them 10 ounces each, they joined their line of march. They now paſſed the river of Lions, and encamped on the oppoſition bank: then proceeding along the coaſt, they ſaw Darzbadda, Mowforia, Fadal, and ſeveral other towns, which were in ruins, and only known for the trade they carry on in corn.

As ſoon as they had reached Rabate, they were delivered up to the governor of that place, by the Baſha. Account of their arrival was now ſent to M. Mure, the French vice-conſul, who came immediately to ſee them. He was very much ſurpriſed when he was told all the honours they had received in the towns of Barbary. For fear any diſagreeable change might take place in the Emperor's ſentiments, every due arrangement was made to expedite their journey, and they were diſpatched for Tangier without delay.

The two towns Rabate and Sallee, which are generally confuſed with each other, are divided by the river. The former, which is the reſidence of the French conſul and the governor, is the moſt extenſive and conſiderable: both theſe towns are paved. There is a tower in Rabate, ſimilar to that of Morocco, whereby the inhabitants may ſee the veſſels in the offing. There is alſo a ſupply of freſh water, by means of an aqueduct, erected by an Engliſh engineer, which conveys it two leagues from the town. Sallee is a King's port.

Freſh troops having been now levied, on the 25th of July they ſet off with a new eſcort. Three of the mules (which were provided by M. Mure) were left behind in a ſmall town in ruins about 20 leagues from Sallee, as they were rendered uſeleſs through fatigue. In conſequence thereof they were frequently obliged to travel on foot to Tangier, where they arrived on the 31ſt, and received a much better reception from the Spaniſh conſul (to whom they were addreſſed) than from the monks of the miſſion. The conſul immediately reported the Emperor's wiſhes to the governor of that place; who thereupon iſſued orders that every expedition ſhould be made for their ſetting off for Cadiz.

The captain of the Spaniſh veſſel, who came to Tangier to procure corn and poultry, departed in the evening, and the next morning they arrived at Cadiz, where they hoiſted their flag.

They were now viſited by the phyſicians, who ſent them to perform quarantine on board the Lazaretto, about two leagues diſtant from the town.

They were three days in this hulk, without being able to ſet a foot on ſhore. At laſt they were landed, and placed in a kind of barn, where they were but barely ſheltered from the rain.

They were reviſited by the phyſicians on the 11th of Auguſt. Their health being now aſcertained, they departed from the barn.

M. Boirel, the French vice-conſul of Cadiz, received them very kindly, and having ſupplied them with every neceſſary, facilitated their return to their native places.

M. Saugnier embarked the 28th of Auguſt on board the St. Francois de Sales, a veſſel of 200 tons burthen, commanded by Capt. Sinical, of Dunkirk. After a tedious, diſagreeable paſſage, and having been beating five days off the harbour, they arrived at Oſtend on the 11th of October. The next day the captain conducted M. Saugnier to Dunkirk. His paſſport being now examined, he left Dunkirk on the 14th; and having delayed at Liſle, on account of his indiſpoſition, he did not arrive at St. Quintin till the 21ſt of October, 1784.

CHAPTER IV.

M. Saugnier's ill Reception at Home—His Reſolution—An unexpected Letter—Encouraged to purſue his former Projects—Meaſures taken—Repairs to Paris—Stays two Months to no Purpoſe—Embarks on board the Guſtavus Adolphus—An agreeable ſhort Voyage—Makes Cape Blanco—A dangerous Bar croſſed—Proceed to Senegal—Deſcription of the Iſland—M. Saugnier reſolves to undertake a Voyage to Galam—He embarks on board the Furet—The Ship baptized, according to Cuſtom—Ceremony thereof—A Canoe of Negroes diſcovered—Diſagreeable Intelligence—They anchor—Stranded on the Mooriſh Coaſt—Proceed on their Way—See the Village of Berne—Ditto of Blac—Arrive at Pudor—Arrogance of the King of the Treparts—The Veſſel put in a State of Defence M. Saugnier's Project, and Succeſs—Curſory Remarks—Arrive at Saldee—At Galam—Departure.

M. SAUGNIER now reſtored to his family, was in hopes of enjoying domeſtic eaſe and happineſs; but the ſtory of his ſufferings being diſbelieved, his relations treated him with coolneſs and indifference. Having received 300 livres from one of his uncles, and a few articles from his mother, who was rather in humble circumſtances, he was reſolved upon returning to Paris, and though contrary to his inclination, engage himſelf in his original line of buſineſs. He remained at his mother's houſe till he had recovered his health, having, in the interim, made applications in writing to ſeveral ſhop-keepers in the capital. Encouraged, however, by an unexpected letter from the elder of his two former companions, who had at firſt ſuggeſted a ſettlement in Senegal, and had been now appriſed of M. Saugnier's arrival in France, he became reſolved on reſuming his former projects. He made every effort therefore of obtaining additional ſupplies from his family, and on his mother's becoming ſecurity, obtained 300 livres more.

With this he repaired to Paris, where he ſtaid two months with his partner, to no purpoſe, in hopes of being made head of a company who were ſeeking an excluſive privilege for the gum-trade in Senegal. After being amuſed with fair promiſes, which ended in nothing, they ſet off for Bourdeaux, where they expected to meet with veſſels taking in freight, which happened according to their expectations.

After remaining in Bourdeaux about a fortnight M. Saugnier embarked on board the Guſtavus Adolphus, which belonged to M. Lamalathie, merchant of Bourdeaux, and was under the command of Capt. Marc of Havre. This veſſel was to trade along the coaſt, and thence to ſet ſail for India, when the proviſions for the garriſon of Senegal were delivered. M. Saugnier was allowed by M. Lamalathie a commiſſion upon ſuch negroes as he might purchaſe in union with the captain. This offer, though by no means profitable, was however accepted by M. Saugnier, and matters accordingly adjuſted.

M. Saugnier's partner remained at Bourdeaux to fit out the brig Furet, of about 70 tons burthen, which ſet ſail about ſix weeks after M. Saugnier's departure.

The Guſtavus Adolphus being an excellent ſailer they had a very agreeable ſhort voyage. They had ſome violent gales on leaving the Canary Iſlands, which having ſprung their main-maſt, deterred the captain from proſecuting his voyage to India, as it was totally impoſſible to repair it in a proper manner. He ſtaid at Goree for about a twelvemonth, where having finiſhed his buſineſs he proceeded to America. Warned by the late misfortunes of M. Saugnier, the captain wiſely reſolved upon keeping well out to ſea.

Having the next day made Cape Blanco, they ſaw two wrecks; one ſeemed a frigate, and the other a veſſel of about 150 tons.

On the 13th of June 1785, they were in ſight of Senegal. They now croſſed a bar, which being the effect of ſeveral ſucceſſive ſurfs that continually follow, and break upon each other with uncommon violence, is reckoned by the ſeamen exceedingly dangerous: this ſurf is occaſioned by the current of the river, which is thrown back upon itſelf by the ſea, into which it flows. There is alſo a flat formed by the ſand, which is carried down by the ſtream, and caſt back by the ſea, which renders the paſſage inacceſſible to large veſſels. M. Saugnier went over it in the pilot's boat: at this time there was only 13 feet water. Having now croſſed the bar, they went on ſhore, and notwithſtanding the extreme heat of the ſun, proceeded to Senegal along the Barbary Point, which is a piece of ſandy ground that ſeparates the Niger from the ſea.

The iſland of Senegal is a bank of ſand in the middle of the river. It is a thouſand geometrical paces long, and about ſixty in its greateſt width; is almoſt on a level with the river, and with the ſea, being defended from the latter by Barbary Point, which is of greater elevation than the colony. The eaſtern branch of the river is the more conſiderable of the two, being about four hundred toiſes acroſs; the weſtern branch is only from fifty to two hundred toiſes wide. The iſle conſiſts entirely of burning ſands, on the barren ſurface of which are ſcattered flints, thrown out among their ballaſt by veſſels coming from Goree, or with the ruins of buildings formerly erected by Europeans. There is ſcarcely ſuch a thing as a garden upon the iſland; for the European ſeeds do not thrive here. It is not ſurpriſing that the ſoil is ſo unproductive; for the air is ſtrongly impregnated with ſea ſalt, which pervades every thing, and conſumes even iron in a very ſhort ſpace of time. The heats are exceſſive, and rendered ſtill more inſupportable by the reflection of the ſand, ſo that from ten in the morning until four in the afternoon it is almoſt impoſſible to do any work. During the months of January, February, March, and April, the heats are moderated; but in Auguſt, and in the following ones, they become ſo oppreſſive as to affect even the natives themſelves. The nights are a little leſs ſultry; not always, however, but only when the ſea-breeze ſets in. It is then, that the inhabitants of the colony breath a freſher air; yet this air in our climate would ſeem a burning vapour. The nights are nevertheleſs troubleſome, notwithſtanding the comforts of the ſea-breeze. The inſtant the ſun is ſet, the inhabitants are aſſailed by an infinity of gnats, which are called muſquitos; their ſtings are very painful, and their multitude incredible. The inhabitants find but a poor defence in their gauze curtains. They generally beſmear themſelves with butter, which defends them from their ſtings.

There is no good water in the country; the moſt agreeable is brought forty leagues down the river, and through the moſt infectious ſwamps. Wells are dug in the ſand to the depth of five or ſix feet, by this means they obtain water; but notwithſtanding all the trouble they are at to freſhen it, it ſtill retains a brackiſh taſte. There is a ſpring of good water four leagues above Gendiole, upon the way from Senegal to Goree; but which is not large enough to be of general utility. The meat is in general very bad, and the fiſh has a peculiar ill taſte: if not dreſſed the day it is caught, it muſt be thrown away. In reſpect to the negroes food, the females pound millet in wooden mortars upon the ſand, but then it is ſo ill prepared, that it grates between the teeth.

The trade at this time was chiefly monopolized by three European houſes. The firſt was the company's houſe, which, beſides the excluſive privilege of the gum-trade, dealt alſo in ſlaves. This houſe was certainly the moſt conſiderable, but withal the worſt regulated; the perſons who had been ſent by the company having no knowledge whatever of this commerce. It was therefore the leaſt formidable. The ſecond of M. Aubry de la Foſſe, of Nantz, was better conducted. With a ſmaller ſtock they carried on a more conſiderable trade; the ſuperintendance of the houſe was committed to M. Vigneux, formerly captain of a ſhip from Nantz. He was the perſon, who taking the advantage of M. Saugnier's unhappy ſhipwreck, which happened in the year 1784, had made one of thoſe ſurpriſingly lucrative bargains, which allure ſo many of his countrymen to their ruin. He made alſo, in the years 1785 and 1786, ſeveral highly advantageous ſpeculations without going from Senegal; the laſt, however, coſt him his life.

The third houſe was conducted by M. Paul Benis, who traded ſolely on his own bottom. He had been formerly cooper to the company at Goree, and when that iſland fell into the hands of the Engliſh, took refuge in Senegal. He was the man the beſt acquainted with the colony. He ſpoke the negro language as well as the negroes themſelves, lived after their manner, and always found means to lay hold of the beſt bargains. This man, who could neither write nor read, had, by a long reſidence in the country, obtained a thorough knowledge of trade; but though he could rival the company, he found himſelf unable to ſtand the competition of M. Vigneux; who, ignorant as he was of the country, had nevertheleſs a great advantage in the better aſſortment of his articles, and the friendly advice of the natives, who deteſt whatever bears the name of company.

In reſpect to inhabitants, Senegal contains more than ſix thouſand negroes, including the captives of the Tapades, or negroes born of the black inhabitants of the country. They are never put up to ſale, unleſs convicted of ſome crime. Their huts, conſtructed in the form of bee-hives, and ſupported upon four ſtakes, ſurround the habitations of the negro inhabitants. The entire height of thoſe huts may riſe to about twelve feet; the width, in every direction, is commonly from ten to twelve. The beds are compoſed of hurdles laid upon croſs-bars, ſupported by forked ſtakes at the height of about a foot from the ground. Here the ſlaves ſleep promiſcuouſly, men, women, girls, and boys. A fire is made in the middle of the hut, which is filled with ſmoke, and very offenſive.

The men are tall, and the women are accounted the handſomeſt negreſſes of all Africa. The Senegalians may be conſidered as the moſt courageous people of that part of the world, without even excepting the Moors. Their courage, however, is more nearly allied to temerity than bravery. In the courſe of the voyage to Galam, they meet the greateſt dangers with gaiety and ſong; they dread neither muſquet nor cannon, and are equally fearleſs of the cayman or crocodile. Should any of their companions be killed, and devoured by theſe animals before their face, they are not deterred from plunging into the water, if the working of the ſhip require it. Theſe excellent qualifications, which diſtinguiſh them, and on which they value themſelves ſo much, do not however preſerve them from the common contagion of the country, which inclines them all to rapine. They are emulous to ſurpaſs one another in all the arts of over-reaching and fraud. The conduct of the Europeans has, no doubt, encouraged theſe vices, as much as the leſſons of the marabous, who inculcate the duty of plundering the chriſtians whenever they can.

The Yolof negroes of Senegal are a compound of chriſtianity and mahometaniſm. Thoſe on the continent are of the ſame way of thinking, and their religious practices are kept up only for the ſake of form. A bar of iron, or a few beads, will make them change their opinion at will. By ſuch means are they acted upon; a ſufficient proof of their want of all religious principle. The marabous, or prieſts, and the men of their law, are no better than the reſt.

The colony of Senegal is ſurrounded with iſlands, which, on account of the proximity of the ſea, are all more unhealthy than that on which the town is built. They are full of ſtanding pools, that, when dried up by the ſun, exhale a putrid vapour that carries mortality with it, and deſolates theſe iſlands. It is doubtleſs the ſame cauſe that takes off ſo many of the French at Senegal, during the dangerous ſeaſon of the year. This alſo may be in part occaſioned by the bad quality of the water which flows from the ponds in the neighbourhood of the colony, and though incorporated with that of the river, comes down little agitated by the current, and is eaſily diſtinguiſhed by a vapidneſs of taſte.

None of the French at Senegal, belonging to the ſeveral houſes of commerce, being inclined to make the voyage to Galam, (a place of conſiderable trade) becauſe none of them had ever been in that part of the country, M. Saugnier reſolved to undertake it himſelf. He ſaw how much ſuperior the other houſes were in point of funds and reſources, and ſought therefore to obtain, ſome how, an advantageous foundation for his. This point could be gained only by acquiring an accurate knowledge of the country. He hoped, by that means, that though unable to ſtand a competition in the colony, he ſhould at leaſt in the trade on the river have a decided advantage over every other houſe. He determined then to ſet off for Galam.

While they were waiting the arrival of the Furet, they were employed in collecting ſalt for themſelves, and for the king's ſhip which was bound up the river. This traffic of ſalt is carried on at the bar of Senegal; the articles of exchange are, ſwords, gunpowder, balls, flints, and glaſs ware.

On the 26th of July the fleet got under way, and ſailed up the river. It conſiſted of 27 veſſels, freighted by the inhabitants; together with a veſſel of 50 tons, called the Moor, belonging to Paul Benis; the great bark of M. Vigneux, ſuperintendant of the houſe of Aubry, of Nantz, burthen 180 tons, and a king's ſhip, called the Bienfaiſant, Capt. Thevenot, an inhabitant of Senegal, carrying the cuſtoms or dues for the ſeveral princes of the country.

The company, ever ſlow in their operations, had not yet any veſſels ready, when the Furet brig appeared in view. The ſame day that ſhe came before the fort ſhe entered the river. They proceeded immediately

mediately to unload her. She was then repaired, and loaded for the ſlave trade.

On the 16th of Auguſt M. Saugnier embarked on board the veſſel, and ſailed from Fort Louis. This veſſel was of 70 tons burthen, light and an excellent ſailer; ſhe had a crew compoſed of 24 laptots, (that is negro ſailors) four gourmets, (i. e. officers) a linguiſt, a carpenter, a mate, ſix pileuſes, (i. e. women cooks) and a dozen of repaſſes, (i. e. negro children who ſerve aboard ſhip like cabin boys).

The governor of Senegal, Count de Repintigny, had engaged M. Saugnier to collect together all the ſtraggling veſſels, in order to eſcort them to the rendezvous of the convoy. In the evening of the ſame day he met with a veſſel belonging to one Soliman, who had left the colony three days before him. He had only three laptots aboard, and M. Saugnier did not think himſelf obliged to delay his voyage, on account of a perſon ſo imprudent as not to ſupply himſelf with a number of hands ſufficient to work his ſhip. M. Saugnier's negroes, however, who knew the orders which their maſter had received from the governor, endeavoured to perſuade him to give him ſome aſſiſtance; he ordered him to return to Senegal, which was only eight leagues diſtant; he thought proper to comply with his deſire.

They handed their ſails about eight o'clock in the evening; being then at the great Merigots, which extend to Portandic. The ſhip was afterwards baptized according to the cuſtom of the negroes, and all thoſe who had not before paſſed that place were obliged to ſubmit to the ſame ceremony. At the ſame time they made M. Saugnier fire a ſalute with his ſmall train of artillery, conſiſting of ſix ſwivels, with ſix French and ſome Engliſh wall-pieces. In order to perform this ceremony with due pomp, the linguiſt, accompanied by two gourmets, caſt anchor and aſſembled the crew. He cauſed all the artillery to be charged, filled a vaſe with water from the river, and threw it at three ſeveral times upon different parts of the ſhip. At each operation, in order to render the ceremony as auguſt as poſſible, a ſalute was fired; and after the baptiſmal rites were performed upon the veſſel, the ſame linguiſt proceeded to baptize thoſe who had not yet made the voyage: theſe are commonly the whites and the repaſſes. He ſprinkled water of the river on my chin and forehead; a ceremony which was announced by a general diſcharge of the artillery. In ſhort, to cloſe this feſtivity with becoming cheer, M. Saugnier gave the crew a preſent of good liquor. Their ſloop now joined them, and the evening was ſpent in good chear and hilarity.

They had ſcarcely got down to the cabin, in order to take a little reſt, when the laptots of the watch gave them notice, that they heard a noiſe of oars on the river. They inſtantly were on the look-out, and ſoon ſaw that it was a canoe rowed by negroes, who uſed every effort to come up with them. As ſoon as they got on board, they informed them that the boat la Maleine, belonging to Scipio, the maſter of his veſſel, had run aground and ſunk, ten leagues beyond Podor; that Admet Moctar, king of the Traſſarts, a Mooriſh tribe, claimed half the goods ſaved from the wreck, giving no better reaſon than that ſuch was the will of God, ſince he had ſuffered the veſſel to be wrecked on the coaſt. M. Saugnier immediately wrote to the Count de Repintigny, governor of Senegal, requeſting he would give him his inſtructions how to act on the occaſion; and having given the negroes ſomething to eat, inſtantly ordered them away for the colony. As M. Saugnier was deſirous to wait at Podor for the governor's anſwer, before he ſhould come to any deciſive agreement with Admet Moctar, he declined proceeding, but anchored oppoſite the village of Reims. During the evening they had good game. At five in the morning, the wind freſhening conſiderably, the veſſel drove at her anchors, and ſtranded on the Mooriſh coaſt. In conſequence thereof they loſt an anchor, and notwithſtanding all the pains they took they could never lay hold of it with the drag. This river is full of ſand-banks, and it is only off Doumons that there is cauſe for real apprehenſions. Theſe ſmall trading veſſels are hauled aſhore every night; and when it is neceſſary to proceed, the negroes ſoon ſet them afloat, by plunging into the water and puſhing them off. It often happens that in this operation ſome are drowned; but this is the only method they know, and they conſider it as the readieſt and leaſt laborious.

They proceeded on their way, and ſaw on an extenſive plain a Mooriſh camp, conſiſting of 80 or 100 tents; theſe people ſeemed deſirous to diſpoſe of ſome cattle and captives, but there was no time to treat with them.

On the 19th they ſaw the village of Berne, ſituated on the Mooriſh coaſt, near the deſart of Zaara, which extends to this part of the river. On leaving the deſart, on the oppoſite ſhore they ſaw the village of Brac, belonging to the king of the Walon negroes. The preſent prince had been miniſter to the former king, whom he cauſed to be aſſaſſinated by the Moors of Halicory, king of the Bracnars. It was under the ſpecious pretence of public good that he ſeized upon the throne: but his treachery coſt him his life; for having ſome diſputes with Halicory, the latter cauſed him to be ſtrangled a few months after the departure of M. Saugnier.

On the 20th they arrived at Podor, and found the ſheriff's boat there, which put to ſea as ſoon as they were in ſight. M. Saugnier went in the evening on ſhore to the fort, where he was received by Admet Moctar, king of the Traſſarts. This haughty prince, departing from his original demand, inſiſted that the whole of ſhipwrecks belonged to him: not content with a ſhare, he would have all, and even alledged that the very laptots were his captives, and wanted to compel M. Saugnier to pay their ranſom, whom he thought to intimidate with menaces, hoping to become maſter of all the merchandize which Scipio's laptots had ſaved from the wreck, and which the commandant at Podor had been weak enough to deliver to him. He was deaf to all reaſon, and threatened to attack M. Saugnier, if his wiſhes were not complied with: but M. Saugnier, before he had left the veſſel to go to the fort, had put her in a ſtate of defence, the fire-arms having been all prepared for an engagement. M. Saugnier now ſecretly commanded the mate to allure as many Moors on board the veſſel as he could, then to diſarm and ſecure them. In the mean time Admet Moctar, enraged at the inflexibility of M. Saugnier, ſent one of his officers to his brother, with orders to ſeize the veſſel; which orders he ſuppoſed M. Saugnier was ignorant of, ſuppoſing him unacquainted with his language; but M. Saugnier, framing ſome pretence, withdrew from the aſſembly, and diſpatched a truſty negro to appriſe the mate of the prince's villainy; and ſtill to allure as many more of the Moors as he could, and when he had diſarmed to ſecure them. Scipio well underſtanding the Arabic language, immediately comprehended the prince's deſign; and having not only reproached, but even threatened him, made an abrupt departure: but as ſoon as he had reached the veſſel, he perceived the prince's brother both diſarmed and in chains; and finding that the crew were in perfect ſafety by theſe precautions, he returned to the fort. Mean time M. Duchozel, commandant of Podor, being informed of this prince's manœuvres by M. Saugnier, put a detachment under arms, and repairing to the prince, aſſured him, that if he did not immediately make up matters with M. Saugnier, fatal conſequences muſt enſue, as he would never permit a veſſel of his nation to be attacked under the cannon of the fort he commanded. This alarmed Admet Moctar, particularly as he underſtood that all the negroes of the village had taken up arms in defence of the crew, and that all his ſoldiers were diſarmed. M. Saugnier, ſurrounded by the braveſt of his men, with his piſtols primed and loaded, now upbraided him in his own language, for his villainous deſigns. This confounded him more, and he began to cringe and make promiſes. M. Saugnier inſiſted upon a reſtitution of the effects which he had ſeized, which the prince having made uſe of, ſaid that he could not comply with this demand, but that he would willingly return Scipio the full value of whatever was ſeized; to do which, an engagement was now ſigned by himſelf and miniſters; alſo by his brother, who was in conſequence thereof liberated. M. Saugnier then invited the prince on board; but apprehenſive of being detained as his brother was, he never ventured to pay him a viſit. His brother, however, Sydy Heli went on board, to whom M. Saugnier ſhewed the force of his fire-arms. In the evening, after partaking of ſome refreſhments, he departed.

The next day as they were making ſail, they perceived Scipio's boat, which was juſt returned with the governor's orders from Senegal. M. Saugnier now landed and went to admit Moctar, who ſigned a ſecond engagement ſimilar to the firſt: the prince, as atonement for the paſt, made M. Saugnier a preſent of two oxen, ten ſheep, and ſome oſtrich feathers. He alſo hoped to ſee him again, when he returned from Galam, which M. Saugnier promiſing, they took leave of each other with mutual good-humour.

On the 24th, Scipio (with M. Saugnier's permiſſion) directed his courſe towards the wreck of his veſſel, in hopes of ſaving ſomething: the crew were employed for the chief part of the day in weighing her, but finding it impoſſible to get her afloat, they were content with taking out the main-maſt, bowſprit, rudder, and anchor. The next day they loſt an excellent diver, of the name of Bacary, who having plunged into the water on ſome trifling occaſion, was never ſeen more. It was ſuppoſed he was carried off by one of the alligators, or crocodiles, of which the river is full.

In the evening they anchored off the village of Donguelle, where three elephants teeth were purchaſed for a ſmall quantity of gunpowder. They then cleared the Devil's Mouth, a rock about a league diſtant from the village.

On the 31ſt of Auguſt they arrived at Saldee. The next day M. Saugnier while eſcaping a violent ſquall, ſtumbled over the cheſts, and ſtruck his head againſt a table, which occaſioned a fever: the next day, after being blooded, he became delirious, nor recovered his reaſon till he arrived at Galam, on the 4th of October.

Some preſents having been made to Sirman, king of Galam, M. Saugnier went on ſhore to his houſe. It is built of clay, thatched with reeds in ſome parts, terraced in others, and upon the whole commodiouſly conſtructed. Here he was treated with ſuch attention, that he quickly began to recover his health. He took an airing every day on the banks of the river: two negroes carried him; and when the heat became too troubleſome, he returned to his abode, and was put under a kind of ſhed, which ſheltered him from the rays of the ſun.

The price of ſlaves being now fixed at 70 bars, part of which conſiſted of four pieces of guinea-blues, they ſailed immediately to Tamboucanee, a principal mart for the traffic of negroes and ivory. This village is ſituated 15 leagues from Galam. The lords of the neighbouring villages, exaſperated againſt the Senegalians, for making Galam the place of their general rendezvous, united their forces to make an attack upon the convoy, which was detained at Saldee on account of the ſhallowneſs of the river. The king's ſhip, and that belonging to M. Vigneux had not yet reached Galam. The one had ſtopped at Baquelle, and the other at Cotterat. The Furet alone, which drew but ſix feet water, was ſufficiently well armed to command reſpect. She immediately hoiſted ſail and advanced to the aſſiſtance of the convoy. The courage of Scipio, M. Saugnier's captain, was well known among the negro princes, they were afraid of contending with him, his preſence put an end to the faction and impoſed peace upon the negroes.

The delay occaſioned by the payment of cuſtoms at Saldee, had proved very prejudicial to them. M. Saugnier was under the neceſſity of embarking the 25th of October to go down to Senegal. He had made but little progreſs in the ſlave-trade; however, he procured ſix negroes with ſome damaged guinea-blues, all of which he ſhould have got rid of, had he been able to protract his departure; but being unwilling to riſk his ſhip, he left Scipio with the long-boat to trade in the cuſtomary manner at Tamboucanee. The king of Galam, who had ſhewn him every kind of attention, accompanied him on board. As he had been a ſlave in Morocco, he looked on him with admiration. The reſpect in which all theſe people hold the Emperor, extended even to his perſon: this petty monarch had given up his chamber and a good bed to M. Saugnier, while the whites employed in the convoy on the king's account, were only lodged under ſheds. M. Molinard, who was one of them, was an engineer, and was ſent out to take a plan of the river, and to explore the gold mines. He fell ill at Saldee, and died on his return from Galam to Senegal.

The king of Galam was very fond of wine, and M. Saugnier regaled him with that liquor every day during his reſidence in his houſe. He took care, however, not to give him any but at night; and in order to obtain it, he laid him under the neceſſity of returning the bottles, on which account he ordered his people to take the greateſt care of them. Having attended him on board, he was obliged to be carried back to his village, for he had drank to exceſs, to prove how much he regretted his departure. This prince had purchaſed of M. Saugnier thirteen beads of coral, half a ſtring of amber, twenty-eight ſilver bells, and three pair of bracelets for his women. He was to have paid him in gold or ivory, but having neither of thoſe articles, he gave him a fine negro, although the things M. Saugnier had ſold him amounted to no more than ſixty-three bars. In acknowledgment of his liberality, M. Saugnier made him a preſent of a ſabre, with a piſtol in the hilt, of a little wool for his wives, and to his favourite, who alone had borne him ſons, alſo ſome rows of glaſs beads, and about four ounces of ſcarlet wool. This favourite pretended to be a chriſtian. She had formerly been miſtreſs to one Labrue, an agent for the factory of Senegal.

The village of Galam is ſmall, and known only as the place of meeting of the inhabitants of Senegal, for the purpoſe of ſettling their mercantile concerns, and on account of a wretched fort built by the French in the time of the former African company, the late king of Galam was a freeman among the Saracolets, and formerly a laptot at Senegal. Conſidered by the negroes as a man of bravery, and ſpeaking good French, he was placed in the fort by the company in quality of broker. The grand fouquet of Tuago, chieftain of the country, gave him the abſolute property of the village of Galam, on condition of his charging himſelf with the receipt of the cuſtoms paid by European veſſels. His ſon, the preſent king of Galam, was brought up at Senegal, and underſtood French and Engliſh perfectly. When the company abandoned the fort, he took poſſeſſion of the cannon, put himſelf at the head of a party in the country, became formidable to his ſovereign, and laſtly, entirely independent. He has ſeveral villages ſubject to his authority. The laptots of Senegal are received by him in the moſt cordial manner, and every voyage he detains ſome of them by his kindneſs, particularly thoſe belonging to the Saracolet nation, being willing to give ſeveral ſlaves in exchange for one of theſe.

The tribes, which in this part of Africa occupy the lands ſituated between the rivers of Senegal and Gambia, are all of the Saracolet nation. The Saracolets acknowledge as ſovereign the grand fouquet of Tuago. They are a laborious people, cultivate their lands with care, are plentifully ſupplied with all the neceſſaries of life, and inhabit handſome and well-built villages; their houſes, of a circular form, are for the moſt part terraced; the others are covered with reeds, as at Senegal; they are encloſed with a mud wall a foot thick, and the villages are ſurrounded with one of ſtone and earth of double that ſolidity. There are ſeveral gates, which are guarded at night for fear of a ſurpriſe. This nation is remarkably brave, and it is very uncommon to find a Saracolet ſlave. They always defend themſelves with advantage againſt their aſſailants. Such Saracolets as are expoſed to ſale may be ſafely purchaſed, for none are to be met with but ſuch as have been condemned by the laws for ſome miſdemeanor; in ſuch caſe theſe wretches could not eſcape ſlavery, even by taking refuge in their own country; for they would be reſtored to their maſters, or would be put to death, if the convoy ſhould have failed.

The religious principles of this people is nearly allied to Mahometaniſm, and ſtill more to natural religion. They acknowledge one God; and believe that thoſe who ſteal, or are guilty of any crime, are eternally puniſhed. They admit a plurality of wives, and believe their ſouls to be immortal, like their own. They think lightly of adultery; for as they allow themſelves ſeveral wives, they are not ſo unjuſt as to puniſh women who diſtribute their favours among ſeveral gallants; a mutual exchange is then permitted, one woman may be bartered for another, unleſs ſhe be free, or a native of the country.

On the 24th of October M. Saugnier received a meſſage from Scipio, who perceived the water lowering at Tamboucanee, adviſing him to quit Galam. The next morning M. Saugnier embarked: however the mate and boatſwain inſiſted upon ſtaying longer, as the laptots had not as yet ſold their ſalt: this obliged M. Saugnier to aſſume his authority, particularly as the laptots, who adhered to him, were inclined to murder theſe men for diſobedience: however the mate and boatſwain, for fear of being put into irons, became quiet, and having now weighed anchor they ſet ſail.

CHAPTER V.

They ſtrike upon a Sand-Bank—Endeavour to lighten the Veſſel in vain—Information ſent to Scipio—He comes to their Aſſiſtance—His ſurpriſing Skill—Veſſel got in deep Water—Scipio takes his Leave—Paſs the Village of Baquelle—Veſſel loſes her Head-way—Founders upon the Rocks—Captain Membao ſends to their Aſſiſtance—The Goods thrown overboard—Natives, Laptots, &c. plunder—M. Saugnier embarks on board Mambao's Veſſel—The Lord of Baquelle's Character—He viſits M. Saugnier—Behaviour of the grand Fouquet of Tuago—Loſs of ſome Laptots—M. Saugnier looks to his perſonal Safety—Gets aboard Mambao—Arrival of Maſſe—His Advice, which is followed—Embarks on board the Bienfaiſant—M. Saugnier recovers apace—Their ſlow Progreſs impeded by different Obſtacles—Anxiety for the reſt of the Convoy—They get clear of many Sand-Banks—Strike on that of Haliburum—Veſſel lightened—Scipio's Arrival at Doumons—The Manner he ſaved the Veſſel that was wrecked—Deceives and defies the grand Fouquet—The Poules attacked—Scipio's Succeſs and good Management—Apprehenſions about the Convoy—Their ſafe Arrival—M. Saugnier ſails for France—Deſcription of Goree—A Sailor ſeized—M. Saugnier ſets off by Land, and arrives at Dacar—His Relapſe—Recovery—Arrival at L'Orient.

ON the 25th of October, the water having lowered a foot, they ſtruck upon a ſand-bank. They now threw their ſalt overboard, in order to lighten the veſſel, but it had no effect. M. Saugnier therefore diſpatched a ſaracolet to inform Scipio of the accident, who arrived the following day in the afternoon to his aſſiſtance. Previous to this they had worked hard for 24 hours to liberate the veſſel, but in vain. Scipio, however, being well acquainted with the river, and having examined all the paſſes, conſoled them with hopes of ſoon diſengaging them from their diſtreſſing ſituation. In order to refreſh the men, he gave orders that they ſhould reſt for two hours and repoſe themſelves, which he likewiſe did himſelf: he then gave the neceſſary directions, and in leſs than half an hour the veſſel was got into deep water. He remained on board a whole day, in order to ſteer them clear of other dangerous ſhoals, which they paſſed without any trouble. He then pointed to the mate and boatſwain ſome other parts of the river which were equally dangerous, and having traced the courſe which they ſhould make, took his leave, in order to continue his traffic at Tamboucanee.

They found the Furet about 10 leagues from Galam: ſhe lay at anchor off Cotterat, not being able to make her way to Galam for want of water.

On the 2d of November they paſſed the village of Baquelle, and entered into the canal of that iſland. The boatſwain being incapable of ſtemming the current, the veſſel through his imprudence loſt her head-way, and about nine in the morning they foundered upon the rocks. At this time there was a Senegal captain, one Peter Mambao, who arrived at Baquelle with a cargo of ſalt. Upon ſeeing their diſtreſs, he immediately ſent out his boat to their aſſiſtance, on board of which M. Saugnier put the moſt valuable of his articles; one of his cheſts, however, was loſt. The reſt of the goods were now throwing overboard, as the hold of the veſſel was full of water; while the natives had aſſembled on the bank, in order to plunder whatever they could find. The very laptots began to pillage the people, being anxious to indemnify themſelves for the toils they endured, and their wages, which would conſequently be loſt with the veſſel. M. Saugnier went on board Mambao's veſſel, which was about half a league diſtant from his own.

Amadi Tkioncoli, lord of Baquelle, of infamous character, now determined to take advantage of their unfortunate ſituation. He came to M. Saugnier on board Mambao's ſhip, and made him a tender of his houſe, and a good warehouſe to ſtore the goods he had ſaved. All the Senegalians aſſured him he might rely upon his word; to which he was indeed compelled by neceſſity. Every thing preſerved from the wreck was carried to the houſe of this prince. The next day M. Saugnier went on ſhore, and repaired to the village of Baquelle, being preſſed by Amadi's ſolicitations, and perceiving that Mambao was unwilling to expoſe himſelf any longer on his account. He was accommodated with a kind of a tent, that while it ſcreened him from the heat of the ſun, admitted the freſh air; and on the firſt day he was treated with the greateſt reſpect and attention.

The grand fouquet of Tuago, being informed by his ſon, who had been ſome days on board the veſſel, of M. Saugnier's misfortune, came to Baquelle with a numerous eſcort of cavalry to ſhare the plunder. This king pretended, according to the cuſtom of the Moors, that the veſſel, freight, crew, with M. Saugnier himſelf, were all become his property. He would have taken immediate poſſeſſion of the principal articles, had not the lord of Baquelle, dreading the return of Scipio, prevented him.

M. Saugnier had taken two Moors on board at Galam, to deliver to Admet Moctar: they informed theſe princes that he was a ſlave to the Emperor of Morocco, and that they would infallibly draw down upon them the reſentment of the Moors, if they ventured to offer him any violence.

On account of this the grand fouquet thought proper to deſiſt; yet a cloſe watch was kept over his laptots; they were not allowed to paſs the ſecond court-yard, and they conſidered themſelves all as priſoners. M. Saugnier was at full liberty, but being very ill was obliged to be ſupported by two negroes.

There were but 17 laptots remaining of M. Saugnier's crew, four of whom were diſabled; for when the veſſel was wrecked, and the men endeavouring to ſave the powder, a barrel containing four pounds blew up upon deck. The man who had it in his hands was ſo deſperately wounded that he died the next day, and the bodies of the three others who were near him were ſo miſerably ſcorched that only one of them recovered. The reſt were with Scipio, to carry on the ſlave-trade. A courier was diſpatched to Scipio; likewiſe to M. Vigneux's captain, and the commandant of the King's ſhip called the Bienfaiſant, by M. Saugnier's orders, to appriſe them of his ſituation, for having but 13 laptots that were able to work, he could not make any attempt to weigh his veſſel; beſides, the Saracolets, who had cut the rigging and taken away the cordage, would not have ſuffered them to make ſuch an attempt. M. Saugnier was therefore obliged to wait for a reinforcement, to extricate himſelf from his embarraſſment. Six or ſeven reſolute laptots arrived in Baſca's long-boat; who, being well acquainted with their courage, had ſent them, with orders to attempt every thing for their aſſiſtance: they came at eleven o'clock in the morning, having travelled the whole night. They told M. Saugnier that they had ſeen his veſſel; that the Saracolets having entirely plundered her and taken away all her rigging, there was now no remedy for his miſfortune; that it now behoved him to look to his perſonal ſafety, ſince he was ſtill left at liberty; their ſloop, they deſired him to obſerve, was well armed; they were going, they added, to take the merchandize which M. Saugnier had left on board Mambao, and they adviſed him to endeavour by all means to embark with them. Having acquieſced, in about two hours he reached Mambao's veſſel. The guard, who ſaw him going out, did not oppoſe his paſſage, either through a ſuppoſition that he was too weak to attempt an eſcape, or owing perhaps to the conſideration and reſpect which they pay the Emperor of Morocco, and which might deter them from offering violence to a man who had belonged to him. Be the reaſon as it may, M. Saugnier reached the banks of the river without meeting any moleſtation, and from thence got aboard Mambao. In the evening he embarked with his merchandize. They kept on during the whole night; and on the 7th, about nine o'clock in the morning, reached the veſſel which was under the command of Baſca.

The village of Baquelle is exceedingly ſtrong and beautiful. The ſtreets are wide and ſtraight; the huts are all of earth, ſurrounded with great courts, and are almoſt all terraced. The gardens are delightful, and well ſituated: they offer to the view along the river the moſt agreeable of proſpects. This village contains about 3000 inhabitants; and if one may give the name of town to the habitations of theſe countries, Baquelle will certainly ſtand in the foremoſt rank. It is the beſt fortified of all that are ſituated along the banks of the Niger.

When M. Saugnier had taken a little reſt, he was informed of the arrival of Maſſe, a mulatto of Senegal, who was one of his gourmets. He had run away from Baquelle with his boat, carrying with him at the ſame time about 800 pounds of ivory, forty pieces of guiney-blues, a few muſquets, and a barrel, containing about 100 pound weight of gunpowder. Three reſolute laptots (among whom was Sagot) had been the companions of his flight. Two of theſe laptots were Saracolets. They had concealed the cloth in their knapſacks, and Maſſe, who was a dextrous fellow, had obtained from the lord of Baquelle permiſſion to follow M. Saugnier, by inſinuating to that prince, that ſince M. Saugnier was no longer in his power, he would do well to permit him to join him; that this action on the part of the prince would appeaſe his reſentment, and that as he was ignorant of the negro language, and that as he (Maſſe) ſerved him as interpreter, the prince could not adopt a better inſtrument to make him forgive and forget the paſt. Maſſe did not loſe his pains; and ſcarcely had he obtained this permiſſion, than without mentioning to any perſon his intended departure, he repaired to M. Saugnier's boat, which the people of the country imagined belonged to Mambao, and with all poſſible diligence embarked with the merchandize above mentioned. Scarcely had he ſet ſail, when he was purſued from the village of Baquelle by a body of men, who fired upon him, but were too late to prevent his eſcape. He reached the middle of the river, and ſailed the whole night without meeting any accident.

Maſſe, on his arrival on board the veſſel of Baſca, made enquiry after the King's ſhip; and having learnt that it was at no great diſtance, he propoſed to M. Saugnier to embark on board the boat, in order to overtake her. This M. Saugnier immediately did, as his preſent ſituation was exceedingly diſagreeable.

He embarked with him in the night, having no more than the three laptots above mentioned. His ſwivels were in order, mounted upon the gunwale of the boat, and charged, in caſe of an attack. His people were all armed, each with a double-barrelled muſquet, and he proceeded, confiding entirely in their care. They were 37 hours under ſail. They arrived on the 14th, at ſeven in the morning, and went on board the Bienfaiſant, commanded by Thevenot, a wealthy inhabitant of Senegal.

Capt. Thevenot endeavoured, by his kind attentions to M. Saugnier, to mitigate his diſtreſs. His veſſel, fitted out ſolely for the purpoſe of paying the duties, was well armed and commodious. M. Saugnier was well lodged; had a good table, and being longer expoſed to the dew, nor to the ardour of the ſun, his fever, which was ſolely the conſequence of a weakneſs, ariſing from the continual fatigue he had ſo long undergone, viſibly abated. After having been eight days on board, it left him entirely. The river gradually lowering, and the veſſel drawing nine feet water, Thevenot determined to uſe the greateſt ſpeed to return and avoid the ſhoals, which are frequent in the river. Notwithſtanding his inceſſant care, together with the experience of the boatſwain, who was then on his 45th voyage, and the uninterrupted labour of the laptots, they made but little way: different obſtacles impeded their progreſs. To complete their miſfortunes, when they arrived at Saldee they were informed that a party of the Poules were determined to ſtop the convoy. This intelligence induced the captain to depart immediately, without ſtaying to take any millet on board. They touched the ground at the paſſage of the grand canal, ten leagues below Saldee. The Poules, who had ſeen them, came to wait for them near the Devil's-mouth: they hoped to ſurpriſe them here; but when they ſounded the two channels which run through this rock, every one ſet to work, and they ſoon diſengaged themſelves. The captain had taken care to put the cargo and trunks on a point of the rock which riſes in the middle of the river, nor could the Poules get at it to plunder. They loſt, however, the ſmall quantity of millet, which, according to cuſtom, is generally left on the Mooriſh coaſt, to lighten the veſſel when near this dangerous paſſage. The Bienfaiſant was the firſt veſſel which returned; but they were not without fears for the reſt: they diſpatched an expreſs by land, to inform the remainder of the convoy of the meaſures which had been taken to attack and ſurpriſe them; but this meſſenger, who was one of the tribe of the Poules, was better pleaſed to ſtop near the rock, and ſhare in the plunder of the convoy, than to warn the veſſels of the danger. They received no news from their companions, nor did they ſee any of the convoy, which made them fear that the whole had been ſtopped.

After having got clear of many ſand-banks, they ſtruck again on that of Haliburum. It then became neceſſary to lighten the veſſel, and they employed half the day in that buſineſs. At night they ſaw the boat of the Paul, Captain St. Jean. He had been attacked at the rock, but as his veſſel drew but little water, and his crew was numerous, he paſſed without loſs. He informed M. Saugnier that his partner Scipio, the day after his departure, had arrived at Baquelle; that he had weighed his veſſel, ſaved the cargo, and would be with them ſoon. On the 11th of December he arrived at Doumons, the general rendezvous of the convoy on their return from Galam.

On the arrival of M. Saugnier's courier at Tamboucanee, Scipio depoſited his merchandize on board the different Senegalian veſſels, and putting a ſtop to his traffic, came off with his laptots in the boat. Scipio inſtead of landing at Baquelle, went with his men to examine the veſſel which was left upon the rocks; from thence he repaired to Tuago, and preſented himſelf before the grand fouquet, made him a tender of his ſervices, and promiſed to ſpend his whole life with him. The prince, glad to engage a man of ſuch courage and reputation, received him with the greateſt politeneſs.

Scipio, finding him diſpoſed as he could wiſh, repreſented that he could not do him any eſſential ſervice, unleſs M. Saugnier's ſhip was firſt cleared from the rocks; that, by means of repairing the veſſel, he might expeditiouſly tranſport his troops where the war required them; that his neighbours, and the governors of the different provinces, would by this means be taught to hold him in greater fear, and learn to reſpect his authority; that Sirman himſelf would ſoon return to his duty, particularly when he ſhould perceive that the Senegalian laptots were united againſt him to bring him to ſubmiſſion. Theſe meaſures were approved of by the prince; and Scipio, in order to bring about his deſigns, recovered the cordage which the Saracolets had taken away; and with their aſſiſtance ſucceeded, after much labour, in heaving down the veſſel upon the ſand. He then requeſted the grand fouquet to reſtore him his laptots, who being more expert in naval matters than the Saracolets, would facilitate the repairs of the veſſel while the convoy remained; a thing impoſſible to effect after their departure for Senegal. The lord of Baquelle received an order, and let the laptots go. With their aſſiſtance, Scipio turned the ſhip keel upwards; and ſeveral Senegalian veſſels, among the reſt the Moor, coming by, he borrowed a ſufficient number of laptots, got her up again, after having repaired the damage her keel had ſuffered, diſmiſſed the Saracolets, who had been very uſeful to him, and made towards Baquelle. Being called upon to fulfil his enagements by the grand fouquet, he replied, that if the fouquet was king on land, he was monarch on the river, and now ready for battle: he diſdained, he ſaid, to be a ſlave to a negro king! The veſſel no longer leaked; Scipio, with none but his own laptots on board, moored her acroſs the principal paſſages of the river, and waited for the returned veſſels. He felt himſelf too much obliged to St. Jean to detain his laptots, and as ſoon as the veſſel had undergone her repairs ſent them back to him. He then forced the laptots belonging to the convoy to come on board him, and ſummoned the lord of Baquelle to reſtore him all the merchandize that he had purloined by trick, or taken by force. Amadi, at firſt, heſitated; but conſented the moment he ſaw Scipio was about to make a deſcent in order to ſet his village on fire, and to carry off whatever ſhould come in his way. He gave back the goods, of which M. Saugnier had taken an account in writing; and reſtored beſides two barrels of gunpowder, of 100 lb. weight each, which was forgot in the catalogue.

The Senegal captains were not inclined to expoſe their ſailors in M. Saugnier's behalf; but thoſe brave fellows, accuſtomed to fight under the command of Scipio, and acknowledging no other leader but him, could not reconcile to themſelves the idea of abandoning him. Beſides they had hopes of plunder in attacking the village of Baquelle, and they believed themſelves to be invincible under his orders. Every thing being in readineſs for the onſet, Scipio began to proceed down the river. The army of Tuago was already drawn out upon the bank. The grand fouquet wanted to take vengeance on Scipio, and hoped that with ſmall arms alone he ſhould be able to prevent his paſſage; but the balls only grazed the ſhip, the barricado kept Scipio's men in ſafety; and his ſwivels, from which ſeveral diſcharges were made, ſoon ſcattered the undiſciplined troops that tremblingly advanced againſt him. Without loſs of time, he continued his way as far as Yſanne, the reſidence of the principal miniſter of the almamy of the Poules. This man informed him, that the Tampſirs, diſſatiſfied with the diſtribution of the duties made by the almamy, were aſſembled together; that forming a numerous body, they waited at the rock for the return of the veſſels. Scipio determined anew either to conquer or die. He diſpatched ſeveral expreſſes to the other ſhips of the convoy, to prevail on them not to ſail but in a body, in order to repel the attacks of the Poules. As his veſſel drew too much water to wait for the convoy, he determined to ſail prepared for every event. His deſign was to make himſelf maſter of the paſſage; to reſiſt at that poſt every attempt of the enemy, and to wait there the arrival of the convoy. He hoped, with the aſſiſtance of the ſailors from Senegal, to repel the combined force of the Poules, and to indemnify himſelf for the loſſes of the voyage by the captures made on this people; but circumſtances changed his reſolution. His crew were conſiderably diminiſhed, having loſt five men; and M. Saugnier taken with him three, together with a gourmet: there now remained only 22 on board, the greater part of whom were ſo reduced by the fatigue attendant on ſuch a dangerous voyage, that little dependence could be placed on their aſſiſtance. In this dilemma he armed the negroes he had retaken on board of Mambao; and as they were his countrymen, being from Baabarn, he found no difficulty in determining them to fight, in caſe of an attack on the part of the Poules. Having thus reſolved, he advanced with confidence to that part of the river where he knew the negroes were waiting to plunder the ſhip. Four leagues before he arrived at the rock he caſt anchor, and took poſt in a wood with twelve reſolute laptots, in order to reconnoitre the motions of the enemy. Here he ſurpriſed two princes, who were going to join the forces of the Poules; carried them on board his veſſel, and put them in irons. He then weighed anchor, and appeared at ſeven in the morning in that part of the channel where the water was moſt deep.

As ſoon as he had reached the rock, he ſaw both ſides of the river lined with an innumerable multitude of Poules, ſhouting with joy, and preparing to oppoſe his paſſage. He remained, according to his firſt intention, the whole day inactive on board;

at night he ſounded the channel, found there was a foot leſs water than the veſſel drew. At day-light he retired into the ward-room, from whence he heard the exultations and threats of the Poules. He was now undetermined what part to act. His courage urged him to the battle, but he had not men enough to enable him to go on ſhore and repel his numerous enemies. He had recourſe then to ſtratagem, and ſucceeded. At ſun-ſet, after having obſerved the ſpot where the tampſirs that commanded the Poules were ſtationed, he ſwam on ſhore with a ſabre ſtuck in his girdle, and his muſquet on his head, accompanied by twelve of his crew. He attacked the Poules, who inſtantly fled, and took priſoners ſix princes, who were not able to make their eſcape. He then obliged them to ſwim to the veſſel, where they were put in irons.

The next morning the Poules, perceiving that ſeveral of their chiefs were wanting, ſent a man aboard: Scipio ſhewed the princes to their meſſenger, and deſired him to inform the tampſirs, that if they continued to attack and moleſt him in his buſineſs, he was determined to cut off the heads of the captives; that as for him, he did not fear them; that he would wait for the convoy, and that then, ſetting fire to his veſſel, he would open the paſs, and, aided by the Senegalians, maſſacre all the Poules that oppoſed him. When this reſolution was reported to the chiefs, they thought proper to ſend a ſecond meſſenger to Scipio, in order to tell him, that if he would reſtore the princes, he ſhould meet with no further moleſtation. But Scipio, not truſting to mere promiſes, refuſed to hearken to their requeſt. He aſſured them, that if he was not moleſted, he would liberate the priſoners as ſoon as he paſſed the rock; which ſatisfied the Poules, who now did not dare to interrupt his progreſs. During the courſe of two days the water lowered more and more every hour, and the paſſage became leſs and leſs practicable. In order to ſucceed, it was neceſſary to lighten the veſſel; but as there was no place to depoſit the merchandize, the banks of the river being covered with enemies, Scipio, in order to ſave the ſhip, agreed to give the tampſirs 30 pieces of guiney-blues, 14 double-barrelled muſquets, 14 barrels of gunpowder, and 10 fuſils of the better kind. As a ſurety for the performance of the capitulation, he required that the ſon of the tampſir who commanded the troops ſhould be put into his hands: this was inſtantly complied with; and the Poules themſelves aſſiſted him to get through this dangerous paſſage.

They remained ſix days at Doumons, waiting for the convoy; while ſeveral couriers were diſpatched to obtain intelligence, but to no purpoſe. Having concluded that the convoy was loſt, they continued their courſe to Senegal, being ſix veſſels in company. Scarcely had they arrived at Podor, when they received intelligence that the whole convoy had entered into a capitulation at the rock, and that they would ſoon appear in ſight; which three days after their arrival at Podor they found to be true.

In addition, however, to M. Saugnier's misfortunes, the veſſel aboard of which Scipio had left his merchandize at Tamboucanee was loſt, and that which contained his ivory pillaged at the rock.

The governor had appointed the marquis of Beccaria commandant of the fort Podor, in the room of M. Duchozel. He arrived the day on which M. Saugnier appeared before that place. M. Duchozel embarked with M. Saugnier; and alſo the company's agent at Podor. The latter would not proceed in the company's veſſels; and M. Saugnier received him on account of his ſituation, notwithſtanding the injuries he had received from the directors of Senegal. They ſet ſail from Podor with a fair and a ſtrong current, which ſoon brought them to the colony, where they arrived the 24th of December, 1786, after a tedious and diſagreeable voyage.

It is thought that Podor, on account of the air, is the moſt dangerous ſpot in all this part of Africa. The village, and the fort, are ſituated on the banks of the river, in the territory belonging to the Poules. The fort, which forms a circle, with four towers, was conſtructed by the Engliſh. It has no ditch, and being at the diſtance of 200 toiſes from the river, may, in caſe of hoſtilities with the Poules, eaſily be cut off from the water. It is conſequently of no utility, ſince it can neither protect the veſſels that paſs the river, nor be relieved by them. The unwholeſomeneſs of the air is occaſioned by the ſurrounding ſwamps, which are ſcarcely ever dried up.

M. Saugnier finding a return of his complaint, determined to return to France for the recovery of his health: accordingly he waited an opportunity, and Capt. Clouet Dubuiſon, of Havre, commander of the Furet, which had been repaired, (and which, after remaining a month at Goree, and the Cape de Verd Iſlands, was to proceed directly for Havre) having offered him a paſſage, he accepted it.

About eleven o'clock they got out to ſea, and the next day at eight in the morning anchored in the harbour of Goree. This iſland is only a deſert rock, and totally unproductive. There are, however, a few gardens, which furniſh a little ſallad. It is deſtitute of water, although indeed there are three ſmall ſprings on the mountain, which are guarded with great care, reſerved for the commandant, and furniſh water only for his uſe. The commandants are often ſo inhuman as to refuſe water to their countrymen, even when they have more than they have occaſion for themſelves.

Scarcely had the Furet ſet ſail before M. Saugnier obſerved on ſhore a ſailor of a very ſuſpicious appearance. Having him ſeized by the negroes, and brought before the commandant, he acknowledged that he had concealed himſelf, in order to avoid being an accomplice in the depredations committed by a Bermudian veſſel, that, under pretext of taking in proviſions, had put in for a few days to Goree. The depoſition of this man alarmed M. Saugnier exceedingly; he apprehended that this ſhip (which in fact was a pirate, but which could not be detected, as all her credentials were in due form,) intended to attack the Furet. This was really the caſe; but that veſſel being an excellent ſailer, would not let the pirate come up with her; ſhe ran under the cannon of the fort, and they perceived the Bermudian ſheer off.

M. Saugnier ſet off by land from Goree the 9th of April in the evening, and arrived at Dacar, where he put up for the night at the houſe of the marabou of the village: next morning he ſet out upon his journey, eſcorted by his ſon, and a negro of Senegal named Wally. He had an Arabian horſe, that he ſeldom rode, being accompanied by the elder Floquet, who had been to Goree in the Bayonnaiſe. They arrived on the 14th about nine o'clock in the evening, after a journey of five days, conſtantly ſleeping in the open air, walking along the ſea ſhore, and broiling under a burning ſun. It was too late to enter the colony; nevertheleſs Saerguy, one of their gourmets in the Galam voyage, carried him thither in his canoe, unperceived by the centinels.

At this time M. Saugnier's health was viſibly mending, and this journey, far from weakening, had re-eſtabliſhed his ſtrength. Being, however, perplexed with croſſes, another relapſe was the conſequence, and when the ſhip ſet ſail on the 30th of June, 1786, he was carried on board in a ſtate of inſenſibility. Two hours after they weighed anchor. The voyage, though long, was proſperous; and M. Saugnier entirely recovered his health on the paſſage, and on the 23d of Auguſt, 1786, they arrived ſafe at L'Orient.

BOOK II.

CHAPTER I.

Narrative of M. de Briſſon—He embarks for Senegal, on board the St. Catherine—The Captain and his Mate pay no Attention to his Cautions—They ſtrike—Maſts cut away—Water comes into the Cabin—Captain diſmayed—Briſſon ſtrives to raiſe his Spirits—Long-Boat hoiſted out—Overſet—Thrown upon the Beach—Briſſon ſwims to the Captain, &c.—Get the Boat afloat—All landed—Their Adventures—Meet Inhabitants—Some of Briſſon's Companions wounded—Stripped, &c.—Briſſon's Behaviour to a Prieſt—Jealouſy and Diſcord of the Savages—Briſſon, &c. aſſaſſinated—Seized—A Contention—An Arab offers to ſtab Briſſon—The ſtrange Manner by which he is prevented—Meets the Companions he had loſt—Cruelty of the Women.

IN the month of June, 1785, M. de Briſſon received orders from the Marſhal De Caſtries, miniſter and ſecretary of ſtate for the department of the marine, to embark on board the St. Catherine for Senegal, under the command of Capt. le Turc.

Having proceeded from the coaſt of France to the Canaries, on the 10th of July they paſſed between thoſe iſlands and that of Palma.

Briſſon, apprehenſive of the danger to which veſſels are expoſed in thoſe latitudes from the ſtrength of the current, frequently warned the captain; but neither he nor his mate paid proper attention to thoſe neceſſary precautions; in conſequence of which the veſſel ſtruck, and they found themſelves involved in a kind of baſon formed by rocks: the maſts were immediately cut away to lighten the veſſel, but in vain, for the water had already found its way into the cabin.

Captain le Turc was exceedingly diſmayed, and Briſſon did every thing in his power to raiſe his drooping ſpirits, but his deſpondency ſtill continued: however M. Yan, the ſecond mate, M. Suret, a paſſenger, with three Engliſh ſailors and others, animated by the example of Briſſon, hoiſted out the long-boat, and during a tedious night they ſtruggled againſt a violent ſea, in hopes when the morning appeared they might be able to land in ſafety on the beach.

The captain, mate, and 3-4ths of the crew, who wanted courage to try the only chance which remained to ſave them, ſtaid in the veſſel, and threw a tow rope into the boat, in order to haul her back again, in caſe the adventurers ſucceeded: but they had ſcarce touched the water with their oars, when, on account of the eddy of the ſea, they were obliged to drop them: the boat now overſet, the waves diſperſed, and they were all thrown upon the beach, except one M. Devoize, whom Briſſon ſaved from being drowned.

Briſſon and Yan leaped into the water, and ſwam to their wretched companions who remained on board the wreck, and whom they ſoon prevailed upon to get the boat afloat, but which they did not effect without a great deal of trouble; an ample compenſation, however, attended their labour, as all the crew were preſently got on ſhore.

As ſoon as they had landed, they climbed up the rocks, in order to ſee whereabouts they were; for none of them could tell what diſtance the land might be from Senegal. On the top of theſe rocks they perceived an immenſe plain, covered with white ſand; over which there were ſome creeping plants, reſembling the branches of coral. There were alſo ſome hills at a diſtance, covered with a kind of wild heath, and which appeared like a wood of ſome extent: advancing towards theſe hills, they ſaw ſome camels dung upon the ground, and ſoon after perceived ſeveral grazing in different places. They were then ſure that this diſtrict was inhabited, and felt themſelves more at eaſe after the diſcovery; for not knowing among what people their fate had conducted them, they were the happier on approaching human habitations, as hunger and thirſt, which began to be importunate, might have driven them to direful extremities.

They now diſcovered ſome children at a diſtance, haſting to collect their herds of goats, and drive them away. Briſſon immediately concluded that they had been deſcried, and that their appearance had excited ſome apprehenſion. The cries of the children ſpread the alarm through the neighbouring camps, and they ſoon ſaw the inhabitants advancing to meet them. No ſooner did they make out what they were, than they ſeparated, began to ſkip and dance upon the ſand, covered their faces with their hands, and howled and cried in the moſt dreadful manner; this was enough to convince Briſſon and his party that they were little acquainted with European faces. Their geſtures, and the meaſures they took to ſurround the crew, did not afford a favourable preſage: Briſſon, however, cautioned his friends not to ſeparate, but to walk on in an orderly manner, until he ſhould be near enough to make himſelf heard. Having in former voyages to Senegal learnt a few words of Arabic, from which he hoped to derive much advantage on the preſent occaſion; accordingly, he began by tying a white handkerchief to the end of his cane, in the form of a flag, in hopes that they might have ſome knowledge of this ſignal, eſpecially if any of them had ever been at Senegal, or ſeen ſhipping on their coaſt.

As ſoon as they approached the ſavages, ſome of Briſſon's companions, among whom were the firſt and ſecond mates, diſperſed; but they were immediately ſurrounded, and ſeized by the collar. It was not till that moment, when the rays of the ſun were reflected from the poliſhed ſteel of their daggers, that they diſcovered them to be armed; which not having perceived before, Briſſon had advanced without fear. The two unfortunate men, who had been carried off, not making their appearance again, all his efforts to ſtop the others became fruitleſs: fear took poſſeſſion of their minds; they uttered unanimous cries of deſpair, and ran off in various directions. The Arabs, armed with weighty cutlaſſes, and little maces, ruſhed on them with incredible ferocity; and Briſſon had ſoon the misfortune to ſee ſome of them wounded, and others ſtripped naked, and ſtretched out almoſt breathleſs on the ſand.

Briſſon, in the midſt of this horrible maſſacre, perceiving an unarmed Arab, and from his dreſs taking him for one of thoſe who had accompanied Prince Allicoury, in a viſit he had formerly made on the iſland of St. Louis, immediately ran to throw himſelf into his arms; but the diſdain with which he viewed Briſſon and his party ſoon convinced them that they were not leſs unfortunate than the reſt: having taken Briſſon by the hand, he looked at it with attention, counted his fingers, and then put his hand into the hollow of his, making at the ſame time ſeveral motions with his head. He then aſked him who he was, what he came to do there, and how he had found his way thither. Briſſon traced the form of a ſhip upon the ſand, and by the means of a few Arabic words he was acquainted with, aſſiſted with ſigns, made him underſtand that he ſolicited his aſſiſtance to conduct them to the place of their deſtination: he added, that he had about him wherewith to recompenſe his trouble; and this laſt article he ſeemed to underſtand better than the preceding ones; for immediately after he locked his fingers in Briſſon's, as an aſſurance that from that moment they were cloſely connected; and told him, with equal haſte, to deliver to him the effects of which he had juſt ſpoken. Briſſon gave him two very handſome watches, with the chains belonging to them, a gold ſtock-buckle, two pair of ſilver buckles, a ring ſet with brilliants, a ſilver cup, fork, and ſpoon, and two hundred livres in ſpecie. With great care, and ſtill greater myſtery, he hid his treaſure in his blue ſhirt, promiſing Briſſon not to abandon him.

As ſoon as the Arab's booty was ſecure, he aſked on what part of the coaſt they had been ſhipwrecked. Briſſon pointed it out to him; and he immediately called ſeveral of his people, and told them to follow him. From the manner in which they addreſſed him, Briſſon perceived that his protector was a man of conſequence; which afterwards proved to be the caſe, as he was their *talbe* or prieſt.

As ſoon as they arrived at the ſea-ſide, they began to utter loud cries of joy; but the jealouſy, viſible in their faces, ſoon prompted them to a ſpirit of diſcord. They determined on making Briſſon and his companions ſwim on board, and get out of the ſhip every thing it was poſſible to ſave; but they all declined it, on the pretence of not ſwimming, and they were obliged to go aboard themſelves: while thoſe who remained aſhore expreſſed the moſt jealous apprehenſions of their ſucceſs, particularly the women.

In the mean time the news of the wreck was already ſpread over the country; and the greedy ſavages, whoſe numbers could not fail to excite ſtill further jealouſy, were ſeen running down from every quarter: they ſoon came to blows, and ſeveral loſt their lives. The women, enraged at not being able to plunder the veſſel, fell upon the ſuffering crew, and tore off the ſmall remains of clothes they had upon their backs: they were particularly attentive to Briſſon's, which he had preſerved till then, and which they thought deſerved a preference.

Briſſon's maſter, perceiving the number of Arabs was every moment increaſing, called two of his friends, whom he very wiſely admitted to the partnerſhip of twelve ſhipwrecked men that had put themſelves under his protection. This was the beſt means of acquiring partizans, and of preſerving the portion he had reſerved for himſelf. After having made the neceſſary ſtipulations, as well for ſharing what had already been got out of the ſhip, as for the diviſion of the ſlaves that had been made, he withdrew from the crowd by way of ſecuring Briſſon and his party againſt any inſult. The hut wherein they were lodged, or rather heaped upon one another, was miſerably erected, and covered with moſs.

Their maſter's firſt care was to ſearch them ſcrupulouſly, for fear they ſhould ſtill have any thing concealed. He took away even their ſhirts and handkerchiefs, giving them to underſtand that if *he* did not, ſome other would. However, upon Briſſon's declaring that he had given him enough already, he deſiſted from ſtripping him.

The name of their maſter was Sidy Mahammet del Zouza; his tribe that of Labdeſſeba; he avoided the Ouadelims becauſe they did not live with them on friendly terms. Briſſon was very much grieved to find that they had fallen into the hands of the moſt ferocious among the inhabitants of the Deſerts of Arabia. He foreſaw that they ſhould have nothing but hardſhips and trouble to undergo, till happily delivered.

Briſſon's maſter having now buried with great caution and care the treaſure he had received, returned to the beach to ſee if there was aught coming to him from the plunder of the wreck. In the mean time a band of Ouadelims came and beſieged their hut: when they had examined and plundered every thing, they laid violent hands upon Briſſon and his companions. Briſſon was ſeized by two, who took him by the arms and dragged him firſt one way and then another: the little of his dreſs which remained was now an object of jealouſy and fury. Others however advancing, ſurrounded and carried him off: when they had ſtripped him of his ſhirt and neck-kerchief, they drove him behind a heap of ſand, and indulged their utmoſt cruelty: the wretched Briſſon concluded himſelf utterly loſt, eſpecially as they were now preparing cords to tie him. During this mournful dilemma, one of his maſter's aſſociates haſtened up, charged them with having committed unheard-of outrages in the hut of Sidy Mahammet, and conjured them to ſtop. This emiſſary further declared, that the prieſt being incenſed at their having trod down the holy books of their religion, were immediately to be brought to trial for ſuch ſacrilegious conduct: the only way to appeaſe his anger and prevent any fatal conſequences, was to reſtore him his ſlave. This menace had the deſired effect, and Briſſon having been ſeparated from his wretched companions, was now delivered up to the emiſſary, whoſe name was Nouegem: he conducted him immediately to the place where the council was aſſembled. As ſoon as he introduced Briſſon, he requeſted that for the trouble he was at in carrying him off, he ſhould be one of his ſlaves; adding, that he had the greateſt right to him, for that he ſaw him deliver to Sidy Mahammet, a quantity of valuable effects. Briſſon was now ſurrounded by a multitude of women and children, who continued gazing at him with the greateſt attention.

The prieſt enraged at his emiſſary's claim, and particularly at his having diſcovered the effects, evinced the greateſt anger and indignation, uttering the ſevereſt menaces if Briſſon was not reſtored to him. Upon this Nouegem ſwelled with pride and vexation, and drawing his dagger, offered to kill Briſſon, ſince he could not be his. The prieſt now covered Briſſon with his long ſtring of 115 ſmall black balls, ſomewhat reſembling the roſaries which the catholics uſe, and then took out a little book which hung to his girdle, while the women aſſiſted in recovering Briſſon from the hands of Nouegem, and delivering him up to the prieſt, for fear he ſhould pronounce an anathema againſt Nouegem, of which the common people are in great awe of.

Some little diſtance Briſſon perceived his companions whom he deſpaired of ever ſeeing again. They had ate nothing for two days; nor was Briſſon leſs exhauſted than they; but the critical circumſtances in which he had found himſelf, had ſo agitated his ſpirits, that he had in a manner loſt the faculty of feeling the want by which he was ſo hardly preſſed.

As ſoon as he recovered himſelf, he reflected on the danger from which he had ſo fortunately eſcaped; and his emotion was ſo great, that he could not refrain from weeping. He endeavoured to conceal from every eye this teſtimony of his ſenſibility and grief: but ſome women perceiving it, inſtead of being moved to compaſſion, threw ſand in his eyes, as they ſaid, to wipe away his tears.

During three days of their ſlavery, they had as yet had nothing to eat but a little meal, ſpoiled by the ſalt water, and rendered ſtill more deteſtable by a mixture of barley-meal, that had been long kept in goat-ſkins; and even this wretched repaſt was interrupted by cries of alarm, which they heard at ſome diſtance.

One of Sidy Mahammet's friends ran up to him, to adviſe him to hide himſelf as faſt as poſſible, as the Ouadelims were pouring in from all quarters, with the intention of carrying off what his horde had captured.

A place of rendezvous was agreed upon; after which they went and hid themſelves behind ſome hillocks of ſand, where they remained till ſome Arabs of a different tribe, but equally intereſted in the preſervation of their plunder, came to join them, and reinforce their band. A guide, who had gone before them, had placed ſmall pyramids of ſtones from diſtance to diſtance, to point out the road they were to follow, and to prevent their falling into the midſt of ſome hoſtile horde, particularly that of the Ouadelims. Theſe people, indeed, are univerſally ſo greedy and rapacious, that friends or enemies, they are almoſt equally to be feared. At break of day, all thoſe that had Chriſtian ſlaves, having joined them, they ſet off on their march for the inland country, where the families of their reſpective maſters reſided.

All this while Briſſon ſuffered much, eſpecially from thirſt. It became ſo painful to them to move their tongues, that they did not dare to aſk one another any queſtions. They were obliged to go the ſame pace as the camels, which were hurried on at a rapid rate; and their maſters, from the fear of their being taken from them, marched and countermarched them ſo many different ways, that it was fifteen days before they reached their habitation, while, by following the direct road, they ſhould have arrived there in five at moſt.

After having climbed up mountains of a prodigious height, and entirely covered with ſmall grey ſtones as ſharp as flints, they deſcended into a ſandy bottom, thickly ſown with prickly thiſtles. There they ſlackened their pace: the ſoles of their feet were by this time all over blood, and it became impoſſible for them to get on any further: Briſſon's maſter was obliged to take him up behind him on his camel; but this attention on his part, ſo far from being a relief to him, was the cauſe of his ſuffering unheard-of torments. The camel's pace is naturally very heavy, and his trot exceedingly hard. As he was naked, he had nothing between him and the animal's bare back, ſo that in a ſhort time he was dreadfully galled. His blood ſtreamed down the flanks of the camel: but this ſpectacle, inſtead of exciting the ſenſibility and compaſſion of theſe barbarians, ſerved them as matter of amuſement. They made a ſport of his ſufferings; and that they might enjoy it the better, urged on the beaſts upon which they were mounted. His ſores would, no doubt, have become incurable, if he had not come to a violent, though neceſſary reſolution, of letting himſelf fall upon the ſand. All the hurt he met with in falling, was the being pricked from head to foot by the thiſtles.

When night was approaching, they perceived a very thick ſmoke, and Briſſon thought they were arrived at ſome hamlet where they ſhould find ſomething to eat, and above all ſomething to drink; but he ſoon ſaw that it was nothing but underwood, behind which their guide had taken up his lodging. Briſſon went and ſtretched himſelf out behind a buſh, and there waited for death; but ſcarcely had he laid down, when an Arab of his company came to make him get up and unload his camel. Briſſon was ſo incenſed at the manner in which this man gave him orders, that he anſwered him without any ceremony. Immediately he ſnatched off his head an old ſailor's hat, that had been given to Briſſon inſtead of his own, ſpit upon it as a mark of contempt, and ſeized him very roughly by the arm to drag him towards the camel. As ſoon as he laid his hand upon Briſſon, he was no longer maſter of his reſentment: he gave him a blow in the face with his fiſt; and diſengaging himſelf from his hands, took up a ſtick with a lance at the end, ran up to ſtrike him, but he took to his heels, and thus eſcaped the effects of Briſſon's anger.

At the ſame time he perceived his maſter advancing towards him. Not knowing his deſign, Briſſon called out to him, that if his intention was to avenge his countryman, he would find him prepared to go any length, rather can ſuffer himſelf to be ſtruck. This reſolution and threats made him laugh; however, he diſpelled his ſlave's apprehenſions, by telling him he had nothing to fear. This adventure made him imagine that with firmneſs he might avoid a great deal of ill-treatment, to which he could not fail of being expoſed if he ſhewed any ſigns of fear, and he often experienced afterwards that this idea was well-founded.

He now ſaw preparations made which gave him a great deal of uneaſineſs. Flints were heated in a large kind of furnace: he ſaw a great ſtone, which was lying under a buſh, taken up; a hole was dug in the earth, and the Arabs frequently repeating his name, burſt into violent fits of laughter. At length they called him, and made him draw near the hole they had juſt dug. He whom Briſſon had beat made him a number of ſigns with his hand, paſſing it backwards and forwards along his neck, as if he was going to cut off his head, or meant to make him underſtand that he ſhould loſe his. Determined as Briſſon was to make a ſtout reſiſtance, all theſe geſtures excited very unpleaſant feelings: however, on approaching the cavity, he ſaw a leathern bottle, a little bag containing barley-meal, and a goat that had been lately killed, taken out of it. The ſight of theſe proviſions reſtored him to his tranquillity, although he was ignorant of the uſe to which the heated flints were to be applied. At length he ſaw a wooden veſſel, in which ſome barley-meal had been thrown, filled with water; and the heated pebbles, thrown into it, ſerved to make it boil. It was thus that their maſters made a kind of paſte, which they kneaded in their hands, and ſwallowed without chewing. As to the ſlaves, their repaſt conſiſted of the ſame meal, mixed up with water: it was thrown upon a carpet, which ſerved their maſter to put under his feet during the prayer, and as a mattraſs at night. After having for a long time kneaded this paſte, he delivered it to Briſſon to divide it with his fellow ſlaves. It is impoſſible to conceive how nauſeous it was to the taſte. The water with which it was made had been procured upon the ſea-ſide, and then incloſed in a raw goat's-ſkin: to prevent it from corrupting, a kind of tar had been put into it, and had given it a moſt horrid ſmell. The ſame water was given them for their drink, and bad as it was, in very ſmall quantities.

The Arab whom Briſſon ſtruck, hearing that he complained, gave him the remains of his paſte, and told him that the next day they ſhould eat the goat, which had been killed on purpoſe for them, as he had given him to underſtand by his ſigns. Briſſon teſtified to him, half by words and half by geſtures, his great ſurpriſe at the finding of theſe proviſions; and he employed the ſame language to tell him that the guide, who had gone on before them, had procured them in a neighbouring hamlet, and had hid them under ground, to conceal them from the ſight of the Moors, in caſe any ſhould paſs that way. When their repaſt was over, each of them retired behind a buſh, and lay down to repoſe.

CHAPTER II.

Further Miſfortunes of Briſſon during his Captivity—Cuſtoms of the Arabs—Women worſe than the Men—They torment two of Briſſon's Companions—Account of the extraordinary Plains they traverſed over towards the Eaſt—Kindneſs of Sidy Salem to the Slaves—Briſſon miſtakes it—Renew their March—Diſcover a Hamlet—Briſſon's Hope of obtaining his Liberty—Two of his Companions cruelly beaten—The Reaſon—Briſſon's Courage on the Occaſion—Quarrels with his Maſter—His Maſter endeavours to appeaſe him—Briſſon's wretched Situation—Cruel Uſage, &c.—All the Work falls upon him—Delivers a Letter for the Conſul at Soira to a Jewiſh Merchant—Real Character of Sidy Mahammet—Briſſon's Hope vaniſhes—Unhappy Fate of the Second Captain—Briſſon's Health impaired.

EARLY the next day Briſſon, and the reſt of the unhappy ſlaves, were commanded by their maſters to aſſemble and load their camels. This being done, they continued their journey, having but a ſcanty ſtock of proviſions with them. About noon they halted in a plain, where they did not find a ſingle tree to ſhade them from the rays of the ſun, which came down perpendicularly upon their heads. They were now employed in unloading the camels, and in tearing up roots to make a fire; a piece of buſineſs the more diſagreeable, as in this country all the trees, roots, and ſhrubs are covered with thorns. As ſoon as the fire had heated the ſand, the goat was entirely covered with it, and they continued to feed the flames, while their maſters regaled themſelves with the raw greaſe, which they conſidered as a great dainty. As ſoon as the meat was dreſſed, it was taken up; and the Arabs, without giving themſelves the time to take off the ſand that was ſticking to it, devoured it with incredible voracity. After having well gnawed the bones, they made uſe of their nails, the better to tear away the little remaining fleſh; they then threw them to their ſlaves, enjoining them to eat with diſpatch, and reload the camels, that they might renew their march without loſs of time.

When the ſun was near ſetting, by the light of its fiery rays (for in this country the ſun almoſt always ſets in a red horizon) they diſcovered tents ſcattered here and there upon a riſing ground, and flocks and herds returning from paſture. The inhabitants of the camp they were approaching came out in crowds to meet them; but, far from practiſing the kind laws of hoſpitality in their regard, they loaded them with abuſe, and made them ſuffer the moſt inhuman treatment; two of Briſſon's companions were reduced to a moſt dreadful ſtate: the women eſpecially, far more ferocious than the men, took a pleaſure in tormenting them.

Briſſon, having removed to a little diſtance from his camel, perceived all on a ſudden a man level a double-barrelled gun at him; upon which he preſented his breaſt to him, and bad him fire. This act of firmneſs, to which he was no doubt little accuſtomed, aſtoniſhed him, and his ſurpriſe contributed to ſtrengthen Briſſon's idea, that an appearance of not fearing theſe people keeps them in awe. He now approached the man, when a ſtone, thrown by an unknown hand, but which he ſuſpected to be that of a woman, ſtruck him on the head: he was ſtunned for a moment; as ſoon as he recovered his ſenſes, he fell into a violent rage, and called out for vengeance. This was enough to ſpread fright and terror among the children; and even the ſavages, who were come out to meet them, not knowing what might be the matter, took flight. One of them, however, before he retired, ſtruck Briſſon on the breaſt with the butt-end of a muſquet, and made him vomit blood.

They ſtaid but one day in this canton, the inhabitants of which, however ill-diſpoſed in the beginning, were good enough to give them proviſions for three or four days. The plains they traverſed, in advancing towards the eaſt, were covered with little pebbles, as white as ſnow, and as round and flat as a lentil. While walking, they heard a hollow ſound beneath their feet, as if the ground had been excavated. Theſe regions afford no variety, the country being entirely flat, and not producing any plant whatever. The horizon is there obſcured by a reddiſh vapour. It looks as if there were burning volcanoes on every ſide. The little pebbles ſting the feet like ſparks of fire: neither bird, nor inſect, is ſeen in the air: a profound ſilence, that has ſomething dreadful in it, prevails. If now and then a ſmall breeze ariſe, the traveller immediately feels extreme laſſitude; his lips crack, his ſkin is parched up, and little pimples, that occaſion a very painful ſmarting, cover his body. The rays of the ſun are likewiſe ſo fierce, that the ſight is thereby exceedingly endangered.

They proceeded from this immenſe plain into a ſecond, which the wind had furrowed from diſtance to diſtance with a firm ſand of a reddiſh colour. Some odoriferous plants, which reared their heads above the ridges of the furrows, were inſtantly devoured by the camels, who were as hungry as their maſters. They had the good fortune, in quitting this ſandy plain, to find a bottom ſurrounded with mountains, the ſoil of which was white, and of a marly nature. It was in this kind of valley, at the foot of ſome broom, forming a kind of bower with its interwoven branches, that they met with water to quench their raging thirſt. They drank it with the greateſt goût, although very bitter, covered with green moſs, and in ſmell very offenſive.

In the evening they reached a horde that was encamped at the diſtance of a few leagues. Here they met a very good reception; the road to other habitations was pointed out to them, and they were told that they ſhould meet with all the neceſſary aſſiſtance to enable them to reach the reſidence of their maſters. This happened very lucky, as their conductors had gone aſtray.

The brother-in-law of Briſſon's maſter, who was one of the chiefs of the horde, took particular care of all the ſlaves. He ordered camel's milk, and oſtrich's fleſh dried in the ſun, and chopped up ſmall, to be given them. He was particularly kind to Briſſon, and propoſed purchaſing him of his brother, who had been long his debtor; but this propoſal made Briſſon tremble, for it ſeemed to threaten him with a long captivity. He therefore ran in haſte to acquaint his maſter with the intentions of his brother-in-law, and begged him not to conſent to any ſuch arrangement. Briſſon alſo gave him to underſtand that his ranſom would amount to more than his brother would give him, who aſſured him that he ſhould not leave him, except to go to Morocco or Senegal, which ſhould be ere long. This hope filled Briſſon with inexpreſſible joy: however, notwithſtanding his grateful ſenſe of Sidy Salem's kind behaviour, his propoſal left unpleaſant apprehenſions on his mind. This Sidy Salem perceived, and told Briſſon that he might one day repent the not having accepted his offers.

They reſted three days among the Arabs of the horde called Larouſſye, and then ſet off on their march, to advance further up the country, where they were to meet the families of their leaders. After ſixteen days fatigue, and the moſt dreadful want, they arrived quite exhauſted and worn out.

Early in the morning they perceived a hamlet that promiſed at firſt ſight a delightful reſidence. Several tents ſpread under tufted trees, and innumerable flocks and herds feeding upon the hills, made this place look like the retreat of happineſs and peace; but, on a nearer approach, it had a different appearance. The trees which they admired at a diſtance, were old gum trees; and their boughs, thick-ſet with thorns, rendered the ſhade they diffuſed about them inacceſſible.

They were now met by ſeveral black ſlaves, who are generally employed to tend the camels, theſe men kiſſed their feet, and enquired about their welfare; while the children, at a greater diſtance, made the air re-echo with their joyful cries, and the women ſtanding reſpectfully at the entrance of their tents, waited for their huſbands. As they approached, their wives advanced with a ſubmiſſive air, laid their right hand upon their huſbands' heads, kiſſed it, and threw themſelves proſtrate on the ground. When this ceremony was over, they caſt on Briſſon and his companions a look of curioſity, and began immediately to load them with abuſe. The children, following their example, pinched them, pulled out their hair, and tore their fleſh with their nails.

The maſters now divided their ſlaves. When Sidy Mahammet had received the careſſes of all his family, Briſſon aſked him which of the women that ſurrounded him was his favourite: he ſhewed her to him; and Briſſon approached to give her two handfuls of cloves, that his maſter had carefully preſerved, on purpoſe that by offering them to her Briſſon might attract a more favourable notice. Briſſon knew that the Mooriſh women were paſſionately fond of odours, particularly of that of cloves. However, ſhe received his preſent with inſulting haughtineſs, and drove him from her tent with contempt. A ſhort time after this woman came to order Meſſ. Devoiſe, Baudré, and Briſſon, who had fallen to her huſband's lot, to unload the camels, to clean a kind of kettle, and to go and tear up roots to make a fire. While ſhe was come to make known her will to them, her huſband had placed himſelf on the knees of one of his concubines, where he had fallen faſt aſleep.

Briſſon having returned from making faggots ſaw two of his companions cruelly beaten, and ſtretched out upon the ſand. They had been treated thus, becauſe, their ſtrength being entirely exhauſted, they had not been able to fulfil the taſk aſſigned them. Briſſon awaked his maſter with redoubled cries, reminded him of the promiſe he made him, and begged him to conduct him without delay to Senegal or to Morocco; otherwiſe he declared that, though it coſt him his life, he would have him robbed of all the valuable effects he delivered to him.

His maſter now became very uneaſy on account of the approach of ſeveral of his neighbours, who were witneſſes to the vehemence of his anger, for fear Briſſon ſhould recount the number of the effects he delivered to him. His maſter therefore came to him, took him by the arm, and puſhed him haſtily into his tent, deſiring him not to make ſo much noiſe, and promiſing him a porringer of milk; upon Briſſon's deſiring him to carry it to his companions, he anſwered he was going to give them ſome, and therefore begged him to be quiet. Sidy now, in the preſence of Briſſon, forbad his wife to require him to do the leaſt hard work, and alſo forbad Briſſon to obey her. He likewiſe ordered ſome barley to be boiled for the ſlaves.

It was now the end of Auguſt and there was no ſign of any travelling preparations. Briſſon had already aſked Sidy Mahammet what he was waiting for to conduct him to Senegal. He anſwered that he was looking out for two ſtout and vigorous camels, that might be able to bear the fatigue of the journey, and that they ſhould ſet off as ſoon as he could procure them. Briſſon was the more deſirous of expedition, as the nights began to be very cool; and the abundant dew wetted them even behind the buſhes, which ſerved for a retreat.

Briſſon applied again to his maſter, who anſwered in ſuch a way, as to perſuade him of every thing thought proper.

The flocks, which were now famiſhed, could no longer find paſture; and in the evening on their return, the ewes and goats brought back their udders almoſt empty. It was their milk, however, and that of the camels, that was to ſerve as the ſupport of a numerous family. Of courſe the portion of the ſlaves was diminiſhed, and they received their ſcanty allowances after the dogs were ſerved, and in their very diſhes.

While Briſſon one evening was coming back with his flock, one of his ewes brought forth a lamb upon the declivity of a hill. He took it in his arms, and carried it with equal haſte and care to his maſter's favourite. He preſented it to her, as ſoon as he perceived her, thinking ſhe would receive it with the ſame pleaſure ſhe had always teſtified on ſimilar occaſions. He aſked her at the ſame time if ſhe would give him the firſt of the mother's milk, according to their cuſtom of giving it to him who has the care of the flock. By way of anſwer, ſhe threw a knife at his legs, drove him out of her tent with contempt, and loaded him with abuſe. Her huſband, witneſs to this brutality, came and told him, that he would make him amends, by giving him a larger quantity of milk. He always believed his maſter; but how great was his aſtoniſhment, in paſſing behind the tent, to hear the villain laughing with his wife at the blow ſhe had juſt given him.

The month of October had now nearly expired, and not a drop of water as yet fallen. Briſſon's ſituation became more wretched every day: he had nothing but a ſorry bit of packing cloth round his waiſt. The plains, vallies, every thing was parched up, and nothing remained for the nouriſhment of the cattle: the ſeaſon was far advanced. For three years, the heavens had refuſed its rain to the inhabitants of the deſerts. A univerſal deſolation prevailed; when an Arab from a diſtant country came to tell them, that abundant rains had fallen in ſeveral cantons. Joy immediately ſucceeded to fear and grief; every one rolled up his tent, and all ſet off together for the newly-watered country. This was the thirtieth time that they changed their abode. Briſſon was always employed to ſet up and ſpread the tents, and load the baggage: often he was obliged to carry heavy burthens, to relieve the camels; and he thought himſelf happy, if the flocks followed in good order, and did not give him the trouble of collecting them.

His companions were ſo exhauſted, that they could do nothing; all the work conſequently fell upon him, and he was obliged to divide with them the ſurplus of food that he procured by endeavouring to make himſelf uſeful; for as they were uſeleſs, the Arabs gave them little or nothing to eat.

At length they arrived at the place ſo much deſired, from whence Briſſon hoped ſoon to ſet off to enjoy his liberty; but his maſter, who till then had combined the moſt perſuaſive language with the blackeſt deceit, now ceaſed his diſſimulation, and openly acted the tyrant.

They were encamped on ſand ſo wet, that the mere preſſure of their bodies made the water ſpring up in conſiderable quantities. The hour of milking the camels being come, Briſſon was called to receive his portion, and that of his companions: the latter ſeemed to be larger than uſual; but on taſting it, they perceived that the augmentation was nothing but rain water, of which the doſe was every day ſo much increaſed, that they had ſoon nothing but water a little whitened with milk, which weakened them to an incredible degree, and reduced them to the hard neceſſity of ſeeking their food with the cattle. The wild plants that they trod under foot, and raw ſnails, were from that time almoſt their only aliment till the moment of their deliverance. They were now put to new fatigues: Briſſon was charged to yoke the camels to the plough, to till the ground, and to ſow the ſeed; and his maſter, not content with employing him in his own ſervice, hired him out to other Arabs for a portion of milk. Sidy, being often upbraided by Briſſon, and likewiſe by other Arabs more compaſſionate than he, and ever jealous of his poſſeſſing Briſſon's jewels, which they conſidered as ineſtimable, now ſent for Briſſon, and aſked if at Mogadore a good ranſom would be given for each of them: Briſſon told him he ſhould be ſatisfied: upon this he was told a Jewiſh merchant was to call to-morrow to give him ſome paper, and he ſhould be permitted to write to thoſe from whom he expected aſſiſtance. The Hebrew merchant called, and Briſſon wrote a letter, which he addreſſed to the conſul at Soira, or if there ſhould not be one there to the perſon who might repreſent him, begging him to commiſerate their ills, and to afford them the ſpeedieſt relief.

There was a Mooriſh girl, who conſtantly fed her flocks in company with Briſſon's, who perceiving him a dupe to his maſter, ſoon convinced him of his error, and the real character of Sidy Mahammed. She aſſured him, that had it not been for his two brothers, who had taken ſuch a ſtrong liking to him, he would not care how he uſed him. She alſo added, that his promiſe of giving him his liberty was only to amuſe him, as he never entertained any ſerious intention of ſo doing, for fear if Briſſon was removed he might be taken, ſeized, robbed, and perhaps murdered, by Moulem Adaram.

Moulem Adaram was ſon to the Emperor. Having heard a vague account of the effects which Briſſon had brought with him, he imagined that he was a very rich Chriſtian, and came in conſequence more than 100 leagues to purchaſe him. He was fortunate enough however never to belong to this cruel prince, who had revolted againſt his father.

This converſation with the Mooriſh girl made Briſſon deſpair of ever ſeeing his country again. He fell into the deepeſt deſpondency; and from that day experienced nothing but new ſubjects of vexation.

He now no longer met his companions in the fields. One evening, when the coolneſs of the weather had invited his camels to ſtray further than uſual, he was obliged to follow them to a neighbouring hamlet. He now perceived the wretched captain, ſcarcely to be known but by the colour of his body, ſtretched out upon the ſand. He had in his mouth one of his hands, which his extreme weakneſs had doubtleſs prevented him from gnawing. Hunger had ſo disfigured him, that his corpſe was frightful to behold; all his features were abſolutely obliterated.

Some ſhort time after the ſecond captain, unable any longer to ſupport his exceſſive weakneſs, fell ſenſeleſs under a gum-tree, where he lay expoſed to the attacks of an enormous ſerpent. The famiſhed ravens, hovering over their prey, frightened away the venomous animal with the noiſe of their cries, and darting on the body of the defenceleſs victim, immediately began their voracious repaſt. Four of theſe ſavages, ſtill more cruel than theſe ferocious birds of prey, witneſſed this horrid ſcene with indifference, and without making the leaſt effort to afford aſſiſtance to the unhappy ſufferer. Briſſon returned to his tent impreſſed, and reproached his maſter for inhumanly refuſing his unhappy aſſociate the ſmall quantity of milk neceſſary for ſubſiſtence, becauſe his emaciated condition and ill ſtate of health rendered him incapable of working any longer.

Briſſon's health, which had hitherto miraculouſly ſuſtained him under the ſevereſt preſſures of difficulty and diſeaſe, now yielded to their painful inflictions, and every day announced freſh ſymptoms of its rapid decline. Already, like the poiſonous reptiles of this inhoſpitable climate, he had twice caſt his ſkin; but the pungency of his grief was increaſed by the third change, finding his body covered with a kind of ſcurf or ſcale, reſembling the natural coating of the Arabs. His feet, miſerably wounded by thorns, afforded but a tottering ſupport to his exhauſted body; and the wanton cruelty of their ſavage diverſion, in frequently ſetting dogs to purſue him, from whoſe jaws he could never extricate himſelf before he had felt the ſeverity of their fangs, all contributed to his incapacity of longer tending the camels. But, to compleat his miſfortune, towards the end of February and beginning of March, the exceſſive heats had dried up the water they found in the canton, and not a drop of rain had fallen to nouriſh the ground which he had tilled and ſown. As paſturage for their cattle could no longer be found, they were on the point of periſhing, when the two tribes of the Labdeſſeba and Ouadelims, after having held ſeparate deliberations, reſolved to go in ſearch of more promiſing lands.

The tribe of the Ouadelims carried their ravages as far as Gouadnum, 300 leagues diſtant from the place of our encampment. Several hordes of the Labdeſſeba, of a leſs roving diſpoſition, ſtaid behind; and as their numbers were inconſiderable, they found ſubſiſtence for their flocks in the neighbouring cantons. They killed and eat ſeveral ſheep, and continued living in this manner till the end of the following month, the period deſtined for their departure from the deſerts, where the moſt frightful miſery menaced the diſtreſſed inhabitants.

Happily for Briſſon, an Arab, who had a Chriſtian ſlave in his ſuite, who belonged to their veſſel, offered to ſell him to Briſſon's maſter at a very low price; and the latter, who concerned himſelf very little as to the means of their ſupport, readily offered a camel for this new ſlave. The bargain being concluded, he was charged with the work of Briſſon's uſual employment. The interval of leiſure derived from this relief, contributed in ſome meaſure to reſtore Briſſon to his uſual ſtrength.

When they had eaten up all the ſnails which were found in their circuit, they came to the reſolution of ſmothering ſeveral young kids in the night-time, knowing that their maſters would reject their carcaſes, as their law does not permit them to eat the fleſh of any animal that has not expired under the knife. They were at length diſcovered in the commiſſion of the fact: however, they eſcaped puniſhment, though not without great abuſe, and the intimidating menaces of death, ſhould they be again found guilty of ſimilar offences. It was therefore neceſſary for them to concert new means for their ſupport. Briſſon ſoon recovered ſtrength enough to make faggots, which he had not the leaſt difficulty in diſpoſing of, it being the cuſtom of this country not to extinguiſh the fire during the night, and the women, to whom the care of the family is conſigned, being too idle to cut wood for themſelves. By this little traffic, he was not only enabled to alleviate his own miſery, but likewiſe that of M. Devoiſe, whoſe ſufferings at length terminated with his death.

CHAPTER III.

Briſſon meets a Sailor—His lamentable Account—Briſſon's Deſpondency—Miſſes the Keeper of the Camels—Enquires about him—Not ſatisfied—Is informed the next Day of his Fate—Briſſon's Behaviour on the Occaſion—His Maſter reproached—Benevolence of Sidy Sellem—His Prediction verified—Briſſon's Reſolution—Good Effects thereof—The Arabs driven to great Diſtreſs—Their Manner of getting Water—Briſſon becomes deſperate—Fights with the Arabs—His Succeſs—Forms a Project to eſcape—Robs his Maſter—Sidy Mahammed's Uneaſineſs—His Promiſes—Briſſon reſtores the Treaſure, on certain Conditions—Briſſon agreeably ſurpriſed with News of his Delivery—His Hopes almoſt extinguiſhed.

THEY now quitted their preſent ſituation, in ſearch of one that was more fertile. They encamped in the neighbourhood of different tribes, where Briſſon met with Dehoux, one of their ſailors, who was a ſlave as well as himſelf. He told Briſſon that ſix of his companions were carried away ſoon after ther ſhipwreck, by the ſon of the Emperor, who was gone back to France; that M. Taffaro, their head ſurgeon, died in conſequence of ſome blows he received on the head; alſo their ſecond lieutenant, Sieur Reboin, and that the reſt, in order to preſerve themſelves from periſhing through want, had changed their religion.

This ſailor's account added much to Briſſon's deſpondency. While loſt in thought and contemplation, he perceived behind a buſh his maſter's camels returning without their keeper. Briſſon enquired what was become of him; but receiving no ſatisfactory anſwer, he was reſolved the next morning to inform himſelf.

On the following day Briſſon learned from a young herdſman that Sidy Mahammed having for ſome time paſt ſuſpected the baker to be guilty of ſucking milk from the camels, had watched, and detecting him in the fact, immediately ſeized him by the throat and ſtrangled him. It ſeems, if a Chriſtian only touch the paps of their cattle, they are deemed impure, and the proprietor, or any other Arab, is at liberty to puniſh the offender with death.

Briſſon ſcarce believing the exiſtence of ſuch cruelty, even among theſe monſters, ran to the tent, and aſked for an explanation of what the youth had juſt imparted to him. A general ſilence confirmed the truth, and filled him with rage and indignation. The brother-in-law of his maſter, (the only perſon who on this occaſion expreſſed even a ſentiment of compaſſion) reproached Sidy Mahammed for not having ſold theſe ſlaves to him, when he propoſed to purchaſe them from him, inſtead of treating them ſo cruelly, eſpecially Briſſon, as the riches he obtained from him ſhould have induced him to treat him with more gentleneſs and reſpect.

This latter reproach awakened the jealouſy of all preſent, who unanimouſly undertook Briſſon's defence. Sidy Sellem was the ſole perſon who ſpoke through benevolence, the reſt not chuſing to deliver their ſentiments after him, in compliment to his age and his riches. This was the ſame Sidy Sellem, of the tribe of La Rouſſy, who had behaved ſo kindly to them after their ſhipwreck, and predicted that Briſſon ſhould one day repent the rejection of a propoſal he had made to purchaſe him.

Briſſon was now the only ſlave in the hamlet, nor had he any perſon to whom he could diſcloſe his griefs; his ſituation daily became more deplorable, notwithſtanding he reſolved to bear it with fortitude. This reſolution and the behaviour he adopted towards thoſe who would have humiliated him, gained him a ſort of conſideration among the ſavages, ſo that they permitted him at times to remain in the back part of their tents, and often to drink out of their veſſels. His maſter no longer employed him to keep his camels: it is true he ceaſed to ſpeak of liberty; but if he had, his perfidy was ſo well known to Briſſon, that he could not have believed him.

Briſſon ſtill found it neceſſary to continue making up faggots, in order to procure himſelf a ſubſiſtence, but thirſt frequently threw him into the moſt inconceivable agonies. The Arabs themſelves were driven to the greateſt diſtreſs, ſeveral dying from hunger and thirſt; nor did the preſent ſeaſon promiſe any ſuccour, being the fourth in which the drought had deſtroyed the harveſt. This calamity ſo embittered the minds of the different tribes, that they were at perpetual variance, ſtealing each other's cattle, in order to dry the fleſh; milk was very ſcarce, and water more ſo, as it is rarely to be found in the deſert, except in the vicinity of the ſea, where it is black, ſalt, corrupt and noiſome; which diſagreeable drink, and the want of paſturage, cauſe the Arab ever to keep at a diſtance from the coaſt. Though in want of every kind of proviſion, yet no one dared to ſeek it at a diſtance. In this calamitous ſituation, Briſſon was a melancholy witneſs of the ſtraits to which neceſſity can reduce the human race: the camels that were killed ſupplied water to thoſe Arabs who had not the means of procuring milk, they preſerving with the utmoſt care the liquid they found in the ſtomach of the ſlaughtered animal, preſſing it from the dung. The water they thus preſerved was of a greeniſh colour, and in which they frequently dreſſed their meat; that drawn from the ſtomach of the goats had the taſte of fennel and a ſweet ſmell, nor did the broth made therewith taſte diſagreeable; but that procured from the camel was much leſs pleaſing to the appetite. What appeared really aſtoniſhing was, that thoſe beaſts, particularly the camel, who drank but two or three times in the year, and lived on very dry food, contained a prodigious quantity of water in their ſtomachs.

Briſſon now becoming deſperate, aſked leave of his maſter to repair to the ſpot where his flocks were feeding, that joining with the inhabitants he might aſſiſt in defending them from pillage. His offer was accepted; his maſter gave him the camel on which he rode and a piſtol, being the only one he poſſeſſed, praying Heaven for the ſafety of his beaſt and the ſucceſs of his party. Briſſon departed, accompanied by a relation of his maſter's, and arrived with his conductor into the midſt of the warriors, who appeared to him in the greateſt diſorder. Briſſon knew not whether they were flying, or were encountered hand to hand, as he could diſtinguiſh nothing but a confuſed heap of men enveloped in a cloud of duſt, nor could he conceive how they recognized friends from foes. The camel, which doubtleſs was not accuſtomed to ſuch expeditions, marched ſlowly towards the enemies fire. Briſſon ſoon loſt his conductor—he ſaw him almoſt inſtantly drop, from a ſhot which pierced his brain. The camel being ſcared, plunged with the greateſt violence, and at length threw Briſſon at a diſtance from him, on an hillock of ſand; an Arab immediately attacked him, fired, but miſſed him, when ſuddenly receiving a wound himſelf, he fell at his feet. A ſecond inſtantly took his place, advancing towards Briſſon with his poignard, ready to pierce his heart, when by a miracle, as he raiſed his arm to ſtrike the blow, his weapon entangled in his turban, which floated looſe on his ſhoulders: Briſſon profited by this accident, ſtriking him with the butt end of his piſtol, ſo that he fell ſenſeleſs before him. This was the only uſe he could make of his weapon, having no ammunition but what it contained, and already twice miſſing fire. Theſe accidents are very common, as the arms and powder are equally bad; a circumſtance which cauſes the Arabs battles to be ſoon decided, the greateſt injury they do being the tearing each other's faces with their nails, and ſome wounds given with their poignards. The camels, accuſtomed to theſe combats, mingle in the confuſion, lowing, biting, and diſperſing the enemies with greater effect than even the men can with their arms.

As ſoon as the battle was over, ſeveral of the Arabs came to Briſſon, and commended his valour, having thought that Briſſon had killed three men, when in reality he had only wounded one; however he left them in their error, and unloaded his piſtol to favour the deceit.

Briſſon having thus far ſucceeded, now formed the project to eſcape, firſt taking from his maſter all the jewels he had before given him. With theſe he purpoſed to go over to another tribe, as he thought any Arab whom he might chance to meet would be glad to accompany him to Morocco for the reward he could then offer. This project appeared to him excellently deviſed, though he neither knew the road nor the dangers he might have to encounter: he therefore haſtened to put it in execution, concealing the whole of the property in a hole till the next day, when he intended to endeavour to procure himſelf ſome covering to defend him from the cold.

It was not long before Sidy Mahammed diſcovered the loſs of his treaſure; he ran immediately to the thicket where Briſſon was, employing prayers, threats, and careſſes, to obtain reſtitution of his wealth, and yet more particularly to entreat him not to divulge his poſſeſſing it to any perſon. His entreaties, however, would have been of little effect, had Briſſon not reflected, that during the night, if he attempted to eſcape, it was very poſſible that he might fall into the hands of ſome wretch too poor to undertake ſo long a journey, and who willing to poſſeſs his property might diſpoſe of him with his dagger. Theſe ideas determined him to relinquiſh it; and he pretended to be affected by his entreaties, though he reſolved to keep the aſcendance his fears gave him over him; accordingly he therefore informed him, that if he did not keep his word, he would a ſecond time deprive him of all which he now returned. Sidy Mahammed renewed his oaths, promiſing to give him in future, evening and morning, a portion of milk. He kept his word, but was careful of quitting Briſſon, fearful that his neighbours, or particularly his relations, with whom Briſſon frequently was, ſhould be informed of what he had atchieved, and that he ſhould a ſecond time be deprived of his treaſure, and never be able to recover it again.

Sidy Mouhammet, ſheriff of the tribe of Trargea, having one day after this ſeen Briſſon, aſked who he was, and was ſoon informed, as well alſo of what he had poſſeſſed at Senegal, in powder, guns, &c. The ſheriff inſtantly called, and aſked Briſſon what ſituation he filled at the Iſle of St. Louis? which queſtion being anſwered, he obſerved him nearly, and expreſſed great aſtoniſhment at finding him in ſuch a ſituation. This man, having ſeen Briſſon at Senegal, give orders for the delivery of goods out of the King's magazine, imagined they belonged to him. The brother-in-law of his maſter, encouraged by this information, immediately purchaſed Briſſon, giving five camels for his bargain. This agreement was made unknown to Briſſon, who, when he heard it, was ſtruck with aſtoniſhment and joy. On returning with his maſter from watering the camels, his miſtreſs commanded him to carry into a neighbouring tent a leathern bucket which had been lent her. Sidy Sellem was preſent; he called to Briſſon, and told him he muſt prepare to depart with him on the morrow for Mogadore. Briſſon had been ſo often flattered with this hope, and his expectation ſo frequently diſappointed, that he could not perſuade himſelf he ſpoke truth. Several Arabs, who were preſent, aſſured him it was really intended, and the old man proteſting it ſtill more firmly, Briſſon threw himſelf at his feet, weeping, ſobbing, and alternately laughing, unmindful of every conſideration but the joy he felt at the information he had received.

Sidy Mahammed now informed Briſſon that he no longer appertained to him, obſerving that he had kept his promiſe, and that Briſſon ſhould again ſee his native country. At this moment Briſſon forgot all his former reſentment, in the rapture of the preſent expectation; a pleaſure which was doubled, when they informed him he ſhould have a travelling companion, whom they added was but a ſhort diſtance from them. This companion, to Briſſon's great ſurpriſe, was the unfortunate baker. He aſked him, by what miracle he was riſen from the dead? The baker informed him, that one day Sidy Mahammed found him milking the ſhe camel; he ran inſtantly upon him, griping him ſo hard by the throat, and giving him ſuch ſevere blows, that he fell ſenſeleſs at his feet. He was much aſtoniſhed, on his recovery, to find himſelf alone, with his throat bathed in blood: he dragged himſelf as well as he could into the aperture of a rock, from whence he heard echo ſeveral times repeat the voice of his barbarous maſter, who had returned to ſeek him, and now called him loudly; doubtleſs curioſity of what had become of him was a ſtrong motive, as he muſt neceſſarily imagine he left him expiring. The baker determined not to anſwer, being reſolved either to die of hunger, or gain the ſea-coaſt, hoping there to diſcover ſome veſſel. In effect he reached it in ten days, having during that time no nouriſhment but ſnails, nor any drink but his own urine. The ſight of a ſmall fiſhing veſſel, which lay at an anchor near land, redoubled his ſtrength, and he ran haſtily towards the ſhore, hoping by his ſignals to engage the captain to ſend his boat to his relief; but he had hardly advanced a few ſteps between the rocks which ſurround the coaſt, when he was ſuddenly ſeized by two young Arabs, who dragged him to ſome diſtance from the ſhore. The diſtreſs he felt at finding himſelf in their power, the grief he ſuſtained from failing in his enterpriſe, added to the extreme hunger he experienced, had doubtleſs overcome him, had they not immediately afforded him ſome ſuccour. From that day they became his maſters, and employed him to keep their goats, they having no other flocks, nor any other means of exiſtence, except fiſhing; yet are much more gentle and laborious than the Arabs who live in the interior parts. About fifteen days ago, they informed him they were going to conduct him to the Sultan, and as they had brought him hither, he ſuppoſed this was the rendezvous agreed on with Briſſon's maſter, when they informed him they had taken him.

Briſſon having heard the information of the baker, informed him that they were really going to depart for Morocco, and that they had a long journey to undertake. The next day the inhabitants of the tribe of Trargea aſſembled round Sidy Sellem, making a long prayer; after which they brought a large pot of broth, compoſed of the farinous part of ſome wild grain; they joined to this proviſion a large quantity of milk, and numberleſs wiſhes for a proſperous journey.

Sidy Mahammed bid Briſſon a moſt affectionate adieu. He ſincerely wiſhed he might arrive in ſafety, and that his next voyage might be happier than the laſt. He requeſted he would not forget to ſend his wife ſome ſcarlet cloth; which he was to give to Sidy Sellem. Briſſon promiſed to ſend what he aſked for. Sidy Mahammed now aſſiſted him to get on a large camel, which the baker and Briſſon were allowed to travel on, but which they were neceſſitated to quit ſome few days after; nor were they alone in this misfortune, for from want of paſturage theſe animals were unable to proceed with any luggage. In this country they are not equal to much fatigue; beſides, the want of ſaddles would have prevented their making uſe of thoſe beaſts for any length of time. They were therefore obliged to walk during the remainder of their journey.

One day, having reached a valley, which the rain lately fallen had covered with verdure, Sidy Sellem was determined to ſtop, that his almoſt famiſhed beaſts might graze; himſelf aſcending a high mountain which bounded the valley, and from whence he could ſee the beaſts feed that he was taking to the city for ſale. Briſſon followed, and at length paſſed him, firmly believing it was the road they were to purſue. What confirmed him in this opinion was, that the old man let him continue his walk without oppoſition, and that he alſo diſcovered a beaten path before him. When he arrived at the ſummit, he went a little aſide from the path to clean his long beard, which, notwithſtanding his utmoſt care, was full of vermin. He had paſſed near an hour in the thicket, when finding none of their travellers approach, he returned to the top of the mountain: but how great was his ſurpriſe, when he diſcovered no one, nor knew what road they had taken, or what path to purſue; for as a number of hordes had encamped on this ſpot, for the purpoſe of feeding their cattle, an infinity of paths led to it. Thus ſituated he could deviſe no means but calling loudly on Sidy Sellem: at length he diſcovered at a diſtance four or five Arabs, who advanced towards him. Briſſon haſtened to meet them, firmly believing them to be his own people, but ſoon recognized his error, for one of the moſt powerful of theſe barbarians, accompanied by a great dog, ſeized him, the Arab inſtantly knocking him down by a blow which he ſtruck him on the head with the flat of his ſabre, and the others immediately joining him, dragged him into a defile of the rock, which led to their aſylum.

Thus his hopes of liberty were again extinguiſhed by the proſpect of a more cruel ſlavery than he had yet experienced! He was loſt in theſe melancholy reflections, when the barbarians gained a ſlope which led to a cavity, where doubtleſs they intended concealing him; but coming to a ſudden opening, Briſſon diſcovered in a valley below the mountain their flock and little caravan, which contained about twenty perſons; deſpair gave him ſtrength, and making a ſudden effort, he eſcaped from theſe wretches, running precipitately towards his old man, Sidy Sellem, for refuge, while the vagabonds, alarmed at their ſuperior number, ran away.

Briſſon was ſeverely reprimanded by his maſter, who deſired that in future he would be careful not to quit them: Briſſon, in return, complained that he had not informed him that the path which he ſaw him take was not that himſelf intended to purſue; and that alſo he had continued his journey without calling or cauſing him to be ſought after. He replied, that he intended to have taken the ſame path, but had been obliged to deſcend into the valley to collect the camels, who having been ſo long deprived of herbage had ſtrayed from each other in grazing.

During the ſpace of the ſix following hours they redoubled their ſpeed, taking alſo a contrary road, that they might deceive their enemies ſhould they purſue them; neither had they any food until the evening of the ſecond day, being 48 hours without any nouriſhment but ſome handfuls of wild endive, which Briſſon gathered in the valley.

At day-break they continued their journey, croſſing ſome mountains, which led them to a plain covered with calcined ſtones, greatly reſembling the coal that had been burnt in their forges; theſe ſtones in ſome places were overſpread with a whitiſh earth, on which lay the trunks of large trees, apparently torn up by the roots, and entirely ſtripped of their bark, the branches being brittle as glaſs, and twiſted like cordage. The wood was of a yellow colour, reſembling the liquorice, and the interior part of the trunks full of a coarſe powder. The wood, ſtones and duſt, which latter was encloſed in the trunks of the trees, poſſeſſed neither taſte nor ſmell.

CHAPTER IV.

They proceed on their Journey—Paſs ſeveral high Mountains—Meet two Springs of Water—Briſſon ſeized—Releaſed by his Maſter's means—They approach the City of Gouadnum—Deſcription thereof—Their Habitations, Traffic, &c.—Briſſon's Departure—His Strength exhauſted, &c.—His Inexpreſſible Joy—Occaſional Inquietude—Meets two Europeans—Kindneſs of Dupras and Cabanes—Viſited by ſeveral Europeans—Arrival at Morocco—Account of the King of Morocco's Troops—The rough Manner in which he is introduced to the King—The King's ſtrange Behaviour—Briſſon and the Baker ſent to the Royal Kitchen—Briſſon returns to his new Dwelling—Deſcription of the Palace, Town, Inhabitants, &c.—Briſſon releaſed from Slavery—Curſory Remarks.

AS they proceeded, they reached ſome mountains, which were ſo prodigiouſly high, that they appeared piled on each other, and which formed ſeveral tremendous precipices, on account of their diviſions. There were likewiſe ſome ſurrounding vallies, environed by rocks, which were dreadful to behold. They met with two ſprings, one of which was black, muddy, and of a ſulphureous ſmell; the other was exceedingly clear, being ſeparated from the firſt by a ſand-bank about 15 feet broad. Both waters were exceedingly pleaſant to the taſte. After two days journey, they were on the ſea-ſhore; and a few days after they advanced towards Morocco, having croſſed ſome high mountains, covered with pebbles of different colours.

They were three days and four nights paſſing theſe foreſts, during which time they met no alarm from the wild beaſts who reſort in the deſerts of Africa. The farther they advanced the more their miſeries decreaſed, as they frequently met with fields of barley fit to be cut, among which Briſſon could ſit and eat with a pleaſure difficult to expreſs. Water was no longer ſcarce, and they often met with hamlets where they were well received; even in ſome of thoſe which might have been dangerous to other travellers, Sidy Sellem was reſpected, becauſe he had been to Mecca. Nothwithſtanding, the Arabs of the tribe of Telkoennes are held in the greateſt conſideration for hoſpitality.

After having received him with the cuſtomary honours due to a ſtranger, at their uſual hour they brought him barley, flour, and milk. What he left appertained to Briſſon; and which, retiring to a diſtance, he ſhared with his new companion, the baker; for, in travelling, a Chriſtian (more particularly than at another time) muſt neither eat, drink, nor ſleep near his maſter. One evening, after ſupper, Briſſon dug a hollow in the ſand, to lay him down in ſhelter from the cold, wrapping the cloth he wore about his body on his head, to defend his eyes from the ſand. He had hardly attempted to fall aſleep, when he heard the report of two guns very near him, and found himſelf inſtantly ſeized. He tore the covering off his head; it was on fire, doubtleſs from the wadding of the gun. One of thoſe who held him aſked if he was wounded, and upon his anſwering in the negative ordered him to follow them. Sidy Sellem, who had awoke at the report of the guns, ran to the place where he heard Briſſon's voice, complaining of their behaviour to his ſlave, and their want of hoſpitality to a perſon like himſelf. The Arab mountaineer replied with great arrogance, he was ignorant that he belonged to him; that as he watched his flocks, ſeeing a man concealed in the ſand, he took him for one of thoſe nightly thieves who ſteal their young goats. Sidy Sellem feigned to believe him, praiſed his zeal, and reſcued Briſſon from his hands. As ſoon as he thought all ſtill in the hamlet, he haſtened to depart from a ſpot which might prove dangerous to himſelf as to his ſlave.

Theſe Arabs of the tribe of Telkoennes are the worſt ſituated of any in the deſerts, living in the midſt of mountains of ſand which have been formed by the wind. They may be truly ſaid to wiſh to deprive themſelves even of the light of day, ſo difficult is it to penetrate into their retreats, or to explore the way from them. The neighbouring plains are infeſted with enormous ſerpents.

They now approached the famous city of Gouadnum, which was diſcovered through the points of rock built on an elevation, and whoſe environs announced a formidable fortification; but, on a nearer view, the walls were found made of earth, and broken in ſeveral places; ſome inhabitants ſhewed themſelves at the little windows on the houſe-tops, and were doubtleſs meditating whether they could do them any injury. The chief of the town, informed that Sidy Sellem was at the head of their little caravan, came to meet them, followed by four negro ſlaves, who carried an umbrella made of palm leaves, which he preſented to him.

This city is the refuge of all the rebellious Arabs of the different tribes, and is divided into two parts, the lower being governed by Sidy Adella, and the higher, which is not unlike fort Eabat, by another commander. The houſes are all conſtructed alike, being four large walls ſurrounding a prodigious ſpace of ground, thoſe of the ſame party living together; theſe walls are very high, have but one entrance, nor any light but what comes from the roof, which is left uncovered. The door, which ſerves for the whole circumference, is guarded by large dogs; every inhabitant alſo of the dwelling keeps one for his own ſecurity; for without that caution, though encloſed in their own habitation, they would be pillaged by all their inmates, who might be bolder or more dextrous than themſelves.

They have two markets; and though they circulate ſpecie, the exchange of merchandize is their principal object. They have very good woollen cloths, and particularly ſome of a mixture of crimſon and white, which they uſe as cloathing. The dealers, who purchaſe to ſell again in the interior parts, give camels in exchange, their ordinary profit being about four hundred for one, and yet their gains on this article is much leſs than on wheat, dates, horſes, ſheep, oxen, aſſes, gunpowder, tobacco, combs, looking-glaſſes, and many other ſmall articles, which are difficult to procure in the interior parts, the conſumption being in the little towns, where there are days fixed for the ſale of them.

What is moſt ſurpriſing is, that ſcarce any but Jews trade; they are, notwithſtanding, expoſed to the moſt outrageous affronts. An Arab will ſnatch the bread from the hand of a Jew, enter his hut, and inſiſt on his giving him a handful of tobacco, frequently accompanying the demand with a blow, and always with inſolence, which the poor Jew ſuffers with patience: it is true he recompenſes himſelf, by his ſkill in diſpoſing of his merchandize, and the art with which he deceives the Arabs, who are in general very ignorant.

The two chiefs who command at Gouadnum have no ſuperiority, except they exceed each other in point of property.

Briſſon left Gouadnum, after a ſtay of eight days; and on his way to Regaden was perpetually meeting with hamlets and caſtles, for the moſt part built on very high mountains, and which at a diſtance might have been taken for very elegant dwellings, but on a nearer view bore a very different appearance. They were no longer ſo well fed, and the nearer they approached the city they met the leſs hoſpitality.

They had now been 66 days on their journey; Briſſon's ſtrength was exhauſted; his feet ſwelled almoſt to ſuppuration, and he muſt infallibly have ſunk under his calamities, had not his maſter been perpetually re-animating his courage with comfortable aſſurances. With joy inexpreſſible he now beheld the French flag unfurled, as well as thoſe of other nations appertaining to the veſſels lying at anchor in the bay of Mogadore, which he yet only knew by the name of Soira.

At length they arrived at the city; but ſtill Briſſon was not free from inquietude, as he had heard before he quitted France that the Emperor had very ill treated M. de Chenier on his embaſſy, and that he had been neceſſitated to complain to his own court. He knew not whether he had been redreſſed, and if a freſh conſul ſupplied his place; at all events he had cauſe for fear. His ſuſpicions ſoon vaniſhed on entering the city, and meeting two Europeans, who, after conſidering him attentively, went and informed Meſſ. Dupras and Cabanes of his ſituation. Theſe gentlemen, who made it their ſtudy to relieve thoſe whom misfortune had thrown into this country, came immediately to ſeek him, and, without ſeeming ſhocked at his revolting appearance, embraced him, ſhedding tears of joy to have it in their power to aſſiſt an unfortunate ſufferer. They took him with them immediately, engaging his maſter to follow them, deſiring him to be perfectly eaſy on account of any agreement Briſſon might have contracted with him. Briſſon likewiſe entreated them to permit him to conduct Sidy Sellem and his ſon with them; they conſented, deſiring him to uſe their dwelling as his own, treating him with the greateſt care, attention, and friendſhip, and cloathing him entirely in their own habiliments, until they had ſome made for him.

Briſſon was ſoon after viſited by all the Europeans at Mogadore, congratulating him on the change in his ſituation, and alſo on his arrival in the city on the moſt fortunate time it could have happened, being the entrance of the new conſul, who brought conſiderable preſents from France for the Emperor. Briſſon was preſented the ſame day to the governor, who informed them of the order to repair to Morocco, the Emperor having declared that henceforward he would ſee all the ſlaves, and that they ſhould receive from himſelf the tidings of liberty.

Briſſon, Sidy Sellem, and the baker, in eight days departed. They were furniſhed with mules, a tent, proviſions, and proper attendants, and after four days journey arrived at Morocco.

The guard who had the care of Briſſon preſented him to the conſul and vice-counſul; they offered him a table and habitation, until he could return to France. A ſecond guard came to inform him, that the Emperor knew of his arrival, and had commanded him to be brought inſtantly before him. Briſſon immediately obeyed, following the guard, who took him through ſeveral ſpacious courts, with high walls and ſand floors, almoſt inſufferable from the ſun lying on them the whole day.

They arrived at laſt into one where the King's guard were aſſembled: thoſe employed about his perſon are armed with guns; their cloathing conſiſts of different coloured tunics, and cloaks with hoods not unlike a friar's. On their heads they wear a ſmall red cap, ornamented on the top with a blue taſſel. Their feet are almoſt naked, going but half into their ſlippers, which obliges them to trail as they walk. They ſling their guns acroſs them, and wear a girdle, to which they attach their pouches. Thoſe who appeared out of ſervice had no weapon but a white ſtick.

The horſemen are dreſſed the ſame, except that they wear half-boots without feet, and ſpurs of the enormous length of nine or ten inches, which have much the appearance of large iron ſpikes. Their horſes have almoſt always their flanks cut to the quick, as they take particular pleaſure in ſpurring them.

While Briſſon waited for an audience, he ſaw a captain review his company, who was ſeated on the ground with his elbows on his knees, which were bent upwards, and his chin ſupported with his hands. The ſoldiers advanced two by two, and received his orders, proſtrating themſelves before him; after which they retired.

Five or ſix of thoſe who were only armed with white ſticks ſeized Briſſon by the collar, as though he had been a thief, and opening a large folding-door, reſembling thoſe of barns, they puſhed him rudely forward into an inner court, where he in vain ſought for ſomething that might announce the grandeur of Majeſty. After advancing fifteen or twenty paces towards a kind of wheel-barrow, they commanded him (puſhing him roughly at the ſame time) to proſtrate himſelf before this wheel-barrow, which contained the Emperor, who, ſupporting one foot on his knee, was amuſing himſelf in playing with his toes. He looked at him during ſome minutes; then aſked him, whether he was not one of thoſe Chriſtian ſlaves whoſe veſſel had been wrecked on his coaſt about a year before, and what buſineſs called him to Senegal. He then remarked that he was wrecked through his miſconduct; aſked why he did not keep ſea-room, enquired if he was rich and married, giving him ſcarce time to anſwer his queſtions. He then called for ink and paper, and taking a ſmall reed, which he uſed as a pen, he traced the four winds, ſhewing Briſſon that Paris was in the north.

Briſſon's maſter was immediately introduced with the ſame ceremonies as he had been himſelf. The Emperor aſked him, if he had paid a large purchaſe for Briſſon, and what were his intentions in coming to Morocco. He immediately replied, that his firſt incentive in travelling through immenſe countries was to proſtrate at the feet of his ſovereign the moſt humble of his ſlaves. After ſome ſhort converſation, the Emperor ordered the guards to take charge of Briſſon and the baker until further orders, and to give them food from the royal kitchen. The guard expreſſed great ſurpriſe to Briſſon, that his Majeſty had deigned to converſe ſo long with a ſlave.

The next day the conſul aſked the guard to permit Briſſon to be with him, ſaying, that ſhould the Emperor aſk for him, they could fetch him immediately. Briſſon now went to his new dwelling, which was a kind of cave that had before been inhabited by the Spaniſh ambaſſador, the Emperor, willing to uſe equal attention to the French conſul, having ordered him the ſame lodging. This palace, which is one of the fineſt the King has at his diſpoſal, is nothing more than a long cave built in the earth, the roof being ſupported by two rows of pillars, and the entrance to it a gradual ſlope; nor is there any air but what enters through the little openings in the roof. The Emperor keeps his tents and warlike ſtores in it, nor is there any thing elſe to be ſeen there, except bats, rats, and ſpiders. This dwelling is in one of the King's moſt delightful gardens, being decorated with olive, quince, pomegranate, and apple-trees; yet the high walls which ſurround it might eaſily furniſh the idea to thoſe that walk in it that they were ſtate priſoners. Though the Emperor provides the Ambaſſadors with a dwelling, he ſupplies them with no furniture whatever, but gives orders for them to be daily ſerved with a certain quantity of mutton, beef, poultry, water, bread, &c.

The King's palace conſiſts of ſix vaſt courts, ſurrounded with walls. The exterior of the ſeraglio reſembles a barn, and the moſque is built in the ſame taſte. The town is ſeparated from the palace by heaps of mud, offal, and bones of ſlaughtered beaſts, piled on each other, and which may be ſaid to form the circumference of the city. Theſe pyramids of filth reach even into the interior parts of the town, in many places being ſo much higher than the houſes, that they exclude the light of day: the ſun ſhining on theſe mountains of naſtineſs, increaſes the putrefaction, and renders the ſight doubly loathſome. The houſes are ſo ill conſtructed, that they bear more reſemblance to pig-ſties than human dwellings; neither are the ſtreets airy, being very narrow, and in many places covered with ſtraw.

One day that the ambaſſador from New-England, the conſul, and Briſſon, were on horſeback, wiſhing to take an airing, they were obliged to relinquiſh their intention, and return home as ſpeedily as poſſible; the people ſurrounded them, and prevented their advancing, although they were protected by the Emperor's guard, and without which they had doubtleſs fallen a ſacrifice to their brutality; nor did even their preſence reſtrain them ſufficiently, for Briſſon received a violent blow on the head with a ſtone.

The diſpoſitions of the people in the city are but little different from thoſe in the deſert; they are rather more poliſhed, and much fairer; accuſtomed to meet with Europeans, they expreſs leſs aſtoniſhment at their manners, though they treat them with the utmoſt inſolence.

The wiſhed-for time now came when Briſſon's ſlavery was to ceaſe. One day the King on quitting the moſque ordered the conſul to attend, with the Chriſtian ſlaves, in the place of public audience. Briſſon, the baker, and five others who belonged to a veſſel called the Two Friends, which was wrecked previous to theirs, received their liberty, and had permiſſion to embark from which of the King's ports was moſt convenient; while proper officers were ordered to accompany them to the reſidence appointed the conſul.

The Emperor was mounted on a beautiful horſe, capariſoned in ſcarlet and blue cloth, with his crupper ornamented with nobs of gold; by the ſide of the Sovereign walked an equerry, who carried an umbrella to defend his Majeſty from the ſun. The guard follow on foot in the greateſt ſilence, all announcing fear, a glance from the King ſpreading univerſal conſternation; for giving command, he ſees fall without the leaſt emotion the head of one or more of his ſubjects; nor is the laſt word of the condemnation hardly articulated before the unhappy victim is lifeleſs on the ground. Yet the rich, if they chuſe to buy his favour, may live in ſafety, and commit every crime with impunity.

Before Briſſon's departure Sidy Sellem retired, having been very well ſatisfied with the conſul's generoſity.

It is now neceſſary to add ſome curſory obſervations, in order to furniſh the reader with a juſt idea of the manners and cuſtoms of the people already ſpoken of.

The Moors occupy the three kingdoms of Suz, Fez, and Morocco. That part of Bilidulgerid that is waſhed by the Atlantic Ocean is inhabited by the native Arabs, and by the fugitive Moors from the empire of Morocco, too enlightened to remain under the dominion of a maſter who rules over his people with abſolute ſway, and who makes his ſafety and happineſs conſiſt in the miſery of his ſubjects. This mixture forms one and the ſame nation, known indiſcriminately by the appellation of Monſelemines.

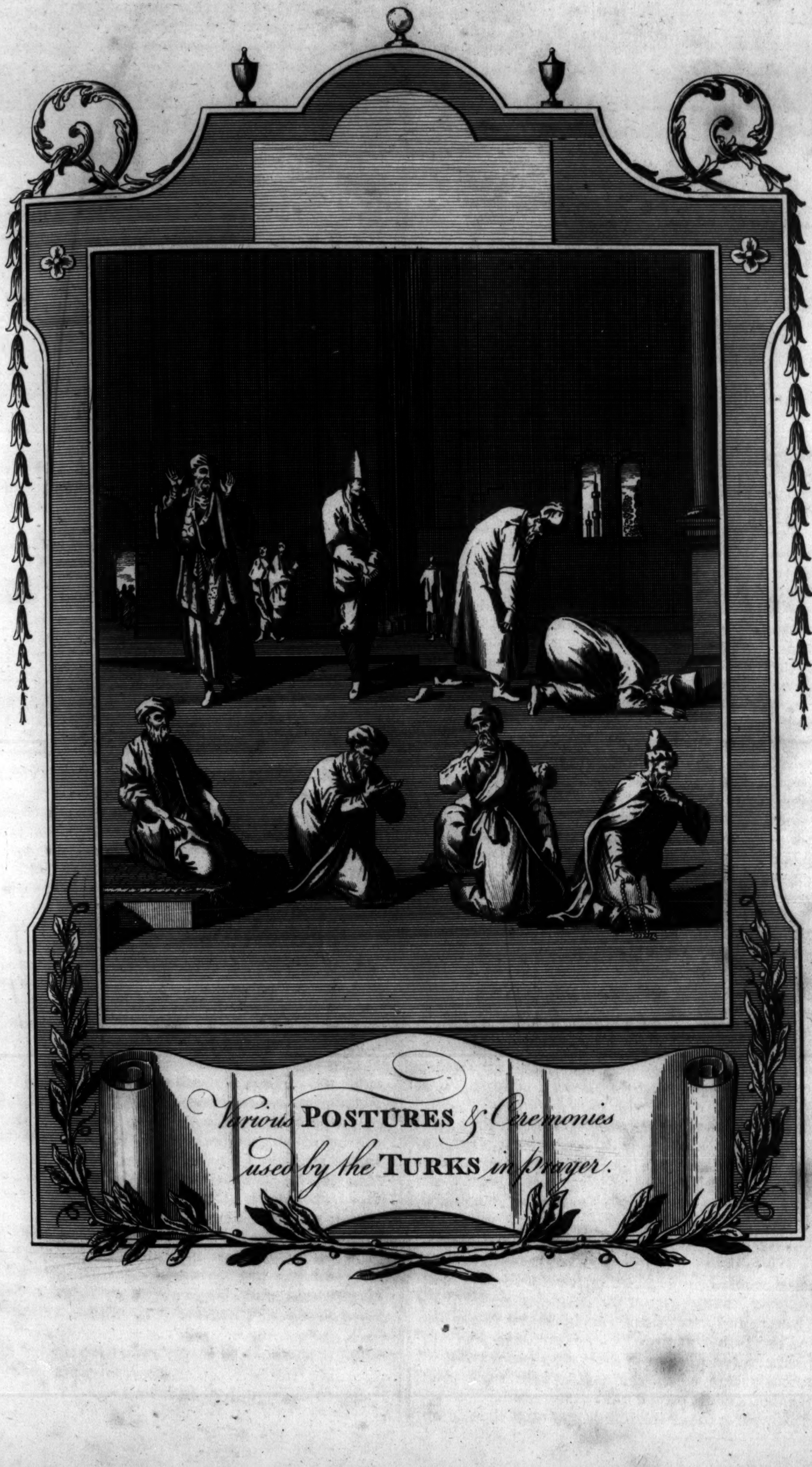
Zaara, as far as the Niger, contains a variety of wandering nations, all proceeding from Arabs, Moors, and fugitive Portugueſe, who took refuge there when the family of the Sherifs made themſelves maſters of the three kingdoms of Barbary. All theſe people bear indiſcriminately the names of Nars, Moors, or Arabs. They are ſubdivided into various nations, of which the moſt conſiderable are the Mongearts, Traſars, and Bracnars.

The firſt of theſe three denominations is a term of contempt among the people who ſurround them; no doubt becauſe thoſe who bear it, leſs verſed than their neighbours in the uſe of arms, are in general occupied by the care and the feeding of their cattle; while the Monſelemines, on the contrary, though ſhepherds alſo, are warriors to a man.

The Traſars and the Bracnars are no more than other nations ſcattered about on the northern banks of the Niger.

Religion, according to theſe people, is mahometaniſm in all its purity. They offer up prayers three times a day, ſometimes oftener; but they are never pronounced in public, unleſs when a mahometan prieſt is with the horde, who ſeldom comes but on account of the children's education. Then all the Arabs aſſemble at the hour of prayer, place themſelves in a line, turn to the eaſt, and, wanting water in the deſert, rub their face and arms with ſand, while the prieſt recites aloud the general prayer, which is the ſame as that rehearſed by the public crier on the moſques in the civiliſed countries.

The prieſts are employed in travelling about the country to inſtruct the children. There is nothing like force in their education. The Arabs of the deſert are even ignorant of the cuſtom of conſtraining wills. The little boys meet in the morning of their own accord, at the place of inſtruction, which is to them a place of recreation. They go there with a ſmall board inſcribed with the Arabic characters, and a few maxims of the Koran. The biggeſt, and the beſt informed, receive their leſſons directly from the prieſts, and afterwards communicate them to their fellows. The children themſelves teach one another to read; nor are they ever corrected. It would be a crime to beat a child, who, according to the received ideas, has not ſufficient reaſon to diſtinguiſh good from evil.



Various **POSTURES** *& Ceremonies used by the* **TURKS** *in Prayer.*

BRITISH
7 FE 90
MUSEUM

Thoſe who perſevere in the ſtudy of the Koran are made prieſts, after having paſt an examination before the learned elders, and enjoy the greateſt public conſideration. They have no need of cattle, thoſe of the nation being their's, they find their ſubſiſtence every where.

It is generally at ſeven or eight years of age that children undergo the painful operation of circumciſion. Their head is alſo ſhaved, nothing being left but four locks of hair, one of which is cut off in a meeting of the family, at each remarkable action performed by the child.

If, at the age of twelve or thirteen, he kill a wild boar, or other beaſt of prey, that ſhould fall upon his flock, he loſes one of his locks. If, in the paſſage of a river, a camel be carried away by the ſtream, and he ſave it by ſwimming to its aſſiſtance, another is cut off. If he kill a lion, a tiger, or a warrior of an hoſtile nation, in a ſurpriſe or an attack, he is conſidered as a man, and his head is entirely ſhaved.

Seldom does an Arab reach the age of twenty, without having deſerved this honour, for as they are aſhamed of being treated like children, they expoſe themſelves to the greateſt dangers to obtain it.

Infinite reſpect is paid to all old men, whatever be their family. They enjoy the ſame prerogatives as the prieſts, and equal conſideration with them and the Arabs who have had the good fortune to viſit the tomb of Mahomet at Mecca. The latter are diſtinguiſhed by the appellation of *Sidi*, which ſignifies maſter, while the reſt of the nation only bear the diſtinctive names they received at their birth.

War is not the moſt formidable ſcourge that afflicts this nation; for there is always little blood ſpilt in their battles. Much greater ravages are made by their private quarrels. They are all thieves; for theft is in a manner authorized by the laws. All that is neceſſary to practiſe it with impunity, is to avoid proſecution, by taking care not to be caught in the fact. It is true that theft is ſeverely puniſhed, if an Arab rob another of his own horde; but to be puniſhed, he muſt be detected at the very moment.

When an Arab is going to market, or on his return from thence, if he do not take the greateſt care to keep his journey a ſecret, he is often attacked. Neighbouring Arabs are deſirous of profiting by his induſtry, and as there are no perſons in the country appointed to apprehend robbers, the hope of booty ſpurs them on to the attack. That they may have nothing to fear, they lay in wait, when the night is coming on, for him they mean to pillage.

Their intention is never to kill; they only endeavour to ſurpriſe, diſarm, and make themſelves maſters of every thing that comes in their way. But it ſometimes happens that the man they intend to plunder, being acquainted with the cuſtoms of his country, keeps an attentive ear, ſtands on his guard, fires upon his aſſailants at the firſt motion he obſerves, and then fights deſperately with his dagger. The report of the muſquet frequently brings out the neighbouring Arabs, who, in virtue of the laws of hoſpitality, take the defence of the weaker ſide. They run up well armed, and generally kill the aggreſſors, if they do not ſave themſelves by a ſpeedy flight.

In theſe caſes it little matters who falls; the affair ends there; the dead man paſſes for the aggreſſor; nor do the family ever ſeek for vengeance. They content themſelves with burying the dead where they were killed, turning their heads to the eaſt, and heaping up all the ſtones at hand upon their tomb.

The chiefs of hordes are always the eldeſt of their families. The difference of wealth is not conſidered; the chief often having ſeveral individuals at his houſe richer than himſelf, who nevertheleſs obey him in every particular; he is, properly ſpeaking, their king; examines their difference with the old men, and judges without appeal. As to himſelf, he cannot be tried, but by the chiefs of ſeveral hordes aſſembled.

Whatever loſſes an Arab may meet with, he is never heard to complain; he riſes ſuperior to poverty, ſupports hunger, thirſt, and fatigue, with patience, and his courage is proof againſt every event. He employs, however, every means in his power to avert misfortune; and often expoſes himſelf to the greateſt dangers to procure matters of no real utility.

When the father of a family dies, all the effects in his tent are ſeized upon by the eldeſt ſon preſent at his deceaſe. Gold, ſilver, trinkets, every thing diſappears, and the abſent children have only an equal ſhare in the diviſion of the cattle and the ſlaves. The girls are entirely excluded from all participation, and take up their reſidence with their eldeſt brother. If the deceaſed leave children in helpleſs infancy, the mother takes them with her to her ſiſter's, if ſhe have a ſiſter married; if not, to her own maternal roof.

The women are much more reſpected among the Mongearts than among the neighbouring nations; they are nevertheleſs in a ſtate of ſubjection that nearly approaches ſlavery. All the freemen and ſlaves of the ſame religion eat together, the remains ſerving for the women. Although polygamy be authoriſed by their religion, few Arabs however take more than one wife. They repudiate her, it is true, at will, when ſhe does not bear them boys, but then ſhe is free to live with another man; but if, on the contrary, ſhe have the good fortune to have one or more male children, her huſband's regard for her is inconceivable.

When a woman is not agreeable to her huſband, or when he is diſagreeable to her, they have it in their power to part. The formality in this caſe conſiſts in the wife's retiring to her parents. If the huſband be attached to her he goes thither in queſt of her; but if ſhe perſiſt in refuſing to return ſhe is free, and at liberty to marry another. If however ſhe have had a child, eſpecially a boy, ſhe has not the ſame privilege; in that caſe, if her retreat ſhould laſt more than eight days, it might be puniſhed with death.

When a man beats his wife, it is a ſure ſign that he is ſincerely attached to her, and that he does not mean to part with her; if he content himſelf with reproaches, the wife thinks herſelf deſpiſed, and infallibly retires to her parents. Hence it is that in the moſt trifling diſputes the women are cruelly beaten: they prefer it to the complaints that the huſband might make to their parents; this proof being the moſt certain one of a man's fondneſs for his wife. When a girl marries, ſhe makes up her mind to ſuch treatment, deeming it much more ſupportable than the humiliations ſhe would otherwiſe experience from her family, in conſequence of her huſband's complaints. The wife brings no portion to her huſband: the fidelity of the women is incorruptible.

Such have been the Adventures, Captivity, Misfortunes, &c. of SAUGNIER *and* BRISSON, *accurately and fully tranſlated from their own Works.—It is true we have expunged ſome unneceſſary repetitions and extraneous remarks, which abound in the original, for the ſake of preſerving that unity and connection which render Hiſtory the more agreeable.—We ſhall now, for the further entertainment of our* NUMEROUS READERS, *proceed with the celebrated* ABBE ROCHON'*s relation of his Voyage to Madagaſcar and the Eaſt Indies; while the ſame care and attention which have been paid to the former Tranſlation ſhall likewiſe be obvious in this.*

A NEW, COMPLETE, AND GENUINE

HISTORY OF
A VOYAGE to MADAGASCAR
AND THE
EAST-INDIES;

UNDERTAKEN AND PERFORMED

By the Celebrated ABBE ROCHON,

Member of the Academies of Sciences of *Paris* and *Peterſburgh*; Aſtronomer of the Marine; Keeper of the King's Philoſophical Cabinet; Inſpector of Machines, Money, &c.

With Full and Circumſtantial ACCOUNTS of the different ISLANDS, &c. and their POSITIONS according to his ASTRONOMICAL OBSERVATIONS.

Including M. *BRUNEL's* REMARKS on the CHINESE TRADE, Fully and Accurately Tranſlated from the FRENCH by W. H. PORTLOCK, ESQ.

Which, with the ſeveral other VOYAGES and TRAVELS to be included in this Collection, will be Embelliſhed with a Variety of Elegant COPPER-PLATES, Drawn upon the Spots, and Engraved by Eminent Artiſts.

INTRODUCTION.

THE Mooriſh veſſels were the firſt which navigated the Gulphs of Perſia and Bengal; they ſet out from the ports of the Red Sea, and for the chief part directed their courſe to the Gulph of Perſia. They frequently proceeded along the coaſts of Abyſſinia, and without loſing ſight of land entered the Channel of Mozambique, where they traded with the natives both of the coaſt of Africa and Madagaſcar. The ports which they generally viſited on the African coaſt were Querimbe and Mozambique; in Madagaſcar, Vingara and Bombetoe.

Notwithſtanding the ignorance of pilots and imperfection of charts the Aſiatics frequently engaged in hazardous attempts. They have often ventured into the open ocean; and when they had traverſed the Gulph of Bengal proceeded to the Moluccas and the Philippines, through the Straits of Sunda and Molucca, for the ſake of a lucrative commerce, as a reciprocal exchange of Perſian and Indian merchandiſe, with the merchandiſe of China and Japan, was productive of a trade mutually advantageous.

The Portugueſe next, having found a paſſage to the ſeas of Aſia, by the Cape of Good Hope, endeavoured to exclude every other nation, and enrich themſelves by the great commerce of that vaſt continent. Vaſco de Gama having opened to the Europeans a paſſage to the ſeas of Africa, the Europeans and Portugueſe conſequently became rivals.

The trade which the Moors carried on in the Aſiatic ſeas, though not to be compared with the extenſive commerce ſince carried on by the European nations, was by no means deſpicable. The deſign of Abbe Rochon in this undertaking is not to give a hiſtory of the progreſs and decline of the European eſtabliſhments in India, which would be both tedious and unneceſſary, ſeeing ſo many celebrated hiſtorians have already expatiated upon the ſubject; but to ſet forth, in a faithful account of the Iſland of Madagaſcar, the ſeveral advantages which might be derived from ſettlements there, were they formed on ſuch an eligible plan as would promote both the happineſs and inſtruction of the natives.

In order to render this work in every reſpect advantageous to the navigator, who is inclined to go to India, the laſt chapter is devoted entirely to ſome neceſſary remarks on the Chineſe Trade, extracted from the works of M. Brunel. There are other extracts likewiſe borrowed from the ſame elegant writer, in order to illuſtrate the following hiſtory of Rochon.

The principal ſettlements which the French had in the Indian ſeas were the Iſles of France and Bourbon; theſe were diſcovered by the Portugueſe, who called the former Cimi, and the latter Maſcorhenas. The port of the former is the arſenal of the French forces and the center of their commerce. The Iſle of Bourbon has no port capable of receiving veſſels of magnitude. The principal place in this iſle is called St. Dennis. It is in this town that the governors of the colony reſide. Since the Iſle of Bourbon was inhabited, the volcano there has never occaſioned any devaſtation, though its eruptions are very common. The acceſs to the volcano is difficult; the country is burnt up and a deſert for more than ſix miles round, while precipices, heaps of aſhes, &c. render its aſcent very dangerous and troubleſome. For the ſatisfaction of our readers we ſhall extract from M. Brunel's Memoirs an account of this volcano:

“ It is ſituated almoſt at the ſummit of a hollow truncated mountain, the baſe of which, gently inclining, reſts on a bed of calcined earth, at the diſtance of a full league from the ſea. Though the matter it contains in its bowels boils up continually, it does not always ſwell ſo much as to riſe through the crater. When an eruption takes place, the melted lava may be ſeen flowing down the ſides of the mountain in undulations, which follow each other in ſucceſſion, and exhibit the appearance of a flaming caſcade. The light which it diffuſes to a great diſtance, whether at land or at ſea, is equal to that of the moon when ſhe ſhines with full ſplendour. It is even a tradition, believed in the country, that this natural pharos firſt drew hither thoſe Europeans who viſited theſe coaſts.

" The environs of the volcano are parched and covered with ſal-ammoniac, native ſulphur, alum, pumice-ſtone, and ſcoria. A remarkable peculiarity which diſtinguiſhes this from all other volcanoes is, the frequency of its eruptions, which are never attended with earthquakes: the ſecurity, therefore, of the inhabitants is not diſturbed by the vicinity of a phenomenon, which every where elſe is highly dangerous. It may not, perhaps, be improper to remark, that water has never been ſeen to ſpout up from this volcano, and that no hot mineral ſprings are found in the iſland.

" In the month of June, 1787, this volcano was obſerved in one of its greateſt eruptions. The ſummit of the mountain was covered with condenſed vapours, of a blackiſh colour, which roſe from the ancient crater in ſpiral clouds. On the 24th lava ran into the ſea. Nine days after it had been thrown up, it extended eighty fathoms in breadth in ſome places, and in others forty. A month after, the matter, which flowed then in abundance, formed a current to the ſea of about ſixty fathoms in breadth, and from fifteen to ſixteen feet in depth. The waves ſmoked at the diſtance of more than thirty fathoms from the place where the lava fell into the water, appearing around of a greeniſh yellow, and forming a band to the leeward of the ſame colour, nearly a league in length. This current, parallel to one older, and conſiſting in the like manner of ſeveral ſtrata of melted matter, formed a projection, the baſis of which was volcanic ſand mixed with a kind of iron droſs. Eleven days after the arrival of the lava at the ſea, a ſolid cruſt was formed at its ſurface, upon which it was poſſible to aſcend to within fifteen paces of the place from which it iſſued; but, as the heat then became inſupportable, the obſerver called to mind the tragical fate of Pliny, and repreſſed his curioſity. One however may venture, without any danger, to walk on a torrent of flowing lava, if care be taken to examine its effects. In flat places it ſoon cools at the ſuperficies, which then becomes hard like thick ice, whilſt the liquid matter may be ſeen through the crevices, continuing its courſe in perfect freedom below; but, ſometimes, meeting with obſtacles, it flows back, breaks the cruſt, and covers it with freſh boiling lava. In declivities, therefore, and ſinuoſities, it is long in acquiring a durable degree of ſolidity; and this the curious ought to obſerve with attention.

" On the firſt of Auguſt the lava ceaſed to flow; but it ſtill emitted ſmoke, and appeared extremely red at the bottom. Some time after another crater or mouth was thought to have been diſcovered at the diſtance of a league from St. Dennis, the capital of the iſland. Clouds of ſmoke and a ſtrong heat proceeded from a ravine, which it was impoſſible to approach during the ſpace of a month; but at the end of that time it was perceived that the heat and ſmoke iſſued from a cavern, which was found to be the retreat of certain Maroon negroes. Fire having been kindled in this place, either by accident, or on purpoſe, it had been nouriſhed by a quantity of leaves, ſtalks of maize, and other combuſtible ſubſtances, lodged in it for a long time, which burned very ſlowly, becauſe the cavern received little air. The remains of birds neſts found here plainly ſhewed that this cavern had not always been expoſed to the like degree of heat; and this, added to other obſervations, quieted thoſe alarms which had been excited by this new appearance. The iſle of France, in the neighbourhood, is conſidered as a country which has been expoſed to violent convulſions of nature. It abounds with caverns, caſcades, precipices, ſubterranean arches, iron mines, calcined ſtones, vitrifications, torrefied ſand, and pyrites, which are ſtriking veſtiges of ancient volcanoes; but, on account of their antiquity, their ſituation cannot now be aſcertained, nor their craters diſtinguiſhed. The moſt elevated mountains in this iſland are not above five hundred fathoms high, whereas in the iſle of Bourbon there are peaks which riſe more than fifteen hundred fathoms. Theſe two iſlands, which are diſtant from each other only thirty leagues, were, doubtleſs, formerly united, and have been detached by ſome prodigious effort of nature. We have every reaſon to believe that they are ſtill connected at the bottom of the ſea, and that there are ſubterranean paſſages which form a communication between them.

" The earthquake, which happened at the iſle of France, on the 4th of Auguſt 1786, ſeems to ſupport this conjecture. That morning, at thirty-five minutes after ſix, a calm ſucceeded a ſtrong breeze from the E. and E. S. E. which had prevailed for four days. A hollow noiſe, which terminated in a ſudden exploſion, like the report of a cannon, was heard in the S. W. quarter; and at the ſame inſtant two ſmart ſhocks were felt, one vertical and the other horizontal. At that time the barometer did not indicate the ſmalleſt change in the atmoſphere; and the E. S. E. breeze commenced a quarter of an hour after, and continued till eleven the night following. This ſtrange phenomenon was not attended with any accident fatal to the iſle of France; and, by accounts from the iſle of Bourbon, it appeared, that the volcano there had thrown up much larger quantities of lava than for ſome days preceding.

" We have reaſon therefore to ſuppoſe that the combuſtible ſubſtances in the caverns of the iſle of France, after fermenting, caught fire, and that having then endeavoured to force a paſſage, they experienced a reſiſtance proportional to their force, which muſt have produced thoſe ſhocks above mentioned; and that making an effort afterwards in every direction, they found a paſſage through ſubterranean galleries to the iſle of Bourbon, where, meeting with leſs reſiſtance, they iſſued through the crater of the volcano, which prevented that iſland from experiencing any ſhocks, though there might be the ſame commotion in both places."

CHAPTER I.

Obſervations on the Iſle of France—The Ingenuity and Labour of M. De Tromelin in clearing the Harbour, &c.—The Danger of Hurricanes—Their Evil and irreſiſtible Conſequences—Account of the Hurricane in 1771*—Rochon's and Poivre's Warnings, which were diſregarded—The Le Verd Geland loſt—The Ambulante Flute toſſed about, and the Crew miraculouſly ſaved—A ſecond Hurricane—M. Brunel's Account of another—Various Diſaſters—Conſequent Ruins—Want of Proviſions, &c. &c.—The French Colonies indebted to M. Poivre—One of the principal Objects of Rochon's Voyage—Poſition of the Shoals, &c. with which the Archipelago abounds—Accounts of Secheyles Iſlands—Flat of Cargados—Salha de Maha—Iſland of Diego Garcia, and the Adu Iſles—Curſory Remarks.*

WHEN the iſle of France was firſt inhabited, the ground was all cleared by means of fire. The hills which hang over the harbour, and defend it from the rage of winds, have been cultivated to the very tops. Torrents having been formed in conſequence of the trees being either burnt, or cut down, the harbour was choked up by the gravel; of courſe the anchoring ground is expoſed to the violence of the ſea and wind.

M. de Tromelin, a very eminent captain in the navy, became anxious to remedy this evil. M. Poivre was now intendant of France and Bourbon. M. de Tromelin having obtained permiſſion, in the name of the colony, of the Duke de Praſlin, then miniſter of the marine, proceeded now to change the courſe of the torrents, by dykes and channels; this cleared the harbour, and prevented it from being choked up in future: by means of gunpowder he likewiſe broke to pieces under the water that part of the bank which oppoſed the paſſage of ſhips.

The hurricanes here are irreſiſtible: they are always accompanied with rain, thunder, and an earthquake. The atmoſphere ſeems to be all fire, and the wind rages equally tremendous from every quarter of the horizon. If the celerity of the wind exceed 50 feet per ſecond, it it impoſſible to reſiſt its force: the ſtrongeſt built houſes are thereby thrown down, and the largeſt trees torn up by the roots. There is no dependence on the weight of anchors or the ſtrength of cables, nor can even a good bottom avail a veſſel in her mooring.

At the time of the hurricane both Abbe Rochon and M. Poivre were exceedingly uneaſy at the ſudden falling of the mercury. It was then four in the afternoon, and M. Poivre invited the port captain to his houſe: but that officer, who had been an eye-witneſs of the hurricane in the year 1761, was not ſtruck, as they were, with the variation of the barometer. He ſaid, that there were more certain means of foretelling hurricanes. Twenty-four hours, ſaid he, before the hurricane commences, the blacks come down from the mountain, and announce its approach. Beſides, the ſetting of the ſun will determine what meaſures ſhould be taken, in order to prevent, as much as poſſible, thoſe accidents which are inſeparable from theſe dreadful phænomena. M. Poivre's entreaties and Rochon's obſervations not being capable of perſuading the captain, they were obliged to wait till ſun-ſet. The ſky was then pure and ſerene; but the mercury ſtill continued to fall in the tube of the barometer. The ſun ſet very beautifully, and the port captain, who had been a long time in the ſervice of the Eaſt-India company, left them in high ſpirits, and perfectly ſecure reſpecting the misfortunes with which the iſland was threatened. He ſeemed to pity them, for conſidering the variation of the barometer as a matter of ſo much importance.

The hurricane, however, commenced at ſeven in the evening, that is to ſay an hour after ſun-ſet. Before nine all the veſſels were driven on ſhore, except the Ambulante flute, and a ſmall corvette, called le Verd Galand. By a ſudden guſt the flute was forced out to ſea, and the corvette being made faſt to her by a cable, was entirely loſt. The Ambulante, without ſails, without rudder, and without proviſions for the ſailors, and a detachment of the Iriſh regiment of Clare, who did duty on board, was toſſed about by the winds for more than twelve hours. By their frequent ſhifting ſhe was driven quite round the iſland, and at length caſt, in a moſt miraculous manner, upon the only part of the coaſt where men in ſuch a violent ſtorm could ſave their lives. What renders theſe diſaſters more diſtreſſing is, the impoſſibility of their mutually aſſiſting each other. They muſt remain motionleſs amidſt the ruins by which they are ſurrounded; they muſt patiently wait for their fate, without being able to foreſee or avoid it. The violence and fury of the wind prevent them from quitting whatever place they have choſen for ſhelter.

This hurricane continued eighteen hours without intermiſſion, and with equal violence. Neither the large quantities of rain which fell, nor the thunder and lightning, were able to allay the fury of the winds: but at three o'clock the next day the mercury, which had fallen 25 lines, remained for ſome minutes ſtationary. A little time after it again roſe; the ſudden guſts then ceaſed, the wind became more ſteady, and at ſix in the evening it was poſſible to give ſome aſſiſtance to the unfortunate people who had been ſhipwrecked. During this hurricane, the communications in different parts of the iſland were interrupted by the falling of trees, and the overflowing of waters. They were three weeks without any news of the Ambulante, which had been caſt on ſhore at a place diſtant only ſix leagues from Port Louis in the Iſle of France. All the crops which they had brought for the uſe of the iſland were deſtroyed. On that account it was requiſite that every effort ſhould be made to repair thoſe veſſels which had ſuffered leaſt by the ſtorm: accordingly M. de Tromelin ſet about this important ſervice to the colony and to commerce. It was neceſſary to diſpatch inſtantly the greater part of theſe veſſels to Madagaſcar, in ſearch of ſtores and proviſions of every kind. M. Poivre had taken the ſalutary precaution to make ſeveral veſſels winter at the Cape of Good Hope. Theſe veſſels, when informed of the diſaſter which had befallen the Iſle of France, brought it ſupplies in abundance, and theſe ſupplies ſaved the colony; for they arrived ſoon after the ſecond hurricane, which happened the ſucceeding month, the new ravages of which had depreſſed the courage and hopes of the unfortunate inhabitants. The damage which the ſhips ſuſtained in the harbour by the violence of the waves and the impetuoſity of the wind, in the ſecond hurricane, was much inferior to what they had ſuſtained by the firſt. The variation of the barometer informed them of their danger, and they each uſed the utmoſt expedition to provide for their ſafety.

We ſhall here deviate awhile, in order to take notice of a hurricane which happened at the Iſle of France on the night between the 9th and 10th of April, 1773, and which according to M. Brunel's account was attended with the moſt diſmal effects.

The ſtorm began about nine in the evening, when the moon appeared above the horizon; but its greateſt violence was between eleven and one in the morning. The fury of the wind, and the noiſe of the thunder, were dreadful; while the lightning, which made the earth and the heavens appear as if on fire, ſtill added to the horror of the ſcene. The fear of the inhabitants did not ceaſe till towards five in the morning; but when day appeared the ſpectacle was dreadful beyond deſcription. More than 300 houſes were deſtroyed in the town of Port Louis; all the roofs were carried away, and the principal church was reduced to a heap of ruins. Many of the people were buried under the rubbiſh; others, bruiſed and mutilated, ſolicited aſſiſtance from their neighbours, who were not in a ſituation to afford them relief; and the ſtreets were ſtrewed with nails, ſplinters of wood, and fragments of every kind. All the veſſels in the harbour, in number 32, were driven on ſhore, and greatly damaged. Of ſeveral ſmall barks, nothing was to be ſeen but the keels; and one had entirely diſappeared, without leaving the ſmalleſt trace that could lead to a diſcovery of its fate. Dead bodies were ſeen floating amidſt the wreck of the ſhips; and ſuch of the ſailors as had eſcaped death, ſtruggling againſt the irritated waves, were making uſeleſs efforts to reach the ſhore. In ſhort, nothing preſented itſelf to the ſight but conſternation, miſery, and diſtreſs. The deſolation in the country was no leſs afflicting; the maize, rice, and corn, were cut and diſperſed; the coffee and cotton plants, nutmeg, ſugar canes, and cinnamon trees, were torn up by the roots; the oldeſt trees were overturned or twiſted by the violence of the wind; manufactories and work-ſhops were deſtroyed, and the graſs appeared dry and withered, as if burnt. In one of the windward quarters of the iſland the ſea, hurried along by the tempeſt beyond its uſual boundaries, roſe more than 40 feet, drove the inhabitants to the neighbouring eminences, in order to avoid being overwhelmed in their houſes, and extended to the adjacent plains and woods, where it left, when it retired, fiſh of various kinds. This misfortune occaſioned ſuch a want of proviſions, that bread was ſold at eighteen ſous per pound, according to the currency of the colony; but a ſupply of corn and rice was afterwards procured from Bengal, the coaſt of Coromandel, the Cape of Good Hope, the iſland of Madagaſcar, and the Perſian Gulph."

The French colonies are much indebted to M. Poivre for ſome valuable plants, as he was very attentive in enriching the colony entruſted to his care with every neceſſary production that could be purchaſed from the old Eaſt India Company.

One of the principal objects of Abbe Rochon's voyage was to determine the ſituation of the ſhoals and quickſands, with which the archipelago abounds, which divides the mountains of Bourbon from the Indian Ocean.

In order to avoid this archipelago of ſmall iſlands and ſhoals, ſituated to the north, the veſſels which ſet out from the Iſle of France for India were obliged, during the two monſoons, to purſue a tedious and indirect route; for as navigators were ignorant of the true poſition of thoſe dangerous ſhoals, it was unſafe for any ſquadron to attempt a more direct courſe. Abbe Rochon was the firſt, who, by aſtronomical obſervation, determined the poſition of the moſt dangerous of theſe ſmall iſlands. Thoſe to which Rochon particularly attended were the Secheyles Iſlands, the flat of Cargados, Salha de Maha, the Iſland of Diego-Garcia, and the Adu Iſles.

The Iſland of Secheyles is ſituated in the latitude of 4 deg. 38 min. S. and in the longitude of 53 deg. 15 min. E. from Paris. It is an exceeding good harbour, and covered with wood to the very top of the mountains. It abounds with land and ſea tortoiſes, ſome of which weigh three hundred pounds. In 1769 Rochon ſpent a month here in order to determine its poſition with the utmoſt exactneſs: Secheyles and the adjacent iſles were inhabited then only by monſtrous crocodiles; but a ſmall eſtabliſhment has been ſince formed in it for the cultivation of nutmegs and cloves. In one of theſe iſlands, called the Iſle of Palms, there is found a tree which bears that celebrated fruit, known by the name of the cocoa of the Maldives, or ſea cocoa.

Among the number of the moſt remarkable objects is the port of Diego-Garcia. That iſland, which Rochon judged to be twelve leagues in circumference, has a very pleaſing aſpect. Its form is like that of a horſe-ſhoe. Its greateſt breadth is not above a quarter of a league: yet the land is high enough to incloſe and ſhelter a vaſt baſon, capable of containing the largeſt fleet. This baſon is about four leagues in length, and its mean breadth is about one. It forms an excellent harbour, and has two entrances on the northern ſide. Theſe paſſages are exceedingly beautiful. It is ſituated in latitude 7 deg. 14 min. S. and in longitude 68 deg. E. from Paris. With regard to the ſhoals which abound in this archipelago, they are as yet not all known.

Cayados and St. Brandon have been confounded by M. d'Apres: the former has the form of a creſcent, and the latter that of an equilateral triangle. The Adu Iſlands, which are twelve in number, are connected by a reef of rocks, which at low water afford a paſſage from the one to the other. They form a bay about ſix miles in circumference. The paſſage which affords an entrance to it lies on the eaſtern ſide; the water is about 30 fathoms deep. This bay, which is of a circular form, has in its middle a ſand bank nearly ſquare, and almoſt a quarter of a league in circumference. There is a great quantity of ſhell-fiſh in it and other different kinds of fiſh. The iſles are flat and covered with cocoa-trees.

The Iſle of Sable (which was diſcovered in 1722) is flat and about a quarter of a mile in circumference. At its northern and ſouthern extremities freſh water fit for drinking may be found at 15 feet depth. The moſt elevated part of this flat is only fifteen feet above the level of the ſea; it is ſix hundred fathoms long and three hundred broad. The iſland is very barren and deſtitute of ſhelter.

The Iſland of Madagaſcar was diſcovered by Laurence Almyda in 1506; but it was long before known to the Perſians and Arab.

The Portugueſe when they diſcovered this iſland gave it the name of St. Lawrence. The French called it Ile Dauphine in the reign of Henry IV. Its real name is Madecaſſe, which has been ſince corrupted into Madagaſcar.

This iſland is divided into twenty-eight provinces, which are, Anoſſy, Manapani, the valley of Amboule, Vohitzan, Watte-Manahore, Ycondre, Etomampo, Adchimouſſy, Erengdranes, Vohitz-Anghombes, Manacarongha, Mantatane, Antaveres, Ghalemboule, Tamatave, Sahavah, Voulou-Voulou, Andafoutchy, Manghabey, Adcimoutchy, Mandrarey, Ampatre, Caremboule, Mahafalley, Houlouvey, Sivah, Yvandrhou, and Machicores.

This large iſland extends almoſt N. N. E. and S. S. W. and lies between the twelfth and twenty-ſixth degrees of ſouthern latitude.

We may reckon that the ſuperfices of this iſland, ſo celebrated for the fertility of its ſoil, and the variety of its productions, contains two hundred millions of acres of excellent land. It is watered on all ſides by ſtreams and large rivers; and above all by a great number of ſmall rivulets, which have their ſources at the bottom of that long chain of mountains which ſeparates the eaſtern from the weſtern coaſt. The two higheſt mountains in the iſland are Vigagora in the north, and Botiſtmene in the ſouth. Theſe mountains contain in their bowels, abundance of foſſils and valuable minerals.

This wild and romantic country, interſected by ridges and valleys, are full of precipices which muſt ſtrike the traveller with awe and ſurpriſe; the ſummits thereof are covered with old venerable trees. The noiſe of the caſcades, which are inacceſſible, is likewiſe awful and immenſe; the eye, however, is delighted with beautiful hills, which are covered with vegetation throughout the year. Here herds of cattle and flocks of ſheep find ample nouriſhment; for ſuch is the flouriſhing ſtate of agriculture, that the fields always abound in rice, potatoes, &c. notwithſtanding the ſeverity and viciſſitudes of the ſeaſons.

The fortunate inhabitants of Madagaſcar never moiſten the earth with their ſweat; they turn it up ſlightly with a pick-axe; and this labour alone is ſufficient. They make ſmall holes in the ground at a little diſtance from each other, and throw into them a few grains of rice, over which they ſpread a little mould with their feet. What proves the great fertility of the ſoil is, that a field ſown in this manner produces an hundred fold.

The foreſts contain a prodigious variety of beautiful trees, palms of every kind, ebony, wood for dying, bamboos of an enormous ſize, orange and lemon trees, &c. &c. excellent timber fit for maſts, and for building houſes or ſhips, may alſo be had.

Theſe numerous trees and ſhrubs are ſurrounded by a multitude of paraſite plants and vines. an theſe foreſts may be found agaric and muſhrooms, the colours of which are lively and agreeable, and which have an exquiſite ſavour. All the foreſts of Madagaſcar abound with plants unknown to botaniſts, ſome of which are aromatic and medicinal, and others fit for dying: alſo flax, a kind of hemp, which, in length and ſtrength, ſurpaſſes that of Europe, the ſugar-cane, wax, different kinds of honey, tobacco, indigo, black-pepper, gum lac, amber, ambergreaſe, ſeveral ſilky and cottony ſubſtances, &c. &c.

We ſhall in our next chapter give a full account of the natives, their manners, &c.

CHAPTER II.

Account of the Iſlanders—Their Perſons, Sentiments, &c.—Their Induſtry, Ingenuity, and Taſte for Mechanical Arts—Dexterity of the Women—A remarkable Inſtance of the Happineſs they enjoy in their own Manners, &c.—The Natives divided into a Number of Tribes—Cuſtoms of each—Manner of Living—Their Food—Ways of dreſſing it—Account of the Southern Part of Madagaſcar—Reſidence and Manners of the Chiefs—Language—Religion—Different Provinces, &c.

THE inhabitants of Madagaſcar are called *Malegaches*, or *Madecaſſes*. They are portly in their perſons, and riſe above the middle ſtature. The colour of their ſkin is different: among one tribe it is of a deep black, and among another tawny: ſome have a copper-coloured tint; but the colour of the greater part is olive. All thoſe who are black have woolly hair, like the negroes on the coaſt of Africa. Thoſe who are of a complexion ſimilar to that of the Indians and Mulattoes, have as lank hair as the Europeans. Their noſe is not flat; they have a broad open forehead; their lips are thin; and their features are regular and agreeable. Theſe people generally diſplay in their countenance a peculiar character of frankneſs and good-nature. They never ſhew any deſire of learning but things which relate to the ſimpleſt wants of mankind; and this deſire is always extremely moderate: they are very indifferent reſpecting knowledge which cannot be obtained without reflection. A natural want of care, and a general apathy render every thing inſupportable to them that requires attention. Sober, light, and active, they ſpend the greater part of their lives in ſleeping, and amuſing themſelves in innocent recreations.

The Malegache, like the ſavage, is deſtitute both of virtue and vice. To him the preſent is every thing; he is ſuſceptible of no kind of foreſight; and he does not even conceive that there are men on the earth who give themſelves uneaſineſs reſpecting futurity. He is a free being who enjoys peace of mind, and health of body; being abſolute maſter of himſelf, his freedom is confined by no check or reſtraint; he goes wherever he thinks proper, acts as he chooſes, and does what he pleaſes, except what may hurt a fellow-creature. It never entered the mind of a Malegache to attempt to domineer over the thoughts or actions of any one: each individual has his own peculiar manner of living; and his neighbour never diſturbs him, nor even thinks of attempting it.

The induſtry of theſe people, in forging iron and other metals, is very remarkable. They are alſo very clever in twiſting ſmall cables, which are employed in fiſhing for whales, and mooring their piraguas. Indeed their natural ingenuity and taſte for mechanical arts, would render it a very eaſy taſk to introduce into Madagaſcar ſeveral branches of commerce. The women are very dexterous and notable, in weaving beautiful pieces of ſtuff, which ſerve them for clothing: ſome of them are made of the filaments of the leaves of a plant called *raven*; others, which are in greater eſtimation with the natives, are manufactured of ſilk and cotton. The population of Madagaſcar is very extenſive, and labour and raw materials exceedingly cheap.

The following is a remarkable inſtance of the happineſs which theſe people enjoy, in following their own manners; and how devoted they are to their own laws and cuſtoms.

“Vander Stel, governor of the Cape of Good Hope, having procured a Hottentot child, cauſed him to be educated according to the manners and cuſtoms of Europe. Fine clothes were given to him; he was taught ſeveral languages, and his progreſs fully correſponded with the care taken of his education. Vander Stel, entertaining great hopes of his talents, ſent him to India under the protection of a commiſſary-general, who employed him with advantage in the company's affairs. After the death of the commiſſary, this Hottentot returned to the Cape. A few days after, while on a viſit to ſome Hottentots, his relations, he formed a reſolution of pulling off his European dreſs, in order to clothe himſelf with a ſheep's-ſkin. He then repaired to Vander Stel, in this new attire, carrying a bundle containing his old clothes, and, preſenting them to the governor, addreſſed him as follows ‘Be ſo kind, Sir, as to obſerve, that I for ever renounce theſe clothes; I am determined to live and to die in the religion, manners, and cuſtoms of my anceſtors. The only favour I have to beg of you is, that you will ſuffer me to keep the necklace and cutlaſs which I now wear.’ Having delivered this ſpeech, he immediately betook himſelf to flight, without waiting for the governor's anſwer, and was never afterwards ſeen at the Cape.”

The natives of Madagaſcar are divided into a great number of tribes. It is ſuppoſed that the population of this iſland may amount to four millions. This calculation is by far too great; however, it is impoſſible to aſcertain the truth, as the iſland, which is divided into a great number of ſocieties, are all diſtinct one from the other: each ſociety inhabits that canton which it finds moſt convenient, and governs itſelf according to its own uſages. A tribe is compoſed of ſeveral villages, who have all a particular chief: this chief is ſometimes elected, but for the moſt part ſucceeds by hereditary right. The lands are not divided: they belong to thoſe who take the trouble to cultivate them. Theſe people are not acquainted either with locks or bolts, and live in a very frugal manner. Hunger regulates their hours of repaſt. It is, however, common to ſee them dine at ten in the morning, and ſup at four in the afternoon. Their food conſiſts of very white rice, exceedingly light, and well boiled, which they beſprinkle with a ſucculent kind of ſoup, made from fiſh or fleſh, and ſeaſoned with ginger, pimento, ſaffron, and a few aromatic herbs. This ſimple diſh is ſerved up in the leaves of the raven, which are uſed for plates, diſhes, and ſpoons. Theſe veſſels are always clean, and are changed at every meal. They have only two ways of dreſſing their food: they either broil it upon coals, or boil it in earthen veſſels, which are curiouſly made.

It is the eaſtern coaſt of Madagaſcar which the French have frequented. The province of Carnaſſi, in which Fort Dauphine ſtands, is very populous. Almoſt all the villages are built upon eminences; they are ſurrounded by two rows of ſtrong paliſades; and within theſe there is a parapet of earth four feet in height. Large bamboos, placed at the diſtance of five feet from each other, and ſunk to a conſiderable depth in the ground, ſerve to ſtrengthen the paliſades: but ſome of theſe villages are fortified alſo by a ditch ſix feet deep and ten broad.

The reſidence of the chief is called Donac; it contains two or three buildings, ſurrounded by a peculiar kind of encloſure, where the chief lives with his women and his children.

The chiefs always go armed with a fuſee, and a ſtick headed with iron, to the other extremity of which is affixed a ſmall bunch of cow's hair: they cover their heads with a cap made of red woollen cloth. It is by their caps, above all, that they can be diſtinguiſhed by their ſubjects. The authority of theſe chiefs is very much limited; yet in the province of Carcanoſſi they are ſuppoſed to be the proprietors of all the land, which they diſtribute among their ſubjects, in order to be tilled and cultivated.

The people of the province of Carcanoſſi are not entirely ignorant of the art of writing. They have even ſome hiſtorical books in the Madecaſſe language; but their learned men uſe only the Arabic characters. They have among them treatiſes on medicine, geomancy, and judicial aſtrology. Their authors are both ſorcerers and phyſicians. The moſt celebrated come from the province of Matatane, in which country magic is preſerved in its full glory. The Matatanes are dreaded by the other natives of the iſland, becauſe they excel in this art of deception. The art of writing has, doubtleſs, been brought into this iſland by the Arabs, who made a conqueſt of it about 300 years ago. Their paper is made in the valley of Amboule: it is manufactured from the *papyrus nilotica*, which the Madecaſſes name *ſanga-ſanga*. They pull off with great dexterity the inner bark of this tree; divide it into very thin filaments, which they moiſten with water; and having laid them acroſs each other, in various directions, preſs them well down. They are then boiled in a ſtrong lye of aſhes, and afterwards pounded in a large wooden mortar till they are reduced to a paſte. This paſte is waſhed and drenched with water, upon a frame made of bamboos, in the form of a grate. When this operation is finiſhed, the leaves are ſpread out to dry in the ſun, and are glazed with a decoction of rice water. This paper is of a yellowiſh colour; but when it is well glazed, it does not imbibe the ink. Their pens are made of the bamboo. Their ink from a decoction in boiling water of the bark of a tree, which they call *arandrato*. It is more ſhining than black.

The Arabic language has made ſome progreſs in the N. W. part of the iſland of Madagaſcar. It is well known that the Arab princes formed large eſtabliſhments along the African coaſt, which, according to geographers, correſpond with the kingdoms of Monomotapa and Mono-Emugi. They took poſſeſſion alſo of the iſland of Comora; and theſe princes, when they emigrated to Africa and the adjacent iſles, did not forget their ancient country: They ſtill indeed carry on an inconſiderable trade with Aden, Maſcate, and the coaſts of Abyſſinia. They have alſo, on the ſmall river of Bombetoc in Madagaſcar, a kind of ſettlement, which enables them to viſit different parts of that iſland, for the purpoſes of commerce. By theſe means they have introduced their language, and left ſome traces of Mahometaniſm among the Malegaches. Formerly, there ſubſiſted between the Arabs and the Portugueſe of India a hatred and animoſity, which were founded ſolely on the zeal theſe two nations entertained for their religion. The Arabs of Comora and Madagaſcar made frequent attacks upon the Portugueſe eſtabliſhments on the coaſt of Africa, which did them great injury: they even deſtroyed ſome of their ſettlements: but this hatred became gradually extinguiſhed, when the decline of the Portugueſe power rendered them leſs the objects of jealouſy. An attempt was made at Goa, about 20 years ago, to take advantage of this ſuſpenſion of hoſtilities, in order to form a Portugueſe ſettlement at Cape St. Sebaſtian, in Madagaſcar. The intention of this eſtabliſhment was merely religious. The Portugueſe thought of forming a miſſion, rather than a factory; but this project was not attended with ſucceſs. M. Boſſe, an inhabitant of the iſle of Bourbon, ſaw the melancholy remains of this eſtabliſhment.

Notwithſtanding this iſland is frequented by the Arabs, Mahometaniſm has not made any great progreſs in it; indeed, if we except circumciſion, abſtinence from pork, and ſome few trifling practices, which have very little influence over the conduct of theſe people, the deſcendants of the Arabs themſelves have loſt ſight of the fundamental parts of their religious opinions. They do not believe in a future exiſtence: like the Manichees, they admit of two principles, one ſupremely good, and the other extremely wicked. They never addreſs their prayers to the former; but they entertain a great dread of the latter, to whom their ſacrifices are continually offered.

The whites, who inhabit the province of Anoſſi and Carcanoſſi, pretend to be deſcended from Imina, the mother of Mahomet. They have aſſumed the name of Zafferahimini. The whites, who inhabit Foulepointe, Noſſi-Hibrahim, and the bay of Antongil, are ſprung ſome from the pirates, and others from the Jews: for this reaſon, they call themſelves Zaffe-Hibrahim, that is to ſay, the deſcendants of Abraham. Beſides theſe, there is a third kind of whites, who ſay they were ſent to Madagaſcar by the caliph of Mecca, to inſtruct the Malegaches in the ſecrets of nature, and the religion of Mahomet. Theſe impoſtors ſeized upon the province of Matatane, after they had expelled and maſſacred the Zafferahimini, who governed that diſtrict. They are called Zaffi-Caſimambou. Their complexion is darker than that of the other whites, and their profeſſion is to teach to read and write the Arabic language.

The Zafferahimini, in the province of Anoſſi and Carcanoſſi, believe that they came originally from the ſandy plains on the borders of Mecca. On this account they are called Ontampaſſemaca, and are divided into three claſſes, the Rhoandrians, the Anacandrians, and the Ontzatſi. The firſt, and moſt honourable claſs, is that of the Rhoandrians. People of this claſs have aſſumed to themſelves the privilege of killing animals. Among ſavages, and people who ſubſiſt by hunting, the trade of a butcher is almoſt always held in great diſtinction. The Rhoandrians are the nobility of the country; and it is always from this claſs that the ſovereign is choſen. The Anacandrians are deſcended from the Rhoandrians, and a woman of an inferior claſs: For this reaſon, they ſhare with the Rhoandrians the honour and advantage of killing, for the other iſlanders, ſuch animals as are neceſſary to their ſubſiſtence. The Ontzatſi are the laſt claſs of the Ontampaſſemaca; but they enjoy no particular marks of diſtinction. They are generally brave ſoldiers, ſkilled in the ar of war, who can throw a ſtone with great dexterity, and ſpend their time in dancing, ſleeping, and amuſing themſelves.

The blacks are divided into four claſſes: the Voadziri, the Lohavohits, the Ontzoa, and the Endeves.

The Voadziri are the deſcendants of the ancient ſovereigns of the iſland. They are generally pretty rich in ſlaves and flocks; and they are allowed to poſſeſs ſeveral villages. Theſe people muſt be held in great conſideration among the iſlanders of Madagaſcar, for they have preſerved, notwithſtanding the deſpotiſm of the Arabs, who conquered the province of Anoſſi, the right of killing, when they are not in the preſence of a Rhoandrian or an Anacandrian, ſuch animals as belong to their ſubjects. The Lohavohits are much leſs powerful than the Voadziri. They can never poſſeſs more than one village; and, however rich they may be in flocks, they muſt always ſend for a Rhoandrian, or an Anacandrian, to kill whatever animals they want to eat.

The people of Ontzoa have no power whatever; and the Endeves are looked upon as ſlaves from their birth.

It is the belief of thoſe iſlanders who poſſeſs any kind of erudition, that God created from the body of the firſt man ſeven women; theſe are ſuppoſed to be the mothers of the different caſtes. That of the Rhoandrians is believed to be the offspring of the firſt man and woman, formed from the brain. The Anacandrians from the neck, and the Ontzatſi from the left ſhoulder: the Voadziri from the right ſide; the Lohavohits and the Ontzoa from the thigh and calf of the leg, and the Endeves from the ſoles of the feet: theſe laſt are looked upon as the meaneſt extraction.

CHAPTER III.

Further Account of the Malegaches—The Attention of the Men to the Women—Their Happineſs when in their Company—Deſcription of the Women—Their Cuſtoms in time of War—Joyful Aſſemblies—Skill of their Phyſicians—Efficacious Remedy for the Venereal Diſeaſe—M. de Modave takes poſſeſſion of the Government of Fort Dauphin in the Name of the King of France—His Account of the Dwarfs in the interior Parts of Madagaſcar—Of a Kimos Woman—Further Remarks—Of the N. E part of Madagaſcar—Deſtruction of a ſmall French Eſtabliſhment at Foulepointe—Of the Northern Part—Lands, &c. belonging to Foulepointe.

THE natives of the province of Anoſſi are exceedingly intelligent. They are poſſeſſed of ſenſe, vivacity, and good-nature. They are ſo very fond of women, that they are never ſad in their company: they are particularly attentive to them, it being their greateſt delight to contribute towards their happineſs. The woman is never obliged to obey like a ſlave, nor does the huſband command like a tyrant. Theſe women are genteel and pleaſing; have good features, fine eyes, white teeth, and a ſmooth ſkin.

The chiefs here, eſpecially thoſe that are rich, enjoy a plurality of wives, though they never eſpouſe more than one legally; the reſt being conſidered as concubines. This cuſtom is not attended with diſagreeable conſequences in Madagaſcar, as all theſe women live very happy together: beſides, a divorce may take place as often as the conjugal union diſpleaſes either the huſband or the wife. When they part, however, by mutual conſent, they reſtore to each other the property they poſſeſſed before marriage. In Madagaſcar adultery is looked upon as a robbery, and puniſhed as ſuch. Theſe people, therefore, pay the utmoſt reſpect to marriage; they forewarn ſtrangers to behave with decency to their wives; but they offer them their daughters, and think themſelves much honoured when they have children by them. Wives may be known by their hair, which is ſeparated into treſſes, and bound up in the form of a noſegay on the top of the head. The virgins ſuffer it to fall careleſsly over their ſhoulders. Huſbands are always in high ſpirits when with their wives; their preſence inſpires them with joy; as ſoon as they perceive them, they begin to dance and ſing, and make uſe of ſeveral amorous expreſſions. The Malegache women appear to be happy, and are generally in good humour. Even Europeans are delighted with their agreeable behaviour.

When the men are at war, the women ſing and dance inceſſantly, throughout the whole day, and even during a part of the night. They imagine that theſe continual dances animate their huſbands, and increaſe their vigour and courage. They ſcarcely allow themſelves time to enjoy their meals. When the war is ended, they aſſemble at ſun-ſet, and renew their ſinging and dancing, which always begin with much noiſe, and the ſound of various inſtruments. Their ſongs are either panegyrics or ſatires, and are to all appearance very intereſting. Whenever a woman finds that her health betrays any ſigns of having had familiar intercourſe with the Europeans, ſhe abſents herſelf from thoſe joyful aſſemblies, in order to avoid the wit and reproaches of her companions, and to put herſelf under the care of the phyſicians. This cuſtom prevents the venereal diſeaſe from ſpreading ſo much in this iſland as it has in Europe. Beſides, their phyſicians have found out a very happy remedy for this diſorder, which is ſaid to be extremely efficacious. They order the patient to chew and ſwallow ſome particular leaves, lying alternately on the back and belly, in a horizontal poſition. The patient muſt not be loaded with clothes; and in order that perſpiration may not be impeded, ſhe muſt be ſurrounded on all ſides with a ſtrong briſk fire during the whole time that the remedy acts. The virus of the diſeaſe generally accumulates in the ſoles of the feet; and the abſceſs there formed is ſeldom attended with diſagreeable conſequences. Great care is taken that the patient may not be incommoded by the heat of the fire.

By the cruelty of the Europeans, the Malegaches have been forced to employ much treachery; and how can they be blamed, ſeeing that every advantage was taken of their weakneſs; and, in return for their hoſpitality, they have met with every unkind treatment! We have ſeveral inſtances of this, particularly in 1642, when Captain Picault obtained an excluſive privilege, for himſelf and aſſociates, to trade in Madagaſcar; and Pronis was authoriſed by the Crown to take poſſeſſion of Madagaſcar in the name of the King, with orders to chooſe the moſt eligible ſpot for their intended eſtabliſhment. The village of Manghefia appeared the moſt convenient and promiſing, as it abounded in rich fields of rice and potatoes, and a quantity of horned cattle. The meadows hereof were watered by a navigable river, which ſprings from the bottom of Mount Siliva. The docks were exceedingly commodious, abounding in timber of all kinds, and the harbour conveniently ſheltered by the iſland of St. Lucia from the ſea winds. The unwholeſomeneſs of the climate, however, made great deſtruction among Pronis's ſmall colony, which obliged him to leave this place immediately, and retire to the peninſula of Tholangar, remarkable for its ſalubrity and ſituation of defence. Here there is excellent anchoring ground; and the fort, which is called Fort Dauphin, is ſurrounded with ſubſtantial walls, conſtructed of lime and ſand. Veſſels, however, in this port are much expoſed to N. E. winds. The lake of Amboul is ſupplied with water by the river of Fanſhere. This lake is 10,000 fathoms in circumference, and 40 feet in depth. The river Fanſhere is navigable for boats to the diſtance of 15 to 20 leagues from its mouth. The great bay of Loucan encloſes on the ſouthern ſide the point of Itapera, which lies to the north of Fort Dauphin, and which is likewiſe ſheltered from the ſea winds by the iſland of St. Clair, which prevents the ſmall river thereof from being choaked up with ſand. Pronis found this place more favourable to the eſtabliſhment than the village of Manghefia; but being deſtitute of abilities to conduct it properly, the people under his command revolted, and put him in chains. He was releaſed from his impriſonment by a veſſel which arrived from France; and he now ſold to the governor of the Iſle of France all the wretched Malegaches who belonged to the eſtabliſhment. This created much indignation from the iſlanders, particularly as there were ſixteen women among theſe ſlaves. His ſucceſſor, Flacourt, likewiſe violated the hoſpitality which had been ſhewn him. The iſlanders were alſo ill treated by others.

M. Poivre having gone to Madagaſcar in the year 1769, when M. de Modave was governor of Fort Dauphin, made it his ſtudy to examine all the plants, &c. The loſs of this eminent naturaliſt is very much regretted by Rochon, who had been ſpectator of his indefatigable induſtry.

The following extraordinary account of a race of pigmies is recorded by M. de Modave:

“The dwarfs in the interior parts of the large iſland of Madagaſcar form a conſiderable nation, called in the Madecaſſe language, *Quimos* or *Kimos*. The diſtinguiſhing characteriſtics of theſe ſmall people are, that they are whiter or at leaſt paler in colour than all the negroes hitherto known; that their arms are ſo long that they can ſtretch their hands below their knees without ſtooping; and that the women have ſcarcely any breaſts, except when they ſuckle, and even then the greater part of them are obliged to make uſe of cow's milk in order to nouriſh their young. With regard to intellectual faculties, theſe Kimos are not inferior to the other inhabitants of Madagaſcar, who are known to be very lively and ingenious, though they abandon themſelves to the utmoſt indolence; but the Kimos, as they are much more active, are alſo much more warlike: they have never yet been overcome by their neighbours, who have often made attempts for that purpoſe. Though attacked with ſuperior ſtrength and weapons, for they are not acquainted with the uſe of gunpowder and fire-arms, like their enemies, they have always fought with courage, and retained liberty amidſt their rocks, which, as they are extremely difficult of acceſs, certainly contribute very much to their ſafety. They live there upon rice, various kinds of fruits, roots and vegetables, and rear a great number of oxen and ſheep with large tails, which form alſo a part of their ſubſiſtence. They hold no communication with the different caſtes by whom they are ſurrounded, either for the ſake of commerce or on any account whatever, as they procure all their neceſſaries from the lands which they poſſeſs. As the object of all the petty wars between them and the other inhabitants of the iſland is to carry away on either ſide a few cattle or ſlaves, the diminutive ſize of the Kimos ſaves them from the latter injury. With regard to the former, they are ſo fond of peace, that they reſolve to endure it to a certain degree; that is to ſay, till they ſee from the tops of their mountains a formidable body advancing, with every hoſtile preparation, in the plains below. They then carry the ſuperfluity of their flocks to the entrance of the defiles, where they leave them, and make a voluntary ſacrifice of them to the indigence of their elder brethren; but at the ſame time denouncing with the ſevereſt threats to attack them without mercy, ſhould they endeavour to penetrate farther into their territories: a proof that it is neither from weakneſs nor cowardice that they purchaſe tranquillity by preſents. Their weapons are aſſagays and darts, which they uſe with the utmoſt dexterity.

"Some ſhort diſtance from Fort Dauphin, the inhabitants of that part of the country ſhew a number of ſmall barrows or earthen hillocks, in the form of graves, which, as is ſaid, owe their origin to a great maſſacre of the Kimos, who were defeated in the field by their anceſtors.

"M. de Modave, in his voyage to Fort Dauphin, about the end of the year 1770, had the ſatisfaction of ſeeing a Kimos woman, aged about thirty, and three feet ſeven inches in height. Her complexion was the faireſt among the inhabitants of the iſland; ſhe was well limbed though ſo low of ſtature, and far from being ill-proportioned; her arms were exceedingly long, and could reach without bending the body as far as the knee; her hair was ſhort and woolly; her features, which were agreeable, approached nearer to thoſe of an European than to an inhabitant of Madagaſcar; ſhe had naturally a pleaſant look, and was good-humoured, ſenſible, and obliging, as far as could be judged from her behaviour.

"A ſhort time before their departure from Madagaſcar, ſhe made her eſcape into the woods, for fear of being carried away from her native country.

"Diminution of ſtature, in reſpect to that of the Laplanders, is almoſt graduated as from the Laplander to the Kimos. Both inhabit the coldeſt regions and the higheſt mountains in the world. Thoſe of Madagaſcar, where the Kimos live, are 16 or 1800 fathoms high above the level of the ſea. The vegetable productions which grow on theſe elevated places appear to be ſtunted, ſuch as the pine, the birch, and a great many others, which from the claſs of trees deſcend to that of humble ſhrubs, merely becauſe they have become alpicoles, ſignifying inhabitants of the higheſt mountains.

"The ordinary height of the men is three feet five inches, and that of the women a few inches leſs. The men wear their beards long, and cut in a round form. The Kimos are thick and ſquat; the colour of their ſkin is lighter than that of the other iſlanders, and their hair is ſhort and woolly. They manufacture iron and ſteel, of which they make their lances and aſſagays. When they perceive bands of travellers preparing to traverſe their country, they tie their oxen to trees on the frontiers, and leave other proviſions, in order that theſe ſtrangers may find the means of ſubſiſting. When the ſtrangers, however, are ſo imprudent as to moleſt them, by behaving in a hoſtile manner, and are not contented with the preſents uſual in the like circumſtances, the dwarfiſh Kimos know how to defend themſelves bravely, and repel by force thoſe who have the temerity to attempt to penetrate into the valley where they reſide, and which is almoſt inacceſſible.

"Remouzai, who, in quality of captain, followed the father of the chief Maimbou, in the two unfortunate expeditions which he undertook againſt theſe people, in order to carry away a part of their flocks, and afterwards ſell them at Fort Dauphin, owed his ſafety merely to the knowledge he had of the high and ſteep mountains by which their valley is ſurrounded. Remouzai had been ſeveral times among the Kimos, and was employed as a guide by Maimbou's father when he ventured to attack them. The firſt incurſion had no ſucceſs; but the ſecond was much more fatal: Maimbou's brother was killed; his ſmall army was put to flight, and the number of thoſe who eſcaped theſe pigmies was very inconſiderable.

"Maimbou was not old enough to accompany his father in this expedition; but he had conceived ſuch an averſion to the Kimos, that he fell into a violent paſſion whenever they were mentioned in his preſence; he wiſhed much to exterminate that race of apes, for by ſuch injurious appellation he diſtinguiſhed thoſe dwarfs.

"A chief of the Mahaffalles, a people reſiding near the Bay of St. Auguſtine, who came from a chief in the neighbourhood of the fort, with a view of exchanging ſilk and other merchandize for oxen, ſaid, in the hearing of one of M. de Modave's officers, that he had been ſeveral times in the country of the Kimos, and that he had even carried on war againſt them. This chief added, that for ſome years theſe people had been haraſſed by their neighbours, who had burnt ſeveral of their villages. He boaſted alſo of having in his poſſeſſion a man and a woman of that race, who he ſaid were about the age of 20 or 25.

"From the accounts of this chief and Remouzai, it is apparent that the valley of the Kimos is abundant in cattle and proviſions of every kind. Theſe little people are induſtrious, and apply with much ſkill and labour to the cultivation of the earth. Their chief enjoys a much more abſolute authority, and is more reſpected, than any of the other chiefs in the different diſtricts of Madagaſcar. The extent of their valley is unknown: it is ſurrounded by very high mountains, and ſituated at the diſtance of 60 leagues to the N. W. of Fort Dauphin; it is alſo bounded on the W. by the country of the Matatanes. Their villages are built on the ſummits of ſmall ſteep mounts, which are ſo much the more difficult to be aſcended, as they have multiplied thoſe obſtacles that render approach to them almoſt impracticable. The chief of the Mahaffalles and Remouzai did not agree reſpecting two points which are particularly worthy of being aſcertained. The general opinion of the people of Madagaſcar is, that the Kimos women have no breaſts, and that they nouriſh their children with cow's milk. It is aſſerted alſo, that they have no menſtrual flux; but that at thoſe periods, when other women are ſubject to this evacuation, the ſkin of their body becomes of a blood-red colour. Remouzai declared this opinion was well founded; but the chief of the Mahaffalles contradicted it."

The moſt frequented parts of the N. E. part of the iſland of Madagaſcar are Foulepointe, St. Mary, and the Bay of Antongil. It is in theſe three places that the French have attempted to form all their eſtabliſhments. The inhabitants of this coaſt are ſtill better, and more humane, than thoſe of the province of Carcanoſſi. They are ignorant of the uſe of locks or bolts, and ſhut the doors of their houſes with nothing elſe than thorns, or the branches of trees. They expoſe all their treaſures, as they entertain no ſuſpicions of their neighbours. Their houſes might eaſily be thrown down, as they are built of nothing elſe but mats and leaves.

The pirates, who carried on their depredations in the Indian ſeas, alarmed at the great preparations which were making to put an end to their robbery, took refuge on the N. E. coaſt of Madagaſcar. It appears that they formed their eſtabliſhment at the Iſle of Noſſy-Hibrahim, named by the French St. Mary. One of the extremities of this iſland reaches within eleven leagues of Foulepointe, and the other extends to the Bay of Antongil. By contracting alliances with the iſlanders, the pirates gained their confidence and friendſhip. This foreign land became to them and their children a new country: they imitated its manners, and adopted its cuſtoms. In fertile and rich regions, abounding in every thing neceſſary for ſubſiſtence, it is almoſt impoſſible to find any advantage by attacking the property of another; ſince the only riches of the inhabitants are thoſe of the ſoil, and the ſoil belongs in common to all. It is not to be wondered at then that pirates, returning continually to this place of ſhelter to repair and re-victual their ſhips, ſhould be favourably received by the Malegaches, ſince they ſhared in their opulence, without knowing how they acquired it.

In 1722, ſeveral nations, alarmed by the enormous loſſes which their commerce ſuſtained, by the continual depredations of theſe pirates, united together to deliver the Indian ſeas from the oppreſſion of theſe formidable tyrants, who had ſeized a large Portugueſe veſſel, in which were Count de Receira and the archbiſhop of Goa; and the ſame day another veſſel, which carried 32 guns. The pirates, elate with ſucceſs, made a long and deſperate reſiſtance. Before they were extirpated, it was neceſſary to bring a conſiderable force againſt them; to terrify them by the ſevereſt puniſhment, and to purſue them through the moſt imminent dangers, even to the place of their retreat, where they were obliged to ſet fire to their veſſels. Such were the ſevere means employed to clear the Indian ſeas of theſe plunderers, who had infeſted them from the time that Vaſco de Gama opened a paſſage to India by the Cape of Good Hope.

When theſe banditti firſt eſtabliſhed themſelves in the iſland, cattle and ſheep were of no value. Rice, and various kinds of proviſions, had no other price than that which was affixed on them by navigators; and it even appears, that during the time of their piracy they ſpent the fruits of their long voyages in drunkenneſs and debauchery, on their return from every expedition.

It was theſe profligates who firſt introduced the ſlave-trade into the N. E. part of Madagaſcar. It was not, however, without cauſing much trouble and diſorder that they were able to overcome the averſion which the Malegaches had for that horrid traffic. Before this epoch ſeveral European ſhips had made vain efforts to induce them to ſell their priſoners and malefactors. Their negotiations for this purpoſe, inſtead of being attended with ſucceſs, were rejected with indignation, and ſometimes puniſhed in an exemplary manner, when they ventured to employ ſtratagem or force. The pirates were too well acquainted with the intrepid ſpirit of the Malegaches to uſe theſe means; and they were ſenſible that they were too few in number to ſubdue them, or to dictate to them concerning a trade which they deteſted. The leaſt violence, in this reſpect, would have occaſioned their deſtruction; and with ſtill more certainty that of their wives and children. The ſureſt way of accompliſhing their end, therefore, was to kindle up among theſe people the flames of diſcord; and, taking advantage of their inteſtine wars, to prevail on them to diſpoſe of their priſoners, who, on account of their number, could not fail of being a burthen to them.

Rochon was witneſs to the entire deſtruction of a ſmall French eſtabliſhment at Foulepointe, about the end of the year 1768. Though aſſiſtance of every kind was ſpeedily given to the unfortunate people who belonged to it, not one of them could be ſaved. The robuſt as well as the weak, all fell victims to diſeaſe, in the courſe of a very ſhort time. On account of the ſalubrious ſea air, with which their veſſel was ſurrounded, and which corrected, in ſome degree, the fatal effects of the putrid exhalations, Rochon happily eſcaped this calamity. Beſides, as ſoon as the firſt ſymptoms of the diſeaſe appeared in the village, all communication with the land, except what was indiſpenſibly neceſſary, was rigorouſly forbidden. The crew were no longer allowed to have any intercourſe with the iſlanders; nor were their piraguays ſuffered to approach the veſſel. Without this precaution, the infection might have been introduced into the ſhip; and no means could have been deviſed to check its progreſs.

No part in the northern quarter of Madagaſcar is free from putrid and malignant fevers; but theſe cruel diſeaſes do not every year occaſion the ſame ravages. Their violence and duration ſeem to depend more particularly on the direction of the wind. When it blows long from the N. the evil is at its height. There are few men robuſt and ſtrong enough to reſiſt the influence of this dangerous wind, which prevails only from the end of October till the beginning of May.

The northern part of Madagaſcar being more fertile in productions of every kind than the ſouthern part, is conſequently more frequented by European veſſels; but the interior part of the country has never yet been viſited. When Rochon was at the Iſle of France, he in vain endeavoured to procure ſuch information as might enable him to write a deſcription of it: however, the ideas with which he was furniſhed were, in a great meaſure, vague and uncertain. The high mountains of Vigagora, which muſt be traverſed, preſent, at every ſtep, obſtacles capable of ſtopping men the moſt accuſtomed to brave dangers of every kind. When Rochon found himſelf ſurrounded by rocks, a ſmall cord held by his guides revived his courage, and facilitated an acceſs to the higheſt precipices: ſilk cords are preferable to thoſe of hemp, becauſe they are ſtronger and much lighter.

The place moſt frequented by the Europeans in the northern part of Madagaſcar, is called Foulepointe; but the natives give it the name of *Voulou-Voulou.* The harbour is ſurrounded by a reef of rocks, which break the force of the waves, and ſhelter ſhips from heavy ſeas. The ſhores of it are very bold, and the leaſt depth of the water is twenty-three feet at low tides. The reef, which conſiſts of coral rocks, is joined to the main land, and ſtretches N. N. E. whilſt the coaſt ſtretches N. N. W. The entrance of the harbour, which is on the north ſide, is about fifty fathoms in breadth. The depth of the baſon is about fifty fathoms: it is capable of containing ten large veſſels, which may anchor along-ſide of each other in from thirty to thirty-five feet of water. The ground is ſure; but, in the winter ſeaſon, the entrance is ſhut by a ſhifting ſand-bank, which is diſſipated when the ſouth-eaſt ſucceed the north winds or calm weather. The ſea never riſes or falls more than four or five feet at the time of ſpring or neap-tides. During the latter the reef of rocks appears above the water; and abundance of natural productions may be then found on them, ſuch as marine plants, moſſes, black coral, inſects, valuable madrepores, ſea ſtars, and ſhells, which by the variety of their form, and the brilliancy of their colours, ſerve to ornament the cabinets of the curious. The mouths of the rivers here are bordered with mangles which are loaded with oyſters of an excellent taſte. Theſe oyſters adhere to the branches, and form cluſters of the moſt ſingular and remarkable figures. At a little diſtance from thoſe parts which the ſea covers, there are found veins of a kind of ſand different from that of the ſhore, and which appears to have experienced a ſemivitrification. This ſand is intermixed with ſtones of a ſoft friable nature, interſperſed with an infinite number of ſmall fragments of natural glaſs. Foulepointe lies in latitude 17 deg. 40 min. 20 ſec. and longitude 47 deg. 30 min.

Veſſels can procure at Foulepointe proviſions of every kind in abundance, and at a low price. The markets are well ſupplied when commerce experiences no check or reſtraint on the part of the Europeans. Some years ago the people of Foulepointe refuſed to ſell hogs and pigs, becauſe an old man who lived at the diſtance of four leagues from the port, and who was accounted a ſorcerer, had forbidden them. This Ombiaſſe pretended that they would be threatened with great misfortunes if they did not endeavour to deſtroy the race of theſe filthy animals: but this prohibition does not prevent the Europeans from procuring them in the mountains, where they may be found in large herds. The villages in the neighbourhood of Foulepointe are not numerous; they are diſperſed here and there on the declivities of little hills, and are defended only by paliſades. They are agreeably ſhaded by a multitude of uſeful trees, ſuch as the cocoa nut tree, bamboos, orange and lemon trees, wild vines, and bananas, the fruit of which are ſo much eſteemed by the Europeans: but the moſt remarkable is the *raven*, a kind of palm-tree known in Madagaſcar only, and which is prepared and eaten in the ſame manner as that of the cabbage-palm. This tree riſes to a great height: it is covered with a hard bark, and its wood, which is fibrous and hard, is employed for conſtructing houſes. The walls and partitions of theſe houſes are formed of the ribs of its leaves, which have the ſolidity of wood and the pliability of leather, and which are faſtened together in a very ingenious manner. The leaves ſerve to roof them, and makes an excellent covering: alſo of theſe leaves the Madecaſſes make their plates, diſhes, cups, &c.

The lands belonging to Foulepointe abound with rich paſtures and cattle. The river Ongleby, which is deep in ſome places and in others broad and ſhallow, produces plenty of fiſh, and is covered with water-fowl. Piraguas ſail up it for more than twenty leagues: however, this river, like all the reſt in Madagaſcar, is filled with monſtrous crocodiles. Rochon one day ſaw an ox dragged away and devoured by one of theſe monſters, which are a terror even to the iſlanders.

About a few leagues from Foulepointe, towards the high mountains of *Ambotiſmene*, the land begins to riſe, and the plains and the valleys are ſheltered from the winds by little hills. The heat here is not incommodious, becauſe the country is high and covered with wood: the low lands, which are leſs cultivated, are more wild and rural. The iſlanders in this part do not keep their cattle, but ſuffer them to wander about without a guide, and without ſhackles. The meadows, which are ſituated at the bottom of the valleys, are watered by a multitude of ſtreams and rivulets, the windings of which are exceedingly romantic and agreeable. There are yams and rice of different kinds, various ſorts of roots, peculiar to this place, with turnips, beans, &c. &c. Towards the cloſe of the year 1768, Rochon brought home a variety of trees, plants, ſhrubs, &c. from this place.

CHAPTER IV.

Deſcription of Cochinchina—Divided into eleven Provinces—Hue the moſt beautiful of all—Government of the Place—King's Houſhold—His Wealth—Mode of acquiring it—A ſtrange Tax—The manner of impoſing it—Rejoicings in conſequence thereof—The Activity, Induſtry, &c. of the Cochinchineſe—Their Poverty and Ignorance—Hoſpitality—Partiality for the Chineſe—For Women—Polygamy allowable—Manners of the Women—Puniſhment for Infidelity—Their Religion, &c.—Mountains of Cochinchina inhabited by Wild Beaſts—Value of their Timber—Various Productions of Mountains and Land—Their Trade—Traffic with the Chineſe—Faifo the place of greateſt Trade—Principal Articles in exchange—Remarks on the Chineſe Trade by M. Brunel—The Chineſe not allowed to open their Mines—Pretended Motive of the Prohibition.

THE kingdom of Cochinchina is bounded by Tonquin; on the ſouth by Ciampa and Camboja; on the eaſt by the Indian ocean; and on the weſt by the kingdom of Laos, and a ſavage people named the Kemouys. It is about 150 leagues in length, and extends from the eleventh to the twenty-ſeventh degree of northern latitude. Its greateſt breadth does not exceed 12 or 15 leagues. It is divided into eleven provinces, four of which, Dinheat, Quambing, Dinhgnoe, and Hue, lie towards the north. The ſeven ſouthern provinces are Cham, Quangzhia, Quinhin, Fouyen, Fanriphanrang, Nanlang, and Bounay. Hue, which contains the royal city, where the kings of Cochinchina reſide, is the moſt beautiful of all theſe provinces. This capital is ſituated near a large and beautiful river, which was formerly ſo deep as to be capable of bearing ſhips of great burthen; but ſince a dreadful inundation which lately happened, ſand-banks have been formed at its mouth, ſo that ſmall veſſels only can enter it.

This city is interſected by canals after the Chineſe manner, in order to facilitate the tranſportation of merchandiſe, and for the convenience of the inhabitants, who are pretty numerous, and who could not endure the great heats of ſummer without bathing two or three times a day. The king maintains about twelve or fifteen thouſand ſoldiers around his palace, to protect his perſon as well as to defend his ſtates; and near three hundred neat galleys, which, in time of war, ſerve to convey troops from one place to another, and in the time of peace to carry the monarch when he travels: for he never quits his palace but in that manner. Thoſe which he uſes are extremely beautiful, and even richly gilt: eſpecially thoſe of his women, part of whom always accompany him wherever he goes. This prince alſo keeps four hundred elephants trained to war; indeed the ſtrength of his kingdom conſiſts in the number of theſe animals.

In reſpect to the government of Cochinchina, it is monarchical. The ſovereign is abſolute maſter of the whole kingdom, which he governs with the aſſiſtance of his four principal miniſters, two of whom are called his right hand, and two his left hand. Theſe miniſters have the power of appointing to all employments, both civil and military. Each province is under the management of a governor, who both commands the militia and adminiſters juſtice. The whole militia are divided into two diſtinct bodies, ſea and land ſoldiers, and both of theſe are divided into regiments. In the province of Phanriphanrang the governor has the title of viceroy.

The fineſt men that can be found in the kingdom compoſe the king's houſhold. The moſt beautiful company of theſe is that which is diſtinguiſhed by the title of *golden ſabres*. The men of this company are picked from all the other companies. They are the ſtrongeſt, as well as the braveſt, and their authority, conſequently, greater than the others.

The king of Cochinchina is rich in gold and money, of which he has always ſeveral edifices full. His great wealth ariſes from a tax paid by all his ſubjects, from the age of 19 to that of 60. This tax is greater or leſs, according to the ſtrength and ſituation of each individual. Every three years the governor of each province cauſes a new liſt to be made out of all thoſe who, according to law, have attained to the proper age of taxation. To enable him to do this, the chief of every village forms a liſt with great care, and carries a copy of it to the governor, who orders all thoſe whoſe names are inſerted in it to appear before him on the day appointed. They all ſtrip themſelves from head to foot: the mandarin then cauſes his officers to examine them; and thoſe who are robuſt and well-proportioned, and who ſeem to have moſt ſtrength to labour, are taxed at a higher rate than thoſe who, being feeble and weak, or in a bad ſtate of health, can with difficulty gain a livelihood. This tax, which goes into the king's treaſury, is paid according to the ſtrength or ſituation of each individual, either in gold, money, or rice. Every year, in the ſeventh month, the taxes of all the provinces are tranſported to court with great pomp and magnificence. On this occaſion there are great rejoicings in the capital for a month, during which the people are employed in feaſting, ſeeing plays, artificial fire-works, and various other entertainments.

The Cochinchineſe, compared with the Indians, are brave, active, and induſtrious. They are fond of truth, and cloſely adhere to it when they know it. They are, however, poor and ignorant; but extremely polite to each other, and to ſtrangers. They have a great eſteem for the Chineſe, on account of their learning. The king, above all, is very fond of them; and encourages them to frequent his ports, for the ſake of carrying on commerce with them. The Cochinchineſe are much addicted to women; and polygamy is allowed amongſt them. A man generally has as many wives as he can maintain; and the law gives him great authority over them, as well as over his children. Women convicted of infidelity to their huſbands, are condemned to be expoſed to the fury of elephants. The women, who are not remarkable for their modeſty, go quite naked to the middle; and they publicly bathe, without any ceremony, in the view of every body. In their perſons, the Cochinchineſe have a great reſemblance to the Chineſe, except that they are more tawny: their women are beautiful, and very fair. Their dreſs is the ſame as that which was uſed in China before the irruption of the Tartars. The mandarins of letters in Cochinchina have adopted the Japaneſe dreſs. They preſerve their hair, particularly the women, ſome of whom have it ſo long that it reaches to the ground: this they eſteem a great beauty.

The religion of this country is ſimilar to that of China. The Chriſtian religion has been lately tolerated, and makes no little progreſs. Some princes and mandarins of the firſt rank are Chriſtians. Their learning conſiſts in being able to read Chineſe books, and acquiring a knowledge of the morality which they contain. This knowledge qualifies them for becoming mandarins.

Cochinchina is chiefly compoſed of mountains; the valleys and plains between are well cultivated. The hills are inhabited only by tygers, elephants, and various other animals. The mountains, though uncultivated, are covered with woods and foreſts, the timber of which is of great utility, and by which means the Cochinchineſe procure roſe-wood, ebony, iron-wood, ſapan, the cinnamon-tree, calembouc, ſandal wood, and in general all thoſe kinds of woods which are uſed in India for conſtructing houſes, barks, and furniture; or from which gum, balm, and perfumes, are extracted.

The mountains alſo produce honey, wax, rattans, and gamboge: likewiſe ivory, and even gold, in pretty large quantities. Mines of this metal are very abundant. The land, when cultivated, is extremely fertile, and the people reap every year two crops of rice, which is ſold almoſt for nothing. They abound with all the fruits of India, ſuch as ananas, mangoes, citrons, oranges, and with many others peculiar to itſelf. They have likewiſe plenty of pepper; together with arec and betel. They have alſo abundance of cotton; but they are not acquainted with the art of making it into fine cloth. They cultivate mulberry-trees, upon which they feed ſilk-worms, and manufacture a kind of coarſe ſilk ſtuffs. Beſides theſe, they have excellent ſugar; but are very ill ſupplied with vegetable productions. They have a quantity of oxen, but no ſheep; however, they are rich in poultry. They have alſo very good fiſh, but they never eat it.

The Cochinchineſe being rather poor, are but little acquainted with the nature of trade, and are totally ignorant of foreign trade, except with the Chineſe, and ſome time ago with the inhabitants of Japan. The articles they get from China are, tutanag, copper, white, red and yellow porcelain, tea, medicines, embroidered ſilk ſtuffs, paint, paper gilt and coloured, which is uſed for ſacrifices, and a many roots. In return for theſe, they give gold, ivory, ſugar-candy, arec, eagle-wood, timber, muſk, pepper, ſalt-fiſh, birds neſts, horns of the rhinoceros, gamboge, &c. &c. All buſineſs, and contracts of every kind, begin and terminate with preſents. Merchandiſe is paid for in gold, ſilver, and a kind of coin much uſed in this country called *caches*. Faifo is the place of greateſt trade in Cochinchina, there being about 6000 Chineſe, (all rich merchants) who married in the country, and pay tribute to the king. This place contains two churches, one of which belongs to the Portugueſe Jeſuits, and the other to the Spaniſh Frans. Cochinchina has ſeveral ports, ſome of which are very convenient.

In reſpect to the Chineſe trade, M. Brunel remarks, that China, of all the Aſiatic countries, abounds moſt in ſuperfluities. A very profitable and extenſive trade might be carried on, if the commodities which the place produces were juſtly conſidered. There are ſeveral rich mines of gold and ſilver in China; but they are not allowed to be opened, for fear they might occaſion too great a circulation of money. The pretended motive for prohibition is, for fear any lives may be loſt in exploring the mines: of courſe, braſs and copper are the only metals that are current in this place. There are ſome bankers who carry on a traffic with them; but in buſineſs of this kind the Europeans never have any concern. In China, there is no current money, except theſe caches and halfpence; payments are made by weight, and the Chineſe are frequently obliged to cut their gold and ſilver pieces, in order to give or receive due weight when they are ſettling their accounts. They weigh their gold and ſilver in ſcales; but for the payment of trifling ſums a ſmall ſteelyard is employed. Seeing that money is not received in China but by weight, ſpecie of every kind is taken; however, they carefully examine the quality before.

The Chineſe weights are the *pic*, the *caty*, and the *tael*. A pic is one hundred weight; a caty one pound, and a tael one ounce.

The name of the Chineſe meaſure is a *cob*, which contains one foot, eight inches, and three lines. The Chineſe foot is called *tchi*, and is divided into ten inches.

Inſtead of a pen the Chineſe calculate with a board, having ſmall wooden balls ſtrung upon it, at certain diſtances, two of which are at the top, and five at the bottom. Each of theſe balls at the top is equal to five, and thoſe at the bottom to one. When they have caſt up a ſum, they mark it on the board: when a ſecond is caſt up, it is immediately added to it, and generally without any error. This operation is performed with the utmoſt facility.

Tea grows on a ſmall ſhrub, the leaves of which are collected twice or thrice every year. Thoſe who collect the leaves three times a-year, begin at the new moon which precedes the vernal equinox, whether it falls in the end of February, or the beginning of March. At that period moſt of the leaves are perfectly green, and hardly fully expanded: but theſe ſmall and tender leaves are accounted the beſt of all; they are ſcarce, and exceedingly dear. The ſecond crop, or the firſt for thoſe who collect the leaves only twice a-year, is gathered about the end of March, or the beginning of April. Part of the leaves have then attained to maturity; and though the other part have acquired only half their ſize, they are both collected without any diſtinction. The third, or the ſecond for ſome, and laſt crop, is more abundant, and is collected about the end of April, or the beginning of May, when the leaves have attained to their full growth, either in ſize or number. There are ſome people who neglect the two firſt crops, and who confine themſelves entirely to this; the leaves of which are ſelected with great care, and diſtributed into claſſes according to their ſize and goodneſs.

The leaves of the tea ſhrub are oblong, ſharp-pointed, indented on the edges, and of a very beautiful green colour. The flower is compoſed of five white petals diſpoſed in the form of a roſe, and is ſucceeded by a pod of the ſize of a filberd, containing two or three ſmall green ſeeds, which are wrinkled, and have a diſagreeable taſte. Its root is fibrous, and ſpreads itſelf out near the ſuperficies of the ground. This ſhrub grows equally well in a rich as in a poor ſoil. It is to be found all over China; but there are certain places where the tea is of a better quality than in other.

The manner of preparing tea is very ſimple: when the leaves are collected, they are expoſed to the ſteam of boiling water, in order to ſoften them; and they are then ſpread out upon metal plates, placed over a moderate fire, where they acquire that ſhrivelled appearance which they have when brought to Europe. In China there are only two kinds of the tea-ſhrub; but the Chineſe, by their induſtry, have conſiderably multiplied each of them.

There are three kinds of bohea tea; the firſt of which, called common bohea, grows at the bottom of the mountain; the ſecond, called congo, grows at the top; and the third, named ſouchong, grows in the middle.

The congo is bohea tea better prepared. The ſouchong grows on the middle of the mountain, and being ſheltered from the injuries of the weather, acquires a greater degree of fineneſs than the reſt.

Green teas do not grow in the ſame places as the bohea tea. They are brought from the province of Nankin, and are diſtinguiſhed into three ſorts. The firſt is known under the name of *ſonglo tea*, but oftener under that of *green toukay*; the ſecond is called *bin tea*, and the third *hayſſuen tea*. There are alſo ſome other kinds; but the greater part of them are unknown, or of little importance to foreigners.

There is another kind of tea in China called *poncul-tcha*, to which the Europeans give the name of *tea in balls*. It is procured from the province of *Fle-tchien*, or *Yunnan*, and is a compoſition or mixture of different teas formed into balls. When it is uſed, a ſmall quantity of it is cut off, and ſuffered to infuſe a much longer time than common tea. It is not agreeable to the taſte, but it has a peculiar virtue of curing diſorders of the breaſt, and facilitating digeſtion.

China ink is a compoſition of fiſh-glue, ox-gall, and lamp-black. When in a liquid ſtate, it is poured into ſmall wooden moulds, where it is ſuffered to harden. The Chineſe conſider it as an excellent remedy for ſpitting of blood.

There are two kinds of Galega. One is a thick plant, that is covered with a hard reddiſh bark: it is whitiſh in the inſide, and has a bitter taſte. The other, which is ſmaller, is reddiſh both within and without, and has a ſtronger and more aromatic taſte.

They have two kinds of gum, gumbage and gumlac. Gumbage is a reſinous, gummy juice, of a yellow colour, and is uſed in medicine: the other, gumlac, is employed in the compoſition of Spaniſh wax.

There is a plant called cuſcuma, very like ginger. This bears a purple flower; the fruit is like an Indian cheſnut, and the ſeeds, which reſemble peas, are fit for eating. They are boiled with meat, and mixed alſo with rice, &c. This is likewiſe uſed in medicine.

Quickſilver is the natural production of ſeveral parts of China and the Eaſt-Indies. It is found in mountains, white as chalk, and covered with flexible ſtones. There are two kinds of cinnabar, one natural and the other artificial.

China likewiſe produces rhubarb; alſo borax, which is a kind of ſalt proper for accelerating the effuſion of metals. There is a China root, called Smilax China, as large as a child's hand. It is frequently uſed by the natives inſtead of rice, and contributes not a little to make them luſty. In the province of Onanſi it is uſed with great ſucceſs as a medicine. There is a kind of bilious, fermented, and nearly corrupted blood, which is taken from a bag under the belly of a ſpecies of roe-buck, and which is diſtinguiſhed by the appellation of muſk. Toutanag is a white metallic alloy, made of tin and biſmuth, hard, compact, and heavy. The mother of pearl comes from Cochinchina and Campaja: they are at firſt large thick oyſter-ſhells, ſmooth and ſilvery within, and of a grey colour on the outſide. The Chineſe varniſh is a compoſition of a viſcous liquor, extracted from different ſhrubs and ſmall reddiſh worms.

The above being a COMPLETE *Hiſtory of all the* REMARKS, PARTICULARS, *&c. relative to Madagaſcar and the Chineſe Trade, as made by* ABBE ROCHON *and* M. BRUNEL, *faithfully and accurately tranſlated from their Works, we ſhall now proceed to give the intereſting Journal of* LIEUTENANT BLIGH's *Voyage in his Majeſty's ſhip the* BOUNTY, *for the purpoſe of conveying the Bread-fruit to the Weſt-Indies; with alſo the important Narrative of the Mutiny on board the veſſel, and the ſubſequent Voyage of the Captain and the remaining crew in the ſhip's boat from* TOFOA *to* TIMOR: *the whole being united, and written in a more uniform and correct manner than the Public have hitherto witneſſed.*

A NEW, COMPLETE, AND AUTHENTIC

HISTORY OF
A VOYAGE to the SOUTH-SEAS,

Undertaken by Command of his Majeſty, and Performed in 1787, 1788, and 1789,

In His Majeſty's Ship the BOUNTY,

UNDER THE COMMAND OF

Lieutenant *WILLIAM BLIGH*,

For the Purpoſe of conveying the BREAD-FRUIT-TREE from the SOUTH-SEA-ISLANDS to the WEST-INDIES.

Including the ſubſequent VOYAGE of Part of the CREW in the SHIP'S BOAT, from *Toſoa*, one of the *Friendly Iſlands*, to *Timor*, a Dutch Settlement in the *Eaſt-Indies*.

With a Full and Circumſtantial Narrative of the MUTINY on Board the ſaid Ship, and ſeveral other Intereſting Particulars contained in the JOURNALS and COMMUNICATIONS of Captain BLIGH, Surgeon LEDWARD, Meſſrs. FRYER, NELSON, &c. &c. more Accurate and Full than any hitherto publiſhed.

Which, with the ſeveral other VOYAGES and TRAVELS to be included in this Collection, will be Embelliſhed with a Variety of Elegant CHARTS, MAPS, and other COPPER-PLATES, Engraved by Eminent Artiſts.

INTRODUCTION.

AGREEABLE to the requeſt of ſeveral merchants and planters of his majeſty's Weſt-India poſſeſſions, who were deſirous of introducing the bread fruit-tree into thoſe iſlands, his majeſty was graciouſly pleaſed to give his conſent, and accordingly a veſſel (which was called the Bounty) the moſt fit for the undertaking, was purchaſed and taken into dock at Deptford, for the purpoſe of being properly equipped for the intended voyage.

Auguſt 16, 1787, the command of the Bounty was given to Lieutenant William Bligh. Her burthen was about 215 tons: her length on deck 90 feet 10 inches, and her breadth 24 feet 3 inches. The preparations and fixtures were formed in a manner very commodious, according to a plan propoſed by Sir Joſeph Banks; however, her maſts, being according to the proportion of the navy, they were afterwards ſhortened at the deſire of the captain, who, conſidering the nature of the voyage, thought them too much for her. Among other alterations the quantity of ballaſt was leſſened; inſtead of the uſual weight (which is 45 tons of iron) the captain ordered only 19 tons to be taken on board; being of opinion that in violent ſtorms of wind veſſels are more ſubject to misfortunes when heavy in their bottom. The captain was alſo willing to allow for the weight of the ſtores and proviſions.

The ſhip did not come out of dock till the 3d of September. After this it was found neceſſary to employ the carpenters and joiners for the ample completion of their buſineſs.

The men and officers conſiſted of one lieutenant, to command, one maſter, one ſurgeon, one boatſwain and mate, one gunner and mate, one carpenter, mate and crew, two maſter's mates, two midſhipmen, two quarter-maſter's mates, one ſailmaker, one armourer, one corporal, one clerk and ſteward, and twenty-three ſeamen; the whole amounting to the number of forty-four. Beſides theſe there were two ſkilful men appointed to have the management of the plants which were intended to be brought home.

We may look upon this voyage as the firſt which was deſigned to reap advantage from the diſcoveries which had been recently made. The introduction of Bread-fruit into the Weſt-Indies, it was naturally expected, would be of eſſential benefit to the inhabitants in conſtituting an article of food; it was therefore intended that the two gardeners, who accompanied them, one of whom, David Nelſon, had been employed in a ſimilar manner by Captain Cook in his laſt voyage, ſhould ſelect as many trees and plants as appeared to them of a proper ſpecies and ſize, to be taken on board the Bounty.

Though there have been ſeveral accounts of the Bread-fruit, and we ſhall have occaſion to mention it in other ſucceeding voyages, particularly Cook's and Anſon's, yet for the immediate ſatisfaction and convenience of our readers we ſhall give an extract from Dampier's account thereof in his Voyage Round the World, performed in 1688.

"The Bread-fruit (as we call it) grows on a " large tree as big and high as our largeſt apple- " trees. It has a ſpreading head, full of branches, " and dark leaves. The fruit grows on the boughs " like apples: it is as big as a penny-loaf when " wheat is at five ſhillings the buſhel: it is of a " round ſhape, and hath a thick tough rind: when " the fruit is ripe it is yellow and ſoft, and the " taſte is ſweet and pleaſant. The natives of Guem " uſe it for bread. They gather it when full grown, " while it is green and hard; then they bake it in " an oven, which ſcorches the rind and makes it " black; but they ſcrape off the outward black cruſt, " and there remains a tender thin cruſt, and the " inſide is ſoft, tender, and white, like the crumb " of a penny-loaf. There is neither ſeed nor ſtone " in the inſide; but all is of a pure ſubſtance like " bread. It muſt be eaten new, for if it is kept " above twenty-four hours it grows harſh and " choaky; but it is very pleaſant before it is too " ſtale. This fruit laſts in ſeaſon eight months in " the year, during which the natives eat no other " ſort of food of bread kind. There is plenty of this " fruit growing on the reſt of the Ladrone Iſlands."

BOOK I.

CHAPTER I.

Intention to proceed to the Society Iſlands—Unavoidably poſtponed—Take in their Stores, &c. at Long-Reach—Make for Spithead—Departure from thence—A Seaman providentially ſaves his Life—A ſevere Storm—Conſequent Loſſes—The Iſland of Teneriffe ſeen—Anchorage near Santa Cruz—Meſſage ſent to the Governor—His polite Anſwer—Capt. Bligh pays his perſonal Reſpects to him—Seaſon unfavourable for Refreſhments—Weigh Anchor—Proceed to Otaheite—Allowance curtailed—The People informed of the Intent of the Voyage—Encouragement given—Very heavy Rain—Veſſel aired, cleaned, &c.—Dolphins, &c. caught—Chriſtian promoted—Warm Clothes ordered—A Seaman puniſhed for Inſolence, &c.—A Porpoiſe caught—Convenience of New Year's Harbour—Cape St. John perceived—Unfavourable Winds—Bad Weather—A violent Storm—Another—Veſſel pumped every Hour—They loſe Ground—The Cook breaks one of his Ribs—Another diſlocates his Shoulder—The Gunner laid up—Birds caught—Wonderfully improved—Live Stock decreaſed—The Captain determines on making for the Cape of Good Hope—Searches for Triſtren da Cunha—Gives it over—Sees the Table Mountain—Anchor in Simon's Bay—Curſory Remarks.

THEY intended to proceed to the Society Iſlands round Cape Horn, and the ſeaſon being far advanced, every expedition was uſed; notwithſtanding which, the ſhipwrights being unable to finiſh their work before, their ſailing was unavoidably poſtponed.

On the 4th of October, 1787, the pilots came on board, and conducted them down the river. On the 9th they proceeded to Long-Reach, where they took in their ſtores, arms, &c. alſo proviſions for eighteen months, with ſeveral articles for the ſake of traffic with the natives of the South-Seas. Several antiſcorbutics were likewiſe provided.

On the 15th they made for Spithead, but did not arrive there till the 4th of November, on account of the bad weather and croſs winds. Having been obliged to anchor at St. Helen's, they worked out of it on the 28th: they ſailed from Spithead on the 23d of December, and with a freſh eaſterly wind paſſed through the Needles, and directed their courſe down the Channel. A ſeaman, while furling the maintop-gallant-ſail in the afternoon, fell off the yard, but catching hold of the maintop-maſt-ſtay, very providentially ſaved his life.

They had now a very violent wind, and a heavy ſea, which continued till the 29th, except on Chriſtmas-day, when it was moderate. During this ſevere ſtorm they loſt ſeveral caſks of beer; the ſpare yards and ſpars out of the ſtarboard main-chains: the boats were likewiſe ſtaved, and were with great difficulty ſecured. The cabin being alſo filled with water, a great quantity of their bread was damaged, and rendered uſeleſs.

On the 5th of January they ſaw the Iſland of Teneriffe, bearing W. S. W. half W. about twelve leagues diſtant. The next day they anchored in 25 fathoms of water, on a coaſt which inclines towards the W. to the road of Santa-Cruz.

An officer was immediately diſpatched to wait on the governor, to inform him of the neceſſity of putting in to repair the damages which were occaſioned by the late ſtorm, and likewiſe to obtain ſome refreſhments. The governor returned a polite anſwer, that every thing which the iſland afforded they ſhould have.

The captain was now viſited by the port-maſter and ſeveral officers, whom the governor ſent to welcome him on his arrival. When the veſſel was moored, Captain Bligh went on ſhore and paid his perſonal reſpects to his excellency.

This being an unfavourable ſeaſon for refreſhments, the captain could only procure wine at any reaſonable price. Every thing that was purchaſed was brought off by the ſhore-boats, (there being a great ſurf on the ſhore) and five ſhillings a ton was given for water. They had moderate weather during their ſtay: the winds were N. E. with frequent calms and ſmall rain.

Every thing being now completed, they weighed anchor on the 10th, with a S. E. wind. It being the captain's opinion that unbroken reſt contributes much towards the health and ſpirits of the crew, he divided his people into three watches, and as it was his intention to proceed to Otaheite without further delay, every body was put upon two-thirds allowance, and the water was ordered to be filtered through drip-ſtones.

All night they proceeded towards the S. S. W. having the wind at S. E. In the morning they loſt ſight of land.

The captain now informed his people of the intent of his voyage, and, by way of encouraging them in their duty, promiſed to promote every one immediately that deſerved it.

They had moſtly a ſoutherly wind, till the 17th, when it came to the N. E. and continued ſo till the 25th. The weather now became very wet, and having prepared awnings with hoſes, they ſaved ſome water. The winds were light and variable, with frequent calms, and the air cloſe and ſultry.

The beginning of February brought very heavy rain, by which means all the empty water-caſks were nearly filled. The veſſel was now aired with fires, and ſprinkled with vinegar, and every opportunity taken of waſhing and drying the people's wet things, and cleaning the ſhip.

On the 7th the weather became fine, and continued ſo for ſome time. They had alſo a fine S. E. trade-wind. On the 23d the rain returned; by which means they ſaved about a ton of good water. On the 24th they caught five dolphins, and a ſhark.

The 2d of March being Sunday, divine ſervice was performed as uſual, in the afternoon. Mr. Fletcher Chriſtian, who had the charge of the third watch, was likewiſe promoted as lieutenant. Nothing material happened for the remainder of the week.

On the 8th they tried for ſoundings, but could find no bottom with 240 fathoms of line. The boat was ſent after a turtle, that was ſeen floating: when examined, it was found in a putrid ſtate, and ſeveral crabs feeding on it. The people were now ordered to put on warm clothes, in order to encounter the cold climate.

On the 10th they had bottom at 23 fathoms: afterwards they could find none with 160 fathoms of line. They ſtood toward the W. S. W. at night, with a ſoutherly wind, and got into ſoundings again.

On the 11th a number of large whales were ſeen, with two ſpout-holes on the back of the head. One Matthew Quintel, a ſeaman, received 24 laſhes this day, in conſequence of a complaint made againſt him by the maſter, for mutinous and inſolent behaviour.

On the 12th they caught a porpoiſe; on which they made a hearty dinner.

On the 15th their latitude was 43 deg. 6 min. S. and their longitude 58 deg. 42 min. W. They had ſoundings at 75 fathoms, over a fine greeniſh ſandy bottom. They continued running to the ſouthward, and on the 19th were within 20 leagues of

Port Deſire; however they did not attempt to make for land, as the wind was blowing freſh from the N. W. and the weather thick and foggy.

On the 20th the wind ſuddenly changed to W. S. W. and blew very hard. They now ſteered to the S. S. E. and diſcovered the coaſt of Terra del Fuego, bearing S. E. on the 23d in the morning early. In the forenoon they were off Cape St. Diego. The captain now deemed it prudent, on account of the wind being unfavourable, to go round to the eaſtward of Staten Land rather than attempt paſſing through the Straits le Maire. In order to have the wind more regular, and avoid being expoſed to the heavy ſqualls that come off from the land, they did not ſail within leſs than ſix leagues of the coaſt.

The captain was almoſt tempted to put in at New Year's Harbour, which is a very convenient port, as the acceſs thereto is both eaſy and ſafe; however the ſeaſon being far advanced, and the people all in good health, the captain retained his former reſolution of proceeding to Otaheite without ſtopping.

Towards ſunſet they perceived Cape St. John bearing S. S. E. about ſix leagues diſtant: they ſtood to the ſouthward all night, with W. S. W. and S. W. winds. In the morning Cape St. John bore N. W. about 10 leagues diſtant.

They had now very unfavourable winds, and diſagreeable weather till the 31ſt, when they were flattered with a N. N. E. wind, which became variable at night, and the next day ſettled again in the W. and N. W. with the ſame bad weather as before.

On the 2d of April the wind came round to the S. W. and increaſed to a very violent gale. The ſtorm was exceedingly great in the morning, and the ſea remarkably heavy, attended with ſevere ſqualls of hail and ſleet, both this and the ſucceeding day. The veſſel, however, lay-to very well under a main and fore-ſtay-ſail.

On the 4th the weather became moderate. A conſtant fire was now kept in night and day, and one of the watch always attended to dry the people's cloaths. The weather continued favourable till the 9th, when it became almoſt as bad as before. On the 12th they were obliged to pump the veſſel every hour, and the decks being leaky the captain thought it neceſſary to allot the great cabin (of which little uſe had been made before) to thoſe people who had uncomfortable births; by ſuch removal the between-decks were leſs crouded. The hammocks were taken every morning and put in the cabin when the weather was too wet to keep them on deck. The between-decks were continually aired with fires and cleaned. In addition to theſe misfortunes they found, notwithſtanding they exerted their utmoſt, and kept the moſt advantageous tacks, they were loſing ground.

The next day (13th) the motion of the veſſel was ſo violent that the cook broke one of his ribs by a fall, and another man diſlocated his ſhoulder. The gunner, who had the charge of the watch, was alſo laid up with the rheumatiſm; this being the firſt upon their ſick-liſt ſince they commenced their voyage.

Birds were exceedingly plenty about the ſhip, ſeveral of which they caught; but as they were all lean, and had a fiſhy taſte, they kept them cooped up, and crammed them with ground corn, which improved them in ſuch a wonderful manner as to render them exceedingly agreeable.

This unexpected ſupply was very ſeaſonable, as the ſheep and poultry were all deſtroyed by the late ſtorms, and none of the live ſtock remained except the hogs.

On the 20th they were flattered again with a temporary change in the weather. In the evening the weſterly wind returned, and it became as ſtormy as before.

The captain being now thirty days attempting a paſſage to the Society Iſlands, perceived how vain and impracticable it was to obtain it this way. It was in vain to expect any favourable winds or weather now, as the ſeaſon was ſo far advanced; being determined, therefore, to bear away for the Cape of Good Hope, in order to proceed from thence to the eaſtward round New Holland, on the 22d he ordered the helm to be put a-weather, there being now a ſtrong weſterly wind. Seven, beſides the gunner, were now confined, chiefly with the rheumatiſm; the reſt of the crew, though much fatigued, were in good health.

The ſtormy weather ſtill continued, with weſterly winds, which convinced the captain of the propriety of his determination.

On the 25th the neareſt of the Falkland Iſlands was about twenty-three leagues, bearing N. 13 deg. W. It was deemed unneceſſary and but loſs of time to ſtop at theſe iſlands, as their ſtock of water was ſufficient to ſerve them till they reached the Cape of Good Hope.

On the 9th of May they approached the ſituation of Triſten da Cunha, their latitude being 37 deg. 7 min. S. and longitude 15 deg. 26 min W. As it was the captain's wiſh to make this iſland, they kept their wind on different tacks during night, that they might be nearly in the ſame place at daylight in the morning. No land being ſeen however in the morning, they continued to ſteer to the eaſtward, and ran all day, but could not diſcover the leaſt appearance of land, though the weather was remarkably clear. The captain now changed his courſe to the northward, and ſteered N. E. At night the weather became very bad, and Captain Bligh determined to give over his ſearch for Triſten da Cunha (being at this time eaſtward of the ſituation aſcribed thereto), and reſume his courſe towards the Cape of Good Hope. The weather ſtill continued foul and cloudy.

On the 22d, in the afternoon, they ſaw Table Mountain, of the Cape of Good Hope. They now ſteered for Falſe Bay, as at this time of the year it is not deemed ſafe to ride in Table Bay.

On the 23d they anchored in the outer part, and the next day the veſſel was ſecured in Simon's Bay, which is the inner part of Falſe Bay. When moored, Noah's Ark bore S. 35 deg. E. about three quarters of a mile diſtant, and the Hoſpital S. 72 deg. W.

They now ſaluted the fort, which was returned with an equal complement of guns. Captain Bligh having ſent a meſſage to the governor, to apprize him of their arrival, went on ſhore, and viſited a Dutch veſſel that was now lying in Table Bay bound for Europe, by whom he ſent letters to the Admiralty.

The captain iſſued immediate directions in order to have their wants ſupplied. As the veſſel was ſo leaky that they were obliged to pump every hour in their paſſage from Cape Horn, they proceeded inſtantly to caulk her; likewiſe to repair her ſails and rigging. They examined alſo the ſtate of their ſtores and proviſions: the latter, particularly their bread, was very much damaged.

As long as they tarried here, the ſhip's company were treated with freſh meat, new bread, and vegetables.

Captain Bligh, a ſhort time after his arrival, went over to Cape Town, to wait upon his excellency, M. Vander Graaf, who was ſo exceedingly polite as to make matters as comfortable and commodious as poſſible.

Cape Town is very reſpectable, and well fortified: the greateſt attention is paid to military order and diſcipline. The captain however found proviſions much dearer than when he was here before, which was eight years ago.

The captain during his ſtay, carefully procured what ſeeds and plants would be of value at Otaheite, and the adjoining iſlands.

On account of the neceſſary buſineſs to be performed, they were not ready for ſea till June the 19th. They were obliged to delay here thirty-eight days, during which, the ſhip's company received all the advantage that could be derived from the different refreſhments of the place. On the 1ſt of July they took their leave, and as they ran out of the bay, ſaluted the platform with thirteen guns, which were returned. They now ſteered towards the E. S. E.

CHAPTER II.

Variable Winds—Indifferent Weather—A Number of Oceanic Birds—A Storm—A Seaman thrown over the Wheel—St. Paul's Iſland ſeen—Deſcription thereof—A remarkable Sugar-loaf Rock—A hot Spring—They approach Van Dieman's Land—See the Rock of Mewſtone—Deſcription thereof—Another high Rock—A high Mountain—They attempt to get into Adventure Bay—Diſappointed by baffling Winds—Anchor—Weigh, and anchor again in Adventure Bay—Remarks—Capt. Bligh examines the Place for Wood and Water—Haul the Seine without Succeſs—Obſervations by Mr. Nelſon—A Party ſent to dig a Saw-pit, and ſaw Trees—Several taken ill with eating Muſcles—Some Fruit Trees, Roots, &c. planted—Signs of the Place being inhabited—Interview with the Natives—Deſcription of them—Diſcover ſome Scorpions, Centipedes, &c.—Weigh Anchor—Remarks—Diſcover ſome rocky Iſlands—Death of a Seaman—See the Iſland Maitea—See Otaheite—Viſited by Canoes—They anchor.

DURING the firſt week after they left Falſe Bay the winds were variable, attended with much rain, thunder, and lightning. For the moſt part, the winds were between the S. and W. blowing very ſtrong. During the ſoutherly wind, they ſaw a great number of oceanic birds, which immediately diſappeared when the wind came from the northward.

On the 20th of July they had a ſtrong weſterly wind, and were therefore ſcudding under the fore-ſail and cloſe-reefed maintop-ſail. A little after noon the wind blew with ſo much violence, that before they could get the ſails clewed up the veſſel was almoſt driven forecaſtle under. When they had taken the ſails in, they got the veſſel to the wind, and eaſed her very much by lowering the lower yards, and getting the topgallant-maſts upon deck. They now lay to till eight the next morning, and then under a reefed fore-ſail they bore away; but the ſea ran ſo very high in the afternoon, that it was very unſafe to ſtand on: accordingly, they brought to the wind again, and remained lying-to all night. A ſeaman at the ſteerage was thrown over the wheel, and very much hurt. About noon the weather became moderate, and they bore away again under the reefed fore-ſail; running to the eaſtward, in order to make the Iſland of St. Paul.

On the 28th, early in the morning, St. Paul was ſeen, bearing E. by N. about 12 leagues diſtant. They ran along the S. ſide, about a league diſtant from the ſhore.

The higher parts of this land were apparently covered with verdure; however, it was ſuppoſed to be nothing more than moſs, which is very common on the tops of rocky iſlands. The extent of this iſland is about five miles from E. to W. and three ditto from N. to S. Towards the E. end there was a very remarkable ſugar-loaf rock, which was exceedingly high: it is ſaid that there is good anchorage, in 23 fathoms, abreaſt of this: the E. point bore S. W. by S. It is alſo reported that there is good freſh water on this iſland, and a ſpring which is ſo hot as to be capable of boiling fiſh as well as if there was a fire underneath. The latitude is 38 deg. 39 min. S. There were ſeveral whales about the ſhore.

During the forenoon the weather was tolerably fair, but afterwards they had an unfavourable ſquall. The center of St. Paul was in latitude 38 deg. 47 min. S. In longitude 77 deg. 39 min. E.

When about three leagues beyond the iſland, they proceeded towards E. S. E. and for ſeveral days ſaw a great deal of rock-weed.

The month of Auguſt commenced with very bad weather, attended with ſnow and hail. On the 13th they approached Van Dieman's land: when about 20 leagues diſtance, there was nothing except a ſeal ſeen to indicate the nearneſs of the coaſt.

On the 19th, in the afternoon, they ſaw the rock of Mewſtone. This lies near the S. W. Cape of Van Dieman's Land, bearing N. E. about ſix leagues diſtant. They had now a ſtrong wind from the N. W. After they had paſſed this rock, they were ſheltered from a very heavy ſea, which ran from the weſtward. They were abreaſt the S. cape at night, and ſaw ſeveral fires. They had now a light variable wind.

The rock of Mewſtone is very high and ſtately. It lies five leagues to the S. E. of the S. W. cape; and in Captain Bligh's opinion all veſſels bound this way ſhould endeavour to make this rock. In latitude it is 43 deg. 47 min. To the northward, between this and the main, are ſeveral iſlands; among theſe is another high rock, reſembling the Mewſtone, bearing N. by W. from the latter: there is alſo a high mountain on the main land, N. N. E. from the Mewſtone; which, in this direction, appeared notched like a cock's comb, but when ſeen from the eaſtward, is then quite round, to all appearance.

On the 20th they attempted to put into Adventure Bay, but found it impracticable, owing to the baffling winds. On the 21ſt, early in the morning, they anchored in the outer port, and weighed anchor at ſun-riſe: at noon they anchored again, in a more comfortable ſituation in the bay, and moored the veſſel. Penguin Iſland bore N. 57 deg. and half E. about two miles diſtant. Cape Frederick Henry N. 23 deg. E. and the mouth of the Lagoon S. 16 deg. E.

They had for the moſt part weſterly winds, attended with very heavy weather, in their paſſage from the Cape of Good Hope. They were not, however, moleſted with fogs, which are very common here in the ſummer months, as may be ſeen in our former voyages. It was Capt. Bligh's opinion, after he had paſſed St. Paul's Iſland, that there was a weatherly current, the veſſel being every day to the weſtward of the reckoning.

As ſoon as the ſhip was moored, the captain went in a boat to examine the place, and ſeek the moſt convenient ſpot to wood and water at: this he found to be at the weſt end of the beach, the ſurf being leſs there than at any other part of the bay, though it was very conſiderable every where. The water, which was a collection from the rains, and in a gully about 60 yards from the beach, was very good. They hauled the ſeine with very little ſucceſs, having only taken a few ſmall flounders and ſome flat-headed fiſh, which are called foxes. There was no appearance of the place being lately inhabited.

The captain returned on board in the evening, and the next morning diſpatched a party on ſhore to procure wood and water. On account of the ſurf they were obliged to raft off the wood in bundles to the boat.

On the 23d their wooding and watering buſineſs was very much impeded by the increaſe of the ſurf. Mr. Nelſon, the botaniſt, went to explore the place; he ſaw a tree, in a very good condition, which was thirty three feet and a half broad and proportionably high. He alſo picked up a male opoſſum, which had died, or been recently killed, though there was no appearance of a wound. The tail was fourteen inches, and from that to the ears fourteen inches more. The foreſt trees were now ſhedding their bark; ſeveral of them were one hundred and fifty feet high. Thoſe which were cut down were quite decayed. There are ſeveral other kinds of firm good wood, but neither theſe nor the foreſt trees fit for maſts.

They had greater ſucceſs with their hooks and lines than by hauling the ſeine, having caught ſeveral good rock cod on board the veſſel. A quantity of eagles were ſeen, and ſome herons with beautiful plumages; alſo a number of parroquets. There were ſome wild ducks in the lake, and a few oyſter-catchers, gulls, &c. about the beach.

The captain now ſent a party to dig a ſaw-pit, and to ſaw trees into planks, which they were in great want of. During this week the winds were very moderate, but the weather unſettled. On the 29th there was a ſtrong breeze from the S. W. with thunder, lightning and rain. They had now very great ſucceſs in fiſhing.

Several of the crew were taken ill by eating muſcles; it was the captain's opinion that they had eat too many. They found ſome ſpider-crabs, the males of which were good, but the females, which abounded, very bad. They diſcovered on the trunk of a tree, which was decayed, the ſignatures of "A. D. 1773." Some of the fruit-trees which the captain brought from the Cape of Good Hope were planted on the eaſt-ſide of the bay, as Mr. Nelſon deemed that the more eligible ſpot, being freer from wood than any other ſpot, clear of underwood, and leſs liable to be conſumed by the fires which are made by the natives. They planted three fine young apple-trees, nine vines, ſix plantain-trees, a number of orange and lemon ſeed, cherry-ſtones, plumb, peach, pumpkins, apricot-ſtones, apple and pear kernels, with two kinds of Indian corn. They likewiſe planted on a flat near the watering-place, which ſeemed a promiſing ſituation, ſome potatoes, cabbage-roots, onions, &c.

On the 1ſt of September they diſcovered, for the firſt time, ſigns of the place being inhabited. On the low land near Cape Frederick Henry they ſaw ſome fires, and by the aſſiſtance of glaſſes they diſcovered the natives at day-light.

Captain Bligh now remained with thoſe parties who were employed in preparing the wood and water, in expectation of a viſit from the natives; but, diſappointed in his hopes, he was determined on viſiting them. They accordingly ſet out in a boat towards Cape Frederick Henry, where they arrived about eleven o'clock. As it was impoſſible to land, the boat came to a grapnel, where they waited near an hour in hopes of ſeeing the natives, as they had paſſed ſeveral fires. To the captain's great aſtoniſhment, Mr. Nelſon's aſſiſtant (Brown) came out of the wood. This man had been wandering in ſearch of plants, and told the captain that he had ſeen ſome of the natives.

He had met, he ſaid, an old man, a young woman, and about three children. On their firſt interview, the old man was very much alarmed; but upon Brown's giving him a pen-knife, he became quite eaſy and familiar. The young woman, however, he ſent away, though apparently againſt her inclination. Brown alſo ſaw ſome wretched wigwams, in which were nothing but a few kanguroo ſkins ſpread on the ground, and a baſket compoſed of ruſhes.

A ſhort time after this they heard the natives voices, and about twenty perſons appeared from the wood. The men went round to ſome rocks, where the boat could get nearer to the ſhore: the women remained behind. The captain endeavoured to approach theſe rocks, but could not come nearer to them than about twenty yards; he was conſequently obliged to make a bundle of what preſents he intended for them, and throw it to ſhore. In the mean time theſe people made a great noiſe, holding their arms over their heads: they ſpoke in ſuch a quick manner, that not a word they uttered could be diſtinguiſhed. The captain ſhowed them the preſents before he tied them up, but they would not untie the bundle till they thought the captain was going away. When, therefore, the boat made a motion of departure, they opened the parcel, and taking out the different articles, diſtributed them about, and placed them on their heads. The captain now returned to them, upon which they inſtantly dropped the things, not ſeeming to take any notice of what was given them. Some more beads and nails were thrown on ſhore in the ſame manner: the captain made ſigns to them to come to his veſſel, while they were making ſigns to him to land: but as this was impracticable, the captain left them, entertaining hopes of ſeeing them again at the watering-place.

The colour of theſe natives was a dull black, and the ſkin of their ſhoulders and breaſt was ſcarified. They were rather ſhort, and painted black, ſo that they appeared all alike ſooty. One among them was painted with red oker: they had a very quick ſight, and their agility was ſurpriſing. When the preſents were thrown to them, they caught them with wonderful dexterity: they ran with great facility over the rocks. They were quite naked, and while they were diſcourſing ſat on their heels, with their knees cloſe into their arm-pits.

The captain, in his return to the veſſel, landed at the point of the harbour, near Penguin Iſland.

Several ſcorpions, centipedes, and a number of black ants, (about an inch long) were found among the wood that they had cut.

On the 2d they were making preparations for ſailing the next day; but were prevented on the 3d by a calm. The captain was in great hopes of ſeeing ſome of the natives again, as they behaved ſo friendly and familiar on their firſt interview: but they never repeated their viſit, though they ſtill continued to keep fires upon the low land to the northward during night.

On the 4th they weighed anchor, and ſailed out of Adventure Bay with a pleaſant breeze at N. W. At 12 o'clock the ſouthernmoſt parts of Maria's Iſles bore N. 52 deg. E. about five leagues diſtant. Penguin Iſland S. 86 deg. W. and Cape Frederick Henry N. 65 deg. W. They had now ſoundings at 57 fathoms, over a fine ſandy bottom.

Adventure Bay is a very ſafe and convenient place for any number of veſſels to take in wood and water during the ſummer months; but as the ſoutherly winds are very ſtrong in winter, it is exceedingly troubleſome to land, particularly on account of the ſurf which is in all parts of the ſhore. The ſoundings are very regular: there are ſome patches of weed near the W. ſhore; but there being depth from five to nine fathoms, there is not the leaſt danger.

As ſoon as they were clear of the land they ſteered towards E. S. E. in order to paſs to the ſouthward of New Zealand, where the captain was in hopes of meeting with conſtant weſterly winds: contrary, however, to his expectations the winds were variable, in general blowing ſtrongly from the eaſtward. The weather was likewiſe foul and miſty.

On the 14th they altered their courſe and ſteered to the northward of eaſt. They frequently ſaw rockweed, which, it was ſuppoſed, was drifted from New Zealand. Being expoſed to a long ſwell, which came from the N. E. they found the ſea much rougher.

On the 19th, about break of day, they ſaw a cluſter of ſmall rocky iſlands, bearing E. by N. about four leagues diſtant. There was not the leaſt indication of the nearneſs of land. As the wind was at N. E. they could not poſſibly approach theſe iſlands nearer than three leagues, while paſſing to the ſouthward of them. The weather was likewiſe ſo foul, that they had not a diſtinct view. Their extent appeared to be about three miles and a half, from E. to W. and about half a league from N. to S. Their number, great and ſmall, were thirteen: there were ſome white ſpots like patches of ſnow, but no verdure to be ſeen. The weſternmoſt of theſe is the largeſt: they are high enough to be diſcovered at ſeven leagues diſtance. When the captain was ten miles diſtant from the neareſt of them, and the eaſternmoſt bore N. he found bottom at 75 fathoms, over a fine white ſand. When they had run ſix leagues further to the E. S. E. they found bottom 104 fathoms, over a fine brimſtone-coloured ſand. Theſe iſlands are in latitude 47 deg. 44 min. S. In longitude 179 deg. 7 min. E. They ſaw ſome penguins, and a white kind of gull with a forked tail, when in ſight of theſe iſlands.

On the 21ſt they ſaw a ſeal, a quantity of albatroſſes, and ſome rock-weed. They could find no bottom with 230 fathoms of line.

On the 2d of October it was quite calm. A number of ſmall blubbers were ſeen about the veſſel; ſome of them were taken up in a bucket and examined, but no difference could be ſeen between theſe and the common blubbers in the Weſt-Indies. In the night the ſea frequently appeared to be covered over with luminous ſpots, occaſioned by the quantities of theſe blubbers.

On the 3d they ſteered more to the northward. Being now well to the eaſtward of the Society Iſlands, they ſaw ſome whales, a ſeal, and a number of oceanic birds. Several albatroſſes were caught, which the crew fattened in the manner they had done before.

On the 9th James Valentine, a very able ſeaman, of a ſeeming good conſtitution, died in the night of an aſthmatic complaint. He was taken ſlightly ill on his arrival at Adventure Bay, where he was bled and thought out of all danger: the arm in which he was bled afterwards became inflamed, a hollow cough enſued, and continued till his death.

On the 13th they ſaw ſeveral birds, and the next day ſome fiſh. From this to the 19th they had light variable winds, with intervening calms. This day they had a good trade wind.

From this to the 25th nothing material occurred. Early in the morning they ſaw the iſland Mairea, bearing S. W. by W. quarter W. about ſix miles diſtant, in latitude 17 deg. 50 min. S. longitude 212 deg. 24 min. E. This iſland is round and high, and its greateſt extent is about three miles. The natives chiefly inhabit the S. ſide, as they find but little ſupport in the north ſide, which is quite ſteep from the top down to the ſea. While ſteering cloſe in to the northward of the E. end, they perceived a few habitations, particularly a houſe remarkably neat, on a ſmall eminence, delightfully ſituated in a grove of cocoa-nut trees.

They were followed by about a dozen natives along ſhore, who were holding up to view large pieces of cloth; but the ſurf on the ſhore being very high, it was impoſſible to have any communication with them. There are two very remarkable rocks near the E. end, and a reef which runs about half a league off to the eaſtward.

They now proceeded to the weſtward, and about ſix in the evening they ſaw Otaheite, bearing W. quarter S. The captain deſired the ſurgeon to examine all the men previous to their arrival at Otaheite, where, as they intended to ſtay ſome time, it was naturally expected that the ſailors would at intervals be connected with the female natives. The ſurgeon reported them to be all unblemiſhed, and free from any venereal complaint.

Having run about 25 leagues from Maitea, they brought-to till day-light on the 26th; when they diſcovered Point Venus, bearing S. W. by W. about four leagues diſtant. On their approach they were viſited by a great number of canoes. As ſoon as they were ſatisfied in ſome enquiries which they thought proper to make, they aſſembled in vaſt numbers, notwithſtanding every effort was uſed to prevent it, for they not only incommoded the men, but were working the veſſel in, and the deck was ſo full in about a quarter of an hour that the captain could ſcarcely find his own people. As they were prevented, by light variable winds, from finding a commodious birth for the veſſel, they were obliged in the forenoon to anchor in the outer part of Matavai Bay, in 13 fathoms.

As ſoon as they were anchored the number of viſiters increaſed, but no perſon of any conſequence as yet appeared. There were ſeveral inferior chiefs, who made the captain a preſent of ſome hogs, and received ſome preſents in return. Bread-fruit was now very ſcarce, but they were ſupplied with great abundance of cocoa-nuts.

Among the ſeveral enquiries which theſe natives made relative to their former acquaintance, they were particularly curious about the death of Capt. Cook. They likewiſe aſked after Sir Joſeph Banks. They underſtood that Capt. Cook was dead, but were ignorant by what means; and the ſhip's company were particularly commanded by Capt. Bligh not to mention, nor even hint at the circumſtances. It ſeems they were informed of Capt. Cook's death by a veſſel which had been there, ſome ſaid about four months ago, and others three months; and which remained at Otaheite for about one month. They ſaid that Lieut. Watts, who had been there before in the Reſolution with Capt. Cook, was in this veſſel.

Capt. Bligh was informed by theſe people, that Omai, and both the New Zealand boys that had been left with him, were dead. They all agreed they had a natural death. Otoo, the chief of Matavai, was abſent at another part of the iſland. A meſſage was diſpatched to him, to inform him of the Bounty's arrival. The natives appeared exceedingly good-humoured and friendly, nor did they betray the leaſt inclination to diſhoneſty.

The captain was ſo exceedingly crouded, that he was obliged to poſtpone the removal of the ſhip till the next day, being unwilling to affront his viſiters by compelling them to retire before they were inclined. They continued all day with the captain on board.

CHAPTER III.

They weigh Anchor, and moor in a more convenient Place—Viſited by ſeveral Chiefs—Two Meſſengers from Otoo with a Preſent—The Veſſels amply ſupplied—The Captain goes on Shore with the Chief of Matavai—Viſits the Houſe and Family—A polite Reception—Kindneſs of the Women, &c.—They take an affectionate Leave of the Captain—An Altercation on board—Oreepyah in a Rage at finding one of his Countrymen attempting to thieve—Several Particulars relative to the Natives, Otoo, &c.—Preſents, &c.—Proviſions brought to the Veſſel—The Captain viſits Tinah, who was Otoo—Remarks—The Buoy of the beſt Bower Anchor taker away—Account of ſome late Tranſactions—A Concert—Chriſtian ſent to erect a Tent—Peculiar Ceremonies—The Boat-keeper puniſhed before the Natives—Petty Thefts—Plants collected—A painted Head exhibited—A Company of Strollers—A Wreſtling Match, &c. &c.

EARLY in the morning, on the 27th, before the natives had time to repeat their viſit, they weighed anchor and worked further into the bay, having found a more commodious birth within a mile's diſtance from the ſhore: they re-anchored in ſeven fathoms water; Point Venus bearing N. 16 deg. E. the W. point of Onetree Hill, S. W. by S. and the point of the reef, N. 37 deg. W.

They were this day viſited by ſeveral chiefs of conſequence, who expreſſed great happineſs on ſeeing Captain Bligh, particularly Otow, the father of Otoo, and his brother Oreepyah; likewiſe another chief of Matavai, whoſe name was Poeeno. The captain gave preſents to all theſe chiefs.

Two meſſengers now arrived from Otoo to acquaint the captain that this chief was making the utmoſt expedition to pay him a viſit. He alſo ſent the captain, by theſe meſſengers, a preſent of a ſmall pig and a young plantain-tree. By means of all theſe preſents, and what was otherwiſe procured, the veſſel was ſo well ſtocked that every perſon had as much as he could poſſibly make uſe of.

When the veſſel was moored the captain went on ſhore with Poeeno, the chief of Matavai, followed by ſeveral of the natives. The chief conducted Captain Bligh to the place where they had fixed their tents in 1777, requeſting he would now make the ſame uſe of the ground. They now croſſed over the beach and entered a moſt delightful walk ſhaded with bread-fruit-trees, which led to the chief's houſe. Here was Poeeno's wife and his ſiſter-in-law, who were at work ſtaining a piece of cloth red. They behaved very polite to the captain, requeſting he would ſit down on a mat (which was immediately ſpread for that purpoſe) and partake of ſome refreſhments, which were accordingly prepared. Several ſtrangers alſo attended, to congratulate the captain on his arrival; they behaved with the greateſt politeneſs and good-nature. The multitude of natives which aſſembled round the houſe was ſo great that the captain ſhortly became exceedingly incommoded by the conſequent heat: this being perceived they accordingly drew back and preſſed as little as poſſible. Among the throng the captain perceived a man who had loſt his arm, juſt above the elbow: this amputation appeared to have been performed with great ſkill, as the ſtump ſeemed admirably covered, and the cure quite perfect.

The captain during his ſtay in the chief's houſe made ſeveral enquiries, but received very unſatisfactory anſwers to all his queſtions. After ſtaying about an hour the captain roſe in order to take his leave, but was detained by the women, who very politely came to him with a mat and a fine piece of cloth, in which they dreſſed him after their own faſhion. Thus attired, the miſtreſs of the houſe and her ſiſter took him each by the hand, and accompanied him as far as the water-ſide; here they took an affectionate leave of him, promiſing they would ſhortly return his viſit.

This iſland was very much improved ſince the captain was here before. It was now enriched with ſhaddocks, which fruit he introduced in it: they had alſo young goats, capſicoms, pumpkins, &c. which, with other articles, they offered for ſale.

On the captain's return to the veſſel there was an altercation on board, occaſioned by one of the natives attempting to ſteal a tin pot. Oreepyah, when informed of the cauſe, was exceedingly enraged, and ſo provoked with the thief, that doubtleſs he would have killed him had he not fortunately made his eſcape. He obliged all the natives to leave the veſſel, and begged the captain, when another thief was detected, that he would inſtantly order him to be tied up and give him a due quantity of laſhes.

The picture of Captain Cook had been brought on board by a man in the forenoon to have it repaired, the frame thereof being broken, and the picture damaged in the back ground. This picture had been left with Otoo in 1777, who was deſired, whenever any Engliſh came, to ſhew it to the captain, and it would be acknowledged as a token of great friendſhip and reſpect.

In the afternoon the captain was viſited by Whydooah, who was Otoo's youngeſt brother. This man, notwithſtanding his youth, ſeemed quite ſtupified by his immoderate uſe of the yava. All the male viſiters left the veſſel about ſun-ſet.

Early on the 28th the captain received word that Otoo was arrived; upon this he immediately diſpatched a boat, with Mr. Chriſtian, to conduct him to the veſſel. He came, attended by great numbers, and was very happy at ſeeing the captain; Otoo now introduced his wife to the captain, and, as their kiſſing conſiſts of joining noſes inſtead of lips, Captain Bligh ſaluted her after the Otaheite faſhion. Otoo had changed his name to Tinah, as the name of Otoo, with the title of Earee Rahie, had, according to the cuſtom of their country, devolved to his eldeſt ſon, who as yet was not of age. At the requeſt of Tinah, the captain and he exchanged names; this being a token of friendſhip among the chiefs.

Tinah's wife was called Iddeah; ſhe had a companion, who was dreſſed with a large quantity of cloth in the form of a hoop. Upon their introduction to the captain, this was taken off and preſented to him, with ſome bread-fruit, a large hog, &c.

Captain Bligh now took his viſiters into the cabin, and in return for their kindneſs gave them ſome hatchets, files, ſmall adzes, gimblets, ſaws, looking-glaſſes, two ſhirts, red feathers, &c. &c. He gave Iddeah ſome ear-rings, necklaces, beads, &c. and as ſhe expreſſed an inclination for iron, two quantities thereof were made out for her and her huſband. They ſeemed extremely well ſatisfied with their preſent, and much converſation paſſed with one another concerning them. In order to prove their high ſatisfaction with the reception they met, they were determined on ſpending the whole day with the captain, requeſting he would ſhew them the veſſel, and the cabin wherein he ſlept. The captain immediately indulged them in their wiſhes, though contrary to his own inclination; for, according to his apprehenſions, they took a fancy to ſo many things that they got nearly double the preſents that were intended them. Some of the great guns were alſo fired at the requeſt of Tinah: the natives were very much ſurpriſed at the great diſtance which the ſhot fell at, and expreſſed their admiration with loud ſhouts.

Beſides Tinah and Iddeah his wife, ſeveral other chiefs dined with the captain, particularly Otow, Tinah's father, and two of his brothers, Oreepyah and Whydooah, &c. &c. Tinah is about thirty-five years of age, near if not more than ſix feet four inches in height, and proportionably ſtout. His wife, Iddeah, is likewiſe taller than the generality of women at Otaheite; ſhe was exceedingly pleaſant, and poſſeſſed of a fine animated countenance. Tinah, during dinner, had one of his attendants with him in order to feed him; this being cuſtomary among ſuperior chiefs. The women are not allowed to eat in the preſence of the men; Iddeah therefore dined with ſome of her companions in private. They all eat very hearty, and ſeemed to reliſh their Engliſh entertainment.

In order to prevent any kind of diſturbance while procuring the proviſions neceſſary for the veſſel, Mr. Peckover, the gunner, was appointed by the captain to make whatever bargains ſeemed the beſt with the natives. Matters being thus arranged, proviſions were procured in great plenty. Some hogs were bought which weighed 200lb. ſeveral were purchaſed for ſalting. They likewiſe purchaſed ſeveral goats at a very eaſy rate.

As the Engliſh and natives were very intimate, there was ſcarce a man on board the veſſel that was not choſen by ſome one or other as a friend. Several of the chiefs were very much diſappointed that there was no portrait-painter among the ſhip's crew, particularly Tinah, who was very anxious for the likeneſs of ſome of his family. Tinah continued with the captain all the afternoon; during which he eat four times of roaſt pork, though he had made a very hearty dinner. Being at a great loſs how to ſecure the preſents which the captain had given him, and on which he had placed no little value, he requeſted Captain Bligh would put them up ſafe for him; but the captain giving him a key of a locker in his cabin, which he reſigned to him for his own uſe, Tinah was perfectly eaſy.

The captain had ſent Meſſ. Nelſon and Brown to ſeek for plants; previous to this ſtrict orders were given to all the company to keep the object of this voyage a ſecret from the natives, for fear they might be tempted to enhance the value of the bread-fruit plants, and occaſion other difficulties. Nelſon and his aſſiſtant, on their return, reported that they had the greateſt hopes of being ſucceſsful in their miſſion. They met with two fine maddock trees, which were planted by Nelſon in 1777: they were full of fruit, which were not as yet ripe.

The next day, being the 29th, the captain returned Tinah's viſit, which was expected. He found him with his wife, and three children who were related to him, in a ſmall ſhed about a quarter of a mile to the eaſtward of Matavai Point. The captain had a numerous train, for every one he met followed him: theſe people, however, were as polite as poſſible; for though anxious to ſatisfy their curioſity, ſtill they carefully avoided preſſing, and were exceedingly good-natured.

The captain made Tinah another preſent, and diſtributed various little articles among the other chiefs. He likewiſe gave beads to ſeveral little children who were in arms: this, however, occaſioned much droll artifice, as ſeveral boys and girls of near 12 years of age were brought to the captain in arms, in order to receive his favours, which created much diverſion, and the captain ſoon got rid of all the things he brought on ſhore.

The captain likewiſe viſited Poeeno, and a relation of his, Moannah; theſe being men of great conſequence in the iſland, and with whom the captain thought it his intereſt to be on good terms. The captain made them ſome valuable preſents, and deeming the ſituation a very good one for a garden, planted ſome cucumber, ſaliad, melon ſeeds, &c. Theſe chiefs were informed, that ſeveral other ſeeds ſhould be ſown there, for their future ſervice; with which they ſeemed very much pleaſed, eſpecially as they were made to underſtand that theſe ſeeds would grow into trees, and produce them fruit.

The captain returned to the veſſel to dinner, accompanied by Moannah. In the afternoon they went back to Poeeno's, and planted ſome more ſeeds. While the captain was thus employed, an invitation came from Tinah to him, requeſting he would meet him at his brother Oreepyah's houſe, which was near the beach. The captain immediately complied with his requeſt, and found a great concourſe of people here, who, on his entrance, made way for him to ſit down by Tinah. The croud, which was now preſſing forward, was deſired to retire, and a fine piece of cloth, about two yards wide, and forty ditto long, was ſpread upon the ground, while Oreepyah brought out another piece of cloth, which he put over the captain's ſhoulders and round his waiſt, according to the manner in which the chiefs are dreſſed. There were now two large hogs, upwards of 200 lb. each, and a quantity of baked bread-fruit and cocoa-nuts, placed before the captain as a preſent: after this he was requeſted to walk from one end to the other of the cloth, which was ſpread on the ground; during which they hailed him a *friend* with loud ſhouts of joy. When this ceremony was over, Tinah requeſted the captain would ſend the things that were given him on board, and which completely filled the boat. Capt. Bligh, therefore, waited till ſhe came back from the veſſel, in order to bring the chiefs on board with him, and make them a return for their politeneſs. As ſoon, therefore, as they entered the ſhip, the captain preſented Tinah with gifts ſuperior to any that were yet made, and which Tinah diſtributed among the other chiefs, not being himſelf ſole proprietor of what had been given to the captain, ſeveral having joined in furniſhing thoſe articles which compoſed their preſent, particularly Oreepyah, Moannah, and Poeeno. Tinah, who undertook the diviſion of the things, took good care of himſelf; notwithſtanding, every one was ſo well pleaſed with his diſtribution, that there was not the leaſt murmur heard.

On the 30th Tinah, and his lady Iddeah, viſited the captain again on board. The captain knowing that they preferred pork to tea, ordered large diſhes of roaſt and boiled pork for their breakfaſt; and *large* diſhes were indeed neceſſary, as their attendants were very numerous.

The arrival of the Bounty being now publicly known, the captain had more viſiters to-day than ever. Several ſtrangers from the moſt remote parts of the country came to pay their reſpects. It being therefore neceſſary, for the ſake of furniſhing additional preſents, to cut ſome hooks and thimbles out of the blocks, the captain thought proper during this operation to clear the veſſel of all but the chiefs and their attendants. A preſumptuous fellow, however, in oppoſition to theſe orders, attacked the centinel: upon which the captain pretended to be very angry, that they might ſee the dangerous conſequence of oppoſing a man on his duty. The offender made his eſcape, while the reſt appeared very ſorry for the cauſe, and alarmed at the captain's aſſumed rage.

The captain was viſited to-day by two chiefs of great conſequence, Earees of the diſtricts of Iteeah and Attahhooroo, and whoſe names were Marremarre and Poohaitaiah Otee his ſon. Tinah appeared very jealous during the captain's attention to theſe Earees. They took their leave about ſunſet, and were conveyed to ſhore by one of the ſhip's boats, which is looked upon as a peculiar favour, and always preferred to any of their own canoes. There was a race rowed between their five-oared cutter and one of their double canoes with four paddles, at the requeſt of theſe chiefs. The exertions on both ſides were very great, but the cutter was the winner. While ſhe was returning to the veſſel, Oreepyah ſtopped and detained her till a large piece of cloth which he ſent for was brought, and which he himſelf faſtened to the boat-hook, to be borne as a trophy of their victory.

On the 31ſt Tinah ſent Moannah on board the Bounty, to inform the captain that he was afraid to ſee him, as he knew there were ſome things ſtolen from the veſſel, which he had ſent his people in ſearch of, in hopes to recover them. The captain, however, ſent a boat with a kind invitation to Tinah and his friends to come on board, being unwilling that any miſdemeanor of others ſhould cauſe a coolneſs between them. Before this the captain apprehended that there was ſomething wrong, for they were not viſited as before by any canoes; and on diligently examining the veſſel, they diſcovered that the buoy of the beſt bower anchor was ſtolen. Tinah accepted the captain's invitation, and returned in the boat with ſeveral of his friends. They were as free as ever with the captain, and under no kind of apprehenſions. Oreepyah had gone in ſearch of the buoy, which prevented him from going with the captain to Oparre this morning, as they had previouſly agreed upon. At noon, however, the captain reſolved upon repairing to Oparre, under pretence of viſiting Otoo, ſon of Tinah, who was the Earee Rahie, and lived with the reſt of Tinah's children at Oparre; but, in fact, the captain was induced to this excurſion for the ſake of exploring the place, and ſeeing if Nelſon could poſſibly procure any plants there. The captain took with him a very handſome preſent for young Otoo, as he underſtood him to be a perſon of the higheſt rank in the iſland. Moannah was to have been of the party, but he thought it adviſeable to ſtay behind and prevent his countrymen from doing any more miſchief. The captain was only accompanied by Tinah, Iddeah, and Poeeno.

When they had ſailed about half an hour they arrived at Oparre, which is a diſtrict next to the weſtward of Matavai. During this time Tinah entertained the captain with an account of the different circumſtances ſince he was with them before. He told him that about five years after Captain Cook's departure, the inhabitants of the iſland Eimes, joined with thoſe of Attahooras (a diſtrict of Otaheite), made a deſcent on Oparre: that he and ſeveral of his people, having made a fruitleſs reſiſtance, were obliged to take refuge in the mountains, while the enemy ſecured their property, deſtroying that which they could not take away. At this time ſome of the cattle and ſheep which had been left them by Captain Cook were killed and eaten, and the reſt removed to Eimes. The cows, he added, had by this time produced eight calves, and the ewes ten young ones. The ducks and geeſe had likewiſe increaſed, but the turkeys and peacocks did not breed at all. The enemy had likewiſe deſtroyed ſome very fine habitations, and ſlight ſheds which were in this part of Otaheite, in 1777,* and plundered them of ſeveral large canoes.

In the courſe of this converſation, Tinah underſtanding that the captain intended to viſit ſome of the neighbouring iſlands, endeavoured to diſſuade him from his purpoſe, aſſuring him, that if he went further, every thing would be ſtolen from him, but if he remained in Matavai, he ſhould be ſupplied plentifully with every thing that he wanted, declaring that they were all his friends, and friends to King George. Captain Bligh then told him that the valuable preſents which he had delivered to him were from the King; upon which Tinah declared that he would ſend ſomething in return, and while enumerating the different articles which he intended to collect for his Majeſty, he happened to mention the bread-fruit: the captain took this favourable opportunity of ſlightly hinting that bread-fruit, he knew, would be the moſt acceptable. Tinah expreſſed great joy in being able to ſend what would be acceptable, and promiſed that a quantity of bread-fruit trees ſhould be put on board for King George.

When they arrived at Oparre they were ſurrounded by a great throng of natives. The captain expecting to have met Oreepyah there, enquired for him, but was informed that he had not as yet returned from ſeeking the things which were ſtolen. The party, however, went under a ſhed belonging to Oreepyah, to wait for him, and in a ſhort time he arrived, having brought with him one of the hoops of the bouy, and an iron ſcraper. The captain returned him his ſincere thanks for the great trouble he had taken, aſſuring him he was perfectly ſatisfied, for it was ſtill underſtood that Captain Bligh was offended at the theft. Some ſhort time after, they took leave of Oreepyah, and proceeded on their viſit to young Otoo.

After they had walked a few minutes, the captain was abruptly ſtopped by Tinah, who informed him that no perſon could be admitted into the preſence of his ſon who was covered above the ſhoulders; as an example, he took off his own upper garments, requeſting the captain to acquieſce with the ceremony. Captain Bligh readily complied, aſſuring him he had no objection to pay him as much homage as he would his own king; taking therefore off his hat, Tinah threw a piece of cloth round his ſhoulders, and they proceeded. Having now gone a mile further towards the hills, through an agreeable ſhade of bread-fruit trees, they ſtopped at the ſide of a ſmall ſerpentine river, where they were within view of a houſe, on the oppoſite ſide, about fifty yards diſtance. The captain was now deſired by Tinah to addreſs his ſon by the title of Too Earee Rahie. Notice being given of their arrival, the young king was brought out on a man's ſhoulders from the houſe, cloathed in a fine piece of cloth, and two of Tinah's children were brought in the ſame manner. The captain, according to his inſtructions, addreſſed him by his title, declaring that he was his friend, that he hated thieves, and that he was from Britannia. The preſents which had been brought by the captain was divided into three parts, one of which was delivered to a meſſenger who attended for that purpoſe, for the Earee Rahie, with the ceremonious declaration mentioned above. The two other parts were in the ſame manner preſented to the two children.

Captain Bligh wanted to go over the river to the young king, (as in his preſent ſtation he could not ſee him diſtinctly), but this was contrary to their cuſtom. He returned therefore with Tinah to Oreepyah's houſe.

The Too Earee Rahie that thus maintained ſo much ſtate, was only ſix years old. Tinah had four children by his wife. The two others which were brought out with the Earee Rahie, were a girl and a boy, their names Terranee Oroah and Terreetappanooia. The fourth, which was an infant girl, called Tahamydooah, the captain did not ſee.

As ſoon as they had reached the place where Tinah had firſt ſtopped the captain to apprize him of the manner in which it was neceſſary he ſhould appear before his ſon, he now ſtopped him again, and taking off the cloth which he had thrown over his ſhoulders, requeſted he would put on his hat and be covered as before.

The captain having expreſſed a deſire to ſee more of the country, Tinah conducted him back by another way. Having entered the boundary of the king's land, which was ſignified by the trunk of a tree, carved in a very rude manner, Tinah deſired the captain again to take off his hat, while the reſt of the company uncovered their ſhoulders, this being a mark of reſpect due to the king, rigidly obſerved by all who walk on this path.

Having reached a houſe which belonged to Tinah, they ſtopped here to reſt themſelves, during which time they were entertained by a concert of one drum and three flutes, and ſinging by four men. After the entertainment, the captain gave ſome preſents to the performers, and they now repaired to a houſe belonging to Oreepyah, to whom the captain paid his compliments, as it was expected, theſe people being very punctilious in returning viſits.

Tinah now made the captain a preſent of a fine large hog, and ſome cocoa nuts, after which he introduced an uncle of his to him, who was almoſt blind with age, and much tattooed; his name was Mowworoah: the captain made this chief a preſent, and then Tinah, Poeeno, Oreepyah and their wives repaired to his boat, while a great number of people aſſembled on the beach to ſee them go off. By the deſire of Tinah, the captain fired a pocket piſtol, which threw the gazing crowd into a great fright; but when they ſaw no harm was done, they began to ſhout and make a great noiſe.

Among the captain's own people who attended him in this expedition was Nelſon, whom he brought with him on purpoſe of making what diſcoveries he could. He had not however much opportunity to ſeek after plants, on account of the multitude of natives who were continually preſſing forwards, but ſtill he was convinced by the little he had ſeen, that this place abounded equally as much in plants as at Matavai.

---

* As this ſubject will be repeated more fully in Captain Cook's voyage, we have therefore only ſlightly touched upon the conſiderable changes which have happened ſince that time. Our readers will have a more copious and entertaining account of the ſeveral diſtricts of Otaheite in the intereſting narration of Captain Cook's, which, as it muſt be occaſionally referred to, will be found very neceſſary to compare with this.

They returned to the ſhip in about an hour, during which time much converſation paſſed between Tinah and the captain reſpecting the magnitude of Engliſh veſſels, and the various articles which Tinah wiſhed might be ſent to Otaheite in one of theſe large ſhips.

Having fixed a tent on Point Venus, they moored the veſſel nearer thereto on the 1ſt of November, and moored again in ſix fathoms, the point bearing N. N. E.

This day Captain Bligh had Tinah and ſeveral chiefs to dinner: after which he went on ſhore with his company, and made a viſit to Tinah's father and ſon. The captain likewiſe viſited the garden which he had made near Poeeno's houſe, and found every thing had been taken care of according to his directions.

A grand entertainment was now prepared for the captain by Tinah, which conſiſted of ſinging and dancing by three men and a young girl: it was called Heiva. When the performance was over, Capt. Bligh returned to his veſſel.

On the 2d of November, as ſoon as it was daylight, the captain diſpatched Mr. Chriſtian with a party to erect a tent. Afterwards, attended by Tinah, Moannah, and Poeeno, he went himſelf and fixed a boundary, within which none of the natives were to enter without permiſſion, due notice thereof having been given to them by the chiefs. Theſe tents were entirely devoted for the reception of the plants which were to be lodged therein. The captain had acted with ſo much prudence and caution throughout, that the chiefs, inſtead of thinking they were conferring a favour, by carrying the plants to the party herein appointed to receive them, (which were nine perſons, including Meſſrs. Nelſon and Brown) thought, on the contrary, that they were under an obligation by having them accepted.

This day the captain had no viſiters, except Tinah, who dined with him, and whom he was occaſionally obliged to feed, and lift the wine to his mouth, as the attendants whoſe occupation it was had been diſmiſſed, and the chief was ſo accuſtomed to this indulgence, that he was abſolutely incapable of feeding himſelf. The wives of the Earees are ſometimes ſubject to this duty after the birth of a child, but when they perform a ceremony which is called Oammo, they are then exempt from it for a limited time.

The captain was invited by Tinah after dinner to accompany him with a preſent of proviſions to a party of the Arreoys, in which ceremony he was made the principal perſon. This * offering was made by the ſide of a river, near the banks of which the captain had frequently walked before: on the preſent occaſion, however, a canoe was provided for him, which was dragged by eight men. As ſoon as they arrived at the landing-place, they ſaw a large quantity of bread-fruit, likewiſe a number of hogs ready dreſſed, and a quantity of cloth. There was a man who ſat at ſome diſtance, that was called a principal Arreoy: he was addreſſed by one of thoſe who attended Tinah, ſtanding on his canoe, in an oration compoſed of ſome ſhort ſentences, which continued for the ſpace of a quarter of an hour, a lane being previouſly made by the croud. The captain was now deſired to hold one end of the cloth, while five men, one of whom had a ſucking pig, and the reſt a baſket of bread-fruit, were deſired to follow him. Thus they proceeded to the Arreoy, before whom they laid down their offering. Tinah dictated to the captain ſeveral words, which he repeated; the meaning of which he did not underſtand. The imperfect manner in which the captain repeated thoſe words was the occaſion of no little mirth. This ceremony being over, the captain was introduced to another Arreoy, who had come from Ulietea; upon which the ſame buſineſs commenced again; and Tinah underſtanding that the captain had children in his own country, directed him to make another offering on their account. Accordingly the captain preſented three baſkets of bread-fruit, a ſmall pig, and another piece of cloth, which were remaining, to the Arreoy; whom he firſt addreſſed, and who attended to all his orations, as dictated by Tinah, with profound attention and the utmoſt gravity, receiving the articles preſented more as his right than as a gift.

The Arreoys, it ſeems, are highly reſpected, being, as the captain judges, a ſociety of men who have been diſtinguiſhed for their merit. They are permitted to carry on their amours to a great length; but all their children are deſtroyed. They are generally warriors, and therefore in times of danger they are reſtricted in their amours, for fear of debilitating themſelves. The natives declare that the ſociety of Arreoys is abſolutely neceſſary, in order to prevent too great a multiplication of people: notwithſtanding which, none of the lower claſs of the inhabitants are admitted into this ſociety. As an inſtance of the cruelty of this inſtitution, Teppahoo, of the diſtrict of Tettaha, and Tetteehowdeah his wife, and Otoo's ſiſter, were obliged to ſacrifice their children, to the number of eight, as ſoon as born.

Mr. Peckover, the gunner, according to the captain's orders, now carried on a trade for proviſions in the tent; and Moannah reſided there, in order to prevent his countrymen from committing any further depredations or occaſioning diſturbances.

Tinah, Oreepyah, Poeeno, and Moannah, continually dined with the captain, who had frequently other gueſts from the adjoining diſtricts.

Much perplexity is occaſioned by the variety of names which one chief lays claim to. The captain was very often embaraſſed in knowing by what title he ſhould addreſs his gueſts: indeed it often happens that a perſon is unacquainted with the ſubject of converſation by the name which he is mentioned, though he is well known to him by perſon.

The captain ſhewed Tinah the preparations which were making for conveying the bread fruit plants which he promiſed King George on board. Tinah was exceedingly happy, and told the captain that he expected King George would ſend him in return the different articles which he enumerated.

In the afternoon of the 3d of November the gudgeon of the rudder belonging to the large cutter was ſtolen, in ſuch a ſly and dexterous manner as to eſcape the notice of the man who was appointed to take care of her. Previous to this ſeveral petty thefts were committed, owing to the careleſſneſs and inattention of the captain's people; and as theſe kind of accidents are very often likely to interrupt harmony and peace, the captain thought it proper to puniſh the boat-keeper, in the preſence of the natives, for his negligence; accordingly, he was ordered a dozen laſhes. Tinah, and ſeveral chiefs who were preſent, ſupplicated very hard for his forgiveneſs. The women appeared exceedingly ſorry. His puniſhment, no doubt, had the deſired effect among the natives.

The captain this day received from the natives two different kinds of roots, which grow like yams: one of them is a ſweet root, called Ettee; it abounds very much in the Friendly Iſlands, and is eaten as a ſweetmeat: the other is like the Tyah in the Weſt-Indies, and is called Appah. He likewiſe got a fruit, very juicy and refreſhing, called Ayyah, which is

---

* The ceremony of this offering will be more fully explained in our future voyages.

is the jambo of Batavia; theſe are eaten in large quantities, and are as large as middle ſized apples. There were alſo ſome avees, a very high flavoured delicious fruit, but which as yet were not ripe.

On the 4th, Tinah introduced to the captain a particular acquaintance of his, who was a chief from the iſland Ulietea, whoſe name was Tootaha. The captain underſtanding that he was a prieſt, and poſſeſt of great knowledge, deſired Tinah to take whatever articles he thought worthy his acceptance, and ſuch was the modeſty of Tinah, that he was not near as generous as the captain would have been. The captain was likewiſe viſited to day by Oedidee, who had been at ſea with Captain Cook, in 1773 and 1774. The little Engliſh, which this man had learned during that expedition, he had almoſt forgot.

On the 5th, they began to take up plants, which they were enabled to do with greater ſatisfaction to themſelves, by the aſſiſtance of the natives, who underſtood better how to prune and take them up. The weather was now variable, there were frequent ſhowers of rain, attended with lightning.

As the curioſity of the natives was now in a great meaſure ſatisfied, the captain and his people were not ſo much incommoded by numbers as before; beſides, the badneſs of the weather obliged them for the moſt part to be at home. The chiefs of Matavai, Oparre, and ſome other iſlands, were the captain's preſent viſiters. The natives dropped following them whenever they went out to walk, ſo that they now enjoyed their excurſions, and whatever houſe they viſited, met therein a warm reception, without any kind of officiouſneſs which their curioſity at firſt occaſioned. The people of Otaheite are the moſt eaſy in their manners, they are exceedingly hoſpitable and well behaved, devoid of both formality and forwardneſs. They have no notion of that ceremonious politeneſs of preſſing their gueſts to partake of more refreſhments when they ſay they are ſatisfied, or prolong their viſits when they have an inclination to depart; they expect that their viſiters will eat as much, and ſtay as long as they like, therefore they deſpiſe that teazing kind of ceremony which is too common in our civilized countries.

The moſt polite are chiefly the moſt rude,
Who contradict—their company intrude,
Whoſe boundleſs hoſpitality is ſuch,
They make their friends to eat and drink too much,
And then ſo over-good, ſo very kind,
Will force our ſtay, when to depart inclin'd:
But here a different picture let us view,
The teſt of friendſhip!—friendſhip the moſt true;
'Tis *from the heart* that they their friends invite,
Without formality they are polite;
Their native friendſhip, which they cannot feign,
Is always open, unofficious, plain,
And how much better than *good manners* too,
When every gueſt, whate'er he wills, may do.

As the chiefs were frequently expreſſing a wiſh to ſee ſome of the Engliſh ladies, the captain diſpoſed for mirth, permitted the ſhip's barber, who ſuggeſted the joke, to dreſs up a painted head, which he brought from London, like thoſe exhibited in hairdreſſers ſhops, and to which he added a body, which he ſkilfully contrived of a ſtick and a quantity of cloth. The deception being complete, and the feature of the face very regularly made, the captain reported that there was an Engliſh lady on board. All the chiefs and their attendants were very curious, and the quarter-deck was immediately cleared, in order that ſhe might make her appearance. The figure being handed up the ladder, and conducted to the after part of the deck with great ceremony, the natives all ſhouted for joy at ſeeing the beautiful Engliſh woman; ſeveral requeſted to know of the captain if ſhe was his wife. An old female native approached the ſham lady with great reverence, and laid a preſent of cloth and bread-fruit at her feet; but, when ſhe diſcovered the trick, ſhe was exceedingly mortified, and ran away with her preſents, to the great diverſion of Tinah and the reſt of his countrymen, who enjoyed the joke. Theſe people were very curious about the Engliſh ladies, and having made many enquiries reſpecting their colour, features, &c. ſtrictly enjoined the captain, whenever he came again, to bring his veſſel full of them.

Among the ſeveral articles which the natives brought the captain, there was ſome very fine ſugar cane, of about ſix inches round. Tinah having underſtood that they made their ſugar thereof, was very deſirous to know by what method; the natives were particularly partial to the ſugar loaf, a piece of which always conſtituted part of the Engliſh preſents.

Nelſon had now completed a large garden near the tents, wherein the different kinds of ſeeds which they collected at the Cape of Good Hope were ſown. There were likewiſe ſome fruit ſtones and almonds diſperſed among the chiefs, with roſe ſeed, as they particularly delight in the odour of roſes, and the women were fond of ornamenting themſelves therewith; inſtructions were alſo given them how to manage them.

The weather was ſtill variable, and on the 6th, they had weſterly winds, with much rain. The captain was very much hurt to find his garden-ground had been greatly abuſed, and what added not a little to his mortification, was the indifference of the chiefs, who did not ſeem concerned about it. The captain gave Poeeno (as the place of his reſidence was very favourable for agriculture) two orange plants, a fig tree, two pine-apple plants, and ſome vines, which were all in a flouriſhing ſtate.

About a hundred plants were got in pots at the tents, and all promiſed well; the cabin was likewiſe prepared for their reception.

The captain having received from Oreepyah, Tinah's brother, a preſent of a large hog, and a quantity of bread-fruit, which preſents, by the bye, were of greater expence than when they were purchaſed. Tinah, in a whiſper, begged the captain to return them, and not to accept any more of his preſents. This requeſt proceeded from his ſelfiſh diſpoſition, as he grudged Oreepyah the gifts, which of courſe he would receive from the captain in return. However, Oreepyah being a man of very great conſequence and ſpirit, the captain did not pay any attention to this advice.

On the 8th they had collected about 252 plants in their tents, where, for their further ſecurity, the guard was increaſed, though without any immediate cauſe, as the natives ſtill behaved with the greateſt decorum.

The captain, during his meals, was always obliged to keep a centinel at the hatchway, in order to prevent his being incommoded with too much company, nor was this by any means diſagreeable to the chiefs, who, on the contrary, ſeemed pleaſed with the reſtriction, and eſteemed it a high compliment whenever any one of their acquaintance was admitted. This day Tinah requeſted leave to introduce a prieſt as he called him; the captain immediately acquieſced, and his preſence occaſioned ſome religious converſation, during which it appeared that they believed in a great God, whom they called Oro, and others of leſs conſequence.

This day the weather became fine again, and they were of courſe viſited by both friends and ſtrangers. Tinah acquainted the captain that ſome performers, who were ſtrollers about the country, were now waiting for their attendance, as there was a wreſtling match (or in their own phraſe a *heiva*) to be performed for their entertainment on ſhore. Accordingly the captain, with ſeveral of his viſiters, ſet off about a quarter of a mile from their tents, where they perceived a great number of people in a circle. As ſoon as the company had taken their ſeats, a dancing heiva began, which was performed by two girls and four men: this laſted half an hour, and conſiſted of thoſe wanton geſtures and motions which we have deſcribed in our former voyages. When the dance ended, Tinah ordered a long piece of cloth to be brought; his wife Iddeah, and the captain, were deſired to hold the two firſt corners, and the remaining part being ſupported by many others, they carried it to the performers, and gave it them. Several other chiefs made a like payment.

This being done, the wreſtling began, and the place ſoon became a ſcene of confuſion and noiſe. A party of the Arreoys alſo began to exerciſe a privilege, which it ſeems they are allowed, of taking from the women ſuch of their clothes as they thought worth it; ſo that ſome of them were left little better than naked. One young woman, who was attacked, oppoſed them with all her ſtrength, and held faſt her cloth, though they almoſt dragged her along the ground. Obſerving that the captain took notice of her, ſhe held out her hand, and begged his aſſiſtance: upon this the captain interpoſed, and the young woman kept poſſeſſion of her property.

Soon after a ring was again made, but the wreſtlers were ſo numerous within it, that it was impoſſible to reſtore order. "In theſe challenges, they
" lay one hand upon their breaſt, and on the bend-
" ing of the arm at the elbow, with the other hand,
" they ſtrike a very ſmart blow, which, as the hand
" is kept hollow, creates a ſound that may be heard
" at a conſiderable diſtance; and this they do ſo
" frequently, and with ſuch force, that the fleſh
" becomes exceedingly bruiſed, and, the ſkin
" breaking, bleeds conſiderably. At this time the
" ſound from ſo many reſembled that of a number
" of people in a wood felling trees. This is the
" general challenge; but when any two combatants
" agree to a trial, they preſent their hands for-
" ward, joining them only by the extremities of
" the fingers. They begin by watching to take an
" advantage; at length they cloſe, ſeize each other
" by the hair, and are moſt commonly parted be-
" fore either receives a fall. Only one couple per-
" formed any thing like the part of good wreſtlers;
" and, as they were an equal match, this conflict
" laſted longer than any of the others; but they
" alſo were parted.
" Iddeah was the general umpire, and ſhe ma-
" naged with ſo much addreſs as to prevent any
" quarrelling, and there was no murmuring at her
" deciſions. As her perſon was large, ſhe was very
" conſpicuous in the circle. Tinah took no part
" in the management. Upon the whole, this per-
" formance exhibited greater ſtrength than ſkill or
" dexterity."

Tinah had been for ſome time talking of viſiting the iſland of Tethuroa, which lies eight or ten leagues N. from Otaheite, to fetch his mother; and on the 11th propoſed to the captain to ſail there in his veſſel: however he ſeemed to feel no great diſappointment at the captain's not complying with his deſire. Tethuroa, he ſaid, was the property of his family. He likewiſe mentioned an iſland called Roo-opow, the ſituation of which he deſcribed to be to the eaſtward of Otaheite four or five days ſail, and that there were large animals upon it with eight legs. The truth of this account he very ſtrenuouſly inſiſted upon, and wiſhed the captain to go thither with him. Captain Bligh was at a loſs to know whether or not Tinah himſelf gave credit to this whimſical and fabulous account; for they are ſo frequently inclined to be merry, that ſometimes it is hard to tell whether they are in jeſt or earneſt.

Their ideas of geography are very ſimple: they believe the world to be a fixed plane, of great extent; and that the ſun, moon, and ſtars, are all in motion round it. As they think the Engliſh great travellers, and capable of doing any thing, the captain has frequently been aſked if he had not been as far as the ſun and moon.

Tinah mentioned another iſland, called Tappuhoi, ſituated likewiſe to the eaſtward, the inhabitants of which were ſaid to be all warriors, and that the people of Otaheite did not dare to go there. He likewiſe added, that very lately a canoe from Tappuhoi was at the iſland of Maitea; that as ſoon as they landed they began to fight with the people of Maitea, who killed them all, except a young lad, and a woman, who have ſince been at Otaheite. The captain ſaw the boy Tinah alluded to, but who was incapable of giving any ſatisfactory account of the buſineſs.

CHAPTER IV.

Further Anecdotes of the Natives—The Captain taken ill—His Expedition to Tettaha—Sees a beautiful Heifer—Remarks—He leaves the Place—Bread-Fruit Plants increaſe—A ſcandalous Report—The Heifer that was at Tettaha purchaſed—A Viſit from Tinah's Mother—Her Nephew—Tinah and Oreepyah at variance—A Theft—Tempeſtuous Weather—Preparations for ſailing—Death of the Surgeon—Mr. Ledward ſucceeds him—Two Harbours explored—An Excurſion—Remarks—Veſſel removed to Toaroah Harbour—Three Men belonging to the Captain deſert—Recovered—Various Anecdotes.

ON the 13th the captain had a large company to dinner. It being always cuſtomary to drink his Majeſty's health as ſoon as the cloth was removed, the captain's gueſts became ſo fond both of the wine and the toaſt, that they would frequently inſiſt upon its being drank in the middle of their dinner, in an overflowing bumper. This day they were remarkably cheerful, and entertained the captain with various anecdotes; among which they gave an account of the vines which were planted in the iſland Hucheine, and elſewhere, by Captain Cook. They likewiſe remarked, that there was a bull and a cow alive at Otaheite, but that they were ſeparated, the bull being at a place called Itteah, and the cow at the diſtrict of Tettaha. The captain therefore reſolved on the firſt opportunity to go to Tettaha, which was but a little way off, and if poſſible preſerve the breed of theſe uſeful animals.

Having drank their wine after dinner, they went on ſhore: the captain was taken exceedingly ill at his tent, and continued in much pain near an hour, during which time the natives appeared very much concerned, and adminiſtered all the relief that they poſſibly could. He found himſelf quite recovered on his return to the veſſel.

The next morning (the 14th) ſeveral of the natives, and even ſtrangers, were enquiring after his health. This day, the weather being remarkably fine, the captain determined on going to Tettaha, and looking for the cow which had been mentioned the preceding day: accordingly, he invited Tinah, Oreepyah, and Poeeno, to accompany him, who all complied, and they ſet off together after ſun-riſe in the launch. This place is about four leagus from Point Venus. When they had arrived, a meſſenger was diſpatched by Tinah to the chief of the diſtrict, whoſe name was Teppahoo, to inform him of Capt. Bligh's arrival. This chief did not make his appearance, but ſent to know whether the captain came to ſee the cow or take it away. In anſwer to this a meſſage was returned, that he came only to ſee it. The captain was now deſired to proceed further along ſhore to the weſtward, in the boat. Mean while Tinah purchaſed ſome fiſh of the fiſhing canoes, which he eats raw with ſalt water for ſauce. As ſoon as they were landed, they were ſurrounded by a great number of people, and preſently after Tippehoo the chief appeared. The captain and Oreepyah accompanied him about a quarter of a mile, when he was ſhown a moſt beautiful heifer; the captain was exceedingly hurt that this fine animal and the bull ſhould be ſeparated, eſpecially as he had ſhared in the toil and trouble of bringing them over. There being nothing of further conſequence to attract the notice of the captain, he departed from this place, which is very inferior to Matavai in point of luxuriancy and cultivation. The captain previous to his departure made the chief a preſent, and invited him on board the Bounty. All the time Tinah remained in the boat, there was no kind of reſpect paid him, nor even a cocoa-nut or a bread-fruit given him, without purchaſing it. Being obliged to row againſt the wind, on their return they ſtopped to refreſh at Oparre, and about eight o'clock they arrived to the veſſel; the captain's company ſtaid with him to ſupper.

On the 17th the captain went on ſhore to examine the ſtate of the bread-fruit plant. During his abſence Tippahoo, the chief of Tettaha come on board, and left a hog as a preſent for the captain. Their collection of bread-fruit plants ſtill continued encreaſing.

Tinah ſtill continued the captain's conſtant viſiter, and this day having left the table ſooner than uſual, his brother Oreepyah and Oedidee informed the captain that Tinah's wife Iddeah was gracious with her huſband's ſervant, being the very perſon who always fed Tinah at dinner. They alſo hinted, that inſtead of its being without Tinah's knowledge it was by his deſire. The captain was unwilling to believe this ſcandalous report, but not only theſe, but the reſt of the company agreed in the ſtory.

The captain had lately remarked that the place in his cabin which he had reſigned to Tinah in order to keep his preſents ſecure, inſtead of being encreaſed with the additional favours which were daily beſtowed, ſeemed on the contrary to be diminiſhing; at length he diſcovered, that Iddeah kept another hoard in the cabin, which ſhe was by degrees filling with the articles which belonged to her huſband; apprehending, that if Tinah's locker was once full, the captain would give no more preſents. At Tinah's requeſt the carpenters were ordered by the captain to make a cheſt large enough for himſelf and wife to ſleep on.

On the 21ſt a meſſage came from Tippahoo to the captain to inform him, that the heifer was brought to Matavai; the captain went immediately on ſhore and purchaſed it, with a quantity of ſugar-loaf, pair of ſciſſars, ſhirt, hatchet, ſpike nail, gimblet, file, knife, &c. The chief ſeemed highly ſatisfied with his bargain; and the captain ſent the heifer to Poeeno's reſidence where there was plenty of graſs.

The captain was invited in the afternoon to another entertainment, which he deſcribes in the following manner.

"Twelve men were divided into four ranks with two women in the front, behind them all ſtood a prieſt, who delivered a ſpeech which laſted about ten minutes, and which was liſtened to with the utmoſt attention. During this, the picture of Captain Cook (which had been brought for that purpoſe) was placed by Captain Bligh's ſide. As ſoon as the prieſt had finiſhed his oration, a piece of white cloth was wrapt round the picture, and another piece round the captain. The prieſt then began another ſpeech, but of a ſhorter duration, and an old man placed a piece of plaited cocoa-nut leaf at Captain Bligh's feet, another piece at Tinah's, and another under the picture. After this the dancing began, which was carried on in the ſame ſtile as before."

In order to pleaſe the natives, the captain ordered the head of the ſhip which bore the figure of a woman, well carved, to be painted in ſprightly colours. The natives admired the figure prodigiouſly, which did not a little encreaſe their curioſity to ſee Engliſh ladies.

Elder brothers, it appeared, are allowed to be connected with the wives of their younger brothers: however, if any perſon, who does not belong to the family, aims at ſuch intimacy, it is immediately reſented.

Tinah, at the requeſt of the captain, had a light ſhed, which was ſupported by poſts erected this day on ſhore at Point Venus, where the captain deſigned to make his obſervations.

On the 24th Tinah being about to leave the captain for a few days, he treated him with a turtle for his dinner, which he caught upon the reefs. Tinah requeſted the captain would ſend for his mother in the morning, who was juſt arrived from the Iſland of Tethuroa, and take care of her till he returned. This the captain readily promiſed to do, and the next day the boat was diſpatched to Oparre, which returned in the afternoon with Oberree-roah (the name of Tinah's mother) and two female attendants. This woman being very old and corpulent, it was with the greateſt difficulty they could aſſiſt her into the veſſel. As ſoon as ſhe was on board ſhe ſat down, and claſping the captain's knees in her arms, expreſſed great ſatisfaction at this interview by a large flood of tears. Her attendants now produced three pieces of cloth, a large hog, ſome cocoa nuts, plantains, bread-fruit, &c. as a preſent. This poor woman being fatigued with her journey was deſirous of remaining on board all night. The captain immediately gave orders that every neceſſary accommodation ſhould be prepared. This woman had with her a favourite cat, that was the kitten of one which was given to her by Captain Cook. She entertained the captain with all the different occurrences, which happened to her ſince Captain Cook's departure from Otaheite.

On the 26th this old lady being deſirous to go on ſhore, the captain made her a preſent of ſeveral articles, which ſhe declined accepting at preſent, as it was not then convenient to take them with her.

Only Moannah and Poeeno dined with the captain to-day. They hinted, that Tinah and his brother Oreepyah were at variance, and it was ſuſpected that when the veſſel was gone they would have a battle. The captain for ſome time perceived that they were cool to each other. They had diſagreed, it ſeems, about their wives, and though Captain Bligh frequently endeavoured to reconcile them, ſtill they retained their anger and animoſity.

The chief of Ulietea, nephew of the old lady, arrived this afternoon in a canoe, and brought with him an ewe, but which was in a very bad condition. The captain having purchaſed it at a very eaſy rate, ſent it to Poeeno's reſidence to be kept with the heifer.

On the 28th Tinah and his wife returned to Matavai, and were very glad to ſee the captain. They brought a preſent of a hog, and ſome bread-fruit.

On the 29th the captain was very ſorry to find that moſt of the melons, cucumbers, &c. in the gardens, near the tents were deſtroyed by inſects; this ſoil, being for the greateſt part ſandy, was very unfavourable to the reſt of the ſeeds. The captain therefore fixed upon another ſpot, at a greater diſtance from the ſea-ſide, where ſeveral kinds of ſeed were ſown according to his deſire.

In the night the rudder of one of the boats was ſtolen from the tents. Tinah hearing of the theft, was afraid to ſee the captain, who came on ſhore the 1ſt of December; however, as the loſs was not very great, Captain Bligh ſent to inform him, that he was angry with no one, but the perſon who committed the theft. Accordingly, the chief with ſeveral others came to the captain's tents, and promiſed to uſe their utmoſt exertions, in order to diſcover the thief, and get the rudder reſtored. Indeed, as the natives had behaved hitherto remarkably honeſt, the captain ſuſpected that ſome of thoſe who had arrived from the neighbouring iſlands were guilty of the preſent crime.

The youngeſt brother of Tinah, Whydooah, who was eſteemed a very great warrior, was conſtantly a viſiter of the captain's. Tinah was now about building for himſelf a houſe, and the captain had promiſed that his carpenters ſhould aſſiſt him.

On the 5th about the afternoon they had a fierce breeze from the N. W. which occaſioned the ſea to break very high acroſs the Dolphin Bank. The weather had been very unſettled for ſome time, but at night it turned out remarkably bad. Such a heavy broken ſea now came into the bay, that they were compelled to batten all the hatchways down, and every man was obliged to ſtay upon deck, though he was wet to the ſkin with the violent rain: the veſſel rolled in a terrible manner.

On the 6th, the wind encreaſed in ſuch a manner, that it was impoſſible to put to ſea; accordingly they ſtruck yards and top-maſts, and depended entirely on their anchors. The torrents of rain ſwelled the river to ſuch a degree, that the ground on which their tents ſtood became an iſland; they were forced to cut a paſſage for the river through a part of the beech, at a diſtance from the tents, for the ſake of preſerving their bread-fruit plants.

Notwithſtanding the ſea broke very high on the beech, Tinah, his wife, and Moannah, ventured out in a canoe to ſee the captain, and very fortunately made their way good through the ſurf. They had each a paddle, which they managed with moſt ſurprizing ſkill. As ſoon as they got on board they embraced the captain, and ſeemed very apprehenſive for the ſafety of the veſſel. At noon the ſea became more moderate, though the wind ſtill continued the ſame. Iddeah departed at ſun-ſet, but her huſband remained with the captain all night.

On the 7th the wind began to ſhift, between the N. and N. W. and was abated ſo conſiderably, that the captain was no longer alarmed at their ſituation. This day, about noon, Iddeah returned to the veſſel, and brought with her a very fine hog, with a quantity of bread-fruit and cocoa-nuts. Some ſhort time ſhe and her huſband left the veſſel, having made the captain promiſe, that he would be on ſhore in the morning, if the weather cleared up to viſit their relations, who, they aſſured them, were exceedingly uneaſy on their account.

The captain was likewiſe viſited by Poeeno and his wife; this woman was ſo exceedingly rejoiced at ſeeing the captain, that before he could prevent her, her face was inſtantaneouſly covered with blood, by the ſevere manner in which ſhe beat herſelf with a ſhark's tooth, which is always their cuſtom on occaſions of either joy or grief. The captain, as ſoon as poſſible, checked her fury, and her agitation ſeemed to ſubſide with the drying up of her blood. Poeeno declared that the captain ſhould live with him if any thing happened the veſſel, and that they would hourly employ themſelves in cutting down trees to enable him to build another.

The captain perceiving it unſafe to ſtay much longer in Matavai Bay, ordered immediate preparations to be made for ſailing.

On the 8th the weather having cleared up, the captain went on ſhore, and met with a very warm reception from Oberree-roah, and his other friends.

The captain was very happy to find that the plants which had been covered from the ſprey, off the ſea, ſuſtained not the leaſt damage during this bad weather; ſome were ſtriking out young ſhoots, others were not as yet budding: by Nelſon's advice, the captain refrained ſome days from having them taken on board, this botaniſt imagining that the plants might be produced from their roots; there were ſome boxes accordingly filled with them.

On the 9th they were aſſiſted by ſeveral natives in hauling the launch on ſhore to be repaired, during which, a fine youth, about ten years of age, was thrown down, and unfortunately a roller that was placed under the boat went over him. At this time the ſurgeon was very ill, Captain Bligh therefore diſpatched a meſſenger for Mr. Ledward, his aſſiſtant, who, on his arrival, examined the boy, and gave no little ſatisfaction by pronouncing his limbs all perfectly ſecure, and that he had ſuffered no material injury.

The ſurgeon, who had been for ſome time confined to his cabin, became now ſo very bad, that Mr. Ledward recommended he ſhould be moved to ſome place, where he might have more air; this however was productive of no good effect, as he died in about an hour after. Mr. Ledward, the aſſiſtant, was now appointed ſurgeon by the captain.

The next day, it being the captain's wiſh to have the deceaſed interred on ſhore, Tinah, to whom it was mentioned, immediately repaired to inform his father of the captain's deſire, it being neceſſary, he ſaid, to aſk his conſent. Having returned in a ſhort time, he told the captain it was perfectly agreeable, and the ſpot of ground which he requeſted, ſhould alſo be granted for the burial-place. Accordingly the captain, accompanied with Tinah, went on ſhore, taking two men with him to dig a grave. When they had reached the place, they found that the natives had already begun it. The grave was marked out very exactly at Eaſt and Weſt. In the afternoon, about four o'clock, the body was conveyed to the place of interment. Several of the natives, with all the chiefs attended, and behaved with moſt profound decorum during the funeral ſervice.

On the twelfth the captain went in his boat to examine the harbours about Oparre: he found two formed by the reefs, the weſtermoſt, which is called by the natives Taowne Harbour, though it ſeems the moſt convenient for ſailing in and out, does not appear ſufficiently ſheltered from a N. W. wind or ſea. There is a remarkable mountain, which the natives called Wowry, and which bears S. S. E. from the entrance, by which this harbour may be diſtinguiſhed. It is about a league and a half diſtant from Point Venus. The eaſternmoſt is called Toahroah Harbour. This is ſmall but ſecure: the chief objection to this harbour is the difficulty of getting out with the common trade-wind. The entrance, which is on the eaſt ſide, being no more than about a hundred yards wide, and the depth without, inconvenient for warping. On the ſouth ſide of the entrance is a Morai, the reef ſide is to be kept on board, and a look-out to be kept from aloft, it being a much better place than the deck to perceive the ſhoal water. This harbour is about three miles diſtant from Point Venus.

On the 14th, it being Sunday, ſeveral of the principal natives attended divine ſervice: they all behaved exceedingly well except one, when the women began to laugh at their general reſponſes; however, upon the captain's looking ſeriouſly, they were aſhamed, and did it no more. They ſeemed ſurpriſed after the ſervice, that there was no offering to be made.

As the weather, which had been for ſome days fair, appeared now quite ſettled, the captain ſtill continued in Matavai Bay, there being no apprehenſion of danger.

On the 17th, the captain, accompanied by Nelſon, and his old friend Moannah, took an excurſion into the country. This journey, which was on the low land, was exceedingly pleaſant; the land was covered with bread-fruit and cocoa-nuts, and there were ſeveral rows of neat houſes, where there was a multitude of children. They proceeded along the valley, where they alſo found a number of houſes, and ſeveral bread-fruit trees, which were much ſmaller than thoſe they had ſeen before. They likewiſe met with other plantations of yams, taro, cloth plant, yava, &c. They were frequently interrupted in their walk by a river, which had ſeveral croſs windings, and over which they were obliged frequently to be carried on men's ſhoulders. When they arrived at a Morai, they perceived a great aſſembly of natives. The prieſts, it ſeems, were performing their devotions. During the ceremony ſixteen men were ſitting on their heels, and there was a pole in the front, covered with a plaited cocoa-nut branch. A number of ſmall pieces of the ſame leaf plaited, and which they call hahyree, were placed before each of theſe men, who had likewiſe a piece thereof round their wriſts.

The chief prieſt repeated a prayer with a loud voice, while all the reſt joined in the reſponſes. This being done, they aroſe, and carried each a hahyree, which they placed at the foot of the pole, and then returned to prayer, which continued till all the hahyree were diſpoſed of in the ſame manner; upon which the ceremony concluded. There was likewiſe an offering of plantains and bread-fruit placed near the pole, which was left for the Eatua.

While thus employed in prayer a roaſted hog had been prepared for them, of which the captain and his company were invited to partake; but Captain Bligh, willing to make the moſt of his time before the ſun became too warm, declined this invitation, and Moannah gave directions to have ſome refreſhments ready for them when they returned.

They proceeded up the valley, which became gradually narrow, and had advanced a conſiderable way beyond all the houſes and plantations, when they were ſuddenly ſtopped by a caſcade, that fell into the river from a height of above two hundred feet: at this time the fall was not great, but during the heavy rains it muſt be conſiderable. The natives look upon this as one of their curioſities. The fall of water is the leaſt wonderful part; the cliff, over which it comes, is perpendicular, forming an appearance as if ſupported by ſquare pillars of ſtone, and with a regularity that is ſurpriſing. Underneath is a pool eight or nine feet deep, into which the water falls; and in this place all the natives, from ſome religious idea, make it a rule to bathe once in their lives.

There is a cloſe connection between the hills here, which are exceedingly well covered with wood. From the craggy appearance of the road, the Captain avoided the mountain, which is called Peeah Roah, and about ſeven miles from the road by which they went.

They dined in the houſe of an old acquaintance of Nelſon's, where a young pig was provided for them, on which they made a very hearty meal. It was for this man that they had, in 1777, planted the two ſhaddock plants, which they had brought from the Friendly Iſlands, and which were now very fine trees, and full of fruit.

They do not take much pains in their plantations, except with the yava and the cloth-plant, both of which they are careful to keep clear of weeds. Many of the plantations of the cloth-plant were fenced with ſtone, and ſurrounded with a ditch. The yams and plantains are moſtly on the higher grounds.

When dinner was over they returned to the ſhip. The captain was much delighted, in this walk, with the number of children that he ſaw in every part of the country; they are very handſome, ſprightly, and full of antic tricks. They have many diverſions that are common with the boys in England; ſuch as flying kites, ſwinging, cats cradle, dancing or jumping in a rope, wreſtling, and walking upon ſtilts.

On the 19th they had much rain, and a long ſwell ſet into the bay. They had a fierce breeze from the E. and E. S. E. The captain had not yet determined, whether, on leaving Matavai Bay, he would go to the Iſland Eimeo, or to the harbour of Toahroah near Oparre: this uncertainty made Tinah, and the reſt of his friends, very uneaſy; and they appeared much diſtreſſed on his deſiring them, this afternoon, to ſend on board all the things which they wiſhed to have repaired by the forge, as ſoon as poſſible, that what they wanted might be done before the veſſel left Matavai, which he told them would be in a few days. They very earneſtly intreated him to ſtay one month longer. This the captain ſaid was impoſſible, and aſked Tinah if he would not go with him to Eimeo; but he ſaid, that, notwithſtanding his protection, he was certain the Eimeo people would watch for an opportunity to kill him. Tinah remained on board with the captain all night, but Iddeah his wife went on ſhore, and returned early in the morning, bringing with her ſome axes, and other things, which by her deſire were immediately repaired by the forge.

On the 20th the captain went on ſhore, and found Otow, Oberree-roah, Moannah, and ſeveral others, in great tribulation at the thoughts that they were ſo ſoon to leave them. All the people of Matavai were much concerned at his intention of going to Eimeo, and took every opportunity to prejudice him againſt the people of that iſland: but as their motive was obvious, the captain did not attend to their diſſuaſions; however, their apparent affection for him, and regret for his departure, made ſo great an impreſſion, that the next day he ſent the maſter in the launch to re-examine the depth of water between this bay and Toahroah Harbour. The maſter returned in the evening, and acquainted the captain, that he found a good bottom, with not leſs than ſixteen fathoms depth all the way. The harbour of Toahroah appearing every way ſafe, Captain Bligh determined to get the veſſel there as ſpeedily as poſſible, and having publiſhed his intention, the natives were full of joy and happineſs on the occaſion.

The plants, which were 774 pots, all in a healthy ſtate, were taken on board. Whenever any plant had an unfavourable appearance, it was replaced by another. The number of thoſe rejected was 302, of which not one in ten but was found to be growing at the root.

"The natives," according to Captain Bligh's information, "reckon eight kinds of the bread-fruit tree, each of which they diſtinguiſh by a different name: Patteah, Eroroo, Awanna, Mi-re, Oree, Powerro, Appeere, Rowdeeah. The leaf of the Patteah, Mi-re, and Rowdeeah, differs from the reſt; the Mi-re is more ſinuated; the Rowdeeah has a large broad leaf, not at all ſinuated. The difference of the fruit is principally in the Patteah and Rowdeeah. In the firſt, the fruit is rather larger and more of an oblong form: in the laſt, it is round and not above half the ſize of the others. The captain enquired if plants could be produced from the ſeed, and was told they could not, but that they muſt be taken from the root. The plants are beſt collected after wet weather, at which time the earth balls round the roots, and they are not liable to ſuffer by being moved. About the end of February they do not uſe the bread-fruit, as the fruit is not then in perfection; but there is no part of the year in which the trees are entirely bare."

Early on the 25th they unmoored, and the tents were ſent in the launch to Oparre, with directions that after landing them, the launch ſhould meet the veſſel in the entrance of Toahroah harbour, to ſhow the ſafeſt part of the channel. They got the ſhip under ſail about half paſt ten, and ran down under top-ſails: when they were near the launch, it fell calm, and the ſhip ſhot paſt her. They immediately let the anchor go, but, to their great ſurpriſe, found the ſhip a-ground forwards. She had run on ſo eaſy, that they had not perceived it at the time. This accident occaſioned much trouble, as they were obliged to ſend anchors out aſtern to get the ſhip afloat: in doing which, one of the cables ſwept a rock, and was not got clear again without much difficulty.

On the 26th the chiefs, and indeed all the natives, congratulated the captain on the ſafety of his veſſel. Tinah conducted him to a houſe near the water-ſide, abreaſt the ſhip, which he deſired the captain to make uſe of, and which was large enough for all his purpoſes. Tinah and his brother Oreepyah then deſired the captain would ſtay and receive a formal addreſs and preſent, which they called Otee. Having readily aſſented, a ſtool was brought for him to ſit on. They then left him with Moannah, and in a ſhort time Tinah returned with about twenty men, who all made a ſtop at ſome diſtance, and a prieſt ſaid a ſhort prayer to the Eatua, to which the reſt made reply. A man was then ſent to the captain three ſeveral times, bringing him each time a ſmall pig, and the ſtem of a plantain leaf. The firſt they told him was for the God of Brittannee, the next for King George, and the laſt for himſelf. Moannah then got up, and without being dictated to, made an oration for the captain; the purport of which was, that the captain through his repreſentative received their offering with thanks; that they were good people and friends; and therefore he exhorted them to commit no thefts: he told them to bring their pigs, cocoa-nuts, and bread-fruit, and they would receive good things in return; that they took nothing without their conſent; and finally, that every man was to quit the place (the houſe they occupied) at night; for if they made any viſit in the dark, they would be killed. After this oration the ceremony concluded.

Their preſent ſituation was exceedingly pleaſant and convenient. This ſhip was perfectly ſheltered by the reefs in ſmooth water, and cloſe to a fine beach without the leaſt ſurf. A ſmall river, with very good water, runs into the ſea about the middle of the harbour. The captain gave directions for the plants to be landed, and the ſame party to be with them as at Matavai. Tinah's dwelling was according to his deſire adjoining the captain's.

On the 29th, the butcher being rather careleſs, ſome of the natives ſeized an opportunity of ſtealing his cleaver. This being an article highly eſteemed by the natives, the captain had no great hopes of its reſtoration; however he complained to the chiefs, who were then on board, and they promiſed to uſe their utmoſt endeavours to recover it. Some ſhort time after Tinah, contrary to the captain's expectations, brought the cleaver on board. It was given up with great reluctance by the thief, who had conveyed it to Attahooroo. The captain offered Tinah a preſent for his trouble; but, underſtanding that it was by way of a compenſation for recovering the cleaver, he could not be prevailed upon to accept it.

The captain was conſtantly viſited by Tinah, his wife, and relations; but he never had the royal children on board, or even in ſight of the veſſel, though ſo near them. The ſhip's company, who were occupied on ſhore, were divided from them by a river, and the captain, unwilling to give them any offence or alarm them, ſtrictly prohibited the men from approaching the place where they were.

The veſſel was ſtill ſupplied with proviſions by the natives, who brought them cocoa-nuts in ſuch plenty, that ſcarcely a pint of water was drank during the day on board the veſſel. Though there was a ſcarcity of bread-fruit, they ſtill purchaſed without much trouble a ſufficiency for their preſent conſumption. There was, however, another harveſt approaching, which they expected would be fit for uſe in five or ſix weeks. The better kind of plantains alſo were become ſcarce; but a kind which they call Vayhee were in great plenty. This fruit does not hang on the trees like the other kinds, but grows upon an upright ſtalk of conſiderable ſtrength and ſubſtance. Though this plantain is inferior in quality to moſt of the others, it affords great ſubſiſtence to the natives.

They likewiſe received continually on board preſents of fiſh, chiefly dolphin and albacore, and a few ſmall rock fiſh. Their fiſhing is moſtly in the night, when they make ſtrong lights on the reefs, which attract the fiſh to them. Sometimes, in fine weather, the canoes are out in ſuch numbers, that the whole ſea appears illuminated. In the canoes they fiſh with hook and line, and on the reefs they ſtrike the fiſh with a ſpear. Some likewiſe carry out ſmall nets, which are managed by two men. In the day-time their fiſhing canoes go without the reefs, ſometimes to a conſiderable diſtance, where they fiſh with rods and lines, and catch bonetas, and other fiſh. Whenever there is a ſhow of fiſh, a fleet of canoes immediately proceed to ſea. Their hooks being bright, are uſed without bait, in the manner of artificial flies. Their rods are made of bamboo; but when there are any very large fiſh, they make uſe of an out-rigger over the fore part of the canoe, about 25 feet in length, which has two prongs at the extremity, to each of which is faſtened a hook and line; and when a fiſh takes the hook, there are two men in the ſtern of the canoe who raiſe it up immediately with ropes.

On the 5th, when the watch was relieved at four o'clock in the morning, they miſſed the ſmall cutter. Capt. Bligh, upon this information, immediately muſtered his crew, and found upon an examination that three of his men were wanting, viz. Charles Churchill, who was the ſhip's corporal; William Muſprat, a ſeaman, and John Millward, ditto, who had been centinel from twelve to two in the morning.

Upon a further ſcrutiny, it was diſcovered that theſe men had taken away eight ſtand of arms and ammunition; but nobody on board appeared the leaſt acquainted with their deſign, or had the ſmalleſt knowledge of the place of their rendezvous. Capt. Bligh went on ſhore, to inform the chiefs of his loſs, and ſolicit their aſſiſtance in recovering thoſe deſerters. He underſtood that the boat which they had taken was at Matavai, and that they had made for the iſland Tethuroa in a ſailing canoe. Capt. Bligh now diſpatched the maſter to Matavai for the boat, while one of the chiefs voluntarily accompanied him: however, they met the boat about half way, with five of the natives, who of their own accord were bringing her back to the veſſel.

Tinah and ſome others chiefs, who were ſolicited to ſeek the deſerters, aſſured the captain that they would exert their utmoſt endeavours in recovering them. Oreepiah and Moannah agreed to go to Tethuroa the next morning, in ſearch of them. Oreepiah, however, enquired of the captain if he thought that they had pocket piſtols, for he was apprehenſive that they might do miſchief with theſe, even when they were ſurpriſed and ſeized. The captain removed all thoſe fears, by aſſuring them that they had none.

On the 6th theſe chiefs, according to promiſe, ſet off at day-light, in two canoes, for Tethuroa; but the weather became ſo boiſterous, that they were obliged to return in the forenoon, and the captain was exceedingly happy to ſee them get ſafe in, as the ſea ran very high without the harbour. Oreepyah and Moannah both promiſed the captain, that they would ſail again as ſoon as the weather ſhould be fine. From the firſt of this month, the weather and winds had been much unſettled, with a great deal of rain. Their former ſtation at Matavai appeared not at all ſafe, the ſea at times breaking high over the Dolphin bank, and making a great ſwell in the bay.

On the 9th they had a ſtrong wind at ſea, though in the harbour they had only light breezes. Poeeno viſited the captain to-day: he was apprehenſive that he was diſpleaſed with him, on account of his deſerters having been carried to Tethuroa, by a canoe from Matavai. He declared, that the buſineſs had been done before he heard of it; and that the only ſervice in his power he had not neglected to do for him, which was the ſending their boat back. As this was really an act of friendſhip, the captain expreſſed many obligations. Poeeno ſaid, that there was no doubt, from the directions Tinah had given, that as ſoon as the weather would admit the canoes to go out, the deſerters would be recovered.

On the 10th, unfortunately, one of the officers on ſhore plucked a branch from a tree called Tutuee, that bears the oil nut, which was growing at a Morai. As ſoon as he entered the houſe with it, where the captain's people were buſy, all the natives, both men and women, immediately went away. After this Capt. Bligh found the branch tied to one of the poſts of the houſe, and being exceedingly diſpleaſed at ſuch a piece of wantonneſs, ordered it to be taken away; but the natives, notwithſtanding, would not come near the place. They ſaid the houſe was tabooed, and none of them could approach it till the taboo was taken off, which could only be done by Tinah. To take any thing away from a Morai is regarded as a kind of ſacrilege, and, they believe, gives great offence to the Eatua. Tinah, at the captain's requeſt, took off the taboo, but not before the afternoon. This was performed by an offering of a plantain leaf at the Morai, and a prayer made to the Eatua. This ceremony being over, the natives became as familiar in the houſe as ever.

The captain had frequently hinted to Tinah his wiſh of obtaining the bull from Itteah, in hopes of keeping up this uſeful breed, but finding this chief indifferent about the matter, he commiſſioned Poeeno to bargain for it, who readily undertook the buſineſs, and after dinner departed about it.

On the 13th the weather being finer than uſual, Oreepyah ſailed with two canoes for Tethuroa. Some buſineſs prevented Moannah from accompanying him, but he followed the next day with two other canoes.

On the 14th, the wood on board the veſſel being expended, they received a ſupply from Tinah.

On the 16th, the captain accompanied Tinah near a Tupapow, where he was ſurpriſed by a ſudden outcry of grief. Having expreſſed a deſire to ſee the diſtreſſed perſon, Tinah took him to the place, where they found a number of women, one of whom was the mother of a young female child that lay dead. On ſeeing their unexpected viſiters their mourning not only ceaſed immediately, but to the captain's aſtoniſhment, they all burſt into an immoderate fit of laughter, and, while they remained, appeared much diverted with their viſit. This ſtrange behaviour can only be attributed to their extreme levity of diſpoſition, and not the want of maternal affection, which has been ſo remarkably conſpicious upon other occaſions.

On the 18th a meſſage came from Poeeno, to acquaint the captain that he had been ſucceſsful in his negotiation for the bull, which he had driven part of the way by land, but could not get farther on account of the rivers, and therefore deſired a boat ſhould be ſent for him. Upon this the launch was ordered to be got ready, and at two o'clock the next morning, Mr. Fryer, the maſter, ſet off in her, and returned with Poeeno, and the bull in the afternoon. The bull remained at Oparre during the night, and the next day he was taken to Matavai, and left with the cow.

On the 21ſt the perſon from whom Poeeno had the bull, came to receive the ſtipulated payment, which was one of every article of traffic the captain had in his poſſeſſion. This man, whoſe name was Oweevee, ſaid, he was inſpired by a divine ſpirit; and that in all matters of conſequence he was conſulted, for that he converſed with the Eatua. It was, he ſaid, the Eatua that ordered him to demand the bull from Tinah, which not to have complied with, would have been the height of impiety. The captain endeavoured to convince the chiefs of the roguery of this man, thinking he had a fair argument to prove it by his ſelling that which the Eatua had ordered him to keep; but here he was eaſily defeated, for the Eatua, as this man afterwards aſſerted, told him to ſell the captain the beaſt. This being the caſe, Captain Bligh ſaid he would not give the animals to any perſon; that they were now legally his, and that he would leave them under the protection of Poeeno and Tinah, who he hoped would take care of them for him till he returned. Underſtanding the captain's views, they both promiſed the animals ſhould be attended to, and declared, that while they were conſidered as his property, they would not part with them on any conſideration.

On the 22d the captain received a meſſage from Teppahoo, ſetting forth that the deſerters had paſſed this harbour, and were at Tettaha, about five miles diſtant. The cutter was ordered to be got ready, and a little before ſun-ſet the captain left the ſhip, taking Oedidee with him. By his advice he landed at ſome diſtance from the place where the deſerters were; but thinking it neceſſary to have the boat within call, and Oedidee aſſuring him that there was ſafe landing farther on, he directed the boat to proceed along-ſhore, whilſt Oedidee and he walked along the beach. The night was very dark and windy, and the ſhore being rocky, the captain ſoon loſt ſight of the boat. A few of the natives had joined them in their walk; and, from their manner, the captain had reaſon to ſuſpect them of a deſign to cloſe upon them, with an intention, no doubt, to plunder: he was provided with pocket-piſtols, and on producing one, they left them. Oedidee was ſo much alarmed that he could ſcarce be prevailed upon to proceed. When they arrived at Teppahoo's houſe, they were very kindly received by him and his wiſe. The cutter was arrived, but, there being a very high ſurf, ſhe could not come within a hundred yards of the ſhore.

The deſerters, as they were informed, were in a houſe cloſe to them, and the captain imagined there would be no great difficulty in ſecuring them, with the aſſiſtance of the natives. They were, however, appriſed of the captain's arrival; and when he was near the houſe, they came out, without their arms, and delivered themſelves up. The captain now ſent directions off to the boat for one of his people to come on ſhore, and for the boat to return to the place where he had landed. He likewiſe ſecured the arms, which he delivered to Teppahoo to take care of for the night. One muſket and two bayonets were miſſing, which the men ſaid were loſt, by the overſetting of the canoe in which they came from Tethuroa.

Theſe deſerters alſo added, that at Tethuroa they had ſeen Oreepyah and Moannah, who had made an attempt to ſecure them. They ſaid it was their intention to have returned to the ſhip; and it is probable that they were ſo haraſſed by the natives, watching for an opportunity to ſurpriſe them, that they might wiſh to have the merit of returning of their own accord, to avoid the diſgrace of being ſeized and brought back. At the time they delivered themſelves up, it was not in their power to have made reſiſtance, their ammunition being ſpoiled by the wet.

The captain now took leave of Teppahoo, who preſented them with a plentiful ſupply of proviſions, and they proceeded with the deſerters towards the boat; but as the wind had increaſed, and it rained hard, Captain Bligh determined to remain on ſhore till the morning; and having found ſhelter for the people they paſſed the remainder of the night without accident. The next day he ſent for the arms, and they returned ſafe to the veſſel.

This day, at dinner, Tinah congratulated the captain on having recovered his men, but expreſſed ſome concern that they had not been brought by Oreepyah and Moannah; leſt he ſhould imagine they had not done every thing in their power. The captain, however, aſſured him, that he was perfectly ſatisfied of their good intentions to ſerve him, and that he already conſidered himſelf under many obligations to them for the trouble they had been at on his account. He learnt afterwards that they had actually ſeized and bound the deſerters, but had been prevailed upon, by fair promiſes of their returning peaceably to the ſhip, to let them looſe: the deſerters, however, finding an opportunity to get poſſeſſion of their arms again, ſetting the natives at defiance, revoked their promiſe.

On the 30th Iſaac Martin, a ſeaman, was puniſhed with nineteen laſhes, for ſtriking an Indian. This was a traaſgreſſion of ſo ſerious a nature, and ſuch a direct violation of the captain's orders, that he would on no account be prevailed on to forgive it, though ſeveral of the chiefs made great interceſſion for him.

As yet Oreepyah and Moannah were not returned from Tethuroa. This place is reſorted to by the principal people of this part of Otaheite, at particular ſeaſons, when fiſh are in great plenty there. It was deſcribed to the captain to be a group of ſmall keys, ſurrounded by a reef: their produce is cocoa-nuts and plantains. During the ſeaſon, bread-fruit, and other proviſions, are daily carried over from Otaheite. When the deſerters were there, not leſs than 100 ſail of canoes were at Tethuroa.

The captain was conſtantly viſited by Teppahoo and his wife: he had for ſome time paſt been ill, and had made Oparre his place of reſidence, for the benefit of the ſurgeon's advice and aſſiſtance. At this time he complained of a hoarſeneſs and ſore-throat. Mr. Ledward, on examining him, diſcovered there had been two holes in the roof of his mouth, which, though healed, had the appearance of having been large: the adjacent parts appeared ſound, yet the ſurgeon was of opinion that they were cancerous, and would no doubt bring on his diſſolution.

On the 31ſt, agreeable to the captain's directions, the inſide of the veſſel was waſhed with boiling water, in order to deſtroy the cock-roaches; for the better doing of which the cheſts were removed on ſhore. They were more particular in killing the cock-roaches, as theſe vermin are very deſtructive to plants. At this time there were no rats at Otaheite, though, when Capt. Cook was there, they were ſo plenty, that every houſe abounded with them: they were likewiſe ſo tame, that they never ran away from any one, but would flock round the people while at meals, and eat whatever was given to them. It is ſuppoſed that theſe rats were entirely deſtroyed by the breed of cats which were at that time left in Otaheite.

This day the captain, Tinah and his wife, after breakfaſt, went to Matavai. Tinah having made too free with the yava, was quite unſociable; but Iddeah, who was exceedingly cheerful, made ample amends for him. When they arrived at Poeeno's houſe, the captain was very well pleaſed to find the bull and cow together, in a very fine paſture, and likely to increaſe. Some of the things which were ſown in the garden had failed; others were in a very thriving ſtate, particularly the Indian corn, two vines, a pine-apple plant, fig-tree, and ſome ſlips of a ſhaddock tree.

From this they proceeded to the garden at Point Venus. Here the hogs had almoſt deſtroyed every thing. Some Indian corn under ground, peaſe, and the Jamaica callico, green and ocra, had eſcaped.

They now returned to the veſſel, where there was a comfortable dinner prepared; by which Tinah was ſomewhat recovered from his intoxication. As ſoon as the cloth was removed, Tinah very ſeriouſly propoſed to the captain to take him, his wife, and two attendants, to England. He ſaid he was very deſirous to ſee King George, who he was ſure would be very glad to ſee him. The captain was not a little ſurpriſed at Tinah's propoſal; but not willing abſolutely to refuſe his requeſt, amuſed him with a promiſe that he would previouſly aſk King George's permiſſion to carry them to England, which when he obtained he would come in a larger veſſel, and have ſuch accommodations provided as would be neceſſary for their voyage.

It ſeems Tinah was very much in dread that his enemies would attack him, as ſoon as the veſſel departed from Otaheite; and as his particular friend Teppahoo was indiſpoſed, he naturally apprehended that his adverſaries would be too powerful for him. The captain, however, to remove thoſe fears, and prevent any future altercation, declared, that if any injury was offered to the people of Matavai and Oparre during his abſence, he would revenge it on his return, and ſhew the tranſgreſſors no mercy.

CHAPTER V.

The Natives Skill in Surgery proved—An unfortunate Accident—Conſequent Uneaſineſs—Tinah's Behaviour on the Occaſion—Captain's Anger—Suggeſtions—Reconciliation—A ſhort Heiva performed for the Captain—A Viſit to an old Widow Lady—An Entertainment in compliment of the Captain—A Diſturbance—A Wreſtling Match, by Women—A Theft—The Culprit taken and puniſhed—Various Occurrences—They unmoor—Leave Otaheite—In view of the Iſland Huaheine—Viſited by Canoes—Remarks—Anchor in Annamooka—Remove to another Situation—Viſits—Thefts—They get under Sail—Between the Iſlands of Tofoa and Kotoo.

ON the 3d of February the captain was preſent at another wreſtling match; when a young man put his arm out of joint at the elbow, by an unfortunate fall. The captain immediately ſent for Surgeon Ledward; but, before he arrived, three ſtout men took hold of the youth, and two of them fixing their feet againſt his ribs, his arm was immediately replaced. When Mr. Ledward came, he expreſſed much ſurpriſe at their conſiderable ſkill in ſurgery, as they ſhewed by a number of ſticks which they placed round a man's arm, and bound with a cord, what they would have done if the bone had been broken. The young man's arm was quite recovered, there being only a ſmall ſwelling of the muſcles, which proceeded from the ſtrain.

A little before ſun-ſet the inhabitants met at the part of the beach neareſt the veſſel, where they amuſed themſelves with dancing, exerciſing the lance, and other entertainments, till it was dark. This kind of merriment was quite common, every fine evening, and afforded no ſmall diverſion to the ſhip's company, who were conſtant ſpectators thereof.

The wind having now blown freſh in the night, they diſcovered on the 6th, at day-light, that the cable by which the ſhip rode was cut in ſuch a manner near the water's edge, that only one ſtrand remained whole. This gave the captain much concern, as the veſſel was not only thereby endangered, but it might likewiſe occaſion a coolneſs between the Engliſh and natives, who had been hitherto on ſuch good terms. Tinah came on board while they were ſecuring the veſſel, and though the captain had no reaſon to ſuſpect his fidelity, yet he thought it proper to inſiſt upon a diſcovery, and that the offender ſhould be immediately brought to him. The captain's anger on this occaſion created unniverſal alarm, and Teppahoo and his family, with Tinah's father and mother, were ſo diſmayed, that, notwithſtanding there was violent rain, they immediately left Oparre, and retired to the mountains. However, Tinah and his wife remained, declaring their innocence, and upbraiding the captain for his unjuſt anger with them. Tinah promiſed to uſe his utmoſt endeavours in bringing the culprit to juſtice, but then he was apprehenſive, as he, (and indeed the captain himſelf) ſuſpected that it was one or more of the ſtrangers who had come from other parts of the iſland, that if the offender was of the iſlands Eimeo, Tierraboo, or Attahooroo, he could not get him delivered up. The captain likewiſe imagined that this outrage might have been committed by ſome of the jealous ſtrangers, more out of enmity to the people of Matavai and Oparre, than to him, in order perhaps to diminiſh that confidence and regard which were ſo long maintained on both ſides, particularly too, as the captain had declared he would revenge any injury that was offered to them during his abſence. However, the captain ſtill retained his anger, in order to ſtimulate Tinah to a diſcovery. Afterwards indeed, the captain had very good reaſon to ſuſpect that ſome of his own people were the offenders.

A ſtage was now erected, by order of the captain, on the forecaſtle, that the centinel might have a better view of the cables; the watch was likewiſe encreaſed.

Oreepyah returned in the afternoon from Tethuroa. He and Moannah were very near being loſt in the bad weather; Moannah took ſhelter at Eimeo. Several of the canoes at this time were overſet.

On the 8th, Tinah and Iddeah, after being abſent the whole preceding day, viſited the captain, who aſſured him, that notwithſtanding they had made a moſt diligent ſeatch, they were not able as yet to diſcover the offender; the captain not being ſatisfied, expreſſed great coolneſs, which hurt the feelings of Iddeah ſo much, that ſhe burſt into a flood of tears; upon this, the captain, melted with pity, reſumed his former good humour, but ſtrongly recommended to them, if ever they wiſhed to ſee King George, or had any regard for him, to renew their ſearch, and diſcover, if poſſible, the offender; this being promiſed, a reconciliation took place, of which word was ſent to Otow and Teppahoo, whoſe return was now importuned.

In the afternoon the captain received an invitation from the Earee of Tiarrabou, the S. E. diviſion of Otaheite, which, however, he declined, but ſent him a handſome preſent by the meſſenger. This preſent indeed was ſent at the inſtigation of Tinah, and it was obſerved, by Captain Bligh, with pleaſure, that Tinah had given away the major part of the things he had given him, ſome he had beſtowed through political views, and others out of friendſhip.

There being a grand heiva to be performed at Tettaha, where the preſence of Teppahoo and his family were, conſequently they took their leave of the captain on the tenth, and the next day ſome of the performers, ſtopping on their way, ſent the captain a polite meſſage, that if he pleaſed, they would ſtay a while and perform a ſhort heiva for his entertainment. Captain Bligh having acquieſced, this heiva commenced with a dance by two young girls, while the drums and flutes were playing. After this they ſuddenly dropped all their dreſs, which was intended as a preſent for the captain, and made an abrupt departure. The men now began to dance, while the natives appeared more delighted than uſual with this entertainment, it being in fact more indecent than the reſt.

The captain now accompanied Tinah and his wife on a viſit to an old widow lady, whoſe name was Wanow-oora. There was great ceremony uſed upon their meeting: having juſt landed ſhe was ſitting on the beach by the head of her canoe. There was a prieſt and three men with Tinah, who had for an offering a young dog, a fowl, and two young plantain boughs. The old lady addreſſed herſelf in ſome ſhort ſentences to Tinah, and his party, who were ſeated at a reſpectful diſtance, upon which they exchanged their offerings, her's being exactly the ſame of his. This curious ceremony being over, Tinah, no longer reſtrained, ran and embraced her in a moſt affectionate manner: ſhe was conducted to a ſhed, where they ſtaid for ſome time, Tinah having delivered orders that ſhe and her attendants ſhould be ſupplied with every thing they wanted. When the captain was preparing for his departure, he invited Wanow-oora on board, but ſhe declined his invitation on account of her age and weakneſs.

On the 13th a grand heiva was prepared, in compliment to the captain, by Tinah, and ſeveral ſtrangers were arrived from all parts to be preſent at it. The captain went on ſhore, and a great multitude of people had already collected together, to behold the ſight.

Tinah and ſeveral other chiefs came to meet the captain, while a ring was made at a little diſtance from their poſt. As ſoon as they were ſeated, the heiva began by a dance of women, and the ſeveral other ceremonies which are cuſtomary on this occaſion: after this, the men proceeded to wreſtle, and there being no longer any order, the captain was entreated by Otow to put a ſtop to the entertainment, as he ſuſpected that ſome ſtrangers, who were preſent, deſigned to do them harm. The tumult and confuſion became general, every one took to his arms, and the captain finding that his own power was inſufficient to quell the riot, repaired to his poſt, and ordered all his men under arms. Tinah and Iddeah were exceedingly concerned about the captain for fear he ſhould meet with ſome harm. Iddeah came to ſee him ſafe at his poſt, but declined ſtaying under his protection; ſhe promiſed, however, to return as ſoon as peace was reſtored; ſhe had a double covering of cloth round her waiſt, which was girded with a large rope.

Two guns were fired from the veſſel without any ſhot, by order of the captain. This had the deſired effect, and the tumult in a ſhort time ceaſed. Tinah and Iddeah now returned to the captain to let him know that all was quiet: theſe, and ſeveral of the chiefs went on board with the captain, and dined with him.

The captain went on ſhore again with Tinah and his friends. Tinah had ordered three large hogs to be dreſſed, and a quantity of bread-fruit provided before he went on board with the captain; theſe he now requeſted might be preſented to the different parties, who had come to ſee the entertainment. Agreeable to Tinah's inſtructions, the captain preſented one part thereof to the chief people of Attahooro, another to the Arreoys, and another to the performers of the heiva. They were received by the different parties with great thankfulneſs.

The hoſpitality of Tinah was always remarkable, he never let an opportunity ſlip of diſplaying his liberality when any of the principal people came either to viſit him or ſee the veſſel. He was more ready in giving than receiving preſents, nor was there the leaſt appearance of oſtentation in his good nature; in ſhort this amiable diſpoſition made amends for his failings.

On the 16th the captain was invited to a wreſtling match by women. Their mode of challenging, and method of attack, were juſt the ſame as practiſed by the men; the only difference was, that the women appeared rather more violent. Though there was no inſtance at preſent, nor during the captain's ſtay at Otaheite, yet it was alledged that the women ſometimes would wreſtle with the men, and Iddeah was reported to be very famous in this exerciſe.

On the 17th the captain took a walk with Tinah to ſee his country reſidence, which lay towards the hills. The houſe was exceedingly neat, in a pleaſant ſituation, ſurrounded by plantations.

On the 18th, the captain went to Matavai to look after the Indian corn, which he expected to be now full ripe for gathering. However on his arrival, he found ſound that the whole was taken away by ſome of the natives.

Nothing material occurred till the 23d, when the captain received a preſent of a very fine taro pudding from Iddeah for their dinner to day. Tinah alſo brought a bunch of bananas, that weighed 81 lb. on which were about 286 fine fruit. Some were loſt in the carriage.

On the 25th Iddeah's youngeſt child was taken ill, which gave her great uneaſineſs. The captain offered to ſend his ſurgeon to look at him, but ſhe declined his aſſiſtance, as ſhe expected a man from Tettaha to come and inform her what to do.

On the 2d of March, the inhabitants who had lived near the tents, had now quitted their houſes, and retired towards the mountains. The captain, when he landed, was informed that a water caſk, bedding, and part of an azimuth compaſs, were ſtolen in the night from the poſt on ſhore. A complaint was immediately ſent to Tinah, who in conſequence thereof was afraid to viſit the captain. A general alarm took place among the natives. Some ſhort time after, the captain having returned from the veſſel, where he breakfaſted, he perceived Tinah, Oreepyah, and a number of people, at a diſtant houſe, whence they all marched, proceeding to the eaſtward. At this time Oedidee was with Captain Bligh, who ſaid that they had juſt gained information of the thief, and were now gone in purſuit of him. In about an hour after word was brought that the criminal was ſeized. The whole party ſoon after appeared, with the articles which had been ſtolen, except the bedding; while Tinah had hold of the thief, whom he deliverd up to the captain. The captain, after thanking Tinah and his party for the trouble they had taken, expatiated on the injuſtice of ſtealing from thoſe who were ſo particular in dealing fair with them; for the captain aſſured them, that if any of his people offered them the leaſt offence, they ſhould be immediately puniſhed. Tinah embraced the captain after his ſpeech, and went immediately in ſearch for the bedding, while Captain Bligh, thinking it prudent to make an example of the offender, who belonged to a diſtant iſland, ordered him a ſevere flogging.

They were now making preparations for ſailing, and were ſupplied with a quantity of wood, by order of Tinah, who had directed trees to be brought down from the country on purpoſe. Tinah, apprehenſive of being attacked after the veſſel ſailed, requeſted the captain to leave him ſome fire-arms and ammunition, which were accordingly promiſed: they preferred piſtols to muſkets, and as the captain ſaid he would leave them a pair, Tinah remarked that Iddeah could fight with one, and Oedidee with the other. Oedidee was an excellent markſman, and Iddeah a bold reſolute woman, who was already capable of loading and firing a muſket as well as the moſt experienced fowler.

On the 6th the maſter, Mr. Fryer, was ſent to ſound Taowne harbour. The news of the captain's intended departure having been ſpread, ſeveral natives came from all parts of the iſlands, to have ſome iron tools repaired at the forge. Several pieces of Spaniſh iron were likewiſe ſent by Waheatua, the Earee of Tearraboo, in order to be made into ſmall adzes, which was accordingly done.

They had now a long continuance of weſterly winds, with a great deal of rain. On the 13th ſeveral canoes arrived from Tethuroa, with a large tribe of the Arreoys, and the wife of Oreepyah, who is an Arreoy woman, named Huheine Moyere. She ſtayed at Tethuroa after Oreepyah departed from that place.

On the arrival of Huheine Moyere, a ceremony called Hooepippee was performed, which chiefly conſiſted of viſiting ſeveral friends in a public manner. A preſent was made by Iddeah to the Arreoy woman; and Tinah being abſent, Iddeah received a preſent, which was made up by all the principal people for young Otoo, the Earee Rahie. It was carried by 24 men on their ſhoulders, in baſkets decorated with ſlips of cloth, which they had on each end of a pole.

On the 14th the captain was viſited by an old man upwards of 70 years of age, who was held in great reſpect by all the natives. His nephew, Tupia, departed from theſe iſlands in 1769, in the Endeavour, and died at Batavia. He requeſted the captain, if ever he came again to Otaheite, to bring him a lock of his hair.

Teppahoo, the Earee of Tettaha, now publiſhed a prohibition againſt killing or ſelling hogs, there being very few in that diſtrict, ſo that it was deemed neceſſary they ſhould have time to breed. As the captain was promiſed to be ſtill ſupplied by his friends at Matavai and Oparre, notwithſtanding the great conſumption he had already occaſioned, he did not think it prudent to ſolicit the favour at Tettaha, when contrary to the will of the Earee. The ſame prohibition was to take place at Matavai and Oparre, when the captain was gone; but, in compliment to him, it was generouſly poſtponed.

On the 19th, in the evening, the captain's clerk, Mr. Samuel, who had been two days abſent on an excurſion to the mountains, returned, and reported the tops of the high mountains were barren, but the reſt were well covered with wood. He met with nothing remarkable.

On the 27th two parais, (or mourning dreſſes) which were long in preparation, were exhibited in Tinah's houſe. This was intended as a preſent to King George, and a long prayer in behalf of mutual friendſhip was made uſe of on the occaſion. Tinah could not refrain from tears, when delivering it to the captain to take on board: indeed all the natives ſeemed affected with his departure.

The plants were now removed to the veſſel: the roots had made their appearance through the bottom of the pots, and would doubtleſs have made their way into the ground, had it not been timely prevented. They were all in very good order, being in 774 pots, 39 tubs, and 24 boxes. The number of bread-fruit plants alone were 1015.

The weather became very fine, and there appeared a ſettled trade-wind. Hitherto they were conſtantly viſited by ſeveral ſtrangers, who came to take their leave. Some petty thefts were committed, chiefly owing to the negligence of the watch. Capt. Bligh now made his laſt preſents to Teppahoo and other friends, ſeveral of whom, particularly Oedidee, earneſtly requeſted to accompany him to England.

As the captain intended to ſail early on the 4th of April, Tinah, Iddeah, and all their relations, came the preceding day and dined with him. The veſſel was exceedingly crouded with natives, who brought great quantities of plantains, cocoa-nuts, bread-fruit, hogs, goats, &c. This evening there was no entertainment, as before. Tinah, and his party, remained on board all night.

Early on the 4th they unmoored: the ſtock of the beſt bower anchor broken in ſtowing the anchor, it having been eaten very much by worms. Having weighed, they were obliged to tow the ſhip out of harbour with their boats and two ſweeps, there being no wind. As this harbour was very narrow, only a few of the natives were permitted to ſtay on board: ſeveral, however, attended in their canoes, till the wind became ſtrong, when they were obliged to take their leave. They ſtood off and on for the remainder of the day. The captain gave Tinah two muſkets, a pair of piſtols, and a good ſtock of ammunition: theſe, and the other preſents, were, by the captain's orders, put into one of the ſhip's boats; upon which they took an affectionate leave of each other.

Having got ſight of the Iſland Huaheine on the 5th, they brought-to near the entrance of Owharre Harbour, where they had a full view of the harbour. The natives imagined the veſſel was coming into the harbour, but the captain did not chooſe to anchor: it was thereſore ſome time before they were viſited by any. At laſt three men approached them in a canoe, who brought with them ſome cocoa-nuts: one of theſe diverted the captain exceedingly, by pretending, with great ſolemnity, that he was the Earee Rahie. The captain gave him ſome nails. Afterwards they were viſited by a double canoe, which had ten men, one of whom, being a youth, recollected the captain, and called him by his name. A number of canoes ſucceeded, of whom various articles were purchaſed.

While they were making ſail, they perceived an Indian ſwimming towards the ſhore, which would have been a miracle if he had reached. They took him up and put him in a canoe which was very fortunately along-ſide. The captain underſtood that this man was inſane, but could not learn by what means he came ſo far from land.

On the 6th they ſteered more to the weſtward, in hopes of reaching the Friendly Iſlands.

On the 9th they had very ſqually weather, and thick black clouds in the E. They ſaw a water-ſpout at a ſhort diſtance, which derived no ſmall advantage from the darkneſs of the clouds.

On the 11th they ſaw land to the S. S. W. about five leagues diſtant: it ſeemed an iſland of ſome height. They now ſtood to the N. W. In the evening they tacked to the ſouthward, and perceived about nine keys, which were covered with trees. All this day they endeavoured to get near land, but could not, the wind being light and unfavourable. They had a heavy ſquall at night, which compelled them to clew up all their ſails. A calm ſucceeded this.

They had variable winds with intervening calms on the 12th. About the afternoon they were within three miles of the ſouthernmoſt key, where they were able to diſcern ſome inhabitants: they were ſoon viſited by a canoe with four men, who did not betray any ſurpriſe on their meeting. The captain gave them ſome beads, and they came into the veſſel: the leader, who was a man of greater conſequence than any of the reſt, and an Earee, examined the veſſel with ſome curioſity, none of them however would venture into the cabin. Seeing one of the ſeamen with ſome broiled freſh pork in a bowl, they all partook thereof, with ſome boiled plantains. When the leader underſtood the captain was the chief of the veſſel, he approached him and joined noſes. After this he preſented to him a large mother of pearl ſhell which hung round his neck: he was highly delighted at ſeeing the captain faſten it round his in the ſame manner.

The language was almoſt the ſame as at Otaheite. The name of the large iſland was Wytootackee, and the Earee was called Lomakkayah. They ſaid that there were no hogs, dogs, or goats upon the iſland, nor had they yams or taro; but that plantains, cocoa-nuts, fowls, bread-fruit, and avees were there in great abundance. Notwithſtanding they ſaid that no hogs were on the iſland, it was evident they had ſeen ſuch animals; for they called them by the ſame name as is given to them at Otaheite, which made the captain ſuſpect that they were deceiving him. However, he ordered a young boar and ſow to be put into their canoe, with ſome yams and taro, which articles being plenty, they could well ſpare. He alſo gave each of them a ſmall adze, a knife, ſome beads, nails, a looking-glaſs, &c. The latter they examined with great curioſity; but with the iron work they appeared to be well acquainted.

When preparing for their departure, the chief of the canoe took poſſeſſion of every thing the captain had given to the others. One of them ſhewed ſome ſigns of diſſatisfaction; but, after a little altercation, they joined noſes, and were reconciled. It was thought they were all going to leave the ſhip; but only two of them went into the canoe, the other two purpoſing to ſtay on board all night, and to have the canoe return for them in the morning. However it being explained to them that the ſhip might be driven from the iſland in the night, they reluctantly conſented to leave them. They were very ſolicitous that ſomebody from the ſhip ſhould go on ſhore with them; and juſt before they went, they gave the captain a wooden ſpear, which was a common long ſtaff, pointed with the *toa* wood, and the only thing, except the paddles, that they had with them.

Theſe people were tattowed acroſs the arms and legs, but not on the loins or poſteriors, like the people of Otaheite. From their knowledge of iron, they have doubtleſs communication with Hervey's Iſlands, which are not more than eighteen leagues diſtant from them. They ſeemed very friendly and inoffenſive.

They proceeded to the weſtward with a breeze from the S. and on the 18th ſaw Savage Iſland. Alſo, on the 21ſt the Iſland Caow, bearing from the maſt-head N. W. by W. 3-4ths W. At noon it was about 19 leagues diſtant. This iſland, which is high, has a ſharp-pointed top, and is the north-weſternmoſt of the Friendly Iſlands.

They were not able to reach Annamooka till the 23d, where they anchored in 23 fathoms. They were ſoon viſited by ſeveral canoes, who brought yams and cocoa-nuts, but none of the natives would come on board without firſt aſking the captain's permiſſion. They were alſo viſited by a canoe from the Iſland Mango, wherein was a chief, called Latoomy-lange, who dined with the captain.

This ſtation not being convenient for watering, they moved more to the eaſtward on the 29th, and anchored in 21 fathoms. They were about half a league diſtant from ſhore.

They were now viſited by ſeveral large ſailing-canoes, which arrived from different iſlands in the neighbourhood of Annamooka; in theſe were two chiefs, whoſe names were Kunacappo and Noocaboo: there was an old lame man with them, called Tepa, whom the captain had been acquainted with in 1777, and with whom the captain was capable of converſing. From his information Captain Bligh underſtood that ſome of his old friends were at Tongataboo, and that all the cattle he had left there were ſtill alive, and had bred. Tepa and the chiefs now examined the veſſel, and expreſſed much ſurpriſe at ſeeing the bread-fruit and other plants. The captain made them each a preſent, and afterwards invited them to go on ſhore with him in his boat, which they readily complied with, and the captain took with him Nelſon, in order to make his obſervation, and procure, if poſſible, ſome more bread-fruit plants.

As ſoon as they were landed, they were ſurrounded by two hundred people on the beach, the greater part of whom were women and children. Tepa ſuppoſing the captain would have a party on ſhore, as he had when he was there before, gave him the uſe of a large boat-houſe. During this excurſion, the captain was very happy to find that the plants and ſeeds, which had been formerly ſown here, were not thrown away. On the captain's return to the landing-place, an humble preſent of cocoa-nuts was brought him, with which he appeared perfectly ſatisfied, and gave the women and children beads and trinkets.

The captain invited the chiefs to dinner, and on his return to the veſſel, he was happy to find that a briſk trade had been carried on. Several plantains and ſome bread-fruit were brought on board, but no hogs. Afterwards they purchaſed hogs, with dogs, fowls, ſhaddocks, &c. of other canoes, which contained about a hundred people. They had very fine large yams in great abundance, ſome of which weighed about forty-five pounds. In the afternoon they were viſited by two of the name of Tubow, a family of great rank in the Friendly Iſlands, one of whom was a chief of the iſland Lefooga.

fooga. The captain took a walk on ſhore with this chief and Tepa, in order to explore a wooding-place. They found a number of very good trees; and the captain having obtained Tepa's permiſſion to ſend his people to cut wood, took his leave and returned to the veſſel.

The natives here were disfigured by numerous marks of mourning, ſuch as bloody temples, the loſs of hair, and likewiſe the loſs of fingers, which was common to ſeveral. Some men wanted the middle finger of their right hand, and a number of boys about ſix years old had loſt both their little fingers.

On the 25th parties were diſpatched on ſhore, to get wood and water. They had ſcarce been an hour employed, when one of them loſt an axe, another an adze. This was made known to Tepa, who immediately enquired into the buſineſs: however, they could only recover the axe.

On the 26th Nelſon went on ſhore to get ſome plants, but he was inſulted by the natives, who took his ſpade from him. Tepa recovered this. A boat's grapnel was alſo ſtolen from the watering party: in ſhort, the natives were ſo numerous, that the captain's people could do nothing, except they had a principal chief among them, who could keep the inhabitants in awe. The captain, therefore, ordered all his men on board, and prepared to ſail. At noon they unmoored, and were under ſail at one o'clock. At this time all the chiefs were on board, and the captain informed them that unleſs the grapnel was reſtored, he was determined to detain them in the veſſel: at this they were greatly ſurpriſed and alarmed. Canoes were diſpatched in order to recover it; but as the thief was gone off to another iſland, there was no poſſibility of getting it till the next day. The captain, however, detained the chiefs till ſun-ſet, when they began to be ſo very uneaſy, that they cried bitterly, and beat their faces in a terrible manner. Capt. Bligh ſeeing their diſtreſs, and being now aſſured that they were innocent of the theft, gave them not only their liberty, but ſeveral preſents of no ſmall value to them. Their joy was now as great as their ſorrow had been before, and they departed in their canoes with no little ſatisfaction, having taken leave of Capt. Bligh in a moſt cordial and affectionate manner.

They had now light and variable winds, with which they ſtood to the northward all night.

On the 27th they were between the iſlands of Toſoa and Kotoo.

Hitherto they had a proſperous and pleaſant voyage, and the captain was ſolacing himſelf with the pleaſing hopes of having completed an undertaking adequate to the wiſhes of all the proprietors. But an unexpected change enſued, which totally deſtroyed thoſe wiſhes, and expoſed Capt. Bligh to imminent danger.—This we have reſerved for our ſecond book.

BOOK II.

CHAPTER I.

Treachery and Villainy of ſome of the Captain's People, who mutiny—The cruel Manner in which they treat him—The Reſolution and Attention of the Clerk—Capt. Bligh, and eighteen of his People, ſent adrift in the Boat—Make for the Iſland Toſoa—Their Intentions—Supplies procured with great Difficulty—Treachery of the Natives—Captain's Suſpicions—An Attack meditated—Their Eſcape—They proceed to New Holland—Agree to live upon a ſmall Allowance till their Arrival.

NOTWITHSTANDING they kept near the iſland Kotoo, with expectations of being viſited by ſome of the natives, yet to their very great ſurpriſe no canoes came off to the veſſel. They now ſteered to the weſtward, intending to keep this courſe all night, in order to paſs to the S. of Toſoa, the wind being then northerly.

On the 28th of April, early in the morning, before day-light, Chriſtian, who had the morning watch, with the maſter at arms, gunner's mate, and Tho. Beckett, a ſeaman, came into the captain's cabin, while he was yet aſleep, and having ſeized him, ſecured him with cords, and threatened to deſtroy him if he made the leaſt noiſe. Beſides theſe four who thus attacked the captain, there were three others at his cabin door. Chriſtian was armed with a cutlaſs; the reſt had muſkets and bayonets. The captain, upon enquiring the motives for proceeding thus, was inſulted and abuſed, and his hands being tied in a very cruel manner, he was forced on deck in his ſhirt. In the interim, the other party of mutineers had ſecured the maſter, maſter's mate, gunner, ſurgeon, Meſſ. Elphinſtone and Nelſon, were kept in confinement below, and the fore hatchway was ſecured by centinels. They now ordered the carpenter, boatſwain, and Mr. Samuel, (the captain's clerk) on deck. The boatſwain was commanded by Chriſtian, who was at the head of theſe rebels, to hoiſt the launch out, and threatened to be inſtantly deſtroyed if he did not immediately obey. This being done, Mr. Samuel and two midſhipmen, Meſſ. Hayward and Hallet, were ordered into the launch.

The maſter, one of thoſe confined below, now requeſted permiſſion to come on deck: though he obtained leave, yet he was ordered back again to his cabin in a very ſhort time.

The captain endeavoured, by the moſt gentle means, to diſſuade theſe infatuated men from thoſe baſe acts of violence: but all his ſolicitations were ineffectual. Chriſtian, having changed his cutlaſs for a bayonet, took a ſtrong hold of the cord which tied the captain's hands, and threatened moſt violently to kill him on the ſpot, if he did not be quiet. The reſt of the villains who guarded the captain had their pieces cocked and bayonets fixed. Several were now hurried into the boat, while the boatſwain and ſome of the ſeamen who were to join them were permitted to ſtay on board awhile, in order to collect lines, canvas, twine, ſails, &c. Theſe men got a 28 gallon caſk of water, about 150 lb. of bread, a little wine and rum, a quadrant and compaſs. The captain's map, ephemeris, book of obſervations, ſextant, time-keeper, with all his drawings, ſurveys, &c. they would not let out of the ſhip. Mr. Samuel exerted his utmoſt to get them, but in vain; happily, however, he had ſecured the captain's journals, commiſſion, and ſome material ſhip papers, which he did with ſurpriſing reſolution, though ſtrictly watched and guarded. The carpenter, after much diſputation, was permitted to take his tool cheſt. Chriſtian was for a long time determining within himſelf, whether he ſhould detain the carpenter or his mates: however, upon giving the preference to the latter, the carpenter was ordered to join the reſt in the boat.

During the whole buſineſs, there was a great altercation among the mutineers. After they had forced thoſe of the ſeamen into the boat whom they did not chooſe to keep, Chriſtian ordered a dram to be ſerved to every one of his own people. After this the officers were called upon deck, and forced over the ſide into the boat, while the captain was kept apart from every one abaft the mizen-maſt, ſtill held by Chriſtian, who was armed with a bayonet: the guard round him had uncocked their pieces, on the captain's daring them to fire.

The captain was exceedingly thirſty, and one of the guard, Iſaac Merlin, who was inclined to ſerve him, fed him with ſhaddock. This man's partiality being obſerved, he was immediately removed from the captain. Afterwards he attempted to leave the veſſel, and get into the boat; he was, however, by compulſion, obliged to join the mutineers: likewiſe Joſeph Coleman, the armourer, and M'Intoſh and Norman, two carpenters, were detained againſt their will. This they declared to the captain, upon their ſeparation. One Michael Byrne, alſo, wanted to get into the boat.

Neither perſuaſions nor remonſtrances had any effect. The captain was not only thus abuſed, but they made a laughing-ſtock of his helpleſs ſituation. He aſked for arms, but they told him he was ſo well acquainted with the people to whom he was going, that he could not want for any. Chriſtian, being informed by the maſter at arms that the officers and men were in the boat, informed Captain Bligh that he muſt go with him, declaring that if he ſhewed the leaſt reluctance, he ſhould be put to death. Accordingly, he was forced by a tribe of armed ruffians over the ſide, where they untied his hands. Upon this the boat was veered aſtern by a rope. The mutineers threw them ſome pieces of pork, clothes, &c. likewiſe four cutlaſſes, notwithſtanding their previous denial of arms. Thus, after being inſulted and ridiculed, the captain and eighteen of his people were caſt adrift in the wide ocean, while Chriſtian and 24 others, the moſt able men of the ſhip's company, kept poſſeſſion of the veſſel, and ſteered in ſight of the boat to the W. N. W. This the captain believed to be done in diſguiſe, for after they were all put into the boat he heard ſome of the mutineers cry "huzza for Otaheite."

Notwithſtanding the villainy and ingratitude of Chriſtian, yet the recollection of the many kindneſſes which the captain had ſhewn him produced ſome ſigns of remorſe. When the captain remonſtrated with him, and reminded him of the many inſtances of friendſhip which he had received from him, he appeared greatly diſturbed, ſtopped him from proceeding, and frequently exclaimed that he was in hell!

After ſome little reflection, the captain endeavoured to recover his ſpirits, from a conſideration that one day or other he ſhould be able to account to his king and country for the preſent unexpected misfortune. Having very little wind, they rowed pretty faſt towards Tofoa, bearing N. E. about 10 leagues diſtant.

It is wonderful how ſecretly the mutineers had planned their intentions. About thirteen of thoſe who were with the captain in the boat had lived forward among the ſeamen, and never obſerved the ſmalleſt circumſtance that could lead to any ſuſpicion; even the captain himſelf was on the moſt friendly terms with Chriſtian. On the very day he put his villainy into execution, he was engaged to dine with the captain: he was likewiſe invited the preceding night to ſup with him, but evaded the invitation by pretending he was very ill, which being believed, for his honour and integrity were never ſuſpected, gave the captain much uneaſineſs.

The captain's motive for going to Tofoa was to get a ſupply of bread-fruit and water, and afterwards to proceed to Tongataboo, and ſolicit the King Poulaho for leave to equip a boat, and furniſh themſelves with a neceſſary ſtock of proviſions, in order to enable them to make for the Eaſt-Indies: what they had at preſent in the boat was very inſufficient for their ſubſiſtenee, there being only 150lb. of bread, 16 pieces of pork, each piece weighing upon an average two pounds, ſix quarts of rum, ſix bottles of wine, 28 gallons of water, and four empty barricoes.

There being a moderate eaſterly breeze, they were able to ſail, but did not reach Tofoa till it was dark. After ſome fruitleſs efforts, they were obliged to give up all thoughts of landing, the ſhore being exceedingly ſteep and rocky, and there being no anchorage, they were forced to keep the boat under the lee with two oars. Thus determined for the night, they took their repoſe as well as their unfortunate circumſtances would permit, each man having been allowed half a pint of grog for the ſupport of his ſpirits.

On the 29th, as ſoon as day appeared, they proceeded along ſhore, to find, if poſſible, a landing-place. They diſcovered a cove with a ſtony beach at the N. W. part of the iſland, after ſome hour's toil: here, within twenty yards of the rocks, they dropped the grapnel. A great ſurf ran on the ſhore: however, as their unhappy ſituation could not admit of much delay, they were reſolved on being expeditious, let the attempt be ever ſo hazardous. Accordingly, Mr. Samuel, and ſome others, were landed, who climbed the cliffs, and by theſe means got into the country, where they began to look about for ſupplies. The reſt, who were in the boat, ſtill kept their ſituation, there being no other way as yet diſcovered into the country. Mr. Samuel and his party returned about noon: they had met no natives, but there were ſigns that the place was inhabited. They likewiſe deſpaired of getting a ſufficient ſupply of water, there being no ſpring; however they brought with them a little, which they had found in holes. Seeing that there was no certainty of obtaining a ſpeedy ſupply, the captain deemed it expedient to be very ſparing of what there was: their allowance, therefore, for this day's dinner, was, a ſmall bit of bread, and a glaſs of wine. Notwithſtanding this calamitous condition, the people kept up their ſpirits, and behaved with uncommon reſolution, which afforded no ſmall conſolation to the captain.

Though the weather was very fair, yet as there was a ſmart breeze from the E. S. E. they could not venture to ſea. The captain being determined to keep their firſt ſtock entire as long as poſſible, was likewiſe reſolved to take advantage of this detention, and make further endeavours to get ſome relief from this iſland: accordingly, they weighed and rowed along ſhore. After a long look-out, they diſcovered at laſt ſome cocoa-nut trees, which were on the top of high precipices; and, notwithſtanding it was very dangerous landing, on account of the ſurf, yet their neceſſities enabled them to encounter theſe difficulties, and having climbed the cliffs, ſome of them got about 20 cocoa-nuts, while others flung them to ropes, by which they were hauled into the boat through the ſurf. They returned to their former ſituation, as they could find none more commodious than this cove. They now partook of a cocoa-nut each for their ſupper, and went to reſt.

On the 30th both wind and weather were ſo bad, that having made a fruitleſs attempt to ſail, they were obliged to return and remain in the cove. They were now determined to get into the country, by climbing the cliffs, as Mr. Samuel and his party had done before; previous to which each perſon was allowed a ſpoonful of rum, and a bit of bread. The natives, for the purpoſe of aſcending theſe precipices, had thereto fixed long vines, by means of which the captain, Meſſ. Samuel, Nelſon, &c. &c. landed. They found ſome deſerted huts, and a ſmall plantain walk, but in ſuch an uncultivated ſtate, that three ſmall bunches of plantains could only be collected from it. In advancing further, they reached a deep gully, that led towards a mountain, near a volcano. In hopes of finding ſome water here, they made diligent ſearch; but could only procure about nine gallons from the place. After proceeding further on without any ſucceſs, this country being exceedingly barren and dreary, they returned much fatigued to the boat. The captain was ſo faint, that had it not been for the aſſiſtance of his people, he would never have been able to have deſcended the precipice. Being now all aſſembled about noon, each man partook of an ounce of pork, two plantains, and half a glaſs of wine. Thoſe who remained in the boat during the captain's excurſion, had been employed in looking for fiſh, but without any ſucceſs.

It being determined that another party ſhould take a different route in the afternoon, in hopes of meeting with ſome natives who might aſſiſt them, they accordingly ſet out, but returned in the evening, as unſucceſsful as thoſe who had gone before, and equally fatigued.

There was a cave about 150 yards from the water-ſide, at the head of the cove: the diſtance acroſs the ſtony beach was about an hundred yards. As there was no danger of being ſurpriſed in this ſituation, the captain was determined to remain on ſhore this night with a part of his people, that the reſt might have more room in the boat, and conſequently enjoy a more comfortable night's repoſe. The maſter, in the boat, was directed to lie at a grapnel, and be very vigilant in caſe of any attack. After ſome other neceſſary directions, the captain and his party repaired to the cave; and having kindled a good fire, which they kept up all night, they boiled a few plantains, and after a ſcanty ſupper upon one plantain and a pint of grog each, they fixed the watches, and ſettled themſelves for the night.

Early the next day (May 1ſt) they took a different road again, in hopes of making ſome diſcovery: during this journey they ſuffered greatly for want of water: however, they met with four natives, two men, a woman, and a child. The captain uſed every means of procuring the friendſhip of theſe two men, who accompanied him and his people to the cave, having brought with them two cocoa-nut ſhells of water. After this they went, by the captain's deſire, for more water; alſo ſome bread-fruit, plantains, &c. They were viſited ſhortly after this by other natives, and about noon there were no leſs than thirty aſſembled, from whom they obtained ſome ſmall relief. The captain, being ſtill determined not to uſe any of the bread or water in the boat, iſſued about one ounce of pork, and a quarter of a bread-fruit, with half a pint of water to each man for dinner.

The natives whom they had ſeen, were very kind and honeſt. They ſold the proviſions which they brought, for a few buttons and beads: there was no particular chief among them. It having been planned among the captain and his people, that they ſhould conceal the unfortunate circumſtance of the mutiny, for fear of creating evil deſigns among the natives; accordingly when theſe people enquired about the veſſel, they pretended that ſhe had overſet and ſunk, and that the reſt of the crew had periſhed. The natives believed this ſtory, though they neither expreſſed joy or ſorrow on the occaſion, only ſome little ſurpriſe. It was the captain's intention to ſtay here as long as there could be any thing got, and then put to ſea as ſoon as ever the wind and weather were favourable. Several of the natives were coming and going the whole afternoon; they brought a very ſmall quantity of water, but a ſufficiency of cocoa-nuts, plantains, and bread-fruit for another day. They enquired very much after nails, but as this article was too valuable at preſent to be parted with, the captain pretended that they had none. Some cocoa-nuts and bread-fruit were likewiſe purchaſed of a canoe which came in with four men.

The natives having evidently very little to ſpare, by the ſmall quantities they brought, the captain no longer flattered himſelf with hopes of procuring a ſufficiency here to ſtock them for their voyage: notwithſtanding, he was very happy to find that their ſtock of proviſions was ſomewhat encreaſed. At ſunſet the natives left them in quiet poſſeſſion of the cove, which led them to expect another viſit the next day, and a further ſupply of water and food, with which they were determined to ſail as ſoon as poſſible.

At night they kindled a fire as before, and fixed the watch, then, after their ſcanty allowance, went to repoſe.

The captain's people now became more chearful than before, and being unanimouſly determined to exert their utmoſt, in hopes of ſurmounting their preſent difficulties, they bore all their diſtreſſes with remarkable fortitude and reſignation.

On the 2d, early in the morning, the captain diſpatched a party of his people with empty ſhells, to ſee if they could poſſibly get ſome water among the gullies in the mountains. During their abſence the captain was viſited by a greater number of natives than he had ſeen the preceding day, two canoes likewiſe came in from round the N. ſide of the iſland: in one of which was an old chief, whoſe name was Macca-ackavow. Another good-looking chief, called Eefow, accompanied the party home, who had been in ſearch of water. Theſe chiefs had a knowledge of the captain, having known that he was with Captain Cook, and likewiſe heard of his being at Annamooka: the captain made each of theſe chiefs a preſent. There was likewiſe a youth (whoſe name was Negeete) who recollected Captain Bligh immediately, having ſeen him at Annamooka. This young man expreſſed much happineſs at their meeting. Eefow promiſed to accompany the captain to Tongataboo, as ſoon as the weather was fine, to ſee Poulaho and Teenow, who were there.

Notwithſtanding the natives were now ſo kind and affable, yet the captain ſoon after diſcovered their ſecret intentions to plunder him. At this time they were very numerous, and attempted to haul the boat on ſhore; upon which the captain brandiſhed his cutlaſs, and deſired Eefow, the chief, to command them to be quiet. This he did, and immediately they deſiſted.

A party of the captain's people had now procured about three gallons of water in the mountains. While they were abſent, the captain bought up all the bread-fruit that was brought to them, and likewiſe ſome ſpears to arm his men with, as he was unwilling to truſt to the four cutlaſſes, two of which were in the boat. They now employed their time in getting off to the boat the articles which they had purchaſed, while they heard a continual knocking of ſtones among the natives, which is the certain ſign of an intended attack. However, the captain ſtill appeared on the moſt friendly terms with the chiefs, with whom he ſhared his ſcanty allowance. They were very anxious for the captain to ſit down, but this he declined, being aware of their evil intentions, for both Nelſon and the captain himſelf ſuſpected that their deſign was to catch hold of him whenever they had an opportunity; to avoid which, he eat his dinner ſtanding, keeping a vigilant eye over all their motions: after dinner they got their things into the boat by degrees, the natives ſtill continuing to encreaſe, and making preparations for their ſtay in the cove all night. They kindled fires and held conſultations among themſelves, which rendered their intentions more apparent. The captain immediately diſpatched orders to the maſter to keep the boat as near the ſhore as poſſible, that they might the more eaſily embark, when they were ready for their departure. While the captain was ſending his journal down to the boat, which he had on ſhore, in order to write down the occurrences, one of the natives attempted to ſnatch it, but was prevented by the gunner. Their hoſtile intentions were now palpable, and every one on ſhore with the captain, as ſoon as he gave the word, which was about ſunſet, immediately ſecured whatever

ever belonged to him, and carried it to the boat. The chief ſtopped the captain, and enquired if he would not ſtay with them all night. The captain excuſed himſelf, by ſaying his preſence was wanting in the boat; but, in hopes to amuſe him, promiſed to trade with them the next day, if the weather permitted; likewiſe to go along with them to Tongataboo, according to agreement. Macca-ackavow, being offended that the captain would not ſleep on ſhore, declared openly that they would kill him, and immediately departed. Eefow likewiſe left the captain, and they were now making preparations to commence the attack, by knocking ſtones together as before. The captain (while he and his people were walking down the beach full of apprehenſions) took Nageete by the hand, who fain would have detained the captain, under pretence of ſpeaking to Eefow; but his treacherous intention of promoting the attack was apparent, and Capt. Bligh was determined to kill him on the ſpot, if they had begun at that time. The carpenter had orders not to quit Capt. Bligh till all his people were in the boat. When Nageete found that the captain was abſolutely determined upon departing, he broke looſe and left him.

They were now all got into the boat except one man, who obſtinately quitted the boat while the captain was getting on board, and ran up the beach to caſt the ſtern-faſt off: notwithſtanding the maſter and others repeatedly called to him, while aſſiſting the captain into the boat, yet he did not return. Upwards of 200 men began the attack, which was inſtantaneous, and the unfortunate wretch who had quitted the boat fell a ſacrifice to their rage. A furious ſhower of ſtones took place, and ſeveral of the Indians got hold of the ſtern, and would undoubtedly have dragged the boat on ſhore, had not the captain very fortunately a knife in his pocket, with which he immediately cut the rope. They now hauled off to the grapnel, the ſtones ſtill flying about, with which they were all more or leſs hurt. They now filled their canoes with ſtones, in which twelve daring fellows ſet off in purſuit of the boat to renew the attack. The captain and his people were very near being defeated; their grapnel was foul, but the fluke broke, and having got to the oars, they fortunately pulled to ſea. However, thoſe men who were in the canoes paddled round them, and continued the attack, which thoſe in the boat were obliged to ſuſtain, having no method of returning it, except by the ſtones which entered the boat, but which were very inſufficient for their defence: the boat being likewiſe very heavy, they could not cloſe, of which the aſſaſſins took every advantage: however, the captain threw overboard ſome clothes, which, according to his expectation, they ſtopped to take up, during which the boat made as rapid advances as poſſible, and it being now almoſt dark, the men in the canoe gave over the attack, and returned to ſhore.

The captain began to think, by the wanton behaviour of theſe natives, how very unavailing his viſit would be to Poulaho, and withal how dangerous, ſeeing that for the want of fire-arms, which always kept theſe people in terror, he ſhould probably be expoſed to further inſults. Having ſet their ſails, they ſteered along ſhore by the W. ſide of the iſland Tofoa, with a freſh eaſterly wind. After much rumination on their unhappy condition, they had but little hopes of relief, except at New Holland, till their arrival at Timor, which was 1200 leagues, where there was a Dutch ſettlement. Their ſtock of proviſions was now examined, and it was agreed upon by all to live each day upon one ounce of bread, and a quarter of a pint of water. Proviſions, which were but ſcanty at firſt, were now conſiderably decreaſed by the confuſion of the attack: however, they bore their loſs with the greateſt patience, and having got the boat, which was ſmall and deep laden, into ſome order, the people were divided into watches. Early the next day (May 3) there was a ſtrong indication of a ſtorm, by the fiery redneſs of the ſun, which began in a ſhort time after, while the ſea ran very high. Their diſtreſs and danger were at preſent very great, particularly as their bread (which was in bags) was very near being ſpoiled. The captain, therefore, ordered all the clothes which could be ſpared to be thrown overboard, with ſome rope and ſpare ſails, by which means the boat was conſiderably lightened, and they were thereby better enabled to bale the water out. As ſoon as they had an opportunity, they put the bread into a cheſt which the carpenter very fortunately had on board; his tool-cheſt was likewiſe appropriated to the ſame purpoſe.

The people were now exceedingly wet and cold, ſo that the captain gave each perſon a ſpoonful of rum, with a quarter of a bread-fruit, (which at other times they would not have deemed eatable) for dinner: the captain was reſolved to make the proviſions laſt for eight weeks, and therefore ſeriouſly exhorted his men to continue to their agreement.

The wind was now from N. E. to E. S. E. and the weather tempeſtuous. They were ſtill obliged to keep baling the water, for fear the boat would fill; which was very fatiguing: the night was ſo very cold, that they could ſcarcely make uſe of their limbs the next day: however, they derived great benefit from a tea-ſpoonful of rum, which the captain at this time allowed each perſon.

On the 4th they diſcovered a ſmall flat iſland of a tolerable height, bearing W. S. W. about five leagues diſtant. This day each perſon had his ſhare of five ſmall cocoa-nuts, which was the allowance for all their dinners.

About two o'clock they ſaw other iſlands, and between three and four reckoned about eight, bearing from S. round by the W. to N. W. by N. the neareſt being about four leagues diſtant. At this time the wind was moderate, and they proceeded to the N. W. by W. between the iſlands. In the evening they diſcovered three more; to the ſouthward of which, under a reefed-ſail, they ſteered. They had this night for ſupper a few broken pieces of bread-fruit; after which they had a comfortable repoſe, this night being very fair.

On the 5th they had a few pieces of yams, which were found in the boat, for breakfaſt. After this they examined their bread, a great part of which, being damaged, they found rotten, but which notwithſtanding they were very glad to keep for uſe, having dined that day on ſome of it, and a quarter of a pint of water.

In the evening they diſcovered two iſlands, one bearing W. by S. about ſix leagues diſtant, and the other N. W. by N. about eight ditto. They ſteered to windward of the northernmoſt, and having paſt it, reſumed their courſe for the night to the N. W. and W. N. W.

On the 6th the wind was very moderate from the E. N. E. and the weather remarkably fine. They ſaw a number of iſlands early in the morning from S. S. E. to the W. and round to N. E. by E. They were reſolved to paſs thoſe in the N. W. At twelve they ſaw a ſmall ſandy iſland, about two miles diſtant, bearing from E. to S. 3-4ths W.

This day each perſon had for his dinner a quarter of a pint of cocoa-nut milk, and the meat, which was about two ounces. They were very happy in having hooked a fiſh; but terribly diſappointed afterwards in loſing it, while endeavouring to take it into the boat.

In the evening the iſlands, between which they ſteered to the N. W. appeared very extenſive and fruitful, and of a good height: towards night they were very near mid-way between them, about ſix leagues diſtant from each ſhore. They now fell in with a coral bank, where there was only four feet water, without the leaſt indication thereof, to give any warning. It ſeemed to extend about a mile on each ſide of them. This night they proceeded W. by N. and each perſon had for ſupper an ounce of damaged bread and a quarter of a pint of water.

They were now put on watch and watch, in order to afford more room to thoſe whoſe turn it was to lie down, which they did on the boats bottom or the cheſt, without any covering; by which means they were ſo conſtantly wet and cold that they could ſcarcely move when they got up.

On the 7th, it being a very raw diſagreeable morning, they had a ſpoonful of rum and a bit of bread for breakfaſt.

On approaching the land, which lay in the W. they perceived ſome curious rocks, which had a variety of forms. The land, being high and low in different places, and a great deal covered with wood, was exceedingly pleaſant to the view. There being ſome ſmall rocky iſlands off the N. E. part, they proceeded between theſe and an iſland about four leagues to the N. E. They were ſuddenly ſet very near to the rocky iſlands, by an unexpected lee current, which, by the dint of good rowing, they got clear of, having paſſed cloſe to the reef that ſurrounded them. Being now followed by two large ſailing canoes, which appeared very eager in their purſuit, they rowed with the utmoſt expedition, as they were apprehenſive of ſome bad deſigns.

They had now a great deal of rain, thunder, and lightning, with light winds at N. N. E. Only one of the canoes gained upon them, but ſhe gave over chace in the afternoon, when within two miles diſtance of them.

It could not be aſcertained whether the intentions of theſe people were friendly or hoſtile; however, though they might have benefited by their intercourſe, yet, as they were in a defenceleſs ſituation, it would not have been at all prudent to have run a riſk of their enmity.

By means of the rain, which became very heavy at four o'clock, they encreaſed their ſtock of water conſiderably, having, beſides, fully quenched their thirſt for the firſt time ſince they had been at ſea. However they ſuffered by the rain as well as benefited, being ſo extremely wet all night as to bring on ſevere fits of cold and ſhivering. As ſoon as the weather became fine they ſtripped and dried their clothes.

On the 8th they had for dinner an ounce and a half of pork, a tea-ſpoonful of rum, half a pint of cocoa-nut milk, and an ounce of bread. They were never able to catch any fiſh, though they ſaw great numbers of them.

They cleaned the boat in the afternoon, and got every thing as dry as poſſible. At night they had their uſual allowance for ſupper.

On the 9th, in the afternoon, they fitted a pair of ſhrouds for each maſt, and contrived a canvas weather-cloth round the boat, and raiſed the quarters about nine inches, by nailing on the ſeats of the ſtern-ſheets, which they found of great benefit.

They had very fine weather now, and a moderate wind in the S. E. quarter, till evening, when the weather ſuddenly changed, and they had very heavy rain, with thunder and lightning. As they were exceedingly wet and cold each perſon had a tea-ſpoonful of rum. The wind increaſing, and the weather ſtill continuing bad, they got no ſleep this night; however, at midnight, they caught about twenty gallons of water. The ſucceeding day was equally diſagreeable. They were now obliged to ſteer where they could, and to keep before the waves, for fear the boat ſhould fill: they were likewiſe obliged to keep two men conſtantly baling the water, the ſea broke ſo very high. This day each perſon had half an ounce of pork for dinner. The allowance regularly ſerved to each perſon was 1-25th of a pound of bread and a quarter of a pint of water, three times, for breakfaſt, dinner, and ſupper.

The rain abated ſomewhat at noon; the wind, however, ſtill continued ſtrong from S. S. E. to S. E. The weather was very ſqually, and the ſea broke very high.

On the 11th, having ſuffered greatly from the cold and rain of the preceding night, each perſon had a tea-ſpoonful of rum. They were now obliged to bale with all their ſtrength, as the ſea frequently ran over their ſtern. The ſun having appeared about noon gave them much conſolation, and they partook of their ſcanty allowance with as much ſatisfaction as poſſible; this night, however, was equally dreadful as the preceding, and they experienced the ſame toil, danger, and uneaſineſs, which rendered them full of complaints the next day. They had their uſual quantity of rum with their daily allowance. About noon it was calm, and no ſun to be ſeen. They now ſteered for the northward of the New Hebrides. The rain ſtill continued, and they had heavy ſqualls in the afternoon, the wind blowing from the ſouthward. They were ſo exceedingly wet and cold that they were all obliged to ſtrip, and wring their clothes through the ſalt water, which afforded them ſome little warmth. They were obliged conſtantly to bale, and the rum being nearly expended, their allowance thereof was denied. The ſucceeding day being equally diſagreeable, added ſtill more to their troubles.

On the 14th the rain ſtill continued, with gloomy weather. They had ſome ſmart breezes at S. E. Early this morning they diſcovered four iſlands from S. W. by S. about eight leagues diſtant, to N. W. by W. three-quarters W. ſix ditto. All theſe iſlands were high, but one remarkably ſo. They ſaw another ſmall iſland, and ſome rocks, about noon, bearing N. W. by N. about four leagues; alſo another W. eight ditto. They paſſed the weſternmoſt iſland about four in the afternoon.

On the 15th before day-break, they diſcovered another iſland bearing N. N. W. about five leagues diſtant. They alſo ſaw a number of oceanic birds.

Theſe iſlands were at firſt imagined to be a part of the New Hebrides, but the captain afterwards believed them to be a new diſcovery. They were inhabited, as ſmoke was ſeen in ſeveral places, and appeared exceedingly fertile.

The rainy weather ſtill continued, the wind at S. E. The night was ſo very dark that they could ſcarcely ſee to ſteer, while the ſea broke exceedingly high.

On the 16th, in addition to their ſcanty allowance for dinner, each perſon was indulged with an ounce of ſalt pork. There being ſome little ſunſhine, they were in hopes of being able to dry their wet cloaths, but the rain ſoon returned, with ſtrong breezes at S. E. by S. The night was very dreadful, ſo dark that they did not know where they were ſteering, while they had repeated ſtorms of thunder and lightning.

Every one complained the next day, having ſuffered greatly from the exerciſe and fatigue of the preceding night. The captain was frequently ſolicited for an extra-allowance, but knowing the great neceſſity of being œconomical in this their unhappy ſituation, he peremptorily refuſed. However when they ſuffered more than uſual from the ſeverity of the nights, they had each a tea-ſpoonful, and ſometimes two, of what little rum there was remaining. They had alſo this day, in addition to their allowance, an ounce of pork. At noon a water-ſpout was very near on board them. This night was alſo dark and diſmal, and the ſea very high.

On the 18th the rain abated, but the night was equally dreadful.

They had now very ſevere weather till the 23d, during which time they were occaſionally allowed two tea-ſpoonfuls of rum. The rain was at times ſo very heavy, that they were apprehenſive it would fill the boat, and were conſtantly obliged to keep baling, and by the frequent breaking of the ſea, they were frequently prevented from taking advantage of the rain, by adding ſomewhat to their ſtock of freſh water. They were frequently filled with horror and diſmay, and the captain became apprehenſive that ſome of his people would periſh.

Though the weather became fair about noon on the 23d, ſtill it blew very hard, and the ſea was very high: however the wind moderated towards evening, and they eat their ſcanty ſupper with more cheer than uſual. This night was very fair.

On the 24th, for the firſt time this fortnight, they enjoyed the comfortable warmth of the ſun. They ſtripped, and hung their clothes up to dry. They took this opportunity of examining the ſtate of their bread, and, according to the conſumption that was made, found a ſufficiency for one month longer, by which time the captain hoped to reach Timor: notwithſtanding which, he thought it neceſſary to leſſen the allowance, for fear after all they might be obliged to go to Java, which would occaſion a delay. Having, therefore, repreſented to his people the propriety of guarding againſt diſappointment, and promiſing to increaſe the allowance if they made any rapid advances, they all cheerfully acquieſced with the propoſal.

On the 25th a noddy, which is about the ſize of a ſmall pigeon, was caught with the hand, and being divided into 18 portions, was diſtributed with the uſual allowance of bread and water for dinner. The bones and all were eaten, with ſalt water for ſauce. They caught in the ſame manner a booby in the evening, which is as large as a duck. This bird was killed for ſupper, and the blood thereof given to three of the men who were the moſt indiſpoſed. This was divided in the ſame manner that the noddy was, and entrails, beak, &c. all devoured.

The weather ſtill continued fine, and they had freſh breezes from the S. E. This day another booby was caught; the blood of which was given in the ſame manner to thoſe who were moſt in need of nouriſhment, and the reſt diſtributed as before for dinner.

They now began to feel a different inconvenience from the change of weather, ſeveral being exceedingly languid and faint on account of the powerful heat of the ſun. This evening they were doubly fortunate, having caught two boobies, the ſtomachs of which contained ſeveral ſmall cuttle-fiſh and flying-fiſh. Theſe were all ſaved for dinner the next day.

On the 27th, having paſſed much drift wood, they deemed themſelves near the reefs of New Holland. The weather was ſtill fair, and they had a freſh breeze at E. S. E. This day every perſon thought he had feaſted, having a better dinner than they had for ſome time, by the diſtribution of the two boobies and the entrails. From the clouds being now fixed in the W. they were poſitive of being near land.

On the 28th, at one in the morning, the perſon at the helm heard the ſound of breakers: the captain ſaw them cloſe under their lee, being ſcarcely a quarter of a mile diſtant from them. They immediately veered on a wind to the N. N. E. and in a ſhort time were clear of them.

On the 29th, about nine o'clock, they ſaw the reefs of New Holland. On approaching them the wind came at E. while the ſea broke furiouſly over every part. They were obliged to lie along the line of the breakers. They preſently found themſelves embayed, and in a critical ſituation: for want of ſtrength they could do nothing with their oars, ſo that they began to think they ſhould be under the neceſſity of attempting to puſh over the reef: however, they happily diſcovered a break therein, about a mile's diſtance, within which was an iſland of a moderate height, about the ſame direction, bearing W. half N. By means of a ſtrong ſtream running to the weſtward, they entered this paſſage, which was about a quarter of a mile broad, with deep water. Being now in ſmooth water, within the reefs, they endeavoured to keep near them, to try for fiſh; but the tide ſet them to the N. W. therefore they bore away in that direction, being determined to land whenever an opportunity offered.

The iſland which was firſt ſeen Capt. Bligh called Direction Iſland, bearing W. S. W. five leagues, in latitude 12 deg. 51 min. S.

Being now within the reefs, and in view of the coaſt of New Holland, they returned thanks to God for having enabled them to ſurmount ſo many difficulties, and began to comfort themſelves with the hopes of being ſoon able to accompliſh their wiſhes.

CHAPTER II.

Temporary Reliefs diſcovered—Deſcription of the Iſland called Reſtoration—Some Natives ſeen—The Captain and his People put to Sea—Embayed—Another Party of Natives ſeen—Their Token of Friendſhip—Captain lands—Parties receive Orders—Some of the People diſſatisfied—One becomes diſobedient—Captain's Behaviour—Peace reſtored—Curſory Remarks—Several Iſlands paſſed—They proceed from the Coaſt of New Holland to the Iſland of Timor—The People taken ill—Their Joy at ſeeing Timor—Arrive at Coupang—Attention of the Governor, &c. &c.

SEVERAL parts of the land which they ſaw were covered with wood. In proceeding towards the ſhore, having fallen in with a point of a reef connected with that towards the ſea, they came to a grapnel, in order to look for fiſh; but were unſucceſsful. Having ſeen two iſlands about four miles to the W. by N. they made for the neareſt; but finding it only a heap of ſtones, proceeded to the next, which lay cloſe to the other, and towards the main. They found a bay on the N. W. ſide, and a fine ſandy point to land at. They looked if there were any ſigns of natives: they ſaw ſome old fire-places, but nothing to create any apprehenſions during their ſtay. One half of the company were now ordered to ſleep on ſhore, and the other half in the boat. They looked for ſome oyſters in the rocks, but it being dark could gather only a few. The night was calm, and thoſe on ſhore had a very comfortable reſt, though without fire, having no means to kindle one.

During the night, one of the gudgeons of the rudder came out, and was loſt. The captain dreaded this misfortune when at ſea, and for fear of the worſt had grummets fixed on each quarter of the boat for oars: this, however, would have been a dangerous experiment; it was lucky, therefore, that the accident happened when they were able to remedy the defect, which happily they did, having found a large ſtaple in the boat which anſwered the purpoſe completely.

They made a fire the next day, by the help of a magnifying-glaſs, and fortunately found a piece of brimſtone and a tinder-box, which had been thrown into the boat, and were now of eſſential ſervice. Parties having been out in ſearch of oyſters, returned with a large quantity, and ſome freſh water: with theſe, ſome bread, and a little pork, they made a ſtew in a copper-pot, which they had fortunately brought from the veſſel. Each perſon had a full pint of this, and it was highly acceptable.

Though all the company had ſome complaint, yet conſidering the difficulties they had undergone, they were very frivolous. The captain had a ſevere pain in his ſtomach, the reſt were afflicted with a weakneſs in their joints, a violent teneſmus, dizzineſs in the head, &c. &c.

Fortunately in the place where they found the oyſters, they diſcovered a well, which produced a ſufficiency of water during their ſtay: there was likewiſe a ſmall run of excellent water on the S. ſide of the iſland.

During their excurſions they found two huts which were miſerably built: alſo a pointed ſtick, about three feet long, with a ſlit in the end of it, which the natives uſe to fling ſtones with. Theſe were ſure indications of the place being lately inhabited. They likewiſe perceived the track of the kanguroo.

This iſland is about a league in circumference. It conſiſts chiefly of high rocks and ſtones covered with wood: the ſoil is very bad, conſequently the trees few and ſmall. There were ſeveral parrots, wild pigeons, &c. which made the captain regret the want of fire-arms. Except the place where they landed, the ſhore of this iſland is very rocky. The captain called this iſland Reſtoration Iſland, both on account of being here the day of the anniverſary of King Charles II. and becauſe the title was ſo applicable to their preſent ſituation, being reſtored to freſh life and vigour.

A quantity of oyſters were brought in for ſupper, which were dreſt as before, and each perſon had a full pint and a half of ſtew. After ſupper they divided again, and the party who were to ſleep on ſhore had a good fire all night.

The pork, which had not been ſecured like the bread, having been made away with by ſome unknown perſon, the remainder, which was about two pounds, was divided at once. On the 30th they had this and ſome oyſters for dinner, and while ſome of the people were out gathering oyſters, and filling their water veſſels, the captain ſtaid in the boat, to get it in readineſs for ſea.

Having procured about ſixty gallons of water and ſome oyſters, they prepared to embark, when they ſaw about twenty natives on the oppoſite ſhore, armed with ſpears, entirely naked, and apparently black, who began to halloo, and make ſigns for them to come to them; they ſaw the heads of ſeveral more on the top of the hills. The captain now deemed it prudent to be off as ſoon as poſſible, for fear they might be purſued by their canoes. Accordingly they directed their courſe within two ſmall iſlands, that lie to the N. of Reſtoration Iſland, paſſing between them and the main land, towards Fair Cape, which they were abreaſt of by eight o'clock, having a ſtrong tide in their favour. At night having ſteered more towards the W. they met with low land towards the N. E.

On the 31ſt, before day-break, they found themſelves embayed, they were therefore obliged to ſtand back for a ſhort time to the ſouthward. They had now a low ſandy coaſt in view, which was apparently barren and deſtitute of inhabitants. They ſaw ſeveral ſmall iſlands towards the N. E. about ſix miles diſtant: the E. part of the main bearing N. four miles, and Fair Cape S. S. E. about ſix leagues. They made for the channel between the neareſt iſland and the main land, which were about one mile aſunder: they ſaw large ſhoals of fiſh, but could not catch any.

While they were paſſing this ſtrait, they perceived another party of natives, who were armed with ſpears, and apparently of the ſame form and colour as thoſe they had ſeen before. The captain beckoned to them to approach, having laid the boat cloſe to the rocks, but none of them would venture within two hundred yards of them. Notwithſtanding, they ſhouted, and made ſigns for the captain and his people to land, waving green branches of the buſhes which were near them, as a token of friendſhip; a little further off they perceived a larger party, who joined the reſt, and behaved in the ſame manner; however, as they were exceedingly numerous, the captain was reſolved not to land.

Perceiving an iſland of a good height, bearing N. half W. about four miles diſtant, they were reſolved to land there, and from thence take a ſurvey of the coaſt: they arrived about eight o'clock in the morning, at this iſland; the ſhore was rocky, but as the water was ſmooth, they landed without any difficulty. The captain now ordered two parties to go out, one to the Northward, and the other to the Southward, in ſearch of ſupplies, while ſome were likewiſe appointed to take care of the boats. The men being oppreſt with weakneſs and fatigue, began to appear diſſatisfied; ſome who were deſired to ſeek ſupplies, declared they would rather go without any dinner than be obliged to ſeek it, imagining their employment was more fatiguing than that allotted to their companions: one of theſe was preſumptuous enough to inſult the captain, declaring that he was every bit as good a man. Captain Bligh perceiving the danger of tolerating ſuch inſolence, was determined to check it in time, and either preſerve his authority or die in the attempt; ſeizing therefore a cutlaſs, he ordered the offender to take hold of another, and defend himſelf; finding the captain thus deſperate, he called out that he was going to kill him, and beginning to recollect himſelf, immediately made conceſſions: the captain, in order to retain their former peace and harmony, was ſatisfied to overlook it.

Thoſe who had been in ſearch of ſupplies, returned with ſome clams and oyſters, and a few ſmall dogfiſh that they found in the holes of the rocks; they were likewiſe ſo fortunate as to obtain a full ſupply of water in the hollow of the rocks, on the North part of the iſland.

During their examination of the iſland, they found in a ſandy bay, an old canoe, about 33 feet long, turned topſyturvy, and half buried in the beach; it was capable of carrying about twenty men. Not deeming this place ſufficiently ſecure from the Indians, they were determined to make for a ſmall key, which was N. W. by N. and which they deemed the ſafeſt reſting-place for the night.

This day being Sunday, when they came to this iſland, the captain accordingly named it Sunday Iſland. It lies N. by W. 3-4ths W. from Reſtoration Iſland, in latitude 11 deg. 58 min. S.

Each perſon had this day a full pint and half of ſtewed oyſters and clams, thickened with ſmall beans. After dinner they completed their water; the weather was now very fair, with a freſh breeze at S. E. by S. They ſteered, according to their determination, for the ſmall key, N. W. by N. which they did not reach until it was dark, but finding it impoſſible to land, without running the hazard of ſtaving the boat, on account of a reef of rocks which ſurrounded, they came to a grapnel for the night.

On the 1ſt of June, at day-break, they got on ſhore, and tracked the boat into ſhelter: they were now about four leagues diſtant from the main.

The captain diſpatched ſome of his men to ſeek ſupplies, but they could only get a few clams and ſome dolichos; they made a meſs of theſe and ſome oyſters, which they brought from Sunday Iſland for dinner.

Another party who had been ſent to the eaſternmoſt key, returned about noon; one of them, Nelſon, the botaniſt, was taken ſo ill, that he was carried by two men to the boat. He was afflicted with a violent heat in his bowels, the loſs of his feet and ſight, and a great thirſt; this was occaſioned with over exerciſe during the exceſſive heat of the ſun. The captain gave him ſome wine, with pieces of bread ſoaked in it, by which means he began to recover. The boatſwain and carpenter were likewiſe very ill with ſickneſs of the ſtomach and a head-ach. occaſioned in a great meaſure by eating ſome of the dolicos raw. Several others were exceedingly diſtreſſed with the teneſmus; in ſhort, there was no one free from complaint.

This iſland was for the moſt part ſandy, and conſequently barren, notwithſtanding it produced ſome ſmall toa trees and others. The captain, in his walk round the iſland, found ſeveral cocoa-nut ſhells, the remains of an old wigwam, and the backs of two turtle. Some of his people alſo found three ſea-fowls' eggs; but there was not the leaſt ſign of any quadruped. There were fiſh in the lagoon, but they could not catch any.

The captain directed the fire to be made in the thicket, for fear if there were any natives near hand they might be diſcovered by its light; however, they did not entertain much apprehenſion, as they intended to make but a ſhort ſtay. Several took a comfortable ſleep, while thoſe who were not diſpoſed to reſt employed themſelves in dreſſing clams for to-morrow's dinner, and likewiſe in cutting up ſome in ſlices to bring with them.

Particular orders were given that they ſhould not make a large fire, or ſuffer it to blaze up after it was dark. The captain now took a walk about the beach, in order to obſerve if the fire could be ſeen at a diſtance; and while he was conſoling himſelf with the idea that it could not, ſuddenly the whole iſland appeared in a blaze. The captain immediately returned to learn the cauſe, and underſtood that one of his men obſtinately determined, in ſpite of Meſſ. Samuel and Peckover, whom the captain had appointed ſuperintendants, to have a fire to himſelf, in kindling which the flames rapidly ſpread among the neighbouring graſs. The captain expreſſed much diſpleaſure at ſuch miſconduct, for had there been any natives near hand, it might have been attended with fatal conſequences.

About eight o'clock Meſſ. Samuel and Peckover went out to watch for turtle, while three others went to the E. key to endeavour to catch birds. The reſt being indiſpoſed took their reſt, except Meſſ. Hayward and Elphinſtone, who were appointed to keep watch. Thoſe who had been ſeeking birds returned at midnight, having got only 12 noddies: one of them (Robert Lamb) having ſeparated from his companions, diſturbed the birds, otherwiſe they might have caught a great number. The captain was exceedingly provoked with this man for ſuch imprudence: afterwards, when they came to Java, he acknowledged that while he was by himſelf he had eaten nine birds raw. Meſſ. Samuel and Peckover had watched for turtle till three o'clock, without any ſucceſs.

They half dreſſed the noddies, that they might keep the better; theſe and a few clams being all the ſupply that they could procure here. The captain faſtened ſome pieces of iron, and a few braſs buttons, to a tree, for the natives; and, having enjoyed a comfortable night's reſt, prepared for their departure at dawn of day.

On the 2d they proceeded to the N. by W. with a S. E. wind: the ſea became exceedingly rough, after they had proceeded two leagues to the northward. In the morning they met with a large ſhoal, on which were two ſandy keys: they paſſed on to the northward, between theſe and two others which were four miles to the W. the roughneſs of the ſea ſtill continuing. At twelve o'clock they fell in with ſix other keys, which produced ſome bruſh-wood and ſmall trees. The country appeared exceedingly hilly, while the northernmoſt land was ſloping towards the ſea. There was a flat-topped hill nearly abreaſt them, which the captain called Pudding Pan Hill, on account of its ſingular ſhape: two others, which lay a little to the northward, he named the Paps.

It was impoſſible for the captain to make minute obſervations, or aſcertain the depth of water, being deprived of the neceſſary means: indeed, if they had been in poſſeſſion of their fathom lines, &c. it could not have been expected that they would have made any delay in ſuch a critical ſituation.

This day each perſon had for dinner his fair diviſion of ſix birds, with the allotted allowance of bread and water: Nelſon, who was recovering apace, was allowed half a glaſs of wine. At firſt their allowance was iſſued by gueſs; but the captain, willing to be both exact and impartial, had lately contrived a pair of ſcales with two cocoa-nut ſhells, and having accidentally ſome piſtol balls in the boat, one of which weighed 272 grains, this was adopted as the proportion of weight which each perſon was to receive of bread, &c.

Hitherto they had regulated their time by the gunner's watch, which this day unfortunately ſtopped, ſo that they could only judge of time by noon, ſun-riſe and ſun-ſet.

The weather was now very fair, and they had freſh breezes from the S. S. E. and S. E. while they ſtood to the N. by W. they had more ſea, being leſs ſheltered by the reefs which lay to the eaſtward. At noon they ſteered to the N. W. and paſſed a large and ſeemingly commodious inlet, which lay in latitude 11 deg. S. About ſun-ſet they arrived to an iſland about three leagues northward of this: they could only land at a ſandy point, under which they took ſhelter; which being a dreary ſituation, they preferred ſleeping this night in the boat. Thoſe whom the captain had ſent to ſee if this place produced any thing, reported that they had only ſeen ſome turtle, bones and ſhells; ſo that it appeared the iſland had been lately inhabited. It conſiſted chiefly of rocks, which were rudely connected, though here and there it was covered with wood. This place the captain called Turtle Iſland; its latitude 10 deg. 52 min. S. about 42 miles W. from Reſtoration Iſland. They lay at grapnel till daylight. This day (the 3d) the weather was very cloudy, and they had a ſmart breeze. Abreaſt of Turtle Iſland the coaſt ſeemed a ſandy deſert; but having proceeded to the northward, it ended in a point, where there were ſeveral ſmall iſlands adjoining. They ſailed between theſe. There was a high mountainous iſland with a flat top, and four rocks to the S. E. of it, which they called the Brothers. Having diſcovered after this a number of high iſlands in an extenſive opening which appeared in the main land, they called them the Bay of Iſlands. They perceived ſeveral other ſmall iſlands and keys to the northward; the moſt northerly of which being mountainous, was remarkable for having a very high round hill on it: the ſmaller was diſtinguiſhed by a ſingle peaked one.

To the northward and weſtward of the Bay of Iſlands the coaſt is high and woody, with a broken appearance. There were apparently ſeveral commodious places for ſhipping, and fine bays. The captain called the northernmoſt of theſe iſlands Wedneſday Iſland, (this day being Wedneſday). They fell in with a large reef to the N. W. of this iſland: this the captain ſuppoſes joined a number of keys, which they had in view from the N. W. to the E. N. E. They ſtood to the S. W. half a league; their latitude 10 deg. 31 min. S. Wedneſday Iſland bearing E. by S. five miles; the weſternmoſt land in ſight, about three leagues diſtant: the iſlands to the northward from N. W. by W. to N. E. and the reef from W. to N. E. about one mile diſtant.

This day each perſon had ſix oyſters, in addition to his ſhare of bread and water for dinner.

While ſteering to the S. W. towards the weſternmoſt part of the iſland, in ſight, in the afternoon, they fell in with ſome large ſand banks, that run off from the coaſt. The captain called this Shoal Cape. In order to get round theſe ſhoals, they were obliged to ſteer to the northward again; after which they proceeded to the W.

Before it was dark they arrived to a rock, which they had miſtaken for a ſmall iſland that appeared bearing W. It abounded with boobies, and was therefore called Booby Iſland, both by Capt. Bligh, who at this time was ignorant that it had been ſeen before, and alſo by Capt. Cook, who took the ſame notice of its being thus reſorted to by theſe birds. Capt. Bligh afterwards imagined that the opening, which he called the Bay of Iſlands, was Endeavour Straits, and that their track had been to the northward of Prince of Wales's Iſles.

In the evening they were again in the open ocean: the captain endeavouring to comfort his men with hopes of being in ſafety in a few days time; indeed, nothwithſtanding their dangerous ſituation, his people ſtill enjoyed uncommon ſpirits and fortitude. After ſupper (which was no better than uſual) they directed their courſe to the W. S. W. in order to counteract the ſoutherly winds, ſhould they become violent.

On the 4th they ſaw a number of water ſnakes, that were ringed yellow and black. This day they had each ſix oyſters, in addition to their uſual dinner. Scanty as their allowance was, each perſon ſeemed ſatisfied therewith. As for the captain, he never felt himſelf very hungry or thirſty, but was content with his allowance. Notwithſtanding the weather was both mild and fair, yet they were obliged to employ two men conſtantly in baling water. About noon they paſſed a great deal of rock-weed.

On the 5th they had each ſix oyſters again, as before. A few boobies came about them in the evening, and they caught one of them. The blood was divided among three of the weakeſt men, and the bird reſerved for the next day's dinner. For ſupper ſome had a quarter of a pint of water, and others (who were more in need) half a pint. They ſuffered very much by the cold during night, being conſtantly wet with the ſea.

On the 6th the captain perceived that ſome one had ſtolen a few of the clams which had been hung up for ſea-ſtore, but every one declared himſelf innocent. This day the booby, which was reſerved, was diſtributed for dinner. In order to prevent any grumbling about the ſeveral parts, as ſome would no doubt prefer one to another, the captain adopted the following method, which is commonly uſed at ſea: one perſon turns his back on the object that is to be divided, while another points ſeparately to the portions, aſking each time of the other, who ſhall have this? which he determines by mentioning whatever perſon's name he chuſes. This impartial method of diviſion certainly gives every man an equal chance of the beſt ſhare.

Their ſtore of bread was examined in the afternoon, and according to their preſent conſumption a month's allowance was ſtill remaining: there being now every proſpect of a quick paſſage, the captain, agreeable to his promiſe, granted the former allowance.

On the 7th every one was complaining of ſome ailment, having been miſerably wet and cold during the night. They had now a very high ſea. An ounce of dried clams, being all that was remaining, was ſerved to each perſon for dinner. They changed their courſe about noon to W. N. W. keeping more from the ſea, as the wind was very fierce: they had likewiſe heavy rain. Surgeon Ledward, and Lawrence Lebogue, were exceedingly ill: they had now and then a tea ſpoonful or two of wine, which was reſerved on purpoſe for the indiſpoſed.

On the 8th the weather became moderate: the wind at S. E. They ſaw a few gamets, and in the afternoon caught a ſmall dolphin, which was the firſt they got. Each perſon had two ounces of this with the offals for dinner, and the remainder was reſerved for the next day. In the evening they had a very ſmart gale, which continued all night, during which they were obliged conſtantly to bale. On the next day they complained very much of different pains and aches, which the ſeverity of the night had occaſioned. Surgeon Ledward, and Lebogue, had each a little wine. The captain ſtill encouraged his people to keep up their ſpirits, aſſuring them they would ſoon be at Timor, as they were now advancing at a fine rate. The remains of the dolphin, which was about an ounce for each perſon, was diſtributed this day for dinner. The captain having eat ſome of the ſtomach of the fiſh, which came to his ſhare, was for ſome time exceedingly ill.

On the 10th they all appeared very ill, having endured great toil and uneaſineſs the preceding night. They had ghaſtly countenances, with an apparent debility of underſtanding; while ſome complained of weakneſs and ſwelled legs, and others of a lethargy. The ſurgeon and Lebogue were viſibly haſtening to their end: out of the little wine which remained, they had occaſionally ſome tea ſpoonfuls, from which they derived much benefit. Having met with a quantity of birds and rock-weed, they knew they were not far from land: the captain, however, was aware that there were ſeveral iſlands between the E. part of Timor and New Guiney. They experienced more eaſe and comfort this night than before, the wind having abated conſiderably.

On the 11th an extra allowance of water was given to thoſe who moſt required it. The people were exceedingly cheerful this day, having paſſed the eaſtern part of Timor. They ſaw ſeveral birds, and being upon the watch caught a booby in the evening, which they kept for dinner the next day.

On the 12th they ſaw Timor, the ſight of which created univerſal joy. It then bore from W. S. W. to W. N. W. Having hauled on a wind to the N. N. E. till day-light, the land bore from S. W. by S. to N. E. by N. about two leagues diſtant from ſhore.

They now began to conſider the great goodneſs of Providence, in being able with ſuch poor allowance to reach this coaſt in 41 days in an open boat, a diſtance of 3618 miles from Tofoa, and that not one of them during ſuch diſtreſs and danger had periſhed. They could hardly believe their ſucceſs, and with grateful hearts attributed this miraculous deliverance to divine grace.

Not being able to proceed N. E. with the wind, they bore away after day-light along ſhore to the S. S. W. The country, which exhibited ſeveral beautiful ſituations, was exceedingly delightful: as there were only a few ſmall huts to be ſeen, it was therefore ſuppoſed that no European inhabited this part of the iſland. It was impoſſible to land, as there was much ſea running on the ſhore. The booby which had been caught the preceding day was now divided for dinner.

The weather became very hazy, and the wind blew freſh at E. and E. S. E. They proceeded during the afternoon along a low ſhore, where there were no ſigns of cultivation, though covered with a quantity of palm trees. The country, however, improved by ſun-ſet, and they perceived ſeveral great ſmokes.

Captain Bligh deemed it moſt prudent to keep this ſituation till the next morning, for fear they might run paſt any ſettlement during the night: they therefore brought-to under a cloſe-reefed foreſail. They were about half a league diſtant from ſhore, in ſhoal water. After their uſual allowance for ſupper, they enjoyed a little ſleep, as the boat lay-to very well.

On the 13th, very early in the morning, they wore and ſtood in ſhore till day-light, having drifted during night about three leagues to the W. S. W.

They now examined the coaſt, but there being no appearance of a ſettlement, they bore away to the weſtward, with a ſtrong breeze againſt a weather current, which occaſioned much ſea. The weather was now foul and hazy. Awhile the ſhore was high, and covered with wood; but afterwards they had low land. In the forenoon they perceived the coaſt, inclining towards the S. part thereof bearing W. S. W. half W. high land appeared at the ſame time in the S. W. They ſtood towards the outer land, which they diſcovered to be the Iſland Roti.

Having returned to the ſhore they had left, they brought to a grapnel in a ſandy bay, for the ſake of making more minute obſervations on their preſent ſituation. During their ſtay here, they perceived ſeveral great ſmokes, and the carpenter and maſter being very ſolicitous to go in ſearch of ſupplies, the captain at laſt gave his permiſſion: however they ſoon altered their mind, as they found no other in the boat inclined to join them.

Having made as exact a calculation as they could, they continued ſteering along ſhore. The country now appeared exceedingly beautiful, covered with wood and a quantity of fan palm trees, which appeared like cocoa-nut walks.

During the afternoon the weather was dark and hazy, and they had a ſtrong breeze at E. S. E. They now ran through a very dangerous breaking ſea, occaſioned by a ſtrong tide ſetting to windward, and ſhoal water; after which, they ſaw a fine bay, with a good entrance, about three miles wide. As this promiſed well, they came to a grapnel near the E. ſide of the entrance, in a ſmall ſandy bay, where they perceived a hut, ſome cattle, and a dog. In order to diſcover the inhabitants, the boatſwain and gunner were immediately ſent to the hut. They returned in a ſhort time with five of the natives, and reported that they had found two families, and were received by the women with European politeneſs. The natives informed the captain that the governor reſided at a place called Coupang, ſome diſtance to the N. E. Theſe people brought them a few pieces of dried turtle, and ſome ears of Indian corn, which was the more valuable gift, as the turtle was ſo hard that it required to be well ſoaked in hot water before it could be eaten. They offered to bring other refreſhments, but the captain was unwilling to make any delay, and having ſignified to one of theſe men, that if he would enter the boat and ſhew them the way to Coupang, he ſhould be amply rewarded for the trouble, the native to whom the propoſal was made with the greateſt good-nature complied, and about half paſt four they ſailed, keeping cloſe to the E. ſhore, under all their ſail, by the direction of their pilot.

On the approach of night, the wind dying away, they had recourſe to their oars, which, notwithſtanding their weakneſs, they were able to make ſome uſe of: however, as their progreſs was ſlow, they came to a grapnel about ten o'clock, and, for the firſt time, each perſon had a double allowance of bread, with a little wine, for ſupper.

The natives whom they had ſeen were of a dark tawny colour, with long black hair. Their dreſs conſiſted of a ſquare piece of cloth round the hips, in the folds of which a large knife was ſtuck, and another hanging by the four corners from the ſhoulders, which ſerved as a pocket for their beetle equipage, which they were continually chewing.

On the 14th, after a comfortable repoſe, they weighed early in the morning, and continued to keep the E. ſhore on board, in very ſmooth water. Having paſſed an iſland to the weſtward, which the pilot called Pulo Samon, they were again to ſea. The northern entrance of this channel is near two miles wide, with apparently deep water.

It is impoſſible to deſcribe the pleaſure which was felt in hearing two cannon which were fired. Some ſhort time after they perceived two ſquare-rigged veſſels and a cutter at anchor to the eaſtward. They endeavoured to work to windward, but loſing ground on each tack, they were obliged to take to their oars again. Keeping cloſe to the ſhore, they rowed till about four o'clock, when they brought to a grapnel, and had another allowance of bread and wine. When they had reſted, they weighed, and rowed till it was day-light, when they came to a grapnel off a ſmall fort and town, which their pilot informed them was Coupang.

In the courſe of their paſſage they had made a ſmall jack of ſome ſignal flags uſed by boats to ſhew the depth of water in ſounding, which the boatſwain had ſecured out of the Bounty. Theſe were hoiſted in the main-ſhrouds, as a ſignal of diſtreſs, the captain being unwilling to land without previous permiſſion.

They were hailed to land a little after day-break, by a ſoldier. Accordingly they did; when they found themſelves ſurrounded by a number of Indians. Captain Bligh was exceedingly happy to find an Engliſh ſailor, who belonged to one of the veſſels in the road, and whoſe captain was the ſecond perſon in the town; to whom he requeſted to be conducted, being informed that the governor was ſo ill that no one could ſpeak to him.

This captain's name was Spikerman, who, upon hearing Capt. Bligh's misfortunes, behaved with the greateſt humanity, and gave immediate orders that the people in the boat ſhould be taken to his own houſe, where, for they were ſcarcely able to walk, they were aſſiſted, and a comfortable breakfaſt of bread, butter, and tea, provided.

Capt. Spikerman went himſelf to the governor, Mr. William Adrian Van Eſte, to know what time would be the moſt convenient for Capt. Bligh to ſee him. The governor appointed eleven o'clock; but, notwithſtanding his extreme ill health, he was ſo anxious about Capt. Bligh, that he ſaw him before that time, and received him in a manner truly noble and affectionate, declaring, that though his ill ſtate of health would not permit him to *act* the friend himſelf, yet he would iſſue ſuch directions that neither Capt. Bligh nor his people ſhould want for aſſiſtance. For the captain, he ordered a houſe to be immediately prepared, and ſaid that his people ſhould be either accommodated at the hoſpital, or on board Capt. Spikerman's veſſel, whichever was more agreeable. He likewiſe gave directions that victuals ſhould be dreſſed for them at his own houſe, and regretted that Coupang could not afford them better accommodations.

The captain, on his return to Capt. Spikerman's houſe, found that every attention had been paid to his people, particularly in reſpect to apparel. Being then conducted to the houſe intended for him, where ſervants were in readineſs to attend him, finding it ſpacious and convenient, he deſired his own people to be lodged with him, appropriating one apartment to his own uſe, another to the maſter, ſurgeon, Nelſon, and the gunner; the left to the other officers, and the outer apartment to the men: the hall was free for the officers, and a piazza, by which the houſe was ſurrounded, to the men. When the governor was apprized of the captain's intention, he immediately ſent furniture, and every neceſſary which was required, having deſired the captain to let him know whatever he wanted, by communicating his wiſhes to his ſon-in-law, Mr. Timotheus Wanjon, who was equally aſſiduous in rendering every thing as comfortable and agreeable as poſſible.

Capt. Bligh dined with Mr. Wanjon, having firſt ſeen his own people enjoy a hearty meal on a good dinner which was ſent to them by the governor. The captain retired very ſoon to his chamber, (which was furniſhed with every convenience) in order to partake of that reſt and quietneſs which were ſo eſſential towards the re-eſtabliſhment of his health.

As ſoon as an opportunity offered, Capt. Bligh preſented to the governor a formal account of the loſs of the Bounty, with a complete deſcriptive liſt of the mutineers, requeſting that inſtructions might be ſent to all the Dutch ſettlements to ſtop the veſſel in his Majeſty's name if ſhe made her appearance.

Nelſon obtained leave of the governor to explore the plants of the country, as the place was ſaid to abound with many curious and medicinal plants: however he was prevented by ſevere indiſpoſition from availing himſelf of this indulgence. He, and all the reſt who were ill, were conſtantly attended by Mr. Max, the town ſurgeon, whoſe kindneſs and attention were remarkable.

CHAPTER III.

Deſcription of Coupang—The Settlement—King of the Iſland—Capt. Bligh introduced to him—His Reception, &c. —Cuſtoms, &c. of the Place—The Captain's Intention of hiring a Veſſel—Purchaſes a Schooner by the Aſſiſtance of Mr. Wanjon—This Gentleman's Attention—Death and Burial of David Nelſon—The Schooner ready for Sea —They embark—Leave Coupang—An affectionate Leave—Several Iſlands ſeen, &c.—Anchor off Paſſourwang— A polite Reception from Van Rie—Deſcription of the Place—Conducted to Sourabya—Arrival at Batavia.

THE ſettlement at Coupang, being the only one the Dutch have on the iſland of Timor, was formed in the year 1630. They have reſidents in different parts of the country. There is a Portugueſe ſettlement on the N. ſide of the iſland. The chief produce of the place is ſandal wood and bees-wax: the latter is in greater plenty. The town of Coupang is ſituated in a great bay, which is an excellent road for ſhipping. The town lies in latitude 10 deg. 12 min. S. The natives, or thoſe who inhabit the neighbourhood of Coupang, are of a very indolent diſpoſition, which the Chineſe have taken no little advantage of. Their trade is chiefly carried on in ſmall Chineſe veſſels, from 10 to 30 tons burthen. There is a ſmall market at Coupang for country people, but very little buſineſs is done in it. The inland people are ſtrong and active, but extremely dirty, which conſequently ſubjects them to many diſeaſes. They live at a diſtance from the Europeans.

The king of the iſland, or chief of the natives, is by the Dutch called Keyſer, ſignifying an emperor. The place of his reſidence is called Backennoſſy, which is about four miles diſtance from Coupang. He does not bear an entire ſway over the natives, owing, as the Dutch report, to the intrigues of the Portugueſe on the N. ſide of the iſland. In 1786 a civil war broke out between the king and one of his nephews, which did not terminate till 1788, when it was ſettled rather in favour of the king. Theſe diſturbances were exceedingly diſadvantageous to the iſland, having occaſioned a ſcarcity of proviſions, which, through the indolence of the people, is not likely to be ſoon remedied.

Capt. Bligh, during his ſtay at Coupang, was introduced to the king of the iſland, and received with the greateſt civility. Refreſhments of tea, rice cakes, roaſted Indian corn, dried buffalo fleſh, arrack, &c. were ordered to be laid before him. The king was an elderly man; he had a cheque wrapper girded round his waiſt, with a ſilk and gold belt, a looſe linen jacket, and a coarſe handkerchief about his neck: his dwelling was a large houſe, divided into three apartments, and ſurrounded by a piazza. The ſituation was more agreeable than the houſe itſelf, which, together with the furniture, was very dirty. He was attended by a few chiefs, who partook of the refreſhments with them; after which the king retired, and having made but a ſhort ſtay, returned with a preſent of a round plate of metal about four inches diameter, whereon the figure of a ſtar was ſtamped, which he preſented to the captain, who in return made him a preſent of ſome arrack, which being acceptable, was well received. They never put water into their liquor, and being thereto accuſtomed, are capable of drinking a large quantity at one time, without being overcome.

Chriſtianity has been introduced by the Dutch, who have taken much pains in eſtabliſhing it: however it has not gained much ground, except in the neighbourhood of Coupang. The king of the iſland was chriſtened by the name of Barnardus; his Indian name is Bacchee Bannock. There is a church at Coupang for the natives, and a Malay clergyman appointed to perform divine ſervice there, the ſcriptures being tranſlated into the Malay language.

Fruit is in great plenty at Timor, particularly the bread-fruit-tree, which is as common here as in the iſland of Otaheite; but it is not uſed as bread, being eaten with ſugar and milk. It is exactly the ſame kind as that at Otaheite, but not ſo good. A bread-fruit of Timor weighs half as much more as one of the ſame ſize at the other place. There is alſo another kind of bread-fruit tree, which produces ſeeds like the windſor beans, and which are equally the ſame to the taſte.

There is a reſemblance of language between the natives of this place and thoſe of the South-Sea iſlands. The captain alſo ſaw ſome offerings of baſkets of beetle and tobacco placed on their graves. When a king dies, there is a large feaſt prepared, to which all the people are invited: then, after a few days, the corpſe is put into a coffin, wherein it is cloſed up, and kept three years before it is buried.

Capt. Bligh, in order to ſecure his arrival at Batavia before the October fleet ſailed for Europe, gave public notice of his intention to hire a veſſel to convey them there. Several propoſals were therefore made, but the demands were exorbitant; the captain therefore deemed it better to purchaſe a ſmall ſchooner in the road, which was 34 feet long, for which he gave 1000 rix-dollars. Mr. Wanjon cheerfully took upon himſelf to anſwer this demand, the captain finding it ſomewhat difficult to raiſe money. This gentleman alſo provided him with proper means of defence, the coaſt of Java being frequently infeſted with ſmall piratical veſſels. The captain, therefore, received of Mr. Wanjon, as a loan, to be returned at Batavia, four braſs ſwivel guns, and 14 ſtand of ſmall arms, with ſufficient ammunition.

This ſchooner, which received the name of his Majeſty's ſchooner Reſource, was immediately fitted for ſea. In the mean time the governor ſent the captain a preſent of ſome fine plants, which, for want of ſufficient room in the packet by which he returned to Europe, the captain was unfortunately obliged to leave at Batavia. Mr. Wanjon likewiſe delivered him ſome ſeeds, for his Majeſty's garden at Kew; which were accordingly delivered: alſo ſome of the mountain rice, cultivated at Timor on the dry land, which was forwarded to his Majeſty's botanic garden at St. Vincent, and other parts in the Weſt-Indies.

On the 20th of July Mr. David Nelſon, the botaniſt, died of an inflammatory fever. The captain ſincerely regretted the loſs of this valuable and good man. He was interred the next day, behind the chapel, in the burying-ground appropriated to the Europeans of the town. The body was carried by twelve ſoldiers dreſſed in black, preceded by the miniſter; Capt. Bligh followed next, and Mr. Wanjon, the ſecond governor; then ten gentlemen of the town, and the officers of the harbour; after whom Capt. Bligh's officers and people.

On the 19th of Auguſt, the ſchooner being revictualled and ready for ſea, notice thereof was given. Capt. Bligh took an affectionate leave of the hoſpital, and friendly inhabitants of Coupang; and having embarked on the 20th, in the afternoon, they ſailed. While running out of the harbour, they exchanged ſalutes with the fort and ſhipping, having the launch by which they were ſo miraculouſly preſerved in tow. The weather was fair, and they had a moderate breeze at S. E. they ſteered N. W. by N.

On the 22d they ſaw the iſland Flores to the northward, diſtant about ten leagues. There are two high peaked mountains, bearing N. half E. and N. N. W. which reſemble each other in ſhape, the weſternmoſt being a volcano. The country near the ſea-coaſt is fine and open, but the interior parts of this place are woody and mountainous.

On the 25th, at noon, they were off Toorn's

Iſland, which bore N. W. by N. about four leagues diſtant. This iſland is about four leagues in circumference, and appears very irregular and craggy. The land near the ſhore is low and woody, and on the S. W. part of the iſland there is a curious high peak.

On the 27th they were near the Straits of Mengaryn: they then ſteered for the ſtraits of Sapi, intending to paſs through, but there being ſtrong currents ſetting to the S. E. for want of ſufficient wind to enable them to ſtem, they were obliged to decline their intention. Accordingly, they ſteered again for the Straits of Mengaryn, and on the 29th, being favoured with a freſh breeze from the S. S. E. they ran through them in the afternoon. After which they kept to the weſtward, and ran along the N. ſide of the iſland Sumbawa, near the coaſt of which is a very high mountain, and at the foot many runs of good water, by which veſſels may be readily ſupplied.

On the night of the 31ſt they kept diligently under arms, as ſeveral proas were ſeen rowing about them.

On the 3d, 4th, and 5th, they continued ſailing along the N. ſide of the Iſland Lombock, on which there is a very high mountain: indeed the iſlands hereabouts are generally diſtinguiſhed by high mountains. This iſland appears to be exceedingly well covered with wood. During the nights of theſe three days they perceived fires upon the high lands, at a diſtance from the coaſt.

The high land of Cape Sandana was ſeen in the afternoon of the 6th, which is the N. E. part of Java. This is a low cape, projecting from the high land already noticed: it appeared in latitude 7 deg. 46 min. S. in longitude from Coupang 11 deg. 33 min. W. They were off this cape the next day, and ſteered to the weſtward along the coaſt of Java.

On the 10th, at noon, they anchored off Paſſourwang, which is a Dutch ſettlement on the coaſt of Java, in two fathoms, about half a league diſtant from ſhore; the entrance of the river bearing S. W. This coaſt is ſo exceedingly ſhoal, that large veſſels are obliged to anchor about four miles diſtant from land.

As ſoon as the veſſel was ſecured, the captain went in his boat on ſhore. A few mangrove buſhes were growing on the banks of the river, near the entrance, which were muddy. They ſaw ſome hogs running among theſe, and others which were dead, and in ſuch a putrified ſtate as to render the place exceedingly offenſive, and make the captain heartily ſorry of having approached it. When they had gone about a mile up the river, (the courſe of which was ſerpentine) they diſcovered a very pleaſant country. Having landed at a ſmall but well-conſtructed fort, they met with a very cordial reception from the commandant, M. Adrian Van Rye. The captain now took a pilot to conduct them to Sourabya, having ſent on board a ſmall bullock, and other proviſions, by the return of the boat.

The country of Paſſourwang is very well cultivated, and the houſes neatly built. Rice is the chief produce of this ſettlement, of which large quantities are exported. It appears to be a well-regulated buſy ſettlement. They have good roads, and ports are eſtabliſhed along the coaſt. There are but few Dutch here, but a great number of the Javaneſe: their chief maintains great ſplendor and magnificence.

Paſſourwang lies in latitude 7 deg. 36 min. S. in longitude 1 deg. 44 min. W. of Cape Sandana.

On the 11th, about noon, they ſailed, and in the evening of the next day anchored in about ſeven fathoms in Sourabya road, where they found ſeven ſquare-rigged and ſeveral ſmaller veſſels riding: the flag-ſtaff bore S. 1-4th W. about one mile diſtant from ſhore. It was now too late to ſend a boat on ſhore.

On the 13th, before it was day-light, three guard-boats, agreeable to the general orders which are iſſued here concerning the firſt arrival of all ſtrange veſſels, ſtationed themſelves near the Reſource, and informed the captain that he muſt neither land nor ſend a boat on ſhore till permiſſion was ſent, which was not till nine in the evening; whereupon the guard-boats immediately left them.

The governor, M. Ant. Barkay, and M. de Boſe, commandant of the troops, received the captain with great civility. Theſe gentlemen behaved exceedingly kind and hoſpitably, and adviſed the captain to remain till the 16th, when he would be in leſs danger of pirates, as ſome armed veſſels were to ſail at that time, with whom he might keep company.

This place being ſituated on the banks of a river, about a mile and a half diſtant from the ſhore, only the flag-ſtaff can be ſeen from the road. Veſſels of 100 tons burthen can navigate the river with eaſe up to the town. On one ſide the bank is very commodious for tracking. There is a conſiderable trade carried on here by the Chineſe, who have a town on the ſide of the river oppoſite to Sourabya.

The country is exceedingly pleaſant near the town: it is flat, and the ſoil light, ſo that they plow with a ſingle bullock. They have a fine breed of horſes, which are very handſome, and remarkably ſtrong, though ſmall. A number of fierce tygers infeſt the interior parts of the country near the mountains, on which account travelling inland is very dangerous.

Capt. Bligh was introduced by M. Barkay and M. de Boſe to two of the principal Javaneſe. They were attended with ſeveral men, who were armed with pikes, and arranged in great military order. There was a concert of muſic here for their entertainment, which conſiſted of ſongs, drums, and a fiddle with two ſtrings. Capt. Bligh hired a pilot here to conduct them to Batavia.

They left Sourabya on the 17th, in company with three proas. About noon they anchored at Creſſey, a town belonging to the Dutch, with a ſmall fort. Having ſtaid about two hours here, they weighed. This place was in latitude 7 deg. 9 min. S. in longitude from Cape Sandana 1 deg. 55 min. W.

On the 18th they paſſed the Straits of Medura, along the coaſt of Java. Their ſoundings were regular all the way to Samarang, off which place they anchored in the afternoon of the 22d.

The ſhoalneſs of the coaſt renders the road of Samarang exceedingly inconvenient, both on account of the landing, which is in a river that cannot be entered before half flood, and on account of the great diſtance that large veſſels (whereof there were a great number) are obliged to lie from the ſhore.

Capt. Bligh was met at the landing-place by the equipage maſter, who provided him with a carriage to the governor's houſe, which was about two miles from the town of Samarang. The captain requeſted leave to recruit their proviſions, and get a new main-maſt, having ſprung theirs in the paſſage from Sourabya: permiſſion was accordingly granted.

The town of Samarang is well fortified: it is ſurrounded by a wall and a ditch, and next to Batavia is the moſt conſiderable ſettlement that the Dutch enjoy in Java. Proviſions are exceedingly cheap here. Their buildings are good. They have an excellent hoſpital; and a public ſchool, intended chiefly for mathematical inſtruction. They have alſo a good theatre.

Samarang lies in latitude 6 deg. 57 min. S. in longitude from Cape Sandana 40 deg. 7 min. W.

The governor having directed a galley mounting ſix ſwivels to accompany the Reſource, they left Samarang together on the 26th, and on the 1ſt of October anchored in Batavia road.

CHAPTER IV.

Captain Bligh's Introduction to the Sabander and Governor-General of Batavia—Meets with a polite Reception—His Requeſts granted—The Captain taken ill—Removed to a Country-Houſe—Somewhat better—Obliged to ſeparate from his People—Death of Thomas Hall—Examination &c. of the Officers and People—Captain Bligh, his Clerk, and a Seaman embark on Board the Vlydte Packet—Paſſage to England—Concluſion.

THE Captain having landed at a houſe near the river, where it is cuſtomary for ſtrangers to go and give an account of themſelves, went on ſhore in the afternoon. He was introduced to Mr. Englehard, the ſabander, by a Malay gentleman, whoſe reſidence was in the environs of the city, on the ſide neareſt the ſhipping.

The ſabander conducted the captain to the governor-general, from whom he met with a very polite reception. The captain informed him of all the circumſtances relating to the mutiny, &c. and requeſted his excellency's permiſſion to embark in the firſt veſſel that ſailed for England: previous to which he alſo requeſted that his people might be taken care of, and that he ſhould have leave to diſpoſe of the ſchooner and launch. The governor-general chearfully complied with theſe requeſts. Captain Bligh then took his leave, and having returned with the ſabander, all the articles he wanted were committed to paper in due form, in order to be laid before the council the ſucceeding day.

Captain Bligh had brought from the governor of Coupang, addreſſed to the governor-general at Batavia, a full account of his voyage and diſtreſſes, which had been tranſlated into Dutch, according to the captain's information.

The captain, during his ſtay at Batavia, lodged in a large hotel, which is entirely appropriated to the uſe of ſtrangers: ſtrangers not being allowed to reſide at any other place. Notwithſtanding it is ſituated near the great river, in the moſt wholeſome and airy part of the city, yet owing to its extreme heat, the captain was taken very ill in the night, with a violent pain in his head.

On the 2d the ſabander and Captain Bligh attended the council, who ſat at nine o'clock in the morning, and complied with every thing the captain deſired.

The captain's indiſpoſition encreaſed very much on his return to the hotel, and a violent fever enſued. The ſabander, appriſed of his ſituation, immediately brought Mr. Aanſorp, the head-ſurgeon of the town-hoſpital, to ſee him: in the courſe of the day the fever abated, but the head-ach ſtill continued. The captain was invited this day to dine with the governor-general, but was prevented by his indiſpoſition.

The captain ſolicited permiſſion to hire a houſe in the country, as he ſtill retained a ſevere head-ach, owing to the cloſeneſs and heat of his lodging in the hotel. His excellency not only complied with his requeſt, but immediately iſſued orders that he ſhould be accommodated at the houſe of Mr. Sparling, the phyſician or ſurgeon-general, which was about four miles from the city.

Thomas Hall, one of the captain's men, being very ill of a flux, was likewiſe ſent with permiſſion to the country-hoſpital, which building is very airy and convenient.

On the 6th the captain was conveyed at ſun-riſe to Mr. Sparling's houſe, where every accommodation was prepared. He was ſo benefitted by the change of air, that in the evening he was able to pay a viſit to the governor-general, with Mr. Sparling, at one of his country-ſeats, where he found a numerous company; all the ladies being attired in the Malay faſhion, and richly ornamented. Several of the company invited the captain to their country-houſes, and ſome very kindly preſſed him to make their reſidence his abode till his health returned.

Captain Bligh ſtill continued very ill, and Mr. Sparling thinking it neceſſary, towards the re-eſtabliſhment of his health, that he ſhould leave Batavia as ſoon as poſſible, repreſented his ſituation to the governor-general, who was of opinion that the homeward-bound veſſels were ſo much crowded, that it would be impoſſible for all the captain's people to be accommodated in one ſhip, therefore he deemed it the moſt commodious and beſt way, to ſend them home in different veſſels. A ſeparation being thus unavoidable, the captain reſolved upon following the advice of Mr. Sparling, and accordingly notified to his excellency, a wiſh to embark in a packet that was to ſail for England in a week's time, and to take with him, by his permiſſion, as many of his people as was convenient. He was informed that according to his deſire, he ſhould be accommodated with a paſſage for himſelf and two of his people (the veſſel being too ſmall to admit of more) and that the reſt of his men ſhould be conveyed to England as ſoon as poſſible.

On the 10th the Reſource was ſold by auction for 295 rix-dollars: ſhe was purchaſed by a Captain John Eddie, an Engliſhman, who commanded an Engliſh veſſel from Bengal.

The launch was likewiſe ſold by auction, which the captain would not have parted with, but found it inconvenient to take her to Europe. Thomas Hall died at the hoſpital this day.

On the 16th Captain Bligh, his clerk John Samuel, and John Smith a ſeaman, embarked on board the Vlydte packet, commanded by Captain Peter Couvret, bound for Middleburgh. They weighed anchor and ſailed out of the road about ſeven o'clock.

On the 18th they paſſed the ſtraights of Sunda, and ſteered to the N. of the Coco's Iſles.

No material occurrence took place during their paſſage to the Cape of Good Hope. On the 16th of December they anchored in Table Bay.

Early on the 17th the captain went on ſhore and paid his reſpects to his excellency, M. Vander Graaf, who received him very cordially, and having ſettled all neceſſary buſineſs, they departed from the cape the 2d of January 1790, and loſt ſight of land the next day. On the 15th the iſland St. Helena was in ſight, and on the 21ſt the iſland Aſcenſion. On the 10th of February they had a N. E. wind, which blowing freſh, covered their ſails with a fine orange-coloured duſt.

On the 13th of March they diſcovered the hill of Portland, and on the 14th in the evening Capt. Bligh left the packet, and was landed at Portſmouth by an Iſle of Wight boat.

About a fortnight after Captain Bligh's departure, Mr. Elphinſtone, the maſter's mate, and Peter Linkletter, a ſeaman, died. The remainder of his people were provided with paſſages in the earlieſt ſhips. One Robert Lamb died on his paſſage; alſo Surgeon Ledward: the reſt arrived ſafe.

Having now laid before the Public a full and circumſtantial account of Captain Bligh's voyage, loſs of the Bounty, and conſequent diſtreſſes; curioſity, no doubt, being excited to know what became of Chriſtian, the mutineer, and his vile accomplices, we ſhall, for the further ſatisfaction of our numerous Readers, proceed next with Captain EDWARDS's *Voyage in his Majeſty's Frigate* PANDORA, *which for its ſeveral Diſcoveries, and the various Misfortunes that befel the Crew during their narrow eſcape from Shipwreck and Famine, will be found as intereſting and entertaining as this already related; and, ſeeing the ſame exactneſs and accuracy ſhall ſtill be preſerved, equally worthy of the Public's patronage.*

A NEW, COMPLETE, AND GENUINE
HISTORY OF
A VOYAGE ROUND the WORLD,
IN
His Majeſty's Frigate PANDORA,
UNDER THE COMMAND OF
Captain EDWARD EDWARDS,
Undertaken and Performed in 1790, 1791, and 1792.
WITH SEVERAL INTERESTING ANECDOTES OF THE
MUTINEERS, Christian, Churchill, &c. &c. who piratically carried off the BOUNTY.
Including all the Discoveries, Adventures, Information, &c. contained in the Journals and Communications of
Captain Edwards, Surgeon Hamilton, Lieutenants Hayward, Corner, Meſſ. Cunningham, Innes, and ſeveral of the other Officers and Gentlemen.

Being an Entire New History of all thoſe Intereſting Occurrences, Discoveries, &c. made in the SOUTH SEA; with a Full and Circumſtantial Account of the ſeveral Distresses which were endured through Shipwreck and Famine, in a Voyage between ENDEAVOUR STRAITS and the ISLANDS of TIMOR, in four open Boats—the *Pinnace, Red Yaul, Launch,* and *Blue Yaul*; being the Diſtance of eleven Hundred Miles.

Which, with the ſeveral other VOYAGES and TRAVELS to be included in this Collection, will be Embelliſhed with a Variety of Elegant CHARTS, MAPS, and other COPPER-PLATES, Engraved by Eminent Artiſts.

INTRODUCTION.

TWO very urgent reaſons were the occaſion of the following voyage: firſt, it was thought neceſſary that the ſtraits of Endeavour ſhould be minutely ſurveyed, in order that the paſſage to Botany Bay might be accompliſhed with greater eaſe and facility; and ſecondly, it being judged highly eſſential, that every poſſible means ſhould be immediately taken, of bringing to exemplary puniſhment the audacious mutineers of his Majeſty's late ſhip the Bounty, it being of the moſt ſerious conſequence to government, for if ſuch villainy was not checked and expoſed in time, every future project of navigation might not only be fruſtrated, but great expences incurred for nothing.

Captain Bligh, during his ſhort ſtay at the Cape of Good Hope, Batavia, &c. let no opportunity ſlip of giving every neceſſary information relative to this unfortunate buſineſs, for the ſake of ſpeedily detecting and bringing to judgment the authors of his diſtreſs. He left a letter at the Cape of Good Hope, to be forwarded to Governor Phillips at Port Jackſon, by the firſt opportunity. He alſo wrote to Lord Cornwallis from Batavia, and every letter contained a ſhort account of his voyage, with a deſcriptive liſt of the pirates, ſo that all India was apprized of the mutiny, and conſequently prepared for ſeizing the offenders.

On the 10th of Auguſt 1790, Captain Edwards was appointed by government to put in commiſſion at Chatham, and take command of the Pandora frigate, of twenty-four guns, and a hundred and ſixty men.

Their progreſs was however retarded by a great naval armament, which was then equipping. This prevented that neceſſary care and attention which were abſolutely eſſential, in reſpect to the men choſen for this voyage; conſequently from ſome infected clothes, a contagious diſtemper took place, which from its ſeverity and malignant nature, occaſioned much diſtreſs during the beginning of their voyage; particularly as the veſſel afforded no proper accommodations for ſick people, owing to its confined ſtate.

A great quantity of proviſions and ſtores were prepared; every officer's cabin, and even the captain's, were filled therewith, it being deemed proper to take an additional complement of naval ſtores, for the purpoſe of refitting the Bounty, if they ſhould have the good fortune to recover her.

Every article that promiſed to be of the leaſt utility was now carefully provided and put on board; antiſcorbutics eſpecially to guard againſt the ſcurvy: alſo a time-keeper, and a quantity of iron, to be made into knives, &c. for the purpoſe of trading with the natives. It was alſo their intention to bring home ſome plants of the bread-fruit-tree, that the laudable intentions of government ſhould not be entirely fruſtrated by the piratical ſeizure of his Majeſty's ſhip the Bounty. Though it was impoſſible to provide all the accommodations neceſſary, as the veſſel could not contain them, yet the officers moſt generouſly agreed among themſelves to give up their cabins, and, in ſhort, to ſacrifice every comfort and convenience, for the purpoſe of making room for whatever boxes of plants fortune might put into their way. Such manly and philanthropic reſolutions were certainly worthy the higheſt commendation.

Having dropped down to Sheerneſs, they ſaluted Admiral Dalrymple and Sir Richard King, then paſſing the Downs, arrived at Portſmouth, where the officers and men received ſix months pay in advance, and their final directions.

CHAP.

CHAPTER I.

A Malignant Fever takes place—An Alarm—Of no conſequence—Anchorage in Santa Cruz—The Fever rages—Complete their Watering, &c. and leave the Iſland—Anchor at Rio Janeiro—The Captain keeps up the Dignity of the Britiſh Flag—Viſits the Vice-Roy—Politely received—Deſcription of the Public Gardens—The Coloniſts of Rio Janeiro inclined to Rebellion—Departure—Progreſs—Surgeon Hamilton's Remarks on the ſalutary Articles which relieved the Seamen—Anchor in Matavy Bay—Purſue the Mutineers—Take their Boat, &c.—Tranſactions.

HAVING paſſed the white clifts of Albion, they proceeded with a favourable breeze. It was about this time that ſeveral of the crew were taken ill: Mr. Innes, the ſurgeon's only mate, happened to be the firſt, and in a few days after 35 were confined to their beds. The crouded ſtate of the veſſel rendered their ſituation ſtill more diſtreſſing; however, every relief that could be ſuggeſted was humanely offered by Capt. Edwards.

While approaching the latitude of Madeira, a ſail was perceived bearing down upon them. Having before their departure from England heard ſome talk of a Spaniſh war, they immediately conjectured by her miſtaken appearance that this was a ſhip of war, and accordingly prepared for action: however, as ſoon as their guns were run out, and all hands at quarters got along-ſide, they diſcovered their miſtake, and found her to be his Majeſty's ſhip the Shark, which had been diſpatched with orders of recall to Admiral Corniſh, who a little before their departure from Spithead had ſailed for the Weſt-Indies.

The weather was now exceedingly bad, and they had ſeveral ſqualls with thunder, lightning, rain, &c.

Having paſſed the peak of Teneriffe, they came to anchor two days after in the road of Santa Cruz, and were immediately boarded by the port maſter, who ſaid that a difference with the Engliſh was expected, but matters were now happily ſettled between the Courts of St. James's and Madrid.

The malignant fever which had taken place on their leaving England began now to rage very violently: almoſt every man was laid up in his turn, and ſeveral of the convaleſcents had a relapſe upon approaching the line: happily they had on board every article which was eſſential towards the preſervation of health, and which had been conſiderately provided by the Lords of the Admiralty previous to their ſailing: in conſequence of which timely relief there is little doubt but ſeveral lives were preſerved.

White's ventilator was made uſe of for the purpoſe of evacuating the foul air from below, the air being at this time intolerably hot; but, on account of the confined ſtate of the veſſel, the machine had not the deſired effect.

During their ſtay at Santa Cruz, they met with much civility from the inhabitants, who notwithſtanding were ſomewhat reſerved, it being their diſpoſition. Having completed their water from an aqueduct, which is conſtructed with great ſkill, and exceedingly commodious for watering veſſels, they received a plentiful quantity of lemons, oranges, pomegranates, bananas, &c. &c. and immediately departed from the iſland.

There were ſeveral water-ſpouts about the veſſel, at which they fired ſeveral guns. Nothing material occurred till the 28th of December, when they ſaw the land of the Brazils; and on the 30th they ſaluted the fort at Rio Janiero with 15 guns, which was returned with an equal number.

As ſoon as they anchored, an officer acquainted the captain, that according to their cuſtom they muſt ſend a party of ſoldiers on board; but this Captain Edwards would not agree to, and therefore refuſed to go on ſhore to viſit the viceroy till this ceremony was countermanded.

Capt. Edwards having thus ſupported the dignity of the Britiſh flag, now paid his reſpects to the viceroy. They met with a very kind reception. The viceroy's ſuit of carriages were ordered to attend the Britiſh officers; and M. le Font, the ſurgeon-general, who ſpoke Engliſh with eaſe and fluency, ſhewed them every mark of politeneſs and attention on the occaſion: he carried them through the principal ſtreets, and introduced them to the public gardens, built by the late viceroy, and which were laid out with great taſte and expence.

"All the extremity of the garden is a fine terrace, "which commands a view of the water, and is frequented by people of faſhion as their grand mall: "at each end of the terrace there is an octagonal "built room, ſuperbly furniſhed, where afternoon "entertainments are ſometimes given. On the "pannels are painted the various productions and "commerce of South America, repreſenting the "diamond fiſhery, and the proceſs of the indigo "trade; the rice grounds and harveſt, ſugar plantation, South-Sea whale fiſhery, &c. theſe were "interſperſed with views of the country, and the "quadrupeds that inhabit thoſe parts. The ceilings "contained all the variety, the one of the fiſh, the "other of the fowl of that continent. The compartments of the ceiling of the one room was enriched "in ſhell-work with all the variegated ſhells of that "country, and in the compartments are delineated "all the variety of fiſh that the coaſt of South-America produces. The other copartment is "enriched with feathers, and ſo inimitably blended "as to produce the happieſt effect. In this ceiling "are painted all the birds and fowls of the country, "in all their ſplendid elegance of plumage. The "ſofas and furniture are rich in the extreme; and "in this elegant receſs an idle traveller may have "an agreeable lounge, and at one view comprehend the whole natural hiſtory of this vaſt continent. In the centre of the terrace there is a "jet d'eau, in form of a large palm-tree, made of "copper, which at pleaſure may be made to ſpout "water from the extremity of all the leaves. This "tree ſtands on a well-diſpoſed grotto, which riſes "from the gravel-walk below to the level of the "terrace, and terminates the view of the principal "walk. Near the foot of the grotto two large "alligators, made of copper, are continually diſcharging water into a handſome baſon of white "marble, filled with gold and ſilver fiſhes.

"There are fine orangeries, and lofty covered "arbours, in different parts of the garden, capable "of containing a thouſand people. Here the cyprian nymphs hold their nocturnal revels; but "intrigue is attended with great danger, as the "ſtilletto is in general uſe, and aſſaſſination frequent, the men being of a jealous ſanguinary turn, "and the women fond of gallantry, who never appear in public unveiled. When Bouganville, the "French circumnavigator, called here, his chaplain "was aſſaſſinated in an affray of that kind; but, "ſince that accident, orders were given that a "commiſſioned officer ſhould attend all foreign "officers, and a ſoldier the privates; and all ſtrangers, on landing, are conducted to the main-guard for their eſcort. This anſwers a double "purpoſe, as they are much afraid of ſtrangers "ſmuggling, or carrying money out of the country, under the maſk of perſonal protection, every "motion is watched and ſcrutinized, nor can any "thing be purchaſed of a merchant till he has "ſettled with the officer of the police how much "he ſhall exact for his goods."

They likewiſe met with great civility from the officers of the army, who gave them ſome preſents of red bird ſkins, in order to procure the friendſhip of thoſe natives whom they expected to meet.

Lieutenants Hayward and Corner were particularly aſſiduous in procuring thoſe plants, &c. which they thought might be of uſe to cultivate at Otaheite, and which they nurſed with peculiar care for that purpoſe.

During their ſtay here a conſpiracy was detected, as the ſpirit of revolt is very prevalent among the people, to the great injury of their trade. In conſequence of this, ſeveral people of diſtinction were thrown into dungeons, while a ſtrong guard were placed over them, to prevent all intercourſe: ſince, in order to check this rebellious diſpoſition, a regiment of black ſlaves, willing enough to bear arms againſt their oppreſſive maſters, is embodied.

Their ſlaves, whom they keep in chains, execute all their public works, during which they perform a kind of melancholy dirge in recitative, which being accompanied with the clanking of their chains, renders the muſic exceedingly mournful.

Having in our preceding voyages given a deſcription of the town, buildings, &c. we ſhall with Capt. Edwards take leave of the place, who on the 8th of January, early in the morning, proceeded on his voyage.

While running down the coaſt of the Brazils, they perceived ſeveral ſpermaceti whales. Having paſſed by the Straits of Magellan, on the 31ſt they ſaw Cape St. Juan, Staten and New Year's Iſlands.

The weather now became exceedingly cold, while thoſe who had been ſo dangerouſly indiſpoſed experienced a ſpeedy recovery. As they advanced, having fortunately encountered the tempeſtuous regions of Cape Horn, the weather became exceedingly pleaſant, and the health of the people quite eſtabliſhed.

We ſhall here, for the benefit of navigators in general, make mention of thoſe things to which Surgeon Hamilton imputes the recovery of the men.

The ſour crout kept during the voyage in the higheſt perfection, and was often eat as a ſallad with vinegar, in preference to recent cut vegetables from the ſhore. A caſk of this grand antiſcorbutic was kept open for the crew to eat as much of as they pleaſed; from which they derived much ſalutary benefit.

Likewiſe the eſſence of malt afforded a delightful beverage, and, with the addition of a little hops, in the warmeſt climates, made as good ſtrong beer as could be procured in England. They were likewiſe ſupplied with malt in grain, but preferred the eſſence, it being leſs liable to decay, and takes up but little room, which is a very valuable conſideration in long voyages.

They alſo found great benefit from cocoa, which was much reliſhed by the men, takes up little room, and affords great nouriſhment. Indeed, it is the only article of nouriſhment in ſea victualling; for what can in reaſon be expected from beef or pork, after it has been ſalted a year or two?

They found much advantage from wheat, which they rough ground in a mill occaſionally as they wanted it, and with the addition of a little brown ſugar made it a pleaſant nouriſhing diet, of which the men were extremely fond. Another great advantage attending it, is, that it does not require half the quantity of water which peaſe do.

They likewiſe found new bread extremely beneficial to the ſick and convaleſcent, and availed themſelves of every opportunity of baking for half the complement at a time. As the flour keeps ſo much longer ſound than biſcuit, it may be needleſs to remark its ſuperior advantages; beſides, it is not liable to be damaged by water, or otherwiſe, ſo much as bread, as a cruſt forms outſide, which protects the reſt. It likewiſe is preferable in point of ſtowage.

The dividing the people into three watches had double good effect, as it gave them longer time to ſleep, and dry themſelves before they turned in; and as the majority of the crew conſiſted of landſmen, the fewer there were on deck the more neceſſary they found their exertions in acquiring a due knowledge of the ſervice.

They unfortunately ſprung a leak in the afterpart of the veſſel, which reached the bread-room, and damaged a great quantity thereof: 1515 lb. they were obliged to throw overboard, beſides which there remained a great quantity ſtill injured, which was kept for the uſe of the cattle.

On the 4th of March they ſaw Eaſter Iſland. They now ſet the forge to work, and the armourers were employed in making knives, and other ſmall articles, for the ſake of trading with the natives.

On the 16th they diſcovered a lagoon iſland, of about four miles extent, which they called Ducie's Iſland, in honour of Lord Ducie. It ſeemed to be well covered with wood, but there was no appearance of inhabitants.

On the 17th they diſcovered another, which they called Lord Hood's Iſland. This was about ſix miles long. They ſaw a great many trees, but no ſign of inhabitants.

On the 19th they diſcovered another, which they called Carysfort Iſland, in honour of Lord Carysfort. This was much the ſame of Ducie's Iſland.

On the 22d they paſſed Maitea, and on the 23d anchored in Matavy bay in the iſland of Otaheite.

Early in the morning they were viſited by a canoe with one native, who, by embraces and ſalutes, as ſoon as he came on board, expreſſed great joy on ſeeing them. When Lieut. Hayward was introduced to him, who had been purpoſely concealed from him on his firſt coming, it is impoſſible to deſcribe his aſtoniſhment.

From this man it was underſtood that the mutineers had been on the iſland, and had deceived the natives, by informing them that Capt. Bligh had gone to ſettle at Whyteetakee, and that Capt Cook was living there: however, the truth of this being ſuſpected, and Chriſtian apprehenſive of ſome evil deſigns, left Otaheite with nine of his party in the Bounty.

Lieutenants Corner and Hayward were now diſpatched in the launch and pinnace, with 26 men, to the N. W. part of the iſland, to make what further diſcoveries they could reſpecting the mutineers. Joſeph Coleman, who was armourer of the Bounty, came on board the Pandora; and, in a ſhort time after, two of the Bounty's midſhipmen, and afterwards Richard Skinner.

On the 25th the launch and pinnace returned, having chaced the mutineers on ſhore, and taken poſſeſſion of their boat. The lieutenants reported, that the mutineers had taken refuge in the heights, and claimed the protection of Tamatrah, a chief in Papara, who was the legal king of Otaheite, as the family of Otoo were deemed uſurpers.

On the 27th the captain ſent his boat with a preſent of ſome rum to the king Otoo, with an invitation, which he accepted, and the next day his majeſty, with his family and attendants, among whom was Oedidee, a chief, viſited the Pandora.

King Otoo has two queens at Tiaraboo. They all three ſleep together, and live in the moſt perfect harmony, though of different ages, for his principal queen, who is a robuſt coarſe-looking woman, is about thirty, and the other, a handſome delicate creature, whoſe name is Alredy, ſcarcely ſixteen.

Lieut. Corner was now appointed to march acroſs the country with a detachment of men, and if poſſible get between the mountains and mutineers. This gentleman was deemed exceedingly capable of the taſk, having during his youth bore a commiſſion in the land ſervice.

Lieut. Hayward was likewiſe appointed to embark

bark by water, with another party, and ſeveral of the chiefs, particularly Oedidee, accompanied him. The lieutenant likewiſe took one Brown, an Engliſhman, who had been left on ſhore by an American veſſel that had viſited the place, on account of his being unruly and troubleſome on board. This man was, however, exceedingly cunning and active, and of great utility on thoſe occaſions. He had now been among the natives upwards of twelve months, during which he became accuſtomed to all their manners, and had acquired ſufficient knowledge of their language.

On the 28th Lieutenant Corner landed on Point Venus with his party. The chiefs who accompanied him, acted as conductors, and a number of the common people aſſiſted in carrying the ammunition over the heights: and indeed their aſſiſtance was abſolutely neceſſary, having to croſs a rapid cataract, or river, which came down from the mountains, and formed ſo many curves. They had to ford it ſixteen times in the courſe of their journey, which gave evident proofs of the ſuperior ſtrength of the natives over the Engliſh ſeamen. The former went over with eaſe, where the ſailors could not ſtem the rapidity of the torrent without their help. They were, however, forced to ſend to the ſhip for ropes and tackles to gain ſome heights, which otherwiſe they could not aſcend.

Having halted awhile, the lieutenant expreſſed a wiſh to one of the natives for ſomething to eat, who told him he might be ſupplied with plenty of victuals ready dreſſed; upon this he immediately ran to a temple, where meat had been regularly ſerved to their god, and came running with a roaſted pig, that had been preſented that day. This ſtriking inſtance of impiety ſtartled the Lieutenant; but the native aſſured him that the god had more than he could poſſibly make uſe of.

During this expedition they could ſcarcely reſtrain the natives from committing depredations on the Cava grounds of the upper diſtricts, as they were on the eve of a war with them, reſpecting the hereditary right of the crown.

Having now arrived at the reſidence of a great chief, they met with a very kind and hoſpitable reception; after being refreſhed with plenty of meat and drink, the officer was conducted by the chief to viſit the morai of the dead chief his father. Mr. Corner judging it neceſſary, by every mark of attention, to gain the good graces of this great man, ordered his party to draw up, and fire three vollies over the deceaſed, who was brought out in his beſt new cloaths on the occaſion; but the burning cartridge from one of the muſkets unfortunately ſet fire to the paper cloaths of the dead chief. This unlucky diſaſter threw the ſon into the greateſt perplexity; for, agreeable to their laws, his title and eſtate would be forfeited to the next heir if the corpſe of his father be either ſtolen or otherwiſe injured.

In the mean time Lieutenant Hayward and his party were buſy. Tamarrah, the prince of the upper diſtrict, and of great conſequence, became now a very ſincere friend to the captain, on account of his liberal preſents, by which means they were conſiderably aſſiſted in their endeavours.

The mutineers having been cut off from every hope of reſource, the natives haraſſed them behind, while Lieutenant Hayward and his party advanced in front; under cover of night they had taken ſhelter in a hut in the woods, but were diſcovered by Brown, who creeping up to the place where they were aſleep, diſtinguiſhed from the natives by feeling their toes; as people unaccuſtomed to wear ſhoes are eaſily diſcovered from the ſpread of their toes. Next day Lieut. Hayward attacked them, but they grounded their arms without oppoſition, and were ſent down to the boat under a ſtrong guard, with their hands tied behind their backs.

Previous to this there were two natives killed; one was ſhot in the duſk of the evening by one of the centinels, who had his muſket twice beat out of his hand, from the natives pelting our party with large ſtones; but, the inſtant he was ſhot, ſome of his friends ruſhed in and carried off the body.

The other native was ſhot by the mutineers: when attacked by the natives, they took to a river. A ſtone being thrown by one of the natives at the wife, or woman, of one of the mutineers, enraged him ſo much, that he immediately ſhot the offender.

There was a priſon built, for their accommodation, on the quarter deck, that they might be ſecure, and apart from the ſhip's company; and that it might have every advantage of a free circulation of air, which rendered it the moſt deſirable place in the ſhip. Orders were likewiſe given that they ſhould be victualled, in every reſpect, the ſame as the ſhip's company, both in meat, liquor, and all the extra indulgencies, notwithſtanding the eſtabliſhed laws of the ſervice, which reſtricts priſoners to two-thirds allowance; but Capt. Edwards, conſidering how long they muſt needs be confined, behaved with the greateſt humanity.

A conſpiracy was formed among the natives on ſhore, to cut their cables, ſhould there happen to be a fierce gale from the ſea, which would admit of an opportunity. This however was timely diſcovered by Oripai, the king's brother, who was a chief of much ſenſe and penetration. The captain was not a little alarmed at this diſcovery, as ſeveral of the priſoners had been married to the daughters of the moſt reſpectable chiefs in the diſtrict, oppoſite to where they lay at anchor.

The captain experienced the greateſt civility from the king, his two brothers, and all the principal chiefs. Theſe expreſſed the greateſt anxiety for both his and his people's ſafety. While the priſoners were on board they kept watch during the night, and were remarkably vigilant for fear of the cables being injured, continually reminding the centinals of their duty, and ſpurring them on to keep a careful look-out.

The priſoners were daily viſited by their wives, who were permitted to bring their children; and the poor captive fathers lamenting over their tender offspring, rendered the ſcene truly diſtreſſing. Theſe unhappy men were ſupplied with all the delicacies that the country afforded, by their faithful wives, who on this occaſion demonſtrated the greateſt affection and tenderneſs.

On the 30th they received a formal viſit from the king, his two queens, and the chiefs, who on this occaſion had a band of muſic. The ladies had ſo much cloth wrapt round them, by which they were rendered ſo unwieldy and bulky, that it was with the greateſt difficulty they were got on board. The king brought a preſent of ſome hogs, bananas, cocoa-nuts, &c. Alſo a quantity of ready-dreſſed puddings.

The next day a grand heiva was ordered, for the entertainment of the captain and his officers, on Point Venus. A band of muſic was ordered to attend them as ſoon as they had landed, and they were conducted to the place where the king and his retinue were waiting to receive them. A ring was immediately made, and the entertainment began, which was ſimilar to thoſe already deſcribed.

The following circumſtance reſpecting Churchill, the principal ringleader of the mutineers, was related to the captain, which is a ſtriking inſtance of that real friendſhip which prevails among the natives. Churchill having become the friend of a great chief in the upper diſtricts, became on his death (as he died without iſſue) heir to his eſtate and title, agreeable to the law of Tyoſhip. Thompſon, however, of the Bounty, having fallen out with Churchill, ſhot him, which enraged the natives ſo much that to revenge the death of Churchill, their chief, they immediately deſtroyed Thompſon, and kept his ſkull to ſhow.

During the captain's ſtay here very few thefts were detected: they puniſhed the offenders by cutting off their hair, which occaſioned no little mortification and grief.

Coleman, the armourer of the Bounty, while here made a ſtill, and attempted to extract rum and ſugar from the ſugar-canes, in which he ſucceeded; but afterwards, dreading the dire effects of intoxication among his own people as well as the natives, he broke the ſtill and put an end to his intentions.

The captain ſtill continued to receive large preſents from the different chiefs towards his ſea ſtore. All the people had good allowance; each man having four pounds of freſh pork per day, beſides a due quantity of other things.

Capt. Edwards now notified his intention of departing, which was the occaſion of much conſternation among the natives. Some cows were promiſed to be ſent to the captain from a neighbouring iſland, if he could make it convenient to ſtay another week. The natives, it ſeems, had taken a diſlike to beef, having once killed a horſe inſtead of a cow, and finding the meat thereof diſagreeable, concluded it was all alike. They had likewiſe taken a diſlike to milk, which made them more indifferent about theſe uſeful animals. The captain left them a gooſe and a gander, with which they were very much pleaſed.

Mr. George Paſſmore, the maſter, an able and experienced maſter, ſurveyed the harbour during their ſtay.

Having completed their water from an excellent ſpring out of a rock cloſe to the water's edge at Oſſaree, they were now ready for ſea: previous to this they had amuſed ſeveral of the natives with a promiſe of carrying them to England with them, in order to ſecure their fidelity and honeſty, eſpecially thoſe who rendered themſelves the moſt uſeful. However, when they underſtood that they could get no bread in England, except by labour, they gave up all hopes of viſiting it. King Otoo, however, and his queen Eatea, were very ſolicitous to accompany Captain Edwards to England. The other queen, likewiſe, wiſhed to be of the party: however, Oripai and ſome other chiefs, vigorouſly oppoſed their going, as they expected to be ſoon called out to war.

They were ſo profuſe in their preſents, that both the decks and boats could ſcarcely hold the pigs, goats, fowls, fruit, &c. that were brought. On the day of their departure there was great mourning: king Otoo was extremely affected. Every canoe almoſt in the iſland attended, and in their way of grief they cut their heads with ſhells, bared their bodies, and made a diſmal yell during theſe mad actions. The king, and ſome of the chiefs, earneſtly requeſted to be remembered to King George.

The command of the tender, which was put in commiſſion, was now given to Mr. Oliver, the maſter's mate. There were eight men put on board of her, viz. Mr. Renouard, the midſhipman, James Dodd, a quarter-maſter, and ſix privates. She was about the ſize of a Graveſend boat, decked, and handſomely built.

CHAPTER II.

They proceed on their Voyage to Annamooka—Paſs York Iſland—Huaheine—Examine Ulietea and Otaha—Alſo Bolobola—A curious Spear purchaſed of the Natives of Whyteetakee—Make Palmerſton's Iſlands—The Jolly-boat loſt—Duke of York's Iſland—Duke of Clarence's ditto—Other Iſlands diſcovered—Anchor in Annamooka—Remarks.

ON the 8th of May they paſſed York Iſland, which is adjoining Otaheite, and under the government of Matuara, brother-in-law of Otoo. This iſland is about twelve miles in circumference: it is very high land, and exceedingly pleaſant.

On the 9th they reached Huaheine. The captain now diſpatched the boats with a party on ſhore in Owharre bay. Oedidee, the chief, being deſirous of accompanying theſe officers to Whyteetakee, went on ſhore with them, in order to gain what information they could reſpecting the mutineers.

On the 10th they examined Ulietea and Otaha. They were viſited here by ſeveral of the natives, with with they interchanged preſents, and then landed in Chamanen's bay. As yet they could get no intelligence of the mutineers.

On the 11th they examined Bolobola; and were viſited by Tatahoo the king. The inhabitants were of a more warlike diſpoſition than any other of the Society Iſlands; and on account of that national ferocity of character, are much careſſed by the Otaheitans and neighbouring iſlands. They are ſenſible of their pre-eminence, and boaſt of their country wherever they go. They are tatooed in a particular manner; ſeveral however of the other iſlanders are tatooed in the ſame faſhion. What was moſt ſingular, ſome had the glans of the penis entirely tatooed; and the captain's men, from being tatooed in the legs, arms, and breaſt, places of much leſs ſenſation, were often lame for a week, from the excruciating torture of the operation. Tatahoo likewiſe informed them there were no white men on Tubai, a ſmall iſland to the northward of Bolobola, and under his juriſdiction; nor upon Mauruah, another iſland in ſight, and to the weſtward of Bolobola. He alſo mentioned another iſland, which he called Mopehah. Here Oedidee went on ſhore; but getting drunk in meeting ſome of his old friends, he fell aſleep, and loſt his paſſage.

On the 12th they left Mauruah, and on the 13th loſt ſight of the Society Iſlands.

They now proceeded eaſtward of Whyteetakee, an iſland diſcovered by Captain Bligh, as already mentioned, and on the 19th made the iſland. They ſent the boat on ſhore, covered by the tender, to examine it; but found it a thing impoſſible for the Bounty to have been there; and the natives ſaid they had ſeen no white people. Theſe people were very diffident, and could not be prevailed upon to come on board. One of them recollected having ſeen Lieut. Hayward on board the Bounty. They bought of theſe natives a ſpear of moſt exquiſite workmanſhip: it was nine feet long, and cut in the form of a Gothic ſpire, all its ornaments being executed in a kind of alto relievo; which, from the ſlow progreſs they made with ſtone tools, muſt have coſt a great deal of time and labour.

One of the priſoners having deſired leave to ſpeak to the captain, now gave intelligence of thoſe iſlands which Chriſtian intended to have viſited.

The commander of the tender was deſired to be particular in guarding againſt ſurpriſe, and a rendezvous was alſo eſtabliſhed, in caſe of ſeparation. On the 22d of May they made Palmerſton's Iſlands.

A ſignal was made by the tender for the boats to be covered in landing; and ſome natives were ſeen rowing acroſs the lagoon to a conſiderable diſtance. Soon after their landing, Lieutenant Corner and his party diſcovered a yard and ſome ſpars marked Bounty, and the broad arrow upon them. When this intelligence was communicated to the ſhip, a ſignal was made to the party on ſhore to advance with great circumſpection, and to guard againſt ſurpriſe. Mr. Richards, the maſter's mate, went in the cutter, and took a ſtrict ſurvey of the iſland.

Lieutenants Hayward and Corner landed on the different iſles with cork-jackets; but the ſurf running very high all round, rendered it exceedingly dangerous, and in many places impracticable. Had they not been expert ſwimmers, in duty of this kind, they muſt have certainly been drowned, as they had not only themſelves and the party to take care of, but alſo the arms and ammunition to preſerve from the wet.

In the afternoon, about four o'clock, Mr. Sival, the midſhipman, came on board in the jolly-boat, and brought with him ſeveral very curious ſtained canoes, repreſenting the figures of men, fiſhes, and beaſts. He had committed ſome miſtake in the orders he was ſent to execute, and was ordered to return immediately to rectify it; but the boat did not come back again. A few minutes after ſhe left the ſhip, the weather became thick and hazy, and began to blow freſh; ſo that, even with the aſſiſtance of glaſſes, they could not ſee whether ſhe made the ſhore or not. It continued to blow during the night, ſo as to prevent the party on ſhore from coming on board. They had been employed during the day in ſearching all the iſlands with particular attention, having every reaſon to ſuſpect the mutineers were there, from finding the Bounty's yard and ſpars. But at laſt, wore out with fatigue in marching, and ſwimming through ſo many reefs, and having no victuals the whole day, in the evening they began to forage for ſomething to eat. The gigantic cockle was the only thing that preſented. Of the ſhell of one they made a kettle, to boil ſome junks of it in. Some of theſe cockles are larger than three men can carry. Of this coarſe fare and ſome cocoa-nuts, by the aſſiſtance of a good appetite, they made a tolerable hearty ſupper; they then ſet the watch, and went to ſleep. They had thrown a large nut on the fire before they lay down, and forgot it; but in the middle of the night the milk of the cocoa-nut became ſo expanded with the heat, that it burſt with a great exploſion. Their minds had been ſo much engaged in the courſe of the day with the enterpriſe they were employed in, expecting muſkets to be fired at them from every buſh, that they all jumped up, ſeized their arms, and were ſome time before they were convinced of their error.

On the 23d the boats returned; but there was no intelligence of the jolly-boat. The tender received a freſh ſupply of proviſions and ammunition; at the ſame time they had orders to cruiſe in a certain direction, to look for the jolly-boat; and Palmerſton's Iſles was appointed as a rendezvous to meet again.

Lieutenant Corner now came on board, in a canoe not much bigger than a butcher's tray. The cutter was ſent a ſecond time to ſearch the reefs, but returned without ſucceſs. They then run down with the ſhip in the direction the wind had blown the preceding day, in hopes of finding the boat; but after a whole day's run to leeward, and working up again by traverſes to the iſles, ſaw nothing of her. The tender hove in ſight in the evening, and they again ſearched the iſles without ſucceſs. All further hopes of ſeeing her were given up, and they proceeded on their voyage.

The fate of the unfortunate men who were in the jolly-boat could never be aſcertained. On leaving the veſſel there was a piece of ſalt beef thrown to them, and no doubt they were able the next day to ſatiate their thirſt, as there were heavy ſhowers of rain.

On the 6th of June an iſland was diſcovered: the captain called it the Duke of York's Iſland.

Captain Edwards now diſpatched the two yauls, covered by the tender, with Lieutenants Hayward and Corner, to examine this iſland. A ſhort time after their departure there were ſome huts ſeen from the veſſel; a ſignal was accordingly made to apprize the lieutenants of the danger, that they might proceed on ſhore with the utmoſt caution.

On their return Lieutenants Hayward and Corner reported, that they had ſeen a ſhip's wooden buoy; they had alſo found nets of different ſizes hanging up in the huts, with a variety of fiſhing utenſils. They had alſo diſcovered in ſeveral parts of the creek ſtages and wharfs, which led them to believe that this was an iſland only inhabited in the fiſhing ſeaſon by ſome of the neighbouring nations. They found near the beach the ſkeleton of a very large fiſh, which they imagined to be a whale. They were likewiſe ſtruck with the venerable appearance of a place which reſembled a druidical temple, and was exceedingly curious. The falling of a very large old tree, formed an arch, through which the interior part of the temple was ſeen, which heightened the perſpective, and gave a romantic ſolemn dignity to the ſcene. At the extreme end of the temple, three altars were placed, the center one higher than the other two, on which ſome white ſhells were regularly piled.

When they had thus examined the iſland, they re-viſited the huts, and hung up a few knives, looking-glaſſes, and ſome other trifles, that the natives, on their return, might know the place had been frequented during their abſence.

On the 12th we diſcovered another iſland, which the Captain called the Duke of Clarence's Iſland. In running along the land they perceived ſeveral canoes croſſing the lagoons. The tender's ſignal was made to cover the boats in landing, and Lieutenants Hayward and Corner ſent to reconnoitre the beach, to diſcover a landing-place. In performing this they approached the natives in their canoes, who made ſigns of peace to them; however, on account of ſome diffidence on their ſide, they had no intercourſe with them. They found ſeveral burying-places here, which indicated it to be a principal reſidence; alſo ſome old cocoa trees, &c.

On the 18th, we diſcovered an iſland of greater extent than any hitherto ſeen in the ſouth. This was called, in honour of the firſt lord of the admiralty, Chatham's Iſland. It is beautifully diverſified with hills and dales, of twice the extent of Otaheite, and a hardy warlike race of people: the natives deſcribed a large river. The natives with whom they traded ſeemed very fair and honourable. Some were in mourning for their king Fenow. Having made an unſucceſsful ſearch for the mutineers, they continued their voyage.

On the 21ſt another iſland, of about forty miles long, was diſcovered, the natives called it Otutuelah. It is well wooded with immenſe large trees, whoſe foliage ſpreads like the oak; and there is a deal of ſhrubbery on it, bearing a yellow flower.

The natives here are remarkably handſome: ſome of them had their ſkins tinged with yellow, as a mark of diſtinction, but which at firſt led the Engliſh to imagine they were diſeaſed. Neither ſex wear any cloathing, but a girdle of leaves round their middle, ſtained with different colours. The women adorn their hair with chaplets of ſweet-ſmelling flowers, and bracelets, and necklaces of flowers round their wriſts and neck. They were exceedingly timid on their firſt coming on board; alſo perfectly ignorant of fire-arms, never having ſeen a European ſhip before. They made many geſtures of ſubmiſſion, and were ſtruck with wonder and ſurpriſe at every thing they ſaw. Amongſt other things, they brought ſome moſt remarkable fine puddings, which abounded with aromatic ſpiceries, that excelled in taſte and flavour the moſt delicate ſeed-cake.

The captain and his people traded with them the whole day, and got many curioſities. Birds and fowls, of the moſt ſplendid plumage, ſome reſembling the peacock, and a great variety of the parrot kind, were brought on board.

Before evening the women went all on ſhore, and the men began to be troubleſome and pilfering. The third lieutenant had a new coat ſtole out of his cabin; and they were making off with every bit of iron, &c. which lay in their way.

A fierce breeze coming on, they were obliged to make off from the land. Thoſe who were engaged in trade on board were ſo anxious, that the captain had got almoſt out of ſight of their canoes, before they perceived the ſhip's motion, whereupon they all jumped into the water inſtantaneouſly; but one of them, more earneſt than the reſt, hung by the rudder-chains for a mile or two, thinking to detain the veſſel.

In the evening they unfortunately parted company, and the captain loſt ſight of the tender. Falſe fires were burnt, and great guns and ſmall arms were fired without ſucceſs: the weather became very thick and diſagreeable.

On the 23d and 24th they continued to cruiſe for her, near where they parted company, which was off a piece of remarkable high land. What was moſt unfortunate, water and proviſions were then on deck for her, which were intended to have been put on board of her in the morning. She had the day before received orders, in caſe of ſeparation, to rendezvous at Annamooka, and to wait there for the veſſel. A ſmall cag of ſalt, and another of nails and iron-ware, were likewiſe put on board of her, to traffic with the Indians, and the latitudes and longitudes of the places the captain would touch at, in his intended rout. She had a boarding netting fixed, to prevent her being boarded, and ſeveral ſeven-barrelled pieces and blunderbuſſes likewiſe aboard.

The Pandora proceeded to the eaſtward, and they ſaw that iſland which was diſcoverd by Monſ. Bouganville.

On the 28th they ſaw the Happai Iſlands, diſcovered by Capt. Cook, and before noon the group of iſlands to the eaſtward of Annamooka, and ſailed down between Little Annamooka and the Falaſagee Iſland. The next day they anchord in the road of Annamooka.

A large ſailing canoe was now hired, and Lieut. Hayward and one private ſent to the Happai and Feegee Iſlands, to make enquiry after the Bounty and the tender; but no intelligence was received. Here they found an axe, which had been left by Capt. Cook. Several hogs, yams, &c. were likewiſe purchaſed of the natives.

The inhabitants of Annamooka are the moſt audacious robbers in the South Seas: while two or three of the officers were taking a walk on ſhore one evening, who had the precaution to take their piſtols with them, they were ſurrounded by ſeveral of the natives, with apparent intentions to pilfer; however on their preſenting the piſtols to them, they ſheered off. The captain having joined the officers, and brought his ſervant with him, carrying a bag of nails, and ſome trifling preſents, which he meant to diſtribute amongſt theſe natives, took the bag from him, and diſpatched him with a meſſage to the boat; on which the inhabitants followed him. As ſoon as he got out of ſight of his maſter, they ſtripped him naked, and robbed him of his cloaths, and every article he had, but one ſhoe, which he uſed for concealing his nakedneſs. At this juncture Lieutenant Hayward arrived from his expedition, and called the aſſiſtance of the guard in ſearching for the robbers. They ſaw the natives all running, and lurking behind the trees, which led them to ſuſpect there was ſome miſchief brewing; but they ſoon diſcovered the poor ſervant, with a bayonet in his hand, naked and vowing vengeance againſt the natives, for the treatment he had received. Night coming on, they went on board, but the poor fellow's cloaths were never recovered.

On the 30th the king of Annamooka, whoſe name is Tatafee, paid the captain a viſit.

The people here ſeem to be ſomewhat civilized, and have notions of private property, as every one's land is aſcertained by a fence, agreeable to the plan of the Chineſe railing. They likewiſe ſhew an inclination to induſtry, having all their highways and roads leading to public places in great order. Nor are they leſs inclined to cultivation, as ſhrubbery is planted with great taſte on each ſide of the gravel-walk leading to their houſes: ſeveral have rows of pine-apples on each ſide of their avenue. Lieutenants Corner and Hayward took great pains in inſtructing them how to tranſplant their pine-apples, and they paid no little attention to his advice.

The women are more maſculine than thoſe at Otaheite, but they have very animated countenances, which render them exceedingly agreeable. They have a toy, with which they amuſe themſelves, ſimilar to a cup and ball. They are very fond of diſplaying their charms, which they do in a very ſucceſsful manner.

Several very handſome girls were brought by their own mothers on board to be diſpoſed of. At firſt their demands were exorbitant, as no leſs than broad axes would content them: from this, however, they fell to old razors, and at laſt to ſciſſars and nails. This trade became at laſt ſo common, that many of the poor girls were purchaſed; and in ſuch caſe it is cuſtomary to hold a council of matrons, who diſtinguiſh the unfortunate girl by making a gaſh in her fore-finger. In this manner the razors were uſed, and had there been more aboard, there is no doubt but all the girls would have ſuffered in the ſame manner.

A briſk trade was carried on: they had purchaſed an abundance of hogs, and found the pork much ſuperior to that at Otaheite. They had alſo procured ſeveral ton weight of excellent yams.

The captain ſent a party on ſhore to cut wood for fuel, and graſs for the ſheep. The natives, however, would not ſuffer any of the graſs to be touched. They became exceedingly troubleſome; and though this party was attended with a guard of armed men, the inhabitants ſtill intruded, and committed whatever thefts they could. One of them made a blow at Lieut. Corner with his club, which fortunately miſſed his head, and only ſtunned him in the back of his neck. Mean time the offender ſtole his handkerchief, and was making off; but the lieutenant having recovered himſelf in time, levelled his muſket at him, and ſhot him dead. Another party was diſpatched to get water, and theſe were equally haraſſed and interrupted.

King Tatafee was now about collecting tribute from the iſlands under his juriſdiction; and accordingly went in the Pandora to Tofoa. The captain, previous to his ſailing, left a letter with a principal chief of the iſland for Mr. Oliver, the commander of the tender, in caſe he ſhould arrive before the captain's return.

During the night they admired the burning mounting on Tofoa; and early the next day two canoes were diſpatched on ſhore, to announce the arrival of Tatafee and Tabou, who intended to have gone on ſhore in the Pandora's barge, which they thought would add to their conſequence. They were, however, met on the way by the tributary princes in their canoes.

Theſe princes, in doing homage, came along-ſide the barge, bowed their heads over the ſide of the canoe; while Tatafee, agreeable to cuſtom, put his foot upon their heads. This king diſtributed all the preſents he received from the Engliſh, when he landed, amongſt his ſubjects.

They met here with ſome of the people who inſulted Capt. Bligh's men in the boat at Murderer's Cave. Upon ſeeing Lieut. Hayward, (whom they recollected) they ſeemed ſomewhat apprehenſive of his anger. Capt. Edwards endeavoured to convince the king, Tatafee, of his diſapprobation of that buſineſs; but fearful the tender might likewiſe be attacked

tacked on her arrival, he was careful not to carry his diſpleaſure too far.

It was the captain's intention to viſit Tongataboo, but herein he was prevented by the continuance of an unfavourable wind. He therefore proceeded to Catooa and Navigator's Iſles, which he likewiſe intended to have done before, but delayed in hopes of finding the tender. They now endeavoured to fall in with the eaſternmoſt of theſe iſlands.

On the 12th of July they diſcovered a cluſter of iſlands in the N. W. quarter; however they poſtponed their examination of theſe till their return to the Friendly Iſles, as they were unwilling to loſe the favourable wind which they now had.

On the 14th they ſaw three iſles, ſuppoſed to be the Navigator's Iſles; the largeſt of which the natives called Tumaluah. The inhabitants, whom they ſaw at a little diſtance, made ſeveral ſigns for them to land: however, they thought proper to proceed on their voyage.

On the 15th they reached Oteetuelah, where they found ſome of Bougainville's cloaths, &c. from which circumſtance there is little doubt but what he was murdered by the natives.

On the 18th they diſcovered a cluſter of iſlands, and the next day ran down the N. ſide till they came to an opening, where they perceived the ſea on the other ſide. They were informed by the natives, that there were excellent watering-places in different parts within a ſound, which is formed by ſome of the iſlands to the S. E. and N. W. They were viſited by ſeveral of the inferior chiefs, and the natives ſeemed very kind and honeſt. Their religion, cuſtoms, language, &c. are ſimilar to thoſe at Annamooka, but their behaviour is far better.

The country is well covered with wood: there are ſeveral beautiful paroquets, a number of which were brought to the frigate by the natives.

The captain diſtinguiſhed theſe iſlands by the names of Barrington's, Sawyer's, Hotham's, and Jarvis's. The ſound was called Curtis's; and the whole group of iſlands had the general denomination of Howe's Iſlands.

On the 23d they paſſed another iſland, ſuppoſed to be Pyleſlaart iſland.

On the 26th they perceived Middleburgh Iſland, between which and Euah they ran down. They examined this iſland, but met with no ſucceſs: after this they paſſed Tongataboo, where they procured refreſhments, and on the 29th they anchored again in Annamooka, and lamented very much that during their abſence the tender had not been heard of.

CHAPTER III.

They proceed on their Voyage—Several Iſlands diſcovered—Deſcription of the different Inhabitants—Hoſtile Intentions of ſome—A wonderful Eſcape—Lieut. Corner ſent in the Boat to look for a Paſſage—Anxiety for her return—Pandora ſtrikes on a Reef—Her Wreck—Great Diſtreſs—Crew leap overboard—Several drowned—One Connell dies of Inſanity—Four Boats fitted out—They embark in them for Timor.

EVERY thing being now ready for ſailing, they proceeded on their voyage the 5th of Auguſt, and diſcovered an extenſive iſland, which the captain called Proby's Iſland, in honour of Commiſſioner Proby. The land was hilly, and the houſes much more large and commodious than any they had yet ſeen. The natives call the iſland Onooafow. A briſk trade was carried on with theſe people, of whom they purchaſed ſeveral articles.

They now made for Wallis's Iſland, which they reached on the 7th. They were viſited by a canoe, to whom they gave ſome preſents; but the natives having committed a theft, made an abrupt departure, and did not appear again.

Theſe people had their little fingers cut off, and their cheek bones much bruiſed and flattened.

They now ſteered between Santa Cruz and Sperito Santo, and on the 8th diſcovered land to the weſtward. They ſounded, but could find no bottom. They ran down the iſland, which was remarkably hilly, and well covered with wood. The mountains were cultivated to the very top, which indicated a number of inhabitants. There appeared a great number of houſes. It ſeemed to be about ſeven miles in length. The captain called this Grenville's Iſland, in honour of Lord Grenville. It is called by the natives Rotumah.

They were met by ſeveral canoes; the men who were in them reſted on their paddles, and gave the war-hoop at ſtated periods. They were all armed with clubs, and meant to attack the Engliſh; but the magnitude and novelty of ſuch an object as a man of war, ſtruck them with a mixture of wonder and fear: beſides, being perfectly ignorant of fire-arms, they were ſo ſtarted at the report of a muſket, that they made off with the utmoſt expedition. As they had come with hoſtile intentions, they brought no women with them.

Theſe natives wore bracelets, necklaces, and girdles of white ſhells. Their bodies were every where curiouſly marked with the figures of men, dogs, fiſhes, birds, &c. They were exceedingly expert in thieving, and uncommonly athletic and ſtrong. One fellow was making off with ſome booty, but was detected; and although five of the ſtouteſt men in the ſhip were hanging upon him, and had faſt hold of his long flowing black hair, he overpowered them all, and jumped overboard with his prize. There is a high promontory on this iſland, which was called Mount Temple by the captain.

On the 11th they run over a reef of coral, in 11 fathom water, which was called Pandora's reef: they were exceedingly alarmed, but paſſed it in five minutes, and on ſounding immediately afterwards, found no bottom.

Early on the 12th they diſcovered an iſland, well wooded, but not inhabited. It had two remarkable promontories on it, one reſembling a mitre, and the other a ſteeple; for which reaſon they called it Mitre Iſland. They paſſed it, and ſtood to the weſtward; and at ten the ſame morning diſcovered another iſland to the N. W. which they called Cherry's Iſland, in honour of —— Cherry, Eſq; commiſſioner of the victualling-office. This was entirely cultivated, and had a vaſt number of inhabitants, though only a mile in length. The beach from the E. round by the S. is a white ſand, but too much ſurf for a boat to attempt to land.

On the 13th they diſcovered another iſland to the N. W. which they called Pitt's Iſland. It was very hilly, and covered with wood even to the top. No inhabitants were ſeen, but there being ſmoke in ſeveral parts of it, there is no doubt but it is inhabited.

On the 17th, at midnight, they diſcovered breakers on each bow. They had juſt room to wear ſhip; and as this wonderful eſcape was from the vigilance of one Wells, who was looking out a-head, it was called Wells's Shoals. In the morning, at day-light, they put about, to examine the danger they were in, and found they had got embayed in a double reef, which will very ſoon be an iſland. They run round its N. W. end, and on the 23d ſaw land, which they ſuppoſed to be the Luiſiade, a cape bearing N. E. and by E. This was called Cape Rodney; and another, contiguous thereto, Cape Hood. There was a mountain between them, which they named Mount Clarence.

They proceeded to the weſtward, keeping Endeavour Straits open, for their greater ſecurity.

On the 25th they ſaw breakers; upon which they hauled up, and paſſed to the weſtward of them: the ſea broke very gently on them. Theſe were called Look-out Shoals. Before noon they ſaw more breakers, the reef of which was compoſed of very large ſtones. This was called Stony-reef Iſland.

They now ſtood to the weſtward, where there appeared to be an opening. They perceived an iſland in that direction; and a reef extending a conſiderable way to the N. W. They now hauled upon the wind, ſeeing their paſſage obſtructed, and ſtood off and on, under an eaſy ſail in the night, till day-light; and on the 28th bore away, and diſcovered four iſlands, to which the name of Murray's Iſlands was given. On the top of the largeſt, there was ſomething reſembling a fortification. They diſcovered at the ſame three two-maſted boats. They kept running along the reef, and in the forenoon thought they ſaw an opening.

The captain ordered Lieut. Corner to get ready, and diſcover if there was a paſſage for the ſhip: he went to the top-maſt head, to look well round him before he went; after which he took with him in the boat an axe, ſome fuel, proviſions, a little water, a compaſs, &c.

About five in the afternoon, a ſignal was made from the boat, that a paſſage through the reef was diſcovered for the ſhip; but wiſhing to be well informed in ſo intricate a buſineſs, and the day being far ſpent, waited the boats coming on board; they made a ſignal for the boat's return, which they repeated. Night cloſing faſt upon them, and conſidering their former miſfortunes of loſing the tender and jolly-boat, it was deemed neceſſary, both for the preſervation of the boat, and the ſucceſs of the voyage, to exert their utmoſt to recover her as ſoon as poſſible.

They now kindled falſe fires, and fired muſkets from the ſhip, which were anſwered by the boat reciprocally; and as the flaſhes from their muſkets in the boat were diſtinctly ſeen by thoſe in the ſhip, ſhe was reaſonably expected ſoon on board. Having ſounded, they found bottom with 110 fathom line, and afterwards with 50 fathom. The boat was now ſeen cloſe under the ſtern; they were at the ſame time lying-to, to prevent the ſhip fore-reaching. Immediately on ſounding this laſt time, the top-ſails were filled; but before the tacks were hauled on board, and the ſails trimmed, ſhe ſtruck on a reef of rocks, and at that inſtant the boat got on board. Every poſſible effort was attempted to get her off by the ſails; but that failing, they were furled, and the boats hoiſted out with a view to carry out an anchor. Previous to this, the carpenter reported ſhe made eighteen inches water in five minutes; and in a quarter of an hour more ſhe had nine feet water in the hold, which created no ſmall apprehenſions.

All the crew were now at the pumps, and to bale at the different hatchways. Some of the priſoners were let out of irons, and turned to the pumps. At this dreadful criſis, it blew very violently; and ſhe beat ſo hard upon the rocks, that it was expected every minute ſhe would go to pieces. About ten ſhe beat over the reef; and they let go the anchor in fifteen fathom water. It was now a dark ſtormy night, which added not a little to their fears.

The captain ordered the guns to be thrown overboard; and what hands could be ſpared from the pumps were employed thrumbing a top-ſail, to haul under her bottom, to endeavour to fodder her. In addition to this diſtreſs, one of the chain-pumps gave way; and ſhe gained faſt upon them. The ſcheme of the top-ſail was now laid aſide, and all the men fell to baling and pumping. All the boats, excepting one, were obliged to keep a long diſtance off, on account of the broken water, and the very high ſurf that was running near them. They baled with their utmoſt powers; for had ſhe gone down before day-light, every ſoul muſt have periſhed. She now took a heel, and ſome of the guns they were endeavouring to throw overboard run down to leeward, which cruſhed one man to death: about the ſame time a ſpare top-maſt came down from the booms, and killed another.

The crew being exceedingly faint and fatigued, were allowed ſome refreſhment. Fortunately they had between decks a caſk of excellent ſtrong ale, brewed at Annamooka. This was tapped, and ſerved regularly to all hands; which was much preferable to ſpirits, as it gave them ſpirits without intoxication. The men behaved with great reſolution and intrepidity, and were remarkably obedient to their captain's orders.

As ſoon as day began to dawn, a council of war was held among the officers; and as ſhe was then ſettling faſt down in the water, it was their unanimous opinion, that nothing further could be done for the preſervation of his Majeſty's ſhip. It was therefore recommended to the crew to look to themſelves, and take as much care as poſſible of their lives.

The priſoners were now reſtored to liberty, and permitted to ſhift for themſelves. The booms, ſpars, hen-coops, and every thing buoyant, were cut looſe, in hopes when the ſhip ſunk ſomething might remain for them to catch hold of. The men were ſtill remarkably obedient, and exerciſed themſelves hard at the pumps; but the water came in ſo violently at the gun-ports, that the labour was ineffectual. The ſhip taking a very heavy heel, lay down quite on one ſide: whereupon one of the officers informed the captain that the anchor on their bow was under water, and that ſhe was inevitably gone: he then jumped over the quarter into the water, bidding him to follow, which he did. All the crew did the ſame, while ſhe took her laſt heel, and inſtantly went down. The boats, on account of the tide, were at ſome diſtance, but they did their beſt to take up ſome of the drowning men, whoſe cries were exceedingly piercing. When the ſun roſe, they diſcovered a ſandy key, which ſeemed about 30 paces long, and about four miles diſtance. Here, as ſoon as the boats had arrived, they muſtered their remains, having loſt 35 men and four priſoners.

Very fortunately a ſmall barrel of water, a cag of wine, ſome biſcuit, and a few muſkets and cartouch boxes, had been preſerved. They now reſted, in order to recover themſelves, as they ſuffered exceedingly from the heat of the ſun, and the quantity of ſalt-water which, while they were ſwimming, filled their ſtomachs, and cauſed a moſt intolerable thirſt; which was ſtill more painful, as no water was allowed to be ſerved out the firſt day. A guard was placed over the priſoners, and the boats were hauled up, in one of which having found a ſaw and a hammer, they were the better enabled to make preparations for their voyage: accordingly they proceeded to cut up the floor boards of all the boats into uprights, round which they ſtretched canvas, in order to keep the water from breaking into the boats at ſea; likewiſe to repair another, which was in a very bad condition. Having made tents of the boats ſails, and ſet the watch, they went to ſleep as ſoon as it was dark. One of the crew, (Connell) having incautiouſly drank a quantity of ſalt water to eaſe his thirſt, went mad in the night, and behaved ſo outrageouſly, that they thought the poor creature had ſtolen the wine and got drunk: in a very ſhort time after he died.

Early the next morning the captain diſpatched Mr. George Paſſmore in one of the boats to viſit the wreck, in hopes that he might find ſomething that might turn out of ſome uſe to them. In about two hours he returned with about 15 feet of the lightning chain, which they cut up, being copper, in order to make nails thereof for refitting their boats; he likewiſe brought a piece of the topgallant maſt, which had been brought away, and a cat that was clinging to it.

They had boiled ſome of the gigantic cockle, which was cut into junks; but the men were ſo exceedingly thirſty, that they could not eat. Each man had a wine glaſs of water in the evening. A paper parcel of tea having been preſerved, the officers joined their allowance, and had tea with the captain in his tent. When it was made, a ſalt-cellar ſpoonful thereof was paſſed from one to another, with which they moiſtened their mouths by degrees, and derived great benefit from it.

Having now made an examination of their ſmall ſtock, it was found that there was only an allowance of two ſmall wine glaſſes for 16 days, for each man per day. They therefore made ready their little ſquadron without loſs of time, while the captain appointed the following order of ſailing:

In the Pinnace,
Capt. Edwards, Lieut. Hayward.
Mr. Richards, maſter's mate.
Mr. Packer, gunner.
Mr. Edmonds, captain's clerk.
Sixteen privates, and three priſoners.

In the Launch,
Lieut. Corner.
Mr. Gregory Bentham, purſer.
Mr. Montgomery, carpenter.
Mr. Bowling, maſter's mate.
Mr. M'Kendrick, midſhipman.
Twenty-four privates, and two priſoners.

In the Red Yaul,
Lieut. Larkan.
Mr. George Hamilton, ſurgeon.
Mr. Reynolds, maſter's mate.
Mr. Matſon, midſhipman.
Eighteen privates, and two priſoners.

In the Blue Yaul,
Mr. George Paſſmore, maſter.
Mr. Cunningham, boatſwain.
Mr. James Innes, ſurgeon's mate.
Meſſ. Fenwick and Pycroft, midſhipmen.
Fifteen privates, and three priſoners.

CHAPTER IV.

They proceed on their Voyage in the Boats—Curſory Remarks—Followed by two Canoes—They avoid the Natives, on account of their ſavage Appearance, &c.—Approach an inhabited Iſland—Receive ſome Water from the Natives—Are attacked by ſome of them—Arrows let fly—Muſquets diſcharged—None of either ſide killed—Refreſh themſelves with Sleep at Laforey's Iſland—Search for Water—Succeſsful—Diſcoveries—Fill the Carpenter's Boots with Water, for want of Utenſils—Proceed on their Voyage—Diſcover ſeveral Iſlands—Diſcover Land—Get on Shore—Viſited by a Chineſe Chief, and ſome of the Natives—His Humanity—They are ſupplied by the Natives with Refreſhments—Occurrences—Embark for Coupang—Arrival—Tranſactions—Proceed to Batavia—Land in England.

EACH boat being ſupplied with the latitude and longitude of the iſland of Timor, the diſtance of 1100 miles from this place, about 12 o'clock on the 30th of Auguſt they embarked in their little ſquadron, having formed a platform by laying the oars upon the thwarts, whereby they ſtowed two tier of men.

Previous to this there was made for each boat a pair of wooden ſcales, that a muſket-ball weight of bread might be ſerved to each man. For the ſake of their better ſubſiſtence, they kept together, the chief part of their proviſions being in the launch, under Lieut. Corner's care.

During night they towed each other, and caſt off the low line about day break.

After this the red and blue yauls proceeded a-head, to examine and ſound the coaſt of New South Wales, and ſeek a watering-place. Having entered a fine bay, they providentially found a ſpring of fine excellent water at the edge of the beach. After they had ſufficiently quenched their thirſt, they filled two quart bottles and a tea-kettle. They now made ſail after the pinnace and launch, who by this time were ſo far diſtant as not to be able to obſerve any ſignal which the yauls made to them of their ſucceſs.

The coaſt appeared very barren and dreary, and as far as they could judge of the ſoil and land the country ſeemed to abound in minerals.

When they had paſſed round the bay, they were purſued by two canoes, with three black men in each, who ſtruggled very hard to come up to them. Theſe men ſtood up in the canoes, waved, and made many ſigns to invite them over, but they judged it moſt prudent to avoid them, as they were perfectly naked, and had very fierce looks, beſides they had heard an indifferent account of theſe natives.

Two hours after this they joined the pinnace and launch, who were lying-to for them. At ten at night they were alarmed with the dreadful cry of breakers a-head. They had got amongſt a reef of rocks; and in their preſent condition, being already worn out and fatigued, it is difficult to ſay how they got out of them, as the place was fraught with danger all round. Having run along, they came to an inhabited iſland, from which they promiſed themſelves a ſupply of water. As ſoon as they approached the place, the natives flocked down to the beach in crowds. They were jet black, and neither ſex had either covering or girdle. They made ſignals of diſtreſs to them for ſomething to drink, which they underſtood, and, on receiving ſome trifling preſents of knives, and ſome buttons cut off their coats, they brought them a cag of good water, which they emptied in a minute, and then ſent it back to be filled again: however, they would not bring it the ſecond time, but put it down on the beach, and made ſigns to them to come on ſhore for it. This they declined, as they obſerved the women and children running and ſupplying the men with bows and arrows. In a few minutes they let fly a ſhower of arrows amongſt the boats, but luckily not a man was wounded: an arrow fell between the captain and third lieutenant, and went through the boat's thwart and ſtuck in it. It was an oak plank, inch thick. They immediately diſcharged a volley of muſkets at them, which put them all to flight: there were, however, none of them killed.

They now made for other iſlands in ſight, and ſent ſome armed men on ſhore, with orders to keep near them, and run cloſe along-ſhore in the boats: but they returned without ſucceſs. They called this Plumb Iſland, from its bearing a kind of fruit reſembling plumbs, but not fit for uſe.

They ſteered in the evening for the Prince of Wales's Iſlands; and about two o'clock in the morning came to an anchor, with a grapnel, alongſide of an iſland, which they called Laforey's Iſland.

As this was the laſt place from which they could expect any relief, every man had permiſſion to refreſh himſelf with ſleep. Early in the morning they were rouzed by the howling of wolves, who retired as ſoon as they ſaw them. Lieut. Corner was diſpatched with a party on ſhore to look for ſome water. As ſoon as they landed, they diſcovered a foot-path which led down into a hollow, where they were led to ſuſpect that water might be found; and, on digging four or five feet, they had the great happineſs to ſee a ſpring ruſh out. A ſignal of this ſucceſs was immediately made to the boats.

On traverſing the ſhore, they diſcovered a morai, or rather a heap of bones. There were amongſt them two human ſkulls, the bones of ſome large animals, and ſome turtle-bones, which were collected in ſuch a manner as to repreſent a grave.

Adjoining this, there were marks of a fire, which had been recently made. The ground about was much trodden and wore; whence it was preſumed feaſts or ſacrifices had been frequently held, as there were ſeveral foot-paths which led to this ſpot. When they had now drank heartily, they began to be hungry. Some of the party fortunately found a few ſmall oyſters on the ſhore. A harſh, auſtere, aſtringent kind of fruit, reſembling a plumb, was found in other places. The ſurgeon having diſcovered ſome to be pecked at by the birds, permitted the men to fill their bellies with them. There was a ſmall berry, of a ſimilar taſte to the plumb, which was found by ſome of the party, and which they ventured to eat, knowing it had been made uſe of by the wild beaſts. They carefully avoided ſhooting at any bird, leſt the report of the muſkets ſhould alarm the natives, whom they had every reaſon to ſuſpect were at no great diſtance, from the number of foot-paths that led over the hill, and the noiſe they heard at intervals. Centinels were placed, to prevent any of their party from exceeding their proper bounds; and when every veſſel they had was filled with water, they likewiſe filled the carpenter's boots, which, on account of the leakage of the boots, was firſt made uſe of.

There is a large ſound formed here, to which they gave the name of Sandwich's Sound, and commodious anchorage for ſhipping in the bay, which they called Wolf's Bay: there is from five to ſeven fathom water all round.

This ſound is formed by Hammond's, Parker's, and a cluſter of ſmall iſlands on the ſtarboard hand, at its eaſtern entrance. They alſo called a back land behind Hammond's Iſland, and the other iſlands to the ſouthward of it, Cornwallis's Land.

On the 2d of September they proceeded on their voyage, and in the evening ſaw a high peaked iſland lying N. W. which they called Hawkeſbury's Iſland. The paſſage through the N. entrance is about two miles wide. After paſſing through it, they ſaw a reef, and had but three fathom water: on hauling up more to the S. W. they had ſix fathoms. When they had cleared the reef they ſtood weſtward, having ſeen ſome very large turtle, none of which they could catch.

As ſoon as they had entered the great Indian ocean, and cleared the land, they found a very heavy ſwell running, which threatened deſtruction to their boats. For their mutual preſervation, they took each other in tow; but the ſea was ſo rough, and the ſwell running ſo high, they towed very hard, and broke a new tow-line. This put them in the utmoſt confuſion, being afraid of daſhing to pieces upon each other, as it was a very dark night. They again made faſt to each other; but the tow-line breaking a ſecond time, they were obliged to truſt themſelves to the mercy of the waves. At five in the morning the pinnace lay-to, as the other boats had paſſed her under a dark cloud; but on the ſignal being made for the boats to join, they again met at day-light. They ſaw ſeveral black and yellow ſtriped ſea ſnakes, which were very remarkable.

On the 5th and 6th the ſea ran very croſs and high, and the tow-line broke ſeveral times; the boats ſtrained, and made much water, and they were obliged to leave off towing the reſt of the voyage, or it would have dragged the boats aſunder.

On the 7th the captain's boat caught a booby. They ſucked his blood, and having cut him into 24 ſhares, each had a diviſion.

As they were more thirſty then hungry, they did not weigh their ſlender allowance of bread, and what was not claimed was thrown into the general ſtock.

On the 9th they paſſed a great many of the Nautilus fiſh, the ſhell of which ſerved them to put their glaſs of water into; by which means they had more time granted to dip their finger in it, and wet their mouths by ſlow degrees, which indulgence was a great ſatisfaction.

Early on the 13th they ſaw the land, and the diſcoverer was immediately rewarded with a glaſs of water; however, to their mortification, it fell a dead calm. The boats now all ſeparated, every one puſhing to make the land. Next day they got near it; but there was a prodigious ſurf running. Two of their men flung a bottle about their necks, jumped overboard, and ſwam through the ſurf. They traverſed over a good many miles, till a creek intercepted them; when they came down to the beach, and made ſigns to the reſt in the boats of not having ſucceeded. They then brought the boat as near the ſurf as they durſt venture, and picked them up. In running along the coaſt, about twelve o'clock, they had the pleaſure to ſee the red yaul get into a creek. She had hoiſted an Engliſh jack at her maſt-head, that the other might obſerve her in running down the coaſt. There was a prodigious ſurf, and many dangerous ſhoals, between them and the mouth of the creek; however, having drank up the remainder of the water, they recovered their ſpirits, and by the aſſiſtance of Mr. Reynolds, the maſter's-mate, were got on ſhore.

The red yaul was aſſiſted in landing by the blue, which had reached ſhore ſome time before her conſort. They diſcovered ſome excellent water near the creek, of which having drank plentifully, they placed a guard over the priſoners, and lay down on the graſs, in order to refreſh themſelves.

They were viſited by a canoe in the afternoon, wherein was a Chineſe chief, who was an old venerable looking man, and ſeveral attendants. The crew of the boats immediately approached, to inform him of their misfortunes, and implore his aſſiſtance. As he underſtood neither French nor Engliſh, they could not make him underſtand by language, but they ſoon made him ſenſible of their diſtreſs by ſigns. This chief was ſo ſtrongly affected with their grief, that the ſympathizing tears guſhed down his cheeks: he informed them by ſigns, that they ſhould be immediately ſupplied with horſes to conduct them to Coupang for nothing; but this generous offer they were obliged to decline, on account of the priſoners: he likewiſe promiſed them the beſt refreſhments that could be provided, and preſently after they received a quantity of fowls, pigs, bread and milk, from the natives, who now came down in large bodies to ſee them, and trafficked with them for anchor-buttons.

They now began to boil pork, and roaſt fowls, and this evening enjoyed themſelves over a hearty ſupper: they then lay down to repoſe themſelves before the fire. The firſt lieutenant and maſter went on board the boats, which were at anchor in the middle of the river, for the better ſecurity of the priſoners. The natives not being able to labour here in the day-time, on account of the immenſe heat of the ſun, perform all their hard work in the night, during which they ſing, and all the village join in the chorus. The captain's people, unacquainted with the cauſe of this, were not a little alarmed in the night, ſuppoſing they were inclined to hoſtility, and that this ſong was a war-hoop: fear indeed became ſo general, that every noiſe created apprehenſions; ſome thought they heard a wild beaſt roaring; others, being ſuddenly awoke at dawn of day by the huntſman's halloo, concluded the Indians were coming to attack them.

The next day, being the 16th of Sept. they went up the creek in one of the boats about four miles off, in order to purchaſe ſome proviſions for their ſea ſtores at one of their towns. They met the king, who was both well mounted and attended as ſoon as they entered the town; but his majeſty ſcarcely vouchſafed them a look. They left this place at noon, having procured ſome pigs, &c. and as it was dark while they were ſailing along the coaſt, they put into a bay, for fear they might overſhoot their port; and having hallooed and made a noiſe upon ſeeing a light on ſhore, the natives came to them with torches, and aſſiſted them on land. They then kindled fires, and dreſſed their victuals, in order to loſe no time. Early the next day they proceeded on their voyage, and landed at Coupang in the afternoon.

They were very kindly received, and hoſpitably treated, both by the governor and lieutenant governor of this place. They remained here five weeks; during which time the governor endeavoured to render the place as agreeable as poſſible: they were ſumptuouſly entertained at his table every day, while cards or concerts were prepared for the evening's amuſement.

Some ſhort time before the captain's arrival, a boat came on ſhore here with eight men, a woman, and two children. Theſe people pretended they were part of the crew of an Engliſh brig wrecked in thoſe ſeas, and that the reſt with their captain had ſeparated from them at ſea in another boat: as they drew on the Britiſh government, they were ſupplied with every thing they required, while the governor behaved to them with uncommon attention. A whimſical adventure, however, led to a diſcovery of theſe people: as ſoon as Capt. Edwards arrived the captain of a Dutch Eaſt-Indiaman (who ſpoke Engliſh) haſtened to them with the ſuppoſed glad tidings of *their* captain having arrived. Their ſurpriſe and confuſion now demonſtrated that they were impoſtors; upon which they were ordered to be apprehended, and confined in the caſtle. The woman, and one of the men, fled into the woods, but were ſoon taken. They confeſſed they were Engliſh convicts, who had eſcaped from Botany Bay by the aſſiſtance of the governor's fiſherman, who was a good ſeaman and navigator, and whoſe time of tranſportation was expired. The performance of this voyage diſplayed uncommon ſkill, and their journals afforded both intereſting and curious anecdotes.

The Rembang Indiaman, under the command of Captain Dadleberg, was now fitting out for ſea. In this veſſel the captain and his people intended to embark for Batavia.

Belthazar's burial took place during the captain's ſtay here. This was the late king of Coupang; and the governor, lieutenant governor, and all the Europeans, were invited upon the ſolemn occaſion: as ſoon as the body was interred, the company's troops fired three volleys, and about 4000 people were ſerved with refreſhments. A ſumptuous dinner was likewiſe prepared for the Dutch and Engliſh officers, while the firſt toaſt that was drank was the *dead* king's *health*. There were ſeveral other curious toaſts. The young king was now inveſted with the regal dignity; the ceremony of which conſiſted in his drinking a bumper of brandy and gunpowder, which was ſtirred round with the point of a ſword. When inſtalled he went to pay his reſpects to the governor, preceded by muſic and colours.

The armourer was now employed in forging bolts and fetters for the priſoners and convicts.

The Rembang Dutch Indiaman being now ready, they embarked on board of her the 6th of October, and took with them the priſoners and convicts. From this to the 12th they had frequent calms, and cloſe weather. In paſſing the Straits of Alice they ſuffered much ſickneſs.

A very dreadful ſtorm aroſe while they were paſſing the Iſland of Flores. The ſails of the veſſel were in a ſhort time broke to pieces: ſhe made a quantity of water, while the pumps were ſo choaked that they were quite uſeleſs. During this there was dreadful thunder and lightning; and they were driving down with great impetuoſity on a ſavage ſhore, about ſeven miles under their lee.

In this dilemma, the Dutch ſeamen were ſo terrified that they retired from deck, while the Engliſh ſailors, with extraordinary exertions, combated with the tempeſt, and preſerved the ſhip. There is no doubt but the Dutch are very reſolute, and willing to labour, but they are always diſmayed at thunder and lightning.

On the 21ſt they got through Alice, and perceived three proas; whereupon they made preparations to defend themſelves, but met with no occaſion.

On the 22d they diſcovered the iſlands of Kangajunk and Ulk, and ran through the channel which lies between them.

On the 23d they ſaw the Iſland of Madeira. On the 26th the Iſland of Java; and anchored at Samarang on the 30th.

As ſoon as they came to anchor they diſcovered their tender here, which they imagined had been loſt. Their ſurpriſe on this occaſion could only be equalled by their pleaſure. It is impoſſible to paint that exceſs of joy which naturally took place, or deſcribe thoſe noble emotions, the praiſe-worthy ſympathy which marked every countenance, while imparting to each other their mutual ſufferings.

The following is Mr. Oliver's account of the ſufferings which his men endured during their ſeparation:

“The night we parted company, the ſavages attacked us in a regular and powerful body, in their canoes; and as they never ſaw a European veſſel before, nor were able to conceive any idea of fire-arms, the conflict, of courſe, laſted longer than it otherwiſe would; for, ſeeing no miſſive weapon made uſe of, when their companions were killed, they did not ſuſpect any thing to be the matter with them, as they tumbled into the water. Our ſeven-barrelled pieces made great havock amongſt them. One fellow had agility enough to ſpring over their boarding-netting, and was levelling a blow with his war-club at me, but luckily I ſhot him dead before he effected his purpoſe.

“On not finding the ſhip next day, we gave up all further hopes of her, and ſteered for Annamooka, (the rendezvous Captain Edwards had appointed). Our diſtreſs for want of water was exceedingly great, and had ſo ſtrong an effect on one of the young gentlemen, that the day following he became delirious, and continued ſo for ſome months after it.

“We at laſt made the iſland of Tofoa, near to Annamooka, which we miſtook for it. After trading with the natives for proviſions and water, they made an attempt to take the veſſel from us, which they always will to a ſmall veſſel, when alone; but they were ſoon overpowered with the fire-arms. We were, however, obliged to be much on our guard afterwards, at thoſe iſlands which were inhabited.

“After much diverſity of diſtreſs, and ſimilar encounters, we at laſt made the reef that runs between New Guiney and New Holland, where the Pandora met her unhappy fate; and after traverſing from ſhore to ſhore, without finding an opening, we boldly gave it the ſtem, and beat over the reef. The alternative was dreadful, as famine preſented itſelf on the one hand, and ſhipwreck on the other.

“We were ſoon landed at a ſmall Dutch ſettlement; but the governor having a deſcription of

“ the Bounty's pirates from our court, and our
“ veſſel being built of foreign timber, ſerved to
“ confirm them in their ſuſpicions; and as no officer
“ in the Britiſh navy bears a commiſſion or
“ warrant under the rank of lieutenant, where, by
“ ſeal of office, their perſon or quality may be identified,
“ they had only their bare word to depend
“ on. They, however, behaved to us with great
“ precaution and humanity: although they kept a
“ ſtrict guard over us, nothing was withheld to
“ render our ſituation agreeable; and we were ſent,
“ under a proper eſcort, to this place.”

The town of Samarang is remarkable for its beauty and regularity; the houſes (which are very handſome) built all in a very fanciful manner. Every ſtreet terminates with a public building, which gives it much conſequence.

This ſettlement being exceedingly lucrative, the governor is changed every five years. It is reckoned next to Batavia.

Notwithſtanding the beauty of the town, it is ſuffering much from the introduction of canals, which will no doubt render the place in time exceedingly unwholeſome, by the putrid exhalations which muſt conſequently ariſe from the ſtagnant water.

While Captain Edwards was here, a regiment of the Duke of Wurtemberg were doing duty: ſeveral perſons of rank and faſhion were among them, who behaved exceedingly polite to the captain and his people.

The Dutch here are continually at civil war, as many diſagreements ariſe from their ſupplying the petty princes with ammunition and warlike ſtores. By means of theſe diſſentions, the number of priſoners are conſiderable, and the ſlave trade, which is compriſed of theſe, amply ſupplied thereby. Not long ago, however, theſe people rebelled, and forced the Dutch to retire within their trenches.

The people of this place make it a rule to bathe every morning and evening, in a fine river appropriate to that purpoſe, which runs in the centre of the town, and is exceedingly convenient. Captain Edwards and his men, during their ſtay, availed themſelves occaſionally of this cuſtom, which proved a conſiderable benefit, by recovering their ſtrength. Though this place abounds with many advantages, it is ſtill attended with ſeveral evils: even in the enjoyment of the refreſhing ſtream, the people are ſubject to the venomous bites of ſnakes, alligators, and other reptiles, with which this land overflows. There is one particular ſnake, which is exceedingly frightful, and which creeps upon the ground: it is called the Cowk Cowk, and makes a noiſe at particular times like a cuckoo clock. It is ſomething between the toad and lizard, about a foot and a half long: its bite is reckoned mortal, and it is dreaded very much even by the inhabitants. The alligators, which are very numerous here, are equally daring and dangerous. It is ſaid that ſeveral who have been bathing about the ſhallow parts of the river above the town have been devoured by theſe. The governor informed both Captain Edwards and Surgeon Hamilton, that one day while he was hunting, his black boy being obliged to croſs a ſhallow part of the river, was inſtantly ſeized by an alligator; upon which he diſmounted, and having ſlew the alligator, happily reſcued the youth out of his mouth.

There is a diſorder, ſomething like the ſmall-pox, which is very prevalent here. A perſon only experiences it once in his life, during his infancy, and ſeldom or ever dies of it; its duration, however, is much longer than that of the ſmall-pox.

Having left Samarang they arrived in a few days at Batavia, while ſeveral of the crew were confined with ſickneſs.

Immediately on their arrival the ſick people were ſent to the hoſpital. While proceeding down the canal, ſeveral dead bodies which were floating, ſtruck the boat, and afforded no agreeable ſpectacle, eſpecially to ſick people.

Having left Batavia in order to make for the cape, one of the convicts, before they had left Java, jumped overboard in the night, and ſwam to the Dutch arſenal at Honrooſt.

They ſaw the relics of Lord Cathcart, while paſſing Banton. They paſſed the iſland of Sumatra without meeting any thing material.

During their paſſage through the ſtraights of Sunda they ſuffered great ſickneſs, in conſequence of which ſeveral of the crew died.

Their paſſage to the Cape of Good Hope was exceedingly tedious and diſagreeable. As ſoon as they arrived they met with many civilities, particularly from a Colonel Gordon, a gentleman of well known literary and military abilities.

During their ſtay they were very much delighted with the gaiety of the town, as the inhabitants partake much of the manners of Bath. They reſemble the Engliſh more than the Dutch in their dreſs and cuſtoms.

An uncommon rage has lately taken place here for building. Their houſes, however, are not ſo neat as thoſe of Samarang, though they may be more pleaſing to the generality of ſpectators, ſeeing that their ſtyle is gaudy, and conſequently ſtriking at firſt ſight, whereas that of Samarang is chaſte, and will bear ſcrutiny.

There are ſeveral gardens here, but they ſuffer exceedingly from the quantity of monkeys with which the place is infeſted. The curious mode practiſed by theſe antic creatures in making depredations on gardens, is thus deſcribed by Surgeon Hamilton:

“ They place a proper piquet, or advanced
“ guard, as centinels, when a party is drawn up
“ in a line, who hand the fruit from one to another,
“ and when the alarm is given by the piquet
“ guard, they all take flight, making ſure that by
“ that time the booty is conveyed to a conſiderable
“ diſtance. But ſhould the piquet be negligent in
“ their duty, and ſuffer the main body to be ſurpriſed,
“ the delinquents are ſeverely puniſhed.”

The town here is likewiſe interſected and conſequently ſpoiled by canals, which are carried to the top of a mountain. Indeed the Dutch never think of ſtudying wholeſomeneſs; the very hoſpital is an example of their indifference towards health, for the windows are ſo very ſmall, that the patients therein are deprived of the ſalutary effects of air.

They remained ſome ſhort time at the cape for the purpoſe of recovering their ſick, who were treated in a very kind manner, and received all the aſſiſtance which the place could afford. The captain and the reſt of his people ſtill experienced a continuance of favours and politeneſs, and ſhared much in the diverſions of the place. After they had ſufficiently refreſhed themſelves here, they took leave of their friends, and prepared for their departure.

Having left the cape they paſſed St. Helena, the iſland of Aſcenſion, and arrived at Holland. In a ſhort time after they had the inexpreſſible felicity of being landed again on their native ſhore.

☞ *Having thus laid before the Public a full and accurate account of Captain Edwards's Voyage, in the Pandora Frigate, the Launch, Pinnace, Red and Blue Yauls, we ſhall now proceed with the intereſting Voyages of Captain Cook, which, for the ſake of giving in the moſt copious and ſatisfactory manner, ſeveral deſcriptions and diſcoveries have been omitted in our preceding Voyages, for the ſake of introducing them in theſe, in order to give the credit, where it is due, to their original diſcoverer. His firſt Voyage in his Majeſty's Ship the Endeavour, ſhall be our firſt care, the reſt ſhall be introduced in due order, while the third and laſt Voyage ſhall contain the unfortunate death of this much lamented navigator, with curſory anecdotes of his life.*

A NEW, COMPLETE, AND GENUINE

HISTORY OF
A VOYAGE ROUND the WORLD
IN
His MAJESTY's SHIP the ENDEAVOUR,
UNDER THE COMMAND OF
Captain JAMES COOK,
Undertaken and Performed in 1768, 1769, 1770, and 1771:
BEING
The FIRST VOYAGE of that Celebrated NAVIGATOR.
Including all the ADVENTURES, DISCOVERIES, INFORMATION, &c. contained in the JOURNALS and COMMUNICATIONS of
Captain COOK, Sir JOSEPH BANKS, Dr. SOLANDER, &c.

Being an Entire New HISTORY of all thoſe Intereſting OCCURRENCES and Important DISCOVERIES which were made in the SOUTHERN HEMISPHERE, &c. during a Period of nearly Three Years, in which Time the Circumnavigation of the Globe was completed.

Which, beſides the ſeveral other VOYAGES as well as TRAVELS with which this valuable Collection is to abound, will be Embelliſhed with a Variety of Elegant COPPER-PLATES, Drawn upon the Spot, and Engraved by Eminent Artiſts.

INTRODUCTION.

THE following Voyage, being the FIRST performed by the celebrated Captain Cook, was undertaken by order of his preſent Majeſty, principally for the purpoſe of making diſcoveries in the Southern Hemiſphere, which might tend to the advantage of future navigators. Accordingly the Endeavour, a bark of 320 tons, which had been originally built for the coal trade, was by royal authority devoted to the ſervice of Captain Cook, having on board ten carriage and twelve ſwivel guns. Captain Cook was appointed commander of this veſſel, and while ſhe was equipping for the voyage ſeveral bold adventurers procured the Captain's permiſſion to accompany him: among the moſt celebrated of the party was Mr. (now Sir Joſeph) Banks; this gentleman was poſſeſſed of conſiderable landed property in Lincolnſhire, and upon his leaving the Univerſity of Oxford in 1763 he made a voyage to the coaſt of Newfoundland and Labradore. Far from being diſcouraged with all the difficulties and dangers which attended his firſt expedition, he determined on accompanying the captain in this voyage.

There was alſo Dr. Solander, a native of Sweden, and a gentleman of acknowledged abilities, who had ſtudied under the famous Linnæus, and was juſtly celebrated for his natural philoſophy. Mr. Banks engaged the doctor to accompany him, who was juſt eſtabliſhed, having been then appointed to a place in the Britiſh Muſeum, which he filled with credit to himſelf, and in which he gave univerſal ſatisfaction.

Beſides the doctor, Mr. Banks took with him two draughtſmen, with the intention of employing one in painting ſubjects of natural hiſtory, and the other in delineating figures and landſcapes. He likewiſe took four ſervants, two of whom were negroes, and a ſecretary in his retinue.

Mr. Banks and the doctor were induced to undertake this laudable voyage with Captain Cook, not only for the ſake of making new diſcoveries, but likewiſe for attaining a ſufficient knowledge of particular plants, productions, &c. hitherto unknown, which might be of general utility.

The Endeavour was eſteemed a veſſel of the beſt conſtruction for their deſign, particularly becauſe ſhe was what the ſailors call a good ſea-boat: ſhe was exceedingly roomy, would take and lie on the ground, and might alſo be managed by fewer hands than other veſſels of the ſame burthen.

Having been victualled for eighteen months, and a good ſtore of ammunition and other neceſſaries provided, her complement of officers and men was Captain Cook, the commander, two lieutenants under him, a maſter and boatſwain, each having two mates, a ſurgeon and carpenter, each having one mate, a gunner, a cook, a clerk and ſteward, two quarter-maſters, an armourer, a ſail-maker, three midſhipmen, forty-one able ſeamen, twelve marines, and nine ſervants, being in all eighty-five perſons.

Both Captain Cook and Mr. Banks kept journals of this voyage, and were exceedingly attentive in preſerving accuracy and order. The former chiefly confined himſelf to a minute account of all nautical incidents, and a very particular deſcription of the figure and extent of the countries he had viſited; while the latter took notice of all the chief productions, &c. Journals were likewiſe kept by ſeveral of the other officers and crew. The following copious and faithful hiſtory contains all their informations united, on which account the firſt perſon plural is adopted, in order to render the narrative more intereſting.

The ſeveral advantages which have been derived from the diſcoveries of Captain Cook, are too well known to need any illuſtration. He anſwered in a moſt ample manner the intentions of his three voyages, by having afforded ſuch information as was of the greateſt utility to all future adventurers. He aimed at much, and he accompliſhed much, by fully demonſtrating what a variety of uſeful purpoſes might be effected by occaſionally repeating the voyages he had ſo happily made. The perſevering endeavours of Captain Cook brought alſo to light the ſeveral idle ſtories of thoſe ſpeculative philoſophers, who held out ſuch falſe pictures of imagination, as to perſuade men that there was a continent equal at leaſt in extent to all the civilized countries in the known northern hemiſphere; where new men, new animals, new productions of every kind might be brought forward to view, and diſcoveries effected which would open inexhauſtible treaſures of commerce; but theſe viſionary proſpects were ſoon confuted by the ſearches of Captain Cook, who, inſtead of this land of promiſe, this valuable paradiſe, diſcovered nothing but barren rocks, mountains of ice, dreary ſeas, &c. Thus has this brave navigator, not only benefited the world by leſſening the dangers and diſtreſſes formerly experienced in thoſe ſeas which are within the line of commerce and navigation now actually ſubſiſting, but likewiſe in diſcouraging future unprofitable ſearches.

A faithful and accurate relation of theſe voyages are the beſt tribute that can now be paid to his memory.

The Endeavour having been equipped with all poſſible expedition, due notice was given of the day appointed for her ſailing; previous to which Capt. Cook, Mr. Banks, and Dr. Solander, received ſeveral viſits from perſons of the firſt diſtinction, who all joined in hearty wiſhes for their ſucceſs, and contributed as much as poſſible to remove the pain of their preſent parting, by anticipating the pleaſure they ſhould feel on their future meeting.

BOOK I.

CHAPTER I.

Departure of the Endeavour from Plymouth—Her Paſſage to the Iſland of Madeira—A Deſcription of its natural Curioſities, and Trade—A particular Account of Funchiale, the Capital of Madeira—The Paſſage from Madeira to Rio de Janeiro—Account of this Capital of the Portugueſe Dominions in South America, and of the circumjacent Country—Incidents which happened while the Endeavour lay in the Harbour of Rio de Janeiro.

ON the 26th of Auguſt, 1768, we got under ſail, and took our departure from Plymouth. Nothing of any material conſequence occurred during this week, except that on the 31ſt we ſaw ſeveral of thoſe birds which the ſeamen call Mother Carey's Chickens, and which are looked upon by them as a certain indication of a ſtorm: however, we were very happy to find that the prognoſtication was on this occaſion falſe.

On the 2d of Sept. we perceived land between Cape Finiſterre and Cape Ortegal, on the coaſt of Gallicia, in Spain.

Several marine animals were diſcovered in this courſe, hitherto unknown, at leaſt unnoticed by our naturaliſts. One of theſe, deſcribed as a new ſpecies, is of an angular form, about three inches in length, and one in thickneſs: it had a hollow paſſage quite through it, and a brown ſpot at one end. Four of theſe animals appeared to adhere together by their ſides, but as ſoon as they were put into the water they ſeparated, and ſwam about, ſhining with a brightneſs that reſembled the vivid colour of a gem. There was alſo another of theſe animals, which exceeded any that we had yet diſcovered in brightneſs and variety: it was equal in colour and ſplendor to thoſe of an opal.

We alſo caught ſeveral birds among the rigging of the ſhip, when about ten leagues diſtance from Cape Finiſterre, which Linnæus had not noticed.

On the 12th we diſcovered Puerto Santo and Madeira; and on the 13th moored with the ſtream anchor in the road of Funchiale. Mr. Weir, the maſter's mate, was unfortunately carried overboard and drowned, while heaving up the anchor.

The iſland of Madeira, upon being approached from the ſea, appears exceeding beautiful, the ſides of the hills being covered with plantations of vines, which are green when all kinds of herbage, except here and there, are burnt up, which at this time happened to be ſo.

As no one is ſuffered here to land from on board a ſhip, without previous permiſſion, a boat came to us from the officers of health in the forenoon of the day we had anchored, and leave being granted, we landed accordingly at Funchiale, which is the chief town in the iſland, and proceeded directly to the houſe of a Mr. Cheap, a conſiderable merchant, and at that time the Engliſh conſul, who gave us a very warm reception, and treated us with uncommon politeneſs and civility.

We continued on the iſland only five days, during which time the ſeaſon happened to be the worſt in the year for ſearching after natural curioſities. Notwithſtanding this unfavourable opportunity, Mr. Banks and Dr. Solander were determined on ſatiſfying their curioſity as much as poſſible: theſe gentlemen, accordingly, by the kind aſſiſtance of Dr. Heberden, who is the chief phyſician of the iſland, and brother to Dr. Heberden, of London, after an excurſion about three miles from the town, collected a few plants in flower. Mr. Banks enquired after and found the tree called Laura Indicus: he ſuppoſes the wood of this to be what is called Madeira mahogany, there being no real mahogany in Madeira.

The people of Madeira are very deficient in trade, having no other article to export than wine. The Madeira wine is made by preſſing out the juice in a ſquare wooden veſſel. The ſize of this is proportioned to the quantity of wine; and the ſervants, having taken off their ſtockings and jackets, get into it, and with their elbows and feet preſs out as much of the juice as they can. In like manner the ſtalks, being tied together, are preſſed under a ſquare piece of wood, by a lever with a ſtone faſtened to the end of it.

While we remained upon this iſland there were no wheel-carriages to be ſeen, nor have the people any thing that reſembles them, except a hollow board, or ſledge, upon which thoſe wine veſſels are drawn that are too big to be carried by hand. They have alſo horſes and mules, very proper for their roads; but their wine is, notwithſtanding, brought to town from the vineyards where it is made in veſſels of goat-ſkins, which are carried by men on their heads.

The inhabitants of Madeira are ingenious, but far from induſtrious. The country is indebted to nature for many gifts. The ſoil is ſo very rich, and there is ſuch a variety in the climate, that there is ſcarcely an article, either of the neceſſaries or luxuries of life, which cannot probably be cultivated here. On the hills walnuts, cheſnuts, and apples flouriſh, almoſt without culture. Pine-apples, mangoes, guanas, and bananas, grow almoſt ſpontaneouſly in the town. They have corn which is large grained and fine, and it might be produced in plenty; but for want of being attended to, all they conſume is imported from other countries. Beef, mutton, and pork are remarkably good, and the captain took ſome of the former on board for his own uſe.

Funchiale (which took its name from *Foncho*, ſignifying fennel in the Portugueſe language) is ſituate at the bottom of a bay, and though it is extenſive in proportion to the reſt of the iſland, it is but poorly built, and the ſtreets are narrow and badly paved. The churches are full of ornaments, with pictures and images of ſaints; the firſt are, for the moſt part, wretchedly executed, and the latter are dreſſed in laced cloaths. The taſte of the convents, eſpecially of the Franciſcans, is better; neatneſs and ſimplicity being united in moſt of the deſigns of the latter. The infirmary alſo is a piece of good architecture, and one of the moſt conſiderable in this place. In this convent is a ſmall chapel, the whole lining of which, both ſides and ceiling, is compoſed of human ſculls and thigh bones; the thigh bones are laid acroſs each other, and a ſcull is placed in each of the four angles. When we viſited the good fathers, juſt before ſupper-time, they received us with great civility. "We will not aſk you," ſaid they, "to ſupper with us, becauſe we are not prepared, but if you will come to-morrow, though it is a faſt-day, we will have a turkey roaſted for you." This polite invitation it was not in our power to accept. There are many high hills in this iſland; Pico Ruivo in particular is near 5100 feet high. To a certain height theſe hills are covered with vines, above which are numbers of cheſnuts and pine-trees; and above theſe again whole foreſts of various ſorts of trees. The Mirmulano and Paobranco which are found among them, are unknown in Europe. The latter of theſe is very beautiful, and would be a great ornament to our gardens. The number of inhabitants in Madeira are computed to amount to about eighty thouſand; and the cuſtom-houſe duties produce to the king of Portugal a revenue of 20,000l. a year, clear of all expences. But the balance of trade is againſt the people; for all their money going to Liſbon, the currency of the iſland is in Spaniſh. This coin conſiſteth of piſtereens, worth about a ſhilling; bitts about ſixpence, and half bitts worth about three-pence.

On the 19th of September the Endeavour ſailed from Madeira, and on the 21ſt we ſaw the iſlands called the Salvages, northward of the Canaries. The principal of theſe was about five leagues to the ſouth half weſt. On the 23d the Peak of Teneriffe bore weſt by ſouth half ſouth. Its appearance at ſun-ſet was very ſtriking; for when moſt part of the iſland appeared of a deep black, the mountain ſtill reflected rays, and glowed with a warmth of colour which no painting can expreſs. There is no eruption of viſible fire, but a heat iſſues from the chinks near the top, too ſtrong to be borne by the hand when held near them. The height of this mountain is 15,396 feet, which is but one hundred and forty-eight yards leſs than three miles.

On the 30th we ſaw Bona Viſta, one of the Cape de Verd Iſlands, in latitude 16 deg. north, and longitude 21 deg. 51 min. weſt. In our courſe to Teneriffe, we obſerved numbers of flying fiſh, which appeared very beautiful, their ſides reſembling burniſhed ſilver.

On the 7th of October Mr. Banks went out in a boat, and caught what our ſailors call a Portugueſe man of war; together with ſeveral ſhell fiſhes, or teſtaceous animals, which are always found floating upon the water; and on the 25th this gentleman ſhot a black-toed gull, not deſcribed by Linnæus, and whoſe dung is of a red colour. We had now variable winds, with ſome ſhowers of rain, and the air was ſo damp as to damage our utenſils conſiderably.

On the 25th we croſſed the line with the uſual ceremonies; and on the 28th when the ſhip was in the latitude of Ferdinand Noronha, longitude 32 deg. 5 min. weſt, we began to look out for the iſland, and for the ſhoals which are laid down as lying between it and the main; but neither the iſland nor ſhoals could be diſcovered. On the 29th we perceived that luminous appearance of the ſea mentioned by navigators, which emitted rays like thoſe of lightening. As Mr. Banks and Dr. Solander were not thoroughly ſatisfied with any of the cauſes hitherto aſſigned for this phænomenon, and ſuppoſing it was occaſioned by ſome luminous animals, they threw out a caſting net, in order to try by experiment whether they were right in their conjectures. A ſpecies of the Meduſa was taken, which bore ſome reſemblance to metalline ſubſtance greatly heated, and emitted a whitiſh light; they caught alſo ſome crabs which glittered very much; animals which had not before been taken notice of by the curious reſearchers into the ſecrets of nature.

As proviſions by this time began to grow ſhort, we reſolved to put into the harbour of Rio de Janeiro; and on the 8th of November we ſaw the coaſt of Braſil. Upon ſpeaking with the crew of a Portugueſe fiſhing boat, we were informed by them, that the land which we ſaw was to the ſouth of Santo Eſpirito. Mr. Banks, having bought of theſe peeple ſome fiſh, was ſurprized, that they required Engliſh ſhillings: he gave them two which he happened to have about him; for he imagined Spaniſh ſilver to have been the only currency, and it was not without ſome diſpute that they took the reſt of the money in piſtereens. The freſh fiſh which was bought for about nineteen ſhillings, ſerved the whole ſhip's company. We ſtood off and on along ſhore till the 12th, having in view ſucceſſively Cape Thomas and an iſland juſt without Cape Frio, and then made ſail for Rio de Janeiro on the 13th in the morning. Capt. Cook ſent his firſt lieutenant in the pinnace before to the city, to inform the governor, that we had put into that port in order to procure refreſhments, and a pilot to bring us into proper anchoring ground. The pinnace returned, but the lieutenant had been detained by the viceroy, till the captain ſhould come on ſhore. When the ſhip had come to an anchor, a ten oared boat filled with ſoldiers approached, and rowed round her, but no converſation took place. Afterwards another boat appeared, which had ſeveral of the viceroy's officers on board. They enquired from whence the Endeavour came? what was her cargo? what number of men and guns ſhe carried? and to what port ſhe was bound? which queſtions having been punctually and truly anſwered, the Portugueſe officers apologized for having detained the lieutenant, and pleaded the cuſtom of the place in excuſe for their behaviour.

On the 14th Captain Cook went on ſhore, and obtained leave to furniſh the ſhip with proviſions; but this permiſſion was clogged with the conditions of employing an inhabitant as a factor, and of ſending a ſoldier in the Endeavour's boat every time ſhe came from ſhore to the veſſel. To theſe uncivil terms the Captain made many objections; but the viceroy was determined to inſiſt on them, neither would he permit Mr. Banks and Dr. Solander to remain on ſhore, nor ſuffer the former to go up the country to collect plants. Captain Cook conceiving from theſe and other marks of jealouſy, that the viceroy thought they were come to trade, uſed all his endeavours to convince him of the contrary; and acquainted him, that they were bound to the South Seas, to obſerve the tranſit of Venus over the diſk of the ſun, an object of great conſequence to the improvement of navigation; but the viceroy by his anſwer ſeemed to be entirely ignorant of this phœnomenon. An officer was now appointed to attend the captain, which order he was deſired to underſtand as an intended compliment: however, when he would have declined ſuch a ceremony, the viceroy very politely forced it upon him.

Dr. Solander and Mr. Banks were not a little chagrined on hearing that they would not be permitted to reſide on ſhore, and ſtill more ſo when they underſtood, that they were not even allowed to quit the ſhip: for the viceroy had ordered, that the captain only, with ſuch ſailors as were required by their duty, ſhould come on ſhore. Whether this aroſe from his jealouſy in regard to trade, or from the apprehenſions he entertained of the extraordinary abilities of the two gentlemen in ſearch of new diſcoveries, it is certain that they were highly diſagreeable to Mr. Banks and the Doctor, who were reſolved, if poſſible, to evade the order. With this view they attempted to go on ſhore, but were ſtopped by the guard-boat; yet ſeveral of the crew, without the knowledge of the centinel, let themſelves down by a rope from the cabin window into the boat about midnight, and drove away with the tide, till they were out of hearing. They afterwards landed on an unfrequented part of the country, and were treated by the inhabitants with great civility.

Capt. Cook, uneaſy under the reſtrictions of the viceroy, remonſtrated with him, but the latter would return no other anſwer, than that the king his maſter's orders muſt be obeyed. The Captain, thus repulſed, and much diſpleaſed, reſolved to go no more on ſhore, rather than, whenever he did ſo, to be treated as a priſoner in his own boat; for the officer who was ſo polite as to accompany him, conſtantly attended him, both to and from the ſhore. Two memorials were now drawn up and preſented to the viceroy, one written by the captain, and the other by Mr. Banks; but the anſwers returned were by no means ſatisfactory. Several papers paſſed between them and the viceroy to no good purpoſe, the prohibition ſtill remaining as before; from whence the captain thought it neceſſary, in order to vindicate his own compliance, to urge the viceroy to an act of force in the execution of his orders. For this purpoſe he ſent lieutenant Hicks with a packet, giving him his order not to admit of a guard in his boat. As this gentleman was reſolved to obey his captain's commands, the officer of the guard-boat did not oppoſe him by force, but acquainted the viceroy with what had happened, on which the lieutenant was ſent away with the packet unopened. When returned, he found a guard of ſoldiers placed in the boat, and inſiſted on their quitting it. Whereupon the officer ſeized the boat's crew and conducted them under an eſcort to priſon, and the lieutenant was ſent back to the ſhip guarded: When the captain was informed of this tranſaction, he wrote to the viceroy to demand his boat and her crew, incloſing the memorial which Mr. Hicks his lieutenant had brought back. Theſe papers he ſent by a petty officer to avoid continuing the diſpute concerning the guard, which muſt have been kept up by a commiſſioned officer. An anſwer was now promiſed by the viceroy; but before this could arrive, the long-boat, which had four pipes of rum on board, was driven to windward, (the rope breaking that was thrown from the ſhip,) together with a ſmall ſkiff that was faſtened to the boat. Immediate orders were given for manning the yawl, which, being diſpatched accordingly with proper directions, returned, and brought the people on board the next morning; from whom Captain Cook learned, that the long-boat having filled with water, they had brought her to a grappling and quitted her, and falling in with a reef of rocks on their return, they were forced to cut the faſtening of Mr. Banks's little boat, and ſend her adrift. The captain now diſpatched another letter to his excellency, wherein he informed him of the accident, deſired he would aſſiſt him with a boat to recover his own, and, at the ſame time, renewed his demand of the delivery of the pinnace and her crew. The viceroy granted the requeſt, but in his anſwer to the captain's remonſtrance, ſuggeſted ſome doubts that he entertained, whether the Endeavour was really a king's ſhip, and alſo accuſed the crew of ſmuggling. Capt. Cook, in his reply, ſaid, that he was willing to ſhew his commiſſion, adding, if any attempt ſhould be made to carry on a contraband trade, he requeſted his excellency would order the offender to be taken into cuſtody. The diſpute being thus terminated, Mr. Banks attempted to elude the vigilance of the guard, which he found means to do, and got ſafe on ſhore on the 26th, in the morning. He took care to avoid the town, and paſſed the day in the fields, where he could beſt gratify his curioſity. Mr. Banks found the country people inclined to treat him with civility, and was invited to their habitations. But it was afterwards heard, that ſearch had been making for this gentleman when abſent. He and Dr. Solander, therefore, reſolved to run no more riſques in going on ſhore, while they remained at this place.

On the 1ſt of December, having taken in water and proviſions, we got, with leave from the viceroy, a pilot on board, but the wind prevented us from putting to ſea. A Spaniſh packet from Buenos Ayres, bound for Spain, arriving the next day, the captain of her with great politeneſs offered to take our letters to Europe. The favour was accepted, and Captain Cook delivered into his hands a packet for the ſecretary of the Admiralty, containing copies of all the papers that had paſſed between him and the viceroy, leaving the duplicates with his excellency. On the 5th we weighed anchor, and towed down the bay, but were ſtopped at Santa Cruz, the principal fortification, the order from the viceroy to let us paſs, by an unaccountable negligence, not having been ſent; ſo that it was not till the 7th that we got under ſail. When we had paſſed the fort the guard-boat left us, and our pilot was diſcharged. It was obſerved, during our ſtay in this harbour, that the air was filled with butterflies, chiefly of one kind, and the greateſt part above our maſt-head. Of the town and neighbouring country we ſhall give the following deſcription.

Rio de Janeiro was probably ſo called becauſe diſcovered on the feſtival of St. Januarius, from whence we may ſuppoſe the river Januarius took its name, and alſo the town, which is the capital of the Portugueſe in America. This town is ſituated on the weſt ſide of the river, from which it is extended about three quarters of a mile. The ground whereon it ſtands is a level plain. It is defended on the north ſide by a hill, that extends from the river, having a ſmall plain which contains the ſuburbs and king's dock. On the ſouth is another hill running towards the mountains which are behind the town. This is neither ill deſigned nor ill built; the houſes in general are of ſtone, and two ſtories high; every houſe having, after the manner of the Portugueſe, a ſmall balcony before its windows, and a lattice of wood before the balcony; its circuit is about three miles; and it appears to be equal in ſize to the largeſt country towns in England. The ſtreets are ſtraight, and of a convenient breadth, interſecting each other at right angles; the greater part, however, lie in a line with the citadel, called St. Sebaſtian, which ſtands on the top of a hill that commands the town. The principal ſtreet is near 100 feet in width, and extends from St. Benedict to the foot of Caſtle-hill. The other ſtreets are commonly twenty or thirty feet wide. The houſes adjoining to the principal ſtreet are three ſtories high, but in other places they are very irregular, though built after the ſame manner as at Liſbon. Water is conveyed to a fountain in the great ſquare, from an aqueduct, raiſed upon two ſtories of arches. The water at this fountain, however, is ſo bad, that we could not drink it with pleaſure. The churches are richly ornamented, and there is more religious parade in this place than in any of the popiſh countries in Europe. Not a day paſſes without a proceſſion of ſome pariſh, with various inſignia, ſplendid and coſtly in the higheſt degree. But the inhabitants may pay their devotions at the ſhrine of any ſaint, without waiting for a proceſſion; for a ſmall cupboard, having a glaſs window, and in which is one of theſe tutelary gods, is placed before almoſt every houſe, and a lamp is kept conſtantly burning, leſt the old proverb ſhould be verified, "Out of ſight, out of mind." Before theſe ſaints the people pray and ſing with ſuch vehemence, that in the night they were diſtinctly heard by our ſailors on board the ſhip.

In this town are four convents, the firſt is that of the

Benedictines, ſituated near its northern extremity: the ſtructure affords an agreeable proſpect, and contains an elegant chapel, ornamented with ſeveral valuable paintings. The ſecond is that of the Carmelites, which forms the centre angle of the royal ſquare, and fronts the harbour; its church was rebuilding in a very elegant manner, with fine free ſtone, brought thither from Liſbon. The third is that of St. Anthony, ſituated on the top of a hill, on the ſouth ſide of the town; before this convent ſtands a large baſon of brown granite, in the form of a parallelogram, which is employed in waſhing. The fourth is ſituated at the eaſtern extremity of the town, and was formerly the Jeſuits convent, but is now converted into a military hoſpital.

In the right angle of the royal ſquare ſtands the viceroy's palace; this, with the mint, ſtables, goal, &c. compoſe one large building, which has two ſtories, and is 90 feet from the water. In paſſing through the palace, the firſt entrance is to a large hall or guard-room, to which there is an aſcent of three or four ſteps. In the guard-room are ſtationed the viceroy's body-guards, who are relieved every morning between eight and nine; and adjoining to the hall are the ſtables, the priſon being in the back part of the building. Within the guard-room is a flight of ſtairs for aſcending to the upper ſtory, which divides at a landing-place about half way, and forms two branches, one leading to the right and the other to the left. The former leads to a ſaloon, where there are two officers in conſtant attendance; the viceroy's aid-de-camp at the ſame time waiting in the anti-chamber to receive meſſages and deliver orders.

The left wing of the royal ſquare is an irregular building, which conſiſts chiefly of ſhops, occupied by trading people. In the centre of this ſquare is the fountain, of which we have made mention, as being ſupplied with water from a ſpring at the diſtance of three miles, from which it is brought by an aqueduct. The place is continually crowded with negroes of both ſexes waiting to fill their jars. At the corner of every ſtreet is an altar. The market-place extends from the north-eaſt end of the ſquare along the ſhore, and this ſituation is very convenient for the fiſhing-boats, and thoſe who bring vegetables from the other ſide of the river to market. Negroes are almoſt the only people who ſell the different commodities expoſed in the market, and they employ their leiſure time in ſpinning cotton.

The form of government is in its conſtitution mixed, but in fact very deſpotic; the viceroy and civil magiſtrate of the town frequently committing perſons to priſon, or tranſporting them to Liſbon, at their own pleaſure. In order to prevent the people from making excurſions into the country, in ſearch after gold and diamonds, certain bounds are preſcribed them, ſometimes at a few, and ſometimes at many miles diſtance from the town; and if a man is taken up by the guard without the bounds, where they conſtantly patrole, he is immediately ſent to priſon.

The inhabitants of Rio de Janeiro are exceeding numerous, and conſiſt of Portugueſe, Negroes, and Indians, which laſt were the original natives of the country. The townſhip of Rio is but a ſmall part of the Capitanea or province; yet is ſaid to contain 37,000 white people, and 629,000 blacks, many of whom are free, making together 666,000, in the proportion of 17 to 1.

The military is compoſed of twelve regiments of regular troops, ſix being Portugueſe, and ſix Creoles, and twelve regiments of provincial militia. The inhabitants are ſervilely ſubmiſſive to the regulars, and it has been ſaid, that if any of them ſhould omit the compliment of taking off his hat, when he meets an officer, he would be immediately knocked down. But the ſubordination of the officers to the viceroy is equally mortifying, for they are obliged to wait three times every day to know, or receive his commands: the anſwer frequently is, "there is nothing new."

In Rio de Janeiro the gentry keep their chaiſes, which are drawn by mules; the ladies however uſe a ſedan chair, boarded before and behind, with curtains on each ſide, which is carried by two negroes on a pole connected with the top of the chair by two rods, coming from under its bottom, one on each ſide, and reſting to the top. The apothecaries ſhops commonly ſerve the purpoſes of coffee-houſes, as the people meet in them to drink capillaire, and play at back-gammon. When the gentry are ſeen abroad, they are well dreſſed, though at home but looſely covered. The ſhopkeepers have generally ſhort hair, and wear linen jackets with ſleeves. The women in general, as in moſt of the Portugueſe and Spaniſh ſettlements in South America, are more ready to grant amorous favours than thoſe of any other civilized parts of the world. As ſoon as the evening began, females appeared at the windows on every ſide, who diſtinguiſhed ſuch of the men as beſt pleaſed their fancies, by throwing down noſegays: and Dr. Solander and two other gentlemen received ſo many of theſe love tokens, that they threw them away by hatfulls.

Without the Jeſuits college on the ſhore, is a village called Neuſtra Seignora del Gloria, which is joined to the town by a very few intervening houſes. Three or four hundred yards within the Jeſuits college, ſtands a very high caſtle, but it is falling to decay. The biſhop's palace is about three hundred yards behind the Benedictine convent, and contiguous to it is a magazine of arms, ſurrounded by a rampart.

The inhabitants of Rio de Janeiro maintain a whale-fiſhery, which ſupplies them with lamp oil. They import brandy from the Azores, and their ſlaves and Eaſt India goods from their ſettlements in Africa, their wine from Madeira, and their European goods from Liſbon. The current coin is Portugueſe, which is ſtruck here; the ſilver pieces are called petacks, of different value; and the copper are five and ten ree pieces. This place is very uſeful for ſhips that are in want of refreſhment. They water, as we have before obſerved, at the fountain in the great ſquare, but the water is not good. We landed our caſks on a ſmooth ſandy beach, which is not more than a hundred yards diſtant from the fountain, and, upon application to the viceroy, a centinel is appointed to look after them. The harbour is ſafe and commodious, and diſtinguiſhed by a remarkable hill, in the ſhape of a cone, at the weſt point of the bay. The entrance is not wide, but it is eaſy, from the ſea-breeze which prevails from noon to ſun-ſet, for any ſhip to enter before the wind. The entrance of the narrow part is defended by two forts, La Cruz, and Lozia; they are about three quarters of a mile from each other. The bottom being rocky, renders it dangerous to anchor there, but, to avoid it ſhips muſt keep in the mid-channel. The coaſt abounds with a variety of fiſh, among which are dolphins and mackarel. Proviſions, except wheaten bread and flour, are eaſily procured. Yams and caſſada are in plenty. Beef, both freſh and jerked, may be bought at two-pence farthing a pound, but it is very lean. The people jerk their beef, by taking out the bones, and cutting it into large but thin ſlices. They then cure it with ſalt, and dry it in the ſhade. It eats very well, and, if kept dry, will remain good a long time at ſea. Mutton is ſcarcely to be procured. Hogs and poultry are dear. Garden-ſtuff and fruit are in abundance, but the pumkin only can be preſerved at ſea. Tobacco alſo is cheap, though not good. Rum, ſugar, and molaſſes are all excellent, and to be had at reaſonable prices.

The climate of Rio de Janeiro is healthy, and free from moſt of thoſe inconveniencies incident to tropical countries. The air is ſeldom immoderately hot, as the ſea breeze is generally ſucceeded by a land wind. The ſeaſons are divided into dry and rainy, though their commencement of late has been irregular and uncertain, for the latter had failed for near four years preceding our arrival; but at this time the rain had juſt began, and fell in heavy ſhowers during our ſtay: formerly the ſtreets have been overflowed by the rain, and rendered impaſſable with canoes.

The adjacent country is mountainous, and chiefly covered with wood, a ſmall part of it only being cultivated. Near the town the ſoil is looſe and ſandy, but farther from the river it is a fine black mould. It produces all the tropical fruits in great plenty, and without much cultivation; a circumſtance exceeding agreeable to the inhabitants, who are very indolent. The mines, which lie far up in the country, are very rich. Their ſituation is carefully concealed, and no one can view them, except thoſe concerned in working and guarding them. About twelve months before our arrival, the government had detected ſeveral jewellers in carrying on an illicit trade for diamonds, with ſlaves in the mines; and immediately afterwards a law paſſed, making it felony to work at the trade, or to have any tools fit for it in poſſeſſion, the civil officers having indiſcriminately ſeized on all that could be found. Near 40,000 negroes are annually imported to dig in the mines, ſo pernicious to the human frame are thoſe works. In 1776, 20,000 more were draughted from the town to ſupply the deficiency of the former number.

CHAP. II.

The departure of the Endeavour from Rio de Janeiro—Her paſſage to the entrance of the Streight of Le Maire—The inhabitants of Terra del Fuego deſcribed—Mr. Banks and Dr. Solander aſcend a mountain in ſearch of plants—An account of what happened to them in this excurſion—The Endeavour paſſes through the Streight Le Maire—An account of her paſſage, and a further deſcription of the inhabitants of Terra del Fuego, and its productions—Remarks reſpecting the ſouth eaſt part of Terra del Fuego, and the Streight of Le Maire—Directions for the paſſage weſtward round this part of America, into the South Seas—The paſſage of the Endeavour from Cape Horn to the newly diſcovered iſlands—An account of their figure and appearance—The inhabitants deſcribed, with a narrative of the various incidents during the courſe, and on the Endeavour's arrival among them.

ON the 8th of December, having procured all neceſſary ſupplies, we took our departure from Rio de Janeiro; and on the 9th an amazing number of atoms were taken out of the ſea. Theſe were of a yellowiſh colour, and few of them were more than the fifth part of an inch long; nor could the beſt microſcope on board the Endeavour diſcover whether they belonged to the vegetable or animal creation. The ſea was tinged in ſuch a manner with theſe equivocal ſubſtances, as to exhibit broad ſtreaks of a ſimilar colour, for near the ſpace of a mile in length, and for ſeveral hundred yards in breadth. Whence they came, or for what deſigned, neither Mr. Banks nor Dr. Solander could determine. Perhaps they might be the ſpawn of ſome marine animal, unknown to either antient or modern philoſophers.

On the 11th we hooked a ſhark. It proved to be a female. When opened we took ſix young ones out of it, five of which were alive, and ſwam briſkly in a tub of water, but the ſixth appeared to have been dead ſome time. From this time we met with no material occurrence till the 22d, when we diſcovered numerous birds of the proſillaria kind, in latitude 39 deg. 37 min. ſouth, and longitude 49 deg. 16 min. weſt; we alſo diſcovered great numbers of porpoiſes of a ſingular ſpecies, about 15 feet in length, and of an aſh colour. On the 23d we obſerved an eclipſe of the moon; and about ſeven o'clock in the morning, a ſmall white cloud appeared in the weſt, from which a train of fire iſſued, extending itſelf weſterly: about two minutes after we heard two diſtinct loud exploſions, immediately ſucceeding each other, like thoſe of cannon, after which the cloud diſappeared. On the 24th we caught a large loggerhead tortoiſe, weighing one hundred and fifty pounds. We likewiſe ſhot ſeveral birds, one an albetroſs, which meaſured between the tips of its wings nine feet and an inch, and from its beak to the tail two feet one inch and an half. On the 30th we ran upwards of fifty leagues, through vaſt numbers of land inſects, ſome in the air, and others upon the water; they appeared to reſemble exactly the flies that are ſeen in England, though they were thirty leagues from land, and ſome of theſe inſects are known not to quit it beyond three yards. At this time we judged ourſelves to be nearly oppoſite to the bay called Sans Fond (without bottom) where it is ſuppoſed by ſome writers, that the continent of America is divided by a paſſage: but it was the opinion of our circumnavigators, that there might be a large river, which probably had occaſioned an inundation. On the 31ſt we had much thunder, lightning and rain. This day and the three following, we ſaw ſeveral whales; likewiſe a number of birds about the ſize of a pigeon, with white bellies and grey beaks.

A. D. 1769.

On the 3d of January we ſaw the appearance of land, in latitude 47 deg. 17 min. ſouth, and longitude 61 deg. 29 min. 45 ſec. weſt, which we miſtook for Pepy's iſland. In appearance it ſo much reſembled land, that we bore away for it; and it was near two hours and an half before we were convinced, that it was one of thoſe deceptions which ſailors call a Fog-bank. At this time our ſeamen beginning to complain of cold, they were furniſhed with a pair of trowſers, and a Magellanic jacket, made of a thick woollen ſtuff called Fearnought. On the 11th, after having paſſed Faulkland's Iſland, we ſaw the coaſt of Terra del Fuego, at the diſtance of about four leagues from the weſt to ſouth-eaſt by ſouth. As we ranged along the ſhore to the ſouth-eaſt, ſmoke was perceived, made, probably, by the natives as a ſignal, for it was not to be ſeen after we had paſſed by.

On the 14th we entered the ſtreight of Le Maire, but were afterwards driven out again with ſuch violence, (the tide being againſt us) that the ſhip's bow-ſprit was frequently under water. At length, however, we got anchorage in a ſmall cove, on the eaſt of Cape St. Vincent, the entrance to which our captain named St. Vincent's Bay. The weeds which grow here upon rocky ground are very remarkable, they appear above the ſurface in eight and nine fathoms water. The leaves are four feet in length, and many of the ſtalks, though not more than an inch and a half in circumference, above one hundred.

Dr. Solander and Mr. Banks went on ſhore, where having continued four hours, they returned about nine in the evening, with upwards of an hundred different plants and flowers, of which none of the European botaniſts had taken any notice near this bay. The country in general was flat, and the bottom, in particular, was a graſſy plain. Here was plenty of wood, water, and fowl, and winter bark was found in great plenty. The trees appeared to be a ſpecies of the birch, but neither large nor lofty. The wood was white, and they bore a ſmall leaf. White and red cranberries were found in theſe parts.

On the 18th we came to an anchor in twelve fathom water, upon coral rocks, before a ſmall cove, at the diſtance of about a mile from the ſhore. At this time two of the natives came down upon the beach, as if they expected that the ſtrangers would land; but as there was no ſhelter here, the ſhip was got under ſail again, and the Indians retired diſappointed. The ſame afternoon about two o'clock, we came into the bay of Good Succeſs, and the veſſel coming to an anchor, the captain went on ſhore, accompanied by Mr. Banks and Dr. Solander, in order to ſearch for a watering place, and diſcourſe with the Indians. Theſe gentlemen had not proceeded above one hundred yards before the captain, when two of the Indians that had ſeated themſelves, roſe up, and threw away the ſmall ſticks which they held in their hands, as a token of amity. They afterwards returned to their companions, who had remained at ſome diſtance behind them and made ſigns to their gueſts to advance, whom they received in a friendly though uncouth manner. In return for their civility, ſome ribbands and beads were diſtributed among them. Thus a ſort of mutual confidence was eſtabliſhed, and the reſt of the Engliſh joined the party, the Indians converſing with them in their way, in an amicable manner. Capt. Cook and his friends took three of them to the ſhip, dreſſed them in jackets, and gave them bread and other proviſions, part of which they carried on ſhore with them; but they refuſed to drink rum or brandy, making ſigns that it burned their throats, as their proper drink was water. One of theſe people made ſeveral long and loud ſpeeches, but no part of them was intelligible to any of us. Another ſtole the covering of a globe, which he concealed under his garment that was made of ſkin. After having remained on board about two hours, they returned on ſhore, Mr. Banks accompanying them. He conducted them to their companions, who ſeemed no way curious to know what their friends had ſeen, and the latter were as little diſpoſed to relate as the former were to enquire. None of theſe people exceeded five feet ten inches in height, but their bodies appeared large and robuſt, though their limbs were ſmall. They had broad flat faces, high cheeks, noſes inclining to flatneſs, wide noſtrils, ſmall black eyes, large mouths, ſmall, but indifferent teeth, and ſtraight black hair, falling down over their ears and foreheads, the latter being generally ſmeared with brown and red paints, and like all the original natives of America, they were beardleſs. Their garments were the ſkins of ſeals and guanicoes, which they wrapped round their ſhoulders. The men likewiſe wore on their heads, a bunch of yarn which fell over their foreheads, and was tied behind with the ſinews or tendons of ſome animals. Many of both ſexes were painted on different parts of their bodies with red, white, and brown colours, and had alſo three or four perpendicular lines pricked acroſs their cheeks and noſes. The women had a ſmall ſtring tied round each ancle, and each wore a flap of ſkin faſtened round the middle. They carried their children upon their backs, and were generally employed in domeſtick labour and drudgery.

Mr. Banks and Dr. Solander, attended by their ſervants, ſet out from the ſhip on the 16th, with a deſign of going into the country as far as they could that day, and returning in the evening. Having entered a wood, they aſcended a hill, through a pathleſs wilderneſs till the afternoon. After they had reached what they took for a plain, they were greatly diſappointed to find it a ſwamp, covered with birch, the buſhes interwoven, and ſo inflexible that they could not be divided: however, as they were not above three feet high, they ſtepped over them, but were up to the ancles in boggy ground. The morning had been very fine, but now the weather became cold and diſagreeable; the blaſts of wind were very piercing, and the ſnow fell thick; nevertheleſs they purſued their route in hope of finding a better road. Before they had got over this ſwamp, an accident happened that greatly diſconcerted them: Mr. Buchan, one of the draughtſmen, whom Mr. Banks had taken with him, fell into a fit. It was abſolutely neceſſary to ſtop and kindle a fire, and ſuch as were moſt fatigued remained to aſſiſt him; but Mr. Banks, Dr. Solander, and Mr. Monkhouſe proceeded, and attained the ſpot they had in view, where they found a great variety of plants that gratified their curioſity and repaid their toil. On returning to the company amidſt the ſnow which now fell in great abundance, they found Mr. Buchan much recovered. They had previouſly ſent Mr. Monkhouſe and Mr. Green back to him and thoſe that remained with him, in order to bring them to a hill which was conjectured to lie in a better track for returning to the wood, and which was accordingly fixed on as a place of rendezvous. They reſolved from this hill to paſs through the ſwamp, which this way did not appear to be more than half a mile in extent, into the covert of the wood, in which they propoſed building a hut, and kindling a fire, to defend themſelves from the ſeverity of the weather. Accordingly, the whole party met at the place appointed, about eight in the evening, whilſt it was ſtill day-light, and proceeded towards the next valley.

Dr. Solander, having often paſſed over mountains in cold countries, was ſenſible, that extreme cold when joined with fatigue, occaſions a drowſineſs that is not eaſily reſiſted; he therefore intreated his friends to keep in motion, however diſagreeable it might be to them. His words were—Whoever ſits down will ſleep, and whoever ſleeps will wake no more.—Every one ſeemed accordingly armed with reſolution; but, on a ſudden, the cold became ſo very intenſe as to threaten the moſt dreadful effects. It was now very remarkable, that the Doctor himſelf, who had ſo forcibly admoniſhed and alarmed his party, was the firſt that inſiſted to be ſuffered to repoſe. In ſpite of the moſt earneſt intreaties of his friends, he lay down amidſt the ſnow; and it was with difficulty that they kept him awake. One of the black ſervants alſo became weak and faint, and was on the point of following this bad example. Mr. Buchan was therefore detached with a party to make a fire at the firſt commodious ſpot they could find. Mr. Banks and four more remained with the Doctor and Richmond the black, who with the utmoſt difficulty were perſuaded to come on; and, when they had traverſed the greateſt part of the ſwamp, they expreſſed their inability of going any farther. When the black was told that if he remained there he would ſoon be frozen to death, his reply was, That he was ſo much exhauſted with fatigue, that death would be a relief to him. Doctor Solander ſaid he was not unwilling to go, but that he muſt firſt take ſome ſleep, ſtill perſiſting in acting contrary to the opinion which he himſelf had delivered to the company. Thus reſolved, they both ſat down, ſupported by ſome buſhes, and in a ſhort time fell aſleep. Intelligence now came from the advanced party, that a fire was kindled about a quarter of a mile farther on the way. Mr. Banks then awakened the Doctor who had already almoſt loſt the uſe of his limbs, though it was but a few minutes ſince he ſat down; nevertheleſs, he conſented to go on, but every meaſure taken to relieve the black proved ineffectual. He remained motionleſs, and they were obliged to leave him to the care of a ſailor, and the other black ſervant, who appeared to be the leaſt hurt by the cold, and they were to be relieved as ſoon as two others were ſufficiently warmed to fill their places. The Doctor, with much difficulty, was got to the fire; and as to thoſe who were ſent to relieve the companions of Richmond, they returned without having been able to find them. What rendered the mortification ſtill greater was, that a bottle of rum (the whole ſtock of the party) could not be found, and was judged to have been left with one of the three that were miſſing.

A fall of ſnow continuing for near two hours, there now remained no hopes of ſeeing the three abſent perſons again. At twelve o'clock, however, a great ſhouting was heard at a diſtance, which gave inexpreſſible ſatiſfaction to every one preſent. Mr. Banks and four others went forward and met the ſailor, who had juſt ſtrength enough left to walk. He was immediately ſent to the fire, and they proceeded to ſeek for the other two. They found Richmond upon his legs, but incapable of moving them; the other black was lying ſenſeleſs upon the ground. All endeavours to bring them to the fire were fruitleſs; nor was it poſſible to kindle one upon the ſpot, on account of the ſnow that had fallen, and was falling, ſo that there remained no alternative, and they were compelled to leave the two unfortunate negroes to their fate, after they had made them a bed of the boughs of ſome trees, and covered them over thick with the ſame. As all hands had been employed in endeavouring to move theſe poor blacks to the fire, and had been expoſed to the cold for near an hour and a half in the attempt, ſome of them began to be afflicted in the ſame manner as thoſe whom they were to relieve. Briſcoe, another ſervant of Mr. Banks, in particular, began to loſe his ſenſibility. At laſt they reached the fire, and paſſed the night in a very diſagreeable manner.

The party that ſet out from the ſhip had conſiſted of twelve; two of theſe were already judged to be dead, it was doubtful whether the third would be able to return on board, and Mr. Buchan, a fourth, ſeemed to be threatened with a return of his fits. The ſhip they reckoned to be at the diſtance of a long day's journey, through an unfrequented wood, in which they might probably be bewildered till night, and, having been equipped only for a journey of a few hours, they had not a ſufficiency of proviſions left to afford the company a ſingle meal.

At day-break on the 17th nothing preſented itſelf to the view all around but ſnow, which covered alike the trees and the ground; and the blaſts of wind were ſo frequent and violent, that their journey ſeemed to be rendered impracticable, and they had reaſon to dread periſhing with cold and famine. However, about ſix in the morning, they were flattered with a dawn of hope of being delivered, by diſcovering the ſun through the clouds, which gradually diminiſhed. Before their ſetting out, meſſengers were diſpatched to the unhappy negroes; but theſe returned with the melancholy news of their death. Though the ſky had flattered the hopes of the ſurvivors, the ſnow continued falling very faſt, a circumſtance which impeded their journey, but a breeze ſpringing up about eight o'clock, added to the influence of the ſun, began to clear the air, and the ſnow falling in large flakes, from the trees, gave tokens of a thaw. Hunger prevailing over every other conſideration, induced our travellers to divide the ſmall remainder of their proviſions, and to ſet forward on their journey about ten in the morning. To their great aſtoniſhment and ſatiſfaction, in about three hours they found themſelves on the ſhore, and much nearer to the ſhip than their moſt ſanguine expectations could have ſuggeſted. When they looked back upon their former route from the ſea, they found that inſtead of aſcending the hill in a direct line, they had made a circle almoſt round the country. On their return, theſe wanderers received ſuch congratulations from thoſe on board, as can more eaſily be imagined than expreſſed.

Mr. Banks and Dr. Solander went on ſhore again on the 20th of this month, landing in the bottom of the bay, where they collected a number of ſhells and plants, hitherto unknown. After having returned to dinner, they went to viſit an Indian town, about two miles up the country, the acceſs to which, on account of the mud, was difficult. When they approached the town, two of the natives came out to meet them, who began to ſhout in their uſual manner. They afterwards conducted Mr. Banks and the Doctor to their town. It was ſituate on a ſmall hill, over-ſhaded with wood, and conſiſted of about a dozen huts, conſtructed without art or regularity. They were compoſed of a few poles, inclining to each other in the ſhape of a ſugar-loaf, which were covered on the weather ſide with graſs and boughs, and on the other ſide a ſpace was left open, which ſerved at once for a fire-place and a door. They were of the ſame nature of the huts that had been ſeen at St. Vincent's Bay. A little graſs ſerved for beds and chairs, and their utenſils were a baſket for the hand, a ſatchel to hang upon the back, and a bladder for water, out of which they drank through a hole near the top. This town was inhabited by a tribe of about fifty men, women and children. Their bows and arrows were conſtructed with neatneſs and ingenuity, being made of wood highly poliſhed, and the point, which was either glaſs or flint, very ſkilfully fitted. Theſe latter ſubſtances were obſerved among them unwrought, as alſo cloth, rings, buttons, &c. from whence it was concluded that they ſometimes travelled to the northward, as no ſhip, for years paſt, had touched at this part of Terra del Fuego. The natives here did not ſhew any ſurpriſe at the ſight of fire-arms, but appeared to be well acquainted with their uſe. It is likely that the ſpot on which the Doctor and Mr. Banks met them, was not a fixed habitation, as their houſes did not ſeem as if they were erected to ſtand for any long time, and they had no boats or canoes among them. They did not appear to have any form of government, or any ideas of ſubordination. They ſeemed to be the very outcaſts of men; and a people that paſſed their lives in wandering in a forlorn manner over dreary waſtes; their dwelling being a thatched hovel, and their cloathing ſcarcely ſufficient to keep them from periſhing with cold, even in thoſe climates. Their only food was ſhell-fiſh, which on any one ſpot muſt ſoon be exhauſted; nor had they the rudeſt implement of art, not even ſo much as was neceſſary to dreſs their food, yet amidſt all this, we are told, that they appear to enjoy that content which is ſeldom found in great and populous cities; a ſpecies of content, which, if they really enjoyed it, muſt have ariſen from ſtupidity, a ſatiſfaction the offspring of the greateſt ignorance. Such is the ſtate of uncultivated nature; ſuch the rude form which uncivilised man puts on. The wants of theſe people ſeemed to be few; but ſome wants all mankind muſt have, and even the moſt ſimple of them, theſe poor ſavages appeared ſcarcely in a condition to gratify. The calls of hunger and thirſt muſt be obeyed, or man muſt periſh, yet the people in queſtion ſeemed to depend on chance for the means of anſwering them. Thoſe who can be happy in ſuch a ſituation, can only be ſo, becauſe they have not a due feeling of their miſery. We know that there have been admirers of ſimple nature amongſt the philoſophers of all ages and nations; and certainly ſimple nature has her beauties. In regard to the vegetative and brute creation, ſhe operates with reſiſtleſs energy; her power is prevalent as her pencil is inimitable; but when we aſcend in the ſcale of beings, and come to examine the human race, what ſhall we find *them*, without cultivation? It is here that inſtinct ends and reaſon begins; and without entering into the queſtion, Whether a ſtate of nature is a ſtate of war? when we obſerve the innumerable inconveniences to which thoſe are ſubject on whom the light of ſcience never dawned, we may eaſily determine in the favour of thoſe arts which have civilized mankind, formed them into ſocieties, refined their manners, and taught the nations where they have prevailed, to protect thoſe rights which the untutored ſavages have ever been obliged to yield to the ſuperior abilities of their better inſtructed invaders, and have thus fallen a prey to European tyranny.

We obſerved in this place ſeals, ſea-lions, and dogs, and no other quadrupeds; nevertheleſs it is probable there are other kinds of animals in the country; for Mr. Banks remarked from a hill, an impreſſion of the foot-ſteps of a large animal on the ſurface of a bog, but of what kind it was he could not determine. Not any land-birds were ſeen larger than an Engliſh blackbird, hawks and vultures excepted. Ducks and other water-fowls we ſaw in abundance; alſo ſhell-fiſh, clams, and limpets. The country, though uncleared, had neither gnat, muſquito, nor any other noxious or troubleſome animals. A great variety of plants were found by the Doctor and Mr. Banks. The wild celery and ſcurvy-graſs are ſuppoſed to contain antiſcorbutic qualities, which will therefore be of ſervice to the crews of ſuch ſhips as hereafter may touch at this place, after a long voyage. The latter is found in abundance near ſprings and in damp places, particularly at the watering place in the bay of Good Succeſs, and it reſembles the Engliſh cuckow flower, or lady's-ſmock. The wild celery is like what grows in our gardens in England, but the leaves are of a deeper green. This plant may be found in plenty near the beach, and upon the land above the ſpring tides. In taſte it is between that of celery and parſley. The grateful ſeaman, long confined to ſalt proviſions, enjoy this healing vegetable diet, as a ſpecial bleſſing of an all-gracious Providence, particularly viſible in providing in different climates different food and nouriſhment, ſuitable to his nature, wants and neceſſities.

On Sunday, Jan. 22, having got in our wood and water, we ſailed out of the bay, and continued our courſe through the Streight; and in paſſing this, notwithſtanding the deſcription which ſome voyagers have given of Terra del Fuego, we did not find that it had, agreeable to their repreſentations, ſuch a forbidding aſpect. On the contrary, we found the ſea coaſts and the ſides of the hills cloathed with verdure. Indeed the ſummits of the hills were barren, but the valleys appeared rich, and a brook was generally found at the foot of almoſt every hill; and though the water had a reddiſh tinge, yet it was far from being ill taſted. Upon the whole, it was the beſt we took on board during our voyage. Nine miles weſtward of cape St. Diego, the low point that forms the north entrance of the Streight of Le Maire, are three hills, called the Three Brothers; and on Terra del Fuego is another hill, in the form of a ſugar-loaf, which ſtands on the weſt ſide, not far from the ſea. We had not that difficulty mentioned in the hiſtory of Lord Anſon's voyage, in finding where the ſtreight of Le Maire lies. No ſhip can well miſs the ſtreight that keeps Terra del Fuego in ſight, for it will then be eaſily diſcovered; and Staten iſland, which lies on the eaſt ſide, will be ſtill more plainly perceived, for there is no land on Terra del Fuego like it. And let it be further particularly obſerved, that the entrance of the ſtreight ſhould be attempted only with a fair wind, when the weather too is moderate, and likewiſe, upon the beginning of the tide of flood, which here falls out upon the full and change of the moon, about one or two o'clock; let it alſo be remembered, to keep as near the ſhore of Terra del Fuego as the winds will permit.

The ſtreight of Le Maire is bounded on the weſt by Terra del Fuego, and on the eaſt by the weſt end of Staten iſland, and is nearly five leagues in length, nor leſs in breadth. The bay of Good Succeſs is ſeated about the middle of it, on the ſide of Terra del Fuego, which preſents itſelf at the entrance of the ſtreight from the northward; and the ſouth end of it may be diſtinguiſhed by a land-mark, reſembling a road from the ſea to the country. It affords good anchorage, and plenty of wood and water. Staten land did not appear to Captain Cook in the ſame manner as it did to Commodore Anſon. That horror and wildneſs, mentioned by the Commodore, were not obſerved by our gentlemen; on the contrary, the land appeared to be neither deſtitute of wood nor verdure, nor was it covered with ſnow; and on the north ſide we ſaw the appearances of bays and harbours. It is probable, that the ſeaſon of the year and other circumſtances might concur to occaſion ſuch different repreſentations of a land, which all our circumnavigators muſt own to be unfriendly and agreeably ſituated. On the weſt ſide of the cape of Good Succeſs, whereby is formed the ſouth-weſt entrance of the ſtreight, we ſaw the mouth of Valentine's bay; from whence the land lies in a direction weſt-ſouth-weſt for more than twenty leagues, appearing high and mountainous, with ſeveral inlets and bays. Fourteen leagues from the bay of Good Succeſs, ſouth-weſt half weſt, and nearly three leagues from the ſhore, is New Iſland; terminating to the north-eaſt, in a remarkable hillock; and ſeven leagues from hence, ſouth-weſt, lies Evout's iſle; a little to the weſt of the ſouth of which are two ſmall low iſlands, near to each other, called Barnevelt's. Theſe are partly ſurrounded with rocks, which riſe to different heights above the water, and are twenty-four leagues from the ſtreight of Le Maire. Three leagues ſouth-weſt by ſouth, from Barnevelt's iſlands, is the ſouth-eaſt point of Hermit's iſlands, which lie ſouth-eaſt and north-weſt. They appeared to us in different points of view, ſometimes as one iſland, and at others as part of the main. From the ſouth-eaſt point of theſe iſlands to Cape Horn, the courſe is ſouth-weſt by ſouth, diſtant three leagues. Hermit, who commanded the Dutch ſquadron in 1624, certainly put into ſome of them, and Chapenham, vice admiral of this ſquadron, firſt diſcovered that Cape Horn was formed by a cluſter of iſlands. Between the ſtreight Le Maire and Cape Horn we found, when near the ſhore, the current ſetting generally ſtrong to the north-eaſt; but we loſt it at the diſtance of fifteen or twenty leagues from land.

January the 26th, we took our departure from Cape Horn, and the fartheſt ſouthern latitude we made was 60 deg. 10 min. and our longitude was then 74 deg. 30 min. weſt. Cape Horn is ſituated in 55 deg. 53 min. ſouth latitude, and 68 deg. 13 min. weſt longitude. The weather being very calm, Mr. Banks ſailed in a ſmall boat to ſhoot birds, when he killed ſome ſheer-waters, and albatroſſes. The latter were larger than thoſe which had been taken to the northward of the ſtreight, and proved to be very good food. At this time we found ourſelves to be 12 deg. to the weſtward, and three and a half to the northward of the ſtreight of Maghellan, having, from the eaſt entrance of the ſtreight, been three and thirty days in ſailing round Cape Horn. Notwithſtanding the doubling of Cape Horn is repreſented as a very dangerous courſe, and that it is generally thought paſſing through the ſtreight of Magellan is leſs perilous, yet the Endeavour doubled it with as little danger as ſhe would the north Foreland on the Kentiſh coaſt; the heavens were ſerenely fair, the wind temperate, the weather pleaſant, and, being near ſhore, we had a very diſtinct view of the coaſt. The Dolphin, in her laſt voyage, which was performed at the ſame ſeaſon with ours, was not leſs than three months in paſſing through the ſtreight of Magellan, not including the time that ſhe lay in Port Famine; and it was the opinion of Captain Cook, that if we had come through the ſtreight, we ſhould not at this time have been in theſe ſeas; and ſhould have ſuffered many inconveniencies which we have not experienced. It is a queſtion, Whether it is better to go through the ſtreight of Le Maire, or to ſtand to the eaſtward, and go round Staten land? This can only be determined according to particular circumſtances, which may make one or the other more eligible. The ſtreight may be paſſed with ſafety by attending to the directions already given; but if the land is fallen in with to the eaſtward of the ſtreight, and the wind ſhould prove tempeſtuous, it would be beſt, in our opinion, to go round Staten land. In any caſe, however, we cannot approve of running into the latitude of 61 or 62, before any attempt is made to ſtand to the weſtward.

March the 1ſt, we found ourſelves both by obſervation and the log, in latitude 38 deg. 44 min. ſouth, and 110 deg. 33 min. weſt longitude, a concurrence very ſingular in a run of 660 leagues; and which proved, that no current had effected the ſhip in her courſe, and it was likewiſe concluded, that we had not come near land of any conſiderable extent; for currents are always found at no great diſtance from the ſhore. Mr. Banks killed above ſixty birds in one day; alſo two foreſt flies, ſuch as had never yet been deſcribed; he alſo found a cuttle-fiſh, of a ſpecies different from thoſe generally known in Europe. This fiſh had a double row of talons, reſembling thoſe of a cat, which it could put forth or withdraw at pleaſure. When dreſſed it made excellent ſoup. On the 24th, our latitude was 22 deg. 11 min. ſouth, and 127 deg. 55 min. weſt longitude. On the 25th, a young marine about twenty, threw himſelf overboard, on account of a quarrel about a piece of ſeal ſkin, which he took by way of frolic; but being charged with it as a theft, he took the accuſation ſo much to heart, that in the duſk of the evening he threw himſelf into the ſea, and was drowned.

On the 4th of April, about 10 o'clock, A. M. Peter Briſcoe, ſervant to Mr. Banks, diſcovered land to the ſouth, at the diſtance of about three or four leagues. Captain Cook immediately gave orders to haul for it, when we found an iſland of an oval form, having a lagoon or lake in the center, that extended over the greater part of it. The ſurrounding border of land was low and narrow in many places, eſpecially towards the ſouth, where the beach conſiſted of a reef of rocks. Three places on the north ſide had the ſame appearance, ſo that on the whole the land ſeemed to reſemble ſeveral woody iſlands. To the weſt was a large clump of trees, and in the center two cocoa-nut trees. When within a mile of the north ſide, though we caſt out a line, no bottom could be found at 130 fathom, nor any good anchorage. This iſland was covered with trees, but we could diſcern no other ſpecies than the palm and the cocoa-nut. Several of the natives were diſcovered on ſhore; they appeared to be tall, with heads remarkably large, which probably ſome bandage might have increaſed. Their complexion was of the copper colour, and their hair was black. Some of theſe people were ſeen abreaſt of the ſhip, holding poles or pikes of twice their own height. They appeared alſo naked, but when they retired, on the ſhip's paſſing by the iſlands, they put on a light-coloured covering. Some clumps of palm-trees ſerved them for habitations, which at a diſtance appeared like hilly ground, and the view of the groves was a very agreeable one. Our captain called this place Lagoon Iſland. It lay in 18 degrees ſouth latitude, and 139 weſt longitude. In the afternoon we again ſaw land to the north-weſt, by ſun-ſet we reached it, when it appeared to be a low iſland of a circular form, and about a mile in circumference. The land was covered with verdure of various kinds, but no inhabitants were viſible, nor any cocoa-nut trees. This iſland is diſtant from that of Lagoon about ſeven leagues north, and 62 weſt, which our gentlemen on board named Thumb Cap.

On the 5th, we continued our courſe with a favourable wind, and about three o'clock diſcovered land to the weſtward. It was low, in form reſembling a bow, and in circumference ſeemed to be ten or twelve leagues. Its length is about three or four leagues, and its width about two hundred yards. The beach was flat, and ſeemed to have no other herbage upon it than ſea-weeds. The reſemblance of a bow was preſerved in the arch and cord forming the land, while the intermediate ſpace was taken up by water. The arch, in general, was covered with trees of various verdure and different heights. This iſland, from the ſmoke that was diſcovered, appeared to be inhabited, and we gave it the name of Bow Iſland.

On the 6th, about noon, we again ſaw land to the weſt, and at three o'clock we came up with it. This land ſeemed to be divided into two parts, or rather a collection of iſlands, (to which we gave the name of the Groups) to the extent of about nine leagues. The two largeſt were divided from the others by a ſtreight, the breadth of which was about half a mile. Some of theſe iſlands were ten miles or more in length, but appeared like long narrow ſtrings of land, not above a quarter of a mile in breadth; but they produced trees, however, of different kinds, among which was the cocoa-nut tree. Several of the inhabitants came out in their canoes, and two of them ſhewed an intention of coming on board; but theſe, like the reſt, ſtopped at the reef. From the obſervations made, theſe people appeared to be about our ſize, and well made. Their complexion was brown, and they were naked. In general, they had two weapons, one was a long pole, ſpear-pointed, and the other reſembled a paddle. Several of their canoes were conſtructed in ſuch a manner as not to carry more than three perſons; others were fitted up for ſix or ſeven; and one of theſe boats hoiſted a ſail, which was converted into an awning when a ſhower of rain fell. Captain Cook would not ſtay for any of them, neither could we determine, whether the ſignals made were meant for defiance, or for invitation; one party waving their hats, and another anſwering by ſhouting. In this reſpect it was not judged prudent to try the experiment, in order to be convinced, as the iſland appeared of no importance, and the crew not being in want of any thing it could produce. This curioſity was therefore laid aſide, in expectation of ſoon diſcovering the iſland, where we had been directed to make our aſtronomical obſervations, the natives of which, it was reaſonable to conjecture, would make no reſiſtance, having already experienced the danger of oppoſing an European force.

On the 7th, we diſcovered another iſland, judged to be in compaſs about five miles, being very low, and having a piece of water in the center. It appeared to abound in wood, and to be covered with verdure, but we ſaw no inhabitants upon it. It was named Bird Iſland, from the number of birds that were ſeen flying about. This lies in latitude 17 deg. 48 min. ſouth, and 143 deg. 35 min. weſt longitude; diſtant ten leagues, in the direction weſt, half north from the weſt end of the Groups.

On the 8th, in the afternoon, we ſaw land to the northward, and came abreaſt of it in the evening, at about five miles diſtance. This land ſeemed to be a chain of low iſlands, of an oval figure, and conſiſted of coral and ſand, with a few clumps of ſmall trees, and in the middle of it was a lagoon. On account of its appearance, it was called Chain Iſland.

On the 10th, after a tempeſtuous night, we came in ſight of Oſnaburgh Iſland, called by the natives Maitea. This iſland is circular, about four miles in circumference, partly rocky, and partly covered with trees.

CHAP. III.

The ENDEAVOUR arrives at OTAHEITE, or George the Third's Iſland—Rules eſtabliſhed by Captain COOK for conducting a TRADE with the Natives—An Account of ſeveral Incidents during his Stay in this Iſland—An OBSERVATORY and FORT erected—Excurſions into the WOODS—Viſits from ſeveral of the Chiefs—The MUSIC of the Natives, and their Manner of BURYING their Dead deſcribed—Other Excurſions and Incidents both on Board and on Shore—Firſt Interview with OBEREA, the ſuppoſed QUEEN of the ISLAND—The Fort deſcribed—The Quadrant ſtolen, and the Conſequences—A Viſit to TOOTAHAH, an Indian Chief—A WRESTLING MATCH deſcribed—European Seeds are ſown—The INDIANS give our People Names.

ON the 11th we made Otaheite, or as Captain Wallis had named it, King George the Third's Iſland. The calms prevented our approaching it till the morning of the 12th, when a breeze ſprung up, and ſeveral canoes were ſeen making towards the ſhip. Few of them, however, would come near, and thoſe who did could not be perſuaded to come on board. They had brought with them young plantains and branches of trees, which were handed up the ſhips ſide, and, by their deſire, were ſtuck in conſpicuous parts of the rigging, as tokens of peace and friendſhip. We then purchaſed their commodities, conſiſting of cocoa-nuts, bananas, bread-fruit, apples and figs, which were very acceptable to the crew. On the evening of the ſame day we opened the north-weſt point of the iſle, to which the Dolphin's people had given the name of York Iſland. We lay off and on all night, and in the morning of the 13th we entered Port Royal Harbour, in the iſland of Otaheite, and anchored within half a mile of the ſhore. Many of the natives came off immediately in their canoes, and brought with them bread-fruit, cocoa-nuts, apples, and ſome hogs, which they bartered for beads and other trinkets with the ſhip's company. The tree which bears the bread-fruit, is about the ſize of a horſe-cheſnut: its leaves are near a foot and a half in length, in ſhape oblong, and very much reſemble thoſe of the fig-tree. The fruit is not unlike the cantaloupe melon: it is incloſed in a thin ſkin, and its core is as large as a man's thumb. The ſubſtance of this fruit is ſomewhat like that of new bread, and as white as the blanched almond. It muſt be roaſted, and when eaten it has the taſte of a ſlight ſweetneſs.

Among thoſe who came on board the Endeavour, was an elderly man, named Owhaw, known to Mr. Gore and others who had viſited this iſland with captain Wallis. Owhaw being conſidered by our gentlemen as a very uſeful man, they ſtudied to pleaſe him, and to gratify all his wiſhes. As our continuance in George's Iſland was not likely to be very ſhort, certain rules were drawn up to be obſerved by every perſon on board his majeſty's bark the Endeavour, for the better eſtabliſhing a regular trade with the natives. The ſubſtance of theſe rules were, "That in order to prevent quarrels and confuſion, every one of the ſhip's crew ſhould endeavour to treat the inhabitants of Otaheite with humanity, and by all fair means to cultivate a friendſhip with them. That no officer, ſeaman, or other perſon, belonging to the ſhip, excepting ſuch only who were appointed to barter with the natives, ſhould trade, or offer to trade, for any kinds of proviſion, fruit, or other produce of the iſland, without having expreſs leave ſo to do. That no perſon ſhould embezzle, trade, or offer to trade with any part of the ſhip's ſtores: and, that no ſort of iron, or any thing made of iron, nor any ſort of cloth, or other uſeful articles in the ſhip, ſhould be given in exchange for any thing but proviſion." Theſe neceſſary rules were ſigned by Capt. Cook, and, being his orders, to the non-obſervance of them were annexed certain penalties, beſides the puniſhment according to the uſual cuſtom of the navy.

When the bark was properly ſecured, Capt. Cook, Mr. Banks, and Dr. Solander, went on ſhore, with a party under arms, and their friend the old Indian. They were received by ſome hundreds of the natives with awe and reverence, who exchanged the tokens of peace, and offered to conduct them to a ſpot of ground, which would be more convenient for them to occupy, than that where they had landed. On their way, the Engliſh made the Indians ſome preſents, which the latter very thankfully received. They now took a circuit of about four miles through groves of the bread-fruit and cocoa-trees. Intermingled with theſe were the dwellings of the natives, which conſiſted of huts without walls. In the courſe of their journey they found but few fowls or hogs, and underſtood that none of their conductors, nor any of the people they had hitherto ſeen, were perſons of rank in the iſland. Thoſe of our crew, who had before been at Otaheite in the Dolphin, were likewiſe of opinion, that the queen's reſidence had been removed, as no traces of it were now to be diſcovered.

Next day, in the morning, before they could leave the ſhip, ſeveral canoes came about her filled with people, whoſe dreſs denoted them to be of the ſuperior claſs. Two of theſe came on board, and each of them fixed upon a friend: one of them choſe Mr. Banks, and the other Captain Cook. The ceremonials conſiſted of taking off their cloaths in great part, and putting them upon their adopted friends. This compliment was returned by our gentlemen preſenting them with ſome trinkets. They then made ſigns for their new friends to go with them to the place of their abode; and the latter being deſirous of being acquainted with the people, and finding out a more convenient harbour, accepted the invitation, and went with them, accompanied by Mr. Banks, Dr. Solander, Captain Cook, and others. We all landed in two boats at the diſtance of about three miles, among a great number of the natives, who conducted us to a large habitation, where we were introduced to a middle-aged man, named Tootahah. When we were ſeated, he preſented to Mr. Banks a cock, a hen, and a piece of perfumed cloth, which compliment was returned by a preſent from Mr. Banks. We were then conducted to ſeveral other large dwellings, wherein we walked about with great freedom. The ladies ſo far from ſhunning, invited, and even preſſed us to be ſeated. By frequently pointing to the mats upon the ground, and ſometimes drawing us down upon them, we had no doubt of their being leſs jealous of obſervation than we were; but the huts that are all open, except a roof, afforded no place of requiſite retirement. Walking afterwards along the ſhore, we met, accompanied by a great number of natives, another chief named Tubourai Tamaide, with whom we ſettled a treaty of peace, in the manner before deſcribed. This chief gave us to underſtand, that he had proviſions at our ſervice, if we choſe to eat, which he produced, and we dined heartily upon bread-fruit, plantains, and fiſh. During this viſit, Tomio, the chief's wife, placed herſelf upon the ſame mat with Mr. Banks, cloſe by him; but as ſhe was not young, nor appeared ever to have poſſeſſed many charms, this gentleman paid little attention to her; and Tomio received an additional mortification, when Mr. Banks beckoned to a pretty girl, who, with ſome reluctance, came and placed herſelf by him. The princeſs was ſomewhat chagrined at this preference given to her rival; nevertheleſs ſhe continued her aſſiduities to her gueſt. This whimſical ſcene was interrupted by an event of a more ſerious nature; Dr. Solander having miſſed his opera glaſs, a complaint was made to the chief, which interrupted the convivial party. The complaint was inforced by Mr. Banks's ſtarting up and ſtriking the but-end of his muſquet againſt the ground, which ſtruck the Indians with ſuch a panic that all of them run precipitately out of the houſe, except the chief and a few others of the ſuperior claſs. That no diſadvantageous notions might be entertained of them on account of this circumſtance, the chief obſerved, with an air of great probity, that the place which the Doctor had mentioned on this occaſion, was not within his diſtrict, but that he would ſend to the chief of it, and endeavour to recover it, adding, that if this could not be done, he would make the Doctor compenſation, by giving him as much new cloth, (of which he produced large quantities) as ſhould be thought equal to the value. The caſe however was brought in a little time, and the glaſs itſelf ſoon after, which deprived us of the merit we ſhould otherwiſe have had in refuſing the cloth which had been offered us. But it afforded an opportunity of convincing the natives of our generoſity, by laviſhing rewards upon them for an action, to which ſelf-intereſt had been the motive, rather than any ſentiment of probity; to which, from numerous tranſactions, they appeared to be abſolutely ſtrangers. After this adventure was amicably terminated, we returned to the ſhip about ſix o'clock in the evening. On Saturday the 15th, in the morning, ſeveral of the chiefs, one of whom was very corpulent, came on board from the other point, bringing with them hogs, bread-fruit, and other refreſhments, in exchange for which they received linen, beads, and other trinkets; but ſome of them took the liberty of ſtealing the lightening chain. This day the captain, attended by Mr. Banks, and ſome of the other gentlemen, went on ſhore to fix on a proper ſpot to erect a fort for their defence, during their ſtay on the iſland, and the ground was accordingly marked out for that purpoſe; a great number of the natives looking on all the while, and behaving in the moſt peaceable and friendly manner.

Mr. Banks and his friends having ſeen few hogs and poultry in their walks, they ſuſpected that they had been driven up the country; for which reaſon they determined to penetrate into the woods, the tent being guarded by a petty officer and a party of marines. On this excurſion ſeveral of the natives accompanied the Engliſh. While the party were on their march they were alarmed by the diſcharge of two pieces fired by the guard of the tent. Owhaw having now called together the captain's party, diſperſed all the Indians, except three, who in token of their fidelity broke branches of trees, according to their cuſtom, and whom it was thought proper to retain. When they returned to the tent, they found that an Indian having ſnatched away one of the centinel's muſquets, a young midſhipman, who commanded the party, was ſo imprudent as to give the marines orders to fire, which were obeyed, and many of the natives were wounded; but this did not ſatisfy them, as the offender had not fallen, they therefore purſued him and revenged the theft by his death. This action, which was equally inconſiſtent with policy and humanity, could not but be very diſpleaſing to Mr. Banks; but as what had paſſed could not be recalled, nothing remained but to endeavour to accommodate matters with the Indians. Accordingly he croſſed the river, where he met an old man, through whoſe mediation ſeveral of the natives were prevailed to come over to them, and to give the uſual tokens of friendſhip. The next morning, however, they ſaw but few of the natives on the banks, and none came on board, from whence it was concluded that the treatment they had received the former day was not yet forgotten, and the Engliſh were confirmed in this opinion by Owhaw's having left them. In conſequence of theſe circumſtances, the captain brought the ſhip nearer to the ſhore, and moored her in ſuch a manner as to make her broad-ſide bear on the ſpot which they had marked out for erecting their little fortification. But in the evening the captain and ſome of the gentlemen going on ſhore, the Indians came round them, and trafficked with them as uſual.

Mr. Banks, on the 17th, had the miſfortune to loſe Mr. Buchan. The ſame day they received a viſit from Tubourai Tamaide, and Tootahah. They brought with them ſome plantain branches, and till theſe were received, they would not venture on board. They bartered ſome bread-fruit and a hog which was ready dreſſed, for nails, with the Engliſh.

The fort began to be erected on the 18th. And now ſome of the company were employed in throwing up intrenchments, whilſt others were buſied in cutting faſcines and pickets, in which work the Indians aſſiſted them. They fortified three ſides of the place, with intrenchments, and paliſadoes, and upon the other which was flanked by a river, where a breaſt-work was formed by the water-caſks. The natives brought down ſuch quantities of bread-fruit and cocoa-nuts this day, that it was neceſſary to refuſe them, and to let them know that none would be wanting for two days. Mr. Banks ſlept for the firſt time on ſhore this night. None of the Indians attempted to approach his tent, he had however taken the precaution of placing centinels about it, for its defence, in caſe any attack ſhould be meditated.

Tubourai Tamaide viſited Mr. Banks at his tent on Wedneſday the 19th, and brought with him his wife and family, with the materials for erecting a houſe, intending to build it near the fort. He afterwards aſked that gentleman to accompany him to the woods. On their arrival at a place where he ſometimes reſided, he preſented his gueſts with two garments, one of which was of red cloth, and the other was made of fine matting; having thus clothed Mr. Banks, he conducted him to the ſhip, and ſtaid to dinner with his wife and ſon. They had a diſh ſerved up that day, which was prepared by the attendants of Tubourai Tamaide, which ſeemed like wheat flour, and being mixed with cocoa-nut liquor, it was ſtirred about till it became a jelly. Its flavour was ſomething like blanc mange. A ſort of market was now eſtabliſhed without the lines of the fort, which was tolerably well ſupplied, and Tubourai Tamaide was a frequent gueſt to Mr. Banks, and the other Engliſh gentlemen. He was the only native that attempted to uſe a knife and fork, being fond of adopting European manners. Mr. Monkhouſe the ſurgeon being abroad on his evening walk, reported that he had ſeen the body of a man who had been ſhot from the tent, of which he gave the following account.—— "The corpſe was depoſited in a ſhed, cloſe to the houſe where the deceaſed had reſided when he was alive, and others were within ten yards of it. It was about fifteen feet in length, and eleven in breadth, and the height was proportionable. The ſides and one end were incloſed with a ſort of wicker work; the other end was intirely open. The body lay on a bier, the frame of which was of wood, ſupported by poſts about five feet high, and was covered with a mat, over which lay a white cloth: by the ſide of it lay a wooden mace, and towards the head two cocoa ſhells; towards the feet was a bunch of green leaves, and ſmall dried boughs tied together, and ſtuck in the ground, near which was a ſtone about the ſize of a cocoa nut; here were alſo placed a young plantain tree, and a ſtone axe. A great many palm nuts were hung in ſtrings at the open end of the ſhed; and the ſtem of a palm-tree was ſtuck up on the outſide of it, upon which was placed a cocoa-ſhell filled with water. At the ſide of one of the poſts there hung a little bag with ſome roaſted pieces of bread-fruit." The natives were not pleaſed at his approaching the body, their jealouſy appearing plainly in their countenances and geſtures.

On the 22d we were entertained by ſome of the muſicians of the country, who performed on an inſtrument ſomewhat reſembling a german flute, but the performer blew through his noſtril inſtead of his mouth, and others accompanied this inſtrument, ſinging only one tune. Some of the Indians brought their axes to grind and repair, moſt of which they had obtained from Captain Wallis and his people in the Dolphin; but a French one occaſioned a little ſpeculation, and at length upon enquiry it appeared to have been left here by M. de Bougainville.

On the 24th Mr. Banks and Dr. Solander made an excurſion into the country, and found it level and fertile along the ſhore, for about two miles to the eaſtward; after which the hills reached quite to the water's edge; and farther on they ran out into the ſea. Having paſſed theſe hills, which continued about three miles, we came to an extenſive plain, abounding with good habitations, and the people ſeemed to enjoy a conſiderable ſhare of property. The place was rendered ſtill more agreeable by a wide river iſſuing from a valley, and which watered it. We croſſed this river, when perceiving the country to be barren, we reſolved to return. Juſt as we were about ſo to do, we were offered ſome refreſhment by a man, which ſome writers have expreſſed to be a mixture of many nations, but different from all, his ſkin being of a dead white, though ſome parts of his body were not ſo white as others; and his hair, eye-brows and beard were as white as his ſkin. His eyes appeared like thoſe that are blood-ſhot, and he ſeemed as if he was near-ſighted. Upon our return, the exceſſive joy of Tubourai Tamaide and his women is not to be expreſſed.

On the 25th, in the evening, ſeveral of the gentlemen's knives being miſſing, Mr. Banks, who had loſt his among the reſt, accuſed Tubourai Tamaide of having taken it, which as he was innocent, occaſioned him a great deal of unmerited anxiety. He made ſigns, while the tears ſtarted from his eyes, that if he had ever been guilty of ſuch a theft as was imputed to him, he would ſuffer his throat to be cut. But though he was innocent, it was plain from many inſtances, that the natives of this iſland were very much addicted to thieving: though Mr. Banks's ſervant had miſlaid the knife in queſtion, yet the reſt were produced in a rag, by one of the natives.

When the guns on the 26th, which were ſix ſwivels, had been mounted on the fort, the Indians ſeemed to be in great trouble, and ſeveral of the fiſhermen removed, fearing, notwithſtanding all the marks of friendſhip that had been ſhewn to them by our people, they ſhould, within a few days, be fired at from the fort: yet the next day, being the 27th, Tubourai Tamaide came with three women, and a friend of his, who was a remarkable glutton, into the fort to dine with us, and after dinner returned to his own houſe in the wood. In a ſhort time after he came back to complain to Mr. Banks, of a butcher, who had threatened to cut his wife's throat, becauſe ſhe would not barter a ſtone hatchet for a nail. It appearing clearly that the offender had infringed one of the rules enjoined by the Captain for trading with the natives, he was flogged on board in their ſight. When the firſt ſtroke had been given, they were humane enough to interfere, and intreated earneſtly that the culprit might be untied; but when this favour was denied them, they ſhewed ſtrong ſigns of concern, and burſt into tears.

On the 28th, Terapo, one of Tubourai Tamaide's female attendants, came down to the fort in the greateſt affliction, the tears guſhing from her eyes. Mr. Banks ſeeing her full of lamentation and ſorrow, inſiſted upon knowing the cauſe, but inſtead of anſwering, ſhe ſtruck herſelf ſeveral times with a ſhark's tooth upon her head, till an effuſion of blood followed, while her diſtreſs was diſregarded by ſeveral other Indians, who continued laughing and talking with the utmoſt unconcern. After this, ſhe gathered up ſome pieces of cloth, which ſhe had thrown down to catch the blood, and threw them into the ſea, as if ſhe wiſhed to prevent the leaſt trace and mark of her abſurd behaviour. She then bathed in the river, and with remarkable cheerfulneſs returned to the tent, as if nothing extraordinary had happened. During the forenoon of this day, the Indian canoes were continually coming in, and people of both ſexes filled the tents of the fort. Mr. Molineux, maſter of the Endeavour, ſeeing a woman whoſe name was Oberea, he declared ſhe was the ſame perſon, whom he judged to be the queen of the iſland, when he was there with Captain Wallis. The eyes of every one were now fixed on her, of whom ſo much had been ſaid by the crew of the Dolphin, and in the account given of her by the captain. With regard to her perſon, ſhe was tall, and rather large made; ſhe was about forty years of age, her ſkin white, and her eyes had great expreſſion in them; ſhe had been handſome, but her beauty was now upon the decline. It was not long before an offer was made to conduct her on board the ſhip, which ſhe accepted. Many preſents were made her, particularly a child's doll, which ſhe viewed very attentively. Captain Cook accompanied her on ſhore, and when we landed, ſhe preſented him with a hog and ſome plantains, in return for his preſents, which were carried to the fort in proceſſion, Oberea and the Captain bringing up the rear. In the way they met Tootahah, who, though not king, ſeemed to be at this time inveſted with ſovereign authority. Envy is found among thoſe who are ſuppoſed to be the children of ſimple nature. Her influence was plainly viſible in a matter which to us was rather a ſubject of laughter than of ſerious conſideration. Tootahah no ſooner ſaw the doll, than he diſcovered ſtrong ſymptoms of jealouſy, nor could any method be found of conciliating his friendſhip, but that of complimenting him with a baby alſo. A doll was now preferable to a hatchet; but a very ſhort time taught the Indians the ſuperior value of iron, which, on account of its uſefulneſs, prevailed over every other conſideration. To ſuch of the men who came from time to time on board, the ſhips proviſions ſeemed to be very acceptable, but the women did not chuſe to taſte them; and though they were courted to dine with our gentlemen, yet, for reaſons known only to themſelves, they preferred the eating of plantains with the ſervants.

On the 29th, near noon, Mr. Banks paid a viſit to Oberea, but was informed that ſhe was aſleep under the awning of her canoe; and, going to call her up, was ſurpriſed at finding her in bed with a young fellow of about twenty-five years of age, a diſcovery which cauſed him to retire rather diſconcerted; but he ſoon underſtood that a commerce of this kind was by no means conſidered as ſcandalous, the ladies frequently courting the men to amorous dalliance, of which they made no ſecret; and as to young Obadee, found in bed with the queen, he was well known by every one to be the object of her laſcivious hours. The queen ſoon got up, and dreſſed herſelf to wait upon Mr. Banks, and after having, as a token of her particular regard, put on him a ſuit of fine cloth, they proceeded together to the tents. In the evening Mr. Banks viſited Tubourai Tamaide. He was aſtoniſhed to find this chief and his family in tears, and not being able to diſcover the cauſe, he ſoon took leave of them. Upon his return the officers told him, that Owhaw had foretold, that the guns ſhould be fired within four days, and as this was the eve of the third day, they were alarmed at the ſituation they judged themſelves to be in. As we were apprehenſive of ill conſequences from this prepoſſeſſion, the centinels were doubled at the fort, and we thought it neceſſary to keep under arms; but Mr. Banks walking round the point, at two in the morning, and finding nothing that might tend to encourage his ſuſpicions, he dropped them, and reſted ſecure in the fort. This our little fortification was now complete. A bank of earth four feet and an half high on the inſide, and a ditch without ten feet broad and ſix deep, formed the north and ſouth ſides. On the weſt, oppoſite the bay, was another bank (with palliſadoes upon it) four feet high; but a ditch was unneceſſary, the works being at high-water mark. Upon the river's bank, on the eaſt ſide, was a range of water-caſks, filled with water. This being thought the weakeſt ſide, we planted two four pounders, and mounted ſix ſwivel guns, which commanded the only two avenues from the woods. We had about forty-five men in this fort, including the officers, and other gentlemen who reſided on ſhore.

On the 30th, Tomio came in great haſte to our tents, and taking Mr. Banks by the arm, told him, that Tubourai Tamaide was dying, owing to ſomewhat that had been given him by our people, and intreated him inſtantly to go to him. Accordingly Mr. Banks went, and found the Indian very ſick. He had been vomiting, and had thrown up a leaf, which they ſaid contained ſome of the poiſon. Mr. Banks having examined the leaf, found it was nothing but tobacco, which the Indian had begged of ſome of the ſhip's company.

The matter, however, appeared in a very ſerious light to Tubourai Tamaide, who really concluded from the violent ſickneſs he ſuffered, that he had ſwallowed ſome deadly drug, the terror of which no doubt contributed to make him yet more ſick. While Mr. Banks was examining the leaf, he looked up to him, as if he had been juſt on the point of death. But when the nature of this deadly poiſon was found out, he only ordered him to drink of cocoa-nut milk, which ſoon reſtored him to health, and he was as cheerful as before the accident happened. Theſe people ſeemed in particular inſtances to be ſometimes ſtrangely afflicted from ſlight cauſes.

On the 1ſt of May, Captain Cook having produced an iron adze, which was made in imitation of the ſtone ones uſed by the natives, ſhewed it to Tootahah, as a curioſity. The latter ſnatched it up and inſiſted on having it; and though he was offered the choice of any of the articles in the cheſts which were opened before him, yet he would not accept of any thing in its ſtead. A chief dined with us that day, who had been on board ſome time before, accompanied by ſome of his women that uſed to feed him. He now came alone; and when all things were ſet ready for dinner, the Captain helped him to ſome victuals, ſuppoſing that he would have diſpenſed with the ceremony of being fed; but he was deceived; for the chief never attempted to eat, and would have gone without his dinner, if one of the ſervants had not fed him. The next morning, May 2, we took the aſtronomical quadrant and ſome of the inſtruments on ſhore that afternoon; and to our great ſurpriſe, when we wanted to make uſe of the quadrant, the next day, it was not to be found; a matter which was looked upon as the more extraordinary, as a centinel had been placed for the whole night within a few yards of the place where it was depoſited. Our own people, at firſt, were ſuſpected of being concerned in this theft, and, as the inſtrument had never been taken out of the caſe, it was ſuſpected that ſome perſon might have carried it off, under the ſuppoſition that its contents were articles uſed in traffic. A ſtrict ſearch was made in and about the fort, and a conſiderable reward offered in order to obtain it again. But all this proving fruitleſs, Mr. Banks, accompanied by Mr. Green and ſome other gentlemen, ſet out for the woods, where they thought they might probably get ſome tidings of what was ſtolen. In their way, they met with Tubourai Tamaide and ſome of the natives. This chief was made to underſtand by ſigns, that they had loſt the quadrant, and that as ſome of his countrymen muſt have taken it, they inſiſted upon being ſhewn the place were it was concealed. Having proceeded a few miles together, after ſome enquiry, Tubourai Tamaide was informed who the thief was, and it was found that he was then at a place about four miles diſtant. As they had no arms but a brace of piſtols, not caring to truſt themſelves ſo far from the fort, a meſſage was diſpatched to Capt. Cook, requeſting him to ſend out a party to ſupport them. The captain accordingly ſet out with a party properly armed, after having laid an embargo upon all the canoes in the bay.

In the mean time, Mr. Banks and Mr. Green proceeded on their way, and at the place which had been mentioned, were met by one of Tubourai Tamaide's own people, bringing with him part of the quadrant; the caſe and the other parts of the inſtrument were recovered ſoon afterwards, when it was found that it had received no real injury, though it had been taken to pieces.

When they returned in the evening, they were much ſurpriſed to find Tootahah under confinement in the fort, while a croud of the natives ſurrounded the gate, diſcovering marks of the greateſt anxiety for the fate of their chief. The occaſion of his detention originated from the conduct of the Indians: alarmed at Capt. Cook's having gone up the country with an armed party, moſt of the natives left the fort that evening, and one of the canoes attempted to quit the bay. The lieutenant who commanded on board the ſhip, having it in charge not to ſuffer any canoe to depart, ſent a boat to detain her, but ſhe no ſooner approached than the Indians jumped into the ſea. Tootahah being of the number, was taken up, and ſent by the lieutenant to the officer that commanded at the fort, who concluded he ſhould do right to detain him priſoner, while the poor chief thought of nothing but being put to death, till Capt. Cook cauſed him to be returned, to the great joy of his countrymen. But the natives were ſtill inclined to bear this affair in their minds, and as a proof of it, they neglected to ſupply the market with proviſions. Mr. Banks walking into the woods, heard great murmurings concerning the treatment of Tootahah, who, as they ſaid, had been ill uſed and beaten, though Mr. Banks declared he was quite ignorant of his having received ſuch treatment.

The chief now ſent for ſuch hogs to be reſtored as he had left behind him, at firſt intending them as a preſent, which by this time, perhaps, he did not think the Engliſh had merited; but they refuſed to ſend them unleſs he would come himſelf, thinking by an interview to promote a reconciliation; and this they were the more deſirous of, as they were told it would be a fortnight before he would pay them a viſit.

On the 3d proviſions were extremely ſcarce, as the markets continued to be ill ſupplied on the account already mentioned; and it was not without ſome difficulty, that Mr. Banks got a few baſkets of bread-fruit from Tubourai Tamaide. Tootahah on the 4th ſent for an axe and a ſhirt in return for the hogs, which were accordingly promiſed to be brought him the next day. He ſent again early in the morning of the 5th, and Mr. Banks and the Doctor ſet out in the pinnace, taking with them one of Tootahah's people and ſoon reached Eparre, where he reſided, which was a few miles to the weſtward. When they arrived there, they found a great number of the natives waiting for them on the ſhore, and were conducted directly to the chief, the people, notwithſtanding the offence they had ſo lately taken, ſhouting out in their language, "Tootahah is your friend." He was ſitting under a tree, and ſome old men were ſtanding about him. Having made ſigns for them to be ſeated, he aſked for the axe, which was then given him by Capt. Cook, as alſo the ſhirt that he had demanded, and a broad-cloth garment, which latter he put on, and was well pleaſed with the preſent. They ate a mouthful together in the boat, and were afterwards conducted to a large court-yard on one ſide of the chief's houſe, where they were to be entertained with wreſtling after the manner of the country. He himſelf ſat at the upper end of the area, having ſeveral of his principal men on each ſide of him, who appeared as judges of the ſport, which was as follows:

Ten or twelve combatants entered the area, and after many ſimple ceremonies of challenging, they engaged, and each endeavoured to throw his antagoniſt by mere ſtrength: thus they ſeized each other by the hand, or other parts of the body, grapling, without the leaſt art, till one, by having a greater hold, or ſtronger muſcular force, threw his antagoniſt on his back. The conqueſt was applauded by the old men with a few words repeated in a kind of tune, and with three huzzas. After one engagement another ſucceeded; but if the combatants could not throw each other in the ſpace of a minute, they parted, either by conſent, or the intervention of their friends. Several women of rank in the country were preſent, but it was thought they only attended this amuſement in compliment to the Engliſh gentlemen. A man with a ſtick, who made way for us when we landed, officiated as maſter of the ceremonies, keeping order among the people, and thoſe of them who preſſed forward he ſtruck with his ſtick very ſmartly. During theſe athletic ſports, another party of men performed a dance, for the ſpace of a minute, but neither of theſe parties took the leaſt notice of each other, their attention being wholly fixed on their own endeavours to pleaſe and conquer. At the concluſion of this entertainment, not unlike the wreſtling matches of remote antiquity, we were told, that ſome hogs, and a large quantity of bread-fruit were preparing for our dinner, very agreeable intelligence to thoſe whoſe appetites were ſharpened by their journey; but our hoſt, inſtead of ſetting his two hogs before us, ordered one of them to be carried into our boat. Here we thought to have enjoyed our good cheer, and yet we neither dined on ſhore, nor in the boat, but at the deſire of Tubourai Tamaide, proceeded as far as the ſhip: no ſmall mortification this, as we had to row four miles, while our dinner was growing cold: however we were at laſt gratified with our promiſed repaſt, of which our chief and his friends had a liberal ſhare. This friendly reconciliation between them and us, operated on the natives like a charm: for it was no ſooner known that Tubourai Tamaide was on board, than proviſions of all kinds were brought to the fort in great plenty.

On the 8th, early in the morning, Mr. Molineux, the Maſter, and Mr. Green ſet out in the pinnace to the eaſtward, in order to procure ſome poultry or hogs. They ſaw many of the latter, and one turtle, yet could not purchaſe either becauſe they belonged to Tootahah, and without his permiſſion the people could not be prevailed upon to ſell them. Hence we concluded that Tootahah was indeed a prince; and we afterwards learnt, that, in this part of the iſland, he acted as regent for a minor, whom we never ſaw all the time of our ſtay here. However, ſome time afterwards, having produced ſome nails to barter for proviſions, we obtained near twenty cocoa-nuts, and ſome bread-fruit, for one of the ſmalleſt ſize, ſo that we ſoon had plenty of theſe articles, though no hogs. In this excurſion Mr. Green imagined he had diſcovered a tree ſixty yards in circumference; but, on his return, he was informed by our two gentlemen, that it was a ſpecies of the fig, whoſe branches bending down to the earth take freſh root, and thus form a maſs of trunks, which being all united by a common vegetation, might eaſily be miſtaken for one trunk or body.

On the 9th in the forenoon, Oberea paid us a viſit accompanied by her favourite Obadee, preſenting us with a hog and ſome bread-fruit. This was the firſt viſit we had received from this lady, ſince the loſs of our quadrant, and the confinement of Tootahah. By this time our forge was ſet up and at work, which afforded a new ſubject of admiration to the Indians, and to Capt. Cook an additional opportunity of conferring obligations on them, by permitting the ſmith, in his leiſure hours, to convert the old iron, which they were ſuppoſed to have procured from the Dolphin, into different kinds of tools. Oberea produced as much old iron as would have made for her another axe; this ſhe requeſted to have done; however the lady could not be gratified in this particular, upon which ſhe brought a broken axe, deſiring it might be mended. The axe was mended, and to all appearance ſhe was content. On their return home, the Indians took with them the canoe which had lain ſome time at the point.

On the 10th we ſowed, in ground properly prepared, ſeeds of melons and other plants, but none of them came up except muſtard. Mr. Banks thought the ſeeds were ſpoiled by a total excluſion of freſh air, they having all been put into ſmall bottles, and ſealed up with roſin. We learnt this day, that the Indians called the iſland Otaheite, the name by which we have diſtinguiſhed it; but we were not ſo fortunate in our endeavours to teach them our names; and, after repeated attempts to pronounce them, which proved fruitleſs, they had recourſe to new ones, the productions of their own invention. Capt. Cook they named Toote; Mr. Hicks, Hete. The maſter they called Boba, from his chriſtian name Robert; Mr. Gore, Toarro; Dr. Solander, Torano; Mr. Banks, Tapane; Mr. Green, Eterce; Mr. Parkinſon, Patani; Mr. Sporing, Polini; and ſo on for the greateſt part of the ſhip's crew. Theſe perhaps were ſignificant words in their own language; and we are inclined to this opinion, becauſe Mr. Monkhouſe, who commanded the party that ſhot the man for ſtealing a muſket, they named Matte, which was not merely an arbitrary ſound, but in their language it ſignified dead.

C H A P. IV.

An extraordinary Viſit—Divine Service attended by the natives of OTAHEITE—An uncommon Sight—TUBOURAI TAMAIDE found guilty of Theft—A VISIT paid to TOOTAHAH—Various Adventures at that Time, and an extraordinary Amuſement of the INDIANS—A Relation of what happened at the Fort, while Preparations were making to obſerve the TRANSIT of VENUS—The Obſervations made with great Succeſs—A particular Account and Deſcription of an Indian Funeral—An unuſual Character among the INDIANS—A Robbery at the Fort—Specimen of Indian Cookery—A Narrative of various Incidents—A Circumnavigation of the Iſland, and Occurrences during this Expedition—A Burying-place, and a Morai or Place of Worſhip deſcribed—An Inland Expedition of Mr. BANKS—Preparations made by the Crew of the ENDEAVOUR to leave the Iſland of OTAHEITE—An Account of the Departure of the ENDEAVOUR, and the Behaviour of the Natives, particularly of TUPIA, on this Occaſion.

ON the 12th of this month (May) an uncommon ceremony was performed by ſome of the natives. As Mr. Banks was ſitting in his boat, trading with them as uſual, ſome ladies, who were ſtrangers, advanced in proceſſion towards him. The reſt of the Indians on each ſide gave way and formed a lane for the viſitors to paſs, who coming up to Mr. Banks, preſented him with ſome parrots feathers, and various kinds of plants. Tupia, who ſtood by Mr. Banks, acted as his maſter of the ceremonies, and receiving the branches, which were brought at ſix different times, laid them down in the boat. After this ſome large bundles of cloth were brought, conſiſting of nine pieces, which being divided into three parcels, one of the women, called Oorattooa, who appeared to be the principal, ſtepping upon one of them, pulled up her cloaths as high as her waiſt, and then, with an air of unaffected ſimplicity, turned round three times. This ceremony ſhe repeated, with ſimilar circumſtances, on the other two parcels of cloth; and the whole being then preſented to Mr. Banks, the ladies went and ſaluted him; in return for which extraordinary favours, he made them ſuch preſents as he thought would beſt pleaſe them. In the evening the gentlemen of the fort were viſited by Oberea, and Otheorea, her favourite female attendant, who was a very agreeable girl, and whom we were the more pleaſed to ſee, becauſe it had been reported that ſhe was either ſick or dead.

On the 13th Tubourai Tamaide offended Mr. Banks by ſnatching his gun out of his hand, and firing it in the air; an action which alſo much ſurpriſed that gentleman, as he imagined him totally ignorant of the uſe of it. And as the ignorance of the people of thoſe countries in regard to this particular, muſt always cauſe them to fear their gueſts, Mr. Banks therefore made a ſerious matter of what, probably, the other meant only as a joke, and, not without threats, gave him to underſtand, that for him but to touch the piece was a high inſult. The offender made no reply, but ſet out immediately, with his family, for Eparre. Great inconvenience being apprehended from this man, and as in many inſtances he had been particularly uſeful, Mr. Banks determined to follow him. He ſet out the ſame evening from the fort, accompanied by Mr. Molineux, and found him in the middle of a large circle of people, the picture of extreme grief, which was alſo viſible in the countenances of his attendants. One of the women expreſſed her trouble in the ſame manner as Terapo had done, upon another occaſion. Mr. Banks loſt no time in endeavouring to put an end to all animoſity. The chief was ſoothed into confidence, and, a double canoe being got ready, they all returned together to the fort before ſupper: and as a pledge of ſincere reconciliation, both he and his wife paſſed the night in the tent of Mr. Banks. That very night, notwithſtanding their preſence, one of the natives attempted to ſcale the barricadoes of the fort; but, being diſcovered by one of our centinels, he ran away much faſter than any of our people could follow him. The temptation which cauſed him to attempt what might have coſt him his life was, doubtleſs, the iron and iron tools which were in uſe at the armourer's forge; incitements to theſt which none of the Indians could reſiſt.

On Sunday the 14th, in the morning divine ſervice was performed at the fort. We hoped to have had the preſence of ſome of the Indians, but before the time fixed on for beginning the ſervice, moſt of them were gone home. Tubourai Tamaide and his wife were preſent, but though they behaved with much decency, they made no enquiries with reſpect to the ceremonies, and their brethren were as little inquiſitive upon their return. The day thus begun with acts of devotion, was concluded with thoſe of lewdneſs exhibited among the natives by way of entertainment. Among the reſt a young fellow lay publicly with a girl about twelve years of age, in the preſence of many of our people, and a great number of the Indians, without the leaſt ſenſe of impropriety or indecency. Oberea, and ſome women of the firſt rank in the country were ſpectators, who even gave inſtructions to the girl how to perform her part, which, young as ſhe was, ſeemed unneceſſary.

On Monday the 15th, Tubourai Tamaide was detected in having committed a theft. Mr. Banks had a good opinion of this chief, but, when his honeſty was put to the teſt, a baſket of nails, left in the corner of the tent, proved irreſiſtible. He confeſſed the fact of having ſtolen four nails, but when reſtitution was demanded, Tamaide ſaid the nails were at Eparre. High words paſſed on the occaſion, and, in the end, the Indian produced one of the nails, and was to be forgiven on reſtoring the reſt; but his virtue was not equal to the taſk, and he withdrew himſelf, as uſual, when he had committed any offence. At this time our long-boat was ſo much eaten with worms, that it was found neceſſary to give her a new bottom. On examining the pinnace, thinking ſhe might be in the ſame ſtate, we had the ſatisfaction to perceive, that not a worm had touched her. This difference in the condition of the two boats we attributed to the different ingredients with which their bottoms were paid; the long-boat had been paid with varniſh of pine, and the pinnace painted with white lead and oil; which laſt coating we think to be the moſt eligible for the bottoms of all boats intended for this part of the world.

On the 24th, Mr. Hicks was ſent to Tootahah, who had removed from Eparre to a place called Tettahah. The chief having ſent ſeveral times to requeſt a viſit from the captain, promiſing at the ſame time, that he would acknowledge the favour by a preſent of ſome hogs, the buſineſs of Mr. Hicks was, to obtain, if poſſible, the hogs, upon eaſier terms than the required viſit. He was received in a friendly manner by Tootahah, who, upon his arrival, produced one hog only but promiſed three more that were at a diſtance the next morning. Mr. Hicks waited patiently till the appointed time; but when the morning came, he was obliged to depart with the ſingle hog that had been preſented to him.

On the 25th, Mr. Banks ſeeing Tubourai Tamaide and his wife Tomio at the tent for the firſt time ſince the former had been detected in ſtealing the nails, he endeavoured to perſuade him to reſtore them, but in vain. As our gentlemen treated him with a reſerve and coolneſs which he could not but perceive, his ſtay was ſhort, and he departed in a very abrupt manner; nor could our ſurgeon the next morning perſuade to effect a reconciliation by bringing down the nails.

On the 27th, Mr. Banks, Dr. Solander, Captain Cook, and ſome others, ſet out in the pinnace to viſit Tootahah, who had again removed to a place called Atahourou, ſix miles from his laſt abode; and not being able to go half way thither in a boat, it was almoſt evening before we arrived. We found the chief, as uſual, ſitting under a tree with a great crowd about him. Having made our preſents in due form, conſiſting of a yellow ſtuff petticoat, and other trifling articles, we were invited to ſupper, and to paſs the night there. Our party conſiſted of ſix only; but the place was crouded with a greater number than the houſes and canoes could contain. Among other gueſts were Oberea with her train of attendants. Mr. Banks having accepted of a lodging in Oberea's canoe, left his companions in order to retire to reſt. Oberea had the charge of his cloaths; but notwithſtanding her care, they were ſtolen, as were alſo his piſtols, his powder-horn, and ſeveral other things out of his waiſtcoat pockets. An alarm was given to Tootahah, in the next canoe, who went with Oberea in ſearch of the thief, leaving Mr. Banks with only his breeches and waiſtcoat on, and his muſket uncharged. They ſoon returned, but without ſucceſs. Mr. Banks thought proper to put up with the loſs at preſent, and retired a ſecond time to reſt; juſt as he had compoſed himſelf to ſleep, he was rouſed by ſome muſic, and obſerved lights at a little diſtance from the ſhore. He then roſe to go and find his companions. As ſoon as he approached the lights, he found the hut where Captain Cook and three others of the gentlemen lay, when he began to relate his miſadventure to them; they told him in return, that they had loſt their ſtockings and jackets. In effect Dr. Solander, who joined them the next morning, was the only one that eſcaped being robbed, and he had ſlept at a houſe that was a mile diſtant. This accident, however, did not prevent Captain Cook, Mr. Banks, and the reſt that were at the hut, from attending to the muſic which was a ſort of concert called Heiva, and conſiſted of drums, flutes, and ſeveral voices. They retired again to their repoſe, after this entertainment was over.

Their cloaths, and the other things which had been ſtolen, were never heard of afterwards, but Mr. Banks got ſome cloaths from Oberea, in which he made a whimſical appearance.

On the 28th, we ſet out for the boat, having obtained only one hog which had been intended for our ſupper the preceding night; ſo that, all things conſidered, we had little reaſon to be ſatisfied with our excurſion. On our return to the boat, we had a ſpecimen of the agility of the Indian ſwimmers, ſome of whom, merely for diverſion, ſwam in a ſurf where no European boat could have lived, and where our beſt ſwimmers muſt have periſhed, had they accidentally fallen in with it.

At this time the preparations were made for viewing the tranſit of Venus, and two parties were ſent out to make obſervations from different ſpots, that in caſe of failing on one place, they might ſucceed in another. They employed themſelves for ſome time in preparing their inſtruments, and inſtructing thoſe gentlemen who were to go out, in the uſe of them; and on Thurſday, the firſt of June, they ſent the long-boat with Mr. Gore, Mr. Monkhouſe (the two obſervers) and Mr. Sporing, the latter of whom was a friend of Mr. Banks, with proper inſtruments to Emayo. Others were ſent to find out a ſpot that might anſwer the purpoſe, at a convenient diſtance from their principal ſtation.

The party that went towards Emayo, after rowing the greater part of the night, having hailed a canoe, were informed of a place by the Indians on board, which was judged proper for their obſervatory, where they accordingly fixed their tents. It was a rock that roſe out of the water about 140 yards from the ſhore.

Saturday the 3d (the day of the tranſit) Mr. Banks, as ſoon as it was light, left them, in order to go and get freſh proviſions on the iſland. This gentleman had the ſatisfaction to ſee the ſun riſe without a cloud. The king, whoſe name was Tarrao, came to pay him a viſit, as he was trading with the natives, and brought with him Nuna his ſiſter. As it was cuſtomary for the people in theſe parts to be ſeated at their conferences, Mr. Banks ſpread his turban of Indian cloth, which he wore as a hat, upon the ground, on which they all ſat down. Then a hog and a dog, ſome cocoanuts, and bread-fruit were brought, being the king's preſent; and Mr. Banks ſent for an adze, a ſhirt, and ſome beads, which were preſented to his majeſty, who received them with apparent ſatisfaction. Tubourai Tamaide, and Tomio, who had gone with Mr. Banks, came from the obſervatory, when Tomio, who was ſaid to be related to Tarrao, gave him a long nail, and left a ſhirt as a preſent to Nuna. Afterwards the king, his ſiſter, and three beautiful young women their attendants, returned with Mr. Banks to the obſervatory, where he ſhewed them the tranſit of Venus, when that planet was upon the ſun, and acquainted them, that to view it in that ſituation was the cauſe of his undertaking a voyage to thoſe remoter parts. According to this gentleman's account, the produce of this iſland is nearly the ſame with that of Otaheite; the people alſo reſembled thoſe of that iſland: he had ſeen many of them upon it who were acquainted with the nature of trading articles. The parties that were ſent out to make their obſervations on the tranſit, had good ſucceſs in the undertaking: though they differed rather more than might have been expected in their account of the contact.

Mr. GREEN's account was as follows:

	Hours.	Min.	Sec.	
The firſt external contact -	9	25	4	Morn.
The firſt internal contact, or total emerſion - -	9	44	4	
The ſecond internal contact, or beginning of the emerſion - -	3	14	8	Afternoon.
The ſecond external contact, or total emerſion -	3	32	10	

Latitude of the obſervatory 17 deg. 29 min. 15 ſec. ſouth;—longitude, 149 deg. 32 min. 30 ſec. weſt from Greenwich.

While the gentlemen and officers were buſied in viewing the tranſit, ſome of the ſhip's company having broke into the ſtore-room, took the liberty of ſtealing a quantity of ſpike-nails. After a ſtrict ſearch the thief was found out; he had, however, but few of the nails in his poſſeſſion; but he was ordered to receive two dozen of laſhes, by way of example.

On the 4th, the two parties ſent out to obſerve the tranſit were abſent; on which account we deferred keeping his Majeſty's birth-day to the next day, the 5th, when we celebrated the ſame, ſeveral of the Indian chiefs partook of our entertainment, and in turn drank his Majeſty's health, by the name of Kihiargo, the neareſt imitation they could produce of King George About this time an old female of ſome diſtinction dying, gave the Engliſh an opportunity of obſerving the ceremonies uſed by theſe iſlanders in diſpoſing of the dead bodies of their people; which, as we have obſerved, they do not directly bury. The reader has already ſeen the deſcription of the bier, the placing the bread-fruit, &c. which, according to Tubourai Tamaide's account, was a kind of offering to their gods. In the front of the ſquare ſpace, a ſort of ſtile was placed, where the relations of the deceaſed ſtood to give token of their grief. There were under the awning ſome pieces of cloth, whereon were the tears and blood of the mourners, who uſed to wound themſelves with a ſhark's tooth upon theſe occaſions. Four temporary houſes were erected at a ſmall diſtance, in one of which remained ſome of the relations of the deceaſed; the chief mourner reſided in another, and was dreſſed in a particular manner, in order to perform a certain ceremony. When the corpſe is rotten, the bones are buried near the ſpot, and theſe places were found to anſwer the purpoſes of religious worſhip, though Capt. Wallis could not perceive the traces of any ſuch worſhip among them. Concerning the ceremony we are about to ſpeak of, the following is the account we have of it, which may not be unentertaining to the curious reader. It was performed on the 10th, and Mr. Banks was ſo deſirous of being preſent, that he agreed to take a part in it, when he was informed that he could not be a ſpectator on any other condition. He went accordingly in the evening to the place where the body was depoſited, where he was met by the relations of the deceaſed, and was afterwards joined by ſeveral other perſons. Tubourai Tamaide was the principal mourner, whoſe dreſs was whimſical, though not altogether ungraceful. Mr. Banks was obliged to quit his European dreſs, and had no other covering than a ſmall piece of cloth, that was tied round his middle; his body was blacked over with charcoal and water, as were the bodies of ſeveral others, and among them ſome females, who were no more covered than himſelf. The proceſſion then began, and the chief mourner uttered ſome words, which were judged to be a prayer, when he approached the body, and he repeated theſe words as he came up to his own houſe. They afterwards went on, by permiſſion, towards the fort. It is uſual for the reſt of the Indians to ſhun theſe proceſſions as much as poſſible; they accordingly ran into the woods in great haſte, as ſoon as this came in view. From the fort the mourners proceeded along the ſhore, croſſed the river, then entered the woods, paſſing ſeveral houſes, which became immediately uninhabited; and during the reſt of the proceſſion, which continued for half an hour, not an Indian was viſible. Mr. Banks filled an office that they called Nineveh, and there were two others in the ſame character. When none of the other natives were to be ſeen, they approached the chief mourner, ſaying Imatata; then thoſe who had aſſiſted at the ceremony bathed in the river, and reſumed their former dreſs. Such was this uncommon ceremony, in which Mr. Banks performed a principal part, and received applauſe from Tubourai Tamaide, the chief mourner. What can have introduced among theſe Indians ſo ſtrange a cuſtom, as that of expoſing their dead above ground, till the fleſh is conſumed by putrefaction, and then burying the bones, it is perhaps impoſſible to gueſs; nor is it leſs difficult to determine, why the repoſitories of their dead ſhould be alſo places of worſhip.

On the 12th, the Indians having loſt ſome of their bows and arrows, and ſtrings of plaited hair, a complaint was made to the Captain. The affair was enquired into, and the fact being well atteſted, the offenders received each two dozen of laſhes. The ſame day Tubourai Tamaide brought his bow and arrows, in order to decide a challenge of ſhooting between him and Mr. Gore; but it appeared they had miſtaken each other, Mr. Gore intending to diſcharge his arrow at a mark, while the Indian meant only to try who could ſhoot fartheſt. The challenge was dropped, in conſequence of the miſtake being diſcovered; but Tubourai Tamaide, in order to diſplay his ſkill, kneeling down, ſhot an arrow, unfeathered, (as they all are) near the ſixth part of a mile, dropping the bow the inſtant the arrow was diſcharged. Mr. Banks having this morning met ſeveral of the natives, and being informed that a muſical entertainment was expected in the evening, he and the reſt of the Engliſh gentlemen reſolved to be preſent at the ſame. They went accordingly, and heard a performance on drums and flutes by a kind of itinerant muſicians. The drummers ſung to the muſic, and the Engliſh were much ſurprized when they found that they were the ſubject of their lays. The ſongs they therefore concluded to be extemporary effuſions, the rewards whereof were ſuch neceſſaries as they required.

On the 14th, in the night, an iron coal rake for the oven was ſtole; and many other things having at different times been conveyed away, Captain Cook judged it of ſome conſequence to put an end, if poſſible, to ſuch practices, by making it their common intereſt to prevent it. He had already given ſtrict orders, that the centinels ſhould not fire upon the Indians, even if they were detected in the fact; but many repeated depredations determined him to make repriſals. About twenty-ſeven of their double canoes with ſails were juſt arrived, containing cargoes of fiſh; theſe the Captain ſeized, and then gave notice, that unleſs the rake, and all the other things that had been ſtolen, were returned, the veſſels ſhould be burnt. The menace produced no other effect than the reſtitution of the rake, all the other things remaining in their poſſeſſion. The Captain, however, thought fit to give up the cargoes, as the innocent natives were in great diſtreſs for want of them, and in order to prevent the confuſion ariſing from diſputes concerning the property of the different lots of goods which they had on board. About this time another incident had nearly, notwithſtanding all our caution, embroiled us with the Indians. The Captain having ſent a boat on ſhore to get ballaſt, the officer not meeting immediately with what he wanted, began to pull down one of the ſepulchral manſions of the dead; which ſacrilegious act of violence was immediately oppoſed by the enraged iſlanders. Intelligence of this diſpute being received by Mr. Banks, he went to the place, and a reconciliation was ſoon effected, which put an end to the diſpute, by ſending the boat's crew to the river-ſide, where a ſufficient quantity of ſtones were to be had without a poſſibility of giving offence. This was the only inſtance in which they offered to oppoſe us; and (except the affair of the fort, which has been related) the only inſult offered to an individual was, when Mr. Monkhouſe, the ſurgeon, took a flower from a tree which grew in one of their ſepulchral incloſures. Upon this occaſion, an Indian came ſuddenly behind him, and ſtruck him; Mr. Monkhouſe laid hold of the aſſailant, but two of his countrymen reſcued him, and then they all ran off as faſt as they could.

On the 19th, in the evening, while the canoes were ſtill detained, Oberea, and ſeveral of her attendants, paid us a viſit. She came from Tootahah's palace in a double canoe, and brought with her a hog, bread-fruit, and other preſents, among which was a dog; but not a ſingle article of the things that had been ſtolen: theſe, ſhe ſaid, had been taken away by her favourite Obadee, whom ſhe had beaten and diſmiſſed. She ſeemed, however, conſcious that her ſtory did not deſerve credit, and appeared at firſt much terrified; though ſhe ſurmounted her fears with great fortitude, and was deſirous of ſleeping with her attendants in Mr. Banks's tent; but this being refuſed, ſhe was obliged to paſs the night in her canoe. A whole tribe of Indians would have ſlept in the ball tent, but were not permitted. The next morning Oberea returned, putting herſelf wholly in our power, when we accepted of her preſents, which ſhe doubtleſs thought, and juſtly too, the moſt effectual means to bring about a reconciliation. Two of her attendants were very aſſiduous in getting themſelves huſbands, in which they ſucceeded, by means of the ſurgeon and one of the lieutenants: they ſeemed very agreeable till bed-time, and determined to lie in Mr. Banks's tent, which they accordingly did, till the ſurgeon having ſome words with one of them, Mr. Banks thruſt her out, and ſhe was followed by the reſt, except Otea-Tea, who cried ſome time, and then he turned her out alſo. This had like to have become a ſerious affair, a duel being talked of between Mr. Banks and Mr. Monkhouſe, but it was happily avoided. We had been informed, that in this iſland dogs were eſteemed more delicate food than pork, as thoſe bred by the natives to be eaten fed entirely upon vegetables. The experiment was tried. Tupia undertook to kill and dreſs the dog, which he did, by making a hole in the ground, and baking it. We all agreed it was a very good diſh.

On the 21ſt we were viſited by many of the natives, who brought with them various preſents. Among the reſt was a chief, named Oamo, whom we had not yet ſeen. He had a boy and a young woman with him. The former was carried on a man's back, which we conſidered as a piece of ſtate, for he was well able to walk. Oberea and ſome of the Indians went from the fort to meet them, being bare-headed, and uncovered as low as the waiſt; circumſtances we had noticed before, and judged them marks of reſpect which was uſually ſhewn to perſons of high rank. When Oamo entered the tent, the young woman, though ſeemingly very curious, could not be prevailed upon to accompany him. The youth was introduced by Dr. Solander; but as ſoon as the Indians within ſaw him, they took care to have him very ſoon ſent out. Our curioſity being raiſed by theſe circumſtances, we made enquiry concerning the ſtrangers, and were informed that Oamo was the huſband of Oberea, but that by mutual conſent they had been for a conſiderable time ſeparated, and the boy and girl were their children. The former was called Terridiri: he was heir apparent to the ſovereignty of the iſlands, and when he had attained the proper age, was to marry his ſiſter. The preſent ſovereign, Outou, was a minor, and the ſon of a prince, called Whappai. Whappai, Oamo, and Tootahah, were all brothers; Whappai was the eldeſt, and Oamo the ſecond; wherefore, Whappai having no child but Outou, Terridiri was heir to the ſovereignty. To us it appeared ſingular, that a boy ſhould reign during the life of his father; but in the iſland of Otaheite a boy ſucceeds to his father's authority and title as ſoon as he is born; but a regent being neceſſary, that office, though elective, generally falls upon the father, who holds the reins of government till the child is of age. The reaſon that the election had fallen upon Tootahah, was on account of his warlike exploits among his brethren. Oamo was very inquiſitive, aſking a number of queſtions concerning the Engliſh, by which he appeared to be a man of underſtanding and penetration. At this time, a woman, named Teetee, who came from the weſt of the iſland, preſented to the captain an elegant garment. The ground was a bright yellow, it was bordered with red, and there were ſeveral croſſes in the middle of it, which they had probably learned from the French.

On the 23d, in the morning, one of our hands being miſſing, we enquired for him among the natives, and were told he was at Eparre, Tootahah's reſidence in the wood, and one of the Indians offered to fetch him back, which he did that evening. On his return he informed us, that he had been taken from the fort, and carried to the top of the bay by three men, who forced him into a canoe, after having ſtripped him, and conducted him to Eparre, where he received ſome cloaths from Tootahah, who endeavoured to prevail on him to continue there. We had reaſon to conclude this account true; for the natives were no ſooner acquainted with his return, than they left the fort with precipitation.

On June the 26th, early in the morning, Captain Cook ſetting out in the pinnace with Mr. Banks, ſailed to the eaſtward with a deſign of circumnavigating the iſland. They went on ſhore in the forenoon, in a diſtrict in the government of Ahio, a young chief, who at the tents had frequently been their viſitant. And here alſo they ſaw ſeveral other natives whom they knew. Afterwards they proceeded to the harbour where M. Bougainville's veſſel lay, when he came to Otaheite, and were ſhewn the watering place, and the ſpot where he pitched his tent.

Coming to a large bay, when the Engliſh gentlemen mentioned their deſign of going to the other ſide, their Indian guide, whoſe name was Titubaola, ſaid he would not accompany them, and alſo endeavoured to diſſuade the captain and his people from going; obſerving, "that country was inhabited by people who were not ſubject to Tootahah, and who would deſtroy them all." Notwithſtanding, they reſolved to put their deſign into execution, loading their pieces with ball; and at laſt Titubaola ventured to go with them. Having rowed till it was dark, they reached a narrow iſthmus which ſevered the iſland in two parts, and theſe formed diſtinct governments. However, as they had not yet got into the hoſtile part of the country, it was thought proper to go on ſhore to ſpend the night where Ooratova, the lady who had paid her compliments in ſo extraordinary a manner at the fort, provided them with a ſupper, and they proceeded for the other government in the morning. They afterwards landed in the diſtrict of a chief called Maraitata, and his father was called Pahairede. The former of theſe names ſignifies the *burying place of men*, and the other the *ſtealer of boats*. Theſe people gave the captain a very good reception, ſold them a hog for a hatchet, and furniſhed them with proviſions. A crowd of the natives came round the Engliſh gentlemen, amongſt whom however they met only two with whom they were acquainted; but they ſaw ſeveral European commodities, yet they perceived none that came out of the Endeavour. Here they ſaw two twelve pound ſhot, one of which had the king's broad arrow upon it, yet the natives ſaid they had them from M. Bougainville. They afterwards advanced till they reached that diſtrict which was under the government of Waheatua, who had a ſon: it was not known in whoſe hands the ſovereign power was depoſited. There they found a ſpacious plain with a river, which they were obliged to paſs over in a canoe, though the Indians that followed them ſwam over without any difficulty. They proceeded on their journey for a conſiderable way along the ſhore, till at laſt they were met by the chief, who had with him an agreeable woman, of about 22 years of age, who was called Toudidde. Her name was not unknown to the Engliſh, who had often heard of it; and ſhe was ſuppoſed to bear the ſame rank here as Oberea bore in the other part of the iſland. The parts through which they now paſſed appeared to be better cultivated than any of the reſt, and the burial places were more in number: they were neat, and ornamented with carvings; and in one a cock was ſeen, which was painted with the various colours of the bird. Though the country was apparently fertile, very little breadfruit was to be found here, a nut called Ahee furniſhing the principal ſubſiſtence of the inhabitants.

Being fatigued with their journey, they went on board their boat, and landed in the evening on an iſland which was called Otooareite, to ſeek for refreſhment. Mr.

Banks going into the woods for this purpoſe, when it was dark could diſcover only one houſe, wherein he found ſome of the nuts before mentioned, and a little bread-fruit. There was a good harbour in the ſouthern part of this iſland, and the ſurrounding country appeared to be extremely fruitful. Landing at about three miles diſtance, they found ſome of the natives, whom they well knew, yet it was not without difficulty that they obtained a few cocoa-nuts before they departed. When they came a little farther to the eaſtward, they landed again, and here they were met by Mathiabo, the chief, with whom they were not at all acquainted. He ſupplied them with bread-fruit and cocoa-nuts, and they purchaſed a hog of him for a glaſs bottle, which he choſe in preference to all the other articles preſented before him. A turkey-cock and a gooſe were ſeen here, which were much admired by the natives, and were ſuppoſed to have been left there by Capt. Wallis's people. They obſerved in a houſe near the ſame place ſeveral human jaw-bones, which ſeemed freſh, and had not loſt any of the teeth, and were faſtened to a board of a ſemicircular figure; but they could not get any information of the cauſe of this extraordinary appearance.

When they left the place, the chief piloted them over the ſhoals. In the evening they opened the bay on the north-weſt ſide of the iſland, which anſwered to that on the ſouth-eaſt in ſuch a manner as to interſect it at the iſthmus. Several canoes came off here, and ſome beautiful women giving tokens that they ſhould be glad to ſee them on ſhore, they readily accepted the invitation. They met with a very friendly reception from the chief, whoſe name was Wiverou, who gave directions to ſome of his people to aſſiſt them in dreſſing their proviſions, which were now very plentiful, and they ſupped at Wiverou's houſe in company with Mathiabo. Part of the houſe was allotted for them to ſleep in, and ſoon after ſupper they retired to reſt. Mathiabo having borrowed a cloak of Mr. Banks, under the notion of uſing it as a coverlet when he lay down, made off with it without being perceived either by that gentleman or his companions: however, news of the robbery being preſently brought them by one of the natives, they ſet out in purſuit of Mathiabo, but had proceeded only a very little way before they were met by a perſon bringing back the cloak, which this chief had given up rather through fear than from any principle of honeſty. On their return, they found the houſe entirely deſerted; and, about four in the morning, the centinel gave the alarm that the boat was miſſing. Captain Cook and Mr. Banks were greatly aſtoniſhed at this account, and ran to the water-ſide; but, though it was a clear ſtar-light morning, no boat was to be ſeen. Their ſituation was now extremely diſagreeable. The party conſiſted of no more than four, having with them only one muſquet and two pocket piſtols, without a ſpare ball or a charge of powder. After having remained ſome time in a ſtate of anxiety, ariſing from theſe circumſtances, of which they feared the Indians might take advantage, the boat, which had been driven away by the tide, returned; and Mr. Banks and his companions had no ſooner breakfaſted than they departed. This place is ſituated on the north ſide of Tiarrabou, the ſouth-eaſt peninſula of the iſland, about five miles eaſt from the iſthmus, with a harbour equal to any in thoſe parts. It was fertile and populous, and the inhabitants every where behaved with great civility.

The laſt diſtrict in Tiarrabou, in which they landed, was governed by a chief named Omoe. He was then building a houſe, and was very earneſt to purchaſe a hatchet, but the gentlemen had not one left. He would not trade for nails, and they embarked, the chief, however, following them in his canoe with his wife. They were afterwards taken on board, but when they had ſailed about a league, deſired to be put on ſhore. Their requeſt was complied with; when the captain met with ſome of Omoe's people, who brought with them a very large hog. The chief agreed to exchange the hog for an axe and a nail, and to bring the beaſt to the fort. As the hog was a very fine one, Mr. Banks accepted the offer. They ſaw at this place one of the Indian Eatuas, a ſort of image, made of wicker-work, which reſembled a man in figure; it was near ſeven feet in height, and was covered with black and white feathers; on the head were four protuberances, called by the natives Tata ete, that is, little men. Having taken their leave of Omoe, the gentlemen ſet out on their return. They went on ſhore again after they had rowed a few miles, but ſaw nothing, except a ſepulchral building, which was ornamented in an extraordinary manner. The pavement, on which was erected a pyramid, was very neat; at a ſmall diſtance there was a ſtone image, very uncouthly carved, but which the natives ſeemed to hold in high eſtimation. They paſſed through the harbour, which was the only one fit for ſhipping, on the ſouth of Opoureonou, ſituate about five miles to the weſtward of the iſthmus, between two ſmall iſlands, not far from the ſhore, and within a mile of each other. They were now near the diſtrict called Paparra, which was that where Oamo and Oberea governed, and where the travellers intended to ſpend the night. But when Mr. Banks and his company landed, about an hour before it was dark, it appeared they were both ſet out to pay them a viſit at the fort. However, they ſlept at Oberea's houſe, which was neat, though not large, and of which there was no inhabitant but her father, who ſhewed them much civility.

They took this opportunity of walking out upon a point, upon which they had obſerved at a diſtance ſome trees called Etoa, which uſually grow upon the burial places of theſe iſlanders. They call thoſe burying grounds Morai. And here Mr. Banks ſaw a vaſt building, which he found to be the Morai of Oamo and Oberea, which was the moſt conſiderable piece of architecture in the iſland. It conſiſted of an enormous pile of ſtone work, raiſed in the form of a pyramid, with a flight of ſteps on each ſide. It was near 270 feet long, about one third as wide, and between 40 and 50 feet high. The foundation conſiſted of rock ſtones; the ſteps were of coral, and the upper part was of round pebbles, all of the ſame ſhape and ſize. The rock and coral ſtones were ſquared with the utmoſt neatneſs and regularity, and the whole building appeared as compact and firm as if it had been erected by the beſt workmen in Europe. What rendered this laſt circumſtance the more extraordinary was the conſideration, that when this pile was raiſed, the Indians muſt have been totally deſtitute of iron tools either to ſhape their ſtones or for any other neceſſary purpoſe, nor had they mortar to cement them when made fit for uſe; ſo that a ſtructure of ſuch height and magnitude muſt have been a work of infinite labour and fatigue. In the centre of the ſummit was the repreſentation of a bird carved in wood; cloſe to this was the figure of a fiſh in ſtone. The pyramid conſtituted part of one ſide of a court or ſquare, the ſides of which were nearly equal; and the whole was walled in, and paved with flat ſtones; notwithſtanding which pavement ſeveral plantains, and trees which the natives call Etoa, grew within the incloſure. At a ſmall diſtance to the weſtward of this edifice was another paved ſquare, that contained ſeveral ſmall ſtages, called Ewattas by the natives; which appeared to be altars, whereon they placed the offerings to their gods. Mr. Banks afterwards obſerved whole hogs placed upon theſe ſtages or altars.

On Friday the 30th they arrived at Otahorou, where they found their old acquaintance Tootahah, who received them with great civility, and provided them a good ſupper and convenient lodging; and though they had been ſo ſhamefully plundered the laſt time they ſlept with this chief, they ſpent the night in the greateſt ſecurity, none of their cloaths nor any other article being miſſing the next morning. They returned to the fort at Port Royal harbour on the 1ſt of July, having diſcovered the iſland, including both peninſulas, to be about 100 miles in circumference.

After their return from this tour, they were very much in want of bread-fruit, none of which they had been able to provide themſelves with, as they had ſeen but little in the courſe of their journey; but their Indian friends coming round them, ſoon ſupplied their want of proviſions.

On the 3d, Mr. Banks made an excurſion, in order to trace the river up the valley to its ſource, and to remark how far the country was inhabited along the banks of it. He took ſome Indian guides with him, and after having ſeen houſes for about ſix miles, they came to one which was ſaid to be the laſt that could be met with. The maſter preſented them with cocoa-nuts and other fruits, and they proceeded on their walk, after a ſhort ſtay. They often paſſed through vaults formed by rocky fragments in the courſe of their journey, in which, as they were told, benighted travellers ſometimes took ſhelter. Purſuing the courſe of the river about ſix miles farther, they found it banked on both ſides by rocks almoſt 100 feet in height, and nearly perpendicular; a way, however, might be traced up theſe precipices, along which their Indian guides would have conducted them, but they declined the offer, as there did not appear to be any thing at the ſummit which could repay them for the toil and dangers of aſcending it. Mr. Banks ſought in vain for minerals among the rocks, which were naked almoſt on all ſides, but no mineral ſubſtances were found. The ſtones every where exhibited ſigns of having been burnt, which was the caſe of all the ſtones that were found while they ſtaid at Otaheite, and both there and in the neighbouring iſlands the traces of fire were evident in the clay upon the hills. On the 4th, a great quantity of the ſeeds of water-melons, oranges, limes and other plants, brought from Rio de Janeiro, were planted on each ſide of the fort, by Mr. Banks, who alſo plentifully ſupplied the Indians with them, and planted many of them in the woods. Some melons, the ſeeds of which had been ſown on the firſt arrival of the Engliſh at the iſland, grew up and flouriſhed before they left it.

By this time they began to think of making preparations to depart; but Oamo, Oberea, and their ſon and daughter viſited them before they were ready to ſail. As to the young woman, (whoſe name was Toimata) ſhe was curious to ſee the fort, but Oamo would not permit her to enter. The ſon of Waheatua, chief of the S. E. peninſula, was alſo here at the ſame time; and they were favoured with the company of the Indian who had been ſo dextrous as to ſteal the quadrant, as above related. The carpenters being ordered to take down the gates and palliſadoes of the fort, to be converted into fire-wood for the Endeavour, one of the natives ſtole the ſtaple and hook of the gate; he was purſued in vain, but the property was afterwards recovered, and returned to the owners by Tubourai Tamaide.

Before their departure, two circumſtances happened which gave Capt. Cook ſome uneaſineſs. The firſt was, that two foreign ſailors having been aboard, one of them was robbed of his knife, which as he was endeavouring to recover, he was dangerouſly hurt with a ſtone by the natives, and his companion alſo received a ſlight wound in the head. The offenders eſcaped, and the captain was not anxious to have them taken, as he did not want to have any diſputes with the Indians.

Between the 8th and 9th, two young marines one night withdrew themſelves from the fort, and in the morning were not to be met with. Notice having been given the next day that the ſhip would ſail that or the enſuing day; as they did not return, Capt. Cook began to be apprehenſive that they deſigned to remain on ſhore; but as he was appriſed in ſuch a caſe no effectual means could be taken to recover them without running a riſque of deſtroying the harmony ſubſiſting between the Engliſh and the natives, he reſolved to wait a day, in hopes of their returning of their own accord. But as they were ſtill miſſing on the tenth in the morning, an inquiry was made after them, when the Indians declared, that they did not propoſe to return, having taken refuge among the mountains, where it was impoſſible for them to be diſcovered; and added, that each of them had taken a wife. In conſequence of this, it was intimated to ſeveral of the chiefs that were in the fort with the women, among whom were Tubourai Tamaide, Tomio, and Oberea, that they would not be ſuffered to quit it till the deſerters were produced. They did not ſhew any ſigns of fear or diſcontent, but aſſured the captain that the marines ſhould be ſent back. In the mean time Mr. Hicks was diſpatched in the pinnace to bring Tootahah on board the ſhip, and he executed his commiſſion without giving any alarm. Night coming on, Capt. Cook thought it not prudent to let the people, whom he had detained as hoſtages, remain at the fort; he therefore gave orders to remove them on board, which greatly alarmed them all, eſpecially the females, who teſtified the moſt gloomy apprehenſions by floods of tears. Capt. Cook eſcorted Oberea and others to the ſhip; but Mr. Banks remained on ſhore with ſome Indians, whom he thought it of leſs importance to detain. In the evening one of the marines was brought back by ſome of the natives, who reported that the other, and two of our men who went to recover them, would be detained while Tootahah was confined. Upon this Mr. Hicks was immediately ſent off in the long boat, with a ſtrong body of men, to reſcue the priſoners; at the ſame time the captain told Tootahah, that it was incumbent on him to aſſiſt them with ſome of his people, and to give orders, in his name, that the men ſhould be ſet at liberty; for that he would be expected to anſwer for the event. Tootahah immediately complied, and this party releaſed the men without any oppoſition.

On the 11th, about ſeven in the morning, they returned, but without the arms that had been taken from them when they were made priſoners; theſe, however, being reſtored ſoon after, the chiefs on board were allowed to return, and thoſe who had been detained on ſhore were alſo ſet at liberty. On examining the deſerters, it appeared that the Indians had told the truth, they having choſen two girls, with whom they would have remained in the iſland. At this time the power of Oberea was not ſo great as it was when the Dolphin firſt diſcovered the iſland. Tupia, whoſe name has been often mentioned in this voyage, had been her prime miniſter. He was alſo the chief prieſt, conſequently well acquainted with the religion of the country. He had a knowledge of navigation, and was thoroughly acquainted with the number, ſituation, and inhabitants of the adjacent iſlands. This chief had often expreſſed a deſire to go with us, when we continued our voyage.

On the 12th in the morning he came on board, with a boy about twelve years of age, his ſervant, named Taiyota, and requeſted the gentlemen on board to let him go with him. As we thought he would be uſeful to us in many particulars, we unanimouſly agreed to comply with his requeſt. Tupia then went on ſhore for the laſt time to bid farewell to his friends, to whom he gave ſeveral baubles as parting tokens of remembrance.

Mr. Banks, after dinner, being willing to obtain a drawing of the Morai, which Tootahah had in his poſſeſſion at Eparre, Capt. Cook accompanied him thither in the pinnace, together with Dr. Solander. They immediately upon landing repaired to Tootahah's houſe, where they were met by Oberea and ſeveral others. A general good underſtanding prevailed. Tupia came back with them, and they promiſed to viſit the gentlemen early the next day, as they were told the ſhip would then ſail.

On the 13th theſe friendly people came very early on board, and the ſhip was ſurrounded with a vaſt number of canoes, filled with Indians of the lower ſort. Between eleven and twelve we weighed anchor; and notwithſtanding all the little miſunderſtandings between the Engliſh and the natives, the latter, who poſſeſſed a great fund of good nature and much ſenſibility, took their leave, weeping in an affectionate manner. As to Tupia, he ſupported himſelf through this ſcene with a becoming fortitude. Tears flowed from his eyes, it is true, but the effort that he made to conceal them did him an additional honour. He went with Mr. Banks to the maſt-head, and waving his hand took a laſt farewell of his country. Thus we departed from Otaheite, after a ſtay of juſt three months.

CHAP. V. *

An hiſtorical and deſcriptive account of Otaheite—Of the iſland and its productions—Of the inhabitants—their dreſs—Dwellings—Manner of living—Diverſions—Manufactures—Arts—Sciences—Language—Diſeaſes—Religious ceremonies—and government.

PORT Royal bay, in the iſland of Otaheite, as ſettled by captain Wallis, we found to be within half a degree of its real ſituation; and point Venus, the northern extremity of this iſland, and the eaſtern part of the bay, lies in 149 deg. 30 min. longitude. A reef of coral rock ſurrounds the iſland, forming ſeveral excellent bays, among which, and equal to the beſt of them, is Port Royal. This bay, called by the natives Matavai, may eaſily be diſcovered by a remarkable high mountain in the center of the iſland, bearing due ſouth from point Venus. To ſail into it, either keep the weſt point of the reef that lies before Point Venus, cloſe on board, or give it a birth of near half a mile, in order to avoid a ſmall ſhoal of coral rocks, whereon there is but two fathom and an half of water. The moſt proper ground for anchoring is on the eaſtern ſide of the bay. The ſhore is a fine ſandy beach, behind which runs a river of freſh water, very convenient for a fleet of ſhips. The only wood for firing upon the whole iſland is that of fruit trees, which muſt be purchaſed of the natives, or it is impoſſible to live on friendly terms with them. The face of the country is very uneven. It riſes in ridges that run up into the middle of the iſland, where they form mountains which may be ſeen at the diſtance of ſixty miles. Between theſe ridges and the ſea is a border of low land of different breadths in different parts, but not exceeding any where a mile and a half. The ſoil being watered by a number of excellent rivulets, is extremely fertile, and covered with various kinds of fruit trees, which form almoſt one continued wood. Even the tops of the ridges are not without their produce in ſome parts. The only parts of the iſland that are inhabited, are the low lands, lying between the foot of the ridges and the ſea. The houſes do not form villages, but are ranged along the whole border at about fifty yards diſtant from each other. Before them are little groups of the plantain trees, which furniſh them with cloth. According to Tupia's account, this iſland could furniſh above ſix thouſand fighting men. The produce is bread-fruit, cocoa nuts, bananas, ſweet potatoes, yams, jambu, a delicious fruit, ſugar-cane, the paper mulberry, ſeveral ſorts of figs, with many other plants and trees, all which the earth produces ſpontaneouſly, or with little culture. But here are no European fruit, garden-ſtuff, pulſe, nor grain of any kind. The tame animals are hogs, dogs, and poultry; the wild ducks, pigeons, parroquets, and a few other birds. The only quadrupeds are rats, and not a ſerpent is to be found. In the ſea is a great variety of excellent fiſh, which conſtitutes their chief luxury, and to catch it their chief employment.

The people in general are of a larger make than the Europeans. The males are moſtly tall, robuſt, and finely ſhaped; the women of the higher claſs above the ſize of our Engliſh ladies, but thoſe of inferior rank are below our ſtandard, and ſome of them very ſhort. Their natural complexion is a fine clear olive, or what we call a brunette, their ſkin delicately ſmooth and agreeably ſoft. Their faces in general are handſome, and their eyes full of ſenſibility. Their teeth are remarkably white and regular, their hair for the moſt part black, and their breath is entirely free from any diſagreeable ſmell. The men, unlike the original inhabitants of America, have long beards, which they wear in various ſhapes. Circumciſion is generally practiſed among them from a motive of cleanlineſs, and they have a term of reproach with which they upbraid thoſe who do not adopt this cuſtom. Both ſexes always eradicate the hair from their arm-pits, and they reproached our gentlemen with want of cleanlineſs: their motions are eaſy and graceful, and their behaviour, when unprovoked, affable and courteous. Contrary to the cuſtom of moſt other nations, the women of this country cut their hair ſhort, whereas the men wear it long, ſometimes hanging looſe upon their ſhoulders, at other times tied in a knot on the crown of the head in which they ſtick the feathers of birds of various colours. A piece of cloth of the manufacture of the country, is frequently tied round the head of both ſexes in the manner of a turban, and the women plait very curiouſly human hair into long ſtrings, which being folded into branches, are tied on their foreheads by way of ornament. They have a cuſtom practiſed in many hot countries, of anointing their hair with cocoa nut oil, the ſmell of which is not very agreeable. Having, among their various inventions no ſorts of combs, they were infeſted with vermin, which they quickly got rid of when furniſhed with thoſe convenient inſtruments.

They ſtain their bodies by indenting or pricking the fleſh with a ſmall inſtrument made of bone, cut into ſhort teeth, which indentures they fill with a dark blue or blackiſh mixture, prepared from the ſmoke of an oily nut (burnt by them inſtead of candles) and water. This operation, called by the natives Tattaowing, is exceedingly painful, and leaves an indelible mark on the ſkin. It is uſually performed when they are about ten or twelve years of age, and on different parts of the body; but thoſe which ſuffer moſt ſeverely are the breech and the loins, which are marked with arches, carried one above another a conſiderable way up the back. Mr. Banks was preſent at an operation of tattaowing, performed upon the poſteriors of a girl about twelve years old. It was executed with an inſtrument that had twenty teeth, and at each ſtroke, which was repeated every moment, ſerum mixed with blood iſſued. She bore the pain with great reſolution for ſeveral minutes: but at length it became ſo intolerable, that ſhe murmured and burſt into moſt violent lamentations; but her operator was inexorable, whilſt ſome females preſent both chid and beat her. Mr. Banks was a ſpectator for near an hour, during which time one ſide only was tattaowed, the other having undergone the ceremony ſome time before, and the arches upon the loins, which are the moſt painful, but which they moſt value, were yet to be made.

---

* We here beg leave to remark to our very NUMEROUS SUBSCRIBERS, that this *much admired Work* is not only *far preferable* to any other publication of the kind whatever, on account of its *Elegance, large Size, Cheapneſs, Authenticity*, and its including *all Voyages and Travels Complete*, written in an admirably pleaſing and elegant ſtyle, but alſo becauſe every *Sheet* of *our Letter-preſs* comprehends at leaſt *as much Matter* as has been given in *three Sheets* belonging to *other Works* of the kind, which, to *catch the Penny*, by *ſpinning out the journals* to an *unneceſſary length*, is offered to the public at an *extravagant Price*. The common reduced *Magazine Size*, in which *ſingle Voyages* of *Capt. Cook* and other *Voyagers* have been publiſhed, is univerſally objected to by the public: ſo that by the publication of this LARGE FOLIO EDITION of VOYAGES and TRAVELS, the public at large will be *agreeably accommodated*, not only by being poſſeſſed *at an eaſy Rate* of ſuch a *vaſt Quantity of Matter* included by our CLOSE *Method of Printing*, but likewiſe by acquiring at the ſame Time all the SPLENDID LARGE FOLIO COPPER-PLATES (not on a *reduced Scale*, but) in the ORIGINAL SIZE, and in Numbers at only SIXPENCE each.

They cloath themſelves in cloth and matting of various kinds: the firſt they wear in fine, the latter in wet weather. Theſe are in different forms, no ſhape being preſerved in the pieces, nor are they ſewed together. The women of a ſuperior claſs wear three or four pieces. One, which is of conſiderable length, they wrap ſeveral times round their waiſt, and it falls down to the middle of the leg. Two or three other ſhort pieces, with a hole cut in the middle of each, are placed on one another, and their heads coming through the holes, the long ends hang before and behind, both ſides being open, by which means they have the free uſe of their arms.

The mens dreſs is very ſimilar, differing only in this inſtance, that one part of the garment inſtead of falling below the knees is brought between the legs. This dreſs is worn by all ranks of people, the only diſtinction being quantity in the ſuperior claſs. At noon both ſexes appear almoſt naked, wearing only a piece of cloth that is tied round the waiſt. Their faces are ſhaded from the ſun with ſmall bonnets, made of cocoa-nut leaves or matting, which are conſtructed in a few minutes. The men ſometimes wear a ſort of wig of human or dog's hair, or of cocoa-nut ſtrings, woven on a ſingle thread, faſtened under the hair, and hanging down behind. Both men and women wore ear-rings on one ſide, conſiſting of ſhells, ſtones, berries, or ſmall pearls; but they ſoon gave the preference to the beads brought by the Endeavour's company. The boys and girls go quite naked; the firſt till they are ſeven or eight years old, the latter till they are about five.

The natives of Otaheite ſeldom uſe their houſes but to ſleep in, or to avoid the rain, as they eat in the open air, under the ſhade of a tree. In thoſe there are no diviſions or apartments. Their cloaths ſerve them for covering in the night. The maſter and his wife repoſe in the middle; then the married people; next the unmarried females; then the unmarried men, and in fair weather the ſervants ſleep in the open air. The houſes of the chiefs, however, differ in ſome particulars. There are thoſe that are very ſmall, and ſo conſtructed as to be carried in canoes: all ſides of them are incloſed with the leaves of the cocoa-nut: the air nevertheleſs penetrates. In theſe the chief and his wife only ſleep. We likewiſe ſaw houſes that are general receptacles for the inhabitants of a diſtrict, many of them being more than 200 feet in length, 40 in breadth, and 70 or 80 feet high. They are conſtructed at the common expence, and have an area on one ſide, ſurrounded with low palliſadoes; but like the others, without walls.

Their cookery conſiſts chiefly in baking, the manner of doing which has been before noticed. When a chief kills a hog, which is but ſeldom, he divides it equally among his vaſſals. Dogs and fowls are more common food. When the bread-fruit is not in ſeaſon, cocoa-nuts, bananas, plantains, &c. are ſubſtituted in its ſtead. They bake their bread-fruit in a manner which renders it ſomewhat like a mealy potatoe. Of this three diſhes are made, by beating them up with bananas, plantains, or ſour paſte, which is called by them Mahie.

Sour paſte is made by taking bread-fruit not thoroughly ripe, and laying it in heaps covered with leaves, by which means it ferments. The core is then taken out, and the fruit put into a hole lined with graſs: it is then again covered with leaves, upon which large ſtones are placed; this produces a ſecond fermentation; after which it grows ſour, without any other change for a long time. They take it from this hole as they have occaſion for it, and make it into balls. It is then rolled up in plantain leaves and baked. As it will keep for ſome weeks, they eat it both hot and cold. Such is the food of this people, their ſauce to which is only ſalt water. As to their drink, it is generally confined to water, or the milk of the cocoa-nut, though ſome of them would drink ſo freely of our Engliſh liquors as to become quite intoxicated, ſuch inſtances, however, were occaſioned more by ignorance than deſign, as they were never known to practice a debauch of this kind a ſecond time. We were told, it is true, that their chiefs ſometimes became inebriated by drinking the juice of a plant called Ava, but of this we ſaw not a ſingle inſtance during the time we remained on the iſland.

The chief eats generally alone, unleſs when viſited by a ſtranger, who is permitted ſometimes to be his meſs-mate. Not having known the uſe of a table, they ſit on the ground, and leaves of trees ſpread before them ſerve as a table cloth. Their attendants, who are numerous, having placed a baſket by the chiefs, containing their proviſions, and cocoa-nut ſhells of freſh and ſalt water, ſet themſelves down around them. They then begin their meals with the ceremony of waſhing their mouths and hands; after which they eat a handful of bread-fruit and fiſh, dipt in ſalt water alternately, till the whole is conſumed, taking a ſip of ſalt water between almoſt every morſel. The bread-fruit and fiſh is ſucceeded by a ſecond courſe, conſiſting of either plantains or apples, which they never eat without being pared. During this time a ſoft fluid of paſte is prepared from the bread-fruit, which they drink out of cocoa-nut ſhells: this concludes the meal; and their hands and mouths are again waſhed as at the beginning. Theſe people eat an aſtoniſhing quantity of food at a meal. Mr. Banks and others ſaw one of them devour three fiſh of the ſize of a ſmall carp, four bread-fruits as large as a common melon, thirteen or fourteen plantains ſeven inches long, and above half as big round; to all which was added a quart of the paſte by way of drink, to digeſt the whole.

The inhabitants of this iſland, though apparently fond of the pleaſures of ſociety, have yet an averſion to holding any intercourſe with each other at their meals; and they are ſo rigid in the obſervation of this cuſtom, that even brothers and ſiſters have their ſeparate baſkets of proviſions, and generally ſit at the diſtance of ſome yards when they eat, with their backs to each other, and not exchanging a word during the whole time of their repaſt. The middle aged of ſuperior rank go uſually to ſleep after dinner; but, which is ſomewhat remarkable, older people are not ſo indolent.

Muſic, dancing, wreſtling, and ſhooting with the bow, conſtitute the greateſt part of their diverſions. Flutes and drums are the only muſical inſtruments among them. Their drums are formed of a circular piece of wood, hollow at one end only. Theſe are covered with the ſkin of a ſhark, and beaten with the hand inſtead of a ſtick. Their ſongs are extempore, and frequently in rhime, but they conſiſt only of two lines; theſe couplets are often ſung by way of evening amuſements, between ſun-ſet and bed-time; during which interval they burn candles made of an oily nut, fixing them one above another upon a ſmall ſtick that is run through the middle: ſome of theſe candles will burn a long time, and afford a pretty good light. Among other amuſements, they have a dance called Timorodee, which is generally performed by ten or a dozen young females, who put themſelves into the moſt wanton attitudes, keeping time during the performance with the greateſt nicety and exactneſs. Pregnant women are excluded from theſe dances.

One of the worſt cuſtoms of the people of Otaheite, is that which ſeveral of the principal people of the iſland have adopted of uniting in an aſſociation, wherein no woman confines herſelf to any particular man, by which means they obtain a perpetual ſociety. Theſe ſocieties are called Arreoy. The members have meetings, where the men amuſe themſelves with wreſtling, and the women dance the Timorodee in ſuch a manner as is moſt likely to excite the deſires of the other ſex, and which were frequently gratified in the aſſembly. A much worſe practice is the conſequence of this. If any of the women prove with child, the infant is deſtroyed, unleſs the mother's natural affection ſhould prevail with her to preſerve its life, which, however, is forfeited, unleſs ſhe can procure a man to adopt it. And where ſhe ſucceeds in this, ſhe is expelled from the ſociety, being called Whannownow, which ſignifies a bearer of children, by way of reproach.

Perſonal cleanlineſs is much eſteemed among theſe Indians. Both ſexes are particular in waſhing three times a day, viz. when they riſe in the morning, at noon, and before they go to reſt. They are alſo very cleanly in their cloaths, ſo that no diſagreeable effluvia are found to ariſe in the largeſt communities.

Cloth is the chief manufacture of Otaheite, and of this there are three ſorts, all which are made out of the bark of different trees, namely the mulberry, the bread-fruit, and a tree which bears ſome reſemblance to the Weſt-Indian wild fig-tree. The firſt of theſe produces the fineſt cloth, which is ſeldom worn but by thoſe of the firſt rank. The next ſort is made of the bread-fruit tree, and the laſt of that which reſembles the wild fig-tree. But this laſt ſort, though the coarſeſt, is ſcarcer than the other two, which are manufactured only in ſmall quantities, as the ſame manner is uſed in manufacturing all theſe cloths. The following deſcription will ſuffice for the reader's information.

The bark of the tree being ſtripped off, is ſoaked in water for two or three days; they then take it out, and ſeparate the inner bark from the external coat, by ſcraping it with a ſhell, after which it is ſpread out on plantain leaves, placing two or three layers over one another, care being taken to make it of an equal thickneſs in every part. In this ſtate it continues till it is almoſt dry, when it adheres ſo firmly that it may be taken from the ground without breaking. After this proceſs, it is laid on a ſmooth board, and beaten with an inſtrument made for the purpoſe, of the compact heavy wood called Etoa. The inſtrument is about fourteen inches long, and about ſeven in circumference; is of a quadrangular ſhape, and each of the four ſides is marked with longitudinal grooves or furrows, differing in this inſtance, that there is a regular gradation in the width and depth of the grooves on each of the ſides; the coarſer ſide not containing more than ten of theſe furrows, while the fineſt is furniſhed with above fifty. It is with that ſide of the mallet where the grooves are deepeſt and wideſt that they begin to beat their cloth, and proceeding regularly, finiſh with that which has the greateſt number. By this beating, the cloth is extended in a manner ſimilar to the gold that is formed into leaves by the hammer; and it is alſo marked with ſmall channels reſembling thoſe which are viſible on paper, but rather deeper; it is in general beat very thin; when they want it thicker than common, they take two or three pieces and paſte them together with a kind of glue prepared from a root called Pea. This cloth becomes exceedingly white by bleaching, and is dyed of a red, yellow, brown, or black colour; the firſt is exceedingly beautiful, and equal, if not ſuperior, to any in Europe. They make the red colour from a mixture of the juices of two vegetables, neither of which uſed ſeparately has this effect: matting, of various kinds, is another conſiderable manufacture, in which they excel, in many reſpects, the Europeans. They make uſe of the coarſer ſort to ſleep on, and in wet weather they wear the finer. They excel in the baſket and wicker work; both men and women employ themſelves at it, and can make a great number of different patterns. They make ropes and lines of all ſizes of the bark of the Poerou, and their nets for fiſhing are made of theſe lines; the fibres of the cocoa-nut they make thread of, ſuch as they uſe to faſten together the ſeveral parts of their canoes; the forms of which are various, according to the uſe to which they are applied. Their fiſhing lines are eſteemed the beſt in the world, made of the bark of the Erowa, a kind of nettle which grows on the mountains; they are ſtrong enough to hold the heavieſt and moſt vigorous fiſh, ſuch as bonettas and albicores; in ſhort, they are extremely ingenious in every expedient for taking all kinds of fiſh.

The tools which theſe people make uſe of for building houſes, conſtructing canoes, hewing ſtones, and for felling, cleaving, carving, and poliſhing timber, conſiſts of nothing more than an adze of ſtone, and a chiſſel of bone, moſt commonly that of a man's arm; and for a file or poliſher, they make uſe of a raſp of coral and coral ſand. The blades of their adzes are extremely tough, but not very hard; they make them of various ſizes, thoſe for felling wood weigh ſix or ſeven pounds, and others which are uſed for carving, only a few ounces: they are obliged every minute to ſharpen them on a ſtone, which is always kept near them for that purpoſe. The moſt difficult taſk they meet with in the uſe of theſe tools, is the felling of a tree, which employs a great number of hands for ſeveral days together. The tree which is in general uſe is called Aoie, the ſtem of which is ſtraight and tall. Some of their ſmaller boats are made of the bread-fruit tree, which is wrought without much difficulty, being of a light ſpongy nature. Inſtead of planes, they uſe their adzes with great dexterity. Their canoes are all ſhaped with the hand, the Indians not being acquainted with the method of warping a plank.

Of theſe they have two kinds, one they call Ivahahs, the other Pahies; the former is uſed for ſhort voyages at ſea, and the latter for long ones. Theſe boats do not differ either in ſhape or ſize, but they are in no degree proportionate, being from ſixty to ſeventy feet in length, and not more than the thirtieth part in breadth. Some are employed in going from one iſland to another, and others uſed for fiſhing. There is alſo the Ivahah, which ſerves for war; there are by far the longeſt, and the head and ſtern are conſiderably above the body. Theſe Ivahahs are faſtened together, ſide by ſide, when they go to ſea, at the diſtance of a few feet, by ſtrong wooden poles, which are laid acroſs them and joined to each ſide. A ſtage or platform is raiſed on the fore part, about ten or twelve feet long, upon which ſtand the fighting men, whoſe miſſile weapons are ſlings and ſpears. Beneath theſe ſtages the rowers ſit, who ſupply the place of thoſe who are wounded. The fiſhing Ivahahs are from thirty or forty to ten feet in length, and thoſe for travelling have a ſmall houſe fixed on board, which is faſtened upon the fore part, for the better accommodation of perſons of rank, who occupy them both day and night. The Pahies differ alſo in ſize, being from ſixty to ſeventy feet long, they are alſo very narrow, and are ſometimes uſed for fighting, but chiefly for long voyages. In going from one iſland to another, they are out ſometimes a month, and often at ſea a fortnight or twenty days, and if they had convenience to ſtow more proviſions, they could ſtay out much longer. Theſe veſſels are very uſeful in landing, and putting off from the ſhore in a ſurf, for by their great length and high ſtern they landed dry, when the Endeavour's boats could ſcarcely land at all.

They are very curious in the conſtruction of theſe boats, the chief parts or pieces whereof are formed ſeparately, without either ſaw, plane, chiſſel, or any other iron tool, which renders their fabrication more ſurpriſing and worthy obſervation. Theſe parts being prepared, the keel is fixed upon blocks, and the planks are ſupported with props, till they are ſewed or joined together with ſtrong plaited thongs, which are paſſed ſeveral times through holes bored with a chiſſel of bone, ſuch as they commonly make uſe of, and when finiſhed they are ſufficiently tight without caulking. They keep theſe boats with great care in a kind of ſhed, built on purpoſe to contain them.

Mr. Banks and Dr. Solander were at a loſs to find out their method of dividing time, they always made uſe of the term Malama, which ſignifies the moon; whenever they ſpoke of time, either paſt or to come, they reckon thirteen of theſe moons, beginning again when they are expired. This proves that they have ſome idea of the ſolar year; but theſe gentlemen could not diſcover how they computed their months, to make thirteen equal to the year, as they ſaid theſe months conſiſted of twenty-nine days, one day in which the moon was inviſible being included. They, however, knew the prevailing weather that was to be expected, as well as the fruits which would be in ſeaſon. As to the day, they divide it into twelve equal parts, ſix of which belong

long to the day, and the other ſix to the night. When they numerate, they reckon from one to ten, making uſe of their fingers, and changing hands, till they come to the number which they intended to expreſs; and joining expreſſive ſigns to their words, in the courſe of their converſation. But they are not ſo expert in meaſuring diſtances, for when they attempt deſcribing the ſpace between one place and another, they are obliged to expreſs it by the time that would be taken in paſſing it.

With regard to their language, it is ſoft, as it abounds with vowels, and eaſy to be pronounced; but very few of their nouns or verbs being declinable, it muſt conſequently be rather imperfect. However, we found means to be mutually underſtood without much difficulty. The following ſpecimen will poſſibly enable the reader to form ſome notion of the language of thoſe iſlanders.

Aheine, *a woman*
Aihoo, *a garment*
Ainao, *take care*
Aree, *a chief*
Aouna, *to-day*
Aoy, *water*
Eahoo, *the noſe*
Eawow, *to ſcold*
Eei, *to eat*
Eeyo, *look you*
Emoto, *to box*
Epanoo, *a drum*
Epeenei, *an echo*
Epehe, *a ſong*
Erowroo, *the head*
Huaheine, *a wife*
Itopa, *to fall*
Kipoo a meemhee, *a chamber-pot*
Mahana, *a day*
Marroowhai, *dry*
Matau, *the eyes*
Matte roah, *to die*
Mayneenee, *to tickle*
Meyoooo, *the nails*
Midee, *a child*
Mutee, *a kiſs*
Myty, *good*
Neeheeo, *good night*
Oboboa, *to-morrow*
Oowhau, *the thighs*
Ore' dehaiya, *a large nail*
Ore' eeteea, *a ſmall nail*
Otaowa, *yeſterday*
Pahie, *a ſhip*
Parawei, *a ſhirt*
Poa, *a night*
Poe, *ear-rings*
Tane, *a huſband*
Tatta te hommanne maitai, *a good-natured perſon*
Tea, *white*
Teine, *a brother*
Tooaheine, *a ſiſter*
Tooanahoe, *you and I*
Toonoah, *a mole in the ſkin*
Tumatau, *a bonnet*
Wahoa, *fire*
Waow, *I.*

The natives of this country are ſeldom afflicted with any diſeaſes, except ſometimes an accidental fit of the cholic; but they are ſubject to the eriſypelas, attended with cutaneous eruptions ſomewhat reſembling the leproſy; and if they have it to any conſiderable degree, they are excluded from ſociety and live alone, in a ſmall houſe in ſome unfrequented part of the iſland. The management of the ſick belongs to the prieſts, whoſe method of cure conſiſts generally of prayers and ceremonies, which are repeated till they recover or die. If the former happens, it is attributed to their mode of proceeding; if the patient dies, then they urge that the diſeaſe was incurable.

The religion of theſe iſlanders appears to be very myſterious; and as the language adapted to it was different from that which was ſpoken on other occaſions, we were not able to gain much knowledge of it. Tupia, who gave us all the information that we got in regard to this particular, informed us, that his countrymen imagined every thing in the creation to proceed from the conjunction of two perſons. One of theſe two firſt (being the ſupreme deity) they called Taroataihetoomo, and the other Tapapa; and the year, which they called Tettowmatatayo, they ſuppoſe to be the daughter of theſe two. They alſo imagine an inferior ſort of deities, known by the name of Eatuas, two of whom, they ſay, formerly inhabited the earth, and they ſuppoſe that the firſt man and woman deſcended from them. The Supreme Being they ſtile "The cauſer of earthquakes;" but more frequently addreſs their prayers to Tane, whom they conceive to be a ſon of the firſt progenitors of nature. They believe in the exiſtence of the ſoul in a ſeparate ſtate, and ſuppoſe that there are two ſituations differing in the degrees of happineſs, which they conſider as receptacles for different ranks, but not as places of rewards and puniſhments. Their notion is, that the chiefs and principal people will have the preference to thoſe of lower ranks. For as to their actions they cannot conceive them to influence their future ſtate, as they believe the deity takes no cognizance of them. The office of prieſt is hereditary; there are ſeveral of them of all ranks: the chief is reſpected next to their kings; and they are in general ſuperior to the natives, not only in point of divine knowledge, but alſo in that of aſtronomy and navigation. They are not at all concerned with the ceremony of marriage, which is only a ſimple agreement between the man and the woman, and when they chuſe to ſeparate, the matter is accompliſhed with as little ceremony as was thought neceſſary to bring them together. Theſe people do not appear to worſhip images of any kind; but they enter their Morais with great awe and humility, their bodies being uncovered to the waiſt when they bring their offering to the altar.

As to their form of government, there is a ſort of ſubordination among them which reſembles the early ſtate of all the nations of Europe when under the feudal ſyſtem, which reſerved authority to a ſmall number, putting the reſt entirely in their power. The ranks of the people of this iſland were theſe, Earee Rahie, ſignifying a king or ſupreme governor; Earee, anſwering to the title of baron; Mannahoonies, to that of vaſſal; and Toutou, under which name was included the loweſt orders of the people, ſuch as are called villains according to the old law term. The Earee Rahie, of which there are two here, one belonging to each peninſula, had great reſpect ſhewn them by all ranks. The Earees are lords of one or more of the diſtricts, into which theſe governments are divided; and they ſeparate their territories into lots, which are given among the Mannahoonies, who reſpectively cultivate the ſhare that they hold under the baron. But they are only nominal cultivators; this, as well as all other laborious work, being done by the Toutou, or lower claſs of the people. The ſovereign, or Earee Rahie, and the baron, or Earee, are ſucceeded in titles and honour by their children, as ſoon as they are born; but their eſtates remain in their poſſeſſion, and ſubject to the management of their parents. Every diſtrict under the command of an Earee furniſhes a proportionate number of fighting men, for the defence of the common cauſe, in caſe of a general attack; and they are all ſubject to the command of the Earee Rahie. Their weapons conſiſt of ſlings, in the uſe of which they are very dextrous, and of long clubs remarkably hard, with which they fight obſtinately and cruelly, giving no quarter to their enemies in time of battle.

While we ſtaid at Otaheite, there was a good underſtanding between the Earees of the two peninſulas, though it ſeems that the Earee of Tearrebau called himſelf king of the whole iſland; this was a mere nominal claim, and was conſidered as ſuch by the inhabitants. There is not any thing among them ſubſtituted for money, or a general medium by which every deſirable object may be purchaſed or procured; neither can any permanent good be obtained by force or fraud. The general commerce with women ſets aſide almoſt every excitement to commit adultery. In a word, in a government ſo little poliſhed, though diſtributive juſtice cannot be regularly adminiſtered; as, at the ſame time, there can be but few crimes whereon to exerciſe it, the want of this juſtice is not ſo ſeverely felt as in more civilized ſocieties.

Soon after our arrival at this iſland, we were appriſed of the natives having the French diſeaſe among them. The iſlanders called it by a name expreſſive of its effects, obſerving that the hair and nails of thoſe who were firſt infected by it fell off, and the fleſh rotted from the bones, while their countrymen, and even neareſt relations, who were unaffected, were ſo much terrified at its ſymptoms, that the unhappy ſufferer was often forſaken by them, and left to periſh in the moſt horrible conditions.

Thus have we given an accurate, full, and complete deſcription of the iſland in its preſent ſtate; we ſhall only add a few remarks, which we apprehend may be of uſe to ſuch gentlemen in the navy who may hereafter have it in their orders to touch at the ſame.

As this iſland can be uſeful only by ſupplying ſhips with refreſhments in their paſſage through theſe ſeas, it might be made to anſwer fully this important end; European cattle, plants, garden-ſtuff, and the moſt uſeful vegetables, would doubtleſs flouriſh in ſo rich a ſoil. The climate is remarkably fine, the heat is not troubleſome, nor do the winds blow conſtantly from the E.

We had frequently a freſh gale from the S. W. ſometimes, though very ſeldom, from the N. W. We learnt from Tupia, that S. W. winds prevail in October, November, and December, and we have no doubt but this is true. At the time the winds are variable, they are always accompanied by a ſwell from the S. W. or W. S. W. The ſame ſwell happens on a calm, and when the atmoſphere is loaded with clouds, which ſhew that the winds are variable or weſterly out at ſea, for with a trade wind the weather is clear. In theſe parts the trade wind does not extend farther to the S. than 20 deg. beyond which we generally found a gale from the weſtward. The tides here are perhaps as inconſiderable as in any part of the world. A S. or S. by W. moon makes high water in the harbour of Matavai, and its perpendicular height ſeldom exceeds 10 or 12 inches.

We ſhall defer a further deſcription of this iſland till we come to the captain's ſecond voyage, as we ſhall then have occaſion to mention it again, when we ſhall more particularly expatiate upon every principal information, and give our readers a vocabulary of their language, more full and copious than any hitherto offered, and arranged in grammatical order, to convey a proper idea of their nouns, verbs, &c. with neceſſary explanations, reſpecting the pronunciation of the different words, phraſes, and ſentences. For the preſent, without further digreſſion, we ſhall follow the Endeavour in her progreſs.

C H A P T E R VI.

The Endeavour continues her voyage—Viſits the iſlands in the neighbourhood of Otaheite—Deſcription of Huaheine, Ulietea, Otaha and Bolabola iſlands, which the captain takes poſſeſſion of in the name of his Britannic Majeſty—Diſcover a morai, altar, &c.—Several incidents, and various particulars relative to the inhabitants—The paſſage of the Endeavour from Oteroah to New Zealand—Events on going aſhore, and incidents while the ſhip was in Poverty Bay—This and the adjacent country deſcribed—Excurſions to Cape Turnagain, and return to Tolaga—The inhabitants deſcribed, and a narrative of what happened while we were on that part of the coaſt—The range from Tolaga to Mercury Bay—Incidents that happened on board the Endeavour and aſhore—A deſcription of the country and its fortified villages—She ſails from Mercury Bay to the Bay of Iſlands—A deſcription of the Indians on the banks of the river Thames, and of the timber that grows there—Interviews and ſkirmiſhes with the natives on an iſland, and on different parts of the coaſt—Range from the Bay of Iſlands round North Cape.

ON the 13th of July, 1768, we left the iſland of Otaheite, and continued our courſe, with clear weather and a gentle breeze.

Tupia now informed us that there were four iſlands at the diſtance of about one or two days ſail, called Huaheine, Ulietea, Otaha, and Bolabola, where hogs, fowls, and other refreſhments, very ſcarce on board, were to be got in great abundance. He alſo mentioned an iſland to the northward, which he called Tethuroa. It is ſituated N. half W. eight leagues diſtant from the northern extremity of Otaheite. It was a ſmall low iſland, but as Tupia ſaid without any ſettled inhabitants.

On the 15th we made but little way, on account of the calms which ſucceeded the light breezes. Tupia often prayed to his god Tane for a wind, and boaſted of his ſucceſs, which indeed he took care to inſure, by never applying to Tane till he ſaw a breeze ſo near that he knew it muſt reach the ſhip before his prayer was concluded.

On the 16th we ſounded near the N. W. part of the iſland of Huaheine, but found no bottom at 70 fathoms. Several canoes put off; but the Indians ſeemed fearful of coming near the bark, till the ſight of Tupia removed their apprehenſions. They then came along-ſide, and the king of the iſland, with his queen, came on board. They ſeemed ſurpriſed at whatever was ſhewn them, but made no enquiries after any thing but what was offered to their notice. After ſome time they became more familar; and the king, whoſe name was Oree, as a token of amity, propoſed to exchange names with Capt. Cook, which was readily accepted. We found the people here nearly ſimilar to thoſe of Otaheite in almoſt every particular; but, if Tupia might be credited, they are not like them addicted to thieving.

Having anchored in a ſmall but convenient harbour on the W. ſide of the iſland, (called by the natives Owparre) we went on ſhore with Mr. Banks and ſome other gentlemen, accompanied by the king and Tupia. The moment we landed, Tupia uncovered himſelf as low as the waiſt, and deſired Mr. Monkhouſe to follow his example. Being ſeated, he now began a ſpeech, or prayer, which laſted about 20 minutes; the king, who ſtood oppoſite to him, anſwering him in what ſeemed to be ſtudied replies. During this harangue, Tupia delivered, at different times, a handkerchief, a black ſilk necklock, ſome plantains and beads, as preſents to their Eatua, or deity; and in return, for our Eatua, we received a hog, ſome young plantains, and two bunches of feathers, all which were carried on board. Theſe ceremonies were conſidered as a kind of ratification of a treaty between us and the king of Huaheine.

On the 17th we went again on ſhore, and made an excurſion into the country, the productions of which greatly reſembled thoſe of Otaheite; the rocks and clay ſeemed, indeed, more burnt: the boat-houſes were curious, and remarkably large. The level part of the country affords the moſt beautiful landſcapes that the imagination can poſſibly form an idea of. The ſoil is exceedingly fertile, and the ſhore is lined with fruit trees of different kinds, particularly the cocoa-nut; however, in ſome places there were ſalt ſwamps and lagoons, which produced neither trees nor plants.

On the 18th we went again on ſhore, and Tupia being engaged with his friends, we took with us Taiyota, his boy. Mr. Banks propoſed taking a more perfect view of a kind of cheſt, or ark, which he had before obſerved. The lid of this ark was neatly ſewed on, and thatched in a peculiar manner with palm-nut leaves. It was placed on two poles, and ſupported by ſmall carved arches of wood. Theſe poles ſerved to remove it from one place to another, in the manner of our ſedan-chairs. We remarked, that this cheſt was of a form reſembling the ark of the Lord among the Jews; but it is ſtill more remarkable, that, enquiring of Tupia's ſervant what it was called, he told us, Ewharre no Eatua, the Houſe of God, though he could give no account of its meaning or uſe. Our trade with the natives went on ſlowly; we got, however, eleven pigs, and were not without hopes of obtaining more the next morning.

On the 19th we offered them ſome hatches, for which we procured three very large hogs. As we intended to ſail in the afternoon, king Oree and others of the natives came on board to take their leave.

Capt. Cook preſented to Oree a ſmall pewter plate, ſtamped with this inſcription, "His Britannic Majeſty's ſhip Endeavour, Captain Cook commander, 16 July, 1769." We gave him alſo ſome medals, or counters, reſembling our Engliſh coin, and other trifles, which he promiſed to keep in order to remember us. We now made ſail for the iſland of Ulietea, diſtant ſeven or eight leagues from Huaheine.

On the 20th, by the direction of Tupia, we anchored in a bay, formed by a reef, on the N. ſide of the iſland. Two canoes ſoon came off from the ſhore, and the natives brought with them two ſmall hogs, which they exchanged for ſome nails and beads. The captain, Mr. Banks, and other gentlemen, now went on ſhore, accompanied by Tupia, who introduced them with the ſame kind of ceremonies that had taken place on their landing at Huaheine; after which Capt. Cook took poſſeſſion of this and the three neighbouring iſlands, Huaheine, Otaha, and Bolabola, in the name of his Britannic Majeſty.

The iſland of Ulietea abounds with hogs and green plantains, which latter is an excellent ſubſtitute for bread, as it will keep good for a fortnight, and very often three weeks. Good water may alſo be had here, and a ſupply of other proviſions. The inhabitants ſeem in general ſmaller and blacker than thoſe of the other iſlands: they alſo appear leſs orderly, which perhaps may be conſidered as the conſequence of their having become ſubject to the natives of Bolabola. Ulietea, though now reduced to a ſtate of dependence, was once the moſt eminent of this cluſter of iſlands, and no doubt the firſt ſeat of government, ſeeing that the royal family of Otaheite is deſcended from that which reigned here before the late revolution.

The iſland of Huaheine lies in 16 deg. 43 min. S. latitude, and 150 deg. 52 min. W. longitude, about 30 leagues diſtant from Otaheite, and is 20 miles in circumference. Its productions are a month forwarder than thoſe of Otaheite, as we found by ſeveral of the fruits, &c. Mr. Banks collected only a few new plants, but found a ſpecies of the ſcorpion which he had not before ſeen. The inhabitants are very lazy, but are ſtouter and larger made than thoſe of Otaheite; the women very fair, and we thought them very handſome. Both ſexes ſeemed to be leſs timid, and leſs curious. They made no enquiries when on board the ſhip; and, when we fired a gun, though apparently frightened, yet they did not fall down, as our friends at Otaheite conſtantly did when we came among them; but it is to be conſidered, that the former had never experienced its power of diſpenſing death.

The iſland of Otaha is adjoining Ulietea: the natives of both theſe places had long lived in friendſhip, and were likewiſe on good terms with thoſe of the iſland of Huaheine. However, the people of Otaha ſoon joined thoſe of Bolabola, which of courſe occaſioned an altercation, while the Ulieteans made application to their friends of Huaheine for aſſiſtance to oppoſe theſe two powers. For ſome time the conteſt was doubtful; but at laſt Huaheine was invaded by the men of Bolabola, who conſequently took poſſeſſion of the iſland. The Ulieteans were very much hurt at this, and renewing the attack, though very inferior in force, yet being ſuperior in ſkill, they ſurpriſed the people of Bolabola, killing ſeveral and obliging others to fly. By this means the iſland of Huaheine was recovered. Previous to this, the Bolabolans having refuſed to admit the allies of Otaha to an equal ſhare of the conqueſts, the alliance was broke, and all the iſlands being now in oppoſition, a tedious war enſued, the reſult of which was that Otaha as well as Ulietea was conquered by Bolabola, and both became ſubject to that government, who appoint chiefs as their deputies to take care of each iſland. This is but a brief account of the revolution, but as we ſhall have occaſion to renew the ſubject in a future voyage, we mean to be more copious in our relation thereof.

The harbour of Bolabola, which is called by the natives Oteavanooa, is exceedingly extenſive; it is ſituated on the W. ſide of the iſland. It is exceedingly commodious for the reception of veſſels. The high, double-peaked mountain, which is in the middle of the iſland, appeared to be barren on the E. ſide, but on the W. it has trees and buſhes on its moſt craggy parts. The lower grounds all round towards the ſea are covered with cocoa, palm, and bread-fruit trees, like the other iſlands of this ocean; and the many little iſlets that ſurround it on the inſide of the reef add both to the amount of its vegetable productions and the number of its inhabitants. It is not half ſo extenſive as the iſland of Ulietea, being only about eight leagues in compaſs. The inhabitants, however, have acquired no inconſiderable fame by their valour, for which they are not only highly reſpected, but even dreaded by the inhabitants of Otaheite, though an iſland almoſt out of their reach. They never fly in battle, and always beat at leaſt an equal number of iſlanders, if not more.

The chief articles for trade in theſe iſlands are, hatchets, axes, chiſſels, nails, red feathers, cloth, beads, knives, ſciſſars, looking-glaſſes, &c. Theſe, and the like are held in great eſtimation, and will purchaſe a quantity of pork, fruits, fiſh, fowls, &c. Shirts are likewiſe a good commodity to trade with, eſpecially with the women. They were always eſteemed as valuable preſents, and ſuch as were inclined to be gallant were ſcarcely left a ſhirt on their back. Theſe iſlands are exceedingly fertile and agreeable; the natives, copying the bounty of nature, equally liberal, for they are always ready to contribute plentifully and cheerfully to the wants of navigators. Some of the iſlanders are more ſuperſtitious than others, who will not allow herons and wood-peckers to be deſtroyed. Their manner of dreſſing their meat is univerſally the ſame, and during the whole of their various operations they exhibit a cleanlineſs well worthy of imitation. They are very exact in waſhing their meat before it is dreſſed: they take out the entrails, and carry them away in a baſket, but what is done with them cannot be aſcertained. Thoſe who have eaten of their victuals, declare that they poſſeſs a ſuperior taſte and flavour, owing to their excellent manner of cooking.

While on our rambles in Ulietea, we walked to a large morai, called by the natives Tabodeboatea, which we found different from the ſepulchral monuments of Otaheite, being compoſed of four walls, about eight or nine feet high, and built of large coral ſtones, ſurrounding a court of about 30 feet ſquare. At a ſmall diſtance we found an altar, or ewhatta, whereupon lay the laſt oblation, or ſacrifice, a hog about 80 lb. weight, which had been offered whole, and very nicely roaſted. We alſo ſaw four or five Ewharre-no-eatua, or houſes of God, to which carriage poles were fitted. From hence we proceeded to a long houſe, where among rolls of cloth we ſaw the model of a canoe, about three feet long, to which were faſtened eight human jaw-bones: we concluded they were trophies of war, but Tupia affirmed they were the jaw-bones of the natives of this iſland. Night now advanced with quick paces, but Mr. Banks and the doctor continued their walk along the ſhore, and ſaw another Ewarre-no-eatua; alſo a tree of the fig kind, the trunk of which was about 42 paces in circumference, of the ſame nature as that already deſcribed.

On the 21ſt the maſter was ſent to inſpect the S. part of the iſland, and a lieutenant was diſpatched in the yaul to ſound the harbour where the Endeavour lay. While the captain went in the pinnace to take a view of that part of the iſland which lay to the northward. Mr. Banks, Dr. Solander, &c. went again on ſhore, trading with the natives, and ſearching after the productions and curioſities of the country. There was nothing, however, worthy of remark which offered itſelf at preſent to view.

We were now prevented by hazy weather and briſk gales from getting under ſail till the 24th, when we put to ſea, and ſteered northward within the reef, towards an opening, at the diſtance of about five or ſix leagues, in effecting which we were in great danger of ſtriking on a rock, the man who ſounded crying out on a ſudden "two fathoms," which could not but alarm us greatly; but either the maſter was miſtaken, or the ſhip went along the edge of a coral rock, many of which are as ſteep as a wall in the neighbourhood of theſe iſlands.

Oopoa bay, where the Endeavour lay at anchor, is very commodious, being large enough to hold a great number of ſhipping, and ſecured from the ſea by a reef of rocks. Its ſituation is off the eaſternmoſt part of the iſland. The proviſions conſiſt of plantains, cocoa-nuts, yams, ſome hogs, fowls, &c. The country round about the place where we landed was not ſo plentiful as at Otaheite or Huaheine. The ſouthernmoſt opening in the reef, or channel into the harbour, by which we entered, is little more than a cable's length wide; it lies off the eaſternmoſt point of the iſland, and may be found by a ſmall woody iſland, which lies to the S. E. of it, called Oatara; N. W. from which are two other iſlets, called Opururu and Tamou. Between theſe is the channel through which we went out of the harbour, upwards of a quarter of a mile wide.

We were within a league or two of the iſland of Otaha the next day; but could not get near enough to land, the wind having proved contrary. In the morning, Mr. Banks and Dr. Solander went in the long-boat with the maſter, in order to ſound a harbour on the eaſt ſide of the iſland, which they found ſafe and convenient. We then went on ſhore and purchaſed a large quantity of plantains, ſome hogs, fowls, &c. The produce of this iſland was much the ſame with that of Ulietea, but it ſeemed to be more barren. We received the ſame compliment from the Indians here as was uſual for them to pay their own kings, which was by uncovering their ſhoulders, and wrapping their clothes round their bodies. We made ſail to the northward, and at eight o'clock on the 29th we were under the high peaks of Bolabola. We found the iſland inacceſſible in this part, and likewiſe that it was impoſſible to weather the S. end of it till late at night.

On the 30th we diſcovered an iſland which Tupia called Maurua, but ſaid it was ſmall, ſurrounded by a reef, and without any commodious harbour, but inhabited, and yielded nearly the ſame produce as the adjacent iſlands. In the middle is a high round hill, which may be ſeen at eleven or twelve leagues diſtance. In the afternoon, finding ourſelves to windward of ſome harbour that lay on the W. ſide of Ulietea, we intended to put into one of them, in order to ſtop a leak which had ſprung in the powder-room, and to take in ſome additional ballaſt. The wind being right againſt us, we plied on and off till the afternoon of the 1ſt of Auguſt, and having made the entrance of the channel, which led into one of the harbours, came to anchor.

On the 2d, in the morning, when the tide turned, we came into a proper place for mooring in 28 fathoms. Many of the natives came off, and brought plantains, hogs, fowls, &c. which were purchaſed upon very eaſy terms. Mr. Banks and Dr. Solander went on ſhore, and ſpent the day very agreeably; the natives ſhewed them great reſpect, and conducted them to the houſes of the chief people: they found thoſe who had ran haſtily before them ſtanding on each ſide of a long mat ſpread upon the ground, and the family ſitting at the farther end of it. In one houſe they obſerved ſome very young girls dreſſed in the neateſt manner, who kept their places waiting for the ſtrangers to accoſt them; theſe girls were the moſt beautiful the gentlemen had ever ſeen. One of them, about ſeven or eight years old, was dreſſed in a red gown, and her head was decorated with a great quantity of plaited hair; this ornament is called Tamou, and is held in great eſtimation among them. She was ſitting at the upper end of one of their long mats, on which none of the people preſent preſumed to ſet a foot; and her head was reclined on the arm of a decent-looking woman, who appeared to be her nurſe: Mr. Banks and Dr. Solander, upon their approach, preſented her with ſome beads, which ſhe ſtretched her hand out and accepted with as much dignity and eaſe as if ſhe had been accuſtomed all her life to European politeneſs.

We were entertained with a dance in one of the houſes different from any we had ſeen before. The performer put upon his head a large piece of wicker-work, about four feet long, of a cylindrical form, covered with feathers, and edged round with ſhark's teeth. With this head-dreſs, which is called a Whou, he began to dance with a ſlow motion, frequently moving his head ſo as to deſcribe a circle with the top of his wicker cap, and ſometimes throwing it ſo near the faces of the by-ſtanders as to make them jump back: this they conſidered as an excellent piece of humour, and when practiſed upon any of the Engliſh gentlemen was productive of the greateſt mirth.

On the 3d, while Mr. Banks and the doctor were going along the ſhore to the northward, with a deſign to purchaſe ſtock, they met with a company of dancers, who retarded the progreſs of their excurſion. The company was compoſed of ſix men and two women dancers, with three drums. They were informed that theſe dancers were ſome of the principal people of the iſland, and though they were an itinerant troop, they did not, like the ſtrolling parties of Otaheite, receive any gratuity from the by-ſtanders. The women wore a conſiderable quantity of tamou, or plaited hair, ornamented with flowers of the cape-jeſſamine, which were ſtuck in with great taſte, and made an elegant head-dreſs. The women's necks, breaſts, and arms, were naked; the other parts of their bodies were covered with black cloth, which was faſtened cloſe round them, and by the ſide of each breaſt, next the arms, was a ſmall plume of black feathers, worn like a noſegay. Thus apparelled, they advanced ſideways, keeping time with great exactneſs to the drums, which beat quick and loud; ſoon after they began to ſhake themſelves in a very whimſical manner, and put their bodies into a variety of ſtrange poſtures, ſometimes ſitting down, and at others falling with their faces to the ground, and reſting on their knees and elbows, moving their fingers at the ſame time with a quickneſs ſcarcely to be credited. The chief dexterity, however, of the dancers, as well as the amuſement of the ſpectators, conſiſted in the laſciviouſneſs of their attitudes and geſtures. Between the dances of the women a kind of dramatic interlude was performed by the men, conſiſting of dialogue as well as dancing; but the ſubject of this interlude was entirely unknown for want of a ſufficient knowledge of their language.

The next day Mr. Banks, Dr. Solander, and ſome other gentlemen, were preſent at a more regular dramatic entertainment. The performers, who were all men, were divided into two parties, one dreſſed in brown, and the other in white, by way of diſtinction. Tupia being preſent, informed them that the party in brown acted the parts of a maſter and his ſervants, and the party in white a gang of thieves; the maſter having produced a baſket of meat, which he gave in charge to his ſervants: which party exhibited a variety of expedients in endeavouring to ſteal this baſket, and the brown as many in preventing the accompliſhment of their deſign. After ſome time had been ſpent in this manner, thoſe to whom the baſket was entruſted, laying themſelves down on the ground round it, pretended to fall aſleep; the other party, availing themſelves of this opportunity, ſtole gently upon them, and carried off their booty: the ſervants awaking ſoon after, diſcovered their loſs, but their concern was only temporary, as they began to dance with as much alacrity as before, having entirely forgot the baſket.

On the 5th ſome hogs, fowls, and ſeveral large pieces of cloth, many of them being 50 or 60 yards in length, together with a quantity of plantains, cocoanuts, &c. were ſent to Capt. Cook, as a preſent from the Earee Rahie of the iſland of Bolabola, accompanied with a meſſage, which ſignified that he intended waiting on the captain, as he was then in the iſland.

The king of Bolabola did not viſit us on Sunday the 6th agreeable to promiſe; his abſence, however, was not in the leaſt regretted, as he ſent three young women to demand ſomething in return for his preſent. After dinner, we ſet out to pay the king a viſit on ſhore, ſince he did not think proper to come on board. As this man was the Earee Rahie of the Bolabola man, who had conquered this, and was the dread of all the neighbouring iſlands, we were greatly diſappointed, inſtead of finding a vigorous enterpriſing young chief, to ſee a poor feeble old dotard, half blind, and ſinking under the weight of age and infirmities. Our reception here was not attended with that ſtate and ceremony which the other chiefs had paid us.

Having ſtopped a leak, and taken on board a freſh ſtock of proviſions, on the 9th we ſailed out of the harbour. Though we were ſeveral leagues diſtant from the iſland of Bolabola, Tupia earneſtly requeſted that a ſhot might be fired towards it; which, to gratify him, the captain complied with. This was ſuppoſed to have been intended by Tupia as a mark of his reſentment againſt the inhabitants of that place, as they had formerly taken from him large poſſeſſions which he held in the iſland of Ulietea, of which iſland Tupia was a native, and a ſubordinate chief, but was driven out by theſe warriors. We had great plenty of proviſions, both of hogs and vegetables, during the time we continued in the neighbourhood of theſe iſlands, ſo that we were not obliged to uſe any conſiderable quantity of the ſhip's proviſions, and we had flattered ourſelves that the fowls and hogs would have ſupplied us with freſh proviſions during the courſe of our voyage to the ſouthward; but in this we were unhappily diſappointed, for as the hogs could not be brought to eat any European grain, or any provender whatever that the ſhip afforded, we were reduced to the diſagreeable neceſſity of killing them immediately on leaving thoſe iſlands; and the fowls all died of a diſeaſe in their heads, with which they were ſeized ſoon after they had been carried on board. Being detained longer at Ulietea in repairing the ſhip than we expected, we did not go on ſhore at Bolabola; but after giving the general name of the Society Iſlands to the iſlands of Huaheine, Ulietea, Bolabola, Otaha, and Maurua, which lie between the latitude of 16 deg. 10 min. and 18 deg. 55 min. S. we purſued our courſe, ſtanding ſoutherly for an iſland, to which we were directed by Tupia, at above 100 leagues diſtant. This we diſcovered on Sunday the 13th; it was called Obiterea, according to Tupia's information.

We ſtood in for land on the 14th, and ſaw ſeveral of the inhabitants coming along the ſhore. One of the lieutenants was diſpatched in the pinnace to ſound for anchorage, and to obtain what intelligence could be got from the natives concerning any land that might be farther to the S. Mr. Banks, Dr. Solander, and Tupia, went with the lieutenant in the boat. When they approached the ſhore, they obſerved that the Indians were armed with long lances. A number of them were ſoon drawn together on the beach, and two jumped into the water, endeavouring to gain the boat; but ſhe ſoon left them, and ſome others that had made the ſame attempt, far enough behind her. Having doubled the point where they intended to land, they opened a large bay, and ſaw another party of the natives ſtanding at the end of it, armed like thoſe whom they had ſeen before. Preparations were then made for landing; on which a canoe full of Indians came off towards them. Obſerving this, Tupia received orders to acquaint them that the Engliſh did not intend to offer them violence, but meant to traffic with them for nails, which were produced. Thus informed, they came along-ſide the boat, and took ſome nails that were given them, being ſeemingly well pleaſed with the preſent. Yet, a few minutes after, ſeveral of theſe people boarded the boat, deſigning to drag her on ſhore; but ſome muſquets being diſcharged over their heads, they leaped into the ſea, and having reached the canoe, put back with all poſſible expedition, joining their countrymen, who ſtood ready to receive them. The boat immediately purſued the fugitives; but the crew, finding the ſurf extremely violent, did not venture to land there, but coaſted along ſhore, to try if they could find a more convenient place. Soon after the canoe got on ſhore, a man oppoſite the boat flouriſhed his weapon, calling out at the ſame time with a ſhrill voice, which was a mark of defiance, as Tupia explained it to the Engliſh. Not being able to find a proper landing place, they returned, with an intention to attempt it where the canoe went on ſhore; whereupon another warrior repeated the defiance: his appearance was more formidable than that of the other; he had a high cap on made of the tail feathers of a bird, and his body was painted with various colours. When he thought fit to retire, a grave man came forward, who aſked Tupia ſeveral queſtions, relating to the place from whence the veſſel came, as, Who were the perſons on board? whither they are bound? &c. After this it was propoſed that the people in the boat ſhould go on ſhore and trade with them, if they would lay aſide their weapons; but the latter would not agree to this, unleſs the Engliſh would do the like. As this propoſal was by no means an equal one, when it was conſidered that the hazard muſt for many reaſons be greater to the boat's crew than the Indians, and as perfidy was dreaded, it was not complied with. Accordingly they declined landing, and ſailed from hence to the ſouthward, ſince neither the bay which the Endeavour entered nor any other part of the iſland furniſhed good harbour or anchorage.

The natives here are very tall, well made, and have long hair, which, like the inhabitants of the other iſlands, they tie in a bunch on the top of their heads; they are likewiſe tataowed in different parts of their bodies, but not on their poſteriors. The iſland does not ſhoot up into high peaks like the others that they viſited, but is more level and uniform, and divided into ſmall hillocks, ſome of which are covered with groves of trees: however, none of thoſe bearing the bread-fruit were ſeen, and not many cocoa-trees, but a great number of thoſe called Etoa, were ſeen on the ſea coaſt of this iſland. Both the nature of their cloth and the manner of wearing it differed in many reſpects from what had been obſerved in the progreſs of our voyage. All the garments that theſe people wore were dyed yellow, and painted with a variety of colours on the outſide. One piece formed their whole habit, having a hole in it through which they put their heads: this reached as far as their knees, and was tied cloſe round their bodies with a kind of yellowiſh ſaſh. Some of them alſo wore caps of the ſame kind, as we have already mentioned, and others bound a piece of cloth which reſembled a turban round their heads.

On the 15th, having a fine breeze, we ſailed from this iſland; but on the 16th it was hazy, and we bore away for what reſembled ſeveral high peaks of land. The weather clearing up, we were convinced of our miſtake, and reſumed our courſe accordingly. We ſaw a comet on the 30th, about four o'clock, which was then about 60 deg. above the horizon. Land was diſcovered at W. by N. on Thurſday the 7th of Oct. and in the morning of the 8th we came to an anchor oppoſite the mouth of a ſmall river, ſcarcely half a league diſtant from the coaſt.

The captain, Mr. Banks, Dr. Solander, and ſome other gentlemen, having left the pinnace at the mouth of the river, proceeded a little farther up, when we landed, leaving the yaul to the care of ſome of our boys, and went up to a few ſmall houſes in the neighbourhood. Some of the natives that had concealed themſelves in the neighbourhood, took advantage of our abſence from the boat, and ruſhed out, advancing and brandiſhing their wooden lances. This alarming the boys, they dropped down the ſtream. The cockſwain of the pinnace then fired a muſketoon over their heads, but it did not prevent them from following the boat; in conſequence of which he levelled his piece, and ſhot one of them dead on the ſpot. Struck with aſtoniſhment at the death of their companion, the others remained motionleſs for ſome time, but as ſoon as they recovered their fright retreated to the woods with the utmoſt precipitation. The report of the gun brought the advanced party back to the boats, and both the pinnace and yaul returned immediately to the veſſel.

On the 9th there were a great number of the natives near the place where the gentlemen in the yaul had landed the preceding evening, and the greateſt part of them appeared to be unarmed. The long-boat, pinnace, and yaul, being manned with marines and ſailors, Capt. Cook, with the reſt of the gentlemen, and Tupia, went on ſhore, and landed on the oppoſite ſide of the river, over againſt a ſpot where ſeveral Indians were ſitting on the ground. Theſe immediately ſtarted up, and began to handle their weapons, each producing either a long pike, or a kind of truncheon, made of ſtone, with a ſtring through the handle of it, which they twiſt round their wriſts. Tupia was directed to ſpeak to them in his language; and we were agreeably ſurpriſed to find that he was well underſtood, the natives ſpeaking in his language, though in a different dialect. Their intentions at firſt appeared to be very hoſtile, brandiſhing their weapons in the uſual threatening manner; upon which a muſquet was fired at ſome diſtance from them: the ball happened to fall into the water, at which they appeared rather terrified, and deſiſted from their menaces. Having now drawn up the marines, we advanced nearer to the ſide of the river. Tupia again ſpeaking, informed them of our deſire to traffic with them for proviſions: to this they conſented, provided we would go over to them to the other ſide of the river. The propoſal was agreed to, upon condition that the natives would quit their weapons; but the moſt ſolemn aſſurances of friendſhip could not prevail with them to make ſuch a conceſſion. Not thinking it prudent therefore to croſs the river, we in our turn intreated the Indians to come over to us, and after ſome time prevailed on one of them ſo to do. He was preſently followed by ſeveral others. They did not appear to value the beads and iron which we offered in the way of barter, but propoſed to exchange their weapons for ours; which being objected to, they endeavoured ſeveral times to ſnatch our arms from us, but being on our guard, from the information given us by Tupia that they were ſtill our enemies, their attempts were repeatedly fruſtrated; and Tupia, by our directions, gave them to underſtand, that any further offers of violence would be puniſhed with inſtant death. One of them, nevertheleſs, had the audacity to ſnatch Mr. Green's dagger, when his back was turned to them, and retiring a few paces, flouriſhed it over his head; but his temerity coſt him his life, for Mr. Monkhouſe fired a muſquet loaded with ball, and he inſtantly dropped. Soon after they retreated ſlowly up the country, and we returned to our boats, having previouſly diſcharged our pieces loaded only with ſmall ſhot.

On account of the behaviour of the Indians, and our want of freſh water, Capt. Cook was induced to continue his voyage round the bay, with a hope of getting ſome of the natives aboard, that by civil uſage he might convey through them a favourable idea of us to their countrymen, and thereby ſettle a good correſpondence with them. An event occurred which, though attended with diſagreeable circumſtances, promiſed to facilitate this deſign. Two canoes appeared, making towards land, and Capt. Cook propoſed intercepting them with our boats. One of them got clear off, but the Indians in the other, finding it impoſſible to eſcape, began to attack our people in the boats with their paddles. This compelled the Endeavour's people to fire upon them, when four of the Indians were killed, and the other three, who were young men, jumped into the water, and endeavoured to ſwim to ſhore; they were, however, taken up, and conveyed on board. At firſt they diſcovered all the ſigns of fear and terror, thinking they ſhould be killed; but Tupia, by repeated aſſurances of friendſhip, removed their apprehenſions, and they afterwards eat heartily of the ſhip's proviſions. Having retired to reſt in the evening, they ſlept very quietly for ſome hours, but about midnight, their fears returning, they appeared in great agitation, frequently making loud and diſmal groans. Again the kind careſſes and friendly promiſes of Tupia operated ſo effectually, that they became calm, and ſung a ſong, which at the dead of night had a pleaſing effect. The next morning, after they were dreſſed according to the mode of their own country, and were ornamented with necklaces and bracelets, preparations were made for ſending them to their countrymen, at which they expreſſed great ſatisfaction; but finding the boat approaching Capt. Cook's firſt landing-place, they intimated that the inhabitants were foes, and that after killing their enemies they always eat them. The captain, nevertheleſs, judged it expedient to land near the ſame ſpot, which he accordingly did, with Mr. Banks, Dr. Solander, and Tupia, reſolving at the ſame time to protect the youths from any injury that might be offered to them. Theſe had ſcarcely departed on their return to their friends, when two large parties of Indians advanced haſtily towards them, upon which they again flew to us for protection. When the Indians drew near, one of the boys diſcovered his uncle among them, and a converſation enſued acroſs the river, in which the boy gave a juſt account of our hoſpitality, and took great pains to diſplay his finery. A ſhort time after this converſation, the uncle ſwam acroſs the river, bringing with him a green bough, a token of friendſhip, which we received as ſuch, and ſeveral preſents were made him. Notwithſtanding the preſence of this relation, all three of the boys, by their own deſire, returned to the ſhip; but as the captain intended to ſail next morning, he ſent them aſhore in the evening.

At ſix o'clock in the morning of the 11th we weighed and ſet ſail, in hopes of finding a better anchoring place, Capt. Cook having given the bay (called by the natives Toaneora) the name of Poverty Bay; and the S. W. point he called Young Nick's Head, on account of its firſt having been perceived by a lad named Nicholas Young. In the afternoon we were becalmed; and ſeveral canoes full of Indians came off from the ſhore, who received many preſents, and afterwards bartered even their clothes, and ſome of their paddles, ſo eager were they to be poſſeſſed of European commodities. The Indians were armed with bludgeons, made of wood, and of the bone of a large animal: they were well contrived for cloſe fighting, and bore the name of Patoo-Patoo. Having finiſhed their traffic, they ſet off in ſuch a hurry that they forgot three of their companions, who remained on board all night. Theſe teſtified great fears and apprehenſions, notwithſtanding Tupia took much pains to convince them they were in no danger; and about ſeven o'clock the next morning a canoe came off, with four Indians on board. It was at firſt with difficulty the Indians in the ſhip could prevail on thoſe in the canoe to come near them, and not till after the former had aſſured them that the Engliſh did not eat men. The chief came on board, whoſe face was tattaowed, with a remarkable patoo in his hand: and with this canoe the three Indians left the ſhip. Capt. Cook gave the name of Cape Table to a point of land about ſeven leagues to the S. of Poverty Bay; its figure greatly reſembling a table; and the iſland, called by the natives Teahowry, he named Portland Iſland, it being very ſimilar to that of the ſame name in the Britiſh Channel. It is joined to the main by a chain of rocks, nearly a mile in length, partly above water. There are ſeveral ſhoals, called ſhambles, about three miles to the N. E. of Portland, one of which the Endeavour narrowly eſcaped; there is, however, a paſſage between them with 20 fathom water. Some parts of Portland Iſland, as well as the main, were cultivated; and pumice ſtone, in great quantities, lying along the ſhore, within the bay, indicated that there was a volcano in the iſland. High palings upon the ridges of hills were alſo viſible in two places, the purpoſes of which ſeemed to be for religion.

On the 12th a number of Indians came off in a canoe, who were disfigured in a ſtrange manner; theſe danced and ſung, but at times appeared to be peaceably inclined, but at others to menace hoſtilities. Notwithſtanding Tupia ſtrongly invited them to come on board, none of them would quit the canoe. Whilſt the Endeavour was getting clear of the ſhambles, five canoes full of Indians came off, and ſeemed to threaten the people on board, by brandiſhing their lances, and other hoſtile geſtures. A four-pounder, loaded with grape-ſhot, was therefore ordered to be fired, but not pointed at them. This had the deſired effect, and made them drop aſtern. Two more canoes came off whilſt the Endeavour lay at anchor; the Indians in theſe behaved very peaceably and quiet; they received ſeveral preſents, but would not come on board.

In the morning of the 13th we made for an inlet, but finding it not ſheltered ſtood out again, and were chaced by a canoe filled with Indians, but the Endeavour out-ſailed them. She purſued her courſe round the bay, but did not find an opening. The next morning we had a view of the inland country. It was mountainous, and covered with ſnow in the interior parts, but the land towards the ſea was flat and uncultivated, and in many places there were groves of high trees. Nine canoes full of Indians came from the ſhore, and five of them, after having conſulted together, purſued the Endeavour, apparently with a hoſtile deſign. Tupia was deſired to acquaint them, that immediate deſtruction would enſue, if they perſevered in their attempts; but words had no influence, and a four-pounder, with grape ſhot, was fired, to give them ſome notion of the arms of their opponents. They were terrified at this kind of reaſoning, and paddled away faſter than they came. Tupia then hailed the fugitives, and acquainted them that if they came in a peaceable manner, and left their arms behind, no annoyance would be offered them: one of the canoes ſubmitting to the terms, came along ſide the ſhip, and received many preſents; but this friendly intercourſe was ſoon interrupted by the return of the other canoes, who perſiſted in their menacing behaviour.

On the 15th ſome fiſhing-boats paid us a viſit; theſe people conducted themſelves in an amicable manner. Though the fiſh which they had on board had been caught ſo long that they were not eatable, Capt. Cook purchaſed them, merely for the ſake of promoting a traffic with the natives. In the afternoon a canoe with a number of armed Indians came up, and one of them, who was remarkably cloathed with a black ſkin, found means to defraud the captain of a piece of red baize, under pretence of bartering the ſkin he had on for it. As ſoon as he got the baize into his poſſeſſion, inſtead of giving the ſkin in return, agreeable to his bargain, he rolled them up together, and ordered the canoe to put off from the ſhip, turning a deaf ear to the repeated remonſtrances of the captain againſt his unjuſt behaviour. After a ſhort time this canoe, together with the fiſhing-boats which had put off at the ſame time, came back to the ſhip, and trade was again renewed. During this ſecond traffic with the Indians, one of them unexpectedly ſeized Tupia's little boy, Taiyota, and pulling him into his canoe, inſtantly put off, and paddled away with the utmoſt ſpeed; ſeveral muſkets were immediately diſcharged at the people in the canoe, and one of them receiving a wound, they all let go the boy, who before was held down in the bottom of the canoe. Taiyota, taking advantage of their conſternation, immediately jumped into the ſea, and ſwam back towards the Endeavour: he was taken on board without receiving any harm; but his ſtrength was ſo much exhauſted with the weight of his cloaths, that it was with great difficulty he reached the ſhip. In conſequence of this attempt to carry off Taiyota, Capt. Cook called the cape off which it happened Cape Kidnappers, lying in latitude 39 deg. 43 min. S. and longitude 182 deg. 24 min. W. and is very diſtinguiſhable by the high cliffs and white rocks that ſurround it. It forms the S. point of a bay, which was denominated Hawke's Bay, in honour of Admiral Hawke, and is diſtant from Portland Iſland about 13 leagues.

As ſoon as Taiyota had recovered from his fright he produced a fiſh, and informed Tupia that he intended to offer it to his Eatua, or God, in gratitude for his happy eſcape; this being approved of by the other Indian, the fiſh was caſt into the ſea. Captain Cook now paſſed by a ſmall iſland, which was ſuppoſed to be inhabited only by fiſhermen, as it ſeemed to be barren, and Bare Iſland was the name given to it; and to a head-land in latitude 40 deg. 34 min. S. and longitude 182 deg. 55 min. W. becauſe the Endeavour turned, he gave the name of Cape Turnagain. It was never certainly known whether New Zealand was an iſland before this veſſel touched there; on this account the Lords of the Admiralty had inſtructed Capt. Cook to ſail along the coaſts as far as 40 deg. S. and if the land extended farther to return to the northward again. It was for this reaſon that the captain altered his courſe, when he arrived at the cape above-mentioned: the wind having likewiſe veered about to the S. he returned, ſailing along the coaſt nearly in his former track. Between this and Cape Kidnappers Bay the land is unequal, and ſomewhat reſembles our downs and ſmall villages, and many inhabitants were obſerved. The ſhip came abreaſt of a peninſula, in Portland Iſland, named Terakako, on Wedneſday the 19th. At this time a canoe with five Indians came up to the veſſel: there were two chiefs among them, who came on board, and ſtaid all night. One of theſe was a very comely perſon, and had an open and agreeable countenance. They were extremely grateful for the preſents which they received, and diſplayed no ſmall degree of curioſity. They would not eat nor drink, but their attendants devoured the victuals ſet before them in a moſt voracious manner.

On the 19th we paſſed a remarkable head-land, which we called Gable End Foreland. Three canoes appeared here, and one Indian came on board: during his ſtay we gave him ſome ſmall preſents.

Several of theſe Indians wore pieces of green ſtone round their necks, which were tranſparent, and reſembled an emerald. Theſe being examined, appeared to be a ſpecies of the nephritic ſtone. Several pieces of it were procured by Mr. Banks, and it appeared that this furniſhed the iſlanders with their principal ornaments. The form of ſome of their faces was agreeable; their noſes were rather prominent than flat. Their language nearly reſembled that of Otaheite, nor was their dialect ſo guttural as that of others.

On the 20th we anchored in a bay two leagues to the N. of the Foreland. To this bay we were invited by the natives in canoes, who behaved very amicably, and pointed to a place where they ſaid we ſhould find plenty of freſh water. We determined here to get ſome knowledge of the country, tho' the harbour was not ſo good a ſhelter from the weather as we expected. Two chiefs whom we ſaw in the canoes came on board; they were dreſſed in jackets, the one ornamented with tufts of red feathers, the other with dogs-ſkin. We preſented to them linen and ſome ſpike-nails, but they did not value the laſt ſo much as the inhabitants of the other iſlands. The reſt of the Indians traded with us without the leaſt impoſition, and we directed Tupia to acquaint them of our views in coming thither; and promiſe,

promiſe that they ſhould receive no injury, if they offered none to us. The chiefs returned in the afternoon, and towards the evening we went on ſhore, accompanied by the captain, Mr. Banks, and Dr. Solander. We were courteouſly received by the inhabitants, who did not appear in numerous bodies, and in other inſtances were ſcrupulouſly attentive not to give offence. We made them ſeveral ſmall preſents; and, in this agreeable tour round the bay, we had the pleaſure of finding two ſtreams of freſh water. We remained on ſhore all night, and the next day Mr. Banks and Dr. Solander diſcovered ſeveral birds, among which were quails and large pigeons. Many ſtages for drying fiſh were obſerved near where we landed, and ſome houſes with fences. We ſaw dogs with pointed ears, and very ugly: alſo ſweet potatoes, like thoſe which grow in America. The cloth-plant grew ſpontaneous. In the neighbouring valleys, the lands were laid out in regular plantations; and in the bay we caught plenty of crabs, cray-fiſh, and horſe-mackarel, larger than thoſe upon the Engliſh coaſts. The low lands were planted with cocoas, the hollows with gourds; but as to the woods, they were almoſt impaſſable, on account of the number of ſupple-jacks which grew there. We went into ſeveral of the houſes belonging to the natives, who received us in a very polite manner, and without the leaſt reſerve ſhewed us whatever we deſired to ſee. At other times we found them at their meals, which our preſence never interrupted. At this ſeaſon, fiſh conſtituted their chief food; with which they eat, inſtead of bread, roots of a kind of fern; theſe, when roaſted upon a fire, are ſweet and clammy; in taſte not diſagreeable, though rather unpleaſant from the number of their fibres. They have doubtleſs an abundance of excellent vegetables in other ſeaſons of the year.

The faces of the men were not in general painted; but they were daubed with dry red ochre from head to foot, their apparel not excepted. Though in perſonal cleanlineſs they were not equal to our friends at Otaheite, yet in ſome particulars they ſurpaſſed them; for their dwellings were furniſhed with privies, and they had dunghills, upon which their offals and filth were depoſited. The women of this place paint their faces with a mixture of red ochre and oil, which, as they are very plain, renders them in appearance more homely. This kind of daubing being generally wet upon their cheeks and foreheads, was eaſily transferred to thoſe who ſaluted them, as was frequently viſible upon the noſes of our people. The young ones, who were complete coquets, wore a petticoat, under which was a girdle, made of the blades of graſs, ſtrongly perfumed, to which was pendant a ſmall bunch of the leaves of ſome fragrant plant. Chaſtity is held in very little eſtimation. They reſorted frequently to the watering-place, where they freely beſtowed every favour that was requeſted. An officer meeting with an elderly woman, he accompanied her to her houſe, and having preſented her with ſome cloth and beads, a young girl was ſingled out, with whom he was given to underſtand he might retire. Soon after an elderly man, with two women, came in as viſiters, who with much formality ſaluted the whole company, after the cuſtom of the place, which is by gently joining the tips of their noſes together. On his return, which was on Saturday the 21ſt, he was furniſhed with a guide, who, whenever they came to a brook or rivulet, took him on his back, to prevent his being wet. Many of the natives were curiouſly tattaowed; an old man, in particular, was marked on the breaſt with curious figures. One of them had an axe made of the green ſtone, which we could not purchaſe, though ſundry things were offered in exchange. Theſe Indians at night dance in a very uncouth manner, with antic geſtures, lolling out their tongues, and making ſtrange grimaces. In their dances, old men are as great performers as the young.

As Mr. Banks was rather apprehenſive that we might be left on ſhore after it was dark, he applied in the evening to the Indians for one of their canoes to convey us on board the ſhip. This they granted with an obliging manner. We were eight in number, and not being uſed to a veſſel that required a nice balance, we overſet her in the ſurf: no one, however, was drowned; but it was concluded, to prevent a ſimilar accident, that half our number ſhould go at one time. Mr. Banks, Dr. Solander, Tupia, and Taiyota, were the firſt party who embarked again, and arrived ſafe at the ſhip, as did the remainder of our company, all not a little pleaſed with the good-nature of our Indian friends, who chearfully contributed their aſſiſtance upon our ſecond trip. During our ſtay on ſhore, ſeveral of them went out in their canoes, and trafficked with the ſhip's company. At firſt they preferred the cloth of Otaheite to that of Europe, but in the courſe of a day it decreaſed in its value 500 per cent. Theſe people expreſſed ſtrong marks of aſtoniſhment, when ſhewn the bark and her apparatus. This bay is called by the natives Tegadoo, and is ſituated in 38 deg. 10 min. S. latitude. We were now determined to quit it.

On Sunday the 22d, in the evening, we weighed anchor and put to ſea, but the wind being contrary we ſtood for another bay a little to the S. called by the natives Tolaga, in order to complete our wood and water, and to extend our correſpondence with the natives. We found a watering-place in a ſmall cove a little within the S. point of the bay, which bore S. by E. diſtant about a mile. Several canoes with Indians trafficked with us for glaſs bottles in a very fair, honeſt manner.

On Monday the 23d, in the afternoon, we went on ſhore, accompanied by the captain, Mr. Banks, and Dr. Solander. We examined and found the water extremely good; alſo plenty of wood, and the natives ſhewed us as much civility as thoſe from whom we had lately departed. At this watering-place we ſet up an aſtronomical quadrant, and took ſeveral ſolar and lunary obſervations.

In the morning of the 24th, Mr. Gore, and the marines, were ſent on ſhore to guard the people employed in cutting wood and filling the caſks with water. Capt. Cook, Mr. Banks, and the doctor, alſo went on ſhore: the latter were employed in collecting plants. In our walks through the vales, we ſaw many houſes uninhabited, the natives reſiding chiefly in ſheds, on the ridges of the hills, which are very ſteep. In a valley between two very high hills, we ſaw a curious rock that formed a large arch oppoſite the ſea. This cavern was in length about 70 feet, in breadth 30, and near 50 in height, commanding a view of the bay, and hills on the other ſide, which had a very pleaſing effect. Indeed, the whole country about the bay is agreeable beyond deſcription, and, if properly cultivated, would be a moſt fertile ſpot. The hills are cloathed with beautiful flowering ſhrubs, intermixed with a number of tall, ſtately palms, which perfume the air, making it perfectly odoriferous. Mr. Banks and the doctor, among other trees that yielded a fine tranſparent gum, diſcovered the cabbage-tree, the produce whereof, when boiled, was very good. We met with various kinds of edible herbage in great abundance, and many trees that produced fruit fit to eat. The plant from which the cloth is made is a kind of Hemerocallis; its leaves afford a ſtrong gloſſy flax, equally adapted to cloathing and making of ropes. Near their houſes ſweet potatoes and plantains are cultivated.

We met an old man on our return, who entertained us with the military exerciſes of the natives, which are performed with the patoo-patoo and the lance. The former has been already mentioned, and is uſed as a battle-axe: the latter is 18 or 20 feet in length, made of extreme hard wood, and ſharpened at each end. A ſtake was ſubſtituted for a ſuppoſed enemy. The old warrior firſt attacked him with his lance, advancing with a moſt furious aſpect. Having pierced him, the patoo-patoo was uſed to demoliſh his head, at which he ſtruck with a force which would at one blow have ſplit any man's ſkull: from whence we concluded no quarter was given by theſe people in time of action to their foes.

The number of natives here are by no means conſiderable. They are tolerably well ſhaped, but lean and tall: their faces reſemble thoſe of the Europeans: their noſes are aquiline, their eyes dark coloured, their hair black, which is tied upon the top of their heads, and the men's beards are of a moderate length. Their tattaowing is done very curiouſly, in varous figures, which makes their ſkins reſemble carving; it is confined to the principal men, the females and ſervants uſing only red paint, with which they daub their faces, that otherwiſe would not be diſagreeable. Their cloth is white, gloſſy, and very even; it is worn principally by the men, though it is wrought by the women, who indeed are condemned to labour and drudgery.

On the 25th we ſet up the armourers forge on ſhore for neceſſary uſes, and got our wood and water without the leaſt moleſtation from the natives, with whom we exchanged glaſs bottles and beads for different ſorts of fiſh. Mr. Banks and Dr. Solander went again in ſearch of plants; Tupia, who was with them, engaged in a converſation with one of the prieſts, and they ſeemed to agree in their opinions upon the ſubject of religion. Tupia, in the courſe of this conference, enquired whether the report of their eating men was founded in truth; to which the prieſt anſwered, it was, but that they eat none but declared foes, after they were killed in war. That they carried their reſentment even beyond death was apparent from this ſavage idea.

On the 27th Capt. Cook and Dr. Solander went to inſpect the bay, when the doctor was not a little ſurpriſed to find the natives in the poſſeſſion of a boy's top, which they knew how to ſpin by whipping it, and he purchaſed it out of curioſity. Mr. Banks was during this time employed in attaining the ſummit of a ſteep hill, that had previouſly engaged their attention, and near it he found many inhabited houſes. There were two rows of poles, about 14 or 15 feet high, covered over with ſticks, which made an avenue of about five feet in width, extending near 100 yards down the hill, in an irregular line: the intent of this erection was not diſcovered. When the gentlemen met at the watering-place, the Indians ſang their war ſong, which was a ſtrange medley of ſhouting, ſighing, and grimace, at which the women aſſiſted.

The next day Capt. Cook, and other gentlemen, went upon the iſland at the entrance of the bay, and met with a canoe that was 67 feet in length, ſix in breadth, and four in height; her bottom, which was ſharp, conſiſted of three trunks of trees, and the ſides and head were curiouſly carved. We alſo came to a large unfiniſhed houſe. The poſts which ſupported it were ornamented with carvings, that did not appear to be done upon the ſpot, and as the inhabitants ſeem to ſet great value upon works of this kind, future navigators might find their advantage in carrying ſuch articles to trade with. Though the poſts of this houſe were judged to be brought here, the people ſeemed to have a taſte for carving, as their boats, paddles, and tops of walking-ſticks evince. Their favourite figure is a volute, or ſpiral, which is ſometimes ſingle, double, and triple, and is done with great exactneſs, though the only inſtruments we ſaw were, an axe made of ſtone, and a chiſſel. Their taſte, however, is extremely whimſical. Their huts are built under trees, their form is an oblong ſquare; the door low on the ſide, and the windows are at the ends; reeds covered with thatch compoſe the walls; the beams of the eaves, which come to the ground, are covered with thatch: moſt of the houſes had been deſerted, through fear of the Engliſh, upon their landing. There are many beautiful parrots, and great numbers of birds of different kinds, particularly one whoſe note reſembles the European black-bird; but here is no ground-fowl, or poultry, nor any quadrupeds, except rats and dogs, and theſe were not numerous. The dogs are conſidered as delicate food, and their ſkins ſerve for ornaments to their apparel. There is a great variety of fiſh in the bay; ſhell and cray-fiſh (ſome of which weigh near 12 pounds) are very plentiful.

Sunday, October 29th, we ſet ſail from this bay. It is ſituate in latitude 38 deg. 22 min. S. four leagues to the N. of Gable End Foreland: there are two high rocks at the entrance of the bay, which form a cove very good for procuring wood and water. There is a high rocky iſland off the N. point of the bay, which affords good anchorage, having a fine ſandy bottom, and from 7 to 13 fathom water, and is likewiſe ſheltered from all but the N. E. wind. We obtained nothing here in trade but ſome ſweet potatoes, and a little fiſh. This is a very hilly country, though it preſents the eye with an agreeable verdure, various woods, and many ſmall plantations. Mr. Banks found a great number of trees in the woods, quite unknown to Europeans; the fire-wood reſembled the maple-tree, and produced a gum of whitiſh colour; other trees yielded a gum of a deep yellow green. Notwithſtanding the ſoil appears very proper for producing every ſpecies of vegetables, their only roots were yams and ſweet potatoes.

On Monday the 30th, ſailing to the northward, we fell in with a ſmall iſland about a mile diſtant from the N. E. point of the main, and this being the moſt eaſtern part of it, the captain named it Eaſt Cape, and the iſland Eaſt Iſland; it was but ſmall, and appeared barren. The cape is in latitude 37 deg. 42 min. 30 ſec. S. There are many ſmall bays from Tolaga Bay to Eaſt Cape. Having doubled the cape, many villages preſented themſelves to view, and the adjacent land appeared cultivated. This evening Lieut. Hicks diſcovered a bay, to which his name was given.

On the 31ſt, about nine, ſeveral canoes came off from ſhore with a number of armed men, who appeared to have hoſtile intentions. Before theſe had reached the ſhip, another canoe, larger than any that had yet been ſeen, full of armed Indians, came off, and made towards the Endeavour with great expedition. The captain now judging it expedient to prevent, if poſſible, their attacking him, ordered a gun to be fired over their heads: this not producing the deſired effect, another gun was fired with ball, which threw them into ſuch conſternation, that they immediately returned much faſter than they came. This precipitate retreat induced the captain to give the cape, off which it happened, the name of Cape Runaway; it lies in latitude 37 deg. 32 min. S. and longitude 181 deg. 48 min. W. We alſo found that the land, which during this day's run appeared like an iſland, was one, and we named the ſame White Iſland.

On the 1ſt of November, at day-break, not leſs than between 40 and 50 canoes were ſeen, ſeveral of which came off as before, threatening to attack the Engliſh. One of their chiefs flouriſhed his pike, and made ſeveral harangues, ſeeming to bid defiance to thoſe on board the veſſel. At laſt, after repeated invitations, they came cloſe along-ſide; but inſtead of ſhewing a diſpoſition to trade, the haranguing chief uttered a ſentence, and took up a ſtone, which he threw againſt the ſhip, and immediately after they ſeized their arms. They were informed by Tupia, of the dreadful conſequences of commencing hoſtilities; but this admonition they ſeemed little to regard. A piece of cloth, however, happening to attract their eyes, they began to be more mild and reaſonable. A quantity of cray-fiſh, muſcles, and conger-eels was now purchaſed. No fraud was attempted by this company of Indians, but ſome others that came after them took goods from the veſſel without making proper returns. As one of them that had rendered himſelf remarkable for theſe practices, and ſeemed proud of his ſkill in them, was putting off with his canoe, a muſquet was fired over his head, which circumſtance produced good order for the preſent: yet when theſe ſavages began to traffic with the ſailors, they renewed their frauds, and one of them was bold enough to ſeize ſome linen that was hung to dry, and run away with it. In order to induce him to return, a muſquet was firſt fired over his head, but this not anſwering the end, he was ſhot in the back with ſmall ſhot, yet he ſtill perſevered in his deſign. This being perceived by his countrymen, they dropt a-ſtern, and ſet up the ſong of defiance. In conſequence of their behaviour, though they made no preparations to attack the veſſel, the captain gave orders to fire a four-pounder, which paſſed over them; but its effect on the water terrified them ſo much, that they retreated to the ſhore with the utmoſt precipitation.

In the afternoon, about two o'clock, we diſcovered a pretty high iſland to the weſtward. Some time after perceiving other rocks and iſlands in the ſame quarter, but not being able to weather them before night came on, we bore up between them and the main land. In the evening a double canoe, built after the ſame faſhion as thoſe of Otaheite, came up, when Tupia entered into a friendly converſation with the Indians, and was told that the iſland, cloſe to which we lay, was called Mowtohora. It was but a few miles from the main land, pretty high, but of no great extent. We imagined the diſpoſition of the Indians, from their talk with Tupia, to be in our favour, but when it was dark they began their uſual ſalute, by pouring a volley of ſtones into the ſhip, and then retreated. S. W. by W. of this iſland, upon the main land, and in the centre of a large plain, is a high circular mountain, to which we gave the name of Mount Edgecumbe. It is very conſpicuous, and is ſeated in latitude 37 deg. 59 min. longitude 193 deg. 7 min.

On the 2d, in the morning, a number of canoes appeared, and one, which proved to be the ſame that had pelted us the night before, came up. After converſing with Tupia, and behaving peaceably about an hour, they complimented us with another volley of ſtones. We returned the ſalute by firing a muſket, which made them inſtantly take to their paddles. Between ten and eleven we ſailed between a low flat iſland and the main land. The laſt appeared to be of a moderate height, but level, full of plantations and villages. The villages were upon the high land next the ſea, more extenſive than any we had ſeen, and ſurrounded by a ditch, and a bank with rails on the top of it. There were ſome incloſures that reſembled forts, and the whole had the appearance of being tolerably well defended.

On the 3d we paſſed the night near a ſmall iſland, which Capt. Cook named the Mayor; and at ſeven in the morning, diſtant from hence about ſix leagues, we diſcovered a cluſter of ſmall iſlands, which we called the Court of Aldermen. Theſe were twelve miles from the main, between which were other ſmall iſlands, moſtly barren, but very high. The aſpect of the main land was now much changed, the ſoil appearing to be barren, and the country very thinly inhabited. The chief who governs the diſtrict from Cape Turnagain to this coaſt was named Teratu. In the afternoon three canoes, built differently from thoſe already mentioned, came along-ſide the Endeavour. They were formed of the trunks of whole trees, rendered hollow by burning; but they were not carved, nor in any manner ornamented. We now ſailed towards an inlet that had been diſcovered, and having anchored in ſeven fathom water, the ſhip was ſoon ſurrounded by a number of canoes, and the people on board them did not ſeem diſpoſed for ſome time to commit any acts of hoſtility. A bird being ſhot by one of our crew, ſome Indians, without ſhewing any ſurpriſe, brought it on board; and, for their civility, the captain gave them a piece of cloth. But this favour operated upon them in a different manner than was expected; for, when it was dark, they begun a ſong of defiance, and endeavoured to carry off the buoy of the anchor; and notwithſtanding ſome muſkets were fired at them, they ſeemed rather to be irritated than frightened. They even threatened to return the next morning: on Sunday night eleven of them were ſeen, but when they found the ſhip's crew were upon their guard, they immediately retired.

At day-break on the 4th about twelve canoes made their appearance, containing near 200 men, armed with ſpears, lances, and ſtones, who ſeemed determined to attack the ſhip, and would have boarded her, had they known on what quarter they could beſt have made their attack. While they were paddling round her, which kept the crew upon the watch in the rain, Tupia, at the requeſt of the captain, uſed a number of diſſuaſive arguments, to prevent their carrying their apparent deſigns into execution; but we could only pacify them by the fire of our muſkets: they then laid aſide their hoſtile intentions, and began to trade; yet they could not refrain from their fraudulent practices, for after they had fairly bartered two of their weapons, they would not deliver up a third, for which they had received cloth, and only laughed at thoſe who demanded an equivalent. The offender was wounded with ſmall ſhot; but his countrymen took not the leaſt notice of him, and continued to trade without any diſcompoſure. When another canoe was ſtruck for their mal-practices, the natives behaved in the ſame manner; but if a round was fired over or near them, they all paddled away. Thus we found that theft and chicane were as prevalent among the inhabitants of New Zealand as thoſe of Otaheite. In ſearching for an anchoring place, the captain ſaw a fortified village upon a high point, and having fixed upon a proper ſpot, he returned; upon which we weighed, run in nearer to the ſhore, and caſt anchor upon a ſandy bottom, in four fathom and a half water. The S. point of the bay bore due E. diſtant one mile, and a river diſtant a mile and a half, which the boats can enter at low water S. S. E.

On the 5th, in the morning, the Indians came off to the ſhip again, who behaved much better than they had done the preceding day. An old man in particular, named Tojava, teſtified his prudence and honeſty, to whom, and a friend with him, the captain preſented ſome nails, and two pieces of Engliſh cloth. Tojava informed us, that they were often viſited by free-booters from the north, who ſtripped them of all they could lay their hands on, and at times made captives of their wives and children; and that being ignorant who the Engliſh were upon their firſt arrival, the natives had been much alarmed, but were now ſatisfied of their good intentions. He added, that for their ſecurity againſt thoſe plunderers, their houſes were built contiguous to the tops of the rocks, where they could better defend themſelves. Probably their poverty and miſery may be aſcribed to the ravages of thoſe who frequently ſtripped them of every neceſſary of life. Having diſpatched the long-boat and pinnace into the bay to haul and dredge for fiſh, but with little ſucceſs, the Indians on the banks teſtified their friendſhip by every poſſible means. They brought us great quantities of fiſh dreſſed and dried, which, though indifferent, we purchaſed, that trade might not be diſcouraged. They alſo ſupplied us with wood and good water. While we were out with our guns, the people who ſtaid by the boats ſaw two of the natives fight. The battle was begun with their lances; but ſome old men taking theſe away, they were obliged to decide the quarrel, like Engliſhmen, with their fiſts. For ſome time they boxed with great vigour and perſeverance, but at length they all retired behind a little hill, ſo that our people were prevented from ſeeing the iſſue of the combat. At this time the Endeavour was heeled, and her bottom ſcrubbed in the bay, as ſhe was very foul.

On the 8th we were viſited by ſeveral canoes, in one of which was Tojava, who, deſcrying two canoes, haſtened back again to the ſhore, apprehending they were freebooters; but, finding his miſtake, he ſoon returned; and the Indians ſupplied us with as much excellent fiſh as ſerved the whole ſhip's company. This day a variety of ſtrange plants were collected by Mr. Banks and Dr. Solander. They ſtaid on ſhore till near dark, when they obſerved how the natives diſpoſed of themſelves during the night. They had no ſhelter but a few ſhrubs. The men lay neareſt the ſea; and the women and children moſt diſtant from it.

On the 9th, early in the morning, the Indians brought in their canoes a prodigious quantity of mackrel, of which one ſort were exactly the ſame with thoſe caught in England. They ſold them at a low rate, and they were not leſs welcome to us on that account. Theſe canoes were ſucceeded by others equally loaded with the ſame ſort of fiſh; and the cargoes purchaſed were ſo great, that every one of the ſhip's company who could get ſalt cured as many as would ſerve him for a month's proviſion. The Indians frequently reſort to the bay in parties to gather ſhell-fiſh, of which it affords an incredible plenty. Indeed wherever we went, whether on the hills or through the vales, in the woods or on the plains, we ſaw many waggon loads of ſhells in heaps, ſome of which appeared freſh, others very much decayed.

As this was a very clear day, Mr. Green, the aſtronomer, landed with other gentlemen to obſerve the tranſit of Mercury. The obſervation of the ingreſs was made by Mr. Green alone, and Capt. Cook took the ſun's altitude to aſcertain the time. While the obſervation was making, a canoe, with various commodities on board, came along-ſide the ſhip; and Mr. Gore, the officer who had then the command, being deſirous of encouraging them to traffic, produced a piece of Otaheitean cloth, of more value than any they had yet ſeen; which was immediately ſeized by one of the Indians, who obſtinately refuſed either to return it, or give any thing in exchange: he paid dearly however for his temerity, being ſhot dead on the ſpot. The death of this young Indian alarmed all the reſt; they fled with great precipitancy, and for the preſent could not be induced to renew their traffic with the Engliſh. But when the Indians on ſhore had heard the particulars related by Tojava, who greatly condemned the conduct of the deceaſed, they ſeemed to think that he had merited his fate. His name was Otirreeonooe. This tranſaction happened, as has been mentioned, whilſt the obſervation was making of the tranſit of Mercury, when the weather was ſo favourable, that the whole tranſit was viewed without a cloud intervening. The tranſit commenced 7 hours, 20 min. 58 ſec. By Mr. Green's obſervation, the internal contact was at 12 hours, 8 min. 57 ſec. the external at 12 hours, 9 min. 55 ſec. the latitude 30 deg. 48 min. 5 ſec. We called this Mercury Bay, in conſequence of this obſervation having been made here.

On the 10th the captain, Mr. Banks, and Dr. Solander, went in boats to inſpect a large river that runs into the bay. They found it broader ſome miles within than at the mouth, and interſected into a number of ſtreams by ſeveral ſmall iſlands, which were covered with trees. On the E. ſide of the river the gentlemen ſhot ſome ſhags, which proved very good eating. The ſhore abounded with fiſh of various kinds, ſuch as cockles, clams, and oyſters; and here were alſo ducks, ſhags, and curlieus, with other wild fowl in great plenty. At the mouth of the river there was good anchorage in five fathom water. The gentlemen were received with great hoſpitality by the inhabitants of a little village on the E. ſide of the river. There are there the remains of a fort called Eppah, on a peninſula that projects into the river, and it was calculated for defending a ſmall number againſt a greater force. From the remains, it nevertheleſs ſeemed to have been taken, and partly deſtroyed. The Indians ſup before ſun-ſet, when they eat fiſh and birds baked or roaſted; they roaſt them upon a ſtick ſtuck in the ground near the fire, and bake them in the manner the dog was baked which the gentlemen eat at George's Iſland. A female mourner was preſent at one of their ſuppers; ſhe was ſeated upon the ground, and wept inceſſantly, at the ſame time repeating ſome ſentences in a doleful manner, but which Tupia could not explain: at the termination of each period ſhe cut herſelf with a ſhell upon her breaſt, her hands, or her face. Notwithſtanding this bloody ſpectacle greatly affected the gentlemen preſent, yet all the Indians who ſat by her, except one, were quite unmoved. The gentlemen ſaw ſome, who from the depth of their ſcars muſt, upon theſe occaſions, have wounded themſelves in a moſt violent manner.

A great number of oyſters were procured from a bed which had been diſcovered, and they proved exceedingly good. Next day the ſhip was viſited by two canoes, with unknown Indians; after ſome invitation they came on board, and they all trafficked without any fraud. Two fortified villages being deſerted, the captain, with Mr. Banks, and Dr. Solander, went to examine them. The ſmalleſt was romantically ſituated upon a rock, which was arched; this village did not conſiſt of above five or ſix houſes, fenced round. There was but one path, which was very narrow, that conducted to it. The gentlemen were invited by the inhabitants to pay them a viſit; but not having time to ſpare, took another route, after having made preſents to the females. A body of men, women, and children, now approached the gentlemen; theſe proved to be the inhabitants of another town, which they propoſed viſiting. They gave many teſtimonies of their friendly diſpoſitions; among others they uttered the word Heromai, which according to Tupia's interpretation implied peace, and appeared much ſatisfied when informed the gentlemen intended viſiting their habitations. Their town was called Wharretouwa. It is ſeated on a point of land over the ſea, on the north ſide of the bay, and was pailed round, and defended by a double ditch. Within the ditch a ſtage is erected, for defending the place in caſe of an attack: near this ſtage quantities of darts and ſtones are depoſited, that they may always be in readineſs to repel the aſſailants. There is another ſtage, to command the path that leads to the town; and there were ſome out-works. The place ſeemed calculated to hold out a conſiderable time againſt an enemy armed with no other weapons than thoſe of the Indians. It appeared, however, deficient in water for holding out a ſiege. Inſtead of bread, they had fern root, which was here in great plenty, with dried fiſh. Very little of the land was cultivated, and ſweet potatoes and yams were the only vegetables to be found. There are two rocks near the fort of this fortification, both ſeparated from the main land; they are very ſmall, nevertheleſs they are not without dwelling-houſes and little fortifications. In their engagements, theſe Indians throw ſtones with their hands, being deſtitute of a ſling, and thoſe and lances are their only miſſile weapons: they have, beſides the patoo-patoo, already deſcribed, a ſtaff about five feet in length, and another ſhorter.

On the 15th we ſailed from this bay, after having taken poſſeſſion of it in the name of the king of Great Britain. Tojava, who viſited us in his canoe juſt before our departure, ſaid, he ſhould prepare to retire to his fort as ſoon as the Engliſh were gone, as the relations of Otirreeonooe had threatened to take his life, as a forfeit for that of the deceaſed, Tojava being judged partial in this affair to the Engliſh.

A number of iſlands of different ſizes appeared towards the N. W. which were named Mercury Iſlands: Mercury Bay lies in latitude 36 deg. 47 min. S. longitude 184 deg. 4 min. W. and has a ſmall entrance at its mouth. On account of the number of oyſters found in the river, the captain gave it the name of Oyſter River: Mangrove River (which the captain ſo called from the great number of thoſe trees that grew near it) is the moſt ſecure place for ſhipping, being at the head of the bay. The N. W. ſide of this bay and river appeared much more fertile than the E. ſide. The inhabitants, though numerous, have no plantations: their canoes are very indifferently conſtructed, and are not ornamented at all. They lie under continual apprehenſions of Terratu, being conſidered by him as rebels. There is a quantity of ſhore iron ſand on this coaſt, which is brought down from the country by a rivulet, and which ſufficiently demonſtrates that there are mines of metal there.

In the morning of the 18th we ſteered between the main and an iſland, which ſeemed very fertile, and as extenſive as Ulietea. Several canoes filled with Indians, came along-ſide here, and the Indians ſang their war ſong, but the Endeavour's people paying them no attention, they threw a volley of ſtones, and then paddled away; however they preſently returned their inſults. Tupia ſpoke to them, making uſe of his old arguments, that inevitable deſtruction would enſue if they perſiſted; they anſwered by brandiſhing their weapons, intimating, that if the Engliſh durſt come on ſhore, they would deſtroy them all. Tupia ſtill continued in expoſtulating with them, but to no purpoſe; and they ſoon gave another volley of ſtones; but upon a muſquet being fired at one of their boats, they made a precipitate retreat. We caſt anchor in 23 fathom water in the evening, and early the next morning failed up an inlet. Soon after two canoes came off, and ſome of the Indians came on board: they knew Tojava very well, and called Tupia by his name. Having received from us ſome preſents, they retired peaceably, and apparently highly gratified.

On Monday the 20th, after having run five leagues from the place where we had anchored the night before, we came to anchor in a bay called by the natives Ooahaouragee. Capt. Cook, Mr. Banks, Dr. Solander, and others ſet off in the pinnace to examine the bottom of the bay, and found the inlet end of a river, about nine miles above the ſhip. We entered into the ſame with the firſt of the flood, and before we had proceeded three miles, the water was perfectly freſh. Here we ſaw an Indian town, built upon a ſmall dry ſand-bank, and entirely ſurrounded by a deep mud; the inhabitants of which with much cordiality invited us to land, and gave us a moſt friendly reception. We were now fourteen miles up the river, and finding little alteration in the face of the country, we landed on the weſt ſide to examine the lofty trees which adorned its banks, and were of a kind that we had not ſeen before. At the entrance of a wood we met with one ninety-eight feet high from the ground, quite ſtrait, and nineteen feet in circumference; and as we advanced we found others ſtill larger. The wood of theſe trees is very heavy, not fit for maſts, but would make exceeding fine planks. Our carpenter, who was with us, obſerved, that the timber reſembled that of the pitch pine which is lightened by tapping. There were alſo trees of other kinds, all unknown to us, ſpecimens of which we brought away. We reimbarked about three o'clock with the firſt of the ebb, and Capt. Cook gave to the river the name of Thames, it having a reſemblance to the river of that name in England. It is not ſo deep, but it is as broad as the Thames is at Greenwich, and the tide of flood is as ſtrong. On the evening of the 21ſt we reached the ſhip, all extremely tired, but happy at being on board.

On the 22d, early in the morning, we made ſail, and kept plying till the flood obliged us once more to come to an anchor. The Captain and Dr. Solander went on ſhore to the weſt, but made no obſervations worth relating. After theſe gentlemen departed, the ſhip was ſurrounded with canoes, which kept Mr. Banks on board, that he might trade with the Indians, who bartered their arms and cloaths for paper, taking no unfair advantages. But though they were in general honeſt in their dealings, one of them took a fancy to a half minute glaſs, and being detected in ſecreting the ſame, it was reſolved to give him a ſmatch of the cat-o'nine-tails. The Indians interfered to ſtop the current of juſtice; but being oppoſed they got their arms from their canoes, and ſome of the people in them attempted to get on board. Mr. Banks and Tupia now coming upon deck, the Indians applied to Tupia, who informed them of the nature of the offender's intended puniſhment, and that he had no influence over Mr. Hicks, the commanding officer. They appeared ſatisfied, and the criminal received not only a dozen, but afterwards a good drubbing from an old man, who was thought to be his father. The canoes immediately went off, the Indians ſaying, they ſhould be afraid to return again on board. Tupia, however, brought them back, but they ſeemed to have loſt that confidence which they before repoſed in us. Their ſtay was ſhort, and after their departure we ſaw them not again, though they had promiſed to return with ſome fiſh.

On the 23d, the weather ſtill continuing unfavourable, and the wind contrary, we kept plying down the river, anchoring between the tides; and at the north-weſt extremity of the Thames, we paſſed a point of land which the captain called Point Rodney; and another, at the north-eaſt extremity, when we entered the bay, he named Cape Colville, in honour of Lord Colville. Not being able to approach land, we had but a diſtant view of the main for a courſe of near thirty miles. Under the name of the river Thames, the captain comprehended the whole bay. Cape Colville is to be diſtinguiſhed by a high rock, and lies in 36 deg. 26 min. of ſouth latitude, and 194 deg. 27 min. weſt longitude. The Thames runs ſouth by eaſt from the ſouthern point of the cape. In ſome parts it is three leagues over, for about fourteen leagues, after which it becomes narrower. In ſome parts of the bay the water is 26 fathoms deep; the depth diminiſhes gradually, and in general the anchorage is good. To ſome iſlands that ſhelter it from the ſea Captain Cook gave the name of Barrier Iſlands; they ſtretch north-weſt and ſouth-eaſt ten leagues. The country ſeemed to be thinly inhabited; the natives are well made, ſtrong, and active; their bodies are painted with red ochre, and their canoes, which are well conſtructed, were ornamented with carved work.

On the 24th, we continued ſteering along the ſhore between the iſlands and the main; and in the evening anchored in an open bay, in about fourteen fathom water. Here we caught a large number of fiſh of the ſcienne, or bream kind, enough to ſupply the whole ſhip's company with proviſion for two days. From our ſucceſs Capt. Cook named this place Bream Bay, and the extreme points at the north end of the bay he called Bream Head. Several pointed rocks ſtand in a range upon the top of it, and ſome ſmall iſlands which lie before it were called the Hen and Chickens. It is ſituated in latitude 35 deg. 46 min. ſeventeen leagues north-weſt of Cape Colville. There is an extent of land, of about thirty miles, between Point Rodney and Bream Head, woody and low. No inhabitants were viſible; but from the fires perceived at night, we concluded it was inhabited.

On the 25th, early in the morning, we left the bay, and continued our courſe ſlowly to the northward; at noon our latitude was 36 deg. 36 min. ſouth, and we ſaw ſome iſlands which we named the Poor Knights, at north-eaſt by north, diſtant three leagues; the northernmoſt land in ſight bore N. N. W. we were now at the diſtance of two miles from the ſhore, and had twenty-ſix fathom water. Upon the iſlands were a few towns that appeared fortified, and the land round them ſeemed well inhabited.

On the 26th, towards night, ſeven large canoes came off to us, with about two hundred men. Some of the Indians came on board, and let us know, that they had an account of our arrival. Theſe were followed by two larger canoes, adorned with carving. The Indians, after having held a conference, came a-long ſide of the veſſel. They were armed with various weapons, and ſeemed to be of the higher order. Their patoo-patoos were made of ſtone and whale-bone, ornamented with dog's hair, and were held in high eſtimation. Their complexion was darker than that of thoſe to the ſouth, and their faces were ſtained with amoco. They were given to pilfering, of which one of them gave an inſtance pretending to barter a piece of talc, wrought into the ſhape of an axe, for a piece of cloth; nor was he diſpoſed to fulfil his agreement, till we compelled him to do it, by firing a muſquet over his head, which brought him back to the ſhip, and he returned the cloth. At three in the afternoon we paſſed a remarkable high point of land, bearing weſt, and it was called Cape Brett, in honour of Sir Piercy Brett. At the point of this cape is a round high hillock, and north-eaſt by north, diſtant about a mile, is a curious arched rock, like that which has been already deſcribed. This cape, or at leaſt part of it, is called by the natives Motugogo, and lies in 35 deg. 10 min. 30 ſec. ſouth latitude, and in 185 deg. 23 min. weſt longitude. To the ſouth-weſt by weſt is a bay, in which is many ſmall iſlands, and the point at the north-weſt entrance the Captain named Point Pococke. There are many villages on the main as well as on the iſlands, which appeared well inhabited, and ſeveral canoes filled with Indians made to the ſhip, and in the courſe of bartering, ſhewed the ſame inclination to defraud as their neighbours. Theſe Indians were ſtrong and well proportioned; their hair black, and tied up in a bunch ſtuck with feathers: their chiefs had garments made of fine cloth, decorated with dog's-ſkin; and they were tattaowed like thoſe who had laſt appeared.

On the 27th, at eight in the morning, we found ourſelves within a mile of many ſmall iſlands, laying cloſe under the main, at the diſtance of twenty-two miles from Cape Brett. Here we lay about two hours, during which time ſeveral canoes came off from the iſlands, which we called Cavalles, the name of ſome fiſh which we purchaſed of the Indians. Theſe people were very inſolent, uſing many frantic geſtures, and pelting us with ſtones. Nor did they give over their inſults, till ſome ſmall ſhot hit one who had a ſtone in his hand. A general terror was now ſpread among them, and they all made a very precipitate retreat. For ſeveral days the wind was ſo very unfavourable, that the veſſel rather loſt than gained ground.

On the 29th, having weathered Cape Brett, we bore away to leeward, and got into a large bay, where we anchored on the ſouth-weſt ſide of ſeveral iſlands, and ſuddenly came into four fathoms and a half water. Upon ſounding, we found we had got upon a bank, and accordingly weighed and dropped over it, and anchored again in ten fathoms and a half, after which we were ſurrounded by thirty-three large canoes, containing near three hundred Indians, all armed. Some of them were admitted on board, and Captain Cook gave a piece of broad cloth to one of the chiefs, and ſome ſmall preſents to the other. They traded peaceably for ſome time, being terrified at the fire-arms, with the effects of which they were not unacquainted; but whilſt the Captain was at dinner, on a ſignal given by one of the chiefs, all the Indians quitted the ſhip, and attempted to tow away the buoy; a muſquet was now fired over them, but it produced no effect; ſmall ſhot was then fired at them, but it did not reach them. A muſquet loaded with ball, was therefore ordered to be fired, and Otegoowgoow (ſon of one of the chiefs) was wounded in the thigh by it, which induced them immediately to throw the buoy overboard. To complete their confuſion, a round ſhot was fired, which reached the ſhore, and as ſoon as they landed, they ran in ſearch of it. If theſe Indians had been under any kind of military diſcipline, they might have proved a much more formidable enemy; but acting thus, without any plan or regulation, they only expoſed themſelves to the annoyance of the fire-arms, whilſt they could not poſſibly ſucceed in any of their deſigns. The Captain, Mr. Banks, and Dr. Solander, landed upon the iſland, and the Indians in the canoes ſoon after came on ſhore. The gentlemen were in a ſmall cove, and were preſently ſurrounded by near 400 armed Indians; but the Captain not ſuſpecting any hoſtile deſign on the part of the natives, remained peaceably diſpoſed. The gentlemen, marching towards them, drew a line, intimating that they were not to paſs it: they did not infringe upon this boundary for ſome time; but at length, they ſang the ſong of defiance, and began to dance, whilſt a party attempted to draw the Endeavour's boat on ſhore; theſe ſignals for an attack being immediately followed by the Indians breaking in upon the line, the gentlemen judged it time to defend themſelves, and accordingly the Captain fired his muſquet, loaded with ſmall ſhot, which was ſeconded by Mr. Banks's diſcharging his piece, and two of the men followed his example. This threw the Indians into confuſion, and they retreated, but were rallied again by one of the chiefs, who ſhouted and waved his patoo-patoo. The Doctor now pointed his muſquet at this hero, and hit him: this ſtopped his career, and he took to flight with the other Indians. They retired to an eminence in a collected body, and ſeemed dubious whether they ſhould return to the charge. They were now at too great a diſtance for a ball to reach them, but theſe operations being obſerved from the ſhip, ſhe brought her broadſide to bear, and by firing over them, ſoon diſperſed them. The Indians had in their ſkirmiſh two of their people wounded, but none killed: peace being thus reſtored, the gentlemen began to gather celery and other herbs, but ſuſpecting that ſome of the natives were lurking about with evil deſigns, they repaired to a cave, which was at a ſmall diſtance. Here they found the chief, who had that day received a preſent from the Captain; he came forth with his wife and brother, and ſolicited their clemency. It appeared, that one of the wounded Indians was a brother of this chief, who was under great anxiety leſt the wound ſhould prove mortal; but his grief was in a great degree alleviated, when he was made acquainted with the different effects of ſmall ſhot and ball; he was at the ſame time aſſured, that upon any farther hoſtilities being committed, ball would be uſed. This interview terminated very cordially, after ſome trifling preſents were made to the chief and his companions. The prudence of the gentlemen cannot be much commended: for had theſe 400 Indians boldly ruſhed in upon them at once with their weapons, the muſquetry could have done very little execution; but ſuppoſing twenty or thirty of the Indians had been wounded, as it does not appear their pieces were loaded with ball, but only ſmall ſhot, there would have remained a ſufficient number to have maſſacred them, as it appears they do not give any quarter, and none could have been expected upon this occaſion. It is true, when the ſhip brought her broadſide to bear, ſhe might have made great havock amongſt the Indians; but this would have been too late to ſave the party on ſhore.—Being in their boats, the Engliſh rowed to another part of the ſame iſland, when landing, and gaining an eminence, they had a very agreeable and romantic view of a great number of ſmall iſlands, well inhabited and cultivated. The inhabitants of an adjacent town approached unarmed, and teſtified great humility and ſubmiſſion. Some of the party on ſhore who had been very violent for having the Indians puniſhed for their fraudulent conduct, were now guilty of treſpaſſes equally reprehenſible, having forced into ſome of the plantations, and dug up potatoes. The Captain, upon this occaſion, ſhewed ſtrict juſtice in puniſhing each of the offenders with twelve laſhes: one of them being very refractory upon this occaſion, and complaining of the hardſhip, thinking an Engliſhman had a right to plunder an Indian with impunity, received ſix additional laſhes for his reward.

On the 30th, it being a dead calm, two boats were ſent to ſound the harbour; when many canoes came up and traded with great probity; the gentlemen went again on ſhore, and met with a very civil reception from the natives: and this friendly intercourſe continued all the time they remained in the bay, which was ſeveral days. Being upon a viſit to the old chief, he ſhewed them the inſtruments uſed in tattaowing, which were very like thoſe employed at Otaheite upon the like occaſion. They ſaw the man who had been wounded by the ball, when the attempt was made to carry off the ſhip's buoy; and though it had gone through the fleſhy part of his arm, it did not ſeem to give him the leaſt pain or uneaſineſs.

On Tueſday, the 5th of December, in the morning, we weighed anchor, but were ſoon becalmed, and a ſtrong current ſetting towards the ſhore, we were driven in with ſuch rapidity, that we expected every moment to be run upon the breakers, which appeared above water not more than a cable's length diſtance, and we were ſo near the land, that Tupia, who was totally ignorant of the danger, held a converſation with the Indians, who were ſtanding on the beach. We were happily relieved, however, from this alarming ſituation,

tion by a freſh breeze ſuddenly ſpringing up from the ſhore. The bay which we had left was called the Bay of Iſlands, on account of the numerous iſlands it contains; we caught but few fiſh while we lay there, but procured great plenty from the natives, who were extremely expert in fiſhing, and diſplayed great ingenuity in the form of their nets, which were made of a kind of graſs; they were two or three hundred fathoms in length, and remarkably ſtrong, and they have them in ſuch plenty that it is ſcarcely poſſible to go a hundred yards without meeting with numbers lying in heaps. Theſe people did not appear to be under the government of any particular chief or ſovereign, and they ſeemed to live in a perfect ſtate of friendſhip, notwithſtanding their villages were fortified. According to their obſervations upon the tides, the flood comes from the ſouth, and there is a current from the weſt.

On the 7th of December, being Thurſday, ſeveral obſervations of the ſun and moon were made, whereby we found our latitude to be 185 deg. 36 min. weſt. In the afternoon we were cloſe under the Cavalles. Several canoes put off and followed the Endeavour, but a light breeze ſpringing up, we did not wait for them. The next morning, being the 8th, at ten o'clock we tacked and ſtood in for the ſhore, from which we were diſtant nearly ſix leagues. By day-light on the 9th we were in with the land, about ſeven leagues to the weſtward of the Cavalles; and ſoon after came to a deep bay, which was named Doubtleſs Bay. The entrance thereto is formed by two points, diſtant from each other five miles, and which lie weſt north-weſt and eaſt ſouth-eaſt. The wind preventing us putting in here, we ſteered for the weſtermoſt land in ſight, and before we got the length of it, we were becalmed. During the calm we were viſited by ſeveral canoes; but the Indians having heard of our guns, were afraid to come on board; however we bought ſome of their fiſh, and learned from them, by the aſſiſtance of Tupia, that we were about two days ſail from a place called Moore Whennua, where the land changed its ſhape, and turning to the ſouth extended no more weſtward. This place was concluded to be the land diſcovered by Taſman, which he called Cape Maria Van Diemen. They alſo informed us, that to the north-north-weſt there was an extenſive country diſcovered by their anceſtors, which they named Ulimaroa, where the inhabitants lived upon hogs, called in their language Booah, the very name given them, by thoſe who inhabited the South-Sea Iſlands.

On Sunday the 10th, a breeze ſpringing up, we ſtood off to the north, and found by obſervation our latitude to be 34 deg. 44 min. ſouth. On the 11th, early in the morning the land, with which we ſtood in, appeared low and barren, but not deſtitute of inhabitants. It forms a peninſula, which the captain called Knuckle Point, and the bay that lies contiguous thereto he named Sandy Bay. In the middle of this is a high mountain, which we called Mount Camel, on account of its reſemblance to that animal. We ſaw one village on the weſt ſide of this mount, and another on the eaſt ſide. Several canoes put off but could not reach the ſhip, which tacked, and ſtood to the northward, till the afternoon of the 12th, when we ſtood to the north-eaſt. Towards night we were brought under double reefed topſails; and in the morning it was ſo tempeſtuous as to ſplit the main topſail and the fore mizen-top ſails. Early in the morning of the 14th we ſaw land to the ſouthward, at the diſtance of eight or nine leagues; and on the 15th we tacked and ſtood to the weſtward. On the 16th we diſcovered land from the maſt head, bearing ſouth-ſouth-weſt. On Sunday the 17th we tacked in thirty-five fathom, and found we had not gained one inch to windward the laſt twenty-four hours. We ſaw a point of land, the northern extremity of New Zealand, which Capt. Cook named North Cape. It lies in latitude 34 deg. 22 min. ſouth, and in 185 deg. 55 min. weſt longitude; we continued ſtanding off and on till the 23d, when about ſeven o'clock we diſcovered land bearing ſouth half eaſt.

On the 24th we ſaw the ſame land ſouth-eaſt by ſouth four leagues diſtant, which we judged to be the Iſlands of the Three Kings. The chief of theſe is in latitude 34 deg. 12 min. ſouth, and 187 deg. 48 min. weſt longitude, and diſtant about 14 and 15 leagues from North Cape. Mr. Banks went out in the long-boat and ſhot ſome birds that nearly reſembled geeſe, and they were very good eating. On Chriſtmas-day, December the 25th, we tacked, and ſtood to the ſouthward. On the 26th we had no land in ſight, and were twenty leagues to the weſtward of North Cape. At mid-night we tacked and ſtood to the northward. On the 27th it blew a ſtorm from the eaſt, accompanied with heavy ſhowers of rain, which compelled us to bring the ſhip to, under her mainſail. The gale continued till Thurſday the 28th, when it fell about two o'clock in the morning: but at eight increaſed to a hurricane, with a prodigious ſea. At noon the gale ſomewhat abated, but we had ſtill heavy ſqualls. On the 29th in the evening, we wore and ſtood to the north-weſt. On Saturday the 30th, we ſaw land bearing north-eaſt, which we concluded to be Maria Van Diemen; and it correſponded with the account we had received of it from the Indians. We wore at mid-night, and ſtood to the ſouth-eaſt. On the 31ſt we tacked at ſeven in the evening, and ſtood to the weſtward. We were now diſtant from the neareſt land about three leagues, and had ſomewhat more than forty fathom water.

CHAP. VII.

The Endeavour continues her voyage, January the 1ſt 1770, round North Cape to Queen Charlotte's Sound—That part of the coaſt deſcribed—Tranſactions in the ſound—She ſails between two iſlands, and returns to Cape Turnagain—A ſhocking cuſtom of the inhabitants—A viſit to a Hippah, and other remarkable particulars—The circum-navigation of this country completed—The coaſt and Admiralty Bay deſcribed—The departure of the Endeavour from New Zealand, and other remarkable particulars—A deſcriptive account of New Zealand—Its firſt diſcovery by Taſman—Situation and productions—An account of the inhabitants—Their dreſs, ornaments, and manner of life—Their canoes, navigation, tillage, weapons, muſic, government, religion and language—The arguments in favour of a Southern Continent controverted.

A. D. 1770. JANUARY the 1ſt, on Monday at ſix in the morning, being New Year's Day, we tacked, and ſtood to the eaſtward. At noon we ſtood to the weſtward; found our latitude to be 34 deg. 37 min. ſouth; our diſtance from the Three Kings ten or eleven leagues; and from Cape Maria Van Diemen about four leagues and an half, in fifty-four fathom water. On the 3d we ſaw land; it was high and flat, trending away to the ſouth-eaſt, beyond the reach of the naked eye. It is remarkable, that at midſummer we met with a violent gale of wind, in latitude 35° ſouth; and that we were three weeks in getting ten leagues to the weſtward, and five weeks in getting fifty leagues, for at this time it was ſo long ſince we paſſed Cape Brett.

On the morning of the 4th we ſtood along ſhore. The coaſt appeared ſandy, barren, dreary, and inhoſpitable. Steering northward on the 6th we ſaw land again, which we ſuppoſed to be Cape Maria. On the 7th we had light breezes, and were at times becalmed, when we ſaw a ſun-fiſh, ſhort and thick, with two large fins, but ſcarcely any tail, reſembling a ſhark in colour and ſize. We continued ſteering eaſt till the 9th, when we were off a point of land, which Capt. Cook named Woody Head. From the ſouth-weſt we alſo ſaw a ſmall iſland, and called it Gannet Iſland. Another point, remarkably high to the eaſt-north-eaſt, the captain named Albatroſs Point; on the north ſide whereof a bay is formed, promiſing good anchorage. At about two or three leagues diſtance from Albatroſs Point, to the north-eaſt we diſcovered a remarkable high mountain, the peak of which is equal in height to that of Teneriffe. Its ſummit was covered with ſnow, and we gave it the name of Mount Egmont, in honour of the earl of that name. It lies in latitude 39 deg. 16 min. ſouth, and 185 deg. 15 min. weſt longitude. The country round it is exceeding pleaſant, having an agreeable verdure interſected with woods, and the coaſt forms an extenſive cape which Capt. Cook named Cape Egmont. To the north of this are two ſmall iſlands, in the form of a ſugar-loaf. This day being the 13th we had heavy ſhowers of rain, accompanied with thunder and lightening. We continued to ſteer along the ſhore at the diſtance of between two and three leagues, and between ſeven and eight had a tranſient view of Mount Edgcombe, which bore north-weſt diſtant about ten leagues.

On the 14th when ſailing ſouth-eaſt by ſouth, the coaſt ran more ſoutherly, and ſoon after five in the morning we ſaw land, for which we hauled up. At noon the north-weſt extremity bore ſouth 63 weſt; and ſome high land, in appearance an iſland, bore ſouth ſouth-eaſt, diſtant five leagues. We were now in a bay, and by obſervation in latitude 40 deg. 27 min. ſouth, longitude 184 deg. 39 min. weſt. In the evening, at eight o'clock, the land that bore ſouth 63 weſt, now bore north 59 weſt, diſtant ſeven leagues, and appeared like an iſland. Between this land and Cape Egmont lies the bay, on the weſt ſide of which we were at this time. The land here is high and beautifully variegated with hills and vales. At this place Capt. Cook propoſed to careen the ſhip, and to take in a freſh ſupply of wood and water. Accordingly,

On the 15th at day-break, we ſteered for an inlet, when, it being almoſt a calm, the ſhip was carried by a current, or the tide, within a cable's length of the ſhore; but by the aſſiſtance of the boats ſhe got clear. While effecting this, we ſaw a ſea-lion, anſwering the deſcription given of a male one in Commodore Anſon's voyages. About one o'clock in the afternoon we hauled round the ſouth-weſt point of the iſland, and the inhabitants of a village were immediately upon ſeeing us up in arms. At two we anchored in a very ſafe cove on the north-weſt ſide of the bay, and moored in eleven fathom water, with a ſoft ground. In paſſing the point of the bay we had obſerved an armed centinel on duty, who was twice relieved; and now four canoes came off, for the purpoſe, as we imagined, of reconnoitring; for none of the Indians would venture on board, except an old man who ſeemed of elevated rank. His countrymen expoſtulated with him, laid hold of him, and took great pains to prevent his coming abroad, but they could not divert him from his purpoſe. We received him with the utmoſt civility and hoſpitality. Tupia and the old man joined noſes, according to the cuſtom of the country, and having received ſeveral preſents, he retired to his aſſociates, who began to dance and laugh, and then retired to their fortified village. Whether their expreſſions of joy were tokens of enmity or friendſhip we could not determine, having ſeen them dance when inclined both to war and peace. Capt. Cook and other gentlemen now went on ſhore, at the bottom of the cove, where they met with plenty of wood, and a fine ſtream of excellent water, and on hauling the ſeine were very ſucceſsful, having caught three hundred weight of fiſh in a ſhort time, which was equally diſtributed among the ſhip's company.

On the 16th, at day-break we were employed in careening the bark, when three canoes came off with a great number of Indians, who brought ſeveral of their women with them, which circumſtance was thought to be a favourable preſage of their peaceable diſpoſition; but they ſoon convinced us of our miſtake, by attempting to ſtop the long boat; upon which Captain Cook had recourſe to the old expedient of firing ſhot over their heads, which intimidated them for the preſent; they ſoon gave freſh proofs of treacherous deſigns; for one of them ſnatched at ſome paper from our market-man, and miſſing it, put himſelf in a threatening attitude; whereupon ſome ſhot was fired, which wounded him in the knee; but Tupia ſtill continued converſing with his companions, making enquiries concerning their traditions reſpecting the antiquities of their country. He alſo aſked them, if they had ever before ſeen a ſhip as large as the Endeavour? to which they replied, that they had not, nor ever heard, that ſuch a veſſel had been on their coaſt, though Taſman certainly touched here, it being only four miles ſouth of Murderer's Bay. In all the coves of this bay we found plenty of cuttle-fiſh, breams, baracootas, gurnard, mackarel, dog-fiſh, ſoles, dabs, mullets, drums, ſcorpenas, or rock-fiſh, cole-fiſh, ſhags, chimeras, &c. The inhabitants catch their fiſh in the following manner. Their net is cylindrical, extended by ſeveral hoops at the bottom, and contracted at the top. The fiſh going in to feed upon the bait are caught in great abundance. In this iſland are birds of various kinds, and in great numbers, particularly parrots, wood pigeons, water hens, hawks, and many different ſinging birds. An herb, a ſpecies of Philadelphus, was uſed here inſtead of tea, and a plant called Teegoomme, reſembling rug-cloaks, ſerved the natives for garments. The environs of the cove where the Endeavour lay is covered entirely with wood, and the ſupple-jacks are ſo numerous, that it is with difficulty that paſſengers can purſue their way; here is a numerous ſand-fly, that is very diſagreeable. The tops of many hills were covered with fern. The air of the country is very moiſt, and has ſome qualities that promote putrefaction, as birds that have been ſhot but a few hours were found with maggots in them. The women who accompanied the men in their canoes, wore a head dreſs, which we had no where met with before; it was compoſed of black feathers, tied in a bunch on the top of the head, which greatly increaſed its height. The manner of their diſpoſing of their dead is very different to what is practiſed in their ſouthern iſlands, they tie a large ſtone to the body, and throw it into the ſea. We ſaw the body of a woman who had been diſpoſed of this way, but which, by ſome accident, had diſengaged itſelf from the ſtone, and was floating upon the water. The Captain, Mr. Banks, and the doctor viſited another cove, about two miles from the ſhip. There was a family of Indians who were greatly alarmed at the approach of theſe gentlemen, all running away except one; but upon Tupia's converſing with him, the others returned. They found, by the proviſions of this family, that they were cannibals, here being ſeveral human bones that had been lately dreſſed and picked, and it appeared that a ſhort time before, ſix of their enemies having fallen into their hands, they had killed four and eaten them, and that the other two were drowned in endeavouring to make their eſcape. They made no ſecret of this abominable cuſtom, but anſwered Tupia, who was deſired to aſcertain the fact, with great compoſure, that his conjectures were juſt, that they were the bones of a man, and teſtified by ſigns, that they thought human fleſh delicious food. Upon being aſked, Why they had not eaten the body of the woman that had been floating upon the water? they anſwered, She died of a diſorder, and that moreover ſhe was related to them, and they never ate any but their enemies. Upon Mr. Banks ſtill teſtifying ſome doubts concerning the fact, one of the Indians drew the bone of a man's arm through his mouth, and this gentleman had the curioſity to bring it away with him. There was a woman in this family whoſe arms and legs were cut in a ſhocking manner, and it appeared ſhe had thus wounded herſelf becauſe her huſband had lately been killed and eaten by the enemy. Some of the Indians brought four ſkulls one day to ſell, which they rated at a very high price. The brains had been taken out, and probably eaten, but the ſkull and hair remained. They ſeemed to have been dried by fire, in order to preſerve them from putrefaction. The gentlemen likewiſe ſaw the bail of a canoe, which was made of a human ſkull. On the whole, their ideas were ſo horrid and brutiſh, that they ſeemed to pride themſelves upon their cruelty and barbarity, and took a particular pleaſure in ſhewing the manner in which they killed their enemies; it being conſidered as very meritorious to be expert at this deſtruction. The method uſed was to knock them down with their patoo-patoos, and then rip up their bellies.

Great numbers of birds uſually begun their melody about two o'clock in the morning, and ſerenaded us till the time of our riſing. This harmony was very agreeable, as the ſhip lay at a convenient diſtance from the ſhore to hear it. Theſe feathered choriſters, like the Engliſh nightingales, never ſing in the day-time.

On the 17th, the ſhip was viſited by a canoe from the hippah, or village; it contained, among others, the aged Indian, of ſuperior diſtinction, who had firſt viſited the Engliſh upon their arrival. In a conference which Tupia had with him, he teſtified his apprehenſions, that their enemies would very ſoon viſit them, and repay the compliment, for killing and eating the four men. On the 18th, we received no viſit from the Indians; but going out in the pinnace to inſpect the bay, we ſaw a ſingle man in a canoe fiſhing, in the manner already deſcribed. It was remarkable, that this man did not pay the leaſt attention to the people in the pinnace, but continued to purſue his employment, even when we came along-ſide of him, without once looking at us. Some of the Endeavour's people being on ſhore, found three human hip-bones, cloſe to an oven; theſe were brought on board, as well as the hair of a man's head, which was found in a tree. The next day a forge was ſet up to repair the iron-work; and ſome Indians viſited the ſhip with plenty of fiſh, which they bartered very fairly for nails.

On the 20th, in the morning, Mr. Banks purchaſed of the old Indian a man's head, which he ſeemed very unwilling to part with; the ſkull had been fractured by a blow, and the brains were extracted, and, like the others, it was preſerved from putrefaction. From the care with which they kept theſe ſkulls, and the reluctance with which they bartered any, it was imagined they were conſidered as trophies of war, and teſtimonials of their valour. In this day's excurſion, we did not meet with a ſingle native; the ground on every ſide was quite uncultivated; but we diſcovered a very good harbour. The ſucceeding day, the ſhip's company were allowed to go on ſhore for their amuſement, and the gentlemen employed themſelves in fiſhing, in which they were very ſucceſsful. Some of the company in their excurſion met with fortifications that had not the advantage of an elevated ſituation, but were ſurrounded by two or three wide ditches, with a draw-bridge, ſuch as, though ſimple in its ſtructure, was capable of anſwering every purpoſe againſt the arms of the natives. Within theſe ditches is a fence, made with ſtakes, fixed in the earth. A deciſive conqueſt or victory over the beſieged, occaſions an entire depopulation of that diſtrict, as the vanquiſhed, not only thoſe who are killed, but the priſoners likewiſe, are devoured by the victors.

The 22d was employed by Mr. Banks and Dr. Solander, in collecting of plants, whilſt Captain Cook made ſome obſervations on the main land on the ſouth-eaſt ſide of the inlet, which conſiſted of a chain of high hills, and formed part of the ſouth-weſt ſide of the ſtrait; the oppoſite ſide extended far to the eaſt. He alſo diſcovered a village, and many houſes that had been deſerted, and another village that appeared to be inhabited. There were many ſmall iſlands round the coaſt that ſeemed entirely barren, and what few inhabitants were upon them lived principally upon fiſh. On the 24th, we viſited a hippah, which was ſituated on a very high rock, hollow underneath, forming a fine natural arch, one ſide of which joined to the land, and the other roſe out of the ſea. The inhabitants received us with great civility, and very readily ſhewed us every thing that was curious. This hippah was partly ſurrounded with palliſadoes, and it had a fighting ſtage, like that already deſcribed. Here we met with a croſs, reſembling a crucifix, which was erected as a monument for a deceaſed perſon; but could not learn how his body was diſpoſed of. From a converſation that Tupia had with theſe people, a diſcovery was made, that an officer being in a boat near this village, and ſome canoes coming off, made him imagine they had hoſtile deſigns, and he fired upon them with ball, which made them retire with much precipitation, but they could not effect their retreat, before one of them was wounded. What made this raſh action the more to be lamented was, that the Indians gave afterwards every poſſible aſſurance that their intentions upon this occaſion were entirely friendly.

On the 25th, the Captain, Mr. Banks, and Dr. Solander, went on ſhore to ſhoot, when they met with a numerous family, who were among the creeks catching fiſh: they behaved very civilly, and received ſome trifling preſents from the gentlemen, who were loaded by way of return with the kiſſes and embraces of both ſexes, young and old. The next day, being the 26th, they made another excurſion in the boat, in order to take a view of the ſtrait, that paſſes between the eaſtern and weſtern ſeas. To this end they attained the ſummit of a hill, but it being hazy in the horizon, they could ſee but to a ſmall diſtance to the eaſt; however, it was reſolved to explore the paſſage in the ſhip when they ſhould put to ſea. Before their departure from this hill, they erected a pyramid with ſtones, and left ſome muſquet-balls, ſmall ſhot and beads, that were likely to ſtand the teſt of time, and would be memorials, that this place had been viſited by Europeans. On our return, having deſcended the hill, we made a hearty meal of the ſhags and fiſh, procured by our guns and lines; and which were dreſſed by the boat's crew, in the place we had appointed. Here we were reſpectfully received by another Indian family, who added to their civilities ſtrong expreſſions of kindneſs and pleaſure. They ſhewed us where to get water, with every other office as was in their power. From hence we viſited another hippah, ſeated on a rock almoſt inacceſſible: it conſiſted of about 100 houſes, and a fighting ſtage. We made the friendly inhabitants ſome ſmall preſents of paper, beads, and nails, and they in return furniſhed us with dried fiſh. On the 27th and 28th, our company were engaged in making neceſſary repairs, catching fiſh, and getting the Endeavour ready to continue her voyage.

On Monday, the 29th, we were viſited by our old friend Topoa, in company with other Indians, from whom we heard, that the man who had received a wound near the hippah, was dead; but this report proved afterwards groundleſs; and we found that Topoa's diſcourſes were not always to be taken literally. During the time the bark was preparing for ſea, Mr. Banks and Dr. Solander often went on ſhore; but their walks were circumſcribed by the luxuriant climbers which filled up the ſpace between the trees, and rendered the woods impaſſable. Captain Cook alſo made ſeveral obſervations on the coaſt to the north-weſt, and perceived many iſlands, forming bays, in which there appeared to be good anchorage for ſhipping. He alſo erected another pyramid of ſtones, in which he put ſome bullets, &c. as before, with the addition of a piece of our ſilver coin, and placed part of an old pendant on the top, to diſtinguiſh it. Returning to the ſhip he met with many of the natives, of whom he purchaſed a ſmall quantity of fiſh.

On Tueſday, the 30th, ſome of our people, who were ſent out early in the morning to gather celery, met with about twenty Indians, among whom were five or ſix women, whoſe huſbands had lately been made captives. They ſat down upon the ground together, and cut many parts of their bodies in a moſt ſhocking manner, with ſhells, and ſharp pieces of talc or jaſper, in teſtimony of their exceſſive grief. But what made the horrid ſpectacle more terrible, was, that the male Indians who were with them, paid not the leaſt attention to it, but with the greateſt unconcern imaginable, employed themſelves in repairing their huts. This day the carpenter having prepared two poſts, they were ſet up as memorials, being inſcribed with the date of the year, the month, and the ſhip's name. One of them we erected at the watering-place, with the union-flag hoiſted upon the top; and the other in the iſland that lies neareſt the ſea, called by the natives Motuara; and the inhabitants, being informed that thoſe poſts were ſet up to acquaint other adventurers that the Endeavour had touched at this place, they promiſed never to deſtroy them. Capt. Cook then gave ſomething to every one preſent, and to Topoa our old friend, he preſented a ſilver three-pence, dated 1736, and ſome ſpike-nails which had the king's broad arrow cut deep upon them. After which he honoured this inlet with the name of Queen Charlotte's Sound; and at the ſame time took poſſeſſion of it, in the name and for the uſe of his preſent Majeſty. The whole of this day's buſineſs concluded with drinking a bottle of wine to the Queen's health. The bottle was given to the old man, who received the preſent with ſtrong ſigns of joy. We muſt not omit here to obſerve, that Topoa being queſtioned concerning a paſſage into the eaſtern ſea, anſwered, that there was certainly ſuch a paſſage. He alſo ſaid, that the land to the ſouth-weſt of the ſtrait, where we then were, conſiſted of two whennuas, or iſlands, named Tovy Poenamoo, which ſignifies "the water of green talc;" which might probably be the name of a place where the Indians got their green talc, or ſtone, of which they make their ornaments and cutting tools. He alſo told us, there was a third whennua, eaſtward of the ſtrait, called Eaheinomauwee, of conſiderable extent; the circumnavigation of which would take up many moons: he added, that the land on the borders of the ſtrait, contiguous to this inlet, was called Tiera Witte. Having procured this intelligence, and concluded the ceremonies at fixing up the monumental memorial, we returned to the ſhip. The old man attended us in his canoe, and returned home after dinner.

Wedneſday, the 31ſt, having taken in our wood and water, we diſpatched one party to make brooms, and another to catch fiſh. Toward the cloſe of the evening we had a ſtrong gale from the north-weſt, with ſuch heavy ſhowers, that our ſweet little warblers on ſhore ſuſpended their wild notes, with which till now they had conſtantly ſerenaded us during the night, affording us a pleaſure not to be expreſſed, and the loſs of which we could not at this time refrain from regretting.

On the 1ſt of February the gale increaſed to a ſtorm, with heavy guſts from the main land, which obliged us to let go another anchor. Towards night they became more moderate, but the rain poured down with impetuoſity, that the brook at our watering-place overflowed its banks, and carried away to our loſs ten caſks full of water.

On Saturday, the 3d, we went over to the hippah on the eaſt ſide of Charlotte's Sound, and procured a conſiderable quantity of fiſh. The people here confirmed all that Topoa had told us reſpecting the ſtrait and the unknown country. At noon, when we took leave of them, ſome ſhewed ſigns of ſorrow, others of joy, that we were going. When returning to the ſhip, ſome of our company made an excurſion along the ſhore northward, to traffic for a further ſupply of fiſh, but without ſucceſs. Sunday, the 4th, Mr. Banks and Dr. Solander were engaged in collecting ſhells, and different kinds of ſeeds.

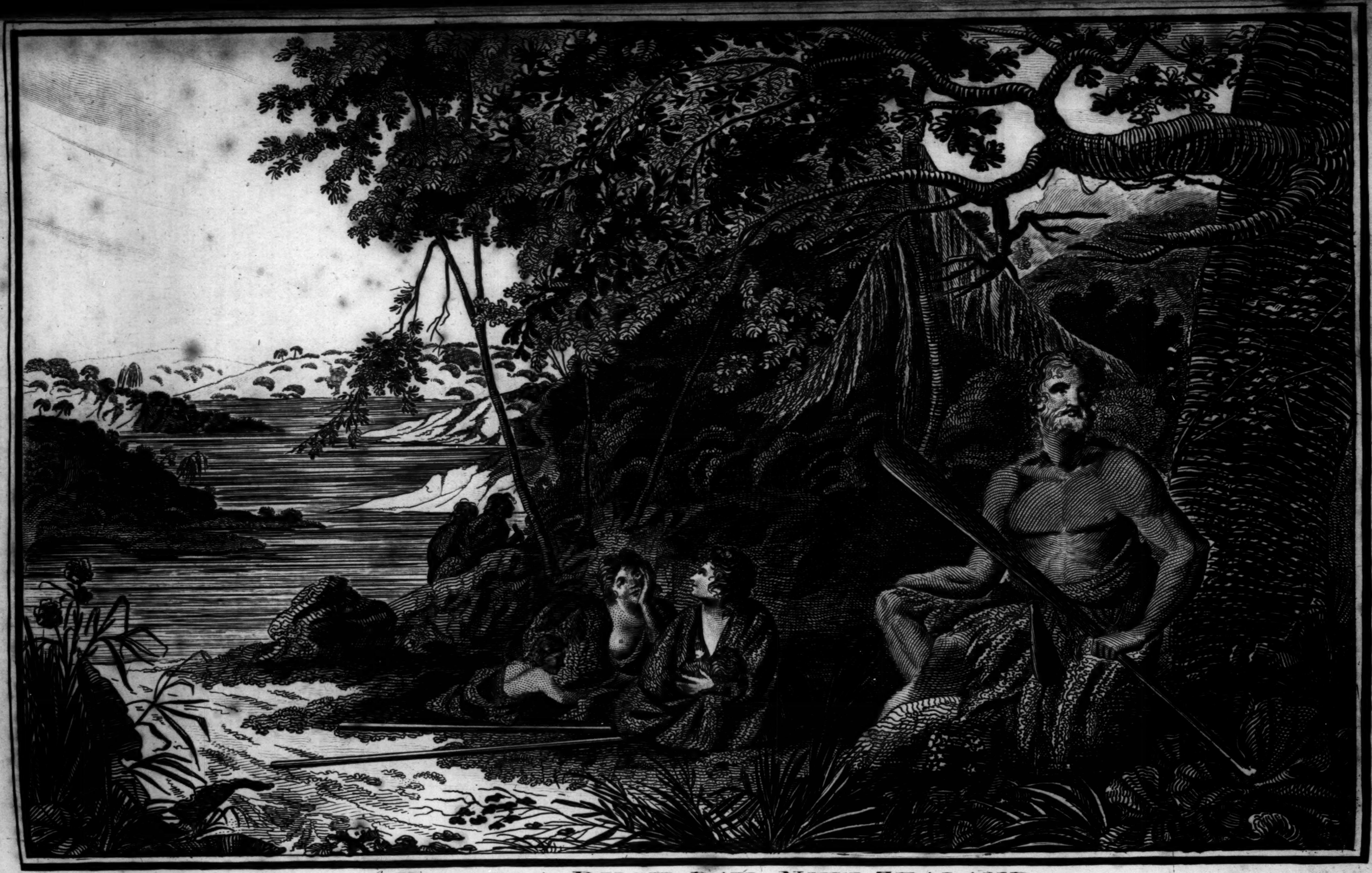
On the 5th we got under ſail, but the wind ſoon falling, we came again to anchor a little above Motuara. Topoa here paid us a viſit to bid us farewel. Being queſtioned whether he had ever heard, that ſuch a veſſel as ours had ever viſited the country, he replied in the negative; but ſaid, there was a tradition of a ſmall veſſel having come from Ulimora, a diſtant country in the north, in which were only four men, who on their landing, were all put to death. The people of the Bay of Iſlands, and Tupia, had ſome confuſed traditionary notions about Ulimora, but from their accounts we could draw no certain concluſion. This day Mr. Banks and Dr. Solander went again on ſhore in ſearch of natural curioſities, and by accident met with a very amiable Indian family, among whom was a widow, and a pretty youth about ten years of age. The woman mourned for her huſband, according to the cuſtom of the country, with tears of blood; and the child, by the death of his father, was the proprietor of the land where we had cut our wood. The mother and ſon were ſitting upon matts; the reſt of the family of both ſexes, about ſeventeen in number, ſat round them. They behaved with the utmoſt hoſpitality and courteſy, and endeavoured to prevail with us to ſtay all night; but expecting the ſhip to ſail, we could not accept of their preſſing invitation. This family ſeemed the moſt intelligent of any Indians we had hitherto converſed with, which made us regret our late acquaintance with them; for had we fallen into their company before, we ſhould probably have gained more information from them in one day, than we had been able to acquire during our whole ſtay upon the coaſt.

Monday, the 6th, in the morning, the Endeavour ſailed out of the bay, which, from the ſavage cuſtom of eating human fleſh, we called Cannibal Bay. We bent our courſe to an opening in the eaſt; and when in the mouth of the ſtrait, were becalmed in latitude 410 ſouth, and 184 deg. 45 min. weſt longitude. The two points that form the entrance, we called Cape Koamaroo, and point Jackſon. The land forming the harbour or cove in which we lay, is called by the Indians Totarranue; the harbour itſelf, named by the Captain Ship Cove, is very convenient and ſafe. It is ſituated on the weſt ſide of the cove, and is the ſouthernmoſt of the three coves within the iſland of Motuara, between which and the iſland of Hamote, or between Motuara, or weſtern ſhore, is the entrance. In the laſt of theſe inlets are two ledges of rocks, three fathom under water, which may eaſily be known by the ſea-weed that grows upon them. Attention muſt alſo be paid to the tides, which, when there is little wind, flow about nine or ten o'clock, at the full and change of the moon, and riſe and fall about ſeven feet and a half, paſſing through the ſtrait from the ſouth-eaſt. The land about this ſound, which we ſaw at the diſtance of twenty leagues, conſiſts entirely of high hills, and deep valleys, well ſtored with a variety of excellent timber, fit for all purpoſes except maſts, for which it is too hard and heavy. On the ſhore we found plenty of ſhags, and a few other ſpecies of wild fowl, that are very acceptable food to thoſe who have lived long upon ſalt proviſions. The number of inhabitants is not greater than four hundred, who are ſcattered along the coaſt, and upon any appearance of danger retire to their hippahs, or forts, in which ſituation we found them. They are poor, and their canoes without ornaments. The traffic we had with them was wholly for fiſh; but they had ſome knowledge of iron, which the natives of other parts had not. On our arrival they were much pleaſed with our paper; but when they knew it would be ſpoiled by the wet, they would not have it. Engliſh broad-cloth, and red Kerſey they highly eſteemed.

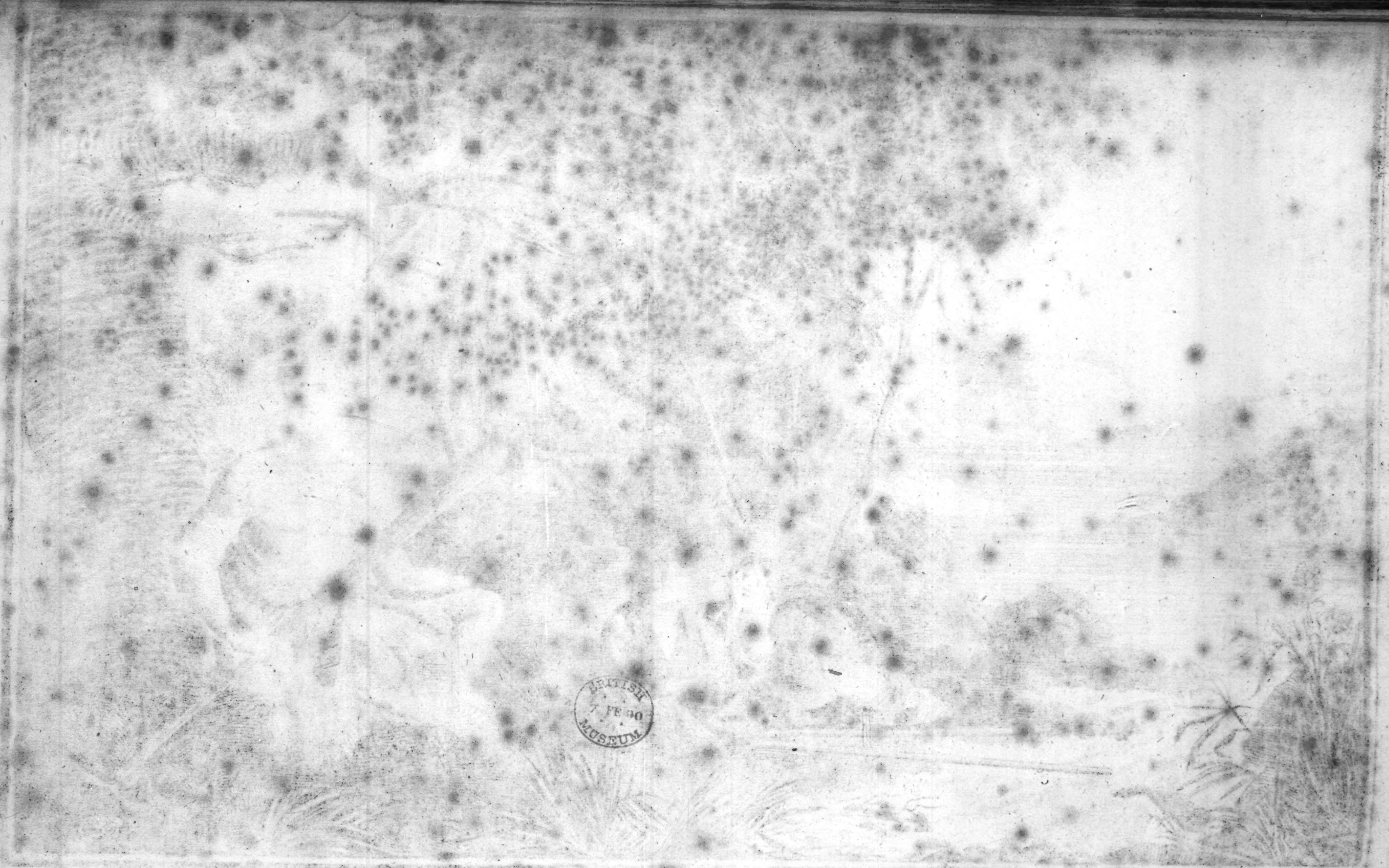
Leaving the ſound we ſtood over to the eaſtward, and were carried by the rapidity of the current very cloſe to one of the two iſlands that lie off Cape Koamaroo, at the entrance of Queen Charlotte's Sound. At this time we were every moment in danger of being daſhed to pieces againſt the rocks, but after having veered out 150 fathoms of cable, the ſhip was brought up, when the rocks were not more than two cables length from us. Thus we remained, being obliged to wait for the tide's ebbing, which did not take place till after midnight.

On the 7th, at eight o'clock in the morning, we weighed anchor, and a freſh breeze with a tide of ebb hurried us through the ſtrait with great ſwiftneſs. The narroweſt part of this ſtrait lies between Cape Tierrawitte and Cape Koamaroo, the diſtance between which we judged to be five leagues. The length of the ſtrait we could not determine. In paſſing it, we think it ſafeſt to keep to the north-eaſt ſhore, for on this ſide we ſaw nothing to fear. Cape Tierrawitte lies in

41 deg.



A FAMILY in DUSK BAY, NEW ZEALAND.



BRITISH MUSEUM 7 FE 90

41 deg. 44 min. of ſouth latitude, and 183 deg. 45 min. of weſt longitude. And Cape Koamaroo is 41 deg. 34 min. ſouth, and in 113 deg. 30 min. weſt longitude. About nine leagues from the former cape, and under the ſame ſhore north, is a high iſland, which the captain called Entry Iſle. We were now facing a deep bay which we called Cloudy Bay. Some of our gentlemen doubting whether Eahienomauwee was an iſland, we ſteered ſouth-eaſt, in order to clear up this doubt; but the wind ſhifting we ſtood eaſtward, and ſteered north-eaſt by eaſt all night. The next morning we were off Cape Palliſer, and found that the land ſtretched away to the north-eaſtward of Cape Turnagain. In the afternoon, three canoes came off, having ſeveral Indians on board. Theſe made a good appearance, and were ornamented like thoſe on the northern coaſt. There was no difficulty in perſuading them to come on board, where they demeaned themſelves very civilly, and a mutual exchange of preſents took place. As they aſked for nails it was concluded that they heard of the Engliſh, by means of the inhabitants of ſome of the other places at which we had touched. Their dreſs reſembled that of the natives of Hudſon's Bay. One old man was tataowed in a very particular manner, he had likewiſe a red ſtreak acroſs his noſe; and his hair and beard were remarkable for their whiteneſs. The upper garment that he wore was made of flax, and had a wrought border: under this was a ſort of petticoat of a cloth called Aooree Waow. Teeth and green ſtones decorated his ears: he ſpoke in a ſoft and low key, and it was concluded, from his deportment, that he was a perſon of diſtinguiſhed rank among his countrymen, and theſe people withdrew greatly ſatisfied with the preſents that they had received.

On the 9th in the morning, we diſcovered that Eahienomauwee was really an iſland. About ſixty Indians in four double canoes came within a ſtone's throw of the ſhip, on the 14th of February. As they ſurveyed her with ſurprize, Tupia endeavoured to perſuade them to come nearer, but this they could not be prevailed on to do. On this account the iſland was denominated the Iſland of Lookers-on. Five leagues diſtant from the coaſt of Tovy Poenamoo, we ſaw an iſland which was called after Mr. Banks's name; a few Indians appeared on it, and in one place they diſcovered a ſmoke, ſo that it was plain the place was inhabited. Mr. Banks going out in his boat for the purpoſe of ſhooting, killed ſome of the Port Egmont hens, which were like thoſe found on the iſle of Farc, and the firſt that they had ſeen upon this coaſt. A point of land was obſerved on Sunday the 25th in latitude 45 deg. 35 min. ſouth, to which Capt. Cook gave the name of Cape Saunders, in honour of Admiral Saunders. We kept off from the ſhore, which appeared to be interſperſed with trees, and covered with green hills, but no inhabitants were diſcovered.

On the 4th of March, ſeveral whales and ſeals were ſeen; and on the 9th we ſaw a ledge of rocks, and ſoon after another ledge at three leagues diſtance from the ſhore, which we paſſed in the night to the northward, and at day-break obſerved the others under our bows, which was a fortunate eſcape; and in conſideration of their having been ſo nearly caught among theſe, they were denominated the Traps. We called the ſouthernmoſt point of land, the South Cape, and found it to be the ſouthern extremity of the whole coaſt. Proceeding northward, the next day we fell in with a barren rock about fifteen miles from the main land, which was very high, and appeared to be about a mile in circumference; and this was named Solander's Iſland.

On the 13th, we diſcovered a bay containing ſeveral iſlands, where we concluded if there was depth of water, ſhipping might find ſhelter from all winds. Duſky Bay was the appellation given to it by the captain, and five high peaked rocks, for which it was remarkable, cauſed the point to be called Five Fingers. The weſtermoſt point of land upon the whole coaſt, to the ſouthward of Duſky Bay, we called Weſt Cape. The next day we paſſed a ſmall narrow opening, where there ſeemed to be a good harbour formed by an iſland, the land behind which exhibited a proſpect of mountains covered with ſnow.

On the 16th, we paſſed a point which conſiſted of high red cliffs, and received the name of Caſcade Point, on account of ſeveral ſmall ſtreams which fell down it. In the morning of the 18th the valleys were obſerved covered with ſnow as well as the mountains, which ſeemed to have fallen the night before, when we had rain at ſea. Thus we paſſed the whole north-weſt coaſt of Tovy Poenamoo, which had nothing worth our obſervation but a ridge of naked and barren rocks covered with ſnow, ſome of which we conjectured might probably have remained there ever ſince the creation. As far as the eye could reach, the proſpects were in general wild, craggy, and deſolate; ſcarcely any thing but rocks to be ſeen, the moſt of which Dr. Hawkeſworth deſcribes as having nothing but a kind of hollows, and dreadful fiſſures inſtead of valleys between them. From this uncomfortable country we determined to depart, having ſailed round the whole country by the 27th of this month. Capt. Cook therefore went on ſhore in the long-boat, and having found a place proper for mooring the ſhip, and a good watering place, the crew began to fill their caſks, while the carpenter was employed in cutting wood. The captain, Mr. Banks, and Dr. Solander, went in the pinnace to examine the bay, and the neighbouring country. Landing there they found ſeveral plants of a ſpecies which was before unknown to them; no inhabitants appeared; but they ſaw ſeveral huts which ſeemed to have been deſerted a long time before: all the wood and water being taken on board, the veſſel was ready to ſail by the time that they returned in the evening, and it was now reſolved at a council of war to ſteer for the coaſt of New Holland, in the courſe of their return by the way of the Eaſt-Indies.

On the 31ſt, we took our departure from an eaſtern point of land, to which we gave the name of Cape Farewel, calling the bay out of which we ſailed, Admiralty Bay; and two capes, Cape Stephens, and Cape Jackſon, (the names of the two ſecretaries of the Admiralty board.) We called a bay between the iſland and Cape Farewel, Blind Bay, which was ſuppoſed to have been the ſame that was called Murderers Bay, by Taſman, the firſt diſcoverer of New Zealand; but though he named it Staten Iſland, wiſhing to take poſſeſſion of it for the States General, yet being attacked here by the Indians he never went on ſhore to effect his purpoſe. This coaſt, now more accurately examined, is diſcovered to conſiſt of two iſlands, which were before thought to be a part of the ſouthern continent ſo much ſought after.

They are ſituated between the 34th and 48th deg. of ſouth latitude, and between 181 deg. and 194 deg. weſt longitude. The northern iſland is called Eahienomauwee, and the ſouthern is named Tovy Poenamoo by the natives. The former, though mountainous in ſome places, is ſtored with wood, and in every valley there is a rivulet. The ſoil in thoſe valleys is light, but fertile and well adapted for the plentiful production of all the fruits, plants and corn of Europe. The ſummer, though not hotter, is in general of a more equal temperature than in England; and from the vegetables that were found here it was concluded, that the winters were not ſo ſevere. The only quadrupeds that were diſcovered were dogs and rats, and of the latter very few, but the former the inhabitants (like thoſe of Otaheite) breed for food. There are ſeals and whales on the coaſts, and we once ſaw a ſea-lion. The birds are hawks, owls, quails, and ſome melodious ſong birds. There are ducks, and ſhags of ſeveral ſorts, like thoſe of Europe, and the gannet, which is of the ſame ſort. Albatroſſes, ſheerwaters, penguins, and pintados, alſo viſit the coaſt. The inſects found here are, butterflies, fleſh-flies, beetles, ſand-flies, and muſquitos.

Tovy Poenamoo is barren and mountainous, and appeared to be almoſt deſtitute of inhabitants.

The ſea that waſhes theſe iſlands abounds with delicate and wholeſome fiſh. Whenever the veſſel came to an anchor, enough were caught with hook and line only, to ſupply the whole ſhip's company; and when we finiſhed with nets, every meſs in the ſhip, where the people were induſtrious, ſalted as much as ſupplied them for ſeveral weeks. There were many ſorts of fiſh here which we had never before ſeen, and which the ſailors named according to their fancies. They were ſold on moderate terms to the crew: among the reſt, fiſh like the ſkate, eels, congers, oyſters, flat-fiſh reſembling ſoles and flounders, cockles and various ſorts of mackarel were found in abundance upon the coaſt.

Here are foreſts abounding with trees, producing large, ſtraight and clean timber. One tree about the ſize of our oak, was diſtinguiſhed by a ſcarlet flower, compoſed of ſeveral fibres, and another which grows in ſwampy ground, very ſtraight and tall, bearing ſmall bunches of berries, and a leaf reſembling that of the yew-tree. About 400 ſpecies of plants were found, all of which are unknown in England, except garden nightſhade, ſow-thiſtle, two or three kinds of fern, and one or two ſorts of graſs. We found wild celery, and a kind of creſſes, in great abundance, on the ſea-ſhore; and of eatable plants raiſed by cultivation, only cocoas, yams, and ſweet potatoes. There are plantations of many acres of theſe yams and potatoes. The inhabitants likewiſe cultivate the gourd; and the Chineſe paper mulberry tree is to be found, but in no abundance.

In New Zealand is only one ſhrub or tree, which produces fruit, which is a kind of berry almoſt taſteleſs; but they have a plant which anſwers all the uſes of hemp and flax. There are two kinds of this plant, the leaves of one of which are yellow, and the other a deep red, and both of them reſemble the leaves of flags. Of theſe leaves they make lines and cordage, and much ſtronger than any thing of the kind in Europe. Theſe leaves they likewiſe ſplit into breadths, and tying the ſlips together, form their fiſhing nets. Their common apparel, by a ſimple proceſs, is made from the leaves, and their finer, by another preparation, is made from the fibres. This plant is found both in high and low ground, in dry mould and in deep bogs; but as it grows largeſt in the latter, that ſeems to be its proper ſoil.

The natives are as large as the largeſt Europeans. Their complexion is brown, but little more ſo than that of a Spaniard. They are full of fleſh, but not lazy and luxurious; and are ſtout and well ſhaped. The women poſſeſs not that delicacy, which diſtinguiſhes the European ladies; but their voice chiefly diſtinguiſhes them from the men. The men are active in a high degree; their hair is black, and their teeth are white and even. The features of both ſexes are regular; they enjoy perfect health, and live to an advanced age. They appeared to be of a gentle diſpoſition, and treat each other with the utmoſt kindneſs; but they are perpetually at war, every little diſtrict being at enmity with all the reſt. This is owing, moſt probably, to the want of food in ſufficient quantities at certain times. As they have neither black cattle, ſheep, hogs, nor goats; ſo their chief food was fiſh, which being not always to be had, they are in danger of dying through hunger. They have a few dogs; and when no fiſh is to be gotten, they have only vegetables, ſuch as yams and potatoes, to feed on; and if by any accident theſe fail them, their ſituation muſt be deplorable. Notwithſtanding the cuſtom of eating their enemies, the circumſtances and temper of theſe people is in favour of thoſe who might ſettle among them as a colony.

The inhabitants of New Zealand are as modeſt and reſerved in their behaviour and converſation as the moſt polite nations of Europe. The women, indeed, were not dead to the ſofter impreſſions; but their mode of conſent was in their idea as harmleſs as the conſent to marriage with us, and equally binding for the ſtipulated time. If any of the Engliſh addreſſed one of their women, he was informed, that the conſent of her friends muſt be obtained, which uſually followed, on his making a preſent. This done he was obliged to treat his temporary wife as delicately as we do in England. A gentleman who ſailed in the Endeavour, having addreſſed a family of ſome rank, received an anſwer, of which the following is an exact tranſlation. "Any of theſe young ladies will think themſelves honoured by your addreſſes, but you muſt firſt make me a preſent, and you muſt then come and ſleep with us on ſhore, for day-light muſt by no means be a witneſs of what paſſes between you."

Theſe Indians anoint their hair with oil melted from the fat of fiſh or birds. The poorer people uſe that which is rancid, ſo that they ſmell very diſagreeable; but thoſe of ſuperior rank make uſe of that which is freſh. They wear combs both of bone and wood, which is conſidered as an ornament when ſtuck upright in the hair. The men tie their hair in a bunch on the crown of the head, and adorn it with feathers of birds, which they likewiſe ſometimes place on each ſide of the temples. They commonly wear ſhort beards. The hair of the women ſometimes flows over their ſhoulders, and ſometimes is cut ſhort. Both ſexes, but the men more than the women, mark their bodies with black ſtains, called amoco. In general the women ſtain only the lips, but ſometimes mark other parts with black patches: the men on the contrary put on additional marks from year to year, ſo that thoſe who are very ancient are almoſt covered. Excluſive of the amoco, they mark themſelves with furrows. Thoſe furrows made a hideous appearance, the edges being indented, and the whole quite black. The ornaments of the face are drawn in the ſpiral form with equal elegance and correctneſs, both cheeks being marked exactly alike; while paintings on their bodies reſemble fillagree work, and the foliage in old chaſed ornaments; but no two faces or bodies are painted exactly after the ſame model. The people of New Zealand, frequently left the breech free from theſe marks, which the inhabitants of Otaheite adorned beyond any other. Theſe Indians likewiſe paint their bodies by rubbing them with red ochre, either dry or mixed with oil.

Their dreſs is formed of the leaves of the flag ſplit into ſlips, which are interwoven and made into a kind of matting, the ends, which are ſeven or eight inches in length, hanging out on the upper ſide. One piece of this matting being tied over the ſhoulders, reaches to the knees: the other piece being wrapped round the waiſt falls almoſt to the ground. Theſe two pieces are faſtened to a ſtring, which by means of a bodkin of bone is paſſed through, and tacks them together. The men wear the lower garment only at particular times.

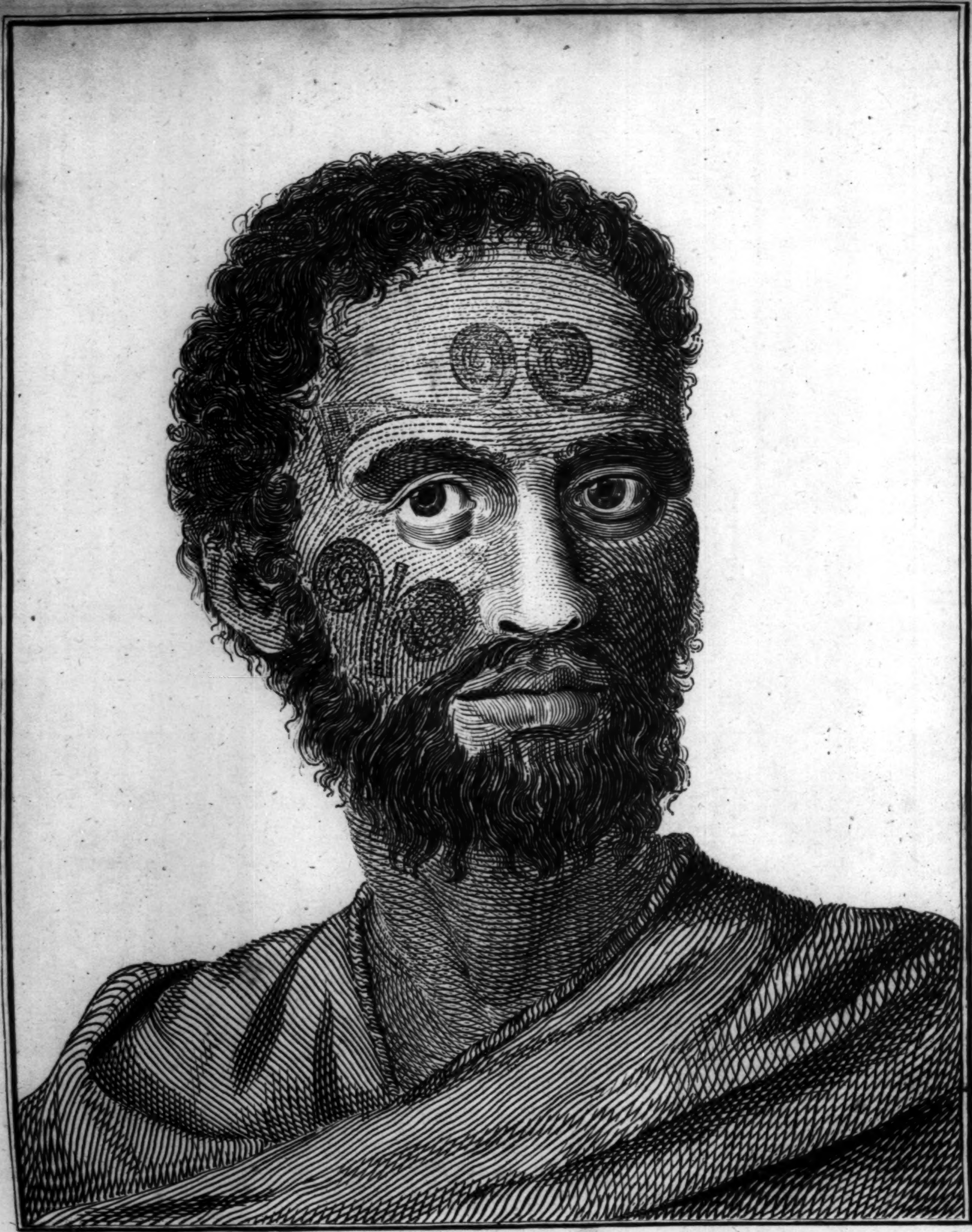
They have two kinds of cloth beſides the coarſe matting or ſhag above-mentioned; one of which is as coarſe, but beyond all proportion ſtronger than the Engliſh canvas; the other which is formed of the fibres of a plant, drawn into threads which croſs and bind each other, reſembles the matting on which we place our diſhes at table.

They make borders of different colours to both theſe ſorts of cloth, reſembling girls ſamplers, and finiſhed with great neatneſs and elegance. What they conſider as the moſt ornamental part of their dreſs is the fur of dogs, which they cut into ſtripes, and ſew on different parts of their apparel. As dogs are not plenty, they diſpoſe their ſtripes with œconomy. They have a few dreſſes ornamented with feathers; and one man was ſeen covered wholly with thoſe of the red parrot.

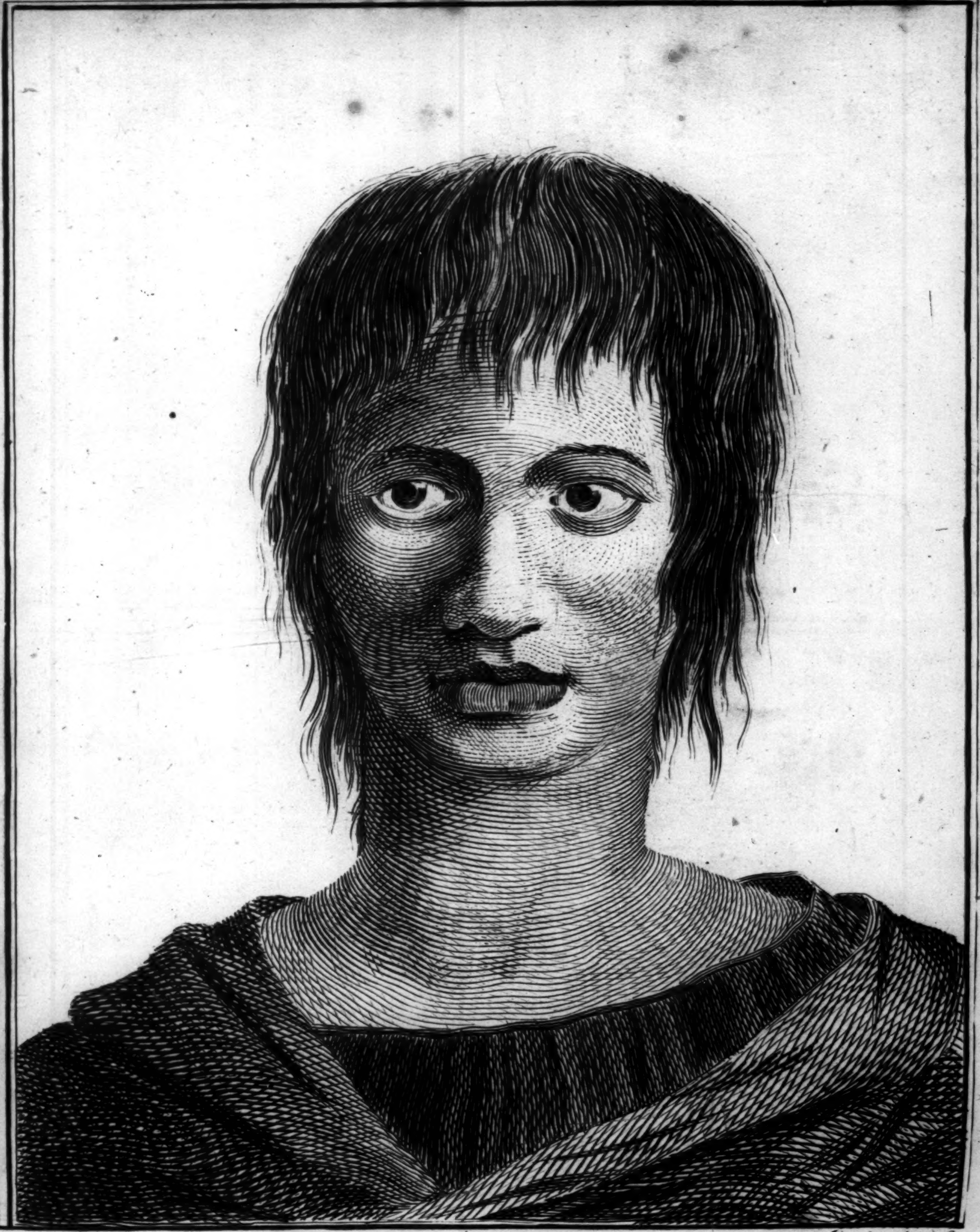
The women never tie their hair on the top of their head, nor adorn it with feathers; and are leſs anxious about dreſs than the men. Their lower garment is bound tight round them, except when they go out fiſhing, and then they are careful that the men ſhall not ſee them. It once happened that ſome of the ſhip's crew ſurpriſed them in this ſituation, when ſome of them hid themſelves among the rocks, and the reſt kept their bodies under water till they had formed a girdle and apron of weeds; and their whole behaviour manifeſted the moſt refined ideas of female modeſty.

The ears of both ſexes were bored, and the holes ſtretched ſo as to admit a man's finger. The ornaments of their ears are feathers, cloth, bones, and ſometimes bits of woods; a great many of them made uſe

London: Publish'd as the Act directs, by Alexr. Hogg, at the Kings Arms, Paternoster Row.



A MAN of NEW ZEALAND.



A WOMAN of NEW ZEALAND.

Eastgate Sc.

BRITISH MUSEUM 7 FE 80

of the nails which were given them by the Engliſh, for this purpoſe, and the women ſometimes adorned their ears with white down of the albetroſs, which they ſpread before and behind the whole in a large bunch. They likewiſe hung to their ears by ſtrings, chiſſels, bodkins, the teeth of dogs, and the teeth and nails of their deceaſed friends. The arms and ancles of the women are adorned with ſhells and bones, or any thing elſe through which they can paſs a ſtring. The men wear a piece of green talc or whalebone, with the reſemblance of a man carved on it, hanging to a ſtring round the neck. We ſaw one man who had the griſtle of his noſe perforated, and a feather paſſed through it, projected over each cheek.

Theſe people ſhew leſs ingenuity in the ſtructure of their houſes, than in any thing elſe belonging to them; they are from ſixteen to twenty-four feet long, ten or twelve wide, and ſix or eight in height. The frame is of ſlight ſticks of wood, and the walls and roof are made of dry graſs pretty firmly compacted. Some of them are lined with bark of trees, and the ridge of the houſe is formed by a pole which runs from one end to the other. The door is only high enough to admit a perſon crawling on hands and knees, and the roof is ſloping. There is a ſquare hole near the door, ſerving both for window and chimney, near which is the fire place. A plank is placed over the door, adorned with a ſort of carving, and this they conſider as an ornamental piece of furniture. The ſide-walls and roof projecting two or three feet beyond the walls at each end form a ſort of portico where benches are placed to ſit on. The fire is made in the middle of a hollow ſquare in the floor, which is incloſed with wood or ſtone. They ſleep near the walls, where the ground is covered with ſtraw for their beds. Some who can afford it, whoſe families are large, have three or four houſes, incloſed in their court-yard. Their clothes, arms, feathers, ſome ill made tools, and a cheſt, in which all theſe are depoſited, form all the furniture of the inſide of the houſe. Their hammers to beat fern-root, gourds to hold water, and baſkets to contain proviſions, are placed without the houſe. One houſe was found near 40 feet long, 20 wide, and 14 high. Its ſides were adorned with carved planks of workmanſhip ſuperior to the reſt; but the building appeared to have been left unfiniſhed. Though the people ſleep warm enough at home, they ſeem to deſpiſe the inclemency of the weather, when they go in ſearch of fiſh or fern-roots. Sometimes, indeed, they place a ſmall defence to windward, but frequently ſleep undreſſed with their arms placed round them, without the leaſt ſhelter whatever.

Beſides the fern-root, which ſerves them for bread, they feed on albetroſſes, penguins, and ſome other birds. Whatever they eat is either roaſted or baked, as they have no veſſel in which water can be boiled. We ſaw no plantations of cocoas, potatoes, and yams, to the ſouthward, though there were many in the northern parts. The natives drink no other liquor than water, and enjoy perfect and uninterrupted health. When wounded in battle, the wound heals in a very ſhort time without the application of medicine; and the very old people carry no other marks of decay about them than the loſs of their hair, and teeth, and a failure of their muſcular ſtrength: but enjoy an equal ſhare of health and chearfulneſs with the youngeſt.

The canoes of this country are not unlike the whale-boats of New England, being long and narrow. The larger ſort ſeem to be built for war, and will hold from 30 to 100 men. One of theſe at Tolaga meaſured near 70 feet in length, ſix in width, and four in depth. It was ſharp at the bottom, and conſiſted of three lengths, about two or three inches thick, and tied firmly together with ſtrong plaiting; each ſide was found of one entire plank, about twelve inches broad, and about an inch and a half thick, which was fitted to the bottom part with equal ſtrength and ingenuity. Several thwarts were laid from one ſide to the other, to which they were ſecurely faſtened, in order to ſtrengthen the canoes. Some few of their canoes at Mercury Bay and Opoorage, are all made entirely of one trunk of wood, which is made hollow by fire; but by far the greater part are built after the plan above deſcribed. The ſmaller boats which are uſed chiefly in fiſhing, are adorned at head and ſtern with the figure of a man, the eyes of which are compoſed of white ſhells: a tongue of enormous ſize, is thruſt out of the mouth, and the whole face a picture of the moſt abſolute deformity. The grander canoes, which are intended for war, are ornamented with open work, and covered with fringes of black feathers, which gives the whole an air of perfect elegance; the ſide-boards, which are carved in a rude manner, are embelliſhed with tufts of white feathers. Theſe veſſels are rowed with a kind of paddles, between five and ſix feet in length, the blade of which is a long oval, gradually decreaſing till it reaches the handle; and the velocity with which they row with theſe paddles is very ſurpriſing. Their ſails are compoſed of a kind of mat or netting, which is extended between two upright poles, one of which is fixed on each ſide. Two ropes, faſtened to the top of each pole, ſerve inſtead of ſheets. The veſſels are ſteered by two men having ſuch a paddle, and ſitting in the ſtern; but they can only ſail before the wind, in which direction they move with conſiderable ſwiftneſs.

Theſe Indians uſe axes, adzes, and chiſſels, with which laſt they likewiſe bore holes. The chiſſels are made of jaſper, or of the bone of a man's arm; their axes and adzes of a hard black ſtone. They uſe their ſmall jaſper tools till they are blunted, and then throw them away, having no inſtrument to ſharpen them with. The Indians at Tolaga having been preſented with a piece of glaſs, drilled a hole through it, and hung it round the neck. A ſmall bit of jaſper was thought to have been the tool they uſed in drilling it.

Their tillage is excellent, owing to the neceſſity they are under of cultivating or running the riſque of ſtarving. At Tegadoo their crops were juſt put into the ground, and the ſurface of the field was as ſmooth as a garden, the roots were ranged in regular lines, and to every root there remained a hillock. A long narrow ſtake, ſharpened to an edge at bottom, with a piece fixed acroſs a little above it, for the convenience of driving it into the ground with the foot, ſupplies the place both of plough and ſpade. The ſoil being light, their work is not very laborious, and with this inſtrument alone they will turn up ground of ſix or ſeven acres in extent.

The ſeine, the large net which has been already noticed, is produced by the united labour, and is probably the joint property of a whole town. Their fiſh-hooks are of ſhell or bone; and they have baſkets of wicker-work to hold the fiſh. Their warlike weapons are ſpears, darts, battle-axes, and the patoo-patoo. The ſpear, which is pointed at each end, is about ſixteen feet in length, and they hold it in the middle, ſo that it is difficult to parry a puſh from it. Whether they fight in boats or on ſhore the battle is hand to hand, ſo that they muſt make bloody work of it. They truſt chiefly in the patoo patoo, which is faſtened to their wriſts, by means of a ſtrong ſtrap, that it may not be wreſted out of their hands. Theſe are worn in the girdles of people of a ſuperior rank, as a military ornament. They have a kind of ſtaff of diſtinction, which is carried by the principal warriors. It is formed of a whale's rib, is quite white, and adorned with carving, feathers, and the hair of their dogs. Sometimes they had a ſtick ſix feet long, inlaid with ſhells, and otherwiſe ornamented like a military ſtaff. This honourable mark of diſtinction was commonly in the hands of the aged, who were alſo more daubed with the amoco.

When they came to attack us, one or more of theſe old men thus diſtinguiſhed, were uſually in each canoe. It is their cuſtom to ſtop about 50 or 60 yards from a ſhip, when the chiefs riſing from their ſeat, put on a dog's ſkin garment, and holding out their decorated ſtaff, direct them how to proceed. When they were too far from the ſhip to reach it with their miſſile weapons, then the defiance was given, and the words uſually were Karomai, haromai, harre uta a patoo-patoo.

too. "Come on ſhore, come on ſhore, and we will kill you all with our patoo-patoos." While they thus threatened us, they approached gradually the bark, till cloſe along ſide; yet talking at intervals, in a peaceable manner, and anſwering whatever queſtions we aſked them. Then again their menaces were renewed, till encouraged by our ſuppoſed timidity, they began the war-ſong and dance, the ſure prelude of an attack, which always followed, and ſometimes continued until the firing of ſmall ſhot repulſed them; but at others, they vented their paſſion, by throwing a few ſtones at the ſhip, in the way of inſulting us.

The contortions of theſe ſavage Indians are numerous; their limbs are diſtorted, and their faces are agitated with ſtrange convulſive motions. Their tongue hangs out of their mouths to an amazing length, and their eye-lids are drawn ſo as to form a circle round the eye. At the ſame time they ſhake their darts, brandiſh their ſpears, and wave their patoo-patoos to and fro in the air. There is an admirable vigour and activity in their dancing; and in their ſong they keep time with ſuch exactneſs, that 60 or 100 paddles when ſtruck againſt the ſides of their boats at once, make only a ſingle report. In times of peace they ſometimes ſing in a manner reſembling the war-ſong, but the dance is omitted. The women, whoſe voices are exceeding melodious and ſoft, ſing likewiſe in a muſical, but mournful manner. One of their inſtruments of muſic is a ſhell, from which they produce a ſound not unlike that made with a common horn; the other is a ſmall wooden pipe, reſembling a child's nine-pin, not ſuperior in ſound to a child's whiſtle. We never heard them attempt to ſing to them, or to produce any meaſured notes like what we call a tune.

As to the horrid cuſtom of eating human fleſh, prevalent among them, to what has been already ſaid on this head, we ſhall only add, that in moſt of the coves, upon landing, we found near the places where fires had been made, fleſh bones of men; and among the heads that were brought on board, ſome of them had a kind of falſe eyes, and ornaments in their ears, as if alive. The head purchaſed by Mr. Banks, and ſold with great reluctance, was that of a young perſon, and, by the contuſions on one ſide, appeared to have received many violent blows. There had been lately a ſkirmiſh, and we ſuppoſed the young man had been killed with the reſt.

The hippahs or villages of theſe people, of which there are ſeveral between the bay of Plenty and Queen Charlotte's ſound, are all fortified. In theſe they conſtantly reſide; but near Tolaga, Hawk's Bay, and Poverty Bay, only ſingle houſes are to be ſeen, at a conſiderable diſtance from each other. On the ſides of the hills were erected long ſtages, ſupplied with darts and ſtones, thought by us to be retreats in time of action; as it appeared that from ſuch places they could combat with their enemies to great advantage. A magazine of proviſions, conſiſting of dried fiſh, and fern roots, was alſo diſcovered in theſe fortifications.

The inhabitants of this part of the country were all ſubjects of Teratu, who reſided near the bay of Plenty; and to their being thus united under one chief, they owed a ſecurity unknown to thoſe of other parts. Several inferior governors are in the dominions of Teratu, to whom the moſt implicit obedience is paid. One of the inhabitants having robbed a ſailor belonging to the Endeavour, complaint was made to a chief, who chaſtized the thief by kicking and ſtriking him, which correction he bore with unreſiſting humility. The inhabitants of the ſouthern parts formed little ſocieties, who had all things in common, particularly fiſhing nets and fine apparel. The latter, probably obtained in war, were kept in a little hut, deſtined for that uſe, in the center of the town, and the ſeveral parts of the nets, being made by different families, were afterwards joined together for public uſe. Leſs account, in the opinion of Tupia, is made of the women here than in the South Sea iſlands. Both ſexes eat together; but how they divide their labour, we cannot determine with certainty, though we are inclined to believe that the men cultivate the ground, make nets, catch birds, and go out in their canoes to fiſh; while the women are employed in weaving cloth, collecting ſhell-fiſh, and in dreſſing food.

As to the religion of theſe people, they acknowledge one Supreme Being, and ſeveral ſubordinate deities. Their mode of worſhip we could not learn, nor was any place proper for that purpoſe ſeen. There was indeed a ſmall ſquare area, encompaſſed with ſtones, in the middle of which hung a baſket of fern-roots on one of their ſpades. This they ſaid was an offering to their gods, to obtain from them a plentiful crop of proviſions. They gave the ſame account of the origin of the world, and the production of mankind, as our friends in Otaheite. Tupia, however, ſeemed to have much more deep and extenſive knowledge of theſe ſubjects than any of the people of this iſland, and when he ſometimes delivered a long diſcourſe, he was ſure of a numerous audience, who heard with remarkable reverence and attention.

With regard to the manner of diſpoſing of their dead, we could form no certain opinion. The ſouthern diſtrict ſaid, they diſpoſed of their dead by throwing them into the ſea; but thoſe of the north buried them in the ground. We ſaw, however, not the leaſt ſign of any grave or monument; but the body of many among the living, bore the marks of wounds, in token of grief for the loſs of their friends and relations. Some of their ſcars were newly made, a proof that their friends had died while we were there; yet no one ſaw any thing like a funeral ceremony or proceſſion, the reaſon is, becauſe they affected to conceal every thing reſpecting the dead with the utmoſt ſecrecy.

We obſerved a great ſimilitude between the dreſs, furniture, boats, and nets of the New Zealanders, and the natives of the South Sea Iſlands, which evidently demonſtrates that the common anceſtors of both were *ab origine* natives of the ſame country. Indeed the inhabitants of theſe different places have a tradition, that their anceſtors ſprang from another country many years ſince, and they both agree that this country was called Heawige. This is alſo certain, that Tupia when he accoſted the people here in the language of his own country, was perfectly underſtood; but perhaps a yet ſtronger proof that their origin was the ſame, will ariſe from a ſpecimen of their language, which we ſhall evince by a liſt of words in both languages, according to the dialect of the northern and ſouthern iſlands of which New Zealand conſiſts; whence it will appear, that the language of Otaheite does not differ more from that of New Zealand, than the language of the two iſlands from each other.

THE LANGUAGE OF

NEW ZEALAND.		OTAHEITE.	ENGLISH.
Northern.	*Southern.*		
Eareete	Eareete	Earee	*A chief.*
Taata	Taata	Taata	*A man.*
Whahine	Whahine	Ivahine	*A woman.*
Eupo	Heaowpoho	Eupo	*The head.*
Macauwe	Heoo-oo'	Roourou	*The hair.*
Terringa	Hetaheyei	Terrea	*The ear.*
Erai	Heai	Erai	*The forehead.*
Mata	Hemata	Mata	*The eyes.*
Paparinga	Hepapaeh	Paparea	*The cheeks.*
Ahewh	Heeih	Ahew	*The noſe.*
Hangoutou	Hegaowai	Outou	*The mouth.*
Ecouwai	Hakaoewai	———	*The chin.*
Haringaringu	———	Rema	*The arm.*
Maticara	Hermaigawh	Maneow	*The finger.*
Ateraboo	———	Oboo	*The belly.*
Apeto	Heeapeto	Peto	*The navel.*
Haromai	Heromai	Harromai	*Come hither.*
Heica	Heica	Eyea	*Fiſh.*
Kooura	Kooura	Tooura	*A lobſter.*
Taro	Taro	Taro	*Cocoas.*
Cumala	Cumala	Cumala	*Potatoes.*
Tuphwhe	Tuphwhe	Tuphwhe	*Yams.*
Mannu	Mannu	Mannu	*Birds.*

Kaoura

NEW ZEALAND. *Northern.*	NEW ZEALAND. *Southern.*	OTAHEITE.	ENGLISH.
Kaoura	Kaoura	Oure	*No.*
Tahai	———	Tahai	*One.*
Rua	———	Rua	*Two.*
Torou	———	Torou	*Three.*
Ha	———	Hea	*Four.*
Rema	———	Rema	*Five.*
Ono	———	Ono	*Six.*
Etu	———	Hetu	*Seven.*
Warou	———	Warou	*Eight.*
Iva	———	Heva	*Nine.*
Angahourou	———	Ahourou	*Ten.*
Hennihew	Heneaho	Nihio	*The teeth.*
Mehow	———	Mattai	*The wind.*
Amootoo	———	Teto	*A thief.*
Mataketake	———	Mataitai	*To examine.*
Eheara	———	Heiva	*To ſing.*
Keno	Keno	Eno	*Bad.*
Eratou	Eratou	Eraou	*Trees.*
Toubouna	Toubouna	Toubouna	*Grandfather.*
Owy Terra	———	Owy Terra	*What do you call this or that.*

Hence it appears evidently that the language of New Zealand and Otaheite, is radically one and the ſame. The dialect indeed is different as in England, where the word is pronounced *gate* in Middleſex, and *geate* in Yorkſhire; and as the northern and ſouthern words were taken down by two different perſons, one might poſſibly uſe more words than the other to expreſs the ſame ſound. Beſides, in the ſouthern parts they put the articles *he* or *ko* before a noun, as we do thoſe of *the* or *a*: it is alſo common to add the word *oeia* after another word, as we ſay *certainly*, or *yes indeed*; and by not attending ſufficiently to this, our gentlemen ſometimes, judging by the ear only, formed words of an enormous length: for example, one of them aſking a native the name of the iſland, called Matuaro, he replied, with the particle *ke* prefixed *Ke-matuaro*; and upon the queſtion being repeated, the Indian added *oeia*, which made the word *Ke-matuaro oeia*; and upon inſpecting the log-book, Capt. Cook found Matuaro transformed into *Cumettiwarroweia.* Now a ſimilar orthographical difference might happen, or a like miſtake might be made by a foreigner in writing an Engliſh word. Suppoſe a New Zealander to enquire, when near to aſk, *What village is this?* The anſwer might be, *It is Hackney indeed.* The Indian then for the information of his countrymen, had he the uſe of letters, might record, that he had paſſed through, or been at a place called by the Engliſh *Itiſhackneyindeed.* We were ourſelves at firſt led into many ridiculous miſtakes, from not knowing that the article uſed in the South-Sea Iſlands, is *to* or *ta*, inſtead of *ke* or *ko*.

We have ſuppoſed, that the original inhabitants of theſe iſlands, and thoſe in the South-Seas, came from the ſame country; but what country that is, or where ſituated, remains ſtill a ſubject of enquiry. In this we all agreed, that the original natives were not of America, which lies to the eaſtward; and unleſs there ſhould be a continent to the ſouthward, in a temperate latitude, we cannot but conclude that they emigrated from the weſtward.

Before we cloſe this account of New Zealand, we beg leave further to obſerve, that hitherto our navigation has been very unfavourable to the ſuppoſition of a Southern Continent. The navigators who have ſupported the poſitions upon which this is founded, are Taſman, Juan Fernandes, Hermite, Quiros, and Roggewein; but the track of the Endeavour has totally ſubverted all their theoretical arguments. Upon a view of the chart it will appear, that a large ſpace extends quite to the tropics, which has not been explored by us nor any other navigators; yet we believe there is no cape of any Southern Continent, and no Southern Continent to the northward of 40 deg. ſouth. Of what may lie farther to the ſouthward of 40 deg. we can give no opinion; yet are far from diſcouraging any future attempts after new diſcoveries: for a voyage like this may be of public utility. Should no continent be found, new iſlands within the tropics may be diſcovered. Tupia in a rough chart of his own drawing laid down no leſs than ſeventy-four; and he gave us an account of above one hundred and thirty, which no European veſſel has ever yet viſited.

CHAP. VIII.

Paſſage from New Zealand to Botany Bay, in New Holland—Various incidents related—A deſcription of the country and its inhabitants—The Endeavour ſails from Botany Bay to Trinity Bay—With a further account of the country—Her dangerous ſituation in her paſſage from Trinity Bay to Endeavour River.

ON Saturday the 31ſt of March, 1770, we ſailed from Cape Farewell, having fine weather and a fair wind. This cape lies in latitude 40 deg. 33 min. S. and in 186 deg. W. longitude. The ſame day we ſteered weſtward, with a freſh gale till the 2nd of April, when by obſervation we found our latitude to be 40 deg. and our longitude from Cape Farewell, 2 deg. 31 min. W. On the ninth in the morning, when in latitude 38 deg. 29 min. S. we ſaw a tropic bird, a ſight very unuſual in ſo high a latitude. On the 15th we ſaw an egg bird, and a gannet. As theſe birds never go far from land, we ſounded all night, but had no ground at 130 fathom water. The day following a ſmall land bird perched on the rigging, but we had no ground at 120 fathom. Tueſday the 17th, we had freſh gales with ſqualls and dark weather in the morning; and in the afternoon a hard gale and a great ſea from the ſouthward, which obliged us to run under our fore-ſail and mizen all night. On the 18th in the morning, we were viſited by a pintado bird, and ſome Port-Egmont hens, an infallible ſign that land was near, which we diſcovered at ſix o'clock in the morning of the 19th, four or five leagues diſtant. To the ſouthermoſt point in ſight, we gave the name of Point Hicks, the name of our firſt lieutenant who diſcovered it. At noon, in latitude 37 deg. 5. min. and 210 deg. 29 min. W. longitude, another remarkable point of the ſame land bore N. 20 E. diſtant about four leagues. This point riſing in a round hillock, extremely like the Ram Head at the entrance of Plymouth Sound, Capt. Cook therefore gave it the ſame name. What we had yet ſeen of the land was low and level; the ſhore white and ſandy; and the inland parts covered with wood and verdure. At this time we ſaw three water-ſpouts at once; two between us and the ſhore, and the third at ſome diſtance upon our larboard quarter. In the evening, at ſix o'clock, the northermoſt point of land was diſtant about two leagues, which we named Cape Howe. On the following day we had a diſtant view of the country, which was in general covered with wood, and interſperſed with ſeveral ſmall lawns. It appeared to be inhabited, as ſmoke was ſeen in ſeveral places. At four o'clock the next morning, we ſaw a high mountain, which from its ſhape, was called Mount Dromedary, under which there is a point which received the name of Point Dromedary. In the evening we were oppoſite a point of land which roſe perpendicular, and was called Point Upright. On Sunday the 22d, we were ſo near the ſhore, as to ſee ſeveral of the inhabitants on the coaſt, who were of a very dark complexion, if not perfect negroes. At noon we ſaw a remarkable peeked hill, to which the captain gave the name of the Pigeon Houſe, from its reſemblance of ſuch a building. The trees on this iſland were both tall and large, but we ſaw no place fit to give ſhelter even to a boat.

The captain gave the name of Cape George to a point of land diſcovered on St. George's-day, two leagues to the north of which the ſea formed a bay, which, from its ſhape, was called Long Noſe; eight leagues from which lies Red Point, ſo called from the colour of the ſoil in its neighbourhood. On the 27th, we ſaw ſeveral inhabitants walking along the ſhore, four of them carrying a canoe on their ſhoulders, but as they did not attempt to come off to the ſhip, the captain took Meſſrs. Banks and Solander, and Tupia in the yawl, and employed four men to row them to that part of the ſhore where they ſaw the natives, near which four ſmall canoes laid cloſe in land. The Indians ſat on the rocks till the yawl was a quarter of a mile from the ſhore, and then they ran away into the woods. The ſurf beating violently on the beach, prevented the boat from landing; the gentlemen were therefore obliged to make what obſervations they could at a diſtance. The canoes reſembled generally the ſmaller ſort of thoſe of New Zealand. They ſaw a great number of cabbage trees on ſhore; the other trees were of the palm kind, and there was no underwood among them. At five in the evening they returned to the ſhip, and a light breeze ſpringing up, we ſailed to the northward, where we diſcovered ſeveral people on ſhore, who, on our approach, retired to an eminence, ſoon after which two canoes arrived on the ſhore, and four men, who came in them, joined the others. The pinnace having been ſent ahead to ſound, arrived near the ſpot where the Indians had ſtationed themſelves, on which one of them hid himſelf among the rocks near the landing place, and the others retreated farther up the hill. The pinnace keeping along ſhore, the Indians walked near in a line with her; they were armed with long pikes, and a weapon reſembling a ſcymitar, and, by various ſigns and words invited the boat's crew to land; thoſe who did not follow the boat, having obſerved the approach of the ſhip, brandiſhed their weapons, and threw themſelves into threatening attitudes. The bodies, thighs, and legs of two of theſe, were painted with white ſtreaks, and their faces were almoſt covered with a white powder. They talked together with great emotion, and each of them held one of the above mentioned weapons. The ſhip having come to an anchor, we obſerved a few huts, in which were ſome of the natives; and ſaw ſome canoes, in each of which was a man employed in ſtriking fiſh with a kind of ſpear. We had anchored oppoſite a village of about eight houſes, and obſerved an old woman and three children come out of a wood, laden with fuel for a fire; they were met by three ſmaller children, all of whom, as well as the woman, were quite naked. The old woman frequently looked at the ſhip with the utmoſt indifference, and, as ſoon as ſhe had made a fire, the fiſhermen brought their canoes on ſhore, and they ſet about dreſſing their dinner with as much compoſure, as if a ſhip had been no extraordinary ſight. Having formed a deſign of landing, we manned the boats, and took Tupia with us, and we had no ſooner come near the ſhore, than two men advanced, as if to diſpute our ſetting foot on land. They were each of them armed with different kinds of weapons. They called out aloud in a harſh tone, warra warra wai! the meaning of which Tupia did not underſtand. The captain threw them beads, nails, and other trifles, which they took up, and ſeemed very well pleaſed with. He then made ſignals that he wanted water, and uſed every poſſible means to convince them that no injury was intended. They made ſigns to the boat's crew to land, on which we put the boat in, but we had no ſooner done ſo, than the two Indians came again to oppoſe us. A muſquet was now fired between them, on the report of which, one of them dropped a bundle of lances, which he immediately ſnatched up again in great haſte. One of them then threw a ſtone at the boat, on which the captain ordered a muſquet loaded with ſmall ſhot to be fired, which wounding the eldeſt of them on the legs, he retired haſtily to one of the houſes, that ſtood at ſome little diſtance. The people in the boats now landed, imagining that the wound which this man had received would put an end to the conteſt. In this, however, we were miſtaken, for he immediately returned with a kind of ſhield, of an oval figure, painted white in the middle, with two holes in it to ſee through. They now advanced with great intrepidity, and both diſcharged their lances at the boat's crew, but did not wound any of them. Another muſquet was fired at them, on which they threw another lance, and then took to their heels. We now went up to the huts, in one of which we found the children, who had ſecreted themſelves behind ſome bark. We looked at them, but left them without its being known we had ſeen them, and having thrown ſeveral pieces of cloth, ribbands, beads, and other things into the hut, we took ſeveral of their lances, and then reimbarked in the boat. The canoes on this coaſt were about 13 feet in length, each made of the bark of a ſingle tree, tied up at the ends, and kept open in the middle by the means of ſticks placed acroſs them; their paddles were very ſmall, and two were uſed at a time.

We now ſailed to the north point of the bay, and found plenty of freſh water. On taking a view of the hut where we had ſeen the children, we had the mortification to find that every Indian was fled, and that they had left all the preſents behind them. The captain now went in the pinnace to inſpect the bay, and ſaw ſeveral of the natives, who all fled as he approached them. Some of the men having been ſent to get wood and water, they no ſooner went on board to dinner, than the natives came down to the place, and examined the caſks with great attention, but did not offer to remove them. When the people were on ſhore in the afternoon, about 20 of the natives, all armed, advanced within a trifling diſtance of them, and then ſtopped, while two of their number approached ſtill nearer. Mr. Hicks, the commanding officer on ſhore, went towards them, with preſents in his hands, and endeavoured, by every poſſible means to aſſure them of his friendly intentions, but to no purpoſe, for they retired before he came up to them. In the evening, Meſſrs. Banks and Solander, went with the captain to a cove north of the bay, where they caught between three and four hundred weight of fiſh, at four hauls.

On Monday the 30th, the natives came down to the huts before it was light, and were repeatedly heard to ſhout very loud, and ſoon after day-break they were ſeen on the beach, but quickly retired about a mile, and kindled ſeveral fires in the woods. This day ſome of the ſhip's crew being employed in cutting graſs at a diſtance from the main body, while the natives purſued them, but ſtopping within fifty or ſixty yards of them, they ſhouted ſeveral times, and retreated to the woods. In the evening they behaved exactly in the ſame manner, when the captain followed them alone and unarmed for ſome time, but they ſtill retired as he approached.

On Tueſday, May the firſt, the ſouth point of the bay was named Sutherland Point, one of the ſeamen of the name of Sutherland, having died that day, was buried on ſhore; and more preſents were left in the huts, ſuch as looking-glaſſes, combs, &c. but the former ones had not been taken away. Making an excurſion about the country, we found it agreeably variegated with wood and lawn, the trees being ſtrait and tall, and without underwood. The country might be cultivated without cutting down one of them. The graſs grows in large tufts, almoſt cloſe to each other, and there is a great plenty of it. In this excurſion, we met with many places where the inhabitants had ſlept without ſhelter, and one man, who ran away the moment he beheld us. More preſents were left in their huts, and at their ſleeping-places, in hopes of producing a friendly intercourſe. We ſaw the dung of an animal which fed on graſs, and traced the foot-ſteps of another, which had claws like a dog, and was about the ſize of a wolf: alſo the track of a ſmall animal, whoſe foot was like that of a pole-cat; and ſaw one animal alive, about the ſize of a rabbit. We found ſome wood that had been felled, and the bark ſtript off by the natives, and ſeveral growing trees, in which ſteps had been cut, for the convenience of aſcending them. The woods abound with a vaſt variety of beautiful birds, among which were cockatooes, and parroquets, which flew in large flocks. The ſecond lieutenant, Mr. Gore, having been with a boat in order to drudge for oyſters, ſaw ſome Indians, who made ſigns for him to come on ſhore, which he declined: having finiſhed his buſineſs, he ſent the boat away, and went by land with a midſhipman, to join the party that was getting water. In their way they met with more than 20 of the natives, who followed them ſo cloſe as to come within a few yards of them; Mr. Gore ſtopped and faced them, on which the Indians ſtopped alſo, and when he proceeded again, they followed him; but they did not attack him though they had each man a lance. The Indians coming in ſight of the water-caſks, ſtood at the diſtance of a quarter of a mile, while Mr. Gore and his companions reached their ſhip-mates in ſafety. Two or three of the waterers now advanced towards the Indians, but obſerving they did not retire, they very imprudently turned about, and retreated haſtily: this apparent ſign of cowardice inſpired the ſavages, who diſcharged four of their lances at the fugitives, which flying beyond them, they eſcaped unhurt. They now ſtopped to pick up the lances; on which the Indians retired in their turn. At this inſtant the captain came up with Meſſrs. Banks and Solander, and Tupia advancing made ſigns of friendſhip; but the poor natives would not ſtay their coming up to them. On the following day they went again on ſhore, where many plants were collected by Dr. Solander, and Mr. Banks. They ſaw ſeveral parties of the Indians, who all ran away on their approach. Tupia having learnt to ſhoot, frequently ſtrayed alone to ſhoot parrots, and the Indians conſtantly fled away from him with as much precipitation as from the Engliſh. On the 3d of May, fourteen or fifteen Indians, in the ſame number of canoes, were engaged in ſtriking fiſh within half a mile of the watering-place. At this time a party of the ſhip's crew were ſhooting near the fiſhermen, one of whom Mr. Banks obſerved to haul up his canoe on the beach, and approach the people who were ſhooting. He watched their motions unobſerved by them, for more than a quarter of an hour, then put off his boat and returned to his fiſhing. At this time the captain, with Dr. Solander and another gentleman, went to the head of the bay to try to form ſome connection with the Indians. On their firſt landing they found ſeveral of the Indians on ſhore, who immediately retreated to their canoes, and rowed off. They went up the country, where they found the ſoil to be a deep black mould, which appeared to be calculated for the production of any kind of grain. They ſaw ſome of the fineſt meadows that were ever beheld, and met with a few rocky places, the ſtone of which is ſandy, and ſeemed to be admirably adapted for building. In the woods they found a tree bearing cherries, if ſhape and colour may intitle them to that name, the juice of which was agreeably tart. They now returned to their boat, and ſeeing a fire at a diſtance, rowed towards it; but the Indians fled at their coming near them. Near the beach they found ſeven canoes, and as many fires, from which they judged that each fiſherman had dreſſed his own dinner. There were oyſters lying on the ſpot, and ſome muſcles roaſting on the fire. They ate of theſe fiſh, and left them ſome beads and other trifles in return. They now returned to the ſhip, and in the evening Mr. Banks went out with his gun, and ſaw a great number of quails, ſome of which he ſhot, and they proved to be the ſame kind as thoſe of England. On the following day a midſhipman having ſtrayed from his companions, came ſuddenly to an old man and woman, and ſome children, who were ſitting naked under a tree together: they ſeemed afraid of him, but did not run away. The man wore a long beard, and both he and the woman were grey-headed; but the woman's hair was cut ſhort. This day likewiſe, two of another party met with ſix Indians on the border of a wood, one of whom calling out very loud, a lance was thrown from a wood, which narrowly miſſed them. The Indians now ran off, and, in looking round they ſaw a youth deſcend from a tree, who had doubtleſs been placed there for the purpoſe of throwing the lance at them. This day the captain went up the country on the north ſide of the bay, which he found to reſemble the moory grounds of England; but the land was thinly covered with plants about 16 inches high. The hills riſe gradually behind each other, for a conſiderable diſtance, and between them is marſhy ground. Thoſe who had been ſent out to fiſh this day, met with great ſucceſs, and the ſecond lieutenant ſtruck a fiſh called the Stingray, which weighed near two hundred and fifty pounds. The next morning a fiſh of the ſame kind was taken, which weighed three hundred and fifty pounds. The name of Botany Bay was given to this place from the large number of plants collected by Meſſrs. Banks and Solander. This country produces two kinds of wood which may be deemed timber, one of which is tall and ſtrait like the pine, and the other is hard, heavy, and dark coloured, like lignum vitæ; it yields a red gum, like dragon's blood, and bears ſome reſemblance of the Engliſh oak. There are mangroves in abundance, ſeveral kinds of palm, and a few ſhrubs. Among other kinds of birds, crows were found here, exactly like thoſe of England. There is great plenty of water-fowls, among the flats of ſand and mud; one of which is ſhaped like a pelican, is larger than a ſwan, and has black and white feathers. Theſe banks of mud abound with cockles, muſcles, oyſters, and other ſhell-fiſh, which greatly contribute towards the ſupport of the natives, who ſometimes dreſs them on ſhore, and at other times in their canoes. They likewiſe caught many other kinds of fiſh with hooks and line.

While the captain remained in the harbour, the Engliſh colours were diſplayed on ſhore, daily, and the name of the ſhip, with the date of the year, was carved on a tree near the place where we took in our water.

On Sunday the 6th of May, at noon, we ſailed from Botany Bay, and at noon, were off a harbour, which was called Port Jackſon, and in the evening, near a bay, to which we gave the name of Broken Bay. The next day at noon, the northernmoſt land in ſight projected ſo as to juſtify the calling it Cape Three Points. On Wedneſday the 9th, we ſaw two exceeding beautiful rainbows, the colours of which were ſtrong and lively, and thoſe of the inner one ſo bright, as to reflect its ſhadow on the water. They formed a complete ſemicircle, and the ſpace between them was much darker than the reſt of the ſky. On Thurſday we paſſed a rocky point, which was named Point Stephens. Next day ſaw ſmoke in ſeveral places on ſhore, and in the evening diſcovered three remarkable high hills near each other, which the captain named the Three Brothers. They lie in latitude 31 deg. 40 min. and may be ſeen thirteen or fourteen leagues from the ſhore.

Sunday, the 13th, we ſaw the ſmoke of fires, on a point of land, which was therefore called Cape Smokey. As we proceeded from Botany Bay, northward, the land appeared high and well covered with wood. In the afternoon, we diſcovered ſome rocky iſlands between us and the land, the ſouthermoſt of which is in latitude 30 deg. 10 min. and the northermoſt in 29 deg. 58 min. On Tueſday morning, by the aſſiſtance of our glaſſes, we diſcerned about a ſcore of Indians, each loaded with a bundle, which we imagined to be palm leaves for covering their houſes. We traced them for more than an hour, during which time they took not the leaſt notice of the ſhip; at length they left the beach, and were loſt behind a hill, which they gained by a gentle aſcent. At noon, in latitude 28 deg. 37 min. 30 ſec. ſouth, and in 206 deg. 30 min. weſt longitude, the Captain diſcovered a high point of land, and named it Cape Byron. We continued to ſteer along the ſhore with a freſh gale, and in the evening we diſcovered breakers at a conſiderable diſtance from the ſhore, ſo that we were obliged to tack, and get into deeper water; which having done, we lay with the head of the veſſel to the land till the next morning, when we were ſurprized to find ourſelves farther to the ſouthward than we had been the preceding evening, notwithſtanding we had a ſoutherly wind all night. The breakers lie in latitude 28 deg. 22 min. ſouth. In the morning we paſſed the breakers, near a peaked mountain, which we named Mount Warning, ſituated in 28 deg. 22 min. ſouth latitude. The point off which theſe ſhoals lie, Capt. Cook named Point Danger. We purſued our courſe, and the next day ſaw more breakers, near a point, which we diſtinguiſhed by the name of Point Look-out; to the north of which the ſhore forms a wide open bay, which we called Moreton's Bay, and the north point thereof Cape Moreton. Near this are three hills, which we called the Glaſs Houſes, from the very ſtrong reſemblance they bore to ſuch buildings.

On Friday the 18th, at two in the morning, we deſcried a point ſo unequal, that it looks like two ſmall iſlands under the land, and it was therefore called Double Iſland Point. At noon, by the help of glaſſes, we diſcovered ſome ſands, which lay in patches of ſeveral acres. We obſerved they were moveable, and that they had not been long in their preſent ſituation; for we ſaw trees half buried, and the tops of others ſtill green. At this time two beautiful water-ſnakes ſwam by the ſhip, in every reſpect reſembling land ſnakes, except that their tails were flat and broad, probably to ſerve them inſtead of fins in ſwimming.

Saturday, the 19th at noon, we ſailed about four leagues from the land, and at one o'clock ſaw a point, whereon a number of Indians were aſſembled, from whence it was called Indian Head. Soon afterwards we ſaw many more of the natives; alſo ſmoke in the day time, and fires by night. The next day we ſaw a point, which was named Sandy Point, from two large tracts of white ſand that were on it. Soon after we paſſed a ſhoal, which we called Break Sea Spit, becauſe we had now ſmooth water, after having long encountered a high ſea. For ſome days paſt we had ſeen the ſea birds, called boobies, none of which we had met with before; and which, from half an hour after, were continually paſſing the ſhip in large flights: from which it was conjectured, that there was an inlet or river of ſhallow water to the ſouthward, where they went to feed in the day time, returning in the evening to ſome iſlands to the northward. In honour of Capt. Hervey we named this bay, Hervey's Bay.

On Tueſday, the 22nd, at ſix in the morning, by the help of our glaſſes, when a-breaſt of the ſouth point of a large bay, in which the Captain intended to anchor, we diſcovered, that the land was covered with palm-nut-trees, none of which we had ſeen ſince we had quitted the iſlands within the tropic. On the 23d, early in the morning, Capt. Cook attended by ſeveral gentlemen, and Tupia, went on ſhore to examine the country. The wind blew ſo freſh, and we found it ſo cold, that being at ſome diſtance from the ſhore, we took with us our cloaks. We landed a little within the point of a bay, which led into a large lagoon, by the ſides of which grows the true mangrove, ſuch as is found in the Weſt-Indies, as it does alſo on ſome bogs, and ſwamps of ſalt water which we diſcovered. In theſe mangroves were many neſts of ants of a ſingular kind, being as green as graſs. When the branches were moved, they came forth in great numbers, and bit the diſturber moſt ſeverely. Theſe trees likewiſe afforded ſhelter for immenſe numbers of green caterpillars, whoſe bodies were covered with hairs, which, on the touch, occaſioned a pain ſimilar to the ſting of a nettle, but much more acute. Theſe inſects were ranged ſide by ſide on the leaves, thirty or forty together, in a regular manner. Among the ſand banks we ſaw birds larger than ſwans, which we imagined were pelicans; and ſhot a kind of buſtard, which weighed ſeventeen pounds. This bird proved very delicate food, on which account we named this bay Buſtard Bay. We likewiſe ſhot a duck of a moſt beautiful plumage, with a white beak. We found an abundance of oyſters, of various ſorts, and among the reſt ſome hammer oyſters of a curious kind. The country here is much worſe than that about Botany Bay, the ſoil being dry and ſandy, but the ſides of the hills are covered with trees, which grow ſeparately without underwood. We ſaw the tree that yields a gum like the *ſanguis draconis*, but the leaves are longer than the ſame kind of trees in other parts, and hang down like thoſe of a weeping willow. While we were in the woods, ſeveral of the natives took a ſurvey of the ſhip and then departed. We ſaw on ſhore fires in many places, and repairing to one of them, found a dozen burning near them. The people were gone, but had left ſome ſhells and bones of fiſh they had juſt eaten. We perceived likewiſe ſeveral pieces of ſoft bark about the length and breadth of a man, which we judged had been uſed as beds. The whole was in a thicket of cloſe trees, which afforded good ſhelter from the wind. This kind of encampment was in a thicket well defended from the wind. The place ſeemed to be much trodden, and as there was no appearance of a houſe, it was imagined that they ſpent their nights, as well as their days in the open air: even Tupia ſhook his head, and exclaimed, Taata Enos! "Poor Wretches!"

On Thurſday, the 24th, we made ſail out of the bay, and on the day following were a-breaſt of a point, which being immediately under the tropic, the captain named Cape Capricorn, on the weſt ſide whereof we ſaw an amazing number of large birds reſembling the pelican, ſome of which were near five feet high. We now anchored in twelve fathom water, having the main land and barren iſlands in a manner all round us.

Sunday, the 27th, we ſtood betweeen the range of almoſt barren iſlands, and the main land, which appeared mountainous. We had here very ſhallow water, and anchored in ſixteen feet, which was not more than the ſhip drew. Mr. Banks tried to fiſh from the cabin windows, but the water was too ſhallow. The ground indeed was covered with crabs, which greedily ſeized the bait, and held it till they were above water. Theſe crabs were of two kinds, one of a very fine blue, with a white belly; and the other marked with blue on the joints, and having three brown ſpots on the back.

On Monday, the 28th, in the morning, we ſailed to the northward, and to the northermoſt point of land we gave the name of Cape Manifold, from the number of high hills appearing above it. Between this cape and the ſhore is a bay which we called Keppel's, and to ſeveral iſlands, we gave the name of the ſame admiral. This day being determined to keep the main land cloſe aboard, which continued to trend away to the weſt, we got among another cluſter of iſlands. Here we were greatly alarmed, having on a ſudden but three fathom water, in a ripling tide; we immediately put the ſhip about, and hoiſted out the boat in ſearch of deeper water; after which we ſtood to the weſt with an eaſy ſail, and in the evening came to the entrance of a bay. In the afternoon having ſounded round the ſhip, and found that there was water ſufficient to carry her over the ſhoal, we weighed, and ſtood to the weſtward, having ſent a boat a-head to ſound, and at ſix in the evening we anchored in ten fathom, with a ſandy bottom, at about two miles diſtant from the main.

On Tueſday the 29th, we had thoughts of laying the ſhip aſhore, and cleaning her bottom, and therefore landed with the maſter in ſearch of a convenient place for that purpoſe. In this excurſion Dr. Solander and Mr. Banks accompanied us; we found walking extremely incommodious, the ground being covered with graſs, the ſeeds of which were ſharp and bearded, ſo that they were continually ſticking in our cloaths, whence they worked forwards to the fleſh by means of the beard. We were alſo perpetually tormented with the ſtings of muſquetos. Several places were found convenient to lay down the ſhip aſhore, but to our great diſappointment, we could meet with no freſh water. We proceeded, however, up the country, and in the interior parts, we found gum-trees, on the branches whereof were white ants neſts formed of clay, as big as a buſhel. On another tree we ſaw black ants, which perforated all the twigs, and after they had eaten out the pith, formed their lodging in the hollows which contained it; yet the trees were in a flouriſhing condition. We alſo ſaw in the air many thouſands of butterflies, which ever way we looked; and every bough was covered with incredible numbers. On the dry ground we diſcovered, ſuppoſed to have been left by the tide, a fiſh about the ſize of a minnow, having two ſtrong breaſt fins, with which it leaped away as nimbly as a frog: it did not appear to be weakened by being out of the water, nor even to prefer that element to the land, for when ſeen in the water it leaped on ſhore, and purſued its way. It was likewiſe remarked, that where there were ſmall ſtones projecting above the water, it choſe rather to leap from one ſtone to another, than to paſs through the water.

On Wedneſday the 30th Capt. Cook, and other gentlemen, went aſhore, and having gained the ſummit of a hill, took a ſurvey of the coaſt, and the adjacent iſlands, which being done, the Captain proceeded with Dr. Solander up an inlet, that had been diſcovered the preceding day; but the weather proving unfavourable, and from a fear of being bewildered among the ſhoals in the night, they returned to the ſhip, having ſeen the whole day, only two Indians, who followed the boat a conſiderable way along ſhore; but the tide running ſtrong, the Captain thought it not prudent to wait for them. While theſe gentlemen were tracing the inlet, Mr. Banks, with a party, endeavoured to penetrate into the country, and having met with a piece of ſwampy ground, we reſolved to paſs it; but before we got half way, we found the mud almoſt knee deep. The bottom was covered with branches of trees, interwoven on the ſurface of the ſwamp, on which we ſometimes kept our footing; ſometimes our feet ſlipt through; and ſometimes we were ſo entangled among them, as not to be able to free ourſelves but by groping in the mud and ſlime with our hands. However, we croſſed it in about an hour, and judged it might be about a quarter of a mile over. Having performed this diſagreeable taſk, we came to a ſpot where had been four ſmall fires, near which were ſome bones of fiſh that had been roaſted; alſo graſs laid in heaps, whereon four or five perſons probably had ſlept. Our ſecond lieutenant, Mr. Gore, at another place, ſaw the track of a large animal, near a gully of water; he alſo heard the ſounds of human voices, but did not ſee the people. At this place two turtles, ſome water fowl, and a few ſmall birds, were ſeen. As no water was to be found in our different excurſions, for ſeveral of our crew were alſo rambling about, the Captain called the inlet where the ſhip lay, Thirſty Sound. It lies in latitude 22 deg. 10 min. ſouth, and in 210 deg. 18 min. weſt longitude, and may be known by a group of iſlands that lie right before it, between three and four leagues out at ſea. We had not a ſingle inducement to ſtay longer in a place, where we could not be ſupplied with freſh water, nor with proviſion of any kind. We caught neither fiſh nor wild fowl; nor could we get a ſhot at the ſame kind of water-fowl, which we had ſeen in Botany Bay. Therefore on the 31ſt at ſix o'clock, A. M. we weighed anchor, and put to ſea. We kept without the iſlands that lie in ſhore, and to the N. W. of Thirſty Sound, as there appeared to be no ſafe paſſage between them and the main, at the ſame time we had a number of iſlands without us, extending as far as we could ſee. Pier head, the N. W. point of Thirſty Sound, bore S. E. diſtant ſix leagues, being half way between the iſlands which are off the eaſt point of the weſtern inlet, and three ſmall iſlands that lie directly without them. Having ſailed round theſe laſt, we came to an anchor in fifteen fathom water, and the weather being dark, hazy, and rainy, we remained under the lee of them till ſeven o'clock of the next morning.

On the 1ſt of June, we got under ſail, and our latitude by obſervation was 21 deg. 29 min. ſouth. We had now quite open the weſtern inlet, which we have diſtinguiſhed by the name of Broad Sound. A point of land which forms its N. W. entrance, we named Cape Palmerſton, lying in 21 deg. 30 min. S. latitude, and in 210 deg. 54 min. W. longitude. Between this cape and Cape Townſhend is the bay, which we have called the Bay of Inlets. At eight in the evening, we anchored in eleven fathom, with a ſandy bottom, about two leagues from the main land.

Saturday the 2nd, we got under ſail, and at noon, in latitude 20 deg. 56 min. we ſaw a high promontory, which we named Cape Hillſborough. It bore W. half N. diſtant ſeven miles. The land appeared to abound in wood and herbage, and is diverſified with hills, plains, and valleys. A chain of iſlands large and ſmall are ſituated at a diſtance from the coaſt and under the land, from ſome of which we ſaw ſmoke aſcending in different places.

On Sunday, the 3d, we diſcovered a point of land, which we called Cape Conway, and between that and Cape Hillſborough, a bay to which we gave the name of Repulſe Bay. The land about Cape Conway forms a moſt beautiful landſcape, being diverſified with hills, dales, woods, and verdant lawns. By the help of our glaſſes we diſcovered two men and a woman on one of the iſlands, and a canoe with an outrigger like thoſe of Otaheite. This day we named the iſlands Cumberland Iſlands, in honour of the duke; and a paſſage which we had diſcovered, was called Whitſunday paſſage, from the day on which it was ſeen. At day-break, on Monday the 4th, we were abreaſt of a point, which we called Cape Glouceſter. Names were alſo given this day to three other places, namely, Holborne Iſle, Edgcumbe Bay, and Cape Upſtart, which laſt was ſo called becauſe it riſes abruptly from the low lands that ſurround it. Inland are ſome hills or mountains, which like the cape afford but a barren proſpect.

On Tueſday the 5th, we were about four leagues from land, and our latitude by obſervation was 19 deg. 12 min. S. We ſaw very large columns of ſmoke riſing from the low lands. We continued to ſteer W. N. W. as the land lay, till noon on the 6th, when our latitude by obſervation was 19 deg. 1 min. S. at which time we had the mouth of a bay all open, diſtant two leagues. This we named Cleveland Bay, and the eaſt point Cape Cleveland. The weſt, which had the appearance of an iſland, we called Magnetical iſland, becauſe the compaſs did not traverſe well when we were near it: they are both high, as is the main land between them, the whole forming a ſurface the moſt rugged, rocky, and barren of any we had ſeen upon the coaſt: yet it was not without inhabitants, for we ſaw ſmoke in ſeveral parts of the bottom of the bay.

Thurſday the 7th, at day-break we were a-breaſt of the eaſtern part of this land, and in the afternoon ſaw ſeveral large columns of ſmoke upon the main; alſo canoes, and ſome trees, which we thought were thoſe of the cocoa-nut: in ſearch of which, as they would have been at this time very acceptable, Mr. Banks and Dr. Solander went aſhore with lieutenant Hicks; but in the evening they returned with only a few plants, gathered from the cabbage palm, and which had been miſtaken for the cocoa tree.

On Friday, the 8th, we ſtood away for the northermoſt point in ſight, to which we gave the name of Point Hillock. Between this and Magnetical iſle the ſhore forms Halifax Bay, which affords ſhelter from all winds. At ſix in the evening we were a-breaſt of a point of land, which we named Cape Sandwich. From hence the land trends W. and afterwards N. forming a fine large bay, which was named Rockingham Bay. We now ranged northward along the ſhore, towards a cluſter of iſlands, on one of which about forty or fifty men, women, and children were ſtanding together, all ſtark naked, and looking at the ſhip with a curioſity never obſerved among theſe people before. At noon our latitude, by obſervation, was 17 deg. 59 min. and we were a-breaſt of the north point of Rockingham Bay, which bore from us W. diſtant about two miles. This boundary of the bay is formed by an iſland of conſiderable height, which we diſtinguiſhed by the name of Dunk Iſle.

On Saturday, the 9th, in the morning, we were a-breaſt of ſome ſmall iſlands, which were named

Frankland's Iſles. At noon we were in the middle of the channel, and by obſervation in latitude 16 deg. 57 min. S. and in longitude 214 deg. 6 min. W. with twenty fathom water. The point on the main of which we were now abreaſt Capt. Cook named Cape Grafton. Having hauled round this, we found a bay three miles to the weſtward, in which we anchored; and called the iſland Green Iſland. Here Mr. Banks and Dr. Solander went aſhore with the captain, with a view of procuring water, which not being to be had eaſily, they ſoon returned aboard, and the next day we arrived near Trinity Bay, ſo called becauſe diſcovered on Trinity Sunday.

Sunday the 10th was remarkable for the dangerous ſituation of the Endeavour, as was Tueſday the 12th; for her preſervation and deliverance, as chriſtians, or only moral philoſophers, we ought to add, agreeable to the will of an overruling providence, who ſhut up the ſea with doors, who appointed for it a decreed place, and ſaid, Thus far thou ſhall come, and here ſhall thy proud waves be ſtayed. As no accident remarkably unfortunate had befallen us, during a navigation of more than thirteen hundred miles, upon a coaſt every where abounding with the moſt dangerous rocks and ſhoals, no name of diſtreſs had hitherto been given to any cape or point of land which we had ſeen. But we now gave the name of Cape Tribulation, to a point we had juſt ſeen fartheſt to the northward, becauſe here we became acquainted with misfortune. The cape lies in latitude 16 deg. 6 min. S. and 214 deg. 39 min. W. longitude.

This day, Sunday the 10th, at ſix in the evening we ſhortened ſail, and hauled off ſhore cloſe upon a wind, to avoid the danger of ſome rocks, which were ſeen a-head, and to obſerve whether any iſlands lay in the offing, as we were near the latitude of thoſe iſlands, ſaid to have been diſcovered by Quiros. We kept ſtanding off from ſix o'clock till near nine, with a fine breeze and bright moon. We had got into twenty-one fathom water, when ſuddenly we fell into twelve, ten and eight fathom, in a few minutes. Every man was inſtantly ordered to his ſtation, and we were on the point of anchoring, when, on a ſudden, we had again deep water, ſo that we thought all danger at an end, concluding we had ſailed over the tail of ſome ſhoals, which we had ſeen in the evening. We had twenty fathoms and upwards before ten o'clock, and this depth continuing ſome time, the gentlemen, who had hitherto been upon duty, retired to reſt; but in leſs than an hour the water ſhallowed at once from twenty to ſeventeen fathoms, and before ſoundings could be taken the ſhip ſtruck upon a rock, and remained immoveable. Every one was inſtantly on deck, with countenances fully expreſſive of the horrors of our ſituation. Knowing we were not near the ſhore, we concluded that we were upon a rock of coral, the points of which are ſharp, and the ſurface ſo rough, as to grind away whatever it rubbed againſt, even with the gentleſt motion. All the ſails being immediately taken in, and our boats hoiſted out, we found, that the ſhip had been lifted over a ledge of the rock, and lay in a hollow within it. Finding the water was deepeſt a-ſtern, we carried out the anchor from the ſtarboard quarter, and applied our whole force to the capſtan, in hopes to get the veſſel off, but in vain. She now beat ſo violently againſt the rock, that the crew could ſcarcely keep on their legs. The moon ſhone bright, by the light of which we could ſee the ſheathing-boards float from the bottom of the veſſel, till at length the falſe keel followed, ſo that we expected inſtant deſtruction. Our beſt chance of eſcaping ſeemed now to be by lightening her; but having ſtruck at high water, we ſhould have been in our preſent ſituation after the veſſel ſhould draw as much leſs water as the water had ſunk; our anxiety abated a little, on finding that the ſhip ſettled on the rocks as the tide ebbed, and we flattered ourſelves, that, if the ſhip ſhould keep together till next tide, we might have ſome chance of floating her. We therefore inſtantly ſtarted the water in the hold, and pumped it up. The decayed ſtores, oil-jars, caſks, ballaſt, ſix guns, and other things, were thrown overboard, in order to get at the heavier articles: and in this buſineſs we were employed till day-break, during all which time not an oath was ſworn, ſo much were the minds of the ſailors impreſſed with a ſenſe of their danger.

On Monday the 11th, at day-light we ſaw land at eight leagues diſtance, but not a ſingle iſland between us and the main, on which part of the crew might have been landed, while the boat went on ſhore with the reſt: ſo that the deſtruction of the greater part of us would have been inevitable had the ſhip gone to pieces. It happened that the wind died away to a dead calm before noon. As we expected high-water about eleven o'clock, every thing was prepared to make another effort to free the ſhip, but the tide fell ſo much ſhort of that in the night, that ſhe did not float by 18 inches, though we had thrown over-board near fifty tons weight: we therefore renewed our toil, and threw over-board every thing that could poſſibly be ſpared; as the tide fell, the water poured in ſo rapidly, that we could ſcarce keep her free by the conſtant working of two pumps. Our only hope now depended on the midnight tide, and preparations were accordingly made for another effort to get the ſhip off. The tide began to riſe at five o'clock, when the leak likewiſe increaſed to ſuch a degree, that two pumps more were manned, but only one of them would work; three, therefore, were kept going, till nine o'clock, at which time the ſhip righted; but ſo much water had been admitted by the leak, that we expected ſhe would ſink as ſoon as the water ſhould bear her off the rock. Our ſituation was now deplorable, beyond deſcription, almoſt all hope being at an end. We knew that when the fatal moment ſhould arrive, all authority would be at an end. The boats were incapable of conveying all on ſhore, and we dreaded a conteſt for the preference, as more ſhocking than the ſhipwreck itſelf: yet it was conſidered, that thoſe who might be left on board, would eventually meet with a milder fate than thoſe who, by gaining the ſhore, would have no chance but to linger out the remains of life among the rudeſt ſavages in the univerſe, and in a country, where fire-arms would barely enable them to ſupport themſelves in a moſt wretched ſituation. At twenty minutes after ten the ſhip floated, and was heaved into deep water, when we were happy to find that ſhe did not admit more water than ſhe had done before: yet as the leak had for a conſiderable time gained on the pumps, there was now three feet nine inches water in the hold. By this time the men were ſo worn by fatigue of mind and body, that none of them could pump more than five or ſix minutes at a time, and then threw themſelves, quite ſpent, on the deck, amidſt a ſtream of water which came from the pumps. The ſucceeding man being fatigued in his turn, threw himſelf down in the ſame manner, while the former jumped up and renewed his labour, thus mutually ſtruggling for life, till the following accident had like to have given them up a prey to abſolute deſpair, and thereby inſured our deſtruction. Between the inſide lining of the ſhip's bottom, which is called the cieling, and the outſide planking, there is a ſpace of about ſeventeen or eighteen inches. The man who had hitherto taken the depth of water at the well, had taken it no farther than the cieling, but being now relieved by another perſon, who took the depth of the outſide plank, it appeared by this miſtake, that the leak had ſuddenly gained upon the pumps, the whole difference between the two planks. This circumſtance deprived us of all hopes, and ſcarce any one thought it worth while to labour for the longer preſervation of a life which muſt ſo ſoon have a period: but the miſtake was ſoon diſcovered; and the joy ariſing from ſuch unexpected good news inſpired the men with ſo much vigour, that before eight o'clock in the morning, they had pumped out conſiderably more water than they had ſhipped. We now talked of nothing but getting the ſhip into ſome harbour, and ſet heartily to work to get in the anchors; one of which, and the cable of another, we loſt; but theſe were now conſidered as trifles. Having a good breeze from ſea, we got under ſail at eleven o'clock, and ſteered for land. As we could not diſcover the exact ſituation of the leak, we had no proſpect of ſtopping it within-ſide of the veſſel, but on Tueſday the 12th, the following expedient, which one of the midſhipmen had formerly ſeen tried with ſucceſs, was adopted. We took an old ſtudding-ſail, and having mixed a large quantity of oakham and wool, chopped ſmall, it was ſtitched down in handfuls on the ſail, as lightly as poſſible, the dung of ſheep and other filth being ſpread over it. Thus prepared, the ſail was hauled under the ſhip, by ropes, which kept it extended till it came under the leak, when the ſuction carried in the oakham and wool from the ſurface of the ſail. This experiment ſucceeded ſo well, that inſtead of three pumps, the water was eaſily kept under with one.

We had hitherto no farther view than to run the ſhip into ſome harbour, and build a veſſel from her materials, in which we might reach the Eaſt-Indies; but we now began to think of finding a proper place to repair her damage, and then to purſue her voyage on its original plan. At ſix in the evening we anchored ſeven leagues from the ſhore; and found that the ſhip made 15 inches water an hour during the night: but as the pumps could clear this quantity, we were not uneaſy. At nine in the morning we paſſed two iſlands, which were called Hope Iſlands, becauſe the reaching of them had been the object of our wiſhes, at the time of the ſhipwreck. In the afternoon, the maſter was ſent out with two boats to ſound and ſearch for a harbour where the ſhip might be repaired, and we anchored at ſun-ſet, in four fathoms water, two miles from the ſhore. One of the mates being ſent out in the pinnace, returned at nine o'clock, reporting, that he had found ſuch a harbour as was wanted, at the diſtance of two leagues.

Wedneſday, the 13th, at ſix o'clock, we ſailed, having previouſly ſent two boats a-head, to point out the ſhoals that we ſaw in our way. We ſoon anchored about a mile from the ſhore, when the Captain went out, and found the channel very narrow, but the harbour was better adapted to our preſent purpoſe, than any place we had ſeen in the whole courſe of the voyage. As it blew very freſh this day and the following night, we could not venture to run into the harbour, but remained at anchor during the two ſucceeding days, in the courſe of which we obſerved four Indians on the hills, who ſtopped and made two fires.

Our men, by this time, began to be afflicted with the ſcurvey; and our Indian friend Tupia was ſo ill with it, that he had livid ſpots on both his legs. Mr. Green, the aſtronomer, was likewiſe ill of the ſame diſorder; ſo that our being detained from landing was every way diſagreeable. The wind continued freſh till the 17th, and then we reſolved to puſh in for the harbour, and twice ran the ſhip a-ground; the ſecond time ſhe ſtuck faſt, on which we took down the booms, fore-yard, and fore-top-maſts, and made a raft on the ſide of the ſhip; and, as the tide happened to be riſing, ſhe floated at one o'clock. We ſoon got her into the harbour, where ſhe was moored along the ſide of a beach, and the anchors, cables, &c. immediately taken out of her.

C H A P. IX.

The ſhip is refitted in Endeavour River—Tranſactions during that time—The country, its inhabitants and productions deſcribed—A deſcription of the harbour, the adjacent country, and ſeveral iſlands near the coaſt—The range from Endeavour River to the northern extremity of the country—And the dangers of that navigation—The Endeavour departs from South Wales—That country, its product and people deſcribed, with a ſpecimen of the language.

ON Monday, the 18th, in the morning, we erected a tent for the ſick, who were brought on ſhore as ſoon as it was ready for their reception. We likewiſe built a ſtage from the ſhip to the ſhore, and ſet up a tent to hold the proviſions and ſtores, that were landed the ſame day. The boat was now diſpatched in ſearch of fiſh for the refreſhment of the ſick, but ſhe returned without getting any; but Tupia employed himſelf in angling, and living entirely upon what he caught, recovered his health very faſt. In an excurſion Mr. Banks made up the country, he ſaw the frames of ſeveral huts, and Captain Cook having aſcended one of the higheſt hills, obſerved the land to be ſtoney and barren, and the low land, near the river, over-run with mangroves, among which the ſalt water flowed every tide.

Tueſday, the 19th, the ſmith's forge was ſet up, and the armourer prepared the neceſſary iron-work for the repair of the veſſel. The officers ſtores, ballaſt, water, &c. were likewiſe ordered out, in order to lighten the ſhip. This day Mr. Banks croſſed the river, to view the country, which he obſerved to be little elſe than ſand-hills. He ſaw vaſt flocks of pigeons, moſt beautiful birds, of which he ſhot ſeveral. On Wedneſday, the 20th, as we were removing the coals, the water ruſhed in, near the foremaſt, about three feet from the keel; ſo that it was reſolved to clear the hold entirely; which being done on Friday, the 22nd, we warped the ſhip higher up the harbour, to a ſtation more proper for laying her a-ſhore, in order to ſtop the leak. Early in the morning, the tide having left her, we proceeded to examine the leak, when it appeared that the rocks had cut through four planks into the timbers, and that three other planks were damaged. In theſe breaches not a ſplinter was to be ſeen, the whole being ſmooth, as if cut away by an inſtrument: but it was the will of an omnipotent being, that the veſſel ſhould be preſerved by a very ſingular circumſtance: for though one of the holes was large enough to have ſunk her, even with eight pumps conſtantly at work, yet this inlet to our deſtruction was partly ſtopped up, by a fragment of the rock being left ſticking therein. We likewiſe found ſome pieces of the oakham, wool, &c. which had got between the timbers, and ſtopped thoſe parts of the leak that the ſtone had left open. Excluſive of the leak, great damage was done to various parts of the ſhip's bottom. While the ſmiths were employed in making nails and bolts, the carpenters began to work on the veſſel; and ſome of the people were ſent on the other ſide of the river to ſhoot pigeons for the ſick. They found a ſtream of freſh water, ſeveral inhabitants of the Indians, and ſaw a mouſe-coloured animal, exceeding ſwift, and about the ſize of a greyhound.

On Saturday, the 23d, a boat was diſpatched to haul the ſeine, and returned at noon with only three fiſh, and yet we ſaw them in plenty leaping about the harbour. This day many of the crew ſaw the animal above-mentioned; and one of the ſeamen declared he had ſeen the devil, which John thus deſcribed, "He was," ſays he, "as large as a one gallon keg, and very like it: he had horns and wings, yet he crept ſo ſlowly through the graſs, that, if I had not been afeard, I might have touched him." This formidable apparition we afterwards diſcovered to have been a batt, which we muſt acknowledge has a frightful appearance, it being black, and full as large as a partridge; but the man's own apprehenſions had furniſhed his devil with horns.

Sunday, Mr. Gore, and a party of men ſent out with him, procured a bunch or two of wild plantains, and a few palm cabbages, for the refreſhment of the ſick: and this day the Captain and Mr. Banks ſaw the animal already mentioned. It had a long tail that it carried like a greyhound, leaped like a deer, and the point of its foot reſembled that of a goat. The repairs of the ſhip on the ſtarboard-ſide having been finiſhed the preceding day, the carpenters now began to work under her larboard bow; and being examined abaſt, it appeared ed ſhe had received very little injury in that quarter. Mr. Banks having removed his whole collection of plants into the bread room, they were this day under water, by which ſome of them were totally deſtroyed; however by great care moſt of them were reſtored to a ſtate of preſervation. A plant was found this day, the 25th, the leaves of which were almoſt as good as ſpinnage; alſo a fruit of a deep purple colour, and the ſize of a golden pippin, which after having been kept a few days taſted like a damſon. On Tueſday, the 26th, the carpenter was engaged in caulking the ſhip, and the men in other neceſſary buſineſs; and on the 27th the armourer continued to work at the forge, and the carpenter on the ſhip; while the Captain made ſeveral hauls with the large net, but caught only between twenty and thirty fiſh, which were diſtributed among the ſick, and thoſe who were not yet quite recovered. We began this day to move ſome of the weight from the after-part of the ſhip forward, to eaſe her. On the 28th, Mr. Banks with ſome ſeamen went up into the country, to whom he ſhewed a plant which ſerved them for greens, and which the inhabitants of the Weſt-Indies call Indian Kale. Here we ſaw a tree notched for climbing: alſo neſts of white ants from a few inches to five feet in height, prints of mens feet, and the tracks of three or four animals were likewiſe diſcovered.

On Friday the 29th, at two o'clock in the morning, Capt. Cook with Mr. Green, obſerved an emerſion of Jupiter's firſt ſatellite: the time here was 2 hours 18 min. 53 ſec. which makes the longitude of this place 214 deg. 42 min. 30 ſec. W. and the latitude 15 deg. 26 min. S. At dawn of day the boat was ſent out to haul for fiſh, and took what made an allowance of one pound and a half to each man. One of our midſhipmen, this day abroad with his gun, reported, that he had ſeen a wolf, reſembling exactly the ſame ſpecies in America, at which he ſhot, but could not kill it. The next morning, being the 30th, the captain aſcended a hill to a take a view of the ſea, when he obſerved innumerable ſand banks and ſhoals, in every direction; but to the northward there was an appearance of a paſſage, which ſeemed the only way to ſteer clear of the ſurrounding dangers, eſpecially as the wind blows conſtantly from the S.E. Mr. Gore ſaw this day two ſtraw coloured animals of the ſize of a hare, but ſhaped like a dog. In the afternoon the people returned with ſuch a quantity of fiſh, that two pounds and a half were diſtributed to each man; and plenty of greens had been gathered, which when boiled with peas made an excellent meſs, and we all thought this day's fare an unſpeakable refreſhment.

On Sunday the 1ſt of July all the crew had permiſſion to go on ſhore, except one from each meſs, part of whom were again ſent out with the ſeine, and were again equally ſucceſsful. Some of our people who went up in the country, gave an account of their having ſeen ſeveral animals, and a fire about a mile up the river. On Tueſday the 3d, the maſter, who had been ſent in the pinnace, returned, and reported, that he had found a paſſage out to ſea, between ſhoals which conſiſted of coral rocks, many whereof were dry at low water. He found ſome cockles ſo large, that one of them was more than ſufficient for two men: likewiſe plenty of other ſhell-fiſh, of which he brought a ſupply to the ſhip, in his return to which he had landed in a bay where ſome Indians were at ſupper; but they inſtantly retired, leaving ſome ſea eggs by a fire for dreſſing them. This day we made another attempt to float the ſhip, and happily ſucceeded at high water; when we found, that by the poſition ſhe had lain in, one of her planks was ſprung, ſo that it was again neceſſary to lay her aſhore. An alligator ſwam by her ſeveral times at high water.

Wedneſday the 4th was employed in trimming her upon an even keel, warping her over, and laying her down on a ſand-bank, on the ſouth ſide of the river; and on the next day, the 5th, ſhe was again floated, and moored off the beach, in order to receive the ſtores on board. This day we croſſed the harbour, and found on a ſandy beach a great number of fruits, not diſcovered before; among others a cocoa-nut, which Tupia ſaid had been opened by a crab, and was judged to be what the Dutch call Beurs Krabbe. The vegetable ſubſtances which Mr. Banks picked up were encruſted with marine productions, and covered with barnacles, a proof of their having been tranſplanted, probably from Terra del Eſperito Santo. This gentleman with a party having ſailed up the river on the 6th, to make an excurſion up the country, returned on the 8th. Having followed the courſe of the river, they found it at length contracted into a narrow channel, bounded by ſteep banks, adorned with trees of a moſt beautiful appearance, among which was the bark tree. The land was low and covered with graſs, and ſeemed capable of being cultivated to great advantage. The night, though we had made a fire on the banks of the river, was rendered extremely diſagreeable by the ſtings of the muſquitos, that cauſe an almoſt intolerable torment. Going in purſuit of game, we ſaw four animals, two of which were chaſed by Mr. Banks's greyhound, but they greatly outſtripped him in ſpeed, by leaping over the long thick graſs, which incommoded the dog in running. It was obſerved of the animals, that they bounded forward on two legs inſtead of running on four. Having returned to the boat we proceeded up the river, till it contracted to a brook of freſh water, but in which the tide roſe conſiderably. Having ſtopped to paſs the night, with hope of ſome reſt, we ſaw a ſmoke at a diſtance, on which three of us approached it, but the Indians were gone. We ſaw the impreſſions of feet on the ſand, below high-water mark, and found a fire ſtill burning in the hollow of an old tree. At a ſmall diſtance were ſeveral huts, and we obſerved ovens dug in the ground: the remains of a recent meal were likewiſe apparent. We now retired to our reſting-place, and ſlept on plantain leaves, with a bunch of graſs for our pillows, on the ſide of a ſand-bank, under the ſhelter of a buſh. The tide favouring our return in the morning, we loſt no time in getting back to the ſhip. The maſter, who had been ſeven leagues at ſea, returned ſoon after Mr. Banks, bringing with him three turtles, which he took with a boat-hook, and which together weighed near eight hundred pounds. He was ſent out next morning, and Mr. Banks accompanied him with proper inſtruments for catching turtle: but not being ſucceſsful, he would not go back that night, ſo that Mr. Banks, after collecting ſome ſhells and marine productions, returned in his own ſmall boat. In the morning the ſecond lieutenant was ſent to bring the maſter back, ſoon after which four Indians, in a ſmall canoe, were within ſight. The captain now determined to take no notice of theſe people, as the moſt likely way to be noticed by them. This project anſwered; two of them came within muſquet ſhot of the veſſel, where they converſed very loud; in return, the people on board ſhouted, and made ſigns of invitation. The Indians gradually approached, with their lances held up; not in a menacing manner, but as if they meant to intimate that they were capable of defending themſelves. They came almoſt along-ſide, when the captain threw them cloth, nails, paper, &c. which did not ſeem to attract their notice; at length one of the ſailors threw a ſmall fiſh, which ſo pleaſed them, that they hinted their deſigns of bringing their companions, and immediately rowed for the ſhore. In the interim, Tupia and ſome of the crew landed on the oppoſite ſhore. The four Indians now came quite along-ſide the ſhip, and having received farther preſents, landed where Tupia and the ſailors had gone. They had each two lances, and a ſtick with which they threw them. Advancing towards the Engliſh, Tupia perſuaded them to lay down their arms, and ſit by him, which they readily did. Others of the crew now going on ſhore, the Indians ſeemed jealous, leſt they ſhould get between them and their arms, but care was taken to convince them that no ſuch thing was intended, and more trifles were preſented to them. The crew ſtaid with them till dinner-time, and then made ſigns of invitation for them to go to the ſhip and eat; but this they declined, and retired in their canoe. Theſe men were of the common ſtature, with very ſmall limbs; their complexion was of a deep chocolate; their hair black, either lank or curled, but not of the woolly kind; the breaſts and upper lip of one of them were painted with ſtreaks of white, which he called carbanda, and ſome part of their bodies had been painted red. Their teeth were white and even, their eyes bright, and their features rather pleaſing; their voices muſical, and they repeated ſeveral Engliſh words with great readineſs.

The next morning, the viſit of three of theſe Indians was renewed, and they brought with them a fourth, whom they called Yaparico, who appeared to be a perſon of ſome conſequence. The bone of a bird, about ſix inches long, was thruſt through the griſtle of his noſe; and indeed all the inhabitants of this place had their noſes bored, for the reception of ſuch an ornament. Theſe people being all naked, the captain gave one of them an old ſhirt, which he bound round his head like a turban, inſtead of uſing it to cover any part of his body. They brought a fiſh to the ſhip, which was ſuppoſed to be in payment for that given them the day before: after ſtaying ſome time with apparent ſatisfaction, they ſuddenly leaped into their canoe, and rowed off, from a jealouſy of ſome of the gentlemen who were examining it.

On the 12th of July, three Indians viſited Tupia's tent, and after remaining ſome time, went for two others, whom they introduced by name. Some fiſh was offered them, but they ſeemed not much to regard it; after eating a little, they gave the remainder to Mr. Banks's dog. Some ribbands which had been given them, to which medals were ſuſpended round their necks, were ſo changed by ſmoke, that it was difficult to judge what colour they had been, and the ſmoke had made their ſkins look darker than their natural colour, from whence it was thought that they had ſlept cloſe to their fires, as a preventative againſt the ſting of the muſquitos. Both the ſtrangers had bones through their noſes, and a piece of bark tied over their foreheads; and one of them had an ornament of ſtrings round his arm; and an elegant necklace made of ſhells. Their canoe was about ten feet long, and calculated to hold four perſons, and when it was in ſhallow water they moved it by the help of poles. Their lances had only a ſingle point, and ſome of them were barbed with fiſh-bones. On the 14th Mr. Gore ſhot one of the mouſe-coloured animals above-mentioned. It chanced to be a young one, weighing more than 38 pounds; but when they are full grown, they are as large as a ſheep. The ſkin of this beaſt which is called Kangaroo, is covered with ſhort fur, and is of a dark mouſe colour; the head and ears are ſomewhat like thoſe of a hare; this animal was dreſſed for dinner, and proved fine eating. The ſhip's crew fed on turtle almoſt every day, which were finer than thoſe eaten in England, owing to their being killed before their natural fat was waſted, and their juices changed.

On the 17th, Mr. Banks and Dr. Solander went with the captain into the woods, and ſaw four Indians in a canoe, who went on ſhore, and walked up without ſign of fear. They accepted ſome beads, and departed, intimating that they did not chuſe to be followed. The natives being now become familiar with the ſhip's crew, one of them was deſired to throw his lance, which he did with ſuch dexterity and force, that though it was not above four feet from the ground at the higheſt, it penetrated deeply into a tree at the diſtance of fifty yards. The natives now came on board the ſhip, and were well pleaſed with their entertainment.

On the 19th, we ſaw ſeveral of the women, who, as well as the men, were quite naked. We were this day viſited by ten Indians, who ſeemed reſolved to have one of the turtles that was on board, which they repeatedly made ſigns for, and being as repeatedly refuſed, they expreſſed the utmoſt rage and reſentment, one of them in particular, having received a denial from Mr. Banks, he ſtamped, and puſhed him away in a moſt violent manner. At length they laid hands on two of the turtles, and drew them to the ſide of the ſhip where the canoe lay, but the ſailors took them away. They made ſeveral ſimilar attempts, but being equally unſucceſsful, they leaped ſuddenly into their canoe, and rowed off. At this inſtant the captain, with Mr. Banks, and five or ſix of the ſeamen, went on ſhore, where they arrived before the Indians, and where many of the crew were already employed. As ſoon as the Indians landed, one of them ſnatched a fire brand from under a pitch-kettle, and running to the windward of what effects were left on ſhore, ſet fire to the dry graſs, which burned rapidly, ſcorched a pig to death, burned part of the ſmith's forge, and would have deſtroyed a tent of Mr. Banks, but that ſome people came from the ſhip juſt in time to get it out of the way of the flames. In the mean while the Indians went to a place where the fiſhing-nets lay, and a quantity of linen was laid out to dry, and there again ſet fire to the graſs, in ſpite of all perſuaſion, and even of threats. A muſquet loaded with ſmall ſhot was fired, and one of them being wounded, they ran away, and this ſecond fire was extinguiſhed; but the other burned far into the woods.

The Indians ſtill continuing in ſight, a muſquet charged with ball was fired, the report only of which ſent them out of ſight; but their voices being heard in the woods, the Captain with a few people went to meet them. Both parties ſtopped when in ſight of each other; at which time an old Indian advanced before the reſt a little way, but ſoon halted, and after having ſpoke ſome words, which we could not underſtand, he retreated to his companions, and they all retired ſlowly in a body. Having found means to ſeize ſome of their darts, we continued following them about a mile, and then ſat down upon ſome rocks, the Indians ſitting down alſo about an hundred yards from us. The old man again came forward, having a lance without a point in his hand; he ſtopped ſeveral times at different diſtances, and ſpoke, whereupon the captain made ſigns of friendſhip, which they anſwered. The old man now turned, and ſpoke aloud to his companions, who placed their lances againſt a tree, and came forward in a friendly manner. When they came up to us, we returned the darts we had taken, and we perceived with great ſatisfaction, that this rendered the reconciliation complete. In this party were four perſons whom we had not ſeen before, who, as uſual, were introduced to us by name, but the man who had been wounded in the attempt to burn our nets, was not among them. Having received from us ſome trinkets, they walked amicably toward the coaſt, intimating by ſigns, that they would not fire the graſs again. When we came oppoſite the ſhip they ſat down, but we could not prevail with them to go on board. They accepted a few muſquet balls, the uſe and effect of which the Captain endeavoured to explain. We then left them, and when arrived at the ſhip, we ſaw the woods burning at the diſtance of two miles. We had no conception of the fury with which graſs will burn in this hot climate, nor of the difficulty of extinguiſhing it; but we determined, that if it ſhould ever again be neceſſary for us to pitch our tents in ſuch a ſituation, our firſt work ſhould be to clear the ground round us.

Friday the 20th, our ſhip being ready for ſea, the maſter was ſent in ſearch of a paſſage to the northward, but could not find any; while the Captain ſounded and buoyed the bar. This day we ſaw not any Indians; but the hills for many miles were on fire, which at night made an appearance truly ſublime. On the 22nd, we killed a turtle, through both ſhoulders of which ſtuck a wooden harpoon, near fifteen inches long, bearded at the end, and about the thickneſs of a man's finger, reſembling ſuch as we had ſeen among the natives. The turtle appeared to have been ſtruck a conſiderable time, for the wound was perfectly healed. On the 24th, one of the ſailors, who with others had been ſent to gather kale, having ſtrayed from the reſt, fell in with four Indians at dinner. He was at firſt much alarmed, but had prudence enough to conceal his apprehenſions; and ſitting down by them gave them his knife, which having examined, they returned. He would then have left them; but they ſeemed diſpoſed to detain him, till, by feeling his hands and face, they were convinced he was made of fleſh and blood like themſelves. They treated him with great civility, and having kept him about half an hour, they made ſigns that he might depart. When he left them, not taking the direct way to the ſhip, they came from the fire, and ſhewed him the neareſt way; from whence we concluded, that they well knew from whence he came. We may here obſerve, that the language of theſe people ſeemed to us more harſh than that of the iſlanders in the South-Sea. They were continually repeating the word chercau, a term, as we imagined, of admiration. They alſo cried out, when they ſaw any thing new, cher, tut, tut, tut, tut! which probably was a ſimilar expreſſion. Mr. Banks having gone on ſhore in ſearch of plants, found the cloth which had been diſtributed among the natives, lying in a heap, as uſeleſs lumber. Indeed they ſeemed to ſet very little value upon any thing we had, except our turtle, a commodity we were leaſt inclined and able to ſpare.

Tueſday, the 24th, Mr. Banks and Dr. Solander returning from the woods, through a deep valley, found lying on the ground, ſeveral marking nuts, the Anacardium orientale; but they ſought in vain for the tree that bore them. On the 26th, as Mr. Banks was again ſearching the country to enrich his natural hiſtory, he took an animal of the Opoſſum kind, with two young ones. On the 27th, Mr. Gore ſhot a Kanguroo, which weighed eighty-four pounds, though not at its full growth. When dreſſed, on the 28th, we found it had a much worſe flavour than that we had eaten before.

Sunday, the 29th, we got the anchor up, and made all ready to put to ſea. A boat was ſent out to aſcertain what water was upon the bar; when returned, the officer reported, that there was only thirteen feet, which was ſix inches leſs than the ſhip drew. We therefore this day gave up all hopes of ſailing. Monday, the 30th, we had freſh gales with hazy weather and rain, till Tueſday, the 31ſt, at two in the morning, when the weather became more moderate. During all this time the pinnace and yawl continued to ply the net and hook with tolerable good ſucceſs, bringing in at different times a turtle, and from two to three hundred weight of fiſh.

On Wedneſday, the 1ſt of Auguſt, the pumps were examined by the carpenter, who found them all in a ſtate of decay, and ſome quite rotten, owing, as he ſaid, to the ſap having been left in the wood: but as the ſhip admitted only an inch of water in an hour, we hoped ſhe was ſtout enough, and truſted to her ſoundneſs.

On Saturday, the 4th, at ſeven o'clock in the morning, we once more got under ſail, and put to ſea. We ſtood off E. by N. with the pinnace a-head to keep ſounding. About noon we came to an anchor, when the harbour from whence we had ſailed bore S. 70 W. diſtant about five leagues. The Captain here named the northernmoſt point of land in ſight, Cape Bedford, and the harbour we had quitted, Endeavour River. Our latitude by obſervation was now 15 deg. 32 min. S. Endeavour River is only a ſmall bar harbour, or creek, which runs in a winding channel three or four leagues inland. The depth of water for ſhipping, is not more than a mile within the bar, and only on the north ſide. At the new and full of the moon, it is high-water between nine and ten o'clock. It muſt alſo be remembered, that this part of the coaſt is ſo barricaded with ſhoals, as to make the harbour very difficult of acceſs: the ſafeſt approach is from the ſouthward, keeping the main land cloſe upon the board all the way. Over the ſouth point is ſome high land, but the north point is formed by a low ſandy beach. The proviſions we procured in this harbour, conſiſted of turtle, oyſters of different ſorts, cavalhe or ſcomber, flat fiſh, ſkate or ray fiſh, purſlain, wild beans, and babbage-palms. Of quadrupeds, there are goats, wolves, pole-cats, a ſpotted animal of the viverra kind, and ſeveral kinds of ſerpents, ſome of which only are venomous. Dogs are the only tame animals. The land fowls are kites, crows, hawks, loriquets, cockatoos, parrots, pigeons, and ſmall birds of various ſorts, the names of which we could not learn. The water fowls are wild geeſe, curlieus, hens, whiſtling ducks, that perch on trees, and ſome few others. The ſoil of the hills, though ſtoney, produces coarſe graſs, beſides wood; that of the valleys is in general well cloathed, and has the appearance of fertility. The trees here are of various ſorts, of which the gum-trees are the moſt common. On each ſide of the river are mangroves, which in ſome parts extend a mile within the coaſt. The country is well watered, and ant-hills are every where in great numbers.

On Saturday, the 4th, Captain Cook went up to the maſt-head to look at ſome dangerous ſhoals, ſeveral of which he ſaw above the water. This day ſuch a quantity of fiſh was caught, as allowed a dividend of two pounds to each man. During the ſix following days, we attempted to ſail between the ſhoals and breakers, by which we were every way ſurrounded. On the 10th, we were between a head-land and three iſlands, which had been diſcovered the preceding day. We now entertained hopes of being out of danger; but this not proving to be the caſe, we called the head-land Cape Flattery. Some land was now diſcovered, and was generally taken for the main; but in the Captain's opinion, a cluſter of iſlands. Upon this diverſity of ſentiments, it was reſolved to bring the ſhip to an anchor. This done, the Captain landed, and from a high point took a ſurvey of the ſea-coaſt, by which he was confirmed in his conjecture. On the point where he ſtood were ſeen the prints of human feet, in white ſand of an exquiſite fineneſs; and the place was named point Lookout. To the northward of this, the coaſt appeared to be ſhoal and flat, for a conſiderable diſtance, which did not encourage our hope, that the channel we had hitherto found in with the land would continue.

On Saturday, the 11th, early in the morning, Mr. Banks and Capt. Cook went to viſit the largeſt of the three iſlands, and having gained the ſummit of the higheſt hill, they beheld a reef of rocks, whereon the ſea broke in a frightful manner; but the hazy weather preventing a perfect view, they lodged under a buſh during the night, and next day ſeeing what had the appearance of a channel between the reefs, one of the mates, on the 12th, was ſent out in the pinnace to examine it; and at noon returned, having found between fifteen and twenty-eight fathom of water; but it blew ſo hard, that the mate did not dare to venture into one of the channels, which he ſaid appeared to be very narrow; but the Captain judged he had ſeen them to a diſadvantage. While buſy in his ſurvey, Ma. Banks was attentive to his favourite purſuit, and collected many plants he had not before ſeen. This iſland, viſible at twelve leagues diſtance, and in general barren, we found to be about eight leagues in circumference. There are ſome ſandy bays and low land on the N. W. ſide, which is covered with long graſs, and trees of the ſame kind with thoſe on the main; lizards of a very large ſize alſo abounded, ſome of which we took. We found alſo freſh water in two places; one running ſtream, cloſe to the ſea, was a little brackiſh; the other was a ſtanding pool, perfectly ſweet. We were ſurprized to ſee, that, notwithſtanding the diſtance of this iſland from the main, it was ſometimes viſited by the Indians from thence; as was plain from ſeven or eight frames of their huts which we found. All theſe were built on eminencies, and from their ſituation, we judged, that the weather here, at certain ſeaſons, is invariably calm and mild. On our return to the ſhip, the Captain named this place the Lizard Iſland, on account of our having ſeen no other animals but lizards. When returning, we landed on a low ſandy iſland, upon which were birds of various kinds. We took a neſt of young eagles, and therefore called the place Eagle Iſland. We found alſo a neſt of ſome other bird, of a moſt enormous ſize: it was made with ſticks upon the ground, and was not leſs than twenty-ſix feet in circumference, and two feet eight inches high. We perceived that this place had alſo been viſited by the Indians. During our abſence from the ſhip, the maſter had landed on ſeveral low iſlands, where he had ſeen great heaps of turtle-ſhells, and found the fins of them, which the Indians had left hanging on the trees, ſo freſh, that they were dreſſed and eaten by the boat's crew.

On Sunday the 12th, the officers held a conſultation, and we were unanimous in opinion, that it would be beſt to quit the coaſt altogether, till we could approach it with leſs danger; in conſequence of which concurrent opinion, we ſailed on Monday the 13th, and got through one of the channels in the reef, happy at finding ourſelves once more in the open ſea, after having been ſurrounded by dreadful ſhoals and rocks for near three months. We had now ſailed above 1000 miles, during which run we had been obliged to keep ſounding, without the intermiſſion of a ſingle minute; a circumſtance which, it is ſuppoſed, never happened to any ſhip but the Endeavour. The paſſage through which we paſſed into the open ſea beyond the reef, is in latitude 14 deg. 32 min. S. and may always be known by the three high iſlands within it, which Capt. Cook called the Iſlands of Direction, becauſe by theſe a ſtranger may find a ſafe channel through the reef quite to the main. The channel lies from Lizard Iſland N. E. half N. diſtant three leagues, and is about one third of a mile broad, and much the ſame in length. The iſlands abound in turtle and other fiſh, and on the beach we found bamboos, cocoa nuts, pumice-ſtone, and the ſeeds of plants, ſuppoſed to be wafted thither by the trade winds, as the plants themſelves are not natives of the country.

On Tueſday the 14th, we anchored, and by obſervation, our latitude was 13 deg. 46 min. S. and at this time we had no land in ſight. On the 15th we ſteered a weſterly courſe, in order to get ſight of land, that we might not overſhoot the paſſage, if a paſſage there was between this land and New Guinea. Early in the afternoon we had ſight of land, which had the appearance of hilly iſlands, but it was judged to be part of the main, and we ſaw breakers between the veſſel and the land, in which there was an opening; to get clear, we ſet all our ſails, and ſtood to the northward till midnight, and then went on a ſouthward tack for about two miles, when the breeze died away to a dead calm. When day-light came on we ſaw a dreadful ſurf break at a vaſt height, within a mile of the ſhip, towards which the rolling waves carried her with great rapidity. Thus diſtreſſed, the boats were ſent a-head to tow, and the head of the veſſel was brought about, but not till ſhe was within a hundred yards of the rock, between which and her there was nothing left but the chaſm, and which had riſen and broke to a wonderful height on the rock; but in the moment we expected inſtant deſtruction, a breeze, hardly diſcernible, aided the boats in getting the veſſel in an oblique direction from the rock. The hopes, however, afforded by this providential circumſtance, were deſtroyed by a perfect calm, which ſucceeded in a few minutes; yet the breeze once more returned, before we had loſt the little ground which had been gained. At this time a ſmall opening was ſeen in the reef, and a young officer being ſent to examine it, found that its breadth did not much exceed the length of the ſhip, but that there was ſmooth water on the other ſide of the rocks. Animated by the deſire of preſerving life, we now attempted to paſs the opening, but this was impoſſible; for it having become high-water in the interim, the ebb tide ruſhed through it with amazing impetuoſity, carrying the ſhip about a quarter of a mile from the reef, and ſhe ſoon reached the diſtance of near two miles by the help of the boats. When the ebb tide was ſpent, the tide of flood again drove the veſſel very near the rocks, ſo that our proſpect of deſtruction was renewed, when we diſcovered another opening, and a light breeze ſpringing up, we entered it, and were driven through it with a rapidity that prevented the ſhip from ſtriking againſt either ſide of the channel. The ſhip now came to an anchor, and our crew were grateful for having regained a ſtation, which they had been very lately moſt anxious to quit. The name of Providence Channel was given to the opening through which the ſhip had thus eſcaped the moſt imminent dangers. A high promontory on the main land in ſight, was denominated Cape Weymouth, and a bay near it Weymouth Bay. This day the boats went out to fiſh, and met with great ſucceſs, particularly in catching cockles, ſome of which were of ſuch an amazing ſize, as to require the ſtrength of two men to move them. Mr. Banks likewiſe ſucceeded in his ſearch for rare ſhells, and different kinds of coral.

On the 18th, we diſcovered ſeveral ſmall iſlands, which were called Forbes's Iſlands, and had a ſight of a high point of land on the main, which was named the Bolt Head. On the 19th, we diſcovered ſeveral other ſmall iſlands, the land of which was low, barren, and ſandy. A point was ſeen, and called Cape Grenville, and a bay which took the name of Temple Bay. In the afternoon many other iſlands were ſeen, which were denominated Bird Iſles, from their being frequented by numerous flocks of birds. On the 20th many more ſmall iſlands were ſeen, on one of which were a few trees, and ſeveral Indian huts, ſuppoſed to have been erected by the natives of the main land, as temporary habitations during their viſit to theſe iſlands. On the 21ſt we ſailed through a channel, in which was a number of ſhoals; and gave the name of York Cape to a point of the main land which forms the ſide of the channel. A large bay is formed to the ſouth of the cape, which was called Newcaſtle Bay, and in which are ſeveral little iſlands; on the north ſide of the cape the land is rather mountainous, but the low parts of the country abound with trees: the iſlands diſcovered in the morning of this day, were called York Iſles. In the afternoon we anchored between ſome iſlands, and obſerved, that the channel now began to grow wider; we perceived two diſtant points, between which no land could be ſeen, ſo that the hope of having at length explored a paſſage into the Indian Sea, began to animate every breaſt; but, to bring the matter to a certainty, the captain took a party, and being accompanied by Meſſrs. Solander and Banks, they landed on an iſland, on which they had ſeen a number of Indians, ten of whom were on a hill, one of them carrying a bow and a bundle of arrows, the reſt armed with lances; and round the necks of two of them hung ſtrings of mother of pearl. Three of theſe Indians ſtood on ſhore, as if to oppoſe the landing of the boat, but they retired before it reached the beach. The captain and his company now aſcended a hill, from whence they had a view of near forty miles, in which ſpace there was nothing that threatened to oppoſe their paſſage, ſo that the certainty of a channel ſeemed to be almoſt indubitable. Previous to their leaving the iſland, Capt. Cook diſplayed the Engliſh colours, and took poſſeſſion of all the eaſtern coaſt of the country, from the 38th deg. of S. latitude to the preſent ſpot, by the name of New South Wales, for his ſovereign the King of Great Britain: and three volleys of ſmall arms being fired, and anſwered by an equal number from the Endeavour, the place received the name of Poſſeſſion Iſland. The next morning we ſaw three naked women collecting ſhell-fiſh on the beach; and weighing anchor, gave the name of Cape Cornwall to the extreme point of the largeſt iſland on the north-weſt ſide of the paſſage: ſome low iſlands near the middle of the channel receiving the name of Wallis's Iſle; ſoon after which the ſhip came to an anchor, and the long-boat was ſent out to ſound. Towards evening we ſailed again, and the captain landed with Mr. Banks, on a ſmall iſland which was frequented by immenſe numbers of birds, the majority of which being boobies, the place received the name of Booby Iſland. We were now advanced to the northern extremity of New Holland, and had the ſatisfaction of viewing the open ſea to the weſtward. The N. E. entrance of the paſſage is formed by the main land of New Holland, and by a number of iſlands, which took the name of the Prince of Wales's Iſlands; and which Capt. Cook imagines may reach to New Guinea; theſe iſlands abound with trees and graſs, and were known to be inhabited, from the ſmoke that was ſeen aſcending in many places.

To the paſſage we had ſailed through, Capt. Cook gave the name of Endeavour Streights. New South Wales is a much larger country than any hitherto known, and not deemed a continent, being larger than all Europe, which is proved by the Endeavour's having coaſted more than 2000 miles, even if her tract were reduced to a ſtrait line. Northward of the latitude of 33 deg. the country is hilly, yet not mountainous; but to the ſouthward of that latitude, it is moſtly low and even ground. The hills in general are diverſified by lawns and woods, and many of the valleys abound with herbage, though, on the whole, it cannot be deemed a fertile country. To the northward the graſs is not ſo rich, nor the trees ſo high as in the ſouthern parts, and almoſt every where, even the largeſt trees grow at a diſtance of not leſs than thirteen yards aſunder. In all theſe places where the land forms a bay, the ſhore is covered with mangroves, that grow about a mile in land, in a ſwampy ground, which the ſpring tides always overflow; in ſome parts there are bogs, covered with thick graſs, and plenty of under-wood in the valleys; the ſoil in general ſeems unfit for cultivation, though there are many ſpots where the arts of tillage might be attended with ſucceſs. There are ſeveral ſalt creeks, running in many directions through the country, where there are alſo brooks of freſh water, but there are no rivers of any conſiderable extent; yet it ſeemed to be well watered, as the time when the ſhip was on the coaſt, was reckoned the drieſt ſeaſon of the year. The gum-tree which yields a reſin like the dragons blood. Here are three kinds of palm-trees, two of which are found only in the northern diſtrict. Nuts ſomewhat reſembling cheſnuts are produced by one of theſe, which were ſuppoſed to be eatable, yet ſome of the ſeamen having made free with them were taken very ill; two of whom died within a week, and it was not without difficulty that the third was recovered. The ſecond ſort of palm is much like the Weſt Indian cabbage-tree, which yields a cabbage of an agreeable taſte. The third ſort abounds in the ſouthern part, and produces a ſmall cabbage of a very agreeable flavour, with many nuts, which furniſh food for hogs. There is likewiſe a tree on which grows a purple apple that taſtes like a damoſcene, as we have before obſerved. Beſides theſe there is a fig-tree, producing figs, but not of the fineſt ſort; and they have another which bears a ſort of plumb that is flat on the ſides like a cheeſe. A plant was found here, the leaves of which were like thoſe of the bulruſh; it yields a bright yellow reſin, that reſembles gumbouge, but does not ſtain; it had a very agreeable ſmell. We found two ſorts of yams, the one round and covered with ſtringy fibres, the other in ſhape like a radiſh; both of which are of a pleaſant taſte. A fruit of a diſagreeable flavour was found, in ſhape reſembling a pine-apple; and another that was much like a cherry, but had a ſoft kernel. The country produces purſlain and wild parſly. We ſaw here, beſides the beaſt already mentioned, one that was called a quall, the belly of this animal was quite white, its back was brown with white ſpots; and it was like a pole-cat. Vaſt numbers of beautiful pigeons were obſerved, and the ſeamen ſhot many of them, alſo eagles, hawks, cranes, herons, buſtards, crows, parrots, parroquets, cockatoos, and ſome other birds of fine plumage, beſides quails and doves.

In this country there are but few inſects, and the ants and muſquitos are the chief among them. There are four kinds of the former which deſerve particular notice. The firſt of theſe are entirely green, and live on trees, where they build their neſts in a very curious manner, bending down the leaves, and gluing them together with an animal juice, ſuppoſed to proceed from their own bodies. While ſeveral of theſe animals were buſied in this employ, thouſands were joined to keep the leaf in its proper ſituation, which, when they were diſturbed in their work, flew back with a force that any one would have imagined to be ſuperior to their united ſtrength; at the ſame time they avenged themſelves by ſeverely ſtinging their diſturbers. The ſecond ſpecies of ants here are black, and live in the inſide of the branches, after they have worked out the pith. The third ſort lodged themſelves in the root of a plant that twines round the trunks of other trees. This they made hollow, and cut into a great number of paſſages that ran acroſs each other, yet there was no appearance of the plants having been injured. They are not above half the ſize of the red ants of this country. As to the fourth ſort they are like the Eaſt-Indian white ants, and had one ſort of neſts as big as a half-peck loaf which hung from the boughs of trees, and were compoſed of ſeveral minute parts of vegetables, which appeared to be ſtuck together by the glutinous juice before-mentioned. There was a communication between the cells, and paſſages to other neſts upon the ſame tree; they had alſo a hollow covered paſſage to another neſt on the ground, at the root of a different tree. The height of the ground-neſts was found to be of about ſix feet, and the breadth nearly the ſame: and the outſide was plaiſtered with clay almoſt two inches thick. Theſe had a ſubterraneous paſſage leading to the roots of the trees near which they were conſtructed, from whence theſe creatures aſcended the trunk and branches by covered ways, calculated for the purpoſe. It was concluded, that the ants reſorted to theſe ground-neſts during the wet ſeaſon, as they were water proof.

Variety of fiſh is ſupplied by the ſeas in theſe parts, among which are mullets, cray-fiſh and crabs. Upon the ſhoals are found the rock, pearl, and other oyſters, as well as the moſt delicate green turtle, beſides thoſe enormous cockles which have been already mentioned. Alligators are found in the rivers and ſalt creeks. The country does not appear to be inhabited by numbers any way proportioned to its great extent; not above thirty being ever ſeen together but once, which was when thoſe of both ſexes and all ages got together on a rock off Botany Bay, to view the ſhip. None of their villages conſiſted of more huts than would afford ſhelter for fourteen or fifteen men, and theſe were the largeſt numbers that were aſſembled with a view to attack us. No part of the country appeared to be cultivated, whence there muſt neceſſarily be fewer inhabitants on the inland parts than on the ſea-coaſt. The men are well made, of the middle ſize, and active, in a high degree; but their voices are ſoft, even to effeminacy. Their colour is chocolate; but they were ſo covered with dirt, as to look almoſt as black as negroes. Their hair is naturally long and black, but they commonly cropped it ſhort; in ſome few inſtances it is ſlightly curled, but in common quite ſtrait; it is always matted with dirt, yet wholly free from lice; their beards are thick and buſhy, but kept ſhort by ſingeing. The women were ſeen only at a diſtance, as the men conſtantly left them behind when they croſſed the river. The chief ornament of theſe people is the bone that is thruſt through the noſe, which the ſailors whimſically called their ſprit-ſail yard; but beſides this they wore necklaces formed of ſhells, a ſmall cord tied twice or thrice round the arm between the elbow and ſhoulder, and a ſtring of plaited human hair round the waiſt. Some few of them had an ornament of ſhells hanging acroſs the breaſt. Beſides theſe ornaments they painted their bodies and limbs white and red, in ſtripes of different dimenſions; and they had a circle of white round each eye, and ſpots of it on the face. Their ears were bored, but they did not wear ear-rings. They accepted whatever was given them, but ſeemed to have no idea of making an adequate return; and they would not part with their ornaments for any thing that was offered in exchange. Their bodies were marked with ſcars, which they ſignified were in remembrance of the deceaſed. Their huts were built with ſmall rods, the two ends of which were fixed into the ground, ſo as to form the figure of an oven; they are covered with pieces of bark and palm-leaves. The door of this building, which is only high enough to ſit upright in, is oppoſite to the fire-places. They ſleep with their heels turned up towards their heads; and even in this poſture the hut will not hold more than four people. In the northern parts, where the weather was warmer, one ſide of the houſes was left open, and the other oppoſed to whatever wind might blow at the time there; huts were only built for temporary uſe, and left behind when they removed to other parts of the country; but if their ſtay was only for a night or two, they had no other protection from the weather than what the graſs and buſhes afforded. While the huts on the main land were turned from the wind, thoſe on the iſlands were towards it: a kind of proof that they viſit the iſlands in fine weather, and enjoy the refreſhing breeze while they ſlept. Theſe huts are furniſhed with a kind of bucket for fetching water, made of an oblong piece of bark tied up at each end with the twig of a tree; and this is the only furniture of the houſe. On their backs they have a kind of bag, of the ſize and form of a cabbage-net, in which they carry their fiſh-hooks and lines, of the ſhells of which they make theſe hooks; the ornaments which they wear conſiſt of ſome points of darts, and two or three bits of paint; and in this narrow compaſs lie all their riches. They feed on the kanguroo, and ſeveral kinds of birds when they can catch them; they likewiſe eat yams, and various kinds of fruit; but the principal article of their exiſtence is fiſh. They were frequently obſerved with the leaves of a tree in their mouths, but whether it had the qualities of either tobacco or beetle could not be known; but it was obſerved not to diſcolour the teeth or lips.

From the notches that were ſeen in a great number of trees, for the purpoſe of climbing them, it was imagined that their method of taking the kanguroo, was by ſtriking it with their lances as it paſſed under the tree. In theſe likewiſe, it is probable, that they took birds, while they were rooſting, as they ſeemed too ſhy to be otherwiſe catched. Their method of producing fire, and extending the flames of it, is very ſingular: having wrought one end of a ſtick into an obtuſe point, they place this point upon a piece of dry wood, and turning the upright ſtick very faſt backward and forward between their hands, fire is ſoon produced, nor is it increaſed with leſs celerity. One of the natives was frequently obſerved to run along the ſea coaſt, leaving fire in various places. The method taken to do this was as follows: before he ſet off, he wrapped up a little ſpark of fire in dry graſs, and the quickneſs of his motion ſoon fanning it into a flame, he then placed it on the ground, and putting a ſpark of it in another bit of graſs ran on again, and increaſed the number of his fires at pleaſure. Theſe fires were ſuppoſed to be intended for the taking of the kanguroo, as that animal was ſo very ſhy of fire, that when purſued by the dogs, it would not croſs places which had been newly burnt, even when the fire was extinguiſhed.

The natives of New South Wales make uſe of ſpears or lances, but theſe are very differently conſtructed; thoſe that were ſeen in the ſouthern parts of the country had four prongs, pointed with bone, and barbed, and the points were rubbed with a kind of wax, the ſmoothneſs of which made an eaſier paſſage into what was ſtruck by them. On the contrary, the lances in the northern parts have only one point; the ſhafts of them are of different lengths, from eight to fourteen feet, are made of the ſtalk of a plant not unlike a bulruſh; and conſiſts of ſeveral joints let into each other, and tied together. The points of theſe lances are ſometimes made of fiſh-bone, and ſometimes of a hard heavy wood; they are barbed with other pieces of wood or ſtone, ſo that when they have entered any depth in the body, they cannot be drawn out without tearing the fleſh in a ſhocking manner, or leaving ſplinters behind them. When the natives intend to wound at a conſiderable diſtance, they diſcharge this inſtrument with a throwing ſtick, but if the object be near them, it is thrown from the hand only. The throwing ſtick is a piece of ſmooth, hard, red wood, half an inch thick, two inches broad, and about three feet in length, having a croſs piece near four inches long at one end, and a ſmall knob at the other. A ſmall hollow is made in the ſhaft of the lance, near the point, and in this hollow the knob is received, but, on being forced forward, it will eaſily ſlip from it. The lance being placed on this throwing ſtick, the Indian holds it over his ſhoulder, ſhakes it, and then throws both lance and ſtick with his utmoſt power; but as the croſs-piece ſtrikes the ſhoulder the ſudden jerk ſtops the ſtick, while the lance is driven forward with amazing rapidity, and is generally ſo well aimed, that a mark at the diſtance of fifty yards is more certainly ſtruck with it than by a bullet from a gun. Theſe people make uſe of ſhields made of the bark of trees, of about eighteen inches broad, and three feet long. Many trees were ſeen from whence the bark had been taken, and others on which the ſhields were cut out but not taken away. In the northern parts of this country, the canoes are formed by hollowing the trunk of a tree, and it was conjectured, that this operation muſt have been performed by fire, as the natives did not appear to have any inſtruments proper for the purpoſe. The canoes are in length about fourteen feet, and ſo narrow, that they would be frequently overſet, but that they are provided with an out-rigger. The natives row them with paddles, uſing both hands in that employment. The canoes in the ſouthern parts are formed only of a piece of bark four yards long, faſtened together at each end, and the middle kept open by pieces of wood, paſſing from ſide to ſide. In deep water theſe are rowed by paddles, of about a foot and a half in length, the rower having one in each hand, but in ſhallow water they are puſhed forward by means of a long ſtick. As theſe veſſels are extremely light, and draw very little water, the Indians run them on the mud banks in ſearch of ſhell-fiſh, ſome of which, it is probable, they broil and eat as ſoon as they are taken, as it was remarked that in the centre of theſe veſſels there was uſually a fire burning on a quantity of ſea-weed. The natives have no tools but a wooden mallet, a kind of wedge, and an adze, made of ſtone, with ſome pieces of coral and ſhells, which may poſſibly be applied to the purpoſes of cutting. They poliſh the points of their lances, and their throwing-ſticks, with the leaves of a tree that appears to be the wild fig, which bites with a ſharpneſs, almoſt equal to that of a raſp. Four people are the greateſt number that a canoe will contain; and when more than this number were to paſs a river, three were landed out of the firſt freight, and one man went back for the reſt.

The following may ſerve as a ſpecimen of their language.

NEW HOLLAND.	ENGLISH.
Aco,	*The Arms.*
Aibudje,	*To yawn.*
Bamma,	*A man.*
Bonjoo,	*The noſe.*
Boota,	*To eat.*
Chucula,	*To drink.*
Cotta,	*A dog.*
Coyor,	*The breaſt.*
Doomboo,	*The neck.*
Dunjo,	*A father.*
Eboorbalga,	*The thumbs.*
Edamal,	*The feet.*
Eiyamoae,	*The crown of the head.*
Eya & ba,	*That or this.*
Galan,	*The ſun.*
Garbar,	*The eye-brows.*
Gippa,	*The belly.*
Kere,	*The ſky.*
Kolke,	*The nails.*
Mailelel,	*To ſwim.*
Maianang,	*Fire.*
Marra,	*To go.*
Mangal,	*The hands.*
Meul,	*The eyes.*
Melea,	*The ears.*
Mingoore,	*To dance.*
Mocoo,	*The back.*
Morcol,	*The throat.*
Moree,	*The hair of the head.*
Mootjel,	*A woman.*
Mulere,	*The teeth.*
Nakil,	*The little finger.*
Peegoorga,	*The legs.*
Peete,	*The forehead.*
Poapoa,	*Earth.*

New Holland.	English.
Pongo,	*The knees.*
Poona,	*To ſleep.*
Poorai,	*Water.*
Poteea,	*Fiſh.*
Putai,	*A turtle.*
Tabugga,	*A fly.*
Tacal,	*The chin.*
Te,	*A, or the.*
Tennapuke,	*The hole made in the noſtrils for the bone ornament.*
Tocaya,	*Sit down.*
Tumurre,	*A ſun.*
Unjar,	*The tongue.*

New England.	English.
Wageegee,	*The head.*
Walloo,	*The temples.*
Waller,	*The beard.*
Walboolbool,	*A butterfly.*
Wonananio,	*Aſleep.*
Wulgar,	*The clouds.*
Yembe,	*The lips.*
Zoocoo,	*Wood.*

Though it appeared evident, that the natives of theſe iſlands waged war with each other, by the weapons they poſſeſſed, yet not a wound received from their enemies appeared on any part of their bodies.

CHAP. X.

The Endeavour continues her voyage from South Wales to New Guinea—An account of incidents upon landing there—She proceeds from New Guinea to the iſland of Savu—Tranſactions at this iſle—Its produce and inhabitants, with a ſpecimen of their language—Run from Savu to Batavia—Tranſactions while the Endeavour was refitting at this place.

ON the 23d of Auguſt, 1770, in the afternoon, after leaving Booby Iſland, we had light airs till five o'clock, when it fell calm, and we came to an anchor in eight fathom water, with a ſoft ſandy bottom. On Friday, the 24th, ſoon after the anchor was weighed, we got under ſail, ſteering N. W. and in a few hours one of the boats a-head made the ſignal for ſhoal-water. We inſtantly brought the ſhip to, with all her ſails ſtanding, and a ſurvey being taken of the ſea around her, it was found that ſhe had met with another narrow eſcape, as ſhe was almoſt encompaſſed with ſhoals, and was likewiſe ſo ſituated between them, that ſhe muſt have ſtruck before the boat's crew had made the ſignal, if ſhe had been half the length of a cable on either ſide. In the afternoon we made ſail with the ebb tide, and got out of danger before ſun-ſet, when we brought to for the night.

On Sunday, the 26th, it was the Captain's intention to ſteer N. W. but having met with thoſe ſhoals, we altered our courſe, and ſoon got into deep water. On the 27th we purſued our voyage, ſhortening ſail at night, and tacking till day-break of the 28th, when we ſteered due N. in ſearch of New Guinea. At this time our latitude by obſervation was 8 deg. 52 min. S. We here obſerved many parts of the ſea covered with a kind of brown ſcum, to which our ſailors gave the name of ſpawn. It is formed of an incredible number of minute particles, each of which, when ſeen through the microſcope, was found to conſiſt of a conſiderable number of tubes, and theſe tubes were ſubdivided into little cells. The ſcum being burnt, and yielding no ſmell like what is produced by animal ſubſtances, we concluded it was of the vegetable kind. This has often been ſeen on the coaſt of Brazil, and generally makes its appearance near the land. A bird called the Noddy was found this evening among the rigging of the ſhip. Land having been this day diſcovered from the maſt head, we ſtood off and on all night, and at day-break we ſailed towards it with a briſk gale. Between ſix and ſeven in the morning we had ſight of a ſmall low iſland, at about a league from the main, in latitude 80 deg. 13 min. S. and in longitude 221 deg. 25 min. W. and it has already been diſtinguiſhed by the names of Bartholomew and Whermoyſen. It appeared a very level iſland, clothed with trees, among which is the cocoa-nut; and we judged it to be inhabited by the ſmoke of the fires which were ſeen in different parts of it. The boats were now ſent out to ſound, as the water was ſhallow; but as the ſhip, in ſailing two leagues, had found no increaſe in its depth, ſignals were made for the boats to return on board. We then ſtood out to ſea till midnight, tacked, and ſtood in for land till the morning.

On Thurſday, the 30th, when about four leagues diſtant, we had ſight of it, and its appearance was ſtill flat and woody. Abundance of the brown ſcum was ſtill ſeen on the ſurface of the ſea, and the ſailors, convinced that it was not ſpawn, gave it the whimſical name of ſea-ſaw-duſt. We now held a northward courſe, ſcarcely within ſight of land, and as the water was but juſt deep enough to navigate the veſſel, many unſucceſsful attempts were made to bring her near enough to get on ſhore: it was therefore determined to land in one of the boats, while the ſhip kept plying off and on. In conſequence of this reſolution,

On Monday, Sept. the 3d, Capt. Cook, Mr. Banks, and Dr. Solander, attended by the boat's crew, and Mr. Banks's ſervant, ſet off from the ſhip in the pinnace, being in all twelve perſons well armed. We rowed directly to the ſhore, but when come within two hundred yards of it, we found the water ſo ſhallow, that we were obliged to leave the boat, in the care of two of the ſailors, and wade to land. We had no ſooner reached the ſhore, than we ſaw ſeveral prints of human feet on the ſand, below high water mark, from whence it was evident, that the natives had been there. We concluded they could be at no great diſtance, and as a thick wood came down within a hundred yards of the water, we proceeded with caution, that our retreat to the boat might not be cut off. We walked by the ſide of the wood, and came to a grove of cocoa-nut trees, not far from which was a ſhed, or hut, which had been covered with leaves, and near it lay a number of freſh ſhells of the fruit. At a ſmall diſtance from this place we found plantains; and having now advanced about a quarter of a mile from the boat, three Indians ruſhed out of the wood with a hideous ſhout, at about the diſtance of a hundred yards; and as they ran towards us, the foremoſt threw ſomething out of his hand, which flew on one ſide of him, and burnt exactly like gun-powder, but made no report; and the other two threw their lances at us. No time was to be loſt: we diſcharged our pieces, loaded with ſmall ſhot only; which we imagine they did not feel; for, without retreating, they caſt a third dart: we therefore now loaded with ball, and fired a ſecond time. It is probable ſome of them were wounded, as they all took to their heels with great agility. We improved this interval, by which the deſtruction of the natives was no longer neceſſary to our own defence, and with all expedition returned to our boat. In the way we perceived ſignals on board, that more Indians were coming down in a body; and before we got into the water, we perceived ſeveral of them coming round a point at the diſtance of about five hundred yards. When they ſaw us they halted, and ſeemed to wait till their main body ſhould join them. They continued in this ſtation, without giving us any interruption, while we entered the water, and waded toward the boat. We now took a view of them at our leiſure. They made much the ſame appearance as the New Hollanders, being nearly of the ſame ſtature, and having their hair ſhort cropped. They were alſo like them ſtark naked. During this time they were ſhouting at a diſtance, and letting off their fires, which ſeemed to be diſcharged by a ſhort piece of ſtick, probably a hollow cane, this being ſwung ſideways, produced fire and ſmoke like that occaſioned by a muſquet. The crew on board the ſhip ſaw this ſtrange appearance, and thought the natives had fire arms. Thoſe who went out in the boat, and had rowed a-breaſt of them, fired ſome muſquets above their heads, the balls of which being heard by the natives rattling among the trees, they retired very deliberately, and our people in the boat returned to the ſhip. Upon examining the lances that had been thrown at us, we found they were made of a reed, or bamboo cane, the points of which were of hard wood, and barbed in many places. They were light, ill made, and about four feet long. Such was the force with which they were diſcharged, that they went beyond us, though we were at ſixty yards diſtance, but in what manner they were diſcharged we could not determine; probably they might be thrown with a ſtick, in the manner practiced by the New Hollanders. This place is in latitude 6 deg. 15 min. S. The whole coaſt of this country is low land, but covered with a luxuriance of wood and herbage beyond deſcription beautiful. The cocoa-nut, bread-fruit, and plantain-tree, all flouriſhed here in the higheſt perfection, beſides moſt of the trees, ſhrubs, and plants, that are common to the South Sea iſlands. This day, Monday, Sept. the 3d, we made ſail to the weſtward, being reſolved to ſpend no more time upon this coaſt; but before we got under ſail, ſome of the officers ſtrongly urged the Captain to ſend a party of men on ſhore, to cut down the cocoa-nut trees, for the ſake of the fruit. This Capt. Cook, with equal wiſdom and humanity, peremptorily refuſed, as unjuſt and cruel; ſenſible that the poor Indians, who could not brook even the landing of a ſmall party on their coaſt, would have made a vigorous effort to defend their property had it been invaded; conſequently many muſt have fallen a ſacrifice on their ſide, and perhaps ſome of our own people. "I ſhould (ſays Capt. Cook) have regretted the neceſſity of ſuch a meaſure, if I had been in want of the neceſſaries of life; and certainly it would have been highly criminal when nothing was to be obtained but two or three hundred green cocoa-nuts; which would at moſt have procured us a mere tranſient gratification. I might indeed have proceeded farther along the coaſt to the northward, or weſtward in ſearch of a place where the ſhip might have lain ſo near the ſhore, as to cover the people with her guns when they landed; but this would have obviated only part of the miſchief, and though it might have ſecured us, it would probably in the very act have been fatal to the natives. Beſides, we had reaſon to think that before ſuch a place could have been found, we ſhould have been carried ſo far to the weſtward as to have been obliged to go to Batavia, on the north ſide of Java, through the ſtreights of Sunday: the ſhip alſo was ſo very leaky that I doubted whether it would not be neceſſary to heave her down at Batavia, which was another reaſon for making the beſt of our way to that place, eſpecially as no diſcoveries could be expected in ſeas which had already been navigated, and where every coaſt had been laid down by the Dutch geographers."

On Saturday the 8th, we paſſed two ſmall iſlands, on one of which Capt. Cook would have landed, but having only ten fathom water, the ground being alſo rocky, and the wind blowing freſh, we might have endangered the ſafety of the ſhip. We now ſailed at a moderate rate till next morning at three o'clock; after which we had no ground with 120 fathoms. Before noon we had ſight of land, which was conjectured to be either the Arrou Iſlands, or Timor Laoet. We were now in latitude 9 deg. 37 min S. and in longitude 233 deg. 54 min. W. We ſtood off and on during the night, and on Wedneſday the 12th, we ſaw a number of fires and ſmoke in ſeveral places, from whence it was conjectured that the place was well peopled. The land near the ſhore was covered with high trees, not unlike pines; farther back were cocoa-trees and mangroves; there were many ſalt-water creeks, and ſeveral ſpots of ground which appeared to have been cleared by art; and the whole country roſe, by gradual ſlopes, into hills of a very conſiderable height. The land and ſea breezes being now very ſlight, we continued in ſight of the iſland for two days, when it was obſerved that the hills reached in many places quite to the ſea-coaſt, and where that was not the caſe, there were large and noble groves of the cocoa-nut tree, which ran about a mile up the country, at which diſtance great numbers of houſes and plantations were ſeen; the plantations were ſurrounded with fences, and extended nearly to the ſummits of the moſt lofty hills, yet neither the natives nor cattle were ſeen on any of them, which was thought a very extraordinary circumſtance. Fine groves of the fan-palm ſhaded the houſes from the rays of the ſun.

On the 16th, we had ſight of the little iſland called Rotte; and the ſame day ſaw the iſland Semau, at a diſtance to the ſouthward of Timor. The iſland of Rotte is chiefly covered with buſhy wood without leaves; but there are a number of fan-palm trees on it, growing near the ſandy beaches; and the whole conſiſts of alternate hills and valleys. The iſland of Semau is not ſo hilly as Timor, but reſembles it greatly in other reſpects. At ten o'clock this night a dull reddiſh light was ſeen in the air, many parts of which emitted rays of a brighter colour, which ſoon vaniſhed and were ſucceeded by others of the ſame kind. This phænomenon, which reached about ten degrees above the horizon, bore a conſiderable reſemblance to the Aurora Borealis, only that the rays of light which it emitted had no tremulous motion: it was ſurveyed for two hours, during which time its brightneſs continued undiminiſhed. As the ſhip was now clear of all the iſlands which had been laid down in ſuch maps as were on board, we made ſail during the night, and were ſurpriſed the next morning at the ſight of an iſland to the W. S. W. which we flattered ourſelves was a new diſcovery. Before noon we had ſight of houſes, groves of cocoa-nut trees, and large flocks of ſheep. This was a welcome ſight to people whoſe health was declining for want of refreſhment, and it was inſtantly reſolved to attempt the purchaſe of what we ſtood ſo much in need of. The ſecond lieutenant was immediately diſpatched in the pinnace, in ſearch of a landing-place; and he took with him ſuch things as it was thought might be acceptable to the natives.—During Mr. Gore's abſence, the people on board ſaw two men on horſeback upon the hills, who frequently ſtopped to take a view of the veſſel. The lieutenant ſoon returned with an account that he had entered a little cove, near which ſtood a few houſes; that ſeveral men advanced and invited him to land; and that they converſed together as well as they could by ſigns. He reported that theſe people were very like the Malays, both in perſon and dreſs; and ſaid they had no other arms but a knife which each of them wore in his girdle.

The lieutenant not being able to find any place in which the ſhip might come to anchor, he was diſpatched again with money and goods to buy ſuch neceſſaries as were immediately wanted for the ſick. Dr. Solander attended the lieutenant, and during their abſence, the ſhip ſtood on and off the ſhore. Soon after the boat had put off, two other horſemen were ſeen from the ſhip, one of whom had a laced hat on, and was dreſſed in a coat and waiſtcoat, of the faſhion of Europe. Theſe men rode about on ſhore taking little notice of the boat, but regarding the ſhip with the utmoſt attention. As ſoon as the boat reached the ſhore, ſome other perſons on horſeback, and many on foot haſtened to the ſpot, and it was obſerved that ſome cocoa-nuts were put into the boat, from whence it was concluded, that a traffick had commenced with the natives. A ſignal being made from the boat that the ſhip might anchor in a bay at ſome diſtance, ſhe immediately bore away for it. When the lieutenant came on board, he reported, that he could not purchaſe any cocoa-nuts, as the owner of them was abſent, and that what he had brought were given him, in return for which he had preſſed the natives with ſome linen. The method by which he learned that there was a harbour in the neighbourhood, was by the natives drawing a kind of rude map on the ſand, in which the harbour, and a town near it, was repreſented; it was likewiſe hinted to him, that fruit, fowls, hogs, and ſheep might be there obtained in great abundance. He ſaw ſeveral of the principal inhabitants of the iſland, who had chains of gold about their necks, and wore fine linen. The word Portugueſe being frequently repeated by the Indians, it was conjectured that ſome natives of Portugal were in the iſland, and one of the boat's crew being of that kingdom, he ſpoke to the iſlanders in his own language, but ſoon found that they had only learned a few words, of which they did not know the meaning. While the natives were endeavouring to repreſent the ſituation of the town near the harbour, one of them, in order to be more particular in directions, informed the Engliſh that they would ſee ſomething which he endeavoured to deſcribe by placing his fingers acroſs each other; and the Portugueſe ſailor took it for granted, that he could mean nothing but a croſs. When the boat's crew were on the point of returning to the ſhip, the gentleman who had been ſeen on horſeback in the dreſs of Europe, came down to the beach; but the lieutenant did not think it proper to hold a conference with him, becauſe he had left his commiſſion on board the ſhip.

When the ſhip had entered the bay, in the evening, according to the directions received, an Indian town was ſeen at a diſtance; upon which a jack was hoiſted on the fore-top-maſt head, preſently afterwards three guns were fired, and Dutch colours were hoiſted in the town; the ſhip, however, held on her way, and came to an anchor at ſeven in the evening. The colours being ſeen hoiſted on the beach the next morning, the captain concluded, that the Dutch had a ſettlement on the iſland, he therefore diſpatched the ſecond lieutenant to acquaint the governor, or other principal reſident, who they were, and that the ſhip had put in for neceſſary refreſhments. The lieutenant having landed, he was received by a kind of guard of ſomething more than twenty Indians, armed with muſquets, who after they had taken down their colours from the beach, proceeded without the leaſt military order; and thus eſcorted him to the town, where the colours had been hoiſted the preceding evening. The lieutenant was now conducted to the Raja, or king of the iſland, to whom, by means of a Portugueſe interpreter, he made known his buſineſs. The Raja ſaid, he was ready to ſupply the ſhip with the neceſſary refreſhments, but that he could not trade with any other people than the Dutch, with whom he was in alliance, without having firſt obtained their conſent; he added, however, that he would make application to the Dutch agent, who was the only white man among them. To this agent, whoſe name was Lange, and who proved to be the perſon that was ſeen from the ſhip in the European dreſs, a letter was diſpatched, and in a few hours he came to the town, behaved politely to the lieutenant, and told him he might buy what he thought proper of the inhabitants of the iſland. This offer being freely made, and readily accepted, the Raja and Mr. Lange intimated their wiſhes to go on board the ſhip, and that two of the boat's crew might be left as hoſtages for their ſafe return. The lieutenant gratified them in both theſe requeſts, and took them on board juſt before dinner was ſerved. It was thought that they would have ſat down without ceremony; but now the Raja intimated his doubts, whether being a black, they would permit him to ſit down with them. The politeneſs of the officers ſoon removed his ſcruples, and the greateſt good humour and feſtivity prevailed among them. As Dr. Solander and another gentleman on board, were tolerable proficients in Dutch, they acted as interpreters between Mr. Lange and the officers, while ſome of the ſailors, who underſtood Portugueſe, converſed with ſuch of the Raja's attendants as ſpoke that language. Our dinner conſiſted chiefly of mutton, which when the Raja had taſted, he requeſted of us an Engliſh ſheep, and the only one we had left was preſented to him. Our complaiſance in this particular, encouraged the king to aſk for an Engliſh dog, and Mr. Banks politely gave him his greyhound. A ſpying glaſs was alſo put into his hand, Mr. Johan Chriſtopher Lange having intimated, that ſuch a preſent would be very acceptable. Our viſitors now informed us, that the iſland abounded with buffaloes, ſheep, hogs, and fowls, plenty of which ſhould be driven down to the ſhore the next day. This put us all in high ſpirits, and the liquor circulated rather faſter than either the Indians or the Saxon could bear; but they had, however, the reſolution to expreſs a deſire to depart, before they were quite intoxicated. When they came upon deck, they were received in the ſame manner as when they came aboard, by the marines under arms; and the Raja expreſſing a deſire to ſee them exerciſe, his curioſity was gratified. They fired three rounds. The king obſerved them with great attention, and appeared much ſurprized at the regularity and expedition of their manœuvres. When they cocked their firelocks, he ſtruck the ſide of the ſhip with his ſtick, exclaiming at the ſame time violently, "that all the locks made but one click." They were diſmiſſed with many preſents, and on their departure were ſaluted with nine guns. Mr. Banks with Dr. Solander accompanied them, and when they put off returned our compliments with three cheers. Our gentlemen on their arrival at the town, taſted their palm-wine, which was the freſh juice of the trees, unfermented. It had a ſweet, but not diſagreeable taſte, and hopes were entertained, that it might contribute to recover our ſick from the ſcurvy. The houſes of the natives conſiſted of only a thatched roof, ſupported over a boarded floor, by pillars about four feet high.

Wedneſday the 19th, in the morning, Capt. Cook, attended by ſeveral gentlemen, went on ſhore to return the Raja's viſit; but their principal intention was to purchaſe the cattle and fowls, which they had been aſſured the preceding day ſhould be driven down to the beach. We were greatly chagrined at finding no ſteps had been taken to fulfil this promiſe: however, we proceeded to the houſe of aſſembly, which, with a few other houſes, built by the Dutch Eaſt India Company, are diſtinguiſhed from the reſt, by having two pieces of wood, reſembling a pair of cows horns, fixed at each end of the roof; and theſe we concluded to be what the Portugueſe ſailor conſtrued into croſſes, from the Indian having croſſed his fingers when he was deſcribing the town. At the houſe of aſſembly we ſaw Mr. Lange and the Raja, whoſe name was A Madocho Lomi Djara, ſurrounded by many of the principal people; Capt. Cook having informed them, that he had loaded his boat with goods, which he wiſhed to exchange for neceſſary refreſhments, permiſſion was given him to land them. We now endeavoured to make an agreement for the hogs, ſheep, and buffaloes, which were to be paid for in caſh; but this buſineſs was no ſooner hinted than Mr. Lange took his leave, having firſt told the captain, that he had received a letter from the governor of Concordia, in Timor, the contents of which ſhould be diſcloſed at his return. As the morning was now far advanced, and we had no freſh proviſions on board, we requeſted the Raja's permiſſion to buy a ſmall hog and ſome rice, and to order his people to dreſs the dinner for us. He very obligingly replied, that if we could eat victuals dreſſed by his ſubjects, which he could ſcarcely ſuppoſe, he would do himſelf the honour of entertaining us. A dinner being thus procured, the captain ſent off his boat to bring liquors from the ſhip. It was ready about five o'clock, and after we were ſeated on mats, which were ſpread on the floor, it was ſerved in ſix and thirty baſkets. We were then conducted by turns to a hole in the floor, near which ſtood a man with water in a veſſel, made of the leaves of the fan-palm, who aſſiſted us in waſhing our hands. This done we returned to our places and expected the king. Having waited ſome time, we enquired the reaſon of his abſence, and were informed that the perſon who gave the entertainment never partook of it with his gueſts; but that the Raja was ready to come and taſte of what was provided, if we entertained a thought that the victuals were poiſoned. We declared that we did not harbour any ſuch ſuſpicion, and deſired that the cuſtom of the country might not be violated on our account. When dinner was ended, the wine paſſed briſkly, and we invited the Raja to drink with us, thinking if he would not eat with us, he might at leaſt ſhare in the jollity of the bottle; but he again excuſed himſelf, ſaying, the man who entertained his gueſts ſhould never get drunk with them, and that the ſureſt way to avoid this was to refrain from taſting the liquor. The prime miniſter and Mr. Lange were of our party, and we made a moſt luxurious meal. The pork and rice were excellent, and the broth not to be deſpiſed; but the ſpoons, made of leaves, were ſo ſmall, that few of us had patience to uſe them. We did not drink our wine at the place where we had dined; and the remains of the dinner we left to the ſeamen and ſervants, who immediately took our places. They could not diſpatch all we had left; but the Raja's female ſervants, who came to take away the utenſils, obliged them to carry away what they had not eaten. When we thought the wine had ſo far operated as to open the heart, we took an opportunity to enquire after the buffaloes and ſheep, of which we had not in all this time heard a ſyllable, though they were to have been at the beach early in the morning. Mr. Lange, the Saxon Dutchman, now began to communicate to us the contents of the letter, which he pretended to have received from the governor of Concordia, and wherein he ſaid, inſtructions were given, that if the ſhip ſhould touch at this iſland, and be in want of proviſions, ſhe ſhould be ſupplied; but he was not to permit her to remain longer than was neceſſary; nor were any large preſents to be made to the natives of low rank, nor to be even left with their ſuperiors to be divided among them after the ſhip had ſailed; but he added, any trifling civilities received from the Indians might be acknowledged by a preſent of beads, or other articles of very ſmall value. It is probable that the whole of this ſtory was a fiction; and that by precluding our liberality to the natives, the Saxon Dutchman hoped more eaſily to draw all the preſents of any value into his own pocket. In the evening we were informed, that only a few ſheep had been brought to the beach, which had been driven away before our people could procure money from the ſhip to pay for them. Some fowls however were bought, and a large quantity of a kind of ſyrup made of the juice of the palm-tree. This, though infinitely ſuperior to molaſſes or treacle, ſold at a very low price. Vexed at being thus diſappointed in purchaſing the chief articles moſt wanted, we remonſtrated with Mr. Lange, who now found another ſubterfuge. He ſaid, had we gone down to the beach ourſelves, we might have purchaſed what we pleaſed; but that the natives were afraid of being impoſed on by our ſeamen with counterfeit money. We could not but feel ſome indignation againſt a man who had concealed this, being true; or alledged it, being falſe; and Capt. Cook repaired immediately to the beach, but no cattle were to be ſeen, nor were any at hand to be bought. During his abſence, Lange told Mr. Banks, that the Indians were offended at our not having offered them gold for what we had to ſell, and without which nothing could be bought. Mr. Banks did not think it worth his while to hold farther converſation with a man who had been guilty of ſuch repeated falſities; but roſe up ſuddenly, and we all returned on board much diſſatisfied with our fruitleſs negociations. The Raja had indeed given a more plauſible reaſon for our diſappointment: he ſaid, the buffaloes being far up in the country, there had not been time to bring them down to the beach.

On Thurſday the 20th, Dr. Solander went again aſhore with Capt. Cook, and while the former went up to the town to ſpeak to Lange, the captain remained on the beach with a view of purchaſing proviſions. Here he met with the old Indian, who, as he appeared to have ſome authority, we had among ourſelves diſtinguiſhed by the name of the Prime Miniſter. In order to engage this man in our intereſt, the captain preſented him with a ſpying-glaſs; but only a ſmall buffalo was offered to be ſold. The price was five guineas, nearly twice its real value. Three, however, were offered, which the dealer thought a good price; but ſaid, he muſt acquaint the king with what had been bid before he could ſtrike the bargain. A meſſenger was immediately diſpatched to the Raja, and on his return brought word, that not leſs than five guineas would be taken for the buffalo. The captain abſolutely refuſed to give the ſum demanded, which occaſioned the ſending away a ſecond meſſenger, and during his abſence, Dr. Solander was ſeen coming from the town, followed by above a hundred men, ſome of whom were armed with muſquets, and others with lances. Upon enquiring into the meaning of this hoſtile appearance, the doctor informed us, the purport of a meſſage from the king was, according to Mr. Lange's interpretation, that the people would not trade with us becauſe we had refuſed to give them more than half the value for their commodities; and that we were not to expect permiſſion to trade upon any terms longer than this day.

A native of Timor, whoſe parents were Portugueſe, came down with this party, and delivered to the captain what was pretended to be the order of the Raja, and which was in ſubſtance the ſame that Lange had told Dr. Solander; but it was afterwards diſcovered that this man was a confident of Lange's in the ſcheme of extortion. The Engliſh gentlemen had at the ſame time no doubt but that the ſuppoſed order of the Raja was a contrivance of theſe men, and while they were debating how to act in this critical conjuncture, anxious to bring the affair to a ſpeedy iſſue, the Portugueſe began to drive away ſuch of the natives as had brought palm-ſyrup and fowls to ſell, and others who were now bringing ſheep and buffaloes to the market. At this juncture Capt. Cook happening to look at the old man who had been diſtinguiſhed by the name of prime miniſter, imagined that he ſaw in his features a diſapprobation of the preſent proceedings; and, willing to improve the advantage, he graſped the Indian's hand, and gave him an old broad-ſword. This well-timed preſent produced all the good effects that could be wiſhed; the prime miniſter was enraptured at ſo honourable a mark of diſtinction, and brandiſhing his ſword over the head of the impertinent Portugueſe, he made both him and a man who commanded the party, ſit down behind him on the ground. The whole buſineſs was now accompliſhed; the natives, eager to ſupply whatever was wanted, brought their cattle in for ſale, and the market was ſoon ſtocked. For the firſt two buffaloes, Capt. Cook gave ten guineas: but he afterwards purchaſed them by way of exchange, giving a muſquet for each, and at this rate he might have bought any number he thought proper. There remained no doubt but that Lange had a profit out of the two that were ſold; and that his reaſon for having ſaid the natives would take nothing but gold for their cattle, was, that he might the more eaſily ſhare in the produce. Capt. Cook purchaſed of the natives of this iſland ſome hundred gallons of palm-ſyrup, a ſmall quantity of garlick, a large number of eggs, ſome limes and cocoa-nuts, thirty dozen of fowls, three hogs, ſix ſheep, and nine buffaloes. We having obtained theſe neceſſary articles, now prepared for ſailing from this place.

The iſland of Savu is ſituated in 10 deg. 35 min. S. latitude, and 237 deg. 30 min. W. longitude. Its length is between twenty and thirty miles. But its breadth Capt. Cook could not aſcertain, as he only ſaw the north ſide of it. The harbour in which the ſhip lay, was called Seba, from a diſtrict of the country ſo denominated: and there are two other bays on different parts of the iſland. At the time the Endeavour lay there it was near the end of the dry ſeaſon, when it had not rained for almoſt ſeven months, nor was there a running ſtream of freſh water to be ſeen, and the natives were ſupplied only by ſmall ſprings, ſituated at a diſtance up the country, yet even in this dry ſeaſon the appearance of the iſland was beautiful. Near the coaſt the land lies level, and well cloathed with palm, called Arecao, and cocoa-nut trees. Farther off, the ground riſes in the moſt gradual aſcent, and is covered with fair palm trees even to the tops of the hills, ſo as to preſent a regular grove to the view. The rains in this country ceaſe in March or April, and fall again in October or November, and theſe rains produce abundance of indico, millett, and maize, which grow beneath the fineſt trees in the country. Beſides theſe articles, the iſland produces tobacco, cotton, betel, tamarinds, limes, oranges, mangoes, guinea corn, rice, callevances, and water-melons. A ſmall quantity of cinnamon was ſeen, and ſome European herbs, ſuch as garlick, fennel, celery, and marjoram, beſides which, there are fruits of various kinds, and particularly the blimbi, which has a ſharp taſte, and is a fine pickle, but it is not eaten raw; its length is from 3 to 4 inches; it is nearly as thick as a man's thumb, of an oval form, covered with a very thin ſkin, of a very light green, and contains a number of ſeeds ranged in the ſhape of a ſtar. Several buffaloes were ſeen on this iſland which were almoſt as large as an ox; and from a pair of enormous horns of this animal, which Mr. Banks ſaw, it was ſuppoſed that ſome of them were much larger; yet they did not weigh more than half as much as an ox of the ſame ſize; having loſt the greater part of their fleſh through the late dry weather: the meat however was juicy, and of a delicate flavour. The horns of theſe animals bend backwards; they had no dew-laps, and ſcarce any hair on their ſkins, and their ears were remarkably large. The other tame animals on the iſland are dogs, cats, pigeons, fowls, hogs, goats, ſheep, aſſes, and horſes. Few of the horſes are above twelve hands high, yet they are full of mettle, ~~and~~ pace naturally in an expeditious manner: the natives ride them with a halter only. The hogs of this country are fed on the huſks of rice and palm-ſyrup mixed with water, and are remarkably fine and fat. The ſheep is not unlike a goat, and are therefore called Cabaritos; their ears, which are long, hang down under their horns; their noſes are arched, and their bodies covered with hair. The fowls are of the game kind, and though they are rather large, the hen lays a very ſmall egg. The ſea coaſt furniſhes the inhabitants with turtle, but not in any great abundance.

The people of this iſland are rather below the middle ſtature; their hair is black and ſtrait, and perſons of all ranks, as well thoſe that are expoſed to the weather, as thoſe that are not, have one general complexion, which is the dark brown. The men are well formed and ſprightly, and their features differ much from each other: the women, on the contrary, have all one ſet of features, are very ſhort, and broad built. The men have ſilver pincers hanging by ſtrings round their necks, with which they pluck out the hair of their beards; and both men and women root out the hair that grows under their arms; the hair of the womens heads is tied in a club behind, while the men wear a kind of turban on their heads, formed of muſlin, cotton, or even with ſilk handkerchiefs, but the heads of the women have no covering. The dreſs of the men conſiſts of two pieces of cotton cloth, one of which is bound round the middle, and the lower edge of it being drawn pretty tight between the legs, the upper edge is left looſe, ſo as to form a kind of pocket, in which they carry knives and other things: the other piece being paſt under the former on the back of the wearer, the ends of it are carried over the ſhoulders, and tucked into the pocket before. The women drew the upper edge of the piece round the waiſt tight, while the lower edge dropping to the knees, make a kind of petticoat: the other piece of cloth is faſtened acroſs the breaſt, and under the arms. This cloth, which is manufactured by the natives, is dyed blue while in the yarn; and as it is of various ſhades, its look, when it comes to be worn, is very beautiful.

Their ornaments are very numerous, and conſiſt of rings, beads worn round the neck and on the wriſts, and chains of plaited gold wire, are likewiſe worn by both ſexes; but the women had likewiſe girdles of beads round their waiſts, which ſerved to keep up their petticoats. Both ſexes had their ears bored without a ſingle exception, that we ſaw, but we never obſerved an ornament in any of them. Nor did we perceive either man or woman in any thing but what appeared to be their ordinary dreſs, except the king and his miniſter, who in general wore a kind of night gown of coarſe chintz, and the latter once received us in a black robe, which appeared to be made of prince's ſtuff. One perſon, in the way of finery, had a ſilver-headed cane, marked with a kind of cypher, conſiſting of the Roman letters V. O. C. which might have been a preſent from the Dutch Eaſt India Company, whoſe mark it is. We alſo ſaw boys about twelve or fourteen years old, having ſpiral circles of thick braſs wire paſſed three or four times round their arms, above the elbow; and upon the ſame part of the arm, ſome of the men had rings of ivory, two inches broad, and about one in thickneſs; theſe we were informed were the ſons of the Raja's or chiefs, whoſe high births were diſtinguiſhed by theſe cumbrous ornaments. Moſt of the men had their names marked on their arms, and the women had a ſquare ornament of flouriſhed lines imprinted juſt under the bend of the elbow. On enquiry it was found that this practice had been common among the Indians long before they were viſited by any Europeans; and in the neighbouring iſlands, it was ſaid, the inhabitants were marked with circles upon their necks and breaſts. We were ſtruck with the ſimilitude between theſe marks, and thoſe made by tattowing in the South Sea iſlands; and M. Boſſu's account of ſome Indians who dwell on the banks of Akanza, a river in North America, which falls into the Miſſiſſippi, will afford a probable conjecture how the operation is performed. "The Alkanzas," ſays he, "have adopted me, and as a mark of my privilege, have imprinted the figure of a roe-buck upon my thigh, which was done in this manner: an Indian having burnt ſome ſtraw, diluted the aſhes with water, and with this mixture, drew the figure upon my ſkin; he then retraced it, by pricking the lines with needles, ſo as at every puncture juſt to draw the blood, and the blood mixing with the aſhes of the ſtraw, forms a figure which can never be effaced."

The houſes of Savu are all built upon the ſame plan, but differ in ſize, according to the rank and wealth of the proprietors, being from twenty feet to four hundred, and they are fixed on poſts of about four or five feet from the ground. One end of theſe is driven into the ground, and upon the other is laid a floor of wood, which makes a vacant ſpace of four feet between the floor of the houſe and the ground. On this floor are raiſed other pillars that ſupport a roof of ſloping ſides, which meet in a ridge at the top, like thoſe of our barns; the eaves of this roof, which is thatched with palm leaves, reach within two feet of the floor, and over-hang it as much. The ſpace within is generally divided lengthwiſe into three equal parts; the middle part, or center, is incloſed by a partition of four ſides, reaching about ſix feet above the floor, and one or two ſmall rooms are alſo ſometimes taken off from the ſides; the reſt of the ſpace under the roof is open, ſo as freely to admit the air and the light. The particular uſes of theſe apartments we could not, during our ſhort ſtay, learn, except that the cloſe room in the center was appropriated to the women.

As to the food of theſe people, they eat all the tame animals to be found in the iſland; but they prefer the hog to all others; next to this they admire horſe-fleſh; to which ſucceeds the buffalo, then poultry; and they prefer cats and dogs to goats and ſheep. Fiſh, we believe, is not eaten but by the poor, nor by them, except when their duty or buſineſs requires them to be upon the beach, and then each man has a light caſting net, which is girt round his body, and with this he takes any ſmall fiſh which may come in his way.

The moſt remarkable and uſeful tree that grows on the iſland is the fan-palm. Its uſes are ſo various, that it requires particular notice. At certain times it is a ſuccedaneum for all other food both to man and beaſt.

A kind of wine, called toddy, is extracted from this tree, by cutting the buds, and tying under them ſmall baſkets, made of the leaves. The juice which trickles into theſe veſſels is collected morning and evening, and is the common drink of all the inhabitants. The natives call this liquor dua or duac, and both the ſyrup and ſugar, gula. The ſyrup is not unlike treacle, but is ſomewhat thicker, and has a more agreeable taſte. The ſugar is of a reddiſh brown, probably the ſame with the Jugata ſugar upon the continent of India, and to our taſte it was more agreeable than any cane ſugar, unrefined. We at firſt apprehended that the ſyrup, of which ſome of our people eat great quantities, would have occaſioned fluxes, but what effect it produced was rather ſalutary than hurtful. This ſyrup is uſed to fatten hogs, dogs, and fowls; and the inhabitants themſelves have ſubſiſted upon this alone for ſeveral months, when other crops have failed, and animal food has been ſcarce. With the leaves of this tree the natives thatch their houſes, and make baſkets, cups, umbrellas, and tobacco-pipes. They make leaſt account of the fruit, and as the buds are wounded for the tuac or toddy, there is very little produced. It is nearly of the ſize of a full grown turnip; and the kernels muſt be eaten before it is ripe, otherwiſe they are ſo hard, that the teeth will not penetrate them.

As fire-wood is very ſcarce, the natives, by the following method, make a very little anſwer the ends of cookery and diſtillation. A hollow is dug under ground, like a rabbit burrow, in a horizontal direction, about two yards long, with a hole at each end, one of which is large, and the other ſmall. The fire is put in at the large hole, and the ſmall one ſerves for a draught. Circular holes are made through the earth which covers this cavity, on which are ſet earthen pots, large in the middle, and ſmaller towards the bottom, ſo that the fire acts upon a large part of the ſurface. They contain generally about eight or ten gallons each, and it is ſurpriſing to ſee with what a ſmall quantity of fuel they are kept boiling. In this manner they boil all their victuals, and make all their ſyrup and ſugar. The Peruvian Indians have a contrivance of the ſame kind; and perhaps by the poor in other countries it might be adopted with advantage.

In this iſland both ſexes are enſlaved by the pernicious cuſtom of chewing beetle and areca, contracted even while they are children. With theſe they mix a ſort of white lime, compoſed of coral ſtones and ſhells, to which is added frequently a ſmall quantity of tobacco, whereby their mouths are rendered diſguſtful both to the ſight and the ſmell; for the tobacco infects their breath, and the beetle and lime make the teeth both black and rotten. We ſaw many of both ſexes whoſe fore teeth were conſumed, irregularly, almoſt down to the gums, and corroded like iron by ruſt. This loſs of teeth has generally been attributed to the tough ſtringy coat of the areca nut; but our gentlemen imputed it wholly to the lime; for the teeth are not looſened or broken, as might be the caſe by chewing of hard and rough ſubſtances, but they are gradually waſted, as even metals are by powerful acids; and they may not be miſtaken who ſuppoſe that ſugar has a bad effect upon the teeth of Europeans, ſeeing refined ſugar contains a conſiderable quantity of lime, and it is well known, that lime will deſtroy bone of any kind. When the natives are at any time not chewing beetle and areca, they then are ſmoking. The manner of doing this is by rolling up a ſmall quantity of tobacco, and putting it into one end of a tube, about ſix inches long, as thick as a gooſe quill, and made of a palm-leaf. The women in particular were obſerved to ſwallow the ſmoke.

The iſland is divided into five diſtricts or nigrees, each of which is governed by a Raja. Theſe are called Laai, Seba, Regeeua, Timo, and Maſſara. We went aſhore at Seba, and found a Raja that governed with abſolute authority. He was about five and thirty, and the moſt corpulent man we had ſeen upon the whole iſland. But though he governed with an unlimited authority, he took very little regal pomp upon him. He was directed almoſt implicitly by Mannu Djarme, the old man, his prime miniſter, already mentioned; yet notwithſtanding the power with which he was inveſted, he was univerſally beloved, a ſure proof that he did not abuſe it. Mr. Lange informed Capt. Cook, that the chiefs who had ſucceſſively preſided over the five principalities of this iſland, had lived for time immemorial in the moſt cordial friendſhip with each other; yet, he ſaid, the people were of a warlike diſpoſition, and had always courageouſly defended themſelves againſt foreign invaders. We were told alſo, that the inhabitants of the iſland could raiſe, on a ſhort notice, 7,300 fighting men armed with muſquets; of which number Laai was ſaid to furniſh 2,600, Seba 2000, Regeeua 1,500, Timo 800, and Maſſara 400. Beſides the arms already mentioned, each man is furniſhed with a large maſſy pole-ax, which, in the hands of people who have courage, muſt be a formidable weapon. In the uſe of their lances theſe people are ſaid to be ſo expert, that they can pierce a man through the heart at ſixty or ſeventy yards diſtance: yet the Raja had always lived at peace with his neighbours. This account of the martial prowеſs of the inhabitants of Savu may be true; but during our ſtay we ſaw no appearance of it. Before the town houſe, indeed, we ſaw about one hundred ſpears and targets, which ſerved to arm thoſe who were ſent down to intimidate us at the trading place, but they ſeemed to be the refuſe of old armories, no two being of the ſame make or length, for ſome were ſix, others ſixteen feet long. Not one lance was among them, and though the muſquets were clean on the outſide, within they were eaten by the ruſt into holes; and the people themſelves appeared to be ſo little acquainted with military diſcipline, that they came down like a diſorderly rabble, every one having a cock, ſome tobacco, or other merchandiſe, and few or none of their cartouch boxes were furniſhed with either powder or ball, but a piece of paper was thruſt into the holes to ſave appearances. We likewiſe ſaw before the houſe of aſſembly a great gun, ſome ſwivels, and patararoes: but the great gun lay with the touch-hole to the ground, and the ſwivels and patararoes were not in their carriages.

The inhabitants of Savu are divided into five ranks, namely, the Rajas, the land owners, the manufacturers, the ſervants, and the ſlaves. The Rajas are chief; the land owners are reſpected in proportion to their eſtates, and the number of their ſlaves, which laſt are bought and ſold with their eſtates; but a fat hog is the price of one if purchaſed ſeparately. Notwithſtanding a man may thus ſell his ſlave, or convey him with his lands, yet his power does not extend farther, as he may not even ſtrike him without the Raja's permiſſion. The eſtates of theſe land-holders are of very different extent: ſome of them not poſſeſſing above five ſlaves, whilſt others have 500. When a man of rank goes abroad, one of his ſlaves follows him with a ſilver hilted ſword or hanger, ornamented with horſe hair taſſels, and another carries a little bag containing tobacco, beetle, areca, and lime. This is all the ſtate that even the Rajas themſelves take upon them.

Theſe people have a great veneration for antiquity. Their principal boaſt is of a long line of venerable anceſtors. Thoſe houſes that have been well tenanted for ſucceſſive generations, are held in the higheſt eſteem; even the ſtones which are worn ſmooth by having been ſat upon for ages, derive a certain value from that circumſtance. He whoſe progenitors have bequeathed him any of theſe ſtones, or whoſe wealth has enabled him to purchaſe them, cauſes them to be ranged round his habitation, for his ſervants and ſlaves to ſit upon. The Raja cauſes a large ſtone to be ſet up in the chief town of each diſtrict as a monument of his reign. In the province of Seba, thirteen ſuch ſtones were ſeen as well as the remains of ſeveral others which were much worn. Theſe ſtones were all placed on the top of a hill, and ſome of them were of ſuch an enormous ſize that it was amazing by what means they could have been brought thither; nor could any information on this head be obtained from the natives:

theſe monuments, however, indicated that for a ſeries of generations, the iſland had been regularly governed.— When a Raja dies, proclamation is made that all thoſe who have been his ſubjects ſhall hold a ſolemn feſtival. On this they proceed to the hill where thoſe ſtones are erected, and feaſt for ſeveral weeks, killing all the animals that ſuit their purpoſe, wherever they can be found, in order to furniſh the treat, which is daily ſerved up on the monumental ſtones. When they have thus exhauſted their whole ſtock, they are compelled to keep a faſt; and when the feaſt happens to end in the dry ſeaſon, when they cannot get vegetables to eat, they have no other ſubſiſtence than the palm ſyrup and water, till the few animals which have eſcaped the general maſſacre have bred a ſufficient number for a freſh ſupply, except the adjacent diſtrict happens to be in a condition to relieve them.

The natives of Savu have an inſtrument with which they clear the cotton of its ſeeds; it is about ſeven inches in height and fourteen in length. They have alſo a machine with which they ſpin by hand, as was the cuſtom before the invention of ſpinning wheels in Europe.

The inhabitants of this iſland were in general robuſt and healthy, and had every mark of longevity. The ſmall pox, however, is a diſtemper with which they are acquainted, and which they dread as much as a peſtilence. When any perſon is attacked by it, he is carried to a ſpot at a diſtance from the houſes, where his food is conveyed to him by means of a long ſtick, as no one dares to venture near him. Abandoned by all his friends, he is there left to live or die as it may happen, without being admitted to any comforts of the community.

The Portugueſe very early viſited this iſland, on which they eſtabliſhed a ſettlement, but ſoon after they were ſucceeded by the Dutch, who without formally taking poſſeſſion of the place, ſent a number of trading veſſels in order to eſtabliſh a commerce with the natives. Moſt of the Dutch purchaſes, it is ſuppoſed, are confined to a ſupply of proviſions for the Spice-Iſlands, the inhabitants of which breed but a ſmall number of cattle. The Dutch Eaſt India Company made an agreement with the ſeveral Rajas of the iſlands, that a quantity of rice, maize, and callavances ſhould be annually furniſhed to their people, who, in return, were to ſupply the Rajas with ſilk, linen, cutlery wares, and arrack. Certain ſmall veſſels, each having on board ten Indians, are ſent from Timor to bring away the maize and callavances, and a ſhip that brings the articles furniſhed by the Dutch, receives the rice on board once a year; and as there are three bays on this coaſt, this veſſel anchors in each of them in turn. The Dutch articles of commerce are accepted by the Rajas as a preſent; and they and their chief attendants drink of the arrack without intermiſſion till it is exhauſted.

It was in the agreement above-mentioned that the Rajas ſtipulated, that a Dutch reſident ſhould be conſtantly on the iſland. Accordingly this Lange, whom we have mentioned, was ſent thither in that capacity, and a ſort of aſſiſtant with him, whoſe father was a Portugueſe, and his mother a native of Timor, with one Frederic Craig, whoſe father was a Dutchman, and his mother an Indian. Mr. Lange viſits the Raja in ſtate, attended by fifty ſlaves on horſe-back, and if the crops are ripe, orders veſſels to convey them immediately to Timor, ſo that they are not even houſed upon the iſland. It is likewiſe part of his buſineſs to perſuade the landholders to plant, if he perceives that they are backward in that particular. This reſident had been ten years on the iſland, when the Endeavour touched there, during all which time he had not ſeen any white perſons, except thoſe who came annually in the Dutch veſſel, to carry off the rice, as above-mentioned. He was married to a native of Timor, and lived in the ſame manner as the natives of Savu, whoſe language he ſpoke better than any other. He ſat on the ground like the Indians, and chewed beetle, and ſeemed in every thing to reſemble them, except in his complexion and the dreſs of his country. As to Mr. Craig, his aſſiſtant, he was employed in teaching the natives to write and read, and inſtructing them in the principles of Chriſtianity. Though there was neither clergyman nor church to be ſeen upon the iſland, yet this Mr. Craig averred, that in the townſhip of Seba only, there were 600 Chriſtians: as to the religion of thoſe who have not embraced Chriſtianity, it is a peculiar ſpecies of Paganiſm, every one having a god of his own, ſomewhat after the manner of the Cemies heretofore mentioned. Their morality, however, is much purer than could be expected from ſuch a people. Robberies are ſcarcely ever committed. Murder is unknown among them; and though no man is allowed more than one wife, they are ſtrangers to adultery, and almoſt ſo to the crime of ſimple fornication. When any diſputes ariſe between the natives, the determination of the Raja is deciſive and ſatisfactory. Some obſervations were made upon the language of the natives, by the gentlemen, while the veſſel lay here; and a kind of vocabulary formed, a ſketch of which we have here inſerted:

Momonne,	*A man.*
Mobunne,	*A woman.*
Catoo,	*The head.*
Row catoo,	*The hair.*
Matta,	*The eyes.*
Rowna matta,	*The eye-laſhes.*
Swanga,	*The noſe.*
Cavaranga,	*The cheeks.*
Wodeele,	*The ears.*
Vaio,	*The tongue.*
Lacoco,	*The neck.*
Sooſoo,	*The breaſts.*
Caboo ſooſoo,	*The nipples.*
Dulloo,	*The belly.*
Aſſoo,	*The navel.*
Tooga,	*The thighs.*
Rootoo,	*The knees.*
Baibo,	*The legs.*
Dunceala,	*The feet.*
Kiſſovei yilla,	*The toes.*
Camacoo,	*The arms.*
Wulaba,	*The hand.*
Cabaou,	*A buffalo.*
Djara,	*A horſe.*
Vavee,	*A hog.*
Doomba,	*A ſheep.*
Keſavoo,	*A goat.*
Guaca,	*A dog.*
Maio,	*A cat.*
Mannu,	*A fowl.*
Carow,	*The tail.*
Pangoutoo,	*The beak.*
Ica,	*A fiſh*
Unjoo,	*A turtle.*
Nieu,	*A cocoa-nut.*
Boaceree,	*Fan palm.*
Calella,	*Areca.*
Canana,	*Beetle.*
Aou,	*Lime.*
Maanadoo,	*A fiſh-hook.*
Tata,	*Tatou, or marks on the ſkin.*
Lodo,	*The ſun.*
Wurroo,	*The moon.*
Aidaſſee,	*The ſea.*
Ailea,	*Water.*
Aoe,	*Fire.*
Maate,	*To die.*
Tabudge,	*To ſleep.*
Tatee too,	*To riſe.*
Uſſe,	*One.*
Lhua,	*Two.*
Tullu,	*Three.*
Uppah,	*Four.*
Lumme,	*Five.*
Unna,	*Six.*
Pedu,	*Seven.*
Arru,	*Eight.*
Saou,	*Nine.*

Singooroo,

Singooroo,	*Ten.*
Singurunguſſe,	*Eleven.*
Lhuangooroo,	20.
Singaſſu,	100.
Setuppah,	1000.
Selacuſſa,	10,000.
Serata,	100,000.
Sereboo,	1,000,000.

It is here neceſſary to obſerve, that this iſland has not been laid down in any of the charts hitherto publiſhed, and as to our account of it, let it be remembered, that except the facts in which we were parties, and the account of the objects which we had an opportunity to examine, the whole is founded merely upon the report of Mr. Lange, upon whoſe authority it muſt therefore reſt.

Of the iſlands in the neighbourhood of Savu, the principal is Timor, which is annually viſited by the Dutch reſidents on the other iſlands, in order to make up their accounts. Some of the towns on the north ſide of Timor are in the hands of the Portugueſe; but the Dutch poſſeſs a far greater proportion of the iſland, on which they have built a fort, and erected ſeveral ſtore-houſes. There are three ſmall iſlands, called the Solars, which produce great abundance of the various neceſſaries of life, that are carried in ſmall veſſels to the Dutch ſettlements on the iſland of Timor. Theſe iſlands are low and flat, and one of them has a commodious harbour. To the weſtward of the Solars lies the little iſland of Ende, in the poſſeſſion of the Portugueſe, who have built a conſiderable town on the N. E. point of it; and cloſe to the town is an harbour where ſhips may ride in ſafety. The iſland of Rotte has a Dutch reſident, whoſe buſineſs is ſimilar to that of Mr. Lange on the iſland of Savu. Rotte produces, beſides ſuch things as are common to other iſlands, a conſiderable quantity of ſugar, which is made to a great degree of perfection. There is likewiſe a ſmall iſland lying to the weſt of Savu, the chief produce of which is the areca nut, of which the Dutch receive in exchange for European commodities, as large a quantity every year as load two veſſels.

About two years before the Endeavour was in theſe ſeas, a French ſhip was wrecked on the coaſt of Timor: ſhe had been lodged on the rocks ſeveral days, when the wind tore her to pieces in an inſtant, and the Captain, with the greater part of the ſeamen were drowned; but the lieutenant and about eighty men, having reached the ſhore, travelled acroſs the country of Concordia, where their immediate wants were relieved, and they afterwards returned to the wreck, in company with ſome Dutchmen and Indians, who aſſiſted them in recovering all their cheſts of bullion, and other effects. This done they returned to Concordia, where they remained ſeveral weeks; but in this interval death made ſuch havock among them, that not above half their number remained to return to their native country, which they did as ſoon as a veſſel could be fitted out for them.

On Friday, the 21ſt of September, in the morning, we got under ſail, and bent our courſe weſtward, along the north ſide of the iſland of Savu, and of another lying to the weſtward of it, which at noon bore S. S. E. diſtant two leagues. At four in the afternoon, in latitude 10 deg. 38 min. S. and longitude 238 deg. 28 min. W. we diſcovered a ſmall low iſland. In the evening of the 23d, we got clear of the iſlands, and on the 26th, our latitude by obſervation was 10 deg. 51 min. S. and our longitude 252 deg. 11 min. W. On the 28th, we ſteered all day N. W. with a view of making the land of Java, and on the 30th, Capt. Cook took into his poſſeſſion the log-book and journals, at leaſt all he could find of the officers, petty officers, and ſeamen, whom he ſtrictly enjoined ſecrecy with reſpect to where they had been. At ſeven in the evening we had thunder and lightning, and about twelve by the light of the flaſhes we ſaw the weſt end of Java.

On Monday, October the 1ſt, at ſix o'clock in the morning, Java Head bore S. E. by E. diſtant five leagues. Soon after we ſaw Prince's Iſland, and at ten Cracatoa, a remarkable high peaked iſland. At noon it bore N. 40 E. diſtant ſeven leagues. On the 2nd, we were cloſe in with the coaſt of Java, in fifteen fathom water, along which we ſtood. In the forenoon a boat was ſent aſhore, in order to procure ſome fruit for Tupia, who was at this time extremely ill. Our people returned with four cocoa-nuts, and a ſmall bunch of plantains, for which they had paid a ſhilling; but ſome herbage for the cattle the Indians gave our ſeamen, and aſſiſted them to cut it. The country had a delightful appearance, being every where covered with trees, which looked like one continued wood. About eleven o'clock we ſaw two Dutch Eaſt Indiamen, from whom we heard with great pleaſure, that the Swallow had reached the Engliſh channel in ſafety, having been at Batavia about two years before. We alſo learnt, that there was ſtationed here a fly boat or packet, to carry letters, as was ſaid, from the Dutch ſhips, that came hither from Batavia, but the Captain thought it was appointed to examine all ſhips, that ſhould have paſſed the ſtreight. We had now been ſome hours at anchor, but in the evening a light breeze ſpringing up, we got under ſail, yet having little wind, and a ſtrong current againſt us, we reached no further by eight in the morning, of the 3d, than Bantam Point. We now perceived the Dutch packet ſtanding after us, but the wind ſhifting to the N. E. ſhe bore away. We were now obliged to anchor; which we did in twenty-two fathom water, at about two miles from the ſhore. At ſix o'clock in the evening, the country boats came along ſide of us, on board one of which was the maſter of the packet. They brought in them fowls, ducks, parrots, turtle, rice, birds, monkeys, and other articles, with an intention to ſell them, but having fixed very high prices on their commodities, and our Savu ſtock being not yet expended, very few articles were purchaſed. The Captain indeed gave two dollars for twenty-five fowls, and a Spaniſh dollar for a turtle, which weighed about ſix and thirty pounds. We might alſo for a dollar have bought two monkeys, or a whole cage of rice-birds. The maſter of the packet brought with him two books, in one of which he deſired of our officers, that one of them would write down the name of our ſhip and commander; the place from whence we came; to what port bound; with ſuch other particulars relating to ourſelves, as we might think proper, for the information of any of our countrymen who might come after us. In the other book the maſter himſelf entered the names of our ſhip and its Captain, in order to tranſmit them to the governor and council of the Indies. We perceived, that in the firſt book many ſhips, particularly Portugueſe, had made entries of the ſame kind with that for which it was preſented to us. Mr. Hicks, our lieutenant, however, having written the name of the ſhip, only added "from Europe." The maſter of the packet took notice of this, but ſaid, that he was ſatisfied with any thing we thought fit to write, it being intended ſolely for the information of our friends.

Friday the fifth, we made ſeveral attempts to ſail with a wind that would not ſtem the current, and as often came to an anchor. In the morning a proa, with a Dutch officer, came along-ſide of us, and ſent to Captain Cook a printed paper in exceeding bad Engliſh, duplicates of which he had in other languages, all regularly ſigned, in the name of the governor and council of the Indies, by their ſecretary; the contents whereof were the following enquiries, contained in nine queſtions.

1. The ſhip's name, and to what nation ſhe belonged?
2. If ſhe came from Europe, or any other place?
3. From what place ſhe had laſt departed?
4. Whereunto deſigned to go?
5. What and how many ſhips of the Dutch company by departure from the laſt ſhore there layed, and their names?

6. If one or more of theſe ſhips, in company with the Endeavour, is departed for this or any other place?

7. If during the voyage any particularities is happened, or ſeen?

8. If not any ſhips in ſea, or the ſtreights of Sunda, have ſeen, or hailed in, and which?

9. If any other news worth of attention, at the place from whence the ſhip laſtly departed, or during the voyage, is happened?

BATAVIA in the Caſtle.
By order of the Governor General, and the
Counſellors of India,
J. BRANDER BUNGL. Sec.

The officer obſerving, that the Captain did not chuſe to anſwer any of the above queſtions except the firſt and fourth, he ſaid that the reſt were not material, though it was remarked that juſt afterwards he affirmed he muſt diſpatch the paper to Batavia, at which place it would arrive by the next day. This examination was rather extraordinary, and the more ſo, as it does not ſeem to have been of any long ſtanding.

As ſoon as the Dutch officer departed, the anchor was weighed, but in four hours the ſhip was forced to come to an anchor again, till a breeze ſprang up; ſhe then held on her courſe till the next morning, when on account of the rapidity of the current, the anchor was dropped again. At laſt we weighed on the 8th, and ſtood clear of a large ledge of rocks, which we had almoſt ran upon the preceding day. But in the forenoon we were once more obliged to anchor near a little iſland that was not laid down in any chart on board. It was found to be one of thoſe called the Milles Iſles. Mr. Banks and Dr. Solander having landed upon it, collected a few plants, and ſhot a bat which was a yard long, being meaſured from the extreme points of the wings; they alſo killed a few plovers on this iſland, the breadth of which does not exceed one hundred yards, and the length five hundred; they found a houſe and a little ſpot of cultivated ground, and on it grew the Palma Chriſti, from which the Weſt Indians make their caſtor oil.

In a little time after the gentlemen returned to the ſhip, ſome Malays came along-ſide in a boat, bringing with them pompions, dried fiſh, and turtle, for ſale; one of the turtles, which weighed near one hundred and fifty pounds, they ſold for a dollar, and ſeemed to expect the ſame piece of money for their fruit; but it being hinted to them that a dollar was too much, they deſired that one might be cut, and a piece of it given to them, but this not being complied with, they at length ſold twenty-ſix pompions for a Portugueſe petacka. When they departed, they intimated their wiſhes, that this tranſaction might not be mentioned at Batavia.

We now made but little way till night, when the land-breeze ſpringing up, we ſailed to the E. S. E. and on the following day, by the aſſiſtance of the ſea-breeze, came to an anchor in the road of Batavia. At this place we found a number of large Dutch veſſels, the Harcourt Eaſt Indiaman from England, which had loſt her paſſage to China, and two ſhips belonging to the private trade of our India company. The Endeavour had no ſooner anchored, than a ſhip was obſerved, with a broad pendant flying, from which a boat was diſpatched to demand the name of the veſſel, with that of the commander, &c. To theſe enquiries Captain Cook gave ſuch anſwers as he thought proper, and the officer who commanded the boat departed. This gentleman, and the crew that attended him, were ſo worn out with the unhealthineſs of the climate, that it was apparent many deaths would follow: yet at preſent there was not one invalid on board of our ſhip, except the Indian Tupia. The Captain now diſpatched an officer to the governor of the town, to apologize for the Endeavour's not ſaluting: for he had but three guns proper for the purpoſe, except ſwivels, and he was apprehenſive that they would not be heard. The ſhip was ſo leaky, that ſhe made about nine inches water in an hour, on the average; part of the falſe keel was gone; one of her pumps was totally uſeleſs, and the reſt ſo much decayed, that they could not laſt long. The officers and ſeamen concurring in opinion that the ſhip could not ſafely put to ſea again in this condition, the Captain reſolved to ſolicit permiſſion to heave her down; but as he had learned that this muſt be done in writing, he drew up a petition, and had it tranſlated into Dutch.

On Wedneſday, October the 10th, the Captain and the reſt of the gentlemen went on ſhore, and applied to the only Engliſh reſident at Batavia; this gentleman, whoſe name was Leith, received his countrymen in the politeſt manner, and entertained them at dinner with great hoſpitality. Mr. Leith informed us, that a public hotel was kept in town, by order of the Dutch governor, at which place merchants and other ſtrangers were obliged to lodge, and that the landlord of the hotel was bound to find them warehouſes for their goods, on the condition of receiving ten ſhillings on every hundred pounds of their value, but as the Endeavour was a king's ſhip, her officers and the other gentlemen, might reſide where they thought proper, only aſking leave of the governor, whoſe permiſſion would be inſtantly obtained. Mr. Leith added, that they might live cheaper in this way than at the hotel, if they had any perſon who ſpoke the Batavian tongue, whom they could rely on to purchaſe their proviſions, but as there was no ſuch perſon among the whole ſhip's crew, the gentlemen immediately beſpoke beds at the hotel. In the afternoon Captain Cook attended the governor-general, who received him politely, and told him to wait on the council the next morning, when his petition ſhould be laid before them, and every thing that he ſolicited ſhould be granted. Late in the evening of this day, there happened a moſt terrible ſtorm of thunder and lightning, accompanied with very heavy rain. In this ſtorm the main-maſt of a Dutch Eaſt Indiaman was ſplit and carried away by the deck; and the main-top-maſt and main-top-gallant-maſt were torn to pieces; it is ſuppoſed, that the lightning was attracted by an iron ſpindle at the main-top-gallant-maſt-head. The Endeavour, which was at a ſmall diſtance from the Dutch ſhip, eſcaped without damage, owing, moſt probably, to the electrical chain which conducted the lightning over the veſſel.—A centinel on board the Endeavour, who was charging his muſquet at the time of the ſtorm, had it ſhaken out of his hand, and the ram-rod broken to pieces; the electrical chain looked like a ſtream of fire, and the ſhip ſuſtained a very violent ſhock.

On Thurſday the 11th, Capt. Cook waited on the gentlemen of the council, who informed him that all his requeſts ſhould be complied with. In the interim the other gentlemen made a contract with the maſter of the hotel, to furniſh them and their friends with as much tea, coffee, punch and tobacco, as they might have occaſion for, and to keep them a ſeparate table, for nine ſhillings a day Engliſh money: but on the condition that every perſon who ſhould viſit them, ſhould pay at the rate of four ſhillings and ſix-pence for his dinner, and the ſame ſum for his ſupper and bed, if he choſe to ſleep at the hotel; they were likewiſe to pay for every ſervant that attended them fifteenpence a day. It was ſoon diſcovered, that they had been much impoſed on; for theſe charges were twice as much as could have been demanded at a private houſe. They appeared to live elegantly, but at the ſame time were but ill ſupplied. Their dinner conſiſted of fifteen diſhes, all ſerved up at once; and their ſupper of thirteen, but of theſe, nine or ten were of the moſt ordinary, becauſe the cheapeſt, (poultry) that could be purchaſed, and even ſome of theſe diſhes were obſerved to be ſerved up four times ſucceſſively: a duck, which was hot at dinner, was brought cold in the evening, the next day ſerved up as a fricaſſee, and was converted into forced meat at night. We, however, only fared as others had done before us: it was the conſtant cuſtom of the conſcientious maſter of the hotel, to treat all his gueſts in the ſame manner: if we took no notice of it, all was well, for the landlord had the better cuſtomers of us: if we remonſtrated againſt ſuch treatment, the table was better ſupplied from time to time, till, in the end, we had no reaſon to complain. However, after a few days, Mr. Banks hired for himſelf and party, a ſmall houſe, next door to the hotel, for which he paid forty-five ſhillings per month; but they were far from having the conveniencies and privacy they expected: for no perſon was permitted to ſleep in it as an occaſional gueſt, under a penalty: and Dutchmen were continually running in without the leaſt ceremony, to aſk what was to be ſold, it being a cuſtom for moſt private perſons in Batavia to be furniſhed with ſome articles of traffic. Every one here hires a carriage, and Mr. Banks engaged two. Theſe carriages are open chaiſes; they hold two perſons, and are driven by a man ſitting on a kind of coach-box: for each of theſe Mr. Banks paid two rix-dollars a day.

Our Indian friend Tupia had hitherto continued on board on account of his diſorder, which was of the bilious kind, yet he perſiſted in refuſing every medicine that was offered him. Mr. Banks ſent for him to his houſe, in hopes that he might recover his health. While in the ſhip, and even in the boat, he was exceedingly liſtleſs and low ſpirited, but he no ſooner entered the town than he ſeemed as if reanimated. The houſes, the carriages, ſtreets, people, and a multiplicity of other objects, wholly new to him, produced an effect like the ſuppoſed power of faſcination. But if Tupia was aſtoniſhed at the ſcene, his boy Tayeto was perfectly enraptured. He expreſſed his wonder and delight with leſs reſtraint. He danced along the ſtreet in a kind of extacy, and examined every object with a reſtleſs curioſity which was each moment excited and gratified. Tupia remarked particularly the variety of dreſſes worn by the paſſing multitude, concerning which he made many enquiries. Being informed that here were people of different nations, each of whom wore the habit of his reſpective country, he deſired that he might conform to the cuſtom, and appear in that of Otaheite; and ſome South-Sea cloth being ſent for from the ſhip, he dreſſed himſelf with great expedition and dexterity. The people of Batavia, who had ſeen an Indian brought thither in M. Bougainville's ſhip, named Otourou, miſtook Tupia for that perſon, and frequently aſked if he was not the ſame. About this time we had procured an order to the ſuperintendant of the iſland of Ouruſt, where the ſhip was to be repaired, to receive her there, and by one of the ſhips that ſailed for Holland, an account was ſent to Mr. Stephens, ſecretary to the admiralty, of our arrival at this place. Here the captain found an unexpected difficulty in procuring money for the expences that would be incurred by refitting the Endeavour; private perſons had neither the ability nor inclination to advance the ſum required; he therefore ſent a written application to the governor himſelf, who ordered the Shebander to ſupply the captain with what money he might want out of the company's treaſury.

Thurſday the 18th, early in the morning, after a delay of ſome days, we ran down to Ouruſt, and laid the ſhip along-ſide of the wharf, on Cooper's Iſland, in order to take out her ſtores. After little more than nine days, we began to experience the fatal effects of the climate and ſituation. Tupia ſunk on a ſudden, and grew every day worſe and worſe. Tayeto, his boy, was ſeized with an inflammation on his lungs. Mr. Banks and Dr. Solander were attacked by fevers, and the two ſervants of the former became very ill; in ſhort, almoſt every perſon both on board and aſhore fell ſick in a few days, owing, as we imagined, to the low ſwampy ſituation of the place, and the numberleſs dirty canals, that interſect the town in all directions.

On the 26th, when few of the crew were able to do duty, we erected a tent for their reception. Tupia, of whoſe life we began to deſpair, deſired to be removed to the ſhip, in hopes of breathing a freer air; however this could not be done, as ſhe was unrigged, and preparing to be laid down at the careening-place; but on the 28th, Mr. Banks conveyed him to Cooper's Iſland, or as it is called here, Kuypor, and, as he ſeemed pleaſed with the ſpot near which the ſhip lay, a tent was pitched for him. When the ſea and land breezes blew over him, he expreſſed great ſatisfaction at his ſituation. On the 30th Mr. Banks returned to town, having, from humanity alone, been two days with Tupia, whoſe fits of an intermitting fever, now became a regular tertian, and were ſo violent as to deprive him of his ſenſes while they laſted, and left him ſo weak, that he could ſcarcely crawl from his bed. At the ſame time Dr. Solander's fever increaſed, and Mr. Monkhouſe, the ſurgeon, was confined to his bed.

On Monday the 5th of November, after many unavoidable delays, the ſhip was laid down, and the ſame day Mr. Monkhouſe, our ſurgeon, fell a ſacrifice to this fatal country; whoſe loſs was more ſeverely felt, by his being a ſenſible, ſkilful man, and dying at a time when his abilities were moſt wanted. Dr. Solander was juſt able to attend his funeral, but Mr. Banks, in his turn, was confined to his bed. Great, inexpreſſibly great was our diſtreſs at this time; the proſpect before us in the higheſt degree diſcouraging; our danger ſuch as we could not ſurmount by any efforts of our own, for courage, diligence, and ſkill, were all equally ineffectual; and death was every day making advances towards us, when we could neither reſiſt nor fly. The power of diſeaſe, from the peſtiferous air of the country, daily gaining ſtrength, ſeveral Malay ſervants were hired to attend the ſick, but they had ſo little ſenſe either of duty or humanity, that the patient was obliged frequently to get out of bed to ſeek them.

Friday the 9th, our Indian boy Tayeto paid the debt of nature, and poor Tupia was ſo affected at the loſs, that it was doubted whether he would ſurvive it till the next day. In the mean time the ſhip's bottom having been carefully examined, it was found to be in a worſe condition than we apprehended. The falſe keel was conſiderably gone to within twenty feet of the ſtern poſt; the main keel was injured in many places; much of the ſheathing was torn off; and ſeveral planks were greatly damaged: two of them, and half of a third, particularly, for the length of ſix feet, were ſo worn, that they were not above an eighth part of an inch thick, and the worms had made their way quite into the timbers: yet, in this condition, the Endeavour had ſailed many hundred leagues, where navigation is as dangerous as in any part of the globe. How much miſery did we eſcape, by being ignorant that ſo conſiderable a part of the bottom of the veſſel was thinner than the ſole of a ſhoe, and that every life on board depended on ſo ſlight a barrier between us and the unfathomable ocean!

Dr. Solander and Mr. Banks were now ſo worn down by their diſorders, that the phyſician declared they had no chance for recovery but by removing into the country. In conſequence of this advice a houſe was hired for them, at the diſtance of about two miles from the town, which belonged to the maſter of the hotel, who engaged to ſupply them with proviſions, and the uſe of ſlaves. As they had already experienced the unfeeling inattention of theſe fellows to the ſick, they bought each of them a Malay woman, who, from the tenderneſs of their ſex made them good nurſes. While theſe gentlemen were taking meaſures for the recovery of their health, we received an account of the death of our faithful Tupia, who ſunk at once after the loſs of his boy, Tayeto, whom he loved with the tenderneſs of a parent. When Tayeto was firſt ſeized with the fatal diſorder, he ſeemed ſenſible of his approaching end, and frequently ſaid to thoſe that were about him Tyau mate ſee, "My friends I am dying;" he was very tractable, and took any medicines that were offered him: they were both buried in the iſland of Edam.

On the 14th, the bottom of the ſhip was thoroughly repaired, and much to Capt. Cook's ſatisfaction, who beſtowed great encomiums on the officers and the workmen at the Marine-yard; in his opinion there is not one in the world, where a ſhip can be laid down with more convenient ſpeed and ſafety, nor repaired with more diligence and ſkill. At this place they heave down with two maſts, a method we do not now practiſe; it is, however, unqueſtionably more ſafe and expeditious to heave down with two maſts than one, and the man muſt want common ſenſe, or be ſtrangely attached to old cuſtoms, who will not allow this, after ſeeing with what facility the Dutch heave down and refit their largeſt veſſels at Ouruſt. At this time Capt. Cook was taken ill. Mr. Sporing alſo, and a ſailor who attended Mr. Banks, were ſeized with the deadly intermittents, and only ten of the ſhip's company were capable of doing duty. As to Mr. Banks and Dr. Solander, they recovered ſlowly at their country houſe, which was open to the ſea breeze, and ſituated upon a running ſtream; circumſtances that contributed not a little to a free circulation of air. Yet notwithſtanding theſe perplexing obſtacles, though harraſſed by a contagious diſeaſe, and alarmed by frequent deaths, we proceeded in rigging the ſhip, and getting water and neceſſary ſtores aboard: the ſtores were eaſily obtained and ſhipped, but the water we were obliged to procure from Batavia, at the rate of ſix ſhillings and eight-pence a leager, or one hundred and fifty gallons.

On the 25th, in the night there fell ſuch a ſhower of rain, for the ſpace of four hours, as even all of us had cauſe ever to remember. The water poured through every part of Mr. Banks's houſe, and the lower apartments admitted a ſtream ſufficient to turn a mill. As this gentleman was now greatly reſtored in health, he went to Batavia the following day, and was ſurprized to ſee that the inhabitants had hung their bedding to dry. About the 26th of this month the weſterly monſoon ſet in; it blows in the day-time from the N. or N. W. and from the S. W. during the night; previous to this, there had been violent ſhowers of rain for ſeveral nights. The muſquitos and gnats, whoſe company had been ſufficiently diſagreeable in dry weather, now begun to ſwarm in immenſe numbers, riſing from the puddles of water like bees from a hive; they were extremely troubleſome during the night, but the pain ariſing from the ſting, though very ſevere, ſeldom laſted more than half an hour, and in the day-time they ſeldom made their attack. The frogs kept a perpetual croaking in the ditches, a certain ſign that the wet ſeaſon was commenced, and that daily rain might be expected.

The ſhip being repaired, the ſick people received on board her, and the greater part of her water and ſtores taken in, ſhe ſailed from Ouruſt on the 8th of December, and anchored in the road of Batavia: twelve days were employed in receiving the remainder of her proviſions, water, and other neceſſaries, though the buſineſs would have been done in much leſs time, but that ſome of the crew died, and the majority of the ſurvivors were ſo ill, as to be unable to give their aſſiſtance.

On the 24th, Capt. Cook took leave of the governor, and ſome other gentlemen, who had diſtinguiſhed themſelves by the civilities they ſhewed him; but at this juncture an incident occurred, that might have produced conſequences by no means deſirable. A ſailor belonging to one of the Dutch ſhips in the road of Batavia, deſerted from the veſſel, and entered himſelf on board the Endeavour. The captain of the Dutch ſhip having made application to the governor, claiming the delinquent as a ſubject of the States General, the governor iſſued his order for the reſtoration of the man; when this order was delivered to him, he ſaid, that the man ſhould be given up, if he appeared to be a Dutchman. As the captain was at this time on ſhore, and did not intend going on board till the following day, he gave the Dutch officer a note to the lieutenant, who commanded on board the Endeavour, to deliver the deſerter on the condition above-mentioned. On the following day the Dutchman waited on Capt. Cook, informing him, that the lieutenant had abſolutely refuſed to give up the ſeaman, ſaying he was an Iriſhman, and of courſe a ſubject of his Britannic Majeſty; Capt. Cook applauded the conduct of his officer, and added, that it could not be expected that he ſhould deliver up an Engliſh ſubject. The Dutch officer then ſaid, he was authoriſed, by the governor, to demand the fugitive as a Daniſh ſubject, adding that his name was entered in the ſhip's books as having been borne at Elſineur; to this Capt. Cook very properly replied, that the governor muſt have been miſtaken, when he gave this order for delivering the deſerter, who had his option whether he would ſerve the Dutch or the Engliſh; but in compliment to the governor, the man ſhould be given up, as a favour, if he appeared to be a Dane, but that in this caſe, he ſhould by no means be demanded as a right, and that he would certainly keep him, if he appeared to be a ſubject of the crown of Great Britain. The Dutchman now took his leave, and he had not been long gone before the captain received a letter from the commanding officer on board, containing full proof, that the man was an Engliſh ſubject. This letter the captain carried to the ſhebander, deſiring him to lay it before the governor, and to inform him, that the man ſhould not be delivered up on any terms whatever. This ſpirited conduct on the part of Capt. Cook, had the deſired effect; and thus the matter ended.

This day the captain, attended by Mr. Banks and the other gentlemen who had hitherto lived in the town, repaired on board the ſhip, which got under ſail the next morning. The Endeavour was ſaluted by the fort, and by the Elgin Eaſt Indiaman, which then lay in the road; but ſoon after theſe compliments were returned, the ſea-breeze ſetting in, they were obliged to come to anchor. Since the arrival of the ſhip in Batavia Road every perſon belonging to her had been ill, except the ſail-maker, who was more than ſeventy years old, yet this man got drunk every day while we remained there. The Endeavour buried ſeven of her people at Batavia viz. Tupia and his boy, three of the ſailors, the ſervant of Mr. Green the aſtronomer and the ſurgeon; and at the time of the veſſel's ſailing, forty of the crew were ſick, and the reſt ſo enfeebled by their late illneſs, as to be ſcarcely able to do their duty.

CHAP. XII.

A deſcriptive account of the town of Batavia, and the circumjacent country—Its various productions particularized—The manners, cuſtoms, and way of living of the inhabitants fully deſcribed—The Endeavour ſails from Batavia to the Cape of Good Hope—An account of the inhabitants of Prince's Iſland, with a comparative view of their language, with that of the Malay and Javaneſe—The arrival of the Endeavour at the Cape of Good Hope—Obſervations on the run from Java Head to that place—The Cape and St. Helena deſcribed—Remarks on the Hottentots—The Endeavour returns to England, and anchors in the Downs on Wedneſday, June 12, 1771.

BATAVIA, ſituated in 6 deg. 10 min. S. latitude, and 106 deg. 50 min. E. longitude from the meridian of Greenwich, is built on the bank of a large bay, ſomething more than twenty miles from the Streight of Sunda, on the north ſide of the iſland of Java, on a low boggy ground. Several ſmall rivers, which riſe forty miles up the country, in the mountains of Blaeuwen Berg, diſcharge themſelves into the ſea at this place, having firſt interſected the town in different directions. There are wide canals of nearly ſtagnated water in almoſt every ſtreet, and as the banks of the canals are planted with trees, they appear at firſt very agreeable; but theſe trees and canals combine to render the air peſtilential. Some of the rivers are navigable, more than thirty miles up the country; and, indeed, the Dutch appear to have choſen this ſpot to build the town on, for the ſake of water carriage, in which convenience Batavia exceeds every place in the world, except the towns of Holland. A writer who publiſhed an account of this place near 50 years ago, makes the number of houſes at that time 4,760, viz. 1,242 Dutch houſes, and 1,200 Chineſe houſes, within the walls; and 1,066 Dutch houſes, and 1,240 Chineſe houſes, without the walls, with 12 houſes for the vending of arrack. The ſtreets of Batavia being wide, and the houſes large, it ſtands on more ground than any place that has only an equal number of houſes. In dry weather a moſt horrid ſtench ariſes from the canals, and taints the air to a great degree; and when the rains have ſo ſwelled their canals that they overflow their banks, the ground-floors of the houſes, in the lower part of the town, are filled with ſtinking water, that leaves behind it dirt and ſlime in amazing quantities. The running ſtreams are ſometimes as offenſive as the ſtagnant canals; for the bodies of dead animals are frequently lodged on the ſhallow parts, where they are left to putrify and corrupt the air, except a flood happens to carry them away; this was the caſe of a dead buffalo, while the crew of the Endeavour were there, which lay ſtinking on the ſhoal of a river, in one of the chief ſtreets for ſeveral days. They ſometimes clean the canals; but this buſineſs is performed in ſuch a manner, as ſcarcely to make them leſs a nuiſance than before, for the bottom being cleared of its black mud, it is left on the ſide of the canal, till it is hard enough to be taken away in boats; and as there are no houſes for neceſſary retirement in the whole town, the filth is thrown into the canals regularly once a day; ſo that this mud is a compound of every thing that can be imagined diſagreeable and offenſive.

The new church in Batavia, is a fine piece of building, and the dome of it may be ſeen far off at ſea. This church is illuminated by chandeliers of the moſt ſuperb workmanſhip, and has a fine organ: moſt of the other public buildings are ancient, conſtructed in an ill taſte, and gave a very compleat idea of Dutch clumſineſs. Their method of building their houſes ſeems to have been taught them by the climate. On the ground-floor there is no room but a large hall, a corner of which is parted off for the tranſaction of buſineſs; the hall has two doors, which are commonly left open, and are oppoſite each other, ſo that the air paſſes freely through the room, in the middle of which there is a court, which at once increaſes the draft of air, and affords light to the hall; the ſtairs, which are at one corner, lead to large and lofty apartments above. The female ſlaves are not permitted to ſit in any place but the alcove formed by the court, and this is the uſual dining place of the family.

Batavia is encompaſſed by a river of ſhallow water, the ſtream of which is very rapid; within this river, which is of different widths in various places, is an old ſtone wall, much decayed in many places, and within the wall is a canal, wider in ſome places than in others, ſo that there is no entering the gates of the town but by croſſing two draw-bridges; there are but few on the ramparts, and no perſons are permitted to walk there. There is a kind of citadel, or caſtle, in the N. E. corner of the town, the walls of which are both broader and higher than they are in other parts; it is furniſhed with a number of large guns, which command the landing-place.

Apartments are provided in this caſtle for the governor-general, and all the council; and in caſe of a ſiege, they have orders to retire thither. In the caſtle are likewiſe a number of ſtore-houſes, in which the effects belonging to the company are depoſited. The company have in their poſſeſſion large quantities of gun-powder, which is kept in different places, that the lightning may not deſtroy the whole ſtock at once; a great number of cannon are likewiſe laid up within the caſtle. There are a great many forts built in different parts of the country, ſeveral miles diſtant from Batavia, moſt probably erected to keep the natives in ſubmiſſion; and, beſides theſe, there are a number of fortified houſes, each mounting eight guns, which are ſo ſtationed as to command the canals and the roads on the borders. There are houſes of this kind in many parts of the iſland of Java, and the other iſlands in its neighbourhood, of which the Dutch have obtained poſſeſſion. The Chineſe having rebelled againſt them in the year 1740, all their principal houſes were demoliſhed by the cannon of one of theſe fortified houſes, which is in the town of Batavia, where, likewiſe, there are a few more of them.

The roads of this country are only banks between the ditches and canals, and the fortified houſes being erected among the moraſſes near theſe roads, nothing is eaſier than to deſtroy them, and conſequently to prevent an enemy from bringing any heavy artillery near the town: if, indeed, an enemy be only hindered a ſhort time in his approach, he is effectually ruined; for the climate will preclude the neceſſity of the uſe of weapons for his deſtruction. Before the Endeavour had been a week at Batavia, her crew began to feel the ill effects of the climate; half of them were rendered incapable of doing their duty before the expiration of a month. They were informed, that it was a very uncommon thing for 50 ſoldiers out of 100 brought from Europe, to be alive at the expiration of the firſt year, and that of the 50 who might happen to be living, not ten of thoſe would be in ſound health, and, probably, not leſs than half of them in the hoſpital.

In Batavia all the white inhabitants are ſoldiers, and, at the expiration of five years ſervice, they are bound to hold themſelves in readineſs to go to war, if they ſhould be wanted, and the younger inhabitants are frequently muſtered; but as they are neither trained nor exerciſed after the expiration of the five years before-mentioned, the little they have learned is ſoon forgotten. The Indians, of whatever nation, who reſide here, and have either been made free, or were born ſo, are called Mardykers; but neither theſe nor the Chineſe are acquainted with fire-arms; yet, as theſe people are ſaid to poſſeſs great perſonal bravery, much might be expected from their expert uſe of their daggers, ſwords, and lances. It would be a laborious taſk to attack Batavia by land, and it is not poſſible to make any attack at all by ſea, for the ſhallowneſs of the water would hinder any veſſels from advancing within cannon-ſhot of the walls; indeed there is barely depth of water for a ſhip's long-boat, except a narrow channel, called the river, which extends half a mile into the harbour, and is ſtrongly bounded on each ſide with piers, the other end of it being directly under the fire of the caſtle, while its communication with the canals of the town is prevented by a boom of wood, which is every night ſhut preciſely at ſix o'clock, and never opened till the following day.

In the harbour of Batavia, any number of ſhips may anchor, the ground is ſo excellent that the anchor will never quit its hold. This harbour is ſometimes dangerous for boats, when the ſea-breezes blow freſh; but, upon the whole, it is deemed the beſt and moſt commodious in all India. There is a conſiderable number of iſlands, which are ſituated round the outſide of the harbour, and all theſe are in the poſſeſſion of the Dutch, who deſtine them to different purpoſes. On one of them, which is called Purmerent, an hoſpital is erected, on account of the air being purer than it is at Batavia. In a ſecond, the name of which is Kuyper, are erected numbers of warehouſes, wherein are lodged the rice and ſome other commodities, which belong to the Dutch Eaſt-India Company; at this iſland thoſe ſhips belonging to different nations, which are to be repaired at Ouruſt, unload their cargoes: and it was here that the ſtores of the Falmouth man of war were laid up, when ſhe was condemned on her return from Manilla: her warrant officers, of whom mention has been made in the account of Captain Wallis's voyage, were ſent to Europe in Dutch ſhips about half a year before the Endeavour anchored in the road of Batavia. A third of theſe iſlands, the name of which is Edam, is appropriated to the reception of certain offenders, whoſe crimes are not deemed worthy of death, and thither they are tranſported from Holland, and detained from five to forty years, in proportion to the heinouſneſs

neſs of the offence they have committed: making of ropes is the principal part of the employment of theſe criminals.

The environs of Batavia have a very pleaſing appearance, and would, in almoſt any other country, be an enviable ſituation. Gardens and houſes occupy the country for ſeveral miles, but the former are ſo covered with trees, that the advantage of the land having been cleared of the wood that originally covered it, is almoſt wholly loſt; while theſe gardens and the fields adjacent to them are ſurrounded by ditches which yield a diſagreeable ſmell; and the bogs and moraſſes in the adjacent fields are ſtill more offenſive. For the ſpace of more than 30 miles beyond the town, the land is totally flat, except in two places, on one of which the governor's country ſeat is built, and on the other they hold a large market; but neither of theſe places is higher than ten yards from the level of the plain. At near 40 miles from the town the land riſes into hills, and the air is purified in a great degree: to this diſtance the invalids are ſent by their phyſicians, when every other proſpect of their recovery has failed, and the experiment ſucceeds in almoſt every inſtance, for the ſick are reſtored to health; but they no ſooner return to the town, than their former diſorders reviſit them. On theſe hills, the moſt opulent of the inhabitants have country ſeats, to which they pay an annual viſit. Thoſe who reſide conſtantly on the hills, enjoy an almoſt perpetual flow of health; and moſt of the vegetables of Europe grow as freely there as in their native ground: the ſtrawberry in particular flouriſhes greatly, which is a ſufficient proof of the coolneſs of the air.

In this country rice is very plentiful, and, in order to be brought to perfection, ſhould lie under water more than half the time it is growing: but they have a ſort which grows on the ſides of the hills, which is unknown in the Weſt-India iſlands; this ſort is planted when the wet ſeaſon commences, and the crop is gathered in, ſoon after the rains are over. The maize, which grows near Batavia, is gathered while young, and roaſted in the ear. The land likewiſe produces carrots, celery, parſley, aſparagus, onions, radiſhes, cabbages, lettuces, cucumbers, lentiles, kidney-beans, hyſſop, ſage, rue, Chineſe white radiſhes, which, when boiled, are not unlike a parſnip, common potatoes, ſweet potatoes, wet and dry yams, millet, and the egg plant, the fruit of which, when broiled and eaten with ſalt and pepper, is moſt exquiſite food. Amazing crops of ſugar are produced here, and, while the quantity is beyond compariſon greater, the care of cultivation is inconceivably leſs than in the Weſt-India iſlands. White ſugar is retailed at two-pence halfpenny the pound; and arrack is made of the molaſſes, with a ſmall addition of rice, and the wine of the cocoa-nut. The inhabitants likewiſe raiſe a little indico for their own uſe, but do not export it.

The fruits of this country are near forty in number, and of ſome of theſe there are of ſeveral kinds. Pine-apples grow in ſuch abundance, that they may be purchaſed, at the firſt hand, for the value of an Engliſh farthing; and we bought ſome very large ones for a halfpenny a-piece at the fruit-ſhops, and their taſte is very excellent. They grow ſo luxuriantly, that ſeven or eight ſuckers have been ſeen adhering to one ſtem. The ſweet oranges of Batavia are good of their kind, but very dear at particular times. The ſhaddocks of the Weſt-Indies, called here Pamplemooſes, have an agreeable flavour. Lemons were very ſcarce when the Endeavour lay in the harbour, but limes were altogether as plentiful, and ſold at little more than two-pence the ſcore. There are many kinds of oranges and lemons, but none of them excellent. Of mangoes there are plenty, but their taſte is far inferior to the melting peach of England, to which they have been compared. It is ſaid that the heat, and extreme dampneſs of the climate does not agree with them, yet there are many different kinds of them. Of bananas, there are an amazing variety of ſorts, ſome of which being boiled, are eaten as bread, while others are fried in batter, and are a nouriſhing food: but of the numerous ſorts of fruit, three only are fit to be eaten: one, indeed, is remarkable, becauſe it is filled with ſeeds, which are not common to the reſt. Grapes are ſold from one ſhilling to eighteen-pence a pound, though they are far from being good. The tamarinds are cheap and plentiful; but as the method of preſerving them, which is in ſalt, renders them a mere black lump, they are equally nauſeating to the ſight and to the palate. The water-melons are excellent of their kind, and are produced in great abundance. The pompions are boiled as turnips, and eaten with ſalt and pepper. This fruit is admirably adapted to the uſe of voyagers, as it will keep many months, without care, and makes an excellent pye, when mixed with the juice of lemons and ſugar. The papans of this country are ſuperior to turnips, if the cores are extracted, after paring them when they are green. The guava has a ſtrong ſmell, and a taſte not leſs diſagreeable: it is probable, that the guava of the Weſt-Indies, which many writers have diſtinguiſhed by their praiſes, has a very different flavour. The ſweet ſop is a fruit that has but little flavour: it abounds in large kernels, from which the pulp is ſucked. The taſte of the cuſtard-apple very much reſembles the diſh from which its name is taken. The caſheu apple produces a nut which is not unknown in England, but the fruit has ſuch an aſtringent quality, that the Batavians ſeldom eat of it: the nut grows on the top of the apple. The cocoa-nut is plentiful in this country, and there are ſeveral kinds of this fruit, the beſt of which is very red between the ſhell and the ſkin. The jamboo is a fruit that has but little taſte, but is of a cooling nature: it is conſiderably leſs than a common ſized apple, and thoſe that have grown to their full ſize, are always the beſt; its ſhape is oval, and its colour a deep red. Of the Jambu-eyer, there are two kinds, the white and the red: they are ſhaped like a bell, and are ſomething bigger than a cherry: they have no kind of taſte, but that of a watry acid. The Jambu-eyer mauwar, ſmells like a roſe, and its taſte is not unlike that of conſerve of roſes. The mangoſtan is of a dark red colour, and not larger than a ſmall apple: to the bottom of this fruit adhere ſeveral little leaves of the bloſſoms, while on its tops are a number of triangles combined in a circle; it contains ſeveral kernels ranged in a circular form, within which is the pulp, a fruit of moſt exquiſite taſte; it is equally nutritious and agreeable, and is conſtantly given to perſons who are troubled with inflammatory or putrid fevers. The ſweet orange of this country is likewiſe given in the ſame diſorders. The pomegranate of theſe parts differs in nothing from that generally known in England. The durion takes its name from the word Dure, which, in the language of that country, means prickles, and the name is well adapted to the fruit, the ſhell of which is covered with ſharp points, ſhaped like a ſugar-loaf: its contents are nuts not much ſmaller than cheſnuts, which are ſurrounded with a kind of juice reſembling cream; and of this the inhabitants eat with great avidity: the ſmell of this fruit is more like that of onions, than any other European vegetable, and its taſte is like that of onions, ſugar, and cream intermixed: the inſide of the durion, when ripe, is parted, lengthways, into ſeveral diviſions. The nanca is a fruit that ſmells like garlick and apples mixed together: its ſize in the gardens of Batavia, is not bigger than that of a middling ſized pompion, and its ſhape is nearly the ſame: it is covered with prickles of an angular form. We were informed that, at a place called Madura, it has been known to grow to ſuch an enormous ſize as to require the ſtrength of two men to carry it. The champada is in all reſpects like the nauca, only that it is not ſo large. The rambutan contains a fruit within which is a ſtone, that is perhaps the fineſt acid in the world: this fruit is not unlike a cheſnut with its huſk on; and it is covered with ſmall prickles of a dark red colour, and ſo ſoft as to yield to the ſlighteſt impreſſion. The gambolan reſembles a damaſcen both in colour and ſize, and is of a very aſtringent nature. The boa bidarra taſtes like an apple, and is likewiſe extremely aſtringent: its ſize is that of a gooſeberry, its form round, and its colour yellow. The nam nam makes an excellent fritter, if fried in batter, but is not eſteemed when raw: the rind of it is rough, its length is about three inches, and its ſhape not unlike that of a kidney. The catappa and the canara are two ſpecies of nuts, the kernels of which are like thoſe of an almond, but ſo hard, that it is almoſt impoſſible to break them. The madja contains a pulp of a ſharp taſte, which is eaten with ſugar: this fruit is covered with a hard ſhell. The ſuntal is a fruit ſcarcely fit to be eaten, being at once aſtringent, acid, and of a moſt unpleaſant taſte, yet it is publicly ſold in the ſtreets of Batavia: it contains a number of kernels, which are incloſed in a thick ſkin. The ſalack is nearly of the ſize of a ſmall golden pippin, and contains a few kernels of a yellow colour, the taſte of which is not unlike that of a ſtrawberry; but the covering of this fruit is very remarkable, as it conſiſts of a number of ſcales, reſembling thoſe of a fiſh. The cheſrema and the blimbing, are two ſour fruits, exceedingly well adapted to make ſour ſauce, and pickles. The blimbing beſſe is another fruit of the ſame kind, but conſiderably ſweeter.

Of the fruits not in ſeaſon when Captain Cook was at Batavia, are the boa atap, and the kinſhip, which he ſaw preſerved in ſugar: and there are ſeveral other ſorts which the Batavians are fond of, but they are never eaten by ſtrangers: among thoſe are the moringa, the guilindina, the killer, and the ſoccum; this laſt has the appearance of the bread-fruit which is produced in the iſlands of the South Seas, but it is not near ſo good, though the tree on which it grows is almoſt exactly like the bread-fruit tree. At Batavia vaſt quantities of fruit are eaten. There are two markets held weekly, at diſtant places, for the better accommodation of thoſe who reſide in different parts of the country. Here the fruit-ſellers meet the gardeners, and purchaſe the goods at low rates. We are told it is not uncommon to ſee fifty or ſixty loads of pine-apples careleſsly thrown together at thoſe markets. Flowers are ſtrewn by the inhabitants of Batavia and Java, about their houſes, and they are conſtantly burning aromatic woods and gums, which is ſuppoſed to be done by way of purifying the air from the ſtench that ariſes from the canals and ditches about the town.

In this country ſweet-ſcented flowers are plentiful, many ſpecies of which being entirely unknown, are worth remarking. The combang tonquin, and combang carenaſſi, are particularly fragrant flowers, which bear ſcarcely any reſemblance to any of thoſe flowers with which we are acquainted. They are very ſmall, and ſeem to be of the dog's-bane ſpecies. The camunga which is more like a bunch of leaves than a flower, is of a ſingular ſmell, but very grateful. The bon tanjong is of a pale yellow caſt, and has a very agreeable ſmell; it is about an inch and a half in circumference, and conſiſts of pointed leaves, which give it the appearance of a ſtar. The champacka ſmells ſomewhat like a jonquil, but is rather of a deeper yellow. A large tree upon the iſland produces this flower. There is alſo an extraordinary kind of flower called ſundal malam, which ſignifies the intriguer of the night. This flower has no ſmell in the day-time, but as night comes on, it has a very fragrant ſcent, and is very much like the Engliſh tuberoſe. Theſe flowers being made into noſegays of different ſhapes, or ſtrung upon thread, are carried through the ſtreet for ſale on an evening. The gardens of the gentlemen produce ſeveral other ſorts of flowers beſides theſe which we have mentioned, but they are not offered to ſale, becauſe there is not a ſufficient plenty of them. A plant, called the pandang, is produced here, the leaves of which being ſhred ſmall, and mixed with other flowers, the natives of both ſexes fill their cloaths and hair with this mixture, which they likewiſe ſprinkle on their beds, and ſleep under this heap of ſweets, a thin piece of chintz being their only covering.

Formerly the only ſpice that grew on the iſland of Java was pepper. A conſiderable quantity is brought from thence by the Dutch, but very little of it is made uſe of in the country. The inhabitants prefer cayan pepper, and are fond of cloves and nutmeg, but theſe firſt are too dear to be commonly uſed. Near the iſland of Amboyna are ſome little iſles, on which the cloves grow, and the Dutch were not eaſy till they all became their property. Scarcely any other nutmegs are found but on the iſland of Banda, which however furniſhes enough for all the nations that have a demand for that commodity. There are but few nutmeg-trees on the coaſt of New Guinea. The iſland of Java, of which we have already ſpoken, produces horſes, buffaloes, ſheep, goats, and hogs. The ſort of horſes ſaid to have been met with here when the country was firſt diſcovered, appeared to be nimble animals though ſmall, being generally ſeldom above thirteen hands high. The horned cattle of this country are different from thoſe of Europe. They are quite lean, but of a very fine grain. The Chineſe and the natives of Java eat the buffaloes fleſh, which the Dutch conſtantly refuſe, being impreſſed with a ſtrange idea that it is feveriſh. The ſheep are hairy like goats, and have long ears: they are moſtly found to be tough and ill-taſted. There happening to be a few from the Cape of Good Hope at Batavia, ſome of them were purchaſed at the rate of one ſhilling a pound. The hogs, eſpecially thoſe of the Chineſe ſtock, are very fine food, but ſo fat as that the lean is ſeparately ſold the butchers, who are Chineſe; the fat, they melt and ſell to their countrymen to be eaten with their rice. Yet though theſe hogs are ſo fine, the Dutch prefer their own breed, and the conſequence is that theſe latter are ſold at extravagant rates.

As the Portugueſe ſhoot the wild hogs and deer, they are ſold at a moderate price, and are good eating. As to the goats of this country they are as indifferent as the ſheep. Dogs and cats are found here in abundance, and there are numbers of wild horſes at a conſiderable diſtance from Batavia, on the mountains. There are a few monkeys ſeen near the town; but there are many on the mountains and deſart places, where there are alſo tygers, and a few rhinoceroſes.

Of fiſh an aſtoniſhing quantity is taken here, and all are fine food, except a few that are ſcarce; yet the inhabitants will not eat thoſe that are found in abundance, but purchaſe thoſe which are worſe and ſcarcer, a circumſtance that contributes to keep up the price of the latter. A prejudice likewiſe prevails among the Dutch which prevents them from eating any of the turtle caught in theſe parts, which are very good food, though not equal to thoſe that are found in the Weſt-Indies. Very large lizards are common at Batavia; ſome of them are ſaid to be as thick as a man's thigh; and Mr. Banks ſhot one five feet long, which being dreſt, proved very agreeable to the taſte. We found ſnipes of two different ſorts; and thruſhes might have been purchaſed of the Portugueſe, who were the only dealers in this ſort of birds, and venders of wild fowl in the country. In the iſland are palm-wine, and arrack. Of the former are three ſorts, the firſt of which is drank in a few hours after it is drawn from the tree, and is moderately ſweet; the ſecond and third ſorts are made by fermentation, and by putting ſeveral ſorts of herbs and roots into the liquor.

In Java, the religion of Mahomet is profeſſed, for which reaſon the natives do not make uſe of wine publicly: but in private few of them will refuſe it. They alſo chew opium, whoſe intoxicating qualities prove its recommendation to the natives of India.

If we exclude the Chineſe, and the Indians of different nations, who inhabit Batavia and its environs, the inhabitants only amount to a ſmall number, not a fifth part of whom are ſaid to be Dutchmen, even by deſcent. The Portugueſe out-number all the European ſettlers on the iſland. The troops in the ſervice of the ſtates of Holland, are compoſed of the natives of almoſt all the nations of Europe; but the greater part of them are Germans. When any perſon goes to reſide at Batavia, he is obliged to enter firſt as a ſoldier, to ſerve their company for five years. Afterwards he applies for a leave of abſence to the council, which being granted as a thing of courſe, he engages in any buſineſs that he thinks proper to chuſe. There is however a ſort of policy in this matter, ſince the Dutch have thus always a force ready to arm and join their troops in this country upon any emergency; all places of power and profit are held by the Dutch, and no foreigner has any ſhare in the management of public affairs.

Notwithſtanding all the men of other countries are bound to obſerve the rules above-mentioned, yet women from all parts may remain here unmoleſted. It appeared that the whole place could not furniſh fifty females who were natives of Europe; yet the town abounded with white women, who were deſcended from Europeans, that had ſettled there at different times, all the men having paid the debt of nature; for ſo it is, that the climate of Batavia deſtroys the men much faſter than the women. Theſe women follow the delicate cuſtom of chewing beetle, after the example of the native Javaneſe, whoſe dreſs they imitate, and whoſe manners they copy, in all reſpects. Mercantile buſineſs is conducted at Batavia with the ſlighteſt trouble imaginable. When a merchant receives an order for goods of any kind, he communicates the contents of it to the Chineſe, who are the univerſal manufacturers. The Chineſe agent delivers the effects on board the ſhip for which they are beſpoke, and taking a receipt for them from the maſter of the veſſel, he delivers it to the merchant, who pays the Chineſe for the goods, and reſerves a conſiderable profit, without the leaſt trouble, riſque, or anxiety. But when a merchant imports goods of any kind, he receives them himſelf, and lodges them in his own warehouſes. It may be wondered that the Chineſe do not ſhip the goods on their account, but from this they are reſtricted, and compelled to ſell them to the merchants only. The inhabitants of Java diſtinguiſh the Portugueſe by the name of Oranſeranc, that is, Nazarene-men; but theſe uſe the general term of Caper, or Caſir, reſpecting all who do not profeſs the religion of Mahomet, and in this they include the Portugueſe. But the Portugueſe of Batavia are ſo only in name; for they have neither any connection with, or knowledge of the kingdom of Portugal, and they have changed the religion of the church of Rome, for that of Luther; with the manners of the natives, they are wholly familiariſed, and they commonly ſpeak their language, though they are able to converſe in a corrupt kind of Portugueſe. They dreſs in the habit of the country, with a difference only in the manner of wearing their hair; their noſes are more peaked and their ſkin of a deeper caſt than that of the natives. Some of them are mechanics and artificers, others ſubſiſt by waſhing of linen, and the reſt procure a maintenance by hunting.

The Indians of Batavia, and the country in its neighbourhood, are not native Javaneſe, but are either born on the ſeveral iſlands from whence the Dutch bring their ſlaves, or the offspring of ſuch as have been born on thoſe iſlands; and theſe having been made free either in their own perſons or in the perſons of their anceſtors, enjoy all the privileges of freemen. They receive the general appellation of believers of the true faith. The various other Indian inhabitants of this country attach themſelves each to the original cuſtoms of that in which themſelves or their anceſtors were born; keeping themſelves apart from thoſe of other nations, and practiſing both the virtues and vices peculiar to their own countries. The cultivation of gardens, and the conſequent ſale of flowers and fruit afford ſubſiſtence to great numbers of them: theſe are the people who raiſe the beetle and areca, which being mixed with lime, and a ſubſtance that is called Gambir, the produce of the Indian continent, is chewed by perſons of all ranks, women as well as men: indeed ſome of the politer ladies make an addition of cardamum, and other aromatics, to take off the diſagreeable ſmell with which the breath would be otherwiſe tainted. Some of the Indians are very rich, keep a great number of ſlaves, and live, in all reſpects, according to the cuſtom of their reſpective countries, while others are employed to carry goods by water; and others again ſubſiſt by fiſhing. The Oranſlams, or believers of the faith, feed principally on boiled rice, mixed with a ſmall quantity of dried ſhrimps and other fiſh, which are imported from China, and a little of the fleſh of buffaloes and chickens; they are fond of fruit, of which they eat large quantities, and with the flour of the rice they make ſeveral ſorts of paſtry. They ſometimes make very ſuperb entertainments, after the faſhion of their reſpective countries; but, in general, they are a very temperate people; of wine they drink very little, if any, as the religion of Mahomet, which they profeſs, forbids the uſe of it. When a marriage is to be ſolemnized among them, all the gold and ſilver ornaments that can be procured, are borrowed to deck out the young couple, who, on theſe occaſions, never fail to make the moſt ſplendid appearance; ſumptuous entertainments are given by thoſe who can afford them, which continue twelve or fourteen days, and frequently more, during all which time the women take care that the bridegroom ſhall not viſit his wife privately, though the wedding takes place previous to the feſtival. All theſe Indians, though they come from different countries, ſpeak the Malay language if it deſerves that name. On the iſland of Java there are two or three different dialects, and there is a language peculiar to every ſmall iſland; it is conjectured that the Malay tongue is a corruption of the language of Malacca. The hair of theſe people, which is black without a ſingle exception, grows in great abundance; yet the women make uſe of oils, and other ingredients, to increaſe the quantity of it: they faſten it to the crown of the head with a bodkin, having firſt twiſted it into a circle, round which they place an elegant wreathe of flowers, ſo that the whole head-dreſs has a moſt beautiful appearance. It is the univerſal cuſtom both with the men and women, to bathe in a river once every day, and ſometimes oftner, which not only promotes health, but prevents that contraction of filth, that would be otherwiſe unavoidable in ſo hot a climate. The teeth of the Oranſlams have ſome particulars in them well worthy of notice. With a kind of whetſtone they rub the ends of them till they are quite flat and even; they then make a deep groove in the teeth of the upper jaw, in the centre between the bottom of each tooth and the gum, and horizontally with the latter; this groove is equal in depth to a quarter of the thickneſs of the teeth; yet none of theſe people have a rotten tooth, though according to the dentiſts of England and France, ſuch a thing muſt be unavoidable, as the tooth is placed much deeper than what we call the enamel. The teeth of theſe people became very black by the chewing of beetle, yet a ſlight waſhing will take off this blackneſs, and they will then become perfectly white; but they are very ſeldom waſhed, as the depth of the colour is very far from being thought diſagreeable. Moſt of our readers muſt have heard of the Mohawks; and theſe are the people who are ſo denominated, from a corruption of the word amock, which will be explained by the following ſtory and obſervations. To run amock is to get drunk with opium, and then ſeizing ſome offenſive weapon, to ſally forth from the houſe, kill the perſon or perſons ſuppoſed to have injured the Amock, and any other perſon that attempts to impede his paſſage, till he himſelf is taken priſoner or killed on the ſpot. While Captain Cook was at Batavia, a perſon whoſe circumſtances in life were independent, being jealous of his brother, intoxicated himſelf with opium, and then murdered his brother, and two other men who endeavoured to ſeize him. This man, contrary to the uſual cuſtom, did not leave his own houſe, but made his reſiſtance from within it; yet he had taken ſuch a quantity of the opium, that he was delirious, which appeared from his attempting to fire three muſquets, neither of which had been loaded, nor even primed. Jealouſy of the women is the uſual reaſon of theſe poor creatures running amock [or a-muck] and the firſt object of their vengeance is the perſon whom they ſuppoſe to have injured them. The officer, whoſe buſineſs it is to apprehend theſe unhappy wretches, is furniſhed with a long pair of tongs, in order to take hold of them without coming within the reach of the point of their weapon. Thoſe who may be taken alive, which is not often the caſe, are generally wounded; but they are always broken upon the wheel; and if the phyſician, who is appointed to examine their wounds, thinks them likely to be mortal, the puniſhment is inflicted immediately, and the place of execution is generally the ſpot where the firſt murder was committed. A number of abſurd cuſtoms prevailed among theſe people, and opinions no leſs ridiculous. They believe that the devil, whom they call Satan, is the author of ſickneſs and adverſity; therefore, when ſick, or in diſtreſs, they offer meat, money, and other things, as propitiatory ſacrifices. Should one among them be reſtleſs, or ſhould he dream for two or three nights ſucceſſively, he imagines the Devil has laid his commands upon him, when, upon neglect to fulfil, he concludes his puniſhment will certainly be ſickneſs or death, though ſuch commands may not be revealed with ſufficient perſpicuity. To interpret his dream, therefore, he ſtrains his wits to the uttermoſt, and if, by taking it literally or figuratively, directly or by contraries, he can put no explanation that ſatisfies him, he applies to the Cawin or prieſt, who unravels the myſterious ſuggeſtions of the night, by a comment, in which it generally appears, that Satan wants victuals or money. Theſe are placed on a little plate of cocoa-nut leaves, and hung upon the branch of a tree near the river, ſo that it ſeems not to be the opinion of theſe people, that in prowling the earth the devil "walketh through dry places." Mr. Banks once aſked, whether they thought Satan ſpent the money, or eat the victuals; they ſaid, that as to the money it was conſidered rather as a mulct upon an offender, than a gift to him who had enjoined it; and that therefore if it was devoted by the dreamer, it did not ſignify into whoſe hands it came, and they ſuppoſed it was generally the prize of ſome ſtranger who wandered that way; but reſpecting the meat, they were clearly of opinion, that, although the Devil did not eat the groſs parts, yet by bringing his mouth near it, he ſucked out all its ſavour without changing its poſition, ſo that afterwards it was as inſipid as water.

Another ſuperſtitious notion of this people is ſtill more unaccountable. They imagine that women, when delivered of children, are at the ſame time delivered of a young crocodile; and that thoſe animals being received carefully by the midwifes, are immediately carried down to the river, and put into the water. The family in which ſuch a birth is ſuppoſed to have happened, conſtantly puts victuals into the river for their amphibious relation, eſpecially the twin, who as long as he lives, goes down to the river at ſtated times, to fulfil his fraternal duty; for an omiſſion of which, according to the general opinion, he will be viſited with ſickneſs or death. We are at a loſs to account for an opinion ſo extravagant and abſurd, eſpecially as it ſeems to be unconnected with any religious myſtery, and how it ſhould be pretended to happen by thoſe who cannot be deceived into a belief of it by appearances, nor have any apparent intereſt in the fraud, is a problem ſtill more difficult to ſolve. The ſtrange belief of this abſurdity, however, is certain, for which we had the concurrent teſtimony of every Indian who was queſtioned about it; and as to its origin, it ſeems to have taken its riſe in the iſlands of Celebes and Boutou, at which places, many of the inhabitants keep crocodiles in their families; but however that be, this opinion has ſpread over all the eaſtern iſlands, even to Timor and Cream, and weſtward as far as Java and Sumatra. The crocodile twins are called Sudaras, and we ſhall here relate one of the innumerable and incredible ſtories, in proof of their exiſtence, as was confidently affirmed, from ocular demonſtrations; yet for the credibility of this relation we will not vouch.

At Bencoolen was born and bred among the Engliſh a young female ſlave, who had learnt a little of the language. This girl told Mr. Banks that her father, when on his death bed, informed her that he had a crocodile for his Sudara, and in a ſolemn manner charged her to give him meat when he ſhould be dead, telling her in what part of the river he was to be found, and by what name he was to be called up. That in conſequence of her father's injunctions, ſhe repaired to that part of the river he had deſcribed, and ſtanding upon the bank, called out Radja Pouti, "white king;" whereupon the crocodile came to her out of the water, and eat from her hand the proviſions ſhe had brought him. Being deſired to deſcribe this paternal uncle, ſhe ſaid, that he was not like other crocodiles, but much handſomer, that his body was ſpotted and his noſe red; that he had bracelets of gold upon his feet, and earrings of the ſame metal in his ears. This ridiculous tale was heard by Mr. Banks patiently to the end, and he then diſmiſſed the girl, without reminding her, that a crocodile with ears was as ſtrange a monſter as a dog with a cloven foot. Not long after this a ſervant whom Mr. Banks had hired at Batavia, a ſon of a Dutchman by a Javaneſe woman, told his maſter, that he had ſeen a crocodile of the ſame kind, and it had been ſeen by ſeveral others both Dutchmen and Malays. This crocodile the ſervant ſaid was very young, two feet long, and its feet were ornamented with bracelets of gold. I cannot credit theſe idle ſtories, ſaid Mr. Banks. The other day a perſon aſſerted that crocodiles had earrings, and you know that cannot be true, becauſe crocodiles have not ears. Ah, Sir, replied the man, theſe Sudara Oran are unlike other crocodiles; for they have five toes upon each foot, a large tongue that fills their mouth, and ears likewiſe, though indeed they are very ſmall. Who can ſet bounds to the ignorance of credulity and folly! However, in the girl's relation were ſome things in which ſhe could not be deceived; and therefore muſt be guilty of wilful falſehood. Her father might command her to feed a crocodile, in conſequence of his believing it to be his Sudara; but its coming out of the river at her call, and eating the food from her hand, muſt have been a fable of her own invention, and being ſuch, it was impoſſible that ſhe could believe it to be true. However, the girl's ſtory, and that of the man's, evinces, that they both believed the exiſtence of crocodiles that were Sudaras to men; and the fiction invented by the girl may be eaſily accounted for, if we do but conſider, how earneſtly every one deſires to make others believe what he believes himſelf. The Bougis, Macaſſars, and Boetons, are ſo firmly perſuaded that they have relations of the crocodile ſpecies, that they perform a periodical ceremony in remembrance of them. Large parties go out in a boat, furniſhed with great plenty of proviſions, and all kinds of muſic. They then row backwards and forwards, in places of the river where crocodiles and alligators are moſt common, ſinging and weeping by turns, each invoking his kindred, till a crocodile appears, when the muſic inſtantly ſtops, and proviſions, beetle, and tobacco, are thrown into the water. This civility is intended to recommend themſelves to their relations at home; not without hopes, perhaps, that it will be accepted inſtead of more expenſive offerings which may not be in their power to pay.

The Chineſe ſtand in the next rank to the Indians, and are very numerous, but poſſeſs very little property. Many of them live within the walls, and are ſhopkeepers. We have already mentioned the fruit-ſellers of Paſſar Piſſang; but others have a rich ſtock of European and Chineſe goods. However, the far greater part of theſe people live without the walls, in a quarter by themſelves, which is called Campang China. Moſt part of them are carpenters, joiners, ſmiths, taylors, ſlipper-makers, dyers of cotton, and embroiderers. They maintain the character of induſtry, univerſally beſtowed upon them; and many are ſcattered about the country, where they cultivate gardens, ſow rice and ſugar, or keep cattle and buffaloes, whoſe milk they bring every day to town. Yet notwithſtanding their commendable ſpirit of induſtry, we muſt obſerve, there is nothing honeſt or diſhoneſt, provided there is no danger of a halter, that the Chineſe will not readily do for money; and though they work with much diligence, nor are ſparing of their labour, yet no ſooner have they laid down their tools, than they begin to game either at cards or dice, or at other diverſions altogether unknown among Europeans. To theſe they apply with ſuch eagerneſs, as ſcarcely to allow time for neceſſary refreſhments of food and ſleep. In manners they are always

ways rather obſequious; and in dreſs they are remarkably neat and clean, in whatever rank of life they are placed. A deſcription of their perſons or dreſs is unneceſſary, ſeeing the better kind of China paper common in England, exhibits an exact repreſentation of both, though perhaps with ſome ſlight exaggerations. With reſpect to their eating, they are eaſily ſatisfied; but the few that are rich have many ſavory diſhes. The food of the poor is rice, with a ſmall proportion of fleſh or fiſh; and they have the advantage of the Mahomedan Indians, on account of their religion; for the Chineſe, being under no reſtraint, eat, beſides pork, dogs, cats, frogs, lizards, ſerpents, and a great variety of ſea animals, which the other inhabitants do not conſider as food. They alſo eat many vegetables, which an European, except he was periſhing with hunger, would not taſte. They have a ſingular cuſtom reſpecting the burying their dead; for they cannot be prevailed upon to open the ground a ſecond time, where the body has been depoſited. On this account, in the neighbourhood of Batavia, their burying-grounds contain many hundred acres; and the Dutch, pretending this to be a waſte of land, will not ſell any for this purpoſe, unleſs at an exorbitant price. The Chineſe, however, contrive to raiſe the purchaſe money, and afford another inſtance of the folly and weakneſs of human nature, in transferring a regard for the living to the dead, and making that an object of ſolicitude and expence, which cannot receive the leaſt benefit from either. Under the influence of this univerſal prejudice, they take an uncommon method to preſerve the body entire, and to prevent the remains of it from mixing with the earth that ſurrounds it. To this end they encloſe it in a large thick wooden coffin, hollowed out of ſolid timber like a canoe. This when covered and let down into the grave, is ſurrounded with a coat of mortar, called Chinam, about eight or ten inches thick, which in a ſhort time cements, and becomes as hard as ſtone. The relatives of the deceaſed attend the funeral ceremony, with a conſiderable number of female mourners, hired to weep. In Batavia, the law requires, that every man ſhould be interred according to his rank, which is in no caſe to be diſpenſed with; ſo that if the deceaſed has not left ſufficient to pay his debts, an officer takes an inventory of what was in his poſſeſſion when he died, and out of the produce buries him in the manner preſcribed, leaving only the overplus to his creditors.

The loweſt claſs of people in this country are the ſlaves, by whom the Dutch, Portugueſe, and Indians, whatever their rank or ſituation, are conſtantly attended. They are bought in Sumatra, Malacca, and almoſt all the Eaſtern Iſlands: but the natives of Java, very few of whom live in Batavia, are exempted from ſlavery, under the ſanction of very ſevere penal laws, ſeldom we believe violated. Theſe ſlaves are ſold from ten to twenty pounds ſterling each; but girls, if handſome, will fetch ſometimes a hundred. Being of an indolent diſpoſition, they will not do much work, and are therefore content with a little victuals, ſubſiſting altogether upon boiled rice, and a ſmall quantity of the cheapeſt fiſh. They are natives of different countries, on which account they differ from each other extremely both in perſon and temper. The Papua, as they are here called, or the African negroes are the worſt, moſt of them thieves and all incorrigible; conſequently they may be purchaſed for the leaſt money. The next claſs to theſe are the Bougis and Macaſſars, both from the iſland of Celebes; who in the higheſt degree are lazy, though not ſo much addicted to theft as the negroes; yet they are of a cruel and vindictive ſpirit, whereby they are rendered exceeding dangerous, eſpecially as to gratify their reſentment, they make no ſcruple of any means, nor of ſacrificing life itſelf. Beſides theſe there are Malays and ſlaves of other denominations: but the beſt, and of courſe the deareſt, are thoſe brought from the iſland of Bali; and the moſt beautiful women from Nias, a ſmall iſland on the coaſt of Sumatra; but being of a tender and delicate conſtitution, they quickly fall a ſacrifice to the unwholeſome air of Batavia. All theſe ſlaves are wholly in the power of their maſters, who may inflict upon them any puniſhment that does not take away life; and ſhould one die in conſequence of puniſhment, though his death may be proved not to have been intended, yet the maſter is called to a ſevere account, and generally ſentenced to ſuffer capitally. For this reaſon a maſter ſeldom corrects a ſlave with his own hands, but by an officer called a Marineu, one of whom is ſtationed in every diſtrict. The duty of this officer is to quell riots, and to take offenders into cuſtody; but more particularly to apprehend runaway ſlaves, and puniſh them for ſuch crimes as the maſter has ſupported by proper evidence; the puniſhment, however, is not inflicted by the Marineu in perſon, but by ſlaves who are appointed to the buſineſs. The puniſhment is ſtripes, the number being proportioned to the nature of the offence; and the inſtruments are rods made of rattans, which are ſplit into tender twigs for the purpoſe, and every ſtroke draws blood. A common puniſhment coſts the maſter a rixdollar, and a ſevere one a ducatoon, about ſix ſhillings and eight-pence. The maſter is alſo obliged to allow a ſlave, as an encouragement, three dubbelcheys, equal to about ſeven-pence half-penny a week; this is alſo done to prevent his indulging his ſtrong temptations to ſteal.

Reſpecting the government of this place we can ſay but little. We obſerved a remarkable ſubordination among the people. Every houſe-keeper has a certain ſpecific rank, according to the length of time he has ſerved the company. The different ranks thus acquired are diſtinguiſhed by the ornaments of the coaches, and the dreſſes of the coachmen: ſome ride in plain coaches, ſome are allowed to paint them with different devices, and ſome to gild them. The coachmen alſo are obliged to appear in clothes quite plain, or ornamented in various manners and degrees.

The chief officer in this place has the title of governor-general of the Indies, to whom the Dutch governors of all other ſettlements are ſubordinate; and they are obliged to repair to Batavia in order to have their accounts paſſed by him. Should they appear to have been criminal, or even negligent, he detains them during pleaſure; ſometimes three years; for they cannot without his permiſſion quit the place. The members of the council, called by the natives Edele Heeren, and by the Engliſh, Idoleers, are next in rank to the governor-general. Theſe aſſume ſo much ſtate, that whoever meets them in a carriage, are expected to riſe up and bow, and after this compliment, they drive to one ſide of the road and ſtop, till the members of the council are paſt: their wives and children expect alſo the ſame homage, and it is commonly paid them by the inhabitants. Some Engliſh Captains have thought this a ſlaviſh mark of reſpect, derogatory to their dignity as ſervants of his Britannic majeſty, and for this reaſon have refuſed to pay it; nevertheleſs, when in a hired coach, nothing but a menace of immediate death could prevent the coachman from honouring the Dutch grandee, at the expence of their mortification.

With reſpect to the diſtribution of juſtice, it is adminiſtered in Batavia by the lawyers, who have peculiar ranks of diſtinction among themſelves. Their deciſions in criminal caſes ſeem to be ſevere with reſpect to the natives, but lenient in a partial degree to their own people. A chriſtian is always indulged with an opportunity of eſcaping before he is brought to trial, whatever may be his offence, and when convicted, he is ſeldom puniſhed with death. On the contrary, the poor Indians are hanged, broken upon the wheel, and even impaled alive. As to the Malays and Chineſe they have judicial officers of their own, named captains and lieutenants, who determine in civil caſes, ſubject to an appeal to the Dutch tribunal. The taxes laid upon theſe people by the company are very conſiderable, among which, that exacted for liberty to wear their hair is not the leaſt. The time of payment is monthly, and to ſave the charge and trouble of collecting them, notice is given of this by hoiſting a flag upon the top of a houſe in the middle of the town, and the Chineſe find that it is their intereſt to repair thither when a payment is due without delay.

At Batavia the current money conſiſts of ducats, valued at one hundred and thirty-two ſtivers; ducatoons eighty ſtivers; imperial rix-dollars, ſixty; rupees, thirty; ſchellings, ſix; double cheys, two ſtivers and a half; and doits one fourth of a ſtiver. During our ſtay here Spaniſh dollars were at five and five-pence; and we were told they were never lower than five ſhillings and four-pence, even at the Company's warehouſe. For Engliſh guineas the exchange upon an average was nineteen ſhillings; for though the Chineſe would give twenty ſhillings for ſome of the brighteſt, thoſe that were much worn were valued at only ſeventeen ſhillings. There are two ſorts of coin current here of the ſame denomination; theſe are milled and unmilled; the former of which is of moſt value. A milled ducatoon is valued at eighty ſtivers; and an unmilled one at no more than ſeventy-two. A rix-dollar is equal to forty-eight ſtivers, about four ſhillings and ſix-pence Engliſh currency. All accounts are kept in rix-dollars and ſtivers, which here, at leaſt, are nominal, like our pound ſterling.

On Thurſday, the 27th of December, early in the morning, we weighed, left the harbour of Batavia, and ſtood out to ſea. On the 29th, after much delay by contrary winds, we weathered Pulo Pare, and ſtood for the main. On the ſame day paſſed a ſmall iſland between Batavia and Bantam, called Maneater's iſland. On Sunday the 30th, we weathered Wapping and Pulo Babi iſlands, and the next day, being the 31ſt, we ſtood over to the Sumatra ſhore.

A. D. 1771.

On the morning of this new year's day, being Tueſday, January the 1ſt, we ſteered for the Java ſhore, and continued our courſe, as the wind permitted us, till three o'clock in the afternoon of the 5th, when we caſt anchor on the ſouth-eaſt ſide of Prince's Iſland, in eighteen fathom water, in order to recruit our ſtores, and procure refreſhments for the ſick, many of whom were much worſe than they were at our departure from Batavia. Mr. Banks and Dr. Solander, accompanied by the Captain and other gentlemen, went aſhore. We met upon the beach ſome Indians, by whom we were conducted to one, who, they ſaid, was their king. Having exchanged a few compliments with this perſon, we entered upon buſineſs; but in ſettling the price of turtle could not agree. Upon this we took leave, the Indians diſperſed; and we proceeded along ſhore in ſearch of a watering place. We happily ſucceeded in finding a very convenient one, and had reaſon to believe, with care in filling, it would prove agreeable to our wiſhes. On our return, ſome Indians, who remained with a canoe upon the beach, ſold us three turtle, but we were obliged to promiſe, that we would not tell the king. On Sunday the 6th, we renewed with better ſucceſs our traffic for turtle. About noon the Indians lowered their demands ſlowly, inſomuch, that before the evening they accepted our ſtipulated price, and we had turtle in plenty. In the mean time, the three we had purchaſed were ſerved to the ſhip's company, who, till yeſterday, had not fed on ſalt proviſions from the time of our arrival at Savu, which was now near three months. Mr. Banks, in the evening, paid a viſit to the king, by whom he was received very graciouſly at his palace, in the middle of a rice field, notwithſtanding his majeſty was buſily employed in dreſſing his own ſupper. The day following, Monday the 7th, the Indians reſorted to the trading place with fowls, fiſh, monkeys, ſmall deer, and ſome vegetables; but no turtle appeared till next day, Tueſday the 8th, after which ſome were brought to market every day, while we ſtaid, but the whole quantity together was not equal to that we bought the day after our arrival.

Friday the 11th, Mr. Banks having received intelligence from a ſervant he had hired at Batavia, that the Indians of this iſland had a town ſituated near the ſhore, to the weſtward, he determined to go in ſearch of the ſame. With this view he ſet out in the morning, accompanied by the ſecond lieutenant; and apprehending his viſit might not be agreeable to the natives, he told ſuch of them as he met, that he was in ſearch of plants, which was indeed alſo true. Having come to a place where there were three or four houſes, they met with an old man, of whom they ventured to make a few enquiries concerning the town. He would have perſuaded them, that it was at a great diſtance; but perceiving they proceeded forward, he joined company, and went on with them. The old man attempted ſeveral times to lead them out of the way, though without ſucceſs; but when at length they came within ſight of the houſes, he entered cordially into their party, and conducted them into the town, the name of which is Samadang. It conſiſts of about four hundred houſes, and is divided by a brackiſh river into two parts, one called the old, and the other the new town. When they had entered the former, they were accoſted by ſeveral Indians whom they had ſeen at the trading place, and one of them undertook to carry them over to the new town, at two-pence per head. The bargain being made, they embarked in two ſmall canoes, placed along-ſide of each other, and laſhed together, to prevent their over-ſetting. They landed ſafely, though not without ſome difficulty; and when they came to the new town, the people ſhewed them every mark of a cordial friendſhip, ſhewing them the houſes of their king and principal people. Few of the houſes were open at this time, the inhabitants having taken up their reſidence in the rice-grounds, to defend their crops againſt the birds and monkeys, who without this neceſſary precaution would deſtroy them. When their curioſity was ſatisfied, they hired a large ſailing boat for two rupees, value four ſhillings, which conveyed them to the bark time enough to dine upon one of the ſmall deer, weighing only forty pounds, which proved to be exceeding good and ſavoury food. In the evening we again went on ſhore, to ſee how our people went on, who were employed in wooding and watering, when we were told, that an axe had been ſtolen. Application was immediately made to the king, who, after ſome altercation, promiſed, that the axe ſhould be reſtored in the morning; and it was accordingly brought to us by a man, who pretended, that the thief, afraid of a diſcovery, had left it at his houſe in the night.

On Sunday, the 13th, having nearly compleated our wood and water, Mr. Banks took leave of his majeſty, to whom he had made ſeveral trifling preſents, and at parting gave him two quires of paper, which he graciouſly accepted. During their converſation, the king enquired, why the Engliſh did not touch at the iſland as they had uſed to do. Mr. Banks replied, that the reaſon was, he ſuppoſed, becauſe they found a deficiency of turtle, of which there not being enough to ſupply one ſhip, many could not be expected; and to ſupply this defect, Mr. Banks adviſed his majeſty to breed cattle, buffaloes, and ſheep; but he did not ſeem diſpoſed to adopt this prudent meaſure.

On Monday, the 14th, we had got on board a good ſtock of freſh proviſions, conſiſting of turtle, fowl, fiſh, two ſpecies of deer, one about the ſize of a ſheep, the other not bigger than a rabbit; alſo cocoa-nuts, plantains, limes, and other vegetables. The deer, however, ſerved only for preſent uſe, for we could ſeldom keep one of them alive more than twenty-four hours.

The trade on our parts, was carried on chiefly with Spaniſh dollars, the natives ſeeming not to ſet value upon any thing elſe; ſo that our people who had a general permiſſion to trade, parted with old ſhirts and other articles, which they were obliged to ſubſtitute for money to great diſadvantage. On Tueſday, the 15th, in the morning, we weighed, with a light breeze at N. E. and ſtood out to ſea. We took our departure from Java Head, which is in latitude 6 deg. 49 min. S. and in longitude 253 deg. 12 min. Weſt.

Prince's Iſland, where we were ſtationed about ten days, in the Malay language, called Pulo Selan, and in that of the inhabitants, Pulo Paneitan, is a ſmall iſland, ſituated in the weſtern mouth of the ſtreight of Sunda. It is woody, a very ſmall part of it having been cleared. We could perceive no remarkable hill upon it; but a ſmall eminence, juſt over the landing place, has been named, by the Engliſh, the Pike. Formerly this place was much frequented by India ſhips belonging to various nations, eſpecially from England; but of late they have forſaken it, becauſe the water is bad, and touch either at North Iſland, or at New Bay, a few leagues diſtant from Prince's Iſland, at neither of which places any conſiderable quantity of other proviſions can be procured; and, upon the whole, we muſt give it as our opinion, that Prince's Iſland is more eligible than either of them; for though, as we have already obſerved, the water is brackiſh, if filled at the lower part of the brook, yet higher up we found it excellent.

The firſt, ſecond, and perhaps the third ſhip, that arrives here in the ſeaſon, may be well ſupplied with turtle; but ſuch as come afterwards muſt be content with ſmall ones. What we purchaſed were of the green kind, and coſt us, at an average, about three farthings a pound. They were neither fat nor well flavoured, which circumſtance we imputed to their being long kept in pens of brackiſh water, without food. The fowls are large, and we bought a dozen of them for a Spaniſh dollar, which is about five-pence a piece. The ſmall deer coſt us two-pence a piece, and the larger, two only of which were brought to market, a rupee. The natives ſell many kinds of fiſh by hand, and we found them tolerably cheap. Cocoa-nuts, if they were picked, we bought at the rate of a hundred for a dollar; and if taken promiſcuouſly, one hundred and thirty. Plantains we found in abundance; alſo pine apples, water-melons, jaccas, and pompions, beſides rice, yams, and ſeveral other vegetables, all which we purchaſed at reaſonable rates.

In this iſland the inhabitants are Javaneſe, and their Raja is ſubject to the Sultan of Bantam. In their manners and cuſtoms they reſemble the Indians about Batavia; but they are more jealous of their women, for all the time we were there, we ſaw not any of them, except one by chance in the woods, as ſhe was running away to hide herſelf. They profeſs the Mahomedan religion; but not a moſque did we diſcover in the whole iſland. While we were among them, they kept the faſt called by the Turks Ramadan, with extreme rigour, not one of them touching a morſel of victuals, nor would they chew their beetle till ſun-ſet. Their food is likewiſe the ſame with that of the Batavian Indians, except the addition of the nuts of the palm, by eating of which, upon the coaſt of New Holland, ſome of our people were made ſick, and ſome of our hogs poiſoned. We enquired by what means theſe nuts were deprived of their noxious deleterious quality, and were informed, that they firſt cut them into thin ſlices, and dried them in the ſun, then ſteeped them in freſh water for three months, and afterwards, preſſing out the water, dried them a ſecond time in the ſun; but after all, we found they are eaten only in times of ſcarcity, when they mix them with their rice to make it go farther.

The houſes of theſe people are built upon piles, or pillars, and elevated about four or five feet above the ground. Upon theſe is laid a floor of bamboo canes, at ſuch a diſtance from each other, as to leave a free paſſage for the air from below. The walls alſo are of bamboo, interwoven hurdlewiſe, with ſmall ſticks, and faſtened perpendicularly to the beams which form the frame of the building; it has a ſloping roof, ſo well thatched with palm-leaves, that neither the ſun, nor rain can find entrance. The ground-plot, upon which the building is erected, is an oblong ſquare. On one ſide is the door, and in the ſpace between that and the other end of the houſe, in the center, towards the left hand, is a window. A partition runs out from each end of the houſe, which continues ſo far as to leave an opening oppoſite the door. Each end of the houſe therefore, to the right and left of the door, is divided into two apartments, all open towards the paſſage from the door to the wall on the oppoſite ſide. In that on the left hand, next to the door, the children ſleep; that oppoſite to it is for the uſe of ſtrangers; in the inner room, on the left hand, the maſter and his wife ſleep; and that oppoſite to it is the kitchen. The only difference between the poor and the rich, with reſpect to theſe houſes, conſiſts in their ſize: but we muſt except the royal palace, and the houſe of one Gundang, the next man in riches and influence to the king; for thoſe inſtead of being wattled with ſticks and bamboos, are encloſed with boards. Theſe people have occaſional houſes in the rice fields, at the ſeaſon when they are infeſted with the birds and monkeys. They differ only from their town houſes, by being raiſed ten feet inſtead of four from the ground.

The inhabitants of this iſland are of a good diſpoſition; and dealt with us very honeſtly; only like other Indians, and the retailers of fiſh in London, they would aſk twice, and ſometimes thrice as much for their commodities as they would take. As what they brought to market belonged in different proportions, to a conſiderable number of the natives, they put all that was bought of one kind, as cocoas or plantains together, and when we had purchaſed a lot, they divided the money that was paid for it among the proprietors, in a proportion correſponding with their contributions. Sometimes, indeed, they would change our money, giving us 240 doits, amounting to five ſhillings, for a Spaniſh dollar, and ninety-ſix, amounting to two ſhillings, for a Bengal rupee.

The natives of Prince's Iſland have a language of their own, yet they all ſpeak the Malay language. Their own tongue they call Catta Gunung, the language of the mountains. They ſay that their tribe originally migrated from the mountains of Java to New Bay, and then to their preſent ſtation, being driven from their firſt ſettlement by tygers, which they found too numerous to ſubdue. Several languages are ſpoken by the native Javaneſe, in different parts of their iſland; but the language of theſe people is different from that ſpoken at Samarang, though diſtant only one day's journey from the reſidence of the Emperor of Java. The following liſt contains ſeveral correſponding words in the languages of Prince's Iſland, Java, and Malacca.

PRINCE'S ISLAND.	ENGLISH.	JAVANESE.	MALAY.
Jalma,	*A man.*	Oong Lanang,	Oran Lacki Laki.
Becang,	*A woman.*	Oong Wadong,	Parampuan.
Oroculatacke,	*A child.*	Lari,	Anack.
Holo,	*The head.*	Undaſs,	Capalla.
Erung,	*The noſe.*	Erung,	Edung.
Mata,	*The eyes.*	Moto,	Mata.
Chole,	*The ears.*	Cuping,	Cuping.
Cutock,	*The teeth.*	Untu,	Ghigi.
Beatung,	*The belly.*	Wuttong,	Prot.
Serit,	*The backſide.*	Celit,	Pantat.
Pimping,	*The thigh.*	Poopoo,	Paha.
Hulloctoor,	*The knee.*	Duncul,	Lontour.
Metis,	*The leg.*	Sickil,	Kauki.
Cucu,	*A nail.*	Cucu,	Cucu.
Langan,	*A hand.*	Tangan,	Tangan.
Ramo Langan,	*A finger.*	Jari,	Jaring.

In this ſpecimen the different parts of the body are choſen, becauſe they are eaſily obtained from thoſe whoſe language is unknown; and it is worthy of obſervation, that the Malay, the Javaneſe, and the language in Prince's Iſland, have words, which if not exactly ſimilar to thoſe uſed in the South Sea Iſlands, are manifeſtly derived from the ſame ſource, as will appear from the following liſt.

SOUTH-SEA.	MALAY.	JAVANESE.	PRINCE'S ISLAND.	ENGLISH.
Mata	Mata	Moto	Mata	*An eye.*
Maa	Macan	Mangan	——	*The ear.*
Einu	Menum	Gnumbe	——	*To drink.*
Matte	Matte	Matte	——	*To kill.*
Outou	Coutou	——	——	*A louſe.*
Euwa	Udian	Udan	——	*Rain.*
Owhe	——	——	Awe	*Bamboo cane.*
Eu	Souſou	Souſou	——	*A beaſt.*
Mannu	——	Manny	Mannuck	*A bird.*
Eyca	Ican	Iwa	——	*A fiſh.*
Tapao	——	Tapaan	——	*The foot.*
Tooura	Udang	Urang	——	*A lobſter.*
Euſwhe	Ubi	Urve	——	*Yams.*
Etannou	Tannam	Tandour	——	*To bury.*
Enammou	Gnammuck	——	——	*A muſchito.*
Hearu	Garru	Garu	——	*To ſcratch.*
Taro	Tallas	Talus	——	*Cocoa-roots.*
Uta	Utan	——	——	*In-land.*

But the ſimilitude in theſe languages is more remarkable in words expreſſing number, which ſeems to prove that they have one common root. Mr. Banks, with the aſſiſtance of a negro ſlave, born at Madagaſcar, and who was on board an Engliſh ſhip at Batavia, drew up the following comparative table, from whence it will appear, that the names of numbers, in particular, are in a manner common to all theſe countries: but we muſt obſerve, that in the iſland of Madagaſcar, the names of numbers, in ſome inſtances, are ſimilar to all theſe, which is a difficulty not eaſy to be ſolved; yet the fact will appear unqueſtionable from the following liſt of words, drawn up, as we have obſerved, by Mr. Banks.

SOUTH-SEA ISLANDS.	MALAY.	JAVANESE.	PRINCE'S ISLE.	MADAGASCAR.	ENGLISH.
Tahie	Satou	Sigi	Hegie	Iſſe	*One.*
Rua	Dua	Lorou	Dua	Rua	*Two.*
Torou	Tiga	Tullu	Tollu	Tellou	*Three.*
Haa	Ampat	Pappat	Opat	Effats	*Four.*
Reina	Lima	Limo	Limah	Limi	*Five.*
Wheney	Annam	Nunnam	Gunnap	Ene	*Six.*
Hetu	Tudju	Petu	Tudju	Titou	*Seven.*
Waru	Delapau	Wolo	Delapan	Walon	*Eight.*
Iva	Sembilan	Songo	Salapan	Sivi	*Nine.*
Ahoura	Sapoulou	Sapoulou	Sapoulou	Tourou	*Ten.*

From the ſimilitude between the Eaſtern Tongue and that of the South Sea, many conjectures may be formed concerning the peopling of thoſe countries, which cannot eaſily be referred to Madagaſcar. The people of Java and Madagaſcar appear to be a different race: the Javaneſe has long hair, and his complexion is of an olive caſt; whereas a native of Madagaſcar is black, and his hair woolly; yet this will not conclude againſt the opinion of their having had common anceſtors: and, poſſibly, the learning of ancient Egypt might run in two courſes, one through Africa, and the other through Aſia, diſſeminating the ſame words in each, eſpecially terms of number, which might thus become part of the language of people who never had any communications with each other.

In the month of February we held on our courſe, and made the beſt of our way for the Cape of Good Hope; but now the fatal ſeeds of diſeaſe, our people had imbibed at Batavia, began to appear, with the moſt alarming ſymptoms, in dyſenteries and ſlow fevers. Our ſituation in a ſhort time was truly deplorable, and the ſhip was little better than an hoſpital, in which thoſe who did duty, were too few to attend thoſe who were confined to their hammocks. Many of theſe were in the laſt ſtage of the deſtructive diſorder; and almoſt every night we committed a body to the ſea. Mr. Banks was among the number of the ſick, and for ſome time we deſpaired of his life. In the courſe of ſix weeks we buried Mr. Sporing, a gentleman of Mr. Banks's retinue, Mr. Parkinſon, his natural hiſtory painter, Mr. Green the aſtronomer, the boatſwain, the carpenter, and his mate, Mr. Monkhouſe the midſhipman, our jolly ſail-maker, and his aſſiſtant, the cook, the corporal of the marines, two of the carpenters crew, a midſhipman, and nine ſailors; in all three and twenty perſons, beſides the ſeven that we had buried at Batavia. Such was the havock diſeaſe made among our ſhip's company, though we omitted no means, which we conceived might be a remedy; and to prevent the infection from ſpreading, we purified the water taken in at Prince's Iſland with lime, and waſhed all parts of the bark between decks with vinegar.

Friday the 15th of March, about ten o'clock P. M. we brought the ſhip to an anchor off the Cape of Good Hope. Capt. Cook repaired immediately to the governor, who chearfully promiſed him every refreſhment the country afforded; on which a houſe was hired for the ſick, and it was agreed they ſhould be lodged and boarded for two ſhillings each man per day. Our run from Java Head to the Cape afforded few obſervations that can be of uſe to future navigators, but ſome occurrences we muſt not paſs over in ſilence. We had left Java Head eleven days before we got the general S. E. trade-wind, during which time, we did not advance above 5 deg. to the ſouthward, and 3 deg. to the W. having an unwholeſome air, occaſioned probably by the load of vapours, which the eaſtern wind, and weſterly monſoons, bring into theſe latitudes, both of which blew in theſe ſeas, at the time we happened to be there. Our diſeaſes were certainly aggravated by thoſe poiſonous vapours, and unwholeſome air, particularly the flux, which was not in the leaſt degree checked by any medicine; ſo that whoever was ſeized with it, conſidered himſelf as a dead man; but we no ſooner got into the trade wind, than we felt its ſalutary effects. It is true, we buried ſeveral of our crew afterwards, but they were ſuch as had been taken on board in a ſtate ſo low and feeble, that there was ſcarcely a poſſibility of their recovery. We ſuſpected at firſt, that this dreadful diſorder might have been generated by the water that we took on board at Prince's Iſland, or by the turtle we purchaſed there; but this ſuſpicion we found to be groundleſs; becauſe all the ſhips that came from Batavia at the ſame ſeaſon, ſuffered in like manner, and ſome even more ſeverely, though none of them touched at Prince's Iſland in their way.

Not many days after our departure from Java we were attended by the boobies for ſeveral nights ſucceſſively, and as theſe birds are known to rooſt every night on ſhore, we concluded land was not far diſtant; perhaps it might be the iſland of Selam, which in different charts, is very differently laid down both in name and ſituation. After theſe birds had left us, we were viſited by no more, till we got nearly a-breaſt of Madagaſcar, where in latitude 27 deg. three quarters S. we ſaw an albatroſs, the number of which increaſed every day, with others of different kinds, particularly one about the ſize of a duck, of a very dark brown colour, with a yellowiſh bill; and they became more numerous as we approached the ſhore. When we got into ſoundings, we were viſited by gannets, which we continued to ſee as long as we were upon the bank that ſtretches off Anguillas to the diſtance of forty leagues, and extends along ſhore to the eaſtward, from Cape Falſe, according to ſome charts, one hundred and ſixty leagues. The real extent of this bank is not exactly known; it is however uſeful as a direction to ſhipping when to haul in, in order to make the land.

At the time the Endeavour lay at the Cape of Good Hope, the Houghton Indiamen ſailed for England. She had buried near forty of her crew, and when ſhe left the Cape, had many of her hands in a helpleſs condition, occaſioned by the ſcurvy. Other ſhips likewiſe experienced a proportionable loſs by ſickneſs; ſo that our ſufferings were comparatively light, conſidering that we had been abſent near three times as long. We continued at the cape till the 13th of April, in order to recover the ſick, procure ſtores, and to do ſome neceſſary work upon the ſhip and rigging. When this was finiſhed we got all the ſick on board, ſeveral of whom were ſtill in a dangerous ſtate; and on Sunday the 14th, having taken leave of the governor, we unmoored, and got ready to ſail.

The hiſtory of Caffraria is well known in Europe, and a deſcription of the Cape of Good Hope has been given by moſt of our circumnavigators; yet we think a particular account of this country will be acceptable to our numerous ſubſcribers; and they will meet with ſome particulars which fell under our obſervation, that have either been wholly omitted or miſrepreſented in other narratives.

Caffraria, or Caffreria is well ſituated for navigation and commerce, both which advantages are almoſt wholly neglected. The interior part of the country is fertile, but wants the benefit of cultivation. The inhabitants are naturally ſagacious, but their faculties are abſorbed in indolence; thus both the lands and minds of the people require improvement; but leſt cultivation in the firſt ſhould introduce luxury, and information in the laſt produce diſobedience, neither of theſe are encouraged by the politic Dutch, who poſſeſs a great part of the ſea coaſt. This country extends about ſeven hundred and eighty miles from N. to S. that is, from Cape Negro to the Cape of Good Hope, from hence turning N. E. to the mouth of the river Spiritu Santo, it runs about ſix hundred and ſixty miles; and proceeding up the country almoſt to the equinoxial line, it is about one thouſand ſeven hundred and forty miles farther. In ſome places it is nine hundred, and in others not above ſix hundred broad. Caffraria is ſo named from the Caffres, its inhabitants; though ſome authors affirm, that this name is a term of reproach given by the Arabs to all who have but confuſed notions of the deity, and which the Portugueſe have by miſtake applied to theſe people.

The Cape of Good Hope, which is the moſt ſouthern part of Africa, was firſt diſcovered, A. D. 1493, by Bartholomew Diaz, admiral of a Portugueſe fleet, who on account of the boiſterous weather he met with when near it, diſtinguiſhed it by the name of Cabodos totos Tormentos, or the Cape of all plagues; ſince which, no place in the univerſe has been more ſpoken of, though little of the country, except the coaſt, has been penetrated or known. The reaſon why it has ſo much attracted the attention of mariners of all nations, is, their being under a neceſſity of frequently calling there for water or other refreſhments, and alſo of doubling it, in their voyages to the Eaſt-Indies. But John king of Portugal, not liking the name which his admiral had beſtowed upon this large promontory, changed it to that of Cabode Bona Eſperanca, the "Cape of Good Hope," which appellation it hath ever ſince retained.

Neither Diaz, nor his ſucceſſor Vaſco de Gama, though they ſaw the Cape, thought proper to land: but in 1498 the Portugueſe admiral, Rio del Infanta, was the firſt who ventured aſhore; and from his report, Emanuel, king of Portugal, on account of the eligibility of the ſituation, determined to eſtabliſh a colony there; but the Portugueſe, who are naturally puſillanimous, having taken it into their heads, that the inhabitants of the Cape were cannibals, were too much afraid of being devoured, to obey their ſovereign in making the ſettlement he intended: however, ſome time after, another body of theſe timid adventurers made good their landing, under the conduct of Francis d'Almeyda, a viceroy of Braſil, when the Portugueſe were ſhamefully defeated by the ſcarce armed, and unwarlike natives. The viceroy and fifty of his men being killed in the engagement, the remainder retired with precipitation to their ſhips. The Portugueſe were much diſappointed and chagrined at the idea of ſuch martial ſuperiority in a people by them deemed at once ſavage and deſpicable. They determined to be revenged; but not having magnanimity enough to ſhew a becoming reſentment, they contrived a moſt inhuman and cowardly expedient. About two years after, touching at the cape, they landed with all the appearance of amity, accompanied with ſtrong profeſſions of friendſhip, and under this maſk brought with them a large cannon loaded with grape ſhot. The unſuſpecting natives, overjoyed by the gift of ſo great a treaſure, began to drag it away by the means of two long ropes, which had been previouſly faſtened to the muzzle. Great numbers laid hold of the ropes, and many others went before by way of triumph, when the treacherous Portugueſe firing off the cannon, a prodigious ſlaughter enſued, as moſt of the people ſtood within the range of the ſhot. Many were killed, ſeveral wounded; and the few who eſcaped, abandoned with the utmoſt precipitation the fatal preſent.

About the year 1600, the Dutch began to touch at the Cape, in their way to and from the Eaſt-Indies; and becoming annually more ſenſible of the importance of the place, they effected a ſettlement in 1650, which ſince that time hath riſen to great power and opulence, and been of eſſential ſervice to that nation. M. Van Riebeeck, a ſurgeon, in his return from India, obſerving the conveniency of the place for a ſettlement, and laying before the Dutch Eaſt India Company a plan of its advantages, the ſcheme was approved, and the projector appointed governor. This Adventurer ſailing with four ſhips to the cape, entered into a negotiation with the people, who, in conſideration of fifty thouſand guilders, or four thouſand three hundred and ſeventy-five pounds ſterling, agreed to yield up to the Dutch a conſiderable tract of country round the Cape. Van Riebeeck, in order to ſecure his new purchaſe, immediately erected a ſtrong ſquare fort, laid out a large garden, and planted it with a great variety of the productions from Europe, that he might render the place as commodious and agreeable as poſſible. Having thus ſucceſsfully founded a ſettlement, the Dutch Company propoſed, in order the more effectually to eſtabliſh it, that every man, who would ſettle three years at the Cape, ſhould have an inheritance of ſixty acres of land, provided that during that ſpace he would ſo improve his eſtate, as to render it ſufficient to maintain himſelf, and contribute ſomething towards the maintenance of the garriſon; and at the expiration of the time, he might either keep poſſeſſion of it, or ſell it, and return home. Induced by theſe propoſals, many went to ſeek their fortunes at the Cape, and were furniſhed on credit with cattle, grain, plants, utenſils, &c. The planters, however, at length grew weary of their habitations for want of conjugal ſociety; therefore the governors of the company, to prevent their leaving the place, provided them with wives from the Orphan-houſes, and other charitable foundations. In proceſs of time they greatly increaſed, and ſpread themſelves farther up the country, and along the coaſt, till they occupied all the lands from Saldanna Bay, round the ſouthern point of Africa, to Noſſel Bay, on the E. and afterwards purchaſed Terra de Natal, in order to extend their limits ſtill farther.

It appears, however, that on the firſt ſettlement of the Dutch at the Cape, all the Hottentot tribes did not acquieſce in the ſale of the country to foreigners; for the Gunyemains diſſented from the agreement of the others, and, in 1659, diſputed the poſſeſſion of the purchaſed territories with the Dutch. They always made their attack in boiſterous weather, as thinking the fire-arms then of leſs uſe and efficacy; and upon theſe occaſions they would murder indiſcriminately all the Europeans they could meet, burn down their houſes, and drive away their cattle. At length a Hottentot, called by the Dutch Doman, who had reſided ſome time at Batavia, and afterwards lived at Cape Town, retired to his countrymen, and perſuaded them, that it was the intent of the Europeans to enſlave them, and ſtirred them up to war. Accordingly they took up arms, and, being headed by Doman, attended by another chief named Garabinga, they committed great depredations. But the Hottentots themſelves at length growing tired of the war, one hundred of them, belonging to one nation, came unarmed to the Dutch fort, with a preſent of thirteen head of fine excellent cattle, in order to ſue for peace. This, it may be imagined, was readily granted by the Dutch, who were heartily ſick of a conteſt, in which themſelves were ſuch great loſers, without reaping any advantages from it.

Notwithſtanding all that has been ſaid to the contrary, no country we ſaw during the voyage, makes a more forlorn appearance, or is in reality a more ſterile deſart. The land over the cape, which conſtitutes the peninſula formed by Table Bay on the N. and Falſe Bay on the S. conſiſts of high mountains, altogether naked and deſolate: the land behind theſe to the E. which may be conſidered as the Iſthmus, is a plain of vaſt extent, conſiſting almoſt wholly of a light kind of ſea ſand, which produces nothing but heath, and is utterly incapable of cultivation. All the ſpots that will admit of improvement, which together bear about the ſame proportion to the whole as one to one thouſand, are laid out in vineyards, orchards, and kitchen grounds; and moſt of theſe little ſpots lie at a conſiderable diſtance from each other. There is alſo the greateſt reaſon to believe, that in the interior parts of the country, that which is capable of cultivation, eſpecially what is ſituated at no great diſtance from the coaſt, does not bear a greater proportion to that which is barren; for the Dutch told us, that they had ſettlements eight and twenty days up the country, a diſtance equal at leaſt to nine hundred miles, from which they bring proviſions to the Cape by land; ſo that it ſeems reaſonable to conclude, that proviſions are not to be had within a leſs compaſs. While we were at the Cape, a farmer came thither from the country, at the diſtance of fifteen days journey, and brought his children with him. We were ſurpriſed at this, and aſked him, if it would not have been better to have left them with his next neighbour. Neighbour! ſaid the man, I have no neighbour within leſs than five days journey of me. Surely the country muſt be deplorably barren in which thoſe who ſettle only to raiſe proviſions for a market, are diſperſed at ſuch diſtances from each other. That the country is every where deſtitute of wood is a certain fact; for timber and planks are imported from Batavia, and fuel is almoſt as dear as food. We ſaw not a tree, except in plantations near the town, that was ſix foot high; and the ſtems, that were not thicker than a man's thumb, and roots as thick as an arm or leg, ſuch is the influence of the winds here to the diſadvantage of vegetation, without conſidering the ſterility of the ſoil.

Cape Town is the only one the Dutch have built here, and it conſiſts of about a thouſand houſes neatly built of brick, whited in general on the outſide. They are covered only with thatch, for the violence of the S. E. winds would render any other roof inconvenient and dangerous. The ſtreets are broad and commodious, croſſing each other at right angles. In the main one is a canal, on each ſide of which is planted a row of oaks, that have grown tolerable well, and yield an agreeable ſhade. In another part of the town is alſo a canal, but the ſlope of the ground in the courſe of both is ſo great, that they are furniſhed with locks at intervals of little more than fifty yards. The houſes in general have pleaſant gardens behind, and neat court yards before them. Building, as well as tillage, is greatly encouraged here, and land given for either purpoſe to thoſe who chuſe to accept of it; but then the government claims an annual tenth of the value of the former, and produce of the latter, and a tithe of all purchaſe money when eſtates are ſold. The town extends from the ſea ſhore to the Company's garden, ſpreading along Table Bay. The fort is in a valley at a ſmall diſtance, its form pentagonal, it commands the landing-place, and is garriſoned by two hundred ſoldiers. The governor's ſtorehouſes are within it, other officers beſides himſelf have apartments here, as well as ſix hundred ſervants: the ſame number of ſlaves are lodged in a commodious building in the town, which is divided into two wards, the one for the men, the other for the women; and there is a houſe of correction for the reception of diſſolute perſons of either ſex. The hoſpital for ſick ſeamen is of eſſential uſe to the Dutch fleets in going to or returning from India. The church is a large edifice, elegantly plain; but the roof and ſteeple are thatched, for the reaſon already mentioned. Thatching indeed, from the nature of the hurricanes, ſeems abſolutely neceſſary; but from the method in which it was formerly done, it appears that it was frequently attended with danger, and we were informed, there uſed to be ſhelving pent houſes erected on both ſides the ſtreets, to ſhelter paſſengers in rainy weather; but theſe brought the inhabitants under ſuch dangers and inconveniencies, that they were all pulled down by order of government. Sailors and Hottentots were continually aſſembling, and ſmoaking their pipes under them, and ſometimes, through careleſsneſs ſet them on fire. The government laid hold of that occaſion to rid the ſtreets of thoſe fellows that were continually peſtering them, by publiſhing an order, which is ſtill in force, and from time to time republiſhed, that no Hottentot, or common ſailor, ſhall ſmoke in the ſtreet, and that upon preſuming ſo to do they ſhould be tied to the whipping poſt and be ſeverely laſhed. This has kept the ſtreets clear of all who have no buſineſs there; for it is with great difficulty that either the ſeamen or Hottentots can forbear ſmoaking while they are awake, if they have tobacco, which they are ſeldom without. What is moſt to be admired at the Cape is the Company's garden, where they have introduced almoſt all the fruits and flowers that are found in the other three quarters of the globe; moſt of which are improved, and flouriſh more than they did in their reſpective climates and countries from whence they were brought; and the garden is watered with ſprings that fall down from Table Mountain juſt above them. Apples and pears are planted here, with the grapes of Aſia, as well as thoſe of Europe, all of a delicious flavour. Here are alſo excellent lemons, oranges, citrons, figs, Japan apples, and a great variety of other fruits. In this place a much greater proportion of the inhabitants are Dutch than in Batavia; and as the town is ſupported principally by entertaining ſtrangers, and ſupplying them with neceſſaries, every man to a certain degree, imitates the manners and cuſtoms of the nations with which he is chiefly concerned. The ladies, however, are ſo faithful to the mode of their country, that not one of them will ſtir without a chaudpied, or chauffet, which is carried by a ſervant that it may be ready to place under her feet, whenever ſhe ſits down: though few of theſe chauffets have fire in them, which indeed the climate renders unneceſſary.

Notwithſtanding the natural ſterility of the climate, induſtry has ſupplied this place with all the neceſſaries, and even luxuries of life in the greateſt profuſion. The beef and mutton are excellent, though the oxen and ſheep are natives of the country: the cattle are lighter than ours, more neatly made, and have horns that ſpread to a much wider extent. The ſheep are clothed with a ſubſtance between wool and hair, and have tails of an enormous ſize: we ſaw ſome that weighed twelve pounds, and we heard there were many much larger. Good butter is made from the milk of cows, but the cheeſe is very much inferior to our own. Here are hogs and a variety of poultry; alſo goats, but theſe laſt are never eaten. Hares are to be found exactly like thoſe in Europe; likewiſe many kinds of antelopes; quails of two ſorts, and buſtards all well flavoured but not juicy. The fields produce European wheat and barley; the gardens European vegetables; fruit of all kinds; beſides plantains, guavas, jambu, and other Indian fruits, but theſe are not in perfection; the plantains, in particular, are very bad, and the guavas no larger than gooſeberries. The vineyards alſo produce wines of various ſorts, but not equal to thoſe of Europe, except the Conſtantia, which is made genuine only at one vineyard, about ten miles diſtant from the town. There is another vineyard near it, where wine is made, and called by the ſame name, but it is greatly inferior.

With reſpect to the animals of this country, the wild differ in nothing from thoſe found in other parts. There are great numbers of domeſtic animals in the various colonies and ſettlements at the Cape, and the woods and mountains abound with wild beaſts. The horſes, which were brought originally from Perſia, are of a bay or cheſnut colour, and rather ſmall. The dogs have a very unſightly appearance, and are of little uſe. Among the wild beaſts, the elephant claims the firſt place. The rhinoceros is of a dark aſh colour, and has a ſnout like a hog. A horn projects about two feet from the noſe, reſembling in ſhape a plough-ſhare, and of a grey dingy colour. With this he tears up the ground, pulls up trees by their roots, throws large ſtones over his head, and rips up the elephant, to whom he is a mortal enemy. Another horn of about ſix inches long, turns up from his forehead. His legs are ſhort, his ears ſmall, and his ſenſe of ſmelling ſurprizingly acute. When he ſcents any thing he purſues in a right line, and tears up every thing in his way; but his eyes being exceeding ſmall and fixed, he can only ſee ſtrait forward, ſo that it is eaſy to avoid him by ſtepping aſide, as he is a long time in turning himſelf about, and longer ſtill in getting ſight again of the object. He will not attack a man without being provoked, or unleſs he is dreſſed in ſcarlet. When he has killed any creature, he licks the fleſh from the bones with his rough tongue, which is like a raſp. He feeds much on herbs, thiſtles, and a plant reſembling juniper, and which, from its fondneſs of it, is called rhinoceros-buſh. The blood, ſkin, and horn of this animal, are medicinally uſed, and ſaid to be very efficacious in many diſorders. Wine, poured into cups made of the horn, bubbles up in a ſtrange kind of fermentation, appearing as if boiling. Should a ſmall portion of poiſon be put into the wine, the cup ſplits; but if poiſon only is poured into the cup, it flies into a thouſand pieces; hence cups made of this horn are deemed excellent ſafeguards, and, on that account, independent of their ſalubrious qualities, are highly valued. At the Cape, wolves are of two kinds; the one reſembles a ſheep dog, and is ſpotted like a tyger; the other is like an European wolf: they both prowl about, and do great miſchief in the night-time, but lie concealed in the day. Lions, tygers, leopards, &c. alſo abound here, and are ſo troubleſome, that the perſon who kills one of either ſort, is rewarded with twenty-five florins, or fifty ſhillings. The fleſh of the lion is eſteemed equal to veniſon, and the fat is much valued. Here are much larger buffaloes than in Europe. They are of a brown colour: the horns are ſhort, and curve towards the neck, where they incline to each other. Between them is a tuſt of hair upon the forehead, which adds to the fierceneſs of the look. The ſkin is exceeding hard, and the fleſh rather tough. He is a ſtrong fierce creature, and is enraged at any thing red, like many other animals. We ſaw here elks five feet high, with horns a foot long. This is a very handſome creature, having a beautiful head and neck, ſlender legs, and ſoſt ſmooth hair of an aſh colour. Their upper jaw is larger than the under, the tail about a foot in length, and the fleſh by the Cape epicures is ſaid to exceed the beſt beef. They run ſwift, and climb the rocks with great agility, though they uſually weigh about four hundred pounds each. Another ſingular animal is that called ſtink-box, from its offenſive ſmell both living and dead; it is about the ſize of a common houſe dog, and made much like a ferret. The goats are of various ſpecies. One, called the blue goat, is of a fine azure colour. The ſpotted goat is larger, and beautifully marked with brown, white, and red ſpots. The horns are a foot long. The fleſh fine eating. The rock-goat is no larger than a kid, but very miſchievous in the plantations. The diving-goat is much like the tame one, and receives its name from its method of ſquatting down in the graſs to hide itſelf. We ſaw another animal called a goat, without any additional appellation, it is of the ſize of a hart, and extremely beautiful. The hair of the ſides and back is grey, ſtreaked with red, and that on the belly white. A white ſtreak paſſes from his forehead to the ridge of his tail, and three others ſurround his body in circles. The female hath no horns; but thoſe of the male are three feet in length, and the fleſh is exceedingly delicate. The horns of the hart do not branch like thoſe of Europe; but the roebuck is in every reſpect like ours. Wild cats are of ſeveral ſorts. The firſt the Dutch call the civit cat, not that it is really the animal of that name, but becauſe of the fine ſcent of the ſkin. The next is called the tyger-cat, from its being very large, and ſpotted like a tyger. The third ſort is the mountain cat, which, as well as the tame cat reſembles thoſe of Europe. The fourth ſpecies is denominated the blue cat, from its colour, having a fine blue tinge, with a beautiful red liſt down its back. There is a ſpecies of mice peculiar to this country, called the rattle-mouſe, which is about the ſize of a ſquirrel, and makes a rattling noiſe with its tail. It is very nimble, lives upon nuts and acorns, and purs like a cat. Among the hogs with which this country abounds, is the wild hog, or rather wild boar, which is very fierce, and harbours in woods; and the earth hog, which is of a red colour, and without teeth: this lodges like a badger in holes, and feeds upon ants; theſe he procures by forcing his long rough tongue into their hills, from whence he draws it with a great number glued thereto. Many jackalls, ſome ermines, baboons, monkeys, &c. are found about the Cape; and frequently do great miſchief in the gardens, orchards, and vineyards. The porcupine is very common, and its fleſh eſteemed delicious. There are two ſorts of wild aſſes in this country, one of which is a beautiful creature, called the zebra, and bears a greater affinity in make and ſhape to the horſe than the aſs. Indeed the ears are ſomewhat like thoſe of the latter animal, but in all other reſpects it has a much more noble appearance. It is admirably well made, exceeding lively, and ſo extremely ſwift, that it throws almoſt every purſuer at a diſtance. Its legs are fine; it has a twiſted tail, round fleſhy haunches, and a ſmooth ſkin. The females are white and black, and the males white and brown. Theſe colours are placed alternately in the moſt beautiful ſtripes, and are parallel, diſtinct, and narrow. The whole animal is ſtreaked in this admirable manner, ſo as to appear to a diſtant beholder as if covered with ribbons. Moſt naturaliſts affirm, that the zebra never can be tamed. That which was preſented to her preſent majeſty queen Charlotte, and kept ſeveral years at the ſtables near Buckingham-gate, continued vicious till its death, though it was brought over young, and every poſſible means uſed to render it tractable: it fed upon hay, and the noiſe it made rather reſembled the barking of a maſtiff dog, than the braying of an aſs. The camelopardalis, we were informed, has been found in the countries round the Cape. Captain Carteret having, by order of his preſent majeſty, performed a voyage round the world in the Swallow ſloop of war, mentions this animal in a letter to the late Dr. Matty, ſecretary to the Royal Society. "From the ſcarcity of this creature (ſays he) as I believe none have been found in Europe, ſince Julius Cæſar's time (when I think there were two of them at Rome) I imagine a more certain knowledge of its reality will not be diſagreeable to you, as the exiſtence of this fine animal has been doubted by many. The preſent governor of the Cape of Good Hope has ſent out parties of men on inland diſcoveries, ſome of which have been abſent from eighteen months to two years, in which traverſe they have diſcovered many curioſities. One of theſe parties croſſed many mountains and plains, in one of which they found two of thoſe creatures, but they only caught the young one. This they endeavoured to bring alive to Cape Town, but unfortunately it died. They took off his ſkin, and it has, as a confirmation of this truth, been ſent to Holland." The ſkin here alluded to is now in the cabinet of natural hiſtory at Leyden. Linnæus ranks this animal among the deer kind. Its head is like that of a ſtag; the horns are blunt, about ſix inches long, covered with hair, but not branched. The neck reſembles a camel's, only longer, being near ſeven feet. It has a mane like that of a horſe; feet, ears, and a tongue like thoſe of a cow; ſlender legs, the fore ones being conſiderably longer than the hinder; the body is but ſmall, covered with white hair, and ſpotted with red; the tail is long, and buſhy at the end; the upper jaw contains no fore teeth; he moves both the fore feet together when he runs, and not one after the other like other animals: he is eighteen feet long from the tail to the top of the head, and is ſixteen feet from the ground when he holds up his head.

A great variety of birds and fowls are found at the Cape, both wild and tame. Here are three ſorts of eagles, namely, 1. The bone breaker, who feeds on tortoiſes; to obtain the fleſh of which it uſes this ſingular method. Having carried the tortoiſe aloft in the air, it drops it upon ſome hard rock, by which means the ſhell is broken, and the eagle can eaſily come at its prey. 2. The dung-eagle, which tears out the entrails of animals to ſubſiſt on, and, though no bigger than a common gooſe, is exceeding ſtrong and voracious. 3. The duck-eagle, ſo called becauſe it feeds principally on ducks. Here are alſo wild geeſe of three ſorts. 1. The water gooſe, which reſembles ours. 2. The mountain gooſe, which is the largeſt of all, having a green head, and green wings. 3. The crop gooſe, ſo named from its remarkable large craw, of which bags, pockets, and tobacco-pouches are made. All theſe kinds of geeſe are ſuch good eating, ſo plentiful, and ſo eaſily taken, that the people of the Cape do not think the tame gooſe worth the trouble of breeding. But of all the numerous birds that are to be found here, the flamingo is one of the moſt ſingular. It has a long neck, and is larger than a ſwan: the legs are remarkably long, and of an orange tawny, and the feet are like thoſe of a gooſe: the bill contains blue teeth with black points; the head and neck are entirely white; the upper part of the wings are of a bright flame colour, and the lower black.

Reptiles are very numerous at the Cape, particularly the following ſerpents, 1. The tree ſerpent, ſo called from reſembling the branch of a tree, and from being fond of winding itſelf about trees. 2. The aſh coloured aſp, ſpeckled with white and red, which is ſeveral yards long. 3. The ſhoot ſerpent, ſo named from the amazing velocity with which it darts itſelf at an enemy. Some call it the eye ſerpent, on account of the numerous white ſpots reſembling eyes, with which its ſkin is marked. 4. The blind ſlow worm, a black ſcaly ſerpent, ſpotted with brown, white, and red. 5. The thirſt ſerpent, or inflamer, a moſt venomous and dangerous ſerpent, about three quarters of a yard long; it has a broad neck, black back, and is very active. 6. The hair ſerpent, which is about three feet in length, as thick as a man's thumb, and received its name from its yellow hair. Its poiſon is ſo malignant, that nothing but the ſerpent ſtone can prevent its being mortal. This ſtone is ſaid to be an artificial compoſition, prepared by the Bramins in India, who keep the ſecret to themſelves. It is ſhaped like a bean, in the middle whitiſh, the reſt of a ſky-blue. Whenever this is applied, it ſticks cloſe without bandage or ſupport, and imbibes the poiſon till it can receive no more, and then drops off. Being laid in milk, it purges itſelf of the venom, turning the milk yellow, and ſo is applied again, till by its not ſticking, it proves that the poiſon is exhauſted.

The neighbouring ſea affords a plentiful ſupply of fiſh to the inhabitants of the Cape. The meat of the ſea cows is much admired. The flying fiſh, which has wings like a bat, is reckoned a great delicacy. The brown fiſh is as big as an ox, and is deemed good food either freſh or ſalted. The bennet is near three feet long, and weighs about ſeven pounds: the eyes and tails are red; the fins yellow, and the ſcales purple, with gold ſtreaks. The meat is of a crimſon colour, and ſo remains after it is dreſſed; nevertheleſs it is delicious eating. The gold fiſh has a ſtreak from head to tail, circles round his eyes of a gold colour, it is eighteen inches long, weighs about a pound, and its fleſh of an exquiſite taſte. The breſſem is found only about the Cape. Of this fiſh there are two ſorts; the one has a black back, and purple head; the other is of a dark blue colour, and the former is rounder than the latter. They are both cheap and wholeſome food. The ſtone braſſem is good either freſh or ſalted, reſembles a carp in make, but is more delicious in taſte. One ſpecies of this fiſh is called flat noſe, from the ſhape of the head, and is much more valued than the other ſort. The red ſtone fiſh is exceeding beautiful to the eye, and exquiſite to the taſte: the back is ſcarlet ſpotted with blue, and beſpangled with gold; the eyes are of a bright red, and ſurrounded with a ſilver circle, and the belly is of a pale pink colour, has a ſhining ſilver tail, reſembles a carp both in ſhape and taſte, and weighs about a pound. Of ſhell-fiſh, which are innumerable, there is a ſingular ſpecies called Klin-kouſen, which has an upper and under ſhell, thick, rough, twiſted, and incruſted. In vinegar the cruſt will drop off, and the ſhell exhibits an admirable pearl colour. Sea-ſuns and ſea-ſtars, are ſmall round ſhell-fiſh, and receive their denominations from the great variety of prickles, which ſhoot from them like rays of light. The fiſh called pagger has a prickly ſhell, and is much dreaded by the people of the Cape, as a wound from one of its protuberances turns to a mortification, unleſs great care is taken to prevent it. The ſea-ſpout reſembles a piece of moſs ſticking faſt to the rocks. It is of a green colour, emits water, and within is like a tough piece of fleſh. The torpedo, or cramp-ray is a very curious fiſh. The body is circular, the ſkin ſoft, ſmooth and yellow, marked with large annular ſpots; the eyes ſmall, and the tail tapering. It is of different ſizes, and weighs from five to fifteen pounds. The narcotic or benumbing quality of this fiſh was known to the ancients, and hath furniſhed matter of ſpeculation to the philoſophers of all ages. If a perſon touches it when alive, it inſtantly deprives him of the uſe of his arm, and has the ſame effect if he touches it with a ſtick. Even if one treads upon it with a ſhoe on, it affects not only the leg, but the thigh upwards. They who touch it with the feet are ſeized with a ſtronger palpitation, than even thoſe who touch it with the hand: this numbneſs bears no reſemblance to that which we feel when a nerve is a long time preſſed, and the foot is ſaid to be aſleep: it rather appears to be like a ſudden vapour, which paſſing through the pores in an inſtant, penetrates to the very ſprings of life, from whence it diffuſes itſelf all over the body, and gives real pain. The nerves are ſo affected, that the perſon ſtruck imagines all the bones of his body, and particularly thoſe of the limb that received the blow, are driven out of joint. All this is accompanied with an univerſal tremor, a ſickneſs of the ſtomach, a general convulſion, and a total ſuſpenſion of the faculties of the mind. In ſhort, ſuch is the pain, that all the force of our promiſes and authority could not prevail upon a ſeaman to undergo the ſhock a ſecond time. It has been obſerved, that the powers of this fiſh decline with its ſtrength, and entirely ceaſes when it expires. This benumbing faculty is of double uſe to the torpedo: firſt it enables it to get its prey with great facility; and ſecondly it is an admirable defence againſt its enemies, as by numbing a fiſh of ſuperior force with its touch, it can eaſily eſcape. The narcotic power of the torpedo is greater in the female than the male. According to Appian, it will benumb the fiſherman through the whole extent of hook, line and rod, The fleſh of this remarkable fiſh having, however, no pernicious quality, is eaten by the people of the Cape in common with others.

The air at the Cape of Good Hope is ſalutary in a high degree; ſo that thoſe who bring diſeaſes from Europe generally recover health in a ſhort time; but the diſeaſes that are brought hither from India are not ſo certainly cured. The weather at the Cape may be divided into two ſeaſons, namely, the wet monſoon, and the dry monſoon; the former begins in March, and the latter in September; ſo that ſummer commences at the Cape about the time that it concludes with us. The inconveniecies of the climate are exceſſive heat in the dry ſeaſon, and heavy rains, thick fogs, and N. W. winds in the wet ſeaſon. Thunder and lightning are never known here but in March and September. Water ſeldom freezes, and when it does, the ice is but thin, and diſſolves upon the leaſt appearance of the ſun. In the hot weather, the people are happy when the wind blows from the S. E. becauſe it keeps off the ſea-weeds which otherwiſe would float to the ſhore, and corrupt there. The appearance of two remarkable clouds, which frequently hang over the ſummits of the two mountains of Table-hill and Devil-hill, commonly enable the inhabitants of this country to prognoſticate what weather will happen. The clouds are at firſt ſmall, but gradually increaſing, they at length unite into one cloud, which invelops both mountains, when a terrible hurricane ſoon enſues. A gentleman, who reſided many years at the Cape, ſays, "The ſkirts of this cloud are white, but ſeem much compacter than the matter of common clouds. The upper parts are of a lead colour, owing to the refracted rays of light. No rain falls from it, but at times it diſcovers great humidity, when it is of a darker hue; and the wind iſſuing from it is broken, raging by guſts of ſhort continuance. In its uſual ſtate, the wind keeps up its firſt fury, unabated for one, two, or three, or eight days, and ſometimes a whole month. The cloud ſeems all the time undiminiſhed, though little fleeces are ſeen torn from the ſkirts from time to time, and hurried down the ſides of the hills, vaniſhing when they reach the bottom; ſo that during the ſtorm the cloud ſeems to be ſupplied with new water. When the cloud begins to brighten up, thoſe ſupplies fail, and the wind proportionably abates. At length the cloud growing tranſparent, the wind ceaſes." During the continuance of the S. E. winds, the Table-valley is torn by furious whirlwinds. If they blow warm, they are generally of ſhort duration, and in this caſe the cloud ſoon diſappears; but when the wind blows cold, it is a ſure ſign it will laſt long, except an hour or two at noon, or midnight, when it ſeems to recover new ſtrength, and afterwards renews its boiſterous rage.

Near the Cape the water of the ocean is of a green colour, owing principally to the coral ſhrubs, and the weed called tromba. The firſt, while in the water, are green and ſoft; but when expoſed to the air, they grow hard, and change their colour to white, black, or red. The latter are ten or twelve feet in length, hollow within, and when dry, become firm and ſtrong. They are often framed into trumpets, and the ſound they produce is very agreeable to the ear.

The ſources ofthe rivers in this country are in the mountains: they glide over a gravelly bottom, are clear, pleaſant, and ſalubrious; but other ſtreams are dark, muddy, and unwholeſome. Here are a few brackiſh ſprings, whoſe waters medicinally uſed, greatly purify the blood; and ſeveral hot baths are very efficacious in various diſorders. Upon the whole, the reputation of the Cape waters is ſo great, that every Daniſh ſhip returning from India, is obliged to fill a large caſk with the clear ſweet water that abounds here for the uſe of his Daniſh majeſty.

The ſoil in general about the Cape conſiſts of a clayey earth, and is ſo fat, that it requires but little manuring. White and red chalk are found in abundance; the former is uſed by the Dutch, to whitewaſh their houſes, and the latter by the Hottentot women to paint their faces. Various bituminous ſubſtances of ſeveral colours are found in Drakenſtoin colony, particularly a kind of oil which trickles from the rocks, and has a very rank ſmell. With reſpect to minerals, ſilver ore has been found in ſome of the mountains, and alſo ſeveral iron mines. The Namaqua Hottentots, who are ſituated above three hundred miles from the cape, bring copper to trade with the Dutch.

When we ſpeak of agriculture, it is to be obſerved, that the Europeans of the Cape, and their lands, are implied; for the Hottentots in general deteſt the very idea of cultivation, and would ſooner ſtarve than till the ground, ſo greatly are they addicted to ſloth and indolence. The working of the plough here is ſo laborious from the ſtiffneſs of the ſoil, that it frequently requires near twenty oxen to one plough. The ſowing ſeaſon is in July, and the harveſt about Chriſtmas. The corn is not thraſhed with a flail, but trod out by horſes or oxen, on an artificial floor made of cow-dung, ſtraw, and water, which when mixed together cements, and ſoon becomes perfectly hard. It is laid in an oval form. The cattle are confined by halters which run from one to the other, and the driver ſtands in the middle, where he exerciſes a long ſtick to keep them continually to a quick pace. By this method half a dozen horſes will do more in one day, than a dozen men can in a week. A tythe of the corn belongs to the Dutch Company, and the reſt they purchaſe at a price ſtipulated between them and the huſbandmen.

We have already obſerved of the inhabitants of the Cape, that their number bears a greater proportion to the natives and ſtrangers, than thoſe in Batavia; and have only to add, that the women in general are very handſome; they have fine clear ſkins, and a bloom of colour that indicates a purity of conſtitution, and high health. They make the beſt wives in the world, both as miſtreſſes of a family and mothers, and there is ſcarcely a houſe that does not ſwarm with children. The common method in which ſtrangers live here, is to lodge and board with ſome of the inhabitants, many of whoſe houſes are always open for their reception; the rates are from five ſhillings to two a day, for which all neceſſaries are found. Coaches may be hired at twenty-four ſhillings a day, and horſes at ſix; but the country affords very little temptation to uſe them. There are no public entertainments, and to thoſe that are private, all ſtrangers of the rank of gentlemen are always admitted.

We come now to ſpeak of the Caffres or natives of this country, none of whoſe habitations, where they retain their original cuſtoms, are within leſs than four days journey from Cape Town; thoſe that we ſaw at the Cape were all ſervants to Dutch farmers, whoſe cattle they take care of, and are employed in other drudgery of the meaneſt kind. There are ſixteen Hottentot nations, which inhabit this ſouthern promontory; at leaſt, there are ſo many that hold a correſpondence with the Dutch, though it is preſumed, there are many more to the northward.

The ſtature of the Hottentot men is from five to ſix feet in height, their bodies are proportionable, and well made: they are ſeldom either too fat or lean, and ſcarce ever any crooked or deformed perſons amongſt them, any farther than they disfigure their children themſelves by flatting and breaking the griſtles of their noſes, looking on a flat noſe as a beauty. Their heads as well as their eyes, are rather of the largeſt: their lips are naturally thick: their hair black and ſhort like the negroes, and they have exceeding white teeth: and after they have taken a great deal of pains with greaſe and ſoot to darken their natural tawny complexions, reſemble the negroes pretty much in colour. The women are much leſs than the men; and what is moſt remarkable in them, is a callous flap or ſkin that falls over the pudenda, and in a manner conceals it. The report of which uſually excites the curioſity of the European ſailors, to viſit the Hottentot villages near the cape, where a great many of thoſe ladies, on ſeeing a ſtranger, will offer to ſatisfy his curioſity for a halfpenny, before a crowd of people, which perfectly ſpoils the character that Mr. Kolben has given of their modeſty.

The head of the men are covered with greaſe and ſoot mixed together; and going without any thing elſe on their heads in the ſummer-time, the duſt ſticks to it, and makes them a very filthy cap, which they ſay cools them, and preſerves their heads from the ſcorching heat of the ſun; and in the winter, they wear flat caps of cat-ſkin or lamb-ſkin, half dried, which they tie with a thong of the ſame leather under their chins. The men alſo wear a kroſſe or mantle, made of ſheep ſkins or other ſkins, over their ſhoulders, which reaches to the middle; and, being faſtened with a thong about their neck, is open before. In winter they turn the woolly or hairy ſides next their backs, and in ſummer the other: this ſerves the man for his bed at night; and this is all the winding ſheet or coffin he has when he dies. If he be a captain of a village, or chief of his nation, inſtead of a ſheep-ſkin, his mantle is made of tyger-ſkins, wild cat-ſkins, or ſome other ſkins they ſet a value upon: but though theſe mantles reach no lower, generally, than their waiſts, yet there are ſome nations who wear them as low as their legs, and others that have them touch the ground.

A Hottentot alſo hangs about his neck a greaſy pouch, in which he keeps his knife, his pipe and tobacco, and ſome dahka (which intoxicates like tobacco) and a little piece of wood, burnt at both ends, as a charm againſt witchcraft. He wears alſo three large ivory rings on his left arm, to which he faſtens a bag of proviſions when he travels. He carries in his right hand two ſticks, the firſt called his kirri, which is about three feet long, and an inch thick, but blunt at both ends; the other, called his rackum-ſtick, about a foot long, and of the ſame thickneſs, but has a ſharp point, and is uſed as a dart, to throw at an enemy or wild beaſt; which he ſeldom miſſes, if he be within diſtance. In his left hand he has another ſtick, about a foot long, to which is faſtened a tail of a fox or wild cat; and this ſerves him as a handkerchief to wipe off the ſweat. They wear a kind of ſandals, alſo made of the raw hide of an ox or elephant, when they are obliged to travel through ſtoney countries; and ſometimes have buſkins, to preſerve their legs from buſhes and briars; but ordinarily their legs and thighs have no covering.

The women wear caps, the crowns whereof are a little raiſed; and theſe are made of half dried ſkins, and tied under their chins. They ſcarce ever put them off night or day, winter or ſummer. They uſually wear two kroſſes or mantles, one upon another, and, as theſe are only faſtened with a thong, about their necks, they appear naked down to the middle: but they have an apron, larger than that of the men to cover them before, and another of ſtill larger dimenſions that cover their hind parts. About their legs they wrap thongs of half dried ſkins, to the thickneſs of a jack-boot, which are ſuch a load to them, that they lift up their legs with difficulty, and walk very much like a trooper in jack-boots: this ſerves both for diſtinction of their ſex, and for ornament. But this is not all their finery: if they are people of any figure, inſtead of a ſheep ſkin, they wear a tyger ſkin, or a mantle of wild cat ſkin. They have alſo a pouch hanging about their necks, in which they carry ſomething to eat, whether they are at home or abroad, with their dahka, tobacco, and pipe. But the principal ornaments both of men and women are braſs or glaſs beads, with little thin plates of glittering braſs and mother of pearl, which they wear in their hair, or about their ears. Of theſe glaſs or braſs beads ſtrung, they alſo make necklaces, bracelets for the arms, and girdles, wearing ſeveral ſtrings of them about their necks, waiſt, and arms, chuſing the ſmalleſt beads for their necks: thoſe are fineſt that have moſt ſtrings of them, and their arms are ſometimes covered with bracelets from the wriſt to the elbow. The largeſt beads are on the ſtrings about the middle: in theſe they affect a variety of colours, all of which the Dutch furniſh them with, and take their cattle in return. There is another kind of ornament peculiar to the men, and that is, the bladder of any wild beaſt they have killed, which is blown up, and faſtened to the hair as a trophy of their valour. Both ſexes powder themſelves with a duſt they call bachu; and the women ſpot their faces with a red earth or ſtone (as ours do with black patches) which is thought to add to their beauty, by the natives; but, in the eyes of Europeans, renders them more frightful and ſhocking than they are naturally. But as part of their dreſs, we ought to have mentioned, in the firſt place, the cuſtom of daubing their bodies, and the inſide of their caps and mantles, with greaſe and ſoot. Soon after their children are born, they lay them in the ſun, or by the fire, and rub them over with fat or butter, mixed with ſoot, to render them of a deeper black, it is ſaid; for they are naturally tawny; and this they continue to do almoſt every day of their lives, after they are grown up, not only to increaſe their beauty, but to render their limbs ſupple and pliable. As ſome nations pour oil upon their heads and bodies, ſo theſe people make uſe of melted fat: you cannot make them a more acceptable preſent than the fat or ſcum of the pot that meat is boiled in, to anoint themſelves.

Nor are the Hottentots more cleanly in their diet than in their dreſs; for they chooſe the guts and entrails of cattle and of ſome wild beaſts (with very little cleanſing), rather than the reſt of the fleſh, and eat their meat half boiled or broiled; but their principal food conſiſts of roots, herbs, fruits or milk: they ſeldom kill any of thoſe cattle, unleſs at a feſtival; they only feed on ſuch as die of themſelves, either of diſeaſes or old age, or on what they take in hunting; and when they are hard put to it, they will eat the raw leather that is wound about the womens legs, and even ſoles of ſhoes; and as their mantles are always well ſtocked with lice of an unuſual ſize, they are not aſhamed to ſit down in the public ſtreets at the cape, pull off the lice, and eat them. And we ought to have remembered, that they boil their meat in the blood of beaſts when they have any of it. They rather devour their meat than eat it, pulling it to pieces with their teeth and hands, diſcovering a canine appetite and fierceneſs: they abſtain, however, from ſwines-fleſh, and ſome other kinds of meat, and from fiſh that have no ſcales, as religiouſly as ever the Jews did. And here it may not be improper to ſay ſomething of the management of their milk and butter: they never ſtrain their milk, but drink it with all the hairs and naſtineſs with which it is mixed in the milking by the Hottentot women. When they make butter of it, they put it into ſome ſkin made in the form of a ſoldier's knapſack, the hairy ſide inwards; and then two of them taking hold of it, one at each end, they whirl and turn it round till it is converted into butter, which they put up for anointing themſelves, their caps and mantles with, for they eat no butter; and the reſt they ſell to the Dutch, without clearing it from the hairs and dirt it contracts in the knapſack. The Hollanders, when they have it indeed, endeavour to ſeparate the naſtineſs from it, and ſell it to the ſhipping, that arrives there, frequently for butter of their own making; and ſome they eat themſelves (but ſurely none but a Dutchman could eat Hottentot butter) and the dregs and dirt that is left they give to their ſlaves; which having been found to create diſeaſes, the governor of the cape ſometimes prohibits their giving their ſlaves this ſtuff by public edict; which is not, however, much regarded. The butter-milk, without any manner of cleaning or ſtraining, the Hottentots drink themſelves; giving what they have to ſpare to their lambs and calves. Their uſual drink is cow's milk or water, and the women ſometimes drink ewe's milk; but this the men never touch: and it is obſerved, that the women are never ſuffered to eat with the men, or come near them, during the time of their menſes.

Since the arrival of the Dutch among them, it appears that the Hottentots are very fond of wine, brandy, and other ſpirituous liquors: theſe, and the baubles already mentioned, the Hollanders truck for their cattle; and though a Hottentot will turn ſpit for a Dutchman half a day for a draught or two of ſour wine, yet do they never attempt to plant vineyards (as they ſee the Dutch often do) or think of making wine themſelves.

We ſhall proceed, in the next place, to give an account of their towns and houſes, or rather, their camps and tents.

Like the Tartars and Arabs, they remove their dwellings frequently for the conveniency of water and freſh paſture: they encamp in a circle formed by twenty or thirty tents, and ſometimes twice the number, contiguous to each other; within the area whereof they keep their leſſer cattle in the night, and the larger on the outſide of their camp: their tents, or, as ſome call them, houſes, are made with ſlender poles, bent like an arch, and covered with mats or ſkins, and ſometimes both: they are of an oval figure, the middle of the tent being about the height of a man, and decreaſing gradually (the poles being ſhorter) towards each end, the loweſt arch, which is the door or entrance, being about three feet high, as is the oppoſite arch at the other end; the longeſt diameter of the tent being about twelve or fourteen feet, and the ſhorteſt ten; and in the middle of the tent is a ſhallow hole about a yard diameter, in which they make their fire, and round which the whole family, conſiſting of nine or ten people of all ages and ſexes, ſit or lie night and day in ſuch a ſmoak (when it is cold, or they are dreſſing of victuals) that it is impoſſible for an European to bear it, there being uſually no vent for the ſmoak but the door, though ſome have ſeen a hole in the top of ſome of their huts, to let out the ſmoak, and give them light. Such a circle of tents or huts as has been deſcribed, is called by the Hottentots a kraal, and ſometimes by the Europeans a town or village; but ſeems to be more properly a camp: for a town conſiſts of more ſubſtantial buildings, and is ſeldom capable of being removed from one place to another; whereas theſe dwellings conſiſt of nothing more than ſmall tent-poles, covered with ſkins or mats, which are moveable, and carried away upon their baggage oxen whenever they remove with their herds to a diſtant paſture. As to the furniture of their tents; they conſiſt of little more than their mantles which they lie on, ſome other ſkins of wild beaſts they have killed or purchaſed, an earthen pot they boil their meat in, their arms, and perhaps ſome other trivial utenſils. The only domeſtick animals they keep, are dogs, as ugly in their kind as their maſters, but exceeding uſeful to them in driving and defending their cattle.

The Hottentots are agreed by all to be the lazieſt generation under the ſun: they will rather ſtarve, or eat dried ſkins, or ſhoe ſoles at home, than hunt for their food; and yet, when they apply themſelves to the chace, or any other exerciſe, no people are more active and dexterous than the Hottentots; and they ſerve the Europeans often with the greateſt fidelity and application when they contract to ſerve them for wages: they are alſo exceeding generous and hoſpitable; they will ſcarce eat a piece of veniſon, or a diſh of fiſh they have catched, or drink their beloved drams alone, but call in their neighbours to partake with them as far as it will go.

Concerning their government, people agree, that every nation has its king or chief, called konquer, whoſe authority devolves upon him by hereditary ſucceſſion; and that they do not pretend to elect their reſpective ſovereigns. That this chief has the power of making peace and war, and preſides in all their councils and courts of juſtice: but then his authority is ſaid to be limited; and that he can determine nothing without the conſent of the captains of the ſeveral kraals, who ſeem to be the Hottentot ſenate. The captain of every kraal, whoſe office is hereditary alſo, is their leader in time of war, and chief magiſtrate of his kraal in time of peace; and, with the head of every family, determines all civil and criminal cauſes within the kraal; only ſuch differences as happen between one kraal and another, and matters of ſtate are determined by the king and ſenate. The Dutch, ſince their arrival at the cape, have preſented the king, or chief of every nation of the Hottentots in alliance with them, with a braſs crown; and the captains of each kraal with a braſs-headed cane, which are now the badges of their reſpective offices; formerly they were diſtinguiſhed only by finer ſkins, and a greater variety of beads and glittering trifles. In their councils their king ſits on his heels in the centre, and the captains of the kraals ſit in like manner round about him. At his acceſſion, it is ſaid, he promiſes to obſerve their national cuſtoms; and gives them an entertainment, killing an ox, and two or three ſheep, upon the occaſion; on which he feaſts his captains, but their wives are only entertained with the broth; but then the next day, we are told, her Hottentot majeſty treats the ladies, and their huſbands are put off in like manner with the ſoup.

The captain of each kraal alſo, at his acceſſion, engages to obſerve the cuſtoms of his kraal, and makes an entertainment for the men, as his lady does the next day for the women; and, though theſe people ſhew their chiefs great reſpect, they allow neither their king or inferior magiſtrates any revenue; they ſubſiſt, as other families do, upon their ſtock of cattle, and what they take in hunting.

Having no notion of writing or letters, they can have no written laws; but there are ſome antient cuſtoms, from which they ſcarce ever deviate. Murder, adultery and robbery, they conſtantly puniſh with death; and, if a perſon is ſuſpected of any of theſe crimes, the whole kraal join in ſeizing and ſecuring him; but the guilty perſon ſometimes makes his eſcape to the mountains, where robbers and criminals like himſelf, ſecure themſelves from juſtice, and frequently plunder the neighbouring country; for no other kraal or nation of Hottentots will entertain a ſtranger, unleſs he is known to them, and can give a good reaſon for leaving his own kraal. If the offender is apprehended, the captain aſſembles the people of his kraal in a day or two; who, making a ring, and ſitting down upon their heels, the criminal is placed in the center of them: the witneſſes on both ſides are heard, and the party ſuffered to make his defence: after which, the caſe being conſidered, the captain collects the ſuffrages of the judges; and, if a majority condemn him, the priſoner is executed on the ſpot. The captain firſt ſtrikes him with a truncheon he carries in his hand, and then the reſt of the judges fall upon him and drub him to death: then wrapping up the corpſe in his kroſſe or mantle, it is carried to ſome place diſtant from the kraal, where they bury it. In civil caſes alſo, the cauſe is determined by a majority of voices, and ſatisfaction immediately ordered to the injured perſon, out of the goods of the perſon that appears to be in the wrong. There is no appeal to any other court; the king and his council, conſiſting of the captains of the kraals, never interpoſe unleſs in matters that concern the public, or where the kraals are at variance. To which we may add, that the Hottentot's cattle and perſonal eſtate deſcend to his eldeſt ſon: he cannot diſinherit him, or give his effects to his other children; but, as for property in lands, or any certain real eſtate, no man has any; the whole country is but one common, where they feed their cattle promiſcuouſly, moving from place to place, to find water or freſh paſture as neceſſity requires. Even the ſeveral nations have no ſtated bounds; but uſe ſuch tracts of land as their anceſtors did before them; it is true, their reſpective limits ſometimes create great differences between the ſeveral nations, and occaſion bloody wars; which brings us now to treat of their arms, and the arts and ſtratagems they uſe in war.

The arms of a Hottentot are, 1. His lance, which reſembles a half pike, ſometimes thrown, and uſed as a miſſive weapon; and at others, ſerves to puſh with in cloſe fight, the head or ſpear whereof is poiſoned. 2. His bow and arrows, the arrows bearded and poiſoned likewiſe, when they engage an enemy or wild beaſt they do not intend for food. Their bows are made of iron, or olive-wood; the ſtring of the ſinews or guts of ſome animal: the quiver is a long narrow caſe, made of the ſkin of an elephant, elk, or ox, and ſlung at their backs, as ſoldiers ſling their knapſacks. 3. A dart of a foot long, which they throw exceeding true, ſcarce ever miſſing the mark they aim at, though it is not above the breadth of half a crown; theſe alſo are poiſoned, when they engage an enemy or a wild beaſt that is not to be eaten: and laſtly, when they have ſpent the reſt of their miſſive weapons, they have recourſe to ſtones, ſeldom making a diſcharge in vain; and, what is moſt remarkable in their ſhooting or throwing arrows, darts, or ſtones, they never ſtand ſtill, but are all the while ſkipping and jumping from one ſide to the other, poſſibly to avoid the ſtones and darts of the enemy. They are all foot, and never engage on horſeback; but have diſciplined bulls or oxen taught to run upon the enemy, and to toſs and diſorder them; which theſe creatures will do with the utmoſt fury on the word of command, not regarding the weapons that are thrown at them: for though the Hottentots have numbers of large elephants in their country, they have not yet learned the art of taming them, or training them up to war, as the military men in the Eaſt Indies do. Every able bodied man is a ſoldier, and poſſeſſed of a ſet of ſuch arms as has been deſcribed; and on the ſummons of his prince, appears at the rendezvous with all imaginable alacrity and contempt of danger, and every man maintains himſelf while the expedition laſts. As their officers, civil and military, have no pay, ſo neither do the private men expect any; a ſenſe of honour, and the public good, are the ſole motives for hazarding their lives in their country's ſervice.

The Hottentots, in war, have very little conception of diſcipline, nor indeed is it poſſible they ſhould; for the only method of raiſing an army, is, for the kraal captains to order the people to follow them; the only method of maintaining one, is by hunting as they march: and the only way of deciding a diſpute between two nations, is, by fighting one battle; the ſucceſs of which determines the whole affair. In an engagement, they attack with an hideous yell, fight in great confuſion, and put more confidence in their war oxen than their own ſkill: for, as we have hinted above, theſe animals, when trained to the buſineſs, are better diſciplined and much more formidable, than the Hottentots themſelves. The principal inducements to their entering into a war at any time, is the preſervation of their territories. As they have no land marks or written treaties to adjuſt the exact bounds of every nation, they frequently diſagree about the limits of their reſpective countries; and, when any neighbouring nation grazes their cattle upon a ſpot of ground another claims, ſatiſfaction is immediately demanded; and, if it be not given, they make repriſals, and have recourſe to arms. But this is not the only occaſion of wars amongſt the Hottentots: they are not always that chaſte and virtuous people Mr. Kolben has repreſented them; ſome tempting Helen (for Hottentots poſſibly may appear amiable in one another's eyes, with all the greaſe and carrion they are cloathed with) has ſmitten a neighbouring chief, perhaps, who prevails on his people to aſſiſt him in the rape of the deſired female: and this frequently ſets their tribes together by the ears. The ſtealing each others cattle is another cauſe of deadly ſtrife; for though each kraal puniſhes theft among themſelves with death, yet it is looked upon as an heroic act to rob thoſe of another nation; at leaſt the body of the people are ſo backward in giving up the offender, that they frequently come to blows upon it.

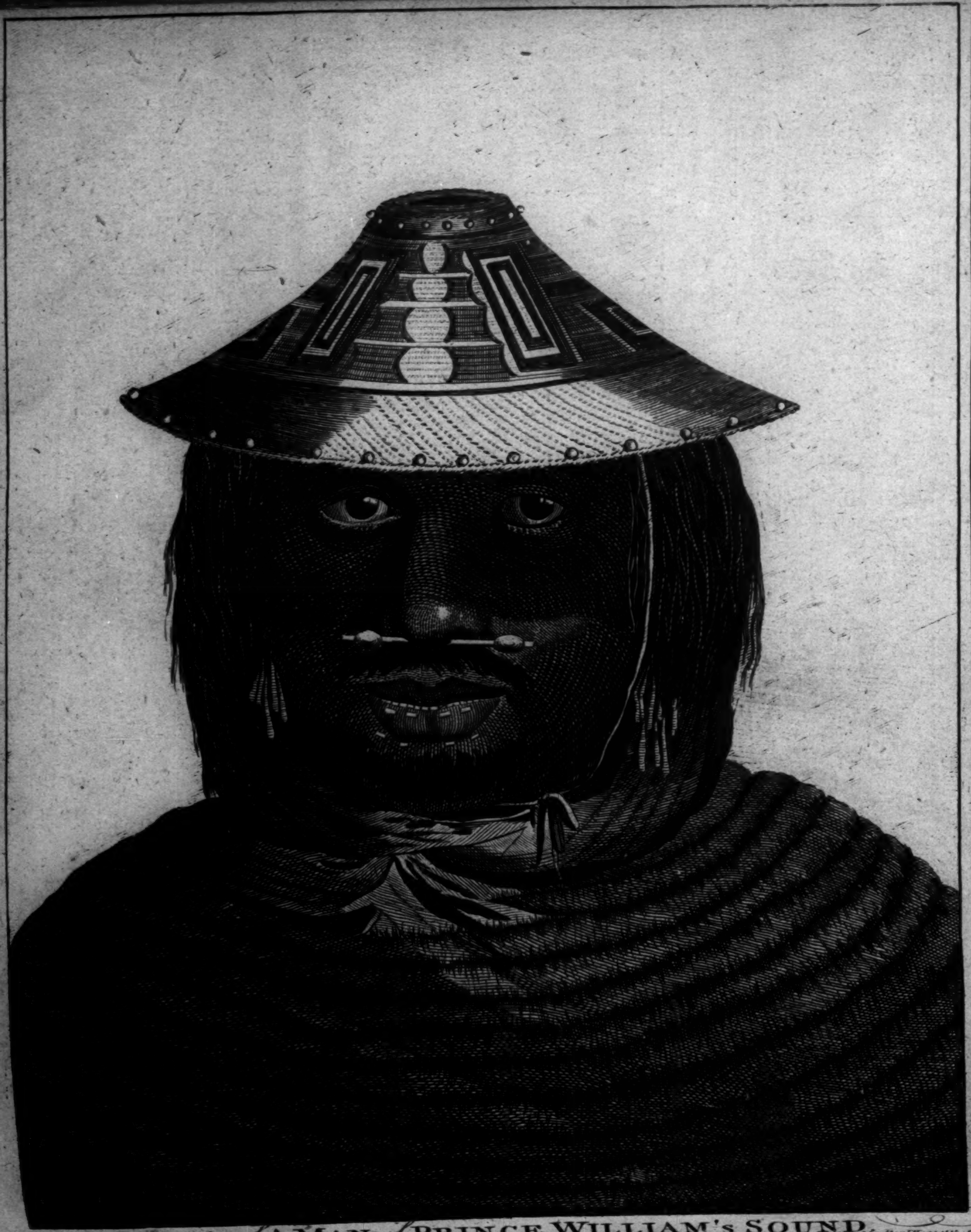
When they march into the field, every man follows his particular captain, the chief of his kraal: they obſerve little order; neither do they take the precaution of throwing up trenches to defend themſelves: and what is ſtill more ſurpriſing, have no ſhields to defend themſelves againſt miſſive weapons, though ſome ſay they will ward off a lance or dart, and even a ſtone, with a little truncheon about a foot long, which they carry in their hand. The ſeveral companies advance to the charge at the command of their chief; and, when thoſe in the front have ſhot one flight of arrows, they retreat and make room for thoſe in the rear; and, when they have diſcharged, the former advance again, and thus alternately they continue till they have ſpent all their miſſive weapons, and then they have recourſe to ſtones, unleſs they are firſt broken and diſperſed by a troop of bulls; for the wiſe chiefs and generals of each ſide, according to the European practice, remaining on an eminence in the rear, to obſerve the fortune of the day, when they obſerve their people are hard preſſed, give the word of command to their corps de reſerve of bulls, who break into the body of the enemy, and generally bring all into confuſion; and that ſide that preſerves their order beſt, on this furious attack of theſe bulls of Baſan, are ſure to be victorious. The ſkill of the general ſeems to be chiefly in managing his bulls; who never engage each other, but ſpend their whole rage upon the men, who have, it ſeems, no dogs of Engliſh breed to play againſt them, or this ſtratagem would be of little ſervice: but we ſhould have obſerved, that as the battle always begins with horrid cries and noiſe, which perhaps ſupplies the place of drums and trumpets; ſo the victors inſult with no leſs noiſe over the conquered enemy, killing all that fall into their hands: but they ſeldom fight more than one battle, ſome neighbouring power uſually interpoſing to make up the quarrel, and of late the Dutch perform this good office, between ſuch nations as lie near their ſettlements. From their wars with each other, we naturally proceed to their wars with wild beaſts, with which their country abounds more than any other; theſe people, it ſeems, eſteem it a much greater honour to have killed one of theſe foes to mankind, than an enemy of their own ſpecies.

Inſtances are not wanting of a Hottentot's engaging ſingly with the fierceſt wild beaſts, and killing them; but uſually the whole kraal or village aſſemble, when a wild beaſt is diſcovered in their neighbourhood, and, dividing themſelves in ſmall parties, endeavour to ſurround him. Having found their enemy, they uſually ſet up a great cry, at which the frighted animal endeavours to break through and eſcape them: if it prove to be a rhinoceros, an elk, or elephant, they throw their lances at him, darts and arrows being too weak to pierce through their thick hides: if the beaſt be not killed at the firſt diſcharge, they repeat the attack, and load him with their ſpears; and, as he runs with all his rage at the perſons who wound him, thoſe in his rear follow him cloſe, and ply him with their ſpears, on whom he turns again, but is overpowered by his enemies, who conſtantly return to the charge, when his back is towards them, and ſcarce ever fail of bringing the creature down, before he has taken his revenge on any of them. How hazardous ſoever ſuch an engagement may appear to an European, theſe people make it their ſport; and have this advantage, that they are exceeding ſwift of foot, and ſcarce ever miſs the mark they aim at with their ſpears: if one of them is hard preſſed by the brute, he is ſure to be relieved by his companions, who never quit the field till the beaſt is killed, or makes his eſcape: though they ſometimes dexterouſly avoid the adverſary, they immediately return to the charge, ſubduing the fierceſt either by ſtratagem or force. When attacking a lion, a leopard, or a tyger, their darts and arrows are of ſervice to them; and therefore they begin the engagement at a greater diſtance, than when they charge an elephant or rhinoceros; and the creature has a wood of darts and arrows upon his back, before he can approach his enemies, which make him fret and rage and fly at them with the greateſt fury; but thoſe he attacks, nimbly avoid his paws, while others purſue him, and finiſh the conqueſt with their ſpears. Sometimes a lion takes to his heels, with abundance of poiſoned darts and arrows in his fleſh: but, the poiſon beginning to operate, he ſoon falls, and becomes a prey to thoſe he would have preyed upon. The elephant, the rhinoceros, and the elk, are frequently taken in traps and pitfalls, without any manner of hazard. The elephants are obſerved to go in great companies to water, following in a file one after another, and uſually take the ſame road till they are diſturbed: the Hottentots therefore dig pits in their paths, about eight feet deep, and four and five over; in which they fix ſharp ſtakes pointed with iron, and then cover the pit with ſmall ſticks and turf, ſo as it is not diſcernible: and as theſe animals uſually keep in one track, frequently one or other of them falls in with his fore feet into the pit, and the ſtake pierces his body; the more he ſtruggles, the deeper the weight of his monſtrous body fixes him on the ſtake. When the reſt of the herd obſerve the miſfortune of their companion, and find he cannot diſengage himſelf, they immediately abandon him: whereupon the Hottentots, who lie concealed, in expectation of the ſucceſs of their ſtratagem, approach the wounded beaſt, ſtab him with their ſpears, and cut his largeſt veins, ſo that he ſoon expires; whereupon they cut him to pieces, and, carrying the fleſh home, feaſt upon it as long as it laſts. His teeth they make into rings for their arms, and, when they have any ivory to ſpare, diſpoſe of it to the Europeans. The rhinoceros and elk are frequently taken in pitfalls, as the elephants are. The Hottentot, who kills any of theſe, or a lion, leopard, or tyger, ſingly, has the higheſt honour conferred upon him, and ſeveral privileges, which belong only to ſuch intrepid heroes. At his return from this hazardous and important ſervice, the men of the kraal depute one of the ſeniors to congratulate him on his victory, and deſire that he will honour them with his preſence; whereupon he follows the old deputy to the aſſembly, whom he finds, according to cuſtom, ſitting upon their heels in a circle; and, a mat of diſtinction being laid for him in the center, he ſets himſelf down upon it: after which the old deputy urines plentifully upon him, which the hero rubs in with great eagerneſs, having firſt ſcratched the greaſe off his ſkin with his nails; the deputy all this while pronouncing ſome words unintelligible to any but themſelves. After this, they light a pipe of tobacco, which they ſmoke and hand one to another till there remain nothing but aſhes in the pipe, and theſe the old deputy ſtrews over the gallant man, who rubs them in as they fall upon him, not ſuffering the leaſt duſt to be loſt. After which the neighbours having ſeverally congratulated him on his advancement to the high honour, they diſperſe, and go to their reſpective tents. The conqueror, afterwards, faſtens the bladder of the furious beaſt he has killed to his hair, which he ever after wears as a badge of his knighthood; and is from that time eſteemed by every one a brave man, and a benefactor to his country. When retired to his tent, his neighbours ſeem to vie which of them ſhall oblige him moſt, and are, for the next three days, continually ſending him one delicious morſel or other; nor do they call upon him to perform duty during that time, but ſuffer him to indulge his eaſe: but, what is ſtill more unaccountable, his wife, or wives, (for he may have more than one) are not allowed to come near him for three days after this honour is conferred on him; but they are forced to ramble about the fields, and to keep to a ſpare diet, leſt they ſhould, as Mr. Kolben ſurmiſes, tempt the huſbands to their embraces: but on the third day in the evening, we are told the women return to the tent, are received with the utmoſt joy and tenderneſs; mutual congratulations paſs between them; a fat ſheep is killed, and their neighbours invited to the feaſt, where the proweſs of the hero, and the honour he has obtained, are the chief ſubject of their converſation.

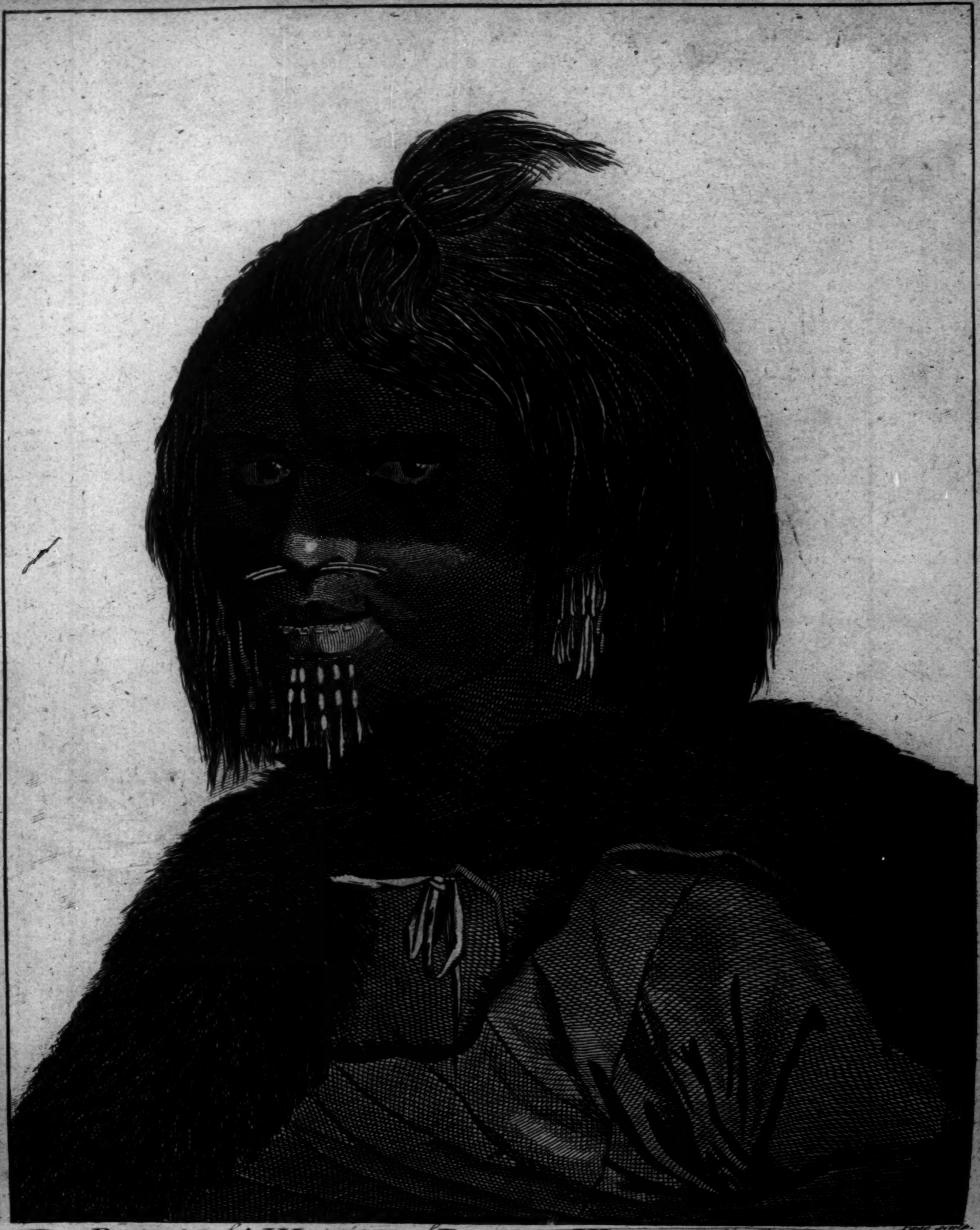
There is ſcarce any wild beaſt, but the fleſh is good eating, if it be not killed with poiſonous weapons; but the tyger is the moſt delicious morſel; and as the whole kraal partake of the feaſt, the perſon who kills him meets with a double ſhare of praiſe, as he both rids the country of an enemy, and pleaſes their palates. But to return to the field ſports of the Hottentots: when they hunt a deer, a wild goat or a hare, they go ſingly, or but two or three in company, armed only with a dart or two, and ſeldom miſs the game they throw at: yet, as has been obſerved already, ſo long as they have any manner of food left, if it be but the raw hides of cattle, or ſhoe ſoles, they will hardly be perſuaded to ſtir to get more; though it is true, when they apprehend their cattle in danger from wild beaſts, no people are more active, or purſue the chace of them with greater alacrity and bravery. From hunting, we proceed to treat of their fiſhing; at which they are very expert; taking fiſh with angles, nets, and ſpears; and they get a certain fiſh, called rock-fiſh, particularly by groping the holes of the rocks near the ſhore, when the tide is out: theſe are mightily admired by the Europeans; but having no ſcales, the Hottentots will not eat them.

The manner of the Hottentot's ſwimming, is as particular as of his fiſhing; for he ſtands upright in the ſea, and rather walks and treads the water, than ſwims upon it, his head, neck, and ſhoulders being quite above the waves, as well as his arms, and yet they move faſter in the water than any European can; even in a ſtorm, when the waves run high, they will venture into the ſea, riſing and falling with the waves like a cork.

The next thing we ſhall notice, is the marriages of the Hottentots: and it ſeems, every young fellow has ſuch regard to the advice of his father, (or rather the laws and cuſtoms of the country require it) that he always conſults the old man before he enters into a treaty with his miſtreſs, and if he approves the match, the father and ſon, in the firſt place, pay a viſit to the father of the damſel, with whom having ſmoaked, and talked of indifferent things for ſome time, the father of the lover opens the matter to the virgin's father, who having conſulted his wife, returns an anſwer immediately to the propoſal: if it be rejected, the lover and his father retire without more words; but if the offer be approved by the old folks, the damſel is called and acquainted, that they have provided a huſband for her; as ſhe muſt ſubmit to their determination, unleſs ſhe can hold her lover at arms end, after a night's ſtruggling; for we are told, that when the parents are agreed, the two young people are put together, and if the virgin loſes her maidenhead, ſhe muſt have the young fellow, though ſhe be never ſo averſe to the match: but then ſhe is permitted to pinch and ſcratch, and defend herſelf as well as ſhe can; and if ſhe holds out till morning, the lover returns without his miſtreſs, and makes no further attempts; but if he ſubdues her, ſhe is his wife to all intents and purpoſes, without further ceremony; and the next day the man kills a fat ox, or more, according to his circumſtances, for the wedding dinner, and the entertainment of their friends, who reſort to them upon the occaſion, bringing abundance of good wiſhes for the happineſs of the married couple, as is uſual among politer people. The ox is no ſooner killed, but the company get each ſome of the fat, and greaſe themſelves with it from head to foot, powdering themſelves afterwards with buchu, and the women, to add to their charms, make red ſpots with oker, or red chalk, on their black faces. The entertainment being ready, the men form a circle in the area of the kraal (for a large company cannot ſit within doors) and the women form another; the bridegroom ſitting in the middle of the mens circle, and the bride in the center of her own ſex. Then the prieſt enters the men's circle, and urines upon the bridegroom, which the young man rubs in very joyfully. He then goes to the ladies circle, where he does the bride the ſame favour. Then the old man goes from the bride to the bridegroom, till he has exhauſted all his ſtore. The prieſt then pronounces his benediction in theſe words: "That they may live long and happily together; that they may have a ſon before the end of the year; and that he may



Portrait of A MAN of PRINCE WILLIAM's SOUND.



Portrait of A WOMAN of PRINCE WILLIAM's SOUND.

Page sculp.

Publish'd by Alex. Hogg, King's Arms, No 16 Paternoster Row.

BRITISH
7 FE 90
MUSEUM

prove a brave man, and an expert huntſman, and the like." After which, the meat is ſerved up in earthen pots glazed with greaſe; and ſome of them having knives ſince the Europeans came amongſt them, they divide their meat pretty decently; but more of them make uſe of their teeth and claws, pulling it to pieces, and eating it as voraciouſly as ſo many dogs, having no other plates or napkins than the ſtinking corners of the napkins they wear; the ſea ſhells without handles uſually ſerve them for ſpoons. When they have dined a pipe is filled with tobacco, which they ſmoke all round, every one taking two or three whiffs, and then handing it to the next. It is ſingular, that though the Hottentots are immoderately fond of ſpirituous liquors, muſic and dancing, yet they do not drink the firſt, nor practiſe the latter at weddings.

The Hottentots allow of polygamy; but ſeldom have more than three wives at a time; and it ſeems it is death to marry or lie with a firſt or ſecond couſin, or any near relation. A father ſeldom gives his ſon more than two or three cows, and as many ſheep, upon his marriage, and with theſe he muſt make his way in the world; and we do not find they give more with their daughters than a cow, or a couple of ſheep; but the latter are to be returned to the father, if the bride dies without having had any children: on the contrary, if ſhe ever bore any children to her huſband, the portion becomes his, even though the children are defunct. They do not leave their daughters, or younger ſons, any thing when they die; but all the children depend upon the eldeſt brother, and are his ſervants, or rather ſlaves, when the father is dead, unleſs the elder brother infranchiſe them; nor has the mother any thing to ſubſiſt on, but what the eldeſt ſon allows her. There being no great fortunes among them, they match purely for love; an agreeable companion is all their greateſt men aim at: their chiefs intermarry frequently with the pooreſt man's daughter; and a brave fellow, who has no fortune, does not deſpair of matching with the daughter of a prince. A widow, who marries a ſecond time, is obliged to cut off a joint of one of her fingers; and ſo for every huſband ſhe marries after the firſt. Either man or woman may be divorced, on ſhewing ſufficient cauſe before the captain and the reſt of the kraal; the woman, however, muſt not marry again, though the man is allowed to marry, and have as many wives as he pleaſes at the ſame time. A young Hottentot never is maſter of a hut or tent till he marries, unleſs his father dies and leaves him one: therefore the firſt buſineſs the bride and bridegroom apply themſelves to, after their marriage feaſt, is to erect a tent or hut of all new materials, in which work the woman has as great a ſhare as the man; and this taking them up about a week's time, the new married couple are entertained in the mean time in the tents of ſome of their relations. When they reſort to their new apartment, and come to keep houſe together, the wife ſeems to have much the greateſt ſhare of the trouble of it: ſhe fodders the cattle, milks them, cuts out the firing, ſearches every morning for roots for their food, brings them home, and boils or broils them, while the drone of a huſband lies indolently at home, and will ſcarce give himſelf the trouble of getting up to eat when the food is provided for him by the drudge his wife. The more wives he has, ſtill the more indolent life he leads, the care of making proviſion for the family being thrown upon them. It is ſaid he will, in his turn, attend his cattle in the field; but expects every one of his wives ſhould do, at leaſt, as much towards taking care of them as he does. He will alſo, ſometimes, but very rarely, go a hunting with the men of his kraal, and bring home a piece of veniſon, or a diſh of fiſh; but this is not often; and if he is of any handicraft trade, he may work at it two or three hours in a week, and inſtruct his children in the art. He alſo takes upon him to ſell his cattle, and purchaſe tobacco, and ſtrong liquors of the Dutch, with neceſſary tools, beads and other ornaments, for which the Hottentots barter away their cattle: their wives are not permitted to intermeddle in the buſineſs of buying and ſelling, this being the ſole prerogative of the man. When a woman brings a living ſon into the world, there is great rejoicing; but the firſt thing they do with the child, is to daub it all over with cow-dung; then they lay it before the fire, or in the ſun, till the dung is dried; after which they rub it off, and waſh the child with the juice of certain herbs, laying it in the ſun, or before the fire again, till the liquor is dried in, after which they anoint the child from head to foot with butter, or ſheeps fat melted, which is dried in as the juice was: and this cuſtom of anointing their bodies with fat, they retain afterwards as long as they live. After the child has been thus ſmeared and greaſed, the mother gives it what name ſhe thinks proper, which is uſually the name of ſome wild beaſt, or domeſtic animal. When the woman is well again, and able to leave her hut, ſhe rubs herſelf all over with cow-dung; and this filthy daubing is by theſe delicate people termed a purification. Being thus delightfully perfumed, and elegantly decorated with ſheep's guts, ſhe is permitted to go abroad, or to ſee company at home.

If the woman has twins, and they are girls, the man propoſes it to the kraal, that he may expoſe one of them, either upon pretence of poverty, or that his wife has not milk for them both; and this they uſually indulge one another in; they do the ſame when they have a boy or girl; but always preſerve the boys, though they happen to have two at a birth. The expoſed child is carried to a diſtance from the kraal; and if they can find a cave or hole in the earth, that ſome wild beaſt has made, they put the child alive into it; and then having ſtopped up the mouth of the den with ſtones or earth, leave it there to ſtarve: if they cannot meet ſuch a cavity, they tie the infant to the lower bough of a tree, or leave it in ſome thicket of buſhes, where it is frequently deſtroyed by wild beaſts. They do not deal thus, however, as has been obſerved, by their male children: on the birth of a boy, they kill a bullock; and if they have twins, two bullocks; and make an entertainment for all the neighbourhood, who congratulate the parents on their good fortune; and, as with us, the greateſt rejoicings are on the birth of the firſt ſon.

The males, at about ten years of age, are always deprived of their left teſticle; the operation is performed with a dexterity that would ſurprize an European ſurgeon, and bad conſequences are ſeldom or never known to enſue. A ſheep is killed, and great rejoicings are made upon the occaſion; but it is to be obſerved, that the men devour all the meat, and allow the women nothing but the broth. The reaſon of this abſurd cuſtom of mutilating their male youth is unknown; ſome of the Hottentots ſay, it is to make them run ſwift; but the greateſt part of theſe people give their general reaſon, which they uſe upon all occaſions, when they are unable to account for any of their abſurd practices; namely, That it is the Hottentot cuſtom; and has been practiſed by their anceſtors time immemorial. At the age of eighteen, the male Hottentots, being deemed men, are admitted into male ſociety: the men of the village (if it may be ſo called) ſquat down, and form a circle, as is uſual upon moſt public occaſions, the youth ſquats down without the circle, at ſome diſtance. The oldeſt man of the kraal then riſes from the circle, and, having obtained the general conſent for the admiſſion of a new member, he goes to the youth, acquaints him with the determination of the men of the kraal, and concludes his harangue with ſome verſes, which admoniſh him to behave like a man for the future. The youth being then daubed with ſoot and fat, and well ſprinkled with urine, is congratulated by the company in general in a kind of chorus, which contains the following wiſhes: that good fortune may attend him, that he may live long, and thrive daily; that he may ſoon have a beard, and many children; till it is univerſally allowed he is a uſeful man to the nation. A feaſt concludes the ceremony; but the youth himſelf is not permitted to participate of any part thereof till all the reſt are ſerved. Having been thus admitted into male ſociety, it is expected that he ſhould behave ill to women in general, and to his mother in particular, in order to evince his contempt of every thing feminine. Indeed it is uſual for a youth as ſoon as admitted, to go to his mother's hut, and cudgel her heartily, for which he is highly applauded by the whole kraal; and even the ſuffering parent herſelf admires him for his ſpirit, and proteſts that the blows do not give her ſo much pain, as the thoughts of having brought ſuch a mettleſome ſon into the world afford her pleaſure. The more ill treatment he gives his mother, the more eſteem he obtains; and every time he ſtrikes her ſhe is in the higheſt raptures, and thanks providence for having bleſſed her with ſuch a ſpirited child. So egregiouſly will cuſtom counteract the very dictates of nature, and impoſe upon the underſtanding of the ignorant.

It may be proper now to ſay ſomething of thoſe officers amongſt them, which the Europeans generally denominate their prieſts. Theſe perſons are called ſurri or maſter, and are elected by every kraal: they are the men who perform the ceremony of making water at their weddings, and other feſtivals; the ſurri alſo is the perſon who extracts the left teſticle from the young males at eight years of age; for all which he has no ſtated revenue, but a preſent now and then of a calf or a lamb, and makes one at all their entertainments. Every kraal alſo has its phyſician, as well as its prieſt, who are perſons that have ſome ſkill in phyſic and ſurgery, and particularly in the virtues of ſalutary herbs: theſe alſo are choſen by a majority of voices, and make it their buſineſs to look after the people's health; but have no other reward neither for their pains, than voluntary preſents. And ſuch is the opinion of the Hottentots of theſe phyſicians, that, if they cannot effect a cure, they conclude they are certainly bewitched; as the doctor himſelf alſo never fails to give out: whereupon application is made to ſome pretended conjurer for relief: and if the patient happens to recover, it gives the cunning man, as we call him, a mighty reputation. The phyſician and ſurgeon, as has been hinted, is the ſame perſon; and though theſe gentlemen ſcarce ever ſaw a body diſſected, it is ſaid, they have pretty good notions of anatomy: they cup, bleed, make amputations, and reſtore diſlocated limbs with great dexterity: cholicks and pains in the ſtomach they relieve by cupping. Their cup is an horn of an ox, the edges cut very ſmooth: the doctor, having ſucked the part where the pain lies, claps on the cup; and, after it has remained ſome time, till he thinks the part is inſenſible, he pulls off the horn-cup, and makes two or three inciſions, half an inch in length, with a common knife, having no other inſtrument: after which, he applies the cup again, which falls off when it is full of blood, but the patient, it is ſaid, ſuffers great pain in the operation. If the pain removes to another part, they rub it with hot fat; and, if that does not eaſe the pain, they uſe the cup again on the part laſt affected; and, if the ſecond cupping does not relieve the patient, they give him inward medicines, being infuſions or powders of certain dried roots and herbs. They let blood in plethories and indiſpoſitions of that kind, having no other inſtrument than a common knife; and if bleeding will not effect the cure, they give the patient phyſic. For headachs, which they are pretty much ſubject to in calm weather, they ſhave their heads in furrows, as they do when they are in mourning; but a briſk gale of wind uſually carries off the head ach, without any other application; and this they do not often want at the cape. They ſeldom make any other amputations, than of the fingers of ſuch women as marry a ſecond time, or oftener: and, in this caſe, they bind the joint below that which is to be cut off very tight, with a dried ſinew, and then cut off the joint at once with a knife, ſtopping the blood with the juice of myrrh-leaves; after which, they wrap up the finger in ſome healing herbs, and never any part of the finger receives any hurt beyond the amputation. They have little or no ſkill in ſetting fractured limbs; but are pretty dexterous at reſtoring of diſlocations.

The Hottentot phyſician, in caſe he meets with a foul ſtomach, gives the juice of aloe leaves; and, if one doſe will not do, repeats it two or three days; and, for any inward ail, they give chiefly the powders, or infuſions of wild ſage, wild figs and fig leaves, buchu, garlic or fennel; but, whatever the diſeaſe be, it ſeems the patient never fails to ſacrifice a bullock, or a ſheep, upon his recovery.

The Hottentots are exceedingly ſuperſtitious, and fond of divination. In order to know the fate of a ſick perſon, they flay a ſheep alive: after having its ſkin intirely taken off, if the poor animal is able to get up and run away, it is deemed a propitious omen; but, on the contrary, if the excruciating pain kills it, they imagine that the patient will certainly die, and accordingly give him up intirely to nature, without taking any further care of him.

Whatever they believe of departed ſouls, they have no notion either of heaven or hell, or of a ſtate of rewards or puniſhments; this is evident from the behaviour of a dying Hottentot, and thoſe about him; neither he nor his friends offer up any prayers to their gods for the ſalvation of his ſoul; or even mention the ſtate of departed ſouls, or their apprehenſions of his being happy or miſerable after death: however, they ſet up terrible howlings and ſhriekings, when the ſick man is in his laſt agonies; and yet theſe very people are frequently guilty of murdering their antient parents, as well as their innocent children; for when the father of a family is become perfectly uſeleſs and ſuperannuated, he is obliged to aſſign over his ſtock of cattle, and every thing elſe he has in the world, to his eldeſt ſon; and in default of ſons, to his next heir male: after which, the heir erects a tent or hut in ſome unfrequented place, a good diſtance from the kraal or camp he belongs to; and, having aſſembled the men of the kraal, acquaints them with the condition of his ſuperannuated relation, and deſires their conſent to expoſe him in the diſtant hut; to which the kraal ſcarce ever refuſe their conſent. Whereupon a day being appointed to carry the old man to the ſolitary tent, the heir kills an ox, and two or three ſheep, and invites the whole village to feaſt and be merry with him; and at the end of the entertainment, all the neighbourhood come and take a formal leave of the old wretch, thus condemned to be ſtarved or devoured by wild beaſts: then the unfortunate creature is laid upon one of their carriage oxen, and carried to his laſt home, attended to the place, where he is to be buried alive by moſt of his neighbours. The old man being taken down, and ſet in the middle of the hut provided for him, the company return to their kraal, and he never ſees the face of a human creature afterwards; they never ſo much as enquire whether he was ſtarved to death, or devoured by wild beaſts: he is no more thought of, than if he had never been. In the ſame manner they deal with a ſuperannuated mother; only as ſhe has nothing ſhe can call her own, ſhe has not the trouble of aſſigning her effects to her ſon. Whenever the Hottentots are upbraided with this unparallelled piece of barbarity, they reply, it would be a much greater cruelty to ſuffer an old creature to languiſh out a miſerable life, and to be many years a dying, than to make this quick diſpatch with them; and that it is out of their extreme tenderneſs they put an end to the lives of theſe old wretches; all the arguments in the world againſt the inhumanity of the cuſtom, can make no impreſſion on them: and, indeed, as long as the Dutch have reſided at the cape, they have not been able to break them of one ſingle cuſtom, or prevail with them to alter any part of their conduct, how barbarous or abſurd ſoever: and, it ſeems, the captain of a kraal is not exempted from ſeeing his funeral ſolemnized in this manner, while he is alive, if he happens to become uſeleſs. And this leads us to treat of ſuch funerals as are ſolemnized after the perſon is really dead.

The ſick man, having reſigned his breath, is immediately bundled up, neck and heels together, in his ſheep-ſkin mantle, exceeding cloſe, ſo that no part of the corpſe appears: then the captain of the kraal, with ſome of the ſeniors, ſearch the neighbouring country for ſome cavity in a rock, or the den of a wild beaſt, to bury it in, never digging a grave, if they can find one of theſe within a moderate diſtance. After which the whole kraal, men and women, prepare to attend the corpſe, ſeldom permitting it to remain above ground more than ſix hours. When all things are ready, all the neighbourhood aſſemble before the door of the deceaſed, the men ſitting down on their heels in one circle, and reſting their elbows on their knees (their uſual poſture) as the women do in another: here they clap their hands, and howl, crying, Bo, bo, bo! (i. e. father) lamenting their loſs. The corpſe being then brought out on that ſide the tent, where the perſon died, and not at the door, the bearers carry him in their arms to the grave, the men and women follow it in different parties, but without any manner of order, crying all the way, Bo, bo, bo! and wringing their hands, and performing a thouſand ridiculous geſtures and grimaces, which is frequently the ſubject of the Dutchmen's mirth; it being impoſſible, it is ſaid, to forbear laughing at the antic tricks they ſhew on ſuch an occaſion. Having put the corpſe into the cavity prepared for it, they ſtop up the mouth of it with ant hills, ſtones, and pieces of wood, believing the ants will feed on the corpſe, and ſoon conſume it. The grave being ſtopped up, the men and women rendezvous again before the tent of the deceaſed, where they repeat their howling. and frequently call upon the name of their departed friend: after which two of the oldeſt men get up; and one of them going into the circle of the men, and the other into the circle of the women, urine upon every one of the company; and, where the kraals are ſo very large, that two cannot find water enough for this ceremony, they double or treble the number. Then the old men go into the tent of the deceaſed; and, having taken up ſome aſhes from the fire-place, they ſprinkle them upon the bodies of the people, bleſſing them as they go: and if the deceaſed was a perſon of diſtinction, this is acted over again ſeveral days. But we ſhould have remembered, that the ceremony always concludes with an entertainment. If the deceaſed had any cattle, a ſheep is killed on the occaſion; and the caul being powdered with buchu, is tied about the heir's neck, who is forced to wear it while it rots off, which is no great penance, all ſtinks being perfumes to a Hottentot. All the relations alſo wear the cauls of ſheep about their necks; which it ſeems is their mourning, unleſs the children of the deceaſed are ſo poor, that they cannot kill a ſheep; and then they ſhave their heads in furrows of about an inch broad, leaving the hair on of the ſame breadth between every furrow.

It is not an eaſy matter to come at a Hottentot's religious notions, he is ſparing of his words, and laconic in his anſwers upon all occaſions; but when religious topics are introduced, he generally conceals his ſentiments in ſilence. Some on this account have doubted whether the Hottentots have any religion at all: but the moſt intelligent among the Dutch at the cape poſitively affirm, that they believe in a Supreme Being, whom they ſtile Gounya Taquoa, or God of gods, and fancy that his place of reſidence is beyond the moon. They allow that Gounya Taquoa is a humane benevolent being, yet they have no mode of worſhipping him; for which they give this reaſon, "That he curſed their firſt parents for having greatly offended him, on which account their poſterity have never from that time paid him adoration." They believe that the moon is an inferior viſible god, and the repreſentative of the high and inviſible: that ſhe has the direction of the weather; and therefore they pray to her when it is unſeaſonable. They never fail to aſſemble and worſhip this planet at the new and full moon, let the weather be never ſo bad; and though they diſtort their bodies, grin and put on very frightful looks, crying and howling in a terrible manner, yet they have ſome expreſſions that ſhew their veneration and dependance on this inferior deity; as, 'Mutſchi Atze, I ſalute you; you are welcome: Cheraqua kaka chori Ounqua, grant us paſture for our cattle and plenty of milk.' Theſe and other prayers to the moon they repeat, frequently dancing and clapping their hands all the while; and, at the end of every dance, crying, Ho, ho, ho, ho! raiſing and falling their voices, and uſing abundance of odd geſtures, that appear ridiculous to European ſpectators; and which no doubt, made them at firſt, before they knew any thing of their language, conclude, that this could not be the effect of devotion, eſpecially when the people themſelves told them, it was not an act of religion, but only intended for their diverſion. They continue thus ſhouting, ſinging and dancing, with proſtrations on the earth, the whole night, and even part of the next day, with ſome ſhort intervals, never reſting, unleſs they are quite ſpent with the violence of the action; and then they ſquat down upon their heels, holding their heads between their hands, and reſting their elbows on their knees; and, after a little time, they ſtart up again, and falling to ſinging and dancing in a circle as before, with all their might.

The Hottentots alſo adore a fly about the bigneſs of a hornet, called by ſome the gold beetle: whenever they ſee this inſect approach their kraal, they all aſſemble about it, and ſing and dance round it while it remains there, ſtrewing over it the powder of buchu, by botaniſts called ſpiræam; which when it is dried and pulverized, they always powder themſelves with it at feſtivals. They ſtrew the ſame powder alſo over the tops of their tents, and over the whole area of the kraal, as a teſtimony of their veneration for the adored fly. They ſacrifice alſo two ſheep as a thankſgiving for the favour ſhewn their kraal, believing they ſhall certainly proſper after ſuch a viſit; and, if this inſect happens to light upon a tent, they look upon the owner of it for the future as a ſaint, and pay him more than uſual reſpect. The beſt ox of the kraal alſo is immediately ſacrificed, to teſtify their gratitude to the little winged deity, and to honour the ſaint he has been pleaſed thus to diſtinguiſh: to whom the entrails of the beaſt, the choiceſt morſel in their opinion, with the fat and the caul is preſented; and the caul being twiſted like a rope, the ſaint ever after wears it like a collar about his neck day and night, till it putrifies and rots off; and the ſaint only feaſts upon the entrails of the beaſt, while the reſt of the kraal feed upon the joints, that are not in ſo high eſteem among them: with the fat of the ſacrifice alſo the ſaint anoints his body from time to time, till it is all ſpent; and, if the fly lights upon a woman ſhe is no leſs reverenced by the neighbourhood, and entitled to the like privileges. It is ſcarce poſſible to expreſs the agonies the Hottentots are in, if any European attempts to take or kill one of theſe inſects, as the Dutch will ſometimes ſeem to attempt, to put them in a fright: they will beg and pray, and fall proſtrate on the ground, to procure the liberty of this little creature, if it falls into a Dutchman's hands; they are, on ſuch an occaſion, in no leſs conſternation than the Indians near Fort St. George, when the kite, with a white head, which they worſhip, is in danger. If a ſoldier takes one of theſe alive, and threatens to wring the neck of it off, the Indians will gather in crowds about him, and immediately collect the value of a ſhilling or two, to purchaſe the liberty of the captive bird they adore. But to return to the Hottentots: they imagine if this little deity ſhould be killed, all the cattle would die of diſeaſes, or be deſtroyed by wild beaſts; and they themſelves ſhould be the moſt miſerable of men, and look upon that kraal to be doomed to ſome imminent misfortune, where this animal ſeldom appears.

The Hollanders have ſent ſeveral reverend divines to the cape as miſſionaries, who have ſpared no pains to bring the Hottentots off from their idolatry, and induce them to embrace Chriſtianity; even their covetouſneſs and ambition have been applied to, and temporal rewards offered them, on condition of their being inſtructed in the principles of Chriſtianity. But no motives whatever, whether thoſe relating to this or another ſtate, have yet been able to make the leaſt impreſſion on any one of them: they hold faſt and hug their ancient ſuperſtitions, and will hear of no other religion. The reaſon that they neither imitate the Europeans in their building, planting or cloathing, is becauſe they imagine themſelves to be religiouſly obliged to follow the cuſtoms of their anceſtors; and that, if they ſhould deviate from them in the leaſt of theſe matters, it might make way for a total change of their religion and manners, which they cannot think of without abhorrence. One of the Dutch governors at the cape bred up an Hottentot from his infancy, obliging him to follow the faſhions and cuſtoms of the Europeans, to be taught ſeveral languages, and to be fully inſtructed in the principles of the Chriſtian religion, cloathing him handſomely, and treating him, in all reſpects, as a perſon for whom he had a high eſteem; and let him know, that he deſigned him for ſome beneficial and honourable employment. The governor afterwards ſent him a voyage to Batavia, where he was employed, under the commiſſary his friend, for ſome time, till that gentleman died; and then he returned to the cape of Good Hope: but, having paid a viſit to the Hottentots of his relations and acquaintance, he threw off all his fine clothes, bundled them up, and laid them at the governor's feet, and deſired he would give him leave to renounce his Chriſtianity, and live and die in the religion and cuſtoms of his anceſtors: only begged the governor would give him leave to keep the hanger and collar he wore for his ſake; which while the governor was deliberating with himſelf upon, ſcarce believing the fellow to be in earneſt, the young Hottentot took the opportunity of running away, and never came near the cape afterwards, thinking himſelf extremely happy that he had exchanged his European cloaths for a ſheep ſkin and the reſt of the Hottentots dreſs and ornaments: the Engliſh Eaſt India company, we are informed, made the like experiment, bringing over two of that nation hither, whom they cloathed decently after the European manner, and uſed them, in all reſpects, with the greateſt goodneſs and gentleneſs, hoping, by that means, to be better informed of the condition of their country, and whether it might be worth the while to make a ſettlement there: but the two Hottentots only learnt Engliſh enough to bewail their misfortune in being brought from their country and their friends; and, after two years trial of them, being again ſet on ſhore at the cape, they immediately ſtripped off their European clothes, and, having taken up the ſheep ſkin mantle again, rejoiced beyond meaſure for their happy eſcape from the Engliſh.

The poor Hottentots ſometimes employ themſelves in making arms, viz. bows and arrows, lances and darts, bartering them with the rich for cattle, to begin the world with: others get elephants teeth, and what they do not uſe in making rings and ornaments for themſelves, are generally diſpoſed of, it is thought, to the Portugueſe and other Europeans, who touch at Terra de Natal, and other parts of the eaſtern or weſtern coaſt. The Hottentots ſell very few teeth to the Dutch; though it is manifeſt they kill abundance of elephants: they ſupply the Hollanders however with cattle, and take wine, brandy or tobacco, in return; and an ox may be purchaſed of them for a pound of tobacco, and a large ſheep for half a pound. As to coin, the reader will conclude they have none; nor do they ever ſee any, unleſs ſome ſmall pieces of money the Dutch ſometimes give them for their wages at the cape; and it muſt not be forgot, than the Hottentots find abundance of oſtrich's eggs in the ſand, which they barter with the ſea-faring men, that touch at the cape, for brandy and tobacco; every ſailor almoſt being proud of bringing home one of theſe egg ſhells to his friends, after he has fried and eaten the yolk, which makes a large pancake, and is pretty good food, but rather of the ſtrongeſt.

Their butchers are ſaid to be great artiſts in their way, and to handle a knife as dexterouſly as an anatomiſt: having tied the hind and fore legs of a ſheep, they throw the creature on his back, and with cords, two of them extend it to its full ſtretch, while a third rips it up; ſo that all the entrails appear: then, with one hand, he tears the guts from the carcaſe, and, with the other, ſtirs the blood, avoiding as much as he can the breaking any of the blood-veſſels about the heart; ſo that the ſheep is a long time a dying: in the mean time he gives the guts to another, who juſt rids them of the filth, and rinces them in water, and part of them are broiled and eaten amongſt them, before the ſheep is well dead: having ſcooped the blood out of the body of the animal with their hands or ſea ſhells, they cut the reſt of the guts in ſmall pieces, and ſtew them in the blood, which is the Hottentots favourite diſh. An ox alſo is killed in the ſame barbarous manner; being thrown upon his back, and his legs extended with cords, he is ripped up, and his guts taken out firſt; in which cruel operation the beaſt is half an hour a dying: they ſeparate the parts with great exactneſs, dividing the fleſh, the bones, the membranes, muſcles, veins, and arteries, and laying them in ſeveral parcels every thing entire. The bones alſo are taken out of the fleſh, and laid together in ſuch order, that they might be eaſily formed into an exact ſkeleton: theſe they boil by themſelves, and get the marrow out of them, with which they anoint their bodies. Of the ſheep ſkin, as has been obſerved already, they make a mantle, if it be large: but, if it is ſmall, they cut it into thongs, to adorn their women's legs: and the hide of an ox ſerves either to cover their tents, or to make girts and ſtraps of, with which they bind their baggage on their carriage oxen when they decamp; and, if they have no other uſe for their ox-hides, they lay them by, and eat them when they want other food.

They have another artificer, who is both felmonger and taylor: that is, he dreſſes ſkins after their way, and then makes them into mantles: he takes a ſheep ſkin juſt flayed off, and, rubbing it well with fat, the ſkin becomes tough and ſmooth; and, if it be for one of his countrymen, he rubs it over alſo with freſh cow-dung, and lays it in the ſun till it is dry: then he rubs it with fat and cow dung again; which he repeats ſeveral times, till it becomes perfectly black, and ſtinks ſo, that no European can bear it; and then, with a little ſhaping and ſewing, it is a complete mantle for a Hottentot: but, if it be dreſſed for a Dutchman, he only rubs the ſkin well with fat, which ſecures the wool from coming off. If he be to dreſs an ox's hide, he rubs the hairy ſide with wood aſhes; then ſprinkling it with water, rolls it up, and lays it a day or two in the ſun; which expedients effectually bring off the hair; this ſkin is then well greaſed, ſtretched out, and dried again, when it is deemed good leather.

Their ſmiths do not only faſhion their iron, but melt it from the ore: they find plenty of iron ſtones in ſeveral parts of their country; and having got a heap of theſe, they put them into a hole in the ground, heated and prepared for their purpoſe: then they make a fire over the ſtones, which they ſupply with fuel, and keep up till the iron melts: and then it runs into another hole, which they make for a receiver, a little lower than the firſt: as ſoon as the iron in the receiver is cold they break it to pieces with ſtones; and, heating the pieces again in other fires, beat them with ſtones, till they ſhape them into the heads of lances, darts, arrows, and bows, and ſuch weapons as they uſe; for they ſcarce ever form any other utenſils, but arms of this metal: they get the hardeſt flat ſtone, according to monſieur Vogel, and, laying the iron upon it, as upon an anvil, beat it with another round ſtone, which ſerves them for a hammer; then they grind it upon the flat ſtone, and poliſh it as nicely as any European artificer could do with all his tools: they have ſome copper ore too, which they melt in like manner; but they make only toys and ornaments for their dreſs of this metal: nor, indeed, do they ever work in iron, but when they want weapons. They would never labour, if their neceſſities did not ſometimes compel them to it: but, when they do, no people work harder, or more indefatigably; for they never leave a piece of work, till they have finiſhed it.

The ivory-turner makes the ivory rings that are worn ornamentally about the arms; and conſidering that his only tool is a common claſp knife, which he procures from the Dutch, the workmanſhip has great merit.

The potter or maker of earthen veſſels is another art; but this, it ſeems, they are all dexterous at, every family making the pots and pans they want. For theſe they uſe only the earth of ant-hills, clearing them of all ſand and gravel; after which, they work it together with the bruiſed ant-eggs, that are ſaid to conſtitute an extraordinary cement. When they have moulded theſe materials into a kind of paſte, they take as much of them as will make one of their pots, and faſhion it by hand upon a flat ſtone, making it of the form of a Roman urn; then they ſmooth it within and without very carefully, not leaving the leaſt roughneſs upon the ſurface; and having dried it in the ſun two or three days, they put the pot into a hole in the ground, and burn it, by making a fire over it; and, when they take it out, it appears perfectly black: every family alſo make their own mats, with which they cover their tents or huts; but this is chiefly the buſineſs of the women: they gather the flags and ruſhes by the river ſide, or weave or plat them into mats ſo cloſely, it is ſaid, that neither the weather or light can penetrate them.

The laſt artificer we ſhall mention is the rope-maker, who has no better materials, than ſuch flags and ruſhes as the mats are made of; and yet they appear almoſt as ſtrong as thoſe made of hemp: the Dutch, at the cape, buy and uſe them in ploughing, and in draught-carriages.

As to the way of travelling here, the natives all travel on foot, except the aged and infirm; and theſe are carried on their baggage oxen. As there are no inns or places for refreſhment, the travelling Hottentot calls at the kraals in his way, where he meets with a hearty welcome from his countrymen, who endeavour to ſhew their hoſpitality to ſtrangers, whether of their own country or of Europe. Such indeed is the general urbanity of theſe people, and their ſtrict integrity when any confidence is placed in them, that when the Hollanders travel either on foot or horſeback, if they cannot reach an European ſettlement, they alſo call at the kraals of the Hottentots, where they are complimented with a hut, and ſuch proviſion as they have, or they may lie in the area of the kraal, in the open air, if they pleaſe, and the weather be good; and here they are ſecure both from robbers and wild beaſts; for the buſhis banditti on the mountains are dangerous, as they give no quarter; but the Hottentot nations in general hold them in abhorrence, and unanimouſly concur in ſeizing and puniſhing them upon all occaſions.

Their language is very inarticulate and defective; one word ſignifies ſeveral things, the definitive meaning being determined by the manner of pronouncing; and the pronunciation is ſo harſh and confuſed, that they ſeem to ſtammer in all they ſpeak. Hence, though they are eaſily taught to underſtand other languages, they can ſeldom be brought to ſpeak them with any degree of intelligibility.

We ſhall here ſubjoin a ſmall Hottentot vocabulary, for the ſatisfaction of the curious; khauna, ſignifies a lamb; kgou, a gooſe; bunqvaa, trees; knomm, to hear; quaqua, a pheaſant; tkaka, a whale; horri, beaſts in general; knabou, a fowling piece; qua-araho, a wild ox; ounequa, the arms; quienkha, to fall; likhanee, a dog; konkequa, a captain; quas, the neck; quan, the heart; kgoyes, a buck or doe; tikquoa, a god; komma, a houſe; khoaa, a cat; kowkuri, iron; konkekerey, a hen; thoukou, a dark night; tkoume, rice; ghoudie, a ſheep; toya, the wind; ttkaa, a valley; tkaonoklau, gunpowder; kamkamma, the earth; quaouw, thunder; duckatere, a duck; kamma, water; quayha, an aſs; naew, the ears; kirri, a ſtick; nombha, the beard; ka-a, to drink; durieſa, an ox; hek-kaa, an ox of burden; ounvie, butter; houteo, a ſea dog: bikgua, the head; kamma, a ſtag: kouquil, a pigeon; anthuri, to-morrow; kou, a tooth; khamouna, the devil; hakqua, a horſe; koo, a ſon; kammo, a ſtream; rika, graſs; toqua, a wolf; koanqua, the mouth; khou, a peacock; gona, a boy; gois, a girl; khoakamma, a baboon; kerhanehou, a ſtar; mu, an eye: tquaſſouw, a tyger.

The Hottentots have only ten numerical terms, which they repeat twice to expreſs the multiplication of the firſt term, and three times to expreſs the re-multiplication of the latter. Their terms are: q'kui, one k'kam, two; kouna, three; kakka, four; koo, five; nanni, ſix; kounko, ſeven; khiſſi, eight; khaſſi, nine; ghiſſi, ten.

Thus have we given a circumſtantial and full account of the cape, its inhabitants, productions and adjacent country; from whence the French, at Mauritius, are ſupplied by the Dutch with ſalted beef, biſcuit, flour, and wine: the proviſions for which the French contracted this year were five hundred thouſand lb. weight of ſalt beef, four hundred thouſand lb. of flour; four hundred thouſand lb. of biſcuit, and one thouſand two hundred leagers of wine. We have only to add to this account a few obſervations on the bay, and garriſon. The former is large, ſafe, and exceeding convenient. It is indeed open to the N. W. winds, but they ſeldom blow hard; yet as they ſometimes occaſion a great ſea, the ſhips moor N. E. and S. W. The S. E. winds blow frequently with great fury, but their direction being right out of the bay prevents them from being dangerous. For the convenience of landing and ſhipping goods, a wharf of wood is run out near the town, to a proper diſtance. Water is conveyed in pipes to this wharf, and many large boats and hoys are kept by the Company to carry ſtores and proviſions to and from the ſhipping in the harbour. This bay is covered by a ſmall fort on the E. ſide of the town, and cloſe to the beach; and is alſo defended by ſeveral outworks and batteries extending along the ſhore, as well on this ſide of the town as the other; nevertheleſs they are by their ſituation expoſed to the ſhipping, and in a manner defeneeleſs againſt an enemy of any force by land. As to the garriſon, this conſiſts of eight hundred regular troops, beſides militia of the country, in which laſt is comprehended every man able to bear arms. By ſignals they can alarm the country in a very ſhort time, and when theſe are made, the militia is to repair immediately to their place of rendezvous in the town.

On Sunday, the 14th of April in the morning, we weighed, ſtood out of the bay, and anchored at five in the evening under Penguin, or Robin Iſland. Here we lay all night, and being prevented from ſailing by the wind, the Captain diſpatched a boat to the iſland for a few trifling articles, which we had omitted to take in at the Cape: when our people drew near the ſhore, they were warned by the Dutch not to land at their peril. At the ſame time ſix men, armed with muſquets, paraded upon the beach. The commanding officer in the boat did not think it prudent to riſk the lives of his men, on account of a few cabbages, and therefore returned without them to the ſhip. To this iſland the Dutch at the Cape baniſh ſuch criminals as are not thought worthy of death, for a certain number of years, according to the nature of their crimes. They are employed as ſlaves in digging lime-ſtone, which though ſcarce upon the continent is here in great abundance. A Daniſh ſhip touched at this iſland, having been refuſed aſſiſtance at the Cape, and ſending her boat on ſhore, overpowered the guard, and then took as many of the criminals as were neceſſary to navigate her home; for ſhe had loſt great part of her crew by ſickneſs. To this incident we attributed our repulſe; concluding, that the Dutch to prevent a ſimilar reſcue of their priſoners, had ordered their garriſon at this place, not to ſuffer any boat of foreign nations to land the crew, and come aſhore.

On Thurſday the 25th, we put to ſea, and about four o'clock in the afternoon died our maſter, Mr. Robert Mollineux, a youth of good parts, but unhappily for his own ſelf preſervation too much addicted to intemperance, a habit we would caution all thoſe who undertake long voyages to avoid, if they have any regard to their perſonal ſafety. We now continued our voyage without any other remarkable incident; and on Monday the 29th, we croſſed our firſt meridian, having circumnavigated the globe from E. to W. and conſequently loſt a day, for which upon correcting our reckoning at Batavia, we made an allowance. On Monday the 1ſt of May, we came to anchor at break of day, before James's fort in the iſland of St. Helena; and as we propoſed to refreſh here, Mr. Banks employed his time in viſiting the moſt remarkable places, and in ſurveying every object worthy of notice.

St. Helena is ſituated in the Atlantic ocean, in ſix degrees W. longitude, and ſixteen S. latitude, almoſt in the midway between Africa and America, being twelve hundred miles diſtant from the former, and eighteen hundred from the latter. It was ſo named by the Portugueſe, who diſcovered it on St. Helen's day. This iſland is 36 miles long, 18 broad, and about 61 in circumference. It is the ſummit of an immenſe mountain riſing out of the ſea, and of a depth unfathomable at a ſmall diſtance round it. It may be diſcerned at ſea, at above twenty leagues diſtance, and looks like a caſtle in the middle of the ocean, whoſe natural walls are of that height, that there is no ſcaling them. The ſmall valley called Chapel-valley, in a bay on the eaſt ſide of it, is defended by a battery of forty or fifty great guns, planted even with the water; and the waves daſhing perpetually on the ſhore, make it difficult landing even here. There is alſo one little creek beſides, where two or three men may land at a time; but this is now defended by a battery of five or ſix guns, and rendered inacceſſible. No anchorage is to be found any where about the iſland, but at Chapel-valley bay, and as the wind always ſets from the S. E. if a ſhip overſhoots the iſland ever ſo little, ſhe cannot recover it again. The ſeat of volcanoes has been found to be the higheſt part of the countries in which they are found. Hecla is the higheſt hill in Iceland; and the pike of Teneriffe is known to be the covering of ſubterraneous fire. Theſe are ſtill burning; but there are other mountains which bear evident marks of fire that is now extinct: among theſe is St. Helena, where the inequalities of the ground, and its external ſurface, are evidently the effects of the ſinking of the earth; and that this was cauſed by ſubterraneous fire, is equally manifeſt from the ſtones. for ſome of them, eſpecially thoſe in the bottom of the valleys, are burnt almoſt to cinders. This iſland, as the Endeavour approached it on the windward ſide, appeared like a rude heap of rocks, bounded by precipices of an amazing height, and conſiſting of a kind of ſtone, which ſhews not the leaſt ſign of vegetation: nor is it more promiſing upon a nearer view. Sailing along ſhore, we came near the huge cliffs, that ſeemed to overhang the ſhip. At length we opened Chapel-valley, which reſembles a trench, and in this valley we diſcovered the town. The ſides of it are as naked as the cliffs next the ſea; but the bottom is ſlightly cloathed with herbage. In its preſent cultivated ſtate, ſuch appeared the iſland to us; and the firſt hills muſt be paſſed, before the country diſplays its verdure, or any other marks of fertility.

In Chapel-valley, a little beyond the landing place, is a fort where the governor reſides with the garriſon; and the town ſtands juſt by the ſea-ſide. The greater part of the houſes are ill built. The church, which was originally a mean ſtructure, is in ruins; and the market-place nearly in the ſame condition. The town conſiſts of about forty or fifty buildings, conſtructed after the Engliſh faſhion, whither the people of the iſland reſort when any ſhipping appears, as well to aſſiſt in the defence of the iſland, as to entertain the ſeamen if they are friends: for the governor has always ſentinels, on the higheſt part of the iſland, to the windward, who give notice of the approach of all ſhipping, and guns are thereupon fired, that every man may reſort to his poſt. It is impoſſible for an enemy to approach by ſea in the night time, and if diſcovered the day before, preparations are ſpeedily made for his reception.

Notwithſtanding the iſland appears a barren rock on every ſide, yet on the top it is covered with a fine layer of earth, producing grain, fruits, and herbs of various kinds; and the country after we aſcended the rock, is diverſified with riſing hills and plains, plantations of fruit trees and kitchen gardens, among which the houſes of the natives are interſperſed, and in the open fields are herds of cattle grazing, ſome of which are fatted to ſupply the ſhipping, and the reſt furniſh the dairies with milk, butter, and cheeſe. Hogs, goats, turkeys, and all manner of poultry alſo abound, and the ſeas are well ſtored with fiſh. But amidſt all this affluence, the people have neither bread nor wine of their own growth: for though the ſoil is proper for wheat, yet the rats that harbour in the rocks, and cannot be deſtroyed, eat up all the ſeed, before the grain is well out of the ground; and though their vines flouriſh and produce them grapes enough, yet the latitude is too hot for making wine. This they have therefore from the Canaries, the Madeiras, or the Cape, as well as their flour and malt. Their very houſes are ſome of them brought from Europe ready framed, there being no timber on the iſland, trees not taking deep root here on account of the rock that lies ſo near the ſurface: however, they have underwood enough for neceſſary uſes. Beſides grapes, they have plantains, bananas, figs, lemons, and ſuch other fruits as hot countries uſually produce. They alſo raiſe kidney beans, and ſome other kinds of pulſe in their gardens; and the want of bread they ſupply with potatoes and yams.

In the year 1701, there were upon the iſland about two hundred families, moſt of them Engliſh, or deſcended from Engliſh parents. Every family has a houſe and plantation on the higher part of the iſland, where they look after their cattle, fruits, and kitchen garden. They ſcarce ever come down to the town, unleſs it be to church, or when the ſhipping arrive, when moſt of the houſes in the valley are converted into punch-houſes, or lodgings for their gueſts, to whom they ſell their poultry, and other commodities; but they are not ſuffered to purchaſe any merchandize of the ſhips that touch here. Whatever they want of foreign growth or manufacture, they are obliged to buy at the company's warehouſe, where twice every month, they may furniſh themſelves with brandy, European or Cape wines, Batavia arrack, malt, beer, ſugar, tea, coffee, china, and japan-ware, linen, callicoes, chintz, muſlins, ribbands, woollen-cloth and ſtuffs, and all manner of cloathing, for which they are allowed ſix months credit. Among the very few native productions of this iſland muſt be reckoned ebony, though the trees are now nearly extinct. Pieces of this wood are frequently found in the vallies of a fine black colour, and a hardneſs almoſt equal to iron; theſe pieces, however, are ſo ſhort and crooked, that no uſe can be made of them. There are few inſects here, but upon the tops of the higheſt ridges a ſpecies of ſnail is found, which has probably been there ſince the original creation of their kind. It is indeed very difficult to conceive how any thing not formed here, or brought hither by the diligence of man, could find its way to a place ſo ſevered from the reſt of the world, by ſeas of immenſe extent.

The Portugueſe, who diſcovered this iſland in 1502, ſtored it with hogs, goats, and poultry, and uſed to touch at it for water and freſh proviſions in their return from India; but we do not find they ever planted a colony here; or, if they did, having deſerted it afterwards, the Engliſh Eaſt-India Company took poſſeſſion of the iſland A. D. 1600, and held it till 1673, without interruption, when the Dutch took it by ſurprize. However, the Engliſh, commanded by Capt. Munden, recovered it again within the ſpace of a year, and took three Dutch Eaſt India ſhips that lay in the road at the ſame time. The Hollanders had fortified the landing place, and planted batteries of great guns to prevent a deſcent; but the Engliſh being acquainted with a ſmall creek where only two men could go abreaſt, climbed up to the top of the rocks in the night time, and appearing next morning at the backs of the Dutch, they threw down their arms, and ſurrendered the iſland without ſtriking a ſtroke: but, as we have before obſerved, this creek has been ſince fortified: ſo that there is now no place where an enemy can make a deſcent with any probability of ſucceſs.

The affairs of the Eaſt-India Company are managed here by a governor, deputy-governor, and ſtorehouſe-keeper, who have certain ſettled ſalaries allowed, beſides a public table, well furniſhed, to which all commanders,

manders, maſters of ſhips, and eminent paſſengers are welcome. The natives ſometimes call the reſult of their deliberations ſevere impoſitions; and though relief might perhaps be had from the company in England, yet the unavoidable delays in returning anſwers to addreſſes at that diſtance puts the aggrieved under great hardſhips; and on the other hand, was not the ſituation of this iſland very ſerviceable to our homeward-bound Eaſt-India ſhips, the conſtant trouble and expence would induce the company to abandon the iſland; for though it is furniſhed with the conveniencies of life, the merchants find no other profitable commodities there. The maſters of the plantations keep a great many blacks, who, upon ſevere treatment, hide themſelves for two or three months together, keeping among the rocks by day, and roving at night for proviſions: but they are generally diſcovered and taken.

The children and deſcendants of white people have not the leaſt red in their cheeks, in all other places near the tropics; but the natives of St. Helena are remarkable for their ruddy complexions and robuſt conſtitutions. Their heathfulneſs may, in general, be aſcribed to the following cauſes. They live on the top of a mountain always open to the ſea breezes that conſtantly blow here: they are uſually employed in the moſt healthful exerciſes of gardening and huſbandry; the iſland is frequently refreſhed with moderate cooling ſhowers; and no noxious fens, nor ſalt marſhes annoy them. They are uſed alſo to climb the ſteep hill between the town in Chapel-valley and their plantation; which hill is ſo ſteep, that, having a ladder in the middle of it, they call it Ladder-hill; and this cannot be avoided without going three or four miles about; ſo that they ſeldom want air or exerciſe, the great preſervers of health. As to the genius and temper of theſe people they ſeemed to us the moſt honeſt, the moſt inoffenſive, and the moſt hoſpitable people we ever met with of Engliſh extraction, having ſcarce any tincture of avarice or ambition. We aſked ſome of them, if they had no curioſity to ſee the reſt of the world, and how they could confine themſelves to ſo ſmall a ſpot of earth, ſeparated at ſuch a diſtance from the reſt of mankind? They replied, that they enjoyed the neceſſaries of life in great plenty: they were neither parched with exceſſive heat, or pinched with cold: they lived in perfect ſecurity; in no danger of enemies, of robbers, wild beaſts or rigorous ſeaſons; and were happy in the enjoyment of a continued ſtate of health: that as there were no rich men among them (ſcarce any planter being worth more than a thouſand dollars) ſo there were no poor in the iſland, no man being worth leſs than four hundred dollars, and conſequently not obliged to undergo more labour than was neceſſary to keep him in health.

Our thoughts were now employed on returning to our native ſhore; and having ſufficiently recruited our ſtores, on Saturday the 4th of May, we weighed, and ſailed out of the road in company with the Portland man of war, and his convoy, conſiſting of twelve ſail of Eaſt Indiamen. With this fleet we continued our courſe for England until Friday the 10th, when perceiving they out-ſailed us, and conſequently might make their port before us, Capt. Cook, for this reaſon, made the ſignal to ſpeak with the Portland, upon which Capt. Elliot came on board the Endeavour; to whom a letter for the Admiralty was delivered, with a box, containing the common log books of the ſhip, and the journals of ſome of the officers. We did not loſe ſight of the fleet till Thurſday the 23d, when they parted from us; and about one o'clock in the afternoon, we loſt our firſt lieutenant, Mr. Hicks, an active, ſkilful, judicious, and uſeful officer. He died of a conſumption, of which lingering diſorder he diſcovered ſome ſymptoms when he left England; ſo that it may be truly ſaid, that he was dying the whole voyage; and his decline was very gradual till we arrived at Batavia, from whence to the time of his diſſolution, the ſlow conſuming diſeaſe gained ſtrength daily. The whole ſhip's company attended the funeral rites, and in the evening we committed his body to the ſea with the uſual ceremonies. The next day the Captain appointed Mr. Charles Clerk, a young man, to act in the room of Mr. Hicks.

We now every day drew nearer our deſired haven; but what muſt be the condition of our once good ſhip, the Endeavour, may eaſily be imagined, from a ſlight recollection of the hardſhips ſhe had ſurmounted, and the dangers ſhe had providentially eſcaped. At this time our rigging and ſails were ſo weather-beaten, that every day ſomething was giving way. However, we held on our courſe, without any material occurrence that might endanger our ſafety, till Monday the 10th of June, when, to our great joy, Nicholas Young, the boy who firſt diſcovered New Zealand, called out land from the maſt head, which proved to be the Lizard. The next day, being Tueſday, the eleventh, we proceeded up the channel. On Wedneſday the 12th, with the pleaſing hopes of ſeeing our relatives and friends, exciting ſenſations not to be deſcribed by the pen of the moſt able writer, we paſſed Beachy Head. At noon, to our inexpreſſible joy we were a-breaſt of Dover; and about three o'clock, P. M. we came to an anchor in the Downs. When we landed at Deal, our ſhip's company indulged freely that mirth, and ſociable jollity, common to all Engliſh ſailors upon their return from a long voyage, who as readily forget hardſhips and dangers, as with alacrity and bravery they encounter them.

We cannot cloſe this book without joining in that general cenſure, which has been juſtly beſtowed on Dr. Hawkeſworth, the late compiler of a former account of this voyage of the Endeavour. An infidel may imbibe what deiſtical chimeras may be beſt adapted to the gloomy temper of his mind; but we cannot but think him highly culpable in forcing them into a work of this kind; for though it may be ſaid, that, with reſpect to efficient and final cauſes, the opinion of a general and particular Providence will form one and the ſame concluſion, yet we think it is of great comfort to all men, particularly to thoſe who can trace the wonders of an almighty hand in the deep, to be ſenſible of a merciful interpoſition, concerned, and ever attentive to their ſupport, preſervation, and deliverance in times of danger. Beſides, this ſentiment of a divine Agent ſuperintending, and correcting the diſorders introduced by natural and moral evil, is, undoubtedly, a ſcripture-doctrine; and from the deductions of the mere light of nature, it muſt appear unreaſonable to ſuppoſe, that the firſt Great Cauſe who planned the whole grand ſcheme of creation, ſhould not be allowed to interfere with reſpect to particular parts, or individuals, as occaſion, circumſtances, or times may require. And whoever has duly conſidered the wonderful protection of the Endeavour in caſes of danger the moſt imminent, particularly when encircled, in the wide ocean, with rocks of coral, her ſheathing beaten off, and her falſe-keel floating by her ſide, a hole in her bottom, and the men by turns fainting at the pumps, cannot but acknowledge the exiſtence of a Particular Providence. The hiſtory of Joſeph can only afford a more ſtriking inſtance of the interpoſition of a divine inviſible hand. This our countrymen experienced; and we have good authority to aſſert, that our company in the Endeavour do acknowledge, notwithſtanding the private opinion of the above mentioned compiler, that the hand of Superior Power was particularly concerned in their protection and deliverance. This omniſcient and omnipotent power it is the incumbent duty of every chriſtian to believe, confide in, and adore.

Capt. COOK's
SECOND VOYAGE,
TOWARDS THE
South Pole and Round the World,
UNDERTAKEN AND PERFORMED
By Order of his Preſent MAJESTY,
In his Majeſty's Ships the Reſolution and Adventure;
With a View principally of Diſcovering the ſuppoſed SOUTHERN CONTINENT, &c.
Begun the 9th of April 1772, and concluded on the 31ſt of July 1775.
Including a Narrative of Capt. FURNEAUX's Proceedings in the Adventure after the Separation of the two Ships, during which Period ſeveral of his People were deſtroyed by the Natives of QUEEN CHARLOTTE's SOUND.

INTRODUCTION.

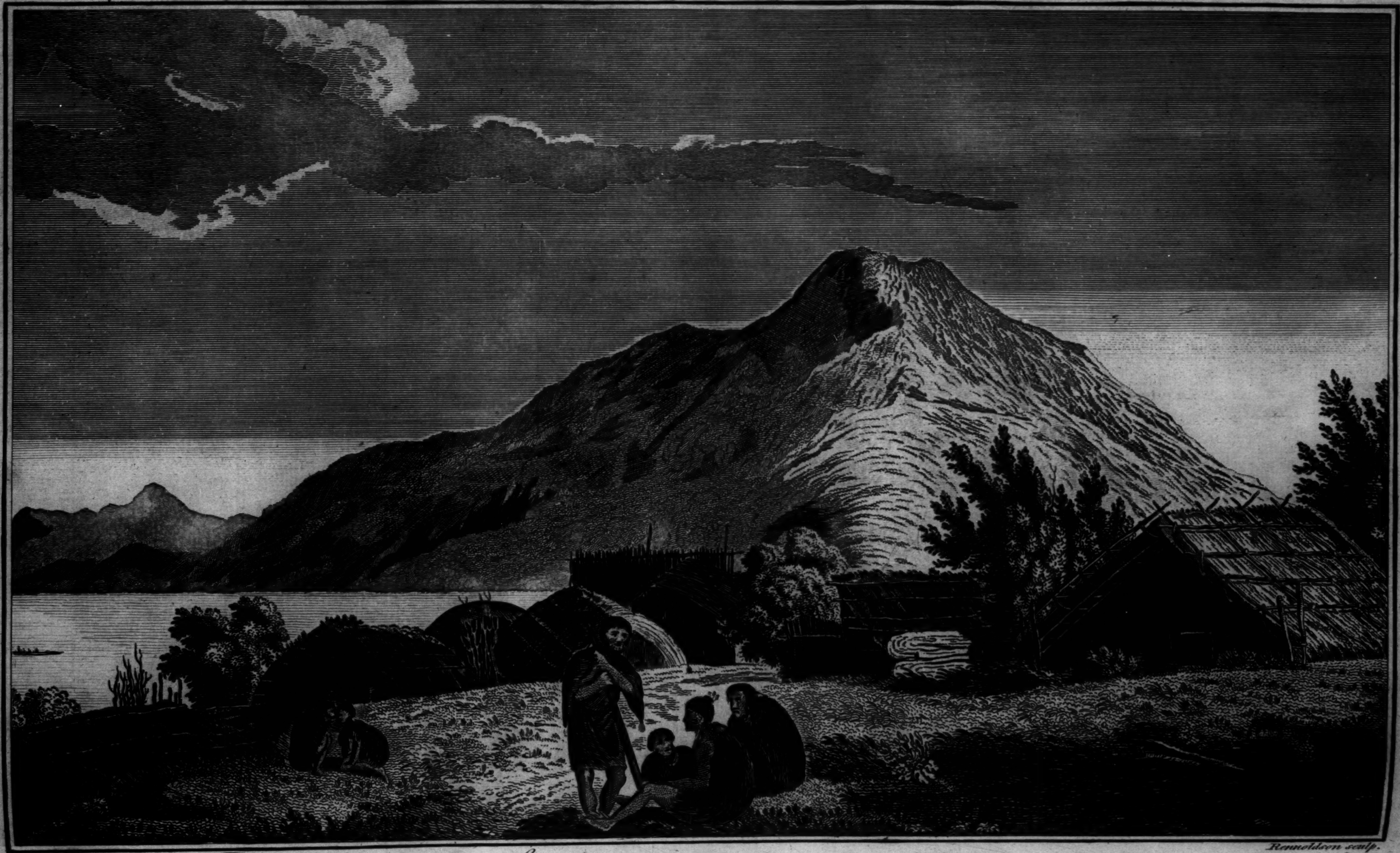
THE king's expectations were not wholly anſwered by former diſcoveries, which were ſo highly blazoned both at home and abroad, and therefore his majeſty projected this Second Voyage of Capt. Cook, and the Navy-board was ordered to equip two ſuch ſhips as were moſt ſuitable to the ſervice. Accordingly two veſſels were purchaſed of Capt. William Hammond, of Hull, being about fourteen or ſixteen months old. They were both built at Whitby, by the ſame perſon who built the Endeavour. The largeſt of the two, named the Reſolution, burthen four hundred and ſixty-two tons, was ſent to Deptford to be fitted out; and the Adventure, three hundred and thirty-ſix tons, was equipped at Woolwich. On the 28th of November, 1771, Capt. Cook was appointed to the command of the Reſolution; and Tobias Furneaux, who had been ſecond lieutenant with Capt. Wallis, was promoted to the command of the Adventure. The Reſolution had one hundred and twelve hands on board, officers included: and the Adventure eighty-one. In the former, James Cook was captain, Robert P. Cooper, Charles Clerk, and Richard Pickerſgill, were appointed lieutenants. Joſeph Gilbert was maſter; James Grey, boatſwain; James Wallis, carpenter; Robert Anderſon, gunner; and James Patten, ſurgeon. John Edgcumbe was lieutenant of the marines, under whom were one ſerjeant, two corporals, one drummer and fifteen privates. The reſt of the crew conſiſted of three maſter's mates, ſix midſhipmen, two ſurgeon's mates, one captain's clerk, one maſter at arms, one corporal, one armourer, his mate, one ſail-maker, his mate, three boatſwain's mates, carpenter's three, gunner's two, four carpenter's crew, one cook, his mate, ſix quarter maſters, and forty-five able ſeamen. In the Adventure, Tobias Furneaux was captain, Joſeph Shank, and Arthur Kempe, lieutenants; Peter Fannin was appointed maſter, Edward Johns boatſwain, William Offard carpenter, Andrew Gloag gunner, Thomas Andrews ſurgeon: of maſter's mates, midſhipmen, &c. as above, the number was twenty-eight, and thirty-three able bodied ſeamen. James Scott was lieutenant of the marines, under whoſe command were one ſerjeant, one corporal, one drummer, and eight privates.

The two ſhips were ordered to be got in readineſs with the utmoſt expedition, and both the Navy and Victualling boards paid an uncommon attention to their equipment; even the firſt lord of the Admiralty viſited them from time to time; in conſequence of which they were not reſtrained by ordinary eſtabliſhments, every extra article thought neceſſary being allowed, in order that they might be fitted completely, and in every reſpect to the ſatisfaction of thoſe who were to embark in them. Indeed Capt. Cook ſailed with greater advantages in this expedition, than any of his predeceſſors who had gone out before on diſcoveries; and we may venture to ſay, no future commander will ever have a commiſſion of a more liberal kind, nor be furniſhed with a greater profuſion of the very beſt ſtores and proviſions. He had the frame of a veſſel of twenty tons, one for each ſhip, to ſerve occaſionally, or upon any emergency, as tenders: he had on board fiſhing-nets, lines and hooks of every kind; he was ſupplied with innumerable articles of ſmall value, adapted to the commerce of the tropical iſlands: he had on board additional cloathing for the ſeamen, particularly ſuited to a cold climate, to all which were added the beſt inſtruments for aſtronomical and nautical obſervations; in which were included four time-pieces on Mr Harriſon's principles, conſtructed by Meſſ. Arnold and Kendal. And that nothing might be wanting to procure information, and that could tend to the ſucceſs of the voyage, a landſcape painter, Mr. William Hodges, was engaged for this important undertaking, accompanied by Mr. (now Dr.) John Reinhold Foſter and Son, who were thought the moſt proper perſons for the line of Natural Hiſtory, to which they were appointed with parliamentary encouragement. Mr. William Wales, and Mr. William Bailey, were likewiſe engaged to make aſtronomical obſervations; the former being placed by the board of longitude, in the Reſolution, and Mr.

Bailey

BRITISH 7 FE 90 MUSEUM

Published by Alexr. Hogg at the Kings Arms No. 16 Paternoster Row.



Rennoldson sculp.

The INSIDE *of* A HIPPAH, *in* NEW ZEALAND.

Bayley in the Adventure. Nor muſt we omit to mention the number of medals ſtruck by order of the Lords of the Admiralty, and intended to be left both as preſents and teſtimonies in new diſcovered countries.

The two ſhips were victualled and provided with all manner of neceſſaries for a three years voyage; among which were the following extra articles: 1. Malt, for ſweet wort, deſigned for thoſe whoſe habit of body might engender the ſcurvy, and as a remedy for ſuch who might be afflicted with that diſorder. The quantity preſcribed for each patient, from one to ſix pints a day, at the diſcretion of the ſurgeon. 2. Sour Krout, of which each ſeaman was to be allowed two pounds a week. This is cabbage ſalted down, and cloſe packed in caſks, after having been properly fermented. It is eſteemed by our navigators an excellent antiſcorbutic. 3. Cabbage cut ſmall and ſalted down, to which is added juniper berries, and anniſeeds, which are likewiſe put to the ſour krout. 4. Portable ſoup, very nouriſhing, and of great utility both for invalids, and thoſe that are in good health. 5. Oranges, rob of lemons, and ſaloup, for the uſe of the ſurgeons, to be adminiſtered to the ſick and ſcorbutic only. 6. Marmalade of Carrots, recommended by Baron Storch of Berlin, as a very great antiſcorbutic; but it did not as ſuch anſwer our expectation. This ſyrup is extracted from yellow carrots, by evaporating the finer parts, till it is brought to a conſiſtence of treacle, which it much reſembles both in taſte and colour. 7. Juice of wort and beer, inſpiſſated, as the foregoing article, and intended to ſupply at times the place of beer, by mixing it with water. For this we were indebted to Mr. Pelham, Secretary of the Victualling-office; the commiſſioners of which ordered thirty-one half barrels of this juice to be prepared for trial; nineteen whereof were ſtowed in the Reſolution, and twelve on board the Adventure. Thus all the conveniences neceſſary for the preſervation of health during a long voyage, were provided in abundance; and even ſome alterations were made in the cuſtomary articles of proviſions; wheat being ſubſtituted in the room of a quantity of oatmeal, and ſugar inſtead of oil.

A propoſed voyage attended with ſuch extraordinary preparations, patronized by parliament, as well as royal bounty, and the execution of which being ſuperintended by the firſt officers of the admiralty, the navy, and by Capt. Cook himſelf, we do not heſitate to pronounce one of the moſt important that was ever performed in any age, or by any country; and we may alſo with truth aſſert, that the able navigator made choice of by his majeſty, was equal to the taſk in which he was embarked. Every thinking perſon cannot but admire his ſkill, his fortitude, his care of his men, his vigilance in attending to the minuteſt intimations of former navigators, his perſeverance amidſt the dangers and hardſhips of rigorous ſeaſons, his proweſs in leading his company juſt ſo far as they were capable of proceeding; in ſhort, his conduct throughout, which, while he kept every man ſingly in ſtrict obedience to his duty, he conciliated the affections of all, and ſecured their eſteem. The Hiſtory of his Second Voyage, which we are now about to ſubmit to the judgment of our numerous Subſcribers will, we are perſuaded, confirm the truth of this opinion; and we are happy in having received their unanimous approbation of the maps, charts, portraits, and views, which have been hitherto introduced, and which are all engraved from the originals by our moſt eminent artiſts. We hope for a continuance of their good opinion, which, in the execution of this work, we ſhall endeavour by all laudable means to merit and preſerve.

BOOK II.

CHAP. I.

The Endeavour takes her departure from Deptford—Touches at the iſland of St. Jago, one of the Cape de Verds—Purſues her voyage to the Cape of Good Hope—Account of tranſactions there, and incidents that happened in her paſſage—Her departure from the Cape—Continues her voyage in ſearch of a Southern Continent—Sequel of this ſearch, between the meridian of the Cape of Good Hope and that of New Zealand—Separation of the two ſhips, and the arrival of the Reſolution in Duſky Bay.

A. D. 1772. THE Reſolution and Adventure being equipped in the moſt complete manner, as already related, the former on the 9th of April, dropped down the river as far as Woolwich, at which place ſhe was detained by contrary winds; but on the 22d ſailed from thence to Long Reach, where ſhe was joined by her companion the Adventure, and both ſhips took in their marines, guns, and ammunition. May the 10th we ſailed for Plymouth, but before we got out of the river, the Reſolution was found to be very crank, on which account we put into Sheerneſs. While ſome alterations were making in her upper works, Lord Sandwich and Sir Hugh Palliſer paid us a viſit, in order to ſee they were executed in a proper manner. The Reſolution being again ready for ſea, we departed from Sheerneſs. On the 2d of July we met Lord Sandwich, in the Auguſta Yacht, whom we ſaluted with ſeventeen guns, and his lordſhip, accompanied with Sir Hugh Palliſer, honoured us with their preſence on board, which was the laſt inſtance of that very great attention they had paid to a variety of particulars that might tend to promote the ſucceſs of our undertaking.

About this time Capt. Cook received from the board of Admiralty his inſtructions, dated the 25th of June, the tenor and ſubſtance of which were, that the Adventure was to be under his command: that the two ſhips were to proceed to the iſland of Madeira, from thence to the Cape of Good Hope: that having at this place refreſhed the ſhips companies, and ſupplied them with proviſions and other neceſſaries, they were to make the beſt of their way to the ſouthward, in ſearch of Cape Circumciſion, which, by M. Bouvet, is ſaid to be in latitude 54 deg. S. and in about 11 deg. 20 min. E. longitude, from the Royal Obſervatory in the Park at Greenwich; that if they fell in with this Cape, Capt. Cook was to endeavour, by all means in his power, to diſcover whether the ſame was part of the ſuppoſed continent, which had ſo much employed the national attention of different European powers, or only the promontory of an iſland: that, in either caſe, the gentlemen on board the two ſhips were diligently to explore the ſame, to the utmoſt extent poſſible; and to make ſuch obſervations of various kinds, as might correſpond with the grand object in view, and be in any reſpect uſeful to either navigation or commerce; not omitting at the ſame time proper remarks on the genius and temper of the inhabitants; whoſe friendſhip and alliance they were directed to conciliate, by all probable motives, and prudential means in their power: that they were to proceed on new diſcoveries to the eaſtward or weſtward, as the captains might judge moſt eligible, endeavouring only to run into as high a latitude, and as near the ſouth pole as poſſible: that whatever might be the

The INSIDE *of* A HIPPAH, *in* NEW ZEALAND.

the reſult of their inveſtigations with reſpect to Cape Circumciſion, they were to continue their ſurveys to the ſouthward, and then to the eaſtward, either in ſearch of the ſaid continent, ſhould it not have been aſcertained, or to make diſcoveries of ſuch iſlands as might be ſeated in the hitherto unexplored and unknown parts of the ſouthern latitudes: that, having circumnavigated the globe, they were to return to Spithead by the way of the Cape of Good Hope: and that to anſwer the intentions of government in this voyage as fully as poſſible, when the ſeaſon of the year rendered it unſafe to continue in high latitudes, they were to repair to ſome known port to the northward; and after having refitted, &c. they were to return again, at the proper ſeaſon, to the ſouthward, in proſecution of new diſcoveries there. It may not be amiſs here to obſerve, that theſe orders were not intended in any reſpect to cramp Capt. Cook, who was allowed, in caſe the Reſolution ſhould be loſt, to continue his voyage in the Adventure: he had to this end aſſiſtants out of number: his ſtay was not even hinted at: he was not obliged to return at any limited time; in ſhort he had ample power, full authority, and, in all unforeſeen caſes, he was to proceed according to his own diſcretion, and act entirely as he pleaſed. We beg leave further to obſerve, that in the hiſtory of this voyage, Greenwich is made our firſt meridian, and from hence the longitude is reckoned E. and W. to 180 deg. each way. And our readers will alſo take notice, that whenever the initial letters, A. M. and P. M. of ante-meridianum, and poſt-meridianum, are uſed, the former ſignifies the forenoon, and the latter the afternoon of the ſame day.

A copy of the above inſtructions we tranſmitted to Captain Furneaux, incloſed with Capt. Cook's orders, in which he appointed, ſhould the two ſhips be ſeparated, the iſland of Madeira for the firſt place of rendezvous; Port Praya for the ſecond; the Cape of Good Hope for the third; and New Zealand for the fourth.

While we remained at Plymouth, our aſtronomers, Mr. Wales, and Mr. Bayley, made obſervations on Drake's Iſland; when the latitude was found to be 50 deg. 21 min. 30 ſec. N. and the longitude 4 deg. 20 min. W. of Greenwich; whereby the true time for putting the time-pieces and watches in motion was aſcertained. This was done on the the 13th of July, and they were ſet a-going, in the preſence of the two aſtronomers, Capt. Furneaux, Capt. Cook, and the two firſt lieutenants of the ſhips. Theſe had each of them keys of the boxes which contained the watches, and were always to be preſent at the winding them up, and comparing the one with the other, unleſs prevented by indiſpoſition. This day, the ſhips crews, according to the cuſtom of the navy, received two months wages in advance. As a further encouragement, and that they might provide neceſſaries for the voyage, they were likewiſe paid the wages due to them to the 28th of the preceding May.

On Sunday the 12th of July, the Reſolution broke from her moorings in the Sound, and was adrift together with the tranſport buoy to which ſhe was faſtened. All hands were on deck inſtantly, the cables were cleared, and the ſails ſpread. We paſſed the Adventure, and came to an anchor, after having eſcaped the very apparent danger of being daſhed againſt the rocks which are under the fort. This favourable event was looked upon by our ſeamen as an omen to the ſucceſs of the voyage. It was undoubtedly an inſtance of the care of Divine Providence, exerted for our protection in ſo critical a moment. Indeed the whole of our voyage, equally with this circumſtance, demonſtrates, that a divine power was abſolutely neceſſary to protect us in times of danger, and to give us a ſafe return.

On Monday the 13th at ſix o'clock, A. M. the two ſhips ſailed from Plymouth Sound, in company, and paſſed the Eddiſtone, which is a lofty, well contrived tower, of the utmoſt advantage to navigation and commerce. As we ſtood off ſhore, the wind increaſed, and the billows rolled higher and higher. Moſt of the ſeamen both old and young were affected with ſickneſs. On the 20th, we fell in with Cape Ortegal on the coaſt of Galicia. The country appears hilly, and the tops of the hills are covered with wood. The ſea now grew perfectly calm, and the proſpect which ſurrounded us was very delightful. When in ſight of Cape Finiſterre, bearing W. S. W. ſeven or eight leagues, we were met by a ſmall French Tartan from Marſeilles, freighted with flour from Ferrol and Corunna. We obtained from them a ſmall ſupply of freſh water, which we much wanted, having been obliged to ſubſiſt on bread and our wine. On the 22d, in the afternoon, we paſſed two Spaniſh men of war, one of which fired a ſhot at the Adventure to bring her to; but on hailing her, and being told we were king's ſhips, made a proper apology, and very politely took leave, wiſhing us a good voyage. On Wedneſday, the 29th, about nine at night, we anchored in Funchiale road, in the iſland of Madeira. After having ſaluted the garriſon with eleven guns, and they had returned the compliment, we went on ſhore, accompanied by the two Forſters, and were conducted by Mr. Sills, a gentleman from the vice-conſul, to the houſe of Mr. Loughnans, a conſiderable Engliſh merchant, who aſſiſted us with every accommodation the iſland and his houſe afforded, during our ſtay. Here the officers and private men furniſhed themſelves with ſuch ſtocks of wine as they could conveniently purchaſe.

The Madeira, or Madera iſlands are only three in number; namely, Madeira, properly ſo called; the iſland of Puerto, or Porto Santo; and Iſla Deſerta, or the Deſolate Iſle. They are ſituated to the N. of the Salvages, and in the Atlantic ocean, between thirty-two and thirty-three deg. and ſeventeen and eighteen deg. W. longitude, two hundred and fifty miles N. by E. from Teneriff, three hundred and ſixty from Cape Cantin on the coaſt of Africa, and three hundred N. of the iſland of Farro. They were thus named from the principal of them, which was called by the Portugueze Madeira, ſignifying a wood or foreſt, from its being overgrown with trees. They were firſt diſcovered by an Engliſh gentleman, and many years after by the Portugueze; and as there is ſomething extremely ſingular in both theſe occurrences, but more particularly the firſt, we ſhall, for the entertainment of our readers, relate the circumſtances attending it.

In the reign of Edward III. king of England, a young gentleman, named Robert Machin, conceived a violent paſſion for Ann D'Arſet, a beautiful and accompliſhed lady of a noble family. Machin, with reſpect to birth and fortune, was inferior to the lady; but his perſonal qualifications overcame every ſcruple on that account, and ſhe rewarded his attachment with a reciprocal affection. Her friends, however, beheld the young gentleman in a different light; they fancied their blood would be contaminated by an alliance with one of a lower rank, and therefore determined to ſacrifice the happineſs of the young lady, to the hereditary pride of blood, and their own mercenary and intereſted motives. In conſequence of theſe ideas, a warrant was procured from the king, under the ſanction of which Machin was apprehended, and kept in cloſe confinement, till the object of his affections was married to a nobleman, whoſe chief merit lay in his honorary title and large poſſeſſions; and immediately after the nuptial ceremony was over, the peer took his beautiful bride with him to a ſtrong caſtle which he had in the neighbourhood of Briſtol, and then the unfortunate lover was ſet at liberty.

After being releaſed from his cruel confinement, Machin was acquainted that his miſtreſs has been compelled to give her hand to another. This rendered him almoſt frantic, and he vowed to revenge the violence done to the lady, and the injury which he himſelf had ſuſtained; and with this view, imparted his deſign to ſome of his friends and companions, who engaged to accompany him to Briſtol, and aſſiſt him in whatever enterprize he undertook. Accordingly one of his comrades contrived to get himſelf hired by the nobleman as a ſervant, and by that means being introduced into the family, he ſoon found an opportunity to let the lady know the ſentiments and intentions of her lover;

when ſhe fully entered into all his projects, and promiſed to comply with whatever he ſhould propoſe. To facilitate their deſigns, the lady appeared more chearful than uſual, which lulled aſleep every ſuſpicion that her lord might otherwiſe have entertained; ſhe alſo entreated permiſſion to ride out daily to take the air for the benefit of her health, which requeſt her conſort eaſily granted. This point being gained, ſhe did not fail to take advantage of it, by riding out every morning accompanied by one ſervant only, which was her lover's companion, he having been previouſly pitched upon always to attend her by her own contrivance.

Matters being thus prepared, ſhe one day rode out as uſual, when her attendant conducted her to his friend, who waited at the ſea ſide to receive her. They all three immediately entered a boat, and ſoon reached a ſhip that lay at ſome diſtance ready to receive them on board: and Machin, having the object of his wiſhes on board, immediately, with the aſſiſtance of his aſſociates, ſet ſail, intending to proceed to France; but all on board being ignorant of maritime affairs, and the wind blowing a hard gale, they miſſed their port, and the next morning, to their aſtoniſhment, found themſelves driven into the main ocean. In this miſerable condition, they abandoned themſelves to deſpair, and committed their fates to the mercy of the waves. Without a pilot, almoſt deſtitute of proviſions, and quite devoid of hope, they were toſſed about for the ſpace of thirteen days. At length, when the morning of the fourteenth day began to dawn, they fancied they could deſcry ſomething very near them, that had the appearance of land; and when the ſun roſe, to their great joy they could diſtinctly perceive it was ſuch. Their pleaſure, however, was in ſome meaſure leſſened by the reflection, that it was a ſtrange country; for they plainly perceived it was covered with a variety of trees, whoſe nature and appearance they had not the leaſt knowledge of. Soon after this, ſome of them landed from the ſloop, in order to make their obſervations on the country; when, returning ſoon after to the ſhip, they highly commended the place, but at the ſame time believed there were no inhabitants in it.

The lover and his miſtreſs, with ſome of his friends, then landed, leaving the reſt to take care of the ſhip. The country appeared beautifully diverſified with hills and dales, ſhaded with various trees, and watered by many clear meandring ſtreams. The moſt beautiful birds of different ſpecies perched upon their heads, arms, and hands, unapprehenſive of danger; and ſeveral kinds of wild beaſts approached, without offering any violence to them. After having penetrated through ſeveral woody receſſes, they entered a fine meadow admirably incircled with a border of laurels, finely enamelled with various flowers, and happily watered with a meandring cryſtal rivulet. Upon an eminence in the midſt of this meadow, they ſaw a lofty ſpreading tree, the beauty of which invited them to repoſe under its ſhade, and partake of the ſhelter it would afford them from the piercing rays of the ſun. They at length attempted to make a temporary reſidence beneath this tree; and, providing themſelves with boughs from the neighbouring woods, they built ſeveral ſmall huts, or arbours. They paſſed their time very agreeably in this place, from whence they made frequent excurſions into the neighbouring country, admiring its ſtrange productions and various beauties. Their happineſs, however, was of no very long continuance; for one night a terrible ſtorm aroſe from the N. E. which tore the ſhip from her anchor, and drove her to ſea. The crew were obliged to ſubmit to the mercy of the elements, when they were driven to the coaſt of Morocco, where the ſhip being ſtranded, the whole crew was made captives by the Moors.

Machin and his companions, having miſſed the ſhip the next morning, they concluded ſhe had foundered, and was gone to the bottom. This new calamity plunged them into the deepeſt melancholy, and ſo greatly affected the lady, that ſhe could not ſupport herſelf under it. She had indeed before continually fed her grief, by ſad preſages of the enterprize's ending in ſome fatal cataſtrophe to all concerned; but the ſhock of the late diſaſter ſtruck her dumb; ſo that ſhe expired in three days afterwards, in the moſt bitter agonies. The death of the lady affected Machin to ſuch a degree, that he ſurvived her but four days, notwithſtanding the utmoſt endeavours of his companions to afford him conſolation. Previous to his death, he begged them to place his body in the ſame grave with her's, which they had made at the foot of an altar, erected under the beautiful lofty tree before-mentioned. They afterwards placed upon it a large wooden croſs; and near that an inſcription, drawn up by Machin himſelf, containing a ſuccinct account of the whole adventure; and concluded with a requeſt, that if any Chriſtians ſhould come thither to ſettle, that they would build and dedicate a church to Jeſus Chriſt upon that ſpot. The remaining companions of Machin, after his death, determined to attempt returning to England in the ſloop, which had been ſo well ſecured near the ſhore, as not to be in the leaſt damaged by the ſtorm which had driven away the ſhip. But, happening to take the ſame courſe the others had been forced upon, they unfortunately arrived in like manner upon ſome part of the coaſt of Morocco, where they met with exactly the ſame fate, being ſeized in a ſimilar manner, and carried to the ſame priſon. Here they met with ſeveral other Chriſtian ſlaves, beſides their own companions; particularly one John de Morales, a Spaniard of Seville. This man was an excellent ſailor, and took a peculiar delight in hearing the Engliſh captives rehearſe their adventures, by which means he learnt the ſituation and particular marks of this new diſcovered country, which he took care to retain in his memory.

In proceſs of time, John I. king of Portugal, having entered into a war with the Moors, paſſed over into Africa with a formidable army; and in the year 1415 laid ſiege to and took Ceuta. In this expedition, he was accompanied by his ſons, one of whom, prince Henry, took great delight in the ſtudy of the mathematics, particularly geography and navigation. Upon this occaſion, they had a great opportunity of converſing with the Moors and African Jews; and informing himſelf, by their means, of the ſituation of ſeveral foreign countries, the ſeas about them, their coaſts, &c. Hence grew an inſatiable thirſt for making new conqueſts; and from this time he was determined to devote his attention to the diſcovery of unknown countries. In conſequence of which reſolution, he retired, after the reduction of Ceuta, to the Algarves, where he found a new town within a league of Cape St. Vincent, erected a fort to defend it, and determined to ſend out ſhips from thence upon diſcoveries. The perſon he intended to employ as chief commander, upon theſe occaſions, was a gentleman of extraordinary abilities, named Juan Gonſalvo Zarco, who became famous not only for his maritime diſcoveries, but for being the firſt perſon who introduced the uſe of artillery on board ſhips. In 1418 he diſcovered Puerto Santo, one of the Madeiras; and in 1420 he paſſed the ſtreights, and ſurveyed a conſiderable extent of the coaſt of Africa. In the mean time, a Spaniſh prince dying, left by his will a large ſum of money for the purpoſe of redeeming Spaniſh Chriſtians, who were kept as ſlaves in Morocco. Terms being agreed upon between the emperor of Morocco and the commiſſioners, for the redemption of thoſe captives, a Spaniſh ſhip was ſent to Morocco to fetch home the redeemed Chriſtians, among whom was John de Morales before-mentioned. On the return of this ſhip to Spain, it happened to fall in with the ſquadron commanded by Juan Gonſalvo Zarco, who was, as we have juſt noticed, then paſſing the ſtraits to make obſervations on the coaſt of Africa. Spain and Portugal being at this time at war, Juan Gonſalvo Zarco made prize of the Spaniſh ſhip; but finding it contained only redeemed captives, he was touched with compaſſion at the miſeries they had already ſuffered during their ſlavery, and generouſly diſmiſſed them, taking out only John de Morales, whom he found to be a very intelligent perſon, an able ſailor, and an expert pilot.

When Morales was informed of the reaſon of his detention, and the diſcoveries that the Portugueſe were upon, he was mightily rejoiced, and offered voluntarily to enter into the ſervice of prince Henry. He then told the Portugueſe commander of the iſland which had been lately diſcovered by the Engliſh, related the ſtory of the two unfortunate lovers, and every other circumſtance, which, during his captivity, he had heard from Machin's companions. Gonſalvo was ſo delighted with his relation, that he tacked about, and returned to the new town which prince Henry had built, called Terra Nabal. On his arrival, he introduced Morales to the prince, when the Spaniard again repeated all that he had before told to Juan Gonſalvo. The prince thought this worthy of becoming a national affair; and therefore, communicating the whole to the king his father, and the Portugueſe miniſtry, they determined to purſue the diſcovery; and for that purpoſe fitted out a good ſhip, well manned and provided, and a ſloop to go with oars, when occaſion required: and Juan Gonſalvo was appointed to the whole command. Some Portugueſe, on the diſcovery of Puerto Santo a ſhort time before, had been left by Gonſalvo on that iſland; and judging by the account of Morales, concerning the ſituation of the iſland they were in queſt of, that it could not be far from Puerto Santo, he determined to ſail thither; where when he arrived, the Portugueſe whom he had left behind, informed him, that they had obſerved to the north-eaſt a thick impenetrable darkneſs, which conſtantly hung upon the ſea, and extended itſelf upward to the heavens. That they never knew it to be diminiſhed; but a ſtrange noiſe, which they could not account for, was often heard from thence.

John de Morales appeared to be convinced that this was the iſland they were in ſearch of; and Juan Gonſalvo was inclined to coincide with him; but all the reſt were terrified at the accounts they had heard. It was therefore concluded to remain at Puerto Santo till the change of the moon, to ſee what effect that would have upon the ſhade, or whether the noiſe would ceaſe. But perceiving no alteration of any kind, the panic increaſed among the generality of the adventurers. Morales, however, ſtood firm to his opinion of that being the iſland they were looking for; and very ſenſibly obſerved, that, according to the accounts he had received from the Engliſh, the ground was covered over with lofty ſhady trees; it was no wonder, therefore, that it ſhould be exceeding damp, and that the humid vapours might exhale from it by the power of the ſun, which, ſpreading themſelves to the ſky, occaſioned the dark clouds they ſaw; and with reſpect to the noiſe, that might be occaſioned by certain currents daſhing againſt the rocks on the coaſt of the iſland.

Notwithſtanding theſe obſtacles, Juan Gonſalvo determined to proceed; and, ſetting ſail the next day, he at length made land; and the fear of thoſe who had been all along terrified, now vaniſhed. The firſt point they ſaw, they named St. Lawrence's Point: doubling this, they found to the ſouthward, riſing land, whither Morales and others were ſent in a ſloop to reconnoitre the coaſt; and came to a bay which ſeemed to anſwer the deſcription given by the Engliſh. Here they landed; and finding the croſs and inſcription over the grave of the two lovers, they returned to Juan Gonſalvo with an account of their ſucceſs; whereupon he immediately landed, and took poſſeſſion of the place, in the name of John I. king of Portugal, and prince Henry his ſon. Having built an altar near the grave, they ſearched about the iſland, in order to diſcover if it contained any cattle; but not finding any, they coaſted weſtward, till they came to a place where four fine rivers ran into the ſea, of the waters of which Juan Gonſalvo filled ſome bottles, to carry as a preſent to prince Henry. Proceeding farther, they came to a fine valley, which was interſected by a beautiful river, and after that to a pleaſant ſpot covered with trees, ſome of which being fallen down, Juan Gonſalvo ordered a croſs to be erected of the timber, and called the place Santa Cruz, or Holy Croſs. After this, they began to look out for a place proper to fix their reſidence in while they ſtayed: and at length found a fine tract of land, not ſo woody as the reſt of the country, but covered over with fennel, which, in the Portugueſe language, is called Funcho; from thence the town of Funchal, or Funchiale, took its name, which was afterwards built on the ſame ſpot.

Juan Gonſalvo, after having viewed other parts of the iſland, and finding daily cauſe for new admiration of the beauties continually diſcovered, returned to Portugal, and arrived at Liſbon in the end of Auguſt 1420, without having loſt a ſingle man in the whole enterprize: aud a day of audience being appointed for him to make his report of his voyage, the king gave the name of Madeira to the new diſcovered iſland, on account of the great quantity of excellent wood found upon it. Soon after an order was made for Juan Gonſalvo to return to Madeira in the enſuing ſpring, with the title of captain-governor of Madeira, to which title the heir of his family at preſent adds that of count. He accordingly ſet ſail on his ſecond voyage in May 1421, taking with him the greateſt part of his family, and arriving at Madeira he caſt anchor in the road, till then called the Engliſh Port; but Gonſalvo, in honour of the firſt diſcoverer, then called it Puerto de Machino, from which name it was corrupted to Machico, which it now bears. He then ordered the large ſpreading beautiful tree before-mentioned (under which Machin and his companions had taken up their reſidence) to be cut down, and a ſmall church to be erected with the timber; which, agreeable to Machin's requeſt, he dedicated to Jeſus Chriſt, and interſected the pavement of the choir with the bones of the two unfortunate lovers. He ſoon after laid the foundation of the town of Funchal, which afterwards became famous; and the altar of the new wooden church was dedicated to St. Catharine, by his wife Conſtantia, who was with him.

John I. king of Portugal, dying, his eldeſt ſon and ſucceſſor Duarte, in conſideration of the great ſums of money expended in peopling this iſland, by prince Henry his brother, gave him the revenues of it for life. He likewiſe gave the ſpiritualities of it to the order of Chriſt, which endowment Alonza XV. afterwards confirmed.

The iſland of Madeira, properly ſo called, is compoſed of one continued hill of a wonderful height, extending from eaſt to weſt: the declivity of which, on the ſouth ſide, is cultivated and interſperſed with vineyards; and in the midſt of this ſlope, the merchants have fixed their country ſeats, which help to render the proſpect very agreeable. The air is more moderate than that in the Canary Iſlands, and the ſoil more fertile in corn, wine, ſugar and fruits. Fine ſprings abound almoſt in every part, beſides which there are eight good rivers. The great plenty of water firſt ſuggeſted the hint to prince Henry of ſending ſugar canes to Madeira from Italy, which greatly improved through the increaſe of heat, and produced more than in their native ſoil.

This iſland affords plenty of citrons, bananas, peaches, apricots, plumbs, cherries, figs and walnuts; with oranges of all ſorts, and lemons of a prodigious ſize. Fruit-trees from Europe thrive here in perfection; and the natives are ſaid to make the beſt ſweatmeats of any in the world, and particularly greatly excel in preſerving citrons and oranges, and in making marmalade and perfumed paſtes, which greatly excel thoſe of Genoa. The ſugar made here is very fine, and has the ſmell of violets; this, indeed, is ſaid to be the firſt place in the Weſt where this manufacture was ſet on foot, and from thence was carried to America: but afterwards the ſugar-plantations at Brazil proſpering extremely, the greathſt part of the ſugar-canes in this iſland were pulled up, and vineyards planted in their ſtead, that produce excellent wines, which, the author of Lord Anſon's voyage obſerves, ſeems to be deſigned by Providence to exhilerate and comfort the inhabitants of the torrid zone. The cedar-tree here is very ſtrait, tall, and thick, and has a rich ſcent. The wood of the naſſo tree is of a red roſe colour; here are alſo the maſtic and gum-dragon trees; and beſides fruit-trees there are a variety of other trees, which are common both to Europe and Africa. The everlaſting-flower is a great curioſity; for when it is plucked it cannot be perceived to fade; it grows like ſage, flowers like camomile, and always appears freſh and blooming. Vines are in abundance; and from the grapes which they produce a vaſt quantity of the moſt delicious wines are made. Indeed the ſoil is ſo well adapted for the cultivation of vines, that the grapes exceed the leaves in number, and ſome of the bunches are ſixteen or eighteen inches in length. Here are ſeveral ſorts of theſe wines; one is of the colour of champagne, but is not much valued: another ſort is a white wine, much ſtronger than the former. A third ſort is excellent, and reſembles malmſy, it being of the ſame nature with that which grows in Teneriff: and another reſembles Alicant wine, but is much inferior to it in taſte, and is never drank alone, but mixed with the other ſorts, to which it gives a colour and ſtrength to keep. It is obſervable of the Madeira wines, that they are greatly improved by the heat of the ſun, when expoſed to it in the barrel, after the bung is taken out. In the whole iſland they annually make about twenty-eight thouſand pipes, eight thouſand of which are drank there, and the reſt exported, the greateſt part being ſent to the Weſt-Indies. The wines that are brought directly to England, are not equal in goodneſs to ſuch as are firſt carried to the Weſt-Indies; and their flavour is exceedingly heightened, if they remain ſome time in Barbadoes. The product of each vineyard is uſually divided equally between the proprietor, and the perſon who gathers and preſſes the grapes; it commonly happens, however, that while the merchant is rich, the gatherer is poor. The people here trade among themſelves, or barter.

The principal town in the whole iſland is Fonchal, or Funchiale, and is ſeated in the ſouth part of the iſland at the bottom of a large bay, in latitude 32 deg. 33 min. 34 ſec. N. and in 17 deg. 12 min. W. longitude. We deduced the longitude from lunar obſervations, and Mr. Wales reduced the ſame for the town by Mr. Kendal's watch, which makes the longitude of Funchiale, 17 deg. 10 min. 14 ſec. W. Towards the ſea it is fortified by a high wall, with a battery of cannon, beſides a caſtle on the Loo, which is a rock ſtanding in the water at a ſmall diſtance from the ſhore. This town is the only place of trade, and indeed the only place where it is poſſible for a boat to land: and even here the beach is covered with large ſtones, and a violent ſurf continually beats upon it. The only good time for landing is before the ſea-breeze comes on. The town is very populous, but the majority of the inhabitants are not natural-born Portugueſe; for a great number of Engliſh and French Roman catholics ſettled there, who live after the Portugueſe manner; ſome Engliſh proteſtants, and a prodigious number of negroes and mulattoes, both freemen and ſlaves. The ſtreets are ſtraight, and drawn by a line, and their houſes are pretty well built; their churches are well-built beautiful ſtructures, enriched with gilding, fine pictures, and plate, and people are ſaid to meet in them upon buſineſs that has little relation to devotion.

Thoſe women who have no domeſtic chapels, never go to church but on Snndays and holidays; when, if there be ſeveral daughters, they walk two and two before the mother, each having a large thin vail over her face; but their breaſts and ſhoulders are quite bare. By their ſide walks a venerable old man, with a ſtring of beads in his hand, and armed with a ſword and dagger. This town is the ſee of a biſhop, who has the whole iſland under his ſpiritual juriſdiction, and is ſuffragan to the archbiſhop of Liſbon. The governor of the iſland alſo reſides here.

In the iſland are two other towns; one called Manchico, which has a church named Santa Cruz, or the Holy Croſs, and a convent of Bernardine-friars; the other town is named Moncerito. In ſhort, the iſland lately contained thirty-ſix pariſhes, a college, and a monaſtery of jeſuits, five other monaſteries, eighty-two hermitages, and five hoſpitals. There are ſeveral fine ſeats and caſtles about the country, in which the merchants chiefly reſide.

The ordinary food of the poorer people, in the time of vintage, is little elſe than bread and rich grapes; and were it not for their abſtemiouſneſs, fevers in the hot ſeaſons would be frequent; therefore even the rich, in the hot months, are very moderate in their diet and drinking. The generality of the people affect great gravity in their deportment, and uſually dreſs in black; but they cannot diſpenſe with the ſpado and dagger, which even ſervants wear; ſo that you may ſee a footman waiting at table with a ſword at leaſt a yard long, and a great baſket hilt to it. The houſes in general are plain, as the inhabitants put themſelves at no great expence in furniſhing them. The windows are ſecured by wooden ſhutters at night, and inſtead of being glazed, are latticed. With reſpect to their marriages, affection is never conſidered, the principal enquiries are into family deſcent and circumſtances; the women are prohibited from marrying Engliſhmen, unleſs the latter conſent to embrace the Roman catholic religion. Murders are very frequent, on account of the great numbers of places deemed ſanctuaries, and the eaſe with which a murderer can thereby ſcreen himſelf from juſtice. But if the criminal is taken before he can reach the ſanctuary, the puniſhment is only either baniſhment or impriſonment, both which, by a pecuniary compoſition, may be evaded.

Here are a great number of clergy, who are generally rich; but none who are deſcended from Moors or Jews are admitted to take orders. The churches are made repoſitories for the dead, and the corpſe is curiouſly dreſſed and adorned: yet in the interment, ſtore of lime is uſed, in order to conſume the body as ſpeedily as poſſible, which uſually happens in a fortnight: ſo that there is then room for another corpſe. The bodies of proteſtants are not allowed to be buried, but muſt be thrown into the ſea; nevetherleſs they are permitted to be interred in conſecrated ground, provided a handſome ſum of money is paid to the clergy.

Puerto Santo is generally termed one of the Madeira iſlands, and lies to the north-eaſt of Madeira, in 32 deg. 30 min. N. latitude, and in 16 deg. 5 min. W. longitude from London, and is only about 15 miles in circumference. It was diſcovered in the year 1412, by two Portugueſe gentlemen, one of whom was Don Juan Gonſalvo, ſent by prince Henry, ſon to John I. king of Portugal, to double Cape Bajador, in order to make farther diſcoveries; but being ſurpriſed by a violent ſtorm, were driven out to ſea, and, when they gave themſelves over for loſt, had the happineſs to find this iſland, which proving a ſafe aſylum to them, they called it Puerto Santo, or the Holy Port.

This iſland produces wheat and other corn, juſt ſufficient for the ſupport of the inhabitants: here alſo are plenty of oxen, wild hogs, and a vaſt number of rabbits. There are trees which produce the gum called dragon's blood, and likewiſe a little honey and wax, which are extremely good. It has properly no harbour, but there is good mooring in the road, which affords a convenient retreat for ſhips going to Africa, or coming from the Indies; ſo that merchantmen often ſtop there, which affords conſiderable profit to the inhabitants, who are deſcended from the Portugueſe, to whom the iſland is ſubject. The inhabitants are all Roman catholicks, being under the ſpiritual juriſdiction of the biſhop of Fonchal in Madeira. They would live a very quiet life, were it not for the pirates, who often pay them troubleſome viſits. In the year 1617, they landed here, and carried off ſix hundred and ſixty-three priſoners, beſides plundering the place.

There is a little iſland called the Deſart, which produces only orchilla-weed, and ſome goats are on it: it lies on the eaſt-ſide of Madeira, at about ſix leagues diſtance.

On Saturday the 1ſt of Auguſt, having ſtowed on board a ſupply of water, wine, and other neceſſaries, we ſet ſail, loſt ſight of Madeira, and ſtood to the ſouthward, with a gentle gale at N. E. On Tueſday the 4th, we ſaw the pleaſant iſland of Palma, bearing S. S. W. diſtant about three or four leagues. This is one of the Canary iſles. It may be ſeen, on account of its height, twelve or fourteen leagues at ſea, and lies in latitude 28 deg. 38 min. N. and in 17 deg. 58 min. W. longitude. On Wedneſday, the 5th, we paſſed the iſle of Ferro, at the diſtance of fourteen leagues.

The iſland of Palma lies about fifty miles to the W. of Teneriffe, and two hundred W. of the continent of Africa. It is about thirty miles long, twenty broad, and ſeventy in circuit. On the N. E. part of the iſland, within land, is a high and ſpacious mountain, ſteep on all ſides. This is called La Caldera, or the cauldron, from a hollow like that on the pike of Teneriffe. The ſummit is about two leagues in circumference, and on the inſide the cauldron deſcends gradually from thence to the bottom, which is a ſpace of about thirty acres. On the declivity of the inſide ſpring ſeveral rivulets, which joining together at the bottom, iſſue in one ſtream through a paſſage to the outſide of the mountain from which this brook deſcends; and having run ſome diſtance from thence, turns two ſugar-mills. The water of this ſtream is unwholeſome, on account of its being mixed with ſome water of a pernicious quality in the cauldron; all the inſide of which abounds with herbage, and is covered with palms, pitch-pine, laurel, lignum-rhodium, and retamas; which laſt have in this iſland a yellow bark, and grow to the ſize of large trees; but in the others they are only ſhrubs. The people here take great care not to let the he-goats feed on the leaves of the retama, on account of their breeding a ſtone in the bladder, which is mortal. Two rivulets ſpring on the outſide of the cauldron; one of theſe runs northward to the village of St. Andrew, and turns two ſugar-mills, and the other runs to the town of Palmas, which lies to the eaſtward. Theſe are the only rivulets or ſtreams of any conſequence in the iſland: on which account the natives build tanks, or ſquare reſervoirs with planks of pitch-pine, which they maketight with caulking. Theſe they fill with the torrents of rain-water that in the winter ſeaſon ruſh down from the mountains, and preſerve it for themſelves and cattle: but the ſheep, goats, and hogs, in places at a diſtance from the rivulets, feed almoſt all the year round on the roots of fern and aſphodil, and therefore have little or no need of water, there being moiſture enough in thoſe roots to ſupply the want of that element. Though the ſouth quarter of the iſland is moſt deſtitute of water, yet there is a medicinal well of hot water ſo cloſe to the ſea-ſhore, that the tide flows into it at full ſea.

At Uguer is a cave, that has a long narrow entrance, ſo ſtraight that people paſs through it backwards, with their face to the mouth of the cave; but after they have got through this paſſage, they enter a ſpacious grotto, where water diſtils from between the large flakes of ſlate ſtones that hang from the roof; the leaſt blow given to theſe, reſounds with a noiſe like thunder through the cave. In the diſtrict of Tiſuya is a mountain, which appears to have been removed by an earthquake from its original ſituation. The natives have a tradition, that the ſpot on which it now ſtands was a plain, and the moſt fertile ſpot in the whole iſland, till it was deſtroyed by the burning lava, and the fall of the mountain. Indeed, the effects of volcanos are to be ſeen in almoſt every part of the iſland; for the channels where the burning matter, melted ores, and calcined ſtones and aſhes ran, may be eaſily diſtinguiſhed by a curious obſerver. Nunno de Penna, in his Hiſtorical Memoirs, relates, that on the 13th of November 1677, a little after ſun-ſet, the earth ſhook for thirteen leagues with a dreadful noiſe, that continued five days, during which it opened in ſeveral places; but the greateſt gap was upon the mountain of La Caldera, a mile and a half from the ſea, from whence proceeded a great fire, which caſt up ſtones and pieces of rock. The like happened in ſeveral places thereabouts, and in leſs than a quarter of an hour were twenty-eight gaps about the foot of the mountain, which caſt forth abundance of flames and burning ſtones. The ſame perſon adds, that on the 20th of November following, there was a ſecond eruption of the ſame mount, from whence came forth ſtones and fire, with great earthquakes and thunders for ſeveral days, ſo that black cinders were taken up at ſeven leagues diſtance: the adjacent ground was entirely waſted, and the inhabitants forced to quit their dwellings. The laſt volcano that happened in this iſland was in 1750, when one of theſe rivers of fire ran, with great rapidity, from the mountains towards the town of Palmas, and diſcharged itſelf about a mile to the northward of the town, but we have not learnt that any conſiderable eruption hath happened ſince that time.

If we take a view of Palma at the diſtance of three leagues off at ſea, the mountains ſeem full of gutters or beds formed by torrents of rain water; but theſe only appear little from their height and diſtance; for we find them to be large vallies, abounding with woods, on a nearer approach. In many places on the ſhore of this and the other iſlands, is found the black ſhining ſand uſed to throw upon writing, to prevent its blotting. It appears to have been caſt out of volcanos, for the load-ſtone, when held near it, will draw up every grain of it.

The air, weather, and winds are nearly the ſame as at Teneriffe and Canaria, except that the weſterly winds and rain are more frequent at Palma, on account of its lying more to the weſtward and northward, and on that account is not ſo far within the verge of the N. E. trade winds as thoſe iſlands; whence it is particularly expoſed to the S. wind, which moſtly prevails in the latitudes adjacent to thoſe of the N. E. trade-winds, as well as to variable winds from other quarters.

The climate here, and in Teneriffe, Canaria, and Gomera, differs greatly, according as a perſon lives in the mountains, or near the ſea ſhore. During a calm, the heat ſeems almoſt intolerable near the ſhore, in the months of July, Auguſt and September; but the air is at the ſame time quite freſh and pleaſant on the mountains. In the middle of winter the houſes upon theſe, ſome of which are near the clouds, muſt be extremely cold, and the natives keep fires burning in their habitations all day long; but this is far from being the caſe near the ſea, where they uſe fires only in their kitchens. The ſummits of all the Canary iſles, except Lancerota and Fuerteventura, are generally covered with ſnow for eight months in the year. The ſummit of Palma formerly abounded with trees, but a great drought in 1545 deſtroyed them all; and though others began to ſpring up ſome time after, they were deſtroyed by the rabbits and other animals, which finding no paſture below, went up there, and deſtroyed all the young ſhrubs and trees, ſo that the upper part of the iſland is at preſent quite bare and deſolate. Before the trees and ſhrubs were deſtroyed, a great deal of manna fell there, which the natives gathered and ſent to Spain. The rabbits were firſt brought to Palma by Don Pedro Fernandez de Lago, the learned lieutenant-general of Teneriffe, and have ſince encreaſed in a ſurpriſing manner.

Palma affords nearly the ſame productions as Canaria, but a great quantity of ſugar is made here, particularly on the S. W. ſide of the iſland. The principal port is called by the ſame name, and is ſituated on the ſouth ſide of the iſland. The road is about a quarter of a mile from the ſhore, where veſſels generally ride in fifteen or twenty fathoms water; and with good anchors and cables, notwithſtanding the eaſterly winds, they may ride with great ſafety in all the winds that blow in this part of the world. The town is large, containing two pariſh churches, ſeveral convents, with many private buildings, though they are neither ſo good nor ſo large as thoſe in the city of Palmas in Canaria, or of the towns in Teneriffe. Near the mole is a caſtle or battery, mounted with ſome pieces of cannon, for the defence of the ſhips in the bay, and to prevent the landing of an enemy. There are no other towns of note in Palma; but many villages, the chief of which is called St. Andrew, where there are four engines for the making of ſugar; but the land hereabouts is very poor, ſo that the inhabitants are ſupplied from the iſland of Teneriffe with grain and other neceſſary articles.

For the amuſement of uninformed readers, we ſhall here add an account of the iſland of Ferro, and alſo a particular deſcription of the preſent natives of the iſlands of Canaria, Teneriffe, Palma, Gomera, and Ferro; their perſons, habit, diet, buildings, manners, cuſtoms, &c.

The Spaniards call the iſland of Ferro, Hierro, and the French the iſle de Fer, or the iſland of Iron: it is the moſt weſterly of all the Canaries, and is about thirty miles long, fifteen broad, and ſeventy-five in circumference. The French navigators formerly placed in the center of this iſland their firſt meridian for reckoning the longitude, as the Durch did theirs at the pike of Teneriffe; but at preſent moſt geographers reckon their firſt meridian from the capital of their own country, as the Engliſh from London, the French from Paris, &c. It being more convenient, and conveying a more diſtinct idea to ſay, that ſuch a place is ſo many leagues diſtant E. or W. from the capital of his own country, than to reckon the longitude from a diſtant land.

This iſland of Ferro riſes on all ſides ſteep and craggy from the ſea-ſhore above a league, ſo as to render the aſcent extremely difficult and fatiguing; but after travelling thus far, the reſt of the iſland will be found to be tolerably level and fruitful, abounding with many kinds of trees and ſhrubs, and producing better graſs, herbs, and flowers, than any of the other iſlands, whence bees thrive and multiply here in a very extraordinary manner, and excellent honey is made by them. There are but few ſprings in the whole iſland; and on account of the ſcarcity of water, the ſheep, goats, and ſwine, do not drink in ſummer, but quench their thirſt at that ſeaſon, by digging up and chewing the roots of fern. The great cattle are watered at a place where water diſtils from the leaves of a tree. Many authors have made mention of this tree, ſome of whom repreſent it as miraculous; while others deny its very exiſtence: but the author of the hiſtory of the Diſcovery and Conqueſt of the Canary Iſlands, gives a particular account of it, which we ſhall here inſert for the ſatisfaction of the curious.

In the cliff or ſteep rocky aſcent by which the whole iſland is ſurrounded, is a narrow gutter which commences at the ſea, and is continued to the ſummit of the cliff, where it joins, or coincides, with a valley terminated by the ſteep front of a rock, on the top of which grows a tree called in the language of the antient inhabitants garſe, or ſacred, which for many years has been preſerved entire, ſound, and freſh. Its leaves conſtantly diſtil ſo great a quantity of water, that it is ſufficient to furniſh drink to every living creature in Hierro, nature having provided this remedy for the drought of the iſland. It is diſtinct from other trees, and ſtands by itſelf: its trunk is about twelve ſpans in circumference; its height from the ground to the top of the higheſt branch is forty ſpans, and the circumference of all the branches together is one hundred and twenty feet. The branches are thick and extended, and the loweſt begin about the height of an ell from the ground. Its fruit reſembles an acorn, but taſtes like the kernel of a pine apple, only it is ſofter, and more aromatic; and the leaves reſemble thoſe of the laurel, but are larger, wider, and more curved. Theſe come forth in a perpetual ſucceſſion, whence the tree always remains green. Near it grows a thorn, which faſtens on many of its branches, with which it is interwoven, and ſome beech trees, breſos, and thorns, are at a ſmall diſtance from it. On the north ſide of the trunk are two large tanks or ciſterns of rough ſtone, or rather one ciſtern divided; each half being twenty feet ſquare, and ſixteen ſpans deep. One of theſe contains water for the drinking of the inhabitants, and the other that which they uſe for their cattle, waſhing, and the like purpoſes.

A cloud or miſt riſes from the ſea every morning, which the ſouth and eaſterly winds force againſt the above-mentioned ſteep cliff; when the cloud having no vent but by the gutter, gradually aſcends it, and advances ſlowly from thence to the extremity of the valley, and then reſts upon the wide-ſpreading branches of the tree, from whence it diſtils in drops during the remainder of the day, in the ſame manner as water drips from the leaves of trees after a heavy ſhower of rain. This diſtillation is not peculiar to the tree, for the breſos which grow near it alſo drop water; but their leaves being only few and narrow, the quantity is ſo trifling, that though the natives ſave ſome of it, yet they make little account of any but what diſtils from the tree; which, together with the water of ſome ſprings, is ſufficient to ſerve the natives and their cattle. It has been remarked, that this tree yields moſt water in thoſe years when the eaſterly winds have moſt prevailed; for by them alone the clouds or miſts are drawn hither from the ſea. A perſon lives near the ſpot on which the tree grows, who is appointed by the council to take care of it and its water, and is allowed a certain ſalary, with a houſe to live in. He daily diſtributes to each family of the diſtrict ſeven veſſels filled with water, beſides what he gives to the principal perſons of the iſland.

Mr. Glaſs ſays, he is unable to determine whether the tree which yields water at preſent be the ſame here deſcribed, but juſtly obſerves, that it is probable there have been a ſucceſſion of them. He himſelf did not ſee this tree, for this is the only iſland of all the Canaries which he did not viſit; but he obſerves, that he has ſailed with the natives of Hierro, who, when queſtioned about the exiſtence of this tree, anſwered in the affirmative; and takes notice, that trees yielding water are not peculiar to this iſland, ſince one of the ſame kind in the iſland of St. Thomas, in the gulf of Guiney, is mentioned by ſome travellers.

By reaſon of a ſcarcity of water, the ſoil, in ſome parts of this iſland, is very barren; but in others it is fertile, and produces all the neceſſary articles for the ſupport of the inhabitants. The ſheep, goats, and hogs, that are brought up in thoſe parts diſtant from the rivulets, feed almoſt all the year round on the roots of fern and aſphodil, and therefore have little occaſion for water, as the want of that element is ſupplied by the great moiſture that is naturally in thoſe roots.

There is only one ſmall town in this iſland, and the moſt diſtinguiſhed building in it is a pariſh church. Many ſmall villages are diſperſed about the town, but there are not any of them that deſerve a particular deſcription.

Small cattle, brandy, honey, and orchilla weed, are the chief articles of the trade carried on by the inhabitants of this iſland.

As to the original natives of the iſland of Ferro, we are told by travellers, that before it was rendered ſubject to Spain they were of a middle ſtature, and cloathed with the ſkins of beaſts. The men wore a cloak of three ſheep-ſkins ſewed together, with the woolly ſide outwards in ſummer, and next their bodies in winter. The women alſo wore the ſame kind of cloak, beſides which they had a petticoat, which reached down to the middle of their legs. They ſewed their ſkins with thongs cut as fine as thread, and for needles uſed ſmall bones ſharpened. They wore nothing on their heads, and their long hair was made up into a number of ſmall plaits. They had ſhoes made of the raw ſkins of ſheep, hogs, or goats. Theſe people had a grave turn of mind, for all their ſongs were on ſerious ſubjects, and ſet to ſlow plaintive tunes, to which they danced in a ring, joining hands, and ſometimes jumping up in pairs, ſo regularly that they ſeemed to be united; they ſtill practiſe in Ferro this manner of dancing. Their dwellings conſiſted of circular incloſures, formed by a ſtone wall without cement, each having one narrow entrance. On the inſide they placed poles or ſpars againſt the wall, one end reſting on the top, and the other extending a conſiderable diſtance to the ground; and theſe they covered with fern, or branches of trees. Each of theſe incloſures contained about twenty families. A bundle of fern, with goat-ſkin ſpread over it, ſerved them for a bed, and for bed-cloaths and coverings they uſed dreſſed goat ſkins to keep them warm. Before they offered the breaſt to a new-born child, they gave it fern roots roaſted, bruiſed, and mixed with butter; and at preſent they give them flour and barley-meal roaſted, and mixed with bruiſed cheeſe.

The natives uſually bake the fleſh of ſheep, goats, and hogs; and as they had no kind of grain, their bread was made of fern roots, of which, with milk and butter, the principal part of their diet was compoſed.

One king governed them all; and having never any occaſion to go to war, had no warlike weapons: they indeed carried long ſtaves; but theſe were only to aſſiſt them in travelling; for the country being ſo rocky, as to make it neceſſary frequently to leap from one ſtone to another, this they performed by means of theſe poles.

Polygamy was not allowed; but they had no reſtrictions with reſpect to their marriages, except a man's not being allowed to marry his mother or ſiſter; for every man might take the woman he liked beſt, and whoſe conſent he could obtain, without the leaſt regard to rank or nobility. Indeed all, except the king, were in this reſpect upon an equality: the only diſtinction among them conſiſted in the number of their flocks. It was uſual for the man, when he choſe a wife, to make a preſent of cattle to her father, according to his ability, in return for the favour of letting him have his daughter. The king received no particular tribute from his ſubjects; and every one made him a preſent of cattle; for they were not obliged to give him any thing, but according to their pleaſure or circumſtances. At a feaſt, they killed one or two fat lambs, according to the number of their gueſts: theſe they placed in a veſſel on the ground, ſitting round it in a circle, and never riſing till they had eaten the whole. Theſe feaſts are ſtill continued among their deſcendants. If a perſon fell ſick, they rubbed his body all over with butter and ſheep's marrow, covering him well up to keep him warm, but when a man happened to be wounded, they burned the part affected, and afterwards anointed it with butter. They buried their dead in caves; and if the deceaſed was a man of wealth, they interred him in his cloaths, and put a board at his feet, and the pole he uſed to travel with at his ſide; and, in order to prevent his being devoured by ravens, they cloſed the mouth of the cave with ſtones.

Murder and theft were the only crimes for which they inflicted corporal puniſhment. The murderer was put to death in the ſame manner as he had killed the deceaſed; and the thief, for the firſt offence, was puniſhed with the loſs of one of his eyes, and for the ſecond, of the other. This was done that he might not ſee to ſteal any more. The office of executioner on theſe occaſions, was performed by a particular perſon ſet apart for that purpoſe.

As to their religion, they worſhipped two deities, one of whom was male, the other female; the male was named Eraoranzan, and was the object of the men's adoration; the other, worſhipped by the women, was called Moneyba. They had no images, or viſible repreſentations of theſe deities; nor did they ever ſacrifice to them, but only prayed to them in their neceſſities, as when they wanted rain to bring up the graſs for the ſubſiſtence of their cattle, &c. The natives pretended, that when the gods were inclined to do them good, they came to the iſland, and alighted on two great rocks, which are in a place to which they gave the name of Ventayca, where they received the petitions of the people, and afterwards returned to their celeſtial abode; theſe rocks are now called by the Spaniards Los Antillos de los Antiquos, or the hills of the ancients.

We ſhall now give a particular deſcription of the preſent natives of Canaria, Teneriffe, Palma, Gomera, and Ferro, with an account of their perſons, dreſs, &c. previous to which it will be neceſſary to obſerve, that the deſcendants of this mixed nation are at preſent denominated Spaniards, whoſe language is that of the Caſtilian, which the gentry ſpeak in perfection; but the peaſants, in the remote parts of the iſlands, in an almoſt unintelligible manner, ſo that they are ſcarcely underſtood by ſtrangers.

The greateſt part of the natives are ſmall of ſtature, well made, and have good features; but they are more ſwarthy than the inhabitants of the ſouthern parts of Spain; their eyes, however, are fine, large, and ſparkling, and their countenances exceedingly expreſſive; but the old people have a very diſagreeable aſpect. People of diſtinction wore in common a camblet cloak of a dark red or black colour, a linen night-cap, bordered with lace; and a broad ſlouched hat. When they pay viſits, a coat, ſword, and white peruke are added, the latter of which forms a very odd contraſt to their duſky complexions, and what is ſtill more ſingular, they keep their large ſlouched hat upon their heads always in the houſe; but when they are out of doors, they carry them under their arm. Neither do they put on their perukes, upper coats, or ſwords, but when they walk in proceſſion, pay formal viſits, or go to church, on high feſtivals. The lower claſs of people wear their own black, buſhy hair, and tuck ſome of it behind the right ear; and their principal garment is a white looſe coat with a friar's cape, and girded round the middle with a ſaſh. This garment is long and narrow, and made of the wool of their own ſheep.

Women of inferior rank wear a piece of gauze on their heads, which falls down the ſhoulders, is pinned under the chin, and covers the neck and breaſt. A part of their dreſs is a broad-brimmed ſlouched hat, but they uſe this with more propriety than the men; for abroad they wear it upon their heads, whereby their faces are ſcreened from the ſcorching beams of the ſun. They throw a mantle over their ſhoulders, the goodneſs of which is in proportion to the condition of the wearer. They wear jackets inſtead of ſtays, and are all very fond of a great number of petticoats. The principal ladies of Grand Canaria and Teneriffe dreſs after the faſhion of France and England, and pay viſits in chariots; but none walk the ſtreets without being vailed, though ſome are ſo careleſs in the uſe of their vails, that they take care to let their faces and necks be ſeen. Some ladies have their hair curiouſly plaited, and faſtened to the crown of their head with a gold comb. Their mantles are very rich, and they wear a profuſion of jewels; but they render their appearance ridiculous to ſtrangers, from that clumſineſs of dreſs, and aukwardneſs of gait, which is obſervable in both ſexes.

The poorer ſort of people are afflicted with many loathſome diſorders, and are naturally very filthy; the gentry, however, affect great delicacy. Both ſexes go every morning to hear maſs; and moſt of them go before they take any refreſhment. Their breakfaſt is uſually chocolate: they dine at noon: and ſhut up the doors till three o'clock. People in good circumſtances have four courſes brought to table. The firſt diſh conſiſts of ſoup made of beef, mutton, pork, bacon, potatoes, turnips, carrots, onions, and ſaffron, ſtewed together, with thin ſlices of bread put into the diſh. The ſecond courſe conſiſts of roaſted meat, fowls, &c. The third is the olio, or ingredients of which the ſoup was made. After which, comes the deſert, conſiſting of fruit and ſweet-meats. The company drink freely of wine, or wine and water, while at dinner; but have no wine after the cloth is removed. While drinking, their toaſts are much like ours. When dinner is over, a large ſilver diſh, filled with water, is ſet upon the table; when the whole company, all at once, waſh in it; and then a ſervant, who ſtands at the lower end of the table, cries, "Bleſſed and praiſed be the moſt holy ſacrament of the altar, and the clear and pure conception of the moſt holy virgin, conceived in grace from the firſt inſtant of her natural exiſtence. Ladies and gentlemen, much good may it do you!" After which, making a low bow to the company, he retires. They then riſe, and each goes to his apartment, to take a nap for about an hour; which proves a great refreſhment in this warm climate. Thoſe of higher ſtations have generally a friar for one of their gueſts, who we may ſuppoſe is the confeſſor to ſome of the family, and frequently behaves with great rudeneſs; yet neither the maſter of the houſe, nor any of the company, chuſe to take much notice of it. Mr. Glaſs was once invited to dine with a gentleman, where a Franciſcan friar made one of the company; but no ſooner had they begun to eat, than the friar aſked him if he was a chriſtian? He anſwered, that he hoped ſo. He was then deſired to rehearſe the Apoſtle's creed; but anſwering, that he knew nothing about it, the reverend father ſtared full in his face, and exclaimed, "O thou black aſs!" Offended at this piece of ill manners, our author aſked, What he meant by treating him in that manner? When the friar only anſwered by repeating the abuſe; the maſter of the houſe endeavoured in vain to perſuade him to give over; but as the perſon did not at that time underſtand Spaniſh ſo well as to expreſs himſelf fluently, he aroſe and left the houſe, after telling the gentleman, that he ſaw he was unable to protect him from inſults at his own table. They treat with chocolate and ſweetmeats in the morning and evening viſits; but in the ſummer evenings with ſnow-water. People ſup between eight and nine, and retire to reſt ſoon after. The diet of the common people conſiſts of goffio, fruit, and wine, with ſalt fiſh brought from the coaſt of Barbary. Some think their being ſubject to the itch, is owing to their eating ſo much of this laſt food. In the ſummer ſeaſon freſh fiſh is pretty plentiful, but more ſcarce and dear at other times of the year.

People of rank here have houſes too ſtories high, which are handſome ſquare buildings, of ſtone and mortar, with an open court in the middle like our public inns in England, and like them have balconies running round, which are on a level with the floor of the ſecond ſtory. The ſtreet-door is placed in the middle of the front of the houſe, and within that door is a ſecond, the ſpace between them being the breadth of the rooms of the houſe. The court-yard, which is on the inſide, is large or ſmall according to the ſize of the building, and is uſually paved with flags, pebbles, or other ſtones. In the centre of the court is a ſquare or circular ſtone-wall about four feet high, filled with earth, in which are commonly planted orange, banana, or other trees common in theſe parts. The lower ſtory of each quarter of the houſe conſiſts entirely of ſtore-rooms, or cellars. The ſtairs leading to the ſecond ſtory uſually begin at the right or left hand corner of the entrance of the court, and conſiſt of two flights of ſteps, which lead into the gallery, from which one may enter any room on the ſecond ſtory. The principal apartments are generally in that quarter of the houſe facing the ſtreet, which contains a hall with an apartment at each end. Theſe rooms are the whole breadth of the quarter, and the hall is twice the length of any of the apartments at its extremities. The windows of theſe rooms are formed of wooden lattices, curiouſly wrought; none of them looking inwards to the court; but they are all in the outſide wall. Some great houſes have balconies in the middle of the front, on the outſide above the gate, equal with the floor of the ſecond ſtory; and ſome have a gallery which runs from one end of the front to the other, but the outſide of the houſe has ſeldom any. They white-waſh all the apartments; and thoſe at the extremities of the great halls, with ſome of the reſt, are lined with fine mats about five feet high, and the floor is ſometimes covered with the ſame. The ſides of the windows of all the rooms are lined with boards to prevent people's cloaths being whitened; for they commonly ſit in the window, there being benches on each ſide of it for that purpoſe; and when the maſter of the houſe intends to ſhew a ſtranger reſpect, he always conducts him to the window, to converſe with him. The great hall, and the walls of ſome of the apartments, are hung with paintings, repreſenting the virgin, the twelve apoſtles, ſaints and martyrs, uſually drawn as large as life, and diſtinguiſhed by ſome circumſtance of their hiſtory. Thus St. Peter is uſually repreſented looking at a cock and weeping, and a great bunch of keys always hangs at his girdle. St. Anthony preaching to the fiſhes, is one of their favourite paintings. Their beds have ſeldom any curtains, for theſe they conſider as receptacles for fleas and bugs, which abound here extremely. They chiefly uſe matraſſes ſpread on the floor upon fine mats; beſides the ſheets, there is a blanket and above that a ſilk quilt. The ſheets, pillows, and quilt are frequently fringed or pinked, like the ſhrouds uſed for the dead with us. There is a place in a particular apartment, raiſed a ſtep higher than the floor, covered with mats or carpets; and there the women generally ſit together upon cuſhions, both to receive viſits from their own ſex, and give directions concerning their houſhold affairs. The houſes of the peaſants and lower ſort of people, though only one ſtory high, are built of ſtone and lime, and the roofs are either thatched or tiled. Theſe are generally neat, clean and commodious. Indeed there is but little dirt or duſt in theſe iſlands to make them uncleanly; for the ground is moſtly rocky, and ſeldom wet, from the almoſt continual fine weather.

The deportment of the natives is grave, but at the ſame time tempered with great quickneſs and ſenſibility; the women, in particular, are remarkable for their ſprightlineſs, and vivacity of their converſation, which is ſaid greatly to exceed that of the Engliſh, French, or northern nations. The great families in theſe iſlands would be highly offended ſhould any one tell them, they are deſcended from the Moors, or even from the ancient inhabitants of theſe iſlands; yet it would not perhaps be difficult to prove, that moſt of their cuſtoms have been handed down to them from thoſe people. The gentry boaſt much of their birth, and indeed that they are deſcended from the beſt families in Spain, there is no reaſon to doubt.

They have the utmoſt contempt for the employment of a butcher, taylor, miller, or porter. It is not indeed very ſurpriſing, that they ſhould not have any great eſteem for the profeſſion of a butcher, or that the employment of a taylor ſhould be conſidered as ſomewhat too effeminate for a man; but it is difficult to imagine why millers and porters ſhould be deſpiſed, eſpecially the former; but it muſt be conſidered, that the millers here are generally eſteemed great thieves; and as the maſter of every family ſends his own corn to be ground, unleſs it be narrowly watched, the miller will take too much toll. It is ſaid when any criminal is to ſuffer death, and the executioner happens to be out of the way, the officers of juſtice have the power of ſeizing the firſt butcher, miller, or porter they can find, and of obliging him to diſcharge that office; ſuch is their diſlike to perſons of theſe occupations. Mr. Glaſs, once touching at the iſland of Gomera to procure freſh water, hired ſome poor ragged fiſhermen to fill the water caſks, and bring them on board; but ſome time after, going to the watering place to ſee what progreſs they had made, he found the caſks full, and all ready for rolling down to the beach, with the fiſhermen ſtanding by, talking together, as if they had nothing farther to do. He reprimanded them for their lazineſs in not diſpatching the buſineſs in which he had employed them; when one of them, with a diſdainful air, replied, "What do you take us to be, Sir? "Do you imagine we are porters? No, Sir, we are ſea- "men." Notwithſtanding all his intreaties and promiſes of reward, he was unable to prevail upon any of them to roll the caſk to the water ſide; but was at laſt obliged to hire porters, to do the buſineſs. But the gentry of theſe iſlands, though for the moſt part poor, yet are extremely polite and well bred, the very peaſants and labouring people have a conſiderable ſhare of good manners, with little of that ſurly ruſticity which is too common among the lower claſs of people in England; yet they do not ſeem to be abaſhed in the preſence of their ſuperiors. A beggar aſks charity of a gentleman, by ſaying, "For the love of God, Sir, "pleaſe to give me half a rial;" and if the other gives him nothing, he returns, "For the love of God, I beg your worſhip's pardon," and then departs.

The common people and ſervants here are much addicted to private pilfering, for which they are uſually puniſhed by being diſcharged the ſervice, beaten, or impriſoned for a ſhort time. Highway robberies are ſeldom or never known; but murder is more common than in England; and they have no notion of duels, for they cannot imagine that becauſe a man has the courage to fight, he thereby atones for the injury done to another, or that it ought to give him a right to do him a greater. When the murderer has killed a man, he flies to a church for refuge, till he can find an opportunity to eſcape to another iſland; and if he had been greatly provoked or injured by the deceaſed, and did not kill him deſignedly, every body will be ready to aſſiſt him to eſcape, except the near relations of the perſon who has loſt his life; yet quarrels are far from being frequent here, which may be owing to the want of taverns and other public houſes, their polite behaviour, the little intercourſe there is between them, and their temperance in drinking. Perſons of the lower claſs never fight in public, but if one perſon puts another into a violent paſſion, the injured party, if able, takes his revenge in the beſt manner he can, till he thinks he has had ſatisfaction, without any regard to the equity of the method he uſes for this purpoſe.

The inhabitants of the Canary iſlands are in general extremely temperate; or at leaſt, if they are otherwiſe, it is in private only; for nothing can be a greater diſgrace there, than to be ſeen drunk; and a man who can be proved a drunkard, is not permitted to give evidence, or take his oath, in a court of judicature. Hence thoſe that are fond of liquor, intoxicate themſelves in their chambers, and then lie down, in order to ſleep till they are ſober. Thoſe of all ranks in theſe iſlands are extremely amorous; but their notions of love are pretty ſingular; which may perhaps be attributed to the want of innocent freedom between the ſexes. However, they do not ſeem to be inclined to jealouſy, any more than the Engliſh or French. It is uſual for young people here to fall in love at ſight; and if the parties agree to marry, but find their parents averſe to their union, they complain to the curate of the pariſh, who goes to the houſe where the girl lives, and endeavours to perſuade them to agree to her marriage; but if they refuſe to conſent to their union, he takes her away before their faces, without their being able to hinder him, and either places her in a convent, or with ſome of her relations, where ſhe muſt remain till they conſent to her marriage. We have been informed that a lady will ſometimes ſend a man an offer of her perſon in an honourable way; if he declines it, he keeps the matter ſecret till death, ſhould he do otherwiſe, he would be looked upon by all people in the moſt deſpicable light. Young men are not allowed to court the youth of the other ſex without an intention to marry them; for if a woman can prove that a man has, in any inſtance, endeavoured to engage her affections, ſhe can oblige him to marry her. This, like many other good laws, is abuſed; for looſe women taking advantage of it, frequently lay ſnares to entrap the ſimple and unwary; and ſometimes worthleſs young men, form deſigns upon the fortunes of ladies, without having the leaſt regard for their perſons: there are not, however, many mercenary lovers in this part of the world, their notions in general being too refined and romantic to admit the idea of that paſſion being made ſubſervient to their ambition or intereſt; and yet there are more unhappy marriages here than in the countries where innocent freedoms being allowed between the ſexes, lovers are not ſo blinded by their paſſions, as not to perceive the frailties and imperfections of their miſtreſſes. On the death of a man's wife, it is uſual for ſome of his relations to come to his houſe, and reſide with him for ſome time, in order to divert his grief, and do not leave him till another relation comes to relieve the firſt, the ſecond is relieved by a third, and thus they ſucceed each other for the ſpace of a year.

Each of the Canary iſlands, as well as every town and family, hath a peculiar tutelary ſaint for its patron, whoſe day is celebrated as a feſtival, by a ſermon preached in honour of the ſaint, and a ſervice ſuited to the occaſion. On theſe days, the ſtreet near the church is ſtrewed with flowers and leaves, a multitude of wax candles are lighted, and a conſiderable number of fire works played off.

A kind of fair is generally held on the eve of theſe feſtivals, to which the people of the adjacent country reſort, and ſpend the greateſt part of the night in mirth and dancing to the ſound of the guittar, accompanied with the voices not only of thoſe who play on that inſtrument, but by thoſe of the dancers. The dances practiſed here are ſarabands and folias, which are ſlow dances; thoſe which are quick are the canario, firſt uſed by the Canarians; the fandango, which is chiefly practiſed by the vulgar; and the rapetes, which nearly reſembles our hornpipe. Some of theſe dancers may be termed dramatic, as the men ſing verſes to their partners, who anſwer them in the ſame manner. Moſt of the natives of theſe iſlands can play on the guittar, and they have in general excellent voices.

For the entertainment of the populace, plays are acted in the ſtreets, at the feaſts of the tutelar ſaints of Teneriffe, Canaria, and Palma; but the performers cannot be ſuppoſed to riſe to any degree of perfection, as they are not profeſſed actors, and only ſome of the inhabitants of the place ſeem to have a natural turn for acting.

The gentry frequently take the air on horſeback; but when the ladies are obliged to travel, they ride on aſſes, and inſtead of a ſaddle, they uſe a kind of chair, in which they ſit very commodiouſly. The principal roads are paved with pebble-ſtones, like thoſe uſed in the ſtreets of London. There are a few chariots in Canaria, the town of Santa Cruz, and the city of Laguna in Teneriffe; theſe are all drawn by mules, but they are kept rather for ſhew than uſe; for the roads are not proper for wheel carriages, being ſteep and rocky. The lower claſs of people divert themſelves with dancing, ſinging, and playing on the guittar; likewiſe with throwing a ball through a ring placed at a great diſtance, cards, wreſtling, and quoits. The peaſants, particularly thoſe of Gomera, have the art of leaping from rock to rock when they travel, which is thus performed: the long ſtaff or pole uſed on theſe occaſions, has an iron ſpike at the end of it, and when a man wants to deſcend from one rock to another, he aims the point of the pole at the place where he intends to alight, and then throws himſelf towards it, pitching the end of the pole ſo as to bring it to a perpendicular, and then ſlides down it to the rock on which he fixed it.

In the convents, children are taught reading, writing, Latin, arithmetic, logic, and other branches of philoſophy. The ſcholars read the claſſics; but the Greek is never taught here, and is entirely unknown even to the ſtudents in divinity. They are particularly fond of civil law and logic, but the latter is chiefly preferred.

The people belonging to theſe iſlands have a genius for poetry, and compoſe verſes of different meaſures, which they ſet to muſic. Some of their ſongs, and other poetical pieces, would be greatly eſteemed in a country were taſte for poetry prevails. Few of thoſe books called profane (to diſtinguiſh them from thoſe of a religious kind) are read here, ſince they cannot be imported into the iſland without being firſt examined by the inquiſition; a court which nobody cares to have any concern with. The hiſtory of the wars in Granada is in every body's hands, and is read by people of all ranks; they half alſo ſome plays, moſt of which are very good. Thomas a Kempis, and the Devout Pilgrim, are in every library, and much admired. But the books moſt read by the laity are the Lives of the Saints and Martyrs, which may be conſidered as a kind of religious romances, ſtuffed with legends, and the moſt abſurd and improbable ſtories.

With reſpect to the civil government of the iſlands of Canaria, Teneriffe, and Palma, which are called the king's iſlands, it will be proper to obſerve, in the firſt place, that the natives, on their ſubmitting to the crown of Spain, were ſo far from being deprived of their liberty, that they were put on an equality with their conquerors, in which the Spaniards ſhewed great wiſdom and policy; but how they came afterwards to act in a quite contrary manner in America, is hard to determine: perhaps they might be apprehenſive, that if they proceeded with too much rigour againſt them at firſt, they might in time be induced to ſhake off the yoke, and diſpoſſeſs their tyrannical maſters, which we are informed, by late events, has proved to be the caſe in South America, as the following piece of intelligence, publiſhed in September 1782, announces: "You have repeatedly heard it reported, that there was a rebellion in Chili and Peru, in South America; and though the Spaniards do all they can to keep it a ſecret, I can aſſure you, from undoubted authority, that all the mines in Peru and the city of Pez, which is ſituated in the interior part of the country, where they lodged their bars of gold and ſilver, and other valuables, are taken from them, and there were one hundred and fifty millions of piaſtres taken out of the ſtrong cheſts. The natives will very ſoon have the whole country in their poſſeſſion, for they deſtroy every white man, woman, and child, and even kill every one begot between a Spaniard and a native." But to return. After the conqueſt of the Canary Iſlands, the Spaniards incorporated with the natives in ſuch a manner as to become one people with them, and in conſequence of this political union, the king of Spain is able to raiſe in theſe iſlands more ſoldiers and ſeamen than in any other part of his dominions of three times their extent. The alcade, who is a juſtice of peace, is the loweſt officer except the alguazils; there is one of them in every town or village of note. Theſe magiſtrates are appointed by the royal audience of the city of Palmas, in Canaria: they hold their places only for a certain time, and, in caſes of property, can take cognizance of no diſputes where the value of what is contended for exceeds ſeventeen rials, or ſeven ſhillings ſterling. Over theſe magiſtrates is the alcade major, who is appointed in the ſame manner as the other, and cannot decide any caſe relating to property, that exceeds the ſum of two hundred dollars. From the deciſion of thoſe magiſtrates, appeals lie to the tiniente and corregidor: the firſt of whom is a lawyer, and nominated by the royal audience; but the latter, who is appointed by the king, is not obliged to be a lawyer, yet muſt have a ſecretary, clerk, or aſſiſtant bred to the law. The corregidor generally holds his place five years, and ſometimes longer. Few of the natives enjoy this honourable office, which is commonly filled by Spaniards. The proceedings of the corregidor's court, and in that of the tiniente, are the ſame; theſe courts ſeeming to have been originally intended as a check upon each other. Appeals are made from the corregidor and tiniente to the royal audience of Grand Canaria; a tribunal compoſed of three oidores, or judges, a regent, and fiſcal, who are uſually natives of Spain, and are always appointed by the king. The governor-general is preſident of this court, though he reſides in Teneriffe. In criminal cauſes there is no appeal from their determination: but appeals are carried to the council or audience of Seville in Spain, in matters reſpecting property.

In the Canary Iſlands, the ſtanding forces amount only to about an hundred and fifty men; but there is a militia of which the governor-general of the iſland is always commander in chief, and the officers, as colonels, captains, and ſubalterns, are appointed by the king. There are alſo governors of forts and caſtles, ſome of which are appointed by the king, and others by the twelve regidors of the iſlands, called the cavildo; ſome of the forts belong to the king, and the reſt are under the direction of the regidors, or ſub-governors, who alſo take care of the repair of the highways, prevent nuiſances, and the plague from being brought into the iſland by ſhipping; for no man is allowed to land in theſe iſlands from any ſhip, till the maſter produces a bill of health from the laſt port, or till the crew have been examined by the proper officers. The royal revenue ariſes from the following articles: a third of the tithes, which ſcarcely amounts to a tenth part of them, the clergy appropriating almoſt the whole to themſelves. This third part was given by the pope to the king of Spain, in conſideration of his maintaining a perpetual war againſt the infidels. The ſecond branch conſiſts in the monopoly of tobacco and ſnuff, which the king's officers ſell on his account, no other perſons being allowed to deal in thoſe articles. Another branch of the revenue ariſes from the orchilla-weed, all of which in the iſlands of Teneriffe, Canaria, and Palma, belong to the king, and is part of his revenue; but the orchilla of the other iſlands belongs to their reſpective proprietors. The fourth branch conſiſts of the acknowledgment annually paid by the nobility to the king for their titles, which amounts to a mere trifle. The fifth branch is a duty of ſeven per cent. on imports and exports: and the ſixth duty on the Canary Weſt India commerce. All theſe branches, the ſixth excepted, are ſaid not to bring into the king's treaſury above fifty thouſand pounds per annum, clear of the expences of government, and all charges relating thereto.

Having departed from Madeira on the 1ſt of Auguſt, on the 9th we croſſed the Tropic of Cancer, and at nine in the morning came in ſight of Bonaviſta, bearing S. W. by W. about two leagues. This day Capt. Cook made from the inſpiſſated juice of malt three puncheons of beer. The proportion of water to juice was ten of the former to one of the latter. We had on board nineteen half barrels of inſpiſſated juice, fifteen of which were made from wort that had been hopped before it was inſpiſſated. This you may mix with cold water, in a proportion of one part of juice to eight of water, or one part to twelve; then ſtop it down, and in a few days it will be briſk and fit to drink; but the firſt ſort, after having been mixed as above directed, will require to be fermented with yeaſt, in the manner as is done in making beer; however, we found this not always neceſſary, as we at firſt imagined. This juice would be a moſt valuable article at ſea, could it be kept from fermenting, which it did at this time by the heat of the weather, and the agitation of the ſhip, that all our endeavours to ſtop it were in vain.

On Monday the 10th we paſſed the iſland of Mayo, on our ſtarboard ſide, and at two P. M. came to an anchor, eighteen fathom water, in Port Praya, in the iſle of St. Jago, one of the Cape de Verds. An officer was ſent on ſhore for leave to procure what refreſhments we wanted, which was readily granted; and on his return we ſaluted the fort with eleven guns. Here both ſhips were ſupplied with plenty of good water. We alſo recruited our live ſtock, ſuch as hogs, goats and poultry, ſome of which continued alive during the remainder of the voyage.

The Cape de Verd iſlands are ſituated in 14 deg. 10 min. N. latitude, and 16 deg. 30 min. W. longitude. They were ſo called from a cape of the ſame name oppoſite to them, and were diſcovered by Anthony Noel, a Genoeſe, in the ſervice of Portugal, in the year 1640, and are about twenty in number; but ſome of them are only barren uninhabited rocks. The cape took its name from the perpetual verdure with which it is covered. The Portugueze give them the name of Les Ilhas de Verdes, either from the verdure of the cape, or elſe from an herb called ſargaſſo, which is green, and floats on the water all round them. His Portugueſe majeſty appoints a viceroy to govern them, who conſtantly reſides in the iſland of St. Jago. The Dutch call them the Salt Iſlands, from the great quantities of that commodity produced in ſeveral of them. The principal of theſe are, 1. May, or Mayo; 2. San Jago, or Saint James's; 3. Sal or Salt; 4. Buena, or Bono Viſta, or Good Sight; 5. St. Philip's, otherwiſe called Fuego, or the iſland of Fire; 6. St. John, or San Juan; 7. St. Nicholas; 8. St. Vincent; 9. St. Anthony; 10. St. Lucia; 11. Brava. Their ſoil is very ſtony and barren; the climate exceeding hot, and in ſome of them very unwholeſome; however, the principal part of them are fertile, and produce various ſorts of grain and fruits, particularly rice, maiz, or Indian wheat, bananas, lemons, citrons, oranges, pomegranates, cocoa-nuts, and figs. They have alſo calavances, a ſort of pulſe like French beans, and great quantities of pumpkins, on which the inhabitants chiefly ſubſiſt. They produce alſo two other fruits of a remarkable nature, viz. the cuſtard apple, and the papah. The former of theſe is as large as a pomegranate, and nearly of the ſame colour. The outſide huſk, ſhell, or rind, is in ſubſtance and thickneſs between the ſhell of a pomegranate and the peel of a Seville orange, ſofter than the former, yet more brittle than the latter. The coat or rind is alſo remarkable for being covered with ſmall regular knobs or riſings; and the inſide of the fruit is full of a white ſoft pulp, which in its form, colour and taſte, greatly reſembles a cuſtard, from whence it received its name, which was probably firſt given it by the Europeans. It has in the middle a few ſmall black ſtones, but no core, for the whole of it is entire pulp. The tree that bears this fruit is about the ſize of a quince-tree, and has long ſlender branches that ſpread a conſiderable way from the trunk. Only ſome of the branches bear fruit, for though theſe trees are large, yet in general ſuch trees do not produce above twenty or thirty apples. The fruit grows at the extremity of theſe branches, upon a ſtalk about nine or ten inches long. The other fruit, called the papah, is about the ſize of a muſk melon, and reſembles it in ſhape and colour both within and without; only in the middle, inſtead of flat kernels, which the melons have, theſe have a quantity of ſmall blackiſh ſeeds, about the ſize of pepper-corns, the taſte of which is much the ſame as that ſpice. The tree on which this fruit grows, is about ten or twelve feet high; the trunk is thickeſt at the bottom, from whence it gradually decreaſes to the top, where it is very thin and taper. It has not any ſmall branches, but only large leaves, that grow immediately on the ſtalks from the body. The leaves are of a roundiſh form, and jagged about the edges, having their ſtalks or ſtumps longer or ſmaller, as they grow nearer or farther from the top: they begin to ſpring out of the body of the tree at about ſix or ſeven feet high from the ground, the trunk being below that entirely bare, and the leaves grow thick all the way from thence to the top, where they are very cloſe and broad. The fruit grow only among the leaves, and moſt plentiful where the leaves are thickeſt; ſo that towards the top of the tree the papahs ſpring forth from it in cluſters. It is, however, to be obſerved, that where they grow ſo thick, they are but ſmall, being no bigger than ordinary turneps; whereas thoſe nearer the middle of the trunk, where the leaves are not ſo thick, grow to the firſt-mentioned ſize.

Various ſorts of poultry abound in theſe iſlands, particularly curlews, Guiney hens, and flamingoes, the latter of which are very numerous. The flamingo is a large bird, much like a heron in ſhape, but bigger, and of a reddiſh colour; they go in flocks, but are ſo ſhy, that it is very difficult to catch them: they build their neſts in ſhallow ponds, where there is much mud, which they ſcrape together, making little hillocks, like ſmall iſlands, that appear about a foot and a half above the ſurface of the water. They make the foundations of theſe hillocks broad, bringing them up taper to the top, where they leave a ſmall hollow pit to lay their eggs in: they never lay more than two eggs, and ſeldom leſs. The young ones cannot fly till they are almoſt full grown, but they run with ſurpriſing ſwiftneſs: their tongues are broad and long, having a large lump of fat at the root, which is delicious in its taſte, and ſo greatly admired, that a diſh of them will produce a very conſiderable ſum of money. Their fleſh is lean, and of a dingy colour, but it neither taſtes fiſhy, nor any ways unpleaſant. Here are alſo ſeveral other ſorts of fowls, as pigeons and turtle doves; miniotas, a ſort of land fowl, as big as crows, of a grey colour, and the fleſh well taſted; cruſias, another ſort of grey-coloured fowl, almoſt as large as the former; theſe are only ſeen in the night, and their fleſh is ſaid to be exceeding ſalutary to people in a decline, by whom they are uſed. They have likewiſe great plenty of partridges, quails, and other ſmall birds, and rabbets in prodigious numbers.

Many wild animals abound here, particularly lions, tigers and camels, the latter of which are remarkably large. There are alſo great numbers of monkies, baboons, and civet-cats, and various kinds of reptiles. The tame animals are horſes, aſſes, ſheep, mules, cows, goats and hogs; and here the European ſhips bound for the Eaſt Indies, uſually ſtop to take in freſh water and proviſions, with which they are always plentifully ſupplied.

Fiſh of various ſorts abound in the ſea, particularly dolphins, bonettas, mullets, ſnappers, ſilver fiſh, &c. and here is ſuch plenty of turtle, that ſeveral foreign ſhips come yearly to catch them. In the wet ſeaſon the turtles go aſhore to lay their eggs in the ſand, which they leave to be hatched by the heat of the ſun. The fleſh of the turtles, well cured, is as great a ſupply to the American plantations, as cod-fiſh is to Europe. The inhabitants go out by night and catch the turtles, by turning them on their backs with poles; for they are ſo large that they cannot do it with their hands.

In theſe iſlands are many European families, all of whom profeſs the Roman Catholic religion. The natives are all negroes, and much like their African neighbours, from whom they are ſuppoſed to be deſcended; though, as they are ſubject to the Portugueze, their own religion and language prevail among them. Both men and women are ſtout, and well limbed, and they are in general of a civil and quiet diſpoſition. Their dreſs (particularly in the iſland of St. John) is very trifling, conſiſting only of a piece of cotton cloth wound round the waiſt. The women ſometimes throw it over the head, and the men acroſs the ſhoulders. Neither ſex wear ſhoes or ſtockings, except on certain feſtivals. The men are particularly fond of wearing breeches, if they can get them, and are very happy if they have but a waiſtband and flap before, be they ever ſo ragged.

The iſland of Mayo, or May, obtained its name from its being diſcovered on the firſt of that month. It is ſituated in 15 deg. 5 min. N. latitude, near 300 miles from Cape Verd, and is about 17 miles in circumference. The ſoil is in general very barren, and water ſcarce: however, here are plenty of cows, goats, and aſſes; and alſo ſome corn, yams, potatoes and plantains. The trees are ſituated on the ſides of the hills, and the natives have ſome water-melons and figs. The ſea likewiſe abounds with wild fowl, fiſh and turtle. There grows on this iſland, as well as on moſt of the others, a kind of vegetable ſtone, extremely porous, of a greyiſh colour, which ſhoots up in ſtems, and forms ſomething like the head of a cauliflower.

On the weſt ſide of the iſland is a ſand-bank that runs two or three miles along the ſhore, within which is a large ſalina, or ſalt-pond, encompaſſed by the ſand-bank, and the hills beyond it. The whole ſalt-pond is about two miles in length, and half a mile wide; but the greater part of it is generally dry. The north end, which is always ſupplied with water, produces ſalt from November till May, thoſe months being the dry ſeaſon of the year. The waters yield this ſalt out of the ſea, through a hole in the ſand-bank, and the quantity that flows into it is in proportion to the height of the tides: in the common courſe it is very gentle, but when the ſpring tides ariſe, it is ſupplied in abundance. If there is any ſalt in the pond, when the fluſh of water comes in, it ſoon diſſolves; but in two or three days after it begins to congeal, and ſo continues till a freſh ſupply of water from the ſea comes in again. A conſiderable trade for ſalt is carried on by the Engliſh, and the armed ſhips deſtined to ſecure the African commerce, afford the veſſels thus engaged their protection. The inhabitants of the iſland are principally employed in this buſineſs during the ſeaſon: they rake it together, and wheel it out of the pond in barrows, from whence they convey it to the ſea-ſide on the backs of aſſes, which animals are very numerous here. The pond is not above half a mile from the landing-place; ſo that they go backwards and forwards many times in the day; but they reſtrain themſelves to a certain number, which they ſeldom exceed.

There are ſeveral ſorts of fowl, particularly flamingoes, curlews, and Guiney hens. Their chief cattle are cows, goats, and hogs, which are reckoned the beſt in all the Cape de Verd iſlands. Beſides the fruits abovementioned, they have calavanes and pumpkins, which are the common food of the inhabitants.

The inhabitants of this iſland live in three ſmall towns, the principal of which is called Pimont, and contains two churches, with as many prieſts; the other is called St. John, and has one church; and the third, which has a church alſo, is called Lagos. The houſes are very mean, ſmall, and low; they are built with the wood of the fig tree (that being the only one fit for the purpoſe that grows on the iſland) and the rafters are made of a ſort of wild cane which grows here.

The Portugueſe governor of St. Jago grants the patent to the negro governor of this iſland, whoſe ſituation is tolerably advantageous, as every commander that lades ſalt here is obliged to compliment him with a preſent. He ſpends moſt of his time with the Engliſh in the ſalting ſeaſon, which is his harveſt, and a very buſy time with all the natives. Theſe people have not any veſſels of their own, nor do any Portugueſe ſhips come hither, ſo that the Engliſh are the chief on whom they depend for trade; and though they are ſubjects of Portugal, they have a particular eſteem for the Engliſh nation. Aſſes are alſo a great commodity of trade here; and are ſo plentiful, that ſeveral European ſhips from Barbadoes and other plantations, come annually to freight with them to carry thither.

The iſland of St. Jago, or St. James's iſland, is ſituated about four leagues to the weſtward of Mayo, between the 15th and 16th deg. N. lat. and in the 23d of W. long. This iſland is the moſt fruitful and beſt inhabited of all the Cape de Verd iſlands, notwithſtanding it is very mountainous, and has a great deal of barren land in it. The principal town is called after the name of the iſland, and is ſituated in 15 deg. N. latitude. It ſtands againſt the ſides of two mountains, between which there is a deep valley two hundred yards wide, that runs within a ſmall ſpace of the ſea. In that part of the valley next the ſea is a ſtraggling ſtreet, with houſes on each ſide, and a rivulet of water in the bottom, which empties itſelf into a fine cove or ſandy bay, where the ſea is generally very ſmooth, ſo that ſhips ride there with great ſafety. A ſmall fort ſtands near the landing place from this bay, where a guard is conſtantly kept, and near it is a battery mounted with a few ſmall cannon.

The town of St. John contains about three hundred houſes, all built of rough ſtone, and it has one ſmall church and a convent. The inhabitants of the town are in general very poor, having but little trade. Their chief manufacture is ſtriped cotton cloth, which the Portugueſe ſhips purchaſe of them, in their way to Brazil, and ſupply them with ſeveral European commodities in return.

A tolerable large town is on the eaſt ſide of the iſland, called Praya, where there is a good port, which is ſeldom without ſhips, eſpecially in peaceable times. Moſt of the European ſhips bound to the Eaſt Indies touch at this port to take in water and proviſions, but they ſeldom ſtop here on their return to Europe. The town of Praya does not contain any remarkable building, except a fort, ſituated on the top of a hill, which commands the harbour. When the European ſhips are here, the country people bring down their commodities to ſell to the ſeamen and paſſengers; theſe articles generally conſiſt of bullocks, hogs, goats, fowls, eggs, plantains, and cocoa-nuts, which they exchange for ſhirts, drawers, handkerchiefs, hats, waiſtcoats, breeches, and linen of any kind.

The port of Praya, a ſmall bay, is ſituated about the middle of the ſouth ſide of the iſland of St. Jago, in the latitude of 14 deg. 53 min. 30 ſec. N. and 23 deg. 30 min. W. longitude. It is diſcovered, eſpecially in coming in from the eaſt, by the ſouthermoſt hill on the iſland, and which lies weſt from the port. The entrance of the bay is formed by two points, rather low, being W. S. W. and E. N. E. half a league from each other. Near the weſt point are ſunken rocks, whereon the ſea continually breaks. The bay lies in N. W. about half a league. We watered at a well, behind the beach, at the head of the bay. The water is ſcarce, but it is difficult to get it aboard, on account of a great ſurf on the beach. The refreſhments to be procured here will be found in the courſe of our account of the iſlands. Other articles may be purchaſed of the natives in exchange for old cloaths, &c. Bullocks can only be bought with money; the price twelve Spaniſh dollars per head, weighing between 250 and 300 pounds; but the ſale of them is confined to a company of merchants, to whom this privilege is granted, and who keep an agent reſiding on the ſpot. The bay is protected by a fort well ſituated for the purpoſe of defence.

The complexion of the natives of this town and St. Jago inclines to black, or is at leaſt of a mixed colour, except ſome few of the better ſort that reſide in the latter, among whom are the governor, the biſhop, and ſome of the padres (fathers) or prieſts. The people of St. Jago town, as they live under the governor's eye, are pretty orderly, though generally very poor, having little trade; but thoſe about Praya are naturally of a thieviſh diſpoſition, ſo that ſtrangers who deal with them muſt be very careful, for if they ſee an opportunity, they will ſteal their goods and run away.

Sal, or Salt, is the windwardmoſt of all the Cape de Verd iſlands, and is ſituated in the 17th deg. of N. lat. and 5 deg. 18 min. W. long. from the Cape. It received this name from the great quantity of ſalt naturally produced here from ſalt water, that from time to time overflows part of the land, which is moſtly low, having only five hills, and ſtretches from north to ſouth about eight or nine leagues, but it does not exceed one league and a half in breadth. In this iſland are only a few people. Theſe live in wretched huts near the ſea-ſide, and are chiefly employed in gathering ſalt for thoſe ſhips that occaſionally call here for that article. The beſt account of this barren iſland is given us by Capt. Roberts, who landed here, and relates the following ſtory, which he ſays he was told by one of the blacks that reſided in it. "About the year 1705, not long before I went aſhore, the iſland was intirely deſerted for want of rain by all its inhabitants except one old man, who reſolved to die on it, which he did the ſame year. The drought had been ſo extreme for ſome time, that moſt of the cows and goats died for want of ſuſtenance, but rain following, they increaſed apace, till about three years after they were again reduced by a remarkable event. A French ſhip coming to fiſh for turtle, was obliged, by ſtreſs of weather, or from ſome other cauſe, to leave behind her thirty blacks, which ſhe had brought from St. Antonio to carry on the fiſhing. Theſe people, finding nothing elſe, fed moſtly on wild goats, till they had deſtroyed them all but two, one male and the other female; theſe were then on the iſland, and kept generally upon one mountain. A ſhort time after an Engliſh ſhip (bound for the iſland of St. Mayo) perceiving the ſmoke of ſeveral fires, ſent their boat on ſhore, and thinking they might be ſome ſhip's company wrecked on the iſland, put in there; when they underſtood the ſituation of the people, they commiſerated their caſe, took them all in, and landed them on the iſland from whence they were brought."

The iſland of Buena Viſta, or Bona Viſta, thus named from its being the firſt of the Cape de Verd iſlands diſcovered by the Portugueſe, is ſituated in the 16th degree of N. lat. two hundred miles W. of the coaſt of Africa, and is twenty miles long, and twelve broad, moſtly conſiſting of low land, with ſome ſandy hills, and rocky mountains. It produces great quantities of indigo, and more cotton than all the other Cape de Verd iſlands; yet there is not one of them where there are fewer cotton cloths to be ſold: for the natives will not even gather the cotton before a ſhip arrives to buy it; nor will the women ſpin till they want it. They have, in general, the ſame animals as in the other iſlands, with plenty of turtle, and many ſorts of fiſh. When the Engliſh land to take in a lading of ſalt, they hire men and aſſes to bring it down to the ſea; for which they pay them in biſcuits, flour, and old cloaths. This iſland had alſo formerly a pretty good trade for horſes and aſſes, which are the beſt of all that are upon theſe iſlands. The people are very fond of ſilk, with which they work the boſoms of their ſhirts, ſhifts, caps, women's waiſtcoats, &c.

The people of this iſland prefer the Engliſh dreſs to their own; for moſt of them have ſuits of cloaths bought of the Engliſh, and have learned to make cotton cloth to imitate the European faſhion. The women have one, two, or three cotton cloths wrapped about them like petticoats, tied on with a girdle about the hips, and ſometimes without a girdle. Their ſhifts are made like a man's ſhirt, but ſo ſhort, as ſcarcely to reach to the girdle; the collar, neck, and waiſtbands, of the young people of ſome rank, are wrought in figures with ſilk in various colours in needlework; but the old and the poor have theirs worked with blue cotton thread. Over their ſhifts they wear a waiſtcoat, with ſleeves to button at the arms, not above four inches deep in the back part, but long enough before to tie with ſtrings under their breaſts. Over all they have a cotton cloth in the manner of a mantle; thoſe of the married women are generally blue, and the darker the colour the richer it is reckoned; but the maidens, and gay young wives, and widows, wear blue and white, ſome ſpotted and ſome figured. They, however, rather chooſe, if they can get them, linen handkerchiefs wrought on the edges, and ſometimes only on the corners, with red, green, and blue ſilk; the firſt being the colour they moſt admire. They wear neither ſhoes nor ſtockings, except in holidays; and, indeed, at other times the women have generally only a ſmall cotton cloth wrapped round their waiſt, and the men a ragged pair of breeches; to which, if there be but a waiſtband, and a piece hanging to it before to hide what modeſty teaches them to conceal, they think it ſufficient. The people of Bona Viſta are fond of the Engliſh, and moſt of them can ſpeak a little of their language.

St. Philip, called alſo Fuego, or the Iſle of Fire, received this latter name from a very large mountain, which frequently emits great quantities of fire and ſulphur. It is ſituated in fifteen deg. twenty min. N. lat. and ſix deg. fifty-four min. W. from the Cape; is the higheſt of all the Cape de Verd iſlands, and appears at a diſtance like one continued mountain. On the weſt ſide of it there is a road for ſhipping, near a ſmall caſtle ſituated at the foot of a mountain, but the harbour is not ſafe on account of the violent beating of the waves. The wind blows very ſtrong round this iſland, and the ſhore being on a ſlant, the water is very deep, ſo that, except very near the caſtle, no ground is to be found within the lines. In this iſland water is very ſcarce, there not being a ſingle running brook throughout it; notwithſtanding which it is tolerably fertile, and produces great quantities of pompions, water-melons, feſtroons, and maiz, but no bananas or plantains, and ſcarce any fruit trees except wild figs; however, in ſome of their gardens, they have guava-trees, oranges, lemons, and limes. They have likewiſe ſome good vineyards, but they make no more wine than juſt what they uſe themſelves. Moſt of the inhabitants are negroes, there being an hundred blacks to one white; they are all Roman Catholics, though ſome of them introduce many pagan ſuperſtitions into that religion. They breed great numbers of mules, which they ſell to other nations, and make cotton cloths for their own uſe.

The Portugueſe, on their firſt peopling this iſland, brought with them negro-ſlaves, and a ſtock of cows, horſes, aſſes, and hogs; but the king himſelf furniſhed the place with goats, which ran wild in the mountains. There are many of the latter animals here at this time, and the profits of their ſkins is reſerved to the crown of Portugal. An officer, called captain of the mountains, has the management of this revenue, and no perſon dares, without his licence, kill any one of them.

St. John's is ſituated in fifteen degrees twenty-five min. N. lat. and ſeven deg. two min. W. of Cape Verd, and is very high and rocky. It has more ſalt-petre than any of theſe iſlands; this is found in ſeveral caves, covering the ſides like a hoar-froſt, and in ſome hollow rocks, like iſicles, as thick as a man's thumb. This iſland abounds with pompions, bananas, water-melons, and other fruit, and alſo with fowls, goats, aſſes, hogs, &c. There are plenty of fiſh in the ſeas about St. John's, and moſt of the fiſh here have remarkable ſharp teeth; and they generally uſe crabs and inſects for baits. Fiſhing is the principal employment of the natives; hence they miſs no opportunities of wrecks, or, when ſhips touch here, to procure all the bits of iron they can.

In this iſland, the ſalt is made by the heat of the ſun, which ſhining on the water in the holes of the rocks, is thereby turned, and ſometimes lies two feet thick. The natives uſually go and get a quantity of ſalt early in the morning, fiſh the greateſt part of the day, dry, ſplit, and ſalt their fiſh in the evening, and, having heaped them up let them lie in the ſalt all night. On the enſuing morning they ſpread them out to dry in the ſun, and they are fit to uſe when wanted.

The baleas, a ſort of whale or grampus, is very common near this iſland; and ſome affirm, that ambergris is the ſperm of this creature. A great quantity of ambergris was formerly found about this iſland, but it is leſs plentiful at preſent. Some years before Capt. Roberts was here, Juan Carneira, a Portugueſe, who was baniſhed from Liſbon for ſome crime, having procured a little ſhip or ſhallop, traded among theſe iſlands: meeting at length with a piece of ambergris of an uncommon bigneſs, he not only procured his liberty, and leave to return before the term of his exile was expired, but had ſufficient left, after defraying all charges, to put himſelf into a comfortable way of living, and a rock near to which he found the ambergris, is called by his name to this day.

The natives of this iſland do not amount to above two hundred ſouls, and are quite black. They are the moſt ignorant and ſuperſtitious of any of the inhabitants of theſe iſlands. But in their diſpoſition they are ſimple and harmleſs, humble, charitable, humane, and friendly; pay a particular reſpect to their equals, reverence their elders, are ſubmiſſive to their ſuperiors, and dutiful to their parents. People wear in common only a ſlip of cotton faſtened to a ſtring before, which paſſing between the thighs, is tied to the ſame ſtring behind; but when full dreſſed they alſo wear a piece of cotton cloth, (ſpun and wove by themſelves) which the men hang over their ſhoulders, and wrap round their waiſts, while the women put it over their heads, and then wrap it about their bodies; and on both of them it extends to the calf of the leg, or lower. They uſe in fiſhing, long canes for rods, cotton lines, and bent nails for hooks. As to their hunting, the governor having the ſole privilege of killing the wild goats, none dare hunt without his conſent. This was a law made by the Portugueſe when they peopled theſe iſland from the coaſt of Africa, in order to prevent the entire loſs of the breed.

When a general hunt is appointed by the governor, all the inhabitants are aſſembled, and the dogs, which are between a beagle and a greyhound, are called. At night, or when the governor thinks proper to put an end to the ſport, they all meet together, and he parts the goats fleſh between them as he pleaſes, ſending what he thinks proper to his own houſe, with all the ſkins; and after he comes home, he ſends pieces to thoſe who are old, or were not out a hunting; and the ſkins he diſtributes amongſt them as he thinks their neceſſities require, reſerving the remainder of them for the lord of the ſoil. This is one of the principal privileges enjoyed by the governor; who is alſo the only magiſtrate, and decides the little differences that ſometimes happen among the people. Upon their not ſubmitting to this deciſion, he confines them till they do, in an open place walled round like a pound: but, inſtead of a gate, they generally lay only a ſtick acroſs the entrance, and thoſe innocent people will ſtay there without attempting to eſcape, except when overcome by paſſion, and then they ruſh out in a rage; but theſe are ſoon caught again, tied hand and foot, and a centinel ſet to watch them, till they agree with their antagoniſt, aſk the governor's pardon for breaking out of his priſon, and have remained there as long as he thinks they have deſerved. Nay, if one kills another, which hardly happens in an age, the governor can only confine him till he has pacified the relations of the deceaſed, by the mediation of his friends, who are bound for the criminal's appearance, in caſe a judge ſhould be ever ſent from Portugal to execute juſtice; but impriſonment is here reckoned ſuch a ſcandal, that it is as much dreaded as Tyburn was by criminals here.

About forty-five miles from the iſland of Salt is St. Nicholas Iſland, the N. W. point of which is in 17 deg. 10 min. N. latitude, and 6 deg. 52 min. W. longitude from Cape de Verd. It is the largeſt of all the Cape de Verd iſlands, except St. Jago. The land is high, and riſes like a ſugar-loaf, but the ſummit of the moſt elevated part is flat. The coaſt of this iſland is entirely clear from rocks and ſhoals. The bay of Paraghiſi is very ſafe, but the other roads are inſecure till the trade winds are ſettled. Here is a valley which has a fine ſpring of water in it, and many perſons employ themſelves in ſupplying different parts with that uſeful article, with which they load aſſes, and carry it a conſiderable way at a cheap rate. Water may likewiſe be obtained in almoſt any part of the iſland, by digging a well.

The town of St. Nicholas is the chief place in the iſland; it is cloſe built and populous, but all the houſes, and even the church, are covered with thatch. Capt. Avery, the celebrated pirate, having once received ſome offence from the inhabitants, burnt this town; but it was afterwards rebuilt, much in the ſame manner, and to the ſame extent as before.

The people are nearly black, with frizzled hair. They ſpeak the Portugueſe language tolerably well, but are thieviſh and blood thirſty. The women here are more ingenious, and better houſewives than in any other of the Cape de Verd iſlands. Moſt families have horſes, hogs, and poultry; and many of the people of St. Nicholas underſtand the art of boat-building, in which the inhabitants of the other iſlands are deficient. They likewiſe make good cloths, and even cloaths, being tolerable taylors, manufacture cotton quilts, knit cotton ſtockings, make good ſhoes, and tan leather. They are ſtrong Roman Catholics, but their diſpoſitions are ſo obſtinate, that their prieſts find it very difficult to rule them. This iſland abounds in oranges, lemons, plantains, bananas, pompions, muſk, water-melons, ſugar-canes, vines, gum-dragon, feſtroons, maiz, &c.

The iſland of St. Vincent is under 18 deg. of N. latitude, two leagues to the weſt of St. Lucia, and about forty-three leagues diſtant from the Iſle of Salt, W. and by N. It is five leagues in length. On the N. W. of it there is a bay a league and a half broad at the entrance, ſurrounded with high mountains, and ſtretching to the middle of the iſland. This bay is ſheltered from the weſterly and north-weſterly winds, by the high mountains of the iſle of St. Vincent; ſo that this is the ſafeſt harbour of any in all theſe iſlands; and yet it is difficult of acceſs, becauſe of the furious winds that blow with the utmoſt impetuoſity from the mountains along the coaſt. There are ſeveral other ſmall bays on the ſouth-ſide of the iſland, where ſhips may anchor, and thither the Portugueſe generally go to load hides. The S. E. ſide of this iſland is a ſandy ſhore, but there is not a drop of water on the hills, nor even in any of the deep valleys, except one, in which freſh water is ſeen to ſpout out of the ground on digging a little.

St. Anthony is the moſt northward of all the Cape de Verd iſlands, and lies in 18 deg. N. latitude, ſeven miles from St. Vincent, with a channel between them, which runs from S. W. to N. E. Here are two high mountains on this iſland, one of which is nearly as high as the pike of Teneriffe, and ſeems always inveloped in clouds. The inhabitants are about five hundred in number; and on the N. W. ſide of the iſland there is a little village, conſiſting of about twenty houſes or cottages, and inhabited by near fifty families of negroes and white people, who are all wretchedly poor, and ſpeak the Portugueſe language. On the north-ſide of the iſland there is a road for ſhipping, and a collection of water in a plain lying between high mountains, the water running from all ſides in the rainy ſeaſon; but in the dry ſeaſon the people are greatly diſtreſſed for water. The principal people here are a governor, a captain, a prieſt, and a ſchoolmaſter, all of whom take much upon themſelves, ſo that the people have ſome jingling verſes concerning them, which imply, that the governor's ſtaff, the beads of the prieſt, the ſchoolmaſter's rod, and the captain's ſword, give them a licence to feaſt on the natives, who ſerve as ſlaves to ſupport their luxury and grandeur.

St. Lucia lies in latitude 17 deg. 18 min. N. It is high land, full of hills, and is about eight or nine leagues long. On the S. E. end of it are two ſmall iſles, very near each other. On the E. S. E. ſide is the harbour, where the ſhore is of white ſand: here lies a ſmall iſland, round which there is a very good bottom, and ſhips may ride at anchor in twenty fathom water, over againſt the iſland of St. Vincent.

Brava or the Savage, or the Deſart Iſland, is about four leagues to the S. W. of Fuego. There are two or three ſmall iſlands to the north of it. The beſt harbour lies on the S. E. ſide of the iſland, where ſhips may anchor next to the ſhore in fifteen fathom water. There is an hermitage and an hamlet juſt above the harbour. On the weſt-ſide of the iſland there is a very commodious road for ſuch ſhips as want to get water.

On Friday the 14th of Auguſt, both ſhips having got on board a ſupply of refreſhments and proviſions, we weighed anchor, put to ſea, and continued our voyage to the cape of Good Hope. On Sunday the 16th, in the evening, a luminous fiery meteor made its appearance; it was of a bluiſh colour, an oblong ſhape, and had a quick deſcending motion. After a momentary duration, it diſappeared in the horizon; its courſe was N. W. We obſerved a ſwallow following our veſſel, and making numberleſs circles round it, notwithſtanding our diſtance from St. Jago was between fifty and ſixty leagues. This harmleſs bird continued to attend the ſhip in her courſe the two following days. We obſerved many conitos in the ſea, which ſhot paſt us with great velocity; but we could not take a ſingle one, though we endeavoured to catch them with hooks, and ſtrike them with harpoons. We were more ſucceſsfull in hooking a ſhark, about five feet long. On this fiſh we dined the next day. We found it rather difficult of digeſtion, but, when fried, it was tolerably good eating. Nothing very remarkable happened on board our ſhip the Reſolution, except that on the 19th, one of our carpenter's mates fell overboard, and was drowned. He was ſitting on one of the ſcuttles, from whence it was ſuppoſed he fell. All our endeavours to ſave him were in vain, for he was not ſeen till the inſtant he ſunk under the ſhip's ſtern. We felt his loſs very ſenſibly, he being a ſober man, as well as a good workman; and he was much regretted even by his ſhipmates.

On Thurſday the 20th, the rain deſcended not in drops, but in ſtreams, and, at the ſame time, the wind was ſqually and variable, ſo that the people were obliged to keep deck, and of courſe had all wet jackets, an inconvenience very common, and often experienced by ſeamen. However, this diſagreeable circumſtance was attended with good, as it gave us an opportunity of ſpreading our awnings, and filling ſeven empty puncheons with freſh water. This heavy rain was ſucceeded by a dead calm, which continued twenty-four hours, and was followed by a breeze from S. W. Between this and the ſouth point it held for ſeveral days, at times blowing in ſqualls, attended with rain and hot ſultry weather. On the 27th inſtant, one of captain Furneaux's petty officers died on board the Adventure; but on board the Reſolution, we had not one man ſick, although a deal of rain fell, which, in ſuch hot climates, is a great promoter of ſickneſs. Capt. Cook took every neceſſary precaution for the preſervation of our health, by airing and drying the ſhip with fires made between decks, and by making the crew air their bedding, and waſh their cloaths, at every opportunity. Two men were puniſhed on board the Adventure; one a private marine for quarrelling with the quarter-maſter; the other a common ſailor for theft. Each of them received one dozen. This we mention to ſhew what ſtrict diſcipline it was neceſſary to preſerve on board, in order to eſtabliſh a regular and peaceable behaviour in ſuch hazardous voyages, when men, unaccuſtomed to controul, are apt to prove mutinous.

On Tueſday, September the 8th, we croſſed the line in longitude 8 deg. W. Some of the crew, who had never paſſed the line before, were obliged to undergo the uſual ceremony of ducking, but ſome bought themſelves off, by paying the required forfeit of brandy. Thoſe who ſubmitted to an emerſion, found it very ſalutary, as it cannot well be done too often in warm weather, and a frequent change of linen and cloaths is exceeding refreſhing. On the 14th, a flying fiſh fell on our deck; we caught ſeveral dolphins; ſaw ſome aquatic birds; and, at various intervals, obſerved the ſea covered with numberleſs animals. On Sunday the 27th, a ſail was diſcovered to the W. ſtanding after us; ſhe appeared to be a ſnow, and ſhewed either Portugueſe colours, or St. George's enſign. We did not chuſe to wait till ſhe approached nearer, or to ſpeak to her. The winds began now to be variable, ſo that we made but little way, and not any thing remarkable happened till October the 11th, when we obſerved an eclipſe of the moon. At twenty-four minutes, twelve ſeconds, after ſix o'clock, by Mr. Kendal's watch, the moon roſe about four digits eclipſed; after which the following obſervations were made with different inſtruments and timepieces, by our aſtronomers and others.

	h.	m.	ſ.	with
By Capt. Cook	6	53	51	a common refractor.
By Mr. Forſter	6	55	23	
By Mr. Wales	6	54	57	a quadrant teleſcope.
By Mr. Pickerſgill	6	55	30	a three feet refractor.
By Mr. Gilbert	6	53	24	the naked eye.
By Mr. Hervy	6	55	34	a quadrant teleſcope.
Mean	6	54	46½	by the watch.
Watch ſlow of apparent time	0	3	59	
Apparent time	6	58	45½	End of the eclipſe.
Ditto	7	25	00	At Greenwich.
Difference of long.	0	26	14½	= 6° 33′ 30″

Longitude from Mr. Wales's Obſervations.

By the moon and ſtar Aquilæ	5°	51′	Mean 6° 13′ 0″
By the ditto & do. Aldebaran	6	35	
By Mr Kendal's Watch	—	—	6 53⅞

On Monday the 12th, the weather being calm, we amuſed ourſelves with ſhooting ſea fowl. We were now accompanied by ſheerwaters, pintadoes, &c. and by a ſmall grey peterel. This laſt is leſs than a pigeon, has a gray back, whitiſh belly, and a black ſtroke acroſs from the tip of one wing to that of the other. Theſe are ſouthern birds, and, we believe, never ſeen within the tropics, or north of the line. They viſited us in great flights; and about the ſame time we ſaw ſeveral animals of the moluſca kind, within our reach, together with a violet-coloured ſhell, of a remarkable thin texture, and therefore ſeems calculated to keep the open ſea; and not to come near rocky places, it being eaſily broken. Saturday the 17th, we diſcovered a ſail to the N. W. which hoiſted Dutch colours. She kept us company two days, but on the third we out-ſailed her. From the 12th to this day, we had the wind between the N. and E. a gentle gale. On Wedneſday the 21ſt, our latitude was 35 deg. 20 min. S. and our longitude 8 deg. 4 min. 30 ſec. E. From this time to the 23d the wind continued eaſterly, when it veered to the N. and N. W. After ſome hours calm, we ſaw a ſeal, or as ſome thought, a ſea lion. The wind now fixed at N. W. which carried us to our intended port. As we drew near to land, the ſea fowl, which had accompanied us hitherto, began to leave us: at leaſt they did not appear in ſuch numbers; nor did we ſee gannets, or the black bird, commonly called the Cape Hen, till we were nearly within ſight of the Cape. On Thurſday, the 29th, at two o'clock P. M. we made the land of the Cape of Good Hope; for a particular deſcription of which, and of the adjacent country, ſee page 92, &c. of this work. The Table Mountain, over the Cape Town, bore E. S. E. diſtant twelve or fourteen leagues: had it not have been obſcured by clouds, it might, from its height, have been ſeen at a much greater diſtance. Friday the 30th, we ſtood into Table Bay, with the Adventure in company, and anchored in five fathom water. We were now viſited by the maſter-attendant of the fort, ſome other officers belonging to the company, and Mr. Brandt. This laſt gentleman brought off to us many articles that were very acceptable; and the maſter-attendant, as is cuſtomary, took an account of the two ſhips, enquiring particularly, if the ſmall-pox was on board, a diſorder dreaded above all others by the inhabitants of the Cape; for which reaſon a ſurgeon always attends on theſe viſits. This day Capt. Cook ſent an officer to wait upon Baron Plettenberg the governor, to inform him of our arrival; to which he returned a polite anſwer; and on the return of our officer, we ſaluted the fort with eleven guns, which compliment was acknowledged by the ſame number. The governor, when the captain accompanied by ſome of our gentlemen waited upon him, told them, that two French ſhips from the Mauritius about eight months before, had diſcovered land, in 48 deg. S. latitude, and in the meridian of that iſland, along which they ſailed forty miles, till they came to a bay, into which when they were about to enter, they were driven off and ſeparated in a hard gale, after having loſt ſome of their people and boats, who had been ſent out to ſound the bay; but the La Fortune, one of the ſhips, arrived ſoon after at Mauritius, the captain of which was ſent home to France with an account of the diſcovery. We alſo learned from the governor, that two other French ſhips from Mauritius, in March laſt, touched at the Cape in their paſſage to the Pacific Ocean, to which they were bound upon diſcoveries, under the command of M. Marion. Aotourou, the Indian, whom M. de Bougainville brought from Otaheite, was, had he been living, to have returned home with M. Marion. Having viſited the governor and ſome of the principal inhabitants, we took up our abode at Mr. Brandt's, the uſual reſidence of moſt officers belonging to Engliſh ſhips. With reſpect to accommodations, this gentleman ſpares neither expence nor trouble, in order to render his houſe as agreeable as poſſible to thoſe who favour him with their company. We concerted meaſures with Mr. Brandt for ſupplying us with proviſions, &c. all which he procured without delay, while our men on board were employed in overhauling the rigging, and the carpenters in caulking the ſhips ſides, &c. At the ſame time Mr. Wales and Mr. Bayley made obſervations for regulating the watches, and other purpoſes. The reſult of theſe was that Mr. Kendal's watch had anſwered beyond our expectations, by determining the longitude of this place to within one minute of time to what it was obſerved in 1761, by Meſſrs. Maſon and Dixon.

At this place two Dutch Indiamen arrived after us, from Holland. Their paſſage was near five months, in which one of the ſhips loſt by the ſcurvy, and the other by putrid fevers, in all 191 men. One of theſe ſhips touched at Port Praya, and departed a month from thence before we came there, yet we arrived at the Cape three days before her. During our ſtay here, Mr. Forſter, who employed his time wholly in the purſuit of Natural Hiſtory and Botany, met with one Mr. Sparrman, a Swediſh gentleman, who had ſtudied under Linnæus. Mr. Forſter importuned ſtrongly Capt. Cook to take him aboard; and Mr. Sparman being willing to embark, the Captain conſented; and he was engaged under Mr. Forſter, who bore his expences on board, and allowed him a yearly ſtipend beſides. Mr. Hodges alſo employed himſelf in taking views of the Cape, town, and parts adjacent, in oil colours; all which were left with Mr. Brandt, to be forwarded by him to the admiralty, by the firſt ſhip bound for England.

On the 18th of November we had got every thing on board; but it was the 22d before we could put to ſea. In this interval the crews of both ſhips were ſerved every day with freſh beef, or mutton, new baked bread, and what quantity of greens they thought ſufficient; and the two ſhips, in every reſpect, were put in as good condition as when they left England. At this time ſome removes took place in the Adventure. The firſt lieutenant, Mr. Shank, deſired leave to reſign, in order to return to England for the recovery of his health, which was granted. Mr. Kemp was appointed firſt lieutenant, and Mr. Burney, one of our midſhipmen, was made ſecond lieutenant, in the room of Mr. Kemp.

On the 22d we repaired on board, having firſt taken leave of the governor, and other officers, who in a moſt obliging manner had afforded us all the neceſſary aſſiſtance we required. At three o'clock, P. M. we weighed, and ſaluted the fort with fifteen guns, which compliment was inſtantly returned. We now ſtood all night to the weſtward, to get clear of the land, during which time the ſea made the ſame luminous appearance, which has been already, in the courſe of our hiſtory, noticed and deſcribed. As ſoon as we had cleared the land, we directed our courſe, as ordered, to Cape Circumciſion. We had a moderate gale from the N. W. point until the 24th, when the wind ſhifted to the eaſtward. This day by obſervation, at noon, we found ourſelves to be in 35 deg. 25 min. S. lat. and 29 min. W. of the Cape of Good Hope. As we were now directing our courſe toward the antarctic circle, and expected to encounter ſoon with cold weather, the Captain ordered a waſte of freſh water to be as much as poſſible prevented; at the ſame time he ſupplied each man with a fearnought jacket, and trowſers, allowed by the Admiralty, and alſo ſlops to ſuch who wanted them. Obſerving a great number of albatroſſes about us, we put out hooks and lines, with which we caught ſeveral, and the ſhip's company, though ſerved with mutton, reliſhed them very much. On the 29th a heavy ſtorm came from the W. N. W. with few intervals of moderate weather, for nearly a week: the ſea ran very high, and frequently broke over the ſhips.

On Sunday, December the 6th, we were in lat. 48 deg. 41 min. S. and in 18 deg. 24 min. E. longitude. The ſtorm continued, and the roaring of the waves, together with hail, rain, and a great agitation of the veſſel, were circumſtances that rendered our ſituation extremely diſagreeable. A boy in the fore part of our ſhip hearing a noiſe of water running among the cheſts, turned out, and found himſelf half way up the leg in water; upon which all hands worked at the pumps, but the water increaſed upon us. This was at laſt diſcovered to come in through a ſcuttle in the boatſwain's ſtore-room. This gale, attended with hail and rain, continued till the 8th, with ſuch fury, that we could carry no ſails; and being driven by this means far to the eaſtward of our intended courſe, not the leaſt hope remained of our reaching Cape Circumciſion. Our diſtreſs was augmented by the loſs of a great part of our live ſtock we had brought from the Cape. Every man felt the effects of the ſudden tranſition from warm to extreme cold weather; for which reaſon an addition was made to the men's allowance of brandy in both ſhips. On the morning of the 7th, the riſing ſun gave us a flattering proſpect of ſerene weather; but our expectations ſoon vaniſhed; the barometer was unuſually low; and by one o'clock P. M. the wind, which was at N. W. blew with ſuch violence as obliged us to ſtrike our top-gallant-maſts. On the 8th, the gale was ſomewhat abated; but the ſea ran too high for us to carry more than the fore-top-maſt ſtay-ſail.

On Wedneſday, the 9th, at three A. M. we wore ſhip to the ſouthward, ſhowers of ſnow fell, with ſqually weather. At eight made ſignal for the Adventure to make ſail. On the 10th made another ſignal for her to lead, and ſaw an ice-iſland to the weſtward of us, in 50 deg. 40 min. S. latitude, and 2 deg. E. longitude of the Cape of Good Hope. The weather being hazy, Capt. Cook by ſignal called the Adventure under our ſtern; a fortunate circumſtance this; for the fog increaſed ſo much, that we could not diſcern an iſland of ice, for which we were ſteering, till we were leſs than a mile from it. The ſea broke very high againſt this iſland of ice, which Captain Furneaux took for land, and therefore hauled off from it, till he was called back by ſignal. We cannot determine with preciſion on the height or circumference of this ice-iſland; but, in our opinion ſuch large bodies muſt drift very ſlowly, for, as the greateſt part of them are under water, they can be little affected by either the winds or waves. It being neceſſary to proceed with great circumſpection, we reefed our top-ſails, and upon ſounding found no ground with one hundred and fifty fathoms.

Friday, the 11th, in 51 deg. 50 min. S. lat. and 21 deg. 3 min. E. longitude, ſaw ſome white birds, and paſſed another large iſland of ice. The birds were about the ſize of pigeons, with blackiſh bills and feet. Capt. Cook thought them of the petrel kind, and natives of theſe frozen ſeas. The diſmal ſcene in view, to which we were unaccuſtomed, was varied as well by theſe birds, as ſeveral whales, which made their appearance among the ice, and afforded us ſome idea of a ſouthern Greenland. But though the appearance of the ice, with the waves breaking over it, might afford a few moments pleaſure to the eye, yet it could not fail filling us with horror, when we reflected on our danger; for the ſhip would be daſhed to pieces in a moment, were ſhe to get againſt the weather ſide of one of theſe iſlands, when the ſea runs high.

On the thirteenth, a great variety of ice iſlands preſented themſelves to our view, and the number of our attendant birds decreaſed. As we were now in the latitude of Cape Circumciſion, according to Mr. Bouvet's diſcoveries, in the year 1739, yet we were ten deg. to the longitude of it; but ſome people on board were very eager to be firſt in ſpying land. In this field of low ice were ſeveral iſlands, or hills, and ſome on board thought they ſaw land over the ice; but this was only owing to the various appearances which the ice hills make, when ſeen in hazy weather. We had ſmooth water, and brought to under a point of ice: here we conſulted on places of rendezvous, in caſe of ſeparation, and made ſeveral regulations for the better keeping company. We then made ſail along the ice.

On Monday the fourteenth a boat was hoiſted out for two gentlemen to make ſome obſervations and experiments. While they were thus engaged, the fog increaſed ſo much, that they entirely loſt ſight of both of the ſhips. Their ſituation was truly terrific and alarming, as they were only in a ſmall four oared boat, in an immenſe ocean, ſurrounded with ice, utterly deſtitute of proviſions, and far from any habitable ſhore. They made various efforts to be heard, and rowed about for ſome time, without effect; they could not ſee the length of their boats, nor hear any ſound. They had neither maſt nor ſail, only two oars. They determined to lie ſtill, as the weather was calm, and hoped that the ſhips would not ſwim out of ſight. A bell ſounded at a diſtance, which was heavenly muſic to their ears. They were at laſt taken up by the Adventure, and thus narrowly eſcaped thoſe extreme dangers. So great was the thickneſs of the fog ſometimes, that we had the utmoſt difficulty to avoid running againſt the iſlands of ice, with which we were ſurrounded. We ſtood to the ſouth on the ſeventeenth, when the weather was clear and ſerene, and ſaw ſeveral ſorts of birds, which we were unacquainted with. The ſkirts of the ice ſeemed to be more broken than uſual, and we ſailed among it moſt part of the day; we were obliged to ſtand to the northward, in order to avoid it. On the eighteenth we got clear of the field of ice, but was carried among the ice iſlands, which it was difficult to keep clear of. The danger to which were now expoſed, was preferable to being entangled among immenſe fields of ice. There were two men on board the Reſolution, who had been in the Greenland trade; the one had lain nine weeks, and the other ſix, ſtuck faſt in a field of ice. That which is called a field of ice is very thick, and conſiſts but of one piece, be it ever ſo large. There are other pieces of great extent packed together, and in ſome places heaped upon each other. How long ſuch ice may have lain here, is not eaſily determined. In the Greenland ſeas, ſuch ice is found all the ſummer long, and it cannot be colder there in ſummer time than it is here. Upon the ſuppoſition that this ice which we have been ſpeaking of is generally formed in bays and rivers, we imagined that land was not far from us, and that the ice alone hindered our approaching it. We therefore determined to ſail to the eaſtward, and afterwards to the ſouth, and, if we met with no land or impediment, there to get behind the ice, that this matter might be put out of doubt. We found the weather much colder, and all the crew complained of it. Thoſe jackets which were too ſhort were lengthened with baize, and each of them had a cap made of the ſame ſtuff, which kept them as warm as the climate would admit. Scorbutic ſymptons appearing on ſome of the people, the ſurgeons gave them freſh wort every day, made from the malt we took with us for that purpoſe.

We ſtood once more to the ſouthward on the twenty-ſecond inſtant. On the twenty-third, we hoiſted out a boat to make ſuch experiments as were thought neceſſary. We examined ſeveral ſpecies of birds, which we had ſhot as they hovered round us with ſeeming curioſity.

On the twenty-fifth, being Chriſtmas-day, we were very chearful, and notwithſtanding the ſurrounding rocks of ice, the ſailors ſpent it in ſavage noiſe and drunkenneſs. On the twenty-ſixth, we ſailed through large quantities of broken ice. We were ſtill ſurrounded with iſlands, which in the evening appeared very beautiful, the edges being tinged by the ſetting ſun. We were now in latitude 58 deg. 31 min. S.

On the twenty-ſeventh we had a dead calm, and we devoted the opportunity to ſhooting petrels and penguins. This afforded great ſport, though we were unſucceſsful in our chace of penguins. We were obliged to give over the purſuit, as the birds dived ſo frequently, and continued ſo long under water. We at laſt wounded one repeatedly, but was forced finally to kill it with a ball; its hard gloſſing plumage having conſtantly turned the ſhot aſide. The plumage of this bird is very thick, the feathers long and narrow, and lie as cloſe as ſcales. Theſe amphibious birds are thus ſecured againſt the wet, in which they almoſt continually live. Nature has likewiſe given them a thick ſkin, in order to reſiſt the perpetual winter of theſe inhoſpitable climates. The penguin we ſhot weighed eleven pounds and a half. The petrels are likewiſe well provided againſt the ſeverity of the weather. Theſe latter have an aſtoniſhing quantity of feathers, two feathers inſtead of one proceeding out of every root. Glad were we to be thus employed, or indeed to make any momentary reflections on any ſubject, that we might in ſome meaſure change that gloomy uniformity in which we ſo ſlowly paſſed our time in theſe deſolate and unfrequented ſeas. We had conſtant diſagreeable weather, conſiſting of thick fogs, rain, ſleet, hail, and ſnow; we were ſurrounded with innumerable quantities of ice, and were in conſtant danger of being ſplit by them; add to which, we were forced to live upon ſalt proviſions, which concurred with the weather to infect our maſs of blood. Our ſeamen coming freſh from England did not yet mind theſe ſeverities and fatigue, their ſpirits kept them above repining at them; but among ſome of us a wiſh prevailed to exchange our ſituation for a happier and more temperate one. The crew were well ſupplied with portable broth and ſour krout, which had the deſired effect in keeping them from the ſcurvy. The habit of body in one man was not to be relieved by thoſe expedients, but he was cured by the conſtant uſe of freſh wort. This uſeful remedy ought never to be forgotten in ſhips bound on long voyages, or the encomiums on the efficacy of malt cannot be exaggerated; great care muſt alſo be taken to prevent its becoming damp and mouldy, for if it is ſuffered to do ſo, its ſalutary qualities will become impaired in a long voyage.

On the 29th, the commanders came to a reſolution, provided they met with no impediment, to run as far weſt as Cape Circumciſion, ſince the ſea ſeemed to be pretty clear of ice, and the diſtance not more than eighty leagues. We ſteered for an iſland of ice this day, intending to take ſome on board, and convert it into freſh water. On this iſland we ſaw a great number of penguins. The ſight of theſe birds is ſaid to be a ſure indication of the vicinity of land. This may hold good where there are no ice iſlands, but not ſo when there are any, for there they find a reſting place. We will not determine whether there are any females among them at ſo great a diſtance from land, or whether they go on ſhore to breed.

On the 31ſt, we ſtood for this iſland again, but could not take up any of the looſe ice, for the wind increaſed ſo conſiderably, as to make it dangerous for the ſhips to remain among the ice; beſides which, we diſcovered an immenſe field of ice to the north, extending further than the eye could reach. We had no time to deliberate, as we were not above two or three miles from it.

A. D. 1773.

On the 1ſt of January, the gale abated, but there fell a good deal of ſnow and ſleet, which froze on the rigging of the ſhips. The wind continued moderate the next day, and we were favoured with a ſight of the moon, whoſe face we had not ſeen ſince we left the Cape of Good Hope. We were now in 59 deg. 12 min. S. latitude, and in 9 deg. 45 min. E. longitude. Several obſervations were made of the ſun and moon. We were nearly in the longitude aſſigned by M. Bouvet to Cape Circumciſion: but as the weather was very clear at this time, inſomuch that we could ſee at leaſt fifteen leagues diſtance from us, it is moſt probable that what he took for land was no more than mountains of ice, ſurrounded by looſe or packed ice, the appearances of which are ſo deceptious. From all the obſervations we could make, we think it highly probable that there is no land under the meridian between the latitude of 55 and 59 deg. We directed our courſe to the E. S. E. that we might get more to the S. We had a freſh gale and a thick fog, a good deal of ſnow and ſleet, which froze on the rigging, and every rope was covered with fine tranſparent ice. This was pleaſing enough to look at, but made us imagine it was colder than it really was, for the weather was much milder than it had been for many days paſt, and there was not ſo much ice in the ſea. One inconvenience attended us, which was, that the men found it very difficult to handle the rigging.

On Friday the 8th, we paſſed more ice iſlands, which became very familiar to us. In the evening we came to one which had a vaſt quantity of looſe ice about it, and, as the weather was moderate, we brought to, and ſent the boats out to take up as much as they could. Large piles of it were packed upon the quarter-deck, and put into caſks, from which, after it was melted, we got water enough for thirty days. A very little ſalt water adhered to the ice, and the water which this produced was very freſh and good. Excepting the melting and taking away the ice, this is a moſt expeditious method of ſupplying ſhips with water. We obſerved here ſeveral white whales, of an immenſe ſize. In two days afterwards we took in more ice, as did the Adventure. Some perſons on board, who were ignorant of natural philoſophy, were very much afraid that the unmelted ice, which was kept in caſks, when the weather altered, would diſſolve and burſt the caſks in which it was packed, thinking that, in its melted ſtate it would take up more room than in its frozen one. In order to undeceive them, Capt. Cook placed a little pot of ſtamped ice in a temperate cabbin, which, as it gradually diſſolved, took up much leſs ſpace than before. This was a convincing argument, and their fears of this ſort ſubſided. As we had now ſeveral fine days, we had frequent opportunities of making obſervations, and trying experiments, which were very ſerviceable to us on many accounts. The people likewiſe took the opportunity of waſhing their cloaths in freſh water, which is very neceſſary in long voyages.

On the 17th, before noon, we croſſed the antarctic circle; and advanced into the ſouthern frigid zone, which to all former navigators had remained impenetrable. We could ſee ſeveral leagues around us, as the weather was tolerably clear. In the afternoon we ſaw the whole ſea covered with ice, from S.E. to S. W. We ſaw a new ſpecies of the petrel, of a brown colour, with a white belly and rump, and a large white ſpot on the wings; we ſaw great flights of them, but never any of them fell into the ſhips. We called it the Antarctic petrel, as ſuch numbers of them were ſeen hereabouts.

In the afternoon we ſaw thirty-eight ice iſlands, large and ſmall. This immenſe field was compoſed of different kinds of ice; ſuch as field-ice, as ſo called by the Greenlandmen, and packed ice. Here we ſaw ſeveral whales playing about the ice, and ſtill large flocks of petrels. Our latitude was now 67 deg. 15. min. S.

We did not think it prudent to perſevere in a ſouthern direction, as that kind of ſummer which this part of the world produces was now half ſpent; and it would have taken up much time to have gone round the ice, ſuppoſing it practicable; we therefore reſolved to go directly in ſearch of the land lately diſcovered by the French.

On the 19th, in the evening, we ſaw a bird, which in Capt. Cook's former voyage was called the Port Egmont hen; ſo called, becauſe there are great numbers of them to be ſeen at Port Egmont in Falkland iſlands. They are about the ſize of a large crow, ſhort and thick, of a chocolate colour, with a white ſpeck under each wing. Thoſe birds are ſaid never to go far from land; and we were induced from this circumſtance to hope that land was near, but we were diſappointed; the ice iſlands had probably brought this bird hither.

On the 21ſt, we ſaw white albatroſſes with black tipped wings. On the 29th, ſeveral porpoiſes paſſed us with amazing ſwiftneſs; they had a large white ſpot on their ſides, which came almoſt up to their backs. They went at leaſt three times as faſt as our veſſels, and we went at the rate of ſeven knots and a half an hour. On the 31ſt, we paſſed a large ice iſland, which at the time of our ſailing by was tumbling to pieces. The exploſion equalled that of a cannon.

On the 1ſt of February, we ſaw large quantities of ſea weed floating by the ſhips. Capt. Furneaux acquainted Capt. Cook, that he had ſeen a number of divers, which very much reſembled thoſe in the Engliſh ſeas, and likewiſe a large bed of floating rock-weed. Theſe were certain ſigns of the vicinity of land; but we could not tell whether it was to the E. or W. We imagined that no land of any extent lay to the W. becauſe the ſea ran ſo high from the N. E. N. N. W, and W. we therefore ſteered to the E. lay to in the night, and reſumed our courſe in the morning. We ſaw two or three egg birds, and paſſed ſeveral pieces of rock-weed, but no other ſigns of land. We ſteered northward, and made ſignal for the Adventure to follow, as ſhe was rather thrown aſtern by her movement to the eaſtward. We could not find land in that direction, and we again ſteered ſouthward. There was an exceeding thick fog on the 4th, on which we loſt ſight of the Adventure. We fired ſeveral ſignals, but were not anſwered; on which account we had too much reaſon to think that a ſeparation had taken place, though we could not well tell what had been the cauſe of it. Capt. Cook had directed Capt. Furneaux, in caſe of a ſeparation, to cruize three days in that place he laſt ſaw the Reſolution. Capt. Cook accordingly made ſhort boards, and fired half hour guns till the afternoon of the 7th, when the weather cleared up, and the Adventure was not to be ſeen in the limits of that horizon. We were obliged to lie to till the 10th, and notwithſtanding we kept firing guns, and burning falſe fires all night, we neither ſaw nor heard any thing of the Adventure, and were obliged to make ſail without her, which was but a diſmal proſpect, for we were now expoſed to the danger of the frozen climate without the company of our fellow-voyagers, which before had relieved our ſpirits, when we conſidered that we were not entirely alone in caſe we loſt our own veſſel. The crew univerſally regretted the loſs of the Adventure; and they ſeldom looked around the ocean without expreſſing ſome concern that we were alone on this unexplored expanſe. At this time we had an opportunity of ſeeing what we had never obſerved before, the aurora auſtralis, which made a very grand and luminous appearance. Nothing material happened to us, but various changes of the weather and climate, till the 25th of March, when land was ſeen from the maſt-head, which greatly exhilerated the ſpirits of our ſailors. We ſteered in for the land with all the ſail we could carry, and had the advantage of good weather and a freſh gale. The captain miſtook the bay before us for Duſky Bay, the iſlands that lay at the mouth of it having deceived him. We proceeded for Duſky Bay, in New Zealand, but with much caution as we advanced nearer the land. We paſſed ſeveral iſlands, &c. and two leagues up the bay an officer was ſent out to look for anchorage, which he found, and ſignified it by ſignal. Here we anchored in fifty fathoms water, and very near the ſhore. This joyful circumſtance happened on the 26th of March, after we had been 117 days at ſea, and ſailed 3660 leagues, without ſo much as once ſeeing land. It might be ſuppoſed, from the length of time we had been at ſea, that the people would have been generally affected by the ſcurvy; but the contrary happened, owing to the precautions we uſed. We had much reaſon to be thankful to the Divine Providence, that no untoward accident had befallen us, and that our crew were in good health.

CHAP. II.

A narrative of what happened in Duſky Bay, in New Zealand—Interviews with the natives—The Reſolution ſails to Charlotte's Sound—Is there joined by the Adventure—Tranſactions in this place, with obſervations on the inhabitants—Capt. Furneaux's narrative—The two ſhips proceed in company from New Zealand to the iſland of Otaheite—Remarks on ſome low iſlands, ſuppoſed to be the ſame that were diſcovered by M. de Bougainville—The Reſolution and Adventure arrive at Otaheite—Are in a critical ſituation—An account of ſeveral incidents while they lay in Oaiti-piha Bay.

THE country appeared beautiful and pleaſing. The iſlands we paſſed, before our entrance into Duſky Bay, were ſhaded with evergreen, and covered with woods; the various ſhades of autumnal yellow, intermixed with the evergreens, exhibited a delightful contraſt. The rocky ſhores were enlivened with flocks of aquatic birds, and the whole country reſounded with the wild notes of the feathered ſongſters. A ſoon as we anchored we caught great numbers of fiſh, which eagerly took the bait laid for them. Our firſt meal upon fiſh here was looked upon as the moſt delightful we had ever made. Capt. Cook did not like the place in which we anchored, and ſent lieutenant Pickerſgill in ſearch of a better, which he ſoon found. The captain liked it, and called it Pickerſgill harbour. This we entered on the twenty-ſeventh of March, by a channel which was ſcarcely twice the width of the ſhip. Here we determined to ſtay ſome time, and examine it thoroughly, as no one had ever entered it before, or landed on any of the ſouthern parts of this country. Our ſituation was admirable for wood and water. Our yards were locked in the branches of trees, and near our ſtern ran a delightful ſtream of freſh water. We made preparations on ſhore for making all neceſſary obſervations, and perform neceſſary repairs, &c. &c. The live cattle we had left, which conſiſted of a few ſheep and goats, would not taſte the graſs which grew on the ſhore; nor were they very fond of the leaves of tender plants which grew here. When we examined theſe poor creatures, we found their teeth looſe, and they had other ſymptoms of an inveterate ſcurvy. We had not hitherto ſeen any appearance of inhabitants; but on the twenty-eight ſome of the officers went on a ſhooting party in a ſmall boat, and diſcovering them, returned to acquaint Capt. Cook therewith. Very ſhortly a canoe came filled with them, within muſket ſhot of the ſhip. They ſtood looking at us for ſome time, and then returned; we could not prevail upon them to come any nearer, notwithſtanding we ſhewed them every token of peace and friendſhip. Capt. Cook, with ſeveral officers and gentlemen, went in ſearch of them the ſame day. We found the canoe hauled upon the ſhore, where were ſeveral huts, with fire-places and fiſhing-nets, but the people had probably retired into the woods. We made but a ſhort ſtay, and left in the canoe ſome medals, looking-glaſſes, &c. not chuſing to ſearch any further, or enforce an interview which they wiſhed to avoid; we returned accordingly to the ſhip. Two parties went out the next day, but returned without finding any thing worth noticing.

On the firſt of April we went to ſee if any thing we had left in the canoe remained there. It did not appear that any body had been there, and none of the things meddled with. On the 2nd we again went on ſhore to ſearch for natural productions. We killed three ſeals, and found many ducks, wood hens, and wild fowl, ſeveral of which we killed. Another party went aſhore the ſame day, and took with them a black dog we had brought from the Cape, who ran into the woods at the firſt muſquet they fired, and would not return. Both parties came back to the ſhip in the evening.

On the ſixth, we made a ſhooting party, and found a capacious cove, where we ſhot ſeveral ducks; on which account we called it Duck Cove. We had an interview with one man and two women, as we returned in the evening, who were natives, and the firſt that diſcovered themſelves; and had not the man hallooed to us, we ſhould have paſſed without ſeeing them. The man ſtood upon the point of a rock, with a club in his hand, and the women were behind him with ſpears. As we approached, the man diſcovered great ſigns of fear, but ſtood firm; nor would he move to take up ſome things that were thrown to him. His fears were all diſſipated by Capt. Cook's going up to embrace him; the captain gave him ſuch things as he had about him. The officers and ſeamen followed the Captain, and talked ſome time with them; though we could not underſtand them. In this converſation, the youngeſt of the women bore the greateſt ſhare. A droll fellow of a ſailor remarked, that the women did not want tongue in any part of the world. We were obliged to leave them on the approach of night; but before we parted Mrs. Talkative gave us a dance.

On the ſeventh we made them another viſit, and preſented them with ſeveral things; but they beheld every thing with indifference, except hatchets and ſpike nails. We now ſaw all the man's family, as we ſuppoſed, which conſiſted of two wives, the young woman we mentioned before, a boy about fourteen years old, and three ſmall children. Excepting one woman (who had a large wen upon her upper lip), they were well favoured; on account of her diſagreeable appearance, ſhe ſeemed to be neglected by the man. We were conducted to their habitation, which conſiſted of two mean huts, ſituated near the ſkirts of a wood. Their canoe lay in a ſmall creek, near the huts, and was juſt large enough to tranſport the whole family from place to place. A gentleman of our party made ſketches of them, which occaſioned their calling him Toe-Toe; which, it ſeems, is a word which ſignifies marking or painting. On taking leave, the man preſented Capt. Cook with ſome trifles, and a piece of cloth of their own manufacture; and pointed to a boat cloak, which he wiſhed to have. The hint was taken, and one was ordered to be made for him of red baize. On the 9th we paid the natives another viſit, and ſignified our approach by hallooing to them; but they neither met us on ſhore, nor anſwered us as uſual; the reaſon of which was, that their time was fully occupied in dreſſing themſelves to receive us. They had their hair combed and oiled, ſtuck with white feathers, and tied upon the crowns of their heads, and had bunches of feathers ſtuck in their ears. We were received by them with great courteſy in their dreſs. The man was ſo well pleaſed with the preſent of the cloak, that he took his patta-patoe from his ſide, and gave it to Capt. Cook. We continued here a little time, and took leave, ſpending the reſt of the day in ſurveying the bay.

On Monday the twelfth this family paid us a viſit in their canoe, but proceeded with caution as they approached the ſhip. We could not by any means perſuade them to come on board, but put aſhore in a little creek near us, and ſat themſelves down near enough to ſpeak to us. Capt. Cook ordered the bagpipes to play, and the drum to beat; the latter only they regarded. They converſed very familiarly (though not well underſtood) with ſuch officers and ſeamen as went to them, and paid a much greater regard to ſome than to others; we ſuppoſed that they took ſuch for women. One of the females ſhewed a remarkable fondneſs for one man in particular, until ſhe found out his ſex; after which ſhe would not let him approach her. We cannot tell whether ſhe had before taken him for a female, or whether, in diſcovering himſelf, he had taken ſome liberties with her. In the evening the natives of Duſky Bay took up their quarters very near our watering-place, which was a clear proof that they placed a great deal of confidence in us. We paſſed two or three days in examining the bay and making neceſſary experiments and obſervations. We likewiſe ſhot great quantities of wild fowl.

On Monday the nineteenth, the man and his daughter before-mentioned ventured on board our ſhip, while the reſt of the family were fiſhing in the canoe. Before the man would come into the ſhip, he ſtruck the ſide of it with a green branch, and muttered ſome words, which we took for a prayer; after which he threw away the branch and came on board. We were at breakfaſt, but could not prevail on them to partake with us. They viewed every part of the cabin with apparent curioſity and ſurpriſe; but we could not fix the man's attention to any one thing for a moment. All we ſhewed him ſeemed beyond his comprehenſion, and the works of nature and art were alike regarded. The ſtrength and number of our decks and other parts of the ſhip ſeemed to ſtrike him with ſurpriſe. The man was ſtill better pleaſed with hatchets and ſpike-nails than any thing our ſhip produced; when he had once got poſſeſſion of theſe, he would not quit them. Capt. Cook and three other gentlemen left the ſhip as ſoon as they could diſengage themſelves from the viſitors, whom they left in the gun-room, and went out in two boats to examine the head of the bay; at which place they took up their night's lodging; the next day they continued their obſervations, and fired at ſome ducks. Upon the report of the gun, the natives, who had not diſcovered themſelves before, ſet up a moſt hideous roar in different places. The gentlemen hallooed in their turn, and retreated to their boats. The natives did not follow them, neither indeed could they, becauſe a branch of the river ſeparated them, but ſtill made a great noiſe. As they continued ſhooting and making their obſervations, they frequently heard the natives in the woods. A man and woman appeared at laſt on the banks of the river, waving ſomething in their hands as a token of friendſhip. The gentlemen could not get near them, and the natives retreated into the woods. Two others appeared; but as the gentlemen advanced, they retreated likewiſe, and the woods afforded them thick cover. The captain and his party paſſed the next night in the ſame place, and after breakfaſt embarked to return on board; but ſaw two men on the oppoſite ſhore, who hallooed to them, and they were induced to row over to them. Capt. Cook with two other gentlemen landed unarmed, and advanced all together, but the natives retreated, nor would they ſtand ſtill till Capt. Cook went up alone. It was with ſome difficulty that he prevailed on one of them to lay down his ſpear; at laſt he did it, and met the captain with a graſs plant in his hand, giving Capt. Cook one end to hold whilſt he himſelf held the other. In this poſition they ſtood while the native made a ſpeech, which the captain did not underſtand, but returned ſome ſort of anſwer; they then ſaluted each other, and the native took his coat from his back, and put it on the captain. The Captain preſented each of them with a hatchet and a knife, having nothing elſe with him. They invited the gentlemen to their habitation, and wanted them to eat, but the tide prevented their accepting of this invitation. More people appeared in the ſkirts of the woods, but did not approach any nearer. The two natives accompanied the gentlemen to their boats, but ſeemed very much agitated at the appearances of the muſquets, which they looked upon as inſtruments of death, on account of the ſlaughter they had obſerved among the fowls. It was neceſſary to watch them, for they laid their hands on every thing except the muſquets. They aſſiſted the ſeamen in launching the boat. It did not appear that they had any boats or canoes with them, but uſed two or three logs of wood tied together, which anſwered the ſame purpoſes; for the navigation of the river, on the banks of which they lived, was not very difficult, and ſmarmed with fiſh and fowl. We apprehend that all the natives of this bay did not exceed more than three families. This party took leave of the man about noon; and in the evening returned to the ſhip, when they found that the viſitors had ſtaid on board till noon; that he and his family remained near them till that day, and went into the woods, after which they were never ſeen; this appears rather extraordinary, as they never went away without ſome preſent. Several parties were made in order to catch ſeals, which were very uſeful for food, for oil, and their ſkins were cured for rigging. The fleſh of them is nearly as good as beef-ſteaks, and their entrails are equal to thoſe of a hog. We likewiſe took the ſummit of the mountains in this bay, and made other remarks.

On Saturday the twenty-fourth Capt. Cook took five geeſe and a gander, which were all that remained of thoſe brought from the Cape of Good Hope, and carried them to a cove, which on this account he called gooſe-cove; this was a convenient place, for they were not likely to be diſturbed by the inhabitants, there was plenty of food for them, and they were likely here to breed and ſpread the country with their ſpecies. We had now ſeveral days fair weather, which gave us a fine opportunity of making neceſſary preparations for departure.

On Tueſday the twenty-ſeventh we found an arm of the ſea more convenient than that by which we entered the bay; we ſhot ſeveral ducks, and were much pleaſed with the day's expedition. All we now waited for was wind to carry us out of harbour by the new paſſage we had diſcovered. The tents and all other articles were got on board. The rubbiſh we had made on ſhore, which conſiſted chiefly of pieces of wood, &c. we ſet on fire, in order to dry the ground, which being done, Capt. Cook ſowed the ſpot with various ſorts of garden ſeeds. This was the beſt place we could find to place them in. We made ſeveral efforts to ſail, but the wind proving contrary we made but little way, and were obliged to anchor on the firſt of May on the north ſide of Long Iſland. Here we found two huts with fire places, which appeared to be lately inhabited. Capt. Cook was detained on board by a cold, and ſent a party to explore an arm of the ſea which turns in to the eaſt. This party found a good anchoring place, with plenty of wild fowl, fiſh, and freſh water. We made ſeveral ſhooting parties when the wind would not permit us to ſail. Before we leave Duſky Bay, we think it neceſſary to give our readers ſome deſcription of it.

There are two entrances to this Bay, which are by no means dangerous; and there are numerous anchoring places, which are at once ſafe and commodious; at Caſcade Cove, ſo called on account of the magnificent caſcade near it, is room for a fleet of ſhips, and a very good paſſage in and out. The country is very mountainous, and the proſpect is rude and craggy. The land bordering on the ſea-coaſt, and all its lands, are covered with wood. There are trees of various kinds which are common in other countries, the timber of which is remarkably fine. Here are likewiſe a great number of aromatic plants, and the woods are ſo over-run with ſuple jacks, that it is difficult to make way through them. The ſoil is undoubtedly compoſed of decayed vegetables, which make a deep black mould; it is very looſe, and ſinks at every ſtep. This may be the reaſon why there are ſo many large trees blown down as we meet with in the woods. Except flax and hemp, there is very little herbage. The Bay abounds with fiſh, which we caught in great numbers. Seals are the only amphibious animals to be found here, but there are great numbers of them. Various kinds of ducks are to be found, as well as all other wild fowl. Here is likewiſe a bird which we called the wattle bird, becauſe it has two wattles under its beak like thoſe of a dunghill cock. Its bill is ſhort and thick, its feathers are dark, and is about the ſize of an Engliſh blackbird. This we called the poy-bird, on account of two little tufts of curled hair which hang under its throat, called its poies, which is the Otaheitan word for earrings. The feathers of this bird are of a fine mazarine blue, except thoſe of his neck, which are of a ſilver grey. The ſweetneſs of its note is equal to the beauty of its plumage; its fleſh is likewiſe luxurious food, though it is a great pity to kill them.

The ſmall black ſand flies are here very numerous and troubleſome; they cauſe a ſwelling and intolerable itching wherever they bite. Another evil attending this bay is the almoſt continual rains that fall, but happily our people felt no ill effects from them. The place muſt certainly be healthful, as thoſe of our crew, who were in any degree indiſpoſed when we came in, recovered ſpeedily.

The inhabitants of Duſky Bay are the ſame with thoſe in other parts of New Zealand; they ſpeak the ſame language, and adopt the ſame cuſtoms. It is not eaſy to divine what could induce theſe few families to ſeparate themſelves from the ſociety of the reſt of their fellow-creatures. It ſeems probable that there are people ſcattered all over this ſouthern iſland, by our meeting with inhabitants in this place. They appear to lead a wandering life, and don't ſeem to be in perfect amity with each other.

On Tueſday the 11th of May, we again made ſail, but met with more obſtructions. We obſerved on a ſudden a whitiſh ſpot on the ſea, out of which a column aroſe which looked like a glaſs tube. It appeared that another of the ſame ſort came down from the clouds to meet this, and they made a coalition and formed what is called a water-ſpout; ſeveral others were formed in the ſame manner ſoon after. As we were not very well acquainted with the nature and cauſes of theſe ſpouts, we were very curious in examining them. Their baſe was a broad ſpot, which looked bright and yellowiſh when the ſun ſhone upon it; this appeared when the ſea was violently agitated, and vapours roſe in a ſpiral form. The columns were like a cylinder, and moved forward on the ſurface of the ſea, and frequently appeared croſſing each other, they at laſt broke one after another, this was owing to the clouds not following them with equal rapidity. The ſea appeared more and more covered with ſhort broken waves as the clouds came nearer to us; the wind veered about, and did not fix in any one point. Within 200 fathoms of us, we ſaw a ſpot in the ſea in violent agitation; the water aſcended in a ſpiral form towards the clouds; the clouds looked black and louring, and ſome hail ſtones fell on board. A cloud gradually tapered into a long ſlender tube directly over the agitated ſpot, and ſeemed deſcending to meet the riſing ſpiral, and ſoon united with it. The laſt water-ſpout broke like others, no exploſion was heard, but a flaſh of lightning attended this disjunction. The oldeſt mariners on board had never been ſo near water-ſpouts before, they were therefore very much alarmed. Had we been drawn into the vortex, it was generally believed that our maſts and yards muſt have gone to wreck. From the firſt appearance, to the laſt diſſolution, was three quarters of an hour.

On May the 18th, at five o'clock in the morning, we opened Queen Charlotte's Sound, and ſaw three flaſhes ariſing from a ſtrong hold of the natives. We imagined them to be ſignals of the Europeans, and probably of our old friends in the Adventure; when we fired ſome guns, we were anſwered, and in a ſhort time ſaw the Adventure at anchor. We were ſaluted by Capt. Furneaux with 13 guns, which we very chearfully returned; none can deſcribe the joy we felt at this moſt happy meeting.

As it muſt be pleaſing to our Subſcribers and Readers, whoſe generous encouragement we have experienced, and it being our intention, in return, to render this work as complete, in every reſpect as poſſible, we ſhall here preſent them with a complete Narrative of Capt. Furneaux's proceedings, and of the various incidents that happened, during the ſeparation of the two ſhips, to their joining again in Queen Charlotte's Sound; with an account of Van Diemen's Land.

A. D. 1773. THE Adventure, on Sunday the 4th of February, after having loſt ſight of the Reſolution, in a very thick fog, had no other means of again meeting with her, but by cruizing in the place were they parted company, or by repairing to Charlotte Bay, the firſt appointed place of rendezvous, in caſe ſuch a misfortune ſhould happen. Soon after their ſeparation, the people of the Adventure heard a gun, the report of which they judged to be on the larboard beam; upon which, they hauled up S. E. and fired a four pounder every half hour; but receiving no return, nor ſight of their companion, they kept the courſe they had ſteered before the fog came on. In the evening it began to blow hard. The ſtorm was attended with a prodigious fall of rain, every drop of the ſize of a common pea; and the ſea broke over the ſhip's bows to the height of the yard arms; yet, at intervals, the weather was more clear; but at theſe favourable opportunities, they could not ſee their wiſhed for object, the Reſolution, which gave them many moments replete with inexpreſſible uneaſineſs. They then ſtood to the weſtward, to cruize in the latitude where they laſt ſaw her, according to agreement, in caſe of ſeparation; but the ſtorm returned with renewed fury, and the weather being again exceeding hazy, they were compelled to bring to, which untoward circumſtance prevented them from reaching the intended place; however, they cruized as near the ſame as they could for three days, when, after having kept beating about the ſeas, in the moſt terrible weather that any ſhip could poſſibly endure, and giving all hopes over of joining their loſt companion, they bore away for winter-quarters, 1400 leagues diſtant from them; and, having to traverſe a ſea entirely unknown, they took every precaution for their ſafety, and reduced the allowance of water to one quart a day for each ſeaman. On the 8th, they kept between the latitude 52 and 53 degrees S. and reached to 95 deg. E. longitude. They had here hard gales from the W. attended with ſnow, ſleet, and a long hollow ſea from the S. W. On the 26th a meteor, called to the northward, the Aurora Borealis, or northern lights, appeared with uncommon brightneſs in the N. N. W. directing its courſe to the S. W. And what is more remarkable, after our ſeparation from the Reſolution to our making land, we ſaw but one of the ice-iſlands, though in the moſt part of our long run, we were 2 or 3 degrees ſouthward of the latitude in which we firſt met with them; but we ſaw numberleſs ſea birds, and porpoiſes, curiouſly ſpotted with white and black, frequently darted ſwiftly by our ſhip.

On Monday the 1ſt of March, having made no diſcovery of land, though we had traverſed from latitude 48 to 45 degrees S. and from longitude 36 to 146 degrees, it was determined to bear away for Van Diemen's Land, in order to take in water, and repair our ſhattered rigging. This land, ſuppoſed to join New Holland, was diſcovered by Taſman A. D. 1642, and in the charts is laid down in latitude 44 deg. S. and longitude 140 deg. E. On the 9th, being Tueſday, about nine o'clock A. M. we fell in with the S. W. part of this coaſt bearing N. N. E. 8 or 9 leagues diſtant, and 140 deg. 10 min. E. longitude from Greenwich. It appeared moderately high and uneven near the ſea, but the hills farther back formed a double land and much higher. We ſaw a point which bore N. four leagues off from us, much like the Ram-head off Plymouth. This we concluded to be the ſame that Taſman called the South Cape. About four leagues E. S. E. half E. from hence are three iſlands, and ſeveral rocks, reſembling the Mewſtone, (one of which we ſo named) and they are not laid down by Taſman in his draughts. At the South Eaſt Cape, in latitude 43 deg. 36 min. S. and 147 deg. E. longitude, the country is hilly and full of trees, the ſhore rocky, and landing difficult, cauſed by the wind blowing continually from the weſtward, which occaſions ſuch a ſurf, that the ſand cannot lie on the ſhore. On Wedneſday the 10th A. M. the ſecond lieutenant was diſpatched in the great cutter, the ſhip being about four miles from the land, to find if there was any harbour or good bay. With much difficulty they landed, ſaw ſeveral places where the Indians had been, and one they had lately left. There was a path in the woods, which probably leads to their habitations, but our people had not time to purſue it. The ſoil appears to be very rich, and the lee country well cloathed with wood, eſpecially on the ſide of the hills. Plenty of water fell from the rocks, in beautiful caſcades, for two or three hundred feet perpendicular into the ſea. Not perceiving the leaſt ſign of any place to anchor in, we hoiſted in the boat and made ſail for Frederick Henry Bay. At three o'clock P. M. we were abreaſt of the weſtermoſt point of a very deep bay called by Taſman, Stormy Bay. Several iſlands from the W. to the E. point of this bay, and ſome black rocks, we named the Friars. At ſeven, being abreaſt of a fine bay, with little wind, we came to, and by a good obſervation found our latitude to be 43 deg. 20 min. S. and our longitude 147 deg. 34 min. E. On Thurſday the 11th, at day-break, we found a moſt commodious harbour, and at ſeven in the evening, we anchored in 7 fathom water, about one mile from the ſhore on each ſide. Maria's iſland is about 5 or 6 leagues off. Here we lay five days, and found the country exceeding pleaſant. The ſoil, though thin, is rich; and the ſides of the hills are covered with large trees, that grow to a great height before they branch off. They differ from any we had hitherto ſeen. All of them are of the evergreen kind, and the wood being very brittle, is eaſily ſplit. Of theſe we found only two ſorts. The leaves of one are long and narrow, and the ſeed, ſhaped like a button, has a very agreeable ſmell. The leaves of the other reſemble thoſe of the bay, and its ſeed that of the white thorn. From theſe trees, when cut down, iſſued, what the ſurgeons call, gum-lac. They are ſcorched near the ground, by the natives ſetting fire to the underwood in the moſt unfrequented places. Of the land birds, are ſome like a raven, others of the crow kind, paroquets, and ſeveral ſorts of ſmall birds. One of our gentlemen ſhot a large white fowl of the eagle kind, about the ſize of a kite. The ſea fowl are ducks, teal, and the ſheldrake. Of beaſts we ſaw only an opoſſum, but obſerved the dung of others which we pronounced to be of the deer kind. The fiſh we caught in the bay were moſtly ſharks, dog fiſh, and another ſort called by the ſeamen nurſes, full of white ſpots, and ſome ſmall ones not unlike ſprats. In the Lagoons are trout, and other ſorts of fiſh, a few of which we caught with hooks. During our ſtay here, we did not ſee any of the natives, but perceived the ſmoke of their fires, eight or ten miles to the northward. It is evident that they come into this bay from their wigwams or huts, which are formed of boughs, either broken, or ſplit, and tied together with graſs: the largeſt ends are ſtuck in the ground, and the ſmaller are brought to a point at the top; making the whole of a circular form, which is covered with fern or bark, in the middle of which is the fire-place, ſurrounded with heaps of muſcle, pear ſcallop, and cray-fiſh ſhells. In one of their huts we found the ſtone they ſtrike fire with, and ſome tinder made of the bark of a tree. In others of their wigwams were one of their ſpears, ſharp at one end, with ſome bags and nets made of graſs, which contained, we imagine, their proviſions and other neceſſaries. We brought moſt of thoſe things away, leaving in their room medals, gun-flints, a few nails, and an old iron-hooped empty barrel. The huts of theſe people ſeemed to be built only for a day, the workmanſhip being ſo ſlender, that they will hardly keep out a ſhower of rain. The inhabitants lie on the ground, on dried graſs, round their fires. They wander about, in ſmall parties, from one place to another in ſearch of food, the chief end of their exiſtence; and, from what we could judge, they are altogether an ignorant, wretched race of mortals, though natives of a country capable of producing every neceſſary of life, and a climate the fineſt in the world. Having got on board our wood and water, we ſailed out of Adventure Bay, intending to coaſt it, with a view of diſcovering whether Van Diemen's Land is part of New Holland.

On Tueſday the 16th, we paſſed Maria's Iſlands, and on the 17th Schouten's, when we hauled in for the main land, and ſtood off two or three leagues along ſhore. Here the country appeared well inhabited, and the land level; but we diſcovered not any ſigns of a harbour or bay, wherein a ſhip might anchor with ſafety. The land in lat. 40 deg. 50 min. S. trends to the weſtward, and from this latitude to that of 39 deg. 50 min. is nothing but iſlands and ſhoals; the land appearing high, rocky, and barren. We now ſtood to the northward, and again made land in 39 deg. but ſoon after diſcontinued this courſe, to fall in with the ſhore, being very dangerous. From Adventure Bay to where we ſtood away for New Zealand, the coaſt lies in the direction S. half W. and N. half E. and Capt. Furneaux was of opinion, that there are no ſtraits between New Holland and Van Diemen's Land, but a very deep bay. The wind blowing a ſtrong gale at S. S. E. and ſeeming likely to ſhift round to the eaſtward, he thought it moſt prudent to leave the coaſt, and make the beſt of his way for New Zealand.

On the 24th, having left Van Diemen's Land, a very ſevere ſquall reduced us to reefed courſes. We ſhipped many waves, one of which ſtove the large cutter, and with much difficulty we prevented the ſmall one from being waſhed over-board. After this heavy gale, which continued twelve hours, we had more temperate weather, accompanied with calms. At length we made the coaſt of New Zealand in 40 deg. 30 min. S. latitude, having run twenty-four deg. of longitude from Adventure Bay, in a paſſage of fifteen days. When we firſt came in ſight of land, it appeared high, forming a confuſed group of hills and mountains. We ſteered along ſhore to the northward, but our courſe was much retarded by the ſwell from the N. E.

On Saturday, April the 3d, at ſix o'clock, A. M. we deſcried land, which upon a nearer approach we knew to be that which lies between Rock Point and Cape Farewell, ſo named by Capt. Cook, when on his return from his laſt voyage. Cape Farewell, the ſouth point of the entrance of the weſt ſide of the ſtraits, bore E. by N. half N. three or four leagues diſtant. Sunday, the 4th, we continued our courſe, and ſtood to the eaſtward for Charlotte's Sound. On Monday, the 5th, we worked up to windward under Point Jackſon. From Stephen's Iſland to this point, the courſe is nearly S. E. diſtance eleven leagues. We fired ſeveral guns while ſtanding off and on, but ſaw not any inhabitants. At half paſt two P. M. we anchored in thirty-nine fathoms water, muddy ground; Point Jackſon being S. E. half E. three leagues. At eight we weighed and made ſail. Tueſday, the 6th, at eight o'clock A. M. had the Sound open, and worked up under the weſtern ſhore. At ten came to, cloſe to ſome white rocks, in thirty-eight fathoms, and on the 7th anchored in Ship Cove, in ten fathoms water, and moored the beſt bower to the N. N. E. In the night heard the howling of dogs, and people hallooing on the eaſt ſhore. Capt. Furneaux now ordered the large cutter to be manned, and ſent her, with a proper guard, to examine, whether there were any ſigns of the Reſolution having arrived at that harbour. The boat returned, without the leaſt diſcovery, but that of the poſt, erected by the Endeavour's people, on the top of a hill, with her name and time of her departure in 1770. Upon this, we inſtantly prepared to ſend the tents aſhore, for the accommodation of thoſe who were afflicted with the ſcurvy; while ſuch who enjoyed health were very alert in catching fiſh, which proved of great ſervice in recovering our ſick, to whom freſh proviſions were both food and phyſic.

On Friday, the 9th, three canoes came along-ſide the Adventure, having fifteen Indians of both ſexes, all armed with battle axes, and with other offenſive weapons made of hard wood, in the form of our officers ſpontoons, about four feet in length; but they had neither bows nor arrows. A kind of mat was wrapt round their ſhoulders, and tied about their waiſts with a girdle made of graſs. Both men and women exhibited a moſt ſavage appearance, and were very unwilling to venture on board. The Captain made them preſents, and by ſigns invited them to trade. They accepted the preſents, and ſome of them aſſumed courage enough to truſt themſelves on deck. One of our gentlemen, ſeeing ſomething wrapt up, had the curioſity to examine what it was, when, to his great ſurprize, he found it to be the head of a man, which, by its bleeding, ſeemed to be freſh cut off. As Capt. Cook had expreſſed his abhorrence of ſuch unnatural acts, the Indians were very apprehenſive of its being forced from them, and the man, to whom it belonged, trembled for fear of being puniſhed. They therefore, with ſurpriſing dexterity, in order to conceal the head, ſhifted it from one to another, till it was conveyed out of ſight; endeavouring, at the ſame time, to convince us by ſigns, that no ſuch thing was in their poſſeſſion. They then left the ſhip, and went on ſhore, not without ſome viſible ſigns of diſpleaſure. In this viſit they often mentioned the name of Tupia, and upon being informed he died at Batavia, ſome of them with much concern enquired whether we killed him, or if he died a natural death. By theſe queſtions, we concluded theſe Indians were ſome of the ſame tribe who had viſited the Endeavour's company. They returned in the afternoon, with fiſh and fern roots, which they bartered for nails, to them the moſt valuable articles; but the man and woman who had the head were not among them. Having a catalogue of words in their language, we called ſeveral things by name, at which they ſeemed much ſurprized, and offered a quantity of fiſh for the catalogue. On Saturday the 10th about eight in the morning, five double canoes came along-ſide the Adventure, with about fifty Indians, at the head of whom was their chief. We purchaſed of them, for nails, and bottles, their implements of war, ſtone hatchets, cloth, &c. upon which they ſet a high price. Several of their head men came on board, nor would they quit the ſhip by fair means; but upon preſenting a muſquet with a bayonet fixed, they quickly took leave of us, ſeemingly in great good humour; and afterwards they viſited us daily, bringing with them fiſh in abundance, which they exchanged for nails, beads and other trifles. They behaved quite peaceably, and, having diſpoſed of their cargoes, departed at all times, ſeemingly, well pleaſed. We now placed a guard on a little iſland, which, at low water, is joined to Mortuara, called the Hippah, at which place was an old fortified town, that had been abandoned by the natives. We took poſſeſſion of their houſes, and by ſinking a fort within ſide, made them very comfortable. Here our aſtronomer erected his obſervatory; at the ſame time we ſtruck our tents on Mortuara; and having run farther into the cove with the ſhip, we moored her for the winter, on the weſt ſhore, and gave her a winter coat to preſerve her hull; then after ſending aſhore the ſpars and lumber of the decks to be caulked, we pitched our tents near the river, at the watering-place.

On Tueſday, the 11th of May, ſeveral of our crew, who were at work on ſhore, very ſenſibly felt the ſhock of an earthquake, from which circumſtance we think it probable, that there are volcanos in New Zealand, as theſe phænomena generally go together. On the 12th, the weather continuing fair, and the Indians friendly, the Captain and officers were preparing to go aſhore, when about nine A. M. no leſs than ten canoes came padling down the Sound. We counted one hundred and twenty natives all armed. When along-ſide of the ſhip, they expreſſed a deſire to be admitted on board; but Capt. Furneaux, not liking their looks and geſtures, gave orders, that a few only ſhould be admitted at a time. Theſe behaved ſo diſorderly that the ſailors were obliged to turn them out, and it now appeared plainly that the intentions of our viſitors were to make themſelves maſters of the ſhip: however, finding the crew to be upon their guard, they became more civil, but not before a great gun was diſcharged over their heads, which alone intimidated them. Being thus reduced to order, the people on board produced ſeveral articles, ſuch as beads, ſmall claſp knives, ſciſſars, cloth, paper, and other trifles, which they bartered for battle axes, ſpears, weapons of various ſorts, fiſh-hooks, and other curioſities, the manufacture of the country. Being viſibly diſappointed in the execution of their grand deſign, they took to their canoes, all gabbling together in a language, a word of which no one on board could underſtand: but previous to their departure, the captain and officers made preſents to thoſe among them who appeared to be their chiefs, which they accepted with great apparent ſatisfaction.

Three months were now elapſed ſince the Adventure loſt ſight of the Reſolution; but on the 17th ſhe was ſeen at Jackſon Point. We immediately ſent out boats to her aſſiſtance, it being calm, to tow her into the Sound. In the evening ſhe anchored about a mile without us, and next morning weighed and warped within us. The pleaſure the ſhips companies felt at meeting can only be conceived by thoſe who have been in like circumſtances, each were as eager to relate as the others were to hear. Having thus related the progreſs of the Adventure, we now come to record the tranſactions of both ſhips after their junction. It were little more than a repetition of the Adventure's diſtreſſes to recapitulate the effects of the boiſterous weather that were felt by the crew of the Reſolution; being ſometimes ſurrounded with iſlands of ice, out of which they could only extricate themſelves by the utmoſt exertion of their ſkill in ſeamanſhip, ſometimes involved in ſheets of ſleet and ſnow, and in miſts ſo dark, that a man on the forecaſtle could not be ſeen from the quarter deck; ſometimes the ſea rolling mountains high, while the running tackle, made brittle by the ſeverity of the froſt, was frequently ſnapping, and ſometimes rendered immoveable. Amidſt the hardſhips of ſuch a traverſe, there is nothing more aſtoniſhing, than that the crew ſhould continue in perfect health, ſcarce a man being ſo ill as to be incapable of duty. Nothing can redound more to the honour of Capt. Cook, than his paying particular attention to the preſervation of health among his company. By obſerving the ſtricteſt diſcipline from the higheſt to the loweſt, his commands were duly obſerved, and punctually executed. When the ſervice was hard, he tempered the ſeverity thereof by frequently relieving thoſe employed in the performance, and having all hands at command, he was never under the neceſſity of continuing the labour of any ſet of men beyond what their ſtrength and their ſpirits could bear. Another neceſſary precaution was, that in fine or ſettled weather, the captain never ſuffered any of his men to be idle, but conſtantly employed the armourers, the carpenters, the profeſſed navigators, foremaſtmen, &c. in doing ſomething each in his own way, which, though not immediately wanted, he knew there might be a call for before the voyage was completed. Having by this means left no ſpare time for gaming, quarrelling, or rioting, he kept them in action, and puniſhed drunkenneſs with the utmoſt ſeverity; and thus by perſevering in a ſteady line of conduct, he was enabled to keep the ſea till reduced to a very ſcanty portion of water; and when he deſpaired of finding any new land, and had fully ſatisfied himſelf of the non exiſtence of any continent in the quarter he had traverſed, he directed his courſe to Charlotte's Sound, the place appointed for both ſhips to rendezvous in caſe of ſeparation, and appeared off the ſame, (as has been already related) on Tueſday, the 18th of May, 1773, and here we diſcovered our conſort the Adventure, by the ſignals ſhe made to us, an event every one in both ſhips felt with inexpreſſible ſatisfaction.

The next morning after our arrival, being Wedneſday, the 19th, Capt. Cook went off in the boat, at day-break, to gather ſcurvy graſs, celery, and other vegetables. At breakfaſt time he returned with a boat load, enough for the crews of both ſhips; and knowing their ſalutary efficacy in removing ſcorbutic complaints, he ordered that they ſhould be boiled with wheat and portable broth, every morning for breakfaſt, and with peaſe and broth for dinner, and thus dreſſed they are extremely beneficial. It was now the Captain's intention to viſit Van Diemen's land, in order to determine whether it made a part of New Holland; but as Capt. Furneaux had cleared up this point, it was reſolved to continue our reſearches to the eaſt between the latitudes of 41 deg. and 46 deg. In conſequence of this determination Capt. Cook ordered out his men to aſſiſt the crew of the Adventure in preparing her for ſea. He was induced more eſpecially to this, becauſe he knew refreſhments were to be procured at the Society Iſles. On the 20th we viſited the fortifications of the natives where the obſervatory was fixed. It is only acceſſible in one place, and there by a narrow, difficult path, being ſituated on a ſteep rock. The huts of the natives ſtood promiſcuouſly within an incloſure of palliſadoes; they conſiſted only of a roof, and had no walls. Perhaps theſe are only occaſional abodes, when the Indians find themſelves in any danger. Capt. Furneaux had planted before our arrival, a great quantity of garden ſeeds, which grew very well, and produced plenty of ſallad and European greens. This day Capt. Cook ſent on ſhore, to the watering-place, near the Adventure's tent, the only ewe and ram remaining of thoſe we brought from the Cape of Good Hope. On the 21ſt we went over to Long Iſland, which conſiſts of one long ridge, the top nearly level, and the ſides ſteep. Here we found various kinds of ſtone, and ſowed different kinds of garden ſeeds upon ſome ſpots which we cleared for that purpoſe. On Saturday, the 22d, we found the ewe and ram dead, whoſe death we ſuppoſed to have been occaſioned by ſome poiſonous plants. About noon we were viſited by two ſmall canoes in which were five men. They dined with us, and it was not a little they devoured. In the evening they were diſmiſſed with preſents. They reſembled the people of Duſky Bay, but were much more familiar, and did not appear concerned at ſeeing us, which was probably owing to their having before viſited the crew of the Adventure. Some of our crew made uſe of their canoes to ſet themſelves aſhore, on which they complained to the Captain; and, upon their canoes being reſtored, they ſeemed highly delighted.

On Monday the 24th, early in the morning, Mr. Gilbert, the maſter, was diſpatched to ſound about the rock we had diſcovered in the entrance of the ſound; at the ſame time Capt. Cook, accompanied by Capt. Furneaux and Mr. Forſter, ſet off in a boat to the weſt bay on a ſhooting party. They met a large canoe, in which were 14 or 15 people; and the firſt queſtion they aſked was concerning the welfare of Tupia. Being told he was dead, they expreſſed ſome concern. The ſame enquiry, as has been obſerved, was made of Capt. Furneaux when he firſt arrived, and on our getting aboard in the evening, we were informed, that ſome Indians in a canoe, who were ſtrangers to our people, had alſo enquired for Tupia. Mr. Gilbert having ſounded all round the rock, which he found to be very ſmall and ſteep, returned late in the evening. This day the Reſolution received another viſit from a family who came with no other intent than partaking of our food, and to get ſome of our iron work. We wanted to know their names, but it was a long time before we could make them underſtand us. At laſt we found that the oldeſt was called Towahanga, and the others Kotugha-a, Koghoaa, Khoaa, Kollakh, and Taupuaperua. The laſt was a boy about twelve years of age, very lively and intelligent. He dined with us, eat voraciouſly, and was very fond of the cruſt of a pie made of wild fowl. He did not much reliſh Madeira wine which the captain gave him, but was very fond of ſome ſweet Cape wine, which elevated his ſpirits and his tongue was perpetually going. He very much wanted the captain's boat cloak, and ſeemed much hurt at a refuſal. An empty bottle and a table-cloth being alſo denied him, he grew exceeding angry, and at length was ſo ſullen, that he would not ſpeak a word. On Saturday the 29th inſtant, a great number of natives ſurrounded us with canoes, who brought goods to exchange, for which they got good returns, owing to the eagerneſs with which our ſailors outbid each other, all of them being deſirous of having ſome of the productions of this country. Among theſe Indians we ſaw many women whoſe lips were of a blackiſh hue, and their cheeks were painted with a lively red. They had large knees, and ſlender bandy legs, owing to want of exerciſe, and ſitting in their canoes croſs legged. Theſe ladies were very agreeable to our crews, who had no opportunity of indulging an intercourſe with other women ſince our departure from England; and they ſoon found out, that chaſtity was not a diſtinguiſhing part of their character. Their conſent was eaſily purchaſed: a ſpike-nail, or an old ſhirt, was a ſufficient bribe: the lady was then left to make her man happy, and to exact from him another preſent for herſelf. We muſt obſerve to the credit of ſome of theſe women, and to the diſcredit of their men, that ſeveral of the former ſubmitted to this proſtitution with much ſeeming reluctance; and they were ſometimes terrified into a compliance by the authority and even menaces of the men. The New Zealanders encouraged by the gain of this diſgraceful commerce, went through both the ſhips, offering their daughters and ſiſters to the promiſcuous embraces of every one for iron, tools, &c. but the married women were not obliged to carry on this infamous kind of traffic. Indeed it ſeems to be an eſtabliſhed cuſtom in New Zealand for a girl to beſtow her favour on a number of men, without the leaſt infringement on her character; but after marriage, the ſtricteſt conjugal fidelity is expected from her. Sketches of the moſt characteriſtic of their faces were taken by our draughtſmen. Several of the old men in particular, had very expreſſive countenances; and ſome of the young ones looked very ſavage, owing to their buſhy hair hanging over their faces. Their dreſs is like what is exactly deſcribed in our copper-plates for this work. In the evening they all went on ſhore, and erected temporary huts oppoſite to the ſhips. Here they made fires, and prepared their ſuppers, which conſiſted of freſh fiſh, which they caught with great dexterity. One of theſe Indians Capt. Cook took over to Mortuara, and ſhewed him ſome potatoes, in a thriving condition, which were planted by Mr. Fannen, maſter of the Adventure. The man was ſo well pleaſed with them, that of his own accord, he began to hoe up the earth round the plants. He was then conducted to other plantations of turnips, carrots, and parſnips, of which it was eaſy to give them an idea, by comparing them with ſuch roots as they were well acquainted with. We muſt further remark of theſe people, that not any of our methods of fiſhing are equal to theirs.

On the 30th inſtant, we went over to Long Iſland, to collect ſome hay which the crews had made, and to bring ſome vegetables on board. In this trip we found ſeveral new plants, and ſhot ſome ſmall birds, which we had not ſeen before. In the afternoon, leave was given to ſome of our ſailors to go on ſhore, where they again purchaſed the embraces of the women. Theſe fellows muſt have been very keen indeed, or they would have been diſguſted with the uncleanlineſs of their doxies, all of whom had a diſagreeable ſmell, which might be ſcented at a conſiderable diſtance; and their clothes as well as hair ſwarmed with vermin to a very great degree; which they occaſionally cracked between their teeth. It is ſurpriſing how men, who had received a civilized education, could gratify the animal appetite with ſuch loathſome creatures. While this party were on ſhore, a young woman on board ſtole one of our ſeamen's jackets, and gave it a young man of her own tribe; upon the ſailor's taking it from the Indian, he received ſeveral blows on the face by the young fellow's fiſt. At firſt the ſailor took this as in joke, but upon perceiving the aſſailant to be in earneſt, he gave him a hearty Engliſh drubbing, and made him cry out for quarters. At this time Capt. Cook continued his employment of ſowing, in different ſpots cleared for the purpoſe, all ſorts of vegetables that he thought would grow in this country, ſuch as potatoes, beans, peas, corn, &c.

On Tueſday the 1ſt of June we were viſited by ſeveral natives whom we had not ſeen before, and who brought with them ſundry new articles of commerce, among theſe were dogs, ſome of which we purchaſed. Of theſe people we ſaw a few oddly marked in their faces, by ſpiral lines deeply cut in them. Such kind of marks were very regular in the face of a middle-aged man, named Tringho Waya, who appeared to be a perſon of note, and to have authority over his brethren. This company ſeemed to underſtand perfectly well how to traffic, and did not like we ſhould make hard bargains. Some of them entertained us with a dance on the quarter deck, previous to which they parted with their upper garments, and ſtood in a row. They ſung a ſong, and its chorus all together, making during the performance many frantic geſtures. Muſic accompanied this ſong and dance, but it was not very harmonious.

On Wedneſday the 2d, we ſet aſhore on the eaſt-ſide of the ſound a male and a female goat. The latter, which was more than a year old, had two fine kids, that were killed by the cold ſome time before we arrived in Duſky Bay. Capt. Furneaux likewiſe put on ſhore, in Cannibal Cove, a boar and two breeding ſows, which were left to range in the woods at pleaſure. Should they remain unmoleſted by the natives till they become wild, they will then be in no danger, and in time this country may be ſtocked with theſe uſeful animals. In an excurſion made this day by ſome of our people to the eaſt, they met with the largeſt ſeal they had ever ſeen. They diſcovered it ſwimming on the ſurface of the water, and got near enough to fire at it, but without effect; and after purſuing it near an hour, they were obliged to give over the chaſe. By the ſize of this animal, it probably was a ſea-lioneſs; Capt. Cook was of this opinion from having ſeen a ſea-lion when he entered this ſound, in his former voyage; and he thought theſe creatures had their abode in ſome of the rocks, that lie off Admiralty Bay, and in the ſtrait. On the 3d, ſome boats were ſent to Long Iſland, to bring away the remainder of the hay, and our carpenter went over to the eaſt-ſide of the ſound, to cut down ſome ſpars, which were much wanted. On their return, one of the boats was chaſed by a large double canoe, containing about fifty men. Prudence dictated to effect an eſcape by ſailing, for though the Indians might have no hoſtile intentions, yet this was a neceſſary caution.

Friday the 4th of June, being his Majeſty's birthday, we hoiſted our colours, and prepared to celebrate the day with the uſual feſtivities. Early in the morning our friends brought us a large ſupply of fiſh. One of them promiſed to accompany us in our voyage, but afterwards altered his mind, as did alſo ſome others who had made a like promiſe to the people of the Adventure. It was very common for theſe people to bring their children with them, not with the unnatural intention of ſelling them, as was reported, but in expectation that we would make them preſents. A man brought his ſon, a boy about ten years of age, and preſented him to Capt. Cook, who thought at firſt he wanted to ſell him: but we ſoon found the deſire of the father was inclined only towards a white ſhirt, which was given to his ſon. The boy was ſo highly delighted with his new garment, that he went all over the ſhip, preſenting himſelf before every one who came in his way. This freedom, or perhaps the colour of his dreſs, or the boy's antic geſtures, offended old Will, the ram goat, who by a ſudden butt knocked him backwards on the deck. The ſhirt was dirtied; the misfortune ſeemed irreparable to the boy, who feared to appear before his father in the cabbin, until brought in by Mr. Forſter; when he told a very lamentable ſtory againſt Gourey, the great dog (for ſo they called all the quadrupeds we had aboard) nor would he be reconciled till his ſhirt was waſhed and dried. From this trifling ſtory may be ſeen how liable we are to miſtake theſe people's meaning, and to aſcribe to them cuſtoms they are utter ſtrangers to. This day a large double canoe approached, well manned: it came within muſket ſhot, and contained about thirty men. Our friends on board told us they were enemies very earneſtly. Among theſe new viſitors, one ſtood at the head of the canoe, and another at the ſtern, while the reſt kept their ſeats. One of them held a green bough, the New Zealand flag in his hand, and ſpoke a few words. The other made a long harangue, in ſolemn and well articulated ſounds. Being invited aboard, he at laſt ventured, and was followed ſoon by the reſt, who eagerly traded with us. They directly ſaluted the natives on board, by an application of their noſes, and paid the ſame compliment to the gentlemen on the quarter-deck. The chief's name was Teiratu. They all enquired for Tupia, and were much concerned at hearing of his death. Theſe people were taller than any we had hitherto ſeen in New Zealand, and their dreſs and ornaments beſpoke them ſuperior to the inhabitants of Queen Charlotte's Sound. Their tools were made with great attention, and were elegantly carved: we obtained a few of theſe, and alſo ſome muſical inſtruments from them. They made but a ſhort ſtay, and, embarking, they all went over to Mortuara, where, by the help of our glaſſes, we diſcovered four or five canoes, and ſeveral people on the ſhore. About noon Capt. Cook, accompanied by ſeveral other gentlemen followed them, and were received with every mark of friendſhip. The captain diſtributed ſeveral preſents, among which were a great number of breſs medals inſcribed with the king's title on one ſide and the ſhip which undertook this voyage on the other. Teiratu appeared to be the chief among theſe people, by the great degree of reſpect paid him. Capt. Cook conducted Teiratu to the garden he had planted, and obtained a promiſe from him that he would not ſuffer it to be deſtroyed.

Early in the morning of the 7th of June, we ſailed from this place in company with the Adventure, but had frequent hindrances from contrary winds. On the twenty-ſecond of July we were in lat. 32 deg. 30 min. long. 133 deg. 40 min. W. And now the weather was ſo warm, that we were obliged to put on lighter cloaths. We did not ſee a ſingle bird this day, which was rather remarkable, as not one day had hitherto paſſed ſince we left the land without ſeeing ſeveral. Capt. Cook having heard that the crew of the Adventure were ſickly, went on board the 29th of July, when he found the cook dead, and 20 men ill with the ſcurvy and flux. Only three men were on the ſick liſt on board the Reſolution, which was certainly owing to the captain's abſolutely enforcing the eating celery and ſcurvy-graſs with the food, though at firſt the crew did not like it.

All hopes of diſcovering a continent now vaniſhed, as we had got to the northward of Capt. Carteret's tracts, and we only expected to ſee iſlands till our return to the S. Every circumſtance conſidered, we were induced to believe that there is no Southern Continent between New Zealand and America; it is very certain that this paſſage did not produce any ſure ſigns of one.

On the 6th of Auguſt, Capt. Furneaux came on board the Reſolution to dinner, and reported, that his people were much better, that the flux had quite left them, and that the ſcurvy was at a ſtand. The ſcorbutic people had been well ſupplied with cyder, which in a great meaſure contributed to this happy change. Land appeared to the ſouth on the eleventh inſtant at day break, which we judged to be one of thoſe iſlands diſcovered by Monſ. Bougainville. We called it Reſolution Iſland, it lies in the latitude of 17 deg. 24 min. longitude 141 deg. 39 min. W. We did not ſtay to examine it, as it did not appear large enough to ſupply our wants; we therefore determined to make the beſt of our way to Otaheite, where we were ſure of a plentiful ſupply of refreſhments. In the evening we ſaw land again, which in all probability was another of Monſ. Bougainville's diſcoveries. This we called Doubtful Iſland. On the morning of the 12th inſtant at day-break, we diſcovered land at about two miles ahead of us, ſo that we were adviſed of our danger but juſt in time. This was another ſmall half drowned iſland. The ſea broke againſt it in a dreadful ſurf. This iſland is in latitude 17 deg. 5 min. longitude 143 deg. 16 min. W. We called it Furneaux Iſland. On the 17th, we ſaw another of theſe iſlands in latitude 17 deg. 4 min. longitude 144 deg. 30 min. W. It is with very great propriety that Monſ. Bougainville calls theſe low overflowed iſlands the Dangerous Archipelago. We were under the neceſſity of proceeding with the utmoſt caution, eſpecially in the night, as we were ſurrounded by them, which the ſmoothneſs of the ſea ſufficiently indicated. On the 14th, we found ourſelves clear of theſe iſlands, and ſteered our courſe for Otaheite. We ſaw Oſnaburg Iſland (which was diſcovered by Capt. Wallis) on the 15th, at five in the morning, and acquainted Capt. Furneaux that it was our intention to put into Oatipiha Bay, near the ſouth end of Otaheite, and get what refreſhments we could in that part of the iſland, before we went to Matavai.

On the 18th, we were within a league of the reef. On account of the breeze failing us, we hoiſted out our boats to tow the ſhips off, but they could not keep us from being carried too near the reef. Many inhabitants came on board from different parts, who brought fruits, &c. to exchange; they moſt of them knew Capt. Cook again, and enquired for Mr. Banks and others, but none of them aſked for Tupia. Our ſituation became ſtill more dangerous as the calm continued. On ſending to examine the weſtern point of the reef, in order to get round that way into the bay, we found that there was not ſufficient depth of water. Both ſhips were carried with great impetuoſity towards the reef, and all the horrors of ſhipwreck now ſtared us in the face. The breakers were not two cables length from us, and we could find no bottom to anchor. The Reſolution came at three fathoms water, and ſtruck at every fall of the ſea, but the Adventure brought up under our bow without ſtriking. The dreadful ſurf which broke under our ſtern threatened our ſhipwreck every moment. At length we found ground a little without the baſon, and got the ſhip afloat by cutting away the bower anchor, and the tide ceaſed to act in the ſame direction. We happily towed off the Reſolution, and all the boats were ordered to aſſiſt the Adventure. We happily got once more ſafe at ſea, after narrowly eſcaping ſhipwreck. A number of the natives were on board the ſhips while we were in this perilous ſituation, but were totally inſenſible of any danger, even while we were ſtriking, and when they parted with us they ſeemed quite unconcerned. We anchored in Oati-piha Bay, very near the ſhore, and were viſited by a great number of the natives, who brought roots, fruit, &c. Preſents were made to their chiefs of ſhirts, axes, and other articles, in return for which they promiſed hogs, fowls, &c. but we believe they never intended to keep their promiſe. In the afternoon, Captains Cook and Furneaux landed to ſound the diſpoſition of the natives, and to view the watering-place. The natives behaved with great civility, and we had a very convenient ſupply of water.

We recovered the Reſolution's bower anchor, which we were obliged to leave; but the Adventure loſt three in the time of our extremity, which were never recovered. We were ſtill ſupplied with fruit and roots, but not in large quantities. A party of men were trading on ſhore, under the protection of a guard. We could not get any hogs from the natives, though plenty were ſaid to be ſeen about their habitations, they all ſaid they belonged to Waheatow, their chief, whom we had not ſeen. A man who pretended to be a chief came on board with ſeveral of his friends, to whom preſents were made, but he was detected in handing ſeveral things over the quarter gallery; and as complaints of the ſame nature were alledged againſt thoſe on the deck, the captain took the liberty to turn them all out of the ſhip. The captain was ſo exaſperated at the conduct of the pretended chief, that he fired two muſquets over his head, which terrified him ſo much, that he quitted his canoe and took to the water. On ſending a boat to take up the canoe, the people from the ſhore pelted the boat with ſtones. The captain went himſelf in another boat to protect her, he likewiſe ordered a cannon loaded with ball to be fired along the coaſt, which terrified them ſufficiently, and he brought away the canoes without any oppoſition. They ſoon became friends again, and the canoes were returned. Two or three people began to enquire after Tupia, but they were ſoon ſatisfied when they heard the cauſe of his death. Several people aſked for Mr. Banks, and other people who were at Otaheite with Capt. Cook before. We were informed by theſe people, that there had been a battle fought between the two kingdoms, that Toutaha, the regent of the greater peninſula, was ſlain, and that Otoo reigned in his ſtead. In this battle Tubourai, Tamaide, and ſeveral of our old friends fell. A peace was now fully eſtabliſhed.

On the 19th, the two commanders made an excurſion along the coaſt, and were entertained by a chief (whom they met) with ſome excellent fiſh, &c. to whom in return they made ſeveral preſents. On the 20th, one of the natives ſtole a gun from the people on ſhore. Some of the natives purſued him of their own accord, who knocked him down and brought back the muſquet. We imagine that fear operated more with them in this buſineſs than any other motive. On the 21ſt, a chief came to viſit us, who brought in a preſent of fruit, which proved to be ſome cocoa-nuts that we had drawn the water from and thrown overboard. He had ſo artfully tied them up, that we did not ſoon diſcover the deceit. He did not betray the leaſt emotion when we told him of it, and opened two or three of them himſelf, as if he knew nothing of the matter; he then pretended to be ſatisfied that it was really ſo, and went on ſhore, from whence he ſent ſome bananoes and plantains. We were informed that Waheatow was come into the neighbourhood, and wiſhed to ſee Capt. Cook, who accordingly went in company with Capt. Furneaux and ſome gentlemen: they were likewiſe attended by ſome natives. About a mile from the landing place they met the chief, advancing to meet them with a numerous train. When the prince perceived the company, he halted. He knew Captain Cook very well, as they had ſeen each other ſeveral times in 1769. He went at that time by the name of Teracc, and took his father's name at his death. We found him ſitting on a ſtool; and as ſoon as the uſual ſalutation was over, he ſeated Capt. Cook on the ſame ſtool with himſelf; the reſt ſat on the ground. He enquired after ſeveral who had been on the former voyage, and ſeemed ſorry when we told him we muſt ſail the next day, offering the captain that if he would ſtay he ſhould have hogs in plenty. Capt. Cook made him many preſents, and ſtaid with him the whole morning. This party returned on board of ſhip to dinner, and made this chief another viſit in the afternoon, made him more preſents, and he gave us two hogs. At the different trading places ſome others were got, ſo that a meal's freſh pork ſerved for the crews of both ſhips.

Early in the morning of the 24th, we put to ſea, and were accompanied by ſeveral canoes, who brought cargoes of fruit for ſail; neither did they return till they had diſpoſed of them. The ſick people on board the Adventure got much relief from theſe fruits. We left a lieutenant on ſhore, in order to bring ſome hogs, which they promiſed to ſend by him. He returned on the 25th, and brought eight pigs with him. We arrived at Matavai Bay in the evening of the 25th, and our decks were crouded with natives before we could get to anchor, almoſt all of them were acquainted with Capt. Cook. Otoo their king and a great crowd were got together on the ſhore. Capt. Cook was going on ſhore to pay him a viſit, but was told that he was gone to Oparee in a fright; which ſeemed very extraordinary to the captain, as all others were much pleaſed to ſee him. Maritata, a chief, was on board, and adviſed the captain to defer his viſit till next morning. The captain ſet out on the 26th for Oparee, after having given directions to fetch tents for the reception of the ſick, &c. Capt. Furneaux, Maritata and his wife, and ſome others, went with the captain. They were conducted to Otoo as ſoon as they were landed, who ſat on the ground under a ſhady tree, with a great number of people around him. Capt. Cook made him ſeveral preſents, after the uſual compliments had paſſed, being very well perſuaded that it was much to his intereſt to eſtabliſh a friendſhip with this man. His attendants alſo had preſents made to them, they offered cloth in return, which was refuſed, being told that what was given was merely out of friendſhip. Otoo enquired for all the gentlemen who had been there before, as well as for Tupia, and promiſed to ſend ſome hogs on board, but was very backward in ſaying he would come on board himſelf, being, as he ſaid, much afraid of the great guns. He was certainly the moſt timid prince, as all his actions demonſtrated. He was a perſonable well made man, ſix feet high, and about thirty years of age. His father and all his ſubjects were uncovered before him, that is, their heads and ſhoulders were made bare.

On the 27th, the king Otoo came to pay us a viſit, attended by a numerous train; he ſent before him two large fiſh, a hog, ſome fruits, and a large quantity of cloth. After much perſuaſion he came on board himſelf, accompanied by his ſiſters, a younger brother, &c. with many attendants, who all received preſents; and when they had breakfaſted, carried them home to Oparee. Upon landing, an old lady, the mother of Toutaha, met Capt. Cook, ſeized him by both hands, and, weeping bitterly, told him that her ſon and his friend Toutaha were dead. Had not the king taken her from Capt. Cook, he muſt have joined her lamentations. It was with a good deal of difficulty that the captain prevailed on the king to let him ſee her again, when he made her ſome preſents. Capt. Furneaux gave the king a male and female goat, which we hope will multiply. A lieutenant was ſent to Attahourou on the 28th, to purchaſe hogs. The king, with his ſiſter and ſome attendants, paid us another viſit ſoon after ſun-riſe, and brought with them a hog, ſome fruit, and ſome more cloth. They likewiſe went on board the

Adventure, and made Capt. Furneaux the ſame preſents. Soon after they returned, and brought Capt. Furneaux with them. Capt. Cook made them a good return for the preſents they brought, and dreſſed out the king's ſiſter to the greateſt advantage. The king was carried again to Oparee, when his Otaheitan majeſty thought proper to depart, and was entertained as he went with bagpipes and the ſeamen dancing. Some of his people danced alſo in imitation of the ſeamen, and performed their parts tolerably well. Toutaha's mother again preſented herſelf to Capt. Cook; but could not look upon him without ſhedding many tears. The next day the king promiſed to viſit us again, but ſaid we muſt firſt wait upon him. The lieutenant whom we ſent for hogs returned only with a promiſe of having ſome, if he would go back in a few days.

On the twenty-ninth the commanders took a trip to Oparee, early in the morning, attended by ſome officers and gentlemen, and made the king ſuch preſents as he had not before ſeen. One of them was a broad ſword; at the ſight of which he was very much intimidated, and deſired it might be taken out of his ſight. With a vaſt deal of argument he was prevailed upon to ſuffer it to be put on his ſide, where it remained a very ſhort time. We received an invitation to the theatre, where we were entertained with a dramatic piece, conſiſting of comedy and dance. The ſubject we could not well find out; though we heard frequent mention of Capt. Cook's name during the performance. The performers were one woman, which was no leſs a perſonage than the king's ſiſter, and five men, and their muſic conſiſted of only three drums. The whole entertainment was well conducted, and laſted about two hours. When this diverſion was over, the king deſired us to depart, and loaded us with fruit and fiſh. The king ſent more fruit and fiſh the next morning.

In the evening of the thirtieth we were alarmed with the cry of murder from the ſhore. A boat was immediately armed, and ſent on ſhore, to bring off any of our people who might be found there without orders, and to diſcover the occaſion of the diſturbance. The boat ſoon returned, with a ſeaman and three marines; others were taken, who belonged to the Adventure, and even put under cloſe confinement till the morning, when they were ſeverely puniſhed according to their demerits. The people would not confeſs any thing, and it did not appear that any material injury had been done. The diſturbance might be occaſioned by the fellows making too free with the women: notwithſtanding this, the alarm was ſo great, that the natives fled from their habitations in the night; and the inhabitants of the whole coaſt were terrified. The king himſelf had fled a great way from the place of his abode; and when Capt. Cook ſaw him, he complained to him of the diſturbance. Capt. Cook preſented the king with three Cape ſheep, as it was his laſt viſit. With this preſent he was very well pleaſed, though he had not much reaſon to be ſo, as they were all weathers; this he was made acquainted with. The king's fears were now diſſipated, and he preſented us with three hogs, one of which was very ſmall, which we took notice of. Soon after a perſon came to the king, and ſeemed to ſpeak very peremptorily about the hogs, and we thought he was angry with him for giving us ſo many, and more ſo when he took the little pig away with him; but we were much miſtaken, for ſoon after we were gone, another hog was brought to us, larger than the other two. The king ſeemed much affected when Capt. Cook told him he ſhould leave the iſland the next day. They embraced each other ſeveral times, and departed.

On the firſt of September we determined to depart, as the ſick were nearly recovered, the neceſſary repairs of the ſhip were completed, and plenty of water provided. Moſt of the day was employed in unmooring the ſhips; and in the afternoon the lieutenant returned, who had been ſent for the hogs promiſed. With him came Pottatou (the chief of the diſtrict of Attahounou), with his wife, to pay Capt. Cook a viſit, and made him a preſent of two hogs and ſome fiſh. The lieutenant got likewiſe two more hogs. As the wind was weſterly, we were obliged to diſmiſs our friends ſooner than they wiſhed; but they were very well ſatisfied with the reception they met with. A young man, named Poreo, came on board ſome hours before we got under ſail, and deſired to go with us, to which we conſented; and at the ſame time he aſked for an axe and a ſpike nail for his father, who came with him on board. They were accordingly given him, and they parted with great indifference, which ſeemed to indicate that they had deceived us, and no ſuch conſanguinity ſubſiſted. Preſently a canoe, conducted by two men, came along-ſide, and demanded Poreo in the name of Otoo. We informed them that we would part with him if they would return the hatchet and ſpike nail, but they ſaid they were aſhore; ſo the young gentleman ſailed along with us, though he wept when he ſaw the land at our ſtern. On the ſecond we ſteered our courſe for the iſland of Huaheine, and the Reſolution anchored in twenty-four fathoms water on the third inſtant, but the Adventure got aſhore on the north ſide of the channel, but ſhe was happily got off again without receiving any damage. The natives received us with the utmoſt cordiality, ſeveral of whom came on board before our commanders went on ſhore. Some preſents were diſtributed among them, which were gratefully returned by a plentiful ſupply of hogs, fruit, &c. Here we had a fine proſpect of being plentifully ſupplied with freſh pork and fowls, which was to us very pleaſing. Two trading parties were ſent aſhore on the fourth inſtant, which were very well conducted. Capt. Cook was informed that Oree was ſtill alive, and waited to ſee him. The commanders, with Mr. Forſter, went to the place appointed for the interview, accompanied by one of the natives. The boat was landed before the chief's houſe, and we were deſired to remain in it till the neceſſary ceremony was gone through. There ſtood cloſe to the ſhore five young plantain trees, which are their emblems of peace: theſe were, with ſome ceremony, brought on board ſeparately. The firſt three were each accompanied by a young pig, whoſe ears were ornamented with cocoa-nut fibres; the fourth plantain tree was accompanied by a dog. All theſe had particular names and meanings, which we could not underſtand. The chief had carefully preſerved a piece of pewter, with an inſcription on it, which Capt. Cook had preſented him with in 1769, together with a piece of counterfeit Engliſh coin, which, with a few beads, were all in the ſame bag the captain made for them; theſe the chief ſent on board. This part of the ceremony being over, we were deſired by our guide to decorate three young plantain trees with nails, looking-glaſſes, beads, medals, &c. With theſe in our hands we landed, and were conducted through the multitude. We were directed to ſit down a few paces before the chief, and the plantains were laid one by one before him. We were told that one was for God, another for the king, and the third for friendſhip. This being done, the king came to Capt. Cook, fell on his neck, and kiſſed him. A great effuſion of tears fell down the venerable cheeks of this old man; and if ever tears ſpoke the language of the heart, ſurely theſe did. Preſents were made to all his attendants and friends. Capt. Cook regarded him as a father, and therefore preſented him with the moſt valuable articles he had. He gave the captain a hog, and a good deal of cloth, with the promiſe that all his wants ſhould be ſupplied. Soon after we returned on board, fourteen hogs were ſent us, with fowls and fruits in abundance. In the morning of the fifth inſtant we were viſited by this good old man, who brought a hog and ſome fruit; indeed he ſent the captain every day ready dreſſed fruit and roots in great plenty. This morning the lieutenant went on ſhore in ſearch of more hogs, and returned in the evening with twenty-eight, and about ſeventy more were purchaſed on ſhore.

On Monday the ſixth of September the trading party went on ſhore as uſual; it only conſiſted of three people. Capt. Cook went on ſhore after breakfaſt, and learnt that one of the inhabitants had been very inſolent and troubleſome. This man was ſhewn to the captain, equipped in his war habit, and he had a club in each hand. The captain took theſe from him, as he perceived him bent on miſchief, broke them before his face, and obliged him to retire. The captain being informed that this man was a chief, became a little ſuſpicious of him, and ſent for a guard. About this time a gentleman had gone out botanizing alone; two men aſſaulted him, and ſtripped him of every thing but his trowſers; luckily they did him no harm, though they ſtruck him ſeveral times with his own hanger. They made off when they had done this, and another of the natives brought a piece of cloth to cover him. This gentleman preſently appeared at the trading place, where a number of the natives were aſſembled, who all fled at ſeeing him. Capt. Cook perſuaded ſome of them to return, aſſuring them that none ſhould ſuffer who were innocent. When the king heard this complaint, he and his companions wept bitterly; and as ſoon as his grief was aſſwaged, he made a long harangue to the people, telling them the baſeneſs of ſuch actions, when the captain and his crew had always behaved ſo well to them. He then took a particular account of the things the gentleman had loſt, and promiſed they ſhould be returned, if it was in his power to find them. After this he deſired Capt. Cook to follow him to the boat, but the people being apprehenſive of his ſafety, uſed every argument to diſſuade him from it. It is impoſſible to deſcribe the grief they expreſſed in the intreaties they uſed; every face was bedewed with tears, and every mouth was filled with the moſt diſſuaſive arguments. Oree was deaf to them all, and inſiſted on going with the captain; when they both were in the boat, he deſired it might be put off. The only perſon who did not oppoſe his going, was his ſiſter, and ſhe ſhewed a magnanimity of ſpirit equal to her brother. We proceeded in ſearch of the robbers, as far as it was convenient by water, and then landed. The chief led the way, travelled ſeveral miles, and enquired after them of all he ſaw. We then went into a cottage, and had ſome refreſhment. The king wanted to proceed farther, and was with great difficulty diſſuaded from it by Capt. Cook. When we returned to the boat, we were met by the king's ſiſter, who had travelled over land to that place, accompanied by ſeveral other perſons. The king inſiſted on going into the boat with us, as well as his ſiſter. We returned to the ſhip, and the king made a very hearty dinner; though his ſiſter, according to cuſtom, ate nothing. We made them ſuitable preſents for the confidence they had placed in us, and ſet them aſhore amidſt the acclamations of multitudes. Peace was now perfectly re-eſtabliſhed, proviſions poured in from all quarters, the gentleman's hanger and coat were returned, and thus ended theſe troubleſome tranſactions.

We went to take our leave of Oree while the ſhips were unmooring, and preſented him with things both valuable and uſeful. We left him a copper-plate, with this inſcription. "Anchored here, his Britannic Majeſty's ſhips Reſolution and Adventure, September 1773." After we had traded for ſuch things as we wanted, we took our leave, which was a very affectionate one. On returning to the ſhips, they were crouded, as on our arrival, with canoes filled with hogs, fowls, &c. Soon after we were on board, the king came, and informed us that the robbers were taken, and deſired us to go on ſhore, that we might behold their exemplary puniſhment. This we ſhould have been glad to have done, as ſo much pains had been taken to diſcover them; but it was out of our power, as the Adventure was out of harbour, and we were under ſail. The good old king ſtaid with us till we were near two miles out at ſea, and then, after taking another affectionate leave, parted. During our ſtay here, we procured upwards of three hundred hogs, beſides fowls and fruit in great abundance. While at this iſland, Capt. Furneaux engaged a young man, named Omai, a native of Ulietea, who had been diſpoſſeſſed of his property by the people of Bolabola, to acompany him on his voyage. This young man has a good underſtanding, honeſt principles, and a natural good behaviour. But his hiſtory is ſo well known in England, that we will not enlarge upon it.

On Wedneſday the 8th, we entered the harbour of Ohamaneno; the natives crouded about us with hogs and fruit as ſoon as we were anchored. We refuſed the hogs, as we had already more than we could manage; but ſeveral of the principal people obliged us to take them whether we would or no. We made a viſit on the 9th to Oreo, who is the chief of this part of the iſland of Ulitea. He expreſſed great ſatisfaction on ſeeing Capt. Cook again, and deſired him to exchange names with him, which the latter agreed to: this is a diſtinguiſhing mark of friendſhip. Here we traded as uſual, but the balance of trade was much in our favour. On the 10th, the chief entertained us with a comedy; a very entertaining part of which was a theft, committed, with amazing dexterity, by a man and his accomplice. Before the thief has time to carry off the prize, he is diſcovered, and a ſcuffle enſues; the diſcoverers are vanquiſhed, and the thieves go off intriumph. We returned to dinner after the play was over, and as we were walking on ſhore in the evening, one of the natives informed us that there were nine uninhabited iſlands to the weſtward.

Oreo and his ſon paid us a viſit early in the morning of the 11th of September, and brought, as uſual, hogs and fruit with them. We dreſſed the youth in a ſhirt, and ſome other articles, of which he was not a little proud. After ſtaying ſome hours, they went aſhore, and ſo did Capt. Cook ſoon after, but to another part of the ſhore. When the chief heard he was landed, he went of his own accord and put a hog and ſome fruit in the boat, and returned without ſaying any thing of it to any other perſon. He afterwards came with ſome friends to dinner. After dinner, Po-oorau, who is the moſt eminent chief of the iſland, made us a viſit. He was introduced by Oreo, and brought a preſent with him; for which he received a handſome return. We promiſed to viſit both the chiefs the next morning: which we accordingly did, in company with ſeveral gentlemen. Another play was acted, and two very pretty young women performed, otherwiſe this piece was not ſo entertaining as the one we ſaw before.

On the 14th, we ſent on ſhore for a ſupply of bananoes and plantains, for ſea ſtore. Oreo and ſome friends paid us a pretty early viſit, when we informed him, that we would dine with him on ſhore, and deſired he would let us have two pigs for dinner, dreſſed in their faſhion. We found the floor of the chief's houſe ſtrewed thick with leaves, and we were ſoon ſeated round them. Soon after the pigs came tumbling over our heads upon the leaves; and they were both ſo hot as ſcarcely to be touched. The table was ornamented with hot bread-fruit and plantains: we had likewiſe a quantity of cocoa-nuts to drink. We never ſaw victuals dreſſed cleaner nor better in our lives, and it had a moſt exquiſite flavour, much ſuperior to victuals dreſſed in our mode; how they contrived it we cannot tell, but though one of theſe hogs weighed fifty pounds at leaſt, it was well done in every part, and not too much done in any. Oreo and his ſon, with ſome male friends, dined with us. We had a great number of attendants and people who came to ſee us thus dine in public, to whom pieces of pork were handed. The chief did not refuſe his glaſs of Madeira whenever it came to his turn, and we never at this, or at any other time, ſaw him affected by it. The boat's crew took the remainder when we had dined. In the afternoon we were again entertained with a play.

On the 15th, we had a ſufficient proof of the timorous diſpoſition of theſe people. We rather wondered that none of them came to the ſhips as uſual. We were afraid that as two men of the Adventure's crew ſtaid out all night contrary to orders, that the natives had ſtripped them, or done them ſome other injury, and were afraid we ſhould revenge their conduct. We went aſhore, and found the neighbourhood nearly deſerted. Preſently the two men made their appearance, and reported that they had been very civilly treated. We could get no account of the cauſe of their flight, and could only learn from a few perſons who ventured near us, that ſeveral were killed and wounded, and pointed to their bodies where the balls of the guns went in and out. Capt. Cook was very uneaſy at this relation, fearing for the ſafety of the peoplegone to Otaha. In order to get the beſt information, the captain determined to go to the chief himſelf, whom after much ſearching for, he found ſeated under the ſhade of a houſe, with a great many people round him. There was a great lamentation as ſoon as Capt. Cook approached, the chief and all his company burſting into tears. After all this piece of work, it was found that the cauſe of their alarm was on account of our boats being abſent; ſuppoſing that the people in them had deſerted us; and that we ſhould adopt violent methods to recover them. They were ſatisfied when Capt. Cook aſſured them there was no cauſe for alarm, and that the boats would certainly return. On the morning of the 16th, we paid the chief a viſit, who was in his own houſe in perfect tranquillity. At this time Poreo left us.

C H A P. III.

A Spaniſh ſhip viſits Otaheite—State of the iſlands—Remarks on the diſeaſes and cuſtoms of the Natives—Miſtaken notions concerning the women, corrected—Paſſage from Ulietea to the Friendly Iſles—Hervey's Iſland diſcovered—Incidents at Middleburgh—The two ſhips arrive at Amſterdam—A place of worſhip deſcribed—Incidents that happened during their ſtay at that iſland—The above iſlands deſcribed—Their produce—Cultivation—Houſes—Canoes—Navigation—Manufactures—Weapons—Cuſtoms—Government—Religion and language of the inhabitants.

ON the 17th of September, being Friday, we determined to put to ſea, having a good ſupply of all kinds of refreſhments. Before we ſailed, Oreo and his ſon paid us a viſit. Several canoes filled with fruit and hogs ſurrounded us: of the latter we could receive no more, our decks being ſo crouded with them that we could ſcarcely move. In both ſhips were about three hundred and fifty. Oreo and his friends did not leave us till we were under ſail, and earneſtly importuned us to tell them when we ſhould return. Capt. Cook, as many young men offered to come away with us, took one on board, about 18 years of age, named Oedidee, a native of Bolabola, and a near relation of the great Opoony, chief of the iſland. When we were out of the harbour and had made ſail, a canoe was obſerved following us conducted by two men; whereupon we brought to, and when along-ſide, they dilivered to Capt. Cook a preſent of roaſted fruit, and roots, from Oreo. The captain after having made a proper return ſet ſail to the weſt, with the Adventure in company. We ſhall here give ſome further account of theſe iſlands, ſome things, which are rather intereſting, having been omitted in the relation of daily tranſactions and incidents.

A few days after our arrival at Otaheite we were told that a ſhip, about the ſize of the Reſolution, had viſited Owhaiurua Harbour, at the S. E. end of the iſland; at which place, after having remained three weeks, ſhe departed about three months before our arrival. Four of the natives went away in her, whoſe names were Debedebea, Paoodou, Tanadooee, and Opahiah. We conjectured ſhe was a French ſhip, but at the Cape of Good Hope, we were informed ſhe was a Spaniard, ſent out from America. The natives of Otaheite complained of a diſorder communicated to them by the people in this ſhip, which they deſcribed as affecting the head, throat, and ſtomach, and at length they ſaid it killed them. This ſhip they called Pahai-no Peppe (ſhip of Peppe) and the diſeaſe they named Apano Pep-pe, juſt as they call the venereal diſeaſe Apano Pretane, (Engliſh diſeaſe) yet to a man, they ſay this loathſome diſtemper was introduced among them by M. de Bougainville; and they thought he came from Pretane, as well as every other ſhip that touched at the iſland. We were of opinion, that long before theſe iſlanders were viſited by Europeans, this, or a diſeaſe near a kin to it, had exiſted among them; for they told us people died of a diſorder, which we imagined to be venereal, before that period. But be this as it may, the diſeaſe is far leſs common among them than it was in 1769, when we firſt viſited theſe iſles.

In the years 1767 and 1768, the Iſland of Otaheite, as it were, ſwarmed with hogs and fowls; but at this time it was ſo ill ſupplied with theſe animals, that hardly any thing could tempt the owners to part with them; and the little ſtock they had, ſeemed to be at the diſpoſal of their kings. When we lay at Oaiti-piha Bay, in the kingdom of Tiarrabou, or leſſer Peninſula, we were given to underſtand, that every hog and fowl belonged to Waheatoua; and that all in the kingdom of Opoureonu, or the greater Peninſula, belonged to Otoo. While at this iſland we got only 24 hogs in 17 days; half of which came from the kings themſelves, and the other half we were inclined to think were ſold us by their permiſſion. But with reſpect to all the fruits produced in the iſland, with theſe we were abundantly ſupplied, except bread-fruit, which was not in ſeaſon. Cocoa-nuts and plantains, we got the moſt of; the latter, with a few yams and other roots, ſupplied the place of bread. At Otaheite we procured great plenty of apples, and a fruit reſembling nectarine, called by the natives Aheeya. This fruit was common to all the iſles. Of all the ſeeds, brought by Europeans to thoſe iſlands, none thrived ſo well as pumpkins, but theſe they do not like. We attributed the ſcarcity of hogs to two cauſes: firſt, to the great number of theſe animals which have been conſumed, and carried away for ſtock, by the ſhips that have touched here of late years; ſecondly, to the frequent wars between the two kingdoms. Two we know have commenced ſince the year 1767; but at preſent peace reigns among them, though they do not ſeem to entertain a cordial friendſhip for each other. We could not learn the occaſion of the late war, nor who were victorious in the conflict; but we learnt, that in the laſt battle which terminated the diſpute, numbers were killed on both ſides. On the part of Opoureonu, Toutaha, our very good friend was killed, and ſeveral other chiefs. Toutaha was buried in his family Morai at Oparree; and ſeveral women of his houſhold, with his mother, are now under the protection, and taken care of by Otoo, the reigning prince; one, who did not appear to us, at firſt, to much advantage. We could learn but little of Waheatoua of Tiarrabou; but we obſerved, that this prince, not more than 20 years of age, appeared in public with all the gravity of a man of fifty; yet his ſubjects do not uncover before him, or pay him that outward obeiſance as is done to Otoo; yet they ſhewed him equal reſpect, and when abroad, or in council, he took upon him rather more ſtate. His attendants were a few elderly men, who ſeemed to be his principal adviſers. Such was the preſent ſtate of Otaheite, but the other iſlands, that is Huaheine, Ulietea, and Otaha, appeared in a more flouriſhing condition, than they were at time when we firſt viſited them; ſince which, having enjoyed the bleſſings of peace, the people poſſeſs not only the neceſſaries, but many of the luxuries of life in great profuſion; but as we have treated at large of theſe iſlands in our journal and narrative of Capt. Cook's firſt voyage, we ſhall not trouble our readers with unneceſſary repetitions; but only add, under this head, new matter, or clear up any miſtakes, and ſeeming inconſiſtencies. In our firſt voyage to theſe places, we were inclined to believe that the natives at times offered to their ſupreme deity human ſacrifices. To clear up this matter the two captains, Cook and Furneaux, with ſome others went to a morai, in Matavai. In our company we had, as upon all other occaſions, an intelligent, ſenſible man, belonging to the Reſolution, who ſpoke the language of the natives tolerably well. In this Morai, or burying place, was a Tupapow, on which lay a dead body, and ſome viands. We firſt enquired, if the plantains, &c. before us, were for the Etua, and if they offered to him hogs, dogs, and fowls? They anſwered in the affirmative. We then, after a few more introductory queſtions, aſked, if they ſacrificed any of the human ſpecies to the Etua? They anſwered, yes, Taata-eno, that is bad men, who they firſt beat till they were dead; but good men were not ſacrificed. We aſked him if any Earees were? They replied, that hogs were given to Etua, and only Taata-eno. All the anſwers ſeemed to tend to the ſame point, and meant, that men for certain crimes were condemned to be ſacrificed, provided they had not wherewithal to redeem themſelves, and ſuch will generally be found among the lower claſs of poeple. But, notwithſtanding thoſe of whom theſe enquires were made took ſome pains to explain the whole of this religious rite, yet we were not ſufficiently acquainted with their language to make ourſelves complete maſters of the ſubject; but we have not the leaſt doubt remaining of the certainty of the fact, having ſince been informed by Omai, that it is undoubtedly a cuſtom with them to offer human ſacrifices to the Supreme Being. The object, according to his account, or who ſhall be ſacrificed, depends ſolely on the pleaſure of the high prieſt, who, on any ſolemn occaſion, retires alone into the temple, and, when he comes from thence, informs the people, that he has ſeen and talked with the Etua; (the high prieſt only having this privilege) that he requires a human ſacrifice; and that ſuch a particular perſon is the man, whom he names, and who immediately is killed, falling moſt probably a victim to the prieſt's reſentment.

Theſe people have a ſimple, but, to us, a nauſeous manner, of preparing the plant called Ava-ava, which we have noticed in the firſt part of this work. This is preſſed from the roots, and not from the leaves, as we firſt thought. The makers of the liquor chew a quantity of the root till it is ſoft and pulpy; then every one ſpits the juice he has preſſed out into one and the ſame platter. When a ſufficiency for their uſe is thus procured, more or leſs water is mixed with it, according to the ſtrength required; after which the diluted liquor is ſtrained through ſame fibrous ſtuff like fine ſhavings. Having undergone this proceſs, it is fit for drinking, which is always done immediately. It drinks flat and inſipid, but has a pepperiſh taſte; and an intoxicating quality, the effect of which we ſaw in one inſtance; however, the natives drink it, for that reaſon, with great moderation, and but little at a time. The root is ſometimes chewed by them as the Europeans do tobacco, and ſometimes we have ſeen them eat the ſame. Great quantities of this plant are cultivated at Ulietea, at Otaheite very little; but we believe there are few iſlands in this ſea that do not produce more or leſs of it.

We muſt not omit to remark here, that great injuſtice has been done the women of the Society Iſles, by thoſe who have repreſented them as a race of proſtitutes without exception, who will ſell their favours for gain to any purchaſer, which is far from being true; for the enjoyment of either the married or unmarried women, of the higher and middſing claſſes, is a favour as difficult to be obtained here, as in any other country whatever, and even many women in the lower claſs will admit of no ſuch familiarities. That the proportion of proſtitutes are greater than that of other countries may be true, and moſt of them were ſuch who frequented our ſhips and tents on ſhore. By obſerving theſe to mix indiſcriminately with women of the firſt rank, we concluded haſtily, that all females were of the ſame turn, and that the only difference was in the price; but the truth is, as we have more than once before obſerved, the woman who proſtitutes herſelf, does not ſeem, in the popular opinion, to have committed a crime, which ought to exclude her from the eſteem and ſociety of the community in general. It muſt be confeſſed that all the women in this part of the world are complete coquets, and that few among them fix any bounds to their converſation; therefore it is no wonder that they have obtained the character of women of pleaſure; yet we would think it very unjuſt, if the ladies of England were to be condemned in the lump, from the conduct of thoſe on board of ſhips in our naval ports, or of thoſe who infeſt the purlieus of Covent-garden, and Drury-lane.

Reſpecting the geography of theſe iſles, we think it neceſſary to add to what has been ſaid in the narrative of our former voyage, that we found the latitude of the bay of Oaitipiha, in Otaheite, to be 17 deg. 46 min. 28 ſec. S. and the eaſt longitude from Point Venus, to be 0 deg. 21 min. 25 ſec. and an half, or 149 deg. 13 min. 24 ſec. W. from Greenwich. It is highly probable, that the whole iſland is of greater extent than at firſt we ſuppoſed it to be in 1769, by two miles, and 4 m. 3 quarters reſpectively. When our aſtronomers made their obſervations on Point Venus, they found the latitude to be 17 deg. 29 min. 13 ſec. S. which differs by two ſeconds from that determined by Mr. Green and Capt. Cook; and its longitude, namely, 149 deg. 34 min. 49 ſec. and an half W. may be as accurately laid down, for any thing yet known to the contrary.

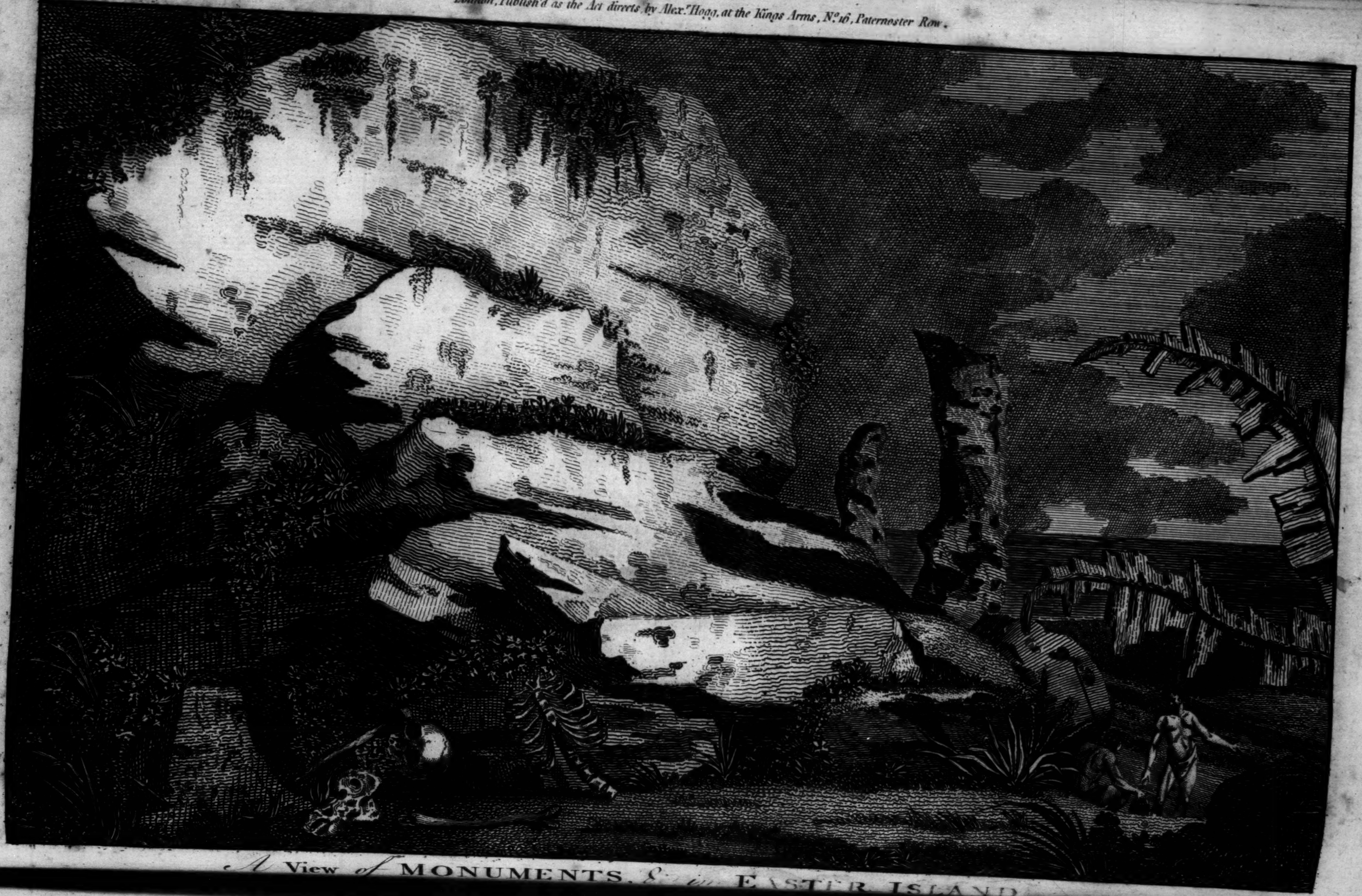
After our departure from the Society Iſles, and leaving Ulietea, it was our intention to get into the latitudes of the iſlands of Middleburgh and Amſterdam, to which end, on Friday the 17th of September, we ſteered to the weſt, inclining to the ſouth, with a view of getting clear of the tracks of former navigators. We proceeded at night with great circumſpection, frequently laying to, leſt we ſhould paſs any land unobſerved. On the 21ſt, and the whole of the 22nd, we had rain, thunder, lightning, a large ſwell from the ſouth, and the wind blew from the N. W. for ſeveral days; a ſign to us, that, in that direction, no land was near us. This was diſcovered from the maſt-head, on Thurſday, the 23d, ſtretching from S. by W. to S. W. by S. We hauled up with the wind at S. E. and found it to conſiſt of two or three ſmall iſlots, united by breakers, as are moſt of the low iſles in the ſea; the whole being in a triangular form, and about ſix leagues in circuit. This iſland is in latitude 19 deg. 18 min. S. and in 158 deg. 54 min. W. longitude. Each of the ſmall connected iſles are cloathed with wood, particularly of the cocoa-nut kind; but we ſaw no traces of inhabitants, and had reaſon to believe there were none. To theſe iſlots we gave the name of Hervey's Iſland, in honour of Capt. Hervey of the navy, one of the lords of the Admiralty, and now earl of Briſtol. As the landing on this iſle would have occaſioned a delay, we reſumed our courſe to the weſt, in which we ſaw ſome men of war, tropic birds, and flying fiſh. On Saturday, the 25th, we again began to uſe our ſea biſcuit, the fruit being all conſumed; but of freſh pork each man had every day a neceſſary allowance. On Wedneſday, the 29th, in latitude 21 deg. 26 min. S. we altered our courſe at noon W. half S.

On Friday, the 1ſt of October, at two o'clock P. M. we made the iſland of Middleburgh, and the next morning bore up for the weſt ſide thereof, paſſing between the ſame, and a ſmall iſland that lay off it, where we found a clear channel two miles broad. After running about two thirds of its length, half a mile from the ſhore, we obſerved it aſſumed another aſpect, and offered a proſpect both of anchorage and landing. Upon this we plied in under the iſland. We were now viſited by two canoes, which came boldly along-ſide of us, and ſeveral of the Indians entered the Reſolution without heſitation; which mark of confidence determined us to viſit them if poſſible. After making a few trips, we found good anchorage, and come to in 25 fathoms water, at three cables length from the ſhore. We had ſcarcely anchored, when we were ſurrounded with Indians, ſome in canoes, and ſome ſwimming, ſeveral came on board, and among them a chief, named Tioony, to whom Capt. Cook preſented a hatchet, ſpike-nails, and other articles, with which he was highly pleaſed. A party of our people, in company with Tioony, went on ſhore, who were conducted to a little creek formed by the rocks, right abreaſt of the ſhips, where landing was very eaſy, and the boats ſecure againſt the ſurf. Here we were ſaluted with loud acclamations, by an immenſe croud of people, who ſhewed the moſt evident ſigns of pacific intentions, not one of them having ſo much as a ſtick, or any weapon in their hands. They thronged ſo thick round the boats with cloth, matting, &c. that it was ſome time before we could make good our landing. Many of them, who could not get near the boats, threw over the others heads whole bales of cloth, and retired immediately, without either aſking, or waiting to get any thing in return. At length the chief cauſed them to open to the right and left, and make room for us to land. We were then conducted up to his houſe, which was ſituated about 300 yards from the ſea, at the end of a fine lawn, and under ſome ſhaddock trees. In the front was the proſpect of the ſea and the ſhips at anchor. Plantations abounding with the richeſt productions of nature, were placed behind, and on each ſide. We were ſeated on mats, laid on the floor, and the natives placed themſelves in a circle round on the outſide. Having with us bag-pipes, Capt. Cook ordered them to be played, and in return, the chief directed three young women to ſing a ſong, which they did with an exceeding good grace: and a few preſents being diſtributed among theſe young women, ſet all the reſt in the circle a ſinging, who did not ſit down unrewarded. Their ſongs were in no wiſe harſh, but on the contrary muſical and harmonious. Having continued here ſome time, at our own requeſt, we were conducted to another plantation, where the chief had a houſe, into which we were introduced. Bananoes and cocoa-nuts were ſet before us, and a bowl of liquor, prepared in our preſence, of the juice of ava, in the manner already related; the latter of which was preſented to each of us in cups made by the folding of green leaves, containing near half a pint each cup; but Capt. Cook was the only perſon who taſted the liquor; however, the bowl was ſoon emptied by the natives, of which both men and women partook; but we obſerved that the ſame cup was never filled twice, nor did two perſons drink out of it; each had a freſh cup and freſh liquor. The houſe we were now entertained in was ſituated at one angle of the plantation, abounding with fruit and trees, whoſe fragrance diffuſed a pleaſing odour, and the ſpreading branches made an agreeable ſhade. Before the houſe was an area, on which we were ſeated. It being now noon, we returned on board to dinner, with the chief Tioony in our company. We had on the table freſh pork, but he eat nothing, which we thought ſomewhat extraordinary. After dinner we again went on ſhore, and were received as before. Mr. Forſter, with his botanical party, and ſome other gentlemen, took a walk into the country. Our two captains were conducted to the chief's houſe, where fruit, and ſome greens were ſet before us. Having juſt dined we could not eat much, but Oedidee and Omai did honour to the deſert. We now intimated a deſire of ſeeing the country, and Tioony very readily gratified our wiſhes. He led us through ſeveral plantations, laid out with great judgment, and incloſed with fences made of reeds. Moſt of them belonged to our hoſpitable chief, and were all in very good order, and planted with various fruit trees. Hogs and very large fowls, the only domeſtic animals we ſaw, were running near the houſes, and in the lanes that ſeparated the plantations. Every perſon was very much pleaſed with this delightful country, and the friendly reception we met with, and we much regretted, that the ſeaſon of the year, and other circumſtances, would not permit our longer ſtay. In the evening we returned on board, and on Saturday the 2d of October, the ſhips were crouded with people the whole day, trafficking in perfect good order. On the 3d, early in the morning, while the ſhips were preparing to get under ſail, Captains Cook and Furneaux, accompanied by Mr. Forſter, went off in the boat, to take leave of our hoſpitable chief. He met us at the landing-place, and had we not excuſed ourſelves, he would have entertained us at his houſe. We therefore ſpent half an hour with him, ſeated on the graſs, in the midſt of a vaſt croud of the natives, who ſeemed to vie with each other in doing what they thought would give us pleaſure. Having made the chief a preſent, conſiſting of various articles, he was given to underſtand that we were going away, at which he ſeemed not at all affected. He went with us into our boat, with two of his friends, intending to accompany us aboard, but when he ſaw the Reſolution under ſail, he and his companions went into a canoe, and returned on ſhore. It is remarkable, that on ſhore this friendly Indian never made the leaſt exchanges; but now, during his ſtay in the boat, he bartered fiſh-hooks for nails, and engroſſed the trade in a manner wholly to himſelf.

On Saturday, October the 3d, as ſoon as Capt. Cook came on board, we departed from Middleburg, and made ſail down to Amſterdam. When we were about half way between the two iſles, we were met by three canoes, and the people made ſeveral attempts to come on board, but without effect, as the rope we threw out to them broke, and we did not ſhorten ſail. They were likewiſe unſucceſsful in boarding the Adventure. We ran along the ſouth-weſt coaſt of Amſterdam, at the diſtance of half a mile from the ſhore, whereon the ſea broke in a great ſurf. By the help of glaſſes, we ſaw the face of the whole iſland, which, in every part that came under our obſervation, appeared covered with plantations. Along the ſhore we perceived the natives running in great numbers, and diſplaying ſmall white flags, the emblems of peace, which ſignals we anſwered by hoiſting a St. George's Enſign. At this time three of the natives of Middleburg, who had continued too long on board the Adventure to return, quitted her, and ſwam to the ſhore, from whence we concluded they had no ſtrong inclination to accompany us in our voyage. We had no ſooner opened the weſt ſide of the iſle, than ſeveral canoes, having four men in each, came boldly along-ſide, and, when they had preſented us with ſome ava root, came on board without the leaſt ceremony. Having got into Van Diemen's Road, we anchored in 18 fathoms water, little more than a cable's length from the breakers; and our coaſting anchor, to keep the ſhip from tailing on the rocks, lay in 47 fathoms water. By this time we were ſurrounded with people, and our ſeamen were ſo eager in purchaſing their curioſities, even at the expence of cloaths, that Capt. Cook found it abſolutely neceſſary to prohibit any farther commerce of this ſort. The good effect of this order, was, that on the 4th, the natives brought us fowls, pigs, bananoes, and cocoa-nuts in abundance, for which we exchanged ſmall nails and pieces of cloth, even old rags would purchaſe pigs and fowls. A trading party was now ſettled, and our commanders went on ſhore, attended by Mr. Forſter and other officers, in company with a chief named Attago, who had attached himſelf to Capt. Cook, the firſt moment of his coming aboard, which was before the ſhips came to anchor. This perſon of ſome note preſented the captain with ſeveral articles, and as a greater teſtimony of friendſhip exchanged names with him; a cuſtom, which, as we have obſerved, is practiſed at Otaheite, and the Society Iſles. We were received on ſhore with the ſame demonſtrations of joy as at Middleburg, and the gentlemen ſet out into the country, except the two commanders, who diſtributed preſents to ſuch of the natives as Attago pointed out, who were afterwards diſcovered to be of ſuperior rank to himſelf, though at this time, by the attention paid

BRITISH
7 FE 30
MUSEUM

London, Publish'd as the Act directs by Alex.r Hogg, at the Kings Arms, No. 16, Paternoster Row.



A View of MONUMENTS, &c. in EASTER ISLAND to him, he appeared to be the principal perſon. Having complained of the heat, Attago ſhewed and ſeated us under the ſhade of a large tree; and the people, who were ordered to form a circle, never attempted to paſs the preſcribed bounds, and croud upon us, as did thoſe of Otaheite. After having been here ſome time, we hinted our deſire to ſee the country; whereupon Attago immediately conducted us along a lane that terminated in an open green, on one ſide of which we ſaw a place of worſhip, built on a mount about eighteen feet high. It was an oblong ſquare, incloſed by a ſtone parapet wall, about three feet in height; from which the mount, covered with green turf, roſe to the building with a gradual ſlope. The building was twenty by fourteen feet. When we had advanced within fifty yards of its front, every one ſat down on the green. Three elderly men, whom we took for prieſts, begun a prayer, having their faces to the houſe, which laſted about ten minutes, and this being ended, they came and ſeated themſelves by us. We made them preſents of what we had about us, and then proceeded to view the premiſes, to which they did not ſhew the leaſt reluctance. The houſe was built in every reſpect like their common dwellings, with poſts and rafters, covered with palm thatch. The eaves came down within three feet of the ground, and the open ſpace was filled up with ſtrong matting made of palm-leaves as a wall. In the front, leading to the top of this, were two ſtone ſteps; and round the houſe was a gravel walk: the floor alſo was laid with fine gravel, in the center whereof was an oblong ſquare of blue pebbles, raiſed ſix inches higher. In one angle of the building ſtood an image roughly carved in wood, and another lay on one ſide. This image was turned over and over by Attago, as he would have done any other log of wood, which convinced us, that they were not conſidered by the natives as objects of worſhip. We put ſeveral queſtions to Attago concerning this matter, but did not underſtand his anſwers; for our readers are to be informed, that, at our firſt arrival, we hardly could underſtand a word the people ſaid. We thought it neceſſary to leave an offering, and therefore laid down upon the platform ſome medals, nails, and other things, which our friend immediately took up and put in his pocket. We could not conceive how they could cut ſuch large ſtones out of the coral rocks, with which the walls were made that incloſed the mount, ſome of them being ten feet by four, and near ſix inches thick. The mount, which ſtood in a kind of grove, was open only to view on that ſide which fronted the green, and here five roads met, moſt of which appeared to be public. Among the various trees that compoſed the groves, we found the Etoa tree, of which are made clubs, and a ſort of low palm, very common in the northern parts of Holland. This place of worſhip, in the language of Amſterdam, is called A-fia-tou-ca.

On our return to the water ſide, we turned off to a road leading into the country, about ſixteen feet broad, and as level as a bowling-green, ſeveral other roads interſected it, all incloſed on each ſide with neat reed-fences, and ſhaded by fruit-trees. The country hereabouts is ſurprizingly fertile, inſomuch, that we might eaſily have imagined ourſelves in the moſt pleaſant ſituation that Europe could afford. Here are various delightful walks, and not an inch of uncultivated ground. Nature aſſiſted by art no where appears to more advantage than in this fertile ſpot. The roads, even the high public one, which was about ſixteen feet broad, occupied no more ſpace than was abſolutely neceſſary, nor did the boundaries and fences take up above four inches each, and in many places of theſe were planted uſeful trees and plants. On every ſide you ſaw the ſame appearances; nor did change of place alter the ſcene. In this tranſporting place we met great numbers of people going to the ſhips loaden with fruit, and coming from them; all of whom gave us the road, by either turning to the right or left hand, ſitting down, or ſtanding ſtill with their backs to the fences, till we had paſſed by them. In many of the croſs roads, were A-fia-tou-cas, whoſe mounts were ſurrounded with palliſadoes. After having walked ſeveral miles, we came to a more ſpacious one, near to which was a large houſe, the property of an old chief, who was one of our company. Here we were regaled with fruit; but our ſtay was ſhort, and our guides having conducted us down to our boat, we returned with Attago to our ſhip to dinner. When aboard an old man was uſhered into the cabbin; we placed him at table, and ſoon perceived he was a man of conſequence, for Attago, the chief being almoſt blind, eat with his back towards him; and as ſoon as the old man returned aſhore, which was after he had taſted the fiſh, and drank two glaſſes of wine, Attago took his place at the table, finiſhed his dinner, and drank alſo two glaſſes of wine. After dinner we all went aſhore again. We found the old chief, who, in return for his ſlender meal, preſented us with a hog. Before we ſet out for the country, Capt. Cook went down with Attago to the landing-place, where he found Mr. Wales laughing at his perplexing ſituation. The boats that brought us aſhore not having been able to get cloſe in with the landing-place, Mr. Wales had pulled off his ſhoes and ſtockings to walk through the water, and, when on dry ground, ſitting down, he put them between his legs, in order to put them on, when in an inſtant they were ſnatched away by a perſon behind him, who immediately mixed with the croud. The man he could not follow bare-footed over the ſharp coral rocks; the boat was put back to the ſhip, all his companions had made their way through the croud; and he was found by the captain in this forlorn condition: but the friendly Attago ſoon ſet him at liberty, by finding out the thief, and recovering the ſhoes and ſtockings. We now began our excurſion into the country. Having paſſed the firſt-mentioned Afiatouca, the old chief ſhewed us a pool of freſh water, though we had not made the leaſt enquiry for any. It is very probable this is the bathing place for the king and his nobles, mentioned by Taſman. From hence we were conducted down to the ſhore of Maria Bay, or N. E. ſide of the iſle, where we were ſhewn a boat-houſe, in which was a large double canoe not yet launched. The old chief did not fail to make us ſenſible that it belonged to him. Night now approaching, Attago attended us to the boat, and we returned aboard. As to the botanizing and ſhooting parties, that were out with us the ſame day, they were all civilly treated, and well entertained by the natives. The party alſo at the market on ſhore had a briſk trade, and many advantageous bargains. They procured plenty of bananas, yams, cocoa-nuts, pigs, and fowls, for nails and pieces of cloth. A boat from each ſhip was employed to bring off their cargoes, by which means we obtained cheaper, and with leſs trouble, a good quantity of refreſhments from thoſe of the natives who had no canoes to carry their commodities off to the ſhips.

On Tueſday the 5th, early in the morning, the captain's friend, Attago, brought him a hog and ſome fruit, for which, in return, he received a hatchet, a ſheet, and ſome red cloth. The pinnace having been ſent on ſhore to trade, as uſual, ſoon returned, and we were informed that the natives, in many reſpects, were exceeding troubleſome. The day before they had ſtole the boat's grappling, and at this time they were for taking every thing out of the pinnace. It was therefore judged neceſſary to have on ſhore a guard, and accordingly the marines were ſent, under the command of Lieutenant Edgcumbe. Theſe were ſoon after followed by the two commanders, Attago, and ſeveral of the gentlemen. On landing, the old chief preſented Capt. Cook with a pig; and then Mr. Hodges, accompanied by the two captains, took a walk into the country, in order to make drawings; after which, they all returned with Attago, and two other chiefs on board to dinner, one of which laſt had ſent a hog on board the Adventure, ſome hours before, for Capt. Furneaux, without requiring any return; a ſingular inſtance of generoſity this: but Attago did not omit to put Capt. Cook in mind of the pig the old king gave him in the morning, for which he had in return, a chequed ſhirt, and a piece of red cloth. He deſired to put them on, which when done, he went upon deck, and ſhewed himſelf to all his countrymen. He had done the ſame with the ſheet the captain gave him in the morning; but when we went on ſhore in the evening, the old chief took to himſelf every thing Attago and others had got in their poſſeſſion. This day the different trading parties procured for both ſhips a good ſupply of refreſhments; the ſailors therefore had leave to purchaſe any curioſities they might fancy; which opportunity they embraced with great eagerneſs; indeed they became quite the ridicule of the natives from their thirſt after trifles, who jeeringly offered them ſticks and ſtones, in exchange for other things; and one waggiſh boy took a piece of human excrement on the end of a ſtick, and offered it for ſale to every one he met. This day a fellow found means to get into the maſter's cabbin, and ſtole ſome books and other articles, with which he was making off in his canoe. On being purſued by one of our boats, he left the canoe, and took to the water; but as often as our people attempted to lay hold of him, he dived under the boat, and at laſt, having unſhipped the rudder, got clear off. Other daring thefts were committed at the landing-place. One man ſtole a ſeaman's jacket, and would not part with it till purſued and fired at.

Wedneſday the 6th our friend Attago viſited us again as uſual, brought with him a hog, and aſſiſted us in purchaſing many more. We went afterwards on ſhore, viſited the old chief, with whom we ſtayed till noon, and then returned on board to dinner, accompanied by Attago, who never one day left Capt Cook. Being about to depart from this iſland, a preſent was made for the old king, and carried on ſhore in the evening. When the captain landed, he was informed by ſome of the officers, that a far greater man than any we had yet ſeen, was come to pay us a viſit. Mr. Pickerſgill ſaid, he had ſeen him in the country, and believed he was a man of great conſequence, by the extraordinary reſpect paid him by all ranks of people; ſome of whom, when they approached him, fell on their faces, and put their head between their feet; nor do any paſs him without permiſſion. Upon his arrival, Mr. Pickerſgill and another gentleman took hold of his arms, and eſcorted him down to the landing-place, where we found him ſeated with ſuch an affected gravity, that we really thought him an ideot, whom, from ſome ſuperſtitious notions, the people were ready to adore. When Capt. Cook ſaluted and addreſſed him, he neither anſwered, nor took the leaſt notice of him. And as there appeared in the features of his countenance not any alteration, the captain was about to leave him to his private cogitations: but an intelligent youth cleared up all our doubts, and from his information, we were now fully convinced, that what we took for a ſtupid fool was the principal head man, or king of the iſland. Therefore the preſent, intended for the old chief, was preſented to him. It conſiſted of a ſhirt, an axe, a piece of red cloth, a looking glaſs, ſome nails, medals, and beads; all of which were put upon, or laid down by his majeſty, without his ſpeaking one word, or turning his head either to the right or left. We departed from this living ſtatue, and had not been long on board, before he ſent us a preſent of proviſions, conſiſting of about twenty baſkets of roaſted bananas, four bread and yams, and a roaſted pig, weighing about twenty pounds. We now no longer queſtioned the real dignity of this ſullen chief. When theſe things were brought down to the water ſide, Mr. Edgecumbe and his party were coming off to the veſſels, and the bearers of the preſent ſaid it was from the Areeke, (that is king) of the Iſland, to the Areeke of the ſhip.

On Thurſday the 7th of October, early in the morning, our two commanders, accompanied by Mr. Forſter, went aſhore, to make a return to the Areeke of the iſland for his laſt night's preſent. They ſoon found Attago, of whom we learnt, that his majeſty's name was Ko-haghee-too-Fallangou. After ſome little time he appeared with a very few attendants. By Attago's deſire we all ſat down under a tree, and the king ſeated himſelf on a riſing ground, about twelve yards from us. We continued ſome minutes facing each other, expecting Attago would introduce us to his majeſty; but obſerving no ſigns of this, the two captains went, and having ſaluted the king ſat down by him. They then put on him a white ſhirt, and laid down before him a few yards of red cloth, a braſs kettle, a ſaw, two large ſpikes, three looking glaſſes, twelve medals, and ſome ſtrings of beads. All this time he behaved in the manner before related, ſitting like a ſtatue; his arms ſeemed immoveable; he ſpoke not one word, nor did he ſeem to know what we were about. When we gave him to underſtand by ſigns and words, that we ſhould ſoon depart from his iſland, he made not the leaſt reply; but when we had took leave, we perceived he converſed with Attago, and an old woman; and in the courſe of this converſation he laughed heartily in ſpite of his aſſumed gravity; for it could not be his real diſpoſition, ſeeing he was in the prime of life, and theſe iſlanders, like all others we had lately been acquainted with, are much given to levity. We were now introduced by Attago into another circle of reſpectable old people of both ſexes, among whom were our friend, the aged chief, and the prieſt, who was generally in his company. We concluded, that the juice of pepper-root, had the ſame effect that ſtrong liquors have on Europeans, when they drink too much of them; for we obſerved, that the reverend father could walk very well in the morning, but in the evening was generally led home by two friendly ſupporters. We were a little at a loſs how to take leave of the old chief, having, we feared, almoſt exhauſted all our choiceſt ſtore on the king; but having examined our pockets, and Capt. Cook's treaſury bag, which he always carried with him, we collected together a tolerable good preſent both for the chief and his friends. This old chief had a natural air of dignity, which the king had not. He was grave, but not ſullen; would talk at times in a jocular manner, and when converſing only on indifferent ſubjects, would endeavour to underſtand us, and be underſtood himſelf. The prieſt in all our viſits would repeat a ſhort prayer, which none in the company attended to, and which for our parts we did not underſtand. Having continued a ſocial converſation with theſe friends near two hours, we bid them farewell, and repaired to our ſhip with Attago, and a few of his friends, who after breakfaſt were diſmiſſed loaded with preſents. Attago very ſtrongly importuned us to call again at this iſle on our return, and requeſted of the captain, more than once, to bring him a ſuit of clothes like thoſe he then had on, which was his uniform. This friendly iſlander, during our ſtay, was, on ſeveral occaſions, very ſerviceable to us. He daily came on board in the morning, ſoon after dawn, and frequently ſtayed with us till the evening. When on board or on ſhore, he performed every kind office for us in his power, the expence for his ſervices was trifling, and we thought him a very valuable friend.

The ſupplies which we procured from this iſland were about one hundred and fifty pigs, double that number of fowls; as many bananas, &c. as we could find room for, and, had we continued longer, we might have had more than our wants required. We were now about to depart, when, in heaving the coaſting cable, it broke, by being chaffed by the rocks; by which accident we loſt nearly half the cable, together with the anchor, which lay in forty fathoms water, without any buoy to it; from whence a judgment may be formed of this anchorage. At ten o'clock P. M. we got under ſail, but our decks being encumbered with fruit, fowls, &c. we kept plying under the land till they were cleared. Before we continue the hiſtory of this voyage, we ſhall here give a particular account of this iſland, and its neighbouring one of Middleburgh, a deſcription of which we doubt not will afford an agreeable entertainment to our readers, and very numerous ſubſcribers, who have favoured this work with a generous encouragement, equal to our moſt ſanguine expectations and wiſhes.

Theſe two iſlands were firſt diſcovered by Capt. Abel Janſen Taſman, a Dutchman, in January 1642-3, which he named Amſterdam and Middleburgh. The former is called by the natives Tonga-ta-bu, and the latter Ea-oo-wee. From obſervations made on the ſpot, they are found to be ſituated between the latitude of 21 deg. 29 min. and 21 deg. 3 min. S. and between the longitude of 174 deg. 40 min. and 175 deg. 15 min. W. Middleburgh, the ſouthermoſt iſle, is about 10 leagues in circumference, and from its height may be ſeen 12 leagues at ſea. It is bounded by plantations, eſpecially on the S. W. and N. W. ſides; but the interior parts are not ſo well cultivated; yet even this neglect gives an additional beauty to the whole iſland; for here we ſee diſperſed, forming an agreeable variety, groves of cocoa-nut and other trees, lawns cloathed with thick graſs, with plantations, roads and paths in every direction, making a charming confuſion, as greatly improves and enlivens the proſpect.

The iſland of Tongatabu, or Amſterdam, is ſhaped ſomething like an iſoſecles triangle, the longeſt legs of which are ſeven leagues each, and the ſhorteſt four. It lies dearly in the direction of E. S. E. and W. N. W. much of an equal height, but rather low, being not more than 80 feet above the level of the ſea. Both this iſle, and that of Middleburgh, are guarded by a reef of coral rocks, on which the force of the ſea is ſpent before it reaches the ſhore. Van Diemen's Road, wherein we anchored, is under the N. W. part of the iſland, having a reef of rocks without it, over which the ſea breaks continually. The extent of the bank is not more than three cables length from the ſhore; without that is an unfathomable depth; and, as we have before obſerved, the loſs of an anchor, and the damage our cables ſuſtained, are plain indications that the bottom is none of the beſt. This iſland is wholly laid out in plantations, abounding with the richeſt productions of nature, as bread-fruit, plantains, ſugar-cane, and a fruit like a nectarine, called Fighega, and at Otaheite Ahuya: in ſhort, here are to be found moſt of the arricles, productions of the Society Iſlands, beſides others which they have not. The ſame may be ſaid of vegetables, the ſtock of which we increaſed by an additional aſſortment of garden ſeeds, &c. The produce and cultivation of Middleburgh is much the ſame as at Amſterdam, only a part of the former is cultivated. The lanes and roads are laid out in ſo judicious a manner, as to open a free communication from one part of the iſland to the other. We here ſaw no towns or villages, moſt of the houſes being ſituated in the plantations: they are neatly conſtructed, but in their dimenſions do not exceed thoſe in the other iſlands. The only difference ſeems to conſiſt in the diſpoſition of the framing. They have ſmall areas before moſt of them, planted round with trees, or ſhrubs, whoſe fragrancy perfumes the very air. The whole of their furniture is compoſed of a few wooden platters, cocoa-nut ſhells, and ſome neat wooden pillows ſhaped like ſtools or forms. Their common cloathing ſerves them for bedding, with the addition of a mat. We ſaw two or three earthen veſſels among them; one in the ſhape of a bomb-ſhell, with two holes in it, oppoſite each other; the others reſembled pipkins, containing about five or ſix points. Having ſeen no great number of theſe utenſils, we concluded they were the manufacture of ſome other iſle. The only domeſtic animals we ſaw among them were hogs and fowls. The latter are as large as any in Europe, and their fleſh equally good, if not better. We believe they have no dogs, as they were very deſirous of thoſe we had on board. In theſe iſles are no rats, nor did we diſcover any wild quadrupeds, except ſmall lizards. The land birds are pigeons, turtle-doves, parrots, parroquets, owls, baldcoots with a blue plumage, ſmall birds, and large bats in abundance. The ſame ſorts of fiſh are found here as in the other iſles. Their fiſhing-tackle is much the ſame; as hooks made of mother of pearl, gigs having two or three prongs, and nets compoſed of a very fine thread, with the meſhes made exactly like ours. The conſtruction of their canoes is remarkably ingenious, exceeding in point of workmanſhip, every thing of this kind we ſaw in this ſea. They are formed of ſeveral pieces ſewed together, in ſo neat a manner, that on the outſide it is difficult to diſcern the joints. On the inſide, all the faſtenings paſs through ridges. They are of two ſorts, namely, double and ſingle; the ſingle ones are from 20 to 30 feet in length, and about 20 or 22 inches broad in the middle.

The ſtern terminates in a point, and the head is ſomewhat like the extremity of a wedge. At each end is a kind of deck, open in the middle, for about one third part of the whole length. The middle of their decks in ſome of them, is ornamented with white ſhells, ſtuck on little pegs, and placed in rows. They work theſe ſingle canoes ſometimes with ſails, but oftner with paddles, the ſhort blades whereof are broadeſt in the middle: they have all out-riggers. The double canoes are made with two veſſels about 60 or 70 feet long, and 4 or 5 broad in the middle. Each end terminates in a point, and the hull differs but little in its conſtruction from the ſingle canoe, being put together exactly in the ſame manner; but they have a riſing in the middle round the open part, ſomewhat like a trough which is made of boards, well compacted and ſecured to the body of the veſſel. Two ſuch veſſels as above mentioned are placed parallel to each other, and faſtened by ſtrong croſs beams, ſecured by bandages to the upper part of the riſings. The veſſels are about ſix feet aſunder. Over theſe beams, and others, ſupported by ſtaunchions fixed on the bodies of the canoes, is laid a boarded platform, whereon eſteps a maſt that may eaſily be raiſed or let down. All parts of the double canoes are ſtrong, yet as light as the nature of the work will admit; and they may be immerged in the water to the very platforms, without being in the leaſt danger of filling; and ſo long as they hold together, it is ſcarce poſſible, under any circumſtance whatever, to ſink them. By the nature of their conſtruction, they are not only veſſels of burden, but fit for ſhort voyages from one iſland to another, and are navigated with a lattean-ſail, or triangular one, extended by a long yard, a little curved or bent. Their ſails are compoſed of mats, and their ropes like ours, ſome four or five inches. A little ſhed is raiſed upon the platform, for to ſcreen the crew from the ſun, and for other purpoſes. Here they have a moveable fire-hearth, which is a ſquare ſhallow wooden trough, filled with ſtones. From off the platform is the way into the hold, wherein they ſtand to bail out the water. Capt. Cook was of opinion, that theſe double canoes are navigated either end foremoſt, and that in changing tacks, the ſail is only ſhifted, or gibbed; but we cannot ſpeak with certainty of this matter, not having ſeen any of them under ſail, or with the maſt and ſail an end, but what were at a great diſtance from us.

The only piece of iron we ſaw among theſe people was a ſmall awl, which had been made of a nail; all their working tools of are ſtone, bone, ſhells, &c. as at the other iſlands. Every one who ſees the work executed with theſe tools, cannot but be ſtruck with admiration at both the ingenuity and patience of the artificers. They had little knowledge of the utility of iron, but enough to prefer nails to beads, and ſuch trifles. Shirts, cloth, jackets, and even rags, were more eſteemed by them than the beſt edged tool, on which account we parted with few axes but what were given as preſents; however, if we include the nails exchanged for curioſities, by the companies of both ſhips, with thoſe given for refreſhments, &c. they could not get from us leſs than 500 weight, great and ſmall.

As to the natives of theſe iſlands, both ſexes are of a common ſize with Europeans; but with reſpect to complexion, their colour is that of a lightiſh copper, and more uniformly ſo than among thoſe of Otaheite and the Society Iſles. Of our gentlemen, ſome thought theſe people were a much handſomer race; others were of a contrary opinion, of which number Capt. Cook was one. It is certain, that they have in general regular features, with a good ſhape; they are alſo active, briſk, and lively. The women are eſpecially very merry and ſociable, and would chat with us, without being invited, or if we ſeemed attentive, without conſidering whether we underſtood them or not. They appeared in general to be modeſt: yet inſtances of thoſe of a different character were not wanting; and having ſome venereal complaints, Capt. Cook took all poſſible care, that the diſorder ſhould not be communicated to them. Whenever opportunity ſerved, they diſcovered a ſtrong propenſity to pilfering, and in the art of thieving are full as knowing and dexterous as the Otaheiteans. Their hair, particularly of the females, is black, but ſome of the men have a method of ſtaining their hair with various colours, as white, red, and blue, which we ſaw upon the ſame head. It is wore cut ſhort, and we met with only two exceptions to this cuſtom. The boys have only a ſingle lock on the top of the head, combed upwards, and a ſmall quantity on each ſide. The beards of the men are ſhaved quite cloſe with two ſhells; and even thoſe of an advanced age have fine eyes, and in general good teeth. They are tattoawed from the middle of the thigh to above the hips; but among the women, the ſkin is punctured very ſlightly, and that only on their arms and fingers. Their dreſs conſiſts of a piece of cloth or matting, hanging below the knees, but from the waiſt upwards they are generally naked. Their ornaments are bracelets, amulets, and necklaces, compoſed of bones, ſhells, and beads, of mother of pearl. The women have a curious apron made of the outward fibres of the cocoa-nut ſhell: ſmall pieces of this ſtuff are ſewed together in ſuch a manner as to form ſtars, half moons, and ſquares, &c. and the whole is ſtudded, and decorated with red feathers, ſo as to have a pleaſing effect. They wear alſo rings on their fingers made of tortoiſeſhell, and pendants of the ſame, about the ſize of a ſmall quill; but though all have their ears bored, yet theſe laſt kind of ornaments are not worn in common. The natives of theſe iſlands make the ſame ſorts of cloth, as the inhabitants of Otaheite; but they have not ſuch a variety, nor any of ſo fine materials; yet having a method of glazing their cloth, it is more durable than that at Otaheite, and will reſiſt rain for ſome time. Their matting is of various kinds; ſome very fine, and generally uſed for cloathing; another ſort is thick and ſtronger, which ſerves them for ſails, and to ſleep on. The colours of their cloth are black, brown, purple, yellow, and red; all extracted from vegetables. They make many little toys, which ſufficiently evinces their ingenuity; and among their utenſils are various ſorts of curious baſkets, ſome made of the ſame materials as their mats, and others of the twiſted fibres of cocoa-nuts; which prove in the workmanſhip, that theſe people want neither taſte to deſign, nor ſkill to execute. How they amuſe themſelves in their leiſure hours, we cannot particularly and poſitively ſay, being but little acquainted with their diverſions. We were entertained frequently with ſongs from the women, in an agreeable ſtile, and the muſic they accompanied by ſnapping their fingers, ſo as to keep time to it. Both this and their voices are very harmonious; and they have a conſiderable compaſs in their notes. Among their muſical inſtruments, which came under our knowledge, they have a drum, or rather an hollow log of wood, on the ſide of which they beat with two drum ſticks, whereby is produced a doleful ſound, not quite ſo muſical as that of an empty caſk. We ſaw one of theſe drums five feet and a half long, and thirty inches in girt. It had a ſlit in it from one end to the other, about three inches wide, by means of which it had been hollowed out. They have alſo two muſical pipes; one a large flute made of a piece of bamboo, which they fill with breathing through their noſes: theſe have four ſtops, whereas thoſe at Otaheite have only two. The other inſtrument is compoſed of 10 or 11 ſmall reeds of unequal lengths, bound together ſide by ſide, as the Doric pipe of the ancients is ſaid to have been. The open ends of the reeds into which they blow with their mouths are of equal height or in a line.

In this country the manner of a ſalutation is by joining or touching noſes, and the diſplaying a white flag or flags, when ſtrangers arrive, is a ſure ſign of peace. Such were diſplayed when we firſt drew near the ſhore; but the people who then came on board, brought with them ſome pepper plant, which they ſent before them into the ſhip; and a ſtronger ſign of friendſhip we could not wiſh for. From the friendly reception we experienced, and the unſuſpicious manner of their behaviour upon our landing, we concluded, they are ſeldom moleſted either by foreign or domeſtic enemies; nevertheleſs they are not without very formidable offenſive and defenſive weapons, as bows and arrows; alſo clubs and ſpears formed of hard wood. The clubs are of various ſhapes, and from three to five feet in length. The bows and arrows are none of the beſt, the former being very ſlight, and the latter only a ſlender reed pointed with hard wood. On the inſide of the bow is a groove, wherein is placed the arrow. Several of their ſpears have many barbs, and muſt be dangerous weapons where they take effect. Another ſingular cuſtom is that of putting every thing you give them to their heads, by way of thanks, as we imagined; and where things were given to young infants, the mother lifted up the child's hand to its head, ſo that this manner of paying a compliment is taught them from their very infancy. The ſame cuſtom they alſo uſed in their exchanges with us. It is called by the natives *fagaſatie*, and has, we believe, various ſignifications, according as it is applied; all however complimentary. A ſtill more ſingular cuſtom prevails among them, though not peculiar to the inhabitants of the Friendly Iſles. The greater part of both ſexes had loſt one or both of their little fingers; and, except ſome young children, we found few who had both hands perfect; but the reaſon of this mutilation we could not learn. They alſo burn or make inciſions in their cheeks, near the cheek bone: the reaſon of which was equally unknown to us. However, ſuch is the goodneſs of the climate, that we obſerved neither ſick nor lame among them; all appeared healthy, ſtrong and vigorous.

The government of this country is much like that of Otaheite, that is, in a king or prime chief (called Areeke) with other ſubordinate chiefs, who are lords of certain diſtricts, perhaps ſole proprietors, to whom the people ſeem to pay great obedience. We alſo perceived a third rank, one of whom was our friend Attago, who ſeemed to have not a little influence over the common people. It was the opinion of Capt. Cook, that all the land on Tongatabu is private property, and that here, as at Otaheite, are a ſet of ſervants, or ſlaves, who have no property in land. Indeed, we cannot ſuppoſe every thing to be in common, in a country ſo richly cultivated. Few would toil if they did not expect to reap, and enjoy the fruits of their labour as their own. Parties of ſix, eight or ten people, would frequently bring fruit down to the landing place; but we always ſaw one man, or woman, ſuperintend the ſale of the whole, without whoſe conſent no exchanges could be made; and the things they bartered for were always given them, all which plainly ſhews they were the owners, and the others only their ſervants.

Though the benevolent author of nature has poured forth liberally his bounties on theſe iſles; yet the high ſtate of cultivation their lands are in, muſt have coſt them indefatigable pains and labour: but this is now amply rewarded by the great produce every where to be ſeen, and of which all partake; for no one wants the common neceſſaries of life: the poor are not crying for bread; but joy, contentment, and chearful mirth are painted in the features of every one. An eaſy freedom prevails among all ranks of people; they have few deſires they cannot gratify, and they are bleſſed with a clime wherein the diſagreeable extremes of heat and cold are equally unknown. The article of water was the only one of which they may be ſaid to have a ſcanty ſupply; this they are obliged to dig for. We ſaw not any at Amſterdam, and but one well. At Middleburgh we found no water but what the natives had in veſſels; this was ſweet and cool, and probably procured not far from the ſpots where we ſaw it.

We can ſay very little of the religion of theſe people. The Aſiatoucas may be appropriated to this purpoſe; but ſome of our gentlemen thought theſe building were only burying places. It is certain particular perſons made ſpeeches in them, which we underſtood to be prayers; perhaps, they may be both temples and burying places, as at Otaheite; but with reſpect to the images being idols, we had many reaſons to be of a contrary opinion. Mr. Wales told us, that one of theſe images was ſet up for him and others to ſhoot at, not very reſpectful this to divinity; and yet we have ſeen the Portugueſe, when their wiſhes were not gratified, treat their tutelar ſaints with much greater familiarity. It appeared however very plain to us, that theſe Aſiatoucas are much frequented for one purpoſe or other; for the areas before them were covered with green ſod, and the graſs was very ſhort, by being often ſat upon and much trodden, which doubtleſs prevented its growth.

CHAP. IV.

The Reſolution and Adventure continue their voyage from Amſterdam—proceed for Queen Charlotte's Sound—An interview with the inhabitants—The final ſeparation of the two ſhips—Tranſactions and incidents in Charlotte's Sound—The inhabitants diſcovered to be Cannibals—A deſcription of the coaſt—The Reſolution departs from the Sound, and proceeds in ſearch after her conſort—Courſe of the Reſolution in ſearch of the ſuppoſed continent; and the methods purſued to explore the Southern Pacific Ocean—Arrives at Eaſter Iſland—Tranſactions there—An expedition into the inland part of the country, with an account of ſome gigantic ſtatues, and deſcription of the whole iſland.

ON Thurſday, the 7th of October, we made ſail to the ſouthward, and our route determined was, to make for Queen Charlotte's Sound in New Zealand, there to take in a ſupply of wood and water, and then to proceed on farther diſcoveries to the S. and E. On the 8th, we made the iſland of Pilſtart, diſtant eight leagues, and bearing S. W. by W. half W. This was alſo diſcovered by Taſman, and lies in latitude 22 deg. 26 min. S. and in 175 deg. 59 min. W. longitude, diſtant 32 leagues from the ſouth end of Middleburgh, in the direction of S. 52 deg. W. Two remarkable hills riſe therein of a conſiderable height, and ſeemingly disjoined from each other by a low valley. We now, after a few hours calm, ſtretched with a S. W. wind to the S. E. but, on Sunday, the 10th, it veered round to the S. E. and E. S. E. upon which we reſumed our courſe to the S. S. W.

On Thurſday the 21ſt at five o'clock, A. M. we made the land of New Zealand, extending from N. W. by N. to W. S. W. We now ſtood in ſhore till we were abreaſt of Table Cape and Portland Iſland, which is joined to it by a ledge of rocks; we were gazed at by the natives as we paſſed: but none of them ventured to come off in their canoes. We advanced to the Black Cape on the twenty-ſecond, and now ſeveral inhabitants took courage and boarded us, among whom was a chief; he was clothed elegantly, and his hair was dreſſed in the high faſhion of the country. We entertained him in the cabbin, and his companions ſold us ſome fiſh. Theſe people were very fond of nails, and the chief received them with much greater eagerneſs than when the captain gave him hogs, fowls, ſeeds, and roots. We obtained from him a promiſe not to kill any, and if he keeps his word, there are enough to ſtock the whole iſland; the preſent conſiſted of two ſows, two boars, four hens, and two cocks; we likewiſe gave him ſeveral uſeful ſeeds, and inſtructed him in the manner of ſetting them. Theſe people very well remembered the Endeavour having been on their coaſt. The Adventure was now a good way to leeward, and as we were obliged to tack, ſhe was conſequently ſeparated from us; but we were joined by her on the twenty-fourth. The wind was now very high, ſo that we could carry hardly any ſail; we endeavoured to make Cape Palliſer, the northern point of Eakeinomauwe, but we had ſuch a hard gale for two days, that drove us off the land juſt as we were in ſight of port. This was very mortifying; but two favourable circumſtances attended it, for we were in no danger of a lee-ſhore, and it was fair over head. In the evening of the twenty-fifth we endeavoured to find the Adventure, which the ſtorm had ſeparated, but without effect, the weather being ſo hazy, that we could not ſee a mile round us. On the twenty-eighth we ſaw the Adventure about five miles to leeward, and we kept company with her till the night of the twenty-ninth, when ſhe diſappeared, nor did we ſee her at day-light. Charlotte Sound was the appointed place of rendezvous; and as we had ſeparated from the Adventure, we were obliged to make for it, otherwiſe Capt. Cook would have ſought a ſupply of wood and water further ſouth. We ſtood to the eaſtward, in hopes of meeting with the Adventure. On the ſecond of November the morning was very clear, and we kept a ſharp look-out for the Adventure; but as we could not ſee her, we judged ſhe was got into the Sound. We accordingly made for the ſhore of Eakeinomauwe. In doing which we diſcovered an inlet, which the captain had never obſerved before, on the eaſt ſide of Cape Teerewhitte. We anchored in twelve fathoms water, at the entrance of this inlet; and ſeveral of the inhabitants came on board, who were extravagantly fond of nails. We ran up into Ship Cove on the third of November, where we expected to ſee the Adventure, but were diſappointed. Here we were obliged to unbend the ſails, which had been very much damaged in the late ſtorms. Several people came on board, who remembered the Endeavour when on this coaſt, particularly an old man called Goubiah. The empty caſks were ordered on ſhore, and the neceſſary repairs both to them and the ſhips were ordered to be made. We were unſucceſsful in our fiſhing parties, who caught no fiſh, but were well ſupplied by the natives with that uſeful article. On opening the bread caſks, we found a great deal of it damaged; that which remained good we baked over again, in order to preſerve it.

On Friday the fifth, one of the natives took an opportunity of ſtealing one of the ſeamen's bag of cloaths, which, with ſome difficulty, we recovered. This made our people more cautious in future. We found one of the ſows which Capt. Furneaux had put on ſhore, and were informed that the boar and other ſow were taken to another part, but not killed. We were mortified very much when we heard that old Goubiah had killed the two goats which Captain Cook put on ſhore, and were concerned to think that our endeavours to ſtock this country with uſeful animals were likely to be rendered fruitleſs, by thoſe very people for whoſe benefit they were deſigned. But nature had amazingly aſſiſted our intentions in the gardens, where every thing was in a flouriſhing ſtate, except the potatoes, which were moſt of them dug up. We put on ſhore another boar and ſow, with two cocks, and four hens. We purchaſed a large quantity of fiſh from the natives, who were very much inclined to theft; we detected them picking our pockets very frequently. Several ſtrangers came to viſit us in five canoes, they took up their quarters in a cave near us, and decamped the next morning with ſix of our ſmall water caſks. All the people whom we found on our arrival likewiſe went with them. Some of them returned in a day or two, and ſupplied us with fiſh.

On Monday, the fifteenth, we made a party to the ſummit of one of the hills, in order to look for the

Adventure, but were diſappointed, and totally at a loſs to know what was become of her. When we returned, the natives were collected round our boat, to whom we made ſome preſents, and went on board. We were very well ſupplied with fiſh during our ſtay here. On the twenty-ſecond we took one boar and three ſows, together with ſome cocks and hens, into the woods, where we left them with proviſion ſufficient for ten or twelve days, with hopes that the natives would not diſcover them till they had bred. Our officers having viſited the dwelling-places of ſeveral of the natives, found ſome human bones, from which the fleſh appeared to be lately taken; and on the twenty-third, they being on ſhore, ſaw the head and bowels of a youth, lately killed, lying on the beach; his heart was ſtuck on a fork, and fixed at the fore part of one of the largeſt canoes. The head was bought, and brought on board, where one of the natives broiled and eat it before the whole ſhip's company, and the ſight made ſeveral of them ſick. Oedidee, whom we had brought with us, expreſſed his horror at this tranſaction in terms which it is impoſſible for us to deſcribe. It is certain that the New Zealanders are cannibals, which this circumſtance fully proves; but from all we could learn, they only eat the fleſh of thoſe ſlain in battle. This youth had fallen in a ſkirmiſh with ſome of the natives, as well as ſeveral others; but how many, or what was the cauſe of the quarrel, we could not learn.

Our crew had for 3 months paſt lived almoſt wholly on freſh proviſions and vegetables; and we had, at this time, neither a ſcorbutic nor ſick perſon on board. Before we quitted the Sound, we left a memorandum, ſetting forth the day of our departure, what courſe we intended ſteering, &c. and buried it in a bottle, where it muſt be diſcovered, ſhould Capt. Furneaux touch here, though we did not place any great expectation in ſuch an event. We ſailed from hence on the twenty-fifth of November, and ſought the Adventure in ſeveral harbours, but without effect. All hopes of ſeeing her again were now vaniſhed, and we ſet about our intended diſcoveries by ourſelves. The ſhip's company were perfectly ſatisfied with Capt. Cook's care and conduct, and did not expreſs any uneaſineſs at our being unattended.

On Friday, the twenty-ſixth, we ſteered to the ſouth, and on Monday the ſixth of December found ourſelves antipodes to our London friends. We were then in S. latitude 50 deg. 17 min. and E. longitude 179 deg. 40 min. We met with ſeveral flights of our old companions, albatroſſes, petrels, &c. We ſailed through large quantities of looſe ice on the fourteenth of November, and diſcovered many ice iſlands. We were ſoon embayed by the ice, and were obliged to ſtretch to the N. W. We were now in much danger, owing to the ice iſlands and the fog. We attempted to take ſome of the ice on board, but without effect; but on the ſeventeenth we ſucceeded, and got on board as much as we could manage.

Tueſday, the twenty-firſt, we came the ſecond time within the antarctic circle; and on a ſudden got among a great quantity of looſe ice, and a cluſter of ice iſlands, which it was very difficult to ſteer clear of, as the fog was very thick. On the twenty-fourth they increaſed ſo faſt upon us, that we could ſee near an hundred round us, beſides an aſtoniſhing quantity of ſmall pieces. Here we ſpent the twenty fifth, being Chriſtmas-day, in much the ſame manner as we did the preceeding one.

A. D. 1774. On the ſecond of January, we ſteered N. W. in order to explore great part of the ſea between us and our track to the ſouth; but were obliged to ſteer north-eaſterly the next day, and could not accompliſh our deſign. Many of the people were attacked with ſlight fevers while we were in theſe high latitudes, but happily they were cured in a few days. Taking every circumſtance into conſideration, it is not very probable that there is any extenſive land in our track from Otaheite, which was about two hundred leagues; and that any lay to the weſt is ſtill leſs probable; we therefore ſteered N. E. There was no ſign of land; and therefore on the eleventh we altered our courſe, and ſteered S. E. On the twenty-fifth we found ourſelves in a pleaſant climate, and no ice in view; on the twenty-ſixth came a third time within the antarctic circle. On Sunday, the thirtieth, we ſaw a very extenſive field of ice, and within the field we diſtinctly enumerated nienty-ſeven ice hills of various ſizes; it is probable that ſuch mountains of ice were never ſeen in the Greenland ſeas. On this account, the attempt to get farther to the ſouth, though not abſolutely impoſſible, was yet both raſh and dangerous. The majority of us were of opinion that this ice extended to the pole, as it might poſſibly join ſome land to which it has been contiguous ſince the earlieſt times. Should there be land to the ſouth behind this ice, it certainly can afford no better retreat for man, beaſt, or birds, than the ice itſelf, with which it muſt certainly be covered. As we could not go any farther to the ſouth, we thought it adviſeable to tack, and ſtand back to the north, being at this time in the lat. 71 deg. 10 min. S. and 106. deg. 54 min. W. Happily for us we tacked in good time; for we had no ſooner done it, than a very thick fog came on; which would have been highly dangerous when we fell in with the ice.

On the firſt of February we were able to take in ſome more ice, which, though it was cold work to collect, ſerved us for preſent conſumption when melted. Capt. Cook was now well ſatisfied that no continent was to be found in this ocean, but that which is totally inacceſſible; he therefore determined to paſs the enſuing winter within the tropic, if he met with no other object worth purſuing. It was determined to ſteer for the land diſcovered by Juan Fernandez, or, in failure of this purſuit, to ſearch for Eaſter Iſland or Davis's Land, which we knew very little about. The ſailors, and all on board acceded to theſe deſigns, and were happy at the thoughts of getting into a warmer climate. We had continual gales from the eighth to the twelfth inſtant, when it fell a dead calm. The weather varied every day conſiderably till the twenty-fifth, when Capt. Cook was perſuaded that the diſcovery of Juan Fernandez, if any ſuch was ever made, could be nothing but a ſmall iſland, not worth notice. On the twenty-fifth, Capt. Cook was taken ſo ill as to be obliged to keep his bed, and recovered very ſlowly. It is ſomething very extraordinary, that when he could eat nothing elſe he had a mind to a dog of Mr. Forſter's, which was killed, and he reliſhed both the fleſh and the broth made of it. This ſeems very odd kind of food for a ſick man: and, in the opinion of many people, would create much greater ſickneſs than it was likely to be any means of removing.

On the 11th of March land was ſeen from the maſt-head, which proved to be Eaſter Iſland: and on the 13th, we came to an anchor in 36 fathoms water, before the ſandy beach. One of the natives came on board the ſhip, where he ſtaid two nights. He meaſured the length of the ſhip, and called the number by the ſame names as the Otaheiteans do; but otherwiſe we could not underſtand his language. A party of us went aſhore on the 14th, and found a great number of the natives aſſembled, who were pacifically inclined, and ſeemed deſirous to ſee us. We made ſigns for ſomething to eat, after we had diſtributed ſome trinkets among them; they brought us ſome ſugar-canes, potatoes, and plantains. We very ſoon found out that theſe gentlemen were as expert thieves as any before met with; we could ſcarce keep any thing in our pockets, and it was with ſome difficulty that we could keep our hats upon our heads. Theſe people ſeemed to underſtand the uſe of a muſket, and to be very much afraid of it. Here were ſeveral plantations of potatoes, ſugar-canes, and plantains; but otherwiſe the country appeared barren and without wood. We found a well of brackiſh water, and ſaw ſome fowls. As the natives did not ſeem unwilling to part with theſe articles, and as we were in want of them, we determined to ſtay a few days. A trade was accordingly opened with the natives, and we got on board a few caſks of water. A party of officers and men were ſent up the country in order to examine it; and Capt. Cook remained on ſhore among the natives. An advantageous trade for potatoes was opened, but ſoon put a ſtop to by the owners of the ſpot from whence they were dug. It ſeems that they had ſtolen theſe potatoes; for they all ran away at his approach. From this circumſtance it is pretty evident that they are not more ſtrictly honeſt amongſt themſelves than to ſtrangers. This reconnoitring party were followed by a crowd of natives; and before they had proceeded far, they were met by a middle-aged man, with his face painted. He had a ſpear in his hand, and walked along with him, keeping his countrymen at a diſtance, that our people might receive no moleſtation from them. This man was punctured from head to foot. They found the greateſt part of the iſland barren; though in many places there were plantations of the roots before mentioned. They met with the ruins of three platforms of ſtone work. On each of theſe platforms had ſtood four very large ſtatues, made of ſtone, but they were now fallen to the ground, and much defaced. Theſe ſtatues were fifteen feet long, and ſix feet broad acroſs the ſhoulders. On the head of each ſtatue was a round red ſtone, of conſiderable magnitude. Travelling on, they found in ſome places a poor ſort of iron ore, and afterwards came to a fruitful part of the iſland, on which were ſeveral plantations. They could get no good water in their journey; but they were obliged to drink what they could get, on account of the extremity of their thirſt. They found the natives ſo addicted to theft, that they were obliged to fire ſome ſmall ſhot at a man, who took from them their bag of proviſions and implements. The ſhot hit this fellow in the back, on which he dropped the bag and fell; but he ſoon afterwards got up and walked off. Some delay was occaſioned by this affair. The man before mentioned ran round them and repeated ſeveral words, which they could not underſtand; and afterwards they were very good friends together, no one attempting to ſteal any thing more. A number of the natives were aſſembled together on a hill at ſome diſtance, with ſpears in their hands, but diſperſed at the deſire of their countrymen. There appeared to be a chief among them, which wore a better cloth than the reſt. He had a fine open countenance, and was very well made. His face was painted, and his body punctured. They met with ſome pretty freſh water towards the eaſtern end of this iſland, but it was rendered dirty by a cuſtom which the inhabitants have of waſhing themſelves in it as ſoon as they have drank. Let the company be ever ſo large, the firſt that gets to the well jumps into the middle of it, drinks his fill, and waſhes himſelf all over; the next does the ſame, and ſo on till all of them have drank and waſhed.

Great numbers of the gigantic ſtatues, before deſcribed, are to be ſeen on this part of the iſland; one of which they meaſured, and found it to be twenty-ſeven feet long, and eight feet broad acroſs the ſhoulders. One of theſe figures, of an aſtoniſhing height, being ſtanding, it afforded ſhade for the whole party to dine under, which conſiſted of thirty perſons. Many gained the ſummit of a hill, but could not ſee any bay or creek, nor diſcover any ſigns of freſh water. They returned to the ſhip in the evening. No ſhrubs worth mentioning were found in this excurſion, neither did they ſee an animal of any ſort, and but very few birds. They could not diſcover any thing in the whole iſland to induce ſhips, in the utmoſt diſtreſs, to touch at it.

CHAP. V.

The Reſolution ſails from Eaſter Iſland to the Marqueſas—Tranſactions and incidents while ſhe lay in Reſolution Bay, in the iſland of St. Chriſtina—Departs from the Marqueſas—Theſe iſlands deſcribed, with an account of the inhabitants, their cuſtoms, &c.—The Reſolution prepares to leave Otaheite—Another naval review—A deſcription of the iſland—Her arrival at the iſland of Huaheine—An expedition into the ſame—Various incidents related—The ſhip proceeds to Ulietea—Her reception there—Incidents during her ſtay—Character of Oedidee—General obſervations on the iſlands.

1774. ON Wedneſday, the 16th of March, we took our departure from Eaſter Iſle, and ſteered for the Marqueſas iſlands, intending to make ſome ſtay there if nothing material intervened. On the 6th of April, we diſcovered an iſland, when we were in latitude 9 deg. 20 min. and longitude 138 deg. 14 min. we were about nine leagues diſtance from it. We ſoon diſcovered another, more extenſive than the former, and preſently afterwards a third and a fourth; theſe were the Marqueſas diſcovered in 1595 by Mendana. After various unſucceſsful trials to come to an anchor, we came at laſt before Mendana's port, and anchored in thirty-four fathoms water, at the entrance of the bay. Several canoes appeared, filled with natives, but it was with ſome difficulty they were perſuaded to come along-ſide; they were at laſt induced by ſome ſpike nails and a hatchet. From theſe people we got ſome fiſh and fruit. Great numbers of them came along-ſide next morning, and brought with them one pig, ſome bread-fruit and plantains, for which they received nails, &c. We often detected them in keeping our goods, and making no return; which practice was not put a ſtop to till Capt. Cook fired a muſket-ball over the head of one man, who had repeatedly ſerved us ſo. We wanted to get farther into the bay, and accordingly ſought after a convenient place to moor the ſhip in. When Capt. Cook ſaw there were too many natives on board, he deſired that they might be well looked after, or they would certainly commit many thefts. Before the captain was well got into the boat, he was told that a canoe, with ſome men in her, were making off with one of the iron ſtanchions from the oppoſite gangway. The captain immediately ordered them to fire over the canoe, but not to kill any body. There was ſuch a noiſe on board, that his orders were not diſtinctly heard, and the poor thief was killed at the third ſhot. The reſt that were in the canoe leaped overboard, but got in again juſt as Capt. Cook came up to them, and threw overboard the ſtanchion. One of the men ſat laughing as he laded the blood and water out of the boat, but the other looked very ſerious and dejected. We afterwards had reaſon to think that the father of the latter had been ſhot. The natives retired with great precipitation at this unhappy accident; but their fears were in ſome meaſure allayed by the captain's following them into the bay, and making them preſents. We found freſh water aſhore, which we very much wanted. One would have imagined that the fatality attending one poor fellow's thieving, would have diſcoureged them from making any more attempts of the like nature; but no ſooner was our kedge anchor out, but two men came from the ſhore, wanting to take away the buoy, not knowing what was faſtened to it. Leſt they ſhould take away the buoy, a ſhot was fired, which fell ſhort of them: of this they took not the leaſt notice; but when another was fired, which went over their heads, they inſtantly let go the buoy, and returned to the ſhore. This laſt ſhot had a good effect; for by this they ſaw that they were not ſafe at any diſtance, and they were ever afterwards much terrified at the ſight of the muſket. However, they ſtill continued to practice their art of thieving; but it was judged better to put up with it, as we did not intend making a long ſtay here. A man who had the appearance of a chief came off to us with a pig upon his ſhoulder; he was preſented with a hatchet in return, and afterwards great numbers of the natives came along-ſide, and carried on ſome traffic. Peace being now eſtabliſhed, another party of men were ſent aſhore. The natives received us civilly, and we got a ſupply of water, as well as ſome hogs and fruit. On the 9th, another party went aſhore, and were met by a chief of ſome conſequence, attended by ſeveral of the natives. Preſents were made to him; but we could not prevail on him to return with us to dinner. In the afternoon another party was made to the ſouthern cove, which came to the houſe that belonged to the man we had killed. His ſon inherited his ſubſtance, which conſiſted of five or ſix pigs; but he fled at our approach. We ſhould have been glad to have ſeen him, as we wanted to convince him that we bore the nation no ill-will, though we killed his father, and to have made him ſome preſents by way of a ſmall compenſation. We collected a good many pigs and other refreſhments this day, and returned on board in the evening. We alſo obtained ſeveral pigs from the different canoes that came along-ſide of us on the 10th inſtant; and by this time we had a ſufficient number to afford the crews a freſh meal. A party was made on this day, which was ſucceſsful in the purchaſe of ſeveral more pigs, and a large quantity of fruit. We had now a fine proſpect of getting a ſupply of all manner of refreſhments; but our expectations were fruſtrated, by ſome of our crew having been on ſhore, and ſelling them ſuch articles as they had never before ſeen, which made the natives deſpiſe the hatchets and nails, which before they ſo much prized. As this was the caſe, and we had much need of refreſhment, having been a long time at ſea, it was determined to remove our quarters, and make ſail for Otaheite, hoping to fall in with ſome of thoſe iſlands diſcovered by the Dutch and other navigators, where our wants might be effectually relieved. We had been nineteen weeks at ſea, living the whole time upon ſalt proviſions, and therefore could not but want ſome refreſhments; yet we muſt own, with grateful acknowledgements to goodneſs ſupreme, that on our arrival here, it could ſcarcely be ſaid we had one ſick man, and but a few who had the leaſt complaint. This Capt. Cook attributed to the number of antiſcorbutic articles on board, and to the great attention of the ſurgeon, who was very careful to apply them in time. On Monday, the 11th, at three o'clock, we weighed from St. Chriſtina, and ſtood over for La Dominica, and the night was ſpent in plying between the two iſles. On the 12th, we ſteered to the S. and at five P. M. Reſolution Bay bore E. N. E. half E. diſtant five leagues, and the iſland of Magdalena about nine leagues, which was the only view we had of it.

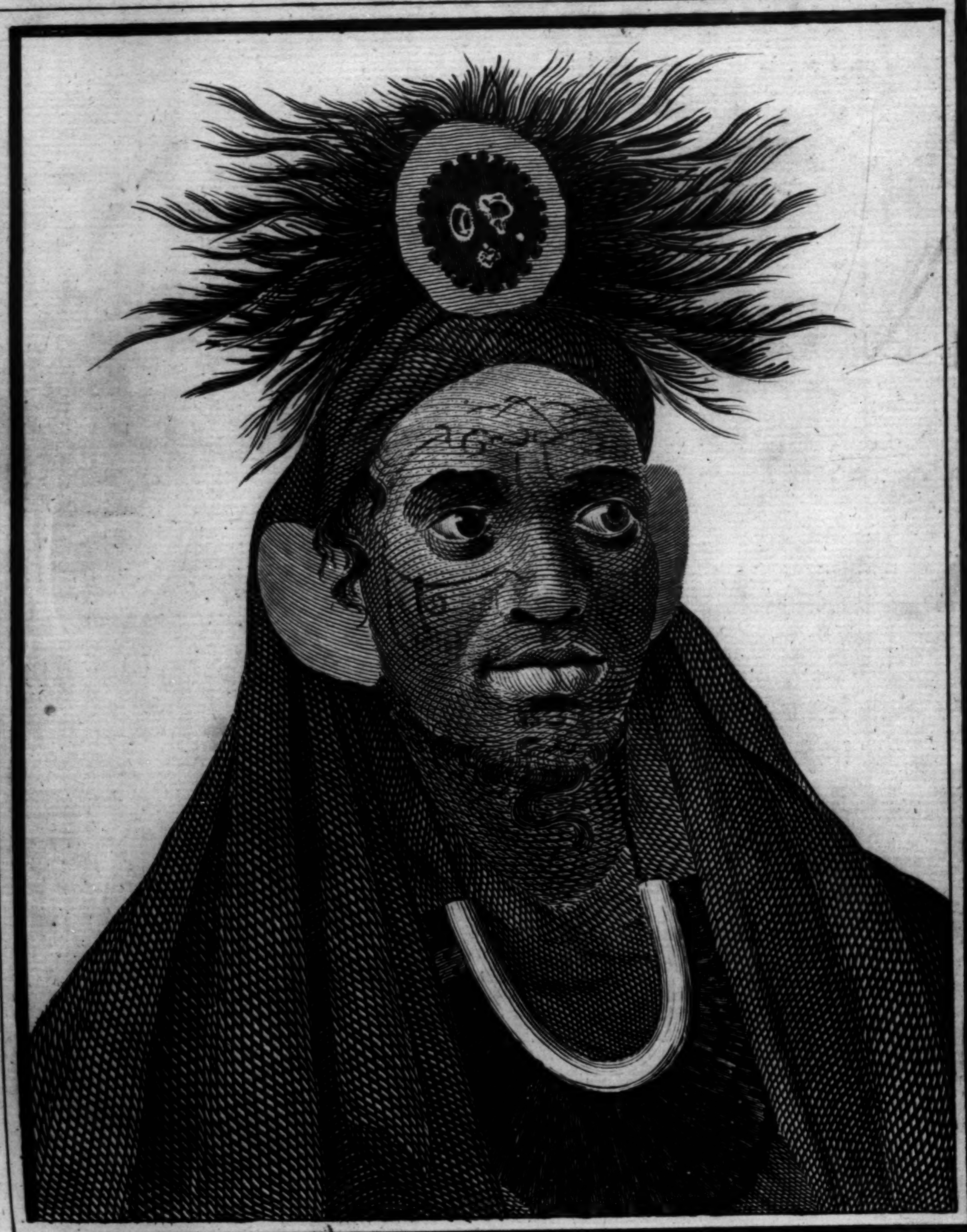
But we ſhall now in our narrative return to the Marqueſas. Theſe are five in number, namely, La Magdalena, St. Pedro, La Dominica, Santa Chriſtina, and what we named Hood's Iſland, which is the northernmoſt, in latitude 9 deg. 26 min. S. Its breadth is unequal, and it is about 16 leagues in circumference. The ſurface is full of rugged hills riſing in ridges, which are disjoined by deep valleys cloathed with wood, as are the ſides of ſome of the hills; the aſpect is, however, barren; yet it is nevertheleſs inhabited. St. Pedro is about three leagues in circuit, and lies ſouth four leagues and a half from the eaſt end of La Dominica. Chriſtina lies under the ſame parallel, four leagues more to the weſt. This iſle is nine miles in length, and about twenty-one in circumference. Theſe iſlands occupy one degree in latitude, and nearly half a degree in longitude, namely, from 138 deg. 47 min. to 139 deg. 13 min. W. which is the longitude of the weſt end of Dominica.

The port of Madre de Dios, which was named Reſolution Bay, is ſituated not far from the middle of the weſt ſide of St. Chriſtina, under the higheſt land in the iſland. The ſouth point of the bay is a ſteep rock, terminating in a peaked hill. The north point is not ſo high, and riſes in a more gentle ſlope. In the bay are two ſandy coves; in each of which is a rivulet of excellent water. For wooding and watering, the northern cove is moſt convenient. We ſaw here the little caſcade mentioned by Quiros, Mendana's pilot; but the village is in the other cove.

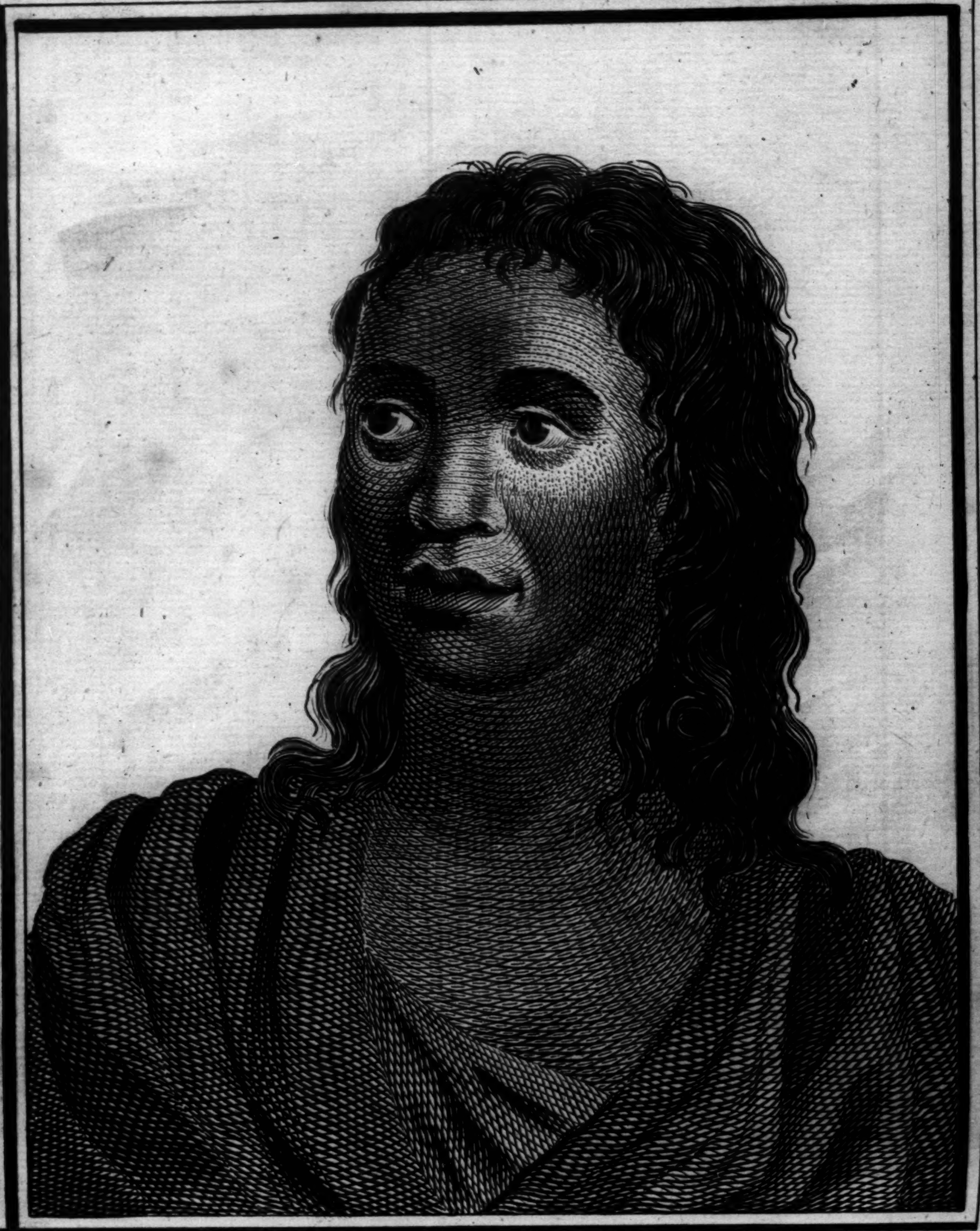
The productions of theſe iſles, which came within our knowledge, are nearly the ſame as at the Society Iſles, namely, hogs, fowls, plantains, yams, and ſome other roots; alſo bread fruit and cocoa-nuts, but of theſe not in abundance. Trifles highly valued at the Society Iſles, are lightly eſteemed here, and even nails, at laſt, in their opinion, loſt their value.

The natives, in general, are the fineſt race of people in this ſea. They ſurpaſs all other nations for ſhape and regular features. The affinity of their language to that of Otaheite, and the Society Iſles, ſhews that they are of the ſame nation. Oedidee could converſe with them, though we could not. The men are curiouſly tattoawed, from head to foot, with various figures, that ſeem to be directed more by fancy than by cuſtom. Theſe punctures cauſe the ſkin to appear of a dark hue; but the women who are not much punctured, and youths who are not at all, are as fair as ſome Europeans. The men are about five feet ſix inches high; but none of them were fat and luſty like the Earees of Otaheite, yet we ſaw not any that could be called meagre. Their eyes are neither full nor lively; their teeth not ſo good as thoſe of other nations, and their hair is of many colours, except red. Some have it long; the moſt prevailing cuſtom is to wear it ſhort; but a bunch on each ſide of the crown they tie in a knot. In trimming their beards, which is in general long, they obſerve different modes: ſome part it, and tie it in two bunches under the chin; ſome plait it, ſome wear it looſe, and others quite ſhort. Their cloathing is much the ſame as at Otaheite, but not ſo good, nor in ſuch plenty. The men, for the moſt part, cover their nakedneſs with the Marra, which is a ſlip of cloth paſſed round the waiſt, and between the legs. This ſimple dreſs is quite ſufficient for modeſty, and the climate. The women wear a piece of cloth round their loins, like a petticoat, reaching below the middle of their legs, and a looſe mantle over their ſhoulders. Their head dreſs, and what ſeems to be their principal ornament, is a broad fillet, made curiouſly of the fibres of the huſks of cocoa-nuts, in the front of which is placed a mother-of-pearl ſhell, wrought round to the ſize of a tea-ſaucer. Near this is one ſmaller, of very fine tortoiſeſhell, perforated in curious figures; and in the center is another round piece of mother-of-pearl, about the ſize of half a crown; before which is another piece of perforated tortoiſeſhell the ſize of a ſhilling. Some have this decoration on each ſide, in ſmaller pieces; and all have annexed to them the tail-feathers of cocks or tropic birds, which ſtand upright, and the whole makes a very ſingular ornament. Round the neck they wear a kind of ruff or necklace of light wood, covered with ſmall red peas, fixed on with gum. Round their legs and arms they have bunches of human hair, faſtened to a ſtring. Inſtead of hair they ſometimes uſe ſhort feathers; but all theſe ornaments we ſeldom ſaw on the ſame perſon. The chief, indeed, who came to viſit us, was completely dreſſed in this manner; but their ordinary ornaments are necklaces and amulets compoſed of ſhells, &c. All had their ears pierced, yet we ſaw not any with ear-rings.

Their houſes are in the valleys, and on the ſides of hills, near their plantations, built after the ſame manner as at Otaheite, but much meaner, being only covered with the leaves of the bread-tree. Moſt of them are built on a pavement of ſtone, an oblong, or ſquare, which is raiſed above the level of the ground. Theſe pavements are likewiſe near their dwellings, on which they eat and amuſe themſelves. In their eating, theſe people are not very cleanly. They are alſo dirty in their cookery. They dreſs their pork in an oven of hot ſtones; but fruit and roots they roaſt, and having taken off the rind, they put them into a trough with water, out of which we have ſeen both men and hogs eat at the ſame time. Once we ſaw them make a batter of fruit and roots in a veſſel that was loaded with dirt, and out of which the hogs had been that moment eating, without waſhing either that, or their hands, which



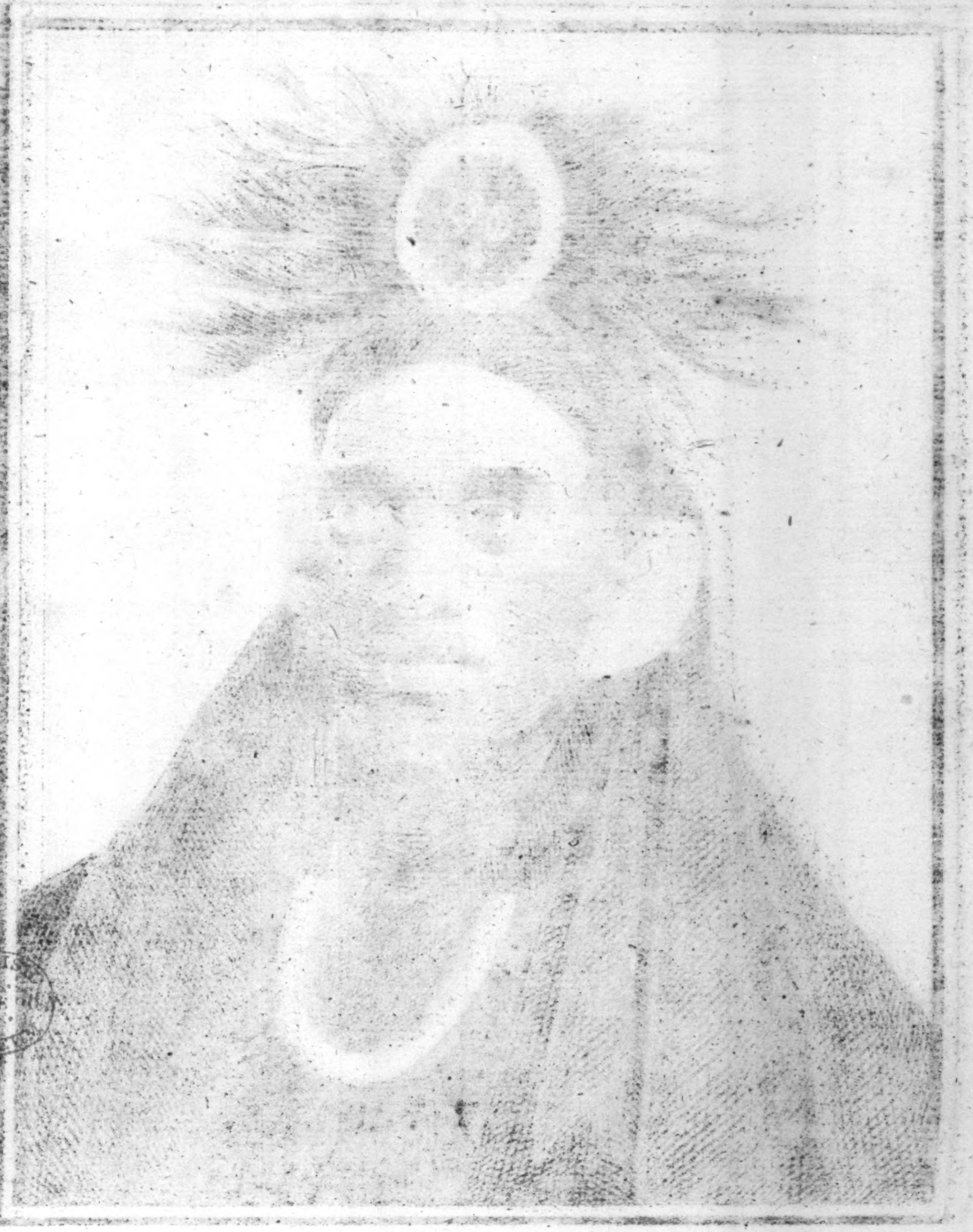
The CHIEF, *at* S^{TA}. CHRISTINA.



A Principal WOMAN *of* S^{TA}. CHRISTINA.

Lowry sc.

[illegible]



[illegible]

which were equally dirty; but the actions of a few individuals are not ſufficient to fix a cuſtom on a whole nation. Their weapons are clubs and ſpears. They have alſo ſlings with which they throw ſtones with great velocity, but not with a good aim. Their canoes are made of wood, and the bark of a ſoft tree, which grows near the ſea, and is very proper for the purpoſe. Their length is from ſixteen to twenty feet, and their breadth about fifteen inches. The head and ſtern are formed out of two ſolid pieces of wood; the former is curved, and the latter ends in a point; the latter, which projects horizontally, is decorated with a rude carved figure, having a faint reſemblance of a human ſhape and face. Some of theſe canoes have a latteen ſail, but they are generally rowed with paddles. The only tame fowls we ſaw were cocks and hens; and of quadrupeds no other than hogs; but the woods were well inhabited by ſmall birds, whoſe plumage is exceeding beautiful, and their notes ſweetly varied. We did not ſhoot as many of them as we might have done, from apprehenſions of alarming and terrifying the natives.

On Sunday, the 17th, at ten o'clock A. M. having ſteered W. by S. land was ſeen bearing W. half N. being a chain of low iſlots, connected together by a reef of coral rocks. We ranged the N. W. coaſt till we came to a creek or inlet, and which ſeemed to have a communication with a lake in the center of the iſland. Having a deſire of ſurveying theſe half drowned iſlots, we hoiſted out a boat, and ſent the maſter in to ſound. While the Reſolution ran along the coaſt, the natives were ſeen in different places armed with long ſpears and clubs, and a group of them were obſerved on one ſide of the creek. As they ſhewed ſome ſigns of a friendly diſpoſition, two boats were ſent aſhore well armed, under the command of Lieutenant Cooper, who was accompanied by Mr. Forſter. We ſaw our people land without any oppoſition from a few natives ſtanding on the ſhore; but perceiving, a little time after, forty or fifty, all armed, coming down to join them, we ſtood cloſer in ſhore, with the view of ſupporting our people in caſe they ſhould be attacked; but our boat returned without any thing of this kind having happened. By Mr. Cooper we were informed, that many of the natives hovered about the ſkirts of the wood with ſpears in their hands; and that the preſents he made to thoſe on ſhore were received with great coolneſs. When their reinforcement arrived, his party thought it moſt prudent to embark, eſpecially as the captain had ordered them to avoid, if poſſible, an attack. When the crew, &c. were all in the boats, ſome of the natives attempted to puſh them off, others ſeemed diſpoſed to detain them; at length they ſuffered our people to depart at their leiſure. One of them procured a dog for a ſingle plantain, which led us to conjecture this was not a production of their iſland; indeed, they ſaw no fruit but cocoa-nuts, of which they could get, by barter, only two dozen. When the maſter returned from ſounding in the creek, he reported that there was no paſſage from thence into the lake; and that the creek, at its entrance, was fifty fathoms wide, and thirty deep; farther up thirty wide, and twelve deep; that the bottom was rocky, and the ſides bounded by coral rocks. We were not inclined to run the ſhip into ſuch a place, and therefore, after having formed ſome judgment of the natives, we prepared to proceed on new diſcoveries.

The natives call this iſland Tiookea, which was diſcovered and viſited by Commodore Byron. It is of an oval form, about thirty miles in circumference, and lies in 14 deg. 27 min. 30 ſec. S. latitude, and in 144 deg. 56 min. W. longitude. They, and perhaps all the inhabitants of the low iſlands, are of a much darker colour than thoſe of the higher ones, and ſeem more ſavage in their nature. Theſe low iſlands are not ſo fertile as ſome others; the inhabitants are much expoſed to the ſun; they depend upon the ſea for their ſupport, by which means they are darker in colour, and more robuſt; yet there is no doubt of their being of the ſame nation. A fiſh is an emblem of their profeſſion, and a figure of one was marked on the bodies of the men, who in general are well made, ſtout, and fierce.

On Monday, the 18th, we ſaw ſuch another iſland as that we had left, to the weſtward, which we reached by eight o'clock A. M. We ranged the S. E. ſide at one mile diſtant from the ſhore. It lies S. W. by W. two leagues from the weſt end of Tiookea, in 14 deg. 37 min. S. latitude, and in 145 deg. 10 min. W. longitude. Theſe we apprehend to be the ſame, to which Commodore Byron gave the name of George's Iſlands. We left them on the 19th, and at ſeven o'clock A. M. diſcovered another of theſe half-overflowed iſlands, which are ſo common in theſe ſouthern latitudes. In general they are ſurrounded with an unfathomable ſea, and their interior parts are covered with lakes, which would be excellent harbours, were they not ſhut up from the acceſs of ſhipping, which, according to the report of the natives, is the caſe with moſt of them. Of the great number we ranged, not a paſſage was to be diſcovered into one of them. We were told, that they abound with fiſh, particularly turtle, on which the natives ſubſiſt, and ſometimes exchange with the inhabitants of the higher iſlands for cloth, &c. This iſland, (by which, while in this part of the ocean, we would be underſtood to mean a number of little iſles, or iſlots, connected together into one by a reef of coral rocks) is about five leagues long, and three broad, and is in 15 deg. 26 min. S. latitude, and in 146 deg. 20 min. longitude. Near the ſouth end we diſcovered from the maſt head, diſtant four leagues, another of theſe low iſles; ſoon after a third, bearing S. W. by S. It extends W. N. W. and E. S. E. in which direction its length is twenty-one miles, but its breadth not more than ſix. It appears, in every reſpect, like the reſt, only it has fewer iſlots, and leſs firm land on the reef which ſurrounds the lake. While ranging the north coaſt, we ſaw people, huts, canoes, and what appeared to be ſtages for drying of fiſh. The natives were armed with the ſame weapons, and ſeemed to be the ſame ſort, as thoſe in the iſland of Tiookea. Approaching now the weſt end we ſaw a fourth iſland, bearing N. N. E. It lies ſix leagues weſt from the firſt. Theſe four cluſters we named Palliſer's iſles, in honour of Sir Hugh Palliſer, comptroller of the navy.

On Wedneſday the 20th, at day-break, hauling round the weſt end of the third iſland, we found a great ſwell rolling in from the S. by which we knew that we were clear of theſe low iſlands; and being not within ſight of land, we made the beſt of our way for Otaheite, having a ſtrong gale at eaſt, attended with ſhowers of rain. It is here neceſſary to take notice, that this part of the ocean, from the latitude 20 deg. down to 12 deg. and from the meridian of 138 deg. to 150 deg. W. is ſo ſtrewed with low iſles, that a navigator cannot proceed with too much circumſpection; but whether theſe iſles be any of thoſe diſcovered, and laid down in the charts of the Dutch navigators, cannot be determined with any degree of certainty; eſpecially when we conſider, that their diſcoveries are not handed down to us with ſufficient accuracy. Thurſday, the 21ſt, we made the high land of Otaheite; by ſun-ſet was in with Point Venus, and the next morning, at eight o'clock, anchored in Matavai Bay, in ſeven fathoms water. Our arrival was no ſooner known to the natives, than they paid us a viſit, expreſſed the moſt lively congratulations, and ſupplied us with fiſh and fruit ſufficient for the whole crew. Our firſt buſineſs was to erect tents for the reception of ſuch of our people as were required on ſhore. Sick we had none, for the refreſhments we got at the Marqueſas, had been the means of removing every complaint of the ſcorbutic kind, and of preſerving the whole crew in good health. We alſo ſent aſhore Mr. Wales's inſtruments; our chief reaſon for putting into this place being to afford him an opportunity to aſcertain the error of the watch by the known longitude, and to determine preciſely its rate of going.

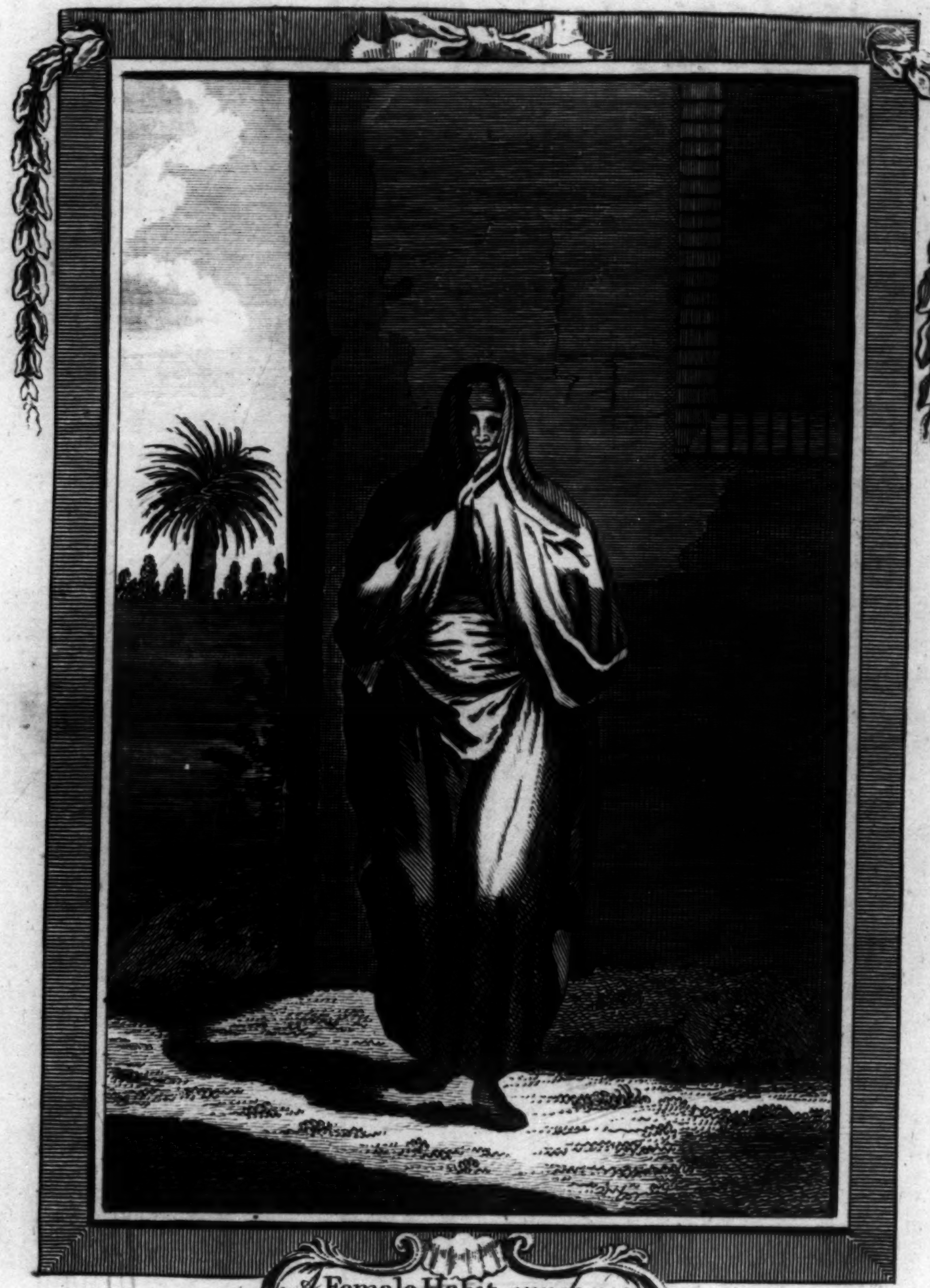
On Sunday, the 24th, Otoo and other chiefs, with a train of attendants, brought us ten large hogs, beſides fruit, which made their viſit exceedingly agreeable. As the king's coming had been announced to us, and knowing how much it was our intereſt to keep this chief our friend, Capt. Cook met him at the tents, and conducted the whole of this retinue, with himſelf, on board, where they ſtaid dinner, and appeared highly pleaſed with their reception. Next day, notwithſtanding we had much thunder, lightning, and rain, the king came again to ſee us, and brought with him another preſent, conſiſting of a large quantity of refreſhments. When at Amſterdam, we had collected, among other curioſities, ſome red parrot feathers. Theſe precious valuables procured us hogs, fruit, and every other thing the iſland afforded. Our having them was a fortunate circumſtance; for our ſtock in trade being greatly exhauſted, without theſe we ſhould have found it difficult to have ſupplied the ſhip with neceſſary refreſhments. When we put into this iſland, we intended to ſtay no longer than Mr. Wales had made the neceſſary obſervations for the purpoſes already mentioned; and ſuppoſing we ſhould meet with no better ſucceſs than we did the laſt time we were here. But the reception we had already met with, and the few excurſions we had made to the plains of Matavai and Oparree, convinced us of our error; for at theſe two places we found built, and building, a large number of canoes and houſes of every kind: people living in ſpacious houſes, who had not a place to ſhelter themſelves in eight months before; alſo ſeveral hogs in every houſe, with many other ſigns of a riſing ſtate. On account of theſe favourable circumſtances, we reſolved to make a longer ſtay at this iſland, and to repair the ſhip, which was now indiſpenſably neceſſary. Accordingly the empty caſks and ſails were got aſhore, the ſhip was ordered to be caulked, and the rigging to be overhauled.

On Tueſday, the 26th, Capt. Cook, accompanied by ſome of the officers and gentlemen, went down to Oparree, to viſit Otoo by appointment. When arrived, we ſaw a number of large canoes in motion, but were much ſurpriſed at perceiving more than three hundred ranged along ſhore, all completely equipped and manned; beſides a vaſt number of armed men upon the ſhore. We landed in the midſt of them, and were received by a vaſt multitude, ſome under arms, and ſome not. The cry of the former was Tiyono Towha, and of the latter was Tiyo no Otoo. Towha, we afterwards learnt, was admiral, or commander of the fleet. Upon our landing we were met by a chief, named Tee, uncle to the king, of whom we enquired for Otoo. Soon after we were met by Towha, who received us in a friendly manner. He took Capt. Cook by the one hand, and Tee by the other, and dragged him, as it were, through the croud that was divided into two parties, both of which proclaimed themſelves his friends, by crying out Tiyo no Tootee. One party wanted him to go to Otoo, and the other to remain with Towha. When come to the uſual place of audience, Tee left us to go and bring the king. Towha inſiſted on the captain's going with him, but he would not conſent. When Tee returned, he took hold of his hand in order to conduct him to the king. Towha was unwilling he ſhould ſit down, and deſired him to go with him; but this chief being a ſtranger, he refuſed to comply. Tee was very deſirous of conducting the captain to the king; Towha oppoſed, and he was obliged to deſire Tee to deſiſt, and to leave him to the admiral and his party, who conducted him down to the fleet. Here we found two lines of armed men drawn up before the admiral's veſſel, in order to keep off the crowd that we might go on board; and when the captain made an excuſe, a man ſquatted down, and offered to carry him, but he would not go. At this time Towha quitted us, without our ſeeing which way he went, nor would any one inform us. We were now joſtled about in the crowd. We ſaw Tee, and inquiring of him for the king, he told us he was gone into the country of Mataou, and he adviſed us to repair to the boat, which we accordingly did, as ſoon as we could get collected together. When in our boat we took our time to reconnoitre the grand fleet. We told an hundred and ſixty large double canoes, equipped, manned, and armed; but we believe they had not their full complement of rowers. The chiefs and all thoſe on the fighting ſtages, were habited in cloth, turbans, breaſt plates, and helmets. Some of the latter ſeemed much to incumber the wearer. Be this as it may, the whole of their dreſs added a grandeur to the proſpect, and they were ſo complaiſant as to ſhew themſelves to the beſt advantage. Their veſſels were full dreſſed with flags, ſtreamers, &c. ſo that the whole fleet made ſuch a noble appearance, as we had never before ſeen in this ſea, and what no one could have expected. Their inſtruments of war were clubs, ſpears, and ſtones. The veſſels were ranged cloſe along ſide of each other, having their heads to the ſhore, and their ſterns to the ſea. The admiral's veſſel was nearly in the center. We counted, excluſive of the veſſels of war, an hundred and ſeventy ſail of ſmaller double canoes, all rigged with maſt and ſail, which the war canoes had not. Theſe we judged were deſigned for tranſports, victuallers, &c. for in the war canoes were no ſorts of proviſions whatever. We conjectured that in theſe three hundred and thirty veſſels there were no leſs than ſeven thouſand ſeven hundred and ſixty men, a number incredible, eſpecially as we were told they all belonged to the diſtricts of Attahourou and Ahopatea. Moſt of the gentlemen, by their calculations, thought the number of men belonging to the war canoes exceeded this, allowing to each war canoe forty men, and to each of the ſmall canoes eight. Having viewed this fleet, it was our intention to have gone on board, could we have ſeen the admiral. We enquired for him, but to no purpoſe. At laſt Tee came, by whom we were informed, that Otoo was gone to Matavai. This intelligence gave riſe to new conjectures. When we got to Matavai, our friends told us, that this fleet was part of the armament intended to go againſt Eimeo, whoſe chief had thrown off the yoke of Otaheite. We were ſtill at a loſs to account for the flight of Otoo from Oparree, for we were informed he neither was nor had been at Matavai. We therefore went thither again in the afternoon, where we found him, and learnt, that the reaſon of his abſconding in the morning was, becauſe ſome of his people had ſtole ſome of the captain's clothes which were waſhing at the tents, and he feared reſtitution would be demanded. He repeatedly aſked Capt. Cook if he was not angry, nor could he be eaſy till aſſured, that the pilferers might keep the ſtolen things. Towha alſo was alarmed, thinking that Capt. Cook was diſpleaſed, and jealous of ſeeing ſuch a force ſo near us, without knowing its deſtination. It happened unluckily that Oedidee was not with us in the morning; for Tee, who was the only man we could depend on, ſerved rather to increaſe our perplexity. Thus by mutual miſunderſtanding, we loſt a favourable opportunity of ſcrutinizing the naval force of this iſle, and making ourſelves better acquainted with its manœuvres. It was commanded by an intelligent and brave chief, who was diſpoſed to have ſatisfied us in all queſtions we had thought proper to aſk; and from the nature of the objects, which were before us, we could not well have miſunderſtood each other. All miſtakes being now rectified, and preſents having paſſed between Otoo and Capt. Cook, we took leave and returned on board.

On Wedneſday, the 27th, in the morning, Towha ſent us, by two of his ſervants, two large hogs, and ſome fruit. The bearers of this preſent had orders not to receive any thing in return, nor would they when offered them. Some of our gentlemen went with the captain in his boat down to Oparree, where we found Towha, and the king; after a ſhort viſit, we brought them both on board, together with Tarevatoo, the king's younger brother. When we drew near the ſhip, the admiral, who had never ſeen one before, expreſſed ſtrong ſigns of ſurprize, and when on board, he was ſhewed, and beheld every part of it with great attention. When Towha retired after dinner, he put a hog on board without our knowledge, or waiting for a return; and ſoon after Otoo and his attendants departed alſo. There was a jealouſy between theſe two chiefs, on what account we could not learn, never-

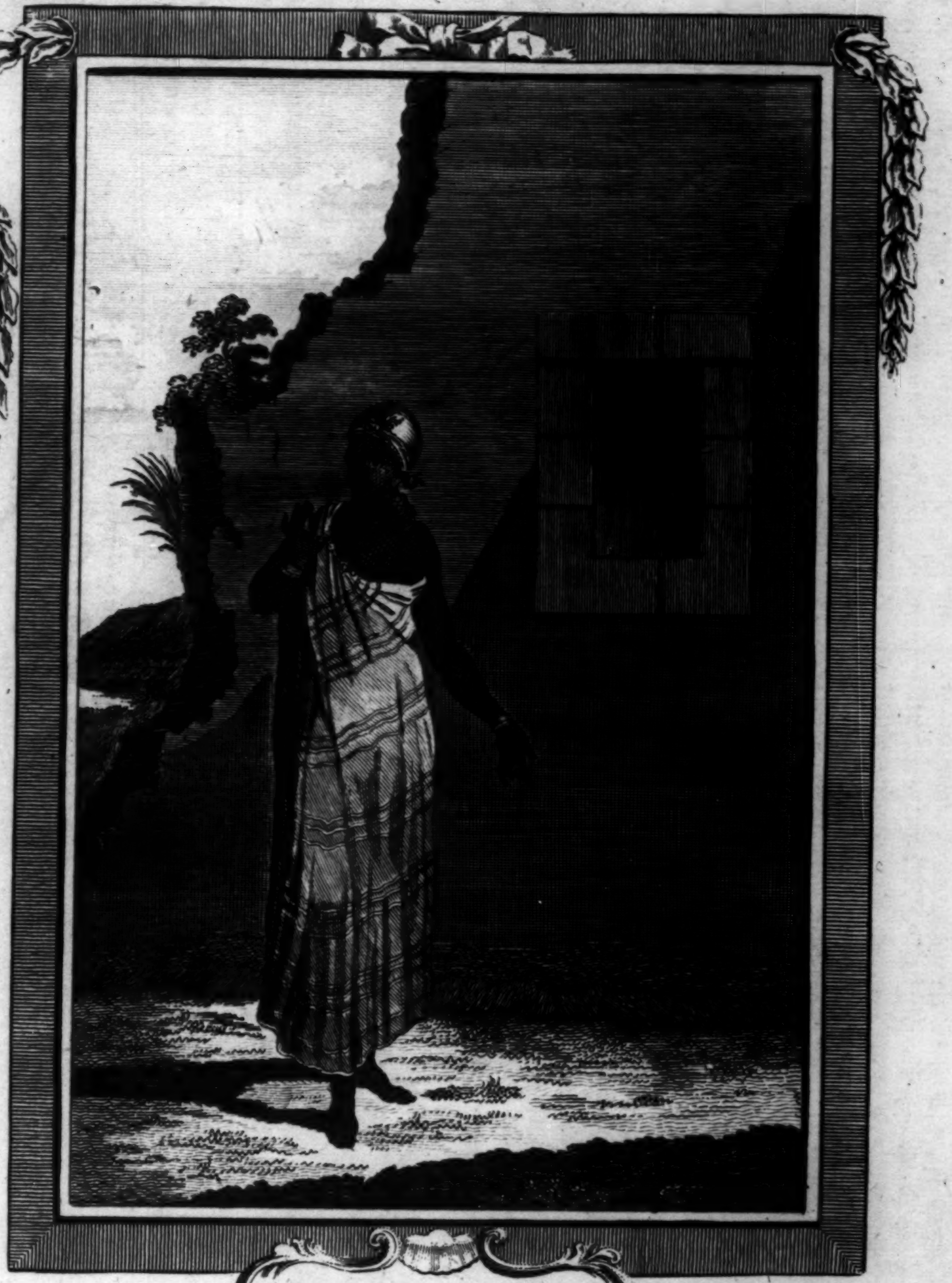
BRITISH 7 FE 90 MUSEUM

BRITISH 7 FE 90 MUSEUM



A Female Habit much used in Africa.

Morris ſculp.



A FEMALE of MOROCCO.

nevertheleſs Otoo paid Towha much reſpect, and was deſirous we ſhould do the ſame. Otoo had the day before frankly declared, that the admiral was not his friend. When on board, both theſe chiefs requeſted our aſſiſtance againſt Tiarabou, notwithſtanding there was no rupture as this time between the two ſtates, and they had informed us, that their joint forces were intended againſt Eimeo. The reaſon of this duplicity we could not find out: perhaps they were deſirous of annexing that kingdom, by our alliance, to their own, as it was formerly: be that as it may, as Capt. Cook gave them no encouragement, we heard no more on this ſubject. Our endeavours to maintain a neutrality, we believe, were well received by both parties; for next day, being Thurſday, the 28th, Wahea-toua, king of Tiarabou ſent us a preſent of a hog, for which he requeſted a few red feathers, which were accordingly ſent him. On the 29th, early in the morning, Otoo, Towha, and ſeveral chiefs, again paid us a viſit, and brought with them not only proviſions, but ſome of the moſt choice curioſities of the iſland, and among other returns, with which they ſeemed well pleaſed, the captain did not forget to repay the civilities we had received from the admiral, Towha. We muſt not omit taking notice, that the preceding evening, one of the natives was detected in an attempt to ſteal a caſk from the watering place, and being caught in the act, he was ſent on board, and we put him in irons. Otoo and the other chiefs ſaw the culprit in this ſituation, and Otoo earneſtly interceded in his behalf, requeſting with many intreaties, that he might be ſet at liberty; but he was told by Capt. Cook, that as our people were puniſhed for the leaſt offence committed againſt the natives of Otaheite, it was but juſtice to puniſh this man alſo, which he was determined to ſee done in an exemplary manner, eſpecially as it was well known, he, Otoo, would not do it himſelf. The man, in conſequence of the captain's reſolution, was conducted aſhore to the tents, where a guard was ordered out under arms, and the offender tied up to a poſt, Otoo, his ſiſter, and many of the natives being ſpectators. Otoo and his ſiſter begged hard for the man; with whom the captain expoſtulated, telling Otoo, how unjuſt it was in his people to ſteal from us who were their friends, and who never took any thing from them without giving certain articles, which he enumerated, in exchange. The captain laboured alſo to convince Otoo, that the puniſhment he was about to inflict on this man might prove the means of ſaving the lives of others of his ſubjects; for if they continued in ſuch kind of criminal practices, ſome would certainly, one time or another, be ſhot dead. We believe he pretty well underſtood our commander, and ſeemed ſatisfied, only he deſired the criminal might not be Matteerou, (or killed.) The concourſe of people was by this time very great. The captain therefore drew a line for them at a proper diſtance, and then, in the preſence of them all, ordered the fellow two dozen of laſhes with a cat-o-nine-tails. This chaſtiſement he received with great firmneſs, and was then ſet at liberty. Upon this the natives were going away, apparently not much pleaſed; which Towha perceiving, who all the time had remained ſilent, though very attentive to every thing going on, he ſtepped forward, and harangued them for near half an hour, in ſhort ſentences. We underſtood little of his ſpeech, but from what we could gather, it was a recapitulation of Capt. Cook's: he mentioned ſeveral advantages they had received from our people; and having reprimanded them for their preſent conduct, he exhorted them to adopt and purſue a different one for the future. His action was remarkably graceful, and the profound attention of his audience, proved him to be a maſterly ſpeaker. Otoo ſaid not one word. When Towha had concluded his harangue, the marines were ordered to go through their exerciſe. They fired in vollies with ball, and being very quick in charging, and in their manoeuvres, is is ſcarcely poſſible to deſcribe the aſtoniſhment of the natives during the whole time, particularly the amazement of thoſe to whom this ſight was quite a novelty. The chiefs with all their retinue, now took leave, we are apt to think not leſs frightened than pleaſed at what they had ſeen. In the evening Mr. Forſter and his party returned from an excurſion they had made to the mountains, where they had ſpent the night. Mr. Forſter collected ſome new plants, and found others which grew in New Zealand. He ſaw the iſland of Huaheine, ſituated forty leagues to the weſtward; whereby a judgment may be formed of the height of the mountains of Otaheite.

On Saturday the 30th, we ſaw ten war canoes go through part of their paddling exerciſe. They were properly equipped for war, and in landing we obſerved, that the moment the canoe touched the ground, all the warriors leaped out, and with the aſſiſtance of a few people on ſhore, dragged the canoe on dry land to its proper place; which done, every one walked off with his paddle, &c. Such was their expedition, that in five minutes time after putting aſhore, no one could tell that any thing of the kind had been going forward. The warriors on the ſtage encouraged the rowers to exert themſelves, and we obſerved ſome youths in the curved ſtern elevated above the reſt, with white wands in their hands, placed there perhaps to look out, and give notice of what they ſaw. The king's brother Tarevatoo, knowing that Mr. Hodges made drawings of every thing curious, intimated of his own accord, that he might be ſent for; and thus an opportunity was unexpectedly afforded our draughtſman, to collect materials for a picture of the Otaheite fleet, as it appeared when aſſembled at Oparree. Being preſent when the warriors undreſſed, we could ſcarcely conceive how it was poſſible for them to ſtand under the quantity of cloth with which they were clad, in time of action. Many rounds of this compoſed a kind of turban or cap, which, in the day of battle, might prevent a broken head, and ſome by way of ornament, had fixed to theſe caps dried branches of ſmall ſhrubs, interwoven with white feathers.

On Sunday the 1ſt of May, ſeveral chiefs ſupplied us with a large quantity of proviſions; and the day following our friend Towha ſent us a preſent of a hog, and a boat loaded with various ſorts of fruit and roots. We received alſo another preſent from Otoo, brought by Tarevatoo. On the 3d, upon examining into the condition of our proviſions, we found our biſcuit much decayed, and that the airing we had given it at New Zealand was not of the ſervice we expected; we therefore were now obliged to have it on ſhore, where it underwent another airing and picking, in doing which we found a great part thereof wholly rotten and unfit for uſe. We attributed this decay of our bread to the ice we frequently took in, which made the hold damp and cold, which, when to the north, was ſucceeded by a contrary extreme of intenſe heat; but whatever was the real cauſe of our loſs, it put us to a ſcanty allowance of this valuable article, and we had bad bread to eat beſides. On Thurſday the 5th, in the afternoon, the botaniſts made another excurſion up the country, to the mountains; they returned the evening of next day, and in their way made ſome new diſcoveries. On Saturday the 7th, in the morning, we found Otoo at the tents, of whom the captain aſked leave to cut down ſome trees for fuel. He took him to ſome growing near the ſea ſhore, the better to make him comprehend what ſort we wanted; and he ſeemed much pleaſed when he underſtood, that no trees ſhould be cut down that bore any kind of fruit. This aſſurance from us he repeated ſeveral times aloud to the people about us. In the afternoon we were honoured, when on board, with a viſit from the whole royal family, conſiſting of Otoo, his father, brother, and two ſiſters: but this was properly her father's viſit, who brought the captain a complete mourning dreſs, a preſent he much valued; for which he had in return whatever he deſired, which was not a little; and to the reſt of the company were preſented red feathers. The whole were then conducted aſhore in the captain's boat. Otoo and his friends were ſo well pleaſed with the reception they met with, that, at parting, we were granted the liberty of cutting down as many trees as we wanted, and what ſort we pleaſed.

On Sunday the 8th, our friendly connections with the natives were interrupted by the negligence of one of our centinels at the tents, who had his muſket carried away, he having ſlept or quitted his poſt. We had received an imperfect account of this affair from Tee, but we underſtood enough to know that ſomething had happened, which alarmed the king, who Tee ſaid, was under great apprehenſions of being matteeroued. We therefore loſt no time in going aſhore; and when landed were informed of the whole tranſaction by the ſerjeant who commanded the party. Moſt of the natives had fled at our approaching the tents. Tarevatoo ſlipt from us in a moment, and a few beſides Tee had courage to remain. We went immediately in ſearch of Otoo, and in the way endeavoured to allay the fears of the people. Having advanced ſome diſtance from the ſhore into the country, Tee on a ſudden ſtopped, and adviſed our returning, ſaying, he would proceed to the mountains, whither Otoo had retired, and inform him that we were ſtill his friends; a queſtion, and if we were angry, that had been aſked a number of times by the natives. The captain now thought it was to no purpoſe to go farther, we therefore took Tee's advice, and returned aboard. After this Oedidee was diſpatched to the king, to let him know his fears were groundleſs, ſeeing the captain required of him only what was in his power, the return of the muſket. A ſhort time after the departure of Oedidee, we ſaw ſix large canoes coming round Point Venus. Suſpecting that one belonging to theſe had committed the theft, it was reſolved to intercept them, for which purpoſe a boat was put off, and another ordered to follow. One of the canoes was ahead of the reſt, and ſeemingly making for the ſhip. We put along-ſide of her, and found two or three women whom we knew. They ſaid, they were going aboard the ſhip with a preſent to the captain, and that the other canoes were laden with fruit, hogs, &c. Satisfied with this intelligence, the captain recalled his orders for intercepting them, thinking they alſo, as well as this one, were bound for the ſhip. We therefore left this ſingle canoe within a few yards of it, and proceeded for the ſhore to ſpeak with Otoo; but upon landing we found he had not been there. Looking behind us we ſaw all the canoes, the one we had left near the ſhip not excepted, making off in the greateſt haſte. Vexed at being thus deceived, we reſolved to purſue them, and as we paſſed the ſhip, Capt. Cook gave orders to ſend out another boat for the ſame purpoſe. We overtook and brought five out of the ſix along-ſide, but the one by which we were outwitted got clear off. This, in which were only a few women, had actually amuſed us with falſe ſtories, while the other, in which were moſt of their effects, were to have made their eſcape. In one of the prizes was a friend of Mr. Forſter's, who had hitherto called himſelf an Earee, alſo three women, his wife, daughter, and the mother of the late Toutaha. This chief we would have ſent to Otoo; but he made many excuſes, ſaying, he was of a rank too low for ſuch an honourable embaſſy; that he was no Earee, but a Manahouna; that an Earee ought to be ſent to ſpeak to an Earee; and that as there were none of this high rank but Otoo and the captain, it would be much more proper for the captain to go. At this time Tee and Oedidee came on board, and aſſured us, that the man who had ſtole the muſquet was from Tiarabou; and that we might credit their declaration, they deſired us to ſend a boat to Waheatoua, the king of Tiarabou, offering to go themſelves in her, and recover the muſquet. This ſtory, though not altogether ſatisfactory, carried with it an air of probability; and thinking it better to drop the affair altogether, the captain ſuffered Mr. Forſter's friend to depart with his two canoes. The other three belonged to Maritata, a Tiarabou chief, on which account it was determined to detain them; but as Tee and Oedidee both aſſured us, that Maritata and his people were innocent, they were permitted to go off with their canoes alſo; and the captain deſired Tee to tell Otoo, that he ſhould give himſelf no farther concern about the muſquet, being ſatisfied none of his people had committed the theft. We had now given it up, concluding it to be irrecoverably loſt, but in the duſk of the evening it was brought to the tents, together with other things we had not miſſed, by three men, who, as well as ſome other people preſent, affirmed, that it was by one belonging to Maritata, by whom the things had been ſtolen; whence we concluded both Tee and Oedidee had intentionally deceived us. Every one preſent at the reſtoration of the things, and even they who came afterwards, claimed a reward, all pretending to have had ſome hand in recovering them. Nuno particularly, a man of ſome note, and with whom we were acquainted when here in 1769, played his part in this farce exceeding well. He came with the moſt ſavage fury imaginable expreſſed in his countenance and geſtures; and having a large club in his hand, he laid it about him moſt violently, in order to convince us, how he alone, and to make us ſenſible in what manner he had killed the thief; when at the ſame time we all knew that he had been at home, and not out of his houſe the whole time, which ſhews that human nature, reſpecting her original paſſions and powers, are the ſame in every clime, where the ſame inſtincts, the ſame perceptive faculties, and the ſame ſelf love univerſally prevail.

On Monday the 9th, Tee came again aboard to inform us, that Otoo was at Oparree, and requeſted of the captain to ſend a perſon, to let him know if he was ſtill his friend. He was aſked, why he had not done this himſelf, as he was deſired; he made a trifling excuſe, but we thought he had not ſeen Otoo. As the natives brought not any thing to market, and a ſtop was conſequently put to our trade with them, it was judged time ill ſpent to ſend any more fruitleſs meſſages; a party therefore ſet out, with Tee in our company, and having reached the utmoſt boundaries of Oparree, the king at laſt, when we had waited a conſiderable time, made his appearance. The firſt ſalutations being over, and having taken our ſeats under the ſhade of ſome trees, Otoo deſired the captain to parou (or ſpeak). Capt. Cook began with blaming the king for giving way to groundleſs alarms, he having always profeſſed himſelf his friend, and was diſpleaſed only with thoſe of Tiarabou, who were the thieves. The captain was then aſked, how he came to fire at the canoes? By way of excuſe, he told them they belonged to Maritata, one of whoſe people had ſtolen the muſquet, and, added the captain, "If I had them in my power, I would deſtroy them, or any other belonging to the diſtrict of Tiarabou." We knew this declaration would pleaſe them, from the natural averſion the one kingdom has to the other; and it was enforced by preſents, which we believe were the ſtrongeſt arguments in favour of a reconciliation: for after theſe weighty reaſons, things were ſoon reſtored to their former ſtate, by Otoo's promiſing, on the word of a king, that we ſhould be ſupplied next day with proviſions and fruit as uſual. Peace and amity being now once more eſtabliſhed, we accompanied him to his proper reſidence at Oparree, where he obliged us with a view of ſome of his dock-yards, (for ſo they may well be called) where we ſaw ſeveral large canoes, ſome building, and others lately built, two of which were the largeſt we had any where ſeen. Having fully gratified our curioſity, we repaired on board with Tee in our company, who, after he had dined with us, went to acquaint Happi, the king's father, that all differences were brought to a happy concluſion. But we had reaſon to think this old chief was not ſatisfied with the terms of the accommodation; for all the women, and theſe not a few, were ſent for out of the ſhip, and the next morning, no ſupplies whatever were brought, and we were obliged for the preſent, to be contented with ſome fruit ſent us by our friends from Oparree. But in the afternoon, Otoo himſelf came to the tents with a large ſupply; and preſently after more fruit was brought us than we knew what to do with: for the natives, we believe, thought themſelves injured equally with ourſelves; and we knew they had every thing ready for our market, when they were permitted to bring them. Otoo deſiring to ſee ſome of the great guns fired, his wiſh was complied with, but the ſight, which was entirely new, gave him as much pain as pleaſure; but in the evening, when we entertained him with a ſhew of fire-works, he expreſſed much greater ſatisfaction. We have before had occaſion to obſerve, that theſe people were continually watching opportunities to rob us; and ſeeing the offenders were continually ſcreened, we cannot but think, that the chiefs either encouraged, or had not power to prevent thieviſh practices. We thought it more extraordinary that they ſhould ſo often attempt what they knew might coſt them their lives; and they well knew alſo they ſhould be obliged to make reſtitution, if the article ſtolen was of any great value. They were fully ſenſible of theſe conſequences, and therefore, the moment a theft was committed, every one took the alarm, and went off with his moveables as faſt as poſſible; but if the article was a trifle, or ſuch as we uſually gave them, no commotion happened, becauſe, in general, little or no notice was taken of it. Whether we obliged them to make reſtitution or not, the chief frequently ſecreted himſelf, and he muſt be reconciled before the people were permitted to bring in any refreſhments: and we are perſuaded it was by his orders the ſupplies were detained from us. Theſe they imagined we could not do without, not conſidering, that their war canoes, dwellings, and even fruit, were entirely in our power. Their propenſity to thieving muſt be almoſt irreſiſtible, otherwiſe our uniform conduct towards them would have had its due weight: for, except detaining their canoes for a time, we never touched the ſmalleſt article of their property. When two extremes were under our conſideration, we always choſe the moſt equitable and mild; and frequently ſettled diſputes, or effected a reconciliation, by trifling preſents, notwithſtanding we were the party aggrieved. A preſent to a chief always ſucceeded to our wiſh, and put things on a better footing than they had been before. In all our differences they were the firſt aggreſſors; and our people very ſeldom infringed the rules preſcribed by our commander. Had the captain purſued leſs eligible methods, he might have been a loſer in the end; for had he deſtroyed any of the natives, or part of their property, all he could expect would have been the empty honour of obliging them to make the firſt advances towards an accommodation. Nor is it certain this would have been the event. They were made our faſt friends by three motives; their own benevolent diſpoſition, mild treatment from us, and the dread of our fire-arms. Had we not continually had recourſe to the ſecond, the firſt would have been of little uſe to us; and a too frequent application of fire arms might have excited revenge, perhaps taught them in a little time, that they were not ſuch terrible things as they had conceived them at firſt to be. They knew their ſtrength in the ſuperiority of their numbers, and who can ſay what an enraged multitude might do by undauntedly cloſing with even an European enemy.

On Wedneſday, the 11th, a large ſupply of fruit came to market, and among the reſt a preſent from Towha, the admiral; for which the captain made a ſuitable return. At this time all the neceſſary repairs of the ſhip being nearly finiſhed, it was reſolved to leave Otaheite in a few days; to this end every thing was ordered off from the ſhore, that the natives might ſee we were about to leave them. On the 12th, Oberea, whom we had not ſeen ſince 1769, paid us a viſit, bringing with her hogs and fruit. Otoo alſo came ſoon after her, with a number of attendants, and a large quantity of proviſions. Capt. Cook was very generous in his returns of preſents, and in the evening entertained them with fire-works, thinking it might be the laſt time we might ſee theſe friendly people, who had ſo liberally relieved our wants.

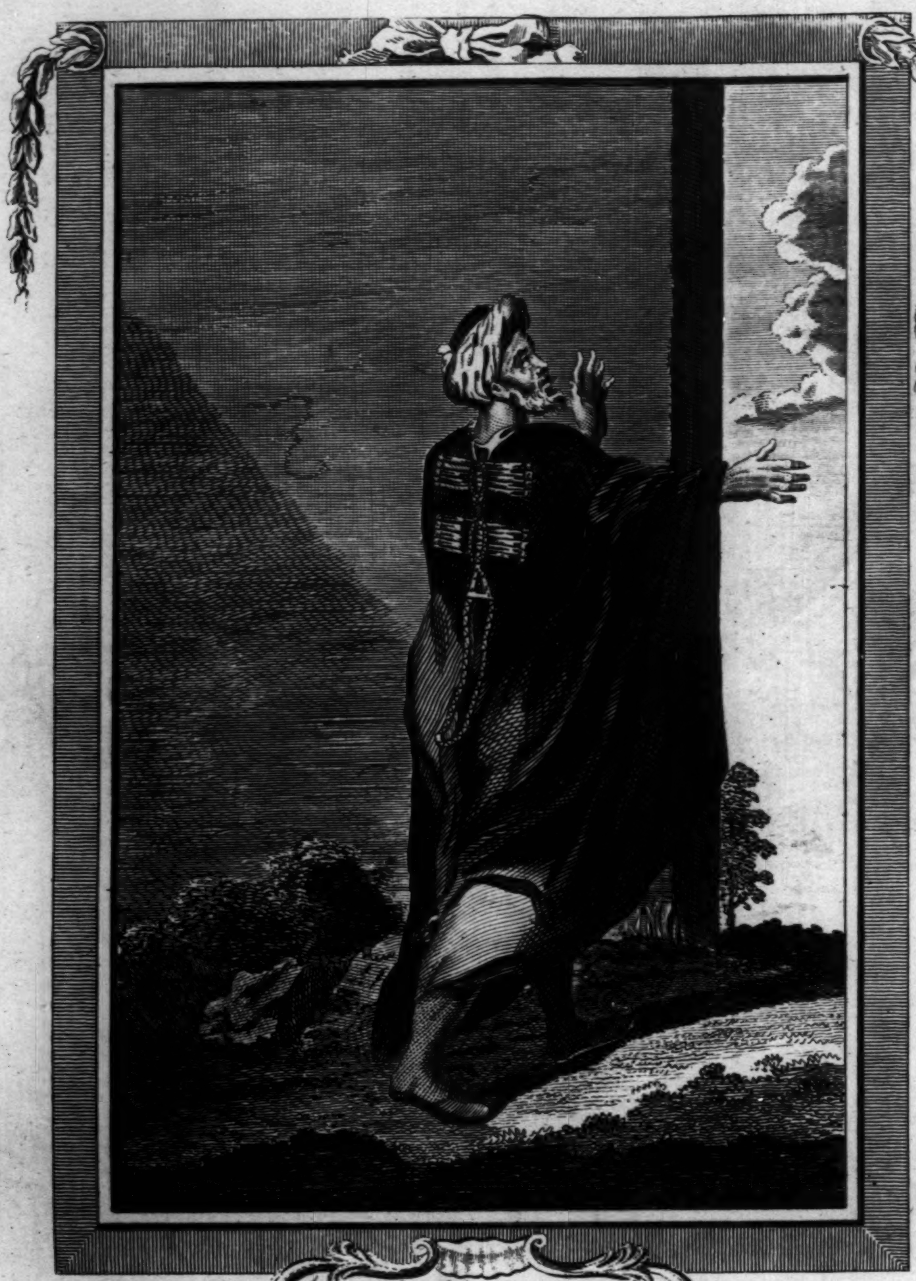
On Friday, the 13th, we were not ready to ſail, but the wind was favourable, and the weather fair. Oedidee was not yet returned from Attahourou, and various reports were circulated concerning him. Some ſaid he was at Matavai; others, that he intended not to return; and there were thoſe who affirmed he was at Oparree. With a view of diſcovering the truth, a party of us repaired to Oparree, where we found him. Towha was alſo here, who, notwithſtanding he was afflicted with a ſwelling in his feet and legs which had taken away the uſe of them, had neverthelefs reſolved to ſee the captain before he ſailed, and had advanced with this intent thus far on his journey. The day being far ſpent, we were obliged to ſhorten our ſtay, and after having ſeen Otoo, we returned on board with Oedidee. This youth, we found, was deſirous of remaining at Otaheite; the captain therefore told him he was at liberty to remain here, or to quit us at Ulietea, or to go with us to England. That if the latter was his choice, he muſt look upon him as his father, as it was very probable he would never return to his own country. The youth threw his arms about his neck, wept much, and ſaid, many of his friends perſuaded him to remain at Otaheite. Oedidee was well beloved in the ſhip; on which account every one was perſuading him to go with us. But Capt. Cook thought it an act of the higheſt injuſtice to take a perſon from theſe iſles, when there was not the leaſt proſpect of his returning, under any promiſe which was not in his power to perform. Indeed, at this time, it was quite unneceſſary, ſeeing many young men offered voluntarily to go with us, nay, even to remain and die in Pretanee, as they call our country. Several of our gentlemen would have taken ſome as ſervants, but Capt. Cook prudently rejected every ſolicitation of this kind, knowing, they would be of little uſe to us in the courſe of the voyage; beſides, what had ſtill greater weight with the captain, was, that he thought himſelf bound to ſee they were afterwards properly taken care of.

On Saturday, the 14th, early in the morning, Oedidee came on board, and Mr. Forſter prevailed upon him to go with us to Ulietea. Towha, Poatatou, Oamo, Happi, Oberea, and many more of our friends paid us a viſit. The wife of Towha was with him, and this chief was hoiſted in, and placed on a chair, on the quarter deck. Among other preſents, we gave the admiral an Engliſh pendant, which, after he had been inſtructed in the uſe of it, pleaſed him more than all the reſt. Soon after theſe friends had left us, we ſaw a number of war canoes coming round the point of Oparree, to which place the captain, accompanied by ſome of our officers and gentlemen, haſtened down, in order to have a nearer view of the fleet. We arrived there before all the canoes were landed, and had an opportunity of obſerving in what manner they approached the ſhore. No ſooner had they got before the place where they intended to land, than they formed themſelves into diviſions, conſiſting of three or more canoes laſhed ſquare and along-ſide of each other; after which each diviſion paddled in for the ſhore, one after another, in ſo judicious a manner, that they formed, and cloſed a line along the ſhore to an inch. The rowers were encouraged by their warriors, and directed by a man who ſtood with a wand in his hand at the head of the middlemoſt veſſel. By words and actions he directed the rowers when all ſhould paddle, and when either the one ſide or the other ſhould ceaſe, &c. for the ſteering paddles were not ſufficient to direct them. They obſerved all theſe motions with ſuch quickneſs, and anſwered ſo exactly, as plainly ſhewed them to be expert in their buſineſs. Mr. Hodges made a drawing of them, as they lay ranged along the ſhore, after which we took a nearer view, by going on board ſeveral of them.

This fleet, which conſiſted of forty ſail, belonged to the little diſtrict of Tettaha, and were come to Oparree, to be reviewed before the king, as the former fleet had been, the manner of whoſe equipment we have already deſcribed, and as that of this fleet was exactly the ſame, a repetition muſt be here needleſs. On this fleet were attending ſome ſmall double canoes, called Marais, having in their fore part a kind of double bed-place laid over with green leaves, each juſt ſufficient to contain one perſon. Theſe they told us were to place their dead upon, their chiefs we ſuppoſe they meant, otherwiſe their ſlain muſt be very ſew. Otoo, at our requeſt, ordered ſome of their troops to go through their exerciſe on ſhore. Two parties firſt began a battle with clubs; they then proceeded to ſingle combat, and exhibited the various methods of fighting with ſurpriſing agility; parrying off the blows and puſhes with great alertneſs and dexterity. Their arms are clubs and ſpears. In uſing the club, all blows aimed at the legs, were evaded by leaping over it, and thoſe deſigned for the head, by couching a little, and leaping on one ſide. The ſpear, which is uſed at times as a dart, was parried, by fixing the point of a ſpear in the ground right before them, holding it in an inclined poſition, more or leſs elevated, according as they ſaw to what part of the body their antagoniſt intended to make a puſh, or to throw his dart at; and by moving the hand a little to the right ot left, either the one or the other was turned off with great eaſe. Theſe combatants had no ſuperfluous dreſs upon them. An unneceſſary piece of cloth or two which they had on when they began the combat, were preſently torn off by ſome of the ſpectators, and given to our gentlemen. This review being over, the fleet departed without any order, as faſt as they could be got a-float; and Otoo conducted us to one of his dock-yards, where the two large pahies, or canoes, were building, each of which was an hundred and eight feet long. They were deſigned to form one joint double canoe, and were almoſt ready for launching. The king begged of the captain a grappling and rope, to which he added an Engliſh jack and pendant, and deſired the Pahie might be called the Britannia. This he readily agreed to, and ſhe was immediately ſo named. When we came to the boat, we found in it a hog, and a turtle of about ſixty pounds weight: this had been put in privately by Otoo's order, that the chiefs about him might not be offended by their being deprived of an entertainment. The king would likewiſe have preſented to us a large ſhark they had priſoner in a creek (ſome of his fins being cut off to prevent his eſcaping) but the excellent pork, and fiſh, with which we were ſuplied at this iſle, had ſpoiled our palates for ſuch rank food. We were accompanied on board by the king, and Tee, his prime miniſter, who after dinner took an affectionate farewell. Otoo had importuned us the whole day, and moſt earneſtly requeſted of us, that we would return to Otaheite. When about to depart, he deſired of the captain to permit a youth, whom he took by the hand, to go in the ſhip to Amſterdam, in order to collect for him red feathers. The youth was very deſirous of going, but as he could not return, the captain, with the view of ſatisfying Otoo, promiſed him, that if any ſhip ſhould be ſent hither from Britain, the important article of red feathers ſhould not be forgotten. The captain, we believe, was diſpoſed to have obliged the king; but it is to be remembered, we had reſolved to carry no one from the iſles (except Oedidee, if he choſe to go) and the captain had juſt refuſed Mr. Forſter the liberty of taking a boy with him, for reaſons already mentioned. But if curioſity excited a deſire in the youth of Otaheite to go with us, the treatment we had met with at this place had induced one of our gunner's mates to remain at it. To this end he had formed a plan, which he knew was not to be executed with ſucceſs while we lay in the bay; and no ſooner were we out, the ſails ſet, and the boats out, than he took the opportunity, being a good ſwimmer, to ſlip overboard. He was diſcovered before he had got clear of the ſhip, and a boat being hoiſted out, preſently returned with the runaway. About midway between us and the ſhore, a canoe was obſerved coming after us, intended without doubt to take him up; for when the people in her ſaw our boat, they ſtood off at a greater diſtance. This we found was a preconcerted plan between the man and ſome of the natives, with which Otoo was acquainted, and had encouraged. The gunner's mate was an Iriſhman by birth, and we had picked him up at Batavia, in our firſt voyage. He had neither friends, nor connexions, to confine him to any particular part of the world, where then could he be ſo happy as at one of theſe iſles? Here he might enjoy in eaſe and plenty, not only the neceſſaries, but the luxuries of life, which leads us, before we leave this celebrated iſland of Otaheite, to give ſome account of its preſent ſtate, eſpecially as it differs much from what it was even eight months ago; and in order to give our ſubſcribers, and numerous readers a more diſtant idea of its ſituation, general figure, extent, and the character of its inhabitants, we muſt beg of them to indulge us with the liberty of a recapitulation of ſeveral things, which have already appeared in detached parts of this work; ſo that the whole may be brought into one view, and its diſtinct heads ranged in their proper order. We have already mentioned the improvements we found in the plains of Oparree and Matavai. The ſame was obſerved in every other part that came under our obſervation. It ſeemed to us almoſt incredible, that ſo many large canoes and houſes could be built in ſo ſhort a ſpace as eight months; but the iron tools which they had got from the Engliſh, and other nations, who have lately touched at the iſland, no doubt, had accelerated the work, and of hands they cannot be in want. The great increaſe in the number of their hogs no leſs excited our admiration; though, probably, they were not ſo ſcarce when we were here before, as we then imagined; as, not chuſing to part with any, they might have conveyed them out of ſight.

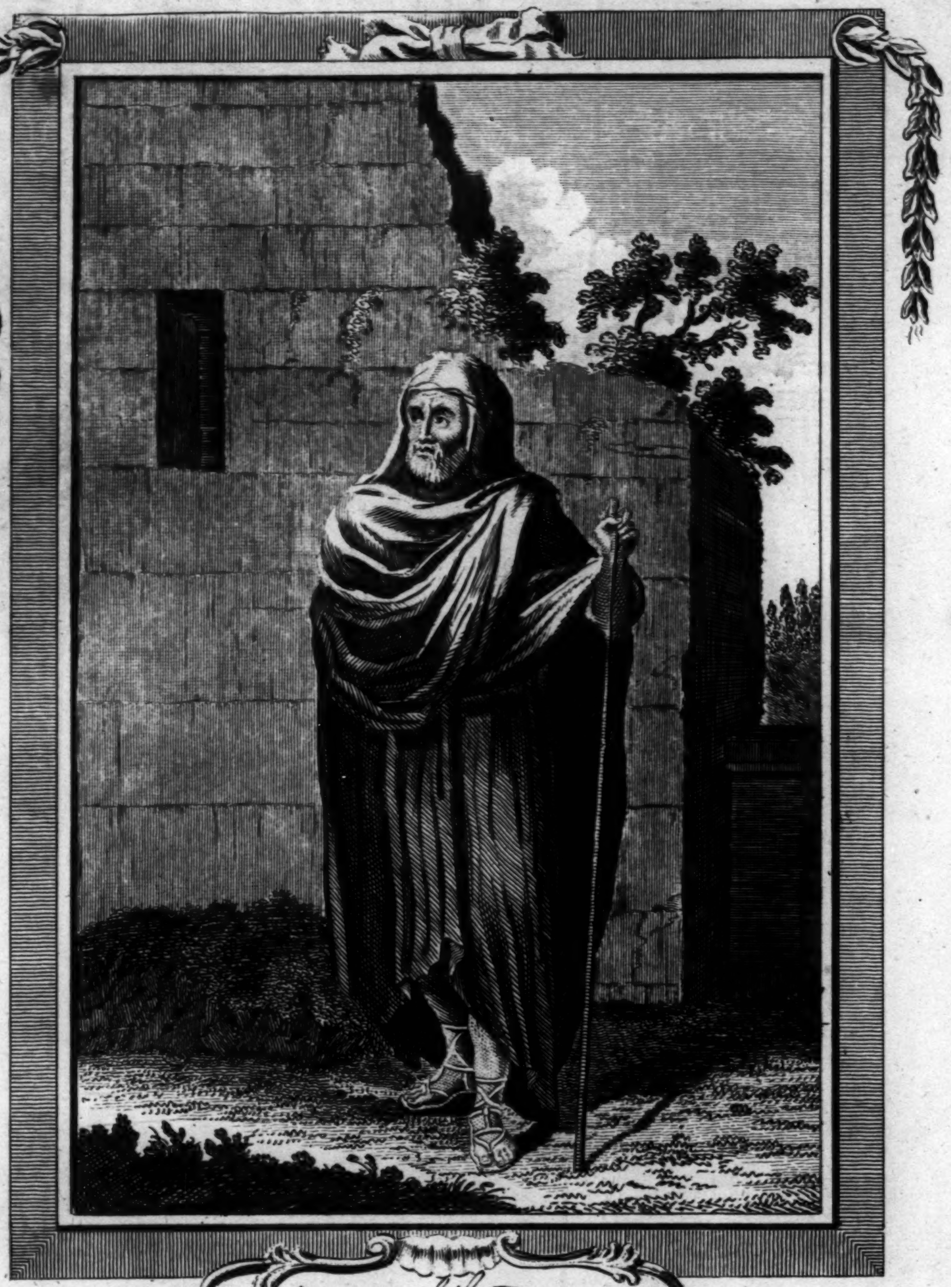
The ſituation of this iſle is perhaps the beſt in the world, being expoſed to none of thoſe viciſſitudes of heat and cold, which are obſerved to have ſo ſenſible an effect on the health and ſpirits of thoſe who live in remoter regions. Its exact poſition is from latitude 17 deg. 28 min. to that of 17 deg. 53 min. S. and from longitude 149 deg. 10 min. to 149 deg. 40 min. W. It lies nearly N. W. and S. E. and is divided into two diſtinct principalities by an iſthmus, or neck of land, and three miles over. The north-weſterly diviſion is, however, much larger, and more fertile, but by no means ſo well cultivated as the ſouth-eaſterly diviſion; which ſhews, that even the defects of nature, if we may be allowed to call them ſo, have their uſe, in prompting men to induſtry and art, to ſupply their wants. The figure of the largeſt peninſula, is nearly circular, being from N. to S. about twenty miles, and from E. to W. about the ſame. The whole is ſurrounded with a reef of rocks. The leſſer peninſula is rather of an oval form, and from the neck of land on the N. W. ſide, to the little iſle of Otooareitte on the S. E. is about twelve miles; but from the mouth of the river Omatea on the ſouth, to that of Owahe on the north, not more than eight. The circumference of the largeſt peninſula is about ſixty miles, of the ſmalleſt about twenty-four; but in ſailing round both, the line will be extended to ninety nearly.

For a particular account of the produce of the iſland, we are indebted no doubt to the indefatigable induſtry of Mr. Banks and Dr. Solander; in whoſe catalogue are the following particulars, namely, bread-fruit, cocoa-nuts, bananas of thirteen ſorts; plantains, a fruit not unlike an apple, which when ripe is very pleaſant; ſweet potatoes, yams, cocoas, a kind of arum; a fruit called by the natives jambu, very delicious; ſugar-cane; a root of the ſaloop kind, called pea; a plant called ethee; a fruit named ahee, not unlike a kidney bean, and which, when roaſted, taſtes like cheſnuts; a tree called wharra, producing a fruit not unlike a pine apple; a ſhrub called nono; the morinda, which alſo produces fruit; a ſpecies of fern; and a plant called ava, of which the roots only are chewed: all theſe, which ſerve the natives for food, the earth produces ſpontaneouſly; beſides which there are a great variety of ſhrubs and plants, which ſerve for various purpoſes of building houſes, veſſels, tools of different kinds, manufactures, dyes, &c. to enumerate which would be tedious. Of four footed animals the iſland produces but few, none having been ſeen by the Europeans on their firſt landing, but hogs, dogs, and rats, of which laſt the inhabitants are very fond. Their wild fowl are ducks only, and the birds that haunt the wood, except ſmall birds, are chiefly pigeons, and paroquets;



A Principal person of Barbary

Morris sculp.



An ARAB of the DESERTS

BRITISH MUSEUM 7 FE 90

BRITISH MUSEUM 7 FE 90

roquets; but with fiſh the coaſt abounds, of which the varieties are numberleſs. Poultry is not in plenty, nor is it ſo well flavoured as what we have in Europe. Here it may be proper to obſerve, that the two goats, which Capt. Furneaux gave to Otoo, when we were laſt here, ſeemed to promiſe fair for anſwering the end for which they were put on ſhore. The ewe ſoon after had two female kids, which were at this time ready to propagate their ſpecies; and the old ewe was again with kid. The natives ſeemed to be very fond of them, and they to like their ſituation; for they were in exceeding good condition. We may therefore reaſonably hope from this circumſtance, that, in a few years, they may be ſpread over all the iſles in this ocean. The ſheep which we left, died in a ſhort time after; but we underſtood one was yet alive. We alſo furniſhed them with a ſtock of cats, not leſs than twenty, beſides what we left at Ulietea and Huaheine.

The natives, particularly the chiefs, are in ſize, rather above the largeſt Europeans. Their food, which is of the ſimpleſt kind, is not ſuch as to promote gluttony, nor their drink, which is chiefly water, calculated to provoke intemperance. Their daily intercourſe with the ocean accuſtoms them from their youth to exerciſe; and the buſineſs of fiſhing, which in northern countries is the moſt laborious of all employments, is by them practiſed as their amuſement. They who have repreſented them as indolent, becauſe nature ſupplies liberally all their wants, have miſtaken their character. Even their chiefs are artiſts, and their houſes, public edifices, canoes, and manufactures, their utenſils, inſtruments of war, working tools, their boats, and fiſhing tackle, are all proofs inconteſtible of their induſtry. Employments of this kind tend to baniſh ſloth; and no perſon was ever known to languiſh with an incurable diſeaſe among them, though it does not appear, that the medical art has yet made any conſiderable progreſs. Much has been ſaid, and in general with ſtrict truth, of the gracefulneſs of their perſons; yet if we were to judge of the whole by Autorou, and Omia, who were brought to England, they might be thought to have little claim to that perfection; yet their chiefs have undoubtedly a comparative dignity; but that compariſon is to be confined at home between prince and peaſant, and not extended to European countries, where grace and dignity are leading characters. Their women differ from each other in perſonal charms as in all other countries; but in ſtature, thoſe of ſuperior rank take eſpecial care to preſerve the family diſtinction. It is not uncommon for ladies of the firſt rank to ſingle out a handſome well-proportioned youth, to prevent degeneracy, when the ſtature of the family is in danger of being reduced; but they are otherwiſe ſcrupulous in nothing ſo much as in mixing with the canaille, and there is ſcarcely an inſtance of their cohabiting indiſcriminately with the lower claſs of people. There is, perhaps, no nation where the pride of anceſtry is carried to a greater height, and yet they have no means of recording their pedigree, but by oral tradition, nor any rule for continuing the line, but what nature has impreſſed upon the mother. Having no ſchools, nothing is to be acquired by education, example is their principal inſtructor and guide; the pattern ſet by the father is followed by the ſon, and what the mother does, that the daughter learns; but that is not to be underſtood to perpetuate huſbandry and arts, as in China, in particular families; for in Otaheite huſbandry and arts are not impoſed as taſks, but are rather amuſements to paſs away time. None are compelled to work, yet all are employed; their ſeveral ſtations chance ſeems to have allotted; and here is no murmuring againſt providence for not being more bountiful. One precaution obſerved among the great in order to give vigour to their chiefs muſt not be omitted, and that is, they never ſuffer an intercourſe between the ſexes till both parties arrive at full maturity. The very reverſe of this is practiſed by the multitude, who in general are as much below the common ſtandard as their chiefs exceed it. They are almoſt all tattowed, women as well as men. In this there ſeems to be ſomething myſtical; the prieſt performs the operation, and the very children are encouraged by example to endure the pain, than which nothing can be more acute. To have a thouſand punctures all at once, with the blood ſtarting at every puncture, is more, one would think, than a child could bear, yet they ſuffer it with a fortitude of which in Europe an inſtance cannot be found. Their hair is almoſt univerſally black. The men wear it long, waving in ringlets down their ſhoulders; but the women cut it ſhort round their ears: both ſexes ſuffer none to grow under their arms; and are very delicate in keeping every part about them ſweet and clean. To this end they frequently bathe, ſeldom ſuffering a day to paſs without going into the water more than once. Indeed they anoint their heads with an oil expreſſed from the cocoa-nut, which ſometimes proves rancid, and emits a diſagreeable ſmell; otherwiſe in their perſons they are without a taint. Mr. Banks ſaid, "that if our ſailors quarrelled with theſe people, they would not agree with angels," which ſufficiently denotes the goodneſs of their diſpoſition. We have mentioned that Waheatoua is related to Otoo. The ſame may be ſaid of the chiefs of Eimeo, Tapamannoo, Huaheine, Ulietea, Otaha, Bolabola, for theſe are all related to the royal family of Otaheite. It is a maxim with the Earees, and others of ſuperior rank, as we have juſt obſerved, never to intermarry with the Toutous, or others of inferior rank; and probably this cuſtom might give riſe to the eſtabliſhment of the claſs called Eareeoies: it is certain theſe ſocieties prevent greatly the increaſe of the ſuperior claſſes of people, of which they are compoſed, and do not interfere with the lower or Toutous; for we never heard of one of theſe being an Earreoy; nor that a Toutou could riſe in life above the rank in which he was placed by his birth.

The cuſtoms of theſe people obſerved in their eating, as our readers muſt have perceived from what has already been ſaid on this ſubject, are very ſingular, and they ſeem to entertain ſome ſuperſtitious notions, not eaſily diſcoverable by ſtrangers. The women are not permitted to eat with the men; not, as it ſhould ſeem, to mark their inferiority, but in conformity to a cuſtom which habit has eſtabliſhed into a law; nor is it uſual for any of them to eat in company, except upon certain days of feſtivity, when great numbers of them aſſemble together. A meſſenger from one of our Engliſh captains found Oberea, the then ſuppoſed queen of the iſland, entertaining a company, which he ſuppoſed could not be leſs than a thouſand. The meſſes were all brought to her by the ſervants, who had prepared them; the meat being put into the ſhells of cocoa-nuts, and the ſhells into wooden trays; and ſhe diſtributed them with her own hands to the gueſts, who were ſeated in rows. This done ſhe ſat down herſelf upon a ſeat ſomewhat elevated above the reſt, and two women placing themſelves, one on each ſide, fed her like a child. When ſhe ſaw the meſſenger, ſhe ordered a meſs for him. They have two ways of dreſſing their animal food, namely, broiling and baking. The firſt is performed over hot ſtones, without any other contrivance than that of placing the meat upon the clean ſtones, and when done enough on one ſide, they turn it, and broil the other. Their manner of baking is very ſingular and curious. They firſt dig a hole in the ground, in depth and demenſions proportioned to the thing they have to dreſs; they then place a layer of wood at bottom, and over that a layer of ſtones, and ſo alternately a layer of wood and a layer of ſtones, till the hole is full; the fire is then kindled, and the ſtones made hot; this done they take out the fire, and placing the ſtones that are leaſt heated one beſide the other at the bottom of the hole, they cover them with freſh leaves; and on theſe they put the meat intended to be baked; then after laying another layer of green leaves, they fill up the hole with the remaining hot ſtones, and cloſe the whole with the mould that was firſt dug out of the pit. In this ſituation the meat is ſuffered to remain for three or four hours; and when taken out is then ſo ſavoury, as not to be exceeded by the beſt European cookery. Almoſt all the fleſh and fiſh eaten by the chiefs in the iſland is dreſſed in one or the other of the above two ways: the latter is moſt in uſe among the gentry; and the former among the commonalty, who ſometimes indeed eat their fiſh without dreſſing. Tables they have none, and thoſe of the higheſt quality dine on the ground under the ſhade of a ſpreading tree; freſh green leaves ſerve them for a cloth, and a baſket which is ſet down by them holds their proviſion; theſe, and two cocoa-nuts, one filled with ſalt water, the other with freſh, complete the whole preparation for a meal. When this is done, they waſh their hands and mouths, and then, if nothing calls them abroad, they uſually lay themſelves down to ſleep. It was long before any of them could be perſuaded to eat with Europeans, and they certainly, like the Jews, have ſome ſuperſtitious ceremonies to be obſerved in the preparation of the food they eat, which, if omitted, renders it unclean, or they would not have continued ſcrupulous ſo long. Even the food of their women is differently prepared from that of the men; and if touched by unhallowed hands, is accounted unfit for uſe. Some of the gentlemen, when invited to their houſes, eat out of the ſame baſket, and drank out of the ſame cup, with their hoſts; but it was obſerved, that the elderly women were always offended with this liberty; and if they happened to touch the victuals of any of the antient matrons, or even the baſket that held it, they never failed to expreſs their diſlike, and to throw it away; nor could the women of faſhion ever be perſuaded to eat with the gentlemen, when dining in company: but what ſeems moſt ſtrange, and hardly to be accounted for, they would go, five or ſix in company, into the ſervants apartments, and eat heartily of whatever they could find; nor did they ſeem in the leaſt diſconcerted, if they were diſcovered; yet it was not eaſy to perſuade any of them when alone, in private with a gentlemen, to eat with him, nor would they ever do it but under the moſt ſolemn promiſes of ſecrecy.

Their amuſements are various, ſuch as muſic, dancing, wreſtling, ſhooting with the bow, darting their lances, ſwimming, rowing, and ſlinging of ſtones. Their muſic it muſt be confeſſed is very imperfect, conſiſting only of a flute and drum, yet with theſe, companies go about the country, and frequent their feſtivals, being in equal eſtimation with them as maurice dancers were formerly with us, and the diverſion they make is not unſimilar. In ſhooting the long bow, or in throwing the lance, they by no means excel; neither are they very dexterous at wreſtling; but at throwing ſtones, and ſwimming, they are perhaps equal to any people upon earth. Among other diverſions, they have their heivas, nearly correſponding with our Engliſh wakes. The young people meet together to dance and to make merry; and at theſe times their minſtrels and players conſtantly attend, as formerly perſons of the ſame character were wont to do all over England, and in ſome counties the veſtiges of that antient cuſtom remain to this day. At theſe heivas, however, their female performers, in their dances, have no regard to decency; and though the ſame end was no doubt in view in the inſtitution of the wake and heiva, yet what in England was concerted with the utmoſt ſecrecy, is publickly avowed and practiſed in Otaheite. But though the inſtrumental muſic of the Otaheiteans is much confined, their vocal muſic is by no means contemptible; yet in the ſweetneſs of the voice conſiſts all the melody, for they have no rules to regulate the tones. Their ſongs are accompanied with words of their own compoſing, which they can vary into long and ſhort verſes, ſprightly or ſolemn, as occaſion preſents; and as their language is exceeding harmonious and muſical, a ſtranger is no leſs delighted with the arranteſt nonſenſe, than he would be with the moſt ſublime compoſition. The heivas are indiſcriminately frequented by all ranks of people; but there is ſtill a more exceptionable meeting held by thoſe of high rank, to which ſuch only are admitted who are properly initiated. Theſe people form a diſtinct ſociety, in which every woman is common to every man; and at their meetings, which are diſtinguiſhed by the name of Arreoy, the ſports they practiſe are beyond imagination wanton. We may trace ſomewhat like this in the hiſtory of the antient inhabitants of our own iſland. Perhaps it would be no exaggeration to add, that in the city of London, there are as many men as the whole iſland of Otaheite contains, who devote themſelves entirely to the pleaſures of ſenſuality, and who attach themſelves to no one woman, but enjoy indiſcriminately all they may; and that there are an equal number of women to be met with, who are at all times ready to gratify their deſires.

Dreſs, among the ladies of Otaheite, ſeems to be as much ſtudied, as in more civilized nations. However, neither the feet nor legs, even of the quality, have any covering, or any defence from the ground, or the ſcorching heat of the ſun, which at ſome ſeaſons is very intenſe: but they are very nice in ornamenting their heads, and in ſhading their faces. That part of their head-dreſs, in which they pride themſelves moſt, is threads of human hair, ſo delicately plaited, that it is not unuſual for them to have garlands of this manufacture wound round their heads; the plaits whereof being interwove with flowers have a very pretty effect, and are exceedingly becoming to young faces. In their ears they wear ornaments, which, before the European beads, conſiſted of bone, tortoiſhell, or any thing ſhining and ſhewy. The other part of their dreſs is very ſimple; being a piece of cloth about a yard and a half wide, and between three and four yards long, having a hole cut in the middle, juſt big enough to let the head paſs eaſily through; this flows round them, and covers them a little below the waiſt; from thence a large quantity of the ſame cloth is gathered in folds, and tied round them as we tie a cravat round the neck, which, being drawn into a large knot, is again ſpread out, and flows artleſsly down before, nearly as low as the knees, while the greateſt quantity of the cloth falls down behind, in appearance not unlike the dreſs of the Roman orators. This habit is far from being ungraceful, and there is little difference between that of the ſexes, except that the lower garments of the men are nearly of an equal length before and behind. The cloth they wear is of very different textures. What is worn in dry weather is no other than paper made of the rinds of trees; but that which they put on when it rains is more ſubſtantial, and is properly a kind of matting incomparably plaited. The ſhape of their cloathing, like that of our own, is nearly the ſame from the prince to the peaſant, the only diſtinctions being the quantity worn, and the colour; the lower claſs of people wearing only one ſingle garment; the better ſort as many as, were they made of broad cloth, would burden them to carry. One thing, however, appears ſingular. When they ſalute each other, they conſtantly unbare themſelves from the waiſt upwards, throwing off their tunics, as we may call them, with the ſame eaſe, and for the ſame purpoſe, as we pull off our hats. This ſalutation is common to the women as well as the men, and is the univerſal practice. We have occaſionally mentioned how fond the people of Otaheite are of red feathers, which they call Oora; and theſe are as highly valued here as jewels are in Europe; eſpecially what they call Oravine, which grow on the head of the green paroquet; and though all red feathers pleaſe, none are eſteemed equally with theſe. They are ſuch good judges as to know very well how to diſtinguiſh one ſort from another; and many of our people attempted in vain to deceive them with other feathers dyed red. Theſe ornaments of dreſs are made up in little bunches, conſiſting of eight or ten, and fixed to the end of a ſmall cord about three or four inches long, which is made of the outſide fibres of the cocoa-nut, twiſted ſo hard that it is like a wire, and ſerves as a handle to the bunch. When compoſed in this manner, they are uſed as ſymbols of the Eatuas, or divinities, in all their religious ceremonies. Sometimes they hold one of theſe bunches, and at others, only two or three feathers between the fore-finger and thumb, and ſay a prayer, not one word of which we could underſtand. Whoever makes a voyage to this iſland, will do well to provide himſelf with red feathers, the fineſt and ſmalleſt that are to be got. He muſt alſo have a good ſtock of axes and hatchets, ſpike-nails, files, knives, looking-glaſſes, beads, and eſpecially ſheets and ſhirts, which our gentlemen found the ladies very deſirous of having.

The arts in the iſland of Otaheite may be reduced to five, namely, architecture, carving, ſhip-building, navigation, and painting. Of their architecture there is one remarkable ſpecimen exiſting in the greater iſland, which is the Morai, or ſepulchral monument of Oberea. It is a prodigious pile of ſtone 267 feet long, and 87 wide at the baſe, raiſed by flights of ſteps to the height of 44 feet. Theſe ſteps are each four feet high, narrowing gradually, till they end in a ſmall entablature, on which near the middle ſtands the figure of a bird carved in wood; and at ſome diſtance the broken fragments of a fiſh cut in ſtone. This pile makes a conſiderable part of one ſide of a ſquare court, whoſe area is 360 feet by 354, incloſed within a ſtone wall, and paved with the ſame materials through its whole extent. As this ſquare is ſurrounded with trees, and has many growing within it of a particular kind, it forms at a diſtance the moſt delightful grove that imagination can paint. At what time it was erected could not be learnt, for they have no records of paſt tranſactions; but being conſtructed of coral ſtones, many of large dimenſions, neatly ſquared and poliſhed, and ſo nicely joined as hardly to diſcover a ſeam, it muſt fill the mind of a nice obſerver with admiration and rapture, while he examines all its parts. To think how ſuch a maſs of materials could be brought together in an iſland wherein no quarries are to be found; how theſe materials could be cut with ſuch exactneſs, as to form a pile by rain, without cement, and that with tools little harder than the ſubſtance to which they were applied; and, laſtly, how theſe enormous blocks of ſtone could afterwards be raiſed to the height of 44 feet, to cloſe and cover in the building, muſt ſurely excite the wonder of every ordinary beholder; but to mark the ſymmetry of the whole, ſo juſtly proportioned in every part, as to diſplay the moſt conſummate judgment, muſt afford a feaſt to an enlightened mind, of which an ordinary ſeamen can have no reliſh. This noble ſtructure, and ſtrong proof of genius, will remain the admiration of all who may have the pleaſure of ſeeing it, perhaps, as long as the iſland itſelf ſhall endure; for being ſolid, and without a cavity, no time, that will not equally affect the iſland, can deſtroy it. Of their carving in ſtone there are but very few ſpecimens to be produced, and indeed, when their tools they have to work with are conſidered, it is more to be admired, that there are any, than that there are ſo few; but we have reaſon to hope, that now they are made acquainted with the uſe of iron, and have conſiderable quantities of that metal among them, that their improvements will ſpeedily be proportioned to their advantages, and the acuteneſs of their underſtanding. But of their carving in wood, we ſaw not a tool, or ordinary utenſil, that did not diſcover evident proofs of their expertneſs in this art. Their veſſels for navigation are all adorned with it; and in ſome of their performances an excellence is diſcernible, which, with ſuch tools as they have to work with, no European carver could exceed. With regard to their ſhip-building, they are upon a footing with their neighbours, if not at preſent ſuperior to them. Their ordinary veſſels are well adapted to the ſeas they have to navigate, and we never heard of a ſingle inſtance of one of them being caſt away. Moſt of them are elevated at the head and ſtern, for the purpoſe of defending the rowers from the ſurf, which on theſe iſlands breaks upon the ſhore with uncommon violence. Thoſe of Otaheite are in form not unlike the punt boats, with flat bottoms, ſuch as are uſed by our fiſhermen on the river Thames, or rather like thoſe uſed for the ſame purpoſe on the Severn: they are no where wider than three feet, though ſome of them are more than 60 feet long; nor are they an inch deeper in the body, though at the head and ſtern they riſe with a curvature more than 12 feet. As it would be impoſſible to navigate theſe veſſels, ſo long, and ſo narrow, without ſome contrivance to keep them upright, they place two of them as near as can be of the ſame dimenſions, along-ſide of each other, at three, four, or five feet diſtance, and with ſtrong ſpars join them together; then raiſing a maſt in each, they hoiſt a ſquare ſail, the yards of which are faſtened above and below to the correſponding maſts, and thus equipt, with a cabbin erected between them to ſtow their proviſions, they will keep the ſea for ſeveral days. In rigging their double canoes, they have a rule for proportioning the height of the maſts to the length of the keel, and of fitting the ſail to the height of the maſt; they likewiſe have a contrivance of ſailing in ſingle canoes by means of out-riggers, which project on the lee-ſide of the veſſel, and prevents their over-ſetting: to this out-rigger one corner of the ſail is made faſt, which ſail being wide at the bottom, and rounding to a point at the top, very much reſembles what the boatmen call a ſhoulder of mutton ſail, frequently ſeen on the river Thames. To thoſe who have been told, that the maſon can joint with ſo much nicety as to be impervious to water, it will not ſeem ſtrange that their carpenters can do the ſame with reſpect to timber; yet it certainly muſt require much art, and incredible labour, firſt to fell the tree, then to cleave it out into planks, then to hollow it out into the intended ſhape; next to ſmooth and poliſh it, after that to joint it, and laſt of all to put it together, and ſaw it; for they were wholly ignorant of the art of bolting it with wooden bolts, or jointing it together by means of mortices, till the Europeans viſited them. It is no wonder, therefore, that they dreaded nothing ſo much as the deſtruction of their boats, when threatened by the Engliſh for any offence, nor that they ſhould be more careful in covering their boat-houſes from the ſun and rain, than they are in ſecuring their dwellings from the ſame injury. As the whole art of navigation depends upon their minutely obſerving the motions of the heavenly bodies, it is aſtoniſhing with what exactneſs their navigators can deſcribe the motions, and changes of thoſe luminaries. There was not a ſtar in the hemiſphere, fixed, or erratic, but Tupia could give a name to, tell when, and where, it would appear, and diſappear; and, what was ſtill more wonderful, he could tell, from the aſpect of the heavens, the changes of the wind, and the alterations of the weather, ſeveral days before they happened. By this intelligence he had been enabled to viſit moſt of the iſlands for many degrees round that of which he was a native. By the ſun they ſteer in the day, and by the ſtars in the night; and by their ſkill in preſaging the weather, they can, without danger, lengthen or ſhorten their voyage as appearances are for or againſt them. Having no medium wherewith to trade, their voyages ſeem wholly calculated for diſcovery, or to increaſe their acquaintance with other nations. Riches they do not ſeem ſolicitous to acquire. They certainly interchange their commodities among themſelves, as well as with ſtrangers; the fiſherman barters his fiſh for the planter's bread-fruit, and ſo of the reſt; yet every man ſeems to be a fiſherman, and every man a planter: this ſhews, that we are ſtill ſtrangers to their civil œconomy. It had been good policy to have ſuffered two or three young perſons, who were deſirous of ſtaying behind, to have ſettled among them, eſpecially, as there was reaſon to believe, that the iſland would again be viſited, if for no other reaſon than to reſtore to them the native who had voluntarily undertaken a voyage to Europe; but againſt this Capt. Cook ſeems to have been carefully guarded. With reſpect to the art of painting among theſe people, to us it appeared to be in a rude ſtate, being chiefly confined to the figures repreſented on their bodies, and the ornaments on their canoes. The figures on their bodies are generally thoſe of birds and fiſhes, ſometimes after nature, and ſometimes the effuſions of fancy; but whatever is repreſented, the outline is traced with ſurprizing exactneſs. This art is ſolely confined to the

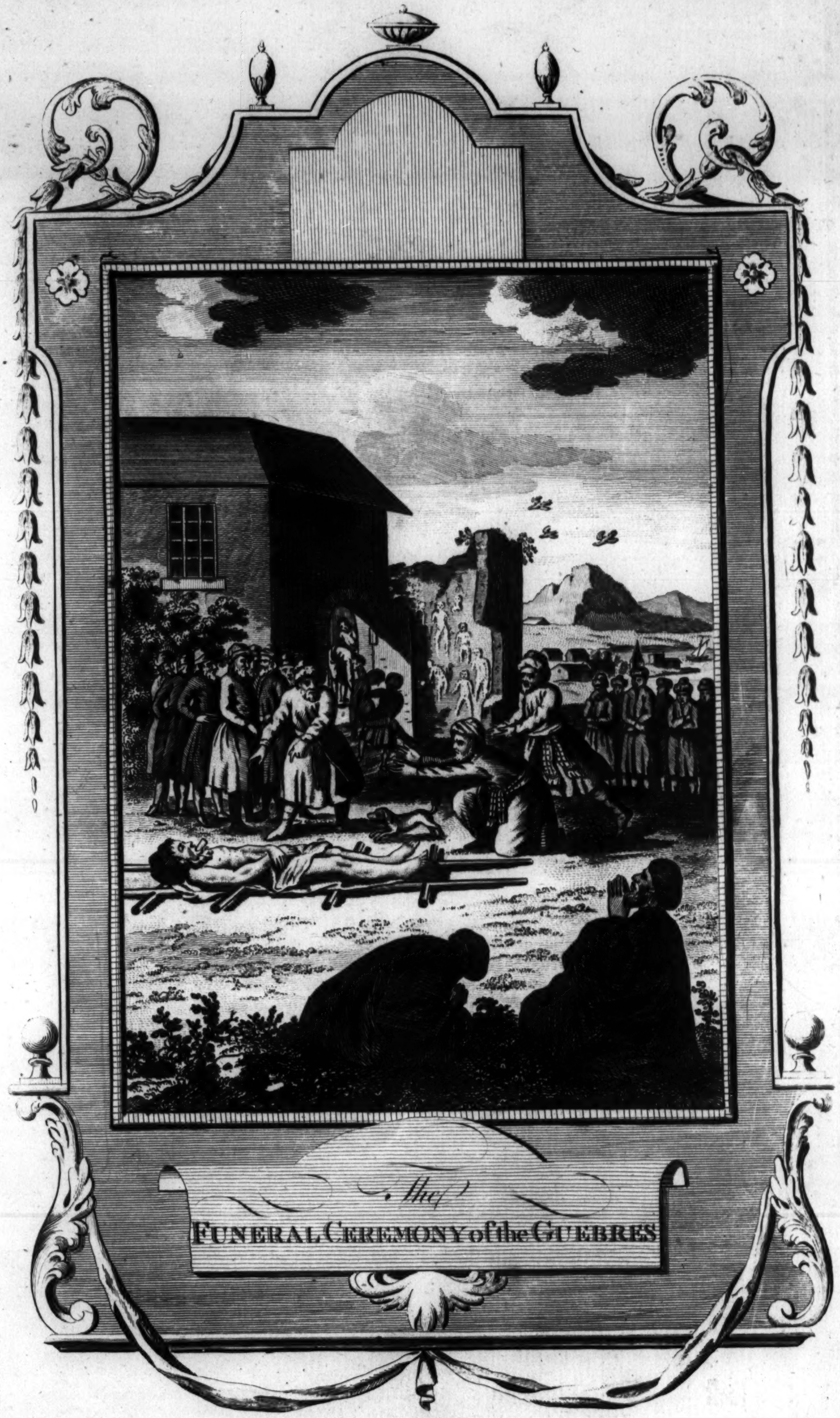
Prieſthood, and is performed like baptiſm as a rite, without which, after a certain age, none are accounted worthy of ſociety. From twelve to fourteen is the period allotted for the performance of this rite, for before that age children are thought unable to endure the ſmart. The other ſort of painting in uſe among theſe iſlanders may be rather called daubing, conſiſting only in colouring the rude carvings in their pleaſure boats, &c. ſometimes with one colour, ſometimes with another, but moſt commonly with red. We ſhall cloſe this head with a few remarks on their marine force, or war canoes, conſidered as their grand fleet. Capt. Cook when laſt at Otaheite conceived rather an unfavourable opinion of Otoo's capacity and talents; but the rapid improvements ſince made in the iſland convinced us, that he muſt be a man of good parts; and it is certain that he has ſome judicious, ſenſible men about him, who have a great ſhare in the government: but we cannot ſay how far his power extends as king, nor how far he can command the aſſiſtance of the other chiefs, or is controulable by them: this however is certain, that all have contributed towards bringing the iſle to its preſent flouriſhing ſtate: yet we found it not without diviſions among their great men. The king told us, that Towha, the admiral, and Poatatou, were not his friends. Theſe being two leading chiefs, Otoo muſt have been jealous of them on account of their great power; yet on every occaſion he ſeemed to court their intereſt. We are inclined to think they raiſed by far the greateſt number of veſſels and men, to go againſt Eimeo, and were to be the two commanders in the expedition, which, according to common report, was to take place five days after our departure. Waheatoua, king of Tiarabou, was to join this fleet to that of Otoo, and that young prince was to be one of the commanders. One would think ſo ſmall an iſland as Eimeo, would have endeavoured to ſettle matters by negotiation rather than reſiſt the united force of thoſe two powerful nations; yet nothing was heard or talked of but fighting. Towha ſaid more than once, that he ſhould die in the action. Oedidee thought the battle would be fought at ſea; but we thought it moſt probable, that the people of Eimeo would remain at home on the defenſive, as we were informed they did about five or ſix years ago, when attacked by the people of Tiarabou, whom they repulſed. We were told, that five general officers were to command in this expedition, of which number Otoo was one; and, if they named them in order according to the poſts they held, Otoo was only the third in command; which ſeems probable enough; for he being but a young man he could not have ſufficient experience to be commander in chief, where the greateſt ſkill and judgment ſeemed to be neceſſary. Capt. Cook was diſpoſed to have ſtaid five or ſix days longer, had he been ſure the expedition would have taken place in that time, but it ſeemed they wanted us to be gone firſt. It was ſometimes reported that it would not be undertaken before ten moons; as if it was neceſſary to have that time to put every thing in order. For ſeveral days before we ſailed, Otoo and the other chiefs had ceaſed to ſolicit our alliance and aſſiſtance, which they were continually doing at firſt; and after Capt. Cook had aſſured Otoo, that if they got their fleet ready in time he would ſail with them down to Eimeo, we heard no more of it. Probably they thought it more political to be without us, knowing it was in our power to beſtow the victory on whom we pleaſed. Be this as it may, they undoubtedly wanted us to be gone before they undertook any thing; and thus we were deprived, much againſt our inclination, of ſeeing the whole fleet aſſembled on this occaſion, and, perhaps of being ſpectators of a well conducted engagement at ſea. What number of veſſels were appointed for this grand expedition we could not learn. We heard of no more than two hundred and ten, beſides a number of ſmall canoes for tranſports, and the allied fleet of Tiarabou, the ſtrength of which we could not gain the leaſt intelligence: nor could we learn the number of men neceſſary to man this fleet. Whenever the queſtion was aſked, the anſwer was Warou, warou, warou te Tata, that is many, many, men. Allowing forty to each war canoe, and four to each of the others, which is a moderate computation, and the number will amount to nine thouſand; an aſtoniſhing number, if we conſider they were to be raiſed in only four diſtricts, and one of them, namely, Matavai, did not equip a fourth part of the fleet. That of Tiarabou is not included in this account; and many other diſtricts might be arming which we knew nothing of; yet we think the whole iſland of Otaheite did not arm on this occaſion, for we ſaw not any preparations making at Oparree. We believe that the chief, or chiefs, of each diſtrict, ſuperintended the equipping of the fleet belonging to that diſtrict; after which they muſt paſs in review before the king, who by this means knows the ſtate of the whole intended to go on ſervice. The number of war canoes belonging to Attahourou and Ahopata is an hundred and ſixty; to Tettaha forty; to Matavai ten; now if we ſuppoſe every diſtrict in the iſland, of which there are forty-three, to raiſe and equip the ſame number of war canoes as Tettaha, according to this eſtimate, the whole iſland can raiſe and equip one thouſand ſeven hundred and twenty war canoes, and ſixty-eight thouſand able men, allowing forty to each canoe; and ſeeing theſe cannot amount to above one third part of the number of both ſexes, children included, the whole iſland cannot contain leſs than two hundred and four thouſand inhabitants. This at firſt ſight exceeded our belief; but when, upon a review of this calculation, we conſidered the vaſt ſwarms of natives which appeared wherever we went, we were convinced our eſtimate was not much, if at all too great. There cannot, in our opinion, be a ſtronger proof of the richneſs and fertility of Otaheite (not forty leagues, or 120 miles, in circuit) than that of its ſupporting ſuch a number of warriors and warlike inhabitants, all artiſts, and poſſeſſed of a fleet both their glory and defence. Such is the preſent ſtate of the arts in this celebrated iſland, which, had Tupia lived to have come to England, and to have returned again to his own country, would, no doubt, have received ſtill more rapid improvements; for he was a man of real genius, a prieſt of the firſt order, and an excellent artiſt. His boy Tayota was the darling of the Endeavour's crew, being of a mild and docile diſpoſition, ready to do any kind office for the meaneſt in the ſhip; never complaining, but always pleaſed. They both died much lamented at Batavia, the occaſion of which has been related in its proper place.

The manufactures of Otaheite are of various kinds; that of cloth is in the higheſt eſtimation among them. The material of which one ſort is made is neither ſpun, nor woven in a loom, but in every reſpect is prepared after the firſt ſimple manner of making paper before mills were applied to facilitate the labour. The bark is firſt ſtripped from the tree and laid in the water, as we do flax, to ſoak: it is then diveſted of the rind by ſcraping, till only the fibres of the inſide remain. When properly cleanſed, it is placed upon leaves, one layer by the ſide of another, till it is of ſufficient breadth; and in the ſame manner it is extended to what length the manufacturer chuſes, or the ground will admit; and to ſtrengthen it and increaſe its breadth, one layer is laid over another till it is of the ſubſtance required. This done, it is left to drain, and when juſt dry enough to be raiſed from the ground, it is placed upon a kind of ſtage, made of ſmooth boards, and beat with a ſquare beater about a foot long, and two or three inches broad. On each of the four ſides of this beater parallel lines are cut lengthwiſe: theſe lines differ in fineneſs, in a proportion from ſmall twine to a ſilken thread. They firſt begin with the coarſeſt ſide of the beater, and finiſh with the fineſt. By the continual application of this beater, in which two people are continually employed, who ſtand oppoſite to each other, on each ſide of the ſtage, and regulate their ſtrokes like ſmiths on an anvil, the cloth, if cloth it may be called, in its rough ſtate thins apace, and as it thins, it of courſe increaſes in breadth. When it has undergone this proceſs, it is then ſpread out to whiten, which when ſufficiently done, it is delivered to the ladies, whoſe province is to look it carefully over, and to remove all blemiſhes. Thus far completed, it is coloured, generally red or yellow, after which it is rolled and laid up for uſe. By this proceſs the reader will readily comprehend in what manner the fabric may be varied into fine or coarſe, according to the materials of which it is made, and the labour beſtowed upon it. In Otaheite the bark of three different trees is made uſe of in this manufacture; the Chineſe paper mulberry, the bread-fruit tree, and the wild fig-tree. Of the firſt and ſecond the fineſt ſorts are made; but of the laſt, the moſt durable. The firſt and ſecond imbibe water like paper, but the latter will reſiſt the rain. They have a method of waſhing this cloth, after it has been worn, and when waſhed it is again beaten; by this laſt proceſs it is rendered very ſoft and pliable. Another conſiderable manufacture is that of matting, made likewiſe of the rinds of plants and ſhrubs, which are worked to a degree of fineneſs not to be equalled by any thing of the kind known in Europe. Of this manufacture are made their ſails, the covering of their beds, and their cloathing in rainy weather. Their cordage is another conſiderable article, which is made of the rind of a plant not unlike a wild nettle. In this manufacture they likewiſe excel, but we do not learn that any of it was purchaſed for the ſhip's uſe. Their lines made for fiſhing are much ſuperior to any thing of the kind uſed in Europe, being ſtronger and infinitely more durable. Their fiſhing nets have the ſame advantages; but the cords made of human hair, which the ladies wind round their heads, and which, like netting, is the chief amuſement of the ladies there, is incomparably beyond any thing that can be conceived in twiſting. Mr. Banks is ſaid to have had in his poſſeſſion a ſpecimen of it, near two thouſand yards in length, and as fine as our fineſt thread, not having one knot, or apparent joining, neither have they any engine to aſſiſt them in the performance, but all is done by the hand, and with a quickneſs that almoſt exceeds belief. They have likewiſe a manufacture of baſket, or wicker work, of which every native is a proficient; and as they have a kind of emulation in excelling in this kind of work, it is not to be wondered at, that there ſhould be as many different forms, as there are different makers, ſome of them incomparably neat. But among the curioſities of this kind, that which was moſt admired by the Endeavour's people, when at this iſle, was the figure of a man upwards of ſeven feet high, repreſented in baſket work, which they imagined was a repreſentation of one of their deities. This wicker ſkeleton was completely covered with feathers, white where the ſkin was to appear, and black in thoſe parts which it is their cuſtom to paint or ſtain, and upon the head, where there was to be a repreſentation of hair. Upon the head were four protuberances, three in front, and one behind, which the natives called Tate-etee, or little men. Other manufactures of leſs account, yet not unworthy of notice, are their weapons of war, which ſeem to be the workmanſhip of the owners, their fiſhing tackle of various ſorts, their working tools, and their jewelery; but in this laſt it cannot be expected, conſidering their tools, they ſhould have any ſcope to diſplay or exerciſe their ingenuity.

We come now to ſpeak of their civil government, of which we have it not in our power to give our readers a diſtinct and perfect idea. This iſland of Otaheite made formerly but one kingdom; how long it has been divided into two we cannot pretend to ſay, we believe not long. The kings of Tiarabou, are a branch of the family of Opoureonu; at preſent the two are nearly related, and we believe the former is, in ſome meaſure, dependent on the latter. Otoo is ſtiled Earee de hie of the whole iſland; and we were told, that Waheatoua, the king of Tiarabou, muſt uncover before him, in the ſame manner as the loweſt order of his ſubjects do. This homage is not only paid to Otoo, but to Tarevatou, his brother, and his ſecond ſiſter, to the one as heir, and to the other as heir apparent. We have ſometimes ſeen the Eowas and Whannos covered before the king, but whether by courteſy or by virtue of their office, we could not learn. Theſe men, who are the principal perſons about the king, and form his court, are generally, if not always his relations. Tee, ſo often mentioned in this narrative, was one of them. The Eowas, who hold the firſt rank, attend in turns, a certain number each day, ſo that they may be called lords in waiting. We ſeldom found Tee abſent, and his attendance was neceſſary, as being beſt able to negotiate matters between Capt. Cook and the chiefs; on this ſervice he was always employed, and he executed the ſame, we have reaſon to believe, to the ſatisfaction of both parties. The Eowas and Whannos always eat with the king; nor do we know of any one being excluded from this privilege, but the Toutous; for as to the women, as we have already obſerved, they never eat with the men, let their rank be ever ſo much elevated. Notwithſtanding theſe eſtabliſhed orders, there was very little about Otoo's perſon or court, whereby a ſtranger could diſtinguiſh the king from the ſubject. We rarely ſaw him dreſſed in any thing but a common piece of cloth wrapped round his loins; ſo that he ſeemed to avoid all outward pomp, and even to demean himſelf more than any of his Earees around him. We have ſeen his majeſty work at a paddle, in coming to and going from the ſhip, in common with others in the boat; and even when ſome of his Toutous ſat looking on; and ſuch is the uncontrouled liberty of this happy iſle, that every individual has free acceſs to him without the leaſt ceremony; hence it is, that the Earees and other chiefs are more beloved than feared by the bulk of the people. We ſhould think ourſelves happy in knowing more of this mild and equal government, than the general out-line; for as to the orders of the conſtituent parts, how conſtructed, diſpoſed, and connected, ſo as to form one body politic, we can ſay but little. From what we have been able to diſcover, and gather from information, it ſeems very evidently to be of the feudal kind; and a remarkable conformity appears between the political eſtabliſhment of Otaheite, and that of the antient Britons, which conſiſted of ſeveral ſmall nations, under ſeveral petty princes, or chiefs, who in caſes of common danger united under one head. Theſe chiefs had all of them their reſpective families, who multiplying, became a diſtinct claſs from the common people, and preſerved by their perſonal courage, and lenity, a very great influence over them. Of theſe two claſſes, added to that of the prieſthood, the whole body politic conſiſted; ſo that among them, what one claſs found neceſſary to command, the other was ready to execute. Hence it was that induſtry took place, and arts were invented; and this ſeems to be the preſent ſtate of the iſlanders of whom we are now ſpeaking. Laws they had none, but ſuch as aroſe from the idea of ſuperiority and ſubmiſſion, ſuch as excite parents to correct the faults of their children; neither have the Otaheiteans any other at this day. There is no crime among them that ſubjects a man to death, and when life is take away, it is always in the heat of paſſion or reſentment, and not the effect of formal accuſation and deliberate puniſhment. The contentions that aroſe among the chiefs became the quarrels of the whole community, and thoſe quarrels neceſſarily led the parties to have recourſe to arms, and in proportion as the contentions grew more frequent, the weapons that were contrived for defence, grew more deſperate. It was not, however, till after civilization took place, that contentions for liberty began to ſpread devaſtation among people of the ſame community. In their primary ſtate of ſubjection, the people never entertained a thought that they were in ſlavery; they obeyed as children do their parents, from a principle originating in nature, which induces the weak to ſubmit to the ſtrong, and thoſe of uninformed underſtanding to be governed by thoſe whoſe wiſdom and courage they readily acknowledge. This, in our opinion, is an impartial and juſt repreſentation of the ſtate of the civil government in Otaheite, wherein none think themſelves ſlaves, yet few are free.

As to the religion of this people, we are as much at a loſs for materials to form an opinion on this ſubject as former navigators. The little information we have hitherto received is ſo vague and contradictory, that nothing with certainty can be ſaid about it. We have ſaid they have idols, yet they appear not to be idolaters; that they have places of worſhip, yet never aſſemble in congregations to pay adoration; that they acknowledge deities of ſeveral orders, but that they have no forms of addreſſing them; and that they mutter ſomewhat like extemporary prayers, yet have no oratories, or forms of devotion, nor any ſet times for private or public worſhip. They have prieſts likewiſe of ſeveral orders, who have different offices aſſigned; but few of thoſe offices are particularized, except that they preſide and pray at funerals, and are the principal attendants at their Morais, or burying places; though it does not appear that any ceremonies of devotion are performed there. The offices that have been obſerved as appertaining to the prieſthood are three, namely, circumciſing, tattowing, and praying at the funerals of the dead. That of circumciſing is not performed after the manner of the Jews, but after a peculiar manner of their own, and has no doubt the purity of the circumciſed for its object, in bringing every part about them into contact with the water, with which they conſtantly waſh three times every day. Tattowing, whatever its object, is never omitted; and praying for the dead is a proof that they believe in the ſoul's exiſting in a ſeparate ſtate, after death, which is confirmed by their placing meat and drink in their burying places. In this cuſtom, they are far from being ſingular. Among the antient Romans, in the infancy of their ſtate, they placed meat upon the tombs of their deceaſed friends, that the ghoſts might come out and eat, as they believed they would; and when they intended to expreſs the moſt abject ſtate of human wretchedneſs, they uſed to ſay, "ſuch a creature gets his food from the tombs." The character of the Tahowa in Otaheite, very nearly correſponds with that of Druid among the antient Britons. He is the chief prieſt, and his erudition conſiſts in learning the ſeveral traditional memorials of antient times; in being made acquainted with the opinion of their anceſtors, concerning the origin of things; and in the repetition of ſhort myſterious ſentences, in a language which none but thoſe of their own orders can underſtand. The Bramins of the eaſt have their myſtic, unknown tongue, as have alſo all the followers of the great Zoroaſter. The prieſts are ſuperior alſo to the reſt of the people in the knowledge of navigation and aſtronomy, and in all the liberal arts, of which theſe people have any idea. Thus far the character of the Tahowa agrees with that of Druid, in every particular. The Druids were the only perſons of any ſort of learning, which conſiſted in the obſervation of the heavens, knowledge of the ſtars, whereby they preſaged future events; they had the care of all religious matters, and their authority was abſolute. The chief of the Druids, was pontiff or high prieſt, whoſe dignity was elective. Thus we might trace the conformity of the cuſtoms and manners of nations remote from each other, in their infant ſtate, but we wave ſuch an enquiry, as it might be thought foreign to our buſineſs in hand.

We ſhall conclude this hiſtorical ſketch of Otaheite with a brief account of their funeral ceremonies, in which the prieſt and the people jointly aſſiſt. When a native is known to be dead, the houſe is filled with relations, who deplore their loſs; ſome by loud lamentations, and ſome by leſs clamorous, but more genuine expreſſions of grief. Thoſe who are the neareſt degree of kindred, and moſt affected by the event, are ſilent; the reſt are one moment uttering paſſionate expreſſions, or exclamations in a chorus, and the next laughing and talking, without the leaſt appearance of concern, much like the manner of the wild Iriſh; but this ſolemnity is continued for a day and a night, whereas by the Iriſh it is continued ſeveral nights. On the next morning the body is ſhrouded, and conveyed to the ſea ſide on a bier, upon the ſhoulders of the bearers, and attended by the prieſt, who having prayed over the body, repeats his ſentences during the proceſſion. When they arrive at the waters edge, it is ſet down on the beach: the prieſt renews his prayers, and taking up ſome of the water in his hand, ſprinkles it towards the body, but not upon it. It is then carried back forty or fifty yards, and ſoon after brought again to the beach, where the prayers and ſprinkling are repeated. It is thus removed backwards and forwards ſeveral times; and during the performance of this ceremony, a houſe has been built, and a ſmall piece of ground railed round, in the center of which a ſtage is erected whereon they place the bier, and the body is left to putrify, till the fleſh is waſted from the bones. As ſoon as the body is depoſited in the Morai, the mourning is renewed. The women now aſſemble, and are led to the door by the neareſt relation, who ſtrikes a ſhark's tooth ſeveral times into the crown of her head: the blood copiouſly follows, and is carefully received upon pieces of cloth, or linen, which are thrown under the bier. The reſt of the women follow this example, and the ceremony is repeated at the interval of two or three days, as long as the zeal and ſorrow of the parties hold out. The tears alſo which are ſhed upon this occaſion are received upon pieces of cloth, and offered as oblations to the dead. Some of the younger people cut off their hair, which is likewiſe thrown under the bier. This cuſtom is founded on the notion, as ſome of our gentlemen thought, that the ſoul of the deceaſed is hovering about the place where the body is depoſited; that it obſerves the actions of the ſurvivors, and is gratified by ſuch teſtimonies of their affection and grief; but whether this is part of the natives faith is very problematical; neither, in our opinion, is it certain, that the prieſt is an attendant in the funeral proceſſion down to the waters edge; for in the funerals at which Mr. Banks was a party, no mention is made of a prieſt; and Tuberai Tumaide, who was chief mourner, performed the whole of the funeral ſervice. The natives are all ſaid to fly before theſe proceſſions, and the reaſon aſſigned is, becauſe the chief mourner carries in his hand a long flat ſtick, the edge of which is ſet with ſharks, and in a phrenſy, which his grief is ſuppoſed to have inſpired, he runs at all he ſees, and if any of them happen to be overtaken, he ſtrikes them moſt unmercifully with his indented cudgel, which cannot fail to wound them in a moſt dangerous manner; but this reaſon, though a plauſible one, does not, in our judgment, ſeem to come up to what is ſaid in the courſe of the relation, by the compiler of Capt. Cook's voyage, who tells us, that while the corpſe is carrying in proceſſion, the people every where fly and hide themſelves in the woods, and that none but thoſe immediately concerned in it, if they can avoid it, come in ſight. Were it only for fear of the cudgel that theſe people fled, they needed not run ſo far as the woods, nor to quit their houſes (as Mr. Banks obſerved they did when the corpſe of an old woman, whoſe funeral he attended, came by in proceſſion) to hide themſelves in holes; it would have been ſufficient for them to have kept out of the reach of the cudgel; but they muſt be awed by ſome ſecret motive; ſome ſuperſtitious dread of ſome misfortune happening to them, ſhould they meet the corpſe, either in an unlucky place, or in an ominous ſituation; as at this day many people in the northern parts of Britain get out of the way of a corpſe when carrying to the grave, for theſe or the like reaſons. The people of Otaheite, we think, are not intimidated by the apprehenſion of being beaten; but they may have a dread upon them of they know not what; yet it is ſuch a dread as inſenſibly impels them to keep at a diſtance, and if they are by accident ſurprized, and meet a corpſe at the corner of a ſtreet, or the rounding of a hill, they never fail to bleſs themſelves, and turn the way the corpſe is carrying, and walk in the ſame direction for ſeveral paces to avert the bad effects of the unlucky omen, which they always interpret againſt themſelves. In an account of the funeral ceremonies of the iſlanders in the South Seas, the writer, who judged from what he himſelf ſaw, and not from what



The FUNERAL CEREMONY of the GUEBRES

BRITISH 7 FE 80 MUSEUM

was reported to him, tells us, that the prieſt, accompanied with two boys painted black, attend the Morai, or place where the corpſe is depoſited, to receive the hogs, fiſh, and other proviſions, which on theſe occaſions are offered to the Ethooa, or deity of the place, and to lay them upon an altar. This prieſt is alſo employed in ſtrewing over the body of the defunct leaves, and flowers of bamboo; and for two or three days he occaſionally ranges the adjacent fields and woods, from which every one retires on his approach. The relations, in the mean time, build a temporary houſe near the Morai, where they aſſemble, and the females mourn for the deceaſed, by ſinging ſongs of grief, howling, and wounding their bodies in different places with ſharks teeth; after which they bathe their wounds in the next river or ſea, and again return to howl and cut themſelves, which they continue for three days. After the body is corrupted, and the bones are become bare, the ſkeleton is depoſited in a ſort of ſtone-pyramid built for that purpoſe. Theſe Morais are frequented by two birds ſacred to their gods, namely, the grey heron, and a blue and brown king-fiſher; but whether theſe birds, or the prieſt and his attendants eat the offerings that are made to the preſiding deity, or whether they are eaten at all, we are not informed, though we have ſpared no pains in making enquiries among our friends and fellow voyagers, concerning this and ſeveral other doubtful and queſtionable particulars. It is agreed, however, that the piety of the natives is in no inſtance ſo ſtrongly expreſſed as in the profuſion of covering they beſtow upon the remains of their deceaſed friends, and in the ornaments with which they decorate their Morais, but theſe Morais are not the receptacles of the ordinary dead, but appropriated ſolely to the uſe of the principal families to which each reſpectively belongs: how it fares with the bodies of the common herd we could not learn, whether they are ſuffered to rot upon the ground, or under it; nor have our principals afforded us information concerning this particular; indeed they ſeem to have been moſt intent upon what is ſtriking in high life, without regarding the ordinary occurrences that daily paſs among the multitude; theſe did not much attract their notice. We ſhall juſt add to what has been ſaid under this head, that the Otaheiteans have neither phyſicians nor ſurgeons, by profeſſion, except the prieſt, whoſe relief conſiſts in prayers and ceremonies, not in drugs or preſcriptions; yet we muſt not conclude from hence, that they are deficient in the art of healing. Two or three inſtances occur in the relations of different voyagers, which, to ſay no more, are ſtriking proofs of their knowledge in what is neceſſary to preſerve life. Tupia was pierced through the body with a lance, headed with the jagged bone of the ſting-ray: the weapon went in at his back, and came out juſt under his breaſt; yet he was perfectly cured, and never complained of any bad effects of his wound. One man had his head almoſt cruſhed, his face beat in, his noſe flatted, and one eye beat out, the hollow of which would almoſt admit one's fiſt; yet this man, we are told, was cured, and to all appearance felt no remaining pain. A third had a ſtone through his head with a ſling, in the time of action, and yet, ſtrange and improbable as it may ſeem, he, like the others, we are informed, appeared to enjoy a good ſtate of health. We will not vouch for the truth of all the circumſtances in theſe relations, which we think are rather of the marvellous kind, yet we may be allowed to infer from the facts themſelves, that they are inconteſtible proofs, that the natives of Otaheite have a knowledge of the virtues of balſams, of which we are either not poſſeſſed or are ignorant of their healing qualities. From this narrative of the iſland of Otaheite and its inhabitants, ſome will be ready to envy them their felicity; but it muſt be remembered as a foil to this, that they do not always ſleep in ſecurity: they are frequently ſurprized by their warlike neighbours, and whole diſtricts are depopulated; for if in the invaſions of one another's territories, they happen to prove ſucceſsful, the victors ſpare neither man, woman, nor child. But it is time now to return to the ſhip, which on the 14th of May we left under ſail, and that night ſhe cleared the reef.

On Sunday the 15th, we had an open ſea, with a fine breeze in our favour, and purſued our voyage to the N. W. and N. W. by W. The ſame night we made the iſland of Huaheine, and anchored in the north entrance of O'Wharre harbour. Oree, the chief, and ſeveral of the natives paid us viſits. Oree, among other articles, brought with him a hog; and the next day, being the 16th, Capt. Cook returned Oree's viſit, preſenting to him ſome red feathers, which he held in his hand, and muttered over them a prayer. This morning the people began to bring us fruit. The chief ſent us two hogs, which were followed by himſelf and friends who came to dine with us. Oree aſked for axes and nails, which were readily given him. Theſe he diſtributed as he pleaſed, but beſtowed the largeſt ſhare upon a youth who appeared to be his grandſon. After the diſtribution was over they all returned aſhore. Mr. Forſter, and a party with him, went up the country to examine its productions; which he continued as a daily taſk during the ſhip's continuance in this harbour. As a ſervant of Mr. Forſter's was walking along the ſhore, without a companion, he was beſet by ſeveral ſtout fellows, who would have ſtripped him, had not ſome of our people arrived to his aſſiſtance. One of the men made off with a hatchet. This day the number of natives that came about the ſhip was ſo great, that it was found neceſſary to place ſentinels in the gangways, to prevent the men from coming on board; but no oppoſition was made to the women, ſo that the ſhip was crowded with them.

On Tueſday, the 17th, we found Oree, and a great number of the principal people aſſembled in a houſe conſulting together. We heard the late robbery mentioned by them ſeveral times; but the chief aſſured us, neither himſelf nor his friends had any hand in the ſame, and deſired Capt. Cook to kill with his guns thoſe that had. We could not learn where the robbers were gone, and therefore, at preſent, took no more notice of the affair. In the evening a dramatic entertainment was exhibited. The ſubject of the piece was that of a girl running away with us from Otaheite. This was not wholly a fiction, for a girl had taken her paſſage with us from Ulietea, and was at this time preſent when her own adventures were repreſented: ſhe could hardly refrain from tears while the play was acting; and it was with much difficulty we perſuaded her to ſtay out the entertainment. At the concluſion of the piece, the girl's return to her friends was repreſented; and the reception ſhe met with was not a favourable one. It is very probable that this part of the comedy was deſigned to deter others from going away with us.

On Wedneſday, the 18th, king Oree came and dined on board, and the Captain, at his deſire, ordered the great guns to be ſhotted, and fired into the water, by way of ſalute at his arrival and departure: indeed he had by Oedidee given us to underſtand, that he expected the ſame honours to be paid to him, as had been ſhewn to the chiefs of Otaheite. A party of petty officers having obtained leave to amuſe themſelves in the country, they took with them ſome hatchets, nails, &c. in bags, which were carried by two natives, who went with them as their guides, to ſhew the way. Theſe fellows made off with the truſt repoſed in them, and artfully enough effected their eſcape. The party had with them two muſquets; and after it had rained ſome time, the natives pointed out ſome birds for them to ſhoot. One of the guns went off, and the other miſſed fire ſeveral times. At this inſtant, when the fellows ſaw themſelves ſecure from both, they took the opportunity to run away, and not one of the party, being all much ſurprized, had preſence of mind enough to purſue them. On the 19th a report was current, that the natives intended to riſe and attack the ſhip. The captain, though he did not think them ſerious in ſuch an attempt, yet was unwilling totally to diſregard the intimation: he therefore ordered twenty ſtand of arms to be in readineſs, in caſe any commotion ſhould be obſerved among them; but though the rumour increaſed throughout the day, yet no preparations could be perceived to countenance ſuch a report; and the king continued his viſits as uſual, never coming empty handed.

On Friday, the 20th, the firſt and ſecond lieutenants with one of the mates, being out on a ſhooting party, they were beſet by more than fifty of the natives, who firſt took from them their arms, and then robbed them of what articles they had carried with them to trade. In the ſcuffle the firſt lieutenant loſt the ſkirt of his coat, and one of the other gentlemen received a ſevere blow. When the robbers had ſtripped them of their merchandizes, they reſtored to them their fowling pieces. When this tranſaction came to the knowledge of Capt. Cook, he went immediately with a boat's crew on ſhore, and entered a large houſe wherein were two chiefs. This, with all their effects, he took poſſeſſion of, and remained there, till he heard that the gentlemen had got ſafe on board, and had all their things reſtored to them. Oedidee informed us, Oree was ſo much affected with the relation of this, that he wept much. When on board, we learnt from the officers themſelves, that a ſmall inſult on their part was the occaſion of the affray; but ſome chiefs interfering, took the officers out of the croud, and cauſed every thing which had been taken from them to be reſtored. On the 21ſt, we ſaw upwards of ſixty canoes, moſt of the people in them being Eareeoies, ſteering for Ulietea, and we heard they were going to viſit their brethren in the neighbouring iſlands. It ſeems theſe people have cuſtoms among them peculiar to themſelves; and aſſiſt each other when neceſſity requires: we may therefore call them the Free Maſons of Huaheine. This day Oree ſent a meſſage to Capt. Cook, deſiring he would come on ſhore, and bring twenty-two men with him, in order to ſearch for and chaſtiſe the robbers. Oedidee brought with him twenty-two pieces of leaves to aſſiſt his memory, a cuſtom very common among theſe people. This meſſage ſeemed to us an extraordinary one, and therefore the captain went to the chief for better information. Oree informed him, that theſe fellows were a ſet of banditti, who had formed themſelves into a body, and had reſolved to rob all they met, for which purpoſe they were now aſſembled and armed. Theſe robbers Oree wanted us to attack, the captain ſaid they would fly to the mountains; but he aſſured us to the contrary, and deſired we would deſtroy both them and their habitations, only ſparing their canoes. This requeſt ſeemed extraordinary, but the captain was reſolved to comply with it in part, leſt theſe fellows ſhould make more head, and become formidable; and alſo with a view of preventing the report from gaining ground in Ulietea, where we intended going, and we were apprehenſive aſſociations might be formed in like manner, and the people might treat us in the ſame way, or worſe, they being more numerous. Capt. Cook and his officers made ready to accompany king Oree in the expedition againſt the robbers; and having ordered fifty marines with ſome ſailors to be well armed, they landed near the palace of the king, and having required him to conduct them according to his promiſe, he very readily conſented, and they all ſet out together in very good order. The party increaſed as we proceeded; and Oedidee told us, that ſeveral of the banditti had joined us, with the view of decoying us into a place, where they might attack us to advantage. As we could place no confidence in any other perſon, we took his advice, and proceeded with caution. We marched ſeveral miles, when Capt. Cook declared he would proceed no farther; beſides, we were informed that the men had fled to the mountains. At this time we were about to croſs a deep valley, with ſteep rocks on each ſide, where our retreat might have been rendered difficult, by a few men aſſaulting us with ſtones. Oedidee perſiſted in his opinion; and we marched back in the ſame order as we came. As we went along, we obſerved ſeveral people coming down the ſides of the hills with clubs, which they immediately hid when they found we ſaw them. This was ſome confirmation of Oedidee's ſuſpicions; but we could not perſuade ourſelves that the chief had any ſuch intention, whatever might be the deſigns of his people. In our return we halted at a convenient place, and wanting ſome refreſhments, they were immediately brought us. When we arrived at the landing place we diſcharged ſeveral volleys, to convince the natives, that we could ſupport a continual fire; after which we returned on board, and the chief dined with us, having brought with him a hog ready dreſſed. After dinner we received a great number of preſents as peace-offerings. Two chiefs brought each of them a pig, a dog, and ſome young plantain trees, and with due ceremony preſented them ſingly to the captain. Another brought a very large hog, with which he had followed us to the ſhip. A quantity of fruit was brought us by others; ſo that we were likely to make more by this little excurſion, than by all the preſents we had made them; and the expedition had one good effect at leaſt, for the people were convinced that muſquets were more terrible things than they at firſt imagined. We were promiſed a larger ſupply of hogs and fruit the next day; but the chief was not ſo good as his word. We went aſhore in the afternoon, and found him ſitting down to dinner. The people about him immediately began chewing the pepper root; a cup of the juice was preſented to Capt. Cook, but he did not like the method of brewing it. Oedidee was not ſo nice, and immediately ſwallowed what the captain refuſed. The chief waſhed his mouth with cocoa-nut water after he had taken the juice of the pepper root, and ate a large quantity of plantain, repe, and mahee, and finiſhed his dinner by eating and drinking a compoſition of plantains, bread-fruit, mahee, &c. of the conſiſtence of a cuſtard; of this he took about three pints. He dined in the open air, at the outſide of his houſe, and during dinner time a play was performing within the houſe.

On Monday the 23d, we put to ſea. The chief and Capt. Cook took an affectionate leave of each other. When Oree heard that we never intended coming there any more, he ſaid, Let your ſons come, we will treat them well. We did not get a ſufficient ſupply of hogs at this iſland, though they did not appear to be ſcarce; but we obtained more fruit than we well knew what to do with. Our ſtock in trade being nearly exhauſted, we found it neceſſary to ſet the ſmiths to work, in making different ſorts of iron tools, that an influence might be kept up at the other iſlands, and to enable us to procure refreſhments.

On Tueſday the 24th, we anchored in Ulietea, and was viſited by Oreo the chief, who brought with him a handſome preſent. A party of us went aſhore to make the chief a preſent, and as we entered his houſe we were met by five old women, who lamented very bitterly, and cut their faces in a ſhocking manner. This was not the worſt part of the ſtory, for we were obliged to ſubmit to their amiable embraces, and get ourſelves covered with blood. After this ceremony was over, they waſhed themſelves, and appeared as chearful as any other perſon.

On Friday the 27th, Oreo paid us a viſit, in company with his wife, ſon and daughter, and brought with them a very handſome preſent of all kinds of refreſhments. We accompanied them on ſhore after dinner, and were entertained with a play which concluded with the repreſentation of a woman in labour, performed by a ſet of brawny fellows; the child that was brought forth was at leaſt ſix feet high. As ſoon as the child was delivered, they preſſed his noſe, which ſeemed to indicate that they really take this method with all their children, which occaſions that flatneſs which their noſes generally have. On the 29th ſeveral things were ſtolen out of our boats, which lay at the buoy; but on application to the chief, we had them all returned, except an iron tiller, and in lieu of that they brought us two large hogs. On Monday, the 30th, a party of us ſet out for Oedidee's eſtate on the thirtieth inſtant, accompanied by the chief and his family, When we arrived there, we found that Oedidee could not command any thing, though he had promiſed us hogs and fruit in abundance; they were now in poſſeſſion of his brother. We had here an opportunity of ſeeing them kill and dreſs a pig, which was done in the following manner,: three men firſt ſtrangled the hog; the hog was laid on his back, two men laid a ſtick acroſs his throat, preſſing at each end, the third man ſtuffed up his fundament with graſs, and held his hind legs. The hog was kept in this poſition for ten minutes, before he was dead. An oven, which was cloſe by, was heated. They laid the hog on the fire as ſoon as he was dead, and ſinged off his hair; he was then carried to the ſea-ſide and waſhed. The carcaſe was then laid on clean green leaves, that it might be opened. They firſt took out the lard, and laid it on a green leaf, the entrails were then taken out and carried away in a baſket; the blood was put into a large leaf. The hog was then waſhed quite clean, and ſeveral hot ſtones were put into his body; it was then placed in the oven on his belly, the lard and fat were put in a veſſel, with two or three hot ſtones, and placed along-ſide the hog; the blood was tied up in a leaf, with a hot ſtone, and put into the oven; they covered the whole with leaves, on which were placed the remainder of the hot ſtones; they afterwards threw a great deal of rubbiſh in, and covered the whole with earth. A table was ſpread with green leaves, while the hog was baking, which took up little more than two hours. We ſat down at one end of the table, and the natives, who dined with us, at the other; the fat and blood were placed before them, and the hog before us. We thought the pork exceeding good indeed, and every part of it was well done. The natives chiefly dined of the fat and blood, and ſaid it was very good victuals. The whole of this cookery was conducted with remarkable cleanlineſs. This eſtate of Oedidee was ſmall, but very pleaſant; and the houſes formed a pretty village. After we had dined, we returned to the ſhip. In our way we ſaw four wooden images, each two feet long. They ſtood on a ſhelf, had a large piece of cloth round the middle, a turban on their heads, ſtuck with cocks feathers. They told us theſe were their ſervants' gods.

On Tueſday the 31ſt, the people hearing that we intended ſailing, brought abundance of fruit on board, which continued on the 1ſt of June. We were informed that two ſhips had arrived at Huaheine. The perſon who brought the information deſcribed the perſons of Capt. Furneaux and Mr. Banks ſo well, that we had no doubt of the truth of the aſſertion; we therefore thought of ſending a boat over there, but a man came on board, and declared the whole to be a lye. We could not confront the fellow who brought the intelligence, for he was gone away, and the danger of ſending the boat was put a ſtop to.

On Saturday the 4th of June, the chief and his family came on board to take leave, bringing a handſome preſent with them. Theſe people denied that there were any ſhips at Huaheine. We were very much importuned to return to this place; when we told them we could not, their grief was bitter, and we believed it to be real. They deſired Capt. Cook to acquaint them with his burial place, and ſaid they would be buried with him. A ſtrong proof of affection and attachment. We left Oedidee here, as we could not promiſe that more ſhips would be ſent from England to thoſe iſlands: he left us with infinite regret. Oedidee did not leave us till we were out of the harbour, and ſtaid to fire ſome guns, it being his Majeſty's birth-day. This youth was of a gentle, docile, humane diſpoſition, and would have been a better ſpecimen of the natives than Omiah.

CHAP. VI.

Departure of the Reſolution from Ulietea—Incidents at Savage Iſland—Inſtance of the ferocity of the natives—Deſcription of this iſland—Paſſage from hence to Rotterdam—Remarkable tranſactions at this place, and the inſolence of the natives—An account of the people in Turtle Iſland—One called by the natives Ambrym diſcovered—Tranſactions while here, and ferocious behaviour of the inhabitants—A particular deſcription of theſe people—The Reſolution continues her courſe from Port Sandwich—Paſſes Three-hill and Shepherd's Iſlands—Steers in a direction for Sandwich Iſland, in order to diſcover the Southern extremity of the Archipelago—Hoſtile behaviour of the natives of Sandwich Iſle, and of ſeveral iſlands, particularly Tanna, and Erromango—An account of a Volcano—Character of Paowang a great chief—A deſcription of the country, &c.—Departure of the Reſolution from the iſland of Tanna—The natives deſcribed—Arrives at Erromango—The weſtern coaſt of the New Hebrides explored—More new iſlands diſcovered—Inhabitants and country about Cape Colnett deſcribed—The iſland of Pines diſcovered, with an account of theſe and other trees.

THE day after we left Ulietea we ſaw land, which proved to be a low iſland diſcovered by Capt. Wallis, and called by him Howe Iſland. We ſaw land again on the 16th, which we called Palmerſton Iſland, in honour of lord Palmerſton, one of the lords of the Admiralty. On the 20th we diſcovered land again, and inhabitants appearing upon the ſhore; we equipped two boats, and as we approached, the inhabitants retired into the woods. When we landed, we took poſt on a high rock, to prevent a ſurpriſe, and the botaniſing party began collecting plants, with which the country ſeemed covered. Capt. Cook took two men with him and entered the woods, but on hearing the inhabitants approach they returned. We made every friendly ſign in our power, but were anſwered by menaces; and one of the natives threw a ſtone, which ſtruck one of our party. Two muſquets were fired indiſcriminately, and they all retreated into the woods. Having embarked, we proceeded along the coaſt till we came to a place where four canoes lay. In order to prevent being ſurpriſed, and to ſecure a retreat, the men were drawn up upon a rock, from whence they had a view of the heights. Capt. Cook and only four gentlemen with him went to look at the canoes. Very ſoon after the natives ruſhed out of the wood upon us, and we endeavoured to no purpoſe to bring them to a parley; they threw their darts, and appeared very ferocious. We diſcharged ſome muſquets in the air, but this did not intimidate them, for they ſtill threw darts and ſtones. Capt. Cook's muſquet miſſed fire, otherwiſe he would certainly have killed the ring-leader of them. The men drawn upon the rock fired at ſome who appeared on the heights, which rather allayed the ardour of our antagoniſts, and we had an opportunity to join the marines. We do not think any of the natives were hurt, but they all retreated into the woods; and ſeeing we could make nothing of them, we returned to the ſhip. Capt. Cook named this place Savage Iſland, from the conduct and aſpect of the iſlanders; its ſituation is ſouth latitude 19 deg. 1 min. weſt longitude 169 deg. 37 min. its form is circular, and is about 11 leagues in circumference. The country appears entirely covered with trees and ſhrubs. Nothing but coral rocks were to be ſeen along the ſhores. The inhabitants do not appear to be very numerous: they go intirely naked, except round the waiſt, and ſeem ſtout well made men. Some of them had their thighs, breaſt, and faces painted black.

We ſteered for Rotterdam, and as we drew near it ſeveral canoes laden with fruit came along-ſide of us, but we did not ſhorten ſail. The people on board them wanted as much to go towards their coaſt, telling us, as well as they were able, we might ſafely anchor there. They enquired for Capt. Cook by name. We came to anchor on the north-ſide of the iſland on the 26th inſtant. The inhabitants brought to us great quantities of yams and haddocks, for which we gave them old rags and nails. A party of us went aſhore to look for water, and were civilly received by the natives. We got ſome water, but it was rather brackiſh. We got a plentiful ſupply of fruit and oats, as well as water, but happened to leave the ſurgeon on ſhore. He got a canoe to bring him off; but juſt as he was getting into it, one of the natives ſnatched away his muſquet and ran off with it, after which no perſon would bring him on board. He certainly would have been ſtripped, had he not preſented a tooth-pick caſe to them, which they took for a little gun. When Capt. Cook heard of this tranſaction, he went aſhore; but the natives fled at his approach. We did wrong in not taking any ſteps for the recovery of the gun, as it encouraged the inhabitants to make more depredations. A boat was ſent aſhore on the 28th for ſome water, when the people behaved in a rude and daring manner: it was with difficulty they got their water-caſks filled, and into the boats again. The lieutenant who commanded this party had his gun ſnatched from him, and moſt of the people had ſomething or other taken away from them. This was the effect of ill timed lenity. Capt. Cook landed ſoon after, and reſolved to have the gun reſtored. All the marines were ordered aſhore armed. As the botaniſing party were in the country, three guns were fired from the ſhip to alarm them, as we did not know how the natives might behave to them. The natives knew well enough what we intended, and brought the muſquet long before the marines got aſhore. When the lieutenant and the marines arrived, they all fled; Capt. Cook ſeized two double canoes in the cove, and threw a few ſmall ſhot into a fellow's legs, who made ſome reſiſtance. We very ſoon obtained the other muſquet, and then the canoes were reſtored. When we returned to the cove, the people wanted to perſuade us that the man Capt. Cook fired at was dead, which we thought very improbable. Capt. Cook deſired a man to reſtore a cooper's adze which had been ſtolen that morning, and he went away, as we thought, to fetch it; but we were miſtaken, for he ſoon returned with the wounded man ſtretched out on a board apparently dead. The ſurgeon was ſent to dreſs his wounds, which in his opinion were but ſlight, and of no conſequence. Capt. Cook ſtill inſiſted upon the adze, and with a great deal of difficulty obtained it. An old woman preſented a young girl to Capt. Cook, giving him to underſtand that ſhe was at his ſervice. The girl was artful enough, and wanted to bargain for a ſhirt and a ſpike nail, neither of which the captain had with him. He was then given to underſtand that he might retire with her upon credit, which he refuſed. The old procureſs then abuſed him, ſaying he was inſenſible to her charms; the girl was very pretty, and wanted to go aboard a ſhip with the captain; but he would not take her, as he had given orders no women ſhould be admitted there.

On the 29th we ſailed, and a great many canoes came up with us, loaded with fruit, &c. which were exchanged for the uſual commodities. The paſſion of our people for curioſities was as great as ever, and they were ſtripped of moſt of the clothes the ladies of Otaheite had left them. We ſtretched out for Amattafoa on the 30th, and ſeveral canoes came to us from all parts with the common articles; out of one of them we got two pigs, which in this part of the world are a ſcarce commodity.

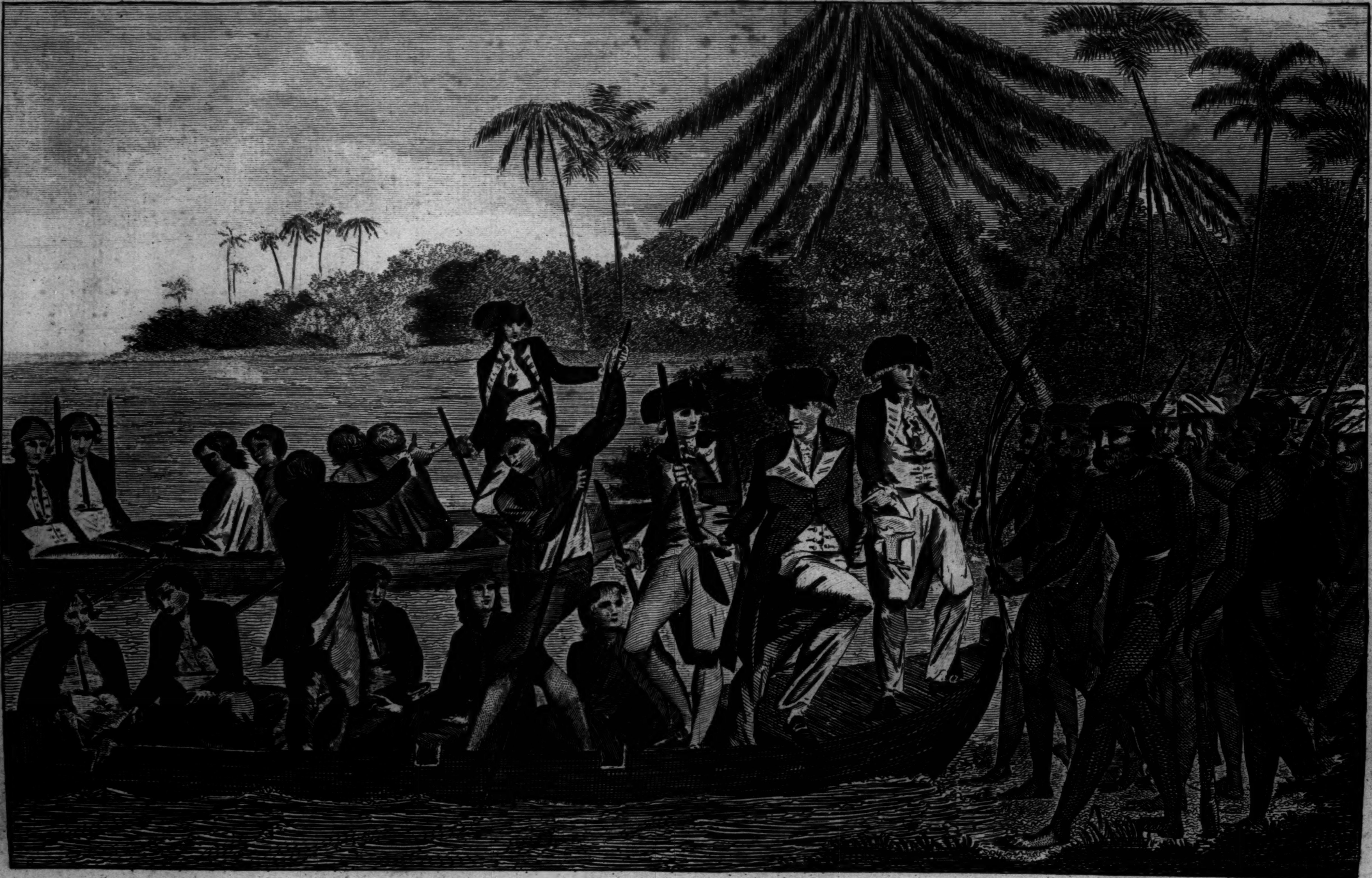
On Friday the firſt of July we diſcovered land, the maſter and the boat were ſent into the ſound to find anchorage, four or five people were diſcovered on the ſhore, who retreated as the boat advanced, and they all fled to the woods when the boat landed. The maſter returned, and brought word there were no ſoundings without the reef; that he rowed in for the ſhore, intending to ſpeak to the people, who were about twenty in number, armed with clubs and ſpears; but they all returned into the woods on his approach. He left ſome trifles upon the rocks, which they certainly found, for ſeveral people were ſeen at the place ſoon afterwards. The number of inhabitants on this iſland are ſuppoſed to be very few, and it is very probable that the few who are there only came to catch turtles, of which there are a great number here. This iſland is ſituated S. latitude 19 deg. 48 min. W. longitude 178 deg. 2 min. We called it Turtle Iſland.

After a good deal of ſtormy weather we ſaw an iſland, called by the natives Ambrym, on the 21ſt of July. We diſcovered a creek as we drew nearer the ſhore, which had the appearance of a good harbour; many people were aſſembled, who invited us on ſhore, but we did not chuſe to go, as they were armed with bows and arrows. We ſent out two armed boats to diſcover a port about a league more to the ſouth, where we anchored in eleven fathoms water. Several of the natives came off to us, but acted with great caution; at laſt they truſted themſelves alongſide, and exchanged arrows for pieces of cloth. The arrows were pointed with bone, and dipped in a green gummy ſubſtance, which we imagined to be poiſonous. Preſents were made to two men who ventured on board, and others came at night for the ſame purpoſe, but they were not admitted.

On the 22nd, in the morning, ſeveral natives came round us; ſome ſwam, and others came in canoes. We prevailed on one man with ſome difficulty to come on board, and he was followed by more than we wiſhed. Various articles were given to four of them, which were taken into the cabin; theſe they ſhewed to others in the canoes, who were very well pleaſed with their reception. We were all put in confuſion by an accident which happened while theſe were in the cabin. One of the natives who had been refuſed admittance into one of our boats bent his bow at the boat-keeper, to ſhoot a poiſoned arrow at him; he was prevented by ſome of his countrymen, and Capt. Cook was acquainted with it. Capt. Cook went on deck, and ſaw a man ſtruggling with him, who had leaped out of the cabin window for this purpoſe. The fellow again pointed his arrow at the boat-keeper; and on Capt. Cook's calling out, he pointed the arrow at the Captain, who inſtantly fired a muſquet at him. This ſtaggered him for a little while, but he again pointed his arrow; a ſecond ſhot obliged him to deſiſt. Several began to ſhoot arrows on the other ſide; but they were all ſent off in the utmoſt confuſion, by a four pound ſhot being diſcharged over their heads. They all to a man leaped overboard. We permitted them to come and take away their canoes, and ſome again came alongſide the ſhip. We heard the beating of drums on ſhore as ſoon as the four pounder was fired, which we took for the ſignal for the country to aſſemble under arms. However, we determined to go on ſhore and ſeek for wood and ſome refreſhments, which we were very much in want of.

We landed in the face of five hundred men, armed with bows, arrows, ſpears, and clubs, but they made no oppoſition. Capt. Cook advanced alone, with nothing but a green branch in his hand; on ſeeing this, a perſon who ſeemed to be a chief gave his bow and arrows to another, and came to meet him in the water, took the captain by the hand, and led him up to the crowd. The marines were at this time drawn up on the beach. Capt. Cook diſtributed ſeveral preſents among them. We made ſigns that we wanted wood for not one word of their language could we underſtand, and in return they made ſigns for us to cut down the trees. They brought a ſmall pig for a peace offering, and we flattered ourſelves with the hopes of procuring more, but theſe were vain and deluſive; for we only got a ſmall quantity of water, and about half a dozen cocoa-nuts. They parted freely with their arrows, but we could not purchaſe of them any bows without a great deal of difficulty. They did not ſeem to ſet the leaſt value upon any thing we preſented them with, nor did they like we ſhould proceed farther than the beach, and ſeemed very deſirous of our returning on

London; Published as the Act directs, by Alex.r Hogg, at the Kings Arms, No. 16, Paternoster Row.



Page Sc.

The Landing of CAPT.N COOK, &c: at MALLICOLO, one of the NEW HEBRIDES.

on board: this we did after we had cut down ſome wood, and they all retired into different parts of the country. In the afternoon we obſerved a man bringing along the buoy, which had been taken from the kedge anchor; and when we ſent ſome of our crew aſhore for it, he immediately delivered it. This was the only thing they had attempted to take from us. Capt. Cook and Mr. Forſter went to examine ſome of their houſes, which bore a reſemblance to thoſe on the other iſles. They ſaw a great number of fine yams, and ſeveral pigs and fowls. They called this iſland Mallicolæ, another near it Apee, and a third Paoom. We went in ſearch of freſh water, but without ſucceſs. The curioſity of theſe people was ſoon ſatisfied, for none of them came on board the ſhip. When they ſaw us under ſail, they came off to us in a number of canoes, and gave us many proofs of their extreme honeſty, which rather ſurprized us, as we had lately been among a moſt thieviſh race.

The people of this iſland are very ugly and ill-proportioned, dark in their complexion, and of a diminutive ſize. Their heads are long, their faces flat, and their features very much reſemble thoſe of a baboon: their beards are of a dark colour, ſtrong and buſhy. The men go quite naked, except a wrapper round their waiſts. The women we ſaw were as ugly as the men. Their faces, heads, and ſhoulders were painted red. Some of them had a bag round their ſholders, in which they carry their children; and they wear a ſort of red petticoat. We ſaw but few of them, as they generally kept at a diſtance when we were on ſhore. They wear bracelets, and ear-rings made of tortoiſe ſhell, hogs tuſks bent circular round the right wriſt, and rings made of ſhells. They run a piece of white ſtone, an inch and a half long, through the bridge of their noſes, which are pierced for that purpoſe. They ſprinkle water over their heads, and preſent a green branch, as tokens of friendſhip. Their weapons are bows, arrows, clubs and ſpears. They ſeem unlike all the natives we have met with, and ſpeak quite a different language. Their country muſt be fertile, but the fruits are not remarkably good. We left them a dog and a bitch, they having none on the iſland, and as they ſeemed very fond of them, we doubt not but they will take care to preſerve them. The harbour is a very good one, and we named it Port Sandwich.

Continuing our courſe from hence, on the twenty-fourth of July we diſcovered ſeveral ſmall iſlands, one of which we came very near. It is about 12 miles in circumference, and has three high peaked hills upon it. We therefore named it Three Hill iſland. We then paſſed a group of ſmall ſlands, which we called Shepherd's iſles, in honour of Dr. Shepherd of Cambridge. We diſcerned people in every one of theſe iſlands; but there were no ſoundings near them at one hundred and eighty fathoms. We found the ſouthern lands to conſiſt of one large iſland, the extremities of which we could not ſee. On the north ſide of this extenſive iſland we ſaw three or more ſmaller ones. One of theſe we called Montague, another Hinchinbrook and the largeſt Sandwich, in honour of the earl of Sandwich, firſt lord of the Admiralty. Several people came down as we paſſed Montague iſland, and ſeemed to invite us in a friendly manner on ſhore. We ſaw ſome likewiſe on Sandwich iſland, the ſurface whereof appeared very delightful, being agreeably diverſified with woods and lawns. As we could not approach it at this time, we ſteered more to the weſt, as there appeared a bay to run up in that quarter, and a good ſhelter from the winds. But as this was not ſo much our object as to diſcover the ſouthern extremity of the Archipelago, we ſteered E. S. E. which was the direction of Sandwich iſland.

On the firſt of Auguſt, we gained the N. W. ſide of the iſland, and ſaw ſeveral inhabitants, who invited us aſhore by various ſigns. Here we ſhould have anchored, but the wind obliged us to alter our deſign. Beſides we wanted to explore the lands to the S. E. therefore ranged along the coaſt. As we continued our courſe, we ſaw a light a-head; and it being near evening we did not chuſe to proceed any farther, but ſtood off and on all night. When the ſun roſe next morning it diſappeared, and we ſaw not any land but the coaſt we were near. On the 3d, we ſent a boat on ſhore to get ſome wood if poſſible, being much in want of that article; but our people could not land on account of a high ſurf of the ſea; and they ſaw not any natives on that part of the iſle. Having anchored in ſeventeen fathoms water, under the N. W. ſide of the head of the land, we ſaw ſeveral people on the ſhore, ſome endeavouring to ſwim off to us; but they all retired when they perceived our boat approach towards them. On the 14th, a party went out armed to find a proper landing place, and where we might gain a ſupply of wood and water: We gave the inhabitants ſome medals, &c. with which they appeared much pleaſed, and directed us to a bay fit for our purpoſe. As we went along the ſhore their numbers increaſed prodigiouſly. We tried ſeveral places to land, but did not approve of their ſituation. At length we came to a fine ſandy beach, where Capt. Cook ſtepped out without wetting his foot. He took but one man with him out of the boat, and landed in the face of a large number of people, having only a green branch in his hand. The inhabitants received him with great politeneſs. One of them, who appeared to be a chief, made the natives form a ſemicircle round the head of the boat, and chaſtiſed ſuch as attempted to prevent it. The captain gave this perſon ſeveral articles, and by ſigns ſignified his want of freſh water; upon which a little was preſently preſented to him in a bamboo, and having made ſigns for ſomething to eat, they brought him yams and cocoa-nuts. Their behaviour was in every reſpect agreeable, yet we did not much like their appearance, as they were all armed with bows, arrows, clubs, ſpears, and darts. On this account we kept a good look-out, and watched particularly the motions of the chief, who wanted us to haul the boat on ſhore. He renewed his ſigns for this to be done, and then held a conference with ſome of the natives. One circumſtance appeared rather ſuſpicious, he refuſed ſome ſpike nails that we offered him. Capt. Cook immediately returned to the boat, upon which they attempted by force to detain us. Very fortunately the gang board happened to be laid out for the captain to return into the boat; this ſome of the natives unhooked from the ſtern as we were putting off; they then hooked it to the head of the boat, and attempted to haul her on ſhore. Some of them were daring enough to take the oars out of a few of our peoples hands. They in ſome meaſure deſiſted, on Capt. Cook's preſenting a muſket, but went on again in an inſtant, ſeemingly determined to haul the boat on ſhore, and to detain us. The chief was at the head of this party, and others ſtood at a ſmall diſtance behind, with ſtones, darts, and other miſſile weapons, ready to ſupport them. Our own ſafety was now become our only conſideration, for ſigns and threats had not the effect we expected: The captain therefore reſolved to make the chief ſuffer alone a victim to his own treachery; but at this critical moment his piece did not go off. This increaſed their inſolence, and they began to aſſault us with ſtones, darts, and arrows. We were now ordered to fire. The firſt diſcharge threw them into confuſion; but they were very reluctantly driven off the beach by the ſecond. After this they continued a kind of buſh fighting, by throwing ſtones from behind trees, and ſometimes a dart or two. Four of them lay to all appearance dead on the ſhore, but two of them afterwards crawled in among the buſhes. It was a fortunate circumſtance for theſe aſſailants, that more than half our muſquets miſſed fire, otherwiſe we ſhould have done much more execution among them. One of our crew was wounded in the cheek with a dart, which entered near two inches; and an arrow ſtruck Mr. Gilbert's breaſt, but it hardly penetrated the ſkin. Having returned after this ſkirmiſh was ended on board, the captain ordered the anchor to be weighed, with a view of proceeding with the ſhip to the landing-place. While this was doing, ſeveral of the natives appeared on a low rocky point, diſplaying the two oars which they had taken from us in the late ſcuffle. We thought they were deſirous of returning the oars, and that their manner of behaving might be a token of ſubmiſſion: nevertheleſs, that they might underſtand the effect of our great guns, we fired a four pound ſhot at them, which, though it fell ſhort, terrified them ſo much, that we ſaw no more of them, and when they went away they left the two oars ſtanding up againſt the buſhes. By this time our anchor was at the bow, when a breeze ſprung up at N. upon which we ſet our ſails, and plyed out of the bay, for here we could not ſupply our wants with conveniency, and in caſe a better place could not be found to the S. we had it in our power at any time to return hither.

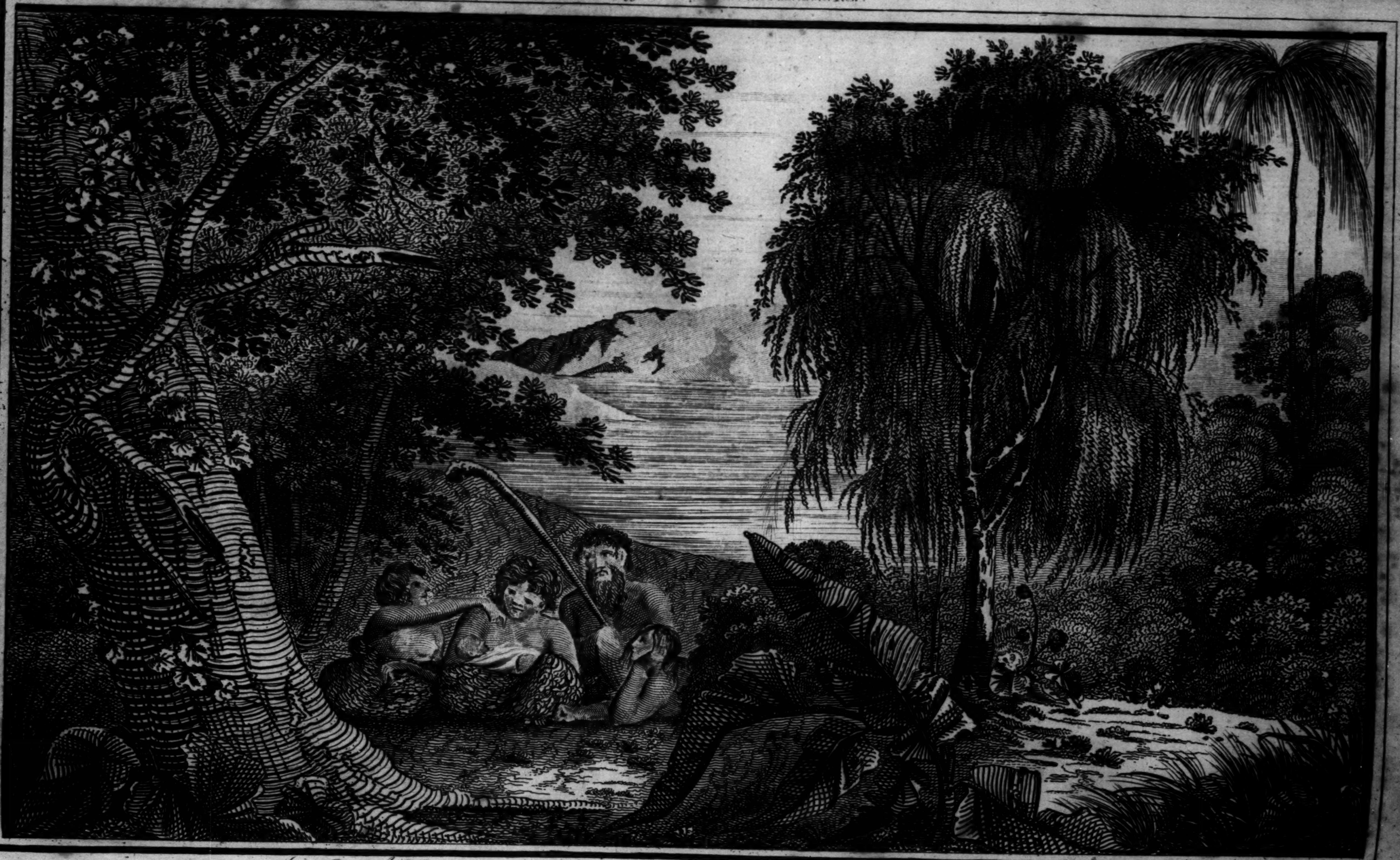
The natives of this iſland are of a middle ſize, regular features, and pretty well made. They are of a different race from thoſe of Mallicolæ, as well in their perſons, as their language. Their complexions are naturally dark; yet they paint their faces, ſome with black, and ſome others with red pigment. Their hair is curly, but ſomewhat woolly. The women were not very inviting, being rather ugly. They wear a petticoat made of a plant like palm leaves; and the men go in a manner naked, having only a belt and wrapper round their waiſt. They live in houſes covered with thatch, and their plantations are laid out by line, and fenced round. We ſaw no canoes in any part of the iſland.

On Thurſday the 4th of Auguſt, at two o'clock P. M. we cleared the bay, and ſteered for the ſouth end of the iſland. We diſcovered on the S. W. ſide of the head a pretty deep bay; its ſhores low, and the land appeared very fertile, but being expoſed to the S. E. winds, until better known, we think that on the N. W. ſide preferable. The promontory or peninſula, which diſjoins theſe two bays, we named Traitor's Head, from the treacherous behaviour of its inhabitants; it forms the N. E. point of the iſland, and is ſituated in the latitude of 18 deg. 43 min. S. and in 169 deg. 28 min. E. longitude. It terminates in a ſaddle hill, which may be ſeen 16 or 18 leagues off at ſea. We continued our courſe to the S. S. E. when the new iſland we had before diſcovered, appeared over the S. E. point of one near us, diſtant about 10 leagues. Leaving the laſt, we ſteered for the eaſt end of the former, being directed by a great light we ſaw upon it. On the 5th, at ſun riſe we came in ſight of an iſland, being high table land, bearing E. by S. and alſo diſcovered another little low iſle which we had paſſed in the night. Traitor's Head was ſtill in ſight, and the iſland to the S. extended from S. 7 deg. W. to S. 87 deg. W. diſtant four miles. The light ſeen in the night we now found to have been a volcano. A rumbling noiſe was heard, and it threw up great quantities of ſmoke and fire. We now ſteered for the iſland; and diſcovered a ſmall inlet which had the appearance of a good harbour. Two armed boats, under the command of Lieut. Cooper, were ſent off in order to ſound, while the ſhip ſtood on and off, to be ready to follow or to afford any aſſiſtance that might be required. We obſerved a number of the natives on the eaſt point of the entrance, alſo ſeveral canoes; and when our boats entered the harbour they launched ſome, but came not near. At this time Lieut. Cooper made the ſignal for anchorage, and we ſtood in with the ſhip. The wind having left us when we were within the entrance, we were obliged to drop anchor, in four fathoms water. The boats were now ſent out to find a better anchorage; and while we were thus employed, many of the natives came in parties to the ſea-ſide all armed, ſome ſwam off to us, others came in canoes. At firſt they ſeemed afraid of us, and kept at a diſtance, but by degrees waxed bolder, and at length came under our ſtern, and made ſome exchanges. Thoſe in one of the firſt canoes threw towards us ſome cocoa-nuts. The captain went out in a boat, picked them up, and in return gave them ſeveral articles. Others were induced by this to come along-ſide, who behaved in a moſt inſolent manner. They attempted to tear our flag from the ſtaff, would have knocked the rings from the rudder, and we had no ſooner thrown out the buoys of the anchor from the boats than they got hold of them. We fired a few muſquets in the air, of which they took no notice, but a four pounder alarmed them ſo much, that they quitted their canoes, and took to the water. But finding themſelves unhurt, they got again into their canoes, flouriſhed their weapons, hallooed in defiance, and went again to the buoys, but a few muſquetoon ſhot ſoon diſperſed them. They all retired in haſte to the ſhore, and we ſat down to dinner, unmoleſted. In the interval of thoſe tranſactions, an old man, who ſeemed to be amicably diſpoſed, came ſeveral times, in a ſmall canoe between us and the ſhore, bringing off each time cocoa-nuts and yams, for which he took in exchange whatever we offered him. Another was in the gangway when the great gun was fired, after which we could not prevail on him to ſtay. In the evening we landed at the head of the harbour, with a party of men well armed. The natives made not the leaſt oppoſition, though we had one body on our right, and another on our left, all armed. We diſtributed among the old people ſome preſents of cloth and medals, and filled two caſks with freſh water, an article we gave them to underſtand we much wanted. We got in return plenty of cocoa-nuts, but could not prevail on them to part with their weapons, which they held conſtantly in a poſture of defence. The old man was in one of theſe parties, but by his behaviour, we judged his temper to be pacific. We thought, by their preſſing ſo much, in ſpite of all our endeavours to keep them at a diſtance, that little would be wanting to induce them to attack us; but we re-embarked very ſoon, and thus, probably, their ſcheme was diſconcerted.

Saturday the 6th, we brought the ſhip as near the landing place as poſſible, that we might overawe the natives, and cover the party on ſhore, who were to get a ſupply of wood and water, which we much wanted. While we were upon this buſineſs, we obſerved the natives aſſembling from all parts, all armed, to the amount of ſome thouſands, who formed themſelves into two diviſions, as they did the preceding evening, on each ſide the landing place. At intervals a canoe came off, at times conducted by one, two or three men, bringing us cocoa-nuts, &c. for which they did not require any thing in return, though we took care they ſhould always have ſomething: but their principal intention ſeemed to be, to invite us aſhore. The old man before mentioned, came off to us ſeveral times, and the captain, with a view of making him underſtand that he wanted to eſtabliſh a friendly intercourſe, took his weapons that were in the canoe, and threw them overboard, and made him a preſent of a piece of cloth. He underſtood the meaning of this, for we ſaw him frequently in converſation with his countrymen, to whom he made our requeſt known, going firſt to one party, then to another, nor did we afterwards ſee him with his weapons, or in a warlike manner. Soon after a canoe, in which were three men, came under our ſtern, one of whom behaved very outrageouſly, brandiſhing his club, and ſtriking with it the ſhip's ſide; at laſt he offered to exchange his weapon for a ſtring of beads, and other trifles; theſe we ſent down to him by a line, of which he had no ſooner got poſſeſſion, than he made off, without delivering his club. We were not ſorry for this, as it afforded us an opportunity of ſhewing the people on ſhore the effect of our fire arms. We therefore, without heſitation, complimented this fellow with the contents of a fowling piece, loaded with ſmall ſhot, and when the others were out of the reach of muſquet ſhot, we fired ſome muſquetoons, or wall pieces at them, which made them take to the water. But all this ſeemed to make very little impreſſion on the people aſhore, who began to halloo, and ſeemingly made a joke of it. Having moored the ſhip, with her broadſide to the landing place, and ſcarcely muſquet ſhot off, we planted our artillery in ſuch a manner as to command the whole harbour, and then embarked with a party of ſeamen, ſupported by the marines, and rowed to the landing place, where we have before obſerved the natives were drawn up in two diviſions. The intermediate ſpace between them was about 40 yards, in which

BRITISH 7 FE 80 MUSEUM

Published by Alex.r Hogg at the Kings Arms N.o 16 Paternoster Row.



A VIEW in the ISLAND of TANNA.

Noble sculp.

which were laid a few plantains, two or three roots, and a yam. Between theſe and the water, four ſmall reeds were ſtuck upright in the ſand, in a line at right angles to the ſhore, for what purpoſe we could not learn. They remained here for ſome days. By theſe the old man ſtood, and two companions, who by various ſigns invited us to land, but we thought theſe a decoy, and looked ſomething like the trap we had like to have been caught in at the laſt iſland. We made ſigns for the diviſions to retire back, but to theſe they paid not the leaſt regard, their number every moment was augmented, and, except two or three old men, not one unarmed. From all theſe circumſtances we concluded they meant to attack us as ſoon as we landed; but this we wiſhed to avoid, as many of them muſt have been killed or wounded, and we could not expect to come off without ſome damage. We thought it therefore better to frighten them into a more peaceable behaviour, and therefore a muſquet was fired over the party on our right, which for about a minute had the deſired effect, but they ſoon returned to their daring behaviour. The ſhip was then ordered, by ſignal, to fire two or three great guns, which preſently diſperſed them. We immediately landed, and marked out the limits on the right and left, by a line. Our old friend, who ſtood his ground, we rewarded with a preſent. Some of the natives returned, with a more friendly aſpect. Many came without their weapons, but the greateſt part with them. We made ſigns that they ſhould lay them down, and they gave us to underſtand, that we muſt lay down ours firſt. Thus both ſides ſtood under arms, and the preſents we made to the old people had little influence on their conduct. Many were afraid to touch what belonged to us, and climbing the cocoa-nut trees, they threw us down the nuts, but they ſeemed to have no notion of exchanging one thing for another, though we always took care they ſhould have a compenſation. We took the old man (whoſe name we now found to be Paowang) to the woods, and made him underſtand we wanted to cut down ſome trees, to which he readily conſented, provided fruit trees were not of the number. At the ſame time we cut down ſome trees, which we put into our boats, and a few ſmall caſks of water, with a view of letting the natives ſee what we chiefly wanted. Thus far matters were pretty well ſettled: we returned on board to dinner, and they all diſperſed. In the afternoon a fiſhing party went out. We loaded the launch with water, and having made three hauls with the ſeine, caught upwards of 300 pounds of mullet and other fiſh. During this time not above thirty of the natives appeared, among whom was our truſty friend Paowang, who made us a preſent of a pig, the only one we got at this place. Throughout the night the volcano, which was about four miles to the weſt of us, emitted vaſt quantities of fire and ſmoke, attended by a violent rumbling noiſe: this was increaſed by a heavy ſhower of rain, which fell at this time. The noiſe was like that of thunder, or the blowing up of mines; the flames were ſeen to riſe above the hills: and the air was loaded with aſhes, with which every thing was covered. They reſembled a kind of fine ſand, or rather ſtone ground to powder, and the duſt was not a little troubleſome to the eyes.

On Sunday the 7th, the natives began to aſſemble again, early in the morning, with their weapons, as before, but not in ſuch numbers: notwithſtanding this, we landed in order to get water, and cut wood. We found moſt of the old people diſpoſed to be our friends, but the younger being daring and inſolent, obliged us to ſtand to our arms. Mr. Edgecumbe, one of the lieutenants who commanded the party, fired, and wounded a man with a ſwan-ſhot, after which the others behaved better, and when our people embarked they all retired in a peaceable manner. While we were at dinner an old man came on board, and after having examined ſeveral parts of the ſhip, returned to his friends on ſhore. We were now on a tolerable footing with ſuch of the natives who lived in the neighbourhood, who only made their appearance, ſo that a ſergeant's guard was thought ſufficient for the protection of the wood and water parties. Some of our people had left an ax on the beach or in the woods, which Paowang returned to us; alſo a few other articles which had been loſt through negligence. The natives invited ſome of our people to go home with them, on condition that they would ſtrip themſelves naked as they were; a proof of their not harbouring a deſign of robbing them, whatever other they might have. On the 8th, early in the morning, the launch was ſent under the protection of a party of marines in another boat, to take in wood, water, and ballaſt, when the natives ſeemed pretty well reconciled to us. On the 9th, our people were employed about the ſame buſineſs, and Capt. Cook was received very courteouſly by the natives, though armed, inſomuch that there was no longer any occaſion to mark out the limits by a line, ſeeing they obſerved them without this precaution. He prevailed on a young man, named Wha-a-gou to accompany him on board, but nothing in the ſhip ſeemed to engage his attention. The goats, dogs, and cats, he called by the ſame name, which in his language ſignifies hogs. He ſeemed more fond of a dog and bitch than of any other animals, and we preſented him with one of each. He ſat down to dinner with us, but would only juſt taſte our ſalt pork; however he eat pretty heartily of yam, and drank a glaſs of wine. Some of this young man's friends were probably doubtful of his ſafety, and therefore followed him in a canoe, but on his ſpeaking to them out of the cabin window, they went on ſhore, and ſoon returned with a cock, ſome cocoa-nuts, and a ſugar cane. After dinner he was conducted aſhore loaded with preſents. Upon landing, ſome of his friends took Capt. Cook by the hand, and, as we underſtood, would have led him to their habitations, but on the way, they made a ſudden ſtop, and were unwilling he ſhould proceed. The captain was deſired to ſit down. During this interval ſeveral of our gentlemen paſſed us, at which they expreſſed great uneaſineſs, and importuned the captain ſo much to order them back, that he was obliged to comply. Indeed they were not only jealous of our going up the country, but even along the ſhore of the harbour. While we were waiting here, our friend Paowang brought us a preſent of fruit and roots, by a party of 20 men, though they might all have been carried by two; perhaps this might be done with the view of making the preſent appear the greater; for one had a bunch of plantains, another a yam, a third a cocoa nut, &c. The captain paid theſe porters, though the preſent was in return for one he had made in the morning. Wha-a-gou and his friends were ſtill for detaining us, and ſeemed to wait with impatience for ſomething to give us in return for the dogs, but night approaching, we deſired to depart; and they complied with our ſolicitations. We now learnt, by means of Mr. Forſter's enquiries, that the proper name of this iſland is Tanna. The natives alſo told us the names of other neighbouring iſles. That we touched at laſt is called Erromango; the ſmall one which we ſaw the morning we landed here, Immer; the table iſland to the eaſt, diſcovered at the ſame time, Erronan, or Footoona: and one that lies to the S. E. Annattom; all which iſlands are to be ſeen from Tanna. It is a little remarkable, that the natives of this iſland were more ſcrupulous in taking any thing from the ſailors, than thoſe of any other nation, and never would touch with their bare hands what was given them, but always received it between green leaves, which they afterwards tied up and carried upon the ends of their clubs; and if any of our ſeamen touched their ſkin, they always rubbed the part with a green leaf. When theſe people make a wonder at any thing, they cry Hebow, and ſhake their right-hands. They wear bracelets, like as the Indians of Venomous Bay, in which they ſtick their hair pricker, and likewiſe their ſlings, with which they throw their javelins: and it is aſtoniſhing with what dexterity and force ſome of them will hit a mark. One of them, in the preſence of the firſt lieutenant, ſhot a fiſh as it ſwam along in the ſea, at the diſtance of 26 yards, with a bow and arrow, which fiſh the lieutenant carried on board with the arrow ſticking in his body, as a proof of what he had ſeen performed. But notwithſtanding their delicacy and ſkill as markſmen, they gave us to underſtand that they eat one another; and one day when the inhabitants about the bay had marched forth armed, on an expedition, to a diſtant part of the iſland, thoſe that remained invited us to feaſt upon a man whom they had barbiqued, which invitation our gentlemen refuſed with the utmoſt diſguſt. It has been ſaid, that no nation could be cannibals, had they other fleſh beſides human to eat, or did not want food; but we cannot aſcribe the ſavage cuſtom of theſe people to neceſſity, ſince the iſland abounds with plenty of hogs, fowls, vegetables, and fruit. While ſome of our people were employed in ſearching for ballaſt, they diſcovered water iſſuing from the crevices of a rock, hot enough to draw tea; which circumſtance led to the diſcovery of ſome hot ſprings, at the foot of the cliff, below high water mark. In one place the waters were ſo hot, that there was no bearing the finger in them: in another they were juſt hot enough to bear to plunge the whole body, but not remain long therein. Two of the ſhip's company, who had been troubled with rheumatic complaints, at times, throughout the voyage, went accompanied with the ſurgeon, to one of theſe ſprings, but found the ſtones ſo hot that they could not ſtand upon them, without firſt plunging in ſome of their cold garments, to keep the ſoles of their feet from touching them; but the effect of theſe waters was found to be only a temporary relief.

On Wedneſday the 10th, Mr. Wales, accompanied by ſome of the officers, proceeded for the firſt time into the country, and met with civil treatment from the natives. They ſaw in the courſe of this and another excurſion, ſeveral fine plantations of plantains, ſugar-canes, &c. and by this time, the natives in our neighbourhood, appeared ſo well reconciled to us, that they expreſſed no marks of diſpleaſure at our rambling ſhooting parties. But after we had been ſeveral days taking in wood and water, they began again to be troubleſome, watching every opportunity to level their arrows at the guard, and ſeemed to be reſtrained only by the fear of their muſquets from proceeding to extremity. It is more than probable, however, that an act of violence on the part of our men, might, by a wanton uſe of their fire-arms, have cauſed their reſentment; for in the afternoon of this day, a few boys, having thrown two or three ſtones at the wood-cutters, they were fired at by the petty officers preſent on duty. Having occaſion for ſome large timber to repair the decays of the ſhip, orders had been given a few days before, to cut down a tree of vaſt growth; and for the convenience of getting it aboard, to ſaw it into three pieces. This tree ſo divided, the natives eyed with pleaſure, not ſuſpecting our men intended to carry it off, but to leave it in compliment to them, as it ſuited exactly their ideas of conſtructing juſt double the number of canoes. To the cutting down and ſawing the trees the natives made no oppoſition; but when they ſaw the ſailors employed in rolling down the body of the tree to the water's edge, they could not help looking ſurly; and one of them, probably more intereſted than the reſt, was frequently ſeen to offer his ſpear at the labourers, but was reſtrained for fear of the guard: at length he watched his opportunity, and, ſtarting from behind a buſh, was levelling an arrow at the commanding officer, when he was diſcovered, and ſhot dead. The ball tore his arm to pieces, and entered his ſide. His companions inſtantly carried off the body, and laid it in the wood, where the ſhip's ſurgeon went to examine it, but found the man totally deprived of life. Capt. Cook was much diſpleaſed with the conduct of theſe officers, and took meaſures to prevent a wanton uſe of fire-arms for the future. The ſhip's company were now permitted to go aſhore only by turns, for the preſervation of their health; and the captain knowing the natives wanted nothing ſo much as an opportunity to revenge the death of their companions, ſtrictly enjoined them never to walk alone; nor to ſtray more than 100 yards from the guard.

On Thurſday the 11th, during the night, the volcano was very troubleſome, and threw out great quantities of fire and ſmoke, with a moſt tremendous noiſe; and ſometimes we ſaw great ſtones thrown into the air. In ſeveral parts of the harbour, places were found from whence a ſulphureous ſmell iſſued, and the ground about theſe were very hot. Mr. Forſter and his botanizing party, on one ſide of the harbour, fell in with our friend Paowang's houſe. Moſt of the articles he had received from us were ſeen hanging about the buſhes and trees near his dwelling. On the 12th, the volcano was more furious than ever, and we were much moleſted with the aſhes. Some of our gentlemen attempted to aſcend a hill at ſome diſtance, with an intent of obſerving the volcano more diſtinctly; but they were obliged to retreat precipitately, the ground under them being ſo hot, that they might as well have walked over an oven: the ſmell too of the air was intolerably ſulphureous, which was occaſioned by a ſmoke that iſſued from the fiſſures of the earth; yet in this ſmoke the natives ſeek a remedy for cutaneous diſorders. Mr. Forſter obſerving a man holding a child over the ſmoke, had the curioſity to enquire the reaſon, who made him underſtand, by ſhewing the child's eruptions, that it was troubled with the itch. The rain that fell this day was a mixture of water, ſand, and earth; ſo that we had, properly ſpeaking, ſhowers of mire. The natives pretended to be unwilling, that we ſhould this day go far up the country by ourſelves, and offered their ſervices to conduct us to the mouth of the volcano. We readily accepted their offer, but inſtead of ſhewing us the way to the place, we found ourſelves near the harbour before we diſcovered the trick.

On Saturday the 13th, Paowang came on board to dine with us. We took this opportunity of ſhewing him every part of the ſhip, and a variety of trading articles, hoping he might ſee ſomething that he liked, and ſo a traffic be carried on with the natives for refreſhments, of which what we had hitherto obtained were very trifling. But Paowang beheld every thing with the greateſt indifference, except a wooden ſand-box, of which he took ſome notice. On the 14th, a party of us endeavoured to get a nearer view of the volcano, and took our rout by the way of one of thoſe hot places already mentioned. In the way we dug a hole, into which was put a thermometer of Fahrenheit's conſtruction. The mercury roſe to 100 degrees; but the inſtrument remained in the hole near three minutes without its riſing or falling. At this place the earth was a kind of white clay, and had a ſulphureous ſmell. It was ſoft and moiſt under the ſurface, over which was a thin dry cruſt, having upon it ſome ſulphur, and a vitriolic ſubſtance, taſting like alum. The place affected moſt by the heat, and where we made the experiment, was not above eight or ten yards ſquare. Near this was a fig-tree which ſeemed to like its ſituation. We proceeded up the hill through a country entirely covered with plants, ſhrubs, and trees, inſomuch that the bread-fruit, and cocoa-nut trees, were in a manner choaked up. Here and there we met with a few people, a houſe or two and ſome plantations in different ſtates; one appearing of long ſtanding; another lately cleared; and ſeveral juſt ready for planting. The clearing a piece of ground muſt be a work of much time and labour, ſeeing their working tools, though the ſame as thoſe uſed in the Society Iſles, are inferior to them; nevertheleſs their method is judicious, and as expeditious as well can be. They dig under the roots of the large trees, and there burn the branches, plants, and ſmall ſhrubs. In ſome parts, the ſoil is a rich black mould; in others a kind of compoſt formed of decayed vegetables and the aſhes of the volcano. We now came to a plantation where we ſaw a man at work, who offered to be our guide. We had not walked far before we came to the junction of two roads, in one of which ſtood a man with a ſling and ſtone, which he would not lay down till a muſquet was pointed at him; he ſeemed, however, determined to diſpute the road with us, and partly gained his point, for our guide led us another way. The other man followed, hallooing, as we ſuppoſed, for a reinforcement, and, indeed, we were preſently joined by others of the natives, among whom was a young woman with a club in her hand. Theſe people conducted us to the brow of a hill, and pointed to a road leading down to the harbour. But not chooſing to take this, we returned to that we had left, and here our guide refuſed to go any farther with us. Having aſcended another ridge, we ſaw other hills between us and the volcano, which ſeemed as far off as at our firſt ſetting out. We therefore reſolved to return, and juſt as we were about ſo doing, we were met by 20 or 30 people, aſſembled as we thought to oppoſe our advancing into the country, for when they ſaw us returning, they ſuffered us to go on unmoleſted, and by the way regaled us with a variety of fruits. What we did not eat on the ſpot, they brought down the hill with us. Thus we found theſe people courteous and hoſpitable, when not prompted to a contrary conduct by jealouſy; for which they were not to blame, if we conſider their rude ſtate, and ignorance of our real deſign. This indeed was to pay them a friendly viſit, but conſidering all the circumſtances attending this, might they not reaſonably ſuppoſe, notwithſtanding fair appearances, that we came to invade their country? Did we not enter their ports, without their daring to oppoſe? Did we not effect a landing by a ſuperiority of our arms? Would they not therefore be jealous of ſuch intruding ſtrangers? When we endeavoured to advance into their country they might naturally form unfavourable notions of us; eſpecially if we conſider how often they are at war both among themſelves and with their neighbours. We muſt here obſerve, that ſome of our gentlemen were of opinion, that theſe people were addicted to an unnatural paſſion, Mr. Forſter's man, who carried his plant bag, having been once or twice attempted: but as the carrying of bundles is the office of the women of this country, others thought, the natives might miſtake him for a woman. This man was to-day one of our party, and as he followed the captain down the hill, having his bag as uſual, we plainly underſtood by the converſation and actions of the natives, that they conſidered him as a female; and when by ſome means they diſcovered their miſtake, they exclaimed, with much ſurprize, Erramange! Erramange! It is a man! It is a man! Every one now perceived, and was well aſſured, they had before miſtaken his ſex; and hence it is plain, how liable we are to form falſe conjectures and opinions of a people, with whoſe language we are not much acquainted: for had we not now been undeceived, it is not to be doubted but that theſe people would have been charged with the odious practice of which they had through ignorance been ſuſpected.

In the evening, a party of us again walked into the country on the other ſide of the harbour, where we met from the natives, among whom was Paowang, friendly treatment. They diſcovered a readineſs to oblige us in every thing in their power. We entered the village we had viſited on the 9th inſtant, containing about 20 houſes, built like the roof of our thatched dwellings in England, with the walls taken away, and open at both ends; but others are partly cloſed with reeds, and all were covered with palm thatch. Some are 40 feet long, and 16 in breadth. Beſides theſe, we ſaw other mean hovels. One of theſe was ſeparated from the others by a reed fence, and we underſtood a corpſe was depoſited therein. At one end of the hut hung a baſket, with a piece of roaſted yam, and ſome leaves quite freſh. We had a ſtrong inclination to ſee the inſide, but the man peremptorily refuſed our requeſt. He would neither remove the mats with which one end of the hut was cloſed up, nor ſuffer us to do it; and ſhewed an unwillingneſs to permit us to look into the baſket. He had two or three locks of human hair tied by a ſtring round his neck, and a woman preſent had ſeveral about her neck. We would have purchaſed them, but they gave us to underſtand by ſigns, that they were a part of the hair of the deceaſed, and on that account they could not part with them. This cuſtom is ſimilar to that among the natives of Otaheite and New Zealand, the former make Tamau of the hair of their departed friends, and the latter ear-rings and necklaces of their teeth. Not far from moſt of the large houſes, the ſtems of four cocoa-nut trees were fixed upright in the ground, in a ſquare, about three feet from each other, for the purpoſe of hanging cocoa-nuts to dry. Near moſt of them is alſo a large tree or two, whoſe branches afford an agreeable retreat from the heat of the ſcorching ſun. This part of the iſland is well cultivated, abounding with plantains, roots, and fruit trees. One of our people weighed a yam which exceeded 55 pounds. The trees too are of an extraordinary ſize: but a wide circle in the interior part of the iſland, diſcovered nothing to the eye but a dreary waſte, covered with cinders, and tainting the air with ſulphur. Other ſurrounding iſlands looked pleaſant to the eye; but according to the report of the natives of Tanna, abounding in nothing of which they themſelves could want.

On Monday the 15th, preparations were continued on board to ſet ſail, the ſhip was ſmoaked above and below: the hold freſh ſtowed; the ballaſt ſhifted; the wooding and watering were finiſhed; the rigging ſetting up; and a few hands only were on ſhore making brooms; in ſhort every thing was placed in ſuch order, as if the ſhip had been but juſt fitted out at home for a long voyage. One of the botanical party this day ſhot a pigeon, in the craw of which was a wild nutmeg. Mr. Forſter endeavoured, without ſucceſs, to find the tree. During their excurſion, they obſerved in moſt of the ſugar plantations deep holes dug, four feet deep, and five in diameter, which, on enquiry, we found were deſigned as traps to catch rats in. Theſe animals, ſo deſtructive to ſugar-canes, are here in great plenty. Round the edge of theſe pits, as a decoy, and that the rats may be more liable to tumble in, the canes are planted as thick as poſſible. On the 16th, we found our tiller very much damaged, and by neglect, we had not a ſpare one aboard. We knew of but one tree in the neighbourhood that would do for our purpoſe. The carpenter was ſent aſhore to examine it, and upon his report a party of men were directed to cut it down, after the conſent of the natives had been obtained. They did not make the leaſt objection, and our men went inſtantly to work. Much time was neceſſary to cut it down, as the tree was large; and before they had finiſhed their work, word was brought to the captain, that our friend Paowang was not pleaſed. Paowang was ſent for, and our neceſſity explained to him. We then made him a preſent of a piece of cloth and a dog, which readily obtained his conſent, and the voices of thoſe who were with him in our favour. Having thus obtained our point, we conducted our friend on board to dinner; after which we went with him aſhore to pay a viſit to an old chief, who was ſaid to be the king of the iſland; though as Paowang took little notice of him, we doubted the fact. His name was Geogy. He had a chearful open countenance, though he was old, and wore round his waiſt a broad red and white chequered belt. His ſon was with him, who could not be leſs than 50 years old. At this time a great concourſe of people from diſtant parts were aſſembled near the watering place. The behaviour of many was friendly; of others daring and inſolent; which we did not think prudent to reſent, as our ſtay was nearly at an end.

On Wedneſday, the 17th, Old Geogy, and his ſon, with ſeveral of his friends, dined with us on board the ſhip, every part of which they viewed with uncommon attention and ſurprize. They made a hearty dinner on a pudding made of plantains and greens; but would hardly taſte our ſalt beef and pork. In the afternoon they were conducted aſhore by the captain, after he had preſented them with a hatchet, ſome medals and a ſpike nail. On the 18th, the captain and Mr. Forſter tried, with Fahrenheit's thermometer, when the tide was out, the head of one of the hot ſprings; and where the water bubbled out of the ſand from under the rock, at the S. W. corner of the harbour, the mercury roſe to 202 deg. It is an opinion with philoſophers, that volcanos muſt be on the ſummits of the higheſt hills; yet, this volcano is not on the higheſt part of the ridge, but on the S. E. ſide of it; and ſome of the hills on this iſland are more than double the height of that on which the volcano is, and cloſe to it. Nor is it leſs remarkable, that in wet or moiſt weather, the volcano is more violent in its eruptions. We muſt here content ourſelves with ſtating facts: the philoſophical reaſoning on theſe phænomena, we leave to men of more abilities, whoſe talents may lay in this line. On Friday the 19th, we prepared for ſailing, as the tiller was finiſhed; but the wind being unfavourable, the guard and a party of men were ſent aſhore, to bring off the remainder of the tree from which we had cut the tiller. The captain went with them, and found a good number of the natives collected together near the landing-place, among whom various articles were diſtributed. At the time our people were getting ſome large logs into the boat, the ſentry preſented his piece at one of the natives, and, without the leaſt apparent cauſe fired at, and killed him. A few of the natives had juſt before advanced within the limits, to ſee what we were about, but upon being ordered back, they readily obeyed. The fellow of a ſentry pretended, that a man had laid his arrow acroſs his bow, ſo that he apprehended himſelf in danger; but this had been frequently done, out of a bravado, to ſhew they were armed, and prepared equally with ourſelves. Capt. Cook was highly exaſperated at this raſcal's raſh conduct; and moſt of the people fled with the utmoſt precipitation. As they ran off, we obſerved one man to fall; and the captain went with the ſurgeon, who was ſent for to the man, whom they found expiring. His left arm was much ſhattered, and from hence the ball had entered his body by the ſhort ribs, one of which was broken. What rendered this incident the more affecting was, that the man who bent the bow was not ſhot, but one who ſtood by him. The natives were thrown into ſuch conſternation, that they brought abundance of fruit, which they laid down at our feet. They all retired when we returned aboard to dinner, and only a few appeared in the afternoon, among whom were Paowang, and Wha-a-gou.

On Saturday, the 20th, the wind was favourable for getting out of the harbour; for during the night it had veered round to the S. E. At four o'clock A. M. we therefore began to unmoor, and, having weighed our anchor, put to ſea. As we ſailed we heard a noiſe, not unlike pſalm ſinging. It was now too late to enquire into the cauſe; probably the natives were performing ſome religious acts. We thought that the eaſt point of the harbour was ſacred to religion, for ſome of our people had attempted to go to this point, and were prevented by the natives. They were always jealous of our proceeding into the country beyond certain limits: they might be apprehenſive of an invaſion, and that we meant to take their country from them. All we can ſay is, that no part of our conduct juſtified ſuch a concluſion. We never gave them the leaſt moleſtation; nor did we touch any part of their property, not even their wood and water, without having firſt obtained their conſent. Even the cocoa-nuts hanging over the heads of the workmen, were as ſafe as thoſe in the middle of the iſland. We caught a large quantity of fiſh, and were tolerably well ſupplied by the natives with fruit and roots; and ſhould certainly have obtained more refreſhments, had we had any thing on board that ſuited their taſte. Our cloth was of no uſe to thoſe who go naked, and they had not any knowledge of the utility of iron. Though the people of this iſland, after feeling the effects of the European fire arms, were peaceable, they were not in general friendly; nor were they like the Indians in the Society Iſles, fond of iron: they wiſhed for ſome of the tools with which they ſaw our ſeamen cut down wood; but, except an adze or two, they never attempted to ſteal any thing. The coopers left their caſks during the night unguarded; nor were they under any apprehenſions about their cloaths, which they ſuffered to lie careleſly here and there while they were at work. Theſe people diſcovered none of that diſpoſition to thievery which it has been ſaid every Indian inherits naturally. In their courſe of trade, they totally diſregarded beads and baubles, and ſeemed to prefer Rotterdam fiſh hooks, and turtle-ſhell, to every thing elſe that was offered them. They would not permit the ſailors to have any communication with their wives; nor were they eaſily perſuaded to part with their arms on any account. The produce of the iſland they freely parted with, not requiring any thing in return; but on whatever was beſtowed labour in the conſtruction, they ſet a high value.

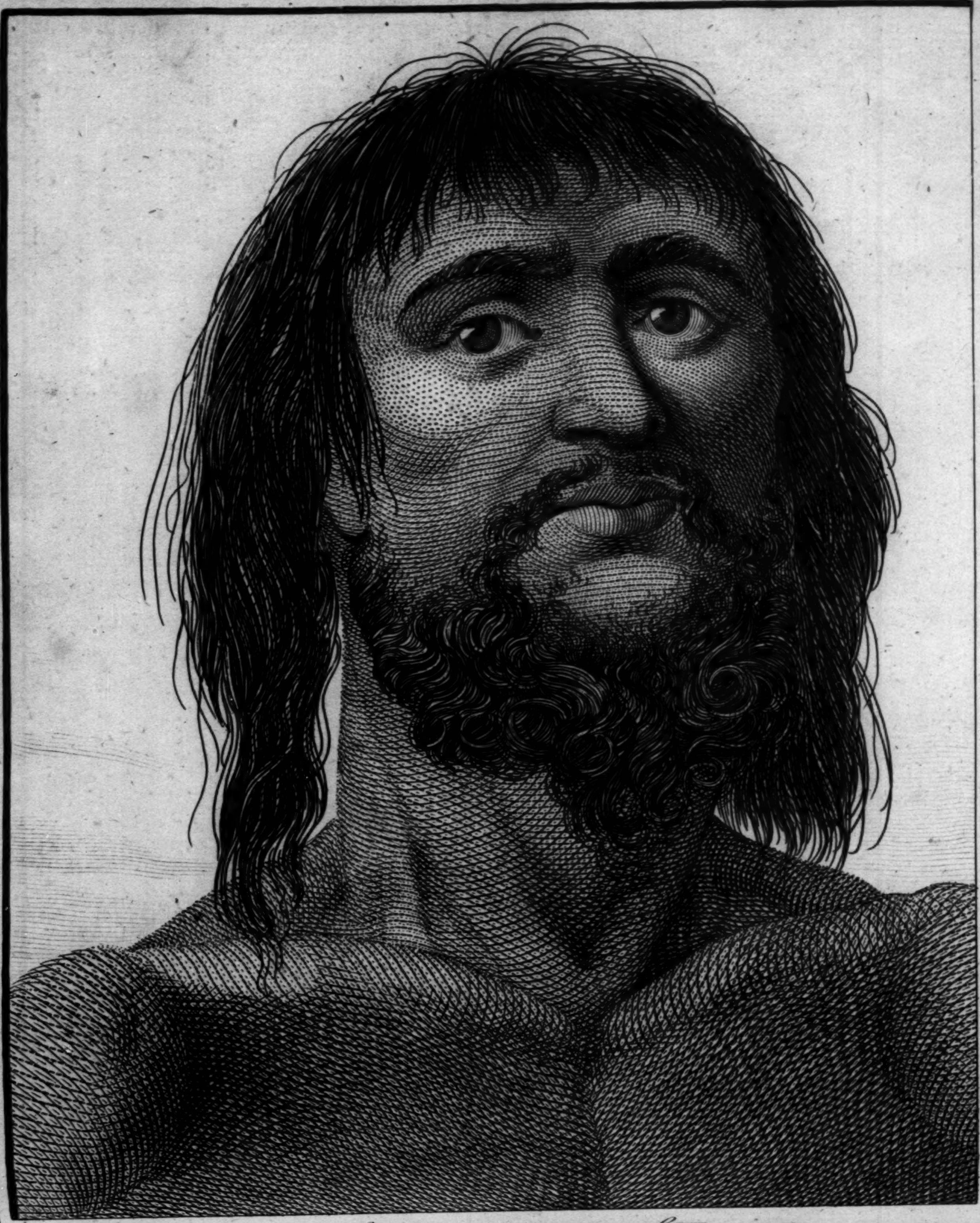
This iſland of Tanna produces abundance of plantains, cocoa-nuts, bread fruit, yams, a kind of potatoe, a fruit like a nectarine, wild figs, ſugar-cane, and a fruit not unlike an orange, but which is never eaten. The bread fruit, cocoa-nuts, and plantains, are neither ſo plentiful, nor ſo good, as at Otaheite; but ſugar-canes and yams are of ſuperior quality, and much larger. We ſaw here a few fowls, and a great number of hogs, but the latter did not fall to our lot; and we did not ſee in all our excurſions any other domeſtic animals. We met with ſome ſmall birds, with a moſt beautiful plumage, which we had never ſeen before. Our botaniſts found many curious plants and trees; as great a variety as at any iſland we had viſited. The inhabitants appear to ſubſiſt chiefly on the productions of the land, and are not much indebted to the ſea, though there are plenty of fiſh on the coaſt. We never found any fiſhing tackle among them, nor ſaw any one out a fiſhing, except on the ſhoals, or along the ſhores of the harbour, where they would ſtrike with a dart ſuch fiſh as came within their reach, and in this art they were very expert. They were ſurprized at our method of catching fiſh with the ſeine, and, we believe, were not well pleaſed with our ſucceſs. The ſmall iſle of Immer was chiefly inhabited by fiſhermen, and the canoes we ſaw paſs to and from the iſle, and the eaſt point of the harbour, we obſerved were fiſhing canoes. Theſe were of unequal ſizes, and compoſed of ſeveral pieces of wood clumſily ſewed together. The joints are covered on the outſide by a thin batten champered off at the edges, over which the bandages paſs. The ſail is latteen, extended to a yard and boom, and hoiſted to a ſhort maſt. Some of the large canoes have two ſails, and all of them out-riggers. They are navigated either by paddles or ſails.

Theſe people have little reſemblance or affinity to thoſe of the Friendly Iſlands, and thoſe of Mallicollo, except in their hair, which is much like what the people of the latter iſland have. The colours are black and brown, growing to a tolerable length and curly. They part it into ſmall locks, which they cue round with the rind of a ſlender plant, down to about an inch of the ends. Each of theſe locks is ſomewhat thicker than the common whip-cord; and they appear like a parcel of ſmall ſtrings hanging down from the crowns of their heads. Their beards are generally ſhort, ſtrong and buſhy. The women wear their hair cropped, as do the boys, till they approach manhood.

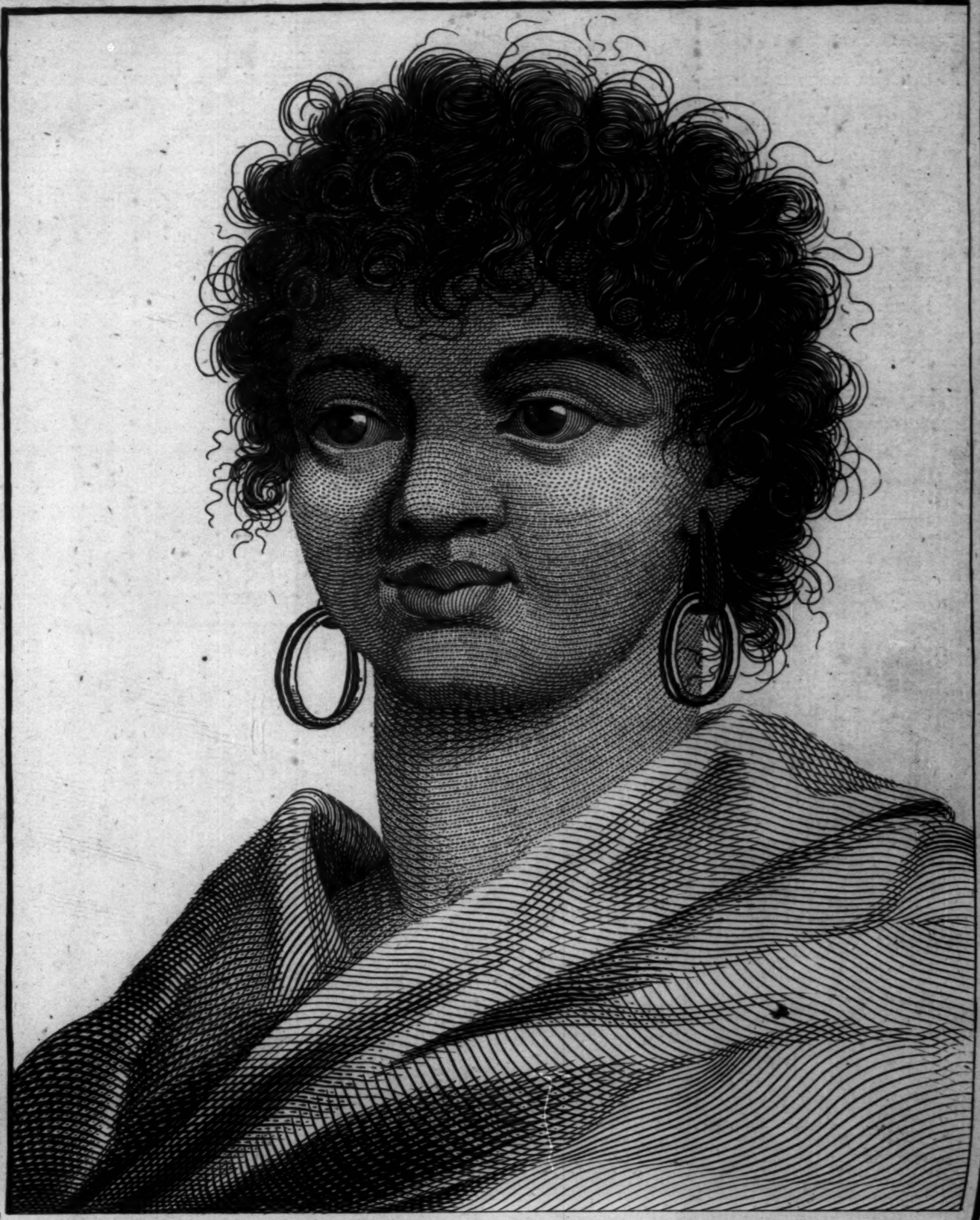
We took ſome pains to diſcover how far their geographical knowledge extended, and found it not to exceed the limits of their horizon. To Erronan we may aſcribe one of the two languages they ſpeak, which is nearly, if not exactly, the ſame as that ſpoke at the Friendly Iſlands. It is therefore probable, that by a long intercourſe with Tanna, and the other neighbouring iſlands, each hath learnt the other's language, which they ſpeak indiſcriminately. The other language which the people of Tanna, Erromango, and Annatom ſpeak, is properly their own. It is different from any we had before met with, and bears no affinity to that of Mallicollo; from whence we conclude, that the natives of theſe iſlands are a diſtinct nation of themſelves. Mallicollo, Apee, &c. were names unknown to them; they even knew nothing of Sandwich Iſland, which is much the nearer. Theſe people are rather ſlender

BRITISH MUSEUM

London Published by Alexr. Hogg at the Kings Arms No. 16 Paternoster Row.



A MAN *of the* ISLAND *of* TANNA.



A WOMAN *of the* ISLAND *of* TANNA.

made, and of the middle ſize. They have agreeable countenances, good features, and are very active and nimble, like the other tropical inhabitants. The females are put to all laborious works; and the men walk unconcerned by their ſide, when they are loaded with heavy burdens, beſides a child at the back. Perhaps the men think, that their carrying their arms, and defending them, is ſufficient. We often ſaw large parties of women carrying various kinds of articles, and a party of men armed with clubs and ſpears to defend them, though now and then we have ſeen a man carry a burden at the ſame time, but not often. The women of Tanna are not very beautiful, yet they are certainly handſome enough for the men, who put them to all kinds of drudgery. Though both men and women are dark coloured, they are not black, nor do they bear any reſemblance to negroes. They make themſelves blacker than they really are, by painting their faces of the colour of black-lead. They uſe alſo a ſort of pigment which is red, and a third ſort brown, all theſe, eſpecially the firſt, they lay on with a liberal hand, not only on the face, but on the neck, ſhoulders, and breaſt. The women wear a petticoat made of leaves, and the men nothing but a belt and wrapper. Bracelets, ear-rings, and amulets, are indiſcriminately worn by both ſexes. The amulets are made of the green ſtone of Zealand; the bracelets of ſea-ſhells or cocoa-nuts; and the necklaces, chiefly worn by the women, moſtly of ſea-ſhells. The valuable ear-rings are made of tortoiſeſhell. Some of our people having got ſome at the Friendly Iſlands, brought it to a good market here, where it was more eſteemed than any thing we offered to ſale. Hence we concluded theſe people caught but few turtle, though one was ſeen juſt as we got under ſail. Towards the time of our departure, the natives began to enquire after hatchets and large nails; from which we concluded, that they had found iron to be of more value and uſe than ſtone, ſhells, or bones, of which their tools are made. Their ſtone hatchets are not ſhaped like an adze, as in the other iſlands, but more like an ax; and in the helve, which is pretty thick, is made a hole, into which the ſtone is fixed.

If we except the cultivation of the ground, theſe people have few arts worth mentioning. They make a coarſe kind of matting, and cloth of the bark of a tree, uſed chiefly for belts. The workmanſhip of their canoes is very clumſy; and their arms come far ſhort of others we had ſeen. Their weapons are bows, arrows, ſtones, clubs, ſpears, and darts. On the laſt they place moſt dependence, and theſe are pointed with three bearded edges. In throwing them, they make uſe of a becket, that is a piece of ſtiff plaited cord about ſix inches long, with an eye at one end, and a knot at the other. The eye is fixed on the fore finger of the right hand, and the other end is hitched round the dart, where it is nearly on an equipoiſe. They hold the dart between the thumb and remaining fingers, which ſerve only to give it direction, the velocity being communicated by the becket and fore finger. The former flies off from the dart the inſtant its velocity becomes greater than that of the hand, but it remains on the finger ready to be uſed again. They kill both birds and fiſh with darts, and are pretty certain of hitting the mark, within the compaſs of a crown of a hat, ſuppoſe the object to be diſtant eight or ten yards; but if twice that diſtance, it is chance if they hit a mark the ſize of a man's body, though they will throw the weapon 60 or 70 yards; for they always throw with all their might, let the diſtance be what it may. Their arrows are made of reeds pointed with hard wood. Some are bearded; ſome not; and thoſe for ſhooting birds have two, three, and four points. The ſtones in general, are branches of coral rocks, from eight to fourteen inches long, and from an inch to an inch and a half diameter. Theſe are generally kept in their belts. Every one carries a club, and beſides that, either darts, or a bow and arrows, but never both. One of our gentlemen on board, made the following remarks on the arms of theſe people, which we ſhall here inſert in his own words. "I muſt confeſs, I have often been led to think the feats which Homer repreſents his heroes as performing with their ſpears, a little too much of the marvellous to be admitted into an heroic poem; I mean when confined within the ſtrait ſtays of Ariſtotle. Nay, even ſo great an advocate for him as Mr. Pope, acknowledges them to be ſurprizing. But ſince I have ſeen what theſe people can do with their wooden ſpears, and thoſe badly pointed, and not of a very hard nature, I have not the leaſt exception to any one paſſage in that great poet on this account. But if I ſee fewer exceptions, I can find infinitely more beauties in him; as he has, I think, ſcarcely an action, circumſtance, or deſcription of any kind whatever, relating to a ſpear, which I have not ſeen and recogniſed among theſe people; as the whirling motion, and whiſtling noiſe, as the ſpears fly; their quivering motion, as they ſtick in the ground; the warriors meditating their aim, when they are going to throw; and their ſhaking them in their hand, or brandiſhing them, as they advance to the attack, &c."

As to the religion and government of theſe people, we are little acquainted with the laſt, and to the firſt are utter ſtrangers. Chiefs they ſeem to have among them; at leaſt ſome were announced to us as ſuch, but they appeared to have very little authority over the reſt of the people. Old Geogy was the only one to whom we ſaw a particular reſpect paid; but whether this was owing to his rank or age, we cannot ſay. On many occaſions we have ſeen the old men reſpected and obeyed. Paowang was ſo, yet we never heard him called chief, nor could we perceive he had any more power than his neighbours, and we may ſay the ſame of every other perſon in our neighbourhood.

The Reſolution being the firſt ſhip that ever entered this harbour, Capt. Cook named it Port Reſolution. It is ſituated on the north ſide of the moſt eaſtern point of the iſland, and about E. N. E. from the volcano, in latitude 19 deg. 32 min. 25 ſec. and half ſouth, and in 169 deg. 44 min. 35 ſec. eaſt longitude. It is but a ſmall creek, running in S. by W. half W. three quarters of a mile, and is about half that in breadth. The depth of water in the harbour is about ſix to three fathoms, the bottom ſand and mud. The landing place is exceeding convenient for taking in wood and water, both of theſe neceſſary articles being near the ſhore. After the water had been a few days on board it ſtunk, but turned ſweet again; and when at the worſt the tin machine would, in a few hours, recover a whole caſk. We now ſtretched, with a freſh gale, to the eaſtward, in order to have a nearer view of Erronan. Having paſſed this iſland at midnight, we tacked, and on Sunday the 21ſt, ſteered S. W. intending to get to the ſouth of Tanna, and nearer Annatom; for though the morning was clear, we had made no diſcovery of any iſlands to the eaſt. At noon, in latitude 20 deg. 33 min. 30 ſec. Port Reſolution bore north, 86 deg. weſt, diſtant about 18 miles: Tanna extended from ſouth, 88 deg. W. to N. 64 deg. W. Traitors Head north 58 deg. W. diſtant 60 miles; the iſland of Erronan, north, 86 deg. E. diſtant 15 miles; and Annatom from S. half E. to S. half W. diſtant 30 miles. At two o'clock P. M. ſeeing no more land ahead of us, we bore up round the S. E. end of Tanna, and ran along the ſouth coaſt at one league from ſhore. It ſeemed to be a bold one unguarded by rocks, and the country made a fine appearance, full as fertile as that in the vicinity of the harbour. At ſix o'clock we ſaw over the weſt end of Tanna, in the direction of north 16 deg. W. the high land of Erromango. We paſſed the iſland at eight, and ſhaped our courſe for Sandwich Iſle, in order to complete our obſervations on that, and of the iſles to the N. W. At four o'clock P. M. we approached the S. E. end. We found it to trend in the direction of W. N. W. In the middle of this range, very near the ſhore, we diſcovered three or four ſmall iſles, behind which appeared a ſafe anchorage. We continued our run along the coaſt to its weſtern extremity, and then ſteered N. N. W. from the S. E. end of Mallicollo.

On the 23d, we came in ſight of the iſlands Pa-oom, Apee, and Ambrym. The firſt of theſe appeared now to be two iſlands. We continued our courſe to within half a league of Mallicollo, on the S. W. ſide, which we ranged at that diſtance. The direction of the land, from the S. E. point is W. by S. for about ſix leagues, and then N. W. by W. for three leagues, terminating in a high point or head land, in latitude 16 deg. 29 min. to which the name was given of S. W. Cape. The coaſt is low, indented with creeks, and projecting points; but, probably, theſe points might be little iſles under ſhore. One we know to be ſuch, lying between two and three leagues of the cape. A round rock, or iſlot, which, by an elbow in the coaſt, forms a fine bay, lies cloſe to the weſt ſide, or point of the cape, connected with it by breakers. We were agreeably ſurprized with the beauty of the foreſts in Mallicollo, from whence we ſaw ſmoke aſcend in various places, a plain indication of their being inhabited: the circumjacent land appeared very fertile and populous. We obſerved troops of natives on ſeveral parts of the ſhore; and two canoes put off to us, but as we did not ſhorten ſail, they could not overtake the ſhip. The moſt advanced land from the S. W. cape, bore N. W. by N. at which it ſeemed to terminate. At noon we were two miles from the coaſt, and by obſervation we found our latitude to be 16 deg. 22 min. 30 ſec. S. and our never failing watch ſhewed, that we were 26 min. W. of it. At this time the S. W. cape bore S. 26 deg. E. and the moſt advanced point of land for which we ſteered, bore N. W. by N. We had run the length of it by three o'clock P. M. and found the land trending more and more to the north. We reached its utmoſt extremity after dark, when we were near enough the ſhore to hear the voices of the people, who were aſſembled round a fire they had made on the beach. We now hauled round the point, ſtood again to the north, and ſpent the night in Bougainville's paſſage, being aſſured of our ſituation before ſun-ſet.

On Wedneſday, the 24th, we had advanced nearly to the middle of the paſſage, and the N. W. end of Mallicollo extended from S. 30 deg. E. to S. 58 deg. W. We now ſteered N. by E. then north along the eaſt coaſt of the northern land. At firſt this coaſt appeared continued, but we found it was compoſed of ſeveral low woody iſles, moſt of them of ſmall extent, except the ſouthermoſt, which in honour to the day, was named St. Bartholomew. It is near ſeven leagues in circumference, and forms the N. E. point of Bougainville's paſſage. We continued our courſe N. N. W. along a fine coaſt covered with woods; in ſome places were white patches which we judged to be chalk. On the 25th, at day break, we were on the north ſide of the iſland, and ſteered weſt along the low land under it, for the bluff head; beyond which, at ſun riſe, we ſaw an elevated coaſt, ſtretching to the north, as far as N. W. by W. Having doubled the head, we perceived the land to trend ſouth, a little eaſterly, and to form a large deep bay, bounded on the weſt by the above mentioned coaſt. It was our opinion, and every thing conſpired to make us conclude, that this was the bay of St. Philip and St. Jago, diſcovered by Quiros in 1606. In order to determine this point, we ſtretched over to the weſt ſhore, from which we were one league at noon, and in latitude 14 deg. 55 min. 30 ſec. S. and in 167 deg. 3 min. E. At half paſt four o'clock P. M. we were only two miles from the weſt ſhore, to which we had been drove by a N. E. ſwell. Here we ſaw large bodies of the natives collected together. Some ventured off in canoes; but they took ſudden fright at ſomething, nor could all our ſigns of friendſhip induce them to come along-ſide. Their nakedneſs was covered with ſome flag-graſs, faſtened to a belt, and which hung down, nearly as low as their knees: this was their only covering. Their complexion was very dark and their hair woolly, or cut ſhort. The calm continued till near eight o'clock, and in the interval of time, we were drove into eighty-five fathom water; ſo that we were under the apprehenſions of being obliged to anchor on a lee ſhore, in a great depth, and in a gloomy dark night; but contrary to our expectations our fears were removed; for a breeze ſprung up at E. S. E. and when we had hardly room to veer, the ſhip came about; our ſails filled on the ſtarboard tack; and we (ſuch was the kind interpoſition of an inviſible agent) ſtood off N. E. On the 26th, we were about eight miles from the head of the bay, that is terminated by a low beach; behind which is an extenſive flat covered with wood, and bounded on each ſide by a ridge of mountains. We found our latitude at noon to be 15 deg. 5 min. S. and at one o'clock, having a breeze at N. by W. we ſteered up to within two miles of the head of the bay. Mr. Cooper and Mr. Gilbert were ſent out to ſound and reconnoitre, while we ſtood off and on with the ſhip. By this, time and opportunity were afforded for three ſailing canoes to come up, which had been following us. They would not come along-ſide, but advanced near enough to receive ſuch things as were thrown out to them, faſtened to a rope. They appeared to be of the ſame colour as the inhabitants of Mallicollo, but were ſtouter made and taller: their beards were frizzled and their hair woolly: yet ſeveral circumſtances concurred to make us think they were of another nation. The numerals, as far as ſix, they expreſſed in the language Anamocha, and called the adjacent lands by the ſame names. Some had their hair long, tied upon the crown of the head, and ornamented with feathers like the New Zealanders. Others wore a white ſhell tied on their foreheads. They wore bracelets on their arms, and a belt round their waiſts. Some were painted with a blackiſh pigment. They had prongs with them, which looked like inſtruments to catch fiſh, and the only arms we ſaw among them were gigs and darts. Their canoes were moſt like thoſe of Tanna, and navigated in much the ſame manner. They gave us the names of ſuch parts as we pointed to; but the name of the iſland we could not get from them. On the return of the boats we were informed by Mr. Cooper and others, that they had landed at the head of the bay, near a fine ſtream of freſh water. We ſteered down the bay, being not in want of any thing, and the wind having ſhifted to S. S. E. Throughout the fore part of the night, on the weſt ſide of the ſhore, the country was illuminated with fires, from the ſea ſhore to the ſummit of the mountains. On Saturday the 27th, at day-break, we found ourſelves two thirds down the bay, and at noon we were the length of the N. W. point, which bore N. 82 deg. W. diſtant five miles; and by obſervation our latitude was 14 deg. 39 min. 30 ſec. Some of our gentlemen were doubtful of this being the bay of St. Philip and St. Jago, becauſe no place anſwered to the port of Vera Cruz; but the captain gave very good reaſons for a contrary opinion. A port is a very vague term, like many others in geography; and what Quiros calls the port of Vera Cruz, might be the whole haven or harbour, or the anchorage at the head of the bay, which in ſome places may extend farther off than where our boats landed. The river was probably one of thoſe mentioned by Quiros, and, if we were not deceived, we ſaw the other.

The bay is every where free from danger, and of an unfathomable depth, except near the ſhores, which are for the moſt part low. It hath ſixty miles ſea coaſt; eighteen on the eaſt ſide, which lies in the direction of S. half W. and N. half E. ſix at the head; and thirty-ſix on the weſt ſide, the direction of which is S. by E. and N. by W. from the head down to two thirds of its length, and then N. W. by N. to the N. W. point. The two points which form the entrance of the bay, are in the direction of S. 53 deg. E. and N. 53 deg. W. diſtant from each other thirty miles. The bay, as well as the flat land at the head of it, is bounded by a ridge of hills: one to the weſt is very high, and extends the whole length of the iſland. Upon this appeared a luxuriant vegetation wherever the eye turned. Rich plantations adorned the ſides of the hills, foreſts reared their towered heads; and every valley was watered with a running ſtream; but of all the productions of nature the cocoa-nut trees were the moſt conſpicuous. Capt. Cook named the eaſt point of the bay Cape Quiros, in memory of its firſt diſcoverer. It is in lat. 14 deg. 56 min. S. and in 167 deg. 13 min. E.

longitude. The N. W. point he named Cape Cumberland, in honour of his royal highneſs the duke. This lies in latitude of 14 deg. 38 min. 45 ſec. S. and in longitude 166 deg. 49 min. 30 ſec. E. It is the N. W. extremity of this Archipelago. On the 28th, and 29th, we took every opportunity, when the horizon was clear, to look out for more land, but none was ſeen: it is probable that there is none nearer than Queen Charlotte's Iſland, diſcovered by Capt. Carteret, about 90 leagues N. N. W. from Cape Cumberland, and the Captain thought this to be the ſame with Quiros's Santa Cruz. On Tueſday the 30th, we plyed up the coaſt with a freſh breeze.

On Wedneſday the 31ſt, we weathered the S. W. point of the iſland. The coaſt which trends eaſt, northerly, is low, and ſeemed to form ſome creeks or coves; and as we got farther into the paſſage, we perceived ſome ſmall low iſles lying along it, which ſeemed to extend behind St. Bartholomew Iſland. Having now explored the whole Archipelago, the ſeaſon of the year made it neceſſary to return to the ſouth; but we had yet ſome time left to make obſervations on any land we might diſcover between this and New Zealand; at which laſt place the Captain intended to touch, in order to recruit our ſtock of wood and water for another ſouthern courſe. To this end, at five o'clock P. M. we tacked, and hauled to the ſouthward, with a freſh gale at S. E. At this time the S. W. point of the Iſland Tierra del Eſpiritu Santo, the only remains of Quiros's continent, bore north 82 deg. W. which Capt. Cook named Cape Liſburne. It lies in latitude 15 deg. 40 min. and in 165 deg. 59 min. eaſt longitude. It may perhaps be pleaſing to our readers to give a ſummary and more accurate view of the iſlands in this Archipelago, as the foregoing account, being given journalwiſe, may not be thought perſpicuous, or plain enough, either as to ſituation or deſcription.

The iſlands which compoſe this Archipelago are not eaſily numbered. We counted upwards of ſeventy in ſight at one time; and they ſeem to be inhabited by people of very different natures and complexions. Some we ſaw were woolly-headed, and of the African race; others were of a copper colour, not unlike the New Zealanders; ſome were of the mulatto colour, and not a few like the natives of Rotterdam, of a browniſh black, with long hair and ſhorn beards. The high notions, however, that were entertained of the vaſt riches of theſe iſlands, of their abounding in pearls, ſilver ore, and precious ſtones, do not ſeem well founded, neither does the iſland of Manicola anſwer by any means, the pompous deſcription given of it by the Spaniſh writers, who found their report on the relation of an Indian chief, and on that of a captive, whom Quiros ſeized, and carried to Mexico. From the former Quiros learned, that to the N. W. of his country (Taumaco) there were more than 60 iſlands, and a large country, which he called Manicola; that, to explain which were ſmall, he made circles, and pointed to the ſea with his finger, and made ſigns that it ſurrounded the land; and for the larger he made greater circles, and the ſame ſigns; and for that large country he opened both his arms, without joining them again, thereby intimating, that it extended without end; and by ſigns he ſhewed which people were whites, negroes, Indians, and mulattoes, and which were mixed; that in ſome iſlands they eat human fleſh; and for this he made ſigns by biting his arm, ſhewing clearly thereby his abhorrence of ſuch people. He alſo gave them to underſtand, that in the great country, there were cows or buffaloes. From the captive Quiros learnt, that in ſome of thoſe iſlands, there were pearls as large as ſmall pebbles; that the pearls were white and ſhining; and that when they looked at them againſt the ſun, the ſhining luſtre dazzled their eyes; that, at five days of their ſailing from a country which he named, lay that great country Manicola inhabited by many people, duncoloured, and mulattoes, who lived in large towns; that the country was high and mountainous, with many large rivers; that he, with many others, had gone to it in one of their embarkations, in queſt of the trunk of a great tree, of the many that are in it, to make a pariagua; and that he ſaw there a port larger, and the entrance narrower, than that of St. Philip and St. Jago, and that the bottom was ſand, and the ſhore ſhingle: he added, that the inhabitants had warlike inſtruments pointed with ſilver. This captive, after he had learnt the Spaniſh tongue, confirmed what he had ſaid of the Great Country, and what the chief had ſaid of the many iſlands, and of the different nations with which they were peopled; ſome luſty, having their bodies punctuated; others not ſo, of various colours, long hair, red, black, curled and woolly. And being ſhewn ſome ſtones impregnated with ſilver, he ſaid, in the great country he had ſeen ſuch kind of ſtones, and likewiſe at Taumaco, where the natives uſed ſome to punctuate themſelves, and others for ornament. From theſe intimations, ſeveral Navigators have inferred, that if Quiros had ſtood to the ſouthward, that courſe would have undoubtedly diſcovered to him the great Southern Continent, or as Quiros emphatically expreſſes it, "the mother of ſo many iſlands." Yet after all, THIS VOYAGE has ſhewn all theſe queſtionleſs affirmations, and probable conjectures, to be no other than mere aſſumptions founded on a falſe hypotheſis. The courſe which Taſman purſued in 1722, joined to that of Capt. Cook's, has demonſtrated the non-exiſtence of a Southern Continent, in the direction in which Mr. Dalrymple ſo poſitively aſſerts Quiros might have found it; and indeed every other direction from the line to 50 deg. of ſouthern latitude, between which he has given it a place.

The iſlands of this Archipelago towards the north, were firſt diſcovered by that able navigator Quiros, a Spaniſh captain, in 1606, and was conſidered as part of the Southern Continent, which, at that time, was ſuppoſed to exiſt. They were next viſited (for the French are very ready to reap the fruits of other peoples labours) by M. de Bougainville in 1768, who except landing on the Iſle of Lepers, diſcovered no more than that the land was not connected, but compoſed of iſlands, which he called the Great Cyclades. But our great navigator, and experienced commander, Capt. Cook, left no room for conjecture, reſpecting the great objects he had in view; for beſides aſcertaining the extent and ſituation of theſe iſlands, he has added to them ſeveral new ones; and having explored the whole with mathematical preciſion, we think he had a right to name them, as he did, the New Hebrides; by which name we ſhall in the remaining parts of our narrative diſtinguiſh them. Their ſituation is between the latitude of 14 deg. 29 min. and 20 deg. 4 min. S. and between 166 deg. 41 min. and 170 deg. 21 min. E. longitude, extending 125 leagues, or 375 miles, in the direction of N. N. W. half W. and S. S. E. half E. We ſhall deſcribe them for the ſake of perſpicuity in the following numerical order:

I. The Peak of the Etoile, as it was named by M. de Bougainville. This is the moſt northern iſle, and, according to his reckoning, lies N. by W. eight leagues from Aurora, in latitude 14 deg. 29 min. longitude 168 deg. 9 min.

II. Tierra del Eſpiritu Santo, which lies fartheſt north, and was diſcovered by Quiros in 1606. This is the moſt weſtern and largeſt of all the Hebrides. It lies in the direction of N. N. W. half W. and S. S. E. half E. and is 66 miles long, 36 broad, and 180 in circumference. The land is exceeding high and mountainous; and the hills in many parts riſe directly from the ſea. Every place, except the cliffs, is beautifully adorned with woods and regular plantations. The bay of St. Philip and St. Jago, forms an excellent harbour, and we doubt not of there being good bays along the ſouth and eaſt coaſts of other ſmaller iſlands.

III. Mallicollo is the next conſiderable iſland, extending N. W. and S. E. In this direction it is 54 miles long. Its greateſt breadth is at the S. E. which is 24 miles. The N. W. end is 16 miles broad; and nearer the middle one third of that breadth. Theſe unequal meaſurements, particularly near the centre, are cauſed by a wide and pretty deep bay, on the S. W. ſide. If we may form a judgment of the whole of this iſland from what we ſaw of it, we muſt conclude it is very fertile and populous. The hills are in the center of the iſland, from which the land deſcends, with an eaſy ſlope to the ſea coaſt, where it is rather low.

IV. St Bartholomew, ſituated between the S. E. end of Tierra del Eſpiritu Santo, and the north end of Mallicollo; the diſtance between which latter iſland and St. Bartholomew is eight miles. The middle of it is in latitude 15 deg. 48 min. Between this iſland and that of Mallicollo, is the paſſage through which M. de Bougainville went; whoſe deſcriptions have very little pretenſions to accuracy.

V. The iſle of Lepers is ſituated between Eſpiritu Santo and Aurora, being diſtant from the former eight leagues, and from the latter three. It lies nearly under the ſame meridian as the S. E. end of Mallicollo, in latitude 15 deg. 22 min. Its figure approaches neareſt to an oval; and it is near 60 miles in circumference. We determined its bounds by ſeveral bearings; but the lines of the ſhore were traced out by inſpection, except the N. E. part, where there is an anchorage half a mile from the land. We muſt here obſerve, that, Aurora, Whitſuntide, Ambrym, Paoom, and it neighbours Apee, Three-hills, and Sandwich Iſlands, lie all under the ſame meridian of 167 deg. 29 min. E. extending from the latitude of 14 deg. 51 min. 30 ſec. to 17 deg. 53 min. 30 ſec.

VI. Aurora Iſland lies N. by W. and S. by E. in which direction it is 33 miles in length; but in breadth, we think, it ſcarcely exceeds ſeven miles, except where the natives have their plantations; its ſurface is hilly, and every where covered with wood.

VII. Whitſuntide Iſland, one league and a half to the ſouth of Aurora, of which it is the ſame length, but ſomewhat broader; and lies in the direction of north and ſouth. Except ſuch parts that ſeemed to be cultivated, and which are pretty numerous, it appeared conſiderably high, and covered with wood.

VIII. Ambrym, from the north ſide to the ſouth end of Whitſuntide Iſland, is two leagues and an half. In circumference this iſland is about 17 leagues. The ſhore is rather low, and the land riſes with an unequal aſcent to a high mountain. We judged it to be well inhabited from the quantity of ſmoke which we perceived to aſcend out of the woods, in ſuch parts of the iſland as paſſed under our obſervation; for the whole of it we did not ſee.

IX. Paoom, of this and its neighbourhood we ſaw but little, and therefore can only ſay of this iſland, that it ſoars up to a great height in the form of a hay-cock. The extent of this and the adjoining iſle (if they are two) do not exceed three or four leagues, in any direction; for the diſtance between Ambrym and Apee is ſcarcely five leagues, and they are ſituated in this ſpace, and eaſt from Port Sandwich, diſtant about eight leagues.

X. Apee. The direction of this iſland is about 24 miles N. W. and S. E. and it is not leſs than 60 miles in circumference. It has a hilly ſurface, riſing to a conſiderable height, and is diverſified with woods and lawns: we ſpeak here only of the weſt and ſouth parts, for the others we did not ſee.

XI. Shepherd's Iſles, which are a cluſter of ſmall ones, of different dimenſions, in the direction of S. E. and extending off from the S. E. point of Apee, about five leagues.

XII. Three-hills. This iſland lies four leagues ſouth from the coaſt of Apee, and is diſtant 17 leagues, S. E. half S. from Port Sandwich. A reef of rocks, on which the ſea continually beats, lies W. by N. five miles from the weſt point.

XIII. Sandwich Iſland is ſituated nine leagues, in the direction of ſouth from Three-hills. To the eaſt and weſt of which line are,

XIV. Two-hills Iſland.

XV. The Monument.

XVI. Montagu Iſlands.

XVII. Hinchinbrook.

XVIII. Two or three ſmall iſles, lying between Hinchinbrook and Sandwich Iſland, to which they are connected by breakers. Sandwich Iſland is 75 miles in circumference, and its greateſt extent is 30 miles. It lies in the direction of N. W. by W. and S. E. by E. We viewed the N. W. coaſt of this iſland only at a diſtance. From the ſouth end of Mallicollo, to the N. W. end of Sandwich Iſle, the diſtance, in the direction of S. S. E. is 22 leagues.

XIX. Erramango lies in the ſame direction; and is ſituated 18 leagues from Sandwich Iſland. It is about 75 miles in circumference. The middle of it is in latitude 18 deg. 54 min. longitude 169 deg. 19 min. E. From the diſtance we were off when we firſt ſaw it, it appeared of a good height.

XX. Tanna. This iſland is ſituated ſix leagues from the ſouth ſide of Erromango, extending S. E. by S. and N. W. by N. It is about 24 miles long in that direction, and every where about nine or twelve miles broad.

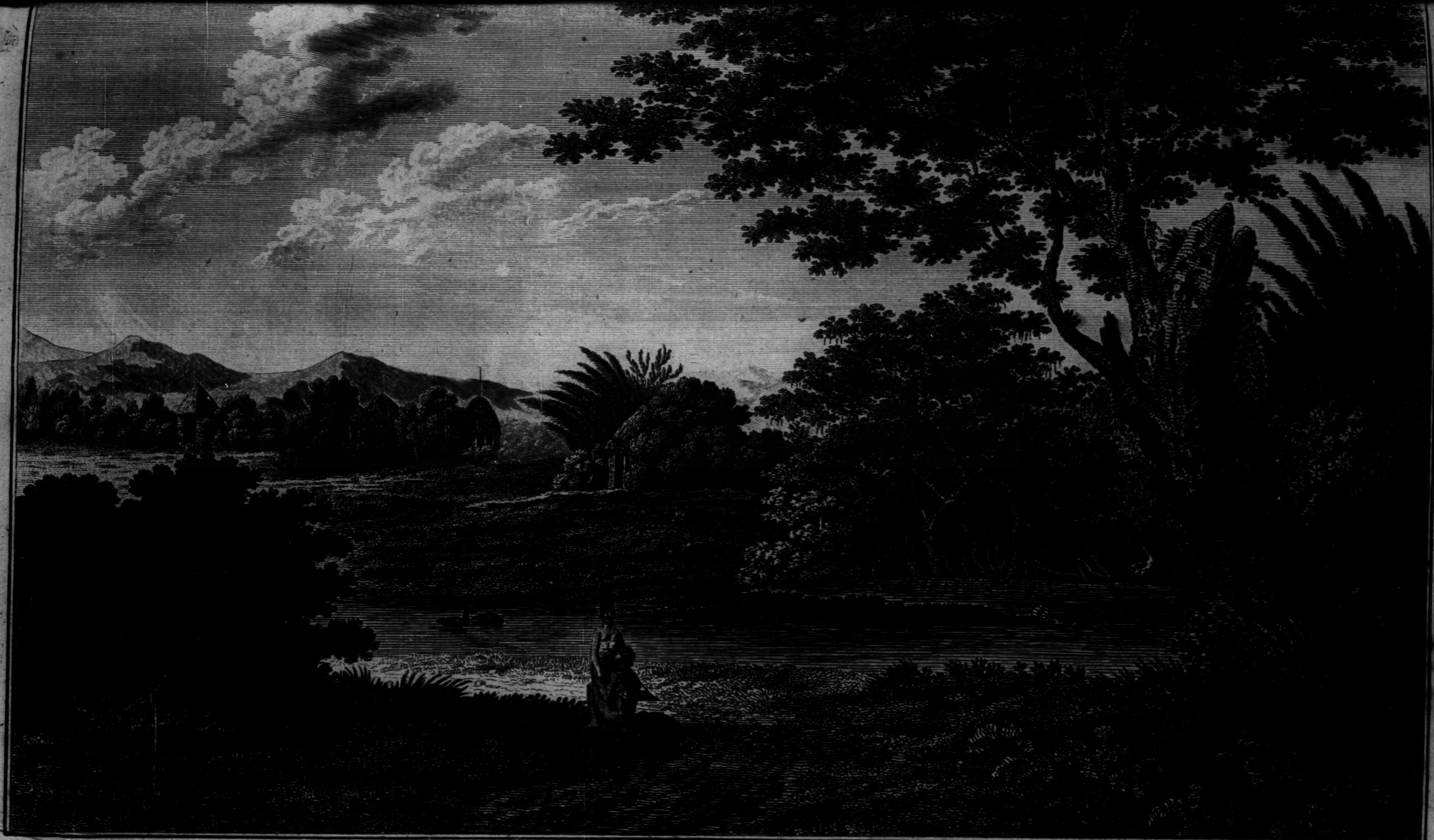
XXI. Annatom. This is the ſouthernmoſt iſland, and lies in latitude 20 deg. 3 min. longitude 170 deg. 4 min. and 12 leagues from Port Reſolution, ſouth 30 deg. E. Its ſurface is hilly, and of a tolerable height; more we cannot ſay of it.

XXII. Immer, which is in the direction of N. by E. half E. four leagues from Port Reſolution in Tanna; and,

XXIII. Erronan, or Footoona, eaſt, lies in the ſame direction, diſtant 11 leagues. This iſland is the moſt eaſtern of all the Hebrides, and appeared to be more than five leagues in circumference. It is high, and on the top flat. A ſmall peak, ſeemingly disjoined from the iſle, though we thought it was connected by low land, lies on the N. E. ſide. This is an accurate deſcription of the principal iſlands in the Archipelago, to which our commander gave the name of the Hebrides; but, as we have before obſerved, there are many others of leſſer note, of which we had only a tranſient view, and therefore cannot pretend to deſcribe.

To this account, in order to render it complete, we ſhall annex the lunar obſervations, made by our aſtronomer, Mr. Wales, for aſcertaining the longitude of theſe iſlands, concerning which Capt Cook obſerves, "That each ſet of obſervations, conſiſting of between ſix and ten obſerved diſtances of the ſun and moon, or moon and ſtars, the whole number amounts to ſeveral hundreds; and theſe, by means of the watch, have been reduced to all the iſlands; ſo that the longitude of each is as well determined as that of the two ports undermentioned, namely, Sandwich and Reſolution. To prove this we need only obſerve, that the longitude of the two ports, as pointed out by the watch and by the obſervations, did not differ two miles. This ſhews likewiſe, what degree of accuracy theſe obſervations are capable of, when multiplied to a conſiderable number, made with different inſtruments, and with the ſun and ſtars, or both ſides of the moon. By this laſt method, the errors which may be either in the inſtruments or lunar tables, deſtroy each other, as alſo thoſe that may ariſe from the obſerver himſelf; for ſome are more critical, and cloſer obſervers than others. If we conſider the number of obſervations that may be obtained in the courſe of a month, (ſuppoſing the weather to be favourable) we ſhall perhaps find this method of aſcertaining the longitude of places as accurate as moſt others; at leaſt it is the moſt eaſy, and attended with the leaſt expence. Every ſhip bound to foreign parts is, or may be, ſupplied upon eaſy terms, with a ſufficient number of good quadrants, proper for making the ſolar or lunar obſervations; and the difference of the price between a good and bad quadrant, can never be an object with an officer. The moſt expenſive article, and what is in ſome meaſure neceſſary, in order to arrive at the utmoſt accuracy, is a good watch; but for common uſe, and where that ſtrict accuracy is not required, this may be diſpenſed

with;



Pellro Sc.

A VIEW *in the* ISLAND *of* NEW CALEDONIA.

with; and it is to be obſerved, that the ordinary way of finding the longitude by a quadrant, is not ſo difficult but that any man with proper application, and a little practice, may ſoon learn to make obſervations as well as the aſtronomers. Indeed, not any material difference has ſeldom occurred, between the obſervations made by Mr. Wales, and thoſe made by the officers at the ſame time.

Lunar Obſervations made by Mr. WALES,

For aſcertaining the longitude of the Hebrides, reduced by the watch to Port Sandwich in Mallicollo, and Port Reſolution in Tanna.

I. PORT SANDWICH.

Mean of 10 ſets of obſerv. before	167°	56′	33″¼
2 ditto, at	168	2	37 ½
20 ditto,	167	52	57
Mean of theſe means	167	57	22 ¾ E. Long.

II. PORT RESOLUTION.

Mean of 20 ſets of obſerv. before	169°	37′	35″
5 ditto, at	169	48	48
20 ditto, after	169	47	22½
Mean of theſe means	169	44	35

CHAP. VII.

New Caledonia diſcovered—Incidents—The country deſcribed—An account of the cuſtoms, manners, and arts of the natives—Obſervations on the coaſt and ſome low iſlands—Remarkable incidents while exploring theſe—The Reſolution is obliged to depart from New Caledonia—This, in Capt. Cook's opinion, is the largeſt iſland in the South Pacific Ocean, except New Zealand—Remarks upon it—Continues her voyage to New Zealand—Obſervations reſpecting the diſcovery of Norfolk Iſland—She arrives at Queen Charlotte's Sound—An account of incidents while the ſhip lay there.

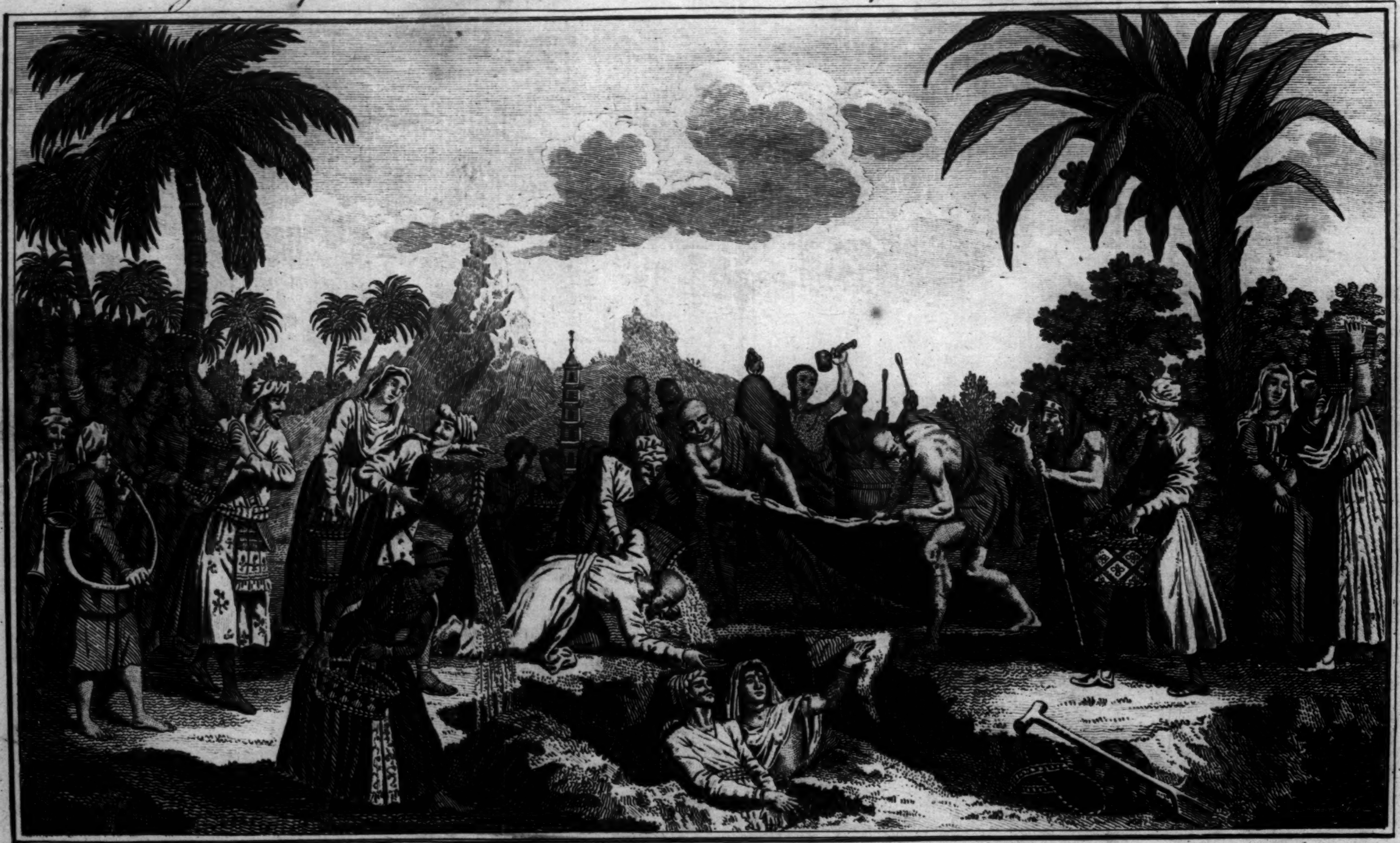
ON September the 1ſt, being Thurſday, we were out of ſight of land, and no more was to be ſeen. We continued our courſe to the S. W. and on the 3d at five o'clock, found ourſelves in 19 deg. 49 min. and in 165 deg. E. longitude. On the 4th, at eight o'clock A. M. we diſcovered land, which at noon extended from S. S. E. to W. by S. diſtant ſix leagues. At five P. M. were we ſix leagues off, when we were ſtopped by a calm. At this time the land extended from S. E. by S. to W. by N. round by the S. W. but as ſome openings were ſeen in the weſt, we could not determine whether it was one connected land, or a cluſter of iſlands. The coaſt to the S. E. ſeemed to terminate to the S. E. in a high promontory, which was named Cape Colnet, after one of our midſhipmen, who firſt diſcovered this land. We ſaw two or three canoes under ſail, and we thought they had come off to us, but they ſtruck their ſails a little before ſun ſet, and we ſaw them no more. On the 5th, we obſerved the coaſt extended to the S. E. of Cape Colnet, and round by the S. W. to N. W. by W. We bore down to N. W. and came before an opening, that had the appearance of a good channel. We deſired to enter it, in order to have an opportunity of obſerving an eclipſe of the ſun, which was ſoon to happen. We therefore ſent out two armed boats to ſound the channel; and at the ſame time we ſaw 12 large ſailing canoes near us. All the morning we had obſerved them in motion, and coming off from different parts; but ſome were lying on the reef, fiſhing as we imagined. When we hoiſted out our boats they were pretty near us; but upon ſeeing this, they returned, and our boats followed them. We now were convinced, that what we had taken for openings in the coaſt was low land, all connected, except the weſtern extremity, which, as we afterwards learnt, was an iſland, called Balabea. The boats having made a ſignal for a channel, we ſtood in with the ſhip. The commanding officer of the boats reported, that there was good anchorage, and that the natives were very civil and obliging. He gave them ſome medals, and in return, they preſented him with ſome fiſh. Having got within the reef, we hauled up S. half E. for a ſmall low ſandy iſle, lying under the ſhore, being followed by all the canoes. We proceeded up the bay more than two miles, and at length anchored in five fathoms water, the bottom a fine ſand mixed with mud, and we were well ſheltered from the wind and ſea. At this time the low ſandy iſle bore E. by S. diſtant three quarters of a mile, and from the ſhore of the main we were one mile. The iſland of Balabea bore N. W. by N. and the channel through which we came north, diſtant four miles. A great number of the natives ſurrounded us before we had well got to anchor, in 16 or 18 canoes, without any ſort of weapons, and we prevailed upon one boat to come near enough to receive ſome preſents. In return, they tied two fiſh to the rope, that ſtunk intolerably. An intercourſe being thus opened by mutual exchanges, two of the natives ventured on board the ſhip, and preſently after ſhe was filled with them. Some dined with us, but they would not eat our ſalt beef, pork, or peaſe ſoup: we happened to have ſome yams left which they were very fond of. Theſe they called Oobee, a name not unlike Ooſee by which they are called at moſt of the iſlands, except Mallicollo; nevertheleſs we found theſe people ſpoke a language to which we were entire ſtrangers. They were quite naked, except the belt and wrapper, which they uſed as the inhabitants of the other iſlands. They had no knowledge of our dogs, cats, and goats, &c. not having even a name for them, but they ſhewed a remarkable attachment to pieces of red cloth and ſpike nails. After dinner time, a party of us went aſhore with two armed boats, and landed amidſt a great number of people, who were induced by curioſity alone to ſee us, for they had not ſo much as a ſtick in their hands, and received us with great courteſy. They expreſſed a natural ſurprize at ſeeing men and things ſo new to them as we were. Preſents were made to ſuch as a man, who had attached himſelf to Capt. Cook, pointed out; but he would not ſuffer the captain to give the women, who ſtood behind, any beads or medals. We ſaw a chief whoſe name was Teabooma, who called for ſilence ſoon after we landed. Every perſon inſtantly obeyed him, and liſtened with extraordinary attention. When he had finiſhed his harangue, another ſpoke, who was no leſs reſpectfully attended to. Their ſpeeches were compoſed of ſhort ſentences. We thought ourſelves to be the ſubject of them, though we could not underſtand them. Having by ſigns enquired for freſh water, ſome pointed to the eaſt, others to the weſt; but our friend undertook to conduct us to it, and for that purpoſe embarked with us. The ground we paſſed was beautifully cultivated, laid out in ſeveral plantations, and well watered. We rowed near two miles to the eaſt, where we obſerved the ſhore to be moſtly covered with mangroves. We entered among theſe by a narrow creek or river, which brought us to a little ſtraggling village where we were ſhewn freſh water. Near this ſpot the land was richly adorned with plantations of ſugar-canes, yams, &c. and watered with little rills, conducted by art from the the main ſprings, whoſe ſource was in the hills. We ſaw ſeveral cocoa-nut trees which had not much fruit on them, and heard the crowing of cocks, but ſaw none. Some roots were baking on a fire, in an earthen jar, which would hold ſix gallons, and we did not doubt, but that this was of their own manufacture. Mr. Forſter ſhot a duck as it flew over our heads, and explained to the captain's friend how it was killed. He deſired to have the duck, and informed his countrymen in what manner it was ſhot. The tide not permitting us to ſtay longer in the creek, we took leave of theſe amicable people, from whom we had nothing to expect but good nature, and the privilege of viſiting their country without moleſtation, as it was eaſy to ſee theſe were all they could beſtow. Though this did not ſatisfy our demands, it gave us much eaſe and ſatisfaction, for they certainly excelled all the natives we had hitherto met with in friendly civility.

On Tueſday, the 6th, in the morning, hundreds of the natives came to viſit us: ſome ſwam, and others came in canoes. Before ten o'clock our decks, and other parts of the ſhip, were quite full of them. The captain's friend brought ſome fruit and a few roots: the reſt had with them only their clubs and darts, which they exchanged readily for nails, pieces of cloth, and other trifling articles. Texabooma came with them, but went out of the ſhip imperceptibly, and by that means loſt the preſent that was intended for him. After breakfaſt lieutenant Pickerſgill was ſent with two armed boats in ſearch after freſh water, for what was found the preceding day could not conveniently be got on board. Mr. Wales alſo, and lieutenant Clerke, went to the little iſland, to make preparations for obſerving the eclipſe of the ſun, which was expected to be in the afternoon. Mr. Pickerſgill having ſucceeded, ſoon returned. The launch was therefore ordered out to complete our water, and the captain repaired to the iſle, to aſſiſt in the obſervation. The eclipſe came on about one o'clock P. M. We loſt the firſt contact by intervening clouds, but were more fortunate in the end; and by obſervations taken with different inſtruments, by Capt. Cook, Mr. Wales, and Mr. Clerke, the latitude of the iſle, at the place of obſervation, was found to be 20 deg. 17 min. 39 ſec. S. The longitude by the diſtance of the ſun and moon, and moon and ſtars, 48 ſets, 164 deg. 41 min. 21 ſec. E. The ſame by the watch 163 deg. 58 min. Mr. Wales meaſured the quantity eclipſed by Hadley's quadrant, a method never before thought of. The captain was of opinion, that it anſwers the purpoſe of a micrometer to a great degree of certainty: if ſo, it is a great addition to the uſe of this valuable inſtrument. In the evening we viſited the watering place, which was a fine ſtream, at the head of a ſmall creek. The caſks were conveyed by a ſmall boat down the creek to the beach, over which they were rolled, and then put into the launch. The boat could enter the creek only at high water. Near this watering place was plenty of excellent wood for fuel, an article we did not at preſent want. In the evening of this day, about ſeven o'clock, died Simon Monk, our butcher. His death was occaſioned by a fall down the fore hatchway, the preceding night. We could not but lament the loſs of ſo uſeful a hand, eſpecially as he was well reſpected and much eſteemed on board the ſhip.

On Wedneſday, the 7th, we made a party to take a view of the country. When we had landed, two of the natives undertook to be our guides. We aſcended the hills by a pretty good path; and in the way met ſeveral people, who accompanied us, ſo that in a ſhort time our train became numerous. From the ſummit of one of the hills we ſaw the ſea in two places, whereby we could determine the breadth of this country, which does not exceed thirty miles. A large valley lay between the ridge we were upon, and the advanced hills, through which glided a ſerpentine river, and on the ſides of the hills were ſeveral ſtraggling villages. The valley appeared rather romantic, by the villages, interſperſed with woods, winding ſtreams, and beautiful plantations, which much improved the ſcene. The other parts of the iſland were moſtly rocky and barren. The little ſoil that is upon the mountains and high places is burnt up by the ſun; yet it is coated with coarſe graſs and plants, and here and there trees and ſhrubs. There is a great ſimilitude between this country and New Holland, under the ſame parallel of latitude, obvious to every one who had ſeen both places. We returned by a different road to that we came by, and paſſed through ſome of the plantations in the plains, which were laid out with great judgment, and appeared to be well cultivated. All the nations in theſe ſeas recruit their land by letting it lay in fallow, but they ſeem not to have any idea of manuring it, except by ſetting fire to the graſs with which it is over-run. Having finiſhed our excurſion by noon, we returned on board to dinner, with one of our guides with us, whoſe attention and fidelity were rewarded at a very trifling expence. In the afternoon, the captain's clerk, being aſhore, purchaſed a fiſh which one of the natives had ſtruck. It had a large, long, ugly head, and bore ſome reſemblance to the ſun fiſh. It was ordered for ſupper, as we had no ſuſpicion of its being poiſonous. Providentially, the time the draughtſman took up in portraying this fiſh, made it too late for us to have it dreſſed; but the captain, and the two Meſſrs. Forſters taſted of the liver and row; and in the middle of the night, they found themſelves ſeized with a weakneſs and ſtupor, which affected their whole frame. The captain had almoſt loſt his ſenſe of feeling, not being able to diſtinguiſh between light and heavy bodies; a quart pot and a feather ſeemed the ſame in his hand. An emetic, and after that a ſweat, were taken by theſe gentlemen, which proved an efficacious remedy. When they roſe in the morning, they found one of the pigs dead, who had eaten the entrails; and when the natives came on board, and ſaw the fiſh hang up, they expreſſed their abhorrence, ſignifying it was not wholeſome food. It is a little remarkable they did not do this when the fiſh was to be ſold, nor after it was purchaſed. On the 8th in the afternoon, Teabooma, the chief, brought a preſent to the captain, conſiſting of a few yams, and ſugar canes. In return for which, among other articles, a dog and bitch was ſent him, nearly full grown. The dog was red and white, but the bitch was the colour of an Engliſh fox. This was done with the view of ſtocking the country with this ſpecies of animals. It was ſome time before Teabooma could believe the preſent was intended for him; but when he was convinced of this, he ſent them immediately away, and ſeemed loſt in exceſs of joy. On the 9th, lieutenant Pickerſgill and Mr. Gilbert were diſpatched in the launch and cutter to explore the coaſt to the weſt, which could not be ſo well effected by the ſhip, on account of the reefs. A party of men was alſo ſent aſhore to cut brooms; but Capt. Cook and Meſſrs. Forſters were confined aboard, though much better. On the 10th, Mr. Forſter was ſo well recovered as to go into the country in ſearch of plants. On Sunday, the 11th, in the evening, the boats returned, and we were informed by the commanding officers, that having reached an elevation the morning they had ſet out, they had from thence a view of the coaſt; and both Mr. Gilbert and Mr. Pickerſgill were of opinion, that there was no paſſage for the ſhip to the weſt. From this place, accompanied by two of the natives, they went to Balabea. They were received by Teabi, the chief of the iſland, and the people who came in great numbers to ſee them, with ſtrong intimations of friendſhip. Our people, that they might not be crowded, drew a line between them and the natives, who underſtood and complied with the reſtriction. One of theſe had a few cocoa-nuts, which a ſailor would have bought, but the man being unwilling to part with them, walked off, and, being followed by the ſailor, he ſat down on the ſand, made a circle round him, as he had ſeen our people do, and ſignified that the other was not to come within it, and the injunction was ſtrictly obſerved. This excurſion to Balabea was rather a fruitleſs one; for they did not reach the iſle till near ſunſet, and left it again before ſun-riſe, the next morning; and the two following days were ſpent in getting up to the ſhip. In going down to the iſle, they ſaw a great number of turtles, but could not ſtrike any, the

wind

Engraved for PORTLOCK'S New COLLECTION of VOYAGES & TRAVELS.



Various Ceremonies & Customs in the EAST INDIES, when a WOMAN has obtained leave to BURY herself ALIVE with her DECEASED HUSBAND.

Publiſhed by Alexr. Hogg March 29. 1794.

BRITISH
7 FE 10
MUSEUM

wind and ſea being rather tempeſtuous. The cutter ſprung a leak, and ſuddenly filled with water, ſo that they were obliged to throw ſeveral things over-board, to prevent her being loſt, and by lightening her, to ſtop the leak. From a fiſhing conoe they met, they got as much fiſh as they could eat.

On Monday, the 12th, early in the morning, the carpenter was ordered to repair the cutter. The captain being deſirous of ſtocking this country with hogs as well as dogs, the former being more uſeful of the two, he took with them in the boat a young boar and ſow, and went up the mangrove creek in ſearch of his friend, the chief, in order to give them to him. We were informed by the natives, that he lived at ſome diſtance, but they would ſend for him: but he not coming as ſoon as we expected, Capt. Cook reſolved to give them to the firſt man of conſequence he might meet with. In conſequence of this determination, they were offered to a grave old man, who ſhook his head, and made ſigns for us to take them into the boat again. On our refuſing to comply, they ſeemed to hold a conſultation what was to be done. After this, our guide offered to conduct us to the chief, (or Areekee) and he accordingly led us to a houſe, where eight or ten middle aged perſons were ſeated in a circle. To theſe the captain and his pigs were formally introduced. They deſired the captain with great courteſy to be ſeated, who began to expatiate on the merits of his two pigs, explaining to them their nature and uſe, and how they would multiply: in ſhort, he enhanced their value as much as poſſible, that they might take the more care of them. In return for our preſent we had ſix yams brought us, after which we went on board. In the afternoon we made a trip to the ſhore, and on a tree near the watering place, an inſcription was cut, ſetting forth the ſhip's name, date, &c. as a memorial and proof that we were the firſt diſcoverers of this country. Much the ſame had been done in other places we had touched at. Near this place is a little village, which we now found to be much larger than we expected. It was ſurrounded with good cultivated land, regularly laid out, planted, or planting, with taro or eddy root, yams, &c. ſmall rills, in pleaſing meanders, continually watered the taro plantations. Theſe roots are planted, ſome in ſquare or oblong patches, which lie horizontal, and are ſunk below the level of the adjacent land, by which means they can let into them, as much water as they think requiſite. Others are planted in ridges, about four feet broad, and three high. On the top of the ridge is a narrow gutter, for conveying the little rills to the roots. The plantations are laid out with ſuch judgment, that the ſame ſtream waters ſeveral ridges. Theſe are ſometimes the boundaries to the horizontal plantations, and where this method is uſed, which is frequently done for the benefit of a pathway, not an inch of ground is loſt. Some of the roots are better taſted than others; nor are they all of the ſame colour; but they are all wholeſome food. The tops are eaten by the natives, and we thought them good greens. The whole family, men, women, and children, work in theſe plantations. Having now fully ſatisfied our curioſity for the preſent, we returned on board, when the captain ordered all the boats to be hoiſted in, that we might be ready to ſet ſail, and put to ſea.

The inhabitants of this country are ſtrong, robuſt, active, friendly, courteous, and not addicted to pilfering, as all other nations are in this ſea. They have in general better features than the natives of Tanna, and are a much ſtouter race; but in ſome we ſaw a reſemblance of the negroes, having thick lips, flat noſes, and full cheeks. Their hair and beards are black. The former is very rough and frizzled; and frequently wants ſcratching, for which they have a well contrived inſtrument, wearing it always in their rough mop heads. It is a kind of comb made of ſticks of hard wood, from ſeven to nine inches long, and about the thickneſs of a knitting needle. Twenty of theſe, ſometimes fewer, are faſtened together at one end, parallel to, and nearly one tenth of an inch from each other. The other ends, that are a little pointed, ſpread out like the ſticks of a fan. Some have their hair tied up in clubs, and others, as well as the women, wear it cropped ſhort. They alſo wear their beards cropped in the ſame manner. They are much ſubject to ſwelled and ulcerated legs, particularly the men, as alſo to a ſwelling of the ſcrotum. When they go out in their canoes, and when unemployed, they wear a coarſe kind of matting, of their own manufacture, and the men of note have a ſtiff, cylindrical black cap, which appeared to be a capital ornament, and mark of diſtinction among them. The dreſs of their women is a ſhort petticoat, made of the leaves of the plantain tree, faſtened by a cord round their waiſts. This is at leaſt ſix inches thick, but not one longer than neceſſary for the uſe deſigned. The outer filaments are dyed black, and the right ſide is ornamented with pearl oyſter-ſhells. Both ſexes are adorned with ear-rings, necklaces, amulets, and bracelets, made of large ſhells, which are placed above the elbow. Various parts of their bodies are punctured. They appear to be a race between the natives of Tanna, and thoſe of the Friendly Iſlands, and they bear ſome reſemblance to thoſe of New Zealand; their language, in ſome reſpects, appear to be collected from theſe three countries. In honeſty and a friendly diſpoſition, they certainly excel all others. However, notwithſtanding this, they muſt ſometimes be engaged in war, otherwiſe they would not be ſo well provided as they are, with weapons of various ſorts. Their clubs are near three feet in length, and variouſly formed, ſome with heads like an hawk, others with round heads. They are all made very neatly. Their darts and ſpears are ornamented with carvings. They take ſome pains to ſhape the ſtones for their ſlings, which are in the form of an egg, only pointed alike at both ends. In ſtriking fiſh with a dart, they are very dexterous, which we believe is the only method they have of catching them, for we ſaw neither hooks nor lines in their poſſeſſion. Their tools are much the ſame as in the other iſlands. They build their houſes circular, reſembling a bee-hive, and full as cloſe and warm; into which they enter by a ſquare opening, juſt big enough to admit a man upon his knees. The roof is lofty and brought to a point at top; the ſide walls are five feet and a half high; both roof and ſides are covered with thatch, made of coarſe long graſs. On the top of moſt of their dwellings is a wooden poſt, which is generally ornamented either with carving, or ſhells, or both. Within are platforms for the conveniency of laying any thing on, and in ſome houſes are two floors, one above the other. On the floors dry graſs is laid, and mats are ſpread for the principal people to ſleep, or ſit on. In moſt of them we found a fire burning, and in ſome two fire places, but they are very ſmoaky and hot, having no chimney, nor vent for the ſmoak but the door; an atmoſphere which to Europeans muſt be very diſagreeable, and as to ourſelves we could ſcarcely endure it a moment; but with reſpect to the natives, the ſmoak is a neceſſary evil, as it prevents the muſquitoes from moleſting them, and theſe are very numerous. Their houſes are better calculated for a cold than a hot climate; and it is owing to their internal heat, that theſe people are ſo chilly when in the open air, and without exerciſe. We often ſaw them make little fires at different places, and ſquat down round them, only to warm themſelves. In ſome particulars their houſes are very neat; for beſides the ornaments at top, we ſaw ſome with carved door-poſts. There are not any partitions in them, conſequently they cannot have any of our ideas that make privacy neceſſary. They cook their victuals in the open air, without doors; and the earthen jar, before mentioned, ſeems to be the only article of their houſhold utenſils worth notice. In this they bake their roots and fiſh. They uſe three or five ſtones, in the form of a ſugar-loaf, to keep the jars from reſting on the fire, and that it may burn the better. On theſe the jars lie inclined on their ſides; and three ſtones are for one jar, five for two. The ſtones are fixed in the ground, and their pointed ends are about half a foot above the ſurface.

face. Water is their only liquor, and their ſubſiſtance is on fiſh, roots, and the bark of a certain tree, which laſt they roaſt before they chew it. Some of our people ſeemed to reliſh the taſte of it, which is ſweet and inſipid. Their fruit trees do not yield much fruit. Plantains are not in abundance; ſugar canes and bread-fruit are very ſcarce; and the cocoa-nuts are but thinly planted.

Notwithſtanding nature has been rather ſcanty in her favours to the iſland, it is not thinly peopled on the ſea coaſt, and in the valleys that are capable of cultivation. We ſaw, it is true, great numbers of the natives every day, but we believe they came from all parts on our account. Down the coaſt, to the weſt, there are but few inhabitants, but from the eaſt, they came daily in large bodies, over the mountains, to viſit us. We muſt, however, confeſs, that what parts of this country we ſaw, are not fit to ſupport many inhabitants, moſt of theſe being barren rocky mountains, the graſs growing on which is uſeleſs to people who have no cattle. The ſea, perhaps, may compenſate for the ſterility of the land. A coaſt encircled with reefs and ſhoals, cannot fail of affording a plentiful ſupply of fiſh. Our botanical party did not complain for want of employment. They obſerved ſeveral plants, common to the eaſtern and northern iſlands; and, among other productions, diſcovered the tree, the bark of which, being eaſily peeled off, is uſed in the Eaſt-Indies for caulking of ſhips. The bark is ſoft, white, and ragged; the wood very hard; the leaves long and narrow, in colour, of a pale dead green, and in ſmell, a fine aromatic. They found alſo a ſpecies of the paſſion flower, which, we are informed has never before been known to grow wild any where but in America. Of the land birds, which are very numerous, we ſaw ſeveral to us unknown, as a kind of turtle doves, very beautiful, many ſmall birds, and one reſembling a crow, though much ſmaller, and its feathers are tinged with blue. We endeavoured, but in vain, to obtain the name of the whole iſland; but we got the names of ſeveral diſtricts, with thoſe of their chiefs. Balade was the name of the diſtrict we were at, and Tea Booma the chief. Tea is a title perfixed to the names of all, or moſt of their great men. The captain's friend, by way of diſtinction, called him Tea Cook. Their canoes are very clumſy, though ſomewhat like thoſe of the Friendly Iſles. Moſt of them are double canoes. They are navigated by one or two latteen ſails. The ſail is made of pieces of matting; the ropes of the coarſe filaments of the plantain tree. They ſail well, but are not calculated for rowing or paddling. They are about thirty feet long, and the deck or platform, about twenty-four in length, and ten in breadth. In our traffic with theſe people, ſmall nails were of little value, nor did they admire beads, looking-glaſſes, &c. and even a hatchet was not ſo valuable as a ſpike nail. Their women here as well as at Tanna, are very chaſte, and we never heard, that one of our people ever obtained the leaſt favour from any one of them. Indeed their ladies would ſometimes divert themſelves by going a little aſide with our gentlemen, as if they meant to be kind, and then would in a moment run away laughing at them. Theſe people depoſit their dead in the ground. Some of our gentlemen ſaw a grave, reſembling one of Roman tumuli, in which, they were informed, lay the remains of a chief ſlain in battle. Round his grave ſpears, darts, and paddles, were ſtuck upright in the ground.

On Tueſday, the 13th of September, at ſun riſe, we weighed, and ſtood for the ſame channel we came in by. At half paſt ſeven we were in the middle of it, when the iſle of Balabea bore W. N. W. As ſoon as we were clear of the reef, we bore up along the outſide of it, ſteering N. W. by W. as it trended. At noon the iſland of Balabea bore S. by W. diſtant about four leagues; and at three o'clock P. M. it bore S. by E. half E. From this place the reef inclined to the N. and then to N. W. Advancing to N. W. we raiſed more land, ſo that Mr. Gilbert was miſtaken, and did not ſee the extremity of the coaſt. At five this land bore W. by N. half N. diſtant near ſeven leagues. On the 14th, the reef ſtill trended N. W. along which we ſteered, with a light breeze, at E. S. E. At noon we had loſt ſight of Balabea, and at three o'clock, we run by a low ſandy iſle, the ſpace between which, and the north-weſternmoſt land was ſtrewed with ſhoals. At ſun ſet, we could but juſt ſee the land, which bore S. W. by S. about ten leagues diſtant. No land was ſeen to the weſtward of this direction; the reef too trended away W. by N. and from the maſt-head ſeemed to terminate in a point; ſo that every appearance flattered our expectations, and induced us to believe, that we ſhould ſoon get round the ſhoals. On the 15th, ſeeing neither land nor breakers, we bore away N. W. by W. but the ſhoals ſtill continuing, we plied up for a clear ſea to the S. E. by doing which, we did but juſt weather the point of the reef we had paſſed the preceding evening. To render our ſituation the more dangerous, the wind began to fail us; in the afternoon it fell a calm; and we were left to the mercy of a great ſwell, ſetting directly for the reef, which was not more than a league from us. The pinnace and cutter were hoiſted out to tow the ſhip, but they were of little ſervice. At ſeven o'clock, a light air at N. N. E. kept her head to the ſea; and on the 16th, at eleven o'clock A. M. we hoiſted in the boats, and made ſail to S. E. A tide or current had been in our favour all night, and was the cauſe (under God) of our getting ſo unexpectedly clear of the ſhoals. On Tueſday the 20th, at noon, Cape Colnet bore N. 78 deg. W. diſtant ſix leagues. From hence the land extended round by the S. to E. S. E. till it was loſt in the horizon, and the country appeared variegated with many hills and valleys. We ſtood in ſhore till ſun-ſet, when we were about three leagues off. Two ſmall iſlots lay diſtant from us five miles, and others lay between us and the ſhore. The country was mountainous, and had much the ſame aſpect as about Balade. On the 21ſt, we found ourſelves about ſix leagues from the coaſt. On the 22d, we ſtood in for the land, which at noon extended from N. 78 deg. W. to S. 31 deg. half E round by the S. The coaſt in this laſt direction, ſeemed to trend more to the S. in a lofty promontory, which, in honour of the day, was named Cape Coronation, in latitude 22 deg. 2 min. and in 167 deg. 7 min. 30 ſec. E. longitude. On the 23d, at day-break, a high point appeared in ſight, beyond the cape, which proved to be the S. E. extremity of the coaſt, to which we gave the name of Queen Charlotte's Foreland. It lies in latitude 22 deg. 16 min. S. and in 167 deg. 14 min. E. longitude. At noon, as we drew near Cape Coronation, we ſaw in a valley to the ſouth a vaſt number of elevated objects, from whence a great deal of ſmoke kept riſing all the day. Capt. Cook was of opinion theſe were a ſingular ſort of trees, being, as he thought, too numerous to reſemble any thing elſe. Some low land under the Foreland was entirely covered with them. The wind having veered round to the ſouth, we tacked, and ſtood off, not thinking it ſafe to approach the ſhore in the dark. We ſtood in again at day-break, on the 24th, and at noon obſerved in latitude 21 deg. 59 min. 30 ſec. Cape Coronation bearing weſt, ſoutherly, diſtant ſeven leagues, and the North Foreland ſouth, 38 deg. W. At ſun-ſet we diſcovered a low land, lying S. S. E. about ſeven miles from the Foreland, ſurrounded with ſhoals and breakers.

Sunday the 25th, we ſtood to S. S. W. with a view of getting round the Foreland, but as we advanced, we perceived more low iſles, beyond the one already mentioned. We therefore ſtood to the ſouth, to look for a paſſage without theſe. We got a light breeze at 7 o'clock, which enabled us to ſteer out E. S. E. and to ſpend the night with leſs anxiety. On the 26th, we ſtretched to the S. E. for an iſland diſtant ſix leagues: and on the 27th, we tacked and ſtood to S. W. with the hopes of weathering it, but we fell two miles ſhort, which obliged us to tack about a mile from the eaſt ſide of the iſland, the extremes bearing from N. W. by N. to S. W. the hill W. and ſome low iſles, lying off the S. E. point, S. by W. Theſe laſt ſeemed to be connected with the large iſland by breakers. The ſkirts of this iſland were covered with the elevations before mentioned, which had much the appearance of tall pines, and therefore the captain named the iſland from them. The round hill on the S. W. ſide may be ſeen fourteen leagues off. This Iſle of Pines is about a mile in circuit, in latitude 22 deg. 38. min. S. and in 167 deg. 40 min. E. Having made two attempts to weather the iſland before ſun-ſet, with no better ſucceſs than before, we ſtretched off till midnight. On the 28th, at day break, we found ourſelves ſeveral leagues to windward of the Iſle of Pines. The coaſt from the S. E. round by the ſouth to the weſt, we ſaw was ſtrewed with ſand banks, breakers, and ſmall low iſles. We ranged the outſide of theſe at nearly a league diſtance, and as we paſſed ſome others appeared; ſo that they ſeemed to form a chain extending to the iſles that lie off the Foreland. In the afternoon we ſteered N. W. by W. with a fine gale at eaſt, with a view of falling in with the land: but we diſcovered two low iſlots, bearing W. by S. They were connected by breakers, which ſeemed to join thoſe on our ſtarboard; on which account we found it neceſſary to haul off S. W. to get clear of them all. At three o'clock P. M. more breakers appeared, which from the maſt head were ſeen to extend as far as eaſt-ſouth; and from the ſmoothneſs of the ſea, we conjectured, that they might alſo extend to the north-eaſt; ſo that we were in a manner ſurrounded with them. Having made a ſhort trip to N. N. E. we ſtood again to the ſouth, and again had the alarming ſight of a ſea full of ſhoals, which we could only clear by returning in the track we came before. We tacked again nearly in the ſame place, and then anchored in a ſtrong gale, in a bottom of fine ſand, having a chain of breakers to the leeward. We ſpent the night in making ſhort boards over the known ſpace we had traverſed in the day; but under the uneaſy apprehenſions of being in the moſt imminent danger. This was very evident on the 29th, at day-light, which ſhewed our fears were not ill-founded, having had breakers continually under our lee, and at a very little diſtance from us. The people on the forecaſtle and lee gangway, ſaw breakers under the lee bow, which we avoided by quickly tacking. We now kept a good look-out, and managed the ſhip briſkly, but after all the moſt prudential endeavours on our part, we muſt aſcribe glory to God, being fully convinced, that we owed our ſafety and preſervation, to the interpoſition of a Divine Providence. Capt. Cook was now inclined to quit this dangerous coaſt, but, however, he reſolved firſt to ſee what thoſe trees were, which had been the ſubject of our ſpeculations, and concerning which many contrary opinions had been maintained. Beſides, he thought the diſcovery might be uſeful to future navigators. Being now but a few miles diſtant from the low iſlands lying off the Foreland, mentioned in our journal on the 25th inſtant, we bore down to that which was neareſt to us. As we approached, we perceived it was unconnected with the neighbouring ſhoals, and thought we might get to anchor under its weſt and lee ſide. Having hauled therefore round the point of the reef, we attempted to ply to windward; but another reef to the north, which formed a narrow channel, through which ran a current againſt us, rendered this attempt fruitleſs. We therefore anchored in thirty-nine fathoms water, about a mile from the iſland, and having hoiſted out the boat, ſent a party on ſhore, accompanied by the botaniſts, who found the trees to be a ſort of ſpruce pines, very proper for ſpars, of which we were very much in want. The carpenter and his crew, after dinner, were ſent aſhore, to cut down ſuch trees as would beſt anſwer our purpoſe. While this work was doing, Capt. Cook took down the bearings of the ſeveral circumjacent lands, &c. The hill on the Iſle of Pines bore S. 59 deg. 30 min. E. the low point of Queen Charlotte's Foreland north 14 deg. 30 min. W. the high land above it, ſeen over two low iſles, north, 20 deg. W. and the moſt advanced point of land to the weſt, bore W. half a point S. diſtant ſeven leagues. This point the captain named the Prince of Wales's Foreland. It lies in latitude 22 deg. 29 min. S. and in 166 deg. 57 min. E. longitude: when firſt ſeen above the horizon, by reaſon of its height, it looks like an iſland. The true direction of the coaſt from the Foreland to this point, had been aſcertained from ſeveral bearings.

On this ſmall Iſle, which is not quite a mile in circumference, grew, beſides the pines, a variety of other trees, ſhrubs, and plants; and theſe having ſufficiently employed the botaniſts during our ſtay, on this account the captain named the little iſland Botany Iſle. We ſaw here ſeveral pigeons, doves, and water-ſnakes, different from any we had ſeen; likewiſe a hawk of the ſame kind as our Engliſh fiſhing hawks. A number of fire-places, and ſome remains of turtle, were ſigns of people having lately viſited this place. In the ſand lay the wreck of a canoe, exactly of the ſame make as thoſe we had ſeen at Balade; and we now were convinced, that of theſe pines they made their canoes. Some of theſe trees meaſured 20 inches in diameter, were 70 feet long, and would have ſerved very well for a foremaſt, had we wanted one. As trees of ſo large a ſize are the produce of ſo ſmall a ſpot, it is reaſonable to ſuppoſe, that larger ones are the growth of the main. This diſcovery may be valuable to future navigators; for except New Zealand, we know of no iſland in the Pacific ocean, where a ſhip can be ſupplied with a maſt or yard, were ſhe ever ſo much diſtreſſed for want of one. This was the opinion of our carpenter, who was both maſt-maker and ſhipwright in Deptford-yard. Theſe trees ſhoot out their branches ſmaller and ſhorter than other pines, ſo that when wrought for uſe their knots diſappear. We obſerved that the largeſt had the ſhorteſt branches, and were crowned at the top with a head like a buſh. The wood is white, cloſe grained, tough, yet light. Turpentine had oozed out of moſt of the trees, which the ſun had formed into roſin. This was found adhering to the trunks, and laying about the roots. The ſeeds are produced in cones. We found here another ſmall tree or ſhrub, of the ſpruce fir kind: alſo a kind of ſcurvy-graſs, and a plant, which when boiled, eat like ſpinnage. The purpoſe being anſwered for which we landed on this iſland, the captain determined not to hazard the ſhip down to leeward, but to try to get to the ſouthward of the ſhoals. The extent of this S. W. coaſt had been already pretty well determined; a more accurate ſurvey might be attended with great riſk and many dangers; it was too late to ſet up and employ the frame of the little veſſel we had on board, and ſhould the Reſolution be hemmed in, we might by that means loſe the proper ſeaſon for getting to the ſouth; theſe reaſons induced the Captain to make ſome trips to weather the ſhoals to the leeward of Botany Iſle. But when this was thought to be effected,

On Friday the 30th, at three o'clock P. M. it fell calm, the ſwell, aſſiſted by the current, ſet us faſt towards the breakers, which were yet in ſight to the S. W. but at ten o'clock a breeze ſpringing up, we ſteered E. S. E. not venturing farther ſouth till day light.

On Saturday, October the 1ſt, we had a very ſtrong wind at S. S. W. attended by a great ſea, ſo that we had reaſon to rejoice at having got clear of the ſhoals before this gale overtook us. We were now obliged to ſtretch to the S. E. and at noon were out of ſight of land.

On the 2d, in the afternoon, we had little wind, and a great ſwell; but at eleven, a freſh breeze ſpringing up, we ſtood to the ſouth. We were now in the latitude of 23 deg. 18 min. and in 169 deg. 49 min. E. longitude.

On the 3d, at eight o'clock A. M. we had a ſtrong gale with ſqualls from the S. W. and the Captain laid aſide all thoughts of returning to the land we had left. Nor could ſuch an attempt be thought a prudent one, when we conſider, that we had a vaſt ocean yet to explore to the ſouth; that the ſhip was already in want of neceſſary ſtores; that ſummer was approaching very faſt, and that any conſiderable accident might detain us from purſuing the great object of this voyage another year. Thus neceſſity compelled us to leave a coaſt, for the firſt time, which we had diſcovered, but not fully explored. The captain named it New Caledonia, and in his opinion, it is, next to New Zealand, the largeſt iſland in the South Pacific Ocean. The extent is from latitude 19 deg. 37 min. to 22 deg. 30 min. S. and from longitude 163 deg. 37 min. to 167 deg. 14 min. E. It lies nearly N. W. half W. and S. E. half E. and is about 87 leagues long, but its breadth does not any where exceed 10 leagues. It here muſt be noted, that in the extent given to this iſland, is included the broken or unconnected lands to the N. W.

On Thurſday the 6th, we continued our courſe to New Zealand, with this view we ſailed S. S. E. having a blowing freſh gale, but at noon it fell calm. At this time we found ourſelves by obſervation, in latitude 27 deg. 50 min. S. and in 171 deg. 43 min. E. longitude. During the calm, which continued all this day, the carpenters were employed in caulking the decks. This was done with varniſh of pine, covered with coral ſand, as they had neither pitch, tar, nor roſin left. The experiment with reſpect to the cement, far exceeded their expectations. In the afternoon, two albatroſſes were ſhot, which, at this time, we thought equally good as geeſe.

On the 7th a breeze ſprung up, and fixed at S. E. by S. The day following we had a gentle gale, attended with fine weather. On the 9th we were in latitude 28 deg. 25 min. and in 170 deg. 26 min. E. longitude. In the evening, Mr. Cooper ſtruck a porpoiſe. It was ſix feet long, and a female, called by naturaliſts the dolphin of the antients, and which differs from the common porpoiſe in the head and jaw, which are long and pointed. This had 88 teeth in each jaw. It was firſt ſoaked in water, then roaſted, broiled, and fried. To us who had long ſubſiſted on ſalt meat, it was more than palatable; and we thought the haſlet, and lean fleſh, a delicious feaſt.

On the 10th we diſcovered land, ſituated in latitude 29 deg. 2 min. 30 ſec. S. and in 168 deg. 16 min. E. longitude. Capt. Cook called it Norfolk Iſland, in honour of the Howard family, who have the title of the duke of Norfolk. We anchored here in 22 fathoms water, on a bank of coral ſand, mixed with broken ſhells. After dinner, a party of us embarked in two boats, and landed on the iſland behind ſome large rocks. It was uninhabited, and we were undoubtedly the firſt who ever ſet foot upon it. We obſerved many trees and plants common to New Zealand, particularly the flax plant, which grows very luxuriant here. We found in great abundance the ſpruce pine trees, ſtraight and tall, and many of them as thick as two men could fathom. The ſoil of this iſland is rich and deep, the woods perfectly clear from underwood, and for about 200 yards from the ſhore, the ground is covered with ſhrubs and plants. We found here many ſea and land fowl, of the ſame kind as in New Zealand; likewiſe cabbage-palm, wood-ſorrel, ſow-thiſtle, and ſamphire. The cabbage-trees were not thicker than a man's leg, and from 10 to 20 feet high. The cabbage, each tree producing but one, is at the top, incloſed in the ſtem. This vegetable is not only wholeſome, but exceedingly palatable; and ſome excellent fiſh we caught made a luxurious entertainment.

On Tueſday the 11th, we ſailed from Norfolk Iſland, which we weathered, having ſtretched to S. S. W. We found the coaſt bounded with rocky cliffs and banks of coral ſand. On the ſouth ſide lie two iſles, which ſerve as rooſting and breeding places, for white boobies, gulls, tern, &c. A bank of coral ſand and ſhells, ſurrounds the iſle, and extends, eſpecially ſouthward, ſeven leagues off. Our intention at this time was to refreſh the crew, and repair the ſhip, in Queen Charlotte's Sound.

On Monday the 17th, we had in view mount Egmont, perpetually covered with ſnow, bearing S. E. half E. diſtant about eight leagues. The wind now blew a freſh gale, with which we ſteered S. S. E. for Queen Charlotte's Sound. The wind at laſt increaſed in ſuch a manner, that we could carry no more ſail than the two courſes, and two cloſe-reefed topſails: under theſe we ſteered for Cape Stevens, which we made at 11 o'clock at night.

On the 18th, we made a trip to the north, and bore away for the ſound. We hauled round Point Jackſon, at nine A. M. and at 11 o'clock anchored before Ship Cove, the wind and tide not permitting us to get in. Capt. Cook in the afternoon went aſhore, and looked for the bottle, with the memorandum, which he left when laſt here, but it was taken away by ſome perſon or other. The ſeine was hauled twice and only four fiſh caught: but ſeveral birds were ſhot, and the neſts of ſome ſhags were robbed of their young ones.

On the 19th, the ſhip was warped into the cove, and moored. The ſails were unbent, ſeveral of them having been much damaged in the late gale. The main and fore courſes were condemned, and the topmaſts were ſtruck and unrigged. The forge was ſet up, and tents erected on ſhore for the reception of a guard, &c. Plenty of vegetables were gathered for the refreſhment of the crew, which were boiled every morning with oatmeal and portable broth for breakfaſt. From ſome circumſtances, as cutting down trees with ſaws and axes, and a place found where an obſervatory had been ſet up in our abſence, we had no doubt but the Adventure had been in this cove ſince we left it.

On the 20th our men began to caulk the ſhip's ſides, and on Saturday the 22d, the captain accompanied by the botaniſts went to viſit our gardens in Motuara, which we found had been wholly neglected by thoſe of the natives to whom we had given them in charge; nor had any care or cultivation been beſtowed on them. Nevertheleſs, the ſoil ſeemed to agree well with the plants, for many of them were in a flouriſhing condition. Not having hitherto ſeen any of the natives, we made a fire on the land, hoping this would induce them to come down to us.

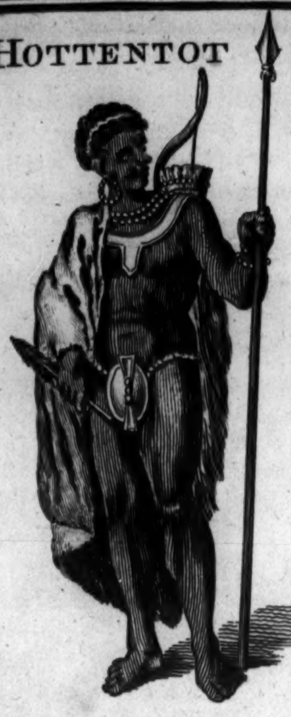
On the 24th, we ſaw two canoes coming down the ſound, which, when the ſhip was ſeen by the people, retired behind a point on the weſt-ſide. After breakfaſt we went in ſearch of them, and having fired at ſeveral birds, the report of our pieces gave notice of our being near, and they diſcovered themſelves by hallooing to us in Shag Cove; but when we landed, and drew near to their habitations, they all fled, except two or three men, who maintained their ground, with their weapons in their hands. The moment we landed they knew us, and their fears ſubſided. Thoſe who had fled returned from the woods, embraced us over and over again, and expreſſed their joy at ſeeing us, by jumping and dancing in a frantic manner; but the men would not ſuffer ſome women we ſaw at a diſtance to come near us. We made them preſents of hatchets and knives, and in return they gave us a quantity of fiſh they had juſt caught. The next morning they brought us more fiſh, which they bartered for Otaheitean cloth. We aſked them on what account they were afraid of us, and alſo what was become of our old friends? To theſe queſtions we got no ſatisfactory anſwers; but they talked much about killing, which was variouſly underſtood by us.

On Wedneſday the 26th, ſome of the natives went to the tents, and told our people, that a ſhip like ours had lately been loſt, that ſome of the men landed at Vanna Aroa, near Terrawhitte, on the other ſide the ſtrait; that a diſpute happened between them and the natives; that ſeveral of the latter were ſhot; and that the natives got the better of them when they could fire no longer, and both killed and ate them. One of the relaters of this ſtrange tale, ſaid it was 20 or 30 days ago; but another ſaid it was two moons ſince, and deſcribed, as well as he could, in what manner the ſhip was beat to pieces. The following day they told the ſame ſtory to others, which made the captain, and indeed all of us, very uneaſy about the Adventure; but when the captain enquired himſelf, and endeavoured to come at the truth of theſe reports, the very people who raiſed them, denied every ſyllable of what they had ſaid, and ſeemed wholly ignorant of the matter; ſo that we began to think the whole relation had reference only to their own people and boats. On the 28th, we again went on ſhore, but found no appearance of the hogs and fowls we had left behind. Having been a ſhooting to to the weſt bay, in our return we got ſome fiſh from the

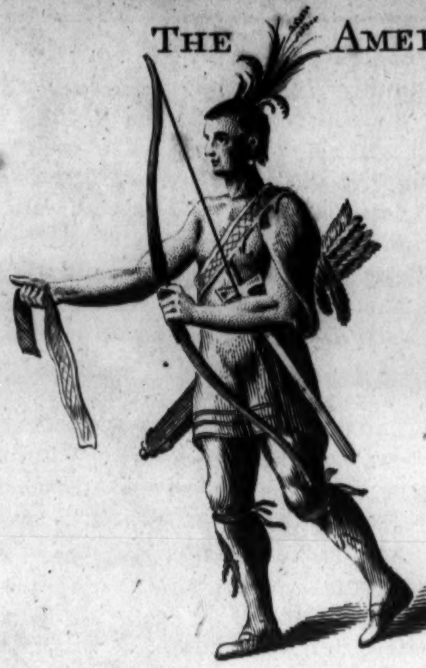
natives

Engraved for PORTLOCK'S *New* COLLECTION *of* VOYAGES & TRAVELS.

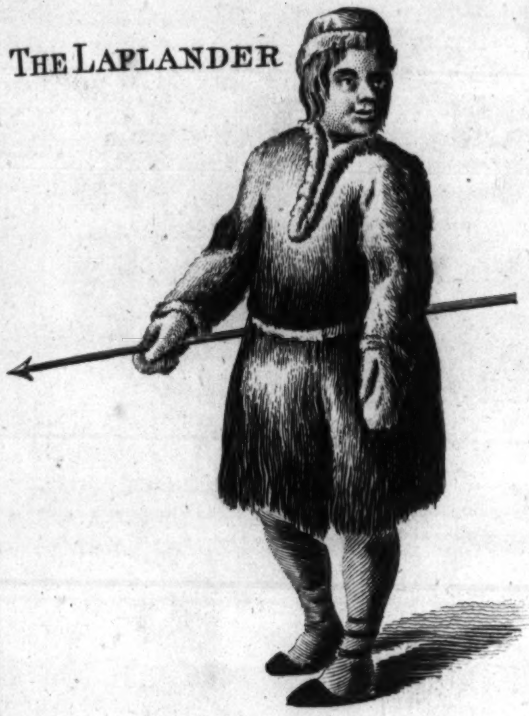
THE HOTTENTOT



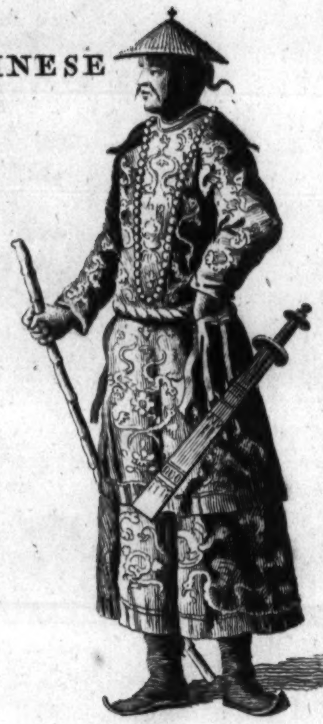
THE AMERICAN



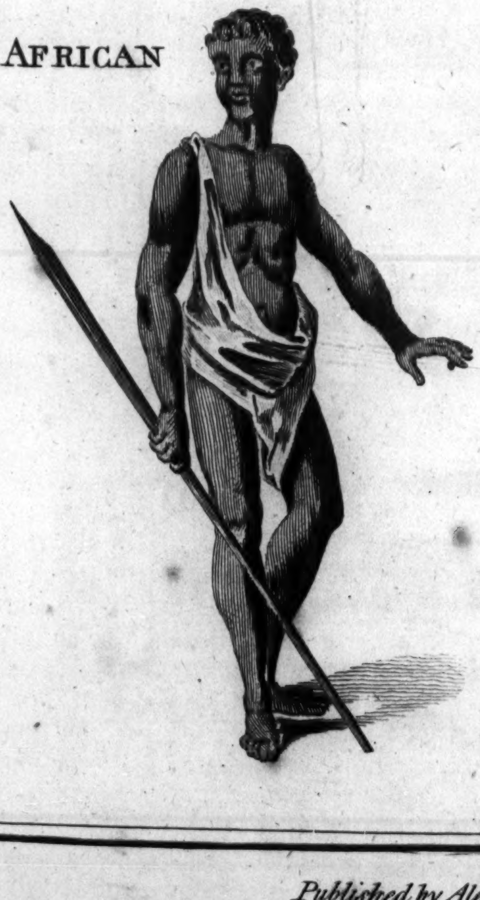
THE LAPLANDER



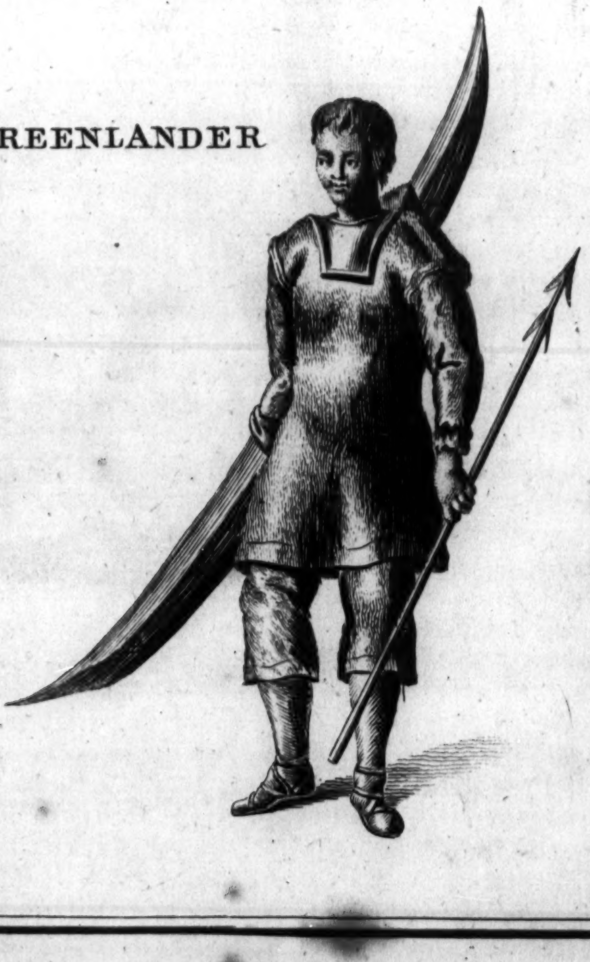
THE CHINESE



THE AFRICAN



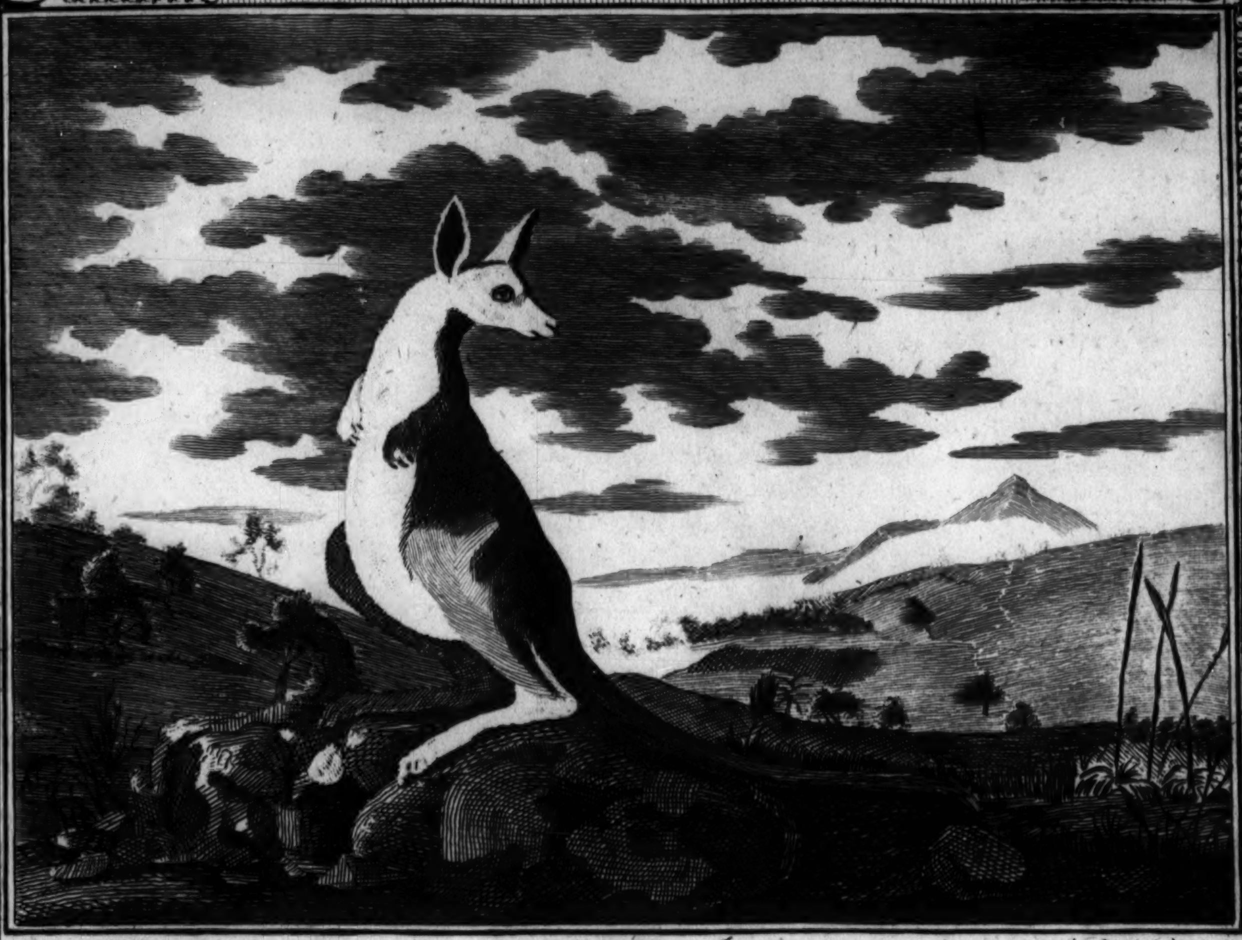
A GREENLANDER



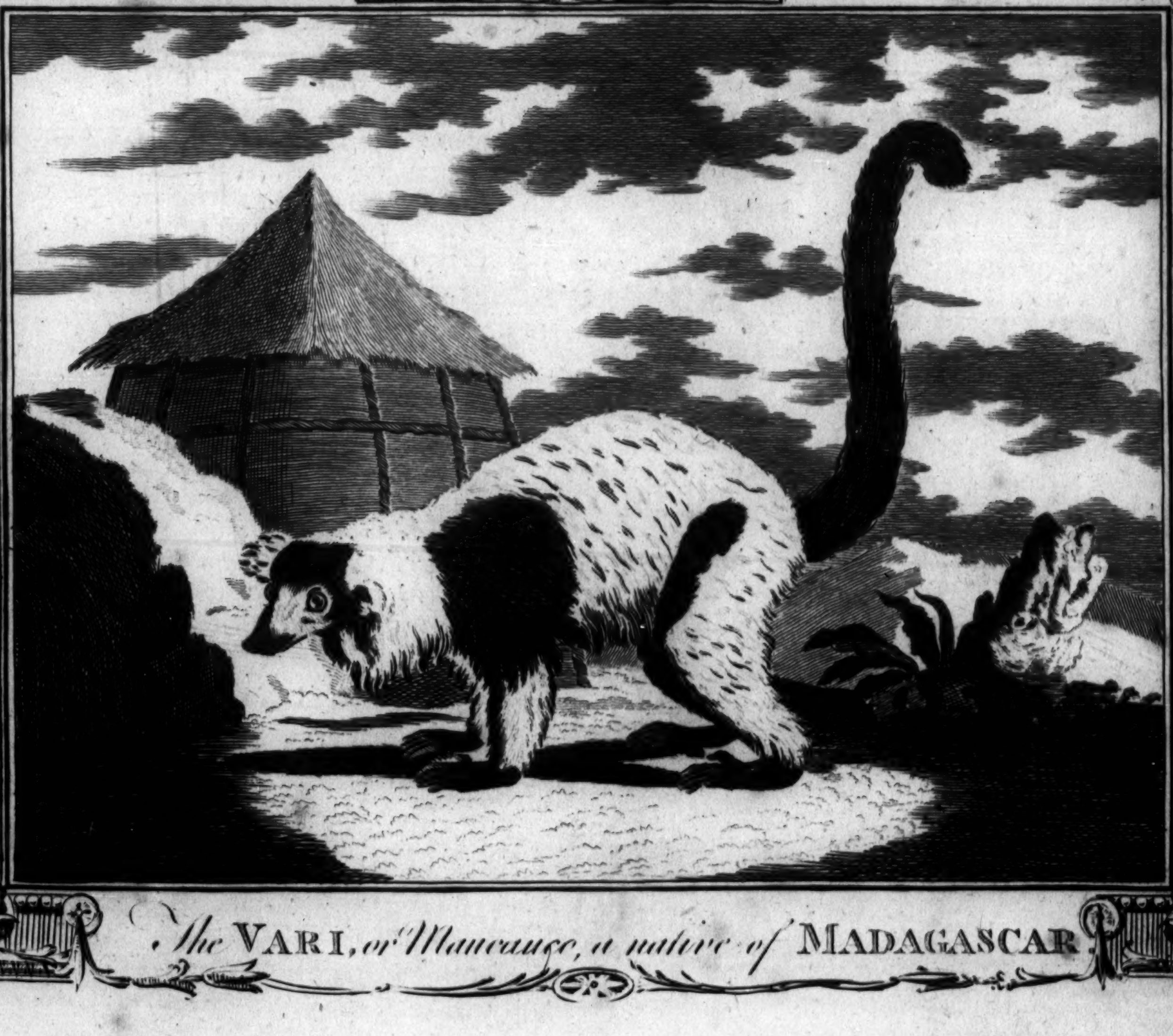
Published by Alex^{r}. Hogg at the Kings Arms N^{o}.16 Paternoster Row, June 7, 1794.

BRITISH
7 FE 90
MUSEUM

London Published by Alex.r Hogg at the Kings Arms No16 Paternoster Row.



A Remarkable Animal *found on one of the Hope Islands, in* Capt.^n Cook's *first Voyage*.



The VARI, *or Maucauco, a native of* MADAGASCAR

BRITISH
7 FE 90
MUSEUM

natives for a few trifling preſents. As we came back, ſome of the party thought they heard a pig ſqueak in the woods. We ſhot this day a good many wild fowl and ſmall birds. On the 31ſt, it was ſomewhat remarkable that all the natives left us.

Tueſday, the 1ſt of November, we were viſited by a number of ſtrangers, who came from up the ſound. The principal article of trade they brought with them was green ſtone, ſome of which were the largeſt pieces we had ever ſeen. On the 3d, a large black ſow was ſeen by the botanizing party, which we diſcovered to be the ſame that Capt. Furneaux left behind him. Suppoſing it to be a boar we carried over to Long Iſland a ſow, but ſeeing our miſtake, we brought her back. This incident afforded us ſome hopes, that this iſland in time will be ſtocked with ſuch uſeful animals. Lieutenant Pickerſgill was told the ſame ſtory by one of the natives, of a ſhip having been loſt, but the man declared, though many people were killed, it was not by them. On the 5th, we obtained a ſeaſonable and plentiful ſupply of fiſh from our old friends. Early in the morning Capt. Cook, accompanied by Mr. Sparrman, and the Meſſrs. Forſters, embarked in the pinnace, and proceeded up the ſound in order to diſcover a paſſage that way out to ſea by the S. E. We were met by ſome fiſhermen, who all declared, there was no paſſage by the head of the ſound; and ſoon after four men in a canoe concurred in the ſame opinion, confirming what the others had ſaid, but they gave us to underſtand, that there was ſuch a paſſage to the eaſt. We therefore laid aſide our firſt deſign of going to the head of the ſound, and proceeded to this arm of the ſea, on the S. E. ſide, which is about five leagues above the iſle of Mortuara. Within the entrance, at a place called Kotieghenooee, we came to a large ſettlement of the natives. Their chief, Tringo-bohee, and ſome of his attendants had lately been on board the ſhip, by whom we were received with great civility; and theſe people encouraged us to purſue the object we had in view. We therefore continued our courſe down this arm of the ſea, E. N. E. and E. by N. having a view of ſeveral fine coves, which we paſſed, and at length we found it open, by a channel about a mile wide, into the ſtrait. A ſtrong tide ran out, and we had obſerved another ſetting down the arm. Near four o'clock P. M. this tide ceaſed, and was ſucceeded by the flood. The outlet lies S. E. by E. and N. W. by W. from Terrawhitte. A little within the entrance, we found thirteen fathoms water: but, from its ſituation, it ſeemed neceſſary to have a trading wind either to go in or out of this channel; but having determined to return on board before night, we had not time to make other neceſſary obſervations. We ſaw a Hippah, or ſtrong hold, about two miles within the entrance, built on the north ſide, which we omitted viſiting, though the inhabitants made ſigns for us to come on ſhore; but, without paying any regard to them, we made the beſt of our way for the ſhip, and returned on board about ten o'clock, bringing with us a few fiſh and birds; among which laſt were ſome ducks we had ſhot, of the ſame kind as thoſe in Duſky Bay. The natives knew theſe, and ſeveral other ſorts, by the drawings, and had a particular name for each.

On Sunday, the 6th, our old friends returned, and took up their abode near the tents. An old man, named Pedero, made Capt. Cook a preſent of a ſtaff of honour, ſuch as the chiefs carry; and, in return, the captain dreſſed him up in a ſuit of old cloaths, which made him very happy. He had a fine perſon, and his colour only diſtinguiſhed him from an European. We enquired of him and his companion, if the Adventure had been there during our abſence; and they gave us to underſtand, that ſhe arrived a little time after our departure; that ſhe ſtaid about twenty days, and had been gone ten moons; and that neither ſhe, nor any other ſhip, had been ſtranded on the coaſt. This account made us eaſy reſpecting the Adventure, but did not wholly remove our ſuſpicions of ſome misfortune having happened to ſtrangers. This day we went with a number of hands, in order to catch the ſow and put her to boar, but we returned without ſeeing her. Pedero dined with us, partook heartily of every thing ſet before him, and drank more wine than any one at table, without being in the leaſt intoxicated. On the 8th, we put a boar, a ſow, and two pigs on ſhore, near Cannibal Cove; ſo that we hope all our repeated endeavours to ſtock this country will not prove fruitleſs. We found a hen's egg a few days ago, and therefore believe, that ſome of the cocks and hens we left here are ſtill in being. On the 9th, we unmoored, and ſhifted our ſtation farther out the cove, for the more ready getting to ſea; but at preſent, the caulkers had not finiſhed the ſides of the ſhip; and we could not ſail till this work was completed. Our friends brought us a large ſupply of fiſh, and, in return, we gave Pedero a large empty oil jar, with which he ſeemed highly delighted. We never ſaw any of our preſents after they received them, and cannot ſay whether they gave them away, or what they did with them; but we obſerved, every time we viſited them, they were as much in want of hatchets, nails, &c. as if we had not beſtowed any upon them. Notwithſtanding theſe people are cannibals, they are of a good diſpoſition, and have not a little humanity. We have before obſerved the inconveniencies attending them for a want of union among themſelves; and we are perſuaded, though upon the whole very numerous, they are under no form of government. The head of each tribe, or family, is reſpected; reſpect may command obedience; but we are inclined to think, not one among them has either a right or power to enforce it. Very few, we obſerved, paid any regard to the words or actions of Tringo-bohee, though he was repreſented to us as a chief of ſome note. In the afternoon we went into one of the coves; where, upon landing, we found two families employed in different manners: ſome were making mats, others were ſleeping; ſome were roaſting fiſh and roots; and one girl was employed in heating ſtones, which ſhe took out of the fire as ſoon as they were hot, and gave them to an old woman, who ſat in the hut. The old woman placed them one upon another, laid over them ſome green celery, and over all a coarſe mat: ſhe then ſquatted herſelf down on the top of the heap, and ſat very cloſe. Probably this operation might be intended as a cure for ſome diſorder, to be effected by the ſteams ariſing from the green celery, and we perceived the woman ſeemed very ſickly.

C H A P. VIII.

The Departure of the Reſolution from New Zealand—Her paſſage from hence to Terra del Fuego—The run from Cape Deſeada to Chriſtmas Sound—The coaſt deſcribed—Incidents and tranſactions in the Sound—A deſcription of the country, and an hiſtorical account of the inhabitants—The Reſolution departs from Chriſtmas Sound—Doubles Cape Horn—Her paſſage through ſtrait Le Maire, and round Staten Iſland—A harbour in this iſle diſcovered—The coaſts deſcribed—Geographical Obſervations—Remarks on iſlands, and the animals found in them, near Staten Land—Departure from Staten iſland—Nautical obſervations—The iſland of Georgia diſcovered, and a deſcriptive account of the ſame.

THURSDAY, Nov. 10, at day-break, we weighed and ſailed from Queen Charlotte's Sound, in New Zealand, having a fine breeze at W. N. W. All our ſails being ſet, we got round the Two Brothers, and ſtretched for Cape Campbell, at the S. W. entrance of the ſtrait. We paſſed this at four o'clock P. M. diſtant five leagues, and then ſteered S. S. E. half E. On the 11th, at ſeven o'clock P. M. Cape Palliſer bore N. half W. diſtant ſixteen leagues, from which Cape, for the third time, we took our departure. We now ſteered S. by E. in order to get into the latitude of 54 or 55 deg. Capt. Cook's intention being to croſs this vaſt ocean in theſe parallels, hoping by this courſe to paſs over thoſe parts, which, the preceding ſummer, were left unexplored. On the 12th, A. M. we were in latitude 43 deg. 13 min. 30 ſec. S. and in 176 deg. 41 min. E. longitude, when we ſaw an uncommon fiſh of the whale kind; and, in the afternoon, the Pintado Peterels began to appear. On the 13th, at ſeven in the evening, we hauled up towards a fog bank, which we took for land; after which we ſteered S. E. by S. and ſaw a ſeal. At noon, by obſervation, we found our latitude to be 44 deg. 25 min. S. longitude 177 deg. 31 min. E. On the 14th, we ſaw another ſeal in latitude 45 deg. 54 min. and 179 deg. 29 min. E. long. On the 15th, having paſſed the great meridian of 180 deg. E. which divides the globe into two equal parts, we began to reckon our longitude weſt of Greenwich. At noon our latitude obſerved was 49 deg. 33 min. longitude 175 deg. 31 min. W. On Thurſday the 17th, we ſaw a ſeal, ſome penguins, and pieces of ſea weed. On the 19th we were in latitude 53 deg. 43 min. and on the 20th, at noon, in latitude 54 deg. 8 min. longitude 162 deg. 18 min. W. Monday, the 21ſt, we ſteered S. E. by S. and at noon we ſaw abundance of blue peterels, in latitude 55 deg. 31 min. longitude 160 deg. 29 min. On the 22d, at noon, our latitude by obſervation was 55 deg. 48 min. longitude 156 deg. 56 min. W. In the afternoon, having a light breeze at S. S. E. we ſteered eaſt, northerly; and, in the night, was a faint appearance of the Aurora Auſtralis. On the 23d, we were in latitude 55 deg. 46 min. S. longitude 156 deg. 13 min W. when a freſh gale blew from the weſt, and we ſteered now E. half N. On the 26th, we were in latitude 55 deg. 8 min. S. and in 148 deg. 10 min. W. longitude.

On Sunday, the 27th, we ſteered eaſt, having a ſteady freſh gale; and at noon, were in latitude 55 deg. 6 min S. and in 138 deg. 56 min. W. longitude. In this parallel, not a hope remained of finding any more land in the ſouthern Pacific Ocean. We reſolved therefore to ſteer for the weſt entrance of the ſtraights of Maghellan, with a view of coaſting the ſouth ſide of Terra del Fuego, round Cape Horn, to the Strait Le Maire. We thought this track might be an advantage to navigation and geography, as the world is little acquainted with that ſhore. In the afternoon we had ſqually weather, which carried away our top-gallant maſt. On the 28th A. M. the bolt rope of the main top-ſail broke, whereby the ſail was ſplit. The ropes, to our ſquare ſails eſpecially, are not of a ſize and ſtrength ſufficient to wear out the canvaſs. At noon we were in latitude 55 deg. 20 min. S. and in 134 deg. 16 min. W. longitude. On the 29th, the wind abated; and on the 30th, at 8 o'clock P. M. the wind veering to N. E. we tacked, and ſtood to E. S. E. We were now in latitude 55 deg. 22 min. S. and in 128 deg. 45 min. W. longitude. Several albatroſſes and peterels were ſeen.

On Thurſday, the 1ſt of December, at three o'clock P. M. it fell a calm, but at about ſeven, we got a wind at S. E. with which we ſtood N. E. On the 5th, a fine gale at ſouth, enabled us to ſteer eaſt, with very little deviation to the north; and the wind now altering to S. W. and blowing a ſteady gale, we continued to ſteer eaſt, inclining a little to ſouth. At ſix o'clock in the evening, we were in latitude 53 deg. 8 min. and in 115 deg. 58 min. W. longitude. On the 6th, we had ſome ſnow ſhowers; and on Wedneſday, the 7th, a fine pleaſant gale, with ſhowers of rain. On the 9th, at noon, we found ourſelves by obſervation, in latitude 53 deg. 37 min. and in 103 deg. 44 min. weſt longitude. The wind veered now to N. E. and afterwards came inſenſibly round to the ſouth by the E. and S. E. On the 10th we paſſed a ſmall bed of ſea weed, in latitude 54 deg. longitude 102 deg. 7 min. W. On the 11th, we ſteered E. half a point N. and on the 12th, at ſix in the evening, we were in latitude 53 deg. 35 min. longitude 95 deg. 52 min. W. Many and various ſorts of albatroſſes were hovering about the ſhip. On Monday, the 12th, we had a calm which continued till midnight, when a breeze from the ſouth fixing at weſt, we ſteered eaſt. On the 14th, in the morning, we found the variation of the compaſs to be 13 deg. 25 min. E. in latitude 53 deg. 25 min. longitude 87 deg. 53 min. W. which increaſed in ſuch a manner, that on the 15th, in the latitude of 53 deg. 30 min. longitude 82 deg. 23 min. W. it was 170 E. This day we ſaw a penguin; and on the 16th, a ſeal, and ſome diving peterels. On Saturday the 17th, the variation increaſed to 21 deg. 38 min. being in latitude 53 deg. 16 min. S. and in 75 deg. 9 min. weſt longitude. All this day we ſteered eaſt by north, and eaſt half north, under all the ſails we could carry, in hopes of ſeeing the land before night; but not making it till ten o'clock, we ſteered eaſt, in order to make ſure of falling in with Cape Deſeada. At midnight we made the land, extending from N. E. by N. to E. by S. about ſix leagues diſtant; upon ſeeing which we brought to with the ſhip's head to the ſouth. Having ſounded, we found ſeventy-five fathoms water, the bottom good. The land before us we concluded to be the weſt coaſt of Terra del Fuego, near the weſt entrance of the ſtraights of Maghellan. This being the firſt run made by Capt. Cook in a high ſouthern latitude, we have been very particular in noting all the material circumſtances we could collect together. In this courſe the weather had been neither unuſually ſtormy, nor cold. Before we arrived in the latitude of 50 deg. the mercury in the thermometer fell gradually from ſixty to fifty; and in the latitude of 55 deg. it was generally between forty-ſeven and forty-five; once or twice it fell to forty-three. Theſe obſervations were made at noon. We had now entirely left the ſouthern Pacific Ocean, and we truſt the world will give our captain ſome credit for having well explored the ſame; nor could, in our opinion, more have been done towards obtaining that end, in one voyage, than has been effected in this. We muſt not omit to obſerve, that ſoon after we left New Zealand, Mr. Wales contrived, and fixed up an inſtrument, which meaſured with great accuracy, the angle the ſhip rolled in, when ſailing large, and in a great ſea; and that in which ſhe lay down, or heeled, when ſailing upon a wind. The greateſt angle he obſerved the Reſolution to roll, the ſea at the time not being unuſually high, was 38 deg.

On Sunday, the 18th, we made ſail, and ſteered S. E. by E. along the coaſt. Near a league from the main is a high ragged iſle, which we called Landfall. At four o'clock A. M. we were N. and S. of the high land of Cape Deſeada, diſtant nine leagues; but ſaw none of the low rocks ſaid to lie off it. This cape lies in latitude 53 deg. S. and in 74 deg. 40 min. W. longitude. We continued to range the coaſt, and at eleven o'clock, we paſſed a projecting point, having a round ſurface, and of conſiderable height, to which we gave the name of Cape Glouceſter. It has the appearance of an iſland, and is ſituated S. S. E. half E. ſeventeen leagues from the iſle of Landfall. Between theſe the coaſt forms two bays, ſtrewed with rocky iſlots, rocks, and breakers. The coaſt appeared unconnected, as if formed of a number of iſlands. The land is very mountainous, rocky, and barren, but in ſome places, covered with tufts of wood, and patches of ſnow. From Cape Glouceſter, the direction of the coaſt is nearly S. E. but to Cape Noir, for which we ſteered, the courſe is S. S. E. At noon Cape Glouceſter bore north, diſtant eight miles, and the moſt advanced point of land bore S. E. by S. diſtant ſeven leagues. At three o'clock we paſſed Cape Noir, ſituated in latitude 54 deg. 30 min. S. and in 73 deg. 33 min. W. longitude. When at a diſtance, the land of the cape appeared to be an iſland disjoined, but upon a nearer approach we found it connected by a low neck of land. Two rocks lie at the point of the Cape, the one pointed like a ſugar-loaf, the other not ſo high, with a rounder ſurface;

face; and two leagues from the Cape are two rocky iſlots, S. by E. After paſſing theſe laſt, we croſſed the great bay of St. Barbara, ſteering E. S. E. The land at the bottom of it, which we juſt perceived, could not be leſs than ſeven leagues off. We obſerved a ſpace, in the direction of E. N. E. from Cape Noir, where not any land was to be ſeen: this may be the channel of St. Barbara, which opens into the ſtraights of Maghellan, as mentioned by Frazier; with whoſe deſcription we found the cape to agree very well.

On the 19th, at two o'clock A. M. we paſſed the S. E. point of the bay of St. Barbara, which the Captain called Cape Deſolation, on account of the country near it, being the moſt deſolate and barren that ever was ſeen. It lies in latitude 54 deg. 55 min. S. and in 72 deg. 12 min. W. longitude. To the eaſt of the Cape about four leagues, and at the mouth of a deep inlet, is a pretty large iſland, and ſome others leſs conſiderable. In latitude 55 deg. 20 min. S. we were three leagues from an iſland, which Capt. Cook named Gilbert Iſle, after his maſter. Its ſurface is compoſed of ſeveral unequal peaked rocks, nearly of the ſame height with the reſt of the coaſt. S. E. of this iſle are breakers, and ſome ſmaller iſlands. Scarcely any proſpect can appear with a more barren and ſavage aſpect, than the whole of this country; which is compoſed of rocky mountains, without a ſingle trace of vegetation to enliven or vary the ſcene. The mountains of the coaſt terminate in horrible precipices, whoſe craggy ſummits tower to a vaſt height; and thoſe that are inland are covered with ſnow; but the former are not. The firſt we judged to belong to the main of Terra del Fuego, and the laſt to be iſlands, which to appearance formed a coaſt. Having made a ſhort trip to the ſouth, we ſtood in for land, the neareſt point of which in ſight, bore eaſt ten leagues. It is a lofty promontory, E. S. E. from Gilbert Iſle, in latitude 55 deg. 26 min. S. and in 70 deg. 25 min. W. longitude. From our preſent point of view, it terminated in two high towers, and within them, a hill ſhaped like a ſugar loaf. To this rock we gave the name of York Minſter. To the weſtward of this head land, about two leagues, we diſcovered a large inlet, the weſt point of which we fetched in with; and tacked in 41 fathoms water, not more than half a league from the ſhore. To the weſtward of this inlet we ſaw another, with ſeveral iſlands at its entrance.

On Tueſday the 20th, we perceived the ſhip to drive off the ſhore out to ſea; which we attributed to a current; for by the melting of the ſnow, the inland waters will occaſion a ſtream to run out of moſt of theſe inlets. In the evening, a breeze ſpringing up at E. by S. we ſtood in for the land, being deſirous of entering one of the many ports, in order to take a view of the country, and to recruit our ſtock of wood and water. In ſtanding in for an opening, apparently on the eaſt ſide of York Minſter, we ſounded in 40 and 60 fathoms water. Our laſt ſoundings were nearly between the two points that form the entrance to the inlet, which we obſerved to branch out into two arms. We ſtood for that to the eaſt, as being clear of iſlots; but upon ſounding, found no bottom with a line of 120 fathoms. In this diſagreeable ſituation a breeze ſpringing up, our captain reſolved to ſtand up the inlet; but night approaching, our ſafety depended on caſting anchor, we therefore continued ſounding, but always, to our mortification, in an unfathomable depth. We now hauled up under the eaſt-ſide of the land, and ſeeing a ſmall cove, ſent the boat a-head to ſound, while we kept with the ſhip as near the ſhore as poſſible. The boat ſoon returned with the information we wiſhed for, and we thought ourſelves happy, when we had anchored in 30 fathoms, in a bottom of ſand and broken ſhells.

On the 21ſt, a party was ſent out with two boats, to look for a more ſecure ſtation. They found a cove above the point under which the ſhip lay, in which was exceeding good anchorage. At the head of it was a ſtoney beach, a valley covered with wood, and a ſtream of freſh water; conveniencies more favourable than we could expect would be found in ſuch a place. Here alſo they ſhot three geeſe out of four. Orders were now diſpatched by Lieut. Clerke to remove the ſhip into this place, and we proceeded with Capt. Cook in the other boat, farther up the inlet. We now diſcovered, that the land we were under, which diſjoined the two arms, as mentioned before, was an iſland, at the north end of which the two channels united. We returned on board, and found every thing in readineſs to weigh; which was done, and all the boats ſent out to tow the ſhip round the point; but a light breeze ſpringing up, we were obliged to drop the anchor again, leſt the ſhip ſhould fall upon the point. However, we ſoon after got round this under our ſtay-ſails, and anchored in 20 fathoms water. We were now ſhut in from the ſea by the point above-mentioned, which was in one with the extremity of the inlet to the eaſt. Our diſtance from ſhore was not more than a third of a mile; and iſlots off the next point above us, covered the ſhip from the N. W. from which quarter the wind had the greateſt force. All hands were immediately employed; ſome to clear a place to fill water; ſome to cut wood, and others to pitch a tent, for the reception of a guard, and Mr. Wales could find no better ſtation for his obſervatory than the top of a rock, not exceeding nine feet over.

On Thurſday the 22d, two parties were ſent out, one to examine and draw a ſketch of the channel, on the other ſide of the iſland, and the Captain, attended by the botaniſts, to ſurvey the northern ſide of the ſound. In our way to this latter place, we landed on the point of a low iſle covered with herbage, ſeveral ſpots of which had been lately burnt; theſe, with a hut we diſcovered, were ſigns that people were in the neighbourhood. From hence we proceeded round the eaſt end of Burnt Iſland, over to what we ſuppoſed to be the main land of Terra del Fuego, where we diſcovered a fine harbour, ſurrounded by high rocks, down which glided many purling ſtreams, and at their feet were ſome tufts of trees, very fit for fuel. Capt. Cook named this harbour the Devil's Baſon. It is divided into two parts, an inner and an outer one; and the communication between them is by a narrow channel five fathoms deep. We found at one time 17 in the outer baſon, and 23 in the inner one. This laſt is ſhaded from the ſun in his meridian ſplendor, and, though very ſecure, is intolerably gloomy. The outer harbour has not ſo much of this inconvenience, is equally ſafe, and rather more commodious. It lies about a mile diſtant from the eaſt end of Burnt Iſland, in the direction north. We diſcovered other harbours to the weſt of this, and found wood for fuel, and freſh water, in or near them all. Before one was a ſtream of freſh water, which came out of a large lake, continually ſupplied by a falling caſcade. The whole country is a barren rock, except the fire wood which grows here, and what we ſaw of it affords no other vegetation of any kind. But to compenſate for this dreary ſcene of ſterility, about the ſea coaſt, the all-bountiful God of nature has ſcattered many large and ſmall, but fruitful low iſlands, the ſoil of which is a black rotten turf, compoſed of decayed vegetables. On one of theſe we ſaw ſeveral huts that had lately been inhabited. Near them was a good deal of celery; we put as much as we could conveniently ſtow in our boat, and at ſeven o'clock in the evening we returned on board. During our abſence a fatal accident had befallen one of our marines, who had not been ſeen ſince 11 o'clock the preceding night. We ſuppoſed he had fallen overboard, and was drowned. In this excurſion we ſhot only one duck, three ſhags, and about the ſame number of rails or ſea-pies. The other party, among whom were Lieutenants Clerke and Pickerſgill, returned on board ſome hours before us. On the weſt ſide of the other channel, they diſcovered a large harbour and one ſmaller, of both which they took ſketches.

On the 23d, Lieut. Pickerſgill went out to examine the eaſt ſide of the ſound, while the Captain proceeded in the pinnace to the weſt-ſide, with a view of going round the iſland under which the ſhip lay, which he called Shag Iſland; and in order to take a ſurvey of the paſſage leading to the harbours our two lieutenants had diſcovered the day before. If coming from ſea, it is neceſſary to leave all the rocks and iſlands, lying off and within York Minſter, on the larboard-ſide, and the black rock, off the ſouth-end of Shag Iſland, on the ſtarboard. When abreaſt of the ſouth-end of that iſland, we hauled over for the weſt ſhore, taking care to avoid the beds of weeds, indications of rocks, ſome of which were 12 fathoms under water; but we thought it the ſafeſt way always to keep clear of them. The entrance into the large harbour, which we called Port Clerk, is to the north of ſome low rocks, lying off a point on Shag Iſland. This harbour lies in W. by S. a mile and a half. It hath wood and freſh water, and from 12 to 24 fathoms deep. To the ſouthward of Port Clerk, ſeemed to be another harbour, formed by a large iſland; without this, between it and York Minſter, the whole ſea appeared ſtrewed with iſlots, rocks, and breakers. At the ſouth end of Shag Iſland the ſhags breed in vaſt numbers, in the cliffs of the rocks. We ſhot ſome of the old ones, but could not come at the young ones, which are by much the beſt eating. We likewiſe brought down three wild geeſe, a valuable acquiſition at this time. We returned and got on board at ſeven o'clock in the evening. Mr. Pickerſgill, who had juſt before arrived, informed us, that the land oppoſite to our ſtation is an iſland; that on another more to the north, he found many terns eggs; and in a cove between that and the Eaſt Head, he had ſhot one gooſe, and got ſome young goſlings.

On Saturday the 24th, two ſporting parties went over one of the N. E. ſide of the iſland above mentioned, which was named Gooſe Iſland; and the other, accompanied by Capt. Cook, went by the S. W. ſide. When under the iſland we had plenty of ſport, having ſhot as many geeſe as ſerved for a Chriſtmas meal for our men, which proved much more agreeable to them than ſalt beef and pork. We all returned heartily tired, by climbing over the rocks, when we had landed, in purſuit of our game. In the ſouth of the iſland were abundance of geeſe, it being their moulting ſeaſon, when moſt of them come on ſhore, and are not diſpoſed to fly. Our party got ſixty-two, and Mr. Pickerſgill with his aſſociates fourteen. Plenty of ſhags were ſeen in the cove, but we proceeded without ſpending time or ſhot upon them. We were informed by our people on board, that a number of natives, in nine canoes, had been along-ſide, and ſome of them in the ſhip: they ſeemed well acquainted with Europeans, and had ſeveral of their knives among them.

On the 25th, being Chriſtmas day, we had another viſit from them. They appeared to be of the ſame nation, we had formerly ſeen in Succeſs Bay; and which M. de Bougainville calls Pecharas, becauſe they continually uſed this word. They are a diminutive, ugly, half-ſtarved, beardleſs race; almoſt naked, being only ſlightly covered with a ſeal-ſkin or two joined together, ſo as to make a cloak, which reached to their knees; but the greateſt part of them had but one ſkin, which ſcarcely covered their ſhoulders, and all their lower parts were quite naked. The women are clothed no better than the men, except that they cover their nakedneſs with a ſeal-ſkin flap. They are inured from their infancy to cold and hardſhips, for we ſaw two young children at the breaſt entirely naked. They remained all the time in their canoes, having their bows and arrows with them, and harpoons, made of bone, with which we imagined, they ſtrike and kill fiſh. Both they and their cloaths ſmelt moſt intolerably of train oil. We threw them ſome biſcuit, but they ſeemed much better pleaſed with our preſents of medals, knives, &c. Their canoes were made of bark, and on each of them was a fire. They had alſo large ſeal hides, which may ſerve as covering to their huts, on ſhore, in foul weather. They all departed before dinner, nor did we believe, any one invited them to partake of our Chriſtmas cheer, which conſiſted of geeſe, roaſt and boiled, gooſe-pye, &c. a treat little known to us; and which was heightened by Madeira wine, the only article of our proviſions that was mended by keeping. Perhaps our friends in England did not celebrate Chriſtmas more chearfully than we did; and, with ſuch fare it would have been a real diſappointment to have had our appetites ſpoiled, by the dirty perſons of thoſe filthy people, and by the ſtench they always carried about them. We called this place Chriſtmas Sound, in honour of the day, and the joyful feſtival we had celebrated here. On the 26th, we were again viſited by ſome of the natives, and as it was very cold in the evening, and they ſtood ſhivering on the deck, the Captain from an impulſe of humanity, gave them ſome old canvaſs and baize for covering.

On Tueſday the 27th, every thing on ſhore was ordered on board. The weather being fine and pleaſant, a party of us went round by the ſouth ſide of Gooſe Iſland, and picked up 31 of theſe kind of birds. On the eaſt-ſide of the iſland, to the north of the eaſt point, is a good place for ſhips to lay in that are bound for the weſt. When we returned on board, we found all the work done, and the launch in, ſo that we now only waited for a fair wind to put to ſea. The entrance of Chriſtmas Sound, which we expected ſoon to leave, is three leagues wide, and ſituated in latitude 55 deg. 27 min. S. and in 70 deg. 16 min. W. longitude; in the direction of north 37 deg. W. from St. Ildefonſo Iſles, diſtant 10 leagues. We think theſe iſles to be the beſt land mark for finding the ſound. It is adviſeable for no one to anchor very near the ſhore, for we generally found there a rocky bottom. The refreſhments to be procured at this place are wild fowl, very good celery, and plenty of muſcles, not large, but well taſted. The geeſe are ſmaller than our Engliſh tame ones, but eat as well as the beſt of them. The gander is all white; the female ſpotted with black and white, with a large white ſpot on each wing. Here is alſo a kind of duck, which our people called the race-horſe, on account of its ſwiftneſs on the water, for the wings being too ſhort to ſupport the body in the air, it cannot fly. We believe, from certain circumſtances, the people do not live here throughout the whole of the winter-ſeaſon, but retire to parts where the weather is leſs ſevere. To appearance, they are the moſt wretched of all the natives we have ſeen. They live in an inhoſpitable clime, and do not ſeem to have ſagacity enough to provide themſelves with the comforts of life, particularly in the article of cloathing. Barren as this country is, our botaniſts found therein many unknown plants. In the woods is the tree which produceth the winter's bark; alſo the holly-leaved barberry; and plenty of berries, which we called cranberry; with many other ſorts common in theſe ſtraits.

On Wedneſday the 28th, we ſailed from this ſound, with a light breeze at N. W. At noon Point Nativity, being the eaſt part of the ſound, bore N. half W. diſtant one league and a half. We ſteered S. E. by E. and E. S. E. till four o'clock, P. M. when we hauled to the ſouth, for the ſake of a nearer view of St. Ildefonſo. The coaſt appeared indented as uſual, and at this time we were abreaſt of an inlet lying E. S. E. At the weſt point of this are two high peaked hills, and below them, to the eaſt, two round ones, or ſmall iſles, in the direction of N. E. and S. W. from each other. At half paſt five o'clock, we had a good ſight of Ildefonſo Iſles. Theſe are ſituated about ſix leagues from the main, in latitude 55 deg. 53 min. S. and in 69 deg. 41 min. W. longitude. We now reſumed and continued our courſe to the eaſt. At ſun-ſet the neareſt land bore S. E. by E. three fourths E. and the weſt point of Naſſau Bay, diſcovered by Admiral Hermite in 1624, bore north 80 deg. E. ſix leagues diſtant. This point, in ſome charts, is called Falſe Cape Horn, as being the ſouthern point of Terra del-Fuego. It lies in latitude 55 deg. 39 min. S. From the above mentioned inlet to this falſe cape, the direction of the coaſt is nearly E. half a point S. diſtant 14 or 15 leagues.

On the 29th, at three o'clock A. M. we ſteered S. E. by S. at four Cape Horn, for which we now made ſail, bore E. by S. at a diſtance it is known by a round high hill over it; and though to the W. N. W. there is a point not unlike this, yet their ſituations will always be ſufficient to diſtinguiſh the one from the other. At half paſt ſeven we paſſed this cape, and entered the Southern Atlantic Ocean. Two peaked rocks are on the N. W. ſide of the cape, reſembling ſugar loaves; alſo other low ſtraggling rocks to the weſt, and one ſouth of it. From Chriſtmas Sound to this Cape, the courſe is E. S. E. one fourth E. diſtant 31 leagues. The rocky point three leagues from Cape Horn, in the direction E. N. E. we called Miſtaken Cape. It is the ſouthern point of the eaſternmoſt of Hermite Iſles. There ſeemed to be a paſſage between theſe two capes into Naſſau Bay. In this paſſage ſome iſles were ſeen, and on the weſt ſide, the coaſt had the appearance of forming good bays and harbours. In ſome charts Cape Horn is laid down as part of a ſmall iſland, which we had not in our power to confirm or contradict, as the hazy weather rendered every object indiſtinct. From hence we ſteered E. by N. half N. without the rocks that lie off Miſtaken Cape. Having paſſed theſe, we ſteered N. E. half E. and N. E. for Strait le Maire. At eight o'clock in the evening, finding ourſelves near the ſtrait, we ſhortened ſail, and hauled the wind. The ſugar-loaf on Terra del Fuego bore north 33 deg. W. the point of Succeſs Bay juſt open of the cape of the ſame name, bearing north 20 deg. E.

On the 30th, during the calm, we were driven by the current over to Staten Land; but a light breeze ſpringing up at N. N. W. we ſtood over for Succeſs Bay. We hoiſted our colours, and, having before fired two guns, we perceived a ſmoke riſe out of the woods, made by the natives above the ſouth point of the bay, which was the place where they reſided when we were here in 1769. A party was now ſent into Succeſs Bay, in order to diſcover if any traces of the Adventure were to be ſeen there; but they returned without having found any. Our ſhip's name, &c. were written on a card, and nailed to a tree which ſtood near the place where it was likely the Adventure would water, ſhould ſhe be behind us, and put into this place. When Mr. Pickerſgill landed, the natives received him and his aſſociates with great courteſy. They were cloathed in ſeal ſkins, had bracelets on their arms, and appeared to be the ſame kind of people we had ſeen in Chriſtmas Sound. The bracelets were made of ſilver wire, wrought ſomewhat like the hilt of a ſword, and no doubt, the workmanſhip of an European. According to Mr. Pickerſgill's report, the bay was full of whales and ſeals, and we had obſerved the ſame in the ſtrait, particularly on the Terra del Fuego ſide, where the whales are exceeding numerous. Having now explored the ſouth coaſt of Terra del Fuego, we reſolved to do the ſame by Staten Land. At nine o'clock the wind veering to N. W. we tacked, and ſtood to S. W.

On Saturday the 31ſt in the morning, we bore up for the eaſt end of Staten Land; which, at half paſt four bore ſouth 60 deg. E. the weſt end ſouth 2 deg. E. and Terra del Fuego ſouth 40 deg. W. The weather being hazy, we could only now and then get ſight of the coaſt; but as we advanced to the eaſt, ſeveral iſlands were ſeen of unequal extent. We were abreaſt of the moſt eaſtern one at eight o'clock, A. M. when we waited ſome time for clear weather: but as it did not clear up as we wiſhed, we hauled round the eaſt end of the iſland, for the ſake of anchorage, if we ſhould think it neceſſary. We were now diſtant from the iſle two miles, and ſounding found only 29 fathoms water. As we continued our courſe, we ſaw on this iſland a great number of ſeals and birds, a ſtrong temptation to our people who were in want of freſh proviſions; and in hauling round it, we had a ſtrong race of a current, like unbroken water. At length, after fiſhing for the beſt ground, we caſt anchor in 21 fathoms water, about a mile from the iſland, which extended from north 18 deg. E. to N. 55 deg. and half W. The weather having ſoon after cleared up, we had a ſight of Cape St. John, or the eaſt end of Staten Land, bearing ſouth 75 deg. E. diſtant four leagues. The iſland ſheltered us from the north wind, and Staten Land from the ſouth. The other iſles lay to the weſt, and ſecured us from the north wind; yet we were not only open to the N. E. and E. but to the N. W. winds. We might have avoided this ſituation, by anchoring more to the weſt, but the Captain was deſirous of being near the iſland, and of having it in his power to get to ſea with any wind. In the afternoon a large party of us landed, ſome to kill ſeals, and others birds or fiſh. The iſland was ſo ſtocked with the former, which made ſuch a continual bleating, that we might have thought ourſelves in Eſſex, or any other country where cows and calves are in abundance. Upon examination we found theſe animals different from ſeals, though they reſembled them in ſhape and motion. The male having a great likeneſs to a lion, we called them on that account lions. We alſo found of the ſame kind as the New Zealand ſeals, and theſe we named ſea-bears. We ſhot ſome of the large ones, not thinking it ſafe to go near them; though, in general, they were ſo tame, that we knocked ſome down with our ſticks. Here were a few geeſe and ducks, and abundance of penguins and ſhags; the latter of which had young ones almoſt fledged, conſequently juſt to our taſte. In the evening our party returned ſufficiently laden with proviſions of various ſorts.

A. D. 1775.

On the 1ſt of January, being Sunday, Mr. Gilbert was ſent out to Staten Land, in ſearch of a good harbour, nothing more being wanting, in the opinion of Captain Cook, to make this place a good port for ſhips to touch at for refreſhments. Another party went to bring on board the beaſts we had killed the preceding day. The old lions and bears were good for nothing but their blubber, of which we made oil; but the fleſh of the young ones we liked very well: even the fleſh of the old lioneſſes was not much amiſs; but that of the males was abominable. Captain Cook took an obſervation of the ſun's meridian altitude (his height at noon) at the N. E. end of this iſland, which determined its latitude at 54 deg. 40 min. 5 ſec. S. Having ſhot a few geeſe, ſome other birds, and ſupplied ourſelves plentifully with young ſhags, we returned on board in the evening. About ten o'clock the party returned from Staten Land, where they found a good port, in the direction of north, a little eaſterly, from the N. E. end of the Eaſtern Iſland, and diſtant three leagues to the weſtward of Cape St. John. The marks whereby it may be known, are ſome ſmall iſlands lying in the entrance. The channel, which is on the eaſt ſide of theſe iſlands, is half a mile broad. The courſe is in S. W. by S. turning gradually to W. by S. and W. The harbour is almoſt two miles long, and near one broad. The bottom is a mixture of mud and ſand, and hath in it from 10 to 50 fathoms water. Here are ſeveral ſtreams of freſh water, with good wood for fuel. On this iſland are an innumerable number of ſea-gulls, the air was quite darkened with them, upon being diſturbed by our people: and when they roſe up, we were almoſt ſuffocated with their dung, which they ſeemed to emit by way of defence; and it ſtunk worſe than what is vulgarly called Devil's-dung. This port was named New-Year's Harbour, from the day on which it was diſcovered, and is certainly a very convenient one for ſhipping, bound to the weſt, or round Cape Horn. It is true, ſhips cannot put to ſea with an eaſterly or northerly wind; but theſe winds are never known to be of long continuance, and thoſe from the ſouth or weſt quarters are the moſt prevailing.

On Tueſday the 3d, we weighed and ſtood for Cape St. John, which, in the evening, bore N. by E. diſtant four miles. This cape, being the eaſtern point of Staten Land, is a rock of conſiderable height, ſituated in latitude 54 deg. 46 min. S. and in 64 deg. 7 min. W. longitude, having a rocky iſlot lying cloſe under the north point of it. To the weſtward of the cape is an inlet, which ſeemed to communicate with the ſea to the ſouth; and between this and the cape is a bay. Having doubled the cape, we hauled up along the ſouth coaſt. At noon Cape St. John bore north 20 deg. E. diſtant about three leagues: Cape St. Bartholomew, or the S. W. point of Staten Land, ſouth 83 deg. W. two high detached rocks north 80 deg. W. By obſervation our latitude was found to be 54 deg. 56 min. S. We now judged this land to have been ſufficiently explored; but before we leave it, think it neceſſary to make a few obſervations on this and its neighbouring iſlands.

The S. W. coaſt of Terra del Fuego, with reſpect to inlets and iſlands, may be compared to the coaſt of Norway; for we believe within the extent of three leagues there is an inlet or harbour, which will receive and ſhelter the firſt rate ſhips; but, till theſe are better known every navigator muſt, as it were, fiſh for anchorage: add to this, there are ſeveral rocks on the coaſt; though as none lie far from land, the approach to them may be known by ſounding, if they cannot be ſeen; ſo that upon the whole, we cannot think this the dangerous coaſt it has been repreſented by other voyagers. Staten Land is thirty miles in length, and nearly twelve broad. Its ſurface conſiſts of craggy hills, towering up to a vaſt height, eſpecially near the weſt end, and the coaſt is rocky. The greateſt part of the hills, their ſummits excepted, is covered with trees, ſhrubs, and herbage. We cannot ſay any thing, that navigators may depend on, concerning the tides and currents on theſe coaſts; but we obſerved that in Strait Le Maire, the ſoutherly tide, or current, begins to act at the new and full moon about four o'clock. It may alſo be of uſe to our commanders to remark, that if bound round Cape Horn to the weſt, and not in want of any thing that might make it neceſſary to put into port, in this caſe, we would adviſe them not to come near the land; as by keeping out to ſea, they would avoid the currents, which, we are convinced, loſe their force at twelve leagues from land; and at a greater diſtance they would find none to impede their courſe. We would juſt add to theſe nautical obſervations, that all the time of our being upon the coaſt, we had more calms than ſtorms; the winds were variable; nor did we experience any ſevere cold weather. The mercury in the thermometer, at noon, was never below 46 deg. and during our ſtay in Chriſtmas Sound, it was generally above temperate.

The iſland we landed on, and the ſame may be ſaid of the neighbouring iſles, is very unlike Staten Land. Its ſurface is of equal height, having an elevation of thirty or forty feet above the ſea, from which it is ſecured by a rocky coaſt. It is covered with ſword graſs, of a beautiful verdure, and of great length, growing in tufts, on little hillocks. Among theſe are the tracks of ſea bears and penguins, by which they retire into the centre of the iſle. Theſe paths rendered our excurſions rather diſagreeable, for we were ſometimes up to our knees in mire. Indeed the whole ſurface is moiſt and wet. The animals on this little ſpot are ſea lions, ſea bears, a variety of ſea fowls, and ſome land birds. The largeſt lion we ſaw was fourteen feet long and eight or ten in circumference. The back of the head, the neck and ſhoulders, are covered with long hair, like thoſe of the lion; the other parts of the body with ſhort hair, like that of the horſe: the colour of both is a dark brown. The female is of a light dun colour, and about half the ſize of the male. They live in herds near the ſea-ſhore, and on the rocks. As this was the time for engendering, and bringing forth their young, we ſaw a male with twenty or thirty females about him, and he ſeemed very deſirous of keeping them all to himſelf, beating off every other male who attempted to approach the flock. The ſea bears are ſmaller than the lions, but rather larger than a common ſeal. All their hairs are of an equal length, ſomething like an otter's, and the general colour is that of an iron-grey. This kind the French call ſea wolves, and the Engliſh ſeals. They are, however, different from thoſe in Europe and North America. The lions too may be called overgrown ſeals; for they are all of the ſame ſpecies. The hairs of the ſea bears are much finer than thoſe of lions. They permitted us to approach very near; but it was dangerous to go between them and the ſea, for if they happened to take fright, they would come down in vaſt numbers, and run over thoſe who could not get out of their way. They are ſluggiſh, ſleepy animals, and downright bullies; for if waked out of their ſleep they would raiſe up their heads, ſnort, ſnarl, and look very fierce; but when we advanced to attack them, they always ran away. This place abounds with penguins, which are amphibious birds, and ſo ſtupid, that we could knock down as many as we pleaſed with a ſtick. They are not very good eating, though we thought them ſo when in want of better fare. This was probably not their breeding ſeaſon, for we ſaw neither eggs nor young ones. Here are great numbers of ſhags, who build their neſts near the edge of the cliffs, on little hillocks; and a ſmaller kind, which we ſaw build in the cliffs of the rocks. The geeſe are of the ſame ſort as thoſe in Chriſtmas Sound, but not in ſuch plenty. They make a noiſe exactly like a duck. Here are ſeveral ducks of the ſort we called race-horſes: ſome we ſhot weighed thirty pounds. The ſea fowls are curlews, gulls, tern, Port Egmont hens; and large brown birds, pretty good eating, which we called Molary's geeſe. The land birds were eagles, hawks, thruſhes, and bald-headed vultures, which our ſailors named Turkey buzzards. Two new ſpecies of birds were here diſcovered by our naturaliſts. One is the ſize of a pigeon, with a plumage white as milk, but not web-footed. When we firſt ſaw theſe kind of birds we took them for ſnow peterels, but they reſemble them only in ſize and colour. They have a very bad ſmell, owing probably to their food being ſhell-fiſh and carrion, which they pick up along ſhore. The other ſort, almoſt as big as a heron, reſemble neareſt curlews. Their plumage is variegated, their bills long and crooked, and their principal colours are light grey. All the animals of this little ſpot live in perfect harmony, and ſeem careful not to diſturb each other's tranquillity. The ſea lions poſſeſs moſt of the ſea-coaſt; the bears take up their quarters within the iſle; the ſhags lodge in the higheſt cliffs; the penguins have their ſeparate abode where there is the moſt eaſy communication to and from the ſea; and the other birds have their places of retirement; yet we have obſerved them all, with mutual reconcilement, mix together, like domeſtic cattle and poultry in a farm-yard: nay we have ſeen the eagles and vultures ſitting together among the ſhags, on their hillocks, without the latter, either young or old, being diſturbed at their preſence.

It will be remembered, that we left Staten Iſland on the 3d, and this day, being Wedneſday the 4th, we ſaw the land again, at three o'clock A. M. and at ſix o'clock in the afternoon a heavy ſquall came ſo ſuddenly upon us, that it carried away a top-gallant-maſt, a ſtudding-ſail boom, and a fore ſtudding-ſail. This ended in a heavy ſhower of rain; and we now ſteered S. W. in order to diſcover the gulph of St. Sebaſtian, if ſuch a coaſt exiſted, in which that gulph has been repreſented, for of this we entertained a doubt; however, this appeared to be the beſt courſe to clear it up, and to explore the ſouthern part of this ocean. On the 5th, by obſervation, we were in latitude 57 deg. 9 min. and 5 deg. 2 min. E. longitude from Cape St. John. On the 6th, at eight o'clock in the evening, we were in latitude 58 deg. 9 min. S. and 53 deg. 14 min. W. the ſituation, nearly, aſſigned for the S. W. point of the gulph of St. Sebaſtian; but ſeeing no ſigns of land, we were ſtill doubtful of its exiſtence; and being alſo fearful, that by keeping to the ſouth, we might miſs the land ſaid to be diſcovered by La Roche in 1675, and by the ſhip Lion, in 1756; for theſe reaſons we hauled to the north, in order to get into the parallel laid down by Dalrymple as ſoon as poſſible. On the 7th, we were, near midnight, in the latitude of 56 deg. 4 min. S. longitude 53 deg. 36 min. W. On the 8th, at noon, a bed of ſea-weed paſſed the ſhip; and in the afternoon we were in latitude 55 deg. 4 min. longitude 51 deg. 45 min. On Monday, the 9th, we ſaw a ſeal, and ſea-weed. On the 10th, at two o'clock A. M. we bore away eaſt, and at eight E. N. E. At noon, by obſervation, we were in latitude 54 deg. 35 min. S. and in 47 deg. 56 min. W. longitude. We had at this time a great number of albatroſſes and blue peterels about the ſhip. We now ſteered due eaſt; and on the 11th, were in latitude 54 deg. 38 min. longitude 45 deg. 10 min. W. On the 12th, being Thurſday, we ſteered eaſt northerly; and at noon obſerved in latitude 54 deg. 28 min. S. and in 42 deg. 8 min. W. longitude, which is near 3 deg. E. of the ſituation, laid down by Mr. Dalrymple for the N. E. point of the gulph of St. Sebaſtian; but we had no other intimations of land, than ſeeing a ſeal, and a few penguins; and we had a ſwell from E. S. E. which we think would not have been, had any extenſive track of land lay in that direction. On Friday, the 13th, we ſtood to the ſouth till noon, when finding ourſelves in latitude 55 deg. 7 min. we ſtretched to the north. We now ſaw ſeveral penguins, and a ſnow peterel, which we judged to denote the vicinity of ice. We alſo found the air much colder than we had felt it ſince we left New Zealand. In the night we ſtood to the N. E. On Saturday, the 14th, at two o'clock, P. M. in latitude 53 deg. 56 min. 30 ſec. S. and in longitude 39 deg. 24 min. W. we diſcovered land, in a manner wholly covered with ſnow. We ſounded in one hundred and ſeventy-five fathoms, muddy bottom. The land bore E. by S. diſtant twelve leagues. On the 15th, the wind blew in ſqualls, attended with ſnow and ſleet, and we had a great ſea to encounter. At paſt four P. M. we ſtood to the S. W. under two courſes; but at midnight the ſtorm abated, ſo that we could carry our top-ſails double reefed. On the 16th, at four o'clock, A. M. we ſtood to the eaſt, with a moderate breeze, and at eight ſaw the land extending from E. by N. to N. E. by N. At noon, by obſervation, we were in latitude 54 deg. 25 min. 30 ſec. and in 38 deg. 18 min. W. longitude. The land was now about eight leagues diſtant. It proved to be an iſland, and we called it Willis Iſland, from the name of the perſon who firſt diſcovered it from the maſt-head. It is a high rock of no great extent. We bore up to it with a view of exploring the northern coaſt; and as we advanced perceived another iſle to the north, between that and the main. Obſerving a clear paſſage between both we ſteered for the ſame, and in the midway found it to be two miles broad. Willis's iſle is in the latitude of 54 deg. S. and in 38 deg. 23 min. W. longitude. The other, which was named Bird Iſland, a number of fowls being ſeen upon the coaſt, is not ſo high, but more extenſive; and is near the N. E. point of the main land, which Capt. Cook named Cape North. We ſaw ſeveral maſſes of ſnow, or ice, in the bottoms of ſome bays on the S. E. coaſt of this land, particularly in one which lies about three leagues to the S. S. E. of Bird Iſle. On Monday, the 16th, having got through the paſſage, we obſerved the north coaſt trended E. by N. for about three leagues, and then E. and E. by S. to Cape Buller, which is eleven miles. We ranged the coaſt till near night, at one league diſtance, when on ſounding we found fifty fathoms, and a muddy bottom. On the 17th, at two o'clock, A. M. we made for the land. We now ſteered along ſhore till ſeven, when, ſeeing the appearance of an inlet, we hauled in for it. The captain accompanied by Mr. Forſter, and others went off in a boat, to reconnoitre the bay before we ventured in with the ſhip. They landed in three different places, diſplayed our colours, and took poſſeſſion of the country in his majeſty's name. The head of the bay was terminated by ice-cliffs of conſiderable height; pieces of which were continually breaking off, which made a noiſe like a cannon. Nor were the interior parts of the country leſs horrible. The ſavage rocks raiſed their lofty ſummits till loſt in the clouds, and valleys were covered with ſeemingly perpetual ſnow. Not a tree, nor a ſhrub of any ſize were to be ſeen. The only ſigns of vegetation were a ſtrong bladed graſs, growing in tufts, wild burnet, and a plant like moſs, ſeen on the rocks. Sea-bears, or ſeals, were numerous: the ſhores ſwarmed with young cubs. Here were alſo the largeſt penguins we had yet ſeen. Some we brought aboard weighed above thirty pounds. We found the ſame ſea-fowls as at the laſt iſland; alſo divers, the new white birds, and ſmall ones, reſembling thoſe at the Cape of Good Hope, called yellow birds, which, having ſhot two, we found moſt delicious morſels. We ſaw no other land birds than a few ſmall larks, nor did we meet with any quadrupeds. The rocks bordering on the ſea were not covered with ſnow like the inland parts; and they ſeemed to contain iron ore. When the party returned aboard, they brought with them a quantity of ſeals and penguins. Not that we wanted proviſions; but any kind of freſh meat was acceptable to the crew; and even Capt. Cook acknowledged, that he was now, for the firſt time, heartily tired of ſalt diet of every kind; and that though the fleſh of penguins could ſcarcely be compared to bullocks liver, yet its being freſh was ſufficient to make it palatable. The captain named the bay he had ſurveyed, Poſſeſſion Bay; though according to his account of it, we think it to be no deſirable appendage to his majeſty's new poſſeſſions. It lies in latitude 54 deg. 5 min. S. and in 37 deg. 18 min. W. eleven leagues to the eaſt of Cape North. To the weſt of Poſſeſſion Bay, and between that and Cape Buller, lies the Bay of Iſles, ſo called from the number of ſmall iſles lying before and in it.

On Tueſday, the 17th, we made ſail to the eaſt, along the coaſt; the direction of which from Cape Buller, is 72 deg. 30 min. E. for the ſpace of twelve leagues, to a projecting point, which was named Cape Saunders. Beyond this is a pretty large bay, which obtained the name of Cumberland Bay. At the bottom of this, as alſo in ſome other ſmaller ones, were vaſt tracks of frozen ice, or ſnow, not yet broken looſe. Being now juſt paſt Cumberland Bay, we hauled off the coaſt, from whence we were diſtant about four miles. On the 18th, at noon, by obſervation, we were in latitude 54 deg. 30 min. S. and about three leagues from the coaſt, which ſtretched from N. 59 deg. W. to S. 13 deg. W. In this direction the land was an iſle, which ſeemed to be the extremity of the coaſt to the eaſt. At this time the neareſt land was a projecting point, terminating in a round hillock, which, on account of the day was called Cape Charlotte; on the weſt ſide of which lies a bay, and it was named Royal Bay; and the weſt point we called Cape George. This is the eaſt point of Cumberland Bay, in the direction of S. E. by E. from Cape Saunders, diſtant ſeven leagues. The Capes Charlotte and George lie in the direction of ſouth 37 deg. E. and north 37 deg. W. ſix leagues diſtant from each other. The iſle above mentioned was named Cooper's, after our firſt lieutenant. It is in the direction of S. by E. and eight leagues from Cape Charlotte. The coaſt between them forms a large bay, which we named Sandwich Bay. On the 19th, at ſun-riſe new land was diſcovered, which bore S. E. half E. At the firſt ſight it had the appearance of a ſingle hill, in the form of a ſugar-loaf; but ſoon after, other detached parts were viſible above the horizon near the hill. We obſerved at noon in latitude 54 deg. 42 min. 30 ſec. S. A lurking rock, that lies off Sandwich Bay, five miles from the land, bore W. half N. diſtant one mile. In the afternoon we had a view of a ridge of mountains, behind Sandwich Bay, whoſe icy tops were elevated high above the clouds. At ſix o'clock, Cape Charlotte bore north 31 deg. W. and Cooper's Iſland W. S. W.

On Friday the 20th, at two o'clock, A. M. we made ſail to the S. W. round Cooper's Iſland, which is one rock conſiderably high, about five miles in circuit, and one diſtant from the main. Here the main coaſt takes a S. W. direction for five leagues to a point, which we called Cape Diſappointment, off of which are three ſmall iſles. The moſt ſouthern one is a league from the Cape, green, low, and flat. From the point, as we continued our courſe S. W. land was ſeen to open in the direction of north 60 deg. W. diſtant beyond it nine leagues. It proved to be an iſle, and was named Pickerſgill Iſland. A point of what we had hitherto ſuppoſed to be the main, beyond this iſland, ſoon after came in ſight in the direction of north 55 deg. W. which united the coaſt at the very point we had ſeen, and taken the bearing of, the day we firſt came in with it, and left us not a ſingle doubt, that this land which we had taken for part of a great continent, was no more than an iſland, 210 miles in circuit. We thought it very extraordinary, that an iſland between the latitude of 54 and 55 degrees, ſhould, in the very height of ſummer, be almoſt wholly covered with frozen ſnow, in ſome places many fathoms deep; but more eſpecially the S. W. coaſt. Nay, the very ſides of the lofty mountains, were caſed with ice; but the quantity of ice and ſnow that lay in the valleys is incredible, and the bottoms of the bays were bounded by walls of ice of a conſiderable height. We are of opinion, that a great deal of the ice formed here in winter, is broken off in ſpring, and floats into the ſea: but we queſtion, whether a ten thouſandth part of what we ſaw is produced in this iſland; from whence we are led to conclude, that the land we had ſeen the day before might belong to a more extenſive track; and we ſtill had hopes of diſcovering a continent. As to our preſent diſappointment, we were not much affected thereby; for, were we to judge of the whole by this ſample, whatever its extent might be, it would be an acquiſition ſcarcely worth notice. This inhoſpitable, and dreary land, lies between the latitudes of 53 deg. 57 min. and 54 deg. 57 min. S. and between 38 deg. 13 min. and 35 deg. 34 min. W. longitude. We named this the Iſle of Georgia, in honour of his Majeſty. It extends S. E. by E. and N. W. by W. and is 93 miles long, and about 10 broad. The N. E. coaſt appears to have a number of bays, but the ice muſt prevent acceſs to them the greateſt part of the year; and at any time they will be dangerous harbours, on account of the continual breaking away of the ice cliffs. We are inclined to think, that the interior parts, on account of their elevation, never enjoy heat enough to melt the ſnow in ſuch quantities as to produce a river; nor did we find even a ſtream of freſh water on the whole coaſt; and the N. E. ſide of this, only receives ſufficient warmth to melt the ſnow. We now quitted this coaſt, and directed our courſe to the E. S. E. for the land we had ſeen the preceding day. A ſtrong gale overtook us, and we thought ourſelves very fortunate in having got clear of the land before this came on.

On the 21ſt, the ſtorm was ſucceeded by a thick fog, attended with rain; but having got a ſoutherly breeze, we ſtood to the eaſt till three in the afternoon; and then ſteered north in ſearch of the land. On the 22d, we had thick foggy weather; but in the evening it was ſo clear that we could ſee two leagues round us; and thinking we might be to the eaſt of the land, we ſteered weſt.

On the 23d, a thick fog at ſix o'clock, A. M. once more compelled us to haul the wind to the ſouth; but at eleven, we were favoured with a view of three or four rocky iſlots, extending from S. E. to E. N. E. about one league diſtant; and this, being the extent of our horizon, might be the reaſon why we did not ſee the ſugar-loaf peak before mentioned. We were well aſſured this was the land we had ſeen before, and which we had now circumnavigated; conſiſting of only a few detached rocks, the receptacles for birds. They are ſituated in latitude 55 deg. S. 12 leagues from Cooper's Iſle, and we named them Clerk's Rocks, Mr. Clerk, one of our lieutenants, having firſt diſcovered them. This interval of clear weather was ſucceeded by as thick a fog as ever, on which we ſtood to the north. Thus we were continually involved in thick miſts, and the ſhags with frequent ſoundings were our beſt pilots; but on the 23d we ſtood a few miles to the north, when we got clear of rocks, out of ſoundings, and ſaw not any ſhags.

On the 24th, we ſaw the rocks bearing S. S. W. half W. diſtant four miles, but we did not ſtill ſee the ſugar-loaf peak. At four o'clock, P. M. judging ourſelves to be three or four leagues E. and W. of them, we ſteered ſouth, being quite tired with cruizing in thick fogs, only to have a ſight of a few ſtraggling rocks. Having, at intervals, a clear ſky to the weſt, at ſeven o'clock we ſaw the iſle of Georgia, bearing W. N. W. diſtant eight leagues: at eight we ſteered S. E. by S. and at ten S. E. by E.

CHAP. IX.

The Reſolution continues her courſe—Newland and Saunders Iſles diſcovered—Conjectures, and ſome reaſons that there may be land about the South Pole—The Reſolution alters her courſe ſouth to the eaſt—Endeavours to find Cape Circumciſion—Obſervations on what ſhe had done in the voyage—Proceedings till her arrival at the Cape of Good Hope—Sails for the iſle of Fayal—And returns to England—Capt. Furneaux's narrative, from the time the Adventure was ſeparated from the Reſolution, to her arrival in England, including the report of Lieut. Burney, concerning the untimely death of the boat's-crew who were murdered by ſome of the natives of Queen Charlotte's Sound, in New Zealand.

ON Wedneſday the 25th, we ſteered E. S. E. We had a freſh gale at N. N. E. but the weather ſtill continued foggy, till towards the evening, at which time it cleared up. On the 26th, we held on our courſe with a fine gale from the N. N. W. but at day-light, ſeeing no land to the eaſt, and being in latitude 56 deg. 33 min. S. and in 31 deg. 10 min. W. longitude, we ſteered ſouth. On the 27th, at noon, we were in the latitude of 59 deg. 46 min. S. and had ſo thick a fog that we could not ſee a ſhip's length. We expected ſoon to fall in with the ice, and on this account, it being no longer ſafe to ſail before the wind, we hauled to the eaſt with a gentle gale at N. N. E. When the fog cleared away, we reſumed our courſe to the ſouth; but it returned again, which obliged us to haul upon a wind. By our reckoning we were now in the latitude of 60 deg. S. and unleſs we diſcovered ſome certain ſigns of ſoon falling in with land, the Captain determined to make this the limit of his voyage to the ſouth. Indeed it would not have been prudent to have ſquandered away time in proceeding farther to the ſouth, when there was a great probability of finding a large track of land near Cape Circumciſion. Beſides it was an irkſome taſk to traverſe in high ſouthern latitudes, where nothing was to be diſcovered but ice. At this time a long hollow ſwell from the weſt, indicated that no land was to be expected in ſuch a direction; and upon the whole, we may venture to aſſert, that the extenſive coaſt laid down by Mr. Dalrymple, and his Gulph of St. Sebaſtian, do not exiſt. The fog having receded from us a little, at ſeven o'clock in the evening, we ſaw an ice-iſland, penguins, and ſnow peterels. In the night, being viſited with a return of the fog, we were obliged to go over again that ſpace which we had, in ſome degree, made ourſelves acquainted with in the day.

On the 28th, at eight o'clock, A. M. we ſtood to the eaſt, with a gentle breeze at north. The weather cleared away, and we perceived the ſea ſtrewed with large and ſmall bodies of ice. Some whales, penguins, ſnow peterels, and other birds were ſeen. We had now ſun-ſhine, but the air was cold. At noon, by obſervation, we were in 60 deg. 4 min. S. and in 29 deg. 23 min. W. longitude. At half paſt two o'clock, having continued our courſe to the eaſt, we ſuddenly fell in with a vaſt number of large ice-iſlands, and a ſea ſtrewed with looſe ice, and the weather becoming hazy, made it dangerous to ſtand in among them.

We therefore tacked, and ſtood back to the weſt, with the wind at north. We were now ſurrounded with ice-iſlands, all nearly of an equal height, with a flat level ſurface; but of various extent. The looſe ice, with which the ſea appeared ſtrewed, had broke from theſe iſles.

On Sunday the 19th, having little wind, we were obliged to traverſe in ſuch courſes, as were moſt likely to carry us clear of them, ſo that we hardly made any progreſs, one way or other, throughout the whole day. The weather was fair, but remarkably gloomy, and we were viſited by penguins and whales in abundance. On the 30th, we tacked and ſtood to the N. E. and almoſt throughout the day it was foggy, with either ſleet or ſnow. At noon we were in latitude 59 deg. 30 min. S. and in 29 deg. 24 min. W. At two o'clock, paſſed one of the largeſt ice-iſlands we had ſeen during our voyage; and ſome time after two ſmaller ones. We now ſtood to N. E. over a ſea ſtrewed with ice. On the 31ſt we diſcovered land a-head, diſtant about one league. We hauled the wind to the north; but not being able to weather it, we tacked in 175 fathoms water, a league from the ſhore, and about half a one from ſome breakers. This land conſiſted of three rocky iſlots of conſiderable height. The outmoſt terminated in a lofty peak, like a ſugar-loaf, to which we gave the name of Freezland Peak, after the man who firſt diſcovered it. The latitude is 59 deg. S. and 27 deg. W. longitude. To the eaſt of this peak, was ſeen an elevated coaſt, whoſe ſnow-cap'd ſummits were above the clouds. It extended from N. by E. to E. S. E. and we named it Cape Briſtol, in honour of the noble family of Harvey. Alſo in latitude 59 deg. 13 min. 30 ſec. S. and in 27 deg. 45 min. W. another elevated coaſt appeared in ſight, bearing S. W. by S. and at noon, it extended from S. E. to S. S. W. diſtant from four to eight leagues. This land we called Southern Thule, becauſe the moſt ſouthern that has yet been diſcovered. Its ſurface riſes high, and is every where covered with ſnow. There were thoſe of our company, who thought they ſaw land in the ſpace between Thule and Cape Briſtol. We judged it more than probable that theſe two lands are connected, and the ſpace is a deep bay, which, though theſe are mere ſuppoſitions, was called Forſter's Bay. Being not able to weather Southern Thule, we tacked and ſtood to the north, at one o'clock, and at four Freezland Peak was diſtant four leagues. Soon after the wind fell, and we were left to the mercy of a great weſterly ſwell, which ſet right upon the ſhore; but at eight o'clock, the weather clearing up, we ſaw Cape Briſtol, which bore E. S. E. ending in a point to the north, beyond which we could ſee no land. Thus we were relieved from the fear of being carried away by the ſwell, and caſt on the moſt horrible coaſt in the world. We continued our courſe to the north all night, with a light breeze at weſt.

On Wedneſday the firſt of February, at four o'clock in the morning, we had a view of a new coaſt. At ſix it bore north 60 deg. E. and being a high promontory, we named it Cape Montague. It is ſituated in latitude 58 deg. 27 min. S. and in 26 deg. 44 min. W. longitude; eight leagues to the north of Cape Briſtol. We ſaw land in ſeveral places between them, whence we concluded the whole might be connected. We wiſh it had been in our power to have determined this with greater certainty, but prudence would not permit the attempt, nor to venture near a coaſt the dangers of which have been already ſufficiently pointed out. One ice-iſland, among many others on this coaſt, particularly attracted our notice. It was level in ſurface, of great extent both in height and circuit, and its ſides were perpendicular, on which the waves of the ſea had not made the leaſt impreſſion. We thought it might have come out from ſome bay in the coaſt. At noon we were eaſt and weſt of the northern part of Cape Montague, diſtant five leagues. Freezland Peak was 12 leagues, and bore ſouth 16 deg. E. By obſervation we found our latitude to be 58 deg. 25 min. In the afternoon, at two o'clock, when ſtanding to the north we ſaw land, which bore north 25 deg. E. It extended from north 40 deg. to 52 deg. E. and it was imagined more land lay beyond it to the eaſt. Cape Montague at this time bore ſouth 66 deg. E. at eight 40 deg. and Cape Briſtol S. by E.

On the 2nd, at ſix o'clock A. M. having ſteered to the north during the night, new land was diſcovered, bearing north 12 deg. E. diſtant 10 leagues. We ſaw two hummocks juſt above the horizon, of which we ſoon loſt ſight. We now ſtood, having a freſh breeze at N. N. E. for the northernmoſt land we had ſeen the preceding day, which, at this time, bore E. S. E. By ten o'clock we fetched in with it, but not having it in our power to weather the ſame, we tacked at three miles from the coaſt. This extended from E. by S. to S. E. and appeared to be an iſland of about 10 leagues circuit. The ſurface was high, and its ſummit loſt in the clouds. Like all the neighbouring lands, it was covered with a ſheet of ſnow and ice, except on a point on the north ſide, and on two hills ſeen over it, which probably were two iſlands. Theſe were not only clear of ſnow, but ſeemed covered with green turf. We ſaw alſo large ice-iſlands to the ſouth, and others to the N. E. At noon we tacked for the land again, in order if poſſible to determine whether it was an iſland; but a thick fog ſoon prevented the diſcovery, by making it unſafe to ſtand in for the ſhore; ſo that having returned, we tacked and ſtood to N. W. to make the land we had ſeen in the morning. We left the other under the ſuppoſition of its being an iſland, and named it Saunders Iſle, after Capt. Cook's honourable friend Sir Charles Saunders. It lies in latitude 57 deg. 49 min. S. and in 26 deg. 44 min. W. longitude, diſtant 13 leagues from Cape Montague. The wind having ſhifted at ſix o'clock, we ſtood to the north; and at eight we ſaw Saunders Iſland, extending from S. E. by S. to E. S. E. We were ſtill in doubt if it were an iſland, and could not at this time clear it up, as we found it neceſſary to take a view of the land to the north, before we proceeded any farther to the eaſt. With this intent we ſtood to the north, and on the 3d, at two o'clock A. M. we came in ſight of the land we were ſearching after, which proved to be two iſles. On account of the day on which they were diſcovered, we called them Candlemas Iſles. They lie in latitude 57 deg. 11 min. S. and in 27 deg. 6 min. W. longitude. Between theſe we obſerved a ſmall rock; there may perhaps be others; for the weather being hazy occaſioned us to loſe ſight of the iſlands, and we did not ſee them again till noon, at which time they were three or four leagues off. We were now obliged, by reaſon of the wind having veered to the ſouth, to ſtand to the N. E. and at midnight came ſuddenly into water uncommonly white, at which appearance the officer on watch was ſo much alarmed, that he immediately ordered the ſhip to be put about, and we accordingly tacked inſtantly. There were various opinions aboard concerning this matter; probably it might be a ſhoal of fiſh; but ſome ſaid it was a ſhoal of ice; and others thought it was ſhallow water.

On Sunday the 4th, at two o'clock A. M. we reſumed our courſe to the eaſt, and at ſix tried if there were any current, but found none. At this time ſome whales were playing, and numbers of penguins flying about us: of the latter we ſhot a few, different from thoſe on Staten Land, and at the iſle of Georgia. We had not ſeen a ſeal ſince we left that coaſt, which is ſomewhat remarkable. By obſervation at noon, we found ourſelves in latitude 56 deg. 44 min. S. and in longitude 25 deg. 33 min. W. We now having a breeze at eaſt, ſtood to the ſouth, intending to regain the coaſt we had loſt; but the wind at eight o'clock in the evening, obliged us to ſtand to the eaſt, in which run we ſaw many ice-iſlands, and ſome looſe ice. As the formation of ice-iſlands has not been fully inveſtigated, we will here offer a few hints and obſervations reſpecting them. We do not think, as ſome others do, that they are formed by the water at the mouths of great cataracts or large rivers, which, when accumulated, break off, owing to their ponderous weight; becauſe we never found any of the ice, which we took up, in the leaſt incorporated, or connected with earth, which muſt neceſſarily adhere to it, were this conjecture true. Furthermore, we are not certain whether there are any rivers in theſe countries, as we ſaw neither rivers nor ſtreams of freſh water there. The ice-iſlands, at leaſt in thoſe parts, muſt be formed from ſnow and ſleet conſolidated, which gathers by degrees, and are drifted from the mountains. In the winter, the ſeas or the ice cliffs muſt fill up the bays, if they are ever ſo large. The continual fall of ſnow occaſions the accumulation of theſe cliffs, till they can ſupport their weight no longer, and large pieces break off from theſe ice-iſlands. We are inclined to believe, that theſe ice cliffs, where they are ſheltered from the violence of the winds, extend a great way into the ſea.

On the 5th, having ſeen no penguins, we thought that we were leaving land behind us, and that we had paſſed its northern extremity. At noon we were 3 deg. of longitude, to the eaſt of Saunders' Iſle; and by obſervation in the latitude of 57 deg. 8 min. S. and in 23 deg. 34 min. W. longitude. In the afternoon we again ſtretched to the ſouth, in order that we might again fall in with the land, if it took an eaſt direction.

On Monday the 6th, we held on our courſe till the 7th at noon, when we found our latitude to be 58 deg. 15 min. S. and longitude 21 deg. 34 min. W. and not ſeeing any ſigns of land, we concluded, that what had been denominated Sandwich Land, was either a group of iſlands, or a point of the continent: for in Capt. Cook's opinion, the ice that is ſpread over this vaſt Southern Ocean, muſt originate in a track of land, which he firmly believes lies near the pole, and extends fartheſt to the north, oppoſite the Southern Atlantic and Indian Oceans; for ice being found in theſe farther to the north, than any where elſe, induced the Captain to conclude, that land of conſiderable extent muſt exiſt near the ſouth. Upon a contrary ſuppoſition it will follow, that we ought to ſee ice every where under the ſame parallel; but few ſhips have met with ice going round Cape Horn; and for our part, we ſaw but little below the ſixtieth degree of latitude in the Southern Pacific Ocean; on the other hand in this ſea, between the meridian of 40 deg. W. and fifty or ſixty degrees eaſt, we found ice as far north as 51 deg. Others have ſeen it in a much lower latitude. Let us now ſuppoſe there is a Southern Continent within the polar circle. The queſtion which readily occurs, will be; What end can be anſwered in diſcovering or exploring ſuch a coaſt? Or what uſe can the ſame be either to navigation, geography, or any other ſcience? And what benefits can reſult therefrom to a commercial ſtate? Conſider for a moment, what thick fogs, ſnow, ſtorms, intenſe cold, and every thing dangerous to navigation, muſt be encountered with by every hardy adventurer; behold the horrid aſpect of a country impenetrable by the animating heat of the ſun's rays; a country doomed to be immerſed in everlaſting ſnow. See the iſlands and floats on the coaſt, and the continual falls of the ice cliffs in the ports: theſe difficulties, which might be heightened by others not leſs dangerous, are ſufficient to deter every one from the raſh attempts of proceeding farther to the ſouth, than our expert and brave commander has done, in ſearch of an unknown country, which when diſcovered would anſwer no valuable purpoſe whatever. By this time we had traverſed the Southern Ocean, in ſuch a manner, as to have no doubt in determining that there is no continent, unleſs near the pole, and out of the reach of navigation. We have made many new diſcoveries, and aſcertained the exact ſituation of ſeveral old ones. Thus was the end of our voyage fully anſwered, a ſouthern hemiſphere ſufficiently explored, and the neceſſity of a ſearch after a ſouthern continent put an end to. We ſhould have proceeded to farther diſcoveries, but our Captain thought it cruel to detain the people who ſailed with him any longer without the neceſſary refreſhments, eſpecially, as their behaviour merited every indulgence; for neither officers nor men ever once repined at any hardſhip, nor expreſſed any uneaſineſs, or additional fear of danger, on account of our ſeparation from the Adventure. It was now high time to think of returning home; and could we have continued longer, we ſhould have been in great danger of the ſcurvey breaking out among us, and we do not know any good purpoſe farther diſcoveries would have anſwered: we therefore ſteered for the Cape of Good Hope, intending to look for Bouvet's diſcovery, Cape Circumciſion, and the iſles of Denia and Marſeveen. But before we continue the narrative of this voyage, it may not be thought improper to collect a few obſervations from our moſt eminent writers, on Terra Magellanica, Patagonia, part of which coaſt lies within the ſtraits, the Iſland of Terra del Fuego, and Falkland's Iſlands.

Terra Magellanica received its name from Ferdinand Magellan, a Portugueſe officer; who likewiſe gave name to thoſe ſtraights which lead from the ſouth to the north ſea, he being the firſt who ſailed through them. The appellation of Patagonia was derived from a principal tribe of its inhabitants, called Patagons. The whole country, which goes under the name of Patagonia, extends from Chili and Paraguay to the utmoſt extremity of South America, that is, from 35 almoſt to 54 degrees of ſouth latitude, being 700 miles long, and 300 broad where wideſt. The northern parts contain an almoſt inexhauſtible ſtock of large timber, but in the ſouthern diſtricts there is ſcarcely a tree to be ſeen fit for any mechanical purpoſe. The lofty mountains, called the Andes, traverſe the whole country from north to ſouth.

Here are incredible numbers of wild horned cattle and horſes, which were firſt brought hither by the Spaniards, and have increaſed amazingly; the paſturage alſo is good. Some writers tell us that freſh water is ſcarce; but were that the caſe, we cannot ſee how the preſent inhabitants, and ſuch multitudes of cattle could ſubſiſt. The eaſt coaſt is chiefly low-land, with few or no good harbours; that called St. Julian is one of the beſt.

The inhabitants of Patagonia conſiſt of ſeveral Indian tribes, as the Patagons, Pampas, Coſſares, &c. They are a ſavage, barbarous people, of a copper colour, like the reſt of the Americans, with coarſe black hair, and no beards. They are mightily addicted to painting themſelves, and make ſtreaks on their faces and bodies. They go almoſt ſtark naked, having only a ſquare garment, in the form of a blanket, made of the ſkins of ſeveral animals, and ſewed together, which they ſometimes wrap round them in extreme cold weather; and they have alſo a cap of the ſkins of fowls on their heads. Former voyagers repreſented them as monſtrous giants of 11 feet high, whereas they are no taller than the other Americans. The women, as in other places, are very fond of necklaces and bracelets, which they make of ſea ſhells. The natives chiefly live on fiſh and game, and what the earth produces ſpontaneouſly. This country abounds with an animal called camel-ſheep by ſome authors, but their true name is guanacoes. They partake of the nature of a camel, though they have no bunch on the back, and they were formerly made uſe of to carry burdens. They have alſo a bird called an oſtrich, but not ſo large, and they differ from the African oſtriches in having three toes, whereas thoſe have but two. A great number of iſlands, or cluſters of iſlands, lie on the coaſts of Patagonia.

The iſland of Terra del Fuego, or the Land of Fires, as it was called by the firſt diſcoverers, on account of their having obſerved ſome great fires upon it (ſuppoſed to be volcanoes) as they paſſed it in the night, is ſeparated from the continent by the Magellanic Straights; has a rough appearance, being very mountainous, but is interſected with deep narrow vallies, and is well watered. The natives of this country are ſhort in their perſons, not exceeding five feet ſix inches at moſt, their heads large, their faces broad, their cheek-bones very prominent, and their noſes very flat. They have little brown eyes, without life; their hair is black and lank, hanging about their heads in diſorder, and beſmeared with train oil. On the chin they have a few ſtraggling ſhort hairs inſtead of a beard, and from their noſe there

BRITISH
7 FE 10
MUSEUM

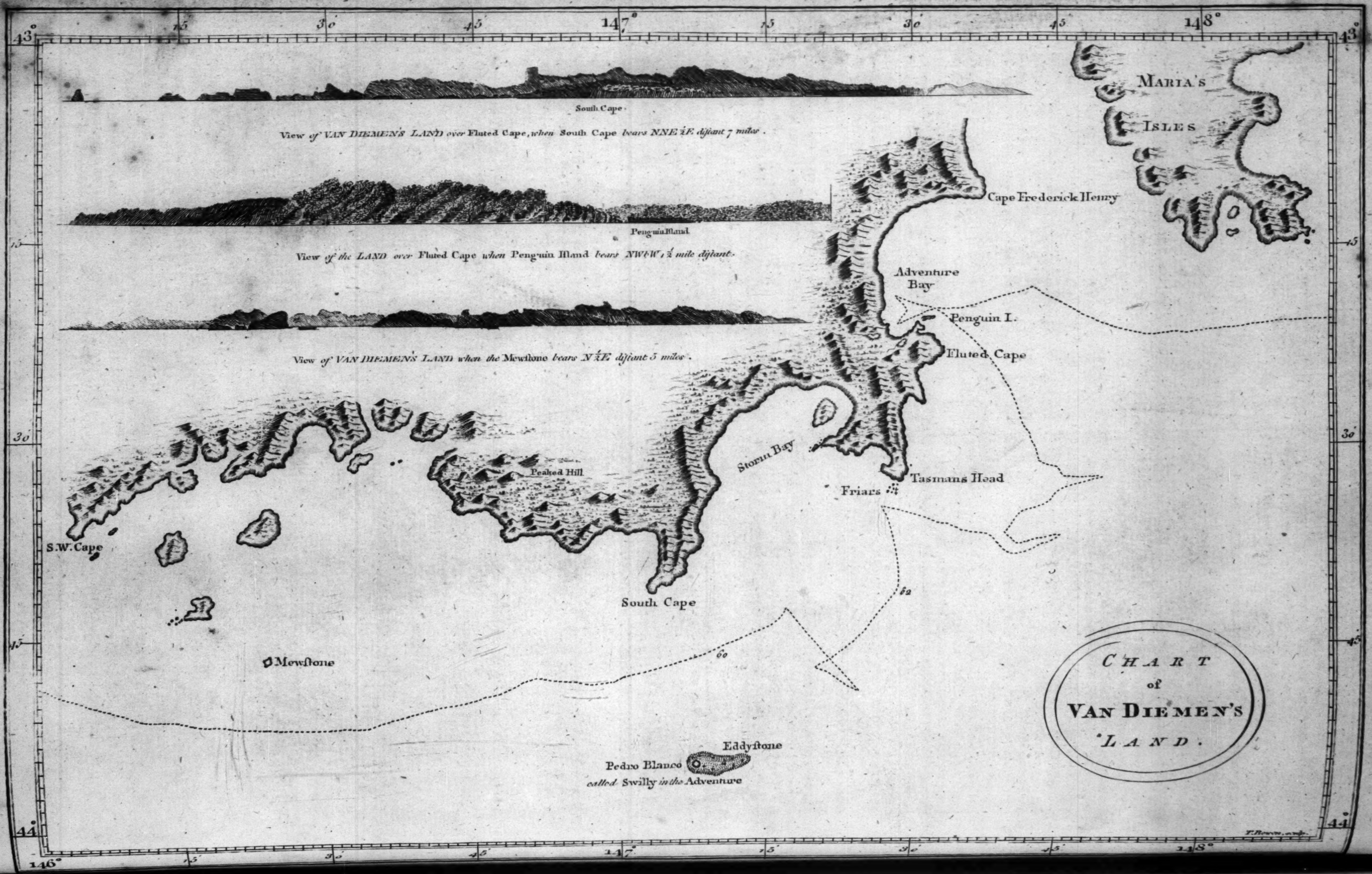


CHART of VAN DIEMEN'S LAND.

View of VAN DIEMEN'S LAND over Fluted Cape, when South Cape bears NNE ½ E. distant 7 miles.

View of the LAND over Fluted Cape when Penguin Island bears NW b W, ¼ mile distant.

View of VAN DIEMEN'S LAND when the Mewstone bears N ½ E. distant 5 miles.

South Cape
Penguin Island
Maria's Isles
Cape Frederick Henry
Adventure Bay
Penguin I.
Fluted Cape
Storm Bay
Tasmans Head
Friars
Peaked Hill
S.W. Cape
South Cape
62
60
Mewstone
Eddystone
Pedro Blanco called Swilly in the Adventure
T. Bowen sculp.
43°
44°
146°
147°
148°
15
30
45

is a conſtant diſcharge of mucus into their ugly open mouth. The whole aſſemblage of their features forms the moſt loathſome picture of miſery and wretchedneſs to which human nature can poſſibly be reduced. They had no other cloathing than a ſmall piece of ſeal-ſkin, which hung from their ſhoulders to the middle of the back, being faſtened round the neck with a ſtring. The reſt of their body was perfectly naked, not the leaſt regard being paid to decency. Their natural colour ſeems to be an olive-brown, with a kind of gloſs reſembling that of copper; but many of them diſguiſe themſelves with ſtreaks of red paint, and ſometimes, though ſeldom, with white. Their whole character is the ſtrongeſt compound of ſtupidity, indifference, and inactivity. They have no other arms than bows and arrows, and their inſtruments for fiſhing a kind of fiſh-gags. They live chiefly on ſeals fleſh, and like the fat oily part moſt. There is no appearance of any ſubordination among them, and their mode of living approaches nearer to that of brutes, than that of any other nation. The children go naked, and the only weapon of the men is a long ſtick generally hooked, and pointed at the end like a lance. They live in huts made of boughs, and covered with mud, branches &c. One ſide is open, and the fire-place is in the middle; and a whole family herd together in one of theſe miſerable hovels.

The above-mentioned iſlands are all very barren and mountainous; but from what Mr. Forſter ſays, in his Voyage to the South Sea, the climate would not appear to be ſo rigorous and tempeſtuous as it is repreſented in Anſon's Voyage. Upon the lower grounds and iſlands, that were ſheltered by the high mountains, ſeveral ſorts of trees and plants, and a variety of birds, were found. Among the trees was Winter's bark-tree, and a ſpecies of arbulus, loaded with red fruit of the ſize of ſmall cherries, which were very well taſted. In ſome places there is alſo plenty of celery. Among the birds was a ſpecies of duck of the ſize of a gooſe, which ran along the ſea with amazing velocity, beating the water with its wings and feet: it had a grey plumage, with a yellow bill and feet, and a few white quill feathers: at the Falkland Iſlands it is called a loggerhead duck. Among the birds are alſo plenty of geeſe and falcons. The rocks of ſome of the iſlands are covered with large muſcle-ſhells, the fiſh of which is ſaid to be more delicate than oyſters.

Falkland's Iſlands were firſt diſcovered in 1594, by Sir Richard Hawkins, who named the principal of them Hawkins' Maidenland, in honour of queen Elizabeth. The preſent name Falkland was probably given them by Capt. Strong, in 1689, and afterwards adopted by Halley.

The late lord Egmont, firſt lord of the Admiralty in 1764, then revived the ſcheme of a ſettlement in the South Seas; and commodore Byron was ſent to take poſſeſſion of Falkland's iſlands in the name of his Britannic majeſty, and in his journal repreſents them as a valuable acquiſition. On the other hand, they are repreſented by Capt. M'Bride, who in 1766 ſucceeded that gentleman, as the outcaſts of nature: "We found (ſays he) a map of iſlands and broken lands, of which the ſoil was nothing but a bog, with no better proſpect than that of barren mountains, beaten by ſtorms almoſt perpetual. Yet this is ſummer; and if the winds of winter hold their natural proportion, thoſe who lie but two cables length from the ſhore, muſt paſs weeks without any communication with it." The herbs and vegetables which were planted by Mr. Byron's people; and the fir-tree, a native of rugged and cold climates, had withered. In the ſummer-months, wild celeri and ſorrel are the natural luxuries of theſe iſlands. Goats, ſheep, and hogs that were carried hither, were found to increaſe and thrive as in other places. Geeſe of a fiſhy taſte, ſnipes, penguins, foxes, and ſea lions, are alſo found here, and plenty of good water.

Though the ſoil be barren, and the ſea tempeſtuous, an Engliſh ſettlement was made here, of which we were diſpoſſeſſed by the Spaniards in 1770. That violence was, however, diſavowed by the Spaniſh ambaſſador, and ſome conceſſions were made to the court of Great Britain; but in order to avoid giving umbrage to the court of Spain, the ſettlement was afterwards abandoned.

On Tueſday, the 7th, we reſumed our courſe to the eaſt, and this day only three ice-iſlands were ſeen. At eight o'clock in the evening, we hauled the wind to the S. E. for the night. On the 8th, at day-light, we continued our courſe to the eaſt, being in latitude 58 deg. 30 min. S. and in 15 deg. 14 min. W. longitude. In the afternoon paſſed three ice iſlands. On the 9th, we had a calm moſt part of the day; the weather fair, except at times a ſnow ſhower. We ſaw ſeveral ice iſlands, but not the leaſt intimation that could induce us to think that any land was near us. We ſtood now to N. E. with a breeze which ſprung up at S. E. On the 10th we had ſhowers of ſleet and ſnow; the weather was piercing cold, inſomuch that the water on deck was frozen. The ice-iſlands were continually in ſight. On the 11th, we continued to ſteer eaſt. In the morning we had heavy ſhowers of ſnow; but as the day advanced, we had clear and ſerene weather. At noon we were in latitude 58 deg. 11 min. and in 7 deg. 55 min. W. longitude. On the 12th, we had ice iſlands continually in ſight, but moſt of them were ſmall and breaking to pieces. On Monday, the 13th, we had a heavy fall of ſnow; but, the ſky clearing up, we had a fair night, and ſo ſharp a froſt, that the water in all our veſſels on deck, was next morning covered with a ſheet of ice. On the 14th, we continued to ſteer eaſt, inclining to the north, and in the afternoon croſſed the firſt meridian, or that of Greenwich, in the latitude of 57 deg. 50 min. S. At eight o'clock we had a hard gale, at S. S. W. and a high ſea from the ſame quarter. On the 15th, we ſteered E. N. E. till noon, when by obſervation, we were in latitude 56 deg. 37 min. S. and in 4 deg. 11 min. E. longitude. We now ſailed N. E. with a view of getting into the latitude of Cape Circumciſion. We had ſome large ice iſlands in ſight, and the air was nearly as cold as the preceding day. The night was foggy, with ſnow ſhowers, and a ſmart froſt. On Thurſday, the 16th, we continued our courſe N. E. and at noon we obſerved in latitude 55 deg. 26 min. S. and in 5 deg. 52 min. E. longitude, in which ſituation we had a great ſwell from the ſouth, but no ice in ſight. At one o'clock we ſtood to S. E. till ſix, when we tacked, and ſtood to the north. At this time we had a heavy fall of ſnow and ſleet, which fixed to the maſts and rigging as it fell, and coated the whole with ice. On the 17th, we had a great high ſea from the ſouth, from whence we concluded no land was near in that direction. At this time were in latitude 54 deg. 20 min. S. and in 6 deg. 33 min. E. longitude. On the 18th, the weather was fair and clear. We now kept a look-out for Cape Circumciſion; for if the land had ever ſo little extent in the direction of N. and S. we could not miſs ſeeing it, as the northern point is ſaid to lie in 54 deg. On the 19th, at eight o'clock in the morning, land appeared in the direction eaſt by ſouth, but it proved a mere fog-bank. We now ſteered eaſt by ſouth and S. E. till ſeven o'clock in the evening, when we were in latitude 54 deg. 42 min. S. and in 13 deg. 3 min. E. longitude. We now ſtood to N. W. having a very ſtrong gale, attended with ſnow ſhowers. On Monday, the 20th, we tacked and ſtretched to N. E. and had a freſh gale attended with ſnow ſhowers and ſleet. At noon we were in latitude 54 deg. 8 min. S. longitude 12 deg. 59 min. E. but had not the leaſt ſign of land. On the 21ſt, we were 5 deg. to the eaſt of the longitude in which Cape Circumciſion is ſaid to lie, and continued our courſe eaſt, inclining a little to the ſouth, till the 22nd, when, at noon, by obſervation we were in latitude 54 deg. 24 min. S. and in 19 deg. 18 min. E. longitude. We had now meaſured in the latitude laid down for Bouvet's land, thirteen degrees of longitude; a courſe in which it is hardly poſſible we could have miſſed it; we therefore began to doubt its exiſtence; and concluded, that what the Frenchman had ſeen, could be nothing more than a deception, or an iſland of ice: for after we had left the ſouthern iſles, to the preſent time, not the leaſt veſtige of land had been diſcovered. We ſaw, it is true, ſome ſeals, and penguins; but theſe are to be found in all parts of the ſouthern ocean, and we believe ſhags, gannets, boobies, and men of war birds, are the moſt indubitable ſigns that denote the vicinity of lands, as they ſeldom go very far out to ſea. Being at this time only two degrees of longitude from our route to the ſouth, when we took our departure from the Cape of Good Hope, it was in vain for us to continue our courſe to the eaſt, under this parallel; but thinking we might have ſeen land farther to the ſouth, for this reaſon, and to clear up ſome doubts, we ſteered S. E. in order to get into the ſituation in which it was ſuppoſed to lie. On the 23d, from obſervations on ſeveral diſtances of the ſun and moon, we found ourſelves in the latitude of 55 deg. 25 min. S. and in 23 deg. 22 min. E. longitude; and having run over the track in which the land was ſuppoſed to lie, without ſeeing any, we now was well aſſured the ice-iſlands had deceived M. Bouvet; as at times they had deceived us. During the night the wind veered to N. W. which enabled us to ſteer more north; for we had now laid aſide all thoughts of ſearching farther after the French diſcoveries, and were determined to direct our courſe for the Cape of Good Hope, intending only by the way to look for the iſles of Denia, and Marſeveen, which by Dr. Halley are laid down in the latitude of 41 deg. 5 min. and 4 deg. E. longitude from the meridian of the Cape of Good Hope. On Friday the 25th, we ſteered N. E. and were at noon in latitude 52 deg. 52 min. S. longitude 26 deg. 31 min. E. This day we ſaw the laſt ice-iſland.

On Wedneſday, the firſt of March, we were in latitude 46 deg. 44 min. S. and in 23 deg. 36 min. W. longitude; and we took notice, that the whole time the wind blew regular and conſtant northerly, which included ſeveral days, the weather was always cloudy and very hazy; but as ſoon as it came ſouth of weſt, it cleared up. We alſo obſerved, that the barometer began to riſe ſeveral days before this change happened. On the 3d, in the afternoon, we had intervals of clear weather, but at night the wind blew a heavy ſquall from S. W. whereby ſeveral of our ſails were ſplit, and a middle ſtay-ſail was wholly loſt. Our latitude was 45 deg. 8 min. S. longitude 30 deg. 50 min. E. On Wedneſday, the 8th, the thermometer roſe to 61 deg. and we were obliged to put on lighter cloaths. We were now in latitude 41 deg. 30 min. S. longitude 26 deg. 51 min. E. We had not yet ſeen any ſigns of land, but albatroſſes, peterels, and other ſea birds, were our daily viſitors. On the 11th, the wind ſhifted ſuddenly from N. W. to S. W. which occaſioned the mercury to fall as ſuddenly from 62 to 52 deg. ſo different was the ſtate of the air between a northerly and ſoutherly wind. Our latitude this day was 40 deg, 40 min. S. longitude 23 deg. 47 min. E.

On Sunday, the 12th, ſome albatroſſes and peterels were ſhot, which proved an acceptable treat. This day we were nearly in the ſituation, in which the iſles of Denia and Marſeveen are ſaid to lie, and not the leaſt hope of finding them remained. On the 13th, we ſtood to N. N. W. and at noon by obſervation, were in latitude 38 deg. 51 min. S. which was above thirty miles more than our log gave us; to what this difference was owing, we could not determine. The watch alſo ſhewed that we had been ſet to the eaſt. At this time we were two degrees north of the parallel in which the iſles are laid down, but found not any encouragement to preſevere in our endeavours to find them. This muſt have conſumed more time, we think, in a fruitleſs ſearch; and every one, all having been confined a long time to ſtale and ſalt proviſions, was impatient to get into port. We therefore, in compliance with the general wiſh, reſolved to make the beſt of our way to the Cape of Good Hope. We were now in latitude 38 deg. 38 min. S. and in 23 deg. 37 min. E. longitude.

On Thurſday, the 16th, at day-break, we deſcried in the N. W. quarter, ſtanding to the weſtward, two ſail, one of which ſhewed Dutch colours. At ten o'clock we ſtood to the weſt alſo, and were now in the latitude of 35 deg. 9 min. S. and in longitude 22 deg. 38 min. E. About this time, a quarrel aroſe between three officers, and the ſhip's cooks, which was not reconciled without ſerious conſequences. Thoſe three gentleman, upon ſome occaſion or other, entered the cook-room with naked knives, and with oaths, unbecoming their character, ſwore they would take away the lives of the firſt who dared to affront them. It ſeems they had formerly met with ſome rebuffs for too much frequenting the cooks apartments, which had hitherto paſſed in joke; but now a regular complaint was laid before the captain, of their unwarrantable behaviour, and of the danger the men were in of their lives; into which complaint the captain was under a neceſſity of enquiring; and upon finding it juſt, of confining the offenders in irons. While they were in this ſituation, the articles of war being read, it was found that the offence was of ſuch a nature as hardly to be determined without a reference to a court martial, in order to which the two who appeared moſt culpable, were continued priſoners upon parole, and the third was cleared. After this buſineſs had engroſſed the Captain's attention, he called the ſhip's crew together, and after recounting the particulars of the voyage, the hardſhips they had met with, the fatigues they had undergone, and the chearfulneſs they had conſtantly ſhewn in the diſcharge of their duty, he gave them to underſtand, how much it would ſtill more recommend them to the Lords of the Admiralty, if they would preſerve a profound ſilence in the ports they had yet to paſs and might enter, with regard to the courſes, the diſcoveries they had made, and every particular relative to this voyage; and likewiſe, after their return home, till they had their lordſhips permiſſion to the contrary; requiring, at the ſame time, all thoſe officers who had kept journals to deliver them into his cuſtody, to be ſealed up, and not to be opened till delivered to their lordſhips at the proper office. In the interim they were to be locked up ſafely in a cheſt. This requeſt was chearfully complied with by every commiſſioned officer.

On Friday, the 17th, we obſerved at noon in the latitude of 34 deg. 49 min. S. in the evening we ſaw land, about ſix leagues diſtant, in the direction of E. N. E. And there was a great fire or light upon it, throughout the firſt part of the night. On the 18th, at day-break, we ſaw, at the ſame diſtance, the land again, bearing N. N. W. At nine o'clock, we ſent out a boat to get up with one of the two ſhips before noticed; we were ſo deſirous of hearing news, that we paid no attention to the diſtance, though the ſhips were at leaſt two leagues from us. Soon after we ſtood to the ſouth, a breeze ſpringing up at weſt. At this time three more ſail were ſeen to windward, one of which ſhewed Engliſh colours. The boat returned at one o'clock P. M. and our people in it had been on board a Dutch Indiaman, coming home from Bengal; the ſhip was the Bownkerk Polder, the Captain Cornelius Boſch. The captain very politely made us a tender of ſugar, arrack, and of any thing that could be ſpared out of the ſhip. By ſome Engliſh mariners on board her, our people were informed, that our conſort had arrived at the Cape of Good Hope twelve months ago; adding, that a boat's crew had been murdered and eaten by the natives of New Zealand. This intelligence ſufficiently explained the myſterious accounts we had received from our old friends, in Queen Charlotte's Sound.

On the 19th, at ten o'clock in the morning, the Engliſh ſhip bore down to us. She was the True Briton, Capt. Broadly, on her return from China. A letter to the ſecretary of the Admiralty was committed to the care of the captain, who generouſly ſent us freſh proviſions, tea, and other articles. In the afternoon, the True Briton ſtood out to ſea, and we in for land. At ſix o'clock, we tacked within five miles of the ſhore, diſtant, as we conjectured, about ſix leagues from Cape Aquilas,

Aquilas. On the 20th, we ſtood along ſhore to the weſt; and on the 21ſt, at noon, the Table Mountain, over the Cape Town, bore N. E. by E. diſtant ten leagues. The next morning we anchored in Table Bay; with us, in our reckoning, it was Wedneſday the 22nd, but with the people here, Tueſday the 21ſt, we having gained a day by running to the eaſt. In the bay we found ſhips of different nations, among which was an Engliſh Eaſt Indiaman, from China, bound directly to England. In this ſhip Capt. Cook ſent a copy of his journal, together with ſome charts and drawings to the Admiralty. We ſaluted the garriſon with thirteen guns, and the compliment was returned with an equal number. We now heard the deplorable ſtory of the Adventure's boat's crew confirmed, with the addition of a falſe report, concerning the loſs of a French ſhip upon the ſame iſland, with the total deſtruction of the captain and his crew, propagated, no doubt, by the Adventure's people, to render an act of ſavage barbarity, that would ſcarcely admit of aggravation, ſtill more horrible. But, which gave us full ſatisfaction about this matter, Capt. Furneaux had left a letter for our commander, in which he mentions the loſs of the boat, and ten of his men, in Queen Charlotte's Sound. The day after our arrival at this place, Capt. Cook, accompanied by our gentlemen, waited on Baron Plettenberg, the Dutch Governor, by whom, and his principal officers, they were treated with the greateſt politeneſs; and as at this place refreſhments of all kinds may be procured in great abundance, we now, after the numerous fatigues of a long voyage, began to taſte, and enjoy the ſweets of repoſe. It is a cuſtom here for all the officers to reſide on ſhore; in compliance with which, the captain, the two Forſters, and Mr. Sparman took up their abode with Mr. Brandt, well known to our countrymen for his obliging readineſs to ſerve them. Our people on board were not neglected: and being provided daily with freſh baked bread, freſh meat, greens, wine, &c. they were ſoon reſtored to their uſual ſtrength, and as ſoon forgot all paſt hardſhips and dangers.

All hands were employed now to ſupply all our defects. Almoſt every thing except the ſtanding rigging was to be replaced anew; and it is well known the charges here for naval ſtores are moſt exorbitant; for the Dutch both at the Cape and Batavia, take a ſcandalous advantage of the diſtreſs of foreigners. That our caſks, rigging, ſails, &c. ſhould be in a ſhattered condition, is eaſily accounted for. In circumnavigating the globe, we mean, from leaving this place to our return to it again, we had ſailed no leſs than ſixty thouſand miles, equal nearly to three times the equatorial circumference of the earth; but in all this run, which had been made in all latitudes, between 9 and 71 deg. we ſprung neither low-maſts nor top-maſt; nor broke ſo much as a lower, or top-maſt ſhrowd. At the Cape, the curioſity of all nations was excited, to learn the ſucceſs of our diſcoveries, and in proportion to the earneſtneſs of the ſolicitations, wherewith the common men were preſſed, by foreign inquiſitors, they took care to gratify them with wonderful relations. Hence many ſtrange ſtories were circulated abroad, before it was known by the people at large at home, whether the Reſolution had periſhed at ſea, or was upon her return to Europe. During our ſtay here ſeveral foreign ſhips put in and went out, bound to and from India, namely, Engliſh, French, Danes, and three Spaniſh ſhips, frigates, two going to, and one returning from Manilla. We believe it is but lately, that ſhips of this nation have touched here; and theſe were the firſt to whom were allowed the ſame privileges as other European ſtates. We now loſt no time in putting all things in readineſs to complete our voyage; but we were obliged to unhang our rudder, and were alſo delayed for want of caulkers; and it was abſolutely neceſſary to caulk the ſhip before we put to ſea.

On Wedneſday, the 26th of April, this work was finiſhed, and having got on board a freſh ſupply of proviſions, and all neceſſary ſtores, we took leave of the governor, and his principal officers. On the 27th, we went on board, and ſoon after, the wind coming fair, we weighed, and put to ſea. When under ſail, we ſaluted the garriſon, as is cuſtomary, and they returned the compliment. When clear of the bay we parted company with ſome of the ſhips who ſailed out with us: the Daniſh ſhip ſteered for the Eaſt-Indies, the Spaniſh frigate, Juno, for Europe, and we and the Dutton Indiaman, for St. Helena. Depending on the goodneſs of Mr. Kendal's watch, we determined to attempt to make the iſland by a direct courſe. The wind, in general, blew faint all the paſſage, which made it longer than common.

On Monday the 15th of May, at day-break, we ſaw the iſland, diſtant fourteen leagues, and anchored at midnight, before the town, on the N. W. ſide of the iſland. Governor Skettowe, and the gentlemen of the iſland, treated us, while we continued here, with the greateſt courteſy. In our narrative of Capt. Cook's former voyage, we have given a full deſcription of this iſland; to which we ſhall only add, that the inhabitants are far from exerciſing a wanton cruelty towards their ſlaves. We are informed alſo, that wheel carriages, and porters knots have been in uſe among them for many years. Within theſe three years a new church has been built; ſome other new buildings are erecting, a commodious landing-place for boats has been made, and other improvements, which add both ſtrength and beauty to the place. Here we finiſhed ſome neceſſary repairs, which we had not time to complete during our ſtay at the Cape. Our empty water caſks were alſo filled, and the ſhip's company had freſh beef, at five-pence per pound. This article of refreſhment is exceeding good, and the only one to be procured, worth mentioning. On the 21ſt, in the evening, we took leave of the governor, and then repaired on board. The Dutton Indiaman, in company with us, was ordered not to fall in with Aſcenſion, for which we ſteered, on account of an illicit trade, carried on between the Company's ſhips, and ſome veſſels from North America; who, of late years, had viſited the iſland, on pretence of fiſhing, when their real deſign was to wait the coming of the India ſhips. The Dutton was therefore ordered to ſteer N. W. by W. or N. W. till to the northward of Aſcenſion. With this ſhip we were in company till the 24th, when we parted. A packet for the Admiralty was put on board, and ſhe continued her courſe N. W. On Sunday, the 28th, we made the iſland of Aſcenſion, and on the evening anchored in Croſs Bay, on the N. W. ſide, half a mile from the ſhore, in ten fathoms water. The Croſs-hill, ſo called on account of a flag ſtaff erected upon it in form of a croſs, bore S. 38 deg. E. and the two extreme points of the bay extended from N. E. to S. W. We had ſeveral fiſhing parties out every night, and got about twenty-four turtle weighing between four and five hundred weight each. This was our principal object, though we might have had a plentiful ſupply of fiſh in general. We have no where ſeen old wives in ſuch abundance; alſo cavalies, conger eels, and various other ſorts.

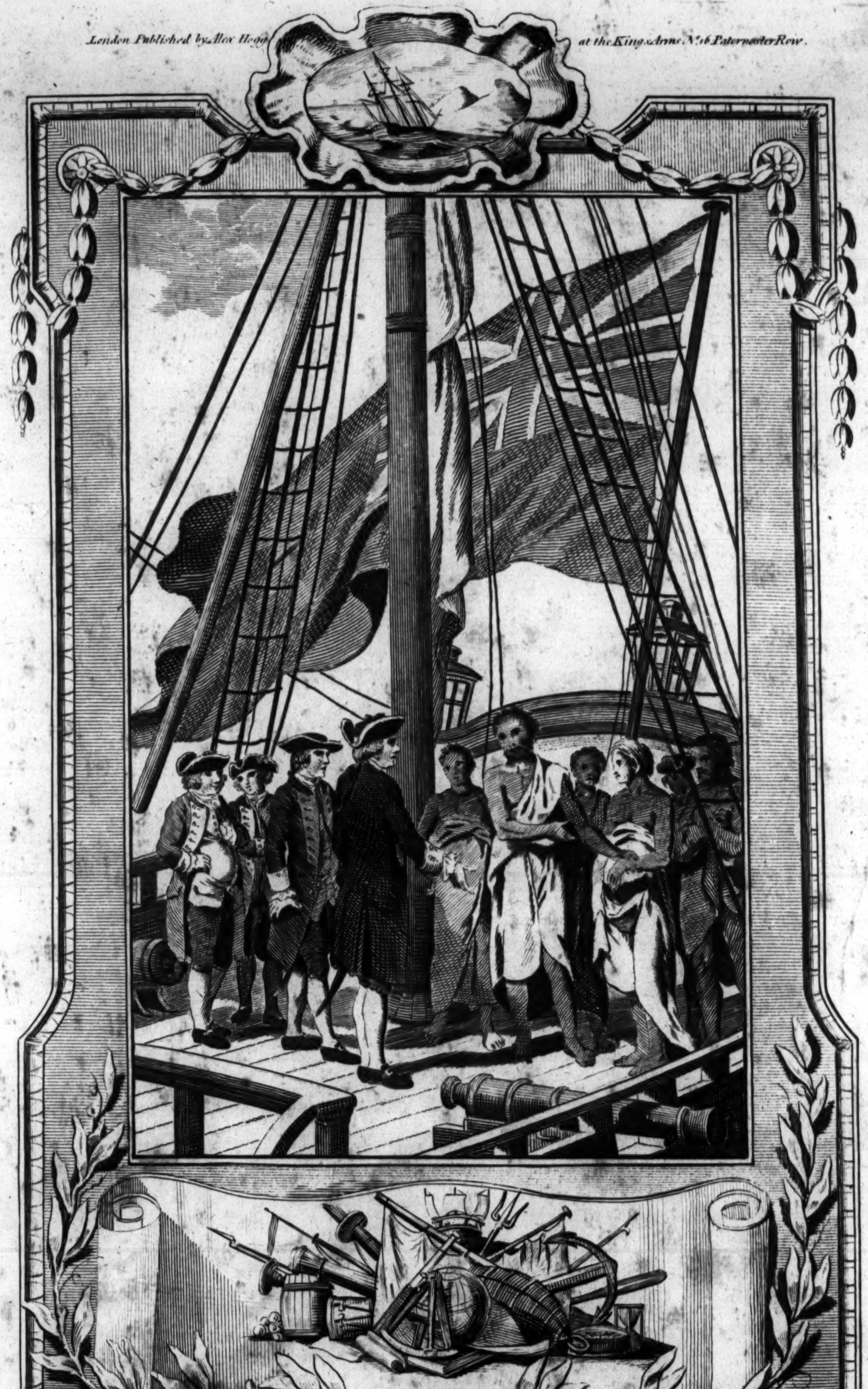
This iſland lies in the direction N. W. and S. E. and is ten miles broad, and five or ſix long. Its ſurface is very barren, and ſcarcely produces a ſhrub, plant, or any kind of vegetation, in the ſpace of many miles; inſtead of which we ſaw only ſtones and ſand, or rather flags and aſhes: hence from the general appearance of the face of this iſland, it is more than probable, that, at ſome time, of which we have no account, it has been deſtroyed by a volcano. We met with in our excurſions a ſmooth even ſurface in the intervals between the heaps of ſtones; but as one of our people obſerved, you may as eaſily walk over broken glaſs bottles as over the ſtones; for if you ſlip, or make a falſe ſtep, you are ſure to be cut or lamed. At the S. E. end of the iſle is a high mountain, which ſeems to have been left in its original ſtate; for it is covered with a kind of white marl, producing purſlain, ſpurge, and one or two ſorts of graſs. On theſe the goats feed, which are to be found in this part of the iſle. Here are good land crabs, and the ſea abounds with turtle from January to June. They always come on ſhore to lay their eggs in the night, when they are caught by turning them on their backs, in which poſition they are left on the beach till the next morning when the turtle-catchers fetch them away. We are inclined to think, that the turtles come to this iſland merely for the purpoſe of laying their eggs, as we found none but females; nor had thoſe we caught any food in their ſtomachs. We ſaw alſo near this place abundance of aquatic birds, ſuch as tropic birds, men of war, boobies, &c. On the N. E. ſide we found the remains of a wreck; ſhe ſeemed to have been a veſſel of one hundred and fifty tons burthen. We were informed, that there is a fine ſpring in a valley between two hills, on the top of the mountain above-mentioned; beſides great quantities of freſh water in holes in the rocks. While the Reſolution lay in the road, a ſloop belonging to New-York anchored by her. She had been to the coaſt of Guinea with a cargo of goods, and came here under a pretence to take in turtle; but her real intention was, we believe, to traffic with the officers of our homeward bound Eaſt-Indiamen; for ſhe had lain here near a week, and had got on board twenty turtle; whereas a ſloop from Bermuda, had ſailed but a few days before, with one hundred and five on board, which were as many as ſhe could take in; but having turned ſeveral more on different beaches, they inhumanly ripped open their bellies, for the ſake of the eggs, and left the carcaſes to putrify. The centre of this iſland of Aſcenſion is ſituated in the latitude of 8 deg. S. and 14 deg. 28 min. 30 ſec. W. longitude.

On Wedneſday, the 31ſt of May, we departed from the iſland of Aſcenſion, and ſteered, with a fine gale at S. E. by E. for that of Fernando de Norhonha, on the coaſt of Braſil, in order to determine its longitude. In our paſſage for this place we had very good weather, and fine moon-light nights, which afforded us many opportunities of making lunar obſervations. On the 9th of June we made the iſland, which had the appearance of ſeveral detached hills; the largeſt of which very much reſembled the ſteeple of a church. As we advanced, and drew near it, we found the ſea broke in a violent ſurf on ſome ſunken rocks, which lay about a league from the ſhore. We now hoiſted Engliſh colours, and bore up round the north end of the iſle, which is a group of little iſlots; for we perceived plainly, that the land was unconnected, and divided by narrow channels. On one of theſe, next the main, are ſeveral ſtrong forts, rendered ſo by the nature of their ſituation, which is ſuch as to command all the anchoring and landing-places about the iſland. We continued to ſail round the northern point, till the ſandy beaches, before which is the road for ſhipping, and the forts were open to the weſtward of the ſaid point. As the Reſolution advanced, a gun was fired, and immediately the Portugueſe colours were diſplayed on all the forts; but not intending to ſtop here, we fired a gun to the leeward, and ſtood away to the northward, with a freſh breeze at E. S. E. The hill, which appears like a church tower, bore S. 27 deg. W. five miles diſtant; and from our preſent point of view it appeared to lean, or over-hang to the eaſt. Fernando de Norhonha is in no part more than ſix leagues in extent, and exhibits an unequal ſurface, well cloathed with wood and herbage. Its latitude is 3 deg. 53 min. S. and its longitude carried on by the watch, from St. Helena, is 32 deg. 34 min. W. Don Antonio d'Ulloa, in his account of this iſland, ſays, "that it hath two harbours, capable of receiving ſhips of the greateſt burden; one is on the north ſide, and the other on the N. W. The former is, in every reſpect, the principal, both for ſhelter and capaciouſneſs, and the goodneſs of its bottom; but both are expoſed to the north and weſt, though theſe winds, particularly the north, are periodical, and of no long continuance. You anchor in the north harbour (which Capt. Cook called a road) in thirteen fathoms water, one third of a league from the ſhore, bottom of fine ſand; the peaked hills bearing S. W. 3 deg. ſoutherly." This road, or, (as Ulloa terms it) harbour, is very ſecure for ſhipping, being ſheltered from the ſouth and eaſt winds. A mariner in our ſhip, had been aboard a Dutch Eaſt Indiaman, who, on account of her crew being ſickly, and in want of refreſhments, put into this iſle. By him we were informed, that the Portugueſe ſupplied them with ſome buffaloes; and that they got their water behind one of the beaches, from a ſmall pool, ſcarcely big enough to dip a bucket in.

On Sunday, the 11th of June, at three o'clock P. M. in longitude 32 deg. 14 min. we croſſed the line. We had ſqually weather from the E. S. E. with ſhowers of rain, which continued, at times, till the 12th, and on the 13th the wind became variable. At noon we were in the latitude of 3 deg. 49 min. N. and in 31 deg. 47 min. W. longitude. We had now for moſt part of the day, dark, gloomy weather, till the evening of the 15th, at which time we were in latitude 5 deg. 47 min. N. and in 31 deg. W. longitude. After this we had three ſucceſſive calm days, in which we had fair weather and rains alternately; and ſometimes the ſky was obſcured by denſe clouds, which broke in very heavy ſhowers of rain. On Sunday, the 18th, we had a breeze at eaſt, which fixed at N. E. and we ſtretched to N. W. As we advanced to the north, the gale increaſed. On Wedneſday, the 21ſt, Capt. Cook ordered the ſtill to be ſet to work, with a view of making the greateſt quantity poſſible of freſh water. To try this experiment, the ſtill was fitted to the largeſt copper we had, which held about ſixty-four gallons of ſalt water. At four o'clock, A. M. the fire was lighted, and at ſix the ſtill began to run. The operation was continued till ſix in the evening: at which time we had obtained thirty-two gallons of freſh water, and conſumed one buſhel and a half of coals. At noon, the mercury in the thermometer was eighty-four and a half, as high as it is generally found to riſe at ſea. Had it been lower more water would have been procured; for it is well known, that the colder the air is, the cooler the ſtill may be kept, whereby the ſteam will be condenſed faſter. This invention, upon the whole, is a uſeful one, but it would not be prudent for a navigator to truſt wholly to it; for though, with plenty of fuel, and good coppers, as much water may be obtained, as will be neceſſary to ſupport life, yet the utmoſt efforts that can be employed in this work, will not procure a ſufficiency to ſupport health, eſpecially in hot climates, where freſh water is moſt wanted; and in the opinion of Capt. Cook, founded on experience, the beſt judge of this matter, nothing can contribute more to the health of ſeamen than their having plenty of ſweet freſh water.

On Sunday, the 25th, we were in latitude 16 deg. 12 min. N. and in 37 deg. 20 min. W. longitude. Obſerving a ſhip to windward, bearing down upon us, we ſhortened ſail; but, on her approaching, we found by her colours ſhe was Dutch; we therefore made ſail again, and left her to purſue her courſe. On the 28th, we obſerved in the latitude of 21 deg. 21 min. N. longitude 40 deg. 6. min. W. and our courſe made good was N. by W. On the 30th, a ſhip paſſed us within hale, but ſhe was preſently out of ſight, and we judged her to be Engliſh. We were now in the latitude of 24 deg. 20 min. N. longitude 40 deg. 47. min. W. In latitude 29 deg. 30 min. we ſaw ſome ſea-plants, commonly called gulph-weed, becauſe it is ſuppoſed to come from the gulph of Florida; it may be ſo, and yet it certainly vegetates at ſea. We continued to ſee this plant in ſmall pieces, till in the latitude of 36 deg. N. beyond which parallel we ſaw no more of it. On Wedneſday, the 5th of July, the wind veered to the eaſt; and the next day it was a calm. On the 7th and 8th we had variable light airs; but on the 9th, the wind fixed at S. S. W. after which we had a freſh gale, and ſteered firſt N. E. and then E. N. E. our intention being to make ſome of the Azores, or Weſtern Iſles. On Tueſday the 11th, we were in latitude 36 deg.

London Published by Alex Hogg at the Kings Arms No. 16 Paternoster Row.



Wale delin. Grignion sculp.

A Chief and other Natives of O-Taheitee,
visiting Captn. Cook in his second Voyage to the Southern Hemisphere.

BRITISH
7 FE 90
MUSEUM

45 min. N. and in 36 deg. 45 min. W. longitude, when we deſcried a ſail ſteering to the weſt; and on the 12th, we came in ſight of three more.

On Thurſday, the 13th, we made the iſle of Fayal, and on the 14th, at day-break, we entered the bay of De Horta, and at eight o'clock anchored in twenty fathoms water, about half a mile from the ſhore. Our deſign in touching at this place, was to make obſervations, from whence might be determined with accuracy the longitude of the Azores. We were directed by the maſter of the port, who came on board before we caſt anchor, to moor N. E. and S. W. in this ſtation, the S. W. point of the bay bore S. 16 deg. W. and the N. E. point, N. 33 deg. E. The church at the N. E. end of the town N. 38 degrees W. the weſt point of St. George's iſland N. 42 deg. E. diſtant eight leagues; and the iſle of Pico extending from N. 74 deg. E. to S. 46 deg. E. diſtant five miles. In the bay we found the Pourvoyer, a large French frigate, an American ſloop, and a brig belonging to Fayal. On the 14th, the captain ſent to the Engliſh conſul, and notified our arrival to the governor, begging his permiſſion to grant Mr. Wales an opportunity to make his obſervations on ſhore. This was readily granted, and Mr. Dent, who acted as conſul, in the abſence of Mr. Gathorne, not only procured this permiſſion, but accommodated Mr. Wales with a convenient place in his garden, to ſet up his inſtruments; and in ſeveral other particulars, this gentleman diſcovered a friendly readineſs to oblige us: even his houſe was always at our command, both night and day; and the entertainment we met with there was liberal and hoſpitable. All the time we ſtaid at this place, the crew of our ſhip were ſupplied with plenty of freſh beef, and we purchaſed about fifty tons of water, at the rate of about three ſhillings per ton. To hire ſhore boats is the moſt general cuſtom here, though ſhips are allowed, if they prefer many inconveniencies to a trifling expence, to water with their own boats. Freſh proviſions may be got, and hogs, ſheep, and poultry, for ſea-ſtock, at reaſonable rates. The ſheep are not only ſmall, they are alſo very poor; but the bullocks and hogs are exceeding good. Here is plenty of wine to be had.

Before we proceed with our own obſervations, made during our abode at Fayal, it may be agreeable to our readers, to give them a brief account and deſcription of all the Azores, or Weſtern Iſlands. Theſe have by different geographers, been variouſly deemed parts of America, Africa, and Europe, as they are almoſt in a central point: but we apprehend they may with more propriety be conſidered as belonging to the latter. They are a group of iſlands, ſituated in the Atlantic ocean, between twenty-five and thirty-two degrees of weſt longitude, and between thirty-ſeven and forty north latitude, nine hundred miles weſt of Portugal, and as many eaſt of Newfoundland. They are nine in number, viz. St. Maria, St. Miguel, or St. Michael, Terceira, St. George, Gracioſa, Fayal, Pico, Flores, and Corvo.

Theſe iſlands were firſt diſcovered by ſome Flemiſh ſhips in 1439, and afterwards by the Portugueſe in 1447, to whom they now belong. The two weſtermoſt were named Flores and Corvo, from the abundance of flowers on the one, and crows on the other. They are all fertile, and ſubject to a governor-general, who reſides at Angra in Terceira, which is alſo the ſeat of the biſhop, whoſe dioceſe extends over all the Azores. The income of the latter, which is paid in wheat, amounts to about two hundred pounds ſterling a year. On every Iſland there is a deputy-governor, who directs the police, militia, and revenue; and a juiz, or judge, is at the head of the law department, from whom lies an appeal to a higher court at Terceira, and from thence to the ſupreme court at Liſbon. The natives of theſe iſlands are ſaid to be very litigious.

St. Miguel, the largeſt, is one hundred miles in circumference, contains about twenty-nine thouſand inhabitants, and is very fertile in wheat and flax. Its chief town is Panta del Gado. This iſland was twice ravaged by the Engliſh in the time of queen Elizabeth.

Terceira, is reckoned the chief iſland, on account of its having the beſt harbour; and its chief town, named Angra, being the reſidence of the governor-general and the biſhop. The town contains a cathedral, five other churches, eight convents, ſeveral courts of offices, &c. and is defended by two forts.

The iſland of Pico, ſo called from a mountain of vaſt height, produces excellent wine, cedar, and a valuable wood, called teixos. On the ſouth of the iſland is the principal harbour, called Villa das Lagens.

The inhabitants of Flores having been many years ago infected with the venereal diſeaſe, by the crew of a Spaniſh man of war, that was wrecked upon their coaſt, the evil, it is ſaid, ſtill maintains its ground there, none of the inhabitants being free from it, as in Peru, and ſome parts of Siberia.

Travellers relate, that no poiſonous or venomous animal is to be found in the Azores, and that if carried thither, it will expire in a few hours. One tenth of all their productions belong to the king, and the article of tobacco brings in a conſiderable ſum. The wine, called Fayal wine, is chiefly raiſed in the iſland of Pico, which lies oppoſite to Fayal. From eighteen to twenty thouſand pipes of that wine are made there yearly. All of theſe iſlands enjoy a ſalubrious air, but are expoſed to violent earthquakes, from which they have frequently ſuffered.

Villa de Horta, the chief town in Fayal, like all the towns belonging to the Portugueſe, is crowded with religious buildings; there being no leſs, in this little city, than three convents for men, and two for women. Here are alſo eight churches, including thoſe belonging to the convents, and that in the Jeſuits college. This college is a noble ſtructure, and ſeated on an elevation, in the pleaſanteſt part of the city. Since the expulſion of that order it has been ſuffered to go to decay, and, in a few years, by the all conſuming hand of time, may be reduced to a heap of ruins. The principal produce of Fayal is wheat and Indian corn, with which the inhabitants ſupply Pico, which, in return, ſends them wine, more than ſufficient for their conſumption, great quantities being annually ſhipped from De Horta, (for at Pico there is no road for ſhipping) for America, whence it has obtained the name of Fayal wine. The Villa de Horta is ſituated in the bottom of a bay, cloſe to the edge of the ſea. It is defended by two caſtles, one at each end of the town, and a ſtone work, extending along the ſea-ſhore, from the one to the other. But theſe works ſerve more for ſhew than defence; but it is a pity they ſhould be ſuffered to run to decay; ſeeing they heighten greatly the proſpect of the city, which is very beautiful from the road; but, ſetting aſide the religious houſes and churches, we ſaw not another edifice, that has any thing, either within or without, to recommend it. It is not the cuſtom, in theſe parts, among the Portugueſe or Spaniards, to have glaſs windows, but in this town the churches, and a country-houſe, lately belonging to the Engliſh conſul, have their windows glaſed: all others are latticed, which gave them in our eyes, the appearance of priſons. Before this Villa, at the eaſt end of the iſland, is the bay or road of Fayal, which faces the weſt end of Pico. It is a ſemi-circle about two miles in diameter; and its depth, or ſemi-diameter, is three-fourths of a mile. The bottom is ſandy, and the depth of water from ſix to twenty fathoms; but, near the ſhore, particularly at the S. W. head, the bottom is rocky; as it alſo is without the line that connects the two points of the bay; on which account it is not ſafe to anchor too far out. The bearings which we have laid down, when moored in this road, are ſufficient to direct any ſteerſman to the beſt ground. The winds to which this road lies moſt expoſed are thoſe that blow from between the S. S. W. and S. E. but as you can always get to ſea with the latter, this is not ſo dangerous as the former; and we were told, there is a ſmall cove round the S. W. point, called Porto Piere, where ſmall veſſels are heaved down, and wherein a ſhip may lay tolerably ſafe. Upon the whole, we by no means think this road of Fayal a bad one. We were informed, by a Portugueſe captain of the following particulars, which, if true, are not unworthy of notice. However, his account may be attended to by captains of ſhips, though not entirely relied on. This Portugueſe told us, that in the direction of S. E. about half a league from the road, and in a line between that and the ſouth ſide of Pico, lies a concealed ſunken rock, covered with twenty-two fathom water, and on which the ſea breaks from the ſouth. He alſo gave us to underſtand, that of all the ſhoals about theſe iſles that are laid down in our charts, and pilot books, only one has any exiſtence, which lies between the iſlands of St. Mary and St. Michael, called Hormingan. He further informed us, that the diſtance between Fayal and the iſland of Flores, is forty-five leagues; and that there runs a ſtrong tide between Fayal and Pico, the flood ſetting to the N. E. and the ebb to the S. W. but out at ſea, the direction is E. and W. By various obſervations, the true longitude of this bay was found to be 28 deg. 39 min. 18 ſec. and an half.

On Wedneſday, the 19th, at four o'clock, A. M. we ſailed out of the bay, and ſteered for the weſt end of St. George's iſland. Having paſſed this, we ſhaped our courſe E. half S. for the iſland of Terceira; and after a run of fourteen leagues, we found ourſelves not more than one league from the weſt end. We now proceeded as expeditiouſly as the wind would permit, for England; and on Saturday, the 29th, we made the land near Plymouth. On the following day, the 30th, we caſt anchor at Spithead, when Capt. Cook, in company with Meſſrs. Wales, Forſters, and Hodges, landed at Portſmouth, and from thence ſet out for London. The whole time of our abſence from England was three years and eighteen days; and, owing to the unbounded goodneſs of an Almighty Preſerver, who indulgently favoured our attempt, and ſeconded our endeavours, notwithſtanding the various changes of climates (and they were as various as can be experienced) we loſt only one man by ſickneſs, and three by other cauſes. Even the ſingle circumſtance of keeping the ſhip's company in health, by means of the greateſt care and attention, will make this voyage remarkable, in the opinion of every humane perſon; and we truſt the grand end of this expedition, and the purpoſes for which we were ſent into the ſouthern hemiſphere, were diligently and ſufficiently purſued. The Reſolution made the circuit of the ſouthern ocean, in a high latitude, and Capt. Cook traverſed it in ſuch a manner, as to leave no room for a mere poſſibility of there being a continent, unleſs near the pole, and conſequently out of the reach of navigation. However, by having twice explored the tropical ſea, the ſituation of old diſcoveries were determined, and a number of new ones made; ſo that, we flatter ourſelves, upon the whole, the intention of the voyage has, though not in every reſpect, yet upon the whole, been ſufficiently anſwered; and by having explored ſo minutely the ſouthern hemiſphere, a final end may, perhaps, be put to ſearching after a continent, in that part of the globe, which has of late years, and, indeed, at times, for the two laſt centuries, engroſſed the attention of ſome of the maritime powers, and been a favourite theory among geographers of all ages. The probability of there being a continent, or large track of land, near the Pole, has been already granted; and we may have ſeen part of it. The extreme cold, the numberleſs iſlands, and the vaſt floats of ice, give ſtrength to this conjecture, and all tend to prove, that there muſt be main land to the ſouth; but, that this muſt extend fartheſt to the north, oppoſite to the ſouthern Atlantic and Indian oceans, we have already aſſigned ſeveral reaſons; of which one is, the greater degree of cold in theſe ſeas than in the ſouthern Pacific Ocean, under the ſame parallels of latitude; for in this laſt ocean, the mercury in the thermometer, ſeldom fell ſo low as the freezing point, till we were in latitude 60 deg. and upwards; whereas, in the other oceans, it fell as low in the latitude of 54 deg. the cauſe whereof we attributed to a greater quantity of ice, which extended farther north in the Atlantic and Indian oceans, than in the ſouth Pacific Sea; and ſuppoſing the ice to be firſt formed at, or near land, of which we are fully perſuaded, it will be an undeniable conſequence, that the land extends farther north. But what benefit can accrue from lands thus ſituated, ſhould they be diſcovered? lands doomed to everlaſting frigidneſs; and whoſe horrible and ſavage aſpect no language or words can deſcribe. Will any one venture farther in ſearch after ſuch a country, than our brave and ſkilful commander has done? Let him proceed, and may the God of univerſal nature be his guide. We heartily wiſh him ſucceſs, nor will we envy him the honour of his diſcovery. In behalf of ourſelves, the Editors who have the honour of ſubmitting to the judgment of the public, this New, and Complete Hiſtory of Captain Cook's Second Voyage, we muſt not ſay much, as by that judgment we ſtand or fall: thus much, however, we will venture to ſay, that this narrative is not defective in point of intelligence, that the facts are true, and that the whole is expreſſed in an eaſy ſtile, which, we flatter ourſelves will not be diſpleaſing to our numerous friends, whoſe favours we here take the opportunity of gratefully acknowledging. It has been obſerved, that the principal officers of the Reſolution delivered their journals into the cuſtody of Captain Cook; and, on his arrival in England, Captain Furneaux alſo put into his hands a narrative of what happened in the Adventure after her final ſeparation from the Reſolution. But it is here neceſſary to remark further, that ſome officers, in both ſhips, reſerved their private journals, and certain ingenious memorials, to gratify the curioſity of their friends. From ſuch materials theſe ſheets are compoſed; nor have we had recourſe to any printed authorities, but from the ſole view of correcting errors in ſome places, and rendering this undertaking, a full, comprehenſive, and perfect work. This premiſed, we ſhall now lay before our readers, a complete narrative of Capt. Furneaux's proceedings in the Adventure; to which we ſhall ſubjoin the improvements that have been made, reſpecting the means of preſerving the health of our ſeamen, and particularly thoſe that were uſed by Capt. Cook in his voyages; and to theſe we ſhall add, a table of the language of the natives of the Society Iſles, with an explanation of their meaning in Engliſh, &c. &c.

A new, accurate, conciſe, and complete ACCOUNT of CAPT. FURNEAUX's proceedings in the ADVENTURE, from the time he was ſeparated from the RESOLUTION, to his arrival in England; wherein is compriſed a faithful relation reſpecting the boat's crew, who were murdered, and eaten by the Cannibals of QUEEN CHARLOTTE's SOUND in NEW ZEALAND.

A. D. 1773. IN October we made the coaſt of New Zealand, after a paſſage of fourteen days, from Amſterdam, and ſtood along ſhore till we reached Cape Turnagain, when a heavy ſtorm blew us off the coaſt for three days ſucceſſively, in which time we were ſeparated from our conſort, the Reſolution, and ſaw her not afterwards, in the courſe of her voyage. On Thurſday, the 4th of November, we regained the ſhore, near to Cape Palliſer. Some of the natives brought us in their canoes abundance of cray-fiſh and fruit, which they exchanged for our Otaheite cloth, nails, &c. On the 5th, the ſtorm again returned, and we were driven off the ſhore a ſecond time by a violent gale of wind, accompanied with heavy falls of ſleet, which laſted two days; ſo that by this time our decks began to leak, our beds and bedding were wet, which gave many of our people colds; and now we were moſt of us complaining, and all began to deſpair of ever getting into the ſound, or, which we had moſt at heart, of joining the Reſolution. We combated the ſtorm till Saturday, the 6th, when, being to the north of the Cape, and having a hard gale from S. W. we bore away for ſome bay, in order to complete our wood and water, of both which articles we were at preſent

ſent, in great want. For ſome days paſt we had been at the allowance of one quart of water, and it was thought ſix or ſeven days more would deprive us even of that ſcanty pittance. On Tueſday, the 9th, in latitude 38 deg. 21 min. S. and in 178 deg. 37 min. E. longitude, we came abreaſt of Tolaga bay, and in the forenoon anchored in eleven fathoms water, ſtiff, muddy ground, which lays acroſs the bay for about two miles. This harbour is open from N. N. E. to E. S. E. nevertheleſs, it affords good riding with a weſterly wind; and here are regular ſoundings from five to twelve fathoms. Wood and water are eaſily procured, except when the winds blow hard eaſterly, and then, at ſuch times, which are but ſeldom, they throw in a great ſea. The natives about this bay are the ſame as thoſe at Queen Charlotte's Sound, but more numerous, and have regular plantations of ſweet potatoes, and other roots. They have plenty of fiſh of all ſorts, which we purchaſed with nails, beads, and other trifles. In one of their canoes, we ſaw the head of a woman lying in ſtate, adorned with feathers, and other ornaments. It had all the appearance of life, but, upon a nearer view we found it had been dried; yet, every feature was in due preſervation and perfect. We judged it to have been the head of ſome deceaſed relative, kept as a relic. It was at an iſland in this bay, where the Endeavour's people obſerved the largeſt canoe they met with during their whole voyage. It was, according to account, no leſs than ſixty-eight feet and a half long, five broad, and three feet ſix inches high: it had a ſharp bottom, conſiſting of three trunks of trees hollowed, of which that in the middle was longeſt; the ſide planks were ſixty-two feet long, in one piece, and were ornamented with carvings, not unlike fillagree work, in ſpirals of very curious workmanſhip, the extremities whereof were cloſed with a figure that formed the head of the veſſel, in which were two monſtrous eyes of mother of pearl, and a large ſhaped tongue; and, as it deſcended, it ſtill retained the figure of a monſter, with hands and feet carved upon it very neatly, and painted red. It had alſo a high peaked ſtern, wrought in fillagree, and adorned with feathers, from the top of which two long ſtreamers depended, made of the ſame materials, which almoſt reached the water. From this deſcription we might be tempted to ſuppoſe, theſe canoes to be the veſſels, and this to be the country, lying to the ſouth, of which Quiros received intelligence at Taumaio; and where Toabia ſaid they ate men, and had ſuch large ſhips as he could not deſcribe. On Friday, the 12th, having taken aboard ten tons of water, and ſome wood, we ſet ſail for the Sound; but we were ſcarcely out when the wind began to blow dead hard on the ſhore, ſo that, not being able to clear the land, on either tack, we were obliged to return to the bay, where we arrived the next morning, the 13th; and, having anchored, we rode out a heavy gale of wind, at E. by S. attended with a very great ſea. We now began to fear the weather had put it out of our power to join our conſort, having reaſon to believe ſhe was in Charlotte Sound, the appointed place of rendezvous, and by this time ready for ſea. Part of the crew were now employed in ſtopping leaks, and repairing our rigging, which was in a moſt ſhattered condition.

On the 14th and 15th, we hoiſted out our boats, and ſent them to increaſe our ſtock of wood and water; but on the laſt day the ſurf roſe ſo high, that they could not make the land. On Tueſday, the 16th, having made the ſhip as ſnug as poſſible, we unmoored at three o'clock, A. M. and before ſix got under way. From this time, to the twenty-eighth, we had nothing but tempeſtuous weather, in which our rigging was almoſt blown to pieces, and our men quite wore down with fatigue. On Monday, the 29th, our water being nearly expended, we were again reduced to the ſcanty allowance of a quart a man per diem. We continued beating backward and forward till the 30th, when the weather became more moderate; and having got a favourable wind, we were ſo happy at laſt as to gain with ſafety our deſired port. After getting through Cook's Straits, we caſt anchor at three o'clock, P. M. in Queen Charlotte's Sound. We ſaw nothing of the Reſolution, and began to doubt her ſafety; but, upon having landed, we diſcovered the place where ſhe had pitched her tents; and, upon further examination, on an old ſtump of a tree, we read theſe words, cut out, "Look underneath." We complied inſtantly with theſe inſtructions, and, digging, ſoon found a bottle, corked and waxed down, wherein was a letter from Capt. Cook, informing us of their arrival at this place, on the third inſtant, and their departure on the 24th, and that they intended ſpending a few days in the entrance of the Straits, to look for us. We immediately ſet about the neceſſary repairs of the ſhip, with an intention of getting her to ſea as ſoon as poſſible. On the 1ſt of December, the tents were carried on ſhore, the armourer's forge put up, and every preparation made for the recovery of the ſick. The coopers were diſpatched on ſhore, to mend the caſks, and we began to unſtow the hold to get at the bread; but, upon opening the caſks we found a great quantity of it entirely ſpoiled, and moſt part ſo damaged, that we were obliged to bake it over again, which unavoidably delayed us ſome time. At intervals, during our ſtay here, the natives came on board as uſual, with great familiarity. They generally brought fiſh, or whatever they had, to barter with us, and ſeemed to behave with great civility; though twice, in one night, they came to the tents, with an intention of ſtealing, but were diſcovered before they had accompliſhed their deſign. A party alſo came down in the night of the 13th, and robbed the aſtronomer's tent of every thing they could carry away. This they did ſo quietly, that they were not ſo much as heard, or ſuſpected, till the aſtronomer getting up to make an obſervation, miſſed his inſtruments, and charged the centinel with the robbery. This brought on a pretty ſevere altercation, during which they ſpied an Indian creeping from the tent, at whom Mr. Bailey fired, and wounded him; nevertheleſs he made a ſhift to retreat into the woods. The report of the gun had alarmed his confederates, who, inſtead of putting off from the ſhore, fled into the woods, leaving their canoe, with moſt of the things that had been ſtolen, a-ground on the beach. This petty larceny, it is probable, laid the foundation of that dreadful cataſtophre which ſoon after happened.

On Friday, the 17th, at which time we were preparing for our departure, we ſent out our large cutter, manned with 7 ſeamen, under the command of Mr. John Rowe, the firſt mate, accompanied by Mr. Woodhouſe, midſhipman, and James Tobias Swilley, the carpenter's ſervant. They were to proceed up the Sound to Graſs Cove, to gather greens and celery for the ſhip's company, with orders to return that evening; for the tents had been ſtruck at two in the afternoon, and the ſhip made ready for ſailing the next day. Night coming on, and no cutter appearing, the captain and others began to expreſs great uneaſineſs. They ſat up all night, in expectation of their arrival, but to no purpoſe. At day-break, therefore, the Captain ordered the launch to be hoiſted out. She was double manned, and under the command of our ſecond lieutenant, Mr. Burney, accompanied by Mr. Freeman, maſter, the corporal of marines, with five private men, all well armed, and having plenty of ammunition, two wall pieces, and three days proviſion. They were ordered firſt to look into Eaſt Bay, then to proceed to Graſs Cove, and, if nothing was to be ſeen or heard of the cutter there, they were to go further up the Cove, and return by the weſt ſhore. Mr. Row having left the ſhip an hour before the time propoſed for his departure, we thought his curioſity might have carried him into Eaſt Bay, none of our people having ever been there, or that ſome accident might have happened to the boat; for not the leaſt ſuſpicion was entertained of the natives, our boats having been higher up, and worſe provided. Mr. Burney returned about eleven o'clock the ſame night, and gave us a pointed deſcription of a moſt horrible ſcene indeed! the ſubſtance, and every material particular of whoſe report, are contained in the following relation, which includes the remarks of thoſe who attended Mr. Burney.

On Saturday, the 18th, purſuant to our orders, we left the ſhip, about nine o'clock in the morning. Having a light breeze in our ſavour, we ſoon got round Long Iſland and Long Point. We continued ſailing and rowing for Eaſt Bay, keeping cloſe in ſhore, and examining with our glaſſes every cove on the larboard ſide, till near two o'clock in the afternoon, at which time we ſtopped at a beach on our left, going up Eaſt Bay, to dreſs our dinner. While we were cooking we ſaw an Indian on the oppoſite ſhore, running along a beach to the head of the bay; and when our meat was juſt done, we perceived a company of the natives, ſeemingly very buſy; upon ſeeing which, we got immediately into the boat, put off, and rowed quickly to the place where the ſavages were aſſembled, which was at the head of this reach; and here, while approaching, we diſcerned one of their ſettlements. As we drew near ſome of the Indians came down upon the rocks, and waved for us to depart; but perceiving we diſregarded them, they altered their geſtures, and wild notes. At this place we obſerved ſix large canoes hauled upon the beach, moſt of them being double ones; but the number of people were in proportion neither to the ſize of theſe canoes, nor the number of houſes. Our little company, conſiſting of the corporal, and his five marines, headed by Mr. Burney, now landed, leaving the boat's crew to guard it. Upon our approach the natives fled with great precipitation. We followed them cloſely to a little town, which we found deſerted; but while we were employed in ſearching their huts, the natives returned, making a ſhew of reſiſtance; but ſome trifling preſents being made to their chiefs, they were very ſoon appeaſed. However, on our return to the boat, the ſavages again followed us, and ſome of them threw ſtones. As we came down to the beach, one of the Indians had brought a bundle of Hepatoos, or long ſpears, but ſeeing Mr. Burney looked very earneſtly at him, he walked about with ſeeming unconcern. Some of his companions appearing to be terrified, a few trifles were given to each of them. From the place where we now landed, the bay ſeemed to run a full mile, N. N. W. where it ended in a long ſandy beach. After dinner we took a view of the country near the coaſt, with our glaſſes, but ſaw not a canoe, or ſigns of inhabitants, after which we fired the wall-pieces, as ſignals to the cutter, if any of the people ſhould happen to be within hearing. We now renewed our ſearch along the eaſt ſhore; and came to another ſettlement, where the Indians invited us aſhore. We enquired of them about the cutter, but they pretended ignorance. They ſeemed very friendly, and ſold us ſome fiſh.

At about five o'clock in the afternoon, and within an hour after we had left this place, we opened a ſmall bay adjoining to Graſs Cove, and here we ſaw a large double canoe, juſt hauled upon the beach, with two men and a dog. The two ſavages, on ſeeing us approach, inſtantly fled, which made us ſuſpect, it was here we ſhould have ſome tidings of the cutter. On landing, and examining the canoe, the firſt thing we ſaw therein was one of our cutter's rullock ports, and ſome ſhoes, one of which, among the latter, was known to belong to Mr. Woodhouſe. A piece of fleſh was found by one of our people, which at firſt was thought to be ſome of the ſalt meat belonging to the cutter's men, but, upon examination, we ſuppoſed it to be dog's fleſh; a moſt horrid and undeniable proof ſoon cleared up our doubts, and convinced us we were among no other than cannibals; for, advancing further on the beach, we ſaw about twenty baſkets tied up, and a dog eating a piece of broiled fleſh, which, upon examining, we ſuſpected to be human. We cut open the baſkets, ſome of which were full of roaſted fleſh, and others of fern-root, which ſerves them for bread. Searching others, we found more ſhoes, and a hand, which was immediately known to have belonged to Thomas Hill, one of our fore-caſtle men, it having been tatowed with the initials of his name. We now proceeded a little way in the woods, but ſaw nothing elſe. Our next deſign was to launch the canoe, intending to deſtroy her; but ſeeing a great ſmoke aſcending over the neareſt hill, we made all poſſible haſte to be with them before ſun-ſet.

At half after ſix we opened Graſs Cove, where we ſaw one ſingle, and three double canoes, and a great many natives aſſembled on the beach, who retreated to a ſmall hill, within a ſhip's length of the water-ſide, where they ſtood talking to us. On the top of the high land, beyond the woods, was a large fire, from whence all the way down the hill, the place was thronged like a fair. When we entered the cove, a muſquetoon was fired at one of the canoes, as we imagined they might be full of men lying down; for they were all afloat, but no one was ſeen in them. Being doubtful whether their retreat proceeded from fear, or a deſire to decoy us into an ambuſcade, we were determined not to be ſurpriſed, and therefore running cloſe in ſhore, we dropped the grappling near enough to reach them with our guns; but at too great a diſtance to be under any apprehenſions from their treachery. The ſavages on the little hill, kept their ground, hallooing, and making ſigns for us to land. At theſe we now took aim, reſolving to kill as many of them as our bullets would reach; yet it was ſome time before we could diſlodge them. The firſt volley did not ſeem to affect them much; but, on the ſecond, they began to ſcramble away as faſt as they could, ſome howling and others limping. We continued to fire as long as we could ſee the leaſt glimpſe of any of them, through the buſhes. Among theſe were two very robuſt men, who maintained their ground without moving an inch, till they found themſelves forſaken by all their companions, and then, diſdaining to run, they marched off, with great compoſure and deliberation. One of them, however, got a fall, and either lay there, or crawled away on his hands and feet; but the other eſcaped without any apparent hurt. Mr. Burney now improved their panic, and, ſupported by the marines, leapt on ſhore, and purſued the fugitives. We had not advanced far from the water-ſide, on the beach, before we met with two bunches of celery, which had been gathered by the cutter's crew. A broken oar was ſtuck upright in the ground, to which the natives had tied their canoes; whereby we were convinced this was the ſpot where the attack had been made. We now ſearched all along at the back of the beach, to ſee if the cutter was there, but, inſtead of her, the moſt horrible ſcene was preſented to our view, that was ever beheld by any European; for here lay the hearts, heads, and lungs, of ſeveral of our people, with hands and limbs, in a mangled condition, ſome broiled, and ſome raw; but no other parts of their bodies, which made us ſuſpect, that the cannibals had feaſted upon, and devoured the reſt. To complete this ſhocking view of carnage and barbarity, at a little diſtance we ſaw the dogs gnawing their entrails. We obſerved a large body of the natives collected together on a hill, about two miles off; but, as night drew on a-pace, we could not advance to ſuch a diſtance; neither did we think it ſafe to attack them, or even to quit the ſhore, to take an account of the number killed, our troop being a very ſmall one, and the ſavages were both numerous, fierce, and much irritated. While we remained almoſt ſtupified on the ſpot, Mr. Fannen ſaid, that he heard the cannibals aſſembling in the woods; on which we returned to our boat, and, having hauled alongſide the canoes, we demoliſhed three of them. During this tranſaction, the fire on the top of the hill diſappeared, and we could hear the ſavages in the woods at high words; quarrelling, perhaps, on account of their different opinions, whether they ſhould attack us, and try to ſave their canoes. They were armed with long lances, and weapons, not unlike a ſerjeant's halbert in ſhape, made of hard wood, and mounted with bone inſtead of iron. We ſuſpected, that the dead bodies of our people had been divided among thoſe different parties of cannibals, who had been concerned in the maſſacre; and it was not improbable, that the group we ſaw at a diſtance by the fire, were feaſting upon ſome of them, as thoſe on ſhore had been, where the remains were found, before they had been diſturbed by our unexpected viſit: be that as it may, we could diſcover no traces of more than four of our friends bodies, nor could we find the place where the cutter was concealed. It now grew dark, on which account, we collected carefully the remains of our mangled friends, and putting off, made the beſt of our way from this polluted place, not without a few execrations beſtowed on the blood-thirſty inhabitants. When we opened the upper part of the Sound, we ſaw a very large fire about three or four miles higher up, which formed a complete oval, reaching from the top of a hill down almoſt to the water-ſide; the middle ſpace being incloſed all round by the fire, like a hedge. Mr. Burney and Mr. Fannen having conſulted together, they were both of opinion, that we could, by an attempt, reap no other advantage than the poor ſatisfaction of killing ſome more of the ſavages. Upon leaving Graſs Cove, we had fired a volley towards where we heard the Indians talking; but by going in and out of the boat, our pieces had got wet, and four of them miſſed fire. What rendered our ſituation more critical was, it began to rain, and our ammunition was more than half expended. We, for theſe reaſons, without ſpending time where nothing could be hoped for but revenge, proceeded for the ſhip, and arrived ſafe aboard before midnight. Such is the account of this tragical event; the poor victims were far enough out of hearing, and in all probability every man of them muſt have been butchered on the ſpot.

It may be proper here to mention, that the whole number of men in the cutter were ten, namely, Mr. Row, our firſt mate, Mr. Woodhouſe, a midſhipman, Francis Murphy, quarter-maſter, James Sevilley, the Captain's ſervant, John Lavenaugh, and Thomas Milton, belonging to the after-guard; William Facey, Thomas Hill, Michael Bell, and Edward Jones, forecaſtle-men. Moſt of theſe were the ſtouteſt and moſt healthy people in the ſhip, having been ſelected from our beſt ſeamen. Mr. Burney's party brought on board the head of the Captain's ſervant, with two hands, one belonging to Mr. Rowe, known by a hurt it had received; and the other to Thomas Hill, being marked with T. H. as before mentioned. Theſe, with other mangled remains, were incloſed in a hammock, and with the uſual ceremony obſerved on board ſhips, were committed to the ſea. Not any of their arms were found; nor any of their cloaths, except ſix ſhoes, no two of which were fellows, a frock, and a pair of trowſers. We do not think this melancholy cataſtrophe was the effect of a premeditated plan, formed by the ſavages; for two canoes came down, and continued all the forenoon in Ship Cove, and theſe Mr. Rowe met, and bartered with the natives for ſome fiſh. We are rather inclined to believe, that the bloody tranſaction originated in a quarrel with ſome of the Indians, which was decided on the ſpot; or, our people rambling about too ſecure, and incautious, the fairneſs of the opportunity might tempt them to commit the bloody deed; and what might encourage them was, they had found out, thatour guns were not infallible; they had ſeen them miſs fire; and they knew, that when diſcharged, they muſt be loaded before they could again do any execution, which interval of time they could take proper advantage of. From ſome circumſtances we concluded, that after their ſucceſs, there was a general meeting on the eaſt ſide of the Sound. We knew the Indians of Shag Cove were there, by a long ſingle canoe, which ſome of our people with Mr. Rowe had ſeen four days before in Shag Cove. After this ſhocking affair, we were detained four days in the Sound by contrary winds, in which time we ſaw none of the inhabitants. It is a little remarkable, that Captain Furneaux had been ſeveral times up Graſs Cove with Capt. Cook, where they ſaw no inhabitants, and no other ſigns of any, but a few deſerted villages, which appeared as if they had not been occupied for many years; and yet, in Mr. Burney's opinion, when he entered the ſame cove, there could not be leſs than fifteen hundred, or two thouſand people. Had they been apprized of his coming, we doubt not they would have attacked him; and ſeeing not a probability remained of any of our people being alive, from theſe conſiderations, we thought it would be imprudent to renew the ſearch, and ſent a boat up again.

On Thurſday, the 23d of December, we departed from, and made ſail out of the Sound, heartily vexed at the unavoidable delays we had experienced, ſo contrary to our ſanguine wiſhes. We ſtood to the eaſtward, to clear the ſtraits, which we happily effected the ſame evening, but we were baffled for two or three days with light winds before we could clear the coaſt. In this interval of time, the cheſts and effects of the ten men who had been murdered, were ſold before the maſt, according to an old ſea cuſtom. We now ſteered S. S. E. till we got into the latitude of 56 deg. S. At this time we had a great ſwell from the ſouthward, the winds blew ſtrong from S. W. the weather began to be very cold; the ſea made a continual breach over the ſhip, which was low and deep laden, and by her continual ſtraining, very few of our ſeamen were dry either on deck or in bed. In the latitude of 58 deg. S. and in 213 deg. E. longitude, we fell in with ſome ice, and ſtanding to the eaſt, ſaw every day more or leſs. We ſaw alſo the birds common in this vaſt ocean, our only companions, and at times we met with a whale or porpoiſe, a ſeal or two, and a few penguins.

On the 10th of January 1774, we arrived a-breaſt of Cape Horn, in the latitude of 61 deg. S. and in the run from Cape Palliſer in New Zealand to this cape we were little more than a month, which is one hundred and twenty-one degrees of longitude in that ſhort time. The winds were continually weſterly, with a great ſea. Having opened ſome caſks of peaſe and flour, we found them very much damaged; for which reaſon we thought it moſt prudent to make for the Cape of Good Hope, intending firſt to get into the latitude and longitude of Cape Circumciſion. When to the eaſtward of Cape Horn, we found the winds came more from the north, and not ſo ſtrong and frequent from the weſtward, as uſual, which brought on thick foggy weather; ſo that for ſeveral days together, we were not able to make an obſervation, the ſun all the time not being viſible. This weather laſted above a month, in which time we were among a great many iſlands of ice, which kept us conſtantly on the look out, for fear of running foul of them. Our people now began to complain of colds and pains in their limbs, on account of which we hauled to the northward, making the latitude of 54 deg. S. We then ſteered to the eaſt, with an intention of finding the land laid down by M. Bouvet. As we advanced to the eaſt, the nights began to be dark, and the iſlands of ice became more numerous and dangerous.

On the 3d of March, we were in the latitude of Bouvet's diſcovery, and half a league to eaſtward of it; but not perceiving the leaſt ſign of land, either now, or ſince we obtained this parallel, we gave over a further ſearch after it, and hauled away to the northward. In our laſt track to the ſouthward, we were within a few degrees of the longitude aſſigned for Bouvet's diſcovery, and about three degrees to the ſouthward; if therefore there ſhould be any land thereabout, it muſt be a very inconſiderable iſland; or, rather we are inclined to think, a mere deception from the ice; for, in our firſt ſetting out, we concluded we had made diſcoveries of land ſeveral times, which proved to be only high iſlands of ice, at the back of large fields, which M. Bouvet might eaſily miſtake for land, eſpecially as it was thick foggy weather.

On the 17th, in the latitude 48 deg. 30 min. S. and in 14 deg. 26 min. E. longitude, we ſaw two large iſlands of ice. On the 18th, we made the land of the Cape of Good Hope, and on the 19th, anchored in Table Bay. Here we found Commodore Sir Edward Hughes, with his majeſty's ſhips Saliſbury, and Sea Horſe. We ſaluted the garriſon with thirteen guns, and the commodore with an equal number; the latter returned the full complement, and the former, as uſual, ſaluted us with two guns leſs. At this place Capt. Furneaux left a letter for Capt. Cook; and here we remained to refit the ſhip, refreſh the people, &c. &c. till the 16th of April, when we hoiſted ſail for England; and on the 14th of July, to the great joy of all our ſailors, anchored at Spithead.

From a review of the whole, our readers muſt ſee, how much this nation is indebted to that able circumnavigator Captain Cook. If they only compare the courſe the Reſolution ſteered, and the valuable diſcoveries ſhe made, with that purſued by the Adventure, after ſhe parted company, the contraſt will be ſufficiently ſtriking. How meritorious alſo muſt that perſon appear in our judgment, who hath not only diſcovered, but ſurveyed vaſt tracks of new coaſts; who has diſpelled the illuſion of a terra auſtralis incognita, and fixed the bounds of the habitable earth, as well as thoſe of the navigable ocean, in the ſouthern hemiſphere. No propoſition was ever more clearly demonſtrated, that there is no continent undiſcovered in the ſouthern hemiſphere, between the equator and the 50th deg. of ſouthern latitude, in which ſpace all who have contended for its exiſtence have included, if not the whole, at leaſt the moſt conſiderable part. But, at the ſame time that we declare ourſelves thus clearly convinced of the non-exiſtence of a continent within the limits juſt mentioned, we cannot help acknowledging our ready belief, that the land our navigators have diſcovered, to the S. E. of Staten Land, is part of a continent, projecting from the north, in a narrow neck, and expanding to the ſouthward and weſtward, in like manner as the South American Continent takes its riſe in the ſouth, and enlarges as it advances northward, more particularly towards the eaſt. In this belief we are ſtrengthened by the ſtrong repreſentation of land ſeen at a diſtance by our navigators, in latitude 72 deg. and 252 deg. longitude, and by the report of Theodore Gerrards, who, after paſſing the ſtraights of Magellan, being driven by tempeſts into the latitude of 64 deg. S. in that height came in ſight of a mountainous country, covered with ſnow, looking like Norway, and ſeemingly extending from eaſt to weſt. Theſe facts, and the obſervations made by Capt. Cook, corroborate each other; and, though they do not reduce the queſtion to an abſolute certainty, yet the probability is greatly in favour of the ſuppoſed diſcovery. To conclude theſe reflections, and to place the character of our judicious navigator in the moſt ſtriking point of view, we need only add, as propoſed, an inconteſted account of the means, by which, under the divine favour, Capt. Cook, with a company of 118 men, performed a voyage of three years and eighteen days, throughout all the climates, from 52 deg. N. to 71 deg. S. with the loſs only of one man by ſickneſs; and even this one began ſo early to complain of a cough, and other conſumptive ſymptoms, which had never left him, that his lungs muſt have been affected before he came on board to go the voyage. Did any, moſt converſant in the bills of mortality, whether in the moſt healthful climate, and in the beſt condition of life, ever find ſo ſmall a liſt of deaths, among ſuch a number of men within that ſpace? How agreeable then muſt our ſurprize be, to find, by the aſſiduity and unremitted exertions of a ſingle ſkilful navigator, the air of the ſea acquitted of all malignity, and that a voyage round the world has been undertaken with leſs danger, perhaps, to health, than a common tour in Europe! Surely diſtinguiſhed merit is here conſpicuous, though praiſe and glory belong to God only!

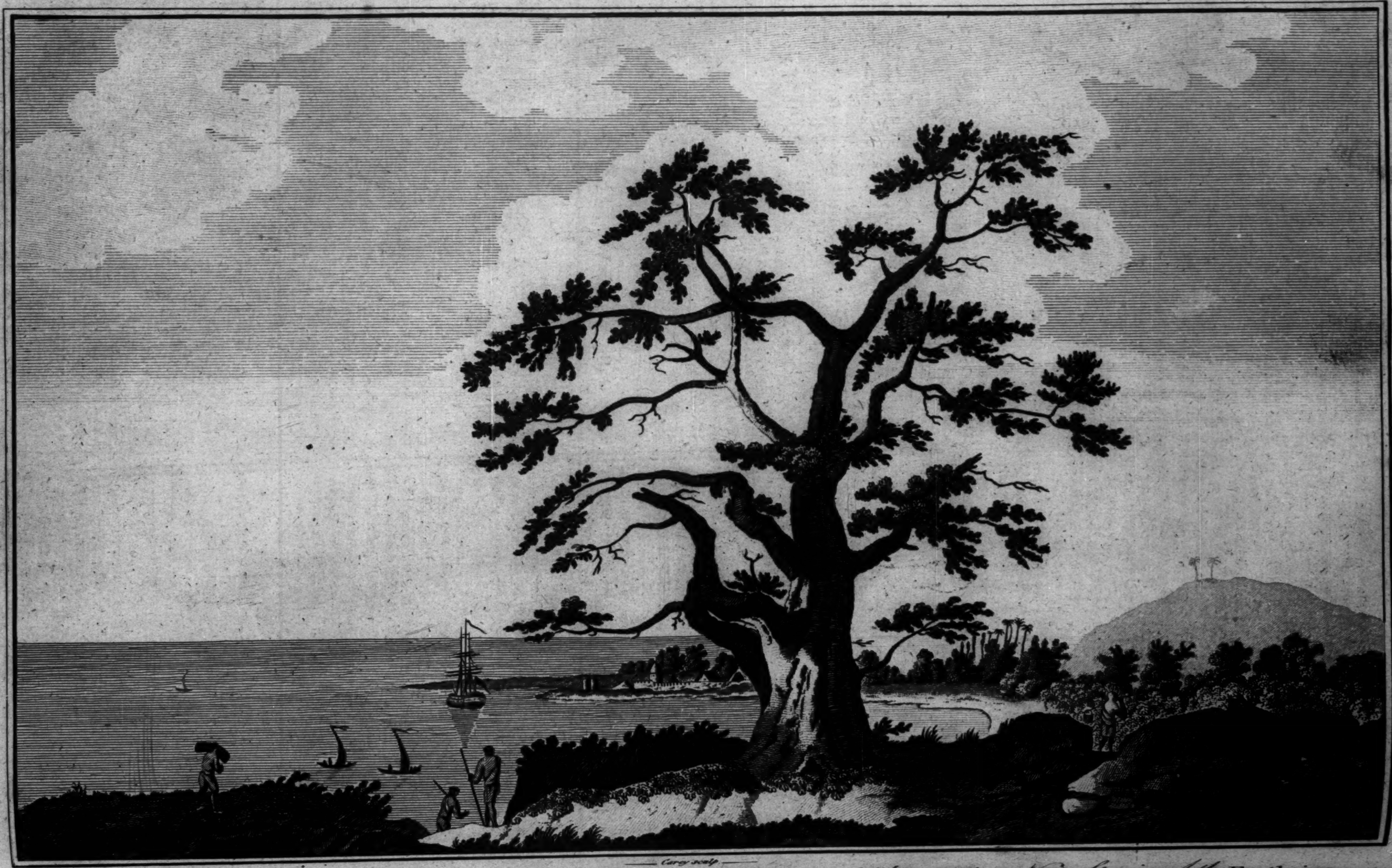
RULES for preſerving the HEALTH of SEAMEN in long VOYAGES; and the MEANS employed by CAPT. COOK, to that End, during his VOYAGE ROUND the WORLD, in his MAJESTY's SHIP the RESOLUTION.

Before we enter upon this ſubject, which hath for its object the ſaving the lives of men, it will be neceſſary to ſay ſomething on that diſorder to which ſeamen are peculiarly ſubject; and to conſider, how many have periſhed by marine diſeaſes, before any conſiderable improvements were made in the means either of their prevention or cure. The ſickneſs moſt deſtructive to mariners, and againſt the dreadful attacks of which preſervatives have been contrived, is the ſcurvy. This is not that diſtemper erroneouſly ſo called, among landſmen; but belongs to a claſs of diſeaſes totally different from it. So far is the common received opinion from being true, which affirms, "there are few conſtitutions altogether free from a ſcorbutic taint," that, unleſs among ſailors, and others, circumſtanced like them, more particularly with reſpect to thoſe who uſe a ſalt and putrid diet, and eſpecially if they live in foul air and uncleanlineſs, we are inclined to think there are few diſorders leſs frequent. Nor do we believe, which is another vulgar notion, that the ſea-air is the cauſe of the ſcurvy; ſince, on board a ſhip, cleanlineſs, ventilation, and freſh proviſions would preſerve from it, and upon the ſea-coaſt, free from marſhes, the inhabitants are not liable to that diſorder, though frequently breathing the air from the ſea. We ſhould, for theſe reaſons, rather aſcribe the ſcurvy to other cauſes; and we believe it be a beginning corruption of the whole habit, ſimilar to that of every animal ſubſtance when deprived of life. This has been verified by the ſymptoms in the ſcorbutic ſick, and by the appearances in their bodies after death. With reſpect to the putrifying quality of ſea-ſalt, we may remark, that ſalted meats, after ſome time, become in reality putrid, though they may continue long palatable, by means of the ſalt; and common ſalt, ſuppoſed to be one of the ſtrongeſt preſervatives from corruption, is, at beſt, but an indifferent one, even in a large quantity; and in a ſmall one, ſo far from impeding putrefaction, it rather promotes that proceſs in the body. Some are of opinion, that the ſcurvy is much owing to intenſe cold, which checks perſpiration; and hence, ſay they, ariſes the endemic diſtemper of the northern nations, particularly of thoſe around the Baltic. The fact is partly true; but we are doubtful about the cauſe. In theſe countries, by reaſon of long and ſevere winters, the cattle, being deſtitute of paſture, can barely live, and are therefore unfit for uſe; ſo that the people, for their proviſions, during that ſeaſon, are obliged to kill them by the end of autumn, and to ſalt them for above half the year.

This putrid diet then, on which they muſt ſo long ſubſiſt, ſeems to be the chief ſource from whence the diſeaſe originates. And if we conſider, that the loweſt claſs of people in the north, have few or no greens nor fruit, in winter, little or no fermented liquors, and often live in damp, foul, and ill-aired houſes, it is eaſy to conceive, how they ſhould become liable to the ſame diſorder with ſeamen; whereas, others, who live in as high a latitude, but in a different manner, are free from it. Thus we are informed by Linnæus, that the Laplanders are unacquainted with the ſcurvy; for which no other reaſon can be aſſigned, than their never eating ſalted meats, nor indeed ſalt with any thing, but their uſing all the freſh fleſh of their rein-deer. And this exemption of the hyperborean nations from the general diſtemper of the north, is the more remarkable, as they ſeldom taſte vegetables, and bread never. Yet in the very provinces bordering on Lapland, where they uſe bread, but ſcarcely any vegetables, and eat ſalted meats, they are as much troubled with the ſcurvy as in any other country. But here we may properly obſerve, that the late improvements in agriculture, gardening, and huſbandry, by extending their ſalubrious influence to the remoteſt parts of Europe, and to the loweſt claſs of people, begin ſenſibly to leſſen the frequency of that complaint, even in thoſe climates wherein it has been moſt brief and fatal. Again, it has been aſſerted, that thoſe who live on ſhore, or landſmen, will be affected with the ſcurvy, though they may have never been confined to ſalt meats: but of this we have not met with any inſtances, except among ſuch who have breathed a marſhy air, or what was otherwiſe putrid; or among thoſe who wanted exerciſe, fruits, and the common vegetables: under which particular circumſtances we grant, that the humours will corrupt in the ſame manner,

BRITISH
7 FE 60
MUSEUM

London: Published by Alex.r Hogg at the Kings Arms N.o 16 Paternoster Row.



Carey sculp

View *of* Matavia Bay, *in* OTAHEITE *taken from* One Tree Hill, *which* Tree *is a New Species of the* Erythrina.

ner, though not in the ſame degree, with thoſe of ſeamen. In the war, when Siſinghurſt Caſtle in Kent, was filled with French priſoners, the ſcurvy broke out among them, notwithſtanding they had never been ſerved with ſalted victuals in England, but had daily an allowance of freſh meat, and bread in proportion, though without vegetables. And beſides the want of this neceſſary ſupply of greens, the wards were crowded and foul, the houſe damp, by reaſon of a circumambient moat, and the bounds allotted for taking the air were ſo ſmall, and in wet weather ſo ſwampiſh, that the men ſeldom were diſpoſed to quit the houſe. A repreſentation having been made of theſe deficiencies, in conſequence thereof the priſoners were ſupplied with roots and greens for boiling in their broth, the ſick were quartered out in a dry ſituation, where they had the liberty of air and exerciſe; and by theſe means they all quickly recovered. We think it probable that the ſcurvy ſooner appeared among theſe ſtrangers, from their having been taken at ſea, and therefore, from their diet, they were more diſpoſed to the diſeaſe. Such is the nature and cauſe of that ſickneſs moſt deſtructive to ſailors.

Let us now take a tranſient view of its dreadful ravages; and by a contraſt between the old and preſent times, we ſhall ſee, more evidently, the importance and value of the means propoſed, and which have been moſt ſucceſsfully employed by Capt. Cook, for its prevention and cure. In the firſt voyage for the eſtabliſhment of the Eaſt-India Company, a ſquadron was fitted out, and under the command of Lancaſter (who was then ſtiled general) in the year 1601. The equipment conſiſted of four ſhips, with four hundred and eighty men on board. Three of thoſe veſſels were ſo weakened by the ſcurvy, when they had got only three degrees beyond the equinoxial line, that the merchants, who had embarked on this adventure, were obliged to do duty as common ſailors. At ſea, on ſhore, and at Soldania, the then place of refreſhment on this ſide the Cape of Good Hope, there died in all, nearly a fourth part of their complement, and that before they had proceeded half way to the place of their deſtination. Sir William Hawkins, who lived in that age, an intelligent and brave ſea-officer, has left it upon record, "that in twenty years, during which he had uſed the ſea, he could give an account of ten thouſand mariners who had been conſumed by the ſcurvy alone." If then in the very infancy of the naval power of England, ſo many were deſtroyed by that bane of ſea-faring men, what muſt have been the havock made ſince that early date, while our fleet has been gradually increaſing, new ports for commerce opening, and yet ſo little advancement made in the nautical part of medicine. And within our own remembrance, when it might have been expected, that whatever tended to aggrandize the naval power of Great Britain, and to extend her commerce, would have received the higheſt improvement: yet, even at theſe latter dates, we ſhall find few meaſures were adopted to preſerve the health of ſeamen, more than had been known to our uninformed anceſtors. The ſucceſsful but mournful expedition of Commodore Anſon, afterwards an admiral, and lord, affords a malancholy proof of the truth of this aſſertion. After having paſſed the ſtraits of La Maire, the ſcurvy began to rage violently in this little ſquadron; and by the time the Centurion had advanced but a little way into the South Sea, forty-ſeven ſailors died of it in that ſhip; nor were there ſcarcely any on board, who had not, in ſome degree, been touched with the diſtemper, though they had not at that time been quite eight months from England. In the ninth month, when abreaſt of the iſland of Juan Fernandez, the Centurion loſt double that number; and ſuch an amazing ſwift progreſs did the mortality make in this ſingle ſhip, that before they landed on that iſland ſhe had buried 200 of her hands; not being able to muſter any more in a watch, capable of doing duty, than two quarter maſters, and ſix foremaſt-men. This was the condition of one of the three ſhips which reached that iſland; and the other two ſuffered in proportion. Nor did the deſtroyer ſtop here his cruel ravages, but, after a few months reſpite, renewed his attacks; for the ſame diſeaſe broke out afreſh, making ſuch havock, that before the Centurion (in which were the whole ſurviving crews of the three ſhips) had reached the iſland of Tinian, there died ſometimes eight or ten in a day, ſo that when they had been only two years on their voyage, they had loſt a larger proportion than of four in five of their original number, and all of them after having entered the South Sea, of the ſcurvy: but we apprehend this was not ſtrictly the caſe; but that the cauſe of ſo great a mortality was a peſtilential kind of diſtemper, diſtinguiſhed on land by the name of the jail, or hoſpital fever; and indeed, in the obſervations made by two of Commodore Anſon's ſurgeons, it is affirmed, that the ſcurvy at that time was accompanied with putrid fevers: however, it is not material, whether the ſcurvy, or fever combined with it, were the cauſe of the deſtructive mortality in Lord Anſon's fleet, ſince it muſt be acknowledged both aroſe from foul air, and other ſources of putrefaction; and which may now, in a great meaſure, be obviated, by the various means fallen upon ſince the time of that expedition: and this naturally leads us, in due order, to take a view of the principal articles of proviſion, and other methods employed by that prudent as well as brave commander, Capt. Cook. We ſhall mention all ſuch articles as were found the moſt uſeful; and in this liſt of preſervative ſtores, ſhall begin with

I. Sweet wort. This was diſtributed, from one to three pints a day, or in ſuch proportion as the ſurgeon judged neceſſary, not only to thoſe men who had manifeſt ſymptoms of the ſcurvy, but to ſuch alſo as were judged to be moſt liable to it. Beer hath always been eſteemed one of the beſt antiſcorbutics; but as that derived all its fixed air from the malt of which it was made, this was thought to be preferable in long voyages, as it would take up leſs room than the beer, and keep longer ſound. Experience has ſince verified the theory; and in the medical journal of Mr. Patten, ſurgeon to the Reſolution, we find the following paſſage, which fully corroborates the teſtimony of Capt. Cook and others, in favour of Sweet Wort, as being the beſt antiſcorbutic medicine yet known. "I have found (obſerves this gentleman) the wort of the utmoſt ſervice in all ſcorbutic caſes during the voyage. As many took it by way of prevention, few caſes occurred where it had a fair trial; but theſe, however, I flatter myſelf, will be ſufficient to convince every impartial perſon, it is the beſt remedy hitherto found out for the cure of the ſea ſcurvy; and I am well convinced, from what I have ſeen the wort perform, and from its mode of operation, that if aided by portable ſoup, ſour-krout, ſugar, ſago, and currants, the ſcurvy, that maritime peſtilence, will ſeldom, or never make its appearance among a ſhip's crew, on the longeſt voyages; proper care with regard to cleanlineſs and proviſions being obſerved." It hath been conſtantly obſerved by our ſea-ſurgeons, that in long cruizes, or diſtant voyages, the ſcurvy never makes its alarming appearance, ſo long as the men have their full allowance of ſmall beer; but that when it is all expended, the diſorder ſoon prevails: it were therefore to be wiſhed, that our ſhips would afford ſufficient room for this wholeſome beverage. But, we are informed, the Ruſſians both on board, as well as on land, make the following middle quality between wort and ſmall beer. They take ground malt and rye meal in a certain proportion, which they knead into ſmall loaves, and bake in the oven. Theſe they infuſe occaſionally in a proper quantity of warm water, which begins ſo ſoon to ferment, that in the ſpace of 24 hours, their brewage is completed, and a ſmall, briſk, acetous liquor produced, to which they have given the name of quas. Dr. Mounſey, who lived long in Ruſſia, in writing to his friends in England, obſerves, that the quas is the common and ſalutary drink both of the fleets and armies of that empire, and that it was peculiarly good. The ſame gentleman having viſited the ſeveral priſons in the city of Muſcow, was ſurprized to find it full of malefactors, but more ſo when he could diſcover no fever among them, nor learn that any acute diſtemper, peculiar to jails, had ever been known there. He obſerved that ſome of thoſe places for confinement had a yard, for the uſe of the priſoners, but in others without that advantage, they were not ſickly: ſo that he could aſſign no other reaſon for the healthful condition of thoſe men, than their kind of diet, which was the ſame with that of the common people of the country, who live moſtly on rye-bread (a ſtrong aceſcent) and drink quas. Upon his return to St. Peterſburgh, he had made the ſame enquiry there, and with the ſame reſult. From this account it ſhould ſeem, that the rye-meal both quickens the fermentation, and adds more fixed air, ſince the malt alone could not ſo readily produce ſuch a tart, briſk liquor. And there is little doubt, but that whenever the other grains can be brought to a proper degree of fermentation, they will more or leſs in the ſame way become uſeful. That oats will, we are convinced from an experiment made by Capt. Cook. When on a cruize in the Eſſex, a 74 gun ſhip, and the ſcurvy breaking out among his crew, he recollected a kind of food moſt proper on that occaſion, which he had ſeen uſed in ſome parts of the north, called Sooins. This is made by putting ſome oat-meal into a wooden veſſel; then pouring hot water upon it, let the infuſion continue until the liquor begins to taſte ſouriſh, that is, till a fermentation comes on, which, in a place moderately warm, may be produced in about two days. The water muſt then be poured off from the grounds, and boiled down to the conſiſtence of a jelly. This the Captain ordered to be made and dealt out in meſſes, being firſt ſweetened with ſugar and ſeaſoned with ſome prize French wine, which, though turned ſour, improved the taſte. This diet chiefly, not leſs palatable then medicinal, and by abſtaining from ſalt meats, quite recovered his ſcorbutic ſick, not only in this, but in ſubſequent cruizes, without his being obliged to ſend one of them on ſhore becauſe they could not recover at ſea. Before the power of the fixed air in ſubduing putrefaction was known, the efficacy of fruits, greens, and fermented liquors was commonly aſcribed to the acid in their compoſition; and we have ſtill reaſon to believe, that the acid concurs in operating that effect. In caſe of a ſcarcity in theſe articles, or a deficiency of malt, or when the grain ſhould be ſpoiled, other ſubſtitutes may be found very ſerviceable; as diſtilled water, acidulated with the ſpirit of ſea ſalt, in the proportion of only ten drops to a quart; or with the weak ſpirit of vitriol, thirteen drops to the ſame meaſure, which may be given to thoſe who are threatened with the ſcurvy, at leaſt three quarts of this liquor daily, to be drank with diſcretion, as they ſhall think proper. The fixed air abounds in wine, and perhaps no vegetable ſubſtance is more replete with it than the juice of the grape. If we join the grateful taſte of wine, we muſt rank it the firſt in the liſt of antiſcorbutic liquors. Cyder is alſo excellent, with other vinous productions of fruit; indeed this ſalutary fixed air is contained more or leſs in all fermentable liquors, and begins to oppoſe putrefaction as ſoon as the working, or inteſtine motion commences.

II. The next article of extenſive uſe, was Sour-krout, (ſour cabbage) a food of univerſal repute in Germany. Its ſpontaneous fermentation produces that acidity which makes it agreeable to the taſte of all who eat it. The Reſolution had a large quantity of this wholeſome vegetable food on board, and it ſpoils not by keeping: in the judgment of Capt. Cook, ſour-krout is highly antiſcorbutic. The allowance for each man, when at ſea, was a pound, ſerved twice a week, or oftener, as was thought neceſſary. Some of the diſtinguiſhed medical writers of our times, have diſapproved of the uſe of cabbage as an anti-ſcorbutic; notwithſtanding the high encomiums beſtowed upon it by the antients, (witneſs what Cato the elder, and Pliny the naturaliſt, ſay on the ſubject) and although it hath had the ſanction of the experience of nations, for many paſt ages; and by experiments laid before the Royal Society, by ſome of our moſt eminent phyſicians, it has been demonſtrated, that this vegetable, with the reſt of the ſuppoſed alcaleſcents, are really aceſcents; and that the ſcurvy is never owing to acidity, but to a ſpecies of putrefaction; that very cauſe of which the ill-grounded claſs of alcaleſcents was ſuppoſed to be a promoter.

III. Portable Soup was another article with which the Reſolution was plentifully ſupplied. An ounce to each man, or ſuch other quantity as circumſtances pointed out, was boiled in their peaſe daily, three days in every week; and when vegetables were to be had it was boiled with them. Of this were made ſeveral nouriſhing meſſes, which occaſioned the crew to eat a greater quantity of vegetables than they would otherwiſe have done. This broth being freed from all fat, and having by long boiling evaporated the moſt putreſcent parts of the meat, is reduced to the conſiſtence of a glue, which in effect it is, and will, like other glues, in a dry place keep ſound for many years.

IV. The Rob of Oranges and Lemons, which the ſurgeon made uſe of in many caſes, with great ſucceſs, Capt. Cook, it has been obſerved, did not much rely on theſe acids as a preſervative againſt the ſcurvy; for which the following reaſon has been aſſigned by one of our moſt eminent phyſical profeſſors. Theſe preparations being only ſent out upon trial, the ſurgeon of the ſhip was told how much he might give for a doſe, without ſtrictly limiting the quantum. The experiment was made with the quantity ſpecified, but with ſo little ſucceſs, that judging it not prudent to loſe more time, he ſet about the cure with the wort alone, of the efficacy of which he was fully convinced; while he reſerved the robs for other purpoſes; more particularly for colds, when to a large draught of warm water, with ſome ſpirits and ſugar, he added a ſpoonful of one of them, and with theſe ingredients made a grateful ſudorific that anſwered his intention. To which we may add, as worthy of notice, that as they had been reduced to a ſmall proportion of their bulk by evaporation, it is probable they were much weakened, and that with their aqueous particles they had, by the fire, loſt not a little of their aerial. If therefore a further trial of theſe juices were to be made, they ſhould be ſent to ſea purified and entire in caſks, agreeable to a propoſal ſent into the Admiralty ſome years ago, by an experienced ſurgeon of the navy. Upon the whole, the teſtimonies in favour of the ſalutary qualities of theſe acids are ſo numerous, and ſo ſtrong, that we ſhould look upon ſome failures, even in caſes where their want of ſucceſs cannot ſo well be accounted for as in this voyage, not a ſufficient reaſon for ſtriking them out of this liſt of preſervatives againſt the conſuming malady to which ſeamen are particularly ſubject. Nor muſt we omit obſerving under this head, that Capt. Cook ſays not more in praiſe of vinegar than of the robs, as appears from an extract of a letter which he wrote to the preſident of the Royal Society, dated Plymouth Sound, July 7th, 1776. "I entirely agree with you, (ſays the Captain) that the dearneſs of the Rob of Lemons, and of Oranges, will hinder them from being purchaſed in large quantities; but I do not think theſe ſo neceſſary; for though they may aſſiſt other things, I have no great opinion of them alone. Nor have I a higher opinion of vinegar. My people had it very ſparingly during the late voyage; and towards the latter part, none at all; and yet we experienced no ill effects from the want of it. The cuſtom of waſhing the inſide of the ſhip with vinegar I ſeldom obſerved, thinking fire and ſmoke anſwered the purpoſe much better." We will not controvert the poſition here laid down by Capt. Cook, nor would we infer from hence, that he thought vinegar of little ſervice to a ſhip's company, but only that as he happened in this voyage to be ſparingly provided with it, and yet did well, he could not therefore conſider a large ſtore of vinegar to be ſo material an article of proviſions, as was commonly imagined: but notwithſtanding the Captain ſupplied its place with ſour krout, and truſted chiefly to fire for purifying his decks, yet it is to be hoped future navigators will not wholly omit ſuch a refreſhing and uſeful article. It is at leaſt a wholeſome variety in ſeaſoning, very proper for cleanſing the receptacles of the ſick, and may be uſed at times, ſucceſsfully as a medicine. The phyſician himſelf will ſmell to vinegar to prevent infection from contagious diſeaſes, and the ſmell is certainly agreeable to the ſick, eſpecially to ſuch who may be confined to a foul and crowded ward. Thus much for the ſalutary articles that have of late been added to the naval ſtores of all the king's ſhips on long voyages, which Capt. Cook ordered to be diſpenſed, as occaſion might require, in a bountiful manner; to which he added the following regulations, either wholly new, or hints from Sir Hugh Palliſer, Captains Campbell, Wallis, and other experienced friends; and, as from theſe he formed a plan, to which all his ſhip's company were to conform, he made them his own, and we may therefore juſtly place the merit to our ſkilful commander's account.

V. Captain Cook put his crew at three watches, inſtead of two; that is, he formed his whole crew into three diviſions, each of which was ordered upon the watch by the boatſwain four hours at a time; ſo that every man had eight hours free, for four of duty: whereas, at watch and watch, the half of the men being on duty at once, with returns of it every four hours, they can have but broken ſleep, and, when expoſed to wet, they cannot have time to get dry, before the whiſtle calls them up, or they may lie down to reſt themſelves. When ſervice requires, hardſhips muſt be endured, and no men in the world encounter them ſo readily, and with ſuch alacrity, as our thorough bred Engliſh ſeamen do; nevertheleſs, when there is no preſſing call, ought not our brave, hardy mariners to be indulged with as much uninterrupted reſt as our common labourers? Indeed it is the practice of all good officers to expoſe their men as little to wet weather as poſſible; and we doubt not but they will pay attention to what was made an eſſential point with our humane commander. In the torrid zone he ſhaded his people from the ſcorching rays of the ſun, by an awning over his deck; and in his courſe under the ſouthern polar circle, he provided for each man what the ſailors called their Maghellan jacket, made of a ſubſtantial woollen ſtuff, with the addition of a hood for covering their heads; and this garb they found moſt comfortable for working in rain and ſnow, and among the looſe ice in high ſouthern latitudes. If Rome decreed a civic crown to him who ſaved the life of a ſingle citizen, what honorary rewards, what praiſes are due to that hero, who contrived, and employed, ſuch new means to ſave many; means, whereby Britannia will no more lament, on the return of her ſhips from diſtant voyages, the loſs of her bold ſons, her intrepid mariners, who, by braving every danger, have ſo liberally contributed to the proſperity, opulence, and glory, of her maritime empire!

VI. Unremitted care was taken to guard againſt putrefaction, and a variety of meaſures purſued, in order to procure, and maintain, a purity of air in the ſhip. To this end, ſome wood, and that not ſparingly, being put into a proper ſtove, was lighted, and carried ſucceſſively to every part below deck. Wherever fire is, the air neareſt to it, being heated, becomes ſpecifically lighter, and, by being lighter, riſes, and paſſes through the hatchways into the atmoſphere. The partial vacuum is filled with the cold air around, and that being heated in its turn, in like manner aſcends, and is replaced with other air as before. Thus, by continuing the fire for ſome time, in any of the lower apartments, the foul air is in a good meaſure driven out, and the freſh admitted. Beſides, the acid ſteams of the wood, in burning, act probably here as an antiſeptic, and correct the corrupted air that remains. The ſhip was generally thus aired with fires once or twice a week. It has been obſerved by an officer of diſtinguiſhed rank, that all the old twenty gun ſhips were remarkably leſs ſickly than thoſe equal in dimenſions, but of modern conſtruction; which circumſtance he could no otherwiſe account for, than by the former having their fireplace or kitchen in the fore part of the deck immediately above the hold, where the flue vented ſo ill, that, when the wind was a-ſtern, every part was filled with ſmoke. This was a nuiſance for the time, but which was abundantly compenſated by the good health of the ſeveral crews: for thoſe fire-places dried the lower decks, much more when placed below, than they can now under the fore-caſtle upon the upper deck. But the moſt beneficial end anſwered by theſe portable ſtoves was, their drying up the damps, and foul moiſture, eſpecially in thoſe places where the air was moſt likely to be corrupted for the want of a free circulation. This foul moiſture is formed of the breath, and perſpirable matter of a multitude of men, of the animals or live ſtock, and of the ſteams of the bilge water from the well, where the ſtagnated corruption is the greateſt. This putrid humidity, being one of the principal ſources of the ſcorbutic diſeaſe, was, in order to its removal, particularly attended to; and, while the fires were burning, ſome of the hands were employed in rubbing hard, with canvaſs or oakum, every part of the ſhip that was damp and acceſſible. But the advantage of theſe means for preſerving the health of mariners, appeared no where ſo conſpicuous, as in purifying the well; which, being ſituated in the loweſt part of the hold, the whole leakage runs into it, whether of the ſhip itſelf, or the caſks of ſpoiled meat, or corrupted water. Yet this place was rendered both ſafe and ſweet, by means of an iron pot filled with fire, and let down to burn therein: we ſay ſafe, becauſe the noxious vapours, from this ſink alone, have often been the cauſe of inſtantaneous death to thoſe who have unwarily approached to clean it; and not to one only, but to ſeveral ſucceſſively, when they have gone down to ſuccour their unfortunate aſſiſtants. When this wholeſome proceſs could not take place, by reaſon of ſtormy weather, the ſhip was fumigated with gunpowder, mixed with vinegar or water. The ſmoke could have little effect in drying, but it might correct the putrid air, by means of the acid ſpirits from the ſulphur and nitre, aſſiſted, perhaps, by the aerial fluid, then diſengaged from the fuel, to counteract putrefaction. Theſe purifications by gunpowder, by burning tar, and other reſinous ſubſtances, are ſufficiently known. We wiſh the ſame could be ſaid of the ventilator, invented by Dr. Hales, the credit of which, though we are convinced of its excellence, is far from being eſtabliſhed in the navy. Perhaps Capt. Cook had not time to examine it, and therefore would not encumber his ſhip with a machine he had poſſibly never ſeen worked, and of which, he had, at beſt, received but a doubtful character; and we find he was not altogether unprovided with an apparatus for ventilation. He had the windſails, which he found very ſerviceable, particularly between the tropics. They take up little room, require no labour in working, and the invention is ſo ſimple, that they can fail in no hands; but yet their powers are ſmall, in compariſon with thoſe of Hales's ventilator; add to which, they cannot be put up in hard gales of wind, and they are of no uſe in dead calms, when a circulation of air is chiefly neceſſary, and required.

VII. The attention of Capt. Cook was directed not only to the ſhip, but to the perſons, hammocks, bedding, cloaths, &c. of the crew, and even to the utenſils they uſed, that the whole might be conſtantly kept clean and dry. Proper attention was paid to the ſhip's coppers; and the fat which boiled out of the ſalt beef and pork, the Captain never ſuffered to be given to the people, being of opinion that it promotes the ſcurvy. Cleanlineſs is not only conducive to health, it alſo tends to regularity, and is the patron of other virtues. If you can perſuade thoſe who are to be under command, to be more cleanly than they are diſpoſed to be of themſelves, they will become more ſober, more orderly, and more attentive to their duty. The practice in the army verifies this obſervation; yet, we confeſs, a mariner has indifferent means to keep himſelf clean, had he the inclination to do it; but, in our opinion, ſea-officers might avail themſelves of the ſtill for providing freſh water for the purpoſe of waſhing; ſeeing it is well known that ſalt water will not mix with ſoap, and linen wet with brine, ſeldom thoroughly dries. As for Capt. Cook, one morning, in every week, he paſſed his ſhip's company in review, and ſaw that every man had changed his linen, and was, in other points, as clean as circumſtances would permit; and the frequent opportunities he had of taking in freſh water among the iſlands in the South Sea, enabled him to allow his crew a ſufficient quantity of this wholeſome article for every uſe; and this brings us to another uſeful means conducive to the health of ſeamen.

VIII. Capt. Cook thought freſh water from the ſhore preferable to that which had been kept ſome time on board a ſhip, and therefore he was careful to procure a ſupply of this eſſential article wherever it was to be obtained, even though his company were not in want of it: nor were they ever at an allowance, but had always ſufficient for every neceſſary purpoſe. Nor was the Captain without an apparatus for diſtilling freſh water; but, though he availed himſelf ſometimes of the invention, he did not rely on it, finding by experiments, that he could not obtain by this means nearly ſo much as was expected. This was no diſappointment to him, ſince within the ſouthern tropic, in the Pacific Ocean, he diſcovered ſo many iſlands, all well ſtored with wholeſome ſprings; and when in the high latitudes, far from a ſingle fountain, he found the hardſhips and dangers inſeparable from the frigid zone, in ſome degree compenſated by the ſingular felicity he enjoyed, of extracting inexhauſtible ſupplies of freſh water from an ocean ſtrewed with ice. Thoſe very ſhoals, fields, and floating mountains of ice, among which he ſteered his perilous courſe, and which preſented ſuch terrifying objects of deſtruction, were the very means of his ſupport, by ſupplying him abundantly with what he moſt wanted. That all frozen water would thaw into freſh, was a paradox that had been aſſerted, but met with little credit: even Capt. Cook himſelf expected no ſuch tranſmutation; and therefore was agreeably ſurpriſed to find he had one difficulty leſs to encounter, namely, that of preſerving the health of his men ſo long on ſalt and putrid proviſions, with a ſcanty allowance of, perhaps, foul water, or only what he could obtain by the uſe of the ſtill. An antient writer, of great authority, no leſs than one of the Pliny's, had aſſigned, from theory, bad qualities to melted ſnow; but our judicious commander affirms, that melted ice of the ſea is not only freſh but ſoft, and ſo wholeſome as to ſhew the fallacy of human reaſon, unſupported by experiments. And, what is very remarkable, though in the midſt of ſleets, falls of ſnow, thick fogs, and much moiſt weather, the Reſolution enjoyed nearly the ſame ſtate of health, ſhe had experienced in the temperate and torrid zones. Indeed, towards the end of the ſeveral courſes, ſome of the mariners began to complain of the ſcurvy, but this diſeaſe made little progreſs; nor were other diſorders, as colds, diarrhœas, intermittents, and continued fevers, either numerous, alarming, or fatal. Nor, muſt we omit here, the remark of a celebrated phyſician, who juſtly obſerves, "that much commendation is due to the attention and abilities of Mr. Patten, the ſurgeon of the Reſolution, for having ſo well ſeconded his Captain in the diſcharge of his duty. For it muſt be allowed, that in deſpite of the beſt regulations, and the beſt proviſions, there will always be, among a numerous crew, during a long voyage, ſome caſualties, more or leſs productive of ſickneſs, and unleſs there be an intelligent medical aſſiſtant on board, many, under the wiſeſt commander, will periſh, that otherwiſe might have been ſaved. We ſhall obſerve, once more,

IX. That Capt. Cook was not only careful to repleniſh, whenever opportunity permitted, his caſks with water; but he provided his men with all kinds of refreſhments, both animal and vegetable, that he could meet with, and by every means in his power: theſe, even if not pleaſing to the palate, he obliged his people to uſe, both by example and authority; but the benefits ariſing from refreſhments of any kind, ſoon became ſo obvious, that he had little occaſion to recommend the one, or exert the other. Thus did this expert and humane navigator employ all the means and regulations, which the art of man ſuggeſted, or the God of nature provided, for the moſt benevolent purpoſe, even that of preſerving the health and lives of thoſe intruſted to his care. Here is greater merit than a diſcovery of frozen, unknown countries could have claimed; and which will exiſt, in the opinion of every benevolent mind, a ſubject of admiration and praiſe, when the diſputes about a ſouthern continent, ſhall no longer engage the attention, or divide the judgment of philoſophical enquirers. This is a memorial more laſting than the mimic buſt, or the emblazoned medal; for this can never periſh, but will remain engraven on the hearts of Engliſhmen to their lateſt poſterity. May future navigators ſpring out of this bright example, not only to perpetuate his juſtly acquired fame, but to imitate his labours for the advancement of natural knowledge, the good of ſociety, and the true glory of Great Britain.

A TABLE of the LANGUAGE uſed by the NATIVES of the SOCIETY ISLES, in GRAMMATICAL ORDER; to which is affixed an EXPLANATION of their MEANING in ENGLISH.

NOUNS.

Warradee	*Anger*
Momoa	*An Ancle*
Maa	*Aliment*
Taeree	*Action*
Feſe	*Abſceſs*
Nohora	*Abode*
Teeho	*Adulterer*
Toe	*Axe*
Eteouroóa	*Aſſembly*
Taata, toa	*Aſſaſſin*
Tarra	*Aſperity*
Owha	*Arrow (body of)*
Omoa	*Point of ditto*
Eoome	*Arrow*
Oomaia	*Anſwer*
Madoohowhy	*Approbation*
Reema	*Arm*
Ee	*Armpit*
Evarre	*Arches*
Waura	*Alive*
Oopeere	*Adheſive*
Nana	*Awry*
Arra. Era	*Awake*
Parou, mou	*True*
Fata, hoito	*Averſe*
Peepeere	*Avaricious*
Ama. Heama	*Aſhamed*
Emotto	*A Battle*
Poe	*Bead*
Eteoe. Eatee	*Bag*
Eraeunoo	*Bait*
Eeneeou	*Bamboo*
Epaa	*Bank*
Hohore	*Bark*
Moene	*Baſket of cocoa leaves*
Errevy	*Ditto a fiſher's*
Papa Maieea	*Ditto of plantain ſtock*
Apoaira	*Ditto of cocoa leaves large*
Vaihee	*Ditto of ditto ſmall*
Hena	*Ditto of twigs round*
Fanna toonea	*Baſtard*
Peeretee	*Beetle*
Erao	*Bee*
Eroee, Moia	*Bed*
Oome oome	*Beard*
Omorre	*Battle-axe*
Mydidde	*Babe*
Eevee, toata	*Batchelor*
Etama	*Brother*
Eevee	*Bone*

NOUNS.	
Feſe	*Boil*
Evaa	*Boat, or canoe*
Toto, Ehooei	*Blood*
Meiee	*Bliſter*
Toona, taata	*Blaſphemer*
Toameeme	*Bladder*
Oore, eooha	*Bitch*
Eawou	*Boldneſs*
Manoo	*Bird*
Horoa	*Benevolence*
Taparoo	*Beggar*
Pepe	*Butterfly*
Eta	*Bunch (of fruit)*
Te, arrehaoo	*Buds*
Peerara	*Bonetto, a fiſh*
Efanna	*Bow*
Aroahooa	*Bow-ſtring*
Mydidde	*Boy*
Eama	*Branch*
Teeteere	*Briſkneſs*
Ooroo	*Bread-fruit*
Epatea	*Ditto (a particular kind)*
Ehoe	*Ditto (paſte of)*
Tappoooroo	*Bread-tree (gum of the)*
Edaooroo	*Ditto (leaf of the)*
Poooroo	*Ditto (pith of the)*
Taoome	*Breaſt-plate*
Ery	*The Brow*
Oma	*Breaſt*
Abooba	*Brain*
Era	*Boards (carved of a Maray)*
Tooa	*Back*
Eeno	*Bad*
Etoonoo	*Baked*
Oopobooto	*Bald-headed*
Taturra	*Bare*
Fenooa Maoure	*Barren-land*
Ere, ere	*Black*
Matta-po	*Blind*
Maneea	*Blunt*
Ooaweera	*Broiled*
Motoo	*Broken*
Auraura	*Brown*
Pappa	*A Crab*
Ooora	*Cray-fiſh*
Torea	*Curlew*
Ohooe	*Convolvulus*
Orahooe	*Cork*
Taura	*Cordage*
Epecho	*Corner*
Pee, peere	*Covetouſneſs*
Mare	*Cough*
Peeeeya	*Covering of a fiſh's gills*
Nonoa	*Coyneſs*
Eoowa	*Crab (land)*
Motoo	*Crack*
Teitei	*Cripple*
Arawerewa	*Cookoo (a brown)*
Toopooe	*The Crown of the head*
Emotoo too	*Cramp*
Boe	*Core of an apple*
Eaoute	*Cloth-plant*
Aeeoo	*Claw of a bird*
Etaa	*Chin*
Opoe	*Cheſt of the body*
Pappareea	*Cheek*
Maneeno	*A Calm*
Eou, ſhea	*Ditto*
Too, Etoo	*Cane (ſugar)*
Taumatta	*Cap*
Etooa	*Caterpillar*
Terapoo	*Center (or middle)*
Taata Emoo, Emoo	*Chatterer*
Peeha	*Cheſt*
Moa peeriaia	*Chicken*
Earee	*Chief (or king)*
Tooou	*Ditto (an inferior one)*
Emammatea	*Cliffs*
Toaa	*Cloth-beater*

NOUNS.	
Eao	*Cloud*
Moa, etoa	*Clock*
Potte potte	*Cock-roach*
Aree	*Cocoa-nut*
Pooroowaha, Pooroo	*Ditto (huſk of a)*
Erede, vae	*Ditto (oil of)*
Enehaoo	*Ditto (leaves of)*
Pahoro, Paherre	*Comb*
Waheine, Moebo, Etoonea	*Concubine*
Ooraoora	*Crimſon (colour)*
Paraou maro, Para paraou	*Converſation*
Waheine, pooha	*Contempt (name of)*
Madoo, howhy	*Conſent*
Evaheea	*Confuſedneſs*
Tatou	*Computation*
Teeya	*Company*
Mareede	*Cold (ſenſe of)*
Ey	*Coition*
Parooy	*Cloth round the waiſt, and a ſhirt*
Heappa, heappa, Aade pooee ei, Oora pooee ei	*Ditto (yellow)*
Ooair ara	*Ditto (gummed)*
Aheere, Ooa	*Ditto (nankeen)*
Pooheere	*Ditto (dark brown)*
Ooerai	*Ditto (brown thin)*
Teeboota	*Ditto (an oblong piece of)*
Ahoo	*Ditto of any kind*
Ewhou, arra	*Clay*
Etoo	*Clapping (a noiſe)*
Porhaoo	*Clappers*
Eoore, tehai	*Circumciſion*
Fanou, evaho	*Child-bearing*
Wara	*Cheerfulneſs*
Mammatea	*Chalk*
Teeteere, Etirre	*Celerity*
Poore, poore	*Chequered, or painted*
Epooneina, Erooy	*Choaked*
Ooama, Eooee	*Clean*
Teate	*Clear*
Evahee	*Cloſe*
Eeoo, Eeewera	*Cooked (victuals)*
Ooa, peeape, Ehotto	*Crammed, or crowded*
Ooopeeo	*Crooked*
Motoo	*Cut, or divided*
Etee	*A Devil*
Epee	*Diſeaſe*
Hawa, hawa	*Diarrhœa (looſeneſs)*
Ehoonoa	*Denial*
Oo, atahai	*Drop*
Maheine	*Daughter*
Heeva	*Dance*
Paraee	*Head-dreſs at funerals*
Ooboota	*Door*
Aouna	*Dolphin*
Adooa	*Doll*
Ooree	*Dog*
Eohoo	*Ditch*
Mateina	*Diſtrict*
Pahoo	*Drum*
Mora	*Duck*
Eoo	*Dug, or nipple*
Poeeree	*Darkneſs*
Marama rama	*Day-light*
Ootataheita	*Day-break*
Matte noa	*Death (natural)*
Tareea, tooree	*Deafneſs*
Mona	*Deep-water*
Aheaoo	*Dew*
Erepo	*Dirt and naſtineſs*
Ehoonoa	*Diſapprobation*
Eeea	*Diſhoneſty*
Faoooue	*Diſſatisfaction*
Ewaou	*Down (ſoft hair)*
Mattou	*Dread*
Topotta	*Drops of rain*
Efao	*Dumbneſs*
Oomaro	*Dry*
Parremo	*Drowned*

Nouns.		
Ecoo		*Dreſſed, not raw*
Taurooa		*Double*
Roa		*Diſtant*
Taeeva		*Diſpleaſed*
Epootooa		*Decrepit*
Matte roo		*Dead*
Taatae	*An*	*Enemy*
Tooo		*Echo*
Heawy		*Echinus, or ſea-egg*
Poe note tareea		*Ear-ring*
Tareea		*Ear*
Tatooree		*Ditto (the inſide of)*
Ehooero te Manoo		*Egg*
Peery		*Egg-bird (white)*
Matta	*The*	*Eye*
Tooa, matta		*Eye-brow*
Oohoihoi		*Evening*
Tetooee		*Euphorbium-tree*
Tooree		*Elbow*
Tooty		*Excrement*
Ooataao, Tataooa		*Empty*
Eta, eta		*Entire*
Oohytei		*Equal*
Etoo		*Erect*
Poorehooa	*A*	*Fly*
Weewo		*Flute*
Omamao		*Fly-catcher (a bird)*
Rypoeea		*Fog*
Taouna		*Fool*
Moa		*Fowl*
Apoo		*Farunculus (a boil)*
Eeeda		*Fleſh-mark*
Motoo		*Fiſſure*
Makeera		*Fiſhing-rod*
Ewha		*Fiſh-pot*
Epa		*Fiſhing-wall*
Eya		*Fiſh*
Etata		*Ditto (the cuckold)*
Paiou		*Ditto (flat green and red)*
Oomorehe		*Ditto (a yellow and flat)*
Eeume		*Ditto (green and flat)*
Marara		*Ditto (flying)*
Ereema		*Finger*
Epatta		*Fillip*
Taharee		*Fan*
Ehoo		*Fart*
Medooa tanne		*Father*
Tanne, te hoa		*Ditto (a ſtep)*
Hooroo, hooroo manoo		*Feather*
Emoteea	*The*	*Face*
Mamo-oo		*Fern-tree*
Tirra		*Fin of a fiſh*
Pooa		*Flower of a plant*
Tapooy		*Foot*
Ery		*Forehead*
Ahea		*Frapping of a flute*
Avee		*Fruit (yellow)*
Hooero te manoo		*Ditto (perfume)*
Hooero		*Fruit*
Eoo-ee		*Friction*
Taina		*Freckles*
Toearre tarreea		*Flowers for ear-ornaments*
Teearreoowa		*Ditto open*
Pooa		*Ditto of a plant*
Papa		*Flatneſs*
Da-hee-ere-e-reupa		*Flapper (a fly)*
Amoto		*Fiſt (ſtriking with in dancing)*
Eahai		*Fire*
Fafa		*Feeling (ſenſe of)*
Farara, Toororee		*Feebleneſs*
Hooroo, hooroo, te manoo		*Feathers (red)*
Mattou		*Fear*
Maee		*Fat of meat*
Moe, momy		*Fainting*
Faatta atta		*Facetious*
Hawarre		*Falſe*
Peea		*Fat*
Eheieu, Faea		*Fatigued*

Nouns.		
Temy de paaree		*Fellow (a young clever one, or boy)*
Eooha		*Female kind*
Fenooa, maa		*Fertile, land*
Eote		*Few*
Mahouta		*Flown*
Ooaro		*Forgot*
Erepo		*Foul*
Eanna, anna		*Freſh*
Pya, Oopya, Paya		*Full (ſatisfied)*
Moboona	*A*	*Grandſon*
Ouroo		*Great great grandfather*
Too boona tahetoo		*Great grandfather*
Tooboona		*Grandfather*
Taata Aee, Erapoa nooe		*Glutton*
Heeoeeota		*Glaſs (looking)*
Tatooy		*Girthing manufacture*
Tooneea		*Girl*
Tatooa		*Girdle*
Eho-oo		*Gimblet*
Avoutoo		*Garland of flowers*
Orabooboo		*Gut (the blind)*
Aaoo		*Guts of animals*
Horoa		*Generoſity*
Anonoho		*Graſs*
Tapa	*The*	*Groin*
Poore, poore		*Green*
Arahai		*Great*
Tomo		*Graſping*
Mamahou, Maroo		*Good-natured*
Efarre	*A*	*Hut, or houſe*
Awhatta		*Houſe on props*
Efarrepota		*Ditto (a large one)*
Ehamoote		*Ditto (of office)*
Matau		*Hook (fiſh)*
Eeaoure		*Ditto (a particular ſort)*
Erooa		*Hole*
Boa		*Hog*
Maoo, Maooa		*Hill*
Talha		*Ditto (called one tree)*
Otoo		*Heron (a blue)*
Trapappa		*Ditto (a white)*
Totera		*Hedge-hog (the ſea)*
Toe		*Hatchet*
Tootou		*Harbour*
Oraro		*Harangue*
Eteete		*Hammer*
Eroroo	*The*	*Hair*
Hinnaheina		*Ditto (grey)*
Ehoo		*Ditto (red)*
Peepee		*Ditto (curled)*
Oetoeto		*Ditto (woolly or frizzled)*
Epoote		*Ditto (tied up)*
Ereema		*Hand*
Peeleoi		*Ditto (deformed)*
One one		*Ditto (a motion with)*
Oopo		*Head*
Evoua		*Ditto (ſhorn)*
Enanea		*Head-ach, occaſioned by drunkenneſs*
Ahoutoo		*Heart (of an animal)*
Peere, peere		*Hibiſcus (a flower)*
Po-oorou		*Ditto (with yellow flowers)*
Etooee, Eoowha		*Hiccup*
Etohe		*Hips*
Tamorou		*Ditto (punctuated)*
Epaee no t'Eraee		*Horizon*
Maheine, Amauhattoi		*Houſewife (the induſtrious)*
Eeaoure		*Honeſty*
Efao		*Hoarſeneſs*
Eta, eta		*Hardineſs*
Mahanna, hanna		*Heat*
Teimaha		*Heavy*
Mato		*High*
Poheea		*Hot*
Fa, atta, atta		*Humorous*
Pororee, Poeea		*Hungry, or Hunger*
Motoo	*An*	*Iſlot*

NOUNS.	
Maheine Opataieehu	*Inquiſitive (a tattling woman)*
Etee	*Image of a human figure*
Eta	*Jaw (the lower)*
Taboone	*Jealouſy (in a woman)*
Weeata	*Ignorance*
Oore, eeeone	*Ill-natured*
Teohe	*Imps*
Tawytte	*Inceſt*
Teepy	*Indolence*
Taeea	*Induſtry*
Erahoo	*Ink (for punctuation)*
Myro	*Itch (the)*
Peepeere	*Inhoſpitable*
Tee, tee	*Indigent*
Roa	*Immenſe*
Poo	*Immature*
Teepy	*Indolent (idle)*
Tapona	*A Knot*
Vahodoo	*Ditto (a double one)*
Teebona	*Ditto (a female one)*
Tee, poo	*Knuckle*
Etooree	*Knee*
Oomo	*Kite that boys play with*
Erooro	*King-fiſher*
Earee, dahai	*King*
Emoteea	*Kernel of a cocoa-nut*
Fooahooa	*The Kidnies*
Matte	*Killed*
Ootoo	*A Louſe*
Ehoonoa	*Lover*
Hawa, hava	*Looſeneſs*
Heeoeeotta	*Looking-glaſs*
Teeonai	*Lobſter*
Mo-o	*Lizard*
Taata, hawarre	*Liar*
Tao	*Lance, or ſpear*
Ewhaouna	*Lagoon*
Eraa, Eara	*Ladder*
Fenooa. Whenooa	*Land, a country*
Paraou	*Language*
Timoro dee, te Timoro dee	*Ditto uſed in dancing*
Nooe	*Largeneſs*
Teepy	*Lazineſs*
Awy	*Leg (the)*
Maramarama	*Day-light*
Oowaira	*Lightning*
Ootoo	*Lips (the)*
Teetoo, arapoa	*Lungs (the)*
Oopeea	*Luſty*
Hea, hea, Papoo	*Low*
Aooweewa	*Looſe*
Eawawa	*Loathſome*
Mama	*Light*
Eete	*Little*
Tei, tei	*Lame*
Arahai	*Large*
Aeo	*Lean of meat*
Toohai	*Lean, ſlender*
Poo, poo. Poo	*A Muſket, or any kind of fire-arms*
Nou ou	*Muſcle-ſhell*
Taato toa	*Murderer*
Worou, worou	*Multitude*
Maooa. Moua	*Mountain, or hill*
Madooa, waheine	*Mother*
Epepe	*Moth*
Whattarau	*Monument (funeral)*
Marama	*Month (lunar)*
Atoonoa	*Mole, or mark*
Rypoeea	*Miſt, or fog*
Ea	*Meaſure*
Teera	*Maſt of a canoe*
Evanne	*Mat*
Moea	*Ditto (a ſilky kind)*
Poorou	*Ditto (a coarſe ſort)*
Eeeree	*Mark (a black one on the ſkin)*
Ottaha	*Man of war bird*

NOUNS.	
Taata, Taane	*Man*
Taata, hamaneeno	*Ditto (a bad one)*
Tooneea	*Maid, or girl*
Etoa	*The Male of any animal*
Teropoo	*Middle of any thing*
Marama	*Moon*
Oopoeepoee	*Morning*
Evaha	*Mouth*
Heeva	*Muſic*
Eeva	*Mourning*
Tapaoo	*Ditto (leaves uſed on that occaſion)*
Ooata	*Motion*
Mouateitei	*Mountains of the firſt order*
Mouahaha	*Ditto of the ſecond ditto*
Pereraou	*Ditto of the third ditto*
Mamma, haoo	*Modeſty*
Otoora, heipo	*Midnight*
Ehoohoo	*Maggots*
Worou, worou, manoo, manoo	*Many*
Para, Pe	*Mature*
Wararee	*Moiſt*
Patea	*Motherly*
Matte. Matteroa	*Murdered*
Fatebooa	*Mute*
Eeeoa	*A Noun, or name of a thing*
Taatatooboo	*Native*
Oopaia	*Net (fiſhing one)*
Oporo	*Night ſhade*
Eoo	*Nipple*
Eriha	*Nit*
Aree	*Nut (cocoa)*
Eeehee	*Ditto a large compreſſed ditto*
Popoheo	*The Noſtrils*
Aeeoo	*Nail*
Eure	*Ditto of iron*
Aee	*Neck*
Tatou	*Numeration*
Wawatea	*Noon*
Po. Eaoo	*Night*
Narreeda	*Needles*
Taturra	*Naked*
Peere, peere	*Narrow*
Erepo	*Naſty*
Hou	*New*
Poto. Whattata	*Nigh*
Emoo	*Noiſy*
Oohoppe, pooaia	*An Orphan*
Ooomoo	*Oven*
Ewhatto	*Owner*
Iteea	*Oyſter (large ſort)*
Pahooa	*Ditto (another ſort)*
Erapaoo	*Ointment plaiſter*
Ty, Meede	*The Ocean*
Ooapee	*Outſide of a thing*
Maray Wharre	*Ornaments (burial)*
Tooee, tareea	*Ditto (for the ear)*
Warawara	*Order*
Monoe	*Oil (perfumed)*
Oopeea	*Obeſity (fatneſs)*
Nonoa	*Odoriferous*
Orawheva	*Old*
Eatea	*Open (ſpacious)*
Ferei	*Ditto (not ſhut)*
Watoowheitte	*Oppoſite*
Tahoua	*A Prieſt*
Eoua	*Porpoiſe*
Oorahoo	*Poll*
Omo	*Plant*
Erabo	*Ditto (a ſmall ſort)*
Epeeho	*Plain*
Hooahoua	*Pimple*
Eroope	*Pigeon (a wood)*
Oooopa	*Ditto (green and white)*
Oooowydero	*Ditto (black and white)*
Popoee	*Pudding*
Hawa, hawa	*Purging*
Taata no Erapaoo	*Phyſician*

Arou

NOUNS.		
Aroumaieea		*Petticoat of plaintain leaves*
Awa		*Pepper-plant*
Teaoo		*Peg*
Poe		*Pearl*
Pye, pye		*Pavement*
Eara		*Path, or road*
Eareeea		*Paſs, or ſtrait*
Parooroo		*Partition*
Eaa		*Parroquet (green)*
Eveenee		*Ditto (blue)*
Medooa		*Parent*
Anoho		*Pair*
Ehoe		*Paddle of a canoe*
Etanea	*The*	*Palate*
Apooreema		*Palm of the hand*
Etararo		*Part below the tongue*
Amaa, Eatta		*The peduncle, or ſtalk of a plant*
Oe, oe, or oi, oi		*Point of any thing*
Ahooa		*Pumpkins*
Oomarra		*Potatoes (ſweet)*
Awaawa		*Poiſon (bitter)*
Faiee		*Plantâins (horſe)*
Maieea, Maya		*Plantain-tree (the fruit of the)*
Patoonehe		*Perſons of diſtinction*
Mahee		*Paſte (a fermented)*
Mamma		*Pap*
Mamy		*Pain (the ſenſe of)*
Meatee		*Peeled*
Ree		*Petty (ſmall)*
Paeea		*Plane (ſmooth)*
Maroo		*Pleaſed (not croſs)*
Teetee		*Poor*
Wahapoo		*Pregnant*
Teeopa		*Prone, or face downwards*
Eooee		*Pure, clear*
Peeha	*A*	*Quiver*
Fallebooa		*Quietneſs*
Etirre		*Quickneſs*
Hoe, Faherre	*A*	*Rudder, or ſteering-paddle of a canoe*
Taura		*Rope*
Apoo, Ea		*Root*
Paoo		*Rock*
Eaou		*Reef of rocks*
Eeea. Taata		*Robber, or thief*
Eara		*Road, or path*
Maino		*Ring*
Awao		*Rib*
Ehoonooa		*Refuſal*
Yoree. Eyone		*Rat*
Oo-ee		*Raſp, or file*
Maitoe		*Raft of Bamboo*
Enooa		*Rainbow*
Maiho		*Rail (ſpotted with black, &c.)*
Pooanee		*Ditto (another ſort)*
T, Ewahei	*The*	*Remainder*
Enooa		*Ringworm (a diſeaſe)*
Tooroore		*Rolling of the ſhip*
Ooatapone		*Running (to eſcape)*
Tooe, tooe		*Reſpiration*
Eooa		*Rain*
Ewao wao		*Rank (in ſmell)*
Eotta		*Raw meat*
Paroure		*Raw fruit*
Oora, oora. Matde		*Red*
Ewha		*Rent*
Epotoo		*Rich*
Para. Pai Ooopai		*Ripe*
Ooawaira		*Roaſted, or broiled*
Roope		*Rotten*
Tarra, tarra		*Rough*
Eroo	*A*	*Swell (of the ſea)*
Horowai		*Surf of the ſea*
Tarooa		*Storm*
Papa. Papa, rooa		*Stool, to lay the head on when aſleep*

NOUNS.		
Owhay		*Stone*
Painoo		*Ditto (poliſhed, to make the paſte upon)*
Tame		*Stick (a walking)*
Everee		*Star-fiſh*
Efaitoo. Hwetto		*Star*
Etootee		*Stage (a fighting)*
Tao		*Spear*
Ewhaeono		*Span*
Opai		*Sore*
Heeva		*Song*
Myde		*Son*
Hoonoa		*Son-in-law*
Teetee	*A*	*Snipe, or rather a bird reſembling one*
Pooheearoo		*Snake (ſea)*
Ema		*Sling*
Tooeine		*Siſter*
Parooy		*Shirt (white)*
Pahee		*Ship*
Porehoo		*Shell (Tyger)*
Oteo		*Ditto (a ſmall one)*
Mao		*Shark*
Towtow		*Servant, or common perſon*
Maray		*Sepulchre*
Papa		*Seat*
Fatoo whaira		*Seam, between two planks*
Heawy		*Sea-egg*
Etata		*Scoop, with which water is emptied from a canoe*
Etona		*Scab*
Eeeoo		*Saw*
Ewhoee		*Skate-fiſh*
Mahanna. Era	*The*	*Sun*
Teineea te Mahanna		*Ditto (the meridian)*
Eaha		*String of a quiver*
Ponau		*Stopper of ditto*
Paraeea		*Stomach*
Tapooy		*Sole of the foot*
Eraee		*Sky*
Eeree		*Skin*
Ereeawo		*Side*
Atou, ataou		*Ditto (the right)*
Aroode		*Ditto (the left)*
Eata		*Shore*
Etoroo te paia		*Seyne (a net)*
Hooatootoo, Ehooero		*Seed of a plant*
Taee, Meede		*Sea*
Poohe		*Sea-cat*
Eeeai		*Sail of a canoe*
Tyty, Meede		*Salt, or ſalt-water*
Eone		*Sand*
Whatihea		*Saturn*
Eoora		*Smoke*
Tabooa, Manoo		*Saunders' iſland*
Poa		*Scales of a fiſh*
Otoobo, Otoobo		*Sciſſars (a pair of)*
Eheeo		*Seeing (the ſenſe of)*
Arawha		*Ship-wreck*
Tama		*Shoes (mud, or fiſhing)*
Matte my Mamy		*Sickneſs*
Faea		*Sighing*
Fattebooa		*Silence*
Moeroa		*Sleep, or death*
Fatatoo, Ootoo, too, too		*Smelling (the ſenſe of)*
Bappara		*Smutting (with charcoal, at funeral ceremonies)*
Macheeai		*Sneezing*
Hoope		*Mucus*
Teireida		*Soberneſs*
Maroo		*Softneſs*
Mamay		*Soreneſs, or pain*
Paeena		*Sound*
Mattaareva		*Squint-eyed*
Euhaaou		*Suicide*
Eto, Too		*Sugar-cane*
Weeala		*Stupidity*
Apee		*Striking (in dancing)*

NOUNS.

Tootoone	*Stones, ſuch as ſtand upright before the huts*
Namooa, Neeneo	*Stinking*
Pahoore, hoore	*Scratched*
Maroo, maroo	*Shady*
Ooee	*Sharp (keen edged)*
Popotoo	*Short*
Opanee, Poopeepe	*Shut (not open)*
Oowhyada	*Similar*
Marra, marroa, Fata	*Slow*
Eete	*Small*
Paya	*Smooth*
Mato	*Steep (approaching to a perpendicular)*
Peere, peere	*Strait (not wide)*
Oomara	*Strong (as a ſtrong man)*
Aboola	*Struck*
Poheea	*Sultry*
Fateeraha	*Supine (with the face up)*
Aow	*A Tide, or current*
Etapayroy	*Title (belonging to a woman of quality)*
Maneeo	*Toe*
Too, pappou	*Tomb*
Ehonoo	*Tortoiſe*
Efarre pootoo pootoo	*Town*
Erao	*Tree*
Toa Erao	*Ditto from which clubs, &c. are made*
Manooroa	*Tropic bird*
Etaee	*Turban*
Ero	*Tail*
Ehoppe	*Ditto of a bird*
Epiroa	*Tetotum*
Eoo	*Teat, or dug*
Oeeo	*Tern (a bird)*
Tamata	*Taſting (ſenſe of)*
Eneeheeo	*The Teeth*
Arapoa	*Throat*
Ereema, erahai	*Thumb*
Erero	*Tongue*
Mahea	*Twins*
Evaeeroa. Paraou, mou	*Truth*
Aoudou	*Trembling*
Fafa	*Touching*
Otooe, teepo	*Time (a ſpace from 6 to 10 at night)*
Pateere	*Thunder*
Hoeaire	*Throwing (in dancing)*
Fatebooa	*Thoughtfulneſs*
Paraou, no te opoo	*Thoughts*
Waheey	*Thirſt*
Meoomeoo	*Thickneſs (in ſolid bodies)*
Apeuhau	*Tenants*
Tooe, tooe	*Thick (ſubſtance)*
Ewoреroo, Eworepo	*Ditto (muddy)*
Ahoooue	*Tough*
Opai	*An Ulcer*
Areeoi	*Unmarried perſon*
Poo	*Unripe*
Epao	*A Vapour (luminous)*
Mannahouna	*Vaſſal, or ſubject*
Oomutte	*Veſſel (in which liquor is put)*
Aiboo	*Ditto (any hollow one)*
Tourooa	*Venus*
Ewoua	*The Veins*
Ara, hai, Mai, arahai	*Vaſt*
Nana	*A Wry-neck*
Mouna	*Wreſtler*
Ootee	*Wound*
Waheine	*Woman*
Waheine mou	*Ditto (a married one)*
Evarouat Eatooa	*Wiſh (to one who ſneezes)*
Ereou	*Wing (of a bird)*
Malaee oupanee	*Window*
Maheine	*Wife*
Watooneea	*Widow*
Erahei	*Wedge*

NOUNS.

Toria	*Wart*
Taatatoa	*Warrior (or rather a man-killer)*
Mattay	*The Wind*
Mattaee	*Ditto (the South-Eaſt)*
Momoa	*Wriſt*
Epoum, maa	*Whiſtling (uſed to call the people to meals)*
Avy	*Water*
Patoa	*Water-creſſes*
Erao	*Wood of any kind*
Meeo, meeo	*Wrinkled*
Eimeo	*York Iſland*
Peenata	*Young*
Heappa	*Yellow*

PRONOUNS.

Wou. Mee	*I, myſelf, me*
Nooo	*Mine*
Totaooa	*They*
No-oe	*Thine*
Taooa, Aroorooa	*We, both of us*
Oe	*You*
Nana	*He*

VERBS.

Eteei	*To Abide*
Eooawai	*Agitate*
Ehootee	*Angle*
Homy, Hapymy	*Aſk for a thing*
Fyroo, tooty	*Wipe the backſide*
Taprahai	*Baſtinade*
Oboo	*To Bathe*
Teimotoro	*Bawl*
Toopy	*Beat upon*
Erookoo	*Beat a drum*
Parry	*Beſpatter*
Erooy	*Belch*
Fafeſe	*Bend any thing*
Etatee	*Bewail*
Aahoo	*Bite, as a dog*
Fatte	*Blow the noſe*
Ehooee, Ehoo-o	*Bore a hole*
Etooo	*Bow with the head*
Owhatte, Owhanne, Fatte	*Break a thing*
Watte weete we teaho	*Breathe*
Homy	*Bring a thing*
Doodooe	*Burn a thing*
Too-otooooo	*Call a perſon*
Eamo	*Carry any thing*
Evaha	*Carry any one on the back*
Popoee. Peero	*Catch a thing*
Amawheea	*Catch a ball*
Ehoote	*Catch fiſh with a line*
Ey	*Chew*
Ehee, te me, myty	*Chuſe*
Taharee	*Cool with a fan*
Tararo	*Court a woman*
Eneai	*Creep on the hands and feet*
Aaooa	*Crow, as a cock*
Taee	*Cry*
Eparoo	*Cuff*
Otee	*Cut the hair with ſciſſars*
Oono	*Darn*
Eooee	*Deſire*
Faweewo	*Dip meat in ſalt water*
Eaoowai	*Diſengage (untie)*
Faeeta	*Diſtort the limbs, &c.*
Atooha	*Diſtribute*
Ehopoo	*Dive under water*
Etea	*Draw a bow*
Erako	*Draw by force*
Eu, hauhoo t'Ahoo	*Dreſs (put on cloaths)*
Aoenoo	*Drink*
Etotooroo, Etooroo	*Drop, or leak*
Ey, Maa	*Eat*

VERBS.	
Hohora	*Expand*
Topa	To *Fall down*
Tearro	*Feel*
Atee	*Fetch it*
Eneotto	*Fight*
Eiote	*Finiſh*
Mahora	*Fiſt (to open the)*
Panoo	*Float on the face in the water*
Eraire	To *Fly (as a bird)*
Hefeto	*Fold up*
Ehanne	*Friſk*
Hoatoo	*Give any thing*
Harre	*Go, or walk*
Erawa	*Go, or quit a place*
Haro	*Go, begone*
Atee	*Go fetch it*
Harawai	*Graſp*
Eannateheareе	*Grate the kernel of a cocoa-nut*
Werooa	*Grow*
Etoe, toowhe	*Grunt, or ſtrain*
Ewoua	*Pull the hair*
Teraee	*Hew*
Ehoona	*Hide a thing*
Tapea	*Hinder*
Elebaou, Wapoota	*Hit a mark*
Teehe	*Hiſs*
Mou	*Hold faſt*
Tooo	*Halloo*
Ateei te Efarre	*Keep at home*
Ewhae	*Inform*
Faeete	*Interrogate*
Ehoora, telawhy	*Invert*
Mahouta, Araire	*Jump, or leap*
Tahee	*Kick*
Emaa	*Kindle*
Ehoee	*Kiſs*
Eete	*Know*
Ehea	*Labour (work)*
Atta	*Laugh*
Ewheeoo	*Leave*
Erawai	*Lift a thing up*
Eteraha, Tepoo	*Lie down, or reſt one's ſelf.*
Atoonoo t'Eeewera	*Light, or kindle a fire*
Teepy	*Loll, or be lazy*
Ewhatoroo t'Arere	*Loll out the tongue*
Tapoone	*Look for a thing loſt*
Ehenaroo	*Love*
Hohora, te Moeya	*Make the bed*
Faeete	*Meaſure a thing*
Ewharidde	*Meet one*
Tootooe	*Melt or diſſolve a thing*
Oohappa	*Miſs a mark*
Apooepooe	*Mix things together*
Epoota	*Mince, or cut ſmall*
Etoohee	*Mock*
Hamamma	*Open (the mouth)*
Ewhaou	*Mutter or ſtammer*
Atouou	*Nod*
Tehaddoo	*Open*
Emaooma	*Overcome*
Ehapaoo	*Overturn*
Oupoupou, teaho	*Pant, or breathe quickly*
Whatea	To *Paddle a canoe's head to the right*
Wemma	*Ditto ditto to the left*
Atee, Eatee	*Peel the ſkin of a nut*
Ehee te mai my ty	*Pick, or chooſe*
Ooma	*Pinch*
Areete	*Pluck up*
Hoohootee	*Ditto hairs from the beard*
Eoowhee	*Plunge a thing in the water*
Manee	*Pour out*
Rorome	*Preſs, or ſqueeze*
Eawa, Erooy	*Puke*
Eroo, Eroo, Eharoo	*Purſue and overtake a perſon*
Toorace	*Puſh with the hand*

VERBS.	
Orno	*Put a thing away*
Epy	*Recline upon*
Epouie te-rya	*Reef a ſail*
Moomoomoo	*Rend*
Enoho	*Reſide*
Atoo	*Riſe up*
Ewhaoowhaoo	*Rive*
Eoome, Ehoe	*Row with oars*
Horoee	*Rub a thing*
Ewhano	*Sail*
Ooaoo	*Scrape a thing*
Eraraoo	*Scratch*
Oo, Paemee	*Search for a thing loſt*
Ehopoe	*Send*
Etooe	*Sew, or ſtring*
Eooawai	*Shake a thing*
Evaroo, Whanne, whanne	*Shave*
Atete	*Shiver*
Atomo	*Sink*
Anoho	*Sit down*
Teepy	*Ditto croſs legged*
Moe	*Sleep*
Moeroa	*Ditto (the long ſleep, or death)*
Tooroore, moe	*Ditto (when ſitting)*
Aheoi	*Smell*
Ehairoo	*Snatch*
Eparooparoe	*Soften*
Paraou	*Speak*
Emare	*Spill*
Tootooa	*Spit*
Hohora	*Spread out*
Nonee-e	*Squeeze hard*
Roromee	*Ditto gently*
Tatahy	*Stamp, or trample on a thing*
Atearenona	*Stand up*
Wahee, te dirre	*Startle*
Woreedo	*Steel*
Fou, fou	To *Stink, or ſmell ill*
Peero, peero	*Ditto (as excrement)*
Teeteeo	*Stool (to go to)*
Atoo	*Stop*
Oteote	*Suck (like a child)*
Aboone	*Surround*
Horome	*Swallow*
Ewhaapoo te maa	*Take care of the victuals*
Evevette	*Ditto off, or unlooſe*
Etooyaoo	*Ditto a friend by the hand*
Hahy, whatte	*Tear a thing*
Ewhaee te boa	*Tend hogs*
Taora	*Throw, or heave a thing*
Evaratowha	*Ditto (a lance)*
Amahooa	*Ditto (a ball)*
Harrewai	*Throw a thing away*
Myneena	*Tickle*
Ty	*Tie a knot*
Tatahe, Tatahy	*Trample upon*
Ooatitte, Eta	*Tremble or ſhake with cold*
Hoodeepeepe	*Turn about*
Ooahoe	*Turn*
Taweeree	*Twiſt a rope*
Eete	*Underſtand*
Taturra	*Undreſs*
Erooy	*Vomit*
Arra, arra. Era	*Wake (awake)*
Avouoia	*Walk out*
Hooapeepe	*Walk backwards and forwards*
Mare	*Waſh*
Eteae	*Watch*
Ha noa, a, taee	*Weep, or cry*
Evoee	*Whet, or ſharpen*
Mapoo	*Whiſtle*
Ohemoo	*Whiſper, or backbite*
Eamou, amoo	*Wink*
Horoee	*Wipe (clean a thing)*
Hamamma	*Yawn*

Particles.

Awai, Awai to Peeree-ai	*Admiration (an interjection)*
Neea, Tienneea	*Above*
Amaoo	*All*
Otahoi	*Alone*
Temoa	*Before (in oppoſition to behind)*
Feropoo	*Between*
Teidirro, Teediraro	*Below (in oppoſition to above)*
Oraro	*Ditto (underneath, or far below)*
Aoonai	*Day, to day*
Awaroo	*Eight*
Eha	*Four*
No, reira, No, reida	*From (there)*
No, waho-oo	*Ditto (without)*
No, mooa	*Ditto (before)*
Faeete	*Half*
Tohyto	*Immediately*
Bobo, A, Bobo	*Morrow (to)*
Abobo doora	*Ditto (the day after to)*
Poee, poee, addoo	*Ditto (the ſecond day after to)*
Aoone te Po	*Night (to day at night, or to night)*
Aeeva	*Nine*
Ayma. Yaiha. Aoure. Aee. Yehaeea	*No*
Atahai	*One*
Teharra	*Over (more than the quantity)*
Teiweho	*Out*
Epaha	*Perhaps*
A Heetoo	*Seven*
A Honoo	*Six*
Allaheueeai	*Surprize or admiration (an interjection)*
Ahooroo	*Ten*
Teraee	*There*
Toroo	*Three*
E Rooa	*Two*
Oraro	*Under*
Poupouee	*Under ſail*
Teero to	*Within*
Ay, ai	*Yes*
Ninnahay	*Yeſterday*
Erepo	*Yeſternight*

PHRASES AND SENTENCES.

Tarappe,
To beckon a perſon with the hand.
Taata horoaoee,
You are a generous man.
Heamanee,
Boy—a familiar way of ſpeaking.
Ateera,
Have done. It is enough. Or there is no more.
Fareewai,
To hide the face, as when aſhamed.
Ehoa,
Friend—(a way of addreſſing a ſtranger.)
Eapatte,
A ſalutation to a particular friend.
Atoobianoo,
Hammer it out.
Mamoo,
Hold your tongue, be ſilent, or quiet.
Tehanooe,
How do you do, or how is it with you?
Vaiheeo,
Keep it to yourſelf.
Ahooa,
My legs ache, or are tired.
Eoma te tareea,
To prick up the ears.
Harreneina,
To walk quickly.
Enara,
Shew it me.
Hoina,
Smell it.
Neeate otoo te parou no nona,
He ſpeaks not from his heart, his words are only on his lips.
Ateearenona,
Stand up.
Areea, Areeana,
Stay, or wait a little.
Taureaa,
Shall I throw it?
Popoeunoo,
A little time, a ſmall ſpace.
Tamoo,
A long time, a great while.
Areeana,
Wait, ſtay a little.
Woura, wooara,
Well recovered, or well eſcaped.
Poorotoo,
It is well, charming fine.
Ehara, Eharya, Yehaeea,
What's that? (inquiſitively).
Owy te aeeoa,
What do you call that? What is the name of it?
Wheea,
When? at what time?
Tehea,
Where is it?
Owy, tanna, Owy nana,
Who is that? what is he called?
Aeeoo,
Will I not do it? (expreſſed angrily)
Terra, tanne,
She is a married woman, ſhe has got another huſband.

EXPLANATION of the foregoing and following TABLES, ſo far as reſpects the pronunciation of the words.

Whatever rules may be laid down for pronouncing a living language, they can be of little ſervice to a perſon deſirous of ſpeaking the ſame with purity: that pronunciation being beſt, if not only attained, by living in the country, and a friendly communication with the natives. However, for the better underſtanding the language in theſe tables, we ſhall make a few obſervations on the powers of the vowels, viz.

A. is ſounded the ſame as A long in the Engliſh tongue, as in the word *angel*; *e* has three powers, and has the ſame ſimple ſounds as in the words *eloquence, bred, then.*

I. in the middle of words, ſounds like that vowel in the word *indolence.* Sometimes it is repreſented by *y.* And ſometimes by the proper diphthong *ee.*

O. is often expreſſed by *oo,* and ſounds the ſame as in the word *good.*

U. is generally expreſſed by *eu,* and has a long and ſhort ſound, as in the words *unity, umbrage.*

Y. In the middle or end of words, ſounds like *i,* as *by, my.* But before a vowel, or at the beginning of a word, it is a conſonant, as in the Engliſh words *yes, yell.*

The diphthongs *ee* and *oo* are proper, and make but one ſimple ſound.

TABLE

T A B L E II.

A Comparative VIEW, ſhewing by Inſpection the Difference between the LANGUAGES in the SOUTH SEA, from EASTER ISLAND to NEW CALEDONIA—WESTWARD.

ENGLISH.	OTAHEITE.	EASTER ISLAND.	The MARQUESAS.	AMSTERDAM.	NEW ZEALAND.	MALICOLLO.	TANNA.	NEW CALEDONIA.
A Bow	Efanna	——	——	Fanna	——	Nabrroos	Naſanga	——
Canoe	Evaa	Wagga	Evaa	——	Tawagga	——	——	Wang
Cocoa-nut	Aree	——	——	Eeoo	——	Naroo	Nabooy	Neeoo
Fowl	Moa	Moa	Moa	——	——	Moeroo	——	——
Hog	Boa	——	Booa	Booacka	——	Brroos	Booga	——
Man	Taata	Papa	Teete	——	——	Barang	Naroomaan	——
Woman	Waheine	——	Veheene	——	——	Rabin	Naibraan	Tama
The Eye	Matta	Matta	Matta	Matta	Matta	Maitang	Naneemaiuk	Teevein
Ear	Tareea	Tareean	Booeena	——	Tareeka	Talingan	Feeneeenguk	Gaineeng
Hand	Ereema	Reema	Eoomy	Ereema	Reenga	——	——	——
Head	Oopo	Aopo	——	——	Takaopo	Baſaine	Noogwanaium	Garmoing
Water	Avay	Evy	——	——	——	Ergoar	——	Ooe
Rain	Eooa	Ooa	——	——	——	——	Namawar	Ooe
Yams	Eoohe	Oohe	——	Oofe	——	Nanram	Oofe	Oobe
Fiſh	Eya	Eeka	——	Eeka	Eeka	Namoo	——	——
Cloth	Ahoo	Ahoo	Ahoo	Babbalanga	Kakahoo	——	Tanaree	Hamban
Bread-fruit	Ooroo	——	Maiee	——	——	Borabe	Tagooroo	——
Punctuation	Tatou	——	Epatoo	Tatou	Moko	——	——	Gan, gan, galang
I, myſelf	Wou, ou	——	Wou	——	Ou	——	——	——
You	Oe	——	Oe	——	——	——	——	——
To drink	Aynoo	Aeenoo	Aeenoo	——	——	Noaee	Nooee	Oodoo
Laugh	Atta	——	——	——	Katta	——	Haariſh	Ap, Gyeap
Yes	Ai	——	——	Eeo	Ai	——	Eeo	Eeo, oe Elo
No	Ayma	Eiſa	——	Eeſha	Kaoure	Taep	Eſa	Eeva
NUMERALS.								
One	A Tahay	Kattahaee	Attahaee	Tahaee	——	Tſeekaee	Reedee	Wageeaing
Two	E Rooa	Rooa	Aooa	Eooa	——	Ery	Karoo	Waroo
Three	Toroo	Toroo	Atoroo	Toroo	——	Erei	Kahar	Wateeen
Four	A Haa	Haa, Faa	Afaa	Afaa	——	Ebats	Kaphar	Wambeek
Five	E Reema	Reema	Aeema	Neema	——	Ereem	Kreerum	Wannim
Six	Aono	Honoo	Aono	——	——	Tſookaee	Mareedee	Wannimgeeek
Seven	A Heitoo	Heedoo	Awheetoo	——	——	Gooy	Makaroo	Wannimnoo
Eight	Awaroo	Varoo	Awaoo	——	——	Hoorey	Makahar	Wannimgain
Nine	Aeeva	Heeva	Aeeva	——	——	Goodbats	Makaiphar	Wannimbaeck

LIST of the BARK ENDEAVOUR's OFFICERS and PASSENGERS in Capt. COOK's FIRST VOYAGE round the WORLD.

OFFICERS, &c.	NAMES.	*Their ſubſequent Fortunes, or what became of them.*
Commander,	*Capt. James Cook,*	Killed on his third voyage, then a Poſt-captain.
	2d *Lieutenant Zachariah Hicks,*	Died homeward bound, after leaving St. Helena.
	*3d *Lieutenant John Gore,*	Now a Poſt captain in Greenwich-hoſpital.
Maſter,	*Robert Molineux,*	Died homeward bound, after leaving the Cape of Good Hope.
Boatſwain,	*John Gatheray,*	Died of a flux ſhortly after leaving Batavia.
Carpenter,	*William Satterly,*	Ditto.
Cook,	*John Thomſon,*	Ditto.
Gunner,	*Stephen Forwood,*	Now or lately gunner of the Achilles, of 64 guns.
Surgeon,	*William Brougham Monkhouſe,*	Died aſhore at Batavia.
Maſter's Mate,	*Charles Clerke,*	Died on the fourth voyage, a maſter and commander.
Ditto,	*Richard Pickerſgill,*	A lieutenant of the royal navy, drowned by accident in the Thames.
Ditto,	*Alexander Weir,*	Drowned outward bound at Madeira.
Midſhipman,	*John William Bootie,*	Died of a flux after leaving Batavia.
Ditto,	*Jonathan Monkhouſe,*	Ditto.
Ditto,	*Patrick Saunders,*	Left the ſhip at Batavia, and died there ſoon after.
Ditto,	*James Magra,* alias *James Maria Matra,*	Since conſul of the Canary Iſlands.
Ditto,	*Francis Wilkinſon,*	Died at Deptford ſoon after his return.
Ditto,	*Iſaac George Manley,*	A lieutenant of the royal navy.
Surgeon's Mate,	*William Perry,*	Navy ſurgeon, loſt on Scilly, in the Nancy Packet from India.
Captain's Clerk,	*Richard Orton,*	A purſer of the royal navy.
Ship's or Purſer's Steward,	*William Dawſon,*	Ditto.
Serjeant of Marines,	*John Edgecumbe,*	Now a captain.

PASSENGERS.

	Joſeph Banks, Eſq;	The preſent preſident of the Royal Society, now Sir Joſeph.
	Dr. Daniel Solander,	Died lately in London.
Draughtſmen of Mr. Banks,	*Herman Diedrich Sporeing,*	A Sweed, died of a flux after leaving Batavia.
	Sydney Parkinſon,	A Quaker, ditto.
	—— Buchan	Died, after a ſhort illneſs, at Otaheite, of fatigue.
Aſtronomer,	*Charles Green,*	Died of an inverted gout, after leaving Batavia.

* Capt. Gore has compleated four Voyages round the World, beſides ſerving long in the former war on board the Windſor, &c. &c.

LIST of the SLOOP RESOLUTION's OFFICERS and MEN, in Capt. COOK's SECOND VOYAGE round the WORLD.

THE RESOLUTION.

OFFICERS, &c.	NAMES.
Captain,	James Cook.
Lieutenants,	Richard Pickerſgill.
	Robert P. Cooper.
	Charles Clerke.
Maſter,	Joſeph Gilbert.
Boatſwain,	James Gray.
Carpenter,	James Wallis.
Gunner,	Robert Anderſon.
Surgeon,	James Patten.
Maſter's Mates	3
Midſhipmen	6
Surgeon's Mates	2
Captain's Clerk	1
Aſſiſtant,	Hogg.
Maſter at Arms	1

Corporal	1
Armourer	1
Mate	1
Sail-maker	1
Mate	1
Boatſwain's Mates	3
Carpenter's Mates	3
Gunner's Mates	2
Carpenter's Crew	4
Cook	1
Mate	1
Quarter Maſters	6
Able Seamen	45
Lieutenant of Marines,	John Edgecumbe.
Serjeant	1
Corporals	2
Drummer	1
Privates	15

List of the Adventure's Officers and Men in Capt. Cook's Second Voyage Round the World.

THE ADVENTURE.

Officers, &c.	Names.
Captain,	Tobias Furneaux.
Lieutenants,	Arthur Kemp. Joſeph Shank.
Maſter,	Feter Fannin.
Boatſwain,	Edward Johns.
Carpenter,	William Offord.
Gunner,	Andrew Gloag.
Surgeon,	Thomas Andrews.
Maſter's Mates,	2
Midſhipmen,	4
Surgeon's Mate,	2
Captain's Clerk,	1
Maſter at Arms,	1
Corporal,	1
Armourer	1
Mate	1
Sail-maker	1
Mate	1
Boatſwain's Mates	2
Carpenter's Mates	2
Gunner's Mate	1
Carpenter's Crew	4
Cook	1
Mate	1
Quarter Maſters	4
Able Seamen	33
Lieutenant of Marines	James Scott
Serjeant	1
Corporal	1
Drummer	1
Privates	8

*** Having prepared a *Complete Narrative* (from *Duplicates* of the *Original Journals* of *ſeveral Officers*, who ſailed in the *Reſolution*, when ſhe was deſtined to explore the *Pacific Ocean*) of *Capt.* Cook's Third and Last Voyage, the *Editors* of this *Complete* COLLECTION of *Remarkable* Voyages round the World, thought it their duty to *Compare* it with all the *different accounts* hitherto publiſhed of that *Celebrated Voyage*, merely to correct any circumſtance which might have been placed in various points of view by the ſeveral writers. The *different relations* of this Voyage, as already given to the public, by *Evans*, *Newbery*, *Moore*, *Ellis*, *Jones*, *King*, &c. &c. together with *thoſe publiſhed* in *Magazines* and *News-papers*, as well as the Editions *publiſhed by*, and *dedicated* to the Lords of the *Admiralty*, have been carefully conſulted, and have not only been found to *contradict each other very materially*, but alſo to *vary* in ſome *very important points* from the *manuſcripts* and *materials*, which have furniſhed *our own account*.—We think it neceſſary therefore to beſtow *ſome time*, and *conſiderable pains*, to *inveſtigate* the *inconſiſtencies* here alluded to, in order that we may be enabled to preſent to our very *numerous ſubſcribers*, and the Public, (in the *courſe* of *this valuable work*) what we pledged ourſelves to do in our Propoſals, viz. to give a *New*, *authentic*, *full*, and *complete* Account of Cook's Last Voyage to the *Pacific Ocean*, and which will contain *all* the *facts*, *incidents*, *and circumſtances*, related in the moſt *ſatisfactory manner*. In the mean time, nothing ſhall be wanting to render this work *abſolutely the beſt extant*; all the large ſplendid *Copper-plates*, *Maps*, *Charts*, &c. will be delivered as they are received from the ſeveral *Engravers*, and *directions* for their being placed right will be given in the laſt number. The *grand General Chart* of the *World* is executed with the *utmoſt accuracy* and will be publiſhed without any unneceſſary delay, ſhewing *Capt. Cook*'s different *routs* in his *Three ſucceſſive voyages*, and all his *Diſcoveries* in one point of view. Our numerous readers will alſo ſhortly be preſented with a *large Folio Print*, finely engraved, repreſenting the *Death of Capt.* Cook. We ſhall now proceed to give a *new* and *accurate Account* of Commodore Byron's Voyage *Round the World*, as it was the *firſt* undertaken and performed during the *preſent reign*; after which we intend to record thoſe of Wallis, Carteret, &c. and the public may depend, that the only reaſon we have not given Cook's Third Voyage in this part of our Collection, is, that we may be able to give a *more full* and *ſatisfactory account* of that *Celebrated Voyage*, than has *ever been publiſhed* by any perſon or perſons whatever; and, after having performed our arduous taſk, we doubt not but our Subſcribers, and the Public at large, will readily acknowledge, that by our care and circumſpection, we ſhall have detected numerous falſities which have been foiſted on the Public, and repreſented *facts* and *circumſtances* as they *really happened* in the courſe of the reſpective Voyages, &c.

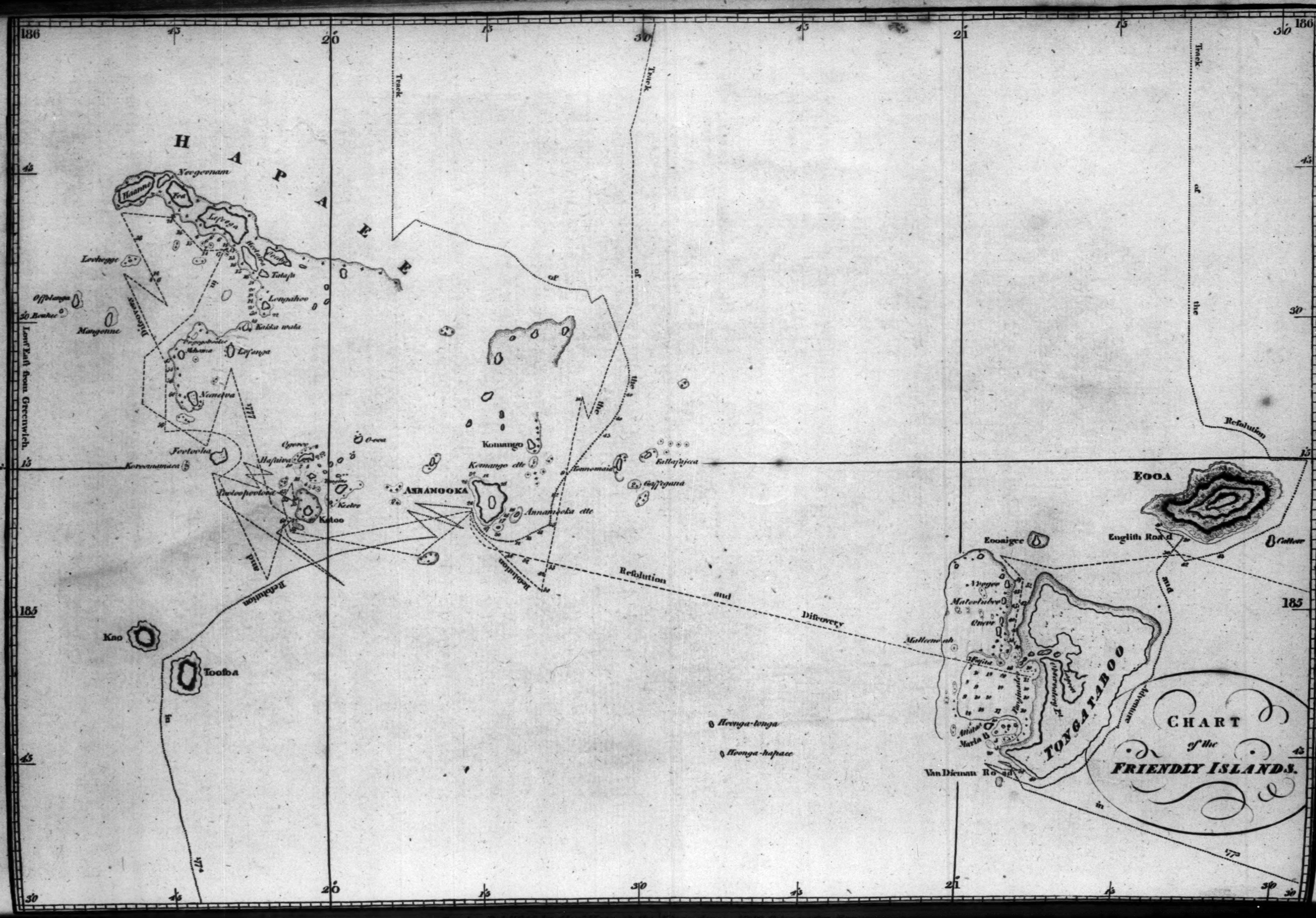

HAPAEE
Neegeenam
Haanno
Foa
Lefooga
Hoolaiva
Footoo
Tatafa
Leeheggy
Offolanga
Boubee
Mangonne
Longaheo
Kokka wala
Lefanga
Noomooka
Nomooka
Discovery
in
1777
Footooha
Koreeanoumaua
Ogowy
Haafuiva
Toolooperiwa
Kotoo
Keotoo
O-eea
and
Resolution
Kao
Tootoa
in
1774
Track
of
the
ANNAMOOKA
Komango
Komango ette
Annamooka ette
Tonnomaia
Kallaffajeea
Gaffogana
Resolution
and
Discovery
Hoonga-tonga
Hoonga-hapaee
Malleeno ab
Eooaigee
Nugeer
Malerlubee
Onevee
Fofua
Pangimodee
Observatory Pt
Lagoon
Attatas
Maria B
Van Dieman Road
TONGATABOO
Adventure
in
1773
EOOA
English Road
Coltar
and
Track
of
the
Resolution
Long. East from Greenwich.
186
185
20
21
15
30
45

CHART
of the
FRIENDLY ISLANDS.

BRITISH
7 FE 90
MUSEUM

A
NEW, AUTHENTIC, and COMPLETE ACCOUNT and NARRATIVE, of
A VOYAGE Round the WORLD,
UNDERTAKEN AND PERFORMED
By the Hon. Commodore (now Admiral) BYRON,
In his Majeſty's Ship the DOLPHIN, accompanied by
Capt. MOUAT, in the TAMAR Sloop.
UNDERTAKEN PRINCIPALLY
For making Diſcoveries in the SOUTHERN OCEAN, between the Cape of GOOD HOPE,
and the MAGELLANIC STRAITS;

And Containing, among a Variety of other intereſting Particulars,

A genuine Account of the Straits of Magellan, and of the gigantic race of People called Patagonians; alſo a Survey of ſeveral Iſlands diſcovered in the Southern Hemiſphere; together with a minute, circumſtantial, and full Deſcription of the ſeveral Places, People, Animals, Vegetables, and Natural Curioſities, diſcovered and ſeen in the Courſe of this remarkable Voyage; which was begun on the 3d of July, 1764, and completed the 9th of May, 1766, containing a Period of more than Twenty-two Months, and included in the Years 1764, 1765, and 1766.

CHAP. I.

Extraordinary preparations made, and precautions uſed, for this voyage—Names of the two ſhips, number of men, &c.—Circumſtances previous to hoiſting the broad pendant, and our ſetting ſail—The Dolphin takes in her guns at Long Reach, and is there joined by the Tamar Frigate—They ſail from the Downs, and arrive at Plymouth—Anchor in the Sound—Paſſage from Plymouth to Madeira—Obſervations on this iſland—Run from hence to St. Jago, one of the Cape de Verd Iſlands, and anchor in Port Praya—Obſervations on the iſland and port—They make the coaſt of Brazil, and enter the harbour of Rio de Janeiro—Obſervations—Departure from this port, bound, as we thought, to the Eaſt Indies—Orders made known, which were to go on diſcoveries to the South Sea—The Dolphin and Tamar make Cape Blanco, Penguin Iſle, and the harbour of Port Deſire—The Dolphin in danger of being loſt at this laſt place—Obſervations on the harbour and adjacent country—Departure from Port Deſire in ſearch of Pepy's Iſland—Anchor on the coaſt of Patagonia, ten leagues within the mouth of the Straits of Magellan—An account of the extraordinary ſtature of ſome of the inhabitants ſeen there—Proceed up the Straits of Magellan to Port Famine—An account of the harbour, coaſt, and inhabitants—A deſcription of the country, particularly the woods, and the beautiful Sedger—Favourable and pleaſing circumſtances during our ſtay here.

A. D. 1764. HIS preſent Majeſty, very early in life formed a plan for diſtinguiſhing his reign, by patronizing the proſecution of New Diſcoveries in the unknown regions of the Southern Hemiſphere; and we have been told, that he declared his intention, ſoon after he came to the crown, of appropriating a great part of his revenue for that particular purpoſe. In 1764, orders were given for carrying this laudable deſign into execution; in conſequence of which, on the 18th of April, preparations were made to fit out the Dolphin ſhip of war, and the Tamar frigate, for a ſuppoſed voyage to the Eaſt Indies. The Dolphin was a ſixth rate, mounting 24 guns, and had three lieutenants, 37 petty officers, and 150 ſeamen on board; the Tamar mounted 16 guns, having on board three lieutenants, 22 petty officers, and 90 ſeamen. The honourable Commodore (now Admiral) Byron was appointed commander in chief, in the Dolphin, and the command, under him, of the frigate, was given to Capt. Mouat. Both of theſe veſſels were fitted out for the purpoſe of making diſcoveries of countries hitherto unknown, within the high ſouthern latitudes, convenient for navigation, and in climates adapted to the production of commodities uſeful in commerce, particularly in the Atlantic Ocean, between the Cape of Good Hope, and the Straits of Magellan. The inſtruction from the Admiralty-board to the commodore, likewiſe directed him to make an accurate ſurvey of Pepy's Iſland, and thoſe which had been named by Sir John Narborough, Faulkland's Iſlands, in honour of lord Faulkland; which, though firſt diſcovered, and ſince viſited by Britiſh navigators, had never been ſufficiently examined, ſo as that an accurate judgement might be formed of their coaſts, natives and productions. Great care was taken, and extraordinary precautions uſed, in preparing for this voyage. The bottom of the Dolphin was ſheathed with copper; as were likewiſe the braces and pintles for the uſe of the rudder, which was the firſt experiment of the kind, that had ever been made on any veſſel. On the 14th of May, being ready for ſea, ſhe left the dock, when we received a number of men from the old hulks, which had been for ſome time uſed to receive on board materials for the uſe of the ſhip. The next day we got in our maſts, and with all expedition poſſible, began to put up the rigging; the greateſt part of the hands being now, from the time of her leaving the dock, principally employed in receiving the ſtores, and in ſhipping the ableſt ſeamen, till the 9th of June, when we ſlipt our mooring, and ſailed for Long Reach, where we received our guns, and were joined by our intended conſort, the Tamar frigate.

On the 14th, we received on board a pilot for the Downs, and at ſix o'clock, A. M. weighed anchor with little wind, and with our boats a-head: our draught of water forward being then 15 feet ſix inches, and abaft 14 feet 6 inches. At ſeven o'clock the Dolphin ſtriking the bottom, ſwung round; however, the ground being very muddy, it ſoon gave way, and this accident was attended with no other conſequence, than her lying in the mud about two hours. This circumſtance at our firſt ſetting out, which occaſioned only a ſmall delay, inſtead of checking the ardour of our men, ſerved only to inſpire them with hopes of meeting with fewer croſſes in the proſecution of their voyage. On the 16th we anchored in the Downs, and moored the ſhip. During our continuance here, we ſent the pilot on ſhore, and received from Deal a large twelve-oared barge, for the ſervice of our ſhip, with a quantity of freſh beef and greens. This day the Tamar paſſed us for Plymouth, and on the following day we received the honourable Capt. Byron on board.

Thurſday the 21ſt, we weighed and ſailed from the Downs; and in the night had a violent ſquall of wind, which, at that ſeaſon of the year might be reckoned rather uncommon. On the 22nd, at eight o'clock, A. M. we anchored in Plymouth Sound, and ſaluted the admiral with 13 guns; and at nine, having received a pilot on board, ſailed into Hamoaze, and laſhed along ſide the Sheer Hulk. As the Dolphin had taken the ground, the men on board were, according to orders, employed in getting out the guns and booms for docking; it being thought adviſeable to examine if ſhe had ſuſtained any damage, when it appeared, that the ſhip had happily not received any hurt. On the 28th ſhe came out of dock, and having replaced her guns and ſtores, we ſailed into the ſound, where we moored, and found the Tamar lying between the iſland and the main, having unhung her rudder, to repair ſome ſmall damage ſhe had ſuſtained. While we remained at Plymouth, our men received two months pay advance, in order to enable them to purchaſe neceſſaries; a privilege granted to all his Majeſty's ſhips bound to diſtant ports; at which time the inhabitants on ſhore have the liberty of coming on board to ſell them ſhirts, jackets, and trowſers, which are termed ſlops. After a ſtay of four days, the honourable John Byron, our Commodore, hoiſted his broad pendant, he being, as was reported, appointed commander in chief of all his Majeſty's ſhips in the Eaſt Indies. Immediately upon this a ſignal was made for ſailing, by firing a gun, and looſing our top ſails, which being ſet, and another gun fired, we took our departure from Plymouth, on the 3d of July, having his Majeſty's frigate the Tamar in company.

On Wedneſday the 4th of July, we ſhaped our courſe, with a fine breeze, for the iſland of Madeira, during which run, we had the vexation of obſerving, that our conſort was a very heavy ſailer. On Thurſday the 12th, in the evening, we deſcried the rocks near Madeira, called the Deſerts, from their deſolate appearance; and on the 13th we came to anchor in Funchiale Bay; ſo named from the great abundance of a beautiful kind of fennel that grows on the ſhore. It is on the ſouth part of the iſland, and at the bottom is the city of the ſame name, ſeated on a ſmall plain, from which three rivers run into the ſea, forming an iſland called Loo Rock, it being entirely barren. Upon this is placed a caſtle, and the town is alſo defended by a high wall, and a battery of cannon. This iſland is compoſed of one continued hill, of a conſiderable height, extending from eaſt to weſt; the declivity of which on the ſouth ſide is interſperſed with vineyards; and in the midſt of this ſlope are the country-ſeats of the merchants, which add greatly to the beauty of the proſpect. The air is ſo temperate, that the inhabitants feel little inconvenience from heat and cold, there being here a perpetual ſpring, which produces bloſſoms and fruit throughout the year. The ſoil is ſo fertile, that it produces more corn than any of the adjacent iſlands, of double the extent. The graſs ſhoots up ſo high, that they are obliged to burn it; and when they plant ſugar canes in the aſhes, in ſix months time they will produce a conſiderable quantity of ſugar. The iſland abounds with fine cedar-trees, and almoſt all kinds of rich fruits, particularly grapes, as large as our common plumbs; but all the fine fruits are too luſcious to be eaten in any great quantities. The natives are ſaid to make the beſt ſweet-meats in the world: they excel too in preſerving oranges, as alſo in making marmalades and perfumed paſtes. The ſugar made here is not only remarkably fine, but has the ſmell of violets; and the wine of this iſland will keep better in long voyages and in hot countries, than that of any other place in the known world, on which account great quantities of it are bought up for the uſe of ſhips, and exported to the Weſt Indies. Their convents have a venerable appearance, from their age and ſtructure. Some of the nuns belonging to them are handſome, and, at particular hours, have the liberty of converſing with ſtrangers, through a double barred grate. Their chief employment conſiſts in making curious flowers of all ſorts, little baſkets, and other trinkets, in needlework, which they ſell to their viſitors, and the money is appropriated to the uſe of the convents. Notwithſtanding the extraordinary fertility of the iſland, proviſions of all kinds are very dear, the inhabitants living chiefly on fruit and roots. There are ſome hogs and fowls, but they cannot be procured without great difficulty, except by way of exchange for old cloaths, which, in whatever condition, or of whatever kind, are eagerly ſought after by the poor among the natives. While we continued here, we were ſupplied with freſh beef, very indifferent of the kind, as their bullocks, either from want of ſweet paſture, or from nature, are both lean, and under the common ſize. On our arrival in the road of Funchiale, we found the Ferrit and Crown ſloop lying at anchor, who ſaluted our Commodore on his hoiſting the broad pendant, the fort alſo returned our ſalute with eleven guns: and on the 14th, Commodore Byron waited on the governor, by whom he was received with great politeneſs; and on the day following the governor returned his viſit at the houſe of the conſul. Having taking in our water, wine, and other refreſhments, for the uſe of both the ſhips companies, on the 19th we began to prepare for proceeding on our voyage.

On Friday the 20th, we took leave of the governor by firing eleven guns, which compliment he returned from the citadel; and at three o'clock, A. M. we weighed anchor and ſet ſail, in company with his Majeſty's ſhips the Crown, Ferrit and Tamar. It is obſervable, that in leaving this iſland ſhips are in a manner becalmed, till they get four or five leagues to the leeward; where they are ſure to find a briſk trading wind. The next day we made the iſland of Palma, one of the Canaries. We now parted company with the Crown and Ferrit, and, on the 22d, ſpoke with his Majeſty's ſhip Liverpool from the Eaſt Indies, by whom we ſent letters to England. This day we examined our water-caſks, and concluded we were under a neceſſity to touch at one of the Cape de Verd iſlands for a freſh ſupply. On the 26th, our water being foul and ſtinking, we were obliged to have recourſe to a kind of ventilator, which forced the air through the water in a continued ſtream, whereby it was purified. On the 27th, in the morning, we made the iſle of Sal, one of the Cape de Verds, when obſerving ſeveral turtles on the ſurface of the ſea, we hoiſted out our boats, in order to ſtrike ſome of them, but they all diſappeared before our people were within reach of them. Indeed we had little chance of catching any ſorts of fiſh, for none of the finny tribe would come near the ſhip, becauſe ſhe was ſheathed with copper.

On Monday the 30th, at two o'clock P. M. we ſaw the iſland of St. Jago; and at three came to an anchor, about a mile from the ſhore, in the bay called Port Praya, in nine fathoms water, having ſaluted a ſmall fortification belonging to the Portugueſe, who returned the compliment. At this time it was near the rainy ſeaſon, which, when ſet in, renders this harbour very unſafe; for a rolling ſwell from the ſouthward makes a frightful ſurf on the ſhore, and every hour a tornado may be expected, which at times is very furious, and may produce fatal conſequences to ſhipping; on which account no veſſel comes here after the 15th of Auguſt, till the rainy ſeaſon is over, which is in the month of November. St. Jago is the largeſt and moſt fruitful of all the Cape de Verd Iſlands; and notwithſtanding its being rocky and mountainous, the valleys not only produce Indian corn, but fruits of various kinds, and plenty of cotton. The iſland has four towns, beſides Ribeira Grande, the capital, in which reſides the governor, Oviodone, and biſhop. Moſt of the prieſts are negroes, as indeed are far the greateſt part of the inhabitants, there being only about three whites to forty blacks, who have ſcarce cloaths ſufficient to cover their nakedneſs. There are but few ſoldiers, and thoſe, to outward appearance, are moſt indigent wretches. A ſhip no ſooner arrives, than the natives flock from all parts of the iſland with different kinds of proviſions; and theſe they exchange for old cloaths, particularly black, on which they ſet the higheſt value, and for a mere trifle of that kind, you may be provided with a ſufficient quantity of turkeys, geeſe, fruit, and other neceſſary articles of ſea-ſtock. But, however wretched theſe people may appear at the firſt view, they live in the greateſt plenty, and from the fertility of the ſoil, enjoy not only the neceſſaries, but what in other places would be eſteemed the luxuries of life. Having by this time got on board a ſupply of water, freſh proviſions, and fruit, we unmoored, ſignal having been made for our departure.

On Thurſday, the 2nd of Auguſt, we got under ſail, and put to ſea, with the Tamar in company. Soon after, the ſcorching heat, and unceaſing rain, affected the health of our crew, many of whom began to fall down in fevers, notwithſtanding the commodore took the utmoſt care to make the men, who were wet, ſhift themſelves, before they laid down to ſleep. On the 8th we loſt a good deal of way, by ſhortening ſail till the Tamar came up, who had her topſail yard carried away. In theſe hot latitudes, ſhips generally take fiſh in plenty, but we were not able to catch one, the cauſe of which diſappointment, we have already noticed.

On Thurſday, the 11th of September, we deſcried Cape Frio, on the coaſt of Brazil, in the 23d degree of ſouth latitude, and the 42nd deg. 20 min. W. longitude from London. The next day, about noon, we entered the harbour of Rio de Janeiro, and anchored in eighteen fathoms water; fort St. Acrouſe bearing S. E. half S. a remarkable peak, in the form of a ſugar-loaf, preſenting itſelf to our view on the larboard ſide, at the ſouth by eaſt, and Snake's Iſland, which is the largeſt in the harbour, appearing cloſe by the town at W. N. W. and the north end of the town at W. half N. On the 14th, we received a pilot on board, and ran in between the iſland and main, not a quarter of a mile from the ſhore, and at noon ſaluted the citadel with eleven guns, which were immediately returned. Our firſt care was to get on board freſh proviſions for the ſhips companies, which began to be in great want of them, eſpecially of greens, the ſcurvy having already made its appearance among the men on board. On the 19th, our Commodore viſited the governor, who received him in ſtate, putting the guard under arms; the nobility conducted him to the viceroy's palace, while 15 guns were fired in honour of the Britiſh flag: his excellency afterwards returned the viſit, and was received by the Commodore on board the Dolphin, in a manner ſuitable to his high rank. On this occaſion all hands manned the ſhip, ſtanding on the yards with their arms extended juſt to touch each other; and a ſalute was given with 15 guns, which was returned by an equal number from the citadel. On the 9th of October, Lord Clive, in the Kent Indiaman, paid Commodore Byron a viſit, when he likewiſe received the ſame compliment, both at his coming on board, and his going away. The ſame day a pilot came on board to conduct us into the road, and at ſix o'clock P. M. we weighed, and ſet our ſails; but having little wind, we were obliged to come again to an anchor, and wait till the next morning, during which time we had an opportunity of making a few obſervations on the harbour, which ſeems capable of receiving an hundred ſail of ſhips in good anchorage, with ſufficient room for them to ride in ſafety. The town of Rio de Janeiro is commodiouſly ſeated at the back of Snake's iſland, which being not above five hundred yards from it, commands, from the fortifications erected on it, every thing that can poſſibly come to annoy the town; and there are ſeveral other iſlands at the entrance fortified with different batteries. Theſe fortifications appear ſo formidable in the eyes of the Portugueſe, that they are ſo vain as to think, the whole power of Europe would not be ſufficient to deprive them of their poſſeſſion; yet we may ſafely affirm, that ſix ſail of our men of war of the line would be able to deſtroy all their batteries in a few hours.

From the 15th of September to the 18th of October, our men were employed in watering, wooding, caulking, &c. We had ſix Portugueſe caulkers to aſſiſt our carpenter, who were paid at the rate of ſix ſhillings ſterling per diem, though it is certain, that one of our Engliſh caulkers would do as much in one day, as they could do in three; but though ſlow and inactive, they perform their work very completely. In this port the air is refreſhed by a conſtant ſucceſſion of land and ſea-breezes; the former comes in the morning, and continues till towards one o'clock, and ſoon after is regularly ſucceeded by a ſtrong ſea-breeze. Theſe contribute to render the port very healthy and pleaſant, and are juſtly eſteemed ſo ſalutary, that the negroes term the ſea-breeze the Doctor. The ſoil of Brazil is generally fertile, it producing a variety of lofty trees fit for any uſe, many of them unknown in Europe; and the woods abound with rich fruits, among which are a conſiderable number that are neither known in Europe, nor in any parts of America. Oranges and lemons grow here in as great plenty, as nuts in our woods in England. The ſugar-cane flouriſhes here in the utmoſt perfection, and great quantities of excellent ſugar, indigo, and cotton, are exported from hence into Europe. Great quantities of gold are alſo found by the ſlaves, numbers of whom are employed in ſearching for it in gullies of torrents, and at the bottom of rivers; and this country is alſo famous for its diamonds. With reſpect to the animals of Brazil, all the horſes, cows, dogs and cats are ſaid to have been brought from Europe: among thoſe natural to the country are a great variety of monkeys, Peruvian ſheep, deer and hares; the racoon, the armadillo, the flying ſquirrel, the guano, the opoſſum, the ant-bear, and the ſloth. Among the fowls are many parrots, parroquets, macaws, and other birds remarkable for the beauty of their plumage; with a great variety of ſinging birds, and ſeveral ſpecies of wild geeſe, wild ducks, common poultry, partridges, wood-pigeons and curliews. However, the country of Brazil is no leſs remarkable for the multitude, the variety, and incredible ſize of its ſnakes, and other venomous reptiles. In Rio de Janeiro the viceroy is inveſted with the ſame power over the natives, as the king of Portugal enjoys over his ſubjects in Liſbon. The inhabitants, who are of a brown complexion, have a great number of negro ſlaves, which they purchaſe in the public markets, where they are chained two and two together, and generally driven round the town to be expoſed to view. The women here are very ſwarthy, and have diſagreeable features; but thoſe of a ſuperior rank are ſeldom ſeen, as they are never ſuffered to go out of doors but by night. The Portugueſe are naturally of ſo jealous a diſpoſition, that ſtrangers, merely by looking at their women incur their reſentment, and are in danger of ſuffering by that ſpirit of revenge, which univerſally prevails in this country; on which account the women are obliged to be always on their guard. Indeed, they here ſeldom enter upon matrimony; but when tired of each other, they ſeparate by mutual conſent, and then endeavour to find out another paramour to ſupply the place of the former. As ſoon as the evening approaches, the Portugueſe of this city go their rounds, and enter upon ſcenes of debauchery, which we may venture to affirm are as frequent and flagitious as thoſe between the inhabitants of Liſbon. Rio de Janeiro is ſeated near the ſide of a number of high hills, from whence to the ſouthward is a very large aqueduct, which ſupplies the whole town with water. This aqueduct, which extends acroſs a deep valley, conſiſts of above fifty arches placed in two rows, one upon another, and in ſome parts riſe upwards of a hundred yards from the bottom of the valley. By this means the water is conveyed into two fountains, from whence the inhabitants fetch all they want. Theſe ſtand oppoſite the viceroy's palace, which is a ſtately ſtone building, and the only one in the whole city that has windows; the other houſes in the town having only lattices. At the further end of the palace ſtands the jail for criminals, which from its ſtructure, and the multiplicity of its iron grates, is far from adding any beauty to the palace, to which it joins. The churches and the convents are extremely magnificent, and calculated to ſtrike the paſſions of the people who reſort to them. On the altar pieces, and other parts of thoſe ſtructures, are many fine figures of our Saviour, the Virgin Mary, the Apoſtles, and other ſaints. In theſe churches a great number of friars and monks of different orders are conſtantly employed to celebrate maſs to as many as happen to aſſemble; the churches being always open, and wax tapers kept continually burning; whence, in paſſing by theſe ſtructures, all thoſe of their perſuaſion pay due reverence, by pulling off their hats, and croſſing themſelves, with every other token of reſpect. In almoſt every corner of the ſtreets are niches, in ſome of which are placed crucifixes, and in others ſome ſaint, dreſſed in linen and ſilk, or other ſtuffs. The cathedral and Jeſuits college, which are the moſt magnificent buildings in this city, may be ſeen from the harbour, and form an agreeable diſtant proſpect. A conſiderable trade is carried on here by a number of merchants who reſide in the city. Every year at leaſt forty or fifty ſail of ſhips come from Liſbon, and different parts of the Brazils, beſides ſome ſhips that trade to Africa, and the ſmall craft that frequent the neighbouring ports. The European ſhips bring leather, linen, and woollen cloths, coarſe and fine bays, ſerges, hats, ſtockings, thread, biſcuit, iron, hardware, pewter, and all kinds of kitchen furniture, with other commodities; and in return carry from thence ſugar, tobacco, ſnuff, braſil, and other dying and medicinal woods, fuſtic, raw hides, train oil, &c. With reſpect to their food, it muſt be acknowledged, that their beef is very indifferent, as through the exceſſive heat of the weather, they are obliged to eat it ſoon after killing, which is performed in the following manner: they drive a number of bullocks into an incloſed place, and then throwing a rope over that they intend to kill, take him out from among the reſt, and confine his head down by means of a rope, when a negro butcher coming behind him cuts the hamſtrings of his hind legs, and when the beaſt falls, he ſticks a knife in his head exactly between his horns. Theſe cattle are ſo wild and unmanageable, that few, except negro butchers, chuſe to encounter them; and yet they are ſo ſmall, that when the ſkin, offal, &c. are taken away, they in general do not weigh more than two hundred and a half. Such are the ingenious remarks of our journaliſt, who was an officer on board the Dolphin; and our readers will, perhaps, remember, that we have given a full and complete account of the Brazils, and Rio de Janeiro, in the 7th and ſome of the following pages of this work.

While we continued at the Brazils, yams were ſerved to the ſhip's company inſtead of bread, at two pounds a day each man: but we procured ſugar, tobacco, and other commodities at a very reaſonable price. Fowls and hogs are however very dear, the chief food of the negroes being fiſh and Indian corn, the latter of which they cultivate in great quantities, and plenty of the former they catch out at ſea, they having a conſiderable number of fiſhing canoes, in which they go out in the morning, aſſiſted by the land-breeze, which, as we have before obſerved, riſes regularly at that time, and return in the evening with the ſea-breeze, which is no leſs invariable. In this port they have not only a yard for building ſhips, but a convenient iſland, where they can heave down a veſſel of any ſize. A Spaniſh South-ſeaman, was obliged to put into this port, while we lay here, in order to heave down, and repair the damage ſhe had ſuſtained. During our ſtay, Commodore Byron lived on ſhore, having a commodious houſe ſituated on the top of a hill to the northward, where the viceroy and others paid him frequent viſits, and ſhewed him all the reſpect, that a ſtranger of his rank could poſſibly claim. The following piece of information may be of ſervice to future navigators, particularly to thoſe of our own nation.—"The Portugueſe, at Janeiro, practice every artifice in their power to entice away the ſeamen from the ſhips which touch there; and if by cajoling or intoxicating them, they can get any men within their power, they immediately ſend ſuch up the country, and keep them there till the ſhip to which they belong has left the place. By theſe arts, five men from the Dolphin, and nine from the Tamar, were ſeduced; the latter were recovered, but the former were effectually ſecreted." All hands were now, being the 16th of October, employed to complete the fitting the Dolphin and Tamar for ſea, having all the reaſon poſſible to believe, that we were bound to the Eaſt-Indies, and that we ſhould now proceed to the Cape of Good Hope, the ſcheme having been ſo well concerted by the Commodore, as even to deceive Lord Clive, who preſſed him with great importunity to allow him to take his paſſage in the Dolphin, we being in much greater readineſs for ſea than the Kent, which had beſides the misfortune to have many ſick on board: but to this the Commodore could not conſent; yet flattered his lordſhip with the hopes of his taking him on board on their meeting at the Cape.

On Saturday, the 20th, we left this port, and the coaſt of Brazil, bound as we thought for the Cape of Good Hope, but when at ſea, by ſteering to the ſouthward, we to our great ſurprize found our miſtake; and on the 22nd, we were relieved from our ſuſpence; for a ſignal being made for the commander of the Tamar frigate to come on board, he and our own company were informed, that the Commodore's orders were to go on diſcoveries into the South Sea: a circumſtance that, from the manner of which it was received, furniſhes the greateſt reaſon to believe, that no one on board had before the leaſt notice of the voyage in which they were now engaged. To this information the Commodore added, that the good behaviour of our company, by order of the lords of the Admiralty, would be rewarded with double pay, and other emoluments. This declaration was received with marks of the higheſt ſatisfaction; the crew promiſed obedience to the Commodore as to any orders he ſhould give, and expreſſed their willingneſs to do all in their power for the ſervice of their country. Some French writers have given a forced and very malevolent turn to this generous conduct; but the daring ſpirit which characterizes Britiſh ſeamen is too well known, for any one to ſuppoſe, that an increaſe of pay was neceſſary to prompt them to do their duty in perilous ſervice: and the inſtances of diſintereſted generoſity which diſtinguiſh the Britiſh nation, cannot leave the true motive which actuated the board of Admiralty, when it thus diſtributed its bounty, any ways equivocal, or expoſed to the miſconſtruction of invidious men. To make the acquieſcence of the French ſailors, under the inattention of their government, when M. de Bouganville ſailed round the world, an occaſion for caſting a reflection on the Engliſh ſailors, for the contrary conduct of government, in a ſimilar circumſtance, beſpeaks a ſpecies of mean ſubtlety, which can diſgrace none but thoſe who practice it, and which the ſpirited rivalſhip of that poliſhed nation does not countenance.

On Monday, the 29th, it blew a violent hurricane, and during the ſtorm we were obliged to throw four of our guns overboard. It continued all night, but ſubſided on the morning of the 30th, when we made ſail, and being arrived in latitude 35 deg. 30 min. S. we found the weather exceeding cold, though at this time the latter end of October, which anſwers to our April, in the northern and temperate zone, and we were beſides ſixteen degrees nearer the line than at London. A little more than a week before, we had ſuffered intolerable heat, ſo that ſuch a ſudden change was moſt ſeverely felt. The ſeamen, having ſuppoſed, that they were to continue in a hot climate during the whole voyage, had diſpoſed of all their warm cloathing at the ports where we had touched, as alſo their very bedding; ſo that now, finding their miſtake, and being pinched with cold, they applied for ſlops, and were furniſhed with the neceſſary articles for a cold climate.

On Friday the 2nd of November, the Commodore delivered to the lieutenants of both ſhips their commiſſions, they having hitherto acted only under verbal orders from him. On the 4th, the ſhip was ſurrounded with vaſt flocks of birds, among which were ſome brown and white, and ſeveral pintadoes, ſomewhat larger than pigeons. We alſo in latitude 38 deg. 53 min. S. and in 51 deg. W. longitude, ſaw a quantity of rock weed, and ſeveral ſeals. On the 10th, we perceived the water diſcoloured; and the next day we ſtood in for land, being in latitude 41 deg. 16 min. S. and in 55 deg. 17 min. W. longitude. On the 11th, we ſteered all night S. W. by W. and on Monday the 12th, we found ground at the depth of 45 fathoms: our latitude was 42 deg. 34 min. S. longitude 58 deg. 17 min. W. About four o'clock, P. M. our people in the forecaſtle called out, "Land right a-head!" At this time it was exceeding black round the horizon, and we had a good deal of thunder and lightening: the Commodore himſelf imagined what we firſt deſcried to be an iſland, which ſeemed to riſe in two rude craggy hills; the land adjoining to it appeared to run a long way to the S. E. We were now ſteering in a S. W. direction, and ſounded in 52 fathoms water. Our commander thought himſelf embayed, and entertained little hope of getting clear before night. We now ſteered E. S. E. the land ſtill keeping the ſame appearance, and the hills looking blue, as they generally do at a ſmall diſtance, when ſeen in dark rainy weather. Many on board aſſerted, that they ſaw the ſea break upon the ſandy beaches, but after having made ſail about an hour, what had been taken for land, in a moment, vaniſhed; and, to the aſtoniſhment of every one, proved to have been a mere *deceptio viſus*, which ſeamen call a fog-bank. Theſe deluſions are frequently occaſioned by ridges of clouds, and ſometimes, in the higher latitudes, by an extraordinary quality of the air, to be accounted for only by the doctrine of refraction. Others have been equally deceived by theſe kind of illuſions. The maſter of a veſſel, not long ſince made oath, that he had ſeen an iſland between the weſt end of Ireland and Newfoundland, and even diſtinguiſhed the trees that grew upon it; yet it is now well known, that no ſuch iſland exiſts, at leaſt it could never be found, though ſeveral ſhips were afterwards ſent out on purpoſe to ſeek it. And Commodore Byron was of opinion, that if the weather had not cleared up ſoon enough for us to ſee what we had taken for land diſappear, every man on board would freely have made oath that land had been diſcovered in this latitude of 43 deg. 46 min. S. and in 60 deg. 5 min. W. longitude. This falſe appearance was ſucceeded, on Tueſday the 13th, by a ſudden and tremendous hurricane. Notwithſtanding the weather was extremely fine, in the afternoon the ſky grew black to windward, and a noiſe was heard, which reſembled the breaking of the ſea upon a ſhallow beach. The birds were obſerved flying from the quarter whence the ſtorm iſſued, and ſhrieking through the apprehenſion of its approach. It was not poſſible to make the neceſſary preparations before it reached us. The ſea rolled on towards us in vaſt billows covered with foam. Orders were inſtantly given to hawl up the fore ſail, and let go the main ſheet; but before we could raiſe the main tack, the Dolphin was laid upon her beams. We now cut the main tack, for it was impoſſible to caſt it off, upon which, the main ſheet ſtruck down the firſt lieutenant, much bruiſed him, and beat out three of his teeth. The main-top ſail not being quite handed was ſplit to pieces. The Tamar ſplit her main-ſail, but being to the leeward, ſhe had more time to prepare; and had not ſufficient warning been given by the agitation of the ſea, the Dolphin muſt have been overſet, or her maſts would have been carried away. It was the opinion of all our people, that had this ſtorm approached with leſs warning, and more violence, or had it overtaken us in the night, the ſhip muſt have been loſt. Our Commodore thought this guſt of wind more violent than any one he had encountered; it laſted about twenty minutes, and then ſubſided. It blew, however, hard all night, and on the 14th, we had a great ſwell. The ſea alſo appeared as if tinged with blood, owing to its being covered with ſmall red crayfiſh, of which great quantities were taken up in baſkets by the ſhip's company.

On the 15th, our three lieutenants and the maſter were ſo ill as to be incapable of doing their duty; but the reſt of our hands were in good health. Our latitude this day was 45 deg. 21 min. and longitude 63 deg. 2 min. E. On the 16th, we ſhaped our courſe for Cape Blanco, agreeable to the chart of it, laid down in Anſon's voyage; and after many hard gales of wind, on the 17th, we ſaw the Cape, and for two days ſtruggled hard to reach Port Deſire. We now ſtood into a bay to the ſouthward of the Cape, but could find no port. On the 20th, we made Penguin Iſland, and as Port Deſire was ſaid to be three leagues to the N. W. of it, a boat was ſent out, and having found it we ſtood in for land; and anchored four miles from the ſhore.

On Wedneſday the 21ſt, we weighed in order to enter the harbour of Port Deſire; but found it very rocky, and not above a quarter of a mile from ſide to ſide. On our ſailing up, the wind was at S. S. W. directly in our favour, and the weather being remarkably temperate, all our boats were round the ſhip; but on a ſudden the wind came about to the N. E. which being directly againſt us, we made all poſſible haſte to get our ſails furled; but being within the harbour we could not return, and the tide of flood running with exceſſive rapidity, we were obliged to let go both anchors, and before we could bring her up, ſhe took the ſhore. This was followed by a cold rainy night, rendered more melancholy and gloomy by the reflection, that the boats were all driven to ſea, where every perſon in them would probably periſh, and that we ourſelves had no reaſon to expect our ever getting off, as both the wind and tide were againſt us, but that we ſhould be obliged to live, or perhaps periſh, on this deſert coaſt of Patagonia, ſeveral hundred leagues to the ſouthward of any European ſettlement; but at length, to our great joy, our twelve-oared barge providentially drove into the harbour, by which means the ſhip was preſerved, for without this timely aſſiſtance ſhe muſt have periſhed, we having no boat to carry out an anchor. After many attempts, we carried out our ſtream anchor, which, when the tide turned, enabled us, by weighing our other anchors, to get into the middle of the harbour, where, with the Tamar in company, we moored both ſhips: but as it blew very hard, we were obliged to take down our yards and topmaſts. Mean while two of our boats had been driven on ſhore, and the men ſuffered extremely from its raining very hard all night: but notwithſtanding this they returned the next day. As to our long boat, it was carried many leagues out to ſea, with only two men in it; we had therefore little proſpect of ſeeing them again; but on the 23d they returned with the boat into harbour, though they were almoſt ſtarved to death with the ſeverity of the cold and want. On their firſt appearance we ſent a boat to their aſſiſtance, which brought them on board.

This harbour is not much more than half a mile over. On the ſouth ſhore is a remarkable rock, riſing from the water in the form of a ſteeple, which appears on entering the harbour's mouth. Abreaſt of this rock we lay at anchor in ſeven or eight fathoms water, moored to the eaſt and weſt, with both bowers, which we found extremely neceſſary, on account of the ſtrong tide that regularly ebbs and flows every twelve hours. Indeed the ebb is ſo rapid, that we found by our log-line it continued to run five or ſix knots an hour; and in ten minutes after the ebb is paſt, the flood returns with equal velocity: beſides, the wind generally blows, during the whole night, out of the harbour. It is alſo neceſſary to obſerve, that the ground is far from affording good anchorage; for, as it principally conſiſts of light ſand, it is not to be depended on, and if one anchor ſhould ſtart, while the tide is ruſhing in, the ſhip would immediately take the ſhore, before the other anchors could poſſibly bring her up. However, it may fairly be conjectured, that there is firmer anchorage farther up the harbour, eſpecially for a ſhip that requires only a ſmall draught of water; for on ſending our boats two or three leagues up, they found good anchorage and leſs tide. On the north ſhore, about four or five miles above the before mentioned rock, there are ſome white cliffs that riſe to a great height, and, at a diſtance, nearly reſembling chalk, though their whiteneſs is merely owing to great flocks of birds voiding their dung upon them. The country all around is likewiſe interſperſed with rocks, high and craggy, but between each precipice the ground is covered with long and coarſe graſs. The valleys form a barren, comfortleſs proſpect, in which there is nothing to entertain the eye but great numbers of wild beaſts and birds, and many large heaps of bones that lie ſcattered about, eſpecially by the ſide of every ſtream of water. But we ſaw no Indians, nor the leaſt ſign of the human ſpecies. Among the animals we found, near the ſhore, a great number of ſeals of different ſizes. Theſe live both on the land and in the water, and are ſo fierce that they cannot be encountered without danger. The head has ſome reſemblance to that of a dog with cropt ears, but in ſome it is of a rounder, and in others of a longer make. They have large eyes, and whiſkers about the mouth: their teeth are extremely ſharp, and ſo ſtrong that they can bite a very thick ſtick in two. Though without legs, they have a kind of feet or fins, which anſwer the different purpoſes of ſwimming and walking; theſe have five toes like fingers, armed with nails, and joined together with a thin ſkin like thoſe of a gooſe; by the help of which they ſhuffle along very faſt through the ſand, or over the ſmall rocks on the ſhore. Their ſkins, which are covered with ſhort thick hair, are black, but frequently ſpotted with different colours, as white, red or grey, and are often manufactured into caps, waiſtcoats, tobacco-pouches, and the like. The old ones, which are about eight feet long, make a hoarſe barking, ſomewhat like a dog, and the young ones mew like a cat. The largeſt of them will yield about half a barrel of oil; and their ſkins, if properly cured, would be of conſiderable value. Some of our men uſed to eat the young ones, and their entrails were thought by them as good as thoſe of a hog. Here are likewiſe a great number of guanicoes, a kind of wild deer, called by ſome Peruvian ſheep, their backs being covered with a very fine ſoft wool. They have a long neck, and the head reſembles that of a ſheep; but they have very long legs, and are cloven footed like a deer, with a ſhort buſhy tail. Theſe are as large as a middle ſized cow, and, when freed from the ſkin and offal, weigh about two hundred and a half. Their fleſh is excellent, either freſh or ſalted, and after ſo long a voyage, was very ſerviceable in refreſhing our ſeamen. They herd together in companies of twenty or more, and the method we purſued in killing them was by ſending a party of men in the night, who ſearched for them by the ſprings of water to which they reſort; and there, lying in ambuſh among the buſhes, they had an opportunity of ſhooting them at their pleaſure; yet theſe animals, when ſenſible of danger, ſuddenly eſcape; for they are very ſwift of foot. In this place are alſo hares of a prodigious ſize; for they weigh, when alive, near 20 pounds, and, when ſkinned, are as big as a fox. Theſe are chiefly inhabitants of the valleys. With reſpect to the feathered race, here are a great number of oſtriches, but not near ſo large as thoſe in Africa. Theſe birds, which are remarkable for the length of their necks and legs, and the ſhortneſs of their wings, have been conſidered by naturaliſts as holding the ſame place among birds, as camels do among beaſts. Their ſmall head has ſome reſemblance to that of a gooſe, and their plumage conſiſts of grey feathers, covering the back as far as the tail, but thoſe on the belly are white. They have four toes on each foot, one behind and three before; and from the ſhortneſs of their wings, are unable to raiſe their bodies from the ground; yet, by their help, they will run with amazing ſwiftneſs. We found great quantities of their eggs, ſome of which are of an enormous ſize. There is here alſo another extraordinary large bird, which we called the wild eagle, whoſe body is about the ſize of a large turkey of 30 pounds weight. They have a very ſtately appearance, and are of a dark brown hue, intermixed with different coloured feathers; but what is moſt curious in theſe birds, is, their having a crown on their heads, and a ring of feathers round their necks. The barrels of the large feathers or quills in their wings, are each half an inch in diameter, and their wings when extended reach 14 feet, from point to point. The penguin, which is alſo found here, is about the ſize of a gooſe; but, inſtead of feathers, is covered with a kind of aſh-coloured down. Its wings, which reſemble thoſe of young goſlins, are too ſhort and unfledged to permit it to fly, but are of uſe to it in ſwimming, and alſo to aſſiſt it in leaping along upon the ground. Theſe birds appear heavy and inactive upon land, where they ſeem regardleſs of danger, and are eaſily knocked down with a ſtick; yet are active enough upon the water. Their fleſh, however, is diſagreeable, on account of its having a fiſhy taſte; but their eggs are very good. In the evening they retire to the rocks near the ſea, where they ſtay till the morning. But to return to the hiſtory of our voyage.

On Saturday the 24th, both ſhips being ſafely moored in the harbour, the Commodore went on ſhore, and ſhot a hare, weighing 26 pounds, and ſaw others, which appeared to be as large as fawns. Landing again, on the 25th, he found the barrel of an old muſket, with the king's broad arrow on it, and an oar of a ſingular form. The muſket barrel had ſuffered ſo much by the weather, that it might be crumbled to duſt between the fingers; it was probably left there by the Wager's people, or by Sir John Narborough, when he was in theſe parts. Here were ſome remains of fire, but no inhabitants could be diſcovered. This party ſhot ſeveral wild ducks, and a hare, which ran two miles before it dropped, with the ball in its body; the fleſh of which animal was of an excellent flavour, and as white as ſnow. Here they found the ſkull and bones of a man; and caught a young guanicoe, very beautiful, and which grew very tame on board, but died a ſhort time afterwards. On the 27th, we diſcovered two ſprings of tolerable good water; and, on the 28th, a tun of it was brought on board; but it is to be obſerved, the mineral qualities of theſe ſprings, unfortunately prevented their being of any uſe to us in ſupplying our ſhip with water; and we could not even find a quantity of pure wholeſome water fit for our preſent uſe. We had ſunk ſeveral wells to a conſiderable depth, where the ground appeared moiſt, but, upon viſiting them, had the mortification to find, that, altogether, they would not yield more than thirty gallons in 24 hours. On the ſouth ſhore the rocks are not ſo numerous as on the north ſide; and there are more hills and deep valleys; but they are covered only with high graſs, and a few ſmall ſhrubs. Hence this is but a bad place to touch at, by any ſhip that is under the neceſſity of wooding and watering. This day, when a party went on ſhore, they ſaw ſuch a number of birds take flight, as darkened the ſky, nor could the men walk a ſtep without treading

ing on eggs; and as the birds hovered over their heads at a little diſtance, the men would knock down many of them with ſtones and ſticks. After ſome time they dreſſed and would eat the eggs they had carried off, though young birds were in moſt of them. They ſaw no traces of inhabitants on either ſide the river, but numerous herds of guanicoes, which were exceeding ſhy. The ſurgeon of the Dolphin, one of the party, ſhot a tyger-cat, a ſmall, but very fierce animal. Some of the crew being ſent on ſhore for water, on the 30th, two of them diſcovered a large tyger lying on the ground. The animal taking no notice of them, they threw ſtones at him, but could by no means provoke him. He remained on the ſpot, and continued ſtretched on the ground, till their companions, who were a little way behind them, came up, and then he walked away very leiſurely.

During our ſtay at this place, our men were employed in fitting and completing the ſhip for ſea; and the carpenters were particularly obliged to fiſh our mainmaſt, which had been damaged at the head. Others, as has been already mentioned, were employed as rangers to go in ſearch of water, though without ſucceſs; but, when they were on this duty, they had a double allowance of brandy, and ſmall tents were erected on ſhore, for their own uſe. Before our departure, we alſo ſunk two caſks, one of them on the north ſhore from the place of anchorage, a-breaſt of the rock in form of a ſteeple. The other caſk was ſunk on the ſouth ſhore, two miles and a half to the S. S. W. of the ſteeple rock, and near a gentle declivity, on which we erected a poſt twelve feet high from the ground, with a piece of board nailed acroſs it, by way of mark. At length, having equipped the ſhip for ſea, and received proper ballaſt from the ſhore, ſignal was made for ſailing. Our crew were greatly refreſhed by the proviſions they met with at this place, having had the fleſh of the guanicoes ſerved three times a week, which they found to be delicious food; and this, doubtleſs, contributed greatly to their continuing in a good ſtate of health, as were alſo all on board our conſort the Tamar: beſides a perfect unanimity ſubſiſted between the officers and men of both ſhips, who maintained the moſt friendly intercourſe with each other, whenever they had an opportunity. On Saturday, the 1ſt of December, our cutter being thoroughly repaired, we took her on board, and on the 2nd, we ſtruck our tents, which had been ſet up at the watering-place. This bears about S. S. E. of the ſteeple rock, from which it is diſtant about two miles and an half.

On Wedneſday, the 5th, we unmoored, and, between five and ſix in the evening, weighed. We now got under ſail, having fair and pleaſant weather, and ſteered out E. N. E. with a favourable gale at N. N. W. directing our courſe from Port Deſire, in ſearch of Pepy's Iſland, ſaid to have been ſeen by Cowley, who lays it down in latitude 47 deg. but makes no mention of its longitude. In our charts it is laid down in longitude of 64 deg. from the meridian of London, bearing E. by S. of Cape Blanco; and it received its name in honour of Samuel Pepys, Eſq; ſecretary to James duke of York, when lord high Admiral of England; who pretended, that it had not only a good harbour, in which a thouſand ſhips might ſafely ride at anchor, but that it abounded with wild fowls, and was extremely convenient for wooding and watering; but after many unſucceſsful attempts to diſcover this iſland, in order to procure a freſh ſupply of wood and water, we had the mortification to find, that all our endeavours were in vain and ineffectual. We were therefore obliged to deſiſt from the ſearch, and on the 11th, at noon, the Commodore reſolved to ſtand in for the main, both ſhips being in want of wood and water. Having changed our courſe, large whales were obſerved to ſwim frequently about the ſhip, and birds in great numbers flew round us. On the 15th, being in latitude 50 deg. 33 min. S. and in 66 deg. 59 min. W. longitude, we were, about ſix in the evening, overtaken by the hardeſt gale at S.W. that the Commodore had ever been in, with a ſea ſtill higher than any he had ſeen in going round Cape Horn with lord Anſon. The ſtorm continued the whole night, during which we lay to under a balanced mizen, and ſhipped many heavy ſeas.

On Sunday, the 16th, at eight o'clock A. M. it began to ſubſide; at ten we made ſail under our courſes; and, on the 18th, in latitude 51 deg. 8 min. S. and in longitude 71 deg. 4 min. W. we ſaw land from the maſt head. Cape Virgin Mary (the north entrance of the Strait of Magellan) bore S. 19. deg. 50 min. W. diſtant nineteen leagues. The land, like that near Port Deſire, was of the downy kind, without a ſingle tree. On the 19th, we ſtood into a deep bay, at the bottom of which appeared a harbour; but we found it barred, the ſea breaking quite from one ſide of it to the other. At low water it was rocky and almoſt dry; and we had only ſix fathom when we ſtood out again. In this place we obſerved porpoiſes, which were milk white, with black ſpots, purſuing the fiſh, of which there were great numbers.

Thurſday, the 20th, we had little wind with thunder and lightning from the S. W. at four o'clock, A.M. we ſaw an extremity of land belonging to Cape Fairweather, extending from S. to W. We were now at the diſtance of four leagues from the ſhore; when ſounding, we found twenty-five fathoms water, with ſoft ground, and the latitude of the Cape to be in 51 deg. 30 min. S. We never ſteered above five or ſix miles from the ſhore, and, in paſſing between the laſt-mentioned Cape and Cape Blanco, we had no ſoundings with twenty-five fathoms line. The coaſt here appears in white cliffs, with level buff land, not unlike that about Dover and the South Foreland. We now came in ſight of Cape Virgin Mary, from which we were diſtant five leagues, and alſo the land named Terra del Fuego. We found the coaſt to lie S. S. E. very different from Sir John Narborough's deſcription; and a long ſpit of ſand running to the ſouthward of the Cape for more than a league. We had very fair weather all the morning, and, at three o'clock, P. M. Cape Virgin Mary bore N. W. half N. About two leagues to the weſtward, a low neck of land runs off from the Cape; we approached it without danger, and, at ſix, anchored with the beſt bower in fifteen fathoms water, at which time the Cape bore N. half E. about ſeven miles; but the Tamar was ſo far to leeward, that ſhe could not fetch the anchoring ground, and therefore kept under way all night. On the 21ſt, at three o'clock, A. M. we weighed, and again got under ſail; and at ſix the extremes of Terra del Fuego appeared, extending from the S. E. by S. to the S. W. by S. four or five leagues diſtant. At eight we perceived a good deal of ſmoke iſſuing from different quarters, and, on our nearer approach, ſaw plainly a number of people on horſeback. This is the coaſt of Patagonia, and the place where the half ſtarved remains of the crew of the Wager, as they were paſſing the ſtrait in their boat, after the loſs of the ſhip, ſaw a number of horſemen, who waved what appeared to them like white handkerchiefs, inviting them to come on ſhore. Mr. Bulkley, the gunner of the Wager, who publiſhed an account of her voyage and misfortunes, ſays, that they were in doubt whether theſe people were Europeans, who had been ſhipwrecked on the coaſt, or natives of the country about the river Gallagoes. At ten o'clock we anchored in fourteen fathoms on the north ſhore, and ſaw Cape Virgin Mary, which appeared over the low neck of land to the E. N. E. and Point Poſſeſſion to the W. by S. We were now about a mile from the land, and had no ſooner come to an anchor, than we ſaw with our glaſſes a number of horſemen, abreaſt of the Dolphin, riding backward and forward, and waving ſomething white, as an invitation for us to come on ſhore. Immediately our twelve-oared boat was hoiſted out, which was manned with the Commodore, Mr. Marſhal, the ſecond lieutenant, the journaliſt, to whom we are indebted principally for the hiſtory of this voyage, and a party of men all well armed. Mr. Cumming, our firſt lieutenant, followed in the ſix oared cutter.

On our firſt approaching the coaſt, evident ſigns of ſurprize were viſible among ſome in our boat, on ſeeing men of a moſt enormous ſize, to the number of about five hundred; while others, perhaps, to encourage the reſt, obſerved, that thoſe gigantic people were as much ſurprized at the ſight of our muſkets, as we were at ſeeing them; though it is highly probable they did not know their uſe, and had never heard the report of a gun: however, this was ſufficient to remind us, that our fire-arms gave us an advantage much ſuperior to that derived from ſtature and perſonal ſtrength. The people on ſhore as we advanced kept waving and hallooing; but we could not perceive they had among them weapons of any kind. When we had rowed within twenty yards of the ſhore, we lay on our oars, and obſerved ſome on foot near the beach, but the greater part were on horſeback, drawn up upon a ſtony ſpit, which ran a good way into the ſea, and where it was very difficult to land, the water being ſhallow, and the ſtones very large. They now ſhouted with great vociferation, and by their countenances ſeemed eagerly deſirous of having us land. After the moſt amicable ſigns which we were capable of underſtanding, or they of giving, a ſignal was made for them to retire backwards, to a little diſtance, with which they readily complied. The Commodore now held a ſhort conſultation with his officers on the propriety of landing, when one, fired with the thoughts of making a full diſcovery in regard to theſe Indians, made a motion to approach nearer and jump on ſhore, but the Commodore objected to it, and would not ſuffer any man to go before himſelf. In a ſhort time we attempted to land, moſt of our boat's crew being up to the middle in water. The Commodore, regardleſs of ſuch kind of difficulties, puſhed reſolutely on, and, having with great intrepidity leaped on ſhore, drew up his men upon the beach, with the officers at their head, and ordered them not to move from that ſtation, till he ſhould either call or beckon to them. Commodore Byron now advanced alone towards the Indians; but, perceiving they retreated as he advanced, upon this he made ſigns that one of them ſhould come forward. Theſe being underſtood, one who appeared afterwards to be a chief, advanced towards him. His ſtature was gigantic, he being nearly ſeven feet high. Round one of his eyes was a circle of black paint, and one of white round the other: the reſt of his face was painted with various colours, and he had the ſkin of ſome wild beaſt, with the hair turned inwards, thrown over his ſhoulders. His hair was long and black, hanging down behind. The Commodore and Indian chief having paid their compliments to each other, in a language mutually unintelligible to the perſon to whom it was addreſſed, they walked together towards the main body of the natives, few of whom were ſhorter than the above-mentioned ſtandard, and the women large in proportion. Mr. Byron now made ſigns for them to ſit down on the ground, which they did, and the old men chanted ſome ſtrains, in a moſt doleful cadence, with an air of ſerious ſolemnity. The eyes of no one perſon were painted with the ſame colours, ſome being white and red, and ſome black and white. Their teeth are remarkably even, well ſet, and as white as ivory. Our Commodore, who had the precaution to take with him on ſhore a number of trinkets, ſuch as ſtrings of beads, and the like, in order to convince them of our amicable diſpoſition, diſtributed them with great freedom, giving to each ſome as far as they went. He then took a whole piece of green ribbon, and, putting the end into the hands of the firſt Indian, he continued it to the next, and ſo on as far as it would reach; while none of them attempted to pull it from the reſt, and yet they ſeemed more delighted with it, than with the beads. When the ribbon was thus extended, he pulled out a pair of ſciſſars, and cut it between each two of thoſe who held it, leaving about a yard in the poſſeſſion of each, which he afterwards tied about their heads. It was remarked, that though the preſents were inſufficient to ſupply them all, not one preſſed forward from the ſtation aſſigned him, nor ſeemed to envy the ſuperior good fortune of his neighbour. They were now ſo delighted with the different trinkets, which they had an opportunity of viewing as the beads hung round their necks, and fell down before on their boſoms, that the Commodore could ſcarce reſtrain them from careſſing him, particularly the women, whoſe large and maſculine features correſponded with the enormous ſize of their bodies. We ſaw ſome infants in their mothers arms, whoſe features, conſidering their age, bore the ſame proportion to thoſe of their parents. Except the ſkins which theſe Indians wore, moſt of them were naked, a few only having upon their legs a kind of boot, with a ſhort pointed ſtick faſtened to each heel, which ſerved as a ſpur. Some of their women had collars round their necks. Among them was one of the gigantic ſize, and moſt diſagreeably painted, who had her hair adorned with beads of blue glaſs, hanging in two diviſions down before her ſhoulders; ſhe had alſo bracelets of pale gold, or braſs, upon her arms. From whence this finery could be procured was a ſubject of wonder, as from their great amazement at firſt ſeeing us, we conjectured that they had never beheld any of our dwarfiſh race before. It may however be concluded from the accounts of Sir John Narborough, and others, who have taken notice of theſe Indians, that they doubtleſs change their ſituation with the ſun, ſpending their ſummer here, and in winter removing farther to the north, in order to enjoy the benefit of a milder climate. Hence Sir John and others have related, that they ſaw men of an uncommon ſize, at leaſt eight or ten degrees more to the northward; whence it may be reaſonably conjectured, that during one part of the year, they may have ſome intercourſe with the Indians bordering on the Spaniſh ſettlements, and that from them they might have purchaſed theſe ornaments. There are thoſe who may deſpiſe the fondneſs of theſe Goliah-like Indians for glaſs, beads, and other trifles, which among civilized nations are held in no eſtimation; but ſuch ſhould remember, that, in themſelves, the ornaments of unpoliſhed and civil life are equal, and that thoſe who live nearly in a ſtate of nature, have nothing that reſembles glaſs, ſo much as glaſs reſembles a diamond; the value which we ſet upon a diamond, therefore, is more capricious than the value they ſet upon glaſs. The love of ornament ſeems to be a ruling paſſion in human nature, and the ſplendid tranſparency of glaſs, and the regular figure of a bead, excite pleaſing ideas. The pleaſure which a diamond gives among us is, principally, by its being a mark of diſtinction, thus gratifying our vanity, which is independent of, and frequently over-rules natural taſte, which is gratified by certain lines and hues, to which we give the name of beauty: it muſt be remembered alſo, that an Indian is more diſtinguiſhed by a glaſs button or bead, than any individual among us by a diamond, though, perhaps, the ſame ſacrifice is not made to his vanity, as the poſſeſſion of his finery is rather a teſtimony of his good fortune, than of his influence or power, in conſequence of his having what, as the common medium of all earthly poſſeſſions, is ſuppoſed to confer virtual ſuperiority, and intrinſic advantage. One of the Indians ſhewed our Commodore the bowl of a tabacco-pipe, made of red earth, and by ſigns intimated that he wanted ſome tobacco, none of which they had among them. On this the Commodore beckoned to the ſeamen, who ſtill remained drawn up on the beach, three or four of whom inſtantly running forward, the Indians were alarmed, and jumping up in an inſtant were preparing to retire, as it was ſuppoſed, to fetch their arms. The Commodore therefore ſtopped the ſailors, directing one of them only to come forward, when he had got all the tobacco they could muſter among them. This reſtored good harmony, and all the Indians reſumed their places, except an old man who ſung a long ſong, at nearly the concluſion of which Mr. Cumming brought the tobacco. This gentleman, though ſix feet two inches high, was himſelf aſtoniſhed at the diminutive figure he cut among the ſtrangers, who were broad and muſcular in proportion to their height. Their language appeared to us to be nothing more than a jargon of ſounds, without any mixture of the Spaniſh or Portugueſe, the only European tongues of which it was poſſible for them to obtain any knowledge, and with which it is probable it would have been mixed, had they any immediate intercourſe with the Spaniards or Portugueſe of South America. We muſt not omit, that before our landing, the greateſt part of theſe Patagonians were on horſeback, but on ſeeing us gain the ſhore, they diſmounted, and left their horſes at ſome diſtance. Theſe horſes were not large, nor in good caſe, yet they were well broken, and very ſwift, but bore no proportion to the ſize of their riders. The bridle was a leathern thong, with a ſmall piece of wood that ſerved for a bit, and the ſaddles reſembled the pads in uſe among the country people in England. Their women rode aſtride, and both men and women without ſtirrups; yet they galloped fearleſsly over the ſpit upon which we landed, the ſtones of which were large, looſe and ſlippery. Theſe people looked frequently towards the ſun with an air of adoration, and made motions with their fingers, in order to make us ſenſible of any particular circumſtance they wanted us to underſtand. They appeared to be of an amiable and friendly diſpoſition, and ſeemed to live in great unanimity among themſelves. After they had been preſented with the tobacco, they made ſigns for us to go with them to the ſmoke which we ſaw at a diſtance, and at the ſame time pointed to their mouths, as if intimating an inclination to give us refreſhment; but their number at preſent being ſo greatly ſuperior to ours, and it being not improbable, that ſtill greater multitudes might ſurround us unawares from the inland country, our Commodore, who was equally remarkable for his prudence and bravery, thought it not adviſeable to venture any farther from the water-ſide, and therefore intimated, that he muſt return to the ſhip, on which they ſat down again, apparently much concerned. At length, after making ſigns that we would depart, with the moſt plauſible promiſes, by geſtures, of returning again to them from the ſhip, we left theſe Patagonian Indians, who were ſo diſtreſſed and afflicted at our departure, that we heard their lamentations for a conſiderable time after. When the Commodore took his leave of them they kept their ſeats, not one offering to detain, or follow him. Another officer on board the Dolphin, in his account of theſe extraordinary people, adds, that they all appeared to be very ſagacious, eaſily underſtood the ſignals or intimations which our people made to them, and behaved with great complacency and good nature. Such is the information we have received from the papers of our journaliſt, whoſe veracity required no proof, among thoſe who have had the pleaſure of his acquaintance; but as evidences in corroboration of his aſſertions, and the truth of the facts, we ſhall inſert here the following account of the Patagonians, which we received from a gentleman, who was alſo an officer in one of the ſhips, and on ſhore at the ſame time with our author.

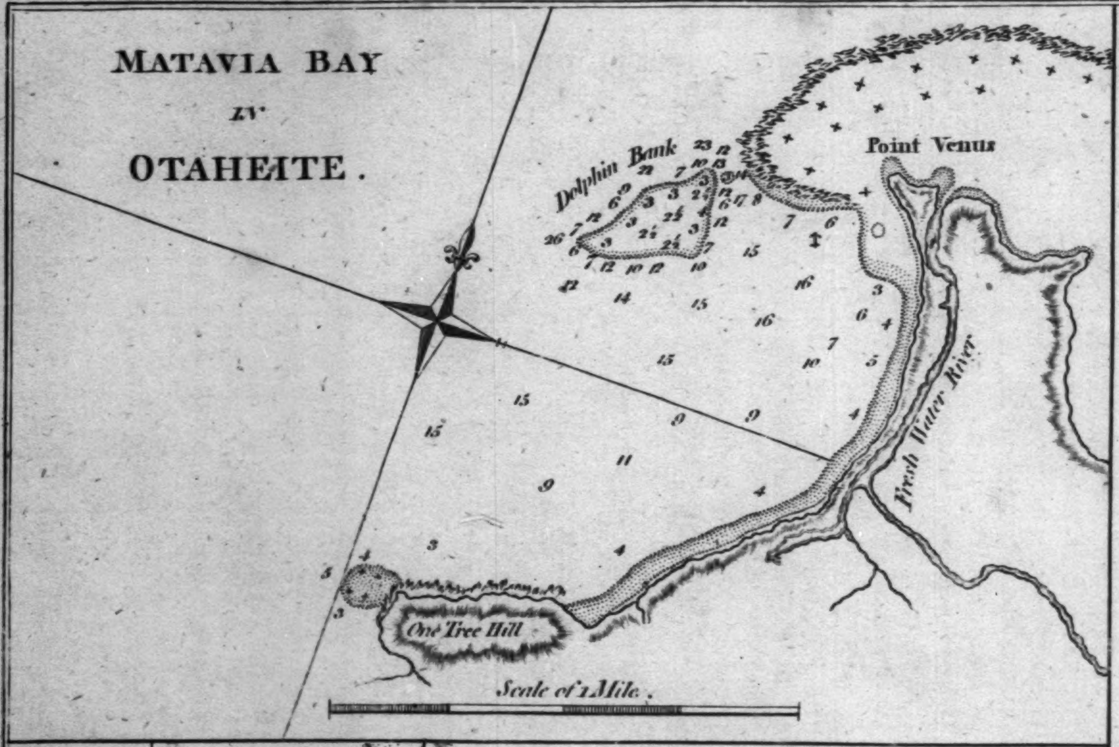
The Dolphin having entered ten or twelve leagues into the mouth of the ſtraits of Magellan, the men on deck obſerved thirty or forty people of an extraordinary ſtature, ſtanding on the beach of the continent, who, looking attentively on them, made friendly ſigns, by which they ſeemed to invite them to come on ſhore; while others, who ſtood aloft, diſcovered with their glaſſes a much greater number, about a mile farther up the country; but aſcribed their apparent ſize to the foggineſs of the air. The ſhip happened at this inſtant to be becalmed; the honourable Mr. Byron, thinking no time would be loſt by going aſhore, reſolved to land, in order to ſee theſe Indians, and learn what he could of their manners; he therefore ordered a ſix-oared boat for himſelf and officers: and one of twelve oars to be filled with men and arms, as a ſecurity, in caſe there ſhould be any attempt to ſurprize or injure him, or any of thoſe who went with him; though the people on ſhore did not ſeem to have any thing like an offenſive weapon among them. On the Commodore's landing, in company with his lieutenant, he made ſigns to the Indians, who were crouding round him, to retire, which they very readily did, to the diſtance of thirty or forty yards. He then, attended by his lieutenant, advanced towards them, about twenty yards, and their number was ſoon increaſed to upwards of five hundred men, women, and children. Several civilities at this time paſſed on both ſides, the Indians expreſſing their joy and ſatisfaction by ſinging uncouth ſongs, ſhaking hands, and ſitting with looks of pleaſure, with their wives and children round the Commodore, who diſtributed among them ribbons and ſtrings of beads, with which they appeared highly delighted. He tied necklaces round the necks of ſeveral of the women, who ſeemed to be from ſeven to eight feet high; but the men were, for the moſt part, about nine feet in height, and ſome more. The Commodore himſelf meaſures full ſix feet, and, though he ſtood on tip-toe, he could but juſt reach the crown of one of the Indian's head, who was not, by far, the talleſt among them. The men are well made, broad ſet, and of a prodigious ſtrength. Both ſexes are of a copper colour; they have long black hair, and were covered partly with ſkins, which were faſtened about their necks by a thong; the ſkins worn by the men being looſe, but the womens were girt cloſe with a kind of belt. Many of the men and women rode on horſes, which were about fifteen hands and a half high, all of them aſtride; and they had among them ſome dogs, which had a picked ſnout like a fox, and were nearly of the ſize of a middling pointer. Theſe friendly people invited the Commodore, and all thoſe who were landed, to go with them up the country, ſhewing a diſtant ſmoke, and pointing to their mouths, as if they intended to give us a repaſt; and, in return, the Commodore invited the Indians to come on board, by pointing to the ſhip; but neither of them accepted of the others invitation, and therefore, having paſſed two hours in an agreeable converſation, carried on wholly by ſigns, they parted, with all the marks of friendſhip. The country (obſerves this gentleman) is ſandy; but diverſified with ſmall hills, covered with a ſhort graſs, and with ſhrubs, none of which, as Sir John Narborough has long before remarked, is large enough to make the helve of an hatchet.

Another gentleman on board has favoured us with an account that exactly tallies with the above, with theſe additional circumſtances. That when they were ten or twelve leagues within the ſtraits, they ſaw through their glaſſes many people on ſhore of a prodigious ſize: which extraordinary magnitude they thought to be a deception, occaſioned by the hazineſs of the atmoſphere, it being then ſomewhat foggy; but on coming near the land, they appeared of ſtill greater bulk, and made amicable ſigns to our people to come on ſhore. That when the ſhip ſailed on to find a proper place of landing, they made lamentations, as if they were afraid our people were going off. He alſo ſays, there were near 400 of them, and about one third of the men on horſes not much larger than ours; and that they rode with their knees up to the horſes' withers, having no ſtirrups. That there were women and many children, whom ſome of our people took up in their arms and kiſſed, which the Indians beheld with much ſeeming ſatisfaction. That by way of affection and eſteem, they took his hand between theirs and patted it; and that ſome of thoſe he ſaw were ten feet high, well proportioned, and well featured; their ſkins were of a warm copper colour, and they had neither offenſive nor defenſive weapons. He alſo ſays, that they ſeemed particularly pleaſed with lieutenant Cumming, on account of his ſtature, he being ſix feet two inches high, and that ſome of them patted him on the ſhoulder, but their hands fell with ſuch force, that it affected his whole frame.

There is nothing about which travellers are more divided, than concerning the height of theſe Patagonians. M. de Bougainville, who viſited another part of this coaſt, in the year 1767, aſſerts, that the Patagonians are not gigantic; and that what makes them appear ſo, is their prodigious broad ſhoulders, the ſize of their heads, and the thickneſs of all their limbs. Some time before the hon. Mr. Byron made this voyage, it was the ſubject of warm conteſt among men of ſcience in this country, whether a race of men upon the coaſt of Patagonia, above the common ſtature, did really exiſt; and the contradictory reports, made by ocular witneſſes, concerning this fact, tended greatly to perplex the queſtion. It appears that, during one hundred years, almoſt all navigators, of whatever country, agree in affirming the exiſtence of a race of giants upon thoſe coaſts; but, during another century, a much greater number agree in denying the fact, treating their predeceſſors as idle fabuliſts. *Barbenais* ſpeaks of a race of giants in South America; and the *Unca Garcilaſſa de la Vega*, in his hiſtory of *Peru*, is deciſively on the ſame ſide of the queſtion. For *Quenado* lib. 1. chap. 13 and 14, records the American traditions concerning a race of giants, and a deluge which happened in remote times, in thoſe parts. Magellan, Loaiſa, Sarmiento, and Nodal, among the Spaniards; and Cavendiſh, Hawkins, and Knivet, among the Engliſh; Sebald, Oliver de Noort, le Maire, and Spilberg, among the Dutch, together with ſome French voyagers, all bear teſtimony to the fact, that the inhabitants of Patagonia were of a gigantic height: on the contrary, Winter, the Dutch admiral Hermite, Froger, in De Gennes's narrative, and Sir John Narborough, deny it. Sir Francis Drake, who ſailed through the ſtraits, ſays nothing concerning it; and his ſilence on this head can only be accounted for, on the ſuppoſition, either that he ſaw no inhabitants on the coaſt in his paſſage, or that there was nothing extraordinary in their appearance. To reconcile theſe different opinions, we have only to ſuppoſe that the country is inhabited by diſtinct races of men, one of whom is of a ſize beyond the ordinary pitch, the other not gigantic, though perhaps tall and remarkably large limbed; and that each poſſeſs parts of the country ſeparate and remote from each other. That ſome giants inhabit theſe regions, can now no longer be doubted; ſince the concurrent teſtimony of late Engliſh navigators, particularly Commodore Byron, Captains Wallis and Carteret, gentlemen of unqueſtionable veracity, eſtabliſh the fact, from their not only having ſeen and converſed with theſe people, but even meaſured them. But it is now time to proceed with the hiſtory of our voyage.

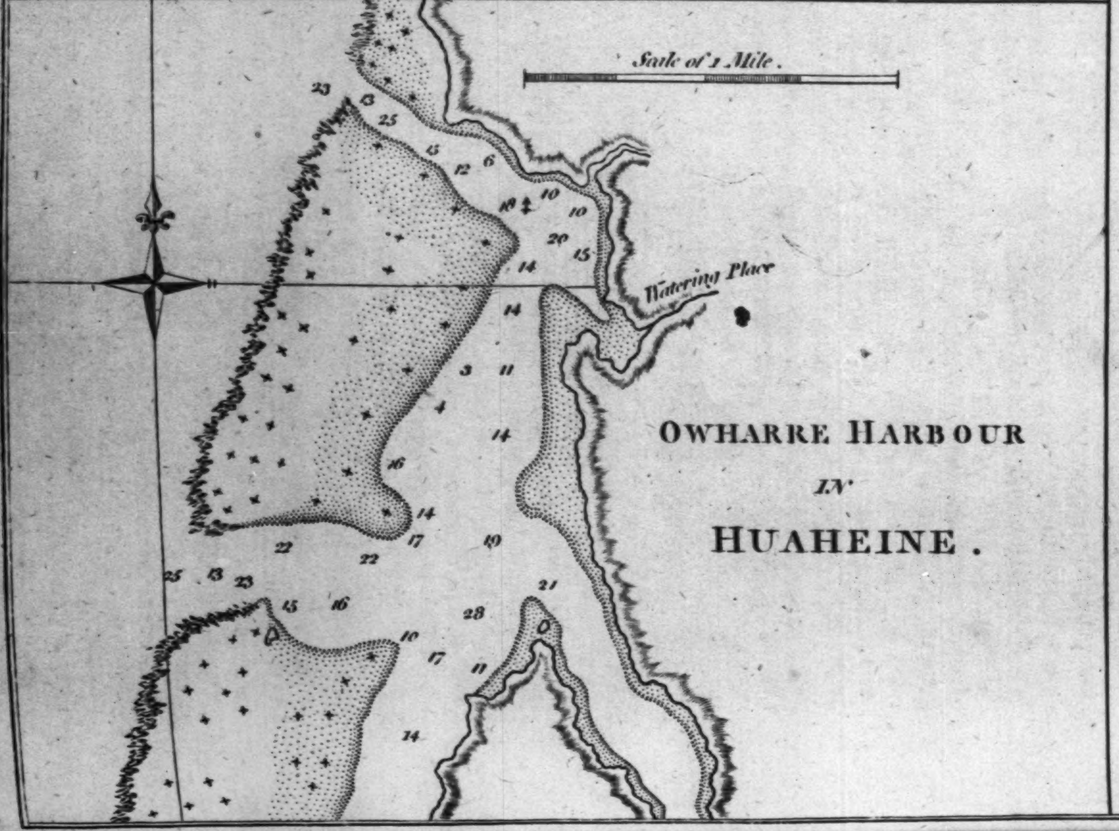
On Friday, the 21ſt of December, at three o'clock P. M. we weighed, and worked up the ſtrait of Magellan, which is here about three leagues broad, not with a view to paſs through it, but to take in a proper ſtock of wood and water, not chuſing to truſt wholly to the finding of Falkland's Iſlands, which we determined afterwards to ſeek. At eight in the evening we anchored in 25 fathoms water, at the diſtance of three miles N. N. E. from Port Poſſeſſion, in view of two remarkable hummocks, which Bulkley, from their appearance, diſtinguiſhed by the name of the Aſſes Ears. On the 22nd, at three o'clock, A. M. we weighed and ſteered S. W. by W. about four leagues, when the water ſhoaled to ſix fathoms and a half, we being then over a bank of which no notice has hitherto been taken, and full three leagues from the ſhore; but, in two or three caſts of the log-line, it deepened to 13 fathoms. When the water was ſhalloweſt, the Aſſes Ears bore N. W. by W. and the north point of the firſt narrow W. by S. diſtant ſomewhat more than five miles. We now ſteered S. W. by S. two leagues to the firſt narrow, as it is uſually called, which brought us through. This narrow is about three miles over, and is the narroweſt part of the ſtraits; and through it a regular tide runs with great rapidity. In this run we ſaw an Indian upon the ſouth ſhore, who kept waving to us as long as we were in ſight; alſo ſome guanicoes upon the hills. The land is on each ſide ſurrounded with theſe; but the country is entirely barren, without a ſingle tree, yet we here obſerved great quantities of ſmoke from different parts of the ſhore. The courſe of the firſt narrow to a little ſea, or the ſound, is S. W. by W. about eight leagues. The land on each ſide is of a moderate height, and rather higheſt on the north ſhore, but runs low towards the ſecond narrow. On ſounding from the firſt to the ſecond narrow, we found from 20 to 25 fathoms water, with good anchorage; and it was there about ſeven leagues from the north ſhore to the iſland of Terra del Fuego. At the entrance, or eaſt end of the ſecond narrow, lies Cape Gregory, which is a white cliff of a moderate height; and a little to the northward of it is a ſandy bay, in which you may ride in eight fathoms water, with very good anchorage. When abreaſt of Cape Gregory we ſteered S. W. half W. five leagues, through the ſecond narrow, having a depth of water from 20 to 25 fathoms. We went out of the weſt end of this narrow about noon, and ſteered three leagues ſouth for Elizabeth's Iſland. At this part of the narrow, on the ſouth ſhore, is a white headland, called Sweepſtakes Foreland. The wind being right againſt us, we anchored in ſeven fathom. The iſland bore S. S. E. about a mile diſtant, and Bartholomew's Iſland bore E. S. E. In the evening ſix Indians came down to the water-ſide, and continued for ſome time waving and hallooing to us, but ſeeing their labour fruitleſs they went away. Between the firſt and ſecond narrows the flood ſets to the S. W. and the ebb to the N. E. but being paſt the ſecond narrow, the courſe, with a leading wind, is S. by E. three leagues between St. Bartholomew's and Elizabeth's Iſlands, where the channel is one mile and a half over. The flood ſets through to the ſouthward with great vehemence and rapidity, ſo that when near it appears like breakers, and the tide round the iſlands ſets different ways.

On Sunday, the 23d, we had very moderate weather, but hazy, with intervals of freſh breezes. In the morning we weighed, and worked between the two iſlands: we got over on the north ſhore before the tide was ſpent, and anchored in 10 fathoms. St. George's Iſland bore N. E. by N. diſtant three leagues; a Point of land, which we named Porpoiſe Point, N. by W. diſtant five miles, and the ſouthernmoſt land S. by E. diſtant about two miles. In the evening we again got under ſail, and ſteered S. by E. and at ten o'clock we anchored about a mile from the north ſhore, in 13 fathoms. Sandy Point now bore S. by E. diſtant four miles; Porpoiſe Point, N. N. W. three leagues, and St. George's Iſland N. E. four leagues. On the 24th, we ſent the boat to ſound between Elizabeth's and St. Bartholomew's Iſlands, and found it a very good channel, with deep water. On this occaſion we ſaw a number of Indians, who hallooed to us from Elizabeth's Iſland. Both the men and women were of the middle ſize, well made, and with ſmooth black hair. Their complexion was olive-coloured, and their bodies were rubbed over with red earth, mixed with greaſe. They are very active and ſwift of foot. Their cloathing conſiſts of ſkins of ſeals, otters and guanicoes, ſewed together in a piece about four feet ſquare, and wrapped round their bodies. They have likewiſe a cap made of the ſkins of fowls, with the feathers on; and upon their feet were pieces of ſkins, to anſwer the purpoſe of ſhoes: beſides, ſome of the females had pieces of ſkin faſtened round their waiſts. The women however had no caps, but wore a kind of necklace, formed of ſhells. Several of the men had nothing wrapped round them, but were entirely naked. This day the Commodore, accompanied by his ſecond lieutenant, landed upon Sandy Point, where they found plenty of wood, with exceeding good water, and for four miles of their walk the ſhore was very pleaſant. A fine level country is over the point, and the ſoil, to all appearance, is extremely rich. The ground was covered with different kinds of flowers, that perfumed the air with their fragrance, among which, where the bloſſoms had been ſhed, we ſaw berries innumerable, even the graſs was intermixed with peas in bloſſom. In this luxuriant herbage a multitude of birds were feeding, which, on account of their uncommonly beautiful plumage, we called painted geeſe. In our walk from Sandy Point, which was more than 12 miles, we ſaw no part of the ſhore where a boat could land without great danger, the water being every where ſhoal, and the ſea breaking very high.



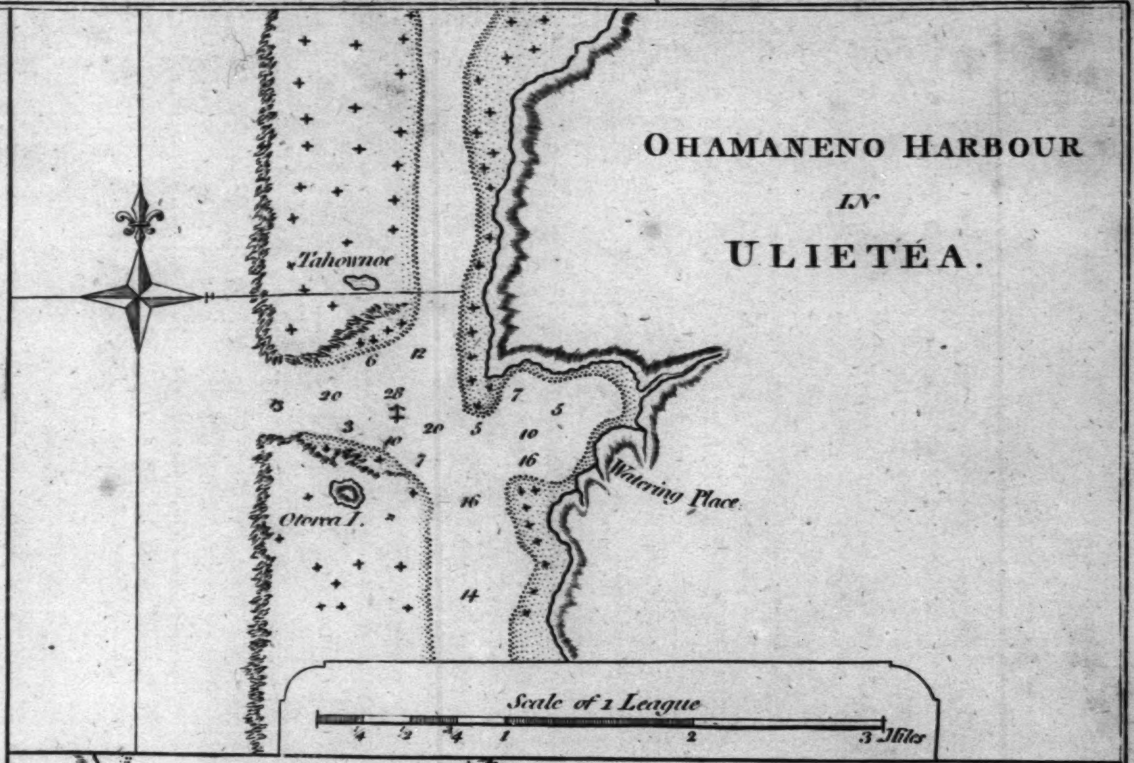
MATAVIA BAY IN OTAHEITE.

Dolphin Bank
Point Venus
Fresh Water River
One Tree Hill
Scale of 1 Mile.



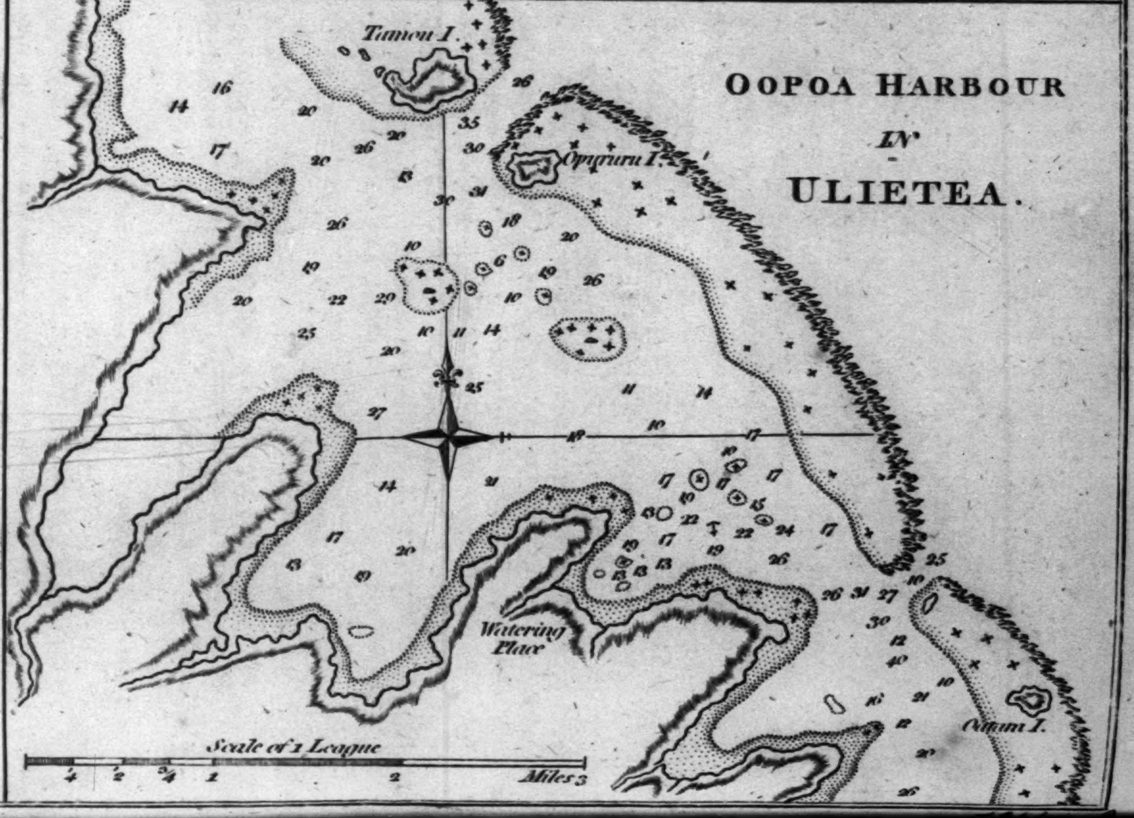
OWHARRE HARBOUR IN HUAHEINE.

Scale of 1 Mile.
Watering Place



OHAMANENO HARBOUR IN ULIETÉA.

Tahownoe
Oterra I.
Watering Place
Scale of 1 League
3 Miles



OOPOA HARBOUR IN ULIETEA.

Tamou I.
Opururu I.
Watering Place
Oamu I.
Scale of 1 League
Miles 3

In little receſſes of the woods, and always near to freſh water, we diſcovered a great number of wigwams, belonging to the Indians, which had been very lately occupied, for in ſome of them the fires were ſcarcely extinguiſhed. Plenty of wild celery, and a variety of plants, were ſeen in many places, the utility of which to ſeamen in a long voyage is well known. We returned in the evening to the ſhips, which we found at anchor in Sandy Bay, in 10 fathoms water, and at the diſtance of about half a mile from the ſhore. During our abſence, ſome of our men were employed in hauling the ſeine, and in three hours had caught a great quantity of fiſh, of an extraordinary ſize; among which were ſixty large mullets. A ſhooting party had good ſport; for the place abounds with geeſe, teel, ſnipes, and other birds. This excellent food was, eſpecially at this time, very acceptable, for the keen air of this place had made our people ſo hungry, that they could have eaten three times their allowance. By a good obſervation we found our latitude to be 53 deg. 10 min. S.

On Tueſday the 25th, being Chriſtmas-day, we weighed at eight o'clock, A. M. and with little wind, ſteered S. by E. along-ſide of the ſhore between two and three miles, but had no ſounding with a line of 40 fathoms. Every thing here was in the greateſt perfection, with reſpect to the appearance of the trees, and the verdure of the lands, which in different places afford a moſt enchanting proſpect; and many parts of the ſhore have paſture for ſheep or cows, which in ſuch long voyages are generally on board. At this time of the year the ſun is 17 hours above the horizon, theſe iſlands being ſituated nearly at the ſame diſtance from the equator, as the middle part of Great Britain, only one to the ſouth, and the other to the north. In ſailing towards the South Pole, the ſame alteration is found as in ſteering towards the north, till you run between 60 and 70 degrees, when the weſterly winds generally prevailing in the ſouthern ocean, and blowing very furiouſly in the months of April, May, June, July, Auguſt, and September, there is no probability of ſailing round the cape in theſe months, for which reaſon ſhips ſeldom attempt it, unleſs in the proper ſeaſon. At three P. M. we caſt anchor in 18 fathoms water, Sandy Point bearing N. N. W. three leagues, and the ſouth point of Freſh Water Bay, S. E. half E. two miles. The tide here runs very ſlow, but riſes conſiderably by the ſhore, where we obſerved it to flow 16 feet. The land here is diverſified with woods, and abounds with water: in ſome places it riſes very high, and is covered with perpetual ſnow. On the 26th we weighed, and ſteered S. S. E. for Port Famine. The northernmoſt point, called St. Anne's, at noon, bore S. by E. half E. diſtant three leagues. A reef of rocks runs out from this point S. E. by E. about two miles; and the water will ſuddenly ſhoal from 60 to 20 fathoms, at the diſtance of two cables length from the reef. The point itſelf is very ſteep, and care muſt be taken in ſtanding into Port Famine, for the water ſhoals very ſuddenly, and at more than a mile from the ſhore there is but nine feet water, when the tide is out. Soundings will ſoon be got by hauling cloſe round St. Anne's Point; but when there is no more than ſeven fathoms, it will not be ſafe to go farther in.

On Thurſday the 27th, we anchored at noon in Port Famine. Our ſituation was extremely eligible, for we were ſheltered from all winds, except the S. E. which ſeldom blows, and was a ſhip to be driven on ſhore in the bottom of the bay, ſhe could not receive any damage, for it is all fine ſoft ground. In this harbour may be found a conſiderable quantity of excellent wood, either green or dry, the latter lying along the ſhore on both ſides the ſtraits, which are almoſt covered with the trees that have been blown down from the banks and drifted by the high winds. Theſe trees are ſomewhat like our birch, but are of ſo conſiderable a ſize, that the trunks of ſome of them are two feet and a half in diameter, and 60 feet in length. Many of theſe were cut down for our carpenter's uſe, who found, that when properly dried, they were very ſerviceable, though not fit for maſts. As to drift wood, there is a quantity ſufficient to have furniſhed a thouſand ſail.

Port Famine obtained its name from a party of Spaniards, who had planted a colony on the ſhore; but for want of a regular ſupply of proviſions, were ſtarved to death. There are ſtill ſome remains of buildings, though they are now almoſt covered with earth. We ſaw them on a hill, that has been cleared of wood, and which is not far from where our ſhips lay. The river Sedger diſcharges itſelf into the bay. This river is about half a cable's length broad at the entrance, and is juſt navigable for boats. In going into it we met with two flats, one on the ſtarboard-ſide, and the other on the larboard, which we diſcovered at half ebb; theſe render it ſomewhat difficult to go up the river, except after half flood, when it may be navigated with great pleaſure and eaſe, by keeping in the middle of the channel. About two miles up the river it is not above 30 yards over, at which place we found on our right, a fine gravelly ſteep beach, ſo that the boats had the convenience of coming along-ſide of it, in order to receive the water in caſks, which we found to be excellent. The Commodore, with a party, went up the river four miles, but could proceed no farther, the trees which had fallen acroſs the ſtream impeding the boat's way; one of the ſtumps of them having made a hole in her bottom, ſhe was immediately filled with water; but, with difficulty they hauled her on ſhore, and contrived to ſtop the leak, ſo that they made a ſhift to return in her to the ſhip. This river has perhaps as beautiful an appearance as it is poſſible for the moſt luxuriant fancy to conceive. Its agreeable windings are various; and on each ſide is a fine grove of ſtately trees, whoſe lofty heads jut over the river; and form a pleaſant ſhade. Some of them are of a great height, and more than eight feet in diameter, which is proportionably more than eight yards in circumference; ſo that four men joining hands could not compaſs them; among others, we ſaw the pepper-tree, or winter's-bark, in great plenty. To complete this delightful ſpot, the wild notes of different kind of birds are heard on all ſides, and the aromatic ſmell of the various ſorts of flowers which adorn its banks, ſeem to unite in gratifying the ſenſes of the inchanted ſtranger. The flowers with which in many places the ground is covered, are not inferior to thoſe that are commonly found in our gardens, either in beauty or fragrance. Such are the charms which nature has laviſhed on a ſpot, where the Indians alone can behold its beauties; while they are probably inſenſible of thoſe attracting ſcenes, which perſons of the moſt improved taſte might contemplate with no ſmall pleaſure; and were it not for the ſeverity of the cold in winter, this country, by cultivation, might be made the fineſt in the world. The leaves of the trees, the dimenſions of whoſe trunks we have already noticed, reſemble thoſe of our bay-trees. The rind is grey on the outſide and pretty thick. This is the true winter's bark, a name which is obtained from its being brought in the year 1567, from the Straits of Magellan, by Mr. William Winter. This bark, on being taken off the tree and dried, turns to the colour of chocolate. It has an acrid, burning, pungent taſte, and is eſteemed an excellent remedy againſt the ſcurvy. It is, however, extremely fragrant, and the tree, when ſtanding, has a ſtrong aromatick ſmell. We frequently made uſe of the bark on board our ſhip in pies, inſtead of pepper, and being ſteeped in water it gives a very agreeable flavour. Theſe trees are likewiſe found in the woods, in many other places in the ſtraits, and alſo on the eaſt and weſt coaſts of Patagonia. The land in the woods, in ſome places, conſiſts of gravel, in others of ſand, and in others of good brown earth; but old fallen trees and underwood obſtruct the paſſage through them. Theſe woods near the ſhore, extend up the ſides of very high hills, but the mountains further within land riſe much higher, and their barren rugged ſummits covered with ſnow, are ſeen peeping over the hills next the ſhore. Indeed, the land on each ſide the ſhore riſes to a great height, particularly on the iſland of Terra del Fuego, on the ſouth-ſide of the ſtraits, where there are high barren rocks covered with everlaſting ſnow. Theſe have a black dreary aſpect, and muſt have a conſiderable influence on the air, which they render cold and moiſt. This evidently appeared even while we were there, though this was their midſummer, when every thing muſt naturally be in the higheſt perfection. But notwithſtanding the weather, when the ſun ſhone out, was very warm, yet it was unſettled, and we had frequently heavy rain and thick fogs. In the woods are innumerable parrots, and other birds of the moſt beautiful plumage. We ſhot every day geeſe and ducks enough to ſerve the Commodore's table, and that of ſeveral others: we had, indeed, plenty of freſh proviſions of all kinds, particularly fiſh, of which we caught ſuch numbers as ſupplied our men three times a week. We muſt not omit here, that we ſaw many Indian huts, built with ſmall branches of trees, and covered with leaves and mud, but we never met with a ſingle inhabitant. The country between this and Cape Forward, which is diſtant about three leagues, is exceeding fine: the ſoil appears to be very rich, and there are no leſs than three pretty large rivers, beſides many brooks. While we continued in this port, the Commodore and a party went one day to Cape Forward. Upon ſetting out we intended to have gone farther; but the rain having fell very heavy, we were glad to ſtop at the Cape, and make a good fire to dry our clothes. The Indians had departed ſo lately from this place, that the wood, which lay half burnt, was ſtill warm. Soon after our fire was kindled, we perceived another on the Terra del Fuego ſhore, a ſignal, probably, which we did not underſtand. The rain having abated, we walked over the cape, and found the ſtrait to run about W. N. W. The hills as far as we could ſee, were of an immenſe height, very craggy, and covered with ſnow from the very baſe upwards. The Commodore having ordered a tent to be erected on the borders of a wood, and near a rivulet, three ſeamen were ſtationed there to waſh linen, and they lay in the tent. One evening, ſoon after they had retired to reſt, they were awakened by the deep and hollow roarings of ſome wild beaſts, which approached nearer every moment. Terrified with apprehenſions of being devoured, they made and kept up a blazing fire, round which the beaſts walked at a ſmall diſtance till dawn of day, when they retired. We did not credit this ſtory, for the relators could not tell us what kind of beaſts they ſaw, only they were very large; yet it muſt be acknowledged, that, at different times, when on ſhore, we tracked many wild beaſts in the ſand, but never ſaw one. And as we were returning through the woods, we found two very large ſkulls, which by the teeth, appeared to have belonged to ſome beaſts of prey, but of what kind we could not gueſs.

CHAP. II.

The Dolphin and Tamar ſteer back from Port Famine in ſearch of Falkland's Iſlands—Arrive at Port Egmont—Obſervations on this port and the adjacent country—Run from Falkland's Iſlands to Port Deſire, and through the Straits of Magellan as far as Cape Monday—The Florida ſtoreſhip happily diſcovered—A ſtrange ſail makes her appearance, and follows the Dolphin, which proved to be the Eagle, commanded by M. Bougainville—A deſcription of different parts of the Straits—Paſſage from Cape Monday into the South Sea—The Dolphin in a critical ſituation—Obſervations on Tueſday Bay—Enters the Pacific Ocean—And touches at Maſa-Fuero—Obſervations on this Iſland.

A. D. 1765. WE began this New-year in Port Famine, where we enjoyed every bleſſing, which after ſo long a voyage we had reaſon to expect. We had fiſh, wood, and water, in abundance: both our ſhip and the Tamar were in good condition, and the ſucceſs of our voyage, with the continued kindneſs of our Commodore, kept our men in high ſpirits. Having completed the wood and water of both ſhips, and provided every neceſſary that was wanted, on Friday the 4th of January, we weighed, and ſet ſail from Port Famine, ſtanding over to the Iſland of Terra del Fuego, where we ſaw great quantities of ſmoke riſing from different quarters, which we ſuppoſed to be raiſed by various parties of Indians. The intention of the Commodore was now to ſteer back again in ſearch of Falkland's Iſlands. With this view on the 5th, we held on our courſe N. W. by N. four leagues, and then three leagues north, between Elizabeth and Bartholomew Iſlands, after which we ſteered N. E. half E. from the ſecond narrow to the firſt, being a run of eight leagues. We proceeded through the firſt narrow againſt the flood; but the tide of flood ſetting ſtrong to ſouthward, drove the ſhip directly towards the ſouth ſhore, which might have proved of fatal conſequence to the ſhip; for as we were under a very high rocky cliff in 50 fathoms water, if there had happened a ſudden ſquall of wind, we muſt have been inevitably loſt: however, the flood ſet us back again into the entrance of the firſt narrow, and we caſt anchor in 40 fathoms, within two cables length of the ſhore. On the 6th, at one o'clock, A. M. we weighed, and had a pleaſant northerly breeze with the tide of ebb; but this breeze ſoon abating, the tide ſet the ſhip to the N. W. and at five ſhe took the ground on a ſand bank of 15 feet, which reduced us to no ſmall extremity; but providentially, in about half an hour, ſhe ſwung by the force of the tide into deeper water. This ſhoal, not mentioned by any former navigators, is very dangerous, as it lies directly in the track between Cape Virgin Mary and the firſt narrow, and juſt in the middle between the north and ſouth ſhores. It is more than two leagues long, equally broad, and in many places very ſteep; ſo that ſhould a ſhip ground upon it in a hard gale of wind, ſhe would probably ſoon be beat to pieces. When we were upon this bank, Point Poſſeſſion bore N. E. diſtant three leagues, and the entrance of the narrow S. W. diſtant two leagues. About ſix o'clock, A. M. we anchored, and at noon worked with the ebb tide till two, but finding the water ſhoal, we came again to anchor, about half a mile from the ſouth-ſide of the bank: at which time the Aſſes Ears bore N. W. by W. diſtant four leagues. On the 7th, about eight o'clock, A. M. we weighed and ſteered about half a mile S. E. by E. We now got our boats out, and towed the ſhip into the deepeſt water in the ſouth channel; by which means we anchored in 14 fathoms, the tide of flood making ſtrong againſt us; and then being for the diſtance of half a mile round us encompaſſed with ſhoals, that had only eight feet water, we ſent our boat to ſound, in order to find a channel; and after being diſappointed more than once, we at length weighed for the laſt time, and left the coaſt.

On Tueſday the 8th, by obſervation we found ourſelves in latitude 51 deg. 50 min. We now brought to for the Tamar, who had come through the north channel, and was ſome leagues aſtern of us. This day we had ſtrong gales from the weſtward: and in the forenoon a moſt violent ſquall of wind which ſprung our main-maſt, but effectual methods were taken immediately by our carpenter to ſecure it. On the 9th, we were in latitude 52 deg. 8 min. S. and in 68 deg. 31 min. W. longitude, at which time Cape Virgin Mary bore S. 83 deg. W. diſtant 33 leagues. On the 10th, our courſe was N. 18 W. for 13 leagues; and our latitude 51 deg. 31 min. S. longitude 68 deg.

44 min. W On the 11th, our courſe was N. 87 E. for 33 leagues. Cape Virgin Mary bore S. 73 deg. 8 min. W. and Cape Fairweather W. 2 deg. S. This day we had ſtrong gales at S. W. accompanied with a great ſea. In the evening we eſpied land, but our conſort being ſome leagues aſtern, we wore ſhip, and made an eaſy ſail off. On the 12th, at day break, we ſtood in again, and at four o'clock recovered ſight of the land a-head, which was taken for De Werts Iſlands, and at the ſame time we ſaw other land to the ſouth, which appeared to be a conſiderable number of iſlands near each other, ſome of them ſeeming very low, and almoſt even with the ſurface of the water, and which we judged to be what are called in the charts New Iſlands. Intending to ſtand in between theſe, we found the land which appeared to be unconnected, was joined by ſome low ground, and formed a deep bay. When hauling out of this we diſcovered a long low reef of rocks, ſtretching out for more than a league to the northward of us, and another between that, and what we had taken for the northernmoſt of De Werts Iſlands. This land conſiſts chiefly of mountainous and barren rocks, except the low part, which is not ſeen till you approach near it, and the whole has very much the appearance of Staten Land. Birds and ſeals abound here, and we ſaw large whales ſpouting round the ſhip. When we were near enough to diſcern the low land, we found ourſelves wholly embayed, and had it blown hard at S. W. ſo high a ſea muſt have rolled in, as would have made it impoſſible to keep clear of the ſhore; we mention theſe particulars, that all ſhips may hereafter avoid falling into this bay. At noon we obſerved in latitude 51 deg. 27 min. S. and in 63 deg. 54 min. W. longitude.

On Sunday the 13th of January, at day-break, we ſtood in for the north part of the iſland by the coaſt of which we had been embayed. Being about a league to the eaſtward, it fell calm, and poured down torrents of rain, after which a moſt uncommon ſwell came from the weſtward, and ran ſo high, and with ſuch velocity, that we expected every moment it would ſet us very faſt towards the ſhore, as dangerous as any in the world, and we could ſee the ſurge breaking at ſome diſtance from it mountains high; very fortunately for us a freſh gale ſprung up at S. E. with which, to our great joy, we were able to ſtand off, and we would adviſe every one, who may hereafter come this way, to give the north part of this iſland a good birth. We now brought to in latitude 51 deg. S. and in 63 deg. 22 min. W. longitude.

Monday the 14th, we diſcovered a flat iſland covered with tufts of graſs as large as buſhes. We continued our courſe along the ſhore ſix leagues farther, and then ſaw a low rocky iſland, bearing S. E. by E. and diſtant about three leagues from the land we were coaſting, which here forms a very deep bay, and bears E. by N. of the other iſland on which had been ſeen the long tufts of graſs. During the night we ſtood off and on, and on the 15th, at three o'clock, A. M. we ſtood in towards the land, and hoiſted out our boats to ſound. Theſe were gone till noon, when they returned with the agreeable news of having found a fine convenient bay, entirely ſecure from the fury of the winds, with its entrance lying to the northward. The land is on each ſide very high, and the entrance, which is half a mile broad, not in the leaſt dangerous, there being nothing to obſtruct the paſſage, and the depth is from ſeven to 13 fathoms, with ſoft muddy ground. The ſhore of this bay is not encompaſſed with ſunken rocks or ſands, nor is there the leaſt danger in approaching it. In paſſing on the ſtarboard-ſide, many fine ſmall bays and harbours open to the view, and to the third of theſe, which we entered, and found of great extent, the name was given of Port Egmont, in honour of the right honourable the earl of Egmont, firſt lord of the Admiralty, under whoſe direction this voyage was principally undertaken. The mouth of it is S. E. diſtant ſeven leagues from the low rocky iſland; which is a good mark to know it by. At the diſtance of about two miles from the ſhore, there is about eighteen fathoms water; and about three leagues to the weſtward of the harbour, there is a remarkable white ſandy beach, off which a ſhip may anchor till there is an opportunity to run in. We moored in 10 fathoms, with fine holding ground. This harbour is ſo commodious, that we think it proper to give a particular deſcription of that and the adjacent country.

Port Egmont is ſurrounded by a range of iſlands, perfectly disjoined, and each placed in a convenient and agreeable ſituation. There are three different paſſages into this port, one from the S. W. another from the N. E. and the third from the S. E. and this laſt we found capable of receiving a ſhip of the greateſt burthen. This harbour is of ſuch capacity, as to be able to contain the whole royal navy of England, which might lie here in perfect ſecurity. As the adjacent country has all the requiſities for a good ſettlement, it is probable, that was it added to the crown of Great Britain, it would in time become a moſt flouriſhing ſpot. There are here many caſcades of water, which are ſo conveniently ſituated, that by bringing caſks along-ſide the ſhore, many of them may be filled at once. One inconvenience, however, attends this place, which is, that there are no trees; but this is of ſmall conſequence; for in the proper ſeaſon of the year, young trees might eaſily be brought through the ſtraits to theſe iſlands, where there is no doubt but they would grow and proſper. On our firſt arrival we ſowed the ſeeds of turnips, radiſhes, lettuces, &c. and before we left the harbour many of them began to ſpring up very faſt, and we have ſince heard, that ſome perſons who arrived here after our departure, eat of thoſe roots and ſalad. It muſt however be acknowledged, that the wheat which we alſo ſowed, being put into the ground at an improper ſeaſon, though it ſprang up, did not come to perfection. This we learnt from a perſon who lately came from hence in one of his Majeſty's ſhips of war. The paſture ground of this iſland is ſo rich, that the graſs roſe as high as our breaſts, which rendered our walking rather troubleſome. We cut down great quantities of it for the uſe of our ſheep. It is not to be doubted, but that was this country to be properly examined, many valuable diſcoveries might be made with reſpect to its vegetables and minerals; for upon a ſlight ſurvey of the hills, we found a kind of iron ore, and have ſome reaſon to believe, that if an exact ſcrutiny was made, other ores might be found of greater value. On our firſt going on ſhore, the water ſide was entirely covered on every ſide with different kinds of birds, of very beautiful colours, and ſo tame, that in leſs than half an hour we knocked down as many as we could conveniently carry away in our boats; particularly white and painted geeſe, a great number of penguins, cape hens, and other fowls. Thoſe which we called painted geeſe, were nearly of the ſize of ours, only of a different colour, having a ring of green feathers on the body, and ſpots on different parts, with yellow legs. A ſtranger would ſcarcely forbear ſmiling at this time upon ſeeing our ſhip, for never was any ſhop in Leadenhall-market ſo plentifully ſupplied with poultry, and the men in every part were buſily employed in picking them. As by experience we found they had a ſtrong taſte from their feeding upon ſea-weeds, ſmall fiſh, and particularly limpits, of which there are great plenty as large as oyſters, we found out a new method of dreſſing them, which rendered even theſe fowls extremely palatable; ſo that we had as much proviſions, and of the niceſt ſorts, as we could deſire. The method we purſued, was by cutting them into pieces over night, and letting them lie in ſalt-water till the next day, and after being thus purged by lying in ſoak, we made them, with a ſufficient quantity of flour, into pies. Beſides theſe fowls, we met with a prodigious quantity of ducks, ſnipes, teal, plover, ſmall birds, and freſh-water geeſe, which laſt, living entirely by the freſh ponds, have a moſt delicious taſte, and are not inferior to thoſe we are accuſtomed to eat in England. They are entirely white except their legs. We frequently ſent two of our men in ſearch of them, who were ſure to bring home half a dozen, or more, which they found a ſufficient load, being not a little encumbered by the height of the graſs. We found alſo a great number of ſeals, ſome of them very large, and ſeveral men were employed on ſhore, at a place we called Blubber's Bay, from the number of thoſe animals we killed for their oil: for when boiled they yielded a ſufficient quantity of it for the ſhips companies to burn in lamps, while the men preſerved their ſkins for waiſtcoats, and other uſes. We were not ſurpriſed at meeting with ſuch a great number of ſeals, when we afterwards found that they had ſometimes 18 or more, at a litter. Sea-lions of a prodigious ſize are alſo found on the coaſt. The Commodore was once unexpectedly attacked by one of theſe, and extricated himſelf from the impending danger with great difficulty. We had many battles with this amphibious animal, the killing one of which was frequently an hour's work for ſix men: one of them almoſt tore to pieces the Commodore's maſtiff dog by a ſingle bite. The maſter having been ſent to ſound the coaſt, four very fierce animals ran after the boat's crew till they were up to the middle in water, and having no fire-arms, they were obliged to put off from the ſhore. The next day the Commodore and his party ſaw a ſea-lion of an enormous ſize, and the crew being well armed inſtantly engaged him. While they were thus employed, one of the other animals poſted towards them; but a ball being inſtantly lodged in his body, he was ſoon diſpatched. Five of theſe creatures were killed in their attempts to ſeize the men, whom they always purſued the moment they got ſight of them. They were of a mixed ſhape, between a wolf and a fox, moſt like the latter, but of the ſize of the former. They burrow in the ground like a fox, feed on ſeals and penguins, and are very numerous on the coaſt. The ſailors, in order to be rid of ſuch diſagreeable intruders, ſet fire to the graſs, which burnt ſo rapidly, that the country was all in a blaze for a few days, and theſe animals were ſeen running to ſeek ſhelter from the fury of the flames. On the north-ſide of this harbour is the principal iſland, to which we frequently went on ſhore, on account of its ſituation, and the fine proſpect it afforded from a prodigious high hill, which cannot be aſcended without difficulty; but on gaining the ſummit, the great fatigue of aſcending it, is fully recompenced, by the delightful view it commands of the ſhips at anchor, with every part of the harbour; of the three paſſages into Port Egmont, the ſea which ſurrounds you on every ſide; and all the adjacent iſlands, which are upwards of fifty, ſmall and great, all of which appeared covered with verdure. While we lay in this harbour the crew breakfaſted on portable-ſoup and wild celery, thickned with oatmeal, which made a very nutritive meſs.

On Wedneſday the 23d, the Commodore, with the Captains of the Dolphin and Tamar, and the principal officers went on ſhore, where the Union Jack being erected on a high ſtaff, and ſpread, the Commodore took poſſeſſion of this harbour, and all the neighbouring iſlands, for his Majeſty king George the third, his heirs and ſucceſſors, by the name of Falkland's Iſlands. The colours were no ſooner ſpread, than a ſalute was fired from the ſhip. Our ſeamen were very merry on the occaſion, a large bowl of arrack punch being carried on ſhore, out of which they drank, among many other toaſts, Succeſs to the diſcovery of ſo fine a harbour. It was the opinion of the honourable Commodore Byron, that theſe iſlands are the ſame land to which Cowley gave the name of Pepys's Iſland, and as the Commodore ſeems not to entertain a doubt in his own mind, we ſhall lay before our readers, the reaſons he has been pleaſed to give the public in ſupport of his opinion:

“ In the printed account of Cowley's voyage” (obſerves Commodore Byron) he ſays, “ We held our courſe S. W. till we came into the latitude of 47 deg. where we ſaw land, the ſame being an iſland, not before known, lying to the weſtward of us: it was not inhabited, and I gave it the name of Pepys's Iſland. We found it a very commodious place for ſhips to water at, and take in wood, and it has a very good harbour, where a thouſand ſail of ſhips may ſafely ride. Here is great plenty of fowls, and, we judge, abundance of fiſh, by reaſon of the grounds being nothing but rocks and ſands.” To this account there is annexed a repreſentation of Pepys's Iſland, in which names are given to ſeveral points and head lands, and the harbour is called Admiralty Bay; yet it appears that Cowley had only a diſtant view of it, for he immediately adds, “ the wind being ſo extraordinary high that we could not get into it to water, we ſtood to the ſouthward, ſhaping our courſe S. S. W. till we came into the latitude of 53 deg.” and though he ſays, that “ it was commodious to take in wood,” and it is known that there is no wood on Falkland's Iſlands, Pepys's Iſland and Falkland's Iſland may, notwithſtanding, be the ſame; for upon Falkland's Iſlands there are immenſe quantities of flags with narrow leaves, reeds, and ruſhes, which grow in cluſters, ſo as to form buſhes about three feet high, and then ſhoot about ſix or ſeven feet higher: theſe at a diſtance have greatly the appearance of wood, and were taken for wood by the French who landed there in the year 1764, as appears by Pernetty's account of their voyage. It has been ſuggeſted, that the latitude of Pepys's Iſland might, in the manuſcript from which the account of Cowley's voyage was printed, be expreſſed in figures, which if ill made, might equally reſemble 47 and 51; and therefore as there is no iſland in theſe ſeas in latitude 47, and as Falkland's Iſlands lie nearly in 51, that 51 might reaſonably be concluded to be the number for which the figures were intended to ſtand: recourſe therefore was had to the Britiſh Muſeum, and a manuſcript journal of Cowley's was there found. In this manuſcript no mention is made of an iſland not before known, to which he gave the name of Pepys's Iſland, but land is mentioned in latitude 47 deg. 40 min. expreſſed in words at length, which exactly anſwers to the deſcription of what is called Pepys's Iſland in the printed account, and which here, he ſays, he ſuppoſed to be the Iſlands of Sebald de Wert. This part of the manuſcript is in the following words: “ January 1683, This month wee were in the latitude of 47 deg. and 40 min. where wee eſpied an iſland bearing weſt from us, wee having the wind at N. E. wee bore away for it, it being too late for us to goe on ſhoare, we lay by all night. The iſland ſeemed very pleaſant to the eye, with many woods, I may as well ſay, the whole land was woods. There being a rock lying above water to the eaſtward of it, where were an innumerable company of fowles, being of the bigneſſe of a ſmall gooſe, which fowles would ſtrike at our men as they were aloft: ſome of them wee killed and eat: they ſeemed to us very good, only taſted ſomewhat fiſhy. I ſailed along that iſland to the ſouthward, and about the S. W. ſide of the iſland there ſeemed to me to be a good place for ſhipps to ride; I would have had the boat out to have gone into the harbour, but the wind blew freſh, and they would not agree to go with it. Sailing a little further, keeping the lead, and having 26 and 27 fathoms water, until wee came to a place, where wee ſaw the weeds ride, having the lead againe found but ſeaven fathoms water. Fearing danger went about the ſhipp there, were then fearefull to ſtay by the land any longer, it being all rocky ground, but the harbour ſeemed to be a good place for ſhipps to ride there; in the iſland ſeeming likewiſe to have water enough; there ſeemed to me to be harbour for 500 ſaile of ſhipps. The going in but narrow, and the north-ſide of the entrance ſhallow water that I could ſee, but I verily believe that there is water enough for any ſhipp to goe in on the ſouth-ſide, for there cannot be ſo great a lack of water, but muſt needs ſcowre a channell away at the ebbe deepe enough for ſhipping to goe in. I would have had them ſtood upon a wind all night, but they told me they were not come out to go upon diſcovery. Wee ſaw likewiſe another iſland by this that night, which made me think them the Sibble D'wards. The ſame night we ſteered our courſe againe W. S. W. which was but our S. W. the compaſſe having two and twenty degrees variation eaſterly, keeping that courſe till we came in the latitude of three and fifty degrees.”

In both the printed and manuſcript account, this land is ſaid to lie in latitude forty-ſeven, to be ſituated to the weſtward of the ſhip when firſt diſcovered, to appear woody, to have an harbour where a great number of ſhips might ride in ſafety, and to be frequented by innumerable birds. It appears alſo by both accounts, that the weather prevented his going on ſhore, and that he ſteered from it weſt-ſouth-weſt, till he came into latitude fifty-three: there can therefore be little doubt but that Cowley gave the name of Pepys's iſland after he came home, to what he really ſuppoſed to be the iſland of Sebald de Wert, for which it is not difficult to aſſign ſeveral reaſons; and though the ſuppoſition of a miſtake of the figures does not appear to be well grounded, yet, there being no land in forty-ſeven, the evidence that what Cowley ſaw was Falkland's iſlands, is very ſtrong. The deſcription of the country agrees in almoſt every particular, and even the map is of the ſame general figure, with a ſtrait running up the middle. The two principal iſlands have been probably called Falkland's iſlands by Strong, about the year 1689, as he is known to have given the name of Falkland's Sound to part of the ſtrait which divides them. The journal of this navigator is ſtill unprinted in the Britiſh Muſeum. The firſt who ſaw theſe iſlands is ſuppoſed to be Captain Davies, the aſſociate of Cavendiſh in 1692. In 1594, Sir Richard Hawkins ſaw land, ſuppoſed to be the ſame, and in honour of his miſtreſs, Queen Elizabeth, called them Hawkin's Maiden Land. Long afterwards they were ſeen by ſome French ſhips from St. Maloes, and Frezier, probably for that reaſon, called them the Malouins, a name which has been ſince adopted by the Spaniards." So much for the diſpute concerning the diſcovery of theſe celebrated iſlands, which the Spaniards now enjoy unmoleſted, while to England only remains the empty honour of having diſcovered, explored, and given them a name.

We had now completed our watering, ſurveyed the harbour of Port Egmont, and provided every neceſſary for our departure. This evening the ſmith came on board, he having been employed on ſhore, in making and repairing iron work for the uſe of the ſhip. We continued in the harbour till Sunday the 27th, when, at eight o'clock, A. M. we left Port Egmont, and ſailed with the wind at ſouth-ſouth-weſt. But we were ſcarcely out at ſea, when it began to blow hard, and the weather became ſo extremely hazy, that we could not ſee the rocky iſlands. We now moſt heartily wiſhed to be ſafe anchored in Egmont harbour; but contrary to our expectations, in a ſhort time the weather cleared up, though it blew a hard gale all the day. At ten o'clock, after having run along the ſhore eaſt, about five leagues, we ſaw a remarkable head-land, which was named Cape Tamar. Five leagues farther we paſſed a rock, and called it Ediſtone. We now ſailed between this and another head-land, to which was given the name of Cape Dolphin, in the direction of eaſt-north-eaſt, five leagues farther. The diſtance from Cape Tamar to Cape Dolphin, is about eight leagues, and from its having the appearance of a ſound, it was called Carliſle Sound, though it is ſince known to be the northern entrance of the ſtrait between the two principal iſlands. We ſteered from Cape Dolphin along the ſhore eaſt, half north, to a low flat cape, or head-land, and then brought to. During the courſe of this day, the land we ſaw was all downs, having neither trees nor buſhes, but large tufts of graſs in various places. It may not be improper here to take notice, that as in moſt of the charts of Patagonia, an iſland is deſcribed by the name of Pepys's iſland, as hath already been mentioned, where travellers have aſſerted, that they have ſeen trees in abundance, and many rills of water; but that after ſeveral attempts in the latitude where it was ſaid to be diſcovered, no iſland nor any ſounding could be found; in juſtice to the pretended diſcoverers of that and other imaginary iſlands, we here beg leave again to obſerve, that they probably had no intention to deceive; for on this coaſt, where you meet with frequent gales of wind, and thick foggy weather, we found the banks of fogs were apt to deceive even an accurate obſerver, and make him miſtake them for land. Thus we ourſelves have frequently imagined, that we ſaw land very near; but ſuddenly a breeze of wind ſpringing up, our ſuppoſed land diſappeared, though we did not think ourſelves above a league and a half from it, and convinced us of our miſtake by opening to our view an unbounded proſpect. So eaſily does the mind of man, when ſet on one particular object, form to itſelf chimerical notions of its darling purſuit, and when harraſſed, as we will ſuppoſe, by the diſtreſſes that frequently attend an enterprize of this nature, make an imaginary diſcovery of land, where nothing but a thick fog, and a vaſt extent of ſea, are to be found.

On Monday the 28th, at four o'clock, A. M. we made ſail, and ſteered eaſt-ſouth-eaſt, and ſouth-ſouth-eaſt to two low rocky iſlands, about a mile from the main; and to a deep ſound between theſe, we gave the name of Berkley's Sound. About four miles to the ſouthward of the ſouth point of this ſound, the ſea breaks very high, on ſome rocks that appear above water. The coaſt now wore a dangerous aſpect; rocks and breakers being at a conſiderable diſtance from the ſhore, and in all directions, and the country appeared barren and deſolate, much reſembling that part of Terra del Fuego which lies near Cape Horn. The ſea riſing here very high, we tacked and ſtood to the northward, to prevent our being driven on a lee-ſhore. Having now run no leſs then ſeventy leagues of this iſland, we concluded, it muſt be of conſiderable extent. Some former navigators have made Falkland's iſlands, to be about two hundred miles in circumference, but in the opinion of our Commodore, they are near 700 miles. At noon we hauled the wind and ſtood to the northward, the entrance of Berkley's Sound bearing at three o'clock, S. W. by W. ſix leagues off; and in the evening we ſtood to the weſtward, the wind having ſhifted to the S. W. On Tueſday, the 5th of February, at one o'clock P. M. we again made the coaſt of Patagonia, bearing S. W. by S. ſix leagues diſtant. At two we paſſed by Penguin Iſland; and at three ſtanding towards the harbour of Port Deſire, which was two leagues diſtant, we to our great ſatisfaction, diſcovered the Flora ſtoreſhip, which had been fitted out at Deptford, and had on board a great quantity of new baked bread, packed in new caſks, beſides brandy, flour, beef, and all ſuch neceſſary proviſions and ſtores for the uſe of our two ſhips. This veſſel, whoſe arrival was ſo opportune for the proſecution of our voyage, was diſpatched by the lords of the Admiralty, with as much ſecrecy as the Dolphin, with reſpect to the ignorance of the men on board as to their place of deſtination. When ſhe firſt ſailed from Deptford, ſhe was fitted out for Florida; nor did the maſter know, till he arrived ſouthward of the line, that he was ordered to recruit the Commodore's veſſels. We had for ſome time paſt been uneaſy, concluding that this ſhip had probably met with ſome accident that had obliged her to return: but her appearance agreeably removed all the anxiety we had felt from this groundleſs conjecture; and indeed it was very happy for us, that we fell in with her at this juncture, which was the more ſeaſonable, as for ſome time we had been reduced to a ſhort allowance of certain articles of proviſions, which ſhe was able to ſupply us with; but had this not been the caſe, a worſe conſequence muſt have enſued, namely, that of being obliged to ſteer to the Cape of Good Hope, in order to purchaſe proviſions, and conſequently loſing our voyage; as by this delay it would be too late for us to attempt a paſſage into the South Sea, either by paſſing the ſtraits of Magellan, or doubling Cape Horn, conſequently an end would be put to all our diſcoveries, and the expence of fitting us out be thrown away. At four o'clock P. M. having anchored in Port Deſire, the maſter of the ſtoreſhip came on board the Dolphin, bringing a packet from the lords of the Admiralty to the Commodore. This perſon was a midſhipman in his Majeſty's ſervice, and was to have a commiſſion as ſoon as he found the Commodore. He had been ſeveral days in ſearch of Pepys's Iſland; but was like us obliged to deſiſt, and having croſſed the latitude in which it was ſuppoſed to lie, had met with a ſtorm that had greatly damaged his maſts and ſails. In the evening the maſter of the Florida left the Dolphin, and by order of the Commodore, our carpenters attended him on board his own ſhip, to repair the damages ſhe had ſuſtained. During our run from Falkland's iſlands to Port Deſire, the number of whales about the Dolphin rendered our navigation dangerous. One blew the water upon our quarter deck, and we were near ſtriking upon another; they were of uncommon ſize, much larger than any we had yet ſeen.

On Thurſday the 7th, the night proved very tempeſtuous; when both the Tamar and Florida made ſignals of diſtreſs, having been driven from their moorings up the harbour. They were got clear of the ſhore with great difficulty, as they were the next night, when they both drove again. Finding the ſtoreſhip was in conſtant danger of being loſt, the deſign of unloading her in this harbour was given up, and the Commodore determined to take her with him into the ſtrait. Capt. Mouat of the Tamar having alſo informed us, that his rudder was ſprung, it was ſecured with iron clamps in the beſt manner he could, there being no timber to be found proper for making her a new one. Having by the thirteenth completed the repairs of our reſpective ſhips, we made ready to leave this port, as by the rapidity of the tide, the boats could have little or no communication with the ſtore-ſhip: it was therefore reſolved to ſail back to the Eaſtward, and take in our ſtores at one of the Ports we had before viſited. One of our petty officers, well acquainted with the ſtrait, and four of our ſeamen, were put on board the Florida, to aſſiſt in navigating her, and ſhe was ordered to make the beſt of her way to Port Famine. On the 14th, we put to ſea, and when, a few hours after, abreaſt of Penguin Iſland, we got ſight of the ſtore-ſhip a long way to the eaſtward. On Saturday the 16th, about ſix o'clock, A. M. Cape Fairweather bore W. S. W. diſtant five leagues; and on the 17th, we hauled in for the ſtrait of Magellan, and at ſix o'clock A. M. Cape Virgin Mary bore S. diſtant five miles. On the 18th, we paſſed the firſt narrow. To our great ſurprize, in the morning of the ſecond day after we left Port Deſire, we diſcovered a ſtrange ſail, which our Commodore apprehended might be a Spaniſh man of war of the line, who was come to intercept us; and in conſequence of that ſurmiſe, boldly gave orders, that all on board the Dolphin and Tamar ſhould prepare to give her a warm reception by firing all our guns, and then boarding her from both ſhips: but while we were bringing to and waiting for her, it grew dark, and we loſt ſight of her, till the next morning, when we ſaw her at three leagues diſtance, and found ſhe ſtill followed us, while we ſailed towards Point Famine. She even came to an anchor when we did. We were now employed in getting up our guns, having only four upon deck, which had been uſed for ſignals, the reſt having for a conſiderable time before lain in the hold. We ſoon however got fourteen upon deck, and then came to an anchor, having the Tamar a-ſtern, with a ſpring on our cable; and that we might give her as warm a reception as poſſible, we removed all our guns to one ſide, pointing to the place where the veſſel muſt paſs. While we were thus buſily employed in taking all the meaſures prudence could ſuggeſt to defend us from an imaginary danger, an accident that happened to the ſtore-ſhip ſhewed that we had nothing to fear, and that the veſſel againſt which we were arming ourſelves, ought not to be conſidered as an enemy; for while the Florida was working to the windward, ſhe took the ſhore, on a bank about two leagues from our ſhip. About the ſame time the ſtrange veſſel came up with her, and ſeeing her diſtreſs caſt anchor; and immediately began to hoiſt out her boats to give her aſſiſtance; but before they had reached the ſtore-ſhip, our boats had boarded her, and the commanding officer had received orders not to let them come on board; but to thank them in the politeſt manner for their intended aſſiſtance. Theſe orders were punctually obeyed, and with the aid of our boats only, the ſtore-ſhip was ſoon after got into deep water. Our people reported, that the French veſſel was full of men, and ſeemed to have a great many officers. At ſix o'clock in the evening, we worked through the ſecond narrow; and at ten paſſed the weſt end of it. We anchored at eleven off Elizabeth's Iſland, and the French ſhip did the ſame, in a bad ſituation, ſouthward of St. Bartholomew's Iſland, whereby we were convinced ſhe was not well acquainted with the channel.

On Tueſday the 19th we weighed, and at ſix o'clock, A. M. we ſteered between Elizabeth and Bartholomew Iſlands, S. S. W. five miles, when we croſſed a bank, where among the weeds we had ſeven fathoms water. This bank is ſituated W. S. W. above five miles from the middle of George's Iſland. To avoid danger, it is neceſſary to keep near Elizabeth's Iſland, till the weſtern-ſhore is but a ſhort diſtance, and then a ſouthern courſe may be ſailed with great ſafety, till the reef, which lies about four miles to the northward of St. Anne's Point, is in ſight. The Frenchman ſtill followed us, and we thought ſhe came from Falkland's Iſlands, where is a French ſettlement, to take in wood, or that ſhe was on a ſurvey of the Strait of Magellan, in which we were now ſailing. On the 20th, we hoiſted out our boats, and towed round St. Anne's Point into Port Famine. Here we anchored, at ſix in the evening, and ſoon after the French ſhip paſſed by us to the ſouthward. During our ſtay in this port, we were principally employed, in receiving proviſions from the ſtore-ſhip, and completing our wood and water. On the 25th, finding that both the ſhips had received as much ſtores and proviſions as they could poſſibly ſtow, the Commodore ſent home all the draughts of the places he had cauſed to be taken by the ſtore-ſhip, with expreſs orders, that if they were in any danger of being boarded and examined by any foreign ſhips, their firſt care ſhould be to throw the plans and pacquets into the ſea. On taking leave of the Florida, our boatſwain, and all that were ſick on board the Dolphin and Tamar, obtained leave to return in her to England; the Commodore in the mean time, declaring openly to the crew in general, that if any of them were averſe to proceeding on the voyage, they had free liberty to return; an offer which only one of our men accepted. We now with the Tamar ſailed from Port Famine, intending to puſh through the ſtrait before the ſeaſon ſhould be too far advanced. At noon we were three leagues diſtant from St. Anne's Point, which bore N. W. three or four miles from Point Shutup, which bore S. S. W. Point Shutup bears from St. Anne's Point, S. half E. and they are about four or five leagues aſunder. Between theſe two points there is a flat-ſhoal, which runs from Port Famine before the river Sedger, and three miles to the ſouthward. At three o'clock, P. M. we paſſed the French ſhip, which now anchored in a ſmall cove. She had hauled cloſe to the ſhore, and we could ſee large piles of wood cut down, and lying on each ſide of her. Upon our return to England, we learnt this ſhip was the Eagle, commanded by M. Bougainville, and that her buſineſs in the ſtrait was, as the Commodore had conjectured, to cut wood for the French ſettlement in Falkland's Iſlands. From Cape Shutup to Cape Forward, the courſe is S. W. by S. diſtance ſeven leagues. At eight in the evening we brought to, Cape Forward bearing N. W. half W. diſtant about a mile. This part of the ſtrait is eight miles over, and off the cape we had 40 fathoms within half a cable's length of the ſhore.

On the 26th, at four o'clock, A. M. we made ſail, and at ten we kept working to windward, looking out at the ſame time for an anchoring-place, and endeavouring to reach a bay about two leagues to the weſtward of Cape Forward. An officer was ſent into this bay to ſound, who finding it fit for our purpoſe we entered it, and at ſix o'clock P. M. anchored in nine fathoms water. On the 27th, at ſix o'clock, A. M. we continued our courſe through the ſtrait, from Cape Holland to Cape Gallant. This cape is very high and ſteep, and between it and the former cape is a reach, three leagues over, called Engliſh Reach. Five miles ſouth of Cape Gallant is Charles's Iſland, of which it is neceſſary to keep to the northward. We ſteered along the north ſhore, at the diſtance of about two miles. Eaſtward of Cape Holland is a ſpacious ſandy bay, called Wood's Bay, in which there is good anchorage. The mountains on each ſide the ſtrait are more deſolate in appearance than any others in the world, except perhaps the Cordeliers, both being rude, craggy, ſteep, and covered from the bottom to their ſummits with ſnow. From Cape Gallant to Paſſage Point, diſtant about three leagues, the coaſt lies W. by N. by compaſs. Paſſage Point is the eaſt point of Elizabeth's Bay, and is low land, off of which lies a rock. Between this and Cape Gallant are ſeveral iſlands, ſome very ſmall; but the eaſternmoſt, Charles's Iſland, is ſix miles long: the next is called Monmouth's Iſland, and the weſternmoſt, Rupert's Iſland: this lies S. by E. of Point Paſſage. Theſe group of iſlands make the ſtrait narrow: between Port Paſſage and Rupert's Iſland, it is not more than two miles over, and it is adviſeable for navigators to go to the northward of them all, keeping the north-ſhore on board.

On Wedneſday the 27th, at ſix o'clock, P. M. we ſtood in for Elizabeth's Bay, and anchored in ten fathoms, good ground. In this bay there is a good rivulet of freſh water. On the 28th, we met with exceſſive gales from the W. N. W. which blew with ſuch violence, that we were driven three leagues to the eaſtward, where we caſt anchor on the top of a rock, in 13 fathoms and a half water, a cable's length from the bay: but ſoon after we parted, or rather ſtarted our ſtream anchor, and fell off the rock: it was very dark, and the ſhip ſtill kept driving with her whole cable out, and was in the greateſt danger of being loſt; however, we let go both bowers in 17 fathoms water. The wind ſtill continued to blow very hard, and the ſhip was ſo near the rocks, that the boats could but juſt keep clear of the ſurf off the ſhore: but that Providence which had hitherto attended us, ſtill continued to be our friend, and preſerved us from impending deſtruction; for the next morning we hove in the cable of our ſtream-anchor, both the flukes of which were broke; and being thus rendered uſeleſs, it was thrown overboard. We now with our gib and ſtay-ſails ran out into 10 fathoms, till we were exactly in the ſituation from whence we had been driven, where we anchored with our beſt bower.

On Friday the 1ſt of March, at five o'clock, A. M. we weighed, attended with light gales and moderate weather. At ſeven paſſed Muſcle Bay, a league to the weſtward of Elizabeth's, on the ſouthern ſhore. At eight we were two leagues W. by N. of this bay, and abreaſt of Bachelor's River, which is on the north ſhore. A league from hence lies the entrance of St. Jerom's Sound, which we paſſed at nine. In our courſe along this coaſt we ſaw a ſmoke, and ſoon after diſcovered a great number of Indians in detached parties, ſome of whom, on ſeeing us, put their canoes into the water, and made towards our ſhip. When within muſket ſhot, they began a moſt hideous ſhouting, and we hallooed, and waved our hands, as ſignals for them to come on board, which after having frequently repeated, they did. On entering the ſhip they ſurveyed it with no ſmall ſigns of aſtoniſhment, as if they had never ſeen a veſſel of the like kind before. Theſe Indians were in general of a middling ſtature; and of a very brown complexion, with long black hair, that hung down to their ſhoulders. Their bodies were covered with the ſkin of ſome animals unknown to us; but many of the poor wretches had not a ſufficient quantity to cover their nakedneſs. We trafficked with them, or rather gave them abundance of things, particularly cloaths, which they ſeemed to receive with thankfulneſs: they were alſo exceeding fond of the biſcuit, which we diſtributed among them pretty freely, though they appeared rather unwilling to part with any thing in return. Some of theſe people had bows and arrows, made of ſuch hard wood, that it ſeemed almoſt impenetrable; the bows were not only exceeding tough and ſmooth, but wrought with very curious workmanſhip; and the ſtring was formed of a twiſted gut. The arrows, which were about two feet long, were pointed with flint ſhaped like a harpoon, and cut with as great nicety, as if they had been ſhaped by the moſt exact lapidary; and at the other end a feather was fixed to direct its flight. They have alſo javelins. Theſe Indians ſeem to be very poor and perfectly harmleſs, coming forth to their reſpective employments at the dawn of day, and when the ſun ſets, retiring to their different habitations. They live almoſt entirely on fiſh, and particularly on limpets and muſcles, the latter of which they have in great plenty, and much larger than thoſe we met with in England. Their boats are but indifferently put together: they are made chiefly of the bark of trees, and are juſt big enough to hold one family: when they land, being very light, they haul them upon ſhore, out of the reach of the tide, and ſeem very careful in preſerving them. In the ſtructure of ſome of theſe boats no ſmall degree of ingenuity is evident. They are formed of three pieces, one at the bottom, which ſerves for the keel and part of the ſides, and is faſhioned both within and without by means of fire; upon this are placed two upper pieces, one on each ſide, which are ſewed together, and to the bottom part, like a ſeam ſewed with a needle and thread. All their boats in general are very narrow, and each end formed alike, both ſharp, and riſing up a conſiderable height. Theſe Indians are very dexterous in ſtriking the fiſh from their canoes with their javelins, though they lie ſome feet under water. In theſe inſtances, they ſeem to ſhew the utmoſt extent of their ingenuity; for we found them incapable of underſtanding things the moſt obvious to their ſenſes. On their firſt coming aboard, among the trinkets we gave them were ſome knives and ſciſſars, and we tried to make them ſenſible of their uſe; but after our repeated endeavours, by ſhewing the manner of uſing them, they continued as inſenſible as at firſt, and could not learn to diſtinguiſh the blades from the handles. There are plenty of ſeals in this part of the ſtraits, but we did not meet with many fowl, owing doubtleſs to the intenſe cold, nor did we find the woods infeſted with any kind of wild beaſts. On ſailing to the weſtward we found an irregular tide, which ſometimes ran 18 hours to the eaſtward, and but ſix to the weſtward; at other times, when the weſterly winds blew with any degree of ſtrength, it would conſtantly run for ſeveral days to the eaſt. At intervals we had hard gales of wind, and prodigious ſqualls from the high mountains, whoſe ſummits are covered with ſnow. The ſtraits are here four leagues over, and it is difficult to get any anchorage, on account of the unevenneſs, and irregularity of the bottom, which in ſeveral places cloſe to the ſhore has from 20 to 15 fathoms water, and in other parts no ground is to be found with a line of 150 fathoms. We now ſteered W. S. W. for Cape Quod. Between this and Elizabeth's Bay is a reach about four miles over, called Crooked Reach. In the evening of the 4th, we anchored abreaſt of Batchelor's River, in 14 fathoms. The entrance of the river bore N. by E. diſtant one mile, and the northernmoſt point of St. Jerom's Sound, W. N. W. diſtant three miles. About three quarters of a mile eaſtward of Batchelor's River, lies a ſhoal, upon which there is not more than ſix feet water when the tide is out: it is diſtant about half a mile from the ſhore, and may be known by the weeds that are upon it. We here ſaw ſeveral Indians diſperſed in different quarters, among whom we found a family which ſtruck our attention. It was compoſed of a decrepit old man, his wife, two ſons and a daughter. The latter appeared to have tolerable features, and an Engliſh face, which they ſeemed deſirous of letting us know; they making a long harangue, not a ſyllable of which we underſtood, though we plainly perceived it was in relation to the woman, whoſe age did not exceed thirty, by their pointing firſt at her, and then at themſelves. Various were the conjectures we formed in regard to this circumſtance, though we all agreed that their ſigns plainly ſhewed that they offered her to us, as being of the ſame country. In one particular they appeared to be quite uncivilized, for when we came up to them, they were tearing to pieces and devouring raw fiſh. On the 5th, we ſent the boats a-head to tow, but could not gain a bay on the north ſhore, which appeared to be an excellent harbour, fit to receive five or ſix ſail; we were therefore obliged to caſt anchor on a bank, with the ſtream anchor, Cape Quod bearing W. S. W. diſtant about ſix miles. An officer was now ſent to look out for a harbour, but he did not ſucceed.

On Wedneſday the 6th, we moored in a little bay oppoſite Cape Quod; and the Tamar, which could not work up ſo far, about ſix miles to the eaſtward of it. This part of the ſtrait is only four miles over, and its aſpect dreary and deſolate beyond imagination, owing to the prodigious mountains on each ſide of it, which riſe above the clouds, and are covered with perpetual ſnow.

On Thurſday the 7th, at eight o'clock we weighed, and worked with the tide. At noon, Cape Quod bore E. by S. and Cape Monday, the weſternmoſt land in ſight on the ſouth ſhore, W. by N. diſtant ten leagues. The tides here are very ſtrong, and the ebb ſets to the weſtward, with an irregularity for which it is very difficult to account. At one the Tamar anchored oppoſite Cape Quod, in the bay we had juſt left; and in the evening we anchored in a ſmall bay on the north ſhore, five leagues to the weſtward of Cape Quod. The marks to know this bay are two large rocks that appear above water, and a low point, which makes the eaſt part of the bay. The anchorage is between the two rocks, the eaſternmoſt bearing N. E. half E. diſtant about two cables length, and the weſternmoſt, which is near the point, W. N. W. half W. at about the ſame diſtance: there is alſo a ſmall rock which ſhows itſelf among the weeds at low water, and bears E. half N. diſtant about two cables length. Should there be more ſhips than two, they may anchor farther out in deeper water. We found in this part of the ſtrait few birds of any kind, and but a ſmall quantity of muſcles along the ſhore; and though we ſent out our boat into a bay to haul the ſeine, it returned without ſucceſs, not any fiſh being to be found. However, we frequently found great quantities of red berries, ſomewhat reſembling our cranberries, which being wholeſome and refreſhing proved of conſiderable ſervice to the ſhip's company. They are about the ſize of an hazle nut, and the chief proviſions of the Indians in theſe parts. On the 8th, we found abundance of ſhell-fiſh, but ſaw no traces of people. In the afternoon, the Commodore went up a deep lagoon under a rock, at the head of which was a fine fall of water, and on the eaſt-ſide of it ſeveral ſmall coves, calculated for the reception of ſhips of the greateſt burthen. He returned with a boat load of very large muſcles. On the 9th, we got under way, at ſeven o'clock, A. M. and at eight ſaw the Tamar very far aſtern. We now ſtood to the N. W. with a pleaſant breeze at S. by E. but when abreaſt of Cape Monday Bay, the wind took us back, and continued from ſix o'clock to eight, at which time Cape Monday Bay bore E. half N. ſix leagues. On the 10th, at ſix o'clock, A. M. Cape Upright bore E. by S. diſtant three leagues. From Cape Monday to Cape Upright, which are both on the ſouth ſhore, and diſtant from each other about five leagues, the courſe is W. by N. At ten a violent ſtorm of wind came on, which was very near effecting our deſtruction; for it was very thick rainy weather, and we ſuddenly diſcovered ſunken rocks on our lee-bow, juſt appearing above the ſurface of the water, at the diſtance of about half a mile from us. We tacked immediately, and in half an hour it blew ſo hard, that we were obliged to bear up before the wind, and go in ſearch of an harbour. We were ſoon after joined by the Tamar, who had been ſix or ſeven leagues to the eaſtward of us all night. At ſix in the evening we came to anchor in a bay, in 16 fathoms water; but the anchor falling from the bank into 50 fathoms, the ſhip almoſt drove on ſhore; happily the anchor cloſing with a rock brought us up. We now weighed, and on the 11th ſteered into a proper anchoring place, on a bank, where the Tamar was riding, entirely ſurrounded with high precipices, where we lay not more than two cables length from the ſhore. There is a baſon at the bottom of this bay, within which is ten fathoms, and room enough for ſix or ſeven ſail to lie in perfect ſecurity. Having at this time heavy ſqualls of wind, attended with much rain, the Commodore, with a generoſity that endeared him to the crew, diſtributed as much cloth among the ſailors as would make all of them long waiſtcoats; a preſent highly acceptable at this ſeaſon of the year, and the more ſo, as the officers and men, on leaving England, from their expecting to ſail directly to India, had provided no thick cloathing. And that no partiality might be ſhewn to thoſe on board his own ſhip, he ordered a ſufficient quantity for the uſe of Capt. Mouat's company in the Tamar.

On Tueſday the 12th, while we were employed in ſearching after wood and water, the Tamar's boat was ſent to the weſtward, with an officer from both ſhips, to look for harbours on the ſouthern ſhore. On the 14th, the boat returned with the agreeable news, that they had found ſeveral bays, particularly five between the ſhip's ſtation and Cape Upright, where we might anchor in ſafety. When the Commodore heard this, in order to encourage his men in the diſcharge of their duty, he ordered a double allowance of brandy to be given to every one on board, which, with their warm fear-nought jackets, provided by government, proved both comfortable and ſalutary; for ſome hills, which, when we came firſt to this place, had no ſnow upon them, were now covered, and the winter of this dreary and inhoſpitable region ſeemed to have ſet in at once. Thoſe in the boat, during their abſence, were benighted, and obliged by diſtreſs of weather to land, and take ſhelter under a tent which they had taken with them. They ſaw a number of Indians employed on the ſhore, in cutting up a dead whale, which ſcented the place for ſome diſtance around, it being in a ſtate of putrefaction. This they ſuppoſed was deſigned for food, ſeeing they cut it in large ſlices, and carried them away on their ſhoulders to another party at a diſtance, who ſeemed employed round a fire: however, it is equally probable, that like the Greenlanders, they might be making oil for their lamps againſt the approaching ſeverity of winter. One of the officers told us, that near Cape Upright ſome Indians had given him a dog, and that one of the women had offered him a child which was ſucking at her breaſt, but for what purpoſe he could not ſay. How much ſoever by their appearance, and manner of life, theſe ſeemingly forlorn rational beings may be degraded in the eyes of Europeans, we ought not from this trifling incident, to attribute to them ſuch a ſtrange depravity of nature as makes them deſtitute of affection for their offspring; or even to think that it can be ſurmounted by the neceſſities or wants attending the moſt deplorable ſituation; a notoriety of facts and univerſal hiſtory are againſt even a ſuppoſition of this kind. On the 15th, at eight o'clock, A. M. we made ſail, and in the afternoon we anchored on the eaſt-ſide of Cape Monday, in Waſh Pot Bay. The pitch of the cape bore N. W. diſtant half a mile, and the extreme points of the bay from E. to N. by W. The neareſt ſhore was a low iſland between us and the cape, from which iſland we lay about half a cable's length. We had at this place frequent ſhowers of rain and hail, with the air all the time exceſſive ſharp.

On Saturday the 16th, at ſix o'clock, A. M. we unmoored, and at eight a ſtrong current ſet us to the eaſtward. In this perplexing ſituation were we driven about from place to place, loſing perhaps in a few hours, what we had been ſix days and nights working to the weſtward; for when the wind continues with violence there is no regular tide; but on the contrary, a conſtant weſterly current running two miles an hour. Perceiving we loſt ground, we came to an anchor, but finding the ground to be rocky we weighed again; and every man on board the reſt of the day, and the whole night, continued on deck, during which time the rain poured down in unremitting torrents. Notwithſtanding this inceſſant labour, on the 17th, we had the mortification to find we had been loſing way on every tack, and at nine o'clock, A. M. we were glad to anchor in the very bay we had left two days before. It continued to rain, and blow violently for two days longer, ſo that we began to think, without a favourable wind, it would be our ill fortune to ſpend the winter quarter in one of theſe coves. The Commodore had ſent out a boat to ſound the bay on the north ſhore, but no anchorage could be found. On the 21ſt, we ſet ſail, the wind veering from S. W. by W. to N. N. W. we worked to windward with continual ſqualls, which at intervals obliged us to clue all our ſails. In the mean while the Tamar, whom till this time we had never loſt ſight of, by a favourable breeze, got a few leagues to the weſtward, where ſhe lay two days in good anchorage. Harraſſed as we were by continual diſappointments, to add ſtill more to our vexation and concern, we found our men were attacked by the ſcurvey, which had made its appearance on many of them; however, by the aſſiſtance of vegetables, and the extraordinary care of the Commodore, who cauſed portable ſoup to be ſerved to the ſick, and twice a week to the whole ſhip's company, on Fridays with peaſe, and on Mondays with oatmeal; and who with the greateſt humanity never ſpared to diſtribute from his own table, whatever might be of uſe for the recovery of thoſe attacked by this dreadful diſorder, it was prevented from raging with any great inveteracy. On the 22d, to our great joy we made way, the current ſetting to the weſtward. At ſix in the evening, we anchored in a commodious bay on the eaſt-ſide of Cape Monday, where the Tamar lay in 18 fathoms. We found this place very ſafe, the ground being excellent. It is remarkable, that notwithſtanding the late ſeverity of the weather, added to their inceſſant labour, the crew of both ſhips, in general, retained both health and ſpirits.

On Saturday the 23d, at eight o'clock, A. M. we again ſet ſail, and in a few hours opened the South Sea, which rolled in with a prodigious ſwell. At four in the afternoon, we anchored about a league to the eaſtward of Cape Upright, in a good bay, with a deep ſound at the bottom, by which it may be known. On the 24th, the boat was ſent to the weſtward, with the ſecond lieutenant, in ſearch of an harbour, at which time we had continued rains, and cold unhealthy weather, with ſtrong gales from the N. W. At ſix in the evening the boat returned without having been able to get round Cape Upright. On the 25th, the boat was ſent again with arms, and a week's proviſions, beſides materials for erecting a tent, in caſe they ſhould land, and find it neceſſary to make uſe of it. In the evening they returned, having been about four leagues, and had found two anchoring places, neither of them very good; upon which we weighed, and on the 20th, ſtood to the N. W. to windward of Cape Monday. The ſtraits here are four or five leagues over, and the mountains ſeemed to be ten times as high as the maſt head of our ſhip, but not much covered with ſnow. We continued under ſail, till the wind increaſing, and a violent ſea from the weſtward coming on, we were obliged to lie to under our cloſe reefed top-ſails. At four in the afternoon, the weather became very thick, and in leſs than half an hour we ſaw the ſouth ſhore, at the diſtance of about a mile, but got no anchorage; we therefore tacked, and ſtood over to the north ſhore. At eleven we ſaw the land on the north ſhore, at which we were much alarmed; when to heighten the danger of our ſituation, the ſky ſuddenly became dark and lowering, and the noiſe of the waves, which we plainly heard daſhing againſt the precipices, ſeemed to foretell the diſaſter which we thought ourſelves near experiencing; but at the very inſtant, when we expected immediate deſtruction, by hoiſting out our head ſails, our ſhip veered round on the other tack, and left the breakers, on which we made ſail with our head to the ſouthward. During this critical ſituation, from which we had been ſo providentially delivered, the officers and men united in doing their utmoſt, to extricate us from the impending danger, and behaved with that alacrity and intrepidity, which ſo ſtrongly characterize thoſe who compoſe our naval force, who juſtly merit this tranſient teſtimony to their honour. We now made a ſignal for the Tamar to come up, ſuppoſing her caſe to be equally deſperate with our own: however ſhe ſoon ſailed a-head, firing a gun, and ſhowing lights, whenever ſhe ſaw land. Our ſituation was now very alarming; the ſtorm increaſed every moment, the weather was exceeding thick, the rain ſeemed to threaten another deluge, we had a long dark night before us, we were in a narrow channel, and ſurrounded on every ſide with rocks and breakers. By the violence of the wind, our mizen-top-ſail was ſplit from the yard, and rendered entirely uſeleſs. During this tempeſtuous night we parted company with our conſort. We now brought to, keeping the Dolphin's Head to the S. W. but there being a prodigious ſea, it broke over us ſo often, that the whole deck was almoſt under water. After bending a new mizen-top-ſail, and repairing as well as we could the damages our ſhip had ſuffered, on the 27th, about five in the morning, to our inexpreſſible joy, the day began to dawn upon us; but the weather was ſo hazy, that no land could be ſeen, though we knew it could not be far diſtant, and it might be cloſe under our lee. We therefore made a ſignal for the Tamar to come under our ſtern, which having done, we bore away, and, at ſeven, both ſhips came to an anchor in Cape Monday Bay, about one mile to the eaſtward, with the ſmall bower, in 23 fathoms water, and veered out to a whole cable. We had twice in this perplexing traverſe been within four leagues of Tueſday's Bay, at the weſtern entrance of the ſtreight, and had twice been driven back 10 or 12 leagues by the fury of oppoſing ſtorms. When the ſeaſon is ſo far advanced as it was when we attempted the paſſage through this ſtrait, it is a moſt difficult and dangerous undertaking, as it blows a hurricane inceſſantly night and day, and the rain is as violent and conſtant as the wind, with ſuch fogs as often render it impoſſible to diſcover any object at the diſtance of twice the ſhip's length. Our Commodore, after attending to the neceſſary refreſhments of his officers and men, who had endured the greateſt fatigues, thought proper to name the high-land, which we had ſo miraculouſly eſcaped, Cape Providence. It riſes to a very great height, and projects to the ſouthward, being ſituated about four or five leagues from Cape Monday, but upon the oppoſite ſhore. On the 28th, finding our cables much damaged by the rocks, we condemned our beſt bower, and cut it into junk. We alſo bent a new one, which we rounded with old rigging eight fathoms from the water. In the mean time the Tamar had parted from her anchor, and was drove over to the eaſt-ſide of the bay. She was brought up at a ſmall diſtance from ſome rocks, againſt which ſhe might otherwiſe have been daſhed to pieces. On the 29th, at ſeven o'clock, A. M. we weighed and ſet ſail, but, at intervals, were attended with hard ſqualls from the weſtward, and heavy rains. While we were working to windward, the Tamar, ſteering by the ſouth coaſt, ran a-ground, and made the ſignal of diſtreſs, by firing a gun, and hoiſting her enſign in the mizen-ſhrouds; on which we ſtood again into the bay, bore down to her aſſiſtance, and hoiſted out our boats. We ſent anchor hawſers, with which they ſoon hove her off, and ſhe came to anchor near us in Monday Bay.

On Saturday the 30th, the winds were ſo violent as perfectly to tear up the ſea, and carry it higher than the top-maſts. The ſtorm came from W. N. W. and was more furious than any preceding one. A dreadful ſea rolled over us, and daſhed againſt the rocks with a noiſe like thunder. Happily, we did not part our cables, of which we were in conſtant apprehenſion, knowing the ground to be foul. Finding the ſhip laboured much, we lowered all the main and fore-yards, let go our ſmall bower, veered a cable and a half on the beſt bower, and having bent the ſheet cable, ſtood by the anchor all the reſt of the day. On the 31ſt, about one o'clock, A. M. the weather, though ſomewhat moderate, continued till midnight to be dark, rainy, and tempeſtuous, when ſoon after the wind changed to the S. W.

On Monday the 1ſt of April, we had ſoft and moderate gales, yet ſtill the weather continued thick, attended with heavy rain. At eight o'clock, A. M. we weighed our beſt bower, and found the cable much wounded in ſeveral places, which we thought a great miſfortune, it being a fine new cable that had never been wet before. On the 3d, an officer was ſent from each ſhip in the Tamar's boat, in queſt of anchoring places on the ſouth ſhore; and at the ſame time an officer was ſent in our Commodore's cutter, to explore the north ſhore. On the fourth, the cutter returned, with an account of having found a proper anchoring place to the weſt of the north ſhore. The commanding officer had met with a party of Indians, whoſe canoe was of a conſtruction not obſerved before, being compoſed of planks ſewed together. Theſe Indians had no other covering than a piece of ſeal-ſkin thrown over their ſhoulders. Their food, of the moſt indelicate kind, was eaten raw. One of them tore a piece of ſtinking whale's blubber with his teeth, and then gave it his companions, who followed his example. One of theſe Indians, obſerving a ſailor aſleep, cut off the hinder part of his jacket with a ſharp flint. About eight o'clock, A. M. we got under ſail, and at ſix in the evening anchored in the bay, on the ſouthern ſhore, which had been diſcovered, propoſing to take in wood and water. While we lay here, ſeveral of the natives made a fire oppoſite to the ſhip; on which we invited them to come on board, by all the ſigns we could deviſe; but as they would not comply, the Commodore went on ſhore in the jolly-boat, and made them preſents of ſeveral trifles, which much pleaſed them. He likewiſe diſtributed ſome biſcuits among them, and was ſurprized to remark, that if one fell to the ground, not a ſingle individual would offer to take it up without his permiſſion. In the mean time ſome of the ſailors being employed in cutting graſs for the few remaining ſheep we had on board, the Indians inſtantly ran to their aſſiſtance, and, tearing up the graſs in large quantities, ſoon filled the boat. We were much delighted with this token of their good will, and we ſaw they were pleaſed with the pleaſure the Commodore had expreſſed on the occaſion. When he returned to the ſhip, they followed him in their canoe, till they came near the Dolphin, at which they gazed with the moſt profound aſtoniſhment. Four of them were at length prevailed on to venture on board; and the Commodore, with a view to their diverſion, deſired one of our midſhipmen to play on the violin, while ſome of the ſeamen danced. The poor Indians were extravagantly delighted; and one of them, to teſtify his gratitude, took to his canoe, and fetching ſome red paint, rubbed it all over the face of the muſician; nor could the Commodore, but with the utmoſt difficulty, eſcape the like compliment. When they had been diverted ſome hours, it was hinted to them, that they ſhould go on ſhore, which they at length did, though with the utmoſt reluctance.

On Sunday the 7th, at ſix o'clock, A. M. we weighed, and got under ſail, with the wind at E. S. E. At this fortunate change of weather joy appeared in every countenance, and never were people in higher ſpirits. For ſix weeks we had been beating to windward, having been ſeveral times driven back, and narrowly eſcaped the greateſt dangers: but we now flattered ourſelves, that we ſhould ſhortly arrive in the Pacific Ocean, the ultimate end of our wiſhes; but at eleven o'clock the wind ceaſed, and the current drove us two leagues, Cape Upright bearing S. E. five leagues, on which we came to with the ſtream anchor, in 110 fathoms water. At four o'clock, P. M. the boat belonging to the Tamar, which had, as we mentioned, been ſent out ſome time before, returned from the weſtward, having been to the ſouthward of Cape Deſiada, on the ſouth ſhore, and found many convenient places for anchorage; but the people in the boat were much fatigued by their long and laborious rowing. On the 8th, at two o'clock, A. M. we ſet ſail, with the wind at W. by N. and at eleven, came to an anchor in a very good bay, between Cape Upright, and Cape Pillar. In this bay we found plenty of excellent fiſh not much unlike our trout, only of a more red caſt. We here met with good anchorage, entirely ſecure from any winds from the N. N. W. to the S. E. and here you may ſail with equal ſafety and pleaſure, having from 14 to 20 fathoms muddy ground. About four in the afternoon, the wind came to the S. E. which gave us high ſatisfaction. We inſtantly weighed and ſailed from the bay, in order to proceed to the weſtward. On ſtanding out we ſaw the Tamar at anchor in Tueſday Bay, which lies on the ſouth ſhore; but the wind ſuddenly veering round from the S. S. E. to the S. W. in a very heavy ſquall, attended with rain, obliged us to carry ſail to get to an anchor in that bay; and the night approaching faſt, the Tamar kept burning falſe fires, to direct us into it: but in order to enter, we were obliged to make ſeveral tacks under cloſe reefed top-ſails, in very great diſorder, having rocks on each ſide: however we at laſt came to an anchor, with the ſmall bower, in 12 fathoms; but the wind blew ſo ſtrong, it was ſome time before we could get our ſails handed.

Tueſday bay is by far the fineſt we ſaw in theſe ſtraits. It is capable of containing a number of large ſhips, which may ride in the greateſt ſecurity, with good ground, at not more than 25 fathoms water, free from rocks and ſands. Into this bay Sir John Narborough recommends all ſhips to anchor, that are bound to the weſtward. Indeed we found no difficulty in being ſupplied with good wood and water, and with excellent fiſh in large quantities. Along the ſides of the rocks are beautiful caſcades of water, with which the caſks may be filled with the greateſt convenience. On the 9th, at ſix o'clock, A. M. we weighed, leaving this fine bay, and ſailing to the W. N. W. We paſſed Cape Pillar on the ſouth ſhore, with a fine gale from the S. E. where the ſtraits are about nine leagues over. At ten, having now no occaſion to be continually ſounding, for fear of ſhoals and ſunken rocks, we got our long boat, yawl, and ſix oared cutter under the half deck, with the 12 oared cutter under the booms; and ſecured the hatches, bulk heads of the quarter deck, and forecaſtle. At four in the afternoon we reached the extremity of the ſtraits, where the diſtance from Cape Victory on the north-ſhore, to Cape Deſiada on the ſouth ſhore, is 12 leagues, bearing from each other about N. and S. The whole length of the ſtraits of Magellan, in which he had been detained, chiefly by contrary winds, from the 17th of February to the 9th of April, is from Cape Virgin Mary to Cape Deſiada, with every reach and turning, no more than about 116 leagues. We were now to leave the cold climate, and the tempeſtuous ſeas of this ſouthern latitude, juſt after the time of the autumnal equinox, with the dreadful hurricanes that muſt unavoidably attend the approach of winter, and to ſteer joyfully to the northward, warmed with the hopes of meeting with calmer ſeas, and milder climates. But notwithſtanding the difficulties and ſufferings we experienced in paſſing the ſtraits of Magellan, when the weather we met with was beyond all deſcription dreadful, yet the Commodore prefers this paſſage to going round Cape Horn, which he had twice doubled, and he recommends it to future navigators, to be at the eaſtern entrance of the ſtrait in the month of December, at which time he thinks even a fleet of ſhips might navigate it ſafely in about three weeks. He juſtly obſerves, that the facility with which wood and water are to be obtained, the vaſt plenty of vegetables, and the abundance of fiſh, which may be almoſt every where procured, are advantages highly in favour of this paſſage. On our entering the Pacific Ocean, we found a great ſwell running from the S. W.

On Friday the 20th, we deſcried the iſland of Maſa Fuero to the weſtward. The Commodore thought it more adviſeable to touch here, than at the iſland of Juan Fernandes; it being rather more ſecure than the latter, from any diſcoveries which the Spaniards might make of our deſigns; in conſequence of which our voyage, and all farther diſcoveries might have been prevented. Maſa Fuero lies in the latitude of 33 deg. 28 min. S. and in 84 deg. 27 min. W. longitude from London. On the 27th, we had a diſtant view of the iſland, the land of which riſes to a great height. Our cutter was ſent aſhore to find a place to anchor in, but returned at four in the afternoon, without ſucceſs, but caught a great number of fiſh. They had no ſoundings with 100 fathoms line. On the 28th, however, we came to an anchor on the eaſt-ſide of the iſland, in 24 fathoms water, at which time the extremities of the iſland appeared on the S. and N. W. The tops of the mountains are not always to be ſeen, they being in ſome parts covered with clouds, which hang hovering over them, and the air on their tops being ſeldom clear. At eleven in the morning we ſent out our boat, with an officer, to find out a convenient place to wood and water in on ſhore.

The ſurface of this iſland is very irregular; but the valleys have a beautiful verdure, and their ſides are full of trees from the top to the bottom. At a great diſtance indeed thoſe beauties are not viſible, but when within a mile or thereabouts, they form a moſt delightful proſpect. The goats, which we ſaw in great numbers, were ſo ſhy, that we found it difficult to get near them, eſpecially within the diſtance of a muſket ſhot; however, we made a ſhift to kill ſome, and we thought them to be excellent food, particularly the kids. We obſerved a remarkable circumſtance, with reſpect to two of them which we ſhot, they having had their ears ſlit when young. It is probable, that the men who were ſent on board the Tryal Sloop by lord Anſon, to examine into the ſtate of this iſland, had more ſerious employment than that of ſlitting the ears of the goats; and it appears much more probable, that ſome ſolitary Selkirk had dwelt here, who, like his nameſake, at Juan Fernandes, when he caught more than he wanted, marked, and let them go. However, during our ſtay at this place, we ſaw no traces of any human being. Round the ſouth-ſide of the ſhore we found a red earth, impregnated with large veins of a gold colour. The ſhores are every where very ſteep, and near them you cannot find leſs than from 24 to 50 fathoms. We found it every where difficult to get on ſhore, it being full of rocks and large ſtones, with a very great ſurf. Round the iſland we met with great quantities of fiſh, ſuch as cavalies, bream, maids, and congers of a particular kind: with a ſingular ſort of fiſh called chimney-ſweepers, ſomewhat like our carp, only larger. There is another ſpecies of valuable fiſh, which we called cod. It is not exactly like our cod in ſhape, but the taſte is equally agreeable. We likewiſe found a great number of cray-fiſh, which were ſo large as to weigh eight or ten pounds each. We ſaw a multitude of ſharks, one of which was near carrying off one of our men. As the great ſwell would not permit the boat to approach the ſhore, he was ſwimming a caſk to it; but the ſailor who was always left to take care of the boat, ſaw the ſhark within a few yards of his companion, juſt ready to ſeize upon him, and called to him to haſten aſhore, which, through his great fright, he could hardly reach. The boat-keeper having the boat-hook in his hand, ſtruck at the ſhark with great force, but without any viſible effect. The dog-fiſh we met with here are very miſchievous, and deſtroy abundance of the ſmaller ſort of fiſh: they frequently obliged us to haul in our lines, for when near, no other fiſh are to be found. Beſides theſe, the ſhore is generally crouded with ſeals and ſea-lions. The dog-fiſh does not appear to have the leaſt reſemblance of a dog, or any other animal, and therefore it is difficult to determine the derivation of its name. It has a roundiſh body, and inſtead of ſcales, is covered with that rough ſkin uſed by joiners and cabinet-makers for poliſhing wood, generally known by the name of fiſh-ſkin. Its back is of a browniſh aſh-colour; but its belly is commonly white, and ſmoother than the reſt of its body. The eyes are covered with a double membrane, and the mouth armed with a double row of teeth. It has two fins on the back, with ſharp prickles ſtanding before them. It brings forth its young alive, and is never very large, ſeldom weighing more than 20 pounds. The ſea-lion has ſome reſemblance to a ſeal, but is of a much larger ſize, for theſe animals, when full grown, are from 12 to 20 feet in length, and from 8 to 15 feet round. The head is ſmall in proportion to the body, and terminates in a ſnout. In each jaw they have a row of large pointed teeth, two thirds of which are in ſockets: but the others, without them, are moſt ſolid, and ſtand out of the mouth. They have ſmall eyes and ears, with whiſkers like a cat, and ſmall noſtrils, which are the only part deſtitute of hair. The males are diſtinguiſhed by having a large ſnout or trunk, hanging five or ſix inches below the end of the upper jaw, which the females have not. The ſkin of the ſea-lion is covered with a ſhort light dun coloured hair, but his fins and tail, which when on ſhore, ſerve him for feet, are almoſt black; the fins or feet are divided at the ends like toes, but are joined by a web, that does not reach to their extremities, and each toe is furniſhed with a nail. They are ſo extremely fat, that on cutting through the ſkin, which is near an inch in thickneſs, there is at leaſt a foot of fat before you come to either lean or bones; and yet they are ſo full of blood, that if deeply wounded in 10 or 12 places, there inſtantly guſhes out as many fountains of blood, ſpouting to a conſiderable diſtance. Their fleſh reſembles in taſte that of beef; and their fat, on being melted, makes good oil. The males are of a much larger ſize than the females, and both of them continue at ſea all the ſummer, and coming aſhore at the beginning of winter, ſtay there during that ſeaſon, when they engender, and bring forth their young, having commonly two at a birth, which they ſuckle with their milk. On ſhore they feed on the verdure that grows near the water: and ſleep in herds, in the moſt miry places they can find, with ſome of the males at a diſtance, who are ſure to alarm them if any one approaches, ſometimes by ſnorting like horſes, and at others, by grunting like hogs. The males have frequently furious battles about their females.

This iſland is uſually called by the Spaniards, the Leſſer Juan Fernandes, it being about 22 leagues to the W. by S. of the iſland more frequently called by that name: and is termed Maſa-Fuero, from its being at a greater diſtance from the continent. In his way to this place, the Commodore was not far from the ſpot, where he had endured the extremity of wretchedneſs 24 years before, when he was a midſhipman, under Captain Cheap, on board the Wager, a frigate of 28 guns, one of the ſquadron which was commanded by Commodore Anſon, in his memorable expedition to the South Sea, and which was wrecked on the ſhore of an iſland on the coaſt of Chiloe. In many reſpects this iſland and that of Juan Fernandes reſemble each other: the ſhore of both is ſteep, and for the moſt part have little freſh water; but no ſpring was here found comparable to that of the watering place at the Greater Juan Fernandes: they are both mountainous, and adorned with a variety of trees, which with the different bearings of the hills, and the windings of the valleys form, even from the ſea, the moſt rude, and at the ſame time the moſt elegant proſpects. None of the trees of the greater Juan Fernandes are large enough for any conſiderable timber, except the myrtle, the trunks of ſome of which are of ſuch a ſize, as to be worked 40 feet in length. But the goats of the greater Juan Fernandes are much fewer in number than at Maſa-Fuero; the Spaniards having placed no dogs on the latter iſland, in order to deſtroy them. With reſpect to the plenty of excellent fiſh, and the number of amphibious animals, as ſeals and ſea-lions, which line the ſhores of both, they perfectly reſemble each other. In Maſa-Fuero are many caſcades, or fine falls of water, pouring down its ſides into the ſea. But our ſtay here was ſo ſhort, and we were ſo ſeldom on ſhore, that we had neither leiſure nor opportunity to view this little iſland, with the accuracy and preciſion that might be wiſhed, and that was abſolutely neceſſary for taking a full view of the delightful ſpots which we ſaw, with the confuſion that neceſſarily attends a diſtant proſpect. The greateſt diſadvantage belonging to this iſland is that of not having ſuch a commodious harbour, as the iſland of Juan Fernandes.

While we were taking in water for the ſhips, whenever our men found any great ſurf, they by order of the Commodore, ſwam to and from the boats in cork jackets; for he would by no means admit of their going into the water without putting them on, he being fully ſenſible, that when properly ſecured on the body, the perſon who uſes them cannot poſſibly ſink, or ſuffer any conſiderable inconvenience, if he does but take care to keep his head above the ſurface of the water, which is eaſily done. But theſe jackets afforded no defence againſt the ſharks, which were often very near the ſwimmers, and would dart even into the very ſurf to ſeize them: our people however providentially eſcaped them. One of theſe voracious fiſh ſeized a large ſeal cloſe to one of the watering boats, and devoured it in an inſtant; and the Commodore ſaw another do the ſame, cloſe to the ſtern of the ſhip. The following little adventure alſo took place while we lay off this iſland. The gunner and one of the ſeamen, who were with others, on ſhore for water, were left behind all night, being afraid to venture in the boat, as the ſea ran high. The Commodore being informed of this circumſtance, ſent them word, that as blowing weather might be expected, the ſhip might be driven from her moorings in the night; in which caſe they would infallibly be left behind. This meſſage being delivered, the gunner ſwam to the boat; but the ſailor ſaying, he had rather die a natural death than be drowned, refuſed to make the attempt: and taking a melancholy farewell of his companions, reſolved to abide his fate; when juſt as the boat was going to put off, a midſhipman took the end of a rope in his hand, and ſwam on ſhore, where he remonſtrated with the diſconſolate tar on the fooliſh reſolution he had taken, till having an opportunity of throwing the rope, in which was a running knot, round his body, he called to the boats crew to haul away, who inſtantly dragged him through the ſurf into the boat: he had, however, ſwallowed ſo much water that he appeared to be dead; but by holding him up by the heels, he was ſoon recovered; and on the day following was perfectly well.

Having taken in as much wood and water as the weather would permit, the ſurf ſometimes ſwelling in ſuch a manner, as to prevent our boats coming near the ſhore, we thought of leaving the iſland; but before our departure, in the evening of the 29th, the Commodore removed Captain Mouat from the Tamar, and appointed him Captain of the Dolphin, all flag-officers having a commander under them. This occaſioned ſeveral other changes. Mr. Cumming, our firſt lieutenant, was appointed Captain of the Tamar, and we received in his room Mr. Carteret, her firſt lieutenant. The Commodore alſo gave Mr. Kendal, one of the mates of the Dolphin, a commiſſion as ſecond lieutenant of the Tamar. After theſe promotions, on the 30th we weighed, and ſteered along the E. and N. E. ſide of the iſland, but could find no anchoring place; we bore away therefore, with a freſh breeze at S. E. and at noon the center of the iſland was diſtant eight leagues in the direction of S. S. E.

CHAP. III.

The Dolphin and Tamar continue their courſe from the Iſland of Maſa-Fuero weſtward—Arrive off certain beautiful Iſlands which are named the Iſlands of Diſappointment, becauſe no places of anchorage could be found—The natives of theſe Iſlands deſcribed—King George's Iſlands diſcovered—Another Iſland is ſeen, and called the Prince of Wales's Iſland—A deſcription of theſe iſlands—Alſo a particular account of the inhabitants, and of ſeveral incidents that happened while the ſhips were exploring them—The Iſland of Danger paſſed—The Duke of York Iſland diſcovered—Another new Iſland found, which receives the name of Byron's Iſland—The perſons and behaviour of the Indians deſcribed.

ON the firſt of May, being Wedneſday, we continued to ſteer N. by W. but on the ſecond, at noon, we altered our courſe, and ſteered due weſt, with the view of falling in with an iſland, which is laid down in the charts by the name of Davis's Land, in latitude 27 deg. 30 min. S. but on Thurſday the 9th, the Commodore laid aſide his deſign, being in latitude 26 deg. 46 min. S. and in 94 deg. 45 min. W. longitude; and having a great run to make, he determined to ſteer a N. W. courſe, till he ſhould fall in with a true trade wind, and then to ſearch for Solomon's Iſlands; but the diſcovery of both theſe ſpots of land was reſerved for a future navigator; for the Commodore, in croſſing the ſouthern ocean, miſſed of the iſlands, which have ſince been named the Society Iſles; and about the ſame diſtance to the ſouthward of the Marqueſas, diſcovered by Mendana, a Spaniard, in the year 1597, and afterwards explored by Captain Cook. We had hitherto enjoyed a continued ſeries of fine weather; but the nearer we approached the line, the crew began to fall down with the ſcurvy very faſt, and every day, to the end of this month, brought with it an increaſe of that dreadful diſorder. On the 10th, and following day, we ſaw ſeveral dolphins and bonettas round the ſhip, and obſerved a few birds which had a ſhort beak, all their bodies being white, except the back, and the upper part of their wings. On the 14th, in latitude 24 deg. 30 min. S. and in 97 deg. 45 min. W. longitude, we ſaw more of theſe birds, and ſeveral grampuſes, from whence imagining we might approach toward ſome land, we kept a good look-out, but found our expectations diſappointed.

On Thurſday the 16th, two remarkable birds, as large as geeſe, with white bodies, and black legs were obſerved flying very high, from whence it was conjectured that we had paſſed ſome main-land, or iſlands, to the ſouthward of us; for the laſt night we obſerved, that, notwithſtanding we had a great ſwell from that quarter, yet the water became quite ſmooth for a few hours, after which the ſwell returned. On Wedneſday the 22nd, being in latitude 20 degrees 52 min. S. and in 115 deg. 38 min. W. the ſwell from the ſouthward was ſo great, that we expected every minute, to ſee our maſts roll over the ſhip's ſide; to prevent which, and to eaſe the ſhip, we hauled more to the northward. This day we caught, for the firſt time, two bonettas, and were viſited by ſome tropic birds, larger than any we had ſeen before. Their whole plumage was white, and they had in each of their tails two long feathers.

On Sunday the 26th, we were in latitude 16 deg. 55 minutes S. and in 127 deg. 55 min. W. longitude, when we ſaw two large birds about the ſhip, all black, except their necks and beaks. The feathers of their wings and tails were long, yet they flew very heavily. We ſuppoſed them, from this laſt circumſtance, to be a ſpecies that did not fly far from the ſhore. We had imagined that before we had run ſix degrees to the northward of Maſa-Fuero, we ſhould have been favoured with a ſettled trade wind to the S. E. but the winds ſtill continued to the north, though we had a mountainous ſwell from the S. W. On the 28th, two other birds, one black and white, and the other brown and white, would have ſettled on the yards, but were intimidated by the working of the ſhip. On the 31ſt, our people began to fall down with the ſcurvy very faſt, which made us wiſh for land. At length, after a paſſage of 31 days,

On Friday the 7th of June, at one o'clock, A. M. the Tamar made the ſignal of ſeeing land; on which we brought to till daylight; and in the mean time flattered ourſelves with the pleaſing hopes of getting ſome kinds of refreſhments, of which we ſtood in great need, eſpecially for thoſe who were ſick; and we knew, that the iſlands, which are ſituated within twenty degrees of the line, are frequently well ſtored with fruit of all kinds. Soon after day-break, we had the pleaſure of ſeeing a low ſmall iſland, covered with beautiful trees, and on ſailing to the leeward, we were regaled with the ſmell of the fineſt fruits. The poor wretches who were able to crawl upon deck, ſtood gazing on this little paradiſe, which however nature had forbidden them to enter, with ſenſations which cannot eaſily be conceived. They ſaw cocoa-nuts in abundance, the milk of which is perhaps the moſt powerful antiſcorbutic in the world; and to increaſe their mortification, they ſaw the ſhells of many turtles ſcattered about the ſhore. Theſe refreſhments, for want of which they were languiſhing to death, were as effectually beyond there reach, as if there had been half the circumference of the globe between them; for an officer having been quite round the iſland, reported, that no bottom could be found, within leſs than a cable's length from the ſhore, which was ſurrounded, cloſe to the beach with a ſteep coral rock; and that, at the diſtance of three quarters of a mile from the ſhore, no ſoundings could be had with 140 fathom of line. Beſides, had we at one place caſt anchor in 45 fathoms, the ſurf upon the ſhore was ſo great, that the ſhip would have been in great danger of being ſtranded. This iſland lies in the latitude of 14 deg. 5 min. S. and in 145 deg. 4 min. W. longitude from London. It extends 12 miles in length; and in the body of the iſland is a good deal of water, which was, we apprehend, waſhed over the banks, as ſome of them appeared to have been broken. We ſoon perceived it was inhabited, for we ſaw numbers of Indians upon the beach, with ſpears in their hands, that were at leaſt 16 feet long. They ran along the ſhore, abreaſt of the ſhips, dancing, hallooing, and ſhouting in the moſt hideous manner. They frequently brandiſhed their long ſpears, and then threw themſelves backwards, and lay a few minutes motionleſs, as if they had been dead; doubtleſs meaning to ſignify thereby, that they would kill whoever ſhould preſume to go on ſhore. Notwithſtanding various ſigns of amity and good will were made them by our people in the boat, nothing could abate their hoſtile diſpoſition. They made in their turn ſigns for us to be gone; and always took care, as the boat ſailed along the ſhore, to move in the ſame direction, and accompany it; and though the men ſaw ſome turtle at a diſtance, they could get at none, as thoſe Indians ſtill kept oppoſite to them. The ſailors were eager to fire on the brave defenders of their native ſoil, but their officers withheld them from ſuch a wanton act of cruelty; and as no anchorage could be found, the Commodore thought it moſt adviſeable to ſteer to the adjacent iſland. Theſe Indians are of a very black complexion, with well proportioned limbs, and ſeemed to be extremely active, and fleet of foot to an aſtoniſhing degree. Their women, who were only to be diſtinguiſhed by their boſoms, had ſomething twiſted round their waiſts, and hanging down from thence, to hide what nature taught them to conceal, as had alſo the men; and this was their only cloathing. They altogether amounted to about 50 in number; and to the S. W. we could perceive their huts, under the ſhade of the moſt lovely grove we ever ſaw. While ſailing along ſhore, we took notice, that in one place the natives had fixed upright in the ſand two ſpears, to the top of which they had faſtened ſeveral things that fluttered in the air, and that ſome of them were every moment kneeling down before them, as we ſuppoſed, invoking aſſiſtance of ſome inviſible being to defend them againſt their invaders. Among other ſigns of good will that they could deviſe, our men threw them bread, and many other things, none of which they vouchſafed ſo much as to touch, but with great expedition hauled five or ſix large canoes, which we ſaw on the beach, up into a wood. When this was done they waded into the water, and ſeemed to watch for an opportunity of laying hold of the boat, that they might drag her on ſhore.

On Saturday the 8th, the boats having reported a ſecond time, that no anchoring ground could be found about this iſland, we worked, at ſix o'clock, P. M. under the lee of the other iſland, which lay to the weſtward of the former, and ſent out our cutter to ſound for a place to anchor in. We now obſerved ſeveral other low iſlands, or rather peninſulas, moſt of them being joined one to the other by a neck of land, very narrow, and almoſt level with the ſurface of the water, which breaks high over it. Here, to our great diſappointment, no refreſhments could be procured, owing to the inacceſſible nature of the coaſt; and we ſaw a much greater number of Indians ſurrounding the ſhore, who, with ſpears of equal length, followed us in like manner, ſeveral hundreds of them running about the coaſt in great diſorder; and at the ſame time we beheld the iſland covered with a prodigious number of cocoa-nut, plantain, and tamarind trees. Having waited ſome time with great impatience for the return of our cutter, we fired a gun, as a ſignal for our men to come on board, which terribly alarmed the Indians, who ſeemed to conſult among themſelves what meaſures it would be moſt prudent for them to take. They kept abreaſt of the boats, as they went ſounding along the ſhore, and uſed many threatening geſtures, to deter them from landing. Their canoes they dragged into the woods, and at the ſame time the women came with great ſtones in their hands to aſſiſt the men in preventing, what they doubtleſs thought to be, our hoſtile intentions. The cutter returned near noon, bringing much the ſame account of this as of the other iſland, there being no ſoundings at a cable's length from the ſhore, with a line of 100 fathoms. This gave us inexpreſſible concern, as we had now 30 ſick on board, to whom the land air, the fruit and vegetables, that appeared ſo beautiful and attractive, would have afforded immediate relief and returning health. Finding it impoſſible to obtain thoſe tempting refreſhments which hung full in our view, we quitted, with longing eyes, this paradiſe in appearance, to which the name was with propriety given of the Iſlands of Diſappointment. Continuing our courſe to the weſtward, on the 9th we ſaw land again, at the diſtance of ſeven leagues, W. S. W. At ſeven o'clock, P. M. we brought to for the night. In the morning of the 10th, being within three miles of the ſhore, we found it to be a long low iſland, with a white beach of a pleaſant appearance, covered with cocoa-nut and other trees, and ſurrounded with a rock of red coral. We ſtood along the N. E. ſide, within half a mile of the ſhore, and the natives, on ſeeing us, made great fires, and ran along the beach, abreaſt of the ſhips in great numbers, armed like the natives of the iſlands we had laſt viſited, and like them, they appeared to be a robuſt and fierce race of men. Over the land we could diſcern a large lake of ſalt-water, which appeared to be two or three leagues wide, and to reach within a ſmall diſtance of the oppoſite ſhore. Into this lake we obſerved a ſmall inlet, about a league from the S. W. point, where is a little town ſeated under the ſhade of a fine grove of cocoa-nut-trees. The Commodore immediately ſent off the boats to ſound; but they could find no anchorage, the ſhore being every where perpendicular as a wall, except at the mouth of the inlet. We ſtood cloſe in with the ſhore, and ſaw hundreds of the natives ranged in good order, and ſtanding up to their waiſts in water: they were all armed, like thoſe we had ſeen in the other iſlands, and one of them carried a piece of mat, faſtened to the top of a pole, which we imagined was an enſign. They made a loud and inceſſant noiſe; and in a little time, many large canoes came down to the boats, but with no friendly intentions, for we ſoon perceived their main deſign was to haul our boats on ſhore. One of them went into the Tamar's boat, and with the greateſt adroitneſs ſeized a ſeaman's jacket, and jumping overboard with it, never once appeared above water, till he was cloſe in ſhore among his companions: another got hold of a midſhipman's hat, but not knowing how to take it off, he pulled it downwards, inſtead of lifting it up; ſo that the owner had time to prevent his taking it away. Our ſeamen bore theſe inſults with much patience, as tranſgreſſions of the ſimple children of nature.

Finding about noon, that there was no anchorage here, we ſteered along the ſhore to the weſtermoſt point of the iſland, and when we came to it we ſaw another iſland, bearing S. W. by W. at about four leagues diſtance. We were now about one league beyond the inlet, where we had left the natives; but they were not contented with our having quietly left them; for we now obſerved two large double canoes ſailing after the ſhip, with about thirty men in each, all armed after the manner of their country. The boats were a good way to leeward of us; and the canoes paſſing between the ſhip and the ſhore, ſeemed to chace them with great reſolution. Upon this the Commodore made a ſignal for the boats to ſpeak with the canoes, which they no ſooner perceived, than they turned towards the Indians, who being inſtantly ſeized with a ſudden panic, hauled down their ſails, and paddled away at a ſurprizing rate. The boats, however, came up with them; but notwithſtanding the dreadful ſurf that broke upon the ſhore, the canoes puſhed through it, and were inſtantly hauled upon the beach. Our boats followed them, when the natives, dreading an invaſion of their country, prepared to defend it with javelins, clubs, and ſtones: upon ſeeing this, our men fired, and killed two or three of them; one of whom who ſtood cloſe to the boats, received three balls, which paſſed quite through his body; yet he afterwards took up a large ſtone, and died in the action of throwing it. The Indians carried off the reſt of their dead, except this one man, and made the beſt of their way back to their companions at the inlet. The boats then returned, and brought off the two canoes they had purſued. One of them was 32 feet long, and the other ſomewhat leſs: both were of a very curious conſtruction, and muſt have been formed with prodigious labour. They conſiſted of planks exceedingly well wrought, and in many places adorned with carving; theſe planks were ſewed together, and over every ſeam there was a ſlip of tortoiſeſhell, very ingeniouſly faſtened to keep out the weather. Their bottoms were as ſharp as a wedge; and the boats being very narrow, two of them were joined laterally together by a couple of ſtrong ſpars, ſo that there was a ſpace of about eight feet between them. A maſt was hoiſted in each, and a ſail was ſpread between the maſts: this ſail was made of matting, and remarkable for the neatneſs of its workmanſhip. Their paddles alſo are very curious, and their cordage as good, and as well made as any in England, though it appeared to be made only of the outer covering of the cocoa-nut. When theſe veſſels ſail, ſeveral men ſit on the ſpars which hold the canoes together. The ſurf which broke high upon the ſhore, rendering it impoſſible to procure refreſhments for the ſick, in this part of the iſland, we returned back to the inlet, in order to try what more could be done there; but the boats being ſent to ſound the inlet again, returned, and confirmed their former account, that it afforded no anchorage for a ſhip. While the boats were abſent, a great number of the natives were ſeen upon the ſpot where we had left them in the morning, who ſeemed very buſy in loading and manning ſome canoes which lay cloſe to the beach. The Commodore, thinking they might be troubleſome, and being unwilling to have recourſe to the ſanguinary means which had before been uſed, fired a ſhot over their heads, which produced the intended effect, for they inſtantly diſperſed. Juſt before the cloſe of the evening, our boats landed, and brought off a few cocoa-nuts, but ſaw none of the inhabitants.

On Tueſday the 11th, in the morning, the Commodore, with all the men who were ill of the ſcurvy, and capable of doing it, went on ſhore, where they continued the whole day. The houſes were totally deſerted, except by the dogs, who howled inceſſantly, from the time we came on ſhore, till we returned to the ſhip. The wigwams were low mean ſtructures, thatched with the leaves of cocoa-nut trees; but they were delightfully ſituated in a fine grove of ſtately trees: many of which were ſuch as we were entirely unacquainted with. The ſhore was covered with coral, and ſhells of very large pearl oyſters, and the Commodore firmly believed, that as profitable a pearl fiſhery might be eſtabliſhed here as any in the world. In one of the huts was found the carved head of a rudder, which had evidently belonged to a Dutch long-boat. It was very old and worm-eaten. A piece of hammered iron, a piece of braſs, and ſome ſmall iron tools, were alſo found, all which had moſt probably been obtained from the ſame ſhip to which the boat belonged. The inhabitants of theſe iſlands were not over-burdened with cloathing: the men we ſaw were naked, but the women had a piece of cloth of ſome kind hanging from the waiſt as low as the knee. The cocoa-nut tree ſeems to furniſh them with all the neceſſaries of life; particularly food, ſails, cordage, timber, and veſſels to hold water. Cloſe to their houſes we diſcovered buildings of another kind, which appeared to be burying-places. They were ſituated under lofty trees that gave a thick gloomy ſhade: the ſides and tops were of ſtone, and they ſomewhat reſembled in their figure, the ſquare tombs with a flat top in our country church-yards. Near theſe buildings we found many neat boxes, full of human bones; and upon the branches of the trees that ſhaded them, hung a great number of heads and bones of turtles, and a variety of other fiſh, incloſed with a kind of baſket-work of reeds. We here ſaw no venomous creature; but the muſquetoes covered us from head to foot, and infeſted not only the boat, but the ſhip, being an intolerable torment. We obſerved a great number of parrots, and parroquets, with a variety of other birds, altogether unknown to us. We ſaw alſo a beautiful kind of doves, ſo tame, that ſome of them frequently came cloſe to us, and followed us into the Indian huts. The freſh water here is good, but rather ſcarce: the wells that ſupply the natives being ſo ſmall, that when two or three cocoa-nut ſhells have been filled from them, they are dry for a few minutes; but as they preſently fill again, if a little pains were taken to enlarge them, they would abundantly ſupply any ſhip with water. We obtained cocoa-nuts and ſcurvy-graſs in great quantities, which were moſt ineſtimable acquiſitions, as by this time there was not a man on board who was wholly untouched with the ſcurvey. All this day the natives kept themſelves cloſely concealed, and did not even make a ſmoke upon any part of the iſland, as far as we could ſee. In the evening we all returned on board, highly pleaſed with this day's amuſement and work. This iſland lies about 67 leagues from the Iſlands of Diſappointment, in the direction of W. half S. and in the latitude of 14 deg. 29 min. S. longitude 148 deg. 50 min. W. The inhabitants ſeem to have ſome notions of religion, as we ſaw a place, which we concluded to be appropriated to their manner of worſhip. A rude, but very agreeable avenue opened to a ſpacious area, in which was one of the largeſt and moſt ſpreading cocoas we ſaw in the place; before which were ſeveral large ſtones, probably altars; and from the tree hung the figure of a dog adorned with feathers.

On Wedneſday the 12th, we viſited another iſland which had been ſeen to the weſtward; and ſteered S. W. by W. cloſe along the N. E. ſide of it, which is about ſix or ſeven leagues long. This iſland makes much the ſame appearance as the other, having a large ſalt lake in the middle of it. The ſhip no ſooner came in ſight, than the natives repaired in great numbers to the beach, armed in the ſame manner as thoſe already deſcribed, but not of ſuch boiſterous manners. The boats ſounded as uſual along the ſhore, but had ſtrict orders not to moleſt the Indians, except it ſhould be abſolutely neceſſary in their own defence; but on the contrary, to uſe every gentle method in order to obtain their confidence and good will. They rowed as near the ſhore as they durſt for the ſurf; and making ſigns of their wanting water, the Indians readily underſtood them, and directed them to run down farther along the ſhore, which they did, till they came abreaſt of ſuch a cluſter of houſes, as we had juſt left upon the other iſland. The Indians followed them thither, and were there joined by many others. The boats immediately hauled cloſe into the ſurf, and we brought to with the ſhips, at a little diſtance from the ſhore; upon which, a ſtout old man, with a long white beard, came down from the houſes to the beach, attended by a young man, and appeared to have the authority of a chief or king. On his making a ſignal, the reſt of the Indians retired to a ſmall diſtance, and he then advanced to the water's edge, holding in one hand the green branch of a tree, and in the other graſping his beard, which he preſſed to his boſom. In this attitude he made a long ſpeech, or rather ſong, for it had an agreeable cadence. We were ſorry that we could not underſtand him, but to ſhew our good will, while he was ſpeaking, we threw him ſome trifling preſents, which he would neither touch himſelf, nor ſuffer them to be touched by others, till he had done. He then walked into the water, and threw to us the green branch; after which he took up the things which had been thrown from the boats. Every thing having now a friendly appearance, we made ſigns that they ſhould lay down their arms; and moſt of them having complied, one of the midſhipmen, encouraged by this teſtimony of confidence and friendſhip, leaped out of the boat with his clothes on, and ſwam through the ſurf to the ſhore, on which the Indians flocked round him, ſinging and dancing as if to expreſs their joy, and began to examine his clothes with ſeeming curioſity; they particularly ſhewed ſigns of admiration on viewing his waiſtcoat; upon which he took it off, and preſented it to them. This act of generoſity had a diſagreeable effect; for he had no ſooner given away his waiſtcoat, than one of the Indians untied his cravat, and the next moment ſnatched it from his neck, and ran away with it. He therefore, to prevent his being ſtripped, made the beſt of his way back to the boat. We were ſtill however upon good terms, and ſeveral of the Indians ſwam off to us, ſome of them bringing a cocoa-nut, and others a little freſh water in a cocoa-nut ſhell. We endeavoured to obtain from them ſome pearls, but we could not make ourſelves underſtood. We ſhould, however, probably have ſucceeded better, had an intercourſe of any kind been eſtabliſhed between us; but unluckily no anchorage could be found for the ſhips. In the lake we ſaw two very large veſſels, one of which had two maſts, and ſome cordage aloft. To theſe two iſlands the Commodore gave the name of King George's Iſlands, in honour of his preſent Majeſty. That which we laſt viſited lies in latitude 14 deg. 41 min. S. longitude 149 deg. 15 min. W.

On Thurſday the 13th, having continued our courſe to the weſtward, about three o'clock, P. M. we deſcried land, bearing S. S. W. diſtant ſix leagues. We immediately ſtood for it, and found it to lie E. and W. and to be about 60 miles in length. It is diſtant from King George's Iſlands about 48 leagues, in the direction of ſouth 80 deg. W. ſituated in the latitude of 15 deg. S. and the weſtermoſt end of it in 151 deg. 53 min. W. longitude. We ran along the ſouth-ſide of it, and the appearance of the country exhibited a pleaſant green ſurface; but a dreadful ſurf breaks upon every part of the ſhore, with foul ground at ſome diſtance, and at about three leagues are many rocks and iſlots. It has a narrow neck of land running S. by W. and N. by E. We ſaw a number of Indians and ſeveral canoes diſperſed about different parts of the iſland, to which was given the name of the Prince of Wales's Iſland. From its weſtern extremity, we ſteered north 28 deg. W. and on the 16th at noon, obſerved in latitude 14 deg. 28 min. S. and in 156 deg. 23 min. W. longitude. The mountainous ſwell from the ſouthward, which to this day we had loſt, now returned; and we were attended with vaſt flocks of birds, which in the evening took their flight to the ſouthward; from which appearances we concluded, more land lay in that direction; the diſcovery of which we ſhould have attempted, had not the ſickneſs of the crews in both ſhips been an inſuperable bar to ſuch an attempt. On the 17th, the ſwell continued, and various kinds of birds flew about the ſhip; ſuppoſing therefore land to be not far diſtant, we proceeded with caution, for the iſlands in this part of the ocean render navigation very dangerous, they being ſo low, that a ſhip may be cloſe in with them before they are ſeen. Nothing material occurred on the 18th and 19th. On the 20th, we found our latitude to be 12 deg. 33 min. S. longitude 167 deg. 47 min. W. The prince of Wales's Iſland, diſtant 313 leagues.

On Friday the 21ſt, at ſeven o'clock, A. M. we again ſaw land a-head, bearing W. N. W. and diſtant about eight leagues. It had the appearance of three iſlands from this point of ſight; and the Commodore took them for Solomon's Iſlands, ſeen by Quiros, in the beginning of the 17th century, and very imperfectly deſcribed by him. But on our nearer approach, we found only a ſingle iſland, about 12 miles in length, ſurrounded with ſhoals and breakers, on which account it was named the Iſland of Danger. The reef of rocks which we firſt ſaw, when we approached this iſle, lies in latitude 10 deg. 15 min. S. and in 169 deg. 28 min. W. longitude; and it bears from this reef W. N. W. diſtant nine leagues. From the Prince of Wales's Iſland it bears north 76 deg. 48 min. W. diſtant nine leagues. As you run in with the land, you ſee the ſands, and about ſeven leagues off from the moſt eaſtern parts of the iſland, lies a ridge of rocks, near a quarter of a mile in length, and when abreaſt of theſe, the iſland bears W. by N. We ſailed round the north end, and upon the N. W. and W. ſide ſaw innumerable rocks and ſhoals, which ſtretched near two leagues into the ſea, and were extremely dangerous. But as to the iſland itſelf, it had a more beautiful and fertile appearance than any we had ſeen before, and like the reſt abounded with people and cocoa-nut trees. The habitations of the natives we ſaw ſtanding in groups all along the coaſt. At a diſtance from this we obſerved a large veſſel under ſail. It was with much regret that we could not ſufficiently examine this place, which we were obliged to leave by reaſon of the rocks and breakers, that ſurrounded it in every direction, which rendered the hazard attending a minute ſurvey, more than an equivalent to every advantage we might procure.

On Sunday the 23d, having ſtill proceeded in our courſe to the weſtward, at nine o'clock, P. M. the Tamar, who was a-head, fired a gun, and our people imagined they ſaw breakers to the leeward; but we were ſoon convinced, that what had been taken for breakers, was nothing more than the undulating reflection of the moon, which was going down, and ſhone faintly from behind a cloud in the horizon. We had this day exceſſive hard ſhowers of rain, on which we ſeized ſuch a favourable opportunity of filling our caſks with a freſh ſupply of water. This is performed on board of ſhip, by extending large pieces of canvaſs in an horizontal poſition, hanging them by the corners, and placing a cannon ball, or any heavy body in the centre; by which means the rain running trickling down to the middle, pours in a ſtream into the caſks placed under. In this manner the Manilla ſhips, during the long paſſages they make through the South Seas, recruit their water, from the great ſhowers of rain which at this ſeaſon of the year fall in theſe latitudes, for which purpoſe they always carry a great number of earthen-jars with them. On the 24th, we had moderate fair weather, and at ten o'clock, A. M. we deſcried another iſland, bearing S. S. W. diſtant about ſeven or eight leagues. We found it to be low, and covered with wood, among which, were cocoa-nut trees in great abundance. But though the place itſelf has a pleaſant appearance, a dreadful ſea breaks upon almoſt every part of the coaſt, and a great deal of foul ground lies about it. A large lake is in the middle of this iſland, and it is near 30 miles in circumference. It is about four leagues in length from E. to W. nearly as much in breadth, and lies in latitude 8 deg. 33 min. S. and in 178 deg. 16 min. W. longitude from London. We ſailed quite round it, and, when on the lee-ſide, ſent our boats out to ſound for an anchoring-place. They returned with the unfavourable news that no ſoundings were to be got near the ſhore. However, having been diſpatched a ſecond time to procure ſome refreſhments for the ſick, they landed with great difficulty, and brought off about 200 cocoa-nuts, which to perſons in our circumſtances, were an ineſtimable treaſure. They found on ſhore thouſands of ſea-fowl ſitting on their neſts, and ſo diveſted of fear, that they did not attempt to move at the approach of the ſeamen, but ſuffered themſelves to be knocked down, having no apprehenſion of the miſchief that was intended them. The ground was covered with land crabs; theſe were the only animals we ſaw, nor did we obſerve the leaſt ſign of any inhabitants; and it was ſuppoſed never before to have received the mark of human foot-ſteps. The Commodore was inclined to believe, that this iſland was the ſame that in the French charts is laid down about a degree to the eaſtward of the great iſland of Saint Elizabeth, which is the principal of Solomon's Iſlands, but being afterwards convinced of the contrary, he named it the Duke of York's Iſland, in honour of his late royal highneſs.

On Friday the 28th, we gave up all hopes of ſeeing Solomon's Iſlands, which we had expected to viſit, and ſhould certainly have found, had there been any ſuch iſlands in the latitude in which they are placed in our maps. Theſe iſlands are ſaid to have been diſcovered by Ferdinand de Quiros, who repreſented them as exceeding rich and populous; and ſeveral Spaniards who have pretended that they were driven thither by ſtreſs of weather, have ſaid that the natives, with reſpect to their behaviour, were much like thoſe of the continent of America, and that they had ornaments of gold and ſilver; but though the Spaniards have at different times ſent ſeveral perſons in ſearch of theſe iſlands, it was always without ſucceſs: which muſt probably proceed, either from the uncertainty of the latitude in which they are ſaid to be found, or the whole being a fiction. There is, indeed, good reaſon to believe, that there is no good authority for laying down Solomon's Iſlands in the ſituation that is aſſigned them by the French: the only perſon who has pretended to have ſeen them, is the above mentioned Quiros, and we doubt whether he left behind him any account of them, by which they might be found by future navigators. However, we continued our courſe in the track of theſe ſuppoſed iſlands, till the 29th, and being then 10 deg. to the weſtward of their ſituation in the chart, without having ſeen any thing of them, we hauled to the northward, in order to croſs the line, and afterwards to ſhape our courſe for the Ladrone Iſlands, which though a long run, we hoped to accompliſh, before we ſhould be diſtreſſed for water, notwithſtanding it now began to fall ſhort. This day we obſerved in latitude 8 deg. 13 min. S. and in 176 deg. 20 min. E. longitude.

On Tueſday the 2nd of July, at four o'clock, P. M. we diſcovered an iſland bearing north, diſtant ſix leagues. We ſtood for it till ſun-ſet, and then kept off and on for the night. In the morning we found it to be a low flat iſland, of a moſt delightful aſpect, full of wood, among which the cocoa-nut tree was very conſpicuous. However, we had the mortification to find much foul ground about it, upon which the ſea broke with a threatening ſurf. We ſteered along the S. W. ſide of it, which we judged to be about four leagues in length, and ſoon perceived that it was not only inhabited, but very populous. Immediately about 60 canoes, or rather proas, put off to the ſhips, none of which had fewer than three, nor more than ſix perſons on board. Theſe Indians had nothing of that fierce diſpoſition, which had, in many inſtances, totally cut off all friendly intercourſe. After gazing at the ſhips for ſome time, one of them ſuddenly ſprung out of his proa into the ſea, and ſwam to the Dolphin, then ran up the ſides like a cat. He had no ſooner reached the decks, than ſitting down, he burſt into a violent fit of laughter; then ſtarted up, and ran all over the ſhip, attempting to ſteal whatever he could lay his hands on; but, being ſtark naked, he was always foiled. A ſeaman put him on a jacket and trowſers, which cauſed great diverſion, as he diſplayed all the antics of a monkey. At length he leaped over-board, with his new habiliments, and ſwam back to his proa. The ſucceſs of this adventurer encouraged ſeveral others to ſwim to the ſhip, and whatever they could ſeize they carried off with aſtoniſhing agility. Theſe Indians are tall, well proportioned, and clean limbed; their ſkin of a bright copper colour; their features exceeding regular; and their countenances expreſſing a ſurpriſing mixture of intrepidity and cheerfulneſs. Their hair is black and long, which ſome wore tied up behind in a great bunch, others, in knots; ſome had long beards, ſome only whiſkers, and ſome nothing more than a ſmall tuft at the point of the chin. Except their ornaments, they were all ſtark naked: theſe conſiſted of ſhells very prettily diſpoſed, and ſtrung together, and were worn round their necks, wriſts and waiſts. All their ears were bored, but no ornaments were ſeen in them; though as the lobes of their ears hung down almoſt to their ſhoulders, it is highly probable, that ſomething of conſiderable weight is at times affixed to them by way of ornament. One man in the group appeared to be a perſon of conſequence: he had a ſtring of human teeth round his waiſt, which nothing that was ſhewed him could induce him to part with. Some were unarmed, but others had a very formidable weapon, conſiſting of a kind of ſpear, very broad at the end, and ſtuck full of ſhark's teeth, which are as ſharp as a lancet at the ſides, for about three feet of its length. The officers ſhewed them cocoa-nuts, and made ſigns that they wanted more; but inſtead of giving any intimation that their country furniſhed ſuch fruit, they endeavoured to ſeize upon thoſe they ſaw. To this iſland we gave the name of Byron's Iſland. It is ſeated in latitude 1 deg. 18 min. S. and in 173 deg. 46 min. E. longitude.

C H A P. IV.

The two ſhips depart from Byron's Iſland—Croſs the Equinoxial Line—Arrive at Tinian—Anchor in the very ſpot where Lord Anſon lay in the Centurion—A deſcription of that Iſland, with remarkable incidents and tranſactions—Obſervations on the Indians, and the conſtruction of their proas—They ſail from the Ladrone Iſlands—Touch at the Iſle of Pulo Timoan. —An account of the Malays—Arrive at Batavia—A particular deſcription of the ſtate and ſituation of this country—Paſſage from Batavia to the Cape of Good Hope—Obſervations during our ſtay there—Set ſail and paſs the Iſland of St. Helena—The Tamar ſteers for Antigua in order to refit—and the Dolphin on the 9th of May, 1766, anchor in the Downs.

ON Wedneſday the third of July, we ſent out the boats to ſound, ſoon after we had brought to off Byron's Iſland; when returned, they reported, that there was depth of ground at thirty fathom, within two cables length of the ſhore, but as the bottom was coral rock, and the ſoundings much too near for a ſhip to lie in ſafety, we were obliged to make ſail, without having procured any refreſhments for our ſick. We now ſteered nearly due north, and croſſed the line two degrees beyond the extremity of weſtern longitude from London, or in 178 deg. E. In our courſe, we ſaw great quantities of fiſh, but none could be taken, except ſharks, which were become a good diſh even at the Commodore's own table.

On Sunday the 21ſt, all our cocoa-nuts by this time being expended, the men began to fall down again with the ſcurvey. Theſe nuts had, in an aſtoniſhing manner, checked the progreſs of this dreadful diſorder; many whoſe limbs were become as black as ink, who could not move without the aſſiſtance of two men, and who, beſides being entirely diſabled, ſuffered excruciting pain, had been in a few days, by eating theſe nuts, ſo far recovered, as to do their duty, and even go aloft as well as they did before they were ſeized by this diſtemper. The favourable report which the writer of Lord Anſon's voyage had made of Tinian, one of the Ladrones, (a range of iſlands ſo named by Magellan, on one of which he loſt his life, in an encounter with the natives) induced our Commodore to proceed to ſo friendly an aſylum, as that was deſcribed to be, for diſeaſed and exhauſted mariners. Accordingly on the 28th, in latitude 13 deg. 9 min. N. and in 158 deg. 50 min. E. longitude; and being now nearly in the parallel of Tinian, we ſhaped our courſe for that iſland. On the 30th we again ſaw land, which proved to be the iſlands of Saypan, Tinian, and Aiguigan, which are between two and three leagues diſtant from each other. On the 31ſt, we ſteered along the eaſt-ſide of them, and at noon, hauling round the ſouth point of Tinian, between that iſland and Aiguigan, anchored at the S. W. point of it, in 16 fathoms water, on good ground, and in the very ſpot where Lord Anſon lay in the Centurion, in Auguſt 1742. As ſoon as the ſhip was ſecured, the Commodore went on ſhore, to fix upon a place where tents might be erected for the ſick, not a ſingle man being at this time free from the ſcurvy, and many were in the laſt ſtage of it; yet not one on board had died ſince our ſetting out from England. We found ſeveral huts which had been left by the Spaniards and Indians the year before; for this year none of them as yet had been at the place, nor was it probable that they ſhould come for ſome months, the ſun being now almoſt vertical, and the rainy ſeaſon ſet in. The Commodore affirmed, that he never felt ſuch heat, either on the coaſt of Guinea, in the Weſt Indies, or upon the iſland of St. Thomas, which is under the line. The thermometer which was kept on board the Dolphin, generally ſtood at 86 degrees, which is but 9 degrees leſs than the heat of the blood at the heart, and had it been on ſhore, it would have roſe much higher. After a ſpot had been fixed upon for the tents, ſix or ſeven of the men endeavoured to puſh through the woods, in ſearch of the beautiful lawns and meadows deſcribed in Anſon's voyage; but the trees ſtood ſo thick, and the place was ſo overgrown with underwood, that they could not ſee three yards before them; they were therefore obliged to be continually hallooing to each other, to prevent their being ſeparately loſt in this trackleſs wilderneſs. As the weather was intolerably hot, they had nothing on but their ſhoes, ſhirts and trowſers; and theſe were ſoon torn to pieces by the buſhes and brambles: at laſt, however, they got through, with incredible labour and difficulty; but found the lawns entirely overgrown with a ſtubborn kind of reed or bruſh, in many places higher than their heads, and no where lower than their middles, which continually entangle their legs, and cut them like whipcord. During this excurſion, they were covered with flies from head to foot; and whenever they offered to ſpeak, they were ſure of having a mouthful, many of which never failed to get down their throats. After having walked three or four miles they ſaw a bull, which they killed, and a little before night got back to the beach, as wet as if they had been dipt in water, and ſo fatigued, that they were ſcarce able to ſtand.

On Thurſday the 1ſt of Auguſt, a party was diſpatched to fetch the bull, and our people were employed in ſetting up more tents. As the Commodore himſelf was very ill of the ſcurvy, he ordered a tent to be pitched for himſelf, and took up his reſidence on ſhore, where we alſo erected the ſmith's forge, in order to repair the iron work of both ſhips. We were likewiſe employed in getting the water caſks on ſhore, and clearing the well at which they were to be filled. This well we thought to be the ſame the Centurion watered at, but it was the worſt we had met with during the voyage, for the water was not only brackiſh, but full of worms. Alſo the road where the ſhips lay was a dangerous ſituation at this ſeaſon, for the bottom is a hard ſand, and large coral rocks, and the anchor having no hold in the ſand, is in perpetual danger of being cut to pieces. We did not perceive theſe diſagreeable circumſtances when we firſt caſt anchor, thinking then the ground to be good; but finding the contrary after having moored, to prevent any bad conſequences, we rounded the cables and buoyed them up with empty caſks. Afterwards finding the cables much damaged, we reſolved to lie ſingle for the future, that by veering away, or heaving in, as we ſhould have more or leſs wind, we might always keep them from being ſlack, conſequently from rubbing, and this expedient ſucceeded to our wiſh. At the full and change of the moon, a prodigious ſwell tumbles in here; and it once drove in from the weſtward with ſuch fury, that we were obliged to put to ſea for a week; for had our cable parted in the night, and the wind been upon the ſhore, which ſometimes happens for two or three days together, the ſhip muſt inevitably have been loſt on the rocks. Thus had we arrived at this delightful iſland, after a paſſage of four months and twenty days, from the ſtraits of Magellan, with this ſurpriſing and happy circumſtance, that during this long run, though many had great complaints of the ſcurvy, from the ſalt proviſions they had been obliged to live upon, yet through the care of the Commodore, in cauſing the people to be ſupplied at ſtated times with portable ſoup, and the refreſhments we had obtained from ſeveral iſlands, we had not buried a ſingle man; and we had now by being favoured with fair weather, an opportunity of ſending our ſick on ſhore, into the tents, which ſome of our men had ſoon prepared for their reception. But while we ſtaid here, two died of fevers; and in the Commodore's opinion, from the almoſt inceſſant rains, and violent heat, during the ſeaſon we were here, this beautiful and fertile iſland is one of the moſt unhealthy ſpots in the world. We frequently diſpatched parties into the woods in ſearch of cattle, which, from the account publiſhed in the hiſtory of Commodore Anſon's voyage, we expected to find in numbers; but to our diſappointment, a few only were diſcovered at a great diſtance from the tents, ſo very ſhy, that it was difficult to get a ſhot at them; and more ſo to drag them ſix or ſeven miles to the tents, the woods and lawns which we have already deſcribed, being ſo thick, as greatly to obſtruct our paſſage; for though the beaſts themſelves had made paths through theſe woods, we could not proceed in them without the greateſt difficulty. During the firſt week we killed only three white bullocks, one of which our men could not bring down to the ſhore, before it was covered with maggots, and ſtunk moſt intolerably: nor was this the worſt; for the ſailors ſuffered ſuch inexpreſſible fatigue as frequently brought on fevers, occaſioned by the warmth of the climate, the prodigious number of flies by day, and the muſquitoes by night; theſe laſt reſemble our gnats in England, but are larger, more numerous, and much more troubleſome. They were alſo in their march much embarraſſed with centipieds, ſcorpions, and a large black ant, little inferior to either of them in the malignity of its bite. We had alſo to encounter with an innumerable number of other venomous inſects, altogether unknown to us, by which we ſuffered ſo ſeverely, that many were afraid to lie down in their beds: nor were thoſe on board in a much better ſituation than thoſe on ſhore; for numbers of theſe tormentors being conveyed to the ſhip by the wood, they took poſſeſſion of every birth, and left the poor ſeamen no place of reſt either below or upon deck.

On Wedneſday the 7th, we ſent on ſhore to the tents, which was called the hoſpital, 16 of our ſhip's company; and the next day John Watſon, our quarter-maſter, departed this life; and ſoon after died Peter Evans, one of the ſeamen belonging to the Tamar. This day we got our copper oven on ſhore, and baked bread, which we ſerved to the ſick; the whole being under the inſpection of the ſurgeon. Poultry we procured upon eaſy terms, for the birds were in great plenty, and eaſily killed; but the fleſh of the beſt of them was very ill taſted. Our principal reſource for freſh meat was the wild hog, with which the iſland is well ſtocked. Theſe animals are exceeding fierce, and a carcaſs of ſome of them frequently weighed 200 weight. They were killed without much trouble, but a black belonging to the Tamar contrived a method to enſnare them, ſo that we took great numbers of them alive, which was an unſpeakable advantage. But being very deſirous of procuring ſome beef in an eatable ſtate, with leſs riſk and labour, we ſent a boat, upon the information of Mr. Gore, to the N. W. part of the iſland, where the cattle were very numerous. A party was alſo ſent with a tent for their accommodation, who ſhot them; and they were immediately killed, cut up, and conveyed to the boats: however, ſometimes ſuch a ſea broke upon the rocks that it was impoſſible to approach them, and the Tamar's boat loſt three of her beſt men by attempting it.

This iſland of Tinian, is ſituated in 15 deg. 8 min. north latitude, and 114 deg. 50 min. weſt longitude from Acapulco, in New Spain; and is 12 miles in length, but only half as much in breadth. It produces limes, ſour oranges, cocoa-nuts, bread-fruit, guavas, and paupaws in abundance; but we found no water-melons, ſcurvey-graſs, or ſorrel. The cocoa-nut, which we have ſo often mentioned in deſcribing the new diſcovered iſlands, is one of the moſt beautiful, as well as the moſt admirable of all the vegetable productions, and is alſo found in many other parts of the world, particularly in the Eaſt and Weſt Indies. It is a ſpecies of the palm. The trunk is large, ſtrait, and inſenſibly grows ſmaller from the bottom to the top. On the upper part of the trunk are the branches, which form a beautiful head. The fruit hangs in branches by ſtrong ſtalks; ſome of which are always ripe, others green, and ſome juſt beginning to button, while the bloſſoms, which are yellow, are ſtill in bloom. The fruit is of different ſizes, and of a greeniſh colour: it is covered with two rinds, the outer compoſed of long, tough, brown threads; but the ſecond is extremely hard, and has within it a firm white ſubſtance, in taſte neareſt to that of a ſweet almond. The people of ſeveral countries eat it with their meat as we do bread, and ſqueeze out of it a liquor that reſembles almond-milk, which on being expoſed to the fire, is converted into a kind of oil, that is uſed both in ſauces and in lamps. In the middle of the nut is alſo a conſiderable quantity of a clear cool liquor, that has the taſte of ſugar-water, and when drank is very refreſhing. What is called the cabbage conſiſts of a cluſter of many white, thin, brittle flakes, which have ſomewhat of the taſte of almonds, and, when boiled, has a reſemblance to the taſte of an Engliſh cabbage, but is ſweeter and more agreeable. But the moſt remarkable fruit of this iſland is the bread-fruit, it being generally eaten by the Europeans who come here inſtead of bread, to which it is even preferred. It grows upon a lofty tree, which, near the top, divides into ſpreading branches, covered with leaves of a deep green colour, notched on the edges, and from 12 to 18 inches in length. The fruit which grows ſingle on all parts of the branches, is ſeven or eight inches long, of an oval form, and covered with a rough rind, and when gathered green, and roaſted on the embers, has its inſide ſoft, tender, white, and crummy like bread. Its taſte comes neareſt to that of an artichoke's bottom. This excellent fruit is in ſeaſon eight months in the year. As it ripens it turns yellow, and growing ſofter, has the taſte of a ripe peach, and a fragrant ſmell, but is then ſaid to be unwholeſome, and apt to produce the flux. The fiſh, however, caught about this coaſt appear to be unwholeſome. Some of our officers after having eaten a diſh of fine looking fiſh, were taken ill with a violent purging and vomiting, which had like to have been attended with fatal conſequences. Mr. Walter, in his hiſtory of Commodore Anſon's voyage, obſerves, that the few they caught at their firſt arrival, had ſurfeited thoſe who eat of them, and therefore the people on board the Centurion thought it moſt prudent to abſtain from fiſh. This obſervation, added to our own experience, is a ſufficient proof of their being prejudicial. Indeed, at firſt, from taking the word ſurfeit in a literal ſenſe, we concluded, that thoſe who taſted the fiſh, when the late Lord Anſon came hither, were made ſick merely by eating too much of them; from which ſuppoſition we were led to think, that there could be no reaſon for a total abſtinence with reſpect to this kind of food, but only a caution to eat with temperance. However, we were ſoon made wiſer by experience; for though all our people eat ſparingly of this fiſh by way of experiment, nevertheleſs all who taſted them were ſoon afterwards dangerouſly ill. Beſides the above mentioned fruit, this iſland produces cotton and indigo in abundance, and would certainly be of great value if it was ſituated in the Weſt Indies. The ſurgeon of the Tamar, an ingenious and very judicious gentleman, encloſed a large ſpot of ground here, and made a very pretty garden; but our ſhort ſtay would not permit us to derive any advantage from it. However, amidſt ſuch plenty we enjoyed, the want of its produce might very well be diſpenſed with.

It is ſurprizing that an iſland thus abounding with the neceſſaries and luxuries of life, ſhould be deſtitute of inhabitants, but it ſeems it was once populous; and that an epidemical ſickneſs having carried off multitudes of the inhabitants of this and the neighbouring iſlands, the Spaniards removed the reſt to Guam, to ſupply the numbers that had died there, where languiſhing for their native ſoil, and their former habitations, the greateſt part of them died with grief. Indeed we ſaw the ruins of their deſerted town, which is now over-grown with trees and buſhes. But though Tinian is uninhabited, the Indians of Guam, and other of the neighbouring iſlands, frequently reſort thither to jerk beef, and carry it away. Theſe Indians are a bold, ſtrong, well limbed people; and if we may judge from the admirable ſtructure of their flying proas, the only veſſels they uſe at ſea, they are far from being deficient in point of underſtanding. Theſe veſſels move with ſuch amazing ſwiftneſs, that it is generally allowed by all who have obſerved them with attention, that they will run at leaſt 20 miles an hour. The conſtruction of theſe proas is very remarkable, the head and ſtern being exactly alike; but the ſides very different, that intended for the windward ſide being built rounding, while the lee-ſide is flat. The body is formed of two pieces joined endways, and nearly ſewed together with bark: and as the ſtrait run of her leeward ſide, and her ſmall breadth, would certainly cauſe her to overſet, a frame called an out-rigger, is laid out from her to the windward, to the end of which is faſtened a log, made hollow, in the ſhape of a ſmall boat: thus the weight of the frame balances the proa, and that, with the ſmall boat, always in the water, prevents her overſetting to the windward. The veſſel generally carries ſix or ſeven Indians, two of whom ſit in the head and ſtern, who ſteer the proa alternately, with a paddle, according to the tack ſhe goes on; he in the ſtern being the ſteerſman; the reſt are employed in ſetting and trimming the ſail, or bailing out the water ſhe may accidentally ſhip. Thus by only ſhifting the ſail, theſe veſſels with either end foremoſt, can, with aſtoniſhing ſwiftneſs, run from one of theſe iſlands to another, and back again, without ever putting about. While we lay at this place, the Tamar was ſent to examine the iſland of Saypan, which is much larger than Tinian, riſes higher, and has a much pleaſanter appearance. The Tamar anchored to the leeward, at the diſtance of a mile from the ſhore, and in ten fathom water, with much the ſame kind of ground as we had in the road of Tinian. Some of the Tamar's company landed upon a fine ſandy beach, which is ſix or ſeven miles long, and walked up into the woods, where they diſcovered many trees very fit for top maſts. They ſaw no fowls nor any tracks of cattle, but plenty of hogs and guanicoes: alſo large heaps of pearl oyſter-ſhells thrown up together, and other ſigns of people having been there: poſſibly the Spaniards may go thither at ſome ſeaſons of the year, and carry on a pearl fiſhery. As we ſhall have an opportunity of again mentioning theſe places in our accounts of other voyages, we here, for the amuſement of our numerous ſubſcribers, inſert what other navigators, and judicious writers, have related both of the Philippine and Ladrone Iſlands, both ſituated in the Pacific Ocean, and at no great diſtance from each other.

An authentic account of the Philippine, and Ladrone, or Marian Iſlands.

The Philippine Iſlands are ſituate in the Chineſian Sea, part of the Pacific Ocean, between 114 and 130 degrees of eaſtern longitude, and between 5 and 19 degrees of north latitude, about 100 leagues S. E. of China. There are 1100 of them, and ſeveral very large. The chief of the moſt northerly of them is Manila or Luconia, which is the largeſt of the Philippines, and is ſituate in 15 deg. of north latitude, being about 400 miles long and above 180 broad in moſt places.

The capital of this iſland, and of all the reſt, is the city of Manila, ſituate on a bay in the S. W. part of the iſland, being two miles in circumference, ſurrounded by a wall and other works, a very commodious harbour, but of difficult acceſs, on account of the rocks and ſands which lie before it; a caſtle defends the entrance.

The chief buildings are the cathedral, pariſh churches and convents; one of the religious houſes is appropriated to the ſupport of orphans, daughters of the inhabitants, who are provided for during their lives; or, if they chuſe to marry, have a portion of two or three hundred crowns given them. Their churches, chapels, and altars are richly adorned, and their proceſſions on holidays as ſplendid as in Spain. The college of the jeſuits here, as in moſt Popiſh countries, is more magnificent than any of the reſt.

The iſland of Luconia, or Manila, is eſteemed healthful, and the water in it the beſt in the world. It produces all the fruits of warm climates, and has an excellent breed of horſes carried thither from Spain. It is well ſituated for the Indian and Chineſe trade; and the bay and port, which lies on the weſt-ſide of it, is a large circular baſon of ten leagues diameter, entirely land-locked. The city of Manila, which ſtands on the eaſt-ſide, is large and contains ſeveral ſpacious ſtreets and grand houſes; and at the beginning of the firſt war with the Spaniards, in the reign of king George II. was an open place, only defended by a little fort; but conſiderable additions have lately been made to its fortifications. The port peculiar to the city is that of Cabite, which lies two leagues to the ſouthward, and here the ſhips employed in the Acapulco trade are ſtationed.

The city is healthfully ſituated, and well watered, and has a very fruitful country in its neighbourhood; but it is ſome diſadvantage to its trade, that it is difficult getting out to ſea to the eaſtward, through ſuch a number of iſlands: here the Spaniards waſte abundance of time, and are often in great danger.

The trade from hence to China and India conſiſts chiefly in ſuch commodities as are intended to ſupply Mexico and Peru, namely, ſpices, Chineſe ſilks, and manufactures, particularly ſilk ſtockings, of which no leſs than 50,000 pair have been ſhipped in one cargo, with vaſt quantities of Indian ſtuffs, callicoes and chints, which are much worn in America, together with other ſmall articles, ſuch as goldſmiths-work, &c. wrought at the city of Manila by the Chineſe, of which nation there are not leſs than 20,000 reſiding there, as ſervants, manufacturers, or brokers. All theſe articles are tranſported annually to the port of Acapulco in Mexico: this trade is not open to all the inhabitants of Manila, but is reſtrained to the convents of Manila, principally to the jeſuits, being a donation to ſupport the miſſions for the propagation of the Catholic faith. The tonage of each ſhip is divided into a certain number of bales, all of the ſame ſize; and the convents have a right to embark ſuch a quantity of goods on board the Manila ſhips as the tonage of their bales amount to. The trade is limited by royal edicts to a certain value; according to ſome, it ſhould not exceed 600,000 dollars; but it is frequently known to amount to three millions.

The bulk of the people of Manila are of Chineſe or Malayan extraction, and there are ſome blacks. The Spaniards, though feweſt in number, have the government in their hands. The adjacent country is full of fine plantations, farms, and country-houſes of the principal inhabitants. Upon the mountains, in the middle of the country, the people live in tents and huts, under the ſpreading trees. The plains are overflowed in the rainy ſeaſon, the houſes built upon high pillars; and the people have no communication but by boats during the rains, which uſually fall in June, July, Auguſt, and September, and then happen terrible ſtorms of wind and thunder. Earthquakes are frequent; the city of Manila has ſuffered ſeveral times by them; and from the volcanoes, which abound here, iſſue torrents of fire and melted minerals. Theſe are the inconveniencies we meet with; but the fair ſeaſon is for the moſt part exceedingly pleaſant.

The city of Manila contains about 3000 inhabitants; and during the ſecond war in the reign of King George II. was in the year 1763, taken by admiral Corniſh and Sir William Draper. It was, however, ſtipulated to be ranſomed; but the ranſom-money hath never yet been intirely diſcharged. The prieſts take prodigious pains to make converts to the Romiſh faith, and have been pretty ſucceſsful in their endeavours. The Indians pay a poll-tax; and a conſiderable ſum of money is annually allowed for the ſupport of female orphans, both of Spaniſh and Indian parents.

The complexions of the ſeveral people who inhabit theſe iſlands are very different. The blacks are as black as the Caffres of Afric, but differ from them in their features and long hair, and therefore are ſuppoſed to be of Indian extraction; and as they poſſeſs the mountainous and inacceſſible parts of the country, it is conjectured, that they were the original inhabitants, and driven up thither by ſucceeding adventurers.

The deſcendants of the Malayans (inhabitants of Malacca) are very tawny, the Chineſe not ſo dark, and the Spaniards are pretty near the colour of the Chineſe. There is alſo a nation of painted people, called Pintados, who colour their ſkins like our anceſtors the Picts.

The natives are for the moſt part of a moderate ſtature, and their features juſt; the Spaniards have taught them to cloath themſelves, except the blacks, who only tie a cloth about their loins, and another about their heads, and uſually go bare-foot.

Rice and fiſh are moſt eaten by thoſe who live near the ſea coaſts, and the mountaineers eat the fleſh they take in hunting, and the fruits of the earth, which grow ſpontaneouſly in great plenty. Their liquor is water, which they uſually drink warm as the Chineſe do. They have alſo palm-wine, and ſpirituous liquors diſtilled from the juice of the ſugar-cane, rice, &c. They bathe twice a day in cold water, either for health or diverſion, or both: plays are another diverſion, and they are entertained frequently with dancing and mock fights.

Theſe iſlands are extremely well ſituated for trade; all the rich merchandize of India is ſent from hence to America, and the treaſures of Mexico and Peru are brought hither annually, by which exchange, it is ſaid, they make a profit of 400 per cent.

Few countries enjoy a more fruitful ſoil; the people in many places live upon what the earth produces ſpontaneouſly, and the ſurface of the ground is exceeding beautiful; the trees are ever green, and ſeldom without fruit.

Their neat cattle run wild in the mountains, and are hunted, as well as deer, wild hogs and goats. The monkies and baboons found here are very ſagacious: during the ſeaſon, when there is no fruit to be got, they go down to the ſea-ſide to catch oyſters; that the fiſh may not pinch their paws, they put a ſtone between the ſhells to prevent their ſhutting cloſe. Wax is ſo plentiful, that they make no other candles, and never burn lamps. Their bees are of ſeveral kinds, ſome of them very large, and make their combs in the woods, producing ſuch quantities of honey as would almoſt ſubſiſt the natives.

Medicinal and ſweet gums, iſſuing from the bodies of trees are part of the produce: ſerpents of various kinds are found in theſe iſlands; but the fathers who relate that ſome of them are ſo large, they will ſwallow a ſtag, horns and all, ſurely do not expect to be believed, any more than when they relate, that the leaves of trees are converted into inſects; but the laſt of theſe ſtories may proceed from a miſtake, for it is certain that ſome inſects depoſit their eggs (as they do with us) upon the leaves of trees, which are hatched there, as is the caſe of the cochineal fly; and they might ignorantly imagine that thoſe inſects proceed from the leaf. The alligators are very dangerous; and the ignana, a kind of land alligator, does a great deal of miſchief. Among their birds, are peacocks, parrots, cocatoos, and turtle-doves, which are very beautiful, fowls with black bones, and the bird tavan, which lays a number of eggs in trenches in the ſand, and leaves them to hatch there. The ſaligan faſtens her neſt to ſome rock, as a martin does againſt a wall, which diſſolving into a kind of jelly in warm water, is eſteemed delicious food. Here is alſo the xolo bird, which eats like a turkey; the camboxa is a well taſted fowl peculiar to theſe iſlands. The herrero or carpenter, is a fine large green bird. It is called the carpenter, becauſe its beak is ſo hard, that it digs a hole in the trunk, or ſome large branch of a tree, in order to build its neſt.

Their fruits are mangoes, plantains, bananoes, cocoas, tamarinds, caſſia, and the cocoa or chocolate nut, which has been brought over from Mexico; oranges, lemons, and all manner of tropical fruits. The cinnamon and nutmeg-tree have been planted here; but degenerate, and are good for little.

A great deal of good timber and dying woods grow in theſe iſlands; and the calamba, or ſweet-wood, a kind of cane, grows in the mountains, which, if cut, yields a draught of water, and is of great ſervice to the natives.

They have one plant that has all the properties of and is uſed as a ſubſtitute for opium; of this the natives are very fond, and frequently intoxicate themſelves with it.

Flowers and ſweet herbs grow wild here, but they do not cultivate them in their gardens, and there are abundance of medicinal, as well as poiſonous herbs and flowers, which do not only kill thoſe who touch or taſte them, but ſo infect the air, that many people die in the time of their bloſſoming; on the contrary, theſe iſlands are providentially well furniſhed with antidotes, particularly the bezoar ſtone, which is found in the belly of a creature much like a deer; and the root dilao, which is like ginger, and heals wounds made by any venomous beaſt, being bruiſed and boiled with oil of cocoas.

The tree camondog is ſo venomous, that the pilchards eating the leaves which fall into the ſea die; as will the perſons who eat the poiſoned fiſh. The liquor which flows from the trunk of this tree ſerves theſe people to poiſon the points of their darts which they blow through the trunks abovementioned: the very ſhadow of the tree is ſo deſtructive, that, as far as it reaches, no herb or graſs grows, and if tranſplanted, it kills all the other plants it ſtands near, except a ſmall ſhrub which is an antidote againſt it, and always with it: a bit of a twig of this ſhrub, or a leaf carried in a man's mouth, is ſaid to be a ſecurity againſt the venom of the tree, and therefore the Indians are never without it.

The maka bukay, which ſignifies the giver of life, is a kind of ivy which twines about any tree, and grows to the thickneſs of a man's finger; it has long ſhoots like vine branches, of which the Indians make bracelets, and eſteem them a preſervative againſt poiſon. There are many other trees and plants of extraordinary virtue in theſe iſlands; among others, there is the ſenſitive plant, in all reſpects like a colewort, which growing out of a rock avoids the touch, and retires under water: there is another that grows on St. Peter's Hill about Manila, which is not very tall, and has little leaves, which whenever it is touched, draws back and cloſes all its leaves together; for which reaſon the Spaniards call it la vergin coſa, that is, the baſhful.

There grows near Cathalagan, in the iſland of Samar, a plant of a ſurpriſing virtue, diſcovered by the fathers of the ſociety, as they tell us, of late years: the Dutch have alſo ſome knowledge of it, and, it is ſaid, will give double the quantity of gold for it. The plant is like ivy, and twines about any tree it grows near: the fruit which grows out of the knots and leaves reſembles a melocotoon in bigneſs and colour, and within has eight, ten, or ſixteen kernals as big as a hazel nut, each green and yellow, which when ripe, drop out of themſelves.

The uſual doſe given of it is the weight of half a royal, that is the ſixteenth part of an ounce, powdered and mixed in wine or water; if it has no effect the firſt time, the doſe is repeated, and is a powerful antidote againſt any poiſon, either of venomous herbs or darts which are uſed by the natives of Macaſſar, Borneo, and the Philippines.

The general language ſpoken in theſe iſlands is the Malayan tongue; beſides which, every people have a language peculiar to themſelves. They write on cocoanut leaves, with an iron ſtyle or pen; and arts and ſciences have been introduced by the Spaniards, the natives having nothing of this kind to boaſt of before their arrival.

All theſe iſlands, except Mindanao and Paragoa, are under the juriſdiction of a Spaniſh viceroy, who has governors under him in every other iſland and town of conſequence, and the like courts are erected for the trial of civil and criminal cauſes, as in Old Spain. The archbiſhop of Manila, the biſhops and their commiſſaries, determine eccleſiaſtical cauſes as in Europe; but there lies an appeal from them to the pope's delegate, who reſides in one of the iſlands. The court of inquiſition has alſo a commiſſary here. But notwithſtanding the Spaniards are repreſented as ſovereigns of theſe iſlands, this muſt only be underſtood of the open country and the ſea-coaſts, in which there may be 300,000 ſouls: but theſe are not a tenth part of the inhabitants, the reſt look upon themſelves as a free people: every mountain almoſt is poſſeſſed by a different tribe, who make war upon one another, the Spaniards ſeldom intermeddling in their quarrels. The Chineſe were formerly ſo numerous here, that they diſputed the authority of the Spaniards over them: it is computed that 40,000 of them reſided in and about the city of Manila; but the Spaniards compelled them to ſubmit, and baniſhed ſome thouſands of them, the reſt were permitted to remain here to carry on their manufactories; for they are almoſt the only artificers.

Their arms are bows, arrows, and lances or ſpears, broad ſwords, and tubes or trunks, through which they blow poiſoned arrows, the ſlighteſt wounds whereof are mortal, if immediate remedies are not applied. They have cane ſhields alſo covered with a buffaloe's hide, and a head piece for defenſive arms.

Theſe ſavages, as the Spaniards call them, worſhip one ſupreme God, and their anceſtors, as the Chineſe do, from whom moſt of them are deſcended; they worſhip alſo the ſun and moon, and almoſt every thing they ſee, whether animate or inanimate, groves, rocks, rivers, and one particular tree, which they would eſteem it a ſacrilege to cut down, believing the ſouls of ſome of their friends may reſide in it, and that in cutting the tree they may wound a near relation. Inſtead of temples, they have caves, wherein they place their idols, and ſacrifice to them. Some beautiful young virgins firſt wounds the victim with a ſpear, and then the prieſts diſpatch the animal; and, having dreſſed the meat, it is eaten by the company. Superſtition prevails among them; they have their lucky and unlucky days; and if certain animals croſs the way when they are going upon buſineſs, they will return home, and go out no more that day. The Spaniards tolerate them in their idolatrous worſhip; and ſuffer them to game on paying to the government 10,000 crowns per annum. They are alſo much given to a deteſtable vice: and did not imagine it to be a crime, till the Spaniards puniſhed them for it.

The men purchaſe their wives here as in China; and the marriage ceremony is performed by a prieſteſs, who ſacrifices ſome animal on the occaſion; after which, the bride is led home, and the whole concludes with an entertainment as at other places. They marry in their own tribe, and with their neareſt relations, except the firſt degree; ſome of them are confined to one wife, other tribes allow a plurality of women, and divorces for reaſonable cauſes on either ſide. Children are either named after heroes or flowers, or from ſome accidental circumſtance that occurs at the time of their birth; but as ſoon as they marry, they chuſe new names, and their parents are obliged to make uſe of their old ones.

The dead are waſhed and perfumed, wrapped in ſilk, and put in a cloſe coffin, near which a cheſt is placed that contains the arms of a man, or domeſtic utenſils of a woman: mourners are hired to aſſiſt in making a diſmal noiſe. They bury their dead as in China, and do not burn them: as ſoon as the body is buried, an entertainment is made, and all is converted to mirth and feſtivity. In general, they mourn in black garments; and ſhave their heads and eye-brows.

The next Spaniſh iſland to that of Manila is Samar or Philippina, between which and Manila is a narrow channel, called the Straight of Manila, the N. E. point whereof is called Spirito Sancto; the iſland is near 400 miles in circumference, the chief town Cathalagan, governed by a Spaniſh alcade. The iſland of Sebu, which lies in 10 deg. S. latitude, is the place where Magellan firſt ſet up the Spaniſh colours; the chief town named Nombre de Dios, afterwards made a biſhop's ſee, has in it a cathedral and ſeveral other churches and monaſteries. The Iſland of Negroes lies weſt of Sebu, and was ſo named becauſe it is inhabited chiefly by blacks. Mindanao lies the moſt ſoutherly of any of the Philippine Iſlands, and is the largeſt of them except Manila, being near 200 miles in length, and 150 in breadth. It is poſſeſſed by people of different nations and different religions; but the Mahometans, who are ſituate on the ſea-coaſts, are much the moſt numerous, whoſe ſovereign is ſtiled Sultan of Mindanao. Thoſe who poſſeſs the middle of the iſland are called Hillanoons, and another nation ſtiled Solognes, are ſituate on the N. W. coaſt. The air of this iſland is not ſo hot as might be expected, being refreſhed frequently by the ſea breezes, and the periodical rains, which lay the flat country under water. The winds blow from the eaſt, from October to May, and then turn about and ſet weſterly; next month the rains and ſtorms ſucceed; at firſt there are not more than two or three ſhowers a day; they afterwards come oftener, with violent hurricanes and loud thunder, and the wind continues weſterly until November, during which time they have ſuch ſtorms that trees are blown up by the roots, the rivers are overflowed, and they do not ſee the ſun or ſtars ſometimes in a week: about Auguſt the air is very cool, the rain and winds are moderate in September, and in October the wind blows from the eaſt again, and it continues fair till April, and ſometimes May.

Mindanao, the capital city, lies on the ſouth-ſide of the iſland, in 123 deg. 15 min. of eaſtern longitude, and 6 deg. 20 min. north latitude, near the mouth of a river, and about two miles from the ſea; the houſes being built on bamboo pillars, 16 or 18 feet above the ſurface of the ground, on account of the annual floods, when they have no communication with one another but by boats. The city is about a mile in length, built along the winding bank of the river; the Sultan's palace is ſupported by 180 trees, and has 20 cannon mounted in the front; and ſeveral of the nobility have great guns in or before their houſes. Large ſhips cannot come up to the town, there being ſcarce 11 feet water on the bar, at the entrance of the river.

The natives are held to be men of a ſprightly genius, but very lazy and indolent, and will rather thieve than work; but none are more active when they find there is a neceſſity for it; and there may be two reaſons for their lazy diſpoſition, one from the heat of the climate, and the other from the tyranny of the government, no man being ſure he ſhall enjoy what he acquires by his induſtry.

The Mindanayans are of a low ſtature, and very ſlender, of dark tawny complexions, black eyes and hair, flat faces, ſhort noſes, wide mouths, and black teeth, which they take abundance of pains to dye of that colour; and they wear the nails of their left hands almoſt as long again as their fingers, ſcraping and dying them with vermillion.

The men have a haughty mien, and yet are ſaid to be very complaiſant to foreigners, unleſs they are inſulted; and then they ſeldom fail to reſent the affront, and deſtroy their enemy by poiſon or a dagger, never hazarding their perſons in a duel.

Their habit is a linen frock and drawers, and a ſmall piece of linen cloth, tied about their heads, but they go bare-foot: the complexion and features of the women are better than thoſe of the men; but yet they too much reſemble the other ſex, and cannot be admired for their beauty; they wear a frock like the men, and a piece of cloth round their waiſts; the ſleeves of the frock being large, and coming down to their wriſts. Their hair is tied up in a roll at the hinder part of their heads. The men ſhave their heads, all but a lock that is left in the middle of the crown, like other Mahometans; their beards are very thin, being pulled up by the roots with tweezers. People of figure are cloathed in ſilk or fine callico; the women go bare-foot as well as the men, and adorn their arms and fingers with bracelets and rings. They are not reſtrained from converſing with their countrymen or foreigners.

The food of people of condition is fleſh, fiſh, and fowl of all kinds, except hogs fleſh, which the Mahometans never touch. The poorer ſort content themſelves with rice and ſago. Rice is the principal part of the meal with all of them; they take it up with their hands, uſing neither knives or ſpoons; and their meat, whatever it be, is boiled to rags, that it may very eaſily be pulled to pieces with their fingers. They uſually drink water, but make a pretty ſtrong liquor with plantains; they waſh before and after every meal, and bathe ſeveral times a day. Swimming is one of the chief diverſions of the women, as well as the men, to which they are uſed from their infancy.

Upon joyful occaſions the dancing girls, as they are called, are ſent for to divert the company; but this dancing conſiſts only in ſcrewing themſelves into laſcivious poſtures, and addreſſing their great men with flattering ſpeeches. They have plays and mock fights alſo acted before them, and hunting of wild beaſts is their principal rural ſport, in which their women partake; but their hunting is only driving the deer and other game into an incloſure, from whence they cannot eſcape, and then ſhooting at them.

Mindanao is a fruitful ſoil, well watered with rivers, and their mountains afford excellent timber. Of the libby, or ſago-tree, there are large groves: the ſago is the pith of a tree which the natives eat inſtead of bread, and is frequently brought over to Europe, being ſo grained, that it is ſometimes taken for a ſeed. They have no corn but rice. Plantains, guavas, mangoes, and all tropical fruits, abound here. Cloves and nutmegs have been tranſplanted hither, and appear fair to the eye; but it is ſaid they degenerate, and the fruit is good for nothing: if theſe plants were cultivated, poſſibly they might equal thoſe of the ſpice iſlands.

Here are no beaſts of prey in this iſland, but almoſt every other uſeful animal, ſuch as horſes, cows, buffaloes, and hogs, with bunches over their eyes; here are alſo ſnakes, ſcorpions, and other venomous inſects; and the feathered kind are the ſame as in Manila.

The Malayan language is generally ſpoken here; and the Mahometans have the koran and books of devotion, in the Arabic language. The liberal arts do not flouriſh here; they are forced to employ the Chineſe to keep their accounts for them; nor have they ſo much as a clock or a watch in all the country, but beat upon drums every three hours, that people may know the time of the day. There are ſcarce any other working trades, except goldſmiths, carpenters, and blackſmiths, who perform their work very well with the tools they have, for the ſmiths have neither vice nor anvil, nor the carpenters any ſaws, but when they have ſplit their planks, plane them with the ax or adze. Their diſeaſes are fluxes, fevers, and the ſmall-pox; and ſome are affected with a kind of leproſy, or dry ſcurf, which covers the body, and itches intolerably.

The religion of the ſultan, and thoſe who inhabit the ſea-coaſts, is Mahometaniſm, and that of the inland people is Paganiſm, differing little from the Chineſe. In allowing a plurality of wives and concubines, the Mahometans of this iſland imitate thoſe of Turky, only they allow their women greater liberties, ſuffering them to converſe freely with their acquaintance or ſtrangers; but it is ſaid they are ſo prejudiced againſt ſwines fleſh, that one of their great men refuſed to wear a pair of ſhoes made by an European, when he was informed that the threads with which they were ſewed were pointed with hogs briſtles. They look upon themſelves to be defiled, if they touch any thing which belongs to a hog; they durſt not kill them leſt they ſhould be defiled by the touch of the weapon they make uſe of, which occaſions theſe animals to multiply ſo faſt, that the iſland is over-run with them. They are very glad to ſee the Europeans kill them, but muſt undergo ſeveral ablutions or waſhings, if they ſhould happen to touch a man that had eaten its fleſh.

The ſultan of Mindanao is an abſolute prince, and his throne hereditary; both the perſons and purſes of his ſubjects are in his power, and if he knows any of them abound in wealth, he borrows it of them. He has one great miniſter, in whom he lodges the adminiſtration of the government, both civil and military, to whom both natives and foreigners muſt apply themſelves for liberty to trade. Their wars are chiefly with the mountaineers, who inhabit the middle of the iſland, with whom they are very cautious of coming to a general engagement; but when the armies are pretty near, they begin to intrench and cannonade each other, and will remain in the ſame camp ſome months, ſending out parties to make incurſions into the enemies country, and ſurprize defenceleſs places. Their arms are a crice or ſhort dagger, and a broad ſword, a ſpear, and bows and arrows.

The moſt conſiderable of the Philippines that have not been mentioned, are Mindora, S. W. of Manila: Panay, and Leyte, which lie north of Mindanao; and the iſland of Paragoa, which lies very near the north part of Borneo, and is ſubject to one of the princes of that iſland.

Philippina was the firſt that was diſcovered of this cluſter of iſlands, and conſequently gave name to the reſt. It lies between 12 and 14 degrees north latitude, and is the moſt fertile and pleaſant of all the Philippines, exhibiting a ſcene of perpetual verdure; for here the ſun is powerful, without being diſagreeable.

The Ladrone Iſlands are ſituate in the Pacific Ocean, in 140 degrees of eaſtern longitude, and between 12 and 28 degrees of north latitude. Guam or Ignana, the largeſt, is ſituate in 13 deg. 21 min. north latitude, 7300 miles weſt of Cape Corientes in Mexico, according to Dampier. The other inconſiderable iſlands are, 2. Sarpanta. 3. Bonaviſta or Tinian. 4. Seſpara. 5. Anatan. 6. Sarignan. 7. Guagam. 8. Alamaguan. 9. Pagon. 10. The burning mountain of Griga. 11. Magna. 12. Patas. 13. Diſconocida; and, 14. Malabrigo.

Guam is about 12 leagues long and four broad, lying N. and S. It is pretty high champaign land, ſloping down towards the coaſt. The eaſt-ſide, which is the higheſt, is fenced with ſteep rocks, on which the waves conſtantly beat, driven by the trade wind. The weſt-ſide is low land, in which are ſeveral little ſandy bays divided by rocks.

The natives of Guam are of a good ſtature, have large limbs, a tawny complexion, black long hair, ſmall eyes, thick lips, and are long viſaged. They are ſometimes afflicted with a kind of leproſy, otherwiſe the country is healthful, eſpecially in the dry ſeaſon. The rains begin in June, and laſt till October, but are not violent.

The iſland produces rice and moſt tropical fruits, and one ſort, which Dampier has named bread-fruit, grows upon a tree like apples, and at its full bigneſs is as large as an ordinary foot ball; it has a hard thick rind, and within a ſoft yellow pulp, of a ſweetiſh taſte; the natives eat it inſtead of bread, having firſt baked or roaſted it in the embers: it is in ſeaſon eight months in the year, and grows only in theſe iſlands.

Dampier relates, that when he was there (about the year 1700) there were not above 100 Indians upon the iſland, though he was informed there had been 3 or 400 ſometime before: and the reaſon given why there was no more at that time was, becauſe moſt of them had burnt their plantations, and fled to other iſlands on their being uſed ill by the Spaniards.

Their ſwift-ſailing ſloops, or flying proas, are the admiration of all that ſee them; the bottom of the veſſel, or the keel, is of one piece, made like a canoe, 28 feet in length, built ſharp at both ends, one ſide of the ſloop flat, and the other rounding with a pretty large belly; being four or five feet broad, with a maſt in the middle. They turn the flat ſide to the wind, and having a head at each end, ſail with either of them foremaſt, and have never any occaſion to tack. Dampier computed they would ſail 24 miles an hour. The tide never riſes above two or three feet at this iſland.

The writer of Lord Anſon's voyage relates, that they arrived at the iſland of Tinian or Bonaviſta, one of the Ladrone Iſlands, which lies north of Guam, on the 27th of Auguſt, 1742, being ſituated in 15 deg. 8 min. north latitude, and 114 deg. 50 min. weſt of Acapulco in America. This iſland is 12 miles in length, and ſix in breadth, extending from the S. S. W. to N. N. E. The ſoil is dry and ſandy, and the air healthful; the land riſes in gentle ſlopes from the ſhore to the middle of the iſland, interrupted by valleys of an eaſy deſcent. The valleys and gradual ſwellings of the ground are beautifully diverſified by the encroachments of woods and lawns; and the woods conſiſt of tall ſpreading trees, celebrated for their aſpect or their fruit; the turf of the lawns clean and uniform, compoſed of fine trefoil, intermixed with a variety of flowers; the woods, in many places, open, free from buſhes, and underwood, affording moſt elegant and entertaining proſpects.

The cattle on this iſland were computed to amount to 10,000, (we ſuppoſe he means horned cattle) all perfectly white except their ears; beſides which there were hogs and poultry without number. The cattle and fowls were ſo fat, that the men could run them down, and were under no neceſſity of ſhooting them. Their fleſh is well taſted, and very eaſy of digeſtion.

About the beginning of the preſent century, this iſland was ſaid to contain at leaſt 30,000 inhabitants, when a dreadful mortality raging among them, prodigious numbers died, and the calamity prevailing with equal violence in the iſlands of Rota and Guam, the Spaniards obliged thoſe that remained at Tinian to remove to Guam, in order to make good the deficiency by the number of the ſouls that had periſhed in that iſland; ſince which time, Tinian has been wholly uninhabited. The ruins of the buildings in Tinian, ſome of which are of a particular form, evince it to have been once a populous place. The iſland of Rota has not any thing in it that demands particular attention. Its chief produce is rice, which is cultivated by a few Indians, who live there undiſturbed, but are ſubject to the Spaniſh governor.

Though the other iſlands are uninhabited, they are in general exceeding fertile, the air good, and the climate temperate. They alſo produce plenty of proviſions; but they are ſeldom viſited, on account of the great inconvenience ariſing from the want of water for anchorage,

age. Tinian is more commodious in this particular, but even there it is very unſafe from June to October. In the month of September, the Tamar, one of Commodore Byron's ſhips, met with an accident, that was attended with fatal conſequences to two of her beſt ſeamen; ſhe had, as uſual, ſent her boat on ſhore, when the ſurf ſuddenly roſe ſo high as to fill the boat with water, by which means the men were daſhed againſt the ſteep craggy rocks near the ſhore, and two of them drowned; and the reſt who were ſix in number, with great difficulty eſcaped ſuffering the ſame fate, by ſwimming to ſhore, they being frequently repelled by the unuſual ſwell which prevailed at that time.

Several other iſlands have lately been diſcovered to the eaſtward of the Philippines; and from them called the New Philippines, of which father Clan, in a letter from Manila (inſerted in the Philoſophical Tranſactions) gives the following account: that he happening to be at the town of Guivam, in the iſland of Samar, found 29 palars, or inhabitants of certain newly diſcovered iſlands, who were driven there by the eaſterly winds which blow in thoſe ſeas from December to May. They had run before the wind for 70 days together, according to their own relation, without being able to make any land till they came in ſight of Guivam: they were 35 perſons, and embarked in two boats, with their wives and children, when they firſt came out, but ſeveral periſhed by the hardſhips they underwent in the voyage; they were under ſuch a conſternation when a man from Guivam attempted to come on board them, that all the people which were in one of the veſſels, with their wives and children, jumped overboard; however, they were at length perſuaded to ſteer into the harbour, and they landed the 28th of December, 1696. They eat cocoa-nuts and roots which were brought them very freely, but would not touch boiled rice, the common food of the Aſiatics. Two women who had formerly been caſt on ſhore from the ſame iſlands, were their interpreters; they related that their country conſiſted of 32 iſlands, and by the form of their veſſels and ſails their country ſeemed to be in the neighbourhood of the Mariana, or Ladrone Iſlands; they related that their country was exceeding populous, and that all the iſlands are under the dominion of one king, who keeps his court in the iſland of Lamaree: the natives go half naked, and the men paint and ſtain their bodies, making ſeveral ſorts of figures upon them, but the women and children are not painted; the complexion and ſhape of their face is much like thoſe of the tawny Philippines or Malayes: The men wear only a cloth about their loins which covers their thighs, and another looſe about their bodies which they tie before. There is little difference betwixt the dreſs of the men and women, but that the cloth which covers the women hangs a little lower on their knees; their language is different both from the people of the Philippines and the Ladrone Iſlands, and comes neareſt to that of the Arabs: the women that ſeem moſt conſiderable among them, wear necklaces, bracelets, and rings of tortoiſeſhell. They ſubſiſted themſelves all the time they were at ſea with the fiſh they catched, in a kind of wicker baſket with a great mouth, ending in a point, which they hauled after them; and their drink was rain water, which they happened to be ſupplied with: they have no cows, or dogs, in their iſlands, and they run away at the ſight of the one, and the barking of the other; neither have they any horſes, deer, cats, or any four footed beaſts whatever; or any land fowls but hens, which they breed up, and never eat their eggs: they were ſurprized at the whiteneſs of the Europeans, having never ſeen any people of this complexion, as they were at their manners or cuſtoms: it does not appear that they have any religion, nor do they uſe any ſet meals, but eat and drink whenever they are hungry or thirſty, and then but ſparingly. They ſalute any one by taking him by the hand or foot, or gently ſtroking his face: among their tools they have a ſaw made of a large ſhell, ſharpened with a ſtone, having no iron or other metals in their country; and were ſurpriſed to ſee the many tools uſed in building a ſhip. Their arms are lances or darts, headed with human bones and ſharpened. They ſeem to be a people of much life and courage, but of a peaceful diſpoſition; and are well proportioned, but not of a large ſize. We now proceed with the narrative of our voyage.

On Monday, the 30th of September, after having been at the iſland of Tinian nine weeks, we found our ſick pretty well recovered; and this day the tents were ordered to be ſtruck, and to be brought, with the forge and oven on board the ſhips. We alſo laid in two thouſand cocoa-nuts, and a quantity of limes, for the uſe of the ſeamen, the Commodore having experienced them to be efficacious antidotes againſt the ſcurvy. On Tueſday, the 1ſt of October, we weighed, and ſailed from Tinian and the reſt of the Ladrone iſlands. Having finiſhed our buſineſs on which we were ſent, by the diſcovery of thoſe Iſlands in the South-Seas, according to our original deſtination, we bent our thoughts towards returning home, and it was propoſed, ſhould we be ſo fortunate as to find the N. E. monſoon ſet in, before we ſhould get the length of the Baſhé iſlands, to touch at Batavia, which our Commodore preferred to any port of China for recruiting his ſhips, he being deterred from touching at the latter, and particularly at Canton, by the baſe and ungenerous uſage which Lord Anſon received there, after a voyage of much longer duration, and attended with a ſeries of the moſt dreadful diſtreſſes and misfortunes, that called for pity and aſſiſtance. We had very little wind this day and the next, till the evening, when it came to the weſtward and blew freſh. On the 3rd, in the morning we ſtood to the northward, and made the iſland of Anatacan, remarkably high, and the ſame that was firſt fallen in with by Lord Anſon. On the 10th, we obſerved in latitude 18 deg. 33 min. north, and in 136 deg. 50 min. eaſt longitude. On Friday, the 18th, ſeveral land birds were ſeen about the ſhips, which appeared to be very much tired: a very remarkable one was caught; it was about the ſize of a gooſe, and all over as white as ſnow, except the legs and beaks, which were black, the beak was curved, and of ſo great a length and thickneſs, that it is not eaſy to conceive how the muſcles of the neck (which was about a foot long, and as ſmall as that of a crane) could ſupport it. We kept it alive about four months upon biſcuit and water, but it then died, apparently for want of nouriſhment, being almoſt as light as a bladder. It was very different from every ſpecies of the toucan that is repreſented by Edwards; and in the opinion of our Commodore, has never been deſcribed. Theſe birds appeared to have been blown off ſome iſland to the northward, that is not laid down in the charts. On Tueſday the 22nd, at ſix o'clock A. M. the northernmoſt of the Baſhé iſlands, being Grafton's, bore ſouth, diſtant ſix leagues. We proceeded without souching at this place, which was propoſed, and ſteered weſtward again. By our reckoning, which however the experience of Captain Gore has ſince diſproved, it lies in latitude 21 deg. 8 min. north, and in 118 deg. 14 min. eaſt longitude. The principal of theſe iſlands are five in number, but we were induced not to touch at any one of them, on account of the dangerous navigation from thence to the ſtraits of Banca. On the 24th, we were in latitude 16 deg. 59 min. north, and 113 deg. 1 min. eaſt longitude. We therefore kept a good look-out for the Triangles, which lie without the north end of the Praſil, and occaſion a moſt dangerous ſhoal. On the 30th, we found ourſelves in latitude 7 deg. 17 min. north, and in 104 deg. 21 min. eaſt longitude. This day we obſerved ſeveral large bamboos floating about the ſhip.

On Saturday the 2nd of November, we found by obſervation, our latitude to be 3 deg. 54 min. north, longitude 103 deg. 20 min. eaſt; and on the 3rd, we came in ſight of the iſland of Pulo Timoan, bearing S. W. by W. diſtant about 12 leagues. On the 5th, we anchored in a bay on the eaſt ſide of the iſland, in ſixteen fathoms water, and at about the diſtance of two miles from the ſhore. On Wedneſday the 6th, we landed, in hopes of procuring freſh proviſions, but found the inhabitants, who are Malays, a ſurly inſolent ſet of people. On ſeeing us approach the ſhore, they came down to the beach in great numbers, each man having a long knife in one hand, a ſpear headed with iron in the other, and a dagger by his ſide. Notwithſtanding theſe hoſtile appearances, we landed, but could only purchaſe about a dozen of fowls, a goat and a kid; for which we offered them knives, hatches, bill-hooks, and the like, which they refuſed with great contempt, and demanded rupees in payment. Having none of theſe pieces, we were at a loſs how to pay for what we had purchaſed, but recollecting we had ſome pocket handkerchiefs, they accepted of them, though they took only the beſt. Theſe people are well made but ſmall in ſtature, and of a dark copper colour. There was among them an old man, dreſſed ſomewhat in the faſhion of the Perſians, but all the reſt were naked, except ſome pieces of cloth, which were faſtened with ſilver claſps round their waiſts; and they wore a kind of turbans, made up of handkerchiefs upon their heads. We ſaw not any of their women, whom they probably took care to keep out of our ſight. Their houſes are neatly built of ſlit bamboo, and raiſed upon pillars about eight feet from the ground. Their boats are of an admirable good conſtruction, and ſome of them of large dimenſions. In theſe they probably trade to Malacca. This iſland is mountainous, woody, and produces the cocoa-nut, and cabbage tree, in great abundance; but the natives would not permit us to have any of their fruit. We ſaw alſo ſome rice grounds; but what may be the other productions of this iſland we cannot ſay. In the bay is excellent fiſhing, though the ſurf runs very high. We hauled our ſeine with great ſucceſs, but could eaſily perceive that by ſo doing we offended the inhabitants, who conſidered all the fiſh about the iſland as their own property. Two fine rivers run into this bay, and the water is excellent; we filled as many caſks with it as loaded the boats twice. Some of the natives brought down to us an animal, which had the body of a hare and the legs of a deer. One of our officers bought it; and we would have kept it alive, had it been in our power to have procured proper ſuſtenance; but this being impoſſible, it was killed, and we found it excellent food. We ſtaid here only two nights and one day, and all the time, had the moſt violent thunder, lightning, and rain we had ever known. This iſland of Pulo Timoin lies off the eaſtern coaſt of the peninſula of Malacca, in latitude 3 deg. 12 min. north longitude 105 deg. 40 min. eaſt. Finding that nothing more was to be procured at this place,

On Thurſday the 7th, in the morning we ſet ſail, and after arriving in the latitude of Pulo Condone, we had nothing but tornadoes, and tempeſtuous weather. On the 10th, at ſeven o'clock, A. M. the eaſt end of Lingen bore S. W. by W. diſtant 12 leagues. At noon we anchored with the kedge in twenty fathoms; and at one o'clock P. M. we ſaw a ſmall iſland, which bore S. W. half S. diſtant ten leagues. On Monday the 11th, we weighed, and, having made ſail, we deſcried ſome ſmall iſlands, which we ſuppoſed to be Domines, bearing W. half N. diſtant ſeven leagues. At noon by obſervation we found our latitude to be 18 min. ſouth. On the 12th, at 10 o'clock A. M. we ſaw a ſmall Chineſe junk; and on the 13th, a ſmall iſland, called Pulo Toté. At four o'clock P. M. we came to an anchor, and ſaw a ſmall ſloop about four miles diſtant from us, which hoiſted Dutch colours. In the night we had violent rain with hard ſqualls. On Thurſday the 14th, we weighed, and at nine o'clock A. M. made ſail. The veſſel we had ſeen the day before ſtill laying at anchor, we ſent a boat with an officer to ſpeak with her: the officer was received on board with great civility; but was much ſurprized at finding, that he could not make himſelf underſtood, for the people on board were Malays, without a ſingle white man among them; they made tea for our men immediately, and in every reſpect behaved with great hoſpitality. This veſſel was of a ſingular form, her deck was of ſlit bamboo, and ſhe was ſteered, not by a rudder, but by two large pieces of timber, one upon each quarter. This day the wind became more moderate and variable from N. N. W. to W. S. W. On the 15th we ſet ſail, and at two o'clock P. M. Monopin hill bore S. by E. diſtant ten leagues, having the appearance of a ſmall iſland. It bears S. by W. from the ſeven iſlands, and is diſtant from them ſeven leagues, in the latitude of two deg. ſouth. From the ſeven iſlands we ſteered S. W. by S. and ſoon after ſaw the coaſt of Sumatra, bearing from W. S. W. to W. by N. diſtant ſeven leagues. In the evening we anchored; and on the 16th, at four A. M. we continued our courſe S. by E. till the peak of Monopin Hill bore eaſt, and Batacarang Point, on the Sumatra ſhore S. W. in order to avoid a ſhoal called Frederick Hendrick, which lies nearly midway between the Banca and Sumatra ſhore. We then ſteered E. S. E. and kept mid-channel, to ſhun the banks of Palambam River, and that which lies off the weſternmoſt point of Banca. When abreaſt of Palambam River we regularly ſhoaled our water, and when we had paſſed it, we deepened it again. We held on our courſe E. S. E. between the third and fourth points of Sumatra, which are about ten leagues diſtant from each other. The high land of Queda Banca appeared over the third point of Sumatra, bearing E. S. E. From the third point to the ſecond, the courſe is S. E. by S. at the diſtance of eleven leagues. The high land of Queda Banca, and the ſecond point of Sumatra bear E. N. E. and W. S. W. from each other. The ſtrait is five leagues over, and the mid channel is twenty-four fathoms. At ſix o'clock in the evening, we anchored; and at five in the morning on the 17th, we weighed, with a moderate gale at weſt. On Tueſday, the 19th, we met with an Engliſh ſnow, belonging to the Eaſt India Company, whoſe Captain with great generoſity, preſented our Commodore with a ſheep, a dozen of fowls, and a turtle. This was a moſt acceptable preſent, for we had now nothing to eat but the ſhip's proviſions, which were become very bad. Our beef and pork ſtunk intolerably, and our bread was rotten and full of worms. In the afternoon we anchored, and ſent a boat to ſound for the ſhoals which lie to the northward of Laſipara, which iſland bore from us S. E. by S. diſtant ſix leagues. On the 20th we worked between the ſhoals and the coaſt of Sumatra, and having got through the ſtrait, well known to navigators, on the 27th, we ſteered between the Iſlands of Edam and Horn, and entered the road of Batavia, where we anchored without the ſhipping.

On Wedneſday the 28th, we moored near the town, and ſaluted the fort with eleven guns, which were returned. We here obſerved, that, ſince our leaving England, we had loſt a day in our reckoning, by having ſteered weſtward a year; ſo that by the Dutch account this day was the 29th of November. We counted in this road more than one hundred ſail great and ſmall; among which was an Engliſh ſhip from Bombay, alſo the Falmouth man of war, which we found condemned and lying aſhore, and all the men cleared for England, except the warrant officers, who were left here 'till the Lords of the Admiralty ſhould think proper to recall them. A Dutch Commodore belonging to their company is always ſtationed here, who in the eyes of his countrymen is a perſon of very great conſequence. He thought fit to ſend his cockſwain, a very dirty ragged fellow, who aſked the Commodore many impertinent queſtions, as whence we came, &c. at the ſame time pulling out a book, pen, and ink, in order to ſet down the anſwers; but our gentlemen being impatient to ſave him any more trouble, deſired him immediately to walk over the ſhip's ſide, and put off his boat, with which he was graciouſly pleaſed to comply. The Commodore went on ſhore, and viſited the Dutch Governor at his country houſe, by whom he was received with great politeneſs, and told that he might take a houſe in any part of the city, or be lodged at the hotel. Any inhabitant of Batavia permitting a ſtranger to ſleep, though but for a ſingle night in his houſe, incurs a penalty of 500 dollars: the hotel being the only licenſed lodging-houſe, the governor appoints the keeper of it, who was at this time a Frenchman. This hotel is the moſt ſuperb building in the city, having more the air of a palace than an inn. During our ſtay at this place, we were ſupplied with good greens, fruits of all kinds, and plenty of freſh meat: we took alſo on board a great quantity of water, at the rate of five ſhillings a leager, or a hundred and fifty gallons. A ſhip of four hundred and fifty tons, built at Bombay, was employed in caulking the Dolphin, and paying her bottom and ſides with varniſh. When we arrived here, we had not one man ſick in either ſhips; but knowing Batavia to be more unhealthy than any other part of the Eaſt Indies, and as the rainy ſeaſon was at hand, and our men could procure arrack at a very low rate, it was for theſe reaſons reſolved to make our ſtay as ſhort as poſſible: however, we had an opportunity of enquiring into the ſtate of this country, and we hope the following particular account of what we learnt will not be diſagreeable to our friends and readers.

The iſland of Java, the capital whereof is Batavia, lies ſix degrees ſouth of the line, and is divided from Sumatra, diſtant therefrom five leagues, by the ſtraits of Sunda. It is ſuppoſed to be 420 miles in length, extending almoſt due eaſt and weſt; but its breadth, which is hardly any where more than 150 miles, is different in different places. On the north coaſt of Java are ſeveral good harbours, commodious creeks, and flouriſhing towns, with many iſlands near the ſhore. Though Java is ſituated ſo near the equator, few climates are more temperate and healthful at particular ſeaſons, the eaſt and weſt winds blowing all the year all along the ſhore, beſides the general land and ſea-breezes, but in the month of December the coaſt is very dangerous, on account of the violence of the weſterly winds. In February, the weather is changeable, with ſtorms of thunder and lightning: and in May the rains are ſometimes ſo violent, for three or four days together, that all the low countries are laid under water: one great convenience attends this diſagreeable circumſtance, which is that of deſtroying infinite broods of inſects, that would otherwiſe deſtroy the fruits of the earth. Their ſugar and rice ripen in July and October, which months not only furniſh the inhabitants with all kinds of fruits, but with every neceſſary and luxury of life. The land, which is very fertile about the ſea-coaſt, is finely diverſified with hills and valleys, which, near Batavia, is highly improved by rich plantations, ſpacious canals, and whatever can add to the charms of a country naturally pleaſant and agreeable. But the Dutch have made a very inconſiderable progreſs in the cultivation of the country beyond the neighbourhood of that city, the entrance to the inland parts being almoſt every where obſtructed by impaſſable foreſts, or by mountains, whoſe heads ſeem to touch the clouds. Java produces a great variety of fruit: there are here cocoa trees in abundance; and in the plains is found a tree, whoſe fruit is called jamboos, the juice whereof is uſed by the natives as an infallible remedy againſt the flux, which often rages with great violence. The Indian ſorrel, which has no reſemblance to that in England, is eaten by the inhabitants in large quantities with their ſalads, and its leaves mixed with ſaw-duſt of ſandal wood, is uſed as a certain cure for the tooth-ach. Their fruits are, in general, very rich, particularly their pompions, the inſide of which are red, and taſte not unlike our cherries. With reſpect to their ſhape, they bear the neareſt reſemblance to an orange, but are of a much larger ſize; a ſingle one ſometimes weighing eight or ten pounds. This fruit, if left on the tree, continues in perfection all the year round, and when gathered, will, with care, keep four or five months. We thought them ſo excellent, that we brought many of them to England. The mango fruit riſes from a white flower that grows on the ſmall twigs of a tree, every way as large as our Engliſh oaks. Pepper and coffee alſo grow in the country, and at a ſmall diſtance from Batavia are ſeveral plantations of ſugar canes, from which is made a conſiderable quantity of ſugar. What is here called the Indian Oak, is as durable as any that can be found in Europe, the wood being of ſuch a conſiſtence, as to be proof againſt the worms, and, what is more, againſt the mice, which will gnaw a paſſage through almoſt every other ſort of wood. The leaves of this tree boiled in water, till one half of them is conſumed, is, among the natives, the general remedy againſt pleuriſies. In ſhort we were told, that almoſt all ſorts of garden ſtuff thrive in Batavia, and that thoſe brought not only from Surat and Perſia, but from Europe, yield near that city a great increaſe, ſo that their kitchen gardens produce peaſe and beans, with roots and herbs ſufficient for the conſumption of the inhabitants: however rice is the only corn that grows in the iſland. The woods and foreſts of Java abound with a prodigious variety of wild beaſts, as rhinoceroſes, tygers, foxes, buffaloes, apes, wild horſes, jackals, and crocodiles. Their cows are nearly as large as ours in England, and have generally two or three calves at a time: their ſheep are alſo nearly of the ſize of ours. They have likewiſe a prodigious number of hogs, whoſe fleſh is eſteemed excellent, and far preferable to beef or mutton. Here are a variety of fowls, particularly partridges, pheaſants, wood-pigeons, wild peacocks, and bats ſo large, that the body of one of them is as big as that of a rat, and their wings when extended reach at leaſt three feet, from the extremity of one to that of the other. With reſpect to reptiles, they have many that are very pernicious, particularly ſcorpions, among which we ſaw ſeveral that were at leaſt a quarter of a yard in length; but thoſe of a ſmaller ſize are ſo common, that it is hardly poſſible to remove a cheſt, a looking-glaſs, or a large picture, without finding them, and being in danger of ſuffering by their ſting. The ſame creature ſmothered in oil, and applied to the wound is a general remedy againſt their poiſon. Beſides theſe, there are a great number of ſnakes of different ſizes, from one foot in length to ten. Among a variety of valuable animals uſeful to man, there are none more plentiful than fiſh, of which there are many kinds, and very good, as alſo a great number of turtle.

The iſland of Java was formerly divided into ſeveral petty kingdoms, which are at preſent united under the juriſdiction of the king of Bantam, who is in the poſſeſſion of the eaſtern part of the iſland, as the Dutch are of the weſtern, and ſome parts of the coaſt. The natives of Java are, according to the Dutch, not only proud beyond meaſure, but ſkilled in all the arts of impoſture. Their faces are flat, and of a brown caſt, with ſmall eyes, like the ancient Chineſe, from whom they boaſt their original deſcent. The men, who are ſtrong and well proportioned, wear round their bodies a piece of calico, which among the more wealthy is flowered with gold. The women are in general ſmall of ſtature, and have a piece of calico, which reaches from their arm-pits to their knees. The principal part of them, eſpecially thoſe near the coaſt, are Mahomedans, and the reſt Pagans. In the weſtern part of the iſland are many towns, and in the eaſtern, the cities of Balambuan and Mataram are thoſe in which the king of Bantam reſides, who is ſtiled the Emperor of Java. Batavia was formerly no more than an open village inhabited by Pagans, and ſurrounded by a paliſado of bamboos; but ſince the Dutch have eſtabliſhed a ſettlement, it is become one of the fineſt cities in the Indies. It lies in 5 deg. 50 min. ſouth latitude, and is watered by many ſmall rivulets which unite into one ſtream, before they diſcharge themſelves into the ſea. The city is of a triangular form, fortified with a ſtone wall that has twenty-two baſtions, and four great gates, two of which are exceeding magnificent. The harbour is very capacious, being large enough to contain a thouſand veſſels in perfect ſecurity from the violence of the winds. It is ſhut up every night with a chain, through which no ſhip can paſs without permiſſion, and paying a fixed duty, to enforce which ordinances it is guarded by a ſtrong party of ſoldiers. The ſtreets run in right lines, and are moſt of them thirty feet broad, and paved with brick near the houſes. Fifteen of the ſtreets have canals of water running through them, and over one of thoſe canals are four ſtrong bridges, each conſiſting of four arches twelve feet broad: but in the city there are fifty-ſix bridges, beſides many draw-bridges without the walls. The ſtreets are ſo crowded, that from four in the morning till late at night it is difficult to paſs through them, on account of the concourſe of people continually engaged in buſineſs. We may obſerve of the public buildings, that the Chineſe hoſpital is a neat ſtructure, ſupported by a tax laid on marriages, burials, and public ſhews, as well as the voluntary contribution of the Chineſe-merchants. In the ſame ſtreet is a foundling-hoſpital, and alſo a building, in which are lodged all the artizans in the Dutch Eaſt-India Company's ſervice. The company have likewiſe a great rope-yard, that employs a conſiderable number of the poorer ſort of people, who work under the ſhade of the nut-trees planted on each ſide. To the weſt end of this yard are the company's warehouſes, for mace, cinnamon, cloves, and other commodities. In the caſtle, which is of a quadrangular figure, built upon a flat, are apartments for all the members of the council of the Indies. The palace is within the walls of the caſtle, and is appropriated to the uſe of the governor. It is built with brick, but is extremely magnificent, and loftier than the other buildings of the city. On the top of the turret belonging to the palace, is placed an iron ſhip, curiouſly wrought, for the purpoſe of a weather cock, which is ſo large that it may be ſeen ſome leagues out at ſea. Round the city forts are erected, to protect the inhabitants of the plain from the incurſions of the original natives, who before they were erected, frequently came down upon the people, and plundered their plantations. Among the principal public buildings are a very handſome town-houſe; a ſpinhuys, or houſe of correction; alſo four or five churches for the Dutch Calviniſts; beſides a great number of religious ſtructures for the uſe of perſons of other religions. The garriſon conſiſts of foot; and there is a troop of horſe, as a guard for the company's poſſeſſions lodged in the city: theſe men are of good ſtature, and when drawn up in their uniform, make no deſpicable appearance.

The inhabitants of Batavia are a compound of various nations, among whom the Dutch are the moſt powerful and wealthy. Next to theſe are the Chineſe, who are, perhaps, the moſt ingenious cheats in the world. They farm the exciſe and cuſtoms, and indeed are ſure to be concerned in every thing from which they have a chance of deriving the leaſt profit. They live under a governor of their own, and dreſs in the ſame manner as thoſe in China; but wear their hair long and neatly braided, paying, in this laſt circumſtance, no manner of regard to the Tartarian edicts, which in China oblige the natives to cut off all their hair but one lock. It is remarkable that on the top of a mount of earth, underneath which lie the remains of one of their governors, ſtands a table, whereon is placed a cup, into which the Chineſe ſometimes put money and proviſions as an offering to the ſoul of the deceaſed. This is ſituated in the midſt of a grove, without one of the city gates. The Malayans, who are the next in riches and trade to the Chineſe, alſo live under a governor of their own. Their houſes are covered with leaves, and ſurrounded with cocoa-trees. Their dreſs is the ſame with the Chineſe, and they are generally chewing betel. The Mardykers, or Topaſſes, are idolaters of various nations, who live both within and without the city, and ſeem to be a people of eaſy diſpoſition, who accommodate themſelves without much difficulty, to the cuſtoms and manners of the people among whom they reſide. Their merchants carry on a conſiderable commerce: others of them are of different trades, and particularly excel in gardening. They dreſs in much the ſame manner as the Dutch, and their houſes are of ſtone, well built, and covered with tiles. Beſides theſe, there are people of many other nations, all of whom have their different dreſſes, cuſtoms, manners, and places of religious worſhip. So that the inhabitants of this city make a more motly appearance than can be conceived by any who have not ſeen them. The roads about the city, for many miles, are as good as any in England: they are very broad, and by the ſide of them runs a canal, ſhaded with trees, which is navigable for veſſels of a very large ſize. On the other ſide of the canal are gardens, and the country houſes of the citizens, (moſt of whom keep their carriages, it being almoſt a diſgrace to be ſeen on foot) where they ſpend as much of their time as poſſible, the ſituation being leſs unwholeſome than the city, which is built on a ſwamp; and the trees, though they have a pleaſant appearance, muſt undoubtedly prevent the noxious vapours that are perpetually ariſing from being diſperſed, by obſtructing the circulation of the air. Thus we have given a particular account of every thing we ſaw in Batavia worthy of obſervation; of which place the reader will find a ſtill more circumſtantial, full, and complete deſcription, in the hiſtory of Capt. Cook's firſt voyage, page 82 of this work. We now prepared for our departure; and having fitted the Dolphin, taken in our water, and a ſufficient ſtock of freſh proviſions, together with a quantity of rice and arrack,

On Monday the 10th of December, we weighed anchor, and ſet ſail with the Tamar in company, being ſaluted, on our leaving the road, by the Engliſh ſhip, the Dutch Commodore and the fort. We paſſed by the Thouſand Iſlands, which extended along the north-ſide of Java, almoſt to the weſt point of New Guinea. Commodore Roggewein ſailing through the midſt of them, and finding it impoſſible to count them, gave them, we are told, the general name of the Thouſand Iſlands. They are inhabited by a ſavage people of a black complexion, who are almoſt naked, and theſe iſlands are famous for producing a beautiful kind of bird, known among us by the name of the bird of paradiſe. We alſo paſſed by a multitude of other ſmall iſlands, commonly called the Bed of Roſes. After which we entered the Straits of Sunda, where the land on each ſide is very high, both on the ſhore of the iſland of Sumatra, and that of Java, the paſſage between which conſtitutes the Straits of Sunda. The land of the laſt mentioned iſland is very irregular, and the inhabitants extremely poor. They trafficked with us chiefly for old cloaths; and we had an opportunity of ſupplying ourſelves with a great quantity of the fineſt green turtle, fowls, and fruit of all kinds. The Commodore bought for 10 rixdollars, as many turtle as weighed upwards of 1000 pounds weight, part of which he gave to our ſhip's company, and alſo ſent a part to that of the Tamar. On the 14th, at ſeven in the evening, we came to an anchor on the north-ſide of Prince's Iſland, which lies within the ſouth entrance of the ſtraits, in order to recruit our wood and water. We found this iſland well ſtocked with proviſions of all kinds, and particularly fowls. The inhabitants are to all appearance free from the dominion of the Dutch; though according to the accounts given by the natives, they often fall victims to their unprovoked cruelties, as they frequently ſeize them, and reduce them to the condition of ſlaves; and even ſell them in the ſame manner, as the negroes are purchaſed on the coaſt of Guinea. We lay off this iſland till the 19th, during which time, we repaired an inconſiderable damage the Dolphin had ſuſtained, by having had ſome pieces of copper torn off the larboard bow, by the ſmall bower anchor. This done, and having taken in as much wood and water as we could ſtow, we weighed, and, working to the windward, before night got without Java Head. By this time a putrid fever raged among our crew, whereof three of our hands died, and many others lay in ſo dangerous a condition that we had little hopes of their recovery. On the 25th, being Chriſtmas-day, our people were in high ſpirits, and not a little troubleſome; but at this time we had an accident which gave us ſome concern. William Walter, a quarter gunner, was ſitting aſleep with a pipe in his mouth, and fell overboard; when, notwithſtanding all poſſible means were uſed to ſave him, he was never ſeen more. This unfortunate man was a very good ſeaman, and univerſally reſpected by the officers and all on board.

A. D. 1766.

On Monday the 10th of February, at ſix o'clock, A. M. we came in ſight of the coaſt of Africa, in latitude 34 deg. 15 min. ſouth, and in 21 deg. 45 min. eaſt longitude. On the 12th, at three P. M. we made land to the eaſtward of Cape d'Aquilas, but had contrary winds for ſeveral days together. From hence the coaſt lies W. N. W. to the Cape of Good Hope, diſtant about 30 leagues. On the 13th, we paſſed between Penguin Iſland and Green Point, and at three o'clock P. M. came to an anchor in Table Bay, with a freſh gale, working to windward under a cloſe reefed main and top-ſails, and there found ſome light Dutch ſhips and Indiamen, bound for Europe. In this bay the S. E. wind blew ſo ſtrong, as to oblige us to lie with our yards and top-maſts ſtruck; and it was ſometimes with the greateſt difficulty that our boats reached the ſhore, through the violence of the ſqualls, which at particular times are here ſo great, as to drive ſhips from their anchors out to ſea. On our entering the bay we ſaluted the fort, which compliment was immediately returned: and on Friday the 14th, the Commodore waited upon the governor, who ſent his coach and ſix to the water-ſide, to receive him. The Cape is a moſt excellent place for ſhips to touch at; it is a healthy climate, a fine country, and abounds with refreſhments of every kind. The Company's garden is a delightful ſpot, and at the end of it is a paddock belonging to the governor, in which are kept a great number of very curious animals; among others were three fine oſtriches, and four zebras of an uncommon ſize. The ſquare, in which the old governor lives, is encompaſſed by many other grand buildings, beſides what is appropriated to the uſe of that great officer, who here appears with the dignity of a prince. Our Commodore during his ſtay, reſided in a houſe adjoining to the governor's, where he had a centinal always at the door, and a ſerjeant who attended him whenever he went abroad. In the middle of this ſquare is a very fine fountain, which ſupplies the greateſt part of the town with water. The officers of both ſhips reſided chiefly at Mr. Prince's, and as for a long time we had enjoyed no recreation, we now ſpent our time very agreeably. The people alſo on board, had all leave to go on ſhore by turns, and they always contrived to get completely drunk with cape wine before they returned. This was chiefly owing to the civility of the inhabitants, who as they depend on the foreign ſhips who touch here, think it their intereſt to behave with good manners, and extraordinary complaiſance to all ſtrangers. During the time we continued at the cape, which was three weeks, all on board both ſhips were ſupplied with freſh mutton and beef; for proviſions are ſo cheap, that a ſheep may be bought for a Spaniſh dollar, which, when cleared of the offal, will weigh 50 or 60 pounds. Their tails, which are remarkably large, are chiefly compoſed of fat, which eats like marrow. Their ſkins are not covered with wool, as ours in England, but with a kind of down, intermixed with long hair. The bullocks are large, and uſed for the moſt part in teams, for which they are preferred to horſes; eight or ten of them being harneſſed together, and conducted by a ſlave, who goes before to guide them. The horſes are ſmall, but very ſpirited; and we were told an odd circumſtance concerning them, which is, that they are never known to lie down but when ſick, and that this is an infallible ſign by which their owners know when they are out of order.

With reſpect to the country in general, it is ſituated in 35 deg. of ſouth latitude, and in a temperate climate, where the extremes of heat and cold are equally unknown. It abounds with the moſt beautiful landſcapes, the ſkirts of the mountains being interſperſed with lofty groves of the fineſt trees, and the valleys and plains conſiſt of delightful meadow lands, adorned with a variety of the moſt beautiful flowers, that fill the air with their fragrance. The land alſo produces the fineſt vegetable productions, and the richeſt fruits, while moſt of thoſe brought from the Eaſt and Weſt Indies, flouriſh here as well as in their native ſoil. One of the moſt beautiful, and a native, is the aloe, of which are many ſorts, ſeen not only in the gardens of the company, but in the clefts of the rocks, and, it is ſaid, that throughout the year, one ſort or other is continually in bloom. The Indian gold-tree is likewiſe a remarkable curioſity, having gold-coloured leaves ſpeckled with red, with ſmall greeniſh bloſſoms. Here are alſo numbers of quince-trees, whoſe fruit is ſaid to be not only larger, but better than the quinces of any other country in the known world. The Dutch have diſcovered ſeveral excellent methods of preſerving them, and not only make great quantities of marmalade for their own uſe, but ſell it to the ſhips that touch here for refreſhments. No country abounds with a greater variety of animals. Among the wild beaſts are the elephant, the rhinoceros, and the buffalo, with lions, tygers, leopards, wolves, wild dogs, porcupines, elks, harts, goats of various kinds, wild horſes, the zebra, and many others. Among the moſt extraordinary of theſe is a ſmall animal, ſomewhat larger than a ſquirrel, with a head that has ſome reſemblance to that of a bear. It is called a rattle-mouſe, from its frequently making a rattling noiſe with its tail. This is neither very hairy, nor very long. Its back is of a liver colour, and its ſides nearly black. It purs like a cat, and lives for the moſt part on trees, leaping like a ſquirrel from one tree to another, feeding upon acorns, nuts, and the like. The feathered tribe are no leſs numerous; for beſides many of thoſe known in Europe, here are oſtriches much larger than thoſe we ſaw in the ſtraits of Magellan, flamingoes, ſpoon-bills, blue-birds, green-peaks, the long-tongue and many others. The flamingo is larger than a ſwan, and a very ſtately bird. Both the head and neck are as white as ſnow, and the latter is conſiderably longer than that of a ſwan. The bill is very broad, and black at the point, and the reſt of it of a deep blue. The upper part of the wing-feathers are of a flame colour, and the lower black; but the legs, which are much longer than thoſe of a ſtork, are of an orange colour, and the feet reſemble thoſe of a gooſe. Though they live upon fiſh, their fleſh is both wholeſome, and well taſted. The green-peak is all over green, except two red ſpots, one on its breaſt, and another on its head, and is a very beautiful bird. It feeds on inſects, which it picks out of the bark of trees. The long-tongue is about the ſize of a bull-finch, and his tongue is not only very long, but ſaid to be as hard as iron, and the end as ſharp as the point of a needle; this being a weapon given it by the author of nature for its preſervation. The feathers on the belly are yellow, and the reſt ſpeckled. At the Cape are alſo many ſorts of excellent fiſh, a conſiderable number of which are common in Europe, and others peculiar to theſe ſeas. The reptiles and inſects are likewiſe extremely numerous, and among theſe are a variety of ſerpents, ſcorpions, and ſome centipedes. Thus to counterbalance the advantage this country affords, from the abundance of uſeful animals, there are alſo thrown into the ſcale many that are prejudicial and extremely dangerous; as if it was intended to ſhew to man, that amidſt the greateſt bleſſings and advantages beſtowed on one of the moſt enchanting ſpots in the univerſe, it was neceſſary to mix a certain proportion of evil, to reduce it more to a level with thoſe countries that are in ſome reſpects leſs deſirable.

Both our ſhip and the Tamar by this time had received a freſh ſupply of wood, water, and all neceſſary ſtores, and being completely fitted for ſailing to our native country, on Thurſday the 6th of March, our Commodore took leave of the good old governor, and the next day we got under way, and ſailed with a fine breeze at S. E. On Sunday the 16th, at ſix o'clock, A. M. we ſaw the rocks off the Iſland of St. Helena, bearing W. by N. diſtant about eight leagues; and at noon, in 8. deg. 16 min. ſouth latitude, we obſerved a ſtrange ſail which hoiſted French colours, but in the evening ran her out of ſight. We purſued our courſe without any thing material occurring till the 20th, when we were alarmed by the ſhip's running foul of a whale or grampus, on which ſhe ſtruck her head, and then her larboard bow. This put the Commodore and officers in no ſmall conſternation, leſt the Dolphin ſhould have ſuffered from the violence of the ſhock, as we were at that time running at the rate of ſix knots an hour; however we found the ſhock, though a rude one, attended with no bad conſequence. We perceived the ſea near the place where the ſhip ſtruck, tinged with blood, by which we ſuppoſed the whale was killed, or at leaſt deeply wounded. On Tueſday the 25th, we croſſed the equator, in longitude 17 deg. 10 min. and the next morning Captain Cumming of the Tamar, made the ſignal to bring to, and came on board the Dolphin to inform the Commodore, that the rudder braces were broke from the ſtern-poſt, whereby the rudder was rendered intirely uſeleſs: upon which the Commodore ſent his carpenter with aſſiſtants on board the Tamar, who went to work upon a machine after the model of that which had been fixed to the Ipſwich, and Grafton, each of which ſhips, at different times, ſteered home from Louiſbourg by the help of ſuch a ſubſtitute for a rudder. This machine was completed in about ſix days, and received ſome improvements from the ingenuity of the conſtructor: but it was thought better to ſend the Tamar to Antigua, in order to refit; accordingly on the 1ſt of April, the Tamar parted company with the Dolphin, ſteering for the Caribbee iſlands. In their paſſage they found the difference of ſailing with the machine, to be only about five miles in forty-eight hours. After the departure of the Tamar, which was the firſt time of our being ſeparated wholly from her ſince our leaving England, and in latitude 34 deg. north, longitude 35 deg. weſt, we had a moſt violent gale of wind, which drove us to the northward of the weſtern iſlands, and into latitude 48 deg. north, longitude 14 deg. weſt. We came within two hundred leagues of the land, and ſpoke with ſeveral ſhips lately from England, who gave us very erroneous accounts of the bearing of the coaſt. We had now a ſtrong eaſterly wind, which laſted ſeveral days, and the weather appeared to us piercing cold, from our having been, during ſo long a time, uſed to a warm climate. However, we at laſt had a favourable wind, and on Thurſday, the 7th of May, ſaw the iſland of Scilly. On the 9th, in the morning, we arrived in the Downs, where we caſt anchor; having been nine weeks running from the Cape of Good Hope, and ſomewhat more than two and twenty months in the circumnavigation of the globe.

Thus ended a voyage, originally planned by his Majeſty, George the Third, and which produced the diſcovery of thoſe iſlands, that have lately engroſſed the attention of the public. We have endeavoured to deſcribe them, and our courſes with accuracy, and with truth and authenticity, that might juſtly be expected from one who ſaw every thing of which we have given a deſcription. By the aſſiſtance of divine providence, and the tenderneſs of our excellent Commodore, in cauſing the crews to be ſerved with portable ſoup, and with the greateſt humanity diſtributing proviſions to the ſick from his own table, that dreadful diſeaſe the ſcurvy was rendered leſs inveterate and fatal; and we loſt, including thoſe who were drowned, a very inconſiderable number of men, a number ſo inconſiderable, that it is highly probable, more of them would have died, in the courſe of a year, had they ſtaid on ſhore. From our arrival at Spithead, till our leaving the ſhip in the river, no boats were ſuffered to come on board us, nor any anſwers to be given to enquirers, with reſpect to who we were, or from what port we were come; ſo that a variety of conjectures were formed as to our late voyage. After having waited a few days, each man, according to the promiſe of the Commodore, received double pay for his ſervices, and had an opportunity of enjoying thoſe comforts, which we, after an abſence of twenty-two months from our native country, might be ſuppoſed ardently to wiſh for.

A NEW, ACCURATE, GENUINE, and COMPLETE HISTORY of

A VOYAGE Round the WORLD,

PERFORMED

By Captain SAMUEL WALLIS, Eſq.

In his MAJESTY's Ship the DOLPHIN;

Having under his Command the SWALLOW SLOOP and PRINCE FREDERIC STORE-SHIP, of which Mr. CARTERET and Lieutenant BRINE were appointed Maſters:

UNDERTAKEN PARTICULARLY

With a view to make Diſcoveries in the SOUTH SEAS.

Which remarkable Circuit of the Globe was begun on FRIDAY, the 22nd of AUGUST 1766, and completed on FRIDAY the 20th of MAY 1768, containing a Period of 637 Days, and included in the Years 1766, 1767, and 1768.

INTRODUCTION.

NEVER was there perhaps collected together in any language, a more copious fund of rational entertainment then will be found in this comprehenſive and complete work, of which the preſent voyage is a part. To trace the progreſs of the diſcoveries that have ſucceſſively been made, in paſſing round the globe, muſt fill the reader's mind with ſuch a variety of new information, as cannot fail to raiſe his wonder, and entertain him with inexpreſſible delight. In the courſe of this work he is ſafely conducted through regions that were once thought inacceſſible, and made acquainted with countries altogether different from that wherein he dwells. Every page he reads will furniſh him with novelties, and every voyage will bring him nearer to that unknown country, in ſearch of which ſo many able commanders have been ſent in vain. The diſcovery of the weſtern continent by Columbus, gave geographers reaſon to believe, that a like continent exiſted ſomewhere in the ſouth. Without ſuch an equipoiſe they could not conceive how the globe could preſerve its balance.

lance. Magellhaens, a Portugueſe mariner, was the firſt who attempted to immortalize his name by the diſcovery. He paſſed the ſtraits, that to this day bear his name, and entered the Pacific Ocean, where no European veſſel had ever before ſailed. He diſcovered the Ladrone and Philippine iſles, and returned by the Cape of Good Hope, having ſurrounded the whole earth, and proved to demonſtration, the ſpherical figure of the globe. He was followed by navigators of different nations, who, emulous of his glory, ſought to purſue the track he had pointed out, with better ſucceſs; but the dangers they encountered, and the diſaſters they met with, rendered the difficulties that attended the proſecution inſurmountable; many periſhed, and thoſe who ſurvived were glad to return home after a fruitleſs ſearch. The ill ſucceſs which attended theſe firſt attempts threw a damp upon the enterprize, and it remained long unnoticed, except in the writings of the learned. Some French geographers, fully perſuaded of the reality of ſuch a continent, endeavoured, a few years ago, to revive in their countrymen the ſpirit of enterprize, with a view to derive honour to their country, by compleating the diſcovery; but the taſte for uncommon navigations among the French ſeemed intirely extinct, and it was not till the Dolphin and Tamar had ſailed from England that they thought of renewing it.

At this time, as we have elſewhere obſerved, our moſt gracious Sovereign had formed the deſign of diſtinguiſhing himſelf by patronizing the proſecution of new diſcoveries in the unknown regions of the ſouthern hemiſphere; and ſurely nothing can more endear a Britiſh monarch to his maritime people, than a ſteady perſeverance in this laudable reſolution. The love of glory is a paſſion natural to kings: the conquerors of the world are placed before them as patterns, and they are encouraged by example to ſeek occaſions for war to acquire a name. But how much more glorious is it to enlarge the earth with a new region, than to triumph in the conqueſt of ſome rival ſtate!—to extend protection to a remote, and it may be a defenceleſs people, than to boaſt of levelling fortreſſes, and by a general carnage of friends and foes, become maſter of a few deſolated towns, purchaſed at an expence, a thouſand times greater than what is neceſſary to inſure the ſucceſs of new diſcoveries. Can there be any compariſon between the glory of a ſucceſsful enterprize, founded on the laudable motives of diffuſing happineſs through regions, whoſe inhabitants, for ought we know, are yet immerſed in ſavage darkneſs; and that of engaging in a hazardous war, by which millions of treaſure muſt be expended, and thouſands of lives ſacrificed? Is not the chance of ſucceeding in the firſt caſe much more probable than that of conquering in the other? And does not ſucceſs in the diſcovery of the long ſought region promiſe much greater advantage to a trading nation, than the conqueſt of any part of the earth on this ſide the globe? Did not the little Phœnician ſtate reap more glorious harveſt from the diſcoveries of its merchants, than Alexander could boaſt from all his conqueſts? Was it not the perſeverance of the Princes Henry, John, and Emanuel, in ſupporting the expences of proſecuting new diſcoveries in the fifteenth century, that laid the foundation of the Portugueſe greatneſs, whoſe territories in Europe are of no inconſiderable extent? But if the glory of aggrandizing a ſtate, and perpetuating a name to poſterity, be the firſt object of human ambition, where ſhall we look for a monarch, who, after having ſpread murder and deſolation throughout the world, deſcended to the grave with that heart-felt ſatisfaction, that attended the Florentine merchant Americus Veſpucius, when he ſaw all Europe agreeing, with one conſent, to transfer his name to more than a third part of the terreſtrial globe?

The ſucceſs which has attended his preſent Majeſty's firſt eſſays, in the voyages we are now relating, though it has as yet produced no extraordinary advantages to compenſate the ſums expended in the proſecution of them, yet it has been ſuch as to open the way to new iſlands, from whoſe inhabitants new arts may be learnt, and from whoſe productions new acquiſitions may be made, both to the vegetable and foſſil kingdoms, by which the boundaries of ſcience may be enlarged, and the gardens of the curious enriched. Nor does it afford a ſmall ſatisfaction to inquiſitive minds, to be made acquainted with the genius, the arts, the various purſuits, the cuſtoms, the manners, the religious notions, the diſtinctions of rank, and the ſubordination that is to be met with among the people of various iſlands and countries, diſtinct from each other, and from us, in language, habits, learning, and ways of living. Who can read of the poverty and miſery of the wretched inhabitants of Terra del Fuego, who have nothing but the ſkins of beaſts thrown over them to defend them from the ſeverity of the cold: natives of a moſt horrid climate: not better provided with food than with raiment: who can read the ſtory of theſe forlorn creatures, without lamenting the condition of human beings, deſtitute as theſe appear to be, of every comfort and convenience, and expoſed every moment to the piercing rigour of the climate, and the ſtill ſeverer cravings of unſatisfied hunger! On the contrary, who can think of theſe, while at the ſame time, he is told of the pleaſurable lives of thoſe happy iſlanders, in the new diſcovered countries, who abound in fleſh, fiſh, and fruits, even to profuſion, without admiring the ways of providence, that, for purpoſes unknown to us, has ſo unequally beſtowed its diſpenſations! In theſe voyages, when we read of men that eat men, not from hunger, but from ſavage ferocity, we ſhudder to think of the depravity of our nature, and are convinced of the neceſſity of bounding our paſſions by wholeſome laws, and of correcting the irregularities of our appetites by the reſtraints of religion.

The variety of incidents that happened to our navigators, and in the courſe of their voyages, when hiſtorically recited, afford a peculiar kind of entertainment, not to be met with in other productions of a different kind. The many ſingular adventures, unforeſeen dangers, and providential eſcapes, that every ſhip experienced in paſſing round the globe, can only be conceived by thoſe who read, and believed by thoſe who have ſeen the wonders of the deep. Nothing can excite or gratify curioſity more than relations of marvellous events that happen in ſucceſſion, and in circumſtances equally critical and important. There is not an object that preſents itſelf either by ſea or land, but affords ſome degree of uſe and ſpeculation. The fiſh that ſwim about the ſhip, and the fowls that preſent themſelves in the ocean, are indications by which the ſkilful mariner avails himſelf, either to guard againſt the ſtorm, or to prepare for land; and our readers, as circumſtances ariſe, either ſhare his danger, or partake of his refreſhment. We are now preparing for them new ſubjects of entertainment; and being about to paſs again through the ſtraits of Magellan, into the vaſt Pacific Ocean or South Sea, it may not be amiſs to offer a remark on this immenſe body of water. It extends from the weſtern coaſts of North and South America, to the eaſtern ſhores of China, Tartary and Japan. From its moſt weſtern boundary between Peru and Chili, to its moſt eaſtern point at Cochin-China, it very near rolls over an extent of 180 degrees of longitude; and it is now ſuppoſed, by the moſt accurate inveſtigation that human ſkill and ſpirit will ever make, to reach quite to the South-Pole, and may poſſibly be as extenſive towards the North; ſo that this ſea may be ſaid to embrace, within five degrees, an entire hemiſphere of the globe of the world; to explore which, in a certain track, is the object of the voyage, undertaken by Captain Samuel Wallis. The hiſtory of this we ſhall now preſent to the view of our numerous ſubſcribers, only obſerving that Captain Wallis in this circumnavigation of the globe, directed his courſe more weſtwardly than any former navigator within the tropics.

C H A P. I.

Preparations for this voyage, inſtructions, &c.—Names of the ſhips and commanders—Circumſtances previous to their ſetting ſail from Plymouth—Paſſage from thence to the coaſt of Patagonia—Captain Byron's account of the gigantic natives confirmed, with ſome additional circumſtances—The three ſhips continue their courſe through the Straits of Magellan—The narrative of the Patagonians concluded—A particular and minute deſcription of the coaſt on each ſide the Straits—The places in which the ſhips anchored during their paſſage, with an account of the ſhoals and rocks that lie near them.

A. D. 1766. WHEN the preſent honourable Admiral Byron, then Commodore, returned from his voyage round the world, Captain Samuel Wallis, Eſq. was immediately appointed to the command of the Dolphin, in order to make another circuit of the globe, but particularly with a view to diſcoveries in the Pacific Ocean, having the Swallow, a ſloop, mounting 14 guns, appointed to accompany him, the command of which was given to Mr. Carteret, a lieutenant under Commodore Byron, and who on his return was advanced to the rank of a maſter and commander. His complement was one lieutenant, 22 petty officers, and 90 ſeamen. The Prince Frederick ſtore-ſhip, was likewiſe put under Captain Wallis's command, whoſe maſter was lieutenant Brine.

On the 19th of June, Captain Wallis, having received his commiſſion, went on board the Dolphin, and the ſame day hoiſted the broad pendant, and began to enter ſeamen; but agreeable to his orders, he took no boys either for himſelf or any of his officers. The Dolphin being now fitted for her intended voyage, the articles of war, and the act of parliament were read on board. On the 26th of July, ſhe ſailed down the river, and on Saturday the 16th of Auguſt, at eight o'clock, A. M. anchored in Plymouth Sound. On Tueſday the 19th, Captain Wallis received his ſailing orders, with inſtructions reſpecting the Swallow Sloop, and the Prince Frederick ſtore-ſhip; and this day we took on board 3000 weight of portable ſoup, and a bail of cork jackets. Every part of the ſhip was filled with ſtores of various kinds, even to the ſteerage and ſtate room; and an extraordinary quantity of medicines being provided by the ſurgeon, which conſiſted of three large boxes, and theſe were put into the Captain's cabbin.

On Friday the 22nd, at four o'clock, A. M. the Dolphin, (on board of which was our journaliſt) departed from Plymouth, in company with the Swallow and Prince Frederick; and too ſoon, to our mortification, we found the Swallow to be a very heavy ſailer.

On Sunday the 7th of September, we had a view of the iſland of Porto Santo, due weſt, and near noon came in ſight of the eaſt end of the iſland of Madeira. At five we ran between this and the Deſerters, and at ſix anchored in Madeira Road, about a mile from the ſhore, in 24 fathoms water, with a muddy bottom. About eight the Swallow and Prince Frederick came alſo to an anchor. The next morning we ſaluted the governor with 13 guns, and the compliment was returned with an equal number. We ſailed from hence on the 12th, after having taken in beef, wine, and a large quantity of onions, as ſea-ſtores. On the 16th, when off the iſland of Palma, ſailing at the rate of eight miles an hour, the wind ſuddenly died away, and for two minutes the veſſel had no motion, though we were at leaſt four leagues diſtant from the ſhore; and we found the ſhip 15 miles to the ſouthward of her reckoning. Saturday the 20th, we caught eight bonettas, out of a great number which ſurrounded the ſhip, and this day we ſaw two herons flying to the eaſtward. The Swallow parted from us in the night, between the 21ſt and 22nd, and on Tueſday the 23rd, at noon, the neareſt land of the iſland of Bonaviſta bore from S. to W. S. W. and the eaſt-end bore at the ſame time weſt, diſtant two leagues. We now thought it neceſſary to ſound, and had only 15 fathoms, rocky ground; at the ſame time we perceived a great rippling, occaſioned, as we ſuppoſed, by a reef; alſo breakers without us, diſtant about one league in the direction of S. E. We ſteered between the rippling and the breakers, and the Prince Frederick paſſed very near the laſt, in the S. E. but had no ſoundings; yet theſe breakers are thought to be dangerous. On Wedneſday the 24th, at ſix o'clock, A. M. the iſle of May bore W. S. W. diſtant ſix leagues; and ſoon after our conſort, the Swallow, joined company again. At ten o'clock the weſt end of the iſland of May, one of the Cape de Verd Iſlands, bore north, diſtant five miles; and at noon the ſouth end of St. Jago bore S. W. by W. diſtant four leagues. Between theſe two places we found a current, ſetting to the ſouthward, at the rate of 20 miles in 24 hours. At near four o'clock, P. M. we caſt anchor in Port Praya, in company with the Swallow, and Prince Frederick, in eight fathoms water, upon ſandy ground. During the night we had much rain and lightning. On the 25th, we obtained leave from the commanding officer at the fort, to get water and other neceſſaries. This being the ſickly ſeaſon at this place, and the rains ſo great as to render it exceeding difficult to get any thing down from the country to the ſhips; the ſmall-pox being alſo at this time epidemic; the Captain detained every man on board who had not had that contagious diſtemper. However, we caught abundance of fiſh, and procured a ſupply of water, and ſome cattle from the iſland. We alſo found large quantities of wild purſlain, which was very refreſhing, either raw as a ſallad, or boiled in our broth with peaſe.

On Saturday the 28th, we put to ſea, and at about ſix o'clock, P. M. the peak of Terra del Fuego bore W. N. W. diſtant 12 leagues. In the night we ſaw very plainly the burning mountain. This day Captain Wallis ordered every man to be furniſhed with hook and line, that he might ſupply himſelf with fiſh; and likewiſe to prevent infection, commanded that no man ſhould keep his fiſh longer than 24 hours; for the Captain had obſerved that not only ſtale, but even dried fiſh, had tainted the internal air of the ſhip, and made the people ſickly.

On Wedneſday the 1ſt of October, we loſt the true trade wind, and had variable gales. We were now in latitude 10 deg. 37 min. north. On the 3rd, we found a current run S. by E. at the rate of ſix fathoms an hour, and on the 7th, the ſhip was 19 miles ſouthward of her reckoning. On Monday the 20th, the crews of the three ſhips were ſerved with oil, all the butter and cheeſe being conſumed; and orders were iſſued, that, during the remainder of the voyage, they ſhould be ſerved with vinegar and muſtard once a fortnight. On the 22nd we judged we were within 60 degrees of land, from the ſight of a prodigious number of ſea-fowls, among which was a man of war bird. This day we croſſed the Equinoctial Line, in longitude 23 deg. 40 min. weſt from London. On Friday the 24th, orders were given for ſerving our ſhip's company with brandy, and the wine was reſerved for ſuch as might be ſick. On the 27th, the Prince Frederick ſprang a leak, and her crew were at this time ſo ſickly, through the fatigue of pumping, and the badneſs of their proviſions, that Lieutenant Brine, her commander, was apprehenſive of not being able to keep company much longer, unleſs ſome aſſiſtance could be given him. The Captain therefore ſent a carpenter and ſix ſailors on board, but had it not in his power to ſupply her with better proviſions. As the carpenter found he could do little towards ſtopping the leak, the Dolphin and Swallow completed their proviſions from the ſtore-ſhip, and put on board her empty oil-jars, ſtaves and iron-hoops. On Saturday the 8th of November, we were in latitude 25 deg. 52 min. ſouth, and in 39 deg. 38 min. weſt longitude from London; and on the 9th, having ſeen a great number of albatroſſes, we ſounded with 180 fathoms of line, but had no ground. On the 12th, though the ſummer ſeaſon in theſe climates, yet we found the weather ſo very cold, as to be obliged to have recourſe to our thick jackets. On Wedneſday the 19th, at eight o'clock, P. M. we ſaw a meteor of a very extraordinary appearance, in the N. E. which flew off in an horizontal line to the S. W. with amazing rapidity: it was near a minute in its progreſs, and left behind it a train of light ſo ſtrong, that the deck was not leſs illuminated than at noon day. On the 21ſt, we were by obſervation in latitude 37 deg. 40 min. ſouth, and in 51 deg. 24 min. weſt longitude from London. On the 22nd, we ſaw whales, ſeals, ſnipes, plovers, and other birds; with a great number of butterflies. Our ſoundings continued from 40 to 70 fathoms.

On Monday the 8th of December, at ſix o'clock, A. M. we deſcried land, having the appearance of many ſmall iſlands. At noon in latitude 47 deg. 16 min. ſouth, and in 64 deg. 58 min. weſt longitude, it bore from W. by S. to S. S. W. diſtant eight leagues. At eight o'clock, P. M. the Tower Rock, at Port Deſire, bore S. W. by W. diſtant about three leagues. At nine Penguin Iſland bore S. W. by W. half W. diſtant two leagues, and on the ninth, the ſame iſland, at noon, in latitude 48 deg. 56 min. ſouth, and in 65 deg. 6 min. weſt longitude, bore S. by E. diſtant 19 leagues. We remarked this day, that the ſea appeared coloured by the vaſt quantity of red ſhrimps that ſurrounded the ſhip. The next day, at noon, Wood's Mount, near the entrance of St. Julian's, bore S. W. by W. diſtant three or four leagues, and our ſoundings were from 40 to 45 fathoms. On the 11th, we obſerved in latitude 50 deg. 48 min. ſouth, and in 67 deg. 10 min. weſt longitude, when Penguin Iſland bore N. N. E. diſtant 58 leagues. On Saturday the 13th, in latitude 50 deg. 34 min. ſouth, longitude 68 deg. 15 min. weſt, we were not more than two leagues diſtant from the extreams of the land. We found Cape Beachy Head, the northernmoſt cape, to lie in latitude 50 deg. 16 min. ſouth, and Cape Fairweather, the ſouthernmoſt cape, in latitude 50 deg. 50 min. ſouth. On the 14th, we were by obſervation in latitude 50 deg. 52 min. ſouth, and in 68 deg. 10 min. weſt longitude from London, at which time we were ſix leagues from the ſhore, and the extreams of the land were from N. W. to W. S. W. Penguin Iſland bore N. 35 deg. eaſt, diſtant 68 leagues. On the 15th, at eight o'clock, the entrance of the river St. Croix bore S. W. half W. and the extreams of the land S. by E. to N. by E. At eight o'clock, A. M. we were two leagues from the land. That on the north ſhore is high, and appears in three capes; but on the ſouth ſhore it is low and flat. We had 20 fathoms quite croſs the opening of the river, the diſtance from point to point being about ſeven miles; and afterwards keeping at the diſtance of about four miles from each cape, we had from 22 to 24 fathoms. Cape Fairweather, at ſeven in the evening, bore S. W. half S. diſtant four leagues. We ſtood off and on all night, and had from 30 to 22 fathoms water.

On Tueſday the 16th, at noon, we obſerved in latitude 51 deg. 52 min. ſouth, and in 68 deg. weſt longitude. At one o'clock we were about two leagues from the ſhore. At four, Cape Virgin Mary bore S. E. by S. diſtant four leagues. At eight in the evening, we were very near the Cape, and before nine anchored in a bay cloſe under the ſouth-ſide of the cape, in 10 fathoms water, bottom gravelly. Soon after the Swallow and Prince Frederick came to an anchor between us and the cape, which bore N. by W. half W. and a low ſandy point like Dungeneſs S. by W. From the cape was a ſhoal, to the diſtance of about half a league, which may be eaſily known by the weeds that are upon it. This day we ſaw ſeveral men riding on the ſhore, who made ſigns for us to land. Accordingly the next day, being the 17th, Captain Wallis ordered the ſignal for the boats belonging to the Swallow and Prince Frederick to come on board, and in the mean time we hoiſted out our own. We had obſerved the natives to remain oppoſite the Dolphin all night, ſhouting aloud, and keeping up large fires. Our boats being all manned and armed, and having with us a party of marines, about ſix o'clock we reached the beach, the Captain having left orders with the maſter to bring the ſhip's ſide to bear upon the landing place, and to keep the guns loaded with round ſhot. Captain Wallis with Mr. Cumming and ſeveral officers now landed; the marines were then drawn up, and the boats were brought to a grapling near the ſhore. The Captain having made ſigns for the Indians to ſit down, he diſtributed among them combs, buttons, knives, ſciſſars, beads, and other toys. The women were particularly pleaſed by a preſent of ſome ribbons. He then intimated that he ſhould be glad to accept ſome guanicoes and oſtriches, in exchange for bill-hooks and hatchets, which were produced, but they were either really or deſignedly ignorant of his meaning. Captain Wallis meaſured ſeveral of thoſe Indians; among whom the talleſt was ſix feet ſeven inches; others were one and two inches ſhorter; but the general height was from five feet ten to ſix feet. They are muſcular and well made, but their hands and feet very ſmall in proportion to the reſt of their bodies. They are clothed with the ſkins of the guanico, ſewed together into pieces about ſix feet long, and five wide: theſe are wrapped round the body, and faſtened by a girdle, with the hairy-ſide inwards. The guanico is an animal, that in ſize, make, and colour, reſembles a deer; but it has a hump on its back, and no horns. Some of theſe people wore a ſquare piece of cloth, made of the hair of the guanico, and a hole being cut to admit the head through, it reached down to the knees. They have alſo a kind of buſkin from the middle of the leg to the inſtep, which is conveyed under the heel, but the reſt of the feet is bare. Their ſtrait and coarſe hair is tied back with a cotton ſtring; and their complexion is a dark copper. Both the horſes and dogs which we ſaw, were of a Spaniſh breed. The horſes appeared to be about 14 hands high. Both ſexes rode aſtride; but the men were furniſhed with wooden ſpurs. Some of theſe had their arms painted; the faces of ſome were variouſly marked; and others had the left eye encloſed by a painted circle of a red colour. The eye-lids of all the young women were painted black. They had each a miſſile weapon of a ſingular kind tucked into the girdle. It conſiſted of two round ſtones covered with leather, each weighing about a pound, and faſtened to the two ends of a ſtring about eight feet long. This is uſed as a ſling, one ſtone being kept in the hand, and the other whirled round the head, till it is ſuppoſed to have acquired ſufficient power, and then it is diſcharged at the object, or any mark they wiſh to hit. They likewiſe catch guanicoes and oſtriches by means of this cord, which is thrown ſo, that the weight twiſts round, and hampers the legs of the intended prey. They are ſo expert at the management of this double-headed ſhot, as our Captain called it, that they would hit a mark, not bigger than a ſhilling, with both the ſtones, at the diſtance of 15 yards. The language of theſe people is quite unintelligible. They were indeed often heard to repeat the word Ga-pi ta-ne, on which they were ſucceſſively addreſſed in Portugueſe, Spaniſh, Dutch, and French; but they had no knowledge of either of thoſe languages. When they ſhook hands with any of the crew, they always ſaid chevow; and they were amazingly ready at learning Engliſh words, and pronouncing the ſentence "Engliſhmen come on ſhore," with great facility. During our ſtay on ſhore we ſaw them eat ſome of their fleſh meat raw, particularly the paunch of an oſtrich, without any other preparation or cleaning than juſt turning it inſide out, and ſhaking it. We obſerved among them ſeveral beads, ſuch as we gave them, and two pieces of red baize, which we ſuppoſed had been left there, or in the neighbouring country, by Commodore Byron. One man among them had a large pair of ſuch ſpurs as are worn in Spain, braſs ſtirrups, and a Spaniſh ſcimeter, without a ſcabbard; but notwithſtanding theſe diſtinctions, he did not appear to have any authority over the reſt. The women had no ſpurs. As above 100 of the natives ſeemed deſirous to viſit the ſhip, Captain Wallis took eight of them into the boats. Theſe jumped in with the joy and alacrity of children going to a fair, and having no intention of miſchief againſt us, had not the leaſt ſuſpicion that we intended any miſchief againſt them. In the boat they ſung ſeveral of their country ſongs, expreſſive of their joy; but when they came into the ſhip, they expreſſed no kind of ſurprize, which the multiplicity of objects, to them equally ſtrange and novel, that at once preſented themſelves, might be ſuppoſed to excite. When introduced into the cabbin, they looked about with a ſtupid indifference, till a looking-glaſs, which drew their attention, afforded them and us much diverſion: they advanced, retreated, and played a thouſand antic tricks before it, talking with earneſtneſs, and laughing immoderately. For their entertainment, we furniſhed a table with beef, pork, biſcuit, and other articles of the ſhip's proviſions: they eat whatever was ſet before them, but would drink nothing but water. When they were conducted to ſee the ſhip, they looked, with much attention, at the animals we had on board as live ſtock: they examined the hogs and ſheep, and were delighted exceedingly with the Guinea hens and turkeys. One of them making ſigns that he ſhould be glad of ſome cloaths, the Captain gave him a pair of ſhoes and buckles, and preſented the reſt with a little bag each, in which he put new ſix pences and half-pence, with a ribband paſſed through a hole in them, to hang round their necks: the remaining contents of the bag were, a looking-glaſs, a comb, ſome beads, a knife, a pair of ſciſſars, twine, and a few ſlips of cloth. We offered them ſome leaves of tobacco, rolled up into what are called ſegars, and they ſmoaked a few moments, but did not ſeem to like it. The marines being exerciſed before them, they ſeemed terrified at the firing of the muſquets; and one of them, falling down, ſhut his eyes, and lay motionleſs, as if to intimate, that he knew the deſtructive nature of thoſe fire-arms, and their fatal effects. The reſt ſeeing our people merry, and finding themſelves unhurt, ſoon reſumed their cheerfulneſs, and heard the ſecond and third volley fired without much emotion; but the old man continued proſtrate upon the deck ſome time, and never recovered his ſpirits till the firing was over. It was with much difficulty we got rid of theſe inoffenſive viſitors. At noon, the tide being out, Captain Wallis gave them to underſtand by ſigns, that the ſhip was proceeding farther, and that they muſt return on ſhore: this we ſoon perceived they were unwilling to do; however, all except the old man and one more, were got into the boat; but theſe ſtopped at the gangway, where the old man turned about, and went aft to the companion ladder: here he ſtood ſome time without ſpeaking a word: he now uttered what we ſuppoſed to be a prayer; for he many times lifted up his hands and eyes to the heavens, and ſpoke in a manner and tone very different from what we had obſerved in the converſation of his countrymen. His oraiſon ſeemed to be rather ſung than ſaid, and we found it impoſſible to diſtinguiſh one word from another. When the Captain intimated that it was time for him to go into the boat, he looked up at the ſun, then moved his hand round to the weſtern horizon, pauſed, laughed, and pointed to the ſhore, by which actions, we eaſily underſtood, that he petitioned to ſtay on board till evening: and we took no little pains to convince him, that we could not continue ſo long upon that part of the coaſt. At length, however, we prevailed upon him to go over the ſhip's ſide with his companion, and as ſoon as the boat put off, they all began to ſing, not ceaſing till they reached the ſhore, where many of their companions preſſed eagerly to be taken into the boat, and were highly affronted at being refuſed. Before our departure we ſounded the ſhoal, that runs out from the point, and found it about three miles broad from N. to S. and to avoid the ſame it is neceſſary to keep four miles off the Cape, in 13 fathoms water. The ſignal was now made for weighing, and at the ſame time the Swallow received orders to lead, and the Prince Frederick to bring up the rear. The wind being againſt us, and blowing freſh, we turned into the Strait of Magellan, with the flood tide, between Cape Virgin Mary and the Sandy Point that reſembles Dungeneſs. At the diſtance of two leagues, weſt of Dungeneſs, we fell in with a ſhoal, upon which, at half flood, we had but ſeven fathoms water. Between eight and nine o'clock in the evening, we came to an anchor, one league from the ſhore, in 20 fathom, with a muddy bottom: Cape Virgin Mary bearing N. E. by E. half E. Point Poſſeſſion W. half S. diſtant five leagues. When abreaſt of the Sandy Point, we ſaw many people on horſeback hunting the guanicoes, which ran up the country with prodigious ſwiftneſs. The natives lighted fires oppoſite the ſhips, and about 400 of them, with their horſes feeding near them, were obſerved encamped in a fine green valley. The guanicoes were purſued by the hunters, with ſlings in their hands ready for the caſt; but not one of them was taken while they were within the reach of our ſight. This being the ſpot where Commodore Byron ſaw the Patagonians, on the 18th, a party with ſome officers were ſent towards the ſhore, but with orders not to land, as the ſhips were too far off to aſſiſt them in caſe of neceſſity. When they came near the land, many of the natives flocked to ſee them, among whom were women and children, and ſome of the very men we had ſeen in the morning of the preceding day. Theſe waded towards the boat, frequently calling out, "Engliſhmen come on ſhore," and were with difficulty reſtrained from getting into the boat, when they found our people would not land. Some bread, tobacco, and toys were diſtributed among them, but not an article of proviſions could be obtained in return. We had got under ſail about ſix o'clock A. M. and at noon there being little wind, and the ebb running with great force, the Swallow, who was a-head, made the ſignal and came to an anchor; upon which we did the ſame, and ſo did the ſtore-ſhip which was a-ſtern.

On Friday the 19th, at ſix o'clock, A. M. we weighed, the Swallow being a-head, and at noon we anchored in Poſſeſſion Bay, having 12 fathoms water, bottom a clean ſand. Point Poſſeſſion bore eaſt diſtant three leagues: the Aſſes Ears weſt; and the entrance of the Narrows S. W. half W. Upon the point we ſaw a great number of Indians, and at night, large fires on the ſhore of Terra del Fuego. From this day to the 22d, we made but little way, having ſtrong gales and heavy ſeas. We now anchored in 18 fathoms, muddy bottom. The Aſſes Ears bore N. W. by W. half W. Point Poſſeſſion N. E. by E. and the point of the Narrows, on the ſouth-ſide, S. S. W. diſtant nearly four leagues. In this ſituation we found, by obſervation, our latitude to be 52 deg. 30 min. ſouth, and our longitude 70 deg. 20 min. weſt. On the 23rd, we got under way and made ſail, but the tide was ſo ſtrong, that the Swallow was ſet one way, the Dolphin another, and the Prince Frederick a third. We had a freſh breeze, nevertheleſs not one of the veſſels would anſwer her helm. However we entered the firſt narrow; and at ſix o'clock in the evening we anchored on the ſouth-ſhore, the Swallow on the north, and the ſtore-ſhip not a cable's length from a ſand-bank, about two miles to the eaſtward. The ſtrait here is only a league wide, and, at midnight, the tide being ſlack, we weighed and towed the ſhip through. On Wedneſday the 24th, we ſteered from the firſt narrow to the ſecond, S. W. and, at eight, A. M. we anchored two leagues from the ſhore, Cape Gregory bearing W. half N. and Sweepſtakes Foreland S. W. half W. On Thurſday the 25th, we ſailed through the ſecond narrow. In our run through this part of the ſtrait we had 12 fathoms within half a mile of the ſhore. At five o'clock in the evening, the Dolphin ſuddenly ſhoaled from 17 to 5 fathoms, St. Bartholomew's Iſland then bearing S. half W. diſtant four miles, and Elizabeth's Iſland, S. S. W. half W. diſtant ſix miles. The weather being tempeſtuous and rainy, at eight o'clock in the evening, we caſt anchor under Elizabeth's Iſland, whereon we found great quantities of wild celery, which being boiled with portable ſoup and wheat, the crews breakfaſted on it every morning for ſeveral days. On this Iſland we obſerved ſeveral huts, and places where fires had been recently made, but none of the natives. We alſo ſaw two dogs, and freſh ſhells of muſcles and limpets ſcattered about. The wigwams conſiſted of young trees, which, being ſharpened at one end, and thruſt into the ground, in ſuch a manner as to form a circle, the other ends were brought to meet, and faſtened together at the top. We ſaw likewiſe many high mountains, which, though the midſt of ſummer in this part of the world, had their ſummits covered with ſnow; but about three parts of their height they were covered with wood, and above with herbage, except where the ſnow was not yet melted. On Friday the 26th, at two o'clock, A. M. we weighed; and at five, being midway between Elizabeth's Iſland, and St. George's, we ſtruck the ground, but the next caſt had no bottom with 20 fathoms. The Prince Frederick, who was about half a league to the ſouthward of us, had for a conſiderable time not ſeven fathoms: the Swallow which was two or three miles to the ſouthward had deep water, for ſhe kept near St. George's Iſland. We think it is ſafeſt to run down from the north-end of Elizabeth's Iſland, about two or three miles from the ſhore, and ſo on all the way to Port Famine. At noon, being three miles from the north-ſhore, we found by obſervation our latitude to be 53 deg. 12 min. ſouth, longitude 71 deg. 20 min. weſt, from London. About four o'clock, we anchored in Port Famine Bay, and with all the boats out, towed in the Swallow and Store-ſhip. On the 27th, the ſick were ſent on ſhore, where a tent was erected for their reception, as was another for the accommodation of the ſail-makers, and thoſe who landed to get wood. This day, the weather being ſqually, we warped the ſhip farther into the harbour, and moored her with a cable each way in nine fathoms. Cape St. Anne now bore N. E. by E. diſtant one mile, and Sedger River S. half W. On Sunday the 28th, all the ſails were unbent and ſent on ſhore to be repaired; the empty caſks were alſo landed, with the coopers to trim them, and ten men to waſh and fill them. We alſo hauled the ſeine, and caught plenty of fiſh reſembling mullets, but the fleſh was very ſoft; and among others were ſmelts, ſome of which weighed a pound and a half, and were 20 inches long. Indeed all the time of our ſtay at this place, we caught fiſh enough to furniſh one meal a day both for the ſick and the healthy: we gathered alſo great plenty of celery, and pea-tops, which were boiled with the peaſe and portable ſoup: beſides theſe we found fruit that reſembles cranberries, and the leaves of a ſhrub ſomewhat like our thorn, which were remarkably ſour. When we arrived here, many of our people had the ſcurvy to a great degree; but by the plentiful uſe of vegetables, and bathing in the ſea, within a fortnight there was not a ſcorbutic perſon in either of the ſhips. Their recovery alſo was greatly promoted by the land air, and by being obliged to waſh their apparel, and keep their perſons clean. All hands were now employed in repairing the ſhip and making her ready for the ſea. To this end the forge was ſet up on ſhore; and in the mean time a conſiderable quantity of wood was cut, and put on board the ſtore-ſhip; and thouſands of young trees were carefully taken up with the mould about them, to be carried to Falkland's Iſlands, which produce no timber. The Prince Frederick received orders to deliver theſe to the commanding officer at Port Egmont, and to ſail to that place with the firſt fair wind.

A. D. 1767. On Wedneſday the 14th of January, the maſter of the cutter, which was victualled for a week, was ſent to look out for anchoring places on the north ſhore of the ſtrait; and this day we got all our people and tents on board, having taken in 75 tons of water, and 12 months of proviſions for ourſelves, and ten months for the Swallow, from on board the ſtore-ſhip. On the 17th, the maſter of our cutter returned with an account, that he had found anchoring places; and this day the Prince Frederick ſailed for Falkland's Iſlands. The maſter reported, that between where we lay and Cape Forward, he had been on ſhore at four places, where was good anchorage, and plenty of wood and water cloſe to the beach; with abundance of cranberries and wild celery: that he had alſo ſeen a great number of currant buſhes full of fruit, and a variety of beautiful ſhrubs in full bloſſom, beſides great plenty of winter's bark, a grateful ſpice, which we have already particularly deſcribed. On Sunday the 18th, at five o'clock, A. M. we ſailed; and at noon, obſerved in latitude 54 deg. 3 min. ſouth; here we found the ſtrait to be two leagues wide. On the 19th, we came to an anchor, half a mile from the ſhore, near Cape Holland, oppoſite a current of freſh water, that falls rapidly from the mountains. Cape Holland bore W. S. W. half W. diſtant two miles; Cape Forward eaſt; and by obſervation our latitude was 53 deg. 38 min. ſouth. As a more convenient anchoring place, and better adapted for procuring wood and water, had been diſcovered, we made ſail on the 22nd, and at nine in the evening, being about two miles diſtant from the ſhore, Cape Gallant bore W. half N. diſtant two leagues; Cape Holland E. by N. ſix leagues; and Rupert's Iſland W. S. W. At this place the ſtrait is not more than five miles over.

On Friday the 23rd, we came to an anchor in a bay near Cape Gallant, in 10 fathoms water, a muddy bottom. The boats being ſent out to ſound found good anchorage every where, except within two cables length S. W. of the ſhip, where it was coral, and deepened to 16 fathoms. In this ſituation the eaſt point of Cape Gallant bore S. W. by W. one fourth W. the extreme point of the eaſtermoſt land E. by S. a point making the mouth of a river N. by W. and the white patch on Charles's Iſland S. W. We now examined the bay and a large lagoon. The laſt was the moſt commodious harbour we had yet ſeen, having five fathom at the entrance, and four to five in the middle. It is capable of receiving a great number of veſſels, had three large freſh water rivers, and plenty of wood and celery. We had here a ſeine ſpoiled, by being entangled with the wood that lies ſunk at the mouth of the rivers; but though we caught not much fiſh, we had wild ducks in ſuch numbers as to afford us a very ſeaſonable relief. Near this place are very high mountains, one of which was climbed by the maſter of our cutter, with the hope of getting a view of the South Sea; but, being diſappointed in this expectation, he erected a pyramid, and having written the ſhip's name, and the date of the year, he left the ſame, with a ſhilling, within the ſtructure. On the 24th, in the morning, we examined Cordes Bay, which we found much inferior to that in which the ſhips lay, the entrance being rocky, and the ground within it foul. It had, it is true, a more ſpacious lagoon, but the mouth of it was very narrow, and barred by a ſhoal, whereon was not ſufficient depth of water for a ſhip of burden to float. Here we ſaw an animal that reſembled an aſs; as ſwift as a deer, and had a cloven hoof. This was the firſt animal we had ſeen in this ſtrait, except at the entrance, where we found the guanicoes, and two dogs. The circumjacent country has a dreary and forbidding aſpect. The mountains on both ſides are of a ſtupendous height; whoſe lower parts are covered with trees, above which a ſpace is occupied by weathered ſhrubs; higher up are fragments of broken rocks and heaps of ſnow; and the tops are totally rude, naked, and deſolate. To ſee their ſummits towering above the clouds in vaſt crags, that are piled upon each other, affords to a ſpectator the idea, that they are the ruins of nature, devoted to everlaſting ſterility and deſolation. This day we ſounded about the Royal Iſlands, but found no bottom; wherever we came to an opening, we found a rapid tide ſet through; and they cannot be approached by ſhipping without the moſt imminent danger. And here, for the information of future navigators, we would obſerve, that in a run through this part of the ſtrait, they ſhould keep the north ſhore cloſe on board all the way, and not venture more than a mile from it till the Royal Iſlands are paſſed. Through the whole day the current ſets eaſterly, and the indraught ſhould by all means be avoided.

On Tueſday the 27th, we weighed with all expedition, and departed from Cape Gallant Road, which lies in 53 deg. 50 min. ſouth latitude. At noon on the 28th, the weſt-point bore W. N. W. half a mile diſtant

tant. At two o'clock, the weſt point bore eaſt, diſtant three leagues, and York Point W. N. W. diſtant five leagues. At five, we opened York Road, the point bearing N. W. diſtant half a mile; at which time the Dolphin was taken a-back, and a ſtrong current with a heavy ſquall drove us ſo far to leeward, that it was with great difficulty we got into Elizabeth's Bay, and anchored in 12 fathoms water, near a river. The Swallow being at anchor off the point of the bay, and very near the rocks, Captain Wallis ordered out all the boats with anchors and hauſers to her aſſiſtance, and ſhe was happily warped to windward into good anchorage. At this time York Point bore W. by N. A ſhoal with weeds upon it, at the diſtance of a cable's length, W. N. W. Point Paſſage S. E. half E. diſtant half a mile; a rock near Rupert's Iſle S. half E. and a rivulet on the bay N. E. by E. diſtant about three cables length. Having this day at ſun-ſet ſeen a great ſmoke on the ſouthern ſhore, and on Prince Rupert's Iſland, early in the morning of the 29th, the boats were ſent on ſhore for water. Our people had no ſooner landed, than ſeveral of the natives came off to them in three canoes; and having advanced towards the ſailors, made ſigns of friendſhip, which being anſwered to their ſatisfaction, they hallooed, and our men ſhouted in return. When the Indians drew near they were eating the fleſh of ſeals raw, and were covered with the ſkins, which ſtank intolerably. They had bows, arrows, and javelins, the two laſt of which were pointed with flint. Theſe people were of a middling ſtature, the talleſt of them not exceeding five feet ſix inches. Their complexion was of a deep copper colour. Three of them being admitted on board the Dolphin, they devoured whatever food was offered them; but like the Patagonians would only drink water: like them too, they were highly diverted with a looking-glaſs, in which they at firſt ſtared with aſtoniſhment; but having become a little more familiar with it, they ſmiled at its effect; and finding a correſponding ſmile from the image in the glaſs, they burſt into immoderate fits of laughter. The Captain going on ſhore with them, preſented ſome trinkets to their wives and children, and received in return ſome of their weapons, and pieces of mundic, of the kind found in the tin mines of Cornwall. The ſails of the canoes belonging to theſe Indians were made of the ſeal ſkin. To kindle a fire they ſtrike a pebble againſt a piece of mundic, holding under it, to catch the ſparks, ſome moſs or down, mixed with a whitiſh earth, which takes fire like tinder: they then take ſome dry graſs, and putting the lighted moſs into it, wave it to and fro, and in a minute it blazes. When they left us, they ſteered for the ſouthern ſhore, where we ſaw many of their huts; and we remarked, that not one of them looked behind, either at us or the ſhip, ſo little impreſſion had the curioſities they had ſeen made upon their minds. As this ſeems to be the moſt dreary and inhoſpitable country in the world, not excepting the worſt parts of Sweden and Norway, ſo the natives ſeem to be the loweſt and moſt deplorable of all human beings. Their perfect indifference to every thing they ſaw, which marked the diſparity between our ſtate and their own, though it may preſerve them from the regret and anguiſh of unſatisfied deſires, ſeems, notwithſtanding, to imply a defect in their nature; for thoſe who are ſatisfied with the gratifications of a brute, can have little pretenſion to the prerogatives of men. Theſe Indians when they gave to the gentlemen of our ſhip ſeveral pieces of mundic, intimated, that this ſubſtance was found in the mountains, and Captain Wallis is of opinion, that not only mines of tin, but more valuable metals are ſubſiſting there.

On Tueſday the 3rd of February, we weighed, and, in a ſudden ſquall, were taken a-back, ſo that both ſhips were in the moſt imminent danger of being driven aſhore on a reef of rocks; the wind, however, ſuddenly ſhifting, we got off without much damage. At five o'clock, P. M. we anchored in York Road, Cape Quod now bore W. half S. diſtant ſix leagues; York Point E. S. E. diſtant one mile; Bachelor's River N. N. W. three fourths of a mile; the entrance of Jerom's Sound N. W. by W. and a ſmall iſland, on the ſouth ſhore, W. by S. In the evening we ſaw five Indian canoes come out of Bachelor's River, and go up Jerom's Sound. Having ſent out the boats, in the morning of the 4th, we were informed on their return, that there was good anchorage within Jerom's Sound, and all the way thither from the ſhip's ſtation; as likewiſe at ſeveral places under the iſlands on the ſouth-ſhore; but the force and uncertainty of the tides, and the heavy guſts of wind that came off the high lands, rendered theſe ſituations unſafe. This day Captain Wallis went up Bachelor's River, and found a bar at the mouth of it, which, at certain times of the tide muſt be dangerous. We hauled the ſeine, but the weeds and ſtumps of trees prevented our catching any fiſh. When aſhore, we ſaw many wigwams, and ſeveral dogs, which animals ran away the moment they were noticed. We gathered muſcles, limpets, ſea-eggs, celery, and nettles in abundance. We alſo ſaw ſome oſtriches, but they were beyond the reach of our pieces. Three miles up the river, on the weſt-ſide, between two mountains of a ſtupendous height, one of which has received the name of Mount Miſery, is a cataract, which has a very ſtriking appearance. It is precipitated down an elevation of above 400 yards; half way over a very ſteep declivity, and the other half is a perpendicular fall: the ſound of which is not leſs awful than the ſight. On Saturday the 14th, at ten o'clock, A. M. we weighed, ſoon after the current ſet the ſhip towards Bachelor's River: we put her in ſtays, and while ſhe was coming about, which ſhe was ſome time in doing, we drove over a ſhoal, where we had little more than 16 feet water, with rocky ground. Our danger was great, for the Dolphin drew 16 feet nine inches aft, and 15 feet one inch forward; but when the ſhip gathered way, we fortunately deepened into three fathoms; and in a very ſhort time, we got into deep water. We continued plying to windward till four o'clock, P. M. when perceiving we had loſt ground, we returned to our laſt ſtation, and again came to an anchor in York Road.

On Tueſday the 17th, at five o'clock, A. M. we ſet ſail, but notwithſtanding we had a fine breeze at weſt, the ſhip was carried by a current with great violence, towards the ſouth ſhore; the boats were all towing a-head, the ſails unfilled, yet we drove ſo cloſe to the rocks, that we were ſeldom farther than a ſhip's length from them, and the oars of the boats were frequently entangled in the weeds. In this manner we were hurried along for near an hour, in momentary expectation of being daſhed to pieces. All our efforts being ineffectual, we reſigned ourſelves to our fate, and waited the event in a ſtate of ſuſpence very little ſhort of deſpair, but Providence interpoſed for our preſervation; for at length we opened St. David's Sound, when, contrary to our expectations, a current ruſhed out of it, and ſet us into mid-channel. The Swallow knew nothing of our unhappy ſituation, being all the time on the north ſhore. We now ſent our boats in ſearch of an anchoring place, and our people returned with the agreeable intelligence, that they had found a convenient one in a ſmall bay, to which the Captain gave the name of Butler's Bay, it having been diſcovered by Mr. Butler, one of our mates. We ran in with the tide which ſet faſt to the weſtward, and anchored in 16 fathoms water; but the Swallow caſt anchor in Iſland Bay, at about ſix miles diſtance. Butler's Bay lies to the weſt of Rider's, on the ſouth ſhore of the ſtrait, which is here about two miles wide. The extreams of the bay from W. by N. to N. half W. are about one fourth of a mile aſunder. A ſmall rivulet bore S. half W. and Cape Quod north, at the diſtance of four miles. We kept this ſtation till Friday the 20th, when we encountered a moſt violent ſtorm, attended with hail and rain, which increaſed till the evening, the ſea breaking over the fore-caſtle upon the quarter-deck. We made uſe of every expedient in our power to keep the ſhip ſteady, and as the cables did not part, we were again wonderfully preſerved, which, conſidering the narrowneſs of the ſtrait, and the ſmallneſs of the bay in which we were ſtationed, might in the judgment of human wiſdom be thought impoſſible; for had the cables parted, we could not have run out with a ſail, and not having room to bring the ſhip up with any other anchor, we muſt without divine aid have been daſhed to pieces in a few minutes; and under ſuch circumſtances it is highly probable, that every ſoul would immediately have periſhed. By eight o'clock in the evening the gale became more moderate, and gradually decreaſed during the night. On the 21ſt, we had the ſatisfaction to find that our cable was ſound, but our hauſers were much rubbed by the rocks. As to the Swallow, the ſtorm had little affected her; but two days before ſhe had very near been loſt by the rapidity of the tide, in puſhing through the iſlands. An alteration had been made in her rudder, nevertheleſs ſhe ſteered and worked ſo ill, that it was apprehended ſhe could not ſafely be brought to an anchor again. Her commander was of opinion, that ſhe could be of very little ſervice to the expedition, and therefore requeſted of Captain Wallis to direct what he thought beſt for the ſervice. The captain returned for anſwer, "That as the Lords of the Admiralty had appointed her to accompany the Dolphin, ſhe muſt continue to do it as long as it was poſſible; that as her condition rendered her a bad ſailer, he would wait her time, and attend her motions; and that if any diſaſter ſhould happen to either of us, the other ſhould be ready to afford ſuch aſſiſtance as might be in her power." In this bay we remained eight days, taking in wood and water, and repairing the little damage we had ſuſtained in the late ſtorm. We caught fiſh of various kinds, among which were muſcles near ſix inches long; alſo a fine firm red fiſh, not unlike a gurnet, moſt of which were from four to five pounds weight. The mountains in this neighbourhood have a moſt rugged and deſolate appearance; but their height could not be aſcertained, their heads being loſt in the clouds; and ſome of them, on the ſouthern ſhore, were ſo naked, as not to have upon them a ſingle blade of graſs. Our maſter having been ſent out in ſearch of anchorage, landed upon a large iſland on the north-ſide of Snow Sound, and being almoſt periſhed with cold, the firſt thing he did was to make a large fire with ſome trees which he found upon the ſpot. He then climbed one of the rocky mountains, with Mr. Pickerſgill a midſhipman, and one of the ſeamen, in order to take a view of the ſtrait, and the diſmal regions that ſurround it. He obſerved the entrance of the ſound to be full as broad as ſeveral parts of the ſtrait, and to grow but very little narrower on Terra del Fuego ſide. The country on the ſouth, he ſaid, was more dreary and horrid than any he had yet ſeen: the mountains hid their heads in the clouds; while the valleys were equally barren, being intirely covered with ſnow, except where it had been waſhed away, or converted into ice; and even theſe bald patches were as deſtitute of verdure as the rocks between which they lay.

Sunday the 1ſt of March, at four o'clock, A. M. our companion, the Swallow, was ſeen under ſail, on the north ſhore of Cape Quod. At ſeven we ſet ſail, and ſtood out of Butler's Bay; and at noon ſent the boats to ſeek for anchorage on the north ſhore. Cape Notch now bore W. by N. half N. diſtant four leagues, and Cape Quod E. half N. diſtant three leagues. At three o'clock, P. M. we anchored in a ſmall bay, which we named Lion's Cove, on account of a ſteep rocky mountain, the top whereof reſembles the head of a lion. On the 2nd, we made ſail again, and at five in the evening came to anchor in Good Luck Bay, in 28 fathoms water. A rocky iſland, at the weſtern extremity of the bay, bore N. W. by W. about a cable's length and a half from the Dolphin; and a low point which forms the eaſtern extremity of the bay, bore E. S. E. diſtant one mile. In the interval between this point and the ſhip are many ſhoals; and two rocks at the bottom of the bay, the largeſt of which bore N. E. by N. the ſmalleſt N. by E. From theſe rocks, ſhoals run out to the S. E. which may be known by the weeds that are upon them. Cape Notch bore from us W. by S. half W. diſtant one league. In the intermediate ſpace is a large lagoon, but, the wind blowing hard all the time of our laying here, we could not ſound it. Having moored, we ſent two boats to aſſiſt the Swallow, by which ſhe was towed into a ſmall bay, where, as the wind was ſoutherly, and blew freſh, ſhe was in great danger, for the cove was expoſed to S. E. winds, and was alſo full of rocks. On the four following days we encountered ſuch terrible weather, that we had no other proſpect before us than that of immediate deſtruction: and our ſeamen were ſo prepoſſeſſed with the notion, that the Swallow could not ride out the ſtorm, that they even imagined they ſaw ſome of her hands coming over the rocks towards them. The ſtorm at length ſubſided, and the gale became more moderate on Saturday the 7th; we therefore at four o'clock, A. M. ſent a boat to enquire after the Swallow, who in the afternoon returned with the welcome news that the ſhip was ſafe; but the fatigue of the people had been incredible, the whole crew having been upon the deck near three days and three nights. The guſts returned at midnight, though not with equal violence, but attended with hail, ſleet, and ſnow. On the 8th, Captain Wallis ordered up, the weather being extremely cold, and the crews never dry, 11 bales of the thick woollen ſtuff, called fear-nought, and employed all the taylors to make them into jackets, of which every man in the Dolphin had one. Seven bales of the ſame cloth were alſo ſent on board the Swallow, which made every man on board a jacket of the ſame kind. Three bales of finer cloth were cut up for the officers of both ſhips, which were very acceptable. On Sunday the 15th, ſeeing the Swallow under ſail, we ſent off our launch, whereby ſhe was towed into a very good harbour on the ſouth ſhore, oppoſite to where we lay. The favourable account we received of this harbour determined us to depart from Good Luck Bay, and we thought ourſelves happy when we got ſafe out of it. When abreaſt of the place where the Swallow lay at anchor, we fired ſeveral guns, as ſignals for her boats to aſſiſt us, and in a ſhort time the maſter came on board, and piloted us to a very commodious ſtation, where we caſt anchor in 28 fathoms, bottom muddy. This bay, which we called Swallow Harbour, is ſheltered from all winds, and excellent in every reſpect. There are two narrow channels into it, but neither of them dangerous.

On Monday the 16th, at nine o'clock, A. M. we weighed, and took the Swallow in tow. At five, P. M. being little wind, we caſt her off. At nine we had freſh gales, and at midnight Cape Upright bore S. S. W. half W. On the 17th, by the advice of Captain Carteret, we bore away for Upright Bay, and he, being acquainted with the place, the Swallow was ordered to lead. At eleven o'clock we opened a large lagoon, and by means of a current, which ſet ſtrongly into it, the Swallow was driven among the breakers cloſe upon the lee-ſhore: ſhe made ſignals of diſtreſs, and notwithſtanding the weather was hazy, and the ſurf ran high, our boats took her in tow, but their utmoſt efforts to ſave her would have been in vain, had not a breeze from the ſhore happily relieved her. At noon a great ſwell came on, the waves ran high, and the fog was ſo thick, that we narrowly eſcaped ſhipwreck, in what we conjectured to be, the Bay of Iſlands; we therefore endeavoured to haul out, as the only chance of eſcaping; this we found no eaſy taſk, being obliged to tack continually, to weather ſome iſland or rock; but at four o'clock, P. M. the weather clearing up a little, we had a ſight of Cape Upright, for which we immediately ſteered, and between five and ſix came ſafely to an anchor in the bay, in 46 fathoms, with a muddy bottom. A high bluff land on the north ſhore bore N. W. half N. diſtant five leagues, and a ſmall iſland within us S. by E. half E. The Swallow, who was driven to lee-ward, notwithſtanding ſhe had two anchors a-head, was brought up about a cable's length aſtern of us, in 70 fathoms water. To clear her anchors, for which purpoſe we ſent a conſiderable number of our hands, and to warp her into a proper birth, coſt us the whole day, and was not only a work of time, but of the utmoſt difficulty and labour. On the 18th we ſent our boats to ſound quite croſs the ſtrait, and this day we moored the ſhip in 78 fathoms, with the ſtream anchor. On the 19th, two canoes, having in them ſeveral Indians, came along-ſide the Dolphin. They were equally miſerable and abject, with thoſe we had before ſeen. A ſeaman gave one of them a fiſh, which he had juſt caught with a line, and it was then alive. The Indian ſeized it as a dog would a bone, and inſtantly killed it by biting it near the gills; he then began at the head, and proceeded on to the tail, champing up the bones, and devouring both the ſcales and the entrails. Theſe people would drink no other liquor than water, but they eagerly tore in pieces and ſwallowed down proviſions of any kind, whether boiled, roaſted, raw, ſalt, or freſh. Though the weather was very cold, their only covering was a ſeal-ſkin, and even that they put off when rowing. We obſerved that they all had ſore eyes, occaſioned probably by the ſmoke of their fires, and their filthy way of feeding and living made them ſmell as rank as a fox. They had with them ſome javelins, rudely pointed with bone, with which they uſed to ſtrike ſeals, fiſh, and penguins. Their canoes were about 15 feet in length, three broad, and nearly the ſame meaſurement in depth. They were conſtructed with the bark of trees tacked together, either with the ſinews of ſome beaſt, or thongs cut out of a hide. A kind of ruſh was laid into the ſeams, and the out-ſide was ſmeared with reſin or gum, which prevented the water from ſoaking into the bark. To the bottom and ſides were ſewed tranſverſely 15 ſlender branches, bent into an arch; and ſome ſtrait pieces were placed croſs the top, from gunwale to gunwale, ſecurely laſhed at each end; but upon the whole the workmanſhip was very rough, nor had theſe people any thing among them, wherein there was the leaſt appearance of ingenuity. The Captain preſented them a hatchet or two, ſome beads, and a few other baubles, with which they departed, ſeemingly well ſatisfied, to the ſouthward. During our ſtay here, we ſent our boats as uſual in ſearch of anchoring places. Several ſmall coves were diſcovered, but moſt of them dangerous. Twenty-two of the ſailors belonging to one of the boats, ſtaying one night on an iſland, about 30 Indians landed, ran immediately to the boat, and began to make off with every thing they could carry away; the ſailors diſcovered what they were doing, and had but juſt time to prevent their depredations. When oppoſed, they went to their canoes, and armed themſelves with long poles and pointed javelins. They ſtood in a threatening attitude, and our people on the defenſive; but the latter parting with a few trifles to them, they became friends, and peace and harmony were again reſtored. From this time to the 30th, we had hard gales, and heavy ſeas, accompanied with hail, lightning, and rain. Nevertheleſs, the men were ſent frequently aſhore for exerciſe, which contributed not a little to their health, and by them we had almoſt a conſtant ſupply of muſcles and vegetables. On Monday the 30th, we improved the firſt interval of moderate weather, in drying the ſails, and airing the ſpare ones, which laſt we found much injured by the rats. We alſo repaired the fire-place of the Swallow in the ſame manner as we had done our own, and ſet up a back with lime made of burnt ſhells. This day we ſaw ſeveral canoes full of Indians, on the eaſt-ſide of the bay, and the next morning ſeveral came on board, and proved to be the ſame people which the boat's crew had ſeen on ſhore.

On the 1ſt of April, ſeveral other Indians came off to the ſhip, and brought with them ſeveral of the birds called race horſes, which ſome of our company purchaſed for a few trifles. They behaved very peaceably, and the Captain preſented them with ſeveral hatchets, and diſmiſſed them with a few toys as uſual. On the 2nd, eight Indians brought ſix of their children on board, whom the Captain gratified with bracelets and necklaces. Theſe people were exceedingly tender in the treatment of their children; and a circumſtance happened which proves that they are not leſs delicate in other reſpects. A boat was ordered on ſhore to get wood and water; at which time ſome of the Indians were on board, and others in their canoes along-ſide the ſhip: the latter eyed the boat attentively; and, on her putting off, called aloud to their companions, who, without ſpeaking, inſtantly handed down the children, and jumped into the canoes, which hurried after the boat, while the poor Indians cried in a moſt diſtreſsful tone. When our boat was near land, ſome women were ſeen among the rocks, to whom the Indians called aloud, and they all ran away; but the boat's crew having remarked their jealous fears, lay on their oars, to convince them that no injury was intended. The Indians landed, drew their canoes on ſhore, and haſtily followed the objects of their affections. This day the maſter of the Swallow, who had been ſent out to ſeek for anchoring places, returned with an account, that he had found three on the north ſhore, moſt of which were very good; one about four miles to the eaſtward of Cape Providence, another under the eaſt-ſide of Cape Tamar, and a third about four miles to the eaſtward of it; but it muſt be obſerved, that the ground under Cape Providence is rocky. Our men at this time began to be troubled with fluxes, on which account, at the requeſt of our ſurgeon, it was ordered, that no more muſcles (which had been found continually in abundance) ſhould be brought on board. On Friday the 10th, we made ſail in company with the Swallow. At noon, Cape Providence bore N. N. W. diſtant five miles. At four P. M. Cape Tamar bore N. W. by W. half W. diſtant three leagues, and Cape Pillar W. diſtant ten leagues. Cape Upright bore E. S. E. half S. diſtant three leagues. On the 11th, having ſteered W. half N. all night, we found, at ſix o'clock, A. M. that we had run 38 miles by the log. At this time Cape Pillar bearing S. W. diſtant half a mile, the Swallow was about three miles aſtern of us, and being but little wind, we were obliged to croud all the ſail we could, to get without the ſtrait's mouth. The Captain, at eleven o'clock, would have ſhortened ſail for our conſort, but it was not in our power, for it was abſolutely neceſſary for us to carry ſail, in order to clear the iſles of Direction. Soon after we loſt ſight of the Swallow, and ſaw her not again during the remainder of our voyage. At noon our latitude by obſervation was 52 deg. 38 min. and our longitude by computation 76 deg. weſt from London. The iſlands of Direction now bore north 21 weſt, diſtant three leagues. St. Paul's Cupola, and Cape Victory in one, north, diſtant ſeven leagues, and Cape Pillar eaſt, diſtant ſix leagues. Happy did we now think ourſelves in having cleared the Straits of Magellan, a dreary and inhoſpitable region, in which we had contended with innumerable difficulties, and eſcaped moſt imminent dangers, in a paſſage of almoſt four months, namely, from December the 17th, 1766, to the 11th of April, 1767.

Our Journaliſt now proceeds to a deſcription of the places in which the ſhips anchored, during their paſſage through the ſtraits, from whence we have extracted ſuch particulars, as may be of uſe to future navigators, furniſh real improvement to thoſe of our ſubſcribers who belong to his majeſty's navy, and afford an agreeable entertainment to our various and numerous claſſes of readers.

(1.) Cape Virgin Mary. This is a ſteep white cliff, which ſomewhat reſembles the South Foreland. By obſervation and our reckoning, it lies in latitude 52 deg. 24 min. ſouth, and in 68 deg. 22 min. weſt longitude from London. Under this cape, when the wind is weſterly, is a good harbour, but we ſaw no appearance either of wood or water. About a mile from the ſhore, you may anchor in ten fathom water, with coarſe ſandy ground. (2.) Poſſeſſion Bay. The point of this lies in latitude 52 deg. 23 min. ſouth, and in 68 deg. 57 min. weſt longitude. Here the ſoundings are very irregular, but the ground is throughout a fine ſoft mud and clay. The landing appeared to be good, but we could ſee no ſigns of either wood or water. It is neceſſary, in ſailing into this bay, to give the point a good birth, there being a reef that runs about a mile right off it. (3.) Port Famine. This is an excellent bay, capacious enough for many ſhips to moor therein with the utmoſt ſafety. Wood and water are to be procured with eaſe;

geeſe, ducks, teal, &c. are in great plenty, and fiſh in abundance. It is ſituated in latitude 53 deg. 42 min. ſouth, and 71 deg. 28 min. weſt longitude. We moored in nine fathom, having brought Cape St. Anne N. E. by E. and the beautiful river Sedger, (of which we have given a particular deſcription in the hiſtory of Commodore Byron's voyage) S. half W. which perhaps is the moſt eligible ſituation, though the whole bay is good ground. In the year 1581, the Spaniards built a town here, which they named Philipville, and left in it a colony of 400 perſons. Seventy-ſix of this number were ſtarved, and of the remainder, 23 proceeded in ſearch of the river Plata, and moſt probably periſhed, as no tidings were ever heard of them. When our celebrated navigator Sir William Cavendiſh arrived at this place in 1587, he found the only one that remained of thoſe unfortunate adventurers, named Hernando, and brought him to England. From their melancholy fate, Sir William named the bay, Port Famine. (4.) Cape Holland Bay. This lies in latitude 53 deg. 57 min. and in 72 deg. 34 min. weſt longitude. Here is a fine rivulet, and cloſe under the cape a large river, navigable for boats many miles; and the ſhore affords plenty of fire wood. We caught very little fiſh, but found plenty of muſcles and limpets. The adjacent country produces plenty of cranberries and wild celery. We killed ſome geeſe, ducks, teal, and race-horſes, yet the birds are not numerous. There is no danger in ſailing into this bay, and in every part thereof is good anchoring ground. (5.) Cape Gallant Bay. This is ſituated in 53. deg. 50 min. ſouth latitude, and 73 deg. 9 min. weſt longitude. The landing is good; the tide very irregular; and the beſt anchoring is on the eaſt-ſide, where we found from 6 to 10 fathoms. Here are abundance of wood, vegetables, and fiſh, with good watering from two rivers. In this bay, which may be entered with great ſafety, there is a ſpacious lagoon, where a fleet of ſhips may moor in perfect ſecurity. The lagoon abounds with wild fowl, and we found in, and about it, wild celery, muſcles, and limpets in plenty. (6.) Elizabeth Bay. Its latitude is 53 deg. 43 min. ſouth, and its longitude 73 deg. 24 min weſt. Sufficient quantities of wood may be procured here for the uſe of ſhips, and they will find good watering at a ſmall river. We gathered a little celery and a few cranberries, but met with neither fiſh nor fowl. The beſt anchorage is at Paſſage Point, at half a mile diſtance, bearing S. E. and the river N. E. by E. diſtant three cables length; in this ſtation, a ſhoal, which may be known by the weeds, bears W. N. W. diſtant one cable's length: the ground is coarſe ſand and ſhells. At the entrance of this bay are two ſmall reefs, that appear above water. The moſt dangerous of the two is at the eaſt point of the bay, but this may eaſily be avoided, by keeping at the diſtance of about two cables length from the road. (7.) York Road. This lies in latitude 53 deg. 39 min. ſouth, and, by our account, 73 deg. 52 min. weſt longitude. The landing in all parts of this place is very good; and we found celery, cranberries, muſcles, limpets, wild fowl, and ſome fiſh, but not ſufficient to ſupply our ſhips company with a ſingle meal. About a mile up Bachelor's River is good watering, and plenty of wood all round the bay. From the Weſtern Point a reef runs off about a cable's length, which, when known, may eaſily be avoided. To anchor with ſafety in this bay, bring York Point E. S. E. Bachelor's River N. by W. half W. The reef N. W. half W. and St. Jerom's Sound W. N. W. at the diſtance of half a mile from the ſhore. The current here frequently ſets in three different directions; the water riſes and falls about eight feet; but the tide is irregular. (8.) Butler's Bay. This is ſituated in latitude 53 deg. 37 min. ſouth, and in 74 deg. 9 min. weſt longitude. It is not only ſmall, but entirely encircled with rocks, on which account we would caution every navigator againſt anchoring at this place, if he can poſſibly avoid it. Here are ſome rock fiſh, and a few wild fowl, but celery and cranberries are very ſcarce. (9.) Lion's Cove. The ſame may be ſaid of this as we have obſerved of the preceding bay; but though the water up a ſmall creek is good, here is no wood. The latitude is 53 deg. 26 min. ſouth; longitude, by our account, 74 deg. 25 min. weſt. (10.) Good Luck Bay. This is ſituated in latitude 53 deg. 23 min. and in 74 deg. 33 min. weſt longitude. Like ſeveral others, it is ſmall, and the rocks with which it is ſurrounded, render it very difficult of acceſs. We procured here a ſufficient quantity of freſh water, but very little wood. Not any kinds of refreſhments are to be expected at this place; indeed we caught only a few rock fiſh with hook and line. The ground is very coarſe, and the cable of our beſt bower anchor was ſo much rubbed, that we were obliged to condemn it, and bend a new one. Circumſtances may ariſe under which it may be thought good luck to get into this bay, but we thought it very good luck when we got out of it. (11.) Swallow Bay. This lies in latitude 53 deg. 29 min. ſouth, and in 74 deg. 35 min. weſt longitude. The entrance is narrow and rocky, but when once entered, it is very ſafe, being ſheltered from all winds. The rocks, by keeping a good look-out, may be eaſily avoided. As to the mountains that ſurround it they have a moſt horrid appearance, and ſeem to be deſerted by every thing that has life; and we found no ſupply of proviſions, except a few rock fiſh and muſcles. The landing is very good, and the tide riſes and falls between four and five feet. (12) Upright Bay. This is in latitude 53 deg. 8 min. ſouth, longitude 75 deg. 35 min. weſt. The entrance is very ſafe, and the water excellent. A ſufficiency of wood may be procured for ſtock, but proviſions are rather ſcarce. The landing is not good, the tide very irregular; and the water riſes and falls above five feet. Beſides theſe 12 bays, there are three others, a little beyond Cape Shut-up, which we named River Bay, Lodging Bay, and Wallis's Bay, the laſt of which is the beſt. Alſo between Elizabeth Bay and York Road lies Muſcle Bay, wherein is exceeding good anchorage with a weſterly wind. The ground of Chance Bay is very rocky, and therefore to be avoided. Not far from Cape Quod, to the eaſtward, lies Iſland Bay, which is by no means an eligible ſituation for ſhipping. There is likewiſe a bay with good anchorage, oppoſite to York Road; and another to the eaſtward of Cape Croſs-tide, but this latter one will hold only a ſingle ſhip. Between Cape Croſs and St. David's Head lies St. David's Sound, on the ſouth-ſide of which we found a bank of coarſe ſand and ſhells, with a depth of water from 19 to 30 fathom, where a ſhip might anchor in caſe of neceſſity; and the maſter of the Swallow found a very good ſmall bay a little to the eaſtward of St. David's Head.

C H A P. II.

The Dolphin proceeds on her voyage from the ſtrait to the weſtward Several iſlands diſcovered in the South Sea, namely --Whitſun Iſland—Queen Charlotte's—Egmont—Glouceſter—Cumberland—Prince William Henry's—Oſnaburgh—King George the Third's, called by the natives Otaheite, with a particular, full, and complete deſcription of thoſe iſlands—The cuſtoms, manners, &c. of the natives—The ſeveral incidents which happened on board the ſhip and aſhore—Particularly, a very circumſtantial account of the inhabitants of Otaheite—Their arts, trade, domeſtic life, and character.

An expedition to diſcover the inland part of the country—And a variety of incidents and tranſactions, till we quitted the iſland to continue our voyage.

ON Sunday the 12th of April 1767, after having cleared the ſtrait, we held on our courſe to the weſtward. Here it may be proper to obſerve, that, as all the hard gales by which we ſuffered, blew from the weſtward, we think it adviſeable to ſtand about 100 leagues and more to the weſtward, after ſailing out of the Strait of Magellan, that the ſhip may not be endangered on a lee-ſhore, which at preſent is wholly unknown. As we continued our courſe a number of ſheerwaters, pintadoes, gannets, and other birds, flew about the ſhip; the upper works of which being open, and the cloaths and bedding continually wet, the ſailors in a few days were attacked with fevers; and having a continuation of ſtrong gales, hazy weather, and heavy ſeas, we were frequently brought under our courſes. On Wedneſday the 22nd, we obſerved in latitude 42 deg. 24 min. ſouth, and in 95 deg. 46 min. weſt longitude; and on Monday the 27th at noon, we found our latitude to be 36 deg. 54 min. ſouth, and our longitude, by account, 100 deg. weſt from London. This day being fair, and the weather moderate, the ſick were brought on deck, to whom were given ſalop, and portable ſoup, in which wheat had been boiled. The violent gales returned, ſo that the beds were again wet through, and it was feared that the ſhips would loſe her maſts; we therefore began to think of altering our courſe, in hope of better weather; and the rather, as the number of our ſick encreaſed ſo faſt, that there was danger of ſoon wanting hands to navigate the veſſel. On Monday the 4th of May, by obſervation, we found ourſelves in latitude 28 deg, 20 min. ſouth; and in 96 deg. 21 min. weſt longitude. On the 8th, we ſaw ſeveral ſheerwaters and ſea-ſwallows; and on Tueſday the 12th, we obſerved the ſame kind of birds, and ſome porpoiſes about the ſhip. On the 14th, we ſaw the appearance of what we imagined to be high land, towards which a flock of brown birds were obſerved to fly; we therefore ſteered all night for this ſuppoſed land; but at day-break could ſee no ſigns of it. As the weather now became moderate, we found our people recovered very faſt; and the carpenters were buſied in caulking the upper works of the ſhip, and repairing the boats. On the 15th, our latitude was 24 deg. 50 min. ſouth, and our longitude 106 deg. weſt. On Monday the 18th, a ſheep, by the Captain's order, was diſtributed among our people who were ſick and recovering. On Thurſday the 21ſt we ſaw a number of flying fiſh; and on the 22nd ſome bonettas, dolphins, and flying-fiſh. About this time, ſuch of the ſeamen on board as had been recovering from colds and fevers, began to be attacked by the ſcurvy, upon which, at the ſurgeon's repreſentation, wine was ſerved to them; wort was alſo made from malt for their uſe; and each of the crew had half a pint of pickled cabbage every day, notwithſtanding which the men began to look very ſickly, and to fall a prey to the ſcurvy very faſt; to repel which they had wine ſerved inſtead of ſpirits, with plenty of ſweet wort and ſalop: portable ſoup was boiled in their peas and oatmeal; their births and cloaths were kept conſtantly clean; the hammocks were every day brought upon deck at eight o'clock in the morning, and carried down at four in the afternoon; ſome or other of the beds and hammocks were waſhed daily: the ſhip's water was rendered wholeſome by ventilation, and every part between decks was cleanſed with vinegar. This day our latitude was 20 deg. 18 min. ſouth, and 111 deg. weſt longitude. On Tueſday the 26th, we ſaw two grampuſes; and on the 27th, a variety of birds, one of which was taken for a land bird, and reſembled a ſwallow. On the 31ſt, we found by obſervation our latitude to be 29 deg. 38 min. ſouth, longitude 127 deg. 45 min. weſt.

On Monday the 1ſt of June, we ſaw ſeveral men of war-birds, and, on the 3rd ſome gannets; and, the weather being at this time very various, we conceived hopes that we drew near to land. On the 4th, a turtle ſwam cloſe by the ſhip, and the next day a great variety of birds were ſeen. On Saturday the 6th, the long wiſhed-for land became viſible from the maſt-head, the man crying out "Land in the north-weſt." This in the courſe of the day proved to be a low iſland, diſtant about ſix leagues. When within five miles of this iſland, we diſcovered a ſecond to the W. N. W. The firſt lieutenant being at this time very ill, Mr. Furneaux, the ſecond lieutenant was ſent with two boats to the firſt iſland, the crews of each being well provided with arms. When the boats came near the iſland, two canoes were obſerved to put off to the adjacent one; and no inhabitants were ſeen to remain where our party landed. Here ſeveral cocoa-nuts, and a large quantity of ſcurvy-graſs were obtained, which proved a valuable acquiſition to the ſick, and a grateful refreſhment to thoſe in health. They returned in the evening to the ſhip, bringing with them ſome fiſh-hooks, which the iſlanders had formed of oyſter-ſhells. In this excurſion they diſcovered three huts, ſupported on poſts, and open all round, but thatched with cocoa-nut and palm leaves. As no anchorage could be found, and the whole iſland was encompaſſed with rocks and breakers, Captain Wallis reſolved to ſteer for the other iſland, giving the name of Whitſun Iſland to this, becauſe it was diſcovered on Whitſunday's Eve. Having approached the other iſland, Mr. Furneaux was again ſent off with the boats, manned and armed. At this time about 50 of the natives were ſeen running about with fire-brands in their hands. Mr. Furneaux was inſtructed to ſteer to that part of the ſhore, where the natives had been ſeen, to avoid giving offence. When Mr. Furneaux drew near with the boats to the ſhore, the natives put themſelves in a poſture of defence, with their pikes; but the lieutenant making ſigns of amity, and expoſing to view a few trinkets, ſome of the Indians walked into the water: to whom it was hinted, that ſome cocoa-nuts and water would be acceptable; which was no ſooner underſtood, than they ventured with a ſmall quantity of each to the boats; and received nails and other trifles in exchange. While bartering with them, one of the Indians ſtole a ſilk handkerchief with its contents, but the thief could by no means be diſcovered.

On Monday the 8th, Mr. Furneaux was again diſpatched with the boats, and received orders from Captain Wallis to land, if he could do it without offending the natives. As this party drew near to the ſhore, they obſerved ſeven large canoes, each with two maſts, lying ready for the Indians to embark in them. Theſe having made ſigns to the crew to proceed higher up, they complied, and immediately the Indians embarked on board the ſeven large canoes and quitted the ſpot, being joined by two canoes at another part of the iſland. Theſe latter the Indians ſteered in a direction of W. S. W. They were divided, two being brought along-ſide of each other, and faſtened together, at the diſtance of about three feet aſunder, by croſs beams, paſſing from the larboard gunwale of one to the ſtarboard gunwale of the other, in the middle and near each end. They appeared to be 30 feet in length, four in breadth, and three in depth. The people had long black hair hanging over their ſhoulders, of a dark complexion, of a middle ſize, and were dreſſed in a kind of matting made faſt round the middle. The women are beautiful, and the men juſtly proportioned. In the afternoon the ſecond lieutenant being again ſent on ſhore, the Captain commanded him to take poſſeſſion of the iſland in the king's name, and to call it Queen Charlotte's Iſland. The boats returned loaded with cocoa-nuts and ſcurvy-graſs, after having found two wells of excellent water. Proviſions for a week were now allotted for a mate and 20 men, who were left on ſhore to fill water; the ſick were landed for the benefit of the air; and a number of hands were appointed to climb the cocoa-trees and gather the nuts, which in our ſituation were very deſirable. The water was brought on board on the 10th, but the cocoa-nuts and vegetables, which the cutter was bringing off, were loſt by the rolling of the waves, that almoſt filled her with water. Afterwards they made an iſland where were found ſeveral tools, reſembling adzes, awls, and chiſſels, which were formed of ſhells and ſtones. The dead bodies were not buried, but left under a kind of canopy, to decay above ground. This day the ſhip ſailed again, after taking poſſeſſion of the iſlands for the king; in teſtimony of which we left a flag flying, and carved his majeſty's name on a piece of wood, and on the bark of ſeveral trees. We left ſhillings, ſixpences, halfpence, bottles, nails, hatchets, and other things for the uſe of the natives. It was remarkable, that on this iſland we found the very people who had fled from Queen Charlotte's Iſland, with ſeveral others, in the whole near 100. It lies in 19 deg. 20 min. ſouth latitude, and 138 deg. 30 min. weſt longitude, and received the name of Egmont Iſland. On Thurſday the 11th, we obſerved about 16 perſons on an iſland which was called Glouceſter Iſland; but as it was ſurrounded with rocks and breakers, we did not attempt to land. This day we likewiſe diſcovered another, which was called Cumberland Iſland: and, on the day following, a third, which received the name of Prince William Henry's Iſland.

On Wedneſday the 17th, we again diſcovered land, and at ten at night ſaw a light, which convinced us that it was inhabited, and remarked, that there were plenty of cocoa-trees, a certain proof of there being no want of water. Mr. Furneaux was ſent on ſhore the day following, with inſtructions to exchange ſome toys for ſuch things as the iſland produced. He ſaw a great number of the people, but could find no place where the ſhip might anchor. Some of the natives, who had white ſticks in their hands, appeared to have an authority over the reſt. While the lieutenant was trafficking with them, an Indian diving into the water, ſeized the grappling of the boat, while his companions on ſhore laid hold of the rope by which ſhe was faſtened, and attempted to draw her into the ſurf, but their endeavours were fruſtrated by the firing of a muſquet, on which they all let go their hold. Theſe Indians were dreſſed in a kind of cloth, a piece of which was brought to the ſhip. It was concluded from the number of the people ſeen, and their having ſome large double canoes on the ſhore, that there were larger iſlands at no great diſtance: the Captain, therefore, having named this place Oſnaburgh Iſland, made ſail and ſoon diſcovering high-land, came to an anchor, becauſe the weather was very foggy. The next morning early we ſaw land, diſtant four or five leagues; but, after having ſailed towards it ſome time, thought it prudent again to anchor, on account of the thickneſs of the fog; but it no ſooner cleared away, than we found the ſhip encompaſſed by a number of canoes, in which were many hundreds of people. Having approached the ſhip, they beheld it with wonder, and talked with great earneſtneſs. Some baubles were now ſhewn them, and ſigns were made for them to come on board, on which they rowed the canoes towards each other, and a general conſultation took place; at the concluſion of which they all ſurrounded the ſhip with an appearance of friendſhip, and one of them delivered an oration, at the concluſion of which he threw into the ſea the branch of a plantain-tree, which he had held in his hand. This being done, a young Indian, of more apparent courage than the reſt, ventured on board the ſhip. The Captain would have given him ſome baubles, but he refuſed the acceptance of them till thoſe in the canoes came along-ſide, and, having held a conſultation, threw on board ſeveral branches of the plantain-tree. Others now ventured on board; but it was remarked, that they all got into the ſhip at ſome improper part, not one of them, even by accident, finding the right place of aſcent. A goat belonging to the ſhip, having run his horns againſt the back of one of the Indians, he looked round with ſurprize, and ſeeing the animal ready to renew the attack he ſprang over the ſhip's ſide, and was inſtantly followed by all his countrymen. Their terror, however, ſoon ſubſided, and they returned to the ſhip; and the ſheep, hogs, and poultry being ſhewn them, they intimated that they poſſeſſed the two latter ſpecies. The Captain then gave them nails and other trifles, and made ſigns that he wanted hogs, fowls, and fruit; but they could not comprehend him. They were detected in ſeveral attempts to take away any thing they could lay hold of; but one of them at length jumped overboard with a laced hat which he had ſnatched from one of the officers.

The interior parts of the iſland abound in hills, cloathed with timber-trees, above them are high peaks, from which large rivers deſcend to the ſea; the houſes, when ſeen at a diſtance, reſemble barns, having no ſhelter but a roof; the land towards the ſea is level, and produces the cocoa-nut, with a variety of other fruits, and the face of the whole country is pictureſque beyond deſcription. We now ſailed along the ſhore, while the canoes, which could not keep pace with us, made towards the land. In the afternoon the ſhip brought to, and the boats being ſent to ſound a bay that promiſed good anchorage, the Indian canoes flocked round them. The Captain, apprehenſive that their deſigns were hoſtile, made a ſignal for the boats to return to the ſhip, and fired a gun over the heads of the Indians. Though they were frightened at the report, they attempted to prevent the return of the cutter; but ſhe eaſily outſailed them. This being obſerved by ſome canoes in a different ſtation, they intercepted her, and wounded ſome of her people with ſtones, which occaſioned the firing a muſquet, and ſome ſhot were lodged in the ſhoulder of the man who began the attack; which the Indians obſerving, they all made off with the utmoſt precipitation. The boats having reached the ſhip, preparations were made for ſailing, but a large canoe making towards her at a great rate, it was reſolved to wait the event of her arrival; on which an Indian, making a ſpeech, threw a plantain branch on board, and the Captain returned the compliment of peace, by giving them a branch, which had been left on board by the other Indians; ſome toys being likewiſe given them, they departed very well ſatisfied. We now ſailed, and the next morning were off a peak of land which was almoſt covered with the natives and their houſes. On the 21ſt the ſhip anchored, and ſeveral canoes came along-ſide of her, bringing a large quantity of fruit, with fowls and hogs, for which they received nails and toys in exchange.

The boats having been ſent to ſound along the coaſt, were followed by large double canoes, three of which ran at the cutter, ſtaved in her quarter, and otherwiſe damaged her, the Indians at the ſame time, armed with clubs, endeavouring to board her; the crew now fired, and wounded one man dangerouſly, and killing another, they both fell into the ſea, whither their companions dived after them, and got them into the canoe. They now tried if they could ſtand or ſit, but as one was quite dead, they laid him at the bottom of the canoe, and the wounded man was ſupported in a ſitting poſture. The ſhip's boats kept on their way, while ſome of the canoes went on ſhore, and others returned to the ſhip to renew their merchandiſe. While the boats continued out in ſeveral ſoundings, the natives ſwam off to them with water and fruit. The women were particularly urgent for the ſailors to land, and, putting off all their cloaths, gave hints, of the moſt indelicate nature, how acceptable their company would be. The boats being ſent on ſhore with ſome ſmall caſks to get water, the Indians filled two of them, and kept all the reſt for their trouble. When the boats came off, the ſhore was crowded with thouſands of men, women, and children. During this time, ſeveral canoes remained along-ſide the ſhip, but the Captain would not permit a ſingle Indian to go on board, as there was no guarding againſt their artful diſpoſitions.

On Monday the 22nd, the natives brought hogs, poultry, and fruit to the ſhip, which they bartered for knives and other things, ſo that the whole crew was ſupplied with meat for two days, by means of this traffic. The boats having been this day ſent for water, every inducement was uſed by the inhabitants to perſuade them to land, and the behaviour of the women was ſtill more laſcivious than before. Having procured a ſmall quantity of water, the boats put off: on which the women ſhouted aloud, pelted them with apples and bananas, and ſhewed every mark of contempt and deteſtation. On the 23rd, we made ſail, with intention to anchor off the watering-place, but, the man at the maſt-head diſcovering a bay a few miles to the leeward, we immediately ſtood for it. The boats which were a-head, making a ſignal for an anchorage, we prepared to bring to; but when the ſhip had almoſt reached the place, ſhe ſuddenly ſtruck, and her head remained immoveable, fixed on a coral rock; in which ſituation ſhe remained near an hour, when ſhe was happily relieved by a breeze from the ſhore. During the whole time that ſhe was in danger of being wrecked, ſhe was encompaſſed by hundreds of Indians in their canoes; but not one of them attempted to board her. The Dolphin was now piloted round a reef, into an harbour, where ſhe was moored. The maſter was then ſent to ſound the bay, and found ſafe anchorage in every part of it. In the mean time ſome ſmall canoes brought proviſions on board; but as the ſhore was crowded with large canoes, filled with men, the Captain loaded and primed his guns, ſupplied his boats with muſqueteers, and kept a number of men under arms.

On Wedneſday the 24th, the ſhip ſailed up the harbour, and many canoes followed us, bringing proviſions, which were exchanged for nails, knives, &c. A number of very large canoes advanced in the evening, laden with ſtones, on which the Captain ordered the ſtricteſt watch to be kept. At length ſome canoes came off, which had on board a number of women, who being brought almoſt under the ſhip, began to practiſe thoſe arts of indelicacy already mentioned. During this ſingular exhibition the large canoes came round the ſhip, ſome of the Indians playing on a kind of a flute, others ſinging, and the reſt blowing a ſort of ſhells. Soon after a large canoe advanced, in which was an awning; and on the top of it ſat one of the natives, holding ſome yellow and red feathers in his hands. The Captain having conſented to his coming along-ſide, he delivered the feathers, and while a preſent was preparing for him, he but back from the ſhip, and threw the branch of a cocoa-tree in the air. This was, doubtleſs, the ſignal for an onſet, for there was an inſtant ſhout from all the canoes, which, approaching the ſhip, poured volleys of ſtones into every part of her. On this two guns, loaded with ſmall ſhot, were fired, and the people on guard diſcharged their muſquets. The number of Indians round the ſhip were full 2000, and though they were at firſt diſconcerted, they ſoon recovered their ſpirits, and renewed the attack. Thouſands of the Indians were now obſerved on ſhore, embarking as faſt as the canoes could bring them off: orders were therefore given for firing the cannon, ſome of which were brought to bear upon the ſhore. This firing put a ſtop to all hoſtilities on the part of the Indians, for a ſmall time; but the ſcattered canoes ſoon got together again, and, having hoiſted white ſtreamers, advanced, and threw ſtones of two pound weight from ſlings, by which a number of the ſeamen were wounded. At this time ſeveral canoes approached the bow of the ſhip, from whence no ſhot had been yet diſcharged. In one of theſe was an Indian, who appeared to have an authority over the reſt, a gun was therefore levelled at his canoe, the ſhot of which ſplit it in two pieces. This put an end to the conteſt, the canoes rowed off with the utmoſt ſpeed, and the people on ſhore ran and concealed themſelves behind the hills.

After this ſkirmiſh we ſailed for our intended anchoring place, and moored the ſhip within a little diſtance of a fine river. Some of our people who had been ſent to ſurvey the ſhore, returned the next morning with an account that they had found good freſh water (produced from the river above-mentioned) but that there was not a canoe to be ſeen. Mr. Furneaux was ſent the ſame day with all the boats, well manned and armed, and a number of marines, having orders to land his men under cover of the ſhip and boats. This being accordingly effected, he turned a piece of turf, and having hoiſted a broad pendant upon a ſtaff, took poſſeſſion of the iſle for his Britannic majeſty, naming it King George the Third's Iſland. Some rum being then mixed with the river water, the king's health was drank by every perſon preſent. During the performance of this ceremony, two old men were ſeen on the oppoſite ſide of the river, who put themſelves in a ſupplicating poſture, and appeared to be much terrified. On this, the Engliſh made ſigns to them to croſs the river. One of them obeying the ſignal came over, and crawled on his hands and knees towards the lieutenant, who ſhewed him ſome ſtones that had been thrown at the veſſel, but took pains at the ſame time, to intimate, that no injury ſhould be done to the Indians, if they were not the aggreſſors. He then cauſed ſome hatchets to be produced, giving the Indian to underſtand that his people would be glad to exchange them for various kinds of proviſions. Some trifles were alſo given to this old man, who expreſſed his gratitude by his geſtures, and by dancing round the flag-ſtaff, but when they ſaw the pendant ſhaken by the wind, they ran back, with ſigns of fear and ſurpriſe. When they had recovered themſelves from their fright, they brought two hogs which they laid down, and began dancing round the pendant as before. The hogs were afterwards put into a canoe, which the old Indian rowed towards the ſhip; and when he came along-ſide of her, pronounced a ſerious oration, in the courſe of which he delivered a number of plantain leaves, (one at a time, ſomewhat in the manner of the North Americans, cloſing their periods with belts of wampum.) After this he rowed back again, refuſing at that time to accept of any preſents. The noiſe of drums and other inſtruments was heard this night, and the next morning it was obſerved that the pendant was taken away, and the natives had quitted the coaſt. While the caſks were filling with water, the old Indian already mentioned, croſſed the river, and brought the Engliſh ſome fowls and fruits. At this time the Captain was ill, but though he was confined to the veſſel, he had remarked from thence by the help of glaſſes what was doing on ſhore. In the courſe of his obſervations, he perceived many of the natives creeping behind the buſhes towards the watering-place, at the ſame time that vaſt numbers advanced through the woods, and a large party came down the hill in view; all tending to the ſame quarter. Two diviſions of canoes were beſides ſeen making round the oppoſite ſides of the bay. As the lieutenant had likewiſe obſerved the threatened danger, he got his people on board the boats; previous to which he had ſent the old Indian to intimate to his countrymen that the crew wanted nothing but water, and to prevail on them to keep at a proper diſtance whilſt it was filling; but ſo far was this from having the proper effect, that the iſlanders made a prize of the caſks, and thoſe at ſome diſtance from the watering-place, went forward with all expedition, in order to keep pace with the canoes, which rowed along very ſwiftly. At the ſame time a number of women and children took their ſtation on a hill, which commanded a proſpect of the ſhipping. The canoes drawing near that part of the bay were the veſſel was at anchor, took in many from the ſhore who were laden with bags filled with ſtones. Then they rowed towards the ſhip, on which orders were given to fire on the firſt party that approached in the canoes, which being done, the Indians made off frightened and aſtoniſhed. Captain Wallis being now reſolved that this action ſhould put an end to all diſputes, incenſed at the behaviour of the natives, commanded his people to fire firſt into the wood, and afterwards towards the hill, whither the iſlanders had retreated; when finding at what a diſtance the guns could reach them, they diſperſed and diſappeared. After this, the boats were ſent out, a ſtrong guard being appointed to attend the carpenters, who, according to orders, deſtroyed all the Indian canoes which could be met with. At length a ſmall party of the natives came to the beach, ſtuck up ſome ſmall branches of trees, as if for tokens, and then retreated to the woods; however they came again, and brought ſome hogs and dogs with their legs tied, which they left on the ſhore, together with a quantity of ſuch cloth as they wore, all which they made ſigns to the ſailors to take away. On this, a boat was diſpatched which conveyed the hogs on board, but left behind the other articles; hatchets and nails were alſo depoſited on the beach in return for theſe preſents, but the Indians would by no means accept them till the cloth was taken away.

On Saturday the 27th, a party being employed in filling water, the old Indian was ſeen on the oppoſite ſide of the river. After having delivered an oration in his manner, he came over, when the officer referred him to the bags and ſtones which had been brought down, and uſed his endeavours to convince him that the Engliſh in the late action had acted only from motives of ſelf defence. The old man, however, ſeemed to think his countrymen much aggrieved, and with great openneſs intimated his opinion. However at laſt he ſuffered himſelf to be reconciled, ſhook hands with the lieutenant, and accepted ſome preſents from him. It was then hinted to him that it would be beſt for the people of the iſland to appear only in ſmall parties for the future, with which terms the Indian appeared ſatisfied, and an advantageous traffic was afterwards eſtabliſhed with the natives. Matters being thus ſettled, the ſick were ſent on ſhore, and were lodged, under the care of the ſurgeon, in tents near the watering place. This gentleman ſhooting a wild duck, it dropped on the oppoſite ſide of the river, in the preſence of ſome Indians, who fled directly; but ſtopping within a ſhort ſpace, one of them was at laſt perſuaded to bring the duck over, which he laid at the ſurgeon's feet, but, at the ſame time, the agitation of his mind was viſible in his countenance. Three ducks were killed by a ſecond ſhot, and the natives were by this time poſſeſſed with ſuch a notion of the effects of fire-arms, as whilſt it raiſed their admiration, was ſuppoſed to contribute in a great meaſure to their good behaviour towards the Engliſh during their ſtay in theſe parts, though there might be another reaſon aſſigned for this before their departure, as will be apparent in the ſequel. The gunner was now appointed to manage all affairs of trade between the Indians and the ſailors, in order to prevent quarrelling and pilfering. This was a judicious choice; the natives ſometimes ſtole certain trifles, but immediate reſtitution was made on the ſight of a gun. Beſides, the old Indian made himſelf very ſerviceable in recovering any thing that might have been taken away. In particular, an Indian ſwam one day over the river, and pilfered a hatchet, on which the gunner making preparations, as if he meant to go in ſearch of him, the goods were reſtored by the old man's means, and the offender was alſo delivered up to the gunner. Though he had committed other robberies, yet the Captain diſcharged him; and all his puniſhment conſiſted in his terrible apprehenſions. Being reſtored to his countrymen, he was conducted to the woods in the midſt of their ſhouts of applauſe. This man had the gratitude to bring a roaſted hog and ſome bread fruit to the gunner next day, as an acknowledgement for the lenity ſhewn him. The Captain, firſt lieutenant, and purſer, were at this time very ill; ſo that the charge of the veſſel, and the care of the ſick, were committed to Mr. Furneaux, the ſecond lieutenant, who diſcharged his duty with zeal and fidelity; and fruit, fowls, and freſh pork, were procured in ſuch plenty that at the end of fourteen days almoſt every man had perfectly recovered his health. A piece of ſalt-petre, of the ſize of a ſmall egg, had been found on the 25th on the ſhore; but whether it was brought from the ſhip or not, could not be learned, after the moſt diligent enquiry; but however, no other piece was found. On the 2nd of July, we began to want fruit and freſh meat, owing to the abſence of the old Indian, but we had ſtill a ſufficient ſupply for the ſick. On the 3rd, the ſhip's bottom was examined, when its condition was found to be nearly the ſame as when ſhe left England. This day a ſhark was caught, which proved an acceptable preſent to the natives. The old Indian, who had viſited the interior parts of the iſland in queſt of proviſions, returned on the 5th, and brought with him a roaſted hog as a preſent for the Captain, who in return, gave him a looking-glaſs, an iron pot, &c. His return was ſoon followed by ſome of the natives, who had never yet viſited the market, and who brought ſome hogs that were larger than any yet purchaſed. Another ſort of traffic was now eſtabliſhed between the Indian girls and the ſailors. The price of a female's favours was a nail or two; but as the ſeamen could not always get at the nails, they drew them out of ſeveral parts of the ſhip; nor could the offenders be diſcovered by the ſtricteſt enquiry. The damage done to the veſſel might have been eaſily repaired; but a worſe conſequence aroſe from this traffic; for on the gunner's offering ſmall nails for hogs, the Indians produced large ſpikes, demanding ſuch as thoſe. Some of the men made uſe of a particular device to gratify their paſſions; for when they could procure no more nails, they cut lead into the ſhape of them, and paſſed thoſe pieces on their unſuſpecting paramours. When the Indians diſcovered the fraud, they demanded nails for the lead; but this juſt demand could not be granted, becauſe it would have promoted the ſtealing of lead, and likewiſe injured the traffic with iron. In conſequence of their connection with the women, the ſailors became ſo impatient of controul, that the articles of war were read, to awe them into obedience; and a corporal of marines was ſeverely puniſhed for ſtriking the maſter at arms. The Captain's health being nearly reſtored, he went in his boat to ſurvey the iſland, which he found extremely delightful, and every where well peopled.

On Wedneſday the 8th, the wood-cutters were entertained in a friendly manner by certain Indians, who ſeemed to be of a rank above thoſe they had yet ſeen, and ſome of theſe viſiting the Captain, he laid before them a thirty-ſix-ſhilling piece, a guinea, a crown-piece, a dollar, ſome ſhillings, ſome new half-pence, and two large nails, intimating that they might take their choice, when they eagerly ſeized the nails, and then took a few half-pence, but left all the other pieces untouched. The Indians now refuſed to ſupply the market, unleſs they could get large nails in exchange; the Captain therefore ordered the ſhip to be ſearched, when it was found that almoſt all the hammock-nails were ſtolen, and great numbers drawn from different places; on which every man was ordered before the Captain, who told them, that not a man ſhould go on ſhore till the thieves were diſcovered; but no good conſequence aroſe from his threats, at that time. Three days after, the gunner conducted to the ſhip a lady of an agreeable face, and portly mien, whoſe age ſeemed to be upwards of forty. This lady had but lately arrived in that part of the iſland, and the gunner obſerving that ſhe ſeemed to have great authority, preſented her with ſome toys; on which ſhe invited him to her houſe, and gave him ſome fine hogs. She was afterwards taken on board, at her own deſire. Her whole behaviour ſhewed her to be a woman of fine ſenſe and ſuperior rank; the Captain preſented her with a looking-glaſs and ſome toys, and gave her a handſome blue mantle, which he tied round her with ribbands. As ſhe then intimated that ſhe ſhould be glad to ſee him on ſhore, he ſignified his intention of viſiting her the next day. Accordingly, on Saturday the 12th, Captain Wallis went on ſhore, where ſhe met him, attended by a numerous retinue, ſome of whom ſhe directed to carry the Captain, and others who had been ill, over the river, and from hence to her habitation, and the proceſſion was cloſed by a guard of marines and ſeamen. As they advanced, a great number of Indians crowded to ſee them; but, on a ſlight motion of her hand, they made room for the proceſſion to paſs. When they drew near her dwelling, many perſons of both ſexes advanced to meet her, whom ſhe cauſed to kiſs the Captain's hand, while ſhe ſignified that they were related to her. Her houſe was 320 feet in length, and about 40 in breadth. The roof, which was covered with the leaves of palm-tree, was ſupported by a row of pillars on each ſide, and another in the middle. The higheſt part of the thatch on the inſide, was 30 feet from the ground, and the ſpace between the ſides of the building and the edge of the roof, which was about 12 feet, was left open. The Captain, lieutenant, and purſer, being ſeated, the lady helped four of her female attendants to pull off the gentlemens coats, ſhoes, and ſtockings, which was aukwardly performed; the girls however ſmoothed down the ſkin, and rubbed it lightly with their hands for more than half an hour. The ſurgeon, being heated with walking, having pulled off his wig, one of the Indians ſcreamed out, and the eyes of the whole company were inſtantly fixed on the wonderful ſight, and they remained for ſome time fixed in ſurprize. After this, the queen ordered ſeveral bales of cloth to be brought out, which were the produce of the country, which were now deſtined for the dreſs of the Captain and his attendants. It was intended that the Captain ſhould be carried as he had been before, but as he refuſed the offer, the queen walked arm in arm with him, and lifted him like an infant over ſuch wet and dirty places as they came to in their way. She gave him a ſow big with young, and took her leave when ſhe had attended him to the beach. The gunner being diſpatched to wait on her the next day with a preſent of bill-hooks, hatchets, &c. found her buſied in entertaining ſome hundreds of the Indians who were regularly ſeated round her. She ordered a meſs to be provided for the gunner, which he found to be very agreeable, and ſuppoſed to be fowls and apples cut ſmall, and mixed with ſalt water. The proviſions which were diſtributed by the queen, were ſerved in cocoa-ſhells, which her ſervants brought in a ſort of trays. This lady took her ſeat ſomewhat above the reſt of the company, and when they were ſupplied, was fed by two women ſervants, ſtanding on each ſide of her. It was obſerved that ſhe received the Captain's preſents with an air of great ſatisfaction, and the ſupply of proviſions brought to market was now greater than ever, but the prices were raiſed, in a great meaſure owing to the commerce between the Engliſh ſeamen and the women of the iſland, of which we have taken notice; for which reaſon, beſides the orders given for reſtraining the people belonging to the crew from going on ſhore, it was alſo thought proper to prohibit any women from paſſing the river.

On Tueſday the 14th of this month, the gunner being on ſhore, diſcovered a woman on the oppoſite ſide of the river, who ſeemed to be weeping in a moſt piteous manner. Perceiving that he ſeemed to take notice of her apparent diſtreſs, ſhe ſent a youth to him, who having made a long oration, laid a branch of plantain at his feet, after which he went to fetch the woman, and alſo brought two hogs with him. The youth now made a long ſpeech, and, in the end, the gunner was given to underſtand that her huſband and three of her ſons, had been killed when the Engliſh fired on the Indians as above related. She fell ſpeechleſs on the ground after ſhe had told her tale of woe, and two lads that attended her, ſeemed alſo to be much affected. The gunner ſeeing her diſtreſſed ſituation endeavoured to conſole her, and at laſt ſhe became a little calmer, offered him her hand, and directed the hogs to be given him, nor would ſhe accept any thing in return for her preſent. A large party rowed round the iſland in their boats on the 15th, in order to take a view of it, and to purchaſe proviſions. Returning, they brought with them a number of hogs and fowls, and ſome cocoa-nuts. They found the iſland to be pleaſant, and abounding with the neceſſaries of life, and ſaw a great number of canoes, ſeveral of which were not quite finiſhed. The natives tools were formed of bones, ſtones, and ſhells. No other four footed beaſts but dogs and hogs, were ſeen. The inhabitants ate all their meat either baked or roaſted, as they neither had any veſſel wherein water could be boiled, nor ſeemed to entertain an idea that it could be heated by fire ſo as to anſwer any uſeful purpoſe. One morning, when the lady we have mentioned was at breakfaſt, an Indian that attended her having obſerved the cock of an urn turned, to fill a tea-pot, he alſo turned the cock, when the ſcalding water falling upon his hand, he cried out and jumped about the cabin, while the Indians were equally ſurprized and terrified at the circumſtance. The Captain received another viſit from the queen on the 17th, and the ſame day a great quantity of proviſions was purchaſed of ſome of the natives, whom we had never before dealt with. The next day the queen repeated her viſit, and made the Captain a preſent of two hogs, and the maſter attending her home, ſhe cloathed him in the dreſs of the country, as ſhe had done the Captain and his retinue. Our proviſions received an increaſe on the 19th, by the gunner's ſending on board a number of hogs and pigs, and abundance of fowls and fruits which he had purchaſed in the country. At this time an order was made that none of the ſailors ſhould be allowed to go on ſhore, except thoſe that were appointed to procure wood, water, or other neceſſaries.

On Tueſday the 21ſt, the queen came again to viſit Captain Wallis, and preſented him with ſome hogs. She likewiſe invited the Captain to her houſe, who attended her home with ſome of his officers. She tied wreaths of plaited hair round their hats, and on the Captain's ſhe put a tuft of feathers of various colours, by way of diſtinction. She came back with them as far as the water-ſide on their return, and ordered ſome preſents to be put into the boat at their departure. Captain Wallis having intimated before they put off, that he ſhould leave the iſland in ſeven days time, ſhe made ſigns that ſhe wiſhed him to ſtay 20 days; but he repeating his reſolution, ſhe burſt into a flood of tears. We were now ſo well ſtored with hogs and poultry, that our decks were covered with them, and as the men were more inclined to eat fruit than meat, they were killed faſter than they had been intended. The Captain preſented his friend the old Indian with ſome cloth and other articles, and ſent a number of things to the queen, among which were a cat with kitten, turkies, geeſe, hens, and ſeveral ſorts of garden ſeeds. This compliment was returned by a preſent of fruit and hogs. Peaſe and other European ſeeds were ſowed here, and the Captain ſtaid long enough to ſee them come up, and to obſerve that they were likely to thrive in the country.

On the 25th, a party was ſent on ſhore in order to examine the country, and a tent was erected for the purpoſe of obſerving an eclipſe of the ſun. When it was ended, the Captain took his teleſcope to the queen, who ſhewed a ſurpriſe ſcarcely to be expreſſed, on diſcovering ſeveral objects with which ſhe was well acquainted, but which were too diſtant to be ſeen without the help of a glaſs. He afterwards invited her and her retinue to come on board the ſhip, where an elegant dinner was prepared, of which all but the queen ate heartily; but ſhe would neither eat nor drink. On the return of the party from their excurſion, the queen was landed with her train. The Captain ſtill keeping in the ſame mind as to the time of his departure, ſhe wept again on being informed of his reſolution. Our people, who had been ſent out this day, reported, that on their firſt landing they called on the old Indian, that took him into their company, walking ſome on one ſide of the river, and ſome on the other, till the ground riſing almoſt perpendicular, they were all obliged to walk on one ſide. On the borders of the valley through which the river flowed, the ſoil was black, and there were ſeveral houſes with walled gardens, and plenty of fowls and hogs. In many places channels were cut to conduct the water from the hills to the plantations. No underwood was found beneath the trees, but there was good graſs; the bread-fruit and apple trees were ſet in rows upon the hills, and the cocoa-nut grew upon the level ground. The ſtreams now meandered through various windings, and the crags of mountains hung over the travellers heads. When they had walked about four miles they reſted, and began their breakfaſt under an apple-tree. At this time they were alarmed by a loud ſhout from a number of the natives. On this they were going to betake themſelves to their arms, but the old Indian made ſigns that they ſhould ſit ſtill. He then went to his countrymen, and it was preſently obſerved that they became ſilent and withdrew. They afterwards returned, bringing with them ſome refreſhments, in exchange for which they received buttons and other trifles from the lieutenant. The party then proceeded, looking every where for metals and ores, but found nothing of that ſort worth attending to. And now the old Indian being tired, gave his Engliſh companions to underſtand that he was deſirous of returning, but he did not leave them till he had given directions to the Indians to clear the way over a mountain. After his departure his countrymen cut branches from the trees, and laid them in a ceremonious manner at the feet of the ſeamen; they then painted themſelves red with the berries of a tree, and ſtained their garments yellow with the bark of another. By the aſſiſtance of theſe people, the moſt difficult parts of the mountains were climbed, and they again refreſhed themſelves at its ſummit, when they ſaw other mountains ſo much above them, that they ſeemed as in a valley. Towards the ſea the proſpect was inexpreſſibly beautiful, the ſides of the hills being covered with trees, and the valleys with graſs, while the whole country was interſperſed with villages. They ſaw but few houſes on the mountains above them, but as ſmoke was obſerved in many places, it was conjectured, that the higheſt were inhabited. Many ſprings guſhed from the ſides of the mountains, all of which were covered with wood on the ſides and with fern on the ſummit. The ſoil even on the high land was rich, and the ſugar cane grew without cultivation; as did likewiſe turmeric and ginger. Having a third time refreſhed themſelves, they deſcended towards the ſhip, occaſionally deviating from the direct way, tempted by the pleaſant ſituation of ſeveral houſes, the inhabitants of which entertained them in the moſt hoſpitable manner. They ſaw parrots, parroquets, green doves, and ducks. The lieutenant planted the ſtones of cherries, peaches and plumbs, ſeveral kinds of garden ſeeds, and oranges, lemons and limes. In the afternoon they reſted on a delightful ſpot, where the inhabitants dreſſed them two hogs and ſeveral fowls. Here they ſtaid till evening, when they rewarded the diligence of their guides, and repaired to the ſhip.

On the 26th, the Captain was viſited by the queen with her uſual preſents, and this day we diſcontinued taking in wood and water, and prepared for ſailing. A greater number of Indians now came to the ſea-ſhore, than we had ever yet ſeen; and of theſe ſeveral appeared to be perſons of conſequence. In the afternoon the queen viſited Captain Wallis, and ſolicited him to remain ten days longer; but being informed that he ſhould certainly ſail on the following day, ſhe burſt into tears. She now demanded when he would come again, and was told in 50 days; ſhe remained on board till evening, when being informed that the boat waited for her, ſhe wept with more violence than ſhe had yet done. At length this affectionate women went over the ſhip's ſide, as did the old Indian who had been ſo ſerviceable to the crew. This man had ſignified that his ſon ſhould ſail with the Captain; but when the time came the youth was not to be found, from whence it was concluded that parental affection had cauſed the old man to forfeit his word. The next morning early two boats were ſent to fill a few caſks of water; but the officer, alarmed at finding the ſhore crowded with the natives, prepared to return. This occaſioned the queen to come forward, who ordered the Indians to retire to the other ſide of the river, after which ſhe made ſigns for the boats to come on ſhore. While they were filling the water ſhe ordered ſome preſents to be put into the boat, and earneſtly deſired to go once more to the ſhip, but the officer being ordered not to bring off a ſingle native, ſhe ordered her double canoe out, and was followed by many others. When ſhe had been on board for an hour, weeping and lamenting, we took advantage of a freſh breeze, and got under ſail. She now embraced the Captain and officers, and left the ſhip; but as the wind fell, the canoes put back, and reached the ſhip again, to which the queen's was made faſt, and advancing to the bow of it ſhe there renewed her lamentations. Captain Wallis preſented her with ſeveral articles of uſe and ornament, all which ſhe received in mournful ſilence. The breeze ſpringing up again, the queen and her attendants took their final leave, and tears were ſhed on both ſides.

The place where the ſhip had lain at anchor, was called Port Royal Harbour, and is ſituate in 17 deg. 30 min. of ſouth lat. and 150 deg. of weſt long.

The following are the particulars we have ſelected of the cuſtoms, manners, &c. of the people of Otaheite. With regard to their ſtature, the men are from five feet ſeven to five feet ten inches high, the ſtandard of the women, in general, near three inches ſhorter, the talleſt among them being about five feet ſeven inches; they were moſtly handſome, and ſome of them are deſcribed as being really beautiful. The complexion of ſuch of the men as are much employed on the water is reddiſh, but their natural colour is what is called tawny. The colour of their hair is not like that of the Eaſt Indians and Americans, black, but is diverſified like that of the Europeans, having among them black, brown, red, and flaxen; moſt of the children having the latter: when looſe, it has a ſtrong natural curl, but it is uſually worn tied in two bunches, one on each ſide the head, or in a ſingle bunch in the middle. They anoint the head with the oil of the cocoa-nut, mixed with a root of a fragrant ſmell. The women, as we have before obſerved, do not conſider chaſtity as a virtue, for they not only readily and openly trafficked with our people for perſonal favours, but were brought down by their fathers and brothers for the purpoſe of proſtitution: they were, however, conſcious of the value of beauty; and the ſize of the nail that was demanded for the enjoyment of the lady, was always in proportion to her charms. When a man offered a girl to the careſſes of a ſailor, he ſhewed a ſtick of the ſize of the nail that was to purchaſe her company; and if our people agreed, ſhe was ſent over to them, for our ſeamen were not permitted to croſs the river.

Their cloaths are formed of two pieces of cloth, made of the bark of a ſhrub, and not unlike coarſe china paper. In one of them a hole is made for the head to paſs through, and this hangs down to the middle of the leg, from the ſhoulders both before and behind; the other piece which is between four and five yards long, and nearly one broad, they wrap round the body, and the whole forms an eaſy, decent, and graceful dreſs. They adorn themſelves with flowers, feathers, ſhells, and pearls. The laſt are worn chiefly by the women; the Captain purchaſed two dozen of a ſmall ſize and good colour, but they were all ſpoiled by boring. Mr. Furneaux ſaw ſeveral, in his excurſion to the weſt, but he could purchaſe none with any thing he had to offer. It is an univerſal cuſtom with both ſexes, to mark the hinder part of their thighs and loins with black lines in various forms. This is done by ſtriking the teeth of an inſtrument, ſomewhat like a comb, juſt through the ſkin, and rubbing into the punctures a kind of paſte made of ſoot and oil, which leaves an indelible ſtain. The boys and girls under twelve years of age are not marked, but we ſaw a few men whoſe legs were punctuated, and theſe appeared to be perſons of diſtinction.

One of the principal attendants on the queen, was much more diſpoſed to imitate our manners than the reſt; and our people, with whom he ſoon became a favourite, diſtinguiſhed him by the name of Jonathan. This man Mr. Furneaux clothed completely in an Engliſh dreſs, and it became him extremely well. As it was ſhoal water at the landing place, our officers were carried by the Indians on ſhore, and Jonathan, aſſuming ſtate with his new finery, would be carried by ſome of his people in the ſame manner. In attempting to uſe a knife and fork at meals, at firſt his hand always came to his mouth, and the victuals, on the end of the fork, went away to his ear. Beſides the articles already mentioned, theſe people eat the fleſh of dogs. Rats abound in the iſland, but, as far as we could diſcover, they make no part of their food. In their rivers are good taſted mullets, but they are neither large nor in plenty. On the reef are cray-fiſh, conchs, muſcles, and other ſhell-fiſh, which they gather at low water, and eat raw with bread fruit before they come on ſhore. At a ſmall diſtance from hence, they catch with lines, and hooks of mother of pearl, parrot-fiſh, groopers, and many other ſorts, of which they are ſo fond, that we could ſeldom prevail upon them to ſell us a few at any price. Their nets are of an enormous ſize, with very ſmall meſhes, with which they catch abundance of the ſmall fry; but while they were uſing both nets and lines with great ſucceſs, we could not catch a ſingle fiſh with either; not even with their hooks and lines, ſome of which we had procured.

The manner in which they dreſs their food is ſomewhat ſingular. They firſt kindle a fire by rubbing the end of one piece of dry wood together, in the ſame manner as our carpenters whet a chiſſel. Having alſo dug a pit about half a foot deep, and two or three yards in circumference, they pave the bottom with large pebble ſtones, laid down ſmooth and even, and then kindle a fire in it with dry wood, leaves, and the huſks of the cocoa-nut. When the ſtones are ſufficiently heated, they take out the embers, and rake up the aſhes on every ſide; then they cover the ſtones with a layer of green cocoa-nut tree leaves, and wrap up the animal that is to be dreſſed in the leaves of the plantain: if a ſmall hog they wrap it up whole, if a large one they ſplit it. When it is placed in the pit, they cover it with the hot embers, and lay upon them bread-fruit and yams, which are alſo wrapped up in the leaves of the plantain: over theſe they ſpread the remainder of the embers, mixing among them ſome of the hot ſtones, with more leaves upon them, and laſtly, to keep the heat in, they cloſe all up with earth. After a time proportioned to the ſize of what is dreſſing, the oven is opened, and the meat taken out, which is tender, full of gravy, and, in the opinion of Captain Wallis, better in every reſpect than that which is dreſſed in the European manner. Their only ſauces are fruit and ſalt water; and their knives are made of ſhells, with which they carve very dexterouſly, always cutting from them. They were greatly aſtoniſhed when they ſaw meat boiled in a pot by our gunner, who, while he preſided over the market, uſed to dine on ſhore; but from the time that the old man was in poſſeſſion of an iron pot, he, and his friends, had boiled meat every day. The iron pots which the Captain gave to the queen, were alſo conſtantly in uſe. The only liquor theſe people have for drinking, is water; and they are ignorant of the art of fermenting the juice of any vegetable, ſo as to give it an intoxicating quality. It is true they occaſionally pluck and chew pieces of the ſugar cane, but have no idea of extracting any ſpirit from it.

By the ſcars, with which many of theſe people are marked, it ſeems evident, that they ſometimes engaged in war with each other. The remains of wounds that were viſible appeared to be made with ſtones, bludgeons, or other blunt weapons. That they have ſkill in ſurgery, the following inſtance afforded us ſufficient proof. One of our ſailors, when on ſhore, had a large ſplinter run into his foot, and his meſſmate tried in vain to extract it with a pen-knife. The old Indian, who happened to be preſent, called over one of his countrymen, who was ſtanding on the oppoſite ſide of the river, who, having examined the ſeaman's foot, went immediately down to the beach, and taking up a ſhell, broke it to a point with his teeth; with this inſtrument he laid open the place, and drew out the ſplinter. In the mean time the old man repaired to a wood, and returned with ſome gum of the apple-tree, and, having ſpread it upon a piece of cloth, applied it to the wound, which, in two days time, was perfectly healed. Our ſurgeon afterwards uſed this vulnerary balſam with great ſucceſs. In this iſland are ſeveral ſheds encloſed within a wall, and the area is generally paved with large round ſtones; but it appeared not to be much trodden, for the graſs grew every where between them. On the outſide of the wall were ſeveral rude figures reſembling men, women, hogs and dogs, carved on poſts, that were fixed in the ground. We do not think theſe places are ſet apart for religious worſhip, of which we could not diſcover the leaſt traces among theſe people; but we conjecture they may be repoſitories of the dead, for we ſaw many of the natives enter them, with a ſlow pace and dejected countenance.

They have three kinds of canoes. One are formed out of ſingle trees, uſed chiefly for fiſhing, and carry from two to ſix men. We ſaw many of theſe upon the reef. A ſecond ſort are made of planks ſewed neatly together, and large enough to hold forty men. Two of them are generally laſhed together, having two maſts ſet up between them; but, if ſingle, they have an outrigger on one ſide, and only one maſt in the middle. They ſail in theſe beyond the ſight of land, probably to other iſlands, and bring home plantains, bananas, and other fruits. A third kind, not unlike the gondolas of Venice, are intended principally for ſhew, and uſed by parties of pleaſure. Theſe are very large, but have not any ſails. The middle is covered with a large awning, and ſome of the people ſit upon it and ſome under it. On the firſt and ſecond day after our arrival, ſome of theſe veſſels came near the ſhip; but afterwards we only ſaw, three or four times a week, a proceſſion of eight or ten of them paſſing at a diſtance, with ſtreamers flying, and a great number of ſmall canoes attending them. They frequently rowed to the outward point of a reef, that lay about four miles to the weſtward of us, where they continued about an hour and then returned. Theſe proceſſions are made only in fine weather, and on ſuch occaſions the people on board are dreſſed; though in the other canoes, they have nothing but a piece of cloth wrapped round the middle. Thoſe in the large canoes, who rowed and ſteered, were dreſſed in white; thoſe who ſat upon the awning and under it, in white and red; and two men, who were mounted on the prow of each veſſel, in red only. The plank of theſe veſſels is made by ſplitting a tree, with the grain, into as many thin pieces as they can. The tree is firſt felled with a kind of hatchet, or adze, made of a hard greeniſh ſtone, fitted very completely into a handle: it is then cut into ſuch lengths, as are required for the plank, one end of which is heated till it begins to crack, and then with wedges of hard wood they ſplit it down: ſome of theſe planks are two feet broad, and from 15 to 20 feet long. They ſmooth them with adzes of the ſame materials and conſtruction, but of a ſmaller ſize. We ſaw ſix or eight men ſometimes at work upon the ſame plank, and, as their tools ſoon loſe their edge, every man has by him a cocoa-nut ſhell filled with water, and a flat ſtone, whereon he ſharpens his adze almoſt every minute. The planks are generally brought to the thickneſs of about an inch, and are afterwards fitted to the boat with the ſame exactneſs as would be expected from an expert joiner. To faſten theſe planks together, holes are bored, through which a kind of plaited cordage is paſſed, but our nails anſwered the purpoſe of faſtening them together much better. The ſeams are caulked with dried ruſhes, and the whole outſide of the canoe is paid with a gummy ſubſtance, produced from their trees, and which is ſubſtituted in the room of pitch. The wood which they uſe for their large canoes, is that of the apple-tree; which grows very large and ſtrait. Many of theſe meaſured near eight feet in the girth, and from twenty to forty in the branches, with very little diminution in the ſize. Their ſmall canoes are nothing more than the hollowed trunks of the bread-fruit tree, which is ſtill more light and ſpongy. The trunk of this tree is ſix feet in girth.

In the opinion of Captain Wallis, this iſland of Otaheite is one of the moſt healthy as well as delightful ſpots in the world. The climate appears to be very good, and we ſaw no appearance of diſeaſe among the natives. The hills are covered with wood, and the valleys with herbage. The air in general is ſo pure, that, notwithſtanding the heat, our fleſh meat kept very well two days, and our fiſh one. We met with no frog, toad, ſcorpion, centipied, or ſerpent, of any kind; and the only troubleſome inſects that we ſaw were ants, of which there were but few. The ſouth-eaſt part of the iſland ſeems to be better cultivated and inhabited than where we lay, for we ſaw every day boats come round from thence laden with plantains and other fruits. While we lay off this iſland, the benefit we received, with reſpect to the ſhip's company, was beyond our moſt ſanguine expectations, for we had not now an invalid aboard. except the two lieutenants, and the captain, and they were recovering, though ſtill in a feeble condition.

Many aſſertions have been advanced with reſpect to the firſt introducers of the venereal diſeaſe into this iſland. " It is certain, (obſerves Captain Wallis) that none of our people contracted the venereal diſeaſe here, and therefore, as they had free commerce with great numbers of the women, there is the greateſt probability that it was not then known in the country. It was, however, found here by Captain Cook in the Endeavour, and as no European veſſel is known to have viſited this iſland before Captain Cook's arrival, but the Dolphin, and the Boudeuſe and Etoil, commanded by M. Bougainville, the reproach of having contaminated with that dreadful peſt, a race of happy people, to whom its miſeries had till then been unknown, muſt be due either to him or to me, to England or to France; and I think myſelf happy to be able to exculpate myſelf and my country beyond a poſſibility of a doubt. It is well known, that the ſurgeon on board his majeſty's ſhips keeps a liſt of the perſons who are ſick on board, ſpecifying their diſeaſes, and the times when they came under his care, and when they were diſcharged. It happened that I was once at the pay table on board a ſhip, when ſeveral ſailors objected to the payment of the ſurgeon, alledging, that although he had diſcharged them from the liſt, and reported them to be cured, yet their cure was incomplete. From this time it has been my conſtant practice when the ſurgeon reported a man to be cured, who had been upon the ſick liſt, to call the man before me, and aſk him whether the report was true: if he alledged that any ſymptoms of his complaint remained, I continued him upon the liſt; if not, I required him, as a confirmation of the ſurgeon's report, to ſign the book, which was always done in my preſence. A copy of the ſick liſt on board the Dolphin, during this voyage, ſigned by every man in my preſence, when he was diſcharged well, in confirmation of the ſurgeon's report, written in my own hand, and confirmed by my affidavit, I have depoſited in the admiralty; by which it appears, that the laſt man on board the ſhip, in her voyage outward, who was upon the ſick liſt for the venereal diſeaſe, except one who was ſent to England in the ſtore ſhip, was diſcharged cured, and ſigned the book on the 27th of December 1766, near ſix months before our arrival at Otaheite, which was on the 19th of June 1767; and that the firſt man who was upon the liſt for that diſeaſe, in our return home, was entered on the 26th of February 1768, ſix months after we left the iſland, which was on the 26th of July 1767; ſo that the ſhip's company was intirely free fourteen months within one day, the very middle of which time we ſpent at Otaheite; and the man who was firſt entered as a venereal patient, in our return home, was known to have contracted the diſeaſe at the Cape of Good Hope, where we then lay."

The old Indian, who had been ſo uſeful in carrying on an intercourſe with the natives, had often intimated, that his ſon, a boy about fourteen years of age, ſhould embark on board the ſhip; and the lad ſeemed well inclined to quit his country, and undertake the voyage; however, when the ſhip was about to ſail, the youth thought fit to conceal himſelf, from a change of mind either in him or his father. A few months after the Dolphin left this iſland, M. de Bougainville touched here, and with him one of the natives embarked; but from the diſparity in their ages, it could not be the ſame perſon who had engaged to accompany Captain Wallis. The name of this adventurer was Aotourou. He left his country with great ſatisfaction and cheerfulneſs. His hiſtory is ſhort, and as follows. The firſt European ſettlement that M. de Bougainville touched at, after leaving Otaheite, was Boero, in the Moluccas. The ſurprize of Aotourou was extravagant, at ſeeing men dreſſed in the European manner; houſes, gardens, and various domeſtic animals, in great variety and abundance. Above all, he is ſaid to have valued that hoſpitality that was there exerciſed, with an air of ſincerity and freedom. As he ſaw no exchanges made, he apprehended the people gave every thing without receiving any return. He preſently took occaſion to let the Dutch underſtand, that in his country he was a chief, and that he had undertaken this voyage with his friends for his own pleaſure. In viſits, at table, and in walking, he endeavoured to imitate the manners and cuſtoms of the Europeans. When M. de Bougainville left Aotourou on board, on his firſt viſit to the governor, he imagined the omiſſion was owing to his knees being bent inwards, and with greater ſimplicity than good ſenſe, he applied to ſome of the ſeamen to get upon them, ſuppoſing they would, by that means, be forced into a ſtraight direction. He was very earneſt to know if Paris was as fine as the Dutch factory where he then was. At Batavia, the delight which he felt on his firſt arrival, from the ſight of the objects that preſented themſelves might operate, in ſome degree, as an antidote to the poiſon of the place; but during the latter part of their ſtay here, he fell ſick, and continued ill a conſiderable time through the remainder of the voyage; but his readineſs in taking phyſic, was equal to a man born at Paris. Whenever he ſpoke of Batavia afterwards, he always called it enoue mate " the land that kills." This Indian, during a reſidence of two years in France, does not appear to have done much credit to himſelf or his country. At the end of that time he could only utter a few words of the language; which indocile diſpoſition M. de Bougainville excuſes with great ingenuity and apparent reaſon, by obſerving, that, " he was at leaſt thirty years of age: that his memory had never been exerciſed before in any kind of ſtudy, nor had his mind ever been employed at all. He was totally different from an Italian, a German, or an Engliſhman, who can, in a twelvemonth's time, ſpeak a French jargon tolerably well; but then theſe have a ſimilar grammar; their moral, phyſical, political, and ſocial ideas are much the ſame, and all expreſſed by certain words in their language as they are in the French tongue; they have therefore little more than a tranſlation to fix in their memories, which retentive faculties have been exerciſed from their infancy. The Otaheitean man, on the contrary, having only a ſmall number of ideas, relative on the one hand, to the moſt ſimple and limited ſociety, and, on the other, to wants which are reduced to the ſmalleſt number poſſible, he would have, firſt of all, as it were, to create a world of new ideas, in a mind as indolent as his body; and this previous work muſt be done before he can come ſo far as to adapt to them the words of an European language, by which they are to be expreſſed." But Aotourou ſeems to have kept very much below the ſtandard, which the French apologiſt pleads he was not required to ſurpaſs; for he really was not able, after two years inſtruction, to tranſlate his Otaheitean ideas, few and ſimple as they were, into French. This itinerant embarked at Rochelle A. D. 1770, on board the Briſſon, which was to carry him to the iſle of France, from whence, by order of the French miniſtry, he was to be ſent by the intendant to his native country: and for this purpoſe, M. de Bougainville informs us that he gave fifteen hundred pounds ſterling, (a third part of his whole fortune) towards the equipment of the ſhip intended for this navigation. But notwithſtanding theſe endeavours to reſtore the adventurous Aotourou to his country and connections, he had not reached them when Capt. Cook was at Otaheite in 1774: and Mr. Forſter ſays he died of the ſmall pox.

CHAP. III.

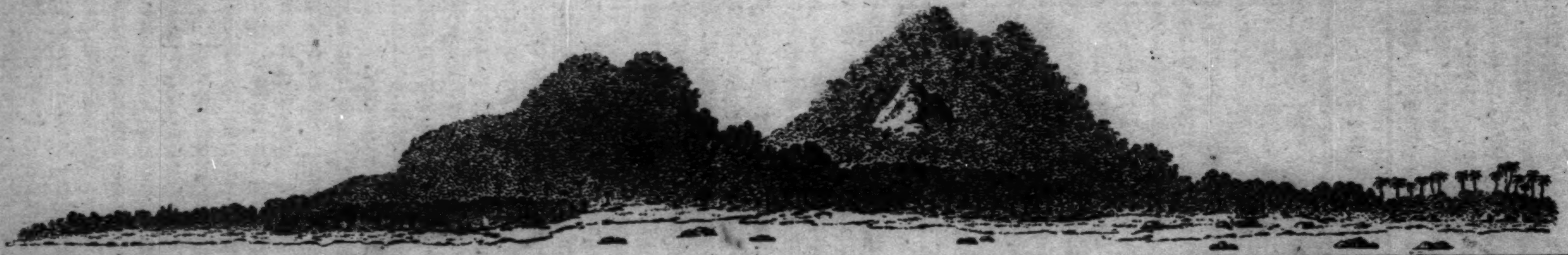
The Dolphin ſails from King George the Third's Iſland—Her paſſage from thence to Tinian—Sir Charles Saunders's—Lord Howe's—Scilly—Boſcawen's—Keppel's—and Captain Wallis's iſlands diſcovered—The preſent ſtate of Tinian deſcribed—Run from that iſland to Batavia—Incidents and tranſactions at this laſt place—The Dolphin continues her voyage to the Cape of Good Hope—Returns to England, and anchors in the Downs on Friday the 20th of May, 1768; having circumnavigated the Globe, from the time of weighing anchor in Plymouth Sound, in juſt 637 days; and accompliſhed her voyage a month and a day ſooner than ſhe had done when under the command of Commodore Byron.

ON Sunday the 26th of July, 1767, we took our departure from the iſland of Otaheite; and on the 27th, paſſed the Duke of York's Iſland, the middle and weſt end whereof is very mountainous, but the eaſt end is lower, and the coaſt juſt within the beach abounds with plantain-trees, cocoa-nuts, bread-fruit, and apple-trees. On the 28th, we diſcovered land, which was called Sir Charles Saunders's Iſland. It is about ſix miles long from E. to W. and lies in latitude 17 deg. 28 min. ſouth, and in 151 deg. 4 min. weſt longitude. On the weather ſide are many great breakers, and the lee-ſide is rocky, nevertheleſs, in many places there appears to be good anchorage. In the center is a mountain, which ſeems to be fertile. The few inhabitants we ſaw appeared to live in a wretched manner, in ſmall huts, very different from the ingenious natives of King George's Iſland. Cocoa-nut and other trees grew on the ſhore, but all of them had their tops blown away. On the 30th, we again made land, at day-break, bearing N. by E. to N. W. We ſtood for it but could find no anchorage, the whole iſland being encircled by dangerous breakers. It is about ten miles in length, and four in breadth, and lies in latitude 16 deg. 46 min. ſouth, and in 154 deg. 13 min. weſt longitude. On the lee part a few cocoa-nuts were growing, and we perceived ſmoke, but no inhabitants. The Captain named this new diſcovered land Lord Howe's Iſland. In the afternoon we diſcovered in latitude 16 deg. 28 min. ſouth, longitude 155 deg. 30 min. weſt, a group of iſlands or ſhoals, exceeding dangerous; for in the night, however clear the weather, and by day, if it is hazy, a ſhip may run upon them without ſeeing land. At five o'clock we deſcried the breakers, running a great way to the ſouthward; and ſoon after low land to the S. W. We turned to windward all night, and at nine o'clock, of the 31ſt, got round the ſhoals and named them Scilly Iſlands.

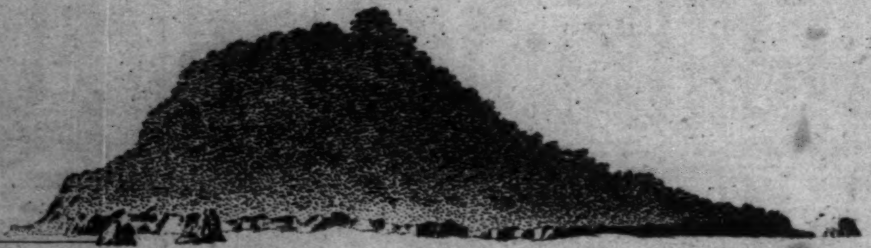
On Thurſday the 13th of Auguſt, having continued our courſe weſtward, two ſmall iſlands came in view. The firſt, at noon bore W. half S. diſtant five leagues, and had the appearance of a ſugar loaf. The center of the ſecond roſe in the form of a peak, and bore W. S. W. diſtant ſix leagues. To one, which is nearly a circle, in diameter three miles, we gave the name of Boſcawen's Iſland; and this we believe to be the only inſtance which occurs, of an iſland receiving the name of a deceaſed great man. Admiral Boſcawen died in the year 1761. The other iſland, which is three miles and a half in length, we called Keppel's Iſle. Port Royal at this time bore eaſt 4 deg. ſouth, diſtant 478 leagues. At two o'clock, P. M. we ſaw ſeveral inhabitants upon Boſcawen's Iſland; but Keppel's being to windward, and appearing more likely to afford us good anchorage, we hauled up for it. At ſix, being diſtant therefrom nearly two miles, we obſerved, by the help of our glaſſes, many of the natives upon the beach; but we did not attempt to anchor, on account of ſome breakers at a conſiderable diſtance from the iſland. However, on the 14th, early in the morning, the boats were diſpatched to ſound and viſit the iſland. At noon they returned, without having found any ground, within a cable's length of it; but ſeeing a reef of rocks, they had hauled round the ſame, and got into a large deep bay full of rocks: without this was anchorage from 14 to 20 fathoms, bottom ſand and coral; and within a rivulet of good water; but the ſhore being rocky, they went in ſearch of a better landing place, which they found about half a mile farther, and went aſhore. Our people reported, that the inhabitants were not unlike thoſe of Otaheite; they were cloathed in a kind of matting, and were remarkable for having the firſt joint of their little fingers cut off. They ſeemed to be peaceably inclined, and three of them from their canoes came into the boats when they put off, but ſuddenly jumped overboard, and ſwam back to the iſland, where about 50 of their countrymen ſtood on the ſhore ready to receive them, but who would not advance nearer than about 100 yards to our people. Theſe brought on board two fowls, and ſome fruit, but they ſaw not any hogs. Till this day, Captain Wallis had entertained a deſign of returning to England by the way of the Magellanic Straits; but as no convenient watering place was to be found at this iſland, and as the ſhip had received ſome damages, that had rendered her unfit to encounter a rough ſea, he determined to ſail for Tinian, from thence to Batavia, and ſo home by the Cape of Good Hope. By this route, as far as we could judge, we expected to be ſooner at home, and ſuppoſing the ſhip might not be in a condition to make the whole voyage, we ſhould ſtill have a greater probability of ſaving our lives, as from this place to Batavia, we ſhould have a calm ſea, and be not far from port. We think it rather extraordinary that a thought ſhould be entertained by Captain Wallis, of returning by the way we came; as, independent of the prodigious unneceſſary riſk that would be run, the honour of having gone over the entire circumference of the globe would have been loſt: for a voyage into the South Sea would have had nothing attractive in its ſound; but a voyage round the world, was calculated to draw general attention. In conſequence of the above reſolution, we paſſed Boſcawen's Iſland, which is well inhabited, and abounds with timber; but Keppel's is by far the largeſt and beſt Iſland of the two. The former lies in latitude 15 deg. 50 min. ſouth, longitude 175 deg. weſt; and the latter in latitude 15 deg. 55 min. longitude 175 deg. 3 min. weſt from London. We continued our courſe W. N. W. and,

On Sunday the 16th, at ten o'clock, A. M. we diſcovered land bearing N. by E. and at noon were within three leagues of it. Within ſhore the land appeared to be high, but at the water-ſide it was low; and ſeemed to be ſurrounded with reefs that extended two or three miles into the ſea. The coaſt is rocky, and the trees grow almoſt to the edge of the water. We hauled without a reef of rocks, to get round the lee-ſide of the iſland, and at the ſame time ſent off the boats to ſound and examine the coaſt. Our people found the trees to be of different ſorts, many of them very large, but all without fruit: on the lee-ſide indeed were a few cocoa-nuts, but not a ſingle habitation was to be ſeen; nor any kind of animals, either birds or beaſts, except ſea fowl. Soon after they had got near the ſhore, ſeveral canoes came up to them, each having ſix or eight men on board. They appeared to be a robuſt, active people, and were cloathed with only a kind of mat that was wrapped round their waiſts. They were armed with large maces or clubs, ſuch as Hercules is repreſented with, two of which they ſold to our maſter for a few nails and trinkets. Theſe people attempting to ſteal the cutter, by hauling her upon the rocks, a gun was fired cloſe to one of their faces, the report of which ſo terrified them, that they decamped with the utmoſt ſpeed. When the boats, on their return to the ſhip, came near to deep water, they were impeded by points of rocks ſtanding up, the whole reef, except in one part, being now dry, and a great ſea broke over it. The Indians obſerving this followed our boats in their

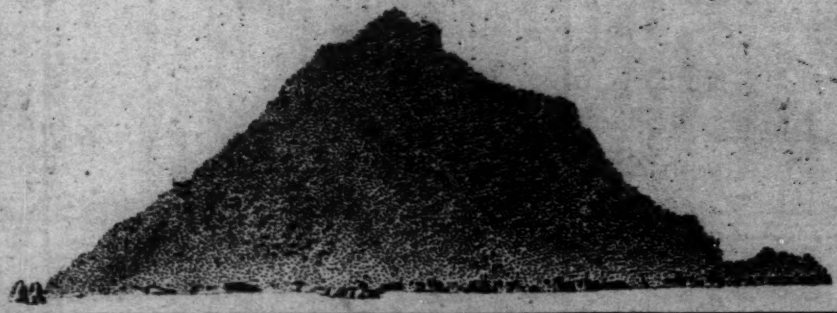
View of Sir Charles Saunders Iſland. *Latitude 17°-28′ South. Longitude 150°-24′ West of London.*



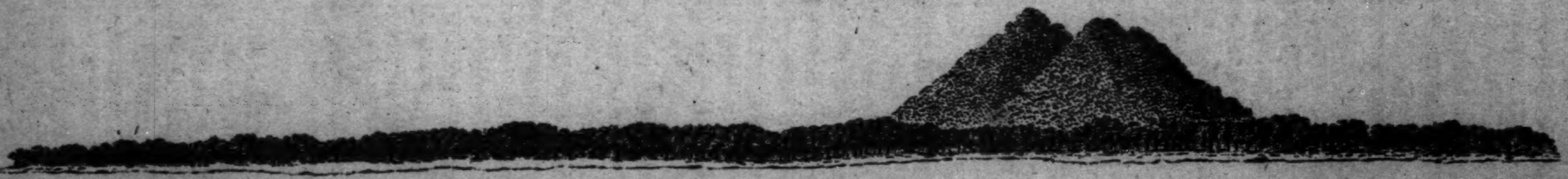
Oſnaburg Iſland. *Latitude 17°-51′ South. Longitude 147°-00′ West*



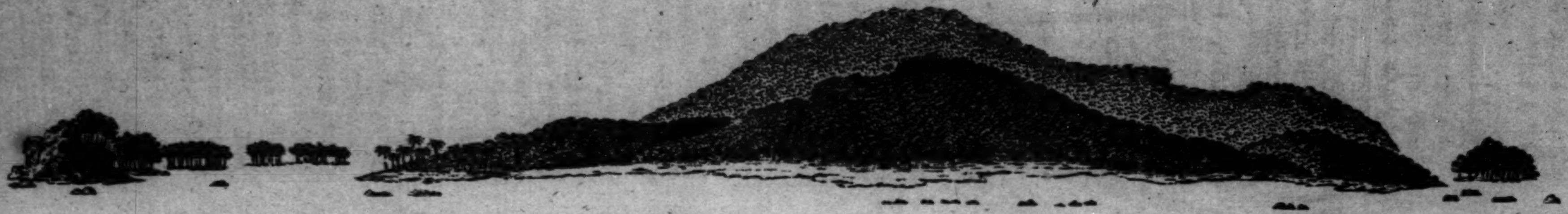
Boſcawens Iſland. *Latitude 15°-50′ South. Longitude 174°-30′*



Adm.l Keppels Iſland. *Latitude 15°-55′ South. Longitude 174°-33′ West of London.*



Wallis's Iſland. *Latitude 13°-18′ South, Longitude 176°-20′ West of London.*



London. Published by Alex.r Hogg, at the Kings Arms No. 16, Paternoster Row.

Walker Sc.

BRITISH
7 FE 60
MUSEUM

canoes, all along the reef till they got to the beach, and then they rowed back. We ſhall here remark, as an extraordinary circumſtance, that although no ſort of metal was ſeen on any of the lately diſcovered iſlands, yet the natives were no ſooner poſſeſſed of a piece of iron than they began to ſharpen it, but did not treat copper or braſs in the ſame manner. When the boats returned, which was about ſix in the evening, the maſter reported, that all within the reef was rocky, but that at two or three places without it there was good anchorage in 18, 14, and 12 fathoms, upon ſand and coral. The opening in the reef is 60 fathoms broad, where, if preſſed by neceſſity, a ſhip may anchor, or moor, in eight fathoms; but it will not be ſafe to moor with a greater length than half a cable. This iſland the officers called after the name of our commander, Wallis's Iſland. It is ſituated in latitude 13 deg. 18 min. ſouth, and in 177 deg. weſt longitude. Having hoiſted in our boats we ran down four miles to leeward, where we lay till the morning, and then, finding that the current had ſet us out of ſight of the iſland, we made ſail to the N. W.

On Friday the 28th, we croſſed the line into northern latitude, our longitude being, by obſervation, 187 deg. 24 min. weſt from London. During this courſe many birds were ſeen about the ſhip, one of which was caught, and reſembled exactly a dove in ſize, ſhape, and colour. On the 29th, in latitude 2 deg. 50 min. north, and in 188 deg. weſt longitude, we croſſed a great rippling, which ſtretched from the N. E. to the S. W. as far as the eye could reach from the maſt-head. We ſounded, but found no bottom, with a line of 200 fathoms.

On the 3rd of September, being Thurſday, we ſaw land, which was thought to be two of the Piſcadone Iſlands. The latitude of one of them is 11 deg. north, longitude 192 deg. 30 min. weſt, and that of the other 11 deg. 20 min. north, longitude 192 deg. 58 min. At five o'clock, A. M. we ſaw more land in the N. W. and at ſix, in the N. E. obſerved an Indian prow, ſuch as is deſcribed in the account of Lord Anſon's voyage. Perceiving ſhe made towards us, we hoiſted Spaniſh colours: but ſhe came no nearer than within two miles, at which diſtance ſhe tacked, ſtood to the N. N. W. and was out of ſight in a ſhort time. On the 7th, we ſaw a curlew, and on the 9th, we caught a land bird, very much reſembling a ſtarling. On Thurſday the 17th, we obſerved in latitude 15 deg. north, longitude 212 deg. 30 min. W. On the 18th, at ſix o'clock, A. M. we deſcried the iſland of Saypan, bearing W. by N. diſtant ten leagues. In the afternoon we came in ſight of Tinian, made ſail for the road; and on Saturday the 19th, we came to an anchor in 22 fathoms, ſandy ground, at about a mile diſtant from the ſhore, and half a mile from the reef. We loſt no time, after the ſhip was ſecured, in ſending the boats on ſhore, to erect tents, and procure ſome refreſhments. In a few hours they returned with oranges, limes, and cocoa-nuts. The ſurgeon, with all the invalids, were landed with the utmoſt expedition; alſo the ſmith's forge, and a cheſt of carpenter's tools. The Captain and firſt lieutenant, both being in a very ſickly condition, went likewiſe aſhore, taking with them a mate and 12 men to hunt for cattle in the country. On the 20th, the maſter informed us, that there was a better ſituation to the ſouthward; we therefore warped the ſhip a little way up, and moored with a cable each way. At ſix o'clock in the evening, our hunters brought in a fine young bull, of near 500 weight, part of which we kept on ſhore; and ſent the remainder on board, with a good ſupply of fruit. The amount of the people now on ſhore, ſick and well, was 53. On the 21ſt, we began the neceſſary repairs of the ſhip. The carpenters were ſet at work to caulk her: all the ſails were got on ſhore, and the ſail-makers were employed to mend them: while the armourers were buſy on the iron work, and making new chains for the rudder. The ſick recovered very faſt from the day they firſt breathed the land air: this, however, was ſo different from what we found in Otaheite, that fleſh meat, which there kept ſweet two days, could here be ſcarcely kept ſweet one. Near the landing place we ſaw the remains of many cocoa-nut trees, which had all been wantonly cut down for the fruit; and we were obliged to go three miles into the country to procure a ſingle nut. The hunters alſo ſuffered incredible fatigue, going frequently 10 or 12 miles, through one continued thicket, and the cattle were ſo wild, that it was very difficult to come near them. On this account one party was ordered to relieve another; and Mr. Gore with 14 men were ſtationed at the north part of the iſland, where cattle were in much greater plenty. At day-break every morning, a boat went off to bring in what they caught, or killed, and in this iſland we procured beef, poultry, papaw apples, and all the other refreſhments, of which an account is given in lord Anſon's voyage; but which differs in ſome particulars from the report made of this place by Commodore Byron. During our ſtay at this place, the ſhip was laid down by the ſtern, to get at ſome of the ſheathing which had been much torn; and in repairing the copper, the carpenter diſcovered and ſtopped a leak under the lining of the knee of the head, by which we had reaſon to hope moſt of the water, that the veſſel had lately admitted in foul weather, came in.

On Thurſday the 15th of October, all the ſick being recovered, our wood and water completed, and the Dolphin made fit for ſea, every thing was ordered on board from the ſhore; and all our men were embarked from the watering-place, each having, at leaſt, 500 limes; and we had ſeveral tubs full of the ſame fruit on the quarter deck, for every one of the crew to ſqueeze into his water what he ſhould think fit. On the 16th, at day break, we weighed, and ſailed out of the bay, ſending the boats at the ſame time to the north end of the iſland, to bring off Mr. Gore and his hunters. At noon they came on board with a fine large bull which they had juſt killed. On Wedneſday the 21ſt, we held on a weſterly courſe; and on the 22nd, Tinian being diſtant 277 leagues, we ſaw ſeveral birds, particularly three reſembling gannets, of the ſame kind that we had ſeen when within about 30 leagues of Tinian. On the 23rd, and the two following days it blew a violent ſtorm, and we had much thunder, lightning, rain, and a great ſea. The ſhip laboured very much: the rudder became again looſe, and ſhook the ſtern, a defect which we had before experienced, and which we thought had been remedied at Tinian. The gales increaſing ſplit our gib and main-top-maſt ſtay-ſail: the fore-ſail, and mizen-ſail were torn to pieces; and, having bent others, we wore, and ſtood under a reefed fore-ſail, and balanced mizen. The effects of the ſtorm were more dreaded, as the Dolphin admitted more water than ſhe had done at any time during the voyage. Soon after we had got the top-gallant-maſts down upon the deck, and took in the gib-boom, a ſea ſtruck the ſhip upon her bow, and waſhed away the round-houſes, with all the rails of the head, and every thing upon the fore-caſtle: nevertheleſs, we were forced to carry as much ſail as the ſhip would bear, being by Lord Anſon's account near the Baſhee Iſlands; and by Commodore Byron's, not more than 30 leagues, with a lee-ſhore. The inceſſant and heavy rain had kept every man on board wet to the ſkin for more than two days and two nights, and the ſea was breaking continually over the ſhip. A mountainous one, on Tueſday the 27th, ſtaved all the half ports to pieces on the ſtarboard-ſide, broke all the iron ſtanchions on the gunwale, waſhed the boat off the ſkids, and carried many things overboard. We were, however, this day favoured with a gleam of ſunſhine; and on the 28th, the weather became more moderate. At noon we altered our courſe, ſteering S. by W. and paſt one o'clock, we ſaw the Baſhee Iſlands bearing from S. by E. to S. S. E. diſtant ſix leagues. Theſe are all high, but the northernmoſt is higher than the reſt. Grafton Iſland, one of them is laid down by Captain Wallis in the latitude of 21 deg. 4 min. north, and in 239 deg. weſt longitude; but Captain King, in his relation of the concluſion of the laſt voyage of diſcovery, aſſerts that this is erroneous, as the Reſolution and Diſcovery ſought for them in vain in that poſition; and Mr. Dalrymple in his maps has laid them down in 118 deg. 14 min. eaſt longitude. At midnight of this day, the weather being very dark, with ſudden guſts of wind, we miſſed one Edmund Morgan, a marine taylor. It was ſuppoſed he had fallen overboard, when under the influence of intoxication, he having found means to indulge himſelf with more than his allowance.

On Tueſday the 3rd of November, at ſeven o'clock, A. M. we diſcovered a ledge of breakers, in latitude 11 deg. 8 min. north, diſtant three miles. At eleven we ſaw another ſhoal in latitude 10 deg. 46 min. N. diſtant five miles. At noon we hauled off, being diſtant from them not more than one fourth of a mile. At one o'clock P. M. we ſaw ſhoal water on our larboard bow, and, ſtanding from it, paſſed another ledge of breakers at two. At three o'clock we had in ſight a low ſandy point, in latitude 10 deg. 40 min. N. and in 247 deg. 12 min. weſt longitude, to which the name was given of Sandy Iſle. At five, in 10 deg. 37 min. N. latitude and in 247 deg. 16 min. W. long. we ſaw a ſmall iſland, which was named Small Key. Soon after, in latitude 10 deg. 20 min. N. longitude 247 deg. 24 min. another larger was ſeen, and called Long Iſland. On Wedneſday, the 4th, we fell in with a fourth iſland, in latitude 10 deg. 10 min. N. and in 247 deg. 40 min. W. longitude. This we named New Iſland. On Saturday, the 7th, having continued our courſe, we paſſed through ſeveral ripplings of a current: and this day we ſaw great quantities of drift wood, cocoa-nut leaves, things like cones of firs, and weeds, which ſwam in a ſtream N. E. and S. W. At noon we obſerved in latitude 8 deg. 36 min. N. longitude 253 deg. W. At two o'clock, P. M. we deſcried from the maſt head the iſland of Condone, which lies in latitude 8 deg. 40 min. N. and in 254 deg. 15 min. weſt longitude by our reckoning. On the 8th, we altered our courſe, and on the 9th, the Captain took from the petty officers and fore-maſt men all their log and journal books relative to the voyage. On Friday the 13th, we came in ſight of the iſlands Timoun, Aros, and Peſang. On Monday the 16th, we again croſſed the line into ſouth latitude, in the longitude of 255 deg. W. and ſoon after we ſaw two iſlands, diſtant ſeven leagues. On the 17th, we had tempeſtuous weather with heavy rain. The two iſlands proved to be Pulo Tote, and Pulo Weſte; and having made ſail till one o'clock P. M. we ſaw at that time the ſeven iſlands. On the 18th, at two o'clock, A. M. a ſingular incident happened. At this time the weather was ſo tempeſtuous and dark, that we could not ſee from one part of the ſhip to the other, we had alſo heavy ſqualls and much rain. During the full violence of the wind, a flaſh of lightning ſuddenly diſcovered a large veſſel cloſe aboard of us. The ſteerſman inſtantly put the helm a lee, and the Dolphin anſwering her rudder, juſt cleared the other ſhip, and thus eſcaped the impending deſtruction, which threatened to bury for ever in the vaſt deep every circumſtance of the voyage. This was the firſt ſhip that had been ſeen ſince our parting with the Swallow in April; and it blew ſo hard, that, not being able to underſtand any thing that was ſaid, we could not learn to what nation ſhe belonged. The weather having cleared up at ſix o'clock, A. M. we ſaw a ſail at anchor in the E. S. E. and at noon came in ſight of Pulo Taya, near which we anchored at ſix in the evening, in 15 fathoms, ſandy ground. On the 19th we ſailed again, and ſaw two veſſels a-head of us, but, finding we loſt much ground, came to an anchor again in 15 fathoms. On Friday the 20th, our ſmall bower anchor parted, and could not be recovered. We immediately took in the cable, and perceived that it had been cut through with the rocks. On the 22nd, at half an hour after ſix A. M. we ſaw the coaſt of Sumatra; and caſt anchor in Batavia road on Monday the 30th.

On Tueſday, the 1ſt of December, we ſaluted the governor with 13 guns, which, contrary to the uſual cuſtom, he returned with one more, inſtead of one leſs, from the fort; and permiſſion having been obtained to purchaſe proviſions, we were ſoon ſupplied with beef, and plenty of vegetables, which the Captain ordered to be ſerved immediately: at the ſame time he told the ſhip's company, that he would not ſuffer any liquor to be brought on board, and would ſeverely puniſh thoſe who made ſuch an attempt, obſerving, in order to reconcile them to this regulation, that intemperance, particularly in a too free uſe of arrack, would inevitably deſtroy them. As a further preſervative, the Captain would not ſuffer a man to go on ſhore, except upon duty, nor were even theſe permitted to go into the town. At this time 14 ſail of Dutch Eaſt Indiamen, and a great number of ſmall veſſels were laying in this road. Here alſo we ſaw the Falmouth, an Engliſh man of war, of 50 guns, lying upon the mud in a rotten condition. She touched at this inhoſpitable place, on her return from Manila, in the year 1762, and was condemned. On examining the ſtores and ſhip, every thing was found in ſo decayed a ſtate, as to be totally uſeleſs. The officers and crew of this ſhip were in a miſerable condition. The boatſwain through vexation and diſtreſs had loſt his ſenſes, and was at this time in a Dutch hoſpital: the carpenter was dying; and the cook a wounded cripple. The warrant officers belonging to this wreck preſented a petition to Captain Wallis, requeſting that he would take them on board the Dolphin. They ſtated, that nothing now remained for them to look after; that they had ten years pay due, which they would gladly relinquiſh, to be relieved from their preſent ſufferings, as the treatment they received from the Dutch was moſt inhuman. They were not permitted to ſpend a ſingle night on ſhore, and in ſickneſs no one viſited them on board: they were beſides robbed by the Malays, and in continual dread of being murdered by them. Captain Wallis told them, with the utmoſt regret and compaſſion, that the relief they prayed for, it was not in his power to render; that as they had received charge of ſtores, they muſt wait for orders from home; but he aſſured them he would do all in his power to relieve them; and with this remote conſolation only, the poor neglected, forgotten, unaſſiſted ſuffering Engliſhmen took their leave with tears in their eyes. About ſix months before Captain Cook touched at Batavia, on board the Endeavour, in 1770, the Dutch thought fit to ſell the Falmouth, and all her damaged ſtores, by public auction, and ſent the officers home in their own ſhips.

The exorbitant prices which were demanded for cordage, and every other article which the Dolphin ſtood in need of, obliged Captain Wallis to leave the place without procuring any thing of that kind, although his need of them was very great. During our ſtay at this place, which was eight days, the moſt ſalutary regulations were eſtabliſhed, in order, if poſſible to preſerve the crew from the malignity of the climate; and the moſt beneficial conſequences enſued. The ſhip's company continued ſober and healthy the whole time; for, except a ſailor who had been afflicted with rheumatic pains ever ſince we had left the Straits of Magellan, only one man was on the ſick liſt.

On Wedneſday the 2nd, our boatſwain and carpenter were ſent to examine ſuch of the ſtores, belonging to the Falmouth, as had been landed at Onruſt, with orders, that if any were fit for our uſe they ſhould be purchaſed. On their return they reported, that all the ſtores they had ſurveyed were rotten, except one pair of tacks, which they brought with them: the maſts, yards, and cables, were all dropping to pieces; and even the iron work was ſo ruſty that it was worth nothing. They alſo examined her hulk, and found her in a moſt ſhattered condition. Many of her ports were waſhed into one; the ſtern poſt was quite decayed; and there was no place in her where a man could be ſheltered from the weather. The few unhappy ſufferers who remained in her, were in as wretched a ſtate as the ſhip, being quite broken and worn down, and expecting to be drowned as ſoon as the monſoon ſhould ſet in. Among other neceſſaries, we were in want of an anchor.

anchor, and of three inch rope for rounding the cables; but the officers, whom the Captain ſent to procure theſe articles from the Dutch, as he could not be ſupplied with them from the Falmouth, reported, that the price which had been demanded for them was ſo unreaſonable, that they had not agreed to give it. On Saturday the 5th, therefore, the Captain himſelf went on ſhore, for the firſt time, but found it impoſſible, after having viſited the various ſtore-houſes and arſenals, to make a better bargain than his officers would have done. We now ſuſpected that the Dutch thought to take advantage of our apparent neceſſity, and, ſuppoſing we could not depart without what we had offered to purchaſe, were determined to extort from us more than four times its value. But the captain reſolved to make any ſhift, rather than ſubmit to what he knew to be a ſhameful impoſition, and therefore told them, that he would give them till next Tueſday to come to his terms, at which time, if they did not, he would certainly, if it were poſſible, ſet ſail without taking the things he had treated for. Accordingly, on the 8th, having heard nothing more about the anchor and rope, we ſailed from the road of Batavia, at ſix o'clock, A. M. On Friday the 11th, at noon, we were between the coaſts of Sumatra and Sava, when ſeveral of the crew began to be affected with colds and fluxes. On the 12th, a Dutch boat came along-ſide, and ſome turtles were purchaſed for the uſe of our company. At night, being at the diſtance of two miles from the Java ſhore, we ſaw an amazing number of lights on the beach, intended, as we imagined, to draw the fiſh near thereto. On the 14th, we anchored off Prince's Iſland, at which place we took in wood and water; and the next morning, the natives came down with turtle, poultry, and hog-deer, which they parted with at moderate rates. Here we lay till the 19th, during which time one of the ſeamen fell from the main-yard into the barge, which lay along-ſide the ſhip, by which accident he was dreadfully bruiſed, and many of his bones were broken. In his fall he ſtruck two other men, one of whom was ſo much hurt, that he continued ſpeechleſs for a few days, and then died; but the other had only one of his toes broken. While at this iſland, we buried three more of our hands, among whom was George Lewis, our quarter-maſter, a diligent, ſober man, and exceedingly uſeful, as he ſpoke both the Spaniſh and Portugueſe languages. On Sunday the 20th, at ſix o'clock, A. M. we made ſail, and from this time to the 24th, many of our people began to complain of an intermitting diſorder ſomething like an ague.

A. D. 1768. On Friday the 1ſt of January, not leſs than 40 of our crew were down upon the ſick liſt, laid up with fluxes and fevers of the putrid kind, diſeaſes eſpecially fatal on board a ſhip. The ſurgeon's mate was of this number; and even thoſe who were appointed to attend the ſick, were always taken ill in a day or two after they had been upon that ſervice. The attention which our commander paid to the ſick does him honour. He cauſed a commodious birth to be made for them, which he ordered to be hung with painted canvas, keeping it always clean, and directing it to be waſhed with vinegar, and fumigated once or twice a day: the water, though well taſted, was conſtantly ventilated: a large piece of iron was alſo heated red hot, and quenched in it, before it was given out to be drank: the ſick had alſo wine inſtead of grog, and ſalop, or ſago, every morning for breakfaſt: two days in a week they had mutton-broth: ſometimes a fowl or two on the intermediate days: beſides all which reſtoratives and nouriſhment, they had plenty of rice and ſugar, and frequently malt maſhed for them. We believe people in a ſickly ſhip had never ſo many refreſhments before. Nor was the ſurgeon leſs aſſiduous in diſcharging, with unremitted attention, the duties of his office; yet, notwithſtanding all theſe advantages, ſickneſs gained ground from the malignant and contagious nature of the fevers with which the men were ſeized. To augment theſe our afflictions, the ſhip grew very leaky, her upper works were looſe, and ſhe made more than three feet water in a watch. However, through the divine bleſſing upon human means, by the 10th, the ſickneſs began to abate, but more than half the crew were ſo feeble, that they could ſcarcely crawl about. This day we ſaw many tropic birds about the ſhip, and on the 17th, we obſerved ſeveral albatroſſes, and caught ſome bonettas. On the 24th, in latitude 33 deg. 40 min. ſouth, longitude 328 deg. 17 min. weſt, we encountered a violent ſtorm, which tore the main-top-ſail to pieces. A dreadful ſea broke over the ſhip, by which the ſtarboard rudder-chain was demoliſhed, and ſeveral of the booms were waſhed overboard; yet during the ſtorm we obſerved a number of birds; and after it ſubſided all hands were employed in drying the bedding, and in repairing our ſhattered ſails. On the 27th, we were by obſervation in latitude 34 deg. 16 min. and in longitude 323 deg. 30 min. weſt, and on the 30th, at ſix o'clock in the evening, we ſaw land.

February the 4th, being Thurſday, we arrived at the Cape of Good Hope, and came to an anchor in Table Bay: in the run to which place from Prince's Iſland, the Dolphin had got 3 deg. to the eaſtward of her reckoning. We found riding in the bay a Dutch commodore, with 16 ſail of Dutch Eaſt Indiamen, a French Eaſt India ſhip, and the Admiral Watſon, Captain Griffen, an Eaſt India packet-boat for Bengal. The Captain having ſent the uſual compliments to the governor, he received our officer with great civility, aſſuring him, that we were welcome to all ſuch refreſhments and aſſiſtance that the cape afforded, and that he would return our ſalute with the ſame number of guns. We therefore ſaluted the governor with 13 guns, and he returned the full complement. Admiral Watſon ſaluted us with eleven guns, and we returned nine: the Frenchman ſaluted us with nine guns, and we returned ſeven. We now loſt no time in procuring freſh meat and vegetables for the uſe of the ſick. The ſurgeon was ſent on ſhore to hire lodgings for them; but as the rate demanded was two ſhillings a day, and as the ſmall-pox, (which many of our crew had not had) raged furiouſly in almoſt every houſe in Cape Town, Captain Wallis obtained permiſſion of the governor, to erect tents on a ſpacious plain called Green point, about two miles diſtant from the town, where the invalids were ſent during the day, and every evening returned to the ſhip. At the ſame time poſitive orders were given, that no liquors ſhould be ſent to the ſhip, or the tents; that no one ſhould be permitted to go into the town; and that extra proviſions ſhould be procured for thoſe who were moſt reduced by ſickneſs. Much relief was found the very firſt day of their being on ſhore; on their return in the evening, at ſix o'clock, they ſeemed to be greatly refreſhed; and a general recovery rapidly took place. Captain Wallis being himſelf extremely ill, was put on ſhore, and carried eight miles up the country, where he continued the whole time that the ſhip remained here, and when ſhe was ready for ſea he returned on board, but without having received the leaſt benefit. Every man who was able to do any kind of duty, was now employed in the neceſſary repairs of the ſhip; the ſails were all unbent, the yards and top-maſts ſtruck, the forge was ſet up, the carpenters were engaged in caulking, the ſailmakers in mending the ſails, the cooper in repairing the caſks, the people in overhauling the rigging, and the boats in filling the water. The heavy work being nearly done by Wedneſday the 10th, ſeveral of the men, who had been ſeized with the ſmall-pox, were permitted to viſit the town; and thoſe who had not been touched with that malignant diſtemper, were allowed to take daily walks in the country; and as they did not abuſe this liberty, it was continued to them as long as the ſhip remained at the cape. At this place, the neceſſaries that could not be bought of the Dutch at Batavia, were purchaſed reaſonably; and freſh water was procured by diſtillation, with a view of convincing the Dutch, how eaſily water might be procured at ſea. Nothing can be more ſtrongly contraſted, than the conduct of the Dutch at Batavia, and at the Cape. The Aſiatic Dutch can ſcarcely be induced to render the common offices of humanity to ſuch of their ſpecies who reſort to them to be ſaved from the jaws of death, and their rapacity knows no bounds: the African Dutch are diſpoſed to adminiſter every comfort to thoſe who want relief, and in doing this no extortion is practiſed. The principle upon which the people at each ſettlement act is eaſily to be traced: at the firſt place, they ſuſpect every foreign European ſhip which enters their port as endangering a ſecure poſſeſſion of the moſt valuable branch of their commerce; in the latter, the wealth of the inhabitants, as well as the emoluments of government, are derived from the offices of humanity which they diſcharge. This day, at five o'clock, A. M. we put 56 gallons of ſalt-water into the ſtill; at ſeven it began to run, and, in little more than five hours, afforded us 42 gallons of freſh water, at an expence of nine pounds of wood, and 69 pounds of coals. What we drew off had no ill taſte, nor, as we had often experienced, any hurtful quality. Captain Wallis never once put the ſhip's company to an allowance of water, during the whole voyage, always uſing the ſtill, when we were reduced to 45 tons, and preſerving the rain water with the utmoſt diligence; nor would he permit water to be fetched away at pleaſure; but the officer of the watch had orders to ſerve out a ſufficient quantity to thoſe who might want it for tea, coffee, grog, and proviſions of any kind. On Thurſday the 26th, we had nearly got on board all our wood and water; all our hands, and the tents were brought off from the ſhore; and, upon a general muſter, we had the happineſs to find, that in our whole company, three only were incapable of doing duty, and that we had loſt only the ſame number, ſince our departure from Batavia, by ſickneſs. This day the Captain came on board; and on the 27th and 28th, after having ſtowed all our bread, a conſiderable quantity of ſtraw, and above 30 ſheep for ſea ſtores, we unmoored, and lay waiting for a favourable wind.

On Thurſday the 3rd of March, we got under ſail. From many obſervations we had an opportunity of making at Green Point, we determined Table Bay to lie in latitude 34 deg. 2 min. ſouth, and in 18 deg. 8 min. eaſt longitude from Greenwich. On the 7th, we were in latitude 29 deg. 33 min. ſouth, longitude 347 deg. 38 min. from London. On Saturday the 13th, we found a day had been loſt by having ſailed weſtward 360 deg. from the meridian of London; we therefore called the latter part of this day, Monday the 14th of March. On Wedneſday the 16th, at ſix o'clock, P. M. we came in ſight of the iſland of St. Helena, diſtant 14 leagues; and on the 17th, at nine o'clock, A. M. we caſt anchor in the Bay. We found riding here the Northumberland Indiaman, Captain Milford, who ſaluted us with 11 guns, and we returned nine. All our boats being hoiſted out as ſoon as poſſible, we ſent one party to fill our empty caſks with water, and others to gather purſlain, of which there is great plenty. The Captain going on ſhore was ſaluted with 13 guns from the fort, which compliment we returned. The governor and principal gentlemen of the iſland met him upon landing; and having conducted him to the fort, requeſted that he would make that place his reſidence, during his ſtay; but our water being completed, and the ſhip made ready for ſea, on the 18th, Captain Wallis returned on board; upon which we unmoored, at five o'clock, P. M. got under way, and ſet ſail for our native country, happy old England. On Wedneſday the 23rd, at five o'clock, A. M. we had in view the iſland of Aſcenſion; and at eight a ſail was ſeen to the eaſtward, which brought to, and hoiſted a jack at her main-top-maſt head; but we had no ſooner ſhewed our colours than ſhe went about, and ſtood in for the land again. Paſſing by the N. E. ſide of the iſland, we looked into the bay, but ſeeing no veſſel there, and it blowing a ſtiff gale, we held on our courſe. On Monday the 28th, we croſſed, for the fourth time, the equinoxial line, getting again into north latitude.

On Wedneſday the 13th of April, we paſſed a great quantity of gulph weed, and on Tueſday the 19th, perceiving the water to be diſcoloured, we ſounded, but could find no bottom. On the 24th, at five o'clock, A. M. we came in ſight of Cape Pico, bearing N. N. E. diſtant 18 leagues; and at noon, by obſervation, we found Fyal to lie in latitude 38 deg. 20 min. north, and in 28 deg. 30 min. weſt longitude from London.

On Wedneſday the 11th of May, we ſaw the Savage Sloop of war Captain Hammond, in chace of a ſloop, at which he fired ſeveral guns. On this we alſo fired, and brought her to. She belonged to Liverpool, was called the Jenny, and commanded by Robert Chriſtian. Captain Hammond informed us, that when he firſt ſaw her, ſhe was in company with an Iriſh wherry, and that as ſoon as they diſcovered him, they took different ways: the wherry hauled the wind, and the Jenny bore away. At firſt he ſtood after the wherry, but finding he gained no ground, he bore away after the Jenny, who probably would likewiſe have outſailed him, and eſcaped, had we not brought her to. She was laden with tea, brandy and other goods, from Roſcoe in France. Her brandy and tea were in ſmall kegs and bags. Captain Wallis detained her, in order to her being ſent to England, as from all appearances, which were ſtrongly againſt her, we judged miſs Jenny to be a ſmuggler; for though ſailing a S. W. courſe, ſhe pretended to be bound to Bergen in Norway. On the 13th, at five o'clock, A. M. the iſlands of Scilly appeared; and on Thurſday the 19th, Captain Wallis landed at Haſtings in Suſſex. On the following day this voyage was happily completed, and the circumnavigation of the globe ſucceſsfully accompliſhed; for on Friday the 20th, the Dolphin came to an anchor in the Downs, having been 637 days from the time that ſhe took her departure from Plymouth Sound. As the main end propoſed by this arduous and hazardous undertaking was to make diſcoveries, Captain Wallis, when navigating thoſe parts of the South Sea, which were imperfectly known, that nothing might eſcape him, conſtantly laid-to every night, and made ſail only in the day; notwithſtanding which conſiderable delay in ſailing, he accompliſhed his voyage a month and a day ſooner than his predeceſſor had done in the ſame circumnavigation. The ill health which the Captain complains of almoſt through the voyage, may ſerve as a ſufficient apology for the want of a more copious information in his narrative, concerning the places which he viſited, particularly Otaheite, the Indian name of which he does not mention. In the relations of this commander, we ſee little of that watchful attention, curioſity, and ardent deſire, to "catch the manners living as they riſe," which were poſſeſſed by Captain Carteret, and which appear ſo eminently conſpicuous in Captain Cook, wherever he is, and in whatever manner he is engaged; yet in juſtice to the reſpectable character of Captain Wallis, we muſt obſerve, that he conſtantly and indefatigably purſued the grand object of his voyage; and if we conſider his nautical abilities, his amiable philanthropy, apparent in his conduct and behaviour to thoſe under his command, together with his judicious obſervations as a mariner, at the ſeveral ports, and the various ſituations of the Dolphin at ſea, we cannot but think he is deſervedly worthy of being placed in the firſt rank of our able and ſkilful circumnavigators.

A NEW, AUTHENTIC, REMARKABLE, and ENTERTAINING
HISTORY and NARRATIVE, of
A VOYAGE Round the WORLD;
UNDERTAKEN and PERFORMED
By that NEGLECTED and GALLANT OFFICER,
Capt. PHILIP CARTERET, Eſq.
In his MAJESTY's Sloop the SWALLOW;
During the Years 1766, 1767, 1768, and 1769.

CONTAINING,

A lively Deſcription of the generous Nature of Captain CARTERET; the Inattention which was ſhewn to his Fitting-out; and his ſcanty Supply of Neceſſaries; together with an affecting and complete Account of the perilous Situation of the SWALLOW, on the weſtern Extremity of the Magellanic Straits; who, notwithſtanding her bad Sailing, dangerous Situations, and ſhattered Condition, without any Marks of Deſpondency from her Company, continued her Voyage, after her Separation from the DOLPHIN, and accompliſhed the Circumnavigation of the Globe; having ſet ſail from Plymouth Sound Auguſt the 22nd, 1766—parted from her Conſort, the DOLPHIN, on the 11th of April, 1767—and anchored at Spithead on the 20th of March, 1769.

The Whole being drawn up from authentic Journals and private Papers, and illuſtrated with a rich Variety of Communications from Captain JOHN HOGG, late of the Royal Navy.

INTRODUCTION.

CAPTAIN Philip Carteret, the hiſtory of whoſe voyage round the world we are about writing, had ſailed with Commodore Byron on his expedition, and ſoon after his return, was appointed to the command of the Swallow Sloop, deſtined to accompany the Dolphin, and Prince Frederick Store-ſhip. The Captain having received his commiſſion, bearing date July the 1ſt, 1766, was ordered to fit out the Swallow, which then lay at Chatham, with all poſſible expedition. This gallant officer deſcribes emphatically, and in a moſt feeling manner, like his predeceſſor, Commodore Anſon, the inattention which was ſhewn to his fitting-out. It had been hinted to him, that he was to go out in the Dolphin, but the amazing diſparity of the two ſhips, and the diſtinguiſhed ſuperiority in the equipment of one to the other, induced him to conclude, that they could not be intended for the ſame duty; for whilſt the Dolphin was furniſhed with every thing requiſite for a long and dangerous navigation, the neglected Swallow Sloop had only a ſcanty ſupply of neceſſaries. Beſides, ſhe was an old veſſel, having been built 30 years, and was by no means fit for a long voyage. Upon her bottom was only a ſlight thin ſheathing, which was not even filled with nails to ſupply the want of a covering, that would more effectually keep out the worm. Captain Carteret obſerving the Swallow to be totally unprovided with many things, which particular ſituations might render abſolutely neceſſary for her preſervation, applied for a forge, ſome iron, a ſmall ſkiff, and ſeveral other things; not one of which articles he could obtain; but was told, that the veſſel and her equipment were very fit for the ſervice ſhe was to perform; though, at the ſame time, ſhe had not a ſingle trinket or toy put on board her, to enable her commander to procure refreſhments from the Indians of the Southern Hemiſphere. Add to all this, there was a deficiency of junk on board, an article eſſentially neceſſary in every voyage; and when application was made for this at Plymouth, the Captain was told, that a ſufficient quantity was put on board the Dolphin. Thus circumſtanced, it cannot be even ſuppoſed, that a commander of Captain Carteret's diſcernment, would think of being a conſort with the Dolphin in her hazardous expedition; and we cannot but credit the declaration of this brave officer, when he tells us, he was therefore confirmed in his opinion, that if the Dolphin was to go round the world, it could never be intended that the Swallow ſhould go farther than Falkland's Iſlands, where the Jaſon, a fine frigate, which was, like the Dolphin ſheathed with copper, and amply equipped, would, in the Captain's opinion, ſupply her place. Nothing can place a commander of ſeamen in a more reſpectable point of view, than his appearing to poſſeſs equanimity and fortitude under the moſt diſheartening circumſtances. Numerous and great as theſe were, Captain Carteret reſolved to ſerve his country in the line of his profeſſion; and therefore proceeded to Plymouth Sound with the Swallow, in company with the Dolphin, under the command of Captain Wallis, and the Prince Frederick Store-ſhip, commanded by Lieutenant James

Brine. While the Swallow lay at this place, not being yet acquainted with his deſtination, Captain Carteret repreſented to Captain Wallis his being in want of junk, who ſent him five hundred weight, a quantity ſo ſmall and inſufficient, that we were ſoon reduced to the diſagreeable neceſſity of cutting off ſome of the cables to ſave our rigging.

CHAP. I.

The Swallow ſails in company with the Dolphin, and Frederic Store-ſhip, from Plymouth Sound, Friday the 22nd of Auguſt, 1766—Paſſage from thence to the Iſland of Madeira—Proceeds on her voyage to the Straits of Magellan—And anchors off Cape Virgin Mary—The bad condition of the Swallow in her navigation through the Straits—With great difficulty reaches Port Famine—Is obliged to continue her voyage, after her commander had requeſted of Captain Wallis to alter her deſtination—On the 11th of April, 1767, is ſeparated from her conſort, the Dolphin, without the leaſt hope of ſeeing her during the remainder of the voyage—The gallant behaviour of Captain Carteret in this alarming ſituation—The run of the Swallow from the weſtern entrance of the Strait of Magellan to the iſland of Maſafuero—Incidents and tranſactions whilſt the ſhip lay off this iſland—Obſervations—She departs from Maſafuero and makes Queen Charlotte's Iſlands—A deſcription of theſe and their inhabitants—An obſtinate ſkirmiſh with the natives of Egmont Iſland deſcribed, with an account of their country, canoes, and weapons.

A. D. 1766. ON Thurſday the 21ſt of Auguſt, our ſhip's company on board the Swallow received two months pay; and the next day, Friday the 22nd, we weighed and made ſail, with the Dolphin and Frederick ſtore-ſhip. We proceeded together without any material occurrence, till the 7th of September, when we came to an anchor in the road of Madeira. On Tueſday the 9th, nine of our prime ſeamen left the ſhip ſecretly, and ſwam on ſhore naked. They left behind them all their clothes; and took only their money, which they had ſecured in handkerchiefs that were tied round their waiſts. They proceeded together till they came very near the ſurf, when one of them, ſomewhat terrified at the daſhing waves, which here break very high on the ſhore, returned to the Swallow, and was taken on board, but the reſt boldly puſhed through. While Captain Carteret was writing to the conſul, entreating his aſſiſtance to recover thoſe brave but imprudent fellows, whoſe loſs would have been ſeverely felt, he received a meſſage, by which he was informed, that they had been found by the natives naked on ſhore; that they had been taken into cuſtody, but would be delivered up to his order. A boat was inſtantly diſpatched to bring them on board, where they cut a moſt ridiculous figure, and ſeemed heartily aſhamed of what they had done. When our noble Captain came upon deck, he appeared pleaſed at ſeeing the marks of contrition in their countenances, and aſked in the mild tone of humanity, what could be their reaſons and motives for quitting the ſhip, and deſerting the ſervice of their country, at the riſk of being devoured by ſharks, or daſhed to pieces by the ſurf againſt the ſhore. To this they replied, that though they had indeed, at ſuch riſks, ventured to ſwim on ſhore, yet they had never entertained a thought of deſerting the ſhip, which they were determined to ſtand by as long as ſhe could ſwim; but that being well aſſured they were going a long voyage, and none being able to tell who might live or who might die, they thought it hard to be deprived of an opportunity of ſpending their own money, and therefore reſolved once more to get a ſkinful of liquor, and then to have ſwam back to the ſhip, which they expected to have done before they were miſſed. The Captain having determined ſecretly not to inflict the puniſhment by which they ſeemed moſt heartily willing to expiate their fault, did not ſcrutinize ſeverely their apology, obſerving only, that with a ſkinful of liquor they would have been in a very unfit condition to ſwim through the ſurf to the ſhip; and, hoping they would expoſe their lives only upon more important occaſions, and that he ſhould in future have no cauſe to complain of their conduct, upon theſe conditions, he would for this time be ſatisfied with that ſhame and regret, which he perceived plainly imprinted on their countenances, and which indicated a proper ſenſe of their miſbehaviour; at the ſame time, he adviſed them to put on their clothes and turn in, being confident they wanted reſt; adding, that as good ſwimmers might probably be wanted in the courſe of our voyage, he was very glad that he knew to whom he might apply. Captain Carteret endeared himſelf very much to theſe men by this act of tenderneſs, and he had ſcarcely diſmiſſed them when he was infinitely gratified by the murmur of ſatisfaction which inſtantly ran through the ſhip's company; and the future conduct of the offenders amply repaid his well timed lenity, there being no ſervice, during all the toils and dangers of the voyage, which they did not perform, with a zeal and alacrity that were much to their honour, and our advantage, as an example to the reſt.

Friday the 12th of September, we ſailed out of the road of Madeira; and were now convinced, we were ſent upon a ſervice, to which the Swallow and her equipment were by no means equal; for this day our commander received from Captain Wallis a copy of his inſtructions, who alſo appointed, in caſe of a ſeparation, Port Famine, in the Strait of Magellan, to be the place of rendezvous. We continued our voyage, without any material incident, till we reached Cape Virgin Mary, where we ſaw the Patagonians, a full account of whom has been given in our hiſtory of the two expeditions performed by Commodore Byron and Captain Wallis, in their circuit round the world; and as the particulars in the narrative before us are the ſame, it will be needleſs to recite them. With much labour, and at no inconſiderable riſk, (for we could but ſeldom make the Swallow tack, without a boat to tow her round) we anchored in Port Famine, on the 28th of December; where we unhung our rudder, and having made it ſomewhat broader, we hoped to obtain an advantage in working the ſhip, but in this particular we were entirely diſappointed.

A. D. 1767. On Tueſday the 17th of February, after having encountered many difficulties and dangers, we ſteered into Iſland Bay; and at this place our commander, in a letter to Captain Wallis, ſet forth in affecting language, the ill condition of the Swallow, requeſting of him to conſider what was beſt for the king's ſervice, whether ſhe ſhould be diſmiſſed, or continue the voyage; to which Captain Wallis returned for anſwer, that as the Lords of the Admiralty had ordered the Swallow on this ſervice, in conjunction with the Dolphin, he did not think himſelf at liberty to alter the deſtination of the former. In conſequence of this reply, founded only on the ſingle opinion of Captain Wallis, we continued to navigate the ſtrait in company with the Dolphin; and as our Captain had paſſed it before, we were ordered to keep a-head and to lead the way, with liberty to anchor and weigh when and where we thought proper; "but (to uſe Captain Carteret's own words) perceiving, ſays he, that the bad ſailing of the Swallow would ſo much retard the Dolphin, as probably to make her loſe the ſeaſon for getting into high ſouthern latitudes, and defeat the intention of the voyage, I propoſed to Captain Wallis, that he ſhould lay the Swallow up in ſome cove or bay, and that I ſhould attend and aſſiſt him with her boats till the ſtrait ſhould be paſſed, which would probably be in much leſs time than if he continued to be retarded by my ſhip; and I urged as an additional advantage that he might complete not only his ſtock of proviſions and ſtores, but his company out of her, and then ſend her back to England, with ſuch of his crew as ſickneſs had rendered unfit for the voyage; propoſing alſo, that in my way home, I would examine the eaſtern coaſt of Patagonia, or attempt ſuch diſcoveries as he ſhould think proper. If this was not approved, and my knowledge of the South Seas was thought neceſſary to the ſucceſs of the voyage, I offered to go with him on board the Dolphin, and give up the Swallow to be commanded by his firſt lieutenant, whoſe duty I would perform during the reſt of the voyage, or to make the voyage myſelf in the Dolphin, if he would take the Swallow back to England: but Captain Wallis was ſtill of opinion, "that the voyage ſhould be proſecuted by the two ſhips jointly, purſuant to the orders that had been given;" but he aſſured Captain Carteret, at the ſame time, that, "in conſideration of the very dangerous condition of the Swallow, the Dolphin ſhould continue to keep company with her as long as it was poſſible, waiting her time, and attending her motions." The generous nature of Captain Carteret our readers will infer, from his not availing himſelf of this aſſurance, when ſtating the conduct of his ſuperior officer in ſo trying an inſtance. By this time the Swallow was become ſo foul, that with all the ſails ſhe could ſet, it was not in her power to make ſo much way as the Dolphin, not even when the latter had only her top-ſails and a reef in them: however, under theſe trying circumſtances, we continued with our companion till the 10th of April, on which day the weſtern entrance of the ſtrait was open, and the great South Sea in ſight. We had hitherto, agreeable to orders, kept a-head, but now, the Dolphin being nearly abreaſt of us, ſhe ſet her fore-ſail, which ſoon carried her a-head of us, and by nine o'clock in the evening ſhe was out of ſight, for when the day cloſed ſhe ſhewed no lights. A fine eaſtern breeze blew at this time, of which, during the night, we made every poſſible uſe, by carrying all our ſmall ſails, even to the top-gallant ſtudding-ſails, by which we were expoſed to great danger.

On Saturday the 11th, notwithſtanding every means had been uſed to come up with the fugitive, yet ſuch was the diſparity of ſailing between the two ſhips, that, at day-break, the top-ſails of the Dolphin could only be ſeen above the horizon; but we could perceive ſhe had ſtudded-ſails ſet; and at nine o'clock we entirely loſt ſight of her, judging ſhe might be then clear of the ſtrait's mouth. The Swallow was now under the land; and in this bad ſailing, ill provided ſhip, having neither a forge, nor a ſingle trinket on board, was our neglected, but gallant officer, deſtined to proceed over the vaſt expanſe of the great Southern Ocean; yet amidſt all theſe diſcouraging circumſtances, no ſigns of deſpondency were viſible among our people, whom the Captain encouraged by telling them, that though the Dolphin was the beſt ſhip, he did not doubt but he ſhould find more than equivalent advantages in their courage, ability, and good conduct. Such an aſcendency over his ſeamen, is a plain proof, how much they revered, confided in, and loved him. From this day, we gave up all hope of ſeeing our conſort again till we ſhould arrive in England, no plan of operation having been ſettled, nor any place of rendezvous appointed, as had been done from England to the ſtrait. At noon, when abreaſt of Cape Pillar, a ſtrong gale from S. W. obliged us to take down our ſmall ſails, and haul cloſe to the wind; ſoon after which we had the mortification to find, that when we had made two boards, we could not weather the land on either tack. The gale increaſed, driving before it a hollow ſwell, and a fog came on, with violent rain, which compelled us to get cloſe under the ſouth-ſhore. We now ſent out our boat in ſearch of Tueſday's Bay, which is ſaid by Sir John Narborough to lie about four leagues within the ſtrait, or to find out any other good anchorage. At five o'clock, P. M. we could not ſee the land, notwithſtanding its mountainous height, though within half a mile of it; and, at ſix, it was ſo dark that we could not ſee half the ſhip's length. Being concerned for the ſafety of our boat, we put out lights, made falſe fires, and fired a gun every half hour; and at laſt ſhe reached the ſhip, but had made no diſcovery either of Tueſday's Bay, or any other anchoring place. During the remainder of the night we made ſail, endeavouring to keep near the ſouth ſhore. The next day, being the 12th, as ſoon as it was light, the boat was ſent out again to explore the ſouth ſhore for an anchoring place; and at five o'clock, P. M. when we almoſt deſpaired of her returning in time, ſaw her ſounding a bay, and ſtood in after her. The maſter ſaid, that we might here ſafely caſt anchor, which we did about ſix o'clock, and then the Captain retired to take ſome reſt. In a few minutes after, he was diſturbed by a univerſal ſhout and tumult among the people upon deck, and the noiſe of thoſe below running to join them. When Captain Carteret came upon deck, the general cry was, the Dolphin! the Dolphin! in a tranſport of ſurprize and joy: but this deluſive appearance ſoon vaniſhed, and proved to be only water forced up, and whirled in the air by a guſt of wind. The people were for a few minutes dejected by their diſappointment, but before the Captain went down, he had the pleaſure to ſee a return of their uſual fortitude and cheerfulneſs. The little bay where we now lay, is about three leagues E. by S. from Cape Pillar, and bears S. by E. four leagues from the iſland which Sir John Narborough called Weſtminſter Hall. The weſtern point of this bay has a reſemblance to a perpendicular oblong ſquare, like the wall of a houſe; within its entrance are three iſlands, and within theſe a very good harbour, with anchorage in between 25 and 30 fathoms, bottom ſoft mud. We anchored without the iſlands, the paſſage on each ſide of them being not more than a cable's length wide. Our ſmall cove is about two cables length broad; and in the inner part is from 16 to 18 fathoms, but where we lay it is deeper. The landing is every where good, with plenty of wood, water, muſcles, and wild geeſe. As a current ſets continually into it, our Captain is of opinion, that it has another communication with the ſea to the ſouth of Cape Deſeada. Our maſter reported, that he went up it four miles in a boat, and could not then be above four miles from the weſtern ocean, yet he ſtill ſaw a wide entrance to the S. W. Here we rode out a very hard gale of wind, and, the ground being very uneven, we expected our cables to be cut in two every minute, yet when we weighed, to our great ſurprize, they did not appear to have been rubbed in any part, though we found it very difficult to heave them clear of the rocks. From the north ſhore of the weſtern end of the ſtrait of Magellan, the land, which is the weſtern coaſt of Patagonia, runs nearly N. and S. being a group of broken iſlands, among which are thoſe laid down by Sharp, by the name of the Duke of York's Iſlands. They are indeed placed by him at a conſiderable diſtance from the coaſt, but if there had been many iſlands in that ſituation, the Dolphin, the Tamar, or the Swallow, muſt have ſeen them. Till we came into this latitude, we had tolerable weather, and little or no current in any direction, but when northward of 48 deg. we had a current ſetting ſtrongly to the north, ſo that probably we then opened the great bay, which is ſaid to be 90 leagues deep. Here we found a prodigious ſwell from the N. W. and the winds generally blew from the ſame quarter.

On Wedneſday the 15th, we once more got again abreaſt of Cape Pillar; but between five and ſix o'clock, A. M. juſt as we opened Cape Deſeada, the wind ſuddenly ſhifting, and its exceſſive violence produced a ſea ſo dreadfully hollow, that we were in the utmoſt danger of ſinking; yet we could not ſhorten ſail, it being neceſſary to carry all we could ſpread, for fear of running foul of ſome rocky iſlands, which, in Narborough's voyage, are called the Iſlands of Direction: nor could we now go back into the ſtrait, without the danger of running foul of a lee-ſhore, towards which the ſhip ſettled very faſt, notwithſtanding our utmoſt efforts. Thus circumſtanced, we were obliged to ſtave the water-caſks on and between the decks, in order that ſhe might carry better ſail, and by this expedient we eſcaped the threatened deſtruction. We now got into the open ſea, after a very providential deliverance, for had the wind again ſhifted, the Swallow muſt have been unavoidably loſt. Having got clear of the Strait of Magellan, we ſteered to the northward along the coaſt of Chili, intending to make the iſland of Juan Fernandes, or Maſafuero, that we might increaſe our ſtock of water, which at this time amounted only to between four and five and twenty tons, a quantity not ſufficient for ſo long a voyage as was probably before us. On the 16th, the wind, which had hitherto been favourable, on a ſudden ſhifted, and continued contrary till Saturday the 18th. We had now ſailed nearly 100 leagues from the ſtrait's mouth when our latitude was 48 deg. 39 min. ſouth, and our longitude, by account, 4 deg. 33 min. weſt from Cape Pillar. From this time to the 8th of May, the wind continued unfavourable, and blew an inceſſant ſtorm, with ſudden guſts ſtill more violent, accompanied at intervals, with dreadful thunder, lightning, rain, and hail. In our paſſage along this coaſt we ſaw abundance of ſea birds; among which were two ſorts, one like a pigeon of a dark brown colour, called by ſeamen the Cape of Good Hope hen, and ſometimes the black gull; the other pintado birds, which are prettily ſpotted with black and white, and conſtantly on the wing; but they appear frequently as if walking on the water, like the peterels; and theſe our ſailors call Mother Carey's Chickens. During nine days we experienced an uninterrupted courſe of dangers, fatigues and misfortunes. The Swallow worked and ſailed very ill, the weather was dark and tempeſtuous; and the boats, which the exigencies of the ſhip kept conſtantly employed, were in continual danger of being loſt, as well by the gales which blew conſtantly, as by the ſudden guſts which ruſhed frequently upon us, with a violence that can ſcarcely be conceived: thoſe off the land were ſo boiſterous, that not daring to ſhew any canvaſs, the ſhip lay to under her bare poles, and the water at times was torn up, and whirled round in the air, much higher than the maſts heads. This diſtreſs was the more ſevere, by its being unexpected; for Captain Carteret had experienced very different weather in thoſe parts, when he accompanied Commodore Byron: it was then the latter end of April when he was near this coaſt, ſo that this change of climate could not be owing to a change of ſeaſon. On Friday the 1ſt of May, the wind ſhifted from the N. W. to the S. W. and brought the ſhip up with her head right againſt the vaſt ſea, which the N. W. wind had raiſed; for about an hour it blew, if poſſible, ſtronger than ever; and at every pitch the Swallow made, the end of her bowſprit was under water, and the ſurge broke over the forecaſtle as far aft as the main maſt, in the ſame manner as it would have broke over a rock, ſo that there was the greateſt reaſon to apprehend ſhe would founder. With all her defects we muſt acknowledge ſhe was a good ſea boat; if ſhe had not been ſo, it would have been impoſſible for her to have outlived this ſtorm, in which, as on ſeveral other occaſions, we experienced the benefit of the bulk-heads, which we had fixed on the fore-part of the half deck, and to the after part of the fore-caſtle. On the 3rd, at day-break we found the rudder chain broken, which made us, as we had often done, moſt feelingly regret the want of a forge. However we made the beſt ſhift we could; and on the 4th, the weather being more moderate, we mended the ſails that had been ſplit, and repaired our rigging. On the 5th, a hurricane from the N. by W. and N. N. W. brought us again under our courſes, and the ſhip was toſſed about with ſuch violence that we had no command of her. In this ſtorm two of our chain-plates were broken, and we continued toiling in a confuſed hollow ſea till midnight. On the 6th, at two o'clock, A. M. we were taken right a-head by a furious ſquall at weſt, which was very near carrying all by the board, before we could get the ſhip round. With this gale we ſtood north, and the carpenters, in the forenoon, fixed new chain-plates in the place of thoſe which had been broken; and on this occaſion we could not refrain from again lamenting the want of a forge and iron. We held on our courſe till the 7th, when, at eight o'clock, A. M. the wind returned to its old quarter, the N. W. attended with unſettled weather.

On Friday the 8th, the wind having come to the ſouth, we were favoured with a fine day, being the firſt we had ſeen ſince we took our departure from the Straits of Magellan. At noon we obſerved in latitude 38 deg. 39 min. ſouth, and were about 5 deg. to the weſtward of Cape Pillar. On the 9th, we were in ſight of the iſland of Maſafuero; and on the 10th made that of Juan Fernandes. In the afternoon, we ſailed round the north end of it, and opened Cumberland Bay. We were ſurprized, not knowing that the Spaniards had fortified this iſland, to ſee a conſiderable number of men about the beach, alſo a houſe and four pieces of cannon near the water ſide; and upon the ſide of the hill, about 300 yards farther from the ſea, a fort with Spaniſh colours flying. We ſaw ſcattered round it, and on different parts of the iſland, more than 30 houſes, and much cattle feeding on the brow of the hills, which ſeemed to be cultivated, many ſpots being divided by encloſures from the reſt. We ſaw alſo two large boats lying on the beach. The fort, which is faced with ſtone, has 18 or 20 embraſures, and within it a long houſe, which we ſuppoſed to be barracks for the garriſon. The wind blew in ſuch violent guſts out of the bay, as to prevent our getting very near it; and, in the Captain's opinion, it is impoſſible to work a ſhip into this bay, when the wind blows hard from the ſouth. We now ſtood to the weſtward, and were followed by one of the boats, which put off from the ſhore, and rowed towards us; but ſhe ſoon returned, on obſerving that the heavy ſqualls made us lie at a conſiderable diſtance from the land. Having opened weſt-bay, we obſerved on the eaſt part, what we took for a guard-houſe, and two pieces of cannon on carriages near it. We now wore, and ſtood again for Cumberland Bay, and the boat again put off towards us, but night coming on, we loſt ſight of her. As we had only Engliſh colours on board we hoiſted none, as we could not ſuppoſe the Spaniards well diſpoſed to receive Engliſh viſitants. Thus diſappointed of the refreſhments, of which we ſtood in the moſt preſſing need, our Captain thought it more adviſeable to proceed to the neighbouring iſland of Maſafuero, where we arrived on Tueſday the 12th, and on Friday the 15th, choſe our ſtation on the eaſtern ſide, anchoring in the ſame place where Commodore Byron lay in the Dolphin, about two years before. On the 16th, we were driven from our moorings and kept out at ſea all night. In the morning the cutter was ſent for water, and the ſhip got near the ſhore, where ſhe ſoon received ſeveral caſks, and diſpatched the cutter back for more. The long boat was likewiſe appointed to this ſervice, as well as to carry proviſions to thoſe on ſhore. In the afternoon the boats being obſerved running along the ſhore, the ſhip followed and took them in, but not without their ſuſtaining ſo much damage by the violence of the ſea, that the carpenters were obliged to work all night in repairing them.

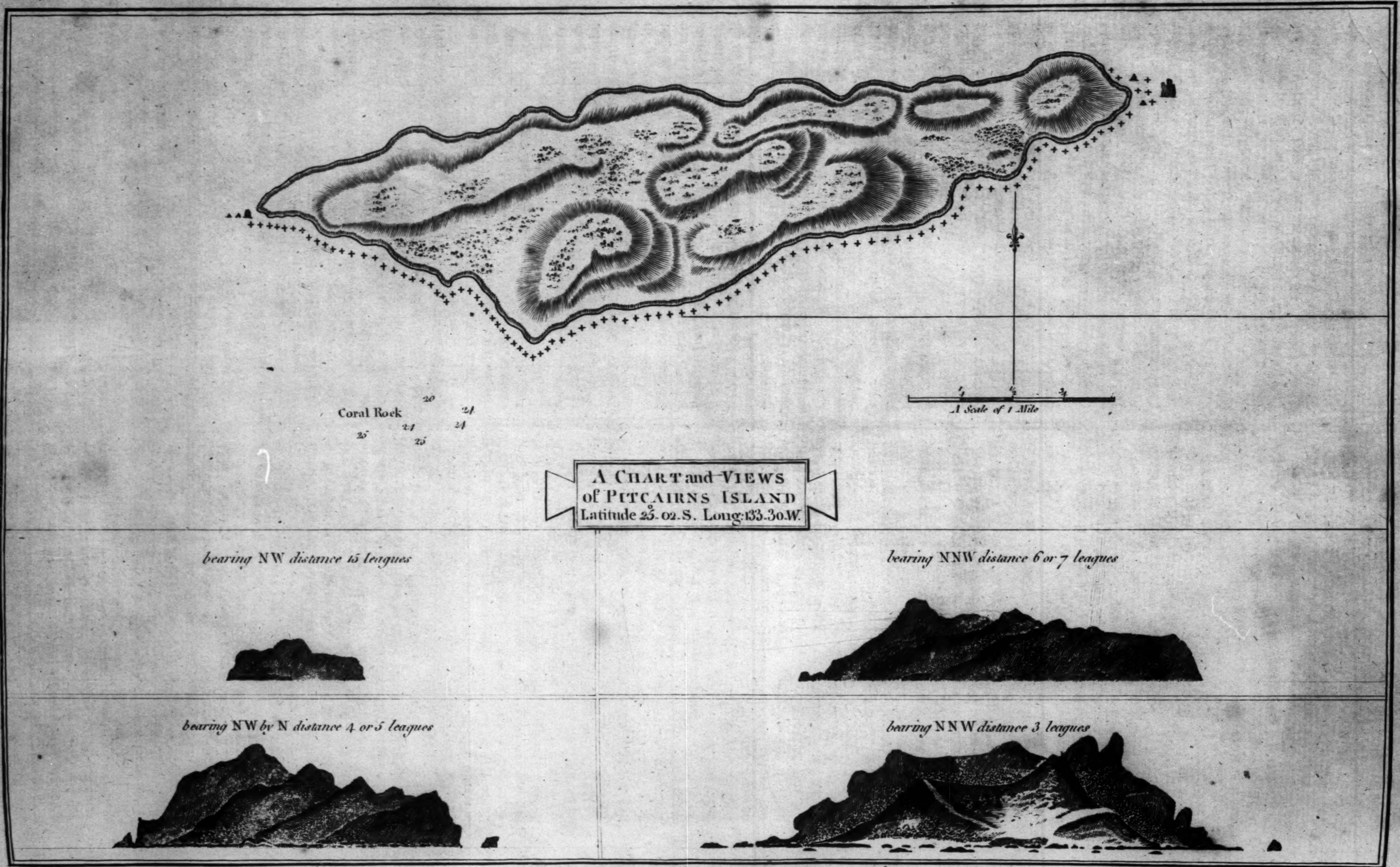
On Sunday the 17th, the lieutenant, Mr. Eraſmus Gower, was ſent again with the cutter to procure water, and the ſurf being very great, three of the ſeamen ſwam on ſhore with the empty caſks, in order to fill them, and bring them back to the boat; but the ſurf ſoon after roſe ſo high, and broke with ſuch fury on the ſhore, as rendered it utterly impracticable for them to return. A very dark and tempeſtuous night ſucceeded; the poor fellows were ſtark naked, and cut off from all means of procuring aſſiſtance from the boat, which, to eſcape the fury of a gathering ſtorm, was obliged to return to the ſhip, into which it was ſafely received but the minute before the impending ſtorm ruſhed forth, by which, had ſhe been upon the water, ſhe muſt have been inevitably ſunk, and every ſoul on board periſhed. The three naked, defenceleſs mariners on ſhore, during the night, were doomed to "bide the pelting of the pitileſs ſtorm," without clothes, without ſhelter, without food, and without fire. To augment their diſtreſs, a party was then on ſhore, and had erected a tent; but the darkneſs of the night, and the inpenetrable thickneſs of the woods, cut off all poſſibility of receiving ſuccour from them. Being thus reduced to an entire ſtate of nature, without the habits which render that ſtate ſupportable, in order to preſerve a living portion of animal heat, they lay one upon another, each man alternately placing himſelf between the other two. At the firſt dawn of light, they made their way along the ſhore, in ſearch of the tent; an attempt to penetrate through the country being conſidered as fruitleſs. In this circuit they were frequently ſtopped by high, ſteep, bluff points, which they were obliged to ſwim round at a conſiderable diſtance; for, if they had not taken a ſufficient compaſs, they would have been daſhed to pieces againſt the rocks, in avoiding which they were every moment in danger of being devoured by ſharks. About ten o'clock in the morning they joined their comrades, being almoſt periſhed with hunger and cold. They were received with the moſt cordial welcome, their ſhipmates ſharing with them their cloaths and proviſions; and it is hard to ſay of which they ſtood moſt in need. On the 18th, they were brought on board the ſhip, where the captain gave orders, that they ſhould have all proper refreſhments, and remain in their hammocks the whole night; and the next day we had the pleaſure to find they were perfectly hearty, nor did they ſuffer any future inconvenience from the extreme hardſhips they had gone through. Theſe men were three of the nine honeſt fellows, who had ſwam naked from the ſhip, when ſhe lay in the road of Madeira, to get a ſkinful of liquor. Than which nothing could paint more ſtrongly the general character of Engliſh ſailors, which may perhaps be defined to conſiſt in a contempt of danger, a love of ſtrong liquor, and a girl, and an averſion to be poſſeſſed of any coin, when embarked on a long voyage. This day the weather was moderate, and in the evening we were within half a mile of the anchoring ground from whence we had been driven; but the wind ſuddenly failing, and a current making againſt us, we could not reach it. During the whole night we had a perfect calm, ſo that in the morning of the 19th, we found the current and the ſwell had driven us no leſs than nine miles from the land; but a breeze ſpringing up, we kept off and on near the ſhore, and in the interim ſent the cutter for water, who as ſhe rowed along ſhore caught as much fiſh with hook and line as ſerved all the ſhip's company, which was ſome alleviation of our diſappointment.

On Wedneſday the 20th, we happily regained our ſtation, and came again to an anchor, at two cables length from the beach, in 18 fathoms water, and moored with a ſmall anchor in ſhore. We now ſent out the long boat, who in a ſhort time procured fiſh enough to ſupply all our company on board. The two following days we had exceeding bad weather. In the morning of the 21ſt, the wind blew with ſuch violence along ſhore, that we frequently drove, though we had not leſs than 200 fathoms of cable out: however we rode out the ſtorm without damage, but the rain was ſo violent, and the ſea ran ſo high, that nothing could be done with the boats, which was the more mortifying, as it was for the ſake of completing our water, that we had endured almoſt inceſſant labour, for five days and nights, to regain the ſituation in which we now lay. At a ſhort interval, when the wind became more moderate, we ſent three men aſhore, abreaſt of the ſhip, to kill ſeals, and to make oil of their fat, for burning in the lamps, and other uſes. On the 22nd, in the morning, the wind blew very hard, as it had done all night, but, being off the land, we ſent the boats away at day-break, and about ten o'clock they returned with each of them a load of water, and a great number of pintado birds, or peterels. Theſe were obtained from the people on ſhore, who told them, that when a gale of wind happened in the night, theſe birds flew faſter into the fire than they could well take them out; and that, during the gale of laſt night, they got no leſs than 700 of them. Throughout this day the boats were all employed in bringing water on board; but the ſurf was ſo great that ſeveral of the caſks were ſtaved and loſt; however by the 23rd, a few only were wanting to complete our ſtock. The weather now grew ſo bad that the Captain was impatient to ſail: he therefore gave orders for all our people on ſhore to come on board. At this time the Swallow again drove from her moorings, dragging the anchor after her, till ſhe got into deep water. We now brought the anchor up, and lay under bare poles, waiting for the boats. In the evening the long boat with ten men were taken on board; but there yet remained the cutter with the lieutenant and 18 men; which brings to our recollection a very ſimilar ſituation, in which thoſe on board the Centurion, under Commodore Anſon, were thrown off the iſland of Tinian. The weather becoming more moderate about midnight, the Swallow ſtood in for land; and on the 24th, at ten o'clock, A. M. we were very near the ſhore, but the cutter was not to be ſeen; about noon, however, ſhe was happily diſcovered cloſe under land, and in three hours time we took her crew on board. The Lieutenant reported, that the night before he had attempted to come off, but that he had ſcarcely cleared the ſhore, when a ſudden guſt of wind almoſt filled the boat with water, which narrowly eſcaped filling: that, all hands bailing with the utmoſt activity, they fortunately cleared her; that he then made for the land again, which with great difficulty he regained, and having left a ſufficient number of men with the boat, to watch, and keep her free from water, he with the reſt of the people went on ſhore. That, having paſſed the night in a ſtate of inexpreſſible anxiety and diſtreſs, they looked out for the ſhip with the firſt dawn of day, and ſeeing nothing of her, concluded that ſhe had foundered in the ſtorm, which they had never ſeen exceeded. They did not however give way to gloomy reflections, nor ſit down in torpid deſpair, but began immediately to clear the ground near the beach of buſhes and weeds, and to cut down ſeveral trees, of which they made rollers to aſſiſt them in hauling up the boat on land, in order to ſecure her, intending, as they had no hope of the ſhip's return, to wait till the ſummer ſeaſon, and then attempt to make the iſland of Juan Fernandes: but theſe thoughts were loſt in their happy deliverance. Having thus once more got our people and boats ſafe on board, we made ſail from this turbulent climate; and thought ourſelves fortunate not to have left any thing behind except the wood, which had been cut for firing.

It is a common opinion, that upon this coaſt the winds are conſtantly from the ſouth to the S. W. though Frazier mentions his having had ſtrong gales and high ſeas from the N. N. W. and N. W. quarter, which was unhappily our caſe. The iſland of Maſafuero, which lies in latitude 33 deg. 45 min. ſouth, longitude 80 deg. 46 min. weſt from the meridian of London, is of a triangular form, about 23 miles in circumference; being weſt of Juan Fernandes; both of the iſlands are nearly in the ſame latitude. At a diſtance it has the appearance of a high mountainous rock. The South part is much the higheſt, and on the north end are ſeveral clear ſpots, which perhaps might admit of cultivation. On the coaſt in many places is good anchorage, particularly on the weſt-ſide, at about a mile from the ſhore, in 20 fathoms, and at nearly three miles, in 40 and 45 fathoms, with a fine black ſand at the bottom. The author of the account of Lord Anſon's voyage mentions a reef of rocks, which he ſays, "runs off the eaſtern point of the iſland, about two miles in length, which may be ſeen by the ſea's breaking over them," but in this he is miſtaken; though indeed there is a reef of rocks or ſhoal running off the weſtern-ſide, near the ſouth-end thereof. He is not leſs miſtaken with reſpect to the diſtance of this iſland from Juan Fernandes, and its direction, for he makes the former 22 leagues, and the latter W. by S. but we found the diſtance one third more, and the direction is due weſt; for, as we have before obſerved, the latitude of both iſlands is nearly the ſame. On the S. W. part of the iſland there is a remarkable perforated rock, which is a good mark to come to an anchor, on the weſtern-ſide, and here is the beſt bank of any about the place. To the northward of the hole in the rock, diſtant about a mile and a half, is a low point of land; and from hence runs the above-mentioned reef, in the direction of W. by S. to the diſtance of about three quarters of a mile, where the ſea continually breaks upon it. To come to anchor, you muſt run in till the hole in the rock is ſhut in, about a cable's length upon this low point of land, then bearing S. by E. half E. and you may anchor in 20 and 22 fathoms, fine black ſand and ſhells. Anchorage may likewiſe be found on the other ſides of the iſland, particularly off the north point, in 14 and 15 fathoms, with fine ſand. Plenty of wood and water may be procured all round the iſland, but not without much labour and difficulty, by reaſon of a great quantity of ſtones, and large fragments of rocks, which have fallen down from the high land, and upon theſe ſuch a violent ſurf breaks that a boat cannot approach ſafely within a cable's length of the ſhore; ſo that there is no landing here but by ſwimming from the boat, and then mooring her without the rocks; nor is there any method of getting off the wood and water, but by hauling them to the boat with ropes; but Captain Carteret obſerves, there are many places where it would be very eaſy to make a commodious landing by building a temporary wharf, which it would be worth while even for a ſingle ſhip to do, if ſhe was to continue any time at the iſland. Here we found the ſeals ſo numerous, that, ſays the Captain, I verily think, if many thouſands of them were killed in the night, they would not be miſſed in the morning. Theſe animals yielded excellent train oil, and their hearts and plucks are very good eating, being in taſte ſomewhat like thoſe of a hog; and their ſkins are covered with the fineſt fur of the kind. In this iſland are many birds, among others vaſt numbers of pintadoes, and ſome very large hawks. While the tent was erected on ſhore, a kingfiſher was caught, which weighed 87 pounds, and was five feet and a half long. Goats are to be found in great abundance, and may be eaſily caught. We had not an opportunity to botanize, or ſearch after vegetable productions, but we ſaw ſeveral leaves of the mountain cabbage, which is a proof that the tree is a native of this place. The iſland is ſurrounded with abundance of fiſh, in ſuch plenty, that a boat's-crew, with three hooks and lines, may obtain as much in a ſhort time as will ſerve 100 people: among others we caught cray-fiſh, cod, hallibut, cavallies, and excellent coal-fiſh. The ſharks were ſo ravenous, that when we were ſounding one of them ſwallowed the lead, by which we hauled him above water, but as he then diſgorged it, we loſt him. So much for this iſland of Maſafuero, of which we have given ſeveral particular and full accounts in former parts of this work.

When we departed from hence, on Sunday the 24th of May, we ſailed to the north, hoping to fall in with the S. E. trade wind; but having run farther to the northward than was at firſt propoſed, we looked out for the iſlands of St. Ambroſe, and St. Felix, or St. Paul, which are laid down in Green's charts, publiſhed in the year 1753; but, as was ſuppoſed, we miſſed them by attending to the erroneons poſition which is aſcribed to them in Robinſon's navigation, who has laid down the iſland of St. Ambroſe in 25 deg. 30 min. ſouth latitude, and in 82 deg. 20 min. weſt longitude; but we might perhaps go too far to the northward, for we ſaw great numbers of birds and fiſh, which are indications of land not far diſtant. We continued ſteering between the latitude of 25 deg. 50 min. and 30 ſec. in ſearch of thoſe iſlands, till we had proceeded 5 deg. to the weſtward of our departure; we then directed our courſe more to the ſouthward, and found ourſelves in the latitude of 27 deg. 20 min. In this parallel we had light airs and foul winds, with a ſtrong northerly current, which led Captain Carteret to conjecture, that he was near the land which Roggewein viſited in the year 1722, and called Eaſtern Land, and which ſome have ſuppoſed to be the ſame as a diſcovery before made by Davis, which in the charts it called Davis's Land; and in this conjecture concerning Eaſtern Land our commander has been found to be perfectly right, as Captain Cook happened to fall in with this ſpot in the year 1774; and by the poſition he aſſigns it, our navigator appears to have been not more than a degree to the ſouthward of it. It was now, being June the 17th, the depth of winter, and we had hard gales with heavy ſeas that frequently brought us under our courſes; and though we were near the tropic of capricorn, the weather was dark, hazy, and cold, with frequent thunder, lightning, ſleet, and rain. The ſun was above the horizon about ten hours in the four and twenty, but many days were frequently paſſed without ſeeing his face; and the weather was ſo thick, that when he was below it, the darkneſs was inexpreſſibly horrible; and this dreadful gloom in the day deprived us for a conſiderable time of an opportunity to make an obſervation; notwithſtanding which dangerous circumſtance we were obliged to carry all the ſail we could ſpread both day and night, as the ſhip making way ſo ſlowly, and the voyage being ſo long, we were expoſed to the danger of periſhing by famine.

On Thurſday the 2nd of July, in the evening, we diſcovered land to the northward of us; which appeared like a great rock riſing out of the ſea. It is ſituated in latitude 25 deg. 2 min. ſouth, and in 133 deg. 21 min. weſt longitude. It is an iſland well covered with trees, and down the ſide of it runs a ſtream of freſh water. The height of it is ſo immenſe, that we ſaw it at the diſtance of more than 15 leagues. We judged it to be not more than five miles in circumference, and we could perceive no ſigns of its being inhabited. The Captain was deſirous of ſending out a boat to attempt a landing, but the ſurf, which, at this ſeaſon, broke upon it with great violence, rendered it impracticable. We ſaw a great number of ſea birds at ſomewhat leſs than a mile from the ſhore, and the ſea here ſeemed not deſtitute of fiſh. Having been diſcovered by a ſon of Major Pitcairn, we called it Pitcairn's Iſland. This young gentleman was afterwards loſt in the Aurora, in her paſſage to the Eaſt Indies; and his father, major of the marines, fell in the action of Bunker's Hill, and died in the arms of another of his ſons. While in the neighbourhood of this iſland, we ſeldom had a gale to the eaſtward, ſo that we were prevented from keeping in a high ſouth latitude, and were continually driving to the northward. The winds chiefly blew from the S. S. W. and W. N. W. and the weather was extremely tempeſtuous, with long rolling billows from the ſouthward, larger and higher than any we had ſeen before. On the 4th, the ſhip admitted a great quantity of water, and was otherwiſe in a very crazy condition, from the rough ſeas ſhe had encountered. Our ſails alſo, being much worn, were continually ſplitting; and our company who had hitherto enjoyed good health, began to be afflicted with the ſcurvy. When the ſhip lay in the Straits of Magellan, Captain Carteret had cauſed a ſmall awning to be made, and covered it with a clean painted canvaſs, which he had for a floor-cloth in his cabin; and in this he caught ſo much rain water, at a very little expence of trouble and attendance, that the crew were never put to ſhort allowance of this neceſſary article during the voyage. This method of obtaining rain water we have already particularly deſcribed, and is conſtantly practiſed by the Spaniſh ſhips, which annually croſs the South Sea from the Manilas to Acapulco, and in their return. The awning alſo afforded



A CHART and VIEWS of PITCAIRNS ISLAND

Latitude 25°. 02. S. Long: 133. 30. W.

Coral Rock
20
21
21
21
25
25
¼
½
¾
A Scale of 1 Mile
bearing NW distance 15 leagues
bearing NNW distance 6 or 7 leagues
bearing NW by N distance 4 or 5 leagues
bearing NNW distance 3 leagues

London. Published by Alex.r Hogg at the Kings Arms No 16 Paternoster Row

BRITISH
7 FE 30
MUSEUM

ſhelter from the inclemency of the weather. The ſurgeon likewiſe mixed a ſmall quantity of ſpirits of vitriol with the water, which was thus preſerved; and to theſe precautions the Captain imputes the eſcape which our men had ſo long had from the ſcurvy. On Saturday the 11th, in latitude 22 deg. ſouth, and longitude 141 deg. weſt, another ſmall, low, flat iſland was diſcovered, which we called the Biſhop of Oſnaburgh's Iſland, in honour of his preſent majeſty's ſecond ſon; and as Captain Wallis had given the ſame name to another iſland, that prince holds two honorary fiefs in the South Sea. This low piece of land, which appeared to be almoſt level with the water's edge, is well cloathed with verdure; but being to the ſouth, and directly to the windward of us, we could not fetch it.

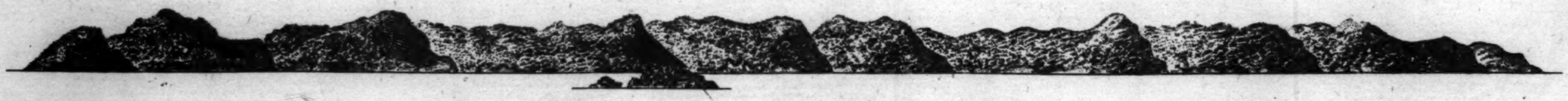
On Sunday the 12th, we ſaw two more ſmall iſlands, on one of which a boat's crew landed, and found birds ſo tame, as to be taken by the hand. They were both covered with green trees, but appeared to be uninhabited. The ſouthermoſt, with which we were cloſe in, is a ſlip of land in the form of a half moon, low, flat, and ſandy. From the ſouth end thereof a reef runs out to the diſtance of about half a mile, whereon the ſea breaks with great fury. Notwithſtanding its pleaſant aſpect it affords neither vegetables nor water; and the ſame may be ſaid of the other iſland, which is diſtant from it about five leagues. One of them lies in latitude 20 deg. 38 min. ſouth, longitude 146 deg. weſt: the other in 20 deg. 34 min. ſouth, longitude 146 deg. 15 min. weſt, and we called them the Duke of Glouceſter's Iſlands. They may be the land ſeen by Quiros, as the ſituation is nearly the ſame; but however this be, we went to the ſouthward of it, and the long billows we had here, convinced us that no land was near us in that direction. Captain Carteret was peculiarly unfortunate in having ſeen four iſlands, not one of which was capable of yielding the leaſt refreſhment to the ſhip's company, in the important articles of fruit and water; in conſequence of which the men became very ſickly, and the ſcurvy made ſwift progreſs among them. The wind here being to the eaſtward, we hauled to the ſouthward again: and on the 13th, in the evening, as we were ſteering W. S. W. we loſt the long rolling billows in latitude 21 deg. 7 min. ſouth, and got them again on the 14th, at ſeven o'clock, A. M. in latitude 21 deg. 43 min. ſouth, longitude 149 deg. 48 min. weſt; from whence our Captain conjectured, that there was then ſome land, not far off, to the ſouthward. From this day to Tueſday the 16th, the winds were variable, and blew very hard, with violent guſts, one of which was very near being fatal to us. Theſe were accompanied with thick hazy weather, and heavy rain. We were then in latitude 22 deg. ſouth, and in 70 deg. 30 min. weſt of our departure. After ſome time the wind ſettled, in the W. S. W. which drove us again to the northward, ſo that on Monday the 20th, we were in latitude 19 deg. ſouth, and in 75 deg. 30 min. weſt of our departure. On the 22nd, we were in latitude 18 deg. ſouth, longitude 161 deg. weſt of London; and 1800 leagues weſtward of the continent of America; yet in all this run not any ſigns of a continent were diſcovered. As the ſcurvy was now daily increaſing among our people, and finding all our endeavours, from the badneſs of the weather and the defects of the Swallow, to keep in a high ſouthern latitude, were effectual, Captain Carteret thought it abſolutely neceſſary to fix upon ſuch a courſe as might moſt probably tend to the preſervation of the veſſel and her crew. In conſequence of this reſolution, inſtead of attempting a S. E. courſe, in which, conſidering our condition, and the advanced ſeaſon of the year, it was ſcarcely poſſible to ſucceed, we bore away to the northward, with a view of getting a trade wind; but at the ſame time keeping ſuch a track, as, if the charts were to be truſted, was moſt likely to bring us to ſome iſland, where refreſhments, of which we ſtood ſo much in need, might be obtained; we propoſed then, if the ſhip could be put into a proper condition, to have proceeded at the proper ſeaſon to the ſouthward, and to have attempted farther diſcoveries; and ſhould a continent have been diſcovered, and a ſupply of proviſions procured, we, in this caſe, intended to keep along the coaſt to the ſouthward, till the ſun had croſſed the equinoxial line; and then, after having got into a high ſouthern latitude, to have ſteered either weſt about to the Cape of Good Hope, or returned to the eaſtward, and in our way to England, to have touched, if neceſſary, at Falkland's Iſlands. Wedneſday the 22nd, in latitude 16 deg. ſouth, and not before, we found the true trade wind; and to Saturday the 25th, we had foul weather, hard gales, and a great ſea to the eaſtward. We were now in latitude 12 deg. 15 min. ſouth, and ſeeing great flocks of birds, we were inclined to think, that we were near ſome land, particularly ſeveral iſlands, one of which was called by Commodore Byron, the iſland of Danger; none of which, however, could we ſee. On the 26th, in the morning, we were in latitude 10 deg. ſouth, and in 167 deg. weſt longitude. We kept nearly in the ſame parallel, hoping to fall in with Solomon's Iſlands, this being the latitude in which the ſouthermoſt of them is laid down. At this time we had a ſtrong trade wind, with violent ſqualls, and much rain.

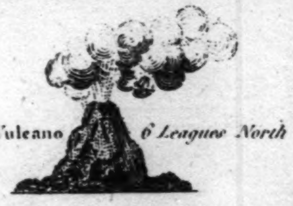
On Monday the 3rd of Auguſt, we were 5 deg. to the weſtward of the ſituation of thoſe iſlands in the charts; and about 2100 leagues diſtant from the continent of America. We were this day in latitude 10 deg. 18 min. ſouth, and in 177 deg. 30 min. eaſt longitude by account; yet it was not our good fortune to fall in with any land; but probably we might paſs near ſome, which the hazineſs of the weather prevented our ſeeing; for in this run great numbers of ſea-birds were frequently hovering about the ſhip: however, obſerves Captain Carteret, "as Commodore Byron, in his laſt voyage ſailed over the northern limits of that part of the ocean in which the iſlands of Solomon are ſaid to lie, and as I ſailed over the ſouthern limits without ſeeing them, there is great reaſon to conclude, that, if there are any ſuch iſlands, their ſituation, in all our charts, is erroneouſly laid down." This day the current was obſerved to ſet ſtrongly to the ſouthward, though it had hitherto, from the Straits of Magellan, ran in a contrary direction, whence we concluded, that the paſſage between New Zealand and New Holland opened here in this latitude. The difficulties which our able navigator had to contend with, will appear to have been as great as the beſt ſeamen and the firmeſt minds were capable of making head againſt, from the following deſcription which he gives of his perplexity at this time. "Our ſtock of log-lines, obſerves the Captain, was now nearly exhauſted, though we had already converted all our fiſhing lines to the ſame uſe. I was for ſome time in perplexity how to ſupply this defect; but upon a very diligent enquiry found that we had, by chance, a very few fathoms of thick untarred rope. This, which in our ſituation, was an ineſtimable treaſure, I ordered to be untwiſted; but as the yarns were found to be too thick for our purpoſe, it became neceſſary to pick them into oakham; and when this was done, the moſt difficult part of the work remained; for this oakham could not be ſpun into yarn, till by combing it was brought into hemp, its original ſtate. This was not ſeamen's work, and if it had, we ſhould have been at a loſs how to perform it for want of combs, and it was neceſſary to make theſe before we could try our ſkill in making hemp. Upon this trying occaſion we were again ſenſible of the danger to which we were expoſed by the want of a forge; neceſſity, however, the fruitful mother of invention, ſuggeſted an expedient. The armourer was ſet to work to file nails down to a ſmooth point, with which was produced a tolerable ſuccedaneum for a comb; and one of the quarter-maſters was found ſufficiently ſkilled in the uſe of this inſtrument to render the oakham ſo ſmooth and even, that we contrived to ſpin it into yarn, as fine as our coarſe implements would admit; and thus we made tolerable log-lines, although we found it much more difficult than to make cordage of our old cables, after they had been converted into junk, which was an expedient we had been obliged to practiſe long before. We alſo had long before uſed all our ſowing ſail-twine; and if (knowing the quantity with which I had been ſupplied was altogether inadequate to the wants of ſuch a voyage) I had not taken the whole quantity that had been put on board to repair the ſeine into my own cuſtody, this deficiency might have been fatal to us all.

We had now ſailed over upwards of 110 deg. of longitude, in a dull ſhattered veſſel, that, on account of her bad condition would ſcarcely anſwer the helm, nor had we met with any ſpot of earth which would afford us effectual relief. The ſcurvy continued to make great progreſs; inſomuch, that thoſe hands which were not rendered uſeleſs by diſeaſe, were worn down by exceſſive labour; and, to render our ſituation completely diſtreſsful, on the 10th of Auguſt, the Swallow ſprung a leak in her bows, which being under water, it was impoſſible to come at while we were at ſea. Our ſituation was now in the higheſt degree perilous; but on Wedneſday the 12th, at break of day, land was diſcovered, which gave freſh ſpirits to our almoſt deſponding crew, and the tranſport of joy which this proſpect occaſioned, may be compared to that which a criminal feels who hears the cry of a reprieve at the place of execution. The Captain counted ſeven iſlands, and we made ſail towards two of them which were right a-head, and lay very near together. In the evening we came to an anchor on the north-eaſt ſide of the largeſt and higheſt of them, whereon we ſaw two of the natives who were negroes, with woolly heads, and who were not covered with any kind of cloathing. A boat having been ſent on ſhore, the two negroes fled, and an account was brought back by our people, that there was a fine run of freſh water oppoſite to the ſhip, but that it would be difficult to procure the water, the whole country being covered with wood quite to the ſea-ſhore. That no vegetables for the reſtoration of the ſick could be found, nor any habitations, as far as the country had been examined, which appeared wild, forlorn and mountainous. Theſe circumſtances, added to the danger there might be of the natives attacking us from the woods, determined the Captain to look for a more convenient landing-place. On the 13th, therefore, at day-break, the maſter, with 15 ſeamen, well armed, and provided, were ſent off in the cutter to the weſtward, in ſearch of a watering-place, refreſhments for the ſick, and a convenient ſituation, where the ſhip might be laid down in order to examine and ſtop her leak. He received ſtrict orders to be upon his guard againſt the natives, but at the ſame time to conciliate their good will, to procure which he took with him a few beans and other trifles, which by chance happened to be among the ſhip's company: He was alſo enjoined particularly by the Captain, to return to the ſhip if any occurrence happened that might occaſion hoſtilities: he was likewiſe charged on no account to leave the boat, nor to ſuffer more than two men to go on ſhore at a time, while the reſt ſtood ready for their defence; and the Captain recommended to him, in the ſtrongeſt terms, a diligent diſcharge of his duty, in finding out a proper place for the ſhip; which ſervice, of the utmoſt importance to us all, when performed, he was to return with all poſſible ſpeed. At the time the cutter was diſpatched on this expedition, the long boat was likewiſe ſent off, with ten men on board, well armed, which ſoon returned laden with water. She was diſpatched a ſecond time, but upon our obſerving ſome of the natives advancing to the landing-place, a ſignal was made for her to return; for we knew not to what number they might be expoſed, and we had no boat to ſend off with aſſiſtance, in caſe they ſhould have been attacked. After our men had returned on board, we ſaw three of the Indians, who ſat down on the ſhore, looking ſtedfaſtly on the ſhip for ſeveral hours. The lieutenant was ſent to them in the long boat, with a few trinkets, to endeavour to eſtabliſh ſome kind of intercourſe, by their means, with the reſt of the natives; but when the three men ſaw the boat approaching, they quitted their ſtation, and moved along the coaſt, where they were joined by three others. When they had conferred together, the former went on, while the latter advanced haſtily towards the boat. This being obſerved from the ſhip, a ſignal was made for the lieutenant to act with caution, who, ſeeing only three men of the natives, backed the boat into ſhore, and offered them ſome preſents as tokens of friendſhip, at the ſame time concealing carefully their arms. The Indians regardleſs of the beads and ribbands, advanced reſolutely, and then diſcharged their arrows, which went over the boat without doing any miſchief; upon which they ran away inſtantly into the woods, and our people fired in their turn, without doing any execution, not one of them being wounded by the ſhot. In a ſhort time after this the cutter came under the ſhip's ſide, the maſter who commanded her having three arrows ſticking in his body. We needed no other proof to convince us he had acted contrary to the Captain's orders, as appeared fully from his own report, which was, in ſubſtance, as follows: He ſaid, that having ſeen ſome Indian houſes, but only a few of the natives, at a place about 14 miles to the weſtward of the ſhip, he came to a grappling, and veered the boat to the beach, where he landed with four men, armed with muſquets and piſtols: that the Indians, at firſt, were afraid of him, and retired, but that ſoon after they came down to him, and he gave them a few trifles, with which they ſeemed to be much pleaſed: that in return they brought him a broiled fiſh, and ſome broiled yams: that, encouraged by theſe appearances of hoſpitality, he proceeded with his party to the houſes, which were not more than 20 yards from the water-ſide, and ſoon after ſaw a great number of canoes coming round the weſtern point of the bay, and many Indians among the trees: that being ſomewhat alarmed at their motions, he left haſtily the houſe where he had been entertained, and made the beſt of his way towards the boat; but that before he could embark, a general attack was made, with bows and arrows, as well on thoſe in the boat, as on thoſe upon the ſhore. Their number, according to his account, was between three and four hundred: their weapons were bows and arrows; the bows were ſix feet five inches long, and the arrows four feet four, which, he ſaid, they diſcharged in platoons, as regularly as the beſt diſciplined troops in England: that, being thus attacked, his party found it neceſſary to fire upon the Indians, which they did repeatedly, killing ſome, and wounding many more: ſtill however they were not diſcouraged; but maintained the fight, preſſing forward, and diſcharging their arrows in almoſt one continued flight: that when our people arrived at the boat, a delay was occaſioned in hauling her off, by the grappling being foul; during which time, he, and half of his crew were deſperately wounded: that at laſt they cut the rope, and ran off under their fore-ſail, ſtill keeping up their fire with blunderbuſſes loaded with eight or ten balls, which the enemy returned with a ſhower of arrows, and waded after them breaſt-high into the ſea: when they got clear of theſe aſſailants, the canoes purſued them with great vigour, nor would they retreat till one of them was ſunk, and many of the people in the others were killed. This is the account of the maſter, which, it is reaſonable to ſuppoſe, was as favourable to himſelf as he could make it. This raſh man, with three of our beſt hands, died ſome time afterwards of the wounds they had received. It appeared from the evidence of the ſurvivors, that the Indians behaved with the greateſt confidence and friendſhip, until the maſter arrogantly ordered the people who were with him, and who had been generouſly entertained, to cut down a cocoa-tree; and even perſiſted in that order, notwithſtanding the natives diſcovered ſtrong marks of diſpleaſure. The Indians hereupon withdrew, and muſtering their whole force, proved by their manner of attack, that their courage was equal to their hoſpitality. After this diſaſter, Captain Carteret dropped all thoughts of removing to

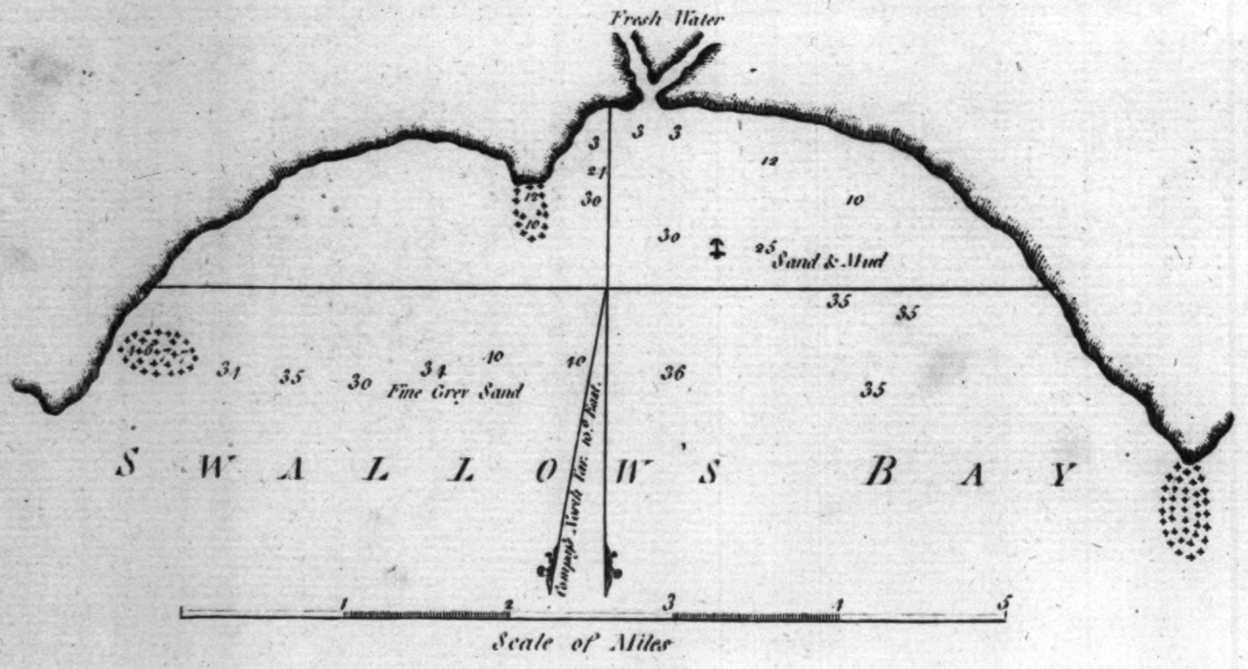
a

The North side of the largest of Queen Charlotte's Islands as it appeared running along shore to the Westward.

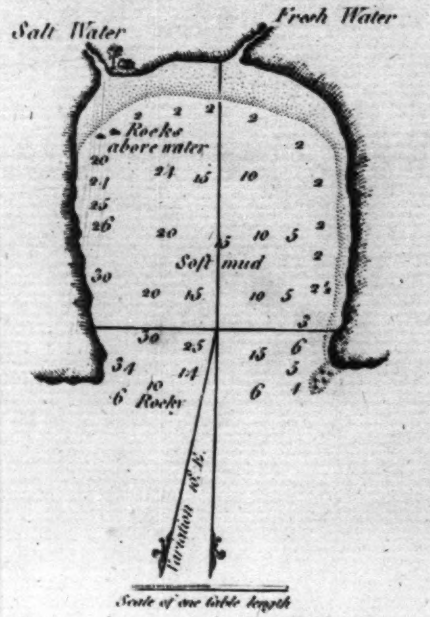




The South side of a Vulcano 6 Leagues North of the above.


Fresh Water
3 3 3
24
30
12
10
30
25 Sand & Mud
35 35
31 35 30 34 10 10 36 35
Fine Grey Sand
Compass North Var. 10° East.
S W A L L O W ' S B A Y
1 2 3 4 5
Scale of Miles

Byron's Harbour


Salt Water
Fresh Water
Rocks above water
Soft mud
6 Rocks
Variation 10° E.
Scale of one Cable length

London. Published by Alex.r Hogg at the King's Arms N.o 16, Paternoster Row.

BRITISH MUSEUM
5 FE 10

a more eligible harbour, but he determined to try what could be done towards putting the ſhip in a better condition, while we continued in our preſent ſtation.

Accordingly, Friday the 14th, ſhe was brought down by the ſtern, and means were found by our carpenter, the only one of the whole crew in tolerable health, to reduce the leak, though he could not quite ſtop it. In the afternoon the Swallow rode with her ſtern very near the ſhore; and we obſerved ſeveral of the natives ſculking among the trees upon the beach, watching our motions. On the 15th, in the morning, the weather being fine, the ſhip was veered cloſe in ſhore, upon which, having a ſpring upon our cable, we brought her broadſide to bear. It was now become abſolutely neceſſary, for the preſervation of all on board, that water ſhould be procured; but the only ſpring that had been ſeen on the iſland was ſkirted with a thick impenetrable wood, from whence the Indians could diſcharge their arrows unperceived; the Captain was therefore reduced to the painful neceſſity of driving them from that lurking-place, by diſcharging the ſhip's guns, which cauſed the lives of many of the natives to be ſacrificed; for at the time the people were at the watering-place, their ears were aſſailed by dreadful groans from different parts of the wood, like thoſe of dying men.

Captain Carteret had long been ill of an inflammatory and bilious diſorder, of a nature ſimilar to that which had ſeized Captain Wallis; yet, hitherto, he had been able to keep the deck; but this day the ſymptoms became ſo violent as to compel him to take to his bed, to which he was confined for ſome time afterwards. To aggravate our misfortunes, the maſter of the Swallow was dying of his wounds; Mr. Gower, our lieutenant, was very ill; the gunner and 30 of our ſeamen were unfit for duty; among which laſt were ſeven of the moſt healthy, who had been wounded with the maſter, three of them mortally; the recovery of the Captain and lieutenant was very doubtful; and, except theſe two, there was no one on board capable of navigating the ſhip home. It has already been obſerved, that we were unprovided with any toys, iron tools, or cutlery ware, which might have given us a chance for recovering the good-will of the natives, and eſtabliſhing a traffic with them for thoſe refreſhments we moſt needed, and which they could have furniſhed us with. Under theſe circumſtances, whereby our people were greatly diſpirited, our commander was obliged to lay aſide all thoughts of proſecuting the voyage farther to the ſouthward, which the Captain intended, as ſoon as the proper ſeaſon ſhould return. On Monday the 17th, therefore, we weighed, having called this place Egmont's Iſland, in honour of a noble earl of that name; but Captain Carteret, in his chart, has called this iſland New Guernſey, of which he was a native. In his opinion it is the ſame as that to which the Spaniards gave the name of Santa Cruz. The place in which we lay was called Swallow Bay; the eaſtermoſt point thereof Swallow Point; the weſtermoſt, Hanway's Point. The N. E. promontory of the iſland was named Cape Byron. Fron Swallow Point to Cape Byron is about 7 miles E. and from Hanway's Point to the ſame cape is about 10 miles. Between Swallow Point and Hanway's Point, in the bottom of the bay is a third point, a little to the weſtward of which we found the beſt anchoring-place, but it is neceſſary to give it birth, the ground near it being ſhoally. When we lay at anchor in this bay, Swallow Point bore E. by N. and Hanway's Point W. N. W. From hence a reef runs, whereon the ſea breaks very high: the outer part of this reef bears N. W. by W; and an iſland which has the appearance of a volcano, was ſeen juſt over the breakers. A little beyond Hanway's Point is a ſmall village, which ſtands upon the beach, ſurrounded with cocoa-nut trees. It lies in a bay between Hanway's Point and another, which we called Howe's Point; the diſtance from the former to the latter is about five miles. We found cloſe to the ſhore 30 fathoms water, but in croſſing the bay, at the diſtance of two miles, we had no bottom. Beyond Howe's Point, another harbour opens, which had the appearance of a deep lagoon, this we called Carliſle Harbour. Over againſt its entrance, and north of the coaſt, a ſmall iſland was diſcovered, which we named Portland's Iſland. A reef of rocks runs on the weſt ſide of this to the main; and the paſſage into the harbour is on the eaſt-ſide of it, running in and out E. N. E. and W. S. W. its width is two cables length, and it has eight fathoms water. The harbour may be a commodious one, but a ſhip muſt be warped both in and out, and would be in danger if attacked by the natives, who are bold even to temerity, and have a perſeverance, not common among rude ſavages. Weſt of Portland's Iſland, is a fine ſmall round harbour, juſt big enough to receive three veſſels, which was named Byron's Harbour. Our boat having entered it, found two runs of water, one freſh and the other ſalt; from obſerving the latter we judged it had a communication with Carliſle Harbour. Having proceeded about three leagues from where the Swallow lay at anchor, we opened the bay where the cutter had been attacked by the Indians, which we called for that reaſon Bloody Bay. Here is a rivulet of freſh water, and many houſes regularly built. Near the water-ſide ſtood one neatly built and thatched; it ſeemed to be a kind of council-room, or ſtate-houſe, and was much longer than any of the reſt. In this the maſter and his party had been courteouſly received by the natives, before the wanton cutting down of the cocoa-nut tree. We were informed by thoſe of our people who had been received here, that a large number of arrows were hung in bundles round the room, the floor and ſides of which were covered with matting. In the neighbourhood of this place, they ſaid, were many plantations encloſed by ſtone-walls, and planted with fruit trees; the cocoa-nut trees we could diſcern from the ſhip, in great numbers, among the houſes of the village. Three miles weſtward of this, we ſaw another village of conſiderable extent, in the front whereof, towards the ſea, was an angular kind of breaſt-work, of ſtone, and near five feet high. Three miles from hence, as we proceeded weſtward, a bay was diſcovered, into which a river empties itſelf. It appeared, when viewed from the maſt head, to run very far into the country, and we called it Granville's River. Weſtward of it is a point, which we named Ferrer's Point; from whence the land forms a large bay, near which is a town of great extent that ſeemed to ſwarm like a bee-hive. While the ſhip ſailed by, an incredible number of the inhabitants came forth from their houſes, holding ſomething like a wiſp of graſs in their hands, with which they appeared to ſtroke each other, at the ſame time dancing, or running in rings. Sailing on about ſeven miles to the weſtward, we ſaw another point, on which was a large canoe, with an awning over it. To this we gave the name of Cape Carteret. From this a reef of rocks, that appears above water, runs out to the diſtance of about a cable's length. At a ſmall diſtance was another village, fortified as that before mentioned. The inhabitants of this place likewiſe danced as the others had done; after which many of them launched their canoes and made towards the ſhip: upon which we lay to, that they might have time to come up; but when they approached near enough to have a diſtinct view of the Swallow, they lay upon their paddles, gazed at us, but would advance no farther. Being thus diſappointed in our hopes of prevailing upon them to come on board, we made ſail, and left them behind us. From Carteret Point the land trends away W. S. W. and S. W. forming a deep lagoon, at the mouth of which lies an iſland, which was named Trevanion's Iſland. There are two entrances into the lagoon, which, if it affords good anchorage, is certainly a fine harbour for ſhipping. Having croſſed the firſt entrance, and being off the N. W. part of Trevanion's Iſland, which was named Cape Trevanion, we ſaw a great ripling, cauſed by the meeting of the tides. Having hauled round this cape, we perceived the land trend to the ſouthward, and we continued to ſtand along the ſhore, till we opened the weſtern paſſage into the lagoon between Trevanion's Iſland and the main; both of which, at this place, appeared to be one continued town, and the inhabitants were innumerable. We found in this entrance a bottom of coral rock, with very irregular ſoundings. The natives no ſooner obſerved that the boat had left the ſhip, than they ſent off ſeveral armed canoes, who advanced to attack her. The firſt that came within bow-ſhot diſcharged her arrows at our people, who, being prepared, fired a volley, by which one of the Indians was killed, and another wounded. We fired at the ſame time from the ſhip, a great gun loaded with grape ſhot, on which all the canoes pulled hard for the ſhore, except the one with the wounded man, who being brought to the ſhip, the ſurgeon was ordered to examine his wounds, one ſhot had gone through his head, and one of his arms was broke by another. The ſurgeon was of opinion, that the former wound was mortal, in conſequence of this he was put again into his canoe, and, notwithſtanding his condition, he with one hand paddled away towards the ſhore. He was a young fellow, almoſt as black as a negro of Guinea, with a woolly head; of a common ſtature, well featured, and, like the reſt of the people we had ſeen upon this iſland, quite naked. His canoe had an out-rigger, without a ſail, but in workmanſhip it was very rude, being nothing more than part of the trunk of a tree made hollow. We were now at the weſtern extremity of the iſland; and the diſtance between that and the eaſtern extremity is 50 miles due E. and W. A ſtrong current ſets weſtward along the ſhore. The natives of Egmont Iſland are extremely nimble, active, and vigorous; and ſeem to be almoſt equally qualified to live in the water as upon land, for they were in and out of their canoes every minute. Their common canoes are capable of carrying about a dozen men, though three or four manage them with amazing dexterity. The men have a daring fortitude, which proves them to be deſcended from the ſame ſtock as thoſe who now inhabit the Philippine Iſles, lying about 45 degrees more to the weſtward, whoſe contempt of death was really aſtoniſhing when the city of Manilla was defended againſt the Engliſh, under the command of Sir William Draper.

As we ſailed along ſhore, to raiſe our mortification to the higheſt pitch, hogs and poultry were ſeen in great abundance, with cocoa-nut trees, plantains, bananas, and a variety of vegetable productions, which would ſoon have reſtored to us the health and vigour we had loſt, by the hardſhips of a long voyage: but no friendly intercourſe with the natives could now be expected, and we were not in a ſituation to obtain what we wanted by force: beſides, great part of the crew were diſabled by ſickneſs, and the reſt were much depreſſed in their ſpirits, by a continual ſucceſſion of diſappointments and vexations; and if the men had been in health, we had not officers to lead them on, or direct them in any enterprize, nor even to ſuperintend the duties that were to be performed on board the ſhip; for even the Captain himſelf was ſtill confined to his bed, dangerouſly ill. Thus ſituated, unable to proceed farther to the ſouth, and in danger of being too late for the monſoon, he gave immediate orders for ſteering north-weſtward, with a view to fall in with the land which Dampier has diſtinguiſhed by the name of Nova Britannia, and which was now diſtant about 12 deg. of longitude. In our diſtreſsful ſituation, it could not be expected, that Captain Carteret ſhould examine all the iſlands we touched at; curioſity muſt yield to the inſtinctive principle of ſelf-preſervation; but we gave particular names to ſeveral of thoſe we approached; and to the whole cluſter we gave the general name of Queen Charlotte's Iſlands. To the ſouthermoſt of the two, which when we firſt diſcovered land were right a-head, the name was given of Lord Howe's Iſland, and the other was Egmont Iſland, of which we have already given a particular account. The latitude of Lord Howe's Iſland is 11 deg. 10 min. ſouth; longitude 164 deg. 43 min. eaſt. The latitude of Cape Byron, the N. E. point of Egmont Iſland, is 10 deg. 40 min. ſouth; longitude 164 deg. 49 min. eaſt. Theſe two iſlands lie exactly in a line with each other, about N. by W. and S. by E. and including the paſſage between them, extend 11 leagues; the paſſage is very broad. Both of them appear to be fertile, have a pleaſant appearance, and are covered with tall trees of a beautiful verdure. Lord Howe's Iſland, which is more upon a level than the other, is nevertheleſs high land. From Cape Byron, diſtant 13 leagues W. N. W. half N. by compaſs, is an iſland of a ſtupendous height, and in the figure of a cone. Its top is ſhaped like a funnel, from whence ſmoke iſſues, but we ſaw no flame; we thought it, however, to be a volcano, and therefore called it Volcano Iſland. To a long flat iſland, that, when Howe's and Egmont's Iſlands were right a-head, bore N. W. we gave the name of Keppel's Iſland. It is ſituated in latitude 10 deg. 15 min. ſouth; longitude, by our account, 165 deg. 4 min. eaſt. We diſcovered two others to the S. E. The largeſt we named Lord Edgcumb's Iſland, and the ſmaller Ourry's Iſland. The former, which has a fine appearance, lies in latitude 11 deg. 10 min. ſouth; longitude 165 deg. 14 min. eaſt, the latter is in latitude 11 deg. 10 min. ſouth; longitude 165 deg. 19 min. eaſt. Egmont Iſland, in general, is woody and mountainous, intermixed with many beautiful valleys. Several ſmall rivers flow from the interior parts of the country into the ſea, and we have mentioned many harbours upon the coaſt. The inhabitants, whom we have particularly deſcribed, do execution at an incredible diſtance with their arrows. One of them went through the boat's waſh-board, and dangerouſly wounded a midſhipman in the thigh. They were pointed with flint, and we ſaw among them no ſigns of any metal.

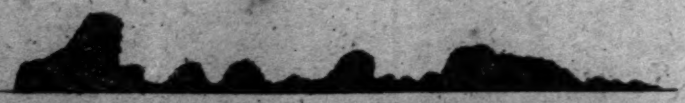
CHAP. II.

The Swallow departs from Queen Charlotte's Iſlands—Her run to Nova Britannia—Other iſlands diſcovered, with a deſcription of them, and their inhabitants—Nova Britannia found to be two iſlands, with a ſtrait between them—Several ſmall iſlands diſcovered in the ſtrait, with an account of the land and natives on each ſide—The Swallow enters St. George's Channel—Paſſage from thence to the iſland of Mindanao—A deſcription of many iſlands that were ſeen, and incidents in this courſe—A geographical account of the coaſt of Mindanao, and the iſlands near it—Errors of other navigators corrected—The Swallow continues her voyage from Mindanao to the iſland of Celebes—A particular deſcription of the ſtrait of Macaſſar—Tranſactions while the Swallow lay off the town.

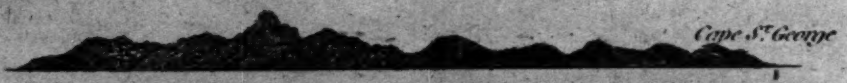
TUESDAY the 18th of Auguſt, we took our departure from Egmont Iſland, one of the cluſter of iſlands which the Captain named Queen Charlotte's, with a freſh trade wind from the eaſtward. On the 20th, a ſmall flat iſland was diſcovered, and named after Mr. Gower, our lieutenant. It lies in latitude 7 deg. 56 min. ſouth; longitude 158 deg. 56 min. eaſt. The natives did not differ in any thing material, from thoſe of the iſlands we had lately left; but ſome cocoa-nuts were here procured in exchange for nails; and the inhabitants had intimated that they would furniſh a freſh ſupply the next morning, being Friday the 21ſt, but, at day break, we found that a current had ſet the ſhip conſiderably to the ſouthward of the iſland, and brought us in ſight of two other iſlands. They are ſituated nearly E. and W. of each other, at the diſtance of about two miles. The ſmalleſt, which lies to the eaſtward, we called Simpſon's Iſland; and to the other, which

BRITISH MUSEUM 7 FE 6

The Island of St. John, *bearing N.N.W. 12 Leagues.*



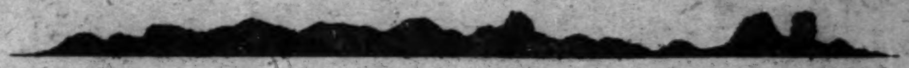
Cape St. George, *from W. by N. 81° W. distant 3 Leagues.*


Cape St. George

Cape Orford, *bearing S.W. distant 18 Leagues.*

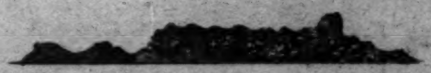
Cape Orford

Cape Buller, *bearing from S.S.W. ½ W. to N.W. by N. distant 10 or 12 Leagues.*

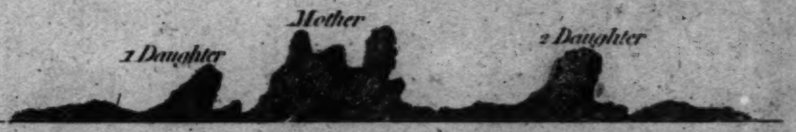


Lord Sandwichs Island *distant 2 Leagues.*

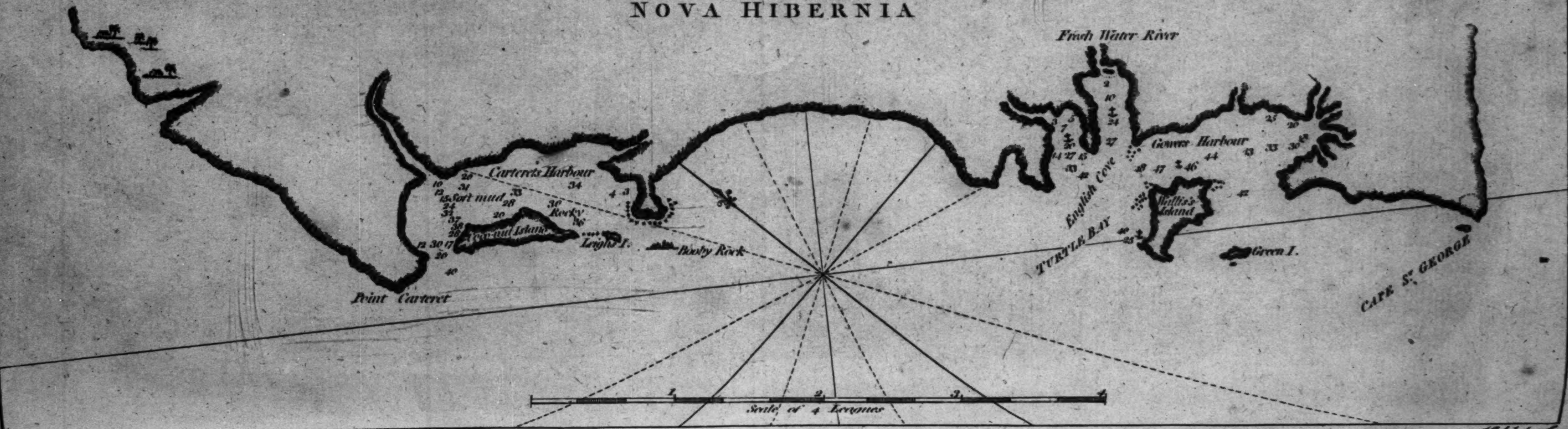
The Isle of Man, *bearing W.S.W. ½ W. distant 6 Leagues.*



The Mother *and* two Daughters, *bearing S.W. distant 5 Leagues.*


1 Daughter
Mother
2 Daughter

NOVA HIBERNIA


Fresh Water River
Gowers Harbour
English Cove
TURTLE BAY
Wallis's Island
Green I.
CAPE St. GEORGE
Carterets Harbour
Soft mud
Rocky
Cocoa-nut Island
Leighs I.
Booby Rock
Point Carteret
1
2
3
4
Scale of 4 Leagues

London: Publish'd by Alex.r Hogg, at the Kings Arms No. 16 Paternoster Row.

[illegible] sc.

which has a lofty appearance, we gave the name of Carteret's Iſland. From Gower's, the eaſt end bears ſouth, and the diſtance between them is nearly 11 leagues. Carteret's Iſland is in latitude 8 deg. 26 min. ſouth; longitude 159 deg. 14 min. eaſt, and its length from E. to W. is 18 miles. As both theſe iſlands were to the windward of us, we ſailed again to Gower's iſland, which abounds with fine trees, many of them of the cocoa-nut kind. Here a canoe was ſeized, the natives having attempted to cut off the ſhip's boat; in it we found about 100 cocoa-nuts, which were very acceptable. The canoe was large enough to carry 10 men, and was very neatly built, with planks well joined. It was adorned with ſhell-work, and figures rudely painted, and the ſeams were covered with a ſubſtance ſomewhat like our black putty. With reſpect to its ſize, it was much larger than any one we had ſeen at Egmont Iſland. The appearance of theſe Indians, and their arms, were much the ſame as thoſe that had been ſeen more to the eaſtward, only ſpears made an addition to their weapons. By ſome ſigns which they made, pointing to our muſquets, we concluded they were not wholly unacquainted with fire-arms. We ſaw ſome turtle near the beach, but were not fortunate enough to take any of them; but the cocoa-nuts we got here, and at Egmont Iſland, were of inexpreſſible ſervice to the ſick. As from the time of our leaving Egmont Iſland we had a current ſetting ſtrongly to the ſouthward, and finding, in the neighbourhood of theſe iſlands, its force greatly increaſed, we now ſteered a north-weſterly courſe, fearing we might otherwiſe fall in with the main land too far to the ſouthward; and the bad condition of the ſhip, and ſickneſs of the crew, would have rendered it impoſſible for us ever to have got to ſea again, if we had been driven into any gulph or deep bay. On the 22nd, as we were continuing our courſe with a freſh gale, Patrick Dwyer, a marine, who was doing ſomething over the ſhip's quarter, by ſome accident fell into the ſea: we immediately threw overboard the canoe we had made a prize of at Gower's Iſland, brought the ſhip to, and hoiſted out the cutter, but the unfortunate man, though ſtrong and healthy, ſunk at once, and was drowned, notwithſtanding all our efforts to ſave him. The canoe we were obliged to cut up, ſhe having received much damage by ſtriking againſt one of the guns as our people were hoiſting her overboard.

On Monday the 24th, we fell in with nine iſlands, ſtretching N. W. and S. E. about 15 leagues, and lying in latitude 4 deg. 36 min. ſouth; longitude 154 deg. 17 min. eaſt. Theſe Captain Carteret ſuppoſes to be the ſame which were ſeen by Taſman, and called by him Ohang Java: the other iſlands he believes had never been viſited by any European before; and he is of opinion that there is much land not yet known in this part of the ocean. One of theſe iſlands is of conſiderable extent; the other eight are little better than large rocks; but, though low and flat, they are covered with wood, and abound with inhabitants. We ſteered to the northward of theſe iſlands, W. by S. having a ſtrong ſouth-weſterly current. In the night we fell in with another pleaſant iſland of conſiderable extent. By the many fires we ſaw, it appeared to be inhabited, but we ſaw none of the natives. We called this flat, green iſle, Sir Charles Hardy's Iſland. It is ſituated in latitude 4 deg. 50 min. ſouth; and bore weſt 15 leagues from the northernmoſt of the nine iſlands. On the 25th, at day break we diſcovered another large high iſland, which received the name of Winchelſea's Iſland; and is diſtant from Sir Charles Hardy's Iſland ten leagues, in the direction of S. by E. On Wedneſday the 26th, an iſland was diſcovered to the northward, which the Captain ſuppoſed to be the ſame that was ſeen by Schouten, and called the iſland of St. John. Not many hours after, Nova Britannia appeared, and the Swallow entered what was thought to be a deep bay, or gulf, which Dampier had diſtinguiſhed by the name of St. George's Bay. It lies in latitude 5 deg. ſouth; longitude 152 deg. 19 min. eaſt. Here we caſt anchor, while the boats went to ſearch for a good harbour; which, when they returned, and reported to have found, the united ſtrength of the whole ſhip's company was not ſufficient to weigh the anchor; an inſtance of debility ſomewhat ſimilar to that related in Commodore Anſon's voyage, when the Centurion arrived at Tinian. It was not until the next day, when our ſtrength was ſomewhat recruited, that the anchor was brought up, and it was then found to have been ſo much injured, as to be totally unſerviceable. No fiſh could be caught, either by the ſeine, or hook and line: ſome rock oyſters and cockles were, however, obtained, and in the country ſome cocoa-nuts, with wood and water. The upper part of the tree which bears the cocoa-nut, is called the cabbage, which is a white, criſp, juicy ſubſtance; if eaten raw it taſtes ſomewhat like a cheſnut, but when boiled is ſuperior to the beſt parſnip. This was cut ſmall into the broth, which was made of the portable ſoup, and being thickened with ſome oatmeal, made a moſt comfortable meſs; for each of theſe cabbages we were forced to cut down a tree, which was done with great regret, but the depredation on the parent ſtock was unavoidable. This regimen, with the milk of the nut, relieved the ſick preſently, and recovered them very faſt. Here we found nutmeg-trees in great plenty: they did not appear to be the beſt ſort, which may be owing partly to their growing wild, and partly to their being too much in the ſhade of taller trees: all the different ſorts of palm were alſo found. We likewiſe received great refreſhment from the fruit of a tall tree, that reſembles a plumb, and particularly that which in the Weſt Indies is called the Jamaica plumb. Here we ſaw many trees, ſhrubs, and plants, altogether unknown; but no eſculent vegetables of any kind. In the woods, a large bird with black plumage was ſeen, which made a noiſe like the barking of a dog. The only quadrupeds ſome of our people ſaw, were two of a ſmall ſize, which were ſuppoſed to be dogs: they were very wild, and ran with great ſwiftneſs. None of the human race appeared, but we found ſeveral deſerted habitations. By the ſhells ſcattered about them, with ſome ſticks half burnt, and the embers of a fire, it appeared, that the natives had but juſt left the place when the Swallow arrived, or more probably they fled at her approach. If the people may be judged of from the appearance of their dwellings, they muſt ſtand low even in the ſcale of ſavage life, for they were the moſt miſerable hovels we had ever ſeen. A ſmall iſland in this bay we called Wallis's Iſland. The harbour, in which our ſhip lay, received the name of Engliſh Cove; and here Captain Carteret took poſſeſſion of the country, with all its iſlands, bays, ports, and harbours, for the king his maſter; nailing upon a high tree a piece of board, faced with lead, on which was engraved an Engliſh union, the name of the ſhip, and her commander; the name given to the cove, and the time of coming in and ſailing out of it.

On the 7th of September, being Monday, we left this cove, and anchored on the ſame day almoſt cloſe to a grove of cocoa-nut trees, where we plentifully ſupplied ourſelves with fruit and the cabbage. We called this place Carteret's Harbour, which being formed by the main and two iſlands, one of them was named Leigh's, and the other Cocoa-nut Iſland. The Captain now reſolved to ſail for Batavia, while the monſoon continued favourable: on the 9th, therefore, we weighed anchor, and when about four leagues from land, the wind and current being both againſt us, we ſteered round the coaſt into a channel between two iſlands, which channel was divided by another iſland, to which Captain Carteret gave the name of the Duke of York's Iſland, near which are ſeveral ſmaller iſlands. To the ſouth of the largeſt of them are three hills of ſingular form, which were called the Mother and Daughters, one of which we ſuppoſed to be a volcano from the large clouds of ſmoke that were ſeen iſſuing from it. A point we called Cape Palliſer, lies to the eaſt of theſe hills, and Cape Stephens to the weſt; north of which laſt, lies an iſland, which took the name of the Iſle of Man. The country in general is mountainous and woody, and was ſuppoſed to be inhabited, from the numbers of fires ſeen on it in the night. On the Duke of York's Iſland, the houſes were ſituated among groves of cocoa-nut trees, and thus formed a moſt beautiful proſpect. We brought to, for the night, and ſailed again in the morning, when ſome of the Indians put off in canoes towards the ſhip; but the wind being fair and blowing freſh, it was not thought prudent to wait for them. We now ſteered N. W. by W. and loſt ſight of New Britain on the 11th, when it was found that what had been taken for a bay, was a ſtrait, and it was called St. George's Channel, whilſt the iſland on the north of it received the name of New Ireland. In the evening we diſcovered a large iſland, well cloathed with verdure, which was denominated Sandwich Iſland: off this iſland the ſhip lay great part of the night, during which time a perpetual noiſe reſembling the ſound of a drum which was heard from the ſhore. When we had almoſt cleared the ſtrait, the weather falling calm, a number of canoes approached the ſhip, and though their crews could not be prevailed on to go on board, they exchanged ſome trifles with us for nails and bits of iron, which they preferred to every thing elſe that was offered them. Though the canoes of theſe people were formed out of ſingle trees, they were between 80 and 100 feet in length. The natives were negroes, and their hair was of the woolly kind; but they had neither thick lips nor flat noſes. They wore ſhell-work on their legs and arms, but were otherwiſe naked. Their hair and beards were powdered with white powder, and a feather was ſtuck into the head of each, above the ear. Their weapons conſiſted of a long ſtick and a ſpear; and it was obſerved, that they had fiſhing-nets and cordage.

Sailing from hence weſtward, we came in ſight of the S. W. point of the iſland: it was called Cape Byron; near which is an iſland of conſiderable extent, which received the name of New Hanover. The ſtrait we had now paſſed was called Byron's Strait; one of the largeſt iſlands we had ſeen, Byron's Iſland, and the S. W. point of New Hanover, Queen Charlotte's Foreland. On the following day, we ſaw ſeveral ſmall iſlands, which received the name of the Duke of Portland's Iſlands. Having completely navigated St. George's Channel, the whole length of which is about 100 leagues, we held on a weſtward courſe, and on Monday the 14th, diſcovered ſeveral iſlands. The next morning ſome hundreds of the natives came off in canoes towards the ſhip, and were invited on board by every token of friendſhip and good will; notwithſtanding which, when they came within reach, they threw ſeveral lances at the ſeamen on the deck. A great gun and ſeveral muſquets were then fired at them, by which ſome were killed or wounded; on which they rowed towards ſhore; and after they had got to a diſtance, a ſhot was fired, ſo as to fall beyond them, to convince them that they were not out of the reach of the guns. Soon after, ſome other canoes advanced from a diſtant part of the iſland, and one of them coming nearer than the reſt, the people in it were invited on board the ſhip: inſtead of complying, they threw in a number of darts and lances. This aſſault was returned by the firing of ſeveral muſquets, by which one of the Indians was killed; on which his companions jumped over-board, and ſwam to the other canoes, all of whom rowed to the ſhore. The canoe being taken on board, was found to contain turtle, and ſome other fiſh, alſo a fruit of a ſpecies between an apple and a plumb, hitherto unknown to Europeans. Theſe people were moſtly negroes, with woolly hair, which they powdered, and went naked, except the ornaments of ſhells round their arms and legs. We now coaſted along the iſlands, to which we gave the general name of the Admiralty Iſlands. They have a beautiful appearance, being covered with woods, groves of cocoa-nut trees and the houſes of the natives. The largeſt we computed to be about 50 miles in length; and they produce many valuable articles, particularly ſpices. We diſcovered two ſmall verdant iſlands, on Saturday the 19th, which were called Durour's Iſland and Matty's Iſland, the inhabitants of which laſt ran along the coaſt with lights during the night. We had ſight of two other ſmall iſlands on the 24th, which were called Stephens's Iſlands, and which abounded with beautiful trees. We ſaw alſo three iſlands on Friday the 25th, in the evening, when the natives came off in canoes, and went on board the ſhip. They bartered cocoa-nuts for ſome bits of iron, with which metal they did not ſeem unacquainted, and appeared extravagantly fond of it. They called it parram, and hinted that a ſhip ſometimes touched at their iſlands. Theſe people were of the copper colour, and had fine black hair; but their beards were very ſmall, as they were continually plucking the hair from their faces. Their teeth were even and white, and their countenances very agreeable. They were ſo extremely active that they ran up to the maſt-head quicker than the ſailors. Every thing that was given them they ate and drank with freedom, and ſeemed to have no ſort of reſerve in their behaviour. A piece of fine matting wrapped round their waiſts, conſtituted the whole of their dreſs, and good nature appeared to be the only rule of their actions. The current carrying the ſhip ſwiftly along, the Captain had not the opportunity of landing; and was therefore obliged to refuſe gratifying theſe friendly people in that particular, though they very readily offered that ſome of their people ſhould remain as hoſtages for the ſafe return of any of the officers or ſhip's company who ſhould chuſe to go on ſhore. Finding that their offer was not accepted, one of the Indians abſolutely refuſed to quit the ſhip: he was carried in conſequence, as far as the iſland of Celebes, where he died. This man was named Joſeph Freewill, and we called the largeſt of the iſles, Freewill Iſland, (by the natives called Pegan.) The names of the two other iſlands were Onata and Onello.

An iſland was diſcovered from the maſt-head as we held on our courſe, on Monday the 28th, in the evening, but we neither landed there nor gave it a name. Monday the 12th of October, we ſaw a ſmall iſle which we named Current Iſland, from the great ſtrength of the ſoutherly current in thoſe parts; and the next day two iſlands were diſcovered, to which we gave the name of St. Andrew's Iſland. The next land appeared to be Mindanao, along the S. E. part of which we coaſted, ſeeking for a bay which Dampier had deſcribed; but this we could not find. The boat, however, found a little creek at the ſouthern extremity of the iſle, near which a town and a fort were ſeen. The people having deſcried the boat from the ſhore, a gun was fired, and ſeveral canoes came off after it. The lieutenant therefore retreated towards the ſhip, which when the canoes diſcovered, they retired and made towards the ſhore. We now ſtood to the eaſtward, and on Monday the 2d of November, anchored in a bay near the ſhore, whither the boats were diſpatched to take in water. No ſigns appeared of that part of the iſland being inhabited; a canoe however came round a point, ſeemingly with a view of obſerving us, which rowed back again, after having taken a ſurvey of the veſſel. In the night, a great noiſe was heard on the ſhore, ſomewhat like the war-ſong of the Americans. The Captain therefore made proper preparations to defend himſelf in caſe hoſtilities ſhould be commenced on the part of the iſlanders. One of the boats was ſent on ſhore for water the next morning, and the other was ordered to hold herſelf in readineſs, in caſe her aſſiſtance ſhould be neceſſary. The crew had no ſooner landed than ſeveral armed men came forward from the woods, and one of them held up ſomething white, which being conſtrued as a ſign of amity, the captain having no white flag on board, determined to ſend the lieutenant with a table cloth in order to anſwer the token of peace. For the preſent this had the deſired effect. Two Indians, who ſpoke bad Dutch and Spaniſh, having at laſt made themſelves underſtood by the officer, in the latter language, made ſeveral inquiries which chiefly turned upon deſiring to be informed whether the ſhip belonged to the ſtates of Holland, and whether ſhe was bound to Batavia or elſewhere. He alſo wanted to know whether ſhe was a ſhip of war, and what number of guns ſhe carried. Having been reſolved as to theſe particulars, he ſaid they might proceed to the town: ſome armed Indians were ordered to retreat, and the lieutenant preſented a ſilk handkerchief to the perſon he converſed with, receiving a neckcloth in return. When the Captain heard this, he was highly pleaſed, thinking that all matters were now in a proper train, eſpecially as he had received a ſupply of water; but while he was enjoying this proſpect, he perceived ſome hundreds of armed Indians on the ſhore, who held up their targets, and brandiſhed their ſwords, by way of defiance, and at the ſame time diſcharged their lances and arrows towards the veſſel. Notwithſtanding this hoſtile appearance, the Captain was ſtill willing, if poſſible, to avoid coming to extremities with the iſlanders, and for that purpoſe, ſent the lieutenant on ſhore to diſplay again the former ſign of peace. As the boat approached the ſhore, but without landing her men, one of the natives beckoned them to come where he ſtood, but the lieutenant did not chuſe to obey this ſummons, leſt he ſhould come within reach of the arrows of the iſlanders. He now concluded that there were Dutchmen or people in the Dutch intereſt on ſhore, to whoſe interference this apparent alteration in the diſpoſition of the natives was owing, and who had irritated the natives againſt the Swallow's crew, on being informed that ſhe was an Engliſh veſſel. Captain Carteret however ſailed from this place, which he called Deceitful Bay, with a full intention to viſit the town: but ſoon after the wind blowing violently in ſhore, he altered his reſolution, and ſteered directly for Batavia, which was probably the beſt courſe he could have taken in ſuch a critical ſituation.

On Saturday the 14th of November, we reached the ſtrait of Macaſſar, which ſtrait lies between the iſlands of Celebes and Borneo. To a point of the former, we at this time gave the name of Hummock Point; and to the weſtward of this point we diſcovered a great many boats fiſhing upon the ſhoals. On the 21ſt, we were in ſight of two very ſmall iſlands, which were covered with verdure, and Captain Carteret ſuppoſed them to be the Taba Iſles, mentioned in the French charts. We croſſed the equinoctial line, and came into ſouthern latitude, on Sunday the 29th; the tornadoes becoming violent, and the current ſetting againſt us. Death had now diminiſhed the crew, and ſickneſs was daily weakening the remainder. We had ſight of the Little Pater-Noſters (iſlands ſo called) which are ſituate ſomething more than two degrees to the ſouthward of the equinoctial line, but the winds and currents would not ſuffer us at that time to land for any refreſhment. At this time the whole crew were alike afflicted with the ſcurvy; and what was very diſtreſſing we were attacked ſoon after in the night by a piratical veſſel, which had been ſeen the evening before. She engaged us with ſwivel guns and ſmall arms; but though we could not ſee the enemy, we returned her fire ſo warmly that we ſent her to the bottom, and all her crew periſhed. As to the Swallow ſhe received ſome ſmall damage, and had two perſons wounded on board. The veſſel that ſhe ſunk belonged to a pirate who had no leſs than thirty of them engaged in the buſineſs of plunder, which conſtantly infeſted theſe ſeas.

The diſeaſes of our men now daily increaſed. By the 12th, we had loſt 13 of our crew, and 30 others were almoſt on the point of death. The weſterly monſoon being ſet in we could have no hopes of reaching Batavia, and our ſituation was ſuch that we muſt periſh if we could not ſpeedily make land. On this account, it was reſolved to ſteer for Macaſſar, a Dutch ſettlement on the iſland of Celebes; and happily we accompliſhed our deſign, coming to anchor off that iſland, at the diſtance of more than a league from Macaſſar, on Tueſday the 15th of December.

The governor ſent a Dutchman on board the Swallow late that night, who ſeemed much alarmed on finding that ſhe was an Engliſh ſhip of war, and would not truſt himſelf in the cabin. Early the next morning, the Captain diſpatched a letter to the governor, requeſting leave to buy proviſions, and to ſhelter his ſhip till the ſeaſon for ſailing weſtward came on. The boat arriving at the ſhore, none of the crew were ſuffered to land; and, the lieutenant having refuſed to deliver the letter to any but the governor himſelf, two officers, called the Shebandar and the Fiſcal, came to him with a meſſage, importing that the governor was ſick and had commanded them to come for the letter. The lieutenant, though he thought this was only a mere pretence, at length delivered the letter, which they took away with them. After the boat's crew had waited without any refreſhments for ſeveral hours in the heat of the ſun, they were told that the governor had ordered two gentlemen to wait on their Captain with an anſwer. As the boat lay off the wharf, our people on board obſerved a great hurry on ſhore, and concluded that all hands were buſy in fitting out armed veſſels, a circumſtance which could not much contribute to our ſatisfaction. But according to the promiſe given, ſoon after the boat's return, two gentlemen of the names of De Cerf and Douglas, came with diſpatches, deſiring, that the ſhip might inſtantly depart from the port, without coming any nearer to the town; inſiſting that ſhe ſhould not anchor on any part of the coaſt, and that the Captain ſhould not permit any of the people to land on any place under the governor's juriſdiction.

The Captain could not but ſenſibly feel the cruelty of this proceeding. As the ſtrongeſt argument that could be uſed in anſwer to the letter, he ſhewed his dying men to the gentlemen, and urged the neceſſity of the caſe; nor could they but feel the propriety of granting refreſhments to the ſubjects of a power at peace with their country, and who were in ſuch a deplorable ſituation; but they obſerved that their orders were abſolute and muſt be obeyed. Incenſed at this treatment, Captain Carteret, at laſt declared, that he would come to an anchor cloſe to the town, and then, if they perſiſted in refuſing him neceſſary refreſhments, that he would run the ſhip aground, when his crew would ſell their lives as dear as poſſible. Being alarmed at this declaration, they intreated the Captain to remain in his preſent ſituation till further orders ſhould arrive. This he promiſed, on condition that an anſwer ſhould be ſent before the ſetting in of the ſea-breeze the next day.

In the morning early, it was obſerved, that a ſloop of war, and another veſſel with ſoldiers on board, anchored under the ſhip's bows. They refuſed to ſpeak with Captain Carteret, and as he weighed and ſet ſail with the ſea-breeze, they did the ſame, and cloſely followed him. As he proceeded, a veſſel from the town approached him, wherein were ſeveral gentlemen, and Mr. Douglas among them; but, till the Swallow dropped anchor they could not come on board. They expreſſed ſome ſurprize at the Engliſh veſſel's having advanced ſo far; but the Captain alledged that he had only acted according to his former declaration, which his preſent ſituation would ſufficiently juſtiſy to every candid perſon.

Theſe gentlemen brought with them two ſheep, ſome fowls, fruit, and other proviſions, which were extremely welcome to the Engliſh; but after they had made ſeveral propoſals, with which he could not comply, he ſhewed them the dead body of a man who had expired but a few hours before, and whoſe life might probably have been ſaved, had the Dutch ſent them a timely ſupply of refreſhments, and again declared his reſolution of executing what he had threatened, if they would not comply with his requiſition. His gueſts now enquired whether the ſhip had touched at the ſpice iſlands, and were anſwered in the negative. At laſt it was agreed, that the Swallow ſhould ſail for a bay at a little diſtance, where an hoſpital for the ſick might be provided, and where proviſions are generally plentiful, and, if there was a want of any article, they might be ſupplied occaſionally from the town. It will be imagined that a propoſal of this kind was readily agreed to by Captain Carteret; all he inſiſted upon was, that it ſhould be ratified by the governor and council, which was afterwards

wards done in the proper manner. He could not forbear aſking, however, for what reaſon the two veſſels had anchored under his ſhip's bows. He received for anſwer, that this was only done in a friendly manner, to protect her from any inſult that might be offered by the natives of the country. While this treaty was going forward, the Engliſh Captain had nothing to give his gueſts but rotten biſcuit and bad ſalt meat; however, they had ordered an elegant dinner to be dreſſed on board their own veſſel, which was afterwards ſerved up at his table, and they parted in friendſhip.

The next day an officer from the town came on board, to whom the Captain applied to get money for his bills on the Engliſh government. He promiſed to endeavour to do this, and for that purpoſe went on ſhore, but when he returned in the evening, he ſaid that there was no perſon in the town that had any caſh to remit to Europe, and that the company's cheſt was quite empty. This was a great difficulty; however it was ſurmounted at laſt by an order being ſent to the Reſident at Bonthain, who had money to remit, and who, in conſequence received the bills in queſtion.

CHAP. III.

The Swallow ſails from Macaſſar to Bonthain—Tranſactions during her ſtay at this place—A deſcription of the town of Macaſſar and circumjacent country—She proceeds from the bay of Bonthain, in the iſland of Celebes, to Batavia, in the iſland of Java—Remarkable incidents and tranſactions—The Swallow anchors at Onruſt, in order to have her defects repaired—An account of the Dutch governor, and the courteous behaviour of Admiral Houting to Captain Carteret—The Swallow being refitted departs from Onruſt—Loſes many of her hands by ſickneſs—Arrives at Prince's Iſland in the Strait of Sunda—Run from thence to the Cape of Good Hope—Anchors in Table Bay—Makes the iſland of St. Helena—Proceeds to the Iſland of Aſcenſion, and comes to an anchor in Croſs Hill Bay—Continues her voyage—Is hailed by a French ſhip, commanded by M. Bongainville—Enters the Engliſh Channel—And, after a fine paſſage, and fair wind, from the Cape of Good Hope, anchors at Spithead, on Saturday the 20th of March, 1769, having been abſent two years and ſeven months.

ON Tueſday the 15th, we anchored, as we have obſerved, at the diſtance of four miles from the town of Macaſſar, which, by our reckoning, lies in latitude 5 deg. 10 min. S. and in 117 deg. 28 min. E. longitude, having been in our run from the Strait of Magellan not leſs than 35 weeks. On Sunday the 20th, we ſailed, at day-break, and in the afternoon of the enſuing day, anchored in the road of Bonthain. The guard boats were immediately moored cloſe to the ſhore, to prevent all communication between our boats and thoſe of the country. Captain Carteret having waited upon the reſident, to ſettle the price, and mode of procuring proviſions, a houſe was allotted to his uſe, ſituated near the ſea-ſide, and cloſe to a ſmall fort of eight guns, the only one in this place. The houſe being fitted up as an hoſpital, the ſick were landed, and as ſoon as our people were on ſhore, a guard of 36 privates, two ſergeants, and two corporals, under the command of Le Cerf, was ſet over them, who were not permitted to go above 30 yards from the hoſpital, nor were any of the natives ſuffered to come near enough to ſell them any thing; ſo that the profits of the traffic fell into the hands of the Dutch ſoldiers, whoſe gains were immoderate; ſo great indeed, that ſome of them ſold various articles at a profit of more than a thouſand per-cent. After having extorted the proviſions at what price they pleaſed from the natives; and if a countryman ventured to expreſs any ſigns of diſcontent, a broad ſword was immediately flouriſhed over his head; this was always ſufficient to ſilence complaint, and ſend the ſufferer quietly away. The Captain having remonſtrated with Mr. Swellingrable on the injuſtice of this procedure, he reprimanded the ſoldiers with becoming ſpirit; but this produced no good effect; and after this, Le Cerf's wife ſold proviſions at more than double the prime coſt, while it was ſuſpected, that he ſold arrack to the ſeamen. It was the duty of one of the ſoldiers, by rotation, to procure the day's proviſion for the whole guard, which ſervice he performed by going into the country with his muſquet and bag; nor was this honeſt provider ſatisfied with what his bag would hold, for one of them, without any ceremony, drove down a young buffalo, and his comrades ſupplied themſelves with wood to dreſs it from the palliſadoes of the fort. The Captain thought the report of this fact ſo extraordinary, that he went on ſhore to ſee the breach, and found the poor blacks repairing it. On the 26th, and 27th, three veſſels arrived here, one of which had troops on board, diſtined for the Banda Iſlands, but their boats not being allowed to ſpeak with any of our people, the Captain prevailed on the reſident, to purchaſe for his uſe four caſks of very good ſalt proviſions, two being pork, and two beef. On Monday the 28th, above 100 country veſſels, called proas, anchored in the bay of Bonthain. Theſe veſſels fiſh round the iſland of Celebes, going out at one monſoon, and coming back with the other: they carry Dutch colours, and ſend the produce of their labours to China for ſale.

A. D. 1768.

On Monday the 18th of January, a letter from Macaſſar was brought to the Captain, by which he was informed, that the Dolphin, our old conſort, had been at Batavia. On Thurſday the 28th, the ſecretary of the council, who accompanied Le Cerf hither, received orders to return to Macaſſar. Our carpenter by this time having greatly recovered his health, began to examine into the condition of the Swallow, and ſhe was found to have ſeveral leaks; and as little could be done to theſe, we were reduced to an entire dependance on our pumps. Her main-maſt was alſo ſprung, and appeared to be rotten. As no wood could be procured here to make a new one, we patched it up, without either iron or forge, as well as we could. On the 19th of February, Le Cerf, the military officer was recalled, in order, as was reported, to make preparations for an expedition to the iſland of Bally; and on Monday the 7th of March, the largeſt of the guard boats, a ſloop of 40 tons, was likewiſe ordered to return to Macaſſar, with part of the ſoldiers. On the 9th, the reſident received aletter from the governor, enquiring when Captain Carteret would ſail for Batavia, though he muſt have known this would not be before the eaſtern monſoon ſet in, which would not be till May. Theſe were ſuſpicious circumſtances, which gained ſtrength toward the concluſion of the month, at which time a canoe was obſerved to paddle round the ſhip, ſeveral times in the night, and to retire as ſoon as ſhe was ſeen. It is proper to obſerve here, that the town of Macaſſar is in a diſtrict called Macaſſar, or Bony, the king whereof is an ally of the Dutch, who have frequently been repulſed in their attempts to reduce other parts of the iſland, one of which is inhabited by a people called Bugueſſes, and another Waggs, or Tolora. The laſt place is fortified with cannon; for the natives were acquainted with the uſe of fire-arms, and were ſupplied with them from Europe, before the Dutch ſettled themſelves at Macaſſar in the room of the Portugueſe.

On Tueſday the 29th, a black man delivered a letter to our lieutenant, directed to "The Commander of the Engliſh ſhip at Bonthain," the purport of which was to acquaint the Captain, that the king of Bony, in conjunction with the Dutch, had formed a deſign to cut us off; they were not to appear in the buſineſs, but the ſon of the king of Bony was appointed the principal agent. Beſides the plunder of the Swallow, he was to receive a gratuity from his employers. The letter intimated that he was now at Bonthain, with 800 men, ready to execute the project, which was formed from a jealouſy of our being connected with the enemies of the Dutch, with a view of expelling them out of the iſland; or at leaſt they ſuſpected, that by our intelligence, a ſcheme of that kind might be planned, on our return to England. This letter became a new ſubject of ſpeculation, and though ill written, with reſpect to ſtyle and manner, yet it did not therefore deſerve the leſs notice; eſpecially when we recollected the recall of Le Cerf, and other remarkable circumſtances, which have been already related. However, whether the intelligence, and our conjectures, were true, or falſe, it was our duty to take proper meaſures for our ſecurity. Accordingly all hands were immediately ſet to work. We rigged the ſhip, bent the ſails, unmoored, got ſprings upon our cables, loaded all our guns, and barricadoed the deck. Every one ſlept under arms during the night; and the next day being the 30th, we fixed four ſwivel guns on the fore part of the quarter deck; and warped the ſhip farther off from the bottom of the bay, towards the eaſtern ſhore, that, in caſe of neceſſity, we might have more room for action. At this time the reſident was up the country, tranſacting buſineſs for the company, and, before his departure, he told the Captain, he ſhould certainly return by the 1ſt of April. It was now the 4th, and we had neither ſeen him, nor received any anſwer to a letter the Captain had wrote him; but on Tueſday the 5th, he came on board, and a few minutes convinced us, he was not in any reſpect privy to the ſuppoſed deſign againſt us.. He acknowledged, that a miniſter of the king of Bony, had lately paid him a viſit, and had not well accounted for his being in this part of the country; and, at the Captain's requeſt, very readily undertook to make farther enquiries concerning Bony and his people; and a few days after he ſent us word, that having made a very ſtrict enquiry, whether any perſons belonging to the king of Bony had been at Bonthain, he had been informed, that one of the princes of that kingdom had been there in diſguiſe; but that of the 800 men, who were ſaid, according to our intelligence, to be with him, he could find no traces. At this viſit, while aboard, Mr. Swellingrabel took notice of the ſhip, obſerving, that it was put in a ſtate of defence, and ſeeing every thing ready for immediate action, he ſaid, that the people on ſhore had informed him of our vigilance and activity, and in particular, of our having exerciſed our men at ſmall arms every day. In return, the Captain told him, we ſhould continue on our guard, which he ſeemed to approve, and we parted with mutual promiſes of friendſhip and good faith.

On Saturday the 16th, the reſident. M. Le Cerf, with another officer, who was likewiſe an enſign, came on board and dined with us. After dinner, the Captain aſked Le Cerf, what was become of his expedition to Bally, to which he anſwered drily, that it was laid aſide, without ſaying any thing more on the ſubject. On the 23rd, he returned to Macaſſar, and the other enſign took upon him the command of the ſoldiers that ſtill remained at this place. The ſeaſon now advanced apace, when navigation to the weſtward would again be practicable, which gave us all great pleaſure, eſpecially as putrid fevers began to make their appearance among us, by which ſeveral were attacked, and one was carried off. On the 7th of May, Captain Carteret received a long letter, written in Dutch, from the governor of Macaſſar, the general purport of which was, to exculpate himſelf from the charge of having, in conjunction with the king of Bony, formed a deſign to cut us off. He denied, in the moſt ſolemn manner, his having the leaſt knowledge of ſuch a project, and required the letter to be put into his hands, that the writer might be brought to ſuch puniſhment as he deſerved; but the Captain would not deliver up the letter, knowing that the writer would certainly have been puniſhed with equal ſeverity, whether the contents were true or falſe; and it muſt be confeſſed, we had the greateſt reaſon to believe that there was not ſufficient ground for the main charge contained therein, though it is not equally probable that the writer believed it to be falſe. By the 22nd, we were ready to ſail from this place, but before we take our departure, we ſhall make a few obſervations; and alſo give a particular account of the ſituation, trade, and produce of the Sunda Iſlands, the manners and cuſtoms of the inhabitants, &c. as theſe places are generally mentioned, and ſome of them touched at, by all our circumnavigators.

I. *Of the Celebes, or the Iſland of Macaſſar.*

Southward of the Philippines (of which we have given a full deſcription) lies the iſland of Celebes, or Macaſſar, extending from one deg. 30 min. N. latitude, to 5 deg. 30 min. S. having the great iſland of Borneo on the weſt, and the Molucca's on the eaſt. The length of it from the S. W. point to the N. E. is about 500 miles, and in the broadeſt part of it, it is near 200 miles over. The ſouth part of the iſland is divided by a bay ſeven or eight leagues wide, which runs forty or fifty leagues up into the country, and on the eaſt-ſide of the iſland are ſeveral bays and harbours, and abundance of ſmall iſlands and ſhoals: towards the north there is ſome high land: but on the eaſt the country is low and flat, and watered with many little rivulets. This iſland is divided into ſix petty kingdoms or provinces, the principal whereof are Celebes, on the N. W. lying under the equinoctial; and Macaſſar, which takes in all the ſouth part of the iſland: the reſt of the provinces were uſually under the dominion of one of theſe; whereupon the iſland ſometimes receives its name from one, and ſometimes from the other.

The air is hot and moiſt, the whole country lying under or very near the line, ſubject to great rains. It is moſt healthful during the northern monſoons: if they fail of blowing at their accuſtomed time, the iſland grows ſickly, and great numbers of people are ſwept away. They have mines of copper, tin, and gold, but we do not find they are much wrought; the gold they have is found chiefly in the ſands of their rivers, and at the bottom of hills, waſhed down by torrents. In their woods they have ebony, calambac and ſanders, and ſeveral ſorts of wood proper for dying; and no place, it is ſaid, affords larger bamboos, ſome of them being four or five fathoms long, and above two foot diameter, which they make uſe of in building their houſes and boats. Their fruits and flowers are much the ſame with thoſe in the Philippines, and therefore we ſhall not tire the reader with a repetition of them, only mention ſome of the principal. They have pepper and ſugar of their own growth, as well as betel and arek, in great plenty; but no nutmegs, mace or cloves; however, of theſe they uſed formerly to import ſuch quantities from the ſpice iſlands that they had ſufficient for their own uſe, and ſold great quantities to foreigners. Their rice is ſaid to be better than in any other parts of India, it not being overflowed annually as in other countries, but watered from time to time by the huſbandman as occaſion requires; and from the goodneſs of their rice, the natives are of a ſtronger conſtitution than thoſe of Siam or other parts of India. Their fruits are alſo held to be of a more delicious taſte than the fruits of other countries which are expoſed to floods: the plains here are covered with the cotton ſhrub which bears a red flower, and when the flower falls, it leaves a head about as big as a walnut, from whence the cotton is drawn; and that which comes from Macaſſar is accounted the fineſt in India. Of all their plants, opium is what they moſt admire; it is a ſhrub which grows at the bottom of mountains, or in ſtony ground: the branches afford a liquor which is drawn out much after the ſame manner as palm wine, and being ſtopped up cloſe in a pot, comes to a conſiſtency, when they make it up in little pills: they often diſſolve one of theſe pills in water and ſprinkle their tobacco with it; and thoſe who are uſed to take it can never leave it off: they are lulled into a pleaſing dream, and intoxicated as with ſtrong liquor; but it inſenſibly preys upon their ſpirits and ſhortens their lives: they will take the quantity of two pins heads in a pipe of tobacco, when they enter into a battle, and become almoſt inſenſible of wounds or danger till the effect of it is worn off.

The natives of this iſland are famous for the poiſons they compound of the venomous drugs and herbs their country produces; of which, it is ſaid, the very touch or ſmell occaſions preſent death: the young gentlemen are inſtructed how to blow their little poiſoned darts through a tube or hollow cane, about ſix feet in length; with theſe they engage their enemies; and if they make the leaſt wound with theſe darts, it is ſaid to be mortal. Though theſe weapons would not be much dreaded among people that are well cloathed, yet as the natives engage naked, their ſkins are eaſily penetrated, and the poiſon operates ſo ſpeedily, that it is not eaſy to cure them: they will ſtrike a man with theſe darts at near an hundred yards diſtance.

Macaſſar, the chief city here, is ſituated on the banks of the river of the ſame name, near the S. W. corner of the Iſland. Here the Dutch have a very ſtrong fort, mounted with a great number of cannon; and the garriſon conſiſts of 800 men. The ſtreets of the town are wide and neat, but not paved, and trees are planted on each ſide of them. The palaces, moſque, and great houſes are of ſtone, but the houſes of the meaner ſort of wood of various colours, which make them look very beautiful, but are built on pillars like thoſe of Siam, and the roofs like theirs alſo are covered with palm or cocoa leaves. Here are ſhops along the ſtreets, and large market places, where a market is held twice in 24 hours, viz. in the morning before ſun-riſe, and an hour before ſun-ſet, where only women are ſeen; a man would be laughed at to be found amongſt them: from all the villages you ſee the young wenches crowding to market with fleſh, fiſh, rice and fowls; they abſtain only from pork, which their religion forbids. Upon a computation of the number of inhabitants, in this city and the neighbouring villages, ſome years ago, they amounted to 160,000 men able to bear arms; but now are not half that number, many of them having forſaken their country ſince the Dutch deprived them of their trade. The reſt of the towns and villages were once equally populous, but are now many of them deſerted. The people of Macaſſar have excellent memories, and are quick of apprehenſion; they will imitate any thing they ſee, and would probably become good proficients in all arts and ſciences, if they did not want good maſters to improve their talents.

They have alſo ſtrong robuſt bodies, are extremely induſtrious, and as ready to undergo fatigues as any people whatever; nor are any people more addicted to arms and hardy enterpriſes, inſomuch that they may be looked upon as almoſt the only ſoldiers on the other ſide the bay of Bengal; and accordingly are hired into the ſervice of other princes and ſtates on that ſide, as the Swiſs are in this part of the world: even the Europeans frequently employ them in their ſervice, but have ſometimes ſuffered by truſting them too far; or rather, our people being too apt to uſe them like ſlaves, as they do the poor Portugueſe and Muſtees in their ſervice; this is a treatment which the Macaſſarians will not bear, and never fail to revenge whenever it is attempted by our European governors.

The people of Macaſſar are of a moderate ſtature, their complexions ſwarthy, their cheek-bones ſtand high, and their noſes are generally flat; the laſt is eſteemed a beauty, and almoſt as much pains taken to make them ſo in their infancy, as to make the Chineſe ladies have little feet.

They have ſhining black hair, which is tied up and covered with a turban, or cloth wound about their heads when they are dreſſed, but at other times they wear a kind of hat or cap with little brims.

They continually rub and ſupple the limbs of their infants with oil to render them nimble and active; and this is thought to be one reaſon there is hardly ever ſeen a lame or crooked perſon among them.

Their male children of the better ſort, it is ſaid, are always taken from their mothers at ſix or ſeven years of age, and committed to the care of ſome remote relation, that they may not be too much indulged and effeminated by the careſſes of the mother: they are ſent to ſchool to their prieſts, who teach them to write and read and caſt accounts, and the precepts of the koran: their characters very much reſemble the Arabic, which is not ſtrange, ſince their anceſtors, many of them, were Arabians.

Beſides their books, every child is bred up to ſome handicraft trade; they are alſo taught ſeveral ſports and martial exerciſes, if they are of quality; but the meaner ſort are employed in huſbandry, fiſhing, and ordinary trades, as in other places.

This people ſeem to be inſpired with juſt notions of honour and friendſhip, and there are inſtances of many of them who have expoſed their lives even in defence of foreigners and Chriſtians; and of others who have generouſly relieved and maintained people in diſtreſs, and even ſuffered them to ſhare their eſtates. They retained that love of liberty, that they were the laſt of the Indian nations that were enſlaved by the Dutch, which did not happen neither till after a long and very expenſive war, wherein almoſt the whole force of the Hollanders in India was employed. The people in general are very much ſubject to paſſion; and they will condemn their own raſhneſs if they are in the wrong.

The women are remarkably chaſte and reſerved, at leaſt they cannot help appearing ſo; for the leaſt ſmile, or glance on any but their huſbands, is held a ſufficient reaſon for a divorce; nor dare they admit of a viſit even from a brother, but in the preſence of the huſband; and the law indemnifies him for killing any man he ſhall find alone with his wife, or on whom ſhe has conferred any mark of her favour. But the inhabitants of this country are in general ſo little addicted to infamous practices, or litigious diſputes, that they have neither attornies or bailiffs among them. If any differences ariſe, the parties apply perſonally to the judge, who determines the matter with expedition and equity. In ſome criminal caſes, ſuch as murder, robbery, &c. he has a right to execute juſtice himſelf, by deſtroying the offender. On the other hand, the man keeps as many wives and concubines as he pleaſes, and nothing can be more ignominious than the want of children, and the having but one wife: the love of women, and the deſire of children is univerſal; and according to the number of women and children the man poſſeſſes his happineſs is rated.

To proceed; though the women of faſhion generally keep cloſe, yet upon certain feſtivals they are ſuffered to come abroad and ſpend their time in public company, in dancing and other diverſions uſed in the country; but the men do not mix with them as in this part of the world, only they have the happineſs to ſee and be ſeen, which makes them wait for this happy time with impatience.

Their princes and great men wear a garment made of ſcarlet cloth or brocaded ſilk, with large buttons of gold; they have likewiſe a very handſome embroidered ſaſh made of ſilk, in which their dagger and purſe are placed, with their knife, crice, and other little trinkets. People of figure dye the nail of the little finger of the left-hand red, and let it grow as long as the finger. The women wear a muſlin ſhift, or rather waiſtcoat, cloſe to their bodies, and a pair of breeches, which reaches down to the middle of the leg, made of ſilk or cotton, and have no other head dreſs than their hair tied up in a roll, with ſome curls hanging down their necks; they throw a looſe piece of linen or muſlin over all when they go abroad; nor have they any ornaments but a gold chain about their necks. They are fond of a fine equipage and a great number of ſervants to attend them, and if they have not ſo many of their own as their quality requires, they will not ſtir out, till they have got the uſual number, by hiring or borrowing them. The furniture of their houſes conſiſt chiefly of carpets and cuſhions, and the couches they ſleep on. They ſit croſs-legged on mats and carpets, as moſt Aſiatics do.

This iſland produces moſt animals except ſheep. There are monkeys and baboons in abundance, that will ſet upon travellers; ſome of them are quite black, ſome of a ſtraw colour, and others white, the latter of which are generally as big as maſtiffs, and much more miſchievous than the others. Some have long tails, and walk on all-fours; others are without tails, and walk upright, uſing their fore-feet as hands, and in their actions greatly reſemble the human ſpecies. Their going in large companies ſecures them from the more powerful beaſts of the foreſts; but they are ſometimes conquered by the large ſerpents, which purſue them to the tops of trees, and deſtroy them.

The natives do not ſcruple eating any fleſh but pork, this no Mahometan will touch; but their food is chiefly rice, fiſh, herbs, fruit and roots; fleſh they eat but little of. They have but two meals a day, one in the morning, and the other about ſun-ſet; but their chief meal is in the evening; they chew betel and areka, or ſmoke tobacco mixed with opium moſt part of the day. Their liquor is tea, coffee, ſherbet, or chocolate, and they have palm wine, arrac, or ſpirits, which they ſometimes indulge in, though it is prohibited by their religion. They loll upon carpets at their meals, and eat off diſhes made of China wood, ſilver or copper, which are ſet on little low lacquered tables; and take up the rice with their hands inſtead of ſpoons, which they ſeem not to know the uſe of. In the celebration of marriage the huſband receives no other portion with his wife than the preſents ſhe received before marriage. As ſoon as the prieſt has performed the ceremony, the new-married couple are confined in an apartment by themſelves for three ſucceſſive days, having only a ſervant to bring them ſuch neceſſaries as they may have occaſion for, during which time their friends and acquaintances are entertained, and great rejoicings made at the houſe of the bride's father. At the expiration of the three days the parties are ſet at liberty, and receive the congratulations of their friends; after which, the bridegroom conducts his wife home, and both apply themſelves to buſineſs, he to his accuſtomed profeſſion, and ſhe to the duties belonging to houſewifery, and the management of a family. When a man has reaſon to ſuſpect his wife of infidelity, he applies to a prieſt for a divorce; and if the complaint appears juſt, there is no difficulty in obtaining it. In this caſe the ſecular judge pronounces the accuſed party guilty, declares her to be divorced, and ſettles the terms: both parties, after this judgment, have liberty to marry again.

The Macaſſarians had originally ſtrange notions of religion: they believed there were no other gods but the ſun and moon; and to them they ſacrificed in the public ſquares, not having materials which they thought ſufficiently valuable to be employed in erecting temples. According to their creed, the ſun and moon were eternal, as well as the heavens, whoſe empire they divided between them. Theſe abſurdities, however, had not ſo laſting an influence either over the nobles or people, as is found from the religious doctrines of other nations: for the Turks and apoſtles of the koran arriving in the country, the ſovereign and his people embraced Mahometaniſm, and the other parts of the iſland ſoon followed their example. They are great pretenders to magic; and carry charms about them, ſuppoſing theſe will ſecure them from every danger. When any one is ſo ill as to be given over by the phyſician the prieſts are ſent for, who, attributing the violence of their diſeaſe to the influence of ſome evil ſpirit, firſt pray to them, and then write the names of God and Mahomet on ſmall pieces of paper, which are carefully hung about their necks; and if the patient does not ſoon recover, his death is conſidered as inevitable, and every preparation is made for his expected departure. Theſe people perform their funeral ceremonies with great decency; to ſecure which, the meaneſt perſon makes proviſion while in health, by aſſigning a certain ſum to defray the neceſſary expences attending it. As ſoon as a perſon is dead, the dead body is waſhed, and, being cloathed in a white robe, is placed in a room hung with white, which is ſcented with the ſtrongeſt perfumes. Here it continues for three days, and on the fourth it is carried on a palanquin to the grave, preceded by the friends and relations, and followed by the prieſts, who have attendants that carry incenſe and perfumes, which are burnt all the way from the houſe to the grave. The body is interred without a coffin, there being only a plank, at the bottom of the grave for it to lie on, and another to cover it: and when this laſt is placed, the earth is thrown in, and the grave filled up. If the perſon is of any diſtinguiſhed quality, a handſome tomb is immediately placed over the grave, adorned with flowers, and the relations burn incenſe and other perfumes for 40 days ſucceſſively.

This iſland was formerly under a monarchical government; and in order to prevent the crown falling to an infant, the eldeſt brother ſucceeded after the death of the king. All places of truſt in the civil government were diſpoſed of by the prime miniſters; but the officers of the revenue and of the houſhold were appointed by the ſovereign. The king's forces, when out of actual ſervice, were not allowed any pay, but only their cloaths, arms, and ammunition. It is ſaid, that in former wars he has brought 12,000 horſe, and 80,000 foot into the field; but the laſt war with the Dutch, proved the total deſtruction of both king and country; ſince which, this iſland has been under the government of three different princes, who are conſtantly at variance with each other; which is a favourable circumſtance for the Dutch, who might otherwiſe meet with a powerful oppoſition, and be deprived of thoſe advantages they have ſo long poſſeſſed on this ſide the globe. Theſe princes hold aſſemblies at particular times on affairs that concern the general intereſt; and the reſult of their determinations becomes a law to each ſtate. When any conteſt ariſes, it is decided by the governor of the Dutch colony, who preſides at the above diet. He keeps a watchful eye over theſe different ſovereigns, and holds them in perfect equality with each other, to prevent any of them from aggrandizing themſelves to the prejudice of the company. The Dutch have diſarmed them all, under pretence of hindering them from injuring each other, but in reality only to keep them in a ſtate of ſubjection.

Jampadan is another port-town about 15 miles ſouth of Macaſſar River, one of the beſt harbours in India, and the firſt town the Dutch took from the natives; here they ſunk or ſeized all the Portugueſe fleet when they were in full peace with that nation. The reſt of the towns and villages lying in the flat country near the ſea, or the mouths of rivers, are for the moſt part built with wood or cane, and ſtand upon high pillars on account of the annual flood, when they have a communication with one another only by boats.

About the Celebes are ſeveral iſlands that go by the ſame name, the principal of which is ſituated about five leagues from the S. E. corner. This iſland is about 80 miles long, and 30 broad: on the eaſt-ſide of it is a large town and harbour called Callacaſſong, the ſtreets of which are ſpacious and encloſed on each ſide with cocoa trees. The inhabitants are governed by an abſolute prince, ſpeak the Malayan tongue, and are Mahometans. The ſtraits of Patience are on the other ſide of this iſland; they are ſo called from the great difficulty in paſſing them, which ariſes from the violence of the currents, and the contrariety of the winds.

II. Of

II. *Of the ſituation, trade, and produce of Borneo, Sumatra, and Java, commonly called the Sunda Iſlands; and of the manners and cuſtoms of the inhabitants, &c.*

THE moſt conſiderable of the Sunda Iſlands, called ſo from the ſtraits near which they lie, are Borneo, Sumatra and Java.

Borneo extends from 7 deg. 30 min. N. latitude, to 4 deg. S. latitude, and from 107 to 117 degrees of longitude, being about 700 miles in length and 500 in breadth, and is computed to be 2500 miles in circumference. The figure of this iſland being almoſt round, it probably contains a great numberer of acres than any iſland hitherto diſcovered. To the eaſtward of it lies the iſland of Celebes or Macaſſar, to the ſouth the iſland of Java, to the weſt the iſland of Sumatra, and to the N. E. the Philippine Iſlands.

The air of this country is not exceſſive hot, conſidering it is ſituated under the equinoctial, being refreſhed almoſt every day with ſhowers and cool breezes, as all other countries that are under the line; but as thoſe parts of the iſland which border on the ſea-coaſt lie upon a flat for ſeveral hundred miles, and are annually flooded; upon the retiring of the waters, the whole ſurface of the ground is covered with mud or ſoft ouze, which the ſun darting its rays perpendicularly upon, raiſes thick noiſome fogs, which are not diſperſed till nine or ten in the morning, and render thoſe parts of the iſland very unwholeſome. The multitude of frogs and inſects that the waters leave behind, and are ſoon killed by the heat of the ſun, cauſe an intolerable ſtench alſo at that time of the year, and corrupt the air: add to this the cold chilling winds and damps which ſucceed the hotteſt days; from all which, we may conclude it muſt be very unhealthful, at leaſt to European conſtitutions: and the loſs of our countrymen, who yearly travel thither, ſufficiently convinces us of this truth. As to their monſoons, or periodical winds, they are weſterly from September to April, or thereabouts; during which time is their wet ſeaſon, when heavy rains continually pour down, intermixed with violent ſtorms of thunder and lightning; and at this time it is very rare to have two hours fair weather together on the ſouth coaſt of the iſland, whither the Europeans principally reſort. The dry ſeaſon begins uſually in April and continues till September; and in this part of the year too, they ſeldom fail of a ſhower every day, when the ſea breeze comes in.

The harbours of greateſt note, and to which the Europeans uſually reſort, are Banjar Maſſeen, Succadanea and Borneo, but much more to Banjar Maſſeen than either of the other; the greateſt quantities of pepper growing towards the ſource of that river, which falls into the ſea 3 deg. 18 min. S. latitude. The town of Banjar formerly ſtood about 12 miles up the river, and was built partly on wooden pillars, and partly on floats of timber in the river; but there is now no ſign of a town there, the inhabitants being removed to Tatas, about ſix miles higher.

The city of Borneo, formerly the reſidence of the principal ſultan or king of the iſland, lies on the N. W. part of the iſland, in 4 deg. 55 min. N. latitude, and is a very commodious harbour. This city is very large, the ſtreets ſpacious, and the houſes well built; they are in general three ſtories high, covered with flat roofs, and the ſultan's palace is a very elegant and extenſive building. It is the chief ſeat of commerce in the iſland, and the port is continually crowded with ſhips from China, Cambodia, Siam, Malacca, &c. The Engliſh and Portugueſe have ſome trade here, though no ſettled factory. The port of Succadanea lies on the weſt-ſide of the iſland, in 15 min. S. latitude, and was heretofore more reſorted to by the Europeans than any other. Over againſt this, on the eaſt-ſide of the iſland, ſtands another ſea-port town, called Paſſeir, in 15 min. S. latitude, but is not a place of any great trade.

One of the moſt conſiderable inland towns is Caytonge, the ſultan whereof is now the moſt potent prince in the iſland: this city lies about 100 miles up the river Banjar; and about 200 miles higher ſtands the town of Negaree, the reſidence of another ſultan. The names of the other principal towns are Tanjongbuoro, Sedang, Tanjongdatoo, Sambas, Landa, Piſagadan, Cotapanjang Sampit, Tanjong, Selatan, Gonwarengen and Pomanoocan.

Their chief rivers are, 1. Banjar. 2. Tatas. 3. Java. 4. Succadanea: and, 5. Borneo.

Banjar is a fine river, riſing in the mountains in the middle of the iſland, and, running ſouth, diſcharges itſelf into a bay on the S. E. part of the iſland, being navigable for ſeveral hundred miles; the banks are planted with tall ever-green trees. The river Tatas falls into the mouth of Banjar River, and is frequently called the China River, becauſe the China junks lie in the mouth of it. The rivers Java and Succadanea run from the N. E. to the S. W. and fall into the bay of Succadanea in the S. W. part of the iſland.

The river Borneo falls into the bay of Borneo, in the N. W. part of the iſland. The tides in the river Banjar flow but once in 24 hours, and that in the day-time; they never riſe more than half a foot in the night (unleſs in a very dry ſeaſon) which is occaſioned by the rapid torrents, and the land winds blowing very ſtrong in the night-time. There lie three iſlands within the entrance of the river, the firſt of which is covered with tall trees, that may be ſeen at ſea, and are a good mark for ſailing over the bar. If a ſhip be aground, the ebb is ſo very ſtrong, occaſioned by the land floods, that ſhe will run the hazard of being broke to pieces; and the trees continually driving down the river, render the navigation ſtill more dangerous. The beſt anchoring place is a mile or two within the river; it is beſt to ſail up with the flood, the tide of ebb runs ſo ſtrong. There are a great many fine bays and harbours on the coaſt, but that moſt reſorted to is at the mouth of the river Banjar.

The natives of Borneo conſiſt of two different people, that are of different religions; thoſe upon the ſea coaſt are uſually called Banjareens, from the town of Banjar, to which moſt nations reſort, to trade with them. The Banjareens are of a low ſtature, very ſwarthy, their features bad, reſembling much the negroes of Guinea, though their complexion are not ſo dark; they are well proportioned, their hair is black, and ſhines with the oil with which they perpetually greaſe it. The women are of a low ſtature and ſmall limbs, as the men are, but their features and complexion much better, and they move with a good grace. The lower claſs of people go almoſt naked; they have only a little bit of cloth before, and a piece of linen tied about their heads. Their betters, when they are dreſſed on days of ceremony, wear a veſt of red or blue ſilk, and a looſe piece of ſilk or fine linen tied about their loins, and thrown over their left ſhoulder. They wear a pair of drawers, but no ſhirt, and their legs and feet are bare; their hair is bound up in a roll, and a piece of muſlin or callico tied over it; they always carry a crice or dagger in their ſaſh when they go abroad. The Byaios or mountaineers are much taller and larger bodied men than the Banjareens, and a braver people, which their ſituation and manner of life may account for, being inured to labour, and to follow the chace for their daily food; whereas the Banjareens uſe very little exerciſe, travelling chiefly by water. The Byaios have ſcarce any cloathing, but, not admiring their tawny ſkins, paint their bodies blue, and, like all other people that live in hot climates, anoint themſelves with oil, which ſmells very ſtrong; and the better ſort, it is ſaid, pull out their foreteeth, and place artificial ones, made of gold, in their ſtead; but their greateſt ornament conſiſts of a number of tygers teeth, which are ſtrung together, and worn about the neck. Some of them are very fond of having large ears; to obtain which, they make holes in the ſoft parts of them when young; to theſe holes are faſtened weights about the breadth of a crown piece, which is continually preſſing on the ears, and expand them to ſuch a length, as to cauſe them to reſt upon the ſhoulders.

The Banjareens are an hoſpitable friendly people, where they are not abuſed, or apprehend foreigners have a deſign upon their liberties; they ſeem to be men of good ſenſe, but not being acquainted with the world, are frequently impoſed upon in their traffic with the crafty Chineſe. The chief part of their food here is rice, as it is in other hot countries, but with it they eat veniſon, fiſh, or fowl, and almoſt all kind of meat, except hogs fleſh; and men of figure are ſerved in gold or ſilver plate; the common people are content with braſs or earthen diſhes, and all ſit croſs-legged upon mats or carpets at their meals, and indeed almoſt all day long, chewing betel and arek, or ſmoaking tobacco, which both ſexes are very fond of when it is mixed with opium. The whole company uſually ſmoke out of one pipe; the maſter of the feaſt having ſmoked firſt, paſſes it round the company, and they will ſometimes ſit ſmoaking ſo long, that they grow ſtupid. At other times they divert themſelves with comedies, and the Chineſe have taught them to game; their rural ſports are hunting, ſhooting, and fiſhing. They have ſuch plenty of fiſh, that they may take as many as will ſerve them a day at one caſt, from their houſes, which are built upon floats in their rivers. Their uſual ſalute is the ſalam, lifting up their hands to their heads, and bowing their bodies a little; and before their princes, they throw themſelves proſtrate on the ground: no one preſumes to ſpeak to a great man, till he is firſt ſpoken to, and required to tell his buſineſs; they uſually travel in covered boats upon their rivers; but the great men who live in the inland country ride on elephants or horſes. Beſides rice, already mentioned, the produce of this country is cocoa-nuts, oranges, citrons, plantains, melons, bananas, pine-apples, mangoes, and all manner of tropical fruits; cotton, canes, rattans, and plenty of very fine timber; gold, precious ſtones, camphire, bezoar, and pepper. There are three ſorts of black pepper; the firſt and beſt is the Molucca, or lout pepper; the ſecond is called Caytonge pepper, and the worſt ſort is the Negaree pepper, of which there is the greateſt plenty. This is ſmall, hollow and light, and commonly full of duſt, and the buyer will be impoſed on if he buys it by meaſure, and does not weigh it. He muſt take care alſo, that the pepper be not mixed with little black ſtones, which are not eaſily ſeen. The white pepper grows on the ſame tree as the black pepper does, and bears twice the price: it is conjectured to be the beſt of the fruit that drops of itſelf, and is gathered up by the poor people in ſmall quantities, before it turns black, and the ſcarcity of it occaſions it to be ſo dear; but we ſeem to want a more ſatisfactory account of this matter.

The animals here are the ſame as on the continent of India, viz. bears, tygers, elephants, buffaloes, deer, &c. but the moſt remarkable animal, and which is almoſt peculiar to this iſland, is that monſtrous monkey called the oran-outang, or man of the woods, near ſix feet high, and walks upon his hinder legs. He has a face like a man, and is not ſo ugly as ſome of the human ſpecies, particularly the Hottentots; he has no tail, or any hair on his body, but where a man has hair. Mr. Beeckman, captain of an Indiaman, purchaſed one of them, who would drink punch, and open his caſe of brandy to get a dram, if he was left alone with it, drink a quantity, and then return the bottle to the caſe. He would lay himſelf down to ſleep as a man does: if the Captain appeared angry with him, he would whine and ſigh till he was reconciled. He would wreſtle with the ſeamen, and was ſtronger than any of them, though he was not a year old when he died; for the Captain loſt him as ſoon as he came into cold weather, having been bred in the hotteſt climates.

Among their minerals is gold, which the mountaineers get out of the ſands of their rivulets in the dry ſeaſon, and diſpoſe of it to the Banjareens, from whom the Europeans receive it: there are alſo iron mines, and the load-ſtone is found here.

The principal articles of merchandize imported from Borneo by the Europeans, are pepper, gold, diamonds, camphire, bezoar, aloes, maſtick and other gums and the goods proper to be carried thither, beſides bullion and treaſure, are ſmall cannon from 100 to 200 weight, lead, callimancoes, cutlery wares, iron bars, ſmall ſteel bars, hangers, the ſmalleſt ſort of ſpike nails, twenty-penny nails, graplings of 40 pounds weight, red leather boots, ſpectacles, clock-work, ſmall arms with braſs mountings, horſe piſtols, blunderbuſſes, gunpowder and looking-glaſſes. The purchaſing gold is a profitable article, and diamonds may be had reaſonably, though they are generally ſmall ones: they uſually purchaſe gold with dollars, giving a certain number of ſilver dollars for the weight of one dollar in gold. The current money is dollars, half and quarter dollars; and for ſmall change they have a ſort of money made of lead in the form of rings, which are ſtrung on a kind of dry leaf.

The language of the inhabitants on the coaſt is the Malayan; but the iſlanders have a language peculiar to themſelves, and both retain the ſuperſtitious cuſtoms of the Chineſe. They are intirely ignorant of aſtronomy; and when an eclipſe happens, they think the world is going to be deſtroyed. Arithmetic they know but little of; and their only method of calculating, is, by parallel lines and moveable buttons on a board. They have likewiſe little knowledge of phyſic; and the letting of blood, how deſperate ſoever the caſe of the patient may be, is to them a circumſtance of a very alarming nature, as they ſuppoſe, by the operation, we let out our very ſouls and lives. It is their opinion, that moſt of their diſtempers are cauſed through the malice of ſome evil demon; and when a perſon is ſick, inſtead of applying to medicine, they make an entertainment of various kinds of proviſions, which they hold under ſome conſpicuous tree in a field; theſe proviſions, which conſiſt of rice, fowl, fiſh, &c. they offer for the relief of the perſon afflicted; and if he recover, they repeat the offering, by way of returning thanks, for the bleſſing received; but if the patient dies, they expreſs their reſentment againſt the ſpirit by whom he is ſuppoſed to have been afflicted. Both Pagans and Mahometans allow a plurality of wives and concubines; and the marriage ceremonies of both are the ſame as in other Mahometan countries. The girls are generally married at the age of ten, and leave child-bearing before they are twenty-five. The women are very conſtant after marriage; but are apt to beſtow favours with great freedom when ſingle; and however indiſcreet they may have been in this point, they are not conſidered the worſe for it by their huſbands, nor dare any one reproach them for what they have committed previous to their marriage. They in general live to an advanced age, which is attributed to their frequent uſe of the water; for both men and women bathe in the river once in the day; and from this practice they are very expert ſwimmers. In burying their dead, they always place the head to the north, and they throw into the grave ſeveral kinds of proviſions, from an abſurd and ſuperſtitious notion that theſe may be uſeful to them in the other world. They fix the place of interment out of the reach of the floods; and the mourners, as in Japan and China, are dreſſed in white, and carry lighted torches in their hands.

In the inland part of this country, are ſeveral petty kingdoms, each of which is governed by a rajah, or king. All the rajahs were formerly ſubject to the rajah of Borneo, who was eſteemed the ſupreme king over the whole iſland; but his authority has been of late years greatly diminiſhed; and there are other kings equal, if not more powerful than himſelf; particularly the king of Caytonge. The town where this prince reſides is ſituated about 80 miles up the Banjar River. His palace is a very elegant building erected on pillars, and is open on all ſides. Before the palace is a large building, conſiſting only of one room, which is ſet apart for holding councils, and entertaining foreigners. In the centre of the room is the throne, covered with a rich canopy of gold and ſilver brocade. About the palace are planted ſeveral cannon, which are ſo old, and mounted on ſuch wretched carriages, that they are neither ornamental nor uſeful. This prince is eſteemed the greateſt, on account of the cuſtoms he receives at the port of Benjar Maſſeen, which are eſtimated at 8000 pieces of eight per annum. The king or Sultan of Negaree is the moſt conſiderable prince, next to the above: his palace is ſituated at a place called Metapoora, about 10 miles from Caytonge. There is a handſome armoury before the gates of his palace, which contains a great number of fire arms, and ſeveral cannon. He is always on good terms with his neighbour the prince of Caytonge, and the reſt are ſubordinate to theſe two princes; great homage is paid them by the natives, and it is difficult for a ſtranger to get acceſs to them: the only means to effect this, is, by complimenting them with ſome valuable preſent, for avarice is their darling paſſion; and the ſtranger will be treated with reſpect in proportion to the preſent he makes.

Sumatra is one of the Sunda Iſlands, ſituate in the Indian ocean, between 93 and 104 deg. of eaſtern longitude, and between 5 deg. 30 min. N. latitude, and 5 deg. 30 min. S. latitude, the equinoctial line running croſs the middle of it; having Malacca on the N. Borneo on the E. Java on the S. E. and the Indian ocean on the weſt, and is 800 miles long, and about 150 broad. The air is generally unhealthful near the coaſt, the country being very hot, and very moiſt, and changing ſuddenly from ſultry heat in the day-time, to cold chilling winds in the night. It is the firſt of the remarkable iſlands that form the great Archipelago of the eaſt, the entrance of which is, as it were, blocked up by this iſland and Java, which form a barrier ſeparating the Indian from the Chineſe ocean; except that in the center between the two iſlands there is an opening, which appears as if purpoſely deſigned to admit a free paſſage for the advantages of commerce. This opening is called the ſtrait of Sunda, the ſouth part of which is the north of Java, and called Java Head; and the north point is the ſouth of Sumatra, called Flat Point. Theſe two are about ſix leagues aſunder, between which ſhips paſs from Europe directly to Batavia or China, without touching at the Indies: they ſtretch away eaſt from the Cape of Good Hope, and make no land till having traverſed the whole Indian ſea they arrive at Java Head.

In Sumatra are no phyſicians, but they rely upon the ſkill and experience of ſome good old women, who are acquainted with the nature of their ſimples. The flux is the diſtemper that uſually carries off foreigners, againſt which the fruit guava and the pomegranate are certain remedies, if taken before the diſtemper becomes violent; but moſt other fruits promote the diſeaſe. Bathing in cold water is eſteemed another remedy for the flux. Their water, unboiled, as well as ſherbet, is very unwholeſome; full meals of fleſh ought to be avoided, occaſioning a diſtemper called the Mort Duchin, which is attended with a violent vomiting and purging, and uſually carries off the patient in 24 hours. Thoſe gentlemen that drink ſtrong liquors to exceſs, uſually avoid the flux, but are carried off by fevers. The cholic and ſmall-pox are often fatal to the natives, as well as foreigners; but they are ſeldom troubled with dropſies, gout, or ſtone. People who are careful of their health, eat and drink moderately, and boil their water; nor do they avoid wine or arrack punch altogether, for theſe drank moderately in this moiſt air preſerve, rather than deſtroy health.

There is a chain of mountains which runs the whole length of the iſland, from the N. W. to the S. E. and here the air is ſomething better than on the coaſt; but the European factories are generally ſituated at the mouths of rivers near the ſea, for conveniency of trade; and here three years may be reckoned a long life, the ſalt ſtinking ouſe ſends up ſuch unwholeſome vapours as perfectly poiſon foreigners that are ſent thither. The monſoons, or periodical winds, ſhift here at the equinoxes, as they do in other parts of the Indian ſeas, blowing ſix months in one direction, and ſix months in the oppoſite direction; and near the coaſt there are other periodical winds which blow the greateſt part of the day from the ſea, and in the night-time and part of the morning from the land; but theſe ſcarce extend to ſeven miles from the coaſt. Here is alſo a mountain called Single-demond, about 40 miles S. E. of Bencoolen, which is a mile in height perpendicular; the rocks near the weſt coaſt are generally barren, producing little beſides ſhrubs; but towards the bottom of them grows ſome good timber. The country has a great many ſmall rivers, but none of them navigable much above their mouths, falling from high mountains, and diſcharging themſelves precipitately into the ſea, either on the E. or W. after a very ſhort courſe; the rains continuing here, as they do in moſt places near the equinoctial, ſix months and upwards, every year, and no where with more violence. The waters of the river Indapoora, during rains, look red for two miles beyond the mouth out at ſea, occaſioned, it is ſaid, by the great number of oaks that grow in their boggy grounds, and are almoſt covered when the floods are higheſt. The waters of all their rivers, which overflow the low countries, are very unwholeſome, foul, and not fit to be drank till they are ſettled, nor indeed till they have been boiled, and tea or ſome other wholeſome herbs infuſed into them; and this, no doubt, is one cauſe of the unwholeſomeneſs of the air, it being a very juſt obſervation, that wherever the water is bad, the air is ſo too.

The iſland of Sumatra was antiently, and is at preſent, divided into a great many kingdoms and ſtates, of which Achen is the moſt conſiderable, whoſe king is the moſt powerful monarch in the iſland, the north part of it being in a manner ſubject to him. Beſides this prince, there are ſeveral orancayas, or great lords, in this kingdom, who exerciſe ſovereign authority in their reſpective territories; but they all acknowledge the king of Achen their ſuperior, and accept of the great officers in his court. In former times the kings have exerciſed ſuch deſpotic power as to diſplace ſome of theſe, and depoſe others; and, on the other hand, inſtances have been known where theſe princes have depoſed the king, and placed another on the throne. There have been frequent ſtruggles between the king of Achen and theſe princes for ſovereign power; and if the former has in ſome reigns been abſolute, he has in others had a very limited authority. The king has the power of diſpoſing of the crown, during his life, to ſuch of his children as he thinks proper, whether born of a wife or a concubine: but if the king does not diſpoſe of it in his life time, there are ſometimes ſeveral competitors for it; and he who is moſt favoured by the orancayas, or vaſſal princes, uſually carries his point; ſo that the crown is elective in theſe caſes.

Achen, the metropolis of the kingdom of the ſame name, is ſituated at the N. W. end of Sumatra, in 93 deg. 30 min. E. longitude, and in 5 deg. 30 min. N. latitude, and is much the moſt conſiderable port in the iſland. It ſtands in a plain, ſurrounded with woods and marſhes, about five miles diſtant from the ſea, near a pleaſant rivulet: it is an open town, without wall or moat, and the king's palace ſtands in the middle of it, being of an oval figure, about half a league in circumference, ſurrounded by a moat 25 feet broad, and as many deep: and about the palace there are caſt up great banks of earth inſtead of a wall, well planted with reeds and canes, that grow to a prodigious height and thickneſs, inſomuch that they cover the palace, and render it almoſt inacceſſible; theſe reeds alſo are continually green, and not eaſily ſet on fire. There is no ditch or draw-bridge before the gates, but on each ſide a wall of ſtone about ten feet high that ſupports a terrace, on which ſome guns are planted; and a ſmall ſtream runs through the middle of the palace, which is lined with ſtone, and has ſteps down to the bottom of it, for the conveniency of bathing. There are four gates, and as many courts, to be paſſed before we come to the royal apartments; and in ſome of theſe outward courts are the king's magazines, and the ſtandings of his elephants: as for the inward courts of the palace, foreigners, or even the natives, hardly ever approach them; and therefore a juſt deſcription of theſe is not to be expected. But notwithſtanding the fortifications of this place or caſtle, as it is ſometimes called, are very mean and inconſiderable, yet the avenues to it are naturally well defended; for the country round about Achen is full of rivulets, marſhes, and thick woods of cane or bamboo, which are almoſt impenetrable, and very hard to cut: there are ſeveral little forts erected alſo at proper diſtances in the marſhes, where guards are planted to prevent any ſurprize. In the king's magazines, ſome authors tell us, are found a numerous artillery, and a good quantity of fire-arms, and that his guards conſiſt of many thouſand men; but that his greateſt ſtrength is in his elephants, who are trained up to trample upon fire, and ſtand unmoved at the report of a cannon; but this we ſhall examine more particularly when we come to ſpeak of the maintenance of the prince, both with reſpect to domeſtic and military ſupplies, for later travellers do not ſeem to admire his power or grandeur. This city conſiſts of 7 or 8000 houſes, which take up the more ground becauſe they are not contiguous, every perſon ſurrounding his dwelling with a palliſado pale that ſtands ſome yards diſtant from it; except in two or three of the principal ſtreets where the markets are kept, and where foreigners inhabit, who chuſe to live near one another, to defend themſelves from thieves, robberies being very common here. The harbour, which is ſo large as to be capable of containing any number of the largeſt ſhips, is commanded by a ſpacious fortreſs encompaſſed with a ditch well fortified according to the Italian manner, and mounted with cannon. The Engliſh, Dutch, Danes, Portugueſe, Guzarats, and Chineſe, and the chief traders in this city. The king has a great number of horſes, which, as well as the elephants, have rich and magnificent trappings. He is at no expence in times of war, for all his ſubjects are obliged to march at their own expence, and carry with them proviſions for three months: he only furniſhes them with arms, powder, lead, and rice, which is very trifling. In peace, it does not coſt him any thing, even for the maintenance of his family, for his ſubjects ſupply him with all kinds of proviſions: they alſo provide him and his concubines with cloaths. He is heir to all his ſubjects who die without iſſue male, and to all foreigners who die within his territories; and ſucceeds to the eſtates of all thoſe who are put to death. From all which it appears, that the revenue of this prince, though not paid in money, is very conſiderable.

The inhabitants of Achen are more vicious than in other places on the coaſt: they are proud, envious, and treacherous; deſpiſe their neighbours, and yet pretend to have more humanity than the inhabitants of any other nation. Some of them are good mechanics, eſpecially in the building of gallies; and they are very dexterous in doing all kinds of ſmiths work: they alſo work well in wood and copper, and ſome of them are ſkilled in making artillery. They live very abſtemiouſly, their chief food being rice, to which ſome of the better ſort add a ſmall quantity of fiſh, and their uſual drink is water. They are very fond of tobacco, though they have but little of their own raiſing; and for want of pipes, they ſmoke in a bunco, in the ſame manner as the inhabitants on the coaſt of Coromandel. The bunco is the leaf of a tree, rolled up with a little tobacco in it, which they light at one end, and draw the ſmoke through the other till it is nearly burnt to the lips. Theſe rolls are very curiouſly formed, and ſold in the public markets in great quantities.

They hold a court of juſtice five times a week, for determining all matters of controverſy, in which one of the chief orancayas preſides as judge. There is alſo a criminal court, where cognizance is taken of all quarrels, robberies, murders, &c. committed in the city: and there is a third court, in which the cadi, or chief prieſt, preſides, who judges concerning all infringements of an eccleſiaſtical nature. Beſides theſe, there is a court for determining diſputes between merchants, whether foreigners or natives. An exact account is kept here of all the cuſtoms, gifts, fines, and commodities, belonging to the king, with a liſt of all the perſons who buy of his majeſty, pay the duty, or make preſents to him. Offenders are brought to a ſpeedy trial, and the puniſhment is inflicted immediately after their conviction. If the offence be of a trifling nature, the puniſhment for the firſt time is the loſs only of a hand or foot, and the ſame for the ſecond; but for the third, or if they rob to a conſiderable amount, they are impaled alive. When the hand or foot is to be cut off, the limb is laid on the edge of a broad hatchet, and the executioner ſtrikes it with a large mallet till the amputation is perfected; and then they put the ſtump into a hollow bamboo ſtuffed with rags or moſs, to prevent the criminal from dying by loſs of blood. After he has thus ſuffered whether by the king's command, or by the ſentence of the judge, all the ignominy of his crime is wiped off; and if any one upbraids him with it, he may kill him with impunity. Murder and adultery are puniſhed with death; and, in this caſe the criminal has many executioners, he being placed amidſt a number of people, who ſtab him with their daggers; but female offenders are put to death by ſtrangling. The king is frequently a ſpectator of theſe puniſhments, and ſometimes even acts as executioner; and though ſuch a ſpectacle muſt to a feeling mind, appear extremely ſhocking, yet ſo little does he ſeem affected by it, that inſtances have been known of his executing a criminal, and immediately after entertaining himſelf with cock-fighting; a diverſion which in this country is more univerſally eſteemed than any other.

Having given the ſituation of the moſt conſiderable places on the eaſt-ſide of Sumatra, we proceed through the ſtraits of Sunda to the weſt-coaſt; and advancing from thence towards the north, the firſt Engliſh ſettlement we meet with is Sillabar, which lies in a bay at the mouth of a large river of the ſame name, in 4 deg. S. latitude. Here the Engliſh have a reſidence, or a ſmall detachment from Marlborough fort, (erected ſoon after the deſtruction of York Fort at Bencoolen) to receive the pepper the natives bring hither. Ten miles to the northward of Sillabar ſtands the town of Bencoolen, where was the principal ſettlement the Engliſh had upon the iſland of Sumatra, from the year 1685 to the year 1719, when there happened a general inſurrection of the natives, who cut off part of the garriſon; the reſt eſcaping in their boats to ſea.

Bencoolen is known at ſea by a high ſlender mountain that riſes 20 miles beyond it in the country, called the Sugar-loaf. Before the town of Bencoolen there lies an iſland, within which the ſhipping uſually ride; and the point of Sillabar extending two or three leagues to the ſouthward of it, makes a large bay; beſides theſe marks the old Engliſh fort, which fronted towards the ſea, might have been diſcerned when a ſhip came within ſeven or eight miles of the place. The town is almoſt two miles in compaſs, and was inhabited chiefly by the natives, who built their houſes upon bamboo pillars, as in other parts of the iſland. The Portugueſe, Chineſe, and Engliſh had each a ſeparate quarter. The Chineſe people built all upon a floor, after the cuſtom of their country. The Engliſh houſes were after their own model; but they found themſelves under a neceſſity of building with timber, (though there was no want of brick or ſtone), upon account of the frequent earthquakes. The adjacent country is mountainous and woody, and in ſome parts are volcanoes that frequently vomit fire. The air is very unwholeſome, and the mountains are generally covered with thick clouds that burſt in ſtorms of thunder, rain, &c. The ſoil is a fertile clay, and the chief produce is graſs; but near the ſea it is all a moraſs. There is a ſmall river on the N. W. ſide of the town, by which the pepper is brought here from the inland part of the country; but there is a great inconvenience in ſhipping it, on account of a dangerous bar at the mouth of the river. The road is alſo dangerous for ſhips, as it has no other defence from the violence of the ſea during the S. W. monſoons, than a ſmall place called Rat Iſland, which, with the land point of Sillabar, makes the haven.

The pepper brought here comes from the territories of the two neighbouring rajahs, one of whom reſides at Sindle-'demond, at the bottom of a bay 10 or 12 miles to the north; and the other of Baſar, 10 miles to the eaſt. There two rajahs have houſes in the town, whither they come when they have any buſineſs to tranſact with the Engliſh, who pay them half a dollar duty for every 560 pounds weight of pepper; and they alſo pay to the owner for every ſuch quantity 10 Spaniſh dollars, weighing each 17 penny-weights and 12 grains.

The Engliſh have alſo other ſettlements to the N. W. of the above, particularly at Cattoun, ſituated about 40 miles from Bencoolen; Ippo, about 30 miles farther to the north; Bantall, which is upwards of 100 miles north of Bencoolen; and Mocho, ſituated a little to the ſouth of Indrapour. There are likewiſe ſeveral good Dutch ſettlements on this iſland, the moſt conſiderable of which is Pullambam, or Pullamban, ſituate about 120 miles N. E. of Bencoolen. The chief article of trade here is pepper, of which the Dutch have prodigious quantities, being under contract with the king of Pullamban, and other Indian princes, to take it at a certain price, one half of which they pay in money, and the other in cloth. All other nations are prohibited from trading except the Chineſe, by means of whom the Engliſh get a ſhare of their pepper, as our ſhips paſs through the ſtraits of Banca. The Dutch formerly carried on a great trade here in opium; but as that was found to impoveriſh the country, by drawing away its ready caſh, the king, in 1708, ordered only three cheſts of about 160 pounds each, to be imported; and that if any ſhould be detected in acting contrary to this order, they ſhould forfeit not only their goods, but their lives alſo.

Pullambam is a very large town, and pleaſantly ſituated on the banks of a fine river, which divides itſelf into ſeveral branches that run by four channels into the ſea. It continued to be a conſiderable city till the year 1659, when it was deſtroyed by the Dutch, in revenge for ſome injuries they pretended to have received from the natives. About this time the Dutch reduced the chief of the kingdoms in the ſouth part of this iſland; but ſeveral of them were afterwards recovered by the natives, who have ever ſince remained independent. The Dutch have ſeveral other factories here; namely, (1.) Bancalis, ſituated nearly oppoſite to Malacca, on the banks of a ſpacious river of its own name. The chief articles ſold by the company here are, cloth and opium; in return for which, they receive gold-duſt. The country is very fertile, and in the woods and mountains are prodigious numbers of wild-hogs, whoſe fleſh is exceeding ſweet and fat. They have likewiſe ſome good poultry, and there are various kinds of fiſh in the river. (2.) Siack, ſituate on the river Andraghima; this is a very inconſiderable place, on account of the unwholeſomeneſs of the air, which is attributed to the great number of ſhads caught in the river at a particular ſeaſon of the year, for the ſake of the roes; and the reſt of the fiſh being thrown in heaps, corrupt, and exhale peſtilential vapours. Theſe roes the natives pickle, and then dry in ſmoke; after which they put them in large leaves of trees, and then ſend them to different countries between Achen and Siam. They call it Turbow, and reckon it a great delicacy. (3.) Pedang, which is ſituated about 60 miles ſouth of the equator, and has a fine river, where large ſhips may come up, and ride in ſafety; but it is the moſt inſignificant ſettlement the Dutch have on this iſland: it produces but a ſmall quantity of pepper; and the trade in gold is ſo trifling, as hardly to defray the natural expences attending it. Many other places on this iſland are independent of the Engliſh and Dutch; the chief of which are the following.

Priaman, it lies nearly oppoſite to Pedang, about 100 miles N. W. of Indrapour. It is very populous, and plentifully ſupplied with moſt kinds of proviſions. The natives carry on a conſiderable trade with the inhabitants of Manimcabo. The Dutch had a factory here for many years, but were at length driven from it by the king of Achen.

Ticow, another very conſiderable place, which is ſituated about ſeven leagues from Daſſaman, in 20 deg. S. latitude. The inland part of the country is very high; but that next the ſea is low, covered with woods, and watered with ſeveral ſmall rivers, which render it marſhy. There are, however, many pleaſant meadows well ſtocked with buffaloes and other horned cattle, which are purchaſed at a very eaſy price. It likewiſe affords plenty of rice, poultry, and ſeveral ſorts of fruits, as durians, ananas, oranges, citrons, pomegranates, melons, mangoes, cucumbers, and potatoes; but its moſt valuable produce is pepper, with which it abounds, and is in quality eſteemed ſuperior to that of any other place on the iſland. The pepper chiefly grows at the bottom of the mountains; for which reaſon thoſe parts are exceedingly populous. The city ſtands about two miles from the ſea, oppoſite to a ſmall iſland. It is but a little mean place, for the city and ſuburbs do not contain 800 houſes, which are chiefly built with reeds, and are neither ſtrong or commodious. The king is ſubject to the kings of Achen, who appoints a new governor every three years, and without him the king of Ticow cannot execute any buſineſs of importance. The governor, therefore, is the perſon applied to by foreigners in the tranſacting of buſineſs, and even the natives pay him the moſt diſtinguiſhed reſpect. The inhabitants of the city are Malayans, but the inland parts are poſſeſſed by the natives, who diſown the king of Achen's authority, and have a peculiar language and king of their own. This part of the country produces great quantities of gold, which the natives exchange with the Dutch, or the inhabitants near the coaſt, for pepper, ſalt, iron, cotton, red-cloth, and Surat pearls. The air here is very unhealthy, particularly from July to October, and the people are very ſubject to fevers, which are ſo violent in their nature, as ſeldom to admit of a cure; ſo that were it not for the pepper, no ſtranger would venture to go near them. Every perſon who trades to this place, muſt have a licence for that purpoſe from the king of Achen; and when that is obtained, they cannot be interrupted either by the king or governor of Ticow. They ſell their pepper by bahars of 116 pounds avoirdupois: and the king of Achen has 15 per cent. out of all that is ſold, that is, ſeven and a half for the export of the pepper, and ſeven and a half for the import of the merchandize given in exchange for that commodity.

Barras, which belongs to the king of Achen, is one of the moſt conſiderable places on the weſt coaſt; it is ſituated on a fine river near the center between Ticow and Achen, and, like the former, no perſon muſt trade here without permiſſion from the king. This place produces great plenty of gold, camphire, and benjamin, the latter of which ſerves the natives inſtead of money. The country is very pleaſant, and abounds with rice, and ſeveral ſorts of the moſt delicious fruits. The Dutch and Engliſh, as alſo the inhabitants of the coaſt, buy up the camphire here, in order to carry it for Surat, and the ſtraights of Sunda.

The province of Andrigri is ſmall, but remarkable for producing great quantities of pepper; and gold is cheaper here than in any other part of the iſland.

Jamly is ſituated on a river on the eaſt-ſide of the iſland, about 50 miles from the ſea, in 2 deg. S. latitude. Great quantities of pepper are produced in it, which is ſaid to be much ſuperior in quality to that of Andrigri. The Dutch had a factory here, the moſt conſiderable of all their ſettlements on the coaſt, but they withdrew from it in 1710. The Engliſh had likewiſe a factory near it, which they alſo quitted on account of the obſtructions they met with from the Dutch in their trade.

Pedir is ſituated is about 30 miles eaſt of Achen, and is a large territory: it has the advantage of an excellent river. The ſoil is very fertile, and the country produces ſuch quantities of rice, that it is called the granary of Achen. It alſo produces a large quantity of ſilk, part of which is wove by the natives into ſtuffs, that are valued in moſt parts throughout the iſland, and the reſt is ſold to the inhabitants of the coaſt of Coromandel.

Paſſaiman, almoſt under the equinoctial, is a large place, ſituated at the foot of a very high mountain, but is remarkable only for producing pepper, which is both large and excellent in its quality.

Cinquele produces annually a large quantity of camphire, which the inhabitants of Surat, on the coaſt of Coromandel, purchaſe for 15 or 16 rials the coff, or 28 ounces. Daya abounds in rice and cattle.

In the iſland of Sumatra, they have a ſmall breed of horſes; they have alſo buffaloes, deer, goats, hogs, tygers, hog-deers, monkies, ſquirrels, guanoes, porcupines, alligators, ſerpents, ſcorpions, muſkatoes, and other inſects: from the hog-deer is obtained a ſpecies of the bezoar-ſtone, which is of a dark brown colour, and has two coats; a ſmall quantity of this ſtone, diſſolved in any liquor, will remove an oppreſſion of the ſtomach, rectifies foul blood, and reſtores the appetite: it is alſo very efficacious in other diſorders incident to human nature. Here are alſo hens, ducks, and other poultry; pigeons, doves, parrots, paroquets, maccaws and ſmall birds; ſea and river fiſh alſo are very plentiful, and turtle or ſea tortoiſe. They have elephants, but they are ſuppoſed not to be natives. Rice is much the greateſt part of their food in all their meals: ſtrong ſoup, made of fleſh or fiſh, and a very little meat high ſeaſoned, ſerves to eat with their rice. The Mahometans that inhabit the coaſt, abſtain from ſwines fleſh, and from ſtrong liquors, as they do in all countries of the ſame faith. The mountaineers will eat any fleſh, except beef, the bull being one of the objects of their worſhip, and if we could give any credit to their neighbours, the people of Achen, they eat human fleſh; but the world is pretty well ſatisfied by this time that there are no nations of cannibals. Their common drink is tea, or plain water; but they ſometimes uſe the liquor of young cocoa-nuts, which is very cooling and pleaſant. They always ſit croſs-legged on the floor at their meals. Their ſalutations are much the ſame as in other Aſiatic countries.

Learning is not to be expected here. The common language is the Malayan tongue, and the koran and religious books of the Mahometans are written in Arabic, which is now a dead language. They have indeed the uſe of letters here, as they have almoſt in every other eaſtern nation except China; but thoſe gentlemen were ſo ſelf-ſufficient, ſo much above being taught by people they look upon as their inferiors, that they have now the leaſt pretence to learning of any nation on the face of the earth. The Mahometans of Sumatra ſpeak and write the Malayan language. The Pagan mountaineers have a language peculiar to themſelves. As the Malayans write from the right-hand to the left, the mountaineers write as we do, from the left-hand to the right; and inſtead of pen, ink, and paper, they write, or rather engrave, with a ſtile on the outſide of a bamboo cane; the Malays, indeed, uſe ink and a coarſe brown paper. Both nations are poor accomptants, and are forced to make uſe of the Banians that reſide amongſt them as their clerks, when they have any conſiderable accounts to make up, the Banians being ſaid to be poſſeſſed of great abilities in this particular, and are alſo ſome of the ſharpeſt traders in the world.

The inhabitants of this iſland are in general of a moderate ſtature, and a very ſwarthy complexion: they have black eyes, flat faces, and high cheek bones: their hair is long and black, and they take great pains to dye their teeth black: they likewiſe beſmear themſelves with oil, as in other hot countries, to prevent being ſtung by the inſects; and let their nails grow exceeding long, ſcraping them till they are tranſparent, and dying them with vermillion: the poorer ſort go almoſt naked, having only a ſmall piece of cloth faſtened round the waiſt; and about their heads they wear a piece of linen, or a cap made of leaves, reſembling the crown of a hat; but they have no ſhoes or ſtockings. The better ſort wear drawers or breeches, and a piece of calico or ſilk wrapped about their loins, and thrown over the left ſhoulder, and they wear ſandals on their feet, when in towns. They are very proud and revengeful in their diſpoſitions; and are ſo indolent, that they will neither endeavour to improve themſelves in arts and ſciences, or in huſbandry, but ſuffer their manufactures to be neglected, and their lands to lie without cultivation. If foreigners, therefore, were not to ſupply their defects, they would in all probability ſuffer themſelves to be reduced to a ſavage ſtate, and only preſerve their exiſtence, like the beaſts of the country, with what the earth ſpontaneouſly produces. The king has no other ſtanding forces than his guards, but depends on his militia, which, as we hinted above, are as numerous as the people in his kingdom, all who are able to bear arms, are obliged to appear under arms whenever they are ſummoned. They have ſcarce any fortified towns and caſtles, but what are natural; and the country ſeems to be ſo inacceſſible, that the natives boaſt it has never been conquered by any foreign power; but this muſt be a miſtake, for the preſent generation, who are maſters of the north part of the iſland and the ſea-coaſt, are not the original inhabitants, but came from Egypt and Arabia, and having driven the Pagans up into the mountains, ſucceeded them on the ſea-coaſts. The religion of Mahomet is profeſſed at Achen, and upon all the coaſts of Sumatra; but they are not ſuch bigotted zealots as they are in ſome other Mahometan countries. Their temples or moſques are but meanly built, ſome of them no better than cottages. The chief prieſt reſides at Achen, and has a great influence on affairs of ſtate. Their marriage contracts are made before their prieſts, who are judges in caſes of divorce, as well as in civil cauſes. Their prieſts alſo aſſiſt at the celebration of their funeral rites, as in other Mahometan ſtates.

This, as well as the reſt of the Indian iſlands, was, no doubt, firſt peopled from the neighbouring continent. The Phœnicians, Egyptians, and Arabians afterwards trafficked with them; and we find Solomon deſiring Hiram, king of Tyre, to ſend him ſkilful mariners to pilot his fleet into theſe ſeas; and the Ophir mentioned in ſcripture, is ſuppoſed to be this very iſland from whence he fetched his gold. The Arabians and other nations bordering on the red-ſea, afterwards planted colonies here, and became ſo potent, that they drove the former inhabitants up into the mountains, and poſſeſſed the coaſt. The Portugueſe found the deſcendants of thoſe nations fixed on the ſhores of the Indian continent as well as the iſlands when they arrived there. The Portugueſe enjoyed the ſole traffic with this and the adjacent iſlands for near 100 years, viz. from the year 1500 almoſt to the year of our Lord 1600, when other nations followed them round the Cape of Good Hope, and put in for a ſhare of the Indian trade. Some writers aſſure us, that this kingdom has been ever governed by queens; others affirm that there never was a queen regent here; we may, however, take the middle way, and allow that it has been ſubject both to kings and queens: certain it is, a king was upon the throne when we firſt viſited this iſland, becauſe we have his letter which he wrote to queen Elizabeth, and kings have of late years filled that throne.

The inhabitants of the mountains are governed by the chiefs of their reſpective tribes, who are under a neceſſity of maintaining a good correſpondence among themſelves in order to defend their country againſt their powerful neighbours; for as they are poſſeſſed of all the gold the iſland produces, there is no doubt but the Mahometan princes that lie round them, would make an effort to ſubdue thoſe golden mountains, if their princes were at variance: or if they did not, the Dutch would find a way to their gold, if they ſhould find their chiefs divided: for the Dutch are poſſeſſed of ſeveral ſtrong places and countries in the iſland, which would be ſupported in ſuch an enterpriſe by fleets and forces from Batavia and Malacca, that lie but a very little diſtance from them.

The coins of the country are, firſt caſh, or pieces of lead, 1500 of which make one mas, valued at 15 pence, which is a gold coin. A pollum or copang is a quarter of a mas, 16 mas is one tael, which is an imaginary coin, and equivalent to 20 ſhillings ſterling; dollars and other Spaniſh coins alſo are current here. With reſpect to their weights, five tael make a buncal, 20 buncals one catty, and 100 catty one pecul, being 132 pounds Engliſh; three peculs are a China bahar of 396 pounds China weight; and of Malay weight, at Achen 422 pounds 15 ounces, and at Bencoolen, and the reſt of the weſtern coaſt, a bahar is 500 pounds great weight, or 560 pounds Engliſh. They make their payments at Achen oftener in gold pieces than in coin.

Several other iſlands belong to Sumatra, among which is one called by the inhabitants Pulo Lanchakay; and, by the natives of Achen, Pulo Lada, or the iſland of Pepper. This is a large iſland, ſituated in 6 deg. 15 min. N. latitude. In the centre of it are two high mountains ſeparated from each other by a very narrow valley; and at the foot of theſe mountains is a plain at leaſt 12 miles in length. Pepper is produced in it; but the iſland is very thinly inhabited. The ſoil of the plain is well calculated for all kinds of drugs, fruit, rice, and cattle; and, as it has ſeveral good ſprings and rivers, it might produce excellent paſturage; but the inhabitants only attend to the cultivation of pepper, that being the article which turns out moſt to their advantage. The other parts of the iſland are covered with thick woods, in which are ſome remarkable ſtrait and lofty trees. The winds are weſterly from the beginning of July to the end of October, during which time they have very heavy rains; and the climate, as in other parts of the ſame latitude, is very unwholeſome. The iſland at preſent produces 500,000 pounds weight of pepper annually, which is ſaid to be preferable to that of any other place in the Indies. The inhabitants are Malayans, but are naturally better diſpoſed than thoſe of Achen; their habits are much the ſame in make, but not ſo elegant: they are very zealous Mahometans, and in their cuſtoms and ways of living differ little from the inhabitants of Achen.

The iſland of Lingen is ſituated about 60 miles N. E. of Jamby, and about the ſame diſtance to the S. E. of Johore. It is 50 miles in length, and 10 in breadth: the interior part of it is very mountainous, but that next the ſea lies low, and is very fertile. It produces pepper and canes, and in ſome parts of it are great numbers of porcupines. That of Banca is very large, being at leaſt 150 miles in length, and about 20 in breadth. The natives, like moſt of the Malayans, are treacherous, and very unhoſpitable to ſuch ſtrangers as unfortunately happen to be ſhipwrecked on the coaſt. At the mouth of the ſtraits of Banca is Lucipara, a ſmall iſland but ſo barren, that it has but few inhabitants, and only produces a ſmall quantity of pepper. There are ſeveral other ſmall iſlands belonging to Sumatra, moſt of which are either uninhabited, or ſo inſignificant as not to merit a particular deſcription.

Java, one of the Sunda iſlands, is ſituate in the Indian ocean, between 102 and 113 degrees of eaſt longitude, and between 5 and 8 degrees of ſouth latitude, being 700 miles long, and upwards of 100 broad, having the iſland of Borneo on the north, the ſtraits of Bally on the eaſt, the Indian ocean on the ſouth, and the ſtraits of Sunda (from whence it is called one of the Sunda Iſlands) on the N. W.

The air of Java, near the ſea, is generally unhealthful, unleſs where the bogs have been drained, and the lands cultivated; there it is much better, and in the middle of the iſland much more ſo. The worſt weather upon the north coaſt of Java is during the weſterly monſoon, which begins the firſt week in November, when they have ſome rain. In December the rains increaſe, and it blows freſh, and in January it blows ſtill harder, and the rains continue very heavy till the middle of February, when both the wind and rains become more moderate and decreaſe, till the end of March. Their fair ſeaſon commences in April, the winds are then variable, and it is ſometimes calm, only at the change of the moon there are ſudden guſts of wind from the weſt. In the beginning of May the eaſtern monſoon becomes conſtant, and in June and July there is a little rain; but in this monſoon they have generally clear, wholeſome weather, until the end of September. In October the eaſterly wind blows faintly, and in November the weſterly monſoon ſets in again: when the weſterly winds and currents are ſtrongeſt here, namely, in December, January and February, there is no ſailing againſt them. The eaſterly winds and currents are more moderate; ſhips may ſail againſt this monſoon, and a ſhip may come from the weſtward through the ſtraits of Sunda to Batavia almoſt at any time. There is good anchorage on the Java ſide, in 20 or 30 fathoms water: near the coaſt of Java and Borneo, from April to November, they have land and ſea breezes from different points; the wind blows from the land between one and four in the morning, and continues till noon; at one or two in the afternoon it blows freſh from the ſea for five or ſix hours.

A chain of mountains runs through the middle of the iſland from E. to W. which are covered with fine woods. It is ſaid theſe mountains produce great quantities of gold; but the natives conceal it from the Europeans. The moſt diſtinguiſhed of theſe mountains is called the Blue Mountain. The low lands are flooded in the time of the rains. Along the north coaſt of Java are fine groves of cocoa-nut trees, and wherever we ſee one of theſe groves, we do not fail to meet with a village of the natives.

The iſland was antiently divided into abundance of petty kingdoms and ſtates, and when admiral Drake viſited this iſland in his voyage round the globe, in the year 1579, he relates there were five kingdoms in it. We may now divide it into two parts, 1. The north coaſt, which is under the dominion of the Dutch; and, 2. The ſouth coaſt, ſubject to the kings of Palamboan and Mataram. Bantam was, till lately, the moſt conſiderable kingdom of Java, but this king is now a vaſſal to the Dutch. We ſhall here give ſome account of that city.

Bantam, once the metropolis of a great kingdom (till the Dutch deſtroyed it, and depoſed the king,) is ſeated in a plain at the foot of a mountain, out of which iſſues three rivers, or rather one river dividing itſelf into three branches, two whereof ſurround the town, and the other runs through the middle of it. The circumference of this city, when in its glory, was not leſs than 12 miles, and very populous. It lay open towards the land; but had a very good wall to the ſea, fortified with baſtions, and defended by a numerous artillery; and the palace, or rather caſtle, where the king reſided, was no mean fortification; beſides which there were ſeveral public buildings and palaces of the great men, which made no ordinary figure in this country. It was alſo one of the greateſt ports in the eaſtern ſeas, to which all nations reſorted, but is now become a wretched poor place, and has neither trade or any thing to render it deſirable. The principal inhabitants are removed, and the buildings ruined, their king deprived of his ſovereignty, and become a vaſſal to the Dutch.

Batavia, by the Indians named Jacatra, and by the natives and Chineſe Calacka, or Calappa, as they call the fruit of the cocoa-trees, (which are very common here, and ſaid to be ſuperior to any in the Indies) lies in 6 deg. S. latitude, longitude from London 106, and ſtands about 40 miles to the eaſtward of Bantam; it is ſituated at the bottom of a fine bay, in which there are 17 or 18 ſmall iſlands, which break the violence of the winds and waves; inſomuch that 1000 ſail may ride here very ſecurely. Two large piers run out half a mile into the ſea, between which 100 ſlaves are conſtantly employed, in taking up the mud and ſoil which is waſhed out of the town, or the mouth of the river would be ſoon choaked up. The city of the ſame name ſtands in a flat country, and is almoſt ſquare, and about the bigneſs of Briſtol, regularly built like the towns in

Holland, but with white ſtone. Their ſtreets are wide and ſtrait, and in 12 or 15 of the principal are canals, faced with ſtone, and planted with ever-greens: the ſides of the ſtreets alſo are paved, and over their canals are reckoned no leſs than 56 ſtone bridges; after which deſcription there cannot be much occaſion to tell the reader that the place is extremely pleaſant, and that travellers are ſurprized with its beauty. It is ſurrounded with a good wall, and 22 baſtions well furniſhed with cannon, and ſo contrived as to be of equal ſervice againſt an inſurrection in the city, as againſt a foreign enemy; the guns being eaſily brought to point down the principal ſtreets.

The houſes are plain, but very neat, and behind them are large gardens well ſtocked with herbs and vegetables, and moſt kinds of fruit. They have ſeveral handſome public buildings, ſuch as the great church; the ſtadt-houſe, the hoſpitals, the ſpin-houſe or houſe of correction, the peſt-houſe, Chineſe hoſpital, the houſe of artiſans, &c. And there are two churches built for the reformed Portugueſe, and another for the Malays; but they do not allow either the Papiſts or Lutherans the public exerciſe of their religion. The fort ſtands upon the weſt ſide of the city, and commands both the town and road: it is very large, and has four royal baſtions faced with ſtone, but has no moat, except the canals which lie at ſome diſtance from the rampart, may have been miſtaken for moats: they are about 25 feet broad, and fordable in moſt places; the inſide of the fort is crowded with buildings, there being the general's houſe, as well as the houſes of moſt of the principal officers, and company's ſervants: in the middle of the city there is a large ſquare, which ſerves as a parade for the garriſon, on the weſt ſide of which ſtands the great church, on the ſouth the ſtadt-houſe, on the north a fine range of buildings, and on the eaſt is one of their great canals: there are alſo ſeveral ſpacious market-places in the city. The ſuburbs reach almoſt half a league into the country, and form a town larger than the former but not ſo compact; being intermixed with kitchen gardens and orchards. Here the Chineſe chiefly live, and here they have their temples and burying places, and the free exerciſe of their religion, which is denied the Lutheran proteſtants. In this part of the town alſo live the Malays, and native Javans, and other nations, which the Dutch have tranſplanted from Banda, Amboyna, &c. There are ſmall forts erected every way, at two or three leagues diſtance from the town, to defend the avenues; the Dutch being conſcious that the king of Mataran and the natives would lay hold of any opportunity of repoſſeſſing themſelves of their country, and driving the Hollanders from their coaſts; however they may ſeem to acquieſce and tacitly conſent, according to the modern phraſe, to be inſulted and tyrannized over by the Dutch, there is not a nation in India but would gladly throw off the yoke, and declare in behalf of liberty, and for any prince who ſhould come to their relief.

The people who inhabit the city and ſuburbs of Batavia being formed of various nations, who all preſerve the dreſſes, modes, and cuſtoms of their reſpective countries, they conſequently exhibit a very ſtrange appearance; we ſhall therefore, for the information of our readers, give a particular deſcription of them.

The Chineſe do not only drive the greateſt retail trade here, but are many of them good mechanics; they alſo generally farm the fiſhery, exciſe and cuſtoms, and apply themſelves to huſbandry and gardening; to manure and cultivate the rice, cotton, and ſugars which grow in the fields, about Batavia and other great towns; and exceeding the Dutch, it is ſaid, in their thriftineſs, as well as in cozening and over-reaching thoſe they deal with. They dreſs in a veſt and gown of ſilk or callico, after the faſhion of their country, and wear their hair wound up in a roll, on the hinder part of the head, and faſtened with bodkins; for which every one pays a certain tribute to the Dutch. The Dutch company allow ſome privileges to the Chineſe; for they have not only a governor of their own nation, who manages their affairs, but are alſo allowed a repreſentative in the council. They bring tea and porcelain hither from China; but they who are employed for this purpoſe, muſt not continue on the iſland longer than ſix months. They have ſingular maxims in the interment of their dead; for they will never open the ſame grave where any one has been buried; their burial grounds, therefore, in the neighbourhood of Batavia, cover a prodigious ſpace of ground, for which the Dutch make them pay large ſums. In order to preſerve the body they make the coffin of very thick wood, not with planks faſtened together, but cut out of a ſolid piece like a canoe; the coffin, being covered and put into the grave, is ſurrounded with a kind of mortar about eight inches thick, which in time becomes as hard as ſtone. A great number of weeping women, hired on purpoſe, attend the funeral, beſides the relations of the deceaſed. In Batavia, the law requires that every man ſhould be buried according to his rank; ſo that if the deceaſed has not left money ſufficient to pay his funeral expences, an officer takes an inventory of his goods, which are ſold, and out of the produce he buries him in the manner preſcribed.

The greateſt merchants here are the Dutch, who are alſo very good mechanics; they keep the chief inns and moſt places of public entertainment. They pay two reals a month for their licence, and 70 for every pipe they ſell of Spaniſh wine: but theſe inn-keepers are far from being obliging to their gueſts, and particularly to foreigners. Here are alſo great numbers of Portugueſe; and in order to diſtinguiſh them from other Europeans, they are called by the natives Oran-ſerante, or Nazarene men. They in general ſpeak the Malayan language, but ſome of them a corrupt dialect of the Portugueſe; and they have all renounced their religion, by profeſſing the principles of Luther. They are chiefly employed in the moſt ſervile offices: ſome of them are handicraftſmen, others get their living by hunting, and the greateſt number by waſhing linen. They have ſo cloſely followed the cuſtoms and manners of the Indians, that they are only diſtinguiſhed from them by their features and complexion, their ſkin being conſiderably lighter, and their noſes not ſo flat; and the manners of adjuſting their hair conſtitutes the only difference in their dreſs. Moſt of the inhabitants have very tawny complexions. The Malays wear a ſhort coat with ſtrait ſleeves, and a cloth about their loins, binding their temples with a piece of linen, in which they encloſe part of their hair, the reſt hanging down. The women wear a waiſtcoat and a cloth about their waiſt, which reaches half way down their legs, and ſerves inſtead of a petticoat; they wear nothing but their hair on their heads, and go bare-foot. The men get their living by fiſhing, and have ſome retail trade, though not comparable to the Chineſe. They profeſs the Mahometan religion; but are naturally very profligate, and will not ſcruple to commit crimes of the moſt infamous nature.

The Amboyneſe wear veſts, and wrap a piece of callico ſeveral times about their heads, the ends whereof hang down. Their women only wrap a piece of callico about their loins, throwing part of it over their breaſts and ſhoulders, their legs and arms bare; the men are moſt of them carpenters, and ſome of theſe, as well as of the other nations, the Dutch inliſt in their troops, being eſteemed brave bold fellows, but given to mutiny, as the Dutch relate, by which they probably mean, they are not yet reconciled to ſlavery. Their houſes are made of wood, and covered with branches of trees; they are pretty lofty, and the floors are divided into ſeparate apartments, ſo that one houſe will contain ſeveral families. The native Javaneſe wear a kind of ſcull cap, but their bodies are naked to the middle, wrapping a piece of ſilk or callico about their loins, which reaches below the middle of their legs, which are bare. The women cover their bodies with a piece of ſilk or callico, and have another piece wrapped about their loins, and dreſs in their hair. The men are employed in huſbandry and fiſhing, or in building country boats. There is likewiſe a mixed breed, called Topaſſes or Mandikers, conſiſting of ſeveral nations, incorporated with the Dutch, and have greater privileges than the reſt. Many of theſe are merchants, and differ but little in their habits, or way of life from the Dutch, only the men wear large breeches or trowſers, which reach down to their ancles. The women tie up their hair in a roll on their heads, wear a waiſtcoat, and a petticoat of ſilk or callico, which reaches down to their feet. Theſe live both in city and ſuburbs, their houſes are ſeveral ſtories high, built of brick or ſtone, and very neatly furniſhed within. The Macaſſars, whoſe anceſtors poſſeſſed the iſland of Celebes, and were enſlaved by the Dutch, though they went almoſt naked in their mother country, wear cloathing here. Several of the Timoreans, inhabitants of an iſland of Eaſt China, having been brought hither by the Dutch, now conſtitute part of the people of Batavia. The habits and cuſtoms of theſe and of the Macaſſars, are nearly the ſame: their chief employment is huſbandry and gardening. As many of them profeſs Chriſtianity, and are conformable to the Dutch in their religion and cuſtoms, it is to be preſumed they clothe themſelves as the Hollanders do. Some of the negroes here are pedlars, and hawk about the ſtreets glaſs-beads and coral; others follow mechanical trades; but the moſt conſiderable of them deal in free-ſtone, which they bring from the neighbouring iſlands. Theſe people are chiefly Mahometans. All the inhabitants enjoy liberty of conſcience; but they are not allowed to exerciſe their different modes of worſhip. Prieſts and monks are permitted to live here, but they are prohibited from being publickly ſeen in the reſpective habits of their prieſtly orders.

As the women of Java are remarkable for their amorous diſpoſition and conſtancy to the man they eſpouſe, and expect that the man ſhould be equally conſtant, if her lover goes aſtray ſhe makes no ſcruple to prepare a doſe for him. An old traveller, who ſeems much enamoured with the Javaneſe ladies, gives this deſcription of them: he obſerves that they are much fairer than the men, have good features, little ſwelling breaſts, a ſoft air, ſprightly eyes, a moſt agreeable laugh, and a bewitching mien, eſpecially in dancing: that they expreſs the greateſt ſubmiſſion to their huſband, proſtrating themſelves before him when he enters the houſe. Polygamy prevails here; the Javaneſe have ſeveral wives beſides female ſlaves, of whom they make concubines when they ſee fit. There being a ſcarcity of European women, the Dutch are allowed to marry a native, provided ſhe will profeſs Chriſtianity, which ſhe is ſeldom averſe to, as it gratifies her pride; a Chriſtian and the wife of a Dutchman taking place of a native Javaneſe, and being allowed a great many privileges, which the natives cannot enjoy; and her huſband is obliged to confine himſelf to her bed, and bring no rivals into the family.

Rice is the principal grain that grows here. They have alſo plantations of ſugar, tobacco, and coffee: their kitchen gardens are well repleniſhed with cabbages, purſlain, lettice, parſley, fennel, melons, pompions, potatoes, cucumbers, and radiſhes. Here are alſo all manner of Indian fruits, ſuch as plantains, bananas, cocoas, ananas, mangoes, mangoſteens, durions, oranges of ſeveral ſorts; limes, lemons, the betel and arek nut; gums of ſeveral kinds, particularly benjamin: in March they plant rice, and their harveſt is in July. In October they have the greateſt plenty of fruit, but they have ſome all the year. They have good timber, cotton, and other trees proper to the climate, beſides oak, cedar, and ſeveral kinds of red wood. The cocoa-tree is very common, which is of univerſal uſe, affording them meat, drink, oil and vinegar; and of the fibres of the bark they make them cordage; the branches cover their houſes, and they write on the leaves with a ſteel ſtile; and with the tree, and the great bamboo cane, they build their houſes, boats and other veſſels. Here are buffaloes and ſome oxen, and a ſmall breed of horſes. The few ſheep we find here have hair, rather than wool, and their fleſh is dry. Their hogs, wild and tame, are the beſt meat we find there, or in any other countries between the tropics; and their veniſon is good: here are alſo tygers and other wild beaſts, crocodiles, porcupines, ſerpents, ſcorpions, locuſts, and a multitude of inſects. Monkies of various kinds are found here, alſo flying ſquirrels; and a remarkable animal called jackoa; it is almoſt like a lizard, is very malicious, and darts its urine at every thing which offends it: the urine is of ſuch a quality, that it will canker the fleſh, and if the part is not immediately cut out, the object on which it falls muſt immediately periſh. Few accidents, however, happen from this creature, as it always gives notice of its ſituation from the ſingularity of its voice, ſo that the natives, as well as animals, have an opportunity of eſcaping it. The food, ſalutations, and diverſions of the Indians in this iſland, are the ſame as in Borneo and Sumatra, and therefore need not to be repeated here. The Dutch travel in coaches, and on horſeback, and ſometimes in pelanquins, or covered couches, carried on men's ſhoulders, as the Indians do, with a grand retinue. Not any of the nations of Europe are ſuffered to trade to Java, but from China 14 or 15 junks of 200 or 300 ton, uſed to come every year in November or December, and return home in June; which furniſhed the Dutch with the merchandize of China upon eaſier terms than they could purchaſe it in that country: and this is the reaſon the Dutch ſo ſeldom viſit that kingdom, and permit other nations to trade thither, which they could prevent if they pleaſed, by ſhutting up the ſtraits of Sunda and Malacca, which the ſquadrons of men of war they always keep in India, enable them to do. Beſides the goods imported to Batavia by the Chineſe, the Dutch themſelves import the produce of Japan, the Spice Iſlands, Perſia, Surat, Bengal, the coaſt of Coromandel and Malabar, and all the merchandize of Europe and Africa. Never were ſuch magazines of goods laid up in any city, as are to be found in Batavia, except in Amſterdam itſelf; and as they barter the goods of one country for another, the Indian trade is ſo far from diminiſhing their treaſure, that it brings them in more gold and ſilver than any other traffic.

The Dutch governor of Batavia takes great ſtate upon him, and has in reality the power of a ſovereign prince. A troop of horſe-guards precede his coach when he goes out, halberdiers ſurround the coach, and a company of foot-guards march after it, cloathed in yellow ſattin, enriched with ſilver lace and fringe; and the governor's lady has her guards, and is attended in all reſpects, both within and in public, with a dignity equal to that of a queen. The moſt conſiderable officer next to him is the director-general, whoſe buſineſs is to purchaſe ſuch commodities as are brought to the port, and to diſpoſe of ſuch as are taken from it. He is ſole maſter of all the magazines, and has the ſupreme direction of every thing that relates to the commercial intereſt of the company.

Batavia being a place of the greateſt trade in India, the cuſtoms muſt be very conſiderable; more eſpecially as the inhabitants are in general wealthy, and almoſt every article is ſubject to a duty. The taxes are paid monthly; and to ſave the charge and trouble of gathering them, on the day they become due a flag is diſplayed on the top of a houſe in the center of the town, and all parties are obliged immediately to pay their money to the proper officers appointed to receive the ſame. The money current here conſiſts of ſeveral ſorts; as ducats, which are valued at 132 ſtivers; ducatoons, at 80 ſtivers; imperial rix-dollars, at 60; rupees of Batavia, at 30; ſchellings, at ſix; double cheys, at two ſtivers and an half; and doits, at one-fourth of a ſtiver. Some of theſe coins are of two ſorts, though of the ſame denomination, namely, milled and unmilled, the former of which is of moſt value; a milled ducatoon is worth 80 ſtivers, but an unmilled one is not worth more than 72. All accounts are kept in rix-dollars and ſtivers which are here merely nominal coins, like our pounds ſterling. The Dutch, beſides their land forces, which are very numerous, have men of war ſufficient to engage any fleets they are likely to meet with on the Indian ſeas: and from their great ſtrength and importance in this part of the globe, they aſſume the title of "Sovereigns of all the ſeas, from the Cape of Good Hope eaſtward, to Cape Horn in America."

Cherebon is ſituate about 80 miles eaſt of Batavia: it is a place of conſiderable extent, and where the Dutch have a factory. The country is very fertile, and produces moſt kinds of proviſions, particularly rice. The inhabitants are under the dominion of four great lords, called ſultans, one of whom is particularly attached to the Dutch, and for that reaſon is diſtinguiſhed from the reſt by the name of the company's ſultan. The reſt, indeed, may not be undeſerving of the like epithet, as they are in alliance with the Dutch, whoſe friendſhip they endeavour to preſerve, and whom they conſider as their ſole protectors; for had it not been for them, theſe petty princes would have been reduced to the ſubjection of the king of Bantam, who made inroads on their diſtrict, but was repulſed by the interpoſition of the Dutch. Since this circumſtance, the ſultans have teſtified their gratitude by granting many diſtinguiſhed privileges to their protectors in theſe dominions. The chief perſon belonging to the Dutch factory here is called the reſident, who correſponds with the governor-general of Batavia, but is ſolely independent of any other officer. Here is a good fort, where the Dutch have a garriſon conſiſting of 80 men; about a mile and a half from which is a large temple containing the tombs of ſeveral of the princes of Cherebon. It is a lofty building of variegated ſtones, and very elegantly ornamented within. The generality of their prieſts reſide near this temple, the whole order of whom are treated with the moſt diſtinguiſhed reſpect by the inhabitants. We ſhall now proceed to the deſcription of Palamboan and Mataram, the latter of which is ſubject to the Dutch.

Palamboan, the capital of the kingdom of that name, is ſituate in 114 deg. of E. long. and in 7 deg. 30 min. S. lat. on the ſtraits of Bally, through which the Eaſt India ſhips ſometimes paſs, when they are homeward bound from Borneo; ſuch ſhips touch at the town of Palamboan for freſh water and proviſions; but the ſurf often beats with ſuch violence on the ſhore, that makes it difficult watering there. This kingdom, which is independent of the Dutch, lies at the S. E. end of Java, in a pleaſant country, watered with ſeveral rivulets, which fall on each ſide of the town into the neighbouring ſtraits. The rajah, or king of this country, generally reſides either at Palamboan, or at a fort 15 miles from the ſea. His dominions reaches from the eaſt end of Java, 80 miles along the ſouth coaſt, and about 60 miles from N. to S. but its extent up the country is not known. This kingdom is ſaid to produce gold, pepper, and cotton, alſo rice, India corn, roots, and garden ſtuff. Their animals are horſes, buffaloes, oxen, deer, and goats, and they have great plenty of ducks, geeſe, and other ſorts of poultry. The ſovereign and his ſubjects are Pagans, but there are ſome Mahometans among them, and a few Chineſe.

Mataram, when in its moſt flouriſhing ſtate, extended its dominions over the whole iſland, and even now takes up a conſiderable part of it: this kingdom was the laſt in the iſland which the Dutch reduced under their government; having continued its ſtruggles for independency till the year 1704, when the Dutch took the advantage of an opportunity that offered in a diſpute relative to the ſucceſſion of the crown, between the ſon and brother of the deceaſed ſovereign. Theſe two rivals produced an univerſal diviſion in the nation. He who was intitled to the crown by order of ſucceſſion had ſo much the advantage over his antagoniſt, that had it not been for the Dutch, who declared in favour of his rival, he would certainly have poſſeſſed himſelf of the ſupreme power. After a ſeries of conteſts, the party eſpouſed by the Dutch at length prevailed: the young prince was deprived of his ſucceſſion, and his uncle, who was unworthy of the character, aſſumed the ſovereignty. After the death of this prince the company placed the legal heir on the throne, and dictated ſuch laws to him as they thought beſt calculated to anſwer their ſiniſter purpoſes. They choſe the place where his court was to be fixed, and ſecured his attachment by erecting a caſtle, in which a guard was kept with no other apparent view than to protect the prince. They employed every artifice to lull his attention by pleaſures, made him valuable preſents, and ſoothed him by pompous embaſſies. From this time the prince and his ſucceſſors have become mere tools of the company. The neceſſary protection allowed them by the company conſiſts of 300 horſe and 400 foot; but the expences the company are at on this account are amply repaid by the advantages that accrue to them.

The harbours afford docks for building all the ſmall veſſels employed in the ſervice; and they are ſupplied from hence with the chief part of the timber that is uſed in their reſpective ſettlements. Beſides theſe advantages, they are furniſhed with various productions of the country at ſtipulated prices, which are ſo low as to be extremely profitable to them.

This country is in general very fertile, and produces great quantities of rice, as alſo plenty of fruit. There are alſo various ſorts of animals, particularly horſes, ſheep, goats, and remarkable large oxen. The rivers abound with fiſh, and the woods produce great plenty of game; but the moſt valuable articles in this kingdom are, rice, pepper, cadiang, cotton, yarn, cardamum and indigo; the latter of which is eſteemed to be as good in quality as any found in this part of the world. The reſidence of the king is uſually at Mataram, the capital of the kingdom. His palace is a very handſome ſpacious building, adjoining to which are many good houſes belonging to his nobles, who continually wait on him, and the greateſt homage is paid him by his ſubjects in general; for though theſe princes are vaſſals, yet they are permitted to live in as great ſtate as when they were independent monarchs; and the orders of the Dutch are always executed in their names. They therefore aſſume a dignity not inferior to that of the moſt deſpotic prince, and when they go abroad, a very diſtinguiſhed mark of loyalty is beſtowed on them.

Japara is the laſt place of importance that remains to be mentioned in this iſland; it is ſituated at the bottom of an eminence called the Invincible Mountain, on the top of which is a fort built of wood. It is a very conſiderable town, and has a good road ſecured by two ſmall iſlands. The Engliſh had once a factory here, but they were driven from it by the Portugueſe, who at that time were maſters of the place. This country produces almoſt every neceſſary of life, eſpecially cattle, hogs, and poultry: they have alſo great plenty of rice, with various ſorts of the moſt delicious fruits; and their waters abound with the beſt of fiſh. But the moſt valuable commodities here are pepper, ginger, cinnamon, and indigo. In the woods and mountains are ſeveral kinds of wild beaſts, as buffaloes, ſtags, tygers, and rhinoceros's: the latter of theſe the natives hunt for the ſake of their horns, which are much admired, becauſe they will not contain poiſon; for they will immediately break to pieces if any ſuch compoſition is put into them. As to the natives of this country, they very much reſemble thoſe of other Indian nations, and have the ſame kind of cuſtoms and ceremonies. They are fond of public diverſions, particularly the repreſentation of comedies, which principally conſiſt in ſinging and dancing; and they are ſuch ſlaves to cock-fighting, that by the large ſums they bet, they are frequently reduced to the moſt abject diſtreſs and poverty. They are chiefly of the Mahometan religion, as is alſo the king, who generally reſides at a place called Kattaſura, where the Dutch have a fort and garriſon. This prince reigns abſolute among his ſubjects, who are very faithful to him, and pay him the greateſt homage. Like moſt eaſtern monarchs, he is conſtantly attended by women, and takes as many wives and concubines as he thinks proper. When his courtiers obtain an audience, they approach him with the profoundeſt humility; and even his prieſts ſo much revere him, that ſome of them go in pilgrimage to Mecca, to make vows, and pray for his proſperity, and that of his family and government.

The iſland of Balla, or leſſer Java, is only divided from the larger by the ſtraits of Bally, and eaſtward of this are the iſlands Lambock, Combava, Flores, Solor, Timor, and ſeveral more, upon which the Dutch have forts and ſettlements, and take the liberty of governing and even tranſplanting the natives whenever they pleaſe, from hence they frequently recruit their troops, and thus make one nation of Indians contribute to keep another in ſubjection.

Timor is the largeſt of theſe iſlands, being about 200 miles in length, and 50 in breadth, and is divided into ſeveral petty ſtates, which the Dutch oppoſe againſt one another, and by that means govern the whole. It has not any navigable rivers or harbours, but there are ſeveral commodious bays. The Portugueſe had formerly colonies here, whoſe deſcendants are now ſo intermixed with the original natives, that they are ſcarce to be diſtinguiſhed from them, eſpecially as they profeſs the ſame religion. The principal kingdoms in this iſland are Namquimal, Lortriby, Pobumby, and Amaby; each of which has an independent and abſolute ſovereign: theſe have ſeveral Rajahs, and other diſtinguiſhed officers under them; all of whom, with their ſubjects in general, pay them the greateſt homage. Each kingdom has a language peculiar to itſelf, but the manners and cuſtoms of the inhabitants differ but little. There are ſome Pagans and Mahometans ſtill remaining, and the Chineſe come hither to trade once a year; the inhabitants are ſo very ſwarthy, that they are ſometimes taken for blacks, and thoſe that are not under the government of the Portugueſe or Dutch are repreſented as ſavages; they wear no clothing but a little piece of cloth about their loins, and the better ſort wear a kind of coronet about their temples, adorned with thin plates of gold or ſilver; the reſt have caps made with palmetto leaves. Their arms are ſwords, darts, and lances or ſpears, and with theſe they run down and kill their game. Their animals are the ſame as in the iſland of Java, as well as their foreſt and fruit trees. The Dutch do not ſeem to make any great profit of theſe iſlands; the principal deſign of their building forts here, is to defend the avenues to the ſpice iſlands, which lie in their neighbourhood. On this laſt mentioned iſland there is a Portugueſe ſettlement, called Laphao: it is ſituated by the ſea-ſide, about three leagues to the eaſt of the Dutch fort, called Concordia. It is a very ſmall place, containing only a few mean houſes, and a church made of boards, covered with palmetto leaves. There is a kind of platform here, on which are ſix iron guns; but the whole are ſo much decayed, as to be rendered almoſt uſeleſs. The people, in general, ſpeak the Portugueſe language; and the natives have been ſo intermixed with the Portugueſe by marriages, that it is difficult to know one from the other. Moſt of them profeſs the Roman catholic faith: but in the other parts of the iſland they are either Mahometans or Pagans. The chief trade is carried on at Porta Nova, ſituated at the eaſt end of the iſland, and where the Portugueſe governor uſually reſides. Some years ago a pirate attacked, plundered, and then deſtroyed ſeveral of the buildings in this town, with that of Concordia belonging to the Dutch.

Mandura is an iſland oppoſite the eaſtermoſt point of Java, the moſt valuable produce of which, for foreign markets, are deer ſkins. Its principal town is Arabia, ſituated near a deep bay, about eight leagues from the weſtermoſt land of Java. The ſoil of this iſland is very fertile, and produces ſeveral ſorts of grain, particularly rice, alſo ſeveral kinds of the moſt delicious fruits. The chief animals are buffaloes, horſes, ſheep, and oxen, the latter are remarkably large, and the fleſh little inferior to thoſe of Europe. Their buildings, maxims, cuſtoms, &c. reſemble thoſe of other Indian nations: ſome of them are Mahometans, and others Pagans. The men are in general very robuſt and courageous, for which reaſon, when there is any deficiency in the fixed number of the Dutch troops, they recruit from them their forces at Batavia and other ſettlements.

We now proceed to the continuation of the hiſtory of our voyage. By our account the town of Macaſſar lies in latitude 5 deg. 10 min. and in 117 deg. 28 min. Eaſt longitude from London. It is built upon a point, or neck of land, and is watered by a river or two which either run through, or very near it. It ſeemed to us to be large, and there is water for a ſhip to come within half a cannon ſhot of the walls. The country about it is level, and has a moſt beautiful appearance; it abounds with plantations, and groves of cocoa-nut trees, with a great number of houſes interſperſed. At a diſtance inland, the country riſes into hills of a great height, and becomes rude and mountainous.

The Bay of Bonthain is large, with good ſoundings, and a ſoft bottom of mud; wherein ſhips may moor with perfect ſecurity; nor is there any danger coming in; for the rocks at the entrance are above water, and a good mark for anchoring. The higheſt land in ſight here is Bonthain hill; and a ſhip in the offing, at the diſtance of two or three miles from the land, ſhould bring this hill N. or N. half W. and then run in and anchor. We lay right under the hill, at the diſtance of about a mile from the ſhore. In this bay are many ſmall towns: Bonthain lies in the N. E. part of it; and the fort which we have mentioned, is intended for no other purpoſe than to keep the country people in ſubjection. The Dutch reſident has the command of the place, and of Bullocomba, which lies about twenty miles farther to the eaſtward. There are ſeveral ſmall rivers from whence water may be got upon occaſion: indeed wood and water are here in great plenty: we cut our wood near the river, under Bonthain hill: our water was procured partly from that river, and partly from another; when from the latter, our boat went above the fort with the caſks that were to be filled, where there is a good rolling way; but as the river is ſmall, and has a bar, the boat, after it is loaded, can come out only at high water. Freſh proviſions were purchaſed here, at reaſonable rates: the beef is excellent, but not in plenty; but rice may be had in any quantity, as may fowls and fruit. In the woods are abundance of wild hogs, and as the natives, who are Mahometans, never eat them, they may be purchaſed at a low price. The natives at times, ſupplied us with turtle; for this, like pork, is a dainty which they never touch. The bullocks here are the breed that have a bunch on their backs. The arrack and ſugar that are conſumed are brought from Batavia. Celebes is the key of the Molucca or ſpice iſlands, which, whoever is in poſſeſſion of it, muſt neceſſarily command: moſt of the ſhips that are bound to them, or to Banda, touch here, and always go between this iſland and that of Solayer. The latitude of Bonthain hill is 5 deg. 30 min. S. longitude 117 deg. 53 min. E.

On Sunday the 22nd of May, at day break, we ſailed from Bonthain Bay, keeping along ſhore till the evening, when we anchored in the paſſage between the two iſlands of Celebes and Tonikaky; the latter of which, according to our account, lies in latitude 5 deg. 31 min. S. longitude 117 deg. 17 min. E. On the 23d, we weighed, ſteered to the ſouthward of Tonikaky, and ſtood to the weſtward. At three o'clock P. M. we were abreaſt of the eaſtermoſt of three iſlands, called by the Dutch Tonyn's iſlands. Theſe make a right angle triangle with each other; the diſtance between the eaſtermoſt and weſtermoſt is eleven miles, and their relative bearings are nearly eaſt and weſt. At ſix o'clock, after we had ſounded and got no ground, we ſuddenly found ourſelves upon a ſhoal, having not three fathoms water, which, being ſmooth and clear, afforded us the ſight of great crags of coral rocks under our bottom. We immediately threw all our ſails aback, and providentially got off without damage. This is a very dangerous ſhoal, and ſeemed to extend itſelf to the ſouthward and weſtward, all round the two weſtermoſt of theſe three iſlands, for near ſix miles, but about the eaſtermoſt iſland there ſeemed to be no danger; we obſerved alſo a clear paſſage between this iſland and the other two. The latitude of the eaſtermoſt and weſtermoſt of theſe iſlands is 5 deg. 31 min. S. The eaſtermoſt

moſt is diſtant 34 miles due W. from Tonikaky, and the weſtermoſt lies ten miles farther. On the 25th P. M. we found the water much diſcoloured; ſoon after we went over the northermoſt part of a ſhoal. Here we found the water very foul when to the ſouthward, but to the northward of us it appeared to be clear. At 11 o'clock we ſaw to the northward of us, the ſouthermoſt iſlands of Salombo, in latitude 5 deg. 33 min. S. at the diſtance of eighty-two leagues weſt of Tonikaky. We muſt here remark, that off the iſland of Madura, the winds of the monſoons are commonly a month later in ſettling than at Celebes. On Thurſday the 26th P. M. we ſaw from the maſt head the iſland of Luback, which is in latitude 5 deg. 43 min. S. and in longitude 5 deg. 36 min. W. of Tonikaky, and diſtant from thence 112 leagues. To the northward of this iſland we found a current ſetting W. N. W. On the 29th we ſaw the cluſter of ſmall iſlands, called Carimon Java, diſtant from Luback 45 leagues. The eaſtermoſt iſland is the largeſt, and is in latitude 5 deg. 48 min. S. longitude 7 deg. 52 min. W. of Tonikaky, from which it is diſtant about 158 leagues.

Thurſday, the 2nd of June, we made that part of the iſland of Java which makes the eaſtermoſt point of the bay of Batavia, called Carawawang. When we firſt got ſight of the land we decreaſed gradually our ſoundings, and, having ſteered along the ſhore for Batavia, we had thirteen fathoms, in which depth, night coming on, we anchored, in ſight of Batavia, near the two ſmall iſlands called Leyden and Alkmar. On the 3d we came to an anchor in the road, which is ſo good that it may be conſidered as a harbour. We thought ourſelves happy in having attained our preſent ſituation; for with great difficulty we had prevented the Swallow from ſinking by the conſtant working of the pumps, during her whole paſſage from Celebes. In this road of Batavia we found laying eleven large Dutch ſhips, beſides ſeveral that were leſs, one Spaniſh ſhip, a Portugueſe ſnow, and ſeveral Chineſe junks. On the 4th we ſaluted with 11 guns, which number was returned; and this being his Majeſty's birth day, we afterwards fired 21 guns more on that occaſion. In the afternoon captain Carteret waited upon the governor, requeſting permiſſion to repair the defects of the ſhip; but he was directed to petition the council. Accordingly on Monday the 6th when the council met, the captain ſent a letter, ſtating to them the defects of the ſhip, and requeſting permiſſion to repair her; adding that he *hoped* they would allow him the uſe of ſuch wharfs and ſtorehouſes as ſhould be neceſſary. On the 7th in the afternoon, the ſhebander, Mr. Garriſon, a merchant, as interpreter, and another perſon, came to the captain, ſaying, that he was ſent by the governor and council for a letter, which they had heard he had received when at Bonthain, that the author of it, who had injured both him and their nation, might be puniſhed. Captain Carteret acknowledged he had received information of a deſign to cut off the ſhip, but ſaid, he had never told any one it was by means of a letter. The ſhebander then deſired to know if the captain would take an oath, of his not having received the letter in queſtion; to which the captain returned, that if the council had any ſuch extraordinary requiſition to make of him, he deſired it might be in writing, and then he would give ſuch a reply, as, upon mature conſideration, he ſhould think proper. He then aſked the ſhebander, what anſwer he had been inſtructed to give to his letter, concerning the refitting of the ſhip; to which the ſhebander replied, that the council had taken offence, at his having uſed the word *hoped*, all merchants having, upon a like occaſion, uſed the ſtile of *requeſt*; captain Carteret in return ſaid, that no offence had been intended on his part, and that he had uſed the firſt words that occurred, which he thought moſt expreſſive of his meaning. On the 9th the ſame gentleman viſited the captain a ſecond time, when the ſhebander required a writing under his hand, importing, that he believed the report, of an intention formed at the iſland of Celebes to cut off the Swallow, was falſe and malicious, obſerving at the ſame time, that he hoped the captain had a better opinion of the Dutch nation, than to ſuppoſe them capable of ſuffering ſo execrable a deed to be perpetrated under their government. After this altercation Mr. Garriſon read a certificate, which, he ſaid, had been drawn up, by order of the council, for captain Carteret to ſign. This the captain refuſed to do, becauſe it appeared to be made a condition of complying with his requeſt reſpecting the ſhip. During this converſation, the captain deſired to ſee by what authority the Shebander made his requiſition: he replied, he had no teſtimony of authority, but that of the notoriety of his being a public officer, and the evidence of the gentlemen who were preſent, who would confirm his declaration, that he acted in this particular by the expreſs order of council. The captain now repeated his requeſt of having the requiſition of the council in writing; the Shebander ſaid, he could not do this without an order from his ſuperiors; the captain upon this abſolutely refuſed to ſign the paper, and they parted not in very good humour with each other.

On Wedneſday, the 15th, the ſame three gentlemen paid captain Carteret a third viſit, informing him, that the council had proteſted againſt his behaviour at Macaſſar, and his refuſing to ſign the certificate, as an inſult upon them, and an act of injuſtice to their nation. The captain ſaid, he was not conſcious of having, in any inſtance, acted contrary to the treaties ſubſiſting between the two kingdoms, unworthy of his character as an officer, honoured with a commiſſion from his Britannic Majeſty, or unſuitable to the truſt repoſed in him; nor did he think he had been uſed by the governor of Macaſſar as the ſubject of a friend and ally; he then requeſted, that if they had any thing to alledge againſt him, it might be reduced to writing, and laid before the king his maſter, to whom alone he thought himſelf to be reſponſible. With this anſwer they departed; and, the next day, the captain wrote a ſecond letter to the governor and council, in which he repreſented, that the leaks of the Swallow were every day increaſing, and urged, in more preſſing terms, his requeſt, that ſhe might be repaired. In conſequence of this application, on Saturday the 18th the Shebander informed us, that the council had given orders for the repair of the ſhip at Onruſt, and, as there was no ſtorehouſe empty, they had appointed one of the company's veſſels to receive our ſtores. The captain inquired of the Shebander whether he had not an anſwer to his letter; he ſaid he had not; nor was this the uſual mode with the council, a meſſage by him, or ſome other officer, being always thought ſufficient. All diſputes being now terminated, without any improper compliances on the part of this intrepid commander, he was, after this, ſupplied for his money with every thing he could deſire from the company's ſtores, and a pilot was ordered to attend us to Onruſt, where we came to anchor on Wedneſday the 22nd. We immediately began to clear the ſhip, and put her ſtores on board the company's veſſel. On examination we found the poor weather-beaten Swallow in a very decayed ſtate. Her bowſprit and cap, as well as her main yard, were rotten, and altogether unſerviceable, her ſheathing was every where eaten off by the worms, and the main planks were ſo much damaged, that it was abſolutely neceſſary to heave her down, before ſhe could be ſufficiently repaired; but the wharfs being at this time pre-engaged by other ſhips, her repairs did not commence till the 24th of July. When the Dutch carpenters came to examine her bottom, they were all of one opinion, that the whole ſhould be ſhifted. This the captain ſtrenuouſly oppoſed, being afraid, as the Swallow was an old ſhip, that ſhould her bottom be opened; and found worſe than was imagined, ſhe might undergo the fate of the Falmouth, and be condemned: he therefore deſired, that a good ſheathing only might be put over all; but the Bawſe, or maſter carpenter, would not undertake the required repairs, unleſs the captain would certify under his hand, that what ſhould be done was in conſequence of his own expreſs orders, judgement,

ment, and direction; which the Dutchman thought was neceſſary for his own juſtification; for, ſaid he, ſhould the Swallow never reach England, the blame, if I go according to your directions, will nevertheleſs conſequently fall upon me. This being thought a reaſonable propoſition, the Captain readily aſſented to it; but being by this act become reſponſible for the fate of the ſhip, he thought proper to have her ſurveyed carefully by our own carpenter and mate, he himſelf with his officers always attending. Among other defects, ſeven chain-plates were uſeleſs; the iron work was in a very decayed ſtate; ſeveral of the knees were looſe, others were broken, and the butt-ends of the planks that joined the ſtern were ſo open, that a man's hand might be thruſt in between.

During our ſtay at this port, we found, among other private ſhips from India, the Dudley, from Bengal; and application having been made to the council, leave had been granted to careen her, but as the wharfs had been kept in continual uſe, ſhe had been put off above four months. The Captain apprehending, that if he ſuffered a delay much longer, the worms would eat through the bottom of his veſſel, applied to our Commander to intercede for him with Admiral Houting, which he did with ſuch ſucceſs, that a wharf was immediately allotted her. "Admiral Houting," ſays Captain Carteret, "is an old man, in the ſervice of the ſtates, with the rank of Commander in chief of their marine, and the ſhips belonging to the Company in India. He received his firſt maritime knowledge on board an Engliſh man of war, ſpeaks Engliſh and French extremely well, and does honour to the ſervice both by his abilities and politeneſs: he was ſo obliging as to give me a general invitation to his table, in conſequence of which I was often with him, and it is with pleaſure that I take this opportunity of making a public acknowledgment of the favours I received from him, and bearing this teſtimony to his public and private merit: he was, indeed, the only officer from whom I received any civility, or with whom I had the leaſt communication; for I found them, in general, a reſerved and ſupercilious ſet of people." The ſpirited behaviour of Captain Carteret to the governor at this Dutch ſettlement, in refuſing to pay him an extravagant homage, which is exacted of the Captains of all merchant ſhips which touch here, deſerves alſo particular notice. The governor of Batavia, although a ſervant of the republic, aſſumes the ſtate of a ſovereign prince.. When he goes abroad, he is eſcorted by a party of horſe-guards, and two black footmen run before his coach, each having a large cane in his hand, with which they take the liberty of chaſtiſing thoſe who do not make the obeiſance that is expected from perſons of all ranks, whether belonging to the country or ſtrangers. In this ſettlement almoſt every one keeps a carriage, which is drawn by two horſes, and driven by a man upon a box, like our chariots, but is open in front. When any one of theſe coaches meets that of the governor's, either in the town, or upon the road, it is drawn on one ſide, and the perſons in it muſt get out to pay their reſpects, while his excellency's coach goes by; nor, if a coach is behind, muſt it drive paſt that of the governor's, however preſſing neceſſity may require ſpeed. A ſimilar homage is likewiſe required by the members of the council, called Edele Heeren, only that the perſon does not quit his carriage, but ſtanding up in it, pays them a reſpectful homage. One black man, with a ſtick in his hand, runs likewiſe before the coach of every member of the council, nor muſt any one preſume to paſs it any more than that of the governor's. It was hinted to Captain Carteret by the landlord of the hotel were he lodged, that his carriage muſt ſtop, if he ſhould meet the governor, or any one of the Edele Heeren; this ceremony being generally complied with by the captains of Indiamen, and other trading ſhips; and he intimated, that the Shebander had ordered him to give the Captain this information: but our Commander diſdaining to pay a degree of ſervile homage to the ſervants of the States of Holland, which is not paid to the king of Great Britain, would not conſent to perform any ſuch ceremony; and when the landlord mentioned the black men with their ſticks, he pointed to his piſtols, which then happened to lie upon the table, and told him, that he would be upon his guard; and ſhould any inſult be offered to his perſon, he knew well how to defend himſelf: upon this he went out, and in a few hours after told the Captain, he had orders from the governor, to let him know, that he might do as he pleaſed. We had now been at Batavia between three and four months, and during that time, ſays Captain Carteret, "I had the honour to ſee the governor but twice: the firſt time was at my arrival, when I waited upon him at one of his houſes, a little way in the country; the next was in town, as he was walking before his houſe there, when I addreſſed him upon a particular occaſion. Soon after the news of the Prince of Orange's marriage arrived at Batavia, he gave a public entertainment, to which I had the honour of being invited; but having heard, that Commodore Tinker, upon a like occaſion, finding that he was to be placed below the gentlemen of the Dutch council, had abruptly left the room, and was followed by all the captains of his ſquadron; and being willing to avoid the diſagreeable dilemma, of either ſitting below the council, or following the Commodore's example, I applied to the governor to know what ſtation would be allotted me, before I accepted his invitation, and finding I could not be permitted to take place of the council, I declined it. On both theſe occaſions I ſpoke to his excellency by an Engliſh merchant, who acted as an interpreter. The firſt time he had not the civility to offer me the leaſt refreſhment, nor did he the laſt time ſo much as aſk me to go into his houſe." The ſhip was now repaired to our ſatisfaction, though the Dutch carpenters thought ſhe was not in a condition to proceed to Europe; and admiral Houting intimated, that if we went to ſea before the proper time, we ſhould meet with ſuch weather off the Cape of Good Hope, as would make us repent our haſte; but the Captain being ill, and the people very ſickly, and eſpecially as the weſt monſoon was ſetting in, during which the mortality is yet greater at Batavia than at other times, we thought it better to run the riſk of a few hard gales off the cape, than to remain longer in this unhealthy place.

We therefore, on Wedneſday the 15th of September, ſailed from Onruſt, without returning, as is uſual, into Batavia Road, and the Captain, on account of his illneſs, ſent his lieutenant, Mr. Gower, to take leave of the governor, and to offer him his ſervice, if he had any diſpatches for Europe. When we left this port 24 of our ſeamen, which were brought from Europe, had died, and the ſame number were now very ill, ſeven of whom died on our paſſage to the cape; but we were ſo happy as to procure a number of Engliſh ſeamen at Batavia before our departure, which recruited the ſtrength that had been waſted in the voyage, and without theſe recruits, in the Captain's opinion, we ſhould not at laſt have been able to bring the ſhip home. On Monday the 20th, we anchored on the S. E. ſide of Prince's Iſland, in the ſtrait of Sunda, at which time we had the wind freſh from the S. E. We have juſt given a deſcriptive, hiſtorical, and geographical account, of the iſlands of Sunda, and Java, and in a former voyage of the Philippine Iſles, to render which full and complete, we ſhall here deſcribe ſome other noted iſlands and places in the Indians ſeas, to which, at leaſt, references are made in the inſtructive and entertaining voyages which compoſe this work.

(1.) The Nicobar Iſlands, which are ſituated in the Indian ſea, between 7 and 10 degrees of north latitude, and between 92 and 94 degrees eaſt longitude, near the entrance of the bay of Bengal, a little north of the iſland of Sumatra. Theſe iſles form three cluſters; the middle, called Sombrero, are well inhabited, except one; the northern cluſter, called Carnicubars, are not ſo populous. The ſouthern cluſter of the Nicobars, are very mountainous, and the people much more ſavage than thoſe of the middle and northern cluſters. The prieſts of Sombrero, are dreſſed much in the ſame manner as we paint the devil, by which appearance they keep the inhabitants in awe. The largeſt of theſe iſlands, which lies moſt to the ſouth, is 40 miles long, and 15 broad: the ſouth end is mountainous, and there are ſome ſteep rocks near the ſea; the reſt of the iſland is covered with woods, but has no high land. It is a rich ſoil, that would produce almoſt any grain, if it was cultivated. The groves of cocoa-nut trees that grow in the flat country near the ſea, are exceeding pleaſant; but we do not find an account of any towns; only, as we ſail by ſea, we can perceive groups, containing each five or ſix houſes in every creek and bay, which are built on bamboo pillars, eight or nine feet above the ſurface of the ground, the roof being neatly arched with bended cane, and covered with palm branches.

Theſe iſlanders are of the middle ſtature, their complexion a deep olive, their hair long and eyes black. The men wear no cloaths, but a piece of linen cloth about their loins; that of the women reaches below the knees. Their women might be eſteemed handſome, if it was not the cuſtom to pull the hair off their eye-brows by the roots. They neglect to clear the country, and cultivate the ground, which is over-run with wood; and they live chiefly on fiſh, and ſuch fruits as the country produces ſpontaneouſly. They have little trade or commerce with any other people; but as ſhips ſail in their way to and from the ſtraits of Malacca, they bring off hogs, poultry, and ſuch fruits as the country affords, taking tobacco, linen, and other neceſſaries in return.

(2.) The Andoman, and Cocoa Iſlands. The former are ſituated in the bay of Bengal, north of the Nicobar Iſlands, in between 10 and 15 degrees of north latitude, longitude 92 degrees eaſt. Theſe iſlands do not ſeem to differ much from thoſe of Nicobar, except in producing rice, which is cultivated and eaten by the natives as well as fiſh and fruit. The Cocoa Iſlands lie 35 leagues W. S. W. of Cape Negrais; they produce great abundance of cocoa-trees, but are uninhabited.

(3.) The famous iſland of Ceylon; which lies between 5 deg. 30 min. and 10 deg. 16 min. N. latitude; and between 79 deg. 40 min. and 82 deg. 45 min. E. longitude; at the diſtance of about 190 miles from Cape Comorin. Ptolemy deſcribed this iſland under the name of Taprobane. It is 900 miles in circumference, 300 in length, and 140 in breadth. It is for the moſt part a mountainous country, covered with wood; but there are ſeveral fruitful plains and valleys, well watered by rivulets. A very remarkable mountain, which ſtands on the ſouth ſide of Condula, the name of the northern diviſion, is, by the natives, called Hamalel; but by the Europeans, Adam's Peak, being of a pyramidal form, only on the top is a little rocky plain, with a print of a man's foot on it, near two feet long, to which the natives go in pilgrimage once a year, to worſhip the impreſſion, having a tradition, according to ſome, that their god Buddow aſcended to heaven from hence, leaving this print of his foot, which the Portugueſe, when they poſſeſſed this iſland, called Adam's foot, and the mountain Pico de Adam; but others affirm, that it received its name from a tradition of the natives, that Adam was created and buried here. In this mountain riſe the principal rivers, which run into the ſea in different directions. The largeſt of theſe is the Mavillagonga, which runs N. E. of the cities of Candy and Alatneur, diſcharging itſelf into the ocean at Trincomale. Theſe rivers run with ſuch rapidity, and are ſo full of rocks, that none of them are navigable: the rains, which happen when the ſun is vertical, increaſe their waters, and create abundance of torrents, which are not viſible in the dry ſeaſon. The air is for the moſt part healthful, except near the ſea, and the north part of the iſland, where they have no ſprings, or rivers; and if the rain fails them, they are ſure to be afflicted with famine or ſickneſs. The chief towns are, 1. Candy, the capital of the iſland, and ſituate near the center of it, in latitude 8 deg. N. and 79 deg. E. longitude. This is an open town with fortifications, and yet almoſt inacceſſible, being ſurrounded by rocks and thick woods that are impaſſable, except through ſome lanes, which are fenced with gates of ſtrong thorns: and yet it appears that the Portugueſe made themſelves maſters of Candy, and almoſt demoliſhed it, obliging the king to retire to Digligyneur, five miles S. E. of Candy. 2. Columbo, the capital of the Dutch ſettlements, is a great port town in the S. W. part of the iſland, in 7 deg. N. latitude, and in 78 deg. E. longitude. It has a good harbour, defended by a caſtle, and ſeveral batteries of guns. In this caſtle reſides the governor, merchants, officers and ſoldiers, belonging to the Eaſt India Company; and 4000 ſlaves have their huts between the caſtle and the ſea. The Dutch have two hoſpitals here: one for the ſick and wounded, and another for the orphans. As the boys grow up, they are entered into the ſea and land ſervice; and the girls are married at 12 or 13 years of age; and they have a Malabrian ſchool for teaching the Indian language. 3. Negumbo, which is alſo a port town, lies about 25 miles north of Columbo. 4. Jaffnapatan, the capital of the province of the ſame name, and the northern diviſion of this iſland. There is no cinnamon in this part of the iſland, nevertheleſs the Dutch have fortified it all round, to prevent any other nation ſending colonies thither. 5. Trincomale is ſituate on the eaſt-ſide of the iſland, about 80 miles ſouth of Punta Pedra, the moſt northerly promontory of the iſland. 6. Battadalio is another fortreſs, 50 miles ſouth of the former: beſides which places, there are the ſeven little iſlands Ourature, Xho, Deſerba, Analativa, Caradiva, Pongardiva, and Nainandiva.

With regard to the hiſtory of this iſland, the country villages of the natives are very irregular, being not laid out in ſtreets, but every man incloſes a ſpot of ground, with a bank or pale ſuitable to his circumſtances, and there are frequently 20 or 30 of thoſe incloſures pretty near together. The buildings are mean, the houſes of the generality of the people, low thatched cottages, conſiſting of one or two ground rooms, the ſides whereof are ſplintered with rattans or cane, which they do not always cover with clay, and if they do, it ſeems they are not permitted to white-waſh them, this being a royal privilege. The better ſort of people have a ſquare in the middle of their houſes, and as many rooms on the ſides of it as the number of the family requires, with banks of earth raiſed a yard high above this ſquare court, whereon they ſit croſs-legged, and eat or converſe with their friends. Their meat is dreſſed in their yards, or a corner of the room. Their furniture conſiſts of a mat, a ſtool or two, a few china plates, with ſome earthen and brazen veſſels for water, and to dreſs their meat in, except one bedſtead, which is allotted to the maſter of the houſe to ſit or ſleep on, and this is corded, if we may uſe the expreſſion, with rattans or ſmall canes; and has a mat or two and a ſtraw pillow upon it, but no teſter and curtains. The women and children lie on mats by the fire-ſide, covering themſelves only with the cloth they wear in the day time; but they will have a fire burning at their feet all night, the pooreſt among them never wanting fuel, wood being ſo plentiful that no one thinks it worth while to claim any property in it. Their Pagodas or Temples, which are of any antiquity, are built of hewn ſtone, with numbers of images both on the inſide and out, but no windows in them, and in all other reſpects like thoſe on the neighbouring continent of India; but their temples of a modern date are little low buildings with clay walls, almoſt in the form of a dove-houſe; and beſides their public temples, they have ſmall chapels in their yards, ſometimes not more than two feet ſquare, which they ſet upon a pillar four feet high, and having placed in it the image they reverence moſt, they light candles and lamps before it, and every morning ſtrew flowers while performing their devotions.

The natives are eſteemed men of good parts and addreſs, grave, yet of an eaſy temper. They eat and ſleep moderately, but are lazy and indolent, which is the caſe in moſt hot climates. It is ſaid, that they are not given to thieving, but are much addicted to lying, which ſeems to be a paradox; for a man who will lye and deceive, would not make much ſcruple to cheat. They are far from being jealous, or reſtraining of their women from taking innocent freedoms. The men are of a moderate ſtature, and well-proportioned, wear long beards, and have good features; their hair and eyes are black; they have dark complexions, but not black as the natives upon the neighbouring continent of India are. They ſit on mats and carpets on the floor, but have a ſtool or two for perſons of diſtinction; but the vulgar are prohibited the uſe of ſtools. Young men of figure wear their hair long and combed back; but, in a more advanced age, caps in the form of a mitre are worn. Their dreſs is a waiſtcoat of callico, and a piece of the ſame wrapped round their waiſts, in which they put their knives and trinkets, and they have a hanger by their ſide, in a ſilver ſcabbard: beſides which they walk with a cane or tuck, and a boy carries a box with betel and areca after them. The betel is a leaf of the ſhape of a laurel leaf, and the areca-nut about the bigneſs of a nutmeg, which they cut in thin ſlices, with an inſtrument made on purpoſe for it, and this, with a paſte made of lime, they chew together almoſt all day long, as moſt other Indians do: this mixture ſeems to be a kind of opiate, and renders them perfectly eaſy while they uſe it. They have a perſon to carry a covered ſilver pot, or one made of ſome other metal, to ſpit in: for this compoſition has a nauſeous ſmell, and it would be the greateſt affront imaginable to ſpit on the carpets or floors in a friend's houſe, and thoſe that chew it ſpit perpetually. It makes their lips very red, of which they are proud, and this may be one reaſon for their taking it; but there is nothing inviting in the taſte of this luxurious dainty, though univerſally chewed, and is the firſt thing offered a ſtranger when he makes a viſit. The women wear their hair long without any covering, and make it ſhine with cocoanut oil, which has a very rancid ſmell, though the natives eſteem it a perfume, for cuſtom will bring people to like almoſt any thing. The women are dreſſed in a callico waiſtcoat, which diſcovers their ſhape, and they wrap a piece of callico about them, which falls below their knees, and does the ſervice of a petticoat: theſe are longer, or ſhorter, according to the quality of the perſon who wears them. They bore holes in their ears, in which they hang ſuch a weight of jewels, or ſomething that reſembles them, that you may put a half crown through the hole of their ears: they load their necks alſo with weighty necklaces, which fall upon their breaſts, containing a great many ſtrings or rounds of beads: their arms are adorned with bracelets; and they have a number of rings on their fingers and toes; and a girdle of ſilver wire ſurrounds their waiſts. When they go abroad, they throw a piece of ſtriped ſilk over their heads, which ſometimes reſembles a hood. The people are obliged to go bare-footed, becauſe none but the king is allowed to wear ſhoes and ſtockings. The uſual ſalutation among theſe people, is the ſame as in other parts of India, namely, the carrying one or both hands to their heads, according to the quality of the perſon they ſalute. Talkative people are in no repute; for the neareſt relations, or moſt particular friends, do not talk much when they viſit, but ſit ſilent a great part of the time. A man before marriage, ſends a friend to purchaſe the woman's cloaths, which ſhe freely ſells for a ſtipulated ſum. In the evening he carries them to her, ſleeps with her all night, and in the morning appoints the day of marriage; on which he provides an entertainment of two courſes for the friends of both parties. The feaſt is held at the bride's houſe, when the young couple eat out of the ſame diſh, ſleep together that night, and on the enſuing morning depart for the bridegroom's habitation. The meaning of making a purchaſe of the bride's cloaths is, that ſhe and her friends may be ſatisfied with reſpect to the man's circumſtances. They are permitted to part with each other whenever they pleaſe; but if there ſhould be any children, the man is obliged to maintain the boys, and the women the girls; and they are ſo inclined to avail themſelves of this liberty, that ſome of them have been known to change a dozen times. The profeſſion of a midwife is unknown, as the women, in general, are both willing and qualified on that occaſion to aſſiſt each other.

This iſland produces rice, of which they have ſeveral kinds: one of them will be ſeven months before it comes maturity, ſome ſix, and others five, between the ſeed time and harveſt: that which grows faſteſt is the beſt taſted, but yields the leaſt increaſe; and as all ſorts of rice grow in water, the inhabitants are at great labour and expence in levelling the ground they deſign for tillage, and making channels from their wells and repoſitories of water, to convey to theſe fields: they cut out the ſides of their hills from the top to the bottom, into little level plains, one above another, that the water may ſtand in them till the corn is ripe; and theſe levels not being more than ſix or eight feet wide, many of them look like ſtairs to aſcend the mountain, at a little diſtance. In the north part of the iſland, where there are few ſprings, they ſave the rain water in great ponds, or tanques, of a mile in compaſs, in the time of the monſoons, and when their ſeeds are ſown, let it down into them gradually, ſo that it may hold out till harveſt. They do not thraſh, but tread out their corn with oxen and buffaloes, frequently in the field where it grows. When it is reaped, they lay out a round ſpot of ground for this purpoſe, about 25 feet over, which they dig a foot and a half deep, and the women, whoſe buſineſs it is, bring the corn in bundles on their heads, after which the cattle are driven round the pit till they have trampled it out of the ſtraw: then a new floor is laid; and with half a dozen oxen they will trample out 40 or 50 buſhels a day. Before they begin to tread out the corn, they always perform a religious ceremony, and apply to their idols for a bleſſing on their labours. They have ſeveral other kinds of grain, which they eat at the latter end of the year, when rice begins to be ſcarce, particularly coracan, which is as ſmall as a muſtard ſeed. Having beat this, and ground it into flour, they make cakes of it. This grain grows in dry ground, and is ripe within three or four months after it is ſown. They have alſo a ſeed, called tolla, of which they make oil, and anoint themſelves with it.

In this iſland are a great variety of fruits, but the natives ſeldom eat them ripe, or cultivate any but thoſe which ſerve to make pickles for their ſoup or curree, and for ſauces, when they are green, to eat with their rice. Of the betel they have great abundance, which they formerly exported to the coaſt of Coromandel, to great advantage, before the Dutch excluded them from all trade with foreigners. The fruit called jacka, is part of their food. They grow upon large trees, are round in their ſhape, and as big as a peck loaf. They are covered with a green prickly rind; have ſeeds and kernels in them as big as a cheſnut; and are in colour and taſte like them. They gather theſe jackas before they are ripe; and, when boiled, they eat much like cabbage; if ſuffered to grow till ripe, they are very good to eat raw. The natives roaſt the kernel in the embers, and carry with them when they take a journey, for their proviſion. There is another kind of fruit called jumbo, which is very juicy, and taſtes like an apple: it is white, ſtreaked with red, and looks very beautiful. They have alſo ſome fruits that reſemble our plumbs and cherries; nor do they want any of the common India fruits, ſuch as mangoes, cocoas, pineapples, melons, pomegranates, oranges of ſeveral ſorts, citrons, limes, &c. They frequently dedicate their fruit to ſome dæmon, to prevent their being ſtolen; after which their neighbours dare not touch them, leſt the dæmon, to which they are devoted, ſhould puniſh them for the theft; and before the owner eats of it himſelf, he offers part of it to the idol. Their kitchen gardens are well ſtored with roots, plants, and herbs, for the Portugueſe and Dutch have introduced all manner of European plants that grow in our kitchen gardens. They alſo abound in medicinal herbs, which they know very well how to apply, and with which they perform many notable cures.

Nor are they in want of flowers of various colours, and a delicious ſcent, which grow ſpontaneouſly; but are never cultivated: with theſe, the young people of both ſexes adorn their hair. With a variety of others, they have white and red roſes, as ſweet and beautiful as thoſe in Europe, and a white flower reſembling jeſſamine, which the king reſerves for his own uſe, no ſubject being allowed to wear it. There is another flower, which is obſerved to open about four every evening, and cloſe again at four in the morning.

Among their trees the talipot, which grows very tall and ſtrait, is in high repute. A ſingle leaf of this will cover 15 or 20 men, and will fold up like a fan: they wear a piece of it on their heads, when travelling, to ſkreen them from the ſun. They alſo ſerve the ſoldiers for tents to lie under in the fields; and their leaves are ſo tough, that they make their way with them through the thickets without tearing them. There is likewiſe a tree called kettule, a kind of palm, as high as a cocoa-tree, from whence they draw a pleaſant liquor; an ordinary tree yielding three or four gallons a day; and when boiled, it makes a kind of brown ſugar, called jaggory. The wood of this tree is black, hard, and very heavy. But that of moſt value to the Dutch, as it was formerly to the Arabs, and the Portugueſe, is the cinnamon-tree, which grows commonly in the woods, on the S. W. part of the iſland. The tree is of a middle ſize, and has a leaf in the form of a laurel leaf. When the leaves firſt appear, they are as red as ſcarlet, and being rubbed between the fingers, ſmell like cloves. It bears a fruit like an acorn, which neither ſmells nor taſtes like the bark; but if boiled in water, an oil ſwims on the top, which ſmells ſweetly, and is uſed as an ointment in ſeveral diſtempers: but as they have great plenty of it they frequently burn it in their lamps. The tree having two barks, they ſtrip off the outſide bark, which is good for little, and then cut the inner bark round the tree with a pruning knife; after which they cut it long ways in little ſlips, and after they have ſtripped theſe pieces off, lay them in the ſun to dry, which they roll up in the manner we ſee them brought over. The body of the tree is white, and ſerves for building, and other uſes, but has neither the ſmell nor taſte of the bark. When the wind ſets off the iſland, the cinnamon groves perfume the air for many miles out at ſea, of which we have inconteſtible evidence; and moſt likely it is at that time of the year, when the cinnamon trees are in bloſſom.

Of the animals that abound in this iſland, are elephants of a very large ſize; alſo oxen, buffaloes, deer, hogs, goats, monkeys, and ſome wild beaſts; but they had neither horſes, aſſes, or ſheep, till they were imported by the Europeans; nor have they any lions or wolves. The elephants feed upon the tender twigs of trees, corn, and graſs, as it is growing, and do the huſbandmen a great deal of miſchief, by trampling down their corn, as well as eating it, and ſpoiling their trees. The monkeys have black faces and white beards, much reſembling old men. Alligators and crocodiles abound, as do alſo ſerpents of a monſtrous ſize; and here is an animal in all reſpects like a deer, but not bigger than a hare. Vermin and inſects are very numerous, particularly ants, which eat every thing they come at, except iron, and ſuch hard ſubſtances. Their houſes are peſtered with them. When full grown they have wings, and fly up in ſuch clouds, that they intercept the light of the ſun; ſoon after which they fall down dead, and are eaten by fowls, who devour them alſo at other times. The common ſort of bees build in hollow trees, or in holes of the rocks; but there are much larger bees, of a more lively colour, which form their combs upon the high boughs of trees, and, at the proper ſeaſon, the country people go out into the woods and take their honey. In the ſeaſon when the rains begin to fall, they are troubled with ſmall red leeches, which are not at firſt much bigger than a hair; theſe run up the bare legs of travellers, and fixing themſelves there, are not eaſily removed, till the blood runs about their heels. The remedy uſed againſt their bite is, to rub the legs with a compoſition of aſhes, lemon-juice, and ſalt. The bite of theſe creatures is ſo far from being attended with any ill conſequences, that the bleeding, which is the effect of it, is eſteemed very wholeſome. Their fowls are geeſe, ducks, turkeys, hens, woodcocks, partridges, ſnipes, wild peacocks, parroquets, and a beautiful ſparrow as white as ſnow, all but its head, which is black, with a plume of feathers ſtanding upright upon it. The tail of theſe birds is a foot in length.

In this iſland the inhabitants make ſavoury ſoups of fleſh or fiſh, which they eat with their rice: people of condition will have ſeveral diſhes at their tables, but they conſiſt chiefly of rice, ſoups, herbs, garden-roots, and vegetables. Of fleſh and fiſh they eat but little. Their meat is cut into ſmall ſquare pieces, and two or three ounces of it laid on the ſide of the diſh by their rice, and, being ſeaſoned very high, gives a reliſh to that inſipid food. They uſe no knives or forks, but have ladles and ſpoons made of the cocoa-nut ſhell. Their plates are of braſs or china-ware; but the poor have a broad leaf inſtead of a plate, and ſometimes ſeveral leaves ſewed together with bents, where broad ones are not to be had. Water is their uſual drink, which they pour out of a cruce or bottle, holding it more than a foot above their heads; and ſome of them will ſwallow near a quart of water in this manner without gulping once. Neither wine nor beer is made in this country, but arrack and ſpirits are drawn from rice. They never eat beef, the bull and cow being objects of adoration. Neither the people in a high or low ſtation eat with their wives: the man ſits by himſelf, and the women and children eat after he has dined. In this woody and mountainous country are no wheel carriages, except what belong to the Dutch near the ſea coaſt. The baggage is carried uſually upon the backs of their ſlaves. The chief manufactures here are callico and cotton cloths: they make alſo braſs, copper, and earthen veſſels, ſwords, knives, and working tools: they alſo now make pretty good fire-arms; and goldſmith's work, painting, and carving, are performed tolerably well. We may trace their foreign trade up to the earlieſt ages. They ſupplied Perſia, Arabia, Egypt, and Ethiopia, with their ſpices, before Jacob went down into Egypt, which is above 3000 years ſince, as appears by the hiſtory of Joſeph's being ſold to Iſhmaelite merchants, who were travelling with a caravan acroſs Arabia to Egypt with the ſpices of India, of which the cinnamon of Ceylon, that lies near the coaſt of hither India, was no doubt the chief; and ſo profitable was this branch of trade, that all the nations above mentioned ſent colonies hither, whoſe deſcendants were planted here when the Portugueſe firſt viſited this coaſt.

Here the Portugueſe language is ſpoken; however, the natives have a language of their own, which comes neareſt to that ſpoken on the Malabar coaſt: the Bramins or prieſts ſpeak a dead language, in which the books relating to their religion are written. They write upon the leaves of the talipot cut into pieces of three fingers broad, and two foot long, with a ſteel ſtyle or bodkin. They have long ſtudied aſtronomy, which they learnt from the Arabians, and foretell eclipſes tolerably well: they are great pretenders alſo to aſtrology, and by the planets calculate nativities, and direct people when will be the moſt lucky days to enter upon any affair of moment, or to begin a journey; and they find thoſe who are weak enough to be impoſed upon, though they may have been many times diſappointed. Their year is divided into 365 days, and every day into 30 pays or parts, and their night into as many; and they have a little copper diſh, with a hole in the bottom of it, which being put into a tub of water, is filled during one of their pays, when it ſinks, and then it is put into the water again to meaſure another pay; for they have neither ſun-dials nor clocks.

In Ceylon, the criminals are frequently impaled alive; others have ſtakes driven through their bodies; ſome are hung upon trees; and many are worried by dogs, who are ſo accuſtomed to the horrid butchery, that, on the days appointed for the death of criminals, they, by certain tokens, run to the place of execution. But the moſt remarkable puniſhment is inflicted by the king himſelf, who rides an elephant trained up on purpoſe. The beaſt tramples the unhappy wretch to death, and tears him limb from limb. Some are puniſhed by fines and impriſonment, at the diſcretion of the judges. When the fine is decreed, the officers ſeize the culprit, wherever they meet him, ſtrip him naked, his clothes going as part of payment, and oblige him to carry a large ſtone, the weight being increaſed daily, by the addition of others that are ſmaller, till the remainder of the mulct is either paid or remitted. Any of the male cingloſſes may indifferently charge another within hearing (as we do the conſtables) to aid and aſſiſt them in the execution of their duty, or upon any emergency; but the women are not permitted to mention the king's name, upon the ſevere penalty of having their tongues cut out for the offence. A creditor ſometimes will go to the houſe of the debtor, and very gravely affirm, that if he does not diſcharge the debt he owes him immediately, he will deſtroy himſelf: this ſo terrifies the other, that he inſtantly collects all the money he can, even ſelling his wife and children rather than be deficient in his payment of the ſum demanded. This is owing to a law, which ſpecifies, that, if any man deſtroys himſelf on account of a debt not being diſcharged, the debtor ſhall immediately pay the money to the ſurviving relations, and forfeit his own life, unleſs he is able to redeem it by a large fine to the king. They have two modes of deciding controverſies; the one is by imprecating curſes to fall upon them if they do not ſpeak the truth; and by the other, both perſons are obliged to put their fingers into boiling oil, when the perſon who can bear the pain the longeſt, and with the leaſt appearance of being affected, is deemed innocent. They have, however, methods of evading both theſe laws; the firſt, by uſing ambiguous expreſſions; and the latter, by certain preparations, which prevent the oil from doing them any injury. It is not lawful to beat a woman without permiſſion from the king; ſo that the females may thank his majeſty for all the blows they get. But they may be made to carry heavy baſkets of ſand upon their head as long as the man pleaſes, which is much more dreadful to them than a hearty drubbing. The circumſtances of the children depend upon thoſe of the mother; for if the mother is a free women, they are free, but if ſhe is a ſlave, they are always vaſſals.

They have neither phyſicians nor ſurgeons among them; yet, as to phyſic, every one almoſt underſtands the common remedies, applying herbs or roots, according to the nature of the complaint; and they have an herb which cures the bite of a ſnake. As they abound in poiſonous herbs and plants, ſo they have others that are antidotes againſt them. Their diſeaſes are chiefly fevers, fluxes, and the ſmall-pox. They are never let blood, except by the leaches, already mentioned, from which they acknowledge they have ſometimes received great benefit.

With regard to the religion of theſe people, they worſhip God, but make no image of him; however, they have idols, the repreſentatives of ſome great men, who formerly lived upon the earth, and are now, they imagine, mediators for them to the ſupreme God of heaven. The chief of thoſe demy-gods is Buddow, who according to their tradition originally came from heaven to procure the happineſs of men, and aſcended thither again from Adam's Mountain, leaving the impreſſion of his foot upon the rock. They are ſaid, likewiſe, to worſhip the devil, that he ſhould do them no miſchief; and another of their objects of worſhip is the tooth of a monkey. They worſhip alſo the ſun, moon, and other planets. Every town has its tutelar dæmon, and every family their penates, or houſhold gods, to whom they build chapels in their courts, paying their devotions, and ſacrificing to them every morning; but to the ſupreme deity they erect no temples or altars. There are three claſſes of idols, and as many orders of prieſts, who have their ſeveral temples, to which eſtates in land are appropriated. Buddow is the chief of theſe ſubordinate deities, and his prieſts in the greateſt eſteem, being all of the higheſt caſt or tribe in the nation. They wear a yellow veſt and mantle, have their heads ſhaved, and their beards grow to a great length. Their diſciples fall down on their faces before them; and they have a ſtool to ſit on wherever they viſit, which is an honour only ſhewn to their princes and great men. Theſe prieſts have no commerce with women, drink no ſtrong liquor, and eat only one meal a day; but they are not debarred from fleſh, except beef. They are ſtiled ſons of the god Buddow, and cannot be called to account by the civil power, whatever crimes they commit. There is a ſecond order of prieſts, that officiate in the temples of other idols; theſe are allowed to follow any ſecular employment, and are not diſtinguiſhed from the laity by their habits, but have, however, a certain revenue. Every morning and evening they attend the ſervice of their temples; and when the people ſacrifice rice and fruits, the prieſt preſents them before the idol, and then delivers them to the ſinging men and women, and other ſervants that belong to the temple, and to the poor devotees, who eat the proviſions: no fleſh is ever ſacrificed to the idols of this claſs. The third order of prieſts have no revenues, but build temples for themſelves, without any election or conſecration, and beg money to maintain themſelves. Theſe mendicants are mountebanks in their way, ſhewing a variety of whimſical tricks for their bread. They are prohibited by law, from touching the waters in wells or ſprings, nor muſt they uſe any but what is procured from rivers and ditches. They are conſidered in ſo deſpicable a light, that it is held diſgraceful to have any connections with them. Wedneſdays and Saturdays are the days they reſort to their temples; and at the new and full moon they offer ſacrifices to the god Buddow; and on new year's-day, in the month of March, they offer a ſolemn ſacrifice to him, on a high mountain, or under a ſpreading tree that is deemed ſacred. The principal feſtival of the Chingulays is obſerved in the month of July, in honour of the moon, when a prieſt goes in ſolemn proceſſion with a garland of flowers, to which the people preſent their offerings. The ridiculous pageantry attending this feſtival, was attempted to be aboliſhed in 1664; but the attempt occaſioned an inſurrection, ſo that the kings of Ceylon are obliged to let them continue the pompous mummery. They have alſo idols of monſtrous ſhapes and forms, made of ſilver, braſs, and other metals, and ſometimes of clay; but thoſe in Buddow's temples are the figures of men ſitting croſs-legged, in yellow habits, like his prieſts, repreſenting ſome holy men, who, they ſay, were teachers of virtue, and benefactors to mankind.

The iſland of Ceylon was formerly divided into nine monarchies, but, at preſent it is under the dominion of one king, whoſe court is kept in the center of the iſland, at a place called Digligy-Neur: the palace is but newly built, the gates large, ſtately, and finely carved: the window-frames are made of ebony, and inlaid with ſilver; the king's elephants, troops, and concubines, are numerous. The guards are commanded by Dutch and Portugueſe renegado officers. This monarch aſſumes great dignity, and demands much reſpect, which his ſubjects readily pay him, as they imagine, that all their kings immediately on their demiſe, are turned into gods. He expects that Chriſtians ſhould ſalute him kneeling, and uncovered, but requires nothing more of them. His title is, Emperor of Ceylon, king of Candy, prince of Onva, and the four Corles, great duke of the ſeven Corles, marquis of Duranura, lord of the ſea-ports, and fiſheries of pearls and precious ſtones, lord of the golden ſun, &c. His revenue conſiſts in the gifts and offerings of his ſubjects; his palaces are built upon almoſt inacceſſible places, for the greater ſecurity: no bridges are permitted to be erected over rivers or ſtreams, nor any good roads to be made, to render the country as impaſſable as poſſible. None are ſuffered to approach his palace without a paſſport ſtamped in clay. The troops are hereditary, and their weapons are ſwords, guns, pikes, bows, and arrows. They are ſubtle, but not courageous, and will not engage an enemy but by ſurpriſe, or when there is ſome maniſeſt advantage in their favour. It is ſo difficult to penetrate into the inland parts, and all the paſſes are ſo well guarded, that even the Dutch themſelves are unacquainted with the greateſt part of the iſland. In the year 1505 the Portugueſe landed in Ceylon, and about twelve years after they eſtabliſhed factories there, the reigning king permitting them to build forts; and, upon his demiſe, he declared the king of Portugal his heir; but in proceſs of time the Portugueſe behaving with great inſolence and cruelty, the young king of Candy invited in the Dutch, in 1639, who after a tedious war, at length, in the year 1655, ſubdued the Portugueſe, and became maſters of the trade and coaſt: upon which they drove the king, their ally, into the mountains, and, with their wonted gratitude, made him their tributary. The Dutch have in ſubſequent years committed many cruelties, and the natives frequently retaliate by making excurſions among them, or murdering all they meet with at a diſtance from the forts, and in the interior part of the iſland.

(4.) The Maldives. The Maldivia iſlands, ſo called from Male, the chief of them, which is the reſidence of their king, lie about four hundred miles ſouth weſt of Ceylon and cape Comorin. They extend from 4 deg. S. to 8. deg. N. latitude; and are about 600 miles in length, and upwards of 100 in the broadeſt part. They are ſaid to be 1000 in number, but many of them are only large hillocks of ſand, and from the barrenneſs of the ſoil, are uninhabited. The whole country is divided into 13 provinces, called Attolons, each of which contains many ſmall iſlands, and is of a circular form, about 100 miles in circumference. Theſe provinces all lie in a line, and are ſeparated from each other by channels, four of which are navigable for large ſhips; but are very dangerous, on account of the amazing rocks that break the force of the ſea, and raiſe prodigious ſurges. At the bottom of theſe channels is found a ſubſtance like white coral, which, when boiled in cocoa-water, greatly reſembles ſugar. The currents generally run eaſt and weſt alternately ſix months, but the time of the change is uncertain; and ſometimes they change from N. to S. The climate is exceeding ſultry, this country lying near the equinoxial line on both ſides: the nights, however, are tolerably cool, and produce heavy dews that are refreſhing to the trees and vegetables. Their winter commences in April, and continues till October, during which they have perpetual rains, with ſtrong eaſterly winds, but never any froſt. The ſummer begins in October, and continues ſix months, during which time the winds are eaſterly, and the heat is ſo exceſſive as ſcarce to be borne, there not being any rain throughout that ſeaſon.

In general theſe iſlands are very fertile, and produce great quantities of millet, and another grain much like it, of both which they have two harveſts every year. Here are alſo ſeveral kinds of roots which ſerve for food, particularly a ſort of bread-fruit, called nell-pou, which grows wild and in great plenty. The woods produce excellent fruits, as cocoas, citrons, pomegranates, and India figs. Their only animals for uſe are ſheep and buffaloes, except a few cows and bulls that belong to the king, and are imported from the continent; but theſe are only uſed at particular feſtivals. The natives have not much poultry, but they are ſupplied with prodigious quantities of wild fowl that are caught in the woods, and ſold at a very low price. They have alſo plenty of wild pigeons, ducks, rails, and birds reſembling ſparrow-hawks. The ſea produces moſt kinds of fiſh, great quantities of which are exported from hence to Sumatra. Among the fiſh is one called a cowrie, the ſhells of which (called in England blackmoor's teeth) are uſed in moſt parts of the Indies inſtead of coin.

The only poiſonous animals here are ſnakes; a dangerous ſort of them infeſt the borders of the ſea. The inhabitants alſo are much troubled with rats, dormice, piſmires, and other ſpecies of vermin, which are very deſtructive to their proviſions, fruit, and other periſhable commodities; for which reaſon they build their granaries on piles in the ſea, at ſome diſtance from the ſhore; and in this manner moſt of the king's granaries are built.

In theſe iſlands the natives are very robuſt, of an olive complexion, and well featured. They are naturally ingenious, and apply themſelves with great induſtry to various manufactures, particularly the making of ſilk and cotton. They are cautious, and ſharp in trading, courageous, and well ſkilled in arms. The common people go almoſt naked, having only a piece of cotton faſtened round the waiſt, except on feſtival days, when they wear cotton or ſilk jerkins, with waiſtcoats, the ſleeves of which reach only to their elbows. The wealthier ſort tie a piece of cloth between their legs, and round the waiſt, next to which they have a piece of blue, or red cotton, that reaches to the knees, and to that is joined a large piece of cotton and ſilk, reaching to their ancles, and girded with a ſquare handkerchief embroidered with gold or ſilver; and the whole is ſecured by a large ſilk girdle fringed, the ends of which hang down before; and within this girdle, on the left ſide, they keep their money and betel, and on the right ſide a knife. They ſet great value on this inſtrument, from its being their only weapon; for none but the king's officers and ſoldiers are permitted to wear any other. The rich have ſilk turbans on their heads, richly adorned, but thoſe of the poor are made of cotton, and only ornamented with ribbons of various colours. The women are fairer than the men, and, in general, of a very agreeable diſpoſition. They wear a coat of cotton, or ſilk, that reaches down to the ancles, over which they have a long robe of taffety, or fine cotton, that extends from the ſhoulders to the feet, and is faſtened round the neck by two gilt buttons. Their hair, which is eſteemed a great ornament, is black; and to obtain this, they keep their daughters heads ſhaved till they are eight or ten years of age, leaving only a little hair on their foreheads to diſtinguiſh them from the boys. They waſh their heads and hair in water, to make the latter thick and long, and let it hang looſe that the air may dry it; after which they perfume it with an odoriferous oil. When this is done, they ſtroke all the hair backwards from the forehead, and tie it behind in a knot, to which they add a large lock of a man's hair; and the whole is curiouſly ornamented with flowers of various ſorts. The common people have houſes built of cocoa-wood, and covered with leaves ſewed one within another; but the ſuperior ſort build their houſes of ſtone, which is taken from under the flatts and rocks in the following manner: among other trees in this iſland, is one called Candou, exceedingly ſoft, and, when dry, and ſawed into planks, is much lighter than cork: the natives, who are excellent ſwimmers, dive under water, and, having fixed upon a ſtone for that purpoſe, they faſten a ſtrong rope to it: after this, they take a plank of the Candou-wood, which, having a hole bored in it, is put on the rope, and forced down quite to the ſtone: they then run on a number of other boards, till the light wood riſes up to the top, dragging the ſtone along with it. By this contrivance the natives weighed up the cannon and anchors of a French ſhip that was caſt away near their coaſt about a century ago.

The Maldivians, in general, are very polite, particularly thoſe on the iſland of Male; but they are very libidinous, and fornication is not conſidered as any crime; neither muſt any perſon offer inſult to a woman that has been guilty of miſconduct previous to marriage. Every man is allowed to have three wives if he can maintain them, but not more. The girls are marriageable at eight years of age, when they wear an additional covering on their necks: the boys go naked till ſeven, when they are circumciſed, and wear the uſual dreſs of their country afterwards. Theſe people are very abſtemious in their diet, their principal food conſiſting of roots made into meal, and baked; particularly thoſe called nell-pou, and elas, the latter of which they dreſs ſeveral ways: they alſo make a pottage of milk, cocoa, honey, and bread, which they eſteem an excellent diſh; and their common drink is water. They ſit croſs legged at their meals, in the ſame manner as in other eaſtern countries. The floor on which they ſit is covered with a fine mat, and they uſe banana leaves inſtead of table cloths. Their diſhes are chiefly of china, all veſſels of gold, or ſilver, being prohibited by law: they are made round with a cover, over which is a piece of ſilk to keep out the ants. They take up their victuals between their fingers, and in ſo careful a manner as not to let any fall; and if they have occaſion to ſpit, they riſe from the table and walk out. They do not drink till they have finiſhed their meal, for they conſider that as a mark of rudeneſs; and they are very cautious of eating in the preſence of ſtrangers. They have no ſet meals, attending only to the call of nature, and all their proviſions are dreſſed by the women, for to cook is accounted diſgraceful to a man. Being naturally very cleanly, as ſoon as they riſe in the morning they waſh themſelves, rub their eyes with oil, and black their eye-brows. They are alſo very careful in waſhing and cleanſing their teeth, that they may the better receive the ſtain of the betel and areca, which is red, a colour they are particularly fond of. They preſent betel, which they keep always about them, upon occaſional ſalutations, as we do ſnuff.

They have many pagan cuſtoms, though they profeſs the religion of the Mahometans. When they meet with any diſaſter at ſea, they pray to the king of the winds; and there is in every iſland a place, where thoſe who have eſcaped danger make offerings to him of little veſſels made for the purpoſe, in which they put fragrant woods, flowers, and other perfumes, and then turn the veſſel adrift to the mercy of the waves. They dare not ſpit to the windward, for fear of offending this aerial deity; and all the veſſels that are devoted to him, are kept as clean as their moſques. They impute croſſes, ſickneſs, and death to the devil; and in order to pacify him, in a certain place, make him banquets and offerings of flowers. Each of their moſques is ſituated in the centre of a ſquare, and round it they bury their dead: they are very neat buildings, have three doors, each aſcended by a flight of ſteps: the walls within are wainſcoted, and the ceiling is of wood beautifully variegated. The floor is of poliſhed ſtone, covered with mats and tapeſtry; and the ceiling and wainſcoting are firmly joined, without either nails or pegs. Each moſque has its prieſt, who, beſides the duties of his office, teaches the children to read and write the Maldivian language, which is a radical tongue: he alſo inſtructs them in the Arabic tongue, and is rewarded for theſe ſervices by the parents. Thoſe of the people, who are very religious, go to their moſques five times a day; and before they enter it, they waſh their feet, hands, ears, eyes and mouth. They who do not go to the moſque, may ſay their prayers at home; but if they are known to omit doing one or the other, they are treated with the greateſt contempt, and every body avoids their company. They keep their Sabbath on Friday, which is celebrated with great feſtivity; and the ſame is obſerved on the day of every new moon. They have ſeveral other feſtivals in the courſe of the year: the moſt diſtinguiſhed of which is called maulude, and is held in the month of October, on the night of which Mahomet died. On this occaſion a large wooden houſe, or hall, is erected on a particular part of the iſland, the inſide of which is lined with the richeſt tapeſtry. In the middle of the hall is a table covered with various ſorts of proviſions, and round it are hung a prodigious number of lamps, the ſmoke of which gives a moſt fragrant ſcent. The people aſſemble about 8 o'clock in the evening, and are placed by proper officers appointed for that purpoſe, according to their reſpective ſtations. The prieſts, and other eccleſiaſtics ſing till midnight, when the whole aſſembly fall proſtrate on the ground, in which poſture they continue till the chief prieſt riſes, when the reſt follow his example. The people are then ſerved with betel and drink; and when the ſervice is entirely over, each takes a part of the proviſions on the table, and preſerve the ſame, as a ſacred relic, with the utmoſt care. When two perſons enter into the ſtate of marriage, the man gives notice of his deſign to the pandiare, or naybe, who demands of him, if he is willing to have the woman propoſed for his wife: on his anſwering in the affirmative, the pandiare queſtions the parents as to their conſent; if they approve of it, the woman is brought, and the parties are married in the preſence of their relations and friends. After the ceremony is over, the woman is conducted to her huſband's houſe, where ſhe is viſited by her friends, and a grand entertainment is provided on the occaſion. The bridegroom makes preſents to the king, and the bride likewiſe pays the ſame kind of compliment to the queen. The man does not receive any dowry with his bride, and he is not only obliged to pay the expence of the nuptial ceremony, and to maintain her, but he muſt alſo ſettle a jointure upon her, though, if ſhe thinks proper, ſhe may relinquiſh it after marriage. A woman cannot part from her huſband without his conſent; but a man may at any time divorce his wife; however, if her aſſent to the ſeparation is not obtained, ſhe may demand her jointure; yet as this is conſidered as a mean act, it is ſeldom practiſed.

When any one dies, the corpſe is waſhed by one of the ſame ſex, of which there are ſeveral in each iſland appointed for that purpoſe. After this it is wrapped up in cotton, with the right hand placed on the right ear, and the left on the thigh. Then it is laid on the right ſide in a coffin of candou wood, and carried to the place of interment by ſix relations or friends, and followed by the neighbours, who attend without being invited. The grave is covered with a large piece of ſilk, or cotton, which, after the interment, becomes the property of the prieſt. The corpſe is laid in the grave with the face towards Mahomet's tomb: and when depoſited, the grave is filled up with white ſand, ſprinkled with water. In the proceſſion both to and from the grave, the relations ſcatter cowries, for the benefit of the poor, and give pieces of gold and ſilver to the prieſt, according to the circumſtances of the deceaſed. The prieſt ſings continually during the ceremony; and when the whole is over, the relations invite the company to a feaſt. They incloſe their graves with wooden rails, for they conſider it as a ſin for any perſon to walk over them; and they pay ſuch reſpect to the bones of the dead, that no perſons, not even the prieſts, dare to touch them. On this occaſion they make little difference in their habits: the mourners only go bare-headed to the grave, and continue ſo for a few days after the ceremony of the funeral. If a perſon dies at ſea, the body, after being waſhed, is put into a coffin, with a written paper, mentioning his religion, and requeſting thoſe who may meet with the corpſe to give it a decent interment. They then ſing over it, and after having completed their ceremonies, commit it to the waves on a plank of candou wood.

Male, the iſland where the king reſides, is ſituated in the center of the reſt, and is about five miles in circumference. The palace is built of ſtone, and divided into ſeveral courts and apartments; but it is only one ſtory high, and the architecture very inſignificant: however, it is elegantly finiſhed within, and ſurrounded with gardens, in which are fountains and ciſterns of water. The portal is built like a ſquare tower; and on feſtival days the muſicians ſing and play upon the top of it. The ground floors of the reſpective apartments are raiſed three feet, to avoid the ants, and are covered with ſilk-tapeſtry, fringed, and flowered with gold. The king's beds are hung, like hammocks, between two pillars ornamented with gold, and when he lies down his attendants rock him to ſleep. His dreſs is uſually a coat made of fine white cloth or cotton, with white and blue edgings, faſtened with buttons of ſolid gold: under this is a piece of red embroidered tapeſtry that reaches down to his heels, and is faſtened with a large ſilk girdle fringed, with a great gold chain before, and a locket formed of the moſt precious ſtones. On his head he wears a ſcarlet cap, which is a colour ſo eſteemed, that no other perſon may preſume to wear it. This cap is laced with gold, and on the top of it is a large gold button with a precious ſtone. The grandees and ſoldiers wear long hair, but the king's head is ſhaved once a week; he goes bare legged, but wears ſandals of gilt copper, which are worn only by the royal family. When he goes abroad, his dignity is diſtinguiſhed particularly by a white umbrella, which no other perſons, except ſtrangers, are permitted to uſe. He has three pages near his perſon, one of whom carries his fur, another his ſword and buckler, and a third his box of betel and areca, which he almoſt conſtantly chews. He goes to the moſque on Fridays in great pomp, his guards dancing, and ſtriking their ſwords on each others targets to the ſound of muſic; and is attended on his return, by the principal people of the iſland. He either walks, or is carried in a chair by ſlaves, there being no beaſts of burden. When the queen appears in public, ſhe is attended by a great number of female ſlaves, ſome of whom go before, to give notice to the men to keep out of the way; and four ladies carry a veil of white ſilk over her head, that reaches to the ground: on this occaſion, all the women from the ſeveral diſtricts meet her with flowers, fruits, &c. She and her ladies frequently bathe in the ſea for their health, for the convenience of which they have a place on the ſhore cloſe to the water, which is incloſed, and the top of it covered with white cotton. The only light in the chambers of the queen, or thoſe of the ladies of quality, is what lamps afford, which are kept continually burning, it being the cuſtom of the country never to admit day-light. The drawing-room, or that part where they uſually reſide, is blocked up with four or five rows of tapeſtry, the innermoſt of which none muſt lift up till they have coughed, and told their names. The guards appointed to attend on the king's perſon conſiſt of ſix hundred, who are commanded by his grandees; and he has conſiderable magazines of arms, cannon, and ſeveral ſorts of ammunition. His revenues conſiſt chiefly of a number of iſlands, appropriated to the crown, with certain taxes on the various productions of others; in the money paid to purchaſe titles and offices, and for licences to wear fine cloaths. Beſides theſe, he has a claim to all goods imported by ſhipping; for when a veſſel arrives, the king is acquainted with its contents, out of which he takes what he thinks proper, at a low price, and obliges his ſubjects to purchaſe them of him again, at what ſum he pleaſes to fix, by way of exchange, for ſuch commodities as beſt ſuit him. All the ambergris found in this country (which produces more than any other part of the Indies) is alſo the property of the king; and ſo narrowly is it watched, that a perſon would be puniſhed with the loſs of his right hand, if detected in converting it to his own uſe. Moſt of the nobility and gentry live in the north part of this iſland, for the convenience of being near the court; and ſo much is this quarter eſteemed, that when the king baniſhes a criminal, the ſending him to the ſouth is thought to be a ſufficient puniſhment.

The government here is abſolute monarchy, every thing depending on the king's pleaſure. Each attolon, or province, has a naybe, or governor, who is both a prieſt and doctor of the law. He not only preſides over the inferior prieſts, and is veſted with the management of all religious affairs, but he is likewiſe intruſted with the adminiſtration of juſtice, both in civil and criminal caſes. They are in fact ſo many judges, and make four circuits every year throughout their juriſdiction; but they have a ſuperior, called the pandiare, who reſides in the iſle of Male, and who is not only the ſupreme judge of all cauſes, but alſo the head of the church: he receives appeals from the governor of each province, but does not paſs ſentence without conſulting ſeveral learned doctors; and from him appeals are carried to the king, who refers the matter to ſix of his privy council. The pandiare makes a circuit once a year through the iſland of Male (as does every governor in his reſpective province) and condemns all to be ſcourged who cannot ſay their creed and prayers in the Arabic tongue, and conſtrue them in that of the Maldivian. At this time the women muſt not appear in the ſtreet unveiled, on pain of having their hair cut off, and their heads ſhaved, which is very diſgraceful. They have various modes of puniſhment for crimes. If a man is murdered, the wife cannot proſecute the criminal; but if the deceaſed has left any children, the judge obliges him to maintain them till they are of age, when they may either proſecute or pardon the murderer. Stealing any thing valuable is puniſhed with the amputation of a hand, and, for trifling matters, they are baniſhed to the ſouthern iſlands. An adultreſs is puniſhed by having her hair cut off, and thoſe guilty of perjury pay a pecuniary mulct. Notwithſtanding the law makes homicide death, yet a criminal is never condemned to die, unleſs it is expreſsly ordered by the king; in which caſe he orders his own ſoldiers to execute the ſentence.

The chief articles exported from theſe iſlands are cocoa-nuts, cowries, and tortoiſe ſhells, the latter of which is exceeding beautiful, and not to be met with in any other place, except the Philippine Iſlands. The imported articles are, iron, ſteel, ſpices, china, rice, &c. all which, as has been obſerved, are ingroſſed by the king, who ſells them to his ſubjects at his own price. They have only one ſort of money, which is ſilver, called lorrins, each of which is about the value of eight-pence. It is two inches long, and folded, the king's name being ſet upon the folds in Arabic characters. One thouſand two hundred cowries make one lorrin. In their own market they frequently barter one thing for another. Their gold and ſilver is all imported from abroad, and is current here, as in all other parts of the Indies, by weight.

The Maldives are happily placed, with reſpect to each other, for producing mutual commerce, to the reſpective inhabitants; for though the 13 Attolons are in the ſame climate, and all of them very fertile, yet they produce ſuch different commodities, that the people in one cannot live without what is found in another. The inhabitants have likewiſe ſo divided themſelves, as greatly to enhance this commercial advantage; for all the weavers live in one iſland, the goldſmiths in another, and the like of the different manufactures. In order, however, to render the communication eaſy, theſe artificers have ſmall boats, built high on the ſides, in which they work, ſleep, and eat, while ſailing from one iſland to another to expoſe their goods to ſale, and ſometimes they are out a conſiderable time before they return to their fixed habitations.

(5.) Bombay. This is ſeated on an iſland near the weſt coaſt of India, in 19 deg. N. latitude, and in 72 deg. E. longitude. It is an excellent harbour, from whence the Portugueſe, the firſt poſſeſſors of the Europeans, gave it the name of Boonbay, now corruptly called Bombay. The iſland on which it ſtands, is about 20 miles in circumference: the chief town is a mile in length, meanly built: the fort ſtands at a diſtance from it. The iſland is inhabited by Engliſh, Portugueſe, and Moors: there are three or four more ſmall towns on the iſland. The ſoil is barren, and the water bad; they preſerve therefore the rain water in ciſterns; and there is a well of pretty good freſh water about a mile from the town. The king of Portugal transferred this iſland to Charles II. king of England, as part of the portion of the Infanta Katherine, whom he married in the year 1662, and the king afterwards gave it to the Eaſt India Company. The fort has been beſieged both by the Mogul and the Dutch, but neither of them were able to take it. Notwithſtanding Bombay lies within the tropics, yet the climate is not diſagreeable to the conſtitution of Europeans; there being but few days in the courſe of the year, in which the weather is in any extreme. The ſhort hot ſeaſon precedes the periodical return of the rains: the night dews, however, are very dangerous, therefore great care ſhould be taken not to be expoſed to them. If people would but live temperately in this place, they need not be afraid of the climate, which is far healthier than in any other of the European ſettlements; and there are ſome good phyſicians on the iſland. They have wet weather at Bombay about four months in the year, which is commonly introduced by a very violent thunder ſtorm: during this ſeaſon all trading veſſels are laid up. The rains begin about the latter end of May, and continue till September, when the black merchants keep a feſtival, gilding a cocoa-nut, which they conſecrate and commit to the waves. What they abound in moſt is their groves of cocoa-nut trees, their rice fields, and onion grounds. Their gardens alſo produce mangoes, jacks, and other Indian fruits; and they alſo make large quantities of ſalt, with very little trouble, from the ſea-water.

The town or city of Bombay is a mile long, and ſurrounded by a wall or ditch; it has alſo a pretty good caſtle; ſo that it is well ſecured, and eſteemed one of the ſtrongeſt places belonging to our Eaſt India Company. The houſes of the Engliſh conſiſt, in general, of a ground floor, with a court both before and behind, in which are out-houſes and offices. Moſt of the windows are of tranſparent oyſter-ſhells, which admit a tolerable good light. The flooring of their habitations is a ſort of ſtucco, compoſed of ſhells that have been burnt; this they call chunam, which being well tempered, and becoming hard, receives an excellent poliſh. The Engliſh church is a very neat building, ſituate on a pleaſant green, round which are the houſes of the Engliſh; as to thoſe in which the black merchants reſide, they are, in general, ill contrived ſtructures; and the pagodas of the gentoos, are moſt wretched edifices.

The government is entirely Engliſh, ſubordinate to the India Company, who appoint by commiſſion a preſident and council; and the maritime and military force is under the immediate direction of the preſident, who is ſtiled commander in chief. The common ſoldiers are of many nations; but what are called topaſſes, are for the moſt part black, or of a mixed breed from the Portugueſe. There are alſo regular companies of the natives, who are called ſeapoys. Any popiſh prieſt, except a Portugueſe, may officiate in the churches of the three Roman catholic pariſhes, into which Bombay is divided; but the Engliſh formed an objection againſt the Portugueſe, from an apprehenſion that thoſe fathers might have rather too cloſe a connection with others of their own country, in the adjacent ſettlements belonging to their maſter: however, there are no diſputes in this town about profeſſions in religion, all alike being tolerated. Liberty of conſcience, freedom of ſpeech, riches, and honours, diſtinguiſh the people and clime.

Bombay is inhabited by a mixture of all nations; Engliſh, Portugueſe, and Indians, amounting, as it is ſaid, to 50 or 60,000. The preſident of Surat is uſually governor of the place, who has a deputy here, and courts of juſtice, regulated as in England. The governor, when he is upon the iſland, appears in greater ſtate than the governor of Fort St. George, being attended, when he goes abroad, by two troops of Moors and Bandarins, with their ſtandards. The natives, and thoſe who are ſeaſoned to the country, enjoy a tolerable good ſtate of health, and, if they uſe temperance, live to a good old age. Near Bombay are ſeveral iſlands, the chief of which are Butcher's Iſland, Elephanta, and Salſette. The firſt took its name from great numbers of cattle being kept in it for the uſe of Bombay; and the ſecond from the enormous figure of an elephant cut in ſtone, and which, at a diſtance, has the appearance of one alive, the ſtone being exactly of the colour of that quadruped. On this iſland, which is nearly one entire hill, and about three miles in circumference, there is a temple hewn from the rock. This real curioſity is ſupported by two rows of pillars, and is 10 feet high. It is an oblong ſquare, about 80 feet in length, and above 40 in breadth, and its roof is formed of the rock cut flat. At the farther end of this ſingular ſtructure ſtand the figures of two giants, the faces of which, however, have been much mutilated. The Portugueſe, when they became poſſeſſed of this iſland, disfigured and injured theſe pieces of antiquity as much as poſſible. This curious fabric has two doors, which front each other; near one of them are ſeveral images, much disfigured, and there is one image ſtanding erect, with a drawn dagger in one hand, and a child in the other. The other door, which opens on the left-hand, has an area before it; at the upper end of which is a range of pillars, or colonade, adjoining to an apartment ornamented with regular architecture, round the cornices of which are ſome paintings. The whole of this temple differs from all of the moſt antique gentoo-buildings; but with reſpect to the æra when genius and labour produced it, no diſcoveries have yet been made.

Salſette lies northward of Bombay, being about 26 miles long, and 9 broad. Here is a ruinated place called Canara, where are ſeveral caverns in rocks, which conſiderably gratify the curioſity of ſuch Europeans who viſit them. The ſoil is extremely fertile, and great plenty of game is found in this iſland, which, it muſt be acknowledged, is a moſt agreeable ſituation. It was originally comprehended under the regality of Bombay, and of conſequence became the property of the Engliſh crown when Bombay was given to King Charles the ſecond; but the Portugueſe defrauded us of it; they, however, loſt this iſland by the invaſion of the Marattas, who inhabit the continent bordering on Bombay: they are a very formidable tribe of gentoos, who have extended their dominions by dint of arms. Their chief, or king, reſides generally in the mountains of Decan, at a fort called Raree; reported to be the ſtrongeſt place in the univerſe: it is ſo well and powerfully guarded by nature, that no enemy can approach it, being ſurrounded by ſteep, inacceſſible rocks. In this fort the king, or mar-rajah, holds his court, and lives in great ſplendor. He has long been the avowed foe of the Moguls, Subahs, and Nabobs; making war, and concluding treaties, juſt as he thought his intereſt might be beſt promoted. The Marattas are all bred to arms and agriculture: the uſe of the former they learnt from the Europeans, though they depend greatly on their targets, which will turn the ball of a piſtol, and even a muſket from a diſtance. Their ſwords are excellent, with which they do great execution, but their muſkets are very indifferent, Their horſes are ſmall, active, and will go through much fatigue. European arts and manufactures receive little encouragement among theſe people, who prefer thoſe of their own country to the moſt curious that can be ſhewn them from foreign parts.

(6.) In 15 deg. 20 min. N. latitude, and 74 deg. 20 min. E. longitude from London, on an iſland, about 20 miles in length, and ſix in breadth, ſtands the large and ſtrong town of Goa, which is the principal place belonging to the Portugueſe in India: it was taken by them A. D. 1508. It has the convenience of a fine ſalt-water river, capable of receiving ſhips of the greateſt burden, where they lie within a mile of the town. The banks of the river are beautified with a great number of handſome ſtructures, ſuch as caſtles, churches, and gentlemen's houſes. The air without the town is very unwholeſome, for which reaſon it is not ſo well inhabited as formerly. The viceroy's palace is a noble building, and ſtands at a ſmall diſtance from the city, which leads to a ſpacious ſtreet, terminated by a beautiful church. Goa contains a great number of handſome churches, convents, and cloiſters, with a ſtately large hoſpital, all well endowed, and kept in good repair. The market-place takes up an acre of ground; and in the ſhops about it may be had the produce of Europe, Bengal, China, and other countries of leſs note. Every church has a ſet of bells, ſome of which are continually ringing. Their religion is Roman Catholic, and they have a moſt horrid cruel inquiſition. There are a great number of Indian converts, who generally retain ſome of their old cuſtoms, particularly, they cannot be brought to eat beef. However, there are many gentoos in the city, who are tolerated, becauſe they are more induſtrious than the Chriſtians, and better artiſts. The clergy are very numerous, and illiterate; but the churches are finely embelliſhed, and have numbers of images. Their houſes, which are of ſtone, are ſpacious and handſome, and make a fine ſhew; but they are poorly finiſhed within. The inhabitants are contented with greens, roots, and fruit, which, with a little bread, rice, and fiſh, is their only diet, though they have hogs and fowls in plenty. They are much addicted to women, and are generally weak, lean, and feeble. Captain Hamilton, when he was in this iſland, ſtood on a hill near the city, and counted above 80 churches, convents, and monaſteries, and he was told, that there were about 30,000 prieſts and monks. The body of St. Francis Xavier is buried in St. Paul's Church, and, as they pretend, performs a great many miracles. None of the churches, except one, have glaſs windows, for they make uſe of oyſter-ſhells inſtead of glaſs. The town itſelf has few manufactures, or productions, their beſt trade being in arrack, which they diſtil from toddy, the ſap of the cocoa-nut tree. The river's mouth is defended by ſeveral forts and batteries, well planted on both ſides with large cannon; and there are ſeveral other forts in different places. This ſettlement is 250 miles N. by W. of Cochin.

(7.) The iſland of Diu or Dio. This is ſituated in 21 deg. 45 min. N. latitude, and in 68 deg. 55 min. E. longitude; and is three miles long, and two broad. The town, which bears the ſame name, is pretty large, and fortified by a high ſtone wall, with baſtions at convenient diſtances, and well furniſhed with cannon. The harbour is well ſecured by two caſtles, one of which is made uſe of for powder, and other warlike ſtores. It was one of the beſt places in thoſe parts, the ſtructures being built of free ſtone and marble. It contains five or ſix fine churches well embelliſhed within, with images and painting, built by the Portugueſe; but it is much decayed of late years, not one fourth part of it being inhabited. In 1670 it was taken by the Arabs, who plundered all the churches, and other places, of their riches, but were driven away with the loſs of 1000 men. There are not now above 200 Portugueſe inhabitants, for the reſt are Banians, who may amount to 40,000.

(8.) The Johor Iſlands. Theſe lie to the N. E. of Cape Romano, but produce nothing fit for the carrying on of commerce. Pulo Aure, one of them, is peopled by Malays, who are ſaid to form a kind of republic, headed by a chief. In this iſland are ſeveral mountains, on which are many plantations of cocoa-trees. Articles of trade are purchaſed here with iron, and the people have the character of being very honeſt, friendly, and hoſpitable.

(9.) Sincapour, or Sincapora, is an iſland and town, which lie at the ſouthermoſt point of the peninſula of Malacca, and gave name to the S. E. part of Malacca Straits. Here is a mountain which yields excellent diamonds; and ſugar canes grow to a great ſize. The ſoil of Sincapour is fruitful, and the woods produce good timber for ſhip-building.

(10.) Pulo-Condore, the only one inhabited of ſeveral iſlands in the Eaſt India ſea, lying off the coaſt of Cambodia. It is ſituated in 107 deg. 40 min. E. longitude, and 8 deg. 36 min. N. latitude. It is about 13 miles in length, and nine in breadth, but in ſome places not above a mile over. The inhabitants of this iſland are of a middle ſtature, and well ſhaped, but their complexion is exceedingly ſwarthy. Their hair is ſtrait and black, their eyes are remarkably ſmall, and their noſes high: they have thin lips, ſmall mouths, white teeth, and in their diſpoſitions are very courteous. They go almoſt naked, except on particular occaſions, when they are dreſſed in a long garment girded about the waiſt, and ornamented with various coloured ribbands. Their houſes are built of bamboos, covered with long graſs; but they are very ſmall. They are raiſed ſeveral feet from the earth, on account of the dampneſs of the ground; and they have neither doors nor windows; ſo that one ſide is left open as well for convenience of light, as for the entrance of the people. They are very free of their women, and will bring them on board the ſhips, where they are kept by the ſailors while they ſtay. Theſe people are idolaters, but of what kind is not known; however, they have images of elephants in their temples which are mean edifices built of wood: on the ſouth-ſide of the iſland is one of this kind; within it is the figure of an elephant, and without is that of a horſe. The ſoil of this iſland is a blackiſh mould, but the hills are ſomewhat ſtony. The trees are not very thick, but large, tall, and fit for any uſe. The principal fruits are mangoes, a ſort of grapes, and baſtard nutmegs. The animals are hogs and lizards. There are fowls of various kinds, as turtle doves, pigeons, wild cocks and hens, parrots, and parroquets, and ſeveral ſorts of birds, not known in Europe. The ſea produces great plenty of turtles, limpets, and muſcles. The chief employment of the inhabitants is to get tar out of the very large trees that grow here. In 1702, the Engliſh ſettled in this iſland, after the factory of Chuſan, on the coaſt of China, was broke up. However, they continued here but a ſhort time; for having made an agreement with ſome Macaſſars, natives of the iſland of Celebes, to ſerve for ſoldiers, and aſſiſt in building a fort, and not diſcharging them at the end of three years, (for which term they were engaged) they roſe in the night, and murdered every Engliſhman they could find on the iſland. The Engliſh had purchaſed this iſland of the king of Cambodia, to whom, after this event, it again reverted. Few remains of the fort are now ſtanding, it having been for the moſt part demoliſhed. There are ſeveral other ſmall iſlands in theſe ſeas, namely,

(1.) Pulo-Dinding, near the continent of Malacca, which belongs to the Dutch where they have a fort.

(2.) Pulo-Timon, on the eaſtern coaſt of the peninſula of Malacca, in 3 deg. 12 min. N. latitude, and 105 deg. 40 min. E. longitude. It is pretty large, covered with trees, and the valleys are very pleaſant. It is often touched at for wood, water, and other refreſhments, and there is great plenty of green turtles.

(3.) Pulo-Way, near the iſland of Sumatra: it is ſituated in 5 deg. 40 min. N. lat. and in 21 deg. 47 min. E. long. It is the largeſt of all thoſe iſlands which form the entrance of the channel of Achem, and is peopled by culprits who are baniſhed from thence.

(4.) Puna, 120 miles north of Patay. It lies at the entrance of the bay of Guiaquil, in 3 deg. 15 min. S. latitude, and 100 deg. 5 min. W. longitude.

Having given this copious, geographical, deſcriptive, and hiſtorical account of the moſt remarkable iſlands in the Indian ſea, we ſhall now return to the Swallow Sloop, which we left at anchor off Prince's Iſland, in the ſtrait of Sunda.

Friday the 25th of September, we weighed, and got under ſail; for we could not get a ſufficient quantity of wood and water at Prince's Iſland to complete our ſtock, the wet monſoon having but juſt ſet in, and conſequently not rain enough had fell to ſupply the ſprings. We would have departed from this part of the iſland ſooner, but we had the wind freſh from the S. E. which made a lee ſhore; but it being this day in our favour, and more moderate, we worked over to the Java ſhore. We anchored in the evening, in a bay called by ſome New, and by others Canty Bay, which is formed by an iſland of the ſame name. In theſe parts New Bay is the beſt place for wooding and watering; the water being ſo clear and excellent, that, in order to get a freſh ſupply, we ſtaved all that had been taken on board at Batavia and Prince's Iſland. It is to be had from a fine ſtrong run on the Java ſhore, which falls down from the land into the ſea, and by means of a horſe it may be laded into the boats, and the caſks filled without putting them on ſhore, which renders the work very eaſy and expeditious. There is a ſmall reef of rocks within which the boats go, not in the leaſt dangerous, and the boats lie in as ſmooth water, and as effectually ſheltered from any ſwell, as if they were in a mill-pond; and if a ſhip, when lying here, ſhould be driven from her anchors by a wind that blows upon the ſhore, ſhe may, with the greateſt eaſe, run up the paſſage between New Iſland and Java, where there is ſufficient depth of water for the largeſt veſſel, and a harbour, in which, being land locked, ſhe will find perfect ſecurity. Wood may be procured any where, either upon Java or New Iſland, neither of which at this part are inhabited. In our preſent ſtation, we had 14 fathoms water, with a fine ſandy bottom. The peak of Prince's Iſland bore N. 13 W. The weſtermoſt point of New Iſland S. 82 W. and the eaſtermoſt point of Java that was in ſight, N. E. We were diſtant from the Java ſhore a mile and a quarter, and from the watering-place a mile and a half. In a few days having completed our wood and water, we weighed, and ſtood out of the ſtrait of Sunda, with a fine freſh gale at S. E. which continued till we were diſtant from the iſland of Java 700 leagues.

On Monday the 23rd of November, we had in view the coaſt of Africa; on the 28th, at day-break, we made the land of the Cape of Good Hope; and, in the evening, caſt anchor in Table Bay. Here we found only a Dutch ſhip from Europe, and a ſnow belonging to the cape, which was in the company's ſervice, for the inhabitants are not permitted to have any ſhipping. This bay, in ſummer, is a good harbour, but not in winter; on which account the Dutch veſſels lay here no longer than the 15th of November, after which they go to Falſe Bay, where they are ſheltered from the N. W. winds, which blow here with great violence. At this place we breathed a pure air, had wholeſome food, went freely about the country, which is exceeding pleaſant; and found the inhabitants hoſpitable and polite; there being ſcarcely a gentleman, either in a public or private ſtation, from whom we did not receive ſome civility; and Captain Carteret obſerves, "he ſhould ill deſerve the favours they beſtowed, if he did not particularly mention the firſt and ſecond governor, and the fiſcal." We continued near ſix weeks at the cape, in order to recover our ſick.

A. D. 1769.

On Wedneſday the 20th of January, in the evening, we ſet ſail, and before it was dark cleared the land. After a fine and pleaſant paſſage, on Wedneſday the 20th, we anchored off the iſland of St. Helena, from whence we again ſailed on Sunday the 24th. On Saturday the 30th, we came in ſight of the N. E. part of Aſcenſion Iſland, and early in the morning ran in cloſe to it. We ſent out a boat to diſcover the anchoring place, and in the afternoon came to an anchor in Croſs Hill Bay. To find this place, bring the largeſt and moſt conſpicuous hill upon the iſland to bear S. E. When the ſhip is in this poſition, the bay will be open, right in the middle between two other hills, the weſtermoſt of which is called Croſs Hill, and gives name to the bay. A flag-ſtaff is upon this hill, which, if a ſhip brings to bear S. S. E. half E. or S. E. by E. and runs in, keeping ſo till ſhe is in 10 fathom water, ſhe will be in the beſt part of the bay. In our run along the N. E. ſide of the iſland, we obſerved ſeveral other ſmall ſandy bays, in ſome of which our boat found good anchorage, and ſaw plenty of turtle. At this place, where we lay, they alſo abound. In the evening we landed a few men to turn the turtle, that ſhould come on ſhore during the night, and in the morning they had ſecured 18, from 4 to 600 weight each. There being no inhabitants on this iſland, we, according to a uſual cuſtom, left a letter in a bottle, with our names, and deſtination, the date, and a few other particulars.

On Monday the 1ſt of February, we weighed, and ſet ſail. On the 19th, we came in ſight of a ſhip, in the ſouth quarter, which hoiſted French colours; and on Saturday the 20th, ſhe tacked in order to ſpeak with us. Her commander, we, after ſhe had left us, found to be M. de Bougainville, whoſe frequent traces of the Engliſh navigators had very remarkably occurred in the courſe of the three voyages, which they made round the world. This gentleman made a voyage to Faulkland's iſlands, called by the French, after the Dutch, Mauritius, in the year 1765, and was ſeen by commodore Byron, in the ſtraits of Magellan, as we have related in our hiſtory of that voyage. Soon after his return home, he ſailed from port L'Orient, in November 1766, on board the Bourdeuſe frigate, attended by the Etoile ſloop, on a voyage of diſcovery, and to encompaſs the world: but being baffled in his attempts to paſs the ſtraits of Magellan, he returned to the eaſtern coaſt of South America, and wintered at Buenos Ayres. On the return of the ſeaſon, he renewed his attempt with better ſucceſs, touched at the iſland of Juan Fernandez, where he ſtayed two months, followed Captain Wallis and Captain Carteret, in the manner already related, and, by ſucceſsfully completing his deſign, became the firſt native of France, who had gone round the world, at leaſt in one continued voyage. At this time he was on his return in the Bourdeuſe, having left the Etoile at the Mauritius: he had alſo touched at the iſland of Aſcenſion; and after having hailed us, ſent an officer on board, in order to receive ſome letters, which were to be conveyed to France, who, under colour of general converſation, endeavoured to obtain information concerning the route and incidents of our voyage, while by a ſtring of plauſible fictions he concealed their own; but Captain Carteret could not be brought to be communicative, ſo that all the endeavours of the Frenchman proved fruitleſs: on the other hand, the crew of the boat in which the officer had arrived ſoon imparted all they knew to thoſe of our ſailors who converſed with them. Capt. Carteret obſerves very juſtly on this tranſaction, "that an artful attempt to draw him into a breach of his obligation to ſecrecy, whilſt the French commander impoſed a fiction, that he might not violate his own, was neither liberal nor juſt."

We had now a freſh gale, and all our ſails ſet, when the French ſhip, though foul from a long voyage, and we had been juſt cleaned, ſhot by us as if we had been at anchor. On Sunday, the 7th of March, we paſſed between the weſtern iſlands of St. Michael and Tercera. As we proceeded farther to the weſtward, the gale increaſed, and on the 11th it blew very hard from W. N. W. with a great ſea, which blew our fore-ſail all to pieces, before we could get the yard down; this obliged us to bring to; and having bent a new ſail, we bore away again. On Tueſday the 16th, we were in latitude 49 deg. 15 min. north, and on the 18th, we found ourſelves by the depth of water in the channel. The next day we had a view of the Start-Point; and on the 20th after a fine paſſage, and a fair wind from the Cape of Good Hope, to our great joy, the Swallow came to an anchor at Spithead: and to what can we aſcribe her arriving ſafe at laſt, after having gone through, apparently, inſurmountable difficulties, but to the merciful interpoſition of a particular Providence. In following her and her brave crew, through this voyage, our aſtoniſhment is excited, not ſo much at the number and importance of the diſcoveries made, but that ſuch wants, ſuch embaraſſments, and ſuch dangers, as theſe neglected and devoted people had to encounter, ſhould have been overcome, in a ſhip that had been thirty years in the ſervice! It is alſo no leſs ſurpriſing, how it came to paſs, that ſo able and gallant an officer ſhould have been ſo cruelly treated, when ſent upon a ſervice, which, in almoſt every other inſtance, has been particularly attended to, and received the moſt ample ſupplies: and, to conclude, if we conſider the many impediments which lay in the way of Captain Carteret, beyond what any other navigator had to ſtruggle with, we muſt acknowledge that this voyage does great honour to him as the conductor of it: indeed this ſenſible officer ſeems to have been animated with the true ſpirit of diſcovery, and to have poſſeſſed ſuch an uncommon ſhare of fortitude and perſeverance, as nothing ſhort of death could ſubdue.

A
NEW, AUTHENTIC, and COMPLETE ACCOUNT and NARRATIVE, of
A VOYAGE Towards the NORTH POLE,
UNDERTAKEN and PERFORMED
By the Hon. Com. PHIPPS, (now Lord MULGRAVE),
In his Majeſty's Ship the RACEHORSE, accompanied by
Capt. LUTWYCH in the CARCASE SLOOP.

TO WHICH IS PREFIXED,
A genuine Account of the ſeveral Voyages undertaken for the Diſcovery of a
NORTH-EAST Paſſage to CHINA and JAPAN.

INTRODUCTION.

IT is fortunate for commerce, and the intercourſe of nations, that there is implanted in man's nature a deſire of novelty, which no preſent gratification can ſatisfy; that when he has viſited one region of the earth, he is ſtill, like Alexander, ſighing for another to explore; and that, after having eſcaped one danger in his progreſs, he is no leſs eager to encounter others, that may chance to obſtruct him in the courſe of his purſuits.

If the hiſtory of former hardſhips could have deterred men from engaging in new adventures, the voyage, the particulars of which we are now about to relate, would probably never have been undertaken. The dreary regions that ſurround the poles are ſo little accuſtomed to feel the kindly influences of the enlivening ſun, and are ſo deſtitute of the ordinary productions of the earth in happier climates, that little leſs than one whole quarter of the globe is, by its ſterility, rendered uninhabitable by human beings, and but thinly occupied by a very inconſiderable number of the race of quadrupedes. The many and almoſt inſuperable difficulties that muſt therefore be expected in traverſing theſe forlorn deſarts, where no relief is to be expected, but from the favourable interpoſition of that power, whoſe merciful providence extends to the remoteſt corners of the earth, are, upon reflection, enough to cool the ardour of the moſt enterpriſing, and to ſtagger the reſolution of the moſt intrepid.

In the contention between powers, equally formed by nature to meet an oppoſition, it may be glorious to overcome; but to encounter raging ſeas, tremendous rocks, and bulwarks of ſolid ice, and deſperately to perſiſt in attempts to prevail againſt ſuch formidable enemies; as the conflict is hopeleſs, ſo the event is certain. The hardieſt and moſt ſkilful navigator, after expoſing himſelf and his companions to the moſt perilous dangers, and ſuffering in proportion to his hardineſs the moſt complicated diſtreſſes, muſt at laſt ſubmit to return home without ſucceſs, or periſh in his perſeverance.

This obſervation will be ſufficiently juſtified, by a brief recapitulation of the voyages that have been undertaken, with a view to the diſcovery of a north-eaſt paſſage to China and Japan.

The firſt who attempted this diſcovery was Sir Hugh Willoughby, with three ſhips, ſo early as the year 1553, the æra of perilous enterprizes. This gentleman ſailed to the latitude of 75 degrees north, within ſight, as it is imagined, of New Greenland, now called Spitſbergen; but by a ſtorm was driven back, and obliged to winter in the river Arzena, in Lapland, where he was frozen to death with all his company. He left upon his table a conciſe account of all his diſcoveries, in which he mentions, having ſailed within ſight of a country in a very high latitude, about which geographers are divided; ſome affirming, as has been ſaid, that it could be no other than New Greenland, afterwards diſcovered, and named by the Dutch Spitſbergen; others, that what he ſaw was only a fog-bank; and of this latter opinion is Capt. Wood, an able navigator, of whom we ſhall have occaſion to ſpeak hereafter.

To Sir Hugh Willoughby ſucceeded Captain Burroughs, afterwards Comptroller of the Navy to Queen Elizabeth. This gentleman attempted the paſſage with better fortune, and returned full of hope, but without ſucceſs. He paſſed the North cape in 1556, advanced as far north as the 78th deg. diſcovered the Wygate, or ſtrait that divides Nova Zembla from the country of the Sammoyds, now ſubject to Ruſſia: and having paſſed the eaſtermoſt point of that ſtrait, arrived at an open ſea, from whence he returned, having, as he imagined, diſcovered the paſſage ſo painfully ſought, and ſo ardently deſired. Some affirm, his diſcoveries extended beyond the 80th deg. of latitude, to a country altogether deſolate, where the mountains were blue and the valleys ſnow.

Be that as it may, the favourable report of Captain Borroughs encouraged Queen Elizabeth to fit out two ſtout veſſels to perfect the diſcovery. The command of theſe ſhips was given to the Captains Jackman and Pett, who, in 1580, ſailed through the ſame ſtrait, that had been diſcovered by Burroughs, and entered the eaſtern ſea; where the ice poured in ſo faſt upon them, and the weather became ſo tempeſtuous, that after enduring incredible hardſhips, and ſuſtaining the moſt dreadful ſhocks of ice and ſeas, terrible even in the relation, they were driven back and ſeparated; and neither Pett nor his ſhip or crew were ever heard of afterwards.

After this diſaſter and diſappointment, the deſire of viſiting the frozen ſeas to the N. E. began to abate among the Engliſh, but was aſſumed by the Dutch with an obſtinate perſeverance, peculiar to that phlegmatic nation. The firſt Dutchman we read of who made the attempt was John Cornelius, of whoſe voyage, in 1595, we have but a very imperfect account; he was followed however in 1606 by William Barrans, or, as ſome write, Barents, an able and experienced ſeaman and mathematician, who being ſupplied with every neceſſary for ſo hazardous a voyage, by the generoſity and patronage of prince Maurice, proceeded in the ſame courſe which had been pointed out to him by the Engliſh navigators; but having paſſed the Wygate, found the like incumbrances, and the like tempeſts which the Engliſh had experienced; and not being able to bear up againſt them, returned thoroughly convinced, that the wiſhed-for paſſage was not to be attained in that direction. However, he traverſed the coaſt of Nova Zembla, gave names to ſeveral promontories and head-lands, and planned to himſelf a new courſe to ſteer, by which he hoped to accompliſh what he had failed in diſcovering, by following the ſteps of thoſe who had gone before him.

In 1607, animated rather than diſcouraged by diſappointment, he entered upon his ſecond voyage, with the ſpirit of a man fully prepoſſeſſed with ſucceſs. He had heard, that ſome of the whalers, who had now begun to frequent the north ſeas, had, either by deſign or accident, advanced much farther to the northward than thoſe who had been purpoſely fitted out upon diſcoveries; he therefore determined to ſteer to the northward of Nova Zembla, till he ſhould arrive at the height of the pole, under which he was perſuaded he ſhould find an open ſea; and by changing his courſe to the ſouthward, avoid thoſe obſtructions which had retarded his paſſage to the N. E.

In this hope he continued till he arrived on the coaſt of Nova Zembla, where, before he had reached the 77th deg. he was ſo rudely attacked by the mountains of ice, that every where aſſailed him, that not being able to withſtand their fury, he was driven againſt the rocks, and his ſhip daſhed to pieces. Barents and the greateſt part of his crew got ſafe to land, but it was to experience greater miſery than thoſe underwent who periſhed in the attempt. They were obliged to winter in a country, where no living creature beſides themſelves appeared to have exiſtence; and where, notwithſtanding their utmoſt efforts to preſerve their bodies from the cold, the fleſh periſhed upon the bones of ſome of them, and others died of the moſt excruciating pains.

In this extremity, and notwithſtanding the anguiſh they endured, thoſe who ſurvived had ſtill the fortitude and ingenuity to frame a pinnace from the wreck of their broken ſhip, in which, at the approach of ſummer, they made ſail for Lapland; but before they arrived at Colu, their Captain died, and with him the hopes of perfecting his diſcovery.

It was now the active ſeaſon for naval enterprizes. Private adventurers began to fit out ſhips for the north ſeas. Innumerable ſea animals had been obſerved to baſk upon the ice; the tuſks of whoſe jaws were found to excel, in whiteneſs, the fineſt ivory, and their carcaſes to yield plenty of excellent oil. In the infancy of the whale fiſhery, theſe were purſued with the ſame eagerneſs, with which both the Engliſh and Dutch endeavour at this day to make the whales their prey, and perhaps with no leſs profit. In following theſe, many iſlands were diſcovered to which they reſorted, and, in courſe of time, the ſeas that were ſo formidable to the firſt diſcoverers, became frequented at the proper ſeaſons by the ſhips of every nation.

Foreign navigators, however, were more ſanguine in their notions of a N. W. paſſage, than of the exiſtence of a paſſage to the N. E. and it was not till many unſucceſsful trials had been made to diſcover the former, that the latter was again attempted. The celebrated Hudſon, who diſcovered the ſtraits that lead to the great weſtern bay, which ſtill bears his name; after he had exerted his ſkill in vain to find a paſſage weſtward, was perſuaded at laſt to undertake a voyage in ſearch of a paſſage to the N. E. This he performed in 1610, but being diſcouraged by the miſcarriages of others, and the fatal iſſue that had attended their obſtinate perſeverance, on viewing the face of the country, examining the currents, and traverſing an immenſe continent of ice, that ſtretched along the ocean, in a direction from E. S. E. to W. N. W. he concluded, that no paſſage could be practicable in that direction, and therefore returned without making any other material diſcovery.

From this time till the year 1676, the proſecution of this diſcovery was totally neglected by the Engliſh; and though the Dutch whalers amuſed the world with wonderful relations of their near approach to the pole, yet little credit was given to their reports till the arrival of one John Wood, who had accompanied Sir John Narborough in his voyage to the South Sea, with a view to eſtabliſh a new trade with the Chilians, and natives of that vaſt tract of country, reaching from the ſtraits of Magellan to the confines of Peru.

This able and enterprizing navigator, being himſelf an excellent mathematician and geographer, and reading in the Philoſophical Tranſactions a paper, by which the exiſtence of a N. E. paſſage to the eaſtern or Indian ocean was plauſibly aſſerted, and this exactly coinciding with his own notions of the conſtruction of the globe, he was induced, by this and other reaſons, to apply to king Charles II. for a commiſſion to proſecute the diſcovery; the accompliſhment whereof, it was ſaid, would add to the glory of his majeſty's reign, and immenſely to the wealth and proſperity of his kingdoms.

Many about the court of that needy prince, hoping to ſhare in the profits of the voyage, were earneſt in prevailing with his majeſty to forward the deſign, who being himſelf fond of novelty, ordered the Speedwell frigate to be fitted out at his own charge, manned, victualled, and provided with every neceſſary; while the duke, his brother, and ſeven other courtiers, joined in the purchaſe of a pink of 120 tons, to accompany her, which they likewiſe manned and victualled, and furniſhed with merchandizes, ſuch as were thought marketable on the coaſts of Tartary or Japan; the countries they moſt probably would firſt fall in with after their paſſage through the north ſea.

Theſe ſhips being in readineſs, and commiſſions made out for their commanders, Captain Wood was appointed to direct the expedition, on board the Speedwell, and Captain Flawes to bear him company on board the Proſperous.

On the 28th of May 1676, they ſailed from the Buoy of the Nore, with the wind at S. W. and on the 4th of June caſt anchor off Lerwick, in Braſſey Sound, where they continued ſix days, to take in water and recruit their ſtores.

On Saturday the 10th, they weighed anchor and continued their voyage; and on the 15th they entered the polar circle, where the ſun at that ſeaſon of the year never ſets. At noon the Speedwell broke her main-top-ſail-yard in the ſlings, the firſt diſaſter that had happened, which, however, was eaſily repaired. The weather now began to grow hazey, a circumſtance that frequently happens in the polar regions, and darkens the air with the obſcurity of night.

From this time till June 22, when they fell in with the ice in latitude 75 deg. 59 min. N. nothing material occurred. On that day, at noon, they obſerved a continent of ice ſtretching to an imperceptible diſtance, in a direction from E. S. E. and W. N. W. They bore away along the ice till the 28th, when they found it join to the land of Nova Zembla.

On the 29th, they ſtood away to the ſouth, to get clear of the ice; but unfortunately found themſelves embayed in it. At 11 at night the Proſperous bore down upon the Speedwell, crying out, ice upon the weather-bow, on which the Speedwell clapt the helm hard a-weather, and veered out the main-ſail to ware the ſhip; but before ſhe could be brought to on the other tack, ſhe ſtruck on a ledge of rocks, and ſtuck faſt. They fired guns of diſtreſs,

treſs, but were not heard, and the fog being ſo thick, that land could not be diſcerned, though cloſe to the ſtern of their ſhip; no relief was now to be expected, but from providence and their own endeavours. In ſuch a ſituation, no deſcription can equal the relation of the Captain himſelf, who, in the language of the times, has given the following full and pathetic account.

“Here, ſays he, we lay beating upon the rock in a moſt frightful manner, for the ſpace of three or four hours, uſing all poſſible means to ſave the ſhip, but in vain; for it blew ſo hard, that it was wholly out of our power to carry out an anchor capable to do us any ſervice. At length we ſaw land cloſe under our ſtern, to the great amazement of us all, which before we could not ſee for the foggy weather; ſo I commanded the men to get out the boats before our maſt came by the board, which was done. I ſent the boatſwain towards the ſhore in the pinnace, to ſee if there was any poſſibility of landing, which I much feared, becauſe the ſea ran ſo high. In half an hour he returned with this anſwer, that it was impoſſible to land a man, the ſnow being in high cliffs, the ſhore was inacceſſible. This was bad tidings; ſo then it was high time to think on the ſafety of our ſouls, and we went altogether to prayers, to beſeech God to have mercy on us, for now nothing but individual ruin appeared before our eyes. After prayers, the weather cleared up a little, and looking over the ſtern, I ſaw a ſmall beach directly with the ſtern of the ſhip, where I thought there might be ſome chance of getting on ſhore. I therefore ſent off the pinnace a ſecond time, with ſome men in her to be firſt landed, but ſhe durſt not venture to attempt the beach. I then ordered out the long-boat with twenty men to land, who attempted it, and got ſafe on ſhore. They in the pinnace ſeeing that, followed, and landed their men likewiſe, and both veſſels returned to the ſhip without any accident. The men on ſhore deſired ſome fire arms and ammunition, for there were many bears in ſight. I therefore ordered two barrels of powder, ſome ſmall arms, ſome proviſions, with my own papers and money, to be put on board the pinnace; but as ſhe put off from the ſhip's ſide, a ſea overſet her, ſo that all was loſt, with the life of one man, and ſeveral others taken up for dead. The pinnace likewiſe was daſhed to pieces, to our great ſorrow, as by that diſaſter, one means of eſcaping from this diſmal country, in caſe the Proſperous deſerted us, was cut off. The long-boat being on board, and the ſea running high, the boatſwain and ſome others would compel me and the Lieutenant to leave the ſhip, ſaying it was impoſſible for her to live long in that ſea, and that they had rather be drowned than I; but deſiring me when I came on ſhore, if it were poſſible, to ſend the boat again for them. Before we got half way to ſhore the ſhip overſet, ſo making all poſſible haſte to land the men we had on board, I went off to the ſhip again, to ſave thoſe poor men who had been ſo kind to me before. With great hazard I got to the quarter of the ſhip, and they came down the ladder into the boat, only one man was left behind for dead, who had before been caſt away in the pinnace; ſo I returned to the ſhore, though very wet and cold. We then hauled up the boat, and went up the land about a flight ſhot, where our men were making a fire and a tent with canvaſs and oars, which we had ſaved for that purpoſe, in which we all lay that night wet and weary. The next morning the man we left on board having recovered, got upon the mizen-maſt, and prayed to be taken on ſhore, but it blew ſo hard, and the ſea ran ſo high, that tho' he was a very pretty ſailor, none would venture to bring him off.

“The weather continuing blowing with extreme fogs, and with froſt and ſnow, and all the ill-compacted weather that could be imagined put together, we built more tents to preſerve ourſelves; and the ſhip breaking in pieces, came all on ſhore to the ſame place where we landed, which ſerved us for ſhelter and firing. Beſides, there came to us ſome hogſheads of flour, and brandy in good ſtore, which was no little comfort in our great extremity. We now lay between hope and deſpair, praying for fair weather, that Captain Flawes might find us, which it was impoſſible for him ever to do while the weather continued foggy; but fearing at the ſame time that he might be caſt away as well as we.

“But ſuppoſing we never were to ſee him again, I was reſolved to try the utmoſt to ſave as many as I could in the long-boat. In order thereunto we raiſed her two feet, and laid a deck upon her to keep the ſea out as much as poſſible; and with this boat, and thirty men, for ſhe would carry no more, I intended to row and ſail to Ruſſia, but the crew not being ſatisfied who ſhould be the men, began to be very unruly in their mind and behaviour, every one having as much reaſon to ſave himſelf as another, ſome holding conſultation to ſave the boat, and all to run the like fortune; but here brandy was our beſt friend, for it kept the men always fox'd, ſo that in all their deſigns I could prevent them. Some were in the mind to go by land, but that I knew was impoſſible to any man; neither had we proviſions nor ammunition to defend us from the wild beaſts; ſo the paſſage by land being impracticable, and no paſſage by ſea to be attempted till forty men were deſtroyed, I will leave it to the conſideration of any, whether we were not in a moſt deplorable condition, without the interpoſition of divine providence.

“The weather continued ſtill very bad, with fogs, ſnow, rain, and froſt, till the 9th day of our being on ſhore, which was the 8th day of July, when in the morning it cleared up, and to our great joy one of our people cried out “a ſail,” which proved Captain Flawes; ſo we ſet fire to our town, that he might ſee where we were, which he preſently diſcovered, ſo came up, and ſent his boat to us; but before I went off, I wrote a brief relation of the intention of the voyage, with the accident that had befallen us, and put it into a glaſs bottle, and left it in the fortification I had there built; ſo by twelve o'clock we all got ſafe on board, but left all on ſhore that we had ſaved from the ſhip; for we much feared it would prove foggy again, and that we ſhould be driven once more on this miſerable country; a country, for the moſt part, covered perpetually with ſnow, and what is bare being like bogs, on whoſe ſurface grows a kind of moſs, bearing a blue and yellow flower, the whole product of the earth in this deſolate region. Under the ſurface, about two feet deep, we came to a firm body of ice, a thing never heard of before; and againſt the ice-cliffs, which are as high as either of the fore-lands in Kent, the ſea has waſhed underneath, and the arch overhanging, moſt fearful to behold, ſupports mountains of ſnow, which, I believe, hath lain there ever ſince the creation.”

Thus far in Captain Wood's own words. He adds, that by the tides ſetting directly in upon the ſhore, it may be affirmed with certainty, that there is no paſſage to the northward. One thing remarkable in his relation, and which ſeems to contradict the report of former navigators, is, that the ſea is there ſalter than he had yet taſted it elſewhere, and the cleareſt in the world, for that he could ſee the ſhells at the bottom, though the ſea was four hundred and eighty feet deep.

Being all embarked on board the Proſperous, on the 9th of July they changed their courſe, and ſteered for England; and, on the 23rd of Auguſt, they arrived ſafe in the Thames, without any remarkable accident intervening.

After the miſcarriage of this voyage, on which the higheſt expectations had been formed, the moſt experienced navigators in England ſeemed to agree, that a paſſage by the N. or N. E. had no exiſtence. They were the more confirmed in this error, for an error it is, by the reaſons aſſigned by Captain Wood, for changing his opinion on this matter; for, before he went upon the diſcovery, he was fully perſuaded himſelf, and likewiſe perſuaded many others, that nothing was more certain. When, however, he firſt ſaw the ice, he imagined it was only that which joined to Greenland, and that no ſolid body of ice extended farther from land than twenty leagues; in this perſuaſion he altered his courſe, and coaſted along in the direction in which the ice lay, expecting, at every cape or head-land of ice, after running a certain diſtance, to find an opening into the Polar ocean; but after running two or three glaſſes to the northward in one bay, he found himſelf entangled in another; and thus it continued till his ſhip was wrecked. By this experiment, he found the opinion of Barents confuted, namely, "that by ſteering the middle courſe between Spitſbergen and Nova Zembla, an open ſea might be attained, in which a ſhip might ſafely ſail as far as the pole." From his own experience, he therefore pronounced, that all the Dutch relations were forgeries which aſſerted, that any man had ever been under the pole; verily believing, that if there be no land to the northward of 80 degrees, that the ſea is there frozen, and always continues ſo; and grounding his opinion upon this remark, that if the body of ice which he ſaw were to be conveyed ten degrees more to the ſouthward, many centuries of years would elapſe before it would be melted.

To this poſitive aſſertion, however, may be oppoſed, the teſtimony of many credible perſons, ſome of whom have themſelves ſailed beyond the 80th degree of north latitude, and others upon evidence whoſe veracity there is no reaſonable cauſe to bring in queſtion.

Among the latter, the teſtimony of Mr. Joſeph Moxon, member of the Royal Society of London, muſt have conſiderable weight. In a paper which this gentleman cauſed to be printed in the Philoſophical Tranſactions, is this remarkable relation.

"Being about twenty years ago in Amſterdam, I went into a public houſe to drink a cup of beer for my thirſt; and ſitting by the public fire, among ſeveral people, there happened a ſeaman to come in, who ſeeing a friend of his there, who he knew went the Greenland voyage, wondered to ſee him, becauſe it was not yet time for the Greenland fleet to come home, and aſked him, what accident had brought him home ſo ſoon? His friend (who was the ſteerſman) anſwered, that their ſhips went not out to fiſh, but only to take in the lading of the fleet, to bring it to an early market. But, ſaid he, before the fleet had caught fiſh enough to lade us, we, by order of the Greenland Company, ſailed unto the north pole, and came back again. Whereupon, ſays Moxon, I entered into diſcourſe with him, and ſeemed to queſtion the truth of what he ſaid; but he did aſſure me it was true, and that the ſhip was then in Amſterdam, and many of the ſeamen belonging to her ready to juſtify the truth of it; and told me, moreover, that they had ſailed two degrees beyond the pole. I aſked him, if they found no land or iſlands about the pole? He anſwered, no; there was a free and open ſea. I aſked him, if they did not meet with a great deal of ice? He told me, no; they ſaw no ice about the pole. I aſked him, what weather they had there? He told me, fine warm weather, ſuch as was at Amſterdam in the ſummer-time, and as hot. I ſhould have aſked him more queſtions, but that he was engaged in diſcourſe with his friend, and I could not, in modeſty, interrupt them longer. But I believe the ſteerſman ſpoke truth; for he ſeemed a plain, honeſt, and unaffectatious perſon, and one who could have no deſign upon me."

To authenticate this relation it has been obſerved, that under the poles, the ſun in June being 23 degrees high, and having little or no depreſſion towards the horizon, always, as it were, ſwimming about in the ſame elevation, might invigorate that part of the hemiſphere with more heat than he does our climate; when he is, in the winter, no more than 15 degrees at the higheſt, and but eight hours above the horizon; in which ſpace the earth has time to cool, and to loſe, in the night, the influences of heat which it receives in the day.

Another report upon like evidence was made to King Charles the Second, by Captain Goulden, who being a Greenland whaler himſelf, ſpoke with two Hollanders in the North Seas, that had ſailed within one degree of the pole, where they met with no ice, but a hollow grown ſea, like that in the Bay of Biſcay.

A ſtill more credible teſtimony is, that about the year 1670, application being made to the ſtates general for a charter to incorporate a company of merchants to trade to Japan and China, by a new paſſage to the north eaſt; the then Eaſt India Company oppoſed it, and that ſo effectually, that their High Mightineſſes refuſed to grant what the merchants requeſted.

At that time it was talked of in Holland, as a matter of no difficulty to ſail to Japan by the way of Greenland; and it was publickly aſſerted and believed, that ſeveral Dutch ſhips had actually done it. The merchants being required to verify this fact, deſired that the journals of the Greenland ſquadron of 1655 might be produced; in ſeven of which there was notice taken of a ſhip which that year had ſailed as high as the latitude of 89; and three journals of that ſhip being produced, they all agreed, as to one obſervation taken by the maſter, Auguſt 1, 1655, in 88 degrees 56 minutes north.

But a proof inconteſtible, is the teſtimony of Captain Hudſon, who ſailed in 1670 to the latitude of 81 deg. 30 min. north, where he arrived on the 16th of July, the weather being then pretty warm.

Add to all theſe, that the Dutch, who were employed in 1670, in endeavouring to find a N. E. paſſage, advanced within a very few degrees of that open ſea, which is now commonly navigated by the Ruſſians, and which would infallibly have brought them to the coaſts of China and Japan, had they perſevered in the courſe they were purſuing.

It does not appear, however, from any authentic accounts that we can collect, that any voyage, profeſſedly for the diſcovery of a N. E. paſſage, has been undertaken by either public or private adventurers in England, ſince that of Captain Wood in the year 1676, till the preſent year: and it is more than probable, that if the Ruſſian diſcoveries on the north of Aſia had never taken place, the thoughts of finding a practicable paſſage from Europe in that direction, would have lain dormant for ever.

But the vaſt and enterprizing genius of Peter the Great, in forcing his ſubjects out of that obſcurity in which they had long been involved, has opened to the maritime powers new ſources of commerce, and furniſhed freſh motives for new enterprizes. From a people unacquainted with a veſſel bigger than a bark, and who knew no navigation but that of their own rivers, that wonderful Prince not only taught them the uſe of ſhips, but inſtructed them in the true principles of building and equipping them. Nay, he did more; for after making himſelf known and admired throughout Europe, he conceived the deſign of opening a communication with the remoteſt parts of the globe, and diſcovering to the world new countries which no European nation had ever yet explored.

With this deſign, he planned one of the boldeſt enterprizes that ever entered into the heart of man; and though he did not ſurvive to ſee it executed, the glory of the atchievement is wholly his.

The country of Kamtſchatka was as much unknown to his predeceſſors, as it was to the reſt of the civilized nations of the earth; yet he formed the deſign of making that ſavage country the centre of the moſt glorious achievements.

It was in the laſt year of this great Monarch's life, that he commiſſioned Captain Behring to traverſe the wild, and then almoſt deſolate, country of Siberia, and to continue his route to Kamtſchatka, where he was to build one or more veſſels, in order to diſcover whether the country towards the north, of which at that time they had no diſtinct knowledge, was a part of America, or not; and if it was, his inſtructions authorized him to endeavour, by every poſſible means, to ſeek and cultivate the acquaintance of ſome European people, and to learn from them the ſtate of the country at which he ſhould arrive. If he failed in this, he was to make ſuch diſcoveries as circumſtances ſhould preſent, and commit to writing the reſult of his obſervations for the uſe of his imperial maſter.

To enter minutely into the particulars of Captain

Behring's journey and voyage, would carry us beyond the limits preſcribed for this Introduction; let it ſuffice to ſay, that after ſurmounting incredible difficulties, and ſuffering hardſhips which none but a Ruſſian could have ſurvived, he executed his commiſſion ſucceſsfully, and returned to Peterſburg in ſafety, after an abſence of five years, in which time, beſides his voyage by ſea, he had travelled, in going and returning, 18,000 miles by land.

It is from the ſecond enterprizes of this aſtoniſhing man, and from the ſubſequent voyages of the Ruſſians, that we are able to aſcertain the exiſtence of a N. E. paſſage: and it is from thence, and from the late voyage of Captain Phipps, that, we think, we may fairly infer the practicability of it.

It was ſome time about the year 1740, that Captain Behring embarked on his ſecond voyage from Kamtſchatka, of which all that we know is, that he ſailed ſouthward to the iſles of Japan, and from thence eaſtward about 80 leagues. At that diſtance from Japan he diſcovered land, which he coaſted N. W. ſtill approaching to the N. E. cape of Aſia, which he doubled, and named Cape Shelvghenſki, not daring to land till he arrived at the mouth of a great river, where ſending his boats with moſt of his crew on ſhore, they never more returned, being either killed or detained by the inhabitants, which made his diſcovery incompleat; for not having men ſufficient left to navigate the ſhip, ſhe went on ſhore on an uninhabited iſland, where the Captain unfortunately died.

From this voyage, however, we learn that the ſea, from the N. E. cape of Kamtſchatka, is open to the iſles of Japan, and from a ſubſequent account of Ruſſian voyages, publiſhed in the Philoſophical Tranſactions, from a paper communicated by the celebrated Euler, it appears, that they paſſed along in ſmall veſſels, coaſting between Nova Zembla and the continent, at divers times in the middle of ſummer, when thoſe ſeas were open. The firſt expedition was from the river Oby, latitude 66 deg. N. longitude 65 deg. E. from London, and at the approach of winter, the veſſels ſheltered themſelves by going up the Janiſka, the mouth of which is marked in our maps in latitude 70 deg. N. and in longitude 82 deg. E. from whence the next ſummer they proceeded to the mouth of the Lena in latitude 72 deg. N. and in longitude 115 deg. into which they again retired for the winter ſeaſon. The third expedition was from the mouth of this river, to the fartheſt north cape of Aſia, in 72 deg. of north latitude, and in 172 deg. of eaſt longitude from London. Thus the Ruſſians having paſſed between the continent and Nova Zembla, and ſailed as far as the eaſtermoſt north cape, and the Engliſh and Dutch having repeatedly ſailed through the ſtraits that divide Nova Zembla from the continent, nothing can be a plainer demonſtration of the reality of the N. E. paſſage, than the ſum of the voyages here enumerated, when added together. The Engliſh and Dutch ſail to Wygatz, or the ſtrait of Nova Zembla; the Ruſſians ſail from Wygatz to the north cape of Aſia; and Behring from the north cape to Japan. This is an incontrovertible demonſtration; yet it is obvious, that this courſe can never be practicable to ſhips employed in trade. The Ruſſians, by taking the advantage of an open ſea and mild weather, in three years time accompliſhed but part of a voyage, which, by the Cape of Good Hope, may be made in leſs than one. Who therefore would run the hazard of ſo deſperate a paſſage, for the ſake of reaping imaginary advantages by an intercourſe with ſavages, who, for aught we know, have nothing to exchange for European commodities, but the ſkins of bears, or the bones of monſters.

But though the paſſage to the northern countries of the eaſt was known to be impracticable to European navigators in this direction, it was worthy the greatneſs of a maritime people, to endeavour to determine the poſſibility of attaining the ſame end by another courſe.

The miſcarriage and death of Barents, and the ſhipwreck of Captain Wood, had left the queſtion undetermined whether the regions adjoining to the pole are land or water, frozen or open ſea. The advantages from this diſcovery, beſides the glory reſulting from it, had the deciſion terminated in favour of navigation, would have been immenſely great. To have opened a new channel of commerce at a time when our trade is languiſhing, would have revived the drooping hopes of our manufacturers, and retained at home the numerous emigrants, who, for want of employment in their own country, are ſeeking new habitations, and new means of living in remote ſettlements, of the certainty of which they have no experience.

It muſt be acknowledged to the laſting honour of the noble lord who preſides at the head of the admiralty board, and who patronized the undertaking, that the means to render it ſucceſsful, was in every reſpect proportioned to the importance of the diſcovery.

The veſſels that were made choice of were the propereſt that could be deviſed. Bomb ketches are in the firſt inſtance ſtoutly built, and not being over large, are beſt adapted for navigating ſeas that are known to abound with ſhoals and covered rocks; theſe veſſels, beſides their natural ſtrength, were ſheathed with plank of ſeaſoned oak three inches thick, to fortify them againſt the ſhocks and preſſure of the ice, that, in their progreſs, they muſt infallibly encounter. They were, beſides, furniſhed with a double ſet of ice poles, anchors, cables, ſails, and rigging, to provide againſt the terrible effects of the ſevere and tempeſtuous weather, that frequently happens in high latitudes, even in the middle of the moſt temperate ſeaſons.

Nor was his lordſhip leſs careful to provide for the comfortable ſubſiſtence of the men, than for the preſervation of their lives, by his wiſe directions in equipping their ſhips. His firſt care was, to iſſue orders for killing and curing a ſufficient quantity of beef and pork in the beſt manner poſſible, that their proviſions might be good and freſh; and his next, to cauſe 100 buts of porter to be brewed with the beſt malt and hops, that they might have proper drink to fortify them againſt the rigour of the climate they were about to paſs. Their peaſe, oatmeal, rice, and molaſſes, were all provided with equal care, and when all things were in readineſs, the beer was ſtowed in the holds, and the vacancies filled up with coals, which ſerved as ballaſt, that firing might not be wanting to warm and dry them when cold, or wet with labour, or with watching. Add to this, that a double quantity of ſpirits were put on board, with a large proportion of wine, vinegar, muſtard, &c. &c. and what, we believe, was never before thought of in the fitting out of any king's ſhips, a conſiderable quantity of tea and ſugar for the ſick, in caſe any ſhould be ſeized with that dreadful diſorder, which rendered ſhip proviſions loathſome to Captain James's men, who were conſtrained to winter in Charlton Iſland in 1632. Theſe men fell ſick and had ſore mouths, and could neither eat beef, pork, fiſh, nor potage; the ſurgeon was every morning and evening obliged to pick their teeth, and cut away the pieces of rotten fleſh from their gums, yet they could eat nothing but bread pounded in a mortar, and fried in oil, on which they ſubſiſted for ſeveral months. In caſe of accidents of this kind, and that tea ſhould fail to anſwer the purpoſes of nouriſhment, a quantity of portable ſoup was likewiſe provided. And to complete the whole, a ſtock of warm cloathing was laid in, conſiſting of ſix fearnought jackets for each man, two milled caps, two pair of fearnought trowſers, four pair of milled ſtockings, and an excellent pair of boots, with a dozen pair of milled mitts, two cotton ſhirts, and two handkerchiefs.

Thus equipped and provided, the command of the Race Horſe was given to the Hon. Conſtantine Phipps, as Commodore, and that of the Carcaſe to Captain Skiffington Lutwych; the firſt mounting eight ſix pounders and 14 ſwivels, burthen 350 tons; the latter four ſix pounders and 14 ſwivels, burthen 300 tons. Let us now proceed to the journal of the voyage.

ALL things being now in readineſs, the officers on board, and the men paid their bounty-money of three pounds per man, according to his Majeſty's royal proclamation, for the encouragement of thoſe who ſhould voluntarily enter to undertake the voyage. On the 3rd of June 1773, the Commodore made the ſignal to weigh; but previous to their departure, the Carcaſe having been judged too deep to navigate thoſe heavy ſeas through which ſhe was to paſs, the Captain obtained leave from the board of Admiralty to re-land 10 of her complement of men, and to put aſhore ſix of the eight ſix-pounders with which ſhe was equipped, with a quantity of proviſions, proportioned to the number of men that it had been thought proper to diſcharge.

On Friday the 4th, being off Sheerneſs, the wind W. by N. and a freſh breeze, they took their departure, and continued their voyage without any material occurrence happening till Tueſday the 15th, when the Commodore made the ſignal to lie to. They were then off Braſſey Iſland, and many fiſhing boats from Shetland being in ſight, the men were invited on board, and ſome fiſh purchaſed of them at a cheap rate.

On the 15th, they took a new departure from Shetland, but the day following the fog thickened ſo much, that it almoſt approached to total darkneſs. During the continuance of the fog, the Commodore kept firing guns and beating drums, to prevent the Carcaſe from loſing company. As it was impoſſible that one could ſee the other at a ſhip's length, it was found the more neceſſary to repeat and return the firing, leſt they ſhould run foul of each other before they could be apprized of their danger. About five in the morning the miſt cleared up, and about nine the Commodore being in ſight, made the ſignal to the Carcaſe to ſteer N. E. They were then in latitude 60 deg. 52 min. N. by obſervation; the north end of Shetland Iſland bearing N. by W. one half W. ſeven or eight leagues.

On the 17th, they obſerved a ſail to the N. E. which the Commodore brought to, and ſpoke with. The breeze freſh, the weather hazy, and the wind variable, the Carcaſe carried away her main-top-maſt ſtudding ſail yard; which, however, was very ſoon ſupplied. Latitude this day by obſervation 62 deg. 53 min. N.

Friday the 18th, being in the latitude of 65 deg. 9 min. N. the cloathing allowed by the government, of which notice has already been taken in the introduction, was delivered out, and officers as well as men received their full proportion. This day the weather continued as before.

Saturday the 19th, the weather varied to every point of the compaſs, the Commodore brought to, and ſpoke with the Carcaſe. Made ſail about three in the morning, and at nine a large ſwell. Tacked and ſtood to the eaſtward. Latitude 66 deg. 1 min. N. longitude from London 33 min. W.

Sunday the 20th, they purſued their courſe to the eaſtward, with the wind N. W. but variable; high breezes and clear air. They were now within the polar circle, and at mid-night had an obſervation of the ſun, and found their latitude 66 deg. 52 min. N. Sounded on board the Commodore with a lead of 100 weight, and a line of 780 fathom, to which was faſtened a thermometer of Lord George Cavendiſh's conſtruction. They found no bottom, but the water was 11 deg. colder at that depth than on the ſurface. The Carcaſe ſounded with 450 fathoms only.

Monday 21, light breezes and cloudy weather. They obſerved a whale on the N. E. quarter, the firſt they had yet ſeen in the north ſees. The weather now began to ſet in ſevere; the nights cold and the days cloudy. The Commodore obſerving a whaling ſnow with Hamborough colours flying, fired a ſhot, and brought her to. She happened to be homeward bound with ſeals, and Mr. Wyndham, a gentleman of fortune, who had embarked on board the Commodore, with a view to proſecute the voyage, finding nothing but foul weather and heavy ſeas, to gratify his curioſity, and being withal unable to endure the ſea-ſickneſs, took paſſage on board the Hamburgher, in order to return home; and having taken leave of his friends, by wiſhing them a happy voyage, the Snow's boat took him on board about ſeven in the morning, and at eight the Commodore and Carcaſe purſued their voyage.

Tueſday 22, the articles of war were read on board the Carcaſe. The weather began to be piercing cold; they had reached the 70th degree of north latitude, in a courſe nearly north, being only 14 minutes to the eaſtward of London; and from their leaving Shetland to this day, they had ſeen nothing remarkable; nor had any accident befallen either of the ſhips worth relating, except that of now and then ſnapping a rope, or breaking a yard; incidents eaſily repaired. This day it poured with rain; the air was thick, and the rain froze as it fell. Saw a large ſhip to the N. W. ſtanding ſouthward, but wanting no information that ſhe could give, they purſued their voyage without ſpeaking to her.

Wedneſday 23, the rain continued; the weather hazy; heard three guns fire at a diſtance, but ſaw no ſhip or other object. The whales are here in no great plenty, and few ſhips appear in the open ſea in purſuit of them. They generally at this ſeaſon frequent the bays and creeks near the ſhore, and only break away when they are purſued or wounded.

On Thurſday the 24th, the Commodore changed his courſe to E. N. E. and on the 25th, they were in latitude 74 deg. 7 min. N. and in 8 deg. 32 min. E. longitude from London. Served out to the ſhip's company plenty of muſtard, pepper, vinegar, &c. The weather extremely cold and variable. At eight in the evening thick fog; at two in the morning freſh breezes; at eight clear weather; at eleven ſqually; and at noon calm, with ſleet and ſnow.

On Saturday the 26th, at midnight, they had an obſervation, and found themſelves in latitude 74 deg. 17 min. N. freſh gales, ſometimes rain, ſleet, and ſnow; at ſeven in the morning clear weather and an open ſea.

Sunday 27, light airs from the ſouthward, and cloudy weather; much warmer than the preceding day. It is remarkable, that the viciſſitudes of heat and cold are more frequent here than in the more ſoutherly latitudes. It often changes from temperate to extreme cold; and that ſuddenly.

It ſhould ſeem likewiſe, that the ice frequently changes its place in this latitude; or that it is more ſolid near land than in the open ſea; for, on the 23rd of June, 1676, Captain Wood, being more to the eaſtward, fell in with ice right a-head, not more than a league diſtant. He ſteered along it, thinking it had openings, but found them to be bays. He ſounded, and found ground at 158 fathom, ſoft green oar. In ſome places he found pieces of ice driving off a mile from the main body in ſtrange ſhapes, reſembling ſhips, trees, buildings, beaſts, fiſhes, and even men. The main body of ice being low and craggy, he could ſee hills of a blue colour at a diſtance, and valleys that were white as ſnow. In ſome places he obſerved drift wood among the ice. Some of the ice he melted, and found it freſh and good. This navigator never could advance farther to the north; but in ſeeking to penetrate the ice was ſhip-wrecked, as has been already related in the Introduction. He therefore judged the ice impenetrable, and that land or ice ſurrounded the pole. Our navigators found alſo much wood in this latitude floating about the ſhips, and ſaw great flocks of birds.

Monday 28, the weather altered; the wind weſt. Freſh breezes, with rain and ſleet. Latter part thick fog.

Tueſday 29, being in latitude 78 deg. N. and in longitude 6 deg. 29 min. E. from London, came in ſight of land, when the ſhips brought to, and the Captains held a conſultation concerning their future courſe. The appearance of the land lay from E. S. E. to N. E. and this day they ſpoke with the Marquis of Rockingham, Greenlandman, who by their reckoning, were then in latitude 79 deg. 40 min. N. though by that of the Commodore, their latitude was only 78 deg. 3 min. This difference, it is probable, ariſes from not making the proper allowance for refraction in this high latitude. The Greenlandmen preſented each of the Commanders with a deer and a half, which they found well flavoured veniſon, though not over fat. He likewiſe informed, that he had juſt come from the ice, and that the day before, three whalers had been cruſhed to pieces by its cloſing upon them ſuddenly.

Wedneſday 30, purſued their courſe. Cloudy weather. Half paſt four in the morning ſounded 112 fathoms, ſoft blue mud. At this time Black Point, ſo called from its dark appearance, bore N. E. by E. three quarters E. at the diſtance of ſeven or eight leagues. At half paſt ſeven in the morning, ſaw two ſail in the N. W. quarter. At half paſt twelve tacked and ſtood to the eaſt. Sounded, and found ground at 115 fathom.

Thurſday July 1, light breezes and clear weather at midnight: the ſun as bright as at noon day. Black Point E. one half S. diſtant ſeven leagues. At three in the morning made Charles's Iſland, and at nine ſaw a ſail to the weſtward whaleing; they were then in latitude 78 deg. 18 min. N. by obſervation. Sounded and found the ſame depth as before.

Friday 2, light airs and moderate weather. Lay to and took the altitude of a mountain, which they named Mount Parnaſſus; found it from the level of the ſea to be 3960 feet high, covered with ſnow, and at a diſtance reſembling an ancient building, with ſomething like a turret a-top. The foot of this mountain, with the hills adjoining, have ſometimes a very fiery appearance, and the ice and ſnow on their ſides reſembling trees and ſhrubs, gliſten with a brilliancy that exceed the ſplendor of the brighteſt gems. When this happens, a violent ſtorm generally ſucceeds. Here they ſhot ſome ſea fowl, but of an oily taſte.

Saturday 3, proved a perfect calm. They ſpoke with a Hollander, who foretold, that a degree or two farther north was the utmoſt extent of their progreſs this ſeaſon. Having doubled Cape Cold, they anchored in 15 fathom water, about three miles from the land, and ſent the boats aſhore for water, which they found in abundance, pouring down in little ſtreams from the rocks. At five in the afternoon, by the mean of four azimuths, the variation was found to be 18 deg. 36 min. W. Sounded, and found only 65 fathoms, ſoft brown mud. Mount Parnaſſus E. N. E. three or four leagues. Among other reaſons which Captain Wood gave for wiſhing to be employed on the diſcovery of the N. E. paſſage, one was, that he might have an opportunity of approaching the pole, in order to ſettle an hypotheſis, which he had long framed, whereby the inclination of the magnetical needle under the horizon, in all latitudes and in all longitudes, with the variation of the compaſs, might be exactly determined. This navigator imagined two magnetical poles to exiſt: and that, by approaching the one, he ſhould be able to determine the action of the other. It does not appear, that he ever explained his hypotheſis; and there never has been but one man, whoſe name was Williams, ſince his time, who pretended to know any thing of the matter.

Sunday 4, light breezes and hazey weather. Sounded, and only 20 fathoms deep; rocky ground. Hacluit's Headland, or the northermoſt point of Spitſbergen, bearing N. by E. ſeven leagues. Many whalers in ſight. Latitude by obſervation 79 deg. 34 min. N. longitude from London 8 deg. 10 min. E. Thermometer 47.

Monday 5, at two in the afternoon ſounded, and only 15 fathom water; rocky ground. Thick fog. The Race Horſe fired guns as ſignals to keep company, which were anſwered by the Carcaſe. A dreadful crackling was heard at a diſtance, which proved the daſhing and grinding of the looſe pieces of ice againſt each other, which is heard at many leagues diſtance. Hacluit's Headland S. E. by S. diſtance ſix or ſeven leagues.

Tueſday 6, proved very foggy; the breezes ſlight, and iſlands of ice beginning to appear. At three in the afternoon the Commodore hauled up from a large body of packed ice, and the fog thickening, both ſhips kept firing volleys of ſmall arms, to prevent their loſing company. At half paſt ten in the evening, the extremes of the ice ſtretching from N. W. to E. N. E. the Commodore bore away; and at half paſt twelve loſt ſight of it. At half paſt one in the morning heard a violent ſurf to the S. E. At two tacked and ſtood to the weſtward. At half paſt five the fog gathering, they began firing volleys of ſmall arms. At ſix ſaw the ice ſtretching from E. by S. to N. by E. and at ſeven was within ſight of land. At ten Cloven Cliff ſtood E. S. E. diſtant about five or ſix leagues.

Wedneſday the 7th, the weather cloudy. They found themſelves beſet among the looſe ice, which increaſing continually, gave them incredible trouble. Obſerving that it thickened to the eaſtward, they hauled up, and ſtood to the weſtward; but in tacking, they were in danger of running foul. It was with difficulty they could keep any courſe, for the drifts of ice came ſo thick, as to whirl the ſhips about, as if in a whirl-pool.

Thurſday 8, the weather ſtill remaining cloudy, and the wind variable, both ſhips ſtill were entangled in the ice; and the Carcaſe being driven to leeward, hoiſted out her long-boat to tow up with the Commodore. But the ice cloſing very faſt, it was impoſſible for the boats to live. Orders were then given to tack and ſtand to the ſouthward; but the ſhips not being able to make head againſt the accumulation of ice that continually gathered round them, were under a neceſſity of applying to their ice anchors and poles, in order to warp through it. At half paſt eight in the evening, the ice beginning to open, they again hoiſted out their boats, and with difficulty towed the ſhips round a cape of ice projecting from the main body, and at laſt got clear. At ten the boats were hoiſted on board. In extricating themſelves from this dangerous ſituation, the Race Horſe had her beſt bower-anchor ſnapt in the ſhank, cloſe to the ſtock, and the Carcaſe loſt her ſtarboard bumpkin and head-rails.

It frequently happens, that ſhips beſet among the ice in the manner above related, periſh by being daſhed to pieces againſt the ſolid fields of ice, or cruſhed by the broken pieces crowding upon one another, and riſing ſo faſt about the ſhip, as to exceed the height of her ſides, and then there is no eſcaping. They were told by ſome experienced ſeamen, that the ice riſes out of the ſea as high ſometimes as mountains; and that ſeveral of theſe mountains, by ſtriking together and coaleſcing, form theſe iſlands of ice that are frequently ſeen in the lower latitudes, driving up and down the ſea as the wind and tides direct them.

The greateſt danger to be apprehended, is, however, from the looſe ice; for the whalers often moor their ſhips to the ſolid fields of ice, that at certain ſeaſons ſeem to reſt upon the earth, and appear fixed to it, and there find the beſt fiſhing. In ſuch ſituations it often happens, that little or no looſe ice is to be ſeen; yet preſently upon a change of wind, or the blowing of a ſtorm, it ſhall pour in upon them ſo ſuddenly, that they ſometimes periſh in it. It is not poſſible to account for the aſtoniſhing quantity that will gather in this manner in leſs than an hour's time.

Though it ſeems to be agreed, that many of the largeſt fields of ice are frozen to the depth of the ſea in which they are found, and that they are bedded on the ſolid earth, yet it is equally certain, that they are often rent aſunder by the raging billows; and that in breaking, they produce the moſt terrifying noiſe in nature; nay, it is aſſerted, that the claſhing of the pieces of looſe ice againſt each other, on any extraordinary agitation of the waves, is attended with a roaring ſo loud, that a man who is near it can hardly hear the ſound of his own voice.

Friday the 9th, they hauled up to the weſtward, and loſt ſight one of the other; but about nine next morning they came in ſight, and joined company. The weather being now piercing cold, the people had an additional quantity of porter and brandy delivered to them; two quarts of porter and a pint of brandy being now every man's daily allowance.

Saturday, July the 10th, the breeze freſh, and the weather cloudy. They ſailed between numberleſs pieces of ice, among which they ſaw ſeveral whales, but none of the whalers in purſuit of them. The ice now becoming ſolid and compact, they found it impracticable to continue their courſe. And the diſcovery of a paſſage to the pole in that direction (upon holding a conſultation) appearing impracticable to every officer on board of both ſhips, the Commodore, at ſeven in the evening, hauled cloſe to the wind; and the Carcaſe, as ſoon as ſhe could extricate herſelf followed his example. The weather continuing foggy, with rain and ſnow, the ſailors were almoſt worn out with turning and winding; and although they uſed the utmoſt precaution in working through the narrows, yet they could not always avoid ſtriking againſt the mountains that every where ſurrounded them. During this night's work, they ſteered a hundred different courſes, to follow the channels.

Sunday 11, having worked out of the ice, they ſailed along the main body, which appeared perfectly ſolid and compact, without any paſſage or inlet. This immenſe maſs of ice extended N. E. as far as they could ſee from the maſt-head; and, no doubt, might be a continuation of that in which they were engaged a few days before. The ſea was now tolerably clear, for they met with no more fields, and only a few detached iſlands. At half paſt one in the morning they ſaw the land from S. by W. to S. S. E. At three in the morning they tacked; Cloven Cliff bearing S. S. E. ſix miles. At ſeven tacked again. At eight the Commodore bore away, and the Carcaſe ſtood after him. Cloven Cliff S. one half W. two or three leagues, latitude 79 deg. 56 min. N.

Monday 12, at eight in the evening Cloven Cliff bearing W. S. W. four or five miles, they ſounded in 15 fathoms water, and found a rocky bottom. Saw ſeveral Engliſh and Dutch Greenlanders at anchor in the Norways: That being their rendezvous to the northward, they never chuſe to proceed farther. Here they found the current ſetting ſo faſt to eaſtward, that they were forced to come to an anchor to keep from drifting on the ice; the ſwell from weſtward being ſo great, that had that happened, it would of conſequence have ſtarved the ſhips. At five in the morning a breeze from N. N. E. ſpringing up, they weighed, and made ſail. At eight Hacluit's Headland W. S. W. one half W. ſix or ſeven leagues; at noon, latitude 80 deg. 2 min. N.

Tueſday 13, the weather being clear and calm, and a ſtrong eaſterly current ſetting in, at eight in the evening they came to with their ſtream anchors and hauſers in forty fathoms water; but at nine a breeze ſpringing up from the eaſtward, they weighed, and next day came to an anchor in Smearingburgh Harbour. Cloven Cliff E. one half S. one mile. Weſt point of Voogle Land N. N. W. one half W. diſtant one mile and a half; ſoundings 15 fathom, ſandy bottom.

Here they remained between five and ſix days to take in freſh water, during which time our journaliſt was employed in ſurveying the country, which to a ſtranger had a very awful and romantic appearance.

The country is ſtoney, and as far as can be ſeen full of mountains, precipices and rocks. Between theſe are hills of ice, generated, as it ſhould ſeem, by the torrents that flow from the melting of the ſnow on the ſides of thoſe towering elevations, which being once congealed, are continually increaſed by the ſnow in winter, and the rain in ſummer, which often freezes as ſoon as it falls. By looking on theſe hills, a ſtranger may fancy a thouſand different ſhapes of trees, caſtles, churches, ruins, ſhips, whales, monſters, and all the various forms that fill the univerſe. Of the ice-hills there are ſeven, that more particularly attract the notice of a ſtranger. Theſe are known by the name of the Seven Iceburgs, and are thought to be the higheſt of the kind in that country. When the air is clear, and the ſun ſhines full upon theſe mountains, the proſpect is inconceivably brilliant. They ſometimes put on the bright glow of the evening rays of the ſetting ſun, when reflected upon glaſs, at his going down; ſometimes they appear of a bright blue, like ſapphire, and ſometimes like the variable colours of a priſm, exceeding in luſtre the richeſt gems in the world, diſpoſed in ſhapes wonderful to behold, all glittering with a luſtre that dazzles the eye, and fills the air with aſtoniſhing brightneſs.

Smearingburgh harbour, where they landed, was firſt diſcovered by the Dutch. Here they erected ſheds and conveniencies for boiling the oil from the fat of the whales, inſtead of barrelling it up to be boiled at home. Here alſo, allured by the hope of gain, they built a village, and endeavoured to fix a colony: but the firſt ſettlers all periſhed in the enſuing winter. The remains of the village may be traced to this day; and their ſtoves, kettles, kardels, troughs, ovens, and other implements, remained in the ſhape of ſolid ice long after the utenſils themſelves were decayed. Our voyagers were told, that the Ruſſians have lately attempted the ſame thing, and that 10 out of 15 periſhed laſt winter in this ſecond attempt.

Where every object is new, it is not eaſy for a ſtranger to fix which firſt to admire. The rocks are ſtriking objects: before a ſtorm they exhibit a fiery appearance, and the ſun looks pale upon them, the ſnow giving the air a bright reflection. Their ſummits are almoſt always involved in clouds, ſo that it is but juſt poſſible to ſee the tops of them. Some of theſe rocks are but one ſtone from bottom to top, appearing like an old decayed ruin. Others conſiſt of huge maſſes, veined differently, like marble, with red, white, and yellow, and probably, were they to be ſawed and poliſhed, would equal, if not excel, the fineſt Egyptian marble we now ſo much admire. Perhaps the diſtance and danger of carrying large blocks of ſtones, may be the reaſon that no trials have been made to manufacture them. On the ſoutherly and weſterly ſides of theſe rocks grow all the plants, herbs, and moſſes peculiar to this country; on the northerly and eaſterly ſides the wind ſtrikes ſo cold when it blows from theſe quarters, that it periſhes every kind of vegetable. Theſe plants grow to perfection in a very ſhort time. Till the middle of May the whole country is locked up in ice; about the beginning of July the plants are in flower, and about the latter end of the ſame month, or beginning of Auguſt, they have perfected their ſeed. The earth owes its fertility, in a great meaſure, to the dung of birds, who build and breed their young here in the ſummer, and in the winter repair to more favourable climates.

The plants that are moſt common in Spitſbergen are ſcurvy-graſs and crows-foot; there are beſides ſmall houſe-leek, and a plant with aloe-leaves; an herb like ſtone-crop; ſome ſmall ſnake-weed; mouſe-ear; wood-ſtrawberry; periwinkle; and a herb peculiar to the country which they call the rock-plant. The leaves of this plant are in ſhape like a man's tongue, above ſix feet long, of a dull yellow colour. The ſtalk is round and ſmooth, and of the ſame colour with the leaf; it riſes tapering, and ſmells like muſcles. It is an aquatic, and riſes in height in proportion to the depth of water in which it is found. There are other plants and herbs, but theſe are the chief. Of flowers, the white poppy ſeems the principal.

The rocks and precipices are full of fiſſures and clefts, which afford convenient harbour for birds to lay their eggs, and breed their young in ſafety. Moſt of theſe birds are water-fowl, and ſeek their food in the ſea. Some, indeed, are birds of prey; and purſue and kill others for their own ſuſtenance, but theſe are rare. The water-fowl eat ſtrong and fiſhy, and their fat is not to be endured. They are ſo numerous about the rocks, as ſometimes to darken the air when they riſe in flocks; and they ſcream ſo horribly, that the rocks ring with their noiſe.

There are a few ſmall birds like our ſnipes, and a kind of ſnow-bird, but different from that found about Hudſon's bay. The gentlemen ſhot ſome of the water-fowl, but they were ſtrong and ill-taſted.

The ice-bird is a very beautiful little bird, but very rare. He is in ſize and ſhape like a turtle-dove, but his plumage, when the ſun ſhines upon him, is of a bright yellow, like the golden ring in the peacock's tail, and almoſt dazzles the eye to look upon it.

The other inhabitants of this forlorn country are white bears, deer, and foxes. How theſe creatures can ſubſiſt in the winter, when the whole earth is covered with ſnow, and the ſea locked up in ice, is hardly to be conceived. It has been ſaid, indeed, that when the ocean is all frozen over, and no ſuſtenance to be procured in this country, they travel ſoutherly to the warmer climates, where food proper for them abounds in the immenſe foreſts of the northern continent. But whoever conſiders the vaſt diſtance between Spitſbergen and the neareſt parts of the northern continent, will be as much at a loſs to account for the ſubſiſtence of theſe creatures in their journey, as in the deſolate region where they undoubtedly remain. The bear is by far the beſt accommodated to the climate of which he is an inhabitant. He is equally at home on land and water, and hunts diligently for his prey in both. In ſummer he finds plenty of food from the refuſe of the whales, ſea-horſes and ſeals, which is thrown into the ſea by the whalers, and cover the ſhores during the time of whaling; and they have beſides a wonderful ſagacity in ſmelling out the carcaſes of the dead, let them be ever ſo deeply buried in the earth, or covered with ſtones. The dead therefore that annually are buried here may contribute, in ſome degree, to the ſubſiſtence of a few of theſe creatures in winter; but the queſtion will ſtill recur, how the race of them ſubſiſted before the whale-fiſhery had exiſtence, and before men found the way to this inhoſpitable ſhore. Diſquiſitions of this kind, as they are beyond the reach of human comprehenſion, ſerve only to raiſe our admiration of that omnipotent Being to whom nothing is impoſſible.

Theſe creatures, as they differ in nothing but their colour and ſize from thoſe commonly ſhewn in England, need no deſcription.

The foxes differ little in ſhape from thoſe we are acquainted with, but in colour there is no ſimilitude. Their heads are black, and their bodies white. As they are beaſts of prey, if they do not provide in ſummer for the long receſs of winter, it were, one would think, almoſt impoſſible for them to ſurvive; yet they are ſeen in plenty, though, by their ſubtlety and ſwiftneſs, they are not eaſy to be catched.

The Dutch ſeamen report, that when they are hungry, they will feign themſelves dead, and when the ravenous birds come to feed upon them, they riſe and make them their prey.

But the moſt wonderful thing of all is, how the deer can ſurvive an eight months famine. Like ours they feed upon nothing that can be perceived, but the vegetables which the earth ſpontaneouſly produces; and yet for eight months in the year, the earth produces neither plant, herb, ſhrub, or blade of any kind of graſs whatever. They are, beſides, but thinly cloathed for ſo ſevere a climate, and what ſeems ſtill worſe, there is not a buſh to be ſeen to ſhelter them, within the diſtance that any man has yet diſcovered. The means of their ſubſiſtence muſt therefore remain among the ſecrets of nature, never to be diſcloſed, as no human being can ever live here, ſo as to be able to trace theſe creatures to their winter's reſidence.

Amphibious creatures abound the moſt about the ſounds and bays of Spitſbergen, and they ſeem beſt adapted to endure the climate. Theſe are the ſeals, or ſea dogs, and morſes, or ſea horſes; of which the whalers avail themſelves, when diſappointed in compleating their lading with the fat of whales.

The ſeal is ſufficiently known; but the ſea-horſe, as it is a creature peculiar to high latitudes, is therefore more rare. It is not eaſy to ſay how he came by his name; for there is no more likeneſs between a ſea-horſe and a land-horſe, than there is between a whale and an elephant. The ſea-horſe is not unlike the ſeal in ſhape. He has a large round head, larger than that of a bull, but ſhaped more like that of a pug-dog without ears, than any other animal we are acquainted with. He tapers all the way down to the tail, like the fiſh we call a lump, and his ſize is equal to that of the largeſt ſized ox. His tuſks cloſe over his under jaw, like thoſe of a very old boar, and are in length from one foot to two or more, in proportion to the ſize and age of the animal that breeds them. His ſkin is thicker than that of a bull, and covered with ſhort mouſe-coloured hair, which is ſleeker and thicker, juſt as he happens to be in or out of ſeaſon when he is caught. His paws, before and behind, are like thoſe of a mole, and ſerve him for oars when he ſwims, and for legs to crawl when he goes upon the ice, or on ſhore. He is a fierce animal, but being unweildy when on land, or on the ice, is eaſily overcome.

Theſe animals are always found in herds, ſometimes of many hundreds together, and if one is attacked, the reſt make a common cauſe, and ſtand by one another till the laſt gaſp. If they are attacked in the water, they will fight deſperately, and will even attempt the boats of their purſuers, if any of them are wounded, and not mortally. Some of them have been known to make holes in the bottom of the boat with their tuſks, in defence of their young. Their eyes are large, and they have two holes in the upper part of the neck, out of which they eject the water, in like manner as it is ejected by whales.

Though the ſea about Spitſbergen is full of fiſh, yet they rather appear to be deſigned by Providence for the ſuſtenance of one another, than for the food of man. The mackarel, of which there are no great plenty, ſeem not only to be the moſt wholeſome, and the moſt palatable, but alſo the moſt beautiful. They ſeem to be a different ſpecies to thoſe caught upon our coaſts. The upper part of the back is of a vivid blue; the other part as low as the belly of a gem-like green or an azure ground. Underneath the belly the colour is a tranſparent white, and the fins ſhine like poliſhed ſilver. All the colours glow when alive in the ſea with ſuch a richneſs, that fancy can hardly form to itſelf any thing in nature more beautiful. Almoſt all the other fiſh on this coaſt are of an oily nature, and of a very indifferent flavour.

The ſaw, or ſword-fiſh, is remarkable not only for the oddity of his ſhape, but alſo for his enmity to the whale. This fiſh takes his name from a broad flat bone, in length from two to four feet, which projects from his noſe, and tapers to a point. On each ſide, it has teeth like a comb, at the diſtance of a finger's breadth aſunder. He is alſo furniſhed with a double row of fins, and is of aſtoniſhing ſtrength in the water. His length from ten to twenty feet. He ſeems to be formed for war, and war is his profeſſion. The conflict betwixt him and the whale is dreadful, yet he never gives over till his ſword is broken, or he comes off victorious.

The whale is a harmleſs fiſh, and is never known to fight but in his own defence. Yet when he is exaſperated, he rages dreadfully. Though from his magnitude, he may be called the ſovereign of the ſeas; yet like other ſovereigns, he is liable to be vexed and hurt by the meaneſt reptiles. The whale's louſe is a moſt tormenting little animal. Its ſcales are as hard as thoſe of our prawns; its head is like the louſe's head, with four horns, two that ſerve as feelers, the other two are hard, and curved, and ſerve as clenchers to fix him to the whale. On his cheſt, underneath, he has two carvers like ſcythes, with which he collects his food, and behind theſe are four feet, that ſerve him for oars. He has, moreover, ſix other clenchers behind, with which he can rivet himſelf ſo cloſely to his prey, that he can no otherwiſe be diſengaged, but by cutting out the whole piece to which he is joined. He is jointed on the back like the tail of a lobſter, and his tail covers him like a ſhield when he is feeding. He fixes himſelf on the tendereſt parts of the whale's body, between his fins, on his ſheath, and on his lips, and eats pieces out of his fleſh, as if eaten by vultures.

They found no ſprings of freſh water in Spitſbergen; but in the valleys, between the mountains, are many little rills cauſed by the rain and melting of the ſnow in ſummer; and from theſe rills the ſhips are ſupplied. Some are of opinion, that this water is unwholeſome, but they are more nice than wiſe. The whaling people have drank of it for ages, and have found no ill effects from the uſe of it. Ice taken up in the middle of theſe ſeas and thawed, yields alſo good freſh water.

On board the Race Horſe, Dr. Irvine, the gentleman who received the premium by a grant of parliament, for his diſcovery of an eaſy proceſs for making ſalt-water freſh at ſea, tried many experiments at Spitſbergen, and in the courſe of the voyage; the reſult of which will appear at a proper time. That gentleman had formed a project for preſerving fleſh-meat freſh and ſweet in long voyages, but it did not anſwer in this.

In calm weather they remarked, that the ſea about the iſlands appeared uncommonly ſtill and ſmooth; that it was not ſuddenly moved at the firſt approach of blowing weather; but that when the ſtorm continued, the waves ſwelled gradually, and roſe to an incredible height. Theſe ſwelling waves ſucceſſively follow one another, and roll along before the wind, foaming and raging in a frightful manner, yet they are thought leſs dangerous than thoſe that break ſhort, and are leſs mountainous.

They obſerved likewiſe, that the ice that reſted on the ground was not ſtationary, but that it changed place; and they learnt alſo, that in ſome ſeaſons there was no ice, where this ſeaſon they were in danger of being embayed. There does not, however, from thence appear the leaſt reaſon to conclude, that any practicable paſſage to the Indian ocean can ever be found in this direction; for were it certain that the ſeas were always open under the pole, yet great bulwarks of ice evidently ſurround it, ſometimes at a leſs, and ſometimes at a greater diſtance. Moreover, were it poſſible that chance ſhould direct ſome fortunate adventurer to an opening at one time, it would be more than a million to one, if the ſame opening were paſſable to the next who ſhould attempt it.

There are many harbours about Spitſbergen, beſides that of Smearingburg, where ſhips employed in the whale fiſhery take ſhelter in ſtormy weather; and there are ſome iſlands, ſuch as Charles's Iſland, the Clifted Rock, Red-Hill, Hacluit's Headland, &c. that ſerve as land-marks, by which ſeamen direct their courſe. Theſe iſlands are full of the neſts of birds; but their eggs are as nauſeous as the fleſh of the fowls that lay them. The ſailors ſometimes eat them, but they are filthy food. Even the geeſe and ducks on the neighbouring iſlands eat fiſhy and ſtrong.

The air about Spitſbergen is never free from iſicles. If you look through the ſun-beams tranſverſely as you ſit in the ſhade, or where you ſee the rays confined in a body, inſtead of dark motes, as are ſeen here, you ſee myriads of ſhining particles that ſparkle like diamonds; and when the ſun ſhines hot, as it ſometimes does, ſo as to melt the tar in the ſeams of ſhips when they lie ſheltered from the wind, theſe ſhining atoms ſeem to melt away, and deſcend like dew.

It is ſeldom that the air continues clear for many days together in this climate; when that happens, the whalers are generally ſucceſsful. There is no difference between night and day in the appearance of the atmoſphere about Spitſbergen, one being as light as the other, only when the ſun is to the northward, you may look at him with the naked eye, as at the moon, without dazzling. The fogs here come on ſo ſuddenly, that from bright ſun-ſhine, you are preſently involved in ſuch obſcurity, that you can hardly ſee from one end of the ſhip to the other.

While our journaliſt was buſy in making his obſervations, all belonging to the ſhips were differently engaged in one employment or other; ſome in taking in water, ſome in fiſhing, ſome in hunting, ſome in handing the ſails, and ſpreading them out to dry, ſome in ſcrubbing the ſhip, and ſome in viewing the country. The Commanders and officers, with Mr. Lyon, Mr. Robinſon, &c. buſied themſelves in making obſervations, being furniſhed with an apparatus, that is ſaid to have coſt at leaſt 1500 pounds. From ſuch a ſet of inſtruments, in the hands of the ableſt obſervers the nation can boaſt, ſome very conſiderable diſcoveries in the phænomena of the polar regions may be expected. They landed their inſtruments in a ſmall iſland, in Vogle Sound, and had ſeveral opportunities during their ſtay of uſing them to advantage. Having erected two tents, the Captains from the fiſhery frequently viſited the obſervers, and expreſſed their admiration not only at the perfection of the inſtruments, but likewiſe at the dexterity with which they were accommodated.

The ice began to ſet in a-pace, yet the weather was hot. The thermometer from 56 in the cabin roſe to 90 in the open air. It was ſtill 10 deg. higher on the top of a mountain to which it was carried. The iſland on which the experiments were made, they called Marble Iſland, from the rock by which it is formed. Having watered, and finiſhed their obſervations, the ſhips prepared to depart.

Monday July the 19th, the Commodore made the ſignal to weigh; at two in the afternoon the ſhips were under ſail, and as ſoon as they had made their offing, ſtood to the eaſtward. At three they tacked and ſteered northward; and before four were again entangled among the looſe ice, through which they ſailed, directing their courſe along the main body, which lay from N. W. to S. S. E.

Tueſday the 20th, they continued their courſe along the ice, but could diſcover no opening, though they ſearched every creek, and left no bay or turning unexamined. This day they obſerved what the ſailors call a mock-ſun, a phænomenon well enough known in this climate. Hacluit's Headland bore S. W. one half S. 46 leagues; the weather cloudy, with rain; exceſſive cold. Thermometer 37 deg. 46 min.

Wedneſday the 21ſt, the ſeverity of the weather increaſing, an additional quantity of brandy was ſerved out to the people, and every comfortable refreſhment afforded them, that they themſelves could wiſh or require. The courſe of the ice lay this day N. E.

Thurſday 22, nothing remarkable.

Friday the 23d, they ſaw land from E. by S. to S. E. by S. At four in the morning, Hacluit's Headland bore S. E. 10 leagues; the wind variable, and the weather cold, with ſleet and ſnow. Thermometer 40 deg.

Sunday 25, they had gentle breezes, with cloudy weather, and were engaged among ſome pieces of ice, ſeparated from the main body, which kept them continually tacking and luffing. At length they entered among mountains and iſlands of ice, which came upon them ſo faſt, that it was with the utmoſt difficulty they could proceed; the Carcaſe having ſeveral times ſtruck againſt them with ſuch violence, as to raiſe her head four feet out of the water. They now imagined, from the ſolidity and extent of theſe iſlands, that the late ſtrong gales had cauſed a ſeparation from the main body, the Commodore therefore changed his courſe with a ſtrong gale to the eaſtward; in the morning the weather became moderate.

Monday 26, at ſeven in the morning, they came in ſight of Red Hill, a ſmall mount which commands an open plain, known by the name of Deers Field, by reaſon of its fertile appearance, it being the only ſpot on which they ſaw no drifts of ſnow. To the eaſtward lies Muffin's Iſland. Here they ſounded, and found 45 fathoms water; rocky ground. Captain Lutwych ſent out the long boat, with orders to ſound along the ſhore, and to examine the ſoil. This iſland is about a mile long, very low, and looks at a diſtance like a black ſpeck. Though the ſoil is moſtly ſand and looſe ſtones, and hardly ſo much as a green weed upon it, yet it is remarkable for the number of birds that reſort to it in ſummer to lay their eggs, and breed their young; and theſe not of one kind only, but of many different ſorts, as geeſe, ducks, burgomaſters, ice-birds, malamucks, kirmews, rotgers, and almoſt every other ſpecies of birds peculiar to the climate; inſomuch, that the eggs were ſo numerous, and lay ſo thick upon the ground, that the men who landed found it difficult to walk without filling their ſhoes.

While the crew of the boat, 10 in number, with their valiant officer at their head, were examining the iſland, after having ſounded the ſhores, they obſerved two white bears making towards them, one upon the ice, the other in the water. Major Buz, for that was their officer's travelling title, like Falſtaff, was always the boldeſt man in company over a cup of ſack, and minded killing a bear no more than killing a gnat; but ſeeing the bears approach very faſt, eſpecially that which came in the water, he ordered his men to fire while yet the enemy was at a diſtance, as he did not think it prudent to hazard the lives of his little company in cloſe fight. All of them pointed their muſkets, and ſome of the party obeyed orders; but the greater part judging it ſafer to depend upon a reſerved fire, when they had ſeemingly diſcharged their pieces, pretended to retreat. The Major, a full fathom in the belly, endeavoured to waddle after his companions; but being ſoon out of breath, and ſeeing the bear that came in the water had juſt reached the ſhore, thought of nothing now but falling the firſt ſacrifice. His hair already ſtood an end; and looking behind him, he ſaw the bear at no great diſtance, with his noſe in the air ſnuffing the ſcent. He had all the reaſon in the world to believe it was him that he ſcented, and he had ſcarce breath enough left to call to his men to halt. In this critical ſituation he unfortunately dropt his gun, and in ſtooping to recover it ſtumbled againſt a gooſe-neſt, fell ſquaſh upon his belly into it, and had very nigh ſmothered the dam upon her eggs. The old ſaying is, misfortunes ſeldom come alone. Before he could well riſe, the enraged gander came flying to the aſſiſtance of his half-ſmothered conſort, and making a dart at the eye of the aſſailant, very narrowly miſſed his mark, but diſcharged his fury plump upon his noſe. The danger now being preſſing, and the battle ſerious, the bear near, and the gander ready for a ſecond attack, the men, who had not fled far, thought it high time to return to the relief of their leader. Overjoyed to ſee them about him, but frighted at the bear juſt behind him, he had forgot the gander that was over his head, againſt which one of the men having levelled his piece, fired and he fell dead at the Major's feet. Animated now by the death of one enemy, he recovered his gun, and faced about to aſſiſt in the attack of the ſecond. By this time the bear was ſcarce 10 yards from him, and beginning to growl, the Major juſt in the inſtant was ſeized with a looſeneſs, dropt his accoutrements, and fell back, that he might not be in the way of his party to impede the engagement. In the hurry he was in, for in a man of ſuch valour, we muſt not ſay the fright, he entangled his buttons, and not being able to hold any longer, he filled his breeches. The crew in an inſtant had brought down the bear, and now it was time for their leader to do ſomething great. Having recovered his arms, and ſeeing the poor beaſt groveling on the ground, and growling out his laſt, like a ram in a pinfold, making a ſhort race backwards in order to redouble his force, he came with nine long ſtrides forwards, and with the ſtrength and fierceneſs of an enraged bull, thruſt his lance full four feet deep in the dying bear's belly. And now, ſays the Major, cocking his hat, have not I done for the bear bravely! The ſailors, who are always in a good humour upon ſuch occaſions; but Captain, ſaid they, you have but half done your work, you have another bear to kill yet. The Major, whoſe ſituation began to be troubleſome, content with the honour he had already acquired, My lads, ſaid he, as I have been the death of one bear, ſure ſix of you may kill the other; ſo ordering four of them to row him on board, he left the remaining ſix to kill the other bear.

On this iſland two bears were killed, and a ſea-horſe. The ſea-horſe made a deſperate defence, being attacked in the water; and had there been only one boat engaged in the combat, he certainly would have come off victorious; but the crew of the Race Horſe having learnt that there were bears and ſea horſes on this little ſpot, were willing to ſhare in the ſport of hunting them, as well as in the pleaſure of taſting their fleſh. They accordingly landed in their boats, and came in good time to aſſiſt in purſuing the conqueſt. It happened, however, that their ammunition being almoſt ſpent, one great bear came up to revenge the death of his fellows, and advanced ſo furiouſly, growling and barking, that he put the whole company to flight, and ſome of them, it is ſaid, had no great reaſon to laugh at the Major.

On ſounding the ſhores they remarked, that when the north iſlands bear N. 45 E. ſeven or eight leagues, and Red Hill E. by S. five miles, there is generally from 25 to 30 fathom hard ground; but that cloſer on ſhore, when Red Hill bears E. one-fourth S. about one mile, it increaſes to 115 fathom, with ſoft black mud. The current about one mile an hour to the N. E.

Tueſday 27, the air being perfectly ſerene, and the weather moderate, the fiſhes ſeemed to enjoy the temperature, and to expreſs it by their ſporting. The whales were ſeen ſpouting their fountains towards the ſkies, and the fin-fiſh following their example. They likewiſe this day ſaw dolphins; the whole proſpect in ſhort was more pleaſing and pictureſque than they had yet beheld in this remote region. The very ice in which they were beſet looked beautiful, and put forth a thouſand glittering forms, and the tops of the mountains, which they could ſee like ſparkling gems at a vaſt diſtance, had the appearance of ſo many ſilver ſtars illuminating a new firmament. But this flattering proſpect did not continue long. By an accurate obſervation, they were now in latitude 80 deg. 47 min. N. and in longitude 21 deg. 10 min. E. from London; and in ſight of ſeven iſlands to the north, to which they directed their courſe.

Wedneſday 28, they had freſh eaſterly breezes, which, from moderate weather the day before, changed to piercing cold. At midnight the weſt end of Weygate Straits bore S. by E. ſo that they were now in the very ſpot where Barentz had ſuppoſed an opening would be found into the polar ſea. Yet ſo far from it, they could diſcover nothing from the maſt head, but a continued continent of ſolid ice, except the iſlands already mentioned. On this ice, however, there were many bears, ſome of which came ſo near the ſhips as to be ſhot dead with ſmall arms. Theſe bears are very good eating, and where no better is to be purchaſed, the whalers account them as good as beef. They are many of them larger than the largeſt oxen, and weigh heavier. In many parts of their body they are muſket proof, and unleſs they are hit on the open cheſt, or on the flank, a blow with a muſket ball will hardly make them turn their backs. Some of the bears killed in theſe encounters weighed from 7 to 800 weight; and it was thought, that the bear that routed the ſailors on Muffin's Iſland, could not weigh leſs than 1000 weight. He was, indeed, a very monſter!

Thurſday 29, ſailing among innumerable iſlands of ice, they found the main body too ſolid for the ſhips to make the leaſt impreſſion upon it, and finding no opening, the Commodore reſolved to ſend a party under the command of the firſt lieutenant to examine the land, which at a diſtance appeared like a plain, diverſified with hills and mountains, and exhibited in their ſituation a tolerable landſcape.

On trying the water, it was leſs ſalt than any ſea water they had ever taſted; and they found likewiſe, that the ice was no other than a body of congealed freſh water, which they imagined had been frozen in the infancy of the earth.

Tueſday 30, the weather being clear, they ran cloſe to the main body of the ice, and the ſun continuing to ſhine, made them almoſt forget the climate they were ſailing in, but it was not long before they had reaſon for ſevere recollection. In coaſting along, they obſerved many openings, and were in hopes, from their diſtant appearance, that a paſſage might be made between them: but upon trial it was found, as the Dutch fiſherman had foretold, that theſe appearances were deceitful. At one in the morning fine clear ſun-ſhine, they ſounded in 16 fathom water, and found ſmall ſtones at bottom. They were then about four miles from the N. E. part of the northernmoſt land; the eaſternmoſt land in ſight, diſtant above five or ſix leagues.

Saturday 31, at midnight, the eaſternmoſt land in ſight lay E. N. E. one half E. which they could not make out to be an iſland. They rather judged it to be a continent, but found it impoſſible to determine with certainty, as it lay beyond their reach. At nine in the morning the Carcaſe hoiſted out her cutter, and filled her empty water-caſks with water from the ice. On this ice lie great quantities of ſnow, and as ſoon as a pit is dug, it fills with fine ſoft clear water, not inferior to that of many land ſprings. At noon they ſounded in 95 fathoms, the ground ſoft mud. This day a bear came over the ice to viſit them, the firſt they had ſeen ſince they left Muffin's Iſland. They ſaluted him with a volley of ſmall arms, and he returned the compliment, by turning his back upon them. Their longitude was this day 21 deg. 26 min. E. by time-keeper. Thermometer 45.

Sunday Auguſt 1, proved a day of trial. Lying to among the cloſe ice, with the looſe ice driving faſt to ſhore, the Commodore was deſirous of ſurveying the weſternmoſt of the ſeven iſlands, which appeared the higheſt, in order to judge, from the proſpect on the hills, of the poſſibility of proceeding farther on the diſcovery. With this view they carried out their ice-anchors, and made both ſhips faſt to the main body, a practice very common with the fiſhing ſhips that annually frequent thoſe ſeas. Of the reconnoitring party, were the Captains, the ſecond lieutenants, one of the mathematicians, the pilots, and ſome choſen ſailors, ſelected from both ſhips. They ſet out about two in the morning, and ſometimes ſailing, ſometimes drawing their boats over the ice, they with difficulty reached the ſhore, where the firſt objects they ſaw were a herd of deer, ſo very tame, that they ſeemed as curious to gaze at the ſtrangers, as the ſtrangers were pleaſed to ſee them; for they came five or ſix together ſo near, that they might have been killed with the thruſt of a bayonet; a proof that animals are not naturally afraid of man, till, by the fate of their aſſociates, they are taught the danger of approaching them; a proof too, that animals are not deſtitute of reflection, otherwiſe how ſhould they conclude, that what has befallen their fellow animals, will certainly happen to them, if they run the like riſque. The gentlemen, however, ſuffered only one of theſe fearleſs innocents to be fired at, and that was done by a ſailor when they were abſent on obſervation.

On this iſland they gathered ſome ſcurvy-graſs, and in many places they could perceive the ſides of the hills covered with the verdure on which theſe deer undoubtedly fed.

After having aſcended the higheſt hills on the ſea-coaſt, and taken a view of the country and the ocean all round, the gentlemen deſcended, and about five in the afternoon embarked again on their return to the ſhips, at which they arrived ſafe about ten, after an abſence of 20 hours. They were greatly diſappointed by the hazineſs of the weather on the tops of the mountains, which confined the proſpect, and prevented their taking an obſervation with the inſtruments they had carried with them for that purpoſe.

There is here a ſmall variation in the journals of the two ſhips; that kept on board the Commodore making the diſtance between the iſland and the ſhips near 20 miles; the other only five leagues, which might eaſily happen, as the ſhips ſhifted their ſtations with the main body of ice, ſometimes driving N. W. ſometimes the contrary courſe, as the wind and tides happened to ſit.

Their ſituation now began to be ſerious, and it was diſcovered too late, that by grappling to the ice, as practiſed by the Greenlandmen, they had endangered the loſs of the ſhips, the looſe ice cloſing ſo faſt about them that they found it abſolutely impoſſible to get them diſengaged; and there was, beſides, great reaſon to fear, that one or both would ſoon be cruſhed to pieces. Great minds are ever moſt diſtinguiſhed by their expedients on the moſt alarming occaſions. The Commodore ſet all hands to work to form a dock in the ſolid ice, large enough to moor both ſhips; and by the alacrity with which that ſervice was performed, the ſhips were preſerved from the danger of immediate deſtruction.

The ſhips being thus far ſecured, the officers, pilots, and maſters, were all ſummoned on board the Commodore, to conſult on what further was to be done in their preſent unpromiſing ſituation; when it was unanimouſly agreed, that their deliverance was hopeleſs; and that they muſt either provide to winter upon the adjacent iſlands, or attempt to launch their boats into the open ſea, which was already at a conſiderable diſtance; for the looſe ice had poured into the bay in which they were at anchor with ſo much rapidity, and in ſuch aſtoniſhing quantities, that the open ſea was already far out of ſight. Before any thing farther was undertaken, the men were ordered to their quarters, that they might refreſh themſelves with ſleep.

While their commanders preſerve their fortitude, the ſailors never loſe their courage. They roſe in the morning with as much alacrity and unconcern, as if they had been ſailing with a fine breeze in the Britiſh Channel.

Auguſt 2, it was now thought adviſeable to make one deſperate attempt to extricate the ſhips, by cutting a channel to the weſtward into the open ſea. The ſcooping out the dock with ſo much expedition, by a party only of one ſhip, raiſed high expectations of what might be performed by the united labours of both the crews. No body of men ever undertook a work of ſuch difficulty with ſo much cheerfulneſs and confidence of ſucceſs, as the ſailors obſerved on this occaſion. Their ice-ſaws, axes, ſledges, poles, and the whole group of ſea-tools, were in an inſtant all employed in facilitating the work; but after cutting through blocks of ſolid ice from 8 to 15 feet deep, and coming to others of many fathoms, that exceeded the powers of man to ſeparate, that was laid aſide as a hopeleſs project; and another more promiſing, though not leſs laborious, adopted in its room.

On the 3rd of Auguſt, after the men had again refreſhed themſelves with ſleep, it was reſolved to fit up the boats belonging to both the ſhips with ſuch coverings as were moſt eaſy to be accommodated, and of lighteſt conveyance; and by ſkating them over the ice, endeavour to launch them in the open ſea. Could this be effected, they hoped, that by ſailing and rowing to the northernmoſt harbour of Spitſbergen, they might arrive at that iſland, before the departure of the laſt ſhips belonging to the fiſhery for Europe.

While the boats were getting ready for this expedition, a ſecond party were diſpatched to the iſland, with orders to take the diſtance as exact as it was poſſible to the neareſt open ſea. As all the people belonging to the ſhips were not to be engaged in theſe ſervices, thoſe who were unemployed diverted themſelves in hunting and killing the bears, that now, attracted perhaps by the ſavory ſmell of the proviſions dreſſed on board the ſhips, came every day over the ice to repeat their viſits. Several of theſe were killed occaſionally, and this day they fought a ſea-horſe, in which engagement the ſecond lieutenant of the Carcaſe ſignalized his courage in a moſt deſperate rencounter, in which, however, he ſucceeded, though his life was in imminent danger.

On the 4th the carpenters, &c. were ſtill employed in fitting up the boats. The pilots, who the day before had been ſent to make obſervations on the iſlands already mentioned, made their report, that the neareſt water they had ſeen was about 10 leagues to the weſtward; that in their paſſage they had met with great numbers of ſpars or pine trees, floating about the iſland, ſome of them of conſiderable ſize, with the bark rotted off, and the bodies much worm-eaten; that there was neither tree nor ſhrub to be ſeen growing on any of the ſeven iſlands, nor upon any land that they had yet diſcovered in that latitude, nor for 10 deg. farther S. and that the trees they had ſeen muſt therefore have come from a great diſtance.

Though there is nothing new in this obſervation, the like being annually obſerved by all the navigators who frequent thoſe ſeas in the ſummer, and who collect their wood from thoſe drifts, yet the country from whence they proceed has hitherto been thought a myſtery. But it being now certain, that many of the great rivers that flow through the northernmoſt parts of Ruſſia, empty themſelves into this ſea; and that there is an open communication throughout the different parts of it at different ſeaſons of the year, there ſeems very little reaſon to doubt, but that thoſe trees are torn up by land floods, and are precipitated into the ſea by the rapidity of the ſtreams.

It has indeed been objected, that all the wood that is found floating in this manner about the iſlands in high latitudes, is to a piece barked and worm-eaten; and that if theſe trees were torn up and precipitated into the ſea in the manner above ſuppoſed, ſome of it would appear ſound and unbarked, as in its firſt ſtate. To this it may be anſwered, that were the courſe of the tides to run as conſtantly to the northward, as the courſe of the rivers runs into the ſea, this objection would be unanſwerable. But the very reverſe is known to be the fact; and that neither the winds nor the tides tend to the northwards for any conſiderable part of the year; ſo that from the time theſe trees enter the ocean, it muſt, in the ordinary courſe of things, be many ages before they can reach the latitudes in which they are now found. Becauſe, if they are driven northwards by the ſtrength of a ſtorm from the ſouth, they will be driven in another direction by the next ſtorm that happens from another quarter; and all the while the calm continues, they will be driven to and fro by the tides, which, as has been obſerved, ſeldom ſet long to the north, therefore, being in continual motion for ages, or being caſt upon the ſhore by tempeſts, or high tides, and lying there expoſed to the air, till tempeſts or high tides return them again to the ocean, they will, in a long progreſſion of time, be reduced to the ſtate in which they are conſtantly found. This ſolution is, however, offered with diffidence. The fact is certain, of much wood being annually found about the iſlands in queſtion; and it is now of little importance from whence it proceeds, as a paſſage by the north-eaſt to China will probably never more be ſought.

On the 5th they had gentle breezes; but about four in the morning ſmall fleet. The ice ſtill ſurrounding them, and appearing to grow more and more ſolid and fixed, thoſe who had till now retained hopes that the ſouth-eaſt wind would again diſunite its ſubſtance, and open a paſſage for their deliverance, began to deſpair, as the wind had blown for twenty-four hours from that quarter, from which alone they could have relief, and not the leaſt alteration to be perceived. The men, however, were as joyous as ever, and ſhewed not the leaſt concern about the danger of their ſituation.

Early in the morning, the man at the maſt head of the Carcaſe gave notice, that three bears were making their way very faſt over the ice, and that they were directing their courſe towards the ſhip. They had, without queſtion, been invited by the ſcent of the blubber of the ſea-horſe killed a few days before, which the men had ſet on fire, and which was burning on the ice at the time of their approach. They proved to be a ſhe bear and her two cubs; but the cubs were nearly as large as the dam. They ran eagerly to the fire, and drew out from the flames part of the fleſh of the ſea-horſe that remained unconſumed, and eat it voraciouſly. The crew from the ſhip, by way of diverſion, threw great lumps of the fleſh of the ſea-horſe which they had ſtill left, out upon the ice, which the old bear fetched away ſingly, laid each lump before her cubs as ſhe brought it, and dividing it, gave each a ſhare, reſerving but a ſmall portion to herſelf. As ſhe was fetching away the laſt piece they had to beſtow, they levelled their muſkets at the cubs, and ſhot them both dead; and in her retreat, they alſo wounded the dam, but not mortally. It would have drawn tears of pity from any but unfeeling minds, to have marked the affectionate concern expreſſed by this poor beaſt, in the dying moments of her expiring young. Though ſhe was ſorely wounded, and could but juſt crawl to the place where they lay, ſhe carried the lump of fleſh ſhe had fetched away, as ſhe had done the others before, tore it in pieces, and laid it down before them, and when ſhe ſaw that they refuſed to eat, ſhe laid her paws firſt upon one, and then upon the other, and endeavoured to raiſe them up. All this while it was pitiful to hear her moan. When ſhe found ſhe could not ſtir them, ſhe went off, and when ſhe had got at ſome diſtance, looked back and moaned; and that not availing her to entice them away, ſhe returned, and ſmelling round them, began to lick their wounds. She went off a ſecond time, as before, and having crawled a few paces, looked again behind her, and for ſome time ſtood moaning. But ſtill her cubs not riſing to follow her, ſhe returned to them again, and with ſigns of inexpreſſible fondneſs, went round one and round the other, pawing them, and moaning. Finding at laſt that they were cold and lifeleſs, ſhe raiſed her head towards the ſhip, and, like Caliban in the Tempeſt, growled a curſe upon the murderers, which they returned with a volley of muſket-balls. She fell between her cubs, and died licking their wounds. If what is related by a voyager of credit in the laſt century be true, the filial fondneſs of theſe animals is no leſs remarkable than the maternal. The young ones, ſays he, keep conſtantly cloſe to the old ones. We obſerved that two young ones and an old one would not leave one another, for if one ran away, it turned back again immediately, as ſoon as it did hear the others in danger, as if it would come to help them. The old one ran to the young one, and the young one to the old one; and rather than they would leave one another, they would ſuffer themſelves to be all killed.

Friday the 6th, the weather calm, but foggy, and the winds variable; they diſcovered that the drift of the ſhip, with the whole body of ice, inclined faſt to the eaſtward; and that they were already embayed in the very middle of the ſeven iſlands. They therefore ſent off the pilots of both ſhips, with a party of ſailors, to the northernmoſt iſland, to ſee what diſcoveries could be made from the promontories there. They returned at night, after a fatiguing journey, with a diſmal account, that nothing was to be ſeen from thence but a vaſt continent of ice, of which there was no end; and that the thought of wintering in ſuch a ſituation was more dreadful, than that of periſhing by inſtant death.

Saturday 7, the wind ſet in N. N. E. veered to the N. to the N. E. and E. piercing cold. This day the boats were all brought in readineſs on the ice, fitted with weather cloaths about 13 inches above the gunnels, in order to keep off the cold as much as poſſible, if by good fortune they ſhould be enabled to launch them in an open ſea. This day was employed chiefly in boiling proviſions to put in the boats for the intended voyage; in delivering out bags to the men to carry their bread, and in packing up ſuch neceſſaries as every one could take along with him; for now every man was to be his own porter, the neceſſary proviſions and liquors being found load enough for the boats, and twenty-five days bread load enough for each man. This being adjuſted, when night approached they were all ordered on board to ſleep.

Thurſday 8, at ſix in the morning all hands were ordered to turn out, and a detachment of fifty men from each ſhip, headed by their reſpective officers, were appointed to begin the hard taſk of hauling the launces along the ice. The braveſt and gallanteſt actions performed in war, do not ſo ſtrikingly mark the true character of a ſea commander, as the readineſs and alacrity with which his orders are obeyed in times of imminent danger. Every one now ſtrove who ſhould have the honour to be liſted in the band of haulers, of whom the Commodore took the direction, leaving Capt. Lutwych to take care of both the ſhips, that if any favourable turn ſhould happen in the diſpoſition of the ice, he might make uſe of the remaining part of both the crews to improve it. Upon a general conſultation of officers, previous to this undertaking, it had been agreed, and an order iſſued accordingly, that no perſon on board, of whatever rank, ſhould encumber himſelf with more cloaths than what he wore upon his back. Upon this occaſion, therefore, the officers dreſſed themſelves in flannels, and the common men put on the cloaths which the officers had thrown off. It was inconceivably laughable to ſee theſe motley bands yoked in their new harneſs; and, to ſay the truth, there was not one ſolemn face among the two companies. That headed by the Commodore drew ſtoutly for the honour of their leader, and that headed by their Lieutenants had their muſic to play to them, that they might dance it away, and keep pace with the Commander in chief. Indeed the officers who headed them were deſervedly beloved as well as their commanders, particularly lieutenant Beard, whoſe ſteady and uniform conduct in times of the greateſt danger, cannot be ſufficiently admired or applauded. Neither ſwayed by paſſion, nor diſconcerted by the ſudden embarraſſments that often intervened, his conduct was always calm, and his orders reſolute. He never was heard, during the whole voyage on the moſt preſſing emergencies, to enforce his commands with an oath, or to call a ſailor by any other than his uſual name; and ſo ſenſible were they of his manly behaviour, that, when the ſhip was paid off at Deptford, they were only prevented by his moſt earneſt requeſt from ſtripping themſelves to their ſhirts, to cover the ſtreets with their cloaths, that he might not tread in the dirt in going to take coach.

In ſix hours, with the utmoſt efforts of human labour, they had only proceeded a ſingle mile; and now it was time for them to dine, and recruit their almoſt exhauſted ſpirits. As the Commodore had laboured with them, it was in character that he ſhould dine with them alſo; and an accident happened that made it neceſſary for him ſo to do. The cook, with his mates, (who were bringing the Commodore and the officers their dinners under covers, to keep out the cold after coming from a warm fire-ſide) had made a little too free with the brandy bottle before they ſet out, and before they had got half way to the launces, the liquor began to operate; the cooks were ſometimes very near boarding each other, ſometimes they hauled off, and ſometimes ſteered right a-head. At length coming to a chaſm, or parting of the ice, which they were obliged to leap, down came the maſter cook, with diſh, cover, meat and all; and what was ſtill worſe, though it was not then thought of much value, the Commodore's common ſervice of plate, which the cook carried for the officers to dine on, fell in the chaſm, and inſtantly ſunk to the bottom. This accident brought the cook a little to himſelf, and he now ſtood pauſing whether he ſhould jump down the gulph after the plate, or proceed to the Commodore to beg mercy and make his apology. His mates perſuaded him to the latter, as the Commodore was a kind-hearted gemman, and would never take a man's life away for a ſlip on the ice. Beſides, it was a great jump for a fat man, and Commodore, they were ſure, had rather loſe all the plate in the great cabin, then loſe cookie. Comforted a little by this ſpeech, the cook proceeded, but let his mates go on firſt with what remained, to carry the tidings of what befell the reſt. When the Commodore had heard the ſtory, he judged how it was with them all. But where, is the cook, ſaid he to the mates? He's crying behind, an pleaſe your honour. In the mean time the cook came up. Cook, ſaid the Commodore, bring me your dinner. I will dine to-day with my comrades. My dinner! Ay, a pound of the fleſh next my heart, if your honour likes it. The promptneſs of the reply ſhewed the ſincerity of the cook's good-will, and pleaſed the Commodore better than a feaſt upon turtle. He diſmiſſed him with a ſmile, and partook with the officers in what was left, who made up their dinners with a meſs from the common men.

They had juſt begun to renew their labour, when word was brought, that the whole body of ice had changed its ſituation, and was moving to the weſtward; that the ſhips were both a-float; and that the ice was parting. The joy which this news diffuſed through the two companies of haulers is eaſier to conceive than expreſs. They inſtantly ſhook off their harneſs, ran to aſſiſt in working the ſhips, and once more to reſume their proper employments. When they arrived at the ſhips, Captain Lutwych, who was no leſs beloved by his men than the Commodore, had by his example and his judicious directions done wonders. Both ſhips were not only a-float, with their ſails ſet, but actually cut and warped through the ice near half a mile. This ray of hope, however, was ſoon darkened; the body of ice ſuddenly aſſumed its former direction to the eaſtward, and cloſed upon them again as faſt as ever. While the ſhips remained in the ice-dock, they were laſhed together for their greater ſecurity, but now being launched and a-float, the ice preſſed upon them with ſuch weight, that it was every moment expected that the hawſer would break that held them together; orders were therefore given, that the hawſer ſhould be ſlackened, and the ſhips releaſed.

For the remainder of the evening, and till two in the morning, the drift continued eaſtward, and all that while the ſhips were in danger of being cruſhed by the cloſing of the channel in which they rode. They had now drifted two miles to the eaſtward; the men were worn out with fatigue in defending the ſhips with their ice-poles from being engulphed; and now nothing but ſcenes of horror and perdition appeared before their eyes. But the Omnipotent, in the very moment, when every hope of deliverance from their own united endeavours had relinquiſhed them, interpoſed in their favour, and cauſed the winds to blow, and the ice to part in an aſtoniſhing manner, rending and cracking with a tremendous noiſe, ſurpaſſing that of the loudeſt thunder. At this very inſtant the whole continent of ice, which before was extended beyond the reach of ſight from the higheſt mountains, moved together in various directions, ſplitting and dividing into vaſt bodies, and forming hills and plains of various figures and dimenſions. All hearts were now again revived, and the proſpect of being once more releaſed from the frozen chains of the north inſpired the men with freſh vigour. Every officer and every idler on board laboured now for life. The ſails were all ſpread, that the ſhips might have the full advantage of the breeze to force them through the channels that were already opened, and to help them, like wedges, to rend the clefts that were but juſt cracking.

While the major part of the crews were employed in warping the ſhips with ice-anchors, axes, ſaws and poles, a party from both ſhips were diſpatched to launch the boats. This was no eaſy taſk to accompliſh. The ice, though ſplit in many thouſand pieces, was yet frozen like an iſland round the launces, and though it was of no great extent, yet the boats were of a weight hardly to be moved by the ſmall force that could be ſpared to launch them. They were beſides, by the driving of the ice, at more than five miles diſtance from the ſhips; and at this time no channels of communication were yet opened. But Providence was manifeſt even on this occaſion; for the iſland on which the launces ſtood, parted while the men were hauling them, and by that lucky circumſtance they were launched with great facility, without the loſs of a man, though the ice cracked, as it were, under their feet.

The people on board had not been able to force their way with the ſhips much more than a mile, when the party in the launces joined them. And now, excited by what curioſity or inſtinct is not eaſy to determine, ſeveral bears came poſting over the ice to be ſpectators of their departure, and advanced ſo near the ſhips, that they might have been eaſily maſtered, had not the men been more ſeriouſly employed.

This day they altered their ſoundings from thirty to fifty fathoms, and from fifty to eighty and eighty-five fathoms.

The breeze continuing freſh from E. S. E. and E. the ice ſeemed to open as faſt as it had before cloſed when the wind blew weſterly, and from the north; a ſtrong preſumptive proof of land to the eaſtward, which ſtopping the current of the looſe ice in driving from the north and weſt, cloſes it in courſe, and renders it compact. On the contrary, when the wind blows off the land, and the current ſets to the ſea, the looſe ice being no longer oppoſed, diſperſes itſelf again in the ocean, where it again floats, till the ſame cauſe produces the ſame effect. If therefore the land which our voyagers ſaw on the 30th, and which they could not determine with certainty to be an iſland, ſhould, upon ſome future occaſion, be diſcovered to be a continent, then the cloſing of the looſe ice ſo ſuddenly about the ſeven iſlands, and its crouding one piece upon another to a great height, when violently agitated by tempeſts from the north or weſt, will be fully and naturally accounted for.

Tueſday the 10th, about two in the morning, the fog being thick, and the weather calm, and the men very much fatigued, they were ordered to their quarters, to refreſh themſelves with ſleep. It was, beſides, very cold, and much rain fell; and as the wind was variable, they could make but little progreſs. The ice, in the morning early, ſeemed rather to cloſe upon them, than to divide; and being apprehenſive for their boats, they attempted to hoiſt the launces on board, but that belonging to the Carcaſe, being either too unwieldy, or the men too much fatigued to effect it, they flung her to the ſhip's ſide.

About eight the breeze ſprung up freſh from the N. E. exceedingly cold, but opening the ice to the weſtward. They then made all the ſail they could, driving with the looſening ice, and parting it wherever it was moveable with their whole force. Towards noon they loſt ſight of the Seven Iſlands. And in a very little while after, to their great joy, Spitſbergen was ſeen from the maſt-head.

Wedneſday 11, the men who, with hard labour, cold and watching, were much diſpirited, on the proſpect of a ſpeedy deliverance, and ſeeing the ice no longer adhere in immoveable bodies, began, after a little refreſhment, to reſume their wonted cheerfulneſs. They had not till the ſecond cloſing of the ice, after the attempt to dig a paſſage through it had proved ineffectual, and that the hauling the launces had been tried with little better ſucceſs, diſcovered the leaſt deſpondency. But when they had exerted their utmoſt efforts, and Providence, which at firſt ſeemed to ſecond their endeavours, appeared to have forſaken them; when their pilots had filled their minds with the terrors of their ſituation; and their officers had given the ſhips and their moſt valuable effects over for loſt, the men then began to reflect on the hardſhips they were likely to ſuffer, and to be impreſſed with the ſenſe of their common danger. Their apprehenſions, however, were but temporary, and the moment they were releaſed from their icey priſon, and that they were within ſight of a clear ſea, their ſorrow was changed to mirth, and their melancholy to rejoicing. Feſtivity and jollity took place of abſtinence and gloomy apprehenſions; and before they arrived at Spitſbergen, there was not a ſailor on board with a ſerious face.

The ice that had parted from the main body, they had now time to admire. As it no longer obſtructed their courſe, the various ſhapes in which the broken fragments appeared, were indeed very curious and amuſing. One remarkable piece deſcribed a magnificent arch ſo large and compleatly formed, that a ſloop of conſiderable burden might have ſailed through it without lowering her maſt; another repreſented a church with windows and pillars, and domes; and a third, a table with icicles hanging round it like the fringes of a damaſk cloth. A fertile imagination might here find entertainment enough; for, as has already been obſerved, the ſimilitude of all that art or nature has ever yet produced, might here be fancied.

They continued working all this day through the looſe ice. Hacluit's Headland bearing ſouth 39 weſt, and in their courſe ſaw a Dutch Greenlandman in the S. W. quarter.

Thurſday the 12th, they cleared the ice, and bore away with all ſails ſet for the harbour of Smearingburg, in which they had before caſt anchor. At two in the afternoon they anchored in North Bay, the north part of Vogle Sound bearing north 45 eaſt, diſtance about four miles. At half after four the Commodore made the ſignal to weigh; and half paſt nine, came to an anchor in their former ſtation, where they found four Dutch Greenlandmen lying in readineſs to depart. Theſe Dutchmen acquainted the Commodore, that all the Engliſh fiſhing ſhips ſet ſail on the 10th of July, the day to which they are obliged by contract, to ſtay to entitle their owners to receive the bounty-money, allowed by Parliament for the encouragement of that fiſhery.

About the ſame time the greateſt part of the Dutch ſet ſail likewiſe from Spitſbergen, on their voyage home; but it is a practice with theſe laſt, to take it by turns to wait till the ſeverity of the weather obliges them to leave the coaſt, in order to pick up ſuch men as may by accident have loſt their ſhips in the ice; and who, notwithſtanding, may have had the good fortune to ſave their lives by means of their boats. This is a very humane inſtitution, and does credit to the Dutch Government. Did the Britiſh Government bear an equal regard for individuals, ſo many valuable ſubjects would never be ſuffered to migrate, as now annually hire ſhips to convey themſelves to ſeek their fortunes in new ſettlements. It is eſtimated, that twelve thouſand at leaſt are yearly ſhipt off from Ireland, and not many leſs from England and Scotland, yet no meaſures are thought neceſſary to be taken to retain them at home.

The turn of waiting at Spitſbergen falls annually to the lot of about five Dutch ſhips, who are obliged to ſend out their boats daily in ſearch of their unfortunate fellow ſubjects; ſome of theſe boats have themſelves ſuffered ſeverely, and have been detained ſeven or eight days by ſevere weather in theſe excurſions, to the great anxiety of their friends.

The day of our voyagers return to Smearingburg Harbour being fine, the Commodore ordered a tent to be raiſed on the lower point to the S. W. where there was a level plain for the ſpace of two miles, and where all the mathematical apparatus were again taken on ſhore for a ſecond trial.

They found, on the examination of the vibration of the pendulum, that it differed from that at Greenwich by Harriſon's time-keeper, only two ſeconds in forty-eight hours; which time-keeper, at their arrival at Greenwich, varied only one ſecond and a half from the time-pieces at the obſervatory there. Mr. Robinſon, who was articled to Commodore Phipps, from Chriſt's Hoſpital, and who does honour to that noble foundation, was particularly careful to note the reſult of all the obſervations that were made in this high latitude.

The ovens were alſo here taken on ſhore, and a conſiderable quantity of good ſoft bread baked for the refreſhment of the men.

Hacluit's Headland, of which mention has been frequently made in the courſe of this voyage, is an iſland on the N. W. point of Spitſbergen, about 15 miles in circumference, on which is found plenty of ſcurvy-graſs; and in the valleys, ſome of which extend from two to three miles, there is ſtore of other graſs in ſummer, on which the deer is ſuppoſed to feed.

The people were now fully employed in overhauling the rigging, tarring the ſhips ſides, taking in water, paying and ſecuring the maſts, and in preparing the ſhips for purſuing their voyage upon diſcovery; or, if that was found impracticable, for returning home.

On the 16th, two of the Dutch ſhips weighed anchor, and ſailed away in company.

On the 17th, vaſt pieces of broken ice, ſuppoſed to have fallen from the Icebergs, came floating into harbour. When theſe pieces, which are undermined by the continual agitation of the ſea in ſtormy weather, loſe their ſupport, they tumble with a crack that ſurpaſſes the loudeſt thunder; but they were told, that no other thunder was ever heard in this latitude.

The activity and enterprizing ſpirit of the Ruſſians already noticed, begin to manifeſt itſelf every where, and it is not improbable, but that the maritime powers may one day or other have cauſe to repent their emulation in contributing to aggrandize the naval power of that increaſing people. The dominions of the Ruſſian empire, are ſituated to command the trade of the univerſe; they are now actually erecting a yard for building ſhips at Kamptſchatka, to improve their diſcoveries from that quarter, and to open a trade from thence to China. They have attempted to ſettle colonies, as our voyagers were told, on the ſouthermoſt diſtricts of Spitſbergen, and thoſe of the new ſettlers, who ſurvived the firſt winter, were preparing to encounter the rigour of the climate in a ſecond. This can only be done by way of experiment, to try if a ſettlement is practicable, for thoſe now ſent are ſaid to be criminals.

During the ſix days which the ſhips anchored here to make obſervations, take in water, refreſh the men, and refit, our journaliſt made ſeveral excurſions to the adjoining iſlands, where the birds appeared in aſtoniſhing numbers; it being the ſeaſon for bringing forth their young, and teaching them to fly, and to dive.

Of all the birds that breed in theſe iſlands, the burgermaſter is the largeſt, and the moſt ravenous; he is ſo called by the Dutch, from his ſize and his authority, as he holds all the other birds in ſubjection. His bill is long and crooked, rather like that of the ſtork, than that of the hawk, and is of a yellow colour. He has a red ring about his eyes; is web-footed, but has but three claws on each foot. His wings are of a beautiful pearl colour, edged with white; his back a ſilver grey; his body white as ſnow, and his tail of the ſame colour, which when he flies he ſpreads like a fan. He builds his neſt very high in the rocks, inacceſſible either to bears or foxes. He preys upon all the other birds, and eats the carrion of fiſh or fleſh, or whatever comes in his way. His cry is horrible, and when he ſcreams, the mallemuch, a bird as large as a duck, is ſo much intimidated, that ſhe will ſink down, and ſuffer him to devour her without oppoſition.

Our journaliſt found it very dangerous to purſue his way over the hills and precipices in this rugged country. The clefts on the mountains are like thoſe in the ice frequently impaſſable; but they are abundantly more hazardous, being ſometimes concealed under the ſnow, ſo that a traveller is engulphed before he is aware. Many have been entombed in theſe clifts, and periſhed in the hearing of their companions, without a poſſibility of relief. To a contemplative mind, however, even the deformities of nature, are not unpleaſing, the wiſdom of the Creator being manifeſt in all his works.

On the 19th of Auguſt the ſhips unmoored, and on the 20th they cleared the harbour. They found the tide to flow N. E. and S. W. and to riſe three feet ſeven inches perpendicular in height.

On the 22nd, they again found themſelves beſet with looſe ice. They were then in latitude 80 deg. 14 min. N. longitude 5 deg. 44 min. E.

On the 22nd, they had a heavy ſea from the S. W. quarter.

On the 23rd, the Carcaſe, being a heavier ſailer than the Race Horſe, loſt ſight of the Commodore, and fired a ſix pounder, which was anſwered. In the evening they came in ſight, and purſued their courſe with favourable weather, and without any thing worthy of notice happening till

September 5, when, being clear and calm weather, the Commodore ſounded, and found ground with 700 fathoms, very ſoft mud. The people were employed eight hours in heaving up the lead with the capſtan. At three in the morning the ſun riſen, took the amplitude, and found the variation to be 22 deg. 53 min. W.

September 7, at five in the afternoon, they had heavy ſqualls, with rain; at ſeven in the morning moderate weather. This day, in 60 deg. 15 min. W. they found their longitude, corrected by obſervation of ſun and moon, to be 5 deg. 59 min. E. Longitude by time-keeper 4 deg. 45 min. E. a very remarkable difference.

The ſhips purſued their courſe home in company together, with high ſeas and variable weather, till September 11, when, at half after ten, the night dark, and the weather moderate, the wind all at once veered to the ſouthward, and a ſtrong gale with a great ſea came on. The ſhips parted, and never more came in ſight till they met off Harwich, on the Engliſh coaſt.

Our journaliſt being on board the Carcaſe, can now only relate what happened to that ſloop, till her arrival in the River Thames.

When the gale came on, the Commodore's lights not appearing, the Carcaſe fired a ſix-pounder, but that ſhot not being returned by the Race Horſe, it was concluded, that the Commodore was at too great a diſtance to hear the ſignal. At four in the morning the gale increaſing, they cloſe reefed the top-ſails, and employed all hands in laſhing and ſecuring the boats and booms, and preparing to withſtand the threatening ſtorm. At this time they were in latitude 57 deg. 44 min. N. the Naze of Norway bearing S. 88 E. diſtant 31 leagues.

Sunday, September 12, freſh gales, with frequent ſhowers of rain: handed gib and ſtay-ſail; at two in the afternoon hard ſqualls and violent ſhowers of rain; handed fore and mizen top-ſail; ſaw a ſail to ſouthward ſtanding to eaſtward; cloudy and obſcure ſky: at ten at night came on ſuddenly a very heavy ſquall; handed all the top-ſails; ſtrong gale, with ſevere ſhowers of rain. At midnight blowing a violent ſtorm of wind, reefed and handed the main-ſail and foreſail; lowered down the lower yards, balanced the mizen, and laid the ſhip to under it, with her head to the weſtward; the ſea making a free paſſage over the ſhip. Shipped ſuch heavy ſeas, waſhed all the proviſions and caſks that were laſhed on the deck, overboard; kept two pumps continually going; obliged to ſkuttle the boats, to prevent their being waſhed overboard. At four in the morning ſhipped ſuch heavy ſeas, as waſhed all the booms and ſpars that had been with all poſſible care ſecured on the deck, over-board. The ſhip moſtly under water. No ſight of the Commodore; under great apprehenſions for his ſafety, as his veſſel laboured much more than ours. At this time one of the mates, the carpenter, and a fore-maſtman, were waſhed over-board. The carpenter, a very careful ſober man, who was in the waſte, ſecuring the hatches and ſtores, was waſhed in and out at the port three times, before he could ſecure himſelf. At ten in the morning rather moderate. Set the mizen-ſtay-ſail; ſwayed the lower yards up, and ſet the courſes. At half paſt eleven, ſtrong ſqualls and heavy guſts; handed both courſes; and ſettled the lower yards.

September 13, ſtrong gales and ſqually. Continually ſhipping heavy ſeas. At three in the afternoon rather more moderate; ſet reef courſes; ſwayed up the lower yards, and ſet the main-top-ſail. The ſhip now making no water; at ſeven in the evening ſet fore-top ſail and gib; very heavy ſea from S. W. quarter. At eight in the evening moderate and cloudy; let the third reef out of the main-top-ſail; ſounded 35 fathoms fine brown ſand. At one in the morning light airs, hazey weather, and great ſea. Wore ſhip, and ſtood to weſtward. At four freſh breezes, with rain. At half paſt eight ſaw a ſail to eaſtward; ſuppoſing it the Commodore, made the private ſignal, and fired a ſix-pounder. At nine bore down upon her, and brought her to. She proved a Hollander from Archangel, bound to Bremen. Courſe S. 42 W. latitude 56 deg. 4 min. N.

September 14, ſtrong gales, and cloudy; under reef courſes. At two in the afternoon moderate; ſet main-top-ſail. At three ſet fore-top-ſail; a great ſea from weſtward. At ſeven in the evening moderate and cloudy. Out the third reef of the main-top-ſail; uncertain weather; ſqually, and at times much rain; at three great fog. This day at noon, Flamborough-head S. 46 W. diſtance 30 leagues.

September 15, light breezes, and clear weather; out all reefs, and ſwayed up the lower yards. At four in the afternoon ſaw a ſail to the S. E. bore down and brought her to. She proved to be a Pruſſian fiſherman, had been 10 days from Edinburgh; hoiſted out the ſmall cutter; the ſecond lieutenant went on board of her, and bought a fine cargo of fiſh. At five the boat returned; we hoiſted her on board, with plenty of mackarel and herrings. Made ſail, and ſtood to S. W. ſounded every half hour; found from 13 to 15 and 18 fathoms, fine brown ſand, mixed with black ſhells. At ſeven in the evening took the firſt reef, and hauled in the top-ſails; freſh gales and cloudy. At two in the morning deepened in water to 20 fathom. Took in ſecond reef of the top-ſails; tacked ſhip, and ſtood to N. W. At five in the morning got into 15 fathom; and at ſeven into 10. At nine in the morning cloſe reefed the top ſails, and at 10 handed them; very freſh gale, and violent rain.

September 16, rather more moderate; ſet the main-top-ſail; ſqually, with rain; a confuſed ſea from W. N. W. At five in the afternoon ſoundings from 5 to 12, from 27 to 32 and 34 fathoms, fine brown ſand, black ſpecks, freſh gales and cloudy. At eight took in firſt and ſecond reefs of top-ſails; at eleven at night cloſe reefed the main and fore-top-ſail, and handed the mizen; freſh gales, and cloudy weather. At four in the morning ſhoaled water to 22 fathoms; brown ſand and broken ſhells. At five ſaw ſeveral ſail to N. W. fired, and brought one of them to. At eight ſhook the firſt and ſecond reefs out of the top-ſail; hove down upon a ſloop, which came from Graveſend; took on board the maſter, as a pilot to carry the ſhip through Yarmouth Roads; put on board one man in his room, and ordered his veſſel to follow us. Stood to the ſouthward.

September 17, freſh breezes, and cloudy weather; kept the lead going every half hour; found our ſounding from 10 to 12 fathom, fine brown ſand. At ſix in the afternoon freſh gales; cloſe reefed the main-top-ſail; ſoundings from 10 to 16 fathom; broken ſhells and large ſtones. At ſeven cloſe reefed the main-top-ſail; kept a light in the poop-lanthorn for the ſloop. At ten ſtrong gales; handed the top-ſails; laid her to under the main-ſail; handed the fore-ſail. At eleven at night got into five fathom; but deepened to eight, nine and ten fathom brown ſand. Loſt ſight of the fiſhing veſſel; fired ſeveral guns, and made a ſignal in the mizen-ſhroud. On ſetting the fore-top-ſail ſtay-ſail, it blew to pieces; bent a new one. A violent gale of wind; ſhipped a great quantity of water. At four rather moderate; ſet the fore-ſail. At midnight ſet cloſe; reefed top-ſails. At half paſt ſix tacked; at ſeven ſaw the fiſhing veſſel; bore down and ſpoke with her, who had ſplit her main-ſail in the night. At ten ſaw the land bearing S. W. by W. and S. and by W. At eleven being clear and moderate weather, ſhook all the reefs out of the top-ſails, and ſet the top-gallant-ſails; ſaw Cromer light-houſe bearing S. 55 deg. W. diſtance five leagues.

September 19, freſh breezes and clear weather; bent the ſheet-cable, and hauled a range of the beſt and ſmall bower-cables; bent both buoy ropes and buoys to the anchor. At five light breezes and fair; tacked and ſtood to the ſouthward. At ſix tacked and ſtood to the north-weſt. Cramer N. W. and by N. four miles; light breezes, and pleaſant weather; handed in top-gallant-ſails, and handed the main-ſail. At ſeven in the evening, to our great joy, ſaw Yarmouth Church, bearing S. W. At ten at night came to anchor with the beſt bower in twelve fathom, fine ſand and clay; veered out to half a cable, and handed all the ſails. Winterſtone Neſs lights bore S. and by W. four miles. At two in the morning freſh breezes and cloudy. At half paſt four weighed and made ſail. Employed in working from Winterſtone Neſs lights, to Yarmouth Roads, making ſeveral tacks. At ſeven in the morning ſet top-gallant-ſails; at nine came to an anchor in Yarmouth Road, with beſt bower in ſeven fathoms water; ſand and clay. Yarmouth church ſouth fifteen weſt, diſtance two miles. Came on board a pilot to carry the ſhip to the Nore.

September 20, freſh breezes and clear weather; ſent down top-gallant-yards, and got every thing clear for ſtriking tokens. At five in the afternoon moored the ſhip. Yarmouth church W. S. W. two miles.

September 21, freſh gales and cloudy, with frequent rain. At four in the afternoon ſent down top-gallant-maſt. At eight in the morning ſent the long-boat on ſhore for water. We were this day viſited by ſeveral of the inhabitants of Norwich and Yarmouth, who were genteelly entertained by the officers, but we could get no intelligence of the Commodore.

September 23, dark cloudy weather. At ſix in the evening ſwayed up the top-maſt, and lower yards; the wind veered to N. W. we prepared to unmoor. Freſh gales, with frequent flaſhes of lightning. At ſeven in the morning ſet on top-gallant-maſt, and began to unmoor. At eight veered away upon the beſt bower, and took up the ſmall bower-anchor. At nine weighed and made ſail. At ten got up the top-gallant-yards, in company with ſeveral ſhips.

Saturday 25, at five came to an anchor in eleven fathoms. Orford light-houſe E. by S. four miles. This day ſome religious books were diſtributed among the ſailors, which had been ſent on board by ſome pious perſon for their particular peruſal.

Sunday 26. At ſix in the evening came to with the beſt bower in ſeven fathoms water; Balſey church W. by S. At two in the morning weighed, and came to ſail; Harwich lights N. W. by W. To their great ſurpriſe ſaw the Race Horſe at anchor. Hoiſted out the cutter, and Captain Lutwych waited on the Commodore, from whom he learnt, that in the ſtorm of the twelfth they had all their boats waſhed over-board; and to eaſe the ſhip were obliged to heave all their guns over-board, except two. Came to anchor; Harwich church N. W.

Monday 27, at two in the afternoon weighed, and came to ſail in company with the Race Horſe. At eight in the evening came to in the Swin. At five in the morning weighed, in company as before. Turning up the Swin at half paſt nine, came to; Whitaker Beacon N. N. E. one mile.

Tueſday 28, freſh breezes and cloudy weather. At half paſt three weighed, and came to ſail. At half paſt ſix came to with the beſt bower in ſix fathom water; Shoe Beacon N. W. At half paſt five weighed, and came to ſail. Working to windward at eleven in the forenoon, the Commodore's boat came on board, with orders to proceed to Deptford. At noon came to at the Nore with the beſt bower.

Wedneſday 29, light breezes and fair weather. At half paſt five weighed, and made ſail. Employed in working up the river. At half paſt ten came to the the beſt bower in the gallions, in three fathoms water. Woolwich church N. by S. one half E. At noon a hoy came along-ſide for the gunner's ſtores.

Thurſday 30, employed moſt of the afternoon in getting out the guns, and gunner's ſtores. At nine in the evening weighed, and came to ſail. At ten run foul of a large tranſport, and carried away the larboard mizen-ſhrouds, and part of the channel. At one in the morning came to anchor at Deptford. Warped alongſide the Bedford Hulk, and moored. At ſix unbent the ſails, and began to unrig.

Thus ended a voyage, which ſeems to have determined the queſtion ſo much agitated concerning the navigation to the north pole, and proved what Captain Wood had before aſſerted, that no paſſage would ever be found practicable in that direction.

From the quantities of ice which that navigator met with in latitude 76 degrees north, he concluded indeed erroneouſly, that the 80th degree, would bound the paſſage towards the poles, and that from thence the polar regions was either a continued continent of ſolid ice, or that land filled up the intermediate ſpace.

It has been found, however, that thoſe ſeas are navigable as far as 81 and 82 deg. of latitude; and it may poſſibly happen, that in ſome future years, they may be found navigable a degree or two farther: but it may now with certainty be concluded, that a courſe under the pole can never be purſued for the purpoſe of commerce.

We have already ſhewn inconteſtibly, that the north ſea communicates with the eaſtern ſea, and that the paſſage to China and Japan may be performed with difficulty by a N. E. courſe, by watching the opportunity, when a few days in the year the north ſea is open. But who would think of expoſing a ſhip's company to the hazard of being frozen to death in a tedious, uncertain, and dangerous paſſage, when a ſafe, certain, and, one may ſay, ſpeedy paſſage at all times lies open before them.

From Behring's diſcoveries to the eaſt of Japan, and from the continent he there met with, there ſeems reaſon to believe, that the land ſeen by Commodore Phipps to the eaſtward of the Seven Iſlands, might be a continuation of that continent. In that caſe it is not improbable, but that either that continent may join to the weſtern part of America, or that it may extend ſouthward, and form a part of that continent ſo much ſought after in the ſouthern hemiſphere.

A ſmall premium of two or three thouſand pounds ſecured by Parliament, to be paid to the owner or owners of any Greenland fiſhing ſhip, that ſhould be fortunate enough to diſcover ſuch a continent to the eaſtward or northward of the Seven Iſlands, might poſſibly have a better effect, than many expenſive expeditions fitted out ſolely for the purpoſes of ſuch diſcovery. This, by a trading nation, were it only to improve the ſcience of geography, would ſurely be well beſtowed.

It is true, indeed, that the reward ſecured by parliament for the diſcovery of a north-weſt paſſage, has not yet been attended with that ſucceſs, with which the promoters of the bill had flattered themſelves and the public, from the liberal ſpirit with which it was granted.

The Hudſon's Bay Company, though bound by their charter to further and promote the diſcovery, were generally ſuſpected from intereſted motives, to oppoſe and diſcourage every attempt to accompliſh it. And Captain Middleton, who in 1740 was ſent in a king's ſhip upon that ſervice, returning without ſucceſs, was publicly charged with having received a bribe of five thouſand pounds to defeat the undertaking, and by his report to diſcourage any farther attempts in purſuit of it. This charge was ſtrongly ſupported, and generally credited. And Mr. Dobbs, by whoſe intereſt Captain Middleton was employed, had the addreſs to prevail with the then miniſtry, to preclude any future ſcheme of private corruption, by promoting the public reward already mentioned.

The preamble to the act will ſtate this matter in the true light it ſets forth, "That whereas the diſcovery of a north-weſt paſſage through Hudſon's Streight to the weſtern ocean would be of great benefit and advantage to this kingdom, and that it would be of great advantage to the adventurers to attempt the ſame, if a public reward was given to ſuch perſons as ſhould make a perfect diſcovery of the ſaid paſſage; it is therefore enacted, that if any ſhips or veſſels belonging to his majeſty's ſubjects ſhall find out and ſail through any paſſage by ſea between Hudſon's bay and the weſtern ocean of America, the owners of ſuch ſhips or veſſels ſhall be entitled to receive as a reward for ſuch diſcovery the ſum of Twenty-thouſand Pounds." And as a farther encouragement to proſecute this diſcovery, and to prevent obſtructions from intereſted perſons, it was enacted, "that all perſons, ſubjects of his Majeſty, reſiding in any place where the ſaid adventurers may come in the proſecution of this diſcovery, ſhall give the ſaid adventurers all aſſiſtance, and ſhall no way obſtruct, moleſt, or refuſe the ſaid adventurers reaſonable ſuccour in any diſtreſs they may fall into in the proſecution of this diſcovery."

Such was the encouragement, and ſuch the liberal reward that was and is ſecured by parliament to the fortunate diſcoverers of a north-weſt paſſage to the great pacific ocean; a paſſage which, it is generally believed, would open a trade with nations on the northern continent of America, wholly unknown to the maritime powers of Europe, and ſuppoſed, from their ſituation, to abound in commodities equally rare and precious with thoſe of any other country under the ſun.

The fair proſpect of acquiring fame by enlarging commerce, the hope of obtaining the parliamentary reward, and the deſire of expoſing the diſingenuity of Captain Middleton, were incitements ſufficient to prevail with Mr. Dobbs to ſolicit the equipment of two ſhips for another voyage, which he made not the leaſt doubt would find out the paſſage ſo long ſought for in vain, and by the advantages attending the diſcovery, exceed the moſt ſanguine expectations of the adventurers.

The command of this expedition was given to Capt. Ellis, who, on the 31ſt of May, 1746, paſſed Yarmouth, in the Dobb's Galley, accompanied by the California Sloop, and convoyed to the north ſea by the Loo man of war. But in proportion as Mr. Dobbs had flattered the avarice of the adventurers who were to ſhare in the reward, and had elated himſelf with the thoughts of triumphing over the diſgrace of Captain Middleton, ſo it happened, that when the ſhips returned without having effected any one thing of conſequence, the chagrin of the former for having advanced their money on a viſionary project, and the mortification of the latter in not being able to ſupport his charge, were increaſed by every circumſtance that could aggravate the diſappointment. Captain Middleton now triumphed in his turn, and no ſhip from England has ſince been induced to undertake the voyage, notwithſtanding the greatneſs of the reward.

It is ſtill, however, believed, that government have in contemplation another voyage to the north, to which that of Captain Phipps was only the prelude; but there is reaſon to conclude, from what has already been ſaid of theſe latter attempts, and from the ill ſucceſs of former undertakings, that the diſcovery of a north-weſt paſſage is not the ſole object in view. The figure of the earth, the phenomena of the winds, the variation of the compaſs, and the attraction of the magnet, are points yet unſettled, of infinite importance to navigation; and it is not impoſſible, but that a more careful examination of the polar regions may lead to the ſolution of problems, that have hitherto baffled the enquiries of the ableſt navigators.

A very ſlender acquaintance with the difficulties and hardſhips attending northern diſcoveries, will fully account for our knowledge of the countries ſurrounding the pole being ſtill very imperfect. A brief recapitulation of the ſufferings of thoſe to whom we are moſt indebted for our information, will not, we hope, be thought an improper concluſion to a voyage ſolely undertaken with a view to enlarge it.

The firſt who conceived the idea of exploring the northern regions was Sebaſtion Cabbot. That enterprizing navigator, long before Magellan thought of a paſſage to the pacific ocean by the ſouth-weſt, had made two voyages, with a view to direct his courſe to the ſame ſea by the north-weſt. In theſe voyages, he diſcovered Newfoundland, the coaſt of the Eſquimeaux Indians, and had penetrated as far as the 64th degree of latitude, when a mutiny among his men, or rather an obſtinate refuſal to proceed any further, obliged him to return, yet he died in the perſuaſion that a paſſage in that direction certainly exiſted, and that he ſhould have found it but for the oppoſition of his crew.

The next, who prepoſſeſſed with the ſame notion, undertook a voyage for diſcoveries towards the north, was Sir Martin Forbiſher. He diſcovered Greenland, and in the latitude of 62 deg. north, paſſed a ſtrait, which, though it ſtill holds a place in our maps, has never been found navigable ſince. He made two other voyages, diſcovered many bays and capes, to which he gave names, but returned without attaining the principal object of his voyage, though like his predeceſſor, he aſſerted the certainty of its exiſtence to his lateſt hour.

To him ſucceeded Sir Humphry Gilbert, who in 1583 traverſed the coaſt of Labradore, entered the mouth of the great river St. Laurence, and, ſurrounding the iſland of Newfoundland, laid the foundation of the cod fiſhery, which has been proſecuted with immenſe advantage to his country ever ſince.

The rapid progreſs of diſcoveries in the ſouthern hemiſphere, which about this time were attended with vaſt profit to the adventurers, re-animated cotemporary navigators to proſecute, with more ardour than ever, their enterprizes towards the north. The more the pacific ocean became known, the firmer the belief prevailed, that a paſſage into it by way of the north muſt certainly exiſt, and that whoever could diſcover it, would not only immortalize his name, but enrich his country.

The merchants of that time were no leſs eager to embark their money, than the navigators were to hazard their perſons in any new project, where the hope of gain appeared to be well founded. A company therefore of wealthy perſons in London agreed to join a company of merchants in the weſt, and to fit out two ſhips for the diſcovery of a paſſage, which all agreed was practicable, though none could tell readily where to find it. To the command of this expedition Captain John Davis was ſtrongly recommended as an able navigator, and of a bold and enterprizing ſpirit. Accordingly, on the 7th of June, 1685, he ſet ſail from Dartmouth, in the Sun-ſhine of fifty tons, and accompanied by the Moon-ſhineof thirty-five tons, having on board both veſſels forty-two hardy ſeamen. On the 19th of July they were alarmed by a mighty roaring, which was the more terrible, as the fog was ſo thick, that they could not ſee each other at a ſhip's length. It proved only the crackling of the iſlands of ice, which was not then very well underſtood. On the breaking up of the fog they diſcovered land, which, from its horrid appearance, they named the Land of Deſol ation. On the 24th they were in 64 deg. 15 min. north the ſea open and the weather moderate. In this latitude they diſcovered land, and converſed with the natives, who appeared to be a harmleſs hoſpitable people, polite in their manners, neatly habited, and not ill-favoured. Theſe friendly people, obſerving that the Engliſh admired their furs, went up in the country to bring down more, with which they traded with much ſimplicity. To an adjoining hill Davis gave the name of Mount Raleigh, from which he took his departure on the 8th of Auguſt, and on the 11th doubled the ſouthermoſt cape in view, to which he gave the name of the Cape of God's Mercy, and entered a ſtrait, which bears the name of the diſcoverer to this day. In this ſtrait he ſailed ſixty leagues, and on the 14th went on ſhore, and found evident ſigns of human inhabitants, being met by a pack of dogs (twenty in number) that expreſſed their joy, as if their maſters had been returned after an interval of abſence. One of thoſe had on a leathern collar. The Captain was highly pleaſed with the promiſing appearance of the new ſtraits, and conſulting with the maſter, agreed to report, upon their return home, that they had found the wiſhed-for paſſage to the weſtern ſea.

The weather changing from temperate to exceſſive cold, on the 20th it was reſolved to ſet ſail for England. On the 12th of September they fell in with the land of Deſolation, and on the 30th of the ſame month entered the port of Dartmouth without the loſs of a man.

The account Captain Davis gave to his owners was ſo well received, that other merchants were deſirous of joining in a ſecond expedition, and accordingly he was again employed, and furniſhed with a much greater force.

On the 7th of May he ſailed from Dartmouth in the Mermaid, of 120 tons, in company with the Sun-ſhine and Moon-ſhine as before, and an additional pinnace of thirteen tons, called the North Star.

In the latitude of 60 degrees north Captain Davis divided his force, ordering the Sun-ſhine and North Star to ſeek a paſſage between Greenland and Iceland, while the Mermaid and Moon-ſhine continued their courſe to the ſtrait as before. In the latitude of 64 degrees, and longitude 58 deg. 30 min. north from London, they fell again in with the land, and met the ſame people with whom they had traded the former year. Overjoyed to meet, they renewed their acquaintance, and while the Engliſh was preparing a pinnace to facilitate their diſcoveries, the natives came in numbers to carry on trade. As ſoon as the pinnace was fitted for ſea, Captain Davis diſpatched her to examine the inlets on the coaſt, and to trace their courſe up the main land; but that was productive of no eſſential diſcovery.

Though the natives attended them with an obſequious diligence, yet on their kindling a fire in their manner, and uſing ſome ſtrange ceremonies, Captain Davis ſuppoſing them to be uſing idolatrous ſorceries, firſt thruſt the prieſt into the ſmoke, and then encouraged his men to tread out the flame, and to ſpurn the reeking coals into the ſea. Unable to bear the inſult, the natives for the firſt time began to ſhew reſentment. They ſeized the boat from the ſtern of the Moon-ſhine, cut the cable belonging to the Mermaid, made prize of the implements that lay upon the ſhore, and, in ſhort, declared open hoſtilities againſt the aggreſſors, who in return diſcharged their artillery among them, which inſtantly diſperſed them.

No civilities, however, that could be ſhewn them, after the indignity offered to their prieſt, could ever after reconcile them, and the year following they found an opportunity to take a ſevere revenge. In the mean time one of them being made priſoner, was taken on board the Mermaid; who, after recovering his fright, trimmed up his darts, repaired his fiſhing tackle, picked oakam, and ſet his hand to any thing he was ſet about; and, after a time, became a very pleaſant companion on board.

On the 17th of July, in latitude 63 degrees 8 min. north, they fell in with a continent of ice, very high, like land, with bays and capes, and, till they examined it cloſely, could not be convinced that it was a mere congelation. They coaſted it till the 30th, when the weather became ſo tempeſtuous and foggy, and withal ſo cold, that the ſhrouds, ropes, and ſails were frozen and glazed with ice; and the men, who the year before found the ſea open and the weather temperate, became ſo diſpirited, that in an orderly manner they addreſſed their Commander, and intreated him to conſider their preſent ſituation, to have regard to his own life, and the preſervation of theirs; and not through boldneſs and an indiſcreet zeal for a hopeleſs diſcovery, leave their widows and fatherleſs children to blacken his memory with bitter curſes. Moved with their pitiable repreſentation, he diſcharged the Mermaid with thoſe who were moſt deſirous of returning home, and proceeded in the Moon-ſhine to proſecute his voyage. Changing his courſe to recover the oppoſite ſhore on the 1ſt of Auguſt, in latitude 66 deg. 33 min. N. and longitude 70 deg. W. he diſcovered land, without either ice or ſnow. On the 2nd, they caſt anchor in a fine road, and in a day or two were viſited by the natives, who came to traffic. On the 14th, they ſet ſail to the weſtward, and on the 16th, changed their courſe to the ſouthward. On the 18th, they diſcovered a high promontory to the N. W. which having no land to the ſouth, recovered their hopes of a free paſſage.

On doubling the Cape, they found the land trending away to the ſouth in broken iſlands, and coaſting along till they arrived at a fine opening, in latitude 57 deg. they ſailed 10 leagues, with woods and lawns on each ſide, abounding with deer and game of every kind. Here they ſtaid till the 1ſt of September, and then ſet ſail, coaſting along to the northward, where they were again flattered with the hopes of a paſſage, by obſerving a ſtrong current ruſhing in between two lands to the weſtward, which they were very deſirous of approaching, but the wind blew directly againſt them.

On the 6th, returning to their former ſtation, five of the crew fell into an ambuſcade; for having ventured on ſhore unarmed in their boat, they were ſuddenly aſſaulted from the woods, two of them killed upon the ſpot, two grievouſly wounded, and the fifth made his eſcape by ſwimming, with an arrow ſticking in his arm. The ſame evening a furious ſtorm aroſe, which laſted till the 1[illegible]h, in which time they in a manner unrigged their ſhip, and were about to cut away her maſts by the board, the cable of their ſheet anchor parted, and they every moment expected to be daſhed upon the rocks, and to be made a prey by the ſavage cannibals of the country; but the ſtorm abating, and the ſea growing calm, they recovered their anchor on the 11th, and made ſail for England.

About the beginning of October they arrived at Dartmouth, where they found the Sunſhine, but the North Star having parted company in a hard gale on the coaſt of Greenland, was never more heard of.

This undaunted mariner had yet the courage to undertake a third voyage, and then ſailed as far as the 73rd degree of north latitude, but being deſerted by his companions, was forced to return in great diſtreſs to his old port. Upon his return he wrote a letter to his patron, aſſuring him, that he had found an open ſea in latitude 73 deg. N. and a ſtrait 40 leagues broad, and concluded from thence that the paſſage was moſt certain.

From this period till the year 1610, we find no farther attempts made to revive this diſcovery; but in that year Mr. Henry Hudſon, one of the moſt celebrated mariners of his time, was prevailed upon to undertake a voyage that was purpoſely ſet on foot to make trial of his ſkill. He ſailed April the 7th, 1610, ſteering directly to Davis's Straits, he there changed his courſe to the weſtward, and ſtruck out a new track that no mariner had ever ſailed before, which led him through the ſtrait that ſtill bears his name into the great bay that bounds the American continent on the N. E. and ſeems to communicate by various openings with the north ſea. Here he continued traverſing for almoſt three months in ſearch of a paſſage to the weſtward, but finding himſelf embayed, he ſtood to the ſouth, intending to winter in the mildeſt latitude the bay would admit; accordingly, he is ſaid to have wintered in latitude 52 deg. N. longitude 80 deg. W. where on the 1ſt of November his ſhip was frozen in, and being ſcantily provided with proviſions, the crew mutinied, and in the end moſt barbarouſly contrived, as the writer expreſſes it, to turn the Captain, the carpenter, and all the ſick men out of the ſhip, who were never more heard of. After which the leaders of the mutiny determined to make the beſt of their way for England; but in their paſſage home not a few periſhed, and thoſe who ſurvived ſuffered unſpeakable miſery.

But notwithſtanding this diſaſter, and that it was certainly known that the Captain and all who were left behind were either drowned, ſtarved, or murdered, the progreſs he had made in the diſcovery encouraged others to ſollow his track.

The next who adventured was Captain Button, a man of great abilities, courage, and experience. Patronized by Henry, Prince of Wales, he ſailed in 1611, and having paſſed Hudſon's Straits, purſued a different track from that of Captain Hudſon, leaving his diſcoveries to the ſouth, and ſhaping his courſe to the N. W.

After ſailing more then 200 leagues, he fell in with a large continent, which, from its mountainous appearance, he named New Wales; but finding no paſſage to the weſtward, he followed the direction of the land to the ſouthward, till he arrived at Port Nelſon, where he wintered in 63 deg. 30 min. N. but, though he kept three fires in his ſhip conſtantly burning, and his company killed incredible numbers of white partridges and other wild fowl, yet many of his men periſhed by the ſeverity of the cold, which in that climate was almoſt inſupportable.

In 1615, Captain William Baffin undertook the examination of the extremity of that ſea into which Davis's Straits opened a paſſage, and he ſo far ſucceeded, as to determine its extent, and to diſcover an outlet marked in our maps, by the name of Sir Thomas Smith's Sound, which is probably the only communication between our northern bays and the great pacific ocean, which nature has provided, in order to maintain a general circulation, without which it is hardly poſſible to conceive, that the equipoiſe of the globe could for a moment be preſerved.

In 1619 Captain John Monk, at the inſtance of his Daniſh Majeſty, undertook this diſcovery, and arrived ſafe at Cape Farewell, where though the tackle of the ſhip was ſo frozen and full of iſicles, that the mariners could not handle the ropes, yet next day it was ſo hot, that they were forced to work in their ſhirts. He entered Hudſon's Strait in the month of July, and was forced to winter in latitude 63 deg. 20 min. N. on an iſland that ſtill retains his name; but the hardſhips he endured almoſt exceeded belief. In May 1620, he found himſelf alone in a cave dug in the earth, ſcarce alive, and almoſt morally certain, that all his mariners were dead. As ſoon as the weather would permit he crawled forth, and found, of all his crew, only two left. By removing the ſnow, they found ſome freſh herbs underneath, and by eating them, recovered from the ſcurvy. Unable to navigate their ſhips, they abandoned her to the ſavages, and, by a wonderful Providence, got ſafe to Norway in the pinnace. Being a man of uncommon reſolution he was ſtill ſolicitous to perfect a diſcovery, which had baffled the reſearches of ſo many able navigators, and to acquire glory, by accompliſhing that which they had failed to attain. He aſſerted the exiſtence of ſuch a paſſage ſo confidently, and laid down the method of finding it ſo plauſibly, that he had perſuaded the merchants of Norway to raiſe a joint ſtock to defray the expences of a ſecond voyage; but applying to the King for his permiſſion and protection, and relating to him his own ſufferings, and thoſe of his companions in his former voyage, his Majeſty told him, he had already been the death of too many of his ſubjects, and wondered at his preſumption to ſeek to murder more. To which Monk gave a quick reply, which provoked the king to ſtrike him over his ſtomach with his cane. Whether the ſeverity of the blow, or the ſenſe of the indignity was the occaſion, is not certain; but he quitted the royal preſence with marks of ſtrong reſentment, and returning to his chamber, refuſed aſſiſtance, and three days after breathed his laſt.

Captain Luke Fox and Captain James were the next who profeſſedly engaged in this diſcovery; the firſt in a king's frigate, victualled for 18 months; the other in a ſmall veſſel of 70 tons built at Briſtol on purpoſe; victualled and equipped by private adventurers.

Captain Fox departed in the ſpring of 1631, traced all the weſtern bays diſcovered by former navigators, examined the weſtermoſt part of Hudſon's Bay, and returned in 1632. He publiſhed a pompous account of his diſcoveries, which, however, was never much regarded.

On the 3rd of May, 1631, Captain James ſet ſail from the Severn's Mouth, and on the 29th of June cleared Hudſon's Straits, where he found himſelf ſo peſtered with broken ice, as to put it out of his power to proſecute his diſcoveries to the north weſtward, as he had intended; he therefore ordered his maſter to ſteer W. S. W. and on the 27th of July, after ſuſtaining moſt dreadful ſhocks, found his ſhip encloſed ſo faſt among the ice, that, notwithſtanding it blew a hard gale, and all ſails ſet, ſhe ſtirred no more than if ſhe had been in a dry dock. It was now that the men firſt began to murmur, and the Captain himſelf was not without his fears, leſt they ſhould here be frozen up and obliged to winter in the middle of the ſea. By an obſervation which they made upon the ice, they found that they were in latitude 58 deg. 54 min. N.

On the 5th of next month to their great joy the ice opened, and on the 6th, they were again in a clear ſea. On the 13th, ſeeing ſome breakers a-head, and looffing to clear them, the ſhip ſuddenly ſtruck upon the rocks, and received three dreadful ſhocks, but the ſwell heaved her over, and on pumping ſhe made no water.

They were now encumbered with rocks, as before they had been with ice, and in the moſt perilous ſituation that can be conceived, and ſo continued two nights and two days, every moment expecting to be daſhed to pieces. On the fog's clearing up they ſaw land from the N. W. to the S. E. by E. with rocks and breakers. On the 16th they weighed and made ſail, when a ſtorm aroſe and drove them within ſight of Port Nelſon. On the 17th they ſtood to the ſouthward. On the 20th they made land, in latitude 57 deg. N. where they caſt anchor, and called it the Principality of South Wales.

Having weighed, on the 27th they ſet ſail, and in the evening came in ſight of higher land; and on the 29th they ſaw a ſail, which proved to be Captain Fox, already mentioned. They ſpoke together, and, after exchanging mutual civilities, parted.

Captain James kept coaſting along the ſhore to make diſcoveries, and Captain Fox made the beſt of his way for England.

The Captain now began to think of a convenient place to winter in. In this attempt they met with ſo many diſaſters, that at laſt having no hope left, they began to prepare themſelves to make a good end of a miſerable life. On the 19th they loſt their ſhallop, though laſhed to the ſhip by two hawſers, and to their inexpreſſible grief their boat was almoſt rendered irreparable.

Winter now began to ſet in a-pace, the nights long, the days cloſe and foggy, the ſeas rough, and nothing but ſhoals and broken land to navigate. Added to all theſe the men began to ſicken, an univerſal dejection to prevail, and in proportion as their diſtreſſes increaſed, their ſtrength to bear up againſt them grew leſs every day.

On the 4th of November, being in latitude 52 deg. N. they fell in with an iſland, from which they found it impoſſible to depart. The men were quite worn down with fatigue, the ſails ſo frozen as not to be unfurled, the ropes congealed in the blocks, and the deck knee-deep in ſnow. In this forlorn condition they built a tent on ſhore for the ſick, and in this tent they kept fires continually burning night and day, but the cold increaſed ſo faſt, that beer, and even ſpirits froze by the fire-ſide.

The ſufferings of the Captain and crew from the latter end of October, when they landed, till the 2nd of July, when they departed, are hardly to be paralleled.

This was the laſt voyage that was undertaken for the diſcovery of a north-weſt paſſage, till that of Captain Middleton. From all which, and the opinion of Captain James after his return, there is great reaſon to conclude, that what we have ſaid of a north-eaſt paſſage is likewiſe true of a paſſage by the north-weſt, that it moſt certainly exiſts, but will never be found practicable for mercantile purpoſes.

The voyage of Commodore Phipps, which his Majeſty, in a particular manner, thought fit to patronize, was equipped with ſuch care and circumſpection, that nothing was found wanting during the courſe of it.

To this voyage, we have prefixed a brief recapitulation of the many attempts that have been made for the diſcovery of a north-eaſt paſſage to China and Japan, and alſo have ſubjoined a like ſummary of the enterprizes ſet on foot by government, or undertaken by private adventurers, for diſcovering a communication with the great Pacifice ocean by a paſſage from the north-weſt.

The accounts are full of aſtoniſhing events, and wonderful deſcriptions of uncommon phænomena. In them we read of rivers and likes of ice, burſting with impriſoned vapours; and of rocks, foreſts, beams of houſes and buildings, ſplitting with a noiſe not leſs terrible than the loudeſt thunder. Of brandy, brine, and even ſpirits of wine, expoſed to the open air, only for a few hours, freezing into a ſolid maſs. Of mountains of ice frozen in the ſea 100 fathom deep. Of ſnow hills that never thaw. And of winds that bliſter the fleſh, and ſhrivel the ſkin like red-hot iron.

In this part of our work the diſtreſſes, dangers, providential deliverances, and unſpeakable ſufferings of thoſe who have wintered in the dark and dreary regions of the north, are recounted with clearneſs; and the contents of many volumes are comprized with care and preciſion.

A
NEW, AUTHENTIC, and COMPLETE ACCOUNT and NARRATIVE, of
A VOYAGE Round the WORLD,
UNDERTAKEN and PERFORMED
By Commodore (afterwards Lord) ANSON,
In his Majeſty's Ship the CENTURION,
HAVING UNDER HIS COMMAND
The Glouceſter, Pearl, Severn, Wager, Trial, and two Store Ships.

THE Spaniſh depredations in the year 1739, having rouſed the national reſentment, and the pacific miniſtry who then were entruſted with the adminiſtration of affairs, finding it impoſſible any longer to prevent a war with Spain, ſeveral projects were propoſed, and ſeveral plans formed, for diſtreſſing the enemy in the moſt effectual manner, by cutting off the reſources by which alone they were encouraged to continue their inſults, and by which alone they could be enabled to ſupport a war. Among the reſt, two expeditions were planned by Sir Charles Wager, then at the head of the admiralty, and two gentlemen named by him for carrying them into execution; which were no ſooner laid before the privy council to be examined than they were unanimouſly approved.

Captain Anſon, who was nominated to command the one, being out upon a cruiſe, a veſſel was diſpatched to order him to return with his ſhip, the Centurion, to Portſmouth; and Mr. Cornwall, who was appointed to command the other, was acquainted with the honour conferred upon him, and directed to prepare accordingly.

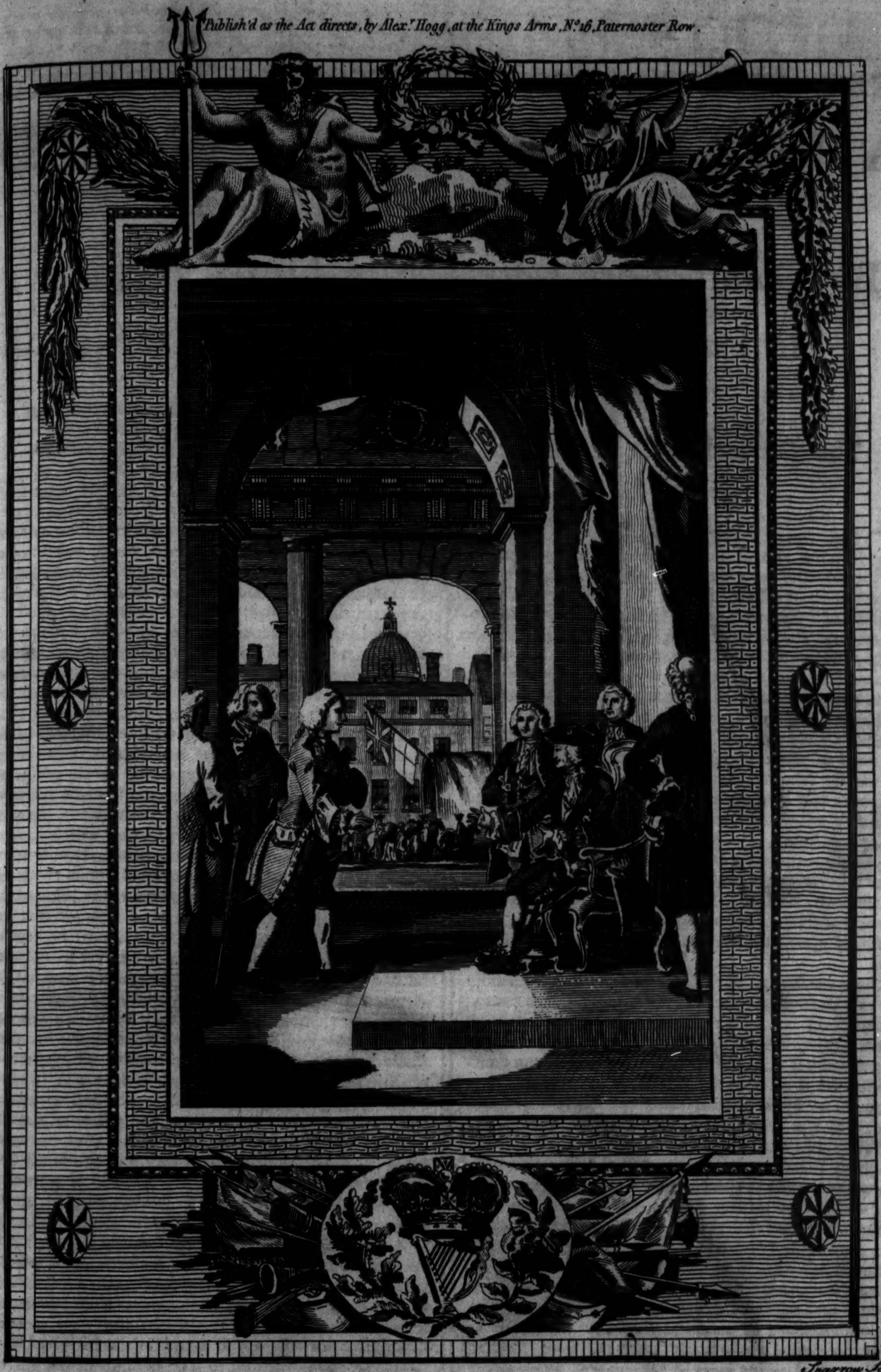
There are not to be found in the annals of Britain two expeditions, remote in the deſtination, yet having a connection one with the other, that promiſed equal advantages with theſe to the nation, equal honour to the promoters, or equal wealth and glory to the commanders: but by what fatality theſe expeditions were changed, or by what ſtate-craft one came to be laid aſide, and the other delayed,—who were the traitors that betrayed the ſecret of their deſtination, or who the demon of ſeduction was, that perverted the grand deſign to the pitiful purpoſe of one ſingle pilfering project, remains at preſent among thoſe ſecrets, which, perhaps, a ſecond Dalrymple, in ſome remote period of time, may diſcover; when it will probably appear how much the influence of Chilian gold had operated in defeating the moſt formidable project for the humiliation of Spain that ever was deviſed; and how eaſy it is for a prime miniſter of England, in the plenitude of power, to defeat the beſt-concerted meaſures, backed and ſupported by the King in his council, when either pride, envy, avarice, or emulation, may prompt him to oppoſition.

The project, as firſt intended, was to conſiſt of two ſtrong ſquadrons; one under Captain Anſon was to take on board three independent companies of 100 men each, and Bland's regiment of foot (who was himſelf to command the land forces) and was to ſail with all poſſible expedition by the Cape of Good Hope to the city of Manilla, in the iſland of Luconia; while that commanded by Captain Cornwall, of equal force, was to proceed round Cape Horn into the South Seas, there to range the coaſts of Chili, Peru, and Mexico; and when the commander in chief had made himſelf maſter of the royal treaſures in that quarter, he was then to direct his courſe to the Philippines, and join the ſquadron of Captain Anſon. This done, they were to act in conjunction, as circumſtances ſhould ariſe, or to wait for freſh orders from government to proceed on freſh enterprizes. The reader will perceive, at firſt view, the vaſt importance of this noble undertaking, calculated at once to enrich the nation, and to determine the war without the effuſion of much blood; for the places intended to be attacked were at that time incapable of reſiſtance; and as they were in poſſeſſion of the royal treaſures, any failure in the return of which muſt of neceſſity oblige Spain to ſue for peace, that haughty nation muſt thus have been ſubdued without a battle. But poſterity will ſtand amazed when they are told the iſſue of this project, on which Sir Charles Wager was ſo intent, that, though it was the 10th of September before Captain Anſon arrived in town, yet by the 18th he had received orders to take under his command the Argyle, Severn, Pearl, Wager, and Trial ſloop, and to proceed to victual the ſame with the utmoſt expedition.

Before the end of December ſuch diſpatch had been made by that vigilant officer, that the ſhips were in readineſs to take the troops on board, but in January, when Captain Anſon attended the board to receive further orders, he was told by Sir Charles, that the Manilla expedition was laid aſide, for what reaſon he knew not, but that the expedition to the South Seas was ſtill intended; and that he and his ſquadron, as their firſt deſtination was now countermanded, ſhould be employed in that ſervice.

Accordingly on the 10th of January, 1740, he received his commiſſion as Commodore; yet it was not till the 10th of June that he obtained from the Duke of Newcaſtle his Majeſty's inſtructions; and even then ſo many obſtacles were thrown in the way, ſo many difficulties ſtarted, and ſo many delays contrived, that before he was permitted to ſail, which was not till the latter end of September, the Spaniards were ſo well informed of his deſigns, that a perſon who had been employed in the South Sea Company's ſervice, arrived from Panama, and was able to relate to the Commodore moſt of the particulars of his ſtrength and deſtination, from what he had learnt among the merchants before he left the South Seas; but a ſtill more extraordinary proof of their early and perfect intelligence was diſcovered afterwards, in the courſe of the voyage, when

Publish'd as the Act directs, by Alex.r Hogg, at the Kings Arms, No. 16, Paternoster Row.



Sparrow Sc.

COMMODORE (*afterwards* LORD) ANSON, *attending* KING GEORGE *the* SECOND, *with an* Account *of his* VOYAGE ROUND *the* WORLD.

BRITISH
7 FE 90
MUSEUM

when the Pearl, being ſeparated from the reſt of the ſquadron, in a ſtorm, on the coaſt of Brazil, fell in with the Spaniſh fleet, that, during the unprecedented delay, had been purpoſely fitted out to ruin the expedition, and found Admiral Piſarro ſo well inſtructed in the form and make of Commodore Anſon's broad pendant, and thoſe he employed had imitated it ſo exactly, that Capt. Mitchell, who commanded the Pearl, was decoyed by it within gun-ſhot, before he was able to diſcover his miſtake.

All delays being at length overcome, the ſquadron, conſiſting of five men of war, a ſloop of war, and two victualling ſhips, namely, the Centurion, of 60 guns, 400 men, commanded by Captain Anſon, as Commodore; the Glouceſter, of 50 guns, 300 men, of which Richard Norris, Eſq; was Commander; the Severn, of 50 guns, 300 men, the Hon. Edward Legg, Eſq; Commander; the Pearl, of 40 guns, 250 men, Matthew Mitchell, Eſq; Commander; the Wager, of 28 guns, 160 men, the Hon. John Murray, Commander; two victuallers, the Induſtry and Anne pinks, the largeſt of about 400, and the other about 200 tons burthen; were ordered to take the troops on board at St. Helen's. But how much the numbers, ſtrength, and probability of ſucceſs of this ſquadron, were diminiſhed by the various incidents that took place in near a twelvemonth's procraſtination, may fully be conceived by what has already been ſaid. Had the honourable Board from whence the firſt idea of the expedition originated been permitted to direct, all the old and ordinary ſeamen on board the ſhips would have been exchanged for ſuch as were young and able; the full complement of each ſhip would have been made up; and the ſalt proviſions which had been ſo long on board in the channel would have been remanded on ſhore, and freſh proviſions replaced in their room: but, inſtead of theſe neceſſary precautions, the Captains were glad to retain their old crews; the deficiency in the numbers of which, amounting to more than 300 men, was no otherwiſe made up than by ſending on board about 100 cripples from the hoſpitals, and a party of raw marines who had never been at ſea before: nor were they more fortunate in the change that was made in the land-forces; for, inſtead of three independent companies, of 100 men each, and Bland's regiment of foot, as firſt promiſed, they had only 400 invalids from Chelſea allotted them, one part of whom was incapable of action by their age and infirmities, and the other part uſeleſs by their ignorance of their duty. But this diminution of ſtrength was not the greateſt misfortune that attended theſe meaſures; the importance of the time which was wilfully waſted was in its conſequences the ſource of all thoſe calamities to which the enterprize was afterwards expoſed, by obliging the Commodore to make his paſſage round the Cape in the moſt tempeſtuous ſeaſon, when, as it was foreſeen, almoſt all the invalids, to a man, periſhed long before they arrived at the place of action, expiring in a moſt lamentable condition when they came to be attacked with the ſcurvy, with their wounds bleeding afreſh, which had been healed ſome of them 20, ſome 30, and ſome 40 years before.

But to proceed: Of this voyage there are two very authentic and well-written accounts; one by Paſco Thomas, the mathematical maſter on board the Centurion, who ſailed in her out of the Britiſh Channel, and returned with her in ſafety when ſhe arrived at Portſmouth, and was an eye-witneſs and careful obſerver of all that paſſed: the other by the Rev. Mr. Richard Walters, Chaplain to the above ſhip, who received his materials, and every other aſſiſtance neceſſary to authenticate his narration, from the Commander in Chief.

We have choſen to follow the former in the narrative of facts, as moſt exact and leaſt liable to impoſition; but, in the explanatory part, we ſhall copy the latter; becauſe, though Mr. Thomas ſuffered nothing material that paſſed to eſcape his notice, there were many things tranſacted, the motives for which he could only gueſs at; but theſe motives Mr. Walters has, by means of the Commodore's aſſiſtance, been able to explain.

Being quite ready about the beginning of September, 1740, we put to ſea three different times, but were as often put back to the road of St. Helen's by contrary winds and ſtormy weather. At laſt, on Thurſday, Sept. 18, we ſailed in company with the Lark and St. Alban's, two of his Majeſty's ſhips, and ſeveral merchant-ſhips, beſides our own ſquadron; and Saturday evening ſaw ſome men-of-war, and a large fleet of merchantmen, waiting for us at Torbay. At one in the afternoon we joined them; and the Commodore hoiſted his broad pendant, which was ſaluted by all his Majeſty's ſhips in the fleet with 13 guns each. The King's ſhips which joined us here were, the Dragon, Chatham, Wincheſter, and South-Sea-Caſtle, and near 200 ſail of merchantmen under convoy, ſome of whom were bound to the Mediterranean, and others to ſeveral parts of North America. We had at preſent the command of the whole fleet; and this ſame afternoon, ſeeing a ſhip to the ſouth-weſt, we made the Dragon a ſignal for chaſing her; but ſhe proved one of our own ſhips, too far a-head of her ſtation. At four this afternoon, the Start Point bore from us E. by N. at the diſtance of eight leagues.

Monday the 22d, we ſaw two ſail to the weſtward, and ſent the Trial ſloop to ſpeak with them. They were Dutch ſhips bound to Curaçoa, with ſoldiers for their garriſons there.

Thurſday the 25th, the Wincheſter and South-Sea-Caſtle, with the merchant-ſhips under their convoy for Virginia, and other parts of North America, parted from us, and proceeded on their reſpective voyages. And Monday the 29th, the Dragon, Chatham, St. Alban's, and Lark, with the merchant-ſhips in their charge for the Mediterranean, did the like; and we had now no ſhips left in company but our own proper ſquadron.

Tueſday the 30th, we ſpoke with a Dutch man-of-war, who came from Malta, bound for Amſterdam.

Friday, October the 3d, we ſpoke with two Engliſh merchant-ſhips from Liſbon for New-York, and the 8th we ſpoke with a French ſloop from Rochelle. The 13th, one Philip Merrit, a common ſailor, died, which I mention becauſe he was the firſt man we loſt on the voyage. The next day, by an order from the Commodore, we went to ſhort allowance; that is, one third of the allowance granted by government is kept back, in order to make our proviſions hold out the longer. The 23d, we ſpoke with a ſhip from Liverpool, and the next day with another from Glaſgow, for the Cape de Verde Iſlands; as alſo with a ſmall brigantine from Falmouth for Madeira, who kept us company thither. The next day we ſpoke with a Dutch ſhip from Surinam for Holland. The 26th, at ſix o'clock in the morning, we ſaw the land bearing W. N. W. diſtance ſix leagues, and at four in the evening anchored in Fonchiale road, in forty fathom water, a-breaſt the town of Fonchiale, and about a mile and a half from it. During this whole paſſage, we had almoſt continually contrary winds, and boiſterous uncertain weather; by which means, a paſſage which is very commonly made in 10 or 12 days, took us up 38.

Our buſineſs in this place was only to water, and take in wine, and ſome private ſtock: but, ſoon after our arrival, we were informed, that they had ſeen from the iſland to the weſtward, about 16 or 18 ſail of ſhips for ſeveral days together, which were ſuppoſed to be a junction of French and Spaniſh ſhips of war; and as we had reaſon to imagine that our expedition had long been known, there was little room to doubt, but that thoſe ſhips were deſigned to intercept and deſtroy us before we could attempt any thing to the prejudice of Spain. On this news the Commodore ſent out an Engliſh privateer which lay in the road, with one of his own officers, to ſee if they could diſcover them at ſea, and what they were; but ſhe returned the next day, having made no diſcovery.

Nov. 2, Captain Norris, at his own requeſt, being in an ill ſtate of health, with the conſent of the Commodore quitted the command of the Glouceſter, in order to return to England. The Glouceſter was hereupon given to Captain Mitchell, the Pearl to Captain Kidd, the Wager to the Hon. Captain Murray, and the Trial ſloop to David Cheap, our Firſt Lieutenant; and as one of the Lieutenants of the Glouceſter had quitted with Captain Norris, our two mates, who had long depended on the Commodore, were preferred to be Lieutenants on this occaſion.

The 4th, at four in the afternoon, we weighed and put to ſea, with all the ſquadron under our command. An Engliſh ſloop, which lay in the road, ſaluted us at our departure with nine guns, to which we returned five.

The 6th, at four o'clock in the evening, we ſaw the iſland of Palma, one of the Canary iſlands, in the latitude of 29 degrees north, and longitude from the meridian of London 19 degrees 44 minutes weſt. The ſame day we ſpoke with a French ſhip from Marſeilles bound to Martinico, and the next morning with a Dutch ſhip from Amſterdam bound to Batavia, the metropolis of the Dutch ſettlements in the Eaſt-Indies.

The 11th, about four in the morning, we croſſed the Northern Tropic for the firſt time in this voyage, in long. 24 deg. 24 min. weſt from London.

The 16th, being in the latitude of about 12 deg. 20 min. and the contract with our victuallers expiring in that latitude, the Anne pink fired a gun, and hoiſted a red flag at her fore-top-maſt head, to give us notice of it.

On the next day all the Lieutenants of the ſquadron were by a ſignal ordered on board the Centurion, and orders were given to unlade the Induſtry pink, and each ſhip to take on board from her their reſpective quotas of proviſions; in purſuance of which we immediately began to unlade her, lying by in the day, and making an eaſy ſail in the night.

The 19th, having unloaded and diſcharged the Induſtry, at eight in the evening ſhe parted from us, in order to proceed to Barbadoes, whither ſhe was bound; but the Commodore having entered into a new contract with the maſter of the Anne pink, ſhe was detained with us for his Majeſty's ſervice, our ſhips being too much encumbered to admit of taking on board any more proviſions at this time.

The 28th, about five in the morning, we croſſed the Equinoctial, in the longitude of 28 deg. 15 min. W. from London, the variation of the compaſs at that place being 35 min. E.

December the 2d, at eight in the morning, we ſaw a ſail to the north-weſt, to which we gave chaſe. At night we loſt ſight of her; but next morning we ſaw her and gave chaſe again, but in the afternoon quitted her. We imagined this ſail to be a tender on the Spaniſh fleet, ſent purpoſely to get intelligence of us; but on our arrival at the Cape of Good Hope, in our return home, we learned that ſhe was the Eaſt-India Company's packet bound for the iſland of St. Helena.

The 10th, expecting to be near the coaſt of Brazil, we ſounded, and found 67 fathom water, on which we fired a gun for a ſignal, and altered our courſe more to the ſouthward. This day died Thomas Waller, our ſurgeon, who was ſucceeded by Henry Ettrick, ſurgeon of the Wager; the ſurgeon of the Trial ſucceeded him, and Joſeph Allen, our ſurgeon's firſt mate, was made ſurgeon of the Trial.

The 11th, we ſpoke with a Portugueſe brigantine from Rio Janeiro, bound to Santos, one of the principal Portugueſe ſettlements in the Brazils. The 13th, we croſſed the South Tropic for the firſt time, in long. 38 deg. 36 min. W. from London.

The 14th, died Robert Weldon, our purſer, who was ſucceeeded by John Rule, purſer of the Wager, and Commodore's Secretary; Thomas Harvey, one of our midſhipmen, was made purſer of the Wager, in the room of Mr. Rule.

The 17th, we ſaw the land of the Brazils, from W. to W. S. W. very mountainous, and full of woods. I have, for ſeveral days laſt paſt, found, by my obſervations, a ſtrong current on this coaſt, ſetting to the ſouthward near three quarters of a mile an hour, which, perhaps, may be occaſioned by the neighbourhood of the vaſt river of Rio de la Plata; another obſervation, which I ſhall have occaſion to make after our leaving the coaſt of Brazil, will very much corroborate this conjecture.

The ſame day, at four in the evening, we had 40 fathom of water, muddy ground; the iſland of Alvoredo, a ſmall iſland at the north-eaſt end of the large iſland of St. Katharine's, then bearing N. W. by N. about eight leagues diſtant; and the next day at ſeven in the evening we came to an anchor in twelve fathom water, the north-eaſt end of St. Katharine's bearing S. S. W. about three miles diſtant, and the iſland of Alvoredo, N. N. E. about ſix miles diſtant. Here we found the tide to ſet S. S. E. and N. N. W. We ſent aſhore a Lieutenant to the fort, to compliment the Governor, and to deſire a pilot to carry us into the road. The Governor returned a very civil anſwer, and granted our requeſt. The next morning we weighed and ran up the harbour, and about noon anchored in five fathom and a half water, in a place they there call Buon Porto; but being ſtill too far from the watering-place, we on the 20th, about eleven in the morning, weighed and ran farther up between St. Katharine's and the main land of Brazil, and in the afternoon anchored and moored in five fathom water, about two miles from the watering-place; and the ſame evening our third Lieutenant went aſhore with materials for building a tent, to ſhelter the people who were to be employed in watering. We likewiſe ſaluted the Portugueſe fort with eleven guns, who returned us the like number.

Our ſhips beginning to be very ſickly, tents were erected on ſhore, one for every ſhip, and the ſick were ſent aſhore to them, with ſurgeons and proper attendants.

The agents for victualling, of which we had two with us, were ordered to procure what freſh proviſions we could expend during our ſtay here, which they accordingly did; but though their meat, which is altogether beef, was both cheap and plenty, it was for the greateſt part miſerably bad, and ſcarce fit to be eaten.

The men throughout the whole ſquadron began now to drop off apace with fevers and fluxes, occaſioned chiefly, I believe, by the violent heat of the climate, and the bad air; the country being ſo very woody that the air muſt thereby be ſtagnated, and rendered unhealthful.

We continued here wooding, watering, and overhauling our rigging, till Sunday, Jan. 18, 1741, during which time we had variable uncertain weather, ſometimes ſea and land breezes, at other times ſtrong gales of wind, with heavy rain, thunder and lightning, but always exceſſive heat.

While we lay here, we gave our ſhip a thorough cleanſing, ſmoaked her between decks, in order to deſtroy the vermin, and waſhed every part with vinegar, which I mention becauſe it is abſolutely neceſſary in large ſhips, the ſtench of ſo many ſick perſons being noiſome in hot climates.

Dec. 21, I obſerved an eclipſe of the moon, and by comparing the time of the end of it, with a calculation I purpoſely made of it in the meridian of London, from Sir Iſaac Newton's New Theory of the Moon, I found the place where the ſhip then lay to be 49 deg. 53 min. to the weſtward of the meridian of London. The calculation itſelf, and the time it ended at St. Katharine's, I have unfortunately loſt; but as the longitude is thereby ſettled, they are of no farther uſe, and not worth retrieving at the trouble of a new calculation.

Before we arrived at this iſland, we had received from the deſcriptions of Mr. Frezier, a French author, and ſome other perſons who had been on the ſpot, ſuch accounts as, together with the climate in which it is ſituated, gave us very great ideas of its fruitfulneſs, and hopes of a plentiful ſupply of every thing we wanted for a long run; but we found ourſelves miſerably miſtaken in almoſt every article we expected.

As here are ſeveral fine ſandy bays, we had very good fiſhing with a ſeine, for mullets, old wives, ſting-rays, maids, turbots, and other flat fiſh, ſilver fiſh, baſs, a very boney long fiſh like a baſs, but which our ſeamen call a ten-pounder, and ſome other ſorts. We likewiſe had freſh beef for preſent expending plenty enough, but ſcarce better than the carrion that we gave to our dogs. As for lemons, limes, plantains, bananas, potatoes, and other roots, fruits, and greens, with which thoſe climates generally abound, which the authors above mentioned aver to be extremely plentiful here, and which we principally depended on for ſea-ſtores, there were ſo few at the time of our being here, that I believe we could have conſumed all that came to our knowledge of thoſe things in one day. The officers, however, no doubt found plenty; as Mr. Walters agrees in his report with Frezier, that there was no want of pine-apples, peaches, grapes, lemons, citrons, melons, apricots, and adds, there were beſides potatoes and onions for ſea-ſtores. Saſſafras is here in great plenty, and we cut much of it among other wood for fuel. Guaiacum they report to be very plenty here likewiſe, but I ſaw none of it, nor heard of any perſon who did during our ſtay. Rum and ſugar they have in ſmall quantities, but very indifferent and dear. The inhabitants are a mixture of Portugueſe and Indians incorporated together, and appear to be very poor, idle, lazy, ignorant and rude. I believe the original of the Portugueſe here was chiefly from felons, who fled hither from other parts of the Brazils to ſhelter themſelves from juſtice; they never till lately having any government among them, except a Chief choſen from among themſelves, who was more like a Captain of thieves and robbers, than the Commander of a colony. At preſent there are ſome European Soldiers, and a Governor from Rio Janeiro, whoſe name was Don Joſſe Sylva de Paz, an expert engineer, who, as Mr. Walters obſerves, underſtood one branch of his buſineſs very well, which is the advantages which new works bring to thoſe who are entruſted with the care of erecting them; for, beſides a battery on a neck of land that narrows the channel to a little more than a quarter of a mile, there were three other forts carrying on for the defence of the harbour, none of which were then compleated.

The country, both the main and the iſland, is mountainous, and all over-grown with thick woods, and thoſe ſo entangled with the under-growth of thorny briars, brambles, and the like, that in moſt places they are ſcarce penetrable. Theſe woods are reported to be full of very fierce tygers, which makes any excurſions into the country dangerous, unleſs you go well armed, and even then much caution is neceſſary.

They have here ſome hogs and fowls, but I believe not very plenty; and in the woods are monkeys, apes, armadilloes, and other wild creatures unknown to me; as alſo parrots, parroquets, and many other ſorts of birds proper to the climate. Alligators are ſaid to be plenty near the ſhores and in the lakes, but we ſaw none of them.

The country appears to me to be a good ſoil, and very capable of improvement, were the inhabitants more civilized and induſtrious.

This iſland lies in latitude 27 deg. 30 min. S. longitude, as before determined, 49 deg. 53 min. W. from London; and the variation of the compaſs 11 deg. 20 min. eaſterly.

Dec. 27, we diſcovered a ſail in the offing, and the eighteen-oar'd barge was manned, and armed, and ſent, under the command of the ſecond Lieutenant of the Centurion, to examine her before ſhe arrived within the protection of the fort. She proved to be a Portugueſe brigantine from Rio Grande; but, though the officer behaved to the maſter with the utmoſt civility, yet the Governor took offence at our ſending our boat, complained of the violation of the peace, and made that a pretence for ſending Don Piſarro the moſt circumſtantial intelligence of our force and condition, as we afterwards found by letters intercepted in the South Seas.

January 18, 1741, we left this iſland, having had a melancholy proof how much the healthineſs of this place had been over-rated by former writers; for we found, that, though the Centurion alone had buried no leſs than 28 men ſince our arrival, the number of the ſick in the ſame interval had increaſed to 96; and this very day we had three men die.

Before our departure the Commodore took every precaution to prevent a ſeparation; but conſidering that, in ſuch boiſterous ſeas as we were about to encounter, he himſelf might be diſabled, he called the officers together, and in a full council ſo ordered it, that, if but one ſhip eſcaped, the expedition ſhould not be abandoned. Proper places of rendezvous were appointed; the time was ſettled for ſtaying at theſe places; and, if the Commodore did not arrive in that time, the Captains were ordered to put themſelves under the command of the ſenior, and to proceed without farther delay.

The 22d in the morning, we had very ſtormy weather, with ſome thunder, lightning, and rain; and the Trial carried away the head of her main-maſt. A thick fog ſucceeding, we lay to, and ſoon after loſt ſight of the Pearl, the Trial, and the Anne pink. In the afternoon we got ſight of and joined company with the Trial and the Anne, but the Pearl was ſtill miſſing.

From hence to February the 13th, very variable weather, moſtly foggy from latitude 35, or thereabouts, to latitude 39; the reſt a mixture not much unlike our weather in England in the month of October, except that we had pretty often thunder and lightning, which are not ſo frequent with us in that month. Being paſt the latitude of 36 degrees to the ſouthward, I obſerved the current, which had hitherto conſtantly ſet ſoutherly, now on the contrary, ſet to the northward; and the great river of Rio de la Plata being ſituated in between 35 and 36 degrees ſouth, ſtrengthens my conjecture that thoſe currents are occaſioned by the flux and reflux of that mighty river.

February 13, we ſaw the land from S. by W. to S. half E. appearing plain, with very few riſings, and of a very moderate height, our ſoundings at that time from 46 to 56 fathom, the firſt mud, the latter ſtony ground. This day, at four in the evening we were within about four miles of Cape Blanco on the coaſt of Patagonia, and in 12 fathom water; on which we hauled off, and ran along the coaſt, the ſoundings from 20 to 60 fathom water. At five the next morning we ſaw the land from W. by N. to S. W. half W. with an opening near the middle; which I believe to be the harbour of Port Deſire, ſo called by Sir John Narborough. The northermoſt land in ſight is Cape Blanco, and the ſouthermoſt Penguin Iſland, ſo called from the great numbers of penguins about it, of which birds Sir John's ſhip's company killed and ſalted large quantities for proviſions, and which he reports to be very good and wholeſome food. Cape Blanco is in the latitude of 47 deg. 10 min. S. longitude from St. Katharine's 17 deg. 38 min. W. which makes it from London 67 deg. 20 min. W. taking the N. E. point of St. Katharine's in 49 deg. 42 min. W. to be about 11 min. to the eaſtward of the place where the ſhip lay when I fixed it by obſervation.

The 17th, in the evening, we anchored about 17 or 18 leagues ſhort of the harbour of Port St. Julian, ſo called by Sir Francis Drake, who touched there in his voyage round the globe, and where he condemned and executed Mr. Doughty, the next perſon in command to himſelf, on pretence of a conſpiracy to murder him and ruin the expedition; whence a ſmall iſland within the harbour is to this day called the Iſland of True Juſtice. The next morning we ſaw a ſail at S. by E. which we believing to be the Pearl, made the ſignal for the return of all cruizers; but ſhe not minding, as I ſuppoſe not ſeeing it, we ordered the Glouceſter to chaſe, and at two in the afternoon the Glouceſter and her chaſe, which to our great ſatisfaction proved to be the Pearl, joined us. They informed us, that, on January the 31ſt, their Commander, Captain Dandy Kidd, died; and that on the 7th inſtant they were chaſed by five large ſhips, which they believed to be Spaniſh men of war, and were ſome time within gunſhot of them, though they never fired a gun, having endeavoured to decoy the Pearl by hoiſting a broad red pendant, like that of the Engliſh Commodore, at the Admiral's main-top-maſt head, and hoping by that means to be taken for our Commodore, and ſo to inveigle and make ſure of their prey; Captain Mitchell, thus decoyed, narrowly eſcaped them, by running through a ſpace of water, where the tides or currents making a great ripling, the Spaniards, who thought it was rocky and broken ground, were afraid to follow her. Theſe ſhips we ſuppoſed to be the Spaniſh ſquadron, commanded by Admiral Piſarro, the ſame who got ſo great a name among them for his conduct in bringing home their flota ſafe into Port Andero the laſt year, eluding the vigilance of our ſquadrons who waited for them off Cadiz, and was therefore looked on as the propereſt perſon to be ſent to intercept us. We ſhould not have been diſpleaſed, however, to have met them with our whole force, and did not much doubt to have either deſtroyed or diſabled them. But the time of their deſtruction was not yet come; their miſerable fate ſhall be related in its proper place.

We were now, being the 18th, ſailing along ſhore for the harbour of St. Julian. I found the tide to ſet here N. and S. about a mile an hour. The time of flowing here on the full and change days is N. E. by E. and S. W. by W. neareſt. We ſent one of our boats with an officer in-ſhore, to ſound and endeavour to diſcover the mouth of the harbour. At ſix in the evening we came to an anchor in 12 fathom water. At eight the lieutenant returned, having found the harbour. We ſent aſhore our boats to make farther diſcoveries, and to endeavour ſome to get freſh water, and others to procure ſalt, (of which Sir J. Narborough obſerved, when he was here, that in February there was enough of it to load 1000 ſhips) for the uſe of the ſquadron in the South Seas. We continued here till the 27th, during which time we ſtove moſt of our empty caſks, in order to clear our ſhips as much as poſſible, and got up and mounted ſuch of our guns as we had before ſtruck down into the hold in order to eaſe the ſhips; for now, not knowing how ſoon we might meet with the Spaniſh ſquadron, it was neceſſary to have them all in readineſs. We could find no freſh water here, and but a very ſmall quantity of ſalt, and no other refreſhments whatever; all the country, as far as we could diſcover, being quite barren and deſolate. We got ſome proviſions out of the Anne victualler on board each of the other ſhips, repaired the Trial's maſt, and aſſiſted her and the victualler to overhaul and new-fix moſt of their rigging. Having loſt the hopes of a ſupply of water here, we were put to the allowance of one quart a man for one day, and three pints for another, alternately; but, conſidering our paſſage had hitherto proved extremely ſtormy and cold, and a dead time of the year coming on very faſt, it was thought proper, in order to keep the people in as good heart as poſſible, to give them whole allowance of all other proviſions, which was ordered accordingly.

Here we farther ſecured our lower-deck guns, by nailing quoins under the trucks, in caſe the tackles, breechings, or iron-work, might give way, or fail in the ſtormy weather which we had much reaſon to expect.

Here likewiſe the Commodore removed the Hon. Captain Murray into the Pearl, in the room of Captain Kidd; and Captain Cheap into the Wager in the room of Captain Murray. He advanced Mr. Charles Saunders, his firſt lieutenant, to be commander of the Trial Sloop, in the room of Captain Cheap; and made Mr. Piercy Brett, firſt lieutenant of the Glouceſter, ſecond lieutenant of his own ſhip. The Trial being repaired, and the Pearl, who had thrown about 14 ton of water overboard when chaſed by the Spaniards, being ſupplied from the other ſhips, we made ready to proſecute our voyage.

This harbour of Port St. Julian is a barred harbour, only fit to receive ſmall ſhips and veſſels. We lay off in the road about two miles from the mouth of it. It is not to be ſeen open from where we lay, one point ſhutting in another; and before any ſmall ſhip or veſſel pretends to venture into the harbour, they ought to ſend in their boats at low water, and fix poles or buoys on the ends of the ſhoals, which, in a manner, block up the paſſage. The country about it is pretty much on the level, except a few copling hillocks to the northward, and a pretty high one in the bay, which bears W. S. W. from the place where we lay at anchor. The latitude of Port St. Julian is 49 deg. 10 min. S. its longitude from London 69 deg. 48 min. W. and the variation of the compaſs 17 deg. 20 min. E. We had here uncertain boiſterous weather, with much rain, ſome ſnow, and generally thick fog, with ſo much wind and ſea as made us ride hard, and haſtened our departure from this uneaſy ſituation.

Sir John Narborough and ſome others write, that they have often ſeen and converſed with the inhabitants in this and other parts of Patagonia, and have given wonderful deſcriptions of them; but as we ſaw none of them, I have nothing to ſay of that ſort, nor indeed do I think there is any thing in this wild part of the world worthy of the leaſt notice.

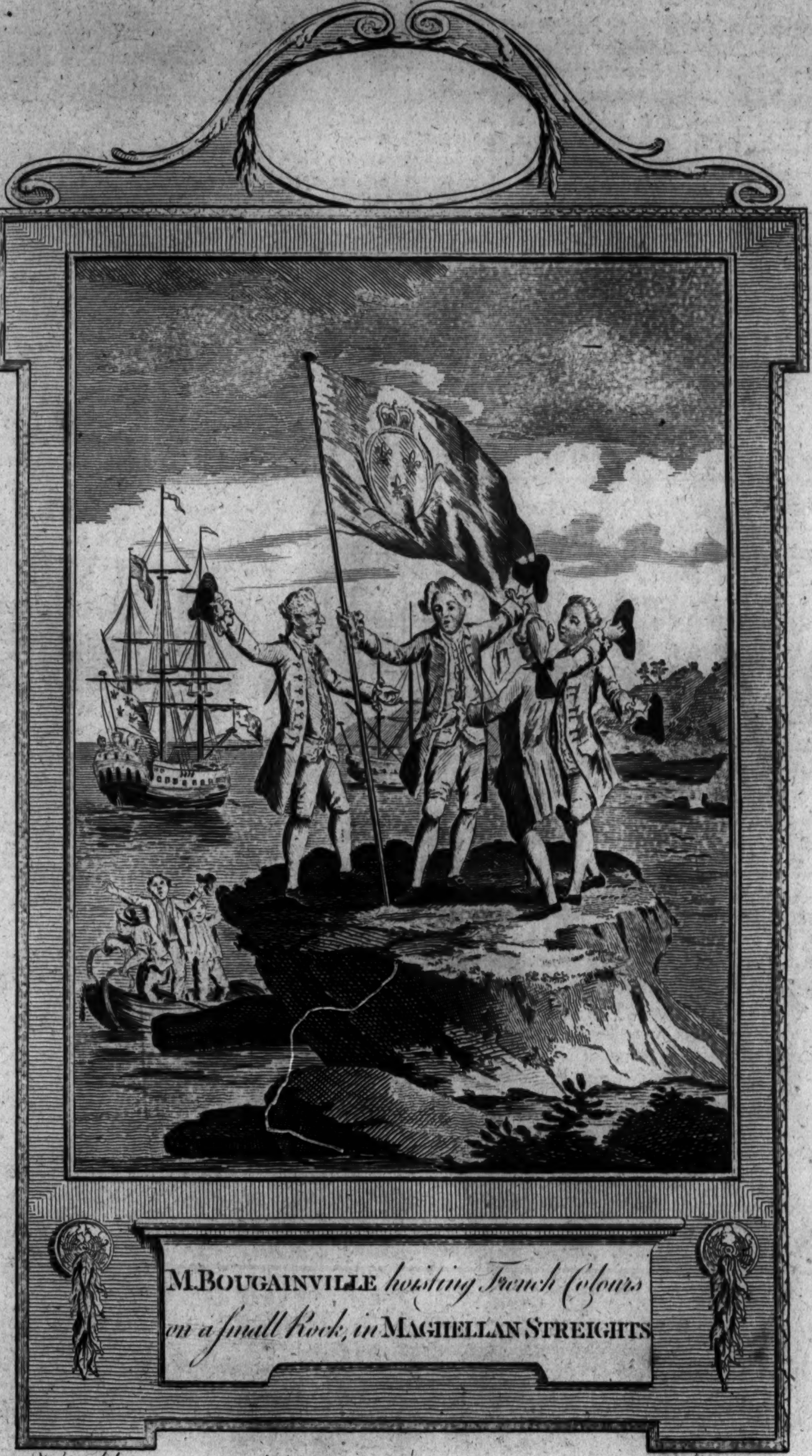
The 27th, at ſix in the morning, we made the ſignal, weighed, and put to ſea; but the Glouceſter being long in weighing her anchor, and the weather proving thick and hazy, we ſoon loſt ſight of her, and at one in the afternoon, tacked, and lay by for her coming up; at ſeven we fired a gun, a ſignal for her, and ſoon after ſhe joined us, having broke her main-yard in the ſlings.

Previous to our leaving this port, a council was held on board the Centurion, at which all the officers by ſea and land attended, when it was propoſed by the Commodore, that their firſt attempt, after their arrival in the South Seas, ſhould be the attack of the town of Baldivia, the principal frontier of the diſtrict of Chili. To this propoſition the council unanimouſly agreed; in conſequence of which, new inſtructions were given to the Captains of the ſquadron, by which they were directed, in caſe of ſeparation, to rendezvous at the iſland of Neuſtra Senora del Secoro, and there cruiſe for 10 days; after which, they were ordered to repair to the height of Baldivia, and there between 40 deg. and 40 deg. 30 min. to continue to cruiſe 14 days longer; and, if in that time they were not joined by the reſt of the ſquadron, they were then to quit that ſtation, and direct their courſe to the iſland of Juan Fernandez.

March the 4th, in the morning, we paſſed by the Streights of Magellan, ſo near that we ſaw them very plain; the northernmoſt point of which, known by the name of Cape Virgin Mary, I found to be in the latitude of 52 deg. 28 min. S. longitude from London 70 deg. 55 min. W. variation of the compaſs 18 deg. 40 min. E. the ſoundings, when it bears about S. W. by W. at the diſtance of eight leagues, from 32 to 50 fathom, the bottom black-grey ſand and mud. The afternoon of this day being very bright and clear, with ſmall breezes, inclinable to calm, moſt of the Captains took the opportunity of this favourable weather to pay a viſit to the Commodore; but, while they were in company together, they were all greatly alarmed by a ſudden flame which burſt out on board the Centurion, and which was ſucceeded by a cloud of ſmoak. However, they were ſoon relieved from their apprehenſions, by receiving information, that the blaſt was occaſioned by a ſpark of fire from the forge lighting on ſome gunpowder, and other combuſtibles, which the officers on board were preparing for uſe, in caſe we ſhould fall in with the Spaniſh fleet; and that it had been extinguiſhed without any danger to the ſhip.

The 6th, in the morning, we ſaw the land of Terra del Fuego, conſiſting of high craggy hills, towering

London Published by Alex^r. Hogg at the Kings Arms No. 16 Paternoster Row.



M. BOUGAINVILLE *hoisting French Colours on a ſmall Rock, in* MAGHELLAN STREIGHTS

Vangro delin *Royce sculp*

BRITISH MUSEUM 7 FE 90

above each other, moſtly covered with ſnow, with deep horrid valleys, ſome few ſcattered trees, no plains, nor one chearful green through all the diſmal proſpect; ſo that the whole may not improperly be termed the Land of Deſolation; and I much queſtion whether a more dreary aſpect is to be ſeen in any other part of the habitable earth; for voyagers ſay this is inhabited, but ſurely its inhabitants muſt be the moſt miſerable of human beings. This evening we lay by, that we might not overſhoot the Straits of Le Maire in the night; though I believe, had we kept on, and paſſed round Staten Land, a ſmall iſland or two, which lie to the eaſtward of thoſe ſtraits, and together with Terra del Fuego frame them, it would have been more to our advantage than by paſſing through them.

The 7th, at eight in the morning, we were very near a point of land on Terra del Fuego, called Cape St. James, bearing E. S. E. another called Cape St. Vincent, S. E. half E. the middlemoſt of the Three Brothers, being three high hills on Terra del Fuego, appearing almoſt contiguous to each other, S. by W. and a very high ſugar-loaf hill, called Monte Gorda, farther up in the country, and appearing above them, bore ſouth from us. It is by theſe marks that you know you are near Strait Le Maire; and indeed we began to open them in this poſition. By noon we were almoſt through them, being aſſiſted by a very ſtrong tide with much rippling, and which made to the ſouthward ſomewhat before 10 o'clock in the morning. The courſe through is almoſt directly ſouth, and there are no ſhoals nor rocks in the paſſage from whence you may incur any danger; the only thing you have to fear is, the tide's turning againſt you while you are in the ſtraits, for in that caſe you are certainly hurried back again, and can have no paſſage there till the next turn of the tide. The breadth of this ſtrait may be about ſix or ſeven leagues, and its length about ſeven or eight; which being paſſed, you enter into a vaſt open ocean, commonly known by the name of the South Sea. This ſtrait lies in latitude 55 deg. S. longitude from London 67 deg. 30 min. W. variation of the compaſs 21 deg. 36 min. E. ſoundings in the ſtraits from 43 to 58 fathom, the bottom black ſand and pebble-ſtones. In paſſing through here, our joy was increaſed by the brightneſs of the ſky and the ſerenity of the weather, which was indeed remarkably pleaſing; for though the winter was now advancing apace, yet the morning of this day, in its brilliancy and mildneſs, gave place to none we had ſeen ſince our departure from England. But we here found what was conſtantly verified by all our obſervations in theſe high latitudes, that fair weather was ever the forerunner of a ſucceeding ſtorm, and that ſunſhine and tempeſt followed one another like light and ſhade. We had ſcarcely reached the ſouthern extremity of the ſtraits, when the ſerenity of the ſky, which had ſo much flattered our expectations, was all at once obſcured, the wind ſhifted to the ſouthward, and the ſea began to ſwell to an aſtoniſhing height. Before night the tempeſt aroſe, and the tide, which had hitherto favoured us, turned furiouſly againſt us; ſo that, inſtead of purſuing our intended courſe, we were driven to the eaſtward, by the united force of wind and current, with ſo much precipitation, that in the morning we found ourſelves ſeven leagues to the eaſtward of Strait Le Maire. From this time we had ſuch a continual ſucceſſion of tempeſtuous weather as ſurprized the oldeſt and moſt experienced mariners on board, and obliged them to confeſs, that what they had hitherto called ſtorms were inconſiderable gales compared with the violence of theſe winds, which raiſed ſuch ſhort and at the ſame time ſuch mountainous waves, as greatly ſurpaſſed in danger all ſeas known in any other part of the globe: and it was not without reaſon that this unuſual appearance filled us with continual terror; for, had any one of theſe waves broke fairly over us, it muſt in all probability have ſent us to the bottom. Nor did we eſcape with terror only; for the ſhip rolling inceſſantly gunwale-to, gave us ſuch quick and violent motions, that the men were in perpetual danger of being daſhed againſt the maſts or ſides of the ſhip: and though we were extremely careful to ſecure ourſelves from theſe ſhocks by graſping at ſome fixed body, yet many of our people were forced from their holds, ſome of whom were killed, and others greatly injured; in particular, one of our beſt ſeamen was carried over-board and drowned, another diſlocated his neck, a third was thrown into the main hold and broke his thigh, and one of our boatſwain's mates broke his collar-bone twice; not to mention many other accidents of the ſame kind. Theſe tempeſts, ſo dreadful in themſelves, though unattended by any other unfavourable circumſtance, were rendered more miſchievous to us by their inequality, and the deceitful intervals which they at ſome times afforded; for, though we were often obliged to lie-to for days together under a reefed mizen, and were frequently reduced to lie at the mercy of the waves under our bare poles, yet now and then we ventured to make ſail with our courſes double reefed; and the weather proving more tolerable, would perhaps encourage us to ſet our top-ſails: after which, the wind, without any previous notice, would return upon us with redoubled force, and would in an inſtant tear our ſails from the yards. And, that no circumſtance might be wanting which could aggravate our diſtreſs, theſe blaſts generally brought with them a great quantity of ſnow and ſleet, which caſed our rigging, and froze our ſails, thereby rendering them and our cordage brittle, and apt to ſnap upon the ſlighteſt ſtrain, adding inexpreſſible difficulty and labour to the working of the ſhip, benumbing the limbs of the people employed in handing the ſails, or handling the ropes, and making them incapable of exerting themſelves with their uſual activity, and even diſabling many by mortifying their toes and fingers.

And now, as it were to add the finiſhing ſtroke to our misfortunes, our people began to be univerſally afflicted with that moſt terrible, obſtinate, and, at ſea, incurable diſeaſe, the ſcurvy, which quickly made a moſt dreadful havock among us, beginning at firſt to carry off two or three a day, but ſoon increaſing, and at laſt carrying off eight or ten; and as moſt of the living were very ill of the ſame diſtemper, and the little remainder who preſerved their healths better, in a manner quite worn out with inceſſant labour, I have ſometimes ſeen four or five dead bodies, ſome ſown up in their hammocks, others not, waſhing about the decks, for want of help to bury them in the ſea. But as the particulars of all the various diſaſters and ſufferings of various kinds that befel us, would be endleſs, I ſhall only mention a few.

The 10th, 11th, and 12th, very ſtormy weather, with ſnow and ſleet, and a very great overgrown ſea from the S. W.

The 15th one William Baker fell overboard and was drowned. The 16th, the Anne pink, which had ſeparated from us the 11th in the ſtorm, again joined us, in lat. 59 deg. 20 min. S.

Part of the 17th, 18th, and 19th, very ſtrong gales, and a great rolling ſea from the N. W.

The 18th, we had again ſtrong gales of wind with extreme cold, and at midnight the main-top-ſail ſplit, and one of the ſtraps of the main dead-eyes broke.

The 23d, and part of the 24th, a moſt violent ſtorm of wind, hail, and rain, with a very lofty ſea. The 23d, in the evening, we ſprung the main-top-ſail yard, and ſplit the main-ſail into rags, the greateſt part of which was blown overboard. On theſe accidents we furled all our other ſails, and lay-to under a mizen.

The latter part of the 24th proving more moderate, we bent a new main-ſail, got down the broken main-top-ſail yard, and got up and rigged another in its place.

The 25th, it blew a very hurricane, and reduced us to the neceſſity of lying-to under our bare poles. As our ſhip kept the wind better than any of the reſt, we were obliged in the afternoon to wear ſhip; in doing of which, we had no other expedient but clapping the helm a-weather, and manning the fore-ſhrouds; in the execution of which we had one of our beſt men canted overboard. We perceived, that, notwithſtanding the prodigious agitation of the waves, he ſwam very ſtrong; and it was with the utmoſt concern that we found ourſelves incapable of aſſiſting him. Indeed we were the more grieved at his unhappy fate, as we loſt ſight of him ſtruggling with the waves, and conceived, from the manner in which he ſwam, that he might continue ſenſible for a conſiderable time longer of the horror attending his irretrievable ſituation.

The 26th being ſomewhat more moderate, we found two of our main-ſhrouds broke, which we repaired; we likewiſe bent our main-top-ſail, and made ſail.

The 30th, in the evening, the Glouceſter made a ſignal of diſtreſs; and, on ſpeaking with her, we found ſhe had broke her main-yard in the ſlings; an accident the more grievous, as it tended unavoidably to delay us in theſe inhoſpitable latitudes, where every moment we were in danger of periſhing. The weather proving favourable, all the carpenters were ordered on board the Glouceſter, and next day ſhe was ready to ſail.

The 3d, 4th, 5th, and 6th of April, a continued ſtorm of wind and rain; a dreadful ſea, and very cold weather. We lowered our yards, furled our courſes, and lay by for the moſt part under a mizzen and mizzen-ſtay-ſail. The 3d, about 11 o'clock at night, a raging ſea took us on the larboard quarter, where it ſtove in the quarter gallery, and ruſhed into the ſhip like a deluge. For ſome time it laid the ſhip down upon her ſide; but ſhe providentially righted again, though ſlowly; it threw down and half drowned all the people on the deck, broke one of the ſtraps of the main dead-eyes, and ſnapped a mizzen and puttock ſhroud. This was the greateſt ſea which we had encountered ſince we came into thoſe parts, and we met with but one ſuch ſtroke more in the whole voyage; two or three ſuch ſucceeding muſt certainly have ſent us to the bottom.

The 7th, 8th, 9th, and 10th, continued very ſtormy and ſqually, with ſnow, hail, rain, and a large ſea; the weather continuing very cold.

The 8th, at four in the evening, the Anne pink made a ſignal of diſtreſs; and, on ſpeaking with her, we found ſhe had ſprung her fore-ſtay, and the gammoning of her bowſprit. This was the more unfortunate, as none of the carpenters were yet returned from the Glouceſter. Nor was the Anne the only ſhip that ſuffered in this ſtorm; the Wager loſt her mizzen-maſt and main-top-ſail yard, owing to the badneſs of the iron work. In this dilemma we were obliged to bear away till theſe ſhips had made all faſt.

The 10th, foggy and hazy. This afternoon the Severn and Pearl were far a-ſtern, and ſeemed to me to lag deſignedly. We made a very eaſy ſail all day, and lay by at night, and fired ſeveral guns as a ſignal for them to join us; the weather being pretty moderate, and the wind fair for them, they might have effected it with eaſe. By the cloſe of the evening we could but juſt ſee them, and from that time ſaw them no more. However, we heard afterwards in the South Seas, by letters taken on board ſome of the Spaniſh ſhips of their arrival at Rio Janeiro in the Brazils.

The 15th, the weather proved ſomewhat more moderate. At half an hour paſt one in the morning we ſaw two iſlands right a-head, at about two leagues diſtance; we immediately wore our ſhip, and ſtood off to the ſouthward. Thoſe iſlands were very unexpected, as well as unwelcome, we imagining we had been to the weſtward of all lands and iſlands of the coaſt of Terra del Fuego, but we now found our miſtake, and that there was a neceſſity of our ſtanding farther to the ſouthward, in order to get a ſufficient weſting. Thoſe iſlands I find to lie in the latitude of 54 deg. 20 min. S. longitude from London 84 deg. 10 min. W. Mr. Walters' ſuppoſes the land we fell in with on this occaſion to be Cape Noir, and a part of Terra del Fuego.

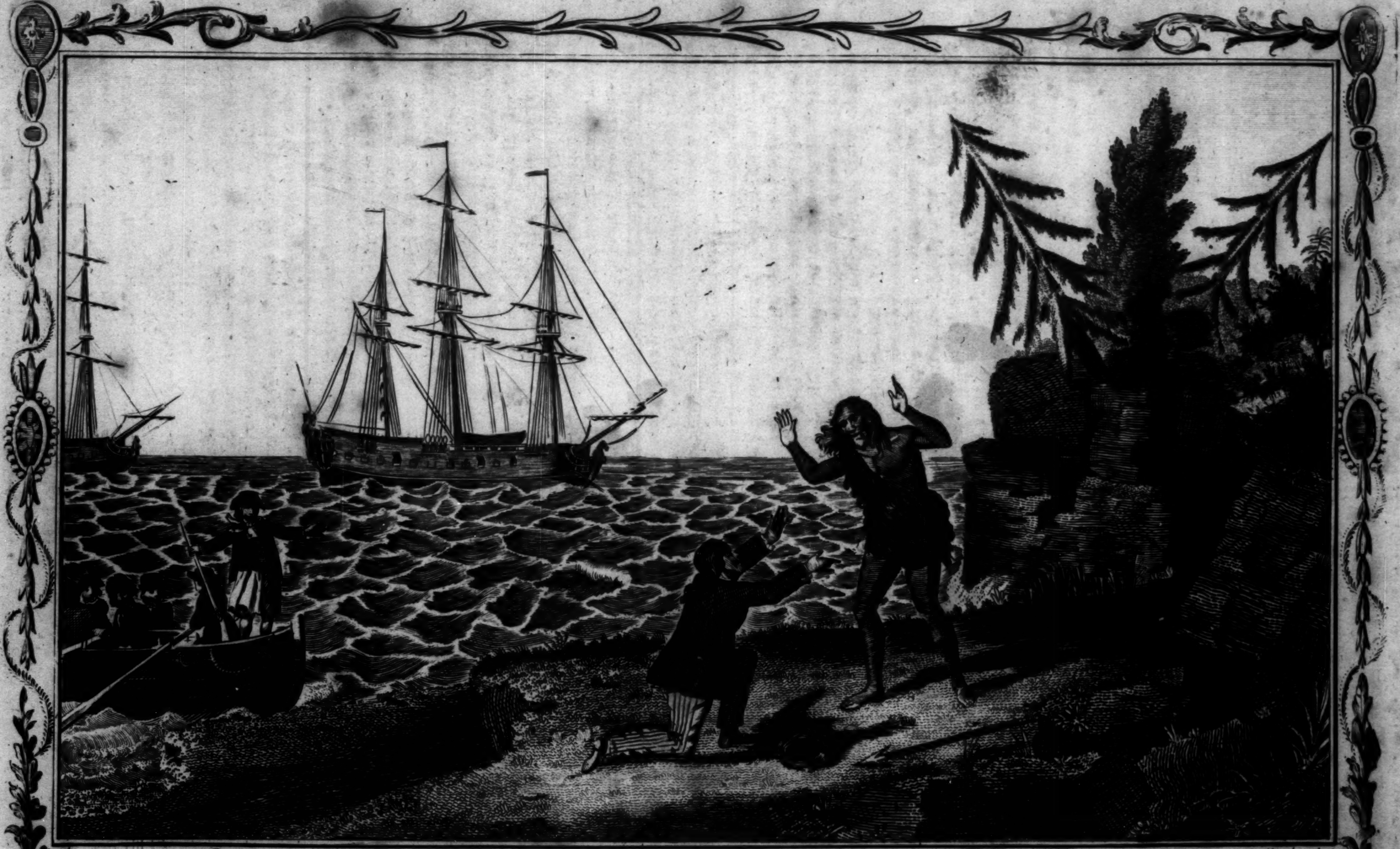
From this time to the 23d we had nothing remarkable, the weather continuing very uncertain and variable, with a large ſea and a very cold air; and the 21ſt, at nine at night, we were in the latitude of 60 deg. 5 min. S. being the greateſt ſouth latitude we made during the voyage.

The 23d, very hard gales and ſqualls, with much rain. This evening we loſt ſight of the Glouceſter, Wager, Trial, and Anne pink, being all the remainder of our ſquadron, after the defection of the Severn and Pearl. The Wager's unfortunate cataſtrophe is well known; the others afterwards joined us at Juan Fernandez, as ſhall be related in its proper place.

The 24th, 25th, and 26th, the wind being moſtly fair, though ſtill blowing hard, we made pretty good runs under an eaſy ſail to the north-weſtward. The 24th it blew a hurricane, and the men endeavouring to hand the top-ſails, the clew-lines and bunt-lines broke; and the ſheet being half flown, every ſeam in the fore-topſail was ſoon ſplit from top to bottom, and the main-topſail ſhook ſo ſtrongly in the wind, that it carried away the top lanthorn, and endangered the head of the maſt; however, at length, ſome of the moſt daring of our men ventured upon the yard, and cut the ſail away cloſe to the reefs, though with the utmoſt hazard of their lives, whilſt at the ſame time the fore-topſail beat about the yard with ſo much fury that it was ſoon blown to ſhreds: nor was our attention to our topſails our ſole employment; for the mainſail blew looſe, which obliged us to lower the yard to ſecure the ſail, and the fore-yard being likewiſe lowered, we lay to under a mizzen. The 25th, we found much of our running rigging broken, which we repaired. The 27th, we bent other topſails in the places of thoſe ſplit. Nothing more remarkable the reſt of this month and the firſt week in the next, but ſtormy uncertain weather, and great ſickneſs and mortality among our people.

Friday, May 8, at ſeven in the morning, ſaw the main land of Patagonia appearing in high mountains covered moſtly with ſnow. We likewiſe ſaw ſeveral iſlands, one of which we took to be the Iſland del Soccoro, ſo called by Sir John Narborough, in his account of his voyage into thoſe parts: and from the fine deſcription this gentlemen had given of this iſland, (having been there in the very height of ſummer), this place was appointed for our firſt general rendezvous in the South Seas. An unhappy appointment it was in its conſequences; for when the people, already reduced to the laſt extremity, found this to be the place of rendezvous, where they had hoped to meet the reſt of their companions with joy, and what a miſerable part of the world it appeared to be, their grief gave way to deſpair; they ſaw no end of their ſufferings, nor any door open to their ſafety. Thoſe who had hitherto been well and in heart, now full of deſpondency, fell down, ſickened, and died; and, to ſum up this melancholy part, I verily believe, that our touching on this coaſt, the long ſtay we made here, and our hinderance by croſs winds, which we ſhould have avoided in a direct courſe to Juan Fernandez, loſt us at leaſt 60 or 70 of as ſtout and able men as any in the navy. This unſpeakable diſtreſs was ſtill aggravated by the difficulties we found in working the ſhip, as the ſcurvy had by this time deſtroyed no leſs than 200 of our men, and had in ſome degree affected almoſt the whole crew. It were, indeed, endleſs to recite minutely the various diſaſters, fatigues, and terrors, which we encountered on this coaſt; all theſe went on increaſing till the 22nd of May, at which time the fury of all the ſtorms which we had hitherto experienced, ſeemed to be combined, and to have conſpired our deſtruction. In this hurricane almoſt all our ſails were ſplit, and great part of our ſtanding rigging broken; and, about eight in the evening, a mountainous overgrown ſea took us on our ſtarboard quarter, and gave us ſo prodigious a ſhock, that ſeveral of our ſhrouds broke with the jerk, by which our maſts were in danger of coming by the board; our ballaſt and ſtores too were ſo ſtrangely ſhifted, that the ſhip heeled afterwards two ſtreaks a-port. Indeed, it was a moſt tremendous blow, and we were thrown into the utmoſt conſternation, from the apprehenſion of inſtantly foundering. Our deplorable ſituation allowing no longer

BRITISH MUSEUM 7 FE 90



Grandet pinx.

Pollard sculp.

Affecting interview of two MOSKITO-MEN,
one of whom had been left Three Years on the Island of Juan Fernandez by Captn. Dampier.

ger any room for deliberation, we ſtood for the iſland of Juan Fernandez; and, to ſave time, which was now very precious, our men dying four, five, and ſix in a day, we endeavoured to hit the iſland upon a meridian courſe. On the 28th of May, being nearly in the parallel in which it is laid down, we expected to have ſeen it, and indeed the Commodore was perſuaded that he did ſee it; but all the other officers being of opinion that it was only a cloud, to which the hazineſs of the weather gave too much colour, we made ſail to the eaſtward, and by ſo doing loſt near 14 days in recovering our weſting again. This was a moſt fatal diſappointment; for in this run we loſt about 80 of our men, which, probably, had the Commodore's advice been attended to, would moſt of them have been ſaved.

The 8th of June, at ſix in the evening, we at length ſaw the iſland of Juan Fernandez, bearing N. by E. half E. about 15 or 16 leagues off. The 10th, at two in the morning, we anchored in 56 fathom, cloſe under the N. E. end of the iſland. At 10 in the morning of the 11th, we with much labour and difficulty weighed our anchor, and at noon happily moored our ſhip in the Great Bay, about a mile from the ſhore, in 52 fathom water, to our inexpreſſible joy, having been from St. Katharine's in the Brazils to this place 148 days, on ſuch a dreadful and fatal paſſage as I believe very few other perſons ever experienced.

The 11th, at two in the afternoon, the Trial ſloop appeared in the offing. We immediately ſent ſome of our hands on board her, by whoſe aſſiſtance ſhe was brought to an anchor between us and the land. We ſoon found that the ſloop had not been exempted from the like calamities which we had ſo ſeverely felt; for her Commander, Captain Saunders, waiting on the Commodore, informed him, that, out of his ſmall complement, he had buried 34 of his men; and thoſe who recovered were ſo univerſally afflicted with the ſcurvy, that only himſelf, his Lieutenant, and three of his men, were able to ſtand by the ſails.

The ſame day we got out our long-boat, and ſent her on ſhore with materials for building tents for the ſick, and with orders to bring on board ſome water.

The 15th, we ſent our pinnace to aſſiſt the Trial, ſhe being driven from her anchors to ſea, by the violent flaws of wind which blow off the high lands. This and the next day we put aſhore 75 ſick men, in ſo weak a condition, that we were obliged to carry them out of the ſhip in their hammocks, and to convey them afterwards in the ſame manner from the water-ſide over a ſtoney beach to the tents prepared for their reception. In this work of humanity, not only the officers, but the Commodore himſelf, chearfully lent their aſſiſtance.

The 17th, the Trial came again to an anchor, and moored. This day and the next we ſent on ſhore the remainder of our ſick people, the whole number now on ſhore being 135, many of whom, being too far gone in the ſcurvy, died one after another to the number of not leſs than ſixty.

We now began to ſend on ſhore materials for tents for the coopers, ſail-makers, and ſome of the officers; a copper oven which we had with us for baking ſoft bread for the ſhip's company, and the ſmith's forge for making or repairing ſuch iron-work as was neceſſary: and, after a ſhort interval of relaxation, all hands were buſily employed, ſome in cutting large quantities of wood for the ſhip's uſe, ſome in making charcoal for the ſmith, and for a farther ſtore; the bakers in baking bread, the coopers in making up and cleaning the caſks for water, the ſail-makers in mending the ſails and making others; ſome in fiſhing for the ſick, and the reſt were otherways employed: and here being very great plenty of fine fiſh, all taken by the hook, two or three people could never fail to take us as much in about two hours as all the ſhip's company could eat: beſides this we took great quantities for ſalting and curing; and ſome private perſons who had hooks and lines fiſhed for themſelves, and never failed of enough for their own uſe, and to give to thoſe who had none. The people on board were employed in cleaning the ſhip, which was in a very filthy condition, and in ſtripping the maſts, and overhauling the rigging. One of the boatſwain's mates, with ſome aſſiſtants, having run up a rope-walk on ſhore, was employed in making what ſmall cordage we might want; others in watering, and, in ſhort, in every thing that might contribute to put us in as good a condition, and in as ſhort a time as poſſible; and as faſt as the ſick recovered, they were put on the like employments.

At firſt ſight of this iſland, it appeared with a moſt unpromiſing aſpect, being extremely mountainous, rugged, and irregular; but, upon our nearer approach, it improved upon us; and when we were landed, we found all the vegetables which are uſually eſteemed to be peculiarly adapted to the cure of thoſe ſcorbutic diſorders which are contracted by ſalt diet, and long continuance at ſea; for here we found water-creſſes and purſlain, wild-ſorrel, and Sicilian-radiſhes, in profuſion. Theſe vegetables, not to mention the turneps which now abound in every plain, with the fiſh and fleſh we got here, were not only grateful to us in the extreme, but were likewiſe very refreſhing to the ſick, and contributed not a little to the recovery of thoſe who were not already too far advanced in the diſorder to admit of relief; and to the reſtoring of others to their wonted vigour, who, though not apparently under the malignancy of the diſtemper, and its baneful concomitants, were yet greatly debilitated, by continual watching and anxiety of mind, from which not a ſoul on board was exempt.

During the time of our reſidence here, we found the inland parts of the iſland no ways to fall ſhort of the ſanguine prepoſſeſſions we had firſt entertained in its favour; for the woods, which covered moſt of the ſteepeſt hills, were free from all buſhes and underwood, and afforded an eaſy paſſage through every part of them; and the irregularities of the hills and precipices, in the northern part of the iſland, neceſſarily traced out, by their various combinations, a great number of romantic valleys, moſt of which had a ſtream of the cleareſt water running through them, that tumbled in caſcades from rock to rock, as the bottom of the valley by the courſe of the neighbouring hills was at any time broken into a ſudden ſharp deſcent. Some particular ſpots occurred in theſe valleys, where the ſhades and fragrance of the contiguous woods, the loftineſs of the over-hanging rocks, and the tranſparency and frequent falls of the neighbouring ſtreams, preſented ſcenes of ſuch elegance and dignity, as would with difficulty be rivalled in any other part of the globe. It is in this place, perhaps, that the ſimple productions of unaſſiſted nature may be ſaid to excel all the fictitious deſcriptions of the moſt animated imagination. The ſpot where the Commodore pitched his tent, and where he choſe, during his ſtay, to fix his reſidence, exceeded in beauty any thing that words can be ſuppoſed to repreſent. It was a delightful little lawn, that lay on an eaſy aſcent at the diſtance of about half a mile from the ſea, and was probably the very ſpot on which Shelvock twenty years before had pitched his tent. In front there was a large avenue cut through the woods to the ſea-ſide, which ſloping to the water with a gentle deſcent, opened a proſpect to the bay and the ſhips at anchor. This lawn was ſcreened behind by a tall wood of myrtle ſweeping round it in the form of a theatre, the ſlope on which the wood ſtood riſing with a much ſharper aſcent than the lawn itſelf, though not ſo much but that the hills and precipices within land towered up conſiderably above the tops of the trees, and added to the grandeur of the view. There were, beſides, two ſtreams of chryſtal water, which ran on the right and left of the tent, within an hundred yards diſtance, and were ſhaded by the trees that ſkirted the lawn on either ſide, and completed the ſymmetry of the whole. Add to theſe, the gentle murmurings of the diſtant brooks, the muſic of the birds among the myrtles, the ſweet aromatic odour of the ſpice-trees that every where perfumed the air with their fragrance, and you may form in imagination a faint idea of this ſecond paradiſe,

diſe, which could only be exceeded by the perfection of the firſt.

It is aſtoniſhing, that, among all the voyagers who have viſited this fortunate iſland before us, and who have obliged the world with deſcriptions of it, none of them have mentioned a charming little bird that, with its wild, various, and irregular notes, enchants the ear, and makes the woods reſound with its melody. This untutored choriſter is ſomewhat leſs in ſize than the goldfinch, its plumage beautifully intermixed with red and other vivid colours, and the golden crown upon its head ſo bright and glowing, when ſeen in the full light of the ſun, that it ſurpaſſes all deſcription. Theſe little birds are far from being uncommon or unfamiliar; for they perched upon the branches of the myrtle-trees ſo near us, and ſung ſo chearfully, as if they had been conſcious we were ſtrangers, and came to give us welcome.

There is, beſides the above, another little bird, unnoticed by any former writer, and which ſeems likewiſe peculiar to the iſland, and conſequently without a name; it is ſtill leſs than the former in ſize, but not inferior in beauty, though not ſo muſical; the back, wings, and head, are of a lively green, intermixed with fine ſhining golden ſpots, and the belly a ſnow white ground, with ebony coloured ſpots, ſo elegantly varied as no art can imitate. To the catalogue of birds mentioned by former writers as inhabitants of this iſland, ſhould alſo be added blackbirds and thruſhes very like thoſe in England; and owls, but of a diminutive ſize.

Of four-footed animals we ſaw none but dogs, cats, rats, and goats; and of the latter but few, as the dogs of various kinds, grey-hounds, maſtiffs, pointers, ſpaniels, and mungrels, have thinned them in the plains, and driven them to the inacceſſible mountains; yet ſome were ſhot by the hunters, and were preferred by them to the beſt veniſon. Among thoſe preſented to the Commodore were two or three venerable through age, that had been marked more than thirty years before by Selkirk, who trained them for his ſport, ſlit their ears, and turned them looſe to graze the mountains.

I remember we had once an opportunity of obſerving a remarkable diſpute betwixt a herd of thoſe animals and a number of dogs; for going in our boat into the eaſtern bay we perceived ſome dogs run very eagerly upon the foot, and being willing to diſcover what game they were after, we lay upon our oars ſome time to view them, and at laſt ſaw them take a hill, where, looking a little farther, we obſerved upon the ridge of it an herd of goats, which ſeemed drawn up for their reception. There was a very narrow path ſkirted on each ſide by precipices, in which the leader of the herd poſted himſelf fronting the enemy, the reſt of the goats being ranged behind him where the ground was more open; as this ſpot was inacceſſible by any other path, excepting where this champion had placed himſelf, the dogs, though they ran up hill with great alacrity, yet when they came within about twenty yards, found they durſt not encounter this formidable Goliah, for he would infallibly have driven the firſt that approached him down the precipice; they therefore quietly laid themſelves down, panting, and did not offer to ſtir while we remained in ſight.

Theſe dogs have multiplied prodigiouſly, and have deſtroyed moſt of the cats as well as goats; the rats, however, keep poſſeſſion, and were very troubleſome gueſts in the night, when they generally paid us their viſits. It is not eaſy to determine in what manner ſuch a multitude of dogs ſubſiſt, as they are much more numerous than all the other four-footed creatures upon the iſland. Our people, indeed, were inclined to think, that they lived in a great meaſure upon the young ſea-lions and ſeals, and ſupported their opinion by the report of the ſailors, ſome of whom killed the dogs for food, who ſaid they taſted fiſhy: and, truly, there is hardly any other way of accounting for the ſubſiſtence of theſe animals; for, as has been ſaid, they have already deſtroyed all the goats in the acceſſible parts of the country; ſo that there now remain only a few among the crags and precipices, where the dogs cannot follow them. Theſe are divided into ſeparate herds of 20 or 30 each, which inhabit diſtinct faſtneſſes, and never mingle with each other; by this means we found it extremely difficult to kill them, and yet we were ſo deſirous of their fleſh, that we diſcovered, I believe, all their herds, and it was thought, by comparing their numbers, that they ſcarcely exceeded 200 upon the whole iſland. The dogs had deſtroyed the pardellas, too, of which former writers have given a large account, ſo that there was not one of them to be ſeen; we found indeed their burrows in the earth, which leaves no room to doubt of their being found in plenty in Selkirk's time, as well as cats, of which there is now ſcarce one alive.

Fleſh meat being thus extremely ſcarce, our people, being tired of fiſh, though excellent in their kind, at length condeſcended to eat ſeals, which, by degrees, they came to reliſh, and called them lamb. Of theſe, it being their brooding time, the numbers were incredible;—and likewiſe of the ſea-lion,—theſe animals have frequently furious battles among themſelves, principally about their females; and we were one day ſurprized by the ſight of two animals, which, at firſt, ſeemed different from all we had ever obſerved; but, on a nearer approach, they proved to be two ſea-lions that had been goring one another with their tuſhes, and were covered with blood, with which they plentifully abound. This led us to watch them more cloſely, and one was obſerved larger than the reſt, and from his driving off other males, and keeping a great number of females to himſelf, he was by the ſeamen humourouſly ſtiled the Baſhaw. To this pre-eminence, however, he had not arrived without many bloody conteſts; for on our people's attacking him in the midſt of his ſeraglio of females, he made a deſperate defence, and, when overpowered, the ſignals of his bravery appeared in numerous ſcars on every part of his body.

We had now been ten days on this iſland, when ſome of our people from an eminence diſcerned a ſhip to leeward with her courſes even with the horizon, without any other ſail aboard than her main-topſail; from which circumſtance, it was immediately concluded, that it was one of our own ſquadron; but the weather being hazy, no definite conjecture could be formed concerning her. She again diſappeared for ſome days, and we were all thrown into the deepeſt concern, fearing the weakneſs of her condition had diſabled her from working to windward, and that all her people had periſhed.

We continued our employ till the 26th, when we again ſaw the ſame ſhip; and, on her nearer approach, could diſtinguiſh her to be the Glouceſter; and, making no doubt of her being in diſtreſs, the Commodore ſent our boat on board her with water and refreſhments. We found her in a miſerable condition, not many above 100 people alive, and almoſt all thoſe helpleſs with the ſcurvy; their water ſo very ſhort, that they were obliged to allow but one pint a day to a man; and the continual flaws off the land, together with their being diſabled in their ſails and yards, hindered them from getting into the bay. The next day we ſent them a freſh ſupply of fiſh, greens, water, and men to help to work the ſhip; ſoon after which the flaws drove them off again, and the ſhip appeared no more till the 30th, when at two in the afternoon ſhe fired a gun, and made a ſignal of diſtreſs. She continued in this manner off and on, ſometimes in ſight, and ſometimes not, till July 23, during which time, though we often relieved the people on board with water and other neceſſaries, yet their ſufferings were inſupportable, and their whole complement were reduced to about 96 living perſons, all of whom muſt have periſhed in a few days more, had not the wind proved favourable to bring them into the bay; but providentially a freſh gale ſprung up from the ſea, and brought them to an anchor. We immediately ſent men on board to aſſiſt in mooring the ſhip, and continued our conſtant aſſiſtance afterwards, during our ſtay at this place. The 5th of Auguſt, the Commodore ſent the Trial ſloop to ſearch the iſland of Little Juan Fernandez, leſt any of the ſquadron ſhould have miſtaken that iſland for the place of rendezvous, and might remain there in expectation of meeting the reſt of the fleet.

On the 16th, the Anne pink, which was ſeparated from us with the reſt of the ſquadron the 23d of April, appeared in ſight. Her arrival gave us new ſpirits, ſhe being laden principally with proviſions, and we immediately were ordered full allowance of bread. This ſhip had been about two months in a ſafe harbour, on the main land, near the ſame parallel with del Soecoro, where ſhe had been directed by Providence, and where ſhe lay in ſecurity, enjoyed plenty, and her people, 16 in number, being once freed from their fears of ſhipwreck, very ſoon recovered their wonted vigour, having experienced none of thoſe hardſhips that were endured by the reſt of the fleet. They told us they had ſeen ſome Indians, and one time took one of their canoes with a man, a woman, ſome children, a dog, a cat, &c. and ſome implements for fiſhery; but in a day or two the whole family, the dog excepted, made their eſcape from them in the ſhip's ſmall boat, and left them their canoe in her ſtead. Thoſe Indians, they ſay, underſtood a few Spaniſh words, and probably might have ſome little correſpondence with the ſouthern Spaniards of Chili, or their nearer bordering Indians; or, perhaps, ſome of the Fathers for propagating the faith may now and then have been among them. The principal refreſhments they met with in this port, were wild celery, nettletops, and ſorrel; cockles and muſcles of an extraordinary ſize; good ſtore of geeſe, ſheep, and penguins. They judged it to lie in lat. 45 deg. 30 min. S. and it may be known by an iſland which faces it, and which the inhabitants call Inchin, and by a river in which they found excellent fiſh.

This veſſel, the Anne pink, was the laſt that joined us at Juan Fernandez. The remaining ſhips of the ſquadron were the Severn, the Pearl, and the Wager ſtore-ſhip. The Severn and Pearl, as has been already obſerved, parted company off Cape Noir, and, as we afterwards learned, put back to the Brazils; ſo that of all the ſhips that came into the South Seas, the Wager was the only ſhip that was miſſing. Captain Cheap, who commanded her, knowing the importance of the charge he had in truſt, without which no enterprize on ſhore could be undertaken, was extremely ſolicitous to reach Baldivia as the laſt place of rendezvous, and the firſt to be attacked, before the reſt of the ſquadron ſhould have finiſhed their cruiſe, that no blame might reſt upon him, if the attack of that city ſhould be judged improper to be carried into execution. But, whilſt this brave officer was exerting himſelf in endeavouring to keep clear of the land in making the iſland of del Soccoro, he had the misfortune to diſlocate his ſhoulder, and thereby to diſable himſelf from proſecuting with vigour the purpoſe he had in view. The ſhip being little better than a wreck, the crew in a miſerable deſponding condition, the officers quite exhauſted, the weather cold and ſtormy, and the wind and currents bearing in-ſhore, all theſe unlucky circumſtances concurring, ſo entangled the ſhip with the land, that all the efforts of the feeble crew could not prevent her from running upon a ſunken rock, where ſhe grounded between two ſmall iſlands, not a muſquet-ſhot from the ſhore. In this ſituation ſhe continued entire till every one on board might have reached the land in ſafety, and might have ſtored themſelves with proviſions, and every neceſſary for their preſent ſubſiſtence and future eſcape: but the moment the ſhip ſtruck, all ſubordination ceaſed; one part of the crew got poſſeſſion of the liquors, intoxicated themſelves in a beaſtly manner, and grew frantic in their cups; another part began to furniſh themſelves with arms, and to make themſelves maſters of the money and things of moſt value on board; while the Captain, and ſome of the principal officers, endeavoured in vain to maintain their authority, and to preſerve a proper diſcipline among them, in order to effect the deliverance of as many as it was poſſible from the common danger in which all of them were involved; but the mutinous diſpoſition that prevailed rendered every effort for their preſervation ineffectual. Thoſe who remained in poſſeſſion of the ſhip and her ſtores, pointed the cannon, and fired at thoſe who had gained the land; thoſe at land grew riotous for want of proviſions; nothing but anarchy and confuſion prevailed; and, what added to the cataſtrophe, a midſhipman named Cozens, who had buſied himſelf in oppoſition to all good government, was, by the Captain, ſhot dead upon the ſpot. This put an end at once to all manner of ſubſerviency; and after this every one thought himſelf at liberty to purſue what ſcheme he thought beſt for his own preſervation.

Of about 130 perſons who reached the ſhore, 30 died on the place; about 80 others, having converted the long-boat into a ſchooner, ſailed to the ſouthward, attended by the cutter. Theſe, being diſtreſſed for want of proviſions in redoubling Cape Horn, and having loſt their cutter in a ſtorm, ſuffered unprecedented hardſhips in their return to the coaſt of Brazil, where only 30 of them arrived to give an account of the miſerable fate of their companions, ſeveral of whom died of hunger; others deſired to be ſet on ſhore; and ſome, beginning to be mutinous, they landed and deſerted. Of the 19 who were left behind in Wager-Iſland with the Captain, 16 embarked on board the barge and the yawl, and attempted to eſcape to the northward; of theſe one was drowned in the yawl, and four were left on a deſert part of the coaſt, where it is probable they all periſhed; the remaining 11, after a fruitleſs attempt to weather a point of land, called by the Spaniards Cape Treſmentes, were forced to return to Wager Iſland, from whence they firſt ſet out, where meeting with a Chiloen Indian, who could ſpeak a little Spaniſh, they agreed with him to pilot them to Chiloe; but, after coaſting along for four days, the Captain and his officers being on ſhore, five in number, the other ſix perſuaded the Indian to put to ſea without them, by which the reſt were reduced to the ſad neceſſity of travelling near 600 miles, ſometimes by land, and ſometimes by water, till at length, after a variety of misfortunes and hardſhips not to be paralleled in romance, four of them, namely Captain Cheap, the Hon. Mr. Byron, who lately went round the world, Mr. Hamilton, and Mr. Campbell, arrived at Chiloe, were they were received by the Spaniards with great humanity. After ſome ſtay at Chiloe, the Captain and his three officers were ſent to Valparaiſo, and thence to St. Jago, the capital of Chili, where they continued above a year; but on advice of a cartel, the Captain, Mr. Byron, and Mr. Hamilton, were permitted to return to Europe; and Mr. Campbell, who in the mean time had changed his religion, choſe to embark for Spain; but not meeting there with the encouragement he expected, he ſoon after returned to England, where he publiſhed an account of his adventures, but mentioned not a word of changing his religion, neither does he aſſign his reaſon for leaving Spain.

It is very remarkable, that the place where the Wager ſtruck upon the rock, was ſo near the harbour where the Anne pink found ſhelter during the winter, that the Wager's people were within hearing of the pink's evening and morning gun, yet never had the thought to follow the ſound, or to look out for any ſtraggler from their own ſquadron.

On the 22d, the Trial arrived from ſearching the iſland of Little Fernandez, and reported that it lies about 20 leagues due weſt from this where we lay; that it is about three leagues in compaſs, being very mountainous, with ſome woods and good runs of water, with multitudes of goats, fiſh, ſea-lions, and ſeals, as with us; but no ſhips were to be ſeen, nor any marks of any having been there.

While we continued at Juan Fernandez, beſides our neceſſary employments, we likewiſe began, and pretty far advanced, a wharf for the better landing and embarking ſuch neceſſaries as we had occaſion for. We kept two ovens employed in baking bread for the ſhips companies, two ſmith's forges for repairing old and fitting new iron-work, and made abundance of charcoal for future uſe. The Commodore likewiſe ordered the carpenters to take a careful ſurvey of the Anne pink, the maſter of which ſet forth, that ſhe was in ſo rotten a condition, as not to be fit to proceed nor return without very conſiderable repairs; which repreſentation upon a ſurvey being found to be true, the Commodore purchaſed her materials at a fair valuation, and ordered her to be broke up, and her crew to be put on board the Glouceſter, that ſhip not having hands enough left to navigate her, much leſs to fight her, in caſe of an attack from the enemy.

This iſland lies in latitude 33 deg. 40 min. S. and longitude 87 deg. 37 min. W. from London; diſtance from the main continent 105 leagues; compaſs, by the beſt accounts of thoſe who had been round it, 12 or 13 leagues. There are two ſmall and very commodious bays within the points, which form the large one where we lay, one to the eaſtward, the other to the weſtward of us, and no doubt ſeveral others in other parts of the iſland; variation, by an obſervation July 2, in the morning, 8 deg. 4 min. half E. 'Twas reported, that the S. W. end of the iſland is much more flat and level than that where we reſided, and the goats more numerous, but wood ſcarcer.

On Tueſday, Sept. the 8th, at noon we ſaw a ſail at ſea bearing N. E. by E. and, perceiving by our glaſſes that ſhe could be none of our ſquadron, nor an Engliſh built ſhip, we fired a gun as a ſignal for getting all our people on board; and, having taken ſeveral men out of the Trial, bent our ſails, ſet up our rigging, and ſlipt our ſmall bower cable, at ſix in the evening, we weighed in purſuit of her. In the morning of the next day we got down our ſtumps, which are generally ſet up in bad weather inſtead of top-gallant maſts, and in their place got up our top-gallant maſts and yards, rigged them, and bent their ſails. At eleven the ſame morning we muſtered and quartered the ſhip's company. At noon the iſland of Juan Fernandez bore W. half S. diſtance eight leagues; the two next days we ſaw nothing of the chace, nor any thing remarkable.

Saturday, Sept. 12, at five in the morning we ſaw a ſail to windward, which bore down towards us, and at about two leagues diſtance ſhe hauled up the lee cluegarnet of her foreſail, ſhewed her Spaniſh colours, and fired a gun, which we ſuppoſed to be a ſignal concerted between her and others which came out in company with her; but we not anſwering nor regarding it, ſhe hauled cloſe on a wind and ſtood from us, endeavouring to eſcape; upon which we gave chace, and it proving ſometimes hazy and foggy, we were in danger of loſing ſight of her. About nine in the morning we tacked, and at noon coming within gun-ſhot, we fired five ſhot at her rigging to bring her to; but ſhe keeping on her courſe, we fired four more, on which ſhe ſtruck her colours, and ſurrendered without making any oppoſition. This ſhip happened not to be the ſame we went out after. She proved a rich merchant-ſhip, having on board 18,000l. ſterling in dollars and plate, with ſome jewels, and abundance of gold and ſilver twiſt; but the bulk of her cargo conſiſted in ſugars and bale goods, moſt of the latter European, but ſome the produce of the country. She was called the Nueſtra Senora del Monte Carmelo. She was of about 500 tons, was commanded by Don Manuel Zamorra, and had on board 13 paſſengers, moſt of them perſons of fortune, amongſt whom was the ſon of the Governor of the city of St. Jago, the capital of Chili. She came from Callao, a port of Lima, the capital of the empire of Peru, bound for Valparaiſo in Chili, where thoſe ſhips annually trade, exchanging ſilver in return for gold and corn, the latter being very ſcarce in Peru. Some of the priſoners informed us, that, if we had taken her in her return from Chili to Peru, we ſhould have met with as much gold in her as we had now found ſilver. She had in the whole a-board her 67 perſons, many of them Indians and black ſlaves, who were afterwards very uſeful to us in aſſiſting towards the ſhip's duty. She had been 27 days from Callao, and wanted not above two days ſail to complete her voyage when we took her.

We found in this ſhip, on ſearch among the letters from ſome merchants in Lima to their friends in Chili, an account of the fate of the Spaniſh ſquadron which had been ſent after us, viz. that, in attempting to paſs the Cape, they had been forced to put back, after encountering the moſt terrible ſtorms and moſt preſſing famine, being reduced to two ounces of bread and half a pint of water each man a day; that, beſides being grievouſly attacked by the ſcurvy, which had made greater havock among them than among us, their ſhips were almoſt entirely diſabled, their maſts, ſails, yards, rigging and hulls in a manner ſhattered and torn to pieces; that Admiral Piſarro, and one more of his ſquadron, after having ſuffered the greateſt extremities, had got, with the utmoſt difficulty, to Buenos Ayres, on the River Plate; that another of the ſquadron, a ſhip of 70 guns, had been entirely loſt near Rio Grande, and that two more had never been heard of; that on their return they had ſeen two large ſhips paſs by very near them, which they ſuppoſed to be two ſhips of our ſquadron, but the weather proving ſtormy, and the ſea running mountains high, they could not interfere with or attack each other. Thoſe ſhips of ours we believed to be the Severn and the Pearl, and hoped they were ſafely arrived at ſome port of the Brazils. Thoſe letters came over land from Buenos Ayres to Lima, and with them came others containing Admiral Piſarro's advice and inſtructions to the Viceroy of Peru concerning us; wherein he told him, that, though he himſelf had been forced back in ſuch a miſerable condition, not having above 80 or 100 of his men living, and his ſhips in ſo ill a ſtate that, till ſufficient reinforcements could come to him from Old Spain, he could not poſſibly come into thoſe ſeas, yet as the Engliſh were a ſtubborn and reſolute people, and daring enough to perſiſt obſtinately in the moſt deſperate undertakings, he did believe ſome of us might poſſibly get round; but as he experimentally knew what of neceſſity we muſt have ſuffered in that dreadful paſſage, he made no doubt but we ſhould be in a very weak and defenceleſs condition; he therefore adviſed the Viceroy to fit out all the ſtrength of ſhipping he could, and ſend them to cruiſe at the iſland of Juan Fernandez, where we muſt of neceſſity touch to refreſh our people, and to repair our ſhips; and farther adviſed, that, in caſe of meeting us, they ſhould not ſtand to fight or cannonade at a diſtance, in which poſſibly we might have the advantage, or make our eſcape, but ſhould board us at once ſword in hand; which muſt, if well executed, in our weak condition, infallibly prove the means of taking us.

This was a well-laid ſcheme, and in purſuance of it the Viceroy equipt three ſhips at Callao, one of 50, one of 30, and one of 20 guns, all double manned with the choiceſt men they could poſſibly procure, and ſent them to wait for us accordingly. Thoſe ſhips arrived at Juan Fernandez ſome time, I think, in May, and continued till about June the 6th, when, imagining that we muſt be either put back or loſt, they quitted their ſtation, and ſailed for the port of Conception in Chili, and by this means we luckily miſſed them: had it happened otherwiſe, as we arrived there with only our ſingle ſhip, in ſuch a defenceleſs condition, and had they put their orders in execution with any tolerable degree of reſolution, we muſt in all human probability have fallen into their hands.

Our priſoners informed us further, that thoſe ſhips, during their cruiſe, had met with a ſtorm, in which they had received ſo much damage, that it muſt be at leaſt two months before they could again be fit to go to ſea. The whole of this intelligence was as favourable as we could have wiſhed; and now we were at no loſs to account for the freſh marks we found at Juan Fernandez, of that iſland's having been lately viſited by ſome white people.

Sunday the 13th, having got on board moſt of the priſoners of note, and all the ſilver, we made ſail for Juan Fernandez; and the weather proving very moderate, at ſix in the evening that iſland bore N. W. by N. at the diſtance of five leagues. At three the next morning we fired three guns, as a ſignal to the ſhips in the bay. At four we anchored, got in our ſmall bower cable, which we had ſlipped at leaving the place, and moored our ſhip.

The 15th we employed in watering, and ſetting up our rigging, in order to purſue our voyage. And this day, the Commodore being informed that ſeveral merchant-ſhips were now purſuing their trade without fear of any ſurprize, the Trial was ordered out on a cruiſe, and proceeded immediately.

The 16th we got up a new top-gallant-maſt, and wanting ſome cordage we were ſupplied with it from the Glouceſter. This and the following days, until the 19th, we ſpent in getting every thing ready for ſea with the utmoſt expedition.

The 19th we ſent 28 of our priſoners on board the Glouceſter, ſhe being weakly manned, and thoſe priſoners being good ſailors. We likewiſe ſupplied the prize with two months proviſions of all ſorts, a full allowance for 20 men; put all the guns belonging to the Anne pink on board of her; and, having left orders with Captain Mitchell, of the Glouceſter, to burn the pink, together with her uſeleſs ſtores, and appointed him his ſtation off the town of Payta, which is the place where the ſhips between Lima and Panama generally touch to deliver part of their cargoes to be diſperſed through the inland parts of Peru, with orders to ſail to that ſtation as ſoon as poſſible, we weighed, and took leave of our winter reſidence, in company with the prize, which the Commodore had fitted up to cruiſe againſt the enemy.

The 21ſt, at four in the evening, we had the laſt ſight of this iſland, it then bearing from us W. by N. at the diſtance of 17 leagues. The remaining days, until the 24th, we had variable and uncertain weather, in which we ſplit our main-top-ſail and fore-ſail, and received ſome other ſlight damage.

The 24th, at five in the evening, being ſomewhat hazy, we ſaw two ſail to windward, on which we cleared ſhip, in order to be ready to engage, the largeſt of the two ſhips bearing down upon us. At ſeven ſhe came ſo near, that we hailed her in Spaniſh, and ſhe anſwered in Engliſh, and told us, that ſhe was a prize taken by the Trial, and that her conſort was the Trial itſelf, which was very much diſabled. At eleven the next morning, there being a hard gale and high ſea, the Trial fired two guns as a ſignal of diſtreſs, and bore away before the wind, and we after her. The ſame day half an hour paſt noon we ſpoke with the Trial, and found ſhe had ſprung her main-maſt, and that her main-top-maſt had come by the board: and as we were all of us ſtanding to the eaſtward next morning, with a freſh gale at ſouth, ſhe had the additional misfortune to ſpring her fore-maſt; ſo that now ſhe had not a maſt left. This was a great obſtruction; for now we had intelligence by the Trial's prize, that there were many ſhips at ſea richly laden, and that they had no apprehenſions of being attacked by us, having received intelligence that our ſquadron was either put back or deſtroyed. In the courſe, therefore, of the 48 hours we were detained in waiting upon the Trial, I am perſuaded we miſſed the taking many valuable prizes. The reſult was, that a council being called, and all the officers convened together on board our ſhip, it was there concluded, that in her preſent condition the Trial could be of no farther ſervice; and the Commodore, being reſolved to ſeparate the ſhips, in order to cruiſe upon the cooſt to the greateſt advantage, gave orders to Captain Charles Saunders, the Commander, to burn the Trial, and in her room commiſſioned the Trial's prize for his Majeſty's ſervice, with the ſame Commander, officers, and people. This ſhip, the Trial's prize, was called by the Spaniards the Nueſtra Senora de Arinzazie; but, being now commiſſioned for his Majeſty's ſervice, ſhe was henceforth called the Trial's Prize. She was the largeſt ſhip we took in thoſe ſeas, being between 5 and 600 tons, and loaded with bale goods, ſugar, and other commodities, to a conſiderable value, and about 5000l. in ſpecie and wrought ſilver.

The 28th, at nine in the morning, we parted with the Trial and both the prizes.

The 30th, we ſaw the main land of Chili. This day we began to exerciſe our people with ſmall arms, which was the firſt time we had done it ſince we came into thoſe ſeas, and which we continued at all proper opportunities during the voyage.

On the 1ſt of October, we came in ſight of the high land of Valparaiſo, bearing N. E. half E. at the diſtance of about 14 leagues. This city lies in the latitude of 32 deg. 58 min. S. its longitude from London is by my account 80 deg. 37 min. W.

On the 5th, the Commodore, being informed that there were murmurings amongſt the people, becauſe the prize-money was not immediately divided, ordered the articles of war to be read; and after that remonſtrated to them on the danger of mutiny, and ſaid he had heard the reaſon of their diſcontent, but aſſured them their properties were ſecured by act of parliament as firmly as any one's own inheritance, and that the money, plate, &c. were weighed and marked in public; ſo that any capable perſon, if he pleaſed, might take an inventory of the whole. He then read an account of the particulars, and told them they might (if they pleaſed) make choice of any perſon to take an inventory for them, or buy their parts. This ſpread a viſible joy, and gave content to every one. We continued cruiſing off the coaſt of Valparaiſo till the 8th, when at twelve at night we broke the main-top-ſail-yard in the ſlings, on which we unbent the top-ſail and got down the broken yard. At ten in the morning we ſaw the high land of Choapa, and over it the Cordillera mountains, being part of that long ridge of mountains called the Andes, which run from one end of South America to the other, appearing exceſſively high, with their tops covered with ſnow.

The 14th, we croſſed the ſouth Tropic to the northward, and from this time, till we were ſome degrees to the northward of the Equator, met with nothing but fair weather and a ſmooth ſea.

The 21ſt, at noon, the high land of Morro Quemado bore E. by N. at the diſtance of four leagues; and here we continued cruiſing off and on till Nov. 2, when, about ſix in the morning, we ſaw two ſail of ſhips ſtanding towards us; upon which we made a clear ſhip, and immediately gave them chace, when we ſoon perceived that they were the Trial and Centurion prizes. As we had the wind of them, we brought to, and waited their coming up, when Captain Saunders came on board, and acquainted the Commodore that he had cleared the Trial purſuant to his orders, and having ſcuttled her, he remained by her till ſhe ſunk; but that it was not till the 4th of October before this was effected, by reaſon of the great ſwell and hollow ſea; that, during his attendance on the ſloop, they were all driven ſo far to leeward, that they were afterwards obliged to ſtretch a long way to the weſtward, to regain the ground they had loſt; that in their cruize they had met no prize, nor had ſeen any veſſel on all the coaſt.

November the 3rd, at five in the evening, the iſland of Aſia, in latitude 13 deg. 5 min. S. longitude 84 deg. 43 min. W. bore from us N. E. by E. diſtance five leagues.

The 5th, at four in the evening, we ſaw the high land of Barranca, bearing N. E. by E. diſtant eight or nine leagues; and half an hour after we ſaw a ſail to the northward, to whom we gave chace, and cleared our ſhip for engaging. At ten in the evening we came up with her, fired eight guns, and took her. She came from Guaiaquil, and was bound for Callao, with timber, cocoa, cordage, tobacco, cocoa-nuts, and a ſmall trunk with bale goods; all of little value to us, though a very conſiderable loſs to the Spaniards. She was called the Santa Tereſa, commanded by Don Bartolo Urrunaga, with between 30 and 40 people on board, paſſengers included, and five or ſix women, beſides children. Our third lieutenant, two other officers, and a party of ſailors, were ſent on board to command and take care of her; and our other prizes being far a-ſtern, occaſioned by our chaſing this ſhip, we lay by till four the next morning, and fired a gun every hour as a ſignal for their joining us. This day I find, by the difference of our dead reckoning and obſervations, a current to ſet along this coaſt to the northward of near a mile an hour.

The 7th, we were employed in getting aboard ſeveral neceſſary ſtores, as planks, cordage, and the like, from our laſt prize, for the uſe of the ſquadron. The ſea here appeared for ſeveral miles of a blood-red colour, which the priſoners informed us was common in thoſe parts. This day we found aboard the prize, in ſpecie and plate, 50 pounds averdupois weight.

The 9th, we brought from on board the Tereſa 10 ſerons of cocoa, one of wax, and 180 fathom of three and a half rope.

The 10th, we brought from on board our firſt prize the Carmelo, the following goods, viz. cloth two bales, bays five ditto, ſugar 182 loaves, ſtraw mats two, tar one ſkin, raiſins three bales, indigo four ſerons, cotton cloth one bale, hats two caſes, and 25 looſe ones, ſkins one parcel, chocolate one bag, camlet one bale and two parcels, ſilks one box, lead four pigs, and combs one ſmall parcel.

The 12th, at five in the morning, we ſaw a ſail, to which we gave chace; but there being very little wind, we manned and armed our barge, pinnace, and the Trial's pinnace, and ſent them to take her, and at eight they boarded and took her, and brought her to us at half an hour paſt ten. She was called the Carman, commanded by Signior Marcus Marina, and came out of Payta the day before, bound to Callao, laden with iron and cloth, being a very valuable cargo. We found on board an Iriſhman, named John Williams, who pretended himſelf a priſoner amongſt them, and with much ſeeming joy entered with us. He informed us, that, amongſt other ſhips in the port of Payta, they left in the road a bark which was taking in 400,000 dollars, with which ſhe would ſail for Panama in a day or two at fartheſt; and the Spaniſh priſoners being examined, and confirming the intelligence, and farther giving ſome account of the ſtrength of the place, the Commodore reſolved to attack it this very night, and made preparations accordingly. Mr. Thomas Simmers, mate of our ſhip, with one midſhipman and about 10 or 11 men, were ſent to command and take care of this laſt prize. At four in the afternoon, Point Nonura bore E. by S. half S. diſtant eight leagues. At ten at night, we ſent our barge, pinnace, and Trial's pinnace, to attack the town of Payta by ſurprize. They had 49 men well armed, and were commanded by the lieutenants Brett, Dennis, and Hughes, who had orders, if poſſible, to ſecure the governor of Payta, and ſend him priſoner on board in order by that means to procure a ſupply of proviſions, and a ranſom for the town. Half an hour after eleven we ſounded, and found 43 fathom water, the ground mud, the iſland of Lobos bearing N. N. E. at the diſtance of three or four miles. At ſeven in the morning, Point Onado, being the point that forms the bay of Payta, bore S. S. E. two miles diſtant; and the town of Payta at the ſame time began to open in a direct line with it, diſtant about four miles; ſoon after which we ſaw our Britiſh colours flying on the caſtle. At ten the Trial's boat came on board, loaded with gold and ſilver, corn, wrought plate, jewels, and rich moveables. They informed us, that they took the town about two in the morning; and that, though the Spaniards had ſome time before been apprized of our intent, they yet made a very faint reſiſtance, having fired but two guns from their caſtle before our men landed, and a few ſmall arms afterwards, when they all quitted the town with the greateſt precipitation. The governor and his family made their eſcape in ſo much haſte, that his lady was handed out of a window with no other clothes to cover her but her ſhift. All the inhabitants fled in the like confuſion, except ſome negro women and children. In this action we loſt one man, Peter Obrian, the Commodore's ſteward, who was ſhot through the breaſt by a muſquet-ball; and had two wounded, to wit, Arthur Luſk, a quarter-maſter, and the Spaniſh pilot of the Tereſa, whom we had made uſe of as a guide; the firſt through the fleſhy part of the arm near the ſhoulder, the ſecond through the wriſt, but neither dangerouſly: and I have had it reported from ſeveral officers then on ſhore, that our men ran to the attack, and fired in ſo irregular a manner, that it was, and ſtill remains a doubt, whether thoſe were not ſhot by our people rather than by the enemy.

The town of Payta, at the time of the attack, had a fort with eight guns mounted, which commanded the town and harbour; and the balcony of the governor's houſe, which again commanded that fort, together with ſeveral other houſes, was lined with armed men, of which there might be about 400 in the town; but theſe people having enjoyed a long peace, and being enervated by the luxury ſo cuſtomary in thoſe parts, their arms in a bad condition, and no perſon of experience or courage to head them, it is no wonder that they made ſo ſmall a reſiſtance, and were all driven out of the town in leſs than half an hour by only 49 men; but I believe the noiſe of two drums which we made uſe of, together with the ſuddenneſs of the ſurprize, contributed to intimidate them, and facilitated our ſucceſs.

On our getting poſſeſſion of the caſtle, our commanding officer very inconſiderately ordered the guns to be thrown over the walls, which accordingly was executed; but ſome time after reflecting on the ill conſequence which might attend that proceeding, he ordered two of them to be got up and remounted.

At eleven our barge came on board, loaded with money, plate, and jewels. This town contains about 140 or 150 houſes; there are in it two churches, which, together with the governor's houſe and caſtle, are the only remarkable buildings. There are ſeveral large ſtore-houſes full of rich European, Aſian, and American goods, all which were deſtroyed when we ſet the town on fire; of which in its place. The town lies in latitude 5 deg. 3 min. S. and longitude from London 88 deg. 48 min. W. This afternoon we employed ourſelves in getting off the plunder, and proviſions of hogs and fowls, which were here in great plenty. In the evening we anchored in 10 fathom water, the town bearing from us S. by E. half E. at about three miles diſtance, not being able to get farther in, by reaſon of the flaws of wind from off the land.

From this time to the 15th, we were employed in getting on board the plunder, which chiefly conſiſted of rich brocades, laced cloaths, bales of fine linens and woollens, Britannia's, ſlays, and the like; together with a great number of hogs, ſome ſheep and fowls, caſes of Spaniſh brandies and wines, a great quantity of onions, olives, ſweet-meats, and many other things too tedious to name, all which the ſailors hoped would have been equally divided among the ſhip's companies, but they found themſelves diſappointed.

We found in the road, one ſhip, two ſnows, one ſchooner, and two quarter-gallies, all which we took poſſeſſion of. The 14th, in the morning, we ſaw a bark-log, as they call it, being a ſort of raft made of the ſtumps of trees faſtened together, overlaid with poles, and covered with ſmall twigs twiſted mat-wiſe, with ſeveral people in her coming along ſhore from the ſouthward. She had a ſort of maſt and ſail in her, and at firſt ſight we knew not what to make of her; and none of our own boats being on board, we ſent the Carmen's boat, with Mr. Langdon, a midſhipman, who commanded in the ſecond place on board that ſhip, and ſome armed people, to purſue them, who perceiving it put on ſhore, and made their eſcape over the rocks. Mr. Langdon took their bark-log, which he found to be laden with dried fiſh, which we ſuppoſe they were carrying to Payta for a market. This evening the Spaniards, who had all along appeared in great numbers from the hills, and were now conſiderably increaſed, making a ſhew of warlike preparations, as if they deſigned in the night to attack our people in the town, they thereupon barricaded the ſtreets, and kept very ſtrict watches, to prevent a ſurprize. Several negroes delivered themſelves up, deſiring to be made priſoners, that they might have ſome food, and more eſpecially water, to keep them from periſhing; for the country thereabouts being for many miles round quite barren and ſandy, without either water or any other thing neceſſary for life, and the neareſt town to them, named as I think Sancta Cruz, whence relief might be got, being a day and a half or two days journey off, the people who had left the town were in a ſtarving condition, and we had melancholy accounts of ſeveral dying among them for want chiefly of water during our ſmall ſtay; and yet ſo greatly were they infatuated or frightened, that they never offered to treat for the ranſom of the place, which if they had done, I believe it would not have been deſtroyed; in which caſe, they might have ſecured to themſelves not only their habitations, but proviſions and water enough (till they could have got a freſh recruit) which we ſhould on that condition have readily left them.

The town ſeems to be very unhappily ſituated on that and ſome other accounts, they having no water but what is brought them by land carriage from ſeveral leagues off; ſo that they are obliged to keep very conſiderable quantities by them in earthen jars, not only for their own uſe, but for the ſhips who frequently touch here, where they likewiſe often unload, and take in freſh cargoes. They are in the ſame caſe as to grain, bread, and almoſt all other neceſſaries of life; and lie ſo open to an enemy, that the town has been often taken and ruined by the Engliſh, Dutch, and French; all which inconveniences, one would imagine, ſhould tempt them to change their ſituation; but then the conveniency of their trade is ſo great, being the only proper place they can pitch on for a mart between Panama and Peru, that they prefer this lucrative convenience to all other conſiderations.

Among the ſlaves who had deſired to be entertained in our ſervice, was one, who, having been a ſlave in Jamaica, had on the death of his maſter obtained his liberty, and thereupon entered himſelf a ſervant to one of the South Sea Company's factors, whom he accompanied to Porto Bello and Panama, and there got into the ſervice of a Spaniſh gentleman, who took a great fancy to him, and with whom he went to Lima in Peru, where this maſter likewiſe dying left him a very conſiderable legacy; but the power being now in the hands of his executors, they not only defrauded him of this legacy, but made him a ſlave a ſecond time. He was now at Payta with one of his new maſters, on his paſſage from Lima to Panama, when he took this opportunity to come over to us; and being a very handy fellow, and accuſtomed to wait on gentlemen, he was immediately taken into the Commodore's ſervice, came with us into England, and, I believe, continued with him till his death. This perſon gave us ſome information of the deſigns of the Spaniards on ſhore, and told us we had killed one or two of them, and wounded ſeveral others; but this account was never, that I know of, farther confirmed.

The 15th, in the morning, we ſent on ſhore all our Spaniſh, and ſeveral of our Indian priſoners, keeping all the blacks and ſome of the Indians, to aſſiſt in working the ſhips, &c. To the blacks, who were all or moſt of them ſlaves, was promiſed their liberty in England, in caſe they would ſtand by and aſſiſt us againſt our enemies the Spaniards; which they all promiſed very cordially: but we could ſoon diſcover, that, notwithſtanding their ſeeming condeſcenſion, moſt of them would have much rather continued in the ſervice of their old maſters, than ſail to accept of liberty with us; not that I believe thoſe people were in love with ſlavery, or would not willingly have had their liberty, but then it muſt be on their own terms, the Spaniards in thoſe parts being in great awe of the Indians, whom, though they have ſubdued, and ſeem to have incorporated among them, they dare not truſt, but keep theſe blacks as guards, and uſe them well. The truth is, thoſe Indians have ſtill preſerved, by tradition from father to ſon, the memory of the great cruelties which the firſt Spaniards exerciſed in thoſe parts, and are angry enough at their preſent hard uſage. They look on themſelves as the natural lords of the country, and the Spaniards as covetous intruders, and cruel inhuman tyrants; and want only opportunity to make them ſenſible of their reſentment, and to recover their loſt country and liberty. 'Tis on this account that the Spaniards are very kind to their black ſlaves, whom they cheriſh and encourage highly, and look on them in the ſame light of a ſtanding militia, always ready to arm againſt thoſe Indians; ſo that, though the negroes in all other plantations in the Weſt Indies are ever ready for revolts and rebellions, theſe on the contrary, are always ready to defend their kind maſters with their lives. In effect they live very eaſy, are favoured by the Spaniards, and ſcorn and inſult the poor Indians, who in return hate and deteſt both them and their maſters; that being all that is left in their power.

This day an order was given to Mr. Brett, the then commanding officer on ſhore, to burn and deſtroy the town entirely, the two churches, which ſtood a little out of the way of the reſt, only excepted; the Spaniards, as has been already ſaid, never having made any advance towards treating for its ranſom.

But now, before I entirely quit the relation of our tranſactions at this place, it may, perhaps, be expected, that I ſhould give a more particular account of the booty we made, and of the loſs the Spaniards ſuſtained. I have already obſerved, that there were great quantities of valuable effects in the town; but, as moſt of them were what we could neither diſpoſe of, nor carry away, the total of this merchandize can only be rudely gueſſed at. The Spaniards, in their repreſentations ſent to the Court of Madrid (as we were afterwards aſſured), eſtimated their whole loſs at a million and a half of dollars; and when it is conſidered, that no ſmall part of the goods we left behind us, were of the richeſt and moſt expenſive ſpecies, as broad-cloths, ſilks, cambrics, velvets, &c. I cannot but think their valuation ſufficiently moderate.

As to ourſelves, the acquiſition we made, though inconſiderable in compariſon of what we deſtroyed, was yet far from deſpicable; for the wrought plate, dollars, and other coin, which fell into our hands, amounted to upwards of 30,000l. beſides ſeveral rings, bracelets, and jewels, whoſe intrinſic value we could not then eſtimate: and over and above all this, the plunder, which became the property of the immediate captors, was very great; ſo that, upon the whole, it was by much the moſt important booty we met with upon that coaſt.

There remains ſtill another matter to be related, which on account of the ſignal honour which our national character in thoſe parts has thence received, and the reputation which our Commodore in particular has thereby acquired, merits a diſtinct and circumſtantial diſcuſſion. I have already obſerved, that all the priſoners taken by us, were, before our departure, put on ſhore, and diſcharged, amongſt whom there were ſome perſons of conſiderable diſtinction, eſpecially a youth of about 17 years of age, ſon of the Vice-preſident of the Council of Chili. As the barbarity of the buccaniers, and the artful uſes the eccleſiaſtics had made of it, had filled the natives of thoſe countries with the moſt terrible ideas of Engliſh cruelty, we always found our priſoners, at their firſt coming on board us, to be extremely dejected, and under great horror and anxiety; particularly this youth, who, having never been from home before, lamented his captivity in the moſt moving manner, regretting, in very plaintive terms, his parents, his brothers, his ſiſters, and his native country; of all which, he was fully perſuaded, he had taken his laſt farewel, believing that he was now devoted for the remaining part of his life to an abject and cruel ſervitude. Indeed, his companions on board, and all the Spaniards that came into our power, had the ſame deſponding opinion of their ſituation. Mr. Anſon conſtantly exerted his utmoſt endeavours to efface thoſe terrifying impreſſions they had received of us, always taking care, that as many of the principal people among them as there was room for, ſhould dine at his table by turns; and giving the moſt peremptory orders, too, that they ſhould always be treated with the utmoſt decency and humanity: but, notwithſtanding this precaution, it was generally obſerved, that for the firſt day or two they did not quit their fears, ſuſpecting the gentleneſs of their uſage to be only preparatory to ſome unthought-of calamity. However, being at length convinced of our ſincerity, they grew perfectly eaſy in their ſituation, and remarkably cheerful; ſo that it was often diſputable, whether or no they conſidered their being detained by us as a misfortune: for the youth I have above mentioned, who was near two months on board us, had at laſt ſo far conquered his melancholy ſurmiſes, and had taken ſuch an affection to Mr. Anſon, that it is doubtful to me, whether, if his own opinion had been aſked, he would not have preferred a voyage to England in the Centurion, to the being ſet on ſhore at Payta, where he was at liberty to return to his country and friends.

This conduct of the Commodore to his priſoners, which was continued without interruption or deviation, gave them all the higheſt idea of his humanity and benevolence, and occaſioned them, likewiſe, (as mankind are fond of forming general opinions) to entertain very favourable thoughts of the whole Engliſh nation. But whatever they might be diſpoſed to think of Mr. Anſon before the capture of the Tereſa, their veneration for him was prodigiouſly increaſed by his conduct towards the ladies whom he took in that veſſel; for, being informed that there were among them a mother and two daughters of exquiſite beauty, who were of quality, he not only gave orders that they ſhould be left in full poſſeſſion of their own apartments, but alſo forbid, on the ſevereſt penalties, any of the common people on board from approaching them; and, that they might be the more certain of having theſe orders complied with, or of having the means of complaining if they were not, he permitted the pilot, who in Spaniſh ſhips is generally the ſecond perſon on board, to ſtay with them as a guardian and protector. Theſe were meaſures that ſeemed ſo different from what might have been expected from an enemy and an heretic, that the Spaniards on board, though they had themſelves experienced his beneficence, were ſurprized at this new inſtance of it; and the more ſo, as all this was done without ſolicitation, and without the interpoſition of one friend to intercede in their favour. The ladies were ſo ſenſible of the obligations they owed him for the care and attention with which he protected them, that they abſolutely refuſed to go on ſhore at Payta, till they had been permitted to wait on him on board the Centurion to return him thanks in perſon. Indeed, all the priſoners left us with the ſtrongeſt aſſurances of their grateful remembrance of his uncommon treatment: a jeſuit, in particular, whom the Commodore had taken, and who was an eccleſiaſtic of ſome diſtinction, could not help expreſſing himſelf with great thankfulneſs for the civilities he and his countrymen had found on board, declaring that he ſhould conſider it as his duty to do Mr. Anſon juſtice at all times, adding that his uſage of the men priſoners was ſuch as could never be forgotten, and ſuch as he ſhould never fail to acknowledge upon all occaſions; but that his behaviour to the ladies was ſo extraordinary, and ſo extremely honourable, that he doubted if all the regard due to his own eccleſiaſtical character would be ſufficient to render it credible. Indeed, we were afterwards informed, that he and the reſt of our priſoners had not been ſilent on this head; but that, both at Lima and at other places, they had given the greateſt encomiums to our Commodore; that the jeſuit, in particular, as we were told, on his account, interpreted in a lax and hypothetical ſenſe, that article of his church which aſſerts the impoſſibility of heretics being ſaved. But to return:

After we had finiſhed our buſineſs, ſet the town in flames, and got the treaſure on board, Mr. Brett, the officer who commanded the attack, having collected his men together, was directing his march towards the beach were the boats waited to take them on board, when the Spaniards on the hill behind the town, obſerving his retreat, reſolved to try if they could not precipitate his departure, and thereby lay ſome foundation for future boaſting. To this end a party of horſe, all picked men ſingled out for this daring enterprize, marched down the hill with much ſeeming reſolution; ſo that, had we not entertained a juſt opinion of their proweſs, we might have imagined, that, now we were upon the open beach, with no advantages of ſituation, they would certainly have charged us: but we preſumed, and we were not miſtaken, that all this was mere oſtentation; for, notwithſtanding the pomp and parade they at firſt came on with, Mr. Brett had no ſooner ordered his men to halt and face about, than the enemy ſtopt their career, and never dared to advance a ſtep farther.

When our people arrived at their boats and were ready to go on board, they were for ſome time retarded by miſſing one of their number; and being unable, on their mutual enquiries among each other, to inform themſelves where he was left, or by what accident detained, they, after a conſiderable delay, reſolved to get into their boats and to depart without him: but when the laſt man was actually embarked, and the boats were juſt putting off, they heard him calling to them to take him in. This place was by this time ſo thoroughly on fire, and the ſmoke covered the beach ſo effectually, that they could ſcarcely diſcern him, though they heard his voice. However, the Lieutenant inſtantly ordered one of the boats to his relief, who found him up to the chin in water, for he had waded as far as he durſt, being extremely frightened with the apprehenſions of falling into the hands of an enemy, enraged, as they doubtleſs were, at the pillage and deſtruction of their town. On enquiring into the cauſe of his ſtaying behind, it was found that he had taken that morning too large a doſe of brandy, which had thrown him into ſo ſound a ſleep, that he did not awake till the fire came near enough to ſcorch him. He was ſtrangely amazed, at firſt opening his eyes, to ſee the houſes on a blaze on one ſide, and ſeveral Spaniards and Indians not far from him on the other. The greatneſs and ſuddenneſs of his fright inſtantly reduced him into a ſtate of ſobriety, and gave him ſufficient preſence of mind to puſh through the thickeſt of the ſmoke, as the likelieſt means to eſcape the enemy; and, making the beſt of his way to the beach, he ran as far into the water as he durſt (for he could not ſwim) before he ventured to look back.

By the time our people had helped their comrade out of the water, and were making the beſt of their way to the ſquadron, the flames had taken poſſeſſion of every part of the town, and burnt ſo furiouſly, both by means of the combuſtibles that had been diſtributed for that purpoſe, and by the ſlightneſs of the materials of which the houſes were compoſed, and their aptitude to take fire, that it was ſufficiently apparent no efforts of the enemy (though they flocked down in great numbers) could poſſibly put a ſtop to it, or prevent the entire deſtruction of the place, and all the merchandize contained therein. Mr. Brett had the curioſity to delineate its appearance, together with that of the ſhips in the harbour.

Our detachment having now ſafely joined the ſquadron, the Commodore prepared to leave the place the ſame evening. At ſeven, Cape Blanco, in latitude 4 deg. 28 min. S. and longitude 88 deg. 16 min. W. from London, bore from us S. S. E. half E. about ſeven or eight miles diſtant. This afternoon and the next day we were employed in taking the moſt uſeful and valuable things out of the Santa Tereſa and the Payta bark: we likewiſe deſigning to take every neceſſary thing which we conveniently could out of the Santa Tereſa, in order to deſtroy her, and bring our ſtrength into a leſs compaſs, we took her in tow, and ſet the Payta bark on fire with the ſame view. The next day we deſtroyed the Santa Tereſa in the ſame manner, having got out of them both ſome anchors, cables, hawſers, yards, and top-maſts, blocks, bales of goods, and ſeveral other neceſſaries.

The 17th, at three in the afternoon, the Glouceſter, with a prize of hers in tow, joined us. This prize was called the Del Oro, and was chiefly laden with wine; however, out of her and a ſmall boat which they took going along ſhore, they got, in gold, ſilver, and wrought plate, to about the value of 17 or 18,000l. Theſe two were all the prizes the Glouceſter took in thoſe ſeas.

On board this prize of the Glouceſter were two horſes, which being, I ſuppoſe, fat, and probably better food than their ſalt beef or pork, they killed and eat them; and this, I imagine, gave ground to that fiction which one of the ſpurious accounts of our voyage has given, of our eagerly hunting and eating wild horſes, whereas in reality we never ſaw nor heard of a wild horſe during our voyage.

The Glouceſter had chaſed two or three ſhips which had eſcaped her, and one of thoſe touched at Payta; and though they could give no certain account that the ſhip which had chaſed them was an enemy, yet the circumſtances they gave were ſo ſtrong, that it put the people of Payta upon ſecuring their treaſure, and the beſt of their effects, not caring to be too well provided for the profit of ſuch unwelcome viſitants.

The 21ſt, at half paſt five in the morning, we ſaw the iſland of Plata, ſo called from Sir Francis Drake's having, as it is ſaid, divided the treaſure he took in the South Seas at this place. At two this afternoon the port of Manta bore S. E. by E. diſtant about eight or nine leagues. We at this time ſent ſix months proviſions on board the Carmen; and all the ſhips had orders, in caſe of ſeparation, for ſeveral rendezvouſes on the coaſt of Mexico, or, in caſe of not meeting there, to make the beſt of their way to Macao, in China, where they were to wait the arrival of the Commodore.

The 22nd, a diviſion was made of the plunder of Payta, and the Commodore not appearing in that affair, it was done at the pleaſure, and to the entire ſatisfaction, of five or ſix (no doubt) very diſintereſted officers; and, indeed, moſt things of this nature, during the courſe of the voyage being managed with the ſame diſcretion and honour, no room was left for complaining of particular partialities.

Here, however, we cannot help remarking a very conſiderable difference between the relation given by Paſcoe Thomas, and that given by Mr. Walters; the former having aſſerted, that the Commodore did not interfere in the diſtribution; the latter, that it was by his prudent management, that a jealouſy, which had ariſen between thoſe who were the real captors and thoſe who remained on board the ſhip, was accommodated. Mr. Walters' account will ſet this matter in a true light; "And now, ſays he, (while the ſhips lay-to, in hopes of joining the Glouceſter) a jealouſy, which had taken its riſe at Payta, between thoſe who had been commanded on ſhore for the attack, and thoſe who had continued on board, grew to ſuch a height, that the Commodore, being made acquainted with it, thought it neceſſary to interpoſe his authority to oppoſe it. The ground of this animoſity was the plunder gotten at Payta, which thoſe who had acted on ſhore had appropriated to themſelves, conſidering it as a reward for the riſques they had run, and the reſolution they had ſhewn in that ſervice. But thoſe who had remained on board looked on this as a very partial and unjuſt procedure, urging, that, had it been left to their choice, they ſhould have preferred the acting on ſhore to the continuing on board; that their duty while their comrades were on ſhore was extremely fatiguing; for, beſides the labour of the day, they were conſtantly under arms all night, to ſecure the priſoners, whoſe numbers exceeded their own, and of whom it was then neceſſary to be extremely watchful, to prevent any attempts they might have formed in that critical conjuncture: that, upon the whole, it could not be denied, but that the preſence of a ſufficient force on board was as neceſſary to the ſucceſs of the enterprize, as the action of the others on ſhore; and, therefore, thoſe who had continued on board maintained, that they could not be deprived of their ſhare of the plunder without manifeſt injuſtice. Theſe were the conteſts amongſt our men, which were carried on with great heat on both ſides; and, though the plunder in queſtion was a very trifle in compariſon of the treaſure taken in the place (in which there was no doubt but thoſe on board had an equal right), yet as the obſtinacy of the ſailors is not always regulated by the importance of the matter in diſpute, the Commodore thought it neceſſary to put a ſtop to this ferment betimes. Accordingly, the morning after our leaving Payta, he ordered all hands upon the quarter-deck, where addreſſing himſelf to thoſe who had been detached on ſhore, he commended their behaviour, and thanked them for their ſervices on that occaſion; but then, repreſenting to them the reaſons urged by thoſe who had continued on board, for an equal diſtribution of the plunder, he told them, that he thought theſe reaſons very concluſive, and that the expectations of their comrades were juſtly founded; and therefore, he inſiſted, that, not only the men, but all the officers likewiſe who had been employed in taking the place, ſhould produce the whole of their plunder immediately upon the quarter-deck, and that it ſhould be impartially divided amongſt the whole crew, in proportion to each man's rank and commiſſion; and, to prevent thoſe who had been in poſſeſſion of the plunder from murmuring at this diminution of their ſhare, the Commodore added, that, as an encouragement to others who might be hereafter employed on like ſervices, he would give his entire ſhare to be diſtributed amongſt thoſe who had been detached for the attack of the place. Thus, this troubleſome affair, which, if permitted to have gone on, might, perhaps, have been attended with miſchievous conſequences, was, by the Commodore's prudence, ſoon appeaſed, to the general ſatisfaction of the ſhip's company: not but there were ſome few whoſe ſelfiſh diſpoſitions were uninfluenced by the juſtice of this procedure, and who were incapable of diſcerning the force of equity, however glaring, when it tended to deprive them of any part of what they had once got into their hands."

Being now joined by the Glouceſter and her prize, it was reſolved that we ſhould ſtand to the northward, and make the beſt of our way either to Cape St. Lucas on California, or to Cape Corientes on the coaſt of Mexico. Indeed, the Commodore when at Juan Fernandez, had determined to touch in the neighbourhood of Panama, and to endeavour to get ſome correſpondence over land with the fleet under the command of Admiral Vernon; for when we departed from England, we left a large force at Portſmouth, which was intended to be ſent to the Weſt Indies, there to be employed in an expedition againſt ſome of the Spaniſh ſettlements. And Mr. Anſon, taking it for granted that this enterprize had ſucceeded, and that Porto Bello perhaps might be then garriſoned by Britiſh troops, he hoped that, on his arrival at the iſthmus, he ſhould eaſily procure an intercourſe with our countrymen on the other ſide, either by the Indians, who were greatly diſpoſed in our favour, or even by the Spaniards themſelves, ſome of whom for proper rewards might be induced to carry on this intelligence; which, after it was once begun, might be continued with very little difficulty; ſo that Mr. Anſon flattered himſelf, that he might by this means have received a reinforcement of men from the other ſide, and that, by ſettling a prudent plan of operations with our Commanders in the Weſt Indies, he might have taken even Panama itſelf, which would have given to the Britiſh nation the poſſeſſion of that iſthmus, whereby we ſhould have been in effect maſters of all the treaſures of Peru.

Such were the projects which the Commodore revolved in his thoughts, at the iſland of Juan Fernandez, notwithſtanding the feeble condition to which he was then reduced; but in examining the papers which were found on board the Carmelo, the firſt prize we took, we learned, that our attempts againſt Carthagena had failed, and that there was no probability that our fleet in that part of the world would engage in any new enterprize that would at all facilitate this plan. Mr. Anſon therefore gave over all hopes of being reinforced acroſs the iſthmus, and conſequently had no inducement at preſent to proceed to Panama, as he was incapable of attacking the place, and there was great reaſon to believe that, by this time, there was a general embargo on all the coaſt.

The only feaſible meaſure, then, which was left us, was to ſteer as ſoon as poſſible to the ſouthern parts of California, or to the adjacent coaſt of Mexico, there to cruiſe for the Manilla galleon, which we knew was now at ſea, bound to the port of Acapulco; and we doubted not but to get on that ſtation time enough to intercept her: but there was a buſineſs which we foreſaw would occaſion ſome delay, and that was the recruiting our water, it being impoſſible to think of venturing upon this paſſage to the coaſt of Mexico till we had procured a freſh ſupply. It was for ſome time a matter of deliberation, where we ſhould take in this neceſſary article; but, by conſulting the accounts of former navigators, and examining our priſoners, we at laſt reſolved for the iſland of Quibo, ſituated at the mouth of the bay of Panama. Nor was it but on good grounds that the Commodore conceived this to be the propereſt place for watering the ſquadron. Indeed, there was a ſmall iſland called Cocos, which was leſs out of our way than Quibo, where ſome of the buccaniers had pretended to find water; but none of our priſoners knew any thing of it, and it was thought too dangerous to riſque the ſafety of the ſquadron, by expoſing ourſelves to the hazard of not meeting with water when we came there, on the mere authority of thoſe legendary writers, of whoſe miſrepreſentations and falſities we had almoſt daily experience. Determined, therefore, to take in water at Quibo, we directed our courſe northward, being eight ſail in company, and conſequently having the appearance of a very formidable fleet; and on the 19th, at day-break, we diſcovered Cape Blanco, bearing S. S. E. half E. ſeven miles diſtant. By this time we found that our laſt prize, the Solidad, was far from anſwering the character given of her as a good ſailer; and ſhe and the Santa Tereſa delaying us conſiderably, the Commodore commanded them to be cleared of every thing that might prove uſeful to the reſt of the ſhips, and then to be burnt. And having given proper inſtructions, and appointed a rendezvous to the Glouceſter, and to the prizes, in caſe of ſeparation, we proceeded in our courſe for Quibo.

On the 25th, Point Manta bore S. E. by E. at ſeven miles diſtance, and there being a town of the ſame name in the neighbourhood, Captain Mitchell in the Glouceſter took the opportunity of ſetting on ſhore ſeveral of his priſoners. The boats were now daily employed in diſtributing proviſions on board the prizes, to compleat their ſtock for ſix months; and that the Centurion might be the better prepared to give the Manilla ſhip a warm reception, if happily ſhe ſhould fall in our way, the carpenters were ordered to fix eight ſtocks on the main and fore tops, which were properly fitted for the mounting of ſwivel guns.

On the 25th, we had ſight of the iſland of Gallo; and from hence we croſſed the bay of Panama, ſhaping our courſe in a direct line for Quibo. Here we found, in a few days, a very conſiderable alteration in the climate; for, inſtead of that uniform temperature where neither the exceſs of heat or cold was prevalent, we had now cloſe and ſultry weather, like that we met with on the coaſt of Brazil. We had, beſides, frequent calms and heavy rains, which we at firſt aſcribed to the neighbourhood of the line, where this kind of weather is obſerved to obtain at all ſeaſons of the year; but, finding that it attended us for more than ſeven degrees of north latitude, we began to ſuſpect that the ſtormy ſeaſon, or, as the Spaniards call it, the Vandewals, was not yet paſt; though many writers, particularly Captain Shelvock, aſſert, that this ſeaſon begins in June, and ends in November: but, perhaps, its end may not be always regular.

On the 27th, Captain Mitchell having cleared his largeſt prize, ſhe was likewiſe ſet on fire; and now our fleet conſiſted only of five ſhips, and we were fortunate enough to find them all good ſailers. On the 3rd of December we had a view of the iſland of Quibo, the eaſt end of which bore from us N. N. W. four leagues diſtant, and the iſland of Quicara W. N. W. at about the ſame diſtance. When we had thus got ſight of land, we found the wind to hang weſterly; and therefore, night coming on, we thought it adviſable to ſtand off till morning, as there are ſaid to be ſome ſhoals at the entrance of the channel. At ſix the next morning, Point Marrato bore N. E. half N. three or four leagues diſtant. In weathering this point, all the ſquadron, except the Centurion, were very near it; and the Glouceſter, being the leeward-moſt ſhip, was forced to tack and ſtand to the ſouthward; ſo that we loſt ſight of her; and, the wind proving unfavourable, we ſaw her no more till we quitted the iſland. At ſeven in the evening we anchored in the Canal Bueno, or Good Channel, which is at leaſt ſix miles in breadth, muddy ground. Next morning an officer was diſpatched on ſhore to diſcover the watering-place, who, having found it, returned before noon; and then we ſent our long-boat for a load of water, and at the ſame time weighed and ſtood further in with our ſhips, for the convenience of being ſooner ſupplied; ſo that we were little more than two days in laying in all the wood and water we wanted. Whilſt the ſhip continued here at anchor, the Commodore, attended by ſome of his officers, went in a boat to examine a bay which lay to the northward, and they afterwards ranged all along the eaſtern ſide of the iſland. In the places where they put on ſhore, in the courſe of this expedition, they generally found the ſoil to be rich, and met with great plenty of excellent water. In particular, near the north-eaſt point of the iſland, they diſcovered a natural caſcade, which ſurpaſſed, as they conceived, every thing of this kind which human art had ever yet produced. It was a river of tranſparent water, about 40 yards wide, which rolled down a declivity of near 150 feet in length. The channel itſelf was very irregular, entirely compoſed of rocks, both its ſides and bottom being made up of large detached blocks, and by theſe the courſe of the water was frequently interrupted; for in ſome parts it ran ſloping with a rapid but uniform motion, whilſt in others it tumbled over ledges of rocks with a perpendicular deſcent. On the neighbourhood of this ſtream was a fine wood; and even the huge maſſes of rock which over-hung the water, and which by their various projections formed the inequalities of the channel, were covered with lofty foreſt trees. Whilſt the Commodore, with thoſe who accompanied him, were attentively viewing this place, and were remarking the different blendings of the water, the rocks, and the wood, there came in ſight, as it were to heighten and animate the proſpect, a prodigious flight of mackaws, which, hovering over this ſpot, and often wheeling and playing on the wing above it, afforded a moſt brilliant appearance, by the glittering of the ſun, and their variegated plumage; ſo that ſome of the ſpectators cannot refrain from a kind of tranſport when they recount the beauties which occurred in this extraordinary waterfal.

In three days we compleated our buſineſs in this place, and were impatient to depart, that we might arrive time enough on the coaſt of Mexico, to intercept the galleon; but the wind, being contrary, detained us a night; and the next day, when we had gained an offing, while we were hovering about in hopes of getting ſight of the Glouceſter, we on the 20th diſcerned a ſmall ſail to the northward of us, to which we gave chace, and coming up with her took her. She proved to be a bark from Panama, called the Jeſu Nazareno, laden with oakum, rock ſalt, and a ſmall quantity of money to purchaſe a cargo of proviſions at Cheripe, an inconſiderable village on the continent, which, however, has a good market, from whence future voyagers, in caſe of neceſſity, may be plentifully ſupplied.

On the 12th of September we joined the Glouceſter, who informed us, that, in tacking to the ſouthward, on her firſt approach towards the iſland, ſhe had ſprung her fore-top-maſt, which had diſabled her from working to windward, and prevented her from joining us ſooner. We now ſcuttled and ſunk the Jeſu Nazareno, and, on the 12th of December, ſtood to the weſtward, having previouſly delivered freſh inſtructions for the conduct of the fleet. We had now little doubt of arriving ſoon enough upon our intended ſtation, as we expected, upon the increaſing our offing from Quibo, to fall in with the regular trade-wind; but, to our extreme vexation, we were baffled for near a month, ſo that it was the 25th of December before we ſaw the iſland of Cocos, which, according to our reckoning, was only 100 leagues from the continent, and even then we had the mortification to make ſo little way, that we did not loſe ſight of that iſland again in five days. This iſland we found to be in the lat. of 5 deg. 20 min. N.

We had flattered ourſelves, that the uncertain and weſtern gales we met with were owing to the neighbourhood of the continent, from which as we got more diſtant, we hoped to be relieved by falling in with the eaſtern trade-wind; but in this too being diſappointed, we began at length to deſpair of the great purpoſe we had in view. This produced a general dejection among us, as we had at firſt conſidered the project as almoſt infallible, and had indulged ourſelves in the moſt boundleſs hopes of the advantages we ſhould thence receive. However, our deſpondency was, in ſome meaſure, alleviated by a favourable change of the wind; and, as we now advanced a-pace towards our ſtation, our hopes began again to revive. On the 17th of January, we were advanced to the latitude of 12 deg. 50 min. N. and, on the 26th of January, finding ourſelves to the northward of Acapulco, we tacked and ſtood to the eaſtward, with a view of making the land; and we expected by our reckonings, to have fallen in with it on the 28th, yet, though the weather was perfectly clear, we had no ſign of it at ſun-ſet; about ten at night we diſcovered a light on the larboard bow, bearing from us N. N. E. and, ſoon after, the Trial's prize made the ſignal for ſeeing a ſail. As we had none of us any doubt but that what we ſaw was a ſhip's light, we were all extremely animated with a firm perſuaſion that it was the Manilla galleon, that had been ſo long the object of our wiſhes. We immediately caſt off the Carmelo, and preſſed forward with all our canvas, making a ſignal for the Glouceſter to do the ſame. Thus we chaſed the light, keeping all our hands at their reſpective quarters, under an expectation of engaging within half an hour, as we ſometimes conceived the chace to be about a mile diſtant, and at other times to be within reach of our guns. In this conſtant and eager attention we continued all night, always preſuming that another quarter of an hour would bring us up to this Manilla ſhip, whoſe wealth we now eſtimated at round millions: but, when daylight came, we were moſt vexatiouſly diſappointed, by finding that the light which had occaſioned all this expectancy, was only a fire on the ſhore. At ſun-riſing, after this mortifying deluſion, we found ourſelves about nine leagues off land, extending from the N. W. to E. half N. On this land we obſerved two remarkable hammocks, which bore N. from us, and which a Spaniſh pilot and two Indians affirmed to be over the harbour of Acapulco; but we found them egregiouſly miſtaken, theſe being in 17 deg. 56 min. whereas Acapulco lies in 17 deg. only.

Being now in the track of the Manilla galleon, it was a doubt with us, as it was near the end of January, whether ſhe was or was not arrived: but, examining our priſoners about it, they aſſured us, ſhe was ſometimes known to come in after the middle of February; and they endeavoured to perſuade us, that the fire we had ſeen on ſhore was a proof that ſhe was yet at ſea, it being cuſtomary, as they ſaid, to make uſe of theſe fires as ſignals for her direction when ſhe continued out longer than ordinary. On this reaſoning of our priſoners, we reſolved to cruiſe for her ſome days, and we accordingly ſpread our ſhips at the diſtance of 12 leagues from the coaſt, in ſuch a manner that it was impoſſible ſhe ſhould paſs us unobſerved; however, not ſeeing her ſoon, we were very ſolicitous to gain ſome poſitive intelligence. With this view the Commodore reſolved to ſend a boat under cover of the night into the harbour of Acapulco, to ſee if the Manilla ſhip was there or not. To execute this enterprize, the barge was diſpatched the 6th of February, carrying a ſufficient crew and two officers, as alſo a Spaniſh pilot and an Indian. Our barge did not return till the 11th, when the officers acquainted Mr. Anſon, that they had miſtaken the harbour, and that Acapulco lay a conſiderable diſtance more to the eaſtward, and that, not having a ſufficient quantity of proviſions for their paſſage thither, they were obliged to return to make known their diſappointment. On this intelligence we made ſail to the eaſtward, and the next day we diſpatched the barge, with particular inſtructions to keep at a ſufficient diſtance not to be ſeen from the ſhore. We watched ſix days without receiving any intelligence, ſo that we began to be uneaſy for her ſafety; but on the 7th day ſhe returned with advice, that, being at the very place they ſought for, though they were then ignorant of their ſituation, they ſurprized a fiſhing canoe with three negroes, who told us that the Manilla galleon arrived at Acapulco on the 9th of January, but that, having delivered her cargo, ſhe was taking in water and proviſions in order to return; and that the Viceroy of Mexico had by proclamation fixed her departure from Acapulco to the 14th of March. This laſt news was moſt joyfully received by us, ſince we had no doubt but ſhe muſt fall into our hands; and it was much more eligible to ſeize her on her return, than it would have been to have taken her before her arrival, as the money for which ſhe had ſold her cargo, and which ſhe would now have on board, would be much more eſteemed by us than the cargo itſelf. Thus we were a ſecond time engaged in an eager expectation of meeting with this Manilla ſhip, which, by the fame of its wealth, we had been taught to conſider as the moſt deſireable capture that was to be made on any part of the ocean.

As it was the 19th of February when the barge returned, and brought us our intelligence, and the galleon was not to ſail till the 3d of March, the Commodore reſolved to continue the greateſt part of the intermediate time in his preſent ſtation to the weſtward of Acapulco, in order to avoid a diſcovery from the ſhore. During this interval we were employed in getting all things in readineſs to engage; and, when the long-wiſhed-for 3d of March came, we were all ſo ſtrongly prepoſſeſſed with the certainty of our intelligence, and with an aſſurance of her coming out of port, that ſome or other of us were conſtantly imagining that they diſcovered one of our cutters returning with a ſignal; but, to our extreme vexation, both this day and the ſucceeding night paſſed away without any news of her approach. However, we did not yet deſpair, nor did we abate of our vigilance: but, after remaining till the 25th of March, we at length concluded, and we afterwards found it to be true, that we had been diſcovered, and that in conſequence an embargo had been laid upon the galleon, and her departure poſtponed till the next year.

The cutters, having on that day finiſhed their cruiſe before the harbour, returned to the ſquadron, and the ſignal being given for the fleet to join, it was determined to retire to Chequetan, to take in a freſh ſupply of water, which was then nearly exhauſted. In the mean time a cutter, commanded by Mr. Hughes, Lieutenant of the Trial's prize, was ordered to continue off the harbour of Acapulco for 24 days, in order that, if the galleon ſhould ſet ſail in that time, we might be ſpeedily informed of it.

On the 5th of April we entered the harbour of Chequetan, in latitude 17 deg. 36 min. N. about 30 leagues to the weſtward of Acapulco. The watering-place has the appearance of a large ſtanding lake, without any viſible outlet into the ſea, from which it is ſeparated by a part of the ſtrand. The origin of this lake is a ſpring that bubbles out of the ground, near half a mile within the country. We found its water a little brackiſh, but more conſiderably ſo towards the ſea-ſide, for the nearer we advanced towards the ſpring-head, the ſofter and freſher it proved. This laid us under a neceſſity of filling all our caſks from the fartheſt part of the lake, which was facilitated by means of canoes which traverſed the lake, and brought a number of ſmall caſks to the ſide next the beach; thence the water was ſtarted into larger veſſels in the boats, and by that contrivance brought on board with very little trouble.

As the country hereabouts, particularly the tract of coaſt contiguous to Acapulco, appeared to be well peopled and cultivated, we hoped to have eaſily procured from thence ſome freſh proviſions, and other refreſhments, which we now ſtood much in need of. To facilitate theſe views, the Commodore, the morning after we came to an anchor, ordered a party of 40 men well armed to march into the country, and to endeavour to diſcover ſome town where they were to attempt to ſet on foot a correſpondence with the inhabitants; for, when we had once begun this intercourſe, we doubted not but by proper preſents we ſhould allure them to bring down to us whatever fruits or freſh proviſions were in their power. As our prizes abounded with various ſorts of coarſe merchandize, which were of little conſequence to us, though to them they would be extremely valuable, our people were directed on this occaſion to proceed with the greateſt circumſpection, and to make as little oſtentation of hoſtility as poſſible; for we were ſenſible we could find no wealth in thoſe parts worth our notice; and what neceſſaries we really wanted, we expected would be better, and more abundantly ſupplied, by an open amicable traffic, than by violence and force of arms. But this endeavour of opening a commerce with the inhabitants proved ineffectual, and therefore we deſiſted from any more attempts of the ſame nature, contenting ourſelves with what we could procure for ourſelves in the neighbourhood of the port where we lay. We caught fiſh in abundance; among the reſt cavallies, bream, mullets, ſoals, fiddle-fiſh, and lobſters; and we here, and in no other place, met with that extraordinary fiſh called the torpedo; which is in ſhape very much reſembling the fiddle-fiſh, and is only diſtinguiſhed from it in appearance by a brown circular ſpot of about the bigneſs of a crown-piece, near the center of its back. This fiſh is, indeed, of a moſt ſingular nature, benumbing whoever touches it all over his body, but more particularly that limb which happens to come in immediate contact with it. The ſame effect, too, will be in ſome degree produced by touching the fiſh with any thing held in the hand; and it has lately been diſcovered, that it may be communicated like the electrical ſhock to a large circle, by means of a certain apparatus much more ſimple than that which is uſed in experiments in electricity.

The animals which we met with on ſhore were chiefly guanoes, with which the country abounds, and which are by ſome reckoned delicious food. We ſaw no beaſts of prey, except we ſhould eſteem that amphibious creature the alligator as ſuch, ſeveral of which our people diſcovered, but none of them very large. It is, however, certain, that there were great numbers of tygers in the woods, though none of them happened to make their appearance while we remained upon the coaſt. Parrots and pheaſants were found in plenty, but by no means proper for food, being dry and taſteleſs, though they were often killed and eaten, being by ſome thought preferable to ſalt proviſions.

The papah, lime, and a little ſour plumb, were all the fruits the woods furniſhed, and of theſe there were but a ſcanty portion; nor was there any other uſeful vegetable, except brook-lime, which, being eſteemed an antiſcorbutic, was frequently eaten, though, from its bitterneſs it was exceedingly unpalatable.

While we lay at Chequetan, it was reſolved, after mature deliberation, to deſtroy all our prizes, as the whole number of men on board our ſquadron did not amount to the complement of a fourth-rate man-of-war. It was therefore judged moſt prudent to ſet fire to the ſhips, and to divide the men between the Centurion and Glouceſter, now preparing to ſet ſail for China. Beſides the neceſſary repairs for a voyage of ſuch length, the removal of their ſtores and cargoes into the men-of war took up ſo much time, that it was the end of April before we were in a condition to leave the place.

It ſhould have been remarked, that, from this harbour of Chequetan we diſcovered but one pathway through the woods into the country; and as this was much beaten, we were from that circumſtance convinced, that it was not unfrequented by the natives. As it paſſed by the ſpring-head, and was the only avenue by which the Spaniards could approach to ſurprize us, we at ſome diſtance beyond the ſpring-head felled ſeveral large trees, and laid them one upon another acroſs the path, and at this barricadoe we conſtantly kept a guard. We, beſides, ordered our men employed in watering, to have their arms always in readineſs, in caſe of an alarm, and to march inſtantly to this poſt. And, though our principal intention herein was to prevent our being diſturbed by the enemy's horſe, yet it anſwered another purpoſe, which was, to hinder our people from ſtraggling ſingly into the country, where we had reaſon to believe they would be ſurprized by the Spaniards, who would doubtleſs be very ſolicitous to pick up ſome of them, in hopes of getting intelligence of our future deſigns. To avoid this inconvenience, the ſtricteſt orders were given to the centinels, to let no perſon whatever paſs beyond this poſt; but, notwithſtanding this precaution, we miſſed one Lewis Legere, who was the Commodore's cook. As he was a Frenchman and a Roman Catholic, it was at firſt imagined that he had deſerted with a view of betraying all that he knew to the enemy; though this appeared, by the event, to be an ill-grounded ſurmiſe; for it was afterwards known, that he had been taken by ſome Indians, who carried him priſoner to Acapulco, from whence he was tranſported to Mexico, and thence to Vera Cruz, where he was ſhipped on board a veſſel bound to Old Spain. But, the veſſel being obliged, by ſome accident, to put into Liſbon, Legere eſcaped on ſhore, and was by the Britiſh Conſul ſent from thence to England; where he gave the firſt authentic account of the ſafety of the Commodore, and of his principal tranſactions in the South Seas.

The relation he gave of his own ſeizure was, that he rambled into the woods, at ſome diſtance from the barricadoe where he had firſt attempted to paſs, but had been ſtopt and threatened to be puniſhed; that his principal view was to gather a quantity of limes for his maſter's ſtores; and that in this occupation he was ſurprized unawares by four Indians, who ſtript him naked, and carried him in that condition to Acapulco, expoſed to the ſcorching heat of the ſun, which at that time of the year ſhone with its greateſt violence; that afterwards, at Mexico, his treatment was ſufficiently ſevere; ſo that the whole courſe of his captivity was a continued inſtance of the hatred which the Spaniards bear to all thoſe who endeavour to diſturb them in the peaceable poſſeſſion of the coaſts of the South Seas. Indeed, Legere's fortune was, upon the whole, extremely ſingular; as, after the hazards he had run in the Commodore's ſquadron, and the ſeverities he had ſuffered in his long confinement among the enemy, a more fatal diſaſter attended him on his return to England; for though, when he arrived in London, ſome of Mr. Anſon's friends intereſted themſelves in relieving him from the poverty to which his captivity had reduced him, yet he did not long enjoy the benefit of their humanity, ſince he was killed in an inſignificant night-brawl, the cauſe of which could ſcarcely ever be diſcovered.

When we were neceſſitated to proceed to Chequetan to recruit our water, the Commodore conſidered that our arrival in that harbour would ſoon be known at Acapulco; and therefore he hoped, that on the intelligence of our being employed in that port, the galleon might put to ſea, eſpecially as Chequetan is ſo very remote from the courſe generally ſteered by the galleons: he therefore ordered the cutter, as has already been noticed, to cruiſe 24 days off the port of Acapulco, and her commander was directed, on perceiving the galleon under ſail, to make the beſt of his way to the Commodore at Chequetan. As the Centurion was certainly a much better ſailer than the galleon, Mr. Anſon, in this caſe, reſolved to have got to ſea as ſoon as poſſible, and to have purſued the galleon acroſs the Pacific Ocean; however, the Viceroy of Mexico ruined this project, by detaining the galleon in port all the year.

Towards the latter end of April, all things being in readineſs for ſailing, the Centurion and Glouceſter weighed anchor; and, after having gained an offing, the prizes were ſet on fire, and a canoe fixed to a grapple in the middle of the harbour, with a bottle in it, well corked, incloſing a letter to Mr. Hughes, directing him to go back immediately to his former ſtation before Acapulco, where he would find Mr. Anſon, who reſolved to cruiſe for him in that ſtation ſome days. Indeed, it was no ſmall mortification to us, now we were at ſea, and the ſtormy ſeaſon approaching, that we were detained by the abſence of the cutter, and under a neceſſity of ſtanding towards Acapulco in ſearch of her. As the time of her cruize had been expired near a fortnight, we ſuſpected that ſhe had been diſcovered from the ſhore, and that the Governor of Acapulco had thereupon ſent out a force to ſeize her; which, as ſhe carried but ſix hands, was no very difficult enterprize. However, this being only conjecture, the Commodore, as ſoon as he was got clear of the harbour of Chequetan, ſtood along the coaſt to the eaſtward in ſearch of her; and, to prevent her from paſſing by us in the dark, we brought-to every night, and carried lights which the cutter could not but perceive.

By the 2nd of May we were advanced within three leagues of Acapulco; and having ſeen nothing of our boat, we gave her over for loſt; which, beſides the compaſſionate concern for our ſhipmates, and for what it was apprehended they might have ſuffered, was in itſelf a misfortune, which in our preſent ſcarcity of hands we were greatly intereſted in; ſince the crew of the cutter were the flower of our people, purpoſely picked out for this ſervice, as known to be, every one of them, of tried and approved reſolution, and as ſkilful ſeamen as ever trod a deck. However, as it was the general belief among us that they were taken and carried into Acapulco, the Commodore's prudence ſuggeſted a project which we hoped would recover them. This was founded on our having many Spaniſh and Indian priſoners on board, ſome of them of quality, The Commodore, therefore, wrote a letter to the Governor of Acapulco, telling him, that he would releaſe them all, provided the Governor returned the cutter's crew. This letter was diſpatched by a Spaniſh officer, of whoſe honour we had a high opinion, and who was furniſhed with a launch belonging to one of our prizes and a crew of Spaniards, who gave their parole for their return. The Spaniſh officer, too, beſides the Commodore's letter, carried with him a joint petition, ſigned by all the reſt of the priſoners, beſeeching the Governor to acquieſce in the terms propoſed for their liberty. But while we were thus contriving their releaſe, the centinel called out from the maſt-head, that he ſaw a boat under ſail at a conſiderable diſtance to the ſouth-eaſtward, which, to our unſpeakable joy, upon her nearer approach, we found was our own cutter, the wan and meagre countenances of whoſe crew, the length of their beards, and the feeble and hollow tone of their voices, convinced us that they had ſuffered much greater hardſhips than could be expected from even the ſeverities of a Spaniſh priſon. They were obliged to be helped into the ſhip, and were immediately put to bed; where, by reſt, and nouriſhing diet, with which they were plentifully ſupplied from the Commodore's table, they recovered their health and vigour. And now we learnt that they had kept the ſea the whole time of their abſence, which was above ſix weeks; that, when they had finiſhed their cruiſe, and had juſt begun to ply to the weſtward, in order to join the ſquadron, a ſtrong adverſe current had forced them upwards of 80 leagues to leeward, where they found every where ſo great a ſurf, that there was no poſſibility of landing; that they paſſed ſome days in the moſt dreadful ſituation, without water, having no other means left them to allay their thirſt than ſucking the blood of the turtles which they caught; that at laſt, giving up all hopes of ſuccour, the heat of the climate too augmenting their neceſſities, and rendering their ſufferings inſupportable, they abandoned themſelves to deſpair, fully perſuaded that they ſhould periſh by the moſt terrible of all deaths; but that ſoon after a moſt unexpected incident happily relieved them; for there fell ſo heavy a rain, that, on ſpreading their ſails horizontally, and putting bullets in the centers of them, they caught as much water as filled their caſks; that immediately upon this fortunate ſupply, they ſtood to the weſtward in queſt of the Commodore, and being now luckily favoured by a ſtrong current, they joined him in leſs than 50 hours from that time, after having been abſent in the whole full 43 days.

And now having, to our entire ſatisfaction, got on board our people, and the ſeaſon of the year for ſailing to Aſia being far (we found it too far) advanced, the Commodore reſolved not to wait for any return from Acapulco, but gave orders to equip two large prize launches, to carry on ſhore the Spaniſh and Indian priſoners, both from ourſelves and the Glouceſter; and, having given them proviſions and all neceſſaries for Panama, whither they intended to ſail, about four in the evening they left us, to the number of about 60 perſons, having firſt, though enemies, obſerved the cuſtom of ſeafaring people at parting, and wiſhed us a proſperous voyage.

From the 6th of May, the day we took our departure, we met with little remarkable for above a month, except that the true trade-wind, which is ſaid never to fail at about 60 or 70 leagues from the ſhore of Mexico at the fartheſt, was ſo far from anſwering our expectations, that we had nothing but croſs winds, ſqualls, rain, thunder, and lightning, till by account we were 600 leagues to the weſtward of Acapulco, having been above 40 days in getting ſo far. The 9th, we found the foremaſt ſprung in a dangerous manner, and thereupon fiſhed and ſecured it very ſtrongly.

The 22nd, in the evening, we ſprung a leak, making 12 inches water in a watch, and on a ſearch found it to be on the larboard ſide, abreaſt the main hatch-way, and not quite under water. The carpenters ſoon ſtopt it with very little trouble.

The 11th of June, we found a current to ſet to the ſouthward, about 24 miles a day, but could not diſcover whether to the eaſt or weſt, for want of opportunity to try it. This was by account about 450 leagues from Acapulco; and, much about this time, abundance of ſcorbutic ſymptoms, ſuch as blackneſs in the ſkin, hard nodes in the fleſh, ſhortneſs of breath, and a general laſſitude and weakneſs of all the parts, began to prevail, almoſt univerſally, among our people. This with the great mortality we experienced from this diſtemper in our Cape Horn paſſage, and the time we might ſtill expect to be at ſea, having yet 1800 leagues to thoſe iſlands called, by Sir Francis Drake, the Ladrones, or Iſlands of Thieves, from the thieviſh diſpoſition of the inhabitants, but by the Spaniards the Marian Iſlands, where only we could expect our next refreſhments; and no trade-wind being yet ſettled; theſe conſiderations, I ſay, gave us dreadful apprehenſions of what this paſſage might terminate in; and the event ſhewed that we had but too much reaſon for them.

The 14th, at five in the evening, the Glouceſter, having ſprung the head of her main-maſt, 12 feet below the truſſel-trees, fired a gun as a ſignal of diſtreſs; on which we brought to, and waited for her; and, after enquiring into, and hearing the cauſe, we ſent them on board two carpenters to aſſiſt in fiſhing and ſecuring it; but the carpenters in concert, having viewed and conſidered the damage, reported, the next day, that the maſt was unfit to ſtand, and would not bear repairing; but that it muſt be ſhortened 26 feet from the head, and the top-maſt be ſet on the ſtump. This, therefore, was concluded on, and ordered accordingly.

The 23rd, we found our own main-top-maſt ſprung in the wake of the cape; whereupon, we reefed it 20 inches, that is, we lowered it ſo much, and ſecured it there, and fleeted and ſet up the ſhrouds and back-ſtays.

The 24th, in the evening, we got the top-maſt down, and put up another in its place, and a man falling overboard, we brought the ſhip to, and took him up ſafe; likewiſe, the ſlings of our croſs-jack-yards being broke, we fixed new ones, and the next day got up the fore-top-gallant-maſt and yard.

The 27th, we made the Glouceſter ſignal and ſent our boat on board of her.

The 28th, we received from the Glouceſter half an anchor-ſtock, for a farther ſecurity to the fore-maſt.

The 29th, the Glouceſter finiſhed her jury-maſt, and made ſail on it. Nothing farther remarkable till July 1ſt, we had freſh gales, and cloudy weather, with ſome lightning.

The 2nd, we unbent the fore-ſail, and bent another. We had, not only now, but for almoſt our whole paſſage, abundance of birds of prey, alſo flying fiſh, which are their proper food, and vaſt quantities of ſkip-jacks, albicores, &c. whereof we took a great number, which contributed much to our refreſhment after the loſs of the tortoiſes, that generally leave all ſhips about 20 or 30 leagues off the land. I think this the more worthy of notice, becauſe Dampier, Rogers, Cook, Cowley, and moſt other voyagers, ſome of whom have been not only once, but ſeveral times on this voyage, have reported, that they never ſaw a fiſh or fowl in this whole run. For my part I readily believe and conclude, that this difference in our obſervations and accounts is really occaſioned by the different ſeaſons of the year in which we happened to perform this paſſage; it being a known truth, and confirmed by the experience of thouſands in all ages, that moſt fiſh have their different ſeaſons for their different rendezvouſes.

The 10th, we ſaw three gannets, or, as they call them in Scotland, ſoland geeſe; being, by what I can learn from the moſt intelligent of that nation whom I have converſed with, and who often have opportunity to obſerve them in ſeveral different parts, of one and the ſame ſpecies; we likewiſe ſaw ſome ſea weeds; both which circumſtances made us imagine that ſome iſlands or ſhoals were not far off, thoſe fowls never being obſerved to fly very far out to ſea.

The 11th, we unbent the fore-top-ſail, and bent another.

The 12th, at noon, we were, by my account, 180 deg. 11 min. to the weſtward of the meridian of London, which is juſt 11 min. more than half round the globe, for which reaſon I note it. We were at this time, by my account, 1429 leagues diſtant from the port of Acapulco.

From this time till the 16th, we had freſh gales, with ſqualls and rain.

The 17th and 18th, we had moderate and cloudy weather.

The 19th and 20th, freſh gales, with abundance of rain. We made this obſervation, that, with rainy weather, or even ſlight tranſient ſhowers, the fiſh bit more freely, and were caught in greater numbers, than with fair weather: which made our fiſhermen the more attentive at ſuch times. It was likewiſe remarked, that the Glouceſter, when they could find opportunity to fiſh, had always much greater ſucceſs than we; whether their fiſhermen had more art than ours, or whatever elſe occaſioned it, the fact is true. They had alſo a better way of diſpoſing of them, when taken, if I may be allowed to judge, than we; for Captain Mitchell conſtantly ordered ſeveral boys, who were very dexterous at it, to catch fiſh for the ſhip's company, eſpecially the ſick; and thoſe were very juſtly and regularly divided among them: whereas our fiſhermen were left at liberty to make their advantage of what they took, and to prey upon their ſuffering ſhipmates; and they took care not to overſlip the opportunity, for the leaſt fiſh you could purchaſe of them would coſt you a bottle of brandy; which, at this time, was worth four, or perhaps, ſix and ſometimes even eight ſhillings, or half a guinea; and you muſt be very thankful, and acknowledge yourſelf to be highly obliged into the bargain, or elſe expect none next time, and very often fail of it notwithſtanding. About this time our people began to die very faſt, and, I believe, above five parts out of ſix of the ſhip's company were ill, and expected to follow in a ſhort time. Thoſe, whoſe breath was any ways affected, dropt off immediately; but thoſe, who were attacked firſt in the more remote parts of the body, languiſhed generally a month or ſix weeks; the diſtemper advancing, in the mean time, towards the lungs, by a very regular and ſenſible approach. As I was myſelf one of thoſe who were ſeverely afflicted in this latter manner, I ſhall give ſuch an account of its progreſs, as I found by experience in myſelf, and corroborated by the ſimilar report of my fellow-ſufferers. I was firſt taken, about the beginning of this month, with a ſlight pain on the joint of my left great toe; but, having hurt that a little while before, I imagined it to be the effect of that hurt, and minded it the leſs—(but here I ſhall obſerve, once for all, that if ever any part of the body had received a bruiſe, ſtrain, or contuſion, if not perfectly cured, the ſcurvy was ſure to attack that part firſt;) but, in a little time, a large black ſpot appearing on the part affected, with very intenſe pains at the bone, gave me to underſtand my caſe. I now took phyſic often, by way of prevention, but to little purpoſe: ſeveral hard nodes now began to riſe in my legs, thighs, and arms, and not only many more black ſpots appeared in the ſkin, but thoſe ſpread, till my legs and thighs were for the moſt part as black as a negroe; and this accompanied with ſuch exceſſive pains in the joints of the knees, ancles, and toes, as I thought, before I experienced them, that human nature could never have ſupported. It next advanced to the mouth; all my teeth were preſently looſe, and my gums, over-charged with extravaſated blood, fell down almoſt quite over my teeth: this occaſioned my breath to ſmell much, yet without affecting my lungs; but, I believe, one week more at ſea would have ended me, and leſs than a month more, all the reſt. One thing was very remarkable, and likewiſe univerſal, which was, that, when the diſtemper had far prevailed, if the afflicted perſon lay quiet in his hammock, he ſeemed to be perfectly well and hearty; but, if he was removed out of it, on any neceſſity, he immediately fainted away; and this was always a ſure ſign of the party's diſſolution.

Since our paſſing Cape Horn, our ſurgeon, Henry Ettrick, who was a very good practical ſurgeon, had been very buſy in digeſting a theory of ſcurvies, wherein he enumerated many caſes very particularly, having been allowed to open and examine as many bodies as were abundantly ſufficient for that purpoſe. His ſyſtem was principally grounded on the obſervations made on a long paſſage in a very cold climate. He took abundance of pains to prove, by many inſtances, that the tone of the blood was broken by the cold nipping air, and rendered ſo thin, as to be unfit for circulation, or any other of the uſes of life; and being thus deprived of a proper force and vigour, ſtagnation and death muſt neceſſarily enſue. From this ſuppoſition, he had laid it down as an infallible rule, that food of a glutinous nature, ſuch as ſalt fiſh, bread, and ſeveral ſorts of grain, were alone proper on ſuch voyages. As for liquids, I know not which he had pitched on, as the moſt ſalutary, on this occaſion. But this paſſage, in a very hot climate, where the ſymptoms were not only more dreadful, but the mortality much more quick and fatal, in proportion to the number of people, put our ſcheming doctor to a ſad non-plus: he could not account for this on the ſame principles with the other; nay, they muſt be, in a manner, diametrically oppoſite. All this obliged him at laſt (though he was ſtill endeavouring to reconcile contradictions), to own, that though ſome of the concurrent cauſes of this diſeaſe were plain enough, yet the grand cauſe was certainly the long continuance at ſea, or an entire ſecret; and that no cure but the ſhore would ever be effectual. The Commodore, on this great mortality, having by him a quantity of Ward's pills and drops, in order to experience whether they would be of any uſe, firſt tried them on himſelf, and then gave what he had left to the ſurgeon, to adminiſter to ſuch of the ſick people as were willing to take them. The ſurgeon would not recommend them to any perſon, but ſeveral took them; though I know of none who believed they were of any ſervice to them. They worked moſt people who took them very violently, both by vomit and ſtool: after which, as ſeveral told me, they would ſeem to be a little eaſier, though weaker, for perhaps a day or two, but then they always relapſed, and became worſe than before; and this, together with the inefficacy of all that our ſurgeons could do in the caſe ſufficiently ſhewed the vanity of attempting the cure of this diſtemper at ſea.

And here, before I quit this ſubject, I ſhall endeavour to remove a prejudice, under which the afflicted have long ſeverely ſuffered; and that is, from the notion generally prevalent, that none but the lazy are attacked with this diſorder; whereas, the direct contrary is the truth; our experience having abundantly ſhewn, that the moſt laborious, active, ſtirring perſons were ofteneſt ſeized with this diſeaſe; and the continuation of their labour, inſtead of curing, only helped to kill them the ſooner.

Many undeniable inſtances might be given of this in our voyage; and, if future voyagers will give themſelves the trouble of obſerving this hereafter, I am certain that the event will correſpond with my aſſertion; nor does this diſtemper, in a general way, incline people to indolence, till it is come to that height, that, at the leaſt motion, the perſon is ready to faint. It is certain, that if the perſon afflicted deſires to lengthen out his life as long as he can, his beſt way is to ſtir as little as poſſible. This I have ſeen verified by many inſtances.

The 23rd and 24th we reefed and repaired our rigging, which had ſuffered much in the variable weather.

The 26th, being, according to our reckoning, 300 leagues from the Ladrones, we met with a weſterly wind, which did not come about again in four days. This was a moſt diſpiriting incident, as we were all that while forced to lie to, the current inſenſibly driving us out of our courſe.

The 27th, our gunner, Henry Kipps, died of the ſcurvey, being one of the moſt able-bodied men, as well as the moſt active in the ſhip: he had taken Ward's medicines once or twice.

On the 28th we had calms with much rain, and received from the Glouceſter 20 caſks of flour, and four of groats. Having here an occaſion of mentioning flour, it may not be amiſs to take notice, that, ſince our departure from Juan Fernandez, the principal officers had always ſoft bread new baked, the biſcuit being ſo much worm eaten, it was ſcarce any thing but duſt, and a little blow would reduce it to that ſtate immediately. Our beef and pork were likewiſe very ruſty and rotten; and the ſurgeon endeavoured to perſuade us from eating it, alledging it was, though a ſlow, yet a ſure poiſon; but very little other food being to be had, we were reduced to a very deplorable condition.

The 29th, in the morning, the Glouceſter's fore-cap ſplitting, her fore-top-maſt came by the board, and, in its fall, meeting with the fore-yard, broke it in the ſlings. As ſhe was hereby rendered incapable of making any ſail for ſome time, we were under a neceſſity, as ſoon as a gale ſprung up, to take her in tow; and near 20 of the healthieſt and ableſt of our ſeamen were removed from the duty of our own ſhip, and were continued eight or ten days together to aſſiſt in repairing her damages; but theſe things, mortifying as we thought them, were only the commencement of our misfortunes; for, ſcarce had our people finiſhed their buſineſs in the Glouceſter before we met with a moſt violent ſtorm from the weſtern board, which obliged us to lie to. This ſtorm laſted from the 10th to the 13th of Auguſt, attended with rain, thunder, and lightning, and ſuch a lofty and dangerous ſea, as I have ſeldom ſeen, and could not have believed in latitudes between the Tropics, eſpecially for ſuch a long duration. Moſt of the time we lay to, we drove to the northward; abundance of our people died daily; and, the ſhip proving very leaky, every perſon who could ſtir, the principal officers not excepted, was obliged to take his turn at the pumps, and all little enough to keep us above water.

The 13th of Auguſt, at ten in the morning, the Glouceſter made a ſignal of diſtreſs, and, being to windward, bore down towards us; but we obſerved ſhe was long in wearing, rolled very much, and made bad ſteerage. About half an hour after noon they ſpoke with us, and told us that they were ſo leaky that they muſt quit their ſhip; that they had ſeven feet water in the hold; and that all the men they had capable of ſtirring were quite exhauſted with pumping, and could work no longer. This was an additional misfortune, and ſeemed to be without reſource; for, whilſt the Glouceſter's crew were thus enfeebled, our own ſick were now ſo much increaſed, and thoſe who ſtill remained in health ſo over fatigued with labour, that it was impoſſible for us to lend them any aid: all therefore, that could be done was to ſend our boat on board for a more particular account of the ſhip's condition; as it was ſoon ſuſpected, that the taking her people on board us, and then deſtroying the Glouceſter, was the only meaſure that could be proſecuted in the preſent emergency both for the preſervation of their lives and of our own.

Our boat ſoon returned with a repreſentation of the melancholy ſtate of the Glouceſter, and of her ſeveral defects, ſigned by Captain Mitchell and all his officers; by which it appeared, that the ſhip was decayed in every part; that her crew was greatly reduced; that there remained alive no more than 77 men, officers included, 18 boys, and two priſoners; that of the whole number, only 16 men and 11 boys were capable of keeping the deck, and ſeveral of theſe very infirm; that the water was ſo deep in the hold, that thoſe who were yet alive were ſtarving, and could neither come at freſh water nor proviſions.

From this repreſentation, which was in no one inſtance exaggerated, the Commodore ſent immediately an order to Captain Mitchell, to bring his people on board the Centurion, and to take out ſuch ſtores as could moſt eaſily be come at, among which he was very deſirous of ſaving two cables, and a ſteel-anchor; but the ſhip rolled ſo much, and the men were ſo exceſſively fatigued, that it was with the greateſt difficulty the prize-money was ſecured (the prize-goods amounting to many thouſand pounds being abandoned); nor could any more proviſions be got at, than five caſks of flour (three of which were ſpoiled by the ſalt-water), a ſmall quantity of brandy, and ſome living ſtock. Even this little buſineſs was ſo languiſhingly performed, that two days were waſted in the execution, during which time three or four of the ſick periſhed on being moved.

As the weather was now calm, and we were uncertain how far diſtant we might be from Guam, a ſettlement in poſſeſſion of the enemy, to whom the wreck of ſuch a ſhip with guns and ammunition on board would have been a very valuable acquiſition, the Commodore judged the moſt effectual way to prevent her from falling into their hands was to ſet her on fire: and accordingly, as ſoon as the Captain and his Officers had quitted her, the combuſtibles placed for that purpoſe were lighted, and ſhe continued burning the whole night, and at ſix the next morning ſhe blew up. Thus periſhed his Majeſty's ſhip the Glouceſter; and now it might have been expected, that, being freed from the embarraſſment in which her frequent diſaſters had involved us, we ſhould have proceeded on our way much briſker than we had hitherto done. However, we were ſoon taught, that our troubles were not yet to be relieved.

We were at this time in the utmoſt diſtreſs; the ſhip conſiderably lumbered with prize-goods, and the little room we had left thronged with the ſick, whoſe numbers were now very much increaſed by thoſe from the Glouceſter; the dirt, nauſeouſneſs, and ſtench, almoſt every where intolerable; more people daily diſabled with the diſeaſe; no ſign of land, nor but very little wind, and that not fair but variable: very bad proviſions and water, and the ſhip very leaky; and, though we diſcovered the leak to be in her bows on each ſide the ſtern, it lay in ſuch a manner that we could not ſtop it, nay the attempting to do it rather made it worſe. In this diſtreſs we made the beſt of every little ſpurt of wind.

Nothing farther remarkable happened till Sunday the 22d, when, about eight in the evening, we diſcovered two iſlands, one bearing W. half S. and the other S. W. by W. at the diſtance of about 10 leagues. We were overjoyed at this ſight, and ſtood toward them with all our ſail; but, there being little wind, we did not get near them till the next day about noon, when being about three miles off the largeſt and moſt promiſing of them, which appeared very hilly and full of trees, we ſent on ſhore one of our Lieutenants in the cutter to make diſcoveries, who returned at nine in the evening, and gave us but a very indifferent account of the land. The trees were moſtly cocoa-nut-trees, of which there were prodigious quantities (about 60 cocoa-nuts they brought on board with them); but they could find no water, nor any good place to anchor in: on this account it was thought fit to ſtand further to the ſouthward, for ſome more proper place. This was a ſevere diſappointment to moſt of the ſick, who, on the ſight of land, (on hearing that we were ſo near it) had begun ſenſibly to revive: but as perſons in ſuch circumſtances are ſoon driven to deſpond when an aid they had depended upon deſerts them, ſo this diſappointment marred our hopes, and increaſed our dejection. We feared, that, if we met with more iſlands in the ſame run, they might be either as bad, worſe, or inhabited by our enemies the Spaniards, who, in our weak condition, might eaſily be able to hinder us from proper refreſhments: add to this, how near many of us were to death, and how little we could expect to ſurvive while in ſearch of other iſlands. I know not whether theſe were the general thoughts of the ſick, but I muſt own they were mine, and made our ſituation at that time appear infinitely worſe to me than at any other in the whole courſe of our voyage. I was indeed very ill, and my illneſs might poſſibly occaſion every thing to appear in its worſt light, yet I never was one of thoſe who were frightened at the apprehenſion, or even the viſible approach of death; it had no unreaſonable terrors in any of its proſpects to me; and I always could, and I hope always ſhall be ready to meet it with calmneſs and perfect reſignation: but I believe the healthieſt and ſtouteſt at that time had probably the greateſt apprehenſions; and I have ſince heard it from many of thoſe, that they expected all to have periſhed, had we been ſo little as three weeks longer at ſea; and I much queſtion whether they were not right in that imagination.

On the 26th, at five in the morning, we ſaw three other iſlands, bearing from S. E. by S. to N. E. the middlemoſt of the three, which was the largeſt, due E.

The 27th, at three in the afternoon, being got pretty near the ſhore of the middlemoſt iſland, we ſent our cutter and pinnace in ſhore for diſcovery. At four the pinnace came off, and brought with her an Indian paroo, with a Spaniard and four Indians, whom they took in her. They likewiſe told us, that they had in-ſhore a ſmall bark of about 16 tons, and between 20 and 30 more people on the iſland, all of whom had been ſent there from Guam to kill cattle and hogs, and make jerked beef, and cocoa-nut-oil, &c. for the Spaniſh garriſon there; and that there are conſtantly people ſent on that account, who, after ſome months ſtay at that place, are relieved by freſh parties for the ſame purpoſe. We ſecured both bark and paroo, together with all the Indians who fell into our hands, to hinder their carrying intelligence of us to the Spandiards at Guam. One of thoſe Indians was a carpenter by trade, and his father was one of the principal builders at Manilla. This young man, having been ill uſed by the Governor at Guam, voluntarily entered with us, and became one of our carpenter's crew, and proved a very uſeful handy fellow.

The Spaniard being examined as to the ſtate of the iſland we were now approaching, the account he gave ſurprized even our moſt ſanguine hopes; and, though uninhabited, he ſaid, it wanted none of thoſe accommodations with which the beſt cultivated countries are furniſhed. On muſtering up our whole force, as we drew near, all the hands we could collect capable of any kind of duty, even on the moſt preſſing occaſions, amounted to no more than 71 men, officers included. This number, inconſiderable as it may ſeem, were all of the united crews of the Centurion, Glouceſter, and Trial, that could move without being aſſiſted, notwithſtanding that, when we left England, they conſiſted of near 1000 men.

When we had entered the road, our firſt buſineſs, after furling the ſails and ſecuring the ſhip, was to provide an hoſpital on ſhore for the ſick; but the officer and ſeamen who were ſent upon this ſervice, returned joyfully, and acquainted us, that the Indians on ſhore had ſaved them that trouble, and had provided for us better than we could have done for ourſelves; for, having erected a number of little cabbins for their accommodation during their reſidence on the iſland, and one in particular, which they made uſe of by way of ſtorehouſe to ſtow their proviſions in, there could be nothing more ſuitably adapted for the reception both of the ſick and the healthy than theſe erections. Accordingly, we inſtantly began ſending aſhore as many of the ſick as could poſſibly be conveyed, among which number I myſelf was one; I ſay, as many as could poſſibly be conveyed; for we were all ſo extremely feeble and helpleſs, that we were no otherwiſe to be landed than by being carried in our hammocks, both in and out of the boats, on mens ſhoulders, in which ſervice both the Commodore himſelf and his officers very humanely aſſiſted; and, indeed, they were almoſt the only perſons on board capable of performing it; the healthieſt ſeamen being ſo much enfeebled, that they had but juſt ſtrength enough left to help themſelves.

The next day, being the 29th, the remainder of the ſick were brought on ſhore, of whom 21 ſoon died; but the greateſt part of the reſt recovered ſurprizingly. As ſoon as I was capable of ſtirring about, I found the iſland to lie in latitude 14 deg. 58 min. N. [Walter ſays 15 deg. 8 min.] and in longitude 223 deg. 35 min. W. from London, being, according to my reckoning, 117 deg. 7 min. W. from Acapulco. [Walter ſays 114 deg. 50 min. And here it is obſervable, how writers of the firſt characters for veracity differ in their accounts of the ſame places, by viſiting them at different periods. The deſcription of this iſland of Tinian by Commodore Byron, who lately viſited it in his voyage round the world, bears no ſimilitude to that we are now about to recite; nor can any one conceive how an interval of only 30 years could occaſion ſo remarkable an alteration in an iſland that had lain uncultivated for many centuries before. But to proceed:]

The ſoil, upon examination, we found to be every where dry and healthy; and being withal ſomewhat ſandy, it was thereby the leſs diſpoſed to a rank and over-luxuriant vegetation: and hence the meadows and woods were nearer and ſmoother than is uſual in hot climates. The vallies and hills were moſt beautifully diverſified by the mutual encroachments of woods and lawns, which ſkirted each other, and traverſed the iſland in large tracts. The woods conſiſted of tall and well-ſpread trees, ſome celebrated for their beauty, and ſome for their fruit; whilſt the lawns were generally crouded with herds of cattle, of which it was not uncommon to ſee thouſands feeding in a herd, and, being all milk-white, it is no wonder that ſuch an appearance excited our longings, and increaſed our impatience, to kill and eat. Add to theſe, the innumerable ſwarms of poultry that crouded the woods, and, by their frequent crowings, gave us in idea the pleaſing apprehenſion of being in the neighbourhood of farms and villages; and we even fancied, that in the covert of the woods we ſhould find ſuch concealed. The cattle we had ſight of were computed at 10,000: and, beſides theſe and the poultry, we likewiſe found abundance of wild hogs, which were excellent food, but fierce, and not eaſily maſtered. At firſt we killed them by ſhooting; but, our ammunition failing, owing to an incident, we at laſt hunted them down with dogs, ſeveral of which joined us on the iſland, and, being trained to the ſport by the Indians, readily enough followed us, and afforded us good diverſion. In their conflicts with the bears, ſome indeed were killed; but thoſe that came off victorious, were ſtill more eager to engage in every new purſuit.

This iſland was no leſs fortunate to us in its vegetable than its animal productions; more particularly abounding in ſuch fruits and plants as were beſt adapted to the cure of that diſeaſe by which we had been ſo dreadfully debilitated. In the woods cocoa nuts were to be gathered without number; and, what is remarkable, cabbages grew on the ſame trees. There were, beſides, guavas, limes, ſweet and ſour oranges, and, what is common to all the Tropical iſlands, bread-fruit. In the plains we found water-melons, dandelion, creeping-purſlain, mint, ſcurvy-graſs, and ſorrel; all which, together with the freſh-meats of the place, were ſuch ſalutary refreſhments, that the ſick, who were at death's-door when they landed, before they had been a week on ſhore, put on very different countenances, and with their new complexions received a freſh recruit of ſpirits.

Amidſt ſuch a variety of proviſions as the land furniſhed, it was thought unneceſſary to indulge ourſelves in thoſe offered us by the ſea. From fiſh, therefore, we wholly refrained; and the rather, as ſome we caught at our firſt arrival ſurfeited thoſe who eat of them. This, however, was not regretted, as beef, pork, poultry, and wild-fowl, were in ſuch plenty, that, except the trouble of bringing them from a conſiderable diſtance ſometimes, there was no difficulty attending their procurement. It were, indeed, an endleſs taſk to recount all the excellencies and delicacies we met with in this delightful iſland: nor is it eaſy to ſay which to prefer where every thing is worthy of admiration; the neatneſs of its lawns, the ſtatelineſs, freſhneſs, and fragrance of its woods, the happy inequality of its ſurface, and the variety and elegance of the views it afforded,—all theſe conſpired to charm the ſight, while at the ſame time the excellency of its productions could not fail to gratify the appetite. And theſe advantages were greatly enhanced by the healthineſs of the climate, by the almoſt conſtant cool breezes that prevailed, and by the frequent gentle ſhowers that ſeemed to fall juſt to refreſh the earth, and add to its fertility; for theſe, inſtead of the long-continued rains that in other countries fill the air with noxious vapours, and overflow the earth with waſteful inundations, ſeemed juſt enough to purify the air, and to refreſh the ſoil; which was obſervable enough by the effect it had in increaſing our appetites, and promoting our digeſtion. This effect was, indeed, remarkable, ſince thoſe amongſt our officers, who were at all other times ſpare and temperate eaters, were here in appearance transformed into gluttons; for inſtead of one reaſonable fleſh-meal a day, they were ſcarcely ſatisfied with three; and yet our digeſtion ſo well correſponded to the keenneſs of our appetites, that we were neither diſordered nor even loaded by this uncommon repletion; for, after having made a large beef breakfaſt, it was not long before we began to conſider the approach of dinner as a very deſireable, and even ſomewhat tardy event.

The principal inconveniences that attended our reſidence upon this iſland aroſe from the vaſt number of muſketos and other troubleſome flies, by which we were perpetually teazed; there was likewiſe a venomous little inſect, that, like the ſheep-ticks in England, would bury its head in the ſkin, and, if not inſtantly removed, would cauſe an inflammation.

Running water there was none in the iſland; but that defect was ſupplied by a large lake, or lagoon, almoſt in the center of it, to which the cattle, in times of drought, generally reſorted; but the freſhneſs of their paſture, and the copious dews and gentle ſhowers that often moiſtened it, rendered that reſource almoſt unneceſſary. There were, beſides, ſprings of excellent water, and near the ſurface wells might every where be dug, whoſe waters, in any other place would not have been complained of.

But the great danger we had to dread remains to be told. During four months in the year, that is, from the middle of June to the middle of October, when the weſtern monſoons prevail, the winds, about the full and change of the moon, are variable, and blow with ſuch fury, that the ſtouteſt cables afford no ſecurity to ſhips riding at anchor in the road: and what adds to the danger is the rapidity of the tide, which ſets to the S. E. and occaſions ſuch a hollow and over-grown ſea as is not to be conceived; inſomuch that, though we were in a ſixty-gun ſhip, we were under the dreadful apprehenſion of being pooped by it. During the reſt of the year the weather is conſtantly ſettled, and ſhips have nothing to fear, if their cables are well armed, which otherwiſe will ſuffer from the foulneſs of the ground.

From the 29th of Auguſt, when our ſick were all put on ſhore, on the 12th of September, when the Commodore himſelf landed, thoſe who remained on board were chiefly employed in mooring and ſecuring the ſhip, in ſhifting her guns to come at her leaks, and in cackling the cables, to prevent their being galled by the friction againſt the rocky bottom. At the ſame time an anchor and cable were put on board the Spaniſh bark, her own being only a heavy log of wood, and a rope made of baſs; and ſome barrels of powder to be dried and recovered, which by long keeping was become moiſt.

From the 12th to the 18th, the hands were continually ſhifting, thoſe who were ſo well recovered as to be capable of duty were ſent on board, and thoſe who had borne the burden of the labour were relieved and ſent on ſhore.

On the 19th, the weather began to alter, and to threaten a ſtorm: on that day, the next, and the 21ſt, it blew hard: however, we rode it out, and flattered ourſelves that the prudence of our meaſures had ſecured us from accidents. On the 22d, the hurricane came on, and our only hope of ſafety ſeemed to depend on our putting out to ſea; but the Commodore was on ſhore, and all communication with the land abſolutely cut off. At five in the afternoon, the ſmall bower parted, and the ſhip ſprung off to the beſt bower. As night approached, the violence of the ſtorm increaſed; yet, notwithſtanding its inexpreſſible fury, the rapidity of the tide was ſuch as to prevail over it, and to force the ſhip before it, as it were, in deſpight of its utmoſt rage. It was now that the ſea broke all round us in a moſt tremendous manner; and that a large tumbling ſwell threatened to ingulph us in its boſom: the long-boat, which was moored a-ſtern, was on a ſudden canted ſo high that it broke the tranſum of the Commodore's gallery, and would, doubtleſs, have riſen as high as the tafferel, had it not been for the ſtroke, which ſtove the boat to pieces; but yet the poor boat-keeper, though much bruiſed, was ſaved almoſt by miracle. About eight, the tide ſlackened; but, the wind not abating, the beſt bower cable, by which alone we rode, parted at eleven. In this extremity, Mr. Saumarez, our firſt lieutenant, who commanded in the abſence of the Commodore, ordered guns to be fired, and lights to be ſhewn, as ſignals of diſtreſs; and, in a ſhort time after, the night being exceſſively dark, the ſtorm raging, the thunder roaring, and nothing to be ſeen but the blue lightning flaſhing through the rain, we were driven to ſea, and by this cataſtrophe, the whole crew, both by ſea and land, reduced to a ſtate of deſpair; thoſe on ſhore concluding they had now no means left them ever to get home; whilſt thoſe on board, being utterly unprepared to ſtruggle with the fury of ſuch ſeas and winds, expected each moment to be their laſt. In this ſtate of deſpondency, while thoſe on board were every moment in expectation of being daſhed againſt the rocks of Aiguigan, an iſland at about three leagues from Tinian, thoſe on ſhore were perſuaded the ſhip could not ſurvive the ſtorm, the whole channel between the two iſlands appearing from the land like one continued breach, the ſea ſwelling, breaking, and roaring, like mountains rolling over mountains, and forming the moſt awful and terrifying ſight that the mind of man can poſſibly conceive. Indeed, the condition of thoſe on board was truly pitiable; they were in a leaky ſhip, with three cables in their hawſes, to one of which hung their only remaining anchor; they had not a gun on board laſhed; nor a port barred in; their ſhrouds were looſe; and their fore-top-maſt unrigged; and they had ſtruck their fore and main yards down before the hurricane came on, ſo that there was no ſail they could ſet except the mizzen: to add to their misfortunes, they were no ſooner at ſea, than, by the labouring of the ſhip, whole floods of water ruſhed in through the hawſe-holes, ports, and ſcuppers; which, with the uſual leakage, kept the pumps conſtantly at work. Perſuaded that their deſtruction was inevitable, ſinking, however, was only their ſecondary concern; they judged, by the driving of the ſhip, that they were making towards the land, and that, in the darkneſs of the night, they ſhould no otherwiſe perceive it than by ſtriking upon it; but day-light relieved them from their uneaſy apprehenſions, and ſhewed them that the iſland they ſo much dreaded was at a conſiderable diſtance, and that a ſtrong northern current had proved the means of their preſervation. It was not, however, till after three days that the turbulent weather that had driven them from Tinian began to abate; when every man in the ſhip was ſo worn out with fatigue, that they found it impoſſible to man the pumps, and hand the ſails at the ſame time. They had twice attempted to heave up the main and fore-yards, in which they had as often miſcarried by the breaking of the jeers, and in the laſt effort one of their beſt men periſhed. During all this time the ſhip was driving to leeward, and dragging her ſheet anchor, the only one ſhe had left, with two cables an end at her bows. This was a circumſtance of the greateſt conſequence, and required a ſpeedy remedy; for though upon a third exertion of their whole force, they had replaced their yards, they durſt not, while the anchor continued in that ſituation, venture to ſpread their canvas. Some reſt and refreſhment became neceſſary before a work of ſuch labour could be propoſed to a feeble and diminiſhed crew, who hardly conſiſted of 100 men. It was, therefore, five days after their departure before they could ſecure their anchor; and now they ſet their courſes, and, for the firſt time, ſtood to the eaſtward, in hopes of ſoon regaining the iſland, and rejoining their Commander and the reſt of their company: but in this they were unhappily diſappointed; for having run, as they thought, the diſtance neceſſary for making the iſland, and being in full expectation of ſeeing it, they found themſelves bewildered by the irregularity of the currents, and knew not what courſe to ſteer, till, after ſeveral days uncertainty, they came at laſt in ſight of Guam, from whence they directed their courſe with infinite labour to Tinian, the wind being conſtantly againſt them, and the tide variable. This ſevere employment held till the 11th of October, when, after nineteen days abſence, they appeared again in the offing, and were reinforced from the ſhore, to the inexpreſſible joy of the whole crew.

A few days after the ſhip was driven off, ſome of the people on ſhore cried out, A ſail! and this ſpread a general joy, ſuppoſing it to be the Centurion returning; but preſently a ſecond ſail was deſcried, which wholly deſtroyed the firſt conjecture, and made it difficult to gueſs who they were. The Commodore turning his glaſs towards them, ſaw they were two boats; and inſtantly concluding that the Centurion was gone to the bottom, and that thoſe were her boats returning with the remains of her people, this ſudden ſuggeſtion wrought ſo powerfully upon him, that to conceal his emotion, he was obliged to retire to his tent, where he paſt ſome bitter moments in the firm perſuaſion that all his hopes were now at an end, and that, inſtead of diſtreſſing the enemy, he muſt himſelf with his people fall a prey to their relentleſs cruelty. He was, however, ſoon relieved from this mortifying thought, they appearing, upon their nearer approach, to be Indian proas directing their courſe towards the bay, with a view, as was ſuppoſed, to relieve their countrymen, or to take on board their proviſions. On this intelligence, the Commodore ordered his people to conceal themſelves; but the proas, after advancing within a quarter of a mile of the ſhore, lay by for the ſpace of a few hours, and probably obſerving ſome change in the appearance of the place, which might raiſe their ſuſpicion that an enemy lay in ambuſh, they got again under ſail, and ſteered to the ſouthward.

After this incident an opinion began generally to prevail, that the Centurion would never more appear at this iſland; and that ſhe was either loſt, or forced upon the coaſt of China, from whence, in her crazy condition, it would be impoſſible for her ever to return. Though the Commodore did not apparently give into this opinion, yet he was not without his fears; and, therefore, to provide againſt the worſt, he propoſed cutting aſunder the Indian bark which they took on their firſt arrival, and lengthening her in ſuch a manner as to be capable of taking on board all who were then upon the iſland, and following the ſhip if paradventure ſhe ſhould be driven to Mocao. After ſome heſitation, owing to the difficulty attending the execution, the men were at length prevailed upon to engage in the work, and the Commodore by his example encouraged their diligence; for, being always at work by day-break himſelf, it was thought a diſgrace to be idle when their Chief was employed. It fortunately happened, that the carpenters both of the Glouceſter and Trial were on ſhore, and that they had brought for ſafety their cheſts of tools with them. The ſmith, too, was on ſhore with his forge, but his bellows was ſtill in the ſhip. This defect occaſioned ſome delay; but was ſoon ſupplied by the ingenuity of his ſhipmates, one or other of them never being at a loſs for expedients on ſuch occaſions; they limed a freſh hide for leather, the carpenters ſhaped out a wooden frame, and a gun barrel ſerved for a nozel. The ſmith being now in readineſs to prepare the iron-work, ſome were employed in cutting down trees, and ſawing them into plank, whilſt the main-body were buſied in digging out a draw-dock to receive the bark, and in laying of ways to heave her up and down. All, in ſhort, were variouſly employed; and the work went on ſucceſsfully for 16 days, in which time the bark was ſawn aſunder, her two parts ſeparated, and placed at the proper diſtance from each other; and, the materials being all in readineſs before-hand, they proceeded with no ſmall diſpatch in the enlargement, inſomuch that they fixed the 5th of November as the day when they ſhould be ready to depart. The alacrity with which this buſineſs was carried on, left no room for reflection among the common ſailors, though their ſuperiors were not without their fears. They had no ſea-proviſions, except ſome jerked beef, which the Indians had prepared and abandoned when they fled, and they had a run of 600 leagues before they could preſume upon a ſupply; they had no bread, and the bread-fruit on the iſland could not be preſerved at ſea; they wanted ſalt; and, what was ſtill a more neceſſary article in their preſent ſituation, they wanted ammunition for their defence, in caſe of an attack from the enemy; for, upon the ſtricteſt ſearch, no more than 90 charges of powder could be collected, which was ſhort of one round a-piece for each of the company; they were, too, in an unknown ſea, and wanted inſtruments to direct their courſe: in ſhort, though the common men had no other thought but how they ſhould get on board, the officers foreſaw a thouſand difficulties, which were almoſt inſurmountable to human apprehenſion, but which they carefully concealed, that the main buſineſs might not be retarded.

But, in the midſt of theſe gloomy apprehenſions, which, the nearer the time of their departure approached, ſtill became the more ſerious, and when all hope of ſeeing the Centurion at Tinian had ſubſided, one of the Glouceſter's men, being upon a hill at a diſtance looking out for cattle, perceived, as he fancied, ſomething like a ſhip in the clouds, which, on ſteadily obſerving it, ſeemed to move ſlowly towards the land. It was not long before he was ſenſible of its approach, and perſuading himſelf it was the Centurion, he in an extaſy ran towards the landing-place, crying to his comrades, The ſhip! The ſhip! This being heard by the neareſt, was echoed from mouth to mouth till it reached the ſpot where the Commodore was at work, who, on hearing the joyful news, threw down his axe, and joined in the general tranſport. In a few hours the Centurion appeared in the offing, and a boat with 18 men was ſent off to reinforce her, and to carry freſh meats, fruits, and refreſhments, for the crew. In the afternoon of the 11th of October ſhe happily caſt anchor, the Commodore went inſtantly aboard, and the joy and congratulations on that occaſion were equally ſincere and mutual.

The labour of the artificers was now at an end, and another kind of employment ſucceeded, which was that of laying in water for the remainder of the voyage. Now alſo hunting, ſhooting, ſetting and every device that could be contrived to catch live cattle, hogs, and poultry for ſtores, took place; while, at the ſame time, the Commodore and officers amuſed themſelves with traverſing the iſland, and examining more minutely its ſeveral parts. In one of theſe excurſions, being on a riſing ground, they obſerved, in a valley beneath them, the appearance of a ſmall thicket, which, by attending to it, ſeemed to have a progreſſive motion, as indeed it had; but was no other than a parcel of cocoa-buſhes trailed upon the ground by perſons concealed beneath them. From this uncommon circumſtance, it was immediately concluded, that the Indians, whoſe boat they had ſurprized upon their firſt arrival, muſt be the perſons who were dragging the buſhes, and that it could not be far to the place of their concealment; they therefore kept their eye upon them, and traced them to their cell; but, to their ſurprize, when they came to enter it, they found it abandoned, though all things were ready prepared for dinner, and ſtood ſmoaking hot on a table of turf. The officers, having in vain endeavoured to track them, returned, and, with an appetite increaſed by the keenneſs of the purſuit, ſat down to that meal which the poor hungry ſavages had abandoned. It conſiſted of ſalted ſpareribs, cocoa-nuts, and bread-fruit; all which they found ready dreſt, and in quantity as much as they all could eat.

On the third day after the ſecond arrival of the ſhip, the Commodore being on board, a ſudden guſt of wind aroſe, and again brought home our anchor, and drove us out to ſea. Our chief officers were now all on board; and only about 70 of our men, with a midſhipman or two to command them, were employed on ſhore in filling water and catching cattle. Of theſe about 30 came off to us in the cutter, and the eighteen-oared barge was ſent for the reſt; but they not being in readineſs, and the ſhip quickly driving out of ſight, it was no longer in their power to join us. However, as the weather ſoon proved favourable, and we were now ſtronger and healthier than at our firſt diſaſter, in about five days we regained the road, and anchored ſafe in our former ſtation. On our return we found the Spaniſh bark reſtored to her old dimenſions, and the parts brought together, and in good forwardneſs to be compleated; for the few remaining people, deſpairing of the return of the ſhip, had determined to follow her to her deſtined port. We now laboured indefatigably to get in our water, in order to ſail, in which ſervice two of our men employed in the well unfortunately periſhed; for the ſides of the well being looſe earth, by the careleſſneſs of thoſe above, in not properly attending the filling, the bank gave way by the weight of a heavy caſk, and both that and the bank fell in upon them together. Some other misfortunes happened through haſte in rafting the caſks to the ſhip; yet, notwithſtanding, being ſuch as are generally accounted trifling on board a man of war, our watering went on ſo ſucceſsfully, that by the 20th of October, it was compleated; and on that day leave was given for a man from each meſs to go aſhore, and gather as many oranges, lemons, cocoa-nuts, and other fruits of the iſland, as ſhould be ſufficient for us all while at ſea. This being accompliſhed, the Spaniſh bark ſet on fire, the men returned on board, and the boats hoiſted in, on the 21ſt we ſet ſail; and the wind being fair, and the weather moderate, nothing remarkable happened till we arrived on the coaſts of China, except that while we were paſſing by the rocks of Vele Rete, near the ſouth end of the iſland Formoſa, we were alarmed by a cry of fire on the forecaſtle, which brought the whole crew together in the utmoſt confuſion, ſo that it was difficult for ſome time to reduce them to order; but, as ſoon as diſcipline took place, and a proper examination could be made, it was found to proceed from the furnace, where the bricks, being over-heated, had begun to communicate the fire to the wood-work, which, had it not been timely diſcovered, might have been of the moſt dreadful conſequence; but, as it fell out, it was extinguiſhed with the greateſt facility, and the brick-work ſo ſecured, that no accident of the like kind could again happen.

From the iſland of Formoſa we directed our courſe ſo as to fall in with the coaſt of China, to the eaſtward of Pedro Blanco, as that rock is generally eſteemed the beſt direction for ſhips bound to Mocao; and, on the 6th of November we fell in with it, when we were preſently ſurrounded by an incredible number of fiſhing-boats, which covered the ſurface of the ſea as far as the eye could reach. Nor was this ſwarm of fiſhing veſſels peculiar to that place; for, as we ran on to the weſtward, we found them as abundant on every other part of the coaſt. From among theſe we had no ſort of doubt of procuring a pilot to Mocao; but, when we thought ourſelves near it, though we tempted them with ſhewing them bags of Spaniſh dollars, for which, it is ſaid, a Chineſe would ſell his father, yet not one of them would venture to come on board us, nor give us the leaſt intelligence; neither did our ſhip, the like of which, ſo armed and fitted, had never before appeared upon their coaſts, ſeem to excite in them any curioſity: they continued their fiſhing with the ſame apparent indifference as if any trading ſhip had been paſſing by; and, when we made them ſignals, they diſregarded them as much, though they certainly underſtood them, as if we had been only in ſport. The next day, however, about two in the afternoon, as we were ſtanding to the weſtward within two leagues of the ſhore, ſtill ſurrounded as before, we obſerved that a boat a-head of us waved a red flag, and blew a horn. This we apprehended was a ſignal for us, and accordingly we hoiſted out our cutter, and ſent to know the meaning of it; when we preſently diſcovered our miſtake, and that it was only the uſual notice to leave off fiſhing, which the whole fleet inſtantly obeyed. Being thus diſappointed, we kept on our cruiſe till we came to a group of iſlands, round the weſternmoſt of which we were directed to paſs, and then to haul up. While we were thus employed, a Chineſe pilot came on board, and in broken Portugueſe undertook to pilot us into harbour for 30 dollars, and on the 12th of November anchored us ſafe in Mocao-road; where the firſt thing we did was to ſalute the fort, and to ſend to the Portugueſe Governor to adviſe with his Excellency in what manner to behave to avoid giving offence to the Chineſe. The difficulty the Commodore principally apprehended related to the port charges uſually paid by ſhips in the river Canton, from which charges men-of-war are exempted in every port of Europe, and which the Commodore was determined not to be forced to pay in this. In the evening the boat returned with two officers, who delivered it as the Governor's opinion, that, if the Centurion ventured into the river of Canton, the duty would moſt certainly be expected; and, therefore, if the Commodore approved of it, he would ſend a pilot to conduct the ſhip into another harbour, called the Typa, where it was probable the port charges would never be demanded. To this propoſal the Commodore agreed, the pilot was ſent, and the ſhip ſafely moored.

Next day the Commodore paid a viſit in perſon to the Governor, to ſolicit a ſupply of proviſions, and of naval ſtores to refit the ſhip. The Governor very frankly acquainted the Commodore, that he durſt not openly furniſh either the one or the other; for that he himſelf neither received proviſions for his garriſon but from day to day, by permiſſion from the Chineſe government, nor any thing elſe but what his preſent neceſſities required: however, he aſſured the Commodore in a friendly manner, that he would give him all the aſſiſtance in his power. On this declaration, the Commodore determined to go to Canton himſelf, to procure a licence from the Viceroy to purchaſe a ſupply, and, with this view, hired a Chineſe boat for himſelf and his attendants to carry them into port: but juſt as they were ready to embark, the Hoppo refuſed to grant them a permit; nor would he, notwithſtanding all the intereſt the Commodore could make, withdraw the prohibition, till he was threatened to be compelled to it by force. This operated when fair means had failed; a permit was next day ſent on board, and the Commodore proceeded to the Engliſh factory to conſult with the principal officers there about the cautions that were to be uſed, leſt the factory ſhould ſuffer by violent meaſures, which he was ſolicitous to avoid. They adviſed him to tranſact the buſineſs by the mediation of the Chineſe merchants, who at firſt undertook to accompliſh it; but, after trifling with him more than a month, they declared they durſt not interfere in it. The merchants then undertook to procure him proviſions clandeſtinely; but that would not ſuffice. Upon his return, he found the ſhip ſo much out of repair, that ſhe could not proceed without being hove down; he, therefore, next day wrote a letter to the Viceroy, acquainting him, that he was Commodore of a ſquadron of his Britannic Majeſty's ſhips that had been cruiſing in the South Seas againſt the Spaniards, who were at war with his nation; that his ſhip was leaky; that his people were in want of proviſions; that he had put into Mocao, a friendly port, for a ſupply, but that, being a ſtranger to the cuſtoms of the country, he had been unable to ſucceed; and, therefore, requeſted, that he might be permitted to employ workmen to repair his ſhip, and that he might be ſupplied with proviſions at the accuſtomed rates at which the articles he ſtood in need of were generally ſold. Another difficulty was now ſtarted as to the delivery of this letter, the Hoppo at firſt refuſing to intermeddle with it; but, on the Commodore's expreſſing ſome reſentment, and threatening to convey it to Canton by his own meſſengers, he at length undertook not only to deliver it, but to procure an anſwer: accordingly, though the letter was only dated on the 17th of December, on the 19th a Mandarine of the firſt rank, together with two others of an inferior claſs, and their attendants, having in their retinue 18 half gallies, decorated with ſtreamers, and furniſhed with bands of muſick, came to a grapple a-head of the Centurion, whence the Mandarine ſent in form to acquaint the Commodore, that he came by order of the Viceroy to examine the condition of the ſhip, and to report the ſame as it ſhould appear to him upon a juſt ſurvey. On this meſſage, preparations were inſtantly made to receive him; in particular, a hundred of the moſt ſightly men on board, uniformly dreſſed in the regimentals of the marines, were drawn up under arms on the main-deck againſt his arrival. When he entered the ſhip, he was ſaluted by the drums and military muſic, and conducted by ſome of the principal officers to the quarter-deck, where he was received in ſtate by the Commodore, and then introduced to the great cabin, where he explained his commiſſion, and preſented the perſons he had brought with him to take the ſurvey. The Mandarine appeared to be a perſon of ſuperior abilities, and endowed with a frankneſs and honeſty not uſually to be met with among the ordinary ranks of Chineſe officers; and, being an eye-witneſs of the dangerous ſtate of the leaks, and of the neceſſity there was for a thorough repair, he expreſſed his entire acquieſcence in the report that had been given, and promiſed to lay the ſame immediately before the council upon his return. He was exceeding curious in inſpecting the ſhip, in examining her guns, and poiſing her great ſhot. He expreſt his aſtoniſhment at her ſtrength and her magnitude; and the Commodore, to increaſe his wonder, and ſhew his own power, let him know how eaſy it would be for him to deſtroy the whole navigable force of China, and lay the city of Canton in ruins; but, nevertheleſs, he aſſured him, that not the leaſt violence ſhould be offered, provided his wants were ſupplied upon reaſonable terms.

At the ſame time the Commodore complained of the behaviour of the officers at Mocao, who had prohibited the country people from ſelling proviſions to his company, though they had paid for what they purchaſed in ſterling ſilver. The Mandarine heard the complaint without emotion, but ſaid it ſhould be remedied for the future. After the buſineſs was over, dinner was ordered, and the Commodore apologiſed for the meanneſs of the fare from the difficulty he had to procure better: but the two inferior Mandarines, who were the only perſons of their retinue permitted to ſit at table with them, ſhewed no diſlike to any thing ſet before them, except the beef, to which they have the ſame diſlike as the Jews have to pork, from an early prejudice derived from their anceſtors; of this the Commodore was not apprized, nor were they offended at its being ſet before them. They were, indeed, very aukward at the uſe of knives and forks, and it was found neceſſary to introduce their own ſervants to carve for them, before they could make an end of their dinners. But if they were deficient in their manner of eating, they were no novices in putting about the glaſſes; for there was not an officer at table that durſt engage with them. Seeing they were fond of Frontiniac, and that they preſently emptied four or five bottles of it without any effect, the Commodore ordered a bottle of Citron water to be brought up, which, on taſting, they liked, and, the Commodore excuſing himſelf on account of an illneſs he had not yet recovered, they clapped a ruddy-faced officer on the ſhoulder, and deſired him to pledge them, ſaying, by their interpreter, they were ſure he could not plead illneſs for declining his glaſs. When the bottle was out, they all roſe from table, without appearing to be in the leaſt diſordered, and, after the uſual ceremonies, departed, very well pleaſed with their entertainment.

The Commodore now impatiently expected the licence he had requeſted; but it was ſeveral days before it paſſed the neceſſary forms, chiefly owing to the intrigues of a Frenchman, who, having the advantage of ſpeaking the language fluently, was at no loſs in traverſing the meaſures of the friendly Mandarine in favour of Mr. Anſon; but a repetition of the threats already referred to, produced, at laſt, the deſired effect. On the 6th of January, the licence was received, and the carpenters were ſet to work; but, previous to this, the prohibition was taken off, and proviſions were every day brought to the ſhip in plenty.

It was, however, the beginning of April before the repairs could be compleated, and the Chineſe began to be very uneaſy at their long ſtay. They had frequently ſent meſſages to the Commodore to haſten his departure, not knowing or believing that he was no leſs in earneſt to be gone, than they were to be freed from the dread of his ſtay. At length, on the 3d of April, two Mandarines came on board from Mocao, with a peremptory command addreſſed to the Commodore, requiring him to depart; to which he made anſwer, in a determined tone, that he would go when he thought proper, and not when they preſumed to command him. After this rebuke, however, all communication was forbidden, and no more proviſions were ſuffered to go on board; and ſo ſtrictly were thoſe injunctions carried into execution, that from thenceforwards nothing could be purchaſed at any rate whatever. On the 6th of April, the Centurion weighed, and warped to the ſouthward; and, by the 15th, ſhe was ſafe in Mocao road, having compleated her water as ſhe paſſed along. On the 19th, ſhe again weighed anchor, and put to ſea.

But long before this, that is, ſome time in November, Captain Saunders, Commander of the Tryal's prize, took paſſage on board a Swediſh ſhip with diſpatches from the Commodore to the government. And ſoon after, that is, about the middle of December, Captain Mitchell, Colonel Crackerode, Mr. Taſwell, with his nephew Mr. Charles Herriott, and the Rev. Mr. Walter, embarked on board the company's ſhips on their return home. About this time we received the firſt news of the ſafe arrival of the Severn and Pearl (the two ſhips of our ſquadron that parted from us in doubling Cape Horn) at Rio Janeiro, on the coaſt of Brazil. The Severn had been remarkable for the extraordinary ſickneſs that had been more fatal on board her than on board of any other in the whole ſquadron, inſomuch that her hands had been twice recruited from the Centurion during her voyage to the ſtraits of Le Maire; and yet when ſhe parted company ſhe wanted hands to navigate her in a ſtorm, which was the reaſon of her return. It was from the knowledge of this uncommon mortality that prevailed among the crew, that the Commodore concluded the Severn to be loſt. The news, therefore, of her and the Pearl's ſafety was received with the greater pleaſure, as we had long entertained an opinion that both of them had periſhed. But to return from this digreſſion:

From the 1ſt to the 15th of April, we had ſtormy weather, with heavy rains and ſuch amazing and terrifying claps of thunder and flaſhes of lightning as nothing of the kind I had ever ſeen or heard bore any proportion to. This was upon the breaking-up of the eaſterly monſoon, when ſuch ſtorms are uſual in the country, accompanied ſometimes with dreadful guſts of wind, called here by the name of Tuffoons, of the effects of which the Chineſe relate very wonderful ſtories.

While we were warping out of the harbour, the Commodore went on ſhore to Mocao, to take leave of the Portugueſe Governor, who had, to the utmoſt of his power, behaved in a very friendly manner; and, at his coming from the fort, he was ſaluted with 15 guns.

During our ſtay we had entered about 20 freſh hands, being chiefly Laſcars, Perſians, and Dutchmen; ſo that our whole complement, when we ſailed, amounted to 224 men and boys, among whom were ſome of all nations, languages, and religions.

Being now at ſea, we were ſome time in a ſtate of uncertainty what courſe the Commodore intended to ſteer. He gave out at Mocao, that he was bound to Batavia, and thence to England; but his real deſign was very different. The project the Commodore had reſolved upon in his own mind, was, to cruiſe for the annual ſhip from Acapulco to Manilla; and, not diſcouraged by his former diſaſters, he determined again to riſque the caſualties of the Pacific Ocean, and to take his ſtation off Cape Spirito Santo on the iſland of Jamal, being the firſt land the Acapulco ſhips always make in approaching the Philippines.

Being now at ſea, it was no longer neceſſary to conceal this project; he therefore ſummoned all his people on the quarter-deck, and in a ſhort but ſpirited ſpeech, informed them of his deſign; which was received by them with the moſt expreſſive tokens of general approbation; and ſuch a confidence of ſucceeding diffuſed itſelf through all the ſhip's company, that the Commodore, who had taken ſome Chineſe ſheep to ſea with him for his own proviſion, enquiring one day of his butcher, why he had lately ſeen no mutton at his table? the man replied drily, that in truth there were only two ſheep left, and theſe, with his honour's leave, he propoſed to reſerve for the entertainment of the General of the galleons.

When the Centurion left the port of Mocao, ſhe ſtood for ſome days to the weſtward; and, on the firſt of May, paſſed the iſland of Formoſa; and, ſteering to the ſouthward, on the 4th in the evening they came in ſight of the Baſhee Iſlands, which they ſuſpected to be wrong laid down by Dampier, and from obſervation found them 25 leagues too far to the weſtward. On the 20th of May, they came in ſight of Eſpirito Santo. As it was known there were centinels placed upon the Cape to make ſignals to the Acapulco ſhips, the Commodore immediately tacked, and ordered the top-gallant-ſails to be taken in, to prevent a diſcovery; and this being the ſtation in which he propoſed to cruiſe, he fixed the limits between the latitude of 12 deg. 50 min. N. and 13 deg. 5 min. the Cape itſelf lying in 12 deg. 40 min. N. and in 4 deg. of eaſt longitude from Pſotel Tobago Xima. It was now the time when the Manilla ſhip was every hour expected; for they ſeldom or never fail of making land in the month of June, and ſometimes ſooner, and it was now the laſt day of May, according to their ſtile, when the Commodore took his ſtation.

It were tedious to entertain the reader with the various conjectures, ſurmiſes, doubts, and anxieties, that agitated the minds of the people on board, from the day they came in ſight of the Cape till the day that Mr. Charles Proby, a midſhipman, called out from the maſt-head, A ſail! This was on the 20th of June, juſt one month after their arrival at the Cape. There did not remain a doubt but that it was one of the galleons (for two were expected this year, as none had been permitted to ſail the year preceding); and the Commodore accordingly ſtood towards her. At half after ſeven in the morning, they could ſee her from the deck, at which time ſhe fired a gun to leeward, and took in her top-gallant-ſails, as a ſignal, as it was then ſuppoſed, to her conſort; but in reality, as a ſignal to her own people to prepare for action. The Commodore was ſurprized to ſee her ſteadily purſue her courſe, and was now in no fear of loſing ſight of her, as at noon he could fetch her wake. Her conſort not appearing, it was concluded they had parted company; and it now became viſible, that the galleon did not intend to fly, but to fight. Every preparation had been previouſly made on board the Centurion, and all hands properly inſtructed; ſo that every man on board repaired to his poſt with as much regularity and unconcern as if preparing for a review. Thirty of the beſt markſmen lined the tops; two men placed themſelves at a gun to load them; and gangs of ten men each were appointed to go from gun to gun, to run them out, and fire them as faſt as they were loaded. A conſtant running fire was by this means kept up, and no interval allowed for the enemy to ſtand to their guns in ſafety, as is common when whole broadſides are diſcharged at once.

About one in the afternoon, the galleon hauled up her fore-ſail, and brought to under top-ſails, with her head to the northward, hoiſting Spaniſh colours, and having the ſtandard of Spain flying at the top-gallant-maſt-head. About the ſame time the Centurion hoiſted her broad pendant and colours, being within gun-ſhot of the enemy; and the Commodore, ſeeing them clearing their decks of their cattle and lumber, gave orders to fire the chace-guns, to diſturb them in their work. The galleon returned the fire with two of her ſtern-guns, one of which carried away one of our fore-ſhrouds, and our fore-ſtay tackle, which could not have been done by an ordinary ball. The Centurion ſetting her ſprit-ſail fore and aft for boarding, the galleon, out of a bravado, did the ſame. Soon after, the Centurion ſhot a-breaſt of the enemy within piſtol ſhot, and now the engagement became hot. For the firſt half hour the Centurion over-reached the galleon, and lay on her bow, and, by the wideneſs of her ports, could traverſe almoſt all her guns upon the enemy, whilſt the galleon could only bring a part of hers to bear upon the Centurion in return. In the heat of the action, the mats with which the galleon had ſtuffed her netting took fire, and burnt violently, blazing up near as high as the mizzen-top. This accident threw the enemy into the utmoſt terror, and alſo alarmed the Commodore, for fear the galleon ſhould be burnt, and for fear he himſelf might ſuffer by being cloſely grappled by her. Happily, however, that danger was averted, and the fire extinguiſhed, by cutting away the netting, and letting the whole tumble into the ſea. All this while the Commodore kept his firſt advantageous poſition, firing with great regularity and briſkneſs; while at the ſame time the galleon's decks lay open to our top-men, who, having at their firſt volley driven the Spaniards from their tops, made prodigious havock with their ſmall arms, killing or wounding every officer but one that appeared upon the quarter-deck, and wounding in particular the General of the galleon himſelf. Thus the action continued for more than half an hour; but then the Centurion loſt the ſuperiority of her ſituation, and came cloſe along-ſide of the galleon, when the enemy continued their fire with great activity for near an hour longer; yet, even in this poſition the Commodore's grape-ſhot ſwept their decks ſo effectually, and the number of the dead and wounded became ſo conſiderable, that they began to fall into great confuſion, eſpecially as the General, who was the life of the action, was no longer able to exert himſelf. The diſorder was ſo great, that their officers were ſeen from the Centurion running about to prevent the deſertion of their men from their poſts; but all their endeavours were in vain; for, after having, as a laſt effort, fired five or ſix guns with more judgment than uſual, they yielded up the conteſt; and, the galleon's colours being ſinged off the enſign-ſtaff at the beginning of the engagement, ſhe ſtruck the ſtandard at the main-top-gallant-maſt-head; but even this office would have been at the peril of the man's life, had not the Commodore, obſerving what he was about, given expreſs orders to leave off firing.

The Commodore, when the action was ended, reſolved to make the beſt of his way with his prize to the river Canton, being in the mean time fully employed in ſecuring his priſoners, and in removing the treaſure from on board the galleon into the Centurion. His firſt buſineſs was to commiſſion the ſhip, and put her under the command of proper officers: Lieutenant Saumarez was appointed Captain, and was immediately ordered on board to take poſſeſſion of his charge.

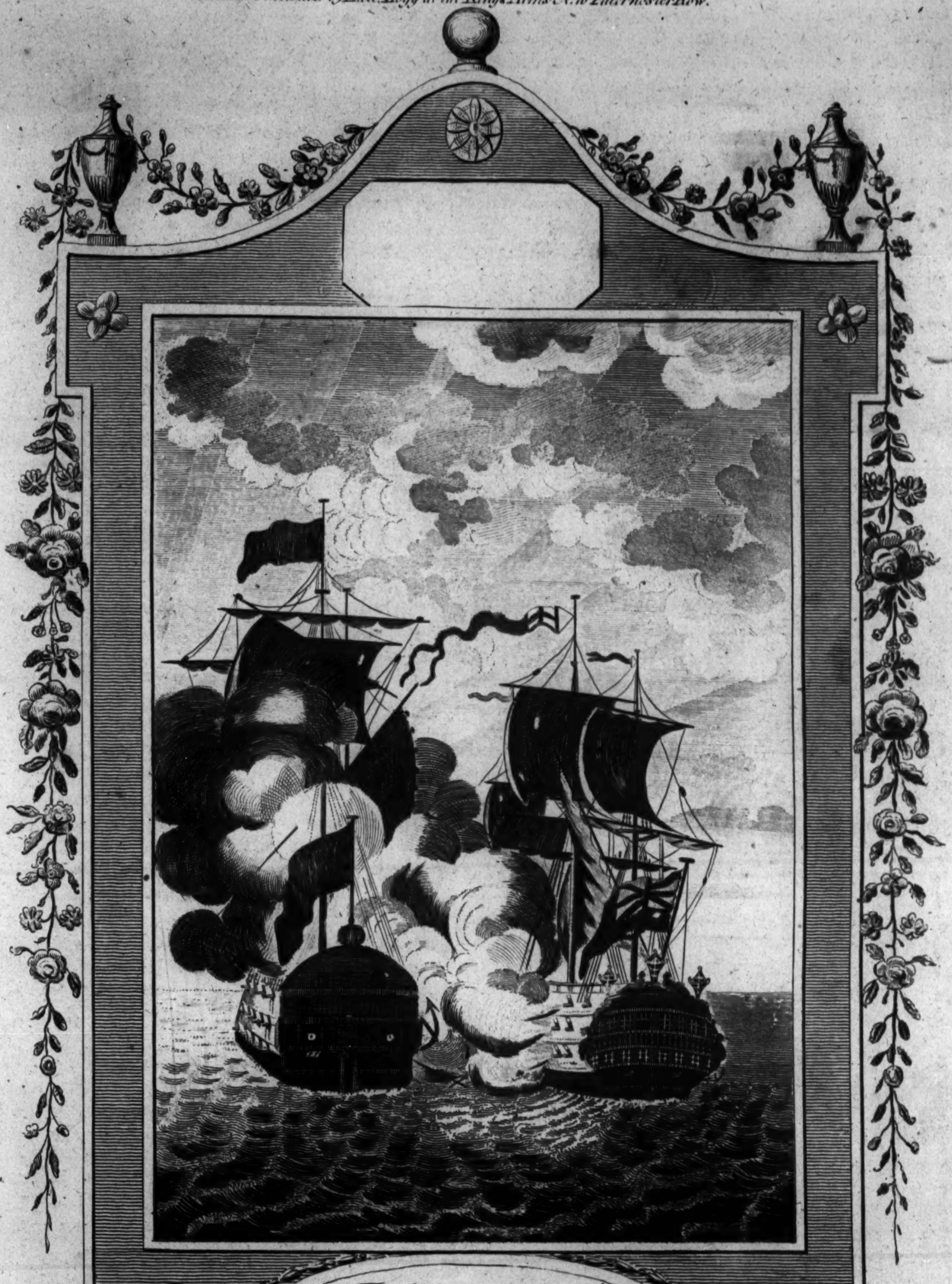
But, juſt as the galleon had ſtruck, the officer who commanded between decks came up, ſeemingly to congratulate the Commodore on his conqueſt, but at the ſame time privately whiſpered to him, that the Centurion was dangerouſly on fire near the powder-room. It ſeems one of the lads called powder-monkies, being heedleſs, a cartridge that he was carrying blew up in his hands; this fired another, and that three of the lower-deck guns on the off ſide of the ſhip, which being happily loaded and laid down for ſervice, and the ports hauled up to vent the ſmoke, they did not occaſion the leaſt miſchief; however, the cartridges and guns together raiſed ſuch a ſmother, that it was at firſt doubtful whether it proceeded from the exploſion, or from a part of the ſhip being on fire. In fact, upon examination, it was found to proceed from both; for, part of a cartridge having fallen between the planks of the ceiling, cloſe aft by the ſcuttle of the Chaplain's cabbin, not only a conſiderable ſmoke iſſued out, but a very ſenſible heat, and, had it not been immediately extinguiſhed, the conſequence would have been dreadful: to be brief, a few pails of water ſeaſonably applied did more than all the water of the ocean could have effected after an hour's delay.

This alarm being thus happily ſubſided, we draughted out 50 of our people (of whom myſelf was one) to board and man the prize. I had heard we had killed them 60 men, and wounded as many more, and expected to have ſeen the horrid ſpectacle of mangled limbs, dead carcaſſes, and decks covered with blood; but no ſuch ſpectacle appeared; a party having been properly ſtationed, during the time of action, to waſh away the blood, and to throw the dead over-board. We found, however, many deſperately wounded, and among them the General, who had received a muſket-ball in his breaſt, and was ſo ill, or pretended to be ſo ill, that it was judged unſafe to move him from his cabbin; but all the other officers, together with the paſſengers of note, were ſent on board the Centurion. Among the latter was an old gentleman, Governor of Guam, who was going to Manilla to renew his commiſſion, and who had ſcarce mounted the Centurion's ſide before he was received with open arms by Mr. Crooden, Captain of marines, who 36 years before, at the battle of Almanza, had been his priſoner, and honourably uſed by him. Theſe two renewed their old acquaintance, and Captain Crooden had a long-wiſhed-for opportunity of returning the favours he had formerly received, and which he gratefully remembered.

The ſhip, upon examination, was found to contain to the value of more than a million and a half of dollars, was called the Nueſtra Signora de Cabadonga, Don Jeronitno de Montero, Commander, by nation a Portugueſe, and accounted the moſt intrepid officer employed in the Spaniſh mercantile ſervice; and, indeed, in my opinion, he was more brave than prudent; for, ſurely, no wiſe man, intruſted with ſuch a cargo, ſix leagues to the windward of a man-of-war purpoſely ſtationed to intercept him, would have borne down upon his enemy, and braved him to his teeth, when, with the advantage of the wind, he might have gone ſafe to port, from whence he was not more than 10 or 12 leagues diſtant, and where he might then have ſet his purſuer at defiance.

His galleon was indeed larger than the man of war, was pierced for 64 guns, but had only 36 mounted, moſt of them 12 pounders, and 17 of them braſs; ſhe

London Published by Alex.r Hogg at the Kings Arms No. 16 Paternoster Row.



The Engagement of the **CENTURION** and **ACAPULCO**, off Cape Espiritu Santo, in which the latter was taken.

BRITISH 7 FE 90 MUSEUM

had, beſides, 28 peteraroes, in her gunwale, quarters, and tops, carrying each a 4lb. ball; and, before the engagement, ſhe muſtered 640 men capable of bearing arms, officers, and paſſengers included. She was, beſides, well furniſhed with ſmall arms, and was particularly provided againſt boarding, both by her cloſe quarters, and by a ſtrong net-work of two-inch rope laced over her waſte, and fortified with half-pikes placed in the manner of cheveaux de frize; but, notwithſtanding all her defences, ſhe had 64 men killed, and 84 wounded, whilſt the Centurion had only two men killed, and a lieutenant and 16 men wounded, all of whom recovered, one man only excepted.

And now the Commodore learnt from ſome of the priſoners, that the other ſhip, which he had kept in the port of Acapulco the year before, inſtead of returning in company with this, as was expected, had ſailed earlier in the ſeaſon than uſual, and was probably got into Manilla before the Centurion ſet ſail from Mocao; ſo that, notwithſtanding our preſent ſucceſs, we had reaſon to regret the loſs of time occaſioned by the delays of the Chineſe, which prevented our taking two rich prizes inſtead of one; though, to ſay the truth, it would not have been an eaſy taſk to diſpoſe of the priſoners, which, even as it fell out, was a matter that gave the Commodore no ſmall diſquietude; for they were above double the number of our own people; and ſome of them obſerved, when they were brought aboard, how ſlenderly we were manned; and the General himſelf could not help expreſſing his indignation to be thus beaten by a handful of boys. It was therefore neceſſary for our own preſervation to prevent their riſing; and that could not be ſecurely effected without exerciſing a degree of ſeverity which in any other circumſtances could not have been juſtified on the principles of humanity; for there was no method practicable but that of ſtowing the men in the holds of the two ſhips; and as for the officers, 17 in number, they were confined in the Firſt Lieutenant's cabbin, under a guard of ſix men, firſt depriving them of their arms, and then keeping a ſtrict watch on all their motions. Indeed, the ſufferings of the common men, ſuch of them in particular who were not employed in navigating the ſhip, were much to be pitied; for, the weather being extremely hot, the ſtench of the holds loathſome beyond conception, and their allowance of water but juſt ſufficient to keep them alive, being only a pint a day for each man, it was next to a miracle that not a man of them died during their confinement, except five of the wounded, who expired the very night they were brought aboard the Centurion. Thus circumſtanced, the motives of humanity, as well as intereſt, ſtrongly urged the Commodore to haſten his return to China; and the prize being much damaged, both in her hull and rigging, it was found neceſſary to take her in tow for the quicker diſpatch.

On the 21ſt of June it blew a ſtorm, which continued till the 25th, when the ſea ran mountains high: in this ſtorm the Centurion loſt her long-boat, and the prize a launch.

On the 2d of July we paſſed between the Baſhee Iſlands, though the rippling of the ſea ſeemed to indicate breakers or rocky ground; but the wind being ſo far to the northward as to render it difficult to weather them, we riſqued the danger to ſhorten the voyage. On the 8th of July we made the coaſt of China, and on the 11th came to an anchor off the city of Mocao; from thence we proceeded to the river of Canton, where we met with the uſual obſtructions from the cuſtom-houſe officers, and where the Commodore was again obliged, as it were, reſolutely to force his way to his intended ſtation. The officer who came to take the dimenſions of his ſhips, in the uſual manner, ſeemed aſtoniſhed when he talked of being exempted from the accuſtomed rates, and gave him to underſtand that the Emperor's duty muſt be paid by every ſhip that came into his ports; and the pilot had private inſtructions not to carry the ſhips through the Bocca Tygris, or narrow paſs that forms the entrance into the river of Canton, till ſecurity was given for the accuſtomed charges.

And here it may be neceſſary juſt to mention, that this paſs, not more than a quarter of a mile in breadth, is defended by two forts on the oppoſite ſides; but theſe the Commodore diſregarding, and being determined to enter the river without delay, as the ſtormy ſeaſon was approaching, he cauſed the pilot to be brought before him, and in a determined tone threatened to hang him to the yard-arm, if he did not inſtantly take charge of the ſhip, and carry her ſafe, without ſtriking ground, through the Bocca Tygris into the open river. The poor pilot performed his office, but did not eſcape puniſhment for what he could not help. He was inſtantly ſeized on being releaſed from the Centurion, committed to priſon, and rigorouſly diſciplined with the bamboo. However, he found means to get acceſs to the Commodore afterwards, to ſupplicate a recompence, who, ever ready to reward the ſufferers in his ſervice, gave him ſuch a ſum as more than contented him for his whipping. Nor was the poor pilot the only ſufferer; for the Governors of the forts were both diſplaced for not preventing what it was in vain for them to attempt to oppoſe, and for not doing what all the council muſt know was impoſſible to be done.

On the 16th the Commodore ſent his Second Lieutenant to Canton, with a letter to the Viceroy, aſſigning his reaſons for putting into that port, demanding a licence for purchaſing proviſions and ſtores, and intimating an intention of waiting upon his Excellency in perſon to make his acknowledgements. The Lieutenant was civilly received, and promiſed an anſwer the next day. In the mean time, the principal officers of the prize deſired permiſſion to go to Canton on their parole, which was readily granted. Theſe no ſooner arrived, than they were called before the magiſtracy, and examined; when they generouſly and frankly acknowledged that they fell into the hands of the Commodore by the chance of war, and that though they were priſoners, they were notwithſtanding at liberty to treat for their releaſe: they ſaid farther, that it was not the cuſtom among European nations to put priſoners to death; but that the laws of war authorized much ſeverer treatment than they had hitherto met with from their conquerors. This confeſſion from an enemy had great weight with the Chineſe, who, till then, though they had revered the Commodore's naval force, had yet ſuſpected his morals, and had conſidered him rather as a lawleſs free-booter, than as one commiſſioned by the ſtate for the revenge of public injuries.

On the 20th of July, three Mandarines with their retinue came on board, and brought the Viceroy's permit for a daily ſupply of proviſions, and for pilots to carry the ſhips up the river as high as the ſecond bar; and, at the ſame time they delivered a meſſage from the Viceroy, in anſwer to that part of the Commodore's letter which related to his viſiting his Excellency; the ſubſtance of which meſſage was, that the Viceroy wiſhed the Commodore to defer his viſit till the hot ſeaſon was over, but that in September, when the weather would be more temperate, he ſhould be glad to receive him. This the Commodore looked upon as a fineſſe, knowing an expreſs was ſent up to the Emperor's court at Peking; whence the real motive for putting off the viſit ſeemed to be to gain time to receive the Emperor's inſtructions concerning the ceremony to be obſerved at his reception. The Mandarines, having diſpatched this part of their commiſſion, next entered upon the buſineſs of the port charges; whereupon the Commodore at once cut them ſhort, by telling them, that, as he did not come to trade, he was not to be treated upon the ſame footing with trading ſhips; that his Britannic Majeſty's ſhips never paid cuſtoms in the ports of Europe, nor ever would be ſubject to any pecuniary impoſts in any other port whatever. Finding nothing to be gained on this head, they told the Commodore, that they had ſtill another matter in charge, and that was the releaſe of the priſoners taken on board the galleon; for that the Emperor would never permit the ſubjects of princes with whom he was in alliance to be held in bondage in his dominions, nor could the Viceroy anſwer it to his Sovereign if he ſuffered it; and that, therefore, his Excellency hoped that the Commodore would give immediate orders for their releaſe.

Though nothing could be more agreeable to the Commodore, who wanted much to be rid of the incumbrance, than this requiſition, yet, to inhance the favour, he at firſt raiſed difficulties; but at length ſuffered himſelf to be prevailed upon by their intreaties, and concluded, by aſſuring them, that, to ſhew his readineſs to oblige, he would deliver up the priſoners whenever the Viceroy would pleaſe to order boats to fetch them. Matters being thus adjuſted, the Mandarines departed: and, in a few days, two Chineſe junks were ſent from Canton to carry them to Mocao, under the direction of one Captain Fial, Commander of a Spaniſh merchant-man, to whoſe ſhip we gave chace in our paſſage from the Baſhee Iſlands to Mocao, but loſt ſight of her in the night.

To this gentleman the General of the galleon, and all his officers, except one who accompanied us to England, were delivered up. And now I have occaſion to mention the General, I cannot help relating an affair which gave us on board the prize a great deal of concern, and ſufficiently ſhewed the meanneſs of his ſpirit, and his beggarly craft. I have already taken notice of his being wounded in the engagement, and of his being indulged with the uſe of his own cabbin till he was fit to be removed. The Commodore over and above this indulgence, ſent him a ſurgeon from his own ſhip, upon a complaint that the Spaniſh ſurgeon on board the galleon was quite ignorant in his profeſſion; but at the ſame time he ſent an officer to demand his commiſſion. Pretending to the officer that he was unable to move, he referred him to a ſmall box in a locker of his private cabbin, in which, he ſaid, it was, and likewiſe a ſword-belt ſet with diamonds of great value, his own property; but, upon ſearch, neither the commiſſion nor the belt could be found; and, as ſome of our people had been rummaging both that and other parts of the ſhip, he proteſted, that, if they could not be there found, they muſt have been taken away and concealed. Under colour of this concealment, though he never produced his commiſſion, he all along received the moſt humane and gentlemanlike treatment that the moſt worthy officer could deſire or expect; and ſuch was continued till his departure, when neither his cheſts, of which he had two very large ones, nor any of his trunks or caſes were ſuffered to be ſearched: but every thing which he claimed as his perſonal effects were delivered to him with the greateſt care and punctuality; though, as I was afterwards informed, he had many valuable ventures concealed, which ought to have been delivered up as prize to the captors; but, as that was never examined into, he carried them off with the reſt, and, it was ſuppoſed, was not the leaſt among the gainers by the capture of his ſhip. He perſiſted, however, to the laſt in the loſs of his commiſſion and belt, and, though there were none on board on whom he could charge the theft, yet the Commodore ſufficiently expreſſed his diſpleaſure againſt the whole by the prohibition he laid upon us, as ſoon as the prize came to an anchor in the river, by which all communication was cut off between us and the country people, and no boat ſuffered to come near us but our own; by which ſevere order we were entirely debarred from purchaſing our own proviſions and neceſſaries from the Chineſe, which the people in the Centurion were at full liberty to do; neither could we employ the Chineſe tradeſmen to ſupply us with apparel, of which we ſtood greatly in need, though in that too the Centurion's people were indulged: and all this for no other reaſon, that was ever aſſigned, but that, if the jewels the General had loſt were concealed, the Commodore was determined the ſecreter ſhould have no opportunity of diſpoſing of them without being diſcovered. Had this precaution been taken, as it ought, for the ſatisfaction of thoſe who ſuffered under the ſeverity of the cenſure, and had the effects of the Spaniſh General been properly inſpected, the ſecreter would have been publickly expoſed; for, when we afterwards fell down to Mocao with the ſhips, where we ſold the prize, I was myſelf told by an Iriſh prieſt, that the General had both his commiſſion and his belt; that he made no ſecret of the matter at Mocao; and that he had offered the jewels (being only made up by way of blind) among the merchants for ſale.

But to return: during our ſtay in the river Canton, our people were employed in repairing the Centurion, over-hauling her ſails and rigging, cleanſing and ventilating her decks and quarters below, and in paying and decorating her hull; inſomuch, that when ſhe came to ſail, ſhe had more the appearance of a ſhip newly fitted out, than one that had been a three years voyage in traverſing the globe. While theſe things were doing on board the Centurion, we in the prize were buſied in rummaging for treaſure, till about the latter end of Auguſt, when we made a full end of our ſearch, and found, upon account of the captors, in ſpecie, 1,278,546 dollars, and 1,324 of wrought plate and virgin ſilver. The jewels we found were not then valued.

At the ſame time that the inferior officers and ſeamen were employed in theſe different ſervices, the Commodore had a ſtill more important buſineſs in hand. He knew it was impoſſible for us to proceed to Europe without an ample ſupply of proviſions and other ſea ſtores; and, though we were furniſhed with a daily allowance, yet no order had been obtained for victualling us for our intended voyage. Application had indeed been made, and terms agreed upon with the contractors to furniſh whatever was neceſſary; and they had undertaken to procure the Viceroy's permiſſion for the delivery; but when, about the middle of September, the proper officer was ſent to enquire what forwardneſs theſe things were in, he found that neither the baker had begun to bake the bread, nor the butcher to kill the oxen, nor was the leaſt ſtep taken to comply with any one article of the agreement. We could no otherwiſe account for this faithleſs procedure of the Chineſe, than by ſuppoſing they meant to ſtarve us into a compliance with their accuſtomed demands for port charges, with which the Commodore was determined never to acquieſce. Indeed, it was ſuſpected, that the contractors themſelves had ſome intereſt in promoting the delay, though it was not eaſy to penetrate the views by which they were influenced, as it may with truth be aſſerted, that in artifice, falſhood, and attachment to all kinds of lucre, the Chineſe, as a nation, are not to be paralleled by any other people under the ſun. It were endleſs to recount all the artifices, extortions, and frauds, which were practiſed on the Commodore and his people by this intereſted race. The method of buying proviſions in China being by weight, the tricks made uſe of to make them heavy are almoſt incredible. At one time a number of fowls and ducks being bought for the ſhip's ſtore, the greateſt part of them preſently died, which ſpread a general alarm on board leſt they ſhould have died of poiſon; but, on examination, it was diſcovered that they had been crammed with ſmall ſtones and gravel to increaſe their weight. The hogs too, bought of the Chineſe butchers ready killed, were found to have had water injected into the carcaſes for the ſame purpoſe; and when, to avoid this cheat, the hogs were bought alive, it was found that ſalt had been given them to increaſe their thirſt, that methods had been uſed to ſuppreſs their urine, and that the tortured animals had been ſold in that inflated ſtate. Mr. Walter adds—[for it is on this authority that theſe inſtances are reported]—that, as the Chineſe never ſcruple to eat the animals that die of themſelves, they contrived, by their ſecret practices, when the Commodore put to ſea, that part of his live ſea-ſtore ſhould die in a ſhort time after it was put on board: in order, therefore, to make a ſecond profit of the dead carcaſes which they expected would be thrown over-board, they followed in boats to pick up the carrion; and, accordingly, two thirds of the hogs dying before they were out of ſight of land, their labour could not be in vain.

The treachery of the contractors being now diſcovered, the Commodore determined to renew his former requiſition for an audience with the Viceroy. With this view, he notified his intention to the proper Mandarine, and deſired that he would fix the time with the Viceroy when he would be pleaſed to receive him; at the ſame time giving him to underſtand, that, on the firſt of October, he intended to proceed in his boat to Canton. The Mandarine returned for anſwer that he would acquaint the Viceroy with the Commodore's intentions. As it was apprehended, that the payment of the cuſtomary duties would be demanded at this interview, the Commodore took the neceſſary precautions to prevent the Chineſe from facilitating the ſucceſs of their pretenſions by having him in their power at Canton, and, therefore, gave the command of the Centurion to his Firſt Lieutenant Mr. Brett (now Sir Piercy), with orders, if he ſhould be detained, to lie at the mouth of the river, and ſuffer no ſhip or boat to paſs or repaſs till he was releaſed, by which the whole navigation of the river would be immediately obſtructed.

This being known to the Chineſe, they were now more than ever embarraſſed in their deliberations. The morning of the 1ſt of October arrived, and juſt as the boats crew, eighteen in number, which the Commodore propoſed to take with him, appeared in their uniform, namely, ſcarlet jackets and blue ſilk waiſtcoats, the whole trimmed with ſilver, with ſilver badges on their jackets and caps, his linguiſt came to him from the Mandarine, to tell him, that a letter had been received from the Viceroy, deſiring the Commodore to defer his intended purpoſe for two or three days, which not being doubted, the men were ordered to be undreſt, and the preparations were all laid aſide; but, in the afternoon of the ſame day, another linguiſt came on board, ſeemingly in a great panic, informing him, that the Viceroy had expected him up that day; that the council was aſſembled, and the troops under arms to receive him; and that the Viceroy was highly incenſed at the diſappointment, and had ſent the Commodore's linguiſt to priſon, chained, ſuppoſing him to be the ſole cauſe of the contempt. This plauſible tale gave the Commodore great uneaſineſs, not at that time ſuſpecting any impoſition; and though it afterwards appeared to be all a mere farce, yet the falſhood was ſo well ſupported by the artifices of the Chineſe merchants, that three days afterwards the Commodore received a letter, ſigned by all the Supercargoes of the Engliſh ſhips then at the place, expreſſing their uneaſineſs at what had happened, and intimating their fears that ſome inſult would be offered to his boat, if he attempted to come to Canton before the Viceroy was fully ſatisfied of the miſtake. To this letter the Commodore replied, that he did not believe there had been a miſtake, but was perſuaded it was a forgery of the Chineſe to prevent his viſiting the Viceroy; that, therefore, he would certainly come up to Canton on the 13th of October, confident that the Chineſe would not dare to offer him any inſult, as well knowing he ſhould want neither power nor inclination to make them a proper return.

On the 13th of October, the Commodore continuing firm to his reſolutions, all the Supercargoes of the Engliſh, Daniſh, and Swediſh ſhips, came on board the Centurion, to accompany him to Canton, for which place he ſet out in his barge the ſame day, attended by his own boats, and by thoſe of the trading ſhips, which on this occaſion were ſent to augment his retinue. As he paſſed by Wampo where the European veſſels lay, he was ſaluted by all of them except the French, and in the evening he arrived ſafely at Canton.

The Chineſe merchants, who affected to appear very much pleaſed that he had met with no oppoſition in his way, pretended that the Viceroy was then ſo fully employed in preparing his diſpatches for Peking, that there was no getting admittance to him; but that they had engaged one of the officers of his court, as ſoon as he was at leiſure, to notify the Commodore's arrival, and endeavour to fix the audience. Though the Commodore knew this to be a falſhood, yet he ſuffered himſelf to be perſuaded by the European Supercargoes not to appear to doubt it, provided the Chineſe merchants would undertake that his bread ſhould be baked, his meat ſalted, and his ſtores in readineſs, within the ſpace of 40 days; after which time, if the leaſt article was pretended to be forgotten, he would force his way to the Viceroy, and prefer his complaint. During the interval, while the contractors were endeavouring in earneſt to fulfil the terms of the agreement on their part, (which by the bye they inſiſted ſhould be paid for in advance on his), a fire broke out in the ſuburbs of Canton, which on the firſt alarm might eaſily have been extinguiſhed, by pulling down ſome of the adjoining ſheds; which the Commodore with his officers and crew obſerving, were inſtantly about to carry into execution; but they were told, that whatever they pulled down they muſt build up again at their own expence, and that none but a Mandarine muſt preſume to direct upon ſuch occaſions. The Commodore, on this admonition, diſpatched his people to the Engliſh factory to aſſiſt them in ſecuring their effects, as it was eaſy to foreſee that no diſtance was ſafe from fire, where the common people contented themſelves with gazing at it, and now-and-then holding up an idol or two to extinguiſh it. At length, however, a Mandarine came out of the city, with 4 or 500 firemen, who made ſome very feeble efforts to pull down the neighbouring houſes; but by this time the fire had extended itſelf, and had ſpread among the merchants warehouſes, where the Chineſe firemen had neither ſpirit nor ſkill to encounter it; ſo that it was feared the whole city would have been laid in aſhes. In this emergency, the Viceroy vouchſafed to make his appearance, and a meſſage was ſent to the Commodore requeſting his aſſiſtance. Accordingly, he haſtened a ſecond time, with about 40 of his people, to the place where the fire raged with the moſt violence, and in ſight of the whole city performed ſuch daring, and, to the people who beheld them, ſuch aſtoniſhing feats, that they looked upon them as ſalamanders, and cried out, that they could live in fire. In truth, it was no uncommon thing to ſee the boldeſt and moſt active among them tumble on the roofs amidſt the ruins of the houſes which their own efforts had brought down under them. And thus, by their reſolution and agility, the fire was very ſoon ſubdued, to the aſtoniſhment of the Chineſe who were ſpectators of the wonders they performed. On this occaſion the Swediſh was the only European factory that ſuffered; yet on my arrival in England, to my no ſmall diverſion, I read in the Paris Gazette, that the city of Canton had been almoſt wholly deſtroyed; and that, in particular, the Engliſh, Dutch, Daniſh, and Portugueſe factories had been burnt down, and almoſt all their effects conſumed; but that the French factory had providentially eſcaped, their goods being all ſhipped before the conflagration reached the quarter allotted for their reſidence.

This ſignal aſſiſtance gained the Admiral much reſpect; he was the next day waited upon by the principal inhabitants with preſents and thanks; and ſoon after, a meſſage came from the Viceroy appointing the 30th of November for the day of audience. Being highly pleaſed with his laſt intimation, he inſtantly gave orders for the neceſſary preparations; and engaged Mr. Flint, a gentleman belonging to the Engliſh factory, for his interpreter, who, being trained up from his infancy among the Chineſe, ſpoke their language fluently, and who was not afraid to declare with boldneſs what the Admiral delivered him in charge, a part which the Chineſe interpreters would not have dared to have performed with equal fidelity.

On the day appointed, at 10 o'clock, the Commodore and his retinue ſet out; and, as he entered the outer gate of the city, he was met by a guard of 200 ſoldiers, who conducted him to the great parade before the Emperor's palace, in which the Viceroy then reſided, where a body of troops to the number of 10,000 were drawn up under arms, who made a fine appearance, being all new cloathed for this ceremony. Through the middle of this body the Commodore with his retinue marched to the hall of audience, where he found the Viceroy ſeated under a rich canopy in the Emperor's chair of ſtate, with all his council of Mandarines attending. He was ſeated the third in order from the Viceroy, the chiefs of the law and treaſury being the only perſons ſeated above him. He then, addreſſing himſelf to the Viceroy by his interpreter, complained to him of the delays he had met with, the inſincerity of thoſe he had employed, the vexatious impoſitions of the officers of the cuſtoms, the grievances of the Britiſh ſubjects, and, finally, the loſs ſuſtained by the Haſlingfield Indiaman, who had arrived there diſmaſted but a few days before the fire happened, by which the crew had been great ſufferers, and the Captain in particular, who had loſt a cheſt of treaſure value 4500 tahel. To the latter article the Commodore received for anſwer, that, in ſettling the Emperor's cuſtoms with that ſhip, the Captain ſhould be conſidered. To the other complaints, the Commodore received no anſwer at all. And having now gone through the ſeveral articles he had in charge from the company, he entered next upon his own affairs, and particularly concerning the licence to ſhip off his proviſions and ſtores, which, he ſaid, were all ready, and the ſeaſon for ſailing was now ſet in. The Viceroy replied to this, that the licence ſhould be immediately iſſued, and that every thing ſhould be ordered on board the following day. The buſineſs being now at an end, the Viceroy continued the converſation for ſome time on matters of indifference and curioſity; and, after obſerving that the Centurion had been long on their coaſt, he concluded with acknowledgments for the ſervices the Commodore had rendered the Chineſe nation by the activity of his people at the late fire, and with wiſhing him a proſperous voyage to Great Britain. Thus happily concluded this long-expected audience; and, in purſuance of the Viceroy's promiſes, the proviſions were begun to be ſhipped the very next day: and now all the preparations for putting to ſea were purſued with ſo much expedition, that by the 9th the Centurion and her prize were ready to unmoor, and on the 10th paſſed through the Bocca Tygris into the open road, and on the 12th anchored before the town of Mocao. While they lay here, the Portugueſe merchants entered into treaty with the Commodore for the purchaſe of the prize, for which they would give no more than 6000 dollars, though worth double that ſum; but the impatience of the Commodore to be gone, that he might himſelf be the meſſenger of his own good fortune, and thereby prevent the enterprizes of the enemy to intercept him, prevailed upon him to conclude the bargain; and, ſhe being delivered on the 15th of December, and the money received, in the afternoon of the ſame day he hoiſted ſail, and took his departure for his native home. On the 3d of January he came to an anchor on Prince's Iſland, in the ſtraits of Sunda, where he ſtaid the beſt part of five days to wood and water, and on the 8th weighed and continued his courſe. From this time till the 20th we had foul and ſtormy weather, ſo bad that I thought it impoſſible to meet with ſuch in latitudes ſo near the Equator; and the wind blowing directly againſt us, we were driven pretty near the coaſt of New Holland; and, had it continued blowing from the ſame quarter, with equal violence, for 48 hours longer, we ſhould have found it difficult to have cleared that coaſt; but, on the 21ſt, the wind abated, and the weather became moderate. On the 24th the trade-wind ſet in, and we then proceeded on our paſſage with the higheſt alacrity.

On the 22d of February, at half after four in the morning, I diſcovered a comet to the eaſtward, near the horizon, being, as I judged, lately emerged from the ſun's rays. Its tail was at this time about 10 deg. in length; but in leſs than a fortnight it increaſed and extended itſelf to near 40 degrees. Its head appeared very large and bright; and, on a nice inſpection, I have perceived it when the ſun has been about a diameter above the horizon. The next time I obſerved its diſtance from the planet Venus to be 26 deg. 50 min. following the order of the planets; but not having inſtruments proper for taking altitudes without a very obvious ſenſible horizon, I was prevented from making more ſatisfactory obſervations. From this time, till the 6th of March, we had pleaſant weather, with few exceptions; but on that and the three following days, being near the Cape of Good Hope, we had ſome boiſterous ſtorms; yet, when we arrived at Table-bay, on the 11th, the Dutch knew not that any ſuch had happened. We found riding here two Engliſh Eaſt-Indiamen, the Saliſbury and Warwick, each of which ſaluted us with 13 guns, and we returned 11. We alſo found five Dutch ſhips, one of which having, as Admiral, a flag at his main-top-maſt-head, ſaluted us with 9 guns, to which we returned 7. At 11 at night we parted our beſt bower cable and hawſer, both of which were very rotten, and the next day moored again with others purchaſed from the Dutch. Here the Commodore continued till the beginning of April, highly delighted with the place, and during his ſtay entered about 40 new men. On the 3d of May, having compleated our water and proviſions, we on that day weighed and put to ſea. On the 19th of April we paſſed within ſight of the iſland of St. Helena, which, however, we did not viſit. On the 26th we caught on board the ſhip a ſnake that meaſured in length ſix feet and two inches, which our ſurgeon, on examination, pronounced to be perfectly harmleſs. It was ſuppoſed to be brought on board with our wood, at Prince's Iſland, in the ſtraits of Sunda. The 30th, being before the wind, with a fine breeze, and a gentle rain, a violent and ſudden ſquall took us a-head, threw all the ſhip's ſails a-back, carried away her fore-top-ſail yard, ſplit the fore-ſail, the fore-top-ſail, the fore-top-gallant-ſail, and the mizzen and mizzen-top-ſail. During this ſquall the ſhip laid down very much, and we were in the utmoſt danger of our maſts coming by the board; but providentially we eſcaped without further damage.

The 9th of June, in the evening, it being a thick fog, we on a ſudden ſaw a ſhip cloſe by us; we fired a ſhot, and brought her to. She proved an Engliſh ſhip from Amſterdam, bound for Philadelphia or Carolina, with Palatine emigrants. She gave us the firſt notice of a war with France, and proceeded on her voyage. The 10th of June we came into ſoundings. The 11th, at half paſt eleven in the morning, we diſcovered three ſail, and at one in the afternoon ſpoke with one of them, being a Dutch ſhip from Dublin. At the ſame time, the ſecond being pretty near us, ſhewed Dutch colours. The third, who had been in chace of the others the whole day, perceiving we deſigned to ſpeak with her, ſtood from us with all the ſail ſhe could crowd. We gave chace to her for about three hours, when finding we did not gain upon her, we reſumed our former courſe. On the 12th, in the morning, the fog clearing up, we perceived the Lizard Point: but that the ſignal perils, which had ſo often threatened us, and from which we had been more than once providentially delivered, might be diſcoverable to the laſt, we were afterwards told that there was a French fleet of conſiderable force cruiſing in the chops of the Channel, through the middle of which we had this night ſailed without being perceived.

On the 13th, between the Iſle of Portland and the Iſle of Wight, we ſaw a ſhip towing another which was diſabled in her maſts. This ſhip proved the Salamander privateer, with a French prize. The 14th, at eleven in the morning, we anchored at the back of the Iſle of Wight, and in the evening weighed, and again anchored at Spithead. Thus we finiſhed a long and perilous voyage, which had laſted three years and nine months, after having by its events, as Mr. Walter obſerves, ſtrongly evinced this important truth, "That though prudence, intrepidity, and perſeverance, united, are not exempted from the blows of adverſe fortune, yet, in a long ſeries of tranſactions, they uſually riſe ſuperior to its power, and in the end rarely fail of proving ſucceſsful."

Having now brought this celebrated voyage to a concluſion, it may, perhaps, be expected that we ſhould give ſome account of the Spaniſh ſquadron, which we have more than once had occaſion to mention, and which was ſo near intercepting the Commodore at firſt ſetting out, that, had the Spaniſh Admiral cruiſed to the eaſtward of the iſland of Madeira, inſtead of the weſtward of it, the two fleets muſt have certainly met; and, in that caſe, whatever had been the event of the action, the progreſs of the voyage muſt have been effectually prevented.

This ſquadron was compoſed of the following ſhips: the Aſia, of 66 guns, 700 men, commanded by Don Joſeph Pizarro, as Admiral; the Guipuſcoa, 74 guns, 700 men; the Hermiona, 54 guns, 500 men; the Eſperanza, 50 guns, 450 men; the Eſtevan, 40 guns, 350 men; and a patache of 20 guns, 120 men; and over and above this complement, they had on board an old Spaniſh regiment of foot, intended to reinforce their garriſons in the South Seas, and to counterbalance the land forces that it was known were intended to be put on board the Commodore.

When this fleet had cruiſed, as has been ſaid, to the leeward of Madeira, till they were in a manner certain that the Commodore had either paſſed by, or deferred his voyage, their Admiral determined to purſue his inſtructions, and continue his courſe to the South Seas; but firſt, it was neceſſary to ſteer to the coaſt of Brazil to recruit his proviſions, being victualled only for four months, and more than two of the four being already elapſed.

Accordingly, about the beginning of November, 1740, he quitted his ſtation off the Madeiras, and, on the 5th of January following, arrived at the river of Plate; where coming to an anchor in the bay of Maldando, he ſent immediately to Buenos Ayres for a ſupply.

While they lay here, they received intelligence, by the treachery of the Portugueſe Governor of St. Catherine's, of the Commodore's arrival at that port, and of the weak condition he was then in; but, whatever were his reaſons, Pizarro declined making any other uſe of this intelligence, than haſtening his preparations to double the cape, which he hoped to effect before the Commodore was in readineſs to follow him. With this view, after refreſhing his crew, and recruiting his water, he inſtantly ſet ſail without waiting for his proviſions (which, however, arrived a day or two after he ſet ſail), rightly concluding, that if he got the ſtart of the Commodore in the South Seas, he ſhould not only alarm the coaſt, but ſo ſtrengthen the forts againſt the attacks of the enemy, as effectually to baffle their deſigns, by depriving them of the means of procuring neceſſaries. But, notwithſtanding this precipitation, the Commodore put to ſea four days before him, and, in ſome part of the paſſage round the Cape, the fleets were ſo near each other, that the Pearl, as has been ſaid, being ſeparated in a ſtorm, ran within gun-ſhot of the Aſia, before ſhe found her miſtake.

It was with the utmoſt difficulty, and not without conſiderable rewards, that the Spaniſh ſailors were prevailed upon to undertake the paſſage round Cape Horn at that tempeſtuous ſeaſon; however, being once engaged, they continued to perſevere, till by the latter end of February they had run the length of the Cape, and were turning to the weſtward, when a ſtorm aroſe, in which the Guipuſcoa, Hermiona, and Eſperanza, loſt ſight of the Admiral, and on the 6th of March the Guipuſcoa was ſeparated from the other two. On the 7th the ſtorm increaſed, and by its irreſiſtible violence drove the whole ſquadron to the eaſtward, and, after ſeveral unſucceſsful efforts, obliged them to return to the coaſt of Brazil, where the Aſia took ſhelter in the river of Plate, and about the middle of May was joined by the Eſperanza and Eſtevan; the Hermiona having, as was ſuppoſed, foundered at ſea, as ſhe was never more heard of, and the Guipuſcoa being run aſhore and ſunk on the coaſt of Brazil. The patache, we ſhould have obſerved, was condemned before they quitted the coaſt of Brazil, and her crew diſtributed among the other ſhips; ſo that of the ſix ſhips of which this ſquadron originally conſiſted, there now only remained three, and thoſe in a moſt miſerable condition; for, though it does not appear that the Spaniards were ſo ſeverely viſited with that moſt fatal diſeaſe the ſea-ſcurvy, which carried off ſo many of the Engliſh in this paſſage, yet they were reduced by famine to ſuch infinite diſtreſs, that rats, when they could be caught, were ſold for four dollars a-piece; and a ſailor, who died on board, had his death concealed for ſeveral days by his brother, who during that time lay in the ſame hammock with the dead corpſe, only to receive the dead man's allowance.

In this dreadful ſituation, they were alarmed by the diſcovery of a conſpiracy among the ſoldiers on board the Aſia, to murder the Admiral, and all the ſhip's crew, originating from no other motive but that of appropriating the whole ſtock of proviſions to the conſpirators own proper uſe. But this plot was prevented, when juſt upon the point of execution, by means of the prieſt on board, who, having taken the confeſſion of one of the conſpirators as he lay at the point of death, purſued proper meaſures to defeat their bloody purpoſes, and to bring three of the ringleaders to condign puniſhment.

But, though this combination failed of its effect, there were other diſtreſſes that multiplied upon them, and which could not be prevented. Hunger and thirſt, the moſt dreadful of all other calamities, daily became more grievous; the ſhips grew continually more and more leaky, and the men leſs able to ſtand at the pumps; nothing was to be ſeen but deſpondency in every countenance; nothing heard but lamentations and complaints, which were embittered by the abſolute impoſſibility of relieving them. Under the weight of theſe affecting circumſtances, the Aſia was near ſinking, when ſhe arrived at Monte Vedio with ſcarce half her crew alive. The Eſtevan, when ſhe anchored in the bay of Barragan, had in like manner loſt about the ſame number of her hands; but, what was ſtill worſe, and is almoſt incredible, the Eſperanza, out of a crew of 450 ſeamen which ſhe brought from Spain, had only 58 that reached the ſhore, and the whole regiment of ſoldiers, 60 men only excepted, periſhed.

Being now in want of all kinds of neceſſaries, maſts, yards, rigging, proviſions, and money, Pizarro diſpatched an expreſs over land to St. Jago, in Chili, to be from thence forwarded to the Viceroy of Peru, deſiring a remittance of 200,000 dollars; and what muſt aſtoniſh the reader is, that the Indian who was charged with this diſpatch, though in the depth of winter, when the Cordilleras are judged impaſſable by reaſon of the ſnow, was only 13 days in his journey from Buenos Ayres to St. Jago, places diſtant from each other 300 Spaniſh leagues. At the ſame time an advice-boat was ſent with a letter of credit to Rio Janeiro, to purchaſe what was wanting of the Portugueſe; but neither the one nor the other of theſe diſpatches ſucceeded to the wiſh of the Spaniſh Admiral. The Viceroy, inſtead of 200,000 dollars, ſent him only 100,000; and the Portugueſe, inſtead of furniſhing him with maſts and yards, the principal articles of naval ſtores that he wanted, ſpared him only ſome pitch, tar, and cordage, with which he was obliged to be contented: but a more mortifying diſappointment he had ſtill to ſuffer; for a carpenter, whom, after the return of the money, he had truſted with a conſiderable ſum, and whom he had ſent up into the country of Paraguay to cut maſts, inſtead of proſecuting the buſineſs with which he was entruſted, married in the country, and ſettled out of his reach, refuſing to return.

In this dilemma, the only thing that could be done, was, to ſhift the maſts of the Eſperanza into the Aſia, and to fit up the Eſtevan with what ſpare maſts and yards they could muſter, and with theſe two ſhips to hazard a ſecond attempt to double Cape Horn, as it was now ſummer, and the weather leſs ſevere. But a certain fatality ſeemed to preſide over every part of this unfortunate expedition. The Eſtevan, as ſhe was coming down the river Plate, ran on a ſhoal and beat off her rudder; and the Aſia, though ſhe proceeded alone with moderate weather and a favourable gale, yet when ſhe came to the height of Cape Horn, and was tacking to change her courſe to the weſtward, by ſome miſconduct in wearing the ſhip, rolled away her maſts, and was a ſecond time forced back to the river of Plate; from whence Pizarro undertook to croſs the continent by land, and with ſome difficulty accompliſhed his deſign.

By this time Don Mindinuetta, Captain of the Guipuſcoa, wrecked, as has been ſaid, on the coaſt of Brazil, arrived, with thoſe of his crew who eſcaped, at the place of general rendezvous; and, finding the Eſperanza without maſts, applied a ſecond time to the Portugueſe, by whoſe aſſiſtance he completed her repair, and, in 1742, doubled the Cape, and arrived in the South Seas, where he was met by Pizarro, who claimed the command of the Eſperanza, which Mindinuetta diſputing, an irreconcileable quarrel aroſe between the two Commanders, which the Viceroy of Peru in vain endeavoured to reconcile. In 1745, they both returned over land to the coaſt of Brazil, where they found the Aſia ſtill in a ſhattered condition. This ſhip, however, they determined to carry to Europe, and, with this view, they fitted her up in the beſt manner they could; and, having manned her partly with Portugueſe, partly with Engliſh priſoners, and partly with Spaniards, together with ſome Indians whom they forced out of the country, they ſet ſail from Monte Vedio for Europe about the beginning of November; but they had not been long at ſea before the Indians, eleven in number, formed a conſpiracy to deſtroy the Spaniards, and to regain their liberty, in which they had hopes of being joined by the Engliſh and Portugueſe, whom the Spaniards uſed with great inſolence. At the head of this conſpiracy was their Chief Orellana; and one evening, about nine o'clock, he and his companions came all together on the quarter-deck, and drew towards the door of the great cabbin. The boatſwain immediately reprimanded them, and ordered them to be gone; on this Orellana ſpoke to his followers in his native language, when four of them drew off, two towards each gangway, and the Chief and the remaining ſix ſeemed to be ſlowly quitting the quarter-deck. When the detached Indians had taken poſſeſſion of the gang-way, Orellana placed his hands hollow to his mouth, and bellowed out the war-cry uſed by thoſe ſavages. This was the ſignal for beginning the maſſacre; accordingly, the ſix, with their Chief, who remained on the quarter-deck, falling ſuddenly on the Spaniards who were intermingled with them, laid near forty of them at their feet, of which above twenty were killed on the ſpot, and the reſt diſabled. Many of the officers, in the beginning of the tumult, puſhed into the great cabbin, where they put out the lights, and barricadoed the door; whilſt of the reſt, ſome endeavoured to eſcape along the gang-ways into the forecaſtle, where the Indians placed on purpoſe ſtabbed the greateſt part of them as they attempted to paſs by; others threw themſelves into the waſte, and thought themſelves fortunate to lie concealed amongſt the cattle; but the greateſt part eſcaped up the main-ſhrouds, and ſheltered themſelves either in the tops or the rigging; and though the Indians attacked only the quarter-deck, yet the watch in the forecaſtle finding their communication cut off, in the utmoſt terror likewiſe gave all over for loſt, and in great confuſion ran up into the rigging of the fore-maſt and bowſprit. But when the Indians had intirely cleared the quarter-deck, the tumult in a great meaſure ſubſided; for, not being joined, as they expected, by either the Engliſh or Portugueſe, they could not purſue their advantage by carrying the diſorder into thoſe quarters to which they had driven the Spaniards, who thereby gained time for recollection; and, on finding none concerned in the plot but the Indians, they reſolved to attack them in their turn on the quarter-deck. With this view, Pizarro and his officers ventured to half-open the cabbin-door, which Orellana attempting to force, was ſhot dead by Mindinuetta; on which his faithful followers, abandoning all thoughts of further reſiſtance, inſtantly leaped into the ſea. Thus was this inſurrection quelled, and the Spaniards ſuffered afterwards quietly to proceed on their voyage; and, about the beginning of 1746, they arrived ſafe in Spain, after having been abſent between four and five years.

By this unfortunate expedition the naval force of Spain was much weakened: they loſt in it 3000 of their beſt ſailors, one whole regiment of veteran ſoldiers, four ſtout ſhips of war, and a patache; for we have obſerved that the Hermiona foundered at ſea; the Guipuſcoa was ſtranded and ſunk on the coaſt of Brazil; the St. Eſtevan was condemned and broke up in the river of Plate; and the Eſperanza, being carried into the South Seas, was unable to redouble the Cape, or to return back; ſo that the Aſia alone may be regarded as all the remains of that ſquadron with which Pizarro firſt put to ſea.

A NEW, AUTHENTIC, and COMPLETE ACCOUNT of
A VOYAGE Round the WORLD,
UNDERTAKEN and PERFORMED
By Sir FRANCIS DRAKE, in the PELICAN,
HAVING UNDER HIS COMMAND
The ELIZABETH, MARYGOLD, SWAN, and CHRISTOPHER Frigates:
Performed in the Years 1577, 1578, 1579, and 1580.

BEFORE we proceed to the relation of the particular Voyages that characterize the navigators who firſt ſurrounded the globe, and who immortalized their names by their ſkill and their courage, it may be expected that we ſhould give ſome account of their families and firſt ſetting out, the diſtinguiſhed marks of genius that led them to prefer the fatigues and dangers of a ſea-faring life to learned eaſe, or the calm purſuit of leſs hazardous employments; and that we ſhould trace the ſteps by which they roſe to eminence by their bravery and their conduct.

The bare narration of the incidents recorded in a ſingle voyage, however memorable, would convey but a very imperfect knowledge of the general character of thoſe renowned heroes, who carried the glory of their country to the remoteſt regions of the earth. We ſhall, therefore, endeavour to follow them as they advance to fame, and accompany them from their higheſt elevation to that period when all diſtinctions are levelled.

The celebrated mariner, of whom we are now to give an account, was ſon to Edmund Drake, a gentleman of Taviſtock, in Devonſhire, who, being inclined to the doctrine of the Proteſtants, at that time much oppoſed by Q. Mary, was obliged to quit his place of reſidence, and retire to Medway, in Kent; where, after that Queen's death, he was firſt appointed Chaplain in the royal navy, and afterwards Vicar of Upnor. In theſe employments, his appointments being ſmall, and his family large, he owed the education of ſeveral of his children to the kindneſs of his relations, and that, in particular, of Francis, the eldeſt of twelve, to Sir John Hawkins; under whom, as it appears, he very early diſtinguiſhed himſelf, and laid the foundation both of his fame and his fortune.

The learned Camden, indeed, informs us, that he was put apprentice to the maſter of a ſmall trading veſſel, in whoſe ſervice he behaved ſo well, that his maſter, dying a batchelor, left him his veſſel as a reward for his diligence: but Stowe, who ſeems better informed, repreſents him in a ſuperior light; tells us, that Francis Ruſſel, afterwards Duke of Bedford, was his godfather; and that Sir John Hawkins was his near relation. What Camden relates of Francis may, however, be true of his brother; for there were no leſs than four who were bred to the ſea.

Be this as it may, the firſt enterprize of conſequence, in which we find him engaged, was in a voyage to the Weſt-Indies, as Captain of the Judith, under his relation already mentioned. Thoſe iſlands having but lately been diſcovered, and very little frequented by the Engliſh, were thought ſo much to abound in wealth, that no voyager thither could fail of being recompenſed with great advantages. Nothing was talked of among the mercantile or adventurous part of mankind but the beauty and riches of the new world. Freſh diſcoveries were frequently made; new countries and nations, never heard of before, were daily deſcribed; and it may eaſily be concluded, that the relators did not leſſen the merit of their diſcoveries, by ſuppreſſing or diminiſhing any circumſtance that might produce wonder, or excite curioſity.

This was the age of enterprize and diſcovery; and her Majeſty encouraged the ardour of her ſubjects by furniſhing ſhips and commiſſions to ſuch officers of diſtinction in her royal navy as were willing to engage in hazardous purſuits.

The projects, however, that were formed, were not always ſucceſsfully carried into execution; they were frequently defeated by the ignorance of the adventurers, but more often by the malice of the Spaniards, who, from the firſt diſcovery of America, conſidered every other nation that attempted to follow them, as invaders of their rights, and incroachers on their territories. At that time, however, as now, it was no uncommon thing for thoſe who went in ſearch of new diſcoveries, to carry on a kind of contraband trade with the new ſettlers; which, though prohibited by the Crown of Spain, was yet countenanced by the Viceroys and Governors; but even thoſe would ſometimes take advantage of the power lodged in their hands, and make prize of the profits of the voyage, under pretence of an illicit trade.

Among thoſe who ſuffered moſt by the injuſtice of the Viceroys, was Sir John Hawkins; who, having ſtruck out a new trade, highly advantageous to the parties concerned, though diſgraceful to humanity, ſupplied the Mexican Spaniards with ſlaves from Africa, and received from them, in return, large remittances in gold and ſilver. This was connived at, though we do not find that it was abſolutely tolerated by the Spaniſh court.

It was, however, after one of thoſe ſucceſsful voyages, in which we find two of the Queen's ſhips engaged (namely, the Jeſus, commanded by Hawkins, as

Admiral; and the Minion, of which Captain John Hampton was Commander; with four other armed trading ſhips, (among which was the Judith, Captain Drake), that, being driven by ſtreſs of weather into the port of St. John d'Ulloa, in the bay of Mexico, they were there waiting for a ſupply of proviſions, when the Spaniſh fleet from Europe arrived, conſiſting of 12 ſail, richly laden with European merchandize, and on board of which was a new Viceroy.

As the port was then abſolutely in the power of the Engliſh, it was debated, among the principal officers, whether the Spaniſh fleet ſhould be ſuffered to enter; as their Admiral ſuſpected, that, if they were admitted, they would contrive ſome means of diſtreſſing him; and if they were not, they muſt periſh at ſea; an event that would certainly bring on a war,—a conſequence he could by no means juſtify.

Upon mature deliberation, it was therefore judged ſafeſt to propoſe an agreement with the Viceroy, to which he conſented, and by which it was ſtipulated, that the Engliſh ſhould hold one ſide of the harbour, and the Spaniards the other; and that hoſtages ſhould be given on both ſides, that no injury ſhould be done to either. But it was ſoon diſcovered, that, though on the part of the Engliſh, ſix gentlemen were ſent, yet, on that of the Spaniards, the hoſtages were only common men, finely dreſſed. This gave cauſe of diſtruſt; yet the Engliſh, naturally honeſt, were not ſufficiently on their guard.

The Spaniards for ſome weeks behaved with ſeeming cordiality; mutual civilities paſſed between the officers of both nations; and the Engliſh having ſupplied their wants, were preparing to depart, when, all of a ſudden, at a ſignal given, the Spaniards aſſaulted their ſhips as the officers were at dinner, boarded the Minion by a concealed ambuſcade, which, however, was repulſed with loſs, and then a general maſſacre enſued. The Engliſh who were on ſhore were all put to death; three of the four trading ſhips were preſently ſunk; and the Minion and Jeſus were ſo embarraſſed by their moorings, that it was almoſt a whole hour before they could be placed in a poſture of defence; which, however, was at laſt effected. They then returned the attack with ſo much fury, that the Spaniſh Vice-Admiral was ſoon blown up, and in her periſhed 300 men; and not long after the Spaniſh Admiral himſelf was ſunk. The Spaniards, in revenge, ſet two of their ſhips on fire to burn the Minion and Jeſus, the firſt of which ſet ſail and eſcaped; but the Jeſus, after ſhifting her crew on board the Judith, fell a victim with the reſt to Spaniſh treachery.

In the night, the Judith having made her eſcape, endeavoured, but in vain, to join the Minion; and being only a bark of 50 tons, alone, on a hoſtile coaſt, crouded with men, and having only proviſions on board for her own ſlender crew, a mutiny aroſe among the mariners, and by far the greateſt number inſiſted on being put on ſhore, chuſing rather to take their chance among the ſavages, than to remain on board to ſtarve at ſea, or again to fall into the power of the mercileſs Spaniards.

Accordingly, Captain Hawkins gave every man his choice, either to land on the continent, or ſail with him, and ſhare his fate. About 100 of the ſtouteſt ſeamen choſe the former; of whom five only lived to return to England. Theſe gave an account, that, on their landing, the natives, miſtaking them for Spaniards, fell upon them ſuddenly, and killed eight of their number; that, after they were known to be enemies to the Spaniards, they were uſed with kindneſs; that, however, being tired of living among ſavages, they agreed to part, and ſeek the means of returning home; ſome directed their courſe to the northward, and watched the opportunity of ſeizing a ſmall veſſel, and, croſſing the Gulph, traverſed an immenſe tract of land, till they arrived at a French ſettlement in the North; of thoſe who travelled weſtward, which was by far the greateſt part, ſixty-five fell into the hands of the Spaniards, and ſuffered various torments from the Inquiſition, three were burnt alive, and two only ſurvived to reach their own country. Of thoſe who followed the other courſe, five found means, after enduring incredible hardſhips, to get to Nova Scotia, of whom three were brought ſafe to England in French merchant ſhips.

It was in the above engagement that Captain Drake firſt diſtinguiſhed himſelf; and to his judicious conduct, that thoſe who eſcaped from the Jeſus owed their preſervation. The Judith had the good fortune to arrive ſafe in England, having purchaſed ſome proviſions on the Iſland of Cuba; but what became of the Minion we have not been able to learn.

In this expedition Sir John Hawkins loſt an immenſe ſum. It was in vain to make complaint to his ſovereign of the infraction of the peace. The Spaniſh miniſter vindicated the injuſtice of the Viceroy; and the Queen, though ſhe ſecretly reſented the loſs of her ſhips, could not openly abet the illicit trade carried on by her ſervants.

Drake, who ſhared in the misfortune of his relation, poſſeſſed both his ſpirit and his induſtry. He did not ſit down to lament the loſs he had ſuſtained; but, having acquired ſome degree of credit by his gallant behaviour, and ſome knowledge of the weakneſs and wealth of his enemies, he determined to profit by his loſſes, and to make repriſals whenever a fair opportunity ſhould offer.

It was no difficult matter to engage new adventurers in new projects in thoſe early days of Mexican commerce, and Drake was not long before he raiſed a fund to begin trade on a new footing. In 1570 he made his firſt expedition, chiefly on his own account, with two ſhips, the Dragon and the Swan; and the next year in the Swan alone; in both which voyages he enlarged his experience, but it does not appear that he repaired his loſs.

In 1572 he found means, however, to fit out a much greater force, in order to carry into execution an enterpriſe which he had meditated, not only to reinſtate his fortune, but to revenge the treachery of his enemies.

About this time war was agitating between England and Spain, to which it muſt be confeſſed the illicit trade carried on to the Spaniſh ſettlements not a little contributed. He, therefore, ſet ſail from Plymouth in the Paſcha, a letter of marque ſhip, of 70 tons, accompanied by the Swan of 50 tons, the command of which he entruſted to his brother John; in both which ſhips he had embarked 73 choice men, with a year's proviſions, and ſuch warlike ſtores and ammunition as he judged neceſſary for the enterprize he had in view. He had, likewiſe, the precaution to take with him the frames of two or three ſmall pinnaces, that, if any accident ſhould befal either of his larger ſhips, he might have it in his power to preſerve the crew without being driven to the neceſſity of leaving any of them behind; a precaution which experience had taught him in the unfortunate voyage of his kinſman Sir John. But this was not the only uſe for which he foreſaw theſe ſmall veſſels would be wanted, as will appear in the ſequel.

With this warlike force, inconſiderable as it may now appear, he cleared the land of England on the 12th of May, 1572; and, the weather continuing fair, and the wind favourable, on the 29th of June he paſſed between Dominica and Guadaloupe, and on the 6th of July came in ſight of the high land of Santa Martha; then continuing his courſe to the ſouthward, on the 15th of the ſame month both ſhips arrived at Port Pheaſant, which lay at a convenient diſtance from Nombre de Dios, the place of their deſtination.

Here he propoſed to build his pinnaces, and was going a-ſhore with a few men unarmed; when, diſcovering a ſmoke at a diſtance, he made the ſignal for another boat to follow him with an armed force. Being joined by this reinforcement, he marched towards the fire, where he found a plate of lead nailed to a tree, with an inſcription engraven upon it by one Garret, an Engliſhman, who had left that place a day or two before, and had taken that method of informing him that the Spaniards had been advertiſed of his intended viſit, and of his rendezvous at that port; and that, therefore, it would be prudent for him to make but a very ſhort ſtay.

Drake, ſurprized, no doubt, at the news, but at the ſame time knowing how convenient this place was for his deſigns, and conſidering that the hazard, and waſte of time, which could not be avoided in ſeeking another ſtation, was equivalent to any other danger which was to be apprehended from the Spaniards, determined to follow his firſt reſolution; only, for his greater ſecurity, he ordered a kind of palliſade or fortification to be made, by felling a number of large trees, and laying the trunks and branches one acroſs another, on an elevated ſpot that commanded the river. This done, he ſet the carpenters to work; and while they were employed in putting the frames of the pinnaces together, one Captain Rauſe happened to touch at the ſame port, with a bark of 50 men. To Rauſe, Drake imparted his deſign; and, when the pinnaces were ready, both ſet ſail together, ſhaping their courſe to Nombre de Dios. They touched at the Iſland of Pines, where they were informed, by the negroes they found there, that the inhabitants of that place were in daily expectation of ſome ſoldiers, which the Governor of Panama had promiſed to ſend, to defend them from the Symerons, or fugitive negroes, who, having eſcaped from the tyranny of their maſters, had ſettled themſelves under two kings, or leaders, on each ſide of the paſſage between Nombre de Dios and Panama; and not only aſſerted their natural right to liberty and independence, but endeavoured to revenge the cruelties they had ſuffered, and had lately put the inhabitants of Nombre de Dios into the utmoſt conſternation. Theſe negroes the Captain ſet on ſhore on the main land, ſo that they might, by joining the Symerons, recover their liberty, or at leaſt might not have it in their power to give the people of Nombre de Dios any ſpeedy information of his intention to invade them. Then, ſelecting 53 men from his own company, and 20 from the crew of his new aſſociate Captain Rauſe, he embarked with them in his new pinnaces, and ſet ſail for Nombre de Dios.

On July the 28th, at night, he approached the town undiſcovered, and dropt his anchors under the ſhore, intending, after his men were refreſhed, to begin the attack; but, finding that they were terrifying each other with formidable accounts of the ſtrength of the place, and the multitude of the inhabitants, he determined to hinder the panic from ſpreading farther, by leading them immediately to action; and, therefore, ordering them to their oars, he landed without any oppoſition, there being only one gunner upon the key, though it was fortified by ſix braſs cannon of the largeſt ſize. But the gunner, while they were employed in throwing the cannon from their carriages, alarmed the town, as they ſoon diſcovered by the bells, the drums, and the noiſe of the people.

Drake, leaving twelve men to guard the pinnaces, marched into the town with little or no oppoſition. After a ſhort ſkirmiſh, the forces that the alarm had haſtily drawn together were ſoon diſperſed, except a few whom he detained as priſoners, in order to ſhew him the Governor's houſe, and alſo the ſtore-houſe, where the mules that bring the ſilver from Panama were unloaded.

Being now in full poſſeſſion of the town, he poſted the main of his ſmall body under the command of his brother, in the market-place; and then followed the guides, with the reſt, to the ſtore-houſe; where, forcing the door, and entering the room where the ſilver was depoſited, they found it heaped up in bars, in ſuch quantities as almoſt exceed belief, the pile being, as they conjectured, ſeventy feet in length, ten in breadth, and twelve in height, each bar weighing between thirty and forty-five pounds. It is eaſy to imagine, that, at the ſight of this treaſure, nothing was thought of, by the Engliſh ſailors, but by what means it might beſt be conveyed to their boats; and, doubtleſs, it was not eaſy for Drake (who, conſidering their diſtance from the ſhore, and the number of their enemies, was afraid of being intercepted in their retreat) to hinder his men from encumbering themſelves with ſo much ſilver as might have retarded their march, and obſtructed the uſe of their weapons; however, by promiſing to lead them to the King's treaſury, where there were gold and jewels to a far greater value, and where the plunder was not only more portable, but nearer the ſhore, he perſuaded them to follow him (not, however, without every man his bar), and rejoin the main body in the market-place. Here he found his little troop much diſcouraged by the apprehenſion, that, if they ſtaid any longer, the enemy might gain poſſeſſion of their pinnaces, and that they ſhould then, without any means of ſafety, be left to ſtand alone againſt the whole force of that country. Drake, not indeed eaſily terrified, but ſufficiently cautious, ſent to the harbour to examine the ground of their fears, and to learn if the ſame panic had taken poſſeſſion of the men whom he had left to guard his boats; but, finding no foundation for theſe dreadful apprehenſions, he perſiſted in his firſt deſign, and led the troop forward to the royal treaſury. In their way there fell a violent ſhower of rain, which wet ſome of their bow-ſtrings, and extinguiſhed many of their matches (ſpring-locks for muſkets not being then invented); a miſfortune which might ſoon have been repaired, and which, perhaps, the enemy might ſuffer in common with them; but which, however, on this occaſion, very much embarraſſed them, as the delay produced by it repreſſed that ardour which, ſometimes, is only to be kept up by continual action.

It was in vain for Drake to expoſtulate, or to repreſent the diſgrace of returning in rags, after having the chief treaſure of the world within their power; he therefore reproached their cowardice, ſet before their eyes the imminent danger to which they would inevitably be expoſed, if they failed to behave like men anxious for glory, and zealous for the honour of their country. Animated by theſe incentives, they reſumed their former ſpirit, and, puſhing briſkly forward, the whole company followed till they arrived at the treaſury, which they inſtantly forced. Having thus far ſucceeded, Drake committed the care of the riches to his brother, and Oxenham, of Plymouth, (a man known afterwards for his bold adventures in the ſame parts) while he, with the main body, ſhould again return and reconnoitre the market-place, and diſperſe any parties of the Spaniards that might be forming into a body to oppoſe their progreſs. With this view, as he was advancing, his ſtrength ſuddenly failed him, and he fell down ſpeechleſs.

Then it was that his companions perceived a wound in his leg, that he received in the firſt rencounter, but hitherto concealed, leſt his men, eaſily diſcouraged, ſhould make their concern for his life a pretence for returning to their boats. Such, however, had been his loſs of blood, as was diſcovered upon nearer obſervation, that it had filled the prints of his footſteps; and it appeared ſcarce credible, that, after ſuch an effuſion, life ſhould remain. The braveſt were now willing to retire; neither deſire of honour, or of riches, was thought to prevail in any man over his regard for his leader.

Drake, whom cordials ſoon reſtored to his ſenſes, was the only man who could not be prevailed on to leave the enterprize unfiniſhed. It was to no purpoſe that they adviſed him to ſubmit to go on board to have his wound dreſſed, and promiſed to return with him to compleat their deſign. He well knew how impracticable it was to regain the opportunity when it was once loſt, and could eaſily foreſee that a reſpite of but a few hours would enable the Spaniards to recover from their conſternation, to aſſemble their forces, refit their batteries, and remove their treaſure. What he had undergone ſo much danger to obtain, was now in his hands, and the thoughts of leaving it untouched was too mortifying to be patiently borne; however, as there was little time for conſultation, and the ſame danger attended their ſtay in that perplexity and confuſion, as their return, they bound up his wound with his ſcarf, and, partly by force, partly by intreaty, they carried him back to the boats, in which, with what treaſure they were able to bring off, they all embarked by break of day. Then taking with them, out of the harbour, a ſloop laden with wines, they went to the Baſtimento's, an iſland about a league from the town, where they ſtaid two days, to recover the wounded men who had been hurt in the firſt rencounter, and to regale themſelves with the wines they had taken, and with the fruits that grew in great plenty in the gardens of that iſland.

During their ſtay here, there came over to that iſland a Spaniſh gentleman, ſent by the Governor with inſtructions to enquire whether the Captain was that Drake who had before been on their coaſt; whether the arrows with which many of their men were wounded were not poiſoned; and whether they wanted proviſions or other neceſſaries? The meſſenger, likewiſe, extolled their courage with the higheſt encomiums, and expreſſed his admiration of their daring undertaking. Drake, though he knew the civilities of an enemy are always to be ſuſpected, and that the meſſenger, amidſt all his profeſſions of regard, was no other than a ſpy, yet knowing that he had nothing to apprehend, treated him with the higheſt honours that his condition admitted of. In anſwer to his enquiries, he aſſured him, that he was the ſame Drake with whoſe character they were before acquainted; that he was a rigid obſerver of the laws of war, and that he never permitted the arrows diſcharged by his followers to be poiſoned. He diſmiſſed him with conſiderable preſents; and told him, that, though he had in part failed in this attempt, he would never deſiſt from his deſign of revenging the treachery of the Viceroy of Mexico, till he had ſhared with Spain the treaſures of America.

He then reſolved to return to the Iſle of Pines, where they had left their ſhips, and to conſult about the meaſures they were now to take; and, having arrived on the 1ſt of Auguſt at their former ſtation, they diſmiſſed Captain Rauſe, who, judging it unſafe to ſtay any longer on the coaſt, deſired to be no farther engaged in their deſigns. But Drake, not to be diverted from his purpoſe, after being cured of his wound, inquired of a negroe, whom he took on board at Nombre de Dios, the moſt wealthy ſettlements, and weakeſt parts of the coaſt, who adviſed the attack of Carthagena. This the Admiral ſeemed to approve: and, ſetting ſail without loſs of time, came to anchor, Auguſt 13, between Charecha and St. Barnard's, two iſlands at a little diſtance from the harbour of Carthagena. Then paſſing with his boats round the iſland, he entered the harbour, and in the mouth of it found a frigate with only an old man in it, who voluntarily informed him, that, about an hour before a pinnace had paſſed by, with ſails and oars, and all the appearance of expedition and importance; that, as ſhe paſſed, the crew on board her bid him take care of himſelf; and that, as ſoon as ſhe touched the ſhore, he heard the noiſe of cannon, fired as a warning, and ſaw the ſhipping of the port drawn up under the guns of the caſtle. The Captain who had himſelf heard the diſcharge of the artillery, was ſoon convinced that he was diſcovered; and that, therefore, nothing could be attempted there with any probability of ſucceſs. He therefore contented himſelf with taking a ſhip of Seville of 240 tons (which the relator of this voyage mentions as a very large ſhip), and two ſmall frigates, in which he found letters of advice from Nombre de Dios, intended to alarm that part of the coaſt.

Drake, now finding his pinnaces of great uſe, and not having a ſufficient number of ſailors for all his veſſels, was deſirous of deſtroying the Swan, the ſhip commanded by his brother, that the others might be better manned. This, neceſſary as it was, could not eaſily be done without diſguſting his company; who, having made ſeveral proſperous voyages in that veſſel, would naturally be averſe to her deſtruction.

Drake knew that nothing but the love of their leaders could animate his followers to encounter ſuch hardſhips as he was about to expoſe them to; and, therefore, rather choſe to bring his deſigns to paſs by artifice than by authority. He ſent for the carpenter of the Swan, took him into his cabin, and, having firſt engaged him to ſecrecy, ordered him in the middle of the night, to go down into the well, and bore three holes through the bottom, laying ſomething againſt them that might hinder the bubbling of the water from being heard. To this the carpenter, after ſome expoſtulation, conſented, and the next night performed his promiſe. In the morning, Auguſt the 15th, Drake, going out with his pinnace a fiſhing, rowed up to the Swan; and, having invited his brother to partake of his diverſion, inquired, with a negligent air, why the Swan was ſo deep in the water? Upon which, his brother, being alarmed, ſent down his ſteward to learn the cauſe, who returned immediately, with an account that the ſhip was leaky, and in danger of ſinking in a very little time. They had inſtantly recourſe to the pump; but, having laboured for five hours, and gained very little upon the water, they willingly, according to Drake's advice, ſet the veſſel on fire, and went on board the Paſcha.

Finding it now neceſſary to lie concealed for ſome time, till the Spaniards ſhould forget their danger, and remit their vigilance, they ſet ſail for the Sound of Darien, and, without approaching the coaſt, that their courſe might not be obſerved, they arrived there in ſix days.

This being a convenient place for their reception, both on account of privacy, it being out of the road of all trade, and as it was well ſupplied with wood, water, wild-fowl, hogs, deer, and all kind of proviſions, he ſtayed here fifteen days, to careen his veſſels, and refreſh his men, who worked interchangeably, on one day the one half, and on the next day the other half.

On the 5th of September, Drake left his brother with the ſhip at Darien, and ſet out with two ſmall veſſels towards the Rio Grand, which they reached in three days, and on the 9th of the ſame month were diſcovered by a Spaniard from the land, who believing them to be his countrymen, made a ſignal for them to come on ſhore, with which they very readily complied; but he, ſoon finding his miſtake, abandoned his plantation, where they found great plenty of proviſions, with which having laden their veſſels, they departed.

In the mean time, his brother, Captain John Drake, went, according to the directions that had been left him, in ſearch of the Symerons, or fugitive negroes, from whoſe aſſiſtance they now entertained hopes of compleating the ſucceſs of their voyage; and, touching upon the main land, by means of the negroes whom they had taken from Nombre de Dios, engaged two of the Symerons to come on board his ſhip, leaving two of his own men as hoſtages for their ſafe return. Thoſe men, having aſſured him of the affection of their nation, appointed an interview between Drake and their leaders. With this appointment Drake being made acquainted, he immediately quitted Port Plenty, ſo named by the Engliſh from the great ſtore of proviſions they had amaſſed at that place, and came, by the direction of the Symerons, into a ſecret bay, among beautiful iſlands covered with trees, which concealed their ſhips from obſervation, and where the channel was ſo narrow and rocky that it was impoſſible to enter it by night; ſo that there was no danger of a ſudden ſurprize. Here they met, and entered into engagements, which common enemies and common dangers preſerved from violation. But the firſt converſation informed the Engliſh that their expectations were not immediately to be gratified; for, upon their enquiries after the moſt probable means of acquiring gold and ſilver, the Symerons told them, that had they known ſooner the chief end of their expedition, they could eaſily have gratified them; but that during the rainy ſeaſon, which was now begun, they could not recover the treaſure, which they had taken from the Spaniards, out of the rivers in which they had concealed it. Drake, therefore, propoſing to wait in this place till the rains were paſſed, built with the aſſiſtance of the Symerons, a fort of earth and timber; and, leaving his brother and part of his company with the Symerons, ſet out with three pinnaces towards Rio de la Hacha, being of a ſpirit too active to lie ſtill patiently, even in a ſtate of plenty and ſecurity, and with the moſt probable expectations of immenſe riches.

In their way thither, they anchored within ſight of Carthagena without landing, and on the 17th of October took a Spaniſh bark, with which they entered the harbour in diſguiſe; but were ſoon accoſted by a Spaniſh gentleman whom they had ſometime before taken and ſet at liberty; who coming to them in a boat, as he pretended, without the knowledge of the Governor, made them great promiſes of friendſhip, and profeſſions of eſteem. But Drake, having waited till next morning without receiving the information he had been encouraged to expect, found that all this pretended kindneſs was no more than a ſtratagem to amuſe him, while the Governor was raiſing forces for his deſtruction.

This appeared more clearly on the 20th, when two frigates, well armed and manned, came out in the night with a view to ſurprize the pinnaces, and make priſoner of Drake: but theſe being diſcovered, and their deſign fruſtrated, Drake, when day-light approached, leapt intrepidly aſhore ſingle, in defiance of their troops, which hovered at a diſtance in the woods and on the hills, without ever venturing to advance within reach of the ſhot from the pinnaces. To leap, however, upon an enemy's coaſt, in ſight of a ſuperior force, only to ſhew how little they were feared, was an act that in theſe times would meet with little applauſe: but motives of policy might influence the conduct of Drake, and make that neceſſary then, which now appears a ridiculous bravado. Finding the whole country advertiſed of his attempts, and in arms to oppoſe him, he might make a feint only of landing to increaſe their fears, and encourage their alarms, that they might keep together till he ſhould aſſault them in their deſerted poſts; a ſtratagem which there is reaſon to think he put in practice, as he continued upon the coaſt till one of his veſſels had only a gammon of bacon and a ſmall quantity of bread on board for ſeventeen men, and till there was on board his own veſſel even a greater ſcarcity. But reſolution and ſucceſs reciprocally produce each other. They had not ſailed more than three leagues on their return to their ſhips before they fell in with and attacked a coaſting veſſel, which after ſome reſiſtance they took, and happily found it laden with excellent proviſions. He now determined to return to the Symerons, with whom, as has been ſaid, he left his brother, and part of his force; and to attempt, by their aſſiſtance and direction, to make his way over, and invade the Spaniards in the inland parts, where they would probably never dream of an enemy.

When they arrived at Port Diego, ſo named from the negroe who had procured them their intercourſe with the Symerons, they found Captain John Drake and one of his company dead, being killed in attempting, almoſt unarmed, to board a frigate well provided with all things neceſſary for its defence. The Captain was unwilling to make the attack, and repreſented to his company the madneſs of their propoſal; but, being over-borne by their clamours and importunities, to avoid the imputation of cowardice, complied to his deſtruction.

But this was not the only misfortune that befel this little company; for ſoon after many of them fell ill of the calenture, a malignant fever, very frequent in the hot climates, which carried off among ſeveral others, Joſeph Drake, another brother of the Commander.

While Drake was employed in the recovery of the ſick, the Symerons, who ranged the country for intelligence, brought him an account that the Spaniſh fleet was arrived at Nombre de Dios, the truth of which was confirmed by a pinnace which he ſent out to make obſervations. This, therefore, was the time for their journey, when the treaſures of the American mines were to be tranſported from Panama over land, to Nombre de Dios. He, therefere, by the direction of the Symerons, furniſhed himſelf with all things neceſſary; and, on the third of February in the following year, ſet out from Port Diego. Having loſt already twenty-eight of his company, and being under the neceſſity of leaving ſome to guard his ſhip, he took with him only 18 Engliſh and 30 Symerons, who not only ſerved as guards to ſhew the way, but as purveyors to procure proviſions.

They carried with them arrows for war, and arrows for hunting and fowling, the heads of which are proportioned in ſize to the game they are purſuing. For oxen, ſtags, or wild boars, they have arrows or javelins with heads weighing a pound and half, which they diſcharge near hand, and which ſcarcely ever fail of being mortal. Their ſecond ſort are about half as heavy as the other, and are generally ſhot from their bows; theſe are intended for ſmaller beaſts. With the third ſort, of which the heads are an ounce in weight, they kill birds. As this nation is in a ſtate which does not ſet them above continual cares for the immediate neceſſaries of life, he that can temper iron beſt is among them moſt eſteemed; and, perhaps, it would be happy for every nation, if honours and applauſes were as juſtly diſtributed, and he were moſt diſtinguiſhed whoſe talents were moſt uſeful to ſociety.

Every day by ſun-riſing they began to march, and having travelled till ten, reſted near ſome river till twelve; then travelling again till four, they repoſed all night in huts, or wigwams, which the Symerons had either left ſtanding in their former marches, or very readily erected for them, by ſetting up three or four poſts in the ground, and laying poles from one to another, in the form of a roof, which they covered with palmetto boughs and plaintain leaves. In the vallies, where they were ſheltered from the winds, they left three or four feet next the ground open; but, on the hills, where they were more expoſed to the chill blaſts of the night, they thatched them cloſe to the ground, leaving only a door for entrance, and a vent a-top in the middle for the ſmoke of the fire to eſcape.

In their march, they met not only with plenty of fruits upon the banks of the rivers, but with wild ſwine in abundance, of which the Symerons without difficulty killed, for the moſt part, as many as were wanted. One day, however, they found only an otter, and were about to dreſs it; at which Drake expreſſing his wonder, was aſked by Pedro, the chief Symeron, "Are you a man of war, and in want, and yet doubt whether this be meat that hath blood in it?" For which Drake in private rebuked him, ſays the relator; whether juſtly or not, it is not very important to determine; only it ſhews the genius of the times when ſuperſtition prevailed, and when the greateſt men were not wholly exempt from its influences.

On the third day of their march, and the 6th of February, they came to a town of the Symerons, ſituated on the ſide of a hill, and encompaſſed with a ditch and a mud wall, to ſecure it from any ſudden ſurprize. Here they lived with great neatneſs, and in plenty; and with ſome obſervation of religion, paying great reverence to the croſs; a practice which, the relator ſays, Drake prevailed upon them to change for the uſe of the Lord's Prayer; which however, in ſo ſhort a ſtay, is very unlikely. Indeed, it is added, that here they ſtrongly importuned Drake to prolong his abode, promiſing to double his force; but he, either thinking greater numbers unneceſſary, or fearing that, if any difference ſhould ariſe between them and his own men, he ſhould be overborne by numbers, he prudently declined their invitation, and their offer of additional aſſiſtance, and that in ſuch terms as expreſſed his eagerneſs to engage, and his confidence of ſucceſs from the bravery of his followers.

The Symerons continued to conduct him on his journey, and led him through rural ſhades and lofty woods, which ſheltered his people ſo effectually from the ſun, that their march was leſs toilſome than if they had travelled in England during the heat of ſummer. Four of the Symerons that were acquainted with the way, went about a mile before the main body, and cut off branches as marks to direct them, for there was no beaten track; then followed twelve Symerons, after whom came the Engliſh, with the two leaders; and the other Symerons cloſed the rear. In this order, on the 11th of February, they arrived at the top of a very high hill, on the ſummit of which grew a tree of a wonderful height and magnitude, in which they had cut ſteps for the more eaſy aſcent to the top, where there was a kind of alcove, to which they invited Drake, and from thence ſhewed him not only the North Sea, from whence they came, but the great Pacific Ocean, on which no Engliſh veſſel had ever yet ſailed. This proſpect exciting his natural curioſity and ardour for adventures and diſcoveries, he lifted up his hands to God, and implored his bleſſing upon the reſolution which he that inſtant formed of ſailing in an Engliſh ſhip on that immenſe ſea.

From this ſtupendous mountain they deſcended, after having feaſted their eyes with the grandeſt proſpect the earth can furniſh; and in two days came into an open level country, where their march was incommoded with the graſs, which is of a peculiar kind, conſiſting of a ſtalk like that of a bull-ruſh, and a blade on which the oxen and other cattle feed till it grows too high for them to reach: then it is that the natives ſet the whole on fire; and it is no uncommon thing to behold vallies of immenſe extent in a blaze at once; from whence the cattle fly in the utmoſt terror, and many periſh by the ſudden conflagration. It might be ſuppoſed, that this burning of the ſoil, would, in a hot climate, check the powers of vegetation, and that it would be years before the earth could recover its fertility; but it is juſt the contrary; the aſhes of the reeds are hardly extinguiſhed before a new verdure begins to appear; and before a month is elapſed, the whole valley, beheld at a diſtance, looks as green as ever; ſo aſtoniſhingly wonderful are the powers of Nature on this happy ſoil!

When they had arrived within a convenient diſtance of the road from Panama, they poſted themſelves in a grove or wood, near which the treaſure was to be conveyed from thence to Nombre de Dios. They then diſpatched a truſty Symeron, in the habit of a ſlave, properly inſtructed, to learn on what day the mules, on whoſe backs the treaſure is carried, were to ſet out. The man was ſo well qualified for the ſervice, and ſo induſtrious in the proſecution of it, that he ſoon returned with an account, that the treaſurer of Lima, intending to embark for Europe, would paſs the night following with eight mules laden with gold, and one with jewels; that it was their cuſtom to travel by night, and to reſt in the day, to avoid the heat; and that Venta Cruz was to be their firſt ſtage.

On this intelligence, they changed their ſituation, and immediately directed their march towards Venta Cruz, ſending, for ſecurity, two Symerons, habited as before, to examine the way, who, as they paſſed along, perceived, by the ſcent of a match, that ſome Spaniard was before them; and creeping ſilently forward, ſurprized a ſoldier aſleep upon the ground. They bound him, without offering any other violence, and brought him to Drake, who, upon enquiry, found that their ſpy had not deceived them in his intelligence. The ſoldier, having informed himſelf of the Captain's name, conceived ſuch a confidence in his well-known clemency, that, after having made an ample diſcovery of the treaſure that was now at hand, cautioned them likewiſe againſt being deceived by the recoes, or carriers, from Nombre de Dios, who met the others by the way, and who were hourly expected, with merchandize and proviſions, but without any gold. He cloſed his examination with an humble petition to Drake, that, when the expected treaſure ſhould fall into his hands, he would be graciouſly pleaſed to allow him as much of it as would maintain himſelf and his children during the remainder of their lives, ſince there would abundantly more arrive than he and his company could carry away. Drake agreed to his requeſt, upon condition that he led him to a place of ſecrecy, where he could conceal his men till the time of action, and where there was no danger of the mules paſſing by without being perceived. This the man did, and Drake placed his ambuſh accordingly.

Before the time expected, the men were properly refreſhed and inſtructed. Oxenham was appointed to head the Symerons, aſſiſted by Pedro their leader; and Drake was to command the Engliſh. The parties were then divided; the Engliſh took the right of the way in front, and the Symerons the left at a ſmall diſtance in the rear. In this manner they were poſted, that one company might be in readineſs to ſeize the hindmoſt mule at the ſame time that the other had ſeized the foremoſt; for the mules, it ſeems, being tied together, travel in a line, and are all guided by leading the firſt.

Every thing being now as well concerted as human prudence could direct, and the critical moment of action ſoon expected, they laid down and covered themſelves in the graſs, at about eighty or ninety paces diſtance from the road, that the noiſe of their breathing might not be heard by the guard that conveyed the treaſure.

They had not been more than an hour in this ſituation, when the bells of the mules on the left, coming from Venta Cruz, began to be heard: but previous orders having been given to meddle only with thoſe from Panama, thoſe from Venta Cruz were ſuffered to paſs unmoleſted. Unfortunately, however, it happened, that one Robert Pike, being heated with liquor, prevailed upon the man that was next him to creep forward with him, in order to be in readineſs to ſignalize themſelves, by being the firſt to ſeize the mules from Panama. At that inſtant, an officer, who accompanied the recoes from Venta Cruz, perceiving white moving in the graſs (for Drake had ordered all his company to put their ſhirts over their clothes, to diſtinguiſh them in the night), took the alarm, and, from a walk, was obſerved to puſh his horſe forward on a ſmart trot; and, before he had paſſed the hindmoſt ambuſcade, he was heard to ride along in a full gallop; but neither Drake, who commanded the Engliſh, nor Oxenham, who headed the Symerons, being apprized of the reaſon, had any thought of taking meaſures to intercept his journey.

It was not, however, long before the recoes from Panama came up, and were eagerly ſeized by the Engliſh in front, and ſecured by the Symerons, as had been agreed upon, in the rear; but, to their great mortification, they found two of them only loaded with ſilver, and the reſt with proviſions, ſix of thoſe from Panama, which carried the valuable burdens of gold and jewels, being ordered back, and the like number that came from Venta Cruz ſent forward in their room. The drivers were brought immediately to the Captain, and examined, who informed him, that a horſeman who met them riding in haſte had talked with the treaſurer, and adviſed him to ſend back his gold and jewels, and ſuffer thoſe only to proceed that were now in his [Drake's] power, that he might, by that cheap experiment, diſcover whether there was any ambuſh in the way.

That Drake was not leſs enraged than his followers at this diſappointment cannot be doubted; but there was now no time to be ſpent in complaints. The whole country, he knew, would ſoon be alarmed, and all the force of the Spaniards aſſembled to overwhelm him; he had no fortreſs to retire to; every man was his enemy; and every road better known to the Spaniards than to himſelf. This was an occaſion that demanded all the qualities of an hero, an intrepidity never to be ſhaken, and judgment never to be perplexed. He immediately conſidered all the circumſtances of his preſent ſituation, and found that it afforded him only the choice of marching back by the ſame way through which he came, or forcing his paſſage through Venta Cruz. He foreſaw many difficulties in marching back, beſides the hazard of having his ſhips ſeized before his return; he, therefore, determined to paſs forwards to Venta Cruz, before the enemy could be prepared to oppoſe him. He aſked Pedro the leader of the Symerons, whether he was reſolved to follow him? and, after having received from him the ſtrongeſt aſſurance that nothing ſhould ſeparate them, commanded his men to refreſh themſelves, and prepare to ſet forwards. When they came to the gates of the town, they diſmiſſed the mules they had made uſe of to carry their prize, and continued their march with as little noiſe as poſſible; yet they diſcovered that the alarm had been ſpread, and the forces of the town haſtily drawn together, to oppoſe their entrance. Drake, who was not unacquainted with the behaviour of that kind of military, received their firſt onſet, and then breaking in upon them, drove them before him without farther oppoſition, and was ſeconded by the Symerons, who could not be reſtrained from making plunder of the town: but Drake haſtened in perſon to rhe Spaniſh ladies, and aſſured them that no injuries ſhould be offered to them; ſo inſeparable is humanity from true courage.

Having thus broken the ſpirits, and ſcattered the forces of the Spaniards, he continued his march to the ſhips without any apprehenſion of danger, yet with great ſpeed, being very ſolicitous about the ſtate of the crew; ſo that he allowed his men, haraſſed as they were, but little time for ſleep or refreſhment; but by kind exhortations, gentle authority, and a chearful participation of all their hardſhips, prevailed upon them to bear without murmur, not only the toil of travelling, but, on ſome days, the pain of hunger. In this march, he owed much of his expedition to the aſſiſtance of the Symerons, who, being accuſtomed to the climate, and naturally robuſt, when any of the Engliſh fainted by the way, two of them would carry him between them for miles together. Nor was their valour leſs than their humanity, after they had learned from their Engliſh companions to deſpiſe the fire-arms of the Spaniards.

When they were within five leagues of the ſhips, they found a town built in their abſence by the Symerons, at which Drake conſented to halt, ſending a Symeron to the ſhips with his gold toothpick as a token, which, though the maſter knew it, was not ſufficient to gain the meſſenger credit, till, upon examination, he found that the Captain, having ordered him to regard no meſſage without his hand-writing, had engraven his name upon it with the point of his knife; he then ſent the pinnace up the river, which they met, and afterwards ſent to the town for thoſe whoſe wearineſs had made them unable to march farther.

On February the 23d, the whole company was reunited; and Drake, whoſe good or ill ſucceſs never prevailed over his piety, celebrated their meeting with thanks to God.

Drake, not yet diſcouraged, ſoon turned his thoughts to new projects; and, without languiſhing in melancholy reflections upon paſt miſcarriages, employed himſelf in forming ſchemes for repairing them. Eager of action, and acquainted with man's nature, he never ſuffered idleneſs to infect his followers with cowardice; but kept them from ſinking under any diſappointment, by directing their attention to ſome new enterprize.

Upon conſultation with his own men, and the Symerons, he found them divided in their opinions; ſome declaring, that, before they engaged in any new attempt, it was neceſſary to increaſe their ſtores of proviſions; and others urging that the ſhips, in which the Spaniſh treaſure was embarked, ſhould be immediately attempted. The Symerons propoſed a third plan, and adviſed them to undertake another journey over-land, to the houſe of one Pezoro, near Veragua, whoſe ſlaves brought him every day more than 200 pounds ſterling from the mines, which he heaped together in a ſtrong ſtone houſe, that might, by the help of the Engliſh, be eaſily forced. But Drake, being unwilling to fatigue his followers with another journey over land, determined to ſteer a middle courſe between theſe variable opinions; and, manning his two pinnaces, the Bear and the Minion, he ſent John Oxenham in the Bear towards Tolu, to ſeek proviſions; and went himſelf in the Minion to the Cabezes, to endeavour to intercept the treaſure that was to be tranſported from Veragua and that coaſt, to the fleet at Nombre de Dios; firſt diſmiſſing with preſents thoſe Symerons who deſired to return to their wives; and ordering thoſe that choſe to remain with him to be kindly entertained. Drake took at the Cabezes a frigate of Veragua, the pilot of which informed him, that there was in the harbour of Veragua a ſhip freighted with more than a million of gold; to which he offered to conduct him, being well acquainted with the ſoundings, if he might be allowed his ſhare of the prize; ſo much was his avarice ſuperior to his honeſty.

Drake, after ſome deliberation, complying with the pilot's conditions, ſailed towards the harbour; but had no ſooner entered the mouth of it than he heard the report of artillery, which was anſwered by others at a greater diſtance; upon which the pilot told them that they were diſcovered, this being the ſignal appointed by the Governor to alarm the coaſt.

Drake now thought it convenient to return to the ſhips, that he might enquire the ſucceſs of the other pinnace, which he found with a frigate that ſhe had taken with twenty-eight fat hogs, 200 hens, and a great ſtore of maize or Indian corn. The veſſel itſelf was ſo ſtrong and well built, that he fitted it for war, determining to make a ſecond attempt on Nombre de Dios.

On March the 21ſt, he ſet ſail with the new frigate and the Bear towards the Cabezes, at which he arrived in little more than two days, and found there one Totu, a Frenchman, with a ſhip of war. Having ſupplied his ſhip with water, and other articles of which he was in want, the Captain deſired to join the Admiral in his new attempt, to which Drake conſented, and admitted him to accompany him with 20 of his men, ſtipulating to allow them a proportional ſhare of whatever booty they ſhould acquire: yet they were not without ſome ſuſpicions of danger from this new ally, he having eighty men, and they being now reduced to thirty-one. Manning, however, the pinnaces, they ſet ſail for Rio Franciſco, at which place they arrived on the 29th of March. Here they landed; and, having diſmiſſed their pinnaces for fear of diſcovery, and ordered them to repair to the ſame place on the 4th day following, they began their march through the woods towards Nombre de Dios, and continued it with ſuch ſilence and regularity as ſurprized the French, who did not imagine the Symerons ſo diſcreet and obedient to command as they appeared to be, and were therefore in perpetual anxiety about the fidelity of their guides: nor did the Symerons treat the Frenchmen with that ſubmiſſion and regard which they paid to the Engliſh, whoſe bravery and conduct they had already tried. At length, after a laborious march of more than ſeven leagues, they began to hear the hammers of the carpenters in the bay, it being the cuſtom in that hot ſeaſon to work in the night, and to reſt in the day; and, in a ſhort time, they perceived the approach of the recoes, or droves of mules, from Panama. They now no longer doubted that their labour would be rewarded, and every man imagined himſelf ſecure from poverty for the remaining part of his life; they, therefore, when the mules came up, ruſhed out, and ſeized them with an alacrity proportioned to their expectations. The three droves conſiſted of one hundred and nine mules, each of which carried 300 pounds weight of ſilver. It was to little purpoſe that the ſoldiers, ordered to convoy the treaſure, attempted reſiſtance. After a ſhort combat, in which the French Captain and one of the Symerons were wounded, it appeared with how much greater ardour men are animated by intereſt than fidelity.

As it was poſſible for them to carry away but a ſmall part of this treaſure, after having wearied themſelves with hiding it in the thickets, they determined to return by the ſame way they came; and, without being purſued, they traverſed the woods, where the French Captain, being diſabled by his wound, was obliged to ſtay, two of his company continuing with him. When they had gone forward about two leagues, the Frenchmen miſſed another of their company, who, upon enquiry, was known to be intoxicated with wine, and ſuppoſed to have loſt himſelf in the woods by neglecting to obſerve the guides; but common prudence not allowing them to hazard the whole company by too much ſolicitude for a ſingle life, they travelled on towards Rio Franciſco, at which they arrived on the 3d of April; and, looking out for their pinnaces, were ſurprized with the ſight of ſeven Spaniſh ſloops, and immediately concluded that ſome intelligence of their motions had been carried to Nombre de Dios, and that theſe veſſels had been fitted out to purſue them, which might undoubtedly have overpowered the pinnaces and their feeble crews. Nor did their ſuſpicions ſtop here; but immediately it occurred to them, that their men might be compelled by torture to diſcover where their frigate and ſhip were ſtationed, which being weakly manned, and without the preſence of the chief Commander, would fall into their hands almoſt without reſiſtance, and all poſſibility of eſcaping be entirely cut off. Theſe reflections ſunk the whole company into deſpair; and every one, inſtead of endeavouring to break through the difficulties that ſurrounded him, reſigned himſelf up to his ill fortune; when Drake, whoſe intrepidity was never to be ſhaken, and whoſe reaſon was never to be ſurprized or embarraſſed, repreſented to them, that, though the Spaniards ſhould have made themſelves maſters of the pinnaces, they might yet be hindered from diſcovering the ſhips. He put them in mind, that the pinnaces could not be taken, the men examined, their examinations compared, their reſolutions formed, their veſſels ſent out, and the ſhips taken in an inſtant. Some time muſt neceſſarily be ſpent before the laſt blow could be ſtruck; and, if that time were not neglectfully loſt, it might be poſſible for ſome of them to reach the ſhips before the enemy, and direct them to change their ſtation.

They were animated with this diſcourſe, by which they obſerved that their leader was not without hope; but, when they came to look more narrowly into their ſituation, they were unable to conceive upon what it was founded. To paſs by land was impoſſible, as the way lay over high mountains, thick woods, and deep rivers: they had not a ſingle boat in their power, ſo that paſſage by water ſeemed equally impracticable. But Drake determined upon the only means of ſucceſs which their condition afforded them; and, ordering his men to make a raft out of the trees that were then floating in the river, offered himſelf to put out to ſea upon it, and chearfully aſked who would accompany him. John Owen, John Smith, and two Frenchmen, who were willing to ſhare his fortune, embarked with him on the raft, which was fitted out with a ſail made of the biſcuit ſacks in which they had carried their proviſions, and formed a kind of oar to direct its courſe inſtead of a rudder. Then, having comforted the reſt with aſſurances of his regard for them, and reſolution to leave nothing unattempted for their deliverance, he put off; and, after having with much difficulty ſailed three leagues, deſcried two pinnaces haſting towards him, which, upon a nearer approach, he diſcovered to be his own; and, hailing them, propoſed that they ſhould anchor behind a point that jutted out into the ſea, while he put to ſhore; and, croſſing the land on foot, was received by his company with that ſatisfaction which is only known to thoſe who have been acquainted with dangers and diſtreſſes.

The ſame night they rowed ſilently to Rio Franciſco, where they embarked the whole company, with what treaſure they had been able to bring with them through the woods; then ſailing back with the utmoſt expedition, they returned to their frigate, and ſoon after to their ſhip, where Drake divided the gold and ſilver equitably between the French and Engliſh.

Here they ſpent fourteen days in fitting out their frigate more completely; during which time, the Frenchmen, with their ſhip, lay among the Cabezes, while twelve Engliſh and ſixteen Symerons travelled once more into the country, as well to recover the French Captain, whom they had left wounded, as to bring away the treaſure which they had hid in the woods. Drake, whom his company would not ſuffer to hazard his perſon in another land expedition, went with them to Rio Franciſco, where he found one of the Frenchmen who had ſtaid to attend their Captain, and was informed by him, upon his enquiries after his fortune, that, half an hour after their ſeparation, the Spaniards came upon them, and eaſily ſeized upon the wounded Captain; but that his companion might have eſcaped with him, had he not preferred money to life; for ſeeing him throw down a box of jewels that retarded him, he could not forbear taking it up, and, with that and the gold which he had already, was ſo loaded that he could not eſcape. With regard to the bars of gold and ſilver which they had concealed in the ground, he informed them that 200 men had been employed in ſearching for them. The people, however, either miſtruſting the informer's veracity, or confident that what they had hidden could not be found, purſued their journey; but, upon their arrival at the place, found the ground turned up for two miles round, and were able to recover no more than 13 bars of ſilver, and a ſmall quantity of gold. They diſcovered afterwards, that the Frenchman who was left drunk in the woods, falling into the hands of the Spaniards, was tortured by them till he confeſſed where Drake and his company had concealed their plunder; ſo fatal to Drake's expedition was the drunkenneſs of his followers.

Then, diſmiſſing the French, they paſſed by Carthagena with their colours flying, and ſoon after took a frigate laden with proviſions and honey, which they valued as a great reſtorative, and then ſailed away to the Cabezes. Here they ſtaid about a week to careen their veſſels, and fit them for a long voyage, determining to ſet ſail for England; and that the faithful Symerons might not go away unrewarded, broke up their pinnaces, and gave them the iron, the moſt valuable preſent in the world to a nation whoſe only employments were war and hunting, and amongſt whom ſhow and luxury had no place. Pedro, their Captain, being deſired by Drake to go through the ſhips, and to chuſe what he moſt deſired, fixed his eye upon a ſcymetar ſet with jewels, which the French Captain had preſented to Drake for the proviſions with which he had ſupplied him, and, being unwilling to aſk for ſo valuable a preſent, offered for it four large quoits, or thick plates of gold, which he had formerly concealed in the waters; but Drake, deſirous to ſhew him, that fidelity ſeldom is without a recompence, gave it him with the higheſt profeſſions of ſatisfaction and eſteem. Pedro, receiving it with the utmoſt gratitude, informed him, that by beſtowing it he had conferred greatneſs and honour upon him; for, by preſenting it to his King, he doubted not of obtaining the higheſt rank among the Symerons. He then perſiſted in his reſolution of giving him the gold, which was generouſly thrown by Drake into the common ſtock; for he ſaid that thoſe at whoſe expences he had been ſent out, ought to ſhare in all the gain of the expedition, whatever pretence cavil and chicanery might ſupply for the appropriation of any part of it. Thus was Drake's character conſiſtent with itſelf; he was equally ſuperior to avarice and fear; and, through whatever danger he might go in queſt of gold, he thought it not valuable enough to be obtained by artifice or diſhoneſty.

They now forſook the coaſt of America, which for many months they had kept in perpetual alarms, having taken more than 100 veſſels of all ſizes between Carthagena and Nombre de Dios, of which they never deſtroyed any, unleſs they were fitted out againſt them, nor ever detained the priſoners longer than was neceſſary for their own ſecurity or concealment, providing for them in the ſame manner as for themſelves, and protecting them from the malice of the Symerons; a behaviour which humanity dictates, and which, perhaps, even policy cannot diſapprove. He muſt, certainly, meet with obſtinate oppoſition who makes it equally dangerous to yield as to reſiſt, and who leaves his enemies no hopes but from victory.

What riches they acquired is not particularly related; but, it is not to be doubted, that the plunder of ſo many veſſels, together with the ſilver ſeized at Nombre de Dios, muſt amount to a very great ſum, though the ſhare that was allotted to Drake was not ſufficient to lull him into effeminacy, or to repreſs his natural inclination to adventures. They arrived at Plymouth on the 9th of Auguſt, 1573, on Sunday in the afternoon; and ſo much were the people delighted with the news of their arrival, that they left the preacher, and ran in crouds to the key with ſhouts and congratulations.

Drake having, in the voyage juſt mentioned, had a view of the South Sea, as has already been related, and formed a reſolution to ſail upon it, did not ſuffer himſelf to be diverted from his deſign by the proſpect of any difficulties that might obſtruct the attempt, nor any danger that might attend the execution. His reputation was ſufficiently eſtabliſhed to remove all obſtacles (for obſtacles he met with), and to obviate the motives that produced them; but it was not till the year 1577, that he was able to aſſemble a force proportioned to his deſign, and to obtain a commiſſion from the Queen, by which he was conſtituted Captain-General of a ſquadron, conſiſting of five veſſels, of which the Pelican, of 100 tons, was commanded by himſelf as Admiral; the Elizabeth, of 80 tons, Vice-Admiral, commanded by John Winter; the Marygold, of 30 tons, by John Thomas; the Swan, of 50 tons, by John Cheſter; and the Chriſtopher, of 15 tons, by Thomas Moon, the honeſt carpenter, who, on the former voyage, deſtroyed the Swan by Drake's direction.

Theſe ſhips, equipped partly by himſelf, and partly by other private adventurers, he manned with 164 ſtout ſailors, and furniſhed with ſuch proviſions as he thought neceſſary for ſo long and hazardous a voyage: nor did he confine his concern to the ordinary equipment of his ſhips with naval ſtores and military preparations, but carried with him whatever he thought might contribute to raiſe, in thoſe nations with which he ſhould have intercourſe, the higheſt ideas of the arts and grandeur of his native country. He, therefore, not only procured a complete ſervice of ſilver-plate for his own table, and furniſhed the cook-room with many veſſels of the ſame metal, but engaged ſeveral muſicians to accompany him; rightly judging, that nothing would more excite the admiration of ſavages, or uncivilized people, than the powers of muſic. On this occaſion, however, it muſt not be concealed, that he engaged his men on the falſe pretence of ſailing to Alexandria; and that it was not till after he arrived on the coaſt of Brazil, that he acquainted them with his deſign of paſſing the Straits, and entering the South Seas.

On the 15th of Nov. 1577, about three in the afternoon he ſailed from Plymouth; but a heavy ſtorm (ſuch as no man on board had ever ſeen before), taking him almoſt as ſoon as out of port, forced him into Falmouth, where he ſtaid till the 13th of December to refit. He then took his departure, and on the 25th of the ſame month fell in with the coaſt of Barbary, and on the 27th caſt anchor at the iſland of Mogadore, about one mile diſtant from the main, between which and the iſle they found a very convenient harbour. Here he began to build the pinnaces, the frames of which he brought ready from Plymouth to be put together, as in his former voyage. While the carpenters were employed in this ſervice, they were diſcovered by the Moors that inhabit thoſe coaſts, who ſent two of their Chiefs on board Drake's ſhip, receiving at the ſame time two of his company as hoſtages. Theſe men he not only treated in the moſt hoſpitable manner, but preſented them with ſuch things as they appeared moſt to admire; it being with him an eſtabliſhed maxim to endeavour to ſecure in every country a kind reception to ſuch Engliſhmen as ſhould come after him, by treating the inhabitants with kindneſs and generoſity.

But his friendly intercourſe was in appearance ſoon broken; for, on the next day, obſerving the Moors making ſignals from the land, they ſent out their boat, as before, to fetch them to the ſhip; and one John Frye leapt aſhore, intending to become an hoſtage, as on the former day, when immediately he was ſeized by the Moors; and the crew obſerving great numbers ſtart from behind a rock with weapons in their hands, thought it next to madneſs to attempt his reſcue, and, therefore, provided for their own ſecurity by returning to the ſhip. Frye was mounted on horſeback, and immediately carried up into the country to their King, who being then in continual expectation of an invaſion from Portugal, ſuſpected that theſe ſhips were ſent only to reconnoitre the coaſt, and diſcover a proper harbour for a more formidable fleet; but, being informed who they were, and whither they were bound, not only diſmiſſed his captive, but made large offers of friendſhip and aſſiſtance; which Drake, however, did not ſtay to receive; but being diſguſted at this breach of the laws of commerce, and apprehending further treachery, he quitted the coaſt on December 31, and on the 17th of January arrived at Cape Blanco, having in their paſſage taken ſeveral Spaniſh veſſels, and found one in the harbour with no men.

Here, while Drake was employing his men in catching fiſh, and training them for land as well as ſea ſervice, the natives came down to the ſea-ſide with ambergreaſe and other gums, to traffic for ſuch commodities as they then ſtood moſt in need of, and with which Drake very generouſly ſupplied them.

Having rifled and diſcharged the Spaniſh ſhips, which they had taken, they ſailed on the 22d of January towards the iſles of Cape Verd, and on the 27th came to anchor before Mayo, hoping to furniſh themſelves with freſh water; but, having landed, they found the chief town deſerted; and, marching farther up the country, ſaw the vallies extremely fruitful, and abounding with ripe figs, cocoas, and plantains, but could by no means prevail upon the inhabitants to converſe or traffic with them. However, they were ſuffered by them to range the country without moleſtation, but found no water, except at ſuch a diſtance from the ſea, that the labour of carrying it to their ſhips was greater than it was at that time neceſſary for them to undergo. Salt, had they wanted it, might have been obtained with leſs trouble, being left by the ſea upon the ſands, and hardened by the ſun, during the ebb, in ſuch quantities, that the chief traffic of this iſland is carried on by means of it. Thus, though the iſland abounded with goats, poultry, and delicious fruits of various kinds, they could procure none of any conſequence, becauſe the Portugueſe, who were then in poſſeſſion of it, were prohibited all commerce with ſtrangers on very ſevere penalties.

On the 31ſt of January they made St. Jago, an iſland at that time divided between the natives and the Portugueſe, who, firſt entering theſe iſlands under the ſhew of traffic, by degrees eſtabliſhed themſelves, claimed a ſuperiority over the natives, and haraſſed them with ſuch cruelty, that they obliged them either to fly to the woods and mountains, where many of them periſhed with hunger, or to take arms againſt their oppreſſors, and, under the inſuperable diſadvantages with which they contended, to die almoſt without a battle. Such treatment had the natives of St. Jago received, which had driven them into the rocky parts of the iſland, from whence they made incurſions into the plantations of the Portugueſe, ſometimes with loſs, but generally with that ſucceſs which deſperation produces; ſo that the Portugueſe were in continual alarms, and lived with the natural conſequences of guilt, terror, and anxiety. They were wealthy but not happy, and poſſeſſed the iſland, but did not enjoy it.

In paſſing this iſland, the garriſon of the fort diſcharged three pieces of cannon at them, but without effect. For this inſult they took a Portugueſe ſhip laden with wines, the pilot of which they retained, but ſet the reſt of the crew on ſhore. This man, Nuno da Sylva by name, was very uſeful to them in traverſing the coaſt of Brazil, being acquainted with the bays and harbours where freſh water and proviſions were to be obtained. Him they continued to detain captive, though they broke up his ſhip before they entered the Straits, till they were about to leave the coaſts of Peru, when, finding him no longer ſerviceable, they ſet him on ſhore in the Spaniſh ſettlements, from whence he afterwards returned home, and wrote an account of the voyage as far as he went, which is thought by many to be very authentic.

It was ſoon after the capture of this ſhip that a difference aroſe between Drake and his friend, Mr. Thomas Doughty, which, gradually increaſing, grew into inveteracy, and terminated at laſt in the death of the latter. Doughty was a gentleman and a ſcholar, whom Drake had perſuaded to embark in this expedition to better his fortune; and to whom, till the incident happened which we are about to relate, he had ſhewn particular marks of favour and friendſhip; but trivial beginnings are often productive of the moſt important events.

The ground of the malevolence with which Drake purſued Doughty under the colour of juſtice, has hitherto lain concealed from the public eye; but we ſhall now trace it, ſtep by ſtep, till the fatal period when the unhappy victim was brought to the block, and when Drake, by ſuffering revenge to triumph over virtue, left an indelible blot upon his character, which no panegyric can wipe away.

Among the Harleian manuſcripts there is a written account of this voyage, in which the author has particularly had his eye on this tranſaction. As he was an eye-witneſs of all that paſſed, his relation will beſt appear in his own words: "Captain Drake, ſays he, having boarded the ſhip of Nuno da Sylva, and feaſted his eyes with the view of the commodities, he committed the cuſtody and well-ordering of this prize unto Maſter Thomas Doughty, as his good and eſteemed friend, praying him in any caſe to ſee good order kept, and whoſo ſhould be the breaker thereof, to give him to underſtand of any ſuch without exception of any.

"It thus chanced that General Drake had a brother (not the wiſeſt man in chriſtendom), whom he put into this ſaid prize, as alſo divers others. This Thomas Drake, as one more greedy of prey than covetous of honeſty or credit, offered himſelf the firſt and only man to break the General his brother's commandment; for he, contrary to his ſtrict prohibition, did not only break open a cheſt, but did dive ſuddenly into the ſame, that Maſter Doughty knew not how to diſcharge himſelf againſt the General but by revealing it unto him; yet firſt Maſter Doughty called Thomas Drake unto him, and ſhewed him his great folly in this behalf, who, yielding unto his fault, prayed Maſter Doughty to be good unto him, and keep it from the General; but he briefly told him he could not keep it, but he would deliver it with what favour he might. So at the General's next coming on board the prize, Maſter Doughty opened the ſame unto him, who preſently falling into a rage, not without ſome great oaths, ſeemed to wonder what Thomas Doughty ſhould mean to touch his brother; and did, as it were, aſſure himſelf that he had ſome farther meaning in this, and that he meant to ſtrike at his credit, and he would not, or could not, by God's life (as he phraſed it) ſuffer it. From this time forth grudges did ſeem to grow between them from day to day, to the no ſmall admiration of the reſt of the company, although ſome envying his former favour and friendſhip with the General, and ſome, I think, doubting that his capacity would reach too far to the aggrandizing his credit in the country, talked variouſly of the matter; however, Maſter Doughty was put again into the Pelican. Thus grudges, although they had not long reſted, yet were they grown to great extremities, ſuch and ſo great as a man of any judgment would verily think that his love towards him in England was more in brave words than hearty good will or friendly love." So writes our author.

In proceeding on their voyage, they came within ſight of Fogo, an iſland ſo called from a mountain about the middle of it continually burning, and like the reſt inhabited by the Portugueſe. Two leagues to the ſouth of Fogo lies Brava, which has received its name from its fertility, abounding with all kinds of fruits, and watered with great numbers of ſprings and brooks, but, having neither harbour nor anchorage, was at that time uninhabited.

Drake, having ſent out his boats with plumets to ſound, was not able to find any ground about it; and it is reported, that many experiments of the like kind have been made without ſucceſs. However, he took in water ſufficient; and on the 2d of Feb. ſet ſail for the coaſt of Brazil.

On February the 17th, he paſſed the equator, after being becalmed near three weeks, during which time they had dreadful ſtorms of thunder with lightning, but without any memorable accident, till, continuing their voyage, on March 28, one of their veſſels with 28 men, and the greateſt part of the freſh water on board, was, to their great diſcouragement, ſeparated from them; but their perplexity laſted not long, for on the next day they diſcovered her, and ſhe again joined her aſſociates. In their long courſe, which gave them opportunities of obſerving ſeveral animals, both in the air and water, at that time very little known, nothing entertained or ſurprized them more than the flying-fiſh, which is nearly of the ſame ſize with a herring, and has fins of the length of his whole body, by the help of which, when he is purſued by the benito (a large kind of mackarel), as ſoon as he finds himſelf upon the point of being taken, he ſprings up into the air, and flies forward as long as his wings continue wet, moiſture being, as it ſeems, neceſſary to make them pliant and moveable; and, when they become dry and ſtiff, he falls down into the water, unleſs ſome veſſel intercepts him, and dips them again for a ſecond flight. This unhappy animal is not only purſued by fiſhes in his natural element, but attacked in the air, where he hopes for ſecurity, by the don or ſpar kite, a great bird that preys upon fiſh; and their ſpecies muſt certainly be deſtroyed, were not their increaſe ſo great, that the young fry, in one part of the year, covers that part of the ſea.

There is another fiſh, named the cuttle, of which whole ſhoals will ſometimes riſe at once out of the water, and of which a great multitude fell into their ſhip.

At length, having ſailed without ſight of land for 54 days, they arrived April the 5th on the coaſt of Brazil. "In the mean while, you ſhall hear, ſays our author, what befel: Maſter Drake, never leaving to ſeek and force upon Maſter Doughty, found, in the end, this opportunity to degrade him. Whether of purpoſe, or his own voluntary, it chanced John Brown the trumpet to go aboard the Pelican, where, for that he had been long abſent, the company offered him a hobby, among the which, Maſter Doughty putting in his hand, ſaid, Fellow John, you ſhall have in my hand, although it be but light amongſt the reſt; and ſo laying his hand on his buttock, which perceived of John Trumpet, he began to ſwear wounds and blood to the company to let him looſe, for they are not all (ſaid he) the General's friends that be here; and with that turned him to Maſter Doughty, and ſaid unto him (as himſelf preſently after told me in the prize) God's wounds, Doughty, what doſt thou mean to uſe this familiarity with me, conſidering thou art not the General's friend; who anſwered him, What, fellow John! what moves you to this, and to uſe theſe words to me, that am as good and as ſure a friend to my good General as any in this place, and I defy him that ſhall ſay the contrary. But is the matter thus? why yet, fellow John, I pray thee let me live until I come into England. Thus, John Brown coming again preſently aboard the prize, had not talked any long time with the General, but the boat went aboard and reſted not, but preſently brought Maſter Doughty to the prize's ſide, General Drake ſitting in the midſt of his men, who hearing the boat at the ſhip's ſide ſtood up, and Maſter Doughty offering to take hold of the ſhip to have entered, ſaid the General, Stay there Thomas Doughty, for I muſt ſend you to another place, and with that commanded the mariners to row him on board the fly-boat, ſaying unto him, it was a place more fit for him than that from whence he came: but Maſter Doughty, although he craved to ſpeak with the General, could not be permitted, neither would he hear him." Soon after this, the fly-boat here mentioned, (called the Swan), was ſeparated from them by a violent ſtorm, "in all whoſe abſence, ſays our author, the General never ceaſed to inveigh againſt Maſter Doughty, terming him a conjurer and a witch; and, at any time when we had foul weather, he would ſay that Tom. Doughty was the occaſion thereof, and that it came out of Tom. Doughty's capcaſe, and would avouch the ſame with oaths."

After the ſtorm abovementioned, they ſteered near the land to the ſouthward; and on the 14th anchored under a cape, which they afterwards called Cape Joy, becauſe in two days the veſſel that was miſſing returned to them. Here they refreſhed their weary crews, and took in freſh water; but, finding the country, though pleaſant, without inhabitants, they weighed anchor, and, by running a little farther to the ſouthward, found a ſmall harbour between a rock and the main, where the rock breaking the force of the ſea, the ſhips rode at anchor with the greateſt ſecurity. On this rock they killed ſeveral ſeals, keeping them for food, and found them wholeſome, though not palatable.

Their next courſe was directed to the great river of Plate, in 36 deg. of ſouth latitude; but, not finding anchorage in that river, they ſailed in queſt of a more convenient harbour, when they were ſurprized by a ſudden ſtorm, in which they again loſt ſight of the fly-boat. This accident determined Drake to contract the number of his ſhips, that he might not only avoid the inconvenience of ſuch frequent ſeparations, but eaſe the labour of his men, by having more hands in each veſſel. For this purpoſe he ſailed along the coaſt; and on May the 13th diſcovered a bay, which, though it promiſed fair, he durſt not enter before it was examined: he, therefore, ordered his boat to be hoiſted out, and, taking the line into his own hand, went on ſounding the paſſage till he was three leagues from his ſhip, when on a ſudden the weather changed, the ſkies blackened, the wind roſe, and all the uſual forerunners of a ſtorm began to threaten them. Nothing was now thought of but the means of returning to the ſhip; but the thickneſs of the fog intercepting it from their ſight, made the attempt almoſt impracticable. In this perplexity, which Drake was not more ſenſible of than thoſe whom he had left in the ſhips, nothing was to be omitted, however dangerous, that might tend to extricate them from it. Captain Thomas, therefore, having the lighteſt veſſel, ſteered boldly into the bay, and, taking the Admiral on board, dropt anchor, and lay out of danger; while the reſt that were in the open ſea ſuffered much from the tempeſt, and the Mary (the Portugueze prize) was driven before the wind. The others, as ſoon as the tempeſt was over, diſcovering by the fires that were made on ſhore where Drake was, repaired to him.

Here they met with no inhabitants, though there were ſeveral wigwams or huts ſtanding, in which they found ſome dried fowls, and among them oſtriches, of which the thighs were as large as thoſe of a ſheep. Theſe birds are too unwieldy to riſe from the ground; but with the help of their wings, or rather ſtumps, they run ſo ſwiftly, that the Engliſh could never come near enough to ſhoot any of them.

Not finding this harbour convenient, or well ſtored with wood and water, they left it on the 15th of May, and on the 18th entered another much ſafer and more commodious, which they no ſooner arrived at than Drake ſent Winter to the ſouthward in ſearch of thoſe ſhips that were abſent, and immediately after ſailed himſelf to the northward, and happily meeting with the Swan, conducted her to the reſt of the fleet; after which, in purſuance of his former reſolution, he ordered her to be broken up, preſerving the iron work for a future ſupply. The other veſſel which was ſeparated in the late ſtorm, could not be diſcovered. While they were thus employed upon an iſland about a mile from the main land, to which, at low water there was a paſſage on foot, they were diſcovered by the natives, who appeared upon a hill at a diſtance, dancing, and holding up their hands, as beckoning to the Engliſh to come to them, which Drake obſerving, ſent out a boat with knives, bells, and bugles, and ſuch things as by their uſefulneſs or novelty he imagined would be agreeable. As ſoon as the Engliſh landed, they obſerved two men running towards them as deputed by the company, who came within a little diſtance, and then ſtanding ſtill, could not be prevailed upon to come nearer. The Engliſh, therefore, tied their preſents to a pole, which they fixed in the ground, and then retiring, ſaw the Indians advance, who taking what they found upon the pole, left in return ſuch feathers as they wore upon their heads, with a ſmall bone about ſix inches in length, carved round the top and burniſhed. Drake obſerving their inclination to friendſhip and traffic, advanced with ſome of his company towards the hill, upon ſight of whom the Indians ranged themſelves in a line from eaſt to weſt, and one of them running from one end of the rank to the other, backwards and forwards, bowed himſelf towards the riſing and ſetting of the ſun, holding his hands over his head, and, frequently ſtopping in the middle of the rank, leaped up towards the moon, which then ſhone directly over their heads; thus calling the ſun and moon, the deities they worſhip, to witneſs to the ſincerity of their profeſſions of peace and friendſhip. While this ceremony was performing, Drake and his company aſcended the hill, to the apparent terror of the Indians, whoſe apprehenſions when the Engliſh perceived, they peaceably retired, which gave the natives ſo much encouragement, that they came forward immediately, and exchanged their arrows, feathers, and bones, for ſuch trifles as were offered them. Thus they traded for ſome time; but by frequent intercourſe, finding that no violence was intended, they became familiar, and mingled with the Engliſh without the leaſt diſtruſt. They go quite naked, except the ſkin of ſome animals, which they throw over their ſhoulders when they walk or lie in the open air. Tey roll up their hair, which is very long, with a plume of oſtrich's feathers, and uſually ſtick their arrows in it, that they may not encumber them, they being made with reeds headed with flint, and therefore not heavy. Their bows are about an ell long. Their chief ornament is paint, which they uſe of ſeveral kinds, delineating generally upon their bodies the figures of the ſun and moon in honour of their deities.

It is obſervable, that the inhabitants of moſt nations amongſt whom the uſe of cloaths is unknown, paint their bodies. Such was the practice of the inhabitants of our own country. To this cuſtom did our earlieſt enemies, the Picts, owe their denomination. As it is not probable that caprice or fancy ſhould be uniform, there muſt be doubtleſs ſome reaſon for a practice ſo general, and prevailing in diſtant parts of the world which have no communication with each other. The original end of painting their bodies was probably to exclude the cold; an end, which, if we believe ſome relations, is ſo effectually produced by it, that the men thus painted never ſhiver at the moſt piercing blaſts: but, doubtleſs, any people ſo hardened by continual ſeverities, would, even without paint, be leſs ſenſible of the cold than the civilized inhabitants of the ſame climate. However, this practice may contribute in ſome degree to defend them from the injuries of winter, and, in thoſe climates where little evaporates by the pores, may be uſed with no great inconvenience: but in hot countries, where perſpiration in a greater degree is neceſſary, the natives only uſe unction to preſerve them from the other extreme of weather, or more probably, from the inconvenience of the flies, which, were it not for that or ſome ſuch defence, would be intolerable.

Theſe ſavages had no canoes, like the other Indians, nor any method of croſſing the water; which was probably the reaſon why the birds in the adjacent iſlands were ſo tame that they might be taken with the hand, having never been before frighted or moleſted. The birds here ſpoken of are, without doubt, the penguins, of which ſo ample a deſcription is given in the Voyages of Byron and Wallis. The great plenty of theſe fowls, and of the ſeals that were found every-where on the ſhores of this coaſt, contributed much to the refreſhment of the Engliſh, who named the bay where they then lay Seal-bay, from the number they there killed of thoſe animals.

Theſe ſeals ſeem to be the chief food of the natives; for the Engliſh often found raw pieces of their fleſh half eaten, and left, as they ſuppoſed, after a full meal, by the ſavages, whom they never knew to make uſe of fire, or any art in dreſſing or preparing their victuals. Nor were their other cuſtoms leſs wild or uncouth than their way of feeding. One of them, having received a cap off the General's head, and being extremely pleaſed as well with the honour as the gift, to expreſs his gratitude, retired to a little diſtance, and thruſting an arrow into his leg, let the blood run upon the ground, teſtifying, as it is probable, that he was ready to ſhed his blood in his defence.

When the Swan fly-boat was ſeparated from the fleet in the ſtorm off the coaſt of Brazil, the crew, deſpairing of ever being able to rejoin it, began to be in fear for proviſions. They were on a deſart coaſt, had no place of rendezvous, and were ignorant even of their place of deſtination. In this untoward ſituation a diſpute aroſe among the officers, of which the author of the manuſcript beforecited, gives the following relation: —He had already taken notice that Maſter Thomas Doughty had been ſent on board this veſſel as a kind of puniſhment, and in truth ſo it proved; for the maſter of the veſſel, who ſeems alſo to have been the purſer, knowing upon what terms he ſtood with Drake, took every occaſion to inſult, or, as our author's phraſe is, to diſcredit him; for thoſe were always ranked among Drake's friends who were enemies to Maſter Doughty. "This man, foreſeeing that proviſions might run ſhort, put himſelf from the meſs of Maſter Doughty, Captain Cheſter, and the reſt of the gentlemen, and did ſet himſelf amongſt the ſailors, nothing at all ſparing, but rather augmenting his own diet; but how ſcantily thoſe gentlemen did fare, there be ſome come home, that, except they will deny their own words, can make relation thereof.

"Maſter Doughty, with Maſter Cheſter, whom the General had made Captain of the fly-boat, found themſelves ſo ill uſed, that Maſter Doughty accoſted his friend one day in theſe words: I marvel, Maſter Cheſter, that you will take it at his hands to be thus uſed, conſidering that you were here authorized by the General to be our Commander. And, at the ſame time, he ſpoke to the Maſter, and told him, that he uſed ſo much partiality in the diſtribution of his proviſions, that the ſame could not be borne, conſidering the extremity they were like to fall into for want of victuals; and that it was againſt reaſon that he and his meſſmates ſhould be ſo plentifully fed, while others were at the point to ſtarve. The Maſter hereat putting himſelf in a rage, ſwore that ſuch raſcals as he was, ſhould be glad to eat the ſhoals (huſks) when he would have them. Maſter Doughty anſwered him again, that reaſon would will that he ſhould be uſed as well as other men, conſidering his advantages. Thou any advantage here! replied the Maſter, I would not give a point for thee nor thy advantages; and if ever thou comeſt home to enjoy any advantages, I will be truſſed up. Then in multiplying words, and as I heard a blow or two paſſing between them, the Maſter, in the ſpleen of his heart, looking at him with an evil eye, Thou! will thou have victuals! thou ſhalt be glad, if we do not meet with the General, the rather to eat that falls from my tail on the anchor-fluke ere thou getteſt home again. Then Maſter Doughty, turning to Maſter Cheſter, ſaid unto him, Maſter Cheſter, let us not be thus uſed at this knave's hands. Loſe nothing of that authority that the General committed unto you. If you will, we will put the ſword into your hands again, and you ſhall have the government. This caſe I will aver to be true, for there were two or three witneſſes ſworn to theſe articles, as ſome of the ſpecial matter that he had to loſe his head for."

It was not many days after this quarrel before the Swan fell in again with the fleet; when Drake, as has been ſaid, cauſed her to be hauled on ſhore, ſet on fire, and burnt; or, as others ſay, broke up and converted into fire-wood for the uſe of the fleet.

Mr. Doughty, being here delivered from the fly-boat, was again reſtored to the Pelican, where the maſter with whom he had the diſpute appears to have preferred a complaint againſt him, and with ſuch aggravations as he thought proper to add; all which were favourably heard, and credit given to the whole relation by the General, who wanted only a pretence to perſevere in his ſeverity to the man who, being once his favourite, was now become the object of his moſt inveterate hatred. Doughty, provoked, no doubt, by the miſrepreſentations of the maſter, and the partiality with which they were heard, gave the General ſome opprobrious language, adding, "that the lighteſt word that came out of his (Doughty's) mouth was to be believed as ſoon as the General's oath. Whereupon the General did not only ſtrike him, but commanded him to be bound to the maſt; for the accompliſhment of which, the maſter of the fly-boat took no little pains. This happened as the two ſhips (the Pelican and the Canter) lay together; and as ſoon as Doughty was releaſed, he was put into the Canter, although greatly againſt his will, for that he ſaid he knew them to be there that ſought his life, as namely the maſter of the fly-boat, and ſome other deſperate and unhoneſt people; but would he or no, thither he muſt, or elſe the General ſwore he would lift him out with the tackle, and for that purpoſe commanded the tackle to be looſed. Thus aboard the Canter he went, and his brother John Doughty with him." The Canter was a veſſel taken from the Spaniards on the coaſt of Africa.

While they lay in this harbour, there is one remarkable incident related by this author that deſerves particular notice, as it tends to illuſtrate the previous ſteps that were purſued to accompliſh the ruin of this unfortunate gentleman.

"On board the fly-boat, ſays he, was one Thomas Cuttle, who ſome time had been Captain of the Pelican under Drake, with whom the General had been tampering. This man came out from him in great wrath, and offering to go over to the main, between the which, and the iſland where they then lay, was (as has been ſaid) but a ſhallow water. He, ſtanding well nigh up to the middle in the water with his piece, uttered theſe words, Well, my Maſters, quoth he, I find I am heavily borne with here, becauſe I will not accuſe this gentleman (meaning Doughty) of that, as I take God to witneſs, I know not by him; and, therefore, I declare before you all, that, whatſoever becomes of me, I never knew any thing by him but to be the General's friend; and, rather than I will bide this hard countenance at the General's hands, I will yield myſelf into cannibals hands; and ſo I pray you all to pray for me."

After this public declaration the man departed; and, having reached the oppoſite ſhore, he went up into the country, where firing his piece to bring the natives to him, Drake taking it for a ſignal that he wanted to return, ſent a boat over to the main, and brought him back.

Juſt before their departure from this harbour, which lay in a bay a little to the ſouthward of Cape Hope, "Captain Drake himſelf came on board the Elizabeth, and calling all the company together, told them, that he was to ſend thither a couple of men, the which he did not know how to carry along with him this voyage, and go through therewithal, as namely, quoth he, Thomas Doughty, who is a commotioner and a ſeditious fellow, and a very bad and lewd fellow, and one that I have made that reckoning of as of my left hand; and his brother the young Doughty, a witch, a poiſoner, and ſuch a one as the world cannot judge of, having his knowledge from the devil; and ſo warning the company that none ſhould ſpeak to them, nor uſe any conference with them; if they did, he would hold them as his enemies, and enemies to the voyage. And he willed that great care ſhould be taken that they ſhould neither write nor read; and that he declared what wealth the worſt boy in the fleet ſhould get by this voyage, and how the worſt boy ſhould never need to go again to ſea, but ſhould be able to live in England with a right good gentleman; for, quoth he, you ſhall ſee that we will have gold come as plentiful as wood into the ſhips. Having finiſhed his ſpeech, he departed, and ſhortly after ſent the ſaid Thomas Doughty and his brother aboard the Elizabeth, commanding them, as they would anſwer it with their lives, not to ſet pen to paper, nor yet to read but what every man might underſtand and ſee. And ſure, adds our author, their entertainment there was accordingly; for men durſt not ſpeak to them, although willingly perhaps they would; and as their fare was with the ſimpleſt in the ſhip, ſo was their lodging. But he, Thomas Doughty, having agreed with the boatſwain of the ſhip for a cabin which ſtood, God knows, in an uncomfortable room, yet muſt he pay 3l. for the ſame in England. But what came of this to the poor fellow! he was fain for his friendly uſing him to loſe his office, and continue in heavy diſpleaſure."

Having ſtaid fifteen days in the harbour, during which time they continued their friendly intercourſe with the ſavages, on June the 3d they ſet ſail towards the South Sea, and ſix days afterwards ſtopt at a little bay to break up the Chriſtopher, which from the ſmallneſs of its ſize was found incapable of living in thoſe boiſterous ſeas, of which, before they entered them, they had conceived no adequate idea. Then paſſing on, they found it neceſſary to caſt anchor in another bay, with a view to recover the Portugueſe prize, which was ſeparated from them in the ſtorm of the 27th of April, and had not yet rejoined them. To return in ſearch of it was ſufficiently mortifying; to proceed without it, was not only to deprive themſelves of a conſiderable part of their force, but to expoſe their friends and companions, who had voluntarily embarked on board her, to certain death or certain captivity. This conſideration prevailed; and, therefore, on the 18th, after prayers to God, with which Drake (for example's ſake) never forgot to begin an enterprize, he put to ſea, and the next day near Port Julian diſcovered their aſſociates, whoſe ſhip was now grown leaky, having ſuffered much in the firſt ſtorm by which they were ſeparated, and afterwards in the fruitleſs attempts to regain the fleet. Drake, therefore, being deſirous to relieve their fatigues, entered Port Julian. They no ſooner landed than they were accoſted by two of the natives, of whom Magellan left a very terrible account, having deſcribed them as a nation of giants and monſters: nor did they find his narrative entirely without foundation; for the leaſt of thoſe they ſaw was larger and taller than the largeſt of their company. The two who accoſted the Engliſh appeared much pleaſed with their new gueſts, received willingly whatever was given them, and very exactly obſerved every thing that paſſed, ſeeming more particularly delighted with ſeeing Oliver, the maſter-gunner, ſhoot an Engliſh arrow. They ſhot themſelves likewiſe in emulation, but their arrows always fell to the ground far ſhort of his.

Soon after this friendly conteſt came another, who, obſerving the familiarity of his countrymen with the ſtrangers, appeared much diſpleaſed; and, as the Engliſhmen perceived, endeavoured to perſuade them from ſuch an intercourſe. What effect his arguments had was ſoon after apparent; for another of Drake's companions, being deſirous to ſhew the third Indian a ſpecimen of the Engliſh valour and dexterity, attempted likewiſe to ſhoot an arrow; but drawing it with his full force, burſt the bow-ſtring: upon which, the Indians, who were unacquainted with their other weapons, imagining them diſarmed, followed the company as they were walking negligently down towards their boat, and let fly their arrows, aiming particularly at Winter, who had the bow in his hand. He, finding himſelf wounded in the ſhoulder, endeavoured to refit his bow; and, turning about, was pierced with a ſecond arrow in the breaſt. Oliver, the gunner, immediately preſented his piece at the inſidious aſſailants, which failing to take fire, gave them time to level another flight of arrows, by which he was killed; nor, perhaps, had any of them eſcaped, ſurprized and perplexed as they were, had not Drake animated their courage, and directed their motions, ordering them, by perpetually changing their places, to elude as much as might be the aim of their enemies, and to defend their bodies with their targets; and inſtructing them by his own example to pick up and break the arrows as they fell, which they did with ſo much diligence that the Indians were ſoon in danger of being diſarmed. Then Drake himſelf taking the gun, which Oliver had ſo unſucceſsfully attempted to make uſe of, diſcharged it at the Indian that firſt began the fray and had killed the gunner, aiming it ſo happily that the hail-ſhot, with which it was loaded, tore open his belly, and forced him to ſuch terrible outcries, that the Indians, though their numbers increaſed, and many of them ſhewed themſelves from different parts of an adjoining wood, were too much terrified to renew the aſſault; and ſuffered Drake without moleſtation to withdraw his wounded friend, who, being hurt in his lungs, languiſhed two days, and then dying, was interred with his companion with the uſual ceremony of a military funeral.

They ſtaid here two months after this quarrel, without receiving any other injuries from the natives, in which time they diſcovered the gibbet on which Magellan had formerly executed ſome of his mutinous company, and where "Drake, according to the writers of the Biographia Britannica, did the leaſt commendable action of his life, in executing Mr. John Doughty, a man next in authority to himſelf; in which, however, he preſerved a great appearance of juſtice."

To clear this matter fully, it will be neceſſary to bring together the ſubſtance of what theſe authors have ſaid on the ſubject, and then to add the plain relation from the manuſcript already quoted.

'Here it was (at Port St. Julian), ſay theſe writers, that on a ſudden, having carried the principal perſons engaged in the ſervice to a deſart iſland lying in the bay, he called a kind of council of war, or rather court martial, where he expoſed his commiſſion, by which the Queen granted him the power of life and death, which was delivered him with this remarkable expreſſion from her own mouth; "We do account, that he, Drake, who ſtrikes at thee, does ſtrike at us." He then laid open, with great eloquence, (for, though his education was but indifferent, he had a wonderful power of ſpeech) the cauſe of this aſſembly. He proceeded next to charge Mr. John Doughty, "who had been ſecond in command, during the whole voyage," when Drake was preſent, and firſt in his abſence, with plotting the deſtruction of the undertaking, and the murder of his perſon. He ſaid he had the firſt notice of this gentleman's bad intentions before he left England; but that he was in hopes his behaviour towards him would have extinguiſhed ſuch diſpoſition, if there had been any truth in the information. He then appealed for his behaviour to the whole aſſembly, and to the gentleman accuſed. He next expoſed his practices from the time that he left England, while he lived towards him with all the kindneſs and cordiality of a brother; which charge he ſupported by producing papers under his own hand, to which Mr. Doughty added a full and free confeſſion. After this, the Captain, or, as in the language of thoſe times he is called, the General, quitted the place, telling the aſſembly he expected that they ſhould paſs a verdict upon him, for he would be no judge in his own cauſe. Camden, as the reader will ſee, ſays, that he tried him by a jury; but, other accounts affirm, that the whole forty perſons of which the court was compoſed, had judged him to death, and gave this in writing under their hands and ſeals, leaving the time and manner of it to the General. Mr. Doughty himſelf ſaid, that he deſired rather to die by the hands of juſtice than to be his own executioner. Upon this, Captain Drake having maturely weighed the whole matter, preſented three points to Mr. Doughty's choice: firſt, to be executed upon the iſland where they were; next, to be ſet on ſhore on the main land; or, laſtly, to be ſent home to abide the juſtice of his country. He deſired he might have till the next day to conſider of theſe, which was allowed him, and then, giving his reaſons for rejecting the two laſt, he declared that he made the firſt his choice; and, having received the ſacrament with the General, from the hands of Mr. Francis Fletcher, Chaplain to the fleet, and made a full confeſſion, his head was cut off with an axe by the Provoſt-Marſhal, July the 2d, 1578.

‘ As to the imputation which this matter brought upon Drake, we will firſt cite what Camden ſays of this tranſaction: “On the 26th of April, entering into the mouth of the river of Plate, he ſaw an infinite number of ſea-calves; from thence ſailing into the haven of St. Julian he found a gibbet, ſet up, as it was thought, by Magellan for the puniſhment of certain mutineers. In this very place John Doughty, an induſtrious and ſtout man, and the next unto Drake, was called to his trial for raiſing a mutiny in the fleet, found guilty by twelve men after the Engliſh manner, and condemned to death, which he ſuffered undauntedly, being beheaded, having firſt received the holy communion with Drake. And, indeed, the moſt impartial perſons in the fleet were of opinion, that he had acted ſeditiouſly, and that Drake cut him off as an emulator of his glory, and one that regarded not ſo much who he himſelf excelled in commendation for ſea matters, as who he thought might equal him; yet wanted there not ſome who, pretending to underſtand things better than others, gave out that Drake had in charge from Leiceſter to take off Doughty upon any pretence whatever, becauſe he had reported that the Earl of Eſſex was made away by the cunning practices of that Earl.”

‘ We find this matter, add the writers juſt cited, touched in ſeveral other books, and particularly in two, which were written on purpoſe to expoſe the Earl of Leiceſter, and perhaps deſerving the leſs credit for that reaſon.

‘ It may be offered in defence of Sir Francis Drake, that this man was openly put to death, after as fair a trial as the circumſtances of time and place would permit; that he ſubmitted patiently to his ſentence, and received the ſacrament with Drake, whom he embraced immediately before his execution. Beſides theſe, there are two points that deſerve particular conſideration: firſt, that, in ſuch expeditions, ſtrict diſcipline, and legal ſeverity, are often abſolutely neceſſary; ſecondly, that, as to the Earl of Eſſex, for whoſe death Doughty had expreſſed concern, he was Drake's firſt patron, and it is, therefore, very improbable he ſhould deſtroy a man for endeavouring to detect his murderer. We may add to all this, if liberty may be indulged to conjectures, that this man, preſuming upon the Earl of Leiceſter's favour (who very probably impoſed him upon Drake to be rid of him), was from thence encouraged to form deſigns againſt Drake; and this might alſo be the reaſon which hindered him from inclining to an abſolute pardon, as doubting whether it was poſſible to truſt one who had ſo far abuſed his confidence already, and whoſe known intereſt with ſo great a man might always enable him to find inſtruments, in caſe he was wicked enough to enter upon freſh intrigues.’

We ſhall juſt remark upon what is above quoted, that the authors do not ſeem to have been well informed; for they have all along imputed to John Doughty what related to his brother Thomas; and, if credit may be given to the author of the manuſcript (John Cook by name), this unfortunate Thomas fell a ſacrifice to Drake's reſentment. “ On this iſland in Port St. Julian, ſays he, paſſed many matters, which, I think, God would not have to be concealed, eſpecially for that they tended to murder; for he (Drake) ſpewed out againſt Thomas Doughty his venom. Here he ended all his conceived hatred, not by courteſy and friendly reconcilement, but by moſt tyrannical blood-ſpilling; for he was never quiet while he lived, who in wiſdom and honeſt government as far ſurpaſſed him, as he in tyranny ſurpaſſed all men. The world never committed a fact like unto this; for here he murdered him that, if he had well looked unto himſelf, had been a more ſure and ſtedfaſt friend unto him than ever was Pythias to his friend Damon, as I think the ſequel of this caſe will ſhew.

“ The laſt day of June, the General himſelf, being ſet in a place of judgment, and having the whole company brought on ſhore, and having Captain John Thomas ſet cloſe by him, who opened a bundle of papers that were rolled up together, wherein was written divers and ſundry articles, the which, before they were read, the General ſpoke unto the purport of them, and turning himſelf to Thomas Doughty, who was there preſent, being before brought thither more like a thief than a gentleman of honeſt converſation, he began his charge thus: Thomas Doughty, you have here ſought by divers means, inaſmuch as you may, to diſcredit me, to the great hinderance and overthrow of this voyage; beſides other great matters with which I have to charge you, the which, if you can clear yourſelf of, you and I ſhall be very good friends; whereof if you cannot, you have deſerved death. Maſter Doughty anſwered, it ſhould never be approved that he had merited ill by undertaking any villainy towards him. By whom, quoth the General, will you be tried? Why, good General, ſaid he, let me live to come unto my country, and I will there be tried by her Majeſty's laws. Nay, Thomas Doughty, ſaid he, I will here impannel a jury on you to enquire into thoſe matters that I have to charge you withal. Why, General, replied Doughty, I hope you will ſee your Commiſſion be good. I'll warrant you, anſwered the General, my Commiſſion is good enough. I pray you then let us ſee it, ſaid Maſter Doughty; it is neceſſary that it ſhould be here ſhewn. Well, quoth he, you ſhall not ſee it. Then, addreſſing himſelf to the company, You ſee, my Maſters, how this fellow is full of prating, bind me his arms, for I will be ſafe of my life. My Maſters, you that be my good friends, Thomas Good, Gregory ——, you there, my friends, bind him; ſo they took and bound his arms behind him. Then he uttered divers furious words unto Thomas Doughty, as charging him to be the man that poiſoned my Lord of Eſſex; whereas Maſter Doughty avouched it to his face, that he was the man that brought the General firſt to the preſence of my Lord in England. Thou bring ME, quoth the General, to my Lord! See, my Maſters, ſee here how he goeth about to diſcredit me. This fellow with my Lord was never of any eſtimation. I think he never came about him as a gentleman; for I that was daily with my Lord never ſaw him there above once, and that was long after my entertainment with my Lord.

“ Then, in fine, was there a jury called, whereof Maſter John Winter was foreman. Then by John Thomas were the articles read unto them, even once over for a laſt farewel, for fear that men ſhould have carried them away by memory; all which appeared to conſiſt of words of unkindneſs, and to proceed of ſome choler when the priſoner was provoked, all which Doughty did not greatly deny; until at length came in one Edward Bright, whoſe honeſty of life I have nothing to do with, who ſaid, Nay, Thomas Doughty, we have other matter for you yet, that will a little nearer touch you. It will i' faith bite you to the girſkin. I pray thee, Ned Bright, ſaid the priſoner, charge me with nothing but truth, and ſpare me not. Then John Thomas read further for his laſt article to conclude the whole withal, That Thomas Doughty ſhould ſay to Edward Bright, in Maſter Drake's garden, that the Queen's Majeſty and Council would be corrupted. So Bright holding up his fingers, ſaid, How like ye this gare, ſirrah! Why, Ned Bright, ſaid Maſter Doughty, what ſhould induce thee thus to belye me? thou knoweſt that ſuch familiarity was never between thee and me:

but it may be, that I have ſaid, if we brought home gold, we ſhould be the better welcome; but yet this is more than I do remember. Then it came out, on farther evidence, that Maſter Doughty ſhould ſay, that my Lord Treaſurer had a plot of the preſent voyage. No, that he hath not, quoth General Drake. The other replied, that he had, and had it of him. See, my Maſters, ſaid Drake, what this fellow hath done. God will have his treachery all known; for her Majeſty gave me ſpecial commandment, that of all men my Lord Treaſurer ſhould not know it; but you ſee his own mouth hath bewrayed him: ſo this was a ſpecial article againſt him to hurt his throat, and greatly he ſeemed to rejoice at this advantage.

"Then Maſter Doughty offered him, if he would permit him to live, and to anſwer theſe objections in England, he would ſet his hand to whatſo was there written, or to any thing elſe that he would ſet down. Well, once let theſe men, quoth the General, firſt find whether you are guilty in this or no, and then we will talk further of the matter. And then he delivered (after they had all taken their oaths given by John Thomas) the bills of indictment, as I may term them, unto Mr. John Winter, who was foreman of this inqueſt. Then Maſter Leonard Vicary, a very aſſured friend of Maſter Thomas Doughty's, ſaid unto him, General, this is not law, nor agreeable to juſtice, that you offer. I have not to do with you crafty lawyers, neither do I care for the law; but I know what I will do. Why, quoth Maſter Vicary, who was one of his jury, I know not how we may anſwer his life. Well, Maſter Vicary, quoth he, you ſhall not have to do with his life; let me alone with that; you are but to find whether he be guilty in theſe articles that here are objected againſt him, or no. Why, very well, ſaid Maſter Vicary, then there is, I truſt, no matter of death. No, no, Maſter Vicary, quoth he; ſo with this the jury went together, finding all to be true, without any doubt or ſtop made, but only to that article that Edward Bright had objected againſt him; for it was doubted of ſome whether Bright were ſufficient with his only word to caſt away the life of a man. And truly it did argue ſmall honeſty in a man to conceal ſuch a matter if it had been ſpoken in England, and to utter it in this place where will was law, and reaſon put in exile; for, an honeſt ſubject would not have concealed ſuch matter, which made ſome doubt of an honeſt dealing. But, to be brief, anſwer was made, that Bright was a very honeſt man; and ſo the verdict being given in, it was told to the General, that there was doubt made of Bright's honeſty. Why, quoth Maſter Drake, I dare to ſwear that what Ned Bright has ſaid is very true (yet within a fortnight after, the ſame Bright was in ſuch diſliking with him, as he ſeemed to doubt his life; and having diſplaced him of the Pelican, and put him into the Marigold, he gave for reaſon, that himſelf would be ſafe, and he would put him far enough from him). Thus having received in the verdict, he roſe off the place, and departed towards the water-ſide, where, calling all the company with him, except Maſter Thomas Doughty and his brother, he there opened a certain bundle of letters and bills, and, looking on them, ſaid, God's will; I have left in my cabin that I ſhould eſpecially have had (as if he had there forgotten his Commiſſion): but, whether he forgot his Commiſſion or no, he much forgot himſelf, to ſit as Judge without ſhewing that he had any; but, truly, I think he ſhewed to the uttermoſt what he had: for here he ſhewed forth, firſt, letters that were written, as he ſaid, by Maſter Hankins to my Lord of Eſſex for his entertainment; ſecondly, he ſhewed letters of thanks from my Lord of Eſſex unto Maſter Hankins, for preferring ſo good a ſervitor unto him, and how much he had pleaſured him; then read he letters that paſt from my Lord of Eſſex unto Secretary Walſingham in his great commendation; then ſhewed he letters of Maſter Hatton's unto himſelf, tending for the acceptance of his men John Thomas and John Brewer, for their well uſage in this voyage; and, laſtly, he read a bill of her Majeſty's adventure of a thouſand crowns (but I moſt marvelled that ſo many noblemen and gentlemen did leave their letters in his hands, except it were to ſhew in this place for his credit). So when he had all done, he ſaid, Now, my Maſters, you may ſee whether this fellow hath ſought my diſcredit or no, and what ſhould hereby be meant but the very overthrow of the voyage; as, firſt, by taking away of my good name, and altogether diſcrediting me, and then my life, which I being bereaved of, what then will you do? You will fain one to drink another's blood, and ſo to return again unto your own country; you will never be able to find the way thither. And now, my Maſters, conſider what a great voyage we are like to make, the like was never made out of England; for by the ſame the worſt in this fleet ſhall become a gentleman; and, if this voyage go not forward, which I cannot ſee how poſſibly it ſhould, if this man live, what a reproach it will be, not only unto our country, but eſpecially unto us, the very ſimpleſt here may conſider of. Therefore, my Maſters, they that think this man worthy to die, let them with me hold up their hands; and, they that think him not worthy to die, hold down their hands; at the which divers that envied his former felicity, held up their hands; ſome others, again, for fear of his favouritry, ſticked not to lift their hands, although againſt their hearts; but ſome, again, lifted up their hands and very hearts unto the Lord, to deliver us of this tyrannous and cruel tyrant; who upon the ſame, coming to his former judgment-ſeat, pronounced him the child of death, and perſuaded him withal, that he would by this means make him the ſervant of God: and ſaid farther, if any man could, between this and next meeting, deviſe any way that might ſave his life, he would hear it; and wiſhed himſelf to deviſe ſome way for his own ſafeguard. Well, General, quoth he, ſeeing it is come to this paſs, "that I ſee you would have me made away," I pray you carry me with you to Peru, and there ſet me aſhore. No, truly, Maſter Doughty, I cannot anſwer it to her Majeſty, if I ſhould ſo do; but, how ſay you, Thomas Doughty, if any man will warrant me to be ſafe from your hands, and will undertake to keep you ſure, you ſhall ſee what I will ſay unto you. Maſter Doughty then calling on Maſter Winter, ſaid unto him, Maſter Winter, will you be ſo good as to undertake this for me? Then Maſter Winter ſaid unto Maſter Drake, that he ſhould be ſafe of his perſon, and he would warrant him, if he did commit him to his cuſtody. Then Drake, a little pauſing, ſaid, See then, my Maſters, we muſt thus do; we muſt nail him cloſe under the hatches, and return home again without making any voyage, and if you will do ſo, then ſpeak your minds. Then a company of deſperate bankrupts that could not live in their own country without the ſpoil of that as others had got by the ſweat of their brows, cried, God forbid, good General! which voice was no leſs attentively heard, for there needed no ſpur to a willing horſe. Thus, telling Maſter Doughty to prepare for his death, and having given him one whole day's reſpite to ſet all things in order, he roſe and departed, promiſing that his continual prayers to God ſhould not ceaſe, that it would pleaſe God to put it into his head how he might do him good: but he had ſo often before ſworn, that he would hang him, that I think at this preſent he meant to do him little good. Thus Maſter Doughty continuing all this night, the next day, and the ſecond night in his prayers, except ſome ſmall time that he uſed in ſettling his worldly buſineſs in ſome way, and diſtributing to ſuch as he thought good, ſuch things as he then had with him, was the 2d day of July commanded him to prepare himſelf, and to make ready to die. Then Maſter Doughty, with a more chearful countenance than ever he had in all his life, to the ſhow, as one that did altogether contemn life, prayed him, that, ere he died, he might receive the ſacrament; which was not only granted, but Drake himſelf offered to accompany him to the Lord's Table, for the which Maſter Doughty gave him hearty thanks, never worſe terming him than my good Captain. Maſter Drake offered him withal make choice of his own death, and for that he ſaid he was a gentleman he ſhould but loſe his head, the which kind of death was moſt agreeable to his mind, in as much as he muſt needs die. And, truly, I heard ſay, that Maſter Drake offered him, if he would, that he ſhould be ſhotten to death with a piece, and that he himſelf would do that exploit, and ſo he ſhould die by the hands of a gentleman. But, in fine, they together received the Lord's Supper; the which, I do ever aſſure myſelf, that he did take with as uncorrupted a mind as ever did any innocent of the world; for he, ſure, ſhewed himſelf to have all his affiance and only truſt in God; he ſhewed himſelf ſo valiant in this extremity as the world might wonder it; he ſeemed to have conquered death itſelf, and it was not ſeen, that of all this day before his death, that ever he altered one jot of his countenance, but kept it as ſtaid and firm as if he had ſome meſſage to deliver to ſome nobleman. They having thus received the ſacrament, there was a banquet made, ſuch as the place might yield, and there they dined together, in which time, the place of execution being made ready, after dinner, as one not willing any longer to delay the time, he told the General, that he was ready as ſoon as pleaſed him; but prayed him, that he might ſpeak alone with him a few words, with the which they talked a-part the ſpace of half a quarter of an hour, and then with bills and ſtaves he was brought to the place of execution, where he ſhewed himſelf no leſs valiant than all the time before; for, firſt, here kneeling on his knees, he firſt prayed for the Queen's Majeſty of England his ſovereign lady and miſtreſs; he then prayed to God for the happy ſucceſs of this voyage, and then prayed to God to turn it to the profit of his country: he remembered alſo therein divers his good friends, and eſpecially Sir William Winter, praying Maſter John Winter to commend him to that good Knight; all which he did with ſo chearful a countenance, as if he had gone to ſome great prepared banquet, the which, I ſure think, that he was fully reſolved that God had provided for him; ſo, at the laſt, turning to the General, he prayed him that he might make water ere he died, for, quoth he, the fleſh is frail, and withal turned him about and did ſo; and, coming again, ſaid, Now, truly, I may ſay as ſaid Sir Thomas More, that he that cuts off my head ſhall have little honeſty, my neck is ſo ſhort: So turning him, and looking about on the whole company, he deſired them all to forgive him, and eſpecially ſome that he did perceive to have diſpleaſure borne them for his ſake, whereof Thomas Cuttle was one, Hugh Smith was another, and divers others: whereupon, Smith prayed him to ſay before the General then, whether ever they had any conference together that might redound to his (the General's) prejudice or detriment. He declared it at his death, that neither he, nor any man elſe, ever practiſed any treachery towards the General with him; neither did he himſelf ever think any villainous thought againſt him. Then he prayed the General to be good unto the ſame Hugh Smith, and to forgive him for his ſake. So the General ſaid, Well, Smith, for Maſter Doughty's ſake, and at his requeſt, I forgive thee; but become an honeſt man hereafter. So then, Maſter Doughty embracing the General, naming him his good Captain, bid him farewel; and ſo bidding the whole company farewel, he laid his head to the block, the which being ſtricken off, Drake moſt deſpitefully made the head to be taken up and ſhewed to the whole company, himſelf ſaying, See, this is the end of traitors! So he being buried, and thoſe things finiſhed, the whole company being together, Maſter Drake proteſted before God, that whoſoever he was who ſhould offend but the eighth part that Thomas Doughty had done, ſhould die for it. He alſo proteſted, and ſwore by the life of God, and the bleſſed ſacrament which he that day had received, that whoſoever he were within the fleet that did give another a blow, ſhould loſe his hand, without exception of any; and yet, the next day, it fortuned that Maſter Doughty's younger brother, walking both ſilently and mournfully, as well for remembrance of his brother's late death, as alſo weighing the imminent peril over his own head, (as what has been already ſaid and the preſent conſequence may purport), there comes unto him this Edward Bright, the chief inſtrument of his brother's death, ſaying unto him, God's wounds! thou villain, what knoweſt thou by my wife? and withal ſtruck at him with his ruler, as of purpoſe to pick a quarrel, to haſten his end alſo. Why, Ned Bright, quoth he; thou ſeeſt in what caſe I am, I pray thee let me alone; and withal bore off the blow with his arm, wherewith the ruler broke: but Bright, ſeeming very furious, thruſt him in the face with the piece that remained in his hand, the ſplinters whereof entered an inch into his face; preſently upon the which, he went unto the General to complain of Bright. Why, John Doughty, quoth he, without having any regard of his oath the day before made, Ned Bright will be open to your revenge in England; for, I dare ſay, thy brother did belye her, when he ſaid that ſhe had an ill name in Cambridge. Then might every man perceive the little-meant honeſty."

From this plain narrative of the trial and execution of Doughty, of the genuineneſs of which there cannot be the leaſt doubt, as the concomitant little circumſtances all concur to confirm the author both an eye and ear witneſs of what he has related, there is reaſon to believe, that the ſucceſs of the voyage covered the iniquity of the undertaker; and that the immenſe booty which Drake brought to England, enabled him to ſtifle the complaints of individuals; and, by a proper addreſs, to convert the acts of oppreſſion, murder, and piracy, of which he was guilty, into ſo many deeds of neceſſary duty, in order to the accompliſhment of the main object, the acquiſition of wealth at the expence of honeſty.

That Drake never had a Commiſſion from the Queen, as his friends would ſuggeſt, appears not only from his not producing it at the trial of Doughty (which can hardly be juſtified in contempt to the priſoner), but from his not producing it upon another occaſion, when, as ſhall be ſhewn immediately, he vauntingly produced other credentials of far leſs moment, in order to juſtify his conduct, and give him credit with his company. The ſtory, then, of the remarkable words foiſted into the mouth of his Sovereign, and recited by his biographer, is as falſe as inconſiſtent with the character of that wiſe Princeſs, who, though there is reaſon from her after-conduct to conclude that ſhe was privy to the voyage, yet never openly countenanced it, till after it was completed, and the iſſue of it determined; as appears from the account of the converſation which Drake himſelf gave to his followers, a few days before he left Fort St. Julian to ſeek a paſſage into the South Seas.

"On the 6th of Auguſt, ſays our author, he commanded his whole company to be aſhore, and, placing himſelf in a tent, one ſide of which was open, and calling Maſter Winter on one ſide of him, and John Thomas on the other ſide, his man laid before him a great paper book, and withal Maſter Fletcher offered himſelf to make a ſermon. Nay ſoft, Maſter Fletcher, ſaid he, I muſt preach this day myſelf, although I have ſmall ſkill in preaching. Well, all ye the company, here are ye, or not? Anſwer was made, that they were all here. Then commanded he every ſhip's company ſeverally to ſtand together; which was alſo done. Then, ſaid he, My Maſters, I am a very bad orator, for my bringing up hath not been in learning; but whatſo I ſhall here ſpeak, let every man take good notice of, and let him write it down, for I will ſpeak nothing but what I will anſwer it in England, yea, and before her Majeſty, as I have it here already ſet down [but whether it were in his book or not, that I know not, but this was the effect of it, and very near the words]: Thus it is, my Maſters, that we're very far from our country and friends; we are compaſſed in on every ſide with our enemies; wherefore we are not to make ſmall reckoning of a man, for we cannot have a man if we would give for him ten thouſand pounds; wherefore we muſt have theſe mutinies and diſcontents that are grown amongſt us redreſſed; for, by the life of God, it doth even take my wits from me to think on it. Here is ſuch controverſy between the ſailors and the gentlemen, and ſuch ſtomaching between the gentlemen and ſailors, that it doth even make me mad to hear it. But, my Maſters, I muſt have it ceaſe; for I muſt have the gentlemen to haul and draw with the mariners, and the mariners with the gentlemen; and let us ſhew ourſelves to be all of a company; and let us not give occaſion to the enemy to rejoice at our decay and overthrow. I would know him that would refuſe to ſet his hand to a rope; but I truſt there is not any ſuch here; and, as gentlemen are very neceſſary for government ſake on the voyage, ſo have I ſhipt them for that purpoſe, and to ſome further intent; and yet, though I know ſailors to be the moſt envious people of the world, and ſo unruly without government, yet may not I be without them? Alſo, if there be any here willing to return home, let me underſtand of them; and here is the Marygold, a ſhip that I can very well ſpare, I will furniſh her to ſuch as will return with the moſt credit that I can give them, either by my letters or any way elſe; but let them take care that they go homeward; for, if I find them in my way, I will ſurely ſink them; therefore, you ſhall have time to conſider hereof until tomorrow, for, by my troth, I muſt needs be plain with you; "I have taken that in hand that I know not in the world how to go through withal;" it paſſeth my capacity; it hath even bereaved me of my wits to think on it. [Well, yet the voice was, that none would return; they would all take ſuch part as he did.] Well then, my Maſters, quoth he, came ye all forth with your own good wills, or no? They anſwered, All, willingly. At whoſe hands, my Maſters, take ye to receive your wages? At yours, anſwered the company. Then, ſaid he, how ſay you, will you take wages, or ſtand to my courteſy? To your courteſy, good Captain, was the reply. Then he commanded the ſteward to the Elizabeth to bring him the key of the ſtores, the which he did; then, turning him unto Maſter Winter, he ſaid, Maſter Winter, I do here diſcharge you of your Captainſhip; and ſo in brief he ſaid to all the Officers. Then Maſter Winter and John Thomas aſked him what ſhould move him to diſplace them? He aſked in return, whether they could make any reaſon why he ſhould not do ſo? So willing them to content themſelves, he willed ſilence in thoſe matters, ſaying, Ye ſee here the great diſorders we are entangled into; and, although ſome have already received condign puniſhment, as by death, who, I take God to witneſs, as you all know, was to me as my other hand, yet you ſee, over and beſides the reſt, his own mouth did bewray his treacherous dealings: and ſee, how, truſting to the ſingularity of his own wit, he over-reacht himſelf at unawares. But ſee what God would have to be done; for her Majeſty commanded, that of all men my Lord Treaſurer ſhould have no knowledge of this voyage, and to ſee that his own mouth hath declared that he had given him a plot thereof. But, truly, my Maſters, and as I am a gentleman, there ſhall no more die; I will lay my hand on no more, although there be here who have deſerved as much as he; and ſo charging one Worral that was preſent, that his caſe was worſe than Doughty's, who, in Maſter Doughty's extremities, was one of Drake's chief confellows, who, humbling himſelf to Drake, even upon his knees, prayed him to be good unto him, Well, well, Worrall, ſaid he, you and I ſhall talk well enough of this matter hereafter. Then he charged one John Audley with ſome ill dealings towards him, but opened no matter, but ſaid, he would talk with him alone after dinner. Here is ſome again, my Maſters, not knowing how elſe to diſcredit me, ſay and affirm, that I was ſet forth on this voyage by Maſter Hatton; ſome by Sir William Winter; and ſome by Maſter Hankins; but theſe are a company of idle heads that have nothing elſe to talk of. And, my Maſters, I muſt tell you, I do know them as my very good friends; but, to ſay that they were the fitters forth of this voyage, or that it was by their means, I tell you it was nothing ſo. But, indeed, thus it was, My Lord of Eſſex wrote in my commendation unto Secretary Walſingham more than I was worthy; but by like I had deſerved ſomewhat at his hands, and he thought me in his letters a fit man to ſerve againſt the Spaniards for my practice and experience that I had in that trade; whereupon, indeed, Secretary Walſingham did come to conſult with his Lordſhip, and declared unto him, that for that her Majeſty had received divers injuries of the King of Spain, for the which ſhe deſired to have ſome revenge; and withal, he ſhewed me a plot, willing me to ſet my hand, and to write down where I thought he might moſt be annoyed; but I told him ſome part of my mind, but refuſed to ſet my hand to any thing, affirming, that her Majeſty was mortal, and that, if it ſhould pleaſe God to take her Majeſty away, it might ſo be that ſome perſon might reign that might be in league with the King of Spain, and then will mine own hand be a witneſs againſt myſelf. Then was I very ſhortly after, and on an evening, ſent for unto her Majeſty by Secretary Walſingham; and, the next day, coming to her Majeſty, theſe, or the like words, ſhe ſaid, Drake, ſo it is that I would gladly be revenged on the King of Spain for divers injuries that I have received: and ſaid further, that he was the only man that might do this exploit, and withal craved his advice therein, who told her Majeſty of the ſmall good that was to be done in Spain, but the only way was to annoy him by his Indies. Then, with many more words, he ſhewed forth a bill of her Majeſty's adventure of 1000 crowns, which, however, he ſaid at ſome time before, that her Majeſty did give him towards his charges. He ſhewed alſo a bill of Maſter Hatton's adventure, and divers letters of credit that had paſſed in his behalf; but he never let them come out of his own hands. He ſaid alſo, that her Majeſty did ſwear by her crown, "That, if any within her realm did give the King of Spain hereof to underſtand (as ſhe ſuſpected but two), they ſhould loſe their heads therefore." And now, Maſters, ſaid he, let us conſider what we have done: "We have now ſet together by the ears three mighty Princes, namely, her Majeſty, the Kings of Spain and Portugal; and, if this voyage ſhould not have good ſucceſs, we ſhould not only be a ſcorning, or a reproachful ſcoffing-ſtock unto our enemies, but alſo a great blot to our whole country for ever; and, what triumph would it be to Spain and Portugal? and, again, the like would never be attempted." And now, reſtoring every man again to his former office, he ended: thus ſhewing the company that he would ſatiſfy every man, or elſe he would ſell all that he ever had even unto his plate; for, quoth he, I have good reaſon to promiſe, and am beſt able to perform it; for, I have ſomewhat of mine own in England; and, beſides that, I have as much adventure in this voyage as three of the beſt whatſoever; and, if it ſo be, that I never come home, yet will her Majeſty pay every man his wages, whom indeed you and I all came to ſerve; and, for to ſay you came to ſerve me, I will not give you thanks; for it is only her Majeſty that you ſerve; and this voyage is only her fitting forth: ſo willing all men to be friends, he willed them to depart about their buſineſs. The 8th of Auguſt, they weighed anchor and departed; but, the day before, he came on board the Elizabeth, and ſwore very vehemently, I know not upon what occaſion, that he would hang to the number of 30 in the fleet that had deſerved it: and then again charged Worrall that his caſe was worſe than Doughty's, and that by God's wounds he had deſerved to be hanged. And, Maſter Winter, ſaid he, where is your man Ulyſſes? By God's life, if he were my man, I would cut off his ears: nay, by God's wounds, I would hang him; but wherefore truly I do not know."

Nothing can be a clearer proof that Drake had no Government Commiſſion than the above account. In his ſpeech, which the writer ſays is nearly in his own words, he does not ſo much as pretend to have received any Commiſſion, only a private intimation from the Queen and Walſingham, that her Majeſty wanted to be revenged of divers injuries received from the King of Spain. But was countenancing four or five piratical plunderers to rob innocent people, a princely way for one Sovereign to take revenge of another, in times of profound peace? It was, indeed, a pitiful connivance in Queen Elizabeth to engage 1000 crowns in a piratical adventure of this kind, and that could never have been credited of that magnanimous Princeſs, had ſhe not afterwards approved of his piracy, by going aboard his ſhip, and openly approving what, it was even then ſaid, leaſt became a trading nation to encourage, the breach of treaties, and piratical practices. But, it is remarkable, that five months elapſed after his return to England before her Majeſty's pleaſure was publickly known; during which time men talked variouſly of the expedition, and the fate of Drake ſeemed to hang in ſuſpence; ſo true proved Doughty's prediction, that "the Queen's Majeſty and Council might be corrupted."

That Drake bore no naval Commiſſion appears ſtill more clearly, from his diſplacing the Captains and Officers of all his ſhips without demanding from them their Commiſſions; from his liſting his men, not for any hoſtile expedition, but for a trading voyage to Alexandria; and from his aſking them, before his ſetting ſail from the Port of St. Julian to enter the South Seas, from whom they expected their wages. From theſe circumſtances it follows inconteſtibly, that, if he had a naval Commiſſion, he was the only Officer in the fleet poſſeſſed of one;—Doughty, whom he beheaded, and who, before their falling out, was ſecond in command, bore no naval Commiſſion; and, it is more than probable, that this gentleman's queſtioning the Commiſſion of Drake was the real cauſe of his death, as Drake more than once charges him with the overthrow of the voyage, which he could no otherwiſe effect than by diſcrediting a Commiſſion, on the authority of which both Officers and men were to be perſuaded to plunder a people at peace with their nation, and without which every man was liable to be executed for piracy, whenever he ſhould be overpowered.

It were needleſs for us to enlarge our remarks; every reader has now the ſubject before him, and every reader will form a judgment for himſelf.

What we have ſaid, in conſequence of having traced this tranſaction from beginning to end, may ſeem to claſh with the opinion we previouſly entertained of Drake's humanity, courage, and kindneſs to his followers, but will not ſeem ſtrange to thoſe who are acquainted with the nature of periodical writings, where one part of the work is neceſſarily printed off before the other is written. In purſuing the courſe of this voyage, new authors have been conſulted, and new lights collected, which have enabled us to detect not only the errors of other writers, but alſo to correct our own; and, from the ſequel of this voyage, we may venture to foretel, that the reader will concur in ſentiment with us, that, though Drake was bold, he was not honeſt; that, though he did not kill thoſe he plundered and had no motive to deſtroy, he ſpared none who oppoſed his deſigns, or who did not pay implicit obedience to his arbitrary will; that, though he was an able ſeaman, he was a jealous rival; and that, though he was a gallant leader, he was a moſt tyrannical Commander. We ſhall now accompany him to the South Seas, where the Spaniards, not ſuſpecting an enemy, were in no condition to defend themſelves againſt his attacks.

Drake having reduced the number of his ſhips to three, they left the port, and on Auguſt the 20th entered the Straits of Magellan, in which they ſtruggled with contrary winds, and the various dangers which the intricacy of that winding paſſage expoſed them to, till night, when they had paſſed the firſt narrow, and had entered a wider ſea, where they diſcovered an iſland, to which they gave the name of Elizabeth, in honour of their ſovereign. On the 24th they came to an iſland, in which they found ſuch an infinite number of birds, ſince called penguins, that they killed 3000 of them in one day. This bird, of which they then knew not the name, they deſcribe as ſomewhat leſs than a wild gooſe, without feathers, and covered with a kind of down, unable to fly or riſe from the ground, but capable of running and ſwimming with amazing celerity. They feed on fiſhes in the ſea, and come to land only to reſt in the day, and lay their eggs, which, according to later voyagers, they depoſit in holes, as regularly diſperſed and as numerous as the cells in a beehive.

From theſe iſlands to the South Sea the ſtrait becomes very crooked and narrow; ſo that ſometimes by the interpoſition of head-lands the paſſage ſeems entirely ſhut up. To double theſe capes they found it very difficult, on account of the frequent variations to be made in the courſe. Here are, indeed, as Magellan obſerves, many harbours; but in moſt of them no bottom is to be found, which, however, does not ſeem verified by experience; the harbours being in general good, though the tides and blaſts continually ruſhing in from various directions create the danger. The land on both ſides riſes into innumerable mountains; the tops of them were encircled with clouds and vapours, which, being congealed, fall down in ſnow, and increaſe their height by hardening into ice; an obſervation which might naturally occur to Drake, who paſſed the ſtrait in their winter before the ſnows were diſſolved. However, even at that ſeaſon, which anſwers to our February, they found the vallies, in ſome places, green, fruitful, and pleaſant. Anchoring in a bay near Cape Forward, Drake, imagining the ſtrait quite ſhut up, went in his boat to endeavour to find ſome other paſſage out; and, having found an inlet towards the North, was returning to his ſhips; but curioſity ſoon prevailed upon him to ſtop for the ſake of obſerving a canoe or boat with ſeveral natives of the country in it. He could not at a diſtance help admiring the form of this little veſſel, which ſeemed inclining to a ſemi-circle, the ſtern and prow ſtanding up, and the body ſinking inward; but much greater was his wonder, when, upon a nearer inſpection, he found it made only with the barks of trees, ſewed together with thongs of ſeal-ſkin, ſo artificially, that ſcarcely any water entered the ſeams.

The people were well-ſhaped, and painted like thoſe who have been already deſcribed. On the land they had a hut built with poles, aed covered with ſkins, in which they had water-veſſels and other utenſils, made likewiſe with the barks of trees. Among theſe people they had an opportunity of remarking, what is frequently obſervable in ſavage countries, how natural ſagacity and unwearied induſtry may ſupply the want of ſuch manufactures or natural productions as appear to us abſolutely neceſſary for the ſupport of life. Though the inhabitants were wholly ſtrangers to iron and to the uſe we make of it, yet, inſtead of it, they ſubſtituted the ſhell of a muſcle, of prodigious ſize, found upon their coaſts. This they ground upon a ſtone to an edge, which was ſo firm and ſolid, that neither wood nor ſtone were able to reſiſt it. With inſtruments made of ſhells, theſe ſimple people were able to perform all their mechanic operations; nor do they ſeem ſo deformed and ugly as our late voyagers repreſent them, who being, perhaps, more refined than thoſe who ſailed with Captain Drake, might fancy a greater difference between themſelves and theſe ſavages than in nature there really is.

On this occaſion we cannot forbear remarking, that, though Drake entered the ſtrait in what is accounted the moſt unfavourable ſeaſon, yet he paſſed it in ſixteen days, though, at that time, wholly unknown; a paſſage the more extraordinary, as none of our later voyagers made it in leſs than thirty-ſix days in the middle of ſummer, and Captain Wallis was at leaſt four months in making it.

Drake, as has been ſaid, having taken a ſurvey of the country from Cape Forward, continued his courſe to the North-weſtward, and, on the ſixth of September, entered the great South Sea, on which no Engliſh veſſel had ever been navigated before; and propoſed to have directed his courſe towards the Line, that his men, who had ſuffered by the ſeverity of the climate, might recover their ſtrength in a warmer latitude. But his deſign was ſcarce formed, before it was fruſtrated; for on September the ſeventh, after an eclipſe of the moon, a ſtorm aroſe ſo violent that it left them little hopes of ſurviving it; nor was its fury ſo dreadful as its continuance; for it laſted, with little intermiſſion, thirty-two days, in which time they were driven more than 200 leagues out of their courſe, without being able either to avail themſelves of their ſails, or make uſe of their anchors.

In this ſtorm, on the 30th of September, the Marigold, Captain Thomas, was ſeparated from them; and on the 7th of October, having entered a harbour, where they hoped for ſome intermiſſion of their fatigues, they were in a few hours forced out to ſea again by a violent guſt, at which time they loſt ſight of the Elizabeth, Captain Winter, whoſe crew, as was afterwards diſcovered, wearied with labour, and diſcouraged with the proſpect of future dangers, recovered the ſtraits the day following, and returning by the ſame paſſage through which they came, ſailed along the coaſt of Brazil, and, in the year following, arrived in England.

They were now driven Southward 55 degrees, where they diſcovered a cluſter of iſlands, in one of which they anchored and ſtaid two days, to the great refreſhment of the crew, having met with excellent water, and plenty of greens. Not far diſtant from this bay they entered another, where they beheld ſome naked inhabitants ranging along the coaſt in their canoes in ſearch of proviſions. With theſe they exchanged ſome toys for ſuch refreſhments as they had to ſupply.

And now, being furniſhed with wood and water, they again ſet ſail, and were, by a new ſtorm, driven to the latitude of 57 degrees, when they beheld the extremities of the American coaſt, and the confluence of the Atlantic and Southern oceans. Here they arrived on the 28th of October, and at laſt were bleſt with the ſight of a calm ſea, having, for almoſt two months, endured ſuch a ſtorm, as no voyager has given an account of, and ſuch as in that part of the world, though accuſtomed to hurricanes, the inhabitants were unacquainted with.

On the 30th of October, they ſteered towards the place appointed for the rendezvous of the fleet, in caſe of ſeparation, which was in 30 degrees South; and, on the next day, diſcovered two iſlands, ſo well ſtocked with fowls, that they victualled their ſhips with them. After this ſupply, they ſailed northward, along the coaſt of Peru, till they came to 30 degrees, where, finding neither ſhips, nor any convenient port, they came to anchor November the 29th, at Mucho, an iſland inhabited by ſuch Indians as the cruelty of their Spaniſh conquerors had driven from the continent, to whom they applied for water and proviſions, offering them in return ſuch things as they imagined moſt likely to pleaſe them. The Indians ſeemed willing to traffic; and, having preſented them with fruits and two fat ſheep, ſhewed them a place where they might come for water.

Next morning, according to agreement, the Engliſh landed with their water-veſſels, and ſent two men forward towards the place appointed, who, about the middle of the way, were ſuddenly attacked by the Indians and immediately ſlain. Nor were the reſt of the company out of danger; for behind the rocks was lodged an ambuſh of 500 men, who, ſtarting up from their retreat, diſcharged their arrows into the boat with ſuch dexterity, that every one of the crew was wounded by them. The ſea being then high, and hindering them from either retiring or making uſe of their weapons, Drake himſelf received an arrow under his eye, which pierced him almoſt to the brain; and another in his breaſt. The danger of theſe wounds was much increaſed by the abſence of their ſurgeon, who was in the Elizabeth, ſo that they had none to aſſiſt them but a boy, whoſe age did not admit of much experience or ſkill; yet ſo much were they favoured by Providence, that they all recovered. No reaſon could be aſſigned for which the Indians ſhould attack them with ſo furious a ſpirit of malignity, but that they miſtook them for Spaniards, whoſe cruelties might very reaſonably incite thoſe to revenge, whom they had driven, by inceſſant perſecution, from their country, waſting immenſe tracts of land by maſſacre and devaſtation. Nuno da Sylva adds, that none of the Indians were hurt by the Engliſh, though they came ſo near the boat, as to ſeize and carry off four of the oars.

On the afternoon of the ſame day they ſet ſail, and on the 30th of November dropt anchor in Phillip's bay, where their boat, having been ſent out to diſcover the country, returned with an Indian in his canoe whom they had intercepted. He was of a graceful ſtature, dreſt in a white coat or gown, reaching almoſt to his knees; very mild, humble, and docile; ſuch as perhaps were all the Indians, till the Spaniards taught them revenge, treachery, and cruelty. This Indian, having been kindly treated, was diſmiſſed with preſents; and informed, as far as the Engliſh could make him underſtand, what they chiefly wanted, and what they were willing to give in return; Drake ordered his boat to attend him, and ſet him ſafe on ſhore.

When he was landed, he made ſigns for the boat to wait till his return, and meeting ſome of his countrymen, gave them ſuch an account of his reception, that, within a few hours, ſeveral of them repaired with him to the boat, with fowls, eggs, and a hog; and with them one of their captains, who willingly came into the boat, and deſired to be conveyed by the Engliſh to their ſhip.

By this man Drake was informed that no ſupplies were to be expected here; but that Southward, in a place to which he offered to be his pilate, there was great plenty. This propoſal was accepted, and on the 5th of December, under the direction of the good-natured Indian, they came to anchor in the harbour called by the Spaniards Val Parizo, in 33 deg. 40 min. S. latitude, near the little town of St. Jago, where they met not only with ſufficient ſtores of proviſions, and with ſtorehouſes full of the wines of Chili, but with a ſhip called the Captain of Morial, richly laden, having, together with large quantities of the ſame wine, ſome of the fine gold of Baldivia to the amount of threeſcore thouſand pezoes, each pezo of the value of eight ſhillings, and a great croſs of gold ſet with emeralds. The Spaniards at firſt, miſtaking the Engliſh for friends, invited them to feaſt with them; but ſoon being undeceived, one of the crew jumped overboard, and alarmed the town; but the inhabitants, inſtead of making oppoſition, fled haſtily, and left whatever was in the town a prize to the enemy. In the chapel Drake and his men found the moſt valuable booty.

Having ſpent three days here in ſtoring their ſhips, and loading the money and effects, they departed, and landed their Indian pilot where they firſt received him, after having rewarded him much above his expectations or deſires. They had now little other anxiety than for their friends, who had been ſeparated from them, and whom they now determined to ſeek. But conſidering that, by entering every creek and harbour with their ſhips, they expoſed themſelves to unneceſſary dangers, and that their boat could not contain ſuch a number as might defend themſelves againſt the Spaniards, they determined to ſtation their ſhip at ſome place where they might commodiouſly build a pinnace, which, being of light burden, might ſafely ſail where the ſhip would be in danger of being ſtranded; and, at the ſame time, carry a ſufficient force to reſiſt the enemy, and afford better accommodation than it was poſſible to obtain in the boat. To this end, on the 19th of December, they entered a bay near Coquimbo, a town inhabited by the Spaniards, who, diſcovering them immediately, iſſued out to the number of 100 horſemen, with about 200 naked Indians running by their ſides. The Engliſh, obſerving their approach, retired to their boat without any loſs, except of one man, whom no perſuaſions or intreaties could move to retire with the reſt, and who was therefore overtaken by the Spaniards, who thought to have taken him priſoner, but, having an halbert in his hand, he manfully defended himſelf, till, being overpowered by numbers, he was run through the body with a lance. The Spaniards, exulting at the victory, ordered the Indians to draw the dead carcaſe from the rock on which he fell, and in the ſight of the Engliſh beheaded it, and then cut off the right hand, and tore out the heart, which they carried away in triumph.

Leaving this place, they ſoon found a harbour more ſecure and convenient, where they built their pinnace, in which Drake went to ſeek his companions; but, finding the wind contrary, he was obliged to return in two days.

From hence they came to a port called Sarcipaxa, where, being landed, they found a Spaniard aſleep with ſilver bars lying by him to the value of 4000 Spaniſh ducats: notwithſtanding the inſults which they had received from his countrymen, they did not think fit to diſturb this harmleſs man's repoſe, but, taking the ſilver, left him quietly to ſleep out his nap.

Coaſting along the ſhore, they obſerved a Spaniard driving eight Peruvian ſheep, which on landing they found to be laden with ſilver, each ſheep having 100lb. weight in two leather bags acroſs his back. They delivered the poor animals of their heavy burdens, and lodged the bags in their own ſhips.

Farther on lay ſome Indian towns, from which the inhabitants repaired to the ſhip on floats made of ſeal-ſkin blown full of wind, two of which they faſtened together, and, ſitting between them, row with great ſwiftneſs, and carry conſiderable burdens. They very readily traded for glaſs and ſuch trifles, with which the old and the young ſeemed equally delighted.

Arriving at Marmarena on the 26th of January, Drake invited the Spaniards to traffic with him, which they accepted; and ſupplied him with neceſſaries, ſelling to him, among other proviſions, ſome of thoſe ſheep which have been mentioned, whoſe bulk is equal to that of a cow, and whoſe ſtrength is ſuch, that one of them can carry three tall men upon his back; their necks are like a camel's, and their heads like thoſe of our ſheep. They are the moſt uſeful animals of this country, not only affording excellent fleeces and wholeſome fleſh, but ſerving as carriers over rocks and mountains, where no other beaſt can travel; for their foot is of a particular form, which enables them to tread firm on the ſteepeſt and moſt ſlippery places.

On all this coaſt, it is ſaid, the mountains are ſo impregnated with ſilver, that from one hundred weight of common earth five ounces of fine ſilver may be ſeparated.

They continued their courſe towards the north, and on the 7th of February arrived at Arica, in 8 deg. 30 min. S. latitude, and in this port, found three ſmall barks, in which they found 57 ſlabs of ſilver, each of the ſize and ſhape of an ordinary brick, and weighing about 20lb. They took no priſoners; for the crews, fearing no interlopers, were all on ſhore carouſing with one another. At this port the Spaniards were wont to land their merchandize, and to embark the ſilver, which was tranſported from thence to Panama; but, ſince Drake's incurſion, they carry their ſilver over land to Lima, and load no more treaſure here, except what they pay for the purchaſe of ſuch merchandize as is brought from Europe to ſupply their market. Wanting numbers to aſſault the town, they proceeded in their courſe, and falling in with a ſmall coaſting-veſſel, laden with linen and other cloaths, Drake ſupplied his crew with what quantity of thoſe articles they ſtood in need of, and diſmiſſed the Spaniards with the remainder.

From hence they ſailed to Chuli; in which port there was a ſhip that had 300,000 pezoes of ſilver in bars; but the Spaniards had ſent an expreſs from Arica, to acquaint the governor that Drake was upon the coaſt. This expreſs arrived at Chuli, juſt two hours before Drake entered the port; in which time the maſter of the ſhip had thrown his treaſure overboard, and had ſecured himſelf and crew on ſhore, leaving only one Indian on board to make the report. Drake, fearing the alarm would ſpread faſter than he could ſail, loſt no time in hazardous ſearches, but inſtantly departed, and ſteered for Lima, where they arrived on the 15th of February, and entered the harbour without reſiſtance; in which, according to ſome writers, there were thirty ſail of ſhips; others ſay twelve; but all agree, that ſeveral of them were of conſiderable force: ſo that Drake's ſecurity conſiſted not in his ſtrength, but in his reputation, which had ſo intimidated the Spaniards, that the ſight of their own ſuperiority could not rouſe them to oppoſition. Inſtances of ſuch panic terrors are to be met with in other relations; but as they are, for the moſt part, quickly diſſipated by reaſon and reſolution, a wiſe Commander will rarely ground his hopes of ſucceſs on them; and, perhaps, on this occaſion, the Spaniards ſcarcely deſerve a ſeverer cenſure for their cowardice, than Drake for his temerity. A writer of good authority, to reconcile the matter, tells us, that Drake took them at unawares, and that the crews, as is uſual in times of perfect ſecurity, were with their families on ſhore; and many of thoſe who were ready to ſail, were taking leave of their friends. Be this as it may, all ſeem to agree, that Drake made here a conſiderable booty, having taken from one ſhip a cheſt full of rials of plate, which he found concealed under the ſteerage, and, from other ſhips, ſilks and linen cloth to a conſiderable value. He did not, however, remain long in this harbour, but haſtened in purſuit of the Cacafuego, which ſhip had ſailed but three days before, and which, they were here informed, was bound to Paita. In the purſuit, they fell in with another ſhip, out of which they took a large quantity of gold, together with a crucifix of the ſame metal, richly adorned with emeralds. They continued the purſuit; but, having gained intelligence, that inſtead of Paita, ſhe was gone to Panama, Drake crouded all the ſail he could, and, to encourage the purſuers, promiſed, that whoever firſt deſcried the prize ſhould have his gold chain as a reward; which fell to the lot of his brother John. On the 1ſt of March they came up with her, and, after exchanging a few ſhot, they boarded her, and found not only a quantity of jewels, and thirteen cheſts of money, but eighty pounds weight of gold, and twenty-ſix tons of uncoined ſilver, with ſervices of wrought plate to a great value. In unlading this prize they ſpent ſix days; and then diſmiſſing the Spaniards, ſtood off again to ſea.

Lopez Vaz, a Spaniſh writer, tells us, that, in leſs than 24 hours after their departure from Lima in purſuit of the Cacafuego, news was brought that Drake was upon the coaſt, but that the governor had already aſſembled the force of the country to oppoſe his landing; and that, finding he had left the harbour, he ordered three ſhips with ſix pieces of cannon (being all he could collect), and 250 men, to purſue him: but, the equipment of theſe veſſels neceſſarily requiring time, Drake had gained the advantage of them: and, coming within ſight of the prize off Cape Franciſco, the Captain of which, Juan de Anton, a Biſcayan, ſeeing at a diſtance a ſhip crouded with ſails, and imagining the Viceroy of Peru had diſpatched her on ſome meſſage to him, ſtruck his ſails, and lay to till, Drake approaching nearer, he diſcovered his miſtake. He would then have made his eſcape, but Drake nearing him faſt with his great ordnance, againſt which the captain could make no defence, he was conſtrained to yield. " There was in this ſhip, adds the Spaniard, eight hundred and fifty thouſand pezoes of ſilver, and forty thouſand pezoes of gold, all which ſilver and gold was cuſtomed: but what treaſure they had uncuſtomed, I know not; for many times they carry almoſt as much more as they pay cuſtom for; otherwiſe the king would take it from them, if they ſhould be known to have any great ſum; wherefore every ſhip carries a bill of cuſtom, that the king may ſee it. All the treaſure which Drake took was merchants and other mens goods, ſaving 180,000 pezoes of the king's. He had alſo out of this ſhip good ſtore of victuals, with other neceſſaries, which were to be carried from Panama, and was five days in taking out ſuch things as he needed.

« This done, he ſailed to the coaſt of New Spain, without going to Panama. The ſhips that were ſent by the Viceroy of Peru from Lima, arrived off Cape St. Franciſco 20 days after Drake had taken the Cacafuego, and had intelligence by a ſhip coming from Panama, which they met at the ſaid cape, that Francis Drake had taken the ſhip with ſilver, and was not gone for Panama; whereupon the commander of the three ſhips, thinking that Captain Drake had been gone for the Straits of Magellan, directed his courſe that way to ſeek him."

Thus Drake, changing his courſe to the weſt, eſcaped his enemies, and fell in with a ſhip from the Eaſt Indies laden with ſilks, China ware, and cotton. The owner, a Spaniard, was on board, who preſented Drake with a falcon wrought in maſſy gold, with an emerald, ſet in the breaſt of it, the largeſt he had ever beheld. With this preſent, and a golden cup from the pilot, Drake was contented, and diſmiſſed the ſhip, taking only four cheſts of China ware, which at that time was of great value in Europe.

On the 13th of March they came in ſight of land, which happened to be a ſmall iſland about two leagues from the main continent. There they found a harbour, and anchored in five fathom water, where they ſtaid till the 20th, on which day, a little coaſting frigate paſſing by, was purſued by the pinnace, boarded, and taken. Being laden with ſarſaparilla, honey, butter, and other country goods, Drake unloaded the ſarſaparilla, and in the room of it put the gold and ſilver from his own ſhip, in order to heave her up, to new caulk her ſides, and ſtop her leaks; in which ſervice the crew were employed till the 26th of the ſame month, when having reloaded the cargo, and taken in a ſufficient quantity of wood and water, they continued their courſe weſtward along the coaſt, taking the Spaniſh frigate with them to bear them company.

On April 6, a little before ſun-ſet, they diſcovered a ſhip, that held on her courſe about two leagues to ſeaward from the main land. To this ſhip they gave chace, and before morning they neared her, and ſuddenly boarded her while the men ſlept. Being maſters of this prize without reſiſtance, they ordered the priſoners on board their own ſhip, among whom was one Don Franciſco Xarate, who meant to ſail to Panama, and from thence to China, with the letters and patents that were found in his poſſeſſion (among which were the letters of the king of Spain to the governor of the Philippines); as alſo the ſea charts wherewith they were to be directed in their voyage, which were of admirable uſe to Drake in his return home. From this ſhip they took great quantities of bale goods, and other valuable merchandize, and then diſmiſſed her. They alſo took a young negroe girl, whom Drake or ſome of his companions having got with child, they afterwards inhumanly ſet her on ſhore on an iſland in their way home, juſt as ſhe was ready to lie in; of which notice will be taken in its proper place. Having retained a Spaniſh pilot from this ſhip, they obliged him to direct them to a ſafe harbour, where they might ſupply themſelves with proviſions for their intended voyage. This man brought them to the harbour of Anguatulco, or, as others write, Guatalco, where arriving on the 13th of April, they ſtaid till the 26th of the ſame month, and then ſet ſail, having firſt diſmiſſed all their Spaniſh priſoners, together with Nuno da Sylva, the Portugueze pilot, whom they brought from the Canaries, and who had ſerved them faithfully in all their trials and dangers; in reward for which he was now abandoned by Drake to the mercy of the enemy. This man, when he landed on the continent, was firſt carried to Mexico, and there put to the torture to make diſcoveries. He was afterwards ſent priſoner into Old Spain, and there examined; and, having given a faithful relation of all he knew, was releaſed, and returned home to his own country, where he publiſhed, as has already been ſaid, an account of the voyage as far as he went, which was afterwards tranſlated into all the European languages, and univerſally read.

On their arrival at Anguatulco, they had no ſooner landed than Drake with part of his men marched up to the town, where they found the chief magiſtrate ſitting in judgment upon a parcel of poor ſavages, and ready to paſs ſentence of death upon almoſt all of them, they being charged with a conſpiracy to kill their maſters, and ſet fire to the town. Drake changed the ſcene, and made judges and criminals without diſtinction, his priſoners, conducting them all in proceſſion to his ſhip. Here he made the judge write an order to the commanding officer to deliver up the town, in which they found a great pot, ſays our author, as big as a buſhel, full of rials of plate, a gold chain, and a few jewels. The gold chain was taken from a gentleman who was making his eſcape from the town, but was intercepted by an Engliſh ſailor, who rifled him of all the valuables he had about him, of which the gold chain was thought to be of the leaſt value.

Being now ſufficiently enriched, and having given over all hopes of finding their aſſociates, and, perhaps, beginning to be infected with that deſire of eaſe and pleaſure which is the natural conſequence of wealth obtained by ſucceſsful villainy, or, what is ſtill more probable, being in fear of a ſurprize before they had ſecured their booty, they began to conſult about their return home; and, in purſuance of Drake's advice, reſolved firſt to find out ſome convenient harbour where they might more ſafely lie and equip themſelves for the voyage, and then endeavour to diſcover a nearer paſſage from the South Seas into the Atlantic Ocean; a paſſage that would not only enable them to return home with full ſecurity, and in a ſhorter time, but would much facilitate the navigation into thoſe parts, and of courſe immortalize their names.

For this purpoſe they had recourſe to a port in the iſland of Canes, where they met with fiſh, wood, and freſh water; and, being ſufficiently ſtored with other proviſions, with which they had ſupplied themſelves from their prizes and at Anguatulco, they ſet ſail firſt with a reſolution of ſeeking a paſſage by the north-weſt, and if that failed, by the Moluccas, and thence, following the courſe of the Portugueze, to return by the Cape of Good Hope.

In purſuance of the firſt reſolution, they ſailed about 600 leagues, till coming into the latitude of 43 deg. north, they found the air ſo exceſſive cold, that the men could no longer bear to handle the ropes to navigate the ſhip: they, therefore, changed their courſe till they came into the latitude of 38 deg. and 30 min. under which height they diſcovered a very good harbour, and, fortunately, had a favourable wind to enable them to enter it.

Here, on the 17th of June, they caſt anchor, and, in a ſhort time, had opportunities of obſerving that the natives of that country were not leſs ſenſible than themſelves; for, the next day, there came a man rowing in his canoe towards the ſhip, and at a diſtance from it, made a long oration with very extraordinary geſticulations, and great appearance of vehemence; and, a little time afterwards, made a ſecond viſit in the ſame manner; and then returning a third time, he preſented them, after his harangue was finiſhed, with a kind of crown of black feathers, ſuch as their kings wear upon their heads, and a baſket of ruſhes filled with a particular herb, both which he faſtened to a ſhort ſtick, and threw into the boat: nor could he be prevailed upon to receive any thing in return, though puſhed towards him upon a board, only he took up a hat that was flung in the water.

Three days afterwards, the ſhip, having received ſome damage at ſea, was brought nearer to land, that her lading might be taken out; in order to which, the Engliſh, who had now learned not to commit their lives too negligently to the mercy of ſavage nations, raiſed a kind of fortification with earth and paliſades, and erected their tents within it. All this was not beheld by the inhabitants without the utmoſt aſtoniſhment, which incited them to come down in crowds to the coaſt, with no other view, as it afterwards appeared, but to compliment the beautiful ſtrangers that had condeſcended to touch upon their country.

Drake, neither confiding too much in appearances, nor wholly diſtruſting the friendly diſpoſition of the inhabitants, directed them to lay aſide their bows and arrows, and, on their approach, preſented them with linen and other neceſſaries, of which he ſhewed them the uſe. They then returned to their habitations, about three quarters of a mile from the Engliſh camp, where they made ſuch loud and violent noiſes, that they were heard by the Engliſh, who had vanity enough to believe that they were paying them a kind of melancholy adoration.

Two days afterwards, they perceived the approach of a far more numerous company, who ſtopt at the top of a hill which over-looked the Engliſh ſettlement, while one of them made a long oration, at the end of which all the aſſembly bowed their bodies, and pronounced the ſyllable Oh with a ſolemn tone, as by way of confirmation of what had been ſaid by the orator. Then the men laying down their bows, and leaving their women and children on the top of the hill, came down towards the tents, and ſeemed tranſported in the higheſt degree at the kindneſs of Drake, who received their gifts, and admitted them to his preſence. The women at a diſtance appeared ſeized with a kind of phrenzy, ſuch as that of old among the Pagans in ſome of their religious ceremonies, and, in honour as it ſeemed of their gueſts, tore their cheeks and boſoms with their nails, and threw themſelves upon the ſtones with their naked bodies.

Three days after this, on June 25, 1579, Drake received two Ambaſſadors from the Hioh, or King, of the country, who, intending to viſit the camp, required that ſome token might be ſent him of friendſhip and peace. This requeſt was readily complied with; and ſoon after came the King, attended by a guard of about an hundred tall men, and preceded by an Officer of State, who carried a ſceptre made of black wood, adorned with chains made of a kind of bone or horn, which are marks of the higheſt honour among them. Behind him was the King himſelf, dreſſed in a coat of beaſt ſkins, with a crown woven with feathers upon his head. His attendants followed, dreſſed nearly in the ſame manner all but the crown; and after them came the common people, with baſkets platted ſo artificially that they held water, in which, by way of preſent, they brought roots and fiſh.

Drake, not lulled into ſecurity, ranged his men in order of battle, and waited their approach, who coming nearer, ſtood ſtill, while the ſcepter-bearer made an oration; at the concluſion of which, they came again forward at the foot of the hill, and then the ſcepter-bearer began a ſong, which he accompanied with a dance, in both which the men joined, but the women danced without ſinging. Drake now diſtruſting them no longer, admitted them into his fortification, where they continued their ſong and dance a ſhort time; and then both the King and ſome others of the company made a long harangue, in which it appeared, by the reſt of their behaviour, that they entreated them to accept of the government of their country; and the King, with the concurrence of the reſt, placed the crown upon Drake's head, graced him with the chains and other ſigns of authority, and ſaluted him with the title of Hioh. The kingdom thus offered, though of no farther value to him than that it furniſhed him with preſent neceſſaries, Drake thought it not prudent for him to refuſe; and, therefore, took poſſeſſion of it in the name of Queen Elizabeth, not without ardent wiſhes that this acquiſition might be of uſe to his native country. The kingdom being thus conſigned, and the grand affair at an end, the common people left their King and his Nobles with Drake, and diſperſed themſelves over the camp; and when they ſaw any one that pleaſed them more than the reſt, they tore their fleſh and vented their outcries, as before, in token of reverence and reſpect. They then proceeded to ſhew them their wounds and diſeaſes, in hopes, perhaps, of a miraculous cure; to which the Engliſh, to benefit and undeceive them at the ſame time, applied ſuch remedies as they uſed on like occaſions.

They were now grown confident and familiar, and came down to the camp every day, repeating their ceremonies, till they were more fully informed how diſagreeable they were to thoſe whoſe favour they were ſo ſtudious of obtaining. They then viſited them without ceremony, indeed, but with a curioſity ſo ardent, that it left them no leiſure to provide the neceſſaries of life, with which the Engliſh were, therefore, obliged to ſupply them. They had, then, ſufficient opportunity to remark the cuſtom and diſpoſition of theſe new allies, whom they found tractable and benevolent, ſtrong of body far beyond the Engliſh, yet unfurniſhed with weapons either for aſſault or defence, their bows being too weak for any thing but ſport. Their dexterity in taking fiſh was ſuch, that, if they ſaw them ſo near the ſhore that they could come to them without ſwimming, they never miſſed them.

The ſame curioſity that had brought them in ſuch crouds to the ſhore, now induced Drake and ſome of his companions to travel up into their country, which they found at ſome diſtance from the coaſt very fruitful, filled with large deer, and abounding with a peculiar kind of cunnies ſmaller than ours, with tails like rats, paws ſuch as thoſe of a mole, and bags under their chins, in which they carry proviſions to their young.

The houſes of the inhabitants were round holes dug in the ground, from the brink of which they raiſe rafters, or poles, ſhelving towards the middle, where they all meet in a ridge, and are crampt together; the people lie upon ruſhes, and make the fire in the middle of the houſe, letting the ſmoke fly out at the door. The men are generally naked; but the women make a kind of petticoat of bulruſhes, which they comb like hemp, and throw the ſkin of a deer over their ſhoulders. They are very modeſt, tractable, and obedient to their huſbands. The ſoil is but badly cultivated; but contentment ſeems to prevail in a very eminent degree among all ranks of this happy people.

The land was named by Drake New Albion, from its white cliffs, in which it bore ſome reſemblance to his native country, and the whole hiſtory of the reſignation of it to the Engliſh was engraven on a piece of braſs, then nailed on a poſt, and fixed up before their departure, which being now diſcovered by the people to be near at hand, they could not forbear perpetual lamentations.

When the Engliſh on the 23d of July weighed anchor, they ſaw them climbing to the tops of hills, that they might keep them in ſight, and obſerved fires lighted up in many parts of the country, on which, as they ſuppoſed, ſacrifices were offered.

Near to this harbour, they touched at ſome iſlands where they found abundance of ſeals; and, deſpairing now to find any paſſage through the northern regions, they, after a general conſultation, determined to ſteer away to the Moluccas; and, ſetting ſail July 25, they held a weſtern courſe for 68 days without ſight of land; and, on September 30, arrived within view of ſome iſlands, about 20 degrees northward from the Line, from whence the inhabitants reſorted to them in canoes hollowed in the middle, and raiſed at both ends ſo high above the water, that they ſeemed almoſt a ſemi-circle; they were burniſhed in ſuch a manner that they ſhone like ebony, and were kept ſteady by a piece of timber fixed on each ſide of them. The firſt company that came brought fruits, bananas, and other things of no great value, with an appearance of traffic, and exchanged their lading for other commodities with great ſhow of honeſty and friendſhip. But having, as they imagined, laid all ſuſpicion aſleep, they ſent another fleet of canoes, of which the crews behaved with all the inſolence of ſavages, and all the rapacity of thieves; for, whatever was ſuffered to come into their hands, they ſeemed to conſider as their own, and would neither pay for it nor reſtore it: and, at length, finding the Engliſh reſolved to admit them no longer, they diſcharged a ſhower of ſtones from their boats, which inſult Drake prudently and generouſly returned, by firing his great guns without hurting them; at which they were ſo terrified, that they leaped into the water, and hid themſelves under their canoes.

Here we cannot help remarking how nearly this deſcription agrees with the accounts given by the late navigators, of the temper and diſpoſition of the inhabitants of the iſlands lately diſcovered between the Tropics. Drake, indeed, found the firing of his guns without hurting them, ſufficient to intimidate theſe ignorant people; but our later voyagers have thought their vengeance not complete for any ſlight inſult, without murdering them by wholeſale to ſtrike them with terror. The writer of the late voyages ſays, "Our men ſhewed as much impatience to deſtroy them, as a ſportſman to kill his game."

Having for ſome time but little wind, they did not arrive at the Moluccas till the 3d of November; and then, deſigning to touch at Tidore, as they coaſted along the iſland Mutua, belonging to the King of Ternate, they were viſited by his Viceroy, who informed them that it would be more advantageous for them to have recourſe to his maſter for his ſupplies, than to the Portugueſe, with whom he was at enmity. Drake was, by the arguments of the Viceroy, prevailed upon to alter his reſolution; and, on November the 5th, caſt anchor before Ternate. Scarce was he arrived, before the Viceroy, with others of the chief nobility, came out in three large barges rowed by forty men on each ſide, to conduct the ſhip into a ſafe harbour; and, ſoon after, the King himſelf, having received a velvet cloak by a meſſenger from Drake, as a token of peace, came with ſuch a retinue and dignity of appearance, as was not expected in thoſe remote parts of the world. He was received with diſcharges of cannon, and every kind of muſic, with which he was ſo much delighted, that he invited the performers on board his barge.

The King was of a graceful ſtature and royal carriage, of a mild aſpect and low voice. His attendants were dreſſed in white cotton or callico, of whom ſome, whoſe age gave them a venerable appearance, ſeemed as counſellors, and the reſt officers or nobles. His guards were not ignorant of fire-arms, but had not many among them, being equipped for the moſt part with bows and darts. The King, having ſpent ſome time in admiring the new objects that preſented themſelves, retired as ſoon as the ſhip was brought to anchor, and promiſed to return on the day following; and in the mean time the inhabitants, having leave to traffic, brought down proviſions in great abundance. The King came not aboard, according to his promiſe, but ſent his brother to excuſe him, and withal to invite Drake aſhore, propoſing to ſtay himſelf as an hoſtage for his return. Drake declined going himſelf, but ſent ſome gentlemen of his retinue in company with the King's brother, and kept the Viceroy till their return.

Theſe gentlemen were received by another of the king's brothers, and conducted in great ſtate to the caſtle, where there was a court of, at leaſt, 1000 perſons, among whom were threeſcore ancient men, privy counſellors to the king; and on each ſide of the gate without, ſtood four old men of foreign countries, who ſerved as interpreters in commerce. In a ſhort time appeared the King himſelf, dreſt in cloth of gold, with his hair woven into gold ringlets, a chain of gold upon his neck, and on his fingers rings very artificially ſet with diamonds and jewels of great value. Over his head was borne a rich canopy; and by his chair of ſtate ſtood a page with a fan ſet with ſapphires, to moderate the exceſs of the heat. Here he received the compliments of the Engliſh, and then honourably diſmiſſed them. The caſtle, which they had ſome opportunity of obſerving, ſeemed of no great force. It was built by the Portugueſe, who, attempting to reduce this kingdom into abſolute ſubjection, murdered the King, and intended to purſue their plot by the deſtruction of all his ſons. But the general abhorrence which cruelty and perfidy naturally excite, armed the whole nation againſt them, and procured their total expulſion from all the dominions of Ternate, which, from that time, increaſing in power, continued to make new conqueſts, and to deprive them of other acquiſitions.

Here they ſhipt between four and five tons of cloves, intending to bring them to Europe. While they lay before Ternate, a gentleman came on board attended by his Portugueſe interpreter. He was dreſſed ſomewhat in the European manner, and ſoon diſtinguiſhed himſelf from the natives of Ternate, or any country they had ever yet ſeen, by his civility and quick comprehenſion. Such a viſitant may eaſily be imagined to excite their curioſity, which he gratified by informing them that he was a native of China, of the family of the King then upon the throne; and that being accuſed of a capital crime, of which, though he was innocent, he had not ſufficient evidence to clear himſelf, he had petitioned the Emperor that he might not be expoſed to a trial; but that his cauſe might be referred to Divine Providence; and that he might be allowed to leave his country, with a prohibition againſt returning, unleſs heaven, in atteſtation of his innocence, ſhould enable him to bring back to the King ſome intelligence that might be to the honour and advantage of the Empire of China. In ſearch of ſuch information he had now ſpent three years, and left Tidore for the ſake of converſing with the Engliſh General, from whom he hoped to receive ſuch accounts as would enable him to return with honour and ſafety. Drake, whether he credited or diſbelieved his ſtory, cauſed a recital to be made by one of the company, who talked the language of the interpreter, of ſuch adventures and obſervations as he judged would be moſt pleaſing to his viſitor, to all which the Chineſe exile gave the utmoſt attention; and, having cauſed them to be repeated a ſecond time, to impreſs them in his mind, thanked the Creator of the World for the knowledge he had gained. He then propoſed to the General to ſail to his country, to which he willingly undertook to be his pilot; but Drake could not be induced to prolong his voyage.

He therefore ſet ſail, on November the 9th, in queſt of a more convenient harbour, where he might clean and refit his ſhip, which, by the length of the voyage, and the heat of the climate, was now become foul and leaky. Directing his courſe ſouthward, he ſoon fell in with an uninhabited iſland, which, by its appearance, promiſed fair to anſwer his purpoſe. At a diſtance it looked like a beautiful grove; the trees were large, ſtraight, and lofty; but, what was more extraordinary, they were interſperſed with ſuch an aſtoniſhing number of ſhining flies, that the whole iſland in the night ſeemed to glow with fire. Here they found a convenient haven, and here they landed and continued 26 days. They found upon this iſland tortoiſe, but of a monſtrous ſize, and various ſorts of fruits of a delicious flavour.

Leaving this place on the 12th of December, they cruelly deſerted the unhappy mulatto girl whom they had taken for their pleaſure from a ſhip that fell into their hands on the coaſt of New Spain. They had, at the ſame time, taken on board a negroe youth, who they thought might be ſerviceable to them in converſing with his nation in their way home; but, finding him of little or no uſe on board, and proviſions beginning to fail, they pretended to ſend this ſimple couple far into the country to gather fruits, and, in the mean time, unmoored the ſhip, and hoiſted ſail; and, before the return of the victims, were out of ſight of their tears, and out of hearing of their cries: a melancholy inſtance this of the depravity of man's heart, and of the relentleſs cruelty of minds addicted to rapine and luſt. The poor girl, not yet fifteen, was ready to be delivered of an innocent babe; and the youth, not twenty, was the only reſource in the midſt of her diſtreſs. What befel them cannot be known: but Providence ſeemed to puniſh the perfidy of the crew by a ſevere trial of their fortitude ſoon after.

Having a wind not very favourable, they happened to be intangled among a multitude of iſlands, interſperſed with dangerous ſhallows, till January the 9th, 1580. When they thought themſelves clear, and were ſailing along with a briſk gale, they were, at the beginning of the night, ſuddenly ſurprized in their courſe by a ſudden ſhock, the cauſe of which was inſtantly diſcovered, for they were thrown upon a concealed rock, and, by the ſpeed of their courſe, fixed too faſt for any hope of eſcaping.

Here the intrepidity of Drake was ſhaken, and his dexterity baffled: here all the horrors of mind, attendant on conſcious guilt, concurred to aggravate the diſtreſs of thoſe who were inſtrumental in abandoning the harmleſs ſlaves. Thoſe who were innocent reproached the guilty with being the authors of their preſent diſtreſs; and, among the reſt, Mr. Fletcher, the chaplain, exclaimed againſt the Captain, as one whoſe crimes of murder and luſt had brought down divine vengeance on all the company. Drake, who knew well how to diſſemble his reſentment, judging this an improper time to encourage diſputes, endeavoured, by every means in his power, to appeaſe the increaſing animoſity. To preſerve, therefore, the minds of the company at reſt, he found it neceſſary to keep their hands employed, and, for that purpoſe, ordered the pumps to be conſtantly plied. Convinced by this experiment that the water did not gain upon them in the hold, he conceived hopes, that, by lightening the ſhip, they might poſſibly be able to heave her off. He knew it would be in vain to perſuade them to part with their treaſure, and, therefore, he firſt cauſed the guns to be thrown overboard, and then the ſpices; and, afterwards, the water caſks to be bulged, being in hopes, that, if they could be releaſed, water might again be ſupplied from the neighbouring iſlands, ſome of which were at no great diſtance. His next attempt was to diſcover about the ſhallows ſome place where they might fix an anchor, in order to bring their ſhip to, and, by that means, clear her from the rock: but, upon examination, it was found that the rock on which they had ſtruck, roſe, as many others in thoſe ſeas do, almoſt perpendicular, and that there was no anchorage, nor any bottom to be fathomed a boat's length from the ſhip. But this diſcovery was by Drake wiſely concealed from the common ſailors, leſt they ſhould abandon themſelves to deſpair, for which there was, indeed, much cauſe, there being no proſpect left, but that they muſt there ſink along with the ſhip.

In this deplorable ſituation they had remained for four and twenty hours, when Drake, finding all human efforts vain, addreſſed himſelf to his companions in diſtreſs, and exhorted them to lay aſide all animoſities, and prepare themſelves, by forgiving each other, for obtaining that mercy, through Chriſt, which they could not hope to receive on any other terms. "On this occaſion," ſays our author, "every thief reconciled himſelf to his fellow-thief, and Fletcher adminiſtered the ſacrament to them all." At length, when their hopes had forſaken them, and no new ſtruggles could be made, they were, on a ſudden, relieved by the wind's ſhifting, and a freſh breeze ſpringing up, which taking the ſhip on the leeward quarter, ſhe reeled off the rock, without receiving any very dangerous hurt, to the unſpeakable joy of every ſoul on board.

This was the greateſt and moſt inextricable diſtreſs which they had ſuffered, and made ſuch an impreſſion upon their minds, that for ſome time afterwards they durſt not adventure to ſpread their ſails, but went ſlowly forward with the utmoſt circumſpection, till, arriving at the fruitful iſland of Baretene, they entered the port to repair what damage the ſhip had received upon the rock. They found the people of this iſland of an amiable and obliging diſpoſition, courteous in their manners, and honeſt in their dealings. They are finely proportioned, tall of ſtature, and of comely features. The men, in general, go naked; but the women cover themſelves from the waiſt downwards, are modeſt, yet not inſenſible of love and pleaſure. They found the iſland abounding with every neceſſary, and not a few of the comforts of life.

Having repaired the ſhip and refreſhed the men, they continued their courſe without any material occurrence till the 11th of March, when they came to anchor before the iſland of Java, and ſending to the King a preſent of cloth and ſilks, received from him in return a preſent ſupply of refreſhments; and on the day following Drake went himſelf on ſhore, and entertained the King with muſic, and obtained leave to ſtore his ſhip with proviſions. This iſland was governed by a great number of petty Kings or Rayas, ſubordinate to one Chief. Of theſe princes three came on board together a few days after their arrival, and having, upon their return, recounted the wonders they had ſeen, and the civilities with which they had been treated, incited others to ſatisfy their curioſity in the ſame manner; and Raya Denan, the chief King, came himſelf to view the ſhip, with the warlike armaments and inſtruments of navigation. This intercourſe of civilities ſomewhat retarded the buſineſs for which they came; but, at length, they not only victualled their ſhip, but payed the bottom, which was the more neceſſary frequently to be repeated, as, at that time, ſheathing of ſhips was not in practice.

The Javans were at this time a warlike people, well armed, with ſwords, targets, and daggers, forged by themſelves, and exquiſitely wrought. They were ſociable, full of vivacity, and beyond deſcription happy. They were likewiſe hoſpitable to ſtrangers, and not at all addicted to thievery, the general characteriſtic of the iſlanders in the Pacific Sea.

From Java Drake intended to have viſited the Malaccas, but his company became troubleſome, being deſirous of returning home. On this occaſion he called to mind the ſpeech of Maſter Fletcher, while they remained hopeleſs upon the rock, and, under pretence of his ſpiriting up the people to oppoſe him, he cauſed him, ſays our author, "to be made faſt by one of his legs with a chain, and a ſtaple knocked faſt into the hatches, in the forecaſtle of the ſhip. He called all the company together, and then put a lock about one of his legs; and Drake, ſitting croſs-legged on a cheſt, and a pair of pantofles in his hand, he ſaid, Francis Fletcher, I do here excommunicate thee out of the Church of God, and from all the benefits and graces thereof, and I renounce thee to the devil and all his angels; and then he charged him, upon pain of death, not once to come before the maſt; for, if he did, he ſwore he ſhould be hanged, and Drake cauſed a poeſy to be written, and bound about Fletcher's arm, with charge, that if he took it off he ſhould then be hanged; the poeſy was, FRANCIS FLETCHER, THE FALSEST KNAVE THAT LIVETH." It does not, however, appear how long he was obliged to wear this poeſy as it is called. But Drake was obliged to alter his reſolution, and comply with the company's deſires.

On the 25th of March, 1580, he therefore took his departure, and, on the 15th of June, they doubled the Cape of Good Hope, having then on board his ſhip fifty-ſeven men, and but three caſks of water.

On the 12th of July they paſſed the Line, reached the coaſt of Guinea on the 16th, and on July the 22d arrived at Sierra Leona, after a moſt delightful paſſage, in which they diſcovered how much the Portugueſe had abuſed the world in their falſe repreſentations of the horrors and dangers that attended the navigation round the Cape. At Sierra Leona they ſtaid two days to refreſh the men, and, having furniſhed themſelves with wood and water for the remainder of the voyage, they ſet ſail for England in high expectation of enriching their country, with the ſpoils of the Spaniards.

On the 11th of September they made the iſland of Ferara, and, on the third of November, they entered the harbour of Plymouth. In this voyage Drake ſurrounded the world, which no Commander in Chief had ever done before; and what, at that time appeared a thing extraordinary, by ſteering a weſtern courſe they had loſt a day in their account.

Their ſucceſs in this voyage, and the immenſe wealth they brought home, raiſed much diſcourſe throughout the kingdom; ſome highly commending, and ſome as loudly decrying the principles upon which it was acquired. The former alledged, that this enterprize was not only honourable to the Commander who conducted, and the crew who aſſiſted in the performance of it, but to their country; that it would eſtabliſh our reputation for maritime ſkill in foreign nations, and raiſe a laudable ſpirit of emulation at home; and that, as to the money, our merchants having ſuffered deeply by the treachery and villainy of the Spaniards in the new diſcovered country, there was nothing more juſt than that the nation ſhould receive an equivalent by the repriſals which Drake and his company, at the hazard of their lives, had bravely extorted.

The other party argued, that Drake, in fact, was no better than a pirate; that, of all others, it leaſt became a trading nation to countenance ſuch depredations; that the expedition was not only a breach of all our treaties with Spain, but likewiſe of our old leagues with the Houſe of Burgundy; and that the conſequences would infallibly involve the Queen in a war, by which the nation would ſuffer infinitely more than the riches acquired by a ſingle ſhip could counterbalance.

Theſe were the ſentiments, and theſe the ſpeculations with which the different parties amuſed themſelves for ſome time after the arrival of Drake in his native country. At length, the approbation of the Queen determined the diſpute; for all acquieſced in the wiſdom of their Sovereign.

Lopez Vaz, a Spaniſh writer, ſays, that Drake carried from the coaſt of Peru, 866,000 pezoes of ſilver, equal to 866 quintals, equal to 100 pound weight each quintal, amounting to 1,139,200 ducats. He alſo carried away 100,000 pezoes of gold, equal to 10 quintals, each quintal valued at 1500 Spaniſh ducats; and all this over and above the treaſure in the ſhip, which was not entered, conſiſting of gold, ſilver, pearls, precious ſtones, coined money, and other things of great value. He alſo rifled the ſhips from the Philippines, laden with ſpices, ſilks, velvets, and other rich merchandize, the value not known.—By the above account, the ſilver only, at 5s. per oz. amounts to 259,800l. and the gold to 48,000l. ſterling. But we have ſeen a manuſcript that makes the value of the whole cargo brought home by the Golden Hind (for that was the name that Drake choſe his ſhip, the Pelican, ſhould be known by) amount to 800,000l. though that which was divided among the crew was only 80,000l. Is it not reaſonable then to conclude, that the Queen and Council had a conſiderable ſhare of the remainder?

On the 4th of April, 1581, her Majeſty went to Deptford, and dined on board the ſhip in which ſo many Kings had been entertained before; and, after dinner, ſhe conferred the honour of knighthood on her Commander; an honour not to be obtained in thoſe days on trivial occaſions, but as a reward for ſignal ſervices. This mark of diſtinction was a full declaration of her Majeſty's approbation, ſilenced Drake's enemies, and gave joy to his friends. She likewiſe gave directions for the preſervation of the ſhip, that it might remain a monument of his own and his country's glory.

What contributed the more to render the fame of Drake illuſtrious, was the frequent attempts that had been made by navigators, the moſt renowned in their time, to atchieve the ſame; but without ſucceſs. In 1527 the Spaniards ſent Gracca de Loaiſa, a Knight of Malta, with a ſquadron of ſeven ſhips to follow the rout of Magellan, who, though his ſhip returned to Spain, yet he himſelf loſt his life, before he arrived at the Malaccas, the promiſed iſlands. Loaiſa paſſed the ſtraits, indeed, loſt ſome of his ſhips in the South Seas, others put into the ports of New Spain, and only his own veſſel and one more reached the Eaſt Indies, where himſelf and all his people periſhed.

In 1526, the Genoeſe ſent two ſhips to paſs the ſtraits, of which one was caſt away, and the other returned home without effecting any thing.

Sebaſtian Cabot, in the ſervice of the crown of Portugal, made the like trial; but not being able to find the ſtraits, returned into the river of Plate.

Americus Veſpuſius, a Florentine, from whom the new world received its name, undertook to perform, in the ſervice of the crown of Portugal, what Cabot had promiſed without effect; but that vain man was ſtill more unfortunate: for he could neither find the ſtraits, nor the river of Plate.

Some years after this, the Spaniards equipped a ſtout ſquadron, under the command of Simon de Alcaſara; but, before they reached the height of the ſtraits, the crews mutinied, and obliged their Commander to return.

Such repeated miſcarriages diſcouraged even the ableſt and boldeſt ſeamen; ſo that from this time both Spaniards and others dropped all thoughts of emulating Magellan, till Drake conceived his deſign, as has already been ſaid, concealed it in his breaſt till ripe for execution.

Being now advanced to eminence, in 1585 he was employed in the Queen's ſervice, and ſent on an expedition to the Weſt Indies as Commander in Chief; and having under him Captain Martin Forbiſher, Captain Knollys, and other experienced Officers of the royal navy, he took St. Jago, St. Domingo, Carthagena, and St. Auguſtin. He returned elated with his ſucceſs; but, as our author ſays, not much enriched by the plunder.

In 1587, he was again employed in an expedition to Liſbon, in which Captain Forbiſher alſo bore a part. Here they gained intelligence that a conſiderable fleet was aſſembled in the bay of Cadiz, with a view to the forming an armament for the invaſion of England; he immediately repaired to their place of rendezvous, and fell upon them at unawares; and, as it is ſaid, burnt 10,000 tons of ſhipping, with all the ſtores which they were amaſſing for the intended invaſion.

In their return they fell in with a carrack from the Eaſt Indies, richly laden, of which they likewiſe got intelligence in the port of Liſbon. This was the St. Philip, of which Linſchoten gives the following account, when this Dutchman was at Goa, the chief ſettlement of the Portugueſe in the Eaſt Indies: "There came in, he ſays, from the iſland of Japan, certain Jeſuits, and with them three Princes, being the children of ſo many Kings of that country, wholly apparelled like Jeſuits, not one of them above the age of 15 years, being minded by the perſuaſion of the Jeſuits to viſit Portingall, and from thence to go to Rome to ſee the Pope, thereby to procure great profit, privileges, and liberties for the miſſionaries in that iſland.

" In 1584, they ſet ſail for Portingall, and from thence travelled into Spain, where, by the King and all the Spaniſh nobility, they were with honour received, and preſented with many gifts, which the Jeſuits kept for themſelves.

" Out of Spain, they rode to ſee the Pope; that done, they travelled throughout Italy, where they were much honoured, and preſented with many rich preſents, by means of the great report the Jeſuits made of them.

" To conclude, they returned to Madrid, where with great honour they took their leave of the King, who furniſhed them with letters of recommendation to the Viceroy, and all the Portingall Governors of India; ſo they went to Liſbon, and there took ſhipping in 1586, and came to Goa in the ſhip called St. Philip, which ſhip, in her return to Portingall, was taken by Captain Drake, being the firſt that was taken coming from the Eaſt Indies; which the Portugueſe took for an evil ſign, becauſe the ſhip bore the King's own name;" both Spain and Portugal being at that time governed by the ſame Sovereign.

" When the Princes and Jeſuits of Japan arrived at Goa on their return from Europe, they were received, adds Linſchoten, with great rejoicings; for it was verily thought they had all been dead. On their landing they were all three apparalled in cloth of gold and ſilver after the Italian manner, being the ſame the Italian noblemen and gentlemen had given them. They came to Goa very lively and in high ſpirits; and the Jeſuits were not a little proud, that through their means the voyage had been ſucceſsfully performed. In Goa they ſtaid till the monſoon or time of the wind's ſetting in to ſail for China, and thence to Japan, where, with great triumph and wondering of all the people, they were received and welcomed home, to the great furtherance of the Jeſuits."

The St. Philip, in her voyage to Goa, had been driven by ſtreſs of weather into Maſambique, where ſhe met with the St. Laurence, homeward bound, that had likewiſe been driven into the ſame port diſabled, having loſt her maſts, and received other conſiderable damage, by which ſhe was rendered unſerviceable. The St. Philip, therefore, as ſoon as ſhe had landed her paſſengers at Goa, returned to Maſambique, and took in the lading of the St. Laurence, which enabled her to make her voyage to Europe about the uſual time; a circumſtance fortunate for Drake, as it increaſed both his fame and his fortune.

In 1588, Drake was appointed Vice-Admiral, under Charles Lord Effingham Howard, High-Admiral of England, to oppoſe the formidable armada that had for three years before been ſecretly preparing in Spain for the invaſion of England. In Drake's letter to Lord Treaſurer Burleigh, acquainting him with the approach of the Spaniards, he concludes with this elegant compliment to his ſuperior: "That, though the ſtrength of the enemy out-went report, yet the chearfulneſs and courage which the Lord Admiral expreſſed gave all who had the honour to ſerve under him aſſurance of victory;" a compliment which was the more admired in Drake, as in a former letter to the ſame Miniſter, in which he tells him of his gallant atchievement in the port of Cadiz, "Not reſting, ſaid he, at Liſbon, we ſailed ſo cloſe to the Spaniſh King, that we ſinged his beard;" a coarſe metaphor, it muſt be owned, but ſtrongly characteriſtic.

Drake's good fortune ſtill accompanied him; for in the engagement which afterwards happened on the arrival of the armada, though he committed the greateſt error that ever Commander was guilty of, by purſuing ſome hulks belonging to the Hans Towns for plunder, when he was entruſted to carry lights in the night for the direction of the Engliſh fleet, he miſled the Admiral; yet he was the only Commander who profited moſt by the deſtruction of the enemy. Lord Howard, ſuppoſing the lights of the Spaniſh Admiral to be the lights which Drake was ordered to carry, was entangled in the very centre of the Spaniſh fleet, before he found his miſtake; but, fortunately, night favouring his eſcape, he diſengaged himſelf before he was diſcovered. This blunder was afterwards effaced by the gallant behaviour of Drake, than whom no man was ever bolder, or more determined. We do not, however, find his name among the Commanders whom the Lord High Admiral thought proper to thank for their ſervices on that occaſion. On the 2d of July, ſays Strype, Sir Francis, obſerving a large Spaniſh galleon, commanded by Don Pedro de Valdez, who was the reputed projector of the invaſion, floating at a diſtance from both fleets, ſent his pinnace to ſummon the Captain to ſurrender, who at firſt vauntingly ſet him at defiance; but being told it was Drake that required him to yield, he immediately ſtruck his colours, and, with 46 of his crew, came on board the conqueror. In this ſhip he found 50,000 ducats, with other effects to a much greater amount.

The next year he was appointed Admiral of a ſquadron ſent to place Don Antonio on the throne of Portugal, to which that Prince pretended to have a right. "But, ſays Rapin, (whoſe account of this expedition we ſhall follow) as the Queen was extremely frugal, and an undertaking againſt Spain could not but be very expenſive, ſhe ſo ordered it, that Drake and Norris took upon them to be at the charge, in hopes of making themſelves amends by the booty they ſhould meet with. So ſhe only found them ſix ſhips of war, with a preſent of 60,000l. with leave to raiſe ſoldiers and ſailors for the expedition. Drake had already tried the Spaniards in America and in the Channel, and was convinced they were more formidable in common opinion than in reality; wherefore, joining with Sir John Norris, and ſome other private perſons, they equipped a fleet, and embarked 11,000 ſoldiers and 1500 marines. The Hollanders having alſo added ſome ſhips, the fleet conſiſted, according to Stow, of 146 ſail; tranſports and victuallers included. Drake commanded at ſea, and Norris was General of the land forces. They took with them Don Antonio, who hoped, by the aſſiſtance of the Engliſh to be put in poſſeſſion of his kingdom, where he pretended to have many friends.

"They ſailed from Plymouth on the 18th of April, and ſoon after arrived at the Groyne, where landing their troops, they aſſaulted the lower town, and carried it by ſtorm. Then they beſieged the upper town. But Norris, having advice that the Conde di Andrada was approaching with a body of troops to relieve the place, ſuddenly raiſed the ſiege to march againſt him; and, overtaking him, ſlew 3000 of his men. This done, he burnt ſeveral villages; and, without returning to the ſiege, re-embarked his troops, their principal deſign being againſt Portugal.

"Whilſt they were ſailing towards the coaſts of that kingdom, they were joined by the Earl of Eſſex, with ſome ſhips he had armed at his own charge, unknown to the Queen. Some days after, they arrived at Panicha, a little town in Portugal, and, taking it, reſtored it to Don Antonio; from thence Norris marched by land to Liſbon, Drake promiſing to follow with the fleet up the Tagus. The army marched 40 miles without oppoſition; and encamping before Liſbon, took the ſuburbs of St. Catharine: but, as Drake performed not his promiſe, and the army wanted cannon and ammunition, it was reſolved in a council of war to retire. This reſolution was taken, becauſe there was no appearance that the Portugueſe were inclined to revolt, as Don Antonio had expected: and alſo, becauſe there was no news of the ſuccours he had boaſted of from the King of Morocco. The army marching towards the mouth of the Tagus, met Drake, who had taken the town of Caſcaes, and excuſed himſelf upon the impoſſibility of performing his promiſe. Some days after, the caſtle of Caſcaes ſurrendering, it was blown up; and, to make themſelves amends for the charges of the expedition, the Engliſh ſeized ſixty veſſels laden with corn, and all manner of naval ſtores to equip a new fleet againſt England, belonging to the Hans Towns. Then they went and took Vigo, which was abandoned by the inhabitants; and, firing the town, returned to England. This expedition did ſome damage to the King of Spain, but was of no benefit to Elizabeth; and the booty was not ſufficient to pay for equipping the fleet, though Camden ſays, they brought home 150 pieces of heavy cannon, and a great booty. Above ſix thouſand men periſhed in this expedition by ſickneſs.

The writers of Drake's life ſay, that Norris grievouſly reproached Drake with breach of his promiſe, and charged the miſcarriage of the expedition to his timidity. Indeed, Drake's good genius ſeems now to have forſaken him; and happy, ſay the ſame writers, if, having received this firſt check at play, he had withdrawn his ſtake.

As the war with Spain continued, Hawkins and Drake, who, as it ſhould ſeem, wanted to continue their old game, where the profits were more, and the danger leſs, united their intereſt to perſuade the Queen and Council to undertake an effectual expedition to the Weſt Indies, by which the nation might be enriched, and the enemy deprived of thoſe reſources by which they were enabled to carry on the war.

For this purpoſe they procured, according to Rapin, twenty-ſix of the Queen's ſhips, the equipment of which, like the former, ſeems to have been ſupplied by private adventure; a practice at that time very common, where plunder was to be the reward. The preparations for this expedition, however, as it far exceeded all former enterprizes to the American Indies, could not be made ſo privately, or conducted ſo ſecretly, but that the Spaniards found means to diſcover both its ſtrength and deſtination, and prepared themſelves accordingly.

As the places that were to be attacked lay at a great diſtance, it was neceſſary to gain time, in order to fortify them. It was, therefore, found neceſſary to deviſe ſome expedient to prevent the ſailing of that formidable armament, till every thing was in readineſs to oppoſe it. Accordingly, it was given out, that a ſecond invaſion was intended againſt England; and when the Spaniſh fleet was ready to ſail for America, that had been equipping under pretence of an invaſion, a ſham attack was made upon Cornwall, in order to ſpread an alarm, and give it countenance.

This had the deſired effect. It was thought improper to part with ſo many ſtout ſhips while the nation was threatened; and the expedition was therefore retarded, till the panic had ſubſided.

It was therefore the 28th of Auguſt, 1695, before the Commanders obtained permiſſion to ſail; and in the mean time the Queen having received advice that the plate fleet was ſafe arrived in Europe, and that only one ſhip, which had ſprung her maſt, remained behind, her Majeſty acquainted them with the intelligence, and adviſed them to attack Porto Rico, before they purſued their grand enterprize, by which they might make themſelves maſters of the galleon without loſing much time in the conqueſt.

Sir Francis Drake, who was not formed to act in conjunct expeditions, had not been long at ſea before he differed in opinion from his fellow Commander, and purſued a project totally different from the firſt object of the voyage, in which, however, he was ſeconded by Sir Thomas Baſkerville, Commander of the land forces. This ſcheme was to attack the Canaries in the way to America; in which, however, they failed; and ſpending neceſſarily much time in the iſland of Dominica in landing and refreſhing the men, who, being unuſed to long voyages in hot climates, were many of them unfit to proceed, the Spaniards had ſo effectually prepared themſelves, that, when the Generals came to action, they found an oppoſition very different from what they expected; and were ſoon ſenſible, that what they had formerly effected by ſurprize with a handful of ſailors, was not now to be accompliſhed with a whole army of diſciplined troops.

In their courſe to Porto Rico, one of the ſternmoſt ſhips of the Engliſh fleet fell into the hands of five Spaniſh frigates that had been ſent from Spain to convoy home the galleon from that port. From this ſhip they gained the intelligence of the intended attack, the conſequences of which being foreſeen by Sir John Hawkins, it threw him into a ſudden diſorder, of which in a few days he died—ſome ſay, of a broken heart.

They were now, November 12, 1595, before Porto Rico, and the ſame evening that Sir John Hawkins died, as the principal officers were at ſupper, a cannon-ſhot from the fort pierced the cabin, killed Sir Nicholas Clifford, wounded Captain Stratford, mortally wounded Sir Brute Browne, and ſtruck the ſtool from under Sir Francis Drake, as he was drinking ſucceſs to the attack.

The next day, purſuant to a reſolution of a council of war, a general attack was made upon the ſhipping in the harbour, but without effect. The Spaniards ſuffered much, but the Engliſh more; who, finding it impoſſible to make an impreſſion upon the fortifications of the town, weighed anchor, and ſteered to Rio de la Hacha, ſet fire to the town and burned it to the ground; they likewiſe performed ſome other exploits of the like kind; but having landed the troops deſtined to croſs the iſthmus to attack Panama, after a fatiguing march in which they were great ſufferers, they returned, without being able to reach the place. This diſappointment materially affected Drake, who having, as he thought, provided a ſufficient force to carry into execution the enterprize which he had well-nigh effected with a few ſailors and Symerons ſome years before, could not bear the thought of ſurviving his diſgrace. " Now, ſays Fuller, began the diſcontent of Sir Francis Drake to feed upon him. He conceived, that expectation, a merciless uſurer, computing each day ſince his departure, exacted an intereſt and return of honour and profit proportionable to his great preparations, and tranſcending his former atchievements. He ſaw that all the good which he had done in his voyage, conſiſted in the evil he had done the Spaniards afar off, whereof he could preſent but ſmall viſible fruits in England. Theſe apprehenſions accompanying, if not cauſing, the diſeaſe of the flux, wrought his ſudden death; and ſickneſs did not ſo much untie his cloaths, as ſorrow did rend at once the robe of his mortality aſunder. He lived by the ſea, died on it, and was buried in it.

This account of the manner of Sir Francis Drake's death ſeems to be authentic, though ſome have not ſcrupled to inſinuate that ſickneſs had no part in that cataſtrophe. Be that as it may, Fuller's reflections upon it deſerve to be remembered. " Thus, ſays he, we ſee how great ſpirits, having mounted to the higheſt pitch of performance, afterwards ſtrain and break their credit in ſtriving to go beyond it, Or, it may be, God oftentimes leaves the brighteſt men in an eclipſe, to ſhew that they do but borrow their luſtre from his reflection."

Thus we have endeavoured to trace the actions of this celebrated navigator from beginning to end. If we have withdrawn the veil, which has hitherto covered his infirmities, it has been in the purſuit of truth; not with a deſign to detract from his real merit, but to ſhew his character in the true light. In the current of ſucceſs, even crimes of the deepeſt dye are ſometimes patroniſed even by the public. The actions which gave riſe to Drake's popularity, are ſuch as a courageous leader, with an hundred armed followers, might in theſe peaceable times eaſily perform, by entering the cities or towns on the coaſt of Britain, in the dead of night, cutting the throats of the watch, and all who happen to be awake in the ſtreets, breaking open and plundering houſes, and churches, ſeizing every thing valuable that ſhould fall into their hands, and, before the people could recover from their conſternation, making their eſcape with their booty. Were ſuch a company maſters of an armed veſſel, if there were no ſhip of force to oppoſe them, what ſhould hinder their ſailing from place to place, and, " provided they could outrun report," performing the like exploits in every town they came to? Would there be any thing truly great in this? Or would the man who ſhould undertake and execute an enterprize of ſuch a horrid nature, be juſtly entitled to the name of Hero? If not, what ſhall we ſay of Drake's nocturnal enterprize on Nombre de Dios; of his way-laying the treaſure in the road from Panama; of his ranging the unarmed coaſts of Chili and Peru; and of his plundering villages, towns, and ſhips belonging to a peaceable unſuſpecting people, with whom his nation was at peace, and from whom oppoſition was not to be dreaded? What, indeed, did the people at that time ſay? Thoſe who were the ſufferers cried out loudly againſt the plunderer; and Bernardine de Mendoza, the Spaniſh Ambaſſador at the court of Queen Elizabeth, inſiſted that he ſhould be puniſhed for his robberies, and that all the money and effects he had ſeized ſhould be reſtored; but, if the Queen was a private adventurer, as, from Drake's declaration to his followers, and from other inſtances of the womaniſh littleneſſes of that Princeſs there is reaſon to ſuſpect, what hope was there of juſtice or reſtitution from remonſtrance? Indeed, it ſerved that avaricious Queen for a pretence to ſequeſter the treaſure which Drake brought home, and to convert, it is probable, the greateſt part of it to her own uſe; for, as we have already ſhewn from good authority above, though the whole booty was valued at 800,000l. yet only 80,000l. was divided among the plunderers; and Rapin tells us, that ſome part of the treaſure was afterwards repaid by the Queen to Spain. If ſhe had not retained enough in her hands, no one will ſuppoſe, that the Sovereign, who could cauſe the goods of her favourite Leiceſter to be ſet to public ſale after his death, for the payment of money ſhe had lent him, would have repaid to Spain from her own coffers the plunder that had been unjuſtly taken by one of her meaner ſubjects.

To dignify actions, therefore, of the moſt infamous piracy with the name of great, is to exalt vice, and to ſubſtitute ſucceſsful villainy in the place of ſubſtantial virtue. If we view Drake in the light of a courageous plunderer, he may vie with the De la Poles, the Blackbeards, or any of thoſe daring diſturbers of the times in which they lived, who ſtruck a panic wherever they roved to commit their ravages: but, conſider him as a Commander, employed in the defence of his country, and we ſhall ſee nothing to admire, except his courage. In the firſt enterprize in which he was engaged, he was indeed ſucceſsful. The Queen, ſuſpecting an intention in Philip of Spain to revenge the injuries his ſubjects had received, pitched upon Drake, who had given the offence, as the fitteſt man to prevent the conſequences, He, therefore, as he had done before, attacked the enemy by ſurprize, and ſet fire to a defenceleſs number of tranſports aſſembled in the harbour of Cadiz, without a ſhip of war to protect them, or a gun fired by way of oppoſition. The accident which afterwards threw the rich India ſhip in his way, on his return home, did him no honour as a Commander, though it gave him credit as a fortunate adventurer: nor did his behaviour in the Channel, when, inſtead of maintaining his poſt, he purſued the Hans merchant ſhips, add at all to his reputation as a Vice-Admiral. His American enterprize with Lord Carliſle was attended with no laurels; and the only two enterprizes in which he was employed in a joint command, he ruined by his perfidy and ſelf-conceit.

It may, indeed, be urged in Drake's defence, that it was the policy of the Queen his Sovereign, to countenance her ſubjects in diſtreſſing Spain, and in mortifying the haughty monarch who ſat upon the throne; and that almoſt all the heroes of her active reign, acquired their glory by practices founded on the ſame prevailing principle.

This argument in his favour cannot be denied its due weight. The expeditions of Sir John Hawkins; of Sir Walter Raleigh: of Lord Carliſle; of Sir John Norris; of the Earl of Eſſex; of Cavendiſh; and, indeed, of moſt others undertaken againſt Spain, were profeſſedly with a view to plunder; and the charges of fitting them out were chiefly borne by thoſe who were to be ſharers in the booty: yet, ſurely, there is a material difference between the glory that is purchaſed by valour in the field, and fame that is acquired by compacts to ſurprize the innocent, and invade the property of the peaceable.

Having now ſeen Drake in two diſtinct points of view, as a leader of a company of plunderers, and as a Commander in the royal navy, let us do juſtice to his character by viewing him as a mariner, and in that light he will hardly have his equal. To project a voyage round the globe, and to conduct it without the aſſiſtance of a ſingle mariner on board who had ever croſſed the Line, Nuno da Silva, the Portugueſe pilot, excepted, was, perhaps, one of the boldeſt exploits that ever man performed. His navigating his ſhips along the coaſt of Brazil; his carrying them through the ſtraits of Magellan in a ſhorter time than any mariner has ever done ſince: his keeping the ſea in a ſtorm for thirty days together; his ſkill in navigating the coaſts of Chili, Peru, and New Spain, where no Engliſh ſhip had ever ſailed; his accuracy in diſcovering the track of the Spaniſh ſhip from the Eaſt Indies, and his conſummate ſagacity in purſuing a new courſe home to avoid purſuers; cannot be enough admired or applauded. His knowledge of the globe is manifeſt from the firſt attempt he made to return home by a northern paſſage; a paſſage which he knew would not only ſecure him from the danger of purſuers, but, were it practicable, would open a free intercourſe between his nation and the rich inhabitants of that opulent country in which he was then ſituated. Finding himſelf, however, diſappointed in this deſign, how great was his ſagacity in the diſcovery of an unknown country, wherein to repair his ſhip, refreſh his followers, take in wood and water, and to ſupply himſelf with every neceſſary for the vaſt voyage by ſea he was to encounter; and yet, ſuch was his knowledge in making proviſion againſt every contingency that might happen, that he loſt but one man by ſickneſs during the long run from the coaſt of New Spain to the Ladrones, in which Commodore Anſon loſt near half his crew. Nor is his ſkill leſs to be admired in his return from the Ladrones, the moſt dangerous navigation of any part of the known world; for, except the accident upon the rock, as has already been related, he ſailed from the Ladrones to Java unembarraſſed; from Java to Sierra Leona, on the coaſt of Africa, without touching at any port, or encountering any difficulty, ſave from a ſcarcity of water; a thing hardly to be credited, and which was never performed by any mariner before his time, or ſince.

A NEW, AUTHENTIC, and COMPLETE HISTORY of
CAPTAIN COOK's
Third and Laſt VOYAGE
TO THE
PACIFIC OCEAN:

Undertaken, Purſuant to his MAJESTY's Order,
By the ſaid CAPT. JAMES COOK,
HAVING UNDER HIS COMMAND
Samuel Clerke, John Gore, and James King, Eſquires,
In his Britannic MAJESTY's Ships,
The RESOLUTION and DISCOVERY

Being Written in a more pleaſing and elegant Stile than any other Work of the Kind; and including all the various important Diſcoveries, Facts, Incidents, and Circumſtances, related in a ſatisfactory Manner.

CONTAINING

From the 12th of July 1776, to the 4th of October 1780, Incluſive,
A Period of four Years and nearly three Months:

And comprehending a great Variety of intereſting Particulars, entirely unnocited in other Narratives, and which conſequently renders all other Works of this Kind ſpurious and incomplete.

Which Voyage was the Laſt, under the Direction of that able and much to be lamented Navigator, Captain Cook, with the View of making new Diſcoveries in the Northern Hemiſphere; and, particularly, in order to aſcertain the Practicability of a North-Weſt Paſſage from Europe to the Eaſt Indies, between the Continents of Aſia and America; and the Poſition, Extent, and Diſtance of which, he was likewiſe to determine.

TOGETHER WITH

A genuine and copious Account of the Death of the Captains Cook and Clerke:—Captain Cook having explored the Coaſt of America, from 42 deg. 27 min. to 70 deg. 40 min. 57 ſec. North latitude, was killed by the Natives of a new diſcovered Iſland in the South Sea, on the 14th of February 1779; and was ſucceeded by Captain Clerke, who died at Sea, of a lingering Illneſs, Auguſt the 22nd, 1779; after which melancholy Events, Captain Gore took the command of the Reſolution, and Mr. King, her firſt Lieutenant, was promoted to that of the Diſcovery; the Whole being (not an Abridgment but an entire original Narrative) extracted faithfully from the Original Journals of ſeveral Officers, and Private Papers; and illuſtrated with the greateſt Variety of curious and ſplendid Copper-Plates, conſiſting of Portraits, Perſpective Views, Landſcapes, Hiſtorical Pieces, and moſt ſtriking Repreſentations of remarkable Events, natural Curioſities, &c. all taken during the Voyage, and now engraved by the moſt capital Artiſts of this Kingdom; together with all the Maps, Charts, Plans, &c. ſhewing the Tracks of the Ships, and relative to Countries now firſt diſcovered, or hitherto but imperfectly known.

INTRODUCTION.

WE are now about to enter a new field for diſcovery and improvement; no leſs than to fix the boundaries of the two continents that form the grand diviſions, which, though ſeparated to all human appearance, connect the Globe: and in order to ſhew the importance of the preſent voyage, and to furniſh our numerous friends, ſubſcribers and readers, with an idea of the magnitude of the undertaking, we ſhall take a curſory view of that untrodden ground, which former enterprizing diſcoverers viſited, and whereon the principal ſcenes of their operations were exhibited. A brief recapitulation of their expeditions, will evince plainly, how much we are indebted to thoſe intrepid naval officers of our own country, who have extended our acquaintance with the contents of the Globe, opened now channels to an increaſe of knowledge, and afforded us freſh materials, equally intereſting, as they are uncommon, for the ſtudy of human nature in various ſituations. Columbus and Magellan, two illuſtrious foreigners, rendered their names immortal, at an early period. The former, by a perſeverance, of which there was no precedent, very providentially ſurmounted every obſtacle that oppoſed his progreſs, and aſtoniſhed Europe with the production of a New Earth, ſince called America; while much about the ſame time the latter, inſpired by a like ſpirit of enterprize, and animated by a magnanimity that deſpiſed danger, opened a paſſage to a new ſea, to which he gave the name of Pacific.

In the year 1520, on the 6th of November, Magellan entered the ſtraits, that have ever ſince been called by his name, and on the 27th of the ſame month beheld the wiſhed-for object of his purſuit, the Great Southern Ocean. For one hundred and thirteen days, he continued ſteering to the north-weſt, and having in that time croſſed the line, he fell in with thoſe iſlands, to which he gave the name of Ladrones; and proceeding from hence in ſearch of the Moluccas, he found in his way many little iſlands, where he was hoſpitably received, and where a friendly correſpondence was eſtabliſhed. Theſe iſlands were ſituated between the Ladrones, and what are now known by the name of the Philippines, in one of which, called Nathan, Magellan, with 60 men, encountering a whole army, was firſt wounded with a poiſoned arrow, and then pierced with a bearded lance. His little ſquadron, now reduced to two ſhips, and not more then 80 men, departed haſtily, but one only, the Victory, returned by the Cape of Good Hope, and was the Firſt Ship that ever went round the world. Other adventurers were not now wanting to follow the ſteps of this intrepid Navigator.

In 1567, Alvarez de Mendamo, another Spaniard, was ſent from Lima, on purpoſe for diſcovery. He ſailed 800 leagues weſtward from the coaſt of Peru, and fell in with certain iſlands in the latitude of 11 deg. S. and captain Cook inclines to the opinion, that they are the cluſter which comprizes what has ſince been called New Britain, &c. Mendamo was alſo ſaid to have diſcovered, in 1575, the iſland of St. Chriſtoval, and not far from thence, the Archipelago, called the iſlands of Solomon, of which great and ſmall he counted 33.

In 1577, Sir Francis Drake, who was the firſt Engliſhman that paſſed the ſtraits of Magellan, diſcovered the iſland of California, which he named New Albion. He alſo diſcovered other ſmall iſlands in his route to the 43d deg. of N. latitude, but as his ſole view was to return with his booty, he paid no regard to objects of leſs concern. He arrived in England, by the Cape of Good Hope, in the year 1580. To him ſucceeded Sir Thomas Cavendiſh, who likewiſe paſſed the ſtraits of Magellan in 1586, and returned nearly by the ſame route pointed out by his predeceſſor, touching at the Ladrones, and making ſome ſtay at the Philippine iſles, of which, on his return, he gave an entertaining deſcription.

In 1595, the Spaniards, intent more on diſcovery than plunder, fitted out four ſhips, and gave the command to Alvaro Mendana de Neyra; whoſe diſcoveries were the Marqueſas, Solitary Iſland, and Santa Cruz: but moſt of thoſe who embarked on this expedition either died miſerably, or were ſhipwrecked. One of the fleet was afterwards found with all her ſails ſet, and the people rotten.

In 1598, Oliver Van Noort paſſed the ſtraits. He made no diſcoveries: but in this year the Sebaldine iſlands were diſcovered by Sebald de Wert, the ſame known now by the name of Falkland's Iſles.

In 1605 Pedro Fernando de Quiros conceived the deſign of diſcovering a ſouthern continent. He is ſuppoſed by Mr. Dalrymple and others, to have been the firſt into whoſe mind the exiſtence of ſuch a continent had ever entered. On the 21ſt of December he ſailed from Calloa with two ſhips and a tender. Luis Paz de Torres was entruſted with the command, and Quiros, from zeal for the ſucceſs of the undertaking, was contented to act in the inferior ſtation of pilot.

Quiros, ſoon after his return, preſented a memorial to Philip II. of Spain, in which he enumerates 23 iſlands that he had diſcovered, among which was the iſland of the Virgin Mary, and adjoining to it three parts of the country called Auſtralia del Eſpiritu Santo, in which land were found the bay of St. Philip and St. Jago.

In 1614 George Spitzbergen, with a ſtrong ſquadron of Dutch ſhips paſſed the ſtraits of Magellan; and in 1615 Schouten and Le Maire, in the Unity of 360 tons, and the Hoorn of 110, ſailed from the Texel, on the 14th of June, profeſſedly for the diſcovery of a new paſſage to the South Sea. The Hoorn was burnt, in careening, at King's iſland, on the coaſt of Brazil, and the other left ſingly to purſue her voyage. In latitude 54 deg. 56 min. they came in ſight of an opening, to which (having happily paſſed it) they gave the name of Strait le Maire. Having ſoon after weathered the ſouthernmoſt point of the American continent, they called that promontory Cape Horn, or more properly Hoorn, after the town in Holland where the project was firſt ſecretly concerted; and two iſlands which they had paſſed, they named Bernevelt. They alſo diſcovered ſeveral others, and coaſted the north ſide of New Britain.

In 1642 Abel Taſman ſailed from Batavia in the Heemſkirk, accompanied by the Zee Haan pink, with a deſign of diſcovering the Southern Continent. The firſt land he made was the eaſtern point of New Holland, ſince known by the name of Van Dieman's Land. Proceeding in a high latitude to the eaſtward, he fell in with the weſternmoſt coaſt of New Zealand, where the greateſt part of the crew of the Zee Haan were murdered by the ſavages of a bay, to which he gave the name of Murderer's Bay, called by our late navigators Queen Charlotte's Sound. In his paſſage he fell in with the iſles of Pylſtaert, Amſterdam, Middleburg, and Rotterdam. Then directing his courſe to the N. W. he diſcovered eighteen or twenty ſmall iſlands, in latitude 17 deg. 19 min. S. longitude 201 deg. 35 min. to which he gave the name of Prince William's Iſlands, and Heemſkirk's Banks. From thence Taſman purſued his courſe to New Guinea, without diſcovering the ſuppoſed continent; and returned to Batavia on the 15th of June 1643.

In 1681 Dampier paſſed the Magellanic Straits, and in 1699 he made a ſecond voyage on diſcovery, which was chiefly confined to New Holland, New Guinea, New Britain, and the iſlands adjacent. In 1703, he performed a third voyage, but without making any new diſcoveries. He was accompanied in this voyage by Mr. Funnel, to whom the circumnavigation of the Globe is aſcribed.

In 1721, the Dutch Eaſt-India Company, at the inſtance of captain Roggewein, fitted out a reſpectable fleet, for the diſcovery of that continent, which lay hitherto unknown, though believed univerſally to exiſt. Three ſtout ſhips were appointed, and were well provided for this ſervice; the Eagle of 36 guns and 111 men, on board of which embarked Roggewein as commodore, having under him captain Coſter, an experienced navigator; the Tienhoven of 28 guns, and 100 men, of which captain Bowman was commander; and the African Galley, commanded by captain Roſenthall. From theſe experienced navigators every thing was hoped. They found the ſtraits of Magellan impracticable, and entered the Southern Ocean, after having endured a variety of difficulties and hardſhips, by the ſtrait le Maire. Roggewein purſued nearly the ſame track as Schouten had pointed out, till, veering more to the north, he fell in with the iſlands at which commodore Byron firſt landed, and where ſome of the wreck of the African Galley, as we have mentioned in the hiſtory of his voyage, was actually found. Purſuing their courſe to the weſtward, they diſcovered a cluſter of iſlands, undoubtedly the ſame now called the Friendly Iſles, to which they gave the name of the Labyrinth, becauſe it was with difficulty they could clear them. They continued their courſe towards New Britain, and New Guinea; and thence by the way of the Moluccas to the Eaſt Indies; and thus ended, like all the former voyages, one of which was expected at leaſt to have ſolved the queſtion, but, in fact determined nothing: yet they who argued from the harmony obſervable in the works of nature, inſiſted that ſomething was wanting to give one ſide of the globe a reſemblance to the other; while thoſe who reaſoned from experience, pronounced the whole ſyſtem the creature of the fertile brain.

In 1738 Lazier Bouvet was ſent by the Eaſt India Company, upon diſcovery in the Southern Atlantic Ocean. He ſailed from Port l'Orient on the 19th of July, on board the Eagle, accompanied by the Mary, and on the 1ſt of January following, it was thought he had diſcovered land in latitude 54 deg. ſouth, longitude 11 min. eaſt. But this having been diligently ſought for by captain Cook, without effect, there is good reaſon to doubt if any ſuch exiſts; or, if it does, it is too remote from any known tract to be of uſe to trade or navigation. In 1742 commodore Anſon traverſed the Great Pacific Ocean; but he made no diſcoveries within the limits of our review.

We come now to that intereſting æra, when the ſpirit of diſcovery recovered new ſtrength, under the cheriſhing influence and munificent encouragement of his preſent Majeſty, George III. who having put a period to the deſtructive operations of war, he turned his attention to enterprizes more adapted to the ſeaſon of returning peace. His Majeſty formed the grand deſign of exploring the Southern Hemiſphere; and in the proſecution of an object ſo well adapted to the views of a great commercial people, one voyage followed another in cloſe ſucceſſion.

In 1764, Captain, now admiral Byron, having under his command the Dolphin and Tamar, paſſed through the ſtraits of Magellan, into the Pacific Ocean; where he diſcovered ſeveral iſlands, and returned to England in May, 1766. In the month of Auguſt following, the Dolphin was again ſent out under the command of captain Wallis, with the Swallow ſloop, commanded by captain Carteret. They proceeded together till they came to the weſt end of the ſtraits of Magellan, and in ſight of the Great South Sea, where they were ſeparated. Captain Wallis directed his courſe more weſterly than any navigator had done before in ſo high a latitude; diſcovered not leſs than fourteen new iſlands; and returned to England with the Dolphin, in May 1768. His companion captain Cartaret kept a different route, made other diſcoveries, among which was the ſtrait between New Britain and New Ireland. He returned with the Swallow to England, after having encountered innumerable difficulties, in March 1769. In the ſame year and month, commodore Bougainville, having circumnavigated the globe, arrived in France.

In 1769, the Spaniards ſent out a ſhip to trace the diſcoveries of the Engliſh and French commanders, which arrived at Otaheite in 1771. This ſhip touched at Eaſter Iſland, but whether ſhe returned to New or Old Spain remains undecided. In the ſame year 1769, the French alſo fitted out another ſhip from the Mauritius, under the command of captain Kergulen, who, having diſcovered a few barren iſlands, contented himſelf with leaving ſome memorials, that were found by Captain Cook. To this diſtinguiſhed navigator was reſerved the honour of being the firſt, who from a ſeries of the moſt ſatisfactory obſervations, beginning at the weſt entrance of the ſtrait of Magellan, and carried on with unwearied perſeverance round Terra del Fuego, through the ſtrait of Le Maire, has conſtructed a chart of the ſouthern extremity of America, from which it will appear, what advantages will now be enjoyed by thoſe who ſhall hereafter ſail round Cape Horn. Captain Cook ſailed from Plymouth, in Auguſt 1768, and returned home by the Cape of Good Hope in July 1771. This experienced circumnavigator performed his ſecond voyage in the Reſolution and Adventure. Theſe two ſhips ſailed from England in July 1772, and returned on the 30th of the ſame month, in 1775. The general object of this and the preceding voyage round the world, undertaken by the command of his Majeſty, was to ſearch for unknown tracts of land that might exiſt within the boſom of the immenſe expanſe of ocean that occupies the whole ſouthern hemiſphere; and, particularly, to determine to a certainty, the exiſtence or non-exiſtence of a Southern Continent: and theſe voyages have facilitated the acceſs of ſhips into the Pacific Ocean, and alſo greatly enlarged our knowledge of its contents. Our late navigators, beſides perfecting many of the diſcoveries of their predeceſſors, have added to them a long catalogue of their own. The ſeveral lands, of which any account had been given by the Spaniards or Dutch, have been carefully looked for, and moſt of them found, viſited, and accurately ſurveyed. The boaſted Tierra Auſtralia del Eſpiritu Santo of Quiros, as being a part of a ſouthern continent, could not withſtand capt. Cook's examination, who ſailed round it, and aſſigned its true poſition, and moderate bounds, in the Archipelago of the New Hebrides. Bougainville did no more than diſcover, that the land here was not connected; but captain Cook found it to be compoſed of iſlands, and explored the whole group. Byron, Wallis, and Carteret, had each of them contributed towards increaſing our knowledge of the amazing profuſion of iſlands that exiſt in the Pacific Ocean, within the limits of the ſouthern tropic: but how far that ocean reached to the weſt, what lands bounded it on that ſide, and the connection of thoſe lands with the diſcoveries of former navigators, remained abſolutely unknown, till captain Cook decided the queſtion, and brought home ſuch ample accounts of them and their inhabitants, as have left little more to be done in that part of the globe. It was a favourite conjectural opinion among geographers, that New Zealand was a part of a ſouthern continent; but Captain Cook's voyage in the Endeavour has proved it to be a mere ſuppoſition; for he ſpent near ſix months upon its coaſts, circumnavigated it completely, and aſcertained its extent and diviſions into two iſlands. Whether New Holland did or did not join to New Guinea was another queſtion, which captain Cook decided, by ſailing between them through Endeavour ſtrait. He, therefore, in this part of his voyage, has eſtabliſhed a fact of eſſential ſervice to navigation, by opening, if not a new, at leaſt an unfrequented and forgotten communication between the Southern Pacific and Indian oceans. To captain Carteret we are indebted for a new diſcovery, in the ſtricteſt ſenſe of the word. St. George's channel, through which his ſhip found a way, between New Britain and New Ireland, is a much better and ſhorter paſſage, whether eaſtward or weſtward, than round all the iſlands and lands to the northward. Thus far, therefore, the late voyages of our own countrymen, to diſcloſe new tracks of navigation, and to reform old defects in geography, appear to have been proſecuted with a ſatisfactory degree of ſucceſs.

But ſomething was ſtill wanting to complete the great plan of diſcovery. The utmoſt acceſſible extremities of the Southern Hemiſphere had been repeatedly viſited and ſurveyed; yet great variety of opinion prevailed concerning the navigable boundaries of our own hemiſphere; particularly, as to the exiſtence, or at leaſt as to the practicability of a northern paſſage between the Atlantic and Pacific oceans, either by ſailing eaſtward, round Aſia, or weſtward, round North America; by which paſſage, could it be found, voyages to the Eaſt Indies in general would be much ſhortened, and, conſequently become more profitable, than by making the tedious circuit of the Cape of Good Hope. This favourite object of the Engliſh, as early as the fifteenth century, appeared ſo certain to the Cabots, that the younger Sebaſtian made the original attempt to diſcover a N. W. paſſage in 1497, which ended in the diſcovery of Newfoundland, and the Labradore coaſt. He returned by the way of Newfoundland, bringing home with him two Eſquimeaux. In

1576 Sir Martin Forbiſher undertook a ſecond expedition, and found a ſtrait on the ſouthermoſt point of Greenland, but, after repeated trials, he relinquiſhed his hope of ſeeing the object he held in contemplation and had been purſuing. Sir Humphry Gilbert was mortified with the ſame diſappointment. He coaſted along the American Continent from the 60th degree of northern latitude, till he fell in with the Gulph of St. Lawrence; took poſſeſſion, in his Sovereign's name, of that land, ſince called by the French Canada; and was the firſt who projected and promoted the eſtabliſhment of the fiſhery in Newfoundland. Captain John Davis made three trials for a paſſage N. W. each of which proved unfortunate and unſucceſsful. In his progreſs he paſſed the ſtrait that ſtill bears his name, and advanced as high as the latitude of 66 deg. Mr. Henry Hudſon, in the year 1610, projected a new courſe towards the N. W. which brought him to the mouth of the bay that now bears his name. But the adventure ended, by the mutiny of his crew, in the tragical death of the Captain, and ſeven of his ſick followers. The year following Sir Henry Button undertook the taſk, but with no better ſucceſs than his predeceſſor. He was followed by James Hall and William Baffin. Hall in this fruitleſs expedition fell by the hands of a ſavage; and Baffin, who renewed the purſuit in 1615, examined a ſea that communicates with Davis's ſtrait, which he found to be no other than a great bay, and called it after his own name: an inlet to the north, in latitude 78 deg. he called Smith's ſound. In 1631 Luke Fox made a voyage in ſearch of the ſame ſuppoſed paſſage, but to as little purpoſe as the reſt. He was followed by Captain James, who, after the moſt elaborate ſearch, changed his opinion, and declared that no ſuch paſſage exiſted. Thus our countrymen and the Dutch have been equally unſucceſsful in various attempts to find this paſſage in an eaſtern direction. Wood's failure in 1676 ſeemed to have cloſed the long liſt of unfortunate northern expeditions in that century; and the diſcovery, if not abſolutely deſpaired of, by having been miſſed ſo often, ceaſed, for near another century, to be ſought after: but Mr. Dobbs once more recalled the attention of this country to the probability of a N. W. paſſage through Hudſon's Bay; in conſequence of which captain Middleton was ſent out by government in 1741, and captains Smith and Moore, by a private ſociety, in 1746, each encouraged by an act of parliament paſſed in the preceding year, that annexed a reward of twenty thouſand pounds to the diſcovery of a paſſage: however, they all returned from Hudſon's Bay with reports of their proceedings, that left the attainment of the great object in view, at as great a diſtance as ever.

But it was not yet certain, that ſuch a paſſage might not be found on the weſtern ſide of America; and reſearches of this kind were no longer left to the ſolicitation, or to the ſubſcriptions, of private adventurers; they engaged royal attention, and, in the preſent reign, were warmly promoted by the miniſter at the head of the naval department: and hence it was, that while captain Cook was proſecuting his voyage towards the South Pole, in 1773, Lord Mulgrave ſailed with two ſhips, to determine how far navigation was practicable towards the North Pole. And that nothing might be left unattempted, though much had been already done, captain Cook, whoſe profeſſional knowledge could only be equalled by the perſevering diligence with which he had employed it in the courſe of his former reſearches, was called upon once more to reſume, or rather to complete his ſurvey of the globe. This brave and experienced commander might have ſpent the remainder of his days in the command to which he had been appointed in Greenwich hoſpital; but he chearfully relinquiſhed this honourable ſtation, and, in 1766, undertook for the ſervice of his country another voyage, which, in one reſpect, was leſs fortunate than any former expeditions, being performed at the expence of the precious and moſt valuable life of its conductor. Former circumnavigators had returned to Europe by the Cape of Good Hope; the arduous taſk was now aſſigned to captain Cook of attempting it by reaching the high northern latitudes between Aſia and America. He was ordered to proceed to Otaheite, or the Society Iſlands, and then having croſſed the equator into the Northern Tropic, to hold ſuch a courſe as might moſt probably give ſucceſs to the attempt of finding out a northern paſſage: but that our readers may be enabled to judge with preciſion of the great out-lines of the preſent important voyage; of the various objects it has in view, and how far they have been carried into execution, we ſhall here inſert a true copy of the Inſtructions to captain Cook, from the Commiſſioners for executing the office of Lord High Admiral of Great Britain, Ireland, &c. and which in ſubſtance were as follow.

"Whereas the Earl of Sandwich has ſignified to us his Majeſty's pleaſure, that an attempt ſhould be made to find out a northern paſſage by ſea from the Pacific to the Atlantic Ocean; and whereas we have in purſuance thereof, cauſed his Majeſty's ſloops Reſolution and Diſcovery to be fitted, in all reſpects, proper to proceed upon a voyage for the purpoſe above mentioned, and, from the experience we have had of your abilities and good conduct in your late voyages, have thought fit to intruſt you with the conduct of the preſent intended voyage, and with that view appointed you to command the firſt mentioned ſloop, and directed captain Clerke, who commands the other, to follow your orders for his further proceedings: you are hereby required and directed to proceed with the ſaid two ſloops directly to the Cape of Good Hope, unleſs you ſhall judge it neceſſary to ſtop at Madeira, the Cape de Verd, or Canary Iſlands, to take in wine for the uſe of their companies; in which caſe you are at liberty ſo to do, taking care to remain there no longer than may be neceſſary for that purpoſe; and on your arrival at the Cape of Good Hope, you are to refreſh the ſloops companies with as much proviſions and water as can be conveniently ſtowed.

"If poſſible, you are to leave the Cape of Good Hope by the end of October, or beginning of November next, and proceed to the ſouthward in ſearch of ſome iſlands ſaid to have been lately ſeen by the French, in the latitude 48 deg. ſouth, and under, or near the meridian of Mauritius. In caſe you find thoſe iſlands, you are to examine them thoroughly for a good harbour; and upon diſcovering one, make the neceſſary obſervations to facilitate the finding it again; as a good port, in that ſituation, may hereafter prove very uſeful, although it ſhould afford little or nothing more than ſhelter, wood, and water. You are not, however, to ſpend too much time in looking out for thoſe iſlands, or in the examination of them, if found, but to proceed to Otaheite, or the Society iſles, (touching at New Zealand in your way thither, if you ſhould judge it neceſſary and convenient) and taking care to arrive there time enough to admit of your giving the ſloops companies the refreſhment they may ſtand in need of, before you proſecute the farther object of theſe inſtructions. Upon your arrival at Otaheite, or the Society Iſles, you are to land Omiah at ſuch of them as he may chooſe, and to leave him there.

"You are to diſtribute among the chiefs of thoſe iſlands ſuch part of the preſents with which you have been ſupplied, as you ſhall judge proper, reſerving the remainder to diſtribute among the natives of the countries you may diſcover in the Northern Hemiſphere: and having refreſhed the people belonging to the ſloops under your command, and taken on board ſuch wood and water as they may reſpectively ſtand in need of, you are to leave thoſe iſlands in the beginning of February, or ſooner if you ſhall judge it neceſſary, and then proceed in as direct a courſe as you can to the coaſt of New Albion, endeavouring to fall in with it in the latitude of 45 deg. N. and taking care in your way thither, not to loſe any time in ſearch of new lands, or to ſtop at any you may fall in with, unleſs you find it neceſſary to recruit your wood and water.

"You are alſo in your way thither, ſtrictly enjoined not to touch upon any part of the Spaniſh dominions on the weſtern continent of America, unleſs driven thither by ſome unavoidable accident; in which caſe you are to ſtay no longer there than ſhall be abſolutely neceſſary, and to be very careful not to give umbrage or offence to any of the inhabitants or ſubjects of his catholic Majeſty. And if, in your farther progreſs to the northward, as hereafter directed, you find any ſubjects of any European prince or ſtate upon any part of the coaſt you may think proper to viſit, you are not to diſturb them, or give them any juſt cauſe of offence, but, on the contrary, to treat them with civility and friendſhip.

“Upon your arrival on the coaſt of New Albion, you are to put into the firſt convenient port to recruit your wood and water, and procure refreſhments, and then to proceed northward along the coaſt, as far as the latitude of 65 deg. or farther, if you are not obſtructed by lands or ice; taking care not to loſe any time in exploring rivers or inlets, or upon any other account, until you get into the before-mentioned latitude of 65 deg. where we could wiſh you to arrive in the month of June next. When you get that length, you are very carefully to ſearch for, and to explore ſuch rivers, or inlets, as may appear to be of conſiderable extent, and pointing towards Hudſon's, or Baffin's Bays, and if, from your own obſervations, or from any information you may receive from the natives (who, there is reaſon to believe are the ſame race of people, and ſpeak the ſame language, of which you are furniſhed with a vocabulary, as the Eſquimeaux) there ſhall appear to be a certainty, or even a probability of a water paſſage into the aforementioned bays, or either of them, you are, in ſuch caſe, to uſe your utmoſt endeavours to paſs through with one or both of the ſloops, unleſs you ſhall be of opinion that the paſſage may be effected with more certainty, or with greater probability by ſmaller veſſels; in which caſe you are to ſet up the frames of one or both the ſmall veſſels with which you are provided, and, when they are put together, and are properly fitted, ſtored, and victualled, you are to diſpatch one or both of them, under the care of proper officers, with a ſufficient number of petty officers, men, and boats, in order to attempt the ſaid paſſage; with ſuch inſtructions for rejoining you, if they ſhould fail, or for their farther proceedings, if they ſhould ſucceed in the attempt, as you ſhall judge moſt proper. But, nevertheleſs, if you ſhall find it more eligible to purſue any other meaſures than thoſe above pointed out, in order to make a diſcovery of the before-mentioned paſſage (if any ſuch there be) you are at liberty; and we leave it to your diſcretion, to purſue ſuch meaſures accordingly.

“But, ſhould you be ſatisfied, that there is no paſſage through the bays, ſufficient for the purpoſes of navigation, you are, at the proper ſeaſon of the year, to repair to the port of St. Peter and St. Paul in Kamtſchatka, or wherever elſe you ſhall judge more proper, in order to refreſh your people and paſs the winter; and in the ſpring of the enſuing year, 1778, to proceed from thence to the northward, as far as, in your prudence, you may think proper, in further ſearch of a north-eaſt, or north-weſt paſſage, from the Pacific Ocean into the Atlantic, or North Sea: and if, from your own obſervation, or any information you may receive, there ſhall appear to be a probability of ſuch a paſſage, you are to proceed as above directed; and having diſcovered ſuch a paſſage, or failed in the attempt, make the beſt of your way back to England, by ſuch route as you may think beſt for the improvement of geography and navigation; repairing to Spithead with both ſloops, where they are to remain till further orders.

“And at whatever places you may touch in the courſe of your voyage, where accurate obſervations of the nature hereafter mentioned have not already been made, you are, as far as your time will allow, very carefully to obſerve the ſituation of ſuch places, both in latitude and longitude; the variation of the needle; bearings of head-lands; height, direction, and courſe of the tides and currents; depths, and ſoundings of the ſea; ſhoals, rocks, &c. and alſo to ſurvey, make charts, and take views of ſuch bays, harbours, and different parts of the coaſt, and to make ſuch notations thereon, as may be uſeful either to navigation or commerce. You are alſo carefully to obſerve the nature of the ſoil, and the produce thereof; the animals and fowls that inhabit or frequent it; the fiſhes that are to be found in the rivers or upon the coaſts, and in what plenty; and, in caſe there are any peculiar to ſuch places, to deſcribe them minutely, and to make as accurate drawings of them as you can: and, if you find any metals, minerals, or valuable ſtones, or any extraneous foſſils, you are to bring home ſpecimens of each; as alſo of the ſeeds of ſuch trees, ſhrubs, plants, fruits and grains, peculiar to thoſe places, as you may be able to collect, and to tranſmit them to our ſecretary, that proper experiments and examination may be made of them. You are likewiſe to examine the genius, temper, diſpoſition, and number of the natives and inhabitants, where you find any; and to endeavour, by all proper means, to cultivate a friendſhip with them, making them preſents of ſuch trinkets as you may have on board, and they may like beſt; inviting them to traffic; and ſhewing them every kind of civility and regard; but taking care, nevertheleſs, not to ſuffer yourſelf to be ſurprized by them, but to be always on your guard againſt any accidents.

“You are alſo, with the conſent of the natives, to take poſſeſſion, in the name of the King of Great Britain, of convenient ſituations in ſuch countries as you may diſcover, that have already not been diſcovered or viſited by any other European power; and to diſtribute among the inhabitants ſuch things as will remain as traces and teſtimonies of your having been there; but if you find the countries ſo diſcovered are uninhabited, you are to take poſſeſſion of them for his Majeſty, by ſetting up proper marks and inſcriptions, as firſt diſcoverers and poſſeſſors.

“But foraſmuch as, in undertakings of this nature, ſeveral emergencies may ariſe not to be foreſeen, and therefore not particularly to be provided for by inſtructions before-hand; you are, in ſuch caſes, to proceed as you ſhall judge moſt advantageous to the ſervice on which you are employed: and you are, by all opportunities, to ſend to our Secretary, for our information, accounts of your proceedings, and copies of the ſurveys and drawings you ſhall have made; and upon your arrival in England, you are immediately to repair to this office, in order to lay before us a full account of your proceedings in the whole courſe of your voyage; taking care before you leave the ſloop, to demand from the officers and petty officers, the log-books and journals they may have kept, and to ſeal them up for our inſpection; and enjoining them and the whole crew, not to divulge where they have been, until they have permiſſion ſo to do: and you are to direct captain Clerke to do the ſame, with reſpect to the officers, petty officers, and crew of the Diſcovery.

“Should any accident happen to the Reſolution, in the courſe of the voyage, ſo as to diſable her from proceeding any farther, you are, in ſuch caſe, to remove yourſelf and her crew into the Diſcovery, and to proſecute your voyage in her; her commander being hereby ſtrictly required to receive you on board, and to obey your orders, the ſame, in every reſpect, as when you were actually on board the Reſolution: and, in caſe of your inability, by ſickneſs or otherwiſe, to carry theſe inſtructions into execution, you are to be careful to leave them with the next officer in command, who is hereby required to execute them in the beſt manner he can.

“The above Inſtructions were given July the 6th, 1776, under the hands of the Earl of Sandwich, Lord C. Spencer, Sir H. Palliſer; and, by command of their Lordſhips, ſigned Philip Stephens, Secretary of the Admiralty.”

In order to carry this noble and extenſive plan into execution, on February the 14th 1776, the Reſolution and Diſcovery, having been completely equipped in the dock at Deptford, were put into commiſſion. Captain Cook hoiſted his pendant on board the former ſloop; and the command of the Diſcovery, of three hundred tons burthen, which had been purchaſed into the ſervice, was given to captain Clerke, who had been captain Cook's ſecond Lieutenant, on board the Reſolution, in his ſecond voyage round the world. Both ſhips were well fitted out, and ſupplied abundantly with every article neceſſary for a long voyage: and on the 8th of June, while they lay in long-reach, we had the ſatisfaction of a viſit from the earl of Sandwich, Sir Hugh Palliſer, and others of the board of Admiralty, to examine whether every thing had been completed purſuant to their orders, and to the convenience of thoſe who were to embark. They honoured captain Cook with their company to dinner on that day; and were ſaluted, on their coming on board, and on their going on ſhore, with ſeventeen guns and three cheers. To convey ſome permanent benefit to the inhabitants of Otaheite, and of the other iſlands which we might happen to viſit, his Majeſty ordered us a ſupply of ſome uſeful animals, and we took on board a bull, two cows, with their calves, and ſome ſheep; with hay and corn for their ſupport. We were alſo furniſhed with a ſufficient quantity of our valuable European garden ſeeds, which might add freſh ſupplies of food to the vegetable productions of our newly diſcovered iſlands. We had alſo an extenſive aſſortment of iron tools and trinkets, to facilitate a friendly commerce and intercourſe with the inhabitants of ſuch new countries as we might diſcover. With reſpect to our own wants, nothing was refuſed us that might be conducive to health, comfort or convenience. Thoſe at the head of the naval department were equally ſolicitous to render our voyage of public utility; to this end we received a variety of aſtronomical and nautical inſtruments, which the Board of Longitude intruſted to captain Cook and Mr. King, his ſecond Lieutenant; they having engaged to ſupply the place of a profeſſed obſervator. The Board, likewiſe, put into their poſſeſſion the time-keeper, which captain Cook had carried out in his laſt voyage, and which had performed ſo well. It was conſtructed by Mr. Kendal, and was a copy of Mr. Harriſon's. Another time-piece, and the ſame aſſortment of aſtronomical and other inſtruments, were put on board the Diſcovery, for the uſe of Mr. William Bailey, who was engaged as an obſervator on board that ſloop. Though ſeveral young men, among the ſea officers, were capable of being employed in conſtructing charts, drawing plans, and taking views of the coaſts, and head-lands, nevertheleſs, Mr. Webber was engaged to embark with captain Cook, for the purpoſe of ſupplying the defects of written accounts; by taking accurate and maſterly drawings of the moſt memorable ſcenes of our tranſactions. Mr. Anderſon, likewiſe, Surgeon to captain Cook, added to his profeſſional abilities a great proficiency in natural hiſtory. He had already viſited the South Sea iſlands in the ſame ſhip, and enabled the Captain to enrich his relation of his voyage with uſeful and valuable remarks. The vocabularies of the Friendly and Sandwich iſlands, and of the natives of Nootka had been furniſhed to our commander, by this his moſt uſeful aſſociate, Mr. Anderſon: and a fourth, in which the language of the Eſquimaux is compared with that of the Americans on the oppoſite ſide of the continent, had been prepared by the Captain himſelf. The confeſſed abilities, and great aſſiduity of Mr. Anderſon, in obſerving every thing that related either to natural hiſtory, or to manners and language, and the deſire that captain Cook, on all occaſions, ſhewed to have the aſſiſtance of that gentleman, ſtamped a great value on his collections.

The Reſolution had the ſame appointment of officers and men which ſhe had in her former voyage; and the eſtabliſhment of the Diſcovery varied from that of the Adventure, in the ſingle inſtance of her having no marine officer on board. This arrangement was to be finally completed at Plymouth; and on the 9th of July we received the party of marines alloted for our voyage. And the ſupernumerary ſeamen, occaſioned by this reinforcement, being turned over into the Ocean man of war, our ſeveral complements of officers, and the reſpective crews of both ſhips, remained as expreſſed in the two underwritten liſts.

I. A LIST of the OFFICERS, SEAMEN, and PRIVATES, on board the RESOLUTION.

1	Captain	James Cook,
3	Lieutenants	John Gore, James King, and John Williamſon.
1	Master	William Bligh.
1	Boatswain	William Ewin.
1	Carpenter	James Clevely.
1	Gunner	Robert Anderſon.
1	Surgeon	William Anderſon.
3	Master's Mates	Roberts, &c.
6	Midshipmen	Hargeſt, &c.
2	Surgeon's Mates	Samwell and Davis.
2	Captain's Clerks	Alex. Hogg and Alex. Dewer,
1	Master at Arms	William Collet.
1	Corporal	William Griffiths.
1	Armourer	William Hunt.
1	Ditto Mate	William Price.
1	Sail Maker	William Widdel.
1	Ditto Mate	William Maceril.
3	Boatswain's Mates	Quin, James, and Doyle.
3	Carpenter's Ditto	Barber and Macintoſh.
2	Gunner's Ditto	Brown and Ramſey.
4	Carpenter's Crew	Carter, &c.
1	Cook	Robert Morris.
1	Ditto Mate	Richard Young.
6	Quarter Masters	Weling, &c.
45	Able Seamen.	

MARINES.

1	Lieutenant	Moleſworth Philips.
1	Serjeant	Samuel Gibſon.
2	Corporals	Lediard and Thomas.
1	Drummer	Michael Portman.
15	Privates.	

Total of the Ship's Company 113 men.

II. A LIST of the OFFICERS, SEAMEN, and PRIVATES, on Board the DISCOVERY.

1	Captain	Charles Clerke.
2	Lieutenants	James Burney, John Rickman
1	Master	Thomas Edgar.
1	Boatswain	Eneas Atkins.
1	Carpenter	Peter Reynolds.
1	Gunner	William Peckover.
1	Surgeon	John Law.
2	Master's Mates	Home and Hollingby.
4	Midshipmen	Alex. Mouat, &c.
2	Surgeon's Mates	Snaggs and Ellis.
1	Captain's Clerk	Gregory Banthom.
1	Master at Arms.	
1	Corporal	
1	Armourer	Dixon.
1	Ditto Mate.	
1	Sail Maker.	
1	Ditto Mate.	
2	Boatswain's Mates.	
2	Carpenter's Ditto.	
1	Gunner's Ditto.	
4	Carpenter's Crew.	
1	Cook.	
4	Quarter Masters	Cox, &c.
33	Able Seamen.	

MARINES.

1	Serjeant	Letant.
1	Corporal.	
1	Drummer	Hollywell.
8	Privates.	

Total of the Ship's Company 80 men.

To theſe we may here add Omiah, who, as we were to touch at the Society iſlands and Otaheite, was to take his paſſage in the Reſolution, to his native country.

Before the Reſolution and Adventure quitted the ſmall but fertile iſland of Huaheine, captain Furneaux, who had the command of the latter, agreed to receive on board his ſhip a young man named Omai, or Omiah, a native of Ulietea, where he was poſſeſſed of ſome property, of which he had been deprived by the people of Bolabola. Captain Cook wondered that captain Furneaux would encumber himſelf with this man, who in his opinion, was not a proper ſample of the inhabitants of thoſe happy iſlands, not having any advantage of birth, or acquired rank, nor being eminent in ſhape, figure, or complexion; for their people of the firſt rank are much fairer, and, uſually, better behaved, and more intelligent, than the middling claſs of people, among whom Omiah is to be ranked. Captain Cook, however, ſince his arrival in England, has been convinced of his error; for, excepting his complexion (which is undoubtedly of a deeper hue than that of the Earees, or gentry, who live, as in other countries, a more luxurious life, and are leſs expoſed to the heat of the ſun) he doubted whether any other of the natives would have given a more general ſatisfaction by his behaviour among them. « Omiah, he obſerved, has certainly a very good underſtanding, quick parts, and honeſt principles; he has a natural good behaviour, which renders him acceptable to the beſt company, and a proper degree of pride, which taught him to avoid the ſociety of perſons of inferior rank. He has paſſions of the ſame kind as other young men, but has judgment enough not to indulge them in any improper manner. I do not imagine that he has any diſlike to liquor, and if he had fallen into company where the perſon who drank the moſt, met with the moſt approbation, I have no doubt, but that he would have endeavoured to gain the applauſe of thoſe with whom he aſſociated; but, fortunately for him, he perceived that drinking was very little in uſe but among the inferior people, and as he was very watchful into the manners and conduct of the perſons of rank who honoured him with their protection, he was ſober and modeſt; and I never heard that, during the whole time of his ſtay in England, which was two years, he ever once was diſguiſed with wine, or ever ſhewed an inclination to go beyond the ſtricteſt rules of moderation. Soon after his arrival in London, the Earl of Sandwich, the firſt Lord of the Admiralty, introduced him to his Majeſty at Kew, when he met with a moſt gracious reception, and imbibed the ſtrongeſt impreſſion of duty and gratitude, which I am perſuaded he will preſerve to the lateſt moment of his life. During his ſtay in England he was careſſed by many of the principal nobility, and did nothing to forfeit the eſteem of any one of them; but his principal patrons were the earl of Sandwich, Mr. Banks, and Dr. Solander: the firſt probably thought it a duty of his office to protect and countenance an inhabitant of that hoſpitable country, where the wants and diſtreſſes of thoſe in his department had been alleviated and ſupplied in the moſt ample manner; the others, as a teſtimony of their gratitude for the generous reception they had met with during their reſidence in his country. But though Omiah lived in the midſt of amuſements during his reſidence in England, his return to his native country was always in his thoughts; and though he was not impatient to go, now the time of his return approached, he was agitated by different paſſions in turns, and left London with a mixture of regret and ſatisfaction." In our voyage, when we talked about England, and about thoſe, who, during his ſtay had honoured him with their protection and friendſhip, his ſpirits were ſenſibly affected, and it was with difficulty he could refrain from tears. But, the inſtant the converſation turned to his own iſlands, his eyes began to ſparkle with joy. He was deeply impreſſed with a ſenſe of the good treatment he had met with in England, and entertained the higheſt ideas of the country and of the people. But the pleaſing proſpect he now had of returning home, loaded with what he well knew would be eſteemed invaluable treaſures there, and the flattering hope which the poſſeſſion of theſe gave him, of attaining to a diſtinguiſhed ſuperiority among his countrymen, were conſiderations that operated by degrees, to ſuppreſs every uneaſy ſenſation; and he ſeemed to be quite happy when he got on board the ſhip. By his Majeſty, he was ſupplied with an ample proviſion of every article which, during our intercourſe with his country, we had obſerved to be in any eſtimation there, either as uſeful or ornamental. He had, beſides, received many preſents of the ſame nature from Lord Sandwich, Mr. Banks (now Sir Joſeph) and ſeveral other gentlemen and ladies of his acquaintance. In ſhort, every method had been employed, both during his abode in England, and at his departure, to make him the inſtrument of conveying to the inhabitants of the Society Iſlands, and others in the Pacific Ocean, the moſt exalted opinion of Britiſh greatneſs and generoſity.

Every preparation being now compleated, Captain Cook received an order to proceed to Plymouth, and to take the Diſcovery under his command; in conſequence of which, having taken in our guns at the Galleons, on the 15th of June 1766, both ſhips came to an anchor at the Nore; but our freſh proviſions being nearly exhauſted, the Diſcovery weighed next day, in obedience to Captain Cook's order, but the Reſolution remained at the Nore waiting for her Commander, who was then in London. On the 24th, every thing being ready for our departure, Captain Cook ſet out with Omiah from London, at ſix o'clock in the morning; by eleven they reached Chatham, and after dining with Commiſſioner Proby, he very obligingly ordered his yacht to convey them to Sheerneſs, where the Captain's boat was waiting to take them on board. On the 25th, we made ſail for the Downs; and came to an anchor there on Wedneſday the 26th. Having received our boats on the day following, we got again under ſail; and on Sunday the 30th, at three o'clock, P. M. we anchored in Plymouth-ſound, where the Diſcovery had arrived only three days before. We ſaluted Admiral Amherſt, whoſe flag was flying on board the Ocean, and he returned the compliment. On the 1ſt and 2d of July we were employed in replacing the water and proviſions we had expended, and in receiving on board a ſupply of Port wine. On Saturday the 6th, his majeſty's ſhips Diamond, Ambuſcade, and Unicorn, with a fleet of tranſports, conſiſting of 62 ſail, bound to America, with the laſt diviſion of the Heſſian troops, and ſome horſe, were forced into the ſound. On the 8th, Captain Cook received his inſtructions, and on the 10th the proper perſons came on board and paid the officers and crew up to the 30th of laſt month. The petty officers and ſeamen received alſo two months' wages in advance. Such indulgence to the latter is cuſtomary, but the payment of what was due to the ſuperior officers, was in conſideration of our peculiar ſituation, to enable us to defray the expence of furniſhing ourſelves with neceſſaries for a voyage of ſuch uncommon duration.

As to Omiah, he appeared to be quite happy on board, nor would he go on ſhore, though numbers of people were frequently waiting there with the expectation of ſeeing him. To the account already given of this child of curioſity, we ſhall add ſome traits of his character as delineated by Mr. Forſter, wherein his good qualities are ſo blended with childiſhneſs and folly, that one can hardly think it applicable to the ſame perſon. "Omai," ſays Mr. Forſter, "has been conſidered either as remarkably ſtupid or very intelligent, according to the different allowances which were made by thoſe who judged of his abilities. His language which is deſtitute of every harſh conſonant, and where every word ends with a vowel, had ſo little exerciſed his organs of ſpeech, that they were wholly unfit to pronounce the more complicated Engliſh ſounds; and this phyſical, or rather habitual defect, has been too often miſconſtrued. Upon his arrival in England, he was immediately introduced into general company, led to the moſt ſplendid entertainments, and preſented at court amidſt a brilliant circle of the firſt nobility. He naturally imitated that eaſy and elegant politeneſs which is ſo prevalent in all thoſe places; he adopted the manners, the occupations, and amuſements of his companions,

panions, and gave many proofs of a quick conception and lively fancy. Among the inſtances of his intelligence, I need only mention his knowledge of the game of cheſs, in which he has made an amazing proficiency. The multiplicity of objects that crowded upon him, prevented his paying due attention to thoſe particulars, which would have been beneficial to himſelf and his countrymen at his return. He was not able to form a general comprehenſive view of our whole civilized ſyſtem, and to abſtract from thence what appeared moſt ſtrikingly uſeful, and applicable to the improvement of his country. His ſenſes were charmed by beauty, ſymmetry, harmony, and magnificence; they called aloud for gratification, and he was accuſtomed to obey their voice. The continued round of enjoyments left him no time to think of his future life; and being deſtitute of the genius of a Tupia, whoſe ſuperior abilities would have enabled him to form a plan for his own conduct, his underſtanding remained unimproved. After having ſpent two years in England, his judgment was in its infant ſtate; and, therefore, when he was preparing to return, he coveted almoſt every thing he ſaw, and particularly that which amuſed him by ſome unexpected effect. To gratify his puerile fancy, as it ſhould ſeem, rather than from any other motives, he was indulged with a portable organ, an electrical machine, a coat of mail, and a ſuit of armour." Such is the account, and ſuch the character of Omiah, (as given by Mr. Forſter,) who left his country, and his connections, to roam he did not know where, nor for what, having no idea of improving the arts, manufactures, or commerce of his country, or introducing one uſeful ſcience among them. He carried with him, beſides the articles above enumerated, a profuſion of almoſt every thing that can be named, axes, ſaws, chiſſels, and carpenters tools of every kind; all ſorts of Birmingham and Sheffield wares; guns, piſtols, cutlaſſes, powder, and ammunition; needles, pins, fiſh-hooks, and various implements for ſport; nets of all ſorts; with hand-engines, and a lathe for turning. He had likewiſe cloaths of different colours and different fabricks, laced and plain; ſome made in the ſtyle of his own country, and ſeveral after our manner. Some of theſe laſt he bartered with the petty officers (after he had paſſed New Zealand) for red feathers. He was likewiſe ſupplied plentifully with glaſs and china-wares, with beads and toys, ſome of great value; medals of various metals; and a watch was preſented to him by a perſon of diſtinction: in ſhort, nothing was withheld from him that he required either for trade in his own country, or for curioſity. How he behaved on board, and in what manner he was received on his return home, will be ſeen in the ſequel of the hiſtory of our voyage, to which we now proceed.

CHAP. I.

Departure of the Reſolution from Plymouth Sound—Her paſſage to Teneriffe, and reception ſhe met with there—The road of Santa Cruz deſcribed—Geographical account of the iſland, and hiſtory of the cities of Santa Cruz and Laguna—Air, climate, agriculture, produce, commerce, and inhabitants deſcribed—Her departure from Teneriffe for the Cape of Good Hope——The Diſcovery follows, and joins company ſome time after her arrival there—The Reſolution in danger near the ſunken rocks of Bonaviſta—Arrives at the Cape of Good Hope——Tranſactions there—An account of Mr. Anderſon's journey up the country—Both ſhips leave the Cape, and proceed on their voyage to the ſouthward.

A. D. 1776. IN the morning of the 11th of July, Captain Cook delivered into the hands of Mr. Burney, firſt lieutenant of the Diſcovery, Captain Clerke's ſailing orders; a copy of which he alſo left with the commanding officer of his majeſty's ſhips at Plymouth, to be delivered to the Captain on his arrival.

In the afternoon we weighed with the ebb, and got out beyond all the ſhipping in the ſound. On Friday the 12th, the impatience of the ſhip's company, and the notion they had entertained of its being a lucky-day, as it was the ſame the Reſolution had ſet ſail on in her former voyage, induced Captain Cook to comply with their importunities. Accordingly, at eight o'clock, P. M. we ſtood out of the ſound, with Omiah on board, having a gentle breeze at N. W. by W. Captain Clerke was ordered to follow us with the Diſcovery, to St. Jago, one of the Cape de Verd Iſlands, and if he ſhould there miſs of us to purſue his courſe directly for the Cape of Good Hope. Soon after we came out of the ſound, the wind came more weſterly, and blew freſh, which obliged us to ply down the channel; and we were not off the Lizard till Sunday the 14th, in the evening. On Tueſday the 16th, we obſerved in latitude 49 deg. 53 min. 30 ſec. N. St. Agnes's Light-houſe bearing at this time N. W. by W. diſtant about eight miles, and, by our reckoning, ſituated in 49 deg. 57 min. 30 ſec. N. and in 6 deg. 20 min. W. longitude. Our readers will be pleaſed here to obſerve, that, in this voyage, we reckon our longitude from the meridian of Greenwich, and after paſſing to the eaſt in the South Atlantic, it is carried on eaſterly beyond the Great Meridian, or 180th degree, to the utmoſt extent of the voyage, and back again to the ſame meridian. On the 17th our commander began his judicious operations for preſerving the health of his crew; for this day the ſpare ſails were well aired, and the ſhip was ſmoaked between decks with gunpowder. On Thurſday the 18th, we were abreaſt of Uſhant, and, by the watch, found the longitude of the iſland to be 5 deg. 18 min. 37 ſec. W. On the 19th, we ſtood weſtward till eight o'clock, A. M. when the wind ſhifted; upon which we tacked and ſtretched to the ſouthward. Soon after we came in ſight of nine ſail of large ſhips, which we ſuppoſed to be French men of war. On Monday the 22nd, we obſerved in latitude 44 deg. 6 min. N. longitude 8 deg. 23 min. W. when Cape Ortegal, then in view, bore S. E. half S. diſtant four leagues. We had calm weather till the afternoon of the 24th, when we paſſed Cape Finiſterre, with a fine gale at N. N. E. By the watch, and the mean of 41 lunar obſervations, we found the longitude of this cape to be 9 deg. 19 min. 12 ſec. On Tueſday the 30th, finding we wanted a ſupply of hay and corn, for the ſubſiſtence of our live ſtock of animals on board, Captain Cook determined to touch at Teneriffe, in order to procure thoſe neceſſaries, as well as the uſual refreſhments for ourſelves. On the 31ſt, at four o'clock P. M. we ſaw Teneriffe, made for the eaſtern part of it, and during the night ſtood off and on.

Thurſday the 1ſt of Auguſt, early in the morning, we proceeded round the eaſt point of the iſland, to the S. E. ſide, and, about eight o'clock, anchored in the road of Santa Cruz, in 23 fathoms water. We moored N. E. and S. W. near half a mile from the ſhore; in which poſition Punta de Nago bore N. 64 deg. E. The church of St. Francis, which has a remarkable high ſteeple, W. S. W. the Pic, S. 65 deg. W. and the S. W. point of the road, on which ſtands a caſtle, S. 39 deg. W. In this road were riding one French frigate, two French brigantines, an Engliſh one, and 14 ſail of the Spaniſh nation. We had no ſooner anchored than we received a viſit from the maſter of the port, who only aſked the ſhip's name; and upon his retiring, Captain Cook ſent an officer aſhore, to requeſt his permiſſion, that we might take in water, and purchaſe other neceſſary articles. This he politely granted, ed, and ſent one of his officers on board to compliment the captain on his arrival; who, in the afternoon, waited upon the governor in perſon, accompanied by ſome of his officers; and, before he returned, beſpoke ſome corn and ſtraw, ordered a quantity of wine, and made an agreement for a ſupply of water, with a Spaniſh boat.

The principal road of Teneriffe is this of Santa Cruz, on account of its capacity, and the goodneſs of its bottom. It lies before the town of the ſame name. Great care is obſerved in mooring ſhips, as the road lies entirely open to the S. E. and S. winds. We obſerved, that all thoſe veſſels which lay here at this time, had four anchors out, and their cables were buoyed up with caſks. By not attending to this laſt particular, we found ours had ſuffered a little. The water to ſupply the ſhipping, and for the uſe of the inhabitants of Santa Cruz, is derived from a rivulet that runs from the hills, which is conveyed into the town in wooden troughs. As theſe troughs were at this time repairing, freſh water was extremely ſcarce. For the convenience of loading and landing goods, at the S. W. part of the road, a ſtone pier is run out from the town into the ſea. It might be naturally concluded, from the appearance of the country about Santa Cruz, that Teneriffe is a barren ſpot: but the following account of this iſland will prove the contrary: and for the entertainment of the curious part of our readers, we ſhall preſent them with a relation of a journey up the Pike of Teneriffe, including a brief account of the weather and produce of the iſland.

The iſland of Teneriffe was antiently called Nivaria, from the ſnow that incloſes the neck of the Pike of Teyda, like a collar; the name of Teneriffe, or the White Mountain, being given it by the natives of Palma, in whoſe language Tener ſignifies ſnow, and iffe, white: the ſummit of the Pike of Teneriffe being always covered with ſnow. Point Nago, or Anaga, which is the N. E. point of Teneriffe, bears N. W. about 16 leagues diſtant from the N. W. part of Canaria; but from that part of Canaria to the neareſt part of Teneriffe, the diſtance does not exceed 12 leagues.

This iſland is nearly triangular, the three ſides being almoſt equal, and each about 36 miles long. In the center is the famous Pike of Teneriffe, ſaid to be the higheſt mountain in the univerſe, and ſtrikes the ſpectators with amazement, both near and at a diſtance. This great mountain extends its baſe to Garrachino, from whence it is two days and a half's journey to the top; but we ſhall ſpeak more particularly of this in the ſequel. In coming in with Teneriffe, in clear weather, the Pike may be eaſily diſcerned at 120 miles, or 40 leagues diſtance; and in ſailing from it, at the diſtance of 150 miles, or 50 leagues, when it reſembles a thin blue vapour, or ſmoke, very little darker than the ſky. Before we loſe ſight of this towering mountain, it ſeems a conſiderable height above the firmament, though from its diſtance, and the ſpherical figure of the earth, the reſt of the iſland is ſunk beneath the horizon, notwithſtanding its being exceedingly high. There are ſeveral high perpendicular rocks near Punto de Nago; and on the ſouth-eaſt ſide of the iſland, is the harbour of Santa Cruz, the moſt frequented part in the Canary iſlands. The beſt road for ſhips is about a mile to the northward: between the middle of the town and fort, or caſtle, ſhips may lie ſecure from all winds, though the bay is expoſed to thoſe which blow from the N. E. coaſts and S. E. yet theſe winds do not blow ſo hard as to cauſe any conſiderable damage above once in the ſpace of four or five years. However, we learn from Glaſs, that ſome years ago, moſt of the ſhipping in the road were driven on ſhore by one of theſe gales. Some Engliſh ſhips were then in the harbour; but the crews prudently cutting away their maſts, rode out the ſtorm. In the middle of the town, for the convenience of landing, is a mole, built at vaſt expence. It runs up to the northward, and the outermoſt part turns towards the ſhore. However, in mild weather, goods are landed at a creek among the rocks, at the diſtance of a ſtone's caſt to the ſouthward of the mole; and near the cuſtom-houſe. In the way from the mole into the town, there is a ſquare fort on the left hand, named St. Philip's; this is the principal one in the bay. To the northward of it are ſome forts and batteries mounted with guns, the moſt conſiderable of which is named Paſſo Alto. Near it is a ſteep rocky valley, which begins at the ſea ſhore, and runs a great way within land. There are ſeveral batteries at the ſouth end of the town, and beyond them, cloſe to the ſhore, is a fort called St. Juan. All theſe forts are mounted with cannon, and joined together by a thick ſtone wall, which begins near the above rocky valley, and continues with little interruption to fort St. Juan. This wall is within only breaſt high, but it is higher on the outſide facing the ſea, and from thence to the ſouthward; the ſhore being naturally fenced with rocks, is generally inacceſſible.

Santa Cruz is a large town, and contains ſeveral churches, three convents of friars, an hoſpital, and the beſt conſtructed private buildings of any to be found in the Canary iſlands. It is indeed the capital of them all, for though the epiſcopal ſee and courts of judicature are in the city of Palmas, in Canaria, the governor-general of the iſlands always reſides in Santa Cruz, where a great concourſe of foreigners continually reſort, on account of its being the center of the trade between the Canary iſlands with Europe and America. The number of inhabitants are ſuppoſed to amount to about five or ſix thouſand. The water drank by them is conveyed into the town in open wooden troughs, from a ſpring beyond the above-mentioned valley, and there are pits of water, which ſerve for other purpoſes, in many houſes. Near 12 miles to the ſouthward of Santa Cruz, and cloſe to the ſea, there is a cave, with a church, or chapel, called our Lady of Candelaria, in which is a little image of the Virgin Mary, about three feet high, holding a green candle in one hand, and in the other an infant Jeſus, who has a gilt bird in each hand. This chapel received its name of Candelaria, from its being pretended, that on the eve of the purification of the Holy Virgin, a great number of lights are conſtantly ſeen going in proceſſion round the cave, in which the image is placed: and they aſſert, that in the morning drops of wax are ſcattered about the ſea ſhore. This image is held in the higheſt veneration, on account of the many miracles it is ſaid to have performed, and her chapel is adorned with ſo many ornaments, that it is the richeſt place in all the ſeven iſlands. At a certain ſeaſon of the year, moſt of the inhabitants of the iſland go thither in pilgrimage, when troops of young girls march ſinging, in an agreeable manner, the praiſes of the Virgin, and the miraculous deeds the image is ſaid to have performed.

North-weſtward of the iſland is the bay of Adexe, or, as it is pronounced, Adehe, where large ſhips may anchor. On the N. W. ſide is a haven called Garrachica, once the beſt port in the iſland; but it was deſtroyed in 1704, which the natives call the year of the earthquakes, and filled up by the rivers of burning lava that flowed into it from a volcano; ſo that houſes are now built where ſhips formerly lay at anchor; yet veſſels come there in the ſummer ſeaſon. The earthquake began on the 24th of December; and in the ſpace of three hours 29 ſhocks were felt. After this they became ſo violent as to cauſe all the houſes to ſhake, and oblige the inhabitants to abandon them. The conſternation became univerſal, and the people, with the biſhop at their head, made proceſſions and public prayers in the open fields. On the 31ſt a great light was obſerved on Manja, towards the White Mountains, where the earth opening, two volcanoes were formed, that threw up ſuch heaps of ſtones, as to raiſe two conſiderable mountains; and the combuſtible matter continually thrown up, kindled in the neighbourhood above 50 fires. Things remained in this ſituation till the 5th of January, and then the ſun was totally obſcured with clouds of ſmoke and flame, which continually increaſing, augmented the conſternation and terror of the inhabitants. Before night, the whole country, for nine miles round, was in flames by the flowing of the liquid fire, with the rapidity of the torrent, into all quarters, from another volcano, which had opened by at leaſt thirty different vents within the compaſs of half a mile. The horror of this ſcene was greatly increaſed by the violence of the ſhocks, which never once intermitted, but by their force entirely overthrew ſeveral houſes, and ſhook others to their very foundations: while the wretched inhabitants were again driven defenceleſs and diſmayed into the open fields, where they every moment expected to be ſwallowed up by ſome new gulf. The noiſe of the volcano was heard at ſea at 20 leagues diſtance, where the ſea ſhook with ſuch violence as alarmed the mariners, who at firſt thought the ſhip had ſtruck upon the rock. Mean while a torrent of ſulphur, and melted ores of different kinds, ruſhed from this laſt volcano towards Guimar, where the houſes and public buildings were thrown down by the violence of the accompanying ſhocks. On the 2nd of February another volcano broke out even in the town of Guimar, which ſwallowed up a large church. Thus from the 24th of December to the 23d of February, the people were conſtantly alarmed by continual ſhocks of earthquakes, and the terrible volcanoes that burſt forth in different parts.

The town of Garrachica, is ſtill pretty large, and contains ſeveral churches, and convents of both ſexes. It has a ſmall trade for brandy and wine, which are uſually ſent from thence in barks, or large open boats, to Santa Cruz, or Port Orotava. Strong and durable ſhips are alſo built there, ſome of which are upwards of three hundred tons burthen. Six miles to the eaſtward of this place ſtands the town of Port Orotava, which is a good harbour in the ſummer ſeaſon, but in the winter, ſhips are often obliged to ſlip their cables and put to ſea, for fear of being ſurprized with a N. W. wind, which throws in a heavy ſea upon this coaſt. This is a place of conſiderable trade, it having flouriſhed greatly ſince the deſtruction of the harbour of Garrachica. It contains two churches, two convents of friars, two of nuns, and ſome good private buildings. At each end of the town is a black ſandy bay; and along the northernmoſt a low ſtone wall, built to prevent the landing of an enemy: at the other bay is a ſmall caſtle, or fort, for the ſame purpoſe, and at the landing-place between them is a battery of a few cannon: but the ſurf that continually breaks upon the ſhore is the beſt defence of this port. About three miles from hence within land is la Villa de Orotava, which is a large town, and contains ſeveral churches, and convents, with a number of ſtately ſtone buildings belonging to private perſons. A rivulet which runs through the midſt of it, refreſhes their gardens and orchards, and ſupplies the inhabitants with water.

The city of St. Chriſtobal de la Lagona, that is, St. Chriſtopher of the lake, extends four miles within land from Santa Cruz. The road to it from the above town is a pretty ſteep aſcent, till within a ſmall diſtance of the city, which is ſeated in the corner of a plain, about four miles in length, and a mile in breadth. This city is the capital of the iſland, and contains two pariſh churches, three convents of friars, two of nuns, and three hoſpitals; two of which are for the venereal diſeaſe, and the other for foundlings. The jeſuits have alſo a houſe here, and, beſides theſe public ſtructures, there are many handſome private buildings. The water drank by the inhabitants is conveyed in troughs to the city, from the mountain ſituated to the ſouthward of the plain. In this city there is not the leaſt ſhew of buſineſs, it being chiefly inhabited by the gentry of the iſland, particularly the officers of juſtice, with the judge of the Indies, who preſides in the India-Houſe, where all affairs relating to the Weſt-India commerce are conducted. Here is likewiſe an office of inquiſition ſubject to the tribunal of the holy office of Grand Canaria; yet the city appears to a ſtranger as if deſolate and uninhabited; for ſeldom any one can be ſeen in the ſtreets, and graſs grows in the moſt frequented places. There is a laguna, or lake, behind the city, about half a mile in circumference, from which the city takes its name. It is dry in ſummer, but in winter is full of ſtagnant water. As this city is ſituated on a plain, elevated a conſiderable height above the ſea, it is extremely cold in winter, and in all ſeaſons expoſed to the wind. The road deſcends, from the weſtern extremity of this plain, to La Montanza de Centejo, a large village in the midway between Santa Cruz and Port Orotava, chiefly inhabited by peaſants and labouring people. Some of the towns are ſituated at no great diſtance from the ſea, from whence moſt of them may be ſeen; and, indeed, there are no habitations at a greater diſtance from each other than nine miles. A large town, called Realojo, is ſituated in the weſtern border, and La Rambla on the eaſtern. The towns of Orotava, and Port Orotava, ſtood between them, with a number of detached inhabitants, ſcattered about from the ſea ſhore upwards to the clouds, in, or beyond which, there are no houſes; yet the clouds are not higher than the middle diſtance between the ſea and the ſummit of the pike.

The whole iſland continues to riſe on all ſides from the ſea till it terminates in the pike, which, as we have obſerved, is in the center. The north ſide is the moſt fertile, and aſcends more gradually than the other, particularly a ſpace along the ſhore about three leagues broad, bounded on the ſides by high mountains or rather cliffs; but it riſes upwards from the ſea, like a hanging garden, till you come within 3 miles of the clouds, without any conſiderable intervention of hills and valleys. All the fertile ground, within a league of the ſea, is covered with vines; corn grows in the next league; and in the third, ſome corn, woods of cheſnuts, and many other different ſorts of trees. Above theſe woods are the clouds, which, in fine weather, generally deſcend gradually towards the evening, and reſt upon theſe woods till the morning, when they reaſcend about a league, and there remain till the ſucceeding evening. There are ſeveral other towns, and many ſmall villages beſides the towns already mentioned. This iſland is ſo populous, that, when the laſt account was taken, it contained no leſs than 96,000 perſons, and is ſuppoſed to contain as many ſouls as all the reſt of the inhabited iſlands.

The city of Laguna, which ſtands near a lake, about nine miles from the ſea, is the principal place in Teneriffe: it is called by the Spaniards St. Chriſtoval de la Laguna, and is handſomely built, having two pariſh churches, and a palace for the governor, who reſides here. The aldermen of this city pay a price to the king to ſerve their offices of magiſtrates; but this gives them great power over the inhabitants, who are divided into three claſſes, namely, gentlemen, merchants, and huſbandmen, or as they are termed by the natives, idlemen, buſy men, and labouring men. The land on each ſide of the road, leading to Laguna, is, in general, rocky, but ſome ſpots of corn-land are interſperſed here and there, and terminated by ſmall vineyards on the ſides of the mountains. This city preſents the beholder with an agreeable proſpect, as it ſtands on the ſide of a hill, and ſtretches its ſkirts on the plain behind: it is large, compact, and populous: the houſes, though not uniform, have a pleaſant appearance; beſides the governor's houſe, and the two pariſh churches, here are two nunneries, four convents, an hoſpital, and ſome chapels, beſides many gentlemens houſes. The convents are thoſe of St. Francis, St. Auguſtine, St. Dominic, and St. Diego. The churches have pretty high ſquare ſteeples, which top the reſt of the buildings. The ſtreets are not regular, yet they are for the moſt part ſpacious, and near the middle of the town is a large parade, which has good buildings about it. There is a ſtrong priſon on one ſide of it, near which is a large conduit of good water that ſupplies all the town. The inhabitants have many gardens that are ſet round with orange, lime, and other fruit trees, in the middle of which are flowers, ſallading, &c. and indeed, if the people were curious this way, they might have very pleaſant gardens: for the town ſtands high from the ſea, on the brow of a plain that is all open to the eaſt, and has conſequently the benefit of the trade wind, which blows here, and is commonly fair; ſo that there are ſeldom wanting, at this town, all the day, briſk, cooling, refreſhing breezes. There is a large plain on the back of the town, three or four leagues in length, and two miles broad, producing a thick, kindly graſs. On the eaſt ſide is a lake of freſh water; but, being ſtagnant, it is only uſed for cattle: it is about half a mile in circumference.

The antient inhabitants of Teneriffe were called Guanches, but their origin is not certainly known: they were, and the remainder of them ſtill are without literature; but their language, which ſtill remains among the remnant of them, bears ſome affinity to that of the Moors in Barbary; it was formerly very guttural, and entirely different from that uſed in the other iſlands. They were of good ſtature, well made, and had tolerable complexions, but thoſe who dwelt on the north ſide of the iſland were much fairer, and had lighter hair than thoſe in the South. Theſe people had ſome notion of a deity, and held, that there is a ſupreme power, which they diſtinguiſhed by the names of Achguarergenan, Achoran, and Achaman, which ſignify the ſuſtainer of the heavens and the earth. They alſo gave the titles of the great, the ſublime, the maintainer of all: but they did not worſhip idols, nor had any images of the deity. They believed that God created them of earth and water, and made as many men as women, giving them cattle, and every thing neceſſary for their ſubſiſtence; but that afterwards there appearing to him too few, he created more; but to theſe laſt gave nothing; and when they prayed to him for flocks of ſheep, and herds of goats, he bid them go and ſerve the others, who, in return, would give them food. From theſe, they ſaid, were deſcended their ſervants. They had ſome idea of the immortality of the ſoul, by ſuppoſing the exiſtence of places for future rewards and puniſhments. In particular, they ſuppoſed the Pike of Teneriffe to contain hell in its bowels, which they termed Echeyda; and gave the name of Guayotta to the devil.

In Teneriffe, the weather is the ſame as in Grand Canaria; but the ſea-breeze generally ſets in at about ten o'clock in the morning, on the E. and N. E. ſides of the iſland, and blows till about five or ſix in the evening, when it falls calm till midnight. The land wind then begins, and continues till ſeven or eight in the morning, when it is followed by a calm, which laſts till the ſea breeze returns. In the bay of Santa Cruz, and on all the E. ſide of the iſland, the ſea breeze commonly blows at E. and the land wind at W. On the N. ſide, the ſea breeze blows at N. E. by E. or N. E. and the land wind directly oppoſite to it; but there is no land wind at Point Nago, where the land ſtretches towards the N. E. far into the ſea. At the brow of the hill above Santa Cruz, and at the city of Laguna, a freſh gale blows from the N. W. all the time of the ſea breeze, which is occaſioned by the mountains almoſt encompaſſing the plain. Theſe being ſo exceedingly high on the S. ſide of it, as to beat back the ſea breeze, and throw it againſt the mountains that bound the N. ſide of the plain, where, finding no paſſage, it veers to the S. E. and there meeting with no reſiſtance, forces its way with great vehemence through the plain; till coming to the brow of the above-mentioned hill, part of the current of air pours down it towards Santa Cruz, advancing within a mile and a half of the ſea, where the true ſea breeze checks it: yet there is no regular ſea or land breeze, on the S. W. coaſt, which is ſheltered from the trade or north-eaſterly wind by the immenſe height of the pike, which towers above the region of the wind: hence on that ſide of the iſland, there is either an eddy wind at S. W. or a calm.

This iſland produces nearly the ſame vegetables as that of Canaria, only there are more vine-yards, and leſs corn-land. The wines are ſtrong, good, and very fit for exportation, eſpecially into hot climates, by which they are generally greatly improved. Formerly a large quantity of Canary ſack was made here, which the French call Vin de Malveſie, and we, corruptly, after them, name Malmſey, from Malveſia, a town in the Morea, famous for ſuch luſcious wine. In the laſt century, and ſtill later, much of this was imported into England; but of late years they have not made above fifty pipes in a ſeaſon; for they now uſually gather the grapes when green, and make a hard dry wine of them, which when about two or three years old, can hardly be diſtinguiſhed from Madeira; but after four years of age it becomes ſo ſweet and mellow as to reſemble the wine of Malaga in Spain. This, like all the other Canary iſlands, affords orchilla weed in great plenty. The dragon tree, aloe, and pine, are natives of Teneriffe. The apricot, peach, and pear-trees, bear twice annually. The pregnada, lemon, and lignar wood, are found here, as are the cotton-ſhrub and coloquintida. The roſe blows at Chriſtmas: the carnations are large and fine, but tulips will not thrive. The rocks abound with ſamphire, the meadows are covered with clover, and the beach produces a broad leaved graſs. About fourſcore ears of wheat ſpring from one root, the grains of which are as tranſparent as the pureſt yellow amber; and in a good ſeaſon one buſhel will produce a hundred fold: the barley and maize are not inferior to the wheat.

With reſpect to the animals, here are plenty of rabbets, hogs, wild goats, &c. Quails and partridges are larger than thoſe in England, and extremely handſome, Wood-pigeons, turtles, and crows, abound in the ſpring. Several ſorts of wild fowls reſort hither in the winter ſeaſon, affording plenty of game to the inhabitants of Laguna. The falcons, or rather ſtrong large hawks, which hover over the lake of Laguna, are thus deſcribed by a gentleman who lately travelled to theſe iſlands: "I cannot forbear mentioning the haggard falcons that ſoar every evening about this lake. It is very good diverſion to ſee the negroes fight them with ſlings; for they often ſtoop, ſeveral at a time; and beſides, they are the beſt mettled hawks in the world, being of a larger kind than the Barbary falcon. The viceroy being one evening to ſee the ſport, on the author's commending their ſtrength and mettle, aſſured him upon his honour, that a falcon bred in that iſland, which he had formerly ſent to the duke of Larma, did at one flight, (unleſs ſhe reſted on any ſhip by the way) paſs from Andaluſia to Teneriffe, which is two hundred and fifty Spaniſh leagues, and was taken up half dead, having on the veſſels and bells belonging to the duke."

In this iſland fiſhes are found in great quantities, particularly dolphins, ſharks, meros, lobſters, muſſels, periwinkles, the calcas, (which is deemed the beſt ſhell-fiſh in the univerſe) and the cherna, that exceeds in reliſh any we have in England: here is alſo another fiſh which is called an eel, though with little propriety, for it has ſeven tails of a ſpan long joined to one body and one head, which are nearly of the ſame length. Silk worms thrive exceedingly; and bees proſper in the rocks and mountains. To this account we ſhall add the following remarks of the ingenious Mr. Anderſon, (one of our ſhip's company, and of whom we have already made mention) on the natural appearances of Teneriffe, and its productions; as what he obſerved himſelf, or learnt by information, about the general ſtate of the iſland, may be of uſe; ſeeing our readers may hereby be enabled to mark ſome changes that have happened there ſince the publication of the above geographical obſervations, which are chiefly extracted from Mr. MILLAR's *deſervedly much admired* NEW *and* UNIVERSAL SYSTEM *of* GEOGRAPHY. The following are Mr. Anderſon's own words, and narration.

"While we were ſtanding in for the land, the weather being perfectly clear, we had an opportunity of ſeeing the celebrated Pike of Teneriffe: but I own I was much diſappointed in my expectation with reſpect to its appearance. It is, certainly, far from equalling the noble figure of Pico, one of the weſtern iſles which I have ſeen; though its perpendicular height may be greater. This circumſtance, perhaps, ariſes from its being ſurrounded by other very high hills; whereas Pico ſtands without a rival.

"Behind the city of Santa Cruz, the country riſes gradually, and is of a moderate height. Beyond this, to the ſouth-weſtward, it becomes higher, and continues to riſe toward the Pic, which, from the road, appears but little higher than the ſurrounding hills. From thence it ſeems to decreaſe, though not ſuddenly, as far as the eye can reach. From a ſuppoſition that we ſhould not ſtay above one day, I was obliged to contract my excurſions; otherwiſe I had propoſed to viſit the top of this famous mountain. To the eaſtward of Santa Cruz, the iſland appears perfectly barren. Ridges of hills run towards the ſea; between which ridges are deep valleys, terminating at mountains or hills that run acroſs, and are higher than the former. Thoſe that run towards the ſea, are marked by impreſſions on their ſides, which makes them appear as a ſucceſſion of conic hills, with their tops very rugged. The higher ones that run acroſs are more uniform in their appearance.

"In the forenoon of the firſt of Auguſt, after we had anchored in the road, I went on ſhore to one of theſe valleys, with an intention to reach the top of the remoter hills, which ſeemed covered with woods; but time would not allow me to get farther than their foot. After walking about three miles, I found no alteration in the appearance of the lower hills; which produce great quantities of the Euphorbia Canarienſis. It is ſurpriſing that this large ſucculent plant ſhould thrive on ſo burnt up a ſoil. When broken, which is eaſily done, the quantity of juice is very great; and it might be ſuppoſed that, when dried, it would ſhrivel to nothing: yet it is a pretty tough, though ſoft and light wood. The people here believe its juice to be ſo cauſtic, as to corrode the ſkin; but I convinced them, though with much difficulty, to the contrary, by thruſting my finger in a plant full of it, without afterwards wiping it off. They break down the buſhes of the Euphorbia, and ſuffering them to dry, carry them home for fuel. I met with nothing elſe growing there, but two or three ſmall ſhrubs, and a few fig-trees near the bottom of the valley. The baſis of the hills is a heavy compact blueiſh ſtone, mixed with ſome ſhining particles; and, on the ſurface, large maſſes of red friable earth, or ſtone, are ſcattered about. I alſo found the ſame ſubſtance diſpoſed in a thick ſtrata; and the little earth ſtrewed here and there, was a blackiſh mould. There were alſo ſome pieces of ſlag; one of which, from its weight and ſmooth ſurface, ſeemed almoſt wholly metalline. The mouldering ſtate of theſe hills is, doubtleſs, owing to the perpetual action of the ſun, which calcines their ſurface. This mouldered part being afterwards waſhed away by the heavy rains, perhaps is the cauſe of their ſides being ſo uneven. For, as the different ſubſtances of which they are compoſed, are more or leſs eaſily affected by the ſun's heat, they will be carried away in the like proportions. Hence, perhaps, the tops of the hills, being of the hardeſt rock, have ſtood, while the other parts on a declivity have been deſtroyed. As I have uſually obſerved, that the tops of moſt mountains that are covered with trees have a more uniform appearance, I am inclined to believe, that this is owing to their being ſhaded.

"The city of Santa Cruz, though not large, is tolerably well built. The churches are not magnificent without; but within are decent, and indifferently ornamented. They are inferior to ſome of the churches at Madeira: but, I imagine, this rather ariſes from the different diſpoſition of the people, than from their inability to ſupport them better: for the private houſes, and dreſs of the Spaniſh inhabitants of Santa Cruz, are far preferable to thoſe of the Portugueze at Madeira, who, perhaps, are willing to ſtrip themſelves, that they may adorn their churches.

"Almoſt facing the ſtone pier, at the landing-place, is a handſome marble column, lately put up, ornamented with ſome human figures, that do no diſcredit to the artiſt, with an inſcription in Spaniſh, and the date, to commemorate the occaſion of the erection.

"Friday the 2nd, in the afternoon, four of us hired mules to ride to the city of Laguna, ſo called from an adjoining lake; about four miles from Santa Cruz. We arrived there about ſix in the evening, but found a ſight of it very unable to compenſate for our trouble, as the road was very bad, and the mules but indifferent. The place is, indeed, pretty extenſive, but ſcarcely deſerves to be dignified with the name of city.

"The diſpoſition of its ſtreets is very irregular; yet ſome of them are of a tolerable breadth, and have ſome good houſes. In general, however, Laguna is inferior in appearance to Santa Cruz, though the latter, if compared with the former, is but ſmall. The road leading from Santa Cruz to Laguna runs up a ſteep hill, which is very barren; but lower down, we ſaw ſome fig-trees, and ſeveral corn-fields. Theſe laſt are but ſmall, and not thrown into ridges, as is practiſed in England. Nor does it appear that they can raiſe any corn here without great labour, as the ground is ſo encumbered with ſtones, that they are obliged to collect and lay them in broad-rows, or walls, at ſmall diſtances. The large hills that run to the S. W. appeared to be pretty well furniſhed with trees. Nothing elſe worthy of notice preſented itſelf during this excurſion, except a few aloe plants in flower, near the ſide of the road, and the chearfulneſs of our guides, who amuſed us with ſongs by the way. Moſt of the laborious work in this iſland is performed by mules, horſes being to appearance ſcarce, and chiefly reſerved for the uſe of the officers. They are of a ſmall ſize, but well ſhaped and ſpirited. Oxen are alſo employed to drag their caſks along upon a clumſy piece of wood; and they are yoked by the head, though it doth not ſeem, that this has any peculiar advantage over our method of fixing the harneſs on the ſhoulders. In my walks and excurſions I ſaw ſome hawks, parrots, the tern or ſea-ſwallow, ſea-gulls, partridges, wagtails, ſwallows, martins, blackbirds, and canary-birds in large flocks. There are alſo lizards of the common, and another ſort; ſome inſects and locuſts; and three or four ſorts of dragon flies.

"I had an opportunity of converſing with a ſenſible and well informed gentleman reſiding here, and whoſe veracity I have not the leaſt reaſon to doubt. From him I learnt ſome particulars, which during the ſhort ſtay of three days, did not fall within my own obſervation. He informed me, that a ſhrub is common here, agreeing exactly with the deſcription given by Tournefort and Linnæus, of the tea-ſhrub, as growing in China and Japan. It is reckoned a weed, and he roots out thouſands of them every year, from his vineyards. The Spaniards, however, of the iſland, ſometimes uſe it as tea, and aſcribe to it all the qualities of that imported from China. They alſo give it the name of tea; but what is remarkable, they ſay it was found here when the iſland was firſt diſcovered. Another botanical curioſity, mentioned by him, is what they call Pregnada, or impregnated lemon. It is a perfect and diſtinct lemon, incloſed within another, differing from the outer one only in being a little more globular. The leaves of the tree that produces this ſort, are much longer than thoſe of the common one; and it was repreſented to me as being crooked, and not equal in beauty. From him I learnt alſo, that a certain ſort of grape growing here, is reckoned an excellent remedy in phthiſical complaints: and the air and climate, in general, are remarkably healthful, and particularly adapted to give relief in ſuch diſeaſes. This he endeavoured to account for, by its being always in our power to procure a different temperature of the air, by reſiding at different heights in the iſland; and he expreſſed his ſurprize, that the Engliſh phyſicians ſhould never have thought of ſending their conſumptive patients to Teneriffe, inſtead of Nice or Liſbon. How much the temperature of the air varies here, I myſelf could ſenſibly perceive, only in riding from Santa Cruz up to Laguna; and you may aſcend till the cold becomes intolerable. I am aſſured no perſon can live comfortably within a mile of the perpendicular height of the Pic, after the month of Auguſt. This agrees with Dr. Heberden's account, who ſays, that the ſugar-loaf part of the mountain, or la pericoſa (as it is called) which is an eighth part of a league (or 1980 feet) to the top, is covered with ſnow the greateſt part of the year.

"Their trade muſt be ſuppoſed very conſiderable indeed; for they reckon that 40,000 pipes of wine are annually made; the greateſt part of which is either conſumed in the iſland, or made into brandy, and ſent to the Spaniſh Weſt Indies. About 6000 pipes were exported every year to North America, while the trade with it was uninterrupted; at preſent it is thought not half the quantity."——Our readers will here pleaſe to obſerve, that in the foregoing account given by Mr. MILLAR, in his New Syſtem of Geography, the number of inhabitants in Teneriffe are computed at no leſs then 96,000. Now we may reaſonably ſuppoſe, that there has been a conſiderable increaſe of population within theſe 30 years. The quantity of wine annually conſumed, as the common beverage of at leaſt 100,000 perſons, muſt amount to ſeveral thouſand pipes. There muſt be a vaſt expenditure of it, by converſion into brandy; to produce one pipe of which, five or ſix pipes of wine muſt be diſtilled. An attention to theſe particulars will enable every one to judge, that the account given by Mr. Anderſon of the annual produce of pipes of wine has a foundation in truth.——This gentleman goes on to obſerve, "That they make little ſilk; and, unleſs we reckon the filtering ſtones, brought in great numbers from Grand Canary, the wine is the only conſiderable article of the foreign commerce of Teneriffe.

"None of the race of the family of the Guanches, or antient inhabitants, found here when the Spaniards diſcovered the Canaries, now remain a diſtinct people, having intermarried with the Spaniſh ſettlers; but their deſcendants are known, from their being remarkably tall, large boned, and ſtrong. The men are, in general, of a tawny colour, and the women have a pale complexion, entirely deſtitute of that bloom which diſtinguiſhes our northern beauties. The Spaniſh cuſtom of wearing black clothes continues among them; but the men ſeem more indifferent about this, and in ſome meaſure dreſs like the French. In other reſpects, we found the inhabitants of Teneriffe to be a decent and very civil people, retaining that grave caſt which diſtinguiſhes thoſe of their country from other European nations. Although, concludes Mr. Anderſon, we do not think, that there is a great ſimilarity between our manners and thoſe of the Spaniards, it is worth obſerving, that Omiah did not think there was much difference. He only ſaid, that they ſeemed not ſo friendly as the Engliſh; and that, in their perſons, they approached thoſe of his countrymen."

We ſhall now, as propoſed, proceed to the relation of a journey up the Pike of Teneriffe, undertaken and performed by Mr. Glaſs, author of that valuable work, entitled, the Hiſtory of the Canary Iſlands. This gentleman begins his narrative with informing us, that, "Early in the month of September 1761, at about four in the afternoon, he ſet out on horſeback, in company with the maſter of a ſhip to viſit the Pike. They had with them a ſervant, a muleteer, and a guide; and, after aſcending above ſix miles, arrived towards ſun-ſet at the moſt diſtant habitation from the ſea, which is in a hollow: here finding an aqueduct of open troughs that convey water down from the head of the hollow, their ſervants watered the cattle, and filled ſome ſmall barrels to ſerve them in their expedition.

"The gentlemen here alighted, and walking into the hollow, found it very pleaſant, as it abounded with many trees of an odoriferous ſmell; and ſome fields of maiz or Indian corn are near the houſes. On their mounting again, they travelled for ſome time up a ſteep road, and reached the woods and clouds a little before night. They could not miſs their way, the road being bounded on both ſides with trees or buſhes, which were chiefly laurel, ſavine, and bruſhwood. Having travelled about a mile, they came to the upper edge of the wood, above the clouds, where alighting, they made a fire, and ſupped; ſoon after which, they laid down to ſleep under the buſhes. About half an hour after ten, the moon ſhining bright, they mounted again, travelled ſlowly two hours through an exceeding bad road, reſembling the ruins of ſtone buildings ſcattered over the fields.

"After they had paſſed over this road, they came upon ſmall light pumice-ſtone, like ſhingles; upon which they rode at a pretty good pace for near an hour. The air now began to be pretty ſharp and piercing, and the wind blew ſtrong from the ſouth-weſtward. Their guide adviſed them to alight here, as the place was convenient, and reſt till about four or five in the morning. To this they agreed, and entered the cave, the mouth of which was built up to about a man's height, to exclude the cold. Near this place were ſome dry withered retamas, the only ſhrub or vegetable near the cave, and with theſe they made a great fire to warm themſelves, and then fell aſleep; but were ſoon awaked by an itching occaſioned by a cold thin air, want of reſt, and ſleeping in their cloaths. They here paſſed away their time as well as they could; but while they crept near the fire, one ſide was almoſt ſcorched, and the other was benumbed with cold. At about five in the morning they mounted again, and travelled ſlowly about a mile; for the road was rather too ſteep for travelling quick on horſeback, and their beaſts were now fatigued.

"At laſt they came among ſome great looſe rocks, where was a kind of cottage built of looſe ſtones, called the Engliſh pitching place, probably from ſome of the Engliſh reſting here on their way to viſit the pike; for none take that journey but foreigners and ſome poor people who earn their bread by gathering brimſtone. There they alighted again, the remainder of their way being too ſteep for riding, and left one of the ſervants to look after the horſes, while they proceeded on their journey. They walked hard to get themſelves warm; but were ſoon fatigued by the ſteepneſs of the road, which was looſe and ſandy. On their reaching the top of this hill, they came to a prodigious number of large and looſe ſtones, or rocks, whoſe ſurfaces were flat, and each of them about ten feet every way.

"This road was leſs ſteep than the other; but they were obliged to travel a conſiderable way round, to leap over the rocks, which were not cloſe to each other. Among them is a cavern, in which is a well, or natural reſervoir, into which they deſcended by a ladder placed there by the poor people for that purpoſe. This cavern is very ſpacious, it being almoſt 10 yards wide, and twenty in height; but all the bottom, except juſt at the foot of the ladder, is covered with water, which is about two fathoms deep, and was then frozen towards the inner edges of the cave; but when they attempted to drink of it, its exceſſive coldneſs prevented them.

"After travelling about a quarter or half a mile upon the great ſtones, they reached the bottom of the real pike or ſugar-loaf, which is exceeding ſteep, and the difficulty of aſcending it increaſed, and was rendered more fatiguing by the ground being looſe and giving way under their feet; for though this eminence is not above half a mile in height, they were obliged to ſtop and take breath near thirty times; and when they at laſt reached the top, being quite ſpent with fatigue, they lay about a quarter of an hour to recover their breath, and reſt themſelves.

"In the morning, when they left the Engliſh pitching place, the ſun was juſt emerging from the clouds, which were ſpread under them at a great diſtance below, and appeared like the ocean. Above the clouds, at a vaſt diſtance to the north, they perceived ſomething black, which they conjectured to be the top of the iſland of Madeira, and, taking the bearings of it by a pocket compaſs, found it to be exactly in the direction of that iſland from Teneriffe, but before they reached to the tops of the pike, it diſappeared. They could neither perceive Lancerota nor Fuerteventura from this place, they being not high enough to pierce the clouds; though they could ſee from hence the tops of the iſlands of Grand Canaria, Hiero, Palma, and Gomera, which ſeemed to be quite near.

"After reſting for ſome time, they began to obſerve the top of the pike, which is about 140 yards in length, and 110 in breadth. It is hollow, and ſhaped like an inverted bell. From the edges of this bell, or cauldron, as it is called by the natives, it is about 40 yards to the bottom, and in many parts of this hollow, they obſerved ſmoke and ſteams of ſulphur iſſuing forth in puffs; and the heat of the ground in particular places was ſo great, as to penetrate through the ſoles of their ſhoes to the feet. On obſerving ſome ſpots of earth, or ſoft clay, they tried the heat with their fingers, but could not thruſt them in farther than half an inch; for the deeper they went, the hotter it was. They then took their guide's ſtaff, and thruſt is about three inches deep into a hole or porous place, where the ſmoke ſeemed thickeſt; and having held it there about a minute, drew it out, and found it burnt to a charcoal. They gathered here many pieces of moſt curious and beautiful brimſtone of all colours, particularly an azure blue, violet, ſcarlet, green, and yellow.

“ The clouds beneath them, which are at a great diſtance, made from hence a very extraordinary appearance: they ſeemed like the ocean, only the ſurface was not quite ſo blue and ſmooth, but had the reſemblance of white wool; and where this cloudy ocean, as it may be called, touched the mountain, it ſeemed to foam like billows breaking on the ſhore. When they aſcended through the clouds, it was dark; but when they afterwards mounted again, between ten and eleven o'clock, and the moon ſhone bright, the clouds were then below them, and about a mile diſtant. They then miſtook them for the ocean, and wondered at ſeeing them ſo near; nor did they diſcover their miſtake till the ſun aroſe. When they paſſed through the clouds, in deſcending from the pike, they appeared as a thick fog or miſt, reſembling thoſe frequently ſeen in England; with which all the trees of the wood and their cloaths were wetted.

“ The air was thin, cold, and piercing on the top of the pike, like the ſouth-eaſterly winds felt in the great deſert of Africa. In aſcending the ſugar loaf, which is very ſteep, their hearts panted and beat violently, and, as hath been already obſerved, they were obliged to reſt above thirty times to take breath; and this was probably as much owing to the thinneſs of the air cauſing a difficulty of reſpiration, as to the uncommon fatigue they ſuffered in climbing the hill. Their guide, who was a thin, active old man, was far from being affected in the ſame manner; but climbed up with eaſe like a goat; for he was one of the poor men who earn their living by gathering brimſtone in the cauldron and other volcanoes, the pike itſelf being no other, though it has burned for ſome years; for the ſugar-loaf is entirely compoſed of earth mixed with aſhes and calcined ſtones, thrown out of the bowels of the earth, and the great ſquare ſtones before deſcribed, were probably thrown out of the cauldron, or hollow of the pike, when an eruption happened.

“ After they had ſurveyed every thing worthy of notice, they deſcended to the place where their horſes were left, which took them up only half an hour, though they were about two hours and a half in aſcending. It was then about ten in the morning, and the ſun ſhone ſo exceedingly hot, as to oblige them to ſhelter in the cottage, and being extremely fatigued, they lay down in order to ſleep; but were prevented by the cold, which was ſo intenſe in the ſhade, that they were obliged to kindle a fire to keep themſelves warm. After this, when they had taken ſome repoſe, they mounted their horſes about noon, and deſcending by the ſame way they went up, came to ſome pines, ſituated about two miles above the clouds. Between theſe pines and the pike, no herb, ſhrub, tree, or graſs can grow, except the before-mentioned ratamas.

“ At about five in the evening they arrived at Orotava, not having alighted by the way to ſtop, only ſometimes to walk where the road was too ſteep for riding. The whole diſtance they rode in the five hours ſpent in coming down from the Engliſh pitching-place to Orotava, they computed to be about 15 Engliſh miles, travelling at the rate of three miles an hour.

“ Our author ſuppoſes, the perpendicular height of the Engliſh pitching place to be about four Engliſh miles, and adding to that a mile of a perpendicular height from thence to the pike, obſerves, that the whole will be about five Engliſh miles, and that he is very certain he cannot be miſtaken in this calculation above a mile either way.” But Mr. Glaſs may here probably be miſtaken, owing perhaps to his not uſing any inſtruments proper for aſcertaining the exact altitude of this mountain, which is much higher than either the Alps, or the higheſt part of the Andes, according to this calculation. Dr. T. Heberden makes its height, above the level of the ſea, to be 15,396 Engliſh feet; and ſays, that this was confirmed by two ſubſequent obſervations by himſelf, and another made by Mr. Croſſe, the Conſul. The Chevalier de Borda, commander of the French frigate, now lying with the Reſolution in the road of Santa Cruz, was employed, in conjunction with Mr. Varila, a Spaniſh gentleman, in making aſtronomical obſervations for aſcertaining the going of two time-keepers which they had on board their ſhip. The chevalier meaſured the height of the pike, but makes it to be only 1931 French toiſes, or 12,340 Engliſh feet. If our readers are deſirous of more particulars reſpecting the above ſubjects, they may find them in Sprat's Hiſtory of the Royal Society, p. 200, &c. Hiſtory of the Canary iſlands by Glaſs, p. 252, &c. Philoſophical Tranſactions, vol. XLVII. p. 353, &c. and Dr. Forſter's Obſervations during a voyage round the world, p. 32.—Proceed we now to the hiſtory of our voyage.

On Sunday, the 4th of Auguſt, having taken on board our water, and other neceſſary articles, we weighed anchor, and ſailed from the iſland of Teneriffe with a fine freſh gale at N. E. between this day and the tenth, our experienced Commander diſcovered his uſual attention and parental care, reſpecting both the diſcipline, and health of our company; for in this interval the mariners were exerciſed at the great guns and ſmall arms, and the Reſolution was twice ſmoaked and cleanſed between decks. On Saturday the 10th, at nine o'clock P. M. we deſcried the iſland of Bonaviſta, bearing S. diſtant one league; at which time we thought ourſelves to have been much farther off. We too ſoon were made ſenſible of our miſtake; for after hauling to the eaſtward, to clear the ſunken rocks that lie near the S. E. point of the iſland, we found ourſelves cloſe upon them, and barely weathered the breakers. Our ſituation was, for a few minutes, ſo very critical and alarming, that captain Cook would not permit us to ſound, as by ſo doing we might have increaſed the danger, without any poſſibility of leſſening it. Having cleared the rocks, we held on a S. S. W. courſe till day break on the 11th, when we ſteered between Bonaviſta and Mayo, to the weſtward, with the view of looking into Port Praya for the Diſcovery, as captain Clerke had been informed of our intention to touch at that port, and we knew not how ſoon he might follow us. At one o'clock P. M. we came in ſight of the rocks S. W. of Bonaviſta, bearing S. E. diſtant three leagues; and on Monday the 12th, at ſix o'clock, A. M. the iſle of Mayo bore S. S. E. diſtant five leagues. We now ſounded, and found ground at 60 fathoms. At eleven one extreme of Mayo bore E. by N. and the other S. E. by S. In this ſtation two globular hills appeared near its N. E. part; farther on, a large and higher hill; and about two thirds of its length, a ſingle one that is peaked. We were now at the diſtance of three or four miles from this iſland, at which we ſaw not the leaſt appearance of vegetation; nor did any other object preſent itſelf to our view, but that lifeleſs brown, ſo common in unwooded countries under the torrid zone. During our continuance among the Cape de Verde iſlands, we had gentle breezes of wind, varying from the S. E. to E. and ſome calms: from whence we may conclude, that they are either extenſive enough to break the current of the trade wind, or that they are ſituated juſt beyond its verge, in that ſpace where the variable winds, found on approaching the line, begin. At this time we had ſultry and hot weather, attended with rain, and, for the moſt part the ſky was tinged with a thick whiteneſs, without any tranſparency, a kind of medium between fogs and clouds. Indeed, the tropical climates ſeldom have that bright, clear atmoſphere, obſervable where variable winds blow; nor does the ſun ſhine with its full ſplendor; if it did, perhaps its rays, being uninterrupted, would occaſion an inſupportable heat throughout the day; as to the nights, they are often remarkably clear and ſerene.

On Tueſday the 13th, at nine o'clock, A. M. we were abreaſt of Port Praya, in the iſland of St. Jago, of which in former voyages a very particular and full deſcription has been given. At this place two Dutch Eaſt India ſhips, and a ſmall brigantine were at anchor; but the Diſcovery not being there, and having expended but a ſmall quantity of our water, in our run from Teneriffe, we did not go in, but ſtood to the ſouthward. We had loſt the N. E. trade wind, the day after we left the Cape de Verd iſlands; and on Friday the 30th, fell in with that which blows from the S. E. being then in 2 deg. N. latitude, and in 25 deg. W. longitude. The wind, during this ſpace of time, was moſtly in the S. W. quarter. It generally blew a gentle breeze, but ſometimes freſh, and in ſqualls. We had few calms, and thoſe of ſhort continuance. Between the latitude of 12 deg. and 7 deg. N. the weather was very gloomy, and frequently rainy; which laſt circumſtance was an advantage to us, as we were enabled to ſave as much water as filled moſt of our empty caſks. Every bad conſequence is to be apprehended from theſe rains, and the cloſe ſultry weather with which they are accompanied. Commanders of ſhips ought therefore carefully to purify the air between decks with fires and ſmoke, and to oblige the people to change their cloaths at every opportunity; which preſervatives of health, with others mentioned in the two former voyages, were conſtantly uſed by captain Cook. On the 14th inſtant a fire was made in the well, to air the ſhip below: on the 15th, the ſpare ſails were aired upon deck, and a fire made to air the ſail room: on the 17th cleaned and ſmoked between decks, and aired the bread room with fires: on the 21ſt cleaned and ſmoked between decks: and on the 22nd, the mens bedding was ſpread on the deck to air. We enjoyed the ſalutary effects of theſe precautions in a high degree, having fewer ſick than on either of captain Cook's preceding voyages. Our ſhip, however, was very leaky in all her upper works. The ſultry weather had opened her ſeams, that had been badly caulked, ſo wide, that the rain water paſſed through as it fell. By the water that came in at the ſides of the Reſolution, the officers in the gun-room were driven from their cabins, and ſcarcely a man could lie dry in his bed. The ſails in the ſail-room alſo got wet, ſo that, when the weather became favourable to dry them, we found many much damaged, and a great expence of canvas and of time became neceſſary to make them ſerviceable. As ſoon as we had ſettled weather, the caulkers were employed to repair theſe defects; but the Captain would not truſt them over the ſides of the ſhip while we were at ſea; being always more attentive to the preſervation of the health and lives of his company, than to temporary inconveniences and hardſhips.

On Sunday, the 1ſt of September, in longitude 27 deg. 38 min. W. with a fine gale at S. E. by S. we croſſed the equator; and the afternoon was ſpent in performing the ridiculous ceremony of ducking thoſe who had not paſſed the line before; a cuſtom we have elſewhere deſcribed, and therefore think it ſufficient juſt to mention it in this place. On the 8th we obſerved in latitude 8 deg. 57 min. S. a little to the ſouthward of Cape Auguſtine, on the coaſt of Brazil; and concluded, that we could not now be farther off from the continent than thirty leagues at moſt, and, perhaps not much leſs, as we had neither ſoundings, nor any other ſigns of land. We held on our courſe without any remarkable occurrence, till the 6th of October, being Sunday, when, in latitude 35 deg. 15 min. S. and in 7 deg. 45 min. W. longitude, we met with light airs and calms, alternately, for three ſucceſſive days. We had a few days before been viſited by albatroſſes, pintadoes, and other petrels, and we now ſaw three penguins: in conſequence of which we ſounded, but found no ground with a line of 150 fathoms. We ſhot a few birds, one of which was a black petrel, about the ſize of, and nearly reſembling, a crow. On the 8th, in the evening, a bird, which the ſailors call a noddy, ſettled on our rigging, and was taken. It was larger than a common Engliſh blackbird, and nearly of the ſame colour, except the upper part of the head, which is white. It is webfooted, has black legs and a long black bill. It is ſaid theſe birds never venture far from land, yet in our preſent latitude, we knew of none nearer than Gough's or Richmond iſland, which could not be at a leſs diſtance from us than one hundred leagues: but as the Atlantic ocean, ſouthward of this latitude, has been but little frequented, there may poſſibly be more iſlands than we know of. It is here to be obſerved, that in the night, we frequently ſaw the appearance of thoſe marine luminous animals, mentioned and deſcribed in captain Cook's firſt voyage. Many of them were larger than any we had before taken up, and ſo numerous ſometimes, that hundreds were viſible at the ſame moment. The calm weather was ſucceeded by a freſh gale from the N. W. which continued two days, after which we had variable light airs for about 24 hours, when the N. W. wind returned with renewed ſtrength.

On Thurſday the 17th, we came in ſight of the Cape of Good Hope; and on the 18th anchored in Table Bay, in four fathoms water. After having received the cuſtomary viſit from the maſter attendant and the ſurgeon, captain Cook ſent an officer to Baron Plettenberg, the governor, and, on his return, we ſaluted the garriſon with 13 guns, who paid us an equal complement. In the bay we found two French Eaſt India ſhips, the one outward, and the other homeward bound. One of the latter, belonging to the ſame nation, had parted from her cable, and been ſtranded about three days before our arrival. The crew were ſaved, but the ſhip and cargo were plundered and ſtolen by the inhabitants; in extenuation of which diſgraceful act, the Dutch endeavoured to lay the whole blame on the French Captain, for not applying in time for a guard, a plea which cannot exculpate them, when conſidered as a civilized ſtate. The boat was now ordered out, and captain Cook, attended by ſome of his officers, went on ſhore. They waited on the Governor, the Lieutenant-governor or the Fiſcal, and the commander of the troops, by whom they were received with the greateſt civility. The Governor, in particular, promiſed us in the moſt polite terms every aſſiſtance that the place afforded. Before captain Cook returned on board, he ordered bread, meat, vegetables, &c. to be provided every day for the ſhip's company. By this time our numerous ſubſcribers and readers may be anxious to know what is become of our conſort, the Diſcovery, whom we left at anchor, on the 12th of July, in Plymouth Sound, waiting for the arrival of her commander, captain Clerke. We ſhall therefore, for the information of our friends, make a trip to Plymouth, and attend the Diſcovery in her run to Table Bay. By the latter end of July, this ſhip being in readineſs, and every thing neceſſary got on board, captain Clerke gave orders to prepare for ſailing; in conſequence of which,

On the 1ſt of Auguſt we weighed, with all ſails ſet, to join the Reſolution. While our ſhip was repairing, it was obſervable, that thoſe who had never been employed on diſcovery before, were more impatient to depart, than thoſe who had already experienced the ſeverities of a ſouthern navigation near and within the polar circle. It was diverting enough to liſten to the ludicrous remarks of theſe laſt, on their freſh water brethren as they called them, whom they ventured to foretel, would, like the Jews in the wilderneſs, be the firſt to murmur and cry out for the leeks and the onions of Egypt; intimating thereby, that when theſe raw ſailors came among the iſlands of ice in the frozen regions, to feel the effects of ſcanty fare and hard duty, they would then be the firſt to repent their impetuoſity, and to ſigh for the beef and the beer of the land they were now ſo deſirous to leave.

We proceeded with a briſk gale till the 7th; when in ſight of Cape Finiſterre the clouds began to darken, and the ocean to ſwell, and to threaten by every appearance an approaching tempeſt. Several ſhips were then in ſight, and we could clearly diſcern that they were preparing as well as ourſelves, to meet the ſtorm. For twenty-four hours it blowed and rained inceſſantly; but on the 9th a calm ſucceeded, which however was not of long continuance; for in the evening of the ſame day it thundered, lightened, and the rain poured down in torrents. The drops were ſuch as no experienced ſeaman on board had ſeen the like. To prevent the effects of the lightning, it was thought neceſſary to let fall the chain from the maſt-head: a precaution which captain Clerke never omitted when there was danger from the accumulation of electrical matter in the atmoſphere to be apprehended. On the 10th, ſeeing a ſhip to windward bearing down very faſt, and ſuſpecting her to be an American privateer, all hands were ordered to quarters, to be in readineſs to engage. She proved to be a Liſbon trader, who by the violence of the gale the day before, had been driven many leagues to the weſtward of her courſe, and was in ſome diſtreſs. We ſpared her thoſe things of which ſhe ſtood moſt in need, and purſued our voyage. Nothing remarkable happened till the 18th, when the ſhip's company were put to ſhort allowance of water, and the ſtill was worked to procure a ſupply of freſh from the ſea. This was occaſionally uſed, and anſwered very well for ſome particular purpoſes, but was ill reliſhed by the ſailors for boiling their meat. Theſe precautions were taken leſt the Reſolution ſhould have left St. Jago, and the Diſcovery might be obliged to proceed to the Cape, without being able to procure a freſh ſupply. On the 19th we croſſed the Tropic of Cancer for the firſt time, and, on the 28th, came in ſight of St. Jago, bearing N. W. diſtant ſeven leagues. We bore away inſtantly for the bay, and at eight in the morning made land. An officer was ſent aſhore with all ſpeed to make enquiry, who brought word back, that the Reſolution had touched at that port; but had haſtened her departure, as the rainy ſeaſon was approaching, and it was unſafe to remain there long during its continuance. The ſame reaſons that had induced the Reſolution to proceed were doubly preſſing upon us. It was now the time when the rainy ſeaſon prevails, though we had as yet obſerved none of its approaches. It is generally preceded by a ſtrong ſoutherly wind, and a great ſwell. The ſea comes rolling on, and daſhing furiouſly againſt the rocky ſhore, cauſes a frightful ſurf. Sometimes tornadoes or furious whirlwinds ariſe near the coaſt, and greatly increaſe the danger. For this reaſon, from the middle of Auguſt till the month of November, Port-Praya is but little frequented. The officer was no ſooner returned, and the boat hoiſted on board, than we made ſail with a gentle breeze.

On the 1ſt of September a dreadful tempeſt aroſe, by which we every moment expected to be ſwallowed up. The thunder and lightning were not more alarming than the ſheets of rain, which fell ſo heavy as to endanger the ſinking of the ſhip, and, at the ſame time, though in the open day, involved us in a cloud of darkneſs, than which nothing could be more horrible; providentially the continuance of this tempeſt was but ſhort: it began about nine in the morning, and before noon the whole atmoſphere was perfectly ſerene, and not a ſpot nor a ſhade to be ſeen to mark the place of this elemental conflict. However in this ſhort period, our ſufferings nearly kept pace with our apprehenſions, having our main-top-gallant yard carried away in the ſlings, and the ſail frittered in a thouſand pieces; the jib and middle ſtay-ſails torn clear off, and the ſhip ſo ſtrained as to make all hands to the pump neceſſary. The afternoon was employed in repairing the damages, and diſcharging the water which had been ſhipped as well from the heavens, as from the ſea. On the three days following, the weather continued ſqually with rain; but as we approached the line, a calm ſucceeded, and the ſky became ſerene; but with a hazineſs and languor, as if the current of air, like water upon an equipoiſe, moved only by its own impulſe. Nothing could be more tedious and diſagreeable than this calm; but fortunately it was of ſhort continuance. September the 5th, at eight in the morning ſaw a ſail, the ſecond we had ſeen ſince we paſſed Cape Finiſterre on the coaſt of Spain. We were at this time intent on fiſhing; and having hooked a ſhark of an enormous ſize, both officers and men were engaged in getting him on board. When he was cut up, there were ſix young ones found in his belly. Theſe were divided among the officers, and one was dreſſed for the great cabin. The old one was eaten by the ſhip's crew, to whom freſh meat of any kind was now become a dainty. The weather continuing fine, the Captain ordered the great guns and ſmall arms to be exerciſed, the ſhip to be ſmoaked, and the bedding to be aired. Theſe laſt articles, it may be once for all neceſſary to obſerve, were never omitted during the whole courſe of the voyage, when the weather would permit; and they are more particularly neceſſary in croſſing the line, as it has been obſerved, that the whole woodwork between decks, in this low latitude, is more apt to become mouldy, and the iron to ruſt, than in higher latitudes, probably owing to that ſluggiſhneſs in the air that has been already noticed, and for which nature ſeems to have provided a remedy by the frequent tempeſts and tornadoes, to which this part of the ocean is remarkably ſubject.

On the 17th we croſſed the equator. The weather being ſqually, the uſual ceremony of keel-hawling the ſailors who had never croſſed it before, was omitted. On the 20th the weather became moderate, when, upon examination, the ſtarboard main-truſſel-tree was found to be ſprung. This day George Harriſon, corporal of the marines, ſitting careleſsly on the bowſprit, and diverting himſelf with the ſporting of the fiſhes, fell overboard. He was ſeen to fall, and the ſhip was inſtantly hove to, and the boats got out with all poſſible expedition, but he was never again ſeen to riſe. His Dutch cap was taken up at the ſhip's ſtern; and as it was known that he could ſwim as well as any man on board, the boats made a large circuit round the ſhip, in hopes to recover him, but in vain. It is remarkable, that in Captain Cook's former voyage, Henry Smock, one of the carpenter's mates, ſitting on the ſkuttle, fell overboard about the ſame place, and ſhared the ſame fate. Both theſe were young men, ſober, and of good characters. Their loſs was regretted by the officers, and particularly ſo by their comrades among the crew. It is more than probable that both were inſtantly ſwallowed up by the ſharks that conſtantly attend the ſhips.

On the 1ſt of Auguſt we caught a large ſhark, 10 feet long, with ſeveral young dolphins in her belly. Part of the entrails, when cleanſed and dreſſed, were eaten in the great cabbin, and the body given to thoſe by whom it was caught. When fryed, it is tolerable meat; but the fat is very loathſome. On the 15th, a ſtorm aroſe, accompanied with thunder and rain. As it was not ſo violent as thoſe we had before experienced, it proved more acceptable than alarming, as it ſupplied the ſhip's company with a good quantity of freſh water, which we caught in blankets; or by other contrivances, every one as he could. What was ſaved by means of the awnings was ſet apart for the officers uſe. On the 20th it blew a hurricane, which obliged us to hand the ſails, and to lay to under bare poles. On the 25th the ſtorm abated, and the ſky became clear. This day we obſerved a ſhip to the ſouthward, which, by her courſe, we took for the Reſolution: we crouded ſail, ſtood after, and ſoon came up with her. She proved to be a Dutch advice boat, bound to the cape. On the 28th, our people began to look for land; and the appearance of ſome birds which are known never to go from ſhore, confirmed them that the extremity of the African coaſt was at no great diſtance. Our aſtronomer, however, was of a different opinion, and the event proved that he was right.

On the firſt of October, when we had been at ſea juſt two months, without once ſetting foot on land, thoſe who were unaccuſtomed to long voyages, began to put on a very different aſpect to that they wore at firſt ſetting out. They were, indeed, ſomewhat comforted by the chearfulneſs and vivacity which they obſerved

ſerved to prevail in almoſt every countenance except their own; from whence they concluded, that many days could not elapſe before the painful ſenſations of a ſolitary ſea life would be recompenſed by the pleaſureable enjoyments they would find when they came on ſhore. On the 3d, we obſerved a great variety of fiſh and fowl to accompany the ſhip, ſome of which we had not noticed before; and we could not but remark the difference in this reſpect, between the weſtern coaſts of the old continent, and the weſtern coaſts of the new, in the ſame latitudes. No ſooner had we croſſed the Tropic of Cancer, than we were amuſed by the ſporting of the fiſhes, or more properly, perhaps, by their unremitting labour in purſuit of their daily food. Flying fiſh are generally the firſt to attract the notice of thoſe who never have been in theſe ſeas before, and it is curious to attend to their numberleſs windings and ſhiftings to elude the attacks of the dolphins and bonitos, their declared enemies. Whatever may be the deſign of providence in the formation of theſe creatures, one cannot help conſidering their exiſtence as a ſtate of perpetual puniſhment. While they remain in the water their enemies are near, and though nature has given them the power to quit that element, and to fly for refuge to the open air, yet other perſecutors are there alſo in wait for them, no leſs cruel than thoſe they have eſcaped. Boobies, man of war birds, and other ſea-fowls, are continually watching to make the flying-fiſh their prey, while the ravenous ſharks are no leſs vigilant in making repriſals on the dolphins and bonitos. Thus a paſſage through the tropical latitudes in this ſea, exhibits one continued ſcene of warfare; while in the other ſea, all is peace and uniform tranquility. Theſe reflections occur naturally when the mind, unoccupied with variety, is diſpoſed for contemplation. On the 4th of November we caught a ſhark, leaving one tyrant the leſs to vex the ocean. On the 7th, at ſix in the morning, the man at the maſt head called out land; and at eight we could all ſee it involved in a miſty cloud. It proved to be Table Land, bearing S. W. at the diſtance of about 10 leagues, which induced us to change our courſe from E. S. E. to S. S. W. On the 10th we entered Table Bay, and on the 11th came to an anchor in ſix fathoms water, where, to our great joy, we found the Reſolution, on board of which our journaliſt reimbarked, and thus continues the hiſtory of her voyage.

On Tueſday the 22d of October, we fixed our tents and obſervatory; and on the 23d began to obſerve equal altitudes of the ſun, in order to diſcover whether the watch had altered its rate. The caulkers were now ſet to work, and Captain Cook had before concerted meaſures with Meſſrs. Brandt and Chiron, for ſupplying us with ſuch proviſions as were wanted: and as the ſeveral articles for the Reſolution were got ready, they were immediately conveyed aboard. The homeward bound French ſhip ſailed for Europe on Saturday the 26th, and by her we ſent letters to England. On the day following the Hampſhire Eaſt Indiaman, from Bencoolen, anchored in the bay, and ſaluted us with 13 guns, and we returned eleven. On the 31ſt, it blew exceſſively hard at S. E. and continued for three days; whereby all communication between the ſhip and the ſhore was cut off. The Reſolution was the only ſhip in the bay that rode out the gale, without dragging her anchors. The effects were as ſenſibly felt on ſhore; where the tents and obſervatory were deſtroyed, and the aſtronomical quadrant narrowly eſcaped irreparable damage.

On Sunday the 3d of November the ſtorm ceaſed; and on the 6th, the Hampſhire ſailed for England, in which Captain Cook ſent home an invalid. Captain Trimble would have received two or three more of our crew, who were troubled with different complaints, but, at this time, we entertained ſome hopes of their health being re-eſtabliſhed. Monday the 11th, the Diſcovery having anchored ſaluted the garriſon with 13 guns, and were anſwered by the ſame number; after which Captain Cook, with his principal officers and gentlemen went on board that ſhip, to welcome Captain Clerke on his arrival. It being intimated that the Diſcovery wanted caulking, Captain Cook ordered all our workmen on board her, and lent every other neceſſary aſſiſtance to expedite a ſupply of water and proviſions. The bakers had omitted to bake the bread that had been ordered for the Diſcovery, pretending they wanted flour; but the truth was, they did not chuſe to begin till they ſaw her moored in the bay. On Captain Clerke's landing this day, he was met by the officers of the garriſon, and the gentlemen belonging to the Eaſt India Company, who received him very politely, and gave him a general invitation to ſhare with them the entertainments of the place. The ſubordinate officers were met by another claſs of inferior gentry, belonging to the ſame company: for almoſt all the officers in the pay of the Dutch Company entertain ſtrangers, and board them on moderate terms, from two ſhillings a day to five. Having by the governor's permiſſion got our cattle on ſhore, on the night of the 13th, ſome dogs broke into the pens, and, forcing the ſheep out, killed four, and diſperſed the reſt. The number of our ſheep were ſixteen, which were penned up, every night, cloſe to our tents; but a bull and two cows, with their calves, were ſent to graze along with ſome other cattle.

On the 14th, we recovered ſix of our ſheep, but among thoſe we miſſed were two rams, and two of the fineſt ewes in the whole flock. Though the Dutch frequently boaſt of the police at the Cape, yet the Captain's ſheep evaded all the vigilance of the Fiſcal's officers and people. At length, after much trouble and expence, by employing ſome of the meaneſt ſcoundrels of the place, we recovered all but the two ewes. One of the rams, however, was ſo miſerably torn by the dogs, that we thought he could not live. Mr. Hemmy, the lieutenant governor, very obligingly offered to make up this loſs, by giving Captain Cook a Spaniſh ram, out of ſome he had ſent for from Liſbon; but the captain declined the offer, thinking it would equally anſwer his purpoſe to take with him ſome of the cape rams: in this, however, the captain was miſtaken. Mr. Hemmy had endeavoured to introduce European ſheep at the Cape; but all his attempts were fruſtrated by the obſtinacy of the country people, who highly eſteem their own breed, on account of their large tails, the fat of which produces more money than the whole carcaſs beſides. Indeed, the moſt remarkable thing in the Cape ſheep is the length and thickneſs of their tails, which weigh from 10 to 15 pounds. The fat is not ſo tallowiſh as that of European mutton, and they uſe it inſtead of butter. While we continued at the cape, our commander had lain in a ſufficient ſtore of beef, mutton, poultry, and greens, for preſent uſe, and had contracted for a good quantity of ſalted beef, to ſave what we had brought from England, as the latter will keep better than that which is ſalted at the Cape. What remained to be done, was chiefly to purchaſe live cattle for preſents to the chiefs in the South Sea: likewiſe live ſtock for the ſhip's uſe; theſe are always the laſt things provided, becauſe it is found neceſſary to ſhorten, as much as poſſible, their continuance on board. Among the cattle purchaſed, were four horſes and mares of a delicate breed, for Omiah; ſeveral bulls and cows of the buffaloe kind, as more ſuitable to the tropical climates, than any brought from Europe; likewiſe ſome African rams and ewes; dogs of the ſhe kind, ſome with and ſome without puppies; cats we had plenty on board, and goats Captain Cook had purchaſed at St. Jago. Stored with theſe, the Reſolution reſembled the Ark, in which pairs of all the animals that were to ſtock the earth were collected; and with their provender, they occupied no ſmall part of the ſhip's ſtowage. While the riggers, ſail-makers, caulkers, ſmiths, coopers, and ſtore-keepers, were buſily employed in their ſeveral ſtations, the aſtronomers were not idle, nor the ſurgeons: the former were employed in making obſervations; the latter in attending the ſick, of whom there were not many, and thoſe, on being carried to the tents, very ſoon recovered. The dry ſoft air of the African mountains proved a reſtorative ſuperior to all the phyſic in the world. Of the efficacy of this ſalubrious air, the Dutch Eaſt Indiamen have experience every voyage, both in going to and returning from their ſettlements in India. During the time the Reſolution and Diſcovery lay in the bay, two of their ſhips arrived full of ſick ſoldiers, who had been inliſted in Holland, and who were in a miſerable condition both as to health and want of common neceſſaries. They had been near five months on their voyage from Amſterdam, and had loſt on the paſſage more men than the complements of both our ſhips amounted to, owing to naſtineſs and cloſe confinement. It is remarkable, obſerved one of our gentlemen, that no ſhips have the appearance of being kept neater than thoſe of the Dutch; nor any more ſlovenly where they are not expoſed to open view.

Nor muſt we omit here the account in the journal of Mr. Anderſon, who, while the two ſhips were repairing for the proſecution of their voyage, made an excurſion, to take a ſurvey of the neighbouring country. Mr. Anderſon, ſurgeon, relates their proceedings, in ſubſtance, as follows:

In the forenoon of Saturday the 16th of November, Mr. Anderſon, and five others, ſet out in a waggon, to take a view of the country. They croſſed a large plain to the eaſtward of the town, which is entirely a white ſand, reſembling that which is commonly found on beaches. At five in the afternoon they paſſed a large farm-houſe, ſome corn-fields, and vineyards, ſituated beyond the plain, near the foot of ſome low hills, where the ſoil appeared worth cultivating. At ſeven they arrived at Stellenboſh, a colony, in point of importance, next to that of the cape. The village ſtands at the foot of the range of lofty mountains, above 20 miles to the eaſtward of Cape Town, and conſiſts of about 30 houſes, which are neat and clean: a rivulet, and the ſhelter of ſome large oaks, planted at its firſt ſettling, form a rural proſpect in this deſart country. There are ſome thriving vineyards and orchards about the place, which ſeem to indicate an excellent ſoil, though perhaps much may be owing to the uncommon ſerenity of the air. At this ſeaſon of the year, Mr. Anderſon could find but few plants in flower, and inſects were very ſcarce. Having examined the ſoil, he found it to conſiſt of yellowiſh clay, mixed with a good deal of ſand. The ſides of the low brown hills, ſeemed to be conſtituted of a kind of ſtone marle. Mr. Anderſon and his companions left Stellenboſh the next morning, and ſoon arrived at the houſe they had paſſed on Saturday; Mr. Cloeder, the owner of which, having ſent them an invitation to viſit him. This gentlemen received them with politeneſs, and entertained them with hoſpitality, in a manner very different from what was expected. They were received with a band of muſic, which continued playing while they were at dinner; a compliment, conſidering the ſituation of the place, we thought elegant. In the afternoon they croſſed the country, and paſſed ſome large plantations, one of which was laid out in a taſte different from thoſe they had ſeen. In the evening they arrived at a farm houſe, ſaid to be the firſt in the cultivated tract, called the Pearl. Here they had a view of Drakenſtein, the third colony of this country, which contains ſeveral little farms or plantations. Inſects and plants were as ſcarce here as at Stellenboſh, but there was a greater plenty of ſhrubs, or ſmall trees, naturally produced, than they had before ſeen in the country. On Tueſday the 19th, in the afternoon, they went to ſee a remarkable large ſtone, called by the inhabitants, the Tower of Babylon, or the Pearl Diamond. In the Philoſophical Tranſactions is a letter from Mr. Anderſon to Sir John Pringle deſcribing this ſtone. The account ſent home from the cape and read before the Royal Society is much the ſame with that here publiſhed, but rather fuller. In particular, he tells Sir John, that he went to ſee it at Mr. Maſſon's deſire, who, probably, had not had an opportunity of ſufficiently examining it himſelf. With his letter to Sir John Pringle, Mr. Anderſon alſo ſent home a ſpecimen of the rock; it was examined by Sir William Hamilton, whoſe opinion is, that this ſingular, immenſe fragment of granite, moſt probably has been raiſed by a volcanic exploſion, or ſome ſuch cauſe. This remarkable ſtone, to uſe Mr. Anderſon's own words, in the papers now before us, "lies, or ſtands, upon the top of ſome low hills, at the foot of which our farm houſes were ſituated; and though the road to it is neither very ſteep nor rugged, we were above an hour and a half in walking to it. It is of an oblong ſhape, rounded on the top, and lies nearly N. and S. The E. and W. ſides are ſteep, and almoſt perpendicular. The ſouth end is likewiſe ſteep, and its greateſt height is there; from whence it declines gently to the North part, by which we aſcended to its top, and had a very extenſive proſpect of the whole country. Its circumference, I think, muſt be at leaſt half a mile; as it took us above half an hour to walk round it, including every allowance for the bad road, and ſtopping a little. At its higheſt part, which is the ſouth end, comparing it with a known object, it ſeems to equal the dome of St. Paul's Church. It is one uninterrupted maſs of ſtone, if we except ſome fiſſures, or rather impreſſions, not more than three or four feet deep, and a vein which runs acroſs near its north end. It is of that ſort of ſtone called *Saxum conglutinatum*, and conſiſts chiefly of pieces of coarſe quartz and glimmer, held together by a clayey cement. But the vein which croſſes it, though of the ſame materials, is much compacter. This vein is not above a foot broad or thick; and its ſurface is cut into little ſquares or oblongs, diſpoſed obliquely, which makes it look like the remains of ſome artificial work. But I could not obſerve whether it penetrated far into the large rock, or was only ſuperficial. In deſcending we found at its foot, a very rich black mould: and on the ſides of the hills ſome trees of a conſiderable ſize, natives of the place, which are a ſpecies of the olea."—We cannot help thinking, it is ſtrange, that neither Kolben nor de la Caille ſhould have thought the Tower of Babylon worthy of a particular deſcription. The former only mentions it as a high mountain: the latter contents himſelf with telling us, that it is a low hillock, but the very accurate account given of this remarkable rock by Mr. Anderſon, agrees with Mr. Sonnerat's, who was at the Cape of Good Hope ſo late as 1781. On the 20th in the morning, the gentlemen ſet out from the Pearl, and, going a different road, paſſed through an uncultivated country to the Tyger Hills, where they ſaw ſome good corn fields. About noon they ſtopped in a valley for refreſhment, where they were plagued with a vaſt number of muſquetoes; and, in the evening, arrived at the Cape-Town, tired ſufficiently with the jolting of the waggon.

A very uncommon incident happened during our ſtay at the Cape, which might have embroiled us with the government there, had not the delinquent been found out and puniſhed. It was diſcovered that a number of counterfeit ſchellings, and double keys, had been circulated, and ſeveral of our people had taken them in exchange for gold. Complaint was made by our officers againſt the inhabitants, for taking the advantage of the ignorance of ſtrangers to impoſe counterfeit money upon them, as it was not to be ſuppoſed that they could be judges of the goodneſs of their country coin. On the other hand, the inhabitants retorted the charge, affirming that the bad money proceeded from us. Each were warm in their allegations, and each were poſitive in their opinions. It was not thought poſſible, that any of our people could be prepared to counterfeit Dutch money, and yet there had never been an inſtance of counterfeit money having been ſeen at the Cape before the arrival of our ſhips at that port. Thus the matter reſted for ſome time, till one of the ſhip's cooks, having obtained leave to go aſhore, made himſelf drunk, and offered baſe money in payment for his liquor. Being detained, and notice given to his commanding officer, he cauſed him to be ſearched, when ſeveral other pieces of a baſe coin were found upon him; and on examining his cheſt, the implements were found artfully concealed, by which he had been enabled to carry on the fraud. He was inſtantly delivered up to the Dutch Governor, to be tried by the laws of the country where the offence had been committed; but it not being clear, whether the crime of coining was committed on ſhore, or on board his Britannic Majeſty's ſhip, the Magiſtracy very politely returned him, to be dealt with as the Commander in Chief ſhould think proper; who not being veſted with the power of life and death in civil caſes, ordered him to receive the diſcipline of the ſhip, and to be ſent home in the Hampſhire Indiaman. Thus ended a very critical affair, of which there is, we believe, no inſtance upon record.

On Saturday, the 23d of November, we got the obſervatory clock, &c. on board. From the reſult of ſeveral calculations and obſervations, we had reaſon to conclude, that the watch, or time-piece, had performed well all the way from England. On the 27th orders were given to prepare for ſailing; and, fearing a ſecond diſaſter, we got our ſheep and cattle on board as faſt as poſſible. The caulkers had finiſhed their work on board the Diſcovery, and ſhe had received all her proviſions and water. Of the former, both ſhips had a ſufficient ſupply for two years and upwards. A large quantity of beer was purchaſed for the companies of both ſhips, at the only brewery that is publicly tolerated within the juriſdiction of the town. In ſhort, there is not one neceſſary article relating to the repairing, providing, and victualling of ſhipping, that is not to be purchaſed at the Cape of Good Hope, and that too at very reaſonable prices. The wine at the Cape has been thought dear, becauſe that of the choiceſt vintage is ſcarce, and confined to a very ſmall ſpot. Of the real Conſtantia, which is the wine ſo much prized in Europe, the whole plantation does not perhaps produce more than forty pipes annually, though there may be two or three hundred diſpoſed of under that name. The wine commonly taken on board the ſhipping for the officers, is of a kind not unlike the Madeira, but of an improved flavour, the vines here being highly ſublimed by the warmth of the ſun and the dryneſs of the ſoil. On Thurſday the 28th, the Governor and principal officers belonging to the company were entertained on board the Reſolution, where they came to take leave of our Captains, as we expected to ſail in a few days, all our live ſtock being properly ſecured on board, and the repairs of both ſhips being fully compleated. On the 30th, captain Cook having given to captain Clerke a copy of his inſtructions, and our letters having been diſpatched to our friends, we quitted our moorings, and next day came to an anchor in 18 fathoms water, Penguin iſland bearing N. by W. ſix miles; but before we take our final departure, it may not be amiſs to obſerve, that nothing in nature can make a more horrid appearance than the rugged mountains that form Table Bay. One would almoſt be tempted to think, that the Dutch had made choice of the moſt barren ſpot upon earth, to ſhew what may be effected by ſlow induſtry, and continual perſeverance; for beſides the craggy cliffs that render the open country almoſt inacceſſible, the ſoil is ſo ſandy and poor, that except ſome vineyards, there is ſcarce a ſhrub or a tree to be ſeen within any walking diſtance from the place; inſomuch, that the vaſt profuſion of all ſorts of proviſions, as beef, mutton, poultry, flour, butter, cheeſe, and every other neceſſary, is brought from four to five and twenty days journey from Cape Town, where the Governor and Company have their reſidence. This town, as our readers may recollect, we have fully deſcribed in our hiſtory of former voyages, ſo that little remains to be ſaid, or added in this part of our work. The town is neatly built, and, according to the natural taſte and character of the Dutch, as neatly kept in order. It has the advantage of a ſmall rivulet, by means of which there are canals in all the principal ſtreets, on both ſides of which are planted rows of ſtately oaks. The town is ſituated below the mountains, and when ſeen from their ſummits, appears, with the gardens and plantations that run along the ſhore exceedingly pictureſque: nothing, indeed, can be more romantic, nor any proſpect more pleaſing to the eye. At five in the afternoon of this day, a breeze ſprung up at S. E. with which, as we obſerved above, we weighed, and ſtood out of the bay, having ſaluted the fort with eleven guns, which they returned with an equal number: at nine o'clock it fell calm, and we came again to anchor.

CHAP. II.

Paſſage of the Reſolution and Diſcovery from the Cape of Good Hope, to Chriſtmas Harbour; in which Prince Edward's iſlands are ſeen, and Kerguelen's land viſited—The two ſhips arrive at the above harbour—Deſcription of it, and an account of occurrences there—Depart from thence, and explore the coaſt—Cape Cumberland Bay, Point Pringle, Howe's Foreland, &c. deſcribed—The ſhips in danger from ſhoals—Arrive at Port Palliſer—Cape George deſcribed—Natural hiſtory of the animals, plants, ſoil, &c. of Kerguelen's land—Paſſage from hence to Van Diemen's land, in which the Reſolution is damaged by a ſudden ſquall—They arrive in Adventure Bay—Incidents there—Various interviews with the natives, and a deſcription of their perſons, dreſs, manners, and cuſtoms—Mr. Anderſon's remarks—Courſe of the Reſolution and Diſcovery to Queen Charlotte's Sound in New Zealand, where we anchored in our old ſtation.

DECEMBER the 1ſt, 1776, at three o'clock A. M. we weighed and put to ſea, with a light breeze at S. but did not get clear of the land till the 3d in the morning, when, with a freſh gale at W. N. W. we ſtood to the S. E. At this time we obſerved that luminous appearance about our ſhip, which different navigators have attributed to different cauſes, but which Dr. Franklin has endeavoured to account for on the principles of electricity. About five in the afternoon, we met with one of thoſe terrible guſts ſo frequently experienced by mariners in doubling the Cape of Good Hope, in which our main-ſail was ſplit, but fortunately we received no other damage; the ſouthernmoſt land now bore S. by E. diſtant nine or ten leagues, both ſhips in company. On Wedneſday the 4th in the morning, it blew a hurricane, and ſplit the jib of the Diſcovery; and on the 5th a ſquall of wind carried away our mizen-top-maſt, but having another to replace it, the loſs was not felt. On the 6th, in the evening, being in latitude 39 deg. 14 min. S. and in 23 deg. 56 min. E. longitude, we obſerved ſeveral ſpots of water, of a reddiſh hue. Upon examining ſome of this water that was taken up, we perceived a number of ſmall animals, which the microſcope diſcovered to reſemble cray-fiſh. We continued to the S. E. followed by a mountainous ſea, which occaſioned the ſhip to roll exceedingly, and rendered our cattle troubleſome. Several goats, eſpecially the males, died, and ſome ſheep. On the 8th, the weather that had been cloudy and boiſterous ever ſince leaving the Cape, became clear and moderate. In latitude 39 deg. 57 min. S. Mr. King, our ſecond mate, went on board the Diſcovery to compare the time-pieces, and found no material variation. On the 10th, in latitude 43 deg. 56 min. S. a dreadful ſtorm came on, which obliged both ſhips to lie to that and the following night under bare poles. On the 11th in latitude 46 deg. 18 min. S. it began to ſnow and hail, and the weather became intolerably cold; inſomuch, that from a ſcorching heat which we felt at the Cape, the change was ſo great, that we were obliged to line the hatchways with canvas, to defend the men below as much as poſſible from the effects of the froſt. Here the albatroſſes, and other ſea birds, began to make their appearance; and ſeals, and porpoiſes were ſeen to ſport about the ſhips, which gave us hopes of ſoon approaching land. This we diſcovered, having the appearance of two iſlands, on Thurſday the 12th at noon. That to the S. which is the largeſt, we judged to be about 15 leagues in circuit; and to lie in latitude 46 deg. 53 min. S. longitude 37 deg. 46 min. E. The moſt northerly one is about 9 leagues in circuit; and in latitude 46 deg. 40 min. S. longitude 38 deg. 8 min. E. The diſtance from one to the other is about five leagues. We paſſed through between both iſlands in a very narrow channel; and had piercing cold, attended with ſnow, with which the iſlands were lightly covered; but neither tree nor ſhrub were to be ſeen with our beſt glaſſes, nor any living thing, except penguins and ſhags, the former ſo numerous that the rocks ſeemed covered with them as with a cruſt. The S. E. parts of theſe two iſlands had a much greater quantity of ſnow on them than the reſt, and the ground that was not covered by it, from the various ſhades it exhibited, may be ſuppoſed to be cloathed with moſs, or perhaps, with ſuch a coarſe long graſs as is found in ſome parts of Falkland's iſlands. On the N. ſide of each of the iſlands is a detached rock; that near the S. one is ſhaped like a tower, and ſeemed to be at ſome diſtance from the ſhore. Theſe two iſlands, and four others more to the eaſt, were diſcovered by the two French navigators, Marion du Frezne, and Crozet, in January 1772, on their paſſage from the Cape of Good Hope to the Philippine iſlands. M. de Marion had two ſhips under his command, one the Maſcarin, captain Crozet, the other the Caſtrie, captain du Cleſmure. They proceeded to the ſouthern extremity of New Holland, and from thence to the Bay of Iſlands in New Zealand, where M. de Marion was killed with twenty-eight of his men by the natives. He was obliged, having loſt his maſts, to look out for new ones in this country; but when he had found trees fit for his purpoſe, neceſſity obliged him to cut a road three miles long through the thickets, to bring them to the water ſide. While one party of his people were employed in this ſervice, another party was placed on an iſland in the bay, to cleanſe the caſks, and fill them with water; and a third was occaſionally ſent on ſhore to cut wood for the ſhip's uſe. Thus employed, they had been here 33 days upon the beſt terms with the natives, who freely offered their women to the ſailors, when M. de Marion, not ſuſpecting any treachery, went one morning, as was his cuſtom, to viſit the different parties that were at work, without leaving word that he intended to come back to the ſhips the ſame day. Having called to ſee the waterers, he went next to the Hippah, a fortification of the natives, where he commonly uſed to ſtop in his way to the carpenters, encamped in the woods, with M. Crozet at their head, to direct their operations. Here he was ſuddenly ſet upon; and, with his few attendants, barbarouſly murdered; as were the boats crew that carried him on ſhore. Next morning, the lieutenant who commanded on board, not knowing what had happened, ſent a party to cut wood, and when every one was at work, the natives watched the opportunity to fall upon them likewiſe, and butchered every one, except a ſingle ſailor, who ran for his life, and threw himſelf, wounded, into the ſea. Being ſeen from the ſhips, he was ſpeedily taken on board, and gave the general alarm. Crozet's ſituation in the woods, with his ſmall party, was now become moſt critical. A corporal and four marines were diſpatched immediately to acquaint him of his danger, while ſeveral boats attended to receive his people, at a place where the ſick had been lodged in the tents, for the recovery of their health. He diſpoſed every thing as well as the time would permit, and effected his retreat to the ſea ſide. Here he found multitudes aſſembled, dreſſed in their habits of war, with ſeveral chiefs at their head. Captain Crozet ordered the marines who attended him, to direct their fire, in caſe he found it neceſſary to give the word, againſt ſuch perſons as he ſhould point out. He then commanded the carpenters and convaleſcents to ſtrike the tents, and the ſick to embark firſt, with their whole apparatus, while he with the ſoldiers, ſhould talk with the chief. This man immediately told them, that M. Marion was killed by another chief; upon which captain Crozet ſeized a ſtake, and, forcing it into the ground, made ſigns that he ſhould advance no farther. The countenance, with which this action was attended, ſtartled the ſavage, whoſe timidity being obſerved by Crozet, he inſiſted on his commanding the crowd to ſit down, which was accordingly complied with. He now paraded in front of the enemy till all his people were embarked; his ſoldiers were then ordered to follow, and himſelf was the laſt who entered the boat. They had ſcarce put off when the whole body of natives began their ſong of defiance, and diſcharged their vollies of ſtones: however, a ſhot from the ſhip ſoon diſperſed them, and the company got all ſafe on board. From this time the natives began to be troubleſome, and made ſeveral attempts to attack his people by ſurprize. They formed an attack againſt the watering party in the night, which, but for the vigilance of the guard, would have been fatal to them: after which, they openly attacked the ſhips in more than a hundred large canoes, full of men, who had cauſe ſufficient to repent their daring exploit, having ſeverely felt the deſtructive effect of European arms. At length captain Crozet, finding it impoſſible to ſupply the ſhips with maſts, unleſs he could drive the enemy from his neighbourhood, made an attack upon their Hippah, which they vainly boaſted was beyond his power to approach. He placed the carpenters in the front, who, in an inſtant, levelled their palliſadoes with the ground; then cut a breach through the mound, and levelled the ditch, behind which their warriors were ranged in great numbers on their fighting ſtages. Into this breach a chief inſtantly threw himſelf, with his ſpear in his hand. He was ſhot dead by a markſman, and immediately another chief occupied his place, ſtepping on the dead body. He likewiſe fell a victim to his intrepid courage, and in the ſame manner eight warriors ſucceſſively defended it, and bravely fell in this poſt of honour. The reſt, ſeeing their leaders dead, took flight, and the French purſued and killed numbers of them. Captain Crozet offered fifty dollars to any perſon who ſhould take a New Zealander alive, but this was found impracticable. A ſoldier ſeized an old man, and began to drag him towards his Captain, but the ſavage, being diſarmed, bit into the fleſhy part of his enemy's hand, the exquiſite pain of which ſo much enraged the ſoldier, that he ran the fellow through with his bayonet. In the Hippah, that had been ſtormed, was found great quantities of arms, tools, and cloathing, together with ſtore of dried fiſh and roots, which ſeemed to be intended for winter proviſion. Captain Crozet now compleated the repairs of his ſhip without interruption, and proſecuted his voyage after a ſtay of ſixty four days in the Bay of Iſlands: from whence, after paſſing through the weſtern part of the South Sea, he returned, by the Philippines, to the Iſle of France.

We cannot help remarking here, that there appears ſome inconſiſtency in the above relation. It ſeems improbable, if Marion was murdered in the Hippah, ſituated on the prominence of an inacceſſible rock, that the boat's crew below, who landed him, ſhould not make their eſcape; and much more improbable, that neither the leader nor his followers ſhould be miſſed, till the woodmen were maſſacred by the ſavages the next day. Upon the whole, we are rather inclined to think, conſidering the importance of the place, that the loſs might be ſuſtained by fair combat. M. Marion might find it neceſſary for the ſafety of his people, to drive the ſavages from their Hippah or Fort, which is one of the ſtrongeſt in New Zealand. In the opinion of captain Cook, it is a place of great ſtrength, in which a great number of reſolute men may defend themſelves againſt all the force, which a people with no other arms than thoſe that are there in uſe, could bring againſt it. Captain Crozet might, therefore, think it leſs diſhonourable to attribute the loſs of his general and ſo many men, to the treachery, rather than the valour of the ſavages; who, it is acknowledged, defended the place bravely. But to proceed.

As the two iſlands, between which we paſſed, have no names in the French chart of the ſouthern hemiſphere, captain Cook named them Prince Edward's iſlands, and the other four Marion's and Crozet's iſlands. We had now for the moſt part ſtrong gales between the N. and W. and but very indifferent weather; not better, indeed, than we generally have in England in the very depth of winter, though it was now the middle of ſummer in this hemiſphere. In conſequence of the piercing cold, the captain ordered the jackets and trowſers to be delivered out, which, with the blankets, and other warm cloathing, provided by the Lords of the Admiralty againſt the ſeverity of the frozen climates, were found of infinite uſe in preſerving the men in health, who were moſt expoſed to the action of the froſt. After leaving Prince Edward's iſlands, we ſhaped our courſe to the S. E. with a briſk gale at W. S. W. in order to paſs to the ſouthward of the four others; and to get into the latitude of the land diſcovered by M. de Kerguelen. Captain Cook had received inſtructions to examine this iſland, and endeavour to diſcover a good harbour.

On Monday the 16th, in latitude 48 deg. 45 min. and in longitude 52 deg. E. we ſaw numbers of penguins, and rock-weed floating in the ſea. On the 17th the fogs came on ſo thick, that we could but juſt diſcern objects at the diſtance of the ſhip's length; on account of which ſignals were appointed, and repeated every half hour. As we hourly expected to fall in with land, our navigation was both tedious and dangerous. On the 21ſt, we ſaw a very large ſeal, and a heavy ſtorm came on, attended with ſleet and heavy guſts of hail. On Tueſday the 24th, at ſix o'clock, A. M. the fog clearing away a little, we ſaw land, bearing S. S. E. which we afterwards found to be an iſland of conſiderable height, and about three leagues in circuit. We ſoon after diſcovered another of equal magnitude, about one league to the eaſtward; and between theſe two ſome ſmaller ones. In the direction of S. by E. another high iſland was ſeen. This we did but juſt weather: it was a high round rock, named Bligh's Cap. Our commander ſuppoſed this to be the ſame that M. de Kerguelen called the iſle of Rendezvous; but we know of nothing that can rendezvous upon it but the birds of the air, for it is certainly inacceſſible to every other animal. The weather beginning to clear up, we tacked, and ſteered in for the land; and at noon we determined the latitude of Bligh's Cap to be 48 deg. 29 min. S. longitude 68 deg. 40 min. E. We paſſed it at three o'clock, with a freſh gale at W. ſtanding to the S. S. E. Preſently after we ſaw the land of which we had a faint view in the morning; and at four o'clock, extending from S. E. half E. and diſtant 4 miles. The left extreme, which we judged to be the northern point of this land, called, in the French chart of the ſouthern hemiſphere, Cape François, terminated in a high perpendicular rock, and the right one in a high indented point, which, by its appearance, ſeemed to be, what is repreſented on Kerguelen's chart under the name of Cape Aubert. It may be proper to obſerve here, that all that extent of coaſt lying between Cape Louis and Cape François, of which the French ſaw very little during their firſt viſit in 1772, and may be called the N. W. ſide of this land, they had it in their power to trace the poſition of in 1773, and have aſſigned names to ſome of its bays, rivers, and promontories. From this point the coaſt ſeemed to turn ſhort round to the ſouthward; for we could ſee no land to the weſtward of the direction in which it now bore to us, but the iſlands we had obſerved in the morning. Kerguelen's iſle de Clugny, the moſt ſoutherly of them, lies nearly W. from the point, about two or three leagues diſtant. Towards the middle of the land there appeared to be an inlet; but on our approaching it, we ſaw it was only a bending on the coaſt: we therefore bore up to go round Cape François. Soon after, land opened off the Cape, in the direction of S. 53 deg. E. appearing as a point at a conſiderable diſtance; for the trending of the coaſt from the Cape was more ſoutherly. We alſo deſcried rocks and iſlands to the eaſtward of the above directions, the moſt diſtant of which was about ſeven leagues from the Cape. Having got off this, we obſerved the coaſt to the ſouthward, much indented by points and bays, and, therefore, fully expected to find a good harbour. We ſoon diſcovered one behind the Cape, into which we began to ply; but it preſently fell calm, and we anchored in 45 fathoms water, as the Diſcovery alſo did ſoon after. Mr. Bligh, the maſter, was ordered to ſound the harbour; who reported it to be ſafe and commodious.

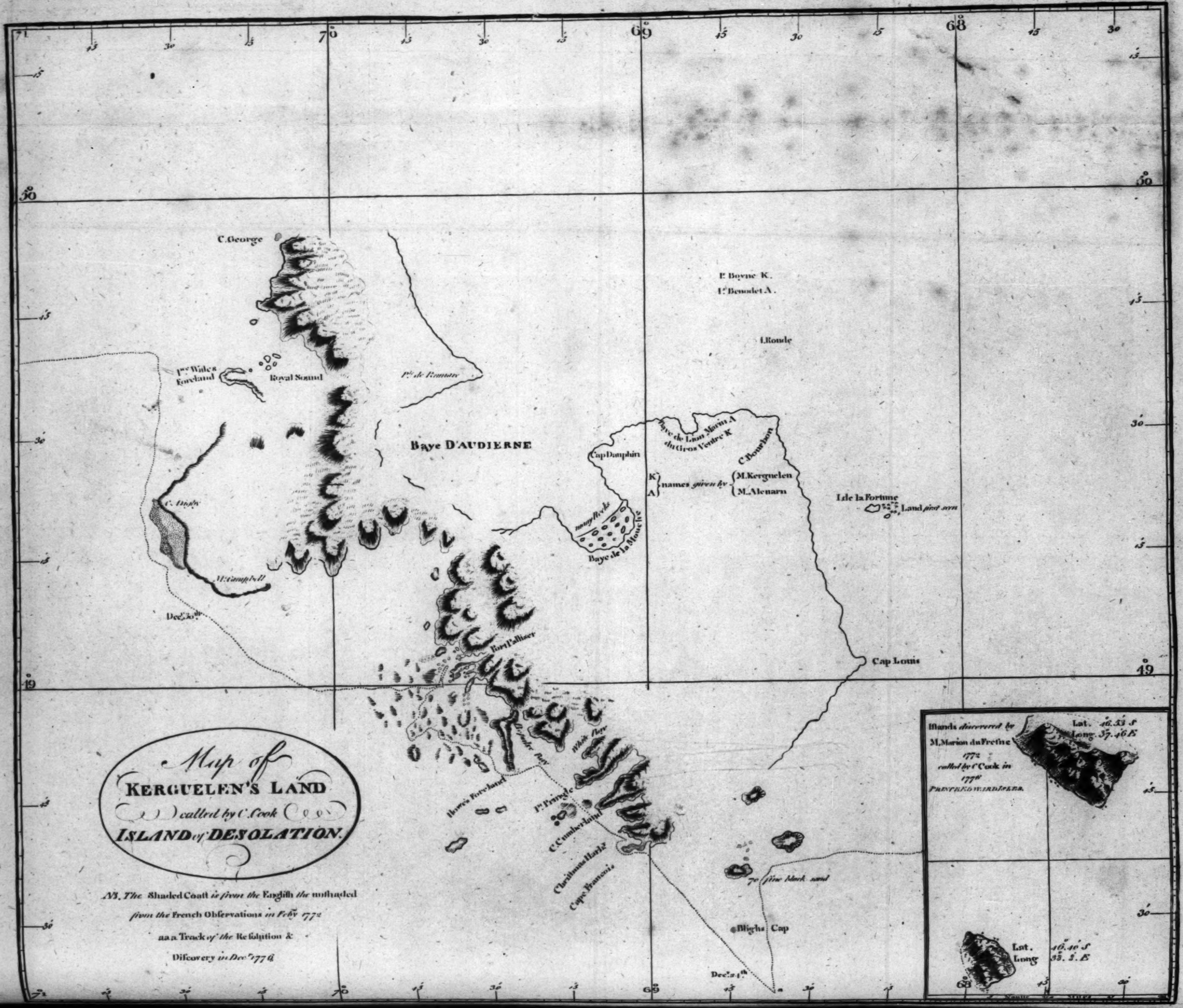
On Wedneſday the 25th, early in the morning, we weighed, and, having wrought into the harbour, anchored in eight fathoms water, bottom a fine dark ſand. At two o'clock, P. M. the Diſcovery got in, when captain Clerke informed us, that he had with difficulty eſcaped being driven on the S. point of the harbour, his anchor having ſtarted before he could ſhorten the cable. They were, therefore, obliged to ſet ſail, and drag the anchor after them, till they had room to heave it up, when they perceived that one of its palms was broken. Immediately after we had anchored, all the boats were ordered to be hoiſted out, and the empty water caſks to be got ready. In the mean time captain Cook landed, to ſearch for a convenient ſpot where they might be filled, and to obſerve what the place afforded. We found numbers of penguins, ſeals, and other fowls, on the ſhore. The ſeals were not numerous, but ſo inſenſible of fear, that we killed as many as we choſe, and made uſe of their fat and blubber to make oil for our lamps, and other purpoſes. Freſh water was exceedingly plentiful; but not a ſingle tree or ſhrub was to be diſcovered, and but little herbage of any kind; though we had flattered ourſelves with the hope of meeting with ſomething conſiderable here, having obſerved the ſides of ſome of the hills to be covered with a lively green. Before captain Cook returned to the ſhip, he aſcended a ridge of rocks, riſing one above another, expecting, by that means, to obtain a view of the country; but before he had reached the top, ſo thick a fog came on, that it was with difficulty he could find his way down again. Towards the evening we hauled the ſeine at the head of the harbour, but caught no more than half a dozen ſmall fiſh; nor had we any better ſucceſs the next day, when we tried with hook and line. Our only reſource, therefore, for freſh proviſions, was birds, which were innumerable. On Thurſday the 26th, the ſurf was rather inconvenient for landing, and the weather rather foggy and rainy: nevertheleſs, we began to cut graſs for our cattle, and to fill water; we found the former near the head of the harbour, and the latter in a brook at the left corner of the beach. The rivulets were ſwelled to ſuch a degree, by the rain that fell, that the ſides of the hills which bounded the harbour, appeared to be covered with a ſheet of water: for the rain entered the fiſſures and crags of the hills, and was precipitated down their ſides in prodigious torrents.

The people having laboured hard for two ſucceſſive days, and nearly compleated our water, Captain Cook allowed them the 27th of December as a day of reſt to celebrate Chriſtmas. In conſequence of which many of them went on ſhore, and made excurſions into the country, which they found deſolate in extreme. It contained plenty of water, but no wood; was barren, and without inhabitants; but the ſhores abounded with fiſh, and the land with ſeals, ſea-lions, and penguins. In the evening one of them preſented a quart bottle to the captain, which was found on the north-ſide of the harbour, faſtened with ſome wire to a projecting rock. This bottle contained a piece of parchment, with this inſcription, "*Ludovico* XV. *Galliarum rege, et d,* (probably a contraction of the word *Domino*) *de Boynes regi a Secretis ad res maritimas annis* 1772 *et* 1773." From which it is evident, we were not the firſt Europeans who had viſited this harbour. Captain Cook ſuppoſes it to have been left by M. de Boiſguehenneu, who went on ſhore the 13th of February, 1772, the day that M. de Kerguelen diſcovered this land; but the captain appears to be for once miſtaken; for how could M. de Boiſguehenneu, in the beginning of 1772, leave an inſcription which commemorates a tranſaction of the next year? Perhaps the following particulars may throw light upon this part of our author's journal; for we do not in the manner of moſt of our uninformed cotemporary compilers, ſervilely copy any one's papers, or, from inattentive indolence, ſuffer errors to paſs uncorrected. M. de Kerguelen, a lieutenant in the French ſervice, had the command of two ſhips given him, the La Fortune and Le Gros Ventre. He ſailed from the Mauritius about the latter end of 1771, and on the 13th of January following, diſcovered the two iſlands of which we are now ſpeaking, and to which he gave the name of the Iſles of Fortune. Soon after M. de Kerguelen ſaw land, as it is ſaid, of a conſiderable height and extent, upon which he ſent one of the officers of his own ſhip a-head in the cutter to ſound. But the captain of the other ſhip, M. de St. Allouarn, in the Gros Ventre, found a bay, to which he gave his ſhip's name, and ordered his yawl to take poſſeſſion. In the mean time, M. de Kerguelen being driven to leeward, and unable again to recover his ſtation, both boats returned on board the Gros Ventre, and the cutter was turned adrift on account of the bad weather. M. Kerguelen returned to the Mauritius, and M. de St. Allouarn continued for three days to take the bearings of this land, and doubled its northern extremity beyond which it trended to the ſouth-eaſtward. He coaſted it for the ſpace of 20 leagues, but finding it high and inacceſſible, he ſhaped his courſe to New Holland, and from thence returned by the way of Timor and Batavia, to the Iſle of France, where he died. M. de Kerguelen was afterwards promoted to the command of a 64 gun ſhip, called the Rolland, with the frigate L'Oiſeau, who were ſent out in order to perfect the diſcovery of this pretended land.

From the accounts of M. Kerguelen's ſecond voyage we learn that they arrived on the weſt ſide of this iſland, on the 14th of December, 1783; that, ſteering to the N. E. they diſcovered, on the 16th, the Iſle de Reunion, and other ſmall iſlands; that, on the 17th, they had before them the principal land, (which they were ſure was connected with that ſeen by them on the 14th,) and a high point of land, named by them Cape François; that beyond this cape, the coaſt took a ſouth-eaſterly direction, and behind it they found a bay called by them Baie de L'Oiſeau, from the name of their frigate; that, they then endeavoured to enter it, but were prevented by contrary winds and blowing weather, which drove them off the coaſt eaſtward; but that, at laſt, on the 6th of January, M. de Roſnevet, captain of the Oiſeau, was able to ſend his boat on ſhore in this bay, under the command of M. de Rochegude, one of his officers, "who took poſſeſſion of that bay, and of all the country, in the name of the king of France, with all the requiſite formalities." Hence then we trace, by the moſt unexceptionable evidence, the hiſtory of the bottle and the inſcription; the leaving of which was, no doubt, one of the requiſite formalities obſerved by M. de Rochegude on this occaſion. And though he did not land till the 6th of January, 1774, yet as Kerguelen's ſhips arrived upon the coaſt on the 14th of December, 1773, and had diſcovered and looked into this very bay on the 17th of that month, it was with the ſtricteſt propriety and truth that 1773 and not 1774 was mentioned as the date of the diſcovery. We may now fairly conclude from the above particulars, that Captain Cook's groundleſs ſuppoſition ſprung from want of information, that might enable him to make any other. He had no idea that the French had viſited this land a ſecond time; and reduced to the neceſſity of trying to accommodate what he ſaw himſelf, to what little he had heard of their proceedings, he confounds a tranſaction which we, who have been better informed, know for a certainty, belongs to the ſecond voyage, with a ſimilar one, which his chart of the Southern Hemiſphere has recorded, and which happened in a different year, and at a different place. Nor can a doubt remain, that theſe iſlands we now fell in with are the ſame diſcovered by Kerguelen: but that M. de Kerguelen ever ſaw a great country, ſuch as he pretends to have ſeen, in or near thoſe iſlands, is very problematical. There are, indeed, numberleſs iſlands thinly ſcattered in this almoſt boundleſs ocean; but there are none ſo ſuperior to thoſe already diſcovered in riches and cultivation, as to be worth the ſearch, will ſcarcely admit a queſtion. We now think it time to return to the hiſtory of our voyage.

Captain Cook, as a memorial of our having been in this harbour, wrote on the other ſide of the parchment theſe words; "*Naves Reſolution et Diſcovery, de Rege Magnæ Britanniæ, Decembris* 1776," that is, "The ſhips Reſolution and Diſcovery, belonging to the king of Great Britain. In the month of December, A. D. 1776." He then put the parchment again into the bottle, accompanied with a ſilver two-penny piece of 1772, covering its mouth with a leaden cap, and placed it the next morning in a pile of ſtones, erected for that purpoſe on an eminence, near the place where it was firſt found. Here we diſplayed the Britiſh flag, and named the place Chriſtmas Harbour, it being on that feſtival we arrived in it. It is the firſt inlet we meet with on the S. E. ſide of Cape François, which forms the north ſide of the harbour, and is the northern point of this land. The ſituation ſufficiently diſtinguiſhes it from any of the other inlets; and, which is ſtill more remarkable, its ſouth point terminates in a high rock, perforated quite through, and forming an appearance like the arch of a bridge. If there could be the leaſt doubt remaining of the identity of the Baie de l'Oiſeau, and Chriſtmas harbour, this particular of the perforated rock, which, in the account of Kerguelen's ſecond voyage, is compared to an arched gateway, would amount to a ſtrict demonſtration; and it is very ſatisfactory to find the two navigators, neither of whom knew any thing of the other's deſcription, adopting the ſame idea, which both proves, that they had the ſame uncommon object before their eyes, and that they made an accurate report. The harbour has another mark within, being a ſingle ſtone or rock, of a vaſt ſize, which lies on the top of a hill, on the ſouth-ſide, near its bottom; and oppoſite this, on the north-ſide is another hill, ſmaller, but much like it. At the bottom of this is a ſmall beach where we commonly landed: behind it is ſome gently riſing ground, whereon is a pool of freſh water. On both ſides of the inlet, the land is high. The inlet runs in W. and W. N. W. two miles: its breadth, for more than half its length, is one mile and a quarter; above which it is only half a mile. The ſhores are ſteep. The depth of water, which is 45 fathoms at the entrance, varies from 30, and if you proceed farther in, to four and five fathoms. The bottom is every where a fine dark ſand, except in ſome places near to the ſhore, where are beds of ſea-weed, which always grows on rocky ground. The head of the harbour lies open only to two points of the compaſs; and even theſe are covered by iſlands in the offing, ſo that no ſea can fall in to hurt a ſhip. Appearances on ſhore confirmed this; for we found graſs growing cloſe to high water mark, which is a ſure ſign of a pacific harbour. Captain Cook, accompanied by Mr. King, went upon Cape François, expecting, from this elevation, to have had a view of the ſea-coaſt, and the iſlands lying off it: but they found every diſtant object below them hid in a fog. The land on a level with them, or of a greater height, was viſible enough, and appeared exceedingly naked and deſolate; except ſome hills to the ſouthward, which were covered with ſnow.

We were now buſied on board in repairing our rigging, particularly the crew of the Diſcovery, who had ſuffered much in the frequent ſqualls, with which ſhe had been haraſſed ever ſince her departure from the Cape: at the ſame time, thoſe who were on ſhore were no leſs uſefully employed in ſupplying the ſhips with water, and the crews with freſh proviſions; which laſt, though not of the moſt delicate kind, yet to ſtomachs cloyed almoſt to loathing with ſalt proviſions,



Map of
KERGUELEN'S LAND
called by C. Cook
ISLAND of DESOLATION.

N.B. The Shaded Coast is from the English the unshaded
from the French Observations in Feby 1772
aa a Track of the Resolution &
Discovery in Decr 1776.

C. George
Pce Wales Foreland
Royal Sound
Pte de Rennaic
Baye D'AUDIERNE
C. Digby
Mt Campbell
Decr 30th
Port Palliser
Repulse Bay
White Bay
Howe's Foreland
Pt Pringle
C. Cumberland
Christmas Harbr
Cape François
70 fine black sand
Blighs Cap
Decr 24th
P. Boyne K.
Id Benodet A.
I. Ronde
Baye de Lion Marin A
du Gros Ventre K
Cap Dauphin
C. Bourbon
K
A
names given by
M. Kerguelen
M. Alenarn
many Rocks
Baye de la Mouche
Isle la Fortune
Land first seen
Cap Louis
Islands discovered by
M. Marion du Fresne
1772
called by C. Cook in
1776
PRINCE EDWARD ISLES
Lat. 46.53 S
Long. 37.46 E
Lat. 46.40 S
Long 38. 2. E
71
70
69
68
50
49
15
30
45

BRITISH 7 FE 90 MUSEUM

even ſeals, penguins and ſea-fowl, were not unſavoury meat. When Chriſtmas was proclaimed, a double quantity of grog was ſerved out to each common man; and a certain proportion of wine and ſpirits to every petty officer: leave was likewiſe given to ſuch as were ailing, to go on ſhore for the benefit of the air; and the officers of both ſhips reciprocally met in compliment to each other; paſt dangers were forgotten, and the day was ſpent by the common ſailors with as much mirth and unconcern, as if ſafely moored in Portſmouth-harbour.

On Sunday the 29th, we ſailed, and took leave of this iſland, which captain Clerke found by obſervation to lie in lat. 49 deg. 30 min. S. and in 78 deg. 10 min. E. longitude. We now purſued our courſe for Van Diemen's land, and having no diſcoveries in view, took every advantage of the weather to carry ſail.

Mr. Anderſon, who, during the ſhort time we lay in Chriſtmas Harbour, loſt no time nor opportunity for examining the country, in every direction, has favoured us with the following obſervations. No place (ſays he) hitherto diſcovered, in either hemiſphere, affords ſo ſcanty a field for the naturaliſt as this barren ſpot. Some verdure, indeed, appeared, when at a ſmall diſtance from the ſhore, which might raiſe the expectation of meeting with a little herbage; but all this lively appearance was occaſioned by one ſmall plant, reſembling ſaxifrage, which grew up the hills in large ſpreading tufts, or a kind of rotten turf, which, if dried, might ſerve for fuel, and was the only thing ſeen here, that could poſſibly be applied to that purpoſe. Another plant, which grew to near the height of two feet, was pretty plentifully ſcattered about the boggy declivities; it had the appearance of a ſmall cabbage when it has ſhot into ſeeds. It had the watery acrid taſte of the antiſcorbutic plants, though it materially differed from the whole tribe. When eaten raw, it was not unlike the New Zealand ſcurvy-graſs; but, when boiled, it acquired a rank flavour. At this time, none of its ſeeds were ripe enough to be brought home, and introduced into our Engliſh gardens. Near the brooks and boggy places were found two other ſmall plants, which were eaten as ſallad; the one like garden creſſes, very hot; and the other very mild: the latter is a curioſity, having not only male and female, but alſo androgynous plants. Some coarſe graſs grew pretty plentifully in a few ſmall ſpots near the harbour, which was cut down for our cattle. In ſhort the whole catalogue of plants did not exceed eighteen, including a beautiful ſpecies of lichen, and ſeveral ſorts of moſs. Nor was there the appearance of a tree or ſhrub in the whole country.

Among the animals, the moſt conſiderable were ſeals, which were diſtinguiſhed by the name of ſea-bears; being the ſort that are called the urſine ſeal. They come on ſhore to repoſe and breed. At that time they were ſhedding their hair, and ſo remarkably tame, that there was no difficulty in killing them. No other quadruped was ſeen; but a great number of oceanic birds, as ducks, ſhags, petrels, &c. The ducks were ſomewhat like a widgeon, both in ſize and figure: a conſiderable number of them were killed and eaten: they were excellent food, and had not the leaſt fiſhy taſte. The cape petrel, the ſmall blue one, and the ſmall black one, or Mother Carey's chicken, were not in plenty here; but another ſort, which is the largeſt of the petrels, and called by ſeamen, Mother Carey's gooſe, is found in abundance. This petrel is as large as an albatroſs, and is carnivorous, feeding on the dead carcaſſes of ſeals, birds, &c. The greateſt number of birds here are penguins, which conſiſt of three ſorts. The head of the largeſt is black, the upper part of the body of a leaden grey, the under part white, and the feet black: two broad ſtripes of fine yellow deſcend from the head to the breaſt; the bill is of a reddiſh colour, and longer than in the other ſorts. The ſecond ſort is about half the ſize of the former. It is of a dark grey on the upper part of the body, and has a white ſpot on the upper part of the head. The bill and feet are yellowiſh. In the third ſort, the upper part of the body and throat are black, the reſt white, except the top of the head, which is ornamented with a fine yellow arch, which it can erect as two creſts. The ſhags here are of two ſorts; the leſſer corvorant, or water-crow, and another with a blackiſh back and a white belly. The ſea-ſwallow, the tern, the common ſea-gull, and the Port Egmont hen, were alſo found here. Alſo large flocks of a ſingular kind of white bird flew about, having the baſe of the bill covered with a horny cruſt. It had a black bill and white feet, was ſomewhat larger than a pigeon, and the fleſh taſted like that of a duck. We hauled the ſeine once, when we found a few fiſh about the ſize of a ſmall haddock. The only ſhell-fiſh we ſaw were a few limpets and muſcles.

Many of the hills, notwithſtanding they were of a moderate height, were at that time covered with ſnow, though anſwering to our June. It is reaſonable to imagine that rain muſt be very frequent here, as well from the marks of large torrents having ruſhed down, as from the appearance of the country, which even on the hills, was a continued bog or ſwamp. The rocks conſiſt principally of a dark blue and very hard ſtone, intermixed with particles of glimmer. Some conſiderable rocks were alſo formed here from a browniſh brittle ſtone. Theſe are the remarks of the ingenious Mr. Anderſon, captain Cook's ſurgeon.

Having ſailed out of Chriſtmas Harbour, we ſteered S. E. along the coaſt with a fine breeze and clear weather. This was unexpected, as, for ſome time paſt, fogs had prevailed more or leſs every day. Though we kept the line conſtantly going, we ſeldom ſtruck ground with a line of 60 fathom. At eight o'clock, A. M. we were off a promontory, which was named Cape Cumberland. It lies a league and a half from the ſouth point of Chriſtmas Harbour; between them is a good bay. Off Cape Cumberland is a ſmall iſland, on the ſummit of which is a rock reſembling a ſentry-box, which name was given to the iſland on that account. Some ſmall iſlands and rocks, with broken ground around them, lie two miles farther to the eaſtward; between which and Sentry-box Iſland we ſailed, the breadth of the channel being full a mile. We found no bottom with 40 fathoms line. When through this channel, we ſaw, on the ſouth ſide of Cape Cumberland, a bay, running in three leagues to the weſtward. It is formed by this cape to the north, and by a promontory to the ſouth, which was named Point Pringle, as a compliment from our captain to Sir John Pringle, Preſident of the Royal Society. The bottom of this bay we called Cumberland Bay. The coaſt, to the ſouthward of Point Pringle, forms a fifth bay, which we called White Bay, wherein are ſeveral leſſer bays or coves, which ſeemed to be ſheltered from all winds. Off the ſouth point, ſeveral rocks raiſe their heads above water, and probably there are many others that do not. Thus far our courſe was in a direction parallel to the coaſt, and not more than two miles from it; and the country had the ſame ſterile and naked aſpect as in the neighbourhood of Chriſtmas Harbour. The land which firſt opened off Cape François, in the direction of ſouth 53 deg. E. we had kept on our larboard-bow, thinking it was an iſland, with a paſſage between that and the main; but we found it to be a peninſula, joined to the reſt of the coaſt by a low iſthmus. The bay, formed by this peninſula, we called Repulſe Bay; and the northern point of the peninſula was named Howe's Foreland, in honour of Lord Howe. Drawing near it we obſerved ſome rocks and breakers, not far from the N. W. part, and two iſlands to the eaſtward of it, which, at firſt, appeared as one. We ſteered between them and the Foreland, and, by noon, were in the middle of the channel. The land of this Foreland or peninſula is of a tolerable height, and of a hilly and rocky ſubſtance. The coaſt is low; almoſt covered with ſea-birds; and we perceived ſome ſeals upon the beaches.

Having cleared the rocks and iſlands before mentioned, we ſaw the whole ſea before us to be chequered with large beds of rock weed, which was faſt to the bottom. There is often found a great depth of water upon ſuch ſhoals, and rocks have, as often, raiſed their heads almoſt to the ſurface of the water. It is always dangerous to ſail over them, eſpecially when there is no ſurge of the ſea to diſcover the danger. We endeavoured to avoid the rocks, by ſteering through the winding channels by which they were ſeparated. Though the lead was continually going, we never ſtruck ground with a line of ſixty fathoms: this increaſed the danger, as we could not anchor, however urgent the neceſſity might be. At length we diſcovered a lurking rock, in the middle of one of the beds of weeds, and even with the ſurface of the ſea. This was ſufficiently alarming, to make us take every precaution to avoid danger. We were now about eight miles to the ſouthward of Howe's Foreland, acroſs the mouth of a large bay; in which were ſeveral rocks, low iſlands and beds of ſea weed; but there appeared to be winding channels between them. We were ſo much embarraſſed with theſe ſhoals, that we hauled off to the eaſtward, in hopes of extricating ourſelves from our difficulties; but this plunged us into greater, and we found it abſolutely neceſſary to ſecure the ſhips, if poſſible, before night, eſpecially as the weather was hazy, and a fog was apprehended. Obſerving ſome inlets to the S. W. captain Clerke was ordered, (the Diſcovery drawing leſs water than the Reſolution) to lead in for the ſhore, which was immediately attempted. In ſtanding in we could not avoid running over the edges of ſome of the ſhoals, on which was found from 10 to 20 fathoms water; but the moment we were clear of them, we had no ground at the depth of 50 fathoms. Having weathered a ſpit that run out from an iſland on our lee, captain Clerke made the ſignal for having diſcovered an harbour, in which we anchored in 15 fathoms water, about five o'clock in the evening, near a mile from the ſhore. The N. point of the harbour bore N. by E. half E. one mile diſtant, and the ſmall iſlands in the entrance, within which we anchored, extended from E. to S. E. No ſooner were the ſhips ſecured, than it began to blow ſo very ſtrong, that we found it neceſſary to ſtrike top-gallant yards. The weather, however, continued fair, and it preſently became clear, the wind having diſperſed the fog that had ſettled on the hills.

As ſoon as we had anchored, captain Cook ordered two boats to be hoiſted out; in one of which he diſpatched Mr. Bligh, the maſter, to ſurvey the upper part of the harbour, and look out for wood. He alſo deſired captain Clerke to ſend his maſter to ſound the channel, S. of the ſmall iſles, and went himſelf in his own boat, accompanied by Mr. Gore, our firſt lieutenant, and Mr. Bailey, and landed on the N. point, to ſee what diſcovery could be made from thence. From an hill over the point, they had a view of the ſea coaſt, as far as Howe's Foreland. Several ſmall iſlands, rocks, and breakers, were ſcattered along the coaſt, and there appeared no better channel to get out of the harbour, than that by which they had entered it. While captain Cook and Mr. Bailey were making theſe obſervations, Mr. Gore encompaſſed the hill, and joined them at a place where the boat was attending for them. There was nothing to obſtruct their walk, except ſome craggy precipices; the country being, if poſſible, more barren, and deſolate, than that about Chriſtmas Harbour: and was there the leaſt fertility in any part of this iſland, we might reaſonably expect to have found it in this, which is completely ſheltered from the predominating bleak ſoutherly winds. But we could find neither food nor covering for cattle of any ſort; and if any had been left, they muſt inevitably have periſhed. In the little bay where the boat lay, called by captain Cook Penguin Cove, (from the inexpreſſible number of thoſe birds appearing there) is a fine freſh river, which we could approach without difficulty. Some large ſeals, ſhags, and a few ducks were ſeen, and Mr. Bailey had a glance of a very ſmall land bird, but it flew among the rocks, and we loſt it. At nine o'clock we got on board, and Mr. Bligh returned ſoon after. He reported, that he had been four miles up the harbour; that its direction was W. S. W. that its breadth near the ſhips did not exceed a mile; that the ſoundings were from 37 to 10 fathoms; and that, having landed on both ſhores, he found the ſoil rocky, without a tree or ſhrub, or hardly any appearance of verdure.

Monday the 30th, both wind and weather favouring us, we weighed anchor, ſet ſail, and put out to ſea. To the harbour we had left, the name was given of Port Palliſer, in honour of admiral Sir Hugh Palliſer. It lies in the lat. of 49 deg. 3 min. S. long. 69 deg. 37 min. E. diſtant five leagues from Howe's Foreland; and in the direction of S. 25 deg. E. When ſtanding out, we diſcovered a round hill, like a ſugar loaf, in the direction of S. 72 deg. E. diſtant about 9 leagues; having the appearance of an iſland, but we afterwards found it was upon the main land. In getting out to ſea, in general, we ſteered through the winding channels among the ſhoals, though we ſometimes ventured to run over them, on which we never found leſs than 18 fathoms water; nor would they have been diſcovered, had it not been for the ſea weed growing upon them. Having got three or four leagues from the coaſt, we found a clear ſea, and ſteered E. till nine o'clock A. M. at which time the ſugar-loaf hill, above mentioned, which we named Mount Campbell, bore S. E. and a ſmall iſland, to the northward of it, S. S. E. diſtant four leagues. We now ſteered more ſoutherly, in order to get in with the land. At noon we obſerved in latitude 49 deg. 8 min. S. longitude from Cape François 80 miles E. Mount Campbell bore S. 47 deg. W. diſtant 4 leagues; and a low point S. E. at the diſtance of about 20 miles. We were now little more than two leagues from the ſhore. This part of the coaſt ſeems to be what the French ſaw on the 4th of January 1774. The land, in general, is level. The mountains end about five leagues from the low point, leaving a great extent of low land, whereon mount Campbell is ſituated. Theſe mountains ſeemed to be compoſed of naked rocks, whoſe ſummits are covered with ſnow: and in the vallies ſterility only is viſible. When we had finiſhed taking our meridian altitudes, we diſcovered more land, opening off the low point juſt mentioned, in the direction of S. S. E. and eight miles beyond it. It proved to be the eaſtern extremity of this land, and we named it Cape Digby. It lies in latitude 49 deg. 23 min. S. and in 70 deg. 34 min. E. longitude. Between Howe's Foreland and Cape Digby, the ſhore forms one great bay, extending ſeveral leagues to the S. W. A prodigious quantity of ſea weed grows over it, which ſeemed to be ſuch as Mr. Banks diſtinguiſhed by the name of *fucus giganteus*. Though the ſtem of this weed is not much thicker than a man's thumb, ſome of it grows to the amazing length of 60 fathoms. Having run two leagues upon a S. E. half E. courſe, at one o'clock P. M. we ſounded, and had 18 fathoms water, with a bottom of fine ſand. Obſerving a ſmall bending in the coaſt, we ſteered for it, with an intention to anchor there; but being diſappointed in our views, we puſhed forward, in order to ſee as much as poſſible of the coaſt before night. From Cape Digby it trends nearly S. W. by S. to a low point, which we named Point Charlotte, in honour of the Queen. In the direction of S. S. W. about ſix leagues from Cape Digby is a pretty high projecting point, which we called the Prince of Wales's Foreland; and ſix leagues beyond that, in latitude 49 deg. 54 min. S. longitude 70 deg. 13 min E. is the moſt ſoutherly point of the whole coaſt, to which, in honour of his preſent Majeſty, we gave the name of Cape George. Between Point Charlotte, and the Foreland, we diſcovered a deep inlet, which was named Royal Sound, into which, on the S. W. ſide of the Prince of Wales's Foreland, we ſaw another inlet; and it then appeared, that the Foreland was the E. point of a large iſland lying in the mouth of it. There are ſeveral ſmall iſlands in this inlet; and one about a league to the ſouthward of the above mentioned Foreland. On the S. W. ſide of the Royal Sound, all the land to Cape George conſiſts of elevated hills, gradually riſing from the ſea to a conſiderable height, having their ſummits capt with ſnow, and appearing as barren, as thoſe we had hitherto ſeen. Neither inland, nor on the coaſt, could we diſcern the ſmalleſt veſtige of a tree or ſhrub: but ſome of the low land about Cape Digby, though for the moſt part deſolate, ſeemed to be clothed with a green turf. On the ſandy beaches penguins and other ſea fowls were numerous; and ſhags kept continually flying about the ſhips. In order to get the length of Cape George, we continued ſtretching to the S. under all the ſail we could carry, till between ſeven and eight o'clock, when ſeeing no probability of accompliſhing our deſign, we took advantage of the wind, which had ſhifted to W. S. W. (the direction, in which we wanted to go) and ſtood away from the coaſt. Cape George now bore S. 53 deg. W. diſtant 7 leagues. We ſaw no land to the S. of it, except a ſmall iſland that lies off the pitch of the Cape; and a S. W. ſwell, which we met when we brought the cape to bear in this direction, confirmed us in the opinion, that there was no more in that quarter. But, to uſe captain Cook's own words, " We have, ſays he, ſtill a ſtronger proof, that no part of this land can extend much, if at all, to the ſouthward of Cape George; and that is, captain Furneaux's track in February 1773, after his ſeparation from me during my late voyage. His log-book is now lying before me; and I find from it, that he croſſed the meridian of this land only about 17 leagues to the ſouthward of Cape George; a diſtance at which it may very well be ſeen in clear weather. This ſeems to have been the caſe when captain Furneaux paſſed it. For his log-book makes no mention of fogs or hazy weather; on the contrary, it expreſly tells us, that, when in this ſituation, they had it in their power to make obſervations, both for latitude and longitude, on board his ſhip; ſo that, if this land extends farther S. than Cape George, it would have been ſcarcely poſſible that he ſhould have paſſed without ſeeing it. From theſe circumſtances we are able to determine, within a very few miles, the quantity of latitude that this land occupies, which does not much exceed one degree and a quarter. As to its extent from E. to W. that ſtill remains undecided. We only know, that no part of it can reach ſo far to the W. as the meridian of 65 deg. becauſe in 1773 I ſearched for it in vain." But we think it neceſſary to remark here, that if the French obſervations, as marked upon captain Cook's chart, and ſtill more authentically upon that publiſhed by their own diſcoverers, may be depended upon, this land doth not reach ſo far to the W. as the meridian of 68 deg. Cape Louis, which is repreſented as its moſt weſterly point, being laid down by them to the E. of that meridian.

Thus an idea of a ſouthern continent adopted by M. de Kerguelen, vaniſhed before the accurate reſearches of captain Cook. Even Kerguelen himſelf, in conſequence of theſe, thinks very differently. This appears from an explicit declaration of his ſentiments, in his late publication, which does equal honour to his candour and to captain Cook's abilities. It muſt be confeſſed M. de Kerguelen was peculiarly unfortunate, in having done ſo little to complete what he had begun. He diſcovered, it is true, a new land; but, in two expeditions to it, he could not once bring his ſhips to an anchor upon any part of its coaſts: we cannot but conclude, therefore, that our brave commander had either fewer difficulties to ſtruggle with, or was more ſucceſsful in ſurmounting them. The French diſcoverers imagined Cape François to be the projecting point of a ſouthern continent. The Engliſh have diſcovered that no ſuch continent exiſts, and that the land in queſtion is an iſland of ſmall extent; which, from its ſterility, might properly be called the iſland of Deſolation; but captain Cook was unwilling to rob Monſieur de Kerguelen of the honour of its bearing his name. Which is more than can be ſaid of his own countrymen: for even M. de Pages never once mentions the name of his commander. And, though he takes occaſion to enumerate the ſeveral French explorers of the ſouthern hemiſphere, from Gonneville down to Crozet, he affects to preſerve an entire ſilence about Kerguelen, whoſe firſt voyage, in which the diſcovery of this conſiderable tract of land was made, is kept as much out of ſight, as if it had never taken place. Nay, not ſatisfied with refuſing to acknowledge the right of another, he almoſt aſſumes it to himſelf. For upon a map of the world, annexed to his book, at the ſpot where the new land is delineated, he tells us, that it was ſeen by M. de Pages, in 1774. He could ſcarcely have expreſſed himſelf in ſtronger terms, if he had meant to convey an idea, that he was the conductor of the diſcovery. And yet we know, that he was only a lieutenant, on board one of the ſhips commanded by Kerguelen; and that the diſcovery had been made in a former voyage, undertaken while he was actually engaged in his ſingular journey round the world. We now take leave of Kerguelen's land; and captain Cook, purſuant to his inſtructions, intended to proceed next to New Zealand, to take in wood and water, and provide hay for the cattle; their number by this time, having been conſiderably diminiſhed; for while exploring Kerguelen's deſolate land, we loſt by death two young bulls, one of the heifers, two rams, and ſeveral of the goats. On Tueſday, the 31ſt in the morning, by obſervations of the ſun and moon, we found our longitude to be 72 deg. 33 min. 36 ſec. E. and by theſe obſervations we were aſſured no material errors occaſioned by our time-keeper, had crept into our reckoning.

A. D. 1777. On Wedneſday the 1ſt of January, we were in latitude 48 deg. 41 min. S. longitude 76 deg. 50 min. E. when we obſerved quantities of ſea weed paſſing to leeward, in a direction contrary to that we had ſeen in approaching the laſt mentioned iſlands, which gave reaſon to ſuppoſe, there were other lands at no great diſtance, and affords ſome ground for believing, that M. de Kerguelen might have ſeen other lands in this latitude. On the 3d, in latitude 48 deg. 16 min. S. longitude 85 deg. E. we had the weather tolerably clear, with freſh gales from the W. and S. W. but now the wind veered to the N. and continued in that quarter eight days, during which, though there was at the ſame time a thick fog, we run upwards of 300 leagues, chiefly in the dark: the ſun, indeed, ſometimes made its appearance, but very rarely, and but for a very ſhort time. On the 7th, a boat was diſpatched with orders to captain Clerke, fixing our rendezvous at Adventure Bay, in Van Diemen's land, ſhould the two ſhips happen to ſeparate before they arrived there; however, we had the good fortune not to loſe company with each other. On Sunday the 12th, the northerly winds were ſucceeded by a calm, which was ſoon followed by a ſoutherly wind. Our latitude was now 48 deg. 40 min. S. longitude 110 deg. 26 min. E. The wind blew from the S. for 24 hours, and then veering to the W. and N. W. brought on clear and fair weather. We continued our courſe eaſtward, and on Tueſday the 14th, a hurricane aroſe, accompanied with ſo thick a fog, that the ſhips were every moment in danger of falling foul one of the other. We kept the fog bell conſtantly ringing, and guns firing, which were anſwered by the Diſcovery. On Sunday the 19th, a ſudden ſquall carried away our fore-top-maſt, and main-top-gallant-maſt, which took us up the whole day to clear the wreck, and to fit another top-maſt. Not having a ſpare main-top-gallant maſt on board, the fore-top-gallant-maſt was converted into one for our immediate uſe. On the 20th, the weather brightened up, the wind continued weſterly, and we had a briſk but moderate gale in the afternoon, when we ſet all the ſails we could, unreefed our top-ſails, and run at the rate of ſeven and eight miles an hour by the log, both ſhips in company. On the 22d Mr. King went on board the Diſcovery to compare the time-pieces. At this time our company were in perfect health, thoſe of the crew only excepted, who had been hurt at the cape, and even they were fit to do duty. The damages we had received during the blowing weather were not conſiderable as might have been expected.

On Friday the 24th, at three o'clock, A. M. we diſcovered the coaſt of Van Diemen's land, bearing N. W. half W. The Mewſtone ſo named by captain Furneaux, in 1773, bore N. E. by E. diſtant 3 leagues. We made the ſignal for ſeeing land, which was anſwered by the Diſcovery. Several iſlands and high rocks are ſtrewed along this part of the coaſt, the ſouthermoſt of which is Mewſtone, a round elevated rock, five or ſix leagues diſtant from the S. W. cape, in the direction of S. 55 deg. E. Our latitude, at noon, 43 deg. 47 min. S. longitude 147 deg. E. in which ſituation a round topped hill bore N. 17 deg. W. the S. W. cape N. 74 deg. W. the Mewſtone W. half N. Swilly Iſle or Rock S. 49 deg. and the S. E. or S. Cape, N. 40 deg. E. diſtant near 3 leagues. The land between the S. W. and the South Capes is broken and hilly, the coaſt winding, with points ſhooting out from it; but we were at too great a diſtance, to be able to judge whether the bays formed by theſe points were ſheltered from the ſea winds. The bay which appeared to be the largeſt and deepeſt, lies to the weſtward of the elevated peaked hill above mentioned. On the 25th, at ſix o'clock A. M. we ſounded and found ground at 60 fathoms, ſand and ſhelly bottom. The South Cape then bore N. 75 deg. W. two leagues diſtant: Taſman's head N.E. and Swilly Rock S. by W. half W. To a rock, on account of its ſtriking reſemblance to Eddyſtone light-houſe, captain Cook gave the name of the Eddyſtone; this, which had not been noticed by captain Furneaux, lies about a league to the eaſtward of Swilly Rock. Nature ſeems to have left theſe two rocks here, for the ſame purpoſe that the light-houſe was erected by man, namely, to remind navigators of the dangers that ſurround them; for they may be ſeen, even in the night, at a conſiderable diſtance; their ſurface being white with the dung of ſea fowls. They are the ſummits of a ledge of rocks under water, whereon the ſea breaks, in many places, very high. On the N. E. ſide of Storm Bay, which lies between the South Cape and Taſman's Head, are ſome creeks, pretty well ſheltered; and if this coaſt was carefully examined, ſome good harbours would moſt probably be found. Soon after we had ſight of land the weſterly winds left us, and were ſucceeded by light airs, and alternate calms; but

Sunday the 26th at noon, a breeze ſprung up at S.E. which afforded captain Cook an opportunity of executing his deſign of carrying the ſhips into Adventure Bay, where we expected to procure a freſh ſupply of wood and graſs; of both which articles we ſhould have been in great want, had we waited till our arrival in New Zealand. We therefore ſtood for the bay; wherein we came to an anchor, at four o'clock, P. M. in 12 fathoms water, not quite a mile from the ſhore. No ſooner were the ſhips properly ſecured, than the pinnace was ordered to be launched, the boats to be manned, and all hands ſet to work to overhaul the rigging, and get every thing in readineſs to continue our courſe. The officers, aſtronomers, and gentlemen, on board both ſhips, eagerly embraced the opportunity of going aſhore to take a view of the country, with which all on board were highly pleaſed. The firſt thing that attracted our notice were the trees, that by their magnitude and loftineſs exceeded every thing we had ever ſeen of the kind: but what was remarkable, we found many of them burnt near the ground, and not a few lying in a horizontal poſition, which, being much ſcorched, had been thrown down by the violence of the wind. The captains Cook and Clerke went, in ſeparate boats, in ſearch of convenient ſpots for wooding and watering, and making hay. They found plenty of wood and water, but very little graſs.

Monday the 27th, lieutenant King was diſpatched to the E. ſide of the bay, with two parties, under the protection of ſome marines; one to cut wood, and the other to cut graſs. For although, as yet, none of the natives had appeared, there could be no doubt that ſome were in the neighbourhood, as we had perceived columns of ſmoke, from the time of our approaching the coaſt; and ſome now were obſerved, at no great diſtance, up in the woods. The launch was likewiſe ſent for water; and in the evening having drawn the ſeine, we caught, at one haul, a great quantity of fiſh; moſt of which were of that ſort, known to ſeamen by the name of elephant fiſh. The Captain this day viſited all the parties that had been ſent aſhore; and the next the 28th, accompanied by ſeveral gentlemen, and guarded by a party of marines, he made a ſecond excurſion into the country, in order to make diſcoveries, and to procure, if poſſible, an interview with ſome of the inhabitants. They penetrated ſome miles through paths that ſeemed to have been frequented, before they could get ſight of any human being, till, at length, paſſing by the edge of an almoſt impenetrable thicket, they heard a ruſtling, which, at firſt, they miſtook for the rouſing of a wild beaſt; but ſearching cloſely, they found a girl quite naked and alone. At firſt ſhe ſeemed much terrified; but being kindly treated, and her apprehenſions of death removed, ſhe became docile, and ready to anſwer every thing we could render intelligible to her underſtanding. We queſtioned her concerning her reſidence, which we did by pointing to every beaten path, walking a little way in it, and then returning and taking another, making motions to her, at the ſame time, to lead us along, and we would follow her. To make her perfectly eaſy, one of our company pulled off his handkerchief, and put it about her neck by way of ornament, and another covered her head with his cap, and then ſhe was diſmiſſed. She ran among the buſhes, and, in leſs than an hour, eight men and a boy made their appearance. They approached us without betraying any marks of fear, or rather with the greateſt confidence imaginable; none of them having any weapons, except one, who held in his hand a ſtick about two feet long, and pointed at one end. They were quite naked, and wore no ornaments, unleſs we conſider as ſuch, ſome large punctures in different parts of their bodies, ſome in ſtraight, and others in curved lines. The men were of the middle ſtature, but rather ſlender. Their ſkin and hair were black; and the latter as woolly as that of any native of Guinea; but they were not diſtinguiſhed by remarkable thick lips, nor flat noſes. On the contrary, their features were far from being diſagreeable. They had pretty good eyes; and their teeth were tolerable even, but very dirty. Moſt of them had their hair and beards ſmeared with a red ointment, and ſome had alſo their faces painted with the ſame compoſition. Theſe were all kindly treated by our company; but they received every preſent we made them, without any apparent ſatisfaction. When ſome bread was offered them, as ſoon as they underſtood it was to be eaten, they either returned, or threw it away, without taſting it. Some elephant fiſh, both raw, and dreſſed, they likewiſe refuſed; but ſome birds, we gave them, theſe they did not return, and eaſily made us comprehend that they were fond of ſuch food. Two pigs having been brought on ſhore, to be left in the woods, they ſeized them by the ears, and ſeemed inclined to carry them off, with an intention, as we ſuppoſed, of killing them. Captain Cook, wiſhing to know the uſe of the ſtick which one of our viſitors held in his hand, made ſigns expreſſing his deſire to be gratified in this particular; upon which one of them took aim at a piece of wood ſet up at the diſtance of twenty yards; but after ſeveral eſſays he was ſtill wide of the mark. Omiah, to ſhew the great ſuperiority of our weapons, immediately fired his muſquet at it, the report of which ſo alarmed them, that they took flight, and vaniſhed in an inſtant. On our return we found they had been at the place at which the crew of the Diſcovery were watering; and an officer of that party firing alſo a muſquet in the air, they ran into the woods with uncommon precipitation. Soon after theſe had fled from us with uncommon ſpeed, the girl we had firſt ſeen returned, and with her came ſeveral women, ſome with children on their backs, and ſome without children. The former wore a kangooroo ſkin faſtened over their ſhoulders, the only uſe of which ſeemed to be, to ſupport their children on their backs, for it left thoſe parts uncovered which modeſty directs us to conceal. Their bodies were black, and marked with ſcars like thoſe of the men; from whom, however, they differed, in having their heads ſhaved; ſome of them being completely ſhorn, others only on one ſide, while the reſt of them had the upper part of their heads ſhaved, leaving a very narrow circle of hair all round. They were far from being handſome; however, ſome of our gentlemen paid their addreſſes to them, but without effect. Theſe were alſo kindly received, and conducted to the place where the wooders were at work, with whom it was not long before they were acquainted. They were, however, miſerable objects; and Omiah, though led by natural impulſe to an inordinate deſire for women, was ſo diſguſted with them, that he fired his piece off to frighten them from his ſight, which for that time had the deſired effect. That the gallantry of ſome of our people was not very agreeable to the men, is certain; for an elderly man as ſoon as he obſerved it, ordered the women and children to retire, which they all did, but ſome with a little reluctance. When the ſeveral parties of our viſitors had fled, and retired, captain Cook ordered the two pigs, one male and the other female, to be carried about a mile within the woods, and he himſelf ſaw them left there, taking care that none of the natives ſhould obſerve what was paſſing. He alſo intended to have left a young bull and a cow, beſides ſome goats and ſheep; but he ſoon relinquiſhed that deſign, being of opinion the natives would deſtroy them; which he ſuppoſed would be the fate of the pigs, if they ſhould chance to find them out: but as ſwine ſoon become wild, and are fond of being in the woods, it is probable that they were preſerved. The other cattle could not have remained long concealed from the natives, as they muſt have been put in an open place.

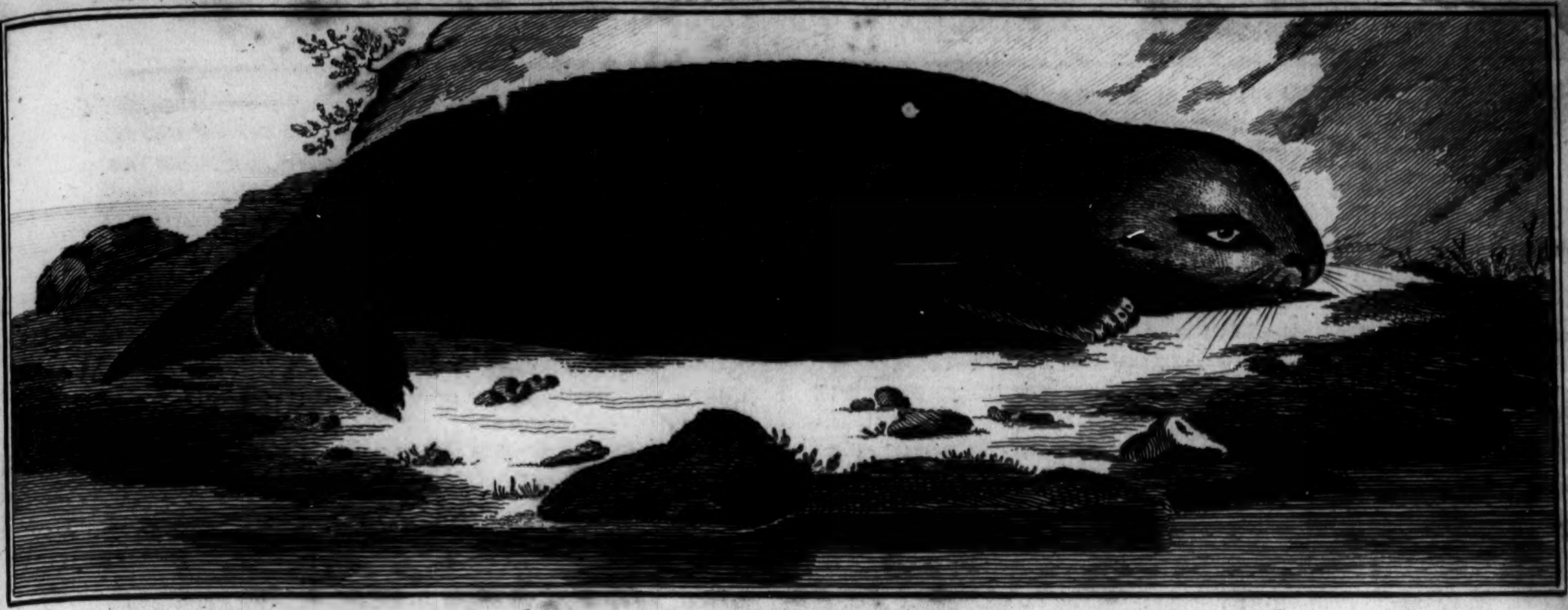
Wedneſday the 29th, we were prevented from ſailing by a dead calm, which continued the whole day. Parties were therefore ſent on ſhore to cut wood and graſs, as uſual; and Captain Cook accompanied the wood-cutters himſelf. At the ſame time our gentlemen, with lieutenant King, and other officers belonging to both ſhips, extended their excurſions ſtill farther into the country, and found it beautifully diverſified with hills and vallies, ſtately groves of trees, rivers, meadows, and lawns of vaſt extent, with thickets full of birds of the moſt beautiful plumage, and of various notes, whoſe melody was truly enchanting. Here were lagoons full of ducks, teal, and other wild fowl, of which great numbers were ſhot; while our naturaliſts were loading themſelves with the ſpontaneous productions of the ſoil; a ſoil we may venture to ſay, the richeſt and moſt fertile of any in the habitable globe, the trees growing to an aſtoniſhing height and ſize, not leſs beautiful to the eye than grateful to the ſenſe of ſmelling. It was now the time when nature pours forth her luxuriant exuberance to cloath this country with a rich variety; but, what appeared ſtrange to every obſerver, the few natives we ſaw were wholly inſenſible of thoſe bleſſings, and ſeemed to live like the beaſts of the foreſt in roving parties, without arts of any kind, ſleeping in ſummer like dogs, under the hollow ſides of the trees, or in the wattled huts made with the low branches of ever-green ſhrubs, ſtuck in the ground at ſmall diſtances from each other, and meeting together at the top.

We had, in the morning, obſerved ſeveral of the natives ſauntering along the ſhore, from which we concluded, that, though their conſternation had made them leave us rather abruptly the preceding day, they thought we intended them no miſchief, and were deſirous of renewing the intercourſe. Of this we were ſoon convinced; for we had not been long landed before 20 of them, men and boys, joined us, without expreſſing the leaſt ſign of fear or diſtruſt; one of whom was diſtinguiſhed not only by his deformity, but by the drollery of his geſticulations, and the ſeeming humour of his ſpeeches, though we could only gueſs at their general import, the language ſpoken here being wholly unintelligible to us. Our Commander thought this to be different from that ſpoken by the inhabitants of the more northern parts of this country, whom he met with in his firſt voyage; which is not extraordinary, ſince thoſe we now ſaw, and thoſe we then viſited, differ in ſeveral reſpects: particularly with regard to the texture of their hair. The natives whom the Captain met with at Endeavour River in 1769, are ſaid, by him, " to have naturally long and black hair, though it be univerſally cropped ſhort. In general it is ſtrait; but ſometimes it has a ſlight curl. We ſaw none that was not matted and filthy. Their beards were of the ſame colour with the hair, and buſhy and thick." At this time captain Cook was unwilling to allow that the hair of the natives we now ſaw in Adventure Bay was woolly, fancying that his people, who firſt obſerved this, had been deceived, from its being clotted with greaſe and red ochre. But Lieutenant King prevailed on him afterwards, to examine carefully the hair of the boys, which was generally, as well as that of the women, free from this dirt; and then the captain owned himſelf ſatisfied, that it was naturally woolly. Perhaps this circumſtance was the occaſion of his being deceived, when he was in Endeavour River, for he ſays expreſsly, " they ſaw none that was not matted and filthy." Some of our preſent viſitors had a ſlip of kangooroo ſkin round their ancles; and others wore round their necks three or four folds of ſmall cord, made of the fur of ſome animal. They ſeemed not to value iron, but were apparently pleaſed with the medals and ſtrings of beads that were given them. They did not ſeem even to know the uſe of fiſh-hooks, though it is more than probable, that they were acquainted with ſome method of catching fiſh, which would naturally be adopted by thoſe who inhabit a ſea-coaſt, and who derive no part of their ſuſtenance from the productions of the ground. They rejected the ſort of fiſh we offered them, yet it was evident, that ſhell-fiſh, at leaſt, made a part of their food, from the heaps of muſcle-ſhells we ſaw near the ſhore, and about the uſual places of their reſort. Their wigwams, or habitations, were ſmall hovels or ſheds, built of ſticks, and covered with the bark of a tree. We had good reaſon to ſuppoſe, that they ſometimes took up their reſidence in the trunks of large trees, hollowed out by fire. In or near their huts, and wherever there was a heap of ſhells, there we perceived the remains of fire; an indubitable proof that they do not eat their food raw. Nor do they ſeem ſuch miſerable wretches as the natives whom Dampier mentions to have ſeen on its weſtern coaſt. Yet, we muſt here obſerve, that Dampier's miſerable wretches, on the weſtern coaſt of New Holland, in many inſtances, bear a ſtriking reſemblance to thoſe ſeen by captain Cook at Van Diemen's Land: as (1ſt.) Their ſoon becoming familiar with ſtrangers. (2nd.) As to their perſons; being ſtraight of ſtature and thin; their ſkin thick and black; their hair black, ſhort, and curled, like thoſe of the negroes of Guinea; with wide mouth. (3dly.) As to their mean condition; having no houſes, no garments, no canoes, no inſtrument to catch large fiſh; feeding on broiled muſcles, cockles, and periwinkles; having no fruits of the earth; their weapons a ſtraight pole, ſharpened and hardened at the end, &c. But the chief peculiarities of Dampier's New Hollanders, on account of which they are improperly called miſerable wretches, are, (1ſt.) Their eye-lids being always half cloſed, to keep the flies out, which were exceedingly troubleſome there; and (2ndly.) Their wanting the two fore-teeth of the upper jaw, and having no beards.

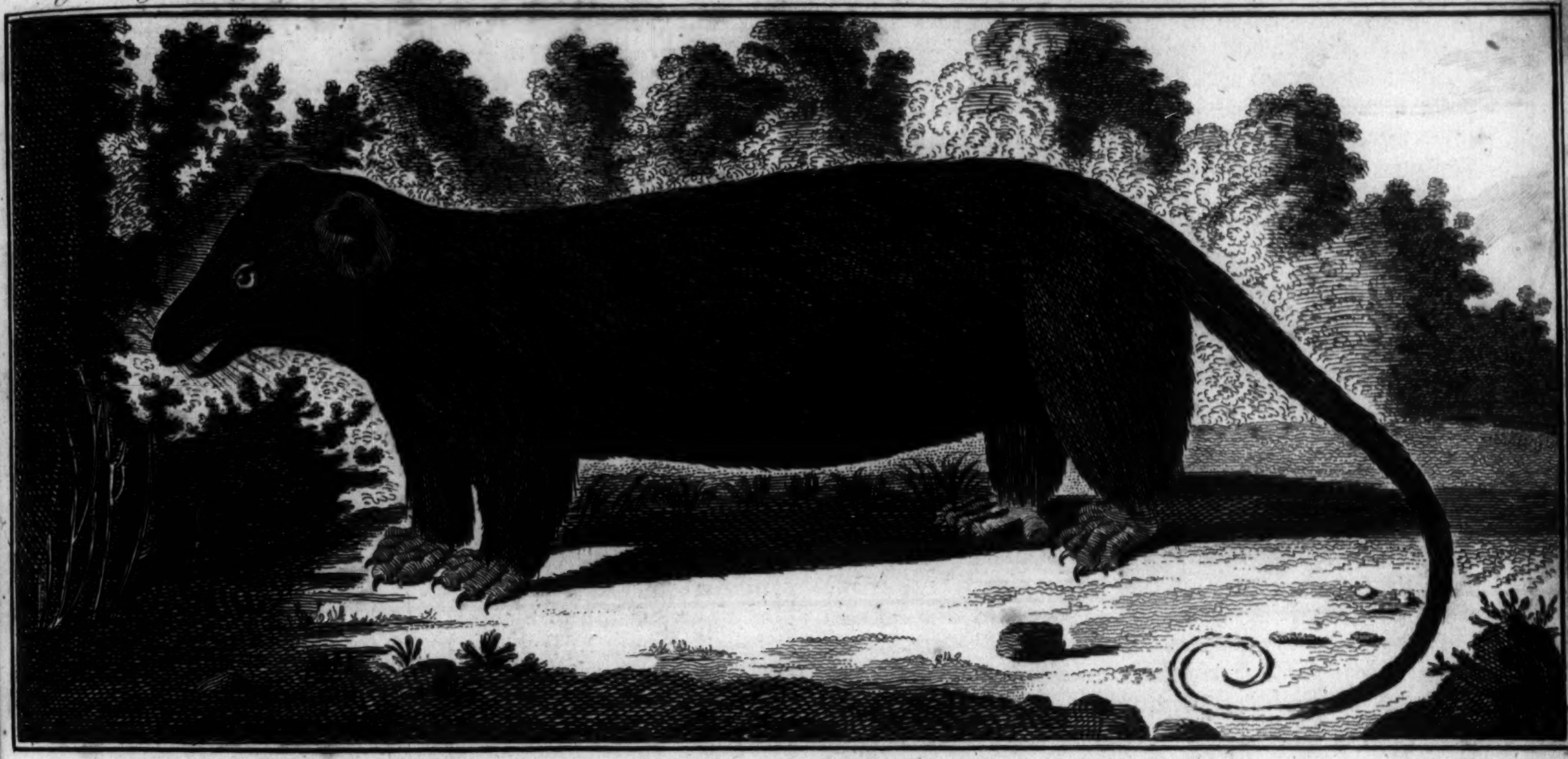
When the party with lieutenant King, with whom was Mr. Anderſon, captain Cook's ſurgeon, had landed, the natives appeared diveſted of their fears, and iſſued from the thickets like herds of deer from a foreſt. They were armed with lances about two feet long, terminated with a ſhark's tooth or piece of bone ſharpened to a point, which they threw to a great diſtance, and theſe were the whole of their armour. Some women and children were introduced to Mr. King, to whom he gave preſents of ſuch trifles as he had about him. He alſo offered all of them nails, knives, beads, and other toys, to which they paid little or no attention, but were greedy after ſhreds of red cloth. Mr. Anderſon having, with his uſual diligence, ſpent the few days we continued in Adventure Bay, in examining the natural productions of the country and its inhabitans, we ſhall here inſert the ſubſtance of his remarks; and we doubt not but that the obſervations of this ingenious gentleman, will, by the curious part of our readers, always be thought worth attending to. There is, obſerves Mr. Anderſon, a beautiful ſandy beach, about two miles long, at the bottom of Adventure Bay, formed, to all appearance, by the particles which the ſea waſhes from a white ſand ſtone, that in many places bounds the ſhore. This beach, about two miles long, is well adapted for hauling the ſeine. Behind it is a plain, with a brackiſh lake, out of which we caught, by angling, ſome whitiſh bream, and ſmall trout. The parts adjoining the bay are moſtly hilly; and both theſe and the flat are adorned with one continued foreſt of tall trees, rende ed almoſt impaſſable to ſtrangers, by breaks of fern, ſhrubs, and fallen trees: but on the ſides of ſome of the hills, where the trees are thin, the only interruption is a coarſe graſs. Northward of the bay is low land, ſtretching farther than the eye can reach, covered only with wood in certain ſpots; but an opportunity was not afforded us of examining in what peculiarities it differed from the hilly country. The ſoil on the flat land, and on the lower part of the hills is ſandy, or conſiſts of a yellowiſh earth, and in ſome parts of a reddiſh clay; but farther up the hills, it is of a grey tough caſt, and appeared to be very poor. Between the hills, the water drains down from their ſides, forming at laſt ſmall brooks, ſufficient to ſupply us with water: yet, upon the whole, this country bears many marks of being dry; and, ſetting aſide its wood, might be compared to Africa, about the Cape of Good Hope, (though that lies 10 degrees farther northward) rather than to New Zealand, on its other ſide, in the ſame latitude, where every valley, however ſmall, is furniſhed with a conſiderable ſtream of water. We found the heat here exceſſive; inſomuch, that birds were ſeldom killed an hour or two, before they were almoſt covered with maggots. No mineral bodies, nor ſtones of any other kind than the white ſand ſtone, were obſerved by us; nor could we find any vegetables that afforded the ſmalleſt ſubſiſtence for men. The foreſt trees are all of one kind, and generally ſtraight; branching but little till towards the top. The bark is white, which makes them appear at a diſtance, as if they had been peeled. The leaves of this tree are long, narrow, and pointed; and it bears cluſters of white ſmall flowers, whoſe cups were, at this time, plentifully ſcattered about the ground, with another ſort reſembling them ſomewhat in ſhape, but much larger; which makes it probable that there are two ſpecies of this tree. The bark of the ſmaller branches, fruit, and leaves, have an agreeable pungent taſte, and aromatic ſmell, not unlike peppermint. The next tree obſerved was a ſmall one, about 10 feet high, branching pretty much, with narrow leaves, and a large, yellow, cylindrical flower, conſiſting only of a vaſt number of filaments; which, being ſhed, leave a fruit like a pine-top. Both theſe trees are unknown in Europe. Of plants, by no means numerous, we found a ſpecies of gladiolus, ruſh, bell-flower, ſamphire, wood-ſorrel, milk-wort, cud-weed, Job's tears, moſſes, and ſeveral kinds of fern; but the ſpecies are either common, or, at leaſt, found in ſome other countries, particularly New Zealand. The only quadruped we ſaw diſtinctly was a ſpecies of opoſſum, about twice the ſize of a large rat; of a duſky colour above, tinged with a brown or ruſty caſt, and whitiſh below. About the third of the tail, towards its tip, is white, and bare underneath; by which it probably hangs on the branches of trees, as it climbs theſe, and lives on berries. The kangooroo, found further northward in New Holland, may alſo be ſuppoſed to inhabit here, as ſome of the natives had pieces of the ſkin of that animal. From the dung we ſaw almoſt every where, and from the narrow tracks perceived among the ſhrubbery, it ſhould ſeem alſo, that they are in conſiderable numbers. The principal ſorts of birds are brown hawks or eagles, crows, large pigeons, yellowiſh paroquets, and a ſpecies which we called motacilla cyanea, from the beautiful azure colour of its neck and head. On the ſhore were ſeveral gulls, black oyſter-catchers, or ſea-pies, and plovers of a ſtone colour. Theſe birds are all ſo ſcarce and ſhy, that they muſt have been harraſſed by the natives, who, perhaps, obtain much of their ſubſiſtence from them. About the lake behind the beach, a few wild ducks were ſeen, and ſome ſhags uſed to perch upon the high leafleſs trees near the ſhore. We obſerved in the woods ſome blackiſh ſnakes; and we killed an unknown large lizard, 15 inches long, and ſix round, beautifully clouded with black and yellow. The ſea affords a much greater plenty, and, at leaſt, as great a variety as the land. Among a variety of fiſh we caught rays, nurſes, leather jackets, bream, ſoles, flounders, gurnards, ſmall ſpotted mullets, a little fiſh with a ſilver band on its ſide, and elephant fiſhes, which laſt are the moſt numerous, and, though inferior to many others, are very palatable food. The next in number, and ſuperior in goodneſs, is a ſort none of us recollected to have ſeen before. It partakes of the nature both of a round and flat fiſh, having the eyes placed very near each other, the fore part of the body much flattened or depreſſed, and the reſt rounded. It is of a browniſh ſandy colour, with ruſty ſpots on the upper part, and whitiſh below. From the quantity of ſlime it was always covered with, it ſeems to live after the manner of flat fiſh, at the bottom. On the rocks are plenty of muſcles, and other ſmall ſhell-fiſh: alſo great numbers of ſea-ſtars, ſmall limpets, and large quantities of ſponge, one ſort of which, that is thrown on the ſea-ſhore, but not very common, has a moſt delicate texture. Upon the beach were found many pretty Meduſa's-heads; and the ſtinking ſea-hare, which, as mentioned by ſome authors, has the property of taking off the hair by the acrimony of its juice; but the ſort we examined, was deficient in this reſpect. The inſects, though few, are here in conſiderable variety; ſuch as graſs-hoppers, butterflies, and ſeveral ſorts of moths, finely variegated. Here are two ſorts of dragon-flies, gad, and camel-flies; ſeveral ſorts of ſpiders; and ſome ſcorpions; the laſt are rare. But the moſt troubleſome, though leſs numerous tribe of inſects, are the muſquitoes; and a large black ant, the pain of whoſe bite is almoſt intolerable, during the ſhort time it laſts.

The inhabitants, with whom we were converſant, ſeemed mild and chearful, with little of that ſavage appearance, common to people in their ſituation: nor did they diſcover the leaſt reſerve, or jealouſy, in their intercourſe with ſtrangers. With reſpect to perſonal activity or genius, they diſcovered little of either: as to the laſt, they have, to appearance, leſs than the half-animated natives of Terra del Fuego, who have not invention ſufficient to make cloathing for defending themſelves from the rigour of their climate, though furniſhed with materials. They diſplay, however, ſome contrivance, in the manner of cutting their arms and bodies in lines of different directions, raiſed above the ſurface of the ſkin. Their indifference for our preſents, their general inattention, and want of curioſity, were very remarkable, and teſtified no acuteneſs of underſtanding. Their complexion is a dull black, which they ſometimes heighten, as we ſuppoſed, by ſmutting their bodies; for a mark was left behind on any clean ſubſtance, when they handled it. Their hair is perfectly woolly, and is clotted with greaſe and red ochre, like that of the Hottentots. Their noſes, though not flat, are broad and full, as is the caſe with moſt Indians; and the lower part of the face projects conſiderably. Their eyes are of a moderate ſize, and though not very quick or piercing, they give the countenance a frank, chearful, and pleaſing caſt. Their teeth are broad, but not equal, nor well ſet; and either from nature, or from dirt, not of ſo clear a white as is uſual among people of a black colour. Their mouths are rather wide; but this appearance may be heightened, by wearing their beards long, and clotted with paint, in the ſame manner as the hair on their heads. Upon the whole, they are well proportioned, though the belly is rather protuberant. Their favourite attitude is to ſtand with one ſide forward, and one hand graſping, acroſs the back, the oppoſite arm, which, on this occaſion, hangs down by the ſide that projects. What the poets tell us of Fawns and Satyrs dwelling in woods

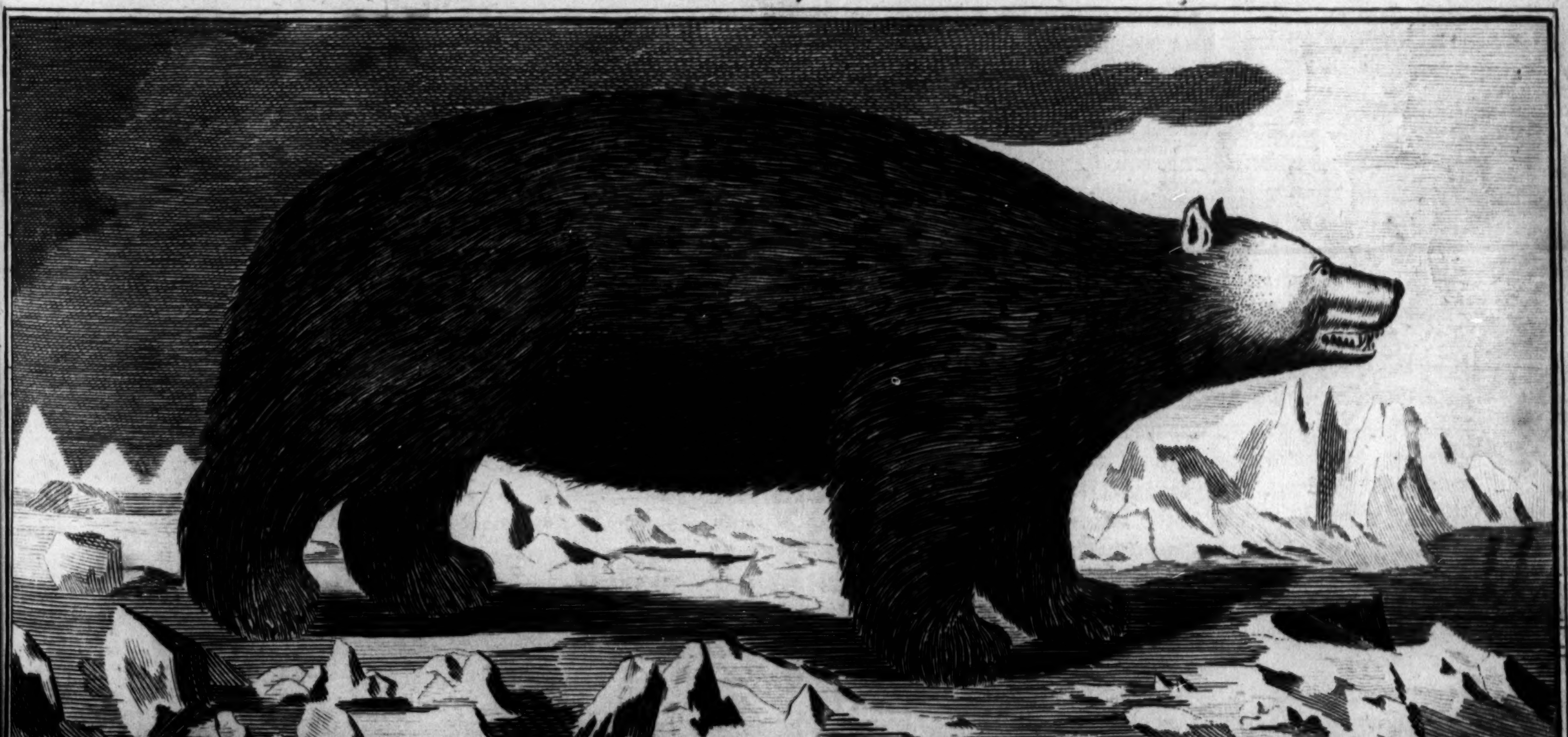
and



A Young SEA OTTER *found off the* NORTH WEST COAST *of* AMERICA.



An OPOSSUM, *a* Quadruped *of* VAN DIEMEN's LAND.



A WHITE BEAR *found in the* PACIFIC OCEAN *near* ICY CAPE.

BRITISH
7 FE 90
MUSEUM

and hollow trees, is here realized. Near the ſhore in the bay we ſaw ſome wretched conſtructions of ſticks, covered with bark, which like the wigwams of the Indians, ſeemed to have been only temporary abodes. Many of their largeſt trees were converted into more durable habitations. The trunks of theſe were hollowed out, to the height of ſix or ſeven feet, by means of fire. That they ſometimes dwell in them, was evident, from their having hearths in the middle made of clay, round which four or five perſons might ſit. Theſe places of ſhelter are permanent; for they leave one ſide of the tree ſound, ſo that it continues growing with great luxuriance. It does not appear that theſe people are cannibals, or, indeed, that they feed upon fleſh, as no appearance of any ſuch food could be traced among them. Fiſh, fruit, and the natural productions of the earth, were the only articles of food, that we ſaw about their fire-places; but, what was ſtill more ſtrange, there was neither canoe nor boat to be ſeen, though the country abounds with ſuch excellent trees. One might be apt to think, that theſe natives are a ſort of fugitives, who have been driven to ſubſiſt here in a ſtate of baniſhment: but that they originate from the ſame ſtock with thoſe who inhabit the northern parts of New Holland is highly probable: and though they differ in many reſpects, their diſſimilarity may be reaſonably accounted for, from the united conſiderations of diſtance of place, length of time, total ſeparation, and diverſity of climate. Theſe will account for greater differences, both as to the perſons, and as to the cuſtoms of different people, than really exiſt between our Van Diemen's land natives, and thoſe deſcribed by Dampier, and in captain Cook's firſt voyage. This is certain, that the figure of one of thoſe ſeen in Endeavour river, and repreſented in a journal of that voyage, (now before us) very much reſembles our viſitors in Adventure Bay. That there is not the like reſemblance in their languages, is a circumſtance that need not create any difficulty: for though the agreement of languages of people living diſtant from each other, may be aſſumed as a ſtrong argument for their having ſprung from one common ſource, diſagreement of language is by no means a proof of the contrary; and we muſt have a more intimate acquaintance with the languages ſpoken here, and in the more northern part of New Holland, before we can be warranted to pronounce that they are totally different. Nay, we have good grounds for the contrary opinion; for we found, that the animal called kangooroo, at Endeavour river, was known under the ſame name here; and we need not obſerve, that it is ſcarcely poſſible to ſuppoſe, that this was not tranſmitted from one another, but accidentally adopted by two nations, differing in language and extraction. Beſides, as it ſeems very improbable, that the inhabitants of Van Diemen's land ſhould ever have loſt the uſe of canoes or ſailing veſſels, if they had been originally conveyed hither by ſea, we muſt neceſſarily admit that they, as well as the kangooroo itſelf, have been ſtragglers by land from the more northern parts of the country. If there is any weight in this remark of Mr. Anderſon's, it will, while it traces the origin of the people, at the ſame time, ſerve to fix another point, (if captain Cook and captain Furneaux have not decided it already) namely, that New Holland is no where totally divided from the ſea into iſlands; and Dampier, we find, was of this opinion. As the inhabitants of New Holland ſeem all to be of the ſame extraction, there is nothing peculiar in any of them: on the contrary, they much reſemble many of the ſavages whom we have ſeen in the iſlands of Tanna and Manicola. There is even ſome reaſon for ſuppoſing, that they may originally have come from the ſame place with all the natives of the Pacific Ocean; for of about ten words we found means to get from them, that which is uſed to expreſs cold, is very ſimilar to that of New Zealand and Otaheite; the firſt, or Van Diemen's land, being mallareede, the ſecond makka'reede, and the third mar'reede. Upon a diligent enquiry, and an accurate compariſon drawn from the affinity of languages, concludes our curious obſerver, it will probably be found, that all the people from New Holland, eaſtward to Eaſter iſland, have been derived from the ſame common root. The ſentiments of our ſurgeon, on this ſubject, are conformable to, and coincide with thoſe of Mr. Marſden, in his hiſtory of Sumatra, who obſerves, "That one general language prevailed, (however mutilated and changed in the courſe of time,) throughout all this portion of the world, from Madagaſcar to the moſt diſtant diſcoveries eaſtward; of which the Malay is a dialect, much corrupted or refined by a mixture of tongues. This very extenſive ſimilarity of language indicates a common origin of the inhabitants; but the circumſtances and progreſs of their ſeparation are wrapped in the darkeſt veil of obſcurity."

In the afternoon captain Cook went again on aſhore, and found the graſs cutters on Penguin iſland, where they had met with a plentiful crop of excellent graſs. We laboured hard till the evening, and then having provided a ſufficient quantity of what was moſt wanted, returned on board. In the courſe of this day captain Cook preſented many of the natives with medals, inſcribed with the names of the ſhips and the commanders, with the date of the year, and that of his Majeſty's reign, in order to perpetuate the memory of this voyage, provided any future European adventurer, prompted by curioſity, ſhould think fit to reviſit theſe remote parts of the ſouthern hemiſphere. During our continuance on this coaſt, all hands were employed in wooding, watering, over-hauling the rigging, and getting every thing in readineſs to continue our voyage; and having had either light airs from the E. or calms, little or no time was probably loſt by our ſtaying here a few days. Our fiſhermen alſo were no leſs ſucceſsful in fiſhing, during our ſtay, than our fowlers in ſhooting wild fowl; inſomuch, that nothing was wanting to make our living here delicious.

This land was diſcovered in November 1642, by Taſman, who gave it the name of Van Diemen's Land. Captain Furneaux touched at it in March 1773. It is the ſouthern point of New Holland, which is by far the largeſt iſland in the known world, and might well be taken for, though it does not deſerve the name of, a continent. The land is diverſified with hills and vallies, and is well wooded. Here is likewiſe plenty of water. The beſt, or what is moſt convenient for ſhipping, is a rivulet, which is one of ſeveral that fall into a ſmall lake, or pond, that lies behind the beach at the head of the bay. It there mixes with the ſea water; ſo that it muſt be taken up above this pond, which may be done without any great trouble. The bay upon the whole may be conſidered as a ſafe road; for the only wind to which it is expoſed is the N. E. and as this blows from Maria's iſlands, it can bring no very great ſea along with it. The bottom is clean, good holding ground; and the depth of water from 12 to 4 fathoms. The longitude of Adventure Bay was determined by a great number of lunar obſervations, and was found to be 147 deg. 29 min. E. Its latitude is 43 deg. 21 min. 20 ſec. S. We ſhall conclude the hiſtory of this day, the 29th of January, with a remark of captain Cook's, reſpecting the conduct of Europeans amongſt Savages to their women, which the Captain thinks, "is highly blameable; as it creates a jealouſy in their men, that may be attended with conſequences fatal to the ſucceſs of the common enterprize, and to the whole body of adventurers, without advancing the private purpoſe of the individual, or enabling him to gain the object of his wiſhes. I believe it has been generally found among uncivilized people, that where the women are eaſy of acceſs, the men are the firſt to offer them to ſtrangers; and that, where this is not the caſe, neither the allurement of preſents, nor the opportunity of privacy, will be likely to have the deſired effect. This obſervation, I am ſure, will hold good, throughout all the parts of the South Sea where I have been. Why then ſhould men act ſo abſurd a part, as to riſk their own ſafety, and that of all their companions, in purſuit of a gratification which they have no probability of obtaining;" and, which if obtained, we may add, is not only breaking a divine command, but contrary to an indiſpenſible obligation, of doing as we wiſh, in like circumſtances, to be done unto.

On the 30th, having got plenty of wood and water on board, and whatever elſe the country afforded, the ſignal was made for unmooring; and, a light weſterly breeze ſpringing up, at eight o'clock A.M. we weighed anchor, and took our departure from Adventure Bay. By ten we had put to ſea, and both ſhips were under ſail; ſoon after which, the wind became ſoutherly and produced a perfect ſtorm; but veering in the evening to the E. and N. E. its fury began to abate. This gale was attended with an almoſt intolerable heat, which, however, was of ſo ſhort a continuance, that ſome of our company did not perceive it. In the night, between the 6th and 7th of February, a marine belonging to the Diſcovery fell over-board, and was drowned, which was the ſecond misfortune of the kind her crew had experienced ſince her departure from England. We held on our direct courſe for New Zealand; and on Monday, the 10th, we deſcried Rock's Point, which bore S. E. by S. about eight or nine leagues diſtant: upon which we ſteered for Cape Farewell and Stephens's Iſland.

CHAP. III.

The Reſolution and Diſcovery, having arrived at New Zealand, anchor in their old ſtation in Queen Charlotte's Sound—Tranſactions there, and intercourſe with the New Zealanders.—Information gained from the natives with regard to the maſſacre of the Adventure's boat's-crew—Two violent ſtorms—An account of Kahoora, who headed the party that killed our people—Two youths embark on board the Reſolution to attend Omiah—Hiſtorical, critical, and nautical obſervations—The adjacent country of Queen Charlotte's Sound deſcribed—The ſoil, plants, animals, &c.—A deſcription of the perſons and cuſtoms of the inhabitants—Their dreſs, ornaments, buildings, arts, canoes, boats, weapons, &c.—Their horrid cruelty to their enemies, when priſoners, whoſe bodies they mangle and eat.—Extract from a vocabulary of their language.

HAVING made the land of New Zealand, we ſteered for Cape Farewell, which, on Tueſday the 11th, at day-break, bore S. by W. diſtant about four leagues. In rounding the Cape we had fifty fathoms water over a ſandy bottom. At nine o'clock P. M. we came up with Stephens's Iſland, and by ten, the next morning, being the 12th, we caſt anchor, and took our ſtation in Ship Cove, Queen Charlotte's Sound. In the afternoon we landed a number of empty water caſks, and cleared a place for two obſervatories. We likewiſe ſet up tents for the guard, and of ſuch of our people, whoſe buſineſs might make it neceſſary for them to remain on ſhore. In the mean time ſeveral canoes, filled with natives, came along ſide of the ſhips, but very few of thoſe who were in them would venture aboard. This appeared the more extraordinary, as captain Cook was well known to them all: one, in particular, had been treated by him with diſtinguiſhed kindneſs, during his ſtay here on a former voyage: yet now, neither profeſſions of friendſhip, nor preſents, could prevail upon this man to come into the ſhip. We could only account for this reſerve by ſuppoſing, that we had reviſited their country, in order to revenge the death of captain Furneaux's people, who had been killed here. But upon captain Cook's aſſuring them of the continuance of his friendſhip, and that he ſhould not moleſt them on that account, they ſoon laid aſide all appearance of ſuſpicion and diſtruſt. On Thurſday the 13th, we pitched two tents, one for each ſhip, on the ſame ſpot where we had formerly erected them. We alſo ſet up the obſervatories, in which Meſſrs. King and Bailey immediately commenced their aſtronomical operations. Two of our men were employed in brewing ſpruce beer; while others filled the water caſks, collected graſs for the cattle, and cut wood. Thoſe who remained on board were occupied in repairing the rigging, and performing the neceſſary duties of the ſhips. A guard of marines was appointed for the protection of the different parties on ſhore, and arms were given to the workmen, to repel all attacks from the natives, if they had been inclined to moleſt us; but this did not appear to be the caſe: for during the courſe of this day, a great number of families came from different parts of the coaſt, and took up their reſidence cloſe by us; ſo there was not a ſpot in the cove where a hut could be put up, that was not occupied by them, except the place where we had fixed our little encampment. The facility with which they build their temporary habitations, is very remarkable. They have been ſeen to erect more than twenty of them on a ſpot of ground, that, not an hour before, was covered with ſhrubs and plants. They generally bring ſome part of the materials with them; the reſt they find upon the premiſes. Our captain was preſent when a number of people landed, and built one of their villages. The canoes had no ſooner reached the ſhore, than the men leaped out, and took poſſeſſion of a piece of ground, by tearing up the plants and ſhrubs, or ſticking up ſome part of the framing of a hut. They then returned to their canoes, and ſecured their weapons, by ſetting them up againſt a tree, or placing them in ſuch a poſition, that they could be laid hold of in an inſtant. While the men were thus employed, the women were not idle. Some were appointed to take care of the canoes; others to ſecure the proviſions, and the few utenſils in their poſſeſſion; and the reſt went to gather dry ſticks, that a fire might be prepared for dreſſing their victuals. Theſe huts are ſufficiently calculated for affording ſhelter from the rain and wind. The ſame tribe, or family, however large, generally aſſociate and build together; ſo that we frequently ſaw a village, as well as their large towns, divided into different diſtricts, by low palliſades, or a ſimilar method of ſeparation. We received conſiderable advantage from the natives thus coming to take up their reſidence with us: for every day ſome of them were employed in catching fiſh, a good ſhare of which we generally procured by exchanges. This ſupply, and what our own nets and lines afforded us, was ſo ample, that we ſeldom were in want of fiſh. Beſides which, we had other refreſhments in abundance. Celery, ſcurvy-graſs, and portable ſoup, were boiled with the peaſe and wheat, for both ſhips companies, every day, and they had ſpruce beer for their drink. Such a regimen would ſoon have removed all ſeeds of the ſcurvy from our people, if any of them had contracted it; but the truth is, on our arrival here, we had only two invalids in both ſhips, on the ſick liſt, and theſe were on board the Reſolution. We were occaſionally viſited by other natives, beſides thoſe who lived cloſe to us. Their articles of traffic were fiſh, curioſities, and women; the two firſt of which were eaſily diſpoſed of, but the latter did not come to a good market, our crew having conceived a diſlike to them. Captain Cook obſerves upon this occaſion, that he connived at a connection with women, becauſe he could not prevent it; but that he never encouraged it, becauſe he dreaded the conſequences. "I know, indeed, ſays the captain, that many men are of opinion, that ſuch an intercourſe is one of the greateſt ſecurities amongſt ſavages; and perhaps they who, either from neceſſity or choice, are to remain and ſettle with them, may find it ſo. But with travellers and tranſient viſitors, ſuch as we were, it is generally otherwiſe; and, in our ſituation, a connection with their women betrays more men than it ſaves. What elſe can be reaſonably expected, ſince all their views are ſelfiſh, without the leaſt mixture of regard or attachment.

My own experience, at leaſt, which hath been pretty extenſive, hath not pointed out to me one inſtance to the contrary."

Among our occaſional viſitors was a chief called Kahoora, who headed the party that cut off captain Furneaux's people; and himſelf killed Mr. Rowe, the officer who commanded. He was far from being beloved by his countrymen, ſome of whom even importuned captain Cook to kill him, at the ſame time expreſſing their diſapprobation of him in the ſevereſt terms. A ſtriking proof of the diviſions that prevail among theſe people occurred to us; for the inhabitants of each village, by turns, ſolicited our Commander to deſtroy the other. On the 15th, we made an excurſion, in ſearch after graſs, and viſited a Hippah, or fortified village, at the S. W. point of the iſland of Motuara, and the places where our garden had been planted. We found many of the plants and roots in a flouriſhing condition in the ſpots that had been cultivated by captain Furneaux's people, but of the ſeeds ſown by Mr. Bailey in 1773, not the leaſt veſtige remained. It is probable they had been rooted out to make room for buildings, when the village was reinhabited. At the other gardens, now wholly over-run with weeds, we found cabbages, onions, leeks, purſlain, radiſhes, muſtard, and a few potatoes. Theſe laſt, brought from the Cape of Good Hope, had been greatly improved by change of ſoil, and by proper cultivation, would be ſuperior to thoſe produced in moſt other countries: but the New Zealanders, though fond of this root, had not taken the trouble to plant a ſingle one; but were it not for the difficulty of clearing the ground where potatoes had once been planted, there would not have been any now remaining. As to the hippah, we found no people in it, but the houſes and palliſades had been rebuilt, and were now in a ſtate of good repair; and we ſaw evident marks of its having been inhabited not long before.

On the 16th, the two Captains, accompanied by Omiah and ſeveral officers, ſet out, in five boats, to collect fodder for the cattle. Having proceeded about three leagues up the ſound, they landed on the E. ſide, where they cut a quantity of graſs, ſufficient to load two launches. On their return down the ſound, they viſited Graſs Cove, the place where captain Furneaux's people had been murdered. While on this memorable ſpot, curioſity induced them to enquire into the circumſtances attending the melancholy fate of our countrymen. Here they met with captain Cook's old friend Pedro, who is mentioned by him in the hiſtory of his ſecond voyage. He and another New Zealander received them on the beach, armed with the ſpear and patoo, though not without manifeſt ſigns of fear. Their apprehenſions, however, were quickly diſſipated by a few preſents, which brought down to the ſhore two or three other families. Omiah we are informed was made uſe of as an interpreter between our people and the natives, his language being a dialect of that of New Zealand: but in a journal, belonging to a gentleman on board the Diſcovery, this circumſtance is differently related, and as this, and the character of Omiah, is contrary to that given by the company of the Reſolution, we ſhall here lay it before our readers. "Omiah, who could ſcarce make himſelf underſtood, nor indeed could he underſtand the natives ſo well as many of the common men who had been frequently here before; yet being a favourite with Captain Cook, was always preferred when in company, to confer with the natives, and was deſired by him, when he met any of them alone, to queſtion them concerning the maſſacre of our people that had happened ſome time ago, and from what cauſe it took its riſe; and he hoped to come at the truth, as the natives, in general, were friendly and ready to furniſh the ſhips with whatever their country afforded. But from what Omiah was able to learn, captain Cook received no ſatisfaction. It ſhould ſeem, that in Otaheite there are two dialects ſpoken, as in almoſt every other part of the world; one by the prieſts, and another by the common people. This was apparent here; for Tupia who accompanied Mr. Banks to this place, in captain Cook's ſecond voyage round the world, could converſe with the natives fluently; and was in ſuch eſteem with them, that his memory is held in veneration from one end of the iſland to the other at this day; Obedee likewiſe, who was of the claſs of arees, or gentlemen, and who accompanied captain Cook, in his laſt voyage, from Otaheite to the Hebrides, New Zealand, Eaſter Iſland, and the Marquiſas, could converſe with the New Zealanders, though Omiah could not, a proof that he was of the inferior claſs in his own country. While we continued here, he found frequent opportunities to diſcover his real character, when from under the watchful eye of his protector and friend. He had grog always at his command, and was ſometimes entruſted to give it out, eſpecially when any extra quantity was to be delivered by the Captain's orders for hard ſervice, or on days of feſtivity. At thoſe times he was cloſely watched, and was never known to run into exceſs; but when the Captain was abroad for whole days and nights, and he left in charge of liquors, he ſet no bounds to his exceſs, and would drink, till he wallowed like a ſwine in his own filth. At thoſe times he outacted the ſavage in every kind of ſenſuality; and when he could no longer act the brute, he would often act the drunkard; ſtorming, roaring, brandiſhing his arms, and by the contortions of his mouth and face, ſetting at defiance, after the manner of his country, the whole hoſt of his enemies, who were repreſented by the common ſailors, with whom, upon theſe occaſions, he was generally ſurrounded; and who knew how to practiſe upon him, as he endeavoured to do upon the poor Zealanders. He was indeed far from being ill natured, moroſe, or vindictive; but he was ſometimes ſulky. He was naturally humble, but had grown proud by habit; and pride ſo ill became him, that he was always glad when he could put it off, and appear among the petty officers with his natural eaſe. This was the true character of Omiah, (in the opinion of our journaliſt), who might be ſaid, perhaps, by accident, to have been raiſed to the higheſt pitch of human happineſs, only to ſuffer the oppoſite extreme, by being again reduced to the loweſt order of rational beings."

Pedro, and the reſt who were preſent of the natives, anſwered all the queſtions put by Omiah, by captain Cook's orders, without reſerve, like men who had no concern in the unfortunate tranſaction at Graſs Cove. Their information imported, that while the boat's-crew of the Adventure were at dinner, ſome of the natives ſtole, or ſnatched from them, ſome fiſh and bread, for which offence they received ſome blows: a quarrel enſued immediately, and two of the New Zealanders were ſhot dead, by the only two muſquets that were fired, for before a third was diſcharged the natives ruſhed furiouſly upon our people, and, being ſuperior in number, deſtroyed them all. Pedro, and his companions, alſo pointed out the ſpot where the quarrel happened, and the place where the boat lay, in which a black ſervant of captain Furneaux had been left to take care of it. According to another account, this negro was the occaſion of the quarrel; for one of the natives ſtealing ſomething out of the boat, the black gave him a violent blow with a ſtick. His countrymen hearing his cries, at ſome diſtance, imagined he was killed, and immediately attacked our people, who before they could reach the boat, or prepare themſelves againſt the unexpected aſſault, fell a ſacrifice to the fury of the exaſperated ſavages. The former of theſe accounts was corroborated by the teſtimony of many other natives, who could have no intereſt in diſguiſing the truth. The latter account reſts upon the authority of the young New Zealander, who quitted his country for the ſake of going with us, and who, therefore, could not, as we may reaſonably ſuppoſe, be inclined to deceive us. As they all agreed, that the affray happened while the boat's-crew were at dinner, both the accounts may be true; for it is by no means improbable, that, while ſome of the iſlanders were ſtealing from the man who had been left to guard the boat, others might take equal liberties with thoſe who were on ſhore. It appears, that there was no premeditated plan of bloodſhed, and that, if theſe thefts had not been rather too haſtily reſented, all miſchief would have been avoided; for Kahoora's greateſt enemies acknowledged, that he had no previous intention of quarrelling. With regard to the boat, ſome ſaid, that it had been pulled to pieces and burnt; while others aſſerted, that it had been carried off by a party of ſtrangers. We have received from a gentleman on board the Diſcovery ſome other remarkable particulars, relating to this myſterious affair, included in the relation of an adventure, which, though the parties are not of the higheſt claſs, our readers, notwithſtanding, may think worth relating.

Belonging to the Diſcovery was a youth, with whom a young Zealander girl, about fourteen years of age, fell deſperately in love, nor was ſhe wholly indifferent to our adventurer. What time he could ſpare, he generally retired with her, and they ſpent the day, but oftener the night, in a kind of ſilent converſation, in which, though words were wanting, their meaning was perfectly underſtood. Moments fly rapidly on that are ſpent in mutual endeavours to pleaſe. She, on her part, had no will but his own, and he, in return, was no leſs attentive to hers. Minds ſo diſpoſed naturally incline to render themſelves agreeable. A conformity in manners and dreſs become ſignificant ſigns between lovers. Though he appeared amiable in her eyes in the dreſs of a ſtranger, yet he wiſhed to render himſelf more ſo, by ornamenting his perſon after the faſhion of her country; accordingly he ſubmitted to be tattowed from head to foot; nor was ſhe leſs ſolicitous to ſet off herſelf to the beſt advantage. She had fine hair, and her chief pride was in the dreſs of her head. The pains ſhe took, and the decorations ſhe uſed, would have done honour to an European beauty, had not one thing been wanting to render it ſtill more pleaſing. Ghowannahe (that was her name) though young, was not ſo delicate, but that the traits of her country might be traced in her locks. To remedy this misfortune, and to render it leſs offenſive, ſhe was furniſhed with combs, and taught by her lover how to uſe them. After being properly prepared, he would by the hour amuſe himſelf with forming her hair into ringlets, which flowed careleſsly round her neck, with a kind of coronet riſing from her temples, gave her an air of dignity, that added freſh charms to the brilliancy of her eyes. The diſlike ariſing from colour gradually wore off, and the ardent deſire of rendering their ſentiments more and more intelligible to each other, gave riſe to a new language, conſiſting of words, looks and geſtures, by which pleaſure and pain were more forcibly expreſſed than by the moſt refined ſpeech. Having at firſt acquired the art of imparting their paſſions, they very ſoon improved it to the ſtory of their lives. Love and jealouſy directed her enquiries concerning the women in the world from whence he came, wiſhing at the ſame time, that he would ſtay with her, and be a Kakikoo or chief. He made her to underſtand, that the women in her country were all tatoo, (man-killers) and if he ſtayed with her ſhe would kill him. She replied no; ſhe would ch-na-row, love him. He ſaid her people would kill him. She replied no, if he did not ſhoot them. He made her to underſtand, that nine or ten of the men of this world, had been killed and eaten by her people, though they did not ſhoot them. Her anſwer was, that was a great while ago, and the people came from the hills roa, roa, meaning a great way off. This excited his curioſity to know, if any of her relations were among the murderers; ſhe ſighed, and appeared much affected, when he aſked her that queſtion. He demanded if ſhe was at the feaſt when they broiled and eat the men? She wept, and, looking wiſhfully at him, hung down her head. He became ſtill more preſſing as ſhe grew more reſerved. He tried every winning way that love and curioſity ſuggeſted, to learn from her what he found ſhe knew, and what ſhe ſeemed ſo determined to conceal: but ſhe artfully evaded all his queſtions. He aſked her, why ſhe was ſo ſecret? She pretended not to underſtand him. He repeated the ſame queſtion, at the ſame time cloſing his eyes and keeping them ſhut. She continued to weep, but made him no anſwer. Finding all his perſuaſions ineffectual, he turned from her, ſeemingly in anger, and threatened to leave her. She caught him round the neck in a violent agitation of mind. He aſked her what ſhe meant, and why ſhe wept? She ſaid, they would kill her if ſhe told. He ſaid, they ſhould not know it. Then he would hate her, ſhe ſaid. He anſwered no, but love her more and more, preſſing her to his boſom at the ſame time: upon which ſhe grew more compoſed, and ſaid ſhe would tell him all ſhe knew. She then made him underſtand, that one Gooboa, a bad man, who had been often at the ſhip, and had ſtolen many things, when he came to know that it was preparing to depart, went up into the hill country, to the hippah, and invited the warriors to come down and kill the ſtrangers. They at firſt refuſed, ſaying, the ſtrangers were ſtronger than they, and would kill them with their pow-pow, or fire-arms. He told them, they need not fear, for he knew where they muſt come before they departed in order to get graſs for their goury, or cattle, and that on ſuch occaſions they left their pow-pow behind them in the ſhip, or careleſsly about the ground, while they were at work. They ſaid, they were no enemies but friends, and they muſt not kill men with whom they were in friendſhip. Gooboa ſaid, they were vile enemies and wicked men, and complained of their chaining him, and beating him, and ſhewed them the marks and bruiſes he had received at the ſhip; and told them beſides, how they might ſilence their pow-pow, by only throwing water over them, and then they could not hurt them. Gooboa likewiſe undertook to conduct them in ſafety to the place where the ſtrangers were to come, and ſhewed them where they might conceal themſelves, till he ſhould come and give them notice; which he did. That when the men were buſy about getting graſs, and not apprehending any danger or harm, the warriors ruſhed out upon them, and killed them, and afterwards divided their bodies among them. She added, that there were women as well as men concerned; and that the women made the fires, while the warriors cut the dead bodies in pieces. That they did not eat them all at once, but only their hearts and livers; that the warriors had the heads, which were eſteemed the beſt, and the reſt of the fleſh was diſtributed among the croud. Having by various queſtions in the courſe of ſeveral days, extorted this relation, of which, he ſaid, he had no reaſon to doubt the truth, he forebore to aſk her, what part her relations and herſelf bore in this tragedy, as there was reaſon to believe, they were all equally concerned. He was, however, very ſolicitous to learn, if any ſuch plot was now in agitation againſt the people that might be ſent upon the ſame ſervice to Graſs Cove, or any other convenient place. Her anſwer was, no: the warriors were afraid at firſt, that the ſhips were come to revenge the death of their friends, and that was the reaſon why ſhe was forbidden to ſpeak of killing the ſtrangers, or to own any knowledge of that incident, ſhould ſhe be queſtioned concerning it. She ſaid, ſhe was but a child, not ten years old; but ſhe remembered the talk of it, as a gallant action of great atchievement, and that ſongs of praiſe were made upon that occaſion. In the courſe of his converſation with this girl, who ſeemed to be of the ſecond claſs, he learned many things concerning the natural temper of the natives, and their domeſtic policy. She ſaid, the people of T'Avi-Poenammoo, or the ſouthern diviſion of the iſland, were a fierce bloody people, and had a natural hatred to the people of Ea-hei-no-mauwe, and killed them, when found at any time in their country; but that the people of Ea-hei-no-mauwe were a good people, and friendly to one another, but never ſuffered any of the people of T'Avi-Poenammoo to ſettle among them, becauſe they were enemies; that theſe two nations, the people of the north part of the ſound, and thoſe of the ſouth, were ever at war, and eat one another; but that the people of either country, when they fought, never eat one another. With reſpect to their domeſtic policy, ſhe ſaid, the fathers had the ſole care of the boys as ſoon as they could walk, and that the girls were left wholly at their mother's diſpoſal. She ſaid, it was a crime for a mother

ther to correct her ſon, after he was once taken under the protection of the father; and that it was always reſented by the mother, if the father interfered with the management of the daughters. She ſaid, the boys from their infancy, were trained to war, and both boys and girls were taught the arts of fiſhing, weaving their nets, and making their hooks and lines: that their canoes came from a far country, and they got them in exchange for cloth, which was chiefly manufactured by the women: that their weapons and working tools deſcended from father to ſon, and that thoſe who were taken in battle ſupplied the riſing generation: that they had no kings among them, but that they had men who converſed with the dead, who were held in great veneration, and conſulted before the people went to the wars: that theſe were the men who addreſſed ſtrangers that came upon the coaſt, firſt in the language of peace, at the ſame time denouncing vengeance againſt them, if they came with any hoſtile deſign: that their perſons were held ſacred, and never killed in the wars, which ever ſide prevailed: that when the warriors of either nation made priſoners, they were never of the meaner ſort, but of ſome chiefs, whom they afterwards killed and eat, but that to the common ſort they never gave quarter: that they ſometimes tortured an enemy, if they found him lurking ſingly in the woods, looking upon him as coming upon no good deſign; but never otherwiſe: that they lived chiefly upon fiſh, which were caught in the ſound in abundance, during the ſummer; but that in the winter they retired to the north, where they ſubſiſted on the fruits of the earth, with which they were ſupplied for their labour, working in the plantations, or aſſiſting the builders in fabricating their boats. The intelligence thus obtained from this young Zealander appears to be authentic from many circumſtances; but chiefly from obſerving, that the large veſſels that came from the north to trade, ſeveral of them having 90 or 100 perſons on board, had never any fiſh to ſell, but were laden with the various manufactures of cloth, wood, and green ſtones, formed into implements of uſe, or conſiſting of raw materials ready prepared for fabrication. Their crews appeared to be of a ſuperior claſs to thoſe who conſtantly plied in the ſound, and were under proper diſcipline; whereas the fiſhing boats ſeemed to be the ſole property of the occupiers, no other perſon claiming any ſuperiority over them.

Our party belonging to the Reſolution continued in Graſs Cove till the evening, when having loaded the reſt of the boats with graſs, celery, &c. we then embarked to return to the ſhips; but had ſcarcely left the ſhore, when the wind began to blow violently at N. W. ſo that it was not without great difficulty that we could reach the ſhips, where ſome of the boats did not arrive till the next morning, and we had but juſt got aboard, when the gale increaſed to a perfect ſtorm, attended with heavy rain: but, in the evening, the wind veering to the eaſt, brought on fair weather. No work could go forward on the 17th, but on the 18th our men reſumed their different employments, the natives ventured out to catch fiſh, and Pedro with his whole family, came to reſide near us. The proper name of this chief is Matahouah; but ſome of captain Cook's company had given him the appellation of Pedro in a former voyage. On Thurſday the 20th, we had another ſtorm, of leſs duration than the former, but much more violent; and we had ſcarcely men enough on board to hand the ſails. By ten o'clock, A. M. the ſtrong gales drove the Diſcovery from her moorings; and it was owing to providence that, having run foul of the Reſolution, ſhe did not periſh, the ſurge carrying her off inſtantaneouſly, with little damage to either ſhip. All hands on board were thrown into the utmoſt confuſion. No ſooner was ſhe clear than both ſhips got down top-gallant-yards, ſtruck top-gallant-maſts, lowered the yards, got in the cables, moored with their beſt bower anchors, and happily rode out the ſtorm. Theſe tempeſts are frequent here; and the nearer the ſhore, the more their effects are felt; for the neighbouring mountains, which, at theſe times, are loaded with vapours, not only increaſe the force of the wind, but alter its direction in ſuch a manner, that no two blaſts follow each other from the ſame quarter. The gale continuing the whole day, no Indians came to trade. On the 21ſt, a tribe or family of about 30 perſons came from the upper part of the ſound to viſit us, whom we had not ſeen before. Their chief was named Tomatongeauooranuc. He was about the age of forty-five, having a frank, chearful countenance; and the reſt of his tribe were, upon the whole, the moſt handſome of all the New Zealanders that we had ſeen. By this time upwards of two-thirds of the natives of Queen Charlotte's Sound had ſettled near us, numbers of whom daily reſorted to the ſhips, and our encampment on ſhore; but the latter was moſt frequented, during the time when our people were making ſeal-blubber; for no Greenlanders were ever fonder of train oil, than our friends here ſeemed to be: they reliſhed even the dregs of the caſks, and ſkimmings of the kettle, and conſidered the neat ſtinking oil as a moſt delicious feaſt. Having got on board a ſupply of hay and graſs, ſufficient for the cattle during our paſſage to Otaheite; and having compleated our wood and water, we ſtruck our tents, and brought every thing off from the ſhore.

On the 23d, in the morning, the old Indian, who had harangued the captains when they approached the ſhore, repaired on board the Diſcovery, and made a preſent to her captain of a compleat ſtand of their arms, and ſome very excellent fiſh, which were kindly received; and, in return, Captain Clerke gave him a braſs patoo-patoo, made exactly in their faſhion and manner, on which were engraven his majeſty's name and arms, the names of the ſhips, the date of their departure from England, and the buſineſs they were ſent upon; he gave him likewiſe a hatchet, a knife, ſome glaſs ornaments, and nails, which he highly prized, though of ſmall value. In the evening ſome of the natives brought a man bound, whom they offered to ſell, but their offer being rejected, they carried him back, and in the night, a moſt horrid yelling was heard in the woods, which excited the curioſity of our gentlemen to examine into the cauſe. The cutter was ordered to be manned, a party of marines to be put on board, and the two captains, with proper attendants, directed their courſe to the weſt-ſide of the bay, where they ſaw ſeveral fires juſt lighted, and where they hoped to have ſurprized the natives, before they had put their poor captive to death, whom they had juſt before conſigned to ſlavery; but in this hope they were diſappointed.

Though the natives appeared friendly during our ſtay, it was judged proper to keep the time of our departure ſecret till all things were on board, and we were ready to ſet ſail. This precaution Captain Cook thought the more neceſſary from what we knew of the treachery of the ſavages. By not allowing them to concert any new plot, he ſecured effectually our foraging parties from the danger of a ſurprize, and by ſuddenly giving orders to ſail, he prevented our men from rambling after the women when their buſineſs was done, which they never failed to do whenever it was in their power. The foraging parties here mentioned are thoſe who were ſent to the coves, at the diſtance of perhaps three or four leagues from the ſhips, to cut graſs for the live ſtock, and to gather herbs to boil with the portable ſoup for the men; and thoſe who were ſtationed in the woods, to get ſpruce to brew into beer for their preſervation from the ſcurvy, againſt which that liquor, as we have already obſerved, was found a moſt powerful antidote. Of graſs and herbs a large quantity was brought on board, and of ſpruce as much as ſerved the two crews for drink near thirty days, during which time no grog was delivered out. The parties ordered upon theſe ſervices went always well armed, and were guarded by marines, though Captain Cook entertained very high notions of the honour as well as bravery of the New Zealanders.

On Monday the 24th, we weighed anchor, and ſtood out of the Cove; but the wind not being ſo fair as we could have wiſhed, and knowing the tide of ebb would be ſpent before we could get out of the ſound, we caſt anchor again a little without the iſland of Motuara, to wait for a more favourable opportunity of putting into Cook's Strait. While we were getting under ſail, the captain gave to Tomatongeauooranuc two pigs, a boar and a ſow; and to Matahouah two goats, a male and female, after they had promiſed not to deſtroy them. As to the animals which Captain Furneaux had left here, we were told they were all dead; but no intelligence could be obtained concerning thoſe Captain Cook had left in Weſt Bay, and in Cannibal Cove, in his former voyage: however, all the natives we converſed with agreed, that poultry are now to be met with wild in the woods behind Ship Cove; and we were afterwards informed, by the two New Zealand youths, who went away with us, that Tiratou, a popular chief, had in his poſſeſſion many cocks and hens, beſides a ſow. We had not long been at anchor near Motuara, before ſeveral canoes, filled with natives, came towards us, and we carried on a briſk trade with them for curioſities. In one of theſe canoes was Kahoora, whom Omiah pointed out immediately to Captain Cook; and he being the leader of the party who had cut off the crew of the Adventure's boat, Omiah ſolicited our commander to ſhoot him. Not ſatisfied with this, he addreſſed himſelf to that chief, threatening to be his executioner, ſhould he ever preſume to viſit us again: but this menace had ſo little influence upon Kahoora, that he returned to us the next morning, accompanied with his whole family. Omiah, having obtained Captain Cook's permiſſion, introduced him into the cabbin, ſaying, "There is Kahoora, kill him," but fearing, perhaps, he ſhould be called upon to put his former declaration in execution, he inſtantly retired. In a ſhort time, however, he returned; and perceiving the chief remained unhurt, he remonſtrated to the captain with much earneſtneſs, ſaying, "Why do you not kill him? If a man kills another in England he is hanged: this man has killed ten, yet you will not kill him." Theſe arguments, however plauſible, had no weight with our commander, who deſired Omiah to aſk the New Zealand Chief, why he had killed Captain Furneaux's people? Confounded at this queſtion, Kahoora hung down his head, folded his arms, and ſeemed in expectation of immediate death: but as ſoon as he was aſſured of ſafety, he became chearful. He appeared, however, ſtill unwilling to anſwer the queſtion which had been put to him, till after repeated promiſes, that no violence ſhould be offered him. Upon this he at laſt ventured to inform us, that one of the natives having brought a ſtone hatchet for the purpoſe of barter, the perſon to whom it was offered took it, and refuſed either to return it, or give any thing in exchange for the ſame, whereupon the owner ſeized ſome bread as an equivalent, and this gave riſe to the quarrel that enſued. He alſo ſaid, that he himſelf during the diſturbance had a narrow eſcape; for a muſquet was levelled at him, which he found means to avoid by ſkulking behind the boat; but another man, who happened to ſtand cloſe to him, was ſhot dead. As ſoon as the muſquet was diſcharged, he, (Kahoora,) inſtantly attacked Mr. Row, the officer, commander of the party, who defended himſelf with his hanger, (with which he gave Kahoora a wound in the arm,) till he was overpowered by numbers. The remainder of Kahoora's account of this unhappy affair, differed very little from what we had before learnt from the reſt of his countrymen. Moſt of theſe whom we had converſed with, expected that Captain Cook would take vengeance on Kahoora for his concern in the maſſacre; and many of them not only wiſhed it, but teſtified their ſurprize at the captain's forbearance and moderation. As the chief muſt have been made acquainted with the ſentiments of the natives, it was a matter of aſtoniſhment, that he ſo often put himſelf in our power: his two laſt viſits, in particular, were made under ſuch circumſtances, that he could not have flattered himſelf with a probability of eſcaping, had the captain been inclined to detain him: and yet, when his firſt fears, on being queſtioned, had ſubſided, ſo far was he from entertaining uneaſy ſenſations, that, on ſeeing in the cabbin a portrait of a New Zealander, he requeſted that his own likeneſs might be taken, and without the ſmalleſt token of impatience, ſat till Mr. Webber had finiſhed his portrait. Captain Cook admired his courage, and was pleaſed with the confidence which he repoſed in him; for he placed his whole ſafety in the uniform declarations of the captain; that he had always been a friend to the natives, and would continue ſo till they gave him reaſon to behave otherwiſe; that he ſhould think no more of their barbarous treatment of our countrymen, as that tranſaction had happened long ago; but that, if they ſhould ever venture to make a ſecond attempt of that kind, they might reſt aſſured of feeling the full weight of his reſentment. Mr. Burney, whom captain Furneaux diſpatched, with an armed party, in ſearch of his people who were miſſing, had, upon diſcovering the melancholy proofs of this cataſtrophe, fired ſeveral vollies among the natives who were ſtill on the ſpot, and were probably partaking of the horrid banquet of human fleſh. It was reaſonable to ſuppoſe this firing might not be ineffectual; but upon inquiry it appeared, that not a ſingle perſon had been killed, or even wounded, by the ſhot which Mr. Burney's people had diſcharged.

We muſt here obſerve, that previous to the ſhips ſailing, the crews of both were ordered upon deck, as uſual, to anſwer to their names, when one, on board the Diſcovery, was miſſing. This was the lover, (whoſe epiſode, having already begun, we ſhall now conclude,) who pretended ſickneſs, in order to facilitate his eſcape from the ſhip. With this view, as ſoon as he had paſſed the ſurgeon's examination, and the coaſt was clear, he dreſſed himſelf in the habit of a New Zealander; and, being tattowed all over, to ſay the truth, the copy was not eaſily to be diſtinguiſhed from the original. Ghowannahe, who was in the ſecret, had aſſembled her friends together, and ſent them on board in order to increaſe the crowd, which, upon ſuch occaſions, when ſhips are ready to ſail, are generally pretty numerous. Among this party he found a favourable opportunity to mix, and haſtening to their canoe, when the decks were ordered to be cleared, they were not long in paddling to ſhore. The pleaſure which Ghowannahe expreſſed, on ſeeing the ſhip ſet ſail, cannot eaſily be conceived, but her joy was of ſhort continuance. In the afternoon, our adventurer's meſſmate went down to enquire after his health, and was not a little ſurprized when no anſwer was returned. He thought, at firſt, he might have retired; but on ſearching every where below to no effect, he gave the alarm throughout the ſhip, when it was diſcovered, that he had eloped bag and baggage; and that the cheſt he had left in his birth was empty. A meſſenger was inſtantly diſpatched on board the Reſolution, to know how to proceed; and when the meſſage was delivered, the two captains and officers were enjoying their bottle. At firſt it only furniſhed a ſubject of harmleſs pleaſantry; but it came to be ſeriouſly debated at laſt, whether the man ſhould be ſent for back, or totally deſerted. Some were in doubt, whether an accident might not have happened; but that doubt was ſoon cleared up, when it was known, that his effects were miſſing as well as the man. Moſt of the officers preſent were for leaving him to follow his own humour; but Captain Cook thinking it would be a bad precedent, and an encouragement to other enamouratoes, when they came to the happier climes, to follow his example, was for ſending an armed force, and bringing the lover back at all hazards. Of this opinion was Captain Clerke, with whom this man was a favourite, who gave orders for the cutter to be properly manned, a ſerjeant's guard of marines to be put on board, and his meſſmate as a guide to direct them to the place where he was to be found. Theſe orders were inſtantly carried into execution. It was midnight before the cutter could reach the landing-place, and near two in the morning before the marines could find the ſpot where the lovers uſed to meet. They ſurprized him in a profound ſleep, when he was dreaming of only kingdoms and diadems; of living with his Ghowannahe in royal ſtate; of being the father of a numerous progeny of princes to govern the kingdoms Eakeinommauwe and T'Avi-Poenammoo; and of being the firſt founder of a great empire! but what a ſudden tranſition! to be waked from the viſionary ſcene of regal grandeur, and to find himſelf a poor priſoner, to be dragged to puniſhment for, as he thought, a well laid plan of monarchy; and, what was worſe, his final ſeparation from his faithful Ghowannahe, was a taſk he had ſtill to undergo. Their parting was tender, and for a Britiſh ſailor and ſavage Zealander, was not unaffecting. The ſcene, however, was ſhort. The marines paid no regard to the copious tears, the cries, and lamentations, of the poor deſerted girl; nor did they think it ſafe to tarry in a place ſo deſolate, where lamentations in the night were not unuſual to bring numbers together, for the purpoſe of ſlaughter. He was, therefore, hurried to the ſhore, followed by Ghowannahe, who could hardly be torn from him, when ready to embark. Love, like this, is only to be found in the regions of romance, in thoſe enlightened countries, where the boaſted refinements of ſentiment have circumſcribed the purity of affection, and narrowed it away to mere conjugal fidelity. He was ſcarce on board the cutter, when he recollected, that he had left his baggage behind; all that he had provided for laying the foundation of his future grandeur. It was therefore neceſſary he ſhould return with the marines to the magazine, where all his ſtores were depoſited, and theſe not a few. Beſides his working implements, he had a pocket compaſs, of which he had thought on ſome future occaſion to make a proper uſe. He had alſo a fowling-piece, which had been conveyed away ſecretly by Ghowannahe. It would be tedious to recount the numerous articles that our adventurer had provided. Let it ſuffice, that the marines and himſelf were pretty heavily laden in bringing them on board the cutter. It was noon, the next day, before he arrived at the ſhips, and the captains began to be in ſome fear for the party of marines, who were ſent to bring him back. Before he came in ſight it had been propoſed to try him as a deſerter; and therefore inſtead of being received in his own ſhip, he was ordered on board the Reſolution, where he underwent a long examination, and made a full confeſſion of all his views, and of the pains he had taken to bring them to perfection. He ſaid, the firſt idea of deſertion ſtruck him, when in an excurſion round the bay, in which he attended Captain Clerke, he was charmed with the beauty of the country, and the fertility of the ſoil; that ſeeing the gardens that had been planted on Long Iſland, at Motuara, and other places, in ſo flouriſhing a condition; and that there were European ſheep and hogs, and goats, and fowls, ſufficient to ſtock a large plantation, if collected together from the different places where they had been turned looſe, it came into his head, that if he could meet with a girl that was to his liking, he could be happy in introducing the arts of European culture into ſo fine a country, and in laying the foundation of civil government among its inhabitants. This idea improved upon him hourly, and when he happened to meet the girl before mentioned, who had ſeen him in his tour, and who had followed him to the tents, and had learnt from herſelf, that love had brought her there, it inflamed his deſire beyond all bounds. And finding her inclination to meet the wiſhes of his heart, he no longer heſitated, but became firmly reſolved, at all events, to yield to the force of inclination. He had revolved in his mind, he ſaid, the hazard and the reward; and had concerted with Ghowannahe the plan for his eſcape. When Captain Cook heard his ſtory, his reſentment was converted into laughter at the wild extravagance of his plan, which he thought truly romantic, and inſtead of trying him for deſertion, ordered him on board his own ſhip, the Diſcovery, to be puniſhed as Captain Clerke ſhould think proper, who, on his return aboard, ſent him to the gun to receive one dozen of laſhes; and thus terminated all his hopes of being a mighty emperor. The diſtreſs of Ghowannahe is hardly to be conceived; left a woeful ſpectacle, to lament her fate. She expreſſed her grief by punctures made in her face, arms and neck, and wherever deſpair prompted her to direct the bloody inſtrument: ſo that one might think, thoſe ſavage people, whoſe bodies are expoſed to the ſeverities of the ſeaſons, are not ſo ſuſceptible of pain as thoſe of a finer texture; otherwiſe, her perſonal feelings muſt have been exquiſite, independent of thoſe of her mind. But we ſhall now take leave of the two lovers; and continue the hiſtory of our voyage.

It was about ſeven o'clock, A. M. when the Reſolution and Diſcovery cleared the cove, and about eleven when they caſt anchor near the iſle of Motuara. Before our arrival at New Zealand, Omiah had expreſſed a deſire of taking one of the natives with him to his own country. He ſoon had an opportunity of gratifying his inclination; for a youth named Taweiharooa, the only ſon of a deceaſed chief, offered to accompany him, and took up his reſidence on board. Captain Cook cauſed it to be made known to him and all his friends, that if the youth departed with us, he would never return. This declaration, however, had no effect; and this afternoon, Taratoutou, his mother, came on board to receive her laſt preſent from Omiah. The ſame evening ſhe and Taweiharooa parted, with all the marks of tender affection that might be expected between a parent and a child, who were never to meet again. But ſhe ſaid ſhe would weep no more, and kept faithfully her word; for the next morning, when ſhe returned to take a laſt farewel of her ſon, ſhe was quite chearful all the time ſhe remained on board, and departed with great unconcern. A boy, named Kokoa, about ten years of age, accompanied Taweiharooa as a ſervant: he was preſented to Captain Cook by his own father, who parted with him with ſuch indifference, as to ſtrip him, and leave him entirely naked. The Captain having in vain endeavoured to convince theſe people of the improbability of theſe youths ever returning home, at length conſented to their going. Though much has been ſaid concerning this country and its inhabitants, in the accounts of Captain Cook's two former voyages; yet his obſervations made at this time, and the remarks of the ingenious Mr. Anderſon, being the reſult of accurate examination, may not be conſidered by our friends and reſpectable ſubſcribers as altogether ſuperfluous.

About Queen Charlotte's Sound the land is uncommonly mountainous, riſing immediately from the ſea into large hills. At remote diſtances are valleys, terminating each towards the ſea in a ſmall cove, with a pebbly or ſandy beach; behind which are flat places, where the natives uſually build their huts. This ſituation is the more convenient, as a brook of fine water runs through every cove, and empties itſelf into the ſea. The baſes of the mountains, towards the ſhore, are conſtituted of a yellowiſh ſand-ſtone, which requires a blueiſh caſt where it is waſhed by the ſea. At ſome places it runs in horizontal, and, at others, in oblique ſtrata. The mould or ſoil by which it is covered reſembles marle, and is, in general, a foot or two in thickneſs.

The luxuriant growth of the productions here ſufficiently indicates the quality of the ſoil. The hills, except a few towards the ſea, are one continued foreſt of lofty trees, flouriſhing with ſuch uncommon vigour, as to afford an auguſt proſpect to the admirers of the ſublime and beautiful works of nature. This extraordinary ſtrength in vegetation is, doubtleſs, greatly aſſiſted by the agreeable temperature of the climate; for at this time, though anſwering to our month of Auguſt, the weather was not ſo warm as to be diſagreeable; nor did it riſe the thermometer higher than 66 deg. The winter alſo ſeems equally mild with reſpect to cold; for in the month which correſponds to our December, the mercury was never lower than 48 deg. the trees at the ſame time retaining their verdure, as if in the height of ſummer. It is ſuppoſed their foliage remains, till puſhed off by freſh leaves ſucceeding in ſpring. Notwithſtanding the weather is generally good, it is ſometimes windy, with heavy rain, which, however, is never exceſſive, and does not laſt above a day. In ſhort, this would be one of the fineſt countries upon earth, were it not ſo extremely hilly; which, ſuppoſing the woods to be cleared away, would leave it leſs proper for paſturage than flat land; and infinitely leſs ſo for cultivation, which could never be effected here by the plough.

The large trees on the hills are principally of two ſorts. One of them of the ſize of our largeſt firs, grows nearly after their manner. This ſupplied the place of ſpruce in making beer; which was done with a decoction of its leaves, fermented with ſugar, or treacle; and this liquor was acknowledged to be little inferior to American ſpruce-beer. The other ſort of tree is like a maple, and often grows very large, but is fit only for fuel: the wood of that, and of the preceding, are too heavy for either maſts or yards. A greater variety of trees grow on the flats behind the beaches: two of theſe bear a kind of plumb, of the ſize of prunes; the one, which is yellow, is called karraca, and the other, which is black, called maitao; but neither of them had a pleaſant taſte, though eaten both by our people and the natives. On the eminences which jut out into the ſea, grows a ſpecies of philadelphus, and a tree bearing flowers almoſt like a myrtle. We uſed the leaves of the philadelphus as tea, and found them an excellent ſubſtitute for the oriental ſort. A kind of wild celery, which grows plentifully in almoſt every cove, may be reckoned among the plants that were uſeful to us, and alſo another which we called ſcurvy graſs. Both ſorts were boiled daily with wheat ground in a mill, for the ſhips companies breakfaſt, and with their peaſe-ſoup for dinner. Sometimes they were uſed as ſallad, or dreſſed as greens; in all which ways they are excellent; and, together with the fiſh, with which we were plentifully ſupplied, they formed a moſt deſirable refreſhment. The known kind of plants to be found here are bind-weed, night-ſhade, nettles, a ſhrubbery ſpeedwell, ſow-thiſtles, virgin's bower, vanelloe, French willow, euphorbia, crane's bill, cudweed, ruſhes, bulruſhes, flax, all-heal, American night-ſhade, knot-graſs, brambles, eye-bright and groundſel; but the ſpecies of each are different from any we have in Europe. There are a great number of other plants; but one in particular deſerves to be noticed here, as the garments of the natives are made from it. It grows in all places near the ſea, and ſometimes a conſiderable way up the hills, in bunches or tufts, bearing yellowiſh flowers on a long ſtalk. It is remarkable, that the greateſt part of the trees and plants were of the berry-bearing kind; of which, and other ſeeds, Mr. Anderſon brought away nearly thirty different ſorts.

The birds of which there is a tolerable good ſtock, are almoſt entirely peculiar to the place. It would be difficult and very fatiguing to follow them, on account of the quantity of underwood, and the climbing plants; yet any perſon, by continuing in one place, may ſhoot as many in a day as would ſerve ſeven or eight perſons. The principal kinds are large brown parrots, with grey heads; green parroquets, large wood-pigeons, and two ſorts of cuckoos. A groſs-beak, about the ſize of a thruſh, is frequent; as is alſo a ſmall green-bird, which is almoſt the only muſical one to be found here; but his melody is ſo ſweet, and his notes ſo varied, that any one would imagine himſelf ſurrounded by a hundred different ſorts of birds, when the little warbler is exerting himſelf. From this circumſtance it was named the mocking-bird. There are alſo three or four ſorts of ſmaller birds; and among the rocks are found black ſea-pies, with red bills, and creſted ſhags of a leaden colour. About the ſhore, there are a few ſea-gulls, ſome blue herons, wild ducks, plovers, and ſome land-larks. A ſnipe was ſhot, differing very little from that ſpecies of birds in Europe. Inſects here, are not very numerous: we ſaw ſome butter-flies, two ſorts of dragon-flies, ſome ſmall graſs-hoppers, ſeveral ſorts of ſpiders, ſome black ants, and ſcorpion-flies innumerable, with whoſe chirping the woods reſounded. The ſand-fly, which is the only noxious one, is very numerous here, and is almoſt as diſagreeable as the muſquitoe. The only reptiles we ſaw, were two or three ſorts of inoffenſive lizards. In this extenſive land, it is remarkable that there ſhould not even be the traces of any quadruped, except a few rats, and a kind of fox-dog, which is kept by the natives as a domeſtic animal. Nor have they any mineral deſerving of notice, but a green jaſper or ſerpent-ſtone, of which the tools and ornaments of the inhabitants are made. This is held in high eſtimation among them; and they entertain ſome ſuperſtitious notions about the mode of its generation, which we could not comprehend: they ſay it is taken from a large river far to the ſouthward; it is diſpoſed in the earth in detached pieces like flints, and, like them, the hedges are covered with a whitiſh cruſt.

Moſt of the fiſh we caught by the ſeine were elephant-fiſh, mullets, ſoles, and flounders; but the natives ſupplied us with a kind of ſea-bream, large conger eels, and a fiſh of five or ſix pounds weight, called by the natives a mogge. With a hook and line we caught a blackiſh fiſh, called cole-fiſh by the ſeamen, but differing greatly from that of the ſame name in Europe. We alſo got a ſort of ſmall ſalmon, ſkate, gurnards, and nurſes. The natives ſometimes furniſhed us with hake, paracutas, parrot-fiſh, a ſort of mackarel, and leather jackets; beſides another, which is extremely ſcarce, of the figure of a dolphin, in colour black, and with ſtrong boney jaws. Theſe in general, are excellent to eat; but the ſmall ſalmon, cole-fiſh, and mogge, are ſuperior to the others.

The New Zealanders, we mean thoſe of them who inhabit about Queen Charlotte's Sound, are a people who appear to be perfectly ſatisfied with the ſmall pittance of knowledge they have acquired, without attempting in the leaſt to improve it. Nor are they remarkably curious, either in their obſervations, or their inquiries. New objects do not ſtrike them with ſuch a degree of ſurprize as one would naturally expect; nor do they even fix their attention for a moment. Omiah, indeed, who was a great favourite with them, would ſometimes attract a circle about him; but they ſeemed to liſten to his ſpeeches, like perſons who neither underſtood, nor wiſhed to underſtand, what they heard. In general, they are not ſo well formed, eſpecially about the limbs, as the Europeans, nor do they exceed them in ſtature. Their ſitting ſo much on their hams, and being deprived, by the mountainous diſpoſition of the country, of uſing that kind of exerciſe which would render the body ſtraight and well-proportioned, is probably the occaſion of the want of due proportion. Many of them, indeed, are perfectly well formed, and ſome are very large boned and muſcular, but very few among them are very corpulent. Their features are various, ſome reſembling Europeans, and their colour is of different caſts, from a deepiſh black to an olive or yellowiſh tinge. In general, however, their faces are round, their lips rather full, and their noſes, (though not flat) large towards the point. An aquiline noſe was not to be ſeen among them; their eyes are large, and their teeth are commonly broad, white, and regular. The hair, in general, is black, ſtrong, and ſtraight; commonly cut ſhort on the hinder part, and the reſt tied on the crown of the head. Some, indeed, have brown hair, and others a ſort that is naturally diſpoſed to curl. The countenance of the young is generally free and open; but in many of the men it has a ſerious, or rather ſullen caſt. The men are larger than the women; and the latter are not diſtinguiſhed by peculiar graces, either of form or features.

Both ſexes are cloathed alike: they have a garment, made of the ſilky flax already mentioned, about five feet in length, and four in breadth. This appears to be their principal manufacture, which is performed by knotting. Two corners of this garment paſs over their ſhoulders, and they faſten it on the breaſt with that which covers the body: it is again faſtened about the belly with a girdle made of mat. Sometimes they cover it with dog ſkin, or large feathers. Many of them wear mats over this garment, extending from the ſhoulders to the heels. The moſt common covering, however, is a quantity of ſedgy plant, badly manufactured,

tured, faſtened to a ſtring, and thrown over the ſhoulders, whence it falls down on all ſides to the middle of the thighs. When they ſat down in this habit, they could hardly be diſtinguiſhed from large grey ſtones, if their black heads did not project beyond their coverings. They adorn their heads with feathers, combs of bone or wood, with pearl-ſhell, and the inner ſkin of leaves. Both men and women have their ears ſlit, in which are hung beads, pieces of jaſper, or bits of cloth. Some have the ſeptum of the noſe bored in its lower part; but we never ſaw any ornaments worn in that part; though a twig was paſſed through it by one of them, to ſhew that it was occaſionally uſed for that purpoſe. We ſaw many ſtained in the face with curious figures, of a black or dark blue colour; but it is not certain whether this is intended to be ornamental, or as a mark of particular diſtinction: the women alſo wear necklaces of ſhark's teeth, or bunches of long beads; and a few of them have ſmall triangular aprons, adorned with feathers or pieces of pearl-ſhells, faſtened about the waiſt with a double or treble ſet of cords.

They live in the ſmall coves already mentioned, ſometimes in ſingle families, and ſometimes in companies of perhaps forty or fifty. Their huts, which are in general moſt miſerable lodging places, are built contiguous to each other. The beſt we ſaw was built in the manner of one of our country barns, about ſix feet in height, 15 in breadth, and 33 in length. The inſide was ſtrong and regular, well faſtened by means of withes, &c. and painted red and black. At one end it had a hole ſerving as a door to creep out at, and another conſiderably ſmaller, ſeemingly for the purpoſe of letting out the ſmoke. This, however, ought to be conſidered as one of their palaces, for many of their huts are not half the ſize, and ſeldom are more than four feet in height. They have no other furniture than a few ſmall bags or baſkets, in which they depoſit their fiſhing-hooks and other trifles. They ſit down in the middle round a ſmall fire, and probably ſleep in the ſame ſituation, without any other covering than what they have worn in the day. Fiſhing is their principal ſupport, in which they uſe different kinds of nets, or wooden fiſh-hooks pointed with bone; but made in ſo extraordinary a manner, that it appears aſtoniſhing how they can anſwer ſuch a purpoſe. Their boats conſiſt of planks raiſed upon each other, and faſtened with ſtrong withes. Many of them are 50 feet long. Sometimes they faſten two together with rafters, which we call a double canoe: they frequently carry upwards of 30 men, and have a large head, ingeniouſly carved and painted, which ſeems intended to repreſent the countenance of a warrior, when engaged in the heat of action. Their paddles are narrow, pointed, and about five feet long. Their ſail, very ſeldom uſed, is a mat formed into a triangular ſhape. When the weather will not ſuffer them to go to ſea, muſcles and ſea-ears ſupply the place of other fiſh. Sometimes, but not often, they kill a few penguins, rails, and ſhags, which enable them to vary their diet. Conſiderable number of their dogs are alſo bred for food; but they depend principally on the ſea for their ſubſiſtence, by which they are moſt bountifully ſupplied.

They dreſs their fiſh by roaſting, or rather baking them, being entirely ignorant of the art of boiling. It is thus they alſo dreſs the root of the large fern-tree, in a hole prepared for that purpoſe: when dreſſed, they ſplit it, and find a gelatinous ſubſtance within, ſomewhat like ſago powder. The ſmaller fern-root ſeems to be their ſubſtitute for bread, being dried and carried about with them, together with large quantities of dried fiſh, when they go far from their habitations. They are as filthy in their feeding as in their perſons, which often emit a very offenſive effluvia, from the quantity of greaſe about them, and from their never waſhing, their heads are plentifully ſtocked with vermin, which they ſometimes eat. Large quantities of ſtinking train oil, and blubber of ſeals, they would eagerly devour. When on board the ſhips, they not only emptied the lamps, but actually ſwallowed the cotton with equal eagerneſs. Though the inhabitants of Van Diemen's Land, would not even taſte our bread, theſe people devoured it with the greateſt eagerneſs, even when it was rotten and mouldy.

In point of ingenuity, they are not behind any uncivilized nations under ſimilar circumſtances: for, without the aſſiſtance of metal tools, they make every thing by which they procure their ſubſiſtence, cloathing, and warlike weapons, with neatneſs, ſtrength, and convenience. Their principal mechanical tool is formed in the manner of an adze, and is made of the ſerpent-ſtone, or jaſper: their chiſſel and gouge are furniſhed from the ſame material, though they are ſometimes compoſed of black ſolid ſtone. Carving, however, is their maſter-piece, which appears upon the moſt trifling things: the ornaments on the heads of their canoes, not only diſplay much deſign, but execution. Their cordage for fiſhing-lines is not inferior to that in England, and their nets are equally good. A ſhell, a bit of flint, or jaſper, is their ſubſtitute for a knife, and a ſhark's tooth, fixed in the end of a piece of wood, is their auger. They have a ſaw made of ſome jagged fiſhes teeth, fixed on a piece of wood nicely carved; but this is uſed for no other purpoſe, than to cut up the bodies of thoſe whom they kill in battle.

Though no people are more ready to reſent an injury, yet they take every opportunity of being inſolent, when they apprehend there is no danger of puniſhment; whence it may be concluded, that their eagerneſs to reſent injuries, is rather an effect of a furious diſpoſition than genuine bravery. They are naturally diſtruſtful and ſuſpicious, for ſuch as are ſtrangers never venture immediately to viſit our ſhips, but keep at a ſmall diſtance in their boats, obſerving our motions, and heſitating whether they ſhould riſk their ſafety with us. They are to the laſt degree diſhoneſt, and ſteal every thing within their reach, if they ſuppoſe they can eſcape detection; and, in trading, they ſeem inclined to take every poſſible advantage; for they never truſt an article out of their hands for examination, and ſeem highly pleaſed if they have over-reached you in a bargain. Such conduct indeed is not ſurpriſing, when it is conſidered, that there appears to be little ſubordination, and few, if any, laws for the puniſhment of tranſgreſſors. No man's authority extends beyond his own family; and when they join at any time, for mutual defence or ſafety, thoſe among them who are moſt eminent for valour and prudent conduct, are directors.

Their public contentions are almoſt perpetual; for war is their principal profeſſion, as appears from their number of weapons, and their dexterity in uſing them. Their arms are ſpears, patoos, and halberts, and ſometimes ſtones. The firſt are from five to thirty feet long, made of hard wood and pointed. The patoo is about 18 inches long, of an elliptical ſhape, with a handle made of wood, ſtone, &c. and appears to be their principal dependance in battle. The halbert is about five or ſix feet in length, tapering at one end with a carved head, and broad, or flat, with ſharp edges, at the other. Before the onſet, they join in a war ſong, keeping the exacteſt time; and, by degrees, work themſelves into a kind of frantic fury, accompanied with the moſt horrid diſtortions of their tongues, eyes, and mouths, in order to terrify their enemies. To this ſucceeds a circumſtance, that is moſt cruel, and diſgraceful to human nature, which is mangling and cutting to pieces (even when not perfectly dead) the bodies of their enemies, and, after roaſting them, devouring their fleſh with peculiar ſatisfaction and even pleaſure. It might naturally be ſuppoſed, that thoſe who could be capable of ſuch exceſs of cruelty, muſt be totally deſtitute of every human feeling, and yet they lament the loſs of their friends in a manner the moſt tender and affectionate. Both men and women, upon the death of their relations or friends, bewail them with the moſt miſerable cries; at the ſame time cutting large gaſhes in their cheeks and foreheads, with ſhells, or pieces of flint, till the blood flows copiouſly, and mixes with their tears. They alſo carve a reſemblance of an human figure, and hang it about their necks, as a memorial of thoſe who were dear to them. They alſo perform the ceremony of lamenting and cutting for joy, at the return of a friend who has been ſome time abſent. The practices of the fathers, whether good or bad, their children are, at an early age, inſtructed in; ſo that you find a child of either ſex, of the age of nine or ten years, able to imitate the frightful motions and geſtures of the men. They alſo ſing, and with ſome degree of melody, the traditions and actions of their forefathers, with which they are immoderately delighted, and paſs much time in theſe amuſements, accompanied ſometimes with a kind of flute.

From captain Cook's obſervations, and from the information of Taweiharooa, and others, it appears, that the New Zealanders muſt live under perpetual apprehenſions of being deſtroyed by each other; there being few of their tribes that have not, as they think, ſuſtained wrongs from ſome other tribes, which they are continually upon the watch to revenge. And, perhaps, the deſire of a good meal may be no ſmall incitement. It is ſaid, that many years will ſometimes elapſe, before a favourable opportunity happens, and that the ſon never loſes ſight of any injury that has been done to his father. Their method of executing their horrible deſigns, is by ſtealing upon the adverſe party in the night; and if they find them unguarded, (which is very ſeldom the caſe) they kill every one indiſcriminately; not even ſparing the women and children. When the maſſacre is completed, they either feaſt and gorge themſelves on the ſpot, or carry off as many of the dead bodies as they can, and devour them at home, with acts of ſavage brutality too ſhocking to be deſcribed. If they are diſcovered before they can execute their bloody purpoſes, they generally ſteal off again; but are ſometimes purſued and attacked by the other party, in their turn. To give quarter, or to take priſoners, makes no part of their military law; ſo that the vanquiſhed can only ſave their lives by flight. This perpetual ſtate of war, and deſtructive method of conducting it, operates ſo ſtrongly in producing habitual circumſpection, that one hardly ever finds a New Zealander off his guard, either by night or by day. Indeed, no other man can have ſuch powerful motives to be vigilant, as the preſervation both of body and ſoul depends upon it: for according to a principle in their creed, the ſoul of a man whoſe fleſh is devoured by the enemy, is doomed to a perpetual fire, while the ſoul of the man whoſe body has been reſcued from thoſe who killed him, as well as the ſouls of all who die a natural death, aſcend to the dwellings of the gods. When enquiry was made, whether they devoured the fleſh of ſuch of their friends as had been killed in war, but whoſe bodies were ſaved from falling into the enemies hands? They ſeemed ſurprized at the queſtion, which they anſwered in the negative, expreſſing ſome abhorrence at the very idea. Their common method of diſpoſing of their dead, is by depoſiting their bodies in the earth, but if they have more of their ſlaughtered enemies than they can eat, they throw them into the ſea.

As to their religion, we can ſay little concerning either its principles or ceremonies; but we know its inſtructions are very ſtrongly inculcated into them from their infancy: of which a remarkable inſtance was ſeen, in the youth, who was firſt deſtined to accompany Taweiharooa. He refrained from eating the greateſt part of the day, on account of his hair being cut; though every method was uſed to induce him to break his reſolution; and he was tempted with the offer of ſuch victuals as he was known to eſteem the moſt: but he ſaid, in anſwer to our preſſing ſolicitations, if he eat any thing that day, that Eatooa would kill him. However, towards evening, the cravings of nature got the better of his profeſſed tenets, and he eat, though ſparingly; it was thought before this, that they had ſome ſuperſtitious notions about their hair; for we frequently obſerved quantities of it tied to the branches of trees near ſome of their habitations; but we could not learn from what notions, or on what account this was done. They have no morais, or other places of public worſhip; nor do they ever aſſemble together with this view: but they have prieſts, who alone addreſs the gods in prayers, for the proſperity of their temporal affairs; ſuch as an enterprize againſt a hoſtile tribe, a fiſhing party, or the like. Polygamy is allowed among theſe people; and it is not uncommon for a man to have two or three wives. The women are marriageable at a very early age; and it ſhould ſeem, that one who is unmarried, is but in a forlorn ſtate. She can with difficulty get a ſubſiſtence: at leaſt ſhe is, in a great meaſure, without a protector, though in conſtant want of a powerful one.

Their language is neither harſh nor diſagreeable: and yet the pronunciation is frequently guttural; and whatever qualities are requiſite to make a language muſical, prevail to a high degree in this; which we obſerved particularly in the melody of their ſongs. It is not, indeed, ſo comprehenſive as our European languages, which owe their perfection to long and gradual improvement. Mr. Anderſon collected both now and in the courſe of our former voyage, a great many of their words, ſo as to form a pretty large vocabulary; and being, in his enquiries, very attentive to the languages of the other iſlands throughout the South Sea, he has afforded us the ampleſt proof of their wonderful agreement, or rather identity. This obſervation has been already made in our hiſtory of former voyages, and we ſhall now ſtrengthen it by a new ſpecimen or freſh liſt of words; and by placing the correſponding words as uſed at Otaheite in another column, the reader will be able to judge by what changes the difference of dialect has been effected.

A TABLE of Select Words uſed in the Iſlands of NEW ZEALAND and OTAHEITE.

NEW ZEALAND.	OTAHEITE.	ENGLISH.
Moenga	Moera	*A Bed*
Epaipe	Pepe	*Butterfly*
Purra, purra	Ere, ere	*Black*
Makkareede	Mareede	*Cold*
Hekaee	Ey	*To Chew or eat*
Wyeroo	Ero	*A Dog's tail*
Kaoo, matte	Matte, roa	*Death, dead*
Eoowha	Eooha	*A Female*
Makoee	Matou	*Fiſh-hook*
Ererre	Eraire	*To Fly*
Reenga	Ereema	*A Hand*
Ewharre	Ewharre	*Houſe*
Keerahoi	Erahoi	*Large*
Tangata	Taata	*A Man*
Toa	Etoa	*Male kind*
Woho	Woho	*Out, not within*
Whairo	Oora, oora	*Red*
Nohoanna	Nohonoa	*To Reſide*
Mango	Mao	*A Shark*
Ka Powhy	Owhy	*Stone*
Opanee	Opanee	*Shut*
Moea	Moe	*To Sleep*
Agooanai	Aooanai	*To-day*
Geetaia	Eetea	*To Underſtand*
Ewy	Evy	*Water*
Taooa	Taooa	*We*
Kahaia	Tehaia	*Where is he*
Ema	Ooama	*White*
Taeninnahoi	Ninnahoi	*Yeſterday*
Warre	Ooaro	*Forgot*
	NUMERALS.	
Tahaee	Atahay	*One*
Rooa	Erooa	*Two*
Toroo	Toroo	*Three*
Faha	Ahaa	*Four*
Reema	Erema	*Five*
Ono	Aono	*Six*
Heetoo	Aheitoo	*Seven*
Waroo	Awaroo	*Eight*
Eeva	Aeeva	*Nine*
Angahoora	Ahooroo	*Ten*
Ma-tahaee	*Eleven*	
Ma-rooa	*Twelve, &c. by prefixing the article Ma.*	
Mangahoora	*Twenty*	

Thus we have mentioned all the particulars that came under our obſervation, and which we think worth relating, during our intercourſe with the New Zealanders: we have only to add ſome very remarkable information which Captain Cook received from Taweiharooa. "One day, ſays the Captain, on inquiring of Taweiharooa, how many ſhips ſuch as ours, had ever arrived in Queen Charlotte's Sound, or in any part of its neighbourhood? He began with giving an account of one abſolutely unknown to us. This he ſaid had put into a port on the N. W. coaſt of Teerawitte, but a very few years before I arrived in the Sound in the Endeavour, which the New Zealanders diſtinguiſh, by calling Tupia's ſhip. At firſt, I thought he might have been miſtaken as to the time and place; and that the ſhip in queſtion might be either Monſieur Surville's, who is ſaid to have touched upon the N.E. coaſt of Eaheinomauwe, the ſame year I was there in the Endeavour; or elſe Monſieur Marion du Freſne's, who was in the Bay of Iſlands, on the ſame coaſt a few years after. But he aſſured us that he was not miſtaken, either as to the time, or as to the place of this ſhip's arrival; and that it was well known to every body about Queen Charlotte's Sound and Teerawitte. He ſaid, that the Captain of her, during his ſtay here, cohabited with a woman of the country; and that ſhe had a ſon by him, now living, and about the age of Kokoa; who, though not born then, ſeemed to be equally well acquainted with the ſtory. We were alſo informed by Taweiharooa, that this ſhip firſt introduced the venereal diſeaſe among the New Zealanders. It were to be wiſhed, that ſubſequent viſitors from Europe may not have their ſhare of guilt in leaving ſo dreadful a remembrance of them among this unhappy race. The diſorder now is but too common here; though they do not ſeem to regard it, ſaying, that its effects are not near ſo pernicious at preſent, as they were at its firſt appearance. The only method, as far as I ever heard, that they make uſe of as a remedy, is by giving the patient the uſe of a ſort of hot bath, which they produce by the ſteam of certain green plants laid over hot ſtones. I regretted much, that we did not hear of this ſhip while we were in the ſound, as, by means of Omiah, we might have had full and correct information about her from eye-witneſſes. For Taweiharooa's account was only from what he had been told, and therefore liable to many miſtakes. I have not the leaſt doubt, however, that his teſtimony may ſo far be depended upon, as to induce us to believe, that a ſhip really had been at Teerawitte, prior to my arrival in the Endeavour, as it correſponds with what I formerly heard. For in the latter end of 1773, the ſecond time I viſited New Zealand, during my former voyage, when we were continually making inquiries about the Adventure, after our ſeparation, ſome of the natives informed us of a ſhip's having been in a port on the coaſt of Teerawitte: but, at that time, we thought we muſt have miſunderſtood them, and took no notice of the information. We had another piece of intelligence from him, though not confirmed by our own obſervations, that there are ſnakes and lizards in New Zealand of an enormous ſize. He deſcribed the latter as being eight feet in length, and as big round as a man's body. He ſaid that they ſometimes ſeize and devour men; that they burrow in the ground; and that they are killed by making fires at the mouths of the holes. We could not be miſtaken as to the animal; for with his own hand he drew a very good repreſentation of a lizard on a piece of paper; as alſo of a ſnake, in order to ſhew what he meant."

In the morning of Tueſday the 25th of February, we left the ſound. By the mean of the reſults of many aſtronomical obſervations, we found the latitude of Ship Cove to be 41 deg. 6 min. S. and the longitude 174 deg. 25 min. 15 ſec. E. At ten o'clock, a light breeze ſpringing up at N. W. by W. we made ſail through Cook's Strait, with the Diſcovery in company. On Thurſday the 27th, we cleared Cape Palliſer, and took our departure from thence. It bore W. diſtant about ſeven leagues. We had now a fine gale, and ſteered towards N. E. When we had loſt ſight of land, our two youths from New Zealand, notwithſtanding their employment of fiſhing near the ſhores from their infancy, began to repent of the adventurous ſtep they had taken. Seeing only foaming billows round them, their hearts failed: they began to pine, and refuſed to eat. When Captain Clerke with Mr. Burney came on board our ſhip, they ran and hid themſelves, diſcovering a great panic. It did not appear that their fear took its riſe from the thoughts of being carried back, becauſe when the gentlemen returned, they wanted to go with them. It ſhould rather ſeem, therefore, that they were apprehenſive of ſome deſign upon their lives, as in their country a conſultation amongſt the chiefs always precedes a determined murder. This was confirmed by their behaviour afterwards. We endeavoured, as far as lay in our power, to ſooth them; but they wept continually, and gave vent to their ſorrows in a kind of ſong, which ſeemed to expreſs their praiſes of their country and people, from which they were now, in all probability to be for ever ſeparated. In this diſpirited ſtate they continued for ſeveral days, till, at length, the agitation of their minds began to ſubſide, and their ſea ſickneſs, which had aggravated their grief, wore off. Their lamentations then became leſs and leſs frequent; their native country, their kindred, and friends, were gradually forgotten, and they appeared to be firmly attached to us. On the 28th, at noon, in the lat. of 41 deg. 17 min. S. longitude 177 deg. 17 min. E. we tacked about and ſtood to the S. E. with a gentle breeze at E. N. E. which afterwards veered to the N. E. in which point the wind remained two days; ſometimes blowing a freſh gale, with ſqualls and rain.

Monday, March the 1ſt, a ſtorm came on, but as the wind was fair, we got down the top-gallant-yards, cloſe reefed the top-ſails, and purſued our courſe E. by N. On the 2nd, it ſhifted to N. W. and afterwards to S. W. between which point and the N. it continued to blow, ſometimes very moderately, and at other times a ſtrong gale. With this wind we ſteered N. E. by E. and E. with all the ſail we could carry till Tueſday the 11th, when it veered to N. E. and S. E. at which time we obſerved at noon in lat. 39 deg. 29 min. long. 196 deg. 4 min. E. On the 15th, being Saturday, it blew a hurricane, attended with rain and a high ſea, which breaking over our bows, cleared the decks of every thing that was not firmly ſecured, and ſplit the fore-top-maſt ſtay of the Diſcovery into a thouſand ſhivers. At night we ſhifted our courſe and ſtood N. by E. half E. There were ſome on board the Diſcovery who diſapproved of the courſe we had hitherto ſteered, foreſeeing, that by going ſo faſt to the northward, we ſhould fall too ſuddenly into the trade winds, eſpecially, if we ſhould be met by an eaſterly wind before we approached the tropic. Among the ſeamen on board a king's ſhip, there are always ſome expert navigators, whoſe judgment, ripened by experience, is much to be depended upon; but the misfortune is, that theſe men are never conſulted, nor do they even dare ſo much as to whiſper their opinion to their ſuperior officer. Like gameſters ſtanding by, they can ſee the errors of the game, but muſt not point them out till the game is over. This we find, by the journal before us, was the real caſe on board the Diſcovery, ſome of whoſe people did not ſcruple to fortel what would happen after we had left the 39th degree of ſouthern latitude, while we were yet only in the 196th deg. of eaſtern longitude. They did not ſcruple to ſay that before we altered our latitude to the N. we ought to have ſtretched 13 or 14 deg. farther eaſtward of our intended port; and in this caſe when we came to paſs the tropic, we ſhould be ſure of a fair wind to carry us to it. On Tueſday, the 18th, having continued our courſe N. N. E. for the laſt 24 hours, we found ourſelves, by obſervation, in lat. 33 deg. 8 min. and in long. 200 deg. E. that is, more than 12 deg. to the weſtward of Otaheite. Here we ſaw ſea weed in abundance, and by a large tree floating by us, we judged that we could not be far from land. The tree appeared to be about 30 feet in girth, and by its freſhneſs ſeemed to have been no long time in the water. Saturday the 22nd, the heavieſt rain began to pour down that the oldeſt mariner, in either of the ſhips, had ever experienced. It fell in ſheets, and, as the wind increaſed, the men in handing the ſails, were in the utmoſt danger of being waſhed off the yards. It continued for ſix hours inceſſantly; however, moſt ſeaſonably for our people in the Reſolution, where the number of live ſtock, as horſes, cows, goats, and ſheep, had exhauſted a large proportion of our freſh water, and we were yet at a great diſtance from our deſtined port. Here the wind began to veer to the E. which had been apprehended by many; who finding our longitude not to increaſe in proportion as our latitude decreaſed, began to ſuſpect we ſhould not make Otaheite this run.

Monday, the 24th, our latitude was decreaſed to 24 deg. 24 min. and our longitude only increaſed one ſingle degree. The wind was E. by S. and our courſe ſtill N. by E. we made conſequently but little way. To add to our vexation, we were now in an alarming ſituation, for want of proviſions and water for the live ſtock; inſomuch, that we were obliged to kill part of our ſheep and hogs, not having a ſufficient quantity of water to keep them alive. As to the horſes, and cows, they were mere ſkeletons; having been reduced to the ſcanty portion of four pounds of hay, and ſix quarts of water for 24 hours; and the men were put to the allowance of two quarts of water, for the ſame ſpace of time. The wind continuing foul, all hope of reaching Otaheite was laid aſide; and the iſles of Amſterdam and Rotterdam, were at this time thought to be our only reſource. Hitherto not a man was ill on board the Diſcovery, nor was any alteration made in her company's allowance, they not having any more cattle on board, than were neceſſary for the ſhip's uſe. Thurſday the 27th, we croſſed the Tropic. The weather, which for two or three days had been ſqually, attended with thunder and lightning, increaſed to a ſtorm; and we now began to be ſurrounded by our tropical companions. On the 28th, the weather cleared up, and we were ſaluted with a fine breeze, and attended by numerous ſhoals of flying fiſh, bonitos, dolphins, ſharks, and whole flocks of tropical ſea fowl, which abound near the iſlands in the low latitudes, but are ſeldom ſeen in the deep Pacific Ocean. On the 29th, at ten o'clock A. M. as we were ſtanding to the N. E. the Diſcovery made the ſignal for ſeeing land, diſtant ſeven leagues. We tacked ſhip and ſtood for it till the evening. While day-light remained we ſaw no ſigns of inhabitants, but, in the night obſerved ſeveral fires. On Sunday the 30th, at day break we diſcovered it to be an iſland of no great extent, and bore up on the weſt-ſide. We now ſaw ſeveral people wading to the reef, but, obſerving the ſhips leaving them quickly, they remained there. But others, who ſoon appeared, followed our courſe; and ſome of them aſſembled in ſmall bodies, making great ſhouts. Upon our nearer approach to the ſhore, we ſaw many of the natives running along the beach, and, by the aſſiſtance of our glaſſes, could perceive, that they were armed with long ſpears and clubs, which they brandiſhed in the air with ſigns of threatening, or, as ſome of us ſuppoſed, with invitations to land. Moſt of them were without cloaths, except having a kind of girdle, which was brought up between their thighs; but ſome of them wore about their ſhoulders pieces of cloth of various colours, white, ſtriped, or chequered; and almoſt all of them had about their heads a white wrapper, in ſome reſpects reſembling a turban. They were of a tawny complexion, well made, robuſt, and of a middling ſtature. A ſmall canoe was now launched from the moſt diſtant part of the beach, and a man getting into it, put off, as with a view of reaching the ſhip; but his courage failing him, he haſtily put back. On his return to the beach another man joined him in the canoe, and then both of them paddled towards us. They ſeemed, however, afraid to approach, till their apprehenſions were removed by Omiah, who addreſſed them in the language of Otaheite. Thus encouraged, they came near enough to receive ſome nails and beads, which, being tied to ſome wood, were thrown into the canoe. They, however, put the wood aſide without untying the ſtring, which perhaps might have proceeded from ſuperſtition; for we were informed by Omiah, that when they obſerved us offering preſents to them, they requeſted ſomething for their Eatooa. On Omiah's aſking them, whether they eat human fleſh, they replied in the negative, with equal abhorrence and deteſtation. One of them, named Mourooa, being queſtioned with regard to a ſcar on his forehead, ſaid, it was the conſequence of a wound he had received in fighting with the natives of an iſland lying towards the N. E. who ſometimes invaded them. They afterwards laid hands on a rope, but would not venture on board, telling Omiah, that their countrymen on ſhore had ſuggeſted to them this caution; and had likewiſe directed them to enquire whence our ſhip came, and to procure information of the name of the Captain. Their chief, they ſaid, was called Orooaeeka. When we demanded the name of the iſland, they told us it was Mangya, or Mangeea, to which they ſometimes added nooe, nai, naiwa. The features of Mourooa were agreeable, and his diſpoſition, to all appearance, no leſs ſo; for he exhibited ſome droll geſticulations, which indicated humour and good nature. He alſo made others of a ſerious kind, and repeated ſome words with an air of devotion, before he would venture to take hold of the rope at the ſtern of the ſhip. He was luſty and well made, though not tall. His complexion was nearly of the ſame caſt with that of the natives of the moſt ſouthern parts of Europe. His companion was not ſo handſome. They both had ſtrong, ſtrait, black hair, tied together on the top of their heads with a piece of white cloth. They had long beards; and the inſide of their arms, from the elbow to the ſhoulders, and ſome other parts, were tatooed, or punctured. The lobe of their ears was ſlit to ſuch a length, that one of them ſtuck there a knife, and ſome beads we had given him. The ſame perſon had hung about his neck, by way of ornament, two poliſhed pearl-ſhells, and a bunch of human hair, looſely twiſted together. They wore a kind of girdles, which we found were a ſubſtance manufactured from the morus papyrifera, and glazed like thoſe uſed in the Friendly Iſlands. They had on their feet a ſort of ſandals, made of a graſſy ſubſtance interwoven, which we perceived were alſo worn by thoſe whom we had ſeen on the beach. The canoe in which they came was the only one we ſaw. It was very narrow, and not more than ten feet long, but ſtrong, and neatly made. The lower part was of white wood; but the upper part was black, and their paddles were of the ſame colour. Theſe were broad at one end, blunted, and about three feet long. The fore part had a flat board faſtened over it, which projected out, to prevent the water from getting in. It had an upright ſtern, five feet high, which terminated at the top in a kind of fork. They paddled indifferently either end of the canoe forward.

C H A P. IV.

An attempt made to land on the Iſland of Mangeea, which we were obliged to leave unviſited—Obſervations on the coaſt—Tranſactions with the natives—Deſcription of the Iſland and its inhabitants—Specimen of their language—The Reſolution and Diſcovery continue their courſe northward—Diſcover another iſland named Wateeo—Viſits from the natives—An account of their perſons and dreſs—The coaſt explored—Lieutenants Gore and Burney, Mr. Anderſon and Omiah ſent on ſhore—An account of their reception—They are introduced to three Chiefs—A dance of twenty young women—Omiah's apprehenſion of being roaſted—The iſlanders ſend proviſions on board—Further deſcription of the natives—Of their double canoes—Trees and plants—Omiah's expedient to prevent being detained on ſhore—He meets with three of his countrymen—An account of their diſtreſsful voyage—Additional remarks relative to Wateeo—Otakootaia viſited, and Harvey's Iſland—A fruitleſs attempt made to land—The two ſhips bear away for the Friendly Iſles—Palmerſton's Iſland touched at—Two iſlots deſcribed—Refreſhments procured—Arrive at the Friendly Iſlands—Intercourſe with the natives of Komango—Arrival at Annamooka—Tranſactions and incidents there—An account of Annamooka—The Reſolution and Diſcovery proceed to Hapaee.

AS ſoon as the ſhips were in a proper ſtation, about ten o'clock A. M. of the 30th, two boats were ſent out to endeavour to find a convenient place for landing. Captain Cook had no ſooner put off in his own boat, than the two men approached with their canoe, and when along ſide of the boat Mourooa, without heſitation, ſtept into her. Omiah, who was with the Captain, was deſired to enquire of Mourooa, where we could land; upon which he directed us to two places. But we ſoon perceived, with regret, that the attempt at either was impracticable, on account of the ſurf, unleſs at the riſque of having our boats deſtroyed. Nor were we more ſucceſsful in our ſearch for anchorage, as we could find no bottom within a cable's length of the breakers, where we met with from forty to twenty fathoms depth, over ſharp rocks of coral. While we thus reconnoitred the ſhore of Mangeea, the natives thronged down upon the reef all armed. Mourooa, who ſtill remained in the boat with captain Cook, thinking, perhaps, that this warlike appearance deterred us from landing, commanded them to retire. As many of them complied, we imagined, that he was a perſon of ſome conſequence: indeed, if we did not miſunderſtand him, he was brother to the king of the iſland. Several of them, inſtigated by curioſity ſwam from the ſhore to the boats, and came on board them without reſerve. We even found ſome difficulty in keeping them out, and could ſcarce prevent their pilfering whatever was within their reach. At length, when they obſerved us returning to the ſhips, they all left us except Mourooa, who, though not without manifeſt indications of fear, accompanied the Commodore on board the Reſolution. The cattle, and other new objects that he ſaw, did not ſtrike him with much ſurprize; his mind, perhaps, being too much occupied about his own ſafety, to allow him to attend to other things. He ſeemed very uneaſy, and gave us but little new intelligence: and, therefore, after he had continued a ſhort time on board, a boat was ordered to carry him towards the land. In his way from the cabin, happening to ſtumble over one of the goats, he ſtopped, looked at the animal, and aſked Omiah, what bird it was? But not receiving an immediate anſwer, he repeated the queſtion to ſome of the people who were upon the deck. The boat having conveyed him near the ſurf, he leaped into the water, and ſwam aſhore. His countrymen eager to learn from him what he had ſeen, flocked round him as ſoon as he had landed; in which ſituation they remained when we loſt ſight of them. We hoiſted in the boat as ſoon as ſhe returned, and made ſail to the northward. Thus were we obliged to leave this fine iſland unviſited, which ſeemed capable of ſupplying all our wants. It is ſituated in lat. 21 deg. 57 min. S. long. 201 deg. 53 min. E.

This iſland of Mangeea made a moſt delightful appearance; it may therefore eaſily be conceived with what reluctance we left it. Thoſe parts of its coaſt which fell under our obſervation, are guarded by a reef of coral rock, againſt which a heavy ſurf is continually breaking. The iſland is about five leagues in circumference, and though of a moderate and pretty equal height, may be ſeen in clear weather at the diſtance of more than ten leagues. In the interior parts, it riſes into ſmall hills, whence there is an eaſy deſcent to the ſhore, which, in the S. W. part, is ſteep, though not very high, and has ſeveral cavities made by the daſhing of the waves againſt a browniſh ſand-ſtone, of which it conſiſts. The deſcent here abounds with trees of a deep green, which ſeem to be all of one ſort, except neareſt the ſhore, where we obſerved numbers of that ſpecies of dracæna, found in the woods of New Zealand. The ſhore on the N. W. part, terminates in a ſandy beach, beyond which the land is broken into ſmall chaſms, and has a broad border of trees, reſembling tall willows. Farther up, on the aſcent, the trees were of the deep green above-mentioned, which ſome of us imagined to be the rima, intermixed with cocoa-palms, and a few other ſorts. Some trees of a higher ſort were thinly ſcattered on the hills, the other parts of which were covered with ſomewhat like fern, or were bare, and of a reddiſh colour. The iſland upon the whole, has a pleaſing appearance, and might, by proper cultivation, be made a beautiful ſpot. The natives appearing to be both numerous and well fed, it is highly probable, that ſuch articles of proviſion as the iſland produces are found in great abundance. Our friend Mourooa informed us, that they had no hogs nor dogs, though they had heard of both thoſe animals, but that they had plantains, taro, and breadfruit. The only birds we obſerved, were ſome terns, noddies, white egg-birds, and white herons.

The inhabitants of this iſland reſemble thoſe of Otaheite and the Marqueſas in the beauty of their perſons; and their general diſpoſition ſeems alſo to correſpond with that of the firſt mentioned people; for they are not only lively and chearful, but are acquainted with all the laſcivious geſticulations practiſed by the Otaheiteans in their dances. We had likewiſe reaſon to ſuppoſe, that they have a ſimilar method of living: for though we had not an opportunity of ſeeing many of their habitations, we obſerved one houſe near the beach which in its mode of conſtruction, differed little from thoſe of Otaheite. It appeared to be ſeven feet high, and thirty in length, with an open end, which repreſented an ellipſis, or oval, tranſverſely divided. It was pleaſantly ſituated in a grove. Theſe people ſalute ſtrangers by joining noſes, and taking the hand of the perſon whom they accoſt, which they rub with ſome force upon their mouth and noſe. It is worthy of remark, that the inhabitants of the Palaos, New Philippine, or rather Caroline Iſlands, though at the diſtance of near 1500 leagues from Mangeea, have a ſimilar method of ſalutation. The language of the natives of Mangeea is a dialect of that ſpoken at Otaheite, as will appear by the following liſt of words, ſelected by the aſſiſtance of Omiah. The agreement between them as to the orthography is very ſtriking; but their pronunciation in Mangeea, like that of the New Zealanders, is rather more guttural than that of Otaheite.

A LIST of words uſed in Mangeea, and compared with others uſed at Otaheite, taken from Omiah by Mr. Anderſon.

MANGEEA.	OTAHEITE.	ENGLISH.
Kooroo	Ooroo	*Bread-fruit.*
Ewakka	Evaa	*A Canoe.*
Ereekee	Eree	*A Chief.*
Pooroohee	——	*A Club.*
Taia, taia aoutee	Eoute	*Cloth or cloth-plant.*
Eakkaree	Aree	*A Cocoa-nut.*
Maheine	Maheine	*A Daughter.*
Naoo, mou	——	*Friend.*
Etamagee	Tamaee	*A Fight, or battle.*
Mata	Myty	*Good.*
Manna	——	*Great, or powerful.*
Ereekee, manna	——	*A Powerful chief.*
Ou	Wou	*I.*
Ooma	——	*To Kiſs.*
Taata, or Tangata	Taata	*A Man.*
Aoure	Aoure	*No.*
Heyhey	——	*A Spear.*
Euta	Euta	*The Shore.*
Heetaia matooa	——	*The Sun.*
Waheine	Waheine	*A Woman.*
Oo	—— ——	*There.*
Ehataiee	Owytaieeoa	*What is that?*
Aee	Ai	*Yes.*

Having taken our departure from Mangeea, we held on our courſe northward, till noon of Monday the 31ſt, when the man at the maſt-head called out land, which was ſoon anſwered by a ſignal from the Diſcovery. It lay in the direction of N. E. by N. diſtant 10 leagues. The next morning, being Tueſday the 1ſt of April, we were abreaſt of its north-end, and within four leagues of it. It now had the appearance of an iſland, nearly of the ſame extent with that which we had left. Another iſland, much ſmaller, was alſo deſcried right a-head. Though we could ſoon have reached this, we preferred the larger one, as being moſt likely to furniſh food for our cattle. We therefore made ſail for it; but there being little wind, and that unfavourable, we were ſtill two leagues to leeward, at eight o'clock the ſucceeding morning. Soon after three armed boats were diſpatched, and one from the Diſcovery, under the command of Lieutenant Gore, in ſearch of a landing-place, and good anchoring-ground. Mean while we plied up under the iſland with the ſhips. As our boats were putting off, we ſaw ſeveral canoes coming from the ſhore, which repaired firſt to the Diſcovery, ſhe being the neareſt to it. Not long after, three of theſe canoes came along-ſide our ſhip, the Reſolution. They are long and narrow, and are ſupported by outriggers; the head is flat above, but prow-like below; and the ſtern is about four feet high. We beſtowed on our viſitors ſome knives, beads, and other trifles; and they gave us ſome cocoa-nuts, in conſequence of our having aſked for them; but they did not part with them by way of exchange, as they ſeemed to have no idea of barter or traffic. One of the natives, after a little perſuaſion came on board; and two others ſoon followed his example. They appeared to be perfectly at their eaſe, and free from all uneaſy apprehenſions. After their departure, a man arrived in another canoe, bringing a bunch of plantains as a preſent to our captain, who gave him in return, a piece of red cloth, and an axe. We were afterwards informed by Omiah, that this preſent had been ſent from the king of the iſland. Soon after, a double canoe, containing twelve of the iſlanders, came towards us. On approaching the ſhip, they recited ſome words in concert, by way of chorus, one of them firſt giving the word before each repetition. Having finiſhed this ſolemn chant, they came along-ſide, and aſked for the chief. As ſoon as Captain Cook had made his appearance, a pig and ſome cocoa-nuts were conveyed into the ſhip; and the captain was alſo preſented with a piece of matting, by the principal perſon in the canoe, when he and his companions had got on board. Theſe new viſitants were introduced into the cabin, and other parts of the ſhip. Though ſome objects ſeemed to ſurprize them, nothing could fix their attention. They were afraid to venture near the cows and horſes, of whoſe nature they could form no conception. As for the ſheep and goats, they gave us to underſtand, that they knew them to be birds. It may appear rather incredible, that human ignorance could ever make ſo ridiculous a miſtake, there not being the ſmalleſt reſemblance between any winged animal and a ſheep or goat. But theſe people ſeemed unacquainted with the exiſtence of any other terreſtrial animals than hogs, dogs, and birds; and ſeeing our goats and ſheep to be very different from the two former, they inferred abſurdly, that they muſt belong to the latter claſs, in which they knew there were a great variety of ſpecies. Though Captain Cook beſtowed on his new friend what he ſuppoſed would be the moſt acceptable preſent, yet he ſeemed ſomewhat diſappointed. We were afterwards informed, that he eagerly wiſhed to procure a dog, of which kind of animals this iſland was deſtitute, though the natives knew that the race exiſted in other iſlands of the Pacific Ocean. Captain Clerke had received a ſimilar preſent, with the ſame view, from another man, who was equally diſappointed in his expectations.

The iſlanders, whom we had ſeen in thoſe canoes, were, in general, of the middling ſtature, and not unlike the Mangeans. Their hair either flowed looſely over their ſhoulders, or was tied on the crown of the head; and tho' in ſome it was frizzled, yet that, as well as the ſtraight ſort, was long. Some of the young men were handſome. Like the inhabitants of Mangeea, they wore girdles of glazed cloth, or fine matting, the ends of which were brought between their thighs. Their ears were bored, and they wore about their necks, by way of ornament, a ſort of broad graſs, ſtained with red, and ſtrung with berries of the night-ſhade. Many of them were curiouſly marked or tatooed from the middle downwards, particularly upon their legs; which made them appear as if they wore boots. Their beards were long, and they had a kind of ſandals on their feet. They were frank and chearful in their deportment, very friendly, and good-natured. Lieutenant Gore returned from his excurſion, and informed Captain Cook, that he had examined the weſt-ſide of the iſland, without being able to find a place where a ſhip could ride in ſafety, or a boat could land, the ſhore being bounded by a ſteep coral rock, againſt which a continual ſurf broke with extraordinary violence. But as the inhabitants ſeemed extremely friendly, and as deſirous of our landing as we ourſelves were, Mr. Gore was of opinion, that they might be prevailed upon to bring off to the boats beyond the ſurf, ſuch articles as we were moſt in need of. As we had little or no wind, the delay of a day or two was of no great conſequence, and therefore it was reſolved to try the experiment the next morning: ſoon after day break ſome canoes came towards the ſhips, one of which directed its courſe to the Reſolution. There were in it ſome cocoa-nuts, plantains, and a hog, for which the natives demanded from us a dog, refuſing every other thing we offered by way of exchange. Though one of our gentlemen on board had a dog and bitch, which were great nuiſances in the ſhip, and which might have ſerved to propagate a race of ſo uſeful an animal in this iſland, yet he could not be prevailed upon to part with them. However, to gratify theſe people, Omiah gave them a favourite dog he had brought with him from England, with which acquiſition they were highly pleaſed.

Thurſday the 3d of April, at ten o'clock A. M. Lieutenant Gore was diſpatched with three boats, to make trial of the experiment which that officer had propoſed. Two of the natives, who had been on board, accompanied him; and Omiah ſerved as an interpreter. The ſhips being a full league from the iſland when the boats put off, and the wind being inconſiderable, it was 12 o'clock before we could work up to it. We then perceived our three boats juſt without the ſurf, and an amazing number of the iſlanders on the ſhore, abreaſt of them. Concluding from this, that Lieutenant Gore, and others of our people had landed, we were impatient to know the event. With a view of obſerving their motions, and being ready to afford them ſuch aſſiſtance as they might occaſionally require, we kept as near the ſhore as was conſiſtent with prudence. We were convinced, however, that the reef was a very effectual barrier between us and our friends who had landed, and put them completely out of the reach of our protection. But the natives, in all probability, were not ſo ſenſible of this circumſtance as we were. Some of them now and then, brought a few cocoa-nuts to the ſhips, and exchanged them for whatever was offered them. Theſe occaſional viſits diminiſhed the Captain's ſolicitude about our people who had landed; for, though we could procure no intelligence from our viſitors, yet their venturing abroad ſeemed to imply, that their countrymen on ſhore had made no improper uſe of the confidence repoſed in them. At length towards the evening, we had the ſatisfaction of ſeeing the boats return. When our people got on board, we found that Mr. Gore, Mr. Anderſon, Mr. Burney, and Omiah, were the only perſons who had landed. The occurrences of the day were now fully reported to Captain Cook by Mr. Gore. Mr. Anderſon's account of their tranſactions, which was very circumſtantial, and including ſome obſervations on the iſland, and its inhabitants, was to the following purport.

They rowed towards a ſandy beach, where a great number of natives had aſſembled, and came to an anchor at the diſtance of 100 yards from the reef. Several of the iſlanders ſwam off, bringing cocoa-nuts with them; and Omiah gave them to underſtand, that our people were deſirous of landing. Soon after two canoes came off; and to inſpire the natives with a greater confidence, Mr. Gore and his companions reſolved to go unarmed. Mr. Anderſon and Lieutenant Burney went in one canoe, a little before the other; and their conductors watching with great attention the motions of the ſurf, landed them ſafely on the reef. A native took hold of each of them, with a view of ſupporting them in walking over the rugged rocks to the beach, where ſeveral others, holding in their hands the green boughs of a ſpecies of *mimoſa*, met them, and ſaluted them by the junction of noſes. They were conducted from the beach amidſt a vaſt multitude of people, who flocked around them with the moſt eager curioſity; and being led up an avenue of cocoa-palms, ſoon came to a number of men, arranged in two rows, and armed with clubs. Proceeding onward among theſe, they found a perſon who appeared to be a chief, ſitting croſs-legged on the ground, and cooling himſelf with a kind of triangular fan, made from the leaf of the cocoa-palm, with a poliſhed handle of black wood. He wore in his ears large bunches of beautiful feathers of a red colour, but had no other mark to diſtinguiſh him from the reſt of the people. Our two countrymen having ſaluted him as he ſat, marched on among the men armed with clubs, and came to a ſecond chief, adorned like the former, and occupied like him, in fanning himſelf. He was remarkable for his ſize and corpulence, though he did not appear to be above 30 years of age. They were conducted in the ſame manner to a third chief, who ſeemed older than the two former: he alſo was ſitting, and was ornamented with red feathers. After they had ſaluted him as they had done the others, he deſired them both to ſit down, which they willingly conſented to, being greatly fatigued with walking, and with the extreme heat they felt amidſt the ſurrounding multitude.

The people being ordered to ſeparate, our two gentlemen ſaw, at a ſmall diſtance, 20 young women, adorned, like the chiefs, in red feathers, engaged in a dance, which they performed to a ſlow and ſolemn air, ſung by them all. The gentlemen roſe up, and walked forward to ſee thoſe dancers, who, without paying them the ſmalleſt attention, ſtill continued their dance. They ſeemed to be directed by a man, who, in the capacity of a prompter, mentioned the ſeveral motions they were to make. They never changed the ſpot, as Europeans do in dancing, and though their feet were not entirely at reſt, this exerciſe conſiſted more in moving their fingers very nimbly, holding their hands, at the ſame time, in a prone poſition, near the face, and occaſionally clapping them together. Their dances and ſinging are performed in the exacteſt concert, and the former bear a great reſemblance to thoſe of the natives of the Caroline Iſlands. The young women had probably been inſtructed with extraordinary care, and ſelected for this ceremony, being ſuperior in beauty to moſt of thoſe who were in the crowd. They were in general, rather ſtout, and of an olive complexion, with black hair flowing in ringlets down their necks. Their ſhape and limbs were elegantly formed; for their dreſs conſiſting only of a piece of glazed cloth tied round the waiſt, which ſcarcely reached ſo low as the knees, our gentlemen had an opportunity of examining almoſt every part. Their features were rather too full to conſtitute a perfect beauty. Their eyes were of a deep black, and their countenances expreſſed a great degree of modeſty and complacency. Before theſe beauteous females had finiſhed their dance, a noiſe was heard as if ſome horſes had been galloping towards our gentlemen; and on turning their eyes aſide, they ſaw the people armed with clubs, who had been deſired to entertain them, as they ſuppoſed, with an exhibition of their manner of fighting; which they did, one party purſuing another, who ran away.

At this time Lieutenant Burney and Mr. Anderſon began to look about for Mr. Gore and Omiah, whom they at length perceived coming up, having been as much incommoded by the crowds of people as they themſelves had been, and introduced in the ſame manner to the three chiefs; the names of whom were Otteroo, Taroa, and Fatowweera. Each of theſe exacting a preſent, Mr. Gore gave them ſuch things as he had brought with him for that purpoſe; after which he informed the chiefs of his views in coming aſhore, but was deſired to wait till the next day before he ſhould have what he wanted. They now endeavoured to ſeparate our gentlemen from each other, every one of whom had his reſpective circle to ſurround, and gaze at him. Mr. Anderſon was, at one time, upwards of an hour apart from his friends; and when he told the chief, who was near him, that he wiſhed to ſpeak to Omiah, his requeſt was peremptorily refuſed. At the ſame time he found that thoſe near him pilfered ſeveral trifling things which were in his pocket; and on his complaining of this treatment to the chief, he juſtified their behaviour. From theſe circumſtances Mr. Anderſon began to apprehend, that they deſigned to detain our party among them. In this ſituation he aſked for ſomething to eat; upon which they brought him ſome cocoa-nuts, bread-fruit, and a ſort of ſour pudding; and when he complained of the heat, occaſioned by the multitude of people, the chief himſelf condeſcended to fan him. Mr. Burney going to the place where Mr. Anderſon was, the latter informed him of his ſuſpicions; and to try whether they were well founded or not, they both attempted to get to the beach; upon which they were ſoon ſtopped by ſome of the natives, who ſaid they muſt return to the place which they had left. On their coming up they found Omiah under the ſame apprehenſions; but he had, as he imagined, an additional motive of terror; for, having obſerved, that they had dug a hole in the ground for an oven, which they were now heating, he could aſſign no other reaſon for it, than that they intended to roaſt and devour our people; he went even ſo far as to aſk them, whether that was their intention; at which they were much ſurprized, aſking, in return, whether that cuſtom prevailed among us.

Thus were Mr. Anderſon and the others detained the greateſt part of the day, being ſometimes ſeparated, and ſometimes together; but continually in a croud, who deſired them frequently to uncover parts of their ſkin, the ſight of which ſtruck the iſlanders with admiration. They at the ſame time, rifled the pockets of our gentlemen; and one of them ſnatched from Mr. Gore a bayonet, which hung by his ſide. This being repreſented to one of the chiefs, he pretended to ſend a perſon in ſearch of it, but probably countenanced the theft; for Omiah, ſoon after, had a dagger ſtolen from his ſide in the ſame manner. They now brought ſome green boughs as emblems of friendſhip, and, ſticking the ends of them in the ground, deſired our party would hold them as they ſat, giving them to underſtand, that they muſt ſtay and eat with them. The ſight of a pig lying near the oven, which they had heated, removed Omiah's apprehenſions of being put into it himſelf, and made him think, that it might be intended as a repaſt for him and his companions. The chief alſo ſent ſome of his people to provide food for the cattle, and they returned with a few plantain trees, which they conveyed to the boats. In the mean time, Mr. Burney, and Mr. Anderſon made a ſecond attempt to get to the beach; but on their arrival, they found themſelves watched by people who ſeemed to have been ſtationed there for that purpoſe; for when Mr. Anderſon endeavoured to wade in upon the reef, one of them dragged him back by his clothes. They alſo inſiſted upon his throwing down ſome pieces of coral that he had picked up, and on his refuſing to comply, took them from him by force: nor would they ſuffer him to retain ſome ſmall plants which he had gathered. They likewiſe took a fan from Mr. Burney, who, on his coming aſhore had received it as a preſent. Finding that obedience to their will was the only method of procuring better treatment, the gentlemen returned to the place they had quitted; whereupon the natives promiſed, that after they had partaken of a repaſt, that had been prepared for them, they ſhould be furniſhed with a canoe to carry them off to their boats. Accordingly, the ſecond chief to whom they had been preſented, having ſeated himſelf on a low ſtool, and directed the multitude to form a large ring, made them ſit down by him. A number of cocoa-nuts were now brought, with a quantity of baked plantains, and a piece of the pig that had been dreſſed, was placed before each of them. Their fatigue, however, had taken away their appetites; nevertheleſs they eat a little to pleaſe their entertainers. When this meal was finiſhed, Omiah, Mr. Gore's interpreter, was queſtioned by the natives concerning us, our country, our ſhips and arms. In anſwer to which, among other particulars, he told them, that our country had ſhips as large as their iſland, on board of which were implements of war (deſcribing our guns) of ſuch dimenſions, as to contain ſeveral people within them; one of which could demoliſh the iſland at one ſhot. As to the guns in our two ſhips, he acknowledged that they were but ſmall in compariſon with the former; yet even with theſe, he ſaid, we could with great eaſe, at a conſiderable diſtance deſtroy the iſland, and every ſoul in it. On their enquiring by what means this could be done, Omiah produced ſome cartridges from his pocket, and having ſubmitted to inſpection the balls, and the gun-powder by which they were to be ſet in motion, he diſpoſed the latter upon the ground, and by means of a piece of lighted wood, ſet it on fire. The ſudden blaſt, the mingled flame and ſmoke, that ſucceeded inſtantaneouſly, filled the natives with ſuch aſtoniſhment, that they no longer doubted the formidable power of our weapons: and had it not been for the terrible ideas they entertained of the guns of our ſhips, from this ſpecimen of the mode of their operation, it was imagined that they would have detained the gentlemen the whole night; for Omiah aſſured them, that, if he and his friends did not return on board the ſame day, they might expect, that our Commander, captain Cook, would fire upon the iſland. It was now near ſun-ſet, when the iſlanders ſent down to the beach the remainder of the proviſions that had been dreſſed, to be carried to the ſhips; ſoon after which our gentlemen found a canoe prepared to put them off to their boats, which the natives did with great caution; but as they were puſhing the canoe into the ſurf, one of them ſnatched a bag out of her, which contained a pocket piſtol belonging to Mr. Anderſon, who calling out to the thief with marks of the higheſt diſpleaſure, he ſwam back to the canoe with the bag. The iſlanders then put them on board the boats, with the cocoa-nuts, plantains, and other proviſions; and they immediately rowed back to the ſhips.

The reſtrained ſituation of theſe gentlemen gave them very little opportunity of obſerving the country; for they were ſeldom a hundred yards from the place where they had been introduced to the chiefs, and, conſequently, were confined to a few ſurrounding objects. The firſt thing that attracted their notice was the number of people, which muſt have been at leaſt two thouſand. Except a few, thoſe who had come on board the ſhips, were all of an inferior claſs; for a great number of thoſe that our gentlemen met with on ſhore, had a ſuperior dignity of demeanour, and their complexion was much whiter. In general, they had their hair, which is long and black, tied on the crown of the head. Many of the young men were perfect models in ſhape, and of a delicate complexion. The old men were, many of them, corpulent; and they, as well as the young, had a remarkable ſmoothneſs of ſkin. Their general dreſs conſiſted of a piece of cloth wrapped about the waiſt, but ſome had pieces of mats, moſt curiouſly variegated with black and white, formed into a kind of jacket without ſleeves; while others wore conical caps made of the core of a cocoa-nut, interwoven with beads. In their ears, which were pierced, they hung pieces of the membraneous part of ſome plant, or ſtuck there ſome odoriferous flower. The chiefs, and other perſons of rank, had two little balls, with a common baſe, made of bone; which they hung round their necks with ſmall cords. Red feathers are conſidered in this iſland as a particular mark of diſtinction; for none but the chiefs, and the young women who danced, aſſumed them. Some of the men were punctured all over their ſides and backs, and ſome of the women had the ſame ornament (if it deſerves that name) on their legs. The elderly women had their hair cropped ſhort, and many of them were cut all over the fore part of the body in oblique lines. The wife of a chief appeared with her child, laid in a piece of red cloth, which had been preſented to her huſband: ſhe ſuckled the infant much after the manner of our women. Another chief introduced his daughter, who was young, beautiful, and modeſt. No perſonal deformities were obſerved in either ſex, except a few individuals, who had ſcars of broad ulcers remaining on the face and other parts. Many of the natives were armed with ſpears and clubs, the latter of which were generally about ſix feet long, made of a hard black wood neatly poliſhed. The ſpears were formed of the ſame wood, ſimply pointed, and were in general twelve feet long; but ſome were ſo ſhort as to ſeem intended for darts. They preſerved their canoes from the ſun under the ſhade of various trees. Mr. Anderſon ſaw eight or ten of them all double ones; that is, two ſingle ones laſhed together by rafters laid acroſs. They were about four feet deep, and in length about twenty feet, and the ſides were rounded with a plank raiſed on them. Two of theſe canoes were curiouſly ſtained all over with black, in numberleſs ſmall figures, as triangles, ſquares, &c. and were far ſuperior to any thing of the kind Mr. Anderſon had ever ſeen at any other iſland in the South Sea. The paddles were almoſt elliptical, and about four feet long. Moſt of the trees obſerved by Mr. Anderſon were cocoa-palms, ſome ſpecies of hibiſcus; a ſort of euphorbia; and many of the ſame kind he had ſeen at Mangeea. The latter are tall and ſlender, reſembling a cypreſs; and are called by the natives etoa. This gentleman ſaw alſo a ſpecies of convolvulus, and ſome treacle-muſtard; beſides which there are doubtleſs other plants and fruit-trees, which he had not an opportunity of ſeeing. The ſoil, towards the ſea, is nothing more than a bank of coral, generally ſteep and rugged, which, though it has probably been for many centuries expoſed to the weather, has ſuffered no further change than becoming black on its ſurface. The reef or rock, with which the ſhore is lined, runs to different breadths into the ſea, where it reſembles a high ſteep wall: it is of a browniſh colour, and nearly even with the ſurface of the water; and though its texture is rather porous, it is capable of withſtanding the waſhing of the ſurf, which conſtantly breaks upon it.

Though this iſland had never before been viſited by Europeans, there were other ſtrangers now reſiding in it; and it was entirely owing to Omiah's accompanying Mr. Gore, that this remarkable circumſtance came to our knowledge. He had ſcarcely landed on the beach, when he found, among the crowd, three of his own countrymen, natives of the Sociery Iſles. At the diſtance of about two hundred leagues from thoſe iſlands, an immenſe ocean intervening, with ſuch miſerable ſea-boats as their inhabitants make uſe of, ſuch a meeting, at ſuch a place, ſo accidentally viſited by us, may be conſidered as one of thoſe extraordinary and unexpected ſituations, which ſtrike a curious obſerver with wonder and amazement. The mutual ſurpriſe and pleaſure with which Omiah and his countrymen engaged in converſation, may eaſily be imagined. All were equally impatient; they to hear Omiah's adventures, and Omiah to know theirs. Their ſtory, as related by themſelves, is a very affecting one. They ſaid, that about 20 perſons, male and female, had embarked in a canoe at Otaheite, with an intention of croſſing over to Ulietea; but they were prevented by contrary winds from reaching the latter, or returning to the former iſland. A dreadful tempeſt drove them into the main ocean, and the ſea, continuing to run mountains high, waſhed overboard ſome of the women and children, who periſhed before they experienced any further diſtreſs: that, after three days, when the ſtorm abated, thoſe who remained found themſelves in an unknown ocean, with little more proviſions than were neceſſary to ſerve them a very ſhort time: that, having no pilot to direct their courſe, they continued to go before the wind day after day; and, their ſtock of proviſions being exhauſted, they ſuffered inconceivable hardſhips: that, their number gradually diminiſhed, worn out by famine and fatigue: that, thoſe who ſurvived had nothing but the ſea-weed which they found floating in the ſea, and the water which they ſaved when it rained, to keep them alive: that, ten days having elapſed, and no land in ſight, deſpair took place of hope, and ſeveral, unable to ſupport the pangs of hunger, jumped overboard in their phrenzy, and periſhed by an eaſier death; and the groans of the dying, and the terrible agonies with which ſome were affected before death came to their relief, exceeded all deſcription. In this melancholy ſituation they had exiſted for 13 days, and how much longer they could have no recollection, for they were taken up inſenſible of pain, and hardly to be diſtinguiſhed from the emaciated bodies of the dead among whom they were found, ſeemingly without life or motion, till by the friendly care of their deliverers they were reſtored. When they were recovered, they ſaid, it was like waking from a dream: they knew not where they were, nor how they came upon land; but being told they were taken up at ſea, and in what condition, as their ſenſes gradually returned, they by degrees recollected all the circumſtances already related: they added, that ever ſince they were brought to life, they had remained with their deliverers, and were now quite reconciled to their condition, and happy in the ſituation in which the Etooa, or good ſpirit, had placed them. Four men had ſurvived, one of whom had ſince died; and the names of the three, now living, are Tavee, Otirreroa, and Orououte; the former was born at Huaheine, the ſecond at Ulietea, and the latter at Otaheite. Omiah, after hearing their relation, with which he was apparently much affected, told them, that they might now take the opportunity of returning home with him; that he would intercede for them, and that he was ſure, if they choſe it, the chiefs of the expedition would grant his requeſt. They thanked Omiah for his kindneſs; nor had they any reaſon to ſuppoſe, that ſuch an offer would ever be made them again; but they were now determined to end their days with the people who had reſtored them to ſecond life; and as their deareſt relations and friends were of the number of thoſe who periſhed, the return to their native country would only renew their grief, and inſtead, of affording them pleaſure, would increaſe their melancholy. The application of this narrative is obvious. It will ſerve to explain, in a more ſatisfactory manner than the flimſy conjectures of ſpeculative reaſoners, how the detached parts of the world, and, in particular, the iſlands of the Pacific Ocean, may have been firſt peopled; thoſe eſpecially that lie at a conſiderable diſtance from each other, or from any inhabited parts of a continent. Such accidents as the above related, probably happen frequently in the great Pacific Ocean. In 1696, two canoes, having on board 30 perſons of both ſexes, were driven, by contrary winds and tempeſtuous weather, on the Iſle of Samal, one of the Philippines, after having been toſſed about at ſea 70 days, and having performed a voyage, from an iſland, called by them Amorſot, 300 leagues to the Eaſt of Samal. Five of the number who embarked, died of the hardſhips ſuffered during this extraordinary paſſage. In 1721, two canoes, one containing 24, the other 6 perſons, men, women, and children, were driven from an iſland, they called Farroilep, northward, to the iſle of Guam, one of the Ladrones, or Mariannes: but theſe had not ſailed ſo far as their countrymen, who reached Samal, as above, and they had been at ſea only 20 days. There ſeems to be no reaſon to doubt the authenticity of theſe two relations. The information contained in the letters of the Jeſuits, about theſe iſlands, now known under the name of the Carolines, and diſcovered to the Spaniards by the arrival of the canoes at Samal and Guam, has been adopted by all our later writers.

The natives of this iſland call it Wateeoo. It is ſituated in the lat. of 20 deg. 1 min. S. and in the long. of 201 deg. 45 min. E. and is about 6 leagues in circumference. It is a beautiful ſpot, with a ſurface covered with verdure, and compoſed of hills and plains. The ſoil, in ſome parts is light and ſandy; but further up the country, we ſaw from the ſhip by the aſſiſtance of our glaſſes, a reddiſh caſt on the riſing grounds. There the iſlanders build their houſes, for we could perceive ſeveral of them which were long and ſpacious. Its produce is nearly the ſame with that of Mangeea, the iſland we laſt quitted. If we may depend on Omiah's account of what he learned from his three countrymen, in the courſe of converſation, the manners of the people of Wateeoo, their general babits of life, and their manner of treating ſtrangers, greatly reſemble thoſe that prevail at Otaheite, and its neighbouring iſlands. There is alſo a great ſimilarity between their religious ceremonies aud opinions. From every circumſtance, indeed, it may be conſidered as indubitable, that the inhabitants of Wateeoo derive their deſcent from the ſame ſtock, which has ſo remarkably diffuſed itſelf over the immenſe extent of the Southern Ocean. Omiah aſſured us, that they dignified their iſland with the pompous appellation of Wenooa no te Eatooa, implying a land of Gods, eſteeming themſelves a race of divinities, poſſeſſed with the ſpirit of the Eatooa. Their language was well underſtood by Omiah, and equally ſo by our two New Zealanders who were on board. Though the landing of our gentlemen was the means of enriching the hiſtory of our voyage with the foregoing particulars, yet the principal object in view was partly unattained; for we procured ſcarcely any thing worth mentioning from the iſland. Indeed it appears from the circumſtances already mentioned, that Wateeoo can be of little uſe to any ſhip wanting refreſhment, unleſs in the caſe of the moſt abſolute neceſſity. The natives, knowing now the value of ſome of our commodities, might be induced to being off fruits and hogs to a ſhip ſtanding off or on, or to boats lying off the reef, as ours did. It is doubtful, however, if any freſh water could be procured. For, though ſome was brought in cocoanut ſhells to the gentlemen, they were told, that it was at a conſiderable diſtance; and, probably, it is only to be met with in ſome ſtagnant pool, as no running ſtream was any where to be ſeen.

Calms and light airs, having alternately prevailed during the night of the 3d of April, before day-break an eaſterly ſwell had carried the Reſolution and Diſcovery ſome diſtance from Wateeoo, but having failed of procuring, at that place, the ſupplies we wanted, we left it without regret, and ſteered for the iſland that had been diſcovered by us three days before. Having a gentle breeze at E. we got up with it by ten o'clock, A. M. on Friday, the 4th, when captain Cook immediately diſpatched Mr. Gore with two boats, to ſee if he could land, and get ſubſiſtence for our cattle. Though a reef ſurrounded the land here, as at Wateeoo, and a conſiderable ſurf broke againſt the rocks, our boats no ſooner reached the weſt-ſide of the iſland, but they ventured in, and Mr. Gore and his party arrived ſafe on ſhore. Captain Cook ſeeing from the ſhip they had ſo far ſucceeded, ſent off a ſmall boat to know if farther aſſiſtance was required. She waited to take in a lading of the produce of the iſland, and, therefore, did not return till three o'clock in the afternoon. Being cleared, ſhe was ſent again for another cargo; at the ſame time the jolly boat was alſo diſpatched upon the ſame buſineſs, with orders for Mr. Gore to return with the boats before night, which orders were punctually obeyed. The ſupply obtained here was about 200 cocoa-nuts for our companies, and for our cattle a quantity of graſs, with ſome leaves of the pandanus. This latter being of a ſoft, ſpongy nature, the cattle eat even the branches when cut into ſmall pieces, which are very juicy. This iſland lies nearly four leagues from Wateeoo, the inhabitants of which call it Otakootaia. It is in the latitude of 19 deg. 15 min. ſouth, and the long. of 201 deg. 37 min. E. and is ſuppoſed not to exceed three miles in circuit. It is entirely deſtitute of water; and cocoa-palms were the only common trees found here, of which there were ſeveral cluſters. We ſaw numbers of the wharra, as it is called at Otaheite, or the pandanus of the Eaſt-Indies. We found likewiſe the callophillum, ſuriana, with a few other ſhrubs; alſo a ſort of bindweed, treacle-muſtard, a ſpecies of the ſpurge, and the morinda citrifolia, the fruit of which laſt is ſometimes eaten by the natives of Otaheite. Omiah, who landed with the party, dreſſed ſome of it for their dinner, but they thought the meſs a very indifferent one. A beautiful cuckoo, of a cheſnut brown, variegated with black, was the only bird ſeen among the trees; but, upon the ſhore, were a ſmall ſort of curlew, blue and white herons, ſome egg birds, and great numbers of noddies. One of the company caught a lizard running up a tree: though ſmall, it had a moſt forbidding aſpect. Many of another ſort were alſo ſeen. Infinite numbers of a kind of moth, elegantly ſpeckled with black, white, and red, frequented the buſhes towards the ſea. Some other ſorts of moths, pretty butterflies, and a few inſects of a different kind were obſerved. At this time no fixed inhabitants were ſeen upon this iſland; but we diſcovered a few empty huts, which convinced us of its being, at leaſt, inhabited occaſionally. Monuments, conſiſting of ſeveral large ſtones, were erected under the ſhade of ſome trees: we ſaw alſo ſome ſmaller ones, with which ſeveral places were incloſed, where we ſuppoſed their dead had been buried. In one place we found a great many cockle-ſhells, of a particular ſort, finely grooved, and larger than the firſt; from which it was conjectured, that the iſland had been viſited by perſons who ſometimes feed on ſhell-fiſh. Mr. Gore left a few nails and a hatchet in one of the huts, for the uſe of thoſe who might hereafter touch at this iſland. It may, perhaps, ſurprize, and ſeem incredible to ſome of our readers, when they are told of ſo many iſlands abounding with inhabitants, who ſubſiſt with little or no water. Yet, true it is, that few or none of the little low iſlands between the tropics have any water on the ſurface of the ground, except perhaps in a lagoon, the water of which is generally brackiſh; nor is it eaſy to find water by digging. The fact is, the fruits of the earth are their chief food, and the milk of the cocoa-nut ſerves them for drink. They want no water to dreſs any part of their food, for they knew not the art of boiling till the Europeans taught them, nor had they a veſſel fit for the purpoſe; neither have they any occaſion for waſhing their cloaths, the materials of which they are made, being of the paper kind, will not bear waſhing. Salt water therefore anſwers their purpoſe with very little freſh, and adds a reliſh to their fiſh; in which they dip almoſt every mouthful they eat. This in a great meaſure accounts for their ſubſiſting without water.

Having hoiſted in the boats, we made ſail again to the northward, reſolving to try our fortune at Hervey's Iſland, diſcovered during captain Cook's former voyage, in 1773, and named from Mr. Harvey, the firſt mate of the Endeavour. Sunday, the 6th, at day break, we came in ſight of it, at the diſtance of about three leagues. About eight o'clock we obſerved ſeveral canoes coming from the ſhore towards the ſhips. We were rather ſurprized at this circumſtance, as no traces or ſigns of inhabitants were ſeen when the iſland was firſt diſcovered: this, indeed, might be owing to a briſk wind that then blew, and prevented their canoes from venturing out. As we advanced nearer to the iſland, 6 or 7 double canoes immediately came near us with from 6 to 3 men in each of them. At the diſtance of about a ſtone's-throw from the ſhip they ſtopped, and it was with difficulty Omiah prevailed on them to come along-ſide; but they could not be induced to truſt themſelves on board. Indeed, their diſorderly behaviour did not indicate a diſpoſition to truſt, or to treat us well. They attempted to ſteal ſome oars out of the Diſcovery's boat, and ſtruck a man for endeavouring to prevent them. They alſo cut away a net containing meat, which hung over the ſtern of that ſhip, and at firſt would not reſtore it, though they afterwards permitted us to purchaſe it from them. Thoſe who were about our ſhip, the Reſolution, behaved equally diſorderly and daring; for with a ſort of hooks, made of a long ſtick, they openly endeavoured to rob us of ſeveral things, and actually got a frock belonging to one of our people. It appeared that they had a knowledge of bartering, for they exchanged ſome fiſh for ſmall nails, of which they were extravagantly fond, and called them goore. Pieces of paper, or any other trifling article that was thrown to them, they caught with the greateſt avidity; and if what was thrown fell into the ſea, they immediately plunged in to ſwim after it.

Though the diſtance between Harvey's Iſland and Wateeoo is not very great, the inhabitants differ from each other, both in perſon and diſpoſition. The colour of the natives of Harvey's Iſland is of a deeper caſt, and ſome of them have a fierce ſavage aſpect, like the natives of New Zealand. Their hair is long and black, either hanging looſe about their ſhoulders, or tied in a bunch on the top of the head. Some few, indeed, had it cropped ſhort, and in two or three of them, it was of a red or browniſh caſt. Their cloathing is a narrow piece of mat, bound ſeveral times round the lower part of the body, and paſſing between the thighs. We ſaw a fine cap of red feathers in one of the canoes, and ſome of the natives were ornamented with the ſhell of a pearl-oyſter, poliſhed, and hung about the neck. The mode of ornament, ſo prevalent among the natives of this ocean, of puncturing, or tatooing their bodies, not one of them had adopted; but, though ſingular in this reſpect, their being of the ſame common race is not to be doubted. Their language more reſembles the dialect of Otaheite, than that of Mangeea or Wateeoo. Like the natives of thoſe iſlands, they enquired from whence we came, whither bound, the ſhip's name, that of our Captain, and the number of men on board. Such queſtions as we propoſed to them, in our turn, they very readily anſwered. They informed us, among other particulars, that they had before ſeen two large ſhips, but had not ſpoken to them as they paſſed. Theſe were, doubtleſs, the Reſolution and Adventure. They acquainted us, that the name of their iſland was Terouggemou Atooa; and that they were ſubject to Teerevatooeah, king of Wateeoo. Their food, they ſaid, conſiſted of cocoa-nuts, fiſh, and turtle; being deſtitute of dogs and hogs, and the iſland not producing bread-fruit or plantains. Their canoes (near 30 of which appeared one time in ſight) are tolerably large, and well built, and bear ſome reſemblance to thoſe of Wateeoo. About one o'clock, we drew near the N. W. part of the iſland; this being the only place where we could expect to find a good anchorage. Captain Cook immediately diſpatched lieutenant King, with two armed boats, to ſound, and reconnoitre the coaſt. The boats were no ſooner hoiſted out, than our new viſitors ſuſpended their traffic, puſhing for ſhore as faſt as poſſible, and came no more near us. The boats returned at three o'clock, and Mr. King informed the Captain, that he could find no anchorage for the ſhips; and that the boats could advance no farther than the outer edge of the reef, which was almoſt a quarter of a mile from the ſhore. That a number of the natives came upon the reef armed with clubs and long pikes, meaning, as he ſuppoſed, to oppoſe his landing; though, at the ſame time, they threw cocoanuts to our people, and requeſted them to land: yet, notwithſtanding this ſeemingly friendly treatment, the women were very active in bringing down a freſh ſupply of darts and ſpears. This report having been taken into conſideration, it was concluded, that, as we could not bring the ſhips to an anchor, an attempt to procure graſs here would be attended with delay and danger. Being thus diſappointed in all the iſlands after our leaving New Zealand, and having from variety of circumſtances, been unavoidably retarded in our progreſs, it was in vain to think of doing any thing this year in the high latitudes of the northern hemiſphere, from which we were ſo far diſtant, though it was now the ſeaſon for our operations there. Thus ſituated, it was neceſſary to purſue ſuch meaſures as appeared beſt calculated to preſerve our cattle, and ſave the ſtores and proviſions of the ſhips; the better to enable us to proſecute our northern diſcoveries, which could not commence till a year later than was intended. If we could fortunately have procured a ſupply of water and graſs, at any of the iſlands we had lately viſited, we intended to have ſtood back to the S. till we had got a weſterly wind. But without ſuch a ſupply, the certain conſequence of doing this, would have been the loſs of the cattle, before it was poſſible for us to reach Otaheite, without gaining a ſingle point of advantage reſpecting the grand object of our voyage. The Captain, therefore, determined to bear away for the Friendly Iſles, where he knew he could be well ſupplied with every thing he wanted; and it being neceſſary to run night and day, he ordered Captain Clerke to keep with the Diſcovery right a-head of us, becauſe that ſhip could beſt claw off the land, which we might poſſibly fall in with in our paſſage.

Bearing away, therefore, we ſteered W. by S. wit fine breeze. It was propoſed to proceed firſt to Middleburgh, or Eooa, thinking we might have proviſion enough for the cattle, to laſt till we ſhould arrive at that iſland. But the next day, about noon, thoſe faint breezes that had ſo long retarded us, again returned; and we found it neceſſary to get into the latitude of Palmerſton's and Savage Iſlands, which captain Cook diſcovered in 1774; that, in caſe of neceſſity, recourſe might be had to them. The weather continued variable, and though plenty of rain fell every day, yet it was found adviſeable to obtain water by diſtillation, to be uſed for every purpoſe for which it was fit. The ſtill was kept at work a whole day; during which time we procured about 15 gallons of freſh water. It was apt to diſcolour the meat in which it was boiled, and to tincture every thing with a diſagreeable blackneſs; but our crews preferred it to rain-water, on account of the tarry taſte communicated by the latter. Light breezes continued till Thurſday, the 10th, at which time the wind blew ſome hours freſh from the N. and N. W. In the afternoon we had ſome heavy rain, attended with thunder ſqualls. We collected as much rain-water as filled five of our puncheons. When theſe ſqualls had blown over, the wind was very unſettled, till the next day at noon, when it was fixed at N. N. W. and blew a freſh breeze. Sunday, the 13th, at day-break, we came in ſight of Palmerſton's Iſland, bearing W. by S. at the diſtance of about 5 leagues; but did not get up with it till the 14th, at eight o'clock A. M. We now diſpatched three boats, and one from the Diſcovery, with a proper officer in each, to ſearch for a convenient landing place; we being, at this time, under an abſolute neceſſity of procuring here ſome provender for our cattle, or we muſt certainly have loſt them. What is called here Palmerſton's Iſland, conſiſts of a group of ſmall iſlots, about nine or ten in number, connected together by a reef of coral rocks, and lying in a circular direction. The boats firſt examined the moſt ſouth-eaſterly iſlot; and not ſucceding there, ran down to the ſecond, where they immediately landed. We now bore down with the ſhips, till we were abreaſt of the place, where we kept ſtanding off and on, there being no bottom to be found to anchor upon. This, however, was of no material conſequence, as there were no human beings upon the iſland, except the party who had landed from our boats. One of theſe returned at one o'clock, laden with ſcurvy-graſs, and young cocoa-trees, which was, at this time, a moſt excellent repaſt for our animals on board. A meſſage was brought from Mr. Gore, who commanded the party on this expedition, informing us, that the iſland abounded with the produce of which he had ſent us a ſample, and alſo with the wharra-tree and cocoa-nuts; in conſequence of which the Captain reſolved to procure a ſufficient ſupply of theſe uſeful articles, before we quitted our ſtation, and accordingly he went aſhore in a ſmall boat, accompanied by the Captain of the Diſcovery; where they found, to their ſatisfaction, every one hard at work.

The landing place of this iſlot is a ſmall creek, formed by the reef, of rather more than a boat's length in every direction, and covered from the force of the ſea, by rocks projecting on each ſide. The iſlot itſelf is ſcarcely a mile in circuit; and not above three feet higher than the level of the ſea. It appears to conſiſt of a coral ſand, with a ſmall mixture of blackiſh mould, produced from rotten vegetables: yet, this poor ſoil is covered with trees and buſhes of the ſame kind as thoſe we had ſeen at Otakootaia or Wenooa-ette, though not in ſo great a variety. We perceived a great number of man-of-war-birds, tropic-birds, and two ſorts of boobies, which were now laying their eggs, and ſo exceedingly tame as to permit us to take them off their neſts, which conſiſt only of a few ſticks looſely put together. Theſe tropic birds differ eſſentially from the common ſort, being of a beautiful white, ſlightly tinged with red, and having two long tail-feathers of a deepiſh crimſon. Our people killed a conſiderable number of each ſort, which though not the moſt delicate kind of food, were highly acceptable to us, who had been a long time confined to a ſalt diet. We ſaw plenty of red crabs creeping about among the trees; and caught ſeveral fiſh, which, when the ſea retired, had been left in holes upon the reef. At one part of this, which bounds the lake within, almoſt even with the ſurface, there is a large bed of coral, which affords a moſt enchanting proſpect. Its baſe, which is fixed to the ſhore, extends ſo far that it cannot be ſeen, ſo that it appears to be ſuſpended in the water. The ſea was then unruffled, and the refulgence of the ſun expoſed the various ſorts of coral, in the moſt beautiful order; ſome parts luxuriantly branching into the water; others appearing in vaſt variety of figures; and the whole heightened by ſpangles of the richeſt colours, glowing from a number of large clams, interſperſed in every part. Even this delightful ſcene was greatly improved by the multitude of fiſhes, that gently glided along, ſeemingly with the moſt perfect ſecurity. Their colours were the moſt beautiful that can be imagined, blue, yellow, black, red, &c. far excelling any thing that can be produced by art. The richneſs of this ſubmarine grotto was increaſed greatly by their various forms; and the whole could not poſſibly be ſurveyed without a pleaſing tranſport, accompanied, at the ſame time, with regret, that a work ſo aſtoniſhingly elegant ſhould be concealed in a place ſo ſeldom explored by the human eye. No traces of any inhabitants having been here, were diſcovered. We ſaw, indeed, a piece of a canoe, upon the beach, but this might have been drifted from ſome other iſland. We were ſurpriſed, however, at perceiving ſome ſmall brown rats on this little ſpot, not eaſily accounted for, unleſs we admit the poſſibility of their being imported in the canoe of which we ſaw the remains. The boats, when laden, returned on board, with the two captains, leaving Mr. Gore and his party to paſs the night on ſhore, to be ready for buſineſs the next morning.

Tueſday, the 15th, like the preceding day, was ſpent in collecting ſubſiſtence for the cattle, conſiſting principally of tender branches of the wharra-tree, palm-cabbage, and young cocoa-nut trees. A ſufficient ſupply of theſe having been procured by ſun-ſet, the Captain ordered all the people on board: but, having very little wind, he determined to employ the next day, by endeavouring from the iſlot to the leeward, to get ſome cocoa-nuts for our people: to this end we kept ſtanding off and on all night; and about nine o'clock in the morning, we went to the weſt ſide of the iſlot, and landed from our boats, with little difficulty. The people immediately were employed in gathering cocoa-nuts, which we found in the greateſt plenty; but it was a tedious operation to convey them to our boats, being obliged to carry them half a mile over the reef, up to the middle in water. Omiah, who accompanied us, preſently caught with a ſcoop-net, as many fiſh as ſupplied the party on ſhore with a dinner, beſides ſending a quantity to each ſhip. Men-of-war and tropic birds were found in abundance, ſo that we fared moſt ſumptuouſly. In theſe trips to the uninhabited iſlands, Omiah was of the greateſt ſervice to us. He caught the fiſh, and dreſſed them, as well as the birds we killed, after the faſhion of his country, with a dexterity and chearfulneſs that did him honour. Before night, the boats made two trips, and were each time heavy laden: with the laſt, the Captain returned on board, leaving our third lieutenant, Mr. Williamſon, to prepare another lading for the boats againſt the next morning. Accordingly about ſeven o'clock they were diſpatched, and returned at noon. No delay was made in ſending them back for another cargo, with orders for all hands to be on board by ſun-ſet. Theſe orders being punctually obeyed, we hoiſted in our boats, and ſailed to the weſtward, with a light breeze from the north. This laſt iſlot, which we now left, is ſomewhat larger than the other, and almoſt covered with cocoa-palms. The other productions were the ſame as at the firſt iſlot. On the beach we found two pieces of board, one of which was rudely carved, and an elliptical paddle. Theſe were, perhaps, a part of the ſame canoe, the remains of which we had ſeen on the other beach, the two iſlots being within half a mile of each other. There were not ſo many crabs here as at the laſt place, but we found ſome ſcorpions and inſects, and a much greater number of fiſh upon the reefs. Among the reſt were ſome beautiful large ſpotted eels, which would raiſe themſelves out of the water, and endeavour to bite their purſuers. There are alſo ſnappers, parrot-fiſh, and a brown ſpotted rock-fiſh, not larger than a ſmall haddock, ſo tame, that it would remain fixed, and gaze at us. If we had been really in want, a ſufficient ſupply might eaſily have been had, for thouſands of the clams ſtuck upon the reef, many of which weighed two or three pounds. There were alſo ſome other ſorts of ſhell-fiſh; and when the tide flowed ſeveral ſharks came with it, ſome of which were killed by our people; but their preſence rendered it, at that time, unſafe to walk in the water. Mr. Williamſon and his party, who were left on ſhore, were much peſtered in the night with muſquitoes. Some of them ſhot two curlews, and ſome plovers on the ſhore: one or two cuckoos, like thoſe at Wenooa-ette, were alſo ſeen. Theſe iſlots, comprehended under the name of Palmerſton's Iſland, may be ſaid to be the ſummits of a reef of coral rock, covered only with a thin coat of ſand; though cloathed with trees and plants, like the low grounds of the high iſlands in this ſpacious ocean. They are ſituated in 18 deg. 11 min. S. lat. and 196 deg. E. long. from Greenwich.

We now ſteered W. in order to make Annamooka, or, as it is called by the Dutch, Rotterdam, who firſt diſcovered it. We had variable winds with ſqualls, ſome thunder, and much rain. The ſhowers being very copious, we ſaved a conſiderable quantity of water; and as we could procure a greater ſupply in one hour, by the rain, than by diſtillation in a month, we laid the ſtill aſide, as being attended with more trouble than advantage. The heat, which had continued in the extreme for about a month, became much more diſagreeable in this cloſe rainy weather, and we apprehended it would ſoon become noxious. It is remarkable, that there was not then a ſingle perſon ſick on board either of the ſhips. On Tueſday the 22nd, we had clear weather, but a great ſwell from the S. a ſure preſage of an approaching ſtorm; which ſoon came on, and increaſed to ſuch an alarming height before night, attended with thunder, lightning, and rain, with a tremendous ſea, that brought the Diſcovery under bare poles till morning appeared. She then made ſail under cloſe reefed top-ſails; and, about eleven at night, narrowly eſcaped running on ſhore on Savage Iſland. The man at the maſt-head calling out land, they ſoon, dark as it was, got ſight of it cloſe on their lee-bow, ſteering directly for it. They inſtantly put about, and fired a gun as a ſignal for the Reſolution (then to windward about half a mile) to do the ſame. So narrow an eſcape made a ſtrong impreſſion on the ſhip's company, who, thoughtleſs as ſeamen are, could not help looking up to heaven with thankful hearts for ſo ſignal a deliverance! As ſoon as it was light the next morning, we ſaw this execrated iſland at the diſtance of about four leagues. Savage Iſland was diſcovered by Captain Cook in 1774. In the night between the 24th and 25th we paſſed it; and on Monday, the 28th, about ten o'clock A. M. we ſaw the iſlands to the eaſtward of Annamooka, bearing N. by W. about five leagues diſtant. We ſteered to the S. and then hauled up for Annamooka. At the approach of night, the weather being ſqually, with rain, we anchored in fifteen fathoms water. Immediately two canoes paddled towards us, and came along ſide without heſitation. Four men were in one of the canoes, and three in the other. They brought with them ſome ſugar-canes, bread-fruit, plantains, and cocoa-nuts, which they bartered with us for nails. After theſe canoes had left us, we were viſited by another, but night approaching, ſhe did not continue long with us. The neareſt iſland to us was Komango, five miles diſtant; to which, at four o'clock the next morning, lieutenant King was diſpatched with two boats, in order to procure refreſhments. At five, ſignal was made to weigh, to proceed to Annamooka. When day-light appeared, we were viſited by ſix or ſeven canoes, bringing with them two pigs, ſome fowls, ſeveral large wood-pigeons, ſmall rails, and ſome violet coloured coots, beſides fruits, and roots of various kinds, which they exchanged with us for nails, hatchets, beads, &c. They had other articles of commerce, but captain Cook gave particular orders that no curioſities ſhould be purchaſed, till the ſhips were ſupplied with proviſions, and they ſhould have permiſſion from him. About noon Mr. King's boat returned with ſeven hogs, ſome fowls, a quantity of fruit and roots: alſo ſome graſs for our animals. His party was treated with great civility at Komango. The inhabitants did not appear to be numerous; and their huts, which almoſt touched each other, were but indifferent. Tooboulangee, the chief of the iſland, and another, named Taipa, came on board with Mr. King. They brought a hog, as a preſent to our Captain, and promiſed to bring a greater number the next day. The boats being aboard, we ſtood for Annamooka-ette (or little Annamooka) and the breakers at the S. E. but on drawing near, we met with very irregular ſoundings, which obliged us to relinquiſh the deſign, and go to the ſouthward. This carried us to leeward, and we found it neceſſary to ſpend the night under ſail. It was dark and rainy, and we had the wind from every direction. The next morning, Wedneſday, the 30th, at day-light, we were farther off than we had been the preceding evening, and the wind was now right in our teeth.

We continued to ply the whole day, to very little purpoſe; and, in the evening, anchored in 39 fathoms water; the weſt-point of Annamooka bearing E. N. E. four miles diſtant. Tooboulangee and Taipa, agreeable to their promiſe, brought off ſome hogs; and we obtained others, by bartering, from the different canoes that followed us, and a large quantity of fruit. It is remarkable, that thoſe who viſited the ſhips that day, would hardly part with any of their commodities to any one but Captain Cook.

On Thurſday May the 1ſt, a boat was hoiſted out, and the maſter was ordered to ſound the S. W. ſide of Annamooka. When he returned, he reported, that he had ſounded between Great and Little Annamooka, where he found 12 fathoms depth of water: that the place was very well ſheltered from winds; but that freſh water was to be had only at a conſiderable diſtance inland; and that even there it was neither plentiful nor good. For this good reaſon, it was reſolved to anchor on the north ſide of the iſland, where, in the captain's former voyage, he had found a convenient place for watering and landing. Though not above a league diſtant, we did not reach it till about five o'clock in the afternoon, being retarded by the quantity of canoes that crouded round the ſhips, laden with abundant ſupplies of the produce of their iſland. Several of theſe canoes, which were double, had a large ſail, and carried between 40 and 50 men each. Several women were alſo in them, incited, perhaps, by curioſity to viſit us; though they were as eager as the men in bartering, and uſed the paddle with equal ſkill and dexterity. We worked into the road, and caſt anchor in 18 fathoms, the iſland extending from E. to S. W. three quarters of a mile diſtant. Thus Captain Cook reſumed the ſtation which he had occupied when he viſited Annamooka three years before; and probably where Taſman, who firſt diſcovered this iſland, anchored in 1643.

We had now been juſt 60 days in a paſſage, which in a direct courſe could not have exceeded ten, and had been expoſed to ſevere trials, owing to ſome fatality in purſuing a track which there was not a ſeaman aboard who did not diſapprove. It ſeemed to have no object of diſcovery in view, as we fell nearly into the ſame which Captain Cook had formerly navigated; nor did we meet with a ſingle iſland, which one or other of our late voyagers had not ſeen or viſited in their different routs. How it happened is not eaſy to be accounted for, as it was next to a miracle, that any creature on board the Reſolution remained alive to reach our preſent harbour. Had not the copious rains that fell almoſt inceſſantly from the time that we paſſed the tropic till our arrival here, ſupplied us with a daily conſumption of water, not only the animals, but the men muſt have periſhed. Happy were we now, however, in finding ourſelves on a friendly coaſt. We forgot the dangers we had eſcaped, and thought only of enjoying with inexpreſſible pleaſure the ſweets of theſe happy iſlands, whoſe ſpontaneous productions perfume the air to a conſiderable diſtance with a fragrance inconceivably reviving; and whoſe plantations exhibit a richneſs of proſpect as we approach them, owing to the beautiful intermixture of the various bloſſoms, with the vivid green leaves of the trees, of which the moſt animated deſcription can afford but a faint idea. Add to theſe, the tufted clumps which adorn the little riſing hills, that appear every where interſperſed delightfully among the verdant lawns, and rich, low, ſurrounding vallies. Nothing in nature can be more pleaſing to the eye, or more grateful to the ſenſe. We were no ſooner moored in the harbour, than we were ſurrounded with innumerable little boats, or canoes, moſt curiouſly conſtructed and ornamented; the ſides with a poliſh that ſurpaſſed the blackeſt ebony, and the decks inlaid with mother of pearl and tortoiſeſhell, equal to the beſt cabinets of European manufacture. In this kind of workmanſhip, thoſe iſlanders ſeem to excel. Their weapons of war, their clubs, the paddles of their boats, and even their fiſh-hooks are poliſhed and inlaid with variegated ſhells, by an infinite accumulation of which their ſhores are margined, and among them our naturaliſts found ſome of ſuperlative beauty. Theſe boats generally held three perſons, and under their decks, which take up two thirds of their length, they brought the fruits of their plantations, and the manufactures of their country, which conſiſted of a great variety of uſeful things, and others ornamental. Of the firſt ſort, beſides cloth of different fabrics, were combs, fiſh-hooks, lines, nets; needles made of bone, thread, purſes, calibaſhes made of reeds, ſo cloſely wrought as to be water-tight; with a variety of other utenſils. Among the latter, were bracelets, breaſt-plates, ornamented with feathers of a vivid glow; maſks, mantalets compoſed of feathers, ſo artfully and beautifully arranged, as even our Engliſh ladies would not diſdain to wear.

Friday the 2nd, during the preparations for watering, Captain Cook went on ſhore, in the forenoon, accompanied by Captain Clerke, and others, to fix on a place for ſetting up the obſervatories, the natives having readily granted us permiſſion. Nor was the civility of the chiefs confined to their readineſs in ſupplying the ſhips with proviſions; for they complimented the Captain with the uſe of a large boat-houſe, conveniently ſituated near the beach, and which anſwered the purpoſe of a tent: and at the ſame time preſented the officers with breaſt-plates, beautifully decorated with feathers, being the richeſt offerings they had to make. In return, our commander was not wanting in generoſity, loading them with hatchets, knives, linen-cloth, glaſs, and beads, with which they thought themſelves amply repaid. Toobou, the chief of the iſland, conducted Captain Cook and Omiah to his houſe, ſituated on a pleaſant ſpot in the centre of his plantation. It was ſurrounded with a graſs-plot, which he ſaid was for the purpoſe of cleaning their feet before they entered his habitation. Such an attention to cleanlineſs we had never obſerved before, wherever we had viſited in this ocean; though we afterwards found it to be very common at the Friendly Iſlands. No carpet in an Engliſh drawing-room could be kept neater, than the mats that covered the floor of Toobou's houſe. Tents were now carried on ſhore, the aſtronomers obſervatory erected; wooders and waterers appointed; and all the artificers on board employed in the reparations of the ſhips; not a few being wanting after a voyage of two months, through a tempeſtuous ſea, during which the elements of fire, air, and water, might be ſaid to be in perpetual conflict. While theſe things were about, we bartered for ſome hogs and fruit; the ſhips were crouded with the natives; and as very few of them came empty-handed, we were ſpeedily ſupplied with every refreſhment. During theſe tranſactions the two captains, and the chiefs of Annamooka, were contriving to vary the pleaſures of their reſpective gueſts, and to entertain them with new diverſions. They were mutually engaged on board and on ſhore to ſurpriſe each other with novelty. On board, the chiefs were entertained with muſic, dancing, and feaſting, after the European manner; and with what ſeemed more pleaſing to them, as they paid more attention thereto, with the various operations of the artificers who were at work on their reſpective employments. The facility with which the boat-builders performed their work attracted particularly their notice: when they beheld the labour of a year with them performed in a week, by a leſs number of hands, their aſtoniſhment was beyond conception; nor were they leſs amazed to ſee large timber cut through the middle, and ſawed into plank, while they were ſpectators, which they had no means of effecting in their iſland in many days. The chiefs on ſhore, in return, endeavoured to entertain our gentlemen: they feaſted them, like tropical kings, with barbicued hogs, fowls, and with the moſt delicious fruits. After dinner, they introduced their muſic, and dancers, who were chiefly of the theatrical kind, and excelled in agility, and varied attitudes, many of the capital performers in Europe. A ſort of pantomime ſucceeded, in which ſome prize-fighters diſplayed their feats of arms; and this part of the drama concluded with a humorous repreſentation of ſome laughable ſtory, which produced among the chiefs, and their attendants, the moſt immoderate mirth. The ſongſters came laſt, the melody of whoſe voices was heightened by a kind of accompanyment, not unuſual in the earlieſt ages, among the politeſt nations, as may be learnt from antient paintings, where the ſingers and dancers are repreſented with flat clams or ſhells in their hands, ſnapping them together, to harmonize their tunes, and regulate their movements. Though this farcical exhibition was inſipid to us, it was not wholly without its uſe, in marking a ſimilarity of manners among mankind, at the diſtance of half the globe, and at a period when the arts of civil life were in their infancy. Who knows, but that the ſeeds of the liberal arts, that have now been ſown by European navigators in theſe happy climes, may, a thouſand years hence, be ripened into maturity; and that the people, who are juſt emerging from ignorance into ſcience, may, when the memory of theſe voyages are forgotten, be found in the zenith of their improvements by other adventurers, who may pride themſelves as the firſt diſcoverers of new countries, and an unknown people, infinitely ſuperior to thoſe, who at that time, may inhabit theſe regions, and who may have loſt their boaſted arts, as we, at this day ſee, among the wretched inhabitants of Greece, and the ſtill more miſerable ſlaves of Egyptian bondage. Such are the viciſſitudes to which the inhabitants of this little orb are ſubject; and ſuch, perhaps, are the viciſſitudes which the globe itſelf muſt undergo before its final diſſolution. To a contemplative mind, theſe iſlands preſent a mortifying ſpectacle of the ruins of a broken and deſolated portion of the earth; for it is impoſſible to ſurvey ſo many fragments of rocks, ſome with inhabitants and ſome without, and not conclude with the learned Dr. Burnet, that they are the effects of ſome early convulſion of the earth, of which no memory remains.

Captain Cook having ſettled every thing to his ſatiſfaction, returned on board in the evening, leaving Mr. King in command upon the iſland. Taipa was now become our truſty friend, and, in order to be near our party, had a houſe carried on mens ſhoulders, a quarter of a mile, and placed by the ſide of the ſhed which our party occupied.

On Saturday the 3d, our various operations on ſhore began. Some were buſied in making hay, others in filling our water-caſks, and a third party in cutting wood. On this day Meſſ. King and Baily began to obſerve equal latitudes of the ſun, in order to get the rate of our time-keepers. In the evening, Taipa harangued the natives for ſome time, but we could only gueſs at the ſubject, and ſuppoſed he was inſtructing them how to treat us, and adviſing them to bring the produce of the iſland to market. His eloquence had the deſired effect, and occaſioned us to receive a plentiful ſupply of proviſions the day following. On the 4th, the diſcovery loſt her ſmall bower anchor, the cable being cut in two by the rocks. On the 6th, we were viſited by a chief from Tongataboo, whoſe name was Feenou: he was introduced by Taipa in the character and ſtile of king of all the Friendly Iſles. Captain Cook was now informed, that, on our arrival, a canoe had been immediately diſpatched to Tongataboo with the news, which occaſioned his coming to Annamooka. We were alſo informed by the officer on ſhore, that, on his arrival, all the natives were ordered out to meet him, who ſaluted him by bowing their heads as low as his feet, the ſoles of which they touched with the palm of each hand, and afterwards with the back part. A perſonage received with ſuch extraordinary marks of reſpect, could not be ſuppoſed leſs than a king. In the afternoon our captain went to pay a viſit to this great man, having firſt received from him a preſent of two fiſh, brought on board by one of his attendants. As ſoon as the captain landed, Feenou came up to him. He was tall and thin, and appeared to be about thirty years of age. His features were more of the European caſt than any we had ſeen here. After the firſt ſalutation, Captain Cook requeſted to know if he was king; as he entertained ſome doubts on that ſcore, perceiving he was not the man whom he remembered to have ſeen in that character during his former voyage. Taipa anſwered eagerly for him, and mentioned no leſs than 153 iſlands, of which, he ſaid, he was the ſovereign. Soon after, our grand viſitor, attended by five or ſix ſervants, accompanied us on board. Captain Cook made them ſuitable preſents, and entertained them in a manner which he thought would be moſt agreeable to them. Towards the evening the captain attended them on ſhore in his boat, into which, by order of the chief, three hogs were conveyed, as a return for the preſents he had received. We were then informed of an accident, the relation of which will convey ſome idea of the extent of the authority exerciſed here over the inferior ſort of people. While Feenou was on board the Reſolution, an inferior chief ordered all the natives to retire from the poſt they occupied. Some of them, however, having ventured to return, he beat them moſt unmercifully with a large ſtick. One, in particular received ſo violent a blow on the ſide of the face, that the blood guſhed from his mouth and noſtrils; and, after lying motionleſs for ſome time, he was removed from the place in convulſions. The ſavage who gave the blow, on being told, that he had certainly killed the man, only laughed at the circumſtance, and, indeed, it was very evident he did not grieve for what he had done. We had afterwards the ſatisfaction of hearing, that the poor ſufferer was out of danger. On the 7th, being Wedneſday, the Diſcovery having found her ſmall bower anchor, ſhifted her birth; but not till after her beſt bower cable had met with the fate of the other. This day Feenou dined on board the Reſolution; and alſo on the next, when he was attended by Taipa, Toobou, and ſome other chiefs. Taipa only, however, was permitted to ſit at table with Feenou, or even to eat in his preſence. The captain was highly pleaſed on account of this etiquette; for before the arrival of Feenou, he had generally a larger company than he choſe, his table being crouded with viſitors of both ſexes. For though at Otaheite the females are denied the privilege of eating in company with the men, this is not the practice at the Friendly Iſlands.

A large junk axe having been ſtolen out of the ſhip by one of the natives, on the firſt day of our arrival at Annamooka, application was made to Feenou to exert his authority to get it reſtored; who gave orders for that purpoſe; which exacted ſuch implicit obedience, that it was brought on board before we had finiſhed our dinner. We had many opportunities of remarking how expert theſe people were in thievery. Even ſome of their chiefs were not aſhamed of practicing that art. On the 9th, one of them was detected carrying out of the ſhip the bolt belonging to the ſpun-yarn winch, which he had carefully concealed under his cloaths; for which offence the captain ſentenced him to receive a dozen laſhes, and to be confined till he paid a hog for his liberty. Though, after this circumſtance we were troubled with no more thieves of rank, their ſervants and ſlaves were conſtantly employed in this dirty buſineſs; and they received a flogging with as much ſeeming indifference, as if it had been upon the main-maſt. When any of them were caught in the act of thieving, inſtead of interceding in their behalf, their maſters would adviſe us to kill them: but as we were not diſpoſed to be their judges and executioners, they generally eſcaped without any kind of puniſhment: for we thought them to be alike inſenſible of the ſhame and torture of corporal chaſtiſement. At length Captain Clerke contrived a mode of puniſhment which had ſome effect. Immediately upon detection he ordered their heads to be completely ſhaved, and thus pointed them out as objects of ridicule to their countrymen; at the ſame time our people were put upon their guard, to deprive them of future opportunities for a repetition of their thefts. Feenou was ſo fond of our company, that he dined on board every day; but he did not always partake of our fare. Saturday the 10th, his ſervants brought him a meſs, which had been dreſſed on ſhore, conſiſting of fiſh, ſoup, and yams: cocoa-nut liquor had been uſed inſtead of water, in which the fiſh had been boiled or ſtewed, (perhaps in a wooden veſſel with hot ſtones) and it was brought on board in a plantain leaf. Captain Cook taſted of the meſs, and was ſo well pleaſed with it, that he afterwards ordered ſome fiſh to be dreſſed in the ſame way; but though his cook ſucceeded tolerably well, it was much inferior to the diſh he attempted to imitate.

Sunday the 11th, we removed from the ſhore, the obſervatories, horſes, and a variety of things we had landed, intending to ſail as ſoon as the Diſcovery ſhould have recovered her beſt bower anchor. The live ſtock which had been landed the day after our arrival, on a ſmall iſland, about half a mile from the ſhore to graze, were amazingly recovered: from perfect ſkeletons, the horſes and cows were grown plump, and as playful as colts. On the 12th, the tents were ſtruck, and Mr. Philipſon, lieutenant of marines, loſt all his bedding, by the careleſſneſs of the centinel, who received 12 laſhes for neglect of duty. In the morning, the long-boat was found ſwamped, and all the ſtern ſheets, and ſeveral other articles belonging to her miſſing, and never recovered, for which the marine, who had the care of the watch, was ſeverely puniſhed. Feenou, hearing that the captain meant to proceed to Tongataboo, earneſtly entreated him to alter his plan; expreſſing as much averſion to it, as if, by diverting him from it, he wiſhed to promote ſome particular intereſt of his own. He warmly recommended a group of iſlands called Hapaee, lying to the N. E. where he aſſured us, we could be eaſily and plentifully ſupplied with every refreſhment; and even offered to attend us thither in perſon. In conſequence of his advice Hapaee was made choice of; and as it had not been viſited by any European veſſel, the ſurveying it became an object to Captain Cook. On Tueſday the 13th, Captain Clerke's anchor was happily recovered; and on the morning of the 14th, we made ſail, and left Annamooka, with a fine breeze, wind N. E. courſe W. S. W.

Notwithſtanding this iſland is ſomewhat higher than the other ſmall iſles that ſurround it, yet it is lower than Mangeea and Wateeoo; and even thoſe are but of a moderate height. The ſhore where our ſhips lay, conſiſts of a ſteep, rugged, coral rock, about nine or ten feet high, except two ſandy beaches, which are defended from the ſea, by a reef of the ſame ſort of rock. In the centre of the iſland is a ſalt water lake, about a mile and a half in length, round which the ground riſes with a gradual aſcent, and we could not trace its having any communication with the ſea. On the riſing parts of the iſland, eſpecially towards the ſea, the ſoil is either of a blackiſh looſe mould, or a reddiſh clay; but there is not a ſtream of freſh water to be found in any part of the iſland. The land is well cultivated, except in a few places; and, though ſome parts appear to lie waſte, they are only left to recover the ſtrength exhauſted by conſtant culture; for we often ſaw the natives at work upon theſe fallows, in order to plant them again. Yams and plantains form their principal plantations; many of which are very extenſive, and encloſed with fences of reeds about ſix feet high. Fences of leſs compaſs were often ſeen within theſe, ſurrounding the houſes of the principal people. The bread-fruit and cocoa-nut-trees are interſperſed without any regular order, but principally near the habitations of the natives. The other parts of the iſland, eſpecially towards the ſea and round the lake, are covered with luxuriant trees and buſhes; among which are a great many mangroves and faitanoo-trees. All the rocks and ſtones about the iſland are of coral, except in one place, to the right of the ſandy beach, where there is a rock of about 25 feet in height, of a calcareous ſtone, and of a yellowiſh colour; but even here, ſome large pieces are to be ſeen of the ſame coral rock as that which compoſes the ſhore. We ſometimes amuſed ourſelves by walking up the country and ſhooting wild ducks, reſembling our widgeon, which are very numerous on the ſalt lake, as well as on the pool where we procured our water. We found, in theſe excurſions, that the inhabitants frequently deſerted their houſes to repair to the trading place, without entertaining the leaſt ſuſpicion, that ſtrangers would take away, or deſtroy, any property that belonged to them. From this circumſtance it might be ſuppoſed, that moſt of the natives were ſometimes collected on the beach, and that there could be no great difficulty in forming an accurate computation of their number; but the continual reſort of viſitors from other iſlands, rendered it impoſſible. However as we never ſaw more than a thouſand perſons collected together at one time, it may reaſonably be ſuppoſed, that there are twice that number upon the iſland. In the direct track to Hapaee, whither we were now bound, to the N. and N. E. of Annamooka, a great number of ſmall iſles are ſeen. We had more than 60 within ſight, all of them ſurrounded with reefs of rocks, with ſo many windings and turnings, as truly might be ſaid to conſtitute a labyrinth. Amidſt the rocks and ſhoals adjoining to this group, we were doubtful whether there might be a free paſſage for ſhips of ſuch magnitude as ours; though the natives ſailed through the intervals in their canoes: therefore when we weighed anchor from Annamooka, we ſteered to go to the weſtward of the above iſlands, and N. N. W. towards Kao and Toofoa, two iſlands remarkable for their great height, and the moſt weſterly of thoſe in ſight. Feenou, with his attendants remained in the Reſolution till about noon of Wedneſday the 14th, and then entered the large ſailing canoe, which had brought him from Tongataboo, and ſtood in among the cluſter of iſlands of which we were now abreaſt. They are ſcattered, at unequal diſtances, and moſt of them are as high as Annamooka. Some of them are two or three miles in length, and others only half a mile. Many of them have ſteep rocky ſhores; ſome reddiſh cliffs; and others have ſandy beaches, extending almoſt their whole length. In general, they are entirely clothed with trees, among which are many cocoa-palms, each having the appearance of a beautiful garden placed in the ſea. The ſerene weather we now had, contributed greatly to heighten the ſcene; and the whole might convey an idea of the realization of ſome fairy land. It appears, that ſome of theſe iſlands have been formed, as Palmerſton's iſland was ſuppoſed to have been; for one of them is now entirely ſand, and another has but a ſingle buſh or tree upon it. About four o'clock P.M. we ſteered to the north, leaving Toofoa and Kao on our larboard. We intended to have anchored for the night, but it came on before we could find a place in leſs than 50 fathoms water; and we rather choſe to ſpend the night under ſail, than come to in ſuch a depth. At four o'clock in the afternoon, we had been within two leagues of Toofoa, and obſerved the ſmoke thereof ſeveral times in the day. There is a volcano upon it, of which the friendly iſlanders entertain ſome ſuperſtitious notions, and call it Kolloſeea, ſaying it is an Otooa, or divinity. We were informed, that it ſometimes throws up very large ſtones, and the Crater is compared to the ſize of a very ſmall iſlot, which has not ceaſed ſmoaking in the memory of the inhabitants; nor have they any tradition that it ever did. We ſometimes ſaw the ſmoke from the centre of the iſland, even at Annamooka, the diſtance of at leaſt 10 leagues. We were told, that Toofoa is but thinly inhabited, but that the water upon it is excellent. On Thurſday the 15th, at day-break, we were not far from Kao, which is a large rock of a conic figure; we ſteered to the paſſage between Footooha and Hafaiva, with a gentle breeze, at S. E. About ten o'clock, Feenou came on board, and continued with us all day. He brought with him ſome fruit and two hogs; and in the courſe of the day, ſeveral canoes came to barter quantities of the former article, which were very acceptable to us, as our ſtock began to be low. At noon we obſerved in latitude 19 deg. 49 min. 45 ſec. S. and we had made ſeven miles longitude from Annamooka; at the ſame time Toofoa bore N. 88 deg. W. Kao N. 71 deg. W. Footooha N. 89 deg. W. and Hafaiva S. 12 deg. W.

CHAP. V.

Arrival of the Reſolution and Diſcovery at Hapaee—Friendly reception at that place—Taipa harangues the natives—Preſents, ſolemnities, and entertainments on that occaſion—Marines exerciſed—A dance, fire-works, and nocturnal entertainments—The iſland of Leefooga deſcribed—Occurrences there—A female oculiſt diſcovered—Singular expedients uſed for ſhaving the hair—The Reſolution and Diſcovery remove to another ſtation—A remarkable artificial mount and ſtone—Hoolaiva deſcribed—Account of Poulaho, King of the Friendly Iſles—The two ſhips depart from Hapaee Iſlands, and return to Annamooka—Kotoo deſcribed—They ſtrike on the rocks, but arrive ſafe at Tongataboo—Meeting of Poulaho and Feenou—Favourable reception of our people at Tongataboo, to whom the natives reſort from all parts—An excurſion to Mareewagee—A deſcription of the village where the chiefs reſide—A curious work of art—Proceſs of manufacturing cloth—A grand Haiva, with a variety of entertainments—Preſents made to the chiefs—Thefts committed by the natives—The king and other chiefs confined on that account—His preſent and Haiva after their releaſe—Muſkets and other articles are ſtolen from ſome of our officers—Complaints made to the king on this ſubject—The whole of them returned—Deſcription of a Fiatooka—Of a country entertainment at Poulaho's houſe—His morning ceremony—Manner of preparing the liquor from the Kava plant—Account of a ſmall iſland, called Onevy—Mr. King accompanied by Mr. Anderſon, viſit Futtafaihe the king's brother—How entertained by him—How they paſſed the night—Obſervations on the country they paſſed through—Preparations made for our departure from Tongataboo.

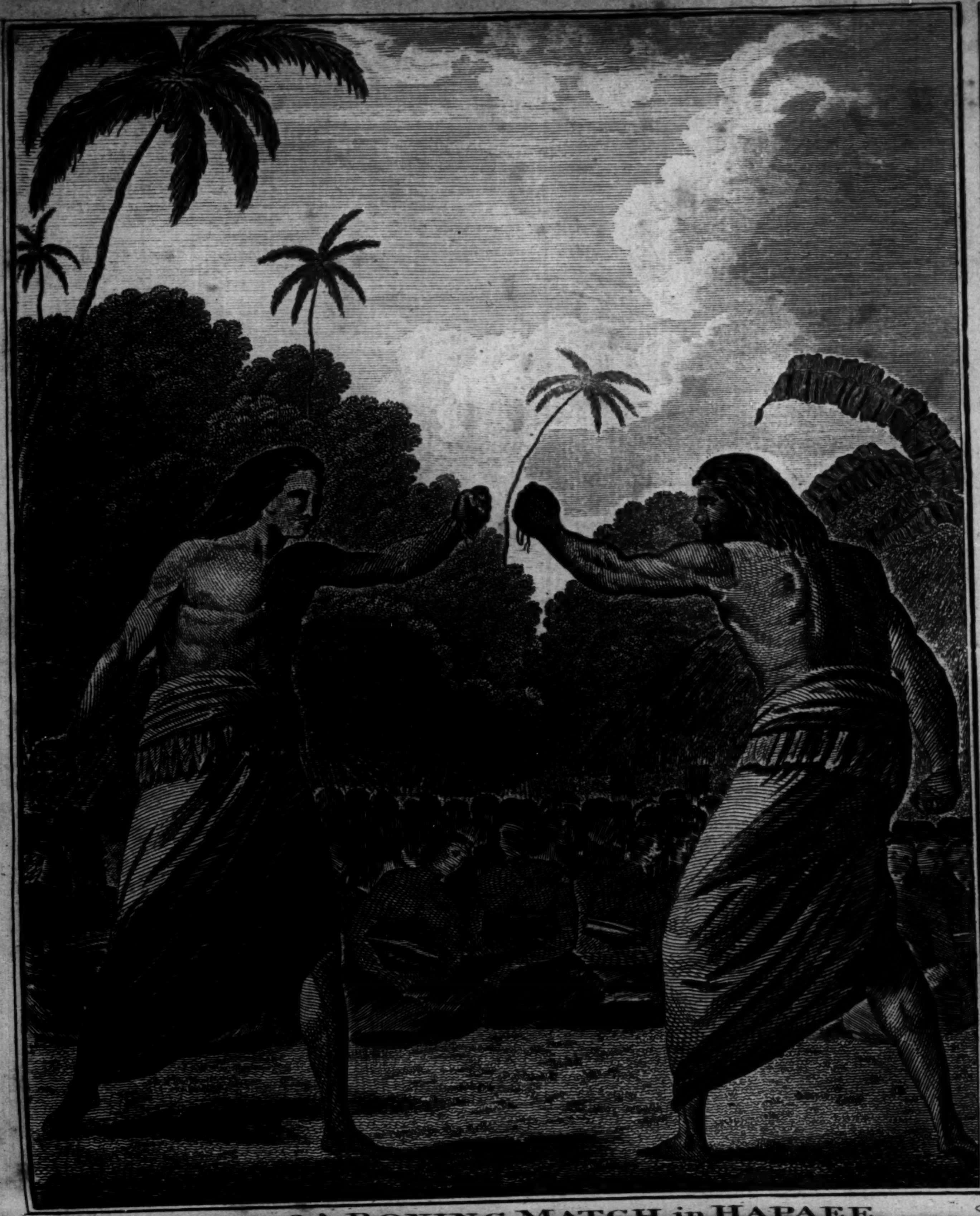
AFTER having paſſed Footooha, we met with a reef of rocks, and, being little wind, we found ſome difficulty in keeping clear of them. When we had paſſed this reef, we hauled up for Neeneeva, a ſmall low iſle in the direction of E. N. E. from Footooha, in hopes of finding an anchorage, but were again diſappointed; for notwithſtanding we had land in every direction, the ſea was unfathomable. In the courſe of this night, we ſaw plainly the flames iſſuing from a burning mountain upon Toofoa. On Friday the 16th, at day-break, we held on our courſe for Hapaee, which at this time was in ſight; and we perceived it to be low land, from the trees only appearing above the water. At nine o'clock it appeared to form three iſlands, equal nearly in ſize; and ſoon after, a fourth appeared to the ſouthward of theſe, as large as any of the others. Each of the iſlands appeared to be of a ſimilar height and aſpect, and about ſix or ſeven miles in length. The moſt northern of them is called Haanno, the next Foa, the third Lefooga, and the fourth Hoolaiva; but they are all four included under the general name of Hapaee. By ſun-ſet, we got up with the northernmoſt of theſe iſles, where we experienced the ſame diſtreſs for want of anchorage, that we did the two preceding evenings, having another night to ſpend under ſail, with land and breakers in every direction. Feenou, who had been on board all day, went forward to Hapaee in the evening, and took Omiah with him in the canoe. He was not unmindful of our diſagreeable ſituation, and kept up a good fire the whole night, by way of land-mark. Saturday, the 17th, at day-break, being then cloſe in with Foa, we perceived it was joined to Haanno, by a reef running from one iſland to the other, even with the ſurface of the ſea. A boat was now diſpatched in ſearch of anchorage; and a proper place was found, abreaſt of a reef which joins Lefooga to Foa, having 24 fathoms depth of water. In this ſtation the northern point of Hapaee bore N. 16 deg. E. The ſouthern point of Hapaee, or the ſouth end of Hoolaiva, S. 29 deg. W. and the north end of Lefooga, S. 65 deg. E. Two ledges of rocks lay without us; the one bearing S. 50 deg. W. and the other W. by N. half N. diſtant two or three miles. We were not more than three quarters of a mile from the ſhore; and, as we lay before a creek in the reef, it was convenient landing at all times.

We had ſcarcely moored, before we were ſurrounded with natives from all quarters, who had been apprized of our coming, and who had loaded their canoes with hogs, fowls, bread-fruit, yams, plantains, and every kind of fruit the iſland produced, which they exchanged for broken glaſs, red and blue beeds, hatchets, knives, nails, ſhreds of ſcarlet cloth, or indeed any thing we offered them. Here our friend Feenou aſſumed the ſame conſequence as at Annamooka. He brought along-ſide his canoe laden with four large hogs, bread-fruit, and ſhaddocks, a fine odoriferous fruit, in ſmell and taſte not unlike a lemon, but larger and rounder. He brought likewiſe yams of an enormous ſize, weighing from 50 to 60 pounds each. Feenou and Omiah having come on board in order to introduce our commander to the natives of the iſland, he ſoon accompanied them on ſhore for that purpoſe. The chief conducted the captain to a hut, ſituated cloſe to the ſea-beach, which was brought thither but a few minutes before for his reception. In this Feenou, Omiah, and Captain Cook, were ſeated. The other chiefs and the multitude appeared fronting them on the outſide: and they alſo ſeated themſelves. Captain Cook being aſked how long he intended to ſtay, ſaid five days. Taipa was, therefore, ordered to ſit by him, and declare this to the people. Hereupon he harangued them in words nearly to the following purport, as we were afterwards informed by Omiah. He exhorted both old and young, to look upon Captain Cook as a friend, who meant to continue with them a few days; and that, during his ſtay among them, they would not ſteal any thing from him, or offend him in any other manner. He informed them that it was expected they ſhould bring hogs, fruit, &c. to the ſhips; for which they would receive ſuch articles as he enumerated in exchange. Soon after Taipa had delivered his addreſs to the aſſembly, Feenou left them; on which Captain Cook was informed by Taipa, that it was neceſſary he ſhould make a preſent to Earoupa, the chief of the iſland. The captain being not unprepared for this, gave him ſuch articles as far exceeded his expectation. This liberality created ſimilar demands from two chiefs of other iſles who were preſent, and even from Taipa himſelf. Soon after he had made the laſt of theſe preſents, Feenou returned, and expreſſed his diſpleaſure to Taipa, for ſuffering the captain to be ſo laviſh of his favours, But this was doubtleſs a fineſſe, as he certainly acted in concert with the others. Feenou, having reſumed his ſeat, ordered Earoupa to ſit by him, and harangue the people as Taipa had done, which he did nearly to the ſame purport. Theſe ceremonies being over, the chief, at the captain's requeſt, conducted him to three ſtagnant pools of, what he called, freſh water; in one of which the water was indeed tolerable, and the ſituation convenient for filling the caſks. When the chief returned to his former ſtation, he found a baked hog and ſome yams ſmoaking hot, ready to be conveyed on board for his dinner. He invited Feenou and his friends to partake of the repaſt, and they embarked for the ſhip, though none but himſelf ſat down with us at table. Dinner being over, the captain conducted them aſhore; and, before he returned, received as a preſent from the chief, a fine large turtle, and a quantity of yams. We had a plentiful ſupply of proviſions, for, in the courſe of the day, we got, by bartering with the natives, about 20 ſmall hogs, together with a large quantity of fruit and roots.

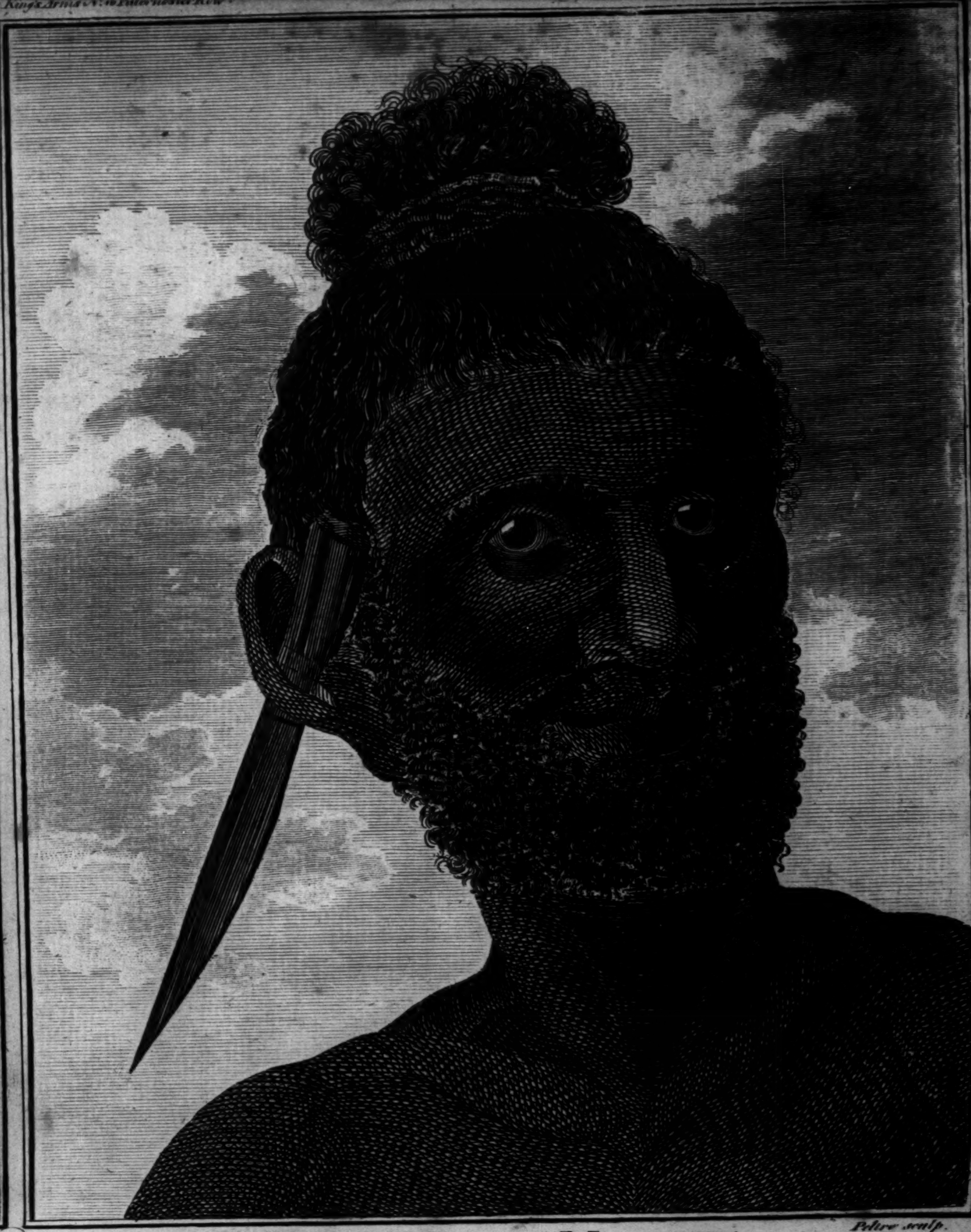
Sunday the 18th, early in the morning, Feenou and Omiah, who now, with the chief, ſlept on ſhore, came aboard to requeſt Captain Cook's preſence upon the iſland. He accompanied them, and upon landing, was conducted to the place where he had been ſeated the preceding day, and where he beheld a large concourſe of people already aſſembled. Though we imagined ſomething

BRITISH MUSEUM 7 FE 90

London Published by Alexr. Hogg at the King's Arms No. 16 Paternoster Row.



View of A BOXING MATCH in HAPAEE.



Peltro sculp.

Portrait of A MAN of MANGEA.

ſomething extraordinary was in agitation, yet we could not conjecture what, nor could Omiah give us any information. Soon after we were ſeated, about an hundred of the natives appeared, and advanced, laden with yams, plantains, bread-fruit, cocoa-nuts, and ſugar-canes; their burthens were depoſited on our left. A number of others arrived ſoon after, bearing the ſame kind of articles, which were collected into two piles on our right-ſide. To theſe were faſtened two pigs, and half a dozen fowls, and to thoſe on the left, ſix pigs, and two turtles. Earoupa ſeated himſelf before the articles on our left, and another chief before thoſe on our right; they being, as we ſuppoſed, the two chiefs who had procured them by order of Feenou, who was as implicitly obeyed here, as he had been at Annamooka, and who had probably laid this tax upon the chiefs of Hapaee for the preſent occaſion. When this munificent collection of proviſions was placed in order, and advantageouſly diſpoſed for public view, the bearers joined the multitude, who formed a circle round the whole. Immediately after, a number of men, armed with clubs, entered this circle or area; where they paraded about for a few minutes, and then one half of them retired to one ſide, and the other half to the other ſide, ſeating themſelves before the ſpectators. Preſently after, they ſucceſſively entertained us with ſingle combats: one champion on one ſide challenging thoſe of the other ſide, partly by words, but more by expreſſive geſtures, to ſend one of their party to oppoſe him. The challenge was in general accepted; the two combatants placed themſelves in proper attitudes; and the engagement began, which continued till one of them yielded, or till their weapons were broken. At the concluſion of each combat, the victor ſquatted himſelf down before the chief, then immediately roſe up and retired. Some old men, who ſeemed to preſide as judges, gave their plaudit in a very few words; but the multitude, eſpecially thoſe on the ſide of the conqueror, celebrated the glory he had acquired in two or three loud huzzas. In theſe mock fights, which differed but little from our cudgel-players in England, the combatants beat one another pretty ſeverely. This entertainment was ſometimes ſuſpended for a ſhort ſpace, and the intervals of time were filled up with wreſtling and boxing matches. The firſt were performed in the method practiſed at Otaheite, and the ſecond differed very little from the Engliſh manner. A couple of ſtout wenches next ſtepped forth, and, without ceremony, began boxing with as much dexterity as the men. This conteſt, however, was but of ſhort duration, for, in the ſpace of half a minute, one of them gave it up. The victorious heroine was applauded by the ſpectators, in the ſame manner as the ſucceſsful combatants of the other ſex. Though we expreſſed our diſapprobation of this part of the entertainment, it did not prevent, however, two other females from entering the liſts; who ſeemed to be ſpirited girls, and if two old women had not interpoſed to part them, would probably have given each other a good drubbing. When theſe ſports were exhibited, three thouſand ſpectators, at leaſt, were preſent, and every thing was conducted with the moſt perfect good humour on all ſides, though ſome of the champions, of both ſexes, received blows which they muſt have felt the effect of for ſome time after.

The diverſions being finiſhed, the chief informed Captain Cook, that the proviſions on our right-hand were a preſent to Omiah; and that thoſe on our left, making about two thirds of the whole quantity, were intended for him, and that he might ſuit his own convenience in taking them aboard. Four boats were loaded with the munificence of Feenou, whoſe favours far exceeded any that Captain Cook had ever received from the ſovereigns of any of the iſlands we had viſited in the Pacific Ocean. He, therefore, embraced the firſt opportunity of convincing Feenou, that we were not inſenſible of his liberality, by beſtowing upon him ſuch commodities as he ſuppoſed were moſt valuable in his eſtimation. Feenou was ſo highly pleaſed with the return that was made him, that he left the captain ſtill indebted to him, by ſending him two large hogs, ſome yams, and a conſiderable quantity of cloth. In this manner, and in ranging the iſland, botanizing, examining the curioſities, natural and artificial, we employed our time, while the live ſtock were recruiting their fleſh, and the ſeveral artificers were compleating the repairs of the ſhip. It is not eaſy for people, who are totally unacquainted with the language of a country, to make themſelves maſters of the civil policy of the inhabitants. Indeed it is next to impoſſible in a ſhort reſidence among them. As we obſerved no ſuch medium as money, by which the value of property is aſcertained, it was not eaſy to diſcover what elſe they had ſubſtituted in its room, to facilitate the modes of traffic among themſelves. That each had a property in the plantation he poſſeſſed, we could plainly diſcern; and the chiefs were ready enough to point out their poſſeſſions, the extent of which gave them conſequence, as among other civilized nations; but no ſuch thing as circulating property being diſcoverable, by the hoarding up of which, and laying it out occaſionally to advantage, one might purchaſe another's landed or ſubſtantial property, we could not inform ourſelves ſufficiently, by what means the fiſherman purchaſed his canoe, or the boat-builder his materials, yet there cannot remain a doubt, but that the boat-builder had an intereſt in his boat after it was built, as well as the chief in his plantation, after it is incloſed and cultivated. With us all was carried on by barter, and an imaginary value fixed on every article. A hog was rated at a hatchet, and ſo many bread-fruit, cocoa nuts, and plantains, at a ſtring of beads; and ſo in like manner throughout; but among themſelves, we ſaw no ſuch value by way of barter. We did not obſerve ſo much fruit given for ſo many fiſh; nor ſo many combs, needles, or uſeful materials, for a certain proportion of cloth; yet, doubtleſs, ſome mode of exchange there muſt be among them; for it is certain there is no ſuch thing as money, at leaſt, none that we could diſcern: neither could we diſcover any diſtinct property, which one man claimed more than another in the foreſts or woods; but that every man, like us, cut what he wanted for uſe, and was under no limitation for fuel. Salt, which is ſo neceſſary an article in European houſe-keeping, is wholly unknown to theſe tropical iſlanders.

Feenou having expreſſed a deſire to ſee the marines perform their exerciſe, Captain Cook ordered them aſhore on Tueſday the 20th. They went through their military manœuvres, ſurrounded by thouſands of the natives, who were frightened at the firſt firing, and fled like herds of deer from the report of the guns; but finding no harm enſue, they took courage, and rallied at a diſtance; but no perſuaſions could prevail upon them to come near. After they had gone through various evolutions, and fired ſeveral volleys, the chief in his turn, entertained us with an exhibition, performed with an exactneſs, and agility, far ſurpaſſing what they had ſeen in our military movements. It was a kind of dance, performed by men, in which 105 perſons were engaged, each having an inſtrument in his hand, reſembling a paddle, two feet and a half long, with a thin blade, and a ſmall handle. With theſe inſtruments various flouriſhes were made, each of which was accompanied with a different movement, or a different attitude of body. At firſt, the dancers ranged themſelves in three lines, and ſo changed their ſtations by different evolutions, that thoſe who had been in the rear came into the front. At one part of the performance, they extended themſelves in one line; afterwards they formed themſelves into a ſemi-circle, and then into two ſquare columns. During the laſt movement, one of them came forward and performed an antic dance, with which the entertainment ended. The muſic that accompanied the dances was produced by two drums, or rather hollow logs of wood, from which they forced a few varied notes, by beating on them with two ſticks. The dancers, however, did not appear to be much aſſiſted or directed by theſe ſounds, but by a chorus of vocal muſic, in which all the performers joined. Their ſong was rather melodious, and their correſponding motions were ſo ſkilfully executed, that the whole body of dancers appeared as one regular machine. Such a performance would have been applauded even on an European theatre. It far exceeded any attempt that we had made to entertain them; inſomuch that they ſeemed to plume themſelves on their ſuperiority over us. They liked none of our muſical inſtruments, except the drum, and even they thought that inferior to their own: our French horns they held in the higheſt contempt, and would not pay the ſmalleſt attention to them, either here, or at any other of the iſlands. To give them a more favourable opinion of the amuſements, and ſuperior attainments of the Engliſh, Captain Cook ordered ſome fire-works to be prepared; and after it was dark, exhibited them in the preſence of Feenou, and a vaſt multitude of people. They were highly entertained with the diſplay in general; but our water and ſky-rockets aſtoniſhed them beyond all conception; and they now admitted that the ſcale was turned in our favour.

This exhibition, however, ſerved only as an additional ſtimulus to urge them to proceed to freſh exertions of their ſingular dexterity; for as ſoon as our fire-works were ended, a ſucceſſion of dances, which Feenou had prepared for our entertainment, began. A band of muſic, or chorus, conſiſting of 18 men, ſeated themſelves before us, in the centre of a circle formed by the numerous ſpectators. About four or five of the performers had each pieces of large bamboo, from three to ſix feet in length, each played on by one man, who held it almoſt vertically: the upper end whereof was open, but the other cloſed by one of the joints. They kept conſtantly ſtriking the ground, though ſlowly, with the cloſe end, and thus produced a variation in the notes, according to the different lengths of the inſtruments, but all were of the baſe or hollow kind; which was counteracted by a perſon who ſtruck nimbly a piece of the ſame ſubſtance, ſplit, and lying upon the ground, furniſhing a tone as acute, as the others were grave and ſolemn. The whole of the band (including thoſe who performed upon the bamboos) ſung a ſlow ſoft air, which ſo finely tempered the harſher notes of the inſtruments, that the moſt perfect judge of the modulation of ſweet ſounds, would confeſs the great power, and pleaſing effect of this ſimple harmony. About a quarter of an hour after the concert began, 20 women entered the circle, whoſe hands were adorned with garlands of crimſon flowers; and many of their perſons were decorated with leaves of trees, curiouſly ſcolloped, or ornamented at the edges. They encircled thoſe of the chorus, with their faces towards them, and began by ſinging a ſoft air, to which reſponſes were made by the chorus; and thoſe were alternately repeated. The women accompanied their ſong with many graceful motions of their hands, and continually advancing and retreating with one foot, while the other remained fixed. After this, they turned their faces to the aſſembly, and having ſung ſome time, retreated ſlowly in a body, and placed themſelves oppoſite to the hut, where the principal ſpectators ſat. One of them next advanced from each ſide, paſſing each other in the front, and moving progreſſively till they came to the reſt. On which two advanced from each ſide; two of whom returned, but the other two remained; and to theſe, from each ſide, came one by intervals, till they had, once more, formed a circle about the chorus. Dancing to a quicker meaſure now ſucceeded, in which the performers made a kind of half turn by leaping; then clapping their hands, and ſnapping their fingers, repeated ſome words in uniſon with the chorus. As they proceeded in the dance, the rapidity of their muſic increaſed; their geſtures and attitudes were varied with wonderful dexterity; and ſome of their motions would, by an European, be thought rather indecent; though, perhaps, they meant only to diſplay the aſtoniſhing variety of their movements. This female ballet was ſucceeded by one performed by 15 men; and though ſome of them were old, time ſeemed to have robbed them of but little of their agility. They were diſpoſed in a ſort of circle, divided at the front. Sometimes they ſung ſlowly, in concert with the chorus, making ſeveral graceful motions with their hands, but differing from thoſe of the women; at the ſame time inclining the body alternately to either ſide, by raiſing one leg outward, and reſting on the other; the arm of the ſame ſide being alſo ſtretched upward. They then recited ſentences, which were anſwered by the chorus; and occaſionally increaſed the meaſure of the dance, by clapping the hands and accelerating the motion of the feet. Towards the concluſion, the rapidity of the muſic and dancing ſo much increaſed, that the different movements were hard to be diſtinguiſhed.

When this dance was finiſhed, but after a conſiderable interval, 12 other men advanced, placing themſelves in double rows, fronting each other. On one ſide was ſtationed a kind of prompter, who repeated ſeveral ſentences, to which reſponſes were made by the performers and the chorus. They ſung and danced ſlowly; and gradually grew quicker, like thoſe whom they had ſucceeded. Next to theſe nine women advanced and ſat down oppoſite the hut where the chief had placed himſelf. A man immediately roſe and gave the firſt of theſe women a blow on the back with both his fiſts joined: he treated the ſecond and third in the ſame manner; but when he came to the fourth, he ſtruck her on the breaſt: upon ſeeing this, a perſon inſtantly riſing up from among the crowd, knocked him down with a blow on the head, and he was quietly carried away. But this did not excuſe the other five women from ſo extraordinary a diſcipline; for they were treated in the ſame manner by a perſon who ſucceeded him. When theſe nine women danced, their performance was twice diſapproved of, and they were obliged to repeat it again. There was no difference between this dance and that of the firſt ſet of women, except that theſe ſometimes raiſed the body upon one leg, and then upon the other, alternately, by a ſort of double motion. Soon after a perſon entered unexpectedly, making ſome ludicrous remarks on our fire-works that had been exhibited, which extorted a burſt of laughter from the crowd. We had then a dance by the attendants of Feenou: they formed a double row of 24 each round the chorus, and joined in a gentle ſoothing ſong, accompanied with motions of the heads and hands. They alſo began with ſlow movements, which gradually became more and more rapid, and cloſed finally with ſeveral very ingenious tranſpoſitions of the two circles. The feſtival of this memorable night concluded with a dance, in which the principal people aſſiſted. In many reſpects it reſembled the preceding ones, but they increaſed their motions to a prodigious quickneſs, ſhaking their heads from ſhoulder to ſhoulder, inſomuch that they appeared in danger of diſlocating their necks. This was attended with a clapping of the hands, and a kind of ſavage ſhriek. A perſon on one ſide, repeated ſomething in a truly muſical recitative, and with an air ſo graceful, as might put ſome of our applauded performers to the bluſh. He was anſwered by another, and this was repeated ſeveral times by the whole body on each ſide; and they finiſhed, by ſinging and dancing, as they had begun. The two laſt dances were approved univerſally by the ſpectators. They were perfectly in time, and ſome of their geſtures were ſo expreſſive, that it might juſtly be ſaid, they ſpoke the language that accompanied them. The theatre for theſe exhibitions and performances was an open ſpace among the trees, bordering on the ſea, with lights placed at ſmall intervals, round the inſide of the circle. Though the concourſe of people was pretty large, their number was much inferior to that aſſembled in the forenoon, when the marines performed their exerciſe. At that time many of our gentlemen ſuppoſed there might be preſent 5000 perſons or upwards; but the captain thought that account rather exaggerated.

On Wedneſday the 21ſt, a chief went on board the Diſcovery, and preſented her captain with a large, elegant head-dreſs, ornamented with pearls, ſhells, and red feathers, and wreathed with flowers of the moſt reſplendent colours. In return, Captain Clerke loaded him with many uſeful articles of European manufacture, knives, ſciſſars, ſaws, and ſome gaudy ſtrings of beads, which were highly prized by the chief, who thought it no diſgrace to paddle himſelf on ſhore, with his rich acquiſitions. This day Captain Cook made an excurſion into the iſland of Leſooga, which, in ſome reſpects, was found to be ſuperior to Annamooka, the plantations being not only more numerous, but alſo more extenſive. Various parts of the country near the ſea are waſte, owing perhaps to the ſandineſs of the ſoil: but in the internal parts of the iſland, the ſoil is better; and there the marks of population and of an improved ſtate of cultivation, are very conſpicuous. Many of the plantations are encloſed in ſuch a manner, that the fences, running parallel to each other, form ſpacious public roads. Large ſpots, covered with the paper-mulberry-trees, were obſerved; and the plantations, in general, were ſtocked abundantly with ſuch plants and fruit-trees as the iſland produces. To theſe we made ſome addition, by ſowing the ſeeds of melons, pumpkins, Indian-corn, &c. At one place was a houſe, four times as large as the ordinary ones, with an extenſive area of graſs before it, to which the people probably reſort on ſome public occaſions, particularly in the rainy ſeaſons. Near the landing-place we obſerved a mount, two or three feet high, whereon ſtood four or five little huts, in which the bodies of ſome perſons of diſtinction had been interred. The iſland is but ſeven miles in length, and its breadth, in ſome places, is not more thanthree miles. The eaſt-ſide has a reef, projecting conſiderably, againſt which the ſea breaks with great violence. It is the continuation of this reef that joins Leſooga to Foa, which is but half a mile diſtant; and, at low water, the natives can walk upon this reef from one iſland to the other. The ſhore is either a ſandy beach, or a coral rock. When the Captain returned on board from his excurſion, he found a large ſailing canoe faſtened to our ſtern. In this came Latoolſboula, or Kohagee-too Fallangou, (one perhaps the name of the perſon, and the other the deſcription of his rank or title) whom the captain had ſeen, during his laſt voyage, at Tongataboo, and who was then ſuppoſed by him to be the king of that iſland. He could not be prevailed upon to come on board, but continued ſitting in his canoe with an uncommon air of gravity. The iſlanders called him Areekee, or king, a title which we had not heard any of them give to Feenou, however extenſive his authority over them had appeared to be. Latooliboula remained under our ſtern till the evening and then departed. Feenou was on board the Reſolution at that time, but neither of theſe chiefs took the ſmalleſt notice of each other.

On Thurſday the 22nd, ſome of the natives having ſtolen a tarpaulin and other things from off the deck, the captain applied to Feenou, deſiring him to exert his authority to get them reſtored; but this application was of no effect. On the 23d, as we were preparing to leave the iſland, Feenou and his prime-miniſter Taipa came along-ſide in a canoe, and informed us, that they were going to Vavaoo, an iſland, as they ſaid, ſituated about two days ſail to the northward of Hapaee. They aſſured us, that the object of their voyage was to procure for us an additional ſupply of hogs, beſides ſome red feathered caps for Omiah, to carry with him to Otaheite; and deſired us not to ſail till their return, which would be in four or five days; after which Feenou would accompany us to Tongataboo. Captain Cook conſented to wait the return of this chief, who immediately, as he pretended, ſet out for Vavaoo. On the 24th, a report was induſtriouſly ſpread about by ſome of the iſlanders, that a ſhip reſembling ours had arrived at Annamooka ſince we left it, and was now at anchor there. It was alſo ſaid, that Toobou, the chief of that iſland, was haſtening thither to receive thoſe new viſitors. Upon enquiry, however, it was found, that this report was totally void of foundation. It is difficult to conjecture, what purpoſe the invention of this tale could anſwer; unleſs we ſuppoſe it was contrived with a view of getting us removed from one iſland to another. On the 25th, we went into a houſe where a woman was dreſſing the eyes of a child, who ſeemed blind. The inſtruments uſed by this female oculiſt were two ſlender wooden probes, with which ſhe bruſhed the eyes ſo as to make them bleed. In the ſame houſe we found another woman ſhaving a child's head with a ſhark's tooth, ſtuck into the end of a ſtick. She firſt wetted the hair with a rag dipped in water, and then applying the inſtrument, took off the hair as cloſe as if a razor had been uſed. Captain Cook ſoon after tried upon himſelf one of theſe remarkable inſtruments, and found it to be an excellent ſubſtitute. The natives of theſe iſlands, however, have a different method of ſhaving their beards, which operation they perform with two ſhells, one of which they place under a part of the beard, and with the other applied above, they ſcrape off that part: in this manner they can ſhave very cloſe, though the proceſs is rather tedious. There are among them ſome who ſeem to make this a profeſſion; for it was common for our ſailors, when aſhore, to have their beards ſcraped off, after the mode of Hapaee, as it was for their chiefs, when on board, to be ſhaved by our barbers. Finding at this time, that little or nothing of what the iſland produced was brought to the ſhips, Captain Cook determined to change our ſtation, and to wait Feenou's return in ſome other anchoring-place, where we might ſtill be ſupplied with refreſhments; accordingly,

On Monday the 26th, in the forenoon, we made ſail to the ſouthward along the reef of the iſland, and having paſſed ſeveral ſhoals, hauled into a bay, that lies between the north end of Hoolaiva, and the ſouth of Leſooga, and there anchored in 17 fathoms water, the point of Leſooga bearing S. E. by E. diſtant a mile and a half. The Diſcovery did not caſt anchor till ſun-ſet; ſhe having touched on one of the ſhoals; but backed off again without receiving the leaſt damage. We had no ſooner caſt anchor, than Mr. Bligh, maſter, was ſent to ſound the bay, where we were now ſtationed; and Captain Cook, accompanied by Lieutenant Gore, landed on the ſouthern part of Leſooga, to look for freſh water, and examine the country. On the weſt-ſide of the iſland they obſerved an artificial mount of conſiderable antiquity, about 40 feet high, and meaſuring 50 feet, in the diameter of its ſummit. At the bottom of this mount was a ſtone 14 feet high, two and a half thick, and four broad, hewn out of coral-rock; and we were told by the iſlanders, that not more than half its length was ſeen above ground. They called it Tangata Areekee (Tangata in their language ſignifies man; Areekee, king) and ſaid it had been ſet up, and the mount raiſed in memory of one of their kings. On the approach of night, the Captain and Mr. Gore returned on board, and Mr. Bligh came back from ſounding the bay, in which he found from 14 to 20 fathoms water, with a bottom principally of ſand. Leſooga and Hoolaiva are ſeparated from each other by a reef of coral-rocks, dry at low water. Some of our gentlemen, who landed in the laſt mentioned iſland, found not the ſmalleſt mark of cultivation, or habitation upon it, except a ſingle hut, in which a man employed to catch fiſh and turtle reſided. It is remarkable that it ſhould remain in this deſolate condition, ſince it communicates ſo immediately with Leſooga, which is ſo well cultivated. The weſt ſide of it has a bending, where there ſeems to be good anchorage; and the eaſt ſide has a reef, as well as Leſooga. Uninhabited as Hoolaiva is, an artificial mount has been raiſed upon it, equal in height to ſome of the ſurrounding trees.

On Tueſday the 27th, at day-break, ſignal was made to weigh, and as we intended to attempt in our run to Tongataboo, a paſſage to Annamooka, by the S. W. among the intermediate iſles, Mr. Bligh was ſent in a boat, to ſound before the ſhips. But before we got under ſail, the wind became ſo variable and unſettled, as to render it unſafe to attempt a paſſage with which we were ſo little acquainted: we therefore lay faſt, and made ſignal for the maſter to return. He, and the maſter of the Diſcovery, were afterwards ſent, each in a boat to examine the channels. Towards noon, a large ſailing canoe came under our ſtern, in which was a perſon named Poulaho, or Futtafaihe, who was ſaid by the natives then on board, to be king of Tongataboo, Annamooka, Hapaee, and all the neighbouring iſlands. We were ſurprized to find a ſtranger dignified with this title, which we were taught to believe appertained to another; but they perſiſted in their aſſertions, that the ſupreme dignity belonged to Poulaho; and now for the firſt time acknowledged, that Feenou was not the king, but a ſubordinate chief, though of great power. After this explanation, Poulaho was invited by the captain on board, where he was not an unwelcome gueſt, as he brought with him two fat hogs by way of preſent. This great perſonage, though not very tall, was extremely unwieldy, and almoſt ſhapeleſs with corpulence. He appeared to be about forty; his hair was ſtraight, and his features conſiderably different from thoſe of the majority of his people. We found him to be a man of gravity and good ſenſe. He viewed the ſhip, and the various new objects, with a particular attention; and aſked many pertinent queſtions. When he had gratified his curioſity in looking at the cattle, and other novelties, he was requeſted to walk down into the cabin; to which ſome of his retinue objected, ſaying, that, if he ſhould go down thither, it would doubtleſs happen that people would walk over his head; a circumſtance that could not be permitted. When this objection was, to be obviated, by ordering that no one ſhould preſume to walk over the cabin, Poulaho waved all ceremony and ventured down without any previous ſtipulation. He now appeared to be no leſs ſollicitous than his people were, to convince us that he was ſovereign and not Feenou. He ſat down to dinner with us, but eat and drank very little; and afterwards deſired the captain to accompany him on ſhore. Omiah was aſked to be one of the party; but he was too faithfully attached to Feenou, to ſhew much reſpect to his competitor, and therefore declined the invitation. Captain Cook attended the chief in his own boat, having firſt made him ſuch preſents as exceeded his expectations; in return for which, Poulaho ordered two more hogs to be ſent on board. The chief was then carried out of the boat, by his own ſubjects, on a board reſembling a hand-barrow, and was ſeated in a ſmall houſe near the ſhore. He placed the captain by his ſide; and his attendants formed a ſemi-circle before them, on the outſide of the houſe. An old woman ſat cloſe to the chief, with a kind of fan in her hand, to prevent his being incommoded with the flies. The various articles which his people had procured by trading on board the ſhips, being now diſplayed before him, he attentively looked over them all, inquired what they had given in exchange, and, at length, ordered every thing to be reſtored to the reſpective owners, except one glaſs bowl which he reſerved for himſelf. The people who paid this reſpect, firſt ſquatted themſelves down before him, then depoſited their purchaſes, and inſtantly retired. They obſerved the ſame ceremony in taking them away, and not one of them preſumed to ſpeak to him ſtanding. His attendants, juſt before they left him, paid him obeiſance, by bowing their heads down to the ſole of his foot, and touching it with the upper and under ſide of the fingers of each hand. Captain Cook was charmed with the groveling ſubmiſſion, or, as he termed it, the decorum, that was paid by the ſlaves to their maſter on this occaſion, having ſcarce ſeen the like any where, even among more civilized nations. Perhaps the captain had never viſited Italy, and ſeen the ceremony of kiſſing the Pope's toe. The maſter having returned, informed us, that as far as he had proceeded, there was a paſſage for the ſhips, and tolerable anchorage; but that, towards the S. and S. E. he obſerved numerous ſhoals, breakers, and ſmall iſles. In conſequence of this report, we relinquiſhed all thoughts of a paſſage this way, and, being reſolved to return to Annamooka by the ſame route which we had ſo lately experienced to be a ſafe one, we ſhould have ſailed the next morning, which was the 28th, if the wind had not been very unſettled; and in the night we had ſome heavy ſqualls, with thunder, lightning, and rain, to which, at times, theſe iſlands are expoſed. Poulaho came early on board, bringing a red-feathered cap as a preſent to the captain. Theſe curioſities were greatly ſought after by us, as we knew they would be highly valued at Otaheite; but not one was ever brought for ſale, though very large prices were offered; nor could a perſon in either ſhip make himſelf the proprietor of one, except the two captains and Omiah. They are compoſed of the tail feathers of the tropic bird, intermixed with the red feathers of the parroquet; and are made in ſuch a manner, as to tie on the forehead without any crown; and are in the form of a ſemicircle, whoſe radius is 18 or 20 inches. Poulaho left the ſhip in the evening; but his brother, whoſe name was alſo Futtafaihe, and ſome of his attendants remained all night on board.

On Thurſday the 29th, at day-break, we weighed with a fine breeze at E. N. E. and made ſail to the weſtward, followed by ſeveral of the ſailing canoes, in one of which was Poulaho the king, who, coming on board the Reſolution, enquired for his brother, and the others who had continued with us all night. We now found that they had ſtaid without his permiſſion; for he gave them ſuch a reprimand as brought tears from their eyes; however, he was ſoon reconciled to their making a longer ſtay; for on his departure from the ſhip, he left his brother, and five attendants on board. We were alſo honoured with the company of a chief, named Tooboueitoa, juſt arrived from Tongataboo; who, as ſoon as he came, ſent away his canoe, declaring, that he and five others who came with him, would ſleep on board; ſo that the captain had, at this time, his cabin filled with viſitors: this inconvenience he endured the more willingly, as they brought with them plenty of proviſions as preſents to him, for which they met with ſuitable returns. In the afternoon, the eaſterly wind was ſucceeded by a freſh breeze at S. S. E. Our courſe being S. S. W. we were obliged to beat to windward, and did but juſt fetch the northern ſide of Footooha by eight o'clock in the evening. The next day we plied up to Lopanga, and had ſoundings, under the lee or N. W. ſide, in 40 fathoms water; but the bottom being rocky, and a chain of breakers lying to the leeward, we ſtretched away for Kotoo, expecting to find better anchorage there. It was dark before we reached that iſland, where finding no convenient place to anchor in, we paſſed the night in making ſhort boards. On the 31ſt, at day-break, we ſtood for the channel between Kotoo, and the reef of rocks lying to the weſtward of it, but on our approach, we found the wind inſufficient to lead us through. We therefore bore up on the outſide of the reef, and ſtretched to the S. W. till near twelve o'clock, when perceiving that we made no progreſs to windward, and being apprehenſive of loſing the iſlands, while we had ſo many natives on board, we tacked, ſtood back, and ſpent the night between Footooha and Kotoo. The wind now blew freſh, with ſqualls and rain, and, during the night, by a ſmall change of the wind, we were very near running a-ground on a low ſandy iſle, named Pootoo Pootoa, encompaſſed with breakers. Our people having fortunately been juſt ordered upon deck, to put the ſhip about, and moſt of them being at their reſpective ſtations, the neceſſary movements were performed with judgement and alertneſs; and this alone preſerved us from deſtruction. The Diſcovery being aſtern, was out of danger. This narrow eſcape ſo alarmed the natives who were on board, that they deſired with great earneſtneſs, to be put on ſhore; accordingly, on the return of day-light, a boat was hoiſted out, and the officer who commanded her was ordered, after landing them at Kotoo, to ſound for anchorage along the reef which projects from that iſland. During the abſence of the boat, we endeavoured to turn the ſhips through the channel between the reef of Kotoo and the ſandy iſle; but meeting with a ſtrong current againſt us, we were obliged to deſiſt.

On Sunday the 1ſt of June, diſtant about four leagues, we ſaw the burning mountains, and about eleven o'clock A. M. caſt anchor in a fine bay, in 50 fathoms water, the ſandy iſle bearing E. by N. about one mile from the ſhore. Here we remained till the 4th, being frequently viſited by our king, by Tooboueita, and by people who came from the neighbouring iſlands to traffic with us. Mr. Bligh, in the mean time, was diſpatched to ſound the channels between the iſlands ſituate to the eaſtward; and Captain Cook himſelf landed on Kotoo, to take a ſurvey of it. This iſland, on account of the coral reefs that environ it, is ſcarcely acceſſible by boats. Its N. W. end is low; but it riſes ſuddenly in the middle, and terminates at the S. E. end in reddiſh clayey cliffs. It produces the ſame fruits and roots with the adjacent iſlands, and is tolerably well cultivated, though thinly inhabited. It is about two miles in length. In the abſence of the captain our people were employed in cutting graſs for the cattle, and we planted ſome melon ſeeds. On our return to the boat, we paſſed by ſome ponds of dirty brackiſh water, and ſaw a burying-place, which was much neater than any one we had ſeen at Hapaee. On the 4th, at ſeven o'clock, A. M. we made ſail, with a ſtrong gale at E. S. E. and, about five in the afternoon, reached Annamooka, where we moored in our old birth, which we had lately occupied: but the Diſcovery, not being able to beat up againſt the wind, did not arrive till ſeven in the evening. When caſting anchor ſhe drove, and, in leſs than an hour, was three leagues to leeward of us, and in the utmoſt danger of being wrecked. They were now employed in weighing up their anchor; and we ſent a number of our hands ſeaſonably to their aſſiſtance. The night was tempeſtuous, with a high ſea. They laboured till four in the morning inceſſantly; yet made but little way to windward, notwithſtanding the utmoſt exertions of their whole ſtrength: but providentially the gale having ſubſided, they ſwayed the anchor, and before day-light was ſafely moored by our ſide. This day, being Thurſday the 5th, Captain Cook went on ſhore, and found the iſlanders very buſy in their plantations, digging up yams for traffic. In the courſe of the day not leſs than 200 of them aſſembled on the beach, and traded with great eagerneſs. It appeared that they had been very diligent, during our abſence, in cultivating their ſeveral plantations; and we now obſerved many large plantain-fields, which places, in our late viſit, we had ſeen lying waſte. The yams were in the higheſt perfection; and we obtained a good quantity of them in exchange for iron. Before the captain returned on board, he viſited the ſeveral places where we had ſown melon and cucumber ſeeds; but found, to his great regret, that moſt of them had been deſtroyed by the vermin; though ſome pine-apples which had alſo been left, were in a thriving condition.

Friday the 6th, about noon, Feenou arrived from Vavaoo, and informed us that ſeveral canoes, laden with hogs and other proviſions, had ſailed with him from that iſland, but had been loſt near Appy, the iſland in which the burning mountains are ſituated, in the late tempeſtuous weather, and every perſon on board them had periſhed. This melancholy tale did not gain much credit with us, as we were by this time ſufficiently acquainted with the character of the relator. The truth perhaps was, that he had been unable to procure at Vavaoo the expected ſupplies; or, if he obtained any there, that he had left them at Hapaee, which lay in his way back, and where he muſt have heard that Poulaho had come to viſit us; who therefore, he knew, would, as his ſuperior, reap all the merit and reward of procuring thoſe ſupplies, without having had any participation of the trouble. The invention, however, of this loſs at ſea was not ill imagined; for we had lately had very ſtormy weather. On the 7th, Poulaho, and ſome other chiefs, who had been wind-bound with him arrived; at which time Captain Cook happened to be aſhore with Feenou, who now appeared to be ſenſible of the impropriety of his conduct, in arrogating a character to which he had no juſt claim; for he not only acknowledged Poulaho as ſovereign of Tongataboo, and the adjacent iſles, but affected to inſiſt much on it. The captain left him, and went to pay a viſit to the king, whom he found ſitting with a few of the natives before him; but great numbers haſtening to pay their reſpects to him, the circle enlarged very faſt. When Feenou approached, he placed himſelf among the reſt that ſat before Poulaho, as attendants on his majeſty. He at firſt ſeemed to be ſomewhat confuſed and abaſhed; but ſoon recovered himſelf. A very ſhort converſation paſſed between theſe two chiefs, which none of us underſtood; nor were we ſatisfied with Omiah's interpretation of it: however, from what we obſerved, we were ſufficiently undeceived as to Feenou's rank. Both the king and Feenou accompanied the captain on board to dinner; but Poulaho only ſat at table. Feenou, after having made his obeiſance in the uſual mode, by ſaluting the foot of his ſovereign with his head and hands, retired from the cabin; and it now appeared, that he could neither eat nor drink in the king's preſence.

On Sunday the 8th, at eight o'clock, A. M. we weighed anchor, and ſet ſail for Tongataboo, or Amſterdam Iſland, having a gentle breeze, at N. E. We were accompanied by 14 or 15 ſailing veſſels, belonging to the iſlanders, every one of which out-ran the ſhips. Feenou was to have taken his paſſage in the Reſolution; but preferred his own canoe; and put two men on board, as pilots, to conduct us to the beſt anchorage. The royal canoe was diſtinguiſhed from the reſt by a ſmall bundle of graſs, of a red colour, faſtened to the end of a pole, and fixed in the ſtern, in the ſame manner as our enſign ſtaffs. At five in the afternoon we deſcried two ſmall iſlands, at the diſtance of four leagues to the weſtward. One was called by our two pilots Hoonga Hapaee, and the other Hoonga Tonga. They are ſituated in the latitude of 20 deg. 36 min S. and about 10 leagues from the weſtern point of Annamooka, in the direction of S. 46 deg. W. We were told only five men reſided on Hoonga Hapaee; and that Hoonga Tonga had no inhabitants. We continued a S. W. courſe till two o'clock, A. M. of the 9th, when we ſaw ſeveral little iſlands, beyond which appeared Eooa and Tongataboo. We now had 25 fathoms water, with a bottom of broken coral and ſand; and the depth gradually decreaſed, as we approached the above-mentioned ſmall iſles, which lie ranged along the N. E. ſide of Tongataboo. Steering by the direction of our two pilots, for the wideſt ſpace between thoſe iſles, we were inſenſibly drawn upon a large flat, upon which lay innumerable rocks of coral, below the ſurface of the ſea. Notwithſtanding our boats were ſounding a-head, and our utmoſt attention and care to avoid thoſe rocks, we were unable to prevent the Reſolution from ſtriking on one of them: nor did the Diſcovery, though at our ſtern, eſcape better. Happy for us it was, that we had day-light and fine weather. By clapping the ſails to the maſt, and lightening the ſhip abaſt, we ſwayed her off: and it fortunately happened through the protection of an over-ruling Providence that neither of the ſhips ſtuck faſt, nor ſuſtained any damage. We now held on our courſe, and the moment we ſaw a place where we could anchor with any degree of ſafety, we came to; and the maſters were diſpatched with the boats to ſound. Soon after we had caſt anchor, ſeveral of the natives of Tongataboo came to us in their canoes, aſſuring us, that we ſhould meet with deep water further in, free from rocks. Their intelligence was true; for, about four o'clock, the boats made a ſignal of having found good anchoring ground. We therefore weighed, and ſtood in till dark, when we anchored in nine fathoms water, with a clear ſandy bottom. During the night, we had ſome rain; but early in the morning, the wind became ſoutherly, and bringing on fair weather, we weighed again, and worked towards the ſhore of Tongataboo. While we continued plying up the harbour, the king frequently ſailed round us in his canoe; and at the ſame time there was a great number of ſmall canoes about the ſhips. Two of theſe not getting out of the way of the king's veſſel, he ran quite over them with the greateſt unconcern. Among thoſe who came on board the Reſolution was Otago, who had been ſo uſeful to Captain Cook, when he viſited

Tongataboo in his preceding voyage, and one Toobou, who had, at that time, attached himſelf to Captain Furneaux. Each of them brought yams and a hog, in teſtimony of friendſhip; for which they received a ſuitable return. We arrived at our intended ſtation about two o'clock in the afternoon of the 10th. It was a very convenient place, formed by the ſhore of Tongataboo on the S. E. and two ſmall iſles on the E. and N. E. Here both ſhips anchored over a ſandy bottom, where the depth of water was 10 fathoms. Our diſtance from ſhore exceeded a quarter of a mile. We were inſtantly ſurrounded by natives, who came to welcome us, and ſeemed overjoyed at our arrival. It has not been uncommon with ſome compilers of voyages, to ſtigmatize theſe iſlanders with the name of Savages, than which no appellation can be worſe applied, for a more civilized people do not exiſt under the ſun. During the whole time of our ſtay, we did not ſee one inſtance of diſorder among them, nor one perſon puniſhed for any miſdemeanor by their chiefs. We ſaw but few quarrels among individuals; on the contrary, much mirth and ſeeming harmony were obſervable. Highly delighted with their ſhows and heivas, they ſpend their time in a kind of luxurious indolence, where all labour a little, but none to exceſs. The king paddles himſelf in his canoe, though he muſt have a tow-tow to help him to eat. This ſeems ſtrange to an European, as it reduces a man to the condition of a child; and yet it is but one remove from what we ſee daily practiſed before our eyes. The gentleman has his table ſpread, his food of various ſorts ſet before him; has all his apparatus made ready, his bread cut, his meat carved, and his plate furniſhed; he has his drink handed to him, and in ſhort, every thing which the tropical king has, except only conveying his food to his mouth, which the chief thinks may as well be done by his tow-tow. Yet the omiſſion of this ſingle act of handing his meat and drink to his mouth, brings a term of reproach upon the chief, though, by the handineſs of his ſervants in the ſervices of the table, the European gains the character of the polite gentleman. Such and ſo ſlender are the refinements of nations; the barriers that divide indolence from ſumptuouſneſs; and the ſimplicity of a tropical chief from the magnificence of an European Prince.

In the afternoon, Captain Cook, attended by Omiah, ſome officers, and other gentlemen, landed on the iſland of Tongataboo. We found the king waiting our arrival on the beach, who, when we landed, conducted us to a ſmall neat houſe near the woods, having an extenſive area before it: this, he told the captain, was at his ſervice, during his continuance in the iſland. Before we had been long in the houſe, a large circle of the natives had aſſembled, and ſeated themſelves on the area. A root of the Kava-plant being brought to the king, he commanded that it ſhould be ſplit into pieces, and diſtributed to ſeveral people of both ſexes, who began to chew it, and ſoon prepared a bowl of their favourite liquor. Mean while, a baked hog, and a quantity of baked yams were produced, and divided into ten portions. Theſe ſhares were given to ſome of thoſe who were preſent, except one, which remained undiſpoſed of, and which probably was reſerved for the king himſelf. The liquor was next ſerved out; and the firſt cup being brought to the king, he ordered it to be given to a perſon who ſat near him: the ſecond was alſo brought to him, which he kept: the third was preſented to Captain Cook; but their mode of preparing the liquor having diſguſted him, it was handed to Omiah. The remainder of it was diſtributed to different people; and one of the cups being carried to Poulaho's brother, he retired with this, and with his ſhare of the proviſions. Others alſo withdrew from the circle with their portions, becauſe they could neither eat nor drink in his majeſty's preſence: but there were ſome of an inferior rank, who both eat and drank before him. Soon after, the greater part of them went away, carrying with them what they had not eaten of the ſhare of the feaſt. We obſerved, that the ſervants who diſtributed the meat, and the Kava, delivered them ſitting, not only to the king but to others who were partakers of this feaſt: but not a fourth part of the company had taſted either the victuals or the drink. The greateſt good order was preſerved throughout the aſſembly; and though a great many people were preſent who had never ſeen us before, yet no one was troubleſome. Before the captain returned on board, he went in ſearch of a watering-place, and was conducted to ſome ponds, in one of which the water was tolerable, but it was at ſome diſtance inland.

Wedneſday the 11th, the Captain being informed, that the ſmall iſland of Pangimodoo, near which the ſhips were ſtationed, could better ſupply that important article, he went over to it, and found there a pool containing freſher water than any we had met with among theſe iſlands. This pool being extremely muddy, he cauſed it to be cleanſed; and here it was that we filled our water-caſks. The ſame morning a tent was pitched near the houſe which the king had aſſigned for our uſe. The horſes, cattle, and ſheep, were then landed, and a party of marines ſtationed there as a guard. The obſervatory was ſet up at an inconſiderable diſtance from another tent; and Mr. King took up his reſidence on ſhore, to direct the obſervations, and ſuperintend all other neceſſary buſineſs. A party was ſtationed to cut wood for fuel, and planks for the ſhips; and the gunners were appointed to conduct the traffic with the inhabitants, who flocked from all parts of the iſland with hogs, yams, cocoa-nuts, and other articles, inſomuch, that our land-ſtation reſembled a fair, and our ſhips were remarkably crouded with viſitants. Feenou reſiding in our neighbourhood, we had daily proofs of his generoſity and opulence, by the continuation of his valuable donations. Poulaho was equally attentive to us in this reſpect, as ſcarcely a day paſſed without his favouring us with conſiderable preſents. We were now informed, that a perſon, named Mareewagee was of very high rank in the iſland, and was treated with great reverence; nay if our interpreter, Omiah, did not miſunderſtand his informers, that he was ſuperior to Poulaho himſelf; but that, being advanced in years, he lived in retirement, and therefore was not inclined to pay us a viſit. This intelligence having excited the curioſity of Captain Cook, he ſignified to Poulaho his intention of waiting upon Mareewagee; and the king having agreed to accompany him, they ſet out early on Thurſday the 12th, in the pinnace, Captain Clerke joining them in one of his own boats. They then proceeded to the eaſtward of the little iſles which form the harbour, and turning towards the ſouth, entered a ſpacious bay, up which they rowed about three miles, and landed amidſt a great concourſe of people, who received them with ſhouts and acclamations. The crowd inſtantly ſeparated, that Poulaho might paſs, who took our gentlemen into a ſmall encloſure, and then the king changed the piece of cloth he wore, for a new piece, very neatly folded: an old woman aſſiſting in dreſſing him, and put a large mat over his cloth. Being now aſked, where Mareewagee was, to our great ſurpriſe, he ſaid, that he was gone down to our ſhips. He now requeſted us to accompany him to a malaee, or houſe of public reſort; and when we came to a large area before it, he ſeated himſelf in the path, while, at his deſire, we walked up to the houſe, and ſat down in the front. After waiting a little while, we repeated our enquiries, by the medium of Omiah, whether we were to be introduced to Mareewagee? But receiving no ſatisfactory anſwer, and being inclined to ſuſpect, that the aged chief was purpoſely concealed from us, we returned to the boats much piqued at our diſappointment. It afterwards appeared that Mareewagee had not been there; and that, in this affair, ſome groſs miſtakes had been made, Omiah either having been miſinformed, or having miſunderſtood what was told him concerning the old chief. In this excurſion, the place we went to was a very pleaſant village, delightfully ſituated on the banks of the bay or inlet, where moſt of the principal perſons of the iſland reſide. Each of theſe has his houſe in the midſt of a ſmall plantation, with out-houſes and offices for ſervants. Theſe plantations are neatly fenced round, and, in general, have only one entrance, which is by a door faſtened on the inſide with a prop of wood. Between each plantation are public roads and narrow lanes. A conſiderable part of ſome of theſe encloſures is laid out in graſs-plots, and planted with ſuch things as ſeem leſs adapted for uſe than ornament. In ſuch other plantations as were not the reſidence of perſons of high rank, every article of the vegetable produce of the iſland was in great plenty. Near the great roads are ſome large houſes, with ſpacious graſs-plots before them, which were ſaid to belong to the king, and are probably the places where public aſſemblies of the people are held.

Friday the 13th, about noon, Mareewagee came within a ſmall diſtance of our poſt on ſhore, attended by a great number of people of all ranks. In the courſe of the afternoon, the two captains, and others of our gentlemen, accompanied by Feenou, went aſhore to viſit him. We found a grave perſon ſitting under a tree, with a piece of cloth about 40 yards long, ſpread before him, round which numbers of people were ſeated. We ſuppoſed this to be the great perſonage, but were informed by Feenou, that another who was ſitting on a piece of mat, was Mareewagee. To him we were introduced, and he received us very graciouſly. This chief, who was alſo under a tree, was named Toobou, whom we ſhall call old Toobou, to diſtinguiſh him from his name-ſake, who has already been mentioned as Captain Furneaux's friend. Both he and Mareewagee were venerable in their appearance. The latter was ſlender in his perſon, and ſeemed to be near 70 years of age. Old Toobou, who deſired us to ſit down by him, was ſomewhat corpulent, and almoſt blind from a diſorder in his eyes. The captain, not expecting on this occaſion, to meet with two chiefs, had brought on ſhore a preſent for only one: this, therefore, he was obliged to divide between them; but, as it happened to be conſiderable, both of them appeared to be ſatisfied. Our party now entertained them about an hour with two French horns and a drum: but the firing off one of Captain Clerk's pocket-piſtols ſeemed to pleaſe them moſt. Before we took leave of the two chiefs, the large piece of cloth was rolled up and preſented to Captain Cook, together with a few cocoa-nuts. On the 14th, Old Toobou came on board to return our viſit: he alſo went on board the Diſcovery; and if our former preſent was not ſufficiently conſiderable, the deficiency was now ſupplied. In the mean time, Mareewagee went to ſee our people who were ſtationed on ſhore; and Mr. King ſhewed him whatever we had there. He was ſtruck with admiration at the ſight of the cattle; and the croſs-cut ſaw rivetted his attention. Towards noon Poulaho came on board, bringing with him his ſon, who was about twelve years of age. The king dined with Captain Cook; but the ſon, though preſent, was not permitted to ſit down by him. The captain found it very convenient to have Poulaho for his gueſt; for, whenever he was preſent, which frequently happened, every other native was excluded from the table: whereas, if neither he nor Feenou were on board, the chiefs of inferior rank were very importunate to be of the dining party, or to be admitted at that time into the cabin, which became conſequently very much crowded. The king was ſoon reconciled to our cookery, and was fond of our wine. He now reſided at the malaee near our tent, where he this evening entertained our people with a dance, in which he himſelf, though ſo corpulent and unwieldy, engaged.

Sunday the 15th, in the morning, Captain Cook received a meſſage from Old Toobou, importing, that he was deſirous of ſeeing him on ſhore. He and Omiah accordingly waited on that chief, whom they found ſitting, like one of the ancient patriarchs, under the ſhade of a tree, having a large piece of cloth, the manufacture of the iſland, ſpread out before him. He deſired them to place themſelves by him: after which he told Omiah, that the cloth, with ſome cocoa-nuts, and red-feathers, conſtituted his preſent to Captain Cook. The latter thanked him for the favour, accompanied with a requeſt, that he would go on board with him. Omiah, being ſent for by Poulaho, now left the captain, who was informed by Feenou, that young Fattafaihe, the king's ſon, deſired to ſee him. He immediately obeyed the ſummons, and found Omiah and the young prince ſeated under a canopy of fine cloth, with a piece of a coarſer kind, 76 yards long, and ſeven and a half broad, ſpread before them and under them. On one ſide was a quantity of cocoa-nuts; and, on the other, a large boar. A multitude of people ſat round the cloth, among whom was Mareewagee, with other perſons of rank. The captain was requeſted to ſeat himſelf by the prince; and then Omiah informed him, that he had been inſtructed by Poulaho to tell him, that as his majeſty and the Captain were friends, he hoped that his ſon Fattafaihe might be comprehended in this union; and that the captain, as a teſtimony of his conſent, would accept of the prince's preſent. Our commander readily agreed to this propoſal, and invited all the chiefs to dine with him on board. Accordingly, the young prince, Old Toobou, Mareewagee, three or four ſubordinate chiefs, and two old ladies of high rank, accompanied us to the ſhip. Mareewagee was dreſſed in a new piece of cloth, with ſix patches of red feathers on the ſkirts of it. This dreſs was probably made on purpoſe for this viſit; for as ſoon as he arrived on board, he put it off, and preſented it to our captain. When dinner was ſerved up, not one of them would even ſit down, or eat a morſel of any thing, as they were all taboo, they ſaid; which word, though it has a very comprehenſive meaning, ſignifies, generally, that a thing is prohibited. Why they were thus reſtrained at preſent, was not accounted for. Having made preſents to them all, and gratified their curioſity, by ſhewing them every part of the ſhip, the captain conducted them aſhore. When the boat had reached the land, Fenou, and ſeveral others, immediately ſtepped out; and the young prince following them, was called back by Mareewagee, who now paid the heir apparent the ſame obeiſance which the king was accuſtomed to receive; and when Old Toobou, and one of the ladies had honoured him with the ſame marks of reſpect, he was ſuffered to land. After this ceremony, the old people ſtepped out of the boat into a canoe, which was waiting to convey them to their place of reſidence. Captain Cook was pleaſed at being preſent on this occaſion, as he was thus furniſhed with the moſt convincing proofs of the ſupreme dignity of Poulaho and his ſon. By this time, indeed, we had gained ſome certain information with regard to the relative ſituation of ſeveral chiefs. We now knew, that Old Toobou and Mareewagee were brothers. Both of them were men of conſiderable property, and in high eſtimation with the people: Mareewagee, in particular, had obtained the honourable appellation of Motooa Tonga, which implies father of Tonga, or his country. We alſo now underſtood, that he was the king's father-in-law, Poulaho having eſpouſed one of his daughters, by whom he had young Fattafaihe; ſo that Mareewagee was grand-father to the prince. As to Feenou, he was one of the ſons of Mareewagee, and Tooboueitoa was another. On landing, we found Poulaho in the houſe adjoining to our tent, who immediately made Captain Cook a preſent of a hog, and a quantity of yams. Towards evening a number of the iſlanders came, and having ſeated themſelves in a circle, ſung in concert with the muſic of bamboo drums, which were placed in the centre. Three of them were long ones, and two were ſhort. With theſe they ſtruck the ground end-wiſe. There were two others that lay ſide by ſide on the ground, one of which was partly ſplit: on theſe a perſon continued beating with two ſticks. They ſung three ſongs during our ſtay, and the entertainment laſted, after we left them, till ten o'clock. For light, they burned the leaves of wharra palm. In the mean time Mr. Anderſon, with ſeveral other gentlemen, made an excurſion into the country, by whom we were furniſhed with the following obſervations. Weſtward of the tent, the country for about two miles, is entirely uncultivated, though covered with trees and buſhes growing naturally with the greateſt vigour. Beyond this a pretty large plain extends itſelf, on which are cocoa-trees, and ſome ſmall plantations. Near the creek, which runs weſt of the tent, the land is perfectly flat, and partly overflowed every tide by the ſea. When the waters retire, the ſurface is ſeen to conſiſt of coral rock, interſperſed with holes of yellowiſh mud; and near the edges, where it is rather more firm, are vaſt numbers of little openings, whence iſſue innumerable ſmall crabs, which ſwarm upon the ſpot, but are ſo very nimble, that, when approached, they inſtantaneouſly diſappear, and baffle all the dexterity of the natives who endeavour to catch them. At this place is a work of art, which teſtifies ſome degree of ingenuity and perſeverance. On one ſide is a narrow cauſeway, which, gradually increaſing in breadth, riſes with a gentle aſcent to the height of 10 feet, where its breadth is five paces, the whole length being about 74 paces. Adjacent to this is a kind of circus, 30 paces in diameter, about one or two feet higher than the cauſeway that joins it; and in the middle of this circus ſome trees are planted. On the oppoſite ſide, another cauſeway deſcends, which is partly in ruins, and not above 40 paces in length. The whole is built of large coral-ſtones, with earth on the ſurface, overgrown with ſhrubs and low trees. From the marks of decay in ſeveral places, it is probably of ſome antiquity: but it ſeems to be of no ſervice at preſent, whatever may have been its uſe in former times. All that could be learnt of the natives was, that it was called Etchee, and belonged to Poulaho, the king.

Monday the 16th, in the morning, Captain Cook, Mr. Gore, and others, took a walk into the country; in the courſe of which we met with an opportunity of ſeeing the whole proceſs of making cloth, the principal manufacture of this iſland, as well as of many others in the South Sea. An account of this operation as performed at this place, may not improperly be ſubjoined here. The manufacturers, who are of the female ſex, take the ſlender ſtalks or trunks of the paper mulberry, which rarely grows more than ſeven feet in height, and about the thickneſs of four fingers. From theſe ſtalks they ſtrip the bark, and ſcrape off the exterior rind; after which the bark is rolled up, and macerated for ſome time in water: it is then beaten with a ſquare inſtrument of wood, full of coarſe grooves, but ſometimes with a plain one. The operation is often repeated by another perſon; or the bark is folded ſeveral times, and beat longer, which is probably intended to cloſe rather than divide its texture. It is then ſpread out to dry; the pieces being from four to ſix or ſeven feet in length, and about half as broad. Theſe pieces are joined by ſmearing part of them with the glutinous juice of a berry, called tooo; and after being thus lengthened, they are placed over a large piece of wood, with a ſort of ſtamp, compoſed of a fibrous ſubſtance, laid beneath them. The manufacturers then take a bit of cloth, and having dipped it in a juice expreſſed from the bark of a tree, called Kokka, rub it briſkly over the piece that is making. This leaves upon the ſurface a dry gloſs, and a dull brown colour; and the ſtamp makes, at the ſame time, a ſlight impreſſion. Thus they proceed, joining and ſtaining by degrees, till a piece of cloth, of the requiſite length and breadth, is produced. They generally leave a border, about a foot broad, at the ſides, and rather longer at the ends, unſtained. If any parts of the original pieces have holes, or are too thin, they glue ſpare bits upon them, till their thickneſs equals that of the reſt. Whenever they are deſirous of producing a black colour, they mix the juice of the Kokka with the ſoot procured from an oily nut, called dooedooe. They aſſert, that the black cloth, which is uſually moſt glazed, makes a cold dreſs; but the other a warm one. On our return, we met with Feenou, whom we took with us, and another young chief, on board to dinner; which when ſerved up, neither of them would eat a morſel; ſaying that they were taboo avy: but when they found, that, in dreſſing the pig and ſome yams, no avy (or water) had been made uſe of, they both ſat down, and eat very heartily: they drank alſo our wine, on being aſſured no water was in it; from whence we inferred, that they were at this time, for ſome particular reaſon, forbidden to uſe water; or that, perhaps, they did not like the water we then uſed, it being taken out of one of the places wherein the iſlanders bathed.

Tueſday the 17th, was fixed upon by Mareewagee for giving a grand haiva, or entertainment, and we were all this day invited to attend. Before the temporary hut of this chief, and near our land ſtation, a large ſpace had been cleared for that purpoſe. In the morning vaſt numbers of the natives, came in from the country, every one of whom bore on his ſhoulder a long pole, at each of end which a yam was ſuſpended. Theſe poles and yams being depoſited on each ſide of the open ſpace, or area, formed two large heaps, piled up to the greateſt advantage, and decorated with ſmall fiſh of various kinds. They were a preſent from Mareewagee to the two Captains Cook and Clerke. The neceſſary preparations being made, the iſlanders began about eleven o'clock to exhibit thoſe dances which they call Mai. The band of muſic, at firſt, conſiſted of 70 men as a chorus, amidſt whom were placed three inſtruments, which we called drums, though they did not much reſemble them. They are cylindrical pieces of wood, from three to four feet in length, ſome of them, trunks of trees, twice as thick as a man of ordinary ſize, and ſome ſmaller. They are entirely hollow, but cloſe at each end, and open only by a chink, about three inches in breadth, running nearly the length of the drum. By this opening the reſt of the trunk is hollowed; which muſt be an operation of ſome difficulty. This muſical inſtrument is called by the natives Naſſa; and having the chink turned towards them, they ſit and beat vigorouſly upon it, with two cylindrical pieces of wood, as thick as the wriſt, and about a foot in length, by which means a rude, but loud and powerful ſound is produced. They vary at intervals, and occaſionally the ſtrength and rate of their beating, and likewiſe change the tones, by beating towards the end or middle of the inſtrument.

In the firſt dance were four ranks of 24 men each. Theſe held in their hands a ſmall thin wooden inſtrument, about two feet in length, reſembling in its ſhape an oblong paddle. With theſe inſtruments, which are called pagge, they made different motions; ſuch as pointing them to the ground on one ſide, and, at the ſame inſtant, inclining their bodies the ſame way; then ſhifting them to the oppoſite ſide in the ſame manner, and with ſimilar inclinations; paſſing them with great quickneſs from one hand to the other, and twirling them about with remarkable dexterity, and various manœuvres. Their motions, which were ſlow at firſt, quickened as the drums beat faſter; and they repeated ſentences the whole time in a muſical tone, which were anſwered by the chorus; but in a ſhort time they all joined, and ended with a ſhout. After a ceſſation of a few minutes, they began as before, and continued with ſhort intervals, upwards of a quarter of an hour; and then the rear rank dividing, moved ſlowly round each end, met in the front, and formed the firſt rank; during which movements the whole number of performers continued to recite ſentences. The other rank did ſucceſſively the ſame, till that which was foremoſt became the rear; and this evolution did not ceaſe till the laſt rank regained its former ſituation. A much quicker dance, though ſlow at firſt, was then begun, and they ſung for ten minutes, when the whole body, in a two-fold direction, retreated, and then advanced, forming nearly a circular figure, which concluded the dance; the chorus retiring, and the drums being removed at the ſame time. In the ſecond dance, were 40 men as a chorus, with only two drums; and the dancers, or rather actors, conſiſted of two ranks, the foremoſt of which had 17 perſons, and the other 15. Feenou was in the middle of the firſt rank, which is conſidered, on theſe occaſions, as the principal place. They danced and repeated ſentences, with very ſhort intervals, for half an hour, ſometimes ſlowly, and at other times quickly, with the higheſt degree of exactneſs and regularity. Towards the cloſe, the rear rank divided, came round, and occupied the place of the front, which afterwards reſumed its former ſituation. This dance being finiſhed, the drums were taken away, and the chorus retired, as in the preceding dance. Three very large drums were now brought in, and 70 men formed a chorus to the third dance. This conſiſted of two ranks, of 16 men each, having young Toobou at their head, who was ſplendidly ornamented with a kind of garment covered with red feathers. Theſe performers danced, ſung, and twirled the pagge, ſo as to meet with the continual applauſes of the ſpectators, who were particularly pleaſed with one attitude, in which they held the face aſide, as if aſhamed, with the pagge before it. The hindmoſt rank cloſed before the front one, which ſoon after reſumed its place, as in the firſt and ſecond dances: then beginning again, they formed a triple row, divided, retreated to each end of the area, and left the ground almoſt clear. Two men ruſhing in at that inſtant, began to exerciſe their clubs which they make uſe of in battle. They firſt twirled them in their hands, and made circular ſtrokes before them with great quickneſs, managing them with ſuch ſkill, that, though they ſtood cloſe to each other, they never interfered. They ſhifted the clubs, with uncommon dexterity, from one hand to the other; and, after ſome time kneeled down, and made various motions, toſſing up their clubs in the air, and catching them as they fell. They then retired as haſtily as they entered. Their heads were ornamented with pieces of white cloth, faſtened at the crown, with a wreath of foliage round their foreheads: and, that they might be free from every incumbrance, they had only a very ſmall piece of cloth tied round the waiſt. A man armed with a ſpear now ruſhed in, and put himſelf in a menacing attitude, as if he intended to ſtrike with his weapon at one of the people in the crowd; at the ſame time bending the knee a little, and trembling as it were with fury. He continued in this poſition near a minute, and then moved to the other ſide, where, having ſtood in the ſame poſture, he haſtily retreated from the area. During all this time the dancers, who had divided themſelves into two parties, continued to repeat ſomething ſlowly; and they now advanced, and joined again, concluding the dance with general applauſe. This dance, in our opinion, was conſidered as a capital performance, as ſome of the principal people were engaged in it: one of the drums being beat by Fattafaihe the king's brother, another by Feenou, and the third by Mareewagee himſelf. In the fourth and laſt dance, were 40 men as a chorus, with two drums. The performers were 60 men, arranged in three rows, having 24 in front. Before they began, we were entertained with a preliminary harangue, in which the whole number made reſponſes to a ſpeaker ſolus. They then recited ſentences alternately with the chorus, and made with the pagge many quick motions. They divided into two parties, with their backs to each other; formed again; ſhifted their ranks, divided, and retreated; being ſucceeded by two men, who exerciſed with their clubs, as before, after whom came two others; the dancers in the mean time repeating in their turns with the chorus; they then advanced, and concluded the dance.

Theſe amuſements continued from eleven o'clock till near three. The number of iſlanders who attended as ſpectators, together with thoſe who were round the trading-place at the tent, or ſtraggling about, amounted to at leaſt 10,000, all within the compaſs of a quarter of a mile. Had we underſtood what was ſpoken in this entertainment, we might probably have gained much information with reſpect to the genius and cuſtoms of this people. Though the ſpectators conſtantly applauded the different motions, when well made, a conſiderable ſhare of the pleaſure they received, ſeemed to ariſe from the ſentimental part, or, what the performers recited. However, the mere acting part well deſerved our notice, on account of the extenſiveneſs of the plain, the variety of the motions, and the exact unity, eaſe, gracefulneſs, and vivacity, with which they were performed. In the evening we were entertained with the Bomai, or night dances, on a large area before the temporary dwelling place of Feenou. They continued three hours; during which time about twelve of them were performed, nearly in the ſame manner as thoſe at Hapaee. In two of them, in which ſome women had a part, a number of men came, and formed a circle within their's. In another, which conſiſted of 24 men, many motions that we had not ſeen before, were made with the hands, and met with great applauſe. The muſic was once changed in the courſe of the evening; and in one of the dances, Feenou himſelf appeared at the head of 50 men. He was neatly dreſſed in linen, and ſome ſmall pictures were hung round his neck. After theſe diverſions were ended, we were made ſenſible, that theſe people had put themſelves to many inconveniencies on our account: for being drawn together to this uninhabited part of the iſland, numbers of them were obliged to lie down and ſleep under the buſhes, or by the ſide of a tree, or a canoe, nay, many lay down in the open air, which they are not fond of, or ſpent the remainder of the night in walking about. Notwithſtanding the whole entertainment was conducted with better order than could reaſonably be ſuppoſed, yet our utmoſt care and attention could not prevent our being plundered by the natives in the moſt inſolent manner: but then it muſt be acknowledged, that among ſuch a multitude, there muſt be a number of ill-diſpoſed people, and we hourly experienced their propenſity to thieving in every quarter. There was ſcarcely any thing which they did not endeavour to ſteal. In the middle of the day, they once attempted to take an anchor from off the Diſcovery's bows, but without effect. The only violence of which they were guilty, was, the breaking the ſhoulder-bone of one of our goats; in conſequence of which ſhe died ſoon after.

On Wedneſday the 18th, one of the iſlanders got out of his canoe into the quarter gallery of the Reſolution, and ſtole from thence a pewter baſon; but being detected he was purſued, and brought along-ſide the ſhip. Upon this occaſion, three old women in the canoe made loud lamentations over the priſoner, beating their faces and breaſts with the palms of their hands, in a very violent manner. This mode of expreſſing ſorrow occaſions the mark which moſt of theſe people bear over their cheek-bones; for the repeated blows inflicted by them on this part rub off the ſkin, and cauſe ſome blood to flow out; and when the wound is green, it looks as if a hollow circle had been made by burning. On ſome occaſions, they cut this part of the face with an inſtrument. A gentleman who was on board the Diſcovery, has informed the writer of the hiſtory of theſe voyages, that he had an opportunity of diſcovering the reaſon of a very ſingular mark, a little above the temples of many of the chiefs. In one of our excurſions into the country, ſays this gentleman, we perceived the day was kept ſacred throughout the whole iſland; that nothing was ſuffered to be ſold; neither did the people touch any food; and beſides, that ſeveral of our new acquaintance were miſſing. Enquiring into the cauſe, we were told, that a woman of quality was dead, and that the chiefs, who were her deſcendants, ſtayed at home to have their temples burnt. This cuſtom is not confined to this iſland only, but is likewiſe common to ſeveral others, particularly, to thoſe of Ea-oowee, or Middleburgh, and Appee. This mark is made on the left-ſide, on the death of a mother, and on the right-ſide when the father dies; and on the death of a high-prieſt, the firſt joint of the little finger is amputated. Theſe people have therefore their religious rites, though we were not able to diſcover how, or when they were performed.

This day Captain Cook beſtowed ſome preſents on Mareewagee, in return for thoſe which had been received from that chief the preceding day; and as the entertainments then exhibited called upon us to make ſome exhibition in return, he ordered all the marines to go through their exerciſe, on the ſpot where the late dances had been performed, and, in the evening, ſome fire-works were alſo played off at the ſame place. The king, the principal chiefs, and a vaſt multitude of people, were preſent. The platoon firing ſeemed to pleaſe them; but when they beheld our water rockets, they were filled with admiration and even aſtoniſhment. They did not much regard the fiſe and drum: nor the French horns that were playing during the intervals. Poulaho ſat behind every one, no perſon being permitted to ſit behind him: and that his view might receive no obſtruction, none ſat immediately before him: a lane was made by the ſpectators from him quite down to the ſpace allotted for playing off the fire-works. While the natives were in expectation of ſeeing our exhibition, they engaged, for the greateſt part of the afternoon, in wreſtling and boxing. The firſt of theſe exerciſes they call foohoo, and the ſecond fangatooa. When a perſon is deſirous of wreſtling, he gives a challenge by croſſing the ground in a kind of meaſured pace, and clapping ſmartly on the elbow joint of one arm, which is bent, and ſends forth a hollow ſound. If no opponent ſteps forth, he returns and ſits down: though ſometimes he ſtands clapping his hands to provoke ſome one to accept his challenge. If an antagoniſt makes his appearance, they meet with marks of the greateſt good nature, generally ſmiling, and deliberately adjuſting the piece of cloth that is faſtened round the waiſt. By this cloth they lay hold of each other, and he who ſucceeds in drawing his opponent to him, inſtantly endeavours to lift him upon his breaſt, and throw him upon his back; and if he can turn round with him, in that poſition, two or three times, before he throws him, his dexterity procures him numerous plaudits from the ſpectators. Should they be more equally matched, they quickly cloſe, and attempt to throw each other by entwining their legs, or raiſing each other from the ground; in which ſtruggles for victory they diſplay an extraordinary exertion of ſtrength and agility. When one of them is thrown, he immediately retires; while the conqueror ſits down for near a minute, then riſes, and goes to the place from whence he came, where the victory is proclaimed aloud. After having ſat a ſhort time, he riſes again, and challenges; and if ſeveral antagoniſts enter the liſts, he has the privilege of chooſing which of them he pleaſes to engage with: he may alſo, ſhould he throw his competitor, challenge again, till he himſelf is vanquiſhed; in which caſe the people of the oppoſite ſide chant the ſong of victory in favour of their champion. It frequently happens, that five or ſix riſe from each ſide, and give challenges together; ſo that it is not uncommon to ſee ſeveral ſets engaged on the field at the ſame time. They preſerve great temper in this exerciſe, and leave the ſpot without the leaſt diſpleaſure in their countenances. When they perceive, upon trial, that they are ſo equally matched, as not to be likely to throw each other, they leave off by mutual conſent. Should it not clearly appear which of them has had a ſuperior advantage over the other, both ſides proclaim the victory, and then they engage again; but no one, who has been vanquiſhed, is permitted to engage a ſecond time with his conqueror. Thoſe who intend to box advance ſideways, changing the ſide at every pace, having one arm ſtretched out before, the other behind; and holding in one hand a piece of cord, which they wrap cloſely about it, when they meet with an opponent. This we think is intended to prevent a diſlocation of the hand or fingers. Their blows are dealt out with great quickneſs and activity, and are aimed principally at the head. They ſtrike equally well with either hand. One of their moſt dextrous blows is, to turn round on the heel, juſt after they have ſtruck their adverſary, and to give him another ſmart blow with the other hand backward. In boxing-matches, unleſs a perſon ſtrikes his antagoniſt to the ground, they never ſing the ſong of victory; which ſhews, that this diverſion is leſs approved among them than wreſtling. Not only boys engage in both theſe exerciſes; but it not unfrequently happens, that little girls box, for a ſhort time, with great obſtinacy. On all theſe occaſions, they do not conſider it as any diſgrace to be vanquiſhed, and he who is overcome ſits down with as much indifference as if he had never entered the liſts. Some of our people contended with them in both exerciſes, but were generally worſted; except in a few inſtances, where, as Captain Cook obſerves, "it appeared, that the fear they were in of offending us, contributed more to the victory, than the ſuperiority of the perſon they engaged."

On Thurſday the 19th, Captain Cook thought proper to mark out his intended preſents of animals, which he deſigned to leave behind him. He therefore aſſembled the chiefs before our houſe, and informed them of his propoſed diſtribution before his departure. To Poulaho, the king, he preſented an Engliſh bull and a cow; to Mareewagee a cape ram, and two ewes, and to Feenou a horſe and a mare. Omiah was inſtructed to inform the chiefs, that no ſuch animals exiſted within ſeveral months ſail of their iſland; that we had brought them with much trouble and expence, for their uſe; that, therefore, they ought to be careful, not to kill any of them till they had multiplied conſiderably; and, finally, that they and their children ought to remember, that they had received them from the natives of Britain. Omiah alſo explained to them their reſpective uſes, as far as his limited knowledge would permit, for he was not well verſed in ſuch things. The captain had intended to give Old Toobou two or three goats; but finding that chief, who had not attended the meeting, though invited, indifferent about them, he added them to the ſhare of Poulaho. As the captain intended, that the above preſents ſhould remain with the other cattle, till we were ready to ſail, he deſired each of the chiefs to ſend a man or two, to look after their reſpective animals, along with our people, in order that they might be made acquainted with the manner of our treating them. The king and Feenou did ſo; but neither Mareewagee, nor any other perſon for him, took the leaſt notice of the ſheep afterwards. Indeed, it ſoon appeared, that ſome were diſſatisfied with our diſtribution of the animals; for on the 20th, early in the morning, two of our Turkey-cocks, and one kid were miſſing. Our commander being determined to have them reſtored, ſeized on three canoes that were along-ſide the ſhips: he then went on ſhore, and having found the king, his brother, Feenou, and ſome other chiefs, in our houſe, he immediately placed a guard over them, and intimated to them, that they muſt remain confined till not only the turkeys and kid, but the other articles of which we had been plundered, at different times, were reſtored to us. On finding themſelves priſoners, they concealed their feelings, as well as they could; ſat down to drink kava, with an appearance of unconcern; and aſſured the captain, that the things in queſtion ſhould all be returned. Soon afterwards an axe, and an iron wedge were brought to us. In the mean time, ſome armed natives began to aſſemble behind the houſe, but they diſperſed when a part of our guard marched againſt them; and the chiefs, by the advice of the captain, gave orders, that no more ſhould appear. Upon being invited to dine with us on board, they readily conſented. Some of them having afterwards objected to Poulaho's going, he roſe up immediately, and declared that he would be the firſt man. We all now repaired aboard, and the chiefs remained in the ſhips till four o'clock. They were then conducted by the captain aſhore; and not long after their having landed, the kid, and one of the turkeys were reſtored to us. On their promiſing that the other turkey ſhould be brought back the next morning, both they and their canoes were releaſed. The chiefs having left us, we walked out, with Omiah in company, to obſerve how the natives in our neighbourhood fared, for this was the uſual time of their meals. We found them in general ill ſupplied; a circumſtance not to be wondered at, ſince moſt of the yams, and other proviſions they had brought with them, were diſpoſed of to us; and they were unwilling to return to their own habitations, while they could procure any ſuſtenance near our poſt. Our ſtation was upon an uncultivated point of land; ſo that there were none of the natives who had a fixed reſidence within half a mile of us. Thoſe therefore who were at our poſt, were obliged to live under trees, or in temporary huts; and the cocoa-trees were ſtripped of their branches, for the purpoſe of erecting huts for the chiefs. In the courſe of our walk we found ſix women at ſupper, two of whom were fed by others. When Omiah aſked the reaſon of this circumſtance, the women replied taboo mattee. Upon further enquiry it appeared, that one of them, about two months before, had waſhed the corpſe of a chief, on which account ſhe was not allowed to handle any food for five months; and that the other had performed the ſame kind office to the dead body of a perſon of inferior rank, and was therefore under a ſimilar reſtriction, though not for ſo long a ſpace of time.

On Saturday the 21ſt, early in the morning Poulaho, the king, came on board, to invite Captain Cook to the diverſions of a haiva, which entertainment he deſigned to give the ſame day. He had his head beſmeared with pigment, in order to communicate a red colour to his hair, which was naturally of a dark brown. After breakfaſt, the captain attended him to the ſhore, and found the iſlanders very buſy in two places, fixing in a ſquare and upright poſition, four very long poſts, at the diſtance of near two feet from each other. They afterwards filled up with yams the ſquare between the poſts; and faſtened ſticks acroſs, from one poſt to another, at the diſtance of every four feet, to prevent the poſts from ſeparating, by the weight of the incloſed yams, and alſo to aſcend by. As ſoon as the yams had reached the ſummit of the firſt poſts, they continued to faſten others to them, till each pile was 30 feet or more in height. On the top of one of the piles, they placed two baked hogs; and, on the top of the other, a living one; and another they tied by the legs half way up. The facility and diſpatch with which theſe two piles were raiſed, were very remarkable. "Had our ſeamen," obſerves Captain Cook, "been ordered to execute ſuch a work, they would have ſworn, that it could not be performed without carpenters; and the carpenters would have called to their aid a dozen different ſorts of tools, and have expended, at leaſt, a hundred weight of nails; and, after all, it would have employed them as many days, as it did theſe people hours. But ſeamen, like moſt other amphibious animals, are always the moſt helpleſs on land." Having compleated theſe two piles, they accumulated ſome other heaps of yams, and alſo of bread-fruit, on each ſide of the area; to which a turtle, and a great quantity of fiſh were added. The whole of this, with ſome red feathers, a mat and a piece of cloth, compoſed the king's preſent to Captain Cook; and Poulaho ſeemed to be not a little proud at having exceeded, as he really did, Feenou's liberality at Hapaee. About one o'clock, the Mai, or dances, were begun. The firſt very nearly reſembled, what was performed on the opening of Mareewagee's entertainment. The ſecond was conducted by young Toobou; and in this four or five women were introduced, who equalled the men in the exactneſs and regularity of their motions. Near the end, the performers divided, in order to leave room for two champions, who exerciſed their clubs. In the third dance, which was the laſt, two other men, with clubs exhibited their ſkill and activity. The dances were ſucceeded by boxing and wreſtling; and one man entered the liſts with a heavy club made of the ſtem of a cocoa-leaf, but could meet with no opponent to engage him in ſo rough a diverſion. Towards evening, the Bomai, or night dances began, in which the king himſelf, apparelled in Engliſh manufacture, was a performer: but neither theſe, nor the dances in the day-time, were ſo capital as thoſe given by Feenou and Mareewagee. The captain, in order to be preſent the whole time of the entertainment, dined on ſhore. Poulaho ſat down by him, but would neither eat nor drink, which was owing to the preſence of a female, who had been admitted, at his requeſt, to the dining party, and who, as we were informed, was of ſuperior rank to himſelf. This lady had no ſooner dined than ſhe walked up to the king, who applied his hands to her feet; after which ſhe retired. He immediately dipped his fingers into a glaſs of wine, and then all her attendants paid him obeiſance. At his deſire ſome of our fire-works were played off in the evening; but being damaged, they did not anſwer the expectations of the ſpectators.

No more entertainments being expected on either ſide, moſt of the natives had deſerted us the day after Poulaho's haiva. Still, however, we had thieves about us, and experienced continual inſtances of their depredations. Mr. Nelſon being alone, on the hills and rocks, collecting plants and herbs, and at a conſiderable diſtance from the ſhips, was attacked by five or ſix iſlanders, who firſt began by throwing ſtones, at which they are very dexterous; and then finding he had no fire-arms, cloſed in with him, ſtript him of his cloaths, and bag, which were all that he had about him. Captain Cook complained to the king; but the offenders, upon enquiry, being found to be boys, and the cloaths, and bag of plants, of ſmall value, Mr. Nelſon, unwilling to embroil the inhabitants in any more diſputes, interceded with the captain, as we were juſt upon our departure, not to make his loſs an object of contention, but to take leave of the chiefs in the moſt friendly manner, who, upon the whole, had behaved with uncommon kindneſs and generoſity. Some of the officers of both ſhips, who had made an excurſion into the interior parts of the iſland, returned on the 22nd, in the evening, after an abſence of two days. They had taken their muſkets and neceſſary ammunition with them, beſides ſeveral ſmall articles, the whole of which the natives had the dexterity to ſteal from them, in the courſe of their ſhort journey. Inconvenient conſequences were likely to have attended this affair; for when our plundered travellers returned, they employed Omiah, without conſulting Captain Cook, to complain to the king of the treatment they had received. He, not knowing how the captain would proceed in this affair, and apprehending that he might again lay him under reſtraint, ſet off early the next morning, and Feenou followed his example; ſo that not a chief of any authority was now remaining in this neighbourhood. The captain was much offended at this officious interference, and reprimanded Omiah for the ſame. Upon this Omiah endeavoured to bring back his friend Feenou, and he ſucceeded in his negotiation, by aſſuring him, that no violent meaſures would be purſued to oblige the natives to return the ſtolen things. Truſting to this declaration, Feenou came back in the evening, and was received favourably. Poulaho alſo honoured us with his company the next day. The two chiefs, upon this occaſion, very juſtly obſerved to us, that, whenever any of our people wanted to take an excurſion into the country, they ought to be made acquainted with it, that they might order proper people to attend them, to prevent ſuch outrages. Though the captain did not afterwards endeavour to recover the articles taken upon this occaſion, the whole of them were returned, through the interpoſition of Feenou, except one muſket, and a few other trifles. By this time alſo, we recovered the tools and other matters that had been ſtolen from our workmen. In a journal belonging to a perſon on board the Diſcovery, we find the following remark: "During our ſtay here, more capital thefts were committed, and more Indians puniſhed than in all the Friendly Iſlands beſides: one was puniſhed with 72 laſhes, for ſtealing only a knife; another with 36, for endeavouring to carry off two or three drinking glaſſes; three were puniſhed with three dozen each, for heaving ſtones at the wooders; but, what was ſtill more cruel, a man for attempting to carry off an axe, was ordered to have his arm cut to the bone; which he bore without complaining. It is not to be wondered, that after ſuch wanton acts of cruelty, the inhabitants ſhould grow outrageous; and, though they did not break out into open acts of hoſtility, yet they watched every opportunity to be vexatious." This journaliſt cannot we think ſpeak from his knowledge, and muſt have been miſinformed; for, in the firſt place, we beg leave to obſerve, that ſuch ſevere puniſhments as three and ſix dozen laſhes are very ſeldom inflicted on board a king's ſhip, and then only for enormous offences; and, in the next place, the whole of the above memorandum contradicts all the moſt authentic accounts of the kind behaviour of the natives of the Friendly Iſles, and likewiſe the well known humanity of our generous commander. We think it our duty to give a faithful detail of facts and occurrences, from the beſt authorities; nor is it leſs incumbent on us, to correct all errors and miſtakes that may come under our obſervation: theſe two obligations have hitherto been the objects of our careful attention; and we hope, in the opinion of our friends and ſubſcribers, we ſhall be found to have fulfilled them with a ſcrupulous punctuality.

Wedneſday the 25th, two boats that had been ſent in ſearch of a commodious channel to ſea, returned. Our people reported, that the channel to the north, through which we came in, was imminently dangerous, being full of coral-rocks; but that there was a good paſſage to the eaſtward, though contracted, in one place, by the ſmall iſlands; conſequently a weſterly wind would be neceſſary to get through it. The ſhips being now completely ſtowed, having wood and water as much as they could make room for, with hogs and bread-fruit in abundance, in ſhort every thing they could contain, or the crews deſire, orders were given to prepare for ſailing; and we intended to viſit the celebrated little iſland of Middleburgh, of which former voyagers have given a moſt flattering deſcription: but as an eclipſe of the ſun was expected to be viſible on the fifth of next month, the captain determined to ſtay till that time, in order to obſerve it. Having now ſome days of leiſure before we ſet ſail, a party of us, accompanied by Poulaho, ſet out the next morning, being Thurſday the 26th, in a boat for Mooa, a ſmall village, where moſt of the great chiefs uſually reſide. Rowing up the inlet, we ſaw 14 canoes fiſhing in company, in one of which was Poulaho's ſon; they had taken ſome fine mullets, and put a dozen of them into our boat. In each canoe was a triangular net, extended between two poles, at the lower end whereof was a cod to receive and ſecure the fiſh. They ſhewed us their method of fiſhing, which appeared to be an effectual one. A ſhoal of fiſh was ſuppoſed to be upon one of the banks, which they inſtantly encloſed in a long net like our ſeine. This the fiſhermen, one getting into the water out of each boat, ſurrounded with the triangular nets in their hands, with which they ſcooped the fiſh out of the ſeine, or caught them as they attempted to leap over it. Taking leave of the prince and his fiſhing party, we rowed to the bottom of the bay, and landed where we had done before, when we went to viſit Mareewagee. As ſoon as we landed, the king deſired Omiah to tell me, that I need be under no apprehenſion about the boat, or any thing in her, for that not a ſingle article would be touched, or purloined by any one of his people, which we found afterwards to be true. We were immediately conducted to one of Poulaho's houſes, which, though tolerably large, ſeemed to be his private place of reſidence, and is ſituated within a plantation. The king ſeated himſelf at one end of the houſe, and his viſitants ſat down in a ſemi-circle at the other end. A bowl of Kava was ſpeedily prepared, and directions were given to bake ſome yams. While theſe were getting ready, ſome of us, together with a few of the king's attendants, and Omiah as interpreter, walked out to take a view of a Fiatooka, or burying-place, at a ſmall diſtance from the habitation. It belonged to the king, and conſiſted of three pretty large houſes; ſituated on a riſing ground, with a ſmall one not far off, all ſtanding in a line lengthwiſe. The largeſt of the three was the middle houſe, which was placed in an oblong ſquare, 24 paces by 28, and elevated about three feet. The other houſes were placed on little mounts. On the floors of theſe houſes, as alſo on the tops of the mounts, were fine looſe pebbles; and the whole was encloſed by large flat ſtones of coral-rock. One of the buildings was open on one ſide, and two wooden buſts of men, rudely carved, were within it. We enquired of the natives who followed us (but were not permitted to enter here) what theſe images were? Who informed us they were intended for memorials of ſome chiefs who had been buried in that place, and not meant as the repreſentatives of any deity. Such monumental edifices, it is preſumed, are ſeldom raiſed; for theſe appeared to have been erected many ages. We were informed, that dead bodies had been buried in each of theſe houſes, but no traces of them were to be ſeen. The carved head of an Otaheite canoe, which had been driven aſhore on their coaſt, was depoſited in one of them. At the foot of the riſing ground was a graſs-plot, whereon different large trees were planted; among which were ſeveral large ones, called Etoa. They greatly reſemble the cypreſs, and have a ſolemn effect. A row of low palms was alſo planted near one of the houſes. After having refreſhed ourſelves with ſome proviſions, which we had brought from our ſhips, we took a pretty large circuit into the country, attended by one of the king's miniſters, who would not ſuffer any of the rabble to follow us, and obliged thoſe whom we met in our excurſion, to ſit down while we were paſſing; a mark of reſpect ſhewn only to their ſovereigns. In our progreſs we obſerved the greateſt part of the country to be cultivated; being planted with various kinds of productions, and moſt of theſe plantations were encloſed with fences. It is true, ſome ſpots were fallow; there were alſo others that remained in a ſtate of nature; and, yet even theſe laſt were of public utility, in affording the natives timber, as they were generally covered with trees. We ſaw likewiſe, in our walk, ſeveral large uninhabited iſlands (belonging as we were told to the king) many public roads, and abundance of foot-paths leading to every part of the iſland. Hence travelling was rendered eaſy and pleaſant: but it is remarkable, that when we were on the moſt elevated ſpots of ground, 100 feet at leaſt, above the level of the ſea, we often met with the ſame coral rock found on the ſhore, projecting above the ſurface; and having all thoſe inequalities, uſually ſeen in rocks that lie within the waſh of the tide; and yet, thoſe very ſpots, almoſt wholly deſtitute of ſoil, were covered with luxuriant vegetation. Our guide conducted us to ſeveral little pools, and to ſome ſprings of water; but in general, they were either ſtinking or brackiſh; though thought by the natives to be excellent. The former were moſtly inland, and the latter near the ſhore of the bay, and below high water mark; ſo that only when the tide was out tolerable water could be taken up from them.

In the duſk of the evening, we returned from our walk, and found our ſupper ready. It conſiſted of fiſh, yams, and a baked hog, in which all the culinary arts had been diſplayed. There being nothing to amuſe us after ſupper, we lay down to ſleep, according to the cuſtom of the country, on mats ſpread upon the floor, and had a covering of cloth. The king, who had made himſelf very happy with ſome of our wine and brandy, ſlept in the houſe, as did many others of the natives. Before day-break, they all roſe, and entered into converſation by moon-light. As ſoon as it was day, they diſperſed different ways; but it was not long before they all returned, accompanied by ſeveral of their countrymen. While they were preparing a bowl of Kava, Captain Cook went to pay a viſit to Toobou, Captain Furneaux's friend, who had a houſe not far diſtant, which, for ſize and neatneſs was hardly exceeded in the place. Here alſo we found a company preparing a morning draught. The chief made a preſent to the captain of a live hog, and one that was baked; alſo a quantity of yams, and a large piece of cloth. When we returned to the king, we found him and his attendants drinking the ſecond bowl of Kava. That being emptied, he informed Omiah, that he was immediately going to perform a mourning ceremony, called Tooge, in memory of a ſon who had been dead ſome time, and deſired us to accompany him. Naturally expecting to ſee ſomewhat new and curious, we readily complied with his requeſt. The firſt thing the king did, was to ſtep out of the houſe, attended by two old women, and put on a new cloathing, over which was placed an old ragged mat, that might have ſerved his great grandfather upon a ſimilar occaſion. His attendants were habited in the ſame manner, excepting that, in point of antiquity, none of their mats could vie with that of their maſter. Thus equipped, we marched off, preceded by eight or ten perſons in the ſame uniform, each of them having likewiſe a green bough about his neck. Poulaho held his bough in his hand till he approached the place of rendezvous, when he alſo put it round his neck. We now entered a ſmall incloſure, wherein was a neat houſe, and a man ſitting before it. As the company entered, they took the branches from their necks, and threw them away. The king ſeated himſelf, and the reſt of his people ſat before him in the uſual manner. By the arrival of other perſons, the circle increaſed to upwards of an hundred, principally old men, all dreſſed in the manner above deſcribed. The company being aſſembled, a large root of Kava was produced by one of the king's ſervants, from whence was extracted liquor ſufficient to fill a capacious bowl, that would contain, at leaſt, five gallons. Many perſons now began to chew the root, and the bowl was filled up to the brim. Others were employed in making drinking-cups of plantain leaves. The firſt cup that was filled, being preſented to the king, he ordered it to be given to another perſon; the ſecond was alſo brought to him, and he drank it; the third was offered to Captain Cook. Afterwards ſeveral cups were given to others, till the whole of the liquor was exhauſted; and, though not half the company partook of it, no one appeared in the leaſt diſſatisfied. Each cup as it was emptied, was thrown upon the ground, whence it was taken up, and carried to be filled again. All this time the chief, and his whole circle, ſat with a great deal of gravity, ſeldom ſpeaking a word to each other. All this while we were in expectation of ſeeing the mourning ceremony begin, when, to our great ſurprize, as ſoon as the Kava was drank out, they all roſe up and diſperſed; Poulaho, at the ſame time, informed us, he was now ready to attend us to the ſhips. The Kava is a ſpecies of pepper, branching conſiderably, with large heart-ſhaped leaves, and jointed ſtalks. The natives eſteem it a valuable article, taking great care to defend the young plants from injury, which they generally ſet about their houſes. They do not often exceed, when full grown, the height of a man, though we have ſeen ſome much higher. The root is the only part uſed at theſe iſlands, from whence their favourite potation is extracted. The quantity put into each cup is about a quarter of a pint. It has no perceptible effect on theſe people, who uſe it ſo frequently; but on ſome of ours it operated like our ſpirits, occaſioning intoxication, or rather ſtupefaction. The mourning ceremony being over, to our no ſmall diſappointment, we left Mooa, and ſet out on our return to the ſhips. Rowing down the inlet we met with two canoes returning from fiſhing. Poulaho ordered them to approach him, and took from them every fiſh and ſhell. He afterwards ſtopped two other canoes, ſearched them, and found nothing. He gave us ſome of the fiſh, and the reſt were ſold by his ſervant on board the ſhip. Proceeding down the inlet, we overtook a large ſailing canoe, when every perſon on board her ſat down till we had paſſed; even the man who ſteered, though he could not poſſibly manage the helm, but in a ſtanding poſture. Having been informed by Poulaho and others, that there was ſome good water at Onevy, a ſmall iſland, about a league from the mouth of the inlet, we landed there, but found it extremely brackiſh. The iſland is quite in its natural ſtate, and only frequented as a fiſhing-place; having nearly the ſame productions as Palmerſton's Iſland. When we reached the ſhip, and got on board, we were informed, that every thing had continued quiet during our abſence; not a ſingle theft having been committed; of which Feenou, and Futtafaihe, the king's brother, who had undertaken the management of his countrymen, during our abſence, boaſted not a little. This evinces what power the chiefs have, when they are diſpoſed to execute it; which is not often to be expected; for whatever was ſtolen from us, was generally conveyed to them. But the good conduct of the natives was of ſhort duration, for,

Saturday the 28th, ſix of them aſſaulted ſome of our people, who were ſawing planks; in conſequence of which they were fired at by our ſentry: one of them was ſuppoſed to be wounded, and three were made priſoners. The latter were confined till night, when they were puniſhed, and ſet at liberty. After this their behaviour was very decent and circumſpect; occaſioned, as we thought, by the man being wounded; for, till this time, they had only heard of the effect of our fire-arms, but now they had felt it. We were not miſtaken in our conjecture, for Mr. King and Mr. Anderſon, in an excurſion they took into the country, met with the very man, and found indubitable marks of his having been wounded with a muſket ball. Nothing worthy of notice happened at the ſhips for two days; we ſhall therefore fill up that interval with an account of Mr. Anderſon's excurſion into the country, juſt mentioned.

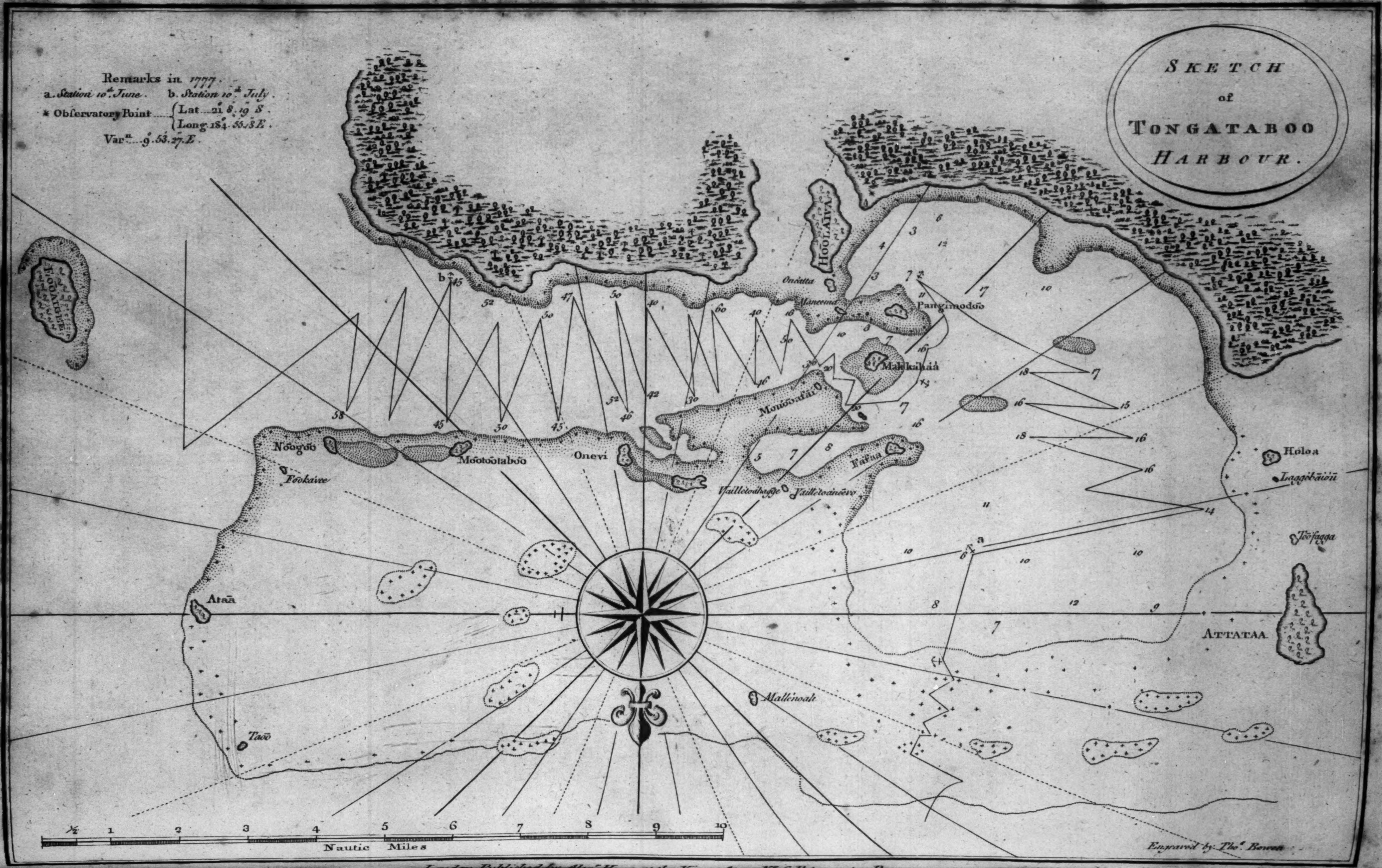
On Monday the 30th, Mr. King and Mr. Anderſon accompanied Futtafaihe as viſitors to his houſe, which is not far from that of his brother Poulaho, at Mooa. Soon after they arrived a good ſized hog was killed, which was effected by repeated ſtrokes upon the head. The hair was then curiouſly ſcraped off with the ſharp edge of pieces of bamboo, and the entrails taken out by the ſame ſimple inſtrument. Previous to this an oven had been prepared, which was a large hole dug in the earth, the bottom of which was covered with ſtones, about the ſize of a man's fiſt, and made red hot by kindling a fire over them: they then wrapped ſome of thoſe ſtones in leaves of the bread-fruit-tree, with which they filled the hog's belly; ſtuffing in a quantity of leaves, and a plug of the ſame kind, to prevent their falling out. This being done, the carcaſs was placed upon ſome ſticks laid acroſs the ſtones, and covered with plantain-leaves. The earth was afterwards dug up all round; and the oven being thus effectually cloſed, the operation of baking required no farther aid. While this was doing, our gentlemen amuſed themſelves by walking about the country, but ſaw nothing remarkable, except a Fiatooka, about 30 feet high. At a ſmall diſtance therefrom, were ſeveral Etooa-trees, whereon they ſaw a great number of Ternate-bats, making a moſt diſagreeable noiſe. Not having their muſkets with them at this time, they could not kill any, but ſome taken at Annamooka, meaſured almoſt a yard, when the wings were extended. On their return to Futtafaihe's dwelling, the baked hog was brought out, accompanied with ſome cocoa-nuts, and ſeveral baſkets of baked yams. The perſon who prepared the hog in the morning, now cut it up in a maſterly manner, with a knife made of ſplit bamboo. Though the weight was, at leaſt, nearly ſeven ſtone, the whole was placed before them; when they took a ſmall part, and deſired the reſt might be diſtributed among the people ſitting round. Futtafaihe could hardly be prevailed upon to eat a morſel. Dinner being ended, we went with him, and his attendants, to the ſpot where Poulaho's mourning ceremony was performed. They ſaw nothing but a kind of continuation of the ſame ſolemn rites, by way of condolence. Upon enquiring into the reaſon of this tranſaction, they were informed, that it was in memory of a chief who had long ſince died at Vavaoo; that they had practiſed it ever ſince, and ſhould continue to do ſo for a conſiderable length of time to come. In the evening, they were entertained with a pig for ſupper, dreſſed like the hog, and, as that, accompanied with yams and cocoa nuts. When ſupper was over, a large quantity of cloth was brought for them to ſleep on; but they were diſturbed in their repoſe, by a ſingular piece of luxury, with which men of conſequence in this iſland indulge themſelves, namely, that of being thumped or patted, till and while they are aſleep. Two women, who ſat by Futtafaihe, performed this office, which they call tooge tooge, by ſtriking his body and legs with both fiſts, till he fell aſleep, and with ſome intervals, continued it the whole night. If the perſon is aſleep, they abate a little of the ſtrength and briſkneſs of the beating: but if they obſerve the leaſt appearance of his awaking, they reſume it. In the morning they were informed that Futtafaihe's women relieved each other, and went alternately to ſleep. Such a practice as this, in any other country, would be ſuppoſed to be deſtructive of all reſt; but here it operates like an opiate, and ſtrongly points out what habit will effect. The noiſe occaſioned by this extraordinary cuſtom, was not the only bar to their ſleeping; for the people who paſſed the night in the houſe, not only converſed frequently with each other, as in the daytime; but all got up before it was light, and made a hearty meal on fiſh and yams, which were brought to them by a perſon, who ſeemed to be well acquainted with the uſual or appointed time of their nocturnal repaſt.

The next morning, being July the 1ſt, they walked down the eaſt-ſide of the bay to the point, accompanied by Futtafaihe. The country appeared in a fine ſtate of cultivation, but not ſo many incloſures as at Mooa; and among the great number of plantain-fields, there was one at leaſt a mile long, in excellent order, every tree growing with great vigour. They found, that in travelling, Futtafaihe exerciſed a power, which evinced the great authority the principal men are inveſted with. To one place he ſent for fiſh; to another for yams, &c. and his orders were as readily obeyed as if he had been abſolute maſter of all the peoples property. When we came to the point ſomething was mentioned by the natives concerning a man, who, they ſaid, had been fired at by one of our guard; and upon our deſiring to ſee the perſon, they conducted us to a houſe, wherein was a man who had been ſhot through the ſhoulder, but not dangerouſly. The ball had entered a little above the inner part of the collar-bone; and paſſed out obliquely backward. From the ſtate of the wound, and ſeveral particular circumſtances, we were certain, that he was the perſon who had been fired at by one of our ſentinels, three days before; though poſitive orders had been given, that none of our people ſhould load their pieces with any thing but ſmall ſhot. There were many of them ready to ſwear they had loaded only with theſe; and how the ſingle muſket happened to be that day charged with ball, Captain Cook could never find out. Our gentlemen gave ſome directions how to manage the wound, to which no remedy had been applied; and the natives ſeemed pleaſed, when they were informed it would get well in a certain time. But on their departure, they requeſted of them to ſend the wounded man ſome yams, and other ſorts of food; and in ſuch a manner, that it was concluded they conſidered it to be our duty to ſupport him, till he might be able to ſupply his wants with his own labour. They croſſed the bay, in the evening, to our ſtation, in a canoe procured by Futtafaihe, who exerciſed his authority by calling to the firſt that appeared. He had alſo brought to him at this place, by a ſervant, a large hog, and a bundle of cloth, which he wanted them to accept of as a preſent from him; but the boat being ſmall, they objected; and he ordered it to be conveyed over to them the next day. Thus ends Mr. Anderſon's account of his excurſion.

On Wedneſday the 2nd, Captain Cook examining the micrometer, belonging to the board of longitude, found ſome of the rack work broken, and that the inſtrument could not be repaired, nor rendered fit for uſe, by the time of the expected eclipſe, though we had prolonged our ſtay with a view of making obſervations when this event ſhould took place. Being thus diſappointed in our expectation, we began to prepare for our departure, by getting this day on board all our cattle, poultry, and other animals, except thoſe that were deſtined to remain. The captain deſigned to have left a Turkey-cock and hen; but two hens having been deſtroyed by accident, and wiſhing to carry the breed to Otaheite, he reſerved the only remaining pair for that place. We had brought three hens to theſe iſlands, one of which was ſtrangled, and the other was killed by a uſeleſs dog belonging to one of our officers. The captain afterwards repented his not having given the preference to Tongataboo, as the preſent would have been more valued there than at Otaheite; and he was perſuaded the natives of the former iſland would have taken more pains to multiply the breed. On the 3d, we unmoored, worked out of the bay, and moved the ſhips behind Pangimodoo, where we lay in readineſs, to take the advantage of a favourable wind, to take us through the gut, in our way to Eooa-whe, or Middleburgh. The king, who this day dined with us, took particular notice of the plates; which the captain obſerving, made him an offer of one, either of pewter, or earthen-ware: he made choice of the firſt, and mentioned the ſeveral uſes to which he intended to apply it; two of which were ſo very extraordinary that they deſerve to be related. Whenever he ſhould viſit any of the other iſlands, he ſaid he would leave this plate behind him at Tongataboo, as his repreſentative, that the people might, in his abſence, pay it the homage due to himſelf in perſon. On being aſked, how he had uſually been repreſented in his abſence, before he was in poſſeſſion of a plate, he informed us, that this ſingular honour had always been conferred on a wooden bowl, in which he waſhed his hands. The other uſe to which he meant to apply the plate inſtead of the bowl, was to diſcover a thief. When any thing had been ſtolen, and the thief not detected, the people were aſſembled before him, when he waſhed his hands in the veſſel. After this it was cleanſed, and every man advanced, and touched it with his hand, in the ſame manner as they touch his foot when they offer him obeiſance. If touched by the guilty perſon, he dropped down dead immediately; and if any one refuſed to touch it, ſuch refuſal was conſidered as a ſufficient proof of guilt. On Saturday the 5th, the day of the eclipſe, the weather in the morning was cloudy, with ſome ſhowers of rain. About nine o'clock, the ſun broke out at ſhort intervals for about half an hour, but was totally obſcured juſt before the commencement of the eclipſe. The ſun again appeared at intervals till about the middle of the eclipſe; but was ſeen no more during the remainder of the day, ſo that we could not obſerve the end. This diſappointment was the leſs to be lamented, as the longitude was ſufficiently determined by lunar obſervations. The eclipſe being over, we packed up the inſtruments, took down the obſervatories, and every thing was conveyed on board. None of the natives having taken the leaſt notice or care of the ſheep allotted to Mareewagee, the captain ordered them to be carried back to the ſhips. He was apprehenſive, that if he ſhould leave them there, they would probably be deſtroyed by the dogs. Theſe animals did not exiſt upon the iſland in 1773, when Captain Cook firſt viſited it; but there are now plenty of them among the chiefs, partly from the breed ſince that time, and partly from ſome imported from an iſland not very remote, called Feejee. At preſent, however, the dogs have not got into any of the Friendly Iſlands, except Tongataboo. We ſhall here add ſome particulars about this and its productions, for which we are indebted to Mr. Anderſon. He ſpent many weeks upon it, and had many opportunities of gaining accurate information; and his reſearches will ſupply the imperfections or deficiencies, in our former account of this iſland; but for theſe particulars, we beg leave to refer our readers to the chapter following.

CHAP.

BRITISH
7 FE 76
MUSEUM



SKETCH of TONGATABOO HARBOUR.

Remarks in 1777.

a. *Station 10th. June.* b. *Station 10th. July.*

* Obſervatory Point …… Lat …21° 8′. 19″ *S.* / Long. 184°. 55′. 18″ *E.*

Varn. …9°. 53′. 27″. *E.*

Hoolaiva
Onéitta
Maneema
Pangimodoo
Makkahaa
Mooooafai
Noogoo
Fookaive
Mootootaboo
Onevi
Vailletoohagge
Vailletoaineevo
Fafua
Holoa
Laggebaiou
Toofagga
Attataa
Malleeoah
Ataa
Taoo
Eooaigee
b
½ 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 10
Nautic Miles

Engraved by Thos. Bowen

London, Published by Alexr. Hogg at the Kings Arms No. 16 Paternoster Row.

C H A P. VI.

Deſcription of the iſland, animals, vegetables, &c. of Tongataboo, or Amſterdam—A ſolemnity at Mooa, called Natche, performed in honour of the king's ſon—Extraordinary proceſſions and ceremonies—The manner of ſpending the night at the king's-houſe—The ſolemnity continued, and conjectures concerning it—The Reſolution and Diſcovery depart from Tongataboo, and arrive at Eoo-a—An account of that iſland—Tranſactions there—They weigh anchor and turn through the channel—Obſervations on the Friendly Iſlands—The number of iſlands and their names—Account of Vavaoo, Hamoa, and Feejee—The general character, perſons, manners, cuſtoms, habits, and ornaments of the inhabitants deſcribed—Various employments of the women and men of the Friendly Iſlands—Their manner of agriculture and building their houſes—Furniture, canoes, tools, cordage, and fiſhing-tackle—Weapons and inſtruments of muſic—Vegetable and animal food—Their method of cooking, diverſions, marriage, and mourning ceremonies—Of their deities and religious opinions—Their Fiatookas—The power of their chiefs, form of government, and manner of paying homage to their ſovereign—The royal family—Specimen of their language—Nautical remarks and other obſervations on the Tammahas and tides.

TONGATABOO, Amſterdam, or Tonga, (as it is ſometimes called by the natives) is about 60 miles in circuit, rather oblong, though broadeſt at the eaſt end, and its greateſt length is from eaſt to weſt. The ſouth ſhore is ſtraight, conſiſting of coral-rocks, eight or ten feet high, terminating perpendicularly, except in ſome few places, where it is interrupted by ſmall ſandy beaches, whereon, at low water, a range of black rocks may be ſeen. The weſt end is not above five or ſix miles broad, but has a ſhore ſomewhat like that of the ſouth-ſide; whereas the whole north-ſide is environed with ſhoals and iſlands, and the ſhore within them low and ſandy. The eaſt-ſide or end is, moſt probably, like the ſouth; as the ſhore begins to aſſume a rocky appearance, towards the N. E. point, though not above ſeven or eight feet high. This iſland may, with great propriety, be called a low one, as the trees, on the weſt part, where we now lay at anchor, only appeared; and the eminent part, that can be ſeen from a ſhip, is the S. E. point; though many gently riſing and declining grounds are obſervable by one who is aſhore. The general appearance of the country does not afford that beautiful kind of landſcape that is produced from a variety of hills and valleys, lawns, rivulets, and caſcades; but, at the ſame time, it conveys to a ſpectator an idea of the moſt exuberant fertility, whether we attend to the places improved by art, or thoſe ſtill in a natural ſtate; both which yield all their vegetable productions with the greateſt vigour, and perpetual verdure. At a diſtance, the ſurface ſeems entirely cloathed with trees of various ſizes; ſome of which are very large; but the tall cocoa-palms raiſe their tufted heads high above the reſt, and are a noble ornament to any country that produces them. The boogo, a ſpecies of the fig, with narrow pointed leaves, is the largeſt ſized tree upon the iſland; and the moſt common buſhes, and ſmall trees, eſpecially toward the ſea, are the pandamus, the faitanoo, ſeveral ſorts of the hibiſcus, and a few others. A coral rock appears to be the baſis of the iſland, which is the only kind of ſoil that preſents itſelf on the ſhore: nor did we ſee the leaſt appearance of any other ſtone, except a few ſmall blue pebbles ſtrewed about the Fiatookas; and a ſmooth ſolid black ſtone, ſomething like the lapis lydius, of which the natives make their hatchets: but theſe laſt may, probably, have been brought from other iſlands in the neighbourhood; for a piece of ſlatey iron-coloured ſtone was bought at one of them, which was never ſeen here. Though, in many places, the coral projects above the ſurface, the ſoil is, in moſt parts, of a conſiderable depth. In thoſe that are uncultivated, it is, commonly, of a looſe black colour; produced, ſeemingly, from rotten vegetables: underneath which may be a clayey ſtratum; for a ſoil of that kind is often ſeen both in the low, and in the riſing grounds; but eſpecially in ſeveral places towards the ſhore, where it is of any height; and when broken off, appears ſometimes of a reddiſh, though oftener of a browniſh yellow colour, and of a pretty ſtiff conſiſtence. Where the ſhore is low, the ſoil is commonly ſandy, or rather compoſed of coral duſt; which however yields buſhes growing with great luxuriance; and is ſometimes planted, not unſucceſsfully, by the natives. The climate of Tongataboo, from the ſituation towards the tropic, is more variable, than in countries nearer to the line, though, perhaps, that might be owing to the ſeaſon of the year, which was now the winter ſolſtice. The winds are, for the moſt part, from ſome point between S. and E. and, when moderate, are commonly attended with fine weather. When they blow freſher, the weather is often cloudy, though open; and in ſuch caſes, there is frequently rain. The wind ſometimes veers to the N. E. N. N. E. or even N. N. W. but never laſts long, nor blows ſtrong from thence; though it is commonly accompanied by heavy rain, and cloſe ſultry weather. The quick ſucceſſion of vegetables has been already mentioned; but it is not certain that the changes of weather, by which it is brought about, are conſiderable enough to make them perceptible to the natives as to their method of life, or rather that they ſhould be very ſenſible of the different ſeaſons. This, perhaps, may be inferred from the ſtate of their vegetable productions, which are never ſo much affected, with reſpect to the foliage, as to ſhed that all at once; for every leaf is ſucceeded by another, as faſt as it falls; which cauſes that appearance of univerſal and continual ſpring found here.

The principal of the cultivated fruits are plantains, of which they have 15 different ſorts; bread-fruit, two kinds of fruit found at Otaheite, and known there under the names of jambu and eevee; the latter a kind of plumb; and vaſt numbers of ſhaddocks, which, however, are found as often in a natural ſtate, as planted. The roots are yams, of which are two ſorts; one black, and ſo large, that it often weighs 20 or 30 pounds; the other white and long, ſeldom weighing a pound. Here is a large root, called kappe; one, not unlike our white potatoes, called mawhaha; the talo, or coccos of other places; and another named jeejee. Beſides vaſt numbers of cocoa-nut trees, here are three other ſorts of palms, two of which are very ſcarce. One of them is called beeoo; which grows almoſt as high as the cocoa-tree, has very large leaves plaited like a fan, and cluſters or bunches of globular nuts, not larger than a ſmall piſtol ball, growing amongſt the branches, with a very hard kernel, which is ſometimes eaten. The other is a kind of cabbage tree, not diſtinguiſhable from the cocoa, but by being rather thicker, and by having its leaves more ragged. It has a cabbage three or four feet long; at the top of which are the leaves, and at the bottom the fruit, which is ſcarcely two inces long, reſembling an oblong cocoa-nut, with an inſipid tenacious kernel, called by the natives, neeoogoola, or red-cocoa-nut, as it aſſumes a reddiſh caſt when ripe. The third ſort is called ongo ongo, and much commoner, being generally found planted about the Fiatookas. It ſeldom grows higher than five feet, though ſometimes to eight; and has a vaſt number of oval compreſſed nuts, as large as a pippin, ſticking immediately to the trunk, among the leaves, which are not eat. In this iſland is plenty of excellent ſugar-cane, which is cultivated; gourds, bamboo, turmeric, and a ſpecies of fig, about the ſize of a ſmall cherry, called matte, which though wild is ſometimes eaten. The catalogue of uncultivated plants is too large to be enumerated. Beſides the Pemphis, Decaſpernum, Mallococca, Maha, and ſome other new genera, there are a few more that eſcaped

Dr. Forſter's curious eye: but, perhaps, the different ſeaſons of the year, and his ſhort ſtay, did not give him an opportunity to notice them: in our longer ſtay here, not more than a fourth part of the trees and plants were in flower; a circumſtance abſolutely neceſſary, to enable one to diſtinguiſh the various kinds.

In this iſland are no other quadrupeds but hogs, ſome dogs, and a few rats. Fowls, which are of a large breed, are domeſticated here. Of the birds are parrots, ſomewhat ſmaller than the common grey ones, having an indifferent green on the back and wings, the tail bluiſh, and the reſt of a ſooty or chocolate brown; parroquets not larger than a ſparrow, of a fine yellowiſh green, with bright azure on the crown of the head, and the throat and belly red; beſides another ſort as large as a dove, with a blue crown and thighs, the throat and under part of the head crimſon, as alſo part of the belly, and the reſt a beautiful green. Here are owls, about the ſize of our common ones, but of a much finer plumage; cuckoos mentioned at Palmerſton's Iſle; king-fiſhers, about the ſize of a thruſh, of a greeniſh blue, with a white ring about the neck; and a bird of the thruſh kind, almoſt as big, of a dull green colour, with two yellow wattles at the baſe of the bill, which is the only ſinging one we heard at this place; but it compenſates a good deal for the want of other ſongſters, by the ſtrength and melody of its notes, which fill the woods at dawn, in the evening, and at the breaking up of bad weather. The other land-birds are rails, as large as a pigeon, of a variegated grey colour, with a ruſty neck; a black ſort with red eyes, not larger than a lark; violet-coloured coots, with bald red crowns; two ſorts of fly-catchers; a very ſmall ſwallow; and three ſorts of pigeons; one of which is the ſize of the common ſort, of a light green on the back and wings, with a red forehead; and another, ſomewhat leſs, of a purple brown, but whitiſh underneath. Of water-fowl, and ſuch as frequent the ſea, are the ducks ſeen at Annamooka, though ſcarce here; blue and white herons; tropic birds; common noddies; white terns; a new ſpecies of a leaden colour, with a black creſt; a ſmall bluiſh curlew; and a large plover, ſpotted with yellow. Beſides the large bats, mentioned before, there is alſo the common ſort. The only noxious or diſguſting animals of the reptile or inſect tribe, are ſea ſnakes, three feet long, with black and white circles alternately, often found on ſhore; ſome ſcorpions and centipedes. There are fine green guanoes, a foot and a half long; another brown and ſpotted lizard, about a foot and a half long; and two other ſmall ſorts. Among the other ſorts of inſects, are ſome beautiful moths; butterflies; very large ſpiders; and others; making, in the whole, about fifty different kinds. Though the ſea abounds with fiſh, the variety is leſs than might be expected. The moſt frequent ſorts are the mullets; parrot fiſh; ſilver fiſh; old wives; beautiful ſpotted ſoles; leather jackets; bonnetos; and albicores; beſides the eels mentioned at Palmerſton's iſland; ſome ſharks; rays; pipe fiſh; a ſort of pikes; and ſome curious devil fiſh. The numerous reefs and ſhoals on the north ſide of the iſland, afford ſhelter for an endleſs variety of ſhell-fiſh; among which are many much eſteemed in Europe; ſuch as the true hammer oyſter; of which, however, none could be obtained entire; a large indentated oyſter, and many others; but none of the common ſort; panamas, cones; a gigantic cockle, found in the Eaſt Indies; pearl-ſhell oyſters; and many others hitherto unknown to the moſt diligent enquirers after that branch of natural hiſtory. Here are likewiſe ſeveral ſorts of ſea-eggs; and many very fine ſtar-fiſh; beſides a conſiderable variety of corals; among which are two red ſorts; the one moſt elegantly branched, the other tubulous. And there is no leſs variety among the crabs and cray-fiſh, which abound here.

On Monday, the 7th, early in the morning, a large canoe went along ſide the Diſcovery, in which were three men and a woman, of ſuperior dignity to any her company had yet ſeen to come aboard. One of them, ſuppoſed by his venerable appearance, to be the high prieſt, held a long pole or ſpear in his hand, to which he tied a white flag, and began an oration which laſted a conſiderable time. After it was concluded, he aſcended the ſide of the ſhip, and ſat down, with great compoſure on the quarter deck, till he was accoſted by captain Clerke, who, after the uſual ſalutations, invited him, and his attendants, into the great cabin; but the latter declined the invitation; and to make known the dignity of the great perſonage, in whoſe preſence they were, they proſtrated themſelves before him, the women as well as the men, and kiſſed the ſole of his right foot. This aged iſlander brought with him, as a preſent to captain Clerke, four large hogs, ſix fowls, with a proportionable quantity of yams and plantains. In return, the Captain gave him a printed gown, a Chineſe looking-glaſs, ſome earthen ware, &c. which he accepted with great courteſy, and with an air of dignity, which remarkably diſtinguiſhed him. The Captain and officers paid him great attention, and ſhewed him the different accommodations on board the ſhip, at which he expreſſed great aſtoniſhment. He was then invited to eat, which he declined. He was offered wine, of which the Captain drank firſt; he put it to his lips, taſted it, but returned the glaſs. Having been on board little more than an hour, he was deſirous of taking leave, and pointed to a little iſland, to which he gave the Captain a very preſſing invitation to accompany him, but as he had other entertainments in view, on ſhore, that could not be complied with. This venerable perſon was about ſix feet, three inches high, finely proportioned, and had a commanding air, that was both affable and graceful. We were not favoured with a viſit, nor did this great man come at any time on board the Reſolution. Though we were now ready to ſail, we had not ſufficient day-light to turn through the narrows; the morning flood falling out too early, and the evening flood too late. We were therefore under a neceſſity of waiting two or three days, unleſs we ſhould be fortunate enough to have a leading wind. This delay gave us an opportunity to be preſent at a public ſolemnity, to which the king had invited us, who ſaid it would be performed in a day or two. Accordingly, he and all the people of conſequence, repaired this day to Mooa, where the ſolemnity was to be exhibited.

On Tueſday the 8th, a party of us followed them. Poulaho now informed us, that his ſon was to be initiated into certain privileges; one of which was, that of eating with his father; an honour he had not hitherto enjoyed. About eight o'clock in the morning, we arrived at Mooa, where we found the king, with a number of attendants ſitting before him, within a ſmall dirty encloſure. They were, as uſual, buſied in preparing a bowl of kava. As this was not liquor for us, we went to pay a viſit to ſome of our friends, and to obſerve what preparations were making for the ceremony, which was ſoon expected to begin. About ten o'clock, the people aſſembled in a large area before the malaee, or great houſe. At the end of a road, opening into this area, ſtood ſeveral men with ſpears and clubs, reciting inceſſantly ſhort ſentences, in mournful accents, which conveyed an idea of diſtreſs. This was continued about an hour; during which time, many people came down the road, each having a yam tied to the middle of a pole, which they laid down before thoſe who continued repeating the ſentences. At length the king and prince arrived, and ſeated themſelves upon the area; and we were requeſted to ſit down by them, to take off our hats, and to untie our hair. The bearers of the yams having all entered, each pole was taken up between two men, who carried it over their ſhoulders. They then formed themſelves into companies, of ten or twelve each, and marched acroſs the place, with a rapid pace, each company headed by a man who had a club or ſpear, and defended on the right, by ſeveral others, armed with different weapons. About two hundred and fifty perſons walked in the proceſſion, which was cloſed by a man carrying on a perch a living pigeon. Omiah was deſired by captain Cook to aſk the chief where the yams were to be carried with ſo much ſolemnity; but he ſeemed unwilling to give us the information we required: ſome of us, therefore, followed the proceſſion, ſeemingly contrary to his inclination. They ſtopped before a Morai, or Fiatooka of one houſe, ſtanding upon a mount, about a quarter of a mile from the place where they had firſt aſſembled. Here they depoſited the yams, and gathered them into bundles; but for what purpoſe we could not poſſibly learn. Our preſence ſeeming to give them uneaſineſs, we returned to Poulaho, who adviſed us to amuſe ourſelves by walking about, as nothing would be done for a conſiderable time. The fear of loſing the ſight of any part of the ceremony, prevented our being long abſent. When we returned to the king, he deſired captain Cook to order the boat's crew not to preſume to ſtir from the boat, for every thing would, very ſoon, be taboo; and if any of our people, or of their own, ſhould be ſeen walking about, they would certainly be knocked down with clubs, if they were not mateed, that is, killed. He added, that we could not be preſent at the ceremony; but that we ſhould be placed in ſuch a ſituation, as to be able to ſee every thing that paſſed. Our dreſs was particularly objected to, and we were told, that, to qualify us to be preſent, we muſt be naked as low as the breaſt, that our hats muſt be off, and our hair untied. Omiah agreed readily to conform to theſe requiſites, and immediately began to ſtrip; but other objections were then ſtarted, and he was excluded equally with ourſelves. Not reliſhing this reſtriction, the Captain ſtole out, to ſee what might now be going forward. Very few people, however, were to be ſeen, except thoſe who were dreſſed to attend the ceremony; ſome of whom had in their hands ſmall poles, about four feet in length, to the under part of which were faſtened two or three other ſmall ſticks, about ſix inches long. Theſe men were going towards the Morai. The Captain took the ſame road, and was frequently ſtopped by them, all crying out taboo. However, he ventured to go forward till he came in ſight of the Morai, and of the people ſitting before it. He was now ſtrongly urged to go back, and not knowing what might be the conſequence of a refuſal, he complied. He had obſerved, that thoſe who carried the poles, paſſed the Morai; and gueſſing from this circumſtance, that ſomething was tranſacting beyond it, he had ſome thoughts of advancing, by making a round for this purpoſe; but he was ſo narrowly obſerved by three men, that he had no opportunity of carrying his deſign into execution. In order to ſhake off theſe three fellows, he returned to the Malaee, where he had parted from the king, and afterwards made an elopement a ſecond; but he inſtantly met with the ſame men, who had doubtleſs received inſtructions to watch him. However, the Captain paid no attention to them, but proceeded onward till he came within ſight of the king's principal Fiatooka, or Morai; before which a great number of people were ſitting, being thoſe whom he had juſt ſeen before paſs by the morai, from whence this was but a little diſtant. Perceiving, while he was conſidering what he ſhould do, that he could obſerve the proceeding of this company from the king's plantation, he repaired thither, accompanied by ſeveral of his people. The number of perſons at the Fiatooka continued increaſing for ſome time; and at length, they quitted their ſitting poſture, and marched off in proceſſion. They walked in pairs, every pair carrying between them, one of the ſmall poles on their ſhoulders. We were informed, that the ſmall pieces of ſticks, faſtened to the poles, were yams; it is therefore probable, that they were meant to repreſent that root emblematically. The hindmoſt man of each couple placed one of his hands to the middle of the pole, as if it were not ſtrong enough to carry the weight that hung upon it, and under which they all ſeemed to bend as they proceeded. This proceſſion conſiſted of one hundred and eight pairs, chiefly men of rank. Having ſeen them all paſs, we repaired to Poulaho's houſe, and ſaw him going out. We were not permitted to follow him; but were immediately conducted to the place allotted to us, behind a fence adjoining to the area of the Fiatooka, where the yams had been depoſited in the morning.

When arrived at our ſtation, we ſaw two or three hundred perſons, ſitting on the graſs, near the end of the road opening into the area of the Morai; and others were continually joining them. At length, arrived a few men, each carrying ſome ſmall poles and branches, or leaves of the cocoa-nut tree. As ſoon as they appeared, an old man ſeated himſelf in the road, and pronounced a long oration in a ſerious majeſtic tone. He then retired, and the others advancing to the middle of the area, began to erect a ſmall ſhed or hut; employing, for that purpoſe, the materials already mentioned. Their work being finiſhed, they all ſquatted down for a moment before it, then roſe up, and joined the reſt of the company. Poulaho's ſon arrived ſoon after, preceded by four or five male attendants. After them appeared about twelve or fourteen women of the firſt rank, advancing ſlowly in pairs, each pair carrying between them a narrow piece of white cloth, about two or three yards in length. They approached the prince, ſquatted down before him, and wrapped ſome of the pieces of cloth round his body; they then roſe up, and retired in the ſame order, to ſome diſtance on his left, where they ſeated themſelves. Poulaho now made his appearance, preceded by four men, walking two and two abreaſt, and ſat down on his ſon's left hand, at a ſmall diſtance from him. The young prince then quitted his firſt poſition, and ſeated himſelf under the ſhed, with his attendants; many others placing themſelves on the graſs before this royal canopy. The prince ſat facing the people, with his back to the Morai. Three companies of about ten or a dozen men in each, ſtarted up from among the crowd, ſoon after each other, and, running haſtily to the oppoſite ſide, ſat down for a few ſeconds; and then returned, in the ſame manner, to their former ſtations. To them ſucceeded two men, each having a ſmall green branch in his hand, who roſe and advanced towards the prince, ſitting down for a few minutes, three different times, as they approached; and retired in the ſame manner, inclining their branches to each other as they ſat. Afterwards two others repeated the ſame ceremony. The grand proceſſion, which marched from the other Morai, now began to come in. As they entered the area, they proceeded to the right of the ſhed, and, having proſtrated themſelves on the graſs, depoſited their pretended heavy burdens, (the poles) and faced round to the prince. They then roſe up, and retired in the ſame order, cloſing their hands with the moſt ſerious aſpect, and ſeated themſelves along the front of the area. While this numerous band were entering, and depoſiting their poles, three men, who ſat with the prince, continued pronouncing ſeparate ſentences, in a mournful melancholy tone. A profound ſilence now enſued for a ſhort time, after which a man who ſat in the front of the area, began a kind of oration, during which, at ſeveral different times, he broke one of the poles which had been brought in. Having concluded his oration, the people ſitting before the ſhed, ſeparated, to make a lane, through which the prince and his attendants paſſed, and the aſſembly cloſed.

Satisfied with what we had already ſeen, ſome of our party now returned to the ſhips; but captain Cook, and ſome more of the officers, remained at Mooa, to ſee the concluſion of the ſolemnity, which was not to be till the day following. The ſmall poles, which had been brought by thoſe who walked in proceſſion, being left on the ground, after the crowd had diſperſed, the captain examined, and found that, to the middle of each, two or three ſmall ſticks were tied, as has been related. They were probably intended as only artificial repreſentations of ſmall yams. Our ſupper, conſiſting of fiſh and yams, was got ready about ſeven o'clock. The king ſupped with us, and drank ſo freely of brandy and water, that he retired to bed with a ſufficient doſe. We continued the whole night in the ſame houſe with him and his attendants. About one or two o'clock in the morning, on Wedneſday, the 9th, they waked, converſed for about an hour, and then went to ſleep again. All, except Poulaho, roſe at break of day; ſoon after which, a woman, one of thoſe who generally attended upon the king, came in, and ſitting down by him, immediately began the ſame operation that had been practiſed upon Futtafaihe, tapping, or beating gently, with her clenched fiſts, on his thighs: but this, inſtead of promoting repoſe, had the contrary effect, and he awoke. Captain Cook and Omiah paid now a viſit to the prince, who had parted from us early in the preceding evening; for he did not lodge with the king, but in apartments of his own, at ſome diſtance from his father's houſe. We found him with a circle of youths, about his own age, ſitting before him; alſo an old man and woman. There were others, of both ſexes, employed about their neceſſary affairs, who probably belonged to his houſhold. We now returned to the king, who had a crowded levee before him, conſiſting principally of old men. While a bowl of kava was preparing, a baked hog and yams, ſmoaking hot, were introduced; the greateſt part of which fell to our ſhare; for theſe people, eſpecially the kava drinkers, eat very little in the morning. We afterwards walked out, and viſited ſeveral other chiefs, all of whom were taking their morning draught, or had already taken it. Returning to the king, we found him aſleep in a retired hut, with two women patting him. About eleven o'clock he made his appearance among us, partook of ſome fiſh and yams, and again lay down to ſleep. We now left him, and waited on the prince, with a preſent of cloth, beads and other articles. There was a ſufficient quantity of cloth to make him a complete ſuit, and he was immediately clad in his new habiliments. Proud of his dreſs, he firſt went to exhibit himſelf to his father, and then conducted Captain Cook to his mother, with whom were about a dozen other women, of a very reſpectable appearance. Here the prince changed his apparel, and made the Captain a preſent of two pieces of cloth which had been manufactured in the iſland. It was now about noon, when, by appointment, the Captain repaired to the palace to dinner; which was ſoon after ſerved up, and conſiſted of two pigs and ſome yams. The drowſy monarch was rouzed to partake of what he had ordered for our entertainment. Two mullets, and ſome ſhell-fiſh, were introduced, as if intended for his ſeparate portion. But he added it to our fare, ſat down with us, and made a hearty meal. Dinner being over, we were informed that the ceremony would ſoon begin, and were ſtrictly enjoined not to venture out.

Captain Cook had reſolved, however, to peep no longer from behind the curtain, but, if poſſible, to mix with the actors themſelves. With this view he walked towards the Morai, the ſcene of the ſolemnity. He was deſired frequently to return; but he paid no regard to the admonitions he had received, and was permitted to walk on. When arrived at the Morai, he ſaw a number of men ſeated on the ſide of the area. A few alſo were ſitting on the oppoſite ſide, and two men in the middle, with their faces towards the Morai. When Captain Cook had got into the midſt of the firſt company, he was deſired to ſit down, which he accordingly did. Where he ſat, a number of ſmall bundles were lying, compoſed of cocoa-nut leaves, and faſtened to ſticks made into the form of hand-barrows. All the information he could get concerning them was, that they were taboo. From time to time, one or another of the company turned to thoſe who were coming to join us, and made a ſhort ſpeech, in which we remarked, that the word arekee (king) was generally mentioned. Something was ſaid by one man that produced loud burſts of laughter from all around; others, of the ſpeakers, were alſo much applauded. The Captain was frequently deſired to leave the place; but, at length, finding him determined to ſtay, they requeſted him to uncover his ſhoulders, in like manner as they had done. This he readily complied with, and then they no longer ſeemed uneaſy at his preſence. The prince, the women, and the king, at length appeared, as they had done the preceding day. The prince being placed under the ſhed, two men, each having a piece of mat, came, repeating ſomething in a very ſerious ſtrain, and put them about him. The people now began their performances, and different companies ran backward and forward acroſs the area, as in the former day. Preſently afterwards, the two men in the middle of the area, made a ſhort ſpeech, and then the whole company roſe up, and placed themſelves before the ſhed in which the prince, and three or four men were ſeated. One of the company, who ſeemed very deſirous of obliging the Captain, procured him ſuch a ſituation, that, if he could have made uſe of his eyes, nothing could have eſcaped him. But it was neceſſary to have a demure countenance and downcaſt looks. The proceſſion now arrived, as on the day before; a pole, with a cocoa-nut leaf plaited round the middle of it, being carried on the ſhoulders of every two perſons. Theſe were depoſited with the ſame ceremonies as on the day before. After this ſucceeded another proceſſion, compoſed of men who brought baſkets, made of palm-leaves, ſuch as are generally uſed by thoſe people to carry proviſions in. A third proceſſion followed, in which a variety of ſmall fiſh, each placed at the end of a forked ſtick, were brought. An old man, who ſat on the prince's right hand, without the ſhed, received the baſkets, each of which he kept in his hand, making a ſhort ſpeech or prayer; then laying that aſide, he called for another, repeating the ſame kind of prayer; he proceeded in this manner till he had gone through the whole number of baſkets. Two men, who, till this time, had in their hands green branches, and were ſeated on the left, received the fiſh one by one, as they were preſented to them on the forked ſticks. The firſt fiſh they laid down on their right hand, and the ſecond on their left. The third being preſented, a ſtoutiſh man, who was ſeated behind the other two, endeavoured to ſeize it, as did alſo the other two at the ſame time. Thus every fiſh was contended for; but the man behind, on account of his diſadvantageous ſituation, got only pieces; for he never quitted his hold till the fiſh was torn out of his hand. What the others got, were laid on the right and left. At laſt the perſon behind got poſſeſſion of a whole fiſh, the other two not even touching it. Upon this, the word mareeai (very good) was pronounced in a low voice throughout the whole crowd. It appeared that he had now done all that was expected from him; for he did not contend for the other fiſh. The perſons who brought in theſe baſkets and fiſh, delivered them ſitting; and in the ſame manner, the poles carried in the firſt proceſſion, had been placed on the ground. At the cloſe of the laſt proceſſion, there was ſpeaking ſentiments and praying by different perſons. Then on a ſignal being given, we all roſe up, ran ſeveral paces, and ſat down, with our backs to the prince. The Captain was bid not to look behind him: but he was not diſcouraged by this injunction from facing about. The prince had now turned his face to the Morai, and from that moment he was admitted to the honour of eating with his father; and a piece of roaſted yam was preſented to each of them for that purpoſe. Soon after we turned about, forming a kind of ſemicircle before the prince, and leaving an open ſpace between us. Preſently ſome men advanced towards us, two and two, bearing large poles upon their ſhoulders, waving their hands as they proceeded, and making a noiſe like ſinging. When near us, they made a ſhew of walking quick, without advancing a ſingle ſtep, ſeveral men armed with large ſticks, immediately ſtarted from the crowd, and ran towards the new viſitors, but they inſtantly made off, having thrown down the poles from their ſhoulders. The others attacked the poles, and having beat them moſt furiouſly, returned to their places. The former, as they ran off, gave the challenge uſed here in wreſtling; and, in a ſhort time, ſome luſty fellows came from the ſame quarter, repeating the challenge as they approached. Theſe were reſiſted by a company, who arrived at that inſtant from the oppoſite ſide. Both parties, however, returned to their own quarter, after having paraded about the area for ſome minutes. Afterwards, for the ſpace of half an hour, wreſtling and boxing matches ſucceeded. Speeches were then delivered by two men, who ſeated themſelves before the prince, with which the ſolemnity ended, and the whole aſſembly broke up.

In vain did he endeavour to find out the purport of this ſolemnity, called by the natives natche. All the anſwer we received to our enquiries, was taboo, which, as has been already obſerved, is applied to many things. There was a ſolemn myſtery in the whole tranſaction; and from the manner of performing it, as well as the place where it was performed, it was evident there is a mixture of religion in the inſtitution. Upon no other occaſion had they regarded our dreſs and deportment; but now it was required, that our hair ſhould flow about our ſhoulders; that we ſhould be uncovered to the waiſt; ſit croſs-legged; and have our hands locked together. It ſhould be obſerved alſo, that none but the principal people, and thoſe who were concerned in the ceremonies, were admitted to aſſiſt in the celebration of the ſolemnity. All theſe circumſtances pointed out evidently, that they ſuppoſed themſelves acting under the inſpection of a ſupreme being upon this occaſion. From this account of the natche, it may be conſidered as merely figurative. The few yams that were ſeen the firſt day, could not be meant as a general contribution; and it was intimated to us, that they were a portion conſecrated to the Otooa, or Divinity. We were informed that in the ſpace of three months, there would be repreſented a more important ſolemnity; on which occaſion the tribute of Tongataboo, Hapaee, Vivaoo, and all the other iſlands, would be brought to the chief, and more awfully confirmed, by ſacrificing ten human victims from among the people. A horrid ſolemnity indeed! On our inquiring into the occaſion of ſo barbarous a cuſtom, we were informed that it was a neceſſary part of the natche; and that if omitted, the Deity would deſtroy their king. The day was far ſpent before the breaking up of the aſſembly; and as we were at ſome diſtance from the ſhips, we were impatient to ſet out from Mooa. Taking leave of Poulaho, he preſſed us earneſtly to ſtay till the next day, in order to be preſent at a funeral ceremony. The wife of Mareewagee, his mother-in-law, had lately died; and, on account of the natche, her corpſe had been carried on board a canoe in the lagoon. He ſaid, that when he had paid the laſt offices to her, he would attend us to Eooa; but if we did not chuſe to wait, he would follow us thither. We would gladly have been preſent at this ceremony, had not the tide been now favourable. The wind too, which had been very boiſterous, was now moderate and ſettled. Beſides, we were told, that the funeral ceremonies would continue five days, which, as the ſhips lay in ſuch a ſituation that we could not put to ſea at pleaſure, was too long a time to ſtay. The Captain, however, aſſured the king, that if he did not immediately ſail, he would viſit him again the next day. While we were attending the natche, at Mooa, the Captain ordered the horſes, bull, and other cattle, to be brought thither, thinking they would be ſafer there, than at a place that would be, in a great meaſure, deſerted, the moment after our departure. Beſides, we had left with our friends here, a young Engliſh boar, and three young Engliſh ſows. They were exceedingly deſirous of them, naturally ſuppoſing they would greatly improve their own breed, which are but ſmall. Feenou alſo got two rabbits from us, a buck and a doe, from which young ones were produced before we ſailed. Should the cattle proſper, the acquiſition to theſe iſlands will be great; and as Tongataboo is a fine level country, the horſes will be extremely uſeful. We now all, the evening being far advanced, took leave of the king, and arrived at our ſhips about eight o'clock.

On Thurſday, the 10th, we weighed, about eight o'clock A. M. and with a ſteady gale at S. E. turned through the channel, between the ſmall iſles, called Makkahaa, and Monooafai, it being much wider than the channel between the laſt mentioned iſland and Pangimodoo. The flood at firſt ſet ſtrong in our favour, till we were the length of the channel leading up to the lagoon, where the eaſtward flood meets that from the weſt. This, with the indraught of the lagoon, and of the ſhoals before it, occaſions ſtrong riplings and whirlpools. Beſides theſe diſadvantages, the depth of the channel exceeds the length of a cable; conſequently there can be no anchorage, except cloſe to the rocks, in forty and forty-five fathoms water, where a ſhip would be expoſed to the whirlpools. The Captain, therefore, abandoned the deſign he had formed, of coming to anchor, when we were through the narrows, and afterwards of making an excurſion to ſee the funeral. He rather choſe to be abſent from that ceremony, than to leave the ſhips in ſo dangerous a ſituation. We plied to windward, between the two tides, till it was near high water, without either gaining or loſing an inch, when we ſuddenly got into the influence of the eaſtern tide, where we expected the ebb to run ſtrongly in our favour. It proved, however, very inconſiderable: at any other time it would not have been noticed: but by this circumſtance we were led to conclude, that moſt of the water, which flows into the lagoon, comes from the N. W. and returns the ſame way. Convinced that we could not get to ſea before it was dark, we caſt anchor under the ſhote of Tongataboo, in 45 fathoms water. The Diſcovery dropped her anchor under our ſtern; but drove off the bank before the anchor took hold, and did not recover it till near midnight. On Friday, the 11th, near noon, we weighed and plied to the eaſtward. At ten o'clock P. M. we weathered the eaſt end of the iſland, and ſtretched away for Middleburgh, which the inhabitants call Eooa, or Ea-oowhe. We anchored about eight o'clock A. M. of the 12th, on the S. W. ſide of the iſland, in 40 fathoms water, over a bottom of ſand, interſperſed with coral rocks; the extremes of the iſland extending from N. 40 deg. E. to S. 22 deg. W. the high land of Eooa, S. 45 deg. E. and Tongataboo, from N. 70 deg. W. to N. 19 deg. W. diſtant about half a mile from the ſhore; being nearly the ſame place where Captain Cook took his ſtation in 1773, and which he named Engliſh Road. We had no ſooner anchored, than the natives came on board with as little ceremony, as if they had been acquainted with us for many years. They brought us the produce of the iſland: but being already ſupplied with every neceſſary of that kind, our chief traffic was for birds and feathers. Here the parrots and parroquets were of the moſt beautiful plumage, far ſurpaſſing thoſe uſually imported into Europe from the Indies; there are a great variety of other birds, on which many gentlemen in both ſhips put a great value, though they were purchaſed for trifles. The feathers we procured, were of divers colours, for different markets, but chiefly for the Marqueſas and Society Iſles. We alſo purchaſed cloth, and many other articles of curious workmanſhip, the artiſts of this iſland, for invention and ingenuity in the execution, exceeding thoſe of all the other iſlands in the South Seas: but what particularly invited our ſtay here, was the richneſs of the graſs, which, made into hay, proved excellent food for our live ſtock. Among others, Taoofa the chief, viſited us on board, and ſeemed to rejoice much at our arrival. This perſon had been Captain Cook's Tayo, in 1773, and, therefore, they were not ſtrangers to each other. The Captain accompanied him aſhore in ſearch of freſh water, the procuring of which was the main object which brought us to Middleburgh. We had heard at Amſterdam of a ſtream at this iſland, which, it was ſaid, runs from the hills into the ſea: but this was not to be found. The Captain was conducted to a brackiſh ſpring, among rocks, between low and high-water mark. When they perceived, that we did not approve of this, we were ſhewn a little way into the iſland; where, in a deep chaſm, we found ſome excellent water; which, at the expence of ſome time and trouble, might be conveyed to the ſhore, by means of ſpouts and troughs, provided for that purpoſe: but rather than undertake ſo tedious a taſk, we reſted contented with the ſupply the ſhips had received at Tongataboo. At this iſland of Eooa we landed the ram and two ewes, of the Cape of Good Hope breed, and committed them to the care of Taooſa, who ſeemed proud of his charge. It was, perhaps, a fortunate circumſtance, that Mareewagee, for whom they were intended, had ſlighted the preſent; for as Eooa had no dogs upon it, at preſent, it ſeemed to be a fitter place for feeding ſheep than Tongataboo. While we lay at anchor, the iſland of Eooa, or Middleburgh, had a very different aſpect from any one that we had lately ſeen, and formed a moſt beautiful landſcape. It is the higheſt of any we had ſeen ſince we had left New Zealand, and from its ſummit, which appears to be almoſt flat, declines gradually towards the ſea. The other iſles, which form this cluſter, being level, the eye cannot diſcover any thing except the trees that cover them: but here the land, riſing gently upwards, preſents an extenſive proſpect, where groves, in beautiful diſorder, are interſperſed at irregular diſtances. Near the ſhore, it is quite ſhaded with a variety of trees, among which are placed the habitations of the natives, and to the right of our ſtation was one of the moſt extenſive groves of cocoa-palms that we had ever ſeen.

Sunday, the 13th, a party of us, in the afternoon, aſcended to the higheſt part of the iſland, a little to the right of our ſhips, to have a perfect view of the country. Having advanced about half way up, we croſſed a deep valley, the bottom and ſides of which were covered with trees. We found plenty of coral till we approached the ſummits of the higheſt hills: the ſoil near the top, is in general, a reddiſh clay, which in many places is very deep. On the moſt elevated part of the iſland, we ſaw a round platform, ſupported by a wall of coral ſtones. Our guides informed us, that this mount had been erected by command of their chief; and the principal people ſometimes reſorted there to drink kava. They called it Etchee, by which name an erection was diſtinguiſhed which we had ſeen at Tongataboo. At a ſmall diſtance from it was a ſpring of moſt excellent water; and, about a mile lower down, a ſtream, which, we were told, ran into the ſea, when the rains are copious. We alſo diſcovered water in ſeveral ſmall holes, and ſuppoſe that plenty might be found by digging. From this elevation we had a complete view of the whole iſland, except a ſmall part to the ſouth. The S. E. ſide, from which the hills we were now upon are not far diſtant, riſes with great inequalities, immediately from the ſea; ſo that the plains and meadows lie all on the N. W. ſide; which being adorned with tufts of trees, intermixed with plantations, form a moſt delightful landſcape in every point of view. While the captain was ſurveying this enchanting proſpect, he enjoyed the pleaſing idea, that ſome future navigators might, from the ſame eminence, behold thoſe meadows ſtocked with cattle, brought by the ſhips of England; and that the completion of this ſingle benevolent purpoſe, excluſive of all other conſiderations, would ſufficiently prove, that our voyages had not been uſeleſs. We found on this height, beſides the plants common on the neighbouring iſles, a ſpecies of acroſticum, melaſtoma, and fern trees. All, or moſt of the land on this iſland, we were told, belonged to the chiefs of Tongataboo; the inhabitants being only tenants, or vaſſals to them. This ſeemed, indeed, to be the caſe at all the neighbouring iſles, except Annamooka, where ſome of the chiefs ſeemed to act with a degree of independence. Omiah, who was much eſteemed by Feenou, and many others, was tempted with the offer of being appointed a chief of this iſland, if he would continue among them; and he ſeemed inclinable to have accepted the offer, had he not been adviſed to the contrary by Captain Cook; though not becauſe he thought he would do better for himſelf in his native iſle. Returning from our country excurſion, we heard that a party of the natives, in the quarter where our people traded, had ſtruck one of their countrymen with a club, which fractured his ſkull, and afterwards broke his thigh with the ſame. Not any ſigns of life were remaining, when he was carried to a neighbouring houſe, but, in a ſhort time he recovered a little. On our deſiring to know the reaſon of ſuch an act of ſeverity, we were informed, that the offender had been diſcovered in an indelicate ſituation with a woman who was taboo'd. We ſoon underſtood, however, that ſhe was no otherwiſe taboo'd, than by belonging to another, ſuperior in rank to her gallant. From this incident, we diſcovered how theſe people puniſh ſuch infidelities: but the female ſinner has a much milder correction for her crime, receiving only a ſlight remonſtrance, and a very gentle beating.

On Monday the 14th, in the morning, we planted a pine-apple, ſome ſeeds of melons, and other vegetables, in a plantation belonging to the chief. We had good reaſon, indeed, to ſuppoſe, our endeavours of this kind would not be fruitleſs; for a diſh of turnips was, this day, ſerved up at his table, which was the produce of the ſeeds that were left here in 1773. The next day being fixed upon by the captain for ſailing, Taooſa preſſed us to ſtay a little longer. We muſt here obſerve, that in the account of Captain Cook's former voyage, he calls the only chief he met with at this place Tioony; but we are inclined to think, from the information of a gentleman of veracity, on board the Diſcovery, at this time, that Tioony and Taooſa are one and the ſame perſon. His intreaties, together with the daily expectation of receiving a viſit from ſome of our friends at Tongataboo, induced us to defer our departure. On Tueſday the 15th, we received from Taooſa a preſent conſiſting of two little heaps of yams, and a quantity of fruit, which ſeemed to have been collected as at the other iſles. On this occaſion, the greateſt part of the inhabitants of the iſland had aſſembled; and, as we had many times experienced, on ſuch numerous meetings among their neighbouring iſlanders, gave us no ſmall trouble to prevent their pilfering. Cudgelling, wreſtling, and boxing, were exhibited for our entertainment; and in the latter exerciſes, combatants of both ſexes engaged. Theſe diverſions were to be finiſhed with the bomai, or night dance, but the following accident prevented our ſtaying on ſhore to ſee it. From the accounts circulated through the ſhips when we arrived, it was generally believed, that we might travel through this iſland with our pockets open, provided they were not lined with iron; but to this, the behaviour of a party of the inhabitants to William Collet, captain's-ſteward of the Diſcovery, is an exception. Being alone, diverting himſelf in ſurveying the country, he was ſet upon and ſtripped of every thing, his ſhoes only excepted, and on preferring his complaint, his keys were all that he was able to recover. When Captain Cook heard of this robbery, he ſeized two canoes, and a large hog; at the ſame time inſiſting on the chief's not only cauſing the apparel to be reſtored, but alſo on the offenders being delivered up to him. Taooſa ſeemed greatly concerned at what had happened, and took the neceſſary ſteps to ſatisfy us. The people who had as uſual aſſembled together, were ſo alarmed at this affair, that moſt of them immediately fled. However, when they were informed, that the captain meant to take no other meaſures to revenge the inſult, they returned. One of the delinquents was ſoon delivered up, and a ſhirt, and pair of trowſers reſtored. The remainder of the ſtolen things not coming in till the evening, the captain was obliged to leave them, in order to go aboard; the ſea running ſo high, that it was extremely difficult for the boats to get out of the creek even with day-light, and would be attended with much more danger in the dark. He returned on ſhore again the next morning, taking with him a preſent for Taooſa, in return for what he had received from him. Being early, there were but few people at the landing-place, and even thoſe few not without their fears and apprehenſions; but on the captain's deſiring Omiah to aſſure them, that we did not mean to injure them, and having reſtored the canoes, and releaſed the offender, who had been delivered up, they reſumed their uſual chearfulneſs, and a large circle was preſently formed, in which the chief and the principal men of the iſland took their reſpective places. At length the remainder of the cloaths were brought in, but having been torn off the man's back by pieces, they were not thought worth carrying on board. Taooſa ſhared the preſent he had received, with three or four other chiefs, reſerving only a ſmall part for himſelf. This donation ſo far exceeded their expectation, that a venerable old man told the captain, they were not deſerving of it, conſidering how little he had received from them, and the ill treatment Mr. Collet had met with. Captain Cook continued with them, till they had emptied their bowl of kava; and then, after paying for the hog, which he had taken the day before, returned on board, in company with Taooſa, and one of Poulaho's ſervants, by whom he ſent a piece of bar-iron, as a parting mark of eſteem for that chief. This was as valuable a preſent as any the captain could make. Orders had been given the preceding day for ſailing, and Otaheite was appointed our place of rendezvous, in caſe of ſeparation. We had now been more than two months improving our live ſtock, wooding, watering, repairing our ſhips, and laying in freſh proviſions from theſe Friendly Iſlands. The crews of both ſhips received theſe orders with alacrity; for though they wanted for nothing, yet they longed to be at Otaheite, where ſome of them had formed connections that were dear to them, and where thoſe, who had not yet been there, had conceived ſo high an idea of its ſuperiority, as to make them look upon every other place they touched at as an uncultivated garden, in compariſon with that little Eden.

We were therefore all in high ſpirits this morning; for ſoon after the captain had ſent off his preſent by Poulaho's ſervant, we weighed, and with a light breeze ſtood out to ſea, when Taooſa and other natives, who were in the ſhip, left us. We found, on heaving up the anchor, that the cable had been much wounded by the rocks; beſides which we experienced, that a prodigious ſwell rolls in there from the S. W. ſo that the bottom of this road is not to be depended on in all weathers. We now ſteered our courſe to the ſouthward, to fetch a wind to carry us to our intended port; and we obſerved a ſailing canoe entering the creek before which we had anchored our ſhips. A few hours after, a ſmall canoe, conducted by four men, came off to us; for having but little wind, we were ſtill at no conſiderable diſtance from the land. We were informed by theſe men, that the ſailing canoe, which we had ſeen arrive, had brought directions to the people of Eooa, to furniſh us with hogs, and that the king and other chiefs would be with us in the ſpace of three or four days. They therefore requeſted that we would return to our former ſtation. We had no reaſon to doubt the truth of this information; but being clear of the land, it was not a ſufficient inducement to bring us back; eſpecially, as we had already a ſufficient ſtock of freſh proviſions to laſt us in our paſſage to Otaheite. Beſides Taooſa's preſent, we received a large quantity of yams, &c. at Eooa, in exchange for nails; and added conſiderably to our ſupply of hogs. Finding we were determined not to return, theſe people left us in the evening, as did ſome others, who had come off in two canoes, with cocoa-nuts and ſhaddocks, to barter for what they could get; their eagerneſs to poſſeſs more of our commodities, inducing them to follow us to ſea, and to continue their intercourſe with us to the laſt moment.

As we have now taken leave of the Friendly Iſlands, a few obſervations we made reſpecting theſe, and others in their neighbourhood, may not be unworthy the notice of our readers. During a cordial intercourſe between two and three months with their inhabitants, it may be reaſonably ſuppoſed differences muſt ariſe; ſome, indeed, occaſionally happened, on account of their natural propenſity to thieving, though too frequently encouraged by the negligence and inattention of our people on duty. Theſe little miſunderſtandings and differences were never attended with any fatal conſequences, and few, belonging to our ſhips, parted from their friends without regret. The time we continued here was not thrown away; and as, in a great meaſure, our ſubſiſtence was drawn from the produce of the iſlands, we expended very little of our ſea proviſions; and we carried with us a ſufficient quantity of refreſhments, to ſupply us till our arrival at another ſtation, where we could again recruit: nor was it leſs pleaſing to us, that we had an opportunity of ſerving theſe friendly people, by leaving ſome uſeful animals among them; and that thoſe intended for Otaheite, had acquired freſh ſtrength in the paſtures of Tongataboo. The advantages we received, by touching here, were great, and we obtained them without retarding the proſecution of our grand object; the ſeaſon for proceeding to the north being loſt, before we formed the reſolution of viſiting theſe iſlands. "But," obſerves Captain Cook, "beſides the immediate advantages, which both the natives of the Friendly Iſles, and ourſelves received by this viſit, future navigators from Europe, if any ſuch ſhould ever tread our ſteps, will profit by the knowledge I acquired of the geography of this part of the Pacific Ocean; and the more philoſophical reader, who loves to view human nature in new ſituations, and to ſpeculate on ſingular, but faithful repreſentations of the perſons, the cuſtoms, the arts, the religion, the government, and the language of uncultivated nature and man, in remote and freſh diſcovered quarters of the globe, will, perhaps, find matter of amuſement, if not of inſtruction, in the information which I have been enabled to convey to him, concerning the inhabitants of this Archipelago." We now proceed with our propoſed obſervations.

The beſt articles for traffic in theſe iſlands are iron and iron tools. Axes, hatchets, nails of all ſizes, knives, raſps, and files, are much demanded. Red cloth, white and coloured linen, looking-glaſſes and beads, are alſo in great eſtimation; but of the latter, thoſe that are blue the natives prefer to moſt others, particularly to the white ones. A hog might, at any time, be purchaſed, by a ſtring of large blue beads: it ſhould, nevertheleſs, be obſerved farther, that articles, merely ornamental, may be highly eſteemed at one time, and diſregarded at another. On our firſt arrival at Annamooka, the inhabitants were unwilling to take them in exchange for fruit; but when Feenou arrived, his approbation brought them into vogue, and ſtamped on them the value above-mentioned. In return for theſe commodities, all the refreſhments to be had at the Friendly Iſlands, may be procured. The yams are excellent, and, when grown to perfection, preſerve well at ſea: but their pork, plantains, and bread-fruit, are inferior in quality to the ſame articles at Otaheite. The productions and ſupplies of theſe iſlands are yams, bread-fruit, plantains, cocoa-nuts, ſugar-canes, hogs, fowls, fiſh, and, in general, all ſuch as are to be met with at Otaheite, or any of the Society Iſlands. But good water, which ſhips in long voyages ſtand much in need of, is ſcarce at the Friendly Iſles. It may, it is true, be found in all of them, but not to ſerve the purpoſes of navigators; for either the quality is bad, or the ſituations too inconvenient, or the qualities too inconſiderable. While we lay at anchor under Kotoo, we were informed, that there was a ſtream of water at Kao, which ran from the mountains into the ſea, on the S. W. ſide of the iſland. This intelligence, though of no uſe to us, may deſerve the attention of future navigators.

We muſt include, under the denomination of the Friendly Iſlands, not only the group at Hapaee, but likewiſe thoſe that have been diſcovered to the north nearly under the ſame meridian, as well as ſome others under the dominion of Tongataboo or Amſterdam, which is the capital, and ſeat of government. From the beſt information we could obtain, this cluſter of iſlands is very extenſive. One of the natives enumerated 150 iſlands; and Mr. Anderſon procured the names of all of them; from their communications the following liſt was made. They were enumerated by the inhabitants of Annamooka, Hapaee, and Tongataboo; and may ſerve as a ground-work for the inveſtigation of future navigators.

A LIST of thoſe FRIENDLY ISLANDS, repreſented by the Natives as Large Ones.

Vavaoo
Goofoo
Talava
Toggelao
Lotooma
Vytooboo
Fotoona
Neeootabootaboo
Hamoa
Tafeedoowaia
Kongaireekee
Kovooeea
Kopaoo
Takounove
Oloo
Loubatta
Pappataia
Leſhainga
Manooka
Tootooeela
Havaeeeeke
———
Kogoopoloo
Konnagillelaivoo
Kofoona
Kolaiva
Komoarra
Komotte
Kotoobooo
Kongaiarahoi
Oowaia
Feejee
Neuafo

A LIST of the Smaller FRIENDLY ISLES.

Latte
Boloa
Tattahoi
Toofagga
Fonooalaiee
Loogoobahanga
Fooamotoo
Taoola
Wegaffa
Fonoonneonne
Fonoaooma
Maneeneeta
Koloa
Toofanaelaa
Toofanaetollo
Fafeene
Taoonga
Kobakeemotoo
Komalla
Kongahoonoho
Tongooa
Maſanna
Kolloooa
Tabanna
Motooha
Looakabba
Looamoggo
Moggodoo
Konnevao
Konnevy
Toonabai
Gonoogoolaiee
Mallalahee
Mallajee
Matageefaia
Kollokolahee
Kologobeele
Kotoolooa
Komongoraffa
Konnetalle
Konoababoo
Komooefeeva
Gowakka
Vagaeetoo
Golabbe
Novababoo
Kokabba
Kottejeea
Kowourogoheeſo
Geenageena
Kooonoogoo
Konookoonama
Koweeka
Failemaia
Koreemou
Noogoofaeeou
Fonooaeeka
Koooa
Modooanoogoo-noogoo
Fonogooeatta
Kovereetoa
Felongaboonga
Kollalona

Of the ſize of the above 32 unexplored iſlands, we can only give it as our opinion, that they muſt be all larger than Annamooka, (or Rotterdam) which thoſe from whom we had our information, ranked among the ſmaller iſlands in the ſecond liſt. Some, or indeed, ſeveral of the latter are mere ſpots, without inhabitants. But it muſt be left to future navigators, to introduce into the charts of this part of the great ſouthern Pacific Ocean, the exact ſituation and ſize of near 100 more iſlands in this neighbourhood, according to the teſtimony of our friends, which we had not an opportunity to explore. Taſman ſaw eighteen or twenty of theſe ſmall iſlands, every one of which was encircled with ſands, ſhoals and rocks. In ſome charts they are called Heemſkirk's Banks. We have not the leaſt doubt, that Prince William's iſlands, diſcovered, and ſo named by Taſman, are included in the foregoing liſt: for while we lay at Hapaee, one of the natives told us, that three or four days ſail from thence to the N. W. there is a cluſter of iſlands, conſiſting of more than forty; and this ſituation correſponds very well with that aſſigned, in the accounts of Taſman's voyage, to his Prince William's Iſlands. Keppel's and Boſcawen's Iſles, diſcovered by Captain Wallis in 1765, are doubtleſs comprehended in our liſt; and they are not only well known to theſe people, but are under the ſame ſovereign. We have good authority to believe, that Boſcawen's Iſland is our Kootahee, and Keppel's Iſland our Neeootabootaboo. The laſt is one of the large iſlands marked in our firſt liſt. The reader, who has been already apprized of the variations of our people in writing down what the natives pronounced, will hardly doubt that Kottejeea, in our ſecond liſt, and Kootahee, as one of the natives called Kao, are one and the ſame iſland. We would juſt remark once more of this aſtoniſhing group of iſlands, that fifteen of them are ſaid to be high and hilly, ſuch as Toofoa, and Eooa; and thirty-five of them large. Of theſe only three were ſeen this voyage, namely, Hapaee (conſidered by the natives as one iſland) Tongataboo, and Eooa. Annamooka has been noticed before. But the moſt conſiderable iſlands that we heard of in this neighbourhood, are Hamoa, Vavaoo, and Feejee; each of which is larger than Tongataboo; but it does not appear that any European has ever yet ſeen one of them. Hamoa lies two days ſail N. W. from Vavaoo. It is ſaid to be the largeſt of all their iſlands; affords harbours, with good water, and produces, in abundance, all the refreſhments that are found at the places we viſited. Poulaho frequently reſides upon this iſland; and its natives are in high eſtimation at Tongataboo. According to the united teſtimony of all our friends at this place, Vavaoo exceeds the ſize of their own iſland, and has high mountains. We ſhould have accompanied Feenou from Hapaee to Vavaoo, had he not diſcouraged the Captain, by repreſenting it to be very inconſiderable, and without a ſingle good harbour: but Poulaho, the king, gave us to underſtand afterward, that it is a large iſland, and not only produces every thing in common with Tongataboo, but has the peculiar advantage of poſſeſſing ſeveral ſtreams of freſh water, and alſo an excellent harbour. Poulaho offered to attend the Captain to Vavaoo, ſaying, that if he did not find every thing agreeing with his repreſentation, he might kill him. We gave full credit to the truth of his intelligence, and were ſatisfied that Feenou, from ſome private view, endeavoured to impoſe upon us a fiction.

Feejee lies in the direction of N. W. by W. about three days ſail from Tongataboo. The natives in this part of the world have no other method of diſcovering the diſtance from iſland to iſland, but by mentioning the time required for the voyage in one of their canoes. In order to aſcertain this with ſome preciſion, Captain Cook ſailed in one of their canoes, and by repeated trials with the log, found that ſhe went cloſe hauled, in a gentle gale, ſeven miles an hour. He ſuppoſed from this experiment, that they would ſail, with ſuch breezes as generally blow on their ſeas, ſeven or eight miles an hour on an average. Each day, however, is not to be reckoned at 24 hours; for when they talk of one day's ſail, they mean no more than from morning to the evening, or twelve hours at moſt. From the morning of the firſt day till the evening of the ſecond, is, with them, two days ſail. In the day, they are guided by the ſun; and, in the night by the ſtars. When theſe are obſcured, they can only have recourſe to the points from whence the winds and waves come upon the veſſel. If, at that time, the winds and the waves ſhould ſhift, they are quite bewildered, often miſſing their intended port, and being never heard of more. The ſtory of Omiah's countrymen, who were driven to Wateeoo, convinces us, however, that thoſe who are not heard of, are not always loſt. Feejee abounds with hogs, dogs, and fowls, and ſuch fruits and roots as are to be found in any of the other iſlands, and is much larger than Tongataboo, but not ſubject to its dominion. Feejee and Tongataboo engage in war againſt each other; and the inhabitants of the latter are often ſo much afraid of this enemy, that they bend the body forward, and cover the face with their hands, to expreſs the ſenſe of their own inferiority to the Feejee men. This, indeed, is no matter of ſurpriſe, for thoſe of Feejee have rendered themſelves formidable, by their dexterity in the uſe of bows and ſlings; but more ſo, by their ſavage practice of eating ſuch of their enemies as they kill in battle. It has been inſiſted on, that extreme hunger firſt occaſioned men to feed on human fleſh; but where could be the inducement for the Feejee men to continue the practice, and remain cannibals, in the midſt of plenty? It is held in deteſtation by the inhabitants of Tongataboo, who ſeem to cultivate the friendſhip of their ſavage neighbours through fear; though they ſometimes venture to ſkirmiſh with them on their own ground, and carry off large quantities of red feathers as trophies. When a profound peace reigns between them, they have frequent intercourſe together; though, it is probable, they have not long been known to each other, otherwiſe it might be ſuppoſed that Tongataboo, and its neighbouring iſlands, would, before this time, have been ſupplied with a breed of dogs, which are numerous at Feejee, and, as we have obſerved, were introduced at Tongataboo, when Captain Cook firſt viſited it in 1773. The colour of the natives of Feejee is, at leaſt, a ſhade darker than that of the inhabitants of the other Friendly Iſlands. We ſaw one of the natives of Feejee, who had his ear ſlit, which was the left, and the lobe ſo ſtretched, that it almoſt extended to his ſhoulder; which ſingularity had been obſerved by Captain Cook, at other iſlands of the South Sea, during his ſecond voyage. The Feejee people are much revered here, not only on account of their power and cruelty in war, but alſo for their ingenuity; for they much excel the inhabitants of Tongataboo in workmanſhip. Specimens were ſhewn us of their clubs and ſpears, which were very ingeniouſly carved. We were alſo ſhewn ſome of their cloth moſt beautifully checquered, mats richly variegated, curious earthen pots, and other articles, all of which diſplayed a ſuperiority in the execution.

The harbour and anchoring places are by far preferable to any we diſcovered among theſe iſlands; both on account of their capacity, and great ſecurity. The danger we were in of being wrecked, by entering it from the north, will remain a caution to every future commander, not to attempt that paſſage with a ſhip of burden. The eaſtern channel is much more eaſy and ſafe. To ſail into this, ſteer for the N. E. point of the iſland, and keep along the north ſhore, with the ſmall iſles on your ſtarboard, till you are the length of the eaſt point of the entrance into the lagoon; then edge over the reef of the ſmall iſles, and, following its direction, you will get through between Makkahaa and Monooafai, which lay off the weſt point of the lagoon. Or you may go between the third and fourth iſlands, that is, between Pangimodoo and Monooafai; but this channel is much narrower than the other. When you are through either of theſe channels, haul in for the ſhore of Tongataboo, and caſt anchor between that and Pangimodoo, before a creek leading into the lagoon; into which, at half flood, you may go with boats. Though the harbour of Tongataboo has the preference, its water is exceeded in goodneſs by that of Annamooka; and yet even this can ſcarcely be called good. Indifferent water may, nevertheleſs, be procured, by digging holes near the ſide of the pond. Beſides, Annamooka, being nearly in the center of the whole group, is beſt ſituated for procuring refreſhments from the others. There is a creek in the reef on the north ſide of the iſland, wherein two or three ſhips may lie ſecurely.

We have already given an account of the Hapaee iſlands; and ſhall only add, that they extend S. W. by S. and N. E. by N. about 19 miles. The north end lies in latitude 19 deg. S. and 33 deg. of longitude to the eaſt of Annamooka. Between them are ſmall iſlands, ſand banks, and breakers. Lafooga, off which we anchored, among all the iſles of thoſe that are called Hapaee, is the moſt fertile, and the beſt inhabited. Thoſe who may be deſirous of having a more particular deſcription of the Friendly Iſlands, muſt have recourſe to the liſt and chart. What may have here been omitted concerning their geography, will be found in our hiſtory of Captain Cook's former voyage, to which our readers are referred for ſuch particulars as he had then obſerved. At preſent, we ſhall only relate ſuch intereſting circumſtances, as either were omitted in that account, or were imperfectly and incorrectly repreſented.

After living among the natives of the Friendly Iſlands between two and three months, it is reaſonable to expect, that we ſhould be able to clear up every difficulty, and to give a ſatisfactory account of their manners, cuſtoms, and inſtitutions, civil as well as religious: eſpecially, as we had a perſon with us, who, by underſtanding their language as well as our own, might be thought capable of acting as our interpreter. But Omiah was not qualified for that taſk. Unleſs we had before us an object or thing, concerning which we wanted information, we found it difficult to obtain a competent knowledge about it, from his information and explanations. Omiah was certainly more liable to make miſtakes than we were; for having no curioſity, he never troubled himſelf with making remarks; and when he attempted to explain any particular matters to us, his ideas were ſo limited, and differed ſo much from ours, that his confuſed accounts, inſtead of inſtructing, often only perplexed, and led us into numberleſs miſtakes. Beſides, we could ſeldom find a perſon, among the natives, who had both the ability and inclination to give us the information we required: and many of them, we perceived, appeared offended at being aſked, what they, perhaps deemed frivolous queſtions. At Tongataboo, where we continued the longeſt, our ſituation was likewiſe unfavourable; being in a part of the country, where, except fiſhers, there were few inhabitants. With our viſitors, as well as with thoſe we viſited, it was always holiday; ſo that we could not obſerve, what was really the domeſtic way of living among the natives. That we could not, therefore, thus circumſtanced, bring away ſatisfactory accounts of many things, is not to be wondered at. Some of us, indeed, endeavoured to remedy thoſe diſadvantages; and to the ingenious Mr. Anderſon we are moſt indebted for a conſiderable ſhare of our obſervations reſpecting the Friendly Iſlands.

The inhabitants of theſe, (though ſome here, at Tongataboo, were above ſix feet high) exceed the common ſtature, and are ſtrong and well proportioned. Their ſhoulders are, in general, broad; we ſaw ſeveral who were really handſome; though their muſcular diſpoſition rather conveyed the idea of ſtrength than of beauty. Their features are ſo various, that, unleſs it be by a fulneſs at the point of the noſe, which is common, it is impoſſible to fix any general likeneſs by which to characterize them. On the other hand many genuine Roman noſes, and true European faces, were ſeen among them. They have good eyes and teeth; but the latter are neither ſo well ſet, nor ſo remarkably white, as among the Indian nations. Few of them, however, have that remarkable thickneſs about the lips, ſo frequent in other iſlands. The women are leſs diſtinguiſhed from the men by their features, than by their general form, which ſeems deſtitute of that ſtrong firmneſs that appears in the latter. Though the features of ſome are very delicate, and a true index of ther ſex, laying claim to a conſiderable ſhare of beauty and expreſſion, yet the rule is not, by any means, ſo general as in many other countries. Their ſhapes are uſually well proportioned; and ſome are abſolutely perfect models of a beautiful figure; but the extraordinary ſmallneſs and delicacy of their fingers, which may be put in competition with any in Europe, ſeems to be the moſt ſtriking female diſtinction. The general colour of theſe people is a caſt deeper than that of the copper brown; but ſeveral of both ſexes have a true olive complexion. Some of the women are much lighter, owing, perhaps, to their being leſs expoſed to the ſun. As a tendency to corpulence, in ſome of the principal people, ſeems to be the effect of a more indolent life, a ſofter and clearer ſkin is moſt commonly to be ſeen among them: but the ſkin of the greateſt part of theſe people, is of a dull hue, with a degree of roughneſs, particularly thoſe parts that are uncovered, occaſioned, probably, by ſome cutaneous diſeaſe. We ſaw a man at Hapaee perfectly white, and a child equally ſo at Annamooka. In all countries containing black people, ſuch phænomena are found, but they are cauſed, we imagine, by a diſeaſe. Upon the whole, however, few natural defects, or deformities are to be ſeen among them; though we obſerved two or three with their feet bent inwards. Neither are they exempt from ſome diſeaſes. Numbers are affected with the tetter or ring-worm, which leaves whitiſh ſerpentine marks behind it. They have another diſeaſe of a more miſchievous nature, which is alſo very frequent, and appears on every part of the body, in large broad ulcers, diſcharging a thin clear pus, ſome of which had a very virulent appearance, particularly on the face. There were thoſe, however, who appeared to be cured of it, and others mending; but it was generally attended

tended with the loſs of the noſe, or a conſiderable part of it. Two other diſeaſes are alſo common among them; oone of which is a firm ſwelling, affecting chiefly the legs and arms; the other is a tumour in the teſticles, which ſometimes exceed the ſize of two fiſts. In other reſpects they are remarkably healthy, not a ſingle perſon having, during our ſtay, been confined to the houſe by any kind of ſickneſs. Their ſtrength and activity are, in every reſpect, anſwerable to their muſcular appearance; and they exert both, in ſuch a manner, as to prove, that they are as yet, little debilitated by the numerous diſeaſes that are the natural conſequences of indolence. The graceful mien, and firmneſs of ſtep, with which they walk, are obvious proofs of their perſonal accompliſhments. They conſider this as a thing ſo neceſſary to be acquired, that their laughter was excited when they ſaw us frequently ſtumbling upon the roots of trees, or other inequalities, in walking. The mildneſs and good nature which they abundantly poſſeſs, are depicted on their countenances, totally free from that ſavage keenneſs, that always marks nations in a barbarous ſtate. We might almoſt be induced to ſuppoſe, that they had been reared under the ſevereſt reſtrictions, ſeeing they have acquired ſo ſettled an aſpect, ſuch a command of their paſſions, and ſuch a ſteadineſs of conduct. At the ſame time, they are open, chearful, and good humoured; though in the preſence of their chiefs, they ſometimes aſſume a degree of reſerve, which has the appearance of gravity. Their pacific diſpoſition is thoroughly evinced, from their friendly reception of all ſtrangers. Inſtead of attacking them openly, or clandeſtinely, they have never appeared, in the ſmalleſt degree, hoſtile: but like the moſt civilized nations, have even courted an intercourſe with their viſitors, by bartering; a medium which unites all nations in a degree of friendſhip. So perfectly do they underſtand barter, that, at firſt, we ſuppoſed they had acquired the knowledge of it by trading with the neighbouring iſlands; but it afterwards appeared, that they had hardly any traffic, except with Feejee. No nation, perhaps, in the world, diſplayed, in their traffic, more honeſty and leſs diſtruſt. We permitted them ſafely to examine our goods, and they had the ſame implicit confidence in us. If either party ſeemed diſſatisfied with his bargain, a re-exchange was made with mutual conſent and ſatisfaction. Upon the whole, they ſeem to poſſeſs many of the moſt excellent qualities that adorn the human mind. A propenſity to thieving is the only defect that ſeems to ſully their fair character. Thoſe of all ages, and both ſexes, were addicted to it in an uncommon degree. It ſhould be conſidered, however, that this exceptionable part of their conduct exiſted merely with reſpect to us; for in their general intercourſe with each other, thefts are not more frequent than in other countries, where the diſhoneſt practices of individuals will not authoriſe an indiſcriminate cenſure on the people at large. Allowances ſhould be made for the foibles of theſe poor iſlanders, whoſe minds we overpowered with the glare of new and captivating objects. Stealing among civilized nations, denotes a character deeply ſtained with moral turpitude: but at the Friendly Iſlands, and others which we viſited, the thefts committed by the natives, may have been occaſioned by leſs culpable motives: they might be ſtimulated ſolely by curioſity; a deſire to poſſeſs ſomewhat new; and the property of people very different from themſelves. Were a ſet of beings, ſeemingly as ſuperior to us, as we appeared in their eyes, to make their appearance among us, it might be poſſible that our natural regard to juſtice would not be able to reſtrain many from being guilty of the ſame erroneous practices. However, the thieving diſpoſition of theſe iſlanders, was the means of affording us an inſight into their ingenuity and quickneſs of intellects: for their petty thefts were managed with much dexterity; and thoſe of greater conſequence, with a ſettled plan or ſcheme, adapted to the importance of the objects.

The hair of theſe people is, in general, thick, ſtraight, and ſtrong, though ſome have it buſhy or frizzled. The natural colour appears to be black, but many of the men, and ſome of the women, ſtain it of a brown or purple colour; and a few give it an orange caſt. The firſt of theſe colours is produced by applying a ſort of plaiſter of burnt coral mixed with water; the ſecond by the raſpings of a reddiſh wood mixed into a poultice, and laid over the hair; and the third is ſaid to be the effect of turmeric root. They are ſo whimſical in the faſhions of wearing their hair, that it is difficult to ſay which is moſt in vogue. Some have none on one ſide of the head, while it remains long on the other: ſome have only a part of it cut ſhort: others but a ſingle lock on one ſide. There are again thoſe who permit it to grow to its full length, without any ſuch mutilations. The women uſually wear it ſhort: the beards of the men are uſually cut in the ſame manner; and both ſexes ſtrip the hair from their armpits. The men are ſtained with a deep blue colour from the middle of the belly to half way down the thighs. This is effected with a flat bone inſtrument, full of fine teeth, which by a ſtroke of a bit of ſtick introduces the dooe dooe into the ſkin, whereby indelible marks are made. Lines and figures are thus traced, which, in ſome, are very elegant. The women have only ſmall lines thus imprinted on the inſide of the hands. As a mark of diſtinction, their kings are exempted from this cuſtom. The men are circumciſed in a partial manner. The operation conſiſts in cutting off only a piece of the fore-ſkin at the upper part, whereby it is rendered incapable of ever covering the glans. This practice, at preſent, is founded only on a notion of cleanlineſs.

The dreſs of both ſexes is the ſame; conſiſting of a piece of cloth or matting, about two yards in breadth, and a half in length. It is double before, and, like a petticoat, hangs downs to the middle of the leg. That part of the garment which is above the girdle, is plaited in ſeveral folds, and this, when extended, is ſufficient to draw up and wrap round the ſhoulders. As to form, it is the general faſhion; but the fine matting, and long pieces of cloth, are worn only by the ſuperior claſs of people. The inferior ſort are contented with ſmall pieces, and, very often, have only a covering made of the leaves of plants, or the maro, a narrow piece of cloth, or matting, like a ſaſh. This they paſs between the thighs and round the waiſt. It is ſeldom uſed by the men. In their haivas, or grand entertainments, their dreſſes, though the ſame in form, are various, and embelliſhed, more or leſs, with red feathers. Both men and women defend their faces occaſionally from the ſun with little bonnets made of various ſorts of materials. The ornaments, worn by thoſe of either ſex, are the ſame. The moſt common are necklaces made of the fruit of pandanus, and various ſweet ſmelling flowers, known by the general name of Kakulla. Others conſiſt of ſmall ſhells, ſharks teeth, the wing and leg bones of ſmall birds, &c. all which are pendant on the breaſt. In this manner they alſo wear a poliſhed mother of pearl ſhell, or a ring on the upper part of the arm: rings of tortoiſeſhell on the fingers; and ſeveral of theſe joined together form bracelets for the wriſts. Two holes are perforated in the lobes of the ears, wherein they put cylindrical bits of ivory, of the length of three inches, introduced at one hole, and drawn out of the other; or bits of reed filled with yellow pigment. This appears to be a fine powder of turmeric, which their women rub all over their bodies, in the ſame manner as the European ladies uſe their dry rouge upon their cheeks. Perſonal cleanlineſs is their ſtudy and delight. To maintain which they bathe frequently in the ponds, preferring them to the ſea, though the water has an intolerable ſtench; when they are obliged to bathe in the ſea, from a notion that ſalt water injures the ſkin, they will have freſh water poured over them to waſh off its bad effects. They are extravagantly fond of cocoa-nut oil; a great quantity of which they pour upon their head and ſhoulders, and rub the body all over with a ſmaller quantity.

The domeſtic life of theſe people is neither ſo laborious as to be diſagreeable, nor ſo free from employment as to ſuffer them to degenerate into indolence. Their country has been ſo favoured by nature, that the firſt can ſcarcely occur; and their active diſpoſition ſeems to be a ſufficient bar to the laſt. By this fortunate concurrence of circumſtances, their neceſſary labour yields, in its turn, to their amuſements and recreations, which are never interrupted by the thoughts of being obliged to recur to buſineſs, till they are induced by ſatiety to wiſh for that tranſition. The employment of the women is not fatiguing, and is generally ſuch as they can without difficulty execute in the houſe. The making of cloth is entirely entruſted to their care; the proceſs of which manufacture has been already deſcribed. Their cloth is of different degrees of fineneſs; the coarſer kind does not receive the impreſſion of any pattern; but of the finer ſorts, they have various patterns, differently coloured. The cloth, in general, is able to reſiſt water for ſome time; but that which has the ſtrongeſt glaze, is leaſt liable to be penetrated thereby. Another manufacture, conſigned alſo to the women, is that of their mats, which excel thoſe of moſt other countries, both with reſpect to their texture and beauty. Of theſe there are ſeven or eight different ſorts, uſed either for their dreſs, or to ſleep upon; but many are merely ornamental. Theſe laſt are made chiefly from the tough, membraneous part of the ſtock of the plantain-tree; thoſe that they wear, are generally compoſed of the pandanus; and the coarſer kind, whereon they ſleep, are formed from a plant called Evarra. We obſerved ſeveral other articles that employ their females, as combs, of which they make great quantities; ſmall baſkets made of the ſame ſubſtance as the mats; and others, of the fibrous huſk of the cocoa-nut, either interwoven with beads, or plain; all which are finiſhed with extraordinary neatneſs and taſte. The province of the men is, as might reaſonably be expected, far more laborious and extenſive than that of the other ſex. Architecture, boat-building, agriculture, and fiſhing, conſtitute their principal occupations, and are the main objects of their attention. As cultivated roots and fruits form their chief ſubſiſtence, they find it neceſſary to practice huſbandry, which, by their induſtry, they have brought to a degree of perfection. In managing yams and plantains, they dig ſmall holes for their reception, and afterwards root up the ſurrounding graſs. The inſtruments uſed for this purpoſe, are called hoo, and are nothing more than ſtakes of various lengths, flattened and ſharpened to an edge at one end; and the largeſt ones have a ſhort piece fixed tranſverſely, by means of which they preſs the implement into the ground with the foot. When they plant the two above mentioned vegetables, they obſerve ſuch particular exactneſs, that, which ever way you turn your eyes, the rows preſent themſelves complete and regular. The bread-fruit and cocoa-nuts, are diſperſed about, without any order; and when they have arrived at a certain height, give them little or no trouble. The ſame may be ſaid of another large tree, producing a roundiſh compreſſed nut, called eeefee; and of a ſmaller one, bearing an oval nut, with two or three triangular kernels. The kappe is, in general, planted regularly, and in large ſpots; but the Mawhaha is interſperſed among other things, as are alſo the yams and jeejee. Sugar cane is uſually in ſmall ſpots, cloſely crowded. The mulberry, of which the cloth is made, is kept very clean, and has a good ſpace allowed for its growth. The pandanus is commonly planted in a row, cloſe together, at the ſides of the fields.

Theſe people diſplay very little taſte or ingenuity in the conſtruction of their houſes. Thoſe belonging to the common people are wretched huts, ſcarce ſufficient to ſhelter them from the inclemency of the weather. Thoſe of the better ſort are larger, as well as more commodious and comfortable. A houſe of the middling ſize is of the following dimenſions, namely, about 12 feet in height, 20 in breadth, and 30 in length. Their houſes are, properly ſpeaking, thatched roofs or ſheds, ſupported by rafters and poſts. The floor is raiſed with earth ſmoothed, and covered with thick matting. Some habitations are open all round; but the major part of them are encloſed on the weather ſide with ſtrong mats, or with branches of the cocoa-nut tree, plaited, or interwoven with each other. A thick mat, about three feet broad, bent into a ſemicircular form, and placed edgeways, with the ends touching the ſide of the houſe, encloſes a ſufficient ſpace for the maſter and miſtreſs to ſleep in. The reſt of the family ſleep upon any part of the floor, the unmarried men and women lying apart from each other. If the family is large, they have little huts adjoining, in which the ſervants ſleep. The whole of their furniture conſiſts of ſome wooden ſtools, which ſerve them for pillows; baſkets of different ſizes, in which they put their combs, fiſh-hooks, and tools; two or three wooden bowls, in which they make kava; ſome cocoa-nut ſhells, a few gourds, and a bundle of cloth. But they are very ſkilful in building their canoes, which, indeed, are the moſt perfect of their mechanical productions. The double ones are very large, ſufficiently ſo to carry about 50 perſons, and they ſail at a great rate. They fix upon them generally a hut or ſhed, for the reception of the maſter and his family. Theſe are made of the bread-fruit tree, and the workmanſhip is extremely neat. They appear on the out-ſide as if they were compoſed of one ſolid piece; but upon cloſer inſpection, they are found to conſiſt of a great number of planks, fitting each other exactly, and by means of a ledge on the inſide, are ſecured together with cocoa line. The ſingle canoes are furniſhed with an out-rigger. The only tools which they make uſe of in the conſtruction of theſe boats, are hatchets, or adzes, of a ſmooth black ſtone; augurs, made of ſharks teeth; and raſps, compoſed of the rough ſkin of a fiſh, faſtened on flat pieces of wood. The ſame tools are all they have for other work, except ſhells, which ſerve them for knives. Their cordage is made of the fibres of the cocoa-nut huſk, which, though not more than 10 inches long, they plait about the ſize of a quill, to whatever length may be required, and roll it up into balls; and by twiſting ſeveral of theſe together, they form their ropes of a larger ſize. Their fiſhing-lines are as ſtrong and even as our beſt cord. Their ſmall hooks conſiſt entirely of pearl-ſhell; but the large ones are only covered with it on the back; and the points of both are, in general, of tortoiſe-ſhell. With the large hooks they catch albicores, and bonettos, by putting them to a bamboo-rod, about 12 feet long, with a line of the ſame length. They have alſo a number of ſmall ſeins, ſome of which are of the moſt delicate texture.

Their muſical reeds or pipes, reſembling the ſyrinx of the antients, have eight or ten pieces placed parallel to each other, moſt of which are of unequal lengths. Their flutes are made of a joint of bamboo, about 18 inches long, and are cloſed at both ends, having a hole near each end, and four others; two of which, and only one of the firſt, are uſed by them in playing. They cloſe the left noſtril with the thumb of the left-hand, and blow into the hole at one end with the other noſtril. The fore-finger of the right-hand is applied to the loweſt hole on the right, and the middle finger of the left, to the firſt hole on that ſide. In this manner, with only three notes, they produce a pleaſing, though ſimple harmony. Their naffa, or drum, has been deſcribed already. Their warlike weapons are clubs curiouſly ornamented, ſpears, and darts. They make bows and arrows, but theſe are intended for amuſement, and not for the purpoſes of war. Their ſtools or rather pillows, are about two feet long, but only four or five inches in height, and near four in breadth, inclining downwards towards the middle, with four ſtrong legs and circular feet; the whole compoſed of brown or black wood, neatly poliſhed, and ſometimes inlaid with ivory. They likewiſe inlay with ivory the handles of fly-flaps; and, with a ſhark's tooth, ſhape bones into figures of men, birds, &c.

Their vegetable diet conſiſts principally of plantains, cocoa-nuts, bread-fruit, and yams; and their chief articles of animal food are hogs, fiſh, and fowls; but the common people frequently eat rats. Hogs, fowls, and turtle, however, ſeem to be only occaſional dainties, reſerved for perſons of rank. Their food is dreſſed by baking, as at Otaheite; and they make, from different ſorts of fruit, ſeveral diſhes, which are very good. They ſometimes boil their fiſh in the green leaves of the plantain-tree, which ſerve as a bag to hold both fiſh and water: having tied them up, they wrap them again in three or four other leaves, and place them upon ſtones heated for the purpoſe: when ſufficiently done, they not only eat the fiſh, but drink the liquor or ſoup. They are not very cleanly either in their cookery, or their meals, or manner of eating. Their uſual drink is water, or cocoa-nut milk, the kava being only their morning beverage. The food that is ſerved up to the chiefs is generally laid upon plantain-leaves. The king, at his meals, was commonly attended upon by three or four of the natives, one of whom cut large pieces of the fiſh, or of the joint; another afterwards divided it into mouthfuls; and the reſt ſtood by the cocoa-nuts, and whatever elſe he might happen to want. We never ſaw a large company ſit down to a ſociable meal, by eating from the ſame diſh. The women are not excluded from taking their daily repaſt in company with the men; but there are certain ranks that are not allowed either to eat or drink together. This diſtinction begins with his majeſty, but where it ends we know not. Theſe people riſe at day-break, and retire to reſt as ſoon as it becomes dark. They, for the moſt part, ſleep alſo in the day-time, when the weather is very hot. They are fond of aſſociating together: in conſequence of which, it is not uncommon to find ſeveral houſes empty, and the poſſeſſors of them aſſembled in ſome other houſe, or upon ſome convenient ſpot in the neighbourhood, where they relax themſelves by converſation and other amuſements. Their private diverſions chiefly conſiſt of dancing, ſinging, and muſic. When two or three women ſnap their fingers, and ſing in concert, it is called oobai; but when there are more, they form ſeveral parties, each of which ſings in a different key; whereby an agreeable melody is made, termed heeva, or haiva. The ſongs are generally accompanied with the muſic of their flutes. The dances both of the men and women, are performed with an eaſe and grace not eaſily to be deſcribed. We could not determine with preciſion, whether their marriages were rendered durable by any kind of ſolemn contract: it is certain, however, that the major part of the people contented themſelves with one wife. The chiefs, indeed, have commonly ſeveral women, though there was only one (as we thought) who was conſidered in the light of miſtreſs of the family, a circumſtance remarked among all nations where concubinage and polygamy were allowed. Though female chaſtity ſeemed to be held in little eſtimation, not a ſingle breach of conjugal fidelity happened, to our knowledge, during the whole time of our continuance at theſe iſlands; nor were the unmarried women of rank more liberal of their favours: but numbers were of a different character; yet moſt, if not all of them, of the loweſt claſs of people; and ſuch of thoſe who permitted familiarities to our crews, were proſtitutes by profeſſion.

The concern ſhewn by theſe iſlanders for the dead, is a ſtrong proof of their humanity. Beſides the Tooge, of which mention has been made before, and burnt circles, and ſcars, they ſtrike a ſhark's tooth into their heads, till the blood flows plentifully, beat their teeth with ſtones, and thruſt ſpears not only through their cheeks into their mouths, but alſo into the inner part of their thighs, and into their ſides; ſo that, to uſe a common expreſſion, their mourning may be ſaid to be not in words but deeds. And ſuch a rigorous diſcipline muſt, one would think, require an uncommon degree of affection, or the moſt groſs ſuperſtition, to exact. It is highly probable the laſt has a ſhare in it; for many could not have any knowledge of the perſon for whom their concern was expreſſed. We ſaw the people of Tongataboo deploring the death of a chief at Vivaoo; and other ſimilar inſtances occurred during our ſtay. The more painful operations, however, are practiced only when they mourn the death of thoſe moſt nearly connected with them. When a perſon dies, he is wrapped up in mats, or cloth, or both, and then interred. The Fiatookas ſeem to be appropriated to the chiefs, and other perſons of diſtinction, but inferior people have no particular ſpot ſet apart for their burial. It is uncertain what mourning ceremonies follow the general one; but we are well aſſured of there being others which continue a long time; the funeral of Mareewagee's wife was attended with ceremonies of five days duration. Theſe people ſeem to conſider death as a great evil, to avert which they have a very ſingular cuſtom. When Captain Cook, during his former voyage, viſited theſe iſlands, he obſerved that many of the natives had one or both of their little fingers cut off; of the reaſon of which mutilation he could not then obtain a ſatisfactory account. But he was now informed, that they performed this operation when they are afflicted with ſome dangerous diſorder, which they imagine may bring them to the grave. They ſuppoſe, that the little finger will be accepted of by the deity, as a kind of propitiatory ſacrifice, ſufficiently efficacious to procure their recovery. In cutting it off, they make uſe of a ſtone hatchet. We ſaw ſcarcely one perſon in ten who was not thus mutilated; and they ſometimes cut ſo cloſe, as to encroach upon that bone of the hand which joins the amputated finger. It is alſo common for the lower claſs of people to cut off a joint of their little finger, on account of the ſickneſs of the chiefs to whom they reſpectively belong. When this rigid ſtrictneſs with which they perform their mourning and religious ceremonies is conſidered, it might be expected, that they endeavoured thereby to ſecure to themſelves eternal happineſs; but their principal object regards things merely temporal; for they have apparently little conception of future puniſhment for ſins committed in the preſent life. They believe, however, that they meet with juſt puniſhment in the preſent ſtate; and, therefore, put every method in practice to render their divinities propitious. They admit a plurality of deities, all of them inferior to Kallafootonga, who, they ſay, is a female, and the ſupreme authoreſs of nature, reſiding above, and directing the wind, rain, thunder, &c. They are of opinion that when ſhe is much diſpleaſed with them, the productions of the earth are blaſted, many things conſumed by lightning, and themſelves afflicted with ſickneſs and death; but that when her anger abates, every thing is immediately reſtored to its former ſtate. Among their ſubordinate deities, they mention Futtafaihe, or Footaſooa, who has the adminiſtration of the ſea, and its productions; Tooſooa-boolootoo, god of the clouds and fogs; Talleteboo, Mattaba, Tareeava, and others. The ſame ſyſtem of principles does not extend all over the Friendly Iſlands; the ſupreme deity of Hapaee, for inſtance, being called Alo Alo. They entertain very abſurd opinions relative to the power and various attributes of their gods, who, they ſuppoſe, have no farther concern with them after death. They have, however, juſter ſentiments reſpecting the immortality of the ſoul, which they call life, the living principle, or an Otooa, that is a divinity. They imagine that, immediately after death, the ſouls of their chiefs are ſeparated from their bodies, and go to a delightful region called Boolootoo, the god of which is ſtiled Gooleho, by whom they probably perſonify death. His country, according to their mythology, is the general repoſitory of the dead; and they who are once conveyed thither die no more, and feaſt on all the favourite productions of their native ſoil, with which this bliſsful abode is ſuppoſed by them to be plentifully furniſhed. The ſouls of thoſe in the loweſt rank of the people are ſaid to ſuffer a kind of tranſmigration; or are eaten up, they think, by a bird, called Laota, which walks over the graves with that intent. They do not worſhip any viſible part of the creation, or any thing made with their own hands: nor do they make any offerings of dogs, hogs, and fruit (as is the cuſtom at Otaheite) unleſs emblematically: but there is no reaſon to doubt of their offering up human ſacrifices. Their Fiatookas or Morais, are, in general, burying-grounds and places of worſhip: ſome of them, however, appeared to be appropriated only to the former purpoſe; but theſe were ſmall, and very inferior to the reſt.

We are acquainted only with the general outlines of their government. A ſubordination, reſembling the feudal ſyſtem of our anceſtors in Europe, is eſtabliſhed among them; but of its ſubdiviſions, and the conſtituent parts, we are ignorant. By ſome of the natives we were informed, that the king's power is unlimited, and that he has the abſolute diſpoſal of the lives and properties of his ſubjects; yet the few circumſtances that fell under our obſervation, contradicted, rather than confirmed, the idea of a deſpotic ſway. Mareewagee, Feenou, and Old Toobou, acted each the part of a petty ſovereign, and not unfrequently counteracted the meaſures of the king. Nor was the court of Poulaho ſuperior in ſplendor to thoſe of Old Toobou and Mareewagee, who, next to his majeſty, were the moſt potent chiefs in theſe iſlands; and after them Feenou appeared to ſtand higheſt in rank and authority. But, however independent on the king the principal men may be, the inferior people are totally ſubject to the will of the chiefs to whom they ſeverally belong. The iſland of Tongataboo is divided into numerous diſtricts, each of which has its peculiar chief, who diſtributes juſtice, and decides diſputes within his own territory. Moſt of theſe chieftains have eſtates in other iſlands, whence they procure ſupplies. The king, at ſtated times, receives the productions of his diſtant domains, at Tongataboo, which is not only the uſual place of his reſidence, but the abode of moſt perſons of diſtinction among theſe iſlands. Its inhabitants call it frequently the Land of Chiefs, and ſtigmatize the ſubordinate iſles with the appellation of Lands of Servants. The chiefs are ſtiled by the people Lords of the Earth, and alſo of the ſun and ſky. The royal family aſſume the name of Futtafaihe, from the god diſtinguiſhed by that title, who is probably conſidered by them as their tutelary patron. The king's peculiar title is ſimply Tooe Tonga. The order and decorum obſerved in his preſence, and likewiſe in that of the otherchiefs, are truly admirable. Whenever he ſits down, all the attendants ſeat themſelves before him, forming a ſemicircle, and leaving a ſufficient ſpace between them and him, into which no one, unleſs he has particular buſineſs, preſumes to enter; nor is any one ſuffered to ſit, or paſs behind him, or even near him, without his permiſſion. When a perſon wiſhes to ſpeak to his majeſty, he comes forward, and having ſeated himſelf before him, delivers in a few words what he has to ſay; then, after being favoured with an anſwer, retires. If the king ſpeaks to any one, the latter gives an anſwer from his ſeat, unleſs he is to receive an order; in which caſe he riſes from his place, and ſeats himſelf croſs-legged. Captain King has affirmed, that this poſture is peculiar to the men, for the females, that gentleman ſays, always ſit with both their legs thrown a little on one ſide. To ſpeak to the king ſtanding would here be conſidered as a glaring mark of rudeneſs. None of the moſt civilized nations have ever exceeded theſe iſlanders in the great order and regularity maintained on every occaſion, in ready and ſubmiſſive compliance with the command of their ſuperiors, and in the perfect harmony that ſubſiſts among all ranks. Such a behaviour manifeſts itſelf in a remarkable manner, whenever their chiefs harangue a body of them aſſembled together, which frequently happens. The greateſt attention and moſt profound ſilence are obſerved during the harangue; and whatever might be the purport of the oration, we never ſaw a ſingle inſtance, when any one of thoſe who were preſent, ſhewed ſigns of being diſpleaſed, or ſeemed in the leaſt inclined to diſpute the declared will of the ſpeaker. It is a peculiar privilege annexed to the perſon of the king, not to be punctured, nor circumciſed, as all his ſubjects are. Whenever he walks out, all who meet him muſt ſit down till he has paſſed. No perſon is ſuffered to be over his head; but all muſt, on the contrary, come under his feet. The method of doing homage to him, and the other chiefs, is as follows: the perſon who is to pay obeiſance ſquats down before the great perſonage, and bows the head down to the ſole of his foot, which he taps or touches, with the upper and under ſide of the fingers of each hand; then riſing up, he retires. We had reaſon to think, that his majeſty cannot refuſe any one who is deſirous of paying him this homage, called by the natives moe moea; for the people would frequently think proper to ſhew him theſe marks of ſubmiſſion when he was walking; and on ſuch occaſions, he was obliged to ſtop, and hold up one of his feet behind him, till they had performed this reſpectful ceremony. This, to ſo corpulent and unwieldy a man as Poulaho, muſt have been troubleſome and painful; and we have ſeen him ſometimes endeavour, by running, to get out of the way, or to reach a convenient place for ſitting down. The hands, after having been thus applied, become in ſome caſes uſeleſs a ſhort time; for till theſe are waſhed they muſt not touch food of any kind. This prohibition in a country, where water is far from being plentiful, would be attended with an inconvenience, if a piece of any juicy plant, which they can immediately procure, being rubbed over the hands, did not ſerve for the purpoſe of purification. When thus circumſtanced, they term their ſituation taboo rema; the former word generally ſignifying forbidden, and the latter implying hand. When the taboo is incurred, by doing homage to a perſon of rank, it may thus be eaſily waſhed off; but in ſeveral other caſes, it muſt continue for a certain period. We have often ſeen women who have been taboo rema, fed by others. The interdicted perſon, after the limited time is elapſed, waſhes herſelf in one of their baths, which are, in general, dirty ponds of brackiſh water. She then waits upon the king, and, after having paid the cuſtomary obeiſance, takes hold of his foot, which ſhe applies to her ſhoulders, breaſt, and other parts; he then embraces her on both ſhoulders, and ſhe immediately retires, purified from her uncleanneſs. If it be always neceſſary to have recourſe to his majeſty for this purpoſe (of which we are not certain, though Omiah aſſured us it was) it may be one reaſon for his travelling very frequently from one iſland to another. The word taboo, as we have before obſerved, has a very extenſive ſignification. They call human ſacrifices, Tangata taboo; and when any particular thing is prohibited to be eaten, or made uſe of, they ſay it is taboo. We were told by them, that if the king ſhould go into a houſe belonging to one of his ſubjects, that houſe would become taboo, and could never be again inhabited by the owner of it; ſo that, wherever his majeſty travels, there are houſes peculiarly aſſigned for his accommodation. At this time Old Toobou preſided over the taboo; that is, if Omiah did not miſunderſtand thoſe who gave him the intelligence, he, and his deputies, had the inſpection of all the produce of the iſland, taking care that each individual ſhould cultivate and plant his quota, and directing what ſhould and what ſhould not be eaten. By ſo prudent a regulation, they take effectual precautions againſt a famine; ſufficient ground is employed in raiſing proviſions; and every article is ſecured from unneceſſary conſumption. By another good regulation, an officer of rank is appointed to ſuperintend the police. This department was adminiſtered, while we continued among them, by Feenou, whoſe buſineſs (as we were informed) it was to puniſh all delinquents: he was alſo generaliſſimo, or commander in chief of the forces of the iſlands. Poulaho himſelf declared to us, that, if he ſhould become a bad man, Feenou would dethrone, and kill him; by which he doubtleſs meant, that if he neglected the duties of his high ſtation, or governed in a manner that would prove prejudicial to the public welfare, Feenou would be deſired by the other chiefs, or by the collective body of the people, to depoſe him from the ſupreme command, and put him to death. A king thus ſubject to controul and puniſhment for abuſe of power, cannot juſtly be deemed a deſpotic prince. When we take into conſideration the number of iſlands of which this ſtate conſiſts, and the diſtance of which ſome of them are removed from the ſeat of government, attempts to throw off the yoke of ſubjection might be apprehended. But they informed us, that this circumſtance never happens. One reaſon of their not being thus embroiled in domeſtic commotions may be this; that all the principal chiefs take up their reſidence at Tongataboo. They alſo ſecure the dependence of the other iſles, by the deciſive celerity of their operations: for if a ſeditious and popular man ſhould ſtart up in any of them, Feenou, or whoever happens to hold his office, is immediately diſpatched thither to put him to death; by which means they extinguiſh an inſurrection while it is yet in embryo. The different claſſes of their chiefs ſeemed to be nearly as numerous as among us; but there are few, comparatively ſpeaking, that are lords of extenſive diſtricts of territory. It is ſaid, that when a perſon of property dies, all his poſſeſſions devolve on the ſovereign; but that it is cuſtomary to give them to the eldeſt ſon of the deceaſed, with this condition annexed, that he ſhould provide, out of the eſtate, for the other children. The crown is hereditary; and we know, from a particular circumſtance, that the Futtafaihes, of which family is Poulaho, have reigned, in a direct line, for the ſpace of at leaſt one hundred and thirty-five years, which have elapſed between our preſent viſit to theſe iſlands, and Taſman's diſcovery of them. Upon our inquiring, whether any traditional account of the arrival of Taſman's ſhips had been preſerved among them, till this time, we found, that the hiſtory had been delivered down to them with great accuracy: for they ſaid, that his two ſhips reſembled ours; and alſo mentioned the place where they had lain at anchor; their having continued but a few days; and their quitting that ſtation to go to Annamooka; and, for the purpoſe of informing us how long ago this affair happened, they communicated to us the name of the Futtafaihe who reigned at that time, and thoſe who ſucceeded him in the ſovereignty down to Poulaho, who is the fifth monarch ſince that period. It might be imagined, that the preſent reigning ſovereign of the Friendly Iſles had the higheſt rank in his dominions: but we found it otherwiſe; for Latooliboolo, whom we have already noticed, and three ladies of rank, are ſuperior in ſome reſpects to Poulaho himſelf. Theſe great perſonages, are diſtinguiſhed by the title of Tammaha, which denotes a chief. When we made enquiry concerning them, we were informed that the late king, father of Poulaho, left behind him a ſiſter of equal rank, and older than himſelf; that, by a native of Feejee, ſhe had a ſon and two daughters; and that theſe three perſons, as well as their mother, are of higher rank than the king. The mother, and one of her daughters, named Tooeela-kaipa, reſide at Vavaoo: the other daughter, called Moungoula-kaipa, and Latooliboolo, the ſon, dwell at Tongataboo. Moungoula-kaipa, is the lady of quality whom we mentioned as having dined with Captain Cook on the 21ſt of June. Latooliboolo is thought by his countrymen to be out of his ſenſes. At Middleburgh, they ſhewed us a conſiderable quantity of land, ſaid to be his property; and, at the ſame place, we ſaw a ſon of his, a child, who was honoured with the ſame reſpect, title, and homage as his father: and the natives much humoured and careſſed this little Tammaha.

The language of theſe iſlands bears a great reſemblance to that of Otaheite, as will appear from the following ſmall collection of words, which we have endeavoured to make as correct as poſſible.

A TABLE, containing a ſhort ſpecimen of the Language of the FRIENDLY ISLANDS, with correſponding words of the ſame ſignification, as uſed in OTAHEITE.

FRIENDLY ISLES	OTAHEITE	ENGLISH
Koomoo	Ooma	*The Beard*
Wakka	Evaa	*A Boat or canoe*
Oole	Ere	*Black*
Aho	Aou	*The Dawn*
Tareenga	Tareea	*The Ear*
Eafoi	Eahoi	*Fire*
Taheine	Toonea	*A Girl*
Fooroo	Eroroo	*The Hair*
Fonooa	Fenooa	*Land*
Tao	Tao	*A Lance or ſpear*
Tangata	Taata	*A Man*
Motooa	Madooa	*A Parent*
Ooha	Eooa	*Rain*
Goola	Oora oora	*Red*
Elaa	Eraa	*The Sun*
Mohe	Moe	*Sleep*
Tooa	Toutou or teou	*A Servant, or one of mean rank*
Tahee	Taee	*The Sea*
Fatoore	Pateere	*Thunder*
Elelo	Erero	*The Tongue*
Amou	Mou	*To hold faſt*
Horo	Horoee	*To wipe, or cleanſe*
Matangee	Mataee	*The Wind*
Avy	Evy	*Water*
Vefaine	Waheine	*A Woman*
Kohaeea	Yahaeea	*What is that?*
Mafanna	Mahanna	*Warm*
Ou	Wou	*I*
Koe	Oe	*You*
Ai	Ai	*Yes*
Kaee	Aee	*No*
Ongofooroo	Ahooroo	*Ten*
Etoo	Atoo	*To riſe up*
Tangee	Taee	*To ſhed Tears*
Eky	Ey	*To eat*

We muſt here obſerve, that vocabularies of this kind cannot be eneirely free from errors. Theſe will unavoidably ſpring up from various cauſes. It will be difficult to fix the object of enquiry, when the conceptions of thoſe from whom we are to learn the words, ſo widely differ from our own; nor could much be obtained from a preceptor who knew very few words of any language that his pupil was converſant with: but, what led us frequently into miſtakes, was, the impoſſibility of catching the true ſound of a word, to which our ears had never been accuſtomed, from perſons, whoſe pronunciation ſeemed to us, in general, ſo indiſtinct, that two of us writing down the ſame word from the ſame mouth, made uſe, not only of different vowels, but even different conſonants, the ſounds of which are leaſt liable to ambiguity. Beſides, from the natives endeavouring to imitate us, or from our having miſunderſtood them, we were led into ſtrange corruptions of words: thus, for example; cheeto, though totally different from the real word, in the language of Tongataboo, was always uſed by us to expreſs a thief. This miſtake took its riſe from one, into which we had fallen when at New Zealand. For though the word that ſignifies thief there, is the very ſame in the Friendly Iſlands (being Kaeehaa at both places) yet by ſome blunder we had uſed the word teete, firſt at New Zealand, and afterwards at Tongataboo; the natives whereof, endeavouring to imitate us as nearly as they could, fabricated the word cheeto; and this, by a complication of miſtakes, was adopted by us as our own.

The language of the Friendly Iſlands bears a ſtriking reſemblance to that of New Zealand, of Otaheite, and all the Society Iſles. Many of their words are alſo the ſame with thoſe uſed by the inhabitants of Cocos Iſland, as may be ſeen by conſulting a vocabulary made there by Le Maire and Schouten. And yet, though Taſman's people uſed the words of that vocabulary, in ſpeaking to the natives of Tongataboo, (his Amſterdam) we are told, in the accounts of his voyage, that they did not underſtand one another; a circumſtance worthy of notice; as it ſhews how cautious we ought to be, upon the ſcanty evidence afforded by ſuch tranſient viſits as Taſman's, and we may ſay, as thoſe of moſt of the ſubſequent navigators of the Pacific Ocean, to found any argument about the affinity, or want of affinity, of the languages of different iſlands. No perſon will venture to ſay now, that a Cocos man, and one of Tongataboo, could not underſtand each other. Some of the words at Horn Iſland, another of Schouten's diſcoveries, are alſo a part of the language of Tongataboo.

The pronunciation of the natives of the Friendly Iſles differs, indeed, in many inſtances, from that both of Otaheite and New Zealand; nevertheleſs a great number of words, are either very little changed, or exactly the ſame. The language ſpoken by the Friendly Iſlanders, is ſufficiently copious to expreſs all their ideas; and, beſides being harmonious in common converſation, is eaſily adapted to the purpoſes of muſic, of which we had many proofs. As far as we could judge, from our ſhort intercourſe with the natives, its component parts are not numerous; and in ſome of its rules it agrees with other known languages: indeed it has none of the inflections of nouns and verbs, as in the Latin tongue; but we could diſcern eaſily the ſeveral degrees of compariſon. Among hundreds of words we were able to collect, we found terms to expreſs numbers as far as a hundred thouſand, beyond which they either would not, or could not reckon: for having got thus far, they commonly uſed a word expreſſing an indefinite number.

At theſe iſlands the tides are more conſiderable, than at any other of Captain Cook's diſcoveries in this ocean, that are ſituated within either of the tropics. In the channels between the iſlands, it flows near tide and half tide; and it is only here and in a few places near the ſhores, that the tide is perceptible; ſo that we could gueſs only at the quarter from whence the flood comes. In the road of Annamooka it ſets W. S. W. and the ebb the contrary, but it falls into the harbour of Tongataboo from the N. W. paſſes through the two guts on each ſide of Hoolaiva, where it runs rapidly, and then ſpends itſelf in the Lagoon. The ebb returns the ſame way with rather greater force. The N. W. tide, at the entrance of the Lagoon, is met by one from the E. but this we found to be very inconſiderable. At Annamooka it is high water near ſix o'clock, on the full and change of the moon; and the tide riſes and falls about ſix feet, upon a perpendicular. In the harbour of Tongataboo the tide riſes and falls four feet three quarters on the full and change days, and three feet and a half at the quadratures.

During our ſtay here we had ſeveral favourable opportunities of making aſtronomical and nautical obſervations; whereby we aſcertained the difference of longitude between Annamooka and Tongataboo with more exactneſs than was done in Captain Cook's ſecond voyage. The latitude of the former is 20 deg. 15 min. S. and its longitude 185 deg. 11 min. 18 ſec. E. The obſervatory was placed on the weſt ſide of this iſland: and near the middle of the north ſide of the iſland of Tongataboo, the latitude of which, according to the moſt accurate obſervations, we found to be 21 deg. 8 min. 19 ſec. S. and its longitude 184 deg. 55 min. 18 ſec. E. Having now concluded our remarks on the Friendly Iſlands, and the natives, we ſhall take a final leave of them, and reſume in the next chapter, the proſecution of the hiſtory of our voyage.

CHAP. VII.

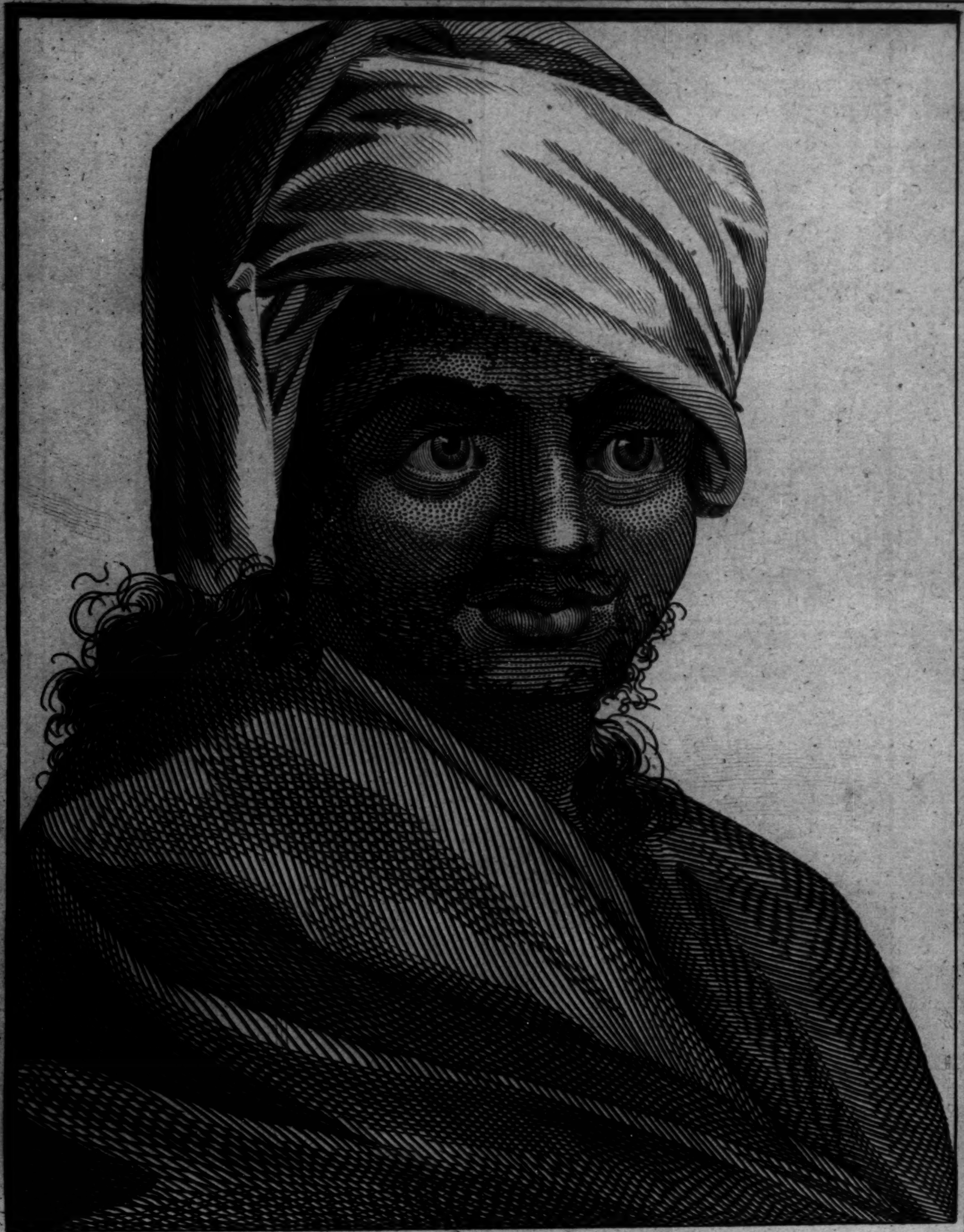
The Reſolution and Diſcovery direct their Courſe for Otaheite and the Society Iſles—Heavy Squalls and blowing Weather—An Eclipſe of the Moon obſerved—They diſcover the Iſland of Toobouai—Its Situation, Extent, and Produce—A Deſcription of the Perſons, Dreſs, and Canoes, of the Inhabitants—The two Ships arrive in Oheitepea Harbour at Otaheite—Omiah's Reception—His imprudent Conduct—An Account of two Spaniſh Ships, which had twice viſited the Iſland—Great Demand for red Feathers—Captain Cook viſits a Chief, ſaid by Omiah to be the Olla, or God of Bolabola—Account of a Houſe erected by the Spaniards—Inſcriptions—The Captain's Interview with Waheiadooa—Deſcription of a Toopapaoo—An Enthuſiaſt—The Ships anchor in Matavai Bay—Interview with Otoo, King of Otaheite—Omiah's imprudent Behaviour—Animals landed, and Occupations on Shore—Viſit from a Native who had been at Lima—Particulars relating to Oedidee—A Rebellion in Eimeo—A Council of Chiefs called, who declare for War—A human Sacrifice offered for the Succeſs of their Arms—An Account of the Ceremonies at the great Morai, and the Behaviour of the Natives—Other particular Cuſtoms among the Otaheiteans.

ON Thurſday, the 17th of July, when ſteering for our intended port, the body of Eaoo, at eight o'clock in the evening, bore N. E. by N. diſtant three leagues. The wind blew a freſh gale at eaſt; and we ſtood with it to the ſouth, till after ſix o'clock the next morning, when, in latitude 22 deg. 24 min. S. a ſudden ſquall took our ſhips aback, and before they could be trimmed on the other tack, the main-ſail and top-gallant ſails were much torn. On the 19th, the wind kept between the S. W. and S. E. and the next day veered to the E. N. E. and N. In the night between the 20th and 21ſt an eclipſe of the moon was obſerved, when we found our ſhip to be in latitude 22 deg. 57 min. 30 ſec. and in longitude 186 deg. 57 min. 30 ſec. We continued to ſtretch to the E. S. E. without meeting with any thing remarkable till Tueſday the 29th, when, in latitude 28 deg. 6 min. S. and in longitude 189 deg. 23 min. E. the weather became tempeſtuous, and a ſudden ſquall carried away the main-top, and top gallant-maſt of the Diſcovery. She had alſo her jib carried away, and her main-ſail ſplit. It is aſtoniſhing to ſee with what ſpirit and alacrity Engliſh ſailors exert themſelves on ſuch occaſions. Amidſt a ſtorm, when it would have been almoſt impoſſible for a landſman to have truſted himſelf upon deck, the ſailors mounted aloft, and with incredible rapidity cleared away the wreck, by which they preſerved the ſhip. Nothing equal to this diſaſter had happened to the Diſcovery in the courſe of her voyage. Nor did the Reſolution eſcape the fury of this ſtorm. We were, at this time, under ſingle reefed top-ſails, courſes, and ſtay-ſails. Two of the latter were almoſt demoliſhed, and it was with the utmoſt difficulty that we ſaved the other ſails. The ſquall being over, we ſaw ſeveral lights moving on board the Diſcovery; whence we concluded that ſomething had given way. Both wind and weather continued very unſettled till noon, when the latter cleared up, and the former ſettled in the N. W quarter. This day we were viſited by ſome pintado birds, which were the firſt we had ſeen ſince we left land. At noon, of the 31ſt, Captain Clerke made a ſignal to ſpeak with us; and by the return of our boat we were informed, that the head of the Diſcovery's main-maſt had ſprung in ſuch a manner, as to render the rigging of another top-maſt exceeding dangerous; that having loſt his top-gallant-yard, he had not another on board, nor a ſpar to make one: we therefore ſent him our ſprit-ſail top-ſail-yard, which ſupplied this want for the preſent; and the next day, by getting up a jury-top-maſt, on which was ſet a mizen-top-ſail, the Diſcovery was enabled to keep way with the Reſolution.

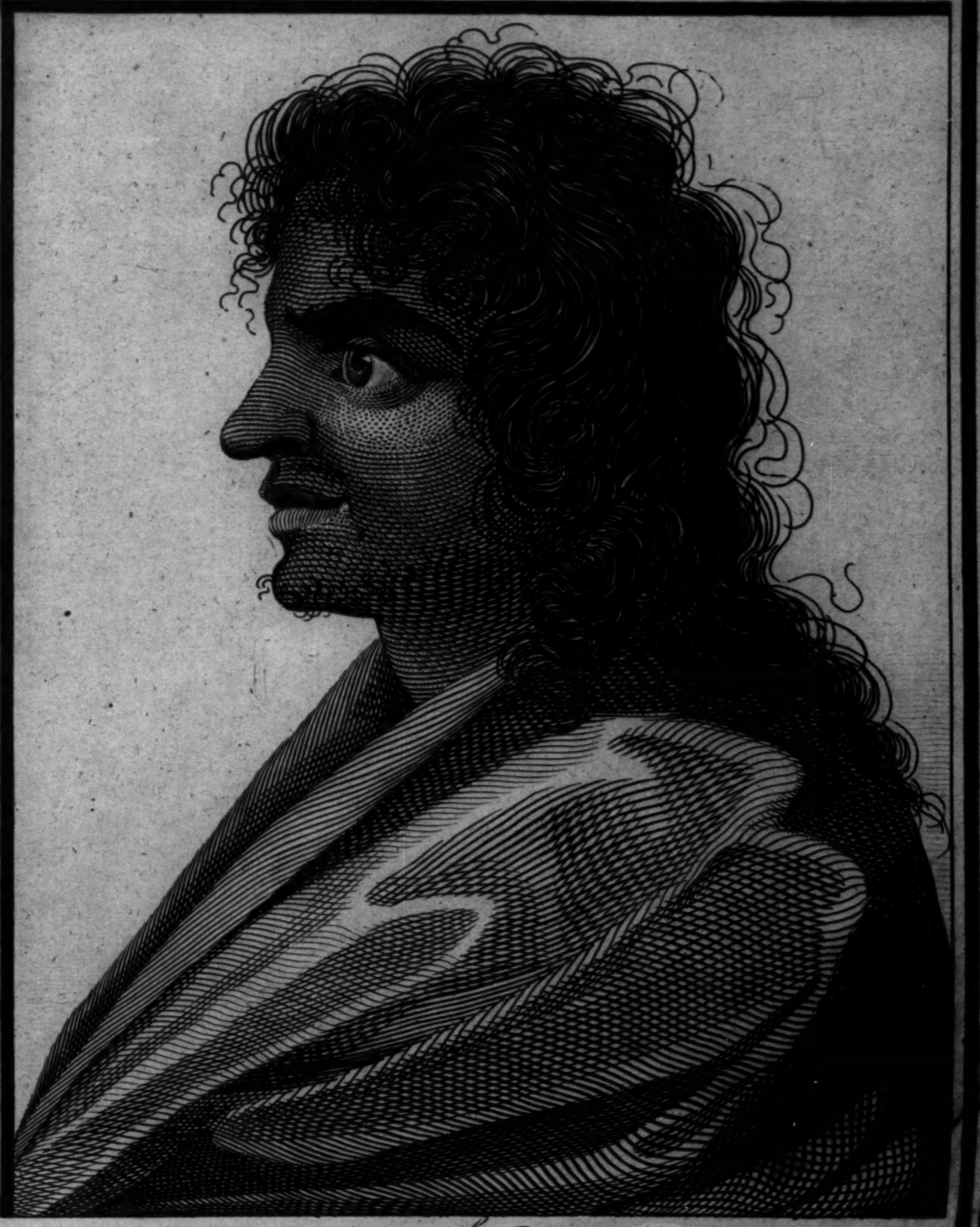
On Friday, the 1ſt of Auguſt, the Diſcovery's company celebrated the anniverſary of their departure from England, having been juſt one year abſent. The men were indulged with a double allowance of grog, and they forgot in the jollity of their cans, the hardſhips to which they had been expoſed in the late ſtorm. We ſteered E. N. E. and N. E. without meeting with any remarkable occurrence till Friday the 8th, when, at eleven o'clock, the man at the maſt-head called out land, which we obſerved bearing N. N. E. nine or ten leagues diſtant. At firſt it appeared like ſeparate iſlands; but as we approached, we found it was connected, forming one and the ſame iſland. We made directly for it, with a fine gale, and at ſeven o'clock, P. M. it extended from N. by E. to N. N. E. diſtant four leagues. On the 9th, at day-break, we ſteered for the N. W. or lee ſide of the iſland; and as we ſtood round its S. W. part, we ſaw it guarded by a reef of coral-rock, extending in ſome places, at leaſt, a mile from the land, and a high ſurf breaking over it. As we drew near, we ſaw people walking or running along ſhore, on ſeveral parts of the coaſt, and, in a ſhort time after, when we had reached the lee ſide of the iſland, we ſaw two canoes, wherein were about a dozen men, who paddled towards us. In order to give theſe canoes time to come up with us, as well as to ſound for anchorage, we ſhortened ſail; and, at the diſtance of half a mile from the reef, we found from 40 to 35 fathoms water. The canoes having advanced within piſtol-ſhot of the ſhips, ſuddenly ſtopped. We deſired Omiah, as was uſual on ſuch occaſions, to endeavour to prevail upon them to come nearer; but none of his arguments could induce them to truſt themſelves within our reach. They often pointed eagerly to the ſhore with their paddles; at the ſame time calling to us to go thither; and many of the people on the beach held up ſomething white in their hands, which we conſtrued as an invitation for us to land. We could eaſily have accompliſhed this, there being good anchorage without the reef, and an opening in it, through which the canoes had paſſed: but it was not thought prudent to riſk the advantage of a fair wind, in order to examine an iſland that to us at preſent appeared to be of little conſequence. We required no refreſhments, if we had been certain of meeting with them there, and therefore, after having made ſeveral unſucceſsful attempts, to prevail upon the iſlanders to come along ſide, we made ſail to the north and left them; having firſt learned that the name of their iſland was Toobouai. It was a new diſcovery, ſituate in 23 deg. 25 min. S. latitude, and 210 deg. 37 min. E. longitude. A gentleman on board the Diſcovery ſays; the men appeared of the largeſt ſtature, and tattowed from head to foot; their language different from any we were yet acquainted with; their dreſs not unlike that of the Amſterdammers; their complexion darker; their heads ornamented with ſhells, feathers, and flowers; and their canoes neatly conſtructed and elegantly carved. Of their manners we could form little or no judgement. They appeared extremely timid; but, by their waving green boughs, and exhibiting other ſigns of peace, they gave us reaſon to believe that they were friendly. They exchanged ſome ſmall fiſh and cocoa nuts for nails and Middleburgh cloth. In our approach to Toobouai, ſome of our gentlemen, on board the Reſolution, made the few following remarks.

The greateſt extent of this iſland, in any direction, is not above five or ſix miles: but the above gentleman, belonging to the Diſcovery, ſays, "Its greateſt length is about twelve miles, and its breadth about four." Small, however, as it appeared to us, there are hills in it of a conſiderable elevation; at the foot of which is a narrow border of flat land, extending almoſt all round it; bordered with a white ſand beach, except a few rocky cliffs in one part, with patches of trees interſperſed to their ſummits. This iſland, as we were informed by the men in the canoes, is plentifully ſtocked with hogs and fowls; and produces the ſeveral kinds of fruits and trees that are to be met with in this neighbourhood. We diſcovered alſo, that the inhabitants of Toobouai ſpeak the language of Otaheite; an indubitable proof that they are of the ſame nation. Thoſe whom we, on board the Reſolution, ſaw, were a ſtout copper coloured people; ſome of whom wore their hair (which was ſtraight and black) flowing about the ſhoulders, and others had it tied in a bunch on the crown of the head. Their faces were roundiſh and full, but the features flat; and their countenances expreſſed a degree of natural ferocity. Their covering was a piece of narrow ſtuff wrapped round the waiſt, and and paſſing between the thighs; but ſome of thoſe whom we beheld upon the beach, were completely clothed in white. Some of our viſitors, in the canoes, had their necks ornamented with pearl-ſhells; and one of them continued blowing a large conch-ſhell, to which a reed, of about two feet long, was fixed. He began in a long tone, without any variation, and afterwards converted it into a kind of muſical inſtrument. Whether the blowing of the conch was with any particular view, or what it portended, we cannot ſay, but we never found it to be the meſſenger of peace. As to their canoes, they appeared to be about thirty feet long, and they roſe about two feet above the ſurface of the water, as they floated. The fore-part projected a little; the after-part roſe to the height of two or three feet, with a gradual curve, and, like the upper part of the ſides, was carved all over. The reſt of the ſides were ornamented with flat white ſhells curiouſly diſpoſed. There were eight men in one of the canoes, and ſeven in the other. They were conducted with ſmall paddles, whoſe blades were almoſt circular; and they ſometimes paddled with the two oppoſite ſides, ſo cloſe together, that they appeared to be but one boat; the rowers occaſionally turning their faces to the ſtern, and pulling towards it without turning the canoes round. Seeing we were determined to leave them, they ſtood up, and repeated ſomething loud; but we knew not whether they were expreſſing hoſtile intentions, or friendſhip. It is certain, however, that they had not any weapons with them; nor could we with our glaſſes diſcover, that thoſe on ſhore were armed.

Leaving this iſland, we proceeded, with an eaſy breeze, to the north, and on Tueſday the 12th, at day break, we came in ſight of the iſland of Maitea. Soon after the man at the maſt-head called out land, which proved to be the iſland of Otaheite, of which we were in ſearch: the point of Otaite Peha, or Oheitepeha Bay, bearing weſt, four leagues diſtant. For this bay we ſteered, intending to anchor there, in order to procure ſome refreſhments from the S. E. part of the iſland, before we ſailed to Matavai, where we expected our principal ſupply. We had a freſh gale till two o'clock P. M. when at about a league from the bay, the wind ſuddenly died away. About two hours after, we had ſudden ſqualls, with rain, from the eaſt; ſo that, after having in vain attempted to gain the anchoring place, we were obliged to ſtand out, and ſpend the night at ſea. As we approached the iſland, we were attended by ſeveral canoes, each containing two or three men: but being of the lower claſs, Omiah took no particular notice of them, nor they of him. They did not know that he was one of their countrymen, though they had converſed with him for ſome time. At length a chief, whom Captain Cook had known before, named Ootee, and Omiah's brother-in-law, who happened to be at this time, at this corner of the iſland, and three or four others, all of whom knew Omiah, before he embarked with Captain Furneaux, came on board: yet there was nothing in the leaſt tender or ſtriking in their meeting, but on the contrary, a perfect indifference on both ſides, till Omiah, conducting his brother into the cabin, opened a drawer, and gave him a few red feathers: this circumſtance being ſoon communicated to the reſt of the natives on deck, Ootee, who before would hardly ſpeak to him, now begged, that they might be Tayos (friends) and exchange names. Omiah readily accepted of the honour, and a preſent of red feathers ratified the agreement. By way of return, Ootee ſent aſhore for a hog. It was evident, however, to all of us preſent, that it was not the man, but his property, that they eſteemed. Had he not diſplayed his treaſure of red feathers, a commodity of great eſtimation in the iſland, it is a matter of doubt whether they would have beſtowed a ſingle cocoa-nut upon him. Such was Omiah's firſt reception among his countrymen; and though we did not expect it would be otherwiſe, yet ſtill we hoped, that the valuable ſtock of preſents, with which he had been poſſeſſed by the liberality of his friends in England, would be the certain means of raiſing him into conſequence, among the firſt



Portrait *of* POTATOW.



Portrait *of* OM

firſt perſons of rank throughout the Society Iſlands. This, indeed, muſt have been the caſe, had he conducted himſelf with any degree of prudence; but he paid little attention to the repeated advice of his beſt friends, and laid himſelf open to every impoſition.

Through his means we were informed by the natives who came off to us, that ſince Captain Cook laſt viſited this iſland in 1774, two ſhips had been twice in this bay, and had left animals there, reſembling thoſe we had on board: but on a minute enquiry into particulars, we found them to conſiſt only of hogs, dogs, goats, a bull, and the male of another animal, which they ſo imperfectly deſcribed, that we could not conjecture what it was. Theſe ſhips, they ſaid, had come from a place, called Reema, which we ſuppoſed to be Lima, the capital of Peru, and that theſe late viſitors were conſequently Spaniards. They alſo told us, that the firſt time they arrived, they built a houſe, and left behind them two prieſts, a boy or ſervant, and a fourth perſon, whom they called Mateema, much ſpoken of at this time; taking away with them, when they ſailed, four of the natives: that about ten months afterwards, the ſame ſhips returned, bringing back only two of the natives, the other two having died at Lima; and that, after a ſhort ſtay, they took away the people they had left, but that the houſe they had erected was now ſtanding.

On Wedneſday, the 13th, we were ſurrounded with an incredible number of canoes, crowded with people, who brought with them plenty of hogs and fruit: for the agreeable news of red feathers being on board the two ſhips, had been propagated by Omiah and his friends. A quantity of feathers, which might be taken from the body of a tom-tit, would, early in the morning, have purchaſed a hog of forty or fifty pounds weight: but as the whole ſhip's crew were poſſeſſed of ſome of this precious article of trade, it decreaſed above five hundred per cent. in its value, in a few hours: however, the balance, even then, was in our favour conſiderably; and red feathers ſtill preſerved a ſuperiority over every other commodity. Some of the natives would not diſpoſe of a hog, without receiving an axe in exchange; as to nails, beads, and many other trinkets, which during our former voyages, were held in high eſtimation at this iſland, they were now ſo much deſpiſed, that few would even deign to look at them. Having had little wind all this morning, it was nine o'clock before we could get into the bay, where we moored with two bowers. Soon after Omiah's ſiſter came on board, to congratulate him on his arrival. It was pleaſing to obſerve, that, to the honour of both of theſe relations, their meeting was marked with the expreſſions of the tendereſt affection, more eaſily conceived than deſcribed.

When this affecting ſcene was cloſed, and the ſhip properly moored, Omiah attended Captain Cook on ſhore. The Captain's firſt viſit was paid to a perſonage, whom Omiah repreſented as a very extraordinary one indeed, nothing leſs, as he affirmed, than the God Bolabola. They found him ſeated under one of thoſe awnings, which are uſually carried in their larger canoes. He was old, and had ſo far loſt the uſe of his limbs, that he was carried from place to place upon a hand barrow. By ſome he was called Olla, or Orra, which is the name of the God of Bolabola; but his real name was Etary. From Omiah's extraordinary account of this man, it was expected to have ſeen religious adoration paid to him; but very little was obſerved, that diſtinguiſhed him from other chiefs. Omiah preſented to him a tuft of red feathers, faſtened to the end of a ſmall ſtick: but, after a little converſation, his attention was excited by the preſence of his mother's ſiſter, who was already at his feet, and had bedewed them plentifully with tears of joy. The Captain left him with the old lady in this ſituation, ſurrounded by a number of people, and went to take a view of the houſe, ſaid to have been erected by the ſtrangers who had lately landed here. He found it ſtanding at a ſmall diſtance from the beach; and compoſed of wooden materials, which appeared to have been brought hither ready prepared, in order to ſet up as occaſion might require, for the planks were all numbered. It conſiſted of two ſmall rooms, in the inner of which were a bedſtead, a bench, a table, ſome old hats, and other trifles, of which the natives ſeemed to be remarkably careful, as well as of the building itſelf, which had received no injury from the weather, a kind of ſhed having been erected over it, for its preſervation. Scuttles, ſerving as air-holes, appeared all round the building; perhaps they might alſo be intended for the additional purpoſe of firing from, with muſkets, ſhould neceſſity require it; for the whole erection ſeemed to indicate a deeper deſign than the natives were aware of. At a little diſtance from the front of this building ſtood a wooden croſs, on the tranſverſe part of which was this inſcription—*Chriſtus vincit*—"Chriſt overcometh"—and, on the perpendicular (which confirmed our conjecture, that the two ſhips were Spaniſh) was engraved—*Carolus* III. *imperat*, 1774—"In the reign of Charles the Third, 1774."—Captain Cook ſeeing this, very properly preſerved the memory of the prior viſits of the Engliſh, by inſcribing—*Georgius tertius Rex, Annis*, 1767, 1769, 1773, 1774, *et* 1777—"King George the Third, in the years 1767, &c."—After which, the Captain told the natives who were preſent, to beware of their Spaniſh viſitors, and not to be too fond of them. Near the foot of the croſs the iſlanders pointed out to us the grave of the commodore of the two ſhips, who died here, while they lay in the bay, on their firſt arrival. His name, as near as we could gather from their pronunciation, was Oreede. The Spaniards, whatever their views might have been in viſiting this iſland, ſeemed to have taken infinite pains to have ingratiated themſelves with the natives, who, upon all occaſions, mentioned them with the ſtrongeſt terms of reſpect, eſteem, and even veneration. On this occaſion, the Captain met with no chief of any conſiderable note, excepting the aged perſon above deſcribed. Waheiadooa, king of Tiaraboo, (as this part of the iſland is called by the natives) was now abſent; and we were afterwards informed, that, though his name was the ſame, he was not the ſame perſon as the chief whom Captain Cook had ſeen here in 1774; but his brother, a youth of ten years of age, who had ſucceeded the elder Waheiadooa. We alſo diſcovered, that the celebrated Oberea was dead; but that Otoo, and all our other friends were alive.

On the Captain's return from the houſe erected by the Spaniards, he found Omiah haranguing a very large company; and with difficulty could diſengage him to accompany him aboard, where he had the following important matter to ſettle with the ſhips companies. Knowing that Otaheite, and the neighbouring iſlands, could ſupply us plentifully with cocoa-nuts, the liquor of which is a moſt excellent beverage, he wiſhed to prevail upon thoſe under his command to conſent to be abridged, for a ſhort time, of their allowance of ſpirits to mix with water. But as this, without aſſigning ſome powerful reaſon, might have occaſioned a general murmur, he aſſembled our ſhip's company, to communicate to them the intent of the voyage, and the extent of our future operations. He took notice of the generous rewards offered, by parliament, to ſuch who ſhould firſt diſcover a communication between the Atlantic and Pacific Oceans, in the Northern Hemiſphere, as well as to thoſe who ſhall firſt penetrate beyond the 89th deg. of northern latitude. He ſaid, he did not entertain a doubt, that he ſhould find them ready to co-operate with him in attempting to one, or both theſe rewards; but, it would be neceſſary to be ſtrictly œconomical in the expenditure of our ſtores and proviſions, as we had not a chance of getting a ſupply after our departure from theſe iſlands. The Captain further obſerved, that the duration of our voyage would exceed by a year, at leaſt, what had been originally ſuppoſed, by our having loſt the opportunity of proceeding to the north this ſummer. He begged them to conſider the various obſtructions, and aggravated hardſhips, they muſt yet labour under, if neceſſity ſhould oblige us to be put to ſhort allowance, of any kinds of proviſions, in a cold climate. He therefore ſubmitted to them, whether it would not be moſt adviſeable to be prudent in time, and rather than run the riſk of having their ſpirits exhauſted, when they might be moſt wanted, to conſent to be without their grog at preſent, when we could ſupply its place with ſo excellent a liquor as that from the cocoa-nuts. He added, nevertheleſs, that he would leave the determination entirely to their own choice. This propoſal did not remain a moment under conſideration, and our commander had the ſatisfaction to find, that it was unanimouſly approved of. Upon this, he ordered Captain Clerke to make a ſimilar propoſal to his people, which they alſo readily agreed to. The ſerving of grog was therefore immediately ſtopped, except on Saturday nights, when all the men had a full allowance of it, to gratify them with drinking the healths of their female laſſes in England; leſt amidſt the pretty girls of Otaheite, they ſhould be totally forgotten.

Thurſday the 14th we began ſome neceſſary operations, ſuch as inſpecting the proviſions in the main and forehold; getting the caſks of beef, pork, &c. out of the ground tier, and putting a quantity of ballaſt in their place. The ſhip was ordered to be caulked; which ſhe ſtood in much need of; having, at times, made a conſiderable deal of water in our paſſage from the Friendly Iſles. We alſo put our cattle on ſhore, and appointed two of our hands to look after them, while grazing; not intending to leave any of them on this part of the iſland. The two following days it rained moſt inceſſantly; notwithſtanding which, we were viſited by the natives from every quarter, the news of our arrival having moſt rapidly ſpread. Waheiadooa, though at a conſiderable diſtance, had been informed of it, and in the afternoon of Saturday the 16th, a chief, named Etorea, who was his tutor, brought the captain two hogs, acquainting him, at the ſame time, that he himſelf would attend him the day after. He was punctual to his promiſe; for on the 17th, early in the morning, Captain Cook received a meſſage from Waheiadooa, notifying his arrival, and requeſting he would come aſhore to meet him. In conſequence of this invitation, Omiah and the captain prepared to make him a viſit in form. Omiah, on this occaſion, took ſome pains to dreſs himſelf, not after the manner of the Engliſh, nor that of Otaheite, or Tongataboo, or in the dreſs of any other country upon the earth; but in a ſtrange medley of all the habiliments and ornaments he was poſſeſſed of. Thus equipped, on landing, they firſt paid a viſit to Etary; who carried on a hand-barrow, accompanied them to a large building where he was ſet down: Omiah ſeated himſelf on one ſide of them, and the captain on the other. Waheiadooa, the young chief, ſoon after arrived, attended by his mother, and ſeveral principal men, who all ſeated themſelves oppoſite to us. One who ſat near the captain, made a ſhort ſpeech, conſiſting of ſeparate ſentences; part of which was dictated by thoſe about him. Another, on the oppoſite ſide, near the chief, ſpoke next; Etary after him, and then Omiah. The ſubjects of theſe orations were, Captain Cook's arrival, and his connections with them. Among other things, one of them told the captain, that the men of Reema deſired they would not ſuffer him to come into Oheitepeha Bay, if he ſhould return again to the iſland, for that it was their property; but that ſo far from regarding this requeſt, he was authoriſed now to ſurrender to him the province of Tiaraboo, and every thing that was in it. Hence it is evident, that theſe people are no ſtrangers to the policy of accommodating themſelves to preſent circumſtances. The young chief, at length, was directed to embrace Captain Cook; and, as a confirmation of this treaty of friendſhip, they exchanged names. After this ceremony was over, he and his friends accompanied the captain, to dine with him on board. Here Omiah prepared, as a preſent for Otoo, the king of the whole iſland, a maro, compoſed of red and yellow feathers; and, conſidering the place we were at, it was a preſent of great value. The captain endeavoured to prevail on him not to produce it now, wiſhing him to wait till he might have an opportunity of preſenting it to Otoo with his own hands. But he entertained too good an opinion of his countrymen, to be guided by his advice, he was determined to carry it aſhore, and to entruſt it with Waheiadooa, to be forwarded by him to Otoo, and added to the royal maro. By this management he weakly imagined, he ſhould oblige both chiefs; on the contrary, he highly diſobliged him, whoſe favour was of the moſt conſequence at this part of the iſland, without obtaining any reward from the other. The captain was prophetic on this occaſion; for Waheiadooa, as he expected, kept the maro for himſelf, and only ſent to Otoo about a twentieth part of what compoſed the magnificent preſent.

Tueſday the 19th, it blew a hard gale, and we were obliged to veer out 20 fathoms more of our beſt bower-cable, as we rode hard at our moorings. Moſt of the freſh proviſions, with which we had been ſupplied at the Friendly Iſles, having been expended in the voyage, orders were given to prohibit all trade with the natives, except for proviſions; and that only with ſuch perſons as were appointed purveyors for the ſhips; by which prudent regulation, freſh proviſions were ſoon procured in plenty, and every man was allowed a pound and a half of pork every day. In the morning, Captain Cook received from the young chief a preſent of ten hogs, ſome cloth, and a quantity of fruit. In the evening we exhibited and played off fire-works, which both pleaſed and aſtoniſhed the numerous ſpectators. This day ſome of our gentlemen, in their walks, diſcovered, as they thought, a Roman Catholic Chapel. They deſcribed the altar, which, they ſaid, they had ſeen, and every other conſtituent part of ſuch a place of worſhip, yet, at the ſame time, they intimated, that two perſons, who had the care of it, would not permit them to go in; on which account the Captain had the curioſity to ſurvey it himſelf. The ſuppoſed chapel proved to be a Toopapoo, wherein the body of the late Waheiadooa was depoſited, in a kind of ſtate. It lay in a pretty large houſe, encloſed with a low palliſade. The Toopapoo was remarkably neat, and reſembled one of thoſe little awnings over their large canoes. It was hung and covered with mats and cloths of a variety of colours, which had a beautiful effect. One piece of ſcarlet broad-cloth of the length of four or five yards, appeared conſpicuous among other ornaments, which probably had been received as a preſent from the Spaniards. This cloth, and ſome taſſels of feathers, ſuggeſted to our gentlemen the idea of a chapel; and their imagination ſupplied whatever elſe was wanting to create a reſemblance: hearing that the Spaniards had viſited this place might alſo operate on their minds upon this occaſion, and add to the probability of its being a chapel. Some ſmall offerings of fruits and roots ſeemed to be made daily at this ſhrine, ſeveral pieces being now freſh. Theſe were depoſited on a kind of altar, which ſtood without the palliſades; within which we were not permitted to enter. Two men conſtantly attend here, both night and day, as well to watch over the place, as to dreſs and undreſs the Toopapoo. When we came to view it, the cloth and its appendages were rolled up; but at the captain's requeſt, the two attendants placed it in order, but not till after they had dreſſed themſelves in white robes. The chief, we were informed, had been dead about 20 months.

On Friday the 22d, in the morning, the live ſtock were taken on board, and we prepared for ſea. The next day, while the ſhips were unmooring, Omiah, Captain Cook, and other gentlemen, landed, in order to take leave of the young chief. While we were converſing with him, one of thoſe perſons they call Eatooas, from a perſuaſion that they poſſeſs the ſpirit of the divinity, preſented himſelf before us. He had all the appearance of inſanity; and his only covering was a quantity of plantain leaves wrapped round his waiſt. He uttered what he had to ſay in a low ſqueaking voice, ſo as hardly to be underſtood: but Omiah ſaid he perfectly comprehended him, and that he was adviſing young Waheiadooa not to accompany Captain Cook to Matavai, an expedition we did not know he intended, nor had the captain ever made ſuch a propoſal to him. The Eatooa alſo predicted, that the ſhips would not arrive that day at Matavai. In this, however, he was miſtaken, though appearances, we confeſs, favoured his aſſertion, as, at the time, there was not a ſingle breath of wind in any direction. While he was delivering his prophecy, a heavy ſhower of rain came on, which occaſioned all to run for ſhelter, except himſelf, who affected to diſpiſe it. He continued ſqueaking about half an hour, and then retired. Little attention was paid to what he uttered; and ſome of the natives laughed at him. The captain aſked the chief whether the enthuſiaſt was an Earee, or a Tow-tow; he anſwered, that he was a bad man: and yet, notwithſtanding this reply, and the little notice taken of the mad prophet, ſuperſtition ſo far governs the natives, that they abſolutely believe ſuch perſons to be filled with the ſpirit of the Eatooa. Omiah ſeemed to be well inſtructed concerning them. He ſaid, that, during the fits, with which they are ſeized, they know not any perſon, and that if any one of the inſpired natives is a man of property, he will then give away every moveable he poſſeſſes, if his friends do not put them out of his reach; and, when he recovers, he ſeems not to have the leaſt remembrance of what he had done during the time the frenzy, or fit, was upon him. We now returned on board, and ſoon after, a light breeze ſpringing up at eaſt, we got under ſail, and the ſame evening anchored in Matavai Bay; but the Diſcovery did not get in till the next morning; conſequently the man's prophecy was half fulfilled. In a journal belonging to one on board the Diſcovery, we find this account of her ſetting ſail, and arrival at Matavai. "On the 23d, about nine o'clock, A. M. we weighed, and ſailed, accompanied with ſeveral canoes, though the wind blew a ſtorm, and we ſailed under double-reefed top-ſails. In the evening the Reſolution took her old ſtation in Matavai Bay; but the wind ſuddenly ſhifting, and the breeze coming full from the land, we were driven three leagues to the leeward of the bay, by which we were reduced to the neceſſity of working all night to windward, amidſt thunder, lightning, and rain, and among reefs of coral rocks, on which we every moment expected to periſh. We burnt falſe fires, and fired ſeveral guns of diſtreſs; but no anſwer from the Reſolution, nor could we ſee any object to direct us, during this perilous night. In the morning of the 24th, the weather cleared up, and we could ſee the Reſolution about three leagues to the windward of us, when a ſhift of wind happening in our favour, we took advantage of it, and by twelve at noon were ſafely moored within a cable's length of the Reſolution."

It is impoſſible to give an adequate idea of the joy, which the natives expreſſed on our arrival. The ſhores every where reſounded with the name of Cook: not a child that could liſp Toote was ſilent. The manner whereby theſe people expreſs their joy is ſo different from our ſenſations, that were we to ſee perſons ſtabbing themſelves with ſharks teeth, till their bodies were beſmeared with blood, we ſhould think they were pierced with the moſt frantic deſpair, and that it would be almoſt impoſſible to aſſuage their grief; whereas, beating their breaſts, tearing their hair, and wounding their heads and their bodies, are the moſt ſignificant ſigns of their gladneſs to ſee their friends. But, at the ſame time, they are ready to overwhelm you with kindneſs, and would give you, for the moment, all they have in the world, yet the very next hour, they will crave all back again, and, like children, teaze you for every thing you have got.

In the morning of this day being Sunday the 24th, Otoo, the king of the whole iſland, accompanied by a great number of the natives, in their canoes, came from Oparree, his place of reſidence, and having landed on Matavai point, ſent a meſſenger on board, intimating his deſire to ſee Captain Cook there. The captain accordingly went aſhore, attended by Omiah, and ſome of the officers. We found a vaſt multitude of people aſſembled on this occaſion, in the midſt of whom was the king, with his father, his two brothers, and three ſiſters. The captain ſaluted him, and was followed by Omiah, who kneeled and embraced his legs. Though Omiah had prepared himſelf for this ceremony, by dreſſing himſelf in his beſt apparel, and behaved with great reſpect and modeſty, yet very little notice was taken of him. He made the king a preſent of two yards of gold cloth, and a large taſſel of red feathers; and the captain gave him a gold laced hat, a ſuit of fine linen, ſome tools, a quantity of red feathers, and one of the bonnets worn at the Friendly Iſlands. This viſit being over, the king, and all the royal family, accompanied Captain Cook on board, followed by ſeveral canoes, plentifully laden with all kinds of proviſions. Each family owned a part, ſo that the captain had a preſent from every one of them; and each received from him a ſeparate preſent in return. Not long after, the king's mother came on board, bringing with her ſome proviſions and cloth, which ſhe divided between the captain and Omiah. Though the latter was but little noticed at firſt by his countrymen, they no ſooner gained information of his wealth, than they began to court his friendſhip. Captain Cook encouraged this as far as lay in his power, being deſirous of fixing him with Otoo. Intending to leave all our European animals at this iſland, we thought Omiah would be able to give the natives ſome inſtruction with regard to their uſe and management; and the captain was convinced, that the farther he was removed from his native iſland, the more he would be reſpected. But unfortunately, Omiah rejected his advice, and behaved in ſo imprudent a manner, that he ſoon loſt the friendſhip of Otoo, and of all the moſt conſiderable people at Otaheite. He aſſociated with none but vagabonds and ſtrangers, whoſe ſole intention was to plunder him; and if we had not interfered, they would not have left him a ſingle article of any value. This conduct drew upon him the ill will of the principal chiefs; who found that they could not obtain, from any one in either ſhip, ſuch valuable preſents as were beſtowed by Omiah on the loweſt of the natives. After dinner, a party of us accompanied Otoo to Oparree, taking with us ſome poultry, conſiſting of a peacock and hen, a turky cock and hen, three geeſe and a gander, one duck and a drake. All theſe we left at Oparree, in the poſſeſſion of Otoo; and the geeſe and ducks began to breed before we ſailed. We found there a gander, that Captain Wallis had given to Oberea ten years before; we alſo met with ſeveral goats, and the Spaniſh bull, a fine animal of his kind, whom they kept tied to a tree, near the habitation of Otoo. He now belonged to Etary, and had been conveyed from Oheitepeha, to this place, in order to be ſhipped for Bolabola. On Monday the 25th, we ſent to this bull the three cows we had on board; alſo our Engliſh bull; but the horſe, mare, and ſheep, were put aſhore at Matavai. Having thus diſpoſed of theſe animals, we were now, to our great ſatisfaction, eaſed of the extraordinary trouble and vexation that had attended the bringing this living cargo to ſuch a diſtance.

We ſhall here, for the entertainment of our readers, give an account of the reception the ſhips met with, on their arrival at this iſland, together with ſome other particulars, and tranſactions, all which we have taken from an original manuſcript ſent us by a gentleman, on board the Diſcovery. A few hours after we were moored in the bay of Oheitepeha, Omiah took an airing on horſeback, to the great aſtoniſhment of the inhabitants, many hundreds of whom followed him with loud acclamations. Omiah, to excite their admiration the more, was dreſſed cap-a-pee in a ſuit of armour, and was mounted and capariſoned with his ſword and pike, like St. George going to kill the dragon, whom he very nearly repreſented; only that Omiah had piſtols in his holſters, of which the bold ſaint knew not the uſe. Omiah, however, made good uſe of his arms; for when the crowd became clamorous and troubleſome, he every now and then pulled out a piſtol; and fired it among them, which never failed to ſend them ſcampering away.

The ſhips were no ſooner ſecured, than the ſailors began ſtripping them of every foot of rigging they had left; for certainly no ſhips were in a more ſhattered condition. Our voyage from New Zealand, if not from the Cape, might be ſaid to be one continued ſeries of tempeſtuous weather, ſuſpended only by a few intervals of ſunſhine; and the employment of our artificers at ſea and on ſhore, a laborious exertion of their faculties to keep us above water. Here it was not only neceſſary to ſtrip the main-maſt of the Diſcovery; but to take it out, and carry it on ſhore, to be properly ſecured. This was a work of no ſmall difficulty. Here too we found it neceſſary to unſhip our ſtores of every kind; to air and repack our powder; new bake that part of the bread that had contracted any dampneſs; to erect the forge on ſhore; in ſhort to ſet all hands at work to refit the ſhips for the further proſecution of the voyage.

A meſſenger was diſpatched from Captain Cook to king Otoo, to acquaint him with our arrival, and to deſire his permiſſion to ſend the cattle he had brought from England, to feed in the paſtures of Oparree. The king expreſſed his joy on the return of Captain Cook, and readily gave his conſent. He, at the ſame time, ordered one of his principal officers to accompany the meſſenger, in his return, and to take with him preſents of freſh proviſions for the commanders of both ſhips, and to invite them to dine with him the next day. This invitation was accepted, and it was agreed between the two Captains, that their viſit ſhould be made with as much ſtate as their preſent circumſtances would admit. The marines and muſic were therefore ordered to be in readineſs at an appointed hour, and all the rowers to be clean dreſſed. We were now in Matavai harbour; and, on the 25th, about noon, the commanders, with the principal officers, and gentlemen, embarked on board the pinnaces, which, on this occaſion, were decked in all the magnificence that ſilken ſtreamers, embroidered enſigns, and other gorgeous decorations, could diſplay. Omiah, to ſurprize the more, was cloathed in a Captain's uniform, and could hardly be diſtinguiſhed from a Britiſh officer. From Matavai to Oparree is about ſix miles; and we arrived at the landing-place at one o'clock, where we were received by the marines already under arms; and as ſoon as the company were diſembarked, the whole band of muſic ſtruck up a grand military march, and the proceſſion began. The road from the beach to the entrance of the palace (about half a mile) was lined on both ſides with natives from all parts, expecting to ſee Omiah on horſeback, as the account of his appearance on the other ſide of the iſland, as before related, had already reached the inhabitants on this. As he appeared to them in diſguiſe, he was not known; they were not, however, wholly diſappointed, as the grandeur of the proceſſion exceeded every thing of the kind they had ever ſeen. The whole court were likewiſe aſſembled, and the king, with his ſiſters, on the approach of Captain Cook, came forth to meet him. As he was perfectly known to them, their firſt ſalutations were frank and friendly, according to the known cuſtoms of the Otaheiteans; and when theſe were over, proper attention was paid to every gentleman in company, and that too with a politeneſs, quite unexpected to thoſe who had never before been on this iſland. As ſoon as the company had entered the palace, and were ſeated, ſome diſcourſe paſſed between the king and Captain Cook; after which, Omiah was preſented to his majeſty, and paid him the uſual homage of a ſubject to a ſovereign of that country, which conſiſts of little more than being uncovered before him, and then entered into a familiar converſation on the ſubject of his travels. The Earees, or kings of this country, are not above diſcourſing with the meaneſt of their ſubjects; but Omiah, by being a favourite of the Earees of the ſhips, was now conſidered as a perſon of ſome rank. The king, impatient to hear his ſtory, aſked him a hundred queſtions, before he gave him time to anſwer one. He enquired about the Earee-da-hai, or Great King of Pretanne; his place of reſidence; his court; his attendants; his warriors; his ſhips of war; his morai; the extent of his poſſeſſions, &c. Omiah did not fail to magnify the grandeur of the Great King. He repreſented the ſplendour of his court, by the brilliancy of the ſtars in the firmament; the extent of his dominions, by the vaſt expanſe of heaven; the greatneſs of his power, by the thunder that ſhakes the earth. He ſaid, the Great King of Pretanne had three hundred thouſand warriors every day at his command, cloathed like thoſe who now attended the Earees of the ſhips; and more than double that number of ſailors, who traverſed the globe, from the riſing of the ſun to his ſetting; that his ſhips of war exceeded thoſe at Matavai in magnitude, in the ſame proportion, as thoſe exceeded the ſmall canoes at Oparree. His majeſty appeared all aſtoniſhment, and could not help interrupting him. He aſked, if what he ſaid was true, where the Great King could find people to navigate ſo many ſhips as covered the ocean? and if he could have men, where he could find proviſions for ſo large a multitude? Omiah aſſured him, that in one city only, on the banks of a river, far removed from the ſea, there were more people, than were contained in the whole group of iſlands with which his majeſty was acquainted; that the country was full of large populous cities; notwithſtanding which proviſions were ſo plentiful, that for a few pieces of yellow metal, like thoſe of which he had ſeen many, (meaning the medals given by Captain Cook to the chiefs) the Great King could purchaſe as much proviſions as would maintain a ſailor for a whole year. That in the country of the Great King, there are more than a hundred different kinds of four footed animals, from the ſize of a rat, to that of a ſtage erected on an ordinary canoe; and that all theſe animals are numerous in their ſeveral kinds, and propagate very faſt. Omah having, by this relation, obviated Otoo's doubts, adverted to his firſt queſtions. He ſaid, the ſhips of war, in Pretanne, were furniſhed with poo-poos, (guns) each of which would receive the largeſt poo-poo his majeſty had yet ſeen, within it; that ſome carried a hundred and more of thoſe poo-poos, with ſuitable accommodations for a thouſand fighting men, and ſtowage for all ſorts of cordage, and warlike ſtores; beſides proviſions and water for a thouſand or two thouſand days; that they were ſometimes abroad as long, fighting with the enemies of the Great King; that they carried with them frequently, in theſe expeditions, poo-poos that would hold a ſmall hog, and which throw hollow globes of iron, of vaſt bigneſs, filled with fire and all manner of combuſtibles, and implements of deſtruction, to a great diſtance; a few of which, were they to be thrown among the fleet of Otaheite, would ſet them on fire, and deſtroy the whole navy, were they ever ſo numerous. The king ſeemed more aſtoniſhed than delighted at this narration, and ſuddenly left Omiah, to join the company that were in converſation with Captain Cook. By this time dinner was nearly ready, and as ſoon as the company were properly ſeated, was brought in by as many tow-tows as there were perſons to dine; beſides theſe, the king, the two commanders, and Omiah, had each of them two perſons of ſuperior rank to attend them. Their dinner conſiſted of fiſh and fowl of various kinds, dreſſed after their manner; barbicued pigs, ſtewed yams, and fruits of the moſt delicious flavour, all ſerved with an eaſe, and regularity, that is ſeldom to be found at European tables, when the ladies are excluded from making part of the company. As ſoon as dinner was over, we were conducted to the theatre; where a company of players were in readineſs to perform a dramatical entertainment. The drama was regularly divided into three acts: the firſt conſiſted of dancing and dumb ſhew; the ſecond of comedy, which, to thoſe who underſtood the language, was very laughable; for Omiah, and the natives, appeared highly diverted the whole time; the laſt was a muſical piece, in which the young princeſſes were the ſole performers. Between the acts ſome feats of arms were exhibited, by combatants with lances and clubs. One made the attack, the other ſtood upon the defenſive. He who made the attack brandiſhed his lance, and either threw, puſhed, or uſed it in aid of his club. He who was upon the defenſive, ſtuck the point of his lance in the ground, in an oblique direction, ſo that the upper part roſe above his head; and by obſerving the eye of his enemy, parried his blows, or his ſtrokes, by the motion of his lance, and it was rare that he was hurt by the club. If his antagoniſt ſtruck at his legs, he ſhewed his agility by jumping over the club; and if at his head, he was no leſs nimble in crouching under it. Their dexterity conſiſted chiefly in the defence, otherwiſe the combat might have been fatal, which always ended in good humour. Theſe entertainments, which generally laſt about four hours, are really diverting. In the hornpipe they excel the Europeans, their maſters, for they had contortions of the face and muſcles to the nimbleneſs of the foot that are inimitable, and would, in ſpite of our gravity, provoke laughter; their country dances are well regulated; and they have others of their own, that are equal to thoſe of our beſt theatres: their comedy ſeems to conſiſt of ſome ſimple ſtory, made laughable by the manner of delivery, ſomewhat in the ſtyle of the merry-andrews formerly at Bartholomew-fair. Had Omiah been of a theatrical caſt, he doubtleſs might have very much improved their ſtage, for their performers appear inferior to none in the powers of imitation. The play being over, and night approaching, our commanders took their leave, after inviting the king and his attendants to dine aboard the Reſolution. We were conducted to the water ſide in the ſame manner as we approached the palace, and were attended by the king and royal family. The next morning Omiah's mother, and ſeveral of his relations arrived. Their meeting was too unnatural to be pleaſing. We could not ſee a woman frantically ſtriking her face and arms with ſharks teeth, till ſhe was all over beſmeared with blood, without being hurt: as it conveyed no idea of joy to feeling minds, we never could be reconciled to this abſurd cuſtom. She brought with her ſeveral large hogs, with bread fruit, bananos, and other productions of the iſland of Ulietea, as preſents to the Captains, and ſhe and her friends received, in return, a great variety of cutlery, ſuch as knives, ſciſſars, files, &c. beſides ſome red feathers, which laſt were more acceptable than iron. They continued to viſit the ſhip, occaſionally, till ſhe quitted the iſland.

In the afternoon, King Otoo, with his chiefs and attendants, and two young princeſſes, his ſiſters, performers in the interlude of the preceding night, came on board, bringing with them ſix large hogs, with a proportionable quantity of fruits of various kinds. They were entertained, as uſual, with a ſight of all the curioſities on board the ſhip, and the young princeſſes, longing for almoſt every thing they ſaw, were gratified, to their utmoſt wiſhes, with bracelets of beads, looking glaſſes, bits of china, artificial noſegays, and a variety of other trinkets, of which they had one of each ſort, while, at the ſame time, the king and his chiefs amuſed themſelves with the carpenters, armourers, and other workmen, employed in the repairs of the ſhip, caſting longing eyes on their tools, and implements. In this manner they paſt their time till dinner was ready. Otoo, with his chiefs, dined with the Captains, the principal officers, and Omiah, in the great cabin, while the ladies were feaſted in an apartment ſeparated on purpoſe, and waited upon by their own ſervants. After dinner the king and his nobles were preſſed to drink wine; but moſt of them, having felt its power, declined taſting it; one or two drank a glaſs, but refuſed a ſecond one. When the tables were cleared, the ladies joined the company, and then horn-pipes and country dances, after the Engliſh manner, commenced, in which they joined with great good humour. What contributed not a little to increaſe the pleaſure of the king, was a preſent made him by Captain Cook of a quantity of the choiceſt red feathers that could be purchaſed at Amſterdam. Red feathers, (as has been already obſerved), are held in the higheſt eſtimation in Otaheite, and in all the Society Iſlands, but more particularly by the chiefs of the former iſland, by whom they are uſed as amulets, or rather as propitiations to make their prayers acceptable to the good ſpirit, whom they invoke with tufts of thoſe feathers in their hands, made up in a peculiar manner, and held up in a certain poſition with much ſolemnity. The ordinary ſorts of red feathers were collected by our officers and men all over the Friendly Iſlands; but thoſe that were now preſented to Otoo, were of a ſuperior kind, in value as much above the ordinary red feathers, as real pearls are in value above French paſte. They were taken from the heads of the paroquets of Tongataboo and Ea-oo-whe, which are of ſuperlative beauty, and precious in proportion to their fineneſs, and the vivid glow of their precious colours. Here we learnt, that Captain Cook, in his former voyage, being in great diſtreſs for proviſions, and having been plentifully ſupplied with them by Otoo, promiſed, that if ever he ſhould return to Otaheite, he would make his majeſty richer in ouravine (precious feathers) than all the princes in the neighbouring iſles. This gave riſe to an opinion, that it was to fulfil this promiſe, that we were led ſo far out of our way, as we have remarked in its proper place: but there is much more reaſon to conclude, that the ſtrong eaſterly winds which prevailed when we approached the ſouthern tropic, made our direct courſe to Otaheite impracticable. Had the Captain regarded his promiſe to Otoo as inviolable, he would moſt certainly have ſhaped his courſe from New Zealand to the Friendly Iſlands, the neareſt way, which would have ſhortened our voyage ſeveral months; unleſs we can ſuppoſe, that he had forgotten his promiſe, and that when he came within a few days ſail of his deſtined port, he recollected himſelf, and then changed his direction to enable him to keep his word. To which of theſe cauſes it was owing we muſt leave to futurity; for to us, who were not in the ſecret, it is to this day a myſtery. We were advanced ſome degrees to the eaſtward of Hervey's Iſles, which lie in latitude 19 deg. 18 min. S. and in 201 deg. E. longitude, before we altered our courſe to the weſtward, to make for Amſterdam, which lies in 21 deg. 15 min. S. and 185 deg. E. longitude, whereas the iſland of Ulietea, of which Omiah was a native, lay in latitude 16 deg. 45 min. and longitude 208 deg. 35 min. Why our courſe to the former was preferred to the latter, involves the myſtery.

Though all public trade was prohibited, as was uſual, till the ſhips ſhould be furniſhed with freſh proviſions, it was not eaſy to reſtrain the men on ſhore from trading with the women, who were continually enticing them to deſert. The ladies of pleaſure, in London, have not half the winning ways that are practiſed by the Oteheitean miſſes, to allure their gallants. With the ſeeming innocency of doves, they mingle the wilineſs of ſerpents. They have, however, one quality peculiar to themſelves, that is conſtancy. When once they have made their choice, it muſt be owing to the ſailor himſelf, if his miſtreſs proves falſe to him. No women on earth are more faithful. They will endeavour to gain all their lovers poſſeſs; but they will ſuffer no one elſe to invade their property, nor will they embezzle any part of it themſelves, without having firſt obtained conſent; but that conſent is not eaſily withheld; for they are inceſſant in their importunities, and will never ceaſe aſking, while the ſailor has a rag to beſtow. During our ſtay at this iſland, we had hardly a ſailor, who had not made a very near connection with one or other of the female inhabitants; nor, indeed, many officers who were proof againſt the allurements of the better ſort, who were no leſs amorous and artful, though more reſerved, than the inferior order. The temperature of the climate, the plenty of freſh proviſions, fiſh, fowl, pork, bread-fruit, yams, (a kind of ſweet potatoes, which they have the art of ſtewing with their pork in a very ſavoury manner) added to the delicious fruits of the iſland, contributed not a little to make our ſtay here even deſirable; nor did idleneſs get poſſeſſion of thoſe who were moſt indolently inclined: we had not a vacant hour between buſineſs and pleaſure that was unemployed: we wanted no coffee houſes to kill time; nor Vauxhalls for our evening entertainments. Every nightly aſſembly, in the plantations of this happy iſle, is furniſhed, by beneficent nature, with a more luxurious feaſt than all the dainties of the moſt ſumptuous champétre, though laviſhed with unlimited profuſion, and emblazoned with the moſt expenſive decorations of art. Ten thouſand lamps, combined and ranged in the moſt advantageous order, by the hands of the beſt artiſts, appear faint, when compared with the brilliant ſtars of heaven that unite their ſplendor, to illuminate the groves, the lawns, and ſtreams of Oparree. In theſe elyſian fields, immortality alone is wanting to the enjoyment of all thoſe pleaſures which the poet's fancy has conferred on the ſhades of departed heroes, as the higheſt reward of heroic virtue. But amidſt ſo many delights, it was not for human nature to ſubſiſt long without ſatiety. Our officers began to be punctilious, and our ſeamen to be licentious. Several of the latter were puniſhed ſeverely for indecency, in ſurpaſſing the natives by the ſhameleſs manner of indulging their ſenſual appetites; and two of the former went aſhore to terminate an affair of honour by the deciſion of their piſtols. It happened, that neither of them were dextrous markſmen: they vented their rage by the fury with which they began the attack; and, having diſcharged three balls each, they returned on board without any hurt, except ſpoiling a hat, a ball having pierced it, and grazed upon the head of him who wore it. It was, however, remarked, that theſe gentlemen were better friends than ever, during the remainder of the voyage. Thus far we have copied this journaliſt; and now proceed with our own hiſtory.

On Tueſday, the 26th, as the Captain intended to continue here ſome time, we ſet up our two obſervatories on Matavai Point: and adjoining to them two tents were pitched, for the reception of a guard, and of ſuch people as might be left on ſhore, in different departments. The command, at this ſtation, was intruſted to Mr. King, who likewiſe attended the aſtronomical obſervations. While we remained here, the crews of both ſhips were occupied in many neceſſary operations. The Diſcovery's main-maſt, that was ſhattered in the head, and carried on ſhore to be repaired, was rendered more firm than ever: the ſails that had been ſplit, and were otherwiſe rendered unfit for ſervice, were replaced, the cordage carefully examined; the maſt new rigged; the water caſks repaired; both ſhips new caulked; the bread inſpected: in ſhort, the whole repairs completed, with more celerity and ſtrength, than could have been expected in a place, where many conveniences were wanted, to fit us out for that part of our voyage which ſtill remained to be performed. This day a piece of ground was cleared for a garden, and planted with ſeveral articles, very few of which will, probably, be looked after by the natives. Some potatoes, melons, and pine-apple plants, were in a fair way of ſucceeding before we quitted the place. We had brought from the Friendly Iſlands ſeveral ſhaddock trees, which we planted here; and they will in all probability ſucceed, unleſs their growth ſhould be checked by the ſame idle curioſity which deſtroyed a vine planted at Oheitepeha by the Spaniards. Many of the natives aſſembled to taſte the firſt fruit it produced; but the grapes being ſtill ſour, they conſidered it as little better than poiſon, and trod it under foot. In that ſtate Omiah accidentally found it, and was rejoiced at the diſcovery; for he was confident, that if he had but grapes, he could eaſily make wine. Accordingly, he had ſeveral ſlips cut off from the tree, with an intention of carrying them away with him; and we pruned, and put in order, the remains of it. Before we had been two days at anchor in Matavai Bay, we were viſited by all our old friends, whoſe names are mentioned in the narrative of Captain Cook's former voyage. Not one of them came with empty hands; ſo that we had an amazing quantity of proviſions, without any apprehenſions of exhauſting the iſland, which preſented to our eyes every mark of the moſt exuberant fertility and abundance. Soon after we had arrived here, one of the iſlanders, whom the Spaniards had carried with them to Lima, paid us a viſit: but, in his exterior appearance, he was not diſtinguiſhable from the reſt of the countrymen. He ſtill remembered ſome Spaniſh words, among which the moſt frequent were *Si Sennor*. We alſo found here the young man whom we had called Oedidee, but whoſe real name is Heete-heete. Captain Cook had carried him from Ulietea, on board his ſhip, in 1773, and brought him back in the year following, after he had viſited the Friendly Iſlands, New Zealand, Eaſter Iſland, and the Marqueſas. He had come from Bolabola, of which he was a native, to Otaheite, about three months before, probably with the ſole view of gratifying his curioſity. He preferred the modes, and even dreſs of his countrymen to ours; for, though Captain Cook gave him ſome clothes, which our Board of Admiralty had thought proper to ſend for his uſe, he, after a few days, declined wearing them. This inſtance, as well as that of the perſon who had been at Lima, may be adduced as a proof of the ſtrong inclination of mankind, in general, to habits acquired at an early age; and it is, perhaps, no unreaſonable ſuppoſition, that even Omiah, who had imbibed almoſt the whole Engliſh manners, will, in a ſhort time after being left by us, return, like Oedidee, and the viſitor of Lima, to his own native garments, and his original mode of life.

On Wedneſday, the 27th, we were informed by a man who came from Oheitepeha, that two Spaniſh ſhips had anchored in that bay the preceding night; and, to confirm this intelligence, he produced ſome coarſe blue cloth, which, he ſaid, he had got out of one of the ſhips. He further ſaid, that Mateema was with the people, and that the two ſhips would be at Matavai in two or three days. Theſe, and ſome other circumſtances, which he mentioned, gave the ſtory ſo much the appearance of truth, that our Commodore diſpatched Lieutenant Williamſon in a boat, to look into Oheitepeha bay; and, in the mean time, both ſhips were put into a proper poſture of defence: for though England and Spain were at peace when we left England, we did not know but that a different ſcene might, by this time, have been opened. Upon enquiry, however, we had reaſon to imagine, that the relator of the ſtory had impoſed upon us; and this was put beyond all doubt, when Mr. Williamſon returned the day following, who made his report, that he had been at Oheitepeha, and did not find any ſhips there, nor had any been there ſince we left it. The people of this part of the iſland, where we were ſtationed, told us indeed at firſt, that it was a fiction, invented by thoſe of Tiaraboo, but with what view it was propagated among our people, we could not conceive, unleſs they might ſuppoſe, that the report would induce us to quit the iſland, and thus deprive the inhabitants of Otaheite-nooe of the advantages they might otherwiſe reap from our ſhips remaining there; the natives of the two parts of the iſland being inveterate enemies to each other. Since we arrived at Matavai, the weather had been very unſettled till the 29th, on account of which, before this time we were unable to get equal altitudes of the ſun, for aſcertaining the going of the time-keeper. In the evening of this day, the iſlanders made a precipitate retreat, both from our land ſtation, and from on board the ſhips. We conjectured that this aroſe from their knowing ſome theft had been committed, and apprehending puniſhment on that account. At length we became acquainted with the whole affair. One of the ſurgeon's mates had made an excurſion into the country, to purchaſe curioſities, and had taken with him four hatchets for the purpoſe of exchange. He having been ſo imprudent as to employ a native to carry them, the fellow took an opportunity of running off with ſo valuable a prize. This was the reaſon of the ſudden flight, in which Otoo himſelf, and all his family, had joined; and it was with difficulty that the Captain ſtopped them, after having followed them for the ſpace of two or three miles. As the Captain had determined to take no harſh meaſures for the recovery of the hatchets, that his people for the future might be more upon their guard againſt ſuch negligence, every thing reſumed quickly its former tranquillity.

Saturday the 30th, ſome meſſengers arrived from Eimeo with intelligence, that the people of that iſland were in arms; and that Otoo's partizans there had been compelled by the oppoſite party to retreat to the mountains. The quarrel between the two iſlands, which began in 1774, had partly ſubſiſted ever ſince. A formidable armament had ſailed ſoon after Captain Cook left Otaheite, in his former voyage; but the malecontents of Eimeo had made ſo gallant a reſiſtance, that the fleet had returned without ſucceſs; and now another expedition was deemed neceſſary. On the arrival of the meſſengers, the chiefs aſſembled at Otoo's houſe, where the captain actually was at that time, and had the honour of being admitted into their council. One of the meſſengers opened the buſineſs with a ſpeech of conſiderable length, the purport of which was to explain the ſituation of affairs at Eimeo, and to excite the Otaheiteans to arm on the occaſion. This opinion was oppoſed by others, who were againſt commencing hoſtilities; and the debate, for ſome time, was carried on with great order and decorum. At length, however, the whole aſſembly became very tumultuous, and the captain began to think, that their meeting would conclude like a Poliſh diet. But the contending chiefs cooled as faſt as they grew warm, and order was ſpeedily reſtored. In the end, the party for war prevailed; and it was reſolved, though not unanimouſly, that a ſtrong force ſhould be ſent to Eimeo. Otoo ſaid very little, during the whole debate. Thoſe of the council inclinable to war, applied to our commodore for his aſſiſtance; and all of them were deſirous of knowing what part he would take. Omiah was ſent for to act as his interpreter; but as he could not be found, the captain, being under a neceſſity of ſpeaking for himſelf, told them, as well as he could, that, as he was not perfectly acquainted with the diſpute, and as the natives of Eimeo had never given him the leaſt offence, he could not think of engaging in hoſtilities againſt them. With this declaration they either were, or appeared to be ſatisfied. The council was now diſſolved; but before the captain retired, Otoo deſired him to come again in the afternoon, and bring Omiah with him. A party of us accordingly waited upon him at the appointed time; and he conducted us to his father, in whoſe preſence the diſpute with the natives of Eimeo was again diſcuſſed. Captain Cook being very deſirous of effecting an accommodation, ſounded the old chief on that ſubject; but he was deaf to any ſuch propoſal, and fully determined to carry on hoſtilities. On our enquiring into the cauſe of the war, we were informed, that ſeveral years ago, a brother of Waheiadooa, of Tiaraboo, was ſent to Eimeo, at the deſire of Maheine, a popular chief of that iſland, to be their king; but had not been there many days, before Maheine, having cauſed him to be put to death, ſet up for himſelf, in oppoſition to Tierataboonooe, nephew of the deceaſed, who now became the lawful heir, or perhaps had been appointed by the people of Otaheite, to ſucceed to the government on the death of the other. Towha, who is related to Otoo, and chief of the diſtrict of Tettaha, and who had been commander- in chief of the armament ſent againſt Eimeo in 1774, happened not to be at Matavai at this time, and therefore was not preſent at the conſultations. It appeared, however, that he was no ſtranger to what had happened, and that he entered into the tranſactions with great eagerneſs and ſpirit: for on the rumour of a war, it was computed, that near 300 canoes were muſtered in Matavai Bay, with ſtages to each, whereon ſat from three to ſix chiefs in their warlike dreſſes; which ſeemed calculated for ſhew rather than uſe in battle. On their heads were large turbans wound round in many folds; over that a monſtrous helmit; and on their bodies, inſtead of the light airy dreſs worn in common, they were incumbered by many garments of their own cloth, which added indeed to their ſtature, but which muſt diſable them to exert their ſtrength in the day of battle. Men of fertile imagination, fond of tracing the analogy of antient cuſtoms, among the different nations of the world, might poſſibly diſcover ſome ſimilarity between theſe cumbrous dreſſes, and thoſe of the knights of antient chivalry, who fought in armour. It is certain that the Otaheitean who fights on foot muſt feel the ſame incumbrance from his heavy war-dreſs, as the antient knight, who fought on horſeback muſt have done, from his unwieldy armour; and there is no doubt but the former will, one time or other, be laid aſide in the tropical iſles, as much as the latter is now in every other part of the world.

On Monday the 1ſt of September, a meſſenger arrived from Towha, to acquaint Otoo, that he had killed a man to be ſacrificed to the Eatooa, with the view of imploring the aſſiſtance of the deity againſt Eimeo. This ſolemn oblation was to be offered at the great Morai, at Attahooroo, and Otoo's preſence was neceſſary on the occaſion. That ſuch kind of ſacrifices conſtitute a part of the religious ceremonies of the Otaheiteans, had been aſſerted by Monſ. Bougainville, on the teſtimony of the native whom he took to France, In our laſt viſit to Otaheite, we had ſatisfied ourſelves, that ſuch a practice, however inconſiſtent with the general humanity of the people, was here adopted. But this was one of thoſe uncommon facts, concerning the truth of which many will not be convinced, unleſs the relator himſelf has had ocular proof to ſupport his aſſertion; for this reaſon, Captain Cook requeſted of Otoo, that he might be allowed to accompany him, and, by being preſent at the ſolemnity, might obtain the higheſt evidence of its certainty. To this the king readily aſſented, and we immediately ſet out in the captain's boat, accompanied by our old friend Potatou, Mr. Anderſon and Mr. Webber; Omiah following us in his canoe. We landed in our way, on a ſmall iſland, lying off Tettaha, where we found Towha and his attendants. After a little converſation between the two chiefs, on the ſubject of the war, Towha addreſſed himſelf to the captain, ſoliciting his aſſiſtance. When the latter excuſed himſelf, Towha ſeemed diſpleaſed, thinking it rather extraordinary, that one who had conſtantly declared himſelf the friend of their iſland, ſhould now refuſe to fight againſt its enemies. Before we ſeparated, Towha gave to Otoo two or three red feathers, tied up in a tuft, and a half-ſtarved dog was put into a canoe that was to accompany us. Our party now reimbarked, taking with us a prieſt, who was to aſſiſt at the offering of the human ſacrifice. About two o'clock, we landed at Attahooroo, when Otoo deſired that the ſailors might be ordered to continue in the boat; and that Captain Cook, Mr. Anderſon, and Mr. Webber, would take off their hats as ſoon as they ſhould come to the Morai. To this we immediately proceeded, followed by numbers of men, and ſome boys; but not one woman was preſent. We found four prieſts with their aſſiſtants waiting for us; and on our arrival the ceremonies commenced. The dead body or ſacrifice was in a ſmall canoe, that lay on the beach, fronting the Morai. Two of the prieſts, with ſeveral of their attendants, were ſitting by the canoe that lay on the beach; the others at the Morai. Our company ſtopped at the diſtance of twenty or thirty paces from the prieſts. Here Otoo placed himſelf; our gentlemen, and a few others, ſtanding by him, while the bulk of the people were removed at a greater diſtance. One of the aſſiſtants of the prieſts now brought a young plantain tree, and laid it down before the king. Another approached, bearing a ſmall tuft of red feathers, twiſted on ſome fibres of the cocoa-nut huſk, with which he touched one of Otoo's feet, and afterwards retired with it to his companions. One of the prieſts who were ſeated at the Morai, now began a long prayer, and, at particular times, ſent down young plantain trees, which were placed upon the ſacrifice. During this prayer, one of the natives, who ſtood by the officiating prieſt, held in his hands two bundles, in one of which, as we afterwards found, was the royal maro; and the other, if we may be allowed the expreſſion, was the ark of the Eatooa. The prayer being finiſhed, the prieſts at the Morai, with their aſſiſtants, went and ſat down by thoſe who were upon the beach, carrying the two bundles with them. They here renewed their prayers; during which the plantain trees were taken, one by one, at various times, from off the dead body, which, being wrapped up in cocoa-leaves and ſmall branches, was now taken out of the canoe, and laid upon the beach. The prieſts placed themſelves round it; ſome ſtanding, and others ſitting; and one, or more of them, repeated ſentences for about ten minutes. The body was now ſtripped of the leaves and branches, and placed parallel with the ſea-ſhore. Then one of the prieſts ſtanding at the feet of the corpſe, pronounced a long prayer, in which he was joined occaſionally by others, each of them holding a tuft of red feathers in his hand. While this prayer was repeating, ſome hair was pulled off the head of the intended ſacrifice, and the left eye was taken out; both which being wrapped up in a green leaf, were preſented to the king, who, however, did not touch them, but gave to the man who brought them to him, the tuft of red feathers which he had received from Towha. This, with the eye and hair, were taken to the prieſts. Not long after this the king ſent them another bunch of feathers. In the courſe of this laſt ceremony, a king-fiſher making a noiſe, Otoo, turning to Captain Cook, ſaid, "That is the Eatooa;" and he ſeemed to conſider it as a favourable prognoſtic. The corpſe was then carried a little way, and laid under a tree, near which were fixed three thin pieces of wood neatly carved. The bundles of cloth were placed on a part of the Morai; and the tufts of red feathers were laid at the feet of the dead body, round which the prieſts ſtationed themſelves; and we were at this time permitted to go as near as we pleaſed. He, who ſeemed to be the chief prieſt, ſpoke for about a quarter of an hour, with different tones and geſtures; ſometimes appearing to expoſtulate with the deceaſed; at other times, aſking ſeveral queſtions; then making various demands, as if the dead perſon had power himſelf, or intereſt with the deity, to engage him to grant ſuch requeſts; among which, he deſired him to deliver Eimeo, Maheine its chief, the women, hogs, and other things of the iſland into their hands; which was, indeed, the expreſs object of the ſacrifice. He then prayed near half an hour, in a whining tone, and two other prieſts joined in the prayer, in the courſe of which one of them plucked ſome more hair from the head of the corpſe, and put it upon one of the bundles. The high prieſt now prayed alone, holding in his hand the feathers he had received from Towha. Having finiſhed, he gave them to another prieſt, who prayed in like manner: then all the tufts of feathers were placed upon the bundles of cloth, which concluded the ceremony at this place.

The dead body was now carried to the moſt conſpicuous part of the Morai, with the feathers, and the two bundles of cloth, while the drums beat ſlowly. The feathers and bundles were laid againſt a pile of ſtones, and the body at the foot of them. The prieſts having again ſeated themſelves round the corpſe, renewed their prayers, while ſome of their aſſiſtants dug a hole about the depth of two feet, into which they threw the victim, and covered it over with ſtones of earth. While they were depoſiting the body in the grave, a boy ſqueaked aloud, upon which Omiah told the captain, it was the Eatooa. In the mean time, a fire having been made, we ſaw a lean half ſtarved dog produced, and it was killed by twiſting his neck. The hair was then ſinged off, and the entrails being taken out, they were thrown into the fire, and left there to be conſumed; but the kidney, heart, and liver, were baked on heated ſtones. The carcaſs, after having been rubbed over with the blood of the animal, were with the liver, &c. laid down before the prieſts, who were ſeated round the grove, praying. They, for ſome time, uttered ejaculations over the dog, while two men, at intervals, beat very loud on two drums; and a boy ſcreamed in a loud ſhrill voice, three times. This, they ſaid, was to invite the Eatooa to feaſt on the banquet that they had provided for him. When the prieſts had finiſhed their prayers, the body, heart, liver, &c. of the dog, were placed on a whatta, or ſcaffold, about ſix feet in height, on which lay the remains of two other dogs, and of two pigs, that had been lately offered up. The prieſts and their attendants now gave a ſhout, and this proclaimed the ceremonies ended for the preſent. The evening being arrived, we were conducted to a houſe belonging to Potatou, where we were entertained and lodged for the night. Having been informed, that the religious rites were to be renewed the next day, we would not quit the place while any thing remained to be ſeen.

Early in the morning of Tueſday the 2nd, we repaired to the ſcene of action; and ſoon afterwards a pig was ſacrificed, and laid upon the ſame ſcaffold with the others. About eight, Otoo took our party to the Morai, where the prieſts, and a great multitude of people were by this time aſſembled. The two bundles occupied the place where they had been depoſited the preceding evening; the two drums were in the front of the Morai, and the prieſts were ſtationed beyond them. The king placed himſelf between the drums, and deſired the captain to ſtand by him. The ceremony commenced with bringing a young plantain tree, and laying it at the king's feet. A prayer was then repeated by the prieſts, holding in their hands ſeveral tufts of red, and a plume of oſtrich feathers; which the commodore had preſented to Otoo on his firſt arrival. When the prieſts had ended the prayer, they changed their ſtation, and placed themſelves between our gentlemen and the Morai. One of them, the ſame who had performed the principal part the preceding day, began another prayer, which continued near half an hour. During this prayer, the tufts of red feathers were put, one by one, upon the ark of the Eatooa. Not long after, four pigs were produced, one of which was killed immediately, and the three others were taken to a neighbouring ſty. One of the bundles was now untied; and it contained the Maro, with which the Otaheiteans inveſt their kings. When taken out of the cloth, it was ſpread on the ground, at full length, before the prieſts. It is a girdle about 15 feet in length, and one foot and a quarter in breadth, and is probably put on in the ſame manner as the common Maro, or piece of cloth, uſed by theſe iſlanders to wrap round the waiſt. It was ornamented with yellow and red feathers; but principally with the former. One end of it was bordered with eight pieces, about the ſize and figure of a horſe-ſhoe, whoſe edges were fringed with black feathers: the other end was forked, having the points of various lengths. The feathers were ranged in two rows, in ſquare compartments, and produced a pleaſing effect. They had been firſt fixed upon ſome of the cloth of the iſland, and then ſewed to the upper end of the pendant, which Captain Wallis had left flying on the ſhore, the firſt time of his arrival at Matavai. The prieſts pronounced a long prayer, relative to this part of the ceremony; and after it was ended the badge of royalty was folded up with great care, and put into the cloth. The other bundle, which we have already mentioned, under the name of the ark, was next opened at one end; but we were not permitted to approach near enough to examine its myſterious contents. The intelligence we obtained reſpecting its contents was, that the Eatooa (or rather, what is ſuppoſed to repreſent him) was concealed therein. This ſacred repoſitory is compoſed of the twiſted fibres of the huſk of the cocoa-nut, and its figure is nearly circular, with one end conſiderably thicker than the other. The pig that had been killed was by this time cleaned, and its entrails taken out. Theſe happened to have many of thoſe convulſive motions which frequently appear, in different parts, when an animal is killed; and this was conſidered as a very favourable omen to the intended expedition. After having been expoſed for ſome time, the entrails were carried and laid down before the prieſts; one of whom cloſely inſpected them, turning them for this purpoſe gently with a ſtick. Having been ſufficiently examined, they were thrown into the fire. The ſacrificed pig, and its liver, heart, &c. were now put upon the ſcaffold where the dog had been depoſited; and then all the feathers, except the oſtrich plume, being incloſed in the ark, an end was put to the whole ſolemnity.

We ſhall cloſe this account with a few other obſervations we made in the courſe of this morning. Four double canoes remained upon the beach the whole time, before the place of ſacrifice. A ſmall platform, covered with palm leaves, faſtened in myſterious knots, was fixed on the fore part of each of thoſe canoes; and this alſo is called a Morai. Some plantains, cocoa-nuts, bread-fruit, fiſh, and other articles, lay upon each of thoſe naval morais. The natives ſaid, that they belonged to the Eatooa, and that they were to attend the fleet that was to be ſent out againſt Eimeo. The unfortunate victim offered on this occaſion, was to appearance, a middle aged man, and one of the loweſt claſs of the people; but it did not appear that they had fixed upon him on account of his having committed any particular crime that deſerved death. It is certain, however, that they uſually ſelect ſuch guilty perſons for ſacrifices, or elſe vagabonds, who have no viſible way of procuring an honeſt livelihood. Having examined the body of the unhappy ſufferer, now offered up to the object of theſe people's adoration, we obſerved, that it was bloody about the head, and much bruiſed upon the right temple, which denoted the manner in which he had been killed; and we were informed, that he had been knocked on the head with a ſtone. The wretches who are devoted on theſe occaſions, are never previouſly apprized of their fate. Whenever any one of the principal chiefs conceives a human ſacrifice neceſſary, on any great emergency, he fixes upon the victim, and then diſpatches ſome of his truſty ſervants, who fall upon him ſuddenly, and either ſtone him to death, or beat out his brains with a club. The king is then acquainted with it, whoſe preſence is ſaid to be abſolutely neceſſary at the ſolemn rites that follow; and, indeed, in the late performance, Otoo bore a capital part. The ſolemnity itſelf is called Poore Eree, or the prayer of the chief; and the victim is termed Taata-taboo, or conſecrated man. The Morai, where the late ſacrifice was offered, is always appropriated for the burial of the king of the whole iſland, and likewiſe of his family, and ſome other perſons of diſtinguiſhed rank. It differs little except in extent, from the common Morais. Its principal part is a large oblong pile of ſtones, about thirteen feet in height, and contracted towards the top, with a quadrangular area on each ſide, looſely paved with pebbles, under which the bones of the chiefs are depoſited. Not far from the end neareſt the ſea, is the place of ſacrifice, where is a very large whatta, or ſcaffold, on which the offerings of fruits, and other vegetables are placed; but the animals are laid on a ſmaller one, and the human ſacrifices are interred under the pavement. We ſaw ſeveral reliques ſcattered about the place; ſuch as ſmall ſtones raiſed in various parts of the pavement, ſome with bits of cloth faſtened round them; others entirely covered with it; and upon the ſide of the large pile, fronting the area, are a great number of pieces of carved wood, in which their gods are ſuppoſed to reſide occaſionally. There is a heap of ſtones at one end of the large ſcaffold, with a ſort of platform on one ſide. On this are depoſited all the ſkulls of the human ſacrifices, which are taken up after they have remained under ground for ſome months. Juſt above them many of the carved pieces of wood are placed; and here the Maro, and the other bundle, ſuppoſed to contain the god Ooro, were laid, during the celebration of the late ſolemn rites. It is probable, that this barbarous cuſtom of offering human ſacrifices, prevails in all, or moſt of the iſlands of the Pacific Ocean, however diſtant from each other ſome of them may be. And though we ſhould ſuppoſe, that not more than one perſon is offered at one time, either at Otaheite, or other iſlands, yet theſe occaſions, we are inclined to think, occur ſo frequently, as to make a terrible havock of the human ſpecies; for the Captain counted no leſs than 49 ſkulls of former victims, lying before the Morai, at Attahooroo; and as none of thoſe ſkulls appeared to have ſuffered any conſiderable change, or decay, from the weather, it may be inferred, that a ſhort time had elapſed ſince the victims to whom they belonged had been offered. This horrid practice, though no conſideration whatever can make it ceaſe to be deteſtable, might, perhaps, be thought leſs detrimental, in ſome reſpects, if it contributed to impreſs any awe for the deity, or veneration for religion, upon the minds of the congregation: but this was far from being the caſe on the late occaſion; for though a vaſt number of ſpectators had aſſembled at the Morai, they ſhewed very little reverence for what was tranſacting: and Omiah happening to arrive, after the ceremonies had begun, many of the iſlanders thronged round him, and were engaged, for the remaining part of the time, in making him recount ſome of his adventures; to which they liſtened with great eagerneſs of attention, regardleſs of the ſolemn offices which their prieſts were then performing. Indeed, the prieſts themſelves, except the one who ſuſtained the principal part, either from their being familiarized to ſuch objects, or from their repoſing no great degree of confidence in the efficacy of their religious inſtitutions, maintained very little of that ſolemnity, ſo neceſſary to give to acts of devotion their proper effect. Their habit was but an ordinary one; they converſed together with great familiarity; and the only attempt they made to preſerve decorum, was by exerting their authority, to prevent the populace from encroaching on the ſpot, and to ſuffer our gentlemen, as ſtrangers, to come forward. They were, however, very candid in the anſwers which they gave to any interrogatories that were put to them, with regard to this human inſtitution. Being aſked what was the deſign of it? They replied, that it was an ancient cuſtom, and highly pleaſing to their god, who came and fed upon the ſacrifices; in conſequence of which, he granted the petitions of their prayers. It was then objected, that he certainly did not feed on theſe, as he was neither ſeen to do it, nor were the bodies of the ſacrificed animals ſoon conſumed; and that as to the corpſe of a human victim, they prevented his feeding on that, by interring it. In anſwer to theſe objections, which in our opinion were rather frivolous ones, they obſerved, that he came in the night, inviſibly, and fed only on the ſoul, or immaterial part, which (as theſe people ſay) remains about the place of ſacrifice, till the carcaſe of the victim is totally waſted by putrefaction. Human ſacrifices are not the only ſtrange cuſtoms that ſtill prevail among the inhabitants of Otaheite, though, in many reſpects, they have emerged from the brutal manners of ſavage life. Beſides cutting out the jaw bones of their enemies ſlain in battle, which they carry about with them as trophies, they, in ſome meaſure, offer up their bodies to the Eatooa; for after an engagement, in which they have come off victorious, they collect all the dead, and bring them to the Morai, where with great form and ceremony, they dig a large hole, and bury them all in it, as ſo many offerings to their divinities. They treat in a different manner their own chiefs that fall in battle. Their late king, Tootaha, Tubourai-tamaide, and another chief, who were ſlain in an engagement with thoſe of Tiaraboo, were brought to the Morai at Attahooroo; at which place the prieſts cut out their bowels before the great altar; and their dead bodies were afterwards interred in three different places, near the great pile of ſtones abovementioned; and the common men who loſt their lives in the battle, were all buried in one hole, at the foot of the ſame pile. This was performed the day after the battle, with much pomp and formality, amidſt a numerous concourſe of people, as a thankſgiving offering to the deity, for the victory they had obtained the preceding day. The vanquiſhed, in the mean time, had taken refuge in the mountains, where they remained upwards of a week, till the fury of the victors began to abate. A treaty was then ſet on foot, by which it was agreed, that Otoo ſhould be proclaimed king of the whole iſland; and the ſolemnity of inveſting him with the Maro, or badge of royalty, was performed at the ſame Morai, with great magnificence.

A gentleman on board the Diſcovery, to whoſe journal, in the narrative of this voyage, we have had frequently recourſe to, in his remarks on the manners and cuſtoms of the inhabitants of Otaheite, makes the following obſervations. The journaliſt, as he ſays, was attentive only to two facts, one of which, he found reaſon to believe, had been miſrepreſented, and the other unfairly related. The firſt reſpects the ſociety of the Arreoys, compoſed, as it was ſaid, of a certain number of men and women, aſſociated in lewdneſs, and ſo abandoned to all ſenſe of humanity, as to deſtroy the iſſue of their libidinous intercourſe; than which nothing could be more injurious to the characters of any people, than this diabolical practice aſcribed to this ſociety. There are in this, and the adjoining iſlands, perſons of a middle rank between the Manahounas, or the Yeomen, and the Earees, who having no concern in the government, nor any diſtinct property in the iſlands, aſſociate together for their own amuſement, and the entertainment of the public. Theſe travel from place to place, and from iſland to iſland in companies, not unlike thoſe of the ſtrolling players in England, only that they perform without pay; but that they cohabit indiſcriminately, one with another, ſo many men with ſo many women in common, is no otherwiſe true, than may be ſuſpected among the itinerant companies juſt mentioned; nor are they under any other reſtraints from marrying, than that the ſociety admits of no marriages among themſelves, nor of any married people to be of their ſociety, it being a rule with them never to be encumbered with children; if therefore it ſhould happen, that iſſue ſhould prove to be the conſequence of a caſual amour, there is no alternative, the mother muſt either quit the ſociety, or ſome how or other diſpoſe of the child, which ſome of them do there, as many unfortunate girls do here, by ſecretly making away with them, to avoid infamy, it being equally diſgraceful there to be found with child, while members of the ſociety of Arreoys, as it is for women here to be found without huſbands. Oedidee, who made the voyage to the ſouthward with Captain Cook, in his former expedition to diſcover a ſouthern continent, came to pay his reſpects to his patron and friend. He brought with him a wife whom he had lately married, which diſcredits the notion that was adopted by former voyagers, that thoſe who belonged to the ſociety of Arreoys were ſworn to celibacy. Either this man muſt have been an impoſtor, or the fact juſt mentioned cannot be true.

The other fact, which the writer took pains to determine, was, whether the beaſtly cuſtom imputed to them, of gratifying their paſſions without regard to perſons or places, was well founded? And he ſolemnly declares, that the groſſeſt indecencies he ever ſaw practiſed while on the iſland, were by the licentiouſneſs of our own people, who, without regard to character, made no ſcruple to attempt openly and by force, what they were unable to effect with the free voluntary conſent of the objects of their deſire; for which ſeveral of them were ſeverely puniſhed. To aſſert, therefore, that not the leaſt trace of ſhame is to be found among theſe people, in doing that openly, which all other people are naturally induced to hide, is an injurious calumny, not warranted by cuſtom, nor ſupported by the general practice, even of the loweſt claſs of individuals among them. This people, concludes our journaliſt, have one cuſtom in common with the Neapolitans and Malteſe, which ought not to be forgotten, and that is, their fiſhing in the night, and repoſing themſelves in the day; like them too, they burn torches while they fiſh, which they make of the oil drawn from the cocoa-nut.

CHAP. VIII.

The party at the concluſion of the Solemnity at the Morai, re-embarked for Matavai—Conference with Towha reſpecting the human Sacrifice—Private Heevas among the Natives—A treat given by Oedidee, and another by Omiah—Exhibition of Fire-works—A preſent of Cloth made in an unuſual Manner—A method of embalming the dead Body of a Chief—A ſecond human Sacrifice—The two Captains entertain the Natives by riding on Horſe-back—Attention of Otoo to prevent Thefts—Animals given him by Captain Cook—Audience to the Deputies of a Chief—A mock fight exhibited by two War-canoes—Naval ſtrength of the Society Iſlands—Manner of conducting a War—The day for the two Ships ſailing fixed—Peace made with Eimeo—Debates in conſequence of this—Otoo's conduct cenſured—A ſolemnity on the occaſion—Obſervations—Otoo's policy—Omiah receives a preſent of a war canoe—Otoo's preſent and meſſage to the King of Great Britain—An Account of the modes of Traffic, and the friendly Treatment we received at Otaheite—More particulars reſpecting the expedition of the Spaniards—Their endeavours to inculcate a mean opinion of the Engliſh—Omiah's jealouſy of another Traveller—The Reſolution and Diſcovery depart from Otaheite, and anchor at Taloo in the Iſland of Eimeo—Two Harbours, Toloo, and Parowroah deſcribed—Viſit from Maheine, and a Deſcription of his Perſon—Preparations made for ſailing—Detained by having a Goat ſtolen—Another purloined, and ſecreted—Meaſures taken, and an expedition croſs the Iſland to recover it—Houſes and Canoes burnt—Continuation of Hoſtilities threatened—The Goat reſtored—A deſcription of the Iſland of Eimeo—The two ſhips ſet ſail, and arrive at Huaheine—An aſſembly of the Chiefs—Omiah's Eſtabliſhment in this Iſland agreed to unanimouſly—In conſequence of this a Houſe is built for him, and ſteps taken to enſure his ſafety—A Thief puniſhed with uncommon Severity—Animals left with Omiah—His Weapons—Entertainments—Inſcription on his Houſe—Behaviour at parting—Remarks on his Character and general Conduct—Obſervations on the two New Zealanders who remained with him—The two Ships proceed to Ulietea—A Deſerter belonging to the Marines recovered—Intelligence from Omiah—Inſtructions to Captain Clerke—Two of the Mariners deſert—The Chief's Son, Daughter and her Huſband, confined on board the Diſcovery—A conſpiracy formed by the Natives againſt the two Captains—The Deſerters recovered, and the Chief's family ſet at Liberty—The Reſolution and Diſcovery prepare for their Departure from Ulietea.

ON Tueſday, the 2nd of September, we re-embarked, in order to return to Matavai, revolving in our minds the extraordinary ſcene at the morai, as related in the preceding chapter, and to which we had been eye-witneſſes. In the way, we paid a viſit to Towha, who had continued in the little iſland, where we met him the day before. Some converſation paſſed between him and Otoo; and the latter entreated Captain Cook, once more, to join them as an ally in their war againſt Eimeo. By his poſitive refuſal he entirely loſt the good opinion of this chief. Before we took our leave, Otoo took an occaſion to ſpeak of the ſolemnity, at which we had been preſent. Among other interrogatories, he aſked particularly, If it anſwered our expectations? What opinion we entertained of its efficacy? And, whether ſuch religious acts and ceremonies were frequent in our own country? We had been ſilent during the celebration of the horrid ceremony; but, at the cloſe of the extraordinary ſcene, freely expreſſed our ſentiments on the ſubject to Otoo, and his attendants; conſequently, Captain Cook did not conceal his deteſtation of it, in this converſation with Towha. Excluſive of the barbarity of the bloody cuſtom, he urged the unreaſonableneſs of it, alledging, that ſuch a ſacrifice, inſtead of making the Eatooa propitious to their nation, would excite his vengeance; and that, from this very circumſtance, he concluded, their intended expedition againſt Maheine would be unſucceſsful. This was proceeding to great lengths upon conjecture; but there was little danger of being miſtaken; for reſpecting this war, three parties were formed in the iſland, one violent in its favour, another indifferent about it, and a third the avowed ſupporters of Maheine, and his cauſe. Under theſe circumſtances, it was not probable that ſuch a plan of military operations would be ſettled, as could inſure ſucceſs. Omiah acted as interpreter, in conveying the Captain's ſentiments on this ſubject to Towha, and he ſupported his objections with ſuch ſpirit, that the chief appeared to be extremely angry; eſpecially, on being informed, that if he had taken away the life of a man in England, as he had done here, his rank would not have protected him from an ignominious death. Upon this he exclaimed, maeno! maeno! (vile! vile!) and would not hear a ſyllable more about it. Many of the natives were preſent at this debate; particularly the ſervants and attendants of Towha; and when Omiah mentioned the puniſhment that would be inflicted, in England, upon the greateſt chief, if he dared to kill the meaneſt ſervant, they liſtened very attentively; and perhaps, on this ſubject, they thought differently from their maſter. Leaving Towha, we proceeded to Oparree, where Otoo ſolicited us to paſs the night. We landed in the evening, and on our way to his habitation, had an opportunity of obſerving how theſe people amuſe themſelves in their private heevas. We ſaw about a hundred of them ſitting in a houſe; in the midſt of whom were two women, and an old man behind each of them, beating gently on a drum, and the women, at intervals, ſinging with great ſoftneſs and delicacy. The aſſembly were very attentive, and ſeemed, as it were, abſorbed in the pleaſure the muſic gave them; few of them taking any notice of us, and the performers never once ceaſed. When we arrived at Otoo's houſe it was almoſt dark. Here we were entertained with one of their public heevas, or plays, in which his three ſiſters repreſented principal characters. This they call a heeva raa, and no perſon is ſuffered to enter the houſe, or area, where it is exhibited. This is always the caſe, when the royal ſiſters are performers. There is a ſameneſs in their drama, that admits of little or no variation, as, perhaps, to foreigners, who are unacquainted with the language and manners of a country, there may appear to be in every ſtage exhibition, wherever performed. Be that as it may, we now beheld a more numerous and brilliant company of performers aſſembled for our entertainment, than we had ever ſeen on any ſtage in the tropical iſlands before. On this occaſion, the dreſſes were entirely new, and by far more elegant and pictureſque than formerly; the number of dancers were increaſed; and they acquitted themſelves in a very diſtinguiſhed manner. Ten young ladies compoſed the firſt group, with their heads moſt magnificently ornamented with beads, red feathers, ſhells of the moſt beautiful colours, and wreathed with flowers in ſo elegant a ſtyle, as hardly to be excelled. A party of warriors were next introduced, dreſſed in their war habits, conſiſting, as has already been obſerved, of different coloured cloth, of their own manufacture, ſo ingeniouſly faſhioned, and blended together with ſo much art, as, with the helmits that cover their heads, to fill the ſtage with men, of whoſe majeſtic figure it is not eaſy to conceive an idea. Theſe were armed with ſpears, lances, and clubs; and exhibited all the forms of attack and defence, which are practiſed in real action. The principal performers were the king's brother, his three ſiſters, and we may add, a chief of a gigantic ſtature, who diſplayed ſuch ſurprizing grimaces and diſtortions of face and countenance, by way of provocation and challenge, as were not only laughable in ſome attitudes, but terrible in others. After theſe diſappeared, the players came forward, and performed a more ſerious piece than we had yet ſeen, at which the natives ſat graver and more compoſed than uſual; though ſome comic interludes, wherein four men were performers, ſeemed to afford greater entertainment to the numerous audience. The whole concluded with a dance of ten boys, dreſſed, in every reſpect like the girls in the firſt ſcene, with their hair flowing in ringlets down their ſhoulders, and their heads ornamented in a very beautiful ſtyle.

The next morning being the 3d, we proceeded to Matavai, leaving Otoo at Oparree; but his mother, ſiſters, in ſhort all the royal family, and many women, attended us on board, and Otoo followed a ſhort time after. During our abſence from the ſhips, the ſupply of fruit had been ſcanty, nor had they many viſitors; but after our return we had plenty both of company and proviſions. On the 4th a party of us, among whom was Otoo, dined aſhore with Omiah, who had provided excellent fare, conſiſting of fiſh, fowls, pork, and puddings. Dinner being over, the Captain accompanied Otoo to his houſe, where he found all his ſervants very buſy in getting a quantity of proviſions ready. Among other articles was a large hog, which they killed in his preſence. There was alſo a large pudding, the whole proceſs of which the Captain ſaw. It was compoſed of bread fruit, plantains, taro, and pandanus nuts, each raſped, ſcraped, or beat up very fine, and baked by itſelf. A quantity of the juice of cocoa-nut-kernels was put into a large tray, or wooden veſſel; in which the other articles from the oven were put, together with ſome hot ſtones, in order to make the contents ſimmer. Three or four perſons were employed in ſtirring up the ſeveral ingredients, till they were perfectly incorporated, and the juice of the cocoanut was turned to oil; and, at laſt, the whole maſs was nearly of the conſiſtency of a haſty pudding. Some of theſe puddings are excellent, and few that we make in England equal them. This being made, and the hog baked, they, together with two living hogs, ſome bread-fruit, and cocoa-nuts, were ſent on board the Reſolution, followed by Otoo, and all the royal family.

Friday the 5th, in the evening, a young ram of the cape breed, and carefully brought up on board our ſhip, was killed by a dog; an accident the more regretted, by its being the only one we had of that kind, and one only of the Engliſh breed was now remaining. On the 7th, at the cloſe of day, we exhibited ſome fireworks, before a vaſt concourſe of people, many of whom were highly entertained, but the greater number were much terrified with the exhibition; inſomuch, that they could hardly be prevailed on to keep together, to the concluſion of the entertainment. A table rocket was the laſt. It flew off the table, and diſperſed the whole crowd in an inſtant; even the moſt reſolute of them flew with the utmoſt precipitation. On Monday, the 8th, a party of us dined with Oedidee, who made the trip to the ſouthward with Captain Cook, in his former voyage. Our table was furniſhed plentifully with fiſh of divers ſorts, and pork. The hog, which weighed about thirty pounds, was alive, dreſſed, and on the table, within the hour. Soon after we had dined, Otoo came to us, and aſked the Captain, if his belly was full? who anſwered in the affirmative. "Then come along with me," ſaid Otoo. The Captain attended him to his father's, where he ſaw ſeveral people employed in dreſſing two girls, with fine cloth, after a very ſingular faſhion. There were ſeveral pieces, one end of each was held over the heads of the girls, while the remainder was wrapped round their bodies under the arm-pits. The upper ends were then let fall, and hung in folds to the ground, over the other, ſo as to bear ſome reſemblance to a circular hoop-petticoat: laſtly, round the outſide of all, were wrapped ſeveral pieces of cloth, of various colours, which conſiderably increaſed the ſize; it being five or ſix yards in circuit; and the weight of this ſingular attire was as much as the poor girls could well ſupport. To each were hung two taamees, or breaſt-plates, in order to embelliſh the whole, and give it a pictureſque appearance. Thus equipped, they were taken on board, together with ſeveral hogs, and a quantity of fruit, the whole being a preſent to our Commander from Otoo's father. Thoſe who are dreſſed in this manner, are called atee; but, this ceremony is never performed, except where large preſents of cloth are to be made. We never ſaw it practiſed upon any other occaſion; but, both Captain Cook and Captain Clarke had cloth preſented them afterwards wrapped round the bearers in the ſame manner. On the 9th, we received a preſent of five hogs, and ſome fruit, from Otoo; and one hog, and ſome fruit from each of his ſiſters. Other proviſions were alſo in abundance; and great quantities of mackarel having been caught by the natives, for two or three days ſucceſſively, ſome of them were ſold at the tents, and in the ſhips; indeed, Otoo was equally attentive, to ſupply our wants, and contribute to our amuſement. On the 10th he treated a party of us at Oparree with a play; in which his three ſiſters were again performers, having each of them new and very elegant dreſſes. This day Captain Cook went to ſee an embalmed corpſe, near the reſidence of Otoo. On enquiry, it was found to be the remains of Tee, a chief well known to him, when he laſt viſited this iſland. It was lying in an elegant toopapaoo, in all reſpects ſimilar to that at Oheitepeha, in which the remains of Waheiadooa are depoſited. We found the body was under cover, within the toopapaoo, and wrapped up in cloth. At the Captain's deſire, the perſon who had the care of it, brought it out, and placed it on a kind of bier, ſo as to allow a perfect view of it. The corpſe having been thus exhibited, he ornamented the place with mats and cloths, diſpoſed in ſuch a manner as to produce a pleaſing effect. The body was entire in every part; putrefaction ſeemed hardly to be begun; and not the leaſt diſagreeable ſmell proceeded from it; though this is one of the hotteſt climates, and Tee had been dead above four months. There was, indeed, a ſhrinking of the muſcular parts and eyes, but the hair and nails were in their original ſtate, and the ſeveral joints were pliable. On enquiry into the method of thus preſerving their dead bodies, we were informed, that ſoon after they are dead, they are diſembowelled, by drawing out the inteſtines, and other viſcera; after which the whole cavity is ſtuffed with cloth; that, when any moiſture appeared, it was immediately dried up, and the bodies rubbed all over with perfumed cocoa-nut oil, which, frequently repeated, preſerved them ſeveral months; after which they moulder away gradually. Omiah told us, that the bodies of all their great men, who die a natural death, are thus preſerved, and expoſed to public view a conſiderable time after. At firſt, they are exhibited every fine day, afterwards the intervals become greater, and at laſt they are ſeldom to be ſeen. In the evening we took leave of Otoo, and departed from Oparree.

On Friday the 12th, all the royal family, except the king himſelf, honoured us with a viſit. The chief, they ſaid, was gone to Attahooroo, to aſſiſt at another human ſacrifice, ſent from Tiaraboo, to be offered up at the Morai. This ſecond inſtance, within ſo ſhort a period, was a melancholy proof, that the victims of this bloody ſuperſtition are very numerous among this humane people. The Captain would have been preſent at this ſacrifice alſo, had he been earlier informed of it, but now it was too late. For the ſame reaſon, he miſſed being at a public tranſaction, the preceding day, when the king, with great ſolemnity, reſtored to the adherents of the late king Tootaha, the lands and poſſeſſions, of which, after his death, they had been deprived. On the 13th Otoo returned from exerciſing his royal duties; and on the 14th, we were honoured with his company, when the two Captains, for the firſt time, mounted on horſeback, and rode round the plain of Matavai, to the aſtoniſhment of a vaſt train of ſpectators, who gazed upon them with as much ſurpriſe as if they had been centaurs. Both the horſe and mare were in good caſe, and looked extremely well. What the Captains had began was repeated daily, by one or other of our people; and yet the curioſity of the natives continued unabated. After they had ſeen and underſtood the uſe of theſe noble animals, they were exceedingly delighted with them; and we were of opinion, that they conveyed to them a better idea of the greatneſs of other nations, than all the novelties that had hitherto been carried among them. On the 15th, Etary, or Olla, the god of Bolabola, removed from our neighbourhood to Oparree, attended by ſeveral ſailing canoes. It was ſaid, Otoo did not approve of his being ſo near our ſtation, where his people could conveniently invade our property. Otoo, we acknowledge, took every prudent method to prevent thefts and robberies, and it was owing principally to his regulations that ſo few were committed. He had erected a ſmall houſe or two behind our poſt, and two others near our tents, between the river and the ſea. Some of his people kept watch continually at all thoſe places; and as his father reſided uſually on Matavai Point, we were, in a manner, ſurrounded by them. They not only defended us in the night from thieves, but they had an opportunity of obſerving every thing that paſſed in the day, and were ready to receive contributions from ſuch girls, as were privately connected with our people, which was uſually done every morning; ſo that the meaſures he had taken to ſecure our ſafety, anſwered the more eſſential purpoſe of enlarging his own profits. Otoo acquainted Capt. Cook, that his preſence was required at Oparree, where an audience was to be given to the great perſonage from Bolabola, and deſired his company thither. The Captain conſented readily, expecting to meet with ſomething deſerving of notice.

Accordingly, Tueſday the 16th, our party, among whom was Mr. Anderſon, ſet out. Nothing, however, occurred, that was intereſting or curious. Etary and his followers preſented ſome coarſe cloth, and hogs, to Otoo, with a ſet ſpeech. After this, a conſultation was held between them and ſome other chiefs, about their expedition to Eimeo. Etary, at firſt, diſapproved of it; but his objections were, at length, over-ruled. It appeared, indeed, the next day, it was too late to deliberate on this buſineſs; for Towha, Potatou, and another chief, had already gone on the expedition, with the fleet of Attahooroo, and, in the evening, a meſſenger arrived with intelligence, that they had reached Eimeo; that there had been ſome ſkirmiſhes; but that the loſs, or advantage, on either ſide, had been very inconſiderable. On the 18th, in the morning, Captain Cook, Mr. Anderſon, and Omiah, went again to Oparree, accompanied by Otoo, taking with them the ſheep which the Captain intended to leave upon the iſland. Theſe were an Engliſh ram and ewe, and three Cape ewes, all which the Captain made a preſent of to Otoo. Each of the three cows had taken the bull; he therefore thought it adviſeable to divide them, and carry one part to Ulietea. With this view he ordered them to be brought before him, and propoſed to Etary, that if he would leave his Spaniſh bull with Otoo, he ſhould have our Engliſh bull and one of the cows. To this propoſal Etary, at firſt, ſtarted ſome objections; but, at laſt, agreed to it. However, as the cattle were putting into the boat, one of Etary's followers oppoſed the making any exchange whatever. Upon this, and the Captain ſuſpecting, that Etary had agreed to the arrangement, for the preſent, only to pleaſe him, he dropped the idea of an exchange; and determined finally to leave them all with Otoo; whom he ſtrictly enjoined not to ſuffer them to be removed from Oparree, till he ſhould have got a ſtock of young ones; which he might then diſpoſe of to his friends, or ſend to the neighbouring iſlands. This matter being ſettled, our gentlemen left Etary, and attended Otoo to another place, not far diſtant, where they found the ſervants of a chief, waiting with a hog, a pig, and a dog, a preſent from their maſter to the king. Theſe were delivered, with the uſual ceremonies, and an harangue, in which the ſpeaker enquired after the health of Otoo, and of all his principal people. This compliment was re-echoed in the name of Otoo, by one of his miniſters; and then the diſpute with Eimeo was formally diſcuſſed. The deputies of the chief were advocates for proſecuting the war with vigour, adviſing Otoo to offer a human ſacrifice on the occaſion. Another chief, who conſtantly attending the perſon of Otoo, took the other ſide of the queſtion, and ſupported his opinion againſt a war, with great ſtrength of argument. Otoo received repeated meſſages from Towha, urging him to haſten to his aſſiſtance; and the

Captain was now convinced that he never entered heartily into the ſpirit of this war. Having dined with Otoo, our party returned to Matavai, leaving him at Oparree.

On Friday, the 19th, we were very ſparingly ſupplied with fruit, as we had been the day before. Otoo being informed of this, he, and his brother, who had particularly attached himſelf to Captain Clerke, came from Oparree, with a large ſupply for both ſhips. Next day, the 20th, all the royal family came with preſents, ſo that now we had more proviſions than we could conſume. Our water and wood having been already taken on board, nothing remained but to ſtrike the tents, and bring off the things belonging to the officers and men who were ſtationed on ſhore; and the Commodore began to think of quitting the iſland, that he might have ſufficient time for viſiting others in the neighbourhood. We therefore removed our obſervatories and inſtruments from the ſhore, and bent the ſails. Several of the ſailors being very deſirous to ſtay at Otaheite, Otoo intereſted himſelf in their behalf, and endeavoured to prevail on Captain Cook to grant their requeſt; but he rejected peremptorily every application of that kind, though often repeated; nor would he ſuffer any of the natives to enter on board, though many would gladly have accompanied us wherever we intended to ſail, and that too after they were aſſured, that we never intended to viſit their country any more. Some of the women alſo would have followed their Ehoonoas, or Pretanne huſbands, could they have been permitted; but our Commander was equally averſe to the taking any of the natives away, as to the leaving any of our own people behind. He was ſenſible, that when once cloyed with enjoyment, they would reciprocally pine for home, to which it would not be in their power to return; and that for a little preſent gratification, they would riſque the happineſs of the remaining part of their lives. The king, when he found he could not obtain his wiſhes in this reſpect, applied to Captain Cook for another favour, which was, to allow our carpenters to make him a cheſt, or preſs, to ſecure the treaſures he had accumulated in preſents: he even begged, that a bed might be placed in it, where he intended to ſleep. This requeſt the Captain readily granted; and while the workmen were employed, in making this uncommon piece of furniture, they were plentifully ſupplied with barbicued hogs, and ſuch dainties as the country afforded, and were ſo carefully atended and protected, that they did not loſe ſo much as a ſingle nail. It was ſome of theſe workmen that Otoo was ſo deſirous to retain; but they were of too much conſequence on board to be parted with, had there been no other motive for bringing them away; nor was Otoo much concerned about the departure of the reſt. While he was conſtant in attending the operations of our carpenters, Omiah had frequent conferences with him, on the ſubject of his travels. He aſtoniſhed him more by the relation he gave of the magnificence of the Morais in Pretanne, than by all the wonders with which he had before ſurprized him. When he told him that the king's morai was open to all comers, and that the perſons of the deceaſed kings were to be ſeen as perfect to appearance as when in the vigour of youth, he ſeemed to lament, that his date of exiſtence was to be limited with his life; and that his remains were to periſh, while his Morai preſerved no memorial, that he had ever had a being. Omiah endeavoured to impreſs him with an idea of the magnificence of the tombs of the dead that were to be ſeen in the morais of Pretanne; but having nothing to compare them to, he was unable to make himſelf ſufficiently underſtood; nor was he more ſucceſsful in deſcribing the ſolemn grandeur of the places of public worſhip, where the people aſſembled every ſeventh day, and at other ſtated times to offer up their prayers to the good ſpirit. Of the ſplendor of the theatres he could ſpeak more intelligibly. When Omiah told Otoo of the magnitude of the palaces, and houſes, in Pretanne; of their decorations and furniture; of the extent of their plantations; and the multitude of living animals with which they were ſtocked; he liſtened to him with peculiar attention, as not doubting the truth of his relation; but when he attempted to deſcribe the roads, and the rapidity with which people travel in carriages, drawn by four footed animals, he ſeemed all amazement; no child could ever expreſs greater ſurprize at Gulliver's travelling to the moon on ganzas, than Otoo, when Omiah aſſured him, they could traverſe an extent of ground equal to the whole length of the iſland of Otaheite, in a ſingle day.

On Sunday the 21ſt, Otoo came on board, to inform us, that the war canoes of Matavai, and of three other diſtricts, were going to join thoſe belonging to Oparree, and that part of the iſland, where there would be a general review. The ſquadron of Matavai was ſoon in motion, and after parading for ſome time about the bay, aſſembled aſhore near the middle of it. Captain Cook now went in his boat to take a ſurvey of it. What they call their war canoes, which are thoſe with ſtages whereon they fight, amount to about 60 in number; and there are nearly as many more of a ſmaller ſize. The Captain was ready to have attended them to Oparree; but the chiefs reſolved that they would not move till the next day. This happened to be a fortunate delay; as it afforded him an opportunity of getting ſome inſight into their manner of fighting. He therefore deſired Otoo to give orders, that ſome of them ſhould go through the neceſſary manœuvres. Accordingly two of them were ordered out into the bay; in one of which Otoo, Captain Cook, and Mr. King embarked, and Omiah went on board the other. As ſoon as they had got ſufficient ſea-room, they faced, advanced, and retreated by turns, as quick as their rowers could paddle. In the mean time, the warriors on the ſtages flouriſhed their weapons, and played a variety of antic tricks, which could anſwer no other purpoſe than that of rouſing their paſſions, to prepare them for the onſet. Otoo ſtood by the ſide of one ſtage, giving the neceſſary orders when to advance, and when to retreat. Great judgment, and a very quick eye ſeems to be requiſite in this department, to ſeize every advantage, and to avoid every diſadvantage. At length the two canoes cloſed ſtage to ſtage; and after a ſevere, though ſhort conflict, all the troops on Otoo's ſtage were ſuppoſed to be killed, and Omiah and his aſſociates boarded them; when inſtantly Otoo, and the paddlers in his canoe, leaped into the ſea, as if reduced to the neceſſity of preſerving their lives by ſwimming. But, according to Omiah's repreſentation, their naval engagements are not always conducted in this manner: for they ſometimes laſh the two veſſels together head to head, and fight till all the warriors on one ſide or the other are killed; yet this cloſe combat is never practiſed, except when the contending parties are determined to conquer, or die. Indeed, in this inſtance, one or the other muſt infallibly happen; for they never give quarter, unleſs it be to reſerve their priſoners for a more cruel death the day following. All the power and ſtrength of the Society Iſlands lie ſolely in their navies. A general engagement on land we never heard of; and all their deciſive actions are on the water. When the time and place of battle are fixed by both parties, the preceding day and night are ſpent in feaſting and diverſions. When the day dawns, they launch the canoes, make every neceſſary preparation, and with the day begin the battle; the fate of which, in general, decides the diſpute. The vanquiſhed endeavour to ſave themſelves by a precipitate flight; and thoſe who reach the ſhore fly, with their friends, to the mountains; for the victors, before their fury abates, ſpare neither the aged, women, nor children. They aſſemble the next day, at the Morai, to return thanks to the Eatooa for the victory, and offer there the ſlain and the priſoners, as ſacrifices. A treaty is then ſet on foot; and the conquerors obtain uſually their own terms; whereby large diſtricts of land, and even whole iſlands, ſometimes change their proprietors and maſters. Omiah ſaid he was once taken priſoner by the men of Bolabola, and conducted to that iſland, where he, and many others would have ſuffered death the next day, had they not been fortunate enough to eſcape in the night.

When the mock-fight was concluded, Omiah put on his ſuit of armour, mounted a ſtage in one of the canoes, and, thus equipped, was paddled all along the ſhore of the bay, that every one might have a perfect view of him. His coat of mail, however, did not engage the attention of the multitude ſo much as was expected; the novelty being in a great degree loſt upon ſome of them, who had ſeen it before; and there were others, who had conceived ſuch a diſlike to Omiah, from his folly and imprudence at this place, that they would hardly look at any thing that was exhibited by him, however ſingular and new. This day notice had been given to Otoo of our intentions to ſail with the firſt fair wind; in conſequence of which on the 22nd, in the morning, he came on board, deſiring to know when we propoſed to depart, and, at the ſame time expreſſed great concern at our ſudden reſolution. He brought with him hogs, fruit, and other valuable productions of the iſland. No people on earth could expreſs their gratitude with more ſeeming ſincerity and cordiality, than the king and his chiefs, for the preſents they had received, nor were our commander and officers wanting in ſuitable returns. The Captain having heard of there being a good harbour at Eimeo, had informed Otoo and his party, that he would viſit that iſland in his paſſage to Huaheine; and they propoſed now to accompany him, and that their fleet ſhould ſail, at the ſame time, to reinforce Towha. Being ready to take our departure, the Captain ſubmitted to them the appointment of the day. The Wedneſday following was fixed upon, when he was to receive on board Otoo, his father, mother, and the whole family. Theſe points ſettled, Captain Cook propoſed ſetting out immediately for Oparree, where all the fleet was to aſſemble this day, in order to be reviewed. But as he was getting into his boat, news arrived, that a treaty had been concluded between Towha and Maheine, and that Towha's fleet had returned to Attahooroo. From this unexpected event, the war canoes, inſtead of rendezvouſing at Oparree, were ordered to their reſpective diſtricts. Captain Cook, however, followed Otoo to Oparree, accompanied by Mr. King and Omiah. Soon after their arrival, a meſſenger from Eimeo made known the conditions of the peace, or rather truce, it being only for a limited time. The terms being diſadvantageous to Otaheite, Otoo was cenſured ſeverely, whoſe delay, it was ſaid, in ſending reinforcements, had obliged Towha to ſubmit to a diſgraceful accommodation. It was, at the ſame time, currently reported, that Towha, reſenting the treatment he had received, had declared, that immediately after our departure, he would join his forces to thoſe of Tiaraboo, and attack Otoo. This called upon the Captain to declare, that he was determined to eſpouſe the intereſt of his friend; and that whoever preſumed to attack him, by any combination of parties, ſhould experience the weight of his diſpleaſure, when he returned to that iſland. This declaration, probably, had the deſired effect; for if Towha did entertain any ſuch hoſtile intention at firſt, we heard no more of the report. Whappai, the father of Otoo, highly diſapproved of the peace, and cenſured Towha for concluding it. This old chief wiſely conſidered, that Captain Cook's going with them to Eimeo, might have been of ſingular ſervice to their cauſe, though he ſhould not take an active part in the quarrel. He therefore concluded, that Otoo had acted prudently in waiting for the Captain, though it prevented his giving that early aſſiſtance to Towha which he expected. While we were diſcourſing on this ſubject, a meſſenger arrived from Towha, deſiring the attendance of Otoo the next day, at the morai in Attahooroo, to return thanks to the Eatooa for the peace he had concluded. Captain Cook's company was requeſted; but, being much out of order, choſe to decline attending them. Deſirous, however, of knowing what ceremony might be exhibited on ſuch an occaſion, he ſent Mr. King and Omiah to obſerve the particulars, and returned on board, attended by Otoo's mother, his three ſiſters, and ſeveral other women. At firſt the Captain imagined that this numerous train came into his boat, in order to get a paſſage to Matavai. But they aſſured him, they intended paſſing the night on board, for the purpoſe of curing the diſorder he complained of; which was a rheumatic pain, extending from the hip to the foot. He accepted the friendly offer, had a bed prepared for them upon the cabin floor, and ſubmitted himſelf to their directions. He was firſt deſired to lie down among them; when all thoſe who could get near him, began to ſqueeze him with both hands all over the body, but more particularly on the parts complained of, till they made his bones crack, and his fleſh became almoſt a mummy. In ſhort, after ſuffering this ſevere diſcipline, about a quarter of an hour, he was happy to get away from them. The operation, however, gave him immediate relief, and encouraged him to undergo a repetition of the ſame diſcipline, before he retired to bed; and it was ſo effectual, that he found himſelf pretty eaſy the whole night after. His female phyſicians, very obligingly repeated their preſcription the next morning, before they left him, and again in the evening, when they returned; after which the cure being perfected, they took their leave of the Captain the following morning. This is called by the natives romee, an operation far exceeding that of the fleſh-bruſh, or any external friction. It is univerſally practiced among theſe iſlanders. Captain Wallis, and his firſt Lieutenant, had the ſame operation performed upon them. If at any time, a perſon appears languid and tired, and ſits down by any of them, they practice the romee upon his legs, and it always has an exceeding good effect.

On Thurſday the 25th, Otoo, Mr. King, and Omiah, returned from Attahooroo; and Mr. King ſavoured us with a narrative of what he had ſeen to the following purport. "At ſun-ſet, we embarked in a canoe, and left Oparree. About nine o'clock, we landed at that extremity of Tettaha, which joins to Attahooroo. The meeting of Otoo and Towha, I expected would be intereſting. Otoo, and his attendants, ſeated themſelves on the beach, near the canoe in which Towha ſat. He was then aſleep; but being awakened, and Otoo's name mentioned to him, a plantain tree and dog were immediately laid at Otoo's feet; and ſeveral of Towha's people came and converſed with him. After I had been, for ſome time, ſeated cloſe to Otoo, Towha neither ſtirring from his canoe, nor ſaying any thing to us, I repaired to him. He aſked me, if Toote was diſpleaſed with him? I anſwered no; that he was his taio; and that I was ordered to repair to Attahooroo, to let him know it. Omiah then entered into a long converſation with this chief, but I could not gather any information from him. On my returning to Otoo, he deſired that I would go to eat, and then to ſleep; in conſequence of which Omiah and I left him. On my queſtioning Omiah on that head, he ſaid, Towha was lame, and therefore could not ſtir; but that he and Otoo would ſoon converſe in private. This was probably true; for thoſe we left with Otoo came to us in a little time; and about ten minutes after, Otoo himſelf arrived, when we all went to ſleep in his canoe. The next morning the ava was in great plenty. One man drank to ſuch exceſs that he loſt his ſenſes, and appeared to be convulſed. He was held by two men, who buſied themſelves in plucking off his hair by the roots. I left this ſpectacle to ſee a more affecting one: it was the meeting of Towha and his wife, with a young girl, who was ſaid to be his daughter. After the ceremony of cutting their heads, and diſcharging plenty of blood and tears, they waſhed, embraced the chief, and appeared perfectly unconcerned. But the young girl's ſufferings were not yet concluded, Terridiri (Oberea's ſon) arrived; and ſhe, with great compoſure, repeated thoſe ceremonies to him, which ſhe had juſt performed on meeting her father. Towha having brought in a war canoe from Eimeo, I inquired if he had killed the people belonging to her, and was informed, that there was not a ſingle perſon in her when ſhe was captured. About ten o'clock we left Tettaha, and landed cloſe to the Morai of Attahooroo, early in the afternoon. Three canoes lay hauled upon the beach, oppoſite the Morai, having three hogs in each. We expected the ſolemnity would have been performed the ſame afternoon; but nothing was done, as neither Towha nor Potatou had joined us. A chief came from Eimeo with a ſmall pig, and a plantain tree, which he placed at Otoo's feet. They converſed ſome time together, and the Eimeo chief often repeating the words warry, warry, "falſe." Otoo was probably relating to him what he had heard, and the other contradicted it. The next day, Towha and Potatou, with ſeven or eight large canoes, arrived, and landed near the Morai. Several plantain trees were brought to Otoo, on behalf of different chiefs. Towha remained in his canoe. The ceremony commenced, by the principal prieſt bringing out the Maro, wrapped up, and a bundle of a conic ſhape. Theſe were placed at the head of what I ſuppoſed to be a grave. Then three prieſts ſat down at the other end of the grave; having with them a plantain tree, a branch of ſome other kind of tree, and the ſheath of the flower of the cocoa-nut. The prieſts ſeparately repeated ſentences; and, at intervals, two, ſometimes three, chanted a melancholy lay, very little attended to by the natives. This kind of recitative continued near an hour. Then, after a ſhort prayer, the chief prieſt uncovered the maro, and Otoo roſe up, wrapping it about him, and holding in his hand a bonnet, compoſed of the red feathers of the tropic bird, mixed with other blackiſh feathers. He ſtood oppoſite the three prieſts, who continued their prayers for about ten minutes; when a man riſing ſuddenly from the crowd, ſaid ſomething ending with heiva! and the people echoed back to him three times Earee! The company then repaired to the oppoſite ſide of a large pile of ſtones, where is the king's morai; which is not much unlike a large grave. Here the ſame ceremony was again performed, and ended with three cheers. The maro was now wrapped up, and ornamented by the addition of a ſmall piece of red feathers. The people proceeded to a large hut, near the Morai, where they ſeated themſelves in ſolemn order. An oration was made by a man of Tiaraboo, which ended in about ten minutes. He was followed by another of Attahooroo: Potatou ſpoke next, and with much more fluency and grace than any of them. Tooteo, Otoo's orator exhibited after him, and then a man from Eimeo. Some other ſpeeches were made, but not attended to. Omiah ſaid, that the ſubſtance of their ſpeeches recommended friendſhip, and not fighting; but as many of the ſpeakers expreſſed themſelves with great warmth, there were, perhaps, ſome recriminations, and proteſtations of their future good intentions. In the midſt of their harangues, a man of Attahooroo roſe up, having a ſling faſtened to his waiſt, and a large ſtone upon his ſhoulder. After parading for about fifteen minutes in the open ſpace, and chanting a few ſhort ſentences, he threw the ſtone down. This ſtone, together with a plantain tree that lay at Otoo's feet, were, at the concluſion of the ſpeeches, carried to the Morai, one of the prieſts, and Otoo with him, ſaying ſomething on the occaſion. Returning to Oparree, the ſea breeze having ſet in, we were obliged to land, and had a pleaſant walk from Tettaha to Oparree. A tree, with two large bundles of dried leaves ſuſpended upon it, pointed out the boundary of the two diſtricts. We were accompanied by the man who had performed the ceremony of the ſtone and ſling. With him Otoo's father held a long converſation, and appeared extremely angry. He was enraged, as I underſtood, at the part which Towha had taken in the Eimeo buſineſs."

From what can be judged of this ſolemnity, as related from Mr. King, it had not been only a thankſgiving, as Omiah told us, but rather a confirmation of the treaty. The grave, mentioned by Mr. King, appears to be the very ſpot where the celebration of the rites began, when the human ſacrifice was offered, at which Captain Cook was preſent, and before which the victim was laid. It is here alſo that they firſt inveſt their kings with the Maro. Omiah, who had ſeen the ceremony when Otoo was made king, deſcribed the whole ſolemnity when we were here; which is nearly the ſame as that now related by Mr. King, though perhaps upon a very different occaſion. The plantain-tree is always the firſt thing introduced in all their religious ceremonies, as well as in all their public and private debates, and probably on many other occaſions. While Towha was at Eimeo, he ſent one or more meſſengers to Otoo every day. Every meſſenger, at all times, carried a young plantain-tree in his hand, which he laid at the feet of Otoo before he mentioned his errand, after which he ſeated himſelf before him and related particulars. When two men are in ſuch high diſpute that blows are expected to enſue, if one ſhould lay a plantain-tree before the other, they both become cool, and proceed in the argument without further animoſity. It is indeed the olive branch of theſe people upon all occaſions.

On Friday, the 26th, all the women were ordered to be put on ſhore; a taſk not eaſily effected, moſt of them being very unwilling to depart: nor was it of much conſequence, as they found means to follow us afterwards to Huaheine, Ulietea, and the other Society Iſles; nor did they leave us till our final departure to our northern diſcoveries, never more to return. Our friends knowing, by this, we were upon the point of ſailing, they all paid us a viſit, and brought more hogs than we wanted; for we had ſufficient for our preſent uſe, and had no ſalt left to preſerve any. On the 27th, Captain Cook accompanied Otoo to Oparree; and before he left it, took a ſurvey of the cattle and poultry which he had conſigned to his friend's care. Every thing was in a promiſing way, and properly attended to. Two of the geeſe, and two of the ducks were ſitting; but the pea-hen and turkey-hen had neither of them began to lay. He took four goats from Otoo, two of which he intended to leave at Ulietea, and to reſerve two for the uſe of any other iſlands he might touch at in his paſſage to the north. On the 28th, Otoo came on board, and informed Captain Cook that he had got a canoe, which he deſired he would take with him as a preſent from the Earee of Otaheite to the Eareerahie no Pretanne. The Captain was highly pleaſed with Otoo for this mark of his gratitude. At firſt, the Captain ſuppoſed it to have been a model of one of their veſſels of war, but it proved to be a ſmall ivahah, about 16 feet long. It was double, and probably had been built for the purpoſe, and was decorated with carved work, like their canoes in general. It being too large to take on board, the Captain could only thank him for his good intention, but the king would have been much better pleaſed if his preſent could have been accepted. The following circumſtance, concerning Otoo, will ſhew that the people of this iſland are capable of much addreſs and art to accompliſh their purpoſes. Among other things which the Captain had at different times given to this chief, was a ſpying-glaſs: having been two or three days poſſeſſed of it, he perhaps grew tired of his glaſs, or diſcovered that it could not be of any uſe to him; he therefore carried it privately to Captain Clerke, telling him, that he had got a preſent for him, in return for his friendſhip, which he ſuppoſed would be agreeable: "but (ſays Otoo) Toote muſt not be informed of this, becauſe he wanted it, and I refuſed to let him have it." Accordingly, he put the glaſs into Captain Clerke's hands, aſſuring him, at the ſame time, that he came honeſtly by it. Captain Clerke, at firſt, wiſhed to be excuſed from accepting it; but Otoo inſiſted that he ſhould, and left it with him. A few days after, he reminded Captain Clerke of the glaſs; who, though he did not wiſh to have it, was yet deſirous of obliging Otoo; and thinking a few axes would be moſt acceptable, produced four, and offered them in exchange. Otoo immediately exclaimed, "Toote offered me five for it." Well, ſays Captain Clerke, if that be the caſe, you ſhall not be a loſer by your friendſhip for me; there are ſix axes for you. He readily accepted them, but again deſired that Captain Cook might not be made acquainted with the tranſaction.

By calms, and gentle breezes from the weſt, we were detained here ſome time longer than we expected, during which the ſhips were crowded with our friends, and ſurrounded with canoes, for none of them would quit the place till we departed. At length, on Monday the 29th, at three o'clock P. M. the wind came at eaſt, and we weighed anchor. When the Reſolution and Diſcovery were under ſail, to oblige Otoo, and to gratify the curioſity of his people, we fired ſeveral guns; after which all our friends, except his majeſty, and two or three more, took leave of us with ſuch lively marks of ſorrow and affection, as ſufficiently teſtified how much they regretted our departure. Otoo being deſirous of ſeeing the Reſolution ſail, ſhe made a ſtretch out to ſea, and then in again immediately, when the king took his laſt farewell, and went aſhore in his canoe. It was ſtrictly enjoined to the Captain by Otoo, to requeſt, in his name, the Eareerahie no Pretanne, to ſend him by the next ſhip ſome red feathers, and the birds which produce them, alſo axes, half a dozen muſkets, powder and ſhot, and by no means to forget horſes. When theſe people make us a preſent, it is cuſtomary for them to let us know what they expect in return; and we find it convenient to gratify them, by which means our preſents come dearer to us than what we obtain by barter. But being ſometimes preſſed by occaſional ſcarcity, we could have recourſe to our friends for a ſupply, as a preſent, when we could not get it by any other method. Upon the whole, therefore, this way of traffic was full as advantageous to us as to the natives. In general, we paid for each lot or ſeparate article as we received them, except in our intercourſe with Otoo. His preſents were ſo numerous, that no account was kept between him and the Captain. Whatever this chief deſired, if it could be ſpared, was never denied him, and the Captain always found him moderate in his demands.

If the Captain could have prevailed on Omiah to fix his reſidence at Otaheite, we ſhould not have quitted the iſland ſo ſoon as we did: for there was not even a probability of our being better ſupplied with proviſions elſewhere, than we continued to be here, even at the time of our leaving it. Beſides, ſuch a friendſhip and confidence ſubſiſted between us and the inhabitants, as could hardly be expected at any other place; and it was rather extraordinary, had never once been interrupted or ſuſpended by any accident or miſunderſtanding, nor had there been a theft committed worthy of notice. It is probable, however, that their regularity of conduct reſulted from their fear of interrupting a traffic which might procure them a greater ſhare of our commodities than they could obtain by plunder or pilfering. This point, indeed, was ſettled, in ſome degree, at the firſt interview with their chiefs, after our arrival; for the Commodore declared then to the natives, in the moſt deciſive terms, that he would not ſuffer them to rob us, as they had formerly done. Omiah was ſingularly uſeful in this buſineſs, being inſtructed by the Captain to point out to them the happy conſequences of their honeſt conduct, and the fatal miſchiefs that muſt attend a deviation from it. But the chiefs have it not always in their power to prevent thefts; they are often robbed themſelves; and complain of it as the worſt of evils. The moſt valuable things that Otoo received from us, were left in the Captain's poſſeſſion till the day before we ſailed, the king declaring that they could be no where ſo ſafe. From the acquiſition of new riches, the inducements to pilfering muſt certainly have increaſed, and the chiefs are ſenſible of this, from their being ſo extremely deſirous of having cheſts. The few that the Spaniards left among them are highly prized; and they are continually aſking us for ſome. We have already mentioned one having been made for Otoo, at his requeſt, the dimenſions of which were eight feet in length, five in breadth, and about three in depth. Locks and bolts are not conſidered as a ſufficient ſecurity, but it muſt be large enough for two people to ſleep upon, and conſequently guard it in the night.

It may appear extraordinary, that we could not get any diſtinct account of the time when the Spaniards arrived, the time they ſtaid, and when they departed. The more we made enquiry into this matter, the more we were convinced of the incapability of moſt of theſe people to remember, calculate, or note the time, when paſt events happened, eſpecially if for a longer period than eighteen or twenty months. It however appeared, from the inſcription upon the croſs, and by the information of the natives, that two ſhips came to Oheitepeha Bay, in 1774, not long after Captain Cook left Matavai, which was in May the ſame year. The live ſtock they left here conſiſted of one bull, ſome goats, hogs, aud dogs, and the male of another animal, which we were afterwards informed was a ram, at this time at Bolabola. The hogs, being large, have already much improved the breed originally found by us upon the iſland; and, on our arrival, were very numerous. Goats are alſo in plenty, there being hardly a chief without them. The dogs that the Spaniards put aſhore are of two or three ſorts; had they all been hanged, inſtead of being left upon the iſland, it would have been better for the natives. A young ram we had fell a victim to one of theſe animals. Four Spaniards remained on ſhore when their ſhips left the iſland, two of whom were prieſts, one a ſervant, and the other was much careſſed among the natives, who diſtinguiſh him by the name of Mateema. He ſeems to have ſo far ſtudied their language, as to have been able to ſpeak it; and to have been indefatigable in impreſſing in the minds of the Otaheiteans exalted ideas of the greatneſs of the Spaniſh nation, and inducing them to think meanly of that of the Engliſh. He even aſſured them, that we no longer exiſted as an independent nation; that Pretanne was but a ſmall iſland, which they had entirely deſtroyed; and as to Captain Cook, they had met with him at ſea, and with a few ſhot had ſent his ſhip, and every ſoul in her, to the bottom, ſo that his viſiting Otaheite was, of courſe, at this time, very unexpected. Many other improbabilities were propagated by this Spaniard, and believed by the inhabitants; but Captain Cook's returning to Otaheite was conſidered as a complete refutation of all that Mateema had advanced. With what views the prieſts remained cannot eaſily be conceived. If it was their intention to convert the natives to the catholic faith, they certainly have not ſucceeded in a ſingle inſtance. It does not appear, indeed, that they ever attempted it; for the natives ſay, they never converſed with them, either on this or any other ſubject. The prieſts reſided the whole time at Oheitepeha; but Mateema roved about continually, viſiting many parts of the iſland. After he and his companions had ſtaid ten months, two ſhips arriving at Otaheite took them aboard, and ſailed in five days. Whatever deſign the Spaniards might have had upon this iſland, their haſty departure ſhews they have now laid it aſide. They endeavoured to make the natives believe, that they intended to return, and would bring with them houſes, all kinds of animals, and men and women who were to ſettle on the iſland. Otoo, when he mentioned this to Captain Cook, added, that if the Spaniards ſhould return, he would not permit them to enter Matavai fort, which, he ſaid, was ours. The idea pleaſed him; but he did not conſider that an attempt to complete it would deprive him of his kingdom, and his people of their liberty. Though this ſhews how eaſily a ſettlement might be effected at Otaheite, it is hoped that ſuch an event might never take place. Our occaſional viſits may have been of ſervice to its inhabitants, but (conſidering how moſt European eſtabliſhments among Indian nations are conducted) a permanent ſettlement at this iſland would, probably, give them juſt cauſe to lament that our ſhips had ever diſcovered it. Indeed, a meaſure of this kind can hardly ever be ſeriouſly thought of, as it can neither anſwer the purpoſes of public ambition, nor of private avarice.

We have already obſerved, that Captain Cook received a viſit from one of the two natives of this iſland who had been taken to Lima by the Spaniards. It is ſomewhat remarkable that we never ſaw him afterwards, eſpecially as the Captain received him with uncommon civility. It was ſuppoſed that Omiah, from motives of jealouſy, had kept him from the Captain, he being a traveller, who, in ſome degree, might vie with himſelf. Our touching at Teneriffe was a lucky circumſtance for Omiah, who prided himſelf in having viſited a place belonging to Spain, as well as this man. Captain Clerke, who had ſeen the other traveller, ſpoke of him as a low fellow, a little out of his ſenſes; and his own countrymen entertained the ſame opinion of him. In ſhort, thoſe two adventurers ſeemed to be held in little or no eſteem. They had not been ſo fortunate, it is true, as to return home with ſuch valuable property as had been beſtowed upon Omiah, whoſe advantages are ſo great from having been at England, that if he ſhould ſink into his original ſtate of indolence, he has only himſelf to blame for it; and we are inclined to think this will be the conſequence of his indiſcreet behaviour. Some time before, the Captain, his unchangeable friend and patron, had made up a ſuit of colours for him, but he conſidered them as too valuable to be uſed at this time, and therefore patched up a parcel of flags and pendants, to the number of ten or a dozen, which he ſpread on different parts of his canoe. This, as might be expected, drew a great number of people to look at her. He had completely ſtocked himſelf with cloth and cocoa-nut oil, which are better and more plentiful at Otaheite than at any of the Society Iſles, inſomuch, that they are conſidered as articles of trade. Omiah would not have behaved ſo inconſiſtently as he did in many inſtances, had it not been for his ſiſter and brother-in-law, who, together with a few ſelect companions, engroſſed him to themſelves, in order to ſtrip him of every article he poſſeſſed: and they would certainly have ſucceeded, if Captain Cook had not taken the moſt uſeful articles of his property into his poſſeſſion. However, Omiah would not have been ſaved from ruin, if the Captain had permitted theſe relations and friends of his to have accompanied him to his intended place of ſettlement at Huaheine. This, indeed, was their intention, but our Commodore diſappointed their farther views of plunder, by forbidding them to appear at Huaheine, while he continued at the Society Iſlands, and they knew him well enough not to comply.

On Tueſday, the 30th, having ſailed from Otaheite, we continued our courſe under double reefed topſails, and ſtood for the north end of the iſland of Eimeo. Omiah, in his canoe, arrived there before us, and endeavoured, by taking ſome neceſſary meaſures, to ſhew us the beſt anchoring place. We were not, however, without pilots, having ſeveral natives of Otaheite on board, and among them not a few women. Unwilling to rely wholly on theſe guides, two boats were ſent to examine the harbour, when, obſerving the ſignal made for ſafe anchorage, we ſtood in with both the ſhips cloſe up to the head of the inlet, where we caſt anchor in ten fathoms water, over a bottom of ſoft mud, and moored with a hawſer faſt to the ſhore. The name of this harbour is Taloo. It is ſituated on the north ſide of the iſland, and in the diſtrict of Oboonohoo, or Poonohoo, and runs above two miles between the hills, S. or S. by E. It is not inferior to any harbour that we have met with in this ocean, both for ſecurity and goodneſs of bottom. It has alſo this ſingular advantage, that a ſhip can ſail in and out with the reigning trade wind. Several rivers fall into it, one of which is ſo conſiderable, as to admit boats a quarter of a mile up, where the water is perfectly freſh. The banks, on the ſides of this ſtream, are covered with what the natives call the Pooroo-tree, on which they ſet no value, as it ſerves only for firing: ſo that wood and water may be procured here with great facility. The harbour of Parowroah, on the ſame ſide of the iſland, is about two miles to the eaſtward, and is much larger within than that of Taloo; but the opening in the reef lies to leeward of the harbour, and is conſiderably narrower. There are two or three more harbours on the ſouth ſide of the iſland, but they are not ſo conſiderable as thoſe we have already mentioned. We were received by the natives of Eimeo with every mark of hoſpitality, great numbers of whom came aboard the ſhips, but from mere motives of curioſity; for they brought nothing with them for the purpoſes of barter.

On Wedneſday the 1ſt of October, our live ſtock was landed, our carpenters ſent out to cut wood, and our purveyors to collect hogs. Here we found Omiah, who, on his arrival, had been diverting himſelf and the natives with his feats of arms, and had raiſed their curioſity to a very high degree, by acquainting them with our intention of paying them a viſit, as no European ſhip had ever anchored at their iſland before. The next day, being the 2nd, ſeveral canoes arrived, from diſtant parts, bringing with them a copious ſupply of bread-fruit, cocoa-nuts, and a few hogs, which were exchanged for beads, nails, and hatchets; red feathers being not ſo much demanded here as at Otaheite. This day, in the morning, Captain Cook received a viſit from Maheine, the chief of the iſland. He approached the ſhip with as great caution and deliberation, as if he apprehended miſchief from us, knowing us to be friends of the Otaheiteans; for theſe people have no idea that we can be in friendſhip with any one, without adopting his cauſe againſt his enemies. This chief was accompanied by his wife, who, we are told, is ſiſter to Oamo, of Otaheite, whoſe death we heard of while we remained at this iſland. Captain Cook made them preſents of ſuch articles as ſeemed moſt to ſtrike their fancy; and after ſtaying about half an hour, they went on ſhore; ſoon after they returned with a large hog, preſenting it as a return for the Captain's favour; but he made them an additional gift to the full value of it; after which they went on board the Diſcovery to viſit Captain Clerke. Maheine, ſupported with a few adherents, has made himſelf, in ſome degree, independent of Otaheite. He is between forty and fifty years of age, and is bald-headed, a circumſtance rather uncommon, in theſe iſlands, at that age. He ſeemed aſhamed of ſhowing his head, and wore a kind of turban to conceal it. Whether they conſidered this deficiency of hair diſgraceful, or whether they ſuppoſed we conſidered it in that light, is not eaſy to determine; the latter, however, appears the moſt probable, from the circumſtance of their having ſeen us ſhave the head of one of the natives, whom we detected ſtealing. They naturally concluded, therefore, that this was a kind of puniſhment inflicted by us upon all thieves; and ſome of our gentlemen, whoſe heads were but thinly covered with hair, were violently ſuſpected by them of being tetos. Towards the evening, Captain Cook and Omiah mounted on horſeback, and rode along the ſhore. Omiah having forbid the natives to follow us, our train was not very numerous; the fear of giving offence having got the better of their curioſity. The fleet of Towha had been ſtationed in this harbour, and though the war was but of ſhort duration, the marks of its devaſtation were very numerous and every where conſpicuous. The trees had loſt all their fruit, and the houſes in the neighbourhood had been burnt, or otherwiſe deſtroyed.

On Monday the 6th, we hauled the ſhip off into the ſtream, intending to put to ſea the next day, but the following diſagreeable incident prevented it. We had, in the morning, ſent our goats aſhore to graze; and, in the evening, the natives contrived to ſteal one of them, notwithſtanding two men had been appointed to look after them. This was a conſiderable loſs, as it interfered with the Captain's views of ſtocking other iſlands with thoſe animals: he, therefore, was determined, if poſſible, to recover it. On the 7th, we received intelligence, that it had been conveyed to Maheine, who was, at that time, at Parowroah harbour. Two elderly men offered their ſervices to conduct any of our people to him, in order to bring back the goat. The Captain, therefore, diſpatched ſome of our people in a boat, charged with a meſſage to that chief, and inſiſted on both the goat and the thief being immediately given up. Maheine had, only the day before, requeſted the Commodore to give him two goats; but, as there were none of theſe animals at ſome other iſlands, he refuſed to gratify him. Willing, however, to oblige him in this particular, he deſired an Otaheite chief, then preſent, to requeſt of Otoo, in his name, to convey two goats to Maheine, and to enſure his compliance, ſent him, by the ſame chief, a quantity of red feathers, equal in value to the two goats that were required. The Commodore expected that Maheine, and all the other chiefs of the iſland, would have been perfectly ſatisfied with this arrangement; but he was miſtaken, as the event clearly proves. Little ſuſpecting that any one would preſume to ſteal a ſecond, while the neceſſary meaſures were taken to recover the firſt, the goats were again put aſhore this morning; and a boat, as uſual, was ſent for them in the evening. While our people were getting them into the boat, one was conveyed away undiſcovered. As it was miſſed immediately, we expected to recover it without much trouble, as it could not have been carried to any conſiderable diſtance. Several of the natives ſet out after it, different ways; for they all endeavoured to perſuade us, that it muſt have ſtrayed into the woods; not one of them admitting that it was ſtolen. We were, however, convinced of the contrary, when we found not one of the purſuers returned: their intention being only to amuſe us, till their prize was ſafely depoſited; and night coming on prevented all farther ſearch. At this inſtant, the boat returned with the other goat, and one of the perſons who had purloined it. The next morning being Wedneſday the 8th, moſt of the natives were moved off. They had carried with them a corpſe that lay on a toopapoo, oppoſite the ſhip; and Maheine, we were informed, had retired, to the remoteſt part of the iſland. It now plainly appeared, that a regular plan had been projected to ſteal what the Commodore had refuſed to give; and that, having reſtored one, they were determined not to part with the other, which was a female, and with kid; and the Commodore was equally reſolved to have it back again: he, therefore, applied to the two elderly men, who had been inſtrumental in recovering the firſt, who informed him that this had been taken to a place on the ſouth ſide of the iſland, called Watea, by Hamoa, who was the chief of that diſtrict; but that it would be delivered up, if we ſent and demanded it. They ſhewed a willingneſs to conduct ſome of our people to the ſpot; but finding that a boat might go and return in one day, one was immediately diſpatched with two of our officers, Mr. Roberts, and Mr. Shuttleworth; one to remain with the boat, if ſhe could not get to the place, while the other went with the guides, accompanied by ſome of our people. The boat returned in the evening, when we were informed by the officers, that, after proceeding in the boat as far as rocks and ſhoals would permit, Mr. Shuttleworth landed; and, attended with two marines, and one of the guides, went to the houſe of Hamoa, at Watea, where, for ſome time, they were amuſed by the natives, who pretended they had ſent for the goat, and that it would ſoon be produced. But as it did not arrive, and night approaching, Mr. Shuttleworth reſolved to give over the fruitleſs ſearch, and return to his boat. Captain Cook now lamented that he had proceeded ſo far in the buſineſs, ſeeing he could not retreat with credit, nor without giving encouragement to other iſlanders to rob us with impunity. Upon conſulting with Omiah, and the two old men, they adviſed us, without heſitation, to advance up the country with a party of men, and ſhoot every perſon they ſhould meet with. The Captain did not approve of the bloody part of this counſel; nevertheleſs, early the next morning, being the 9th, he ſet out with thirty-five of our people, accompanied by Omiah, one of the old men, and three attendants. Lieutenant Williamſon was alſo ordered round the weſtern part of the iſland, with three armed boats, to meet us. We had no ſooner landed, than the few remaining natives fled before us. The firſt perſon we met with on our march, was in a kind of perilous ſituation; for Omiah, the inſtant he beheld him, aſked Captain Cook if he ſhould ſhoot him; ſo fully was he perſuaded, that the advice given us was immediately to be carried into execution; but the Captain gave orders both to him and our guide, to let it be made known, that it was not our intention to deſtroy a ſingle native. Theſe joyful tidings ſoon circulated, and prevented the flight of the inhabitants. Aſcending the ridge of hills, on our road to Watea, we were informed that the goat had been carried the ſame way, and could hardly have paſſed the hills: we therefore marched up in great ſilence, expecting to ſurprize the party who were bearing off the prize; but, when we arrived at the uppermoſt plantation, we were told, that the animal we were in ſearch of, had, indeed, been kept there the firſt night, but, the next morning, was conveyed to Watea. We made no further enquiry, till we came within ſight of Watea, where we were directed to Hamoa's houſe by ſome people, who alſo informed us, that the goat was there. We fully expected to obtain it on our arrival; but, having reached the houſe, the people there denied that they had ever ſeen it, or knew any thing about it. Hamoa himſelf appeared, and expreſſed himſelf to the ſame effect. On our firſt coming to Watea, ſeveral men were ſeen, running to and fro in the woods, with clubs and darts in their hands; and Omiah, who had ran towards them, was aſſaulted with ſtones: hence it appeared, that they intended to oppoſe any attempt that we might be induced to make; but, on ſeeing the ſtrength of our party, had given up the deſign: we were confirmed in this opinion, by obſerving, that all their houſes were empty. After having collected a few of the natives together, Omiah was directed to expoſtulate with them on the abſurdity of their conduct, and to let them know, we had received ſufficient information that the goat was in their poſſeſſion; and that, if it was not without delay delivered up, we ſhould burn all their houſes and canoes; yet, notwithſtanding this expoſtulation, they perſiſted in their denial of having any knowledge of it: in conſequence of which we ſet fire to eight of their houſes, and three war canoes, all which were preſently conſumed. We afterwards marched off to join the boats, at that time eight miles from us: and, in our rout, burnt ſix other war canoes, without any oppoſition; on the contrary, many of the natives aſſiſted us, perhaps, more from fear than any other motive. Omiah, who was at ſome diſtance before us, came back with information, that a number of men were aſſembled to attack us. We prepared to receive them; but, inſtead of enemies, they were petitioners, with plantain trees in their hands, which they laid down before us, entreating the Commodore to ſpare a canoe that lay upon the ſpot, which he readily complied with. About four o'clock in the afternoon, we arrived at Wharrarade, where our boats were waiting for us. This diſtrict belongs to Tiaratabooonoue; but this chief, together with the other principal people of the place, had fled to the hills; though we made no attack on their property, they being in amity with Otoo. Here we remained about an hour, in order to reſt ourſelves, and afterwards ſet out for the ſhips, where we arrived at eight o'clock in the evening; but no tidings of the goat had, at that time, been received; and, of courſe the operations of the day had been ineffectual.

On Friday the 10th, early in the morning, a meſſenger was ſent off to Maheine, charged with this peremptory reſolution of the Captain, that if he perſiſted in his refuſal to deliver up the goat, a ſingle canoe ſhould not be left upon the iſland; and that hoſtilities ſhould never ceaſe, while the ſtolen animal remained in his poſſeſſion. That the meſſenger might perceive the Captain was in earneſt, he ordered the carpenter, in his preſence, to break up three canoes that lay at the head of the harbour; and, by his order, the planks were taken on board, to ſerve as materials to build a houſe for Omiah, at the place where he intended to fix his reſidence. From hence, our Commander, properly attended, went to the next harbour, where he deſtroyed eight more canoes, and returned on board about ſeven in the evening. On his arrival, he was informed, that the goat had been returned half an hour before; and it appeared from good intelligence, that it came from the very place, where the inhabitants, the day before, declared they knew nothing about it; but, from the meſſage delivered to the chief in the morning, he perceived, that the Captain was not to be trifled with. Thus ended this troubleſome and unfortunate buſineſs, equally to be regretted by the natives, and by Captain Cook. He was grieved to reflect, that, after refuſing to aſſiſt his friends at Otaheite, in the invaſion of this iſland, he ſhould ſo ſoon be obliged to engage in hoſtilities againſt its inhabitants; which, perhaps, were more injurious to them, than Towha's expedition. In a memorandum of occurrences, penned by one of our officers, we find a much leſs favourable account of this affair than the above; the circumſtances are thus related by that gentleman.

"On the 2nd of October, Maheine, accompanied by other chiefs came on board the Diſcovery, with large hogs by way of preſents; and were preſented in return with axes, hatchets, looking-glaſſes, &c. our purveyors were likewiſe much gratified, by the ſucceſs they met with in marketing; purchaſing the largeſt hogs for the mereſt trifles; as for inſtance, a hog of 200 weight, for twelve red feathers, and ſo in proportion. But this friendly intercourſe was ſoon changed to a ſcene of deſolation, that no injury we received from the pilfering diſpoſition of the inhabitants could juſtify. The people had brought us every thing their iſland afforded, and had left it to the generoſity of the purchaſers to give, in return, whatever they pleaſed: but unfortunately a goat from our live ſtock was miſſing. It had been ſecretly conveyed away in the night, from the paſtures in which they were placed to feed, notwithſtanding the vigilance of the guard appointed to look after them. With the loſs of this animal, no doubt a great prize to the thief, the Earee of the iſland was made acquainted by Captain Cook, and a peremptory requiſition made to have it reſtored, on pain of having his country laid waſte, his ſhipping deſtroyed, and himſelf perſonally puniſhed for the crime of his ſubject. The king promiſed his aſſiſtance, and required time for enquiry; but, as ſoon as he was ſet at liberty, he abſconded, and was no more ſeen. The goat being ſtill miſſing, and no means uſed for recovering and reſtoring it, a party from both ſhips, with the marines in a body, were ordered out, to carry the threats of our commander into execution. For three days, ſucceſſively, they continued their devaſtations, burning and deſtroying 200 of the beſt houſes of the inhabitants, and as many of their large war canoes; at the ſame time, cutting down their fruit trees, and deſtroying their plantations. The natives who lived at a diſtance, hearing of the havock that was made near the bay, filled their canoes with ſtones and ſunk them, with a view to their preſervation; but that availed them nothing; for the Captain ordered boats to be manned and armed; the canoes that were ſunk to be weighed up and deſtroyed; in ſhort, a general deſolation to be carried through the whole iſland, ſhould the goat be ſtill withheld. Add to this, that two young natives of quality being found on board our ſhip, were made priſoners, and told they were to be put to death, if the goat ſhould not be reſtored within a certain time. The youths proteſted their own innocence, and diſclaimed all knowledge of the guilty perſons; notwithſtanding which, every preparation was apparently made for putting them both to death. Large ropes were carried upon the main deck, and made faſt fore and aft: axes, chains, &c. were placed upon the quarter deck, in ſight of the young men, whoſe terrors were increaſed by the information of Omiah, who gave them to underſtand that, by all theſe ſolemn preparations, their doom was finally determined. Under theſe gloomy apprehenſions the poor youths remained till the 9th, when, about three in the afternoon, a body of between 50 and 60 natives were ſeen from the ſhip haſtening to the harbour, who, when they came near, held up the goat in their arms, in raptures that they had found it, and that it was ſtill alive. The joy of the impriſoned young men is not to be expreſſed; and when they were releaſed, inſtead of ſhewing any ſigns of reſentment, they were ready to fall down and worſhip their deliverers. It can ſcarce be credited, when the devaſtation ceaſed, how ſoon the injury they had ſuffered was forgotten, and proviſions again brought to market, as if no violence had ever been committed by us; only the Earee of the iſland never made his appearance. All this while numbers of the inhabitants of Otaheite, were witneſſes of the ſeverity with which this theft was puniſhed; but it ſeemed to make no unfavourable impreſſion upon them; for they continued their good offices as long as we remained in the Society iſles."

On Saturday the 11th, our intercourſe with the natives was renewed; ſeveral canoes bringing bread fruit and cocoa-nuts to the ſhips; whence our Commander concluded, they were conſcious of having merited the treatment they had received; and that the cauſe of his diſpleaſure being now removed, they apprehended no further miſchief. Being now about to take our departure from Eimeo, we ſhall firſt juſt remark, that there is very little difference between the produce of this iſland, and that of Otaheite; but the difference in their women is remarkable. Thoſe of Eimeo have a dark hue, are low in ſtature, and have forbidding features. We would obſerve farther, the appearance of Eimeo bears not the leaſt reſemblance to that of Otaheite. The latter being a hilly country, has little low land, except ſome deep valleys, and a flat border that almoſt ſurrounds it near the ſea. Eimeo has ſteep rugged hills, running in different directions, leaving large valleys, and gently riſing grounds about their ſides. The hills, though rocky, are generally covered with trees almoſt to the tops. At the bottom of the harbour of Taloo, the ground generally riſes to the foot of the hills: but the flat border on the ſides, becomes quite ſteep at a ſmall diſtance from the ſea. This produces a proſpect ſuperior to any thing we ſaw at Otaheite. In the low grounds, the ſoil is a yellowiſh ſtiff mould; on the lower hills it is blacker, and more looſe; and the ſtone which compoſes the hills, is of a bluiſh colour, interſperſed with ſome particles of glimmer. Near the place where our ſhips were ſtationed, are two large ſtones, concerning which ſome ſuperſtitious notions are entertained by the natives. They conſider them as brother and ſiſter; that they are Eatooas, or divinities; and that they came from Ulietea, by ſome ſupernatural means.

Having procured, at this iſland, a large quantity of fire-wood, an article we could not ſupply ourſelves with at Matavai, there being not a tree but what is uſeful to the inhabitants, and likewiſe a number of hogs, bread-fruit, and cocoa-nuts, at nine o'clock A. M. we weighed, having a fine breeze down the harbour; but it was ſo faint and variable, that we were not out at ſea before noon, at which time we directed our courſe to Huaheine. Omiah having previouſly ſet ſail before us. In the night, the weather being hazy, he loſt ſight of the ſhip and fired his gun, which was anſwered by the Reſolution. On Sunday the 12th, we came in ſight of Huaheine, and, at noon, anchored at the northern entrance of Owharre Harbour, ſituated on the weſt ſide of the iſland. Omiah, in his canoe, entered the harbour juſt before us, but did not land; and though many of his countrymen crowded to ſee him, he did not take much notice of them. Great numbers alſo came off to the ſhips, inſomuch that we were greatly incommoded by them. Our paſſengers immediately informed them of our tranſactions at Eimeo, multiplying, by ten at leaſt, the number of canoes and houſes that we had deſtroyed. Captain Cook was not much diſpleaſed at their giving this exaggerated account, as he found that it made a conſiderable impreſſion upon all who heard it; ſo that he had hopes it would induce the natives of this iſland to treat him in a better manner than they had done in his former viſit. The next morning, which was the 13th, all the principal people of the iſland came to our ſhips. This was juſt what our Commodore wiſhed, as it was now high time to ſettle Omiah, and he ſuppoſed that the preſence of theſe chiefs would enable him to effect it in a ſatisfactory manner. But Omiah now ſeemed inclined to eſtabliſh himſelf at Ulietea; and if he and Captain Cook could have agreed with reſpect to the mode of accompliſhing that deſign, the latter would have conſented to adopt it. His father had been deprived by the inhabitants of Bolabola, when they ſubdued Ulietea, of ſome land in that iſland; and the Captain hoped he ſhould be able to get it reſtored to the ſon without difficulty. For this purpoſe, it was neceſſary that Omiah ſhould be upon friendly terms with thoſe who had become maſters of the iſland; but he would not liſten to any ſuch propoſal, and was vain enough to imagine that the Captain would make uſe of force to reinſtate him in his forfeited lands. This prepoſſeſſion preventing his being fixed at Ulietea, the Captain began to conſider Huaheine as the more proper place, and therefore determined to avail himſelf of the preſence of the chief men of that iſland, and propoſe the affair to them.

The ſhips were no leſs crowded with hogs, than with chiefs, the former being poured in upon us faſter than the butchers and ſalters could diſpatch them. Indeed, for ſeveral days after our arrival, ſome hundreds, great and ſmall, were brought on board; and, if any were refuſed, they were thrown into the boats, and left behind. Bread-fruit, bananoes, plantains, cocoanuts, and yams, were brought in the ſame plentiful proportions, and purchaſed for trifles. At Otaheite we had heard, that our old friend Oree was no longer the chief of Huaheine, and that at this time he reſided at Ulietea. Indeed he never had been more than regent during the minority of Taireetareea, the preſent Earee rahie; but he did not give up the regency till he was compelled thereunto. His two ſons, Opoony and Towha, were the firſt who paid us a viſit, coming on board before the ſhip was well in the harbour, and bringing with them a preſent; for which they received, in return, red feathers, &c. Red feathers are here, as at Otaheite, a very remarkable commodity, with which the ſeamen made purchaſes of cloth, and other manufactures of the iſland: thoſe who were followed by their miſſes from Otaheite, kept ſeparate tables for them, at a ſmall expence; while the miſſes catered and cooked for their mates, who feaſted every day on barbicued pigs, ſtewed fowls, roaſted bread-fruit, and a variety of other delicacies, purchaſed by the ladies for the mereſt trifles. Among our foremaſt-men were many who laid in ſtore of theſe good things for their ſupport, in caſe of being reduced to ſhort allowance; and they had reaſon, afterwards, to conſole themſelves on their provident care.

The Captain now, after the hurry of buſineſs in the morning was over, prepared to make a viſit in form to Taireetareea, the Earee rahie, or preſent reigning king of the iſland. Omiah, who was to accompany him, dreſſed himſelf very properly on the occaſion, and provided a handſome preſent for the chief himſelf, and another for his Eatooa. Their landing drew moſt of the viſitors from the ſhips, who, with many others, aſſembled in a large houſe. The concourſe of people became very great, the major part of whom ſeemed ſtouter and fairer than thoſe of Otaheite; and the number of men who appeared to be of conſequence was alſo much greater, in proportion to the extent of the iſland. The Captain waited ſome time for the king; but when he appeared, we found his preſence might have been diſpenſed with, as his age did not exceed ten years. Omiah, who ſtood at a little diſtance from the circle of great men, began with making his offering to the gods, which conſiſted of cloth, red feathers, &c. Another offering ſucceeded, which was to be given to the gods by the young chief; and after that, ſeveral other tufts of red feathers were preſented. The different articles were laid before a prieſt, being each of them delivered with a kind of prayer, which was ſpoken by one of Omiah's friends, though in a great meaſure dictated by himſelf. In theſe oraiſons he did not forget his friends in England, nor thoſe who had conducted him ſafe back to his native country. The Earee rahie no Pretanne, the Earl of Sandwich, Toote (Captain Cooke), Tatee (Captain Clerke), were mentioned in every one of them. Theſe offerings and prayers being ended, the prieſt took each of the articles in order, and, after repeating a concluding prayer, ſent every one of them to the Morai. After the performance of theſe religious rites, Omiah ſeated himſelf by the Captain, who beſtowed a preſent on the young prince, and received another in return. Some arrangements were next agreed upon, relative to the mode of carrying on the intercourſe between us and the natives; to whom the Captain pointed out the miſchievous conſequences that would attend their plundering us, as on former occaſions. The eſtabliſhment of Omiah was then propoſed to this aſſembly of chiefs. They were informed, that we had conveyed him into England, where he was well received by the great King of Pretanne, and his Earees; and had been treated, during his whole ſtay, with all the marks of regard and affection; that he had been brought back again, and enriched with a variety of articles, which, it was hoped, would be highly beneficial to his countrymen; and that, beſides the two horſes which were to continue with him, many other new and uſeful animals had been left at Otaheite, which would ſpeedily multiply, and furniſh a ſufficient number for the uſe of all the neighbouring iſlands. The Captain then gave them to underſtand, it was his earneſt requeſt that they would give his friend, Omiah, a piece of land, upon which he might build a houſe, and raiſe proviſions for himſelf and family; adding, that if he could not obtain this at Huaheine, either by donation or purchaſe, he was reſolved to carry him to Ulietea, and ſettle him there. We obſerved that this concluſion ſeemed to gain the approbation of all the chiefs; and the reaſon was not leſs obvious. Omiah had vainly flattered himſelf, that the Captain would uſe force in reſtoring him to his father's poſſeſſions, in Ulietea; and he had talked at random, on this ſubject, among ſome chiefs, at this meeting, who now expected that they ſhould be aſſiſted by us in an invaſion of Ulietea, and driving the Bolabolans out of that iſland. It being proper, therefore, that they ſhould be undeceived in this particular, the Captain, with this view, ſignified to them, in the moſt deciſive manner, that he would neither give them any aſſiſtance in ſuch an enterprize, nor even ſuffer it to be put in execution, while he remained in their ſeas; and that, if Omiah eſtabliſhed himſelf in Ulietea, he ſhould be introduced as a friend, and not forced upon the people of Bolabola as their conqueror. This peremptory declaration immediately gave a new turn to the ſentiments of the council; one of whom expreſſed himſelf to this effect: that the whole iſland of Huaheine, and whatever it contained, were Captain Cook's, and therefore he might diſpoſe of what portion he pleaſed to his friend: but, though Omiah ſeemed much pleaſed at hearing this, to make an offer of what it would be improper to accept, the Captain conſidered as offering nothing: he for this reaſon deſired them to mark out the particular ſpot, and likewiſe the exact quantity of land, which they intended to grant for the ſettlement. Upon this, ſome chiefs, who had retired from the aſſembly, were ſent for; and, after a ſhort conſultation, the Commodore's requeſt was unanimouſly complied with, and the ground immediately fixed upon, adjoining to the houſe where the preſent meeting was held. It extended along the ſhore of the harbour, about 200 yards; its depth, to the bottom of the hill, was ſomewhat more; and a proportionable part of the hill was comprehended in the grant.

This affair being ſettled, on Saturday, the 18th, a tent was pitched on ſhore, a poſt eſtabliſhed, and the obſervatories erected. As this was one of the moſt plentiful of the Society Iſles, it was propoſed to make ſome ſtay here, in order to careen the ſhips, and to lay in proviſions for future uſe. This was the more neceſſary, as we were to ſail to countries wholly unknown, where it was uncertain what accommodations we might meet with, or to what difficulties we might be ſubject. The beds and furniture of every kind were therefore unladen, and every crevice of the ſhips examined, ſcraped, waſhed with vinegar, and ſmoked. While this laſt operation was performing, the lower port-holes were left open, for the rats to make their eſcape; in ſhort, a thorough reviſion was directed to be made of every thing on board, as well to cleanſe the furniture from vermin, as to remove the danger of infection from putrid air, generated by a perpetual ſucceſſion of multitudes of people, between decks, ever ſince our arrival at Otaheite. The ſick were, at the ſame time, landed for the benefit of the air, and every means uſed to recover, and to preſerve them in health when recovered. Among the ſick was Captain Cook himſelf, for whoſe recovery the crews of both ſhips were under much concern, as the ſucceſs of the voyage was thought in a great meaſure to depend upon his care and conduct. By the doctor's advice, he was prevailed upon to ſleep on ſhore; where he was aſſiduouſly attended, night and day, by the ſurgeons of both ſhips, who watched with him alternately, till he was out of danger. As ſoon as he was able, he rode out every day with Omiah on horſeback, followed by the natives, who, attracted by the novelty of the ſight, flocked from the remoteſt parts of the iſland to be ſpectators. We alſo during our ſtay in this harbour, carried the bread on ſhore to clear it of vermin. The number of cockroaches that infeſted the ſhip at this time is almoſt incredible. The damage we ſuſtained by them was very conſiderable; and every attempt to deſtroy them proved fruitleſs. If any kind of food was expoſed for a few minutes, it was covered with theſe noxious inſects, who ſoon pierced it full of holes, ſo that it reſembled a honeycomb. They proved particularly deſtructive to birds which had been ſtuffed for curioſities, and were ſo fond of ink, that they eat out the writing on the labels faſtened to different articles; and the only thing that preſerved books from their ravages, was the cloſeneſs of their binding, which prevented theſe voracious deſtroyers from inſinuating themſelves between the leaves. According to Mr. Anderſon, they were of two ſorts, the *blatta orientalis*, and *germanica*. The former had been carried home in the Reſolution, in her laſt voyage, where they withſtood the ſeverity of the winter, in 1776, though ſhe was in dock all the time. The latter had only made their appearance ſince our leaving New Zealand; but had increaſed ſo faſt, that they now got even into our rigging; ſo that when a ſail was looſened thouſands of them fell upon the decks. Though the *orientales* were in infinite numbers, they ſeldom came out but in the night, when they made a particular noiſe in crawling about: and, beſides their diſagreeable appearance, they did great miſchief to our bread, which dainty feeders would have ill-reliſhed, being ſo beſpattered with their excrement.

The carpenters and caulkers had no ſooner completed their buſineſs on board, than they were ordered on ſhore to erect a houſe for Omiah, wherein he might ſecure the various European commodities that he had in his poſſeſſion: at the ſame time, others of our people were employed in making a garden for his uſe, planting vines, ſhaddocks, melons, pine-apples, and the ſeeds of various kinds of vegetables; all which were in a flouriſhing ſtate before our departure from the iſland. Omiah began now to pay a ſerious attention to his own affairs, and heartily repented of his ill-judged prodigality at Otaheite. Here he found a brother, a ſiſter, and a brother-in-law, the ſiſter having been married: theſe did not plunder him, as his other relations had lately done; it appeared, however, that though they had too much honeſty and good-nature to do him any injury, yet, they were of too little conſequence in the iſland, to do him any real ſervices, having neither authority nor influence to protect his property or his perſon. Thus circumſtanced, he ran great riſque of being ſtripped of every thing he had received from his generous benefactors, as ſoon as he ſhould ceaſe to be within the reach of our powerful protection. He was now on the point of being placed in a very ſingular ſituation, that of the only rich man in the kingdom and community of which he was to be a member; and being maſter of an accumulated quantity of a ſpecies of treaſure, which his countrymen could not create by any art or induſtry of their own, it was natural, therefore, to imagine, that while all were deſirous of ſharing this envied wealth, all would be ready to join in attempts to ſtrip its ſole proprietor. As the moſt likely means of preventing this, Captain Cook adviſed him to diſtribute ſome of his moveables among two or three of the principal chiefs; who, on being thus gratified, might be induced to favour him with their patronage, and ſhield him from the injuries of others. Omiah promiſed to follow this advice, and we heard, before we ſailed, this prudent ſtep had been taken. The Captain, however, not confiding wholly in the operations of gratitude, had recourſe to the more forcible and effectual motive of intimidation, taking every opportunity of notifying to the inhabitants, that it was his intention to make another viſit to their iſland, after having been abſent the uſual time; and that if he did not find his friend in the ſame ſtate of ſecurity in which he ſhould leave him at preſent, all thoſe who had been his enemies might expect to become the objects of his reſentment. This menacing declaration will, probably, have ſome effect; for our ſucceſſive viſits of late years have induced theſe iſlanders to believe, that our ſhips are to return at certain periods; and while they continue to entertain ſuch a notion, which the Captain thought a fair ſtratagem to confirm, Omiah has ſome proſpect of being ſuffered to thrive upon his new plantation.

On Wedneſday, the 22d, the intercourſe of trade and friendly offices, between us and the inhabitants of Huaheine, was interrupted; for, in the evening, one of the latter found means to get into Mr. Bayley's obſervatory, and carry off a ſextant, unobſerved. Captain Cook was no ſooner informed of this theft, than he went aſhore, and deſired Omiah to apply to the chiefs, to procure reſtitution. He accordingly made application to them, but they took no ſteps towards recovering the inſtrument, being more attentive to a heeva, that was then exhibiting, till the Captain ordered the performers to deſiſt. Being now convinced he was in earneſt, they began to make ſome enquiry after the delinquent, who was ſitting in the midſt of them, with ſuch marks of unconcern, that the Captain was in great doubt of his being guilty, particularly as he denied it. Omiah aſſuring him this was the perſon, he was ſent on board the Reſolution, and put in irons. This raiſed an univerſal ferment among the iſlanders: and the whole body fled with precipitation. The priſoner being examined by Omiah, was with ſome difficulty brought to confeſs where he had concealed the ſextant, and it was brought back unhurt the next morning. After this, the natives recovered from their conſternation, and began to gather about us as uſual. As the thief appeared to be a ſhameleſs villain, the Commodore puniſhed him with greater ſeverity than he had ever done any former culprit; for, beſides having his head and beard ſhaved, he ordered both his ears to be cut off, and his eye-brows to be fleed, than which no puniſhment could have ſubjected him to greater diſgrace. In this bleeding condition he was ſent on ſhore, and expoſed as a ſpectacle to intimidate the people from meddling with what was not their own. The natives looked with horror upon the man, and it was eaſy to perceive that this act gave them general diſguſt: even Omiah was affected, though he endeavoured to juſtify it, by telling his friends, that if ſuch a crime had been committed in the country where he had been, the thief would have been ſentenced to loſe his life. But, how well ſoever he might carry off the matter, he dreaded the conſequences to himſelf, which, in part, appeared in a few days, and were probably more ſeverely felt by him, ſoon after we were gone.

Saturday, the 25th, a general alarm was ſpread, occaſioned by a report, that one of our goats had been ſtolen by the above-mentioned thief; and though, upon examination, we found every thing ſafe in that quarter, yet it appeared, that he had deſtroyed and carried off from Omiah's grounds, ſeveral vines and cabbage plants; that he had publicly threatened to put him to death, and to ſet fire to his houſe, as ſoon as we ſhould quit this place. To prevent his doing any further miſchief, the Captain ordered him to be ſeized, and confined again on board the ſhip, with a view of carrying him off the iſland; and this intention ſeemed to give general ſatisfaction to all the chiefs. He was a native of Bolabola; but there were too many of the people here ready to co-operate with him in all his deſigns. We had, indeed, always met with more troubleſome people in Huaheine, than in any other of the adjacent iſlands; and it was only from fear, and the want of proper opportunities, that induced them to behave better now. Anarchy and confuſion ſeemed to prevail among them. Their Earee rahie, as we have already obſerved, was but a child; and we did not obſerve, that there was one individual, or any ſet of men, who held the reins of government for him; ſo that whenever any miſunderſtanding occurred between us, we never knew, with ſufficient preciſion, to whom it was neceſſary to apply, in order to effect an accommodation, or procure redreſs. On Thurſday, the 30th, early in the morning, our priſoner, the Bolabola-man, found means to eſcape from his confinement, and out of the ſhip, carrying with him the ſhackle of the bilboo-bolt that had been put about his leg, which was taken from him as ſoon as he arrived on ſhore, by one of the chiefs, and given to Omiah, who quickly came on board, to inform the Captain, that his mortal enemy was again let looſe upon him. We found, upon enquiry, that the ſentry placed over the priſoner, and even the whole watch in that part of the ſhip where he was confined, having fallen aſleep, he ſeized the favourable opportunity, took the key of the irons out of the drawer into which he had ſeen it put, and ſet himſelf at liberty. This eſcape convinced the Commodore, that his people had been very remiſs in their night-duty; which rendered it neceſſary to chaſtiſe thoſe who were now in fault, and to eſtabliſh ſome new regulations that might prevent ſimilar negligence in future. We were pleaſed at hearing, afterwards, that the fellow who eſcaped, had gone over to Ulietea; but it was thought by ſome, he only intended to conceal himſelf till our departure, when he would revenge the indignity we had treated him with, by open or ſecret attacks upon Omiah. The houſe of this great man being now nearly finiſhed, many of his moveables were carried aſhore. Among other articles was a box of toys, which greatly pleaſed the gazing multitude: but as to his plates, diſhes, drinking mugs, glaſſes, and the whole train of houſehold apparatus, ſcarce one of his countrymen would even look at them. Omiah himſelf began to think, that they would be of no ſervice to him; that a baked hog was more ſavory than a boiled one; that a plantain leaf made as good a diſh or plate as pewter; and that a cocoa-nut ſhell was as convenient a goblet as one of our mugs. He therefore diſpoſed of moſt of theſe articles of Engliſh furniture among the crew of our ſhips; and received from them, in return, hatchets, and other iron implements, which had a more intrinſic value in this part of the world. Among the numerous preſents beſtowed upon him in England, fireworks had not been omitted; ſome of which we exhibited in the evening of the 28th, before a great number of people, who beheld them with a mixture of pleaſure and fear. Thoſe that remained were put in order, and left with Omiah, purſuant to their original deſtination.

We now began to make preparations for our departure from Huaheine, and got every thing off from the ſhore this evening, except a goat big with kid, a horſe and a mare, which were left in the poſſeſſion of Omiah, who was now to be finally ſeparated from us. We gave him alſo a boar, and two ſows, of the Engliſh breed; and he had got two ſows of his own. The horſe had covered the mare during our continuance at Otaheite; ſo that the introduction of a breed of horſes into theſe iſlands, has probably ſucceeded, by this valuable preſent. With regard to Omiah's domeſtic eſtabliſhment, he had procured at Otaheite, four or five toutous or people of the lower claſs; the two young New Zealanders remained with him, and his brother, with ſome others, joined him; ſo that his family now conſiſted of ten or eleven perſons: if that can be juſtly denominated a family, to which not one female belonged. The houſe which our people erected for him was 24 feet by 18, and ten feet high: it was compoſed of boards, which were the ſpoils of our military operations at Eimeo, and in the conſtruction of it, as few nails as poſſible were uſed, leſt an inducement ſhould ariſe, from a deſire of iron, to pull it down. It was agreed upon, that, immediately after our departure, he ſhould erect a ſpacious houſe, after the faſhion of his own country; one end of which was to be brought over that we had built, ſo as entirely to encloſe it for greater ſecurity. In this work, ſome of the chiefs of the iſland promiſed to contribute their aſſiſtance; and if the intended building ſhould cover the ground which was marked out for it, few of the houſes in Huaheine will exceed it in magnitude. Omiah's European weapons conſiſted of a fowling piece, two pair of piſtols, ſeveral ſwords, cutlaſſes, a muſket, bayonet, and a cartouch box. After he had got on ſhore whatever belonged to him, he invited ſeveral times the two captains, and moſt of the officers of both ſhips to dine with him; on which occaſions his table was plentifully ſpread with the beſt proviſions that the iſland could afford. Omiah, thus powerfully ſupported, went through the fatigues of the day better than could have been expected from the deſpondency that appeared in his countenance, when firſt the company began to aſſemble. Perhaps his awkward ſituation, between half Engliſh and half Indian preparations, might contribute not a little to embarraſs him; for having never before made an entertainment himſelf, though he had been a partaker at many both in England and in the iſlands, he was yet at a loſs to conduct himſelf properly to ſo many gueſts, all of them ſuperior to himſelf in point of rank, though he might be ſaid to be ſuperior, in point of fortune, to moſt of the chiefs preſent. Nothing, however, was wanting to impreſs the inhabitants with an opinion of Omiah's conſequence. The drums, trumpets, bagpipes, hautboys, flutes, violins, in ſhort, the whole band of muſic attended, and took it by turns to play while dinner was getting ready; and when the company were ſeated, the whole band joined in full concert, to the admiration of crowds of the inhabitants, who were aſſembled round the houſe on this occaſion. The dinner conſiſted, as uſual, of the various productions of the iſland, barbicued hogs, fowls dreſſed, ſome after the manner of the country, and others after the Engliſh faſhion, with plenty of wine and other liquors, with which two or three of the chiefs made very free. Dinner over, heevas and fire-works ſucceeded, and when night approached, the multitudes that attended us ſpectators diſperſed, without the leaſt diſorder. Before we ſet ſail, the Commodore cauſed the following inſcription to be cut in the front of Omiah's houſe;

Georgius tertius, Rex, 2 *Novembris,* 1777.
Naves { *Reſolution, Jac. Cook, Pr.*
{ *Diſcovery, Car. Clerke, Pr.*

November 2nd, on Sunday, at four o'clock P. M. we took the advantage of an eaſterly breeze, and ſailed out of Owharre harbour. While here, we had procured more than 400 hogs, many of them large. Though it had been found in former voyages, that moſt of them which were carried to ſea alive refuſed to eat, and conſequently were ſoon killed, yet we reſolved to make one experiment more; and by procuring large quantities of yams, and other roots, on which they were accuſtomed to feed on ſhore, we ventured to take a few in each ſhip; and for this purpoſe our carpenters had prepared ſtyes for their reception in thoſe parts where they might remain cool. Moſt of our friends, natives of Huaheine, continued on board till our veſſels were under ſail; when the Captain, to gratify their curioſity, ordered five of the great guns to be fired. Then they all left us, except Omiah, who remained till we were out at ſea. We had come to ſail by a hawſer faſtened to the ſhore, which in caſting the ſhip, parted, being cut by the rocks, and its outer end was left behind: it therefore became neceſſary to diſpatch a boat to bring it on ſhore. In this boat Omiah went aſhore, and took a very affectionate and final leave of the Captain, never to ſee him more. He had endeavoured to prevail on Captain Cook to let him return to England, which made his parting with him and our officers the more affecting. If tears could have prevailed on our commander to let him return, Omiah's eyes were never dry; and if the tendereſt ſupplications of a dutiful ſon to an obdurate father could have made any impreſſion, Omiah hung round his neck in all the ſeeming agony of a child trying to melt the heart of a reluctant parent. He twined his arms round him with the ardour of inviolable friendſhip, till Captain Cook, unable any longer to contain himſelf, broke from him, and retired to his cabin, to indulge that natural ſympathy which he could not reſiſt, leaving Omiah to dry up his tears, and compoſe himſelf on the quarter deck. On his return, he reaſoned with his friend, upon the impropriety of his requeſt; reminding him of his anxieties while in England, leſt he ſhould never more have been permitted to return home; and now that he had been reſtored to his friends and country, at a great expence to his royal maſter, it was childiſh to entertain a notion of being carried back. Omiah renewed his tears and ſaid, he had indeed wiſhed to ſee his country and friends; but having ſeen them he was contented, and would never long for home again. Captain Cook aſſured him of his beſt wiſhes, but his inſtructions muſt be obeyed, which were to leave him with his friends. Such was the parting ſcene between Omiah and his patron; nor were the two New Zealand boys under leſs concern to leave us than Omiah. They had already learned to ſpeak Engliſh enough to expreſs their hopes and their fears. They hoped to have gone along with the ſhips, and cried bitterly when they underſtood they were to be left behind. Thence aroſe a new ſcene between Omiah and his ſervants, that, had not the officers on the quarter deck interpoſed, might have ended unfortunately for the former; for they refuſed to quit the ſhip, till they were compelled to it by force, which would have been no eaſy matter, the eldeſt, near ſixteen, being of an athletic make; and the youngeſt, about eleven, a giant of his age. They were both tractable and obliging, till they found they were to be left at Huaheine, but knowing this at our departure from that place, they grew deſperate till ſubdued. They diſcovered diſpoſitions the very reverſe of the iſlanders, among whom they were deſtined to abide during the remainder of their lives; and, inſtead of a mean, timid ſubmiſſion, they ſhewed a manly determined reſolution not to be ſubdued, though overcome; and ready, if there had been a poſſibility to ſucceed, to have made a ſecond or even third attempt to have regained their liberty. We could never learn Captain Cook's reaſon, for refuſing to take on board ſome of thoſe gallant youths from New Zealand, who, no doubt, would have made uſeful hands in the high latitudes we were about to explore, and would beſides have been living exhibitions of a people, whoſe portraits have been imperfectly depicted even by our beſt draughtſmen. There is a dauntleſs fierceneſs in the eyes and countenance of a New Zealand warrior, which the pencil of the moſt eminent artiſt cannot imitate; and we lament the non-importation of a native from every climate, where nature had marked a viſible diſtinction in the characters of perſon and mind. Having bid farewel to Omiah, he was accompanied by Mr. King in the boat, who informed us, he had wept all the time he was going aſhore.

Though we had now, to our great ſatisfaction, brought Omiah ſafe back to the very ſpot from whence he was taken, it is probable we left him in a ſituation leſs deſirable than that which he was in before his connection with us: not that, having taſted the comforts of civilized life, he muſt become more wretched from being obliged to relinquiſh all thoughts of continuing them, but merely becauſe the advantages he received from us, have placed him in a more hazardous ſituation, with reſpect to his perſonal ſafety. From being greatly careſſed in England, he had loſt ſight of his primary condition, and did not conſider in what manner his acquiſitions, either of knowledge, or of wealth, would be eſtimated by his countrymen, at his return; which were the only things whereby he could recommend himſelf to them now, more than before, and on which he could lay the foundation either of his future greatneſs or happineſs. He appeared to have, in ſome meaſure, forgotten their cuſtoms in this reſpect, and even to have miſtaken their genius; otherwiſe we muſt have been convinced of the extreme difficulty he would find in getting himſelf admitted as a man of rank, where there is ſcarcely a ſingle inſtance of a perſon's being raiſed from an inferior ſtation even by the greateſt merit. Rank ſeems to be the foundation of all power and diſtinction here, and is ſo pertinaciouſly adhered to, that, unleſs a perſon has ſome degree of it, he will be contemned and hated, if he pretends to exerciſe any authority. This was really the caſe, in ſome degree, with Omiah; though his countrymen were rather cautious in expreſſing their ſentiments while we continued among them. Nevertheleſs, had he made a proper uſe of the preſents he brought with him from Great Britain, this, with the knowledge he had gained by travelling, might have enabled him to have formed the moſt advantageous connections: but he exhibited too many proofs of a weak inattention to this obvious means of promoting his intereſt. He had formed ſchemes of a higher nature, perhaps, with more truth, it may be ſaid, meaner; for revenge, rather than a deſire of greatneſs, appeared to influence him from the beginning. His father was, certainly, a man of conſiderable property in Ulietea, when that iſland was ſubdued by the inhabitants of Bolabola, and with many others, fled for refuge to Huaheine, where he died, and left Omiah, with ſeveral other children, who thus became entirely dependent. In this ſituation Captain Furneaux took him up, and brought him to England. Whether he expected, from the treatment he there met with, that any aſſiſtance would be afforded him againſt the enemies of his father and his country; or whether he had the vanity to ſuppoſe, that his own ſuperiority of knowledge, and perſonal courage, would be ſufficient to diſpoſſeſs the conquerors of Ulietea, is uncertain; but, from the very commencement of the voyage, this was his conſtant topic. He would not pay any attention to our remonſtrances on ſuch an inconſiderate determination, but was diſpleaſed, whenever more reaſonable counſels were propoſed for his benefit. Nay, he was ſo ridiculouſly attached to his favourite ſcheme, that he affected to believe the Bolabolans would certainly quit the conquered iſland, as ſoon as they ſhould have intelligence of his arrival in Otaheite. As we proceeded, however, on our voyage, he began to perceive his error; and, by the time of our arrival at the Friendly Iſlands, had ſuch apprehenſions of an unſavourable reception in his own country, that he was inclined to have remained at Tongataboo, under the protection of his friend Feenou. At theſe iſlands he ſquandered away a conſiderable part of his European treaſure; and he was equally imprudent at Otaheite, till Captain Cook put a ſtop to his profuſion. He alſo formed ſuch improper connections there, that Otoo, though at firſt diſpoſed to countenance him, afterwards expreſſed openly his diſapprobation of his conduct. He might, however, have recovered the favour of that chief, and have ſettled, to great advantage, in Otaheite, as he had formerly lived ſome years there, and was now honoured with the notice of Towha, whoſe valuable preſent of a large double canoe has been already mentioned. But he continued undetermined to the laſt, and probably would not have adopted the plan of ſettlement in Huaheine, if Captain Cook had not ſo poſitively refuſed to employ force in reſtoring him to the poſſeſſion of his father's property. Omiah's greateſt danger, in his preſent ſituation, will ariſe from the very imprudent declarations of his antipathy to the Bolabolans; for thoſe people, from motives of jealouſy, will undoubtedly endeavour to render him obnoxious to the inhabitants of Huaheine; and as they are now at peace with that iſland, they may eaſily accompliſh their deſigns. This circumſtance he might, with great eaſe, have avoided; for they were not only free from any averſion to him, but the old chief, who is reputed by the natives of the Society iſlands, to be a prieſt, or god, even offered to reinſtate him in his father's lands: but he peremptorily refuſed this; and, to the very laſt, continued fixed in his reſolution to embrace the firſt opportunity of ſatisfying his revenge in battle. To this he is perhaps not a little ſtimulated by the coat of mail he brought from England; clothed in which, and furniſhed with fire arms, he idly imagines he ſhall be invincible. But the defects in Omiah's character were conſiderably overbalanced by his great good nature, and docile tractable diſpoſition. Captain Cook, during the whole time he was with him, ſeldom had reaſon to be ſeriouſly diſpleaſed with his general conduct. His grateful heart ever retained the higheſt ſenſe of the favours conferred on him in England; nor will he ever be unmindful of thoſe who honoured him while in that kingdom, with their friendſhip and protection. Though he had a tolerable ſhare of underſtanding, he ſhewed little application and perſeverance in exerting it, ſo that he had but a general and imperfect knowledge of things. He was not a man much uſed to obſervation: otherwiſe, he might have conveyed to his native country many elegant amuſements, and uſeful arts, to be found among the Friendly Iſlanders; but we never perceived, that he endeavoured to make himſelf maſter of any one of them. Such indifference is, indeed, the characteriſtic foible of his countrymen. Though they have been viſited by Europeans, at times, for theſe ten years paſt, we could not diſcern the ſlighteſt veſtige of any attempt to profit by this interview, nor have they hitherto imitated us but in very few reſpects. It muſt not, therefore, be expected, that Omiah will be able to introduce among them many arts and cuſtoms, or much improve thoſe to which they have been familiarized by long habit. We truſt, however, that he will exert his endeavours to bring to perfection the various fruits and vegetables that were planted by us, which will be no ſmall acquiſition. But the principal advantage theſe iſlands are likely to receive from the travels of Omiah, will probably ariſe from the animals that have been left upon them; which, perhaps, they never would have obtained, if he had not come over to England. When theſe multiply, Otaheite, and the Society Iſles, will equal any place in the known world, with reſpect to proviſions. Omiah's return, and the ſubſtantial proofs he had diſplayed of Britiſh liberality, encouraged many to offer themſelves as volunteers to accompany us to Pretanne; but our Commodore took every opportunity of expreſſing his fixed determination to reject all applications of that kind: and Omiah, who was ambitious of remaining the only great traveller among them, being afraid the Commodore might be prevailed upon to place others in the ſame ſituation, as rivals, frequently reminded him of the declaration of the Earl of Sandwich, that no others of his countrymen were to be carried to England. When the Captain was about to bid farewel to Omiah, he gave him his laſt leſſons of inſtruction how to act: directing him at the ſame time to ſend his boat over to Ulietea, his native iſland, to let him know how the chiefs behaved to him in the abſence of the ſhips. If well, he was to ſend by the meſſenger three white beads: if they ſeized upon his ſtock, or broke in upon his plantation, three red beads: or if things remained juſt as we left them, he was to ſend three ſpotted beads.

As ſoon as the boat, in which Omiah was conveyed aſhore, had returned, with the remainder of the hawſer, to the ſhip, we hoiſted her in, and ſtood over for Ulietea without delay. The next morning, being the 3d, we made ſail round the ſouthern end of that iſland, for the harbour of Ohamaneno. We met with light airs and calms alternately, ſo that at twelve o'clock we were ſtill at the diſtance of a league from the mouth of the harbour; and while we were thus detained, Oreo, the chief of the iſland, with his ſon and ſon in law, came off to pay us a viſit. All the boats were now hoiſted out, and ſent a-head to tow, being aſſiſted by a ſlight ſoutherly breeze. This ſoon failing, and being ſucceeded by an eaſterly one, which blew right out of the harbour, we were obliged to anchor at its entrance, about two o'clock P. M. and to warp in, which employed us till night. We were no ſooner within the harbour, than our ſhips were ſurrounded with canoes, filled with the natives, who brought a ſupply of fruit and hogs, which they exchanged for our commodities. The following day, the Reſolution was moored cloſe to the northern ſhore, at the entrance of the harbour, and the Diſcovery along ſide the ſouthern ſhore. In the mean time, Captain Cook returned Oreo's viſit, and preſented that chief with a red feathered cap from Tongataboo, a ſhirt, a linen gown, and a few other things of leſs value. Oreo, and ſome of his friends, then accompanied him on board to dinner.

On Thurſday the 6th, we landed the remainder of our live ſtock, ſet up the obſervatories, and carried the neceſſary inſtruments on ſhore. The two ſucceeding days, Captain Cook, Mr. King, and Mr. Bayley, obſerved the ſun's azimuths, both on ſhore and aboard, with all the compaſſes, in order to diſcover the variation. Nothing remarkable happened, till very early in the morning of Thurſday, the 13th, when a ſentinel, at the obſervatory, named John Harriſon, deſerted, taking with him his muſket and accoutrements. As ſoon as we had gained intelligence which way he was gone, a party was detached in ſearch of him: but they returned in the evening without ſucceſs. The next day the Captain applied to the chief concerning this affair, who promiſed to ſend a party of the iſlanders after the fugitive, and gave us hopes that he ſhould be brought back in the courſe of that day. This, however, did not happen; and we had reaſon to imagine, that the chief had taken no ſteps to find him. At this time a conſiderable number of the natives were about the ſhips, and ſeveral thefts committed, the conſequences of which being apprehended by them, very few came to viſit us the next morning. Oreo himſelf caught the alarm, and fled with his whole family. Captain Cook conſidered this as a good opportunity to inſiſt upon their delivering up the deſerter; and having heard he was at a place called Hamoa, ſituate on the other ſide of the iſland, he repaired thither with two armed boats, attended by a native. In our way, we met with the chief, who embarked with us. The Captain, with a few of his men, landing about a mile and a half from the ſpot, marched up to it with great expedition, leſt the ſight of the boats ſhould give the alarm, and allow the offender ſufficient time to eſcape to the mountains. This precaution proved unneceſſary; for the natives of that part of the iſland having obtained information of the Captain's approach, were prepared to deliver the deſerter. He was found with his muſket lying before him, ſeated betwixt two women, who, the inſtant that the Captain entered the houſe, roſe up to plead in his vindication. As ſuch proceedings deſerved to be diſcouraged, the Captain with a ſtern look, bid them be gone; upon which they burſt into tears, and retired. Paha, the chief of that diſtrict, now came with a ſucking pig, and a plantain tree, which he was on the point of preſenting to Captain Cook, as a peace-offering, who rejected it; and having ordered the chief to quit his preſence, embarked with Harriſon in one of the boats, and returned to the ſhips. After this, harmony was ſpeedily reſtored. The delinquent made no other excuſe for his conduct, than that the natives had enticed him away; which perhaps was in a great meaſure true, as Paha, and the two women above-mentioned, had been at the ſhip the day before his deſertion. As he had remained upon his poſt till within a few minutes of time in which he was to have been relieved by another, the puniſhment he received was not very ſevere. About a fortnight after we had arrived at Ulietea, Omiah diſpatched two of his people in a canoe, with intelligence, that he continued undiſturbed by the inhabitants of Huaheine, and that every thing ſucceeded with him, except that his goat had died in kidding. This information was accompanied with a requeſt, that Captain Cook would ſend him another goat and alſo two axes. Pleaſed with this additional opportunity of ſerving his friend, the Captain ſent back the meſſenger to Huaheine, on the 18th, with the axes, and a male and female kid. On Wedneſday the 19th, our commander of his Majeſty's ſhip, the Reſolution, delivered to Captain Clerke his inſtructions how to proceed in caſe of ſeparation, after quitting theſe iſlands, of which the following is, we believe, a true copy.

Inſtructions delivered by Captain James Cook, to Captain Charles Clerke, Commander of his Majeſty's ſhip the Diſcovery, Wedneſday the 19th of November, 1777.

"WHEREAS the paſſage from the Society Iſlands, to the northern coaſt of America, is of conſiderable length, both in diſtance and in time, and as a part of it muſt be performed in the very depth of winter, when gales of wind and bad weather muſt be expected, and may poſſibly occaſion a ſeparation, you are to take all poſſible care to prevent this. But if, notwithſtanding all our care to keep company, you ſhould be ſeparated from me, you are firſt to look for me where you laſt ſaw me. Not ſeeing me in five days, you are to proceed (as directed by the inſtructions of their lordſhips, a copy of which you have already received) for the coaſt of New Albion; endeavouring to fall in with it in the latitude of 45 deg. In which, and at a convenient diſtance from land, you are to cruize for me ten days. Not ſeeing me in that time, you are to put into the firſt convenient port, in, or to the north of that latitude, to recruit your wood and water, and to procure refreſhments. During your ſtay in port, you are conſtantly to keep a good look-out for me. It will be neceſſary, therefore, to make choice of a ſtation, ſituated as near the ſea coaſt as poſſible, the better to enable you to ſee me, when I may appear in the offing. Should I not join you before the 1ſt of next April, you are to put to ſea, and to proceed northward to the latitude of 56 deg. in which, and at a convenient diſtance from the coaſt, never exceeding 15 leagues, you are to cruize for me till the 10th of May. Not ſeeing me at that time, you are to proceed northward, and endeavour to find a paſſage into the Atlantic Ocean, through Hudſon's or Baffin's Bays, as directed by the above-mentioned inſtructions.

"But if you ſhould fail in finding a paſſage through either of the ſaid Bays, or by any other way, as the ſeaſon of the year may render it unſafe for you to remain in high latitudes, you are to repair to the harbour of St. Peter and St. Paul, in Kamptſchatka, in order to refreſh your people, and to paſs the winter. Nevertheleſs, if you find, that you cannot procure the neceſſary refreſhments, at the ſaid port, you are at liberty to go where you ſhall think proper; taking care before you depart to leave with the governor an account of your intended deſtination, to be delivered to me upon my arrival: and in the ſpring of the enſuing year, 1779, you are to repair back to the above-mentioned port, endeavouring to be there by the 10th of May, or ſooner. If on your arrival, you receive no orders from, or account of me, ſo as to juſtify your purſuing any other meaſures than what are pointed out in the before-mentioned inſtructions, your future proceedings are to be governed by them. You are alſo to comply with ſuch parts of the ſaid inſtructions, as have not been executed, and are not contrary to theſe orders. And in caſe of your inability, by ſickneſs, or otherwiſe, to carry theſe, and the inſtructions of their lordſhips into execution, you are to be careful to leave them with the next officer in command, who is hereby required to execute them in the beſt manner he can."

On Monday the 24th, in the morning, Mr. M——, midſhipman, and the gunner's mate, two of the Diſcovery's people, were miſſing. They had embarked in a canoe, with two of their Otaheitean miſſes, the preceding night, and were now at the other end of the iſland. As the midſhipman had expreſſed a deſire of continuing at one of the Society Iſlands, it was extremely probable, that he and his companion had gone off with that intent. Captain Clerke therefore, with two armed boats, and a detachment of marines, ſet out in queſt of the fugitives, but returned in the evening without ſucceſs. From the behaviour of the iſlanders, he was of opinion, that they intended to conceal the deſerters; and, with this view had deceived him with falſe information directing him to ſeek for them where they could not be found. He was not miſtaken; for, the next morning intelligence was brought, that the two runaways were in the iſle of Otaha, with a view to continue their courſe to Otaheite, as ſoon as they had furniſhed themſelves with proviſions for the voyage. Theſe not being the only perſons in the ſhips who were deſirous of remaining at theſe favourite iſlands, it was neceſſary, in order to give an effectual diſcouragement to any further deſertion, to recover them at all events. Captain Cook, therefore, determined to go in purſuit of them himſelf, having obſerved that the natives ſeldom attempted to amuſe him with falſe information. He accordingly ſet out with two armed boats, accompanied by Oreo himſelf. They proceeded, without ſtopping at any place, till they came to the eaſtern ſide of Otaha, where they put aſhore; and the chief diſpatched a man before him, with orders to ſeize the fugitives, and keep them till the Captain and his attendants ſhould arrive with the boats: but when arrived at the place where they expected to find them, they were informed, that they had quitted the iſland, and proceeded to Bolabola the day before. The Captain, not chuſing to follow them thither, returned to the ſhips, with a full determination to have recourſe to a meaſure, which he had reaſon to believe would compel the natives to reſtore them. On Wedneſday the 26th, ſoon after day-break, Oreo, with his ſon, daughter, and ſon-in-law, having come on board the Reſolution, the Commodore reſolved to detain the three laſt, till our deſerters ſhould be delivered up. With this view Captain Clarke invited them on board his ſhip; and, as ſoon as they had entered his cabin, a ſentinel was placed at the door, and the window ſecured. This proceeding greatly ſurpriſed them; and Captain Clerke having explained the reaſon of it, they burſt into tears, and begged he would not kill them. He proteſted he would not, and that the moment his people were brought back, they ſhould be releaſed. This, however, did not remove their uneaſy apprehenſions, and they bewailed their expected fate in ſilent ſorrow. The chief being with Captain Cook when he received intelligence of this affair, mentioned it immediately to him, imagining that this ſtep had been taken without his knowledge and approbation. The Captain inſtantly undeceived him; and then he began to entertain a fear with reſpect to his own perſonal ſafety, and his countenance indicated the greateſt perturbation of mind: but the Captain ſoon quieted his fears, by telling him, that he was at liberty to quit the ſhip whenever he choſe, and to take ſuch ſteps towards the recovery of our two men, as he ſhould judge beſt calculated for that purpoſe; and that, if he ſhould meet with ſucceſs, his friends, on board the Diſcovery, ſhould be releaſed from their confinement: if not, that they ſhould be carried away with us. The Captain added, that the chief's conduct, as well as that of many of his countrymen, in not only aſſiſting theſe two men in making their eſcape, but in endeavouring, at this very time, to prevail upon others to follow them, would juſtify any meaſure that ſhould ſerve to put a ſtop to ſuch proceedings. All this was done, as we have already hinted, to intereſt the people of the iſland in the purſuit after the fugitives, and, to this end, the Captain promiſed a reward of large axes, and other valuable articles, to any of the natives who ſhould be inſtrumental in apprehending and bringing them back. The confinement of part of the royal family might ſeem hard uſage, yet it had its effect, and without this ſteady reſolute proceeding the deſerters would never have been recovered. The boats of the Diſcovery went day after day to all the adjoining iſlands, without being able to learn the leaſt trace of them; and this they continued, till having ſearched every iſland within the diſtance of two days ſail, they were obliged to give over any farther ſearch, as fruitleſs. The explanation of the motives upon which Captain Cook acted, ſeemed to remove,

move, in a great degree, that general conſternation into which Oreo, and his people preſent, were at firſt thrown. But, though relieved from all apprehenſions with regard to their own ſafety, they were ſtill under the deepeſt concern for the priſoners in the Diſcovery. Numbers of them went under the ſtern of the ſhip, in canoes, and lamented their captivity with long and loud exclamations. The name of Poedooa (which was that of Oreo's daughter) reſounded from every quarter; and the women not only made a moſt diſmal howling, but ſtruck their boſoms, and cut their heads with ſharks teeth, which occaſioned a conſiderable effuſion of blood.

The chief now diſpatched a canoe to Bolabola, with a meſſage to Opoony, king of that iſland, informing him of what had happened, and requeſting him to ſeize the two deſerters, and ſend them back. The meſſenger, who was the father of Oreo's ſon-in-law Pootoe, came to receive the Captain's commands before his departure; who ſtrictly enjoined him not to return without the fugitives, and to tell Opoony, from him, that, if they had left the iſle of Bolabola, he muſt ſend canoes in purſuit of them. But the impatient natives, not thinking proper to truſt to the return of our people for the releaſe of the priſoners, were induced to meditate an attempt, which, if it had not been prevented, might have involved them in ſtill greater diſtreſs. Between five and ſix o'clock, Captain Cook, who was then on ſhore, abreaſt of the ſhip, obſerved all their canoes, in and about the harbour, began to move off. He enquired, in vain, for the cauſe of this; till ſome of our people, calling to us from the Diſcovery, informed us, that a body of the iſlanders had ſeized Captain Clerke and Mr. Gore, as they were walking at a ſmall diſtance from the ſhips. The Commodore, ſtruck with the boldneſs of this ſcheme of retaliation, which ſeemed to counteract him in his own way, inſtantly commanded his people to arm; and, in a few minutes, a ſtrong party, under the conduct of Mr. King, were ſent to the reſcue of the two gentlemen. At the ſame time two armed boats, and a party, under Mr. Williamſon, were diſpatched, to intercept the flying canoes in their retreat to the ſhore. Theſe detachments had ſcarcely gone out of ſight, when intelligence arrived, which convinced us we had been miſinformed; and they were immediately, in conſequence of this, called in. However, it appeared from ſeveral corroborating particulars, that the natives had actually formed the deſign of ſeizing Captain Clerke; and they even made no ſecret in ſpeaking of it the following day. But the principal part of the plan of their operations was to have ſecured the perſon of Captain Cook. He was accuſtomed to bathe every evening in the freſh water; on which occaſions he frequently went alone, and was unarmed. Expecting him to go this evening, as uſual, they had reſolved upon ſeizing him, and Captain Clerke likewiſe, if he had accompanied him. But our Commander, after confining the chief's family, had taken care to avoid putting himſelf in their power; and had cautioned Captain Clerke and the officers, not to go to any conſiderable diſtance from the ſhips. Oreo, in the courſe of the afternoon, aſked our Commodore, three or four times, if he would not go to the bathing place; till at length finding that the Captain could not be prevailed upon, he retired, with his people, notwithſtanding all our intreaties to the contrary. Having no ſuſpicion, at this time, of their deſign, Captain Cook imagined, that a ſudden panic had ſeized them, which would be ſoon over. Being diſappointed with reſpect to him, they fixed upon thoſe whom they thought more in their power. It was a fortunate circumſtance that they did not ſucceed in their deſign, and that no miſchief was done on the occaſion; no muſkets being fired, except two or three to ſtop the canoes; to which firing, perhaps Captain Clerke and Mr. Gore owed their ſafety; but Mr. King aſcribes this to the Captain's walking with a piſtol in his hand, which, he ſays, he once fired; at which time a party of the iſlanders, armed with clubs, were marching towards them, but diſperſed on hearing the report of the muſkets. This conſpiracy was firſt diſcovered by a girl, who had been brought from Huaheine by one of our officers. Happening to overhear ſome of the Ulieteans ſay, that they would ſeize Captain Clerke and Mr. Gore, ſhe immediately ran to acquaint the firſt of our people that ſhe met with the deſign. Thoſe who had been intruſted with the execution of the plan, threatened to put her to death, as ſoon as we ſhould quit Ulietea, for diſappointing them. Being aware of this, we contrived that the girl's friends ſhould come a day or two afterwards, and take her out of the ſhip, to convey her to a place where ſhe might remain concealed, till an opportunity ſhould offer for her eſcaping to Huaheine.

On Thurſday the 27th, the tents were ſtruck, the obſervatories took down, which, with the live ſtock, were brought on board the ſhips. We then unmoored, and moved a little way down the harbour, where we anchored again. In the afternoon the natives gathered round, and came on board our ſhips, as uſual. One party acquainted Captain Cook, that the fugitives were found, and that in a few days they would be brought back, requeſting at the ſame time the releaſe of the priſoners. But the Captain paid no regard to either their information or petition; on the contrary, he renewed his threatenings, which he declared he would put in execution, if the men were not delivered up. In the ſucceeding night the wind blew in hard ſqualls, which were accompanied with heavy ſhowers of rain. In one of theſe ſqualls, the cable whereby the Reſolution was riding at anchor, parted; but as we had another ready to let go, the ſhip was quickly brought up again. On the 29th, having received no account from Bolabola, Oreo ſet out for that iſland, in ſearch after the deſerters, deſiring Captain Cook to follow him, the next day, with the ſhips. This was the Captain's intention; but the wind prevented our getting to ſea. On the 30th, about five o'clock, P.M. a number of canoes were ſeen, at a diſtance, making towards the ſhips; and as they approached nearer we heard them ſing and rejoice, as if they had ſucceeded in finding what they went in ſearch of. About ſix, they came ſo nigh, that we could diſcern, with our glaſſes, the deſerters faſtened together, but without their miſſes. They were no ſooner brought on board, than the royal priſoners were releaſed, to the unſpeakable joy of all but the two fugitives, who were under great apprehenſions of ſuffering death. Their puniſhment, however, was not ſo ſevere as might have been expected. S—— was ſentenced to receive 24 laſhes, and M—— was turned before the maſt, where he continued to do duty while there was little or nothing to do; but on aſking forgiveneſs, was reſtored to his former ſtation on the quarter deck. It appeared that their purſuers had followed them from one iſland to another from Ulietea to Otaha, from Otaha to Bolabola, from Bolabola to the little iſland of Toobaee, where they were found, but where we never ſhould have looked for them, had not the natives traced them out. They were taken by Pootoe's father, in conſequence of the firſt meſſage ſent to Opoony.

On the 1ſt of December, notice was given to the Otaheitean miſſes, that they muſt all prepare to depart, the ſhips being in readineſs to leave the country, and perhaps, never to return to the Society Iſlands any more. This news cauſed great lamentation and much confuſion. They were now at a great diſtance from home, and every one was eager to get what ſhe could for herſelf before ſhe was parted from her beloved. Moſt of them had already ſtript their mates of almoſt every thing they poſſeſſed, and thoſe who had ſtill ſomething in reſerve led a ſad life till they ſhared it with them. It was not till the 7th, to which time we were confined in the harbour by a contrary wind, that we could clear the ſhips of theſe troubleſome gentry.

C H A P. IX.

The Reſolution and Diſcovery leave Ulietea, and direct their courſe to the iſland of Bolabola—Remarks on the preſent and former ſtate of Ulietea—The ſhips arrive at Bolabola, with Oreo and others—Captain Cook applies to Opoony for Monſ. Bougainville's anchor—Reaſons for purchaſing it—They quit the Society Iſlands—Bolabola and its harbour deſcribed—Bravery of its inhabitants—Hiſtorical account of the reduction of Otaha and Ulietea—Animals left at the above iſlands—Method of ſalting pork for the uſe of the ſhips—Curſory remarks reſpecting Otaheite and the Society Iſlands—Additional ſtrictures to the former accounts of Otaheite, by Mr. Anderſon—Of the country in general—Productions—Natural hiſtory—Deſcription of the natives—Their language—Diet—Liquors—Different meals—Connections between the two ſexes—Their cuſtoms—Syſtem of religion—Superſtitions—Traditions—An hiſtorical legend—Of the regal dignity—Diſtinctions of rank, and puniſhments—Peculiarities belonging to the adjacent iſlands—Their names and thoſe of their Gods—Limits of their Navigation—The Reſolution and Diſcovery prepare for ſailing to the North, in queſt of the grand and principal object of this voyage—A curious geographical and hiſtorical deſcription of the north-weſt parts of North America, and of the moſt remarkable iſlands ſituated north of the Pacific Ocean, and in the Eaſtern Sea.

SUNDAY, the 7th of December, at eight o'clock A. M. we weighed and made ſail with a light breeze at the north-eaſt point. During the preceding week, we had been viſited by perſons from all quarters of the iſland, who afforded us a plentiful ſupply of hogs and green plantains, ſo that the time we remained wind-bound in the harbour was not totally loſt; for green plantains are an excellent ſuccedaneum for bread, and will keep good for two or three weeks. Beſides being furniſhed with theſe proviſions, we alſo took in plenty of wood and water. The Ulieteans appeared to be in general ſmaller, and blacker than the natives of the adjacent iſlands, and ſeemed alſo leſs orderly, which may, perhaps, be owing to their having become ſubjects to the inhabitants of Bolabola. Oreo, their chief, is only a kind of deputy to the Bolabolan monarch; and the conqueſt ſeems to have diminiſhed the number of ſubordinate chiefs reſident among them: they are, therefore, leſs under the immediate eye of thoſe whoſe intereſt it is to enforce a proper obedience. Though Ulietea is now reduced to this humiliating ſtate of dependence, it was formerly, as we were informed, the moſt eminent of this group of iſlands, and, probably, the firſt ſeat of government, for the preſent royal family of Otaheite derives its deſcent from that which ruled here before the late revolution. The dethroned king of Ulietea, whoſe name is Ooroo, reſides at Huaheine, furniſhing, in his own perſon, an inſtance not only of the inſtability of power, but alſo of the reſpect paid by theſe iſlanders to particular families of princely rank; for they allow Ooroo to retain all the enſigns which are appropriated by them to royalty, notwithſtanding his having been deprived of his dominions. We obſerved a ſimilar inſtance to this during our ſtay at Ulietea, where one of our occaſional viſitants was Captain Cook's old friend Oree, late chief of Huaheine. He ſtill maintained his conſequence, and was conſtantly attended by a numerous retinue.

We now had a briſk wind, and directed our courſe to Bolabola, accompanied by Oreo and others from Ulietea; and, indeed, moſt of the natives, except the chief, would gladly have taken a paſſage with us to England. Our principal reaſon for viſiting the iſland of Bolabola was, to procure one of the anchors which had been left at Otaheite by Monſieur Bougainville. This, we were informed, had been afterwards found by the natives there, and ſent by them to Opoony, the chief of Bolabola. It was not on account of our being in want of anchors that we were anxious to get poſſeſſion of it; but having parted with all our hatchets, and other iron implements, in purchaſing refreſhments, we were now obliged to create a freſh aſſortment of trading articles, by fabricating them from the ſpare iron we could find on board; and even the greateſt part of that had been already expended. Captain Cook, therefore, ſuppoſed Monſ. Bougainville's anchor would in a great meaſure ſupply our want of this uſeful material; and he did not entertain a doubt that Opoony might be induced to part with it. At ſun-ſet being off the ſouth point of Bolabola, we ſhortened ſail, and paſſed the night making ſhort boards. On Monday, the 8th, at day-break, we made ſail for the harbour, on the weſt ſide of the iſland. Having a ſcanty wind we were obliged to ply up; and it was nine o'clock before we were near enough to ſend away a boat to ſound the entrance. When the maſter returned with the boat, he reported, that the entrance of the harbour was rocky at the bottom, but that there was good ground within; and the depth of water twenty-five and twenty-ſeven fathoms. In the channel, he ſaid, there was room enough to turn the ſhips; it being one third of a mile broad. Upon this information, we attempted to work the ſhips in; but the wind and tide being againſt us, we made two or three trips, and found it could not be accompliſhed till the tide ſhould turn in our favour. Whereupon the Captain gave up the deſign of carrying the ſhips into the harbour; and, embarking in one of the boats, attended by Oreo and his companions, was rowed in for the iſland. As ſoon as they landed, our Commodore was introduced to Opoony, ſurrounded by a vaſt concourſe of people. The neceſſary compliments being exchanged, the Captain requeſted the chief to give him the anchor; and, by way of inducement, produced the preſent he intended for him. It conſiſted of a linen night gown, gauze handkerchiefs, a ſhirt, a looking-glaſs, ſome beads, toys, and ſix axes. Opoony, however, refuſed to accept the preſent till the Commodore had received the anchor; and ordered three perſons to go and deliver it to him, with directions to receive from him what he thought proper in return. With theſe meſſengers we ſet out in our boats for a neighbouring iſland, where the anchor had been depoſited, but it was neither ſo large nor ſo perfect, as we expected. By the mark that was upon it, we found it had originally weighed ſeven hundred pounds, but it now wanted the two palms, the ring, and part of the ſhank. The reaſon of Opoony's refuſing Captain Cook's preſent was now apparent: he, doubtleſs, ſuppoſed that the anchor, in its preſent ſtate, was ſo much inferior to what was offered in exchange, that when the Captain ſaw it, he would be diſpleaſed. The Commodore, notwithſtanding, took the anchor as he found it, and ſent the whole of the preſent which he at firſt intended. This buſineſs being done, and the Captain returned on board, we hoiſted in our boats, and made ſail to the north. While we were thus employed, we were viſited by ſome of the natives, who came off in three or four canoes to ſee the ſhips. They brought with them one pig, and a few cocoa-nuts. Had we remained at this iſland till the next day, we ſhould probably have been ſupplied with plenty of proviſions; and the natives would, doubtleſs, be diſappointed when they found we were gone; but, having already a good ſtock of hogs and fruit on board, and not many articles left to purchaſe more, we had no inducement left to defer the proſecution of our voyage.

Oteavanooa, the harbour of Bolabola, ſituated on the weſt ſide of the iſland, is very capacious; and, though we did not enter it, Captain Cook had the ſatisfaction of being informed by thoſe employed for the purpoſe, that it is a very proper place for the reception of ſhips. Towards the middle of this iſland is a lofty double-peaked mountain, which appeared to be barren on the eaſt ſide, but on the weſt ſide has ſome trees and buſhes. The lower grounds, towards the ſea, like the other iſlands of this ocean, are covered with cocoa-palms and bread-fruit trees. There are many little iſlots that ſurround it, which add to the number of its inhabitants, and to the amount of its vegetable productions. Conſidering the ſmall extent of Bolabola, being only 24 miles in circumference, it is remarkable that its people ſhould have been able to conquer Ulietea and Otaha; the former being alone more than double its ſize. In each of Captain Cook's three voyages, the war that produced this great revolution was frequently mentioned; and as the hiſtory thereof may be an agreeable entertainment to our ſubſcribers, we ſhall here give it as related by themſelves.

Ulietea and Otaha had long been friends; or, as the natives expreſs it emphatically, they were conſidered as two brothers, whoſe views and intereſts were the ſame. The iſland of Huaheine was alſo admitted as a friend, but not in ſo eminent a degree. Like a traitor, Otaha leagued with Bolabola, jointly to attack Ulietea; whoſe people required the aſſiſtance of their friends in Huaheine againſt theſe united powers. The inhabitants of Bolabola were encouraged by a propheteſs, who predicted their ſucceſs; and that they might rely on her prophecy, ſhe deſired that a man ſhould be ſent to a particular part of the ſea, where from a great depth would ariſe a ſtone. He was accordingly ſent off in a canoe to the place ſpecified, and was going inſtantly to dive for the ſtone, when, behold, it ſtarted up ſpontaneouſly to the ſurface, and came immediately into his hand! All the people were aſtoniſhed at the ſight; the ſtone was deemed ſacred, and depoſited in the houſe of the Eatooa, where it is ſtill preſerved, as a proof that this propheteſs was inſpired with the divinity. Elevated with the hopes of victory, the canoes of Bolabola attacked thoſe of Ulietea and Huaheine; the encounter laſted long, they being laſhed ſtrongly together with ropes; and, notwithſtanding the pretended miracle, the Bolabola fleet would have been vanquiſhed, had not that of Otaha arrived at the critical moment. The fortune of the day was now turned; victory declared in favour of the Bolabolans; and their enemies were totally defeated. Two days after, the conquerors invaded Huaheine, which they ſubdued, it being weakly defended, as moſt of its warriors were then abſent. Many of its fugitives, however, having got to Otaheite, there related their melancholy tale. This ſo affected thoſe of their own country, and of Ulietea whom they found in that iſland, that they obtained their aſſiſtance. They were furniſhed with only ten fighting canoes; with which inconſiderable force they effected a landing at Huaheine in the night; and, taking the Bolabola men by ſurprize, killed many of them, and diſperſed the reſt. Thus were they again, by one bold effort, poſſeſſed of their own iſland, which at this day remains independent, and is governed by its own chiefs. When the combined fleets of Ulietea and Huaheine were defeated, the men of Bolabola were applied to by their allies of Otaha, to be allowed an equal ſhare of the conqueſts. This being refuſed, the alliance broke; and, during the war, Otaha was conquered, as well as Ulietea, both of which remain ſubject to Bolabola; the chiefs by whom they are governed, being only deputies to Opoony, the king of the iſlands. Such is their account of the war; and in the reduction of the two iſlands five battles were fought, at different places, in which great numbers were killed on each ſide.

We have already obſerved, that theſe people are extremely deficient in recollecting the exact dates of paſt events. Reſpecting this war, though it happened but a few years ago, we could only gueſs at the time of its commencement and duration, the natives not being able to ſatisfy our enquiries with any preciſion. The final conqueſt of Ulietea, which terminated the war, had been atchieved before Captain Cook was there in 1769; but it was very apparent that peace had not been long reſtored, as marks of recent hoſtilities having been committed were then to be ſeen. By attending to the age of Teereetareea, the preſent chief of Huaheine, ſome additional collateral proof may be gathered. He did not appear to be more than ten or twelve years of age, and his father, we were informed, had been killed in one of the engagements. Since the conqueſt of Ulietea and Otaha, the Bolabola men are conſidered as invincible; and their fame is ſo far extended, that, even at Otaheite, if not dreaded, they are reſpected for their valour. It is aſſerted, they never fly from an enemy, and that they are victorious againſt an equal number of the other iſlanders. Theſe aſcribe much to the ſuperiority of their god, who, they believed, detained us by contrary winds at Ulietea. The eſtimation in which the Bolabola men are held at Otaheite may be gathered from M. de Bougainville's anchor having been ſent to their ſovereign. The intention of tranſporting the Spaniſh bull to their iſland, muſt be aſcribed to the ſame cauſe. They alſo had a third European curioſity, brought to Otaheite by the Spaniards. This animal had been ſo imperfectly deſcribed by the natives, that we had been much puzzled to conjecture what it could be. Some good, however, generally ſprings up out of evil. When Captain Clerke's deſerters were brought back from Bolabola, they told us the animal had been ſhewn to them, and that it was a ram. Had our men not deſerted, it is probable we ſhould never have known more about it. In conſequence of this intelligence, the Captain, when he landed to meet Opoony, took an ewe with him in the boat, of the Cape of Good Hope breed, whereby a foundation is laid for a breed of ſheep at Bolabola. He alſo left with Oreo, at Ulietea, two goats, and an Engliſh boar and ſow: ſo that the race of hogs will be conſiderably improved, in a few years, at Otaheite, and all the neighbouring iſlands; and they will, perhaps, be ſtocked with many valuable European animals. When this is really the caſe, theſe iſlands will be unrivalled in abundance and variety of refreſhments for the ſupply of future navigators. Even in their preſent ſtate, they are hardly to be excelled. When the inhabitants are not diſturbed by inteſtine broils, which has been the caſe for ſeveral years paſt, their productions are numerous and plentiful.

Had we been poſſeſſed of a greater aſſortment of goods, and a proper quantity of ſalt, we might have ſalted as much pork as would have been ſufficient to laſt both ſhips almoſt a year: but we quite exhauſted our trading commodities at the Friendly Iſles, Otaheite, and its neighbourhood. Our axes, in particular, were nearly gone, with which, alone, hogs were, in general, to be purchaſed. The ſalt that remained aboard was not more than was requiſite for curing 15 puncheons of meat. The following proceſs of curing pork has been adopted by Captain Cook in his ſeveral voyages. The hogs were killed in the evening; and, when cleaned, they were cut up; after which the bone was taken out. The meat was ſalted while hot, and laid in ſuch a manner as to permit the juices to drain from it, till the next morning: it was then ſalted again, put into a caſk, and covered with pickle. It remained, in this ſituation, four or five days, when it was taken out, and carefully examined; and if any of it appeared to be in the leaſt tainted, which ſometimes happened, it was ſeparated from the reſt, which was repacked, headed up, and filled with good pickle. It was again examined in about eight or ten days time, but there appeared no neceſſity for it, as it was generally found to be all perfectly cured. Bay and white ſalt mixed together anſwers the beſt, though either of them will do alone. Great care was taken that none of the large blood-veſſels remained in the meat; and that not too much ſhould be packed together at the firſt ſalting, leſt thoſe pieces which are in the middle ſhould heat, and hinder the ſalt from penetrating them. In tropical climates, meat ought to be ſalted in rainy ſultry weather. Europeans having of late ſo frequently viſited theſe iſlanders, they may, on that account, have been induced to breed a larger ſtock of hogs; knowing that, whenever we come, they may be certain of receiving what they eſteem a valuable conſideration for them. They daily expect the Spaniards at Otaheite, and in two or three years time, they will doubtleſs expect the Engliſh there, as well as at the other iſlands. It is uſeleſs to aſſure them that you will not return, for they ſuppoſe you cannot avoid it; though none of them know or enquire the reaſon of your coming. It would, perhaps, have been better for the people to have been ignorant of our ſuperiority in the accommodations and arts that make life comfortable, than, after once knowing it, to be abandoned to their original incapacity of improvement. They cannot be, indeed, reſtored to their former happy mediocrity, ſhould the intercourſe between us be diſcontinued. It is in a manner incumbent on the Europeans to pay them occaſional viſits, (once in three or four years) to ſupply them with thoſe articles, which we, by introducing, have given them a predilection for. The want of ſuch ſupplies may be ſeverely felt, when it is too late to return to their old imperfect contrivances, which they have now diſcarded, and deſpiſe. When the iron tools with which we furniſhed them are worn out, their own will be almoſt forgotten. A ſtone hatchet is now as great a curioſity among them, as an iron one was ſeven or eight years ago; and a chiſſel made of bone, or ſtone, is no where to be ſeen. Spike nails have been ſubſtituted in the room of the latter articles, and they are weak enough to imagine that their ſtore of them is inexhauſtible, for they are no longer ſought after. Knives happened, at this time, to be in high eſtimation at Ulietea; and axes and hatchets bore unrivalled ſway at all the iſlands. Reſpecting articles merely ornamental, theſe iſlanders are as capricious as the moſt poliſhed European nations; for an article which may be prized to-day will be rejected to-morrow, as faſhion or whim may alter. But our iron implements are ſo evidently uſeful, that they muſt continue to be high in their eſtimation. They would indeed be miſerable, if they ſhould ceaſe to receive ſupplies of what appears neceſſary to their comfortable exiſtence, as they are deſtitute of the materials, and ignorant of the art of fabricating them.

Much has already been related reſpecting Otaheite; which though not comprehended in the number of what we have denominated the Society Iſlands, yet, being inhabited by the ſame race of men, agreeing in the ſame leading features of character and manners, it was fortunate that we happened to diſcover this principal iſland before the others, as the hoſpitable reception we there met with, led us to make it the principal place of reſort, in our ſucceſſive voyages to this part of the Pacific Ocean. By our repeated viſits, we have had better opportunity of knowing ſomething about it and its inhabitants, than about the other ſimilar, but leſs conſiderable iſlands in its vicinity. Of theſe latter, however, we have ſeen enough to ſatisfy us, that all we have obſerved of Otaheite may, with trifling alterations, be applied to them. During our continuance at theſe iſlands, we loſt no opportunity of making aſtronomical and nautical obſervations. At Otaheite and Ulietea we particularly remarked the tide, with a view of aſcertaining its grandeſt riſe at the former place. Alſo, by the mean of 145 ſets of obſervations, we determined the latitude and longitude of the three following places.

Matavai Point, at Otaheite,	17°	29′	15″	S. lat.	210°	22′	28″ E. lon.
Owharre harbour, at Huaheine	16	42	45	———	208	52	24
Ohamaneno ditto, at Ulietea	16	45	30	———	208	25	22

It may be thought by ſome, the iſland of Otaheite has been already and ſo often accurately deſcribed, and the manners, cuſtoms, and ways of living of the inhabitants, ſo amply enlarged upon, in our hiſtory of former voyages, that little remains to be added: but, there are ſtill, however, many parts of the domeſtic, political, and religious inſtitutions of the natives, which, after all our viſits to them, are but imperfectly underſtood; and we doubt not, but that the following remarks, for which we are indebted to the ingenious Mr. Anderſon, and which may be conſidered as finiſhing ſtrokes to a picture, the outlines of which have been already given, will be highly acceptable to our numerous friends and ſubſcribers, who, by their kind encouragement of this work, have given the ſtrongeſt teſtimony in its favour.

"To what has been obſerved of Otaheite (ſays Mr. Anderſon) in the accounts of the ſucceſſive voyages of Captain Wallis, M. de Bougainville, and Captain Cook, it would, at firſt ſight, ſeem ſuperfluous to add any thing; as it might be ſuppoſed, that little could now be produced, but a repetition of what has been related before. I am, however, far from being of that opinion; and will venture to affirm, that, though a very accurate deſcription of the country, and of the moſt obvious cuſtoms of its inhabitants, has been already given, eſpecially by Captain Cook, yet much ſtill remains untouched: that in ſome inſtances, miſtakes have been made, which later and repeated obſervations have been able to rectify; and that even now, we are ſtrangers to many of the moſt important inſtitutions that prevail among theſe people. The truth is, our viſits, though frequent, have been but tranſient: many of us had no inclination to make enquiries; more were unable to direct the enquiries properly; and we all laboured, though not to the ſame degree, under the diſadvantages attending an imperfect knowledge of the language of thoſe, from whom alone we could receive any information. The Spaniards had it more in their power to ſurmount this bar to inſtruction; ſome of them having reſided at Otaheite much longer than any other European viſitors; by which ſuperior advantage, they could not but have had an opportunity of obtaining the fulleſt information on moſt ſubjects relating to this iſland: their account of it would, probably, convey more authentic and accurate intelligence, than, with our beſt endeavours, any of us could poſſibly obtain. But, as I look upon it to be very uncertain, if not very unlikely, that we ſhould ever have any communication from that quarter, I have here put together what additional intelligence about Otaheite, and its neighbouring iſlands, I was able to procure, either from Omiah, while on board the Reſolution, or by converſing with the other natives, while we had any intercourſe, and were converſant with them.

"The wind, for the greateſt part of the year, blows from between the E. S. E. and E. N. E. This is the true trade wind, or what the natives call maaraee; and it ſometimes blows with conſiderable force. When this happens, the weather is often cloudy, with ſhowers of rain; but when the wind is more moderate, it is clear, ſettled, and ſerene. Should the wind veer farther to the ſouthward, and become S. E. or S. S. E. it then blows more gently, with a ſmooth ſea, and is called maoai. In theſe months, when the ſun is nearly vertical, that is in December and January, the winds and weather are both very variable; but it frequently blows from W. N. W. or N. W. This wind, called Toerou, is generally attended by dark, cloudy weather, and frequently by rain. It ſometimes blows ſtrong, though generally moderate; but ſeldom laſts longer than ſix days without interruption; and is the only wind in which the people of the iſlands to leeward come to this, in their canoes. If it happens to be ſtill more northerly, it blows with leſs ſtrength, and is called Era-potaia; which they ſay is the wife of Toerou, who, according to their mythology, is a male. The wind from the S. W. and W. S. W. is ſtill more frequent than the former, and though, in general, gentle, and interrupted by calms, or breezes from the eaſtward, yet it ſometimes blows in briſk ſqualls. The weather attending it is commonly dark, cloudy, and rainy, with a cloſe hot air; and accompanied by a great deal of thunder and lightning. It is called Etoa, and often ſucceeds the Toerou; as does alſo the Farooa, which is ſtill more ſoutherly; and, from its violence, blows down houſes and trees, eſpecially the cocoa-palms, from their loftineſs; but it is of ſhort duration. The natives ſeems not to have a very accurate knowledge of theſe changes, and yet pretend to have drawn ſome general concluſions from their effects; for when the ſea has a hollow ſound, and daſhes ſlowly on the reef, they ſay it portends good weather; but if it has a ſharp ſound, and the waves ſucceed each other faſt, that the reverſe will happen.

"There is, perhaps, ſcarcely a ſpot in the univerſe, that affords a more luxuriant proſpect than the S. E. part of the iſland of Otaheite. The hills are high and ſteep, and in many places craggy: but they are covered to the very ſummits, with trees and ſhrubs, ſo that a ſpectator cannot help thinking, that the very rocks poſſeſs the property of producing and ſupporting their verdant clothing. The flat land which bounds thoſe hills towards the ſea, and the interjacent valleys alſo, teem with various productions that grow with the moſt exuberant vigour; and, at once, fill the mind of the beholder with the idea, that no place on the earth can excel this, in the ſtrength and beauty of vegetation. Nature has been no leſs liberal in diſtributing rivulets, which are found in every valley; and as they approach the ſea, often divide into two or three branches, fertilizing the flat lands through which they run. The habitations of the natives are ſcattered without order, upon theſe flats; and many of them appearing toward the ſhore, preſented a delightful ſcene, viewed from our ſhips; eſpecially as the ſea, within the reef, which bounds the coaſt, is perfectly ſtill, and affords a ſafe navigation, at all times, for the inhabitants, who are often ſeen paddling in their canoes indolently along, in paſſing from place to place, or in going to fiſh. On viewing theſe delightful ſcenes, I have often regretted my inability to tranſmit to thoſe who have had no opportunity of ſeeing them, ſuch a deſcription as might, in ſome meaſure, convey an impreſſion ſimilar to what muſt be felt by every one, who has been fortunate enough to be on the ſpot.

"It is, doubtleſs, the natural fertility of the country, combined with the mildneſs and ſerenity of the climate, that renders the natives ſo careleſs in their cultivation, that, in many places, though abounding with the richeſt productions, the ſmalleſt traces of it cannot be obſerved. The cloth-plant which is raiſed from ſeeds brought from the mountains, and the ava, or intoxicating pepper, which they defend from the ſun when very young, by covering them with the leaves of the bread-fruit-tree, are almoſt the only things to which they ſeem to pay any attention; and theſe they keep very clean. I have inquired very carefully into their manner of cultivating the bread-fruit-tree; but was always anſwered, that they never planted it. This, indeed, muſt be evident to every one who will examine the places where the young trees come up. It will be always obſerved, that they ſpring from the roots of the old ones; which run near the ſurface of the ground: ſo that the bread-fruit-trees may be reckoned thoſe that would naturally cover the plains, ſuppoſing that the iſland was not inhabited, in the ſame manner that the white-barked-trees, found at Van Diemen's Land, conſtitute the foreſts there. And from this we may obſerve, that an inhabitant of Otaheite, inſtead of being obliged to plant his bread, will rather be under a neceſſity of preventing its progreſs; which, I ſuppoſe, is ſometimes done, to give room for trees of another ſort, to afford him a variety in his food. The chief of theſe are the cocoa-nut and plantain; the firſt of which can give no trouble, after it has raiſed itſelf a foot or two above the ground; but the plantain requires a little more care: for after it is planted, it ſhoots up, and, in about three months, begins to bear fruit; during which time it gives young ſhoots, which ſupply a ſucceſſion of fruit; for the old ſtocks are cut down as the fruit is taken off. The products of the iſland, however, are not ſo remarkable for their variety, as great abundance; and curioſities of any kind are not numerous. Among theſe we may reckon a pond or lake of freſh water, at the top of one of the higheſt mountains, to go to, and return from which, takes three or four days. It is remarkable for its depth; and has eels of an enormous ſize in it; which are ſometimes caught by the natives, who go upon this water in little floats of two or three wild plantain-trees faſtened together. This is eſteemed one of the greateſt natural curioſities of the country; inſomuch, that travellers, who come from the other iſlands, are commonly aſked among the firſt queſtions, by their friends, at their return, if they have ſeen it? There is alſo a ſort of water, of which there is only one ſmall pond upon the iſland, as far diſtant as the lake, and to appearance very good, with a yellow ſediment at the bottom: but it has a bad taſte: and proves fatal to thoſe who drink any quantity of it, or makes them break out into blotches, if they bathe in it.

"Nothing made a ſtronger impreſſion, at firſt ſight, on our arrival here, than the contraſt between the robuſt make and dark colour of the people of Tongataboo, and a ſort of delicacy and whiteneſs, which diſtinguiſh the inhabitants of Otaheite. It was even ſome time before that difference could preponderate in favour of the Otaheiteans; and then only, perhaps, becauſe we became accuſtomed to them, the marks which recommended the others began to be forgotten. Their women, however, ſtruck us as ſuperior in every reſpect; and as poſſeſſing all thoſe delicate characteriſtics, which diſtinguiſh them from the other ſex in many countries. The beard, which the men here wear long, and the hair which is not cut ſo ſhort, as is the faſhion at Tongataboo, made alſo a great difference; and we could not help thinking, that, on every occaſion, they ſhewed a greater degree of timidity and fickleneſs. The muſcular appearance, ſo common among the Friendly Iſlanders, and which ſeems a conſequence of their being accuſtomed to much action, is loſt here, where the ſuperior fertility of their country enables the inhabitants to lead a more indolent life; and its place is ſupplied by a plumpneſs and ſmoothneſs of the ſkin; which, though, perhaps, more conſonant with our ideas of beauty, is no real advantage; as it ſeems to be attended with a kind of langour in all their motions, not obſervable in the others. This remark is fully verified, in their boxing and wreſtling, which may be called little better than the feeble efforts of children, if compared to the vigour with which they are performed at the Friendly Iſlands.

"Among theſe people perſonal endowments are in great eſteem, and they have recourſe to ſeveral methods of improving them, according to their notions of beauty. It is a practice, in particular, eſpecially among the Erreoes, or unmarried men of ſome conſequence, to undergo a kind of phyſical operation to render them fair. This is done by remaining a month or two in the houſe; during which time they wear a quantity of clothes, eat nothing but bread-fruit, to which they aſcribe a remarkable property in whitening them. They alſo ſpeak, as if their corpulence and colour, at other times, depended on their food, as they are obliged, from the change of ſeaſons, to uſe different ſorts at different times. Their common diet is made up of, at leaſt, nine tenths of vegetable food; and I believe, more particularly, the Mahee, or fermented bread-fruit, which is a part of almoſt every meal, has a remarkable effect on them, preventing a coſtive habit, and producing a very ſenſible coolneſs about them, which could not be perceived in us who fed on animal food, and it is, perhaps, owing to this temperate courſe of life, that they have ſo few diſeaſes among them. They reckon only five or ſix, which might be called chronic, or national diſorders; among which are the dropſy, and the fefai, or indolent ſwellings, frequent at Tongataboo. But this was before the arrival of the Europeans; for we have added to this ſhort catalogue a diſeaſe which abundantly ſupplies the place of all others, and is now almoſt univerſal. For this they ſeem to have no effectual remedy. The prieſts, indeed, give them a medley of ſimples; but they own that it never cures them. And yet, they allow that, in a few caſes, nature, without the aſſiſtance of a phyſician, exterminates the poiſon of this fatal diſorder, and a perfect recovery is produced.

"Their behaviour, on all occaſions, ſeems to indicate a great openneſs, and generoſity of diſpoſition. Omiah, indeed, who, as their countryman, ſhould be ſuppoſed rather willing to conceal any of their defects, has often ſaid, that they are ſometimes cruel in the treatment of their enemies. According to his account they torment them very deliberately; at one time tearing out ſmall pieces of fleſh from different parts; at another taking out the eyes; then cutting off the noſe; and laſtly, killing them by ripping up the belly. But this only happens on particular occaſions. If cheerfulneſs argues a conſcious innocence, one would ſuppoſe that their life is ſeldom ſullied with crimes. This, however, I rather impute to their feelings, which, though lively, ſeem in no caſe permanent; for I never ſaw them in any misfortune, labour under the appearance of anxiety, after the critical moment was paſt. Neither does care ever ſeem to wrinkle their brow. On the contrary, even the approach of death does not appear to alter their uſual vivacity. I have ſeen them when brought to the brink of the grave by diſeaſe, and when preparing to go to battle; but, in neither caſe, ever obſerved their countenances over clouded with melancholy or ſerious reflection. Such a diſpoſition leads them to direct all their aims only to what can give them pleaſure and eaſe. Their amuſements all tend to excite and continue amorous paſſions, and their ſongs, of which they are immoderately fond, anſwer the ſame purpoſe. But as a conſtant ſucceſſion of ſenſual enjoyments muſt cloy, we found they frequently varied them to more refined ſubjects, and had much pleaſure in chanting their triumphs in war, and their occupations in peace; their travels to other iſlands, and adventures there; and the peculiar beauties, and ſuperior advantages of their own iſland over the reſt, or of different parts of it over other leſs favourite diſtricts. This marks their great delight in muſic; and though they rather expreſſed a diſlike to our complicated compoſitions, yet were they always delighted with the more melodious ſounds produced ſingly on our inſtruments, as approaching nearer to the ſimplicity of their own. Neither are they ſtrangers to the ſoothing effects produced by particular ſorts of motion, which, in ſome caſes, ſeem to allay any perturbation of mind, with as much ſucceſs as muſic. Of this I met with a remarkable inſtance: for walking, one day, about Matavai point, where our tents were erected, I ſaw a man paddling, in a ſmall canoe, ſo quickly, and looking about him with ſuch eagerneſs on each ſide, as to command all my attention. At firſt, I imagined that he had ſtolen ſomething from one of the ſhips, and was purſued; but, on waiting patiently, ſaw him repeat his amuſement. He went out from the ſhore, till he was near the place where the ſwell begins to take its riſe; and, watching its firſt motion very attentively, paddled before it, with great quickneſs, till he found that it overtook him, and acquired ſufficient force to carry his canoe before it, without paſſing underneath. He then ſat motionleſs, and was carried along at the ſame ſwift rate as the wave, till it landed him on the beach. Then he ſtarted out, emptied his canoe, and went in ſearch of another ſwell. I could not help concluding, that this man felt the moſt ſupreme pleaſure, while he was driven on, ſo faſt and ſo ſmoothly, by the ſea; eſpecially as, though the tents and ſhips were ſo near, he did not ſeem in the leaſt to envy, or even to take any notice of the crowds of his countrymen, collected to view them as objects that were rare and curious. During my ſtay two or three of the natives came up, who ſeemed to ſhare his felicity, and always called out, when there was an appearance of a favourable ſwell, as he ſometimes miſſed it, by his back being turned, and looking about for it. By them I underſtood, that this exerciſe, which is called ehorooe, was frequent among them; and they have probably more amuſements of this ſort, which afford them, at leaſt, as much pleaſure as ſkaiting.

"The language of Otaheite, though doubtleſs radically the ſame with that of New Zealand, and the Friendly Iſles, is deſtitute of that guttural pronunciation, and of ſome conſonants, with which thoſe latter dialects abound. The ſpecimens we have already given, are ſufficient to mark wherein the variation chiefly conſiſts, and to ſhew, that like the manners of the inhabitants, it has become ſoft and ſoothing. During the former voyage, I had collected a copious vocabulary, which enabled me the better to compare this dialect with that of the other iſlands; and, during this voyage, I took every opportunity of improvements by converſing with Omiah before we arrived, and by my daily intercourſe with the natives, while we now remained there." (In our hiſtory of Captain Cook's former voyage, we have given to the public very copious ſpecimens of the language of Otaheite, New Zealand, &c. which we flatter ourſelves will be thought ſufficient for their information, amuſement, and every uſeful purpoſe.) "It abounds with beautiful and figurative expreſſions, which were it perfectly known, would, I make no doubt, put it upon a level with many of the languages that are moſt in eſteem for their warm and bold images. For inſtance, the Otaheiteans expreſs their notions of death very emphatically, by ſaying, "That the ſoul goes into darkneſs; or rather into night." And if you ſeem to entertain any doubt, in aſking the queſtion, "If ſuch a perſon is their mother?" they immediately reply, with ſurprize, "Yes, the mother that bore me." They have one expreſſion, that correſponds exactly with the phraſeology of the ſcriptures, where we read of the "yearning of the bowels." They uſe it on all occaſions, when the paſſions give them uneaſineſs; as they conſtantly refer pain from grief, anxious deſire, and other affections, to the bowels, as its ſeat: where they ſuppoſe all the operations of the mind are performed. Their language is ſo copious, that for the bread-fruit alone, in its different ſtates, they have above twenty names; as many for the taro root; and about ten for the cocoa-nut. Add to this, that beſides the common dialect, they often expoſtulate, in a kind of ſtanza, or recitative, which is anſwered in the ſame manner.

"Their arts are few and ſimple; yet, if we may credit them, they perform cures in ſurgery, which our extenſive knowledge in that branch has not, as yet, enabled us to imitate. In ſimple fractures, they bind them up with ſplents; but if part of the ſubſtance of the bone be loſt, they inſert a piece of wood between the fractured ends, made hollow like the deficient part. In five or ſix days, the rapaoo, or ſurgeon, inſpects the wound, and finds the wood partly covered with the growing fleſh. In as many more days, it is generally entirely covered; after which, when the patient has acquired ſome ſtrength, he bathes in the water and recovers. We know that wounds will heal over leaden bullets; and ſometimes, though rarely, over other extraneous bodies. But what makes me entertain ſome doubt of the truth of ſo extraordinary ſkill, as in the above-mentioned inſtance, is, that in other caſes that fell under my own obſervation, they are far from being ſo dextrous. I have ſeen the ſtump of an arm, which was taken off, after being ſhattered by a fall from a tree, that bore no marks of ſkilful operation, though ſome allowance be made for their defective inſtruments: and I met with a man going about with a diſlocated ſhoulder, ſome months after the accident, from their being ignorant of the method to reduce it; though this be conſidered as one of the ſimpleſt operations of our ſurgery. They know fractures or luxations of the ſpine are mortal, but not fractures of the ſkull; and they likewiſe know, from experience, in what part of the body wounds prove fatal. They have ſometimes pointed out thoſe inflicted by ſpears, which, if made in the direction they mentioned, would certainly have been pronounced deadly by us; and yet theſe people would have recovered. Their phyſical knowledge ſeems more confined, and that, probably, becauſe their diſeaſes are fewer than their accidents. The prieſts, however, adminiſter the juices of the herbs in ſome caſes; and women who are troubled with after-pains, or other diſorders, the conſequences of child-bearing, uſe a remedy which one would think needleſs in a hot country. They firſt heat ſtones, as when they bake their food; then they lay a thick cloth over them, upon which is put a quantity of a ſmall plant of the muſtard kind; and theſe are covered with another cloth. Upon this they ſeat themſelves, and ſweat plentifully to obtain a cure. They have no emetic medicine.

"Notwithſtanding the extreme fertility of the iſland, a famine frequently happens, in which, it is ſaid, many periſh,

periſh. Whether this be owing to the failure of ſome ſeaſons, to over population, which muſt ſometimes almoſt neceſſarily happen, or to wars, I have not been able to determine; though the truth of the fact may fairly be inferred, from the great œconomy that they obſerve with reſpect to their food, even when there is plenty. In times of ſcarcity, after their bread-fruit and yams are conſumed, they have recourſe to various roots which grow, without cultivation, upon the mountains. The patarra, which is found in vaſt quantities, is what they uſe firſt. It is not unlike a very large potatoe or yam, and good when in its growing ſtate; but, when old, is full of hard ſtringy fibres. They then eat two other roots; one not unlike the taro; and laſtly, the ehoee. This is of two ſorts; one of them poſſeſſing deleterious qualities, which obliges them to ſlice and macerate it in water, a night before they bake and eat it. In this reſpect it reſembles the caſſava root of the Weſt-Indies; but it forms a very inſipid, moiſt paſte, in the manner they dreſs it. However, I have ſeen them eat it at times when no ſuch ſcarcity reigned. Both this and the patarra are creeping plants; the laſt, with ternate leaves. Of animal food, a very ſmall portion falls, at any time, to the ſhare of the lower claſs of people; and then it is either fiſh, ſea-eggs, or other marine productions; for they ſeldom or ever eat pork. The eree de hoi, (as Mr. Anderſon calls the king, but which word Captain Cook writes eree rahie) is, alone, able to furniſh pork every day; and inferior chiefs, according to their riches, once a week, fortnight, or month. Sometimes they are not even allowed that; for, when the iſland is impoveriſhed by war, or other cauſes, the chief prohibits his ſubjects to kill any hogs; and this prohibition, we are told, is in force, ſometimes, for ſeveral months, or even for a year or two. During that conſtraint, the hogs multiply ſo faſt, that there are inſtances of their changing their domeſtic ſtate, and turning wild. When it is thought proper to take off the prohibition, all the chiefs aſſemble at the king's place of abode; and each brings with him a preſent of hogs. The king then orders ſome of them to be killed, on which they feaſt; and, after that, every one returns home with liberty to kill what he pleaſes for his own uſe. Such a prohibition was actually in force, on our laſt arrival here; at leaſt, in all thoſe diſtricts of the iſland that are immediately under the direction of Otoo. And, leſt it ſhould have prevented our going to Matavai, after leaving Oheitepeha, he ſent a meſſage to aſſure us, that it ſhould be taken off, as ſoon as the ſhips arrived there. With reſpect to us, we found it ſo; but we made ſuch a conſumption of them, that, I have no doubt of it, it would be laid on again, as ſoon as we ſailed. A ſimilar prohibition is alſo, ſometimes, extended to fowls. It is alſo among the better ſort, that the ava is chiefly uſed. But this beverage is prepared ſomewhat differently from that which we ſaw ſo much of at the Friendly Iſlands: for they pour a very ſmall quantity of water upon the root here; and ſometimes roaſt, and bake, and bruiſe the ſtalks, without chewing it previouſly to its infuſion. They alſo uſe the leaves of the plant here, which are bruiſed, and water poured upon them, as upon the root. Large companies do not aſſemble to drink it, in that ſociable way which is practiſed at Tongataboo. But its pernicious effects are more obvious here; perhaps, owing to the manner of preparing it; as we often ſaw inſtances of its intoxicating, or rather ſtupifying powers. Some of us, who had been at theſe iſlands before, were ſurprized to find many people, who when we ſaw them laſt, were remarkable for their ſize and corpulency, now almoſt reduced to ſkeletons, and, upon enquiring into the cauſe of this alteration, it was univerſally allowed to be the uſe of the ava. The ſkins of theſe people were rough, dry, and covered with ſcales, which, they ſay, every now and then fall off, and their ſkin is, as it were, renewed. As an excuſe for a practice ſo deſtructive, they alledge, that it is adopted to prevent their growing too fat; but it evidently enervates them; and, in all probability ſhortens their days. As its effects had not been ſo viſible, during our former viſits, it is not unlikely, that this article of luxury had never been ſo much abuſed as at this time. If it continues to be faſhionable, it bids fair to deſtroy great numbers.

"The times of eating, at Otaheite, are very frequent. Their firſt meal, (or rather, as it may be called) their laſt, as they go to ſleep after it, is about two o'clock in the morning; and the next is at eight. At eleven they dine: and again, as Omiah expreſſed it, at two, and at five; and ſup at eight. In this article of domeſtic life, they have adopted ſome cuſtoms that are exceedingly whimſical. The women, for inſtance, have not only the mortification of being obliged to eat by themſelves, and in a different part of the houſe from the men; but, by a ſtrange kind of policy, are excluded from a ſhare of moſt of the better ſorts of food. They are not permitted to taſte turtle, nor fiſh of the tunny kind, which is much eſteemed; nor ſome particular ſorts of the beſt plantains; and it is very ſeldom that even thoſe of the firſt rank eat pork. The children of each ſex alſo eat apart; and the women, generally, ſerve up their own victuals; for they would certainly ſtarve, before any grown man would do them ſuch a ſervice. In this, as well as in ſome other cuſtoms relative to their eating, there is a myſterious conduct, which we could never thoroughly comprehend. When we enquired into the reaſons of it, we could get no other anſwer, but that it is right and neceſſary it ſhould be ſo. In other cuſtoms, reſpecting the females, there ſeems to be no obſcurity; eſpecially as to their connections with the men. If a young man and woman, from mutual choice, cohabit, the man gives the father of the girl ſuch things as are neceſſary in common life, as hogs, cloth, and canoes, in proportion to the time they are together; and if he thinks that he has not been ſufficiently paid for his daughter, he makes no ſcruple of forcing her to leave her friend, and to cohabit with another perſon who may be more liberal. The man, on his part, is always at liberty to make a new choice; but ſhould his conſort become pregnant, he may kill the child; and after that, either continue his connection with the mother, or leave her. But if he ſhould adopt the child, and ſuffer it to live, the parties are then conſidered as in the married ſtate, and they commonly live together ever after. However, it is thought no crime in the man to join a more youthful partner to his firſt wife, and to live with both. Their cuſtom of changing their connections is, however, much more general than this laſt; and it is a thing ſo common, that they ſpeak of it with great indifference. The erreoes are only thoſe of the better ſort, who, from their fickleneſs, and their poſſeſſing the means of purchaſing freſh connections, are conſtantly roaming about; and, from having no particular attachment, ſeldom adopt the more ſettled method mentioned above. And ſo agreeable is this licentious manner of life to their diſpoſition, that the moſt beautiful of both ſexes thus commonly ſpend their youthful days, habituated to the practice of enormities, which would diſgrace the moſt ſavage tribes; but are peculiarly ſhocking among a people whoſe general character, in other reſpects, has evident traces of the prevalence of humane and tender feelings. When an erreoe woman is delivered of a child, a piece of cloth dipped in water, is applied to the mouth and noſe, which ſuffocates it. As in ſuch a life, their women muſt contribute a very large ſhare of its happineſs, it is rather ſurpriſing, beſides the humiliating reſtraints they are laid under with regard to food, to find them often treated with a degree of harſhneſs, or rather brutality, which one would ſcarcely ſuppoſe a man would beſtow, on an object for whom he had the leaſt affection. Nothing, however, is more common, than to ſee the men beat them without mercy; and unleſs this treatment is the effect of jealouſy, which both ſexes, at leaſt, pretend to be ſometimes infected with, it will be difficult to account for it. It will be leſs difficult to admit this as the motive, as I have ſeen ſeveral inſtances where the women have preferred perſonal beauty to intereſt; though I muſt own, that even in theſe caſes, they ſeem ſcarcely ſuſceptible of thoſe delicate ſentiments, that are the reſult of mutual affection; and, I believe, that there is leſs platonic love in Otaheite, than in any other country.

"Their religious ſyſtem is extenſive, and, in many inſtances, ſingular; but few of the common people have a perfect knowledge of it; that being confined chiefly to their prieſts, who are pretty numerous. They do not ſeem to pay reſpect to one god as poſſeſſing pre-eminence; but believe in a plurality of divinities, who are all very powerful; and in this caſe, as different parts of the iſland, and the other iſlands in the neighbourhood, have different ones, the inhabitants of each, no doubt, think that they have choſen the moſt eminent, or, at leaſt, one who is inveſted with power ſufficient to protect them, and to ſupply all their wants. If he ſhould not anſwer their expectations, they think it no impiety to change; as has very lately happened at Tiaraboo, where, in the room of two divinities formerly honoured, Olla, god of Bolabola, has been adopted, I ſhould ſuppoſe, becauſe he is the protector of a people who have been victorious in war; and as, ſince they have made this change, they have been very ſucceſsful themſelves againſt the inhabitants of Otaheite-nooe, they impute it entirely to Olla, who, as they literally ſay, fights their battles. Their aſſiduity in ſerving their gods is remarkably conſpicuous. Not only the whattas, or offering places of the morais, are commonly loaded with fruits and animals; but there are few houſes where you do not meet with a ſmall place of the ſame ſort near them. Many of them are ſo rigidly ſcrupulous, that they will not begin a meal, without firſt laying aſide a morſel for the eatooa; and we had an opportunity during this voyage, of ſeeing their ſuperſtitious zeal carried to a pernicious height, in the inſtance of human ſacrifices, the occaſions of offering which, I doubt, are too frequent. Perhaps, they have recourſe to them when misfortunes occur; for they aſked, if one of our men, who happened to be confined, when we were detained by a contrary wind, was taboo? Their prayers are alſo very frequent, which they chant, much after the manner of the ſongs in their feſtive entertainments. And the women, as in other caſes, are alſo obliged to ſhew their inferiority in religious obſervances; for it is required of them, that they ſhould partly uncover themſelves, as they paſs the morais; or take a conſiderable circuit to avoid them. Though they have no notion, that their god muſt always be conferring benefits, without ſometimes forgetting them, or ſuffering evil to befal them, they ſeem to regard this leſs than the attempts of ſome more inauſpicious being to hurt them. They tell us, that etee is an evil ſpirit, who ſometimes does us miſchief, and to whom, as well as to their good being, they make offerings. But the miſchiefs they apprehend from any ſuperior inviſible agents, are confined to things merely temporal. They believe the ſoul to be both immaterial and immortal. They ſay, that it keeps fluttering about the lips during the pangs of death; and that then it aſcends and mixes with, or, as they expreſs it, is eaten by the deity. In this ſtate it remains for ſome time; after which, it departs to a certain place deſtined for the reception of the ſouls of men, where it exiſts in eternal night; or, as they ſometimes ſay in twilight or dawn. They have no idea of any permanent puniſhment after death, for crimes they have committed on earth; for the ſouls of good and bad men are eat indiſcriminately by the deity; but they certainly conſider this coalition with him as a kind of purification neceſſary to be undergone, before they enter into a ſtate of bliſs; for according to their doctrine, if a man refrain from all connection with women ſome months before death, he paſſes immediately into his eternal manſion, without ſuch a previous union, as if already, by this abſtinence, he were pure enough to be exempted from the general lot. They are, however, far from entertaining ſuch ſublime conceptions of happineſs, which our religion, and, indeed, reaſon, gives us room to expect hereafter. The only great privilege they ſeem to think they ſhall acquire by death, is immortality, for they ſpeak of ſpirits being, in ſome meaſure, not totally diveſted of thoſe paſſions which actuated them when combined with material vehicles. Thus if ſouls, who were formerly enemies, ſhould meet, they have many conflicts; though it ſhould ſeem to no purpoſe, as they are accounted invulnerable in this inviſible ſtate. There is a ſimilar reaſoning with regard to a man and his wife when they meet. If the huſband dies firſt, the ſoul of his wife is known to him on its arrival in the land of ſpirits. They reſume their former acquaintance in a ſpacious houſe, called tourooa, where the ſouls of the deceaſed aſſemble to recreate themſelves with the gods. She then retires with him to his ſeparate habitation, where they remain for ever, and have an offspring, which, however, is entirely ſpiritual, as they are neither married, nor are their embraces ſuppoſed to be the ſame as with corporeal beings. Some of their notions about the deity, are extravagantly abſurd. They believe, that he is ſubject to the power of thoſe very ſpirits to whom he has given exiſtence; and that, in their turn, they frequently eat or devour him, though he poſſeſs the power of recreating himſelf. They, doubtleſs, uſe this mode of expreſſion, as they ſeem incapable of converſing about immaterial things, without conſtantly referring to material objects to convey their meaning. And in this manner they continue the account, by ſaying, that, in the Tourooa, the deity enquires, if they intend, or not, to deſtroy him? And that he is not able to alter their determination. This is known to the inhabitants on earth, as well as to the ſpirits; for when the moon is in its wane, it is ſaid, that they are then devouring their eatooa; and that, as it increaſes, he is renewing himſelf. And to this accident, not only the inferior, but the moſt eminent gods are liable. They alſo believe, that there are other places for the reception of ſouls after death. Thus, thoſe who are drowned in the ſea, remain there; where they think that there is a fine country, houſes, and every thing that can make them happy. But what is more ſingular, they maintain, that not only all other animals, but trees, fruit, and even ſtones, have ſouls, which at death, or upon being conſumed, or broken, aſcend to the divinity, with whom they firſt mix, and afterwards paſs into the manſion allotted to each. They imagine, that their punctual performance of religious offices procures them every temporal bleſſing. And as they believe, that the animating and powerful influence of the deity is every where diffuſed, it it no wonder that they join to this many ſuperſtitious opinions about its operations. Accordingly, they believe that ſudden deaths, and all other accidents, are effected by the immediate action of ſome divinity. If a man only ſtumble againſt a ſtone, and hurt his toe, they impute it to an eatooa; ſo that they may be literally ſaid, agreeable to their ſyſtem, to tread on enchanted ground. They are ſtartled, in the night, on approaching a toopapoo, where the dead are expoſed, in the ſame manner that many of our ignorant and ſuperſtitious people are with the apprehenſions of ghoſts, and at the ſight of a church yard; and they have an equal confidence in dreams, which they ſuppoſe to be communications either from their god, or from the ſpirits of their departed friends, enabling thoſe favoured with them to foretell future events; but this kind of knowledge is confined to particular people. Omiah pretended to have this gift. He told us, that the ſoul of his father had intimated to him in a dream, on the 26th of July, 1776, that he ſhould go on ſhore, at ſome place, within three days; but he was unfortunate in this firſt attempt to perſuade us that he was a prophet; for it was the 1ſt of Auguſt before we got into Teneriffe. Among them, however, the dreamers poſſeſs a reputation little inferior to that of their inſpired prieſts and prieſteſſes, whoſe predictions they implicitly believe and are determined by them in all undertakings of conſequence. The prieſteſs who perſuaded Opoony to invade Ulietea, is much reſpected by him; and he never goes to war without conſulting her. They alſo, in ſome degree, maintain our old doctrine of planetary influence; at leaſt, they are ſometimes regulated, in their public counſels, by certain appearances of the moon; particularly when lying horizontally, or much inclined on the convex part, on its firſt appearance after the change, they are encouraged to engage in war, with confidence of ſucceſs.

"They have traditions concerning the creation, which, as might be expected, are complex, and clouded with obſcurity. They ſay, that a goddeſs having a lump or maſs of earth ſuſpended in a cord, gave it a ſwing, and ſcattered about pieces of land, thus creating Otaheite and the neighbouring iſlands. They have alſo notions of a univerſal creation, and of lands, of which they have now no other knowledge than what is mentioned in their traditions. Their moſt remote account reaches to Tatooma and Tapuppa, male and female ſtones or rocks, who ſupport the maſs of land and water, or our globe underneath. Theſe produced Totorro, who was killed, and divided into land; and, after him, Otaia and Oroo were begotten, who afterwards were married, and produced firſt land, and then a race of gods. Otaia is killed, and Oroo marries a god, her ſon, called Teorraha, whom ſhe orders to create more land, the animals, and all ſorts of food, found upon the earth; as alſo the ſky, which is ſupported by men called Teeferei. The ſpots obſerved in the moon, are ſuppoſed to be groves of a ſort of trees which once grew in Otaheite, and being deſtroyed by ſome accident, their ſeeds were carried up thither by doves, where they now flouriſh.

"They have alſo many legends, both hiſtorical and religious, one of which, relative to the practice of eating human fleſh, I ſhall give the ſubſtance of, as a ſpecimen of their method. A long time ſince, there lived in Otaheite two men, called Taheeai; the only name they yet have for cannibals. None knew from whence they came, or in what manner they arrived at the iſland. Their habitation was in the mountains, from whence they uſed to iſſue, and kill many of the natives, whom they afterwards devoured, and, by that means, prevented the progreſs of population. Two brothers being determined to rid their country of ſuch a formidable enemy, uſed a ſtratagem for their deſtruction, with ſucceſs. Theſe lived farther upward than the Taheeai, and in ſuch a ſituation, that they could ſpeak with them, without greatly hazarding their own ſafety. They invited them to accept of an entertainment, that ſhould be provided for them, to which theſe readily conſented. The brothers then taking ſome ſtones, heated them, and thruſting them into pieces of mahee, deſired one of the Taheeai to open his mouth. On which, one of theſe pieces was dropped in, and ſome water poured down, which made a boiling or hiſſing noiſe, in quenching the ſtone, and killed him. They intreated the other to do the ſame; but he declined it, repreſenting the conſequences of his companion's eating. However they aſſured him, that the food was excellent, and its effects only temporary; for that the other would ſoon recover. His credulity was ſuch, that he ſwallowed the bait, and ſhared the fate of the firſt. The natives then cut them in pieces, which they buried; and conferred the government of the iſland on the brothers, as a reward for delivering them from ſuch monſters. Their reſidence was in the diſtrict called Whapaneenoo; and to this day there remains a bread-fruit-tree, once the property of the Taheeais. They had alſo a woman, who lived with them, and had two teeth of a prodigious ſize. After they were killed, ſhe lived at the iſland Otaha, and, when dead, was ranked among their deities. She did not eat human fleſh, as the men; but, from the ſize of her teeth, the natives ſtill call any animal that has a fierce appearance, or is repreſented with large tuſks, Taheeai. Every one muſt allow, that this ſtory is juſt as natural as that of Hercules deſtroying the Hydra, or the more modern one of Jack, the giant-killer: nor do I find, that there is any moral couched under it, any more than under moſt old fables of the ſame kind, which have been received as truths only during the prevalence of the ſame ignorance that marked the character of the ages in which they were invented. It, however, has not been improperly introduced, as ſerving to expreſs the horror and deteſtation entertained here, againſt thoſe who feed on human fleſh. And yet, from ſome circumſtances, I have been led to think, that the natives of theſe iſles were formerly cannibals. Upon aſking Omiah, he denied it ſtoutly; yet mentioned a fact, within his own knowledge, which almoſt confirms ſuch an opinion. When the people of Bolabola, one time, defeated thoſe of Huaheine, a great number of his kinſmen were ſlain. But one of his relations had afterward an opportunity of revenging himſelf, when the Bolabola men were worſted in their turn, and cutting a piece out of the thigh of one of his enemies, he broiled and eat it. I have, alſo, frequently conſidered the offering of the perſon's eye, who is ſacrificed, and offered to the chief, as a veſtige of a cuſtom which once really exiſted to a greater extent, and is ſtill commemorated by this emblematical ceremony.

"The being inveſted with the maro, and the preſiding at human ſacrifices, ſeem to be peculiar characteriſtics of the ſovereign. To theſe, perhaps, may be added the blowing a conch-ſhell, which produces a very loud ſound. On hearing it, all his ſubjects are obliged to bring food of every ſort to his royal reſidence, in proportion to their abilities. On ſome occaſions, they carry their veneration for his very name, to an extravagant and very deſtructive pitch. For if, on his acceſſion to the maro, any words in their language be found to have a reſemblance to it in ſound, they are changed for others; and if any man be bold enough not to comply, and continue to uſe thoſe words, not only he, but all his relations, are immediately put to death. The ſame ſeverity is exerciſed toward thoſe who ſhall preſume to apply this ſacred name to any animal. And, agreeably to this cuſtom of his countrymen, Omiah uſed to expreſs his indignation, that the Engliſh ſhould give the names of prince or princeſs to their favourite dogs and horſes. But while death is the puniſhment for making free with the name of their ſovereign, if abuſe be only levelled at his government, the offender eſcapes with the forfeiture of land and houſes. The king never enters the houſe of any of his ſubjects, but has in every diſtrict, where he viſits, houſes belonging to himſelf. And if, at any time, he ſhould be obliged, by accident, to deviate from this rule, the houſe thus honoured with his preſence, and every part of its furniture, is burnt. His ſubjects not only uncover to him, when preſent, down to the waiſt; but if he be at any particular place, a pole, having a piece of cloth tied to it, is ſet up ſomewhere near, to which they pay the ſame honours. His brothers are alſo intitled to the firſt part of the ceremony; but the women only uncover to the females of the royal family: in ſhort, they ſeem even ſuperſtitious in their reſpect to him, and eſteem his perſon little leſs than ſacred. And it is, perhaps, to theſe circumſtances, that he owes the quiet poſſeſſion of his dominions. For even the people of Tiaraboo allow him the ſame honours as his right; though at the ſame time, they look upon their own chief as more powerful; and ſay, that he would ſucceed to the government of the whole iſland, ſhould the preſent reigning family become extinct. This is the more likely, as Waheiadooa not only poſſeſſes Tiaraboo, but many diſtricts of Opooreano. His territories, therefore, are almoſt equal, in extent, to thoſe of Otoo; and he has, beſides, the advantage of a more populous and fertile part of the iſland. His ſubjects, alſo, have given proofs of their ſuperiority; by frequent victories over thoſe of Otaheite-nooe, whom they affect to ſpeak of as contemptible warriors, eaſily to be worſted, if, at any time, their chief ſhould wiſh to put it to the teſt.

"The ranks of people, beſides the eree de hoi, and his family, are the erees, or powerful chiefs; the manahoone, or vaſſals; and the teou or toutou, ſervants, or rather ſlaves. The men of each of theſe, according to the regular inſtitution, form their connections with women of their reſpective ranks; but if with any inferior one, which frequently happens, and a child be born, it is preſerved, and has the rank of the father, unleſs he happens to be an eree, in which caſe it is killed. If a woman of condition ſhould chuſe an inferior perſon to officiate as an huſband, the children he has by her are killed; and ſhould a toutou be caught in an intrigue with a woman of the blood-royal, he is put to death. The ſon of the eree de hoi ſucceeds his father in title and honours, as ſoon as he is born; but if he ſhould have no children, the brother aſſumes the government at his death. In other families, poſſeſſions always deſcend to the eldeſt ſon; but he is obliged to maintain his brothers and ſiſters, who are allowed houſes on his eſtates.

" The boundaries of the ſeveral diſtricts, into which Otaheite is divided, are generally, either rivulets, or low hills, which in many places, jut out into the ſea. But the ſubdiviſions into particular property, are marked by large ſtones, which have remained from one generation to another. The removal of any of theſe gives riſe to quarrels, which are decided by arms; each party bringing his friends into the field. But if any one complain to the eree de hoi, he terminates the difference amicably. This is an offence, however, not common; and long cuſtom ſeems to ſecure property here as effectually as the moſt ſevere laws do in other countries. In conformity alſo to ancient practice eſtabliſhed among them, crimes of a leſs general nature are left to be puniſhed by the ſufferer, without referring them to a ſuperior. In this caſe, they ſeem to think, that the injured perſon will judge as equitably as thoſe who are totally unconcerned; and as long cuſtom has allotted certain puniſhments of different ſorts, he is allowed to inflict them, without being amenable to any other perſon. Thus, if any one be caught ſtealing, which is commonly done in the night, the proprietor of the goods may put the thief inſtantly to death; and if any one ſhould enquire of him after the deceaſed, it is ſufficient to acquit him, if he only informs them of the provocation he had to kill him. But ſo ſevere a puniſhment is ſeldom inflicted, unleſs the articles that are ſtolen be reckoned very valuable, ſuch as breaſt plates, and plaited hair. If only cloth, or even hogs be ſtolen, and the thief eſcape, upon his being afterward diſcovered, if he promiſe to return the ſame number of pieces of cloth, or of hogs, no farther puniſhment is inflicted. Sometimes, after keeping out of the way for a few days, he is forgiven, or at moſt, gets a ſlight beating. If a perſon kill another in a quarrel, the friends of the deceaſed aſſemble, and engage the ſurvivor and his adherents. If they conquer, they take poſſeſſion of the houſe, lands, and goods, of the other party; but if conquered, the reverſe takes place. If a manahoone kills the toutou, or ſlave of a chief, the latter ſends people to take poſſeſſion of the lands and houſe of the former, who flies either to ſome other part of the iſland, or to ſome of the neighbouring iſlands. After ſome months he returns, and finding his ſtock of hogs much increaſed, he offers a large preſent of theſe, with red feathers, and other articles, to the toutou's maſter, who generally accepts the compenſation, and permits him to repoſſeſs his houſe and lands. This practice is the height of venality and injuſtice; and the ſlayer of the ſlave ſeems to be under no farther neceſſity of abſconding, than to impoſe upon the lower claſs of people, who are the ſufferers. For it does not appear, that the chief has the leaſt power to puniſh this manahoone; but the whole management marks a colluſion between him and his ſuperior, to gratify the revenge of the former, and the avarice of the latter. Indeed, we need not wonder, that the killing of a man ſhould be conſidered as ſo venial an offence among a people, who do not conſider it as any crime to murder their own children. When talking to them about ſuch inſtances of unnatural cruelty, and aſking, whether the chiefs or principal were not angry, and did not puniſh them? I was told, that the chief neither could nor would interfere in ſuch caſes; and that every one had a right to do with his own child what he pleaſed.

" Though the productions, the people, the cuſtoms and manners of all the iſlands in the neighbourhood, may, in general, be reckoned the ſame as at Otaheite, there are a few differences which ſhould be mentioned, as this may lead to an enquiry about more material ones hereafter, if ſuch there be, of which we are now ignorant. With regard to the little iſland of Mataia, or Oſnaburgh Iſland, which lies twenty leagues eaſt of Otaheite, and belongs to a chief of that place, who gets from thence a kind of tribute: there a different dialect from that of Otaheite is ſpoken. The men of Mataia alſo wear their hair very long; and when they fight, cover their arms with a ſubſtance which is beſet with ſharks teeth, and their bodies with a ſort of ſhagreen, being ſkin of fiſhes. At the ſame time, they are ornamented with poliſhed pearl ſhells, which make a prodigious glittering in the ſun; and they have a very large one that covers them before, like a ſhield or breaſt-plate. But Otaheite is remarkable for producing great quantities of that delicious fruit we called apples, which are found in none of the other iſlands, except Eimeo. It has alſo the advantage of producing an odoriferous wood, called Eahoi, which is highly valued at the other iſles, where there is none; nor in the ſouth-eaſt peninſula, or Tiaraboo, though joining it. Huaheine and Eimeo again, are remarkable for producing greater quantities of yams than the other iſlands. And at Mourooa there is a particular bird, found upon the hills, much eſteemed for its white feathers; at which place there is alſo ſaid to be ſome of the apples, though it be the moſt remote of the Society Iſlands from Otaheite and Eimeo, where they are produced.

" Though the religion of all the iſlands be the ſame, each of them has its particular or tutelar god, whoſe names, according to the beſt information I could obtain, are enumerated in the following liſt.

GODS of the	ISLES.
Tanne -	- Huaheine
Ooro -	- Ulietea
Tanne -	- Otaha
Olla -	- Bolabola
Otoo, ee weiahoo	- Mourooa
Tamouee -	- Toobaee
Taroa -	Tabooymanoo, or Saunder's Iſland, ſubject to Huaheine.
Oroo hadoo -	- Eimeo
Ooroo -	- Otaheite and Otaheite nooe
Opoonooa and Whatooteree	Tiaraboo
Tooboo, toobooai and Ry maraiva	Mataia or Oſnaburgh Iſland
Tammaree -	- The low iſlands eaſtward.

" Beſides the cluſter of high iſlands from Mataia to Mourooa incluſive, the people of Otaheite are acquainted with a low uninhabited iſland, which they name Mopeeha, and ſeems to be Howe's Iſland, laid down to the weſtward of Mourooa in our late charts of this ocean. To this the inhabitants of the moſt leeward iſlands ſometimes go. There are alſo ſeveral low iſlands to the north-eaſtward of Otaheite, which they have ſometimes viſited, but not conſtantly; and are ſaid to be only at the diſtance of two days ſail with a fair wind. They are thus named Mataeeva, Oanaa or Oannah, Taboohoe, Awehee, Kaoora, Orootooa, and Otavaoo, where are large pearls.

" The inhabitants of theſe iſlands come frequently to Otaheite and the other neighbouring high iſlands, from whoſe natives they differ in being of a darker colour, with a fiercer aſpect, and differently punctured. I was informed, that at Mataeeva, and others of them, it is the cuſtom for the men to give their daughters to ſtrangers who arrive among them; but the pairs muſt be five nights lying near each other, without preſuming to proceed farther. On the ſixth evening, the father of the young woman treats his gueſt with food, and informs his daughter, that ſhe muſt that night receive him as her huſband. The ſtranger, however, muſt not offer to expreſs the leaſt diſlike, though the bedfellow allotted him be ever ſo diſagreeable; for this is conſidered as an unpardonable affront, and is puniſhed with death. Forty men of Bolabola, who, incited by curioſity, had roamed as far as Mataeeva in a canoe, were treated in this manner; one of them having incautiouſly mentioned his diſlike of the woman who fell to his lot, in the hearing of a boy who informed her father. In conſequence of this, the Mataeevans fell upon them; but theſe warlike people killed three times their own number, though with the loſs of all their party except five. Thoſe hid themſelves in the woods, and took an opportunity, when the others were burying their dead, to enter ſome houſes, where, having provided themſelves with victuals and water, they carried them on board a canoe, in which they made their eſcape; and, after paſſing Mataia, at which they would not touch, at laſt arrived ſafe at Eimeo. The Bolabolans, however, were ſenſible enough that their travellers had been to blame; for a canoe from Mataeeva arriving ſome time after at Bolabola, ſo far were they from retaliating upon them for the death of their countrymen, that they acknowledged they had deſerved their fate, and treated their viſitors with much hoſpitality. Theſe low iſles are, doubtleſs, the fartheſt navigation, which thoſe of Otaheite, and the Society Iſlands, perform at preſent. It ſeems to be a groundleſs ſuppoſition, made by Monſ. de Bougainville, by whom we are told, that theſe people ſometimes navigate at the diſtance of more than three hundred leagues. I do not believe they make voyages of this prodigious extent; for it is reckoned a ſort of prodigy, that a canoe, once driven by a ſtorm from Otaheite, ſhould have fallen in with Mopeeha, or Howe's Iſland, though ſo near, and directly to leeward. The knowledge that they have of other diſtant iſlands is, no doubt, traditional; and has been communicated to them by the natives of thoſe iſlands, driven accidentally upon their coaſts, who, beſides giving them the names, could eaſily inform them of the direction in which the places lie from whence they came, and of the number of days they had been upon the ſea. In this manner, it may be ſuppoſed, that the natives of Wateeo have increaſed their catalogue by the addition of Otaheite, and its neighbouring iſles, from the people we met with there, and alſo of the other iſlands theſe had heard of. We may thus account for that extenſive knowledge attributed, by the gentlemen of the Endeavour, to Tupia, in ſuch matters. And, with all due deference to his veracity, I preſume that it was, by the ſame means of information, that he was able to direct the ſhip to Oheteroa, without having ever been there himſelf, as he pretended; which, on many accounts, is very improbable." Here ends Mr. Anderſon's ſtrictures on Otaheite, and its neighbouring iſlands.

One year and five months had now elapſed, ſince our departure from England; during which period we had not been, upon the whole, unprofitably employed. Captain Cook was ſenſible, that, with reſpect to the principal object of his inſtructions, our voyage might be conſidered, at this time, as only at its commencement; and therefore, his attention to whatever might contribute towards our ſafety and final ſucceſs, was now to be exerted, as it were, anew. We had, with this view, examined into the ſtate of our proviſions at the iſlands we had laſt viſited; and having now, on leaving them, proceeded beyond the extent of former diſcoveries, an accurate ſurvey was ordered to be taken of all the ſtores that were in each ſhip, that, by being fully informed of the quantity and condition of every article, we might know how to uſe them to the greateſt advantage. We had alſo, before we had quitted the Society Iſles, taken every opportunity of enquiring of the natives, whether there were any iſlands ſituate in a northerly or north-weſterly direction from them, but it did not appear that they knew of any.

We ſhould now proceed with the progreſs of the voyage, after our leaving the Society Iſlands; but ſhall defer it for the commencement of the next chapter; in order to lay before our readers an hiſtorical and geographical account of the north-weſt parts of North America, beginning from the iſthmus of Darien: alſo an account of the moſt remarkable iſlands ſituated in the high latitudes, which, with the deſcriptions already given, in the courſe of this work, of ſeveral iſlands in the Indian ſeas, will form a complete, full, and perfect hiſtory of all the places, old and new diſcoveries, mentioned and touched at, by all our moſt celebrated circumnavigators: for which account, we acknowledge ourſelves chiefly indebted to that *much admired and approved work*, MILLAR's NEW *and* UNIVERSAL SYSTEM *of* GEOGRAPHY, *now publiſhing in eighty weekly numbers, price only Sixpence each, embelliſhed with Copper-plates; and may be had of the Publiſher*, Mr. HOGG, *in Paternoſter-row, or of any Bookſeller, Newſcarrier, or Stationer, in Great-Britain, Ireland, &c.*

Americus Veſpucio, a Florentine by birth, being in 1497, ſent to improve the diſcoveries made in 1491, by Columbus, gave to the fourth quarter of the world the name of America. This vaſt continent, (at leaſt what has hitherto been diſcoverd) reaches from latitude 78 deg. N. to 56 deg. S. That is 134 degrees, which, taken in a ſtrait line, amount to upwards of 8040 miles in length. Its breadth is very irregular, being in ſome places 3690 miles, and in others, as at the diſtance of Darien or Panama, not above 60 or 70. The boundaries aſcribed to it, are the land about the pole on the north; Atlantic Ocean, which ſeparates it from Europe and Aſia on the eaſt; another vaſt ocean on the ſouth, and the Pacific Ocean, uſually called the South Sea, which divides it from Aſia on the weſt. How or when America was firſt peopled, cannot be aſcertained; but it is moſt likely to have been from the north of Aſia; for the natives of both theſe parts ſtill bear a great reſemblance to one another in many reſpects. North America, which conſtitutes a grand diviſion of this vaſt continent, and of which we propoſe now to treat, is ſeparated from the ſouthern part by the iſthmus of Darien, and extends from that iſthmus to within a few degrees of the north pole. In the period of more than two centuries and a half, geographers were not able to aſcertain the limits of the northern extremity; this was a taſk to be performed by Captain Cook in his third and laſt voyage.

Old Mexico, or New Spain, a rich and extenſive country, was once a mighty empire, ruled by its own monarchs, till the Spaniards, by whom it was at firſt diſcovered, in 1598, afterwards conquered it, under the command of Fernando Cortez. It lies between ſeven degrees thirty minutes, and thirty degrees forty minutes north latitude, is 2000 miles long, 600 broad where wideſt, has the iſthmus of Darien on the ſouth, New Mexico on the north, the gulph of Mexico on the eaſt, and the Pacific Ocean on the weſt. It is divided into the provinces of Guadalajara, Mexico, and Guatimala, and is governed by a viceroy. Mexico, conſidering its ſituation in the torrid zone, enjoys a temperate air. No country under heaven abounds more with grain, delicious fruits, roots, and vegetables. On the weſtern coaſt, near the Pacific Ocean, are ſome high mountains, moſt of which are ſaid to be volcanoes. Several rivers riſe in theſe mountains, and fall, ſome into the gulph of Mexico, and ſome into the South Sea, on both which there are ſeveral capes and bays. In the rocky, barren parts of the country are the gold and ſilver mines. There are, it is ſaid, ſeveral of the former, and no fewer than one thouſand of the latter. Gold is alſo found in grains or duſt, in the ſands of rivers or torrents. Whoever diſcovers a mine of gold or ſilver, is at liberty to work it, paying the king a tenth of the produce, and limiting himſelf within fifty yards round the place upon which he has fixed. All the ſilver and gold dug or found in grains, is entered in the royal exchequer; and it is reported, that notwithſtanding great quantities are run and concealed, no leſs than two millions of ſilver marks, weighing eight ounces each, are entered yearly, out of which they coin ſeven hundred thouſand marks into pieces of eight, quarter pieces, rials, and half-pieces, the latter being about three-pence ſterling value. The trade of Spaniſh America has been carried on for ſome years paſt by veſſels, called regiſter ſhips; and the chief commodities of this country are gold, ſilver, exquiſite marble, porphyry, jaſper, precious ſtones, pearls, amber, ginger, tobacco, hides, tallow, ſalt, dying woods, drugs, balſams, honey, feathers, chocolate, cochineal, ſilk, ſugar, cotton, wool, &c. The inhabitants are, at preſent, a mixed people, conſiſting of Indians, Spaniards, and other Europeans; the creoles, meſtichoes, or iſſue of the Spaniards by Americans, the meſtichoes, or the iſſue of ſuch iſſue; the terceroons dez Indies, or the children of the laſt, married to Spaniards; and the quarteroons dez Indies, whoſe deſcendants are allowed the ſame privileges as true Spaniards. The negroes are likewiſe pretty numerous, being imported from the coaſt of Africa for various purpoſes, and many of them admitted to their freedom. The iſſue of an European and a negro conſtitutes another diſtinction, called mulatto; beſides all which there is a mixed breed of negroes and Indians, which is generally deemed the loweſt rank.

The principal places are (1) Mexico, which ſtands in the middle of a great lake of its own name, about one hundred and ſeventy miles weſt of the gulph of Mexico. The number of inhabitants is computed at three hundred thouſand; moſt of them live beyond their fortunes, and terminate a life of profuſion in the moſt wretched indigence. A prodigious quantity of jewels, gold and ſilver plate, and toys, together with the moſt valuable commodities of Europe and Aſia, are expoſed to ſale in the ſtreets.

California, a peninſula, is the moſt northern of all the Spaniſh dominions on the continent of America. It extends from the north coaſts into the Pacific Ocean, 800 miles from Cape Sebaſtian, in 43 deg. 30 min. north latitude, towards the ſouth-eaſt as far as Cape St. Lucar, in 22 degrees, 32 minutes, north latitude. The eaſtern coaſt lies nearly parallel with that of Mexico oppoſite to it, and the ſea between is called the lake or gulph of California. Its breadth is very unequal; towards the north it is near 200 miles, but at the ſouth extremity it tapers away, and is ſcarcely 50 miles over. The more ſouthern part was known to the Spaniards ſoon after the diſcovery of Mexico; for Cortez diſcovered it in 1535, but they did not till lately penetrate far into it, contenting themſelves with the pearl fiſhery there. Several kinds of fruit are produced here; there are two ſpecies of deer peculiar to this country; alſo a particular breed of ſheep, buffaloes, beavers, or animals much reſembling them, a peculiar ſpecies of wild hogs, lions, wild cats, and many other wild beaſts. The horſes, mules, oxen, and other quadrupeds, that have been imported hither from Spain and Mexico, multiply exceedingly. Of the two ſpecies of deer peculiar to California, that called taye by the natives is greatly eſteemed, and its fleſh as well taſted as veniſon. The coaſt is plentifully ſtocked with birds, and there is a great variety of fiſh in the gulph of California, the Pacific Ocean, and the rivers. Though inſects ſwarm here, as in moſt hot countries, yet on account of the dryneſs of the ſoil and climate, they are neither noxious nor troubleſome. There is one of the richeſt pearl fiſheries in the world, on the coaſt, and there are ſuppoſed to be mines in the country. Here are two conſiderable rivers, namely, Rio Collorado, and Rio du Carmel, with ſeveral ſmaller ſtreams, and fine ports, creeks, and roads both on the eaſt and weſt ſide, which is the reaſon of its having been ſo much frequented by Engliſh privateers. There are, in the heart of the country, plains of ſalt quite firm, and clear as cryſtal. A great variety of ſavage tribes inhabit California. Thoſe who live on the eaſt ſide of the peninſula are great enemies to the Spaniards; but in other parts, they ſeem to be very hoſpitable to all ſtrangers. The inland country, eſpecially towards the north, is populous. The Indians reſemble thoſe deſcribed in other parts of America.

Siberia, a part of Ruſſian Tartary, is bounded by the Frozen Ocean on the north; by China, and the Pacific Ocean, on the eaſt; by Tibet, Uſbeck Tartary, the Caſpian Sea, and Aſtracan Tartary, on the ſouth; and by European Ruſſia, on the weſt; and is ſituate between ſixty and one hundred and thirty degrees of eaſtern longitude, and between forty and ſeventy-two degrees of north latitude, being upwards of two thouſand miles in length, and one thouſand five hundred in breadth.

The Tobel and Irtis are the chief cities of Siberia, which running from north to ſouth, join the Oby, the united ſtream falling into the Frozen Ocean, and dividing Aſia from Europe: the Lena and Jeniſſa, which run from north to ſouth, fall alſo into the Frozen Ocean: the Yamour and Argun, which divide the Ruſſian from the Chineſe dominions, whoſe united ſtreams fall into the bay of Corea. There are alſo a great many large lakes in this vaſt tract of land, of which the largeſt are thoſe of Baikal and Kiſan.

The only part of Siberia, fit for human beings to live in, is the ſouthern, where the ſoil appears to be capable of cultivation, and that it might be rendered fertile; but, for want of inhabitants, very little corn is produced. But the northern part exhibits nothing but impenetrable woods, ſnow-topt mountains, fens, lakes, marſhes, &c. and, being expoſed to the bleak winds, is quite barren and deſolate. Not a bird appears to give notice of any change of ſeaſon; even rooks and magpies quit theſe deſarts, where nature becomes quite torpid. The natives are obliged to make paſſages through heaps of ſnow, and the delights of ſummer are not experienced here but about three months, during which ſhort ſpace of time the inhabitants ſow rye, oats, peaſe, and barley; but theſe ſeldom repay the huſbandman's toil. The natives are generally ſhut up in their cottages for nine months in the year, ſcarcely ever venturing out: fir-trees of conſiderable height bend under the weight of ſnow; a melancholy gloom ſpreads all around, and the ſtillneſs is interrupted only by the cries of ſome wretched travellers in ſledges. To theſe dreary regions the czars of Muſcovy baniſh their courtiers and other great perſons who incur their diſpleaſure. Some are baniſhed for a limited term of years, and others for life, with the allowance only of one penny per day, and ſometimes without any allowance at all; ſo that, as they are ſent deſtitute from court, theſe miſerable exiles paſs a moſt dreadful life. They ſhoot for their livelihood, and are obliged to ſend an annual tribute of firs to the czars, or they are moſt ſeverely puniſhed by the taſk-maſters.

Kamtſchatka. This peninſula is bounded on the eaſt by the ocean, which ſeparates it from America; its weſtern boundary is Penſchinſka. The ſouthern part is in 51 degrees north latitude, and in 143 degrees eaſt longitude from London. This peninſula is divided into two parts by a chain of hills running from north to ſouth. Its chief rivers are the Awatſcha, Kamtſchatka, the Teghil, and what is called the Great River. There are many extenſive lakes in it.

Their ſpring and ſummer do not continue more than four months; but the latter is far from being agreeable; for as the adjacent hills are covered with ſnow, the air, even in the middle of ſummer, is ſometimes pretty cold, attended with frequent rains; the winter however is not very inclement.

In many places mines of iron and copper have been diſcovered: the iron ore hath been found to be compact, of a yellow colour, inclining to red; and, in ſome parts, black metallic particles have been obſerved, more compact than the reſt of the ore. This ore, when crude, could not be attracted by the load-ſtone, but, when calcined, became ſo in a ſmall degree. A ſolid iron ore has alſo been diſcovered here, ſimilar to that found to the ſouth-weſt of Echaterinenburg: its ſurface was found to be covered with a yellow oker, of a reddiſh brown in the breakings of its ſolid parts. The ore, when crude, was not acted upon by the load-ſtone, though, after calcination, ſlightly attracted by it. The copper mines are like ſome of thoſe produced on the Ryphean mountains, having the malachites, in the form of ſtalactites and ſtataguites, in their cavities, very beautiful, and capable of being poliſhed.

There is great choice of timber for a variety of uſes in Kamtſchatka, as well as abundance of ſhrubs of divers kinds, they have alſo ſeveral excellent medicinal plants. Barley, oats, peas, turnips, &c. grow likewiſe here. The graſs ſprings up ſo faſt, that they have three harveſts; and the blades are frequently five feet in height.

This country abounds with tame and wild fowls. The wild animals are, black and white bears, wolves, lynxes, boars, elks, and a kind of ſtag very much like the fallow-deer. The bear never attacks a man, unleſs they find him aſleep, when they tear the ſcalp off the back part of the head, and ſometimes intirely deſtroy him. Foxes are alſo very numerous, ſome are white, ſome rediſh-yellow; ſome grey, with a black ſtreak on the back, and are much valued; the white ones, however, are alſo valued, as being ſcarcer. There are alſo black-cheſnuts and blue breaſted foxes; and they are in general too crafty for their purſuers, their ſagacity exceeding that of the other ſpecies. The opulence of the country conſiſts in its ſables and ermines; the ſables which are ſold at a high price, excel thoſe found in any other part of the globe: the natives eat the fleſh, and eſteem it a very fine food.

Here is alſo found the gulo, or glutton; likewiſe other kinds of beaver, as the atis, rein-deer, and ſayga. The natives collect themſelves in companies to hunt theſe animals; they go at the cloſe of the winter from the month of March to the end of April, taking proviſions with them. The glutton, which hath a very fine fur, is a terrible enemy to the deer: it will dart itſelf from a tree upon a deer's back, and, fixing between the creature's horns, tears out his eyes: the afflicted animal, with exceſs of agony, falls to the ground, when the glutton ſtrips his fleſh from his bones.

Dogs are very numerous in this country: theſe reſemble the European, and live much upon mice and fiſh; they ſcratch up the ground for the former, and ſeize the others from their ſtreams. Theſe dogs are extremely ſerviceable to the natives, in drawing their ſledges over the ſnow: in the moſt dreadful weather, they ſcarce ever loſe their way.

Several ſorts of amphibious animals are alſo in Kamtſchatka. One is the ſea-cow, about thirty feet in length, and weighing ſix or ſeven thouſand pounds, the ſkin of which is ſo hard, that ſcarce an hatchet or axe will penetrate it. The fleſh of a young ſea-cow, when properly boiled, has a good taſte; the lean part is ſomewhat like veal, and the fat part like pork. The method of catching this animal is, by an iron hook ſtruck into it by ſome men in a ſmall veſſel, then by a rope held by people on ſhore, the ſea-cow is drawn gradually to the land, while thoſe in the veſſel cut the creature with inſtruments in ſeveral parts of the body, till it expires. It is not very difficult to take the ſea-cow from its elements, for it ſeldom raiſes its head above the ſurface of the water, though its ſides and back are often ſeen.

Sea-horſes and ſea-cats are alſo met with here: the latter have long hairs ſtanding out on each ſide of their mouths like thoſe of a cat, and they weigh from five to eight thouſand pounds: their eyes are as large as a bull's, and they will fly at people in boats; even if they are blinded by ſtones thrown at them, they will not retire, but gnaw the very ſtones that are thrown; however, when once deprived of ſight, there is no great danger to be apprehended from them. The male and female differ both in form and diſpoſition; ſo much in form, that they might be taken for different animals; and as to diſpoſition, the female is mild, inoffenſive, and timid: as a proof of this, when an attempt is made to ſeize a young ſea-cat, and the male, by vigorouſly defending it, affords the female an opportunity of taking it off in its mouth; if, in this caſe, the female ſhould happen to drop it, the male abandons its adverſary, and, flying directly at the female, ſeizes her with all imaginable fury; when the latter, by licking his paws, and ſhewing every kind of ſubmiſſion, endeavours to mitigate his rage. The ſeas alſo abound with ſeals, which are caught by different methods: ſometimes they are taken in the water, and at other times they are killed while ſleeping on the rocks. Here are whales from ſeven to fifteen fathoms long.

Amongſt a variety of fiſh, here is the ſterlet, which is ſo much like the ſturgeon, that there is ſcarce any difference, except that it is ſmaller and more delicate; it is ſo fat that it may be fried without oil.

Some of the birds of Kamtſchatka are, eagles, hawks, pelicans, ſwans, geeſe, wigeons, ducks, cuckows, magpies, ſnipes, partridges, &c. A bird called the redneck diver is very curious; it has a beautiful ſpot on the lower part of its neck; beneath this ſpot, there are feathers of a brown colour in the middle, and edged all round with white; the breaſt, belly, and legs, are of a very beautiful white.

Sea-fowl are very numerous on the coaſt of the eaſtern ocean, as peacocks, ſea-pies, green ſhanks, puffins, &c. Here too are the cormorant, ſea-raven, and urile.

Clouds of dragon-flies, locuſts, and gnats, are ſometimes ſeen in this country. The latter are ſo troubleſome, that the inhabitants are obliged to vail their faces, to avoid them. The dragon-flies, forming columns, fly with incredible ſwiftneſs.

The natives of Kamtſchatka inhabit the ſouthern part of the peninſula; the northern part is inhabited by the Koreki, and the ſouthern by the Kuriles; but the Ruſſians call the whole country Kamtſchatka, though it has ſeveral names given it from particular circumſtances. The Kamtſchadales are ſhort in ſtature, and reſemble moſt of the other inhabitants of Siberia, except that their faces are ſomewhat ſhorter, their mouths larger, and their cheeks fuller; they have dark hair, hollow eyes, ſharp noſes, and tawny complexions; the latter is ſaid to be principally owing to the influence of the ſun reflected from the ſnow in the ſpring-ſeaſon, when the ſnow lies thick on the ground. Some of the natives, who are obliged to be in the woods, cover their faces with a kind of netting, to prevent the effects of the ſun-beams darting on the ſnow; for the eye-ſight ſuffers by this refraction, as well as the complexion. Theſe people dreſs in deer-ſkins, with the fur outwards; they uſe alſo, for this purpoſe, the ſkins of dogs and other animals. They often wear two coats, the ſleeves of the outer coat reaching down to the knees; they have a hood to it, which in bad weather ſerves to cover the head; and they adorn the back part with ſhreads of ſkins, and ſometimes of ſilks of different colours. The women wear the ſame ſort of garments as the men, though their coat, or rather waiſtcoat, fits cloſer to their bodies, and is decorated with ſlips of red, blue, and yellow cloth, and ſometimes ribband, or woollen liſt. To this waiſtcoat is joined a ſort of petticoat coming about half way down the leg. The men wear a leather belt round them, and their legs are covered with different coloured ſkins; they wear ſeal-ſkin caps or hats, and ſometimes a cap or hat of birch bark; ſome have caps of braſs plaited. The women let their hair grow much longer than the men; they plait it, and hang braſs trinkets to it: they have fur caps, that are black without, and white within. The men plait their hair, as well as the women. They never waſh themſelves, but live in a moſt beaſtly manner: they neither cut their nails, nor comb their hair. They eat raw fleſh, carrion, ſtale fiſh, or any thing they can get, how filthy ſoever it be. They live in huts under-ground, covered with graſs or earth, and ſometimes with the ſkins of the animals they have killed in the field, undreſſed, and yielding a noiſome ſtench. They place benches in their hovels, with a fire-place in one corner, and on theſe benches they repoſe themſelves. Some of the huts are covered and lined with mats. Theſe are their winter dwellings; nor are their ſummer retreats much more elegant, except that they are built on the ſurface of the earth, and with rather more regularity. Theſe, it is true, are built high on pillows, with beams thrown acroſs them, on which a floor is fixed, with a roof riſing from each ſide to a centrical point; and, indeed it is neceſſary that their ſummer habitations ſhould be thus high, elſe the inhabitants would be in continual danger from the wild beaſts. They eat out of bowls, or troughs, with their dogs, and never waſh them afterwards.

We ſhall now take notice of their marriages. When a man hath met with a young woman that he likes, he engages into the ſervice of her parents, and, after the expiration of a limited time of ſervitude, obtains either permiſſion to marry her, or is diſmiſſed with a requital for his ſervice. If he has leave to marry, the nuptials commences immediately, and the whole ceremony conſiſts in ſtripping the bride naked, whoſe cloaths, however, are ſo faſt bound by ſtraps and girdles, that he finds it no eaſy taſk to accompliſh his purpoſe; at this criſis ſeveral women ſhelter and protect her from him; who, however, ſeeking an opportunity to find her leſs guarded, makes freſh efforts to undreſs her: but if ſhe cries out, and her exclamations bring aſſiſtance, the women who come fall upon the man, ſcratching his face, tearing his hair, and otherwiſe roughly treating him; till the bride, ſhewing ſome concern for his ſituation, and the women becoming leſs violent in their aſſault, the man at length ſucceeds, and then retires from her, who however calls him back, and acknowledges in a ſoft plaintive tone, that he has conquered her. Thus the ceremony ends, and the next day the happy couple repair to the hut of the huſband. In about a week afterwards they make a viſit to the wife's parents, where they celebrate the marriage feaſt with the relations of both parties. Some of the men marry three wives, who in general live friendly together, and are never jealous. It is deemed a very capital offence in a woman to procure abortion, yet if twins are born, one of them muſt be deſtroyed. The women put their infants in a baſket faſtened to an elaſtic pole, which is eaſily moved with the foot, to rock them. As ſoon as they can ſtand on their legs, their mothers leave them to themſelves, ſuffering them to roll on the ground any where; they are moſt commonly half naked, and begin to walk at a time when a child in Europe would not be able to ſtand.

Theſe people never bury their dead, but often give them to the dogs; and ſay, that as the deceaſed are thus devoured by dogs, they will enſure to themſelves a pleaſant carriage in ſledges drawn by fine dogs in the other world. This abominable cuſtom, however, is not univerſally practiſed; ſome leaving their dead in their hut, and ſeek a new habitation. The apparel of the deceaſed perſon is always thrown away, from a ſuperſtitious notion, that whoever ſhould wear it would meet with ſome dreadful calamity.

They travel on ſledges drawn by dogs; their number is generally four, which are driven by a whip. The perſon in the ſledge is ſeated on the right ſide of it, with his feet hanging over, and is obliged to balance himſelf with great care, leſt the ſledge ſhould overſet. Where the roads are in tolerable condition, they can travel to a great diſtance in a ſhort time, carrying with them proviſions, &c. They ſometimes travel, in this manner, about thirty werſts, that is, upwards of twenty-three miles in a day. They hunt the bear, among other animals; on which occaſion they uſe rackets to walk upon the ſnow with, arming themſelves with pikes, and taking dogs with them to provoke the animal. They then wait till he comes out of his encloſure, for they would attack him to great diſadvantage while he remained there; becauſe the ſnow being very firm in that place, the bear would be able to avail himſelf of all his ſtrength; but the inſtant he comes out, he ſinks into the ſnow, and while he is ſtriving to diſengage himſelf, the hunters with their pikes eaſily deſtroy him. They dreſs their ſeal-ſkins in the following manner: they firſt wet and ſpread out the ſkin, and with ſtones fixed in wood ſcrape off all the fat; then they rub it with caviar, roll it together, and tread on it; they afterwards ſcrape it again, and repeat the firſt part of their proceſs till the ſkin is thoroughly cleaned and ſoft. They prepare in the ſame manner ſkins of beaver, deer, dogs, &c. When the men are not employed in hunting, or fiſhing, they weave nets, and conſtruct ſledges and boats; and in the ſpring and ſummer they procure the neceſſaries of life, and lay up a ſtore for the ſucceeding winter. The women make ſhoes, ſew cloaths, dye ſkins. &c. they alſo make glue of the dried ſkins of fiſhes, and particularly of the whale. They uſe a board of dry wood to light their fires; in this board are ſeveral round holes, into one of which putting the end of a ſmall round ſtick, they roll it backwards and forwards till the wood takes fire by the friction.

The people of this country are arrant cowards, and yet ſeem to deſpiſe life, through an innate kind of ſtupidity. They never attack their enemies openly, unleſs compelled to it; but ſteal privately to their huts, and treat them moſt barbarouſly, cutting them to pieces, and even tearing out their entrails: theſe cruelties are exerciſed with triumphs and ſhouts of joy. Whenever they hear of a foe advancing towards them, they retire to ſome mountain, and fortify it as ſtrongly as poſſible: if there be a probability of the enemy getting the better of them, they immediately cut the throats of their wives and children, and then meet their aſſailants with a frantic rage, ſelling their lives as dear as poſſible. Their weapons are bows and arrows, and ſpears.

The religious notions of the Kamtſchadales are pretty ſingular. They erect a ſort of pillar on ſome plain, and cover it with a parcel of rags. Whenever they paſs by this pillar, they throw at it ſome fiſh or fleſh, and avoid killing any bird or beaſt near it. They think that woods and burning mountains are inhabited by evil ſpirits, whom they live in great fear of, and make them offerings; ſome of them have idols in their huts. They have a very imperfect idea of a ſupreme Being, and think he can neither diſpenſe happineſs nor miſery: the name which they have for the Deity, is Kutchu. They reverence ſome particular animals, from which they apprehend danger, and ſometimes offer fires at the holes of foxes; they implore wolves not to hurt them, and beſeech amphibious animals not to overſet their boats. Many of them, however, adopt the Ruſſian manners, and contemn the cuſtoms of their country; they have been inſtructed by Ruſſian miſſionaries in the Chriſtian religion; and ſchools have been erected for their children. They ſtrictly obſerve the law of retaliation: if one man kills another, the relations of the perſon killed deſtroy the murderer. They puniſh theft, by burning the fingers of the thief. Before the Ruſſians conquered them, they had ſuch frequent inteſtine broils, that a year rarely paſſed without ſome village being intirely ruined.

Great havock is made in this country by the ſmall-pox. The ſcurvy, with the irregularities of parents, bring a variety of diſeaſes upon their offspring, to cure which, they apply roots, herbs, &c. The manner in which theſe people live in their huts, and their exceſs of debauchery, contribute to make the venereal diſeaſe very frequent among them. They have a diſorder called the ſuſhutoh, which is a ſort of ſcab, to which they apply the raw ſkin of a hare to cauſe a ſuppuration. They are likewiſe ſubject to the palſy, jaundice, boils, cancers, and other diſorders.

There are three volcanoes in Kamtſchatka, the firſt is that of Awatcha, to the northward of the bay of that name; it is a chain of mountains, the baſe of which is covered with trees, and extends to the bay. The middle forms a kind of amphitheatre, and the various ſummits which are ſpiral cannot be viewed without exciting the moſt awful ideas. They always emit ſmoke, but rarely fire. There was indeed a terrible eruption of ſmoke and cinders in the ſummer of the year 1737, but it only continued one day; many of the cinders weighed almoſt two pound avoirdupoiſe. This eruption was the forerunner of a terrible earthquake, which happened on the ſixth of the enſuing October, and in a quarter of an hour overturned all the tents and huts of the Kamtſchadales, being accompanied by a ſingular ebbing and flowing of the ſea, which at firſt roſe to the height of twenty feet, then ſunk, and retired to an unuſual diſtance; it ſoon after roſe higher than at firſt, and ſuddenly ſinking again, retired ſo aſtoniſhingly far from the common low water mark, that it was for a conſiderable time loſt to the eye. At length the earthquake was repeated, the ſea returned once more, and roſe to the height of two hundred feet, overwhelmed the whole coaſt, and then finally retired, after having deſtroyed the goods, cattle, and many of the lives of the inhabitants, and left ſeveral lakes of ſalt-water in the lower grounds and adjacent fields. The ſecond volcano iſſues from ſome mountains ſituated between the river of Kamtſchatka and that of Tobolſki. Nothing was ever known to exhale from this but ſmoke, till the year 1739, when it vomited a torrent of flames, which deſtroyed all the neighbouring foreſts. The third volcano iſſues from the higheſt mountains in Kamtſchatka, on the banks of the river of that name. It is environed by a cluſter of leſſer mountains, and the head is rent into long crevices on every ſide. Its greateſt eruption began September 25, 1737, and continued a week, which, with an earthquake that followed, did very conſiderable damage. In the ſouthern extremity of Kamtſchatka there are hot ſprings: they form rivulets, and run almoſt the length of the river Ozernaya which iſſues from the lake Kurilſky, and then join that ſtream; the waters, however, have no very conſiderable degree of heat in them.

There is a mountain near the river Pandia, from whoſe ſummit a prodigious cataract of boiling waters run to a conſiderable diſtance; and continue boiling up to the height of a foot, till they loſe themſelves in ſeveral lakes, which contain a great number of iſlands. From this mountain the inhabitants obtain ſome beautiful ſtones, on which they ſet a great value, on account of their admirable variegated colours, which are merely the effects of the different powers of heat, humidity, and friction; for theſe ſtones are waſhed from the mountains, and are poliſhed by the abovementioned hot and impetuous waters.

During the winter, a great quantity of fiſh harbours in the river of Kamtſchatka. In the ſpring when the ice breaks, they attempt to get to the ſea; but the natives watch the heads of the rivers, and take a great number of them in a kind of nets; ſome they dry in the ſummer, and lay by for their winter food; and from others they extract the fat, or oil, by means of red hot ſtones, which they carefully reſerve for a great variety of uſes.

New Albion. This vaſt tract of land, and all the N. W. parts of America, are put down by all our geographers, in their maps and charts, as Terra incognita, or parts intirely unknown. Sir Francis Drake, indeed, diſcovered a port in nearly 40 deg. N. latitude, which he entered, and where he remained five weeks. In 1603 Martin Aguilar entered a ſtrait in latitude 45 deg. N. and another was diſcovered by Juan de Fuca in 1592. All the other parts of the coaſt, except Cape Elias in latitude 60 deg. and ſome land diſcovered by the Spaniards, have remained objects of inveſtigation, to be explored and accurately marked by our gallant Commander, Captain Cook, whoſe diſcoveries in theſe parts, as high as Cape Prince of Wales, near the Arctic Circle; together with an account of his death at an iſland, called O-why-hee, near Kamtſchatka, will be the ſubjects of ſome of the following chapters, in the continuation of this hiſtory of his third and laſt voyage, to which we ſhall now proceed.

CHAP. X.

The Reſolution and Diſcovery, after their departure from the Society Iſles, proſecute their voyage—Chriſtmas Iſland diſcovered, where they are ſupplied plentifully with fiſh and turtle—A Solar Eclipſe obſerved—Two mariners loſe their way on ſhore—A ſingular method of refreſhing himſelf practiced by one of theſe ſtragglers—An inſcription left in a bottle—A deſcription of Chriſtmas Iſland—Three iſlands deſcribed—Others diſcovered—Their names—The whole group denominated Sandwich Iſlands—A complete account of their ſoil, productions, inhabitants, &c.—Cuſtoms of the natives agree with thoſe of Tongataboo and Otaheite—Extent of this nation throughout the Pacific Ocean—And remarks on the uſeful ſituation of Sandwich Iſlands—The Reſolution and Diſcovery proceed to the northward—Nautical obſervations made at Sandwich Iſlands—Progreſs of the voyage—Arrival of the two ſhips on the coaſt of America—Deſcription of the country—Difficulties of Cape Foulweather—Stormy, and unfavourable winds—Strictures on Martin d'Aguilar's River, and fallacy of Juan de Fuca's pretended ſtrait—The Reſolution and Diſcovery anchor in an inlet in Hope Bay, where they are viſited by numbers of the natives—An account of their behaviour—The two ſhips enter the ſound, and moor in a commodious harbour—Various incidents and tranſactions, during our intercourſe with the natives—Their behaviour at the villages, while we made a progreſs round the ſound—A remarkable viſit from ſtrangers—A ſecond viſit to one of the villages—Graſs purchaſed—Departure of the ſhips after an exchange of preſents—Directions for ſailing into the ſound—Its name—A copious and entertaining deſcription, with ſeveral curious obſervations, on the adjacent country, and its inhabitants—Remarks on, and ſpecimen of the language in Nootka Sound—Aſtronomical and nautical remarks—A ſtorm after leaving the ſound, in which the Reſolution ſprings a leak—The ſtrait of Admiral de Fonte paſſed unexamined.

ON Monday the 8th of December, having quitted Bolabola, and the Society Iſles, we ſteered to the northward, with the wind between N. E. and E. ſcarce ever having it in the S. E. point, till after we had croſſed the equator; nor did we meet with any thing by which the vicinity of land was indicated, till we began, about the latitude of 8 deg. S. to ſee boobies, men-of-war birds, terns, tropic birds, and a few other ſorts. Our longitude, at this time, we found to be 205 deg. eaſt. In the night, between the 22nd, and 23d, we paſſed the line; and, on Wedneſday the 24th, ſoon after day-break, we deſcried land, bearing N. E. by E. We perceived upon a nearer approach, it was one of thoſe low iſlands, ſo frequently met with in this ocean between the tropics; that is, a narrow bank of land, incloſing a ſea or lake within. In two or three places we ſaw ſome cocoanut trees; but the land in general has a very ſterile aſpect. It extended, at noon, from N. E. by E. to S. by E. half E. and diſtant about four miles. On the weſtern ſide we found the depth of water to be from forty to fourteen fathoms, over a ſandy bottom. The Captain, being of opinion that turtle might be procured at this iſland, reſolved to examine it; accordingly, we dropped our anchors in thirty fathoms water; and a boat was immediately diſpatched to ſearch for a commodious landing place. When ſhe returned, the officer who had been employed in this ſearch, reported that he found no place where a boat could land; but that fiſh greatly abounded in the ſhoal water, without the breakers. On the 25th, being Chriſtmas-day, two boats were ſent, one from each ſhip, to examine more accurately whether it was practicable to land; and, at the ſame time, two others were ordered out, to fiſh at a grappling near the ſhore. Theſe laſt returned about eight o'clock, A. M. with as many fiſh as weighed upwards of two hundred weight. Encouraged by this ſucceſs, they were diſpatched again after breakfaſt, and the Captain himſelf went in another boat to view the coaſt, and attempt landing, which, however, he found to be impracticable. The two boats that had been ſent on the ſame ſearch, returned about noon; and the maſter belonging to the Reſolution, reported to Captain Cook, that about four or five miles to the northward, he had diſcovered a break in the land, and a channel into a lagoon, conſequently there was a proper place for landing; and that he had found off this entrance the ſame ſoundings as we had where we now were ſtationed. On the ſtrength of this report, we weighed, and, after two or three trips, anchored again over a bottom of fine dark ſand, before a little iſland lying at the mouth of the lagoon, on each ſide of which is a channel leading into it, but fit only for boats; the water in the lagoon itſelf is likewiſe very ſhallow. In the morning of the 26th, Captain Clerke was ordered to ſend out a boat, with an officer, to the ſouth-eaſt part of the lagoon, in queſt of turtle; and Captain Cook went himſelf, with Mr. King, each in a boat, to the north-eaſt part. It was his intention to have gone to the eaſtern extremity; but the wind not permitting it, he and Mr. King landed more to leeward, on a ſandy flat, where they caught one turtle. They waded through the water to an iſland, where they found only a few birds. Captain Cook, leaving Mr. King here to obſerve the ſun's meridian altitude, proceeded to the land that bounds the ſea toward the north-weſt, which he found even more barren than the laſt mentioned iſle; but walking over to the ſea-coaſt, he obſerved three turtles cloſe to the ſhore, one of which he caught. He then returned on board, as did Mr. King ſoon afterwards. Though ſo few turtles were obſerved by theſe two gentlemen, we did not deſpair of a ſupply; for ſome of the officers of the Diſcovery, who had been aſhore to the ſouthward of the channel leading into the lagoon, had more ſucceſs, and caught many. The next morning, being Saturday, the 26th, the cutter and pinnace were diſpatched under the command of Mr. King, to the ſouth-eaſt part of the iſland, within the lagoon to catch turtle; and at the ſame time the ſmall cutter was ſent towards the north for the ſame purpoſe. Some of Captain Clerke's people having been on ſhore all night, had been ſo fortunate as to turn upwards of forty turtles on the ſand, which were this day brought on board; and, in the courſe of the afternoon, the party detached to the northward returned with half a dozen, and being ſent back again, continued there till we quitted the iſland, having, upon the whole, pretty good ſucceſs. Sunday, the 28th, Captain Cook, accompanied by Mr. Bailey, landed on the iſland ſituate between the two channels into the lagoon, to prepare the teleſcopes for obſerving the ſolar eclipſe that was expected to be viſible on the 30th. Towards noon, Mr. King returned with one boat, and eight turtles; ſeven were left behind to be brought by the other boat, whoſe people were employed in catching more; and in the evening the ſame boat conveyed them proviſions and water. The next day the two boats, laden with turtle, were ſent back to the ſhip by Williamſon, who, at the ſame time in a meſſage to Captain Cook, requeſted that the boats might be ordered round by ſea, as he had diſcovered a landing place on the ſouth-eaſt ſide of the iſland, where the greateſt numbers of turtle were caught; ſo that, by diſpatching boats thither, the trouble of carrying them over the land, as we had hitherto done, to the inſide of the lagoon, would be ſaved.

Tueſday the 30th, two gentlemen belonging to the Diſcovery returned, who, accompanied by Simeon Woodroff, the gunner's mate, and ten ſeamen, had directed their courſe, on the 26th, to the north eaſt quarter, in the cutter, having each man a pint of brandy, and a good quantity of water on board. About noon, they arrived at the neck of land, over which they were to travel on foot, to come at the place where the turtle were known to harbour; and where it was dangerous to attempt to approach them by ſea, on account of the ſurf. Here they ſecured ſafely their cutter, and erected near the ſhore a kind of hut, to which they carried their proviſions, and ſat down to refreſh. This done, they agreed to divide, and purſue their ſport in different parties. Accordingly they ſet out, and before the next morning they had ſent in ſeveral turtles. This they did by placing them acroſs a couple of oars in the manner of a bier, and in keeping a man employed in conveying them from the place where they were turned, to the cutter. When they grew tired of their diverſion, they repaired to the place of rendezvous; but it was ſome ſurprize to the reſt, when, at nine in the morning the two gentlemen and the gunner's mate were miſſing. It was concluded, that they had gone too far within land, and that they had either loſt their way, or ſome accident had befallen them, perhaps from natives lurking ſecretly in the woods, though none had openly appeared. Under theſe apprehenſions, two of their mariners, Bartholomew Loreman and Thomas Trecher, were ſent out in ſearch of them, each carrying a gallon of water, with brandy, and other refreſhments, in caſe they ſhould meet with the gentlemen in their way. In a wild uncultivated country, over-run with buſhes and cloſe cover, the reader, who has never been bewildered, can have no idea of men's being loſt in the ſhort ſpace of a few miles; but ſo, however, it happened to our gentlemen; who, invited by the mixed melody of the birds in the woods, left their people as ſoon as they had properly ſtationed them, and entered an adjoining thicket, with their guns. The ſport they met with led them on till night began to cloſe upon them; when they found themſelves at a great diſtance from the turtlers, and in the midſt of a trackleſs cover, with nothing but tall trees to direct their return; but what was more alarming, the ſun was no ſooner ſet than a thick fog ſucceeded, which involved the woods in darkneſs, though the open beach remained clear. In vain they attempted to regain the ſhore; for, inſtead of being able to diſcern the trees they had marked to ſecure their return, they could hardly ſee one another at three yards diſtance. In this ſituation, they ſoon began to loſe all knowledge of their way; and leſt, inſtead of proceeding in the right courſe, they ſhould purſue a contrary direction, they agreed to ſit down to reſt, and for that purpoſe choſe the firſt convenient ſpot that chance threw in their way. Though their minds were troubled, they had ſcarce ſet themſelves down, when ſleep got the better of anxiety, and they lay compoſed, till attacked by ſwarms of black ants (creatures more poiſonous than bugs) with which they were in a manner covered when they awoke, and ſo disfigured and tormented with their bites and bliſters, that it is hardly poſſible to deſcribe their diſtreſs. Thus circumſtanced, their firſt care was to clear themſelves from theſe vermin by ſtripping themſelves naked, and ſweeping them off with bruſhes made of the wings of the birds they had killed; this done, they clothed themſelves again, in order to renew their attempts to recover the ſhore; but all in vain. The farther they walked, as it appeared afterwards, the farther they went aſtray. At length, ſuſpecting their error, they reſolved to remain ſtationary, and each man, placing himſelf againſt an adjoining tree, endeavoured to conſole himſelf as well as he could till morning, when the appearance of the ſun enabled them to judge of the courſe they were to purſue; but in a trackleſs wilderneſs, how were they to make their way! The woods in many places were overgrown with thick graſs and brambles reaching to their middles, and in others ſo thick interſected with boughs and matted with leaves, that it was hardly poſſible for them to keep company, or to penetrate with their utmoſt efforts (when theſe obſtructions happened) one hundred yards in as many minutes. They were now glad to abandon their game, happy if they could regain the open country with the loſs of every thing about them. The ſhirts and trowſers they had on were ſoon in rags, their ſhoes could hardly be kept on their feet, and their linen caps and handkerchiefs were rendered unſerviceable, by the frequent repetition of the uſes to which they had been applied. In ſhort, no degree of diſtreſs either of body or mind, could exceed that to which theſe unfortunate gentlemen were now expoſed. To their minds it was ſome alleviation, when, about ten in the morning, they heard the ſound of guns fired from the ſhips on purpoſe to lead them right, ſuppoſing them to have loſt their way. But this was poor comfort, when they reflected, that the ſhips were at a great diſtance, and that if they ventured to take them for their guide, they ſhould never live to ſee an end to their journey. Still labouring, therefore, to advance by the ſun, they at length, all at once, obſerved an opening, that led, as they thought, to the long-wiſhed-for ſhore. The heart of man, dilated with the moſt exquiſite joy, can only be ſenſible of the inexpreſſible pleaſure which the gentlemen felt on perceiving this ray of hope. They forgot for the moment, the pains of their lacerated bodies, though all torn with briers and beſmeared with blood, and comforted themſelves with this dawn of deliverance; but they had ſtill much to ſuffer; for when they ruſhed with extaſy from the cover, and came to ſurvey the open country, they diſcovered to their great mortification, that they were yet at a great diſtance from the neck of land, over which their people had paſſed; that this opening had brought them to another creek or inlet of the ſea, and that they had yet to travel round a vaſt circle of the thicket before they could come to the bay that was even now ſcarce within their knowledge. On this diſcovery, deſpair had almoſt taken place of hope, when they heard, or thought they heard, a ſound like that of a man's voice far within the thicket. This, in a ſhort time, was anſwered by a ſound not unlike the former, but fainter. It was then rightly conjectured that theſe ſounds proceeded from men ſent in ſearch of them, and they all endeavoured to raiſe a halloo in their turn; but their throats were ſo parched, that with their utmoſt efforts they could ſcarce riſe above a whiſper. They now lamented the waſte of powder, which they had fruitleſsly expended during the night in making ſignals of diſtreſs, and rummaged their caſes to muſter up a ſingle charge. This, in ſome meaſure, had the deſired effect. The report was heard by one of the ſeamen who were in purſuit of them (as will be ſeen hereafter) both of whom had been ſtruggling with equal difficulties, and toiling under greater incumbrances, without the leaſt proſpect of ſucceeding in their ſearch. Theſe men were now bewildered themſelves, and hallooed to each other, as well for the ſake of keeping company, as for ſignals to the gentlemen, ſhould they be within hearing. By this time the day was far advanced; and partly with fatigue and for want of refreſhment, the gentlemen were almoſt ſpent; they had been ever ſince the morning's dawn engaged in the moſt painful exertion of bodily ſtrength, to extricate themſelves from the labyrinth in which they had been involved, that ever men experienced, and by conſequence to an equal waſte of ſpirits, without any thing to recruit them; and now, though leſs entangled, they were more expoſed to the heat of the ſun, which brought on an intolerable thirſt that was no longer ſupportable; they therefore, as the laſt reſource, repaired to the neareſt beach, where, to their comfort, they found a turtle, killed it, and drank the blood, in order to allay their thirſt. One of them then undreſſed himſelf, and lay down for a ſhort time in the ſhallow water; a ſingular method of refreſhing himſelf, when fatigued. After this they took ſhelter in the hollow of a rock till the violent heat abated, during which time a refreſhing ſleep gave them ſome relief, and enabled them to perform a journey of three or four leagues, which, otherwiſe, they muſt have periſhed before they could have accompliſhed. When they arrived at the hut, to their great concern, they found it deſerted, and deſtitute of every kind of proviſions; but caſting their eyes towards the ſhips, they perceived the boats haſtening to their relief. The crew, and the officer who atttended them, waited at the hut, till all their proviſions were expended, and, not knowing how to proceed, had repaired to the ſhip for a freſh ſupply, and freſh orders; and he was now returning fully furniſhed and inſtructed. On his arrival, he was ſtruck with aſtoniſhment at the ſight of three ſuch miſerable objects as the gentlemen and the gunner's mate appeared to be. Their cry was for grog, which was dealt to them ſparingly, and they were conveyed on board to be properly taken care of. The firſt enquiry they made was, whether any of the ſhip's company had been ſent after them? And being anſwered in the affirmative, and that they were not yet returned, they could not help expreſſing their doubts whether they would return: adding their wiſhes at the ſame time, that no means might be omitted to effect their recovery. Natural it is for men who have juſt experienced any ſignal deliverance, to feel poignantly for the ſafety of others under the ſame critical circumſtances. It was therefore no ſmall ſatiſfaction, when they were told, that every poſſible means would be tried for their relief; and to enable them, who were to be ſent on that errand, the better to direct their ſearch, the gentlemen deſcribed as well as they could, the place where they were heard. The evening, however, was now too far advanced, to undertake with any probability of ſucceſs, their deliverance. There were now twenty of the crew (ſeamen and marines) who had been diſpatched from on board, for recovering the gentlemen. Theſe had orders from Captain Clerke, to traverſe the thicket in a body, till they ſhould find them either living or dead, for, till the gentlemen appeared, nothing could be concluded with certainty concerning them. The majority were of opinion, that, if they had been alive, they would certainly have returned as ſoon as it was dark, as they could have no motive to purſue their ſport in the night; and it was by no means probable, that they ſhould be bewildered, becauſe they might ſurely have found the ſame way out of the cover, by which they went into it. This was very plauſible; but ſome on board, who had ſailed with Commodore Byron, and who remembered the almoſt impenetrable thickets in the iſland of Tinian, where men could not ſee one another in the open day, at the diſtance of three yards, knew well how the gentlemen might be entangled, and how hard it would fare with them if it ſhould ſo happen.

Early in the morning the party, and their plan of proceeding were formed, which was to march in lines at ſuch a diſtance from each other, as to be within hearing, and their rout was propoſed to be towards the ſpot where the ſound of the voices was heard by the gentlemen. After a diligent ſearch of ſix hours, Bartholomew Loreman was diſcovered in a moſt miſerable condition, almoſt blinded by the venomous bites of the vermin, added to the ſcorching heat of the ſun, and ſpeechleſs for want of ſomething to eat. He made ſigns for water, and ſome was given him. He was moving about, but totally ſtupid, having no ſenſe of danger, or of the miſerable condition in which he was found. It fortunately happened, that the boats from both ſhips were previouſly ſent round the point of land, and planted along the coaſt, as it trended, for the convenience of taking the gentlemen on board, in caſe they ſhould have been found ſtrayed to any conſiderable diſtance. Had this precaution not been obſerved, the man muſt have periſhed before he could have been conveyed by any other means to the place of rendezvous, and it was with the utmoſt difficulty that he was carried to the neareſt boat. As ſoon as he could be brought to his ſpeech, he ſaid, that he had parted from his companion Trecher, in the morning, not in anger, but by reaſon of a difference in opinion about the way back. He ſaid, they had travelled the day before as long as they could in ſearch of the gentlemen without ſucceſs, and that when overcome with fatigue, they ſat down to refreſh, and he believed, drank a little too freely of their grog, which occaſioned them both to fall aſleep. They were frightened when they awoke to find it night; and although they felt their faces and hands covered with vermin, the thoughts of having neglected their duty, and the dread of the conſequences, ſo diſtracted their minds, that they were not ſenſible of any other pain. As reſt was now no longer their object, they roſe and wandered, they neither knew nor cared where, till day began to break upon them, and then they endeavoured to recollect their way, with a view to rejoin their companions; but, after walking and winding about, as they could find a paſſage through the buſhes, they at laſt began to diſcover that they were going from the place of rendezvous inſtead of making towards it. Fatigued to the laſt degree with walking, and perplexed in their minds, they began to grow careleſs about living or dying, and in that humour ſat down to lighten their burden by making an end of their grog and proviſions. This they had no ſooner done, than ſleep again ſurprized them, and notwithſtanding the vermin, with which they found themſelves covered when they awoke, they found themſelves again in the dark, and again roſe up to wander about, which they continued to do as before, lamenting their melancholy ſituation, and conſulting what courſe to take. Several wild projects came into their heads. They had heard of Robinſon Cruſoe's living many years upon an uninhabited iſland, and why might they not live in this? But hitherto they had ſeen no four-footed animal, nor any thing on which they could ſubſiſt, but turtle and fowls, the latter of which they had no means to attain, and they were totally unprovided with every earthly thing but what they carried about them. That ſcheme therefore appeared too romantic. They next thought of climbing the higheſt tree, to try if they could diſcover any hill or eminence, from whence they might take a view of the country, in order to be certain whether it was inhabited or not. This was approved by both, and Trecher mounted the loftieſt tree within his reach, from whence, he ſaid, he could diſcern, towards the S. W. a mountain of conſiderable height, and as that was the point that led to the ſhips, thither he propoſed that they ſhould go; but Loreman rather choſe to depend upon Providence, and endeavour to regain the ſhore, as he judged by the report of a gun which he thought heard the day before, that it muſt lie in the direction from whence the ſound proceeded, and thither he was endeavouring to make his way, till his eye-ſight failed him, and he loſt all ſenſe of action. His companion, he ſaid, who was at ſome diſtance farther in the thicket, and who did not hear the report of the gun, did not believe what he ſaid; whereupon they agreed to part. What courſe Trecher took, he could not tell, but he believed to the S. W. Loreman was judged in too dangerous a way to admit of any delay: he was therefore ſent off in a boat, and being put under the care of the ſurgeon, ſoon recovered.

After this detail it was debated, whether to reſign Trecher to his fate, or to continue the ſearch. The humanity of the officer who had the command of the party prevailed. In conſequence of this the whole party, in the morning, about ten o'clock, after taking ſome refreſhment, ſet out to ſcour the thickets, and, by hallooing, beating of drums, and purſuing different courſes, determined he ſhould hear them if he were alive. It was no eaſy taſk to penetrate a trackleſs cover, overgrown with underwood, and abounding with inſects, of which the muſkatoes were the leaſt troubleſome. But numbers make that eaſy, which to individuals would be impracticable. They went on chearfully at firſt; but before a few hours were elapſed, even the gentlemen, who were inſpirited by their ſucceſs in killing game, began to be tired, and it was thought adviſeable to reſt and refreſh themſelves during the intenſe midday heat, and to renew the purſuit after they had dined. As yet they had not been able to diſcover any trace or track of the man they were purſuing, though it had been agreed between Trecher and his companion, to cut boughs from the trees, as they paſſed along, by way of mark or guide to each other, in caſe of ſeparation. This was no ſmall diſcouragement; and few had any reliſh to renew a labour attended with ſo much fatigue, and ſo little proſpect of ſucceſs. The officers alone were bent on the purſuit. The men, though they were no leſs willing, were not equally able to endure the fatigue, and ſome of them were even ready to drop, before their dinner and grog had revived their ſpirits. The only expedient, that now remained to be tried, was, that which Trecher had hit upon, namely, to climb the higheſt tree that appeared in view, in order to look for the mountain, to which it was thought probable that he might direct his courſe. This was no ſooner propoſed than executed, and the high land ſeemed at no great diſtance from the place where the party had dined. It was now agreed to make the beſt of their way to the eminence, but this proved not ſo eaſy a taſk as it at firſt appeared to be. When they thought themſelves juſt ready to mount, they met with a lagoon that interrupted their progreſs; and coaſting it along, they diſcovered the ſkeleton of a creature that, by its length, appeared to be an alligator. In viewing this narrowly, ſomething like the track of a large animal was obſerved to have paſſed it, and the high graſs on the margin of the lagoon to have been freſh trodden. This excited the curioſity of the whole party, who imagined that ſome monſter inhabited the lagoon, againſt which it was prudent for them to be on their guard. The waters of the lagoon were ſalt as brine, and every where ſkirted with a kind of reed and ſedge, that reached as high as a man's head, and could not be penetrated without danger from ſcorpions or other venomous reptiles, ſeveral of which had been ſeen in the buſhes. All attempts therefore of ſucceeding by this courſe appeared to be labour loſt, and as no other were thought more probable, it was reſolved to relinquiſh the purſuit, and to return to the boats; but the day being already too far ſpent to make their return practicable before the morning, it was agreed to coaſt it along the lake, to endeavour to find acceſs to the oppoſite hills; and this was the more eaſily effected, as between the ſedgy border and the thicket, there was an open ſpace of unequal breadth, only ſometimes interſected with patches of brambles that joined the lake, but of no great extent. Through theſe they made their way with little oppoſition till the lake appeared to deepen, when a moſt ſtubborn woodey copſe ſeemed to bid defiance to their further progreſs. This difficulty, however, was with much labour ſurmounted, and it was no ſooner paſſed, than the lake was found to terminate, and the ground to riſe. The country now began to put on a new face. The proſpect which had hitherto preſented nothing but a wild and almoſt impenetrable thicket, as they aſcended the riſing ground, became delightful; and when they had attained the ſummit of the eminence, was exceedingly picturesque. Here they determined to paſs the night within a pleaſant grove, which ſeemed to be deſigned by nature for a place of reſt. The whole party now aſſembled, and orders were given by the commanding officers to erect temporary tents to ſhelter them from the evening damps. Theſe tents were only boughs and leaves of trees ſet up tent faſhion. In this ſervice ſome were employed in cutting down and preparing materials, while others were buſied in diſpoſing and putting them together: ſome were ordered to collect fuel, and others to carry it to an adjoining hill, in order to be kindled at the cloſe of day, and kept burning during the night, by way of ſignal, to let the boats know that the party were ſafe, and that they had not yet relinquiſhed the ſearch. Add to theſe orders, that a ſentinel was to attend the fire in the night, and a watch to be regularly ſet and relieved to guard the tents. In the mean time, the gentlemen amuſed themſelves by taking a view of the lagoon from the hills, and obſerving its extent. It is bounded on three ſides by a ridge of hills, and open only to the N. W. from which quarter they had approached it. They alſo obſerved an open down to trend towards the ſhore, by which the low grounds were divided, and hence they concluded, that their return would be much ſhortened. Before night ſet in, the tents were compleated, and the orders that had been given were carried punctually into execution; the fire was lighted; the ſentinel at his ſtation; the watch ſet; and the party all retired to reſt. About midnight the ſentinel, who attended the fire, was ſurprized by a four-footed monſter, that had ſtole upon him with a ſlow and ſolemn pace, and was juſt ready to ſeize him, when he ſtarted ſuddenly from it, and flew down to the tents to apprize the watch. The officer on duty was preſently made acquainted with the impending danger, who immediately called to their aſſiſtance the ſerjeant of marines, the ſecond mate, and the armourer, the ſtouteſt men of the party. With this reinforcement they marched up the hill in form, Mr. Hollingſby and Mr. Dixon in front, the ſerjeant and the ſentinel in the next line, and two ſailors in the rear. As they approached the fire, the ſentinel, peeping from behind the armourer, beheld the monſter through the ſmoke, as tall again as he appeared before, and deſired the front line to kneel and fire; but the armourer fearing neither devil nor monſter, determined to face the enemy. He therefore advanced boldly, and looking ſharply took the monſter for a man, and called to him to ſpeak, in the uſual phraſe of a ſeaman. But what was their aſtoniſhment, when they beheld the very identical Thomas Trecher, of whom they had been in ſearch ſo long, crawling upon all fours, for his feet were ſo bliſtered that he could not ſtand, and his throat ſo parched that he could not ſpeak. It is hard to ſay which was predominant, their ſurprize, or joy. No time, however, was loſt in adminiſtering relief. Some ran to the tents to tell the news, and to bring ſome refreſhment, while the reſt ſtrove to eaſe him, by ſupporting him in their arms. In a few minutes he was ſurrounded by the whole party, ſome eager to hear his ſtory, and all to give him relief. The officers brought him cordials, which they adminiſtered ſparingly till he was brought to his ſpeech. He was a moſt affecting ſpectacle, bliſtered from head to foot by poiſonous inſects, whoſe venomous ſtings had cauſed ſuch an intolerable itching, that his very blood was inflamed by conſtant rubbing. By anointing him with oil, the acrimony in ſome degree abated, and by frequently giving him ſmall quantities of tea mixed with a little brandy, they brought him to his ſpeech; but it was ſome days before he recovered the perfect uſe of his ſenſes. As ſoon as they had recovered him ſo far, by proper refreſhments, as to entertain hopes of ſaving his life, they carried him to bed, and ordered one of his meſſmates to attend him. In the morning his fever was abated; but there aroſe a difficulty, how he was to be conveyed more than twelve miles, through a country, ſuch as has been deſcribed, in his weak condition. To Engliſh ſailors nothing, that is not impoſſible, is impracticable. One of them remembered that, when he was a boy, his ſchoolfellows uſed to divert themſelves with making ſedan chairs of ruſhes, and he thought it an eaſy matter to frame ſuch a one from the materials in the thicket, that would anſwer the purpoſe. This was no ſooner propoſed than executed, and a machine contrived, in which they took it by turns to carry him through almoſt inſurmountable obſtructions. The gentlemen had, indeed, diſcovered a leſs encumbered paſſage than that, through which they had made their way the day before; but it reached very little farther than they could ſee with the naked eye; all the low ground beyond was ſwampy and reedy, and abounding with inſects of various kinds. In the evening, inexpreſſibly fatigued, they reached the beach, where the Diſcovery's cutter was grounded, and where likewiſe the Reſolution's boat, that had been waiting all the day before on the oppoſite ſide of the peninſula, was arrived. After ſome ſlight refreſhment, each party repaired to their own ſhip; and Trecher, being committed to the ſurgeon's care recovered gradually, but it was ſome weeks before he was fit to do duty. Conſidering what ſtrange people the generality of ſailors are, while on ſhore, we might, inſtead of being much ſurprized, that the two ſeamen ſhould loſe their way, rather wonder that no more of them were miſſing.

This day, (Tueſday, the 30th) Captain Cook, and Meſſrs. King and Bailey, repaired in the morning to the ſmall iſland, to obſerve the eclipſe of the ſun. The ſky was overcaſt at times; but it was clear when the eclipſe ended. Having ſome yams and cocoa nuts on board, in a ſtate of vegetation, we planted them on this ſpot, and ſome ſeeds of melons, were ſown in another place. The Captain alſo left on this little iſle a bottle, having this inſcription:

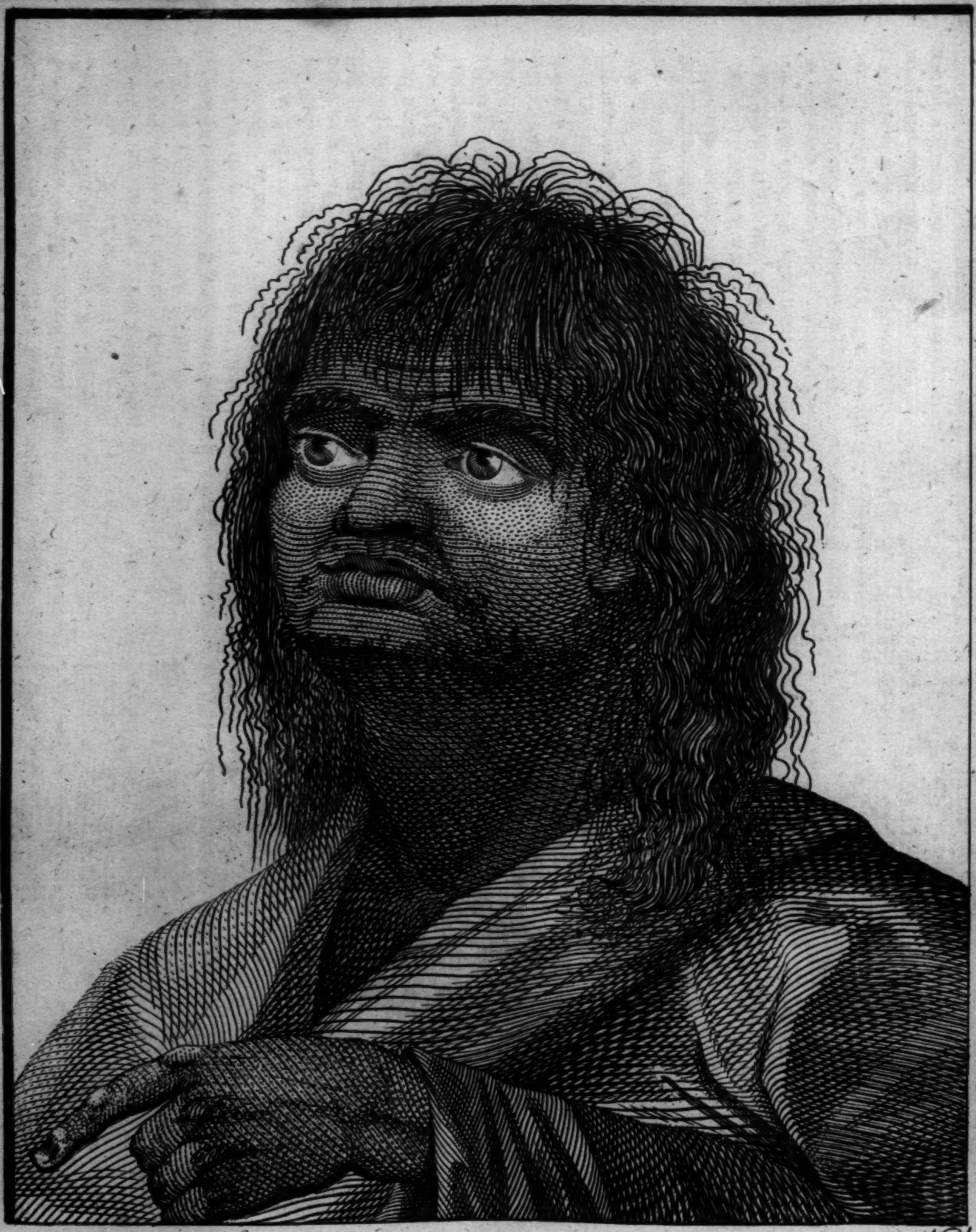
Georgius Tertius, Rex, 31 *Decembris,* 1777.

Naves { *Reſolution, Jac. Cook, Pr.*
{ *Diſcovery, Car. Clerke, Pr.*

A. D. 1778. On Thurſday the firſt of January, our boats were ſent out to bring on board our different parties employed on ſhore, who, in the courſe of a week, had taken more than 100 turtle, from 150 to 300 pound weight: but we had not been able to diſcover any freſh water. It being late before this buſineſs was completed, the Captain thought proper to defer ſailing till the next morning. The turtle we procured at this iſland were all of the green ſort, and, perhaps, not inferior in goodneſs to any in the world. We alſo caught with hook and line, a great quantity of fiſh, principally conſiſting of cavallies, ſnappers, and a few rock fiſh of two ſpecies, one with whitiſh ſtreaks ſcattered about, and the other with numerous blue ſpots. The ſoil of this iſland, (to which the name of Chriſtmas Iſland was given, becauſe we kept that feſtival here,) is, in ſome places, light and blackiſh, and compoſed of ſand, the dung of birds, and rotten vegetables. In other parts, it is formed of broken coral ſtones, decayed ſhells, and other marine productions. Theſe are depoſited in long, narrow ridges, lying parallel with the ſea-coaſt; and muſt have been thrown up by the waves, though they do not reach at preſent, within a mile of theſe places. This ſeems to prove inconteſtibly, that the iſland has been produced by different acceſſions from the ſea, and is in a ſtate of augmentation; the broken pieces of coral, and likewiſe many of the ſhells, being too large and heavy to have been brought from the beach by any birds to the places where they are now lying. Though we could not, after repeatedly digging, find a drop of freſh water, we met with ſeveral ſalt ponds, which, as they had no communication with the ſea, were probably filled by the water filtrating through the ſand during the time of high tides. One of the men who loſt their way found ſome ſalt on the ſouth-eaſtern part of the iſland. We could not diſcover the ſmalleſt traces of any human creature having ever been here before us; and, indeed, ſhould any one be accidentally driven on the iſland, or left there, he would hardly be able to prolong his exiſtence; for though there are birds and fiſh in abundance, there are no viſible means of allaying thirſt, nor any vegetable that would ſerve as a ſubſtitute for bread, or correct the bad effects of animal diet. On the few cocoa-nuts trees upon the iſland, we found very little fruit, and that little not good. A few low trees were obſerved in ſome parts, beſides ſeveral ſmall ſhrubs and plants, which grew in a very languid manner. We found a ſort of purſlain, a ſpecies of ſida, or Indian mallow, and another plant that ſeemed, from its leaves, to be a *meſembrianthemum;* with two ſorts of graſs. Under the low trees ſat vaſt numbers of a new ſpecies of tern, or egg-bird, black above, and white below, having a white arch on the forehead. Theſe birds are ſomewhat larger than the common noddy; their eggs are blueiſh, and ſpeckled with black. There were likewiſe many common boobies; a ſort greatly reſembling a gannat; and a chocolate coloured ſpecies, with a white belly. Men-of-war-birds, curlews, plovers, and tropic birds, are to be found here. We ſaw numbers of land crabs, ſmall lizards, and ſeveral rats ſmaller than ours. This iſland is ſuppoſed by Captain Cook to be between 15 and 20 leagues in circuit. Its form is ſemicircular; or like the moon in her laſt quarter, the two horns being the north and ſouth points. The weſt ſide, or the ſmall iſland ſituate at the entrance into the lagoon, lies in 202 deg. 30 min. eaſt longitude, and in the latitude of 1 deg. 59 min. north. Like moſt of the other iſles in this ocean, Chriſtmas Iſland is ſurrounded by a reef of coral rock, extending but a little way from the ſhore; and further out than this reef, on the weſtern ſide, is a bank of ſand, which extends a mile into the ſea. There is good anchorange on this bank, in any depth between eighteen and thirty fathom. During our continuance here, the wind generally blew a freſh gale at E. by S. or E. and we had conſtantly a great ſwell from the northward, which broke on the reef in a very violent manner.

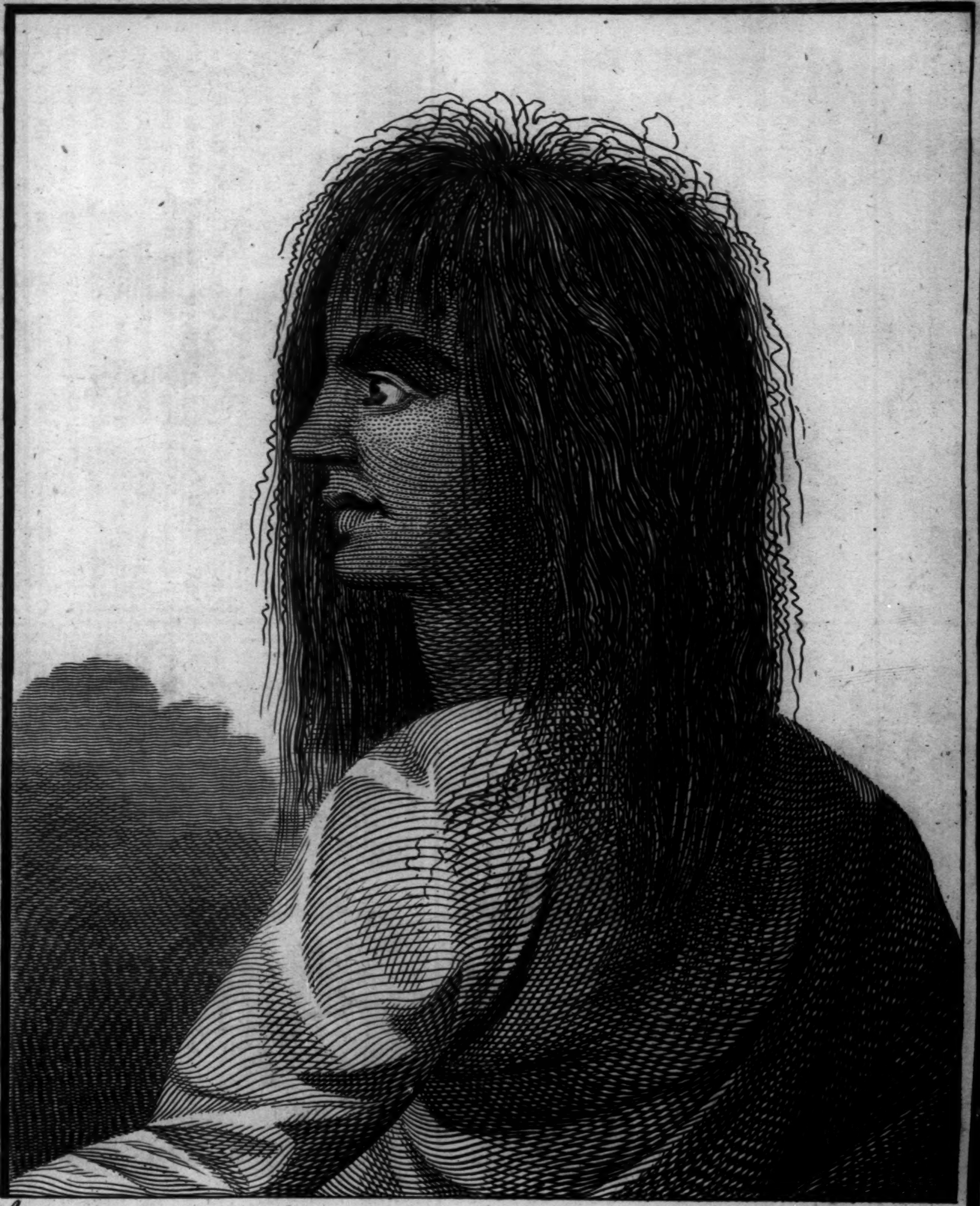
Friday, the 2nd, at day-break, we unmoored, ſet ſail, and reſumed our northerly courſe, with the Diſcovery in company. As we were now clear of land, had a proſperous gale, and plenty of proviſions, the men were allowed turtle to boil with their pork, which in a few days was diſcontinued by the advice of the ſurgeon, and turtle ſubſtituted in the room of every other kind of meat. This was found both healthful and nouriſhing, and was therefore continued till within a few days of our arrival at another iſland, where we met with freſh proviſions and water equal to any we brought with us from the Society Iſles. On the 3d, the wind ſhifted, and a ſtorm came on, preceded by a lowering darkneſs, that preſaged ſome violent convulſion, and ſoon after it broke forth in thunder, lightning, wind and rain,

London: Published as the Act directs, by Alexr. Hogg, at the Kings Arms, No. 16, Paternoster Row.



Noble Sc.

A MAN of CHRISTMAS SOUND, Tierra del Fuego.



A WOMAN of CHRISTMAS SOUND, Tierra del Fuego.

rain, which in two hours increaſed to ſuch a raging degree, as no man on board had ever known the like. Fortunately, it was but of ſhort continuance; but, in that little time, the ſea broke over our quarter, and cleared the decks of every thing that was looſe. After this we had a gentle breeze at E. and E. S. E. which continued till we arrived in the latitude of 7 deg. 45 min. N. and in 205 deg. eaſt longitude, where we had one day of perfect calm. A N. E. by E. wind then ſucceeded, which blew faintly at firſt, but freſhened as we proceeded northward. We daily obſerved tropic birds, boobies, &c. and between the latitude of 10 and 11 deg. N. we ſaw ſeveral turtles. Though all theſe are conſidered as ſigns of the proximity of land, we diſcovered none till early in the morning of Sunday, the 18th, when an iſland appeared bearing N. E. by E. Not long after more land was ſeen, which bore N. and was totally detached from the former. At noon, the firſt was ſuppoſed to be 8 or 9 leagues diſtant. Our longitude at this time, was 200 deg. 41 min. E. and our latitude 21 deg. 12 min. N. The next day, at ſun-riſe, the iſland firſt ſeen bore E. diſtant 7 leagues. Not being able to reach this, we ſhaped our courſe for the other; and ſoon after, obſerved a third iſland, bearing W. N. W.

We had now a fine breeze at E. by N. and, at noon, the ſecond iſland, named Atooi, for the eaſt end of which we were ſteering, was about two leagues diſtant. As we made a nearer approach, many of the inhabitants put off from the ſhore in their canoes, and very readily came along-ſide the ſhips. We were agreeably ſurprized to find, that they ſpoke a dialect of the Otaheitean language. They could not be prevailed on by any entreaties, to come on board. We conveyed to thoſe in the neareſt canoe ſome braſs medals, tied to a rope; and they, in return, faſtened ſome mackarel to the rope, by way of an equivalent. This was repeated; and ſome nails or pieces of iron, were given them; for which they rreturned in exchange ſome more fiſh, and a ſweet potatoe; a ſure indication of their having ſome notion of bartering, or, at leaſt, of returning one preſent for another. One of them even offered for ſale the piece of ſtuff which he wore about his waiſt. Theſe people did not exceed the ordinary ſize, but are ſtoutly made. Their complexion is brown; and though there appears but little difference in the caſts of their colour, there is a conſiderable variation in their features. Moſt of them have their hair cropped ſhort; a few had it tied in a bunch at the top of the head; and others ſuffered it to flow looſe. It ſeemed to be naturally black; but the generality of them had ſtained it with ſome ſtuff which communicated to it a browniſh colour. Moſt of them had pretty long beards. They had no ornaments about their perſons; nor did we obſerve that they had their ears perforated. Some of them were tatooed on the hands, or near the groin; and the pieces of cloth, worn by them round their middle, were curiouſly coloured with white, black and red. They ſeemed to be mild and good natured; and were furniſhed with no arms of any kind, except ſome ſmall ſtones, which they had manifeſtly brought for their own defence; and theſe they threw into the ſea when they found there was no occaſion for them. Perceiving no ſigns of an anchoring place, at this eaſtern extremity of the iſland, we bore away to leeward, and ranged along the S. E. ſide of the coaſt, at the diſtance of about a mile and a half from the ſhore. The canoes left us when we made ſail; but others came off, as we proceeded along the coaſt, and brought with them pigs and ſome excellent potatoes, which they exchanged for whatever we offered to them; and ſeveral ſmall pigs were purchaſed by us for a ſix-penny nail each. We paſſed divers villages; ſome of which were ſituated near the ſea, and others further up the country. The inhabitants of all of them came in crowds to the ſhore, and aſſembled on the elevated places to take a view of the ſhips. On this ſide of the iſland the land riſes in a gentle acclivity from the ſea to the bottom of the mountains, which occupy the central part of the country, except at one place near the eaſtern end, there they riſe immediately from the ſea: they ſeemed to be compoſed of ſtone, or rocks lying in an horizontal ſtrata. We obſerved a few trees about the villages; near which we could alſo diſcern ſeveral plantations of ſugar-canes and plantains. We continued to ſound, but did not ſtrike ground with a line of 50 fathoms, till we came abreaſt of a low point, near the N. W. extremity of the iſland, where we found from 12 to 14 fathoms, over a rocky bottom. Having paſſed this point, we met with 20 fathoms, then 16, and at laſt 5, over a bottom of ſand. We ſpent the night in ſtanding off and on, and the next morning, being Tueſday, the 20th, ſtood in for the land; We were met by ſeveral canoes filled with natives, ſome of whom ventured to come on board. None of the inhabitants we were ever before converſant with, in any other country or iſland, were ſo aſtoniſhed as theſe people, upon entering our ſhip. Their eyes were inceſſantly rolling from one object to another; and the wildneſs of their looks and geſtures fully indicated their perfect ignorance with reſpect to every thing they beheld; and ſtrongly marked to us, that they had never, till the preſent time, been viſited by Europeans, nor been acquainted with any of our commodities, except iron. This metal, however, they had in all probability only heard of, or had perhaps known it in ſome inconſiderable quantity, brought to them at a remote period. They aſked for it by the appellation of hamaite, referring probably to ſome inſtrument, in making which iron could be ſerviceably employed; for they applied that name to the blade of a knife, though they had no idea of that particular inſtrument, which they could not even handle properly. They alſo frequently called iron by the name of toe, which ſignifies a hatchet, or adze. On our ſhewing them ſome beads, they firſt aſked what they were; and then, whether they were to be eaten. But on their being informed, that they were to be hung in their ears, they rejected them as uſeleſs. They were equally indifferent with regard to a looking glaſs that we offered them, and returned it for a ſimilar reaſon. China cups, plates of earthen ware, and other things of that kind, were ſo new to them, that they aſked whether they were made of wood. They were in many reſpects naturally polite; or, at leaſt, cautious of giving offence. Some of them juſt before they ventured aboard, repeated a long prayer; and others, afterwards, ſang, and made various motions with their hands. On their firſt entering the ſhip, they attempted to ſteal every thing that they could lay hands on, or rather take it openly, as if they ſuppoſed, that we ſhould either not reſent ſuch behaviour, or not hinder it. But we ſoon convinced them of their error; and when they obſerved we kept a watchful eye over them, they became leſs active in appropriating to themſelves what did not belong to them.

About nine o'clock, the Captain diſpatched Lieut. Williamſon, with three armed boats, to look out for a proper landing place, and for freſh water; with orders, that if he ſhould find it neceſſary to land in ſearch of the latter, he ſhould not allow more than one man to accompany him out of the boats. The very moment they were putting off from the ſhip, one of the iſlanders having ſtolen a cleaver, leaped overboard, got into his canoe, and haſtened towards the ſhore, while the boats purſued him in vain. The reaſon of the Commodore's order, that the crews of the boats ſhould not go aſhore, was, that he might prevent, if poſſible, the importation of a dangerous diſeaſe into this iſland, which he knew ſome of our people now laboured under, and which we, unfortunately, had received from, and communicated to, other iſlands in this ocean. From the ſame humane motive, he commanded, that all female viſitants ſhould be excluded from both the ſhips. Many perſons of this ſex had come off in the canoes. Their features, complexion, and ſtature, were not very different from thoſe of the men; and though their countenances were extremely open and agreeable, few traces of delicacy were viſible either in their faces or other proportions. The only difference in their dreſs was their having a piece of cloth about their bodies, reaching from near the middle almoſt down to the knees, inſtead of the maro worn by the male ſex. They were as much inclined to favour us with their company on board, as ſome of the men were; but the Commodore was extremely deſirous of preventing all connection, which might, in all probability, convey an irreparable injury to themſelves, and afterwards, through their means, to the whole nation. Another prudent precaution was taken, by ſtrictly enjoining, that no perſon, capable of communicating the infection, ſhould be ſent on duty out of the ſhips. Captain Cook had paid equal atttention to the ſame object, when he firſt viſited the Friendly Iſles; but he afterwards found, to his great regret, that his endeavours had not ſucceeded. And there is reaſon to apprehend, that this will conſtantly be the caſe, in ſuch voyages as ours, whenever it is neceſſary that many people ſhould be employed on ſhore. The opportunities and incitements to an amorous intercourſe are then too numerous to be effectually guarded againſt; and however confident a commander may be of the health of his men, he is often undeceived too late. Among a number of men, there are in general to be found ſome, who endeavour to conceal any venereal ſymptoms, and there are others ſo profligate and abandoned, as not to care to whom they communicate this diſeaſe. We had an inſtance of this laſt obſervation at Tongataboo, in the gunner of the Diſcovery, who had been ſtationed on ſhore. After knowing that he had contracted this diſorder, he continued to have connections with different women, who were ſuppoſed to have been, till that time, free from any infection. His companions remonſtrated to him on this ſcandalous behaviour without effect, till Captain Clerke, being informed of it, ordered him to repair on board.

During the time the boats were employed in reconnoitering the coaſt, we ſtood off and on with the ſhips. Towards noon our lieutenant returned, and reported, that he had obſerved, behind a beach near one of the villages, a large pond, ſaid by the natives to contain freſh water, and that there was tolerable anchoring ground before it. He alſo had made an attempt to land in another place, but was prevented by the iſlanders, who coming down in great numbers to the boats, endeavoured to take away the oars, muſquets, and every other article they could lay hold of; and crowded ſo thick upon him and his people, that he was under the neceſſity of firing, by which one man was killed. This unfortunate circumſtance, however, was not known to Captain Cook till after we had quitted the iſland, ſo that all his meaſures were directed as if no affair of that kind had happened. Mr. Williamſon informed him, that as ſoon as the man fell, he was taken up and carried off by his countrymen, who then retired from the boats: but ſtill they made ſignals for our people to land, which they declined. It did not appear, that the natives had the leaſt intention of killing, or even hurting any of them, but were excited by curioſity alone, to get from them what they had, being prepared to give, in return, any thing that appertained to themſelves. Captain Cook then diſpatched one of the boats to lie in the beſt anchoring ground; and, when ſhe had gained this ſtation, we bore down with the ſhips, and caſt anchor in 25 fathoms water, over a ſandy bottom. The eaſtern point of the road, which was the low point already mentioned, bore ſouth 31 deg. eaſt; the weſt point north 65 deg. weſt; and the village near which the freſh water was ſaid to be, was one mile diſtant. The ſhips being thus ſtationed, between three and four in the afternoon, the captain went aſhore with three armed boats, and twelve of the marines, with a view of examining the water, and trying the diſpoſition of the natives, who had aſſembled in conſiderable numbers on a ſandy beach before the village; behind it was a valley, in which was the piece of water. The moment he leaped on ſhore, all the iſlanders fell proſtrate upon their faces, and continued in that poſture, till, by ſigns, he prevailed on them to riſe. They then preſented to him many ſmall pigs, with plantain trees, making uſe of nearly the ſame ceremonies which we had ſeen practiſed, on ſimilar occaſions, at the Society, and other iſles, and a long oration or prayer being pronounced by an individual, in which others of the aſſembly joined occaſionally. The captain ſignified his acceptance of their proffered friendſhip, by beſtowing on them, in return, ſuch preſents as he had brought aſhore. This introductory buſineſs being ended, he ſtationed a guard upon the beach, and was then conducted by ſome of the natives to the water, which was extremely good, and ſo conſiderable a collection, that it might be denominated a lake. After this he returned on board, and gave orders, that preparations ſhould be made for filling our water caſks in the morning, at which time we went aſhore with ſome of our people, having a party of marines for our guard. We had no ſooner landed, than a trade was entered into for potatoes and hogs, which the iſlanders bartered for nails and pieces of iron. Far from giving any obſtruction to our men, who were occupied in watering, they even aſſiſted them in rolling the caſks to and from the pool, and performed with alacrity whatever was required of them. Leaving the command of this ſtation to Mr. Williamſon, who landed with us, we made an excurſion up the country, into the valley, accompanied by Meſſrs. Anderſon and Webber, and by a numerous train of natives, one of whom, who had been very active in keeping the others in order, the captain made choice of as our guide. This man, from time to time, proclaiming the approach of our gentlemen, every perſon who met them fell proſtrate on the ground, and remained in that poſition till we had paſſed. This, as we were afterwards informed, is the method of ſhewing reſpect to their own chiefs. At every village, as the ſhips ranged along the coaſt, we had deſcried one or more elevated white objects, reſembling obeliſks; one of which, ſuppoſed to be at leaſt fifty feet high, was very conſpicuous from our anchoring place, and ſeemed to be at a ſmall diſtance up this valley. To have a nearer view of it was the principal motive of our walk; but it happened to be in ſuch a ſituation that we could not get at it, the pool of water ſeparating it from us. However, as there was another of the ſame kind about half a mile diſtant upon our ſide of the valley, we ſet out to viſit that. We found it to be ſituated in a burying ground, or morai, which bore a ſtriking reſemblance, in ſeveral reſpects, to thoſe we had ſeen at Otaheite, and other iſlands. It was an oblong ſpace, of conſiderable extent, environed by a ſtone wall, four or five feet high. The incloſed ſpace was looſely paved, and at one end of it was placed the obeliſk or pyramid, called by the natives henananoo, which was an exact model of the larger one we had ſeen from the ſhips. It was about twenty feet in height, and four feet ſquare at the baſe. Its four ſides were formed of ſmall poles, interwoven with twigs and branches, thus compoſing an indifferent wicker-work, hollow within, from the top to the bottom. It appeared to be in a ruinous ſtate, and had been originally covered with a thin greyiſh cloth. On each ſide of it were long pieces of wicker-work, termed hereanee, in a condition equally ruinous, with two poles inclining towards each other at one corner, on which ſome plantains were placed on a board, fixed at the height of about ſix feet. This the iſlanders call herairemy, and they ſaid the fruit was offered to their deity. Before the henananoo were ſeveral pieces of wood, carved in ſome reſemblance of human figures. There was alſo a ſtone near two feet in height, covered with cloth. Adjoining to this, on the outſide of the morai, was a ſmall ſhed, which they call hareepahoo; and before it was a grave, where the remains of a woman had been depoſited. On the further ſide of the area of the morai was a houſe, or ſhed, called hemanaa, about forty feet in length, ten in breadth, but narrower at each end: though conſiderably longer, it was lower than their common habitations. Oppoſite the entrance into this houſe ſtood two images, near three feet high, cut out of one piece of wood, with pedeſtals: they were ſaid to be Eatooa no Veheina, or repreſentations of goddeſſes, and were not very indifferent either in deſign or execution. On the head of one of them was a cylindrical cap, not unlike the head-dreſs at Otaheite, called tomou; and on that of the other, a carved helmet, ſomewhat reſembling thoſe of the antient warriors, and both of them had pieces of cloth faſtened about the loins, and hanging down a conſiderable way. At the ſide of each was alſo a piece of carved wood, with cloth hung on it. Before the pedeſtals lay a quantity of fern, that had been placed there at different times. In the middle of the houſe, and before the images, was an oblong ſpace, incloſed by an edging of ſtone, and covered with ſhreds of cloth: this was the grave of ſeven chiefs, and was called heneene. We had already met with ſo many inſtances of reſemblance, between the morai we were now viſiting, and thoſe of the iſlands we had lately viſited, that we entertained little doubt in our own minds of the ſimilarity in their rites, and particularly in the horrid oblation of human ſacrifices. Our ſuſpicions were ſoon confirmed; for on one ſide of the entrance into the hemanaa we obſerved a ſmall ſquare place, and another ſtill ſmaller; and on aſking what theſe were, we were informed by our conductor, that in one of them was interred a man, and in the other a hog, both which had been offered up to the deity. At no great diſtance from theſe were three other ſquare incloſed places, with two pieces of carved wood at each of them, and a heap of fern upon them. Theſe were the graves of three chiefs, and before them was an incloſed ſpace, of an oblong figure, called Tangatataboo, by our guide, who declared to us, that three human ſacrifices, one at the funeral of each chief, had been buried there. Indeed, every appearance induced us to believe, that this inhuman practice was very general. In many ſpots within this burying-ground, were planted trees of the Morinda Citrifolia, and Cordia Sebaſtina, beſides ſeveral plants of the Etee, with the leaves of which the hemanaa was thatched.

Our journey to and from this morai, lay through the plantations. We obſerved moſt of the ground was perfectly flat, with ditches interſecting different parts, and roads that ſeemed to have been raiſed to ſome height by art. The intervening ſpaces, in general, were planted with taro, which grew with great vigour. There were ſeveral ſpots where the cloth-mulberry was planted, in regular rows; this alſo grew vigorouſly. The cocoa-trees were in a leſs thriving condition, and were all low; but the plantain-trees made a pretty good appearance. Upon the whole, the trees that are moſt numerous around this village, are the cordia ſebaſtina. The greateſt part of the village is near the beach, and conſiſts of upwards of ſixty houſes there, and we ſaw near forty more ſcattered about towards the morai. After we had carefully examined whatever was worthy of notice about the morai, we returned by a different rout. We found a multitude collected at the beach, and a briſk trade for fowls, pigs, and vegetables, going on, with the greateſt order and decorum: at noon Captain Cook went on board to dinner, and then ſent Mr. King to take the command of the party on ſhore. During the afternoon he landed again, accompanied by Captain Clerke, intending to make another excurſion up the country; but before he could execute this deſign the day was too far ſpent; he therefore relinquiſhed his intention for the preſent, and no opportunity afterwards occurred.

Towards ſun-ſet, the Captain and our people returned on board, after having procured, in the courſe of this day, nine tons of water, and (principally by exchanging nails, and pieces of iron) ſeventy pigs, ſome fowls, plantains, patatoes, and taro roots. In this commercial intercourſe, the iſlanders deſerved our beſt commendations, making no attempts to cheat us, either along ſide our ſhips, or on ſhore. Some of them, indeed, as we have already related, betrayed at firſt a pilfering diſpoſition, or, perhaps they imagined that they had a right to all they could lay their hands on; but they quickly deſiſted from a conduct, which, we convinced them, could not be perſevered in with impunity. Among the various articles which they brought to barter this day, we were particularly pleaſed with a ſort of cloak and cap, which, even in more poliſhed countries might be eſteemed elegant. Theſe cloaks are nearly of the ſhape and ſize of the ſhort ones worn by the men in Spain, and by the women in England, tied looſely before, and reaching to the middle of the back. The ground of them is a net work, with the moſt beautiful red and yellow feathers ſo cloſely fixed up it, that the ſurface, both in point of ſmoothneſs and gloſſineſs, reſembles the richeſt velvet. The methods of varying the mixture are very different, ſome of them having triangular ſpaces of yellow and red alternately; others a ſort of creſcent; while ſome were entirely red, except that they had a broad yellow border. The brilliant colour of the feathers, in thoſe cloaks that were new, had a very fine effect. The natives, at firſt, refuſed to part with one of theſe cloaks for any thing we offered in exchange, demanding no leſs price than one of our muſquets. They afterwards, however, parted with ſome of them for very large nails. Thoſe of the beſt ſort were ſcarce; and it is probable, that they are uſed only on particular occaſions. The caps are made in the form of a helmet, with the middle part or creſt, frequently of a hand's breadth. They ſit very cloſe upon the head, and have notches to admit the ears. They conſiſt of twigs and oſiers, covered with net-work, into which feathers are wrought, as upon the cloaks, but ſomewhat cloſer, and leſs diverſified; the major part being red, with ſome yellow, green, or black ſtripes, on the ſides. Theſe caps, in all probability, complete the dreſs, with the cloaks; for the iſlanders appeared ſometimes in both together. We could not conjecture from whence they obtained ſuch a quantity of theſe beautiful feathers; but we ſoon procured intelligence reſpecting one ſort; for they afterwards brought for ſale great numbers of ſkins of a ſmall red ſpecies of birds, frequently tied up in bunches of twenty or upwards, or having a wooden ſkewer run through them. At firſt, thoſe that were purchaſed conſiſted only of the ſkin from behind the wings forward; but we afterwards obtained many with the hind part, including the feet and tail. The former inſtantly ſuggeſted to us the origin of the fable of the birds of paradiſe being deſtitute of legs, and ſufficiently explained that particular. The reaſon aſſigned by the inhabitants of Atooi for the cuſtom of cutting off the feet of theſe birds, is, that by this practice they can preſerve them the more eaſily, without loſing any part which they conſider as more valuable. According to Mr. Anderſon, the red bird of this iſland is a ſpecies of merops, about as large as a ſparrow; its colour a beautiful ſcarlet, with the tails and wings black; a bill arched, and twice as long as the head, which with the feet is of a reddiſh hue. The contents of the heads were taken out, as in the birds of paradiſe; but we did not find that they practiced any other mode of preſerving them, than that of ſimple drying.

On Thurſday the 22d we had almoſt continual rain for the whole morning. The wind was at S. E. S. S. E. and S. and the ſurf broke ſo high upon the ſhore, that our boats were prevented from landing. We were not in a very ſecure ſituation, there being breakers within the length of little more that two cables from the Reſolution's ſtern. The natives, notwithſtanding the ſurf, ventured out in their canoes, bringing off to us hogs and vegetables, which they exchanged as before, for our commodities. One of their number, who offered ſome fiſh-hooks for ſale, was obſerved to have a very ſmall parcel, faſtened to the ſtring of one of them, which he carefully ſeparated, and reſerved for himſelf, when he had diſpoſed of the hook. Upon being aſked what it was, he pointed to his belly; ſaying, at the ſame time, it was bad. He was requeſted to open the parcel, which he did with great reluctance, and we found that it contained a ſmall thin piece of fleſh, which had, to all appearance, been dried, but was at preſent wet with ſalt water. Imagining that it might be human fleſh, we put the queſtion to the producer of it, who anſwered, that the fleſh was part of a man. Another of the iſlanders who ſtood near him was then aſked, whether it was a cuſtom among them to eat their enemies who had been ſlain in battle; and he immediately replied in the affirmative. In the afternoon we had ſome intervals of fair weather. The wind then changed to the E. and N. E. but, towards the evening, it veered back again to S. S. E. The rain alſo returning, continued the whole night, but was not attended with much wind. On the 23d, at ſeven o'clock A. M. a north-eaſterly breeze ſpringing up, our anchors were ordered to be taken up, with a view of removing the Reſolution further out. As ſoon as the laſt anchor was up, the wind veering to the eaſt, rendered it neceſſary to make all the ſail we could, for the purpoſe of clearing the ſhore; ſo that before we had good ſea-room, we were driven conſiderably to leeward. We endeavoured to regain the road, but having a ſtrong current againſt us, and very little wind, we could not accompliſh that deſign. Our Commodore therefore diſpatched Meſſrs. King and Williamſon aſhore, with three boats, to procure water and refreſhments, ſending at the ſame time, an order to Captain Clerke, to put to ſea after him, if he ſhould find that the Reſolution was unable to recover the road. Having hopes of finding perhaps a harbour, at the weſt end of the iſland, we were the leſs anxious of regaining our former ſtation; but boats having been ſent thither, we kept as much as poſſible to windward, notwithſtanding which, at noon, our ſhip was three leagues to leeward. As we approached the weſt end, we found that the coaſt rounded gradually, to the N. E. without forming a cove, or creek, wherein a veſſel might be ſheltered from the violence of the ſwell, which rolling in from the northward, broke againſt the ſhore in an amazing ſurf: all hopes, therefore, of meeting with a harbour here ſoon vaniſhed. Many of the natives, in their canoes, followed us as we ſtood out to ſea, bartering various articles. As we were extremely unwilling, notwithſtanding the ſuſpicious circumſtances of the preceding day, to believe that theſe people were cannibals, we now made ſome further enquiries on this ſubject. A ſmall inſtrument of wood, beſet with ſhark's teeth, had been purchaſed, which, as it reſembled the ſaw or knife made uſe of by the ſavages of New Zealand to diſſect the bodies of their enemies, was ſuſpected by us to be employed here for the ſame purpoſe. One of the iſlanders being queſtioned on this point, informed us, that the inſtrument above mentioned ſerved the purpoſe of cutting out the fleſhy part of the belly, when any perſon was ſlain. This explained and confirmed the circumſtance before related, of the man's pointing to his belly. The native, however, from whom we now received this intelligence, being aſked whether his countrymen eat the part thus cut out, ſtrongly denied it; but when the queſtion was repeated, he ſhewed ſome degree of apprehenſion, and ſwam off to his canoe. An elderly man, who ſat foremoſt in the canoe, was then aſked, whether they eat the fleſh, and he anſwered in the affirmative. The queſtion being put to him a ſecond time, he again affirmed the fact; adding that it was ſavoury food. In the evening, about ſeven o'clock, the boats returned with a few hogs, ſome roots, plantains, and two tons of water. Mr. King reported to our Commodore, that the iſlanders were very numerous at the watering place, and had brought great numbers of hogs to barter; but our people had not commodities with them ſufficient to purchaſe them all. He alſo mentioned, that the ſurf had run ſo very high, that it was with extreme difficulty our men landed, and afterwards got back into the boats.

On Saturday, the 24th, at day-break, we found that our ſhip had been carried by the currents to the N. W. and N. ſo that the weſtern extremity of Atooi, bore E. at the diſtance of one league. A northerly breeze ſprung up ſoon after, and, expecting that this would bring the Diſcovery to ſea, we ſteered for Oneeheow, a neighbouring iſland, which then bore S. W. with a view of anchoring there. We continued to ſteer for it till paſt eleven, when we were diſtant from it about ſix miles: but not ſeeing the Diſcovery, we were apprehenſive leſt ſome ill conſequence might ariſe from our ſeparating ſo far; we therefore relinquiſhed the deſign of viſiting Oneeheow for the preſent, and ſtood back to Atooi, intending again to caſt anchor in the road, in order to complete our ſupply of water. At two o'clock, the northerly wind was ſucceeded by calms and variable light airs, which continued till eleven at night. We ſtretched to the S. E. till early in the morning of the 25th, when we tacked and ſtood in for Atooi road; and, not long after, we were joined by the Diſcovery. We remained ſeveral days beating up, but in vain, to regain our former birth; and by the morning of Thurſday, the 29th, the currents had carried us to the weſtward, within nine miles of Oneeheow. Weary with plying ſo unſucceſsfully, we laid aſide all thoughts of returning to Atooi, and reſumed our intention of paying a viſit to Oneeheow. With this view the maſter was diſpatched in a boat to ſound along the coaſt, and ſearch for a landing place, and afterwards freſh water. In the mean time the ſhips followed under an eaſy ſail. The maſter, at his return, reported, that there was tolerable anchorage all along the coaſt; and that he had landed in one place, but could not find any freſh water: but being informed by ſome of the natives, who had come off to the ſhips, that freſh water might be obtained at a village in ſight, we ran down and caſt anchor before it, about ſix furlongs from the ſhore, the depth of water being 26 fathoms. The Diſcovery anchored at a greater diſtance from the ſhore, in 23 fathoms. The ſouth-eaſtern point of Oneeheow bore ſouth, 65 deg. E. about one league diſtant; and another iſland which we had diſcovered the preceding night, named Tahoooa, bore S. 61 deg. W. diſtant 7 leagues.

Before we anchored, ſeveral canoes had come off to us, bringing potatoes, yams, ſmall pigs, and mats. The people reſembled in their perſons the inhabitants of Atooi, and, like them, were acquainted with the uſe of iron, which they aſked for by the names of toe and hamaite, readily parting with all their commodities for pieces of that metal. Some more canoes ſoon reached our ſhips, after they had come to anchor; but the iſlanders who were in theſe had apparently no other object than to make us a formal viſit. Many of them came on board, and crouched down on the deck; nor did they quit that humble poſture, till they were requeſted to riſe. Several women, whom they had brought with them, remained along-ſide the canoes, behaving with much leſs modeſty than the females of Atooi; and, at intervals, they all joined in a ſong, which, though not very melodious, was performed in the exacteſt concert, by beating time upon their breaſts with their hands. The men who had come on board did not continue long with us; and before their departure, ſome of them deſired permiſſion to lay down locks of hair on the deck. This day we renewed the enquiry whether theſe iſlanders were cannibals, and the ſubject did not ariſe from any queſtions put by us, but from a circumſtance that ſeemed to remove all doubt. One of the natives, who wiſhed to get in at the gun-room port, was refuſed, and he then aſked, whether we ſhould kill and eat him, if he ſhould come in? accompanying this queſtion with ſigns ſo expreſſive, that we did not entertain a doubt with reſpect to his meaning. We had now an opportunity of retorting the queſtion, as to this practice; and a man behind the other, in the canoe, inſtantly replied, that, if we were killed on ſhore, they would not ſcruple to eat us; not that he meant they would deſtroy us for that purpoſe, but that their devouring us would be the conſequence of our being at enmity with them. In the afternoon, Mr. Gore was ſent with three armed boats, in ſearch of the moſt commodious landing-place; being alſo directed to look for freſh water when he ſhould get aſhore. He returned in the evening, and reported, that he had landed at the village, and had been conducted to a well about half a mile up the country; but that the water it contained was in too ſmall a quantity for our purpoſe, and the road that led to it was extremely bad.

On Friday, the 30th, Mr. Gore was ſent aſhore again, with a guard, and a party to trade with the inhabitants for refreſhments. The Captain's intention was to have followed ſoon afterwards; and he went from the ſhip with that deſign: but the ſurf had ſo greatly increaſed by this time, that he was apprehenſive if he got aſhore, he ſhould not be able to make his way back again. This circumſtance really happened to our people who had landed with Mr. Gore; for the communication between them and the ſhips, by our own boats was quickly ſtopped. They made a ſignal, in the evening, for the boats, which were accordingly ſent; and in a ſhort time afterwards returned with ſome good ſalt, and a few yams. A conſiderable quantity of both theſe articles had been obtained in the courſe of the day; but the ſurf was ſo exceedingly high, that the greateſt part of both had been loſt in bringing them off to the boats. The officer and twenty men, not venturing to run the riſque of coming off, remained all night on ſhore, by which unfortunate circumſtance, the very thing happened which Captain Cook, as we have already related, ſo eagerly wiſhed to prevent, and imagined he had guarded effectually againſt. However, the violence of the ſurf did not deter the natives from coming off in canoes to our ſhips. They brought with them ſome refreſhments, for which we gave them in exchange, ſome nails, and pieces of iron hoops; and we diſtributed among the women in the canoes, buttons, bracelets, and many pieces of ribbons. Some of the men had repreſentations of human figures punctured upon their breaſts, and one of them had a lizard repreſented. Theſe viſitants told us no chief was over this iſland, but that it was ſubject to one of the chiefs of Atooi, whoſe name was Teneooneoo. Among other articles which they now brought off to us, was a ſmall drum, that had a great reſemblance to thoſe of Otaheite. Between ten and eleven o'clock at night, the wind became ſoutherly, and the ſky ſeemed to indicate an approaching ſtorm. In conſequence of theſe threatening appearances orders were given for the anchors to be taken up; and the ſhips being carried into 40 fathoms water, came to again in that more ſecure ſtation: yet this proved an unneceſſary precaution: for the wind, not long after, veering to the N. N. E. blew a freſh gale, with ſqualls, and violent ſhowers of rain. This weather continued for the whole ſucceeding day, during which the ſea ran ſo high, that all communication with our party on ſhore was totally intercepted, and the iſlanders themſelves would not venture out to the ſhips in their canoes. Towards the evening, the Commodore ſent the maſter in a boat to the S. E. point of the iſland, to try whether he could land in that quarter. He returned with a favourable report; but it was now too late to ſend for our party, ſo that they were obliged to ſtay another night on ſhore.

On Sunday, the 1ſt of February, on the appearance of day-light, a boat was diſpatched to the S. E. point, with orders to Lieutenant Gore, that, if he could not embark his people from the ſpot where they at preſent were, he ſhould march them up to the point. The boat being prevented from getting to the beach, one of the crew ſwam to the ſhore, and communicated the inſtructions. On the return of our boat, Captain Cook went himſelf with the launch and pinnace up to the point, in order to bring off our party from the land. We took with us three goats, one male, the others female; a young boar and ſow of the Engliſh breed; and alſo the ſeeds of onions, pumpkins, and melons. With great eaſe, we landed under the weſt ſide of the point, where we found our party, in company with ſome of the natives. To one of theſe, who aſſumed ſome degree of authority over the reſt, the Captain gave the goats, pigs, and ſeeds. He intended to have left theſe uſeful preſents at Atooi, had we not been unexpectedly driven from that iſland. While our people were employed in filling ſome water-caſks, from a little ſtream which the late rains had occaſioned, Captain Cook made a ſhort excurſion into the country, accompanied by the iſlander above-mentioned, and followed by two others, who carried the pigs. When arrived upon a riſing ground, the Captain ſtopped to look around him, and immediately obſerved a woman, on the oppoſite ſide of the valley in which he had landed, calling out to her countrymen who attended him. Upon this the man who acted as chief began to mutter ſomething, as if he was praying; and the two bearers of the pigs continued walking round him all the time, making about a dozen circuits before the other had made an end of his oraiſon. This ſtrange ceremony being performed, they proceeded on their walk, and met people coming from all parts, who upon being called to by the Captain's attendants, fell proſtrate on their faces till he was out of ſight. The ground over which he paſſed, though it was uncultivated and very ſtoney, was covered with plants and ſhrubs, ſome of which perfumed the air with the moſt delicious fragrance.

Our party who had been detained ſo long on ſhore, found in thoſe parts of the iſland they had traverſed, ſeveral ſalt ponds, ſome of which had a ſmall quantity of water remaining, but others had none. They ſaw no appearance of a running ſtream; and though in ſome ſmall wells the freſh water was pretty good, it ſeemed to be ſcarce. The houſes of the natives were thinly inhabited, and ſcattered about; and it was ſuppoſed, that there were not more than 500 perſons in the whole iſland. The method of living among theſe people was decent and cleanly. No inſtance was obſerved of the men and women eating together; and the latter ſeemed in general to be aſſociated in companies by themſelves. The only nuts of the dooe dooe are burned by theſe iſlanders for lights during the night; and they dreſs their hogs by baking them in ovens, ſplitting them through the whole length of the carcaſs. Our people met with a ſufficient proof of the exiſtence of the taboo among them; for one woman was employed in feeding another, ſhe being under that interdiction. Several other myſterious ceremonies were alſo obſerved; one of which was performed by a woman, who threw a pig into the ſurf, which was drowned; ſhe then tied up a bundle of wood, and diſpoſed of it in the ſame manner. At another time, the ſame female beat a man's ſhoulders with a ſtick, after he had ſeated himſelf for that purpoſe. An extraordinary veneration ſeemed to be paid here to owls, which they keep very tame. It is a pretty general practice among them, to pull out one of their teeth; and when they were aſked the reaſon of this remarkable cuſtom, the only anſwer they gave was, it is teeha; which was alſo the reaſon aſſigned by them for giving a lock of hair. After our water caſks had been filled, and ſome roots, ſalt, and ſalted fiſh, had been purchaſed from the natives, we returned on board with all our people, intending to make another viſit to the iſland the next day: but, about ſeven in the evening, the anchor of our ſhip ſtarted, and ſhe drove off the bank. By this accident, we found ourſelves at day-break the next morning, being the 2nd, nine miles to the leeward of our laſt ſtation; and the Captain foreſeeing that it would require more time to regain it than he choſe to emply, made the ſignal for the Diſcovery to weigh anchor and join us. At noon both ſhips took their departure, and ſteered to the northward, in proſecution of their voyage. But before we proceed to the northern hemiſphere, in order to make new diſcoveries, we ſhall preſent the friends and ſubſcribers to this hiſtory of voyages, with the obſervations, made by ſeveral of our gentlemen, on this whole cluſter of iſles, which Captain Cook diſtinguiſhed by the name of Sandwich Iſlands, in honour of the Earl of Sandwich. Thoſe which we ſaw are ſituated between the latitude of 21 deg. 30 min. and 22 deg. 15 min. N. and between the longitude of 199 deg. 20 min. and 201 deg. 30 min. E.

They are not inferior in beauty and fertility to the Friendly Iſlands in the ſouthern hemiſphere, nor are the inhabitants leſs ingenious or civilized. It is worthy of obſervation, that the iſlands in the Pacific Ocean, which have been diſcovered in the courſe of our late voyages, have been generally found ſituate in groups; the ſingle intermediate iſles, hitherto met with, being few in proportion to the reſt; though, in all probability, there are many more of them yet unknown, which ſerve as gradations or ſteps between the ſeveral cluſters. Of what number this new-diſcovered archipelago is compoſed, muſt be left to the deciſion of future navigators. We obſerved five of them, whoſe names are Woahoo, Atooi, Oneeheow, Oreehoua, and Tahoora. This laſt is a ſmall elevated iſland, at the diſtance of four or five leagues from the S. E. point of Oneeheow. We were told, that it abounds with birds, its ſole inhabitants. We alſo gained intelligence of the exiſtence of a low uninhabited iſland in the neighbourhood, named Tammata-pappa. Beſides theſe ſix, we were told that there were ſome other iſlands both to the eaſtward and weſtward. There ſeems to be a remarkable conformity (obſerves one of our gentlemen) between theſe iſlands and thoſe of the oppoſite hemiſphere, not only in their ſituation, but in their number, and in their manners, cuſtoms, arts, and manufactures of the inhabitants; yet, it can ſcarcely be imagined, that they could ever have any communication, as the globle is now conſtituted, being more than 2000 miles diſtant one from the other: but from this general conformity among the tropical iſlanders, ſome have been led to believe, that the whole middle region of the earth, was once one entire continent, and that what is now the Great South Pacific Ocean was, in the beginning, the Paradiſe of the World.

With reſpect to Woahoo, the moſt eaſterly of theſe iſlands, ſeen by us, we could get no other information, than that it is high land, and inhabited. But as to Oneeheow, concerning which ſome particulars have been already mentioned, this lies ſeven leagues to the weſtward of our anchoring-place at Atooi, and does not exceed 15 leagues, or 45 miles, in circumference. Yams are its principal vegetable production. We procured ſome ſalt here, called by the natives patai, which is produced in ſalt ponds. With it they cure both fiſh and pork; and ſome ſalt fiſh, which we purchaſed from them were kept very well, and extremely good. This iſland is chiefly low land, except the part oppoſite Atooi, which riſes immediately from the ſea to a conſiderable height; as does alſo its S. E. point, which terminates in a round hill. We know no other particulars concerning Oneeheow: and of Oreehoua we can only ſay, that it is a ſmall elevated iſland, lying cloſe to the north ſide of Oneeheow.

Atooi was the principal ſcene of our operations, and the largeſt iſland we ſaw. From our obſervations, we think it to be at leaſt 30 miles in length from E. to W. from whence its circumference may nearly be determined, though it appears to be much broader at the E. than at the W. point. The road, or anchoring place, which our veſſels occupied, is on the S. W. ſide of the iſland, about two leagues from the weſt end, before a village, named Wymoa. As far as we ſounded, we found the banks free from rocks; except to the eaſtward of the village, where there projects a ſhoal, on which are ſome rocks and breakers. This road is ſomewhat expoſed to the trade wind; notwithſtanding which, it is far from being a bad ſtation, and greatly ſuperior to thoſe which neceſſity continually obliges ſhips to uſe, in countries where the winds are not more variable, but more boiſterous; as at Madeira, Teneriffe, the Azores, &c. The landing too is not ſo difficult as at moſt of thoſe places; and, unleſs in foul weather, is always practicable. The water in the neighbourhood is excellent, and may be conveyed with eaſe to the boats. But no wood can be cut at any convenient diſtance, unleſs the iſlanders could be prevailed upon to part with the etooa trees, (for that is the name they give to the cordia ſebaſtina) that grow about their villages, or a ſpecies called dooe dooe, which grows farther up the country. The land does not in the leaſt reſemble, in its general appearance, any of the iſlands we have viſited within the tropic of Capricorn; if we except its hills near the centre, which are high, but ſlope gradually towards the ſea, or lower lands. Though it preſents not to the view the delightful borders of Otaheite, or the luxuriant plains of Tongataboo, covered with trees, which at once afford a ſhelter from the ſcorching rays of the ſun, a beautiful proſpect to the eye, and food for the natives; yet its poſſeſſing a greater portion of gently riſing land, renders it, in ſome degree, ſuperior to the above-mentioned favourite iſlands, as being more capable of improvement. The height of the land within, and the clouds which we ſaw, during the whole time of our continuance, hanging over it, and not unfrequently on the other parts, ſeem to indicate that there is a ſufficient ſupply of water, and that there are ſome running ſtreams which we had an opportunity of ſeeing, particularly in the deep vallies, at the entrance of which the villages are, in general, ſituated. The ground, from the woody part to the ſea, is covered with an excellent kind of graſs, about two feet in height, which ſometimes grows in tufts, and appeared capable of being converted into abundant crops of fine hay. But on this extenſive ſpace not even a ſhrub grows naturally. In the narrow valley leading to the Morai, the ſoil is of a dark brown colour, rather looſe; but on the high ground, it is of a reddiſh brown, more ſtiff and clayey. It is probably the ſame all over the cultivated parts; for what adhered to moſt of the potatoes that we purchaſed, which, doubtleſs, came from very different ſpots, was of this ſort. Its quality, however, may be better eſtimated from its productions, than from its appearance: for the vale, or moiſt ground, produces taro, much larger than any we had ever ſeen; and the more elevated ground furniſhes ſweet potatoes, that ſeldom weigh leſs than two or three pounds, and frequently weigh ten, and ſometimes fourteen pounds.

Were we to judge of the climate from our experience, it might be ſaid to be very variable; for according to the general opinion, it was, at this time, the ſeaſon of the year when the weather is ſuppoſed to be moſt ſettled, the ſun being at his greateſt annual diſtance. The heat was now very moderate; and few of thoſe inconveniences to which many of the countries lying within the tropics are ſubject, either from heat, or moiſture, ſeem to be experienced here. Nor did we find any dews of conſequence; a circumſtance which may partly be accounted for, by the lower part of the country being deſtitute of trees. The rock that conſtitutes the ſides of the valley, is a dark grey ponderous ſtone; but honey-combed, with ſome ſpots of a ruſty colour, and ſome very minute ſhining particles interſperſed. It is of an immenſe depth, and ſeems to be divided into ſtrata, though nothing is interpoſed; for the large pieces always broke off to a determinate thickneſs, and did not appear to have adhered to thoſe that were below them. Other ſtones are, in all probability, much more various than in the ſouthern iſlands. For during the ſhort time we remained here, beſides the lapis lydius, we found a ſpecies of cream-coloured whetſtone, ſometimes variegated with whiter or blacker veins like marble; and common writing-ſlate, as well as ſome of a coarſer ſort; and the natives brought us ſome pieces of a coarſe whitiſh pumice ſtone. We alſo procured a brown ſort of hæmatites, which from its being ſtrongly attracted by the magnet, diſcovered the quantity of metal it contained. What we ſaw of this was cut artificially, as were alſo the ſlates and whetſtones.

Of vegetables, birds, fiſh, and tame animals, we ſaw various kinds. Beſides the vegetables purchaſed by us as refreſhments, among which were, at leaſt, five or ſix varieties of plantains, the iſland produces bread-fruit, and the ſugar-cane: the former ſeems to be ſcarce, as we only ſaw one tree of that ſpecies; but the latter appears to be indigenous to theſe iſlands, and rare in thoſe on the other ſide of the line. There are alſo here a few cocoa-palms; ſome yams; the kappe of the Friendly Iſles, or Virginian arum; the etooa tree, and odoriferous gardenia, or Cape Jaſmine. We ſaw ſeveral trees of the dooe dooe, that bear the oily nuts, which are ſtuck upon a kind of ſkewer, and made uſe of as candles. They are uſed in the ſame manner at Oneeheow. We were not aſhore at Atooi except in the day-time, and then we obſerved the iſlanders wearing theſe nuts, hung on ſtrings, round their necks. There is a ſpecies of ſida, or Indian mallow; alſo the morinda citrifolia, which is here called none; a ſpecies of convolvulus; the ava, or intoxicating pepper, beſides great quantities of gourds. Theſe laſt grow to a very large ſize, and are remarkable for their variety of ſhapes, the effect, perhaps, of art. Upon the dry ſand, about the village grows a plant, that had never been ſeen by us in this ocean, of the ſize of a common thiſtle, and prickly; but bearing a fine flower, greatly reſembling a white poppy. The ſcarlet birds, brought for ſale, were never met with alive; but we ſaw a ſmall one, about the ſize of a canary bird, of a deep crimſon colour. We alſo ſaw a large owl, two brown hawks, or kites, and a wild duck. We heard from the natives the names of ſome other birds; among which were the otoo, or blueiſh heron, and the torata, a ſort of whimbrel. It is probable that the ſpecies of birds are numerous, if we may judge by the quantity of fine yellow, green, and ſmall velvet-like blackiſh feathers, uſed upon the cloaks, and other ornaments worn by theſe people. Fiſh, and other productions of the ſea, were, to appearance, not various; as, beſides the ſmall mackarel, we only ſaw common mullets; a ſpecies of a chalkey colour; a ſmall browniſh rock-fiſh, adorned with blue ſpots; a turtle, which was penned up in a pond; and three or four ſorts of fiſh ſalted. The few ſhell-fiſh ſeen by us were chiefly converted into ornaments, though they were deſtitute of the recommendation either of beauty or novelty. The only tame or domeſtic animals that we found here were hogs, dogs, and fowls, which were all of the ſame kind that we met with at the iſlands of the South Pacific. There are alſo ſmall lizards; and ſome rats, reſembling thoſe of every iſland we had hitherto viſited.

The inhabitants of Atooi are of the middle ſize, and not much tattowed. In general they are ſtoutly made, with a lively open countenance; but they are remarkable for having neither a beautiful ſhape, nor ſtriking features. Their viſage, particularly that of the women, is ſometimes round; but in others long; nor can it juſtly be ſaid, that they are diſtinguiſhed, as a nation, by any peculiar caſt of countenance. Their complexion is nearly of a nut brown; but ſome individuals are of a darker hue. We have already mentioned the women as being little more delicate than the men in their formation; and we may add, that, with few exceptions, they have little claim to thoſe peculiarities that diſtinguiſh the ſex in moſt other parts of the world. There is, indeed, a very remarkable equality in the ſize, colour, and figure, of the natives of both ſexes: upon the whole, however, they are far from being ugly, and have, to all appearance, few natural deformities of any kind. Their ſkin is not very ſoft, nor ſhining; but their eyes and teeth are, for the moſt part, pretty good. Their hair, in general, is ſtraight; and though its natural colour is uſually black, they ſtain it, as at the Friendly and other iſlands. We perceived but few inſtances of corpulence, and theſe more frequently among the women than the men; but it was principally among the latter that perſonal defects were obſerved; though if any of them can lay claim to a ſhare of beauty, it appeared to be moſt conſpicuous among the young men. They are active, vigorous, and moſt expert ſwimmers; leaving their canoes upon the moſt frivolous occaſion; diving under them; and ſwimming to others, though at a conſiderable diſtance. We have frequently ſeen women with infants at the breaſt, when the ſurf was ſo high as to prevent their landing with canoes, leap overboard, and ſwim to the ſhore, without endangering their little ones. They appear to be of a frank chearful diſpoſition; and are equally free from the fickle levity which characterizes the inhabitants of Otaheite, and the ſedate caſt, obſervable among many of thoſe of Tongataboo. They ſeem to cultivate a ſociable intercourſe with each other; and, except the propenſity to thieving, which is, as it were, innate in moſt of the people we have viſited in theſe ſeas, they were extremely friendly to us. And it does no ſmall credit to their ſenſibility, without flattering ourſelves, that when they ſaw the different articles of our European manufactures, they could not refrain from expreſſing their aſtoniſhment, by a mixture of joy and concern, that ſeemed to apply the caſe as a leſſon of humility to themſelves; and on every occaſion, they appeared to have a proper conſciouſneſs of their own inferiority; a behaviour that equally exempts their national character from the ridiculous pride of the more poliſhed Japaneſe, and of the ruder native of Greenland. It was pleaſing to obſerve with what affection the women managed their infants, and with what alacrity the men contributed their aſſiſtance in ſuch a tender office; thus diſtinguiſhing themſelves from thoſe ſavages who conſider a wife and child as things rather neceſſary than deſirable, or worthy of their regard or eſteem. From the numbers that we ſaw aſſembled at every village, as we coaſted along, it may be conjectured, that the inhabitants of this iſland are pretty numerous. Including the ſtraggling houſes, there may perhaps be, in the whole iſland, ſixty ſuch villages, as that near which our ſhips anchored; and, if we allow five perſons to each houſe, there will be, in every village 500, or 30,000 upon the iſland. This number is by no means exaggerated, for there were ſometimes 3000 people, at leaſt, collected upon the beach; when it could not be ſuppoſed that above a tenth part of the whole were preſent.

The ordinary dreſs of both ſexes has been already deſcribed. The women have often much larger pieces of cloth wrapped about them, extending from juſt below the breaſts to the hams, and ſometimes lower; and ſeveral were obſerved with pieces thrown looſely over their ſhoulders, which covered the greateſt part of their body; but the children, when very young, are entirely naked. They wear nothing upon the head; but the hair, both of men and women, is cut in various forms; and the general faſhion, particularly among the latter, is to have it ſhort behind, and long before. The men frequently had it cut on each ſide in ſuch a manner, that the remaining part ſomewhat reſembled the creſt of their caps, or that, which, in horſes manes, is called hogging. Both ſexes, however, ſeemed to be very careleſs about their hair, and had no combs, nor any thing of the kind, to dreſs it with. The men ſometimes twiſt it into a number of ſeparate parcels, like the tails of a wig, each about as thick as a finger; though moſt of thoſe which are ſo long as to reach far down the back, are artificially fixed upon the head, over their own hair. Contrary to the general practice of moſt of the iſlands in the Pacific Ocean, the inhabitants of the Sandwich Iſles have not their ears perforated, nor do they wear any ornaments in them. Both men and women, however, adorn themſelves with necklaces compoſed of bunches of ſmall black cord, like our hat ſtrings, often above a hundred fold; entirely reſembling thoſe we ſaw worn at Wateeoo, except that, inſtead of the two little balls on the middle before, they fix a ſmall piece of wood, ſtone, or ſhell, about two inches in length, with a broad hook, well poliſhed. They have alſo necklaces of many ſtrings of very ſmall ſhells, or of the dried flowers of the Indian mallow; and they ſometimes hang round their necks a ſmall human figure of bone, about the length of three inches. The women likewiſe wear bracelets of a ſingle ſhell, pieces of black wood, with bits of ivory interſperſed, and neatly poliſhed, faſtened together by a ſtring drawn cloſely through them; or others of hogs teeth, placed parallel to each other, with the concave part outward, and the points cut off; ſome of which, formed only of large boar's tuſks, are very elegant. The men ſometimes fix on their heads plumes of feathers of the tropic bird; or thoſe of cocks; faſtened round neat poliſhed ſticks, two feet in length; and, for the ſame purpoſe, they ſew the ſkin of a white dog's tail over a ſtick, with its tuft at the end. They alſo, not unfrequently, wear on the head a kind of ornament, of the thickneſs of a finger, or more, covered with yellow and red feathers, curiouſly varied, and tied behind; and, on that part of the arm which is above the elbow, a ſort of broad ſhell work, grounded upon net-work. The men ſometimes puncture themſelves upon their hands or arms, and near the groin; but frequently we ſaw no marks at all; though a few individuals had more of this ſpecies of ornament than we had uſually ſeen at other places, and curiouſly executed in a great variety of lines and figures, on the arms and fore-part of the body.

Near any of their villages, there is no appearance of defence, or fortifications; and the houſes are ſcattered about, without the leaſt order. Some of theſe habitations are large and commodious, from forty to fifty feet in length, and twenty or thirty in breadth; while others of them are contemptible hovels. Their figure reſembles that of hay-ſtacks, or perhaps a better idea may be conceived of them, by ſuppoſing the roof of a barn placed on the ground, in ſuch a manner as to form a high acute ridge, with two low ſides. The gable at each end, correſponding to the ſides, makes theſe abodes cloſe all round, and they are well thatched with long graſs, which is laid on ſlender poles. The entrance is made either in the end or ſide, and is an oblong hole, extremely low; often ſhut up by a board of planks faſtened together, which ſerves as a door; but as it has no hinges, muſt be removed occaſionally. No light enters the houſe except by this opening; and though ſuch cloſe habitations may be comfortable places of retreat in bad weather, they ſeem but ill adapted to the warm climate of this country. They are kept remarkably clean, and the floors are ſtrewed with dried graſs, over which mats are ſpread to ſit and ſleep on. At one end ſtands a bench, about three feet high, on which the domeſtic utenſils are placed. Theſe conſiſt of gourd-ſhells, which the natives convert into veſſels that ſerve as bottles to hold water, and as baſkets to contain various articles; alſo a few wooden bowls, and trenchers of various ſizes. From what we ſaw growing, and from what was brought to market, we have no doubt, that ſweet potatoes, taro, and plantains, conſtitute the principal part of their vegetable diet; and that yams and bread-fruit are rather to be conſidered as rarities. Of animal food, they appear to be in no want, having great numbers of hogs, which run, without reſtraint, about the houſes; and, if they eat dogs, which is not improbable, their ſtock of theſe ſeemed very conſiderable. The quantities of fiſhing hooks found among them, indicates that they procure a tolerable ſupply of animal food from the ſea. They have a cuſtom of ſalting fiſh, and likewiſe pork, which they preſerve in gourd-ſhells. The ſalt uſed for this purpoſe is of a reddiſh colour, but not very coarſe, and ſeems to be nearly the ſame with what our ſtragglers found at Chriſtmas iſland. Its colour is doubtleſs derived from a mixture of mud, at the bottom of the place where it is found; for ſome of it, which had adhered in lumps, was of a tolerable whiteneſs. They bake their vegetable articles of food with heated ſtones; and, from the great quantity which we ſaw dreſſed at one time, we imagined, that all the inhabitants of a village, or at leaſt a conſiderable number of people, joined in the uſe of a common oven. We did not perceive them dreſs any animal food at this iſland. The only artificial diſh we ſaw them dreſs was a taro pudding, which, though very ſour, was devoured with avidity by the natives. They eat off a ſort of wooden trenchers; and, as far as we were enabled to judge from one inſtance, the women, if reſtrained from feeding on the ſame diſh with the men, as is the cuſtom at Otaheite, are at leaſt allowed to eat in the ſame place near them.

The amuſements of theſe people are various. We did not ſee the dances at which they uſe the feathered cloaks and caps; but, from the motions they made with their hands, on other occaſions, when they ſung, we judged that they were ſimilar to thoſe we met with at the ſouthern iſlands, though not ſo ſkilfully performed. They had not among them either flutes or reeds, and the only two muſical inſtruments, ſeen by us, were of an exceeding rude kind. One of them does not produce a melody ſuperior to that of a child's rattle. It conſiſts of what may be denominated a conic cap inverted, but very little hollowed at the baſe, made of a ſedge-like plant; the upper part of which, and likewiſe the edges, are embelliſhed with beautiful red feathers; and to the point or lower part, is fixed a gourd-ſhell. Into this they put ſomething to rattle, which is done by holding the inſtrument by the ſmall part, and ſhaking it briſkly before the face, at the ſame time ſtriking the breaſt with the other hand. The other inſtrument was a hollow veſſel of wood, not unlike a platter, accompanied with two ſticks, whereon one of our gentlemen ſaw a man performing. He held one of the ſticks, about two feet in length, with one hand, in the ſame manner as we hold a violin, and ſtruck it with the other, which was ſmaller, and reſembled a drum-ſtick, in a quicker or ſlower meaſure, beating with his foot, at the ſame time, upon the hollow veſſel, that lay upon the ground inverted, and thus producing a tune, that was not diſagreeable. This muſic was accompanied by the vocal performance of ſome women, whoſe ſong had a pleaſing effect. They have great numbers of ſmall poliſhed rods, of the length of between four and five feet, rather thicker than the rammer of a muſquet, with a tuft of long dogs hair fixed on the ſmall end. Theſe they probably make uſe of in their diverſions. We ſaw a native take one of them in his hand, and holding it up, give a ſmart ſtroke, till it was brought into an horizontal poſition, ſtriking the ground with his foot, on the ſame ſide, and beating his breaſt with his other hand. They play at bowls with pieces of the whet-ſtone, ſhaped ſomewhat like a cheeſe, but rounded at the edges and ſides, which are very neatly poliſhed. They have other bowls made of a reddiſh-brown clay, glazed over with a compoſition of the ſame colour, or of a dark-grey coarſe ſlate. They alſo uſe as quoits, ſmall, flat, roundiſh pieces of writing ſlate, ſcarcely a quarter of an inch thick.

As to the manufactures of theſe people, they diſcover an extraordinary degree of ingenuity and neatneſs. Their cloth is made from the morus papyrifera, and, doubtleſs, in the ſame manner, as at Tongataboo and Otaheite; for we bought ſome of the grooved ſticks with which they beat it. Its texture, however, though thicker, is inferior to that of the cloth of either of the places juſt mentioned; but, in colouring or ſtaining it, the inhabitants of Atooi diſplay a ſuperiority of taſte, by the infinite variety of figures which they execute. Their colours, indeed, are not very bright, except the red; but the regularity of the figures and ſtripes is amazing, for, as far as we know, they have nothing like ſtamps or prints, to make the impreſſions. We had no opportunity of learning in what manner they produce their colours; but, beſides the variety of variegated ſorts, they have ſome pieces of plain white cloth, and others of a ſingle colour, particularly light blue, and dark brown. In general, the pieces brought to us were about the breadth of two feet, and four or five yards in length, being the form and quantity made uſe of by them for the common dreſs, or maro; and even ſome of theſe were compoſed of pieces ſewed together. They have alſo a particular ſort that is thin, and greatly reſembles oil-cloth, and which is either oiled, or ſoaked in ſome kind of varniſh. They fabricate numbers of white mats, which are ſtrong, with many red ſtripes, rhombuſes, and other figures interwoven on one ſide. Theſe, in all probability, make, occaſionally, a part of their dreſs, for when they offered them to ſale they put them on their backs. They manufacture others of a coarſer ſort, plain and ſtrong, which they ſpread over their floors to ſleep upon. They ſtain their gourd-ſhells neatly with undulated lines, triangles, and other figures of a black colour. They alſo ſeem to be acquainted with the art of varniſhing, for ſome of their ſtained gourd-ſhells are covered with a ſort of lacker; and, on other occaſions, they make uſe of a ſtrong ſize, or glutinous ſubſtance, to faſten things together. Their wooden diſhes and bowls, out of which they drink their ava, are of the Etooa tree, extremely neat and well poliſhed. They likewiſe make ſmall ſquare fans of mat or wicker-work, with handles of the ſame, or of wood, tapering from them, which are curiouſly wrought with ſmall cords of hair, and cocoa-nut fibres, intermixed. Their fiſhing hooks are ingeniouſly made, ſome of bone, many of pearl-ſhell, and others of wood, pointed with bone. The bones are for the moſt part ſmall, and conſiſt of two pieces, and the various ſorts have a barbe, either on the inſide, like ours, or on the outſide; but others have both, the exterior being fartheſt from the point. Of the latter ſort one was procured, nine inches in length, made of a ſingle piece of bone, the elegant form and poliſh of which could not be exceeded by any European artiſt. They poliſh their ſtones by conſtant friction, with pumice ſtone in water; and ſuch of their tools as we ſaw, reſembled thoſe of the ſouthern iſlanders. Their hatchets, or rather adzes, were exactly of the ſame pattern, formed either of a blackiſh ſtone, or of a clay-coloured one. They have alſo ſmall inſtruments compoſed of a ſingle ſhark's tooth, ſome of which are fixed to the fore-part of the jaw-bone of a dog, and others to a thin wooden handle of a ſimilar ſhape; and at the other end there is a bit of ſtring faſtened through a little hole. Theſe ſerve occaſionally as knives, and are probably uſed in carving. The only iron tools ſeen among them, and which they poſſeſſed before our arrival, were a piece of iron hoop, about the length of two inches, fitted into a wooden handle; and another edge-tool, which we ſuppoſed to have been made of the point of a broad ſword. Their having the actual poſſeſſion of theſe, and their being well acquainted with the uſe of this metal, inclined ſome of our people to imagine, that we were not the firſt European viſitors of theſe iſlands. But the very great ſurprize which they teſtified on ſeeing our ſhips, and their perfect ignorance of the uſe of fire-arms, cannot be reconciled with ſuch an opinion. There are ſeveral means by which ſuch people may obtain pieces of iron, or acquire the knowledge of the exiſtence of that metal, without having had an immediate connection with thoſe nations that uſe it. We doubt not, that it was unknown to all the inhabitants of the Pacific Ocean, till Magellan led the way into it; for no navigator, immediately after his voyage, found any of this metal in their poſſeſſion; though, in the courſe of our late voyages, it has been remarked, that the uſe of it was known at ſeveral iſlands, which no former European veſſels had ever, to our knowledge, viſited. At all the places where Mendana touched, during his two voyages, ſome of it muſt have been left; and this would, doubtleſs, extend the knowledge of it to all the various iſlands, with which the people, whom he viſited, had any immediate intercourſe. It might even have been carried farther, and where ſpecimens of this valuable article could not be met with, deſcriptions might, in ſome degree, ſerve to make it known afterwards, when ſeen. The next voyage to the ſouthward of the Equator, in which any intercourſe was had with the people who inhabit the iſlands of this ocean, was that of Quiros, who landed at Sagittaria, the iſland of handſome people, and at Tierra del Eſpiritu Santo, at all which places, as well as at thoſe with which they had any communication, it muſt undoubtedly have been made known. To him ſucceeded, in this navigation, Le Maire, and Schouten, whoſe connections with the natives began much farther to the Eaſtward, and terminated at Cocos and Horn iſlands. It is certain, that the inhabitants of Otaheite and the Society iſles, had a knowledge of iron, and purchaſed it with the greateſt avidity, when Captain Wallis diſcovered Otaheite; and they could only have acquired this knowledge through the mediation of thoſe neighbouring iſlands at which it had been originally left. They acknowledge, indeed, that this was really the caſe; and they have ſince informed us, that they held it in ſuch eſtimation, before the arrival of Captain Wallis, that an Otaheitean chief, who had gained poſſeſſion of two nails, received no ſmall emolument, by letting out the uſe of them to his neighbours, for the purpoſe of boring holes. The natives of the Society iſles, whom we found at Wateeoo, had been driven to that place long after the knowledge and uſe of iron had been thus introduced among their countrymen; and though, perhaps, they had no ſpecimen of it with them, they would naturally communicate at that iſland, by deſcription, their knowledge of this uſeful metal. From the people of Wateeoo, again, thoſe of Harvey's iſland might derive that inclination for it, of which we had ſufficient proofs during our ſhort intercourſe with them. The conſideration of theſe facts will ſhew how the knowledge of iron has been conveyed throughout the Pacific Ocean, to iſlands that have never had an immediate connection with Europeans; and it may eaſily be imagined, that, whereever the hiſtory of it only has been reported, or a very inconſiderable quantity of it has been left, the greater eagerneſs will be ſhewn by the inhabitants to procure plentiful ſupplies of it. The application of theſe particulars, to the object of our preſent conſideration, is manifeſt. The natives of Atooi and Oneeheow, without having ever been viſited by Europeans before us, might have received this metal from intermediate iſlands, ſituated between them and the Ladrones, which the Spaniards have frequented almoſt ever ſince the period of Magellan's voyage. Or, if the diſtant weſtern poſition of the Ladrones, ſhould detract from the probability of this ſolution, is there not the American continent to windward, where the Sptniards have been ſettled for upwards of two centuries and a half, during which long ſpace of time ſhipwrecks muſt frequently have happened on its coaſts? It cannot be deemed ſurprizing, that part of ſuch wrecks, containing iron, ſhould, by the eaſterly trade winds, be occaſionally caſt upon ſome of thoſe iſlands that are ſcattered about this immenſe ocean. The diſtance of Atooi from America is no argument againſt this ſuppoſition; and even if it were, it would deſtroy it. This ocean is annually traverſed by Spaniſh veſſels, and it is highly probable that, beſides the accident of loſing a maſt and its appendages, caſks with iron hoops, and many other things that contain iron, may fall, or be thrown overboard, during ſo long a paſſage, and thus find their way to land. Theſe are not mere conjectures, for one of Captain Cook's people actually ſaw ſome wood in a houſe at Wymoa, which he ſuppoſed to be fir: it was worm-eaten, and the natives informed him, that it had been driven aſhore by the waves; and we had their own expreſs authority, that they had obtained, from ſome place to the eaſtward, the ſpecimens of iron found among them. From this digreſſion (if it can juſtly be called one) let us return to the obſervations made during our continuance at Atooi.

The canoes of theſe people are commonly about four and twenty feet in length, and have the bottom, in general, formed of a ſingle piece of wood, hollowed out to the thickneſs of an inch, or more, and brought to a point at each end. The ſides are compoſed of three boards, neatly fitted and laſhed to the bottom. The extremities both at head and ſtern, are a little elevated, and both are made ſharp, ſomewhat reſembling a wedge, but they flatten more abruptly; ſo that the two ſide boards join each other, ſide by ſide, for upwards of a foot. As they ſeldom exceed a foot and a half in breadth, thoſe that go ſingle (for they ſometimes join them) have out-riggers, which are ſhaped and fitted with more judgment than any we had ſeen before. They are rowed by paddles, ſuch as we had obſerved at other iſlands, and ſome of them have a light triangular ſail, extended to a maſt and boom. The ropes which they uſe for their boats, and the ſmaller cords for their fiſhing tackle, are ſtrong and neatly made. They are by no means novices in the art of agriculture. The vale-ground is one continued plantation of taro, and ſome other articles, which have all the appearance of being carefully attended to. The potatoe-fields, and ſpots of ſugar cane, or plantains, on the higher grounds, are planted with great regularity; but neither theſe, nor the others, are encloſed with any fence, unleſs we conſider the ditches in the low grounds as ſuch, which, it is more than probable, are deſigned to convey water the taro. The abundance and excellence of theſe articles may, perhaps, be as much owing to ſkilful culture, as the natural fertility of ſoil, which ſeems better adapted to them than to bread-fruit and cocoa-nut trees; the few of theſe latter we ſaw not being in a thriving ſtate: and yet notwithſtanding this ſkill in agriculture, the iſland from its general appearance ſeemed to be capable of more extenſive improvement, and of maintaining twice as many inhabitants as are now upon it; for thoſe parts that now lay waſte are, apparantly, as good a ſoil as thoſe that are cultivated. Hence we cannot but conclude, that theſe people do not increaſe in that proportion which would render it neceſſary for them to take advantage of the extent of their iſland, towards raiſing a greater quantity of its vegetable productions for their maintenance.

During our ſtay in theſe parts, we did not ſee one chief of any note; but we were informed by the iſlanders, that ſeveral at Atooi have their reſidence, to whom they proſtrate themſelves as a mark of homage and reſpect. This proſtration appeared ſimilar to the moe moe, paid to the chiefs at the Friendly iſlands, and is here denominated hamoea, or moe. After we had left the iſland, one of theſe great men viſited Captain Clerke, going off to the Diſcovery, in his double canoe, and, like the ſovereign of the Friendly Iſles, paid no regard to the ſmall canoes that chanced to be in his way, but ran againſt, or over them, without making the leaſt attempt to avoid them: nor was it poſſible for the poor people to avoid him, it being a neceſſary mark of their ſubmiſſion, that they ſhould lie down till he had paſſed. He was aſſiſted in getting on board the Diſcovery by his attendants, who placed him in the gang-way, where they ſtood round him, holding each other by the hands, nor would they ſuffer any one but Captain Clerke to approach him. He was a young man apparelled from head to foot. His name was ſaid to be Tamahano. Captain Clerke having made him ſome preſents, received, in return, a large bowl, ſupported by two figures of men, the carving whereof diſplayed a degree of ſkill, both with reſpect to the deſign and execution. This bowl uſed to be filled with Kava, or, in the language of Otaheite, Ava, which is prepared and drank here, as at the other iſlands of the Pacific ocean. Captain Clerke could not prevail upon this chief to go below, nor to move from the ſpot where his attendants had firſt placed him. After remaining ſome time in the ſhip, he was carried back into his canoe, and returned to the iſland. The next day ſeveral meſſages were ſent to Captain Clerke, inviting him to return the viſit on ſhore, and giving him to underſtand, that the chief had prepared a conſiderable preſent on the occaſion; but the Captain being anxious to get out to ſea, and join the reſolution, did not think proper to accept of the invitation.

Our imperfect intercourſe with the natives did not enable us to form an accurate judgment of the form of government eſtabliſhed among them; but from the general ſimilarity of cuſtoms, and particularly from what we obſerved of the honours paid to their chiefs, it ſeems reaſonable to imagine, that it is of the ſame nature with that which prevails in all the iſlands we had hitherto viſited; and, in all probability, their wars among themſelves are equally frequent. This, indeed, might be inferred, from the number of weapons we found in their poſſeſſion, and from the excellent order in which they kept them. But we had proofs of the fact from their own confeſſion; and, as we were informed, theſe wars are carried on between the different diſtricts of their own iſland, as well as between it and the neighbouring inhabitants of the iſles of Oneeheow and Oreehoua.

Beſides their ſpears, formed of a fine browniſh wood, beautifully poliſhed, ſome of which are barbed at one end, and flattened to a point at the other, they have another kind of weapon, which we had never met with before. It ſomewhat reſembles a dagger, and is, in general, about eighteen inches in length, ſharpened at one or both ends, and ſecured to the hand by a ſtring. Its uſe is to ſtab in cloſe combat, and ſeems well adapted to that purpoſe. Some of theſe may be denominated double daggers, having a handle in the middle, with which they are the better enabled to ſtrike different ways. They have likewiſe bows and arrows; but, both from their ſlender conſtruction, and their apparent ſcarcity, it is probable that they never make uſe of them in battle. The knife or ſaw, already mentioned, with which they diſſect the dead bodies of their enemies, may alſo be ranked among their weapons, as they both ſtrike and cut with it when engaged in cloſe fight. It is a ſmall wooden inſtrument, about a foot in length, of an oblong ſhape, rounded at the corners: its edges are ſurrounded with ſhark's teeth, ſtrongly fixed to it, and pointed outwards; and it has generally a hole in the handle, through which paſſes a long ſtring, and this they wrap ſeveral times round the wriſt. We are of opinion that, on ſome occaſions, they uſe ſlings, for we procured ſome pieces of the hœmatites, or bloodſtone, made artificially of an oval form, divided longitudinally, with a narrow groove in the middle of the convex part. To this the perſon who had one of them applied a thin cord, but would not diſpoſe of it, though he was not unwilling to part with the ſtone, which, as it weighed a pound, muſt prove fatal when thrown with ſome degree of force. We likewiſe ſaw ſome pieces of wheſtone neatly poliſhed, of an oval figure, but ſomewhat pointed towards each end, nearly reſembling in ſhape ſome ſtones ſeen by Captain Cook at New Caledonia in 1774, and made uſe of there in ſlings.

Some of their religious inſtitutions, and their method of diſpoſing of their dead, ſtrongly indicate an affinity between the manners of theſe people, and of the natives of the Friendly and the Society iſlands. The inhabitants of Tongataboo bury their dead with great decency, and they alſo inter their human ſacrifices; but they do not, to our knowledge, offer any other animal, or even vegetable, to their deities. The Otaheiteans do not inter their dead, but expoſe them to waſte and putrefaction, though they afterwards bury the bones; and this being their cuſtom, it is remarkable, that they ſhould inter the bodies of their human ſacrifices. They are far from being attentive to the condition of the places, where they celebrate their ſolemn rites; moſt of their morais being in a ruinous ſtate, and ſhewing manifeſt tokens of neglect. The people of Atooi reſemble alſo thoſe of Otaheite, in offering vegetables and animals to their gods. The taboo likewiſe prevails in Atooi in its full extent, and apparently with greater ſtrictneſs, than even at Tongataboo: for the natives always aſked here, with great eagerneſs, and with indications of fear of offending, whether any particular thing, which they deſired to ſee, was taboo, or, as they pronounced the word, tafoo? The maia raä, or, prohibited articles, at the Society iſlands, though undoubtedly the ſame thing, did not appear to be ſo rigorouſly obſerved by them, except with regard to the dead, reſpecting whom we thought they were more ſuperſtitious than any others we had been converſant with. But whatever reſemblance we might diſcover between the general manners of the inhabitants of Atooi, and thoſe of Otaheite, theſe were leſs ſtriking than the ſimilarity of language.

The languages of both places may indeed be ſaid to be almoſt entirely the ſame. The people of Atooi, in general, have neither the ſtrong guttural pronunciation of the New-Zealanders, nor that ſmaller degree of it, which alſo diſtinguiſhes the Friendly Iſlanders; and they have not only adopted the whole idiom of their language, but the ſame meaſure and cadence in their ſongs. It is true, at firſt hearing, a ſtranger may perceive ſome diſagreement; but it ſhould be conſidered, that the natives of Otaheite, from their frequent connections with the Engliſh, had learned, in ſome meaſure, to adapt themſelves to our imperfect knowledge of their language, by uſing the moſt common and even corrupted expreſſions in converſation with us; whereas, when they talked with each other, and uſed the ſeveral parts neceſſary to propriety of ſpeech, they were hardly at all underſtood by thoſe among us, who had made the greateſt progreſs in the knowledge of their tongue.

Had the Sandwich Iſlands been diſcovered at an early period, by the Spaniards, they would doubtleſs have availed themſelves of ſo excellent a ſituation, and have made uſe of Atooi, or ſome other iſlands, as a place of refreſhment for the ſhips that ſail annually between Manilla and Acapulco. They lie almoſt midway between the laſt mentioned place and Guam, one of the Ladrones, which is at preſent their only port in traverſing this vaſt ocean; and to touch at them would not be a week's ſail out of their ordinary rout. An acquaintance with the Sandwich Iſles would alſo have been equally favourable to our Buccaneers, who have ſometimes paſſed from the coaſt of America to the Ladrones, with a ſtock of proviſions and water ſcarcely adequate to the ſupport of life. Here they might always have met with a plentiful ſupply, and have been within a month's ſail of the very part of California, which the Manilla ſhips are obliged to make. How happy would Lord Anſon have been, and what difficulties would he have avoided, had he known that there was a cluſter of iſlands half way between America and Tinian, where all his wants might have been effectually relieved!

At theſe iſlands, the tides are ſo inconſiderable, that with a great ſurf breaking againſt the ſhore, it was difficult, at all times to determine whether we had high or low water, or whether it ebbed or flowed. On the ſouth ſide of Atooi, a current generally ſet to the weſtward, or north-weſtward: but when we were at anchor off Oneeheow, we found a current ſetting nearly N. W. and S. E. ſix hours each way. This was doubtleſs a regular tide, and the flood appeared to come from the N. W.

The longitude of Sandwich Iſlands, was determined by 72 ſets of lunar obſervations; ſome of which were made while we were at anchor, in the road of Wymoa; others, before we arrived and after we had left it, and reduced to it, by the watch or time-keeper. By the mean reſult of the obſervations, the longitude of the road is 200 deg. 13 min. E. and the latitude, by the mean of two meridian obſervations of the ſun 21 deg. 56 min. 15 ſec. N. We now return to the progreſs of our voyage.

On Monday, the 2nd of February, the Diſcovery having joined us, we ſtood away to the northward, with a gentle gale from the E. On the 7th we were in the latitude of 29 deg. N. longitude 200 deg. E. the wind having veered to the S. E. which enabled us to ſteer N. E. and E. This courſe we continued to the 12th, when the wind having changed, we tacked, and ſtood to the northward, in latitude 30 deg. N. longitude 206 deg. 15 min. E. In this advanced latitude, and even in the winter ſeaſon, we had only begun to feel a ſenſation of cold in the mornings and evenings; a proof of the equal and durable influence of the heat of the ſun, at all times, to 30 degrees on each ſide the line. After that, the diſproportion is known to be very great. This muſt be attributed principally to the direction of the ſun's rays, independent of the bare diſtance, which is not equal to the effect. On Thurſday the 19th, being in latitude 37 deg. N. longitude 206 deg. E. the wind veered to the S. E. and we were again enabled to ſteer to the E. inclining to the N. On the 25th, we reached the latitude of 42 deg. 30 min. longitude 219 deg. when we began to meet with the rock-weed, mentioned in Lord Anſon's voyage, by the name of the ſea-leek, which is generally ſeen by the Manilla ſhips. Since we left Sandwich Iſlands, we had ſcarcely beheld a bird, or any other oceanic animal.

On Sunday, the 1ſt of March, in latitude 44 deg. 49 min. N. and in longitude 228 deg. E. we had moderate and mild weather, which appeared to us very extraordinary, when we were ſo far N. and ſo near an extenſive continent, at this time of the year. Another ſingular circumſtance is, that we ſhould meet with ſo few birds, compared to thoſe we ſaw in the ſame latitudes, to the S. of the line. Hence we may conclude, that, in the ſouthern hemiſphere, beyond 40 deg. the ſpecies are much more numerous, and the iſlands more plentifully ſcattered, than any where near that latitude, between the coaſt of California and Japan. On the morning of the 2nd, during a calm, part of the ſea appeared to be covered with a kind of ſlime, and ſmall ſea animals. When they ſwam about, which they did with eaſe in various directions, they emitted the brighteſt colours of the moſt valuable gems, according to their poſition, reſpecting the light. Some of them were taken up and put into a glaſs of ſalt water, when, at one time, they appeared pellucid, at another diſplaying the various tints of blue, from a pale ſaphirine to a violet, mixed with a kind of ruby, and glowing with ſufficient ſtrength to illuminate the glaſs of water. When the veſſel was held to the ſtrongeſt light, the tints appeared moſt vivid; but almoſt vaniſhed when the animals ſubſided to the bottom, and they had then a browniſh appearance. By candle-light, the colour was, principally, a beautiful pale green, with a kind of burniſhed gloſs: and, in the dark, it faintly exhibited a glowing fire. They are a new ſpecies of *Oniſcus*, called by Mr. Anderſon, *Oniſcus fulgens*, and ſuppoſed to be an animal which contributes to that lucid appearance often obſerved at ſea in the night.

On Friday the 6th, at noon, in latitude 44 deg. N. longitude 234 deg. 30 min. E. we ſaw two ſeals, and ſeveral whales; and on the 7th, early in the morning, the long expected coaſt of New Albion, ſo named by Sir Francis Drake, was deſcried, at the diſtance of ten leagues, extending from N. E. to S. E. At noon we were in latitude 44 deg. 33 min. N. longitude 235 deg. 20 min. E. and the land about eight leagues diſtant. This formed a point at the northern extreme, which our Commodore named Cape Foulweather, from the exceeding bad weather we afterwards met with. After ſeveral attempts attended with many difficulties, on Monday the 9th, we tacked, and ſtood in again for the land; but the wind continually ſhifting, and blowing in ſqualls, with hail and ſleet, obliged us to ſtand off and on, without ſeeing the leaſt ſign of a harbour. The land which we approached on our different tacks, is moderately high, but, in many places, it riſes ſtill higher within. It is diverſified with hills and riſing grounds, many of which are covered with tall ſtraight trees; and others, not ſo high, grew in ſpots, like clumps, but the ſpaces between, and the ſides of the riſing grounds were clear. Such a proſpect in ſummer might be very agreeable, but at this ſeaſon it had an uncomfortable appearance, the bare grounds along the coaſt being covered with ſnow, which ſeemed to lie in abundance between the hills and riſing grounds, and in many places, towards the ſea, had, at a diſtance, the appearance of white cliffs. On the riſing grounds, the ſnow was thinner ſpread; and farther in land, there ſeemed to be none at all. Hence it might, perhaps, be concluded, that the ſnow which we had ſeen towards the ſea, had fallen the preceding night; which was, indeed, the coldeſt we had experienced ſince our arrival on that coaſt; a kind of ſleet fell ſometimes; and the weather became very unſettled. The coaſt appeared almoſt ſtraight in every part, not having any opening or inlet, and terminated in a kind of ſandy beach; though it was imagined by ſome on board, that ſuch appearance was owing to the ſnow. Each extreme of the land ſhot out into a point; the northern one was that which we had ſeen on the 7th, and therefore the Captain called it Cape Perpetua. Its latitude is 44 deg. 6 min. N. and its longitude 235 deg. 52 min. E. The ſouthern extreme was named Cape Gregory. It lies in the latitude of 43 deg. 30 min. N. and in the longitude of 235 deg. 57 min. E. At five o'clock the wind veered to the W. and S. W. which induced us once more to ſtand out to ſea. At this time Cape Perpetua bore N. E. by N. and the fartheſt land to the S. of Cape Gregory S. by E. diſtant about ten or twelve leagues: conſequently, its latitude is 43 deg. 10 min. and its longitude 235 deg. 55 min. E. This is nearly the ſituation of Cape Blanco, diſcovered the 19th of January 1603, by Martin d'Aguilar. It is remarkable that in this very latitude, geographers have placed a large entrance or ſtrait, aſcribing the diſcovery of it to the ſame navigator; whereas nothing more is mentioned in his voyage, than his having diſcovered a large river in this ſituation, which he would have entered, but was hindered by the currents.

The wind being now very unſettled, blowing in ſqualls, attended with ſnow ſhowers, we were obliged to ſtretch to the ſouthward to get clear of the coaſt. On Friday, the 13th, the gale abated, and we ſtood in again for land. On Saturday, the 21ſt in the morning, a breeze ſprung up at S. W. This being attended with fair weather, we ſteered north-eaſterly; and on the 22nd, about eight o'clock A. M. we came in ſight of land, diſtant about nine leagues, being now in latitude 47 deg. 5 min. N. and our longitude 235 deg. 10 min. E. At length we perceived a ſmall opening between what we ſuppoſed to be an iſland, and the northern extreme of the land: here we expected to find a harbour; but our hopes vaniſhed as we drew nearer; and, we were ſoon convinced, that the opening was cloſed by low land. Our diſappointment occaſioned the point of land, to the north, to be named Cape Flattery. Its latitude is 48 deg. 15 min. N. and its longitude 235 deg. 3 min. E. In this latitude geographers have placed the pretended ſtrait of Juan de Fuca. But nothing of that kind preſented itſelf to our view, nor is it probable that any ſuch thing ever exiſted.

On Sunday, the 29th, we were in latitude 49 deg. 29 min. N. and in the longitude of 232 deg. 29 min. E. when we again ſaw land, the neareſt part ſix leagues diſtant. A low point is formed, at the S. E. extreme, off which are ſeveral breakers, on account of which it was called Point Breakers. Its latitude is 49 deg. 15 min. N. and its longitude 233 deg. 20 min. E. The latitude of the other extreme is about 50 deg. and the longitude 232 deg. This laſt was named Woody Point. Between theſe two points a large bay is formed, which the Captain called Hope Bay; hoping, as he ſaid, to find in it a good harbour; and the event proved that he was not miſtaken. As we approached the coaſt, we ſaw the appearance of two inlets; one of which was in the N. W. and the other in the N. E. corner of the bay. We bore up for the latter, and paſſed ſome breakers about a league from the ſhore. As we advanced, the exiſtence of the inlet no longer remained doubtful. At five o'clock we reached the weſt point of it; and ſoon after a breeze ſprung up at N. W. with which we ſtretched into an arm of the inlet, running in to the N. E. Here we were becalmed, and found it neceſſary to anchor in eighty-five fathoms water, and ſo near the ſhore as to be able to reach it with a hawſer. The Diſcovery was becalmed before ſhe got within the arm, where ſhe anchored in 75 fathoms.

At the place where we were firſt becalmed, three canoes came off to the ſhip, in one of which were two men, in another ſix, and in the other ten. Advancing pretty near us, a perſon ſtood up in one of them, and ſpoke for a conſiderable time, inviting us, as we ſuppoſed, by his geſtures to go aſhore; and, at the ſame time continued ſtrewing handfuls of feathers towards us. Some of his companions alſo threw a red powder in the ſame manner. One, in particular, ſung a moſt agreeable air, accompanied with a melodious ſoftneſs. The word haela was repeated frequently as the burden of the ſong. Soon after a breeze ſpringing up brought us cloſer to the ſhore, when the canoes came to viſit us in great numbers; having, at one time, no leſs than thirty-two of them about the ſhip, containing from three to ſeven or eight perſons each, and of both ſexes. One attracted particularly our notice, by its having a peculiar head, with a bird's eye, and an enormous large beak, painted upon it. The chief who was in it, appeared equally remarkable for his ſingular appearance; having a large quantity of feathers hanging from his head, and being ſmeared in a very extraordinary manner. In his hand he had a carved bird of wood, of the ſize of a pigeon, with which he often rattled, like the perſon before mentioned; and was equally vociferous in his harangue, which was accompanied with many expreſſive geſtures. Not any of theſe viſitors could be prevailed upon to come on board. They were very ready, however, to part with any thing they had, and received whatever we offered them in exchange; but they were very ſolicitous after iron, and appeared to be no ſtrangers to that valuable metal.

Having found ſuch excellent ſhelter for our ſhips, in an inlet whoſe coaſts appeared to be inhabited by an inoffenſive race of people, we loſt no time, after coming to anchor, in ſearching for a commodious harbour, where we might be ſtationed during our continuance in the ſound. Upon this ſervice three armed boats were ſent; and on the N. W. of the arm, at a ſmall diſtance from the ſhips, we found a convenient cove: but apprehending we could not tranſport our ſhips to it, and moor them properly, before night had overtaken us, we thought it prudent to continue where we were till the next morning. The whole day we were ſurrounded with plenty of canoes; and a reciprocal trade was commenced between us, conducted with the ſtricteſt harmony and integrity on both ſides. Their articles of commerce were the ſkins of various animals, ſuch as bears, ſea-otters, wolves, foxes, deer, racoons, martins, and pole-cats. They alſo produced a kind of cloathing, fabricated from the bark of a tree, or a plant reſembling hemp: beſides which articles, they had bows, arrows, and ſpears; fiſh-hooks, and various kinds of inſtruments; wooden vizors, repreſenting horrid figures; a ſort of woollen ſtuff; carved work; beads; and red ochre; alſo ſeveral little ornaments of thin braſs and iron reſembling an horſe-ſhoe, which they wear pendant at their noſes. However, among all the articles which they expoſed to ſale, the moſt extraordinary were human ſkulls, and hands, with ſome of the fleſh remaining on them; which they acknowledged they had been feeding on; and ſome of them, indeed, bore evident marks of their having been on the fire. For the various articles they brought, they received in exchange knives, chiſſels, nails, looking glaſſes, buttons, or any kind of metal. They had not much inclination for beads, and rejected every kind of cloth.

On Tueſday, the 31ſt, we were employed in hauling the ſhips into the cove, where they were moored. The Reſolution was now become very leaky in her upper works; on which account the carpenters were ordered to caulk her, and to repair any other defects they might diſcover. In the courſe of this day, the news of our arrival brought vaſt numbers of the natives about our ſhips. At one time we counted above a hundred canoes, each of which, on an average, had five people on board; few containing leſs than three; many having ſeven, eight, or nine; and one was manned with ſeventeen. Many of theſe were new viſitors, which we diſcovered by their orations and ceremonies. If they, at firſt, had apprehended that we meant to be hoſtile, their fears were now removed; for they ventured on board the ſhips, and mixed with our people with the utmoſt freedom and familiarity. We diſcovered, however, by this intercourſe, that they were as fond of pilfering as any we had met with during our voyage; and they were much more miſchievous than any of the other thieves we had found; for, having ſharp inſtruments in their poſſeſſion, they could, the inſtant that our backs were turned, cut a hook from a tackle, or a piece of iron from a rope. They ſtripped our boats of every piece of iron that was worth taking away, though ſome of our men were always left in them as a guard. They were, indeed, ſo dextrous in effecting their purpoſes, that one fellow would contrive to amuſe our people at one end of the boat, while his confederate was forcing off the iron work at the other. If an article that had been ſtolen was immediately miſſed, the thief was eaſily detected, as they were fond of impeaching each other: but the prize was always reluctantly given up by the guilty perſon; and ſometimes compulſive means were obliged to be uſed in order to regain it.

Wedneſday, April the 1ſt, having ſafely moored our ſhips, we proceeded to other neceſſary buſineſs. The obſervatories were taken aſhore, and placed on a rock, on one ſide of the cove. A party of men was ſtationed to cut wood, and clear a place for watering. Having plenty of pine-trees here, others were employed in brewing ſpruce-beer. The forge was alſo erected to make the neceſſary iron-work for repairing the foremaſt. We were daily viſited by a conſiderable number of new comers, who had a ſingular mode of introducing themſelves on their firſt appearance, by paddling, with their utmoſt ſtrength and activity, round both the ſhips, while a chief, ſtanding up with a ſpear in his hand, bawled moſt vociferouſly all the time. The face of this orator was ſometimes covered with a maſk, repreſenting either a human countenance, or that of ſome other animal; and, inſtead of a ſpear, he had a kind of rattle in his hand. Frequently, before they came along ſide, or on board our ſhip, they would entertain us with a ſong, in which their whole company joined. During theſe viſits our principal care was to guard againſt their thievery.

But on Saturday, the 4th of April, we had a very ſerious alarm, for our party on ſhore perceived the natives in all quarters arming, and thoſe who had not proper weapons were collecting ſticks and ſtones. The Captain, hearing this, ordered all our workmen to repair to the rock, whereon our obſervatories had been placed; thus leaving the ſuppoſed enemy in poſſeſſion of the ground where they aſſembled, which was within about one hundred yards of our ſtern. We ſoon found, however, that theſe hoſtile preparations were directed againſt a body of their own countrymen, who were advancing to attack them; and our friends of the Sound, perceiving our apprehenſions, exerted their beſt endeavours to convince us, that this was really the caſe. The adverſe party, on board about twelve large canoes, at length drew up in line of battle, off the South point of the cove. A negociation for the reſtoration of peace was now commenced; in the courſe of which ſeveral people in canoes paſſed between the two parties, and ſome debates enſued. At length the matter in diſpute appeared to be adjuſted; but the ſtrangers were not permitted to approach our ſhips. It is moſt likely we were the principal occaſion of the quarrel; the ſtrangers, perhaps, inſiſting on having a right of ſharing in the advantages of a trade with us; and our firſt friends reſolving to engroſs us entirely to themſelves. We were convinced of this on many other occaſions; nay, even among thoſe who lived in the ſound, the weaker were often obliged to ſubmit to the ſtronger party, and were plundered of every thing, without even attempting to make any reſiſtance.

Sunday, the 5th, the carpenter diſcovered the cheeks of the foremaſt to be rotten, and began to ſupply it with new ones. It was fortunate that theſe defects ſhould be diſcovered, when we were ſo commodiouſly ſituated, as to be able to procure the materials that were requiſite. On the 7th, while the fore-maſt was repairing, the Captain ordered a new ſet of main-rigging to be fitted. From our putting into the ſound to this day, the weather had been remarkably fine; but in the morning of the 8th we had rain with a freſh gale, and in the evening it blew extremely hard: but though theſe tempeſtuous blaſts ſucceeded each other quickly, they were of ſhort duration; yet we had the misfortune to have our mizen-maſt give way at the head. About eight o'clock, the gale abated, but the rain continued, almoſt without intermiſſion. During theſe ſqualls the natives frequently brought us ſmall cod, ſmall bream, or ſardine, and a ſupply of other fiſh. Sunday the 12th, in the evening, we received a viſit from a tribe of natives, whom we had not ſeen before, and who, in general, made a better appearance than our old friends. When conducted into the cabin, there was not an object that fixed their attention; all our novelties were looked on with indifference, except by a very few, who ſhewed a certain degree of curioſity. On Thurſday the 16th, when our carpenters had made a conſiderable progreſs on the mizen-maſt, they diſcovered that the tree on which they were at work, was wounded, owing, it was imagined, to ſome accident in cutting it down. It therefore became neceſſary to procure another tree out of the woods, on which work all hands were employed about half a day. During this operation, many of the natives were gazing on with an inexpreſſible ſurprize, which, from their general inattention, we did not expect. On Saturday, the 18th, a party of ſtrangers, in ſeven or eight canoes, came into the cove, and after looking at us for ſome time, retired. We concluded, that our old friends would not ſuffer them to have any dealings with us. It was evident, indeed, that the neighbouring inhabitants engroſſed us entirely to themſelves; and that they carried on a traffic with more diſtant tribes, in thoſe articles they had received from us: for they frequently diſappeared four or five days together, and returned with freſh cargoes of curioſities and ſkins. Such of them as viſited us daily, after having diſpoſed of their trifles, employed themſelves in fiſhing, and we always partook of what they caught: we alſo procured from them a conſiderable quantity of good animal oil, which they brought to us in bladders. Some, indeed, attempted to cheat us, by mixing water with oil; and once or twice they ſo far impoſed upon us, as to fill their bladders with water only. In exchange for their articles of traffic, metal was generally demanded by our viſitors; and braſs had now ſupplanted iron, being ſought after, with ſuch eagerneſs, that before we left the ſound, ſcarcely a bit of it was to be found in the ſhips, except what conſtituted a part of our neceſſary inſtruments: ſuits of cloaths were ſtripped of their buttons; bureaus of their furniture; kettles, canniſters, and candleſticks, all went to rack; ſo that our American friends procured from us a greater variety of things, than any other nation we had viſited.

On Sunday, the 19th, moſt of our work being now finiſhed, Captain Cook ſet out the next morning to ſurvey the ſound. Proceeding firſt to the weſt point, we diſcovered a large village, and, before it a very ſnug harbour, with from nine to four fathoms water. The inhabitants of this village, who were nnmerous, and to many of whom the Commodore was no ſtranger, received him with great courteſy, every one preſſing him to enter his apartment; for ſeveral families have habitations under the ſame roof. He accepted politely the invitations, and the hoſpitable friends whom we viſited, teſtified every mark of civility and reſpect. In many of theſe habitations women were employed, in making dreſſes of the bark or plant already mentioned, and executed their buſineſs much like the natives of New Zealand: others were buſy in opening ſardines; large ſhoals of which we have ſeen brought on ſhore, and meaſured out to ſeveral people, who carried them home, where they performed the operation of curing them: this is done by ſmoke-drying. They are hung upon ſmall rods; at firſt, about a foot over the fire; they are then removed higher and higher, to make room for others. When dried, they are cloſely packed in bales, and the bales covered with mats. Thus they are preſerved till wanted, and are not unpleaſant food. They alſo cure cod, and other large fiſh in the ſame manner; but theſe are ſometimes dried in the open air. Leaving this village, we proceeded up the weſt ſide of the ſound. For near three miles we ſaw ſeveral ſmall iſlands, ſo ſituated as to form ſome convenient harbours, the depths being from thirty to ſeven fathoms. About two leagues within the ſound, on the ſame ſide, an arm runs in the direction of N. N. W. and another in the ſame direction about two miles farther. About a mile above the ſecond arm we found the ruins of a village. The framings of the houſes remained ſtanding, but the boards or roofs were taken away. Behind this deſerted village is a ſmall plain, covered with the largeſt pine-trees we had ever ſeen. This was ſingular, as moſt of the elevated ground on this ſide the ſound appeared rather naked. Paſſing from hence to the eaſt ſide, we obſerved, what we had before imagined, that it was an iſland, under which the ſhips lay; and that many ſmaller ones lay ſcattered about on the weſt ſide of it. Upon the main land, oppoſite the north end of our iſland, we ſaw a village, and landed there, but our Commodore was not ſo politely received by the inhabitants, as by thoſe of the other village he had viſited. This cold reception was occaſioned by one ſurly chief, who would not ſuffer him to enter their houſes, making expreſſive ſigns, that he was impatient for him to be gone. Captain Cook endeavoured in vain to ſooth him with preſents: theſe he did not refuſe, though he continued the ſame kind of behaviour. But, notwithſtanding this treatment from the inhoſpitable chief, ſome of the young women expeditiouſly apparelled themſelves in their beſt habiliments, aſſembled in a body, and, joining in an agreeable ſong, gave us a hearty welcome. Evening now drawing on, Captain Cook propoſed returning, and we proceeded for the ſhips round the north end of the iſland. When returned aboard, we were informed that in our abſence, ſome ſtrangers from the S. E. had viſited our people in the ſhips, who purchaſed of them two ſilver table ſpoons, that appeared to be of Spaniſh manufacture. They were worn round the neck of one of thoſe viſitors by way of ornament.

Wedneſday, the 22d, about eight o'clock A. M. we were viſited by a number of ſtrangers from the ſouthward. After their departure the two Captains, Cook, and Clerk, went in their own boats to the village at the weſt point, where our Commodore had been two days before, and had obſerved that plenty of graſs was to be had near it; and it was neceſſary to get a ſupply of this, for the few remaining goats and ſheep that were ſtill on board. We received the ſame welcome reception as before, and our Commodore ordered ſome of the people to begin cutting: not imagining the natives would object to our furniſhing ourſelves with what could not be of any uſe to them, though eſſentially neceſſary for us. In this, however, we were miſtaken, for as ſoon as our men began cutting the graſs, ſome of the inhabitants would not permit them to proceed, ſaying, "Makook," ſignifying, that we muſt buy them firſt. During this event, Captain Cook was in one of the houſes, but, hearing of it, he repaired immediately to the field, where he found about us, a dozen claimants of different parts of the graſs, that grew on the premiſes. The Commodore treated with them for it, and having complied with the terms of his purchaſe, thought we had now full liberty to cut whatever we pleaſed. Here he was again miſtaken; for he had ſo liberally paid the firſt pretended proprietors, that freſh demands were made from others, ſo that every ſingle blade of graſs might have had a ſeparate owner; and ſo many of them were to be ſatisfied, that his pockets preſently became empty. When they were convinced of this laſt ſtriking circumſtance, they ceaſed to be importunate, and we were permitted to cut where we thought proper, and as much as we pleaſed. Here it is worthy of obſervation, that we never met with any uncivilized nation, or tribe, who poſſeſſed ſuch ſtrict notions of their having an excluſive property in the produce of their country, as the inhabitants of this ſound. They even wanted our people to pay for the wood and water that were carried aboard. Had Captain Cook been preſent when theſe demands were made, he would doubtleſs have complied with them; but our workmen thought differently, and paid little or no attention to ſuch claims. The natives thinking we were determined to pay not the leaſt conſideration, at length ceaſed to apply for the ſame: but they frequently took occaſion to remind us, that their eſteem for us had induced them to make us a preſent of wood and water. Having completed all their operations at this village, the natives and the two Captains took a friendly leave of each other, and we returned to the ſhips in the afternoon.

The 23d, 24th, and 25th, were employed in preparing for ſea; the ſails were bent; the obſervatories and other articles were removed from the ſhore; and both ſhips put into a proper condition for ſailing. On Sunday the 26th, the Commodore intended to have ſet ſail, but having both wind and tide againſt us, we were under a neceſſity of waiting till noon, when the tide turning in our favour, the ſhips were towed out of the cove. At four o'clock P. M. the mercury in the barometer ſunk uncommonly low, and we had every appearance of an approaching ſtorm from the ſouthward: But the Captain's anxiety to proſecute the voyage, and the fear of loſing ſo good an opportunity of getting out of the ſound, operated more ſtrongly upon his mind than the apprehenſion of danger, and he reſolved to put to ſea. We were attended by the natives till we were almoſt out of the ſound; ſome in their canoes, and others on board the ſhips. One of the chiefs who had particularly attached himſelf to Captain Cook, was among the laſt who parted from us. The Captain a little time before we got under way, made him a ſmall preſent; for which he received, in return, a beaver ſkin of much ſuperior value. For this reaſon the Captain made an addition to his preſent, which pleaſed the chief ſo highly, that he preſented to the Commodore the beaver-ſkin cloak which he then wore, and of which he was particularly fond. Struck with this inſtance of generoſity, and wiſhing him not to be a ſufferer by his gratitude, Captain Cook inſiſted upon his acceptance of a new baoad-ſword, with a braſs hilt, with which he appeared greatly delighted. We were earneſtly importuned by the chief, and many of his countrymen, to pay them another viſit; who, by way of inducement, promiſed to procure a large ſtock of ſkins. Before we continue the progreſs of our voyage, we think it may be no ſmall entertainment to our readers, to compriſe in the remainder of this chapter further particulars relative to the country and its inhabitants.

The inlet in which our ſhips were moored is called by the natives Nootka, but Captain Cook gave it the name of King George's Sound. The entrance is in the eaſt corner of Hope Bay, in latitude 49 deg. 33 min. N. longitude 233 deg. 12 min. E. The eaſt coaſt is covered by a chain of ſunken rocks, and, near the ſound, are ſome iſlands and rocks above water. We enter the ſound between two rocky points, lying E. S. E. and W. N. W. from each other, diſtant four miles. The ſound widens within theſe points, and extends to the northward at leaſt four leagues. In the middle of it are a number of iſlands of various ſizes. The depth of water, not only in the middle of the ſound, but alſo cloſe to ſome parts of the ſhore, is from 47 to 90 fathoms, or more. Within its circuit, the harbours and anchoring places are numerous. The cove, where our ſhips anchored, is on the eaſt ſide of the ſound, and alſo on the eaſt of the largeſt iſland. Its principal recommendation is that of being covered from the ſea; for it is expoſed to the S. E. winds, which ſometimes blow with great violence. Upon the ſea coaſt, the land is tolerably high; but, within the ſound, it riſes into ſteep hills, which have a uniform appearance, ending in roundiſh tops, with ſharp ridges on their ſides. Many of theſe hills are high; all of them are covered to their ſummits with the thickeſt woods. The ſoil upon them is produced from rotten moſſes and trees, of the depth of about two feet. Their foundations are nothing more than ſtupendous rocks; of a grey or whitiſh caſt when expoſed to the weather; but, when broken, are of a bluiſh grey colour. The rocky ſhores conſiſt entirely of this; and the beaches of the little coves in the ſound are compoſed of fragments of it.

The climate appears to be infinitely milder than that on the eaſt coaſt of America, under the ſame parallel of latitude. We perceived no froſt in any of the low ground; but on the contrary, vegetation proceeded very briſkly, for, at this time, we ſaw graſs upwards of a foot long. The trees of which the woods are compoſed are the Canadian pine, white cypreſs, and two or three other ſorts of pine. The two firſt are in the greateſt abundance. At a diſtance they reſemble each other; but they are eaſily diſtinguiſhed on a nearer view, the cypreſs being of a paler green than the other. In general, the trees grow here with great vigour, and are of a large ſize. About the rocks and borders of the woods, we ſaw ſome ſtrawberry plants, raſberry, currant, and gooſeberry buſhes, all in a flouriſhing ſtate. We found alſo a few black alder-trees; a ſpecies of ſow-thiſtle; ſome crows-foot with a fine crimſon flower, and two ſorts of Anthericum. We met with ſome wild roſes-buſhes, juſt budding: ſome young leeks, a ſmall ſort of graſs, and ſome water creſſes; beſides a great abundance of andromeda. The ſeaſon of the year did not permit us to acquire much knowledge of the vegetables of this country; and being in a cove, on an iſland, all the animals that we ſaw alive were two or three racoons, martins, ſquirrels; and ſome of our people who landed on the continent, on the ſouth-eaſt ſide of the Sound, obſerved the prints of a bear's feet, not far from the ſhore; but we could only judge of the quadrupeds from the ſkins purchaſed of the inhabitants, and theſe were ſometimes ſo mutilated, that we could not even gueſs to what ſpecies of animals they belonged, though others were ſo perfect as not to admit a doubt about them. The moſt common of theſe laſt ſorts were bears, deer, foxes, and wolves. Bear-ſkins are in abundance, but not very large; their colour is generally a ſhining black. The deer-ſkins are not ſo plentiful, and appear to belong to what the inhabitants of North-Carolina in America, call the fallow-deer; but Mr. Millar, in his New Syſtem of Natural Hiſtory diſtinguiſhes it by the name of Virginian deer, and thinks it quite a different ſpecies from ours. Our very numerous friends and ſubſcribers will not be diſpleaſed if we here give a deciſive opinion in favour of that Entire New, Cheap, and Capital Work, MILLAR'S REAL

New Body of Natural History, to be compleated in ſixty weekly numbers, price only ſixpence each, and now publiſhing with univerſal approbation, may be ſaid, without the leaſt particle of flattery, to be far ſuperior to every other publication of the kind. May merit alone ever have the preference and encouragement, with the unprejudiced and diſintereſted public, is our ſincere and hearty wiſh! But to proceed. The foxes are numerous, and of ſeveral varieties; the ſkins of ſome being yellow, with a black tip at the tail; others of a reddiſh yellow, intermixed with black. We met with an entire wolf's ſkin, which was grey. Here is the common martin, the pine martin, and another of a lighter brown colour. The ermine in this country is ſmall, and not very common; nor is its hair remarkably fine. The animal is entirely white, except about an inch at the tip of the tail. The racoons and ſquirrels are of the common ſpecies, but not ſo large as in other parts of the world. Hogs, dogs, and goats, have not yet made their appearance in this place.

The ſea animals ſeen off the coaſt were whales, porpoiſes, and ſeals; the laſt of theſe ſeem only of the common ſort. Though ſea-otters are amphibious, yet we may conſider them as belonging to this claſs, as living principally in the water. The fur of theſe animals, as mentioned in the Ruſſian accounts, is certainly ſofter and finer than that of any other animals known by the Europeans; conſequently the diſcovery of this part of the continent of North-America, where ſo valuable an article of commerce may be met with, cannot be a matter of indifference. Mr. Coxe, in his Ruſſian Diſcoveries, on the authority of Mr. Pallas, ſays, that the old and middle-aged ſea-otters ſkins are ſold at Kiatchta, by the Ruſſians to the Chineſe, from 80 to 100 rubles a ſkin, that is from 16l. to 20l. each.

The birds that frequent the waters and the ſhores are far from being numerous: they are very ſhy, owing, perhaps, to their being continually harraſſed by the natives, either to eat, or for their feathers to be worn as ornaments. We met with humming birds, different in ſome reſpects from the various ſorts already known of this delicate little animal. Shags and gulls are alſo frequent in the Sound. Some ſwans too were ſeen flying to the northward, but we know not their haunts. Here are two ſorts of wild ducks; one black, with a white head; the other white, with a red bill, but of a larger ſize: alſo the greater Lumme, or diver, found in the northern parts of Europe. On the ſhores we found a ſand-piper, not unlike the burre, a plover, reſembling our common lark, and two kinds of wood-peckers, one ſmaller than a thruſh, the other larger and more elegant.

Fiſh are more plentiful than birds. The principal ſorts we found were the common herring, not exceeding ſeven inches in length; a ſmaller ſort, of the ſame kind with the anchovy, though rather larger: a ſilver coloured bream, and another of a brown colour, with narrow blue ſtripes. Sharks ſometimes frequent the ſound, for the natives have ſome of their teeth in their poſſeſſion. About the rocks there is an abundance of large muſcles, many of a ſpan long; in ſome of which are large pearls; but they are not pleaſing either in colour or ſhape. Red coral is to be found either on the coaſt or in the ſound, large branches of it having been ſeen in the canoes of the natives. The only reptiles obſerved here were brown ſnakes, about two feet in length, having whitiſh ſtripes on the back and ſides; and browniſh water lizards. The former are quite harmleſs. The inſect tribe ſeem to be much more numerous.

We found here both iron and copper, but we do not think either of them belong to this place. We did not ſee the ores of any metals, except a coarſe red ochry ſubſtance, uſed by the natives in painting or ſtaining their faces and bodies; they had alſo a black and white pigment made uſe of for the ſame purpoſe. Excluſive of the rock, which forms the ſhores and mountains, we found among the natives ſome things made of a hard black granite, not very compact, nor fine grained; alſo a greyiſh whetſtone; the common oil ſtone; and a black ſort, little inferior to the hone ſtone. They had likewiſe pieces of rock chryſtal. We could not obtain this from them without a very valuable return.

As to the natives, their perſons, in general, are under the common ſtature; uſually pretty plump, but not muſcular; the forehead low; the eyes ſmall, black, and rather languiſhing, than ſparkling; the mouth round, with large, thick lips; the teeth tolerably equal and well ſet. Their eye-brows are alſo ſcanty, and always narrow: but the hair of the head is in great abundance, very coarſe and ſtrong; and, without a ſingle exception, black, ſtraight, and lank. Some have no beards; others only a thin one on the point of the chin; for they pluck it out elſewhere by the roots; and thoſe who do not thus eradicate it, have not only conſiderable beards, on every part of the chin, but alſo whiſkers, or muſtachios, running from the upper lip to the lower jaw obliquely downward; whence we may conclude, that it is a miſtaken notion, though eſpouſed by eminent writers, that American Indians have no beards. The limbs, in all of them, are ſmall in proportion to the other parts; beſides they are crooked and ill-formed, having projecting ancles, and large feet, awkwardly ſhaped. Their colour could never be determined poſitively, as their bodies were incruſted with paint and dirt. The women are nearly of the ſame ſize with the men, from whom it is not eaſy to diſtinguiſh them, as they poſſeſs no natural delicacies ſufficient to render their perſons agreeable. A certain ſameneſs characterizes both ſexes; dulneſs, and want of expreſſion, being viſibly pourtrayed in every viſage. In common, their dreſs is a flaxen kind of mantle, ornamented with a narrow ſtripe of fur on the upper edge, and fringes at the lower one. Paſſing under the left arm, it is tied by taſſels over the right ſhoulder. Sometimes they faſten the mantle round the waiſt with a girdle of coarſe matting; over which is worn a ſmall cloak of the ſame ſubſtance, fringed at the bottom, and reaching to the waiſt. They wear a cap, in ſhape of a flower-pot, made of very fine matting, ornamented with a bunch of leathern taſſels, and having a ſtring paſſing under the chin, to prevent its blowing off. Beſides the above dreſs, which is common to both ſexes, the men throw frequently over their other garments the ſkin of a bear, wolf, or ſea-otter, with the hair outward, and tie it as a cloak, near the upper part, wearing it ſometimes before, and ſometimes behind. Was this dreſs kept clean, it would by no means be inelegant; but as they are continually rubbing their bodies over with a red paint, mixed with oil, their garments become greaſy, and contract a rancid offenſive ſmell. The appearance, indeed, of theſe people is both wretched and filthy, and their heads and garments ſwarm with lice. So loſt are they to every idea of cleanlineſs, that we frequently ſaw them pick off theſe vermin, and eat them with the greateſt compoſure. Their faces are ornamented with a variety of colours; a black, a brighter red, or a white colour: the laſt of theſe gives them a ghaſtly appearance. Over the paint they ſtrew the brown martial mica, which cauſes it to glitter. Many of their ears are perforated in the lobe, where they make a large hole, and two ſmaller ones higher up on the outer edge. In theſe holes are hung bits of bone, quills faſtened upon a leathern thong, ſhells, bunches of taſſels, or thin pieces of copper. In ſome, the ſeptum of the noſe is alſo perforated, and a piece of cord drawn through it. Others wear, at the ſame place, pieces of copper, braſs, or iron, ſhaped ſomewhat like a horſe-ſhoe, the narrow opening receiving the ſeptum, ſo that it may be pinched gently by the two points, and thus the ornament hangs over the upper lip. Their bracelets, which they wear about their wriſts, are bunches of white bugle beads, or thongs with taſſels, or a black, broad, horny, ſhining ſubſtance. Round their ancles they wear frequently leathern thongs, or the ſinews of animals curiouſly twiſted. Beſides theſe, their ordinary dreſſes, they have ſome that are uſed only when going forth to war, and exhibiting themſelves to ſtrangers in ceremonial viſits. Among theſe are the ſkins of bears or wolves, tied on like their other garments, but edged with broad borders of fur, ornamented ingeniouſly with various figures,

figures. They are worn ſeparately, or over their common cloathing. The moſt uſual head-dreſs, on theſe occaſions, is a quantity of withe, wrapped about the head, with large feathers, particularly thoſe of eagles ſtuck in it, or entirely covered with ſmall white feathers. At the ſame time the face is variouſly painted, the upper and lower parts being of oppoſite colours, and the ſtrokes having the appearance of large gaſhes; or it is beſmeared with a kind of fat or tallow, mixed with paint, formed into a great variety of figures, ſomewhat like carved work. The hair, ſometimes, is ſeparated into ſmall parcels, and tied, at intervals, with thread: others tie it behind, after the Engliſh faſhion. Thus equipped, they have a truly ſavage and ridiculous appearance, which is much heightened when they aſſume their monſtrous decorations. Theſe conſiſt of a great variety of wooden maſks, applied to the face, forehead, or upper part of the head. Some of the viſors reſemble human faces, having hair, beards, and eyebrows; others repreſent the heads of birds, and various animals, ſuch as deer, porpoiſes, wolves, &c. Such kind of repreſentations exceed generally the natural ſize, and they are frequently ſtrewed with pieces of the mica, which makes them glitter, and augments their deformity. In theſe imaginary decorations, they ſometimes run into greater exceſs, and fix large pieces of carved work upon the head, projecting to a conſiderable diſtance, and reſembling the prow of a canoe. Whether theſe extravagant maſquerade ornaments are uſed on any religious occaſion, or in any kind of diverſion, or whether they are intended to intimidate by their monſtrous appearance, or as decoys when hunting animals, is uncertain. One of the dreſſes ſeems peculiarly adapted to war: It is a thick tanned leathern mantle, double, and appears to be the ſkin of an elk, or buffalo. This is faſtened on in the ordinary manner, and is ſo contrived as to cover the breaſt quite up to the throat; part of it, at the ſame time, falling down to their heels. This garment is curiouſly painted, and is ſtrong enough, as we underſtood from them, ro reſiſt even ſpears; ſo that it may be conſidered as their completeſt defenſive armour. Though we cannot view theſe people without a kind of horror, when they are thus ſtrangely apparelled, yet when diveſted of theſe extravagant dreſſes, and beheld in their common habit, they ſeem to be of a quiet, phlegmatic diſpoſition, though deficient in vivacity, to render themſelves agreeable in ſociety. They are rather reſerved than loquacious; but their gravity ſeems conſtitutional, and not the reſult of any particular mode of education: for the orations made by them on public occaſions, are little more than ſhort ſentences, or only ſingle words, forcibly repeated in one tone of voice, accompanied with a ſingle geſture at every ſentence. From their offering human ſkulls and bones to ſale, there is not the leaſt reaſon to doubt of their treating their enemies with a ſavage cruelty; but, as this circumſtance rather marks a general agreement of character among almoſt every uncivilized tribe, in every age and country, they are not to be reproached with any charge of peculiar inhumanity. We had not any reaſon to judge unfavourably of their diſpoſition in this reſpect: they appear to be docile, courteous, and good-natured; but, notwithſtanding their phlegmatic temper, they are quick in reſenting injuries; yet, like all paſſionate people, they forget them quickly. It muſt be admitted, that they are not wholly unſuſceptible of the tender paſſions, which is evident from their being fond of muſic, and that too of the pathetic kind.

Their ſongs are generally ſlow and ſolemn. Sonnets were ſung by ſingle performers, keeping time by ſtriking the hand againſt the thigh. A rattle, and a ſmall whiſtle, are the only inſtruments of muſic which we ſaw among them. The rattle is uſed when they ſing; but upon what occaſions the whiſtle is employed, we know not, unleſs it be when they aſſume the figures of particular animals, and endeavour to imitate their howl or cry. We once ſaw one of theſe people dreſſed in the ſkin of a wolf, with the head covering his own, ſtriving to imitate that animal, by making a ſqueaking noiſe with a whiſtle he had in his mouth. The rattles are generally in th ſhape of a bird, with ſmall pebbles in the belly, and the tail is the handle. We obſerved another ſort, which reſembles a child's rattle.

In trafficking with us, ſome of them diſplayed a diſpoſition to knavery; taking away our goods without making any return. But the inſtances of this were rare, and we had abundant reaſon to approve the integrity of their conduct. However, their eagerneſs to poſſeſs iron, braſs, or any kind of metal, was ſo great, that when an opportunity preſented itſelf, few of them could reſiſt the temptation to ſteal it. The inhabitants of the South-ſea iſlands in their petty larcenies were actuated by a childiſh diſpoſition, rather than a thieviſh one. The novelty of the object excited their curioſity, and was a ſufficient inducement for them to get poſſeſſion of it by any means: but the natives of Nootka, who made free with our property, are entitled to no ſuch apology. The appellation of thieves is certainly applicable to them; for they well knew that what they pilfered from us would be ſubſervient to the private purpoſes of utility; and it was fortunate for us, that metals were the only articles upon which they ſet any value; but thefts are very common among themſelves, producing continually quarrels, of which we ſaw ſeveral inſtances.

The two villages we viſited are probably the only inhabited parts of the ſound. The number of inhabitants may be computed from the canoes that viſited our ſhips the ſecond day after our arrival. They conſiſted of about a hundred, which upon an average, contained, at leaſt, five perſons each; but as there were very few women, children, or young men among them, we may reaſonably ſuppoſe, that the number of ſouls in the two villages, could not be leſs than four times the number of our viſitors, being in the whole two thouſand. The village, ſituated at the entrance of the ſound, ſtands on the ſide of a pretty ſteep aſcent, extending from the beach to the wood. There are holes, or windows, in the ſides of the houſes to look out at, having bits of mats hung before them, to prevent the rain getting in. Their houſes, in the inſide, may, with propriety, be compared to a long Engliſh ſtable with a double range of ſtalls, and a board paſſage in the middle; for the different families are ſeparated only by a piece of plank. Cloſe to the ſides, in each of theſe parts, is a bench of boards, raiſed five or ſix feet higher than the reſt of the floor, and covered with mats, whereon the family ſit and ſleep. Theſe benches are commonly ſeven or eight feet long, and four or five broad. In the middle of the floor, between them, is the fire-place, which has neither hearth nor chimney. This part appeared common to them all. The naſtineſs and ſtench of their houſes are at leaſt equal to the confuſion within; for, as they dry their fiſh within doors, they alſo gut them there, which, with their bones and fragments, thrown down at meals, and the addition of other ſorts of filth, lie every where in heaps, and are, it ſhould ſeem, never carried away, till they become troubleſome, from their ſize, to walk over them. In a word, their houſes are as filthy as hog-ſties; every thing in and about them ſtinking of fiſh, train oil and ſmoke. Their furniture conſiſts chiefly of cheſts and boxes of various ſizes, piled upon each other, at the ſides or ends of each houſe, wherein they depoſit all their valuables, ſuch as ſkins, garments, maſks, &c. Many of theſe boxes are painted black, and ſtudded with the teeth of animals, or rudely decorated with figures of birds carved. To complete the ſcene of confuſion, in different parts of their habitations are hung up implements of fiſhing, and other articles. Among theſe we may reckon their images, which are nothing more than the trunks of large trees, of the height of about four feet, placed at the upper end of the apartment, with a human face carved on the front, and the hands and arms upon the ſides. Theſe figures are variouſly painted, and make, upon the whole, a ridiculous appearance. They are called generally Klumma. A ſort of curtain, made of mat, uſually hung before the images, which the natives were ſometimes unwilling to remove; and when they did conſent to unveil them, they ſeemed to expreſs themſelves in a very myſterious manner; and yet they were held in no very extraordinary degree of eſtimation, ſeeing, with a ſmall quantity of braſs or iron, all the idols in the place might have been purchaſed. Mr. Webber, when drawing a view of the inſide of a houſe, wherein thoſe figures were placed, was interrupted in his work by one of the inhabitants. Mr. Webber, thinking a bribe would have a proper effect, preſented to him a metal-button from his coat, which immediately operated as was intended: ſoon after he was again interrupted by the ſame man, who held a mat before the figures: our gentleman therefore gave him another button, and was again ſuffered to proceed. The man then renewed his former tricks, till Mr. Webber had parted with every ſingle button; after which he received not any farther moleſtation.

As to the domeſtic life of theſe people, the men ſeem to be chiefly employed in fiſhing and killing animals, for the ſuſtenance of their families, few of them being engaged in any houſehold buſineſs; but the women were employed in manufacturing their garments; and in curing ſardines, which they alſo carry from the canoes to their houſes. They alſo go in ſmall canoes, to gather muſcles, and other ſhell-fiſh. In the labour of the paddle they are as dextrous as the men, who ſhew them very little reſpect or attention on this, or any other occaſion. But the young men are remarkably indolent, ſitting generally about in ſcattered companies, baſking in the ſun, or wallowing in the ſand upon the beach, like ſo many hogs, without any kind of covering. This diſregard of decency was, however, confined ſolely to the males; for the females were always cloathed, and behaved with great propriety, meriting juſtly commendation for a modeſt baſhfulneſs, ſo becoming that ſex. In the women of this place, it is the more meritorious, as the men have not the leaſt ſenſe of ſhame. Both ſexes paſs much of their time in their canoes, eſpecially in the ſummer; in which they eat, ſleep, and frequently lie to baſk themſelves in the ſun; for theſe purpoſes they are ſufficiently ſpacious, and are, in rainy weather, more comfortable habitations than their filthy houſes.

Though their food, ſtrictly ſpeaking, may be ſaid to conſiſt of every thing animal or vegetable that they can procure, yet the quantity of the latter bears an exceeding ſmall proportion to that of the former. Their greateſt reliance for food is upon the ſea, as affording fiſh, muſcles, ſmaller ſhell-fiſh, and ſea-animals. Among the firſt are herrings, ſardines, two ſpecies of bream, and ſome ſmall cod. The herrings and ſardines not only ſerve to be eaten freſh in their ſeaſon, but to be dried and ſmoaked as ſtores. The roes of theſe alſo, ſtrewed upon the branches of the Canadian pine, or prepared upon a long ſea graſs, afford them another grand reſource for food. They alſo eat the roe of ſome other large fiſh, that has a very rancid ſmell and taſte. The large muſcles are found in great abundance in the ſound. After having roaſted them in their ſhells, they are ſtuck upon long wooden ſkewers, and taken off as they are wanted to be eaten. They require no other preparation, though they are ſometimes dipped in oil, as ſauce. The porpoiſe is a food more common among them, than that of any other animal in their ſea; the fleſh and rind of which they cut into large pieces, dry them as they do herrings, and eat them without farther preparation. They alſo make a ſort of broth from the porpoiſe, when freſh, in a very ſingular manner. They put ſome pieces of it into a wooden veſſel, containing a ſufficient quantity of water, into which they throw heated ſtones. This operation is repeated till the contents are ſuppoſed to be ſtewed enough. This is a common diſh among them, and ſeems to be a ſtrong nouriſhing food. They likewiſe feed probably upon whales, ſeals, and ſea-otters, the ſkins of the two latter being common among them, and they are furniſhed with implements of all ſorts for their deſtruction, though perhaps they may not be able, at all ſeaſons, to catch them in great plenty. However, from theſe, and other ſea-animals, they procure oil in great abundance, which they uſe, mixed with other food, as ſauce; and often ſip it alone with a kind of horn-ſcoop. Their freſh ſkins, at this time, were very ſcarce; as were the land animals; for we ſaw no fleſh belonging to the latter; and, though their ſkins were to be had in plenty, they might, perhaps, have been procured from other tribes. From theſe and other circumſtances, it plainly appeared to us, that theſe people are furniſhed with the principal part of their animal food by the ſea; if we except a few gulls, and ſome other birds, which they ſhoot with their arrows. Their only winter vegetables ſeem to be the Canadian pine-branches, and ſea-graſs; but, as the ſpring advances, they uſe others as they come in ſeaſon. The moſt common of theſe were two ſorts of roots, of a mild ſweetiſh taſte, which are eaten raw; as is alſo a ſmall, ſweetiſh root, about the thickneſs of ſarſaparilla. As the ſeaſon advances, they have doubtleſs many others which we did not ſee: for, though there is not the leaſt appearance of cultivation among them, there are plenty of elder, gooſeberry, and currant buſhes. One of the conditions, however, which they ſeem to require in all their food, is, that it ſhould be of the leſs acrid kind: for they would not touch the leek or garlic, though they ſold us great quantities of it, when they underſtood it was what we liked. They ſeemed not to reliſh any of our food, and rejected our ſpirituous liquors as diſguſting and unnatural. It is their ordinary practice to roaſt or broil their food; for they are abſolute ſtrangers to our method of boiling, as appears from their manner of preparing porpoiſe broth; beſides, as they have only wooden veſſels, it is impoſſible for them to perform ſuch an operation. Their manner of eating correſponds with the naſtineſs of their houſes and perſons; for the platters and troughs, out of which they eat their victuals, ſeem never to have been waſhed ſince their original formation; the dirty remains of a former meal, being only ſwept away by a ſucceeding one. Every thing ſolid and tough, they tear to pieces with their hands and teeth; for though their knives are employed in cutting off the larger portions, they have not yet endeavoured to reduce theſe to mouthfuls by the ſame means, though more cleanly and convenient. But they do not poſſeſs even an idea of cleanlineſs, and eat conſtantly the roots which are dug out of the ground, without attempting to ſhake off the ſoil that adheres to them. Whether they have any ſet time for their meals we never could find out, having ſeen them eat at all hours in their canoes. But having obſerved ſeveral meſſes of porpoiſe broth preparing about noon, when we went to the village, they may probably make a principal meal about that time.

Theſe people have bows, and arrows, ſpears, ſlings, ſhort truncheons made of bone, and a ſmall pick-axe, ſomewhat reſembling the common American tomahawk. Some of the arrows are pointed with iron, and others with indented bone: the ſpear has uſually a long point made of bone. The tomahawk is a ſtone of the length of ſeven or eight inches, one end terminating in a point, and the other fixed in a wooden handle. This is intended to reſemble the head and neck of a human figure; the ſtone being fixed in the mouth ſo as to repreſent a tongue of a great magnitude. To heighten the reſemblance, human hair is alſo fixed to it. This weapon is called taaweeſh; and they have another made of ſtone, which they call ſeeaik, about ten or twelve inches long, having a ſquare point. From the number of their weapons it may be reaſonably concluded, that they engage frequently in cloſe combat; and we had very diſagreeable proofs of their wars being both frequent and bloody, from the quantity of human ſkulls that were offered to us for ſale.

With reſpect to the deſign and execution of their manufactures, and mechanic arts, they are more extenſive and ingenious than could poſſibly be expected from the natural diſpoſition of the people, and the little progreſs they have made in civilization. The flaxen and woollen garments engage their firſt care, as being the moſt material of thoſe that may be claſſed under the head of manufactures. The former are fabricated from the bark of the pine-tree, beat into a maſs reſembling hemp. After having been prepared in a proper manner, it is ſpread upon a ſtick, faſtened to two others in an erect poſition. The manufacturer, who ſits on her hams at this ſimple machine, knots it acroſs, at the diſtance of about half an inch from each other, with ſmall plaited threads. Though it cannot, by this method, be rendered ſo cloſe and firm as cloth that is woven, it is ſufficiently impervious to the air, and is likewiſe ſofter and more pliable. Their woollen garments have much the appearance of woven cloth; but the ſuppoſition of their being wrought in a loom is deſtroyed, by the various figures that are ingeniouſly inſerted in them; it being very improbable that theſe people ſhould be able to produce ſuch a complex work, except immediately by their hands. They are of different qualities: ſome reſembling our coarſeſt ſort of blankets; and others not much inferior to our fineſt ſort, and certainly both ſofter and warmer. The wool of which they are manufactured, ſeems to be procured from different animals, particularly the fox and brown lynx. That from the lynx is the fineſt, and nearly reſembles our coarſer wools in colour; but the hair, which alſo grows upon the animal, being intermixed with it, cauſes the appearance to be ſomewhat different when wrought. The ornamental figures in theſe garments are diſpoſed with great taſte, and are generally of a different colour, being uſually dyed either of a deep brown, or a yellow; the latter of which, when new, equals in brightneſs, the moſt vivid in our beſt carpets.

Their taſte for carving on all their wooden articles, correſponds with that of working figures upon their garments. Nothing is to be ſeen without a kind of freeze-work, or a repreſentation of ſome animal upon it; but the moſt common one is that of the human face. The general deſign of theſe figures conveys a ſufficient knowledge of the objects they are intended to repreſent; and in the execution of many of the maſks and heads, they prove themſelves to be ingenious ſculptors. They preſerve, with the greateſt exactneſs, the general character of their own faces, and finiſh the more minute parts with great accuracy and neatneſs. That theſe people have a fondneſs for works of this ſort is obſervable in a variety of particulars. Repreſentations of human figures, birds, beaſts, fiſh, and models of houſehold utenſils, were found among them in a very great abundance. To their ſkill in the imitative arts, we may add their drawing them in colours. The whole proceſs of their whale-fiſhery has been repreſented, in this manner, on the caps they wear. The execution was indeed rude, but hereby we were convinced, that, though they have not the knowledge of letters among them, they have a notion of repreſenting actions in a laſting way, excluſive of recording them in their ſongs and traditions.

The ſtructure of their canoes is ſimple, yet they are well calculated for every uſeful purpoſe. The largeſt ſort, which in each one will contain upwards of twenty people, are formed of a ſingle tree. The length of many of them is 40 feet, the breadth 7, and the depth 3. They become gradually narrower from the middle towards the end, the ſtern ending, perpendicularly, with a knob at the top. The fore-part ſtretches forwards, and upwards, and ends in a point, or prow, much higher than the ſides of the canoe, which are nearly ſtraight. The greateſt part of them are without any ornament; but ſome have a little carving, and are ſtudded with ſeals teeth on the ſurface. They have neither ſeats, nor any other ſupporters, on the inſide, except ſome ſmall round ſticks, about the ſize of a walking cane, placed acroſs, about half the depth of a canoe. They are very light, and, on account of their breadth and flatneſs, ſwim firmly, without an out-rigger, of which they are all deſtitute. Their paddles, which are ſmall and light, reſemble a ſmall leaf in ſhape, being pointed at the bottom, broad in the middle, and gradually becoming narrower in the ſhaft; the whole length being above five feet. By conſtant practice, they have acquired great dexterity in the management of theſe paddles; but they never make uſe of any ſails.

In their employment of fiſhing and hunting, their inſtruments are ingeniouſly contrived, and completely made. They conſiſt of nets, hooks, lines, harpoons, gigs, and an inſtrument reſembling an oar. The laſt is about 20 feet in length, four or five inches in breadth, and of the thickneſs of half an inch. The edges for about two thirds of its length, are ſet with ſharp bone-teeth; the other third ſerving for a handle. With this inſtrument they ſtrike herrings, ſardines, and other fiſh as come in ſhoals, which are taken either upon or in the teeth. Their hooks, made of bone and wood, diſplay no great ingenuity; but the harpoon, uſed in ſtriking whales, and other ſea animals, manifeſts evident contrivance. It conſiſts of a piece of bone, formed into barbs, in which the oval blade of a large muſcle ſhell, and the point of the inſtrument are fixed. Two or three fathoms of rope is faſtened; to one end of which the harpoon is fixed ſo as to leave the ſhaft floating, as a buoy upon the water, when the animal is ſtruck.

As to their manner of catching land animals, or killing them, we are ſtrangers; but, it is probable that they ſhoot the ſmaller ſorts with their arrows, and encounter bears, wolves, and foxes, with their ſpears. Sometimes they decoy them, by covering themſelves with their ſkins, and running upon all fours, at which ſport they are remarkable nimble. For the ſame purpoſes the maſks, or carved heads, as well as the dried heads of different animals, are uſed.

Every particular of the rope kind, which they uſe in making their various articles, is formed either from thongs of ſkins, and ſinews of animals, or from the flaxen ſubſtance, of which they manufacture their mantles. The ſinews were ſometimes ſo remarkably long, that it was hardly poſſible they could have belonged to any other animal than the whale. The aſſiſtance they receive from iron tools contributes to their dexterity in wooden performances. Their implements are almoſt wholly made of iron. One chiſſel indeed we ſaw made of bone. This conſiſts of a flat long piece, faſtened into a wooden handle. A ſtone is their mallet, and a bit of fiſh-ſkin their poliſher. Some of theſe chiſſels were nine or ten inches in length, and three or four in breadth; but they were, in general, conſiderably ſmaller. The chiſſel and the knife are the principal forms that iron aſſumes among them. Some of their knives are very large, having crooked blades; the edge being on the back, or convex part. They are ſharpened upon a coarſe ſlate whetſtone, and kept continually bright. What we ſaw among them, were about the breadth and thickneſs of an iron hoop; and their ſingular form plainly proves, that they are not of European make. Iron is called by the natives ſeekemaile, a name which they alſo give to tin, and other white metals. It being ſo common among theſe people, we were anxious to diſcover how it could be conveyed to them. On our arrival in the ſound, we perceived that they had a knowledge of traffic, and an inclination to purſue it; and we were afterwards convinced, that they had not acquired this knowledge from a curſory interview with ſtrangers; but with whom they carried on this traffic we could not learn; for though we ſaw ſeveral articles of European manufacture, ſuch as braſs and iron, yet it does not follow, that they were received from European nations. We could not obtain the leaſt information of their having ſeen ſhips, like ours, before, nor of their having been engaged in commerce with ſuch civilized people. Many circumſtances corroborate to prove this beyond doubt. On our arrival, they were earneſt in their enquiries, whether we meant to ſettle among them, and whether we were friendly viſitors, informing us, at the ſame time, that they gave us wood and water from motives of friendſhip. This proves ſufficiently, that they conſidered themſelves as proprietors of the place, and dreaded no ſuperiority: for it would have been an unnatural enquiry, if any ſhips had been here before, and had ſupplied themſelves with wood and water, and then departed; for they might then reaſonably expect that we ſhould do the ſame. It muſt be admitted, indeed, that they exhibited no marks of ſurprize at beholding our ſhips; but this may, with great propriety, be attributed to their natural indolence of temper, and their wanting a thirſt of curioſity. They were never ſtartled at the report of a muſquet, till they, one day, ſhewed us that their hide dreſſes were impenetrable to their ſpears and arrows, when one of our people ſhot a muſquet ball through one of them that had been ſix times folded. Their aſtoniſhment at this plainly indicated their ignorance of the effect of fire arms. This was afterwards very frequently confirmed, when we uſed to ſhoot birds, at which they appeared greatly confounded. Our explanation of the piece, together with the nature of its operation, with the aid of ſhot and ball, ſtruck them ſo forcibly, as to convince us of their having no previous ideas on this matter. Though ſome account of a voyage to this coaſt, by the Spaniards, in 1774, or 1775, had arrived in England before we ſailed, the circumſtances juſt mentioned, prove, that theſe ſhips had never been at Nootka. It is alſo evident, that iron could not have been in ſo many hands, nor would the uſe of it have been ſo well known, if they had ſo lately obtained the firſt knowledge of it. From their general uſe of this metal, it probably comes from ſome conſtant ſource, in the way of traffic, and they have perhaps been long ſupplied with it; for they uſe their tools with as much dexterity as the longeſt practice can acquire. The moſt natural conjecture, therefore, is, that they trade for their iron with other Indian tribes, who may have ſome communication with European ſettlements upon that continent, or receive it through ſeveral intermediate nations. By the ſame means they probably obtain their braſs and copper. Not only the rude materials, but ſome manufactured articles ſeem to have found their way hither. The braſs ornaments for noſes are made in ſo maſterly a manner, that the Indians cannot be ſuppoſed capable of fabricating them. We are certain, that the materials are European, as all the American tribes are ignorant of the method of making braſs; but copper has been frequently met with, and, from its ductility, might be eaſily faſhioned into any ſhape, and poliſhed. If ſuch articles are not uſed by our traders to Hudſon's Bay and Canada, in their traffic with the natives, they muſt have been introduced at Nootka from Mexico; whence, it is probable, the two ſilver table ſpoons were originally derived.

With reſpect to the religious and political inſtitutions eſtabliſhed among theſe people, we cannot be ſuppoſed to have acquired much knowledge. However, we diſcovered, that there were ſuch men as chiefs, diſtinguiſhed by the title of Acweek, to whom the others are, in ſome degree, ſubordinate. But the authority of each of theſe great men ſeems to extend no farther than to his own family, who acknowledge him as their head. Nothing that we ſaw could give us an inſight into their notions of religion, except the figures already mentioned, called klumma. Theſe, perhaps, were idols; but as the word acweek was frequently mentioned when they ſpoke of them, we ſuppoſe they may be the images of ſome of their anceſtors, whoſe memories they venerate. This however is all conjecture; for we could receive no information concerning them, as we knew little more of their language than to enable us to aſk the names of things, and being incapable of holding any converſation with the natives relative to their traditions, or their religious inſtitutions. The word wakaſh was frequently in their mouths. It ſeemed to expreſs approbation, applauſe and friendſhip. Whenever they appeared to be pleaſed or ſatisfied, they would call out wakaſh! wakaſh! It is worthy of remark, that as theſe people differ from the natives of the iſlands in the Pacific Ocean, in their perſons, cuſtoms, and language, we cannot ſuppoſe their reſpective progenitors to have belonged to the ſame tribe, when they emigrated into thoſe places where we now find their deſcendants.

Their language is, by no means, harſh or diſagreeable, farther than their pronouncing the k and h with a ſtronger aſpiration, or more force than we do. They have one ſound, which is very frequent, and not uſed by us. It is formed in a particular manner by claſhing the tongue partly againſt the roof of the mouth. It is difficult to repreſent this ſound by any compoſition of our letters, unleſs from lſzthl; which is generally uſed as a termination. The next is compoſed of tl; and many words end with z and ſs. A ſpecimen or two of each of theſe is here put down.

Opulſzthl - -	*The Sun*
Onulſzthl - - -	*The Moon*
Kahſheetl - -	*Dead*
Teeſheheetl - -	*To throw a ſtone*
Koomitz - - -	*A human ſkull*
Quahmiſs - - -	*Fiſh roe*

Numerals.

Tſawack - - -	*One*
Akkla - - - -	*Two*
Katſitſa - - - -	*Three*
Mo, or Moo - -	*Four*
Sochah - - - -	*Five*
Noſpo - - - -	*Six*
Atſlepoo - - -	*Seven*
Atlaquolthl - -	*Eight*
Tſawaquulthl - -	*Nine*
Haecoo - - - -	*Ten*

With reſpect to the compoſition of their language we can ſay very little, having been ſcarcely able to diſtinguiſh the ſeveral parts of ſpeech. We can only infer from their manner of ſpeaking, which is very ſlow and diſtinct, that it has very few prepoſitions or conjunctions; and, as far as we could diſcover, is deſtitute of even a ſingle interjection, to expreſs admiration or ſurprize. From having few conjunctions, it may be conceived, that each ſingle word, with them, will comprehend a great number of ſingle ideas; which ſeems to be the caſe; but, for the ſame reaſon, the language will be defective in other reſpects, not having words to diſtinguiſh or expreſs differences which really exiſt; and hence not ſufficiently copious. This was obſerved to be the caſe, in many inſtances, particularly with reſpect to the names of animals. The relation or affinity it may bear to other languages, either on this, or the Aſiatic continent, we have not been able ſufficiently to trace, for want of proper ſpecimens to compare it with, except thoſe of the Eſquimaux, and Indians about Hudſon's Bay; to neither of which it has the leaſt reſemblance. On the other hand, from the few Mexican words we have been able to procure, there is the moſt obvious agreement in the terminations of words.

In Nootka Sound it is high water, in the days of the new and full moon, at twenty minutes after twelve: the perpendicular riſe and fall being eight feet, nine inches; which is to be underſtood of the day tides, and thoſe which happen two or three days after the full and new moon. The night tides, at this time, riſe near two feet higher. Some circumſtances that occurred daily, relating to this, deſerve particular notice. In the cove where we got wood and water, was a great deal of driftwood caſt aſhore, a part of which we had to remove, to come at the water. Now it frequently happened, that large pieces of trees, that we had removed in day, out of the reach of the then high water, were found by us floated again in our way the next morning; and all our ſpouts for conveying water, thrown out of their places, which were immoveable during the day-tides. We found likewiſe wood, which we had ſplit up for fuel, and had placed beyond the reach of the day-tide, floated away during the night. Some of theſe circumſtances occurred every night and morning, for three or four days in the height of the ſpring tides. To render our account of the tranſactions in Nootka Sound complete we muſt add, that by a variety of aſtronomical and nautical obſervations, we found its latitude to be 49 deg. 36 min. 6 ſec. North, and its longitude 233 deg. 17 min. 14 ſec. Eaſt.

It has been already related, that we put to ſea on the 26th of April, in the evening, with manifeſt indications of an approaching ſtorm; and by theſe ſigns we were not deceived, for we had ſcarce ſailed out of the Sound, when the wind ſhifted from N. E. to S. E. by E. and blew a ſtrong gale, with ſqualls and rain, the ſky being, at the ſame time, uncommonly black. Apprehenſive of the wind's veering more to the South, which would expoſe us to the danger of a lea-ſhore, we got the tacks on board, and made all the ſail we could to the S. W. It fortunately happened, that the wind veered no farther towards the S. and S. E. ſo that early the next morning we were entirely clear of the coaſt. The Diſcovery being at ſome diſtance aſtern, we brought to till ſhe came up, and then both veſſels ſteered a north-weſterly courſe. Between one and two o'clock P. M. there was a perfect hurricane, inſomuch that our commodore thought it exceeding dangerous to run any longer before it; we therefore, agreeable to his order, brought the ſhips to, with their heads to the ſouth. In this ſituation our ſhip, the Reſolution, ſprung a leak in her ſtarboard quarter, which at firſt alarmed us greatly; but after the water was baled out, which kept us employed till midnight, we kept it under by means of the pump. In the evening, the wind having ſhifted to the ſouthward, its fury in ſome meaſure abated; upon which we ſtretched to the weſt; but about eleven, the gale again increaſed, and continued till five the next morning, when the ſtorm ſeemed to have ſpent its force, and became moderate. The weather now clearing up, we were able to ſee ſeveral leagues around us, and ſteered more to the north. At noon we ſteered N. W. by N. with a freſh gale and fair weather. But, towards the evening, the wind again blew hard, with ſqualls and rain. With this weather we continued the ſame courſe till the 30th, when we ſteered N. by W. intending to make the land. Captain Cook regretted that we could not do it ſooner, as we were now paſſing the ſpot where the pretended ſtrait of Admiral de Fonte has been placed by geographers. Though the captain gave no credit to ſuch vague and improbable ſtories, he was deſirous of keeping the coaſt of America aboard, that this point might be cleared up beyond diſpute: but, at the ſame time he conſidered, that it would have been very imprudent to have engaged with the land while the weather was ſo tempeſtuous, or to have loſt the advantage of a fair wind, by waiting for leſs ſtormy weather. This day, at noon, by obſervation, we found our latitude to be 53 deg. 22 min. north, and our longitude 225 deg. 14 min. eaſt.

CHAP. XI.

Progreſs of the Reſolution and Diſcovery along the north-weſt coaſt of America—They anchor near Cape Hinchinbrook—Behaviour of the natives—Progreſs up the Sound, and departure from thence—Montague iſland—Inhabitants of Prince William's Sound deſcribed—The two ſhips proceed along the coaſt—Several capes named—Cook's river diſcovered—Lieutenant King takes poſſeſſion of the country—His reception by the natives—Departure of the ſhips from Cook's river—Paſs St. Hermogenes, and ſeveral Capes and iſlands—Conjectures concerning a Ruſſian letter brought on board the Diſcovery—A providential eſcape—The ſhips arrive at Oonalaſhka—Deſcription of the harbour of Samganoodha—Proſecution of the voyage to the north—Mr. Williamſon lands at Cape Newenham—His report—Briſtol Bay—Extent of it—The ſhips obliged to return by reaſon of the ſhoals—Point Upright—Death and Character of Mr. Anderſon.

ON Friday the 1ſt of May, not ſeeing land, we ſteered to the N. E. having a freſh breeze at S. S. E. attended with ſqualls, ſhowers of hail and rain. About ſeven o'clock, P. M. we deſcried land, diſtant twelve leagues. At four o'clock the next morning the coaſt was ſeen from S. E. to N. by W. the neareſt part diſtant five leagues. At the ſame time, the northern point of an inlet, or at leaſt what appeared to be one, bore E. by S. from whence to the northward along the coaſt, there ſeemed to be many bays and harbours. At ſix, approaching nearer to the land, we purſued the direction of it, ſteering N. W. by N. and between eleven and twelve we paſſed a cluſter of ſmall iſles, ſituated near the continent, to the northward of the ſouthern point of an extenſive bay. An arm of this bay ſeemed to reach towards the north, behind a round lofty mountain, that ſtands between it and the ſea. To this eminence Captain Cook gave the name of Mount Edgecumbe; and the point of land projecting from it, was called Cape Edgecumbe. The Cape lies in latitude 57 deg. 3 min. N. and in long. 224 deg. E. The land, except what is contiguous to the ſea, is of conſiderable height, abounding with hills. Mount Edgecumbe, which far out-tops all the reſt, was entirely covered with ſnow, as were alſo the other elevated hills; but the lower ones, and the ſpots riſing near the ſea, were covered with wood. Purſuing our courſe to the northward, we found the coaſt to trend to the N. and N. E. for ſix or ſeven leagues, and there formed a ſpacious bay. Some iſland being in the entrance of it, we gave it the name of the Bay of Iſlands.

On Sunday the third, at half an hour paſt four, P. M. Mount Edgecumbe bore ſouth 54 deg. E. a large inlet, N. 50 deg. E. and the moſt advanced point of land towards the N. W. lying under a very lofty mountain, which was called Mount Fair-Weather, bore N. 32 deg. weſt. The inlet was named Croſs Sound, it being firſt obſerved on the day ſo marked in our calendar. An eaſtern promontory forms the ſouth-eaſtern point of this Sound; this we diſtinguiſhed by the name of Croſs-Cape. Under the above-mentioned peaked mountain is a point, which was named Cape Fair-Weather. At noon, this cape was diſtant thirteen leagues. Having for ſeveral days light breezes, we ſteered S. W. and W. S. W. till the morning of the fourth, when we tacked, and ſtood towards the ſhore. At noon Mount Fair-Weather bore north, 63 deg. E. This mount is the higheſt of a chain or ridge of mountains, that riſe at the north-weſtern entrance of Croſs Sound, and extend towards the N. W. parallel with the coaſt. They are covered with ſnow, from the higheſt ſummit down to the ſea-coaſt, except in a few places, where we could diſcern trees that ſeemed to riſe, as it were from the ſea. About five o'clock, P. M. the top of a high mountain appeared above the horizon, bearing N. 26 deg. W. forty leagues diſtant. This we ſuppoſed to be the mount Elias of Commodore Beering. In the courſe of the day we obſerved a browniſh duck, with a dark indigo head and neck; likewiſe ſeveral whales, porpoiſes, ſeals, &c. Having light winds, with occaſional calms, we made but little way. On Wedneſday the 6th, the neareſt land being diſtant eight leagues, we perceived, in a north-eaſterly direction, the appearance of a bay, and an iſland, by its ſouthern point, covered with wood. This is probably the place where Beering anchored: Captain Cook, therefore, in honour of the firſt diſcoverer, named it Beering's bay; ſouthward of which the ridge of mountains is interrupted by a plain of ſeveral leagues in extent, beyond which the ſight was unbounded. On the ſeventh, at noon, we were five leagues from the ſhore; from which ſtation we obſerved a bay under the high land, with low woodland on each ſide of it. We now perceived, that the coaſt trended conſiderably to the weſt. On the ninth, at noon, Mount Elias bore N. 30 deg. E. diſtant 19 leagues. This ſtands twelve leagues inland, lat. 60 deg. 27 min. N. long. 219 deg. E.

Sunday the 10th, we obſerved in lat. 59 deg. 51 min. and in long. 215 deg. 56 min. being only three leagues diſtant from the coaſt of the continent, which extended from E. half N. to N. W. half W. as far as the eye could reach. To the weſtward of the latter direction we ſaw an iſland, diſtant ſix leagues. A point, which the Commodore named Cape Suckling, projects towards the north-eaſtern end of the iſland: Within this cape ſtands a hill of conſiderable height, divided from the ſecond range of mountains by low land; ſo that the cape, at a diſtance, has the appearance of an iſland. A bay is ſeated on the north ſide of Cape Suckling, ſeemingly extenſive, and ſheltered from moſt winds. Before night, we had approached near enough the cape to ſee ſome low land projecting from it to the N. W. we alſo obſerved ſome ſmall iſlands in the bay, and ſeveral elevated rocks between the cape and the north-eaſtern extremity of the iſland. Early the next morning the wind ſhifted from N. E. to N. which being againſt us, the Commodore relinquiſhed his deſign of going into the bay, and bore up for the weſt end of the iſland. Having a calm about ten o'clock, we embarked in a boat, and landed on the iſland, with a view of ſeeing what lay on the other ſide; but finding the hills to be at a greater diſtance than was expected, we laid aſide that intention. On a ſmall eminence near the ſhore, the captain left, at the foot of a tree, a bottle containing a paper, on which the names of our ſhips, and the date of our diſcovery were deſcribed: he incloſed alſo two ſilver twopenny pieces of Engliſh coin, which, with many others, had been furniſhed him by Dr. Kaye, now dean of Lincoln; and in teſtimony of his eſteem for that gentleman, Captain Cook called the iſland Kaye's Iſland. It does not exceed 36 miles in length, and its breadth is not above four miles in any part. The S. W. point is a naked rock, elevated conſiderably. Its lat. is 59 deg. 49 min. north, long. 216 deg. 58 min. eaſt. Towards the ſea, the iſland terminates in bare ſloping cliffs, with a beach conſiſting of large pebbles, intermixed in ſome places with a clayey ſand. Some parts of the ſhore are interrupted by ſmall valleys and gullies, in each of which a rivulet or torrent ruſhes down with a conſiderable degree of impetuoſity; laſting perhaps no longer than the whole of the ſnow is diſſolved. The valleys are filled with pine-trees; and theſe, indeed, abound in other parts of the iſland, which is covered as it were with a broad girdle of wood. The trees, however, are far from being of an extraordinary growth: on which account, they would be of no great ſervice for ſhipping, except as materials for making top-gallant-maſts, and other ſmall things. Neither Canadian, nor Cypreſs pines, are to be ſeen among them, but we ſaw ſome currant, and hawberry buſhes, a yellow flowered violet, and the leaves of other plants not yet in flower. A crow was ſeen flying about the wood; two or three white-headed eagles, like thoſe of Nootka, were alſo obſerved; beſides another ſpecies, equally large, which has a white breaſt. In our paſſage from the ſhip to the ſhore, we ſaw a number of fowls ſitting on the water, or flying about; the principal of which were gulls, burres, ſhags, ducks, or large petrels, divers, and quebrantahueſſes. There was alſo a ſingle bird flying about, apparently of the gull kind, whoſe colour was a ſnowy white, with ſome black along part of the upper ſides of its wings. We ſaw one fox near a wood; alſo two or three ſmall ſeals were ſeen on the ſhore; but not any traces of inhabitants could be found.

In the afternoon Captain Cook, with thoſe who accompanied him, returned on board; after which we ſet ſail, and, with a light breeze from the eaſt, we ſteered for the ſouth-weſt ſide of the iſland, which we got round by eight o'clock in the evening; we ſtood for the weſternmoſt land, now in ſight. At the north-eaſt end of Kaye's Iſland ſtands another, extending N. W. and S. E. about nine miles, to within the ſame diſtance of the north-weſtern boundary, to which the name of Comptroller's Bay was given. The next morning, being Tueſday the 12th, Kaye's Iſland was ſtill in ſight, bearing E. by S. At noon, when in lat. 61 deg. 11 min. the eaſtern point of a ſpacious inlet bore weſt-north-weſt, three leagues diſtant. From Comptroller's Bay to this point, which the Commodore named Cape Hinchinbrook, the direction of the coaſt is nearly E. and W. Beyond this it appeared to incline towards the ſouth; a direction very different from that marked out in the modern charts, founded on the late diſcoveries of the Ruſſians; inſomuch, that we had ſome reaſon to expect, that we ſhould find, through the inlet before us, a paſſage to the N. and that the land to the W. and S. W. was a group of iſlands. We had no ſooner reached the inlet, than the weather became exceeding foggy; it was therefore thought neceſſary that the ſhips ſhould be ſecured during the continuance of the fog. With this view we hauled cloſe under Cape Hinchinbrook, and caſt anchor in eight fathoms water, at the diſtance of about two furlongs from the ſhore. Soon after the boats were hoiſted out, ſome to fiſh, and others to ſound. At intervals, the fog cleared away, and gave us a proſpect of the neighbouring land. The cape was one league diſtant; the weſtern point of the inlet five leagues; and the land on that ſide extended to W. by N. Between this point and N. W. by W. we could diſcern no land. The moſt weſterly point we had in view on the north ſhore, was at the diſtance of two leagues. Betwixt this point, and the ſhore under which our ſhips now lay at anchor, is a bay about three leagues deep, on the ſouth-eaſtern ſide of which are ſeveral coves; and in the middle are placed ſome rocky iſlands. To theſe Mr. Gore was diſpatched in a boat, in order to ſhoot ſome birds. He had ſcarcely reached them, when about twenty natives appeared in two large canoes; upon which he returned to the ſhip, and they followed him. They were unwilling, however, to venture along-ſide, but kept at a little diſtance, ſhouting aloud, and claſping and extending their arms alternately. They then began a ſong, much after the manner of King George's, or Nootka Sound. Their heads were ſtrewed with feathers, and one of them held out a white garment, which we ſuppoſed was intended as a token of friendſhip; while another, for near a quarter of an hour, ſtood up in the canoe, entirely naked, with his arms extended like a croſs, and motionleſs. Their canoes were conſtructed upon a different plan from thoſe of Nootka. The frame conſiſted of different laths, and the outſide was formed of the ſkins of ſeals, or other animals of a ſimilar kind. Though ſome of our people repeated the moſt common words of the language of Nootka, they did not appear to underſtand them. After they had received ſome preſents that were thrown to them, they retired towards the ſhore, intimating by ſigns, that they would pay us another viſit the next morning. Two of them came off to us in the night, each in a ſmall canoe, hoping, perhaps, they might have an opportunity of pilfering; for they went away as ſoon as they perceived themſelves diſcovered. The wind, during the night, blew hard in ſqualls, with rain, and thick hazy weather.

On Wedneſday the 13th, at ten o'clock, A. M. the wind becoming more moderate, we got up our anchors, and made ſail, in order to ſearch for ſome convenient place where we might ſtop the leak, as our preſent ſituation was too much expoſed for that purpoſe. We at firſt intended to have gone up the bay before which our ſhips had anchored; but, by the clearneſs of the weather, we were afterwards induced to ſteer towards the north, further up the great inlet. Having paſſed the N. W. point of the above-mentioned bay, we found that the coaſt, on that ſide, inclined to the eaſtward: we did not follow it, but proceeded on our courſe to the northward, for a point of land which we obſerved in that direction. In the afternoon, before two o'clock, the foul weather returned, with ſo thick a fog, that we could diſcern no other land but the point juſt mentioned, off which we arrived between four and five o'clock, and found it to be a little iſland, ſituate at the diſtance of about two miles from the neighbouring coaſt, being a point of land on the eaſtern ſide of which we diſcovered an excellent bay, or rather harbour: to this we plied up, while the wind blew in very hard ſqualls, accompanied with rain. In paſſing the iſland, we found a muddy bottom, at the depth of twenty-ſix fathoms. At length, about eight o'clock, we were obliged, by the violence of the ſqualls, to caſt anchor in thirteen fathoms water, before we had proceeded ſo far into the bay as the Commodore intended; but we thought ourſelves fortunate enough in having the ſhips already ſecured, for the night was exceeding tempeſtuous. But, notwithſtanding the weather was ſo turbulent, the natives were not deterred from paying us a viſit. Three of them came off in two canoes: two of them in one, and one in the other, being the number that each canoe could carry, for they were conſtructed nearly in the ſame manner with thoſe of the Eſquimaux, except that in one of them were two holes for two perſons to ſit in, and in the other but one. The men had each a ſtick, about three feet long, with the large feathers, or wings of birds, faſtened to it, which they probably held up to us as tokens of peace. The treatment theſe three received, induced many others to viſit us, between one and two o'clock the following morning, in both great and ſmall canoes. Some of them ventured on board the Reſolution, though not before ſome of our people had ſtepped into their boats. Among thoſe who came on board, was a middle-aged man, who, as we afterwards found, was a chief. His dreſs was made of the ſkin of the ſea-otter, and he had on his head ſuch a cap as is worn by the inhabitants of Nootka, embelliſhed with ſky-blue glaſs beads. Any kind of beads ſeemed to be in high eſtimation among theſe people, who readily gave in exchange for them whatever they had, even their fine ſea-otter ſkins. They coveted particularly iron, but abſolutely rejected ſmall bits, and required pieces nine or ten inches long at leaſt, and three or four fingers broad. But they obtained little of this commodity from us, as by this time it was become rather ſcarce. The points of ſome of their ſpears were of this metal; others were of copper, and a few were bone; of which laſt the points of their arrows, darts, &c. were formed. The chief could not be prevailed upon to venture below the upper deck, nor did he and his companions continue long aboard. While they ſtaid with us, it was neceſſary to watch them narrowly, as they ſoon manifeſted an inclination for thieving. At length, when they had been three or four hours alongſide the Reſolution, they all quitted her, and repaired to the Diſcovery, which ſhip none of them had before been aboard of, except one man, who came from her at this very time, and immediately returned to her, in company with the others. As ſoon as they had departed from our ſhip, Captain Cook diſpatched a boat to ſound the head of the bay; for, as the wind was moderate at preſent, it was intended to lay the ſhip aſhore, if a proper place could be ſound for the proceſs of ſtopping the leak. Soon afterwards all the Americans quitted the Diſcovery, and made their way towards our boat that was employed in ſounding. The officer who was in her, obſerving their approach, returned to the ſhip, and all the canoes followed him. The crew of the boat had no ſooner repaired on board, leaving in her by way of guard two of their numbers, than ſeveral of the natives ſtepped into her, ſome of whom preſented their ſpears before the two men, while others looſed the rope by which ſhe was faſtened to the ſhip, and the reſt were ſo daring as to attempt to tow her away; but the moment they ſaw we were preparing to oppoſe them, they let her go, ſtepped into their own boats, and made ſigns, in order to perſuade us to lay down our arms, being to all appearance perfectly unconcerned. This attempt, though a very bold one, was ſcarce equal to what they had meditated on board Captain Clerke's ſhip. The man, whom we mentioned before as having conducted his countrymen from the Reſolution to the Diſcovery, had firſt been aboard of the latter; where, looking down all the hatchways, and obſerving no one, except the officer of the watch, and two or three more, he doubtleſs imagined that ſhe might be plundered with eaſe, particularly as ſhe was ſtationed at ſome diſtance from the Reſolution. It was unqueſtionably with this intent, that the natives went off to her. Several of them repaired aboard without the leaſt ceremony, and drawing their knives, made ſigns to the officer to keep off, and began to ſearch for plunder. The firſt thing they laid their hands on was the rudder of one of our boats, which they immediately threw overboard to thoſe of their party, who continued in the canoes. But before they could find another object that ſtruck their fancy, the ſhip's crew were alarmed, and many of them, armed with cutlaſſes, came upon deck. The plunderers no ſooner ſaw this, than they all ſneaked off into their canoes, with evident marks of indifference. It was at this time that our boat was employed in ſounding, as we have already mentioned; and the natives, without delay, proceeded towards her, after the diſappointment they had met with at the Diſcovery. Their viſiting us ſo early in the morning was undoubtedly with a view of plundering, on a ſuppoſition that they ſhould find all our people aſleep. We were now on the point of weighing anchor, in order to proceed further up the bay, when the wind began to blow as violently as before, and was attended with rain, inſomuch that we were obliged to bear away the cable again, and lie faſt. In the evening, perceiving the gale of wind did not abate, and thinking it might be ſome time before an opportunity of getting higher up preſented itſelf, the Commodore was determined to heel the ſhip in our preſent ſtation; and, with that view, cauſed her to be moored with a kedge anchor and hawſer. One of the ſailors, in heaving the anchor out of the boat, was carried over-board by the buoy-rope, and accompanied the anchor to the bottom. In this hazardous ſituation he had preſence of mind ſufficient to diſengage himſelf, and came up to the ſurface of the water, where he was immediately taken up, with a dangerous fracture in one of his legs.

Od Friday the 15th, at day-break we gave our ſhip a good heel to port, in order to ſtop the leak, which, on ripping off the ſheathing, was found to be in the ſeams. While the carpenters were employed in this buſineſs, others of our people filled the water-caſks at a ſtream not far from our ſtation. On the 16th, towards the evening, the weather cleared up, and we then found ourſelves encompaſſed with land. Our ſtation was on the eaſtern ſide of the ſound, in a place diſtinguiſhed by the appellation of Snug-corner Bay. The Captain, accompanied by ſome of his officers, went to take a ſurvey of the head of it, and they found it to be ſheltered from all winds, having a muddy bottom at the depth of ſeven to three fathoms. The land near the ſhore is low, partly wooded, and partly clear: the clear ground was covered with ſnow, but very little remained in the woods. The ſummits of the hills, in the neighbourhood, were covered with wood; but thoſe that were at a greater diſtance inland had the appearance of naked rocks, covered with ſnow. Our leak being at length ſtopped, on the 17th, at four o'clock, A. M. we weighed anchor, and ſteered a N. W. courſe, with a gentle breeze at E. N. E. Soon after we had made ſail, the Americans viſited us again. When we had reached the north-weſtern point of the arm wherein we had anchored, we obſerved that the flood tide came into the inlet, by the ſame channel through which we had entered. This circumſtance did not much contribute to the probability of a paſſage to the north through the inlet, though it did not make entirely againſt it. Having paſſed the point juſt mentioned, we met with much foul ground, and many ſunken rocks: the wind failed us, ſo that we had ſome difficulty in extricating ourſelves from the danger with which we were threatened; however, about two o'clock P. M. we caſt anchor under the eaſtern ſhore, in 13 fathoms, and four leagues diſtant from our laſt ſtation. The weather ſoon after cleared up, and we had a diſtinct view of all the ſurrounding land, particularly towards the north, where it appeared to cloſe. This gave us but little hope of meeting with a paſſage that way; but, in order to form a right judgment, Lieutenant Gore was ſent out with two armed boats to examine the northern arm; and, at the ſame time, the maſter was diſpatched with two other boats, to ſurvey another arm that ſeemed to incline towards the eaſt. Both returned at night. By the Maſter we were informed, that the arm, to which he had been ſent, communicated with that we had laſt quitted, and that one ſide of it was formed by a cluſter of iſlands. Mr. Gore reported, "that he had ſeen the entrance of an arm, which, he was of opinion, extended a long way to the N. E. and that probably by it a paſſage might be found." On the other hand, Mr. Roberts, one of the mates, who had been ſent with Mr. Gore to ſketch out the parts they had examined, was of opinion, that they ſaw the head of this arm. "The diſagreement of theſe two opinions (obſerves Captain Cook) and the circumſtances of the flood-tide entering the ſound from the ſouth, rendered the exiſtence of a paſſage this way very doubtful. And, as the wind in the morning had become favourable for getting out to ſea, the Captain tells us, he reſolved to ſpend no more time in ſearching for a paſſage in a place that promiſed ſo little ſucceſs. Beſides, if the land on the weſt ſhould prove to be iſlands, agreeable to the late Ruſſian Diſcoveries, we could not fail of getting far enough to the north, and that in good time; provided we did not loſe the ſeaſon in ſearching places, where a paſſage was not only doubtful, but improbable. We were now upwards of 520 leagues weſtward of any part of Baffin's, or of Hudſon's Bay, and whatever paſſage there may be, it muſt be, or at leaſt part of it muſt lie to the north of latitude 72 deg. Who could expect to find a paſſage or ſtrait of ſuch extent?"--Notwithſtanding the plauſibility in the face of this reaſoning, our readers will ſee, it is little more than mere conjecture; and might we hazard our opinion againſt the judgement of ſo able a navigator, we muſt confeſs, that the latter is not coincident with his uſual preciſion; nor can we think his conduct, in the above ſearch, correſponds in all particulars with his uſual aſſiduity. This is certain, the arm near Cape Hinchinbrook, above alluded to, and the northern part of Hudſon's Bay, lie between the ſame parallels of latitude; and it has been the united opinion of all our moſt ſkilful navigators and geographers, that if a N. W. paſſage does exiſt, it muſt be through Hudſon's, or Baffin's bay. As to the Ruſſian Diſcoveries, or thoſe of any other monopolizing, trading companies, they have been of little ſervice hitherto to navigation, and, with reſpect to their credit, of very ſmall value. It were therefore to be wiſhed, that the report of ſo able an officer as Mr. Gore had been more particularly attended to; for we think, if the deſirable paſſage can be found, it muſt be in a lower latitude than 72 deg. and through ſome arm or ſtrait. This is our own private opinion, and we do not wiſh to infringe upon the judgement of others, we wiſh this ſacred privilege always to remain inviolate, with every member of civil ſociety.

On Monday, the 18th, about three o'clock A. M. we weighed, and made ſail to the ſouthward, down the inlet, with a light northerly breeze. We were enabled to ſhorten our run out to ſea, by diſcovering another paſſage into this inlet, to the S. W. of that by which we entered. It is ſeparated from the other, by an iſland that extends 18 leagues in the direction of S. W. and N. E. to which our Commodore gave the name of Montague Iſland. In this ſouth-weſtern channel are ſeveral iſlands. Thoſe ſituated in the entrance next the open ſea, are elevated and rocky. Thoſe that lie within are low; and as they were totally free from ſnow, they were, for this reaſon, called Green Iſlands. At two o'clock, P. M. the wind veered to the S. W. by S. which put us under the neceſſity of plying. We firſt ſtretched over to within the diſtance of two miles of the eaſtern ſhore, and tacked in 53 fathoms. When we ſtood back to Montague Iſland, we diſcovered a ledge of rocks, ſome under water, and others above the ſurface. We afterwards met with ſome others towards the middle of the channel. Theſe rocks rendering it dangerous to ply during the night, we ſpent it in ſtanding off and on, under Montague Iſland; for the depth of water is ſo great, that we could not caſt anchor. The next morning, at break of day, we ſteered for the channel between the Green Iſland and Montague Iſland, which is between two and three leagues in breadth. About eight in the evening, we had a perfect calm; when we let go our anchors at the depth of twenty-one fathoms, over a muddy bottom, diſtant about two miles from Montague Iſland. After the calm had continued till ten o'clock the ſucceeding morning, a ſlight breeze ſprung up from the north, with which we again weighed and made ſail.

Having got out into the open ſea, by ſix in the evening, we diſcovered that the coaſt trended W. by S. as far as the eye could reach. To the place we had juſt left the Commodore gave the name of Prince William's Sound. It ſeems to occupy, at leaſt, one degree and a half of latitude, and two degrees of longitude, excluſive of the branches or arms, with whoſe extent we are unacquainted. The natives, in general, are of a middling ſtature, though many of them are under it. They are ſquare, or ſtrong cheſted, with ſhort, thick necks, and large broad viſages, which are, for the moſt part, rather flat. The moſt diſproportioned part of their body appeared to be their heads, which were of great magnitude. Their teeth were of a tolerable whiteneſs, broad, well ſet, and equal in ſize. Their noſes had full, round points, turned up at the tip; and their eyes, though not ſmall, were ſcarcely proportioned to the largeneſs of their faces. They have black hair, ſtrong, ſtraight, and thick. Their beards were, in general thin, or deficient; but the hairs growing about the lips of thoſe who have them, were briſtly or ſtiff, and often of a browniſh colour. Some of the elderly men had large, thick, ſtraight beards. The variety of their features is conſiderable. Very few, however, can be ſaid to be handſome, though their countenance uſually indicates frankneſs, vivacity, and good nature; and yet ſome of them ſhewed a reſerve and ſullenneſs in their aſpect. The faces of ſome of the women are agreeable; and many of them, but principally the younger ones, may eaſily be diſtinguiſhed from the other ſex, by the ſuperior ſoftneſs of their features. The complexion of ſome of the females, and of the children, is white, without any mixture of red. Many of the men, whom we ſaw naked, had rather a ſwarthy caſt, which was ſcarcely the effect of any ſtain, it not being a cuſtom among them to paint their bodies. Both ſexes, young and old, of this ſound, are all cloathed in the ſame manner. Their ordinary dreſs is a ſort of cloſe frock, or rather robe, which ſometimes reaches only to the knees, but generally down to the ancles. It has, at the upper part, a hole juſt ſufficient to admit the head, with ſleeves reaching to the wriſt. Theſe frocks are compoſed of the ſkins of various animals, and they are commonly worn with the hairy ſide outwards. Some of the natives have their frocks made of the ſkins of fowls, with only the down left on them, which they glue upon other ſubſtances. The ſeams, where the different ſkins are ſewed together, are uſually adorned with fringes or taſſels of narrow thongs, cut out of the ſame ſkins. A few have a ſort of cape or collar, and ſome have a hood; but the other is the moſt cuſtomary form, and appears to conſtitute the whole of their dreſs in fair weather. When it is rainy, they put over this another frock, made with ſome degree of ingenuity from the inteſtines of whales, or ſome other large animal, prepared with ſuch ſkill, as to reſemble, in great meaſure, our gold-beater's leaf. It is formed ſo as to be drawn tight round the neck; and its ſleeves extend down to the wriſt, round which they are faſtened with a ſtring. When in their canoes, they draw the ſkirts of this frock over the rim of the hole in which they ſit, ſo that the water by this means is prevented from entering: at the ſame time it keeps the men dry upwards, for no water can penetrate through it. Yet, if not conſtantly kept moiſt, it is apt to crack or break. This frock, as well as the common one made of ſkins, is nearly ſimilar to the dreſs of the natives of Greenland. Though the inhabitants of this inlet, in general, do not cover their legs or feet, yet ſome of them wear a kind of ſkin-ſtockings, reaching half way up their thighs. Few of them are without mittens for their hands, formed from the ſkin of a bear's paw. Thoſe who wear any thing on their heads, reſembled, in this particular, the people of Nootka Sound, having high truncated conical caps, compoſed of ſtraw, and ſometimes of wood. The hair of the men is commonly cropped round the forehead and neck, but the females ſuffer it to grow long; and the greateſt part of them tie a lock of it on the crown, while a few, after our cuſtom, club it behind. Both men and women perforate their ears with ſeveral holes, about the outer and lower part of the edge, wherein they ſuſpend ſmall bunches of beads. They likewiſe perforate the ſeptum of the noſe, through which they often thruſt the quill-feathers of birds, or little bending ornaments, made of a tubulous ſhelly ſubſtance, ſtrung on a ſtiff cord, of the length of three or four inches, which give them a ridiculous and groteſque appearance. But the moſt extraordinary faſhion, adopted by ſome of the natives of both ſexes, is their having the under-lip cut quite through lengthwiſe, rather below the ſwelling part. This inciſion frequently exceeds two inches in length, and, either by its natural retraction while the wound is ſtill freſh, or by the repetition of ſome artificial management, aſſumes the appearance and ſhape of lips, and becomes ſufficiently large to admit the tongue through. When a perſon with his under-lip thus ſlit, was firſt ſeen by one of our ſailors, he immediately exclaimed, that the man had two mouths; which, indeed, it greatly reſembles. They fix in this artificial mouth, a flat, narrow kind of ornament, made principally out of a ſolid ſhell or bone, cut into ſmall narrow pieces, like teeth, almoſt down to the baſe, or thick part, which has, at each end, a projecting bit, that ſerves to ſupport it when put into the divided lip, the cut part then appearing outwards. Some of them only perforate the lower-lip into ſeparate holes; on which occaſion the ornament conſiſts of the ſame number of diſtinct ſhelly ſtuds, the points of which are thruſt through theſe holes, and their heads appear within the lip, not unlike another row of teeth under their natural ones. Such are the native ornaments of theſe people: but we obſerved among them many beads of European manufacture, chiefly of a pale blue colour, which are hung in their ears, or about their caps, or are joined to their lip ornaments, which have a little hole drilled in each of the points to which they are faſtened, and others to them, till they ſometimes hang even as low as the point of the chin. In this laſt caſe, however, they cannot remove them with ſuch facility; for, with reſpect to their own lip-ornaments, they can take them out with their tongues at pleaſure. They likewiſe wear bracelets of beads made of a ſhelly ſubſtance reſembling amber, and of a cylindrical form. They are, in general, ſo fond of ornaments of ſome kind or other, that they fix a variety of things in their perforated lip; one of them appeared with two of our iron nails projecting like prongs from it; and another man attempted to put a large braſs button into it. The men often paint their faces of a black colour, and of a bright red, and ſometimes of a blueiſh or leaden hue, but not in any regular figure. The women puncture or ſtain the chin with black, that comes to a point in each of their cheeks; a cuſtom ſimilar to which is in vogue, as we have been informed, among the Greenland females. Upon the whole, we have not in any country ſeen ſavages, who take more pains than theſe do to disfigure their perſons with imaginary ornaments.

They have two ſorts of canoes; the one large and open, the other ſmall and covered. They differ no otherwiſe from the great boats in Greenland, than in the form of the head and ſtern, particularly of the former, which ſomewhat reſembles a whale's head. The framing conſiſts of ſlender pieces of wood; and the outſide is compoſed of the ſkins of ſeals, or other ſea animals, ſtretched over the wood. Their ſmall canoes are conſtructed nearly of the ſame form and materials with thoſe of the Eſquimaux. Some of theſe carry two perſons. Their fore part is curved like the head of a violin. Their weapons and implements for hunting and fiſhing, are the ſame with thoſe uſed by the Greenlanders. Many of their ſpears are headed with iron, and their arrows are generally pointed with bone. Their larger darts are thrown by means of a piece of wood, about a foot long, with a ſmall groove in the middle, which receives the dart: at the bottom is a hole for the reception of one finger, which enables them to graſp the piece of wood much firmer, and to throw with greater force. For defenſive armour they have a ſort of jacket, or a coat of mail, formed of laths, faſtened together with ſinews, which render it very flexible, though it is ſo cloſe as not to admit a dart or arrow. It ſerves only to cover the trunk of the body, and may, not improperly be compared to the ſtays worn by our women.

We had not an opportunity of ſeeing any of the habitations of the natives, as none of them dwelt in the bay where our ſhips anchored, or where any of us landed: but with reſpect to their domeſtic utenſils, they brought, in their canoes, ſome round and oval wooden diſhes, rather ſhallow; and others of a cylindrical form, conſiderably deeper. The ſides are one piece bent round, after the manner of our chip-boxes, but thick, and neatly faſtened with thongs, the bottoms being neatly fixed in with ſmall pegs of wood. Others were ſomewhat ſmaller, and of a more elegant figure, not unlike a large oval butter-boat, without any handle, but ſhallower; theſe were compoſed of a piece of wood, or ſome horny ſubſtance, and were ſometimes neatly carved. They had in their poſſeſſion a great number of little ſquare bags, made of the ſame gut with their exterior frocks, curiouſly adorned with very ſmall red feathers interwoven with them, in which were contained ſeveral very fine ſinews, and bundles of ſmall cord, made out of them, plaited with extraordinary ingenuity. They likewiſe had ſome models in wood of their canoes; chequered baſkets, wrought ſo cloſely as to hold water, and a conſiderable number of little images, four or five inches high, either of wood, or ſtuffed, which were covered with a piece of fur, and embelliſhed with quill-feathers, with hair fixed on their heads. We could not determine whether theſe were intended merely as children's toys, or were applied to ſuperſtitious purpoſes. They have many inſtruments formed of two or three hoops, or concentrical pieces of wood, having a croſs bar fixed in the middle, by which they are held. To theſe they fix a number of dried barnacle ſhells, with threads, which, when ſhaken, produce a loud noiſe, and thus ſerve the purpoſe of a rattle. This contrivance is probably a ſubſtitute for the rattling bird at King George's Sound. It is uncertain with what kind of tools their wooden utenſils, frames of canoes, &c. are made; the only one that we obſerved among them being a ſort of ſtone-adze, ſomewhat reſembling thoſe of Otaheite, and other iſlands in the Pacific Ocean. They have a great quantity of iron knives, ſome of which are rather curved, others ſtraight, and ſome very ſmall ones, fixed in longiſh handles, with the blades bent upwards. They have alſo knives, ſome of which are almoſt two feet in length, ſhaped, in a great meaſure like a dagger, with a ridge towards the middle. Theſe they wear in ſheaths of ſkin, hung by a thong round their necks, under their robe or frock. It is probable, that they uſe them only as weapons, and that their other knives are applied to different purpoſes. Whatever they have, is as well made as if they were provided with a complete cheſt of tools; and their plaiting of ſinews, ſewing, and ſmall-work on their little bags, may be found to vie with the neateſt manufactures in any part of the globe. Upon the whole, conſidering the uncivilized ſtate of the natives of this ſound, their northerly ſituation, amidſt a country almoſt continually covered with ſnow, and the comparative wretched materials they have to work with, it appears, that, with reſpect to their ſkill and invention, in all manual operations, they are at leaſt upon a footing with any other people in the iſlands of the great Pacific Ocean.

The animal food, we ſaw them eat, was either roaſted, or broiled: they feed alſo on dried fiſh. Some of the former that was purchaſed, had the appearance of bear's fleſh. They likewiſe eat a larger ſort of fern-root, either baked, or dreſſed in ſome other method. Some of our company obſerved them to eat freely of a ſubſtance, which we imagined was the interior part of the pine bark. Their drink, in all probability, is water; for, in their canoes, they brought ſnow in their wooden veſſels, which they ſwallowed by mouthfuls. Their manner of eating is decent and cleanly, for they conſtantly took care to remove any dirt that might adhere to their food: and though they would ſometimes eat the raw fat of a ſea animal, yet, they did not fail to cut it carefully into mouthfuls. To all appearance, their perſons were always free from filth; and their utenſils, in general, were kept in excellent order, as were alſo their boats.

The language of theſe people ſeemed difficult to be underſtood;

underſtood: this, perhaps, was not owing to any confuſion, or indiſtinctneſs in their ſounds, but to the various ſignifications which their words bear: for they frequently made uſe of the ſame word on different occaſions; though, probably, if we could have had a longer intercourſe with them, this might have proved a miſtake on our part. Among the few words and phraſes the ingenious Mr. Anderſon was enabled to procure, we have ſelected the following:

Ahleu - - - -	*A Spear*
Amilhtoo - -	*A Piece of white bear's ſkin*
Keelaſhuk - - -	*Guts of which they make jackets*
Natooneſhuk	*The Skin of a ſea-otter*
Lukluk - - -	*A Brown ſhaggy ſkin*
Namuk - -	*An Ornament for the ear*
Aa - - - -	*Yes*
Chilke - - -	*One*
Taiha - - - -	*Two*
Tokke - - - - -	*Three*
Chukelo - - -	*Four*
Koeheene - - -	*Five*
Takulai - - -	*Six*
Keichillho - -	*Seven*
Klu or Kliew -	*Eight*

PHRASES.

Yaut - - - -	*I'll go: or, ſhall I go?*
Whaehai - - -	*Shall I keep it? Do you give it me?*
Tawuk - - -	*Keep it*
Weona or Veena -	*Stranger (calling to one)*
Ooonaka - -	*Will you barter for this that belongs to me?*
Keeta - - - -	*Give me ſomething.*
Naema - - -	*Give me ſomething in exchange.*
Akaſhou - - -	*What's the name of that?*

With regard to the numerals, Mr. Anderſon obſerves, that the words correſponding to ours, after paſſing three, are not certain.

Our knowledge of the animals of this part of America is entirely derived from the ſkins that were brought by the natives for ſale. Theſe were principally of bears; common, and pine martins; ſea-otters, ſeals, racoons, ſmall ermines, foxes, and the whitiſh cat or lynx. Among theſe various ſkins, the moſt common are thoſe of racoons, martins, and ſea-otters, which form the ordinary dreſs of theſe people: but the ſkins of the martins which were in general of a far lighter brown than thoſe of Nootka, were greatly ſuperior to them in point of fineneſs; whereas thoſe of the ſea-otters, which, as well as the martins, were much more plentiful here than at Nootka, ſeemed to be conſiderably inferior in the thickneſs and fineneſs of their fur, though they far exceeded them with reſpect to ſize; and were, for the moſt part, of the gloſſy black ſort. The ſkins of ſeals, and bears, were alſo very common: the former were, in general, white; and many of the bears, here, were of a dark brown hue. Beſides theſe animals, there is the white bear, of whoſe ſkins the natives brought ſeveral pieces, and ſome complete ſkins of cubs. Here is alſo the wolverene, or quickhatch, whoſe ſkin has very bright colours; and a larger ſpecies of ermine than the common one, varied with brown, and ſcarcely any black on its tail. The ſkin of the head of ſome very large animal was brought to us, but we could not decide poſitively what it was; though from the colour, and ſhaggineſs of the hair, and its not reſembling any land animal, we conjectured, that it may be that of the male urſine-ſeal, or ſea-bear. But one of the moſt beautiful ſkins that fell under our conſideration, is that of a ſmall animal near a foot in length, of a brown colour on the back, with a number of obſcure whitiſh ſpecks, the ſides being of a blueiſh aſh colour, with a few of thoſe ſpecks. The tail is about a third part of the length of the body, and is covered with whitiſh hair. This animal is doubtleſs the ſame with that which is called by Mr. Stæhlin, in his account of the New Northern Archipelago, the ſpotted field-mouſe: but whether it is really of the mouſe kind, or a ſquirrel, we could not learn, nor determine, for want of entire ſkins; though Mr. Anderſon was inclined to believe, that it is the ſame animal which ſome of our naturaliſts have deſcribed under the appellation of the caſan-marmot. The great number of ſkins that we ſaw at this place, demonſtrates the abundance of the various animals we have mentioned; yet, it is ſomewhat remarkable, that we neither met with the ſkins of the mooſe, nor of the common ſpecies of deer. As to the birds we found the halcyon, or great king-fiſher, having fine bright colours; the ſhag; the white headed eagle; and the humming bird, which often flew about our ſhips, while we lay at anchor; though it cannot be ſuppoſed to live here, during the winter, which muſt be extremely ſevere. The water-fowl ſeen by us were black ſeapies, with red bills, ſuch as we met with at Van Diemen's Land. Some of our people brought down a ſnipe, a grouſe, and ſome plovers: but notwithſtanding the water-fowl were numerous, particularly the geeſe and ducks, they were ſo ſhy, that it was a difficult matter to get within ſhot; in conſequence of which, we procured a very inconſiderable ſupply of them as refreſhments. The duck is about the ſize of our common wild one; of a deep black, with red feet, and a ſhort pointed tail. Its bill is white, tinged towards the point with red, and has a large black ſpot, almoſt ſquare, near its baſe, on each ſide, where it is alſo ſomewhat diſtended. On the forehead is a large triangular white ſpot; and on the hinder part of the neck is one ſtill larger. The colours of the female are much leſs vivid than thoſe of the male; and ſhe has none of the ornaments of the bill, excepting thoſe of the two black ſpots, which are rather obſcure. We obſerved a ſpecies of the diver, which ſeems peculiar to this place. In ſize, it is equal to a partridge, and has a ſhort, black, compreſſed bill. Its head, and the upper part of its neck, are of a browniſh black; and the remainder of its body is of a deep brown, waved obſcurely with black, except the under part, which is totally of a blackiſh caſt, minutely varied with white. We found alſo a ſmall land bird, of the finch kind, about the bigneſs of a yellow-hammer; but we imagined it to be one of thoſe which change their colours with the ſeaſon, and with their different migrations. It was, at this time, of a duſky brown with a reddiſh tail; and the ſuppoſed male had, on the crown of the head, a large yellow ſpot, with ſome varied black on the upper part of its neck; but the latter was on the breaſt of the female.

With reſpect to the fiſh, what the natives brought to us for ſale, were torſk and halibut. We caught ſome ſculpins about the ſhip; and ſtar-fiſh of a purpliſh hue, that had ſixteen or eighteen rays. The rocks were almoſt deſtitute of ſhell-fiſh, and the only one of this tribe that fell under our notice, was a reddiſh crab, covered with large ſpines. We obſerved few vegetables of any kind, and the trees that chiefly grew about this ſound, were the Canadian, and ſpruce pine, ſome of which were of a conſiderable ſize. The metals we ſaw theſe people poſſeſſed of, were iron and copper; both which, but particularly the former, were in ſuch abundance, that their lances and arrows were pointed with them. The ores which they uſed to paint themſelves with, were a brittle, unctuous red ochre or iron ore; a pigment of a bright blue; and black lead: but each of theſe articles ſeemed to be very ſcarce among them. Theſe people muſt, certainly, have received from ſome more civilized nation, the beads and iron found among them. We were, doubtleſs, the firſt Europeans, with whom they ever had a direct communication; and it remains only to be determined, from what quarter they had procured our manufactures. And it is more than probable, that they had obtained theſe articles, through the intervention of the more inland tribes, either from the ſettlements about Hudſon's Bay, or thoſe on the lakes of Canada; unleſs we can admit the ſuppoſition, that the Ruſſians, from Kamptſchatka, have already extended their traffic to this diſtance; or that the natives of their moſt eaſterly Fox Iſlands carry on an intercourſe along the coaſt, with the inhabitants of Prince William's Sound. As to copper theſe people, perhaps, procure it themſelves, or, at moſt, it paſſes to them through very few hands; for when they offered any of it by way of barter, they uſed to expreſs its being in ſufficient plenty among them by pointing to their weapons, as if they would intimate, that, having ſo much copper of their own, they had no occaſion to increaſe their ſtock. However, if the natives of this inlet are furniſhed with European commodities by means of the intermediate traffic to the eaſtern coaſt, it is remarkable, that they ſhould never, in return, have ſupplied the more inland Indians with ſome of their ſea-otter ſkins, which would undoubtedly have appeared, at one time or other, in the environs of Hudſon's Bay. But that does not appear to be the caſe; and the only method by which we can account for this, muſt be by conſidering the very great diſtance; which, though it might not prevent European articles of commerce from coming ſo far, as being ſo uncommon, might hinder the ſkins, which are common, from paſſing through more than two or three tribes, who might make uſe of them for their own cloathing, and ſend others, which they reckoned of inferior value as being of their own animals, to the eaſt, till they reached the traders at the European ſettlements.

On Wedneſday the 20th of May, having took our departure from Prince William's Sound, we directed our courſe to the S. W. with a gentle breeze. This was ſucceeded by a calm, at four o'clock, the next morning, which was ſoon followed by a breeze from the S. W. This veering to the N. W. we continued to ſtretch to S. W. and paſſed a lofty promontory, in the latitude of 59 deg. 10 min. long. 207 deg. 45 min. It having been diſcovered on Princeſs Elizabeth's birth-day, Captain Cook gave it the name of Cape Elizabeth. As we could ſee no land beyond it, we flattered ourſelves, that it was the weſtern extremity of the continent: but freſh land ſoon appearing in ſight, bearing W. S. W. convinced us of our miſtake. The wind had increaſed to a ſtrong gale, and forced us to a conſiderable diſtance from the coaſt: but, on the 22nd, P. M. the gale abated, and we ſtood for Cape Elizabeth. On Saturday the 23d, at noon, Cape Elizabeth bore W. diſtant 10 leagues; at which time new land was ſeen, bearing S. W. which, it was imagined, connected Cape Elizabeth with the land we had ſeen towards the weſt. We ſtood to the ſouthward till the next day, at noon, when we were three leagues from the coaſt, which we had ſeen on the 22nd. More land was diſcovered, extending to the ſouthward, whereon was ſeen a ridge of mountains, whoſe ſummits were covered with ſnow. This point of land lies in latitude 58 deg. 15 min. Its longitude is 207 deg. 42 min. And by what the Commodore could gather from Beering's voyage and chart, he ſuppoſed it to be, what he called Cape St. Hermogenes. But the account of that voyage, as well as the chart, is ſo extremely inaccurate, that it is almoſt impoſſible to diſcover any one place, which the navigator either ſaw or touched at. In the chart a ſpace is pointed out, where Beering is ſuppoſed to have ſeen no land. This favoured Mr. Stæhlin's account, who makes Cape St. Hermogenes, and the land diſcovered by Beering to the S. W. of it, to be a cluſter of iſlands, and that St. Hermogenes is one of thoſe that are deſtitute of wood. This appeared to be confirmed by what we now ſaw; and we entertained the pleaſing hopes of finding here a paſſage northward, without being obliged to proceed any farther to the S. W.

We were detained by light airs and calms off the Cape, till two o'clock, A. M. of the 25th, when a breeze ſpringing up, we ſteered along the coaſt, and perceived that the land of Cape St. Hermogenes was an iſland, about ſix leagues in circumference, ſeparated from the coaſt by a channel, one league in breadth. Some rocks are to be ſeen above water to the north of this iſland; and on the N. E. ſide of the rocks, we had from 30 to 20 fathoms water. At noon St. Hermogenes bore S. E. diſtant 8 leagues; the land to the N. W. extending from S. half W. to near W. In this laſt direction, it ended in a low point, named Point Banks. The ſhip was, at this time, in latitude 58 deg. 41 min. longitude 207 deg. 44 min. In this ſtation the land was in ſight, bearing N. W. which, it was thought, connected Cape Elizabeth with this S. W. land. When we approached it, we obſerved it was an unconnected group of high iſlands and rocks; and from the nakedneſs of their appearance, the Captain named them the Barren Iſles: they are ſituated in latitude 59 deg. three leagues diſtant from Cape Elizabeth, and five from Point Banks. It was our intention to have paſſed through one of the channels by which theſe iſlands are divided; but a ſtrong current ſetting againſt us, we went to leeward of them all. The weather, which had been thick and hazy, cleared up towards the evening, when we perceived a very lofty promontory, whoſe elevated ſummit appeared above the clouds, forming two exceeding high mountains. Captain Cook named this promontory Cape Douglas, in honour of his friend Dr. Douglas, canon of Windſor. It is ſituated 12 leagues from Point Banks, and 10 to the weſtward of the Barren Iſles; in latitude 58 deg. 56 min. and longitude 206 deg. 10 min. Between this point and Cape Douglas is a large deep Bay, which, from our obſerving ſome ſmoke upon Point Banks, received the name ef Smokey Bay. At day break on the 26th, being to the northward of the Barren Iſles, we diſcovered more land, extending from Cape Douglas to the north. It conſiſted of a chain of very high mountains; one of which, being much more conſpicuous than the reſt, obtained the name of Mount St. Auguſtine. Having a freſh gale we ſtood to the N. W. till eight, when we found, that what we had ſuppoſed to be iſlands were ſummits of mountains, connected by the lower land. This was covered wholly with ſnow, from the tops of the mountains down to the ſea-beach; and had in every other reſpect, the appearance of a great continent. Captain Cook was now fully convinced, that no paſſage could be diſcovered by this inlet; and his continuing to explore it was more to ſatisfy others, than to confirm his own opinion. At this time Mount St. Auguſtine bore N. W. diſtant three leagues. It is of a conical figure, and riſes to a prodigious height; but whether it be an iſland, or part of the continent, is not yet aſcertained. Perceiving that nothing was to be done to the weſt, we ſtood over to Cape Elizabeth, under which we fetched at about five in the afternoon. Between Cape Elizabeth and a lofty promontory, which was named Cape Bede, is a bay, wherein we might have anchored; but, the Captain having no ſuch intention, we tacked and ſtood to the weſtward, with a very ſtrong gale, accompanied with rain and hazy weather. Next morning the gale abated, and about three o'clock in the afternoon, the weather cleared up; Cape Douglas bearing S. W. by W. and the depth of water being 40 fathoms, over a rocky bottom. From Cape Bede the coaſt trended N. E. by E. with a chain of mountains in land, in the ſame direction. We had now the mortification to diſcover low land in the middle of the inlet, extending from N. N. E. to N. E. by E. but, as it was ſuppoſed to be an iſland, we were not much diſcouraged.

On Thurſday, the 28th, A. M. having but little wind, the ſhip drove to the ſouthward, and in order to ſtop her, we dropped a kedge-anchor, with an eight inch hauſer. But, in bringing the ſhip up, we loſt both that and the anchor. However, we brought the ſhip up, with one of the bowers, and ſpent a conſiderable part of the day in ſweeping for them, but without effect. We were now in the latitude of 59 deg. 51 min. the low land extended from N. E. to S. E. the neareſt part diſtant two leagues; and the land on the weſtern ſhore about ſeven leagues. A ſtrong tide ſet to the ſouthward, out of the inlet; it was the ebb, and ran almoſt four knots in an hour. At ten o'clock it was low water. Though the water had become thick, and reſembled that in rivers, we were encouraged to proceed, by finding it as ſalt as in the ocean, even at low water. Three knots was the ſtrength of the flood tide; and the ſtream continued to run up till four in the afternoon. At eight o'clock in the evening we ſtood up the inlet, to the north. Soon after the wind veered to this quarter, and blew in ſqualls, attended with rain; but this did not hinder us from plying up while the flood continued, which was till the next morning at near five o'clock, when we anchored about two leagues from the eaſtern ſhore; and our latitude was 60 deg. 8 min. Some low land, which we ſuppoſed to be an iſland, lay under the weſtern ſhore, diſtant between three and four leagues. The weather clearing up, a ridge of mountains appeared; and two columns of ſmoke were viſible on the eaſtern ſhore. At one o'clock A. M. we weighed, and plied up under double reefed top-ſails, having a ſtrong gale at N. E.

On Saturday the 30th, the gale having much abated, we plied up from two o'clock A. M. till near ſeven, and then anchored under the ſhore to the eaſtward, in 19 fathoms water. At noon two canoes, with a man in each, came off to the ſhip, nearly from that part where we had ſeen the ſmoke the day before. They reſembled ſtrongly thoſe we had ſeen in Prince William's Sound, both in dreſs and perſon: their canoes were alſo conſtructed in the ſame manner; and one of them had a large beard, and a countenance like the common ſort of people in the Sound. When the flood made, we weighed, ſtood over to the weſtern ſhore, and fetched under a bluff point to the N. W. This, with the point on the oppoſite ſhore, contracted the breadth of the channel to about four leagues, through which a prodigious tide ran. It had a terrible appearance, and we were ignorant whether the water was thus agitated by the ſtream, or by the daſhing of the waves againſt ſands or rocks. We kept the weſtern ſhore aboard, that appearing to be the ſafeſt. In the evening, about eight o'clock, we anchored under a point of land, bearing N. E. diſtant about three leagues, and lay there during the ebb. Till we arrived at this ſtation, the water retained an equal degree of ſaltneſs, both at high and low water, and was as ſalt as that which is in the ocean: but now the appearances of a river evidently diſplayed themſelves. The water, taken up at this ebb, was much freſher than any we had taſted; whence we concluded that we were in a large river, and not in a ſtrait, which had a communication with the northern ſeas: but, having proceeded thus far, Captain Cook was anxious to have ſtronger proofs; therefore, on the thirty-firſt, in the morning, we weighed with the flood, and drove up with the tide, having but little wind. Near eight o'clock, many of the natives, in one large canoe, and ſeveral ſmall ones, paid us a viſit. The latter had only one perſon on board each; but the larger ones contained men, women, and children. We bartered with them for ſome of their fur dreſſes, made of the ſkins of animals, particularly thoſe of ſea-otters, martins, and hares, alſo ſalmon, halibut, and a few of their darts; for which, in return, we gave them old clothes, beads, and pieces of iron. Theſe laſt they call goone; but, in general, their language is nearly the ſame as that uſed in Prince William's Sound. At nine o'clock, we anchored in ſixteen fathoms water, almoſt two leagues from the weſtern ſhore, the ebb being already began. It ran but three knots an hour at its greateſt ſtrength, and fell, after we had anchored, twenty-one feet upon a perpendicular. In order to determine the direction, and other particulars reſpecting the inlet, Captain Cook diſpatched two boats, and when the flood tide made, followed them with the two ſhips; but, after driving about ten miles, we anchored, having a dead calm and ſtrong tide againſt us. At the loweſt of the ebb, the water at and near the ſurface, was perfectly freſh, though retaining a conſiderable degree of ſaltneſs, if taken above a foot below it. Beſides this, we had other convincing proofs of its being a river, ſuch as thick muddy water, low ſhores, trees, and rubbiſh of various kinds, floating backward and forward with the tide. In the afternoon we received another viſit from the natives, who bartered largely with our people, without ſo much as attempting one diſhoneſt action.

On Monday the 1ſt of June, at two o'clock, A. M. the maſter, who commanded the two boats, returned, informing us that he found the inlet or river contracted to one league in breadth, and that it took a northerly courſe through low land on each ſide. He advanced about three leagues through this narrow part, which he found from 20 to 17 fathoms deep. While the ſtream ran down the water was perfectly freſh, but it become brackiſh when it ran up, and more ſo near high water. Three leagues to the northward of this ſearch, the maſter diſcovered another ſeparation in the eaſtern chain of mountains, through which he ſuppoſed it probable, the river ran in a direction N. E. but this was thought by the captain to be only another branch, and that the main channel continued in a northern direction between the two chains of mountains. The pleaſing hopes of finding a paſſage were no longer entertained; but as the ebb was ſpent, we took the advantage of the next tide to get a cloſer view of the eaſtern branch: in order to determine whether the low land on the eaſt was an iſland or not. For this purpoſe we weighed with the firſt of the flood, and ſtood over for the eaſtern ſhore. At eight o'clock a breeze ſprang up in a direction oppoſite to our courſe, ſo that we deſpaired of reaching the entrance of the river. By reaſon of this untoward circumſtance, two boats were diſpatched, under the command of Lieutenant King, to make ſuch obſervations as might enable us to form ſome tolerable idea of the nature and courſe of the river. About ten o'clock the Reſolution and Diſcovery anchored in nine fathoms water. The Commodore obſerving the ſtrength of the tide to be ſo powerful, that the boats could not make head againſt it, made a ſignal for them to return, before they had proceeded half way to the entrance of the river. The only knowledge concerning the grand queſtion, obtained by this tide's work, was, that all the low land, which we had imagined to be an iſland, was one continued tract from the great river to the foot of the mountains, terminating at the ſouth entrance of this eaſtern branch, which the Commodore denominated the river Turnagain.

The low land begins again on the north ſide of this river, and extends from the foot of the mountains, to the bank of the great river, forming before the river Turnagain a large bay. Having entered this, the flood ſet very ſtrong into the river, the water falling 20 feet upon a perpendicular, from which circumſtances it was evident, that a paſſage was not to be expected by this ſide river, any more than by the main branch: but, as the water at ebb, though much freſher, retained a conſiderable degree of ſaltneſs, it is probable that both theſe branches are navigable by ſhips much farther; and that a very extenſive inland communication lies open, by means of this river and its ſeveral branches. We had traced it to the latitude of 61 deg. 30 min. and the long. of 210 deg. which is upwards of 210 miles from its entrance, and ſaw no appearance of its ſource. The time we ſpent in the diſcovery—(Here the Commodore having left a blank in his journal, which he had not filled up with any particular name, the earl of Sandwich very properly directed it to be called Cook's river) The time we ſpent in the diſcovery of Cook's river ought not to be regretted, if it ſhould hereafter prove uſeful to the preſent, or any future age: but the delay thus occaſioned was an eſſential loſs to us, who had a greater object in view. The ſeaſon was far advanced, and it was now evident, that the continent of North America extended much farther to the weſt than we had reaſon to expect from the moſt approved charts.

In the afternoon Lieutenant King was again ſent, with orders from the captain to land on the S. E. ſide of the river, where he was to diſplay the flag; and, in his majeſty's name, to take poſſeſſion of the country and Cook's river. He was ordered alſo to bury a bottle in the earth, containing ſome Engliſh coin of 1772, and a paper, whereon were written the names of our ſhips, and the date of our diſcovery. In the mean time the ſhips were got under way; but a calm enſued, and the flood tide meeting us, we found it neceſſary to caſt anchor; the point where Mr. King landed bearing S. diſtant two miles. This point of land was named Point Poſſeſſion. On Mr. King's return we were informed, that after he had landed he ſaw ſeveral of the natives with their arms extended, an attitude, he ſuppoſed, meant to ſignify their peaceable diſpoſition, and to convince him that they were without weapons. Obſerving his attendants were armed with muſquets, they were alarmed, and requeſted, by expreſſive ſigns, that he would lay them down. This was immediately complied with, and then Mr. King and his party were permitted to walk up to them. They now appeared to be very ſociable and chearful. Mr. Law, ſurgeon of the Diſcovery, being one of the party, purchaſed a dog, and taking it towards the boat, immediately ſhot it dead. At this they ſeemed exceedingly ſurprized; and, not thinking themſelves ſafe in ſuch company, they walked away; but it preſently appeared, that they had concealed their ſpears and other weapons in the buſhes cloſe behind them.

At high-water we weighed anchor, and with a faint breeze ſtood over to the weſt ſhore, where the next morning, being Tueſday the ſecond, we anchored, on account of the return of the flood. Soon after we were viſited by ſeveral of the natives in canoes, who bartered their ſkins, and afterwards parted with their garments, many of them returning perfectly naked. Among others, they brought a great quantity of the ſkins of white rabbits, and red foxes, but only two or three of thoſe of otters. We alſo purchaſed ſome pieces of halibut and ſalmon. They preferred iron to every thing we offered them in exchange. The lip-ornaments were leſs in faſhion among them than at Prince William's Sound; but thoſe which paſs through the noſe were more frequent, and in general conſiderably longer. They had likewiſe more embroidered work on their garments, quivers, knife-caſes, and other articles. At half paſt ten we weighed, and plied down the river with a gentle breeze at ſouth; when, by the inattention of the man at the lead, our ſhip ſtruck upon a bank, nearly in the middle of the river. It is pretty certain that this bank occaſioned that ſtrong agitation of the ſtream, with which we were ſo much ſurprized when turning up the river. We had twelve feet of water about the ſhip, at the loweſt of the ebb, but the bank was dry in other parts. When our ſhip came aground Captain Cook made a ſignal for the Diſcovery to anchor. We were afterwards informed that ſhe had been almoſt aſhore on the weſt ſide of the bank. About five o'clock in the afternoon, as the flood tide came in, the ſhip floated off without ſuſtaining any damage, or occaſioning the leaſt trouble. We then ſtood over to the weſt ſhore, where we anchored, in deep water, to wait for the ebb, the wind being ſtill unfavourable to us. At ten o'clock at night we weighed with the ebb, and about five the next morning, the 3d, the tide being finiſhed, we caſt anchor on the weſt ſhore, about ten miles below the bluff point. In this ſtation we were viſited by many of the natives, who attended us all the morning: their company was highly acceptable to us, as they brought with them a quantity of fine ſalmon, which they exchanged for ſome of our trifles. Several hundred weight of it was procured for the two ſhips. The mountains now, for the firſt time after our entering the river, were free from clouds, and we ſaw a volcano in one of thoſe on the weſtern ſide. Its latitude is 60 deg. 23 min. and it is the firſt high mountain north of Mount St. Auguſtin. The volcano is near the ſummit, and on that part of the mountain next the river. It emits a white ſmoke, but no fire. The wind continuing ſoutherly, we ſtill tided it down the river.

On Friday the 5th, in the morning, we arrived at the place where we had loſt our kedge anchor, which we attempted, though unſucceſsfully, to recover. Before our departure from hence, we were again viſited by ſome of the natives in ſix canoes from the eaſtern ſhore. The points of their ſpears and knives are made of iron; ſome of the former, indeed, are made of copper. Their ſpears reſemble our ſpontoons; and their knives, for which they have ſheaths, are of conſiderable length. Except theſe and a few glaſs beads, every thing we ſaw among them was of their own manufacture. A very beneficial fur trade might certainly be carried on with the natives of this vaſt coaſt: but without a northern paſſage, it is too remote for Great Britain to be benefitted by ſuch commerce. It ſhould however be noted, that almoſt the only valuable ſkins, on this weſt ſide of North America, are thoſe of the ſea-otter; their other ſkins are of an inferior quality. As the ſkins are uſed by theſe people only for cloathing themſelves, they, perhaps, are not at the trouble of dreſſing more of them, than they require for this purpoſe. This is probably the chief cauſe of their killing the animals, for they receive principally their ſupply of food from the ſea and rivers: but if theſe were accuſtomed to a conſtant trade with foreigners, ſuch an intercourſe would increaſe their wants, by acquainting them with new luxuries, to be enabled to purchaſe which, they would become more aſſiduous in procuring ſkins; and in this country, without doubt, a plentiful ſupply might be obtained.

This day, the ebb tide making in our favour, we weighed, and with a gentle breeze at S. W. plied down the river: the flood obliged us to anchor again; but the next morning of Saturday the 6th we got under ſail with a freſh breeze, paſſed the Barren Iſlands about eight o'clock, A. M. and at noon Cape St. Hermogenes bore S. S. E. eight leagues diſtant. We intended to go through the paſſage between the iſland of that name and the main land, but the wind ſoon after failed us; on which account we abandoned the deſign of carrying the ſhip through that paſſage: northward of it the land forms a bay, a low rocky iſland lying off the N. W. point. Some other iſlands, of a ſimilar appearance, are ſcattered along the coaſt between here and Point Banks. At eight in the evening, St. Hermogenes extended from S. half E. to S. S. E. and the rocks bore S. E. diſtant three miles. About midnight we paſſed the rocks, and bore up to the ſouthward; and on the 7th at noon St. Hermogenes bore N. diſtant four leagues. The ſouthernmoſt point of the main land lay N. half W. five leagues diſtant. The latitude of this promontory is 58 deg. 15 min. and its longitude 274 deg. 24 min. It was named after the day in our calendar, Cape Whitſunday; and a large bay to the weſt of it was called Whitſuntide Bay. At midnight we ſtood in for the land, and at ſeven in the morning of the eighth we were within four miles of it, and leſs than two miles from ſome ſunken rocks, bearing W. S. W. Here we anchored in thirty-five fathoms water. To the weſt of the bay are ſome ſmall iſlands. To the ſouthward the ſea coaſt is low, with projecting rocky points, having ſmall inlets between them. We were now in the latitude of 57 deg. 52 min. 30 ſec. The land here forming a point, it was named Cape Greville, in lat. 57 deg. 33 min. long. 207 deg. 15 min. diſtant from St. Hermogenes 15 leagues. On the 9th, 10th and 11th, we continued plying up the coaſt.

On Friday the 12th, in the evening, the fog clearing up, we deſcried land twelve leagues diſtant, bearing W. and we ſtood in for it early the next morning. At noon an elevated point, which we called Cape Barnabas, in lat. 57 deg. 13 min. bore N. N. E. diſtant ten miles. The point to the S. W. had an elevated ſummit, which terminated in two round hills, and was therefore called Two-headed Point. At ſix in the evening, being about midway between Cape Barnabas and Two-headed Point, a point of land was obſerved bearing S. 69 deg. W. On the fourteenth, at noon, we obſerved in lat. 56 deg. 49 min. The land ſeen the preceding evening, now appeared like two iſlands. We were up with the ſouthernmoſt part of it the next morning, and perceived it to be an iſland, which we named Trinity Iſland. It lies in lat. 56 deg. 36 min. long. 205 deg. diſtant from the continent three leagues, between which rocks and iſlands are interſperſed. In the evening, at eight, we were within a league of the ſmall iſlands. The weſternmoſt point of the continent, now in view, we called Cape Trinity, it being a low point facing Trinity Iſland. Having reaſon at this time to expect foggy weather, we ſtretched out to ſea, and paſſed two or three rocky iſlots near the eaſt end of Trinity Iſland. This we weathered, and in the afternoon ſteered weſt-ſoutherly, with a gale at S. S. E. No land appearing on Monday the fifteenth at noon, and the gale and fog increaſing, we ſteered W. N. W. under ſuch ſail as we could haul the wind with; ſenſible of the danger of running before a ſtrong gale, in the vicinity of an unknown coaſt and in a thick fog. It was however become neceſſary to run ſome riſk, when the wind was favourable to us; as we were convinced that clear weather was generally accompanied with weſterly winds.

On Tueſday, the 16th, at four o'clock, A. M. the fog being now diſperſed, we found ourſelves, in a manner, ſurrounded with land. The extreme of the main, at N. E. was a point of land we had ſeen through the fog, and was therefore named Foggy Cape. It is ſituated in latitude 56 deg. 31 min. About nine o'clock, we diſcovered the land to be an iſland, nine miles in circumference, in lat. 56 deg. 10 min. long. 202 deg. 45 min. we named it Foggy Iſland; and we ſuppoſed, from its ſituation, that it is the iſland on which Beering had beſtowed the ſame appellation. Three or four iſlands bore N. by W. A point, with pinnacle rocks upon it, bore N. W. by W. called Pinnacle Point; and a cluſter of iſlots, S. S. E. about nine leagues from the coaſt. On the 17th, at noon, the continent extended from S. W. to N. by E; the neareſt part diſtant 7 leagues: at the ſame diſtance from the continent, a group of iſlands was ſeen to the N. W. On the 18th we had clear, pleaſant weather, and it was a calm the greateſt part of the day. One of our people, on board a boat diſpatched to the Diſcovery, ſhot a moſt beautiful bird. It is ſmaller than a duck, and the colour is black, except that the fore part of the head is white: behind each eye, an elegant yellowiſh-white creſt ariſes: the bill and feet are of a reddiſh colour. The firſt of theſe birds were ſeen to the ſouthward of Cape St. Hermogenes; after which we ſaw them daily, and frequently in large flocks. We were alſo viſited by moſt of the other ſea-fowls, that are uſually met with in the northern oceans; and ſeldom a day paſſed without our ſeeing whales, ſeals, and other fiſh of great magnitude. In the afternoon we ſteered weſt, for the channel between the iſlands and the continent. On Friday, the 19th, at day-break, we were not far from it, and perceived ſeveral other iſlands, within thoſe we had already ſeen, of various dimenſions. Between theſe iſlands, and thoſe we had ſeen before, there appeared to be a clear channel, for which we ſteered; and, at noon our latitude was 55 deg. 18 min. in the narroweſt part of the channel. Of this group of iſlands, the largeſt was now upon our left, and is called Kodiak, as we were afterwards informed. Other iſlands appeared to the ſouthward as far as an iſland could be ſeen. They begin in the longitude of 200 deg. 15 min. eaſt, and extend about two degrees to the weſtward. Moſt of theſe iſlands are tolerably high, but very barren and rugged, exhibiting romantic appearances, and abounding with cliffs and rocks. They have ſeveral bays and coves about them; and ſome freſh-water ſtreams deſcend from their elevated parts, but the land is not adorned with a ſingle tree or buſh. Plenty of ſnow ſtill remained on many of them, as well as on thoſe parts of the continent which appeared between the innermoſt iſlands. By four o'clock, in the afternoon, we had paſſed all the iſlands to the ſouth of us; and ſoon after we had got through the channel, the Diſcovery, which was two miles aſtern, fired three guns, and brought to, making a ſignal to ſpeak with us. A boat being ſent off to her, returned immediately with Captain Clerke. He informed the commodore, that ſome natives in three or four canoes, having followed his ſhip for ſome time, at laſt got under the ſtern; one of whom made many ſigns, having his cap off, and bowing in the European manner. A rope was then handed down from the ſhip, to which he faſtened a thin wooden box, and after he had made ſome more geſticulations, the canoes left the Diſcovery. Soon after the box was opened, and found to contain a piece of paper, carefully folded up, whereon ſome writing appeared, which was ſuppoſed to be in the Ruſſian language. To this writing was prefixed the date of 1778, and a reference was made therein to the year 1776. Though unable to decypher the alphabet of the writer, we were convinced by his numerals, that others had preceded us in viſiting theſe dreary regions. At firſt Captain Clerke imagined, that ſome Ruſſians had been ſhipwrecked here; and that ſeeing our ſhips, theſe unfortunate perſons were induced thus to inform us of their ſituation. Deeply impreſſed with ſentiments of humanity on this occaſion, he was in hopes the Reſolution would have ſtopped till they had time to join us; but no ſuch idea ever occurred to Captain Cook. If this had really been the caſe, he ſuppoſed, that the firſt ſtep ſuch perſons would have taken, in order to ſecure relief, would have been, to ſend ſome of their people off to the ſhips in the canoes. He, therefore, rather thought the paper was intended to communicate ſome information, from a Ruſſian trader, who had lately viſited theſe iſlands, to be delivered to any of his countrymen who ſhould arrive; and that the natives, ſuppoſing us to be Ruſſians, had brought off the note. In conſequence of this opinion, the Captain ordered ſail to be made, and we ſteered weſtward. At midnight, we beheld a vaſt flame aſcend from a burning mountain, and obſerved ſeveral fires within land.

On Saturday, the 20th, at two o'clock A. M. ſome breakers were ſeen, diſtant two miles; others appeared a-head; on our larboard ſide they were innumerable; and alſo beeween us and the land. We cleared them, though with difficulty, by holding a ſouth courſe. Theſe breakers were produced by rocks, many of which were above water: they are very dangerous, and extend ſeven leagues from land. We got on the outſide of them about noon, when we obſerved in latitude 54 deg. 44 min. longitude 198 deg. The neareſt land was an elevated bluff point, which we called Rock Point. It bore N. diſtant 8 leagues; and a high round hill, called Halibut Head, bore S. W. diſtant 13 leagues. On the 21ſt, Halibut Iſland extended from N. by E. to N. W. This iſland is ſeven leagues in circumference, and except the head, is very low and barren. We were kept at ſuch a diſtance from the continent, by the rocks and breakers, that we had but a very imperfect view of the coaſt between Halibut Iſland and Rock Point. We could, however, perceive the main land covered with ſnow; particularly ſome hills, whoſe elevated tops towered above the clouds to a moſt ſtupendous height. A volcano was ſeen on the moſt ſouth-weſterly of theſe hills, which perpetually threw up immenſe columns of black ſmoke: it is at no great diſtance from the coaſt, and lies in the latitude of 54 deg. 48 min. and in longitude 195 deg. 45 min. Its figure is a complete cone, and the volcano is at the ſummit of it: remarkable as it may appear, the wind, at the height to which the ſmoke of the volcano roſe, often moved in an oppoſite direction to what it did at ſea, even in a freſh gale. In the afternoon, having three hours calm, upwards of 100 halibuts were caught by our people, ſome of which weighed upwards of a hundred pounds, and none of them leſs than twenty each. They were highly acceptable to us. We fiſhed in 35 fathoms water, about four miles diſtant from the ſhore; during which time, we were viſited by a man in a ſmall canoe, who came from a large iſland. When he drew near to the ſhip, he uncovered his head and bowed, as the other had done the preceding day, when he came off to the Diſcovery. It appeared very plain to us, that the Ruſſians had ſome communication with theſe people, not only from their politeneſs, but from an additional proof that we now were favoured with: for our new viſitor had on a pair of green cloth breeches, and a jacket of black cloth, under the frock of his own country. He had with him a grey fox-ſkin, and ſome fiſhing implements: alſo a bladder, wherein was ſome liquid, which we ſuppoſed to be oil: he opened it, drank a mouthful, and then cloſed it up again. His canoe was ſmaller than any one of thoſe we had ſeen before, though of the ſame conſtruction: like others who had viſited the Diſcovery, he uſed the double-bladed paddle. His features reſembled thoſe of the natives of Prince William's Sound, but he was perfectly free from any kind of paint; and his lip had been perforated in an oblique direction, but at this viſit he had not any kind of ornament in it. Many of the words frequently uſed by the natives of the Sound, were repeated to him, but he did not ſeem to underſtand any of them, owing either to his ignorance of the dialect, or our erroneous pronunciation.

On Monday, the 22d, the wind ſhifted to the S. E. and, as uſual, was attended with thick rainy weather. In the evening, fearing we might fall in with land, we hauled to the ſouthward, till two the next morning, and then bore away weſt; yet we made but little way. At five o'clock P. M. we had an interval of ſunſhine, when we ſaw land bearing N. 59 deg. W. On Wedneſday, the 24th, at ſix o'clock A. M. we ſaw the continent; and at nine it extended from N. by E. to S. W. by W. the neareſt part diſtant four leagues. The next morning we had clear weather, inſomuch, that we clearly ſaw the volcano, the other mountains, and all the main land under them. A large opening was likewiſe ſeen between ſeveral iſlands and a point of the land. We now ſteered to the ſouthward; when, having got without all the land in ſight, we ſteered weſt, the iſlands lying in that direction. By eight o'clock we had paſſed three of them, all of a good height; and more were now obſerved to the weſtward. In the afternoon, the weather became gloomy, and afterwards turned to a miſt, the wind blowing freſh at eaſt, we therefore hauled the wind to the ſouthward till daybreak, on Friday the 26th, when we reſumed our courſe to the weſt. We derived but little advantage from daylight, the weather being ſo thick that we could not diſcover objects at the diſtance of a hundred yards; but as the wind was moderate, we ventured to run. About half an hour after four, the ſound of breakers alarmed us on our larboard bow. We brought the ſhip to, and anchored in twenty-five fathoms water. The Diſcovery who was not far diſtant anchored alſo. Some hours after, the fog being a little diſperſed, we diſcovered the imminent danger we had eſcaped. We were three quarters of a mile from the N. E. ſide of an iſland: two elevated rocks were about half a league from us, and from each other. Several breakers alſo appeared about them; and yet Providence had ſafely conducted the ſhips through in the dark, between thoſe rocks, which we ſhould not have attempted to have done in a clear day; and to ſo commodious an anchoring-place, which, on account of our miraculous eſcape, received the name of Providence Bay. During the night, the wind blew freſh at ſouth, but in the morning was more moderate, and the fog, in a great meaſure diſperſed. At ſeven o'clock, we weighed, and ſteered between the iſland near which we had anchored, and a ſmall one not far from it. The breadth of the channel does not exceed a mile, and the wind failed before we could paſs through it. We were therefore glad to anchor in 34 fathoms water. Land now preſented itſelf in every direction. That to the ſouth extended, in a ridge of mountains, to the S. W. which we afterwards found to be an iſland, called Oonalaſhka. Between this, and the land to the north, which we ſuppoſed to be a group of iſlands, there appeared to be a channel in a N. W. direction. On a point, weſt from the ſhip, and at a diſtance of three quarters of a mile, we perceived ſeveral natives and their habitations. To this place we ſaw two whales towed in, which we ſuppoſed had juſt been killed. A few of the inhabitants came off, at different times, to the ſhips, and engaged in a little traffic with our people, but never continued with us above a quarter of an hour at a time. They ſeemed, indeed, remarkably ſhy; though we could readily diſcover they were not unacquainted with veſſels, ſimilar, in ſome degree to ours. Their addreſs expreſſed a degree of politeneſs which we had never experienced among any of the ſavage tribes. Being favoured, about one o'clock, P. M. with a light breeze, and the tide of flood, we weighed, and directed our courſe to the channel laſt mentioned; expecting when we had paſſed through, either to find the land trend away to the northward, or that we ſhould diſcover a paſſage out to ſea, to the weſt; and we ſoon found we were right in our conjectures. After we had got under ſail, the wind veered to the N. and we were obliged to ply. In the evening, the ebb made it neceſſary for us to anchor within three leagues of our laſt ſtation.

On Sunday, the 28th, at day-break, we got again under way, and were waſted up the paſſage by a light breeze at ſouth; this was ſucceeded by variable light airs from all directions. We had, however, a rapid tide in our favour, and the Reſolution got through before the ebb made. The Diſcovery was not equally fortunate, for ſhe was carried back, got into the race, and found a difficulty in getting clear of it. Being now through the channel, we obſerved the land on one ſide trending W. and S. W. and that on the other ſide to N. This encouraged us to hope that the continent had taken a new direction in our favour. Finding our water ran ſhort, and expecting to be driven about in a rapid tide, without wind ſufficient to govern the ſhip, we ſtood for a harbour on the ſouth ſide of the paſſage, but were driven beyond it; and, that we might not be forced back through the paſſage, anchored near the ſouthern ſhore, in 28 fathoms, and out of the reach of the ſtrong tide, though even here it ran five knots an hour. In this ſtation we were viſited by ſeveral of the natives, in ſeparate canoes. They bartered ſome fiſhing implements for tobacco. A young man among them overſet his canoe, while he was along-ſide of one of our boats. He was caught hold of by one of our people, but the canoe was taken up one of his countrymen, and carried aſhore. In conſequence of this accident, the youth was obliged to come into the ſhip, where he accepted an invitation into the cabin, without any ſurprize or embarraſſment. He had on an upper garment, reſembling a ſhirt, made of the gut of a whale, or ſome other large ſea-animal. Under this he had another of the ſame form, made of the ſkins of birds with the feathers on, curiouſly ſewed together; the feathered ſide placed next the ſkin. It was patched with ſeveral pieces of ſilk ſtuff, and his cap was embelliſhed with glaſs beads. His cloaths being wet, we furniſhed him with ſome of our own, which he put on with as much readineſs as we could have done. From the behaviour of this youth, and that of ſeveral others, it evidently appeared that theſe people were no ſtrangers to Europeans, and to many of their cuſtoms. Something in the appearance of our ſhips, however, greatly excited their curioſity: for, ſuch as had not canoes to bring them off, aſſembled on the neighbouring hills to have a view of them. At low water we towed the ſhip into the harbour, where we anchored in nine fathoms water, the Diſcovery arriving ſoon after. A boat was now ſent off to draw the ſeine, but we caught only a few trout, and ſome other ſmall fiſh. We had ſcarce anchored, when a native of the iſland brought another note on board, ſimilar to that which had been given to Captain Clerke. He preſented it to our Commodore, but as it was written in the Ruſſian language neither he, nor any of our company, could read it. As it could not be of any uſe to us, and might be of conſequence to others, Captain Cook returned it to the bearer, accompanied with a few preſents; for which he expreſſed his thanks, as he retired, by ſeveral low bows. On the 29th we ſaw along the ſhore, a group of the natives of both ſexes, ſeated on the graſs, partaking of a repaſt of raw fiſh, which they ſeemed to reliſh exceedingly. We were detained by thick fogs and a contrary wind, till Thurſday the 2d of July, in this harbour. It is called by the natives Samganoodha, and is ſituated on the north ſide of the iſland of Oonolaſhka, in lat. 53 deg. 55 min. long. 193 deg. 30 min. and in the ſtrait which ſeparates this iſland from thoſe to the north. It is about a mile broad at the entrance, and runs in about four miles S. by W. It narrows towards the head, the breadth there not exceeding a quarter of a mile. Plenty of good water may be procured here, but not a ſtick of wood of any kind.

On Thurſday, the 2d of July we ſteered from the harbour of Samganoodha, having a gentle breeze at S. S. E. to the northward, and met with nothing to obſtruct our courſe: for on the one ſide the Iſle of Oonalaſhka trended S. W. and on the other, no land was to be ſeen in a direction more northerly than N. E. all which land was a continuation of the ſame group of iſlands that we had fallen in with, on the 25th of the preceding month. That which is ſituated before Samganoodha, and conſtitutes the north-eaſtern ſide of the paſſage, through which we came, is called Oonella; and its circumference is 21 miles. Another iſland, lying to the northward of it, bears the name of Acootan: it is much ſuperior in ſize to Oonella, and has in it ſome very lofty mountains, at this time covered with ſnow. It appeared that we might have paſſed with great ſafety between theſe two iſlands and the continent, whoſe ſouth-weſtern point opened off the north-eaſtern point of Acootan, and proved to be the ſame point of land that we had diſcerned when we left the coaſt of the continent, the 25th of June, in order to go without the iſlands. It is called by the natives Oonemack; and is ſituated in lat. 54 deg. 30 min. long. 192 deg. 30 min. E. Over the Cape, which is high land, we perceived a round elevated mountain, at preſent covered with ſnow. At ſix o'clock A. M. this mountain bore E. 2 deg. N. and two hours afterwards not any land was to be ſeen. Concluding, therefore, that the coaſt of the continent had now inclined to the north-eaſtward, we ſteered the ſame courſe till one o'clock the following morning, when the watch ſtationed on deck gave intimation of their ſeeing land. Upon this we wore, and for the ſpace of about two hours ſtood towards the S. W. after which we renewed our courſe to the E. N. E. At ſix we diſcovered land a-head, bearing S. E. diſtant five leagues. As we advanced we diſcovered a connected chain of land. At noon we perceived that it extended from S. S. W. to E. the part neareſt to us being at the diſtance of five leagues. We now obſerved in lat. 55 deg. 21 min. long. 195 deg. 18 min. E. At ſix o'clock A. M. we ſounded, and found a bottom of black ſand, at the depth of 48 fathoms. At this time we were four leagues from the land, and its eaſtern part in ſight was in the direction of E. S. E. to appearance an elevated round hummock.

On Saturday the 4th, at eight o'clock, A. M. we ſaw the coaſt from S. S. W. and E. by S. and at intervals we could diſcern high land behind it, covered with ſnow. Soon after we had a calm, when all hands were employed in fiſhing; and as our people were now put on two thirds allowance, what each catched he might eat or ſell. Fortunate for them, they caught ſome tons of fine fiſh, which proved a moſt ſeaſonable ſupply; for the ſhip proviſions, what with ſalt and maggots eating into the beef and pork, and the rats and the weavils devouring the heart of the bread, the one was little better than putrid fleſh, and the other, upon breaking, would crumble into duſt. Among the fiſh we caught with hook and line, were a great number of excellent cod. At noon we had an eaſterly breeze and clear weather, when we were about ſix leagues from the land, which extended from S. by W. to E. by S. and the hummock, ſeen the preceding evening, bore S. W. by S. nine leagues diſtant. A great hollow ſwell convinced us, that there was no main land weſtward near us. At ſix o'clock, P. M. we ſteered a northerly courſe, when the wind veering to the S. E. enabled us to ſteer E. N. E. The coaſt lay in this direction, and the next day, at noon, was four leagues diſtant. On the 6th and 7th we made but little way, the wind being northerly. On Wedneſday, the 8th, the coaſt extended from S. S. W. to E. by N. and was all low land, and it is not improbable that this extends to a conſiderable diſtance towards the S. W. and that thoſe places which we ſometimes ſuppoſed to be inlets or bays, are nothing more than valleys between the mountains. This day we hooked plenty of fine cod.

On Thurſday the 9th, in the morning, having a breeze at N. W. we ſteered E. by N. in order to make a nearer approach to the coaſt. At noon we obſerved in latitude 57 deg. 49 min. long. 201 deg. 33 min. E. at the diſtance of two leagues from land, which was obſerved to extend from S. by E. to N. E. being all a low coaſt, with points projecting in ſeveral places. In advancing towards the N. E. we had found that the depth of water gradually decreaſed, and the coaſt trended more and more northerly; but we obſerved the ridge of mountains behind it continued to lie in the ſame direction as thoſe that were more weſterly; ſo that the extent of the low land between the coaſt and the foot of the mountains inſenſibly increaſed. Both the low and high grounds were totally deſtitute of wood, but apparently covered with a green turf, the mountains excepted, which were covered with ſnow. As we proceeded along the coaſt, with a light weſterly breeze, the water ſhoaled gradually from fifteen to ten fathoms, though we were eight or ten miles diſtant from the ſhore. About eight o'clock in the evening a lofty mountain, which had been ſome time within ſight, bore S. E. by E. diſtant twenty-one leagues. Several other mountains, forming the ſame chain, and much further diſtant, bore E. 3 deg. N. The coaſt was ſeen to extend as far as N. E. half N. where it ſeemed to terminate in a point, beyond which it was both our hope and expectation that it would aſſume a more eaſterly direction. But not long afterwards we perceived low land, that extended from behind this point, as far as N. W. by W. where it was loſt in the horizon; and behind it we diſcerned high land, appearing in hills detached from each other. Thus the fine proſpect we had of getting to the northward, vaniſhed in an inſtant. We ſtood on till nine o'clock, and then the point before-mentioned was one league diſtant, bearing N. E. half E. Behind the point is a river, which, at its entrance, ſeemed to be a mile in breadth. The water appeared ſomewhat diſcoloured, as upon ſhoals; but a calm would have given it a ſimilar aſpect. It ſeemed to take a winding direction, through the extenſive flat which lies between the chain of mountains towards the S. E. and the hills to the north-weſtward. It abounds, we apprehend, with ſalmon, as many of thoſe fiſh were ſeen leaping before the entrance. The mouth of this river, which we diſtinguiſhed by the name of Briſtol River, lies in lat. 58 deg. 27 min. and in long. 201 deg. 55 min. E.

On the 10th at day-break we made ſail to the W. S. W. with a light breeze at N. E. At eleven o'clock A. M. thinking that the coaſt towards the N. W. terminated in a point, bearing N. W. by W. we ſteered for that point, having ordered the Diſcovery to keep a-head; but before that veſſel had run a mile, ſhe made a ſignal for ſhoal water. At that very time we had the depth of ſeven fathoms, yet before we could get the head of our ſhip the other way, we had leſs than five; but the Diſcovery's ſoundings were leſs than four fathoms. We now ſtood back three miles to the N. E but obſerving a ſtrong tide ſetting to the W. S. W. in a direction to the ſhoal, we brought the ſhips to anchor in ten fathoms, over a ſandy bottom. Two hours after the water fell upwards of two feet, which proved that it was the tide of ebb that came from Briſtol River. In the afternoon the wind having ſhifted to the S. W. we weighed at four o'clock, and made ſail towards the S. having ſeveral boats a-head employed in ſounding. When we had paſſed over the ſouth end of the ſhoal, in ſix fathoms water, we afterwards got into fifteen fathoms, in which we let go our anchors again between eight and nine in the evening; ſome part of the chain of mountains on the ſouth-eaſtern ſhore being in ſight, and bearing S. E. half S. and the moſt weſterly land on the other ſhore bearing N. W. In the courſe of this day we had deſcried high land which bore N. 60 deg. W.

On Saturday the 11th, at two o'clock A. M. we weighed anchor, with a gentle breeze at S. W. by W. and plied to windward till nine, when judging the flood tide to be againſt us, we anchored in twenty-four fathoms. At one o'clock P. M. the fog, that had this morning prevailed, diſperſing, and the tide becoming favourable, we weighed and plied to the ſouth-weſtward. Towards the evening we had ſome thunder. We had heard none before from the time of our arrival on this coaſt, and what we now heard was at a great diſtance. In the morning of the 12th we ſteered a N. W. courſe, and at ten o'clock ſaw the continent. At noon it extended from N. E. by N. to N. N. W. quarter W. and an elevated hill appeared in the direction of N. N. W. diſtant ten leagues. This we found to be an iſland, to which, on account of its figure, Captain Cook gave the name of Round Iſland. It is ſituated in the latitude of 58 deg. 37 min. and in longitude 200 deg. 6 min. E. diſtant from the continent ſeven miles. At nine in the evening, having ſteered a northerly courſe to within three leagues of the ſhore, we tacked in fourteen fathoms; the extremities of the coaſt bearing S. E. half E. and W. We ſtretched along ſhore till two the next morning, when we ſuddenly got into ſix fathoms water, being at the ſame time two leagues from ſhore. After we had edged off a little, our depth of water gradually increaſed, and at noon we ſounded in twenty fathoms. Round Iſland at this time bore N. 5 deg. E. and the weſtern extreme of the coaſt N. 16 deg. W. It is an elevated point, and having calm weather while we were off it, for this reaſon it was named Calm Point. On the 14th and 15th, having little wind, we advanced but ſlowly. At times a very thick fog came on. Our ſoundings were from twenty-ſix to fourteen fathoms. We had pretty good ſucceſs in fiſhing, for we caught plenty of cod and ſome flat fiſh.

On Thurſday the 16th, at five o'clock A. M. the fog clearing up, we found ourſelves nearer the ſhore than we expected. Calm Point bore N. 72 deg. E. and a point about eight leagues from it, in a weſterly direction, bore N. 3 deg. E. only three miles diſtant. Between theſe two points the coaſt forms a bay, in ſeveral parts of which the land could ſcarcely be ſeen from the maſt-head. Another bay is on the north-weſtern ſide of the laſt-mentioned point, between it and a high promontory, which now bore N. 36 deg. W. at the diſtance of ſixteen miles. About nine o'clock the Commodore diſpatched Lieutenant Williamſon to this promontory, with orders to go aſhore and obſerve what direction the coaſt took beyond it, and what might be the produce of the country; which, when viewed from the ſhips, had but a ſterile appearance. We here found the flood-tide ſetting ſtrongly towards the N. W. along the coaſt. At noon it was high water, and we caſt anchor at the diſtance of twelve miles from the ſhore, in twenty-four fathoms. About five in the afternoon, the tide beginning to make in our favour, we weighed, and drove with it, there being no wind. When Mr. Williamſon returned, he reported that he had landed on the point, and having aſcended the moſt elevated hill, found that the moſt diſtant part of the coaſt in ſight was nearly in a northerly direction. He took poſſeſſion of the country in the name of his Britannic Majeſty, and left on the hill a bottle containing a paper, on which the names of our ſhips and of their commanders, and the date of the diſcovery, were inſcribed. The promontory, which he named Cape Newenham, is a rocky point, of conſiderable height, and is ſeated in latitude 58 deg. 42 min. and in longitude 197 deg. 36 min. E. Over, or within it, two lofty hills ariſe one behind another, of which the innermoſt, or eaſternmoſt, is the higheſt. The country, as far as Mr. Williamſon could diſcern, produces not a ſingle tree or ſhrub. The hills were naked, but on the lower grounds there grew graſs and plants of various kinds, very few of which were at this time in flower. The Lieutenant met with no other animals than a doe with her fawn, and a dead ſea-horſe or cow that lay on the beach: of the latter animals we had ſeen a conſiderable number from the ſhips. Cape Newenham is the northern boundary of the extenſive gulph or bay ſituated before the river Briſtol, which, in honour of the Admiral, Earl of Briſtol, received from the Commodore the diſtinction of Briſtol Bay. Cape Ooneemak forms the ſouthern limit of this bay, and is eighty-two leagues diſtant, in the direction of S. S. W. from Cape Newenham. At eight o'clock in the evening we ſteered to the N. W. and N. N. W. round the cape, which at noon the next day was four leagues diſtant, bearing S. by E. The moſt advanced land towards the north, bore N. 30 deg. E. and the neareſt part of the coaſt was three leagues and a half diſtant. During the afternoon there was but little wind, ſo that by ten o'clock in the evening we had only proceeded three leagues on a northerly courſe.

Saturday the 18th, at eight o'clock A. M. we were ſteering N. by W. when the depth of water ſuddenly decreaſed to ſeven and five fathoms; on which account we brought to, till a boat from each of the ſhips was ſent a-head to ſound, and then we ſteered to the N. E. At noon, when the water deepened to ſeventeen fathoms, Cape Newenham was twelve leagues diſtant, bearing S. 9 deg. E. the north-eaſtern extremity of the land in ſight bore N. 66 deg. E. and the diſtance of the neareſt ſhore was four leagues. Our latitude was 59 deg. 16 min. N. Before one o'clock the boats a-head diſplayed the ſignal for ſhoal-water. They had only two fathoms; but at the ſame time the ſhips were in ſix. By hauling more to the north, we continued nearly in the ſame depth till between five and ſix o'clock, when our boats finding leſs and leſs water, Captain Cook made the ſignal to the Diſcovery, which was then a-head, to caſt anchor, and both ſhips ſoon came to. In bringing up the Reſolution, her cable parted at the clinch, ſo that we were obliged to make uſe of the other anchor. We rode in 6 fathoms water, over a bottom of ſand, at the diſtance of about five leagues from the continent. Cape Newenham now bore S. diſtant 16 leagues. The fartheſt hills we could perceive towards the north, bore N. E. by E. and low land ſtretched out from the more elevated parts as far as N. by E. Without this there was a ſhoal of ſtones and ſand, dry at half ebb. The two maſters having been ſent, each in a boat, to ſound between this ſhoal and the coaſt, reported, on their return, that there was a channel, in which the ſoundings were 6 and 7 fathoms, but that it was rather narrow and intricate. At low water, we attempted to get a hawſer round the loſt anchor, but did not then ſucceed: however being reſolved not to leave it behind us, while there remained the proſpect of recovering it, we perſevered in our endeavours; and at length, in the evening of the 20th, we had the deſired ſucceſs. While thus employed, the Commodore ordered Captain Clerke to ſend his maſter in a boat to ſearch for a paſſage in a S. W. direction. He accordingly did ſo, but could find no channel in that quarter; nor did it appear, that there was any other way to get clear of the ſhoals, than by returning by the ſame track in which we had entered: for though, by following the channel we were now in, we might, perhaps, have got farther down the coaſt; and though this channel might have probably carried us at laſt to the northward, clear of the ſhoals, yet the attempt would have been attended with extreme hazard, and, in caſe of ill-ſucceſs, there would have been a great loſs of time, that we could not conveniently ſpare. Theſe reaſons induced the Commodore to return by the way which had brought us in, and thus avoid the ſhoals. The latitude of our preſent ſtation, by lunar obſervations, was 59 deg. 37 min. 30 ſec. N. and our longitude 197 deg. 45 min. 48 ſec. E. The moſt northern part of the coaſt that we could diſcern from this ſtation, was ſuppoſed to be ſituate in lat. 60 deg. It formed, to appearance, a low point, to which was given the name of Shoal Neſs. The tide of flood ſets to the northward, and the ebb to the ſouthward: it riſes and falls five or ſix feet upon a perpendicular, and we reckon that it is high water at eight o'clock on the full and change days.

On Tueſday the 21ſt, at three o'clock A. M. having a gentle breeze at N. N. W. we ſet ſail, with three boats a-head employed in ſounding. Notwithſtanding this precaution, we met with greater difficulty in returning than we had in advancing; and were at length under the neceſſity of anchoring, to avoid the danger of running upon a ſhoal that had only a depth of five feet. While we lay at anchor, twenty-ſeven Americans, each in a ſeparate canoe, came off to the ſhips, which they approached with ſome degree of caution. As they advanced they hallooed, and extended their arms; thereby intimating, as we underſtood, their peaceable intentions, and how cordially they were ready to receive us. Some of them at laſt came near enough to receive a few trifling articles, which we threw to them. This gave encouragement to the others to venture along-ſide; and a traffic quickly commenced between them and our people, who obtained wooden veſſels, bows, darts, arrows, dreſſes of ſkins, &c. in exchange for which the natives accepted whatever we

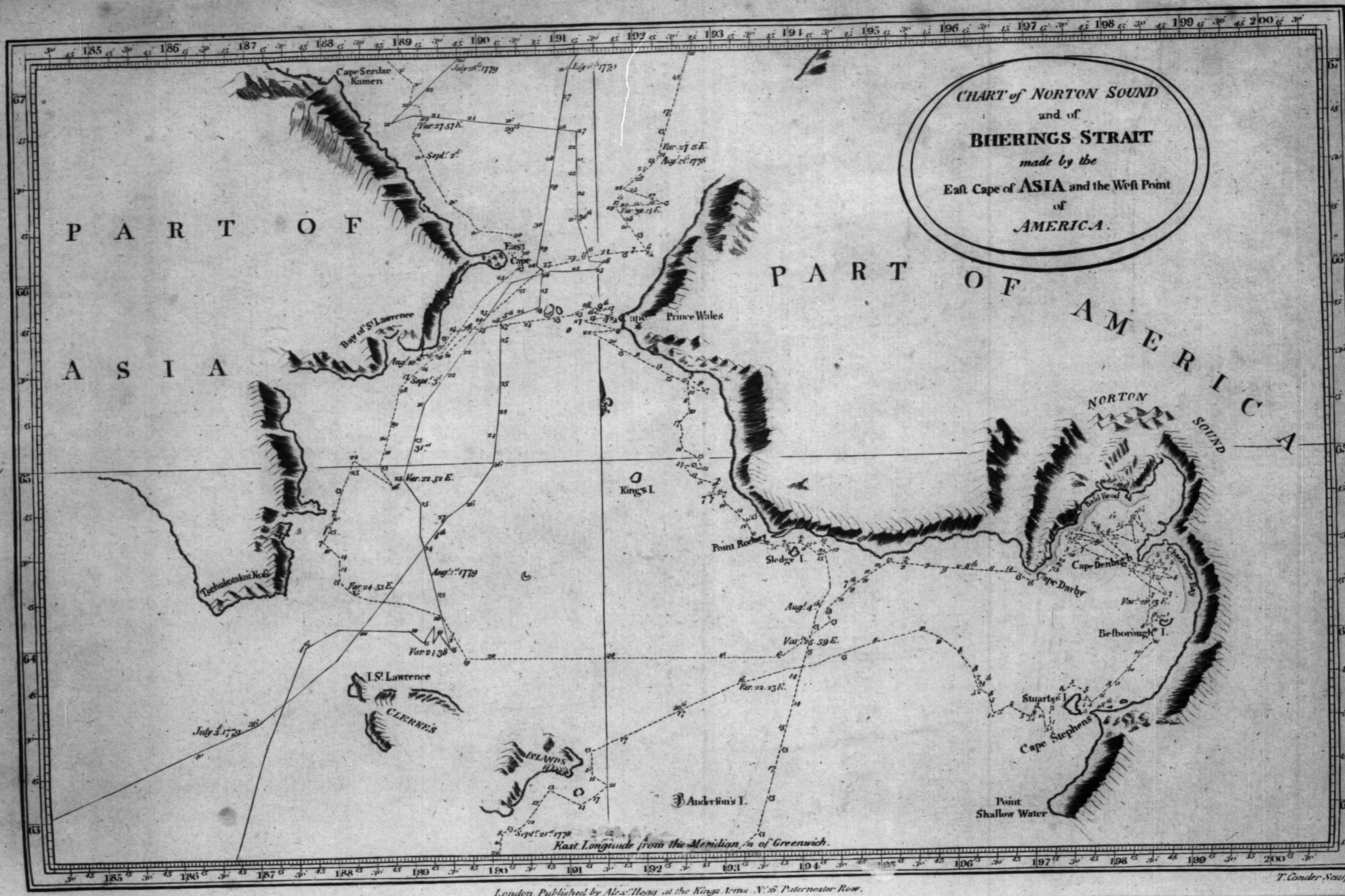


CHART of NORTON SOUND and of BHERINGS STRAIT made by the East Cape of ASIA and the West Point of AMERICA.

PART OF ASIA
PART OF AMERICA
Cape Serdze Kamen
East Cape
Bay of St. Lawrence
Tschukotskoi Noss
I. St. Lawrence
CLERKE'S ISLANDS
Cape Prince Wales
King's I.
Point Rodney
Sledge I.
Anderson's I.
NORTON SOUND
Bald Head
Cape Darby
Cape Denbigh
Chacktoole Bay
Besborough I.
Stuarts I.
Cape Stephens
Point Shallow Water
July 3d. 1779
July 5th. 1779
July 6th. 1779
Aug. 1st. 1779
Aug. 4th.
Aug. 10th.
Sept. 3d.
Sept. 2d.
Sept. 21st. 1778
Aug. 6th. 1778
Var. 27.57 E.
Var. 27.15 E.
Var. 30.15 E.
Var. 22.52 E.
Var. 24.53 E.
Var. 21.38 E.
Var. 25.59 E.
Var. 22.23 E.
East Longitude from the Meridian of Greenwich.

London Published by Alex.r Hogg at the Kings Arms No. 16 Paternoster Row.

T. Conder Sculp.

BRITISH
7 FE 90
MUSEUM

offered them. They appeared to be the ſame ſort of people with thoſe we had met with all along this coaſt; and they wore in their lips and noſes the ſame ſorts of ornaments; but they were not ſo well clothed, and were much more dirty. We thought them to be perfectly unacquainted with any civilized nation; they were ignorant of the uſe of tobacco; nor did we obſerve in their poſſeſſion any foreign article, unleſs a knife may be conſidered as ſuch. This indeed was nothing more than a piece of common iron fitted in a handle made of wood, ſo as to ſerve the purpoſe of a knife. However, theſe people underſtood ſo well the value and uſe of this inſtrument, that it ſeemed to be almoſt the only article they thought worth purchaſing. The hair of moſt of them was ſhaved, or cut ſhort off, a few locks being left on one ſide and behind. They wore for a covering on their heads, a hood of ſkins, and a bonnet ſeemingly made of wood. One part of their dreſs, which we procured, was a kind of girdle of ſkin, made in a very neat manner, with trappings depending from it, and paſſing between the thighs, ſo as to conceal the adjacent parts. From the uſe of this girdle, it is probable, that they ſometimes go in other reſpects naked, even in this high northern latitude; for it can ſcarcely be ſuppoſed that they wear it under their other cloathing. Their canoes were covered with ſkins, like thoſe we had lately ſeen; but they were broader, and the hole wherein the perſon ſits was wider than in any of thoſe we had before met with. Our boats returning from ſounding gave them ſome alarm, ſo that they all departed ſooner than perhaps they otherwiſe would have done.

On Wedneſday the 22d, we got clear of the ſhoals, yet we could not venture to ſteer towards the weſt during the night, but ſpent it off Cape Newenham. On the 23d, at day-break, we ſtood to the northward, the Diſcovery being ordered to go a-head. When we had proceeded two leagues, our ſoundings decreaſed to ſix fathoms. Being apprehenſive, that, if we continued this courſe, we ſhould meet with leſs water, we hauled to the ſouth. This courſe brought us gradually into 18 fathoms water; upon which we ventured to ſteer a little weſterly, and afterwards due weſt, when we at length found 26 fathoms. At noon, by obſervation, we were in lat. 58 deg. 7 min. long. 194 deg. 22 min. eaſt. We now ſteered W. N. W. the depth of water increaſing gradually to 34 fathoms. On Saturday the 25th, in the evening, having little wind, and an exceeding thick fog, we let go our anchors in 30 fathoms. At ſix o'clock the next morning, the weather clearing up, we ſet ſail, and ſtood to the northward. After we had proceeded on this courſe for the ſpace of nine leagues, the wind veered to the N. ſo that we were obliged to ſteer more weſterly. On Tueſday the 28th, at noon, we had clear ſunſhine for a few hours, during which ſeveral obſervations were made, which determined our lat. to be 59 deg. 55 min. and our long. 190 deg. 6 min. but the time-keeper gave 189 deg. 59 min. difference only 7 min. On the 29th, in the morning, we diſcovered land, bearing N. W. by W. diſtant 6 leagues. We ſtood towards it till between ten and eleven, when we tacked in 24 fathoms, being then a league from the land, which bore N. N. W. It was the ſouth-eaſtern extreme, and formed a perpendicular cliff of great height; upon which it received from the Captain the name of Point Upright. Its lat. is 60 deg. 17 min. long. 187 deg. 30 min. eaſt. More land was perceived to the weſtward of this point; and, at a clear interval, we diſcerned another portion of high land, bearing W. by S. and this ſeemed to be perfectly ſeparated from the other. On Thurſday, the 30th, at four o'clock P. M. Point Upright bore N. W. by. N. diſtant 6 leagues. A light breeze now ſpringing up at N. N. W. we ſteered to the north-eaſtward till four the next morning, when the wind veered to the eaſt; we then tacked, and ſtood to the N. W. The wind, not long after, ſhifting to S. E. we ſteered N. E. by N. and continued this courſe with ſoundings, from 35 to 20 fathoms, till noon the following day.

Saturday, Auguſt the 1ſt, we obſerved in lat. 60 deg. 58 min. long. 191 deg. eaſt. The wind now becoming north-eaſterly, we firſt made a ſtretch of about ten leagues towards the N. W. and then, as we obſerved no land in that direction, we ſtood back to the E. for the ſpace of 14 or 15 leagues, and met with a conſiderable quantity of drift-wood. On the 2d, we had variable light winds, with ſhowers of rain the whole day. In the morning of Monday, the 3d, we reſumed our northward courſe. At noon, by obſervation, our lat. was 62 deg. 34 min. long. 192 deg. E. Between three and four o'clock this afternoon, Mr. Anderſon, Captain Cook's ſurgeon of the Reſolution, expired, after he had lingered under a conſumption upwards of a twelvemonth. He was a ſenſible, intelligent young man; an agreeable companion; had great ſkill in his profeſſion; and had acquired a conſiderable portion of knowledge in other branches of ſcience. Our readers will doubtleſs have obſerved, how uſeful an aſſiſtant he had proved in the courſe of this voyage; and had it pleaſed God to have prolonged his life to a later period, the public might have received from him ſuch communications on the various parts of natural hiſtory of the ſeveral places he viſited, as would have abundantly ſhewn he was worthy of a higher commendation than we have here given him. His funeral was performed with the uſual ceremonies at ſea; after which Mr. Law, ſurgeon of the Diſcovery, was removed into the Reſolution, and Mr. Samwell, the ſurgeon's firſt mate of the Reſolution, was appointed to ſucceed Mr. Law as ſurgeon of the Diſcovery.

CHAP. XII.

An iſland named to the memory of the ingenious Mr. Anderſon, Captain Cook's late ſurgeon, and friend—Remarks on Sledge Iſland, King's Iſland, and Cape Prince of Wales, the weſtern extreme of America—The Reſolution and Diſcovery anchor in a large bay on the Aſiatic coaſt—The Commodore lands at a village—Interview with ſome of the natives, the Tſchutſki—A deſcriptive account of them—The Reſolution and Diſcovery quit the Bay—Their progreſs northward—Cape Mulgrave—Icy Cape—Deſcription of Sea-horſes—Cape Liſburne—Unſucceſsful attempts to get through the ice—Remarks—Arrival on the Coaſt of Aſia—Cape North—Proſecution of the Voyage deferred to the following year—Return from Cape North along the Coaſt of Aſia—Burney's Iſland—Several Capes and Bays deſcribed—Steer for the Coaſt of America—An account of more Capes and head-land—Beſborough Iſland—Captain Cook's interview with a particular family—Mr. King viſits the ſame—He is ſent to examine the coaſt; his report; and a deſcription of the country, &c.—Norton's Sound—Steward's Iſland diſcovered and deſcribed—Cape Stevens—Point Shallow-water—Shoals—Clerke's Iſland—Gore's—Pinnacle—The Reſolution ſprings a leak—The two ſhips arrive at Oonalaſka—Interview with the natives and Ruſſian traders—Mr. Iſmyloff comes on board—Account of the Iſlands viſited by the Ruſſians—Of their ſettlement at Oonalaſka—A particular Deſcription of the natives, their manufactures, repoſitories of their dead, &c.—An account of the fiſh, and other ſea animals—Water Fowls—Land Birds—Quadrupeds—Vegetables—Stones, &c.—Reſemblance of the inhabitants of this ſide of America, to the Eſquimaux and Greenlanders—Obſervations.

SOON after Mr. Anderſon had reſigned his breath, we diſcovered land to the weſtward, diſtant 12 leagues. We ſuppoſed it to be an iſland; and the Commodore, to perpetuate the memory of the deceaſed, for whom he had a very great regard, diſtinguiſhed it by the name of Anderſon's Iſland. On Tueſday, the 4th, at three in the afternoon, we ſaw land extending from N. N. E. to N. W. We ſteered towards

wards it till four, when, being four or five miles diſtant from it, we tacked; and, not long afterwards, the wind failing, we let go our anchors in 13 fathoms, over a ſandy bottom, at the diſtance of about two leagues from land. Our lat. was now 64 deg. 27 min. N. and long. 194 deg. 18 min. E. We could at intervals, diſcern the coaſt extending from E. to N. W. and an iſland of conſiderable elevation, bearing W. by N. nine miles diſtant. The land before us, which we imagined to be the continent of America, appeared rather low next the ſea; but inland it roſe in hills, which ſeemed to be of a tolerable height. It had a greeniſh hue, and was apparently deſtitute of wood, and free from ſnow. While our ſhips remained at anchor, we obſerved that the tide of flood came from the eaſtward, and ſet to the weſtward, till between the hours of ten and eleven; from which time, till two o'clock the next morning, the ſtream ſet to the E. and the water fell three feet. The flood running both longer and ſtronger than the ebb, we concluded that there was a weſterly current beſides the tide. Wedneſday the 5th, at ten o'clock in the morning, we ran down, and ſoon after anchored between the iſland and the continent in ſeven fathoms. Not long after we had caſt anchor, Captain Cook, accompanied by Mr. King and ſome other officers, landed upon the iſland. He hoped to have had from it a proſpect of the coaſt and ſea towards the weſt; but in that direction the fog was ſo thick, that the view was not more extenſive than it was from our ſhips. The coaſt of the continent ſeemed to incline to the north, at a low point, named by us Point Rodney, which bore from the iſland N. W. half W. at the diſtance of three or four leagues; but the high land, which aſſumed a more northerly direction, was perceived at a much greater diſtance. The lat. of this iſland is 64 deg. 30 min. N. and its long. is 193 deg. 57 min. E. It is about 12 miles in circumference. The ſurface of the ground principally conſiſts of large looſe ſtones, covered in many places with moſs and other vegetables; of which 20 or 30 different ſpecies were obſerved, and moſt of them were in flower. But the Captain ſaw not a tree or ſhrub either on the iſland or upon the neighbouring continent. Near the beach where he landed, was a conſiderable quantity of wild purſlain, long-wort, peaſe, &c. ſome of which he took on board for boiling. He ſaw ſeveral plovers, and other ſmall birds; a fox was alſo ſeen. He met with ſome decayed huts, built partly under-ground. People had lately been upon the iſland; and it is more than probable that they often repair to it, there being a beaten path from one end to the other. At a ſmall diſtance from that part of the ſhore where our gentlemen landed, they found a ſledge, which induced Captain Cook to give the iſland the appellation of Sledge Iſland. It appeared to be ſuch a one as is uſed by the Ruſſians in Kamtſchatka, for the purpoſe of conveying goods from one place to another over the ſnow or ice. It was about 20 inches in breadth, and 10 feet in length, had a ſort of rail-work on each ſide, and was ſhod with bone. Its conſtruction was admirable, and its various parts were put together with great neatneſs; ſome with wooden pins, but for the moſt part with thongs or laſhings of whale bone; in conſequence of which, the Captain imagined that it was entirely the workmanſhip of the natives. We weighed anchor at three o'clock A. M. of the 6th, and made ſail to the N. W. with a light breeze from the ſouthward. Having afterwards but little wind, and that variable, we made but a ſlow progreſs; and, at eight o'clock in the evening, finding the ſhips getting into ſhoal-water, we anchored in ſeven fathoms, our diſtance from the coaſt being about two leagues. Sledge Iſland then bore S. 51 deg. E. nine or ten leagues diſtant. Soon after we had let go our anchors, the weather, which had been miſty, cleared up, and we perceived high land extending from N. 40 deg, E. to N. 30 deg. W. ſeemingly disjoined from the coaſt near which we lay at anchor, which appeared to extend to the north-eaſtward. We at the ſame time ſaw an iſland bearing N. 81 deg. W. at the diſtance of eight or nine leagues. It ſeemed to be of ſmall extent, and was named King's Iſland. We rode at anchor till eight the next morning, when we weighed, and ſteered a N. W. courſe. The weather being clear towards the evening, we obtained a ſight of the north-weſtern land, diſtant about three leagues. We paſſed the night in making ſhort boards, the weather being rainy and miſty, and the wind inconſiderable. Between four and five in the morning of the 8th, we again had a ſight of the N. W. land; and not long afterwards having a calm, and being driven by a current towards the ſhore, we thought proper to anchor in 12 fathoms water, at the diſtance of about two miles from the coaſt. Over the weſtern extremity is a lofty peaked hill, ſituate in the long. of 192 deg. 18 min. E. and in the lat. of 65 deg. 36 min. N. A north-eaſterly breeze ſpringing up at eight o'clock, we weighed, and made ſail to the ſouth-eaſtward, hoping to find a paſſage between this N. W. land and the coaſt, near which we had caſt anchor in the evening of the 6th. But we quickly got into ſeven fathoms water, and perceived low land connecting the two coaſts, and the elevated land behind it. Perſuaded that the whole was a continued coaſt, we now tacked and ſteered for its north-weſtern part, near which we anchored in 17 fathoms. The weather at preſent was very thick and rainy; but at four the next morning it cleared up, and enabled us to diſcern the neighbouring land. A lofty ſteep rock or iſland bore W. by S. another iſland to the northward of it, and conſiderably larger, bore W. by N. the peaked hill before mentioned, S. E. by E. and the point that was under it, S. 32 deg. E. Under this hill is ſome low land, extending towards the N. W. the extreme point of which was now about one league diſtant, bearing N. E. by E. Over it, and alſo beyond it, we obſerved ſome high land, which we imagined was a continuation of the continent. This point of land, which the Commodore diſtinguiſhed by the name of Cape Prince of Wales, is the weſtern extreme of all America hitherto known. It ſtands in the long. of 191 deg. 45 min. E. and in the lat. of 65 deg. 46 min. N. We fancied that we ſaw ſome people on the coaſt; and perhaps we were not miſtaken in our ſuppoſition, as ſome elevations like ſtages, and others reſembling huts, were obſerved at the ſame place. This morning, at eight o'clock, a faint northerly breeze ariſing, we weighed anchor; but our ſails were ſcarcely ſet, when it began to blow and rain with great violence, there being at the ſame time miſty weather. The wind and current were in contrary directions, raiſing ſuch a ſea, that it often broke into the ſhip. Having plied to windward with little effect till two o'clock in the afternoon, we ſtood for the iſland which we had perceived to the weſtward, intending to caſt anchor under it till the gale ſhould abate. But upon our nearer approach to this iſland, we found that it was compoſed of two ſmall iſlands, neither of which exceeded three or four leagues in circumference. As theſe could afford us little ſhelter, we did not come to an anchor, but continued to ſtretch towards the W. and about eight o'clock in the evening we ſaw land extending from N. N. W. to W. by S. the diſtance of the neareſt part being ſix leagues. We ſtood on till ten o'clock, and then made a board towards the E. in order to paſs the night.

On Monday the 10th, at break of day, we reſumed our weſtward courſe for the land ſeen by us the preceding evening. At eleven minutes after ſeven o'clock, it extended from S. 72 deg. W. to N. 41 deg. E. Betwixt the ſouth-weſtern extremity, and a point bearing W. ſix miles diſtant, the coaſt forms a ſpacious bay, in which we dropped our anchors at ten in the forenoon, about two miles from the northern ſhore, over a gravelly bottom, at the depth of ten fathoms. The northern point of this bay bore N. 43 deg. E. its ſouthern point S. 58 deg. W. the bottom of the bay, N. 60 deg. W. between two and three leagues diſtant; and the two iſlands that we had paſſed the preceding day, were at the diſtance of 14 leagues, bearing N. 72 deg. E. When ſteering for this bay we obſerved, on the north ſhore, a village, and ſome people, who ſeemed to have been thrown into confuſion, or fear, at the ſight of our veſſels. We could plainly perceive perſons running up the country with burdens upon their ſhoulders. At this village Captain Cook propoſed to land; and accordingly went with three armed boats, accompanied by ſome of the officers. Thirty or forty men, each of whom was armed with a ſpontoon, a bow, and arrows, ſtood drawn up on an eminence near the houſes; three of them came down towards the ſhore, on the approach of our gentlemen, and were ſo polite as to pull off their caps, and make them low bows. Though this civility was returned, it did not inſpire them with ſufficient confidence to wait for the landing of our party; for, the inſtant they put the boats aſhore, the natives retired. Captain Cook followed them alone, without any thing in his hand; and, by ſigns and geſtures, prevailed on them to ſtop, and accept ſome trifling preſents: in return for theſe, they gave him two fox-ſkins, and a couple of ſea-horſe teeth. The Captain was of opinion, that they had brought theſe articles down with them for the purpoſe of preſenting them to him; and that they would have given them to him, even if they had expected no return. They ſeemed very timid and cautious: intimating their deſire, by ſigns, that no more of our people ſhould be ſuffered to come up. On the Captain's laying his hand on the ſhoulder of one of them, he ſtarted back ſeveral paces; in proportion as he advanced, they retreated, always in the attitude of being ready to make uſe of their ſpears; while thoſe on the eminence were prepared to ſupport them with their arrows. Inſenſibly, the Captain, and two or three of his companions, introduced themſelves among them. The diſtribution of a few beads among ſome of them, ſoon created a degree of confidence, ſo that they were not alarmed, when the Captain was joined by a few more of his people; and, in a ſhort time, a kind of traffic was entered into. In exchange for tobacco, knives, beads, and other articles, they gave a few arrows, and ſome of their clothing; but nothing that our people had to offer, could induce them to part with a ſpear or a bow. Theſe they held in continual readineſs, never quitting them, except at one time, when four or five perſons laid theirs down, while they favoured our party with a ſong and a dance; and even then, they placed them in ſuch a manner, that they could lay hold of them in a moment. Their arrows were pointed either with ſtone or bone, but very few of them had barbs; and ſome of them had a round blunt point. What uſe theſe are applied to we cannot ſay, unleſs it be to kill ſmall animals without damaging the ſkin. Their bows were ſuch as we had obſerved on the American coaſt: their ſpontoons, or ſpears, were of iron or ſteel, and of European or Aſiatic workmanſhip; and conſiderable pains had been taken to embelliſh them with carving, and inlayings of braſs, and of a white metal. Thoſe who ſtood with bows and arrows in their hands, had the ſpear ſlung by a leathern ſtrap over their right ſhoulder. A leathern quiver, ſlung over their left ſhoulder ſerved to contain arrows; and ſome of theſe quivers were exceedingly beautiful, being made of red leather, on which was very neat embroidery, and other ornaments. Several other things, and particularly their cloathing, indicated a degree of ingenuity far ſurpaſſing what any one would expect to find among ſo northern a people.

The Americans we had ſeen ſince our arrival on that coaſt, had round chubby faces, and high cheek-bones, and were rather low of ſtature. The people among whom we now were, far from reſembling them, had long viſages, and were ſtout and well made: upon the whole, they appeared to be a very different nation. No women, nor children of either ſex, were obſerved, nor any aged perſons, except one man, whoſe head was bald, and he was the only one who bore no arms: the others ſeemed to be ſelect men, and rather under than above the middle age. The elderly man had a black mark acroſs his face, which was not perceived in any of the others; all of them had their ears perforated, and ſome had glaſs beads hanging to them. Theſe were the only fixed ornaments ſeen about them, for they wear none to their lips: this is another particular, in which they differ from the Americans we had lately ſeen. Their apparel conſiſted of a pair of breeches, a cap, a frock, a pair of boots, and a pair of gloves, all made of the ſkins of deer, dogs, ſeals, and other animals, and extremely well dreſſed; ſome with the hair or fur on, and others without it. The caps were made in ſuch a manner, as to fit the head very cloſe; and beſides theſe caps, which were worn by moſt of them, we procured from them ſome hoods, made of dogſkins, that were ſufficiently large to cover both head and ſhoulders. Their hair was apparently black, but their heads were either ſhaved, or the hair cut cloſe off, and none of them wore beards. Of the few articles which they obtained from our people, knives and tobacco were what they ſet the moſt value upon.

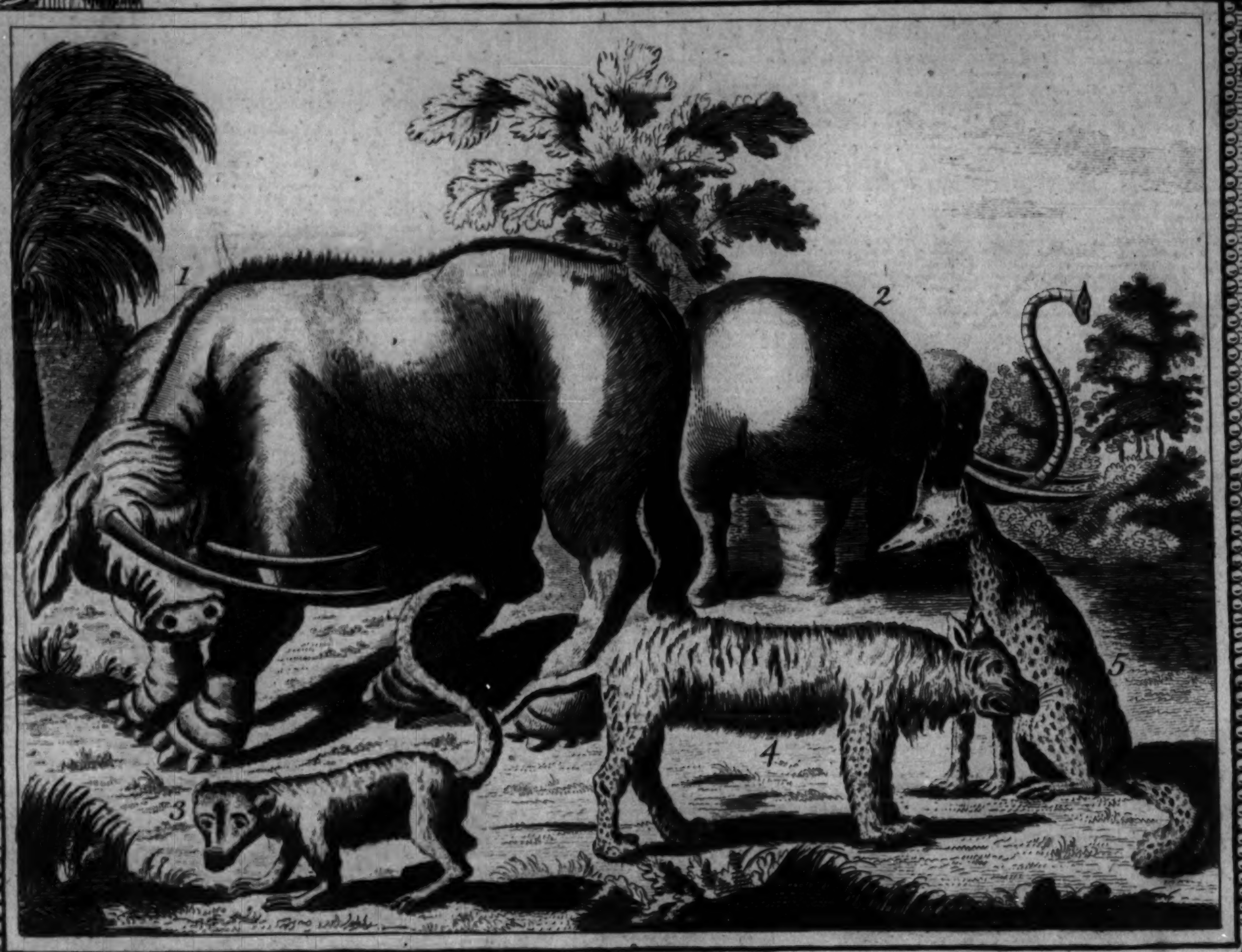
In the village we ſaw both their winter and their ſummer habitations; the former are exactly like a vault, the floor of which is ſunk below the ſurface of the earth. One of them, which Captain Cook examined, was of an oval figure, about twenty feet in length, and twelve or more in height; the framing conſiſted of wood, and the ribs of whales, judiciouſly diſpoſed, and bound together with ſmaller materials of the ſame kind. Over this framing, a covering of ſtrong coarſe graſs was laid, and that again was covered with earth; ſo that on the outſide, the houſe had the appearance of a little hillock, ſupported by a wall of ſtone, of the height of three or four feet, which was built round the two ſides, and one end. At the other end of the habitation, the earth was raiſed ſloping, to walk up to the entrance, which was by a hole in the top of the roof, over that end. The floor was boarded, and under it was a ſort of cellar, in which the Captain ſaw nothing but water: at the end of each houſe was a vaulted room, which he ſuppoſed was a ſtore-room. Theſe ſtore-rooms communicated, by a dark paſſage, with the houſe; and with the open air, by a hole in the roof, which was even with the ground one walked upon; but they cannot be ſaid to be entirely below ground; for one end extended to the edge of the hill, along which they were made, and which was built up with ſtone. Over it ſtood a kind of ſentry box, or tower, formed of the large bones of great fiſh. Their ſummer huts were of a tolerable ſize, and circular, being brought to a point at the top. Slight poles and bones, covered with the ſkins of ſea animals, compoſed the framing. Captain Cook examined the inſide of one: there was a fire-place juſt within the door, where a few wooden veſſels were depoſited, all very dirty. Their bed-places were cloſe to the ſide, and occupied about one-half of the circuit: ſome degree of privacy ſeemed to be obſerved; for there were ſeveral partitions, made with ſkins. The bed and bedding conſiſted of deerſkins, and moſt of them were clean and dry. About the houſes were erected ſeveral ſtages, ten or twelve feet in height, ſuch as we had ſeen on ſome parts of the American coaſt. They were compoſed entirely of bones, and were apparently intended for drying their fiſh and ſkins, which were thus placed out of the reach of their dogs, of which they had great numbers. Theſe dogs are of the fox kind, rather large, and of different colours, with long ſoft hair, that reſembles wool. They are, in all probability, uſed for the purpoſe of drawing their ſledges in winter; for it appears that they have ſledges, as the Captain ſaw many of them laid up in one of their winter huts. It is, likewiſe, not improbable, that dogs conſtitute a part of their food, for ſeveral lay dead, which had been killed that morning. The canoes of theſe people are of the ſame kind with thoſe of the northern Americans, ſome, both of the large and ſmall ſort, being ſeen lying in a creek, near the village. From the large bones of fiſh, and other ſea-animals, it appeared, that the ſea furniſhed them with the greater part of their ſubſiſtence. The country ſeemed extremely barren, as our gentlemen ſaw not a tree or ſhrub. At ſome diſtance towards the weſt, they obſerved a ridge of mountains covered with ſnow, that had fallen not long before.

Some of us at firſt, ſuppoſed this land to be a part of the iſland of Alaſchka, laid down in Mr. Stæhlin's map before mentioned; but from the appearance of the coaſt, the ſituation of the oppoſite ſhore of America, and from the longitude, we ſoon conjectured that it was, more probably, the country of the Tſchutſki, or the eaſtern extremity of Aſia, explored by Beering in the year 1728. In admitting this, however, without farther examination, we muſt have pronounced Mr. Stæhlin's map, and his account of the new northern Archipelago, to be either remarkably erroneous, even in latitude, or elſe to be a mere fiction; a judgment which we would not preſume to paſs, upon a publication ſo reſpectably vouched, without producing the moſt deciſive proofs. Our party having remained with theſe people between two and three hours, they returned on board; and, ſoon after, the wind becoming ſoutherly, we weighed anchor, ſtood out of the bay, and ſteered to the N. E. between the coaſt and the two iſlands. At noon, the next day, Auguſt 11, the former extended from S. 80 deg. W. to N. 84 deg. W. the latter bore S. 40 deg. W. and the peaked hill, over Cape Prince of Wales, bore S. 36 deg. E. The latitude of the ſhip was 66 deg. 5 min. N. the longitude 191 deg. 19 min. E. our ſoundings were 28 fathoms; and our poſition nearly in the middle of the channel, between the two coaſts, each being at the diſtance of about ſeven leagues. From this ſtation we ſteered to the eaſtward, in order to make a nearer approach to the American coaſt. In this courſe the water gradually ſhoaled; and there being very little wind, and all our endeavours to encreaſe our depth failing, we were obliged at laſt to caſt anchor in ſix fathoms: which was the only remedy remaining, to prevent the ſhips driving into more ſhallow water. The neareſt part of the weſtern land bore W. 12 leagues diſtant; the peaked mountain over Cape Prince of Wales, bore S. 16 deg. W. and the moſt northern part of the American continent in ſight, E. S. E. the diſtance of the neareſt part being about four leagues. After we had anchored, a boat was diſpatched to ſound, and the water was found to ſhoal gradually towards the land. While our ſhips lay at anchor, which was from ſix to nine in the evening, we perceived little or no current, nor did we obſerve that the water roſe or fell. A northerly breeze ſpringing up, we weighed, and made ſail to the weſtward, which courſe ſoon brought us into deep water; and, during the 12th, we plied to the northward in ſight of both coaſts, but we kept neareſt to that of America. On the 13th, at four in the afternoon, a breeze ariſing at S. we ſteered N. E. by N. till four o'clock the next morning, when, ſeeing no land, we directed our courſe E. by N. and between the hours of nine and ten, land appeared, which we ſuppoſed was a continuation of the continent. It extended from E. by S. to E. by N. and, not long afterwards, we deſcried more land, bearing N. by E. Coming rather ſuddenly into 13 fathoms water, at two in the afternoon, we made a trip off till four, when we again ſtood in for the land; which, ſoon after, we ſaw, extending from N. to S. E. the neareſt part being at the diſtance of three or four leagues. The coaſt here forms a point, named by us Point Mulgrave, which is ſituated in the latitude of 67 deg. 45 min. N. and in the longitude of 194 deg. 51 min. E. The land ſeemed to be very low near the ſea, but a little farther it riſes into hills of a moderate height; the whole was free from ſnow, and apparently deſtitute of wood. We now tacked, and bore away N. W. by W. but, in a ſhort time afterwards, thick weather, with rain, coming on, and the wind increaſing, we hauled more to the weſtward.

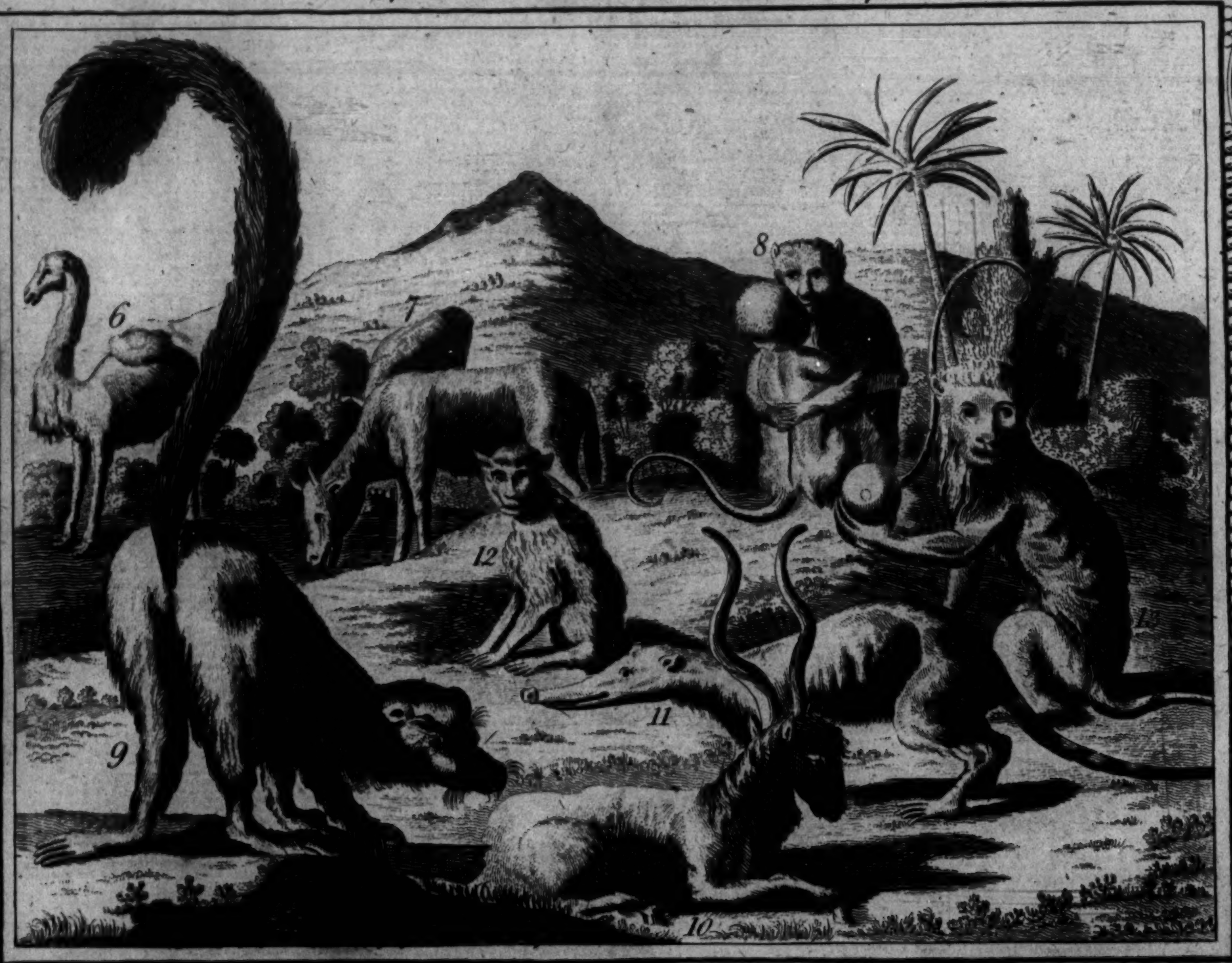
Saturday the 15th, at two o'clock A. M. the wind veered to S. W. by S. and blew a ſtrong gale, which abated towards noon. We now ſtood to the N. E. till ſix the next morning, when we ſteered rather more eaſterly: in this run, we met with ſeveral ſea-horſes, and great numbers of birds; ſome of which reſembled ſand-larks, and others were not larger than hedge-ſparrows. We alſo ſaw ſome ſhags, ſo that we judged we were not far from land; but, having a thick fog, we could not expect to ſee any; and as the wind blew ſtrong, it was not deemed prudent to continue a courſe which was moſt likely to bring us to it. From the noon of this day, to ſix o'clock in the morning of the following, we ſteered E. by N. a courſe which brought us into fifteen fathoms water. We now ſteered N. E. by E. thinking, by ſuch a courſe, to increaſe our depth of water. But in the ſpace of ſix leagues, it ſhoaled to 11 fathoms, which induced us to haul cloſe to the wind, that now blew at W. About twelve o'clock, both ſun and moon were clearly ſeen at intervals, and we made ſome haſty obſervations for the longitude; which, reduced to noon, when the latitude was 70 deg. 33 min. N. gave 197 deg. 41 min. E. The time-keeper, for the ſame time, gave 198 deg. In the forenoon, we perceived a brightneſs in the northern horizon, like that reflected from ice, uſually called the blink. Little notice was taken of it, from a ſuppoſition that it was improbable we ſhould ſo ſoon meet with ice. The ſharpneſs of the air, however, and gloomineſs of the weather, for the two or three preceding days, ſeemed to indicate ſome ſudden change. About an hour afterwards, the ſight of an enormous maſs of ice, left us no longer in any doubt reſpecting the cauſe of the brightneſs of the horizon. Between two and three o'clock, we tacked cloſe to the edge of the ice, in 22 fathoms water, being then in the latitude of 70 deg. 41 min. north, and unable to ſtand on any farther, for the ice was perfectly impenetrable, and extended from W. by S. to E. by N. as far as the eye could reach. Here we met with great numbers of ſea-horſes, ſome of which were in the water, but far more upon the ice. The Commodore had thoughts of hoiſting out the boats to kill ſome of theſe animals: but, the wind freſhening, he gave up the deſign; and we continued to ply towards the ſouth, or rather towards the weſt, for the wind came from that quarter. We made no progreſs; for, at twelve on the 18th, our latitude was 70 deg. 44 min. north, and we were almoſt five leagues farther to the eaſt. We were, at preſent, cloſe to the edge of the ice, which was as compact as a wall, and appeared to be at leaſt ten or twelve feet in height: but, farther northward, it ſeemed to be much higher. Its ſurface was exceedingly rugged, and, in ſeveral places, we ſaw pools of water upon it. We now ſtood to the ſouth, and, after running ſix leagues, ſhoaled the water to ſeven fathoms; but it ſoon increaſed to the depth of nine fathoms. At this time, the weather, which had been hazy, becoming clearer, we ſaw land extending from S. to S. E. by E. at the diſtance of three or four miles. The eaſtern extremity forms a point, which was greatly encumbered with ice, on which account it was diſtinguiſhed by the name of Icy Cape. Its latitude is 70 deg. 29 min. north, and its longitude 198 deg. 20 min. eaſt. The other extreme of the land was loſt in the horizon; and we had no doubt of its being a continuation of the continent of America. The Diſcovery being about a mile aſtern, and to leeward, met with leſs depth of water than we did; and tacking on that account, the Commodore was obliged to tack alſo, to prevent ſeparation. Our preſent ſituation was very critical. We were upon a lee-ſhore in ſhoal water; and the main body of the ice to windward, was driving down upon us. It was evident, that if we continued much longer between it and the land, it would force us aſhore, unleſs it ſhould chance to take the ground before us. It appeared almoſt to join the land to leeward, and the only direction that was free from it was to the ſouth weſtward. After making a ſhort board to the north, Captain Cook made a ſignal for the Diſcovery to tack, and his ſhip tacked at the ſame time. The wind proved in ſome meaſure favourable, ſo that we lay up S. W. and S. W. by W.

Wedneſday the 19th at eight in the morning, the wind veering to weſt, we tacked to the northward; and, at twelve, the latitude was 70 deg. 6 min. north, and the longitude 196 deg. 42 min. eaſt. In this ſituation, we had a conſiderable quantity of drift ice about our ſhips, and the main ice was about two leagues to the north. Between one and two, we got in with the edge of it. It was leſs compact than that which we had obſerved towards

BRITISH
7 FE 90
MUSEUM



Various BEASTS of DIFFERENT PARTS of the WORLD.



1 The Sucoterio......2 Elephant......3 A kind of Monkey........4 The Luchs......5 A Jackall......6 Camel
7 A particular kind of Indian Oxen......8 The Saragose Monkey & Young one......9 The Macaſsar Fax.
10 Indian He-Goat.....11 An Animal called the Aunts-Bear......12 A Javanese Animal named Doots-Hoost.
13 A kind of Monkey called the Beard Man.

Morris sculp.

wards the north; but it was too cloſe, and in too large pieces to attempt forcing the ſhips through it. We ſaw an amazing number of ſea-horſes on the ice, and as we were in want of freſh proviſions, the boats from each ſhip were diſpatched to procure ſome of them. By ſeven in the evening, we had received, on board the Reſolution, nine of theſe animals; which, till this time, we had ſuppoſed to be ſea-cows; ſo that we were greatly diſappointed, particularly ſome of the ſailors, who, on account of the novelty of the thing, had been feaſting their eyes for ſome days paſt. Nor would they now have been diſappointed, nor have known the difference, if there had not been two or three men on board, who had been in Greenland, and declared what animals theſe were, and that no perſon ever eat of them. Notwithſtanding this, we made them ſerve us for proviſions, and there were few of our people who did not prefer them to our ſalt meat. The fat of theſe animals is, at firſt, as ſweet as marrow; but, in a few days, it becomes rancid, unleſs it is ſalted, in which ſtate it will keep much longer. The lean fleſh is coarſe and blackiſh, and has a ſtrong taſte; but the heart is almoſt as well taſted as that of a bullock. The fat, when melted, affords a good quantity of oil, which burns very well in lamps; and their hides, which are of great thickneſs, were extremely uſeful about our rigging. The teeth, or tuſks, of moſt of them were, at this time, of a very ſmall ſize; even ſome of the largeſt and oldeſt of theſe animals, had them not exceeding half a foot in length. Hence we concluded, that they had lately ſhed their old teeth. They lie upon the ice in herds of many hundreds, huddling like ſwine, one over the other; and they roar very loud; ſo that in the night, or when the weather was foggy, they gave us notice of the vicinity of the ice, before we could diſcern it. We never found the whole herd ſleeping, ſome of them being conſtantly upon the watch. Theſe, on the approach of the boat would awake thoſe that were next to them; and the alarm being thus gradually communicated, the whole herd would preſently be awake. However, they were ſeldom in a hurry to get away, before they had been once fired at. Then they would fall into the ſea, one over the other in the utmoſt confuſion; and, if we did not happen, at the firſt diſcharge, to kill thoſe we fired at, we generally loſt them, though mortally wounded. They did not appear to us to be ſo dangerous as ſome authors have repreſented them, not even when they were attacked. They are, indeed, more ſo, in appearance, than in reality. Vaſt multitudes of them would follow, and come cloſe up to the boats; but the flaſh of a muſket in the pan, or even the mere pointing of one at them, would ſend them down in a moment. The female will defend her young one to the very laſt, and at the expence of her own life, whether upon the ice or in the water. Nor will the young one quit the dam, though ſhe ſhould have been killed; ſo that, if you deſtroy one, you are ſure of the other. The dam, when in the water, holds her young one between her fore fins. Mr. Pennant, in his Synopſis of Quadrupeds, has given a very good deſcription of this animal under the name of the Arctic Walrus. Why it ſhould be called a ſea-horſe, is difficult to determine, unleſs the word be a corruption of the Ruſſian name Morſe; for they do not in the leaſt reſemble a horſe. It is, doubtleſs, the ſame animal that is found in the Gulph of St. Lawrence, and there called a ſea-cow. It is certainly more like a cow than a horſe; but this reſemblance conſiſts in nothing but the ſnout. In ſhort, it is an animal not unlike a ſeal, but incomparably larger. The length of one of them, which was none of the largeſt, was nine feet four inches from the ſnout to the tail; the circumference of its body at the ſhoulder, was ſeven feet ten inches; its circumference near the hinder fins was five feet ſix inches, and the weight of the carcaſe, without the head, ſkin, or entrails, was eight hundred and fifty-four pounds. The head weighed forty-one pounds and a half, and the ſkin two hundred and five pounds. It may not be improper to remark, that, for ſome days before this time, we had often ſeen flocks of ducks flying to the ſouth. They were of two ſpecies, the one much larger than the other. The larger ſort was of a brown colour; and of the ſmall ſort, either the duck or drake was black and white, and the other brown. Some of our people ſaid that they alſo ſaw geeſe. This ſeems to indicate, that there muſt be land to the northward, where theſe birds, in the proper ſeaſon, find ſhelter for breeding, and whence they were now on their return to a warmer climate.

After we had got our ſea-horſes on board, we were, in a manner, ſurrounded with the ice; and had no means of clearing it, but by ſteering to the ſouthward, which we did till three o'clock the next morning, with a light weſterly breeze, and, in general, thick, foggy weather. Our ſoundings were from 12 to 15 fathoms. We then tacked and ſtood to the northward till ten o'clock, when the wind ſhifting to the N. we ſtood to the W. S. W. and W. At two in the afternoon, we fell in with the main ice, and kept along the edge of it, being partly directed by the roaring of the ſea-horſes, for we had an exceeding thick fog. Thus we continued ſailing till near midnight, when we got in among the looſe pieces of ice. The wind being eaſterly, and the fog very thick, we now hauled to the ſouthward; and, at ten the next morning, the weather clearing up, we ſaw the American continent, extending from S. by E. to E. by S. and, at noon, from S. W. half S. to E. the diſtance of the neareſt part being five leagues. We were at preſent in the latitude of 69 deg. 32 min. N. and in the longitude of 195 deg. 48 min. E. and, as the main ice was not far from us, it is evident, that it now covered a part of the ſea; which, a few days before, had been free from it; and that it extended farther towards the S. than where we firſt fell in with it. During the afternoon we had but little wind; and the maſter was ſent in a boat to obſerve whether there was any current, but he found none. We continued to ſteer for the American land till eight o'clock, in order to obtain a nearer view of it, and to ſearch for a harbour; but ſeeing nothing that had the appearance of one, we again ſtood to the N. with a gentle weſterly breeze. At this time, the coaſt extended from S. W. to E. the neareſt part being at the diſtance of four or five leagues. The ſouthern extreme ſeemed to form a point, to which the name of Cape Liſburne was given. It is ſituate in the latitude of 69 deg. 5 min. N. and in the longitude of 194 deg. 42 min. E. and appeared to be tolerably high land, even down to the ſea; but there may be low land under it, which we might not then ſee, being not leſs than ten leagues diſtant from it. In almoſt every other part, as we advanced to the north, we had found a low coaſt, from which the land riſes to a moderate height. The coaſt now before us was free from ſnow, except in one or two places, and had a greeniſh hue. But we could not diſcern any wood upon it.

Saturday the 22d, the wind was ſoutherly, and the weather for the moſt part foggy, with ſome intervals of ſunſhine. At eight in the evening, we had a calm, which continued till midnight, when we heard the ſurge of the ſea daſhing againſt the ice, and had many looſe pieces about us. A light piece now aroſe at N. E. and the fog being very thick, we ſteered to the S. to get clear of the ice. At eight the next morning, the fog diſperſed, and we hauled towards the W. for the Commodore finding we could not get to the N. near the coaſt, by reaſon of the ice, reſolved to try what could be done at a diſtance from it; and as the wind ſeemed to be fixed at N. he conſidered it as a favourable opportunity. In our progreſs to the weſtward, the water gradually deepened to 28 fathoms. With the northerly wind the air was ſharp and cold; and we had fogs, ſunſhine, ſhowers of ſnow and ſleet alternately. On the 26th, at ten in the morning, we fell in with the ice. At twelve, it extended from N. W. to E. by N. and ſeemed to be thick and compact. We were now, by obſervation, in the latitude of 69 deg. 36 min. N. and in the longitude of 184 deg. E. and it appeared that we had no better proſpect of getting to the N. here, than nearer the ſhore. We continued ſteering to the W. till five in the afternoon, when we were, in ſome degree, embayed by the ice, which was very cloſe in the

N. W. and N. E. quarters, with a great quantity of looſe ice about the edge of the main body. At this time, we had baffling light airs, but the wind ſoon ſettled at S. and increaſed to a freſh gale, accompanied with ſhowers of rain. We got the tack aboard, and ſtretched to the E. as this was the only direction in which the ſea was free from ice.

Thurſday the 27th, at four o'clock, A. M. we tacked and ſtood to the weſtward, and at ſeven o'clock in the evening, we were cloſe in with the edge of the ice, which lay E. N. E. and W. S. W. as far in each of thoſe directions as the eye could reach. There being but little wind, Captain Cook went with the boats, to examine the ſtate of the ice. He found it conſiſting of looſe pieces, of various extent, and ſo cloſe together, that he could ſcarcely enter the outer edge with a boat; and it was as impracticable for the ſhips to enter it, as if it had been ſo many rocks. He particularly remarked, that it was all pure tranſparent ice, except the upper ſurface, which was rather porous. It ſeemed to be wholly compoſed of frozen ſnow, and to have been all formed at ſea. For, not to inſiſt on the improbability of ſuch prodigious maſſes floating out of rivers, none of the productions of the land were found incorporated, or mixed with it; which would certainly have been the caſe, if it had been formed in rivers, either great or ſmall. The pieces of ice that formed the outer edge of the main body, were from forty to fifty yards in extent, to four or five; and the Captain judged, that the larger pieces reached thirty feet or more, under the ſurface of the water. He alſo thought it highly improbable, that this ice could have been the production of the preceding winter alone. He was rather inclined to ſuppoſe it to have been the production of many winters. It was equally improbable, in his opinion, that the little that now remained of the ſummer, could deſtroy even the tenth part of what now ſubſiſted of this great maſs; for the ſun had already exerted upon it the full force and influence of his rays. The ſun, indeed, according to his judgment, contributes very little towards reducing theſe enormous maſſes. For though that luminary is above the horizon a conſiderable while, it ſeldom ſhines out for more than a few hours at a time, and frequently is not ſeen for ſeveral ſucceſſive days. It is the wind, or rather the waves raiſed by the wind, that brings down the bulk of theſe prodigious maſſes, by grinding one piece againſt another, and by undermining and waſhing away thoſe parts which are expoſed to the ſurge of the ſea. This was manifeſt, from the Captain's obſerving, that the upper ſurface of many pieces had been partly waſhed away, while the baſe, or under part, continued firm for ſeveral fathoms round that which appeared above water, like a ſhoal round a high rock. He meaſured the depth of water upon one, and found that it was 15 feet, ſo that the ſhips might have ſailed over it. If he had not meaſured this depth, he would have been unwilling to believe, that there was a ſufficient weight of ice above the ſurface, to have ſunk the other ſo much below it. It may thus happen, that more ice is deſtroyed in one tempeſtuous ſeaſon, than is formed in ſeveral winters, and an endleſs accumulation of it is prevented. But that there is conſtantly a remaining ſtore, will be acknowledged by every one who has been upon the ſpot. A thick fog, which came on while the Commodore was thus employed with the boats, haſtened him aboard ſooner than he could have wiſhed, with one ſea-horſe to each ſhip. Our party had killed many, but could not wait to bring them off. The number of theſe animals, on all the ice that we had ſeen, is really aſtoniſhing. We ſpent the night ſtanding off and on, among the drift ice, and at nine o'clock the next morning, the fog having in ſome degree diſperſed, boats from each of the ſhips were diſpatched for ſea-horſes; for our people by this time began to reliſh them, and thoſe we had before furniſhed ourſelves with, were all conſumed. At noon, our latitude was 69 deg. 17 min. N. our longitude 183 deg. E. and our depth of water was 25 fathoms. At two in the afternoon, having got on board as many ſea-horſes as were deemed ſufficient, and the wind freſhening at S. S. E. we hoiſted in the boats, and ſteered to the S. W. But being unable to weather the ice upon this tack, or to go through it, we made a board to the eaſtward, till about eight o'clock, then reſumed our courſe to the S. W. and were obliged before midnight to tack again, on account of the ice. Not long after, the wind veering to the N. W. and blowing a ſtiff gale, we ſtretched to the S. W. cloſe hauled.

Friday the 29th, in the morning, we ſaw the main ice towards the N. and ſoon after, perceived land bearing S. W. by W. In a ſhort time after this, more land was ſeen, bearing W. It ſhewed itſelf in two hills, reſembling iſlands, but ſoon the whole appeared connected. As we made a nearer approach to the land, the depth of water decreaſed very faſt, ſo that, at twelve o'clock, when we tacked, we found only eight fathoms; being three miles from the coaſt, which extended from S. 30 deg. E. to N. 60 deg. W. the latter extremity terminating in a bluff point, being one of the hills mentioned before. The weather was now very hazy, with drizzling rain; but, ſoon afterwards, it cleared up, particularly to the ſouthward, weſtward, and northward. This enabled us to have a tolerable view of the coaſt; which reſembles, in every reſpect, the oppoſite coaſt of America; that is, low land next the ſea, with higher land farther back. It was totally deſtitute of wood, and even of ſnow; but was, probably, covered with a moſſy ſubſtance, that gave it a browniſh hue. In the low ground that lay between the ſea and the high land, was a lake, extending to the ſouth-eaſtward farther than we could ſee. As we ſtood off, the moſt weſterly of the two hills above-mentioned, came open off the bluff point, in a N. W. direction. It had the appearance of an iſland, but it might perhaps be connected with the other by low land, though we did not ſee it. And if that be the caſe, there is a two-fold point, with a bay between them. This point, which is rocky and ſteep, received the name of Cape North. It is ſituated nearly in the latitude of 68 deg. 56 min. N. and in the longitude of 180 deg. 51 min. E. The coaſt beyond it doubtleſs aſſumes a very weſterly direction; for we could diſcern no land to the northward of it, though the horizon was there pretty clear. Wiſhing to ſee more of the coaſt to the weſtward, we tacked again, at two in the afternoon, thinking we ſhould be able to weather Cape North; but finding we could not, the wind freſhening, a thick fog ariſing, with much ſnow, and being apprehenſive of the ice coming down upon us, the Commodore relinquiſhed the deſign he had formed of plying to the weſtward, and again ſtood off ſhore. The ſeaſon was now ſo far advanced, and the time when the froſt generally ſets in was ſo near, that Captain Cook did not think it conſiſtent with prudence, to make any farther attempts to diſcover a paſſage into the Atlantic Ocean this year, in any direction, ſo ſmall was the probability of ſucceſs. His attention was now directed to the ſearch of ſome place, where we might recruit our wood and water; and the object that principally occupied his thoughts was, how he ſhould paſs the winter, ſo as to make ſome improvements in navigation and geography, and, at the ſame time, be in a condition to return to the northward the enſuing ſummer, to proſecute his ſearch of a paſſage into the Atlantic. Having ſtood off till our ſoundings were eighteen fathoms, we made ſail to the eaſtward, along the coaſt, which, we were now pretty well convinced, could only be the continent of Aſia. The wind blowing freſh, and there being, at the ſame time, a thick miſt, and a very heavy fall of ſnow, it was requiſite that we ſhould proceed with particular caution: we therefore brought to, for a few hours, in the night. Early the next morning, the 30th, we ſteered ſuch a courſe as we judged moſt likely to bring us in with the land, being guided, in a great meaſure, by the land; for the weather was extremely thick and gloomy, with inceſſant ſhowers of ſnow. At ten o'clock we obtained a ſight of the coaſt, which was at the diſtance of four miles, bearing S. W. Soon afterwards, our depth of water having decreaſed to ſeven fathoms, we hauled off. A very low point now bore S. S. W. diſtant two or three miles; to the eaſtward of which there ſeemed to be a narrow channel, that led into ſome water which we ſaw over the point. It is not improbable, that the lake above-mentioned communicates here with the ſea. At noon, the miſt diſperſing, we had a view of the coaſt, which extended from S. E. to N. W. by W. Some parts of it were apparently higher than others; but the greateſt part of it was rather low, with high land farther up the country. It was almoſt entirely covered with ſnow, which had fallen very lately. We ranged along the coaſt, at the diſtance of about two leagues, till ten o'clock in the evening, when we hauled off; but reſumed our courſe early on the following morning, when we had another view of the coaſt, extending from W. to S. E. by S. At eight o'clock the eaſtern part bore S. and was found to be an iſland, which at twelve was four or five miles diſtant, bearing S. W. half S. It is of a moderate height, between four and five miles in circumference, with a ſteep rocky coaſt. It is ſituate in the lat. of 67 deg. 45 min. N. about three leagues from the continent; and is diſtinguiſhed in the chart by the appellation of Burney's Iſland. The inland country about this part abounds with hills, ſome of which are of conſiderable elevation. The land in general was covered with ſnow, except a few ſpots on the coaſt, which ſtill continued to be low, but ſomewhat leſs ſo than farther towards the W. During the two preceding days, the mean height of the mercury in the thermometer had been frequently below the freezing point, and in general, very little above it; inſomuch that the water in the veſſels upon deck, was often covered with a ſheet of ice. We continued to ſteer S. S. E. almoſt in the direction of the coaſt, till five o'clock in the afternoon, when we ſaw land bearing S. 50 deg. E. which proved to be a continuation of the coaſt. We hauled up for it without delay; and at ten in the evening, being a-breaſt of the eaſtern land, and doubtful of weathering it, we tacked, and made a board towards the W. till after one o'clock the next morning.

Tueſday, the 1ſt of September, we again made ſail to the E. The wind was now very unſettled, continually varying from N. to N. E. Between eight and nine, the eaſtern extremity of the land was at the diſtance of ſix or ſeven miles, bearing S. by E. A head-land appeared at the ſame time, bearing E. by S. half S. and not long after we could diſcern the whole coaſt that lay between them, and a little iſland at ſome diſtance from it. The coaſt now in ſight ſeemed to form ſeveral rocky points, that were connected by a low ſhore, without any appearance of an harbour. At a diſtance from the ſea, many hills preſented themſelves to our view, the higheſt of which were involved in ſnow; in other reſpects, the whole country had a naked aſpect. At ſeven o'clock in the evening, two points of land beyond the eaſtern head, opened off it in the direction of S. 37 deg. E. Captain Cook was now convinced of what he had before imagined, that this was the country of the Tſchutſki, or the north-eaſtern coaſt of Aſia; and that Beering had proceeded thus far in the year 1728; that is, to this head, which, according to Muller, is denominated Serdze Kamen, on account of a rock upon it, that is of the figure of a heart. There are indeed many high rocks on this cape, ſome one or other of which may perhaps be ſhaped like a heart. It is a promontory of tolerable height, with a ſteep rocky cliff fronting the ſea. Its lat. is 67 deg. 3 min. N. and its long. 188 deg. 11 min. E. To the E. of it the coaſt is elevated and cold; but to the W. it is low, and extends N. W. by W. and N. N. W. and it is nearly of the ſame direction all the way to Cape North. The depth of water is every where the ſame at an equal diſtance from the ſhore; and this is likewiſe the caſe on the oppoſite coaſt of America. The greateſt depth we met with, as we ranged along it, was 23 fathoms. During the night, or in thick foggy weather, the ſoundings are no bad guide to thoſe who ſail along either of theſe coaſts. On the 2d, at eight in the morning, the moſt advanced land to the ſouth-eaſtward, bore S. 25 deg. E. and, from this particular point of view, had an inſular appearance. But the thick ſhowers of ſnow that fell in quick ſucceſſion, and ſettled on the land, concealed from our ſight at this time a great part of the coaſt. In a ſhort time after, the ſun, which we had not ſeen for near five days, broke out during the intervals between the ſhowers, by which means the coaſt was in ſome degree freed from the fog, ſo that we obtained a ſight of it, and found that the whole was connected. The wind was ſtill northerly, the air was cold, and the mercury in the thermometer did not riſe above 35 deg. and was ſometimes not higher than 30 deg. At 12 o'clock our lat. was 66 deg. 37 min. N. Cape Serdze Kamen was 12 or 13 leagues diſtant, bearing N. 52 deg. W. the moſt ſoutherly point of land that we had in our ſight, bore S. 41 deg. E. our ſoundings were 22 fathoms; and the diſtance of the neareſt part of the ſhore was about two leagues. The weather was now fair and bright: and as we were ranging along the coaſt, we ſaw ſeveral of the natives and ſome of their dwelling-places, which had the appearance of hillocks of earth. In the courſe of the evening we paſſed the Eaſtern Cape, or the point before-mentioned; from which the coaſt trends to the ſouth-weſtward. This is the ſame point of land that we had paſſed on the 11th of the preceding month. Thoſe who gave credit to Mr. Stæhlin's map, then ſuppoſed it to be the eaſtern point of his iſland Alaſchka; but we were by this time convinced, that it is no other than the eaſtern promontory of Aſia; and perhaps it is the upper Tſchukotſkoi Noſs, though the promontory which received that name ftom Beering, is ſituated further towards the S. W. Muller, in his map of the diſcoveries of the Ruſſians, places the Tſchukotſkoi Noſs nearly in the lat. of 75 deg. N. and extends it ſomewhat to the eaſtward of this cape. But Captain Cook was of opinion, that he had no good authority for ſo doing. Indeed his own, or rather Deſhneff's, account of the diſtance between the river Anadir and the Noſs, cannot well be reconciled with ſo northerly a poſition. For he ſays, that with the moſt favourable wind, a perſon may go by ſea from the Noſs to the river Anadir in three whole days, and that the journey by land is very little longer. But Captain Cook, having hopes of viſiting theſe parts again, deferred the diſcuſſion of this point to another opportunity. In the mean time, however, he concluded, as Beering had done before him, that this was the eaſternmoſt point of all Aſia. It is a peninſula of conſiderable elevation, joined to the continent by a very low and apparently narrow iſthmus. It has next the ſea, a ſteep rocky cliff, and off the very point are ſeveral rocks reſembling ſpires. It ſtands in the long. of 190 deg. 22 min. E. and in the lat. of 66 deg. 6 min. N. and is 13 leagues diſtant, in the direction of N. 53 deg. W. from Cape Prince of Wales, on the coaſt of America. The land about this promontory conſiſts of valleys and hills. The former terminate at the ſea in low ſhores, and the latter in ſteep rocky points. The hills appeared like naked rocks; but the valleys, though deſtitute of tree or ſhrub, were of a greeniſh hue.

Having paſſed the Cape, we ſteered S. W. half W. towards the northern point of St. Lawrence's Bay, in which our ſhips had anchored on the 10th of Auguſt. We reached it by eight o'clock the following morning, and ſaw ſome of the natives at the place where we had before ſeen them, as well as others on the oppoſite ſide of the bay. Not one of them, however, came off to us, which was rather remarkable, as the weather was ſufficiently favourable, and as thoſe whom we had lately viſited had no reaſon to be diſpleaſed with us. Theſe people are certainly the Tſchutſki, whom the Ruſſians had not hitherto ſubdued; though it is manifeſt that they muſt carry on a traffic with the latter, either directly, or by the interpoſition of ſome neighbouring nation; as their being in poſſeſſion of the ſpontoons we ſaw among them, cannot otherwiſe be accounted for. The Bay of St. Lawrence is, at the entrance, at leaſt five leagues in breadth, and about four leagues deep, growing narrower towards the bottom, where it ſeemed to be pretty well ſheltered from the ſea winds, provided there is a competent depth of water for ſhips. The Commodore did not wait to examine it, though he was extremely deſirous of finding a convenient harbour in thoſe parts, to which he might reſort in the ſucceeding ſpring. But he wiſhed to meet with one where wood might be obtained, and he knew that none could be found here. From the ſouthern point of this bay, which is ſituated in the lat. of 65 deg. 30 min. N. the coaſt trends W. by S. for the ſpace of about nine leagues, and there ſeems to form a deep bay or river; or elſe the land in that part is ſo low that we could not diſcern it. In the afternoon, about one o'clock, we ſaw what was firſt ſuppoſed to be a rock, but it was found to be a dead whale, which ſome Aſiatics had killed, and were then towing aſhore. They ſeemed to endeavour to conceal themſelves behind the fiſh, in order to avoid being ſeen by us. This, however, was unneceſſary, for we proceeded on our courſe without taking notice of them. On the 4th, at break of day, we hauled to the north-weſtward, for the purpoſe of gaining a nearer view of the inlet ſeen the day before; but the wind, not long after, veering to that direction, the deſign was abandoned; and ſteering towards the S. along the coaſt, we paſſed two bays, each about ſix miles deep. The moſt northerly one is ſituate before a hill, which is rounder than any other we had obſerved upon the coaſt. There is an iſland lying before the other bay. It is a matter of doubt whether there is a ſufficient depth of water for ſhips in either of theſe bays, as when we edged in for the ſhore, we conſtantly met with ſhoal water. This part of the country is extremely naked and hilly. In ſeveral places on the lower grounds, next the ſea, were the habitations of the natives, near all of which were erected ſtages of bones, like thoſe before-mentioned. This day, at noon, our lat. was 64 deg. 38 min. N. and our long. 188 deg. 15 min. E. the neareſt part of the ſhore was at the diſtance of three or four leagues; and the moſt ſouthern point of the continent in ſight, bore S. 48 deg. W. By this time the wind had veered to the N. and blew a light breeze; the weather was clear, and the air ſharp. The Commodore did not think proper to follow the direction of the coaſt, as he perceived that it inclined weſtward towards the gulph of Anadir, into which he had no motive for going. He therefore ſteered a ſoutherly courſe, that he might have a ſight of the iſle of St. Lawrence, which had been diſcovered by Beering. This iſland was quickly ſeen by us, and at eight in the evening it bore S. 20 deg. E. ſuppoſed to be at the diſtance of 11 leagues. The moſt ſoutherly point of the main land was at that time 12 leagues diſtant, bearing S. 83 deg. W. Captain Cook conjectured, that this was the point which is called by Beering the eaſtern point of Suchotſki, or Cape Tſchukotſkoi: an appellation which he gave it with ſome propriety, becauſe the natives, who ſaid they were of the nation of the Tſchutſki, came off to him from this part of the coaſt. Its lat. is 64 deg. 13 min. N. and its long. 186 deg. 36 min. E. The more the Captain was convinced of his being at preſent upon the Aſiatic coaſt, the more he was at a loſs to reconcile his obſervations with Mr. Stæhlin's map of the New Northern Archipelago; and he could find no other method of accounting for ſo important a difference, than by ſuppoſing that he had miſtaken ſome part of what Mr. Stæhlin denominates the iſland of Alaſchka for the continent of America, and had miſſed the channel by which they are ſeparated. But even on that ſuppoſition there would ſtill have been a conſiderable variation. The Captain conſidered it as an affair of ſome conſequence to clear up this point during the preſent ſeaſon, that he might have only one object in view in the following one. And as theſe northerly iſlands were ſaid to abound with wood, he had ſome hopes if he ſhould find them, of procuring a competent ſupply of that article, of which we began to ſtand in great need. With this view he ſteered over for the coaſt of America; and the next day, about five o'clock in the afternoon, land was ſeen bearing S. three quarters E. which we imagined was Anderſon's Iſland, or ſome other land near it. On Sunday, the 6th, at four in the morning, we had a ſight of the American coaſt, near Sledge Iſland; and at ſix in the evening of the ſame day, that iſland was at the diſtance of about ten leagues, bearing N. 6 deg. E. and the moſt eaſterly land in view bore N. 49 deg. E. If any part of what Captain Cook had conjectured to be the coaſt of the American continent, could poſſibly be the iſland of Alaſchka, it was that now in ſight; in which caſe he muſt have miſſed the channel between it and the main land, by ſteering towards the W. inſtead of the E. after he had firſt fallen in with it. He was, therefore, at no loſs where to go, for the purpoſe of clearing up theſe doubts. On the 7th, at eight o'clock in the evening, we had made a near approach to the land. Sledge Iſland bore N. 85 deg. W. about eight leagues diſtant; and the eaſtern part of the coaſt bore N. 70 deg. E. with elevated land in the direction of E. N. At this time we perceived a light on ſhore, and two canoes with people in them came off towards us. We brought to, in order to give them time to approach: but they reſiſted all our tokens of amity, and kept at the diſtance of a quarter of a mile. We therefore left them, and proceeded along the coaſt. The next morning, at one o'clock, obſerving that the water ſhoaled pretty faſt, we anchored in ten fathoms, and remained in that ſituation till day-light came on. We then weighed, and purſued our courſe along the coaſt, which trended E. and E. half S. At ſeven o'clock in the evening we were abreaſt of a point, ſituated in the long. of 197 deg. E. and in the lat. of 64 deg. 21 min. N. beyond which the coaſt aſſumes a more northerly direction. At eight this point, which received the appellation of Cape Darby, bore S. 62 deg. W. the moſt northern land we had in view, bore N. 32 deg. E. and the diſtance of the neareſt part of the ſhore was one league. In this ſituation we let go our anchors in thirteen fathoms, over a muddy bottom.

On Wedneſday the 9th, at break of day, we weighed, and made ſail along the coaſt. We now ſaw land, which we ſuppoſed to be two iſlands; the one bearing E. the other S. 70 deg. E. Not long afterwards, we found ourſelves near a coaſt covered with wood; a pleaſing ſight, to which we had not been lately accuſtomed. As we advanced northward, land was ſeen in the direction of N. E. half N. which proved a continuation of the coaſt, upon which we now were: we likewiſe perceived high land over the iſlands, apparently, at a conſiderable diſtance beyond them. This was imagined to be the continent, and the other land the iſle of Alaſchka; but it was already a matter of doubt, whether we ſhould diſcover a paſſage between them, for the water gradually ſhoaled, as we proceeded further towards the N. In conſequence of this, two boats were diſpatched a-head to ſound; and the Commodore ordered the Diſcovery, as ſhe drew the leaſt water, to lead, keeping nearly in the middle channel, between the coaſt and the moſt northerly iſland. In this manner we continued our courſe till three o'clock in the afternoon, when, having paſſed the iſland, our ſoundings did not exceed three fathoms and a half, and the Reſolution once brought the mud up from the bottom. In no part of the channel could a greater depth of water be found, though we had ſounded it from one ſide to the other; we therefore deemed it high time to return.

At this time a head-land on the weſtern ſhore, to which the name of Bald-head was given, was about one league diſtant, bearing N. by W. The coaſt extended beyond it as far as N. E. by N. where it appeared to terminate in a point; behind which the coaſt of the high land that was ſeen over the iſlands ſtretched itſelf. The ſhore on the weſtern ſide of Bald-head, forms a bay, in the bottom of which is a beach, where we perceived many huts of the natives. We continued to ply back during the whole night, and by day-break on the 10th had deepened our water ſix fathoms. At nine o'clock, when we were about three miles from the W. ſhore, Captain Cook, accompanied by Mr. King, went with two boats in ſearch of wood and water. They landed in that part, where the coaſt projects into a bluff head, compoſed of perpendicular ſtrata of a dark blue rock, intermixed with glimmer and quartz. Adjoining to the beach is a narrow border of land, which was at this time covered with long graſs, and where they obſerved ſome angelica. The ground, beyond this, riſes with ſome abruptneſs; towards the top of this elevation they found a heath, that abounded with berries of various kinds: further onward the country was rather level, and thinly covered with ſmall ſpruce trees, birch, and willows. They ſaw the tracks of foxes and deer upon the beach, in many parts of which, there was a great abundance of drift-wood: there was alſo no want of freſh water. Our gentlemen and their attendants having returned on board, the Commodore had thoughts of bringing the ſhips to an anchor here; but the wind then ſhifting to N. E. and blowing rather on this ſhore, he ſtretched over to the oppoſite one, expecting to find wood there likewiſe. At eight in the evening, we anchored near the ſouthern end of the moſt northerly iſland, for ſuch we then imagined it to be. The next morning, however, we found that it was a peninſula, connected with the continent by a low iſthmus, on each ſide of which a bay is formed by the coaſt. We plied into the ſouthernmoſt of theſe bays, and caſt anchor again about twelve o'clock, in five fathoms water, over a muddy bottom; the point of the peninſula, to which the name of Cape Denbigh was given, being one league diſtant, in the direction of N. 68 deg. W. We obſerved on the peninſula, ſeveral of the natives, and one of them came off in a ſmall canoe. Captain Cook gave this man a knive and ſome beads, with which he appeared to be well pleaſed; we made ſigns to him to bring us ſome proviſions, upon which he inſtantly quitted us, and paddled towards the ſhore. Happening to meet another man coming off, who had two dried ſalmon, he got them from him; and when he returned to our ſhip he refuſed to give them to any body except Captain Cook. Some of our people fancied, that he aſked for him under the name of Capitane; but in this they were perhaps miſtaken. Others of the inhabitants came off ſoon afterwards, and gave us a few dried fiſh, in exchange for ſuch trifles as we had to barter with them. They ſhewed no diſlike for tobacco, but they were moſt deſirous of knives. In the afternoon, Mr. Gore was diſpatched to the peninſula, to procure wood and water; of the former of which articles we obſerved great plenty upon the beach. At the ſame time a boat from each of the ſhips was ſent to ſound round the bay; and at three o'clock, the wind freſhening at N. E. we weighed anchor, and endeavoured to work further in, but that was quickly found to be impracticable, by reaſon of the ſhoals which extended entirely round the bay, to the diſtance of upwards of two miles from the ſhore, as the officers who had been ſent out for the purpoſe of ſounding reported. We therefore ſtood off and on with the ſhips, waiting for Lieutenant Gore, who returned about eight o'clock in the evening, with the launch loaded with wood. He informed the Commodore, that he had found but little freſh water, and that the wood could not be procured without difficulty, on account of the boats grounding at ſome diſtance from the beach. As this was the caſe, we ſtood back to the other ſhore, and the next morning at eight, all the boats and a detachment of men with an officer, were ſent to get wood from the place where Captain Cook had landed on the 10th. After having continued for ſome time to ſtand off and on with the ſhips, we at length caſt anchor in leſs than five fathoms, at the diſtance of half a league from the coaſt, whoſe ſouthern point bore S. 26 deg. W. Cape Denbigh was about 26 miles diſtant, bearing S. 72 deg. E. Bald-head was nine leagues off, in the direction of N. 60 deg. E. and the iſland near the eaſtern ſhore, S. of Cape Denbigh, named by Captain Cook Beſborough Iſland, was 15 leagues diſtant, bearing S. 52 deg. E. This being a very open road, and therefore not a ſecure ſtation for the ſhips, the Commodore reſolved not to wait till our ſtock of water was completed, as that would take up ſome time; but only to furniſh both ſhips with wood, and afterwards to ſeek a more commodious place for the former article. Our people carried off the drift-wood that lay on the beach, and performed that buſineſs with great expedition; for, as the wind blew along the ſhore, the boats were enabled to ſail both ways. In the afternoon Captain Cook went on ſhore, and took a walk into the country, which in thoſe parts where there was no wood, abounded with heath, and other plants, ſeveral of which had plenty of berries, all ripe. Scarce a ſingle plant was in flower. The underwood, ſuch as birch, alders, and willows, occaſioned walking to be very troubleſome among the trees, which were all ſpruce, and none of which exceeded ſeven or eight inches in diameter; but ſome were obſerved lying on the beach, that were above twice that ſize. All the drift-wood that we ſaw in theſe northern parts was fir.

Sunday the 13th, a family of the natives came near the ſpot where our people were occupied in taking off wood. The Captain ſaw only the huſband and wife, and their child, beſides a fourth perſon, who was the moſt deformed cripple he had ever ſeen. The huſband was nearly blind, and neither he nor his wife were ſuch well-looking people as many of thoſe whom we had met with on this coaſt. Both of them had their lower lips perforated; and they were in poſſeſſion of ſome glaſs-beads, reſembling thoſe we had ſeen before among their neighbours. Iron was the article that pleaſed them moſt. For four knives which had been formed out of an old iron-hoop, the Captain obtained from them near four hundred pounds weight of fiſh, that had been lately caught by them. Some of theſe were trout, and others were, with reſpect to ſize and taſte, ſomewhat between a herring and a mullet. The Captain gave a few beads to the child, who was a female; upon which the mother immediately burſt into tears, then the father, next after him the cripple, and at laſt, to add the finiſhing ſtroke to the concert, the child herſelf. This muſic, however, was not of long duration. Mr. King had on the preceding day been in company with the ſame family. His account of this interview is to the following purport: While he attended the wooding party, a canoe filled with natives approached, out of which an elderly man and woman (the huſband and wife above-mentioned) came aſhore. Mr. King preſented a ſmall knife to the woman, and promiſed to give her a much larger one in exchange for ſome fiſh. She made ſigns to him to follow her. After he had proceeded with them about a mile, the man fell down as he was croſſing a ſtony beach, and happened to cut his foot very much. This occaſioned Mr. King to ſtop; upon which the woman pointed to her huſband's eyes, which were covered with a thick whitiſh film. He afterwards kept cloſe to his wife, who took care to apprize him of the obſtacles in his way. The woman had a child on her back, wrapped up in the hood of her jacket. After walking about two miles, they arrived at an open ſkin-boat, which was turned on one ſide, the convex part towards the wind, and was made to ſerve for the habitation of this family. Mr. King now performed a remarkable operation on the man's eyes. He was firſt deſired to hold his breath, then to breathe on the diſtempered eyes, and afterwards to ſpit on them. The woman then took both the hands of Mr. King, and preſſing them to the man's ſtomach, held them there for ſome time, while ſhe recounted ſome melancholy hiſtory reſpecting her family; ſometimes pointing to her huſband, ſometimes to her child, and at other times to the cripple, who was related to her. Mr. King purchaſed all the fiſh they had, which conſiſted of excellent ſalmon, ſalmon-trout, and mullet. Theſe fiſh were faithfully delivered to the perſon he ſent for them. The woman was ſhort and ſquat, and her viſage was plump and round. She wore a jacket made of deer ſkin, with a large hood, and had on a pair of wide boots. She was punctured from the lip to the chin. Her huſband was well made, and about five feet two inches in height. His hair was black and ſhort, and he had but little beard. His complexion was of a light copper caſt. He had two holes in his lower lip, in which, however, he had no ornaments. The teeth of both of them were black, and appeared as if they had been filed down level with the gums.

Before night, on Sunday the 13th, we had amply furniſhed the ſhips with wood, and had conveyed on board about a dozen tons of water to each. On the 14th a party was detached on ſhore to cut brooms, and likewiſe the branches of ſpruce-trees for brewing beer. About twelve o'clock all our people were taken on board, for the wind freſhening had raiſed ſo heavy a ſurf on the beach, that our boats could not continue to land without extreme difficulty and danger. As doubts were ſtill entertained whether the coaſt, upon which we now were, belonged to an iſland, or to the continent of America, lieutenant King was diſpatched by the Commodore, with two boats, well manned and armed, to make ſuch a ſearch as might tend to remove all difference of opinion on the ſubject. He was inſtructed to proceed towards the north as far as the extreme point ſeen on Wedneſday the 9th, or a little further, if he ſhould find it neceſſary; to land there, and, from the heights, endeavour to diſcover whether the land he was then upon, imagined to be the iſland of Alaſchka, was really an iſland, or was connected with the land to the eaſtward, ſuppoſed to be the American continent. If it proved to be an iſland, he was to examine the depth of water in the channel between it and the continent, and which way the flood tide came: but, if he ſhould find the two lands united, he was to return immediately to the ſhip. He was directed not to be abſent longer than four or five days; and it was alſo mentioned in his inſtructions, that, if any unforeſeen or unavoidable accident ſhould force our ſhips off the coaſt, the rendezvous was to be at the harbour of Samganoodha. On Tueſday the 15th, the ſhips removed over to the bay on the ſouth eaſtern ſide of Cape Denbigh, where we caſt anchor in the afternoon. Not long after, ſeveral of the inhabitants came off in canoes, and gave us ſome dried ſalmon in exchange for trifling articles. Early the next morning, nine men, each in a ſeparate canoe, paid us a viſit, with the ſole view of gratifying their curioſity. They approached the ſhip with caution, and drawing up abreaſt of each other, under our ſtern, favoured us with a ſong; while one of their number made many ludicrous motions with his hands and body, and another beat upon a ſort of drum. There was nothing ſavage, either in the ſong, or the geſtures with which it was accompanied. There ſeemed to be no difference, either with reſpect to ſize or features, between theſe people, and thoſe whom we had ſeen on every other part of the coaſt, except King George's Sound. Their dreſs, which chiefly conſiſted of the ſkins of deer, was made after the ſame mode; and they had adopted the practice of perforating their lower lips, and affixing ornaments to them. The habitations of theſe Americans were ſituated cloſe to the beach. They conſiſt merely of a ſloping roof, without any ſide-walls, formed of logs, and covered with earth and graſs. The floor is likewiſe laid with logs. The entrance is at one end, and the fire-place is juſt within it. A ſmall hole is made near the door of the hut, for the purpoſe of letting out the ſmoke. A party of men was diſpatched, this morning, to the peninſula for brooms and ſpruce. Half the remainder of the people of both ſhips were, at the ſame time, permitted to go aſhore and gather berries. Theſe returned on board about twelve o'clock, and the other half then landed for the ſame purpoſe. The berries found here were hurtle-berries, heath-berries, partridge-berries, and wild currant-berries. Captain Cook alſo went aſhore himſelf, and took a walk over part of the peninſula. He met with very good graſs in ſeveral places, and ſcarcely obſerved a ſingle ſpot on which ſome vegetable was not growing. The low land by which this peninſula is united to the continent, abounds with narrow creeks, and likewiſe with ponds of water, ſeveral of which were at this time frozen over. There were numbers of buſtards and geeſe, but they were ſo ſhy, that it was impoſſible to get within muſquet-ſhot of them. Some ſnipes were alſo ſeen; and, on the higher grounds, were partridges of two ſpecies; where there was wood, muſquitoes were numerous. Some of the officers, who went further into the country than Captain Cook did, met with ſome of the natives of both ſexes, who treated them with civility and kindneſs. The Commodore was of opinion, that this peninſula had been an iſland in ſome diſtant period; for there were marks of the ſea having formerly flowed over the iſthmus; and even at preſent it appeared to be kept out by a bank of ſand, ſtones, and wood, which the waves had thrown up. It was manifeſt from this bank, that the land here encroached upon the ſea, and it was not difficult to trace its gradual formation.

Lieutenant King returned from his expedition about ſeven o'clock this evening. He had ſet out at eight o'clock at night, on the 14th. The crews of the boats rowed without intermiſſion towards the land, till one in the morning of the 15th. They then ſet their ſails, and ſtood acroſs the bay, which the coaſt forms to the weſtward of Bald-Head. They afterwards, about three o'clock, again made uſe of their oars, and, by two in the afternoon, had got within two miles of Bald-Head, under the lee of the high land. At that time all the men in the boat belonging to the Reſolution, except two, were ſo oppreſſed with fatigue and ſleep, that Mr. King's utmoſt endeavours to make them put on were perfectly ineffectual. They, at length, were ſo far exhauſted as to drop their oars, and fall aſleep at the bottom of the boat. In conſequence of this, Mr. King, and two gentlemen who were with him, were obliged to lay hold of the oars; and they landed, a little after three o'clock, between Bald-Head and a point that projects to the eaſtward. Mr. King, upon his landing, aſcended the heights, from which he could ſee the two coaſts join, and that the inlet terminated in a ſmall creek or river, before which there were banks of ſand or mud, and in every part ſhoal water. The land, for ſome diſtance towards the north, was low and ſwampy: then it roſe in hills; and the perfect junction of thoſe, on each ſide of the inlet, was traced without the leaſt difficulty. From the elevated ſituation in which Mr. King took his ſurvey of the Sound, he could diſcern many ſpacious valleys, with rivers flowing through them, well wooded, and bounded by hills of a moderate height. One of the rivers towards the N. W. ſeemed to be conſiderable; and he was inclined to ſuppoſe, from its direction, that it diſcharged itſelf into the ſea at the head of the bay. Some of his people, penetrating beyond this into the country, found the trees to be of a larger ſize the further they proceeded. To this inlet Captain Cook gave the name of Norton's Sound, in honour of Sir Fletcher Norton, now Lord Grantley; a near relation of Mr. King. It extends northward as far as the latitude of 64 deg. 55 min. N. The bay, wherein our ſhips were now at anchor, is ſituated on the ſouth-eaſtern ſide of it, and is denominated Chacktoole by the natives. It is not a very excellent ſtation, being expoſed to the S. and S. W. winds. Nor is a harbour to be met with in all this Sound. We were ſo fortunate, however, as to have the wind from the N. E. and the N. during the whole time of our continuance here, with very fine weather. This afforded an opportunity of making a great number of lunar obſervations, the mean reſult of which gave 197 deg. 13 min. E. as the longitude of the anchoring place on the weſtern-ſide of the Sound, while its latitude was 64 deg. 31 min. N. With reſpect to the tides, the night flood roſe two or three feet, and the day flood was ſcarcely perceivable. Captain Cook being now perfectly convinced, that Mr. Stæhlin's map was extremely erroneous, and having reſtored the continent of America to the ſpace which that gentleman had occupied with his imaginary iſland of Alaſchka, thought it now high time to quit theſe northerly regions, and retire to ſome place for the winter, where he might obtain proviſions and refreſhments. He did not conſider Petropaulowſka, or the harbour of St. Peter and St. Paul in Kamtſchatka, as likely to furniſh a ſufficient ſupply. He had likewiſe other reaſons for not going thither at preſent; the principal of which was, his great unwillingneſs to remain inactive for ſix or ſeven months, which would have been the conſequence of paſſing the winter in any of theſe northern countries. He at length concluded, that no ſituation was ſo convenient for our purpoſe as the Sandwich Iſlands. To them, therefore, he formed a reſolution of repairing. But a ſupply of water being neceſſary before he could execute that deſign, he determined, with a view of procuring this eſſential article, to ſearch the coaſt of America for a harbour, by proceeding along it to the ſouthward. If he ſhould not meet with ſucceſs in that ſearch, his intention was to reach Samganoodha, which was appointed for our place of rendezvous, in caſe the ſhips ſhould happen to ſeparate.

On Thurſday, the 17th, in the morning we weighed anchor with a light eaſterly breeze, and ſteering to the ſouthward, attempted to paſs within Beſborough Iſland; but, though it is ſix or ſeven miles diſtant from the continent, we were prevented, by meeting with ſhoal water. Having but little wind all the day, we did not paſs that iſland before it was dark, and the night was ſpent under an eaſy ſail. On the 18th, at day break, we reſumed our progreſs along the coaſt. At noon, our ſoundings were no more than five fathoms. Beſborough Iſland, at this time, bore N. 42 deg. E. the moſt ſoutherly land in ſight, which alſo proved to be an iſland, bore S. 66 deg. W. the paſſage between it and the continent, was in the direction of S. 40 deg. W. and the neareſt land was at the diſtance of about two miles. We continued to ſteer for this paſſage, till the boats which were a-head made the ſignal for having no more than three fathoms water. In conſequence of this, we hauled without the iſland, and diſplayed the ſignal for the Reſolution's boat to keep between the ſhore and the ſhips. This iſland, to which the name of Stuart's Iſland was given, lies in the latitude of 63 deg. 35 min. N. and is 17 leagues diſtant from Cape Denbigh, in the direction of S. 27 deg. W. It is ſix or ſeven leagues in circumference. Though ſome parts of it are of a moderate height, yet, in general, it is low, with ſome rocks off the weſtern part. The greateſt part of the coaſt of the continent is low land, but we perceived high land up the country. It forms a point, oppoſite the iſland, which was diſtinguiſhed by the name of Cape Stephens, and is ſituated in the latitude of 63 deg. 33 min. N. and in the longitude of 197 deg. 41 min. E. Some drift wood was obſerved on the ſhores, both of the iſland and of the continent; but not a ſingle tree was ſeen growing upon either. Veſſels might anchor, upon occaſion, between the continent and the N. E. ſide of this iſland, in a depth of five fathoms, ſheltered from the eaſterly, weſterly, and ſoutherly winds. But this ſtation would be entirely expoſed to the northerly winds, the land, in that direction, being too remote to afford any ſecurity. Before we reached Stuart's Iſland, we paſſed two little iſlands, ſituate between us and the main land; and as we ranged along the coaſt, ſeveral of the natives made their appearance upon the ſhore, and, by ſigns, ſeemed to invite us to approach.

We were no ſooner without the iſland, than we ſteered S. by W. for the moſt ſouthern part of the continent in ſight, till eight in the evening, when, the depth of water having decreaſed from ſix fathoms to leſs than four, we tacked and ſtood to the northward into five fathoms, and then paſſed the night in ſtanding off and on. At the time we tacked, the ſouthernmoſt point of land above mentioned, which we named Point Shallow Water, bore S. half E. at the diſtance of ſeven leagues. On the 19th, at day break, we reſumed our ſoutherly courſe; but ſhoal water ſoon obliged us to haul more to the weſtward. We were at length ſo far advanced upon the bank, that we could not hold a N. N. W. courſe, as we ſometimes met with only four fathoms. The wind blowing freſh at E. N. E. it was now high time to endeavour to find a greater depth of water, and to quit a coaſt upon which we could no longer navigate with ſafety. We therefore hauled the wind to the northward, and the water gradually increaſed in depth to eight fathoms. At this time, we were about twelve leagues diſtant from the continent, and nine to the W. of Stuart's Iſland. We ſaw no land to the ſouthward of Point Shallow Water, which Captain Cook judged to lie in the latitude of 63 deg. N. ſo that between this latitude and Shoal Neſs, in latitude 60 deg. the coaſt has not been explored. It is probably acceſſible only to boats, or very ſmall veſſels; or, if there are channels for veſſels of greater magnitude, it would require ſome time to find them. From the maſt head, the ſea within us appeared to be checquered with ſhoals; the water was very muddy and diſcoloured, and much freſher than at any of the places where our ſhips had lately anchored. From this we inferred that a conſiderable river runs into the ſea, in this unexplored part. After we had got into eight fathoms water, we ſteered to the weſtward, and afterwards more ſoutherly, for the land diſcovered by us on the 5th of September, which at noon on the 20th, bore S. W. by W. at the diſtance of ten or eleven leagues. We had now a freſh gale at N. and, at intervals, ſhowers of hail and ſnow, with a pretty high ſea. To the land before us, the Commodore gave the appellation of Clerke's Iſland. It ſtands in the latitude of 63 deg. 15 min. and in the longitude of 190 deg. 30 min. It ſeemed to be an iſland of conſiderable extent, in which are ſeveral hills, all connected by low ground, ſo that it looks, at a diſtance, like a group of iſlands. Near its eaſtern part is a little iſland, which is remarkable for having on it three elevated rocks. Both the greater iſland, and this ſmaller one, were inhabited. In the afternoon, about ſix o'clock, we reached the northern point of Clerke's Iſland; and having ranged along its coaſt till dark, we brought to during the night. Early the next morning, we again ſtood in for the coaſt, and proceeded along it in queſt of an harbour, till twelve o'clock, when finding no probability of ſucceſs, we left it and ſteered S. S. W. for the land diſcovered by us on the 29th of July; having a freſh gale at N. accompanied with ſhowers of ſnow and ſleet.

Wedneſday the 23d, at day break, the land above mentioned made its appearance, bearing S. W. at the diſtance of ſix or ſeven leagues. From this point of view it reſembled a cluſter of iſlands; but it was found to be only one, of about thirty miles in extent, in the direction of N. W. and S. E. the ſouth-eaſtern extremity being Cape Upright, which we have mentioned before. The iſland is narrow, particularly at the low necks of land by which the hills are connected. Captain Cook afterwards found, that it was entirely unknown to the Ruſſians, and therefore, conſidering it as a diſcovery of our own, he named it Gore's Iſland. It appeared to be barren and deſtitute of inhabitants, at leaſt we ſaw none. Nor did we obſerve ſuch a number of birds about it, as we had ſeen when we firſt diſcovered it. But we perceived ſome ſea-otters, an animal which we had not found to the N. of this latitude. About twelve miles from Cape Upright, in the direction of S. 72 deg. W. ſtands a ſmall iſland, whoſe lofty ſummit terminates in ſeveral pinnacle-rocks, for which reaſon it obtained the name of Pinnacle Iſland. At two o'clock P. M. after we had paſſed Cape Upright, we ſteered S. E. by S. for Samganoodha, with a gentle breeze at N. N. W. being reſolved to loſe no more time in ſearching for an harbour among iſlands, which we now began to ſuſpect had no exiſtence; at leaſt, not in the latitude and longitude in which they have been placed by modern delineators of charts. On the 24th in the evening, the wind veered to S. W. and S. and increaſed to a freſh gale. We continued our eaſterly courſe till eight in the morning of the 25th, when in the longitude of 191 deg. 10 min. and in the latitude of 58 deg. 32 min. we tacked and ſtood to the weſtward; ſoon after which, the gale increaſing, we were reduced to two courſes, and cloſe-reefed main-top-ſails. In a ſhort time after, the Reſolution ſprung a leak, under the ſtarboard buttock, which was ſo conſiderable, as to keep one pump conſtantly employed. We would not venture to put the ſhip upon the other tack, from the apprehenſion of getting upon the ſhoals that lie to the N. W. of Cape Newenham; but continued to ſteer towards the W. till ſix in the evening of Saturday the 26th, when we wore and ſtood to the eaſtward; and then the leak gave us no farther trouble. This proved, that it was above the water-line, which gave us great ſatisfaction. The gale had now ceaſed, but the wind continued at S. and S. W. for ſome days longer.

On Friday the 2nd of October, at day break, we ſaw the iſle of Oonalaſhka, in a S. E. direction. But as the land was obſcured by a thick haze, we were not certain with reſpect to our ſituation till noon, when the obſerved latitude determined it. We hauled into a bay, ten miles to the weſtward of Samganoodha, known by the name of Egoochſhac; but finding very deep water, we ſpeedily left it. The natives viſited us at different times, bringing with them dried ſalmon, and other fiſh, which our ſailors received in exchange for tobacco. Only a few days before, every ounce of tobacco that remained in the ſhip, had been diſtributed among them, and the quantity was not half ſufficient to anſwer their demands. Notwithſtanding this, ſo thoughtleſs and improvident a being is an Engliſh ſailor, that they were as profuſe in making their bargains, as if we had arrived at a port in Virginia; by which means, in leſs than two days, the value of this commodity was lowered above a thouſand per cent. The next day, at one o'clock in the afternoon, we anchored in the harbour of Samganoodha, and, on the morning of the 4th, the carpenters were employed in ripping off the ſheathing of and under the wale of the Reſolution on the ſtarboard ſide. Many of the ſeams were found entirely open; it was therefore not to be wondered at, that ſo much water had got into the ſhip. We cleared the fiſh and ſpirit rooms, and the after-hold; and diſpoſed things in ſuch a manner, that, in caſe of any future leaks of the ſame nature, the water might find its way to the pumps. Beſides this work, and completing our ſtock of water, we cleared the fore-hold, and took in a quantity of ballaſt.

The vegetables we had met with when we were here before, were now, for the moſt part, in a ſtate of decay. There being great plenty of berries, one third of the people, by turns, had permiſſion to go aſhore and gather them. Conſiderable quantities of them were alſo brought to us by the inhabitants. If there were any ſeeds of the ſcurvy, among the people of either ſhip, theſe berries, and the uſe of ſpruce beer, which they were allowed to drink every other day, effectually eradicated them. We likewiſe procured abundance of fiſh; at firſt, chiefly ſalmon, both freſh and dried, which the natives brought us. Some of the freſh ſalmon was in the higheſt perfection; but there was one ſort, which, from the figure of its head, we called hook-noſed, that was but indifferent. Drawing the ſeine ſeveral times, at the head of the bay, we caught many ſalmon trout, and a halibut that weighed 254 pounds. We afterwards had recourſe to hooks and lines. A boat was ſent out every morning, which ſeldom returned without eight or ten halibut, a quantity more than ſufficient to ſerve all our people. Theſe fiſh were excellent, and there were few who did not prefer them to ſalmon. Thus we not only obtained a ſupply of fiſh for preſent conſumption, but had ſome to carry with us to ſea. On the 8th, Captain Cook received, by the hands of a native of Oonalaſhka, named Derramouſhk, a very ſingular preſent, conſidering the place we were in. It was a rye loaf, or rather a pye in the form of a loaf, as it encloſed ſome ſalmon, well ſeaſoned with pepper. This man had brought a ſimilar preſent for Captain Clerke, and a note for each of the Captains, written in a character which none of us underſtood. It was natural to imagine, that theſe two preſents were from ſome Ruſſians now in our neighbourhood, and therefore the Captains ſent, by the ſame meſſenger, to theſe unknown friends, a few bottles of rum, wine and porter, which they ſuppoſed would be highly acceptable. Captain Cook alſo ſent, in company with Derramouſhk, Corporal Lediard, of the marines, an intelligent man, for the purpoſe of gaining farther information; with orders, that if he met with any Ruſſians, he ſhould endeavour to make them underſtand, that we were Engliſhmen, the friends and allies of their nation.

Saturday the 10th, Corporal Lediard returned with three Ruſſian ſeamen, or furriers, who with ſeveral others reſided at Egoochſhac, where they had ſome ſtore-houſes, a dwelling-houſe, and a ſloop of about 30 tons burthen. One of theſe Ruſſians was either Maſter or Mate of this veſſel. They were all three intelligent well-behaved men, and extremely ready to give us all the information we could deſire. But for want of an interpreter, we found it very difficult to underſtand each other. They appeared to have a perfect knowledge of the attempts which their countrymen had made to navigate the Frozen Ocean, and of the diſcoveries that had been made from Kamtſchatka, by Beering, Tſcherikoff, and Spangenberg. But they had not the leaſt idea to what part of the world Mr. Stæhlin's map referred, when it was laid before them. When Captain Cook pointed out Kamtſchatka, and ſome other places upon this map, they aſked him whether he had ſeen the iſlands there repreſented; and, on his anſwering in the negative, one of them put his finger upon a part of the map, where a number of iſlands are laid down, and ſaid that he had cruiſed there in ſearch of land, but could never meet with any. The Captain then ſhewed them his own chart, and found that they were ſtrangers to every part of the coaſt of America, except that which lies oppoſite this iſland. One of theſe men ſaid, that he had been with Beering in his American voyage; but he muſt then have been very young; for even now, at the diſtance of 37 years, he had not the appearance of being aged. Never was greater reſpect paid to the memory of any eminent perſon, than by theſe men to that of Beering. The trade in which they are engaged is very advantageous, and its being undertaken and extended to the eaſtward of Kamtſchatka, was the immediate reſult of the ſecond voyage of that diſtinguiſhed navigator, whoſe misfortunes proved the ſource of much private benefit to individuals, and of public utility to the Ruſſian empire. And yet, if his diſtreſſes had not accidentally carried him to the iſland which bears his name, where he ended his life, and from whence the remainder of his ſhip's crew brought back ſpecimens of its valuable furs, the Ruſſians would probably have undertaken no future voyages, which could lead them to make diſcoveries in this ſea, towards the American coaſt. Indeed, after his time, their miniſtry ſeem to have paid leſs attention to this object; and for what diſcoveries have been ſince made, we are principally indebted to the enterprizing ſpirit of private merchants, encouraged, however, by the ſuperintending care of the court of Peterſburg. The three Ruſſians having remained all night with the Commodore, viſited Captain Clerke the following morning, and then departed, perfectly ſatisfied with the reception they had met with. They promiſed to return in a few days, and bring with them a chart of the iſlands ſituate between Kamtſchatka and Oonalaſhka. In the evening of the 14th, while Captain Cook and Mr. Webber were at a village, not far from Samganoodha, a Ruſſian landed there, who proved to be the principal perſon among his countrymen in this and the adjacent iſles. His name was Eraſim Gregorioff Sin Iſmyloff. He arrived in a canoe that carried three perſons, attended by twenty or thirty ſmaller canoes, each conducted by one man. Immediately after landing, they conſtructed a ſmall tent for Iſmyloff, of materials which they had brought with them, and they afterwards made others for themſelves, of their canoes and paddles, which they covered with graſs. Iſmyloff having invited the Captain and Mr. Webber into his tent, ſet before them ſome dried ſalmon and berries. He appeared to be a man of ſenſe; and the Captain felt no ſmall mortification in not being able to converſe with him, except by ſigns, with the aſſiſtance of figures, and other characters. The Captain requeſted him to favour him with his company on board the next day, and accordingly he came with all his attendants. He had indeed moved into the neighbourhood of our ſtation, for the expreſs purpoſe of waiting upon us. The Commodore was in hopes of receiving from him the chart which his three countrymen had promiſed, but he was diſappointed. However, Iſmyloff aſſured him he ſhould have it, and he kept his word. The

Captain found him very well acquainted with the geography of thoſe parts, and with all the diſcoveries which had been made in this quarter by the Ruſſians. On ſeeing the modern maps, he inſtantly pointed out their errors: he ſaid he had accompanied Lieutenant Syndo, or (as he called him) Synd, in his northern expedition; and, according to his account, they did not proceed farther than the Tſchukotſkoi Noſs, or rather than St. Lawrence's Bay; for he pointed on our chart to the very place where Captain Cook landed. From thence he ſaid they went to an iſland in the lat. of 63 deg. N. upon which they did not land. He did not recollect the name of that iſland; but the Captain conjectured, that it was the ſame with that to which the appellation of Clerke's Iſland had been given. To what place Synd repaired afterwards, or in what particular manner he employed the two years, during which, according to Iſmyloff, his reſearches laſted, he was either unable or unwilling to inform us. Perhaps he did not comprehend our enquiries on this point; and yet, in almoſt every other thing, we found means to make him underſtand us. This inclined us to ſuſpect, that he had not really been in this expedition, notwithſtanding what he had aſſerted. Not only Iſmyloff, but alſo the others affirmed, that they were totally unacquainted with the American continent to the northward; and that neither Lieutenant Synd, nor any other Ruſſian, had ſeen it of late years. They called it by the ſame name which Mr. Stæhlin has affixed to his large iſland, that is Alaſchka. According to the information we obtained from Iſmyloff and his countrymen, the Ruſſians have made ſeveral attempts to gain a footing upon that part of the North American continent, that lies contiguous to Oonalaſhka and the adjacent iſlands, but have conſtantly been repulſed by the inhabitants, whom they repreſent as a very treacherous people. They made mention of two or three Captains, or chief men, who had been murdered by them; and ſome of the Ruſſians ſhewed us wounds, which they declared they had received there. Iſmyloff alſo informed us, that in the year 1773, an expedition had been undertaken into the Frozen Ocean in ſledges, over the ice, to three large iſlands that are ſituate oppoſite the mouth of the river Kovyma. But a voyage which he ſaid he himſelf had performed, engaged our attention more than any other. He told us that on the 12th of May, 1771, he ſailed from Bolcheretzk, in Kamtſchatka, in a Ruſſian veſſel to Mareekan, one of the Kurile iſlands, where there is an harbour, and a Ruſſian ſettlement. From this iſland he proceeded to Japan, where his continuance appears to have been but ſhort; for, as ſoon as the Japaneſe knew that he and his companions profeſſed the Chriſtian faith, they made ſigns for them to depart; but did not, ſo far as we could underſtand him, offer any inſult or violence. From Japan he repaired to Canton, in China; and from thence, in a French ſhip to France. He then travelled to Peterſburgh, and was afterwards ſent out again to Kamtſchatka. We could not learn what became of the veſſel in which he firſt embarked, nor what was the principal intention of the voyage. His being unable to ſpeak one word of the French language, rendered this ſtory rather ſuſpicious; he ſeemed clear, however, as to the times of his arrival at the different places, and of his departure from them, which he put down in writing. The next morning (Friday the 16th) he offered Captain Cook a ſea-otter ſkin, which he ſaid was worth 80 roubles at Kamtſchatka. The Captain, however, thought proper to decline the offer; but accepted of ſome dried fiſh, and ſeveral baſkets of the lily, or ſaranne root. In the afternoon, Iſmyloff, after having dined with Captain Clerke, left us with all his retinue, but promiſed to return in a few days. Accordingly, on the 19th, he paid us another viſit, bringing with him the charts above-mentioned, which he permitted Captain Cook to copy, and the contents of which are the foundation of the following remarks.

Theſe charts were two in number, they were both manuſcripts, and bore every mark of authenticity. One of them comprehended the Penſhinſkian ſea; the coaſt of Tartary, as low as the lat. of 41 deg. N. the Kurile Iſlands, and the peninſula of Kamtſchatka. Since this chart had been made, Wawſeelee Irkeechoff, a naval captain, explored, in the year 1758, the coaſt of Tartary, from Okotſk, and the river Amur, to Japan, or 41 deg. of northern lat. We were informed by Mr. Iſmyloff, that a great part of the ſea-coaſt of Kamtſchatka had been corrected by himſelf; and he deſcribed the inſtrument uſed by him for that purpoſe, which muſt have been a theodolite. He alſo told us, that there were only two harbours proper for ſhipping, on all the eaſtern coaſt of Kamtſchatka, viz. the bay of Awatſka, and the river Olutora, in the bottom of the gulph of the ſame name; that there was not one harbour on its weſtern coaſt; and that Yamſk was the only one, except Okotſk, on all the weſtern ſide of the Penſhinſkian ſea, till we come to the river Amur. The Kurile Iſlands contain but one harbour, and that is on the N. E. ſide of Mareekan; where, as we have already mentioned, the Ruſſians have a ſettlement. The other chart comprehended all the diſcoveries that the Ruſſians had made to the eaſtward of Kamtſchatka, towards America. That part of the American coaſt, with which Tſcherikoff fell in, is laid down in this chart between the lat. of 58 deg. and 58 and an half deg. N. and 75 deg. of eaſtern long. from Okotſk, or 218 and an half deg. from Greenwich; and the place where Beering anchored in 59 and an half deg. of lat. and 63 and an half deg. of long. from Okotſk, or 207 deg. from Greenwich. To ſay nothing of the long. which may, from ſeveral cauſes, be erroneous, the lat. of the coaſt diſcovered by Beering and Tſcherikoff, particularly that part of it which was diſcovered by the latter, differs conſiderably from Mr. Muller's chart. Whether the chart now produced by Iſmyloff, or that of Muller, be moſt erroneous in this reſpect, it may be difficult to determine. According to Iſmyloff's account, neither the number nor the ſituation of the iſlands which are diſperſed between 52 deg. and 55 deg. of lat. in the ſpace between Kamtſchatka and America, is properly aſcertained. He ſtruck out about a third of them, aſſuring us that they did not exiſt; and he conſiderably altered the ſituation of others, which he ſaid was neceſſary, from the obſervations which he himſelf had made; and there was no reaſon to entertain a doubt about this. As theſe iſlands are nearly under the ſame parallel, different navigators, miſled by their different reckonings, might eaſily miſtake one iſland, or cluſter of iſlands for another; and imagine they had made a new diſcovery, when they had only found old ones; in a poſition ſomewhat different from that which their former viſitors had aſſigned to them. The iſles of St. Theodore, St. Stephen, St. Abraham, St. Macarius, Seduction Iſland, and ſeveral others, which are repreſented in Mr. Muller's chart, were not to be found in this now produced to us; nay, Iſmyloff and the other Ruſſians aſſured Captain Cook, that they had been frequently ſought for without effect. Nevertheleſs, it is difficult to believe, that Mr. Muller could place them in his chart without ſome authority. Captain Cook, however, confiding in the teſtimony of theſe people, whom he thought competent witneſſes, omitted them in his chart; and made ſuch corrections reſpecting the other iſlands, as he had reaſon to think were neceſſary.

We ſhall now proceed to give ſome account of the iſlands, beginning with thoſe which are neareſt to Kamtſchatka, and computing the long. from the harbour of Petropaulowſka, in the bay of Awatſka. The firſt is Beering's iſland, in 55 deg. of northern lat. and 6 deg. of eaſtern long. At the diſtance of 10 leagues from the ſouthern extremity of this, in the direction of E. by S. or E. S. E. ſtands Maidenoi Oſtroff, or the Copper Iſland. The next iſland is Atakou, in the lat. of 52 deg. 45 min. and in the long. of 15 deg. or 16 deg. The extent of this iſland is about 18 leagues in the direction of E. and W. and it is perhaps the ſame land which Beering fell in with, and to which he gave the name of Mount St. John. We next come to a cluſter of ſix or more iſlands; two of which, Amluk and Atghka, are of conſiderable extent, and each of them has a good harbour. The middle of this group lies in the lat. of 52 deg. 30 min. and 28 deg. of long. from the bay of Awatſka, and its extent is about four degrees in the direction of E. and W. Theſe are the iſles that Iſmyloff ſaid were to be removed four degrees to the eaſtward. In the ſituation they have in Captain Cook's chart, was a group, comprehending 10 little iſlands, which we were informed were entirely to be ſtruck out; and alſo two iſlands, ſituate between them and the group to which Oonalaſhka appertains. In the place of theſe two, an iſland, named Amoghta, was introduced.

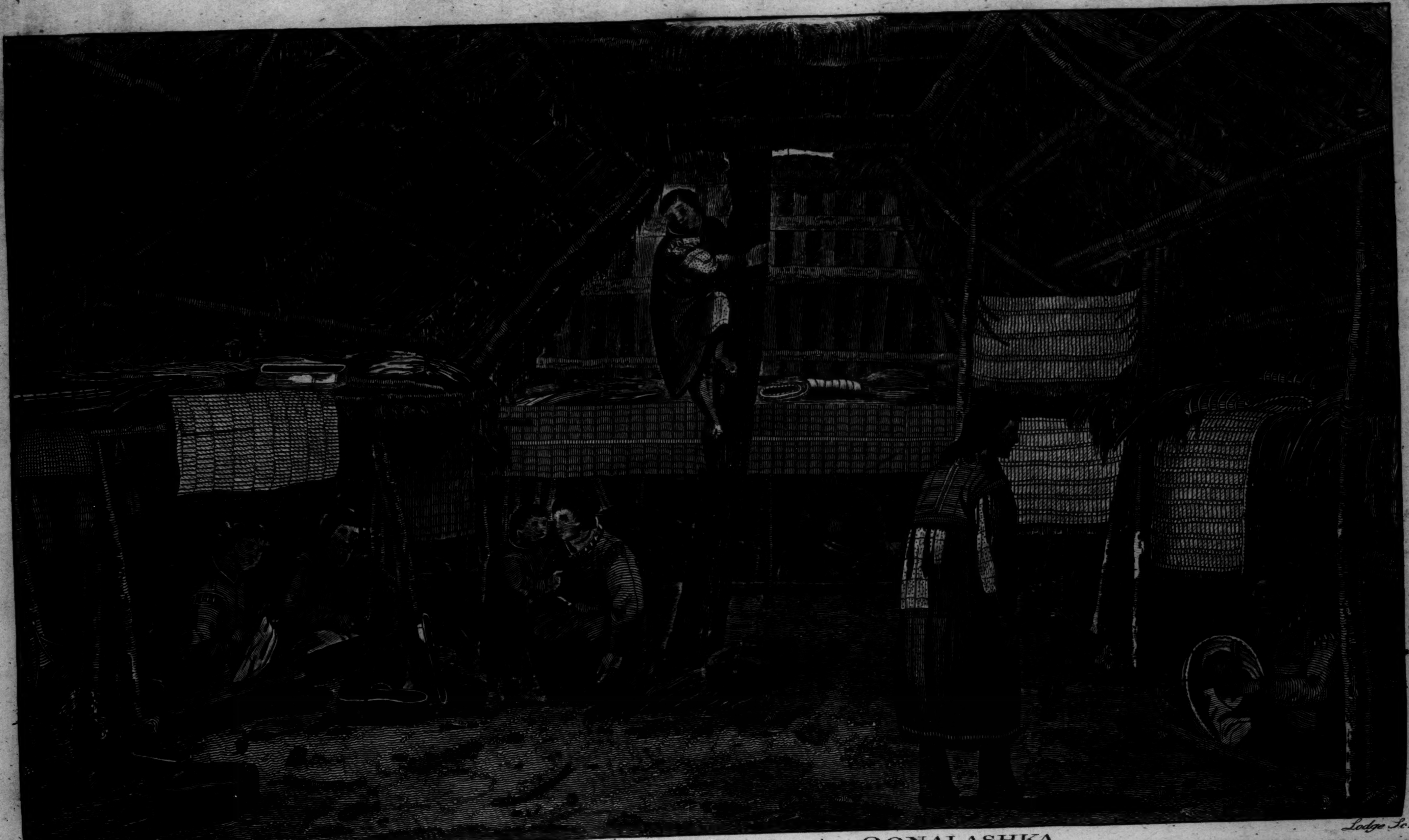
The ſituation of many of theſe iſlands may, perhaps, be erroneouſly laid down. But the poſition of the largeſt group, of which Oonalaſhka is one of the moſt conſiderable iſlands, is free from ſuch errors. Moſt of the iſlands that compoſe this cluſter, were ſeen by us; their long. and lat. were therefore determined with tolerable accuracy; particularly the harbour of Samganoodha, in Oonalaſhka, which muſt be conſidered as a fixed point. This group may be ſaid to extend as far as Halibut Iſles, which are forty leagues diſtant from Oonalaſhka, towards the E. N. E. Within theſe iſles, a paſſage, communicating with Briſtol Bay, was marked in Iſmyloff's chart, which converts about 15 leagues of the coaſt, that Captain Cook had ſuppoſed to be part of the continent, into an iſland, named Ooneemak. This paſſage might eaſily eſcape us, being, as we were informed, extremely narrow, ſhallow, and only to be navigated through with boats, or veſſels of very ſmall burthen. From the chart, as well as from the teſtimony of Iſmyloff and his countrymen, it appears, that this is as far as the Ruſſians have made any diſcoveries, or have extended themſelves, ſince the time of Beering. They all affirmed, that no perſons of that nation had ſettled themſelves ſo far to the eaſtward, as the place where the natives gave the note to Captain Clerke; which being delivered to Iſmyloff for his peruſal, he ſaid, that it had been written at Oomanak. From him we procured the name of Kodiak, the largeſt of Schumagin's Iſlands; for it had no name aſſigned to it upon the chart which he produced. It may not be improper to mention, that no names were put to the iſlands which Iſmyloff ſaid were to be ſtruck out of the chart; and Captain Cook conſidered this as ſome confirmation that they have no exiſtence. The American continent is here called by the Ruſſians, as well as by the iſlanders, Alaſchka; which appellation, though it properly belongs only to that part which is contiguous to Ooneemak, is made uſe of by them when ſpeaking of the American continent in general. This is all the intelligence we obtained from theſe people, reſpecting the geography of this part of the globe; and perhaps this was all the information they were able to give. For they repeatedly aſſured Captain Cook, that they knew of no other iſlands, beſides thoſe which were repreſented upon this chart, and that no Ruſſian had ever viſited any part of the American continent to the northward, except that which is oppoſite the country of the Tſchutſkis. If Mr. Stæhlin was not greatly impoſed upon, what could induce him to publiſh a map ſo ſingularly erroneous as his map of the New northern Archipelago, in which many of theſe iſlands are jumbled together without the leaſt regard to truth? Nevertheleſs, he himſelf ſtyles it "a very accurate little map."

Iſmyloff continued with us till the evening of the 21ſt, when he took his final leave. Captain Cook entruſted to his care a letter to the Lords of the Admiralty, encloſing a chart of all the northern coaſts we had viſited. Iſmyloff ſaid there would be an opportunity of tranſmitting it to Kamtſchatka, or Okotſk, in the courſe of the ſucceeding ſpring; and that it would be at Peterſburg the following winter. He gave the Captain a letter to Major Behm, Governor of Kamtſchatka, who reſides at Bolcheretſk, in that peninſula; and another to the commanding officer at Petropaulowſka. This gentleman ſeemed to poſſeſs abilities that might entitle him to a higher ſtation than that in which we found him. He had conſiderable knowledge in aſtronomy, and in the moſt uſeful branches of the mathematics. Captain Cook made him a preſent of an Hadley's octant; and though, perhaps, it was the firſt he had ever ſeen, he very quickly made himſelf acquainted with moſt of the uſes to which that inſtrument can be applied.

Thurſday the 22d, in the morning, we made an attempt to get out to ſea, with the wind at S. E. but did not ſucceed. In the afternoon of the 23d, we were viſited by one Jacob Ivanovitch Sopoſnicoff, a Ruſſian, who commanded a ſmall veſſel at Oomanak. This man ſeemed very modeſt, and would drink no ſtrong liquor, of which the other Ruſſians, whom we had met with here, were extremely fond. He appeared to know what ſupplies could be obtained at the harbour of St. Peter and St. Paul, and the price of the various articles, more accurately than Mr. Iſmyloff. But by all accounts, every thing we ſhould have occaſion to purchaſe at that place, was very ſcarce, and bore a high price. This man informed us, that he was to be at Petropaulowſka in the enſuing May; and, as we underſtood, was to have the charge of Captain Cook's letter. He ſeemed very deſirous of having ſome token from the Captain to carry to Major Behm; and to gratify him, the Captain ſent a ſmall ſpying glaſs. After we had contracted an acquaintance with theſe Ruſſians, ſeveral of our gentlemen, at different times, viſited their ſettlement on the iſland, where they always met with very friendly treatment. It conſiſted of a dwelling-houſe and two ſtorehouſes. Beſides the Ruſſians, there was a number of the Kamtſchadales, and of the Oonalaſhkans, as ſervants to the former. Some other natives of this iſland, who appeared to be independent of the Ruſſians, lived at the ſame place. Such of them as belonged to the Ruſſians, were all of the male ſex; and they are either taken or purchaſed from their parents when young. There were at preſent about twenty of theſe, who could be conſidered in no other light than as children. They all reſide in the ſame houſe, the Ruſſians at the upper end, the Kamtſchadales in the middle, and the Oonalaſhkans at the lower end, where is fixed a capacious boiler for preparing their food, which principally conſiſts of fiſh, with the addition of wild roots and berries. There is no great difference between the firſt and laſt table, except what is produced by cookery, by which the Ruſſians can make indifferent things palatable. They dreſs whale's fleſh in ſuch a manner as to make it very good eating; and they have a kind of pan-pudding of ſalmon-roe, beaten up fine and fried, which is a tolerable ſubſtitute for bread. They may, perhaps, occaſionally taſte real bread, or have a diſh in which flour is one of the ingredients. If we except the juice of berries, which they generally ſip at their meals, they drink no other liquor than pure water; and it ſeems to be very fortunate for them that they have nothing ſtronger. As the iſland furniſhes them with ſubſiſtence, ſo it does in ſome meaſure with clothing. This is chiefly compoſed of ſkins. The upper garment, which is made like a waggoner's frock, reaches down to the knees. Beſides this, they wear a waiſtcoat or two, a pair of breeches, a fur cap, and a pair of boots, the legs of which are formed of ſome kind of ſtrong gut, but the ſoles and upper leathers are of Ruſſian leather. Their two Chiefs, Iſmyloff and Ivanovitch, wore a calico frock; and they, as well as ſeveral others, had ſhirts of ſilk. Many Ruſſians are ſettled upon all the moſt conſiderable iſlands between Kamtſchatka and Oonalaſhka, for the purpoſe of collecting furs. Their principal object is the ſea-beaver or otter; but ſkins of inferior value alſo make a part of their cargoes. We neglected to enquire how long they have had a ſettlement upon Oonalaſhka, and the neighbouring iſlands; but if we form our judgment on this point from the great ſubjection the natives are under, this cannot be of a very late date. Theſe furriers are from time to time ſucceeded by others. Thoſe we ſaw arrived here from Okotſk in 1776, and were to return in 1781.

As for the native inhabitants of this iſland, they are to all appearance a very peaceable, inoffenſive race of people; and in point of honeſty, they might ſerve as a pattern

BRITISH 7 FE 90 MUSEUM



Lodge Sc.

The INSIDE *of a* HOUSE. *in* OONALASHKA.

pattern to the moſt civilized nations. But, from what we ſaw of their neighbours, with whom the Ruſſians are unconnected, we have ſome doubt whether this was their original diſpoſition; and are rather inclined to be of opinion, that it is the conſequence of their preſent ſtate of ſubjection. Indeed, if we did not miſunderſtand the Ruſſians, they had been under the neceſſity of making ſome ſevere examples before they could bring the iſlanders into tolerable order. If ſeverities were really inflicted at firſt, the beſt excuſe for them is, that they have produced the moſt beneficial effects; and, at preſent, the greateſt harmony ſubſiſts between the Ruſſians and the natives. The latter have their own chiefs in each iſland, and ſeem to enjoy liberty and property without moleſtation. Whether they are tributaries to the Ruſſians, or not, we could never learn; but we had ſome reaſon to ſuppoſe that they are.

The people of Oonalaſhka are in general rather low of ſtature, but plump, and well ſhaped. Their necks are commonly ſhort, and they have ſwarthy chubby faces. They have black eyes and ſmall beards. Their hair is long, black, and ſtraight: the men wear it looſe behind, and cut before; but the women generally tie it up in a bunch. The dreſs of both ſexes is the ſame with reſpect to faſhion, the only difference is in the materials. The frock worn by the women is made of the ſkins of ſeals; and that of the men, of the ſkins of birds; both reach below the knees. This conſtitutes the whole dreſs of the females. But, over the frock, the men wear another compoſed of gut, which water cannot penetrate; it has a hood to it, which is drawn over the head. Some of them wear boots; and all of them wear a ſort of oval ſnouted cap, made of wood, with a rim that admits the head. They dye theſe caps with green and other colours; and round the upper part of the rim they fix the long briſtles of ſome ſea animal, on which glaſs beads are ſtrung; and on the front is a ſmall image or two formed of bone. They do not make uſe of paint; but the women puncture their faces ſlightly, and both ſexes perforate the lower lip, in which they fix pieces of bone. But it is as uncommon here to ſee a man with this ornament, as to obſerve a woman without it. Some fix beads to the upper lip under the noſtrils; and they all ſuſpend ornaments in their ears.

Fiſh and other ſea animals, birds, roots, berries, and even ſea-weed, compoſe their food. They dry quantities of fiſh during the ſummer, which they lay up in ſmall huts for their uſe in winter; and, probably, they preſerve berries and roots for the ſame ſeaſon of ſcarcity. They eat moſt of their proviſions raw. Boiling and broiling were the only methods of cookery that we ſaw practiſed among them; and the former they in all probability learnt from the Ruſſians. Some have in their poſſeſſion ſmall braſs kettles, and thoſe who have not, make one of a flat ſtone, with ſides of clay. Captain Cook once happened to be preſent, when the chief of this iſland made his dinner of the raw head of a large halibut, juſt caught. Before any part of it was given to the chief, two of his ſervants eat the gills, with no other dreſſing than ſqueezing out the ſlime. After this, one of them having cut off the head of the fiſh, took it to the ſea, and waſhed it, then came with it, and ſeated himſelf by the chief; but not before he had pulled up ſome graſs, upon a part of which the head was placed, and the reſt was ſtrewed before the chief. He then cut large pieces off the cheeks, and put them within the reach of the chief, who ſwallowed them with great ſatisfaction. When he had finiſhed his meal, the remains of the head being cut in pieces, were given to the ſervants, who tore off the meat with their teeth, and gnawed the bones like ſo many dogs.

As the Oonalaſhkins uſe no paint, they are leſs dirty in their perſons than thoſe ſavages who thus beſmear themſelves; but they are full as filthy in their houſes. The following is their method of building: they dig, in the ground, an oblong pit, which rarely exceeds fifty feet in length, and twenty in breadth; but the dimenſions are in general ſmaller. Over this excavation they form the roof of wood, which they cover firſt with graſs, and then with earth, ſo that the external appearance reſembles a dung-hill. Near each end of the roof is left a ſquare opening, which admits the light; one of theſe openings being intended only for this purpoſe, and the other being alſo uſed to go in and out by, with the aſſiſtance of a ladder, or rather a poſt, in which ſteps are cut. In ſome of the houſes there is another entrance below, but this is rather uncommon. Round the ſides and ends of the habitations, the families, ſeveral of which dwell together, have their ſeparate apartments, where they ſleep, and ſit at work; not on benches, but in a ſort of concave trench, dug entirely round the inſide of the houſe, and covered with mats, ſo that this part is kept pretty clean and decent. The ſame cannot be ſaid of the middle of the houſe, which is common to all the families. For, though it is covered with dry graſs, it is a receptacle for every kind of dirt, and the place where the urine trough ſtands; the ſtench of which is by no means improved by raw hides, or leather, being almoſt continually ſteeped in it. Behind, and over the trench, they place the few effects that they have in their poſſeſſion, ſuch as their mats, ſkins, and apparel. Their furniture conſiſts of buckets, cans, wooden bowls, ſpoons, matted baſkets, and ſometimes a Ruſſian kettle or pot. All theſe utenſils are made in a very neat manner; and yet we obſerved no other tools among them than the knife and the hatchet; that is, a ſmall flat piece of iron, made like an adze, by fixing it into a crooked wooden handle.

Though the Ruſſians live among theſe people, we found much leſs iron in poſſeſſion of the latter, than we had met with among other tribes on the neighbouring continent of America, who had never ſeen the Ruſſians, nor perhaps had any intercourſe with them. Probably a few beads, and a ſmall quantity of tobacco and ſnuff, purchaſe all they have to ſpare. There are few of them that do not both ſmoke and chew tobacco, and take ſnuff. They did not appear to be very deſirous of more iron, or to want any other inſtruments, except ſewing needles, their own being formed of bone. With theſe they ſew their canoes, and make their clothes, and alſo work very curious embroidery. They uſe, inſtead of thread, the fibres of ſinews, which they ſplit to the thickneſs which is required. All ſewing is performed by the females. They are the ſhoe-makers, taylors, and boat-builders, or boat-coverers; for the men, in all probability, conſtruct the wooden frame, over which the ſkins are ſewed. They manufacture mats, and baſkets of graſs, which are both ſtrong and beautiful. There is, indeed, a neatneſs and perfection in moſt of their work, that ſhews they are neither deficient in ingenuity nor perſeverance. We did not obſerve a fire-place in any one of their habitations. They are lighted, as well as heated, by lamps; which, though ſimple, effectually anſwer the purpoſe for which they are intended. They conſiſt of a flat ſtone, hollowed on one ſide like a plate; in the hollow part they put the oil, mixed with ſome dry graſs, which ſerves for a wick. Both ſexes often warm themſelves over one of theſe lamps, by placing it between their legs, under their garments, and ſitting thus over it for ſeveral minutes. Theſe people produce fire both by colliſion and attrition; the firſt by ſtriking two ſtones againſt each other, on one of which a quantity of brimſtone has been previouſly rubbed. The latter method is performed by means of two pieces of wood, one of which is flat, and the other is a ſtick of the length of about a foot and a half. They preſs the pointed end of the ſtich upon the other piece, whirling it nimbly round as a drill, and thus fire is procured in a few minutes. This method is common in many countries. It is not only practiſed by theſe people, but alſo by the Kamtſchadales, the Greenlanders, the Otaheiteans, the New Hollanders, and the Brazilians, and probably by other nations. Some men of learning and genius have founded an argument on this cuſtom, to prove that this and that nation are of the ſame extraction. But caſual agreements, in a few particular inſtances, will not wholly authorize ſuch a concluſion; nor, on the other hand, will a diſagreement, either in manners or cuſtoms, between two

differen

different nations, prove of courſe that they are of different extraction. We ſaw no offenſive, nor even defenſive weapon among the natives of Oonalaſhka. It can ſcarcely be ſuppoſed that the Ruſſians found them in ſuch a defenceleſs ſtate; it is rather to be imagined, that, for their own ſecurity, they have diſarmed them. Political motives, likewiſe, may have induced the Ruſſians not to permit theſe iſlanders to have any large canoes; for we can hardly believe they had none ſuch originally, as we found them among all their neighbours. However, we obſerved none here except two or three that belonged to the Ruſſians.

The canoes in uſe among the natives are ſmaller than any of thoſe we had ſeen upon the coaſt of America, from which, however, they differ but little in their conſtruction. The form of theſe terminates ſomewhat abruptly; the head is forked, and the upper point of the fork projects without the under one, which is level with the ſurface of the water. It is remarkable that they ſhould thus conſtruct them, for the fork generally catches hold of every thing that comes in the way; to prevent which, they fix a piece of ſmall ſtick from one point to the other. In other reſpects they build their canoes after the manner of thoſe of the Eſquimaux and Greenlanders; the frame being of ſlender laths, and the covering of the ſkins of ſeals. They are about twelve feet in length, eighteen inches in breadth in the middle, and twelve or fourteen inches in depth. They ſometimes carry two perſons, one of whom ſits in the ſeat, or round hole, which is nearly in the middle; and the other is ſtretched at full length in the canoe. Round this hole is a rim or hoop of wood, about which gut-ſkin is ſewed, which can be drawn together, or opened like a purſe, with leathern ſtrings fitted to the outer edge. The man ſits in this place, draws the ſkin tight about his body over his gut-frock, and brings the ends of the thongs, or purſe-ſtrings, tight round his wriſts; and it being cloſe round his neck, and the hood being drawn over his head, where his cap confines it, water cannot eaſily penetrate, either into the canoe, or to his body. If, however, any water ſhould find means to inſinuate itſelf, the boatman dries it up with a piece of ſpunge. He makes uſe of a double-bladed paddle, which is held with both hands in the middle, ſtriking the water firſt on one ſide, and then on the other, with a quick regular motion. Thus the canoe is impelled at a great rate, and in a direction perfectly ſtraight. In ſailing from Egoochſhak to Samganoodha, though our ſhip went at the rate of ſeven miles an hour, two or three canoes kept pace with her. Their implements for hunting and fiſhing lie ready upon their canoes, under ſtraps fixed for the purpoſe. They are all extremely well made of wood and bone, and are not very different from thoſe uſed by the Greenlanders. The only difference is in the point of the miſſile dart; which, in ſome that we ſaw at this iſland, does not exceed an inch in length; whereas thoſe of the Greenlanders, according to Crantz, are about eighteen inches long. Indeed theſe darts, as well as ſome others of their inſtruments, are extremely curious. Their darts are generally made of fir, and are about four feet in length. The bird, fiſh, or other animal is no ſooner ſtruck, than the pointed bone ſlips out of the ſocket, but remains fixed in its body by means of the barb. The dart then ſerves as a float to trace the animal, and alſo contributes to fatigue it conſiderably, ſo that it is eaſily taken. They throw theſe darts by the aſſiſtance of a thin piece of wood, twelve or fourteen inches long; the middle of this is ſlightly hollowed, for the better reception of the weapon; and at the termination of the hollow, which does not extend to the end, is fixed a ſhort pointed piece of bone, to prevent the dart from ſlipping. The other extremity is furniſhed with a hole for the reception of the fore-finger, and the ſides are made to coincide with the other fingers and thumb, in order to graſp with greater firmneſs. The natives throw theſe darts to the diſtance of eighty or ninety yards, with great force and dexterity. They are exceedingly expert in ſtriking fiſh, both in the ſea, and in rivers. They alſo uſe hooks and lines, nets and wears. The lines are formed of twiſted ſinews, and the hooks of bone.

Whales, porpoiſes, grampuſes, halibut, ſword-fiſh, ſalmon, trout, cod, ſoals, flat-fiſh, and ſeveral other ſorts, are found here; and there may be many more that we had not an opportunity of ſeeing. Salmon and halibut appear to be in the greateſt plenty; and on them the people of theſe iſles principally ſubſiſt; at leaſt, they were the only ſort of fiſh, except cod, that we obſerved to be laid up for their winter ſtore. Seals, and all that tribe of ſea animals, are not ſo numerous as they are in many other ſeas. Nor can this be thought ſurprizing, ſince there is hardly any part of the coaſt, on either continent, nor any of theſe iſlands, ſituate between them, but what is inhabited, and whoſe inhabitants hunt theſe animals for their food and clothing. Sea-horſes are, indeed, to be found in prodigious numbers about the ice; and the ſea-otter is ſcarce any where to be met with but in this ſea. An animal was ſometimes ſeen by us, that blew after the manner of whales. It had a head reſembling that of a ſeal. It was larger than that animal, and its colour was white, with dark ſpots interſperſed. This was perhaps the manati, or ſea-cow.

Water fowls are neither found here in ſuch numbers, nor in ſuch variety, as in the northern parts of the Atlantic Ocean. However there are ſome in theſe parts, that we do not recollect to have ſeen in other countries; particularly the alca monochroa of Steller, and a black and white duck, which we judge to be different from the ſtone-duck that Kraſheninikoff has deſcribed in his Hiſtory of Kamtſchatka. All the other birds we ſaw are mentioned by this author, except ſome which we obſerved near the ice; and the greateſt part of theſe, if not all, have been deſcribed by Martin, in his voyage to Greenland. It is ſomewhat extraordinary, that penguins, which are ſo frequently met with in many parts of the world, ſhould not be found in this ſea. Albatroſſes too are extremely ſcarce here. The few land birds ſeen by us are the ſame with thoſe of Europe; but there were probably many others which we had no opportunity of obſerving. A very beautiful bird was ſhot in the woods at Norton Sound; which, we underſtand, is ſometimes found in England, and known by the appellation of chatterer. Our people ſaw other ſmall birds there, but in no great abundance or variety; ſuch as the bullfinch, the wood-pecker, the yellow-finch, and tit-mouſe.

Our excurſions and obſervations being confined to the ſea coaſt, we cannot be expected to have much knowledge of the animals or vegetables of the country. There are few other inſects beſides muſquitoes, and we ſaw few reptiles except lizards. There are no deer at Oonalaſhka, or any of the neighbouring iſlands; nor are there any domeſtic animals, not even dogs. Weaſels and foxes were the only quadrupeds we obſerved; but the natives told us, that they had likewiſe hares, and the marmottas mentioned by Kraſheninikoff. Hence it appears, that the inhabitants procure the greateſt ſhare of their food from the ſea and rivers. They are alſo indebted to the ſea for all the wood which they uſe for building, and other neceſſary purpoſes; as there is not a tree to be ſeen growing upon any of the iſlands, nor upon the neighbouring coaſt of the continent. The ſeeds of plants are ſaid to be conveyed, by various means, from one part of the world to another; even to iſlands lying in the midſt of extenſive oceans, and far diſtant from any other lands. It is therefore remarkable, that there are no trees growing on this part of the American continent, nor upon any of the adjacent iſles. They are doubtleſs as well ſituated for receiving ſeeds, by the various ways we have heard of, as thoſe coaſts which have plenty of wood. Nature has, perhaps, denied to ſome ſoils the power of raiſing trees, without the aſſiſtance of art. With reſpect to the drift-wood, upon the ſhores of theſe iſlands, we have no doubt of its coming from America. For though there may be none on the neighbouring coaſt, a ſufficient quantity may grow farther up the country, which may be broken looſe by torrents in the ſpring, and brought down to the ſea; and not a little may be conveyed from the woody coaſts, though ſituated at a more conſiderable diſtance. But plants are to be found in great variety at Oonalaſhka. Several of them are ſuch as we meet with in Europe, and alſo in Newfoundland, and other parts of America; and others of them, which are likewiſe found in Kamtſchatka, are eaten by the natives both there and here. Of theſe, Kraſheninikoff has favoured us with deſcriptions. The principal one is the Saranne, or lily root; which is about as large as a root of garlick, round, and compoſed of a number of ſmall cloves and grains. When boiled it ſomewhat reſembles ſaloop; the taſte of it is not diſagreeable. It does not appear to be in great abundance. Among the food of the natives we may reckon ſome other wild roots; the ſtalk of a plant not unlike angelica; and berries of different ſpecies, ſuch as cranberries, hurtle-berries, bramble-berries, and heath-berries; beſides a ſmall red berry, which, in Newfoundland, is denominated partridge berry; and another brown berry, with which we were unacquainted. This has ſomewhat of the taſte of a ſloe, but is different from it in every other reſpect. When eaten in a conſiderable quantity it is very aſtringent. Brandy may be diſtilled from it. Captain Clerke endeavoured to preſerve ſome; but they fermented, and became as ſtrong as if they had been ſteeped in ſpirits. There were ſeveral plants which were ſerviceable to us, but are not uſed either by the Ruſſians or natives, ſuch as wild purſlain, pea-tops, a kind of ſcurvy graſs, creſſes, and ſome others. On the low ground, and in the valleys is plenty of graſs, which grows very thick, and to a great length. Among the inhabitants, native ſulphur was ſeen, but we had no opportunity of learning where they got it. We found alſo ochre; a ſtone that gives a purple colour; and another that gives a very good green. In its natural ſtate it is of a greyiſh green colour, coarſe, and heavy. It diſſolves eaſily in oil, but it entirely loſes its properties when put into water. It ſeemed to be ſcarce in Oonalaſhka, but, we were told, it was in greater plenty in the iſland of Oonemak.

The inhabitants of Oonalaſhka bury their dead on the ſummits of hills, and raiſe a little hillock over their graves. There was one of theſe receptacles of the dead by the ſide of the road leading from the harbour to the village, over which was raiſed a heap of ſtones. It was obſerved that every one who paſſed it added one to it. In the country, we ſaw ſeveral ſtone hillocks, that ſeemed to have been raiſed by art; and many of them were apparently of great antiquity. Theſe people are remarkably chearful and friendly among each other; and always behaved with great civility to us. The Ruſſians told us, that they never had any connections with their women, becauſe they were not Chriſtians. Our people were not ſo ſcrupulous; and ſome of them had reaſon to repent that the females of Oonalaſhka encouraged their addreſſes without any reſerve; for their health ſuffered by a diſtemper that is not unknown here.

We have had occaſion to mention frequently, from the time of our arrival in Prince William's Sound, how remarkably the natives on this north-weſt ſide of America, reſemble the Greenlanders and Eſquimeaux, in various particulars of perſon, dreſs, weapons, canoes, and the like. We were, however, much leſs ſtruck with this, than with the affinity ſubſiſting between the dialects of the Greenlanders and Eſquimaux, and thoſe of Oonalaſhka and Norton's Sound. But we muſt obſerve, with reſpect to the words which were collected by us on this ſide of America, that too much ſtreſs is not to be laid upon their being accurately repreſented; for, after the death of Mr. Anderſon, we had few who took any great degree of pains about ſuch matters; and we have often found that the ſame word, written down by two or more perſons, from the mouth of the ſame native, differed conſiderably on being compared together. Nevertheleſs, enough is certain to authorize this judgment, that there is great reaſon to ſuppoſe, that all theſe nations are of the ſame extraction; and if that be the caſe, there is little doubt of there being a northern communication by ſea, between the weſtern ſide of America, and the eaſtern ſide, through Baffin's Bay; which communication, however, is perhaps effectually ſhut up againſt ſhips, by ice, and other obſtructions; ſuch, at leaſt, was Captain Cook's opinion at this time.

In theſe parts the tides are not very conſiderable, except in Cook's River. The flood comes from the S. or S. E. following the direction of the coaſt to the N. W. Between Cape Prince of Wales and Norton Sound we found a current ſetting towards the N. W. particularly off that Cape, and within Sledge Iſland. This current, however, extended but a little way from the coaſt, and was neither conſiſtent nor uniform. To the N. of Cape Prince of Wales, we obſerved neither tide nor current, either on the coaſt of America, or that of Aſia. This circumſtance gave riſe to an opinion, which ſome of our people entertained, that the two coaſts were connected either by land or ice; and that opinion received ſome degree of ſtrength, from our never having any hollow waves from the northward, and from our ſeeing ice almoſt the whole way acroſs. From the ſeveral obſervations made during our continuance in the harbour of Samganoodha, its latitude is 53 deg. 5 min. N. and its longitude 193 deg. 29 min. 45 ſec. E.

C H A P. XIII.

The Reſolution and Diſcovery take their departure from Samganoodha Harbour, in the iſland of Oonalaſhka—Sandwich Iſlands the appointed place of rendezvous—Paſs the iſland of Amoghta—The ſtrait between Oonalaſhka and Oonella repaſſed—Run to the South—One man killed, and others wounded, on board the Diſcovery—Mowee, one of the Sandwich iſlands deſcried—A viſit from a chief, named Terreeoboo—Another iſland, called Owhyhee, diſcovered—The crew refuſe to drink ſugar-cane liquor—The cordage in the navy and merchants ſervice compared—Favourable account of the natives of Owhyhee—The Reſolution gets to the windward of the iſland—Is joined by the Diſcovery—The two ſhips anchor in Karakakooa Bay, after it had been examined by Bligh—In the interim, multitudes of the iſlanders are ſeen, and viſits received from many of them—Karakakooa Bay deſcribed—The ſhips ſurrounded by the natives—Deſpotic authority of the chiefs over them—A viſit from Koah—The Morai at Kakooa deſcribed—Offering made to Captain Cook—Obſervatories erected—The ground on which they are placed tabooed—Method of curing meat in tropical climates.

ON Monday, the 26th of October, we ſailed from Samganoodha harbour, when, the wind being ſoutherly, we ſtood to the weſtward. The Commodore's intention was to proceed to Sandwich Iſlands, in order to paſs a few of the winter months there, if we ſhould meet with the neceſſary refreſhments, and then direct our courſe to Kamtſchatka, ſo as to endeavour to arrive there by the middle of May, in the enſuing year. This being determined on, the Commodore delivered into the hands of Captain Clerke inſtructions how to proceed in caſe of ſeparation, Sandwich Iſlands being appointed for the firſt place of rendezvous; and for the ſecond, Petropaulowſka, in Kamtſchatka. Having got out of the harbour, the wind veered to the S. E. with which we were carried to the weſtern part of Oonalaſhka, by the evening. We had here the wind at S. and ſtretched to the weſtward. On Tueſday the 27th, at ſeven o'clock A. M. we wore, and ſtood to the E. The wind had now ſo greatly increaſed, as to reduce us to our three courſes. It blew in heavy ſqualls, accompanied with ſnow, hail, and rain. On the 28th, in the morning, Oonalaſhka bore S. E. four leagues diſtant. We now ſtood to the weſtward; but towards evening, the wind, after it had for a ſhort time abated, got inſenſibly to the N. E. increaſing to a very hard gale, accompanied with rain: we therefore ſteered firſt to the ſouthward, and then, as the wind inclined to the N. and N. W. more weſterly. On Thurſday the 26th, at half paſt ſix, A. M. land was deſcried, ſuppoſed to be the iſland of Amoghta. At eight, finding it not in our power to weather the iſland, we gave over plying, and bore away with the view of going to the N. of Oonalaſhka, not preſuming in ſo hard a gale of wind to attempt a paſſage to the S. E. of it. When we bore away, the land extended from E. by S. half S. to S. S. W. diſtant four leagues. Our lat. was 53 deg. 38 min. and our long. 191 deg. 17 min. which gives a very different ſituation to this iſland from that aſſigned to it upon the Ruſſian map; and Captain Cook was at a loſs to determine whether it was Amoghta or not; but on the chart, Krenitzen's and Levaſheff's voyage, in 1768 and 1769, an iſland called Amuckta is laid down, not very far from the place here aſſigned to Amoghta by Captain Cook. As we were ſteering to the N. E. at 11 o'clock we diſcovered a rock, elevated like a tower, bearing N. N. E. about four leagues diſtant, and ſituated in lat. 53 deg. 57 min. long. 191 deg. 2 min. This rock is not marked in the Ruſſian map, produced by Iſmyloff; yet it has a place in the chart of Krenitzen's and Levaſheff's voyage. That chart alſo agrees with Captain Cook's, as to the general poſition of this group of iſlands. The ſingularly indented ſhores of the iſland of Oonalaſhka, are repreſented in both charts nearly alike. Theſe circumſtances are worthy of notice, as the more modern Ruſſian maps of this Archipelago are ſo exceedingly erroneous. At three in the afternoon we had in view Oonalaſhka; upon which we ſhortened ſail, and hauled the wind, being unable to run through the paſſage before night. Friday, the 20th, we had a very hard gale at W. N. W. with heavy ſqualls and ſnow, inſomuch that we were compelled to bear away under courſes, and cloſe-reefed top-ſails. At noon, we were about the middle of the ſtrait, between Oonalaſhka and Oonella, the harbour of Samganoodha, bearing S. S. E. one league diſtant. At three o'clock, P. M. we were through the ſtrait, and clear of the iſles, Cape Providence bearing W. S. W. diſtant three leagues.

On Sunday, the 1ſt of November, the wind was favourable, and we ſtood to ſea. The weather was fairer than it had been at any time ſince we cleared Samganoodha Harbour, at it is called by the Ruſſians, or Providence Bay, as it was named by Captain Cook. On the 2d, the wind was at S. and, in the evening, blew a violent ſtorm, which occaſioned us to bring to. Several guns were fired by the Diſcovery, which we immediately anſwered. We loſt ſight of her at eight o'clock; nor did ſhe join us till ten the next morning, being the 3d. On Saturday the 7th, in lat. 42 deg. 12 min. long. 201 deg. 26 min. E. a ſhag, or cormorant, flew often round the ſhip. As it is not common for theſe kind of birds to go far from land, we concluded there might be ſome at no great diſtance, though we did not diſcover any. Having but little wind, Captain Clerke came on board with ſome melancholy intelligence. He informed us, that the ſecond night after we had departed from Providence Bay, or Samganoodha, the main-tack of the Diſcovery gave way, by which accident John Mackintoſh, ſeaman, was ſtruck dead, and the boatſwain, with three other mariners, much wounded. He added, that on the 3d, his ſhip having ſprunk a leak, and the rigging received conſiderable damage, he fired ſome guns as a ſignal for the Reſolution to bring to. On the 8th we were favoured with a gentle breeze at N. attended with clear weather. On the 9th, we had eight hours calm; to which ſucceeded a wind from the S. accompanied with fair weather. Such of our people as could handle a needle, were now employed to repair the ſails; and the carpenters were directed to put the boats in order. Thurſday, the 12th, we obſerved in lat. 38 deg. 14 min. long. 206 deg. 17 min. The wind returned back to the northward; and on Sunday the 15th, in lat. 33 deg. 30 min. it veered to the E. We now ſaw a tropic bird, and a dolphin, the firſt we had obſerved in our paſſage. On Tueſday, the 17th, the wind was ſouthward, at which point it remained till the 19th, in the afternoon, when it was ſuddenly brought round by the W. to the N. The wind increaſed to a very ſtrong gale, and brought us under double-reefed top-ſails. We were now in lat. 32 deg. 26 min. long. 207 deg. 30 min. E. In lowering the main top-ſail, in order to reef it, the violence of the wind tore it out of the foot-rope, and it was ſplit in ſeveral parts. We got, however, another top-ſail to the yard the next morning. This gale proved to be the forerunner of the trade-wind, which, in lat. 25 deg. veered to the E. and E. S. E. We ſteered to the ſouthward till Wedneſday, the 25th, when we were in lat. 20 deg. 55 min. On the 26th, at day-break, we diſcovered land, extending from S. S. E. to W. At eight o'clock we ſtood for it, when it extended from S. E. half S. to W. the neareſt part being about two leagues diſtant. We now perceived that our diſcovery of the group of Sandwich iſlands had been very imperfect, thoſe which we had viſited in our progreſs northward, all lying to the leeward of our preſent ſtation. An elevated hill appeared in the country, whoſe ſummit roſe above the clouds. The land from this hill fell in a gradual ſlope, terminating in a ſteep rocky coaſt: the ſea breaking againſt it in a moſt dreadful ſurf. Unable to weather the iſland, we bore up, and ranged to the weſtward. We now perceived people on many parts of the ſhore; alſo ſeveral houſes and plantations. The country appeared to be well ſupplied with wood and water, and running ſtreams were ſeen in various places, falling into the ſea. It being of the utmoſt importance to procure a ſupply of proviſions at theſe iſlands, which could not be accompliſhed, ſhould a free trade with the natives be permitted; for this reaſon, the Commodore publiſhed an order, prohibiting all perſons on board the ſhips from trading, except thoſe that ſhould be appointed by himſelf and Captain Clerke; and even theſe were under limitations of trading only for proviſions and refreſhments. Injunctions were alſo laid againſt admitting women into the ſhips, under certain reſtrictions; but the evil intended to have been prevented by this regulation, had already got amongſt them. At noon, the coaſt extended from S. 81 deg. E. to N. 56 deg. W. A low flat, like an iſthmus, bore S. 42 deg. W. the neareſt ſhore being four miles diſtant. Our lat. was now 20 deg. 59 min. our long. 203 deg. 50 min. E. Some canoes came off, and when along-ſide, many of thoſe who were in them, entered the ſhip without heſitation. We ſoon perceived that they were of the ſame nation as thoſe iſlanders more to the leeward, whom we had already viſited; and, as we underſtood, they were no ſtrangers to our having been in thoſe parts before. It was indeed too evident; theſe people having got the venereal diſeaſe among them, which they probably contracted by an intercourſe with their neighbours, after we had left them. Our viſitors ſupplied us with a quantity of cuttle-fiſh, in exchange for nails and iron. They brought but a ſmall quantity of fruit or roots, but ſaid they had plenty of them on their iſland, as well as of hogs and fowls. The horizon being clear, in the evening, we ſuppoſed the weſternmoſt land that we could ſee to be an iſland, diſtinct from that off which we now were. Expecting the natives would return the next day, with the produce of their iſland, we plied off the whole night, and ſtood cloſe in ſhore the next morning. We were at firſt viſited by a few only, but towards noon numbers of them appeared, bringing with them potatoes, taro, bread-fruit, plantains, and ſmall pigs; all of which were bartered for iron tools and nails, we having few other articles to give them. We made mutual exchanges till four in the afternoon, at which time they had diſpoſed of all their cargoes, and not expreſſing any inclination to fetch more, we immediately made ſail.

On Monday, the 30th, in the afternoon, being off the N. E. end of the iſland, ſome more canoes came off. Moſt of theſe belonged to Terreeoboo, a chief, who came in one of them. He made the Commodore a preſent of three pigs; and we procured a little fruit by bartering with his people. In about two hours they all left us, except ſeven perſons who choſe to remain on board. Soon after, a double ſailing canoe arrived to attend upon them, which we towed aſtern the whole night. In the evening another iſland was ſeen to the windward, called, by the natives, Owhyhee. That which we had been off for ſome days, was called Mowee.

On Tueſday, the 1ſt of December, at eight o'clock A. M. Owhyhee extended from S. 22 deg. E. to S. 12 deg. W. and Mowee from N. 41 deg. to N. 81 deg. W. Perceiving we could fetch Owhyhee, we ſtood for it, when our viſitors from Mowee thought proper to embark in their canoes, and went aſhore. We ſpent the night, ſtanding off and on the north ſide of Owhyhee. On the 2nd, in the morning, to our great ſurprize, we ſaw the ſummits of the mountains covered with ſnow. Though they were not of an extraordinary height, the ſnow, in ſome places, appeared to be of conſiderable depth, and to have remained there ſome time. As we drew near the ſhore ſome of the natives approached us, who appeared a little ſhy at firſt; but we prevailed on ſome of them to come on board; and at length prevailed on them to return to the iſland to bring us ſuch refreſhments as we wanted. After theſe had reached the ſhore, we had plenty of company, who brought us a tolerable ſupply of pigs, fruit, and roots. We traded with them till ſix in the evening, when we ſtood off, in order to ply to windward round the iſland. In the evening of the 4th, an eclipſe of the moon was obſerved. Mr. King uſed, for the purpoſe of obſervation, a night-teleſcope, with a circular aperture at the object end. The Commodore obſerved with the teleſcope of one of Ramſden's ſextants. The mean of their obſervations made our longitude to be 204 deg. 35 min. E. Sunday, the 6th, in the evening, being near the ſhore, and five leagues farther up the coaſt, we again traded with the natives; but receiving only a trifling ſupply, we ſtood in the next morning, when the number of our viſitors was conſiderable. We had now procured pork, fruit, and roots, ſufficient to ſerve us four or five days; we, therefore, made ſail, and ſtill plied to the windward. Among other ſtores, the Commodore had procured a great quantity of ſugar-cane; and having, upon trial, diſcovered, that a decoction of it made very palatable liquor, he ordered ſome of it to be brewed for our ſhip's ſervice; but on broaching a caſk thereof, not one of the crew would even taſte it. Captain Cook having no other motive in preparing this beverage, than that of preſerving our ſpirits for a colder climate, neither exerted his authority, nor had recourſe to perſuaſion, to induce them to drink it, well knowing that, ſo long as we could be plentifully ſupplied with other vegetables, there was no danger of the ſcurvy. But that he might not have his intention fruſtrated, he ordered that no grog ſhould be ſerved in either of the two ſhips. The Commodore and his officers continued to drink this ſugar-cane beer, whenever materials could be procured for brewing it. Some hops, which we had on board improved it much; and, it was, doubtleſs, extremely wholeſome; though our inconſiderate crew, could not be perſuaded, but it muſt be injurious to their health. About the beginning of this month, the crew of the Diſcovery being much in want of proviſions, Captain Clerke, againſt his inclination, was under the neceſſity of ſubſtituting ſtock fiſh in the room of beef; but they were no ſooner well in with the land, than they were viſited by many of the inhabitants, who came off in their canoes, with all ſorts of proviſions, which their iſland afforded; and every man had leave to purchaſe what he could for his own indulgence. This diffuſed a joy among the mariners that is not eaſy to be expreſſed. From a ſullenneſs and diſcontent, viſible in every countenance, all was chearfulneſs, mirth and jollity. Freſh proviſions and kind females are the ſailors ſole delight; and when in poſſeſſion of theſe, paſt hardſhips are inſtantly forgotten; even thoſe whom the ſcurvy had attacked, and rendered almoſt lifeleſs, brightened up on this occaſion, and for the moment appeared alert. We muſt here obſerve, that innovations of whatever kind on board a ſhip, are ſure to meet with the diſapprobation of the ſeamen, though even to their advantage. Our portable ſoup and ſour krout were condemned, at firſt, as improper food for human beings. Few commanders have introduced more uſeful varieties of food and drink into their ſhips than Captain Cook has done: few others, indeed, have had the opportunities, or have been driven to the neceſſity of trying ſuch experiments. It was, nevertheleſs, owing to certain deviations from eſtabliſhed cuſtoms and practice, that he was enabled, in a great degree, to preſerve his people from the ſcurvy, a diſtemper that has often made more havock in peaceful voyages, than the enemy in military expeditions.

Sunday, the 13th, having hitherto kept at ſome diſtance from the coaſt, we now ſtood in, ſix leagues more to the windward; and, after trading with ſuch of the natives as came off to us, returned to ſea. On the 15th, it was our intention to approach the ſhore again, with the view of procuring a freſh ſupply of fruit and roots; but the wind being then at S. E. by S. and S. S. E. we embraced the opportunity of ſtretching to the eaſtward, in order to get round the S. E. end of the iſland. The wind continued at S. E. the greateſt part of the 16th; it was variable on the 17th, and on Friday the 18th, it was continually veering. Sometimes it blew in hard ſqualls; and, at other times, it was calm, with thunder, lightning, and rain. In the afternoon it was weſterly for a few hours, but it ſhifted, in the evening to E. by S. The S. E. point of the iſland now bore S. W. by S. five leagues diſtant. We expected to have weathered it, but, on Saturday, the 19th, at one o'clock, A. M. were left wholly at the mercy of a north-eaſterly ſwell, which drove us faſt towards the land; ſo that long before day-break, lights were ſeen upon the ſhore, which was then diſtant about a league. It was a dark night, with thunder, lightning, and rain. The calm was ſucceeded by a breeze from the S. E. by E. blowing in ſqualls with rain. We ſtood to the N. E. thinking it the beſt tack to clear the coaſt; but had it been day-light, we ſhould have choſen the other. At day-break, the coaſt extended from N. by W. to S. W. by W. about half a league diſtant; a moſt dreadful ſurf breaking upon the ſhore. We had certainly been in moſt imminent danger; from which we were not yet ſecure, the wind veering more eaſterly; ſo that for a conſiderable time, we were but juſt able to keep our diſtance from the coaſt. Our ſituation was rendered more alarming, by the leach-rope of the main-top-ſail giving way, in conſequence of which the ſail was rent in two; and the top-gallant-ſails gave way in the ſame manner, though not half worn out. We ſoon, however, got others to the yards, and left the land aſtern. The Diſcovery was at ſome diſtance to the north, entirely clear from the land; nor did ſhe appear in ſight till eight o'clock. Captain Cook here remarks, that the bolt ropes to our ſails are extremely deficient in ſtrength or ſubſtance. This, at different times, has been the ſource of infinite labour and vexation; and has occaſioned much loſs of canvas by giving way; from whence he concludes, that the cordage, canvas, and other ſtores, made uſe of in the navy, are inferior, in general, to thoſe uſed in the merchants ſervice. The Commodore alſo obſerves, an opinion prevails among all naval officers, that the King's ſtores are ſuperior to any others. They may be right, he admits, as to the quantity, but not as to the quality of the ſtores. This, indeed, he ſays, is not often tried; for theſe articles are uſually condemned, or converted to other uſes, before they are half worn out. Only ſuch voyages as ours afford an opportunity of making the trial; our ſituation being ſuch as to render it neceſſary to wear every thing to the extreme. Captain Cook in this compariſon of ſome cordage uſed in the King's ſervice, with what is uſed in that of the merchants, may, in part, be right; eſpecially in time of war, when part of the cordage wanted in the navy is, from neceſſity, made by contract. But it is well known, that there is no better cordage than what is made in the King's yards. This we aſſert, on the authority of a naval officer of diſtinguiſhed rank, and great profeſſional ability, who has, at the ſame time, recommended it as a neceſſary precaution, that ſhips fitted out on diſcovery, ſhould be furniſhed with no cordage but what is made in the King's yards; and, indeed, that every article of their ſtores, of every kind, ſhould be the beſt that can be made.

When day-light appeared, the natives aſhore diſplayed a white flag, we imagined, as a ſignal of peace and friendſhip. Many of them ventured out after us; but as the wind freſhened, and we were unwilling to wait, they were left preſently aſtern. In the afternoon we made another attempt to weather the eaſtern extreme; in which we failed. Indeed, our getting round the iſland was a matter of no importance, for we had ſeen the extreme of it to the S. E. which was all the Commodore deſired; the natives having informed us, that there was no other iſland to the windward of this. But as we were ſo near accompliſhing our deſign, we did not entirely abandon the idea of weathering it, and continued to ply. On Sunday, the 20th, at noon, the S. E. point bore S. diſtant three leagues. The ſnowy hills bore W. N. W. and we were within four miles of the neareſt ſhore. In the afternoon we were viſited by ſome of the inhabitants, who came off in their canoes, bringing with them pigs and plantains: the latter were highly acceptable, we having been without vegetables for ſome days; but this ſupply was ſcarcely ſufficient for one day; we therefore ſtood in the next morning, till within about four miles of the land, when a number of canoes came off, laden with proviſions. The people continued trading with us till four o'clock in the afternoon, at which time having obtained a good ſupply, we made ſail, ſtretching off to the northward. In our intercourſe with the people of this iſland, we met with leſs reſerve and ſuſpicion, than we had ever experienced among any of the Indian tribes. They frequently ſent up into the ſhip, the articles they meant to barter, and afterwards came in themſelves, to traffic on the quarter deck. The inhabitants of Otaheite, whom we ſo often viſited, had not that confidence in our integrity. It is but juſtice to obſerve, that the natives of Owhyhee never attempted to over-reach us in exchanges, nor to commit a ſingle theft. They perfectly underſtood trading, and clearly comprehended the reaſon of our plying upon the coaſt: for though they brought off plenty of pigs, and other proviſions, they were particular in keeping up the price, and rather than diſpoſe of them at what they thought under the value, they would carry them to ſhore again.

Tueſday, the 22nd, at eight o'clock A. M. we tacked to the ſouthward. At noon, in lat. 20 deg. 28 min. 30 ſec. the ſnowy peak bore S. W. half S. the preceding day we had a good view of it, and the quantity of ſnow ſeemed to have increaſed, and to extend lower down the hill. We ſtood to the S. E. till midnight, when we tacked till four. We had hopes of weathering the iſland, and ſhould have ſucceeded, if a calm had not enſued, and left us to the mercy of a ſwell, which impelled us towards the land, from which we were not above the diſtance of two leagues. Some light puffs of wind, however, took us out of danger. As we lay in this ſituation, ſome iſlanders came off with hogs, fowls, and fruit. From one of the canoes we got a gooſe, little larger than a Muſcovy duck. The colour of its plumage was dark grey; the bill and legs were black. Having purchaſed what the natives had brought off, we made ſail, and ſtretched to the north. At midnight we tacked and ſtood to the S. E. in order to examine the weathermoſt ſide of the iſland, where, we were told, there was a ſafe harbour. In this attempt the Diſcovery had her main-top-maſt ſtay-ſail ſplit, and by continuing ſtanding to the north, ſhe loſt ſight of our ſhip, the Reſolution. Heavy complaints again prevailed among her company. The weather continuing tempeſtuous, their ſufferings on this account, from inceſſant labour, and ſcanty of proviſions, were grown confeſſedly grievous. Their grog, that had been ſtopped at our arrival on the coaſt, was now dealt to them as uſual, and it was only by the kindeſt treatment from their officers, that the men could be kept to their duty. On Thurſday the 24th, at day-light, ſhe was not in ſight, but, at this time, the weather being hazy, we thought ſhe might be following us. At noon we obſerved in lat. 19 deg. 55 min. and in long. 205 deg. 3 min. the S. E. point of the iſland bearing S. by E. ſix leagues diſtant; the other extreme bore N. 60 deg. W. when we were two leagues from the neareſt ſhore. In the evening at ſix o'clock, the ſouthermoſt part of the iſland bore S. W. the neareſt ſhore being ſeven miles diſtant. We had, therefore, now ſucceeded in our endeavours, in getting to the windward of the iſland. The Diſcovery was not yet in ſight, but as the wind was favourable for her to follow us, we expected ſhe would ſhortly join us. We, therefore, kept cruiſing off this point of the iſland, till Captain Clerke was no longer expected here. It was at length conjectured, that he was gone to leeward, in order to meet us that way, not having been able to weather the N. E. part of the iſland. Keeping generally at the diſtance of from five to ten leagues from the land, one canoe only came off to us till the 28th, when about a dozen appeared, bringing, as uſual, the produce of the iſland. We were concerned that the people had been at the trouble of coming, as we could not poſſibly trade with them, not having yet conſumed our former ſtock; and we were convinced by experience, that the hogs could not be kept alive, nor the roots be many days preſerved from putrefaction. It was our intention, however, not to leave this part of the iſland before we had procured a good ſupply, knowing we could not eaſily return to it, if it ſhould hereafter be found expedient ſo to do. On Wedneſday the 30th, we began to be in want, but a calm prevented us from approaching the ſhore. A breeze, however, ſprung up at midnight, which enabled us to ſtand in for land, at day-break, of the 31ſt. At ten o'clock A. M. the iſlanders viſited us, bringing with them a quantity of fruit and roots, but only three ſmall pigs. This ſcanty ſupply was, perhaps, owing to our not having purchaſed what they lately brought off: yet, for the purpoſes of traffic, we brought to, but were interrupted ſhortly with an exceſſive rain; and, indeed, we were too far from the ſhore; nor could we venture to go nearer, as we could not, for a moment, depend upon the wind's continuing where it was. The ſwell too was extremely high, and ſet obliquely upon the ſhore, where it broke in a moſt frightful ſurf. We had fine weather in the evening, and paſſed the night in making boards.

A. D. 1779.

On Friday, the 1ſt of January, the atmoſphere was laden with heavy clouds; and the New Year was uſhered in with a heavy rain. We had a light breeze ſoutherly, with ſome calms. At ten the rain ceaſed, the ſky became clear, and the wind freſhened. Being, now about four or five miles from the ſhore, ſome canoes arrived with hogs, fruit, and roots. We traded till three in the afternoon; when, being pretty well ſupplied, we made ſail, in order to proceed to the lee ſide of the iſland, in ſearch of the Diſcovery. We ſtretched to the eaſtward till midnight, when the wind favoured us, and we went upon the other tack. The 2nd, 3d, and 4th, we paſſed in running down the S. E. ſide of the iſland, ſtanding off and on during the nights, and employing part of each day in lying to, in order to give the natives an opportunity of trading with us. They frequently came off, at the diſtance of five leagues from the ſhore; but never brought much with them, either from a fear of loſing their articles in the ſea, or from the uncertainty of a market. On Tueſday the 5th, in the morning, we paſſed the ſouth point of the iſland, in lat. 18 deg. 54 min. beyond which the coaſt trends N. 60 deg. W. A large village is ſituated on this point, many of whoſe inhabitants thronged off to the ſhip with hogs and women. The latter could not poſſibly be prevented from coming on board; and they were leſs reſerved than any females we had ever ſeen. Indeed, they ſeemed to have viſited us with no other view than to make a tender of their perſons. Having obtained a quantity of ſalt, we purchaſed only ſuch hogs as were large enough for ſalting; refuſing all thoſe that were under ſize: and we could ſeldom procure any that exceeded the weight of 60 pounds. Happily for us, we had ſtill ſome vegetables remaining, as we were now ſupplied with but few of thoſe productions. Indeed, from the appearance of this part of the country, it ſeemed incapable of affording them. Evident marks preſented themſelves of its having been laid waſte by the exploſion of a volcano; and though we had not ſeen any thing of the kind, yet the devaſtation it had made, in the neighbourhood, was very viſible. The natives having now left us, we run a few miles down the coaſt in the evening, and paſſed the night in ſtanding off and on. The next morning, being Thurſday the 7th, we were again viſited by the natives. Being not far from the ſhore, Captain Cook ſent Mr. Bligh, in a boat, in order to ſound the coaſt, and alſo to go aſhore, in ſearch of freſh water. On his return, he reported, that, within two cables length of the ſhore, he found no ſoundings with a line of 160 fathoms; that, on the land, he could diſcover no ſtream or ſpring; that there was ſome rainwater in holes, upon the rocks, which the ſpray of the ſea had rendered brackiſh; and, that the whole country was compoſed of ſlags and aſhes, interſperſed with a few plants. Between ten and eleven, to our great ſatisfaction, the Diſcovery made her appearance, coming round the ſouth point of the iſland, and joined us about one. Captain Clerke came on board, and acquainted us, that having cruiſed four or five days where we were ſeparated, he plied round the eaſt ſide of the iſland; where meeting with tempeſtuous weather, he had been driven from the coaſt. He had one of the iſlanders on board all this time, who had refuſed to leave the ſhip, though opportunities had been in his favour. At noon we obſerved in lat. 19 deg. 1 min. long. 203 deg. 26 min. the neareſt part of the coaſt being two leagues diſtant. On the 8th, at day-break, we perceived, that while we were plying in the night, the current had carried us back conſiderably to the windward; and that we were now off the S. W. point of the iſland, where we brought to, in order to enable the inhabitants to trade with us. We ſpent the night in ſtanding off and on. Four men and ten women, who came on board the preceding day, were with us ſtill. The Commodore not liking the company of the latter, we ſtood in ſhore on the 9th, about noon, ſolely with the view of getting rid of our gueſts; when ſome canoes coming off, we embraced the opportunity of ſending them away.

On Sunday the 10th, in the morning, we had light airs from the N. W. and calms; at eleven, the wind freſhened at N. N. W. which ſo greatly retarded us, that, in the evening, at eight o'clock, the ſouth ſnowy hill bore 1 deg. 30 min. E. On the 17th, at four o'clock, A. M. the wind being at W. we made for the land, in expectation of getting ſome refreſhments. The natives ſeeing us ſo near them, began to come off, and we continued trading with them the whole day: though we procured but a very ſcanty ſupply, many of thoſe who came off in their canoes not having a ſingle thing to barter. From this circumſtance, it appeared that this part of the iſland was extremely poor, and had already furniſhed us with every thing they could ſpare. Tueſday the 12th was employed in plying off and on, with a freſh gale at weſt. A mile from the ſhore we found ground, at the depth of 55 fathoms. At five o'clock P. M. we ſtood to the ſouthward, and at midnight we had a calm. On the 13th, we had a ſmall breeze at S. S. E. and ſteered for the land. A few canoes came off to us with ſome hogs; but they brought no vegetables, which we now much wanted. In the evening, we had got the length of the S. W. point of the iſland, but, by the veering of the wind, we loſt in the night all that we had gained in the day. Being in the ſame ſituation on the 14th, in the morning, ſome more canoes attended us; but they brought not any articles we ſtood in need of. We were now deſtitute of fruit and roots, and therefore obliged to have recourſe to our ſea proviſions. Several canoes, at this juncture, arrived from the northward, from whence we were ſupplied with ſome hogs and roots. On Friday, the 15th, we had variable light airs till five in the afternoon, when a breeze ſprung up at E. N. E. and enabled us to ſteer along ſhore to the northward. This day the weather was remarkably fine, and we had plenty of company; many of them continued with us all night, and their canoes were towed aſtern. On the 16th, at day-break, ſeeing the appearance of a bay, the boats from both ſhips were ſent out to examine it; for we were informed there was a harbour, wherein we might ſafely moor, and where we ſhould be ſupplied with materials to refit the ſhips, and proviſions to victual them. In the evening the boats returned with the joyful news, that they had ſucceeded in their ſearch, and that the harbour promiſed fair to anſwer all that had been ſaid of it. While our boats were employed in towing the ſhips into the bay, we had a view of the greateſt number of ſpectators in canoes, and on ſhore, that we had ever ſeen aſſembled together in any place during this voyage. It was concluded that their number could not be leſs than 2 or 3000. While hovering on the coaſt, we had ſometimes been viſited by 200 canoes at a time, who came to trade, and who brought us proviſions when the weather would permit: we likewiſe obtained from them great quantities of cordage, ſalt, and divers other manufactures of the iſland, which the Commodore purchaſed for the uſe of the ſhips, and without which we could not well have proceeded; for during the blowing weather, our cordage ſnapped rope after rope, ſo that our ſpare hands were employed inceſſantly, in knotting and ſplicing. In the courſe of this day, we were attended by, at leaſt, 1000 canoes, crouded with people, and laden with hogs, and other articles to barter. We were perfectly convinced of their peaceable intentions, not a ſingle perſon having a weapon of any ſort with him. Among ſuch numbers as we had frequently on board, it might be expected, that ſome of them would diſcover a thieviſh diſpoſition. One of them made off with a boat's rudder, and was not detected till it was too late to recover it. The Commodore imagined this to be a proper opportunity to ſhew theſe iſlanders the uſe of our fire arms. Two or three muſquets, and as many four pounders were, by his orders, fired over the canoe which went away with the rudder: but it not being our intention that the ſhot ſhould take effect, the ſurrounding multitude were more ſurprized than terrified. At the approach of night, the moſt conſiderable part of our viſitors retired to the ſhore; but many at their own earneſt requeſt, were permitted to ſleep on board: but we had good reaſon to think, that curioſity, at leaſt with ſome of them, was not the only motive; for the next morning ſeveral articles were miſſing, in conſequence of which orders were given, not to permit ſo many to ſtay with us on any future night. On Sunday the 17th, by eleven o'clock A. M. we were ſafely moored, in company with the Diſcovery, in 18 fathoms water. The bay where we lay at anchor, called by the natives Karakakooa, is a convenient harbour; and having ſuffered much in our maſts and rigging, we were happy at laſt to find ſo proper a place to refit. We caſt anchor within a quarter of a mile of the N. E. ſhore; the ſouth point of the bay bearing S. by. W. and the north point W. half N. After we were moored the ſhips continued to be much crouded with the natives, and ſurrounded by a vaſt multitude of them, beſides hundreds that, like fiſh, were ſwimming about the two ſhips. We were ſtruck with the ſingularity of this ſcene, and particularly pleaſed with enriching our voyage with this important new diſcovery, owing to the opportunity of thus reviſiting Sandwich Iſlands, and in conſequence of not having ſucceeded in finding a northern paſſage homeward.

The bay of Karakakooa is ſituated in the diſtrict of Akona, on the weſt ſide of the iſland of Owhyhee. It extends about a mile in depth, and is bounded by two points of land, bearing S. E. and N. W. from each other, at the diſtance of half a league. The north point is flat and barren, on which is ſituated the village of Kowrowa. A more conſiderable village ſtands at the bottom of the bay, called Kakooa, near a grove of ſtately cocoa-trees. A high rocky cliff, inacceſſible from the ſea ſhore, runs between them. Near the coaſt, on the ſouth ſide, the land has a rugged appearance;

ance; beyond which the country riſes gradually, and abounds with cultivated incloſures, and groves of cocoa-trees. The habitations of the people are ſcattered about in great plenty. Round the bay the ſhore is covered with a black coral rock, except at Kakooa, where there is an excellent ſandy beach, with a Morai at one extremity, and a ſpring of freſh water at the other. The natives perceiving our intention to anchor in the bay, came off, as we have before obſerved, in aſtoniſhing numbers, expreſſing their joy by ſinging, ſhouting, and the moſt extravagant geſtures. The decks, ſides, and rigging of our ſhips were covered with them. Women and boys, who were unable to procure canoes, amuſed themſelves the whole day in playing in the water. One of the chiefs who viſited us, was named Pareea. Though a young man, we ſoon diſcovered him to be a perſon of great authority. He told Captain Cook that he was Jakanee to the ſovereign of the iſland, who was then on a military expedition at Mowee; from whence he was expected to return in a few days. Some preſents from the Commodore attached him to our intereſt, and we found him extremely uſeful. Before we had been long at anchor, the Diſcovery had ſo many people hanging on one ſide, that ſhe was ſeen to heel conſiderably; and our people found it impoſſible to prevent the crowds from preſſing into her. Apprehenſive that ſhe might receive ſome injury, Captain Cook communicated his ſentiments to Pareea, who inſtantly cleared the ſhip of her incumbrances, and diſperſed the canoes with which ſhe was ſurrounded. From this circumſtance it appeared to us, that the chiefs of this iſland exerciſe a moſt deſpotic power over the commonalty. An inſtance ſimilar to this happened on board the Reſolution; where the crowd ſo far impeded the ordinary buſineſs of the ſhip, that we found it neceſſary to apply to Kaneena, another chief, who had alſo attached himſelf particularly to Captain Cook. The inconvenience we ſuffered was no ſooner mentioned, than he ordered the natives to quit the veſſel immediately; when, without a moment's heſitation, we ſaw them all jump overboard, except one perſon who loitered behind, and by his manner expreſſed ſome degree of unwillingneſs to obey. Kaneena obſerving this contempt of his authority, took hold of him immediately, and threw him headlong into the ſea. Theſe two chiefs were exceedingly well proportioned, and had countenances remarkably pleaſing. Kaneena was as fine a figure as we had ever ſeen. His height was about ſix feet, his features were regular and expreſſive, his deportment was eaſy, firm, and graceful, and he had lively dark eyes. Mention has already been made, that while we were cruiſing off this iſland, the inhabitants had acted fairly and honeſtly, without manifeſting the leaſt propenſity to theft; which was the more remarkable, becauſe thoſe with whom we had hitherto had any dealings were people of the loweſt rank, ſuch as fiſhermen and ſervants: but the caſe was now quite altered. The multitude of iſlanders who blocked up the ſhips, afforded an opportunity of pilfering without danger of diſcovery, and even if diſcovered, muſt have eſcaped with impunity from our inferiority of number. To the encouragement of their chiefs, this alteration might alſo be attributed; for, as we frequently traced the booty to ſome great men who had it in their poſſeſſion, there is little doubt but theſe depredations were made at their inſtigation. When the Reſolution had got into her ſtation, the two chiefs, Pareea, and Kaneena, brought a third on board, whoſe name was Koah. He was repreſented to us as a prieſt, and one who, in his early time of life, had diſtinguiſhed himſelf as a warrior. He was a little old emaciated figure, having ſore red eyes, and his body covered with a leprous ſcurf, occaſioned by the immoderate uſe of the ava. Being conducted to the cabin, he approached the Commodore with the greateſt deference, threw a piece of red cloth over his ſhoulders, and retreating a few paces, made an offering of a ſmall pig, at the ſame time pronouncing a diſcourſe of a conſiderable length. This ceremony, during our continuance at Owhyhee, was often repeated, and from a variety of circumſtances, appeared to us to be a kind of religious adoration. Red cloth is what their idols are arrayed with, and a pig is their common offering to the Eatooas. At the concluſion of this ceremony, Koah dined with us, and eat heartily of what was provided for the table; but, like moſt of the iſlanders in theſe ſeas, he could hardly be induced to taſte our wine or ſpirits a ſecond time. In the evening, the Commodore, Mr. King, and Mr. Bailey, accompanied him on ſhore. As ſoon as we landed on the beach, we were preceded by four men, bearing each a wand tipped with dog's-hair, and pronouncing with a loud voice, a ſhort ſentence. The crowd which had aſſembled on the ſhore, retired at our approach, and not an individual was to be ſeen, except a few perſons who had proſtrated themſelves on the ground, near the habitations of the adjacent village.

Previous to our account of the peculiar ceremonies reſpecting the homage paid to Captain Coook, it may not be unneceſſary to deſcribe the Morai, already mentioned, ſituated on the beach of Kakooa. It conſiſts of a ſquare ſolid pile of ſtones, 40 yards in length, 20 broad, and 14 feet high. The top of it is flat, and it is ſurrounded with a wooden railing, whereon are diſplayed the ſkulls of thoſe natives who had been ſacrificed on the death of their chiefs. A ruinous wooden building is ſituated in the center of the area, connected with the railing by a ſtone wall, dividing the whole ſpace into two parts. Five poles, about 20 feet high, ſupported an irregular kind of ſcaffold, on the ſide next the country; and on that towards the ſea, were two ſmall houſes, with a covered communication. To the top of this pile we were conducted by Koah. At our entrance we ſaw two large wooden images, with moſt diſtorted features, having a long piece of wood of a conical form, inverted, proceeding from the top of their heads. Here Captain Cook was received by a tall young man, having a long beard, who preſented him to the images, and chanted a kind of hymn, in which he was aſſiſted by Koah. We were then led to that ſide of the Morai where the poles were erected; at the foot of which 12 images were erected, and ranged in the form of a ſemicircle; the middle figure having a high table before it, like the Whatta of Otaheite, on which we ſaw a putrid hog, and under it ſome cocoa-nuts, plantains, potatoes, bread-fruit, and pieces of ſugar-cane. Captain Cook was conducted under this ſtand by Koah; who, having took down the hog, held it towards him; when having again addreſſed him in a long and vehement ſpeech, he ſuffered it to fall to the ground, and aſcended the ſcaffold with him, though every moment in danger of falling. We now beheld, advancing in ſolemn proceſſion, and entering the top of the Morai, ten men bearing a live hog, and a piece of red cloth of conſiderable dimenſions. Advancing a few paces they ſtopped, and proſtrated themſelves; and Kaireekeea, the tall young man already mentioned, approaching them, received the cloth, and carried it to Koah, who wrapped it round the Commodore, and made him an offering of the hog. The Commodore was now aloft, in a ſituation truly whimſical, being ſwathed in red cloth, and hardly able to keep his hold on the rotten ſcaffolding. In this ſituation he was entertained with the chanting of Koah and Kaireekeea, ſometimes alternately and ſometimes in concert. After this ſervice was performed, which was of conſiderable duration, Koah let the hog drop; upon which he immediately deſcended with Captain Cook. He then conducted him to the images juſt mentioned, to each of which he expreſſed himſelf in a ſneering tone, and ſnapped his fingers at them as he paſſed. He then preſented him to that in the centre, which, from its being habited in red cloth, appeared to be in the higheſt eſtimation. Before this figure Koah fell proſtrate, and requeſted of Captain Cook to do the ſame; which he readily ſubmitted to, being determined to follow Koah's directions throughout the whole of a ridiculous ceremony, in which his curioſity and vanity were equally gratified. We were now conveyed into the other diviſion of the Morai, where a ſpace of about 12 feet ſquare was ſunk three feet below the level of the area. When we had deſcended into this, the Commodore was ſeated immediately between the two idols, one of his arms being ſupported by Koah, and the other by Mr. King. A ſecond proceſſion of natives at this time arrived with a baked hog, a pudding, ſome cocoa-nuts, bread fruit, and other vegetables. As they drew near, Kaireekeea placed himſelf before them, and preſented the hog to the Commodore in the uſual manner, chanting as before; and his companions making regular reſponſes; but we obſerved their ſpeeches and reſponſes grew gradually ſhorter, and towards the concluſion, Kaireekeea's did not exceed three or four words, which was anſwered by the word Orono. This was a common appellation among the natives. Sometimes it was applied by them to an inviſible being, inhabiting heaven; at others it was uſed as a title of high rank in the iſland. At the concluſion of this offering, the natives ſeated themſelves fronting us, and began to cut up the baked hog, to break the cocoa nuts, and to peel the vegetables. Others were employing in chewing the ava, and making the liquor in the ſame manner as it is extracted and done at the Friendly Iſles. Kaireekeea then chewed part of the kernel of a cocoa-nut, and wrapped it in a piece of cloth, with which he rubbed the Captain's head, face, hands, arms and ſhoulders. The ava was afterwards handed round, and when we had all taſted it, Koah and Pareea pulled the fleſh of the hog in pieces, and proceeded to put ſome of it in our mouths. Mr. King had no particular objection to being fed by Pareea, who was remarkably cleanly in his perſon; but Captain Cook, to whom a piece was preſented by Koah, could not ſwallow a morſel, the putrid hog being ſtrong in his recollection; and as the old man, from motives of civility, had chewed it for him, his reluctance was much increaſed. This ceremony being concluded, we quitted the Morai, after diſtributing among the populace ſome pieces of iron, and other articles, with which they were much delighted. We were then conducted, in proceſſion, to the boats, the men with wands attending, and pronouncing ſentences as before. We returned on board full of the idea of what we had ſeen, and perfectly ſatisfied with the honeſt diſpoſitions of our new friends. Of the ſingularity and novelty of the various ceremonies performed upon this occaſion, we can only form conjectures; but they were, in our opinion, highly expreſſive of reſpect, on the part of the inhabitants; and, as far as related to Captain Cook, they approached to adoration. Indeed the Commodore now ſeemed to be conſidered by them as their E-a-thu-ah-nu-ch; for from this time an Indian Chief, by the king's order, was placed at the head of his pinnace, at whoſe command the natives, in their canoes, as he paſſed them, were all ſilent, and would proſtrate themſelves till he was out of ſight; and this they would do when the Captain was alone; but the chief had orders from the king, that whenever the Captain came aſhore in his pinnace, to attend him, and conduct him to his houſe, which the ſailors now called Cook's Altar.

On Monday, the 18th, Mr. King went on ſhore, attended with a guard of eight marines, having received orders to erect the obſervatory in a proper ſituation; by which means the waterers, and other working parties on ſhore, might be ſuperintended and protected. When we had found a convenient ſpot for this purpoſe, almoſt in the centre of the village, Pareea offered to exerciſe his power in our behalf, and propoſed that ſome houſes ſhould be taken, that our obſervations might not be obſtructed. This friendly offer, however, was declined, and we made choice of a potatoe field adjoining to the Morai, which was readily granted, and to prevent the intruſion of the natives, the place was conſecrated by the prieſts, who placed their wands round the wall which encloſed it. This interdiction the natives call taboo, a term frequently repeated by theſe iſlanders, and ſeemed to be a word of extenſive meaning. In this inſtance, it procured us more privacy than we could have wiſhed. Not any canoes attempted to land near us; the natives only ſat on the wall, not daring to come within the tabooed ſpace, without permiſſion from us. The men, indeed, at our requeſt, would bring proviſions into the field; but our utmoſt endeavours were ineffectual to induce the women to give us their company. Preſents were tried, but without ſucceſs. We endeavoured to prevail on Pareea and Koah to bring them: the Eatooa and Terreeoboo they ſaid would kill them if they did. This circumſtance afforded great amuſement to thoſe on board, whither multitudes of people, women particularly, flocked in ſhoals, inſomuch that they were frequently obliged to clear the veſſel, in order to have room to perform their neceſſary duties. Two or three hundred women were ſometimes obliged to throw themſelves into the water, where they continued to ſwim and play, till they could be re-admitted. On the 19th Pareea and Koah left us, in order to attend Terreeoboo, who had landed on a diſtant part of the iſland. Nothing material happened on board, till Sunday, the 24th. The caulkers were employed on the ſides of the ſhip, and the rigging was repaired. The ſalting of hogs was alſo a principal object of the Commodore's attention; and as we had improved in this operation ſince the former voyages, a detail here of the proceſs of it may not be thought improper. To cure the fleſh of animals in tropical climates, by ſalting, has long been thought impracticable; putrefaction making ſo rapid a progreſs, as not to allow the ſalt to take effect before the meat gets tainted. Captain Cook appears to have been the firſt navigator who has attempted to make experiments relative to this buſineſs. His firſt attempts in 1774, in his ſecond voyage to the Pacific Ocean, ſo far ſucceeded, as to convince him of the error of the vulgar opinion; and as his preſent voyage was likely to be protracted a year beyond the time that proviſions had been ſupplied for the ſhips, he was obliged to contrive ſome method of procuring ſubſiſtence for the crews, or relinquiſh the proſecution of his diſcoveries. He therefore renewed his attempts, and his moſt ſanguine expectations were completely anſwered. The hogs we cured were of various ſizes, from four to ten or twelve ſtone, fourteen pounds to the ſtone. They were always killed in the afternoon; and, after ſcalding off the hair, and removing the entrails, the pig or hog was cut into pieces, from four to eight pounds each, and the bones taken out of the legs and chines; in the larger hogs, the ribs were alſo taken out. The pieces were then examined circumſpectly, and wiped, and the coagulated blood taken from the veins. After this they were given to the ſalters before they were cold; and having been well rubbed with ſalt, they were placed in a heap on a ſtage in the open air, covered with planks, and preſſed with very heavy weights. The next evening they were again well wiped, and carefully examined, when the ſuſpicious parts were taken away. This done, they were put into a tub of ſtrong pickle; after which they were examined once or twice a day; and if it happened that any one piece had not taken the ſalt, which may be diſcovered by the ſmell of the pickle, they were inſtantly taken out and examined again, the ſound pieces being put into freſh pickle. This, however, did not often happen. At the end of ſix days, they were examined for the laſt time; and after being ſlightly preſſed, they were put into barrels, having a thin layer of ſalt between them. Mr. King brought home ſome barrels of this pork, that had been pickled at Owhyhee, in January, 1779, which was taſted in England, near Chriſtmas, 1780, by ſeveral gentlemen, who were all unanimous in their opinion, that it was perfectly ſound, ſweet and wholeſome food. We have been informed by Mr. Mancouver, a Midſhipman on board the Diſcovery, and afterwards Lieutenant of the Martin ſloop of war, that he tried the method here recommended, both with Engliſh and Spaniſh pork, during a cruiſe in the Spaniſh main, A. D. 1782, and it ſucceeded beyond his expectations.

CHAP. XIV.

Society of prieſts diſcovered by accident—Our reception by them—Mean artifice of Koah—Arrival of Terreeoboo, king of the iſland—The Bay tabooed on that occaſion—The inhabitants brought to obedience—A remarkable ceremony—Viſit from the king—Returned by Captain Cook—The civility of the natives, who are much addicted to thieving—Their readineſs in conducting one of our parties up the country—A boxing match deſcribed—Death of William Watman, a ſeaman—Behaviour of the prieſts at his funeral—The railing and images on the Morai purchaſed—The natives inquiſitive about our departure; and their opinion reſpecting the object of our voyage—Preſents from the king to Captain Cook—The Reſolution and Diſcovery quit the iſland; but the former being damaged by a gale of wind, they are obliged to return—The behaviour of the iſlanders on our coming again to anchor in Karakakooa Bay, ſomewhat myſterious—A theft committed on board the Diſcovery, and its conſequences—The thieves purſued up the country—Scuffle between the natives and our people—The pinnace attacked and plundered—The crew obliged to quit her—Captain Cook's reflections on the occaſion—Attempt made at the obſervatory—The Diſcovery's cutter ſtolen—Means uſed for its recovery—Captain Cook goes on ſhore to invite the king and his two ſons on board—His wife and the chiefs oppoſe his inclination to go with the Commodore—A conteſt ariſes on this occaſion—Intelligence arrives of a chief having been killed by one of our people—The alarming conſequences—A chief threatens Captain Cook, and is ſhot by him—A general attack enſues—The melancholy cataſtrophe—Our Commodore is ſtabbed in the back, and falls with his face into the water—This chapter concludes with the death of the able, enterprizing, and much lamented Commander, Captain James Cook.

WE had not long been ſettled at the obſervatory, before we diſcovered the habitations of a ſociety of prieſts, who had excited our curioſity by their regular attendance at the Morai. Their huts were erected round a pond, incloſed with a group of cocoa-nut trees, by which they were ſeparated from the beach and the village, and gave the ſituation an air of religious retirement. Captain Cook being made acquainted with this diſcovery, he reſolved to viſit them; and, expecting the manner of his reception would be ſingular, he took Mr. Webber with him, to enable him to repreſent the ceremony in a drawing. When arrived at the beach, the Commodore was conducted to Harreno-Orono, or the houſe of Orono. On his approaching this ſacred place, he was ſeated at the foot of a wooden idol, reſembling that we had ſeen at the Morai. Here Mr. King again ſupported one of his arms. He was then arrayed in red cloth, and Kaireekeea, aſſiſted by 12 prieſts, preſented a pig with the uſual ceremonies. After this ſolemnity, the pig was ſtrangled, and thrown into the embers of a fire, prepared for that purpoſe. When the hair was ſinged off, a ſecond offering was made, and the chanting repeated as before; after which the dead pig was held ſome time under Captain Cook's noſe, and then laid with a cocoa-nut at his feet. This part of the ceremony being concluded, the performers ſat down; and the ava was brewed and handed about: a baked hog was likewiſe brought in, and we were fed in the ſame manner as before related on a ſimilar occaſion. While we continued in the Bay, whenever the Commodore viſited the obſervatory, Kaireekeea and his aſſiſtants preſented themſelves before him, making an offering of hogs, bread-fruit, cocoa nuts, &c. with the accuſtomed ſolemnities. Upon theſe occaſions, ſome of the inferior chiefs intreated permiſſion to make an offering to the Orono. If their requeſt was complied with, they preſented the hog themſelves; in the performance of which, their countenances diſplayed that they were greatly impreſſed with awe and terror. Kaireekeea and the prieſts aſſiſted, performing their accuſtomed orations and hymns. But their civilities extended beyond parade and ceremony: our party on ſhore were ſupplied daily by them with hogs and vegetables, ſufficient for their ſubſiſtence, and to ſpare; and canoes laden with proviſions, were regularly ſent off to the ſhips. Nothing was demanded in return; not even the moſt diſtant hint was ever given, that they expected the leaſt compenſation. Their manner of conferring favours, appeared more like the diſcharge of a religious duty, than the reſult of mere liberality. On our aſking to whom we were indebted for all this munificence, we were informed, that it was at the expence of Kaoo, the chief prieſt, and grandfather to Kaireekeea, who was at this time in the ſuit of the ſovereign of the iſland. But we had leſs reaſon to be ſatisfied with the behaviour of the Earees, or warrior chiefs, than with that of the prieſts. In our intercourſe with the former, they were always ſufficiently attentive to their own intereſts; and, beſides their propenſity to ſtealing, which may admit of palliation from its univerſality in theſe ſeas, they had other artifices equally diſhonourable. The following is one inſtance, in which we diſcovered, with regret, that our good friend Koah was a party principally concerned. The chiefs who made us preſents of hogs, were always generouſly rewarded; in conſequence of which we were ſupplied with more than we could conſume. On theſe occaſions, Koah, who attended us conſtantly, petitioned uſually for thoſe that we did not abſolutely want, and they were given him of courſe. A pig was one day preſented to us by a man, whom Koah introduced as a chief. The pig we knew to be one of thoſe that had a ſhort time before been given to Koah. Suſpecting an impoſition, we found upon enquiry, that the pretended chief was one of the common people; and from other concurrent circumſtances, we were perfectly convinced, that this was not the firſt time of our having been made the dupes of Koah's low cunning.

Sunday, the 24th, we were not a little ſurprized to find, that not any canoes were permitted to put off, and that the natives were confined to their houſes. At length we were informed, that the Bay was tabooed, and that intercourſe with us was interdicted, on account of the arrival of Terreeoboo, their king. On the 25th, we endeavoured by threats and promiſes, to induce the inhabitants to reviſit the ſhips. Some of them were venturing to put off, when we perceived a chief very active in driving them away: to make him deſiſt, a muſquet was fired over his head, which produced the deſired effect; for refreſhments were ſoon after to be had as uſual. In the afternoon, the ſhips were privately viſited by Terreeoboo, attended only by one canoe, containing his wife and family. When he entered the ſhip, he fell on his face, as a mark of ſubmiſſion to the Commodore, as did all his attendants; and after having made an oration, which none of us underſtood, he preſented the Captain with three barbicued hogs, who, in return, put a necklace, compoſed of ſeveral ſtrings of various coloured beads, round his neck, and gave him two looking-glaſſes, a large glaſs bowl, with ſome nails, and other trifles, which he received with much ſeeming ſatisfaction, and diſpatched immediately a meſſenger on ſhore, who ſoon returned with ſeveral large hogs, cocoa-nuts, plantains, and ſugar-canes, as much as our ſmall cutter could carry. Having remained on deck about an hour, admiring the conſtruction of the ſhip, he was conducted into the great cabin, where wine was offered him, which he refuſed: neither was there any thing he would taſte, except a head of bread-fruit; but he appeared delighted with every thing he ſaw; and before he departed in the evening, gave us to underſtand that he had 6000 fighting men, always in readineſs to war againſt his enemies. On the 26th, at noon, the king came in great ſtate from the village of Kowrowa, and, in a large canoe, with ſome of his attendants in two others, paddled ſlowly towards the ſhips. Their appearance was really moſt ſuperb. Terreeoboo and his chiefs were in the firſt veſſel, arrayed in feathered cloaks, and helmets, and armed with ſpears and daggers. In the ſecond came Kaoo, the chief prieſt, having their idols diſplayed on red cloth. They were figures of an enormous ſize, made of thick wicker-work, and curiouſly ornamented with mantles of feathers of various colours. Their eyes were large pearl oyſters, with a black nut placed in the middle. A double row of the fangs of dogs was fixed in each of their mouths, which, as well as the reſt of their features, appeared ſtrangely diſtorted. The third canoe was laden with hogs and vegetables. Their images they call E-ah-tu-a, ſignifying their warrior gods, without which they never engage in battle. As they advanced, the prieſts chanted their hymns with great ſolemnity. After paddling round the veſſels, they did not come on board as we expected, but made immediately towards the ſhore, at the beach where our tents were fixed. When landed, they hauled up all their canoes on the beach, drew up in martial order, and, led by the king, marched in ranks to their place of worſhip, diſtant from our tents about 50 yards; but, ſeeing the ground tabooed by ſmall green boughs and wands, that marked the boundary, they all made a circuit with their images in proceſſion, till they arrived at their Morai, where they placed their idols, and depoſited their arms. Captain Cook, when he ſaw the king's intention of going on ſhore, went thither alſo, and landed with Mr. King and others, almoſt at the ſame inſtant. We uſhered the chiefs into our tent, and the king had hardly been ſeated, when he roſe up, and threw gracefully over the Captain's ſhoulders the rich feathered cloak that he himſelf wore, placed a helmet on his head, and preſented him with a curious fan. Five or ſix other cloaks, of great beauty and value, were ſpread at the Commodore's feet. Four hogs were now brought forward by the king's attendants, together with bread fruit, &c. Then followed the ceremony of Terreeoboo's changing names with Captain Cook; the ſtrongeſt pledge of friendſhip among all the iſlanders of the Pacific Ocean. A ſolemn proceſſion now advanced, conſiſting of prieſts, preceded by a venerable old perſonage, followed by a train of people leading large hogs; others being laden with potatoes, plantains, &c. We could perceive eaſily, by the countenance and the geſtures of Kaireekeea, that the old man who headed the proceſſion, was the chief prieſt, on whoſe bounty we were told we had ſo long ſubſiſted. He wrapped a piece of red cloth round the ſhoulders of Captain Cook, and in the uſual form, preſented him with a pig. He was then ſeated next the king, and Kaireekeea and their attendants began their vocal ceremonies, Kaoo and the chiefs aſſiſting in the reſponſes. In the perſon of this king, we were ſurprized to recognize the ſame emaciated old man who came on board the Reſolution, from the N. E. ſide of the iſland of Mowee; and we perceived that ſeveral of his attendants were the ſame perſons, who at that time continued with us the whole night. Among theſe were the king's two youngeſt ſons, the elder about the age of ſixteen; and Maiha-Maiha, his nephew, whom we could not immediately recollect, having had his hair plaſtered over with a dirty paſte and powder, which was no ſmall improvement to the moſt ſavage countenance we had ever ſeen. The formalities of this meeting being ended, Captain Cook conducted Terreeoboo and ſeveral of his chiefs on board our ſhip, where they were received with every poſſible mark of attention and reſpect; and the Commodore, as a compenſation for the feathered cloak, put a linen ſhirt upon the ſovereign, and girt his own hanger round him. Kaoo, and about half a dozen other antient chiefs, remained on ſhore. All this time not a canoe was permitted to remain in the Bay, and thoſe natives who did not confine themſelves to their huts, lay proſtrate on the ground. Before the king quitted the Reſolution, he granted leave for the natives to trade with us as uſual; but the women, we know not on what account, were ſtill interdicted by the taboo; that is, to remain at home, and not have any kind of intercourſe with us. At this time the behaviour of the inhabitants was ſo civil and inoffenſive, that all apprehenſions of danger were totally vaniſhed. We truſted ourſelves among them at all times, and upon all occaſions, without the leaſt reſerve. Our officers ventured frequently up the country, either ſingly, or in ſmall parties, and ſometimes continued out the whole night. In all places the people flocked about us, anxious to afford every aſſiſtance in their power, and appeared highly gratified if we condeſcended to accept of their ſervices. Variety of innocent arts were practiſed to attract our notice, or to delay our departure. The boys and girls ran through their villages, ſtopping us at every opening where there was a convenient ſpot for dancing. At one time we were ſolicited to take a draught of milk from cocoa-nuts, or to accept of ſuch other refreſhment as their huts afforded; at another we were encircled by a company of young women, who exerted their ſkill and ingenuity in amuſing us with ſongs and dances: but though the inſtances of their generoſity and civility were pleaſing to us, we could not but diſlike that propenſity to thieving, which at times they diſcovered, and to which they were addicted, like all the other iſlanders in theſe ſeas: this was a perplexing circumſtance, and obliged us ſometimes to exerciſe a ſeverity, which we ſhould have been happy to have avoided, if it had not been eſſentially neceſſary. Some expert ſwimmers were one day detected under the ſhips, drawing out the filling nails from the ſheathing. This they performed very ingeniouſly with a flint ſtone, faſtened to the end of a ſtick. This new art of ſtealing was a practice ſo injurious to our veſſels, that we fired ſmall ſhot at the offenders; but that they avoided eaſily, by diving under the ſhip's bottom: it therefore became highly neceſſary to make an example of one of them, which was done by giving him a good flogging on board our conſort, the Diſcovery, where his talent for thieving had been chiefly exerciſed. About this time, Mr. Nelſon, and four other gentlemen, ſet out on an excurſion into the country, in order to examine its natural curioſities and productions, an account of which will be given hereafter. This afforded Kaoo a freſh opportunity of teſtifying his civility, and exerting his friendly diſpoſition in our favour: for no ſooner was he informed of the departure of our party, than he ſent after them a large quantity of proviſions, with orders that every attention and aſſiſtance ſhould be granted them by the inhabitants of thoſe diſtricts through which they ſhould paſs. His civility on this occaſion was ſo delicate and diſintereſted, that even the people he employed were not permitted to accept of the ſmalleſt preſent. At the end of ſix days the gentlemen returned, without having been able to penetrate farther than twenty miles into the iſland, owing partly to improper guides, and partly to the nature of the country, which occaſioned this expedition to be attended with no ſmall fatigue, and ſome danger. Mr. Nelſon, however, collected a curious aſſortment of indigenous plants, and ſome natural curioſities. During their abſence, every thing remained quiet at the tents, and the natives ſupplied the ſhips with ſuch quantities of proviſions, of all kinds, that orders were again given to purchaſe no more hogs in one day, than could be killed, ſalted, and ſtowed away the next day. This order was in conſequence of a former one, to purchaſe all that could be procured for ſea ſtock, by which ſo many of them were brought on board, that ſeveral of them died before they could be properly diſpoſed of.

On Wedneſday, the 27th, in the morning, the rudder of our ſhip was unhung, and ſent on ſhore, in order to undergo a thorough repair. The carpenters at the ſame time were ſent into the country, under the protection and guidance of ſome of Kaoo's people, to get planks for the head rail work, which was become rotten and decayed. In a viſit, on the 28th, from Terreeoboo to Captain Clerke, the latter received a preſent of 30 large hogs, and ſuch a quantity of vegetables as could not be conſumed by his crew in leſs than a week. This being an unexpected viſit, made it the more extraordinary. Not having ſeen any of the ſports or exerciſes of the natives, at our particular requeſt, they entertained us in the evening with a boxing match. A vaſt concourſe of people aſſembled on a level ſpot of ground, not far diſtant from our tents. In the centre, a long vacant ſpace was left for them, at the upper end of which the arbitrators preſided, under three ſtandards. Slips of cloth of various colours, were pendant from theſe ſtandards; as were the ſkins of two wild geeſe, ſome ſmall birds, and a few bunches of feathers. The ſports being ready to begin, the judges gave the ſignal, and two combatants appeared in view. They advanced ſlowly, drawing up their feet very high behind, and rubbing their hands upon the ſoles. As they came forward, they ſurveyed each other frequently from head to foot, with an air of contempt, looking archly at the ſpectators, diſtorting their features, and practiſing a variety of unnatural geſtures. When they were advanced within the reach of each other, they held both arms ſtraight out before their faces, at which part they always aimed their blows. They ſtruck with a full ſwing of the arm, which to us had a very awkward appearance. They did not attempt to parry; but endeavoured to elude their adverſary's attack, by ſtooping, or retreating. The battle was decided expeditiouſly; for if either of them fell, whether by accident, or from a blow, he was deemed vanquiſhed; and the victor expreſſed his triumph by a variety of ſtrange geſtures, which uſually excited a loud laugh among the ſpectators, for which purpoſe it ſeemed to be calculated. The ſucceſsful combatant waited for a ſecond antagoniſt; and, if again victorious, for a third; and ſo on, till at laſt he was defeated. In theſe combats it was very ſingular, that, when any two are preparing to attack each other, a third may advance, and make choice of either of them for his antagoniſt, when the other is under the neceſſity of withdrawing. If the combat proved long and tedious, or appeared unequal, a chief generally interfered, and concluded it by putting a ſtick between the combatants. As this exhibition was at our deſire, it was univerſally expected, that ſome of us would have engaged with the natives; but, though our people received preſſing invitations to bear a part, they did not hearken to the challenges, not having forgot the blows they received at the Friendly Iſlands.

This day died William Watman, a mariner of the gunner's crew. This event we mention particularly, ſeeing death had hitherto been uncommon among us. He was a man in years, and much reſpected by Captain Cook. He had ſerved twenty-one years as a marine, and then entered as a ſeaman in 1772, on board the Reſolution, and ſerved with the Commodore in his voyage towards the South Pole. On their return he got admittance into Greenwich Hoſpital, at the ſame time with himſelf; and anxious to follow the fortunes of his benefactor, he alſo quitted it with him, on the Commodore's appointment to the command of the preſent expedition. Watman had often been ſubject to ſlight fevers, in the courſe of the voyage, and was very infirm when we arrived in the bay; where, having been ſent a few days on ſhore, he thought himſelf perfectly reſtored, and requeſted to return on board. His requeſt was complied with. The day following he had a ſtroke of the palſy, which in two days afterwards put an end to his life. At the requeſt of Terreeoboo, the remains of this faithful ſeaman were buried in the Morai; the ceremony being performed with great ſolemnity. Kaoo and his brethren were preſent at the funeral, who behaved with great decorum, and paid due attention while the ſervice was performing. On our beginning to fill up the grave, they approached it with great awe, and threw in a dead pig, together with ſome cocoa-nuts and plantains. For three ſucceſſive nights they ſurrounded it, ſacrificing hogs, and reciting prayers and hymns till morning. At the head of the grave, we erected a poſt, and nailed thereto a piece of board, whereon was inſcribed the name and age of the deceaſed, and the day of his departure from this life. Theſe memorials we were aſſured they would not remove, and, it is probable, they will be permitted to remain, ſo long as ſuch frail materials can endure.

Being much in want of fuel, Captain Cook deſired Mr. King to treat with the prieſts, for the purchaſe of the railing belonging to the Morai. Mr. King had his doubts reſpecting the decency of this overture, and apprehended the propoſal might be deemed impious; but in this he was much miſtaken: for an application being made for the ſame, they expreſſed no kind of ſurprize, and the wood was delivered without the leaſt ſtipulation. While our people were taking it away, Mr. King ſaw one of them with a carved image; and, upon enquiry, he was informed, that the whole ſemicircle (as mentioned in the deſcription of the Morai) had been carried to the boats. Though the natives were ſpectators of this buſineſs, they did not ſeem to reſent it; but on the contrary, had even aſſiſted in the removal. Mr. King thought proper to mention the particulars to Kaoo; who ſeemed exceedingly indifferent about the matter, begging him only to reſtore the center image; which was immediately done, and it was conveyed to one of the prieſt's houſes.

For ſome time, the king, and his chiefs, had been very importunate to know the time of our departure. From this circumſtance, Mr. King's curioſity was excited to know the opinion theſe people had entertained of us, and what they ſuppoſed to be the object of our voyage. He took conſiderable pains to ſatisfy himſelf reſpecting theſe points; but the only information he could get was, that they ſuppoſed we had left our native country on account of the ſcantineſs of proviſions, and that we had viſited them for the ſole purpoſe of filling our bellies. This concluſion was natural enough, conſidering the meagre appearance of ſome of our crew: the voracity with which we devoured their freſh proviſions; and our anxiety to purchaſe as much of it as we were able. It was a matter of entertainment to ſee the natives patting the bellies of the ſailors (who were much improved in ſleekneſs ſince their arrival at the bay) and telling them, in the beſt manner they could, that it was time for them to depart; but if they would return the next bread-fruit ſeaſon, they ſhould be better able to ſupply them. We had now continued ſixteen days in the bay, during which time our conſumption of hogs and vegetables, had been ſo enormous, that we need not be ſurprized at their wiſhing to ſee us take our leave. But Terreeoboo had, perhaps, no other view, in his enquiries, than a deſire of having ſufficient notice, to prepare ſuitable preſents for us at our departure; for when we informed him of our intention to quit the iſland in two days, a kind of proclamation was made, requiring the natives to bring in their hogs, and vegetables, for Terreeoboo to preſent to the Orono.

We were this day much entertained, at the beach, with the buffooneries of one of the natives. He held in his hand an inſtrument of muſic, ſuch as we have already deſcribed: bits of ſea-weed were faſtened round his neck; and, round each leg, ſome ſtrong netting; whereon were fixed rows of dogs teeth, hanging looſe. His dancing was accompanied with ſtrange grimaces, and unnatural diſtortions of the features, which were ſometimes highly ridiculous, and, upon the whole, without meaning or expreſſion. But the wreſtling and boxing matches afforded us good diverſion for the evening; and, in return, we exhibited the few fire-works we had remaining. Nothing could more effectually excite the admiration of theſe iſlanders, or ſtrike them with more exalted ideas of our ſuperiority, than ſuch a repreſentation: notwithſtanding this was, in every reſpect, much inferior to that exhibited at Hapaee, yet the aſtoniſhment of theſe people was equally great.

The carpenters who had been ſent up the country to cut planks for the head rail-work of our ſhip, the Reſolution, had now been gone three days, and, not having heard from them, we began to be alarmed for their ſafety. We expreſſed our apprehenſions to Kaoo, who appeared equally concerned with ourſelves; but while we were planning meaſures with him, for ſending proper perſons after them, they all ſafely arrived. Our people had gone farther into the country than they expected, before they found any trees ſuitable for their purpoſe. This circumſtance, together with the badneſs of the roads, and the difficulty of conveying timber to the ſhips, had ſo long detained them. They beſtowed high commendations on their guides, who not only ſupplied them with proviſions, but faithfully protected their tools. Having fixed on Thurſday, the 4th of February, for our departure, Terreeoboo invited Captain Cook and Mr. King to attend him on the 3d, to Kaoo's reſidence. On our arrival there, we ſaw large quantities of cloth ſcattered on the ground; abundance of red and yellow feathers, faſtened to the fibres of cocoa-nut huſks; and plenty of hatchets and iron ware, which had been received from us in barter. Not far from theſe was depoſited an immenſe quantity of various kinds of vegetables; and at a little diſtance, a large herd of hogs. We ſuppoſed, at firſt, that the whole was intended as a preſent for us; but we were informed by Kaireekeea, that it was a tribute to the king, from the inhabitants of that diſtrict. We were no ſooner ſeated than the bundles were brought, and laid ſeverally at Terreeoboo's feet; and the cloth, feathers, and iron, were diſplayed before him. The king was perfectly ſatisfied with this mark of duty from his people; and having ſelected about one third of the iron utenſils, one third of the feathers, and ſome pieces of cloth, he ordered theſe to be ſet aſide by themſelves; and the remainder of the cloth, hogs, vegetables, &c. were afterwards preſented to Captain Cook and Mr. King. The value and magnitude of this preſent, far exceeded any thing that we had before received. The whole was immediately conveyed on board; and the large hogs were ſet apart for ſea ſtores; but the ſmaller pigs and vegetables, were divided between the crews. The ſame day we quitted the Morai, and got our obſervatories on board. The taboo was removed, and, with it vaniſhed its magical effects; for as ſoon as we had quitted the place, the people ruſhed in, and vigilantly ſearched, in hopes of finding ſome valuable articles left behind. Mr. King being the laſt on ſhore, and waiting for the return of the boat, the inhabitants crowded about him, and having prevailed upon him to ſit down among them, expreſſed their regret at our ſeparation. It was even with difficulty that they would ſuffer him to depart. Having had, while we lay in the bay, the command of the party on ſhore, he became more acquainted with the natives, than thoſe who were required to be on board. From the inhabitants in general, he experienced great kindneſs; but the friendſhip ſhewn by the prieſts was conſtant and unbounded. On the other hand, Mr. King was anxious to conciliate their eſteem; in which he ſo happily ſucceeded, that when they were made acquainted with the time of our departure, he was urged to remain behind, and received overtures of the moſt flattering kind. When he endeavoured to excuſe himſelf, by alledging, that the Commodore would not permit it, they propoſed to conduct him to the mountains, and there conceal him till the departure of the ſhips. On Mr. King's aſſuring them that the ſhips would not ſail without him, the King and Kaoo repaired to Captain Cook, (whom they ſuppoſed to be his father) requeſting formally, that he might be ſuffered to remain behind. The Commodore unwilling to give a poſitive refuſal, to a propoſal ſo generouſly intended, aſſured them, that he could not part with him at preſent, but he ſhould return thither the next year, when he would endeavour to oblige them.

On Thurſday the 4th of February, early in the morning, having unmoored, the Reſolution and Diſcovery ſet ſail, and cleared the harbour, attended by a vaſt number of canoes. We propoſed to ſhape our courſe for Mowee; as we had been informed, that in the iſland there was a fine harbour, and excellent water, but Captain Cook intended to finiſh firſt the ſurvey of Owhyhee, before he went thither, hoping to meet with a road more ſheltered than Karakakooa Bay. We had not been long under ſail, when the king, who had omitted to take his leave of Captain Clerke, as not expecting our departure to be ſo ſudden, came after the ſhips, accompanied by the young prince, in a ſailing canoe, bringing with them ten large hogs, a great number of fowls, and a ſmall turtle (a great rarity) with bread-fruit in abundance. They alſo brought with them great quantities of cocoa-nuts, plantains, and ſugar-canes. Beſides other perſons of diſtinction, who accompanied the king, there was an old prieſt, who had always ſhewn a particular attachment to Captain Clerke, and who had not been unrewarded for his civility. It being rather late when they reached the Diſcovery, they ſtaid on board but a few hours, and then all departed, except the old prieſt, and ſome girls, who had the King's permiſſion to remain on board, till they ſhould arrive at ſome of the neighbouring iſles. We were now ſteering with a fine breeze, but juſt at the cloſe of evening, to our great mortification, the wind died away, and a great ſwell ſucceeding, with a ſtrong current ſetting right in for ſhore, we were in the utmoſt danger, particularly the Diſcovery, of being driven upon the rocks. At this time the old prieſt, who had been ſent to ſleep in the great cabin, leaped over-board unſeen with a large piece of Ruſſian ſilk, Captain Clerke's property, and ſwam to ſhore.

On Friday the 5th, we had calm weather, and made but little way. Seeing a large canoe between us and the ſhore, we hove to for her coming up, and to our great ſurprize perceived the old king, with ſeveral of his chiefs, having with them the prieſt who had ſtolen the ſilk, bound hand and foot, whom the king delivered to Captain Clerke, at the ſame time requeſting that his fault might be forgiven. The king being told his requeſt was granted, unbound him, and ſet him at liberty; telling the Captain that, ſeeing him with the ſilk, he judged it was not his own, therefore ordered him to be apprehended; and had taken this method of expoſing him, for having injured his friend. This was a ſingular inſtance of juſtice, which we did not expect to ſee among theſe people. As ſoon as they had delivered the ſilk, which the king refuſed to accept, they departed. Having a light breeze in the night, we made a little progreſs to the northward.

On Saturday the 6th, in the morning, we were abreaſt of a deep bay, called by the natives Toe-yah-yah. We flattered ourſelves with finding a commodious harbour here; for we ſaw ſome fine ſtreams of water to the N. E. and the whole appeared to be well ſheltered. Theſe obſervations ſeeming to tally with the accounts given by Koah, who was now on board the Reſolution, the maſter was ſent in the pinnace, with Koah as his guide, to examine the bay; but, before they ſet off, Koah altered his name, out of compliment to us, to that of Britannee. In the afternoon, the weather became gloomy, and ſuch violent guſts of wind blew off the land, that we were obliged to take in all the ſails, and bring to, under the mizen-ſtay-ſail. Soon after the gale began, all the canoes left us; and Mr. Bligh, on his return, preſerved an old woman and two men from drowning, whoſe canoe had been overſet in the ſtorm. We had ſeveral women remaining on board, whom the natives, in their hurry to depart, had left to ſhift for themſelves. Mr. Bligh reported, that he had landed at a village on the north ſide of the bay, where he was ſhewn ſome wells of water, that would not, by any means anſwer our purpoſe; that he proceeded farther into the bay; where, inſtead of finding good anchorage, he obſerved the ſhores to be low, and a flat bed of coral rocks extended along the coaſt, and upwards of a mile from the land; the depth of water, on the outſide, being twenty fathoms. During this ſurvey Britannee had contrived to ſlip away. His information having proved erroneous, he might, perhaps, be afraid of returning. In the evening the weather became more moderate, when we again made ſail; but it blew ſo violently about midnight, as to ſplit the fore and main-top ſails.

On Sunday the 7th, in the morning, we bent freſh ſails. Being now about four or five leagues from the ſhore, and the weather very unſettled, the canoes would not venture off, ſo that our female gueſts were under the neceſſity of remaining with us, though, at this time, much againſt their inclination; for they were all exceedingly ſea ſick, and many of them had left their infants on ſhore. The weather continued ſqually, yet we ſtood in for land, in the afternoon; and being within three leagues of it, we ſaw two men paddling towards us. We conjectured, that they had been driven off the ſhore, by the late boiſterous weather; and therefore ſtopped the ſhip's way, in order to take them in. Theſe poor wretches were ſo exhauſted by fatigue, that had not one of the natives on board jumped into the canoe to their aſſiſtance, they would hardly have been able to fix it to the rope thrown out for that purpoſe. It was with great difficulty that we got them up the ſhip's ſide, together with a child about four years of age, which had been laſhed under the thwarts of the canoe, with only its head above the water. They had left the ſhore the morning before, and had been, from that time, without food or water. The uſual precautions were taken in giving them victuals, and the child being committed to the care of the women, they were all perfectly recovered by the next morning. At midnight a gale of wind coming on, we were obliged to double reef the top-ſails, and get down the top-gallant yards.

On Monday the 8th, at day-break, we found that the fore-maſt had again given way; the fiſhes being ſprung, and the parts ſo very defective, as to make it abſolutely neceſſary to unſtep the maſt. Captain Cook for ſome time heſitated, whether he ſhould return to Karakakooa, or take the chance of finding a harbour in the iſlands to the leeward. The bay was not ſo commodious, but that a better might probably be met with, either for repairing the maſts, or procuring refreſhments; the latter of which, it was imagined, the neighbourhood of Karakakooa had lately been pretty well drained of. It was, on the other hand, conſidered as an imprudent ſtep, to leave a tolerable good harbour, which, once loſt, could not be regained, for the mere poſſibility of meeting with a better; eſpecially, as the failure of ſuch a contingency, might have deprived us of any reſource. We now ſtood on towards the land, to give the natives on ſhore an opportunity of releaſing their friends on board; and, about noon, when we were within a mile of the ſhore, ſeveral canoes came off to us, but ſo loaded with people, that no room could be found for any of our gueſts; the pinnace was therefore hoiſted out to land them; and the maſter who commanded it, was inſtructed to examine the ſouth coaſts of the bay for water, but returned without ſucceſs. Variable winds, and a ſtrong current to the northward, retarded their return.

On Tueſday the 9th, at eight o'clock, A. M. it blew very hard from the S. E. which occaſioned us to cloſe reef the top-ſails.

On Wedneſday the 10th, at two o'clock, A. M. in a heavy ſquall, we found ourſelves cloſe in with the breakers, to the northward of the weſt point of Owhyhee. We had juſt room to avoid them, and fired ſeveral guns to alarm the Diſcovery, and apprize her of danger. In the forenoon, the weather had been more moderate. A few canoes ventured to come off to us, when we were informed by thoſe belonging to them, that much miſchief had been occaſioned by the late ſtorms, and that a great many canoes had been loſt. We kept beating to windward the remainder of the day; and, in the evening, were within a mile of Karakakooa bay; but we ſtood off and on till day-light, the next morning, when we caſt anchor in our old ſtation.

On Thurſday the 11th, and part of the 12th, all hands were employed in getting out the fore-maſt, and conveying it on ſhore. Beſides the damage which the head of the maſt had ſuſtained, the heel of it was found by the carpenters, exceeding rotten, having a large hole in the middle. As the neceſſary repairs were likely to take up ſeveral days, Mr. Bayly and Mr. King got the aſtronomical apparatus on ſhore, and pitched their tents on the Morai, guarded by a corporal and ſix marines. A friendly intercourſe was renewed with the prieſts, who, for our greater ſecurity, tabooed the place with their wands as before. The ſail-makers were ſent on ſhore to repair the damages, in their department, ſuſtained by the late heavy gales. They occupied a houſe adjoining to the Morai, that was lent us by the prieſts. Such were the arrangements on ſhore. But on coming to anchor in the bay, our reception was ſo very different from what it had been upon our firſt arrival, that we were all aſtoniſhed: no ſhouts were heard, no buſtle or confuſion, by the motions of the natives, were perceived; but we found ourſelves in a ſolitary, deſerted bay, with hardly a friend appearing, or a canoe ſtirring. Their curioſity, indeed, might be ſuppoſed to be diminiſhed by this time; but the hoſpitable treatment we had been continually favoured with, and the friendly manner in which we parted, induced us to expect that, on our return, they would have received us with the greateſt demonſtrations of joy. Various were our conjectures on the cauſe of this extraordinary appearance, when our anxiety was in part relieved by the return of our boat, the crew of which brought us intelligence, that Terreeoboo was abſent, and that the bay was tabooed. This account appeared very ſatisfactory to many of our company; but ſome were of opinion, that there was, at this time, ſomewhat very ſuſpicious in the behaviour of the natives; and that the taboo, or interdiction, on pretence of the king's abſence, was contrived artfully, to afford him time to conſult his chiefs in what manner we ſhould be treated. Whether thoſe ſuſpicions were well founded, or the account given by the natives was the truth, we were never able to aſcertain. For though it is not improbable, that our ſudden return, for which they could ſee no apparent cauſe, and the neceſſity of which we afterwards found it very difficult to make them comprehend, might occaſion ſome alarm; yet the unſuſpicious conduct of Terreeoboo, who, on his ſuppoſed arrival, the next morning, came immediately to viſit Captain Cook, and the conſequent return of the natives to their former friendly intercourſe with us, are ſtrong proofs that they neither meant, nor apprehended, any change of conduct. In ſupport of this opinion, we may add the account of another accident, preciſely of the ſame kind which happened to us, on our firſt viſit, the day before the king's arrival. A native having ſold a hog on board our ſhip, and received the price agreed on, Pareea, who ſaw the tranſaction, adviſed the ſeller not to part with his hog, without an advanced price. For his interference in this buſineſs, he was harſhly ſpoken to, and puſhed away; and as the taboo was ſoon laid on the bay, we, at firſt, ſuppoſed it to be the conſequence of the affront offered to the chief. Both theſe events ſerve to ſhew how extremely difficult it is to draw any certain concluſion from the conduct of a people, with whoſe language and cuſtoms we were ſo imperfectly acquainted. Some idea, however, may be formed of the difficulties thoſe have to encounter, who in their intercourſe with theſe ſtrangers, are obliged to ſteer their courſe in the midſt of uncertainties, when the moſt ſerious conſequences may be expected by only imaginary offences. However true or falſe our conjectures may be, it is certain this day, the 12th, things went on in their uſual quiet courſe.

On Saturday the 13th, at the approach of evening, the officer who commanded the watering party of the Diſcovery, came to inform Mr. King, that ſeveral chiefs were aſſembled near the beach, and were driving away the natives, who aſſiſted the ſailors in rolling the caſks to the ſhore; declaring, at the ſame time, that their behaviour ſeemed to be very ſuſpicious, and he imagined they would give him ſome farther diſturbance. Mr. King, agreeable to his requeſt, ſent a marine with him, but permitted him to take only his ſide arms. The officer, in a ſhort time, returned, and informed Mr. King, that the inhabitants had armed themſelves with ſtones, and were become very tumultuous. Mr. King therefore went himſelf to the watering place, attended by a marine with his muſquet. Seeing them approach, the iſlanders threw away their ſtones, and, on Mr. King's application to ſome of the chiefs, the mob was diſperſed. Every thing being now quiet, Mr. King went to meet Captain Cook, who was coming on ſhore in the pinnace. He related to the Commodore all that had recently happened, and received orders to fire ball at the offenders, ſhould they again behave inſolently, and in caſe of their beginning to throw ſtones. In conſequence of theſe orders Mr. King commanded the corporal to give directions, that the ſentinels pieces ſhould be loaded with ball, inſtead of ſhot. On our return to the tents, we heard a continued fire of the muſkets from the Diſcovery, which we obſerved to be directed at a canoe, that we ſaw paddling towards the ſhore, in great haſte, and purſued by one of our ſmall boats. We immediately concluded, that the firing was in conſequence of ſome theſt, and Captain Cook ordered Mr. King to follow him with a marine armed, and to endeavour to ſeize the people as they came on ſhore. Accordingly, we ran towards the place where we imagined the canoe would land, but were too late; the people having quitted it, and made their eſcape into the country before our arrival. We were at this time ignorant, that the goods had been already reſtored; and thinking it probable, from the circumſtances we had at firſt obſerved, that they might be of importance, for this reaſon, we were unwilling to relinquiſh our hopes of recovering them. Having therefore enquired of the natives which way the fugitives had gone, we followed them, till it was near dark, when judging ourſelves to be three miles from the tents, and ſuſpecting that the natives, who frequently encouraged us in the purſuit, were amuſing us with falſe information, we thought it in vain to continue our ſearch any longer, and therefore returned to the beach. During our abſence a difference of a more ſerious nature had happened. The officer who had been diſpatched in the ſmall boat after the thieves, and who was returning on board with the goods that had been reſtored, ſeeing Captain Cook and Mr. King engaged in the purſuit of the offenders, ſeized a canoe which was drawn upon the ſhore. This canoe belonged to Pareea, our friend, who at that inſtant, arriving from on board the Diſcovery, claimed his property, and proteſted his innocence. However, the officer perſiſted in detaining it, in which he was encouraged by the crew of the pinnace, then waiting for the Commodore. The conſequence of this imprudent conduct was, what might have been expected: a ſcuffle enſued; and Pareea unfortunately was knocked down, by a violent blow on the head with an oar. Several of the natives, who had hitherto been unconcerned ſpectators, began now to attack our people with ſuch a ſhower of ſtones, that they were compelled to make a precipitate retreat, and ſwam off to a rock, at a conſiderable diſtance from the ſhore. The pinnace was plundered immediately by the natives, and would have been entirely demoliſhed, had not Pareea interpoſed, who had not only recovered from his blow, but had alſo forgot it at the ſame inſtant. He ordered the crowd to diſperſe, and beckoned to our people to come and take poſſeſſion of the pinnace; and afterwards aſſured them, that he would uſe his influence to get the things reſtored which had been taken out of it. After their departure, he followed them in his canoe, carrying them a midſhipman's cap, and ſome other articles; and expreſſing much concern at what had happened, begged to know, if the Orono would kill him? And, whether he might be permitted to go on board the next day? He was aſſured that he would be well received; upon which he joined noſes with the officers (their uſual token of amity) and paddled over to Kowrowa. When theſe particulars were related to Captain Cook, he was exceedingly concerned; and when the Captain and Mr. King were returning on board, the former expreſſed his fears, that theſe iſlanders would oblige him, though much againſt his inclination, to uſe violent meaſures with them; adding, they muſt not be permitted to ſuppoſe that they had gained an advantage over us. It was too late to take any ſteps this evening, the Commodore therefore only gave orders, that every native ſhould be immediately turned out of the ſhips. This order having been executed, Mr. King returned to his ſtation on ſhore; and the events of the day having much abated our former confidence in the natives, we poſted a double guard on the Morai, with orders to ſend to Mr. King and let him know, if any of the natives were ſeen lurking about the beach. At 11 o'clock, five of the natives were ſeen creeping round the bottom of the Morai: they approached ſilently with great caution, but, perceiving they were diſcovered, immediately retired out of ſight. At midnight, one of them ventured very near the obſervatory, when one of the ſentinels fired over him; whereupon he, with ſome others fled with great precipitation, and we had no farther moleſtation during the remainder of the night. The temper of theſe iſlanders was now totally changed; and for ſome days paſt, as may be ſeen from our journal, they became more and more troubleſome. In the courſe of this day, ſeveral parties of them were buſy in rolling ſtones from the edge of the hill, with a view, as was ſuppoſed, to annoy the ſhips; but theſe were at too great a diſtance to receive any damage; however, the Commodore looking upon this as an inſult, ordered ſome of our great guns to be fired among them, and, in leſs than ten minutes, not an Indian was to be ſeen near the place. In the afternoon Terreeoboo came on board, and complained of our having killed two of his people, intimating, at the ſame time, that they had not the leaſt intention of hurting us. He continued on board near two hours, amuſing himſelf with ſeeing our armourers work, and requeſted that they might be permitted to make him a pahooa (an inſtrument uſed in battle, when they come to cloſe quarters) which was immediately done.

Sunday, the 14th of February, 1779. This is that memorable day, in which are comprized the affecting incidents, and melancholy particulars, that concluded with the aſſaſſination of our beloved and honoured Commodore. Very early in the morning, a party of the iſlanders were perceived, who made a great lamentation, and moved ſlowly along to the beating of a drum, that gave ſcarcely a ſtroke in a minute. From this circumſtance our people ſuppoſed, they were burying the dead who had been killed the preceeding day. At day break Mr. King repaired on board the Reſolution, in order to examine the time-keeper. In his way thither, he was hailed by the Diſcovery, and received the alarming information, that their cutter had been ſtolen, in ſome time of the night, from the buoy, where it was moored. The boat's painter had been cut two fathoms from the buoy, and the remainder of the rope was gone with the boat. This gave cauſe ſufficient to ſuſpect that ſome villany was hatching by the iſlanders, and that ill conſequences would follow ſuch a daring theft. With theſe thoughts Mr. King haſtened on board the Reſolution, whoſe whole company were by this time in motion. On his arrival, he found the marines arming, the crew preparing to warp the ſhip nearer to the ſhore, and Captain Cook loading his double barrel gun. He began with a relation of what had happened in the night at the Morai, when the Commodore interrupted him with ſome eagerneſs, and informed him of the loſs of the Diſcovery's cutter, and of the preparations he was making to recover it; adding, that he was reſolved to ſeize Terreeoboo, and to confine him on board till the boat ſhould be returned. It had been Captain Cook's uſual practice, in all the iſlands of the Pacific Ocean he had viſited, whenever any thing of conſequence had been ſtolen by the natives, to get their king, or ſome of the principal earees on board, where he detained them as priſoners, till the property that had been loſt was reſtored; and this method having hitherto proved ſucceſsful, he meant to purſue it on the preſent occaſion. In conſequence of this haſty determination, the Commodore gave orders to ſtop every canoe that ſhould attempt to leave the bay; having reſolved to ſeize, and deſtroy them, if the cutter could not be recovered by lenient meaſures. To this end the boats of both ſhips, properly manned and armed, were ſtationed acroſs the bay. The iſlanders obſerving our motions, and ſeeing the ſhips warping towards the towns, of which there were two, one on each ſide of the harbour, they concluded that our deſign was to ſeize their boats. In conſequence of which conjecture, moſt of their large war canoes took the alarm, and were making off, when our guns, loaded with grape and caniſter ſhot, drove them back.

Between the hours of ſeven and eight o'clock, Captain Cook and Mr. King quitted the ſhip together; the former in the pinnace, having Mr. Phillips, and nine marines with him; and the latter in a ſmall boat. The laſt orders Captain Cook gave Mr. King, were, to quiet the minds of the people on his ſide of the Bay, by the ſtrongeſt aſſurances that they ſhould not be injured; to keep his people together, and to be continually on his guard. Captain Cook and Mr. King then parted; the former intending to proceed to Kowrowa, where Terreeoboo reſided, and the latter to the beach. When Mr. King had landed, he perceived many of the warriors of Owhyhee were cloathed in their military mats, though without arms; that they were gathering together in a body from every direction; and that they aſſumed a very different countenance to what they uſually wore upon all former occaſions; he therefore, when arrived at his ſtation on ſhore, iſſued ſtrict orders to the marines, to continue within the tent, to charge their muſquets with ball, and not, on any conſideration, to quit their arms. This done, he waited upon old Kaoo, and the prieſts, at their reſpective huts, and explained to them, as well as he was able, the reaſon of the hoſtile preparations, which had ſo exceedingly alarmed them. He found they were no ſtrangers to our loſs of the cutter, and aſſured them, that though the Commodore was reſolved not only to recover it, but to puniſh, in the moſt exemplary manner, the perpetrators of the theft; yet they, and all the inhabitants of the village, on our ſide, need not be alarmed, nor apprehend the leaſt danger from us. He deſired the prieſts to communicate the motives by which we were actuated in our preſent conduct, to the people, and to intreat them not to entertain groundleſs fears, but, confiding in our declarations, to remain peaceable and quiet. Mr. King having thus made known our real intention, Kaoo aſked, with great emotion, if Terreeoboo, the king, was to be hurt? Mr. King declared he was not; upon which both Kaoo and the reſt of the prieſts ſeemed much ſatisfied with this aſſurance.

In the interval of theſe tranſactions, Captain Cook having called off the launch from the N. part of the Bay, and taken it with him, landed, regardleſs of appearances, at Kowrowa, with Mr. Phillips, lieutenant of the marines, a ſerjeant, and nine privates. He proceeded immediately into the village, where he was received reſpectfully; the people, as uſual, proſtrating themſelves before him, and making their accuſtomed offerings of ſmall hogs; but it was obſerved, that the chiefs were in ſome conſternation on ſeeing the Captain and his guard, and that they ſoon diſappeared one after another. The Commodore perceiving that his main deſign was not ſuſpected, the next ſtep he took was, to enquire for the king, and the two boys, his ſons, who had been his conſtant gueſts on board the Reſolution. In a ſhort time the boys returned, with ſome of the natives who had been ſent in ſearch of them; and conducted Captain Cook to the habitation where Terreeoboo had ſlept. The old king had juſt awoke, and the Captain addreſſed him in the mildeſt terms; aſſuring him, that no violence was intended againſt his perſon, or any of his people; but only againſt thoſe who had been guilty of a moſt unprecedented act of robbery, by cutting from her moorings one of the ſhip's boats, without which they could neither conveniently water, nor carry on the neceſſary communication with the ſhore; requiring of the king, at the ſame time, to give orders for the cutter to be reſtored without delay; and requeſting his company with him on board, till his orders ſhould be carried into execution. Terreeoboo, in reply, proteſted his total ignorance of the theft; ſaid he was very ready to aſſiſt in diſcovering the author of it, and ſhould be glad to ſee him puniſhed; but he ſhewed great unwillingneſs to truſt his perſon with thoſe who had lately exerciſed unuſual ſeverities againſt his people. He was told, that the tumultuous appearance of his people, and their repeated depredations, made ſome uncommon ſeverities neceſſary; but that not the leaſt hurt ſhould be done to the meaneſt inhabitant of his iſland by any perſon belonging to the ſhips; and all that was neceſſary for the continuance of peace, was, to pledge himſelf for the honeſty of his people. With that view, and that only, he came to requeſt the king to place confidence in him, and to make the Reſolution his home, as the moſt effectual means of putting a ſtop to the robberies that were daily and hourly committed by his people, both at the tents, and on board the ſhips, and which were now ſo daring as to become inſufferable. The king upon this remonſtrance aroſe, and accepted the invitation.

In about half an hour Terreeoboo ſet out with Captain Cook, to attend him on board; and every thing had a proſperous appearance. The two boys were already in the pinnace, and the reſt of the party were approaching the water-ſide; when a woman, named Kanee-kabereea, the mother of the boys, and one of Terreeoboo's favourite wives, followed him, and with many tears and intreaties beſought him not to venture on board. At the ſame time, two warriors who came along with her, laid hold of the king, inſiſting he ſhould proceed no farther, and obliged him to ſit down. A large body of the iſlanders had by this time got together, who had probably been alarmed by the diſcharging of the great guns, and the hoſtile appearances in the bay. They now began to behave outrageouſly, and to inſult the guard. Thus ſituated, Mr. Phillips, Lieutenant of the marines, perceiving that his men were huddled together in the crowd, conſequently unable to uſe their arms, ſhould there be a neceſſity for ſo doing, propoſed to the Commodore to draw them up along the rocks, cloſe to the edge of the water; upon which the Lieutenant received orders to march, and, if any one oppoſed, to fire upon, or inſtantly diſpatch him; but the natives readily making way for them to paſs, Mr. Phillips drew them up in one line, within about thirty yards of the place where Terreeoboo was ſitting. The old king continued all this time on the ground. His eyes diffuſed gloomy diſcontent, his head drooped, and his whole countenance was impreſſed with every mark of terror and dejection; as if he was poſſeſſed with a foreboding conſciouſneſs of the cataſtrophe, in the bloody tragedy that was now about to be acted. Captain Cook, unwilling to abandon the object which occaſioned him to come on ſhore, urged him moſt earneſtly to proceed: but, on the other hand, if the king appeared inclined to attend him, the ſurrounding chiefs interpoſed: at firſt they had recourſe to entreaties; but afterwards to force and violence, and even inſiſted on his remaining on ſhore; and the word was given, that Tootee was about to carry off their king, and to kill him.

Captain Cook, at length, finding that the alarm had ſpread too generally, and being ſenſible that there was not a probability of getting Terreeoboo off without much bloodſhed, thought it moſt prudent to give up the point; obſerving to Mr. Phillips, that it would be impoſſible to compel the king to go on board, without running the riſk of killing a great number of the inhabitants. Thus the enterprize was abandoned by Captain Cook; nor did it appear, that his perſon was in the leaſt degree of danger, till an accident happened, the report of which brought forth in an inſtant a number of warriors from the crowd, and occaſioned a fatal turn to the whole affair. The boats ſtationed acroſs the Bay, having fired at ſome war canoes, for attempting to get out, had unfortunately killed one of their principal chiefs. Intelligence of his death arrived at the ſpot where the Commodore then was, juſt as he had parted from the king, and was walking ſlowly towards the ſhore. The ferment it occaſioned was immediately too conſpicuous; the women and children were immediately ſent away, and the men ſoon put on their war mats, and armed themſelves with ſpears and ſtones. One of the natives having provided himſelf with two of theſe miſſive weapons, advanced towards Captain Cook, flouriſhing a long iron ſpike, or pahooa, in defiance, and threatening to throw the ſtone. The Captain made ſigns for him to deſiſt, but the man perſiſting in his inſolence, and repeating his menaces with ſtrange grimaces, he was provoked to fire a charge of ſmall ſhot at him; but the warrior being defended by his mat, which the ſhot could not penetrate, this ſerved only to irritate and encourage the iſlanders, whoſe fighting men now puſhed forward, throwing whole vollies of ſtones at the marines. One of the chiefs attempted to ſtab Mr. Phillips with his pohooa, (ſome ſay the very ſame that was made by our armourers, at the requeſt of the king, the day before) but not ſucceeding in his attempt, he received from him a blow with the butt end of his muſquet. A general attack with ſtones ſucceeded, and the quarrel became general. On our ſide, the guns from the ſhips began to pour in their fire upon the multitude of natives, as did likewiſe the marine guard, and thoſe from the boats; nevertheleſs, though the ſlaughter among the iſlanders was great, yet, enraged as they were, they ſtood an inceſſant fire with aſtoniſhing intrepidity; and, without giving time for the marines to charge again, they ruſhed in upon them with horrid ſhouts and yells. What followed was a ſcene of horror and confuſion, which can more eaſily be conceived than related. Four of the marines, corporal Thomas, and three privates, namely Hinks, Allen, and Fadget, retreated among the rocks, and fell victims to the fury of the enemy. Three others were dangerouſly wounded; and the Lieutenant, who had received a ſtab between the ſhoulders with a pahooa, having fortunately reſerved his fire, ſhot the man who had wounded him, juſt as he was going to repeat his blow. The laſt time our Commodore was diſtinctly ſeen, he was ſtanding at the water's edge, ordering the boats to ceaſe firing, and pull in; when a baſe aſſaſſin, coming behind him, and ſtriking him on the head with his club, felled him to the ground, in ſuch a direction, that he lay with his face prone in the water. A general ſhout was ſet up by the iſlanders on ſeeing the Captain fall, and his body was dragged on ſhore, where he was ſurrounded by the enemy, who, ſnatching the dagger from each other's hands, diſplayed a ſavage eagerneſs to join in his deſtruction. It ſhould ſeem that their vengeance was directed chiefly againſt our Commodore, by whom they ſuppoſed their king was to be dragged on board, and puniſhed at diſcretion; for, having ſecured his body, they fled without much regarding the reſt of the ſlain, one of whom they threw into the ſea.

Thus ended the life of the greateſt navigator that this or any other nation could ever boaſt of: who led his crews of gallant Britiſh ſeamen twice round the world; reduced to a certainty the non-exiſtence of a Southern continent, about which the learned of all nations were in doubt; ſettled the boundaries of the earth and ſea; and demonſtrated the impracticability of a N. W. paſſage from the Atlantic to the great Southern Ocean, for which our ableſt geographers had contended, and in purſuit of which vaſt ſums had been ſpent in vain, and many valuable mariners had miſerably periſhed. His death was doubtleſs premature; yet he lived to accompliſh the great undertaking for which he ſeemed particularly deſigned. How ſincerely his loſs was lamented, (we ſpeak here in the language of his panegyriſt) by thoſe who owed their ſecurity to his ſkill and conduct, and every conſolation to his tenderneſs and humanity, it is impoſſible to deſcribe; and the taſk would be equally difficult to repreſent the horror, dejection, and diſmay, which followed ſo dreadful and unexpected a cataſtrophe. Let us therefore turn from ſo mournful a ſcene, to the pleaſing contemplation of his virtues, character, and public ſervices, the hiſtory of which our readers will find in the ſubſequent chapter.

CHAP. XV.

Memoirs of the life and public ſervices of Captain James Cook—His birth and parentage—Education and early ſituation in life—His inclination for the ſea, and firſt employment in the merchants ſervice—Tries his fortune in His Majeſty's ſhip, the Eagle—Is made a Lieutenant—His behaviour under Sir William Barnaby, and when engaged in the active ſcenes of the war in America—His appointments, by the recommendations of Lord Colville and Sir Hugh Palliſer—His firſt voyage to the South Seas—His ſecond, to complete the diſcovery of the Southern hemiſphere—His third and laſt voyage, in order to diſcover a North Weſt paſſage—An account of his family, and their penſions—Obſervations on his character and death—Particulars which happened ſubſequent to his death—Bravery of Lieutenant Phillips—The iſlanders forced to retire—Situation of our party at the Morai—Annoyed by ſtones—An attempt to ſtorm the Morai—Quitted by our people—A ſhort truce, and pacific meaſures adopted—Mr. King ſent to obtain a conference with ſome of the chiefs of Owhyhee—His interview with Koah—Contemptuous behaviour of the natives, and precautions taken on our ſide—A part of Captain Cook's body brought—Farther provocations from the natives—Our watering parties haraſſed with ſtones—The village of Kakooa burned—Inſtance of bravery in one of the natives—A proceſſion headed by Kaireekeea—The bones of Captain Cook brought on board—They are committed to the deep with the uſual funeral ceremonies.

HAVING related the untimely fate of our excellent Commander, Captain Cook, we now proceed to give our readers ſome new and authentic particulars of the life of this great navigator; the whole, we will venture to affirm, making a more correct and complete hiſtorical narrative, on ſo intereſting a ſubject, than has hitherto appeared in any edition whatever of Captain Cook's voyages, under whatever authority publiſhed, or however pompouſly ſet forth.

The late Captain James Cook, the ſubject of theſe memoirs, was born at Marton, in the North Riding of Yorkſhire, on February the 3d, 1728. In this particular, we may contradict the ignorant aſſertions foiſted on the public by editors of publications of the like kind with this; but we reſt our credibility on the authority of the Rev. Mr. Grenſide, whoſe certificate, taken from the regiſter of births in his pariſh, is now in the poſſeſſion of our publiſher. The father of Captain Cook was a day labourer to a farmer, and lived in a ſmall village ſurrounded with mud walls; who afterwards removed to Great Ayton; where he was employed as a peaſant by the late Thomas Scuttowe, Eſq. with whom he was aſſiſted by young Cook, his ſon, in the different branches of huſbandry. At the age of 13, this youth was put under the tuition of Mr. Pullen, a ſchoolmaſter of Ayton, by whom he was inſtructed in the arts of writing, common book-keeping, &c. and he is ſaid to have ſhewn an uncommon genius in his application to the ſeveral rules of vulgar arithmetic. In January, 1745, at the age of 17, his father bound him apprentice, to learn the grocery and haberdaſhery buſineſs, at Snaith; but his natural inclination not having been conſulted on this occaſion, he ſoon quitted the counter in diſguſt, after a year and a half's ſervitude; and having contracted a ſtrong propenſity to the ſea, his maſter, willing to indulge him in following the bent of his inclination, gave up readily his indentures. In July, 1746, he was bound apprentice to Mr. Walker, of Whitby, for the term of three years, which time he ſerved to his maſter's full ſatisfaction. Under him he firſt ſailed on board the ſhip Freelove, employed chiefly in the coal trade from Newcaſtle to London. In the ſpring of 1750, Mr. Cook ſhipped himſelf as a ſeaman on board the Maria, under the command of Captain Gaſkin; in which veſſel he continued all that year, in the Baltic trade. In 1753, he entered on board his Majeſty's ſhip the Eagle; "having a mind," as he expreſſed himſelf, "to try his fortune that way." Some time after, the Eagle ſailed with another frigate on a cruiſe, in which they were very ſucceſsful.

In the year 1758, we find this riſing mariner, maſter of the Northumberland, the flag ſhip of Lord Colville, who had then the command of a ſquadron ſtationed on the coaſt of America. It was here, as he has often been heard to ſay, that, during a hard winter, he firſt read Euclid, and applied to the ſtudy of the mathematics and aſtronomy, without any aſſiſtance than what a few books, and his own induſtry afforded. At the ſame time, that he thus found means to cultivate his underſtanding, improve his mind, and ſupply the deficiencies of an early education, he was engaged in moſt of the buſy and active ſcenes of the war in America. At the ſiege of Quebec, Sir Charles Saunders committed to his charge the execution of ſervices, of the firſt importance in the naval department. He piloted the boats to the attack of Montmorency; conducted the embarkation to the heights of Abraham, examined the paſſage, and laid buoys for the ſecurity of the large ſhips in proceeding up the river. The courage and addreſs with which he acquitted himſelf in theſe ſervices, gained him the warm friendſhip of Sir Charles Saunders and Lord Colville, who continued to patronize him during the reſt of their lives, with the greateſt zeal and affection.

On the 1ſt of April 1760, he received a commiſſion as a lieutenant, and ſoon after a ſpecimen of thoſe abilities, which recommended him to the commands, in the execution whereof he ſo highly diſplayed his merit, that his name will be handed down to poſterity, as one of the moſt ſkilful navigators which this country hath produced. In 1765 he was with Sir William Barnaby, on the Jamaica ſtation, and behaved in ſuch a manner as gained him the approbation of the admiral. At the concluſion of the war, he was appointed, through the recommendation of Lord Colville, and Sir Hugh Palliſer, to ſurvey the Gulph of St. Lawrence, and the coaſts of Newfoundland. In this employment he continued till the year 1767, when the Royal Society reſolved, that it would be proper to ſend a navigator into the South Seas, to obſerve the Tranſit of the planet Venus over the Sun's diſk: and Otaheite being fixed upon, the Endeavour, a ſhip built for the coal trade, was put into commiſſion, and the command of her given to Lieutenant, the late Captain Cook, who was appointed with Mr. Charles Green to obſerve the Tranſit. In this voyage he was accompanied by Joſeph Banks, Eſq. ſince Sir Joſeph, and Dr. Solander, and other ingenious artiſts. The Tranſit of Venus was obſerved in different parts of the iſland, and the Captain returned, after having been abſent almoſt three years, in which period he had made diſcoveries equal to all the navigators of his country, from the time of Columbus to the preſent. From this period, as his ſervices increaſed in uſefulneſs to the public, ſo his reputation advanced to a height too great for our encomiums to reach. Perhaps no ſcience ever received greater additions from the labours of a ſingle man, than geography has done from thoſe of Captain Cook; who, in his firſt voyage to the South Seas diſcovered the Society Iſles; determined the inſularity of New Zealand; diſcovered the ſtraits which ſeparate the two iſlands, called after his name; and made a complete ſurvey of both. He afterwards explored the eaſtern coaſt of New Holland, hitherto unknown; an extent of 27 deg. of lat. or upwards of 2,000 miles.

Soon after the Captain's return to England, it was reſolved to equip two ſhips to complete the diſcovery of the Southern hemiſphere. It had long been a prevailing idea, that the unexplored part contained another continent. To aſcertain the fact was the principal object of this expedition; and that nothing might be omitted that could tend to facilitate the enterprize, two ſhips were provided; the one, the Reſolution, under the command of Captain Cook; the other, the Adventure, commanded by Captain Furneaux. In this ſecond expedition round the world, Captain Cook reſolved the great problem of a ſouthern continent; having ſo completely traverſed that hemiſphere, as not to leave a poſſibility of its exiſtence, unleſs ſo near the pole, as to be beyond the reach of navigation. In this voyage New Caledonia, the largeſt iſland in the Southern Pacific Ocean, except New Zealand, was diſcovered; as was alſo the iſland of Georgia; and an unknown coaſt, which the Captain named Sandwich land; and having twice viſited the tropical ſeas, he ſettled the ſituations of the old diſcoveries, and made ſeveral new ones.

The want of ſucceſs which attended Captain Cook's attempt to diſcover a Southern Continent, did not ſet aſide another plan which had been recommended ſome time before. This was no other than the finding out a N. W. paſſage, which the fancy of ſome chimerical projectors had conceived to be a practicable ſcheme. His ſervices were required for this arduous undertaking, and he offered them without heſitation. This third and laſt voyage is diſtinguiſhed by the extent and importance of its diſcoveries. Not to mention ſeveral ſmaller iſlands in the Southern Pacific, Captain Cook diſcovered the group, north of the equinoxial line, called Sandwich Iſlands; which, on account of their ſituation and productions, may perhaps become an object of more conſequence, than any other diſcovery in the South Sea. He explored what had remained before unknown of the weſtern coaſt of America, an extent of 3700 miles; aſcertained the proximity of the two continents of Aſia and America; ſailed through the ſtraits between them, and ſurveyed the coaſts on each ſide, ſo far as to be ſatisfied of the impracticability of a paſſage in that hemiſphere, from the Atlantic into the Pacific Ocean, by an eaſtern or weſtern coaſt. In ſhort, he compleated the hydrography of the habitable globe, if we except the Japaneſe Archipelago, and the ſea of Amur, which are ſtill known imperfectly by Europeans. Throughout this voyage it muſt be confeſſed, that his ſervices as a navigator are important and meritorious. The methods which he invented, and ſo ſucceſsfully put in practice, of preſerving the health, (and conſequently the lives) of ſeamen, will tranſmit his name to future ages, as a friend and benefactor of mankind. It is well known among thoſe who are converſant in naval hiſtory, that the advantages which have been ſought, through the medium of long ſea voyages, have always been purchaſed at a dear rate. That dreadful diſorder which is peculiar to this ſervice, muſt, without exerciſing an unwarrantable degree of tyranny over our ſeamen, have been an inſuperable obſtacle to our enterprizes. It was reſerved for Captain Cook to convince the world, that voyages might be protracted to three, or even four years, in unknown regions, and under every change of climate, without affecting the health, in the ſmalleſt degree, and even without diminiſhing the probability of life. A few months after his departure from England, notwithſtanding he was then abſent, the Royal Society voted him Sir Godfrey Copley's gold medal, as a reward for the account, which he had tranſmitted to that body, of the method taken to preſerve the health of the crew of his ſhip. Captain Cook was a married man, and left ſeveral children behind him. On each of theſe his Majeſty has ſettled a penſion of twenty-five pounds a year, and two hundred pounds per annum on his widow.

The conſtitution of this great and unparalleled navigator, was robuſt both by nature and habit; his body having been inured to labour, and rendered capable of undergoing the ſevereſt hardſhips. His ſtomach bore, without complaining, the moſt coarſe and ungrateful food. Indeed he ſubmitted, with an eaſy ſelf-denial, to wants of every kind, which he endured with remarkable indifference. The qualities of his mind were of the ſame hardy vigorous kind with thoſe of his body. His underſtanding was ſtrong and quick-ſighted: his judgment, in whatever related to the ſervices he was engaged in, quick and ſure: his deſigns were bold and daring, yet manly and diſcreet. His courage was cool and determined, and accompanied with an admirable preſence of mind, in the moment of danger. His manners were plain and unaffected.

Some have cenſured his temper as ſubject to haſtineſs and paſſion; but let it be conſidered that theſe were counteracted, and frequently diſarmed, by a diſpoſition benevolent and humane. There are thoſe who have blamed Captain Cook for his ſeverity to the natives of different iſlands which we viſited; but it was not to theſe alone he was ſevere in his diſcipline. He never ſuffered any fault in his own people, though ever ſo trivial, to eſcape unpuniſhed. If they were charged with inſulting a native, or injuring him in his property, if the fact was proved, the offender ſeldom eſcaped unpuniſhed. By this impartial diſtribution of equal juſtice, the natives themſelves conceived ſo high an idea of his wiſdom, and his power too, that they paid him the honours beſtowed on their Eatooa, or good ſpirit.

This is certain, that a moſt diſtinguiſhing feature in Captain Cook's character was, that unremitting perſeverance in the purſuit of his object, which was not only ſuperior to the oppoſition of dangers, and the preſſure of hardſhips, but even exempt from the want of ordinary relaxation. During the three long voyages in which he was engaged, his eagerneſs and activity were never in the leaſt abated. No incidental temptation could detain him for a moment; even thoſe intervals of recreation, which ſometimes occurred unavoidably, and were looked for by us with a longing that perſons who have experienced the fatigues of ſervice will readily excuſe, were ſubmitted to by him with a certain impatience, whenever they could not be employed in making further proviſions for the proſecution of his deſigns. In the courſe of this work, we have faithfully enumerated all the particular inſtances in which theſe qualities were diſplayed, during the great and important enterprizes in which he was engaged: and we have likewiſe ſtated the reſult of thoſe ſervices, under the two principals heads to which they may be referred, thoſe of geography and navigation, each of which we have placed in a ſeparate and diſtinct point of view.

We cannot cloſe theſe memoirs, without taking a ſlight retroſpective view of the tragical end of this truly great and worthy ſea officer. It was imagined by ſome of thoſe who were preſent, that the marines, and thoſe who were in the boats, fired without Captain Cook's orders, and that he was anxious to prevent the farther effuſion of blood; it is therefore probable, that, on this occaſion, his humanity proved fatal to him; for it was obſerved, that while he faced the natives, no violence had been offered him; but when he turned about to give directions to the boats, he immediately received the fatal blow. Whether this was mortal or not it is impoſſible for any one to determine; but we are informed by a gentleman on board the Diſcoverity, whoſe veracity is unqueſtionable, that there was time ſufficient to have ſecured the body of our brave Commander, had a certain lieutenant, who commanded a boat of the ſame ſhip, pulled in, inſtead of making off. We do not mention the name, but if our information is an undeniable fact, the daſtardly officer merits juſtly that contempt and poverty, to which it is ſaid he is at preſent reduced. We beg leave further to obſerve, that the natives had certainly no intention at firſt of deſtroying Captain Cook, or any of his party. The cauſe firſt originated in the death of the Eree, who was ſhot by one of our people in the boat: it was this circumſtance which alarmed them, and, in conſequence of this it was that they armed themſelves. At this period Captain Cook might have returned on board with ſafety; but he was unfortunate in miſſing the man who behaved inſolent to him, and ſhooting another; he was unfortunate in the firing of the marines; and equally ſo in the firing of the people in the launch; all which happened in the ſpace of a few minutes. In ſhort, all the cauſes that brought on the death of this much lamented Circumnavigator, were produced by a chain of events which could no more be foreſeen than prevented. His memory we leave to the gratitude and admiration of poſterity.

We now proceed to relate thoſe particulars that have come to our knowledge, and which happened ſubſequent to the death of Captain Cook. We have before obſerved, that four of the marines, who accompanied the Commodore, were killed by the natives; the ſurvivors, with Mr. Phillips, their lieutenant, threw themſelves into the ſea, and made their eſcape, being protected by a ſmart fire from the boats. On this occaſion, a ſtriking inſtance of gallant behaviour, and of affection for his men, was diſplayed by Mr. Phillips; for he had ſcarcely got into the boat, when, ſeeing one of the marines, who was not a very expert ſwimmer, ſtruggling in the water, and in danger of being taken by the iſlanders, he inſtantly leaped into the ſea to his aſſiſtance, though conſiderably wounded himſelf; and after receiving a blow on his head from a ſtone, which had almoſt ſent him to the bottom, he caught the marine by the hair, and brought him off in ſafety. Our people for ſome time kept up a conſtant fire from moſt of the boats (which, during the whole tranſaction, were at no greater diſtance from the land than twenty yards), in order to afford their unfortunate companions, if any of them ſhould ſtill remain alive, an opportunity of effecting their eſcape. Theſe efforts, ſeconded by a few guns, that were, at the ſame time, fired from the Reſolution, having at length compelled the enemy to retire, a ſmall boat, manned by five midſhipmen, pulled towards the ſhore, where they perceived the bodies lying on the ground without any ſigns of life. However, they judged it dangerous to attempt to bring them off with ſo inconſiderable a force; and their ammunition being nearly conſumed, they returned to the ſhips, leaving the bodies in poſſeſſion of the natives, together with ten ſtands of arms.

After the general conſternation, which the news of this misfortune had diffuſed throughout the whole company of both ſhips, had in ſome degree ſubſided, their attention was called to the party at the morai, where the maſt and ſails were on ſhore, guarded by only ſix marines. It is difficult to deſcribe the emotions that agitated the minds of Mr. King, and his attendants, at this ſtation, during the time in which theſe occurrences had happened, at the other ſide of the bay. Being at the diſtance only of a mile from the village of Kowrowa, they could diſtinctly perceive a vaſt multitude of people collected on the ſpot where Captain Cook had juſt before landed. They heard the firing of the muſquets, and obſerved an uncommon buſtle and agitation among the crowd. They afterwards ſaw the iſlanders retreating, the boats retiring from the ſhore, and paſſing and repaſſing, with great ſtillneſs, between the ſhips. Mr. King's heart ſoon miſgave him on this occaſion. Where ſo valuable a life was concerned, he could not avoid being alarmed by ſuch new and threatening appearances. Beſides this, he knew that Captain Cook, from a long ſeries of ſucceſs, in his tranſactions with the natives of this ocean, had acquired a degree of confidence, which might, in ſome ill-fated moment, put him too much off his guard; and Mr. King now ſaw all the dangers to which that confidence might lead, without deriving much conſolation from the conſideration of the experience which had given riſe to it. His firſt care, on hearing the report of the muſquets, was to aſſure the iſlanders, conſiderable numbers of whom were aſſembled round the wall of our conſecrated field, and ſeemed at a loſs how to account for what they had heard and ſeen, that they ſhould meet with no moleſtation; and that, at all events, he was inclined to continue on peaceable terms with them.

In this ſituation, Mr. King and his attendants remained till the boats had returned on board, when Captain Clerke perceiving, by means of his teleſcope, that our party was ſurrounded by the natives, who, he thought, deſigned to attack them, ordered two four-pounders to be fired at the iſlanders. Theſe guns, though well aimed, did no miſchief; but they gave the natives a convincing proof of their powerful effects. A cocoa-nut tree, under which ſome of them were ſitting, was broken in the middle by one of the balls; and the other ſhivered a rock, which ſtood in an exact line with them. As Mr. King had, juſt before, given them the ſtrongeſt aſſurances of their ſafety, he was extremely mortified at this act of hoſtility, and, to prevent its being repeated, inſtantly diſpatched a boat to inform Captain Clerke, that he was, at preſent, on the moſt amicable terms with the iſlanders, and that, if any future occaſion ſhould ariſe for changing his conduct towards them, he would hoiſt a jack, as a ſignal for Captain

tain Clerke to afford him his aſſiſtance. Mr. King waited the return of the boat with the greateſt impatience; and after remaining for the ſpace of a quarter of an hour, under the utmoſt anxiety and ſuſpence, his fears were at length confirmed, by the arrival of Mr. Bligh, with orders to ſtrike the tents immediately, and to ſend on board the ſails, that were repairing. At the ſame inſtant, Kaireekeea having alſo received information of the death of Captain Cook, from a native who had arrived from the other ſide of the bay, approached Mr. King, with great dejection and ſorrow in his countenance, enquiring whether it was true. At this time the ſituation of the party was highly critical and important. Not only their own lives, but the iſſue of the expedition, and the return of at leaſt one of the ſhips, were involved in the ſame common danger. They had the maſt of the Reſolution, and the greater part of the ſails, on ſhore, protected by only half a dozen marines. The loſs of theſe would have been irreparable; and though the iſlanders had not as yet teſtified the ſmalleſt diſpoſition to moleſt the party, it was difficult to anſwer for the alteration, which the intelligence of the tranſaction at Kowrowa might produce. Mr. King therefore thought proper to diſſemble his belief of the death of Captain Cook, and to deſire Kaireekeea to diſcourage the report; apprehending that either the fear of our reſentment, or the ſucceſsful example of their countrymen, might perhaps lead them to ſeize the favourable opportunity, which at this time preſented itſelf, of giving us a ſecond blow. He, at the ſame time, adviſed him to bring old Kaoo, and the other prieſts, into a large houſe adjoining to the morai, partly from a regard to their ſafety, in caſe it ſhould have been found neceſſary to have recourſe to violent meaſures; and partly from a deſire of having him near our people, in order to make uſe of his authority with the natives, if it could be inſtrumental in maintaining peace.

Having ſtationed the marines on the top of the morai, which formed a ſtrong and advantageous poſt, he intruſted the command to Mr. Bligh, who received the moſt poſitive directions to act ſolely on the defenſive; and he then went on board the Diſcovery, in order to confer with Captain Clerke, on the dangerous ſituation of our affairs. He had no ſooner left the ſpot, than the iſlanders began to annoy our people with ſtones; and juſt after he had reached the ſhip, he heard the firing of the marines. He therefore haſtily returned on ſhore, where he found affairs growing every moment more alarming. The natives were providing arms, and putting on their mats; and their numbers augmented very faſt. He alſo obſerved ſeveral large bodies advancing towards our party along the cliff, by which the village of Kakooa is ſeparated from the north ſide of the bay, where Kowrowa is ſituate. At firſt they attacked our people with ſtones from behind the walls of their incloſures, and meeting with no reſiſtance, they ſoon became more daring. A few courageous fellows, having crept along the beach, under cover of the rocks, ſuddenly preſented themſelves at the foot of the morai, with an intention of ſtorming it on the ſide next the ſea, which was its only acceſſible part; and they were not diſlodged before they had ſtood a conſiderable quantity of ſhot, and had ſeen one of their number fall. The amazing courage of one of theſe aſſailants deſerves to be recorded. Having returned with a view of carrying off his companion, amidſt the fire of our whole party, he received a wound, which obliged him to quit the body, and retire; but, a few minutes afterwards, he again made his appearance, and receiving another wound, was under the neceſſity of retreating a ſecond time. At that moment Mr. King arrived at the morai, and ſaw this man return a third time, faint from the loſs of blood and fatigue. Being informed of what had happened, he forbad the ſoldiers to fire; and the iſlander was ſuffered to carry off his friend, which he was juſt able to accompliſh; and then fell down himſelf, and breathed his laſt. About this time a ſtrong reinforcement from both ſhips having landed, the natives retreated behind their walls; which affording Mr. King acceſs to the prieſts, he ſent one of them to exert his endeavours to bring his countrymen to ſome terms, and to propoſe to them, that if they would deſiſt from throwing ſtones, he would not allow our men to fire. This truce was agreed to, and our people were ſuffered to launch the maſt, and carry off the ſails, aſtronomical inſtruments, &c. without moleſtation. As ſoon as our party had quitted the morai, the iſlanders took poſſeſſion of it, and ſome of them threw a few ſtones, which, however, did no miſchief. Between eleven and twelve o'clock, Mr. King arrived on board the Diſcovery, where he found that no deciſive plan had been adopted for the regulation of our future proceedings. The recovery of Captain Cook's body, and the reſtitution of the boat, were the objects, which, on all hands, we agreed to inſiſt on; and Mr. King declared it as his opinion, that ſome vigorous methods ſhould be put in execution, if the demand of them ſhould not be inſtantly complied with. It may juſtly be ſuppoſed that Mr. King's feelings, on the death of a beloved and reſpected friend, had ſome ſhare in this opinion; yet there were doubtleſs other reaſons, and thoſe of the moſt ſerious nature, that had ſome weight with him. The confidence which the ſucceſs of the natives in killing our Commander, and obliging us to leave the ſhore, muſt naturally have inſpired; and the advantage, however inconſiderable, which they had gained over us the preceding day, would, he had no doubt, excite them to make farther dangerous attempts; and the more particularly, as they had no great reaſon, from what they had hitherto obſerved, to dread the effects of our fire-arms. This kind of weapon, indeed, contrary to the expectations of us all, had produced in them no ſigns of terror. On our ſide, ſuch was the condition of our veſſels, and the ſtate of diſcipline among us, that, had a vigorous attack been made on us, during the night, the conſequences might perhaps have been highly diſagreeable. Mr. King was ſupported, in theſe apprehenſions, by the opinion of the greater part of the officers on board; and nothing ſeemed to him more likely to encourage the iſlanders to make the attempt, than the appearance of our being inclined to an accommodation, which they could only impute to weakneſs or fear. On the other hand it was urged, in favour of more conciliatory meaſures, that the miſchief was already done, and was irreparable; that the natives, by reaſon of their former friendſhip and kindneſs had a ſtrong claim to our regard: and the more particularly, as the late calamitous accident did not appear to have taken its riſe from any premeditated deſign; that, on the part of Terreeoboo, his ignorance of the theft, his willingneſs to accompany Captain Cook on board the Reſolution, and his having actually ſent his two ſons into the pinnace, muſt reſcue his character, in this reſpect, from the ſmalleſt degree of ſuſpicion; that the behaviour of his women, and the chiefs, might eaſily be accounted for, from the apprehenſions occaſioned in their minds by the armed force, with which Captain Cook landed, and the hoſtile preparations in the bay; appearances ſo unſuitable to the confidence and friendſhip, in which both parties had hitherto lived, that the arming of the iſlanders was manifeſtly with a deſign to reſiſt the attempt, which they had ſome reaſon to expect would be made, to carry off their ſovereign by force, and was naturally to be expected from a people who had a remarkable affection for their chiefs. To theſe dictates of humanity, other motives of a prudential kind were added; that we were in want of a ſupply of water, and other refreſhments; that the Reſolution's foremaſt would require ſeven or eight days work, before it could be ſtepped; that the ſpring was advancing very faſt; and that the ſpeedy proſecution of our next expedition to the northward, ought now to be our ſole object; and that, therefore, to engage in a vindictive conteſt with the natives, might not only ſubject us to the imputation of needleſs cruelty, but would require great delay in the equipment of our ſhips. In this latter opinion Captain Clerke concurred, and though Mr. King was convinced, that an early and vigorous diſplay of our reſentment would have more effectually anſwered every object both of prudence and humanity, he was, upon the whole, not ſorry that the meaſures he had recommended were rejected. For though the contemptuous behaviour of the iſlanders, and their ſubſequent oppoſition to our neceſſary occupations on ſhore, ariſing moſt probably from a miſconſtruction of our lenity, obliged us at laſt to have recourſe to violence in our own defence; yet he was not certain that the circumſtances of the caſe would, in the opinion of the generality of people, have juſtified the uſe of force, on our part, in the firſt inſtance. Cautionary ſeverity is ever invidious, and the rigour of a preventive meaſure, when it is the moſt ſucceſsful, leaves its expediency the leaſt apparent.

During theſe deliberations, and while we were thus engaged in concerting ſome plan for our future operations, a very numerous concourſe of the natives ſtill kept poſſeſſion of the ſhore; and ſome of them coming off in canoes, approached within piſtol-ſhot of the ſhips, and inſulted us by various marks of defiance and contempt. It was extremely difficult to reſtrain the ſeamen from the uſe of their arms on theſe occaſions; but, as pacific meaſures had been reſolved on, the canoes were allowed to return unmoleſted. Mr. King was now ordered by Captain Clerke to proceed towards the ſhore with the boats of both ſhips, well manned and armed, with a view of bringing the iſlanders to a parley, and of obtaining, if poſſible, a conference with ſome of the Erees. If he ſhould ſucceed in this attempt, he was to demand the dead bodies, and particularly that of Captain Cook: to threaten them, in caſe of a refuſal, with our reſentment; but by no means to fire, unleſs attacked; and not to go aſhore on any account whatever. Theſe inſtructions were delivered to Mr. King before the whole party, in the moſt poſitive manner; in conſequence of which, he and his detachment left the ſhips about four o'clock in the afternoon; and as they approached the ſhore, they perceived every indication of a hoſtile reception. The natives were all in motion, the women and children retiring; the men arming themſelves with long ſpears and daggers, and putting on their war mats. It alſo appeared, that ſince the morning they had thrown up breaſt-works of ſtone along the beach, where Captain Cook had landed; in expectation, perhaps, of an attack at that place. When our party were within reach, the iſlanders began to throw ſtones at them with ſlings, but without doing any miſchief. Mr. King concluded from theſe appearances, that all attempts to bring them to a parley would be ineffectual, unleſs he gave them ſome ground for mutual confidence: he therefore ordered the armed boats to ſtop, and advanced alone in the ſmall boat, holding in his hand a white flag; the meaning of which, from an univerſal ſhout of joy from the natives, he had the ſatisfaction to find was immediately underſtood. The women inſtantly returned from the ſide of the hill, whither they had retired; the men threw off their mats, and all ſeated themſelves together by the ſea-ſide, extending their arms, and inviting Mr. King to land.

Notwithſtanding ſuch behaviour ſeemed expreſſive of a friendly diſpoſition, Mr. King could not avoid entertaining ſuſpicions of its ſincerity. But when he ſaw Koah, with extraordinary boldneſs and aſſurance, ſwimming off towards the boat, with a white flag in his hand, he thought proper to return this mark of confidence, and accordingly received him into the boat, though he was armed; a circumſtance which did not contribute to leſſen Mr. King's ſuſpicions. He had indeed long harboured an unfavourable opinion of Koah. The prieſts had always repreſented him as a perſon of a malicious temper, and no friend to us; and the repeated detections of his fraud and treachery, had convinced us of the truth of their aſſertions. Beſides the melancholy tranſactions of the morning, in which he was ſeen performing a principal part, inſpired Mr. King with the utmoſt horror at finding himſelf ſo near him; and as he approached him with feigned tears, and embraced him, Mr. King was ſo diſtruſtful of his intentions, that he took hold of the point of the pahooa, which the chief held in his hand, and turned it from him. He informed the iſlander that he had come to demand the body of Captain Cook, and to declare war againſt the natives, unleſs it was reſtored without delay. Koah aſſured him that this ſhould be done as ſoon as poſſible, and that he would go himſelf for that purpoſe; and after requeſting a piece of iron of Mr. King, with marks of great aſſurance, he leaped into the water, and ſwam aſhore, calling out to his countrymen, that we were all friends again. Our people waited with great anxiety near an hour for his return. During this interval, the other boats had approached ſo near the ſhore, that the men who were in them entered into converſation with a party of the iſlanders, at a little diſtance; by whom they were informed, that the Captain's body had been cut to pieces, and carried up the country; but of this circumſtance Mr. King was not apprized till his return to the ſhips. He therefore now began to expreſs ſome degree of impatience at Koah's delay; upon which the chiefs preſſed him exceedingly to land; aſſuring him, that if he would go in perſon to Terreeoboo, the body would be undoubtedly reſtored to him. When they found they could not prevail on Mr. King to go aſhore, they endeavoured, on pretence of converſing with him with greater eaſe, to decoy his boat among ſome rocks, where they might have had it in their power to ſeparate him from the other boats. It was eaſy to ſee through theſe artifices, and he was therefore very deſirous of breaking off all communication with them; when a chief approached, who had particularly attached himſelf to Captain Clerke, and the officers of the Diſcovery, on board which ſhip he had ſailed, when we laſt quitted the bay, intending to take his paſſage to the iſland of Mowee. He ſaid he came from Terreeoboo, to acquaint our people that the body was carried up the country, but that it ſhould be brought back the following morning. There appeared much ſincerity in his manner; and being aſked if he uttered a falſhood, he hooked together his two fore fingers, which is here underſtood as the ſign of veracity, in the uſe of which theſe iſlanders are very ſcrupulous. Being now at a loſs how to proceed, Mr. King ſent Mr. Vancouver to inform Captain Clerke of all that had paſſed; that it was his opinion, the natives did not intend to keep their word with us; and, far from being grieved at what had happened, were on the contrary inſpired with great confidence on account of their late ſucceſs, and ſought only to gain time, till they could plan ſome ſcheme for getting our people into their power. Mr. Vancouver came back with orders for Mr. King to return on board, after giving the iſlanders to underſtand, that if the body was not reſtored the next morning, the town ſhould be deſtroyed. No ſooner did they perceive our party retiring, than they endeavoured to provoke them by the moſt contemptuous and inſulting geſtures. Several of our people ſaid, they could diſtinguiſh ſome of the natives parading about in the cloaths which had belonged to our unhappy countrymen, and among them, an Eree brandiſhing Captain Cook's hanger, and a woman holding the ſcabbard. In conſequence of Mr. King's report to Captain Clerke, of what he ſuppoſed to be the preſent temper and diſpoſition of the inhabitants, the moſt effectual methods were taken to guard againſt any attack they might make during the night. The boats were moored with top-chains; additional ſentinels were ſtationed in each of our ſhips; and guard-boats were directed to row round them, in order to prevent the iſlanders from cutting the cables. During the night, we ſaw a vaſt number of lights on the hills, which induced ſome of us to imagine, that they were removing their effects farther up into the country, in conſequence of our menaces. But it ſeems more probable, that they were kindled at the ſacrifices that were performing on account of the war, in which they ſuppoſed themſelves likely to be engaged; and, perhaps the bodies of our ſlain countrymen were at that time burning. We afterwards obſerved fires of the ſame kind, as we paſſed the iſland of Morotoi; and which, according to the information we received from ſome of the natives then on board, were made on account of a war they had declared againſt a neighbouring iſland. This agrees with what we learned among the Friendly and Society Iſles, that,

previous to any hoſtile expedition, the chiefs always endeavoured to animate the courage of the people, by feaſts and rejoicings in the night. We paſſed the night without any diſturbance, except from the howlings and lamentations which were heard on ſhore.

On Monday the 15th, early in the morning, Koah came along-ſide the Reſolution, with a ſmall pig and ſome cloth, which he deſired permiſſion to preſent to Mr. King. We have already mentioned, that this officer was ſuppoſed by the iſlanders to be the ſon of Captain Cook; and as the latter had always ſuffered them to believe it, Mr. King was probably conſidered as the chief after his death. As ſoon as he came on deck, he interrogated Koah with regard to the body; and, on his returning evaſive anſwers, refuſed to accept his preſents, and was on the point of diſmiſſing him with expreſſions of anger and reſentment, had not Captain Clerke, with a view of keeping up the appearance of friendſhip, judged it more proper that he ſhould be treated with the cuſtomary reſpect. This artful prieſt came frequently to us in the courſe of the morning, with ſome trifling preſent or other; and as we always obſerved him eyeing every part of the ſhip with a great degree of attention, we took care he would ſee we were well prepared for our defence. He was extremely urgent both with Captain Clerke and Mr. King to go on ſhore, imputing the detention of the bodies to the other chiefs, and aſſuring thoſe gentlemen, that every thing might be adjuſted to their ſatisfaction, by a perſonal interview with the king. However, they did not think it prudent to comply with Koah's requeſt; and indeed a fact came afterwards to their knowledge, which proved his want of veracity. For, they were informed, that immediately after the action in which Captain Cook had loſt his life, Terreeoboo had retired to a cave in the ſteep part of the mountain that hangs over the bay, which was acceſſible only by means of ropes, and where he continued for ſeveral days, having his proviſions let down to him by cords. After the departure of Koah from the ſhips, we obſerved that his countrymen who had aſſembled by day-break, in vaſt crowds on the ſhore, flocked around him with great eagerneſs on his landing, as if they wiſhed to learn the intelligence he had gained, and what ſteps were to be taken in conſequence of it. It is highly probable, that they expected we ſhould attempt to put our threats in execution; and they appeared fully determined to ſtand their ground. During the whole morning, we heard conchs blowing in various parts of the coaſt; large parties were perceived marching over the hills; and, upon the whole, appearances were ſo alarming, that we carried out a ſtream anchor, for the purpoſe of hauling the ſhip abreaſt of the town, in caſe of an attack; and boats were ſtationed off the northern point of the bay, in order to prevent a ſurprize from the natives in that quarter. Their warlike poſture at preſent, and the breach of their engagement to reſtore the bodies of the ſlain, occaſioned freſh debates among us concerning the meaſures which ſhould now be purſued. It was at length determined, that nothing ſhould be permitted to interfere with the repair of the Reſolution's maſt, and the preparations for our departure; but that we ſhould nevertheleſs continue our negociations for the reſtoration of the bodies of our countrymen. The greater part of this day was employed in getting the fore-maſt into a proper ſituation on deck, that the carpenters might work upon it; and alſo in making the requiſite alterations in the commiſſions of the officers.

The chief command of the expedition having devolved on Captain Clerke, he removed on board the Reſolution, promoted Lieutenant Gore to the rank of Captain of the Diſcovery, appointed Meſſrs. King and Williamſon firſt and ſecond Lieutenants of the Reſolution, and nominated Mr. Harvey, a Midſhipman, who had accompanied Captain Cook during his two laſt voyages, to fill the vacant lieutenancy. During the whole day, we ſuſtained no interruption from the iſlanders: and in the evening, the launch was moored with a top-chain, and guard-boats ſtationed round each of the ſhips as before. About eight o'clock, it being exceedingly dark, we heard a canoe paddling towards the ſhip; and it was no ſooner perceived, than both the ſentinels on deck fired into it. There were two of the natives in this canoe, who immediately roared out "Tinnee," (which was their method of pronouncing Mr. King's name), and ſaid they were friends, and had ſomething with them which belonged to Captain Cook. When they came on board, they threw themſelves at the feet of our officers, and ſeemed to be extremely terrified. It fortunately happened that neither of them was hurt, notwithſtanding the balls of both pieces had gone through the canoe. One of theſe was the perſon who has been already mentioned under the appellation of the taboo man, who conſtantly attended Captain Cook with the particular ceremonies we have before deſcribed; and who, though a man of diſtinction in the iſland, could ſcarcely be prevented from performing for him the moſt humiliating offices of a menial ſervant. After bewailing, with many tears, the loſs of the Orono, he informed us that he had brought a part of his body. He then gave us a ſmall bundle which he brought under his arm; and it is impoſſible to deſcribe the horror with which we were ſeized, upon finding in it a piece of human fleſh of the weight of about nine or ten pounds. This, he ſaid, was all that now remained of the body; that the reſt had been cut in pieces, and burnt; but that the head, and all the bones, except thoſe which belonged to the trunk, were in the poſſeſſion of Terreeoboo and the other chiefs; that what we ſaw had been allotted to Kaoo, the chief of the prieſts, for the purpoſe of being uſed in ſome religious ceremony; and that he had ſent it as a teſtimony of his innocence, and of his attachment to us. We had now an opportunity of learning whether they were cannibals; and we did not neglect to avail ourſelves of it. We firſt endeavoured, by ſeveral indirect queſtions, put to each of them apart, to gain information reſpecting the manner in which the other bodies had been treated and diſpoſed of; and finding them very conſtant in one account, that after the fleſh had been cut off, the whole of it was burnt; we at laſt put the direct queſtion, whether they had not fed on ſome of it; they immediately teſtified as much horror at ſuch an idea, as any European would have done; and aſked, whether that was the practice among us. They afterwards aſked us, with great earneſtneſs, and with an appearance of apprehenſion, when the Orono would come again? and how he would treat them on his return? the ſame enquiry was often made in the ſequel by others; and this idea is conſiſtent with the general tenour of their conduct towards him, which indicated that they conſidered him as a being of a ſuperior ſpecies. We preſſed our two friendly viſitants to continue on board till the next morning, but we could not prevail upon them. They informed us, that if this tranſaction ſhould come to the knowledge of the king, or any of the other Erees, it might be attended with the moſt fatal conſequences to their whole ſociety; to prevent which, they had been under the neceſſity of coming to us in the dark; and the ſame precaution, they ſaid, would be requiſite in returning to ſhore. They further told us, that the chiefs were eager to take revenge on us for the death of their countrymen: and particularly cautioned us againſt truſting Koah, who, they aſſured us, was our implacable enemy; and ardently longed for an opportunity of fighting us, to which the blowing of the conchs that we had heard in the morning, was intended as a challenge. It likewiſe appeared from the information of theſe men, that ſeventeen of their countrymen were ſlain in the firſt action, at the village of Kowrowa, five of whom were chief; and that Kaneena and his brother, our particular friends, were of that number. Eight, they ſaid, had loſt their lives at the obſervatory; three of whom likewiſe were perſons of the firſt diſtinction. At eleven o'clock the two natives left us, and took the precaution to deſire that one of our guard-boats might attend them, till they had paſſed the Diſcovery, leſt they ſhould again be fired upon, which, by alarming their countrymen on ſhore, might expoſe them to the danger of detection. This requeſt was readily complied with, and we had the ſatisfaction to find, that they reached the land ſafe and undiſcovered. During the remainder of this night, we heard the ſame loud lamentations, as in the preceding one. Early the following morning, we received a viſit from Koah. Mr. King was piqued at finding, that notwithſtanding the moſt glaring marks of treachery in his conduct, and the poſitive declaration of our friends the prieſts, he ſhould ſtill be ſuffered to carry on the ſame farce, and to make us at leaſt appear the dupes of his hypocriſy. Our ſituation was indeed become extremely awkward and unpromiſing; none of the purpoſes for which this pacific plan of proceedings had been adopted, having hitherto been in any reſpect promoted by it. No ſatisfactory anſwer had been given to our demands; we did not ſeem to have made any progreſs towards a reconciliation with the natives; they ſtill remained on the ſhore in hoſtile poſtures, as if determined to oppoſe any endeavours we might make to go aſhore; and yet it was become abſolutely neceſſary to attempt landing, as the completing our ſtock of water would not admit of any longer delay. However, in juſtice to the conduct of Captain Clerke, we muſt remark, that it was highly probable, from the great numbers of the iſlanders, and from the reſolution with which they ſeemed to expect our approach, that an attack could not have been made without danger; and that the loſs of even a very few men might have been ſeverely felt by us, during the remainder of our voyage: whereas the delaying to put our menaces into execution, though, on the one hand, it diminiſhed their opinion of our valour, had the effect of occaſioning them to diſperſe on the other. For this day, about 12 o'clock, upon finding that we perſiſted in our inactivity, great bodies of them, after blowing their conchs, and uſing every method of defiance, marched off, over the hills, and never made their appearance afterwards. Thoſe, however, who remained, were not the leſs daring and preſumptuons. One of them had the inſolence to come within muſquet-ſhot a-head of the Reſolution, and after throwing ſeveral ſtones at us, waved over his head the hat which had belonged to Captain Cook, while his countrymen aſhore were exulting and encouraging his audacity. Our people were highly enraged at this inſult, and, coming in a body on the quarter-deck, begged they might no longer be obliged to put up with ſuch reiterated provocations, and requeſted Mr. King to endeavour to obtain permiſſion for them, from Captain Clerke, to take advantage of the firſt fair occaſion of avenging the death of their much lamented Commander. On Mr. King's acquainting the Captain with what was paſſing, he ordered ſome great guns to be fired at the iſlanders on ſhore; and promiſed the crew, that, if they ſhould be moleſted at the watering-place, the next day, they ſhould then be permitted to chaſtiſe them. Before we could bring our guns to bear, the natives had ſuſpected our intentions, from the buſtle and agitation they obſerved in the ſhip; and had retired behind their houſes and walls. We were conſequently obliged to fire, in ſome degree, at random; notwithſtanding which, our ſhot produced all the effects we could deſire: for, in a ſhort time afterwards, we perceived Koah paddling towards us, with the greateſt haſte; and when he arrived, we learned that ſome people had loſt their lives, and among the reſt Maiha-maiha, a principal Eree, nearly related to Terreeoboo. Not long after Koah's arrival, two boys ſwam off from the Morai towards our veſſels, each armed with a long ſpear; and after they had approached pretty near, they began in a very ſolemn manner to chant a ſong; the ſubject of which, from their frequently mentioning the word Orono, and pointing to the village where Captain Cook had been ſlain, we concluded to be the late calamitous occurrence. Having ſung for near a quarter of an hour in a plaintive ſtrain, during all which time they continued in the water, they repaired on board the Diſcovery, and delivered up their ſpears; and after remaining there a ſhort time, returned on ſhore. We could never learn who ſent them, or what was the object of this ceremony. During the night, we took the uſual precautions for the ſecurity of the ſhips; and, as ſoon as it was dark, the two natives, who had viſited us the preceding evening, came off to us again. They aſſured us, that though the effects of our great guns this afternoon, had greatly alarmed the chiefs, they had by no means relinquiſhed their hoſtile intentions, and they adviſed us to be on our guard.

On Wedneſday, the 17th, the boats of both ſhips were diſpatched aſhore to procure water; and the Diſcovery was warped cloſe to the beach, in order to protect the perſons employed in that ſervice. We ſoon found that the intelligence which had been ſent us by the prieſts, was not deſtitute of foundation, and that the iſlanders were determined to neglect no opportunity of annoying us, when it could be done without much hazard. The villages, throughout this whole cluſter of iſlands, are, for the moſt part, ſituated near the ſea; and the adjacent ground is encloſed with ſtone walls, of the height of about three feet. Theſe, we at firſt ſuppoſed, were deſigned for the diviſion of property; but we now diſcovered that they ſerved for a defence againſt invaſion, for which purpoſe they were, perhaps, chiefly intended. They conſiſt of looſe ſtones, and the natives are very dexterous in ſhifting them, with great quickneſs, to ſuch particular ſituations, as the direction of the attack may occaſionally require. In the ſides of the mountain that ſtands near the bay, they have likewiſe holes, or caves, of conſiderable depth, whoſe entrance is ſecured by a fence of a ſimilar kind. From behind both theſe ſtations, the iſlanders perpetually harraſſed our watering party with ſtones; nor could the inconſiderable force we had on ſhore, with the advantage of muſquets, compel them to retreat. Thus oppoſed, our people were ſo occupied in attending to their own ſafety, that, during the whole forenoon, they filled only one ton of water. It being therefore impoſſible for them to perform this ſervice, till their aſſailants were driven to a greater diſtance, the Diſcovery was ordered to diſlodge the enemy with her great guns; which being accompliſhed by means of a few diſcharges, the men landed without moleſtation. The natives, however, made their appearance again ſoon afterwards, in their uſual method of attack; and it was now deemed abſolutely neceſſary to burn down ſome ſtraggling huts, near the wall behind which they had ſheltered themſelves. In executing the orders that were given for that purpoſe, our people were hurried into acts of unneceſſary devaſtation and cruelty. Some allowance ought certainly to be made for their reſentment of the repeated inſults, and contemptuous behaviour of the iſlanders, and for their natural deſire of revenging the death of their beloved and reſpected Commander. But, at the ſame time, their conduct ſtrongly evinced, that the greateſt precaution is requiſite in truſting, even for a moment, the diſcretionary uſe of arms in the hands of private ſoldiers, or ſeamen, on ſuch occaſions. The ſtrictneſs of diſcipline, and the habits of obedience, by which their force is kept directed to ſuitable objects, lead them to conceive, that whenever they have the power, they have likewiſe a right to perform. Actual diſobedience being almoſt the only crime for which they expect to receive puniſhment, they are apt to conſider it as the ſole meaſure of right and wrong; and hence they are too ready to conclude, that what they can do with impunity, they may alſo do conſiſtently with honour and juſtice; ſo that the feelings of humanity, and that generoſity towards an unreſiſting enemy, which, at other times, is a ſtriking diſtinction of brave men, become but feeble reſtraints to the exerciſe of violence, when ſet in oppoſition to the deſire they naturally have of ſhewing their own power and independence.

We have before obſerved, that directions had been given to burn only a few ſtraggling houſes, which afforded ſhelter to the iſlanders. We were therefore greatly ſurprized on perceiving the whole village in flames; and before a boat, that was ſent to ſtop the progreſs of the miſchief, could reach the land, the habitations of our old and conſtant friends, the prieſts, were all on fire. Mr. King had, therefore, great reaſon to lament the illneſs that confined him on board this day. The prieſts had always been under his protection; and, unfortunately, the officers then on duty having ſeldom been on ſhore at the Morai, were but little acquainted with the circumſtances of the place. Had he been preſent himſelf, he might, in all probability, have been the means of preſerving their little ſociety from deſtruction. In eſcaping from the flames, ſeveral of the inhabitants were ſhot; and our people cut off the heads of two of them, and brought them on board. The fate of one unhappy native was much lamented by all of us. As he was repairing to the well for water, he was ſhot at by one of the marines. The ball happened to ſtrike his calibaſh, which he inſtantly threw from him, and ran off. He was purſued into one of the caves above-mentioned, and no lion could have defended his den with greater bravery and fierceneſs; till at length, after he had found means to keep two of our people at bay for a conſiderable time, he expired, covered with wounds. This accident firſt brought us acquainted with the uſe to which theſe caverns are applied. About this time a man, advanced in years, was taken priſoner, bound, and conveyed on board the Reſolution, in the ſame boat, with the heads of his two countrymen. We never obſerved horror ſo ſtrongly portrayed, as in the face of this perſon, nor ſo violent a tranſition to immoderate joy, as when he was untied, and given to underſtand, that he might depart in ſafety. He ſhewed us that he was not deficient in gratitude, as he not only often returned afterwards with preſents of proviſions, but alſo did us other ſervices.

Soon after the deſtruction of the village, we ſaw, coming down the hill, a man, accompanied by fifteen or twenty boys, who held in their hands pieces of white cloth, plantains, green boughs, &c. It happened that this pacific embaſſy, as ſoon as they were within reach, received the fire of a party of our men. This, however, did not deter them from continuing their proceſſion, and the officer on duty came up, in time, to prevent a ſecond diſcharge. As they made a nearer approach, the principal perſon proved to be our friend Kaireekeea, who had fled when our people firſt ſet fire to the village, and had now returned, and expreſſed his deſire of being ſent on board the Reſolution. On his arrival we found him extremely thoughtful and grave. We endeavoured to convince him of the neceſſity there was of ſetting fire to the village, by which his houſe, and thoſe of his brethren were unintentionally deſtroyed. He expoſtulated with us on our ingratitude and want of friendſhip; and, indeed, it was not till the preſent moment, that we knew the whole extent of the injury that had been done them. He informed us, that, confiding in the promiſes Mr. King had made them, and as well as in the aſſurances they had received from the men, who had brought us ſome of Captain Cook's remains, they had not removed their effects back into the country, as the other inhabitants had done, but had put every valuable article of their own, as well as what they had collected from us, into a houſe adjoining to the morai, where they had the mortification to ſee it all ſet on fire by our people. He had, on coming on board, perceived the heads of his two countrymen lying on deck, at which he was greatly ſhocked, and earneſtly deſired that they might be thrown over-board. This requeſt, by the directions of Captain Clerke, was immediately complied with. In the evening our watering party returned on board, having ſuſtained no farther interruption. We paſſed a diſagreeable night; the cries and lamentations we heard from the ſhore being far more dreadful than ever. Our only conſolation on this occaſion, aroſe from the hopes that a repetition of ſuch ſeverities might not be requiſite in future. It is ſomewhat remarkable, that, amidſt all theſe diſturbances, the female natives, who were on board, did not offer to leave us, or diſcover any apprehenſions either for themſelves or their friends on ſhore. They appeared, indeed, ſo perfectly unconcerned, that ſome of them, who were on deck when the village was in flames, ſeemed to admire the ſpectacle, and frequently exclaimed, that it was maitai, or very fine.

On Thurſday, the 18th, in the morning, the treacherous Koah came off to the ſhips, as uſual. There being no longer any neceſſity for keeping terms with him, Mr. King was allowed to treat him as he thought proper. When he approached the ſide of the Reſolution, ſinging a ſong, and offering a hog, and ſome plantains, to Mr. King, the latter ordered him to keep off, and cautioned him never to make his appearance again without the bones of Captain Cook, leſt his life ſhould pay the forfeit of his repeated breach of faith. He did not appear much mortified with this unwelcome reception, but immediately returned on ſhore, and joined a party of his countrymen, who were throwing ſtones at our waterers. The body of the young man, who had been killed the preceding day, was found this morning lying at the entrance of the cave; and a mat was thrown over him by ſome of our people; ſoon after which they ſaw ſeveral of the natives carrying him off on their ſhoulders, and could hear them chanting, as they marched, a mournful ſong. At length the iſlanders being convinced that it was not the want of ability to chaſtize them, which had induced us at firſt to tolerate their provocations, deſiſted from moleſting our people; and, towards the evening, a chief, named Eappo, who had ſeldom viſited us, but whom we knew to be a man of the firſt diſtinction, came with preſents from Terreeoboo to ſue for peace. Theſe preſents were accepted, and the chief was diſmiſſed with the following anſwer: That no peace would be granted, till the remains of Captain Cook ſhould be reſtored. From Eappo we underſtood that the fleſh of all the bones of our people who had been ſlain, as well as the bones of the trunks, had been burnt; that the limb-bones of the marines had been diſtributed among the inferior chiefs; and that the remains of Captain Cook had been diſpoſed of as follows: the head to a great Eree, called Kahooopeou; the hair to Maiha-maiha; and the arms, legs, and thighs, to Terreeoboo. After it was dark, many of the natives came off with various ſorts of vegetables; and we alſo received from Kaireekeea two large preſents of the ſame articles.

On the 19th we were principally employed in ſending and receiving the meſſages that paſſed between Captain Clerke and the old king. Eappo was very urgent, that one of our officers ſhould go on ſhore; and offered to remain on board, in the mean time, as an hoſtage. This requeſt, however, was not complied with; and he left us with a promiſe of bringing the bones the following day. Our watering party, at the beach, did not meet with the leaſt oppoſition from the iſlanders; who, notwithſtanding our cautious behaviour, again ventured themſelves among us without any marks of diffidence or apprehenſion. On Saturday the 20th, early in the morning, we had the ſatisfaction of getting the fore-maſt ſtepped. This operation was attended with conſiderable difficulty, and ſome danger, our ropes being ſo extremely rotten, that the purchaſe ſeveral times gave way. Between the hours of ten and eleven, we ſaw a numerous body of the natives deſcending the hill, which is over the beach, in a ſort of proceſſion, each man carrying on his ſhoulders two or three ſugar-canes, and ſome bread-fruit, plantains, and taro, in his hand. They were preceded by two drummers, who, when they reached the water-ſide, ſeated themſelves by a white flag, and began beating their drums, while thoſe who had followed them, advanced, one by one, and depoſited the preſents they had brought with them; after which they retired in the ſame order. Soon afterwards Eappo appeared in his long feathered cloak, bearing ſomething with great ſolemnity in his hands; and having ſtationed himſelf on a rock, he made ſigns that a boat ſhould be ſent him. Captain Clerke, ſuppoſing that the chief had brought the bones of our late Commodore (which, indeed, proved to be the caſe), went himſelf in the pinnace to receive them, and ordered Mr. King to attend him in the cutter. When they arrived at the beach, Eappo, entering the pinnace, delivered the bones to Captain Clerke, wrapped up in a great quantity of fine new cloth, and covered with a ſpotted cloak of black and white feathers. He afterwards attended our gentlemen to the Reſolution, but could not be prevailed on to accompany them on board; being, perhaps, from a ſenſe of decency, unwilling to be preſent at the opening of the parcel. In this we found both the hands of Captain Cook entire, which were well known to us from a ſcar on one of them, that divided the fore-finger from the thumb, the whole length of the metacarpal bone; the ſkull, but with the ſcalp ſeparated from it, and the bones of the face wanting; the ſcalp, with the ears adhering to it, and the hair upon it cut ſhort; the bones of both the arms, with the ſkin of the fore-arms hanging to them; the bones of the thighs and legs joined together, but without the feet. The ligaments of the joints were obſerved to be entire; and the whole ſhewed ſufficient marks of having been in the fire, except the hands, which had the fleſh remaining upon them, and were cut in ſeveral places, and crammed with ſalt, moſt probably with a view of preſerving them. The ſkull was free from any fracture, but the ſcalp had a cut in the back part of it. The lower jaw and feet, which were wanting, had been ſeized, as Eappo informed us, by different Erees; and he alſo told us, that Terreeoboo was uſing every means to recover them.

The next morning, being the 21ſt of February, Eappo, and the king's ſon, came on board, and brought with them not only the remaining bones of Captain Cook, but likewiſe the barrels of his gun, his ſhoes, and ſome other trifles which had belonged to him. Eappo aſſured us, that Terreeoboo, Maiha-maiha, and himſelf were extremely deſirous of peace; that they had given us the moſt convincing proofs of it; and that they had been prevented from giving it ſooner by the other chiefs, many of whom were ſtill diſaffected to us. He lamented, with the moſt lively ſorrow, the death of ſix chiefs, who had been killed by our people; ſome of whom, he ſaid, were among our beſt friends. He informed us, that the cutter had been taken away by Pareea's people, probably in revenge for the blow that he had received; and that it had been broken up the following day. The arms of the marines, which we had alſo demanded, had been carried off, he ſaid, by the populace and were irrecoverable.

Nothing now remained, but to perform the laſt ſolemn offices to our excellent Commander. Eappo was diſmiſſed with orders to taboo all the bay; and, in the afternoon, his remains having been depoſited in a coffin, the funeral ſervice was read over them, and they were committed to the deep with the uſual military honours. Our feelings, on this mournful occaſion, are more eaſy to be conceived than expreſſed.

CHAP. XVI.

The Taboo laid on the bay taken off, and the ſhips ſurrounded with canoes—Orders for the Reſolution and Diſcovery to be unmoored—They weigh anchor and take their departure from Karakakooa bay—Sail in queſt of a harbour on the ſouth-eaſt ſide of Mowee—Driven to leeward by the current, and ſtrong eaſterly winds—Paſs Tohoorowa—South-weſt ſide of Mowee deſcribed—Proceed to Woahoo—Its north coaſt deſcribed—Diſappointed in attempting to water—Sail to Atooi; and anchor in Wymoa bay—The natives not ſo friendly as before—Their inſolence in demanding a hatchet for every caſk of water—Treat our people with contempt—Steal Lieutenant King's hanger—Their inſolence at the water ſide—Are fired at by two marines—One of them wounded—A viſit from the contending Chiefs—The ſhips anchor off Oneeheow—Their departure—A correct, copious, and complete account of Sandwich Iſlands—Extent of Owhyhee, the largeſt of the whole group—Its diſtricts, coaſts, adjacent country, &c. deſcribed—An account of ſeveral other iſlands—A particular and full account of the inhabitants of Sandwich Iſlands—Diviſion of the people into three claſſes—Genealogical account of the kings of Owhyhee and Mowee—Authority of the Erees—Tyranny of Pareea exerciſed on an inferior chief—An account of their religion—Their ſociety of prieſts—Their ideas of a future ſtate—A particular deſcription of the word Taboo—A remarkable inſtance of jealouſy—Funeral ceremonies at the death of an old Chief, &c. &c. &c.

ON the 22nd of February, 1779, during the morning, not a canoe came near the bay, the taboo, which Eappo, at our requeſt, had laid on it the preceding day, having not yet been taken off. At length that chief came on board; when we aſſured him that we were now perfectly ſatisfied; and that, as the Orono was buried, all remembrance of the late unhappy tranſactions was buried with him. We afterwards requeſted him to take off the taboo, and to make it known, that the iſlanders might bring proviſions to us as uſual. The ſhips were ſoon ſurrounded with canoes, and many of the Erees came on board, expreſſing their grief at what had happened, and their ſatisfaction at our reconciliation. Several of our friends, who did not favour us with a viſit, ſent preſents of large hogs, and other proviſions. Among the reſt, the old treacherous Koah came off to us, but we refuſed him admittance. We were now preparing to put to ſea, and Captain Clerke imagining, that, if the intelligence of our proceedings ſhould reach the iſlands to leeward before us, it might have a bad effect, gave orders, that the ſhips ſhould be unmoored. About eight in the evening, we diſmiſſed all the natives; and Eappo, and the friendly Kaireekeea, took their leave of us in a very affectionate manner. We immediately weighed anchor, and ſtood out of Karakakooa bay. The iſlanders were aſſembled in great numbers on the ſhore; and, as we paſſed along, received our laſt farewels, with every mark of good-will and affection. About ten o'clock P. M. having cleared the land, we ſtood to the northward, with a view of ſearching for an harbour, which the natives had often mentioned, on the ſouth-eaſt ſide of Mowee. We found ourſelves, the next morning, driven to leeward, by a ſwell from the N. E. and a freſh gale, from the ſame quarter, drove us ſtill farther to the weſtward. At midnight we tacked and ſtood four hours to the S. to keep clear of the land; and, at day-break, on the 24th, we were ſtanding towards a ſmall barren iſland, named Tahoorowa, about ſeven miles S. W. of Mowee. Having now no proſpect of making a cloſer examination of the S. E. parts of Mowee, we bore away, and kept along the S. E. ſide of Tahoorowa. Steering cloſe round its weſtern extremity, in order to fetch the W. ſide of Mowee, we ſuddenly ſhoaled our water, and ſaw the ſea breaking on ſome rocks almoſt right a-head. We then kept away about a league and a half, and again ſteered to the northward; when we ſtood for a paſſage between Mowee, and an iſland named Ranai. In the afternoon, the weather was calm, with light airs from the W. We ſtood to the N. N. W. but obſerving a ſhoal about ſunſet, and the weather being unſettled, we ſtood towards the S. We had paſſed the S. W. ſide of this iſland, without being able to approach the ſhore. It forms the ſame diſtant view as the N. E. as ſeen when we returned from the N. in November, 1778; the hilly-parts, connected by a low flat iſthmus, having, at the firſt view, the appearance of two ſeparate iſlands. This deceptive appearance continued, till we were within about ten leagues of the coaſt, which bending a great way inward, formed a capacious bay. The weſternmoſt point, off which the ſhoal runs that we have juſt now mentioned, is rendered remarkable by a ſmall hillock; S. of which is a fine ſandy bay; and on the ſhore, are ſeveral huts, with plenty of cocoa-trees about them. In the courſe of the day ſeveral of the natives viſited us, and brought proviſions with them. We preſently diſcovered, that they had heard of our unfortunate diſaſters at Owhyhee. They were extremely anxious to be informed of the particulars, from a woman who had hid herſelf in the Reſolution, in order to obtain a paſſage to Atooi; making particular enquiries about Pareea, and ſome other chiefs; and ſeeming much agitated at the death of Kaneena, and his brother. But, in whatever light this buſineſs might have been repreſented by the woman, it produced no bad effect in their behaviour, which was civil and obliging to an extreme.

On Thurſday, the 25th, in the morning, the wind being at E. we ſteered along the S. ſide of Ranai, till almoſt noon, when we had baffling winds and calms till the evening; after which, we had a light eaſterly breeze, and ſteered for the W. of Morotoi. The current, which had ſet from the N. E. ever ſince we left Karakakooa bay, changed its direction, in the courſe of this day, to the S. E. The wind was again variable during the night; but, early in the morning of the 26th, it ſettled at E. blowing ſo freſh, as to oblige us to double-reef the top-ſails. At ſeven, we opened a ſmall bay, diſtant about two leagues, having a fine ſandy beach; but not perceiving any appearance of freſh water, we endeavoured to get to the windward of Woahoo, an iſland which we had ſeen in January, 1778. We ſaw the land about two in the afternoon, bearing W. by N. at the diſtance of about eight leagues. We tacked, as ſoon as it was dark, and again bore away at day-light on the 27th. Between ten and eleven, we were about a league off the ſhore, and near the middle of the N. E. ſide of the iſland.

The coaſt to the northward, conſiſts of detached hills, aſcending perpendicularly from the ſea; the ſides being covered with wood, and the vallies, between them, appearing to be fertile, and well cultivated. An extenſive bay was obſervable to the ſouthward, bounded, to the S. E. by a low point of land, covered with cocoa-nut trees; off which, an inſulated rock appeared, at the diſtance of a mile from the ſhore. The wind continuing to blow freſh, we were unwilling to entangle ourſelves with a lee-ſhore. Inſtead of attempting, therefore, to examine the bay, we hauled up, and ſteered in the direction of the coaſt. At noon, we were about two leagues from the iſland, and a-breaſt of the N. point of it. It is low and flat, having a reef ſtretching off almoſt a mile and an half. Between the N. point, and a head-land to the S. W. the land bends inward, and ſeemed to promiſe a good road. We therefore ſteered along the ſhore, at about a mile diſtance. At two, we were induced, by the ſight of a fine river, to anchor in thirteen fathoms water. In the afternoon, Mr. King attended the two Captains on ſhore, where few of the natives were to be ſeen, and thoſe principally women. The men, we were informed, were gone to Morotoi, to fight Tahyterree; but their chief, Perreeoranee, remained behind, and would certainly attend us, as ſoon as he was informed of our arrival. To our great diſappointment, the water had a brackiſh taſte, for about two hundred yards up the river; beyond which, however, it was perfectly freſh, and was a delightful ſtream. Farther up, we came to the conflux of two ſmall rivulets, branching off to the right and left of a ſteep romantic mountain. The banks of the river, and all that we ſaw of Woahoo, are in fine cultivation, and full of villages; the face of the country being alſo remarkably beautiful and pictureſque. It would have been a laborious buſineſs to have watered at this place, Mr. King was therefore diſpatched to ſearch about the coaſt to leeward; but, being unable to land, on account of a reef of coral, which extended along the ſhore, Captain Clerke reſolved to proceed immediately to Atooi. In the morning, about eight, we weighed and ſtood to the north; and, on Sunday, the 28th, at day light, we bore away for that iſland, and were in ſight of it by noon. We were off its eaſtern extremity, which is a green flat point, about ſun-ſet. As it was dark, we did not venture to run for the road on the S. W. ſide, but ſpent the night in plying on and off, and anchored, at nine the next morning, being Monday the 1ſt of March, in 25 fathoms water. In running down, from the S. E. point of the iſland, we ſaw, in many places, the appearance of ſhoal water, at ſome diſtance from the land. Being anchored in our old ſtation, ſeveral canoes came to viſit us; but it was very obſervable, that there was not that appearance of cordiality in their manner, and complacency in their countenances, as when we ſaw them before. They had no ſooner got on board, but one of them informed us, that we had communicated a diſorder to the women, which had killed many perſons of both ſexes. He at that time was afflicted with the venereal diſeaſe, and minutely deſcribed the various ſymptoms which had attended it. As no appearance of that diſorder had been obſerved amongſt them, on our firſt arrival, we were, it is to be feared, the authors of this irreparable miſchief. What we had principally in view, at this place, was to water the ſhips with as much expedition as poſſible, and Mr. King was ſent on ſhore in the afternoon, with the launch and pinnace, laden with caſks. He was accompanied by the gunner of the Reſolution, who was inſtructed to trade for ſome proviſions; and they were attended by a guard of five marines. Multitudes of people were collected upon the beach, by whom, at firſt, we were kindly received; but, after we had landed the caſks, they began to be exceedingly troubleſome. Knowing from experience, how difficult a taſk it was to repreſs this diſpoſition, without the interpoſition of their chiefs, we were ſorry to be informed, that they were all at a diſtant part of the iſland. Indeed, we both felt and lamented the want of their aſſiſtance; for we could hardly form a circle, as our practice uſually was, for the ſafety and convenience of the trading party. No ſooner had we taken this ſtep, and poſted marines to keep off the populace, than a man took hold of the bayonet belonging to one of the ſoldier's muſquets, and endeavoured to wrench it forcibly from his hand. Mr. King immediately advanced towards them, when the native quitted his hold, and retired; but immediately returned, having a ſpear in one hand, and a dagger in the other; and it was with difficulty that his countrymen could reſtrain him from engaging with the ſoldier. This affray was occaſioned by the natives having received, from the ſoldier, a ſlight prick with his bayonet, to induce him to keep without the line. At this time, our ſituation required great management and circumſpection; Mr. King accordingly enjoined, that no one ſhould preſume to fire, or proceed to any other act of violence, without poſitive commands. Having given theſe inſtructions, he was ſummoned to the aſſiſtance of the watering party, where he found the natives in the ſame miſchievous diſpoſition. They had peremptorily demanded, for every caſk of water, a large hatchet; which not being complied with, they would not permit the ſailors to roll them to the boats. When Mr. King had joined them, one of the natives approached him, with great inſolence, and made the ſame demand. Mr. King told him, that as a friend, he was welcome to a hatchet, but he certainly would carry off the water, without paying for it; and inſtantly ordered the pinnace men to proceed; at the ſame time calling for three marines, from the trading party, to protect them. This becoming ſpirit ſo far ſucceeded, as to prevent any daring attempt to interrupt us; but they ſtill perſevered in the moſt teaſing and inſulting behaviour. Some of them, under pretence of aſſiſting the ſailors, in rolling the caſks towards the ſhore, gave them a different direction; others ſtole the hats from off our people's heads, pulled them backward by the ſkirts of their clothes, and tripped up their heels; the populace, during all this time, ſhouting and laughing, with a mixture of mockery and malice. They afterwards took an opportunity of ſtealing the cooper's bucket, and forcibly took away his bag. Their principal aim, however, was to poſſeſs themſelves of the muſquets of the marines, who were continually complaining of their attempts to force them from their hands. Though they, in general, preſerved a kind of deference and reſpect for Mr. King, yet they obliged him to contribute his ſhare towards their ſtock of plunder. One of them approached him, in a familiar manner, and diverted his attention, whilſt another ſeized his hanger, which he held careleſsly in his hand, and ran away with it. Such inſolence was not to be repelled by force. Prudence dictated that we muſt patiently ſubmit to it; at the ſame time, guarding againſt its effects as well as we were able. Mr. King was, however, ſomewhat alarmed, on being ſoon after informed by the ſerjeant of marines, that, turning ſuddenly round, he ſaw a man behind him, armed with a dagger, in the poſition of ſtriking. Though he might, perhaps, be miſtaken, in this particular, our ſituation was truly critical and alarming; and the ſmalleſt error or miſtake, on our part, might have been of fatal conſequences.

Our people being ſeparated into three ſmall parties; one filling caſks at the lake; another rolling them to the ſhore; and a third purchaſing proviſions; Mr. King had ſome intentions of collecting them together, in order to protect the performance of one duty at a time. But, on due reflection, he thought it more adviſeable to let them proceed as they had begun. If a real attack had been made, even our whole force could have made but a poor reſiſtance. He thought, on the other hand, that ſuch a ſtep might operate to our diſadvantage, as being an evident token of our fears. Beſides, in the preſent caſe, the crowd was kept divided, and many of them wholly occupied in bartering. Perhaps the principal cauſe of their not attacking us was, their dread of the effects of our arms; and, as we appeared to place ſo much confidence in this advantage, as to oppoſe only five marines to ſuch a multitude of people, their ideas of our ſuperiority muſt have been greatly exalted. It was our buſineſs to cheriſh this opinion; and, it muſt ever be acknowledged, to the honour of the whole party, that it was impoſſible for any men to behave better, in order to ſtrengthen theſe impreſſions. Whatever could be conſidered as a jeſt, they received with patience and good-nature; but, if they were interrupted by any ſerious attempt, they oppoſed it with reſolute looks and menaces. At length, we ſo far ſucceeded, as to get all our caſks to the ſea-ſide, without any accident of conſequence: but, while our people were getting the caſks into the launch, the inhabitants, thinking they ſhould have no farther opportunity of plundering, grew more daring and inſolent. The ſerjeant of marines luckily ſuggeſted to Mr. King, the advantage of ſending off his party firſt into the boats, by which means the muſquets would be taken out of their reach; which, as above related, were the grand objects the iſlanders had in view: and, if they ſhould happen to attack us, the marines could more effectually defend us, than if they were on ſhore. Every thing was now in the boats, and only Mr. King, Mr. Anderſon, the gunner, and a ſeaman of the boat's crew, remained on ſhore. The pinnace laying beyond the ſurf, which we were under a neceſſity of ſwimming through, Mr. King ordered the other two to make the beſt of their way to it, and told them he would follow them. They both refuſed to comply with this order, and it became a matter of conteſt, who ſhould be the laſt on ſhore. Some haſty expreſſion, it ſeems, Mr. King had juſt before made uſe of to the ſailor, which he conſidered as a reflection on his courage, and excited his reſentment; and the old gunner, as a point of honour was now ſtarted, conceived it to be his duty to take a part in it. In this whimſical ſituation, they, perhaps, might have long remained, had not the diſpute been ſettled by the ſtones, which began to fly plentifully about us, and by the exclamations of the people from the boats, begging us to be expeditious, as the natives were armed with clubs and ſpears, and purſuing us into the water. Mr. King arrived firſt at the pinnace, and, perceiving Mr. Anderſon was ſo far behind, as not to be entirely out of danger, he ordered one muſquet to be fired; but, in the hurry of executing his orders, the marines fired two. The natives immediately ran away, leaving only one man and woman on the beach. The man attempted to riſe ſeveral times, but was not able, having been wounded in the groin. The iſlanders, in a ſhort time, returned; and, ſurrounding the wounded man, brandiſhed their ſpears at us, with an air of defiance; but, by the time we reached the ſhips, ſome perſons arrived which we ſuppoſed to be the chiefs, by whom they were all driven from the ſhore. During our abſence Captain Clerke had been under terrible apprehenſions for our ſafety; which had been conſiderably increaſed by his miſunderſtanding ſome of the natives, with whom he had converſed on board. The name of Captain Cook being frequently mentioned, accompanied with circumſtantial deſcriptions of his death and deſtruction, he concluded, that they had received intelligence of the unfortunate events at Owhyhee, to which they alluded. But they were only endeavouring to make him underſtand, what wars had ariſen on account of the goats, which Captain Cook had left at Oneeheow, and that the poor goats had been ſlaughtered, during the conteſt for the property of them. Captain Clerke, applying theſe ſhocking repreſentations to our miſfortunes at Owhyhee, and to an indication of revenge, fixed his teleſcope upon us the whole time; and, as ſoon as he ſaw the ſmoke of the muſquets, ordered the boats to be put off to our aſſiſtance.

On Tueſday, the 2d of March, in the morning, Mr. King was again ordered on ſhore, with the watering party. As we had ſo narrowly eſcaped the preceding day, Captain Clerke augmented our force from both ſhips, and we had a guard of forty men under arms. This precaution, however, was found to be unneceſſary; for the beach was left entirely to ourſelves, and the ground, extending from the landing-place to the lake, tabooed. Hence we concluded, that ſome of the chiefs had viſited this quarter; who, being unable to ſtay, had conſiderately taken this ſtep, that we might be accommodated with ſafety. Several men appeared with ſpears and daggers, on the other ſide of the river, but never attempted to moleſt us. Their women came over, and ſeated themſelves cloſe by us, on the banks; and about the middle of the day, ſome of the men were prevailed on to bring us hogs and roots, and alſo to dreſs them for us. When we had left the beach, they came down to the ſea-ſide, and one of them had the audacity to throw a ſtone at us; but, as his conduct was highly cenſured by the reſt, we did not expreſs any kind of reſentment. On the 3d, we completed our watering, without much difficulty; and, on returning to the ſhips, we were informed that ſeveral chiefs had been on board, and had apologized for the conduct of their countrymen, attributing their riotous behaviour to the quarrels then ſubſiſting among the principal people of the iſland, and which had deſtroyed all order and ſubordination. At this time the government of Atooi was diſputed between Toneoneo, who had the ſupreme power when we were there the preceding year, and a youth named Teavee. By different fathers, they are both the grandſons of Pereeorannee, king of Woahoo; who gave Atooi to the former, and Oneeheow to the latter. The quarrel originated about the goats which we had left at Oneeheow the year before; they being claimed by Toneoneo, as that iſland was a dependency of his. The adherents of Teavee inſiſting on the right of poſſeſſion, both parties prepared to ſupport their pretenſions, and a battle enſued juſt before our arrival, wherein Toneoneo had been defeated. Toneoneo was likely to become more affected by the conſequence of this victory, than by the loſs of the objects in diſpute; for the mother of Teavee having married a ſecond huſband, who was not only a chief at Atooi, but alſo at the head of a powerful faction there, he thought of embracing the preſent opportunity of driving Toneoneo out of the iſland, that his ſon-in-law might ſucceed to the government. The goats, which had increaſed to ſix, and would probably have ſtocked theſe iſlands in a few years, were deſtroyed in this conteſt. Thurſday, the 4th, we were viſited, on board the Reſolution, by the father-in-law, the mother, and the ſiſter of the young prince, who made ſeveral curious preſents to Captain Clerke. Among the reſt, were ſome fiſh-hooks, which were made from the bones of Terreeoboo's father, who had been killed in an unſucceſsful deſcent upon Woahoo. Alſo a fly-flap, from the hands of the prince's ſiſter, which had a human bone for its handle, and had been given to her by her father-in-law, as a trophy. They were not accompanied by young Teavee, he being then engaged in the performance of ſome religious rites, on account of the victory he had obtained. The 5th and 6th, were employed in completing the Diſcovery's water.

The carpenters were engaged in caulking the ſhips, and preparing for our next cruiſe. We no longer received any moleſtation from the natives, who ſupplied us plentifully with pork and vegetables.

This day we were viſited by an Indian, who brought a piece of iron on board, to be formed into the ſhape of a pahooa. It was the bolt of ſome large ſhip timbers, but neither the officers nor men could diſcover to what nation it belonged; though from the ſhape of the bolt, and the paleneſs of the iron, they were convinced it was not Engliſh. They enquired ſtrictly of the native how he came poſſeſſed of it, when he informed them, that it was taken out of a large piece of timber, which had been driven upon their iſland, ſince we were there in January, 1778.

On Sunday, the 7th, we received a viſit from Toneoneo, at which we were ſurprized. Hearing the dowager princeſs was on board, he could hardly be prevailed on to enter the ſhip. When they met, they caſt an angry lowering look at each other. He did not ſtay long, and appeared much dejected. We remarked, however, with ſome degree of ſurprize, that the women proſtrated themſelves before him, both at his coming and going away; and all the natives on board treated him with that reſpect which is uſually paid to perſons of his rank. It was ſomewhat remarkable, that a man, who was then in a ſtate of actual hoſtility with Teavee's party, ſhould venture alone within the power of his enemies. Indeed, the civil diſſenſions, which are frequent in all the ſouth ſea iſlands, ſeem to be conducted without much acrimony; the depoſed governor ſtill enjoying the rank of an Eree, and may put in practice ſuch means as may ariſe, to regain the conſequence which he has loſt.

On the 8th, at nine in the morning, we weighed, and proceeded towards Oneeheow, and came to anchor in 20 fathoms water, at about three in the afternoon, nearly on the ſpot where we anchored in 1778. With the other anchor, we moored in 26 fathoms water. We had a ſtrong gale from the eaſtward in the night, and, the next morning, the ſhip had driven a whole cable's length, both anchors being almoſt brought a-head; in which ſituation we were obliged to continue, this and the two following days.

On Friday, the 12th, the weather being more moderate, the Maſter was diſpatched to the N. W. ſide of the iſland, in ſearch of a more commodious place for anchoring. In the evening he returned, having found a fine bay, with good anchorage, in 18 fathoms water. The points of the bay were in the direction of N. by E. and S. by W. A ſmall village was ſituated on the N. ſide of the bay, to the eaſtward of which were four wells of good water. Mr. Bligh went far enough to the N. to convince himſelf that Oreehoua, and Oneeheow, were two ſeparate iſlands. Being now on the point of taking our final leave of the Sandwich Iſlands, it may be proper to give here a general and correct account of their ſituation, and natural hiſtory, as well as of the cuſtoms and manners of the natives; which will ſerve as a kind of ſupplement to a former deſcription, the reſult of our firſt viſit to theſe iſlands.

This group is compoſed of 11 iſlands, extending in long. from 199 deg. 36 min. to 205 deg. 6 min. E. and in lat. from 18 deg. 54 min. to 22 deg. 15 min. N. Their names, according to the natives, are, 1. Owhyhee, 2. Atooi, Atowi, or Towi; which is alſo ſometimes called Kowi. 3. Woahoo, or Oahoo. 4. Mowee. 5. Morotoi, or Morokoi. 6. Oreehoua, or Reehoua. 7. Morotinnee, or Merokinne. 8. Tahoora. 9. Ranai, or Oranai. 10. Oneeheow, or Neheeow. 11. Kahowrowee, or Tahoorowa. Theſe are all inhabited, except Tahoora and Morotinnee. Beſides thoſe we have enumerated, we heard of another iſland named Modoo-papapa, or Komodoo-papapa, ſituated to the W. S. W. of Tahoora; it is low and ſandy, and is viſited ſolely for the purpoſe of catching turtle and water-fowl. As we could never learn that the natives had knowledge of any other iſlands, it is moſt probable that no others exiſt in their neighbourhood. Captain Cook had diſtinguiſhed this cluſter of iſlands by the name of the Sandwich Iſlands, in honour of the Earl of Sandwich, then firſt Lord of the Admiralty, under whoſe adminiſtration he had enriched Geography with ſo many valuable diſcoveries; a tribute juſtly due to that nobleman, for the encouragement and ſupport which theſe voyages derived from his power, and for the zealous eagerneſs with which he ſeconded the views of our illuſtrious navigator.

The moſt eaſterly of theſe iſlands, called Owhyhee, and by far the largeſt of them all, is of a triangular figure, and nearly equilateral. The angular points conſtitute the nothern, ſouthern, and eaſtern extremities. The lat. of the northern extreme is 20 deg. 17 min. N. and its long. 204 deg. 2 min. E. the ſouthern end ſtands in the long. of 204 deg. 15 min. E. and in the lat. of 18 deg. 54 min. N. and the eaſtern extremity is in the lat. of 19 deg. 34 min. N. and in the long. of 205 deg. 6 min. E. The circumference of the whole iſland is about 255 geographical miles, or 293 Engliſh ones. Its breadth is 24 leagues; and its greateſt length, which lies nearly in a N. and S. direction, is 28 leagues and a half. It is divided into ſix extenſive diſtricts, namely, Akona and Koaarra, which are on the W. ſide; Kaoo and Opoona, on the S. E. and Aheedoo and Amakooa, on the N. E. A mountain, named Mouna Kaah, (or the mountain Kaah) which riſes in three peaks, continually covered with ſnow, and may be diſcerned at the diſtance of 40 leagues, ſeparates the diſtrict of Amakooa from that of Aheedoo. The coaſt, to the northward of this mountain, is compoſed of high and abrupt cliffs, down which fall many beautiful caſcades of water. We once flattered ourſelves with the hopes of finding a harbour round a bluff head, on a part of this coaſt, in the lat. of 20 deg. 10 min. N. and the long. of 204 deg. 26 min. E. but after we had doubled the point, and were ſtanding cloſe in, we found that it was connected, by a low valley, with another elevated head to the north-weſtward. The country riſes inland with a gradual aſcent, and is interſected by narrow deep glens, or rather chaſms: it ſeemed to be well cultivated, and to have many villages ſcattered about it. The ſnowy mountain above-mentioned is very ſteep, and its loweſt part abounds with wood. The coaſt of Aheedoo is of a moderate elevation; and the interior parts have the appearance of being more even than the country towards the N. W. We cruiſed off theſe two diſtricts for near a month; and whenever our diſtance from the ſhore would permit, were ſurrounded by canoes laden with refreſhments of every kind. On this ſide of the iſland we often met with a very heavy ſea, and a great ſwell; and, as there was much foul ground off the ſhore, we ſeldom made a nearer approach to the land than two or three leagues. Towards the N. E. of Apoona, the coaſt, which conſtitutes the eaſtern extreme of the iſland, is rather low and flat. In the inland parts the acclivity is very gradual; and the country abounds with bread-fruit, and cocoa-nut trees. This appeared to us to be the fineſt part of the whole iſland; and we were afterwards informed, that the king occaſionally reſided here. The hills, at the ſouth-weſtern extremity, riſe with ſome abruptneſs from the ſea-ſide, leaving only a narrow border of lowland towards the beach. The ſides of theſe hills were covered with verdure; but the adjacent country ſeemed thinly inhabited. When our ſhips doubled the E. point of the iſland, we had ſight of another ſnowy mountain, called by the natives, Mouna Roa (or the extenſive mountain) which, during the whole time we were ſailing along the ſouth-eaſtern ſide, continued to be a very conſpicuous object. It was flat at the ſummit, which was perpetually involved in ſnow; and we once obſerved its ſides alſo ſlightly covered with it for a conſiderable way down. According to the tropical line of ſnow, as determined by Monſieur Condamine, from obſervations made on the Cordilleras in America, the height of this mountain muſt be, at leaſt, 16,020 feet. It therefore exceeds the height of the Pico de Teyde, or Peak of Teneriffe, by 3680 feet, according to the computation of the Chevalier de Borda, or 724, according to that of Dr. Heberden. The peaks of Mouna Kaah ſeemed to be of the height of about half a mile: and, as they are wholly covered with ſnow, the altitude of their ſummits muſt at leaſt be 18,400 feet.

The diſtrict of Kaoo exhibits a moſt horrid and diſmal proſpect; the whole country having, to appearance, undergone an entire change from the conſequences of ſome dreadful convulſion. The ground is, in all parts, covered with cinders; and, in many places, interſected with blackiſh ſtreaks, which ſeem to mark the progreſs of a lava that has flowed, not many centuries ago, from Mouna Roa to the ſhore. The ſouth promontory appears like the mere dregs of a volcano. The head-land conſiſts of broken and craggy rocks, terminating in acute points, and irregularly piled on each other. Notwithſtanding the dreary aſpect of this part of the iſland, it contains many villages, and is far more populous than the verdant mountains of Apoona. Nor is it difficult to account for this circumſtance. Theſe iſlanders not being poſſeſſed of any cattle, have no occaſion for paſturage; and are therefore inclined to prefer ſuch ground as is either more conveniently ſituated for fiſhing, or beſt adapted to the cultivation of plantains and yams. Now amidſt theſe ruins there are many ſpots of rich ſoil, which are with great care laid out in plantations; and the neighbouring ſea abounds with excellent fiſh of various kinds. Off this part of the coaſt, at leſs than a cable's length from the ſhore, we did not ſtrike ground with 160 fathoms of line, except in a ſmall bight to the E. of the ſouthern point, where we found from 50 to 58 fathoms of water, over a ſandy bottom. It may be proper to obſerve, before we proceed to give an account of the weſtern diſtricts, that the whole coaſt we have deſcribed, from the northern to the ſouthern extreme, affords not a ſingle harbour, nor the leaſt ſhelter for ſhipping. The ſouth-weſtern parts of Akona are in a condition ſimilar to that of the adjoining diſtrict of Kaoo; but the country further towards the N. has been carefully cultivated, and is exceedingly populous. In this diviſion of the iſland lies Karakakooa bay, of which we have already given a deſcription. Scarce any thing is ſeen along the coaſt, but the fragments of black ſcorched rocks; behind which, the ground, for the ſpace of about two miles and a half, riſes gradually, and ſeems to have been once covered with looſe burnt ſtones. Theſe have been cleared away by the inhabitants, frequently to the depth of three feet and upwards; and the fertility of the ſoil has amply repaid their labour. Here they cultivate in a rich aſhy mould, the cloth-plant and ſweet potatoes. Groves of cocoa-nut-trees are ſcattered among the fields, which are encloſed with ſtone fences. On the riſing ground beyond theſe, they plant bread-fruit trees, which flouriſh with ſurpriſing luxuriance. The diſtrict of Koaarra extends from the moſt weſterly point to the northern extreme of the iſland. The whole coaſt between them forms a ſpacious bay, which is called by the natives Toeyah-yah, and is bounded to the northward by two conſpicuous hills. Towards the bottom of this bay, there is foul, corally ground, that extends to the diſtance of upwards of a mile from the ſhore, without which there is good anchorage. The country, as far as the eye could diſcern, appeared to be fruitful and populous; but no freſh water was to be found. The ſoil ſeemed to be of the ſame kind with that of the diſtrict of Kaoo.

Having thus deſcribed the coaſts of the iſland of Owhyhee, and the adjacent country, we ſhall now relate ſome particulars reſpecting the interior parts, from the information we obtained from a party, who ſet out on the 26th of January, on an expedition up the country, principally with an intention of reaching the ſnowy mountains. Having previouſly procured two of the iſlanders to ſerve them as guides, they quitted the village about four o'clock in the afternoon. Their courſe was eaſterly, inclining a little to the ſouth. Within three or four miles from the bay, they found the country as already deſcribed; but the hills afterwards roſe with a leſs gradual aſcent, which brought them to ſome extenſive plantations, conſiſting of the taro or eddy root, and ſweet potatoes, with plants of the cloth-tree. Both the taro and the ſweet potatoes are here planted at the diſtance of four feet from each other. The potatoes are earthed up almoſt to the top of the ſtalk, with a proper quantity of light mould. The taro is left bare to the root, and the mould round it is put in the form of a baſon, for the purpoſe of holding the rain-water; this root requiring a certain degree of moiſture. At the Friendly and Society Iſles, the taro was conſtantly planted in low and moiſt ſituations, and generally in thoſe places where there was the conveniency of a rivulet to flood it. This mode of culture was conſidered as abſolutely neceſſary; but we now found that this root, with the precaution before-mentioned, ſucceeds equally well in a more dry ſituation. It was, indeed, remarked by all of us, that the taro of the Sandwich Iſlands was the beſt we had ever taſted. The walls, by which theſe plantations are ſeparated from each other, are compoſed of the looſe burnt ſtones, which are met with in clearing the ground, and, being totally concealed by ſugar-canes, that are planted cloſe on each ſide, form the moſt beautiful fences that can be imagined. Our party ſtopped for the night at the ſecond hut they obſerved among the plantations, where they ſuppoſed themſelves to be ſix or ſeven miles diſtant from our ſhips. The proſpect from this ſpot was deſcribed by them as very delightful: they had a view of our veſſels in the bay before them; to the left they ſaw a continued range of villages, interſperſed with groves of cocoa-nut-trees, ſpreading along the ſhore; a thick wood extending itſelf behind them; and, to the right, a very conſiderable extent of ground, laid out with great regularity in well cultivated plantations, diſplayed itſelf to their view. Near this ſpot the natives pointed out to them, at a diſtance from every other dwelling, the reſidence of a hermit, who, they ſaid, had, in the former part of his life, been a great chief and warrior, but had long ago retired from the ſea-coaſt of the iſland, and now never quitted the environs of his cottage. As they approached him, they proſtrated themſelves, and afterwards preſented him with ſome proviſions. His behaviour was eaſy, frank, and chearful. He teſtified little aſtoniſhment at the ſight of our people, and though preſſed to accept of ſome European curioſities, he thought proper to decline the offer, and ſoon retired to his cottage. Our party repreſented him as by far the moſt aged perſon they had ever ſeen; judging him to be, at a moderate computation, upwards of a hundred years of age. As they had ſuppoſed that the mountain was not more than ten or a dozen miles diſtant from the bay, and conſequently expected to reach it with eaſe early the following morning, they were now greatly ſurprized to find the diſtance ſcarce perceivably diminiſhed. This circumſtance, with the uninhabited ſtate of the country which they were on the point of entering, rendering it neceſſary to provide a ſupply of proviſions, they diſpatched one of their conductors back to the village for that purpoſe. Whilſt they waited his return, they were joined by ſeveral of Kaoo's ſervants, whom that generous old man had ſent after them, loaded with refreſhments, and fully authorized, as their rout lay through his grounds, to demand, and take away with them whatever they might want. Our travellers were ſurprized on finding the cold here ſo intenſe. But, as they had no thermometer with them, they could only form their judgment of it from their feelings; which, from the warm atmoſphere they had quitted, muſt have been a very fallacious method of judging. They found it, however, ſo cold, that they could ſcarce get any ſleep, and the iſlanders could not ſleep at all; both parties being diſturbed, during the whole night, by continual coughing. As they, at this time, could not be at any very great height, their diſtance from the ſea being no more than ſix or ſeven miles, and part of the road on a very moderate aſcent, this uncommon degree of cold muſt be attributed to the eaſterly wind blowing freſh over the ſnowy mountains. Early the next morning, they proceeded on their journey, and filled their calibaſhes at a well of excellent water, ſituate about half a mile from their hut. After they had paſſed the plantations, they arrived at a thick wood, which they entered by a path that had been made for the convenience of the iſlanders, who frequently repair thither for the purpoſe of catching birds, as well as procuring the wild or horſe--plantain. Their progreſs now became extremely ſlow, and was attended with great labour; for the ground was either ſwampy, or covered with large ſtones; the path narrow, and often interrupted by trees lying acroſs it, which they were obliged to climb over, as the thickneſs of the under-wood, on each ſide, rendered it impracticable to paſs round them. They ſaw, in theſe woods, pieces of white cloth fixed on poles, at ſmall diſtances, which they imagined were land marks for the diviſion of property, as they only obſerved them where the wild plantains grew. The trees were of the ſame kind with the ſpice tree of New Holland; they were ſtraight and lofty, and their circumference was from two to four feet. Having advanced nine or ten miles in the wood, they had the mortification of finding themſelves, ſuddenly, within ſight of the ſea, and not very far from it; the path having turned off imperceptibly to the S. and carried them to the right of the mountain, which it was their intention to reach. Their diſappointment was conſiderably heightened by the uncertainty under which they now were with reſpect to its true bearings, as they could not at preſent gain a view of it from the top of the higheſt trees. They, therefore, thought proper to walk back ſix or ſeven miles to an unoccupied hut, where they had left two of their own people, and three of the natives, with the ſmall remnant of their proviſions. Here they paſſed the ſecond night, during which the air was ſo extremely ſharp, that, by the morning, their guides were all gone off, except one.

Being at this time in want of proviſions, which laid them under a neceſſity of returning to ſome of the cultivated parts of the iſland, they left the wood by the ſame path by which they had entered it. When they arrived at the plantations, they were ſurrounded by the iſlanders, from whom they purchaſed a freſh ſupply of neceſſaries; and prevailed upon two of them to accompany them as guides, in the room of thoſe who had gone away. Having procured the beſt information they could poſſibly obtain with regard to the direction of their road, the party, who were now nine in number, marched for about half a dozen miles along the ſkirts of the wood, and then entered it again by a path leading towards the E. They paſſed, for the firſt three miles, through a foreſt of lofty ſpice-trees, which grew on a rich loam. At the back of theſe trees they met with an equal extent of low ſhrubby trees, together with a conſiderable quantity of thick under-wood, upon a bottom of looſe burnt ſtones. This led them to another foreſt of ſpice-trees, and the ſame rich browniſh ſoil, which was again ſucceeded by a barren ridge of a ſimilar kind with the former. Theſe ridges, as far as they could be ſeen, appeared to run parallel with the ſea ſhore, and to have Mouna Roa for their centre. In paſſing through the woods they found many unfiniſhed canoes, and huts in ſeveral places: but they ſaw none of the inhabitants. After they had penetrated almoſt three miles into the ſecond wood, they arrived at two huts, where they ſtopped, being greatly fatigued with the day's journey, in the courſe of which they had walked, according to their own computation, at leaſt twenty miles. Having found no ſprings from the time they quitted the plantations, they had greatly ſuffered from the violence of their thirſt; in conſequence of which they were obliged, before the evening came on, to ſeparate into ſmall parties, and go in queſt of water. They, at laſt, met with ſome that had been left by rain in the bottom of a half-finiſhed canoe; which, though of a reddiſh colour, was by no means unwelcome to them. Throughout the night, the cold was more intenſe than before; and though they had taken care to wrap themſelves up in mats and clothes of the country, and to keep a large fire between the two huts, they could get but very little ſleep, and were under the neceſſity of walking about for the greateſt part of the night. Their elevation was now, in all probability, pretty conſiderable, as the ground, over which their journey lay, had been generally on the aſcent. On the next morning, which was the 29th, they ſet out early, with an intention of making their laſt and greateſt effort to reach the ſnowy mountain; but their ſpirits were conſiderably depreſſed, on finding that the miſerable pittance of water, which they had diſcovered the preceding night, was expended. The path, which reached no farther than where canoes had been built, being now terminated, they were obliged to make their way as well as they could; frequently climbing up into the moſt lofty trees, to explore the ſurrounding country. They arrived, about eleven o'clock, at a ridge of burnt ſtones, from the top of which they had a proſpect of the Mouna Roa, which then appeared to be at the diſtance of between twelve and fourteen miles from them. They now entered into a conſultation, whether they ſhould proceed any further, or reſt contented with the view before them of the ſnowy mountain. Since the path had ceaſed, their road had become highly fatiguing, and was growing ſtill more ſo, every ſtep they advanced. The ground was almoſt every where broken into deep fiſſures, which, being ſlightly covered with moſs, made them ſtumble almoſt continually; and the intervening ſpace conſiſted of a ſurface of looſe burnt ſtones, which broke under their feet. Into ſome of theſe fiſſures they threw ſtones, which ſeemed from the noiſe they made, to fall to a conſiderable depth; and the ground ſounded hollow as they walked upon it. Beſides theſe circumſtances, which diſcouraged them from proceeding, they found their conductors ſo averſe to going on, that they had reaſon to think they would not be prevailed on to remain out another night. They, therefore, at length came to a determination of returning to the ſhips, after taking a ſurvey of the country from the higheſt trees they could find. From this elevation, they perceived themſelves ſurrounded with wood towards the ſea; they were unable to diſtinguiſh, in the horizon, the ſky from the water; and betwixt them and the ſnowy mountain, was a valley of about eight miles in breadth. They paſſed this night at a hut in the ſecond foreſt; and the following day, before noon, they had paſſed the firſt wood, and found themſelves nine or ten miles to the N. E. of the ſhips, towards which they marched through the plantations. As they walked along, they did not obſerve a ſpot of ground, that was ſuſceptible of improvement, left unplanted, and, indeed, the country, from their account, could ſcarcely be cultivated to greater advantage for the purpoſes of the natives. They were ſurpriſed at ſeeing ſeveral fields of hay; and, upon their enquiry, to what particular uſe it was applied, they were informed, that it was intended to cover the grounds where the young taro grew, in order to preſerve them from being ſcorched by the rays of the ſun. They obſerved, among the plantations, a few huts ſcattered about, which afforded occaſional ſhelter to the labourers: but they did not ſee any villages at a greater diſtance from the ſea than four or five miles. Near one of them, which was ſituated about four miles from the bay, they diſcovered a cave, forty fathoms in length, three in breadth, and of the ſame height. It was open at each end; its ſides were fluted, as if wrought with a chiſſel; and the ſurface was glazed over, perhaps by the action of fire. Having thus related the principal circumſtances that occurred in the expedition to the ſnowy mountain at Owhyhee, we ſhall now proceed to deſcribe the other iſlands of this groupe.

That which is next in ſize, and neareſt in ſituation to Owhyhee, is Mowee. It ſtands at the diſtance of eight leagues N. N. W. from Owhyhee, and is 140 geographical miles in circuit. It is divided by a low iſthmus into two circular peninſulas, of which that to the eaſtward is named Whamadooa, and is twice as large as that to the W. called Owhyrookoo. The mountains in both riſe to a very great height, as we were able to ſee them at the diſtance of about 30 leagues. The northern ſhores, like thoſe of the iſle of Owhyhee, afford no ſoundings; and the country bears the ſame aſpect of fertility and verdure. The E. point of Mowee is in the latitude of 20 deg. 50 min. N. and in the longitude of 204 deg. 4 min. E. To the ſouthward, between Mowee and the adjacent iſlands, we found regular depths with 150 fathoms, over a bottom of ſand. From the weſtern point, which is rather low, runs a ſhoal, extending towards the iſland of Ranai, to a conſiderable diſtance; and to the S. of this, is an extenſive bay, with a ſandy beach, ſhaded with cocoa-trees. It is not improbable, that good anchorage might be met with here, with ſhelter from the prevailing winds; and that the beach affords a commodious landing-place. The country further back is very romantic in its appearance. The hills riſe almoſt perpendicularly, exhibiting a variety of peaked forms; and their ſteep ſides, as well as the deep chaſms between them, are covered with trees, among which thoſe of the bread-fruit principally abound. The ſummits of theſe hills are perfectly bare, and of a reddiſh brown hue. The natives informed us, that there was a harbour to the S. of the eaſtern point, which they aſſerted was ſuperior to that of Karakakooa; and we alſo heard that there was another harbour, named Keepookeepoo, on the north-weſtern ſide.

Ranai is about nine miles diſtant from Mowee and Morotoi, and is ſituate to the S. W. of the paſſage between thoſe two iſles. The country, towards the S. is elevated and craggy; but the other parts of the iſland had a better appearance, and ſeemed to be well inhabited. It abounds in roots, ſuch as ſweet potatoes, taro, and yams; but produces very few plantains, and bread-fruit trees. The S. point of Ranai is in the latitude of 20 deg. 46 min. N. and in the longitude of 203 deg. 8 min. E.

Morotoi lies at the diſtance of two leagues and a half to the W. N. W. of Mowee. Its ſouth-weſtern coaſt, which was the only part of it we approached, is very low; but the land behind riſes to a conſiderable elevation; and, at the diſtance from which we had a view of it, appeared to be deſtitute of wood. Yams are its principal produce; and it may probably contain freſh water. The coaſt, on the ſouthern and weſtern ſides of the iſland, forms ſeveral bays, that promiſe a tolerable ſhelter from the trade winds. The W. point of Morotoi is in the longitude of 202 deg. 46 min. E. and in the latitude of 21 deg. 10 min. N.

Tahoorowa is a ſmall iſland ſituated off the ſouth-weſtern part of Mowee, from which it is nine miles diſtant. It is deſtitute of wood, and its ſoil ſeems to be ſandy and unfertile. Its latitude is 20 deg. 38 min. N. and its longitude 203 deg. 27 min. E. Between it and Mowee ſtands the little iſland of Morrotinnee, which has no inhabitants.

Woahoo lies about ſeven leagues to the N. W. of Morotoi. As far as we were enabled to judge, from the appearance of the north-weſtern and north-eaſtern parts (for we had not an opportunity of ſeeing the ſouthern ſide) it is by far the fineſt of all the Sandwich Iſlands. The verdure of the hills, the variety of wood and lawn, and fertile well cultivated valleys, which the whole face of the country preſented to view, could not be exceeded. Having already deſcribed the bay in which we anchored, formed by the northern and weſtern extremes, it remains for us to obſerve, that, in the bight of the bay, to the ſouthward of our anchoring-place, we met with foul rocky ground, about two miles from the ſhore. If the ground tackling of a ſhip ſhould happen to be weak, and the wind blow with violence from the N. to which quarter the road is entirely open, this circumſtance might be attended with ſome degree of danger: but, provided the cables were good, there would be no great hazard, as the ground from the anchoring-place, which is oppoſite the valley through which the river runs, to the northern point, conſiſts of a fine ſand. The latitude of our anchoring-place is 21 deg. 43 min. N. and the longitude 202 deg. 9 min. E.

The diſtrict of Atooi is about 25 leagues to the N. W. of Woahoo. Towards the N. E. and N. W. the face of the country is ragged and broken; but, to the ſouthward, it is more even; the hills riſe from the ſea-ſide with a gentle acclivity, and, at a little diſtance back, are covered with wood. Its produce is the ſame with that of the other iſlands of this cluſter; but its inhabitants greatly excel the people of all the neighbouring iſlands in the management of their plantations. In the low grounds, contiguous to the bay wherein we anchored, theſe plantations were regularly divided by deep ditches; the fences were formed with a neatneſs approaching to elegance, and the roads through them were finiſhed in ſuch a manner, as would have reflected credit even on an European engineer. The longitude of Wymoa Bay, in this iſland, is 200 deg. 20 min. E. and its latitude 21 deg. 57 min. N.

Oneeheow is five or ſix leagues to the weſtward of Atooi. Its eaſtern coaſt is high, and riſes with abruptneſs from the ſea; but the other parts of the iſland conſiſt of low ground, except a round bluff head on the ſouth-eaſtern point. It produces plenty of yams, and of the ſweet root called tee. The anchoring-place at this iſland lies in the latitude of 21 deg. 50 min. N. and in the longitude of 199 deg. 45 min. E.

Oreehoua and Tahoora are two little iſlands, ſituate in the neighbourhood of Oneeheow. The former is an elevated hummock, connected with the northern extreme of Oneeheow, by a reef of coral rocks. Its latitude is 22 deg. 2 min. N. and its longitude 199 deg. 52 min. E. The latter ſtands to the S. E. and is uninhabited: its longitude is 199 deg. 36 min. E. and its latitude 21 deg. 43 min. N.

The climate of the Sandwich Iſles is, perhaps, rather more temperate than that of the Weſt India iſlands, which are in the ſame latitude; but the difference is very inconſiderable. The thermometer, on ſhore near Karakakooa Bay, never roſe to a greater height than 88 deg. and that but one day: its mean height, at twelve o'clock, was 83 deg. Its mean height at noon, in Wymoa Bay, was 76 deg. and, when out at ſea, 75 deg. In the iſland of Jamaica, the mean height of the thermometer, at twelve o'clock, is about 86 deg. at ſea, 80 deg. Whether theſe iſlands are ſubject to the ſame violent winds and hurricanes with the Weſt Indies, we could not aſcertain, as we were not here during any of the tempeſtuous months. However, as no veſtiges of their effects were any where to be ſeen, and as the iſlanders gave us no poſitive teſtimony of the fact, it is probable, that, in this particular, they reſemble the Friendly and Society Iſles, which are, in a great degree, free from ſuch tremendous viſitations. There was a greater quantity of rain, particularly in the interior parts, during the four winter months that we continued among theſe iſlanders, than commonly falls in the Weſt Indies in the dry ſeaſon. We generally obſerved clouds collecting round the ſummits of the hills, and producing rain to leeward; but after the wind has ſeparated them from the land, they diſperſe, and are loſt, and others ſupply their place. This occurred daily at Owhyhee; the mountainous parts being uſually enveloped in a cloud; ſhowers ſucceſſively falling in the inland country; with a clear ſky, and fine weather, in the neighbourhood of the ſhore. The winds were, for the moſt part, from E. S. E. to N. E. In the harbour of Karakakooa we had every day and night a ſea and land breeze. The currents ſometimes ſet to windward, and at other times to leeward, without the leaſt regularity. They did not ſeem to be directed by the winds, nor by any other cauſe that we can aſſign: they often ſet to windward againſt a freſh breeze. The tides are exceedingly regular, ebbing and flowing ſix hours each. The flood-tide comes from the E. and at the full and change of the moon, it is high-water at three quarters of an hour after three o'clock. Their greateſt riſe is two feet ſeven inches.

The quadrupeds of theſe iſlands, are confined to three ſorts, namely, hogs, dogs, and rats. The dogs are of the ſame ſpecies with thoſe we ſaw at Otaheite, having pricked ears, long backs, and ſhort crooked legs. We did not obſerve any variety in them, except in their ſkins; ſome being perfectly ſmooth, and others having long rough hair. They are about as large as a common turnſpit, and ſeem to be extremely ſluggiſh in their nature; though this may, probably, be more owing to the manner in which they are treated, than to their natural diſpoſition. They are generally fed with the hogs, and left to herd with thoſe animals; and we do not recollect a ſingle inſtance of a dog being made a companion here, as is the cuſtom in Europe. Indeed, the practice of eating them ſeems to be an inſuperable bar to their being admitted into ſociety; and as there are no beaſts of prey, nor objects of chace, in theſe iſlands, the ſocial qualities of the dog, its attachment, fidelity, and ſagacity, will, in all probability, remain unknown to the natives. In our obſervations it did not appear that the dogs in the Sandwich Iſlands were near ſo numerous, in proportion, as at Otaheite. But, on the other hand, they have a much greater plenty of hogs, and the breed is of a larger kind. We procured from them an amazing ſupply of proviſions of this ſort. We were upwards of three months, either cruiſing off the coaſt, or in harbour at Owhyhee; during all which time the crews of both ſhips had conſtantly a large allowance of freſh pork, inſomuch that our conſumption of that article was computed at about 60 puncheons of 500 weight each. Beſides this quantity, and the extraordinary waſte, which, amidſt ſuch abundance, could not be entirely prevented, 60 more puncheons were ſalted for ſea ſtore. The greater part of this ſupply was drawn from the iſle of Owhyhee alone; and yet we did not perceive that it was at all exhauſted, or even that the plenty had decreaſed. The birds of theſe iſlands are numerous, though the variety is not great. Some of them may vie with thoſe of any country in point of beauty. There are four ſpecies that ſeem to belong to the trochili, or honey-ſuckers of Linnæus. One of them is ſomewhat larger than a bullfinch; its colour is a gloſſy black, and the thighs and rump-vent are of a deep yellow. The natives call it hoohoo. Another is of a very bright ſcarlet; its wings are black, with a white edge, and its tail is black. It is named eeeeve by the inhabitants. The third is variegated with brown, yellow, and red, and ſeems to be either a young bird, or a variety of the preceding. The fourth is entirely green, with a yellow tinge, and is called akaiearooa. There is alſo a ſmall bird of the fly-catcher kind; a ſpecies of thruſh, with a greyiſh breaſt; and a rail, with very ſhort wings, and no tail. Ravens are met with here, but they are extremely ſcarce; they are of a dark brown colour, inclining to black, and their note is different from that of the European raven. We found two ſmall birds, that were very common, and both of which were of one genus. One of theſe was red, and was uſually obſerved about the cocoa-trees, from whence it ſeemed to derive a conſiderable part of its ſubſiſtence. The other was of a green colour. Both had long tongues, which were ciliated, or fringed at the tip. A bird with a yellow head was likewiſe very common here: from the ſtructure of its beak, our people called it a parroquet: it, however, does not belong to that tribe, but bears a great reſemblance to the lexia flavicans, or yellowiſh croſs-bill of Linnæus. Here are alſo owls, curlews, petrels, and gannets; plovers of two ſpecies, one nearly the ſame as our whiſtling plover; a large white pigeon; the common water-hen; and a long-tailed bird, which is of a black colour, and the vent and feathers under the wings yellow.

The vegetable produce of the Sandwich Iſles is not very different from that of the other iſlands of the Pacific Ocean. We have already obſerved, that the taro root, here cultivated, was ſuperior to any we had before taſted. The bread-fruit trees thrive here, not indeed in ſuch abundance as at Otaheite, but they produce twice as much fruit as they do on the rich plains of that iſland. The trees are nearly of the ſame height; but the branches ſhoot out from the trunk conſiderably lower, and with greater luxuriance of vegetation. The ſugar-canes of theſe iſlands grow to an extraordinary ſize. One of them was brought to us at Atooi, whoſe circumference was eleven inches and a quarter; and it had fourteen feet eatable. At Oneeheow we ſaw ſome large brown roots, from ſix to ten pounds in weight, reſembling a yam in ſhape. The juice, of which they yield a great quantity, is very ſweet, and is an excellent ſuccedaneum for ſugar. The natives are exceedingly fond of it, and make uſe of it as an article of their common diet; and our people likewiſe found it very palatable and wholeſome. Not being able to procure the leaves of this vegetable, we could not aſcertain to what ſpecies of plant it belonged; but we ſuppoſed it to be the root of ſome kind of fern.

The natives of the Sandwich Iſles are doubtleſs of the ſame extraction with the inhabitants of the Friendly and Society Iſlands, of New Zealand, the Marqueſas, and Eaſter Iſland; a race which poſſeſſes all the known lands between the longitudes of 167 deg. and 260 deg. E. and between the latitudes of 47 deg. S. and 22 deg. N. This fact, extraordinary as it is, is not only evinced by the general reſemblance of their perſons, and the great ſimilarity of their manners and cuſtoms, but ſeems to be eſtabliſhed, beyond all controverſy, by the identity of their language. It may not, perhaps, be very difficult to conjecture, from what continent they originally emigrated, and by what ſteps they have diffuſed themſelves over ſo immenſe a ſpace. They bear ſtrong marks of affinity to ſome of the Indian tribes, which inhabit the Ladrones and Caroline Iſles; and the ſame affinity and reſemblance, may alſo be traced among the Malays and the Battas. At what particular time theſe migrations happened is leſs eaſy to aſcertain; the period, in all probability, was not very late, as they are very populous, and have no tradition reſpecting their own origin, but what is wholly fabulous; though, on the other hand, the ſimplicity which is ſtill prevalent in their manners and habits of life, and the unadulterated ſtate of their general language, ſeem to demonſtrate, that it could not have been at any very remote period. The natives of the Sandwich Iſlands, in general, exceed the middle ſize, and are well made. They walk in a very graceful manner, run with conſiderable agility, and are capable of enduring a great degree of fatigue: but, upon the whole, the men are inferior with reſpect to activity and ſtrength, to the inhabitants of the Friendly Iſlands, and the women are leſs delicate in the formation of their limbs than the Otaheitean females. Their complexion is ſomewhat darker than that of the Otaheiteans; and they are not altogether ſo handſome in their perſons as the natives of the Society Iſles. Many of both ſexes, however, had fine open countenances; and the women, in particular, had white well-ſet teeth, good eyes, and an engaging ſweetneſs and ſenſibility of look. The hair of theſe people is of a browniſh black, neither uniformly curling, like that of the African Negroes, nor uniformly ſtraight, as among the Indians of America; but varying, in this reſpect, like the hair of Europeans. There is one ſtriking peculiarity in the features of every part of this great nation; which is, that, even in the moſt handſome faces, there is always obſervable, a fulneſs of the noſtril, without any flatneſs or ſpreading of the noſe, that diſtinguiſhes them from the inhabitants of Europe. It is not wholly improbable, that this may be the effect of their cuſtomary method of ſalutation, which is performed by preſſing together the extremities of their noſes. The ſame ſuperiority that we generally obſerved at other iſlands in the perſons of the Erees, is likewiſe found here. Thoſe that were ſeen by us were perfectly well formed; whereas the lower claſs of people, beſides their general inferiority, are ſubject to all the variety of figure and make, that is met with in the populace of other parts of the world. But we met with more frequent inſtances of deformity here, than in any of the other iſlands we viſited. While we were cruiſing off Owhyhee, two dwarfs came on board; one of whom was an old man, of the height of four feet two inches, but very well proportioned; and the other was a woman, nearly of the ſame ſtature. We afterwards ſaw, among the natives, three who were hump-backed, and a young man who had been deſtitute of hands and feet, from the very moment of his birth. Squinting is alſo common among them; and a man, who, they told us, had been born blind, was brought to us for the purpoſe of being cured. Beſides theſe particular defects, they are, in general, extremely ſubject to boils and ulcers, which ſome of us aſcribed to the great quantity of ſalt they uſually eat with their fiſh and fleſh. Though the Erees are free from theſe complaints, many of them experience ſtill more dreadful effects from the too frequent uſe of the ava. Thoſe who were the moſt affected by it, had their eyes red and inflamed, their limbs emaciated, their bodies covered with a whitiſh ſcurf, and their whole frame trembling and paralytic, attended with a diſability of raiſing their heads.

Though it does not appear that this drug univerſally ſhortens life, (for Terreeoboo, Kaoo, and ſeveral other chiefs, were far advanced in years) yet it invariably brings on a premature and decrepid old age. It is a fortunate circumſtance for the people, that the uſe of it is made a peculiar privilege of the chiefs. The young ſon of Terreeoboo, who did not exceed 12 or 13 years of age, frequently boaſted of his being admitted to drink ava; and ſhewed us, with marks of exultation, a ſmall ſpot in his ſide that was beginning to grow ſcaly. When Captain Cook firſt viſited the Society Iſles, this pernicious drug was very little known among them. In his ſecond voyage, he found it greatly in vogue at Ulietea; but it had ſtill gained little ground at Otaheite. During the laſt time we were there, the havock it had made was almoſt incredible, inſomuch that Captain Cook ſcarce recognized many of his former acquaintances. It is alſo conſtantly drank by the chiefs of the Friendly Iſles, but ſo much diluted with water, that it ſcarcely produces any bad conſequences. At Atooi, likewiſe, it is uſed with great moderation; and the chiefs of that iſland are, on this account, a much finer ſet of men, than thoſe of the neighbouring iſlands. It was remarked by us, that, upon diſcontinuing the uſe of this root, its noxious effects quickly wore off. We prevailed upon our friends Kaoo and Kaireekeea, to abſtain from it; and they recovered ſurpriſingly during the ſhort time we afterwards remained among them.

It may be thought, that to form any probable conjectures with regard to the population of iſlands, with many parts of which we have but an imperfect acquaintance, to be a taſk highly difficult. There are two circumſtances, however, which remove much of this objection. One is, that the interior parts of the country are almoſt entirely uninhabited: if, therefore, the number of thoſe who inhabit the parts adjoining to the coaſt, be aſcertained, the whole will be determined with ſome degree of accuracy. The other circumſtance is, that there are no towns of any conſiderable extent, the houſes of the iſlanders being pretty equally ſcattered in ſmall villages round all their coaſts. On theſe grounds we ſhall venture at a rough calculation of the number of perſons in this cluſter of iſlands.

Karakakooa bay, in Owhyhee, is about three miles in extent, and comprehends four villages of about 80 houſes each, upon an average, in all 320; beſides many ſtraggling habitations, which may make the whole amount to 350. If we allow ſix people to each houſe, the country about the bay will then contain 2,100 perſons. To theſe we may add 50 families, or 300 ſouls, which we imagine to be nearly the number employed among the plantations in the interior parts of the iſland; making, in all, 2,400. If this number be applied to the whole coaſt round the iſland, a quarter being deducted for the uninhabited parts, it will be found to contain 150,000 perſons. The other Sandwich Iſlands, by the ſame method of calculation, will appear to contain the following number of inhabitants: Mowee, 65,400; Atooi, 54,000; Morotoi, 36,000; Woahoo, 60,200; Ranai, 20,400; Oneeheou, 10,000; and Oreehoua, 4,000. Theſe numbers, including the 150,000 in Owhyhee, will amount to 400,000. In this computation we have by no means exceeded the truth in the total amount.

We muſt confeſs, notwithſtanding the great loſs we ſuſtained from the ſudden reſentment and violence of theſe iſlanders, that they are of a very mild and affectionate diſpoſition, equally remote from the diſtant gravity and reſerve of the natives of the Friendly Iſles, and the extreme volatility of the Otaheiteans. They ſeem to live in the greateſt friendſhip and harmony with each other. Thoſe women who had children, ſhewed a remarkable affection for them, and paid them a particular and conſtant attention; and the men, with a willingneſs that did honour to their feelings, frequently afforded their aſſiſtance in thoſe domeſtic employments. We muſt, however, remark, that they are greatly inferior to the inhabitants of the other iſlands, in that beſt criterion of civilized manners, the reſpect paid to the female ſex. Here the women are not only deprived of the privilege of eating with the men, but are forbidden to feed on the beſt ſorts of proviſions. Turtle, pork, ſeveral kinds of fiſh, and ſome ſpecies of plantains, are denied them; and we were informed, that a girl received a violent beating, for having eaten, while ſhe was on board one of our ſhips, a prohibited article of food. With regard to their domeſtic life, they ſeem to live almoſt wholly by themſelves, and meet with little attention from the men, though no inſtances of perſonal ill-treatment were obſerved by us. We have already had occaſion to mention the great kindneſs and hoſpitality, with which they treated us. Whenever we went aſhore, there was a continual ſtruggle who ſhould be moſt forward in offering little preſents for our acceptance, bringing proviſions and refreſhments, or teſtifying ſome other mark of reſpect. The aged perſons conſtantly received us with tears of joy, appeared to be highly gratified with being permitted to touch us, and were frequently drawing compariſons between us and themſelves, with marks of extreme humility. The young women, likewiſe, were exceedingly kind and engaging, and attached themſelves to us, without reſerve, till they perceived, notwithſtanding all our endeavours to prevent it, that they had cauſe to repent of our acquaintance. It muſt, however, be obſerved, that theſe females were, in all probability, of the inferior claſs; for we ſaw very few women of rank during our continuance here. Theſe people, in point of natural capacity, are, by no means, below the common ſtandard of the human race. The excellence of their manufactures, and their improvements in agriculture, are doubtleſs adequate to their ſituation and natural advantages. The eagerneſs of curioſity, with which they uſed to attend the armourer's forge, and the various expedients which they had invented, even before our departure from theſe iſlands, for working the iron obtained from us, into ſuch forms as were beſt calculated for their purpoſes, were ſtrong indications of docility and ingenuity. Our unhappy friend, Kaneena, was endowed with a remarkable quickneſs of conception, and a great degree of judicious curioſity. He was extremely inquiſitive with reſpect to our manners and cuſtoms. He enquired after our ſovereign; the form of our government; the mode of conſtructing our ſhips; the productions of our country; our numbers; our method of building houſes; whether we waged any wars; with whom, on what occaſions, and in what particular manner they were carried on; who was our deity; beſides many other queſtions of a ſimilar import, which ſeemed to indicate a comprehenſive underſtanding. We obſerved two inſtances of perſons diſordered in their ſenſes; the one a woman at Oneeheow, the other a man at Owhyhee. From the extraordinary reſpect and attention paid to them, it appeared, that the opinion of their being divinely inſpired, which prevails among moſt of the oriental nations, is alſo countenanced here.

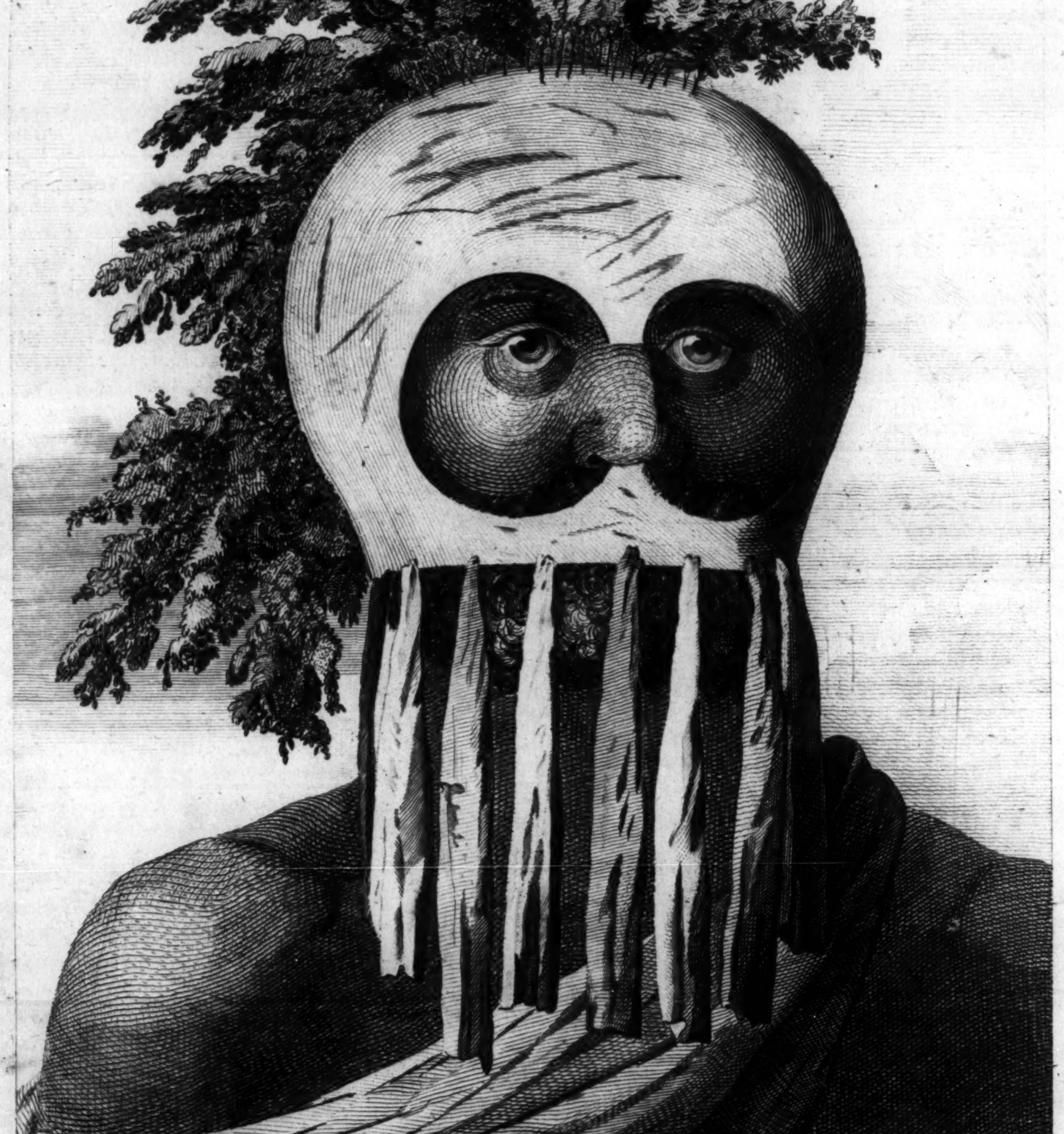
We are inclined to think, that the practice of feeding on the bodies of enemies, was originally prevalent in all the iſlands of the Pacific Ocean, though it is not known, by poſitive and deciſive evidence, to exiſt in any of them, except New-Zealand. The offering up human victims, which is manifeſtly a relique of this barbarous cuſtom, ſtill univerſally obtains among theſe iſlanders; and it is not difficult to conceive why the inhabitants of New-Zealand ſhould retain the repaſt, which was, perhaps, the concluding part of theſe horrid rites, for a longer period than the reſt of their tribe, who were ſituated in more fertile regions. As the Sandwich iſlanders, both in their perſons and diſpoſition, bear a nearer reſemblance to the New-Zealanders, than to any other people of this very extenſive race, Mr. Anderſon was ſtrongly inclined to ſuſpect, that, like them, they are ſtill cannibals. The evidence, which induced him to entertain this opinion, has been already laid down; but, as Mr. King had great doubts of the juſtneſs of his concluſions, we ſhall mention the grounds on which he ventured to differ from him. With regard to the intelligence received on this head from the natives themſelves, it may not be improper to obſerve, that moſt of the officers on board took great pains to enquire into ſo curious a circumſtance; and that, except in the inſtances above referred to, the iſlanders invariably denied that any ſuch practice exiſted among them. Though Mr. Anderſon's ſuperior knowledge of the language of thoſe people, ought certainly to give conſiderable weight to his judgment, yet, when he examined the man who had the little parcel, containing a piece of ſalted fleſh, Mr. King, who was preſent on that occaſion, was ſtrongly of opinion, that the ſigns made uſe of by the iſlander intimated nothing more, than that it was deſigned to be eaten, and that it was very agreeable or wholeſome to the ſtomach. In this ſentiment Mr. King was confirmed, by a circumſtance of which he was informed, after the deceaſe of his ingenious friend Mr. Anderſon, namely, that moſt of the inhabitants of theſe iſlands carried about with them a ſmall piece of raw pork, well ſalted, either put in a calibaſh, or wrapped up in ſome cloth, and faſtened round the waiſt: this they eſteemed a great delicacy, and would frequently taſte it. With regard to the confuſion the lad was in, (for his age did not exceed 16 or 18 years) no perſon could have been ſurprized at it, who had been witneſs of the earneſt and eager manner in which Mr. Anderſon interrogated him. Mr. King found it leſs eaſy to controvert the argument deduced from the uſe of the inſtrument made with ſhark's teeth, which is of a ſimilar form with that uſed by the New-Zealanders for cutting up the bodies of their enemies. Though he believed it to be an undoubted fact, that they never make uſe of this inſtrument in cutting the fleſh of other animals, yet as the practice of ſacrificing human victims, and of burning the bodies of the ſlain, ſtill prevails here, he conſidered it as not altogether improbable, that the uſe of this knife (if it may be ſo denominated) is retained in thoſe ceremonies. He was, upon the whole, inclined to imagine, and particularly from the laſt-mentioned circumſtance, that the horrible cuſtom of devouring human fleſh has but lately ceaſed in theſe and other iſlands of the Pacific Ocean. Omiah acknowledged, that his countrymen, inſtigated by the fury of revenge, would ſometimes tear with their teeth the fleſh of their ſlain enemies; but he peremptorily denied that they ever eat it. The denial is a ſtrong indication that the practice has ceaſed; for in New-Zealand, where it is ſtill prevalent, the natives never ſcrupled to confeſs it.

The natives of the Sandwich Iſlands, almoſt univerſally permit their beards to grow. There were, however, a few who cut off their beard entirely, among whom was the aged king; and others wore it only on their upper-lip. The ſame variety that is found among the other iſlanders of this ocean, with reſpect to the mode of wearing the hair, is likewiſe obſervable here. They have beſides a faſhion which ſeems to be peculiar to themſelves; they cut it cloſe on each ſide of their heads, down to their ears, and leave a ridge, of the breadth of a ſmall hand, extending from the forehead to the neck; which, when the hair is pretty thick and curling, reſembles, in point of form, the creſt of the helmet of an ancient warrior. Some of them wear great quantities of falſe hair, flowing in long ringlets down their backs; while others tie it into one round bunch on the upper part of their heads, nearly as large as the head itſelf; and ſome into ſix or ſeven ſeparate bunches. They uſe, for the purpoſe of daubing or ſmearing their hair, a greyiſh clay, mixed with ſhells reduced to powder, which they keep in balls, and chew into a ſort of paſte, whenever they intend to make uſe of it. This compoſition preſerves the ſmoothneſs of the hair, and changes it, in proceſs of time, to a pale yellow. Necklaces, conſiſting of ſtrings of ſmall variegated ſhells, are worn by both men and women. They alſo wear an ornament, about two inches in length, and half an inch in breadth, ſhaped like the handle of a cap, and made of ſtone, wood, or ivory, extremely well poliſhed; this is hung round the neck by fine threads of twiſted hair, which are ſometimes doubled an hundred fold. Some of them, inſtead of this ornament, wear a ſmall human figure on their breaſt, formed of bone, and ſuſpended in a ſimilar manner. Both ſexes make uſe of the fan, or fly-flap, by way of uſe and ornament. The moſt common ſort is compoſed of cocoa-nut fibres, tied looſely in bunches, to the top of a poliſhed handle. The tail-feathers of the cock, and thoſe of the tropic-bird, are uſed for the ſame purpoſe. Thoſe that are moſt in eſteem, are ſuch as have the handle formed of the leg or arm bones of an enemy killed in battle: theſe are preſerved with extraordinary care, and are handed down, from father to ſon, as trophies of the higheſt value. The practice of tatooing, or puncturing the body, prevails among theſe people; and, of all the iſlands in this ocean, it is only at New-Zealand, and the Sandwich Iſles, that the face is tatooed. There is this difference between theſe two nations, that the New-Zealanders perform this operation in elegant ſpiral volutes, and the Sandwich Iſlanders in ſtrait lines that interſect each other at right angles. Some of the natives have half their body, from head to foot, tatooed, which gives them a moſt ſtriking appearance. It is generally done with great neatneſs and regularity. Several of them have only an arm thus marked; others, a leg; ſome, again, tatoo both an arm and a leg; and others only the hand. The hands and arms of the women are punctured in a very neat manner; and they have a remarkable cuſtom of tatooing the tip of the tongues of ſome of the females. We had ſome reaſon to imagine, that the practice of puncturing is often intended as a ſign of mourning, on the deceaſe of a chief, or any other calamitous occurrence: for we were frequently informed, that ſuch a mark was in memory of ſuch a chief; and ſo of the others. The people of the loweſt order are tatooed with a particular mark, which diſtinguiſhes them as the property of the chiefs to whom they are reſpectively ſubject.

The common dreſs of the men of all ranks conſiſts, in general, of a piece of thick cloth, called the maro, about a foot in breadth, which paſſes between the legs, and is faſtened round the waiſt. Their mats, which are of various ſizes, but, for the moſt part, about five feet in length, and four in breadth, are thrown over their ſhoulders, and brought forward before. Theſe, however, are rarely made uſe of, except in time of war, for which purpoſe they appear to be better calculated than for common uſe, ſince they are of a thick heavy texture, and capable of breaking the blow of a ſtone, or of any blunt weapon. They generally go bare-footed, except when they travel over burnt ſtones, on which occaſion they ſecure their feet with a kind of ſandal, which is made of cords, twiſted from cocoa-nut fibres. Beſides their ordinary dreſs, there is another, which is appropriated to their chiefs, and worn only on extraordinary occaſions. It conſiſts of a feathered cloak and cap, or helmet, of uncommon beauty and magnificence. This dreſs having been minutely deſcribed, in a former part of our work, we have only to add, that theſe cloaks are of different lengths, in proportion to the rank of the perſon who wears them; ſome trailing on the ground, and others no lower than the middle. The chiefs of inferior rank have likewiſe a ſhort cloak, which reſembles the former, and is made of the long tail-feathers of the cock, the man-of-war bird, and the tropic-bird, having a broad border of ſmall yellow and red feathers, and alſo a collar of the ſame. Others are compoſed of white feathers, with variegated borders. The cap, or helmet, has a ſtrong lining of wicker-work, ſufficient to break the blow of any warlike weapon; for which purpoſe it appears to be intended. Theſe feathered dreſſes ſeemed to be very ſcarce, and to be worn only by the male ſex. During our whole continuance in Karakakooa Bay, we never obſerved them uſed, except on three occaſions; firſt, in the remarkable ceremony of Terreeoboo's firſt viſit to our ſhips; ſecondly, by ſome chiefs, who appeared among the crowd on ſhore, when our unfortunate Commander was killed; and, thirdly, when his bones were brought to us by Eappo. The ſtriking reſemblance of this habit to the cloak and helmet which the

BRITISH
7 FE 90
MUSEUM

Engraved for PORTLOCK'S *New* COLLECTION *of* VOYAGES *&* TRAVELS.



T King Sculp^t.

A CURIOUS MASK, *worn by* MEN *of the* SANDWICH ISLANDS.

Published by Alex^r. Hogg, May 17. 1794.

the Spaniards formerly wore, excited our curioſity to enquire, whether there might not be ſome reaſonable grounds for imagining that it had been borrowed from them. After all our endeavours to gain information on this head, we found, that the natives had no immediate acquaintance with any other people whatever; and that no tradition exiſted among them of theſe iſlands having ever before received a viſit from ſuch veſſels as our's. However, notwithſtanding the reſult of our enquiries on this ſubject, the form of this habit ſeems to be a ſufficient indication of its European origin; particularly when we reflect on another circumſtance, viz. that it is a remarkable deviation from the general agreement of dreſs, which is prevalent among the ſeveral branches of this great tribe, diſperſed over the Pacific Ocean. From this concluſion, we were induced to ſuppoſe, that ſome Buccaneer, or Spaniſh ſhip, might have been wrecked in the neighbourhood of theſe iſlands. When it is conſidered, that the courſe of the Spaniſh trading veſſels from Acapulco to Manilla, is not many degrees to the S. of the Sandwich Iſles, in their paſſage out, and to the N. on their return, this ſuppoſition will not, we think, be deemed improbable.

In the common dreſs of the men, and that of the women, there is very little difference. The latter wear a piece of cloth wrapped round the waiſt, which deſcends half way down their thighs; and ſometimes, during the cool of the evening, they throw looſe pieces of fine cloth over their ſhoulders, like the females of Otaheite. They have another kind of dreſs called the pan, which the younger part of the ſex often wear: it conſiſts of the thinneſt and fineſt cloth, wrapped ſeveral times about the middle, and reaching down to the leg; ſo that it has the appearance of a full ſhort petticoat. They cut their hair, and turn it up before, after the cuſtom of the New Zealanders and Otaheiteans. One woman, indeed, whom we ſaw in Karakakooa Bay, had her hair arranged in a very ſingular manner: having turned it up behind, ſhe brought it over her forehead, and doubled it back, ſo that it formed a kind of ſhade to the face, and ſomewhat reſembled a ſmall bonnet. Beſides their necklaces, which are compoſed of ſhells, or of a ſhining, hard, red berry, they wear dried flowers of the Indian mallow, formed into wreaths, and likewiſe another elegant ornament, termed eraie, which is ſometimes faſtened round the hair in the manner of a garland, but is uſually put round the neck; though it is worn occaſionally in both theſe ways at once. It is a kind of ruff, about as thick as a finger, formed with great ingenuity, of very ſmall feathers, woven cloſely together, inſomuch, that the ſurface may be ſaid to equal the richeſt velvet in ſmoothneſs. The ground is, in general, red, with alternate circles of black, yellow and green. We have already deſcribed their bracelets, of which they have a great variety. Some of the women of Atooi wear ſmall figures of the turtle, made very neatly of ivory or wood, faſtened on their fingers, in the ſame manner that rings are worn by us. They have likewiſe an ornament conſiſting of ſhells, tied in rows on a ground of ſtrong net work, ſo as to ſtrike againſt each other, while in motion; which both ſexes, when they dance, faſten either round the ancles, or juſt below the knee, or round the arm. They ſometimes, inſtead of ſhells, uſe for this purpoſe, the teeth of dogs, and a hard red berry. Another ornament, if it deſerves that name, is a kind of maſk, compoſed of a large gourd, having holes cut in it for the noſe and eyes. The top of it is ſtuck full of green twigs, which appear at ſome diſtance, like a waving plume; and the lower part has narrow ſtripes of cloth hanging from it, ſomewhat reſembling a beard. Theſe maſks we never ſaw worn but on two occaſions, and both times by a number of perſons aſſembled in a canoe, who approached the ſide of the ſhip, laughing and making droll geſticulations. We could never learn whether they were not alſo made uſe of as a defence for the head againſt ſtones, or in ſome of their public ſports and games, or were diſguiſes merely for the purpoſes of mummery and ſport.

The natives of the Sandwich Iſlands dwell together in ſmall towns or villages, which contain from about 100 to 200 houſes, built pretty cloſe to each other, without order or regularity, and having a winding path that leads through them. They are flanked frequently, towards the ſea ſide, with looſe detached walls, which are, in all probability, intended for ſhelter and defence. Their habitations are of various dimenſions, from 45 feet by 24, to 18 by 12. Some are of a larger ſize, being 50 feet in length, 30 in breadth, and entirely open at one end. Theſe, we were informed, were deſigned for the accommodation of ſtrangers or travellers, whoſe ſtay was likely to be ſhort. Some of the beſt houſes have a court-yard before them, railed in very neatly, with ſmaller habitations for ſervants erected round it: in this area the family uſually eat and ſit in the daytime. In the ſides of the hills, and among the ſteep rocks, we ſaw ſeveral holes or caves, which ſeemed to be inhabited; but the entrance being defended by wicker-work, and, in the only one that we viſited, a ſtone fence being obſerved running acroſs it within, we ſuppoſed that they were chiefly intended as places of retreat, in caſe of an attack from enemies.

People of an inferior claſs feed principally on fiſh, and vegetables, ſuch as plantains, bread-fruit, ſweet potatoes, ſugar-canes, yams, and taro. To theſe, perſons of ſuperior rank add the fleſh of dogs and hogs, dreſſed after the ſame method that is practiſed at the Society Iſles. They likewiſe ſometimes eat fowls of a domeſtic kind; but theſe, however, are neither plentiful, nor in any degree of eſtimation. On our firſt arrival at theſe iſlands, yams, and bread-fruit, ſeemed ſcarce; but, on our ſecond viſit, we did not find this to be the caſe: it is therefore probable, that, as theſe vegetable articles are commonly planted in the interior parts of the country, the iſlanders might not have ſufficient time for bringing them down to us, during our ſhort continuance in Wymoa Bay. Their fiſh are ſalted, and preſerved in gourd-ſhells, not, indeed, with a view of providing againſt an occaſional ſcarcity, but from the inclination they have for ſalted proviſions; for we found, that the chiefs had frequently pieces of pork pickled in the ſame manner, which they conſidered as a great delicacy. Their cookery is much the ſame as at the Friendly and Society Iſlands; and though ſome of our people diſliked their taro puddings, on account of their ſourneſs, others were of a different opinion. It is remarkable, that they had not acquired the art of preſerving the bread-fruit, and making of it the ſour paſte, named maihee, as is the practice at the Society Iſles; and it afforded us great ſatisfaction, that we had it in our power to communicate to them this ſecret, in return for the generous treatment we received from them. At their meals they are very cleanly; and their method of dreſſing both their vegetable and animal food, was acknowledged univerſally to be ſuperior to ours. The Erees begin conſtantly their meals with a doſe of the extract of pepper root, or ava, prepared in the uſual mode. The women eat apart from the other ſex, and are prohibited, as before obſerved, from feeding on pork, turtle, and ſome particular ſpecies of plantains. Notwithſtanding this interdiction, they would eat, privately, pork with us: but we could never prevail on them to taſte the two latter articles of food. They generally riſe with the ſun; and having enjoyed the cool of the evening, retire to their repoſe a few hours after ſun-ſet. The Erees are employed in making canoes, and mats; the Towtows are chiefly engaged in their plantations, and in fiſhing; and the women in the manufacture of cloth. They amuſe themſelves, in their leiſure hours, with various diverſions. The youth of both ſexes are fond of dancing; and on more ſolemn occaſions, they entertain themſelves with wreſtling and boxing matches, performed after the manner of the natives of the Friendly Iſlands; to whom, however, they are greatly inferior in theſe reſpects. Their dances, which bear a greater reſemblance to thoſe of the New Zealanders, than of the Friendly or Society Iſlanders, are introduced with a ſolemn kind of ſong, in which the whole number join, at the ſame time moving ſlowly their legs, and ſtriking gently their breaſts; their attitudes and manner being very eaſy and graceful. So far they reſemble the dancers of the Society Iſlands. After this has continued about the ſpace of ten minutes, they quicken gradually their motions and the tune, and do not deſiſt till they are oppreſſed with fatigue. This part of the performance is the counter-part of that of the inhabitants of New Zealand; and, as among thoſe people, the perſon whoſe action is the moſt violent, and who continues this exerciſe the longeſt, is applauded by the ſpectators as the beſt dancer. It muſt be remarked, that, in this dance, the females only engage; and that the dances of the men reſemble thoſe we ſaw of the ſmall parties at the Friendly Iſles; and which may, perhaps, more properly, be termed the accompaniment of ſongs, with the correſpondent motions of the whole body. But as we ſaw ſome boxing exhibitions, of the ſame kind with thoſe we had ſeen at the Friendly Iſles, it is not improbable, that they had here likewiſe their grand dances, wherein both men and women were performers. Their muſic, on theſe, and other occaſions, is of a rude kind; for the only inſtruments, we obſerved among them, were drums of various ſizes. Their ſongs, however, which they are ſaid to ſing in parts, and which they accompany with a gentle motion of their arms, like thoſe of the inhabitants of the Friendly Iſles, have a very pleaſing effect.

Theſe people are greatly addicted to gambling. One of their games reſembles our game of draughts; but, from the number of ſquares, it ſeems to be much more intricate. The board is of the length of about two feet, and is divided into 238 ſquares, 14 in a row. In playing they uſe white and black pebbles, which they move from one ſquare to another. They have a game which conſiſts in concealing a ſtone under ſome cloth, ſpread out by one of the parties, and rumpled in ſuch a manner, that it is difficult to perceive where the ſtone lies. The antagoniſt then ſtrikes, with a ſtick, that part of the cloth where he ſuppoſes the ſtone to be; and the chances being upon the whole, againſt his hitting it, odds of all degrees, varying with the opinion of the dexterity of the parties, are laid on the occaſion. Their manner of playing at bowls nearly reſembles that of ours. They often entertain themſelves with races between boys and girls, on which they lay wagers with great ſpirit. We ſaw a man beating his breaſt, and tearing his hair, in the violence of rage, for having loſt three hatchets at one of theſe races, which he had purchaſed from us with near half his property a very little time before. In ſwimming, both ſexes are very expert; an art that, among theſe people, is deemed neceſſary, and is their favourite diverſion. One particular method, in which we ſometimes ſaw them amuſe themſelves, is worthy of notice. The ſurf, that breaks on the coaſt round this bay, extends about 150 yards from the ſhore; and within that ſpace, the ſurges of the ſea are daſhed againſt the beach with extreme violence. Whenever the impetuoſity of the ſurf is augmented to its greateſt height, they make choice of that time for this amuſement, which they perform in this manner: about 20 or 30 of the natives take each a long narrow board, rounded at both ends: and ſet out in company with each other from the ſhore. They plunge under the firſt wave they meet, and, after they have ſuffereed it to roll over them, riſe again beyond it, and ſwim further out into the ſea. They encounter the ſecond wave in the ſame manner with the firſt. The principal difficulty conſiſts in ſeizing a favourable opportunity of diving under it; for, if a perſon miſſes the proper moment, he is caught by the ſurf, and forced back with great violence; and his utmoſt dexterity is required, to prevent his being daſhed againſt the rocks. When in conſequence of theſe repeated efforts, they have gained the ſmooth water beyond the ſurf, they recline themſelves at length upon the boards, and prepare for their return to ſhore. The ſurf being compoſed of a number of waves, of which every third is obſerved to be conſiderably larger than the reſt, and to flow higher upon the ſhore, while the others break in the intermediate ſpace; their firſt object is to place themſelves on the top of the largeſt ſurge, which drives them along with aſtoniſhing rapidity towards the land. If, by miſtake, they ſhould place themſelves on one of the ſmaller waves, which breaks before they gain the ſhore, or ſhould find themſelves unable to keep their board in a proper direction on the upper part of the ſwell, they remain expoſed to the fury of the next; to avoid which, they are under the neceſſity of diving again, and recovering the place from whence they ſet out. Thoſe who ſucceed in reaching the ſhore, are ſtill in a very hazardous ſituation. As the coaſt is defended by a chain of rocks, with a ſmall opening between them in ſeveral places, they are obliged to ſteer their plank through one of theſe openings; or, in caſe of ill ſucceſs in that reſpect, to quit it before they reach the rocks, and, diving under the wave, make their way back again as well as they are able. This is conſidered as highly diſgraceful, and is attended with the loſs of the plank, which we have ſeen daſhed to pieces, at the very inſtant the native quitted it. The amazing courage and addreſs, with which they perform theſe dangerous atchievements are almoſt incredible. The following accident evinces, at how early a period they are ſo far accuſtomed to the water, as to loſe all apprehenſions of its perils, and even ſet them at defiance. A canoe, in which was a woman and her children, happening to overſet, one of the children, an infant of about four years old, appeared to be greatly delighted, ſwimming about at its eaſe, and playing a number of tricks, till the canoe was brought to its former poſition. Among the amuſements of the children, we obſerved one that was frequently played at, and which ſhewed a conſiderable ſhare of dexterity. They take a ſhort ſtick, through one extremity whereof runs a peg ſharpened at both ends, extending about an inch on each ſide, then throwing up a ball, formed of green leaves moulded together, and faſtened with twine, they catch it on one of the points of the peg; immediately after which, they throw it up again from the peg, then turn the ſtick round, and catch the ball on the other point of the peg. Thus, for ſome time, they continue catching it on each point of the peg alternately, without miſſing it. They are equally expert at another diverſion of a ſimilar nature, throwing up in the air, and catching, in their turns, many of theſe balls; and we have often ſeen little children thus keep five balls in motion at once. This latter game is alſo practiſed by the young people of the Friendly Iſles. The figure and dimenſions of the canoes, ſeen by us at Atooi, have been already deſcribed. Thoſe belonging to the other Sandwich Iſlands were made exactly in the ſame manner; and the largeſt we ſaw was a double one, the property of Terreeoboo, meaſuring 70 feet in length, 12 in breadth, and between 3 and 4 in depth; and each was hollowed out of one tree. Their method of navigation, as well as that of agriculture, reſemble thoſe of the other iſlands in the Pacific Ocean. They have made conſiderable proficiency in the art of ſculpture, and in painting or ſtaining cloth. The moſt curious ſpecimens of their ſculpture, that we had an opportunity of obſerving, were the wooden bowls, in which the Erees drink ava. Theſe are, in general, eight or ten inches in diameter, perfectly round, and extremely well poliſhed. They are ſupported by three or four ſmall human figures, repreſented in different attitudes. Some of them reſt on the ſhoulders of their ſupporters; others on the hands, extended over the head; and ſome on the head and hands. The figures are very neatly finiſhed, and accurately proportioned; even the anatomy of the muſcles is well expreſſed.

Their cloth is manufactured in the ſame manner as at the Society and Friendly Iſlands. That which they intend to paint, is of a ſtrong and thick texture, ſeveral folds being beaten and incorporated together; after which they cut it in breadths, two or three feet wide, and then paint it in a great variety of patterns, with ſuch regularity and comprehenſiveneſs of deſign, as ſhew an extraordinary portion of taſte and fancy. The exactneſs with which the moſt intricate patterns are continued, is really aſtoniſhing, as they have no ſtamps, and as the whole is performed by the eye, with a piece of bamboo cane dipped in paint; the hand being ſupported by another piece of the ſame ſort of cane.

They extract their colours from the ſame berries, and other vegetable articles, which are made uſe of at Otaheite for this purpoſe. The operation of ſtaining or painting their cloth, is confined to the females, and is denominated kipparee. They always called our writing by this name. The young women would frequently take the pen from our hands, and ſhew us that they were as well acquainted with the uſe of it as we ourſelves; telling us, at the ſame time, that our pens were inferior to theirs. They conſidered a manuſcript ſheet of paper as a piece of cloth ſtriped after the mode of our country; and it was with the greateſt difficulty that we could make them underſtand that our figures contained a meaning in them, which theirs was deſtitute of. Their mats they make of the leaves of the pandanus: and theſe, as well as their cloths, are beautifully worked in various patterns, and ſtained with divers colours. Some of them have a ground of ſtraw-colour, embelliſhed with green ſpots; others are of a pale green, ſpotted with ſquares, or rhomboids, of red; and ſome are ornamented with elegant ſtripes, either in ſtrait or waved lines of red and brown. In this branch of manufacture, whether we regard the fineneſs, beauty, or ſtrength, theſe iſlanders may be ſaid to excel the whole world. Their fiſhing hooks are of various ſizes and figures; but thoſe that are principally made uſe of are about two or three inches in length, and are formed in the ſhape of a ſmall fiſh, ſerving as a bait, with a bunch of feathers faſtened to the head or tail. They make their hooks of bone, mother-of-pearl, or wood, pointed and barbed with little bones, or tortoiſe-ſhell. Thoſe with which they fiſh for ſharks, are very large, being, in general, of the length of ſix or eight inches. Conſidering the materials of which theſe hooks are compoſed, their neatneſs and ſtrength are amazing; and, indeed, upon trial, we found them ſuperior to our own. Of the bark of the toota, or cloth-tree, neatly twiſted, they form the line which they uſe for fiſhing, for making nets, and for ſome other purpoſes. It is of different degrees of fineneſs, and may be continued to any length. They have alſo a ſort, made of the bark of a ſhrub, named areemah; and the fineſt is compoſed of human hair: this laſt, however, is chiefly made uſe of in the way of ornament. They likewiſe make cordage of a ſtronger kind, from cocoa-nut fibres, for the rigging of their canoes. Some of this, which was purchaſed by us for our own uſe, was found to be well calculated for the ſmaller kinds of running rigging. They alſo manufacture another ſort of cordage, which is flat, and extremely ſtrong, and is principally uſed for the purpoſe of laſhing the roofs of their houſes. This laſt is not twiſted after the manner of the former ſorts, but is formed of the fibrous ſtrings of the coat of the cocoa-nut, plaited with the fingers, in the ſame manner which is practiſed by our ſeamen in making their points for the reefing of ſails.

Their gourds are applied to various domeſtic purpoſes. Theſe grow to ſuch an enormous magnitude, that ſome of them will contain from ten to a dozen gallons. In order to adapt them the better to their reſpective uſes, they take care to give them different ſhapes, by faſtening bandages round them during their growth. Thus ſome of them are in the form of a diſh, ſerving to hold their puddings, vegetables, and ſalted proviſions: others are of a long cylindrical form, and ſerve to contain their fiſhing tackle; which two ſorts are furniſhed with neat cloſe covers, made alſo of the gourd. Others are in the ſhape of a long-necked bottle, and in theſe water is kept. They ſcore them frequently with a heated inſtrument, ſo as to communicate to them the appearance of being painted, in a great variety of elegant deſigns. Their pans in which they make their ſalt, are made of earth lined with clay, and are in general ſix or eight feet ſquare, and about two thirds of a foot in depth. They are elevated on a bank of ſtones, near the high-water-mark, whence the ſalt water is conducted to the bottom of them, in trenches, out of which they are filled; and in a ſhort time the ſun performs the proceſs of the evaporation. The ſalt we met with at Oneeheow and Atooi, during our firſt viſit, was browniſh, and rather dirty; but that which we afterwards procured in Karakakooa Bay, was white, and of an excellent quality. We obtained an ample ſupply of it, inſomuch that, beſides the quantity uſed by us in ſalting pork, we filled all our empty caſks with it.

The warlike weapons of the inhabitants of theſe iſlands are daggers, which they call by the name of pahooa, ſpears, ſlings, and clubs. The pahooa is made of a black, heavy wood, that reſembles ebony. It is commonly from one to two feet in length, and has a ſtring paſſing through the handle, by which it is ſuſpended from the arm. The blade is ſomewhat rounded in the middle: the ſides are ſharp, and terminate in a point. This offenſive weapon is intended for cloſe engagements, and in the hands of the natives is a very deſtructive one. Their ſpears are of two kinds, and are formed of hard wood, which, in its appearance, is not unlike mahogany. One ſort is from ſix to eight feet in length, well poliſhed, and increaſing gradually in thickneſs from the extremity till within the diſtance of ſix or ſeven inches from the point, which tapers ſuddenly, and has five or ſix rows of barbs. It is probable that theſe are uſed in the way of javelins. The other ſort, with which the warriors we ſaw at Atooi and Owhyhee were chiefly armed, are from 12 to 15 feet in length, and inſtead of being barbed, terminate towards the point, in the manner of the daggers. Their ſlings are the ſame with our common ones, except in this reſpect, that the ſtone is lodged on matting, inſtead of leather. Their clubs are formed indifferently of ſeveral kinds of wood: they are of various ſizes and ſhapes, and of rude workmanſhip.

The inhabitants of the Sandwich Iſlands are divided into three claſſes. The Erees, or chiefs of each diſtrict, are the firſt; and one of theſe is ſuperior to the reſt, who is called, at Owhyhee, Eree-taboo, and Eree-Moee, the firſt name expreſſing his authority, and the latter ſignifying that, in his preſence, all muſt proſtrate themſelves. Thoſe of the ſecond claſs appear to enjoy a right of property, but have no authority. Thoſe who compoſe the third claſs, are called Towtows, or ſervants, and have neither rank nor property. The ſuperior power and diſtinction of Terreeoboo, the Eree-taboo of Owhyhee, was ſufficiently evident from his reception at Karakakooa, on his firſt arrival. The inhabitants all proſtrated themſelves at the entrance of their houſes, and the canoes were tabooed, till he diſcharged the interdict. He was then juſt returned from Mowee, an iſland he was contending for, in behalf of his ſon, Teewarro, whoſe wife was the only child of the king of that place, againſt Taheeterree, his ſurviving brother. In this expedition he was attended by many of his warriors; but we could never learn whether they ſerved him as volunteers, or whether they held their rank and property under that tenure. That the ſubordinate chiefs are tributary to him, is evidently proved in the inſtance of Kaoo, which has been already related. We have alſo obſerved, that the two moſt powerful chiefs of the Sandwich Iſlands, are Terreeoboo and Perreeorannee; the former being chief of Owhyhee, and the latter of Woahoo; all the ſmaller iſles being governed by one of theſe ſovereigns: Mowee was, at this time, claimed by Terreeoboo, for his ſon and intended ſucceſſor; Atooi and Oneeheow being in the poſſeſſion of the grandſons of Perreeorannee. Without entering into the genealogy of the kings of Owhyhee and Mowee, it may be neceſſary to mention, that, when we were firſt off Mowee, Terreeoboo and his warriors were there, to ſupport the claims made by his wife, his ſon, and his daughter-in-law; and a battle had then been fought with the oppoſite party, in which Terreeoboo had been victorious. Matters, however, were afterwards compromiſed; Taheeterree was to have poſſeſſion of the three neighbouring iſlands, during his life; Teewarro to be acknowledged chief of Mowee, and to ſucceed to Owhyhee, on the death of Terreeoboo, together with the three iſlands contiguous to Mowee, after the deceaſe of Taheeterree. Should Teewarro, who has lately married his half ſiſter, die, and leave no iſſue behind him, thoſe iſlands are to deſcend to Maihamaiha, whom we have frequently mentioned, he being the ſon of Terreeoboo's deceaſed brother: and ſhould he die without iſſue, it is doubtful who would be the ſucceſſor, for Terreeoboo's two younger ſons, being born of a mother who had no rank, would be debarred all right of ſucceſſion. We did not ſee Queen Rora-rora, whom Terreeoboo had left at Mowee; but we had an opportunity of ſeeing Kanee Kaberaia, the mother of the two youths of whom he was ſo extremely fond. From what has been already mentioned, it ſhould ſeem that their government is hereditary; whence it appears probable, that the inferior titles, as well as property, deſcend in the ſame channel. Reſpecting Perreeorannee, we only diſcovered that he is an Eree-taboo; that he was, on ſome pretence, invading the poſſeſſion of Taheeterree; and that the iſlands to the leeward were governed by his grandſons.

The Erees appear to have unlimited power over the inferior claſſes of people; many inſtances of which occurred daily while we continued among them. On the other hand, the people are implicitly obedient. It is remarkable, however, that we never ſaw the chiefs exerciſe any acts of cruelty, injuſtice, or inſolence towards them; though they put in practice their power over each other, in a moſt tyrannical degree: which the two following inſtances will fully demonſtrate. One of the lower order of chiefs having ſhewn great civility to the maſter of our ſhip, when employed on the ſurvey of Karakakooa Bay; Mr. King, ſome time afterwards, took him on board, and introduced him to Captain Cook, who engaged him to dine with us. While at table, Pareea entered, whoſe countenance manifeſted the higheſt indignation at ſeeing our gueſt ſo honourably entertained. He ſeized him by the hair of his head, and would have dragged him out of the cabbin, if the Captain had not interfered. After much altercation, we could obtain no other indulgence (without quarrelling with Pareea) than, that our gueſt ſhould be permitted to remain in the cabbin, on condition that he ſeated himſelf on the floor, while Pareea occupied his place at the table. An inſtance ſomewhat ſimilar happened when Terreeoboo came firſt on board the Reſolution; where Maiha-maiha, who attended the king, ſeeing Pareea upon deck, turned him moſt ignominiouſly out of the ſhip; even though we knew Pareea to be a man of the firſt conſequence in the iſland. Whether the lower claſs of people have their property ſecured from the rapacity of the great, we cannot poſſibly ſay, but it appears to be well protected againſt theft and depredation. All their plantations, their houſes, their hogs, and their cloth, are left unguarded, without fear or apprehenſion of plunderers. In the plain country, they ſeparate their poſſeſſions by walls; and, in the woods, where horſe plantains grow, they uſe white flags to diſcriminate property, in the ſame manner as they do bunches of leaves at Otaheite. Theſe circumſtances ſtrongly indicate, that, where property is concerned, the power of the Erees is not arbitrary, but ſo far limited, as to afford encouragement to the inferior orders to cultivate the ſoil, which they occupy diſtinct from each other.

The information we obtained, reſpecting the adminiſtration of juſtice is very imperfect. If a quarrel aroſe among the lower claſs of people, the matter was referred to ſome chief for his deciſion. When an inferior chief had offended one of ſuperior rank, his puniſhment was dictated by, and the reſult of, the feelings of the ſuperior at that moment. If the offender ſhould fortunately eſcape the firſt tranſports of the great man's rage, he perhaps found means, through the mediation of friends, to compound for his offence, by all, or a part of his effects. As to the religion of theſe people, it reſembles that of the Society and Friendly Iſlands. In common with each other, they all have their Morais, their Whattas, ſacred orations, hymns, and ſacrifices. Theſe are convincing proofs that their religious rites and tenets are derived from the ſame ſource. The ceremonies here are, indeed, longer, and more numerous than in the iſlands above-mentioned; and though in all theſe places, the care and performance of their religious rites, is committed to a particular claſs of people; yet we had never found a regular ſociety of prieſts, till we arrived at Kakooa, in Karakakooa Bay. Orono was the title given to the principal of this order; a title which ſeemed to imply ſomething ſacred in a high degree, and which almoſt received adoration in the perſon of Omeeah. The privilege of holding the principal offices in this order, is doubtleſs limited to certain families. Omeeah, the Orono, was Kaao's ſon, and Kaireekeea's nephew. Kaireekeea preſided in all religious ceremonies at the Morai, in the abſence of his grandfather: it was obſerved, likewiſe, that the ſon of Omeeah, an infant of about the age of five years, had always a number of attendants, and ſuch other marks of diſtinction and eſteem were ſhewn him, as we never obſerved in any ſimilar inſtances. Hence we concluded, that his life was an object of much conſequence, and that he would eventually ſucceed to the high dignity of his father. The title of Orono, we have already obſerved, was beſtowed on Captain Cook; and it is very certain, that they conſidered us as a race of beings ſuperior to themſelves; frequently repeating that the great Eatooa lived in our country. The favourite little idol on the Morai, before which Captain Cook fell proſtrate, is called Koonooraekaiee, and is Terreeoboo's god, which they ſaid reſided alſo among us. An almoſt infinite variety of theſe images were to be ſeen, both on the Morais, and about their houſes, on which they beſtow different names; but they certainly were held in very little eſtimation; from their contemptuous expreſſions when ſpeaking of, or to them, and from their expoſing them to ſale for mere trifles; though they generally had one particular figure in high favour, to which, while it continued a favourite, all their adoration was addreſſed. They arrayed it in red cloth, beat their drums, and chanted hymns before it; placed bunches of red feathers, and different vegetables at its feet; and frequently expoſed a pig or a dog, to rot on the Whatta, near which it was placed. In a bay to the ſouthward of Karakakooa, a party of us were conducted to a large houſe, in which we ſaw the figure of a black man, reſting on his toes and fingers, and his head inclined backward: the limbs were well proportioned, and the whole was beautifully poliſhed. This figure was called Maee; round which thirteen others were placed, with ſhapes rude and diſtorted. Theſe, we were told, were the Eatoo's of deceaſed chiefs, whoſe names they repeated. Numbers of Whatta's were ſeen within this place, with the remains of offerings on many of them. They alſo have in their habitations many ludicrous and obſcene repreſentations by idols, not unlike the Priapus of the ancients. Former navigators have remarked, that the Society and Friendly Iſlanders pay adoration to particular birds, and it ſeems to be a cuſtom prevalent in theſe iſlands: ravens may here, perhaps, be objects of worſhip; for Mr. King ſaw two of theſe birds perfectly tame, and was told they were Eatooas: that gentleman offered ſeveral articles for them, which were all refuſed; and he was particularly cautioned not to offend, or hurt them. Among their religious ceremonies may be claſſed the prayers and offerings made by their prieſts before their meals. As they always drink ava before they begin a repaſt, while that is chewing, the ſuperior in rank begins a ſort of hymn, in which he is ſoon after joined by one or more of the company; the bodies of the others are put in motion, and their hands are clapped together in concert with the fingers. The ava being ready, cups of it are preſented to thoſe who do not join in the hymn, which are held in their hands till it is concluded; when, with united voice, they make a loud reſponſe, and drink their ava. The performers are then ſerved with ſome of it, which they drink, after the ſame ceremony has been repeated. And, if any perſon of a ſuperior rank ſhould be preſent, a cup is preſented to him laſt of all; who having chanted for a ſhort time, and hearing a reſponſe from others, he pours a ſmall quantity on the ground, and drinks the reſt. A piece of the fleſh, which has been dreſſed, is then cut off, and together with ſome of the vegetables, is placed at the foot of the figure of the Eatooa; and, after another hymn has been chanted, they begin their meal. A ceremony, in many reſpects reſembling this, is alſo performed by the chiefs, when they drink ava between their regular meals. According to the accounts given by the natives, human ſacrifices are more common here than in any of the iſlands we have viſited. They have recourſe to theſe horrid rites, on the commencement of a war, and previous to a battle, or any ſignal enterprize. The death of every chief demands an offering of one or more Towtows; and we were informed not leſs than ten were devoted to ſuffer, on the deceaſe of Terreeoboo, the king. But the unhappy victims are totally unacquainted with their ordained fate; which is, to be attacked with large clubs, wherever they may happen to be; and after they are dead, are conveyed to the place where the ſubſequent rites are to be performed. This brings to our remembrance the ſkulls of thoſe who had been ſacrificed on the deceaſe of ſome principal chief, and were fixed to the Morai at Kakooa; at which village we received further information on this ſubject; for we were ſhewn a ſmall piece of ground, within a ſtone fence, which we were told was a Hereeere, or burying-place of a chief. The perſon who gave us this information, pointing to one of the corners, added; and there lie the tangata and waheene-taboo, or the man and woman who became ſacrifices at his funeral. The knocking out their fore teeth, may be with propriety claſſed among their religious cuſtoms. Moſt of the common people, and many of the chiefs, had loſt one or more of them; and this, we underſtood, was conſidered as a propitiatory ſacrifice to the Eatooa, to avert his anger; and not like the cutting off part of the finger at the Friendly Iſlands, to expreſs the violence of their grief at the deceaſe of a friend. Concerning their opinions, reſpecting a future ſtate, we had very defective information. Enquiring of them, whither the dead were gone? we were told, that the breath, which they ſeemed to conſider as the immortal part, was fled to the Eatooa. They ſeemed alſo to give a deſcription of ſome place, which they ſuppoſe to be the abode of the dead; but we could not learn, that they had any idea of rewards and puniſhments.

Here an explanation of the word Taboo may not be improperly introduced. On aſking the reaſons of the intercourſe being interdicted, between us and the iſlanders, the day preceding Terreeoboo's arrival, we were informed, that the Bay was tabooed. The ſame interdiction took place, by our deſire, when we interred the remains of Captain Cook. The moſt implicit obedience, in theſe two inſtances, was rendered by the natives; but whether on religious principles, or in deference to civil authority, we cannot pretend to determine. The ground whereon our obſervatories were fixed, and the place whereon our maſts were depoſited, were tabooed, and the operation was equally efficacious. This conſecration was performed by the prieſts only; and yet, at our requeſt, the men ventured on the ſpot which was tabooed; whence it ſhould ſeem they entertained no religious apprehenſions, their obedience being limited merely to our refuſal. No inducements could bring the women near us; on account, it is preſumed, of the Morai adjoining; which they are, at all times, prohibited from approaching; not only here, but in all the iſlands of the ſouth ſeas, women, it has been obſerved, are always tabooed, or forbidden to eat certain articles of food. We have ſeen many of them, at their meals, have their meat put into their mouths by others; and, on our requeſting to know the reaſon of it, we were informed that they were tabooed, and not permitted to feed themſelves. This prohibition was always the conſequence of aſſiſting at any funeral, touching a dead body, and many other occaſions. The word taboo, is indifferently applied, either to perſons or things; as the natives are tabooed, the bay is tabooed, &c. This word is alſo expreſſive of any thing ſacred, devoted, or eminent. The king of Owhyhee is called Eree-taboo, and a human victim, tangata-taboo; and, among the Friendly Iſlanders, Tonga, where the king reſides, is called Tonga-taboo.

With reſpect to their marriages, very little can be ſaid, except that ſuch a compact ſeems to exiſt among them. It has already been mentioned, that, when Terreeoboo had left his queen Rora-rora, at Mowee, another woman cohabited with him, by whom he had children, and ſeemed particularly attached to her; but whether polygamy is allowed, or whether it is mixed with concubinage, either among the principal or inferior orders, we ſaw too little of, to warrant any concluſions. From what we obſerved of the domeſtic concerns of the lower claſs of people, one man and one woman ſeemed to have the direction of the houſe, and the children were ſubordinate to them, as in civilized countries. The following is the only inſtance of any thing like jealouſy, which we have ſeen among them, and which ſhews, that, among married women of rank, not only fidelity, but even a degree of reſerve, is required. At one of their boxing matches, Omeah roſe two or three times from his place, and approaching his wife, with ſtrong marks of diſpleaſure, commanded her as we ſuppoſed, to withdraw. Whether he thought her, beauty engaged too much of our attention, or whatever might be his motives, there certainly exiſted no real cauſe of jealouſy. She, however, continued in her place, and at the concluſion of the entertainment, joined our party, and even ſolicited ſome trifling preſents. She was informed that we had not any about us, but that, if ſhe would accompany us to the tent, ſhe ſhould be welcome to make choice of what ſhe liked. She was, accordingly, proceeding with us; which being obſerved by Omeah, he followed in a great rage, ſeized her by the hair, and, with his fiſts, began to inflict ſevere corporal puniſhment. Having been the innocent cauſe of this extraordinary treatment, we were exceedingly concerned at it; though we underſtood it would be highly improper for us to interfere between huſband and wife of ſuch ſuperior rank. The natives, however, at length interpoſed, and, the next day, we had the ſatisfaction of meeting them together, perfectly ſatisfied with each other; beſides, what was extremely ſingular, the lady would not permit us to rally the huſband on his behaviour, which we had an inclination to do; plainly telling us, that he had acted very properly.

We had twice an opportunity, at Karakakooa Bay, of ſeeing a part of their funeral rites. Hearing of the death of an old chief, not far from our obſervatories, ſome of us repaired to the place, where we beheld a number of people aſſembled. They were ſeated round an area, fronting the houſe where the deceaſed lay; and a man, having on a red feathered cap, came to the door, conſtantly putting out his head, and making a moſt lamentable howl, accompanied with horrid grimaces, and violent diſtortions of the face. A large mat was afterwards ſpread upon the area, and thirteen women and two men, who came out of the houſe, ſat down upon it in three equal rows; three of the women, and the two men being in front. The women had feathered ruffs on their necks and hands, and their ſhoulders were decorated with broad green leaves, curiouſly ſcolloped. Near a ſmall hut, at one corner of this area, half a dozen boys were placed, waving ſmall white banners, and taboo ſticks, who would not permit us to approach them. Hence we imagined, that the dead body was depoſited in the hut; but we were afterwards informed that it remained in the houſe, where the tricks were playing at the door by the man in the red cap. The company ſeated on the mat, ſung a melancholy tune, accompanied with a gentle motion of the arms and body. This having continued ſome time, they put themſelves in a poſture between kneeling and ſitting, and their arms and bodies into a moſt rapid motion, keeping pace, at the ſame time, with the muſic. Theſe laſt exertions being too violent to continue, at intervals they had ſlower motions. An hour having paſſed in theſe ceremonies, more mats were ſpread upon the area, when the dead chief's widow, and three or four other elderly women came out of the houſe with ſlow and ſolemn pace; and, ſeating themſelves before the company, began to moan moſt bitterly, in which they were joined by the three rows of women behind them; the two men appearing melancholy and penſive. They continued with little variation, till late in the evening, when we left them; and, at day-light, in the morning, the people were diſperſed, and every thing appeared perfectly quiet. We were then given to underſtand, that the body was removed; but we could not learn how it was diſpoſed of. While we were directing our enquiries to this object, we were addreſſed by three women of rank, who ſignified to us, that our preſence interrupted the performance of ſome neceſſary rites. Soon after we had left them, we heard their cries and lamentations; and, when we met them a few hours afterwards, the lower parts of their faces were painted perfectly black. We had alſo an opportunity of obſerving the ceremonies at the funeral of one of the ordinary claſs. Hearing ſome mournful cries, iſſuing from a miſerable hut, we entered it, and diſcovered two women, whom we ſuppoſed to be mother and daughter, weeping over the body of a man who had that moment expired. They firſt covered the body with cloth: then lying down by it, they ſpread the cloth over themſelves, beginning a melancholy kind of ſong, and repeating frequently Aweh medoaah! Aweh tanee! Oh my father! Oh my huſband! In one corner of the hut a younger daughter lay proſtrate on the ground, having ſome black cloth ſpread over her, and repeating the ſame expreſſions. On our quitting this melancholy ſcene, we found many of their neighbours collected together at the door, who were all perfectly ſilent, and attentive to their lamentations.

Mr. King was willing to have embraced this opportunity of knowing in what manner the body would be diſpoſed of; and therefore, after being convinced that it was not removed till after he went to bed, he ordered the ſentries to walk before the houſe, and if there were any appearance of removing the body, to acquaint him with it. The ſentries, however, were remiſs in the performance of their duty, for, before the morning, the body was taken away. On aſking, how it had been diſpoſed of, they pointed towards the ſea, perhaps thereby indicating, that it had been depoſited in the deep, or that it had been conveyed to ſome burying ground beyond the bay. The place of interment for the chiefs, is the morai, or heree erees, and thoſe who are ſacrificed on the occaſion, are buried by the ſide of them. The morai in which the chief was interred, who, after a ſpirited reſiſtance, had been killed in the cave, is adorned with a hanging of red cloth round it. Having thus laid before our readers a circumſtantial and comprehenſive account of the whole group of the Sandwich Iſlands, we proceed to relate the tranſactions, incidents and events, during our ſecond Expedition to the North, by the way of Kamtſchatka, and on our return home, by the way of Canton, and the Cape of Good Hope, from March 1779, to Auguſt 1780. But it may not be amiſs to cloſe this chapter, with an abſtract of the aſtronomical obſervations, which were made at the obſervatory in Karakakooa Bay, for determining its latitude and longitude; to which we ſhall add the latitude and longitude of the Sandwich Iſlands, collected into one point of view. The latitude of the obſervatory, deduced from meridian zenith diſtances of the ſun, and ſome particular ſtars, we found to be 19 deg. 28 min. N. and its longitude, deduced from 253 ſets of lunar-obſervations, to be 204 deg. E.

The Latitude and Longitude of the SANDWICH ISLANDS.

		Latitude		Longitude	
		deg.	min.	deg.	min.
Owhyhee	The North-point	20	17	204	2
	South-point	18	54	204	15
	Eaſt-point	19	34	205	6
	Karakakooa Bay	19	28	204	
Mowee	Eaſt-point	20	50	204	4
	South-point	20	34	203	48
	Weſt-point	20	54	203	24
Morokinnee - - - - - - -		20	39	203	33
Tahoorowa - - - - - - -		20	38	203	27
Ranai - - -	South-point -	20	46	203	8
Morotoi - -	Weſt-point - -	21	10	202	46
Woahoo - -	Anchoring-point	21	43	202	9
Atooi - - -	Wymoa Bay -	21	57	200	20
Oneeheow -	Anchoring-place	21	50	199	45
Oreehoua - - - - - - - -		22	2	199	52
Tahoora - - - - - - - -		21	43	199	36

CHAP. XVII.

The Reſolution and Diſcovery, having weighed anchor, quit Oneeheow—A view of the coaſt of Kamtſchatka—Enter the bay of Awatſka—Deſcry the town of St. Peter and St. Paul—Party ſent on ſhore—Their reception by the Commander of the port—Another party diſpatched to Bolcheretſk, proviſions, and ſtores being extremely ſcarce at St. Peter and St. Paul—Proceed up the river Awatſka—Civility and hoſpitality from the inhabitants of the town of Karatchin—A journey on ſledges—Curious account of that mode of travelling—Arrival at Natcheekin—Embark on the Bolchoireka River—Formal proceſſion into the capital—Hoſpitality and generoſity of Major Behm, Commander of the Garriſon—Bolcheretſk deſcribed—Affecting departure from that place—Return to the ſhips—Remarkable inſtance of generoſity in the ſailors—Major Behn carries diſpatches to Peterſburgh—His departure and extraordinary character—Tranſactions at Petropaulowſka—The Ruſſian Hoſpital put under the care of our Surgeons—Difficulties in ſailing out of the bay—Steer to the northward—Appearance of the country—Cheepoonſkoi Noſs—Kronotſkoi Noſs—Kamtſchatſkoi Noſs—Olutorſkoi Noſs—And St. Thadeus's Noſs, paſſed, and the errors of the Ruſſian Charts pointed out.

ON Monday, the 15th of March 1779, we weighed anchor, and paſſing to the N. of Tahoora, ſtood to the S. W. in expectation of falling in with the iſland of Modoopapappa; the natives having aſſured us, that it lay in that direction, within five hours ſail of Tahoora. The next day at five o'clock P. M. we made a ſignal for the Diſcovery to come under our ſtern, having given over all hopes of ſeeing Modoopapappa. On Wedneſday, the 17th, we ſteered W. Captain Clerke intending to keep in the ſame parallel of latitude, till we made the longitude of Awatſka Bay; and then to ſteer N. for the harbour of St. Peter and St. Paul, which was alſo fixed on as our rendezvous, if we ſhould happen to ſeparate. This track was choſen, becauſe we ſuppoſed it to be yet unexplored, and we might probably meet with ſome new iſlands in our paſſage. On Tueſday, the 30th, the winds and unſettled ſtate of the weather, induced Captain Clerke to alter his plan, and, at ſix in the evening, we began to ſteer N. W. which we continued till Tueſday, the 6th of April, at which time we loſt the trade wind. The fine weather we met with between the tropics, had not been idly ſpent. The carpenters found ſufficient employment in repairing the boats. The beſt bower cable had been ſo much damaged that we were obliged to cut forty fathoms from it. The airing of ſails and other ſtores, which from the leakineſs of the decks, and ſides of the ſhip, were perpetually ſubject to be wet, had now become a troubleſome part of duty. For ſome time paſt, even the operation of mending the ſailors old jackets, had riſen into a duty both of difficulty and importance. It may be neceſſary to inform thoſe who are unacquainted with the habits of ſeamen, that they are ſo accuſtomed, in ſhips of war, to be directed in the care of themſelves by their officers, that they loſe the very idea of foreſight, and contract the thoughtleſſneſs of infants. Had theſe people been left to their own diſcretion alone, the whole crew would have been very thinly clad, before the voyage had been half finiſhed. It was natural to expect, that their experience, during the voyage to the N. laſt year, would have made them ſenſible of the neceſſity of paying ſome attention to theſe matters; but if ſuch reflections ever occurred to them, the impreſſion was ſo tranſient, that, upon returning to the tropical climates, their fur jackets, and the reſt of their clothes, adapted to a cold country, were kicked about the decks as things of no value; though it was known in both ſhips, that we were to make another voyage towards the pole. They were, of courſe, picked up by the officers; and, being put into caſks, reſtored about this time to the owners. In the afternoon of Wedneſday, the 7th, we obſerved ſome of the ſheathing floating by the ſhip; and, on examination, found that 12 or 14 feet had been waſhed off from under the larboard-bow, where the leak was ſuppoſed to have been; which, ever ſince leaving the Sandwich Iſlands, had kept our people almoſt conſtantly at the pumps, making 12 inches water in an hour; but, as we had always been able to keep it under with the hand-pumps, it gave us no great uneaſineſs, till Tueſday, the 13th, when, about ſix o'clock, P. M. we were greatly alarmed by a ſudden inundation, that deluged the whole ſpace between decks. The water which had lodged in the coal-hole, not finding a ſufficient vent into the well, had forced up the platforms over it, and in a moment ſet every thing afloat. Our ſituation was now exceedingly diſtreſſing; nor did we perceive immediately any means of relief. At laſt we thought of cutting a hole through the bulk-head that ſeparated the coal-hole from the fore-hold, and, by that means, to make a paſſage for the body of water into the well. As ſoon as a paſſage was made, the greateſt part of the water emptied itſelf into the well, and enabled us to get out the reſt in buckets: but the leak was now ſo much increaſed, that we were obliged to keep one half of our people pumping and bailing conſtantly, till the noon of Thurſday, the 15th. Our men bore, with great chearfulneſs, this exceſſive fatigue, which was much increaſed by their having no dry place to ſleep in; on which account they had their full allowance of grog. On Thurſday, the 22nd, the cold was exceedingly ſevere; and the ropes were ſo frozen, that it was with difficulty they could be forced through the blocks. On Friday, the 23d, in latitude 52 deg. 9 min. longitude 160 deg. 7 min. we ſaw mountains covered with ſnow, and a high conical rock, diſtant about four leagues; and ſoon after this imperfect view we were enveloped in a thick fog. According to our maps, we were now but 8 leagues from the entrance of Awatſka Bay; therefore when the weather cleared up, we ſtood in to take a nearer ſurvey of the country. A moſt diſmal and dreary proſpect preſented itſelf. The coaſt is ſtraight, and uniform, without bays or inlets. From the ſhore, the ground riſes in moderate hills, and behind them are ranges of mountains, whoſe ſummits penetrate the clouds. The whole was covered with ſnow, except the ſides of ſome cliffs which roſe perpendicularly from the ſea. The wind blew ſtrong from the N. E. with hazy weather and ſleet, from the 24th to the 28th. The ſhip reſembled a complete maſs of ice; the ſhrouds being ſo incruſted with it, as to double their dimenſions in circumference: in ſhort, the experience of the oldeſt ſeaman among us had never met with ſuch continued ſhowers of ſleet, and that extreme cold which we had now to encounter. Soon after our departure from Karakakooa Bay, Captain Clerke was taken ill, and during this run, the ſea was in general ſo rough, and the Reſolution ſo leaky, that the ſail-makers had no place to repair the ſails in, except the Captain's apartments, which in his declining ſtate of health, was a ſerious inconvenience to him. At this time the inclemency of the weather, the difficulty of working our ſhips, and the inceſſant duty required at the pumps, rendered the ſervice intolerable to the crew, ſome of whom were much froſt bitten, and others were confined with colds.

Sunday, the 25th, we were favoured with a tranſient glance of the entrance of Awatſka Bay; but, in the preſent ſtate of the weather, we could not preſume to venture into it. For this reaſon we again ſtood off, when we loſt ſight of the Diſcovery; but this gave us little concern, being now ſo near the place of rendezvous. Wedneſday, the 28th, in the morning, the weather cleared up, and we had a fine day, when our men were employed in taking the ice from the rigging, ſails, &c. that in caſe of a thaw, which was now expected, it might not fall on our heads. At noon, in latitude 52 deg. 44 min. longitude 159 deg. the entrance of Awatſka Bay, bore N. W. The mouth of it opens in the direction of N. N. W. On the S. ſide, the land is moderately high, riſing to the northward into a bluff-head. Three remarkable rocks lie in the channel between them, not far from the N. E. ſide, and, on the oppoſite ſide, a ſingle rock of conſiderable ſize. At three o'clock, P. M. we ſtood into the bay, with a fair wind from the ſouthward, having from 22 to 7 fathoms ſoundings. There is a look-out houſe on the north-head, uſed as a light-houſe, when any of the Ruſſian ſhips are expected upon the coaſt. It had a flag-ſtaff, but we could not perceive any perſon there. Having paſſed the mouth of the bay, which extends about four miles in length, a circular baſon preſented itſelf of about 25 miles in circumference; in this we anchored about four o'clock; fearing to run foul of a ſhoal mentioned by Muller to lie in the channel. Great quantities of looſe ice drifted with the tide in the middle of the bay, but the ſhores were blocked up with it. Plenty of wild fowl, of various kinds, were ſeen; alſo large flights of Greenland pigeons, together with ravens and eagles. We examined every corner of the bay, with our glaſſes, in order to diſcern the town of St. Peter and St. Paul, which, from the accounts we had received at Oonalaſhka, we ſuppoſed to be a place of ſtrength and conſequence. At length we diſcovered, to the N. E. ſome miſerable log-houſes, and a few conical huts, amounting, in the whole, to about 30, which, from their ſituation, notwithſtanding all the reſpect we wiſhed to entertain for a Ruſſian Oſtrog, or Town, we concluded to be Petropaulowſka. In juſtice, however, to the hoſpitable treatment we found here, it may not be amiſs to anticipate the reader's curioſity, by aſſuring him that our diſappointment proved, in the end, a matter of entertainment to us. In this wretched extremity of the earth, beyond conception barbarous and inhoſpitable, out of the reach of civilization, bound and barricaded with ice, and covered with ſummer ſnow, we experienced the tendereſt feelings of humanity, joined to a nobleneſs of mind, and elevation of ſentiment, which would have done honour to any clime and nation.

On Sunday the 29th, in the morning, at day-light, Captain King was ſent with the boats to examine the bay, and to preſent the letters to the Ruſſian Commander, which he had brought from Oonalaſhka. Having proceeded as far as we were able with the boats, we got upon the ice, which extended near half a mile from the ſhore. The inhabitants had not yet ſeen either the ſhip, or the boats; for even after we had got upon the ice, we could not perceive any ſigns of a living creature in the town. We ſunk at every ſtep almoſt knee deep in the ſnow, and though we found tolerable footing at the bottom, yet the weak parts of the ice not being diſcoverable, we were conſtantly expoſed to the danger of breaking through it. This accident, at laſt, actually happened to Captain King; who ſtepping on quickly over a ſuſpicious ſpot, in order to preſs with leſs weight upon it, he came upon a ſecond before he could ſtop himſelf, which broke under him, and in he fell, Fortunately he roſe clear of the ice; and a man who was a little way behind with a boat hook, throwing it out, the Captain, by that means, was enabled to get upon firm ice again. The nearer we approached the ſhore, we found the ice ſtill more broken. The ſight of a ſledge advancing towards us, however, afforded ſome comfort. But inſtead of coming to our relief, the driver ſtopt ſhort; and called out to us. Captain King immediately held up Iſmyloff's letters; in conſequence of which, the man turned about, and drove full ſpeed back again, followed with the execrations of ſome of our party. Unable to draw any concluſion from this unaccountable behaviour, we ſtill proceeded towards the Oſtrog, though with the greateſt circumſpection; and, when at the diſtance of about a quarter of a mile from it, we obſerved a body of armed men advancing to meet us. To avoid giving them any alarm, and to preſerve the moſt peaceable appearance, the Captain, and Mr. Webber, marched in front, and the men, who had boat-hooks in their hands, were ſtationed in the rear. The armed party conſiſted of about 30 ſoldiers, headed by a perſon with a cane in his hand. Within a few paces of us he halted, and drew up his men in martial order. Captain King preſented Iſmyloff's letters to him, but in vain endeavoured to make him underſtand that we were Engliſh, and had brought theſe diſpatches from Oonalaſhka. After an attentive examination of our perſons, he conducted us towards the village in ſolemn ſilence, halting frequently his men, and ordering them to perform different parts of their manual exerciſe; with a view, as we ſuppoſed, to convince us, that if we ſhould preſume to offer any violence, we ſhould have to deal with thoſe who knew how to defend themſelves. During the whole of this time, the Captain was in his wet clothes, ſhivering with cold; yet he could not avoid being diverted with this military parade, though it was attended by an unſeaſonable delay. Arriving, at length, at the habitation of the commanding officer of the party, we were uſhered in; and, after giving orders to the military without doors, our hoſt appeared, accompanied by the ſecretary of the port. One of the letters from Iſmyloff was now opened, and the other ſent expreſs to Bolcheretſk, a town on the weſt ſide of Kamtſchatka, and the place of reſidence of the Ruſſian Commander of this province.

It appeared to us extraordinary, that the natives had not ſeen the Reſolution the preceding day when we caſt anchor, nor this morning, till our boats approached the ice. The firſt ſight of the ſhip, we underſtood, had ſtruck them with a conſiderable panic. The garriſon was put inſtantly under arms; two field-pieces were placed before the Commander's houſe; and powder, ſhot, and lighted matches, were all in readineſs. The officer who had conducted us to his dwelling, was a ſerjeant, and alſo the Commander of the Oſtrog. After he had recovered from the alarm which our arrival had produced, the kindneſs and hoſpitality of his behaviour was aſtoniſhing. His houſe, indeed, was intolerably hot, but remarkably neat and clean. After this Capt. King had his clothes changed, by putting on a compleat ſuit of the ſerjeant's, at his earneſt requeſt, which was doubtleſs the beſt he could procure; and, conſidering our viſit was unexpected, was ingeniouſly conducted. To have made ſoup and bouillie would have required ſome time; inſtead therefore of this, we had ſome cold beef ſliced, with boiling water poured over it. The next courſe was a large roaſted bird, the taſte of which was moſt delicious, though we were unacquainted with its ſpecies. Having eaten a part of this, it was removed, and fiſh was ſerved up, dreſſed in two different ways. Soon after which, the remainder of the bird appeared again in ſavoury and ſweet pates. Our liquor was what the Ruſſians diſtinguiſh by the name of quaſs, and was the moſt indifferent part of our entertainment. The ſerjeant's wife ſerved up ſeveral of the diſhes, and was not permitted to ſit down at table with us. Our repaſt being finiſhed, during which our converſation was limited to a few bows, and other perſonal tokens of mutual reſpect, we ſtrove to explain to our hoſt the occaſion of our viſit to this port. Probably, Iſmyloff's letters we had delivered made him readily comprehend our meaning; but as there was not a perſon in the place, who underſtood any other languages than thoſe of Ruſſia or Kamtſchatka, we found it extremely difficult to comprehend what he endeavoured to communicate to us. Having ſpent much time in our attempts to underſtand each other, the ſum of the intelligence we had received appeared to be, that though we could not be ſupplied with proviſions or ſtores at this place, yet thoſe articles were to be procured in great plenty at Bolcheretſk. That he doubted not, but the Commander would readily ſupply us with what we wanted; but that, till he received his orders, neither he, nor any of the natives could even venture on board the veſſel. It being now time for us to depart, and as Mr. King's clothes were not yet dry, he had again recourſe to the ſerjeant's benevolence, for his permiſſion to carry thoſe on board which he had borrowed of him. This requeſt was chearfully complied with, and a ſledge, with five dogs and a driver, was inſtantly provided for each of our party. This mode of conveyance afforded high entertainment for the ſailors; and they were delighted ſtill more, when they found that the two boat-hooks had a ſledge appropriated ſolely for their conveyance. Theſe ſledges are ſo light, and ſo admirably well conſtructed for the purpoſes intended, that they went ſafely and expeditiouſly over the ice, and over parts of it which we ſhould have found extremely difficult to have paſſed on foot. On our return, the boats were towing the Reſolution towards the village; and, at ſeven, we moored cloſe to the ice; the entrance of the Bay bearing S. by E. and the Oſtrog N. diſtant one mile and a half. On Friday, the 30th, the caſks and cables were taken to the quarter-deck, to lighten the veſſel forward, and the carpenters proceeded to ſtop the leak which had occaſioned us ſo much trouble. In the middle of the day we had ſuch warm weather, that the ice began to break away very faſt, and almoſt choaked up the entrance of the bay. Several of our officers waited upon the ſerjeant, who received them with great civility; and Captain Clerke ſent him a preſent of two bottles of rum, thinking he could not ſend him any thing more acceptable. In return, he received twenty fine trouts, and ſome excellent fowls of the grouſe kind. Though the Bay ſwarmed with ducks and Greenland pigeons, our ſportſmen had no ſucceſs; for, being exceedingly ſhy, they could not kill any.

On Saturday, the 1ſt of May, in the morning, we ſaw our conſort, the Diſcovery, ſtanding into the Bay: a boat was immediately diſpatched to her aſſiſtance, and ſhe was moored in the afternoon cloſe by the Reſolution. On the 3d, in the morning, two ſledges having been obſerved to drive into the village, Mr. King was ordered on ſhore, to learn whether an anſwer was arrived from the Commander of Kamtſchatka. The diſtance from Bolcheretſk to St. Peter and St. Paul's is 135 Engliſh miles. The diſpatches were ſent off in a ſledge, drawn by dogs, on the 29th, at noon, and returned with an anſwer early this morning; ſo that they performed a journey of 270 miles in little more than three days and a half. For the preſent, the return of the Commander's anſwer was concealed from us. While Mr. King was on ſhore, his boat, and another belonging to the Diſcovery, were bound faſt to the ice. In this ſituation, the Diſcovery's launch was ſent to their aſſiſtance, which ſoon partook of the ſame fate: but on the 4th, the floating ice was drifted away, by the wind changing, and the boats were ſet at liberty, without ſuſtaining the ſmalleſt damage. At 10 o'clock A. M. ſeveral ſledges having arrived at the edge of the ice, a boat was ſent from the ſhip to conduct thoſe who were in them on board. One of them proved to be a Ruſſian merchant from Bolcheretſk, whoſe name was Fedoſitſch; and the other a German, named Port, with diſpatches from Major Behm, Commander of Kamtſchatka, to Captain Clerke. Arriving at the edge of the ice, and ſeeing diſtinctly the magnitude of the ſhips, within 200 yards of them, they were exceedingly alarmed; and before they ventured to embark, ſtipulated that two of our boat's crew ſhould remain on ſhore, as hoſtages for their ſafety. It afterwards appeared, for what reaſons we could not conceive, that Iſmyloff, in his letter to the Commander, had mentioned our ſhips as two ſmall trading veſſels; and that the ſerjeant, having ſeen them at a diſtance only, had not rectified the miſtake. When they had arrived on board, we perceived, by their timid behaviour, that they entertained ſome very extraordinary apprehenſions. However, an uncommon degree of ſatisfaction was viſible

ſible in their countenances, when the German found a perſon among us, with whom he could enter into converſation. Mr. Webber ſpoke that language fluently, and convinced them, though not without difficulty, that we were Engliſhmen and friends. Mr. Port was introduced to Captain Clerke, to whom he delivered the Commander's letter. It was written in the German language, and merely complimental, giving him and his officers an invitation to Bolcheretſk. Mr. Port, at the ſame time, acquainted him, that the Major had conceived a very wrong idea of the ſize of the ſhips, and of the ſervice they were engaged in; Iſmyloff, in his letter, having repreſented them as two ſmall pacquet-boats, and cautioned him to be on his guard, inſinuating, that he ſuſpected us to be no better than pirates. In conſequence of this letter, he ſaid, there had been various conjectures formed about us at Bolcheretſk. We were much diverted with the fears and apprehenſions of theſe people; and eſpecially with an account given by Mr. Port, of the ſerjeant's extreme caution the day before. On ſeeing Mr. King and ſome other gentlemen come on ſhore he concealed him and the Ruſſian merchant in the kitchen, to give them an opportunity of liſtening to our converſation with each other, in order to diſcover whether we were Engliſhmen or not.

Being now enabled, by the aid of an interpreter, to converſe with the Ruſſians, our firſt enquiries were directed to the means of procuring a ſupply of freſh proviſions and naval ſtores; particularly the latter, for the want of which we had been in great diſtreſs. On enquiry, it appeared, that the whole ſtock of live cattle, which the country about the Bay could furniſh, amounted only to two heifers; and theſe the ſerjeant very readily promiſed to ſecure for us. Our next applications were made to the merchant, whoſe terms for ſerving us were ſo exorbitant that Captain Clerke thought it expedient to ſend an expreſs to the Commander, to learn the price of ſtores at Bolcheretſk. This determination being communicated to Mr. Port, he diſpatched a meſſenger to the Commander at Bolcheretſk, to acquaint him with our intentions, and to remove the ſuſpicions that had been entertained reſpecting the purpoſes of our voyage. For the above ſervice Mr. King was fixed upon, and ordered to prepare for ſetting out the next day, together with Mr. Webber, who was to accompany him as interpreter. That day, and the next, however, the weather proved too ſtormy for beginning a journey through ſo deſolate and wild a country: but on Friday, the 7th of May, the weather became more favourable, and we ſet out in the ſhip's boats, early in the morning, in order to reach the entrance of the Awatſka at high-water, on account of the ſhoals at the mouth of that river. The country boats were to meet us here, to conduct us up the ſtream. Captain Gore was alſo added to our party, and we were likewiſe accompanied by Mr. Port and the Ruſſian merchant, with two Coſſacks, having been previouſly furniſhed with warm furred cloathing; a very neceſſary precaution, as it began to ſnow briſkly immediately after our ſetting out. About eight o'clock we were ſtopped by ſhoal water, within a mile of the mouth of the river; when ſome Kamtſchadales took us and our baggage, in ſome ſmall canoes, and conveyed us over a bank of ſand, which the rapidity of the river had thrown up, and which, we were informed, was continually ſhifting. Having paſſed this ſhoal, the water again deepened, and we were furniſhed with a commodious boat, reſembling a Norway yawl, to convey us up the river, together with canoes for the reception of our baggage. The breadth of the mouth of Awatſka is about a quarter of a mile, but it gradually narrowed as we advanced. Having proceeded a few miles, we paſſed ſeveral branches, many of which, we were told, emptied themſelves into other parts of the Bay; and that ſome of thoſe on the left ran into the Paratounca river. For the firſt 10 miles, the general direction of the river from the Bay, is to the N. and afterwards it turns to the weſtward. Except this bend, it chiefly preſerves a ſtrait courſe; and flows through a low flat country, to the diſtance of 30 miles from the ſea, which is ſubject to frequent inundations. Six men were employed in puſhing us on with long poles, three of them being at each end of the boat; and proceeded againſt the ſtream, at the rate of about three miles an hour. Our conductors endured this ſevere labour for 10 hours; ſtopping only once, and that for a ſhort ſpace of time, to take a little refreſhment. Having been informed at our firſt ſetting out, that we could eaſily reach Karatchin that night, we were greatly diſappointed to find ourſelves 15 miles from that place at ſun-ſet. This was attributed to the delay in paſſing the ſhoals, both at the entrance of the river, and in many other places. Our men being exceedingly fatigued, and as the difficulty of navigating the river would have increaſed by the darkneſs of the night, we declined all thoughts of proceeding on our journey that evening: we therefore fixed upon a place that was tolerably well ſheltered, and, clearing it of the ſnow, erected a ſmall marquee, which we had providentially taken with us; and, with the aſſiſtance of a good fire, and ſome excellent punch, paſſed the night agreeably. Our principal inconvenience was, the being obliged to keep at a conſiderable diſtance from the fire; for as ſoon as it was lighted, it thawed every parted round it into an abſolute puddle. The Kamtſchadales were extremely alert and expeditious in erecting our marquee, and cooking our proviſions; but we were much ſurprized at finding they had brought with them their utenſils for making tea, conſidering it as a moſt intolerable hardſhip if they cannot, two or three times a day, regale themſelves with drinking tea. When day-light appeared, we proceeded on our journey, and, before we had made much progreſs, were met by the Toion, or chief of Karatchin, who being apprized of our coming, had provided canoes that were better accommodated for navigating the higher parts of the river. A commodious veſſel, (made by laſhing two canoes together) furniſhed with fur cloaks, and lined with bear-ſkins, was alſo procured for us. We now proceeded rapidly, the Toion's people being remarkably expert in this kind of buſineſs. At ten we arrived at the Oſtrog, named Karatchin, and the ſeat of his command, where we were received by the Kamtſchadale men and women, and ſome Ruſſian ſervants belonging to the merchant, Fedoſitch. They were all attired in their beſt habiliments; thoſe of the women being gay and pleaſing, and conſiſting of a looſe robe of white nankeen, gathered cloſe round the neck, and faſtened with a ſilk collar. A ſhort jacket, without ſleeves, was worn over this, conſiſting of different coloured nankeens; and they had petticoats made of a ſlight Chineſe ſilk. Their ſhifts, which were alſo made of ſilk, had ſleeves extending to the wriſts; and their heads were bound with coloured ſilk handkerchiefs, which entirely concealed the hair of the married women; but the unmarried ones placed the handkerchief under the hair, permitting it to flow looſely down the ſhoulders.

The Oſtrog of Karatchin is pleaſantly ſituated on the ſide of the river, and compoſed of three log-houſes, nineteen balagans, or ſummer habitations, and three jourts, which are houſes under ground. The Toion, to whoſe dwelling we were then conducted, was a plain decent man, ſprung from a Ruſſian mother, and a Kamtſchadale father. His houſe, like all others in this country, conſiſted of only two apartments. All the furniture in the outer room, was a long narrow table, with a bench round it; and the inner apartment, which was the kitchen, was alſo very ſcantily furniſhed. But, the hearty welcome, and kind attention of our hoſt, amply compenſated for the poverty of his habitation. His wife, an excellent cook, ſerved us with various ſorts of fiſh and game, and different kinds of heath-berries, which had been preſerved ſince the laſt year. Whilſt we were dining in this miſerable hut, the gueſts of abſolute ſtrangers, and at the extremity of the habitable globe, a ſolitary half-worn pewter ſpoon attracted our attention. Its form was familiar to us, and the word London was ſtamped upon the back of it. It is impoſſible to expreſs the anxious hopes, and tender remembrances,

membrances, this circumſtance excited in us. Thoſe who have been long abſent from their native country, will readily conceive what inexpreſſible pleaſure ſuch trifling incidents can give.

We had now quitted the river, and the next part of our journey was to be performed on ſledges; but the thaw had been ſo great in the day-time, as not to permit us to ſet out, till the ſnow was become hard and firm by the coldneſs of the evening. This furniſhed us with an opportunity of walking about the village, which was the only place in this country, that we had ſeen free from ſnow. It was ſituated on a flat, of about a mile and an half in circuit. The leaves of the trees were juſt budding, and the verdure was ſtrongly contraſted with the ſurrounding hills, which remained covered with ſnow. The ſoil appearing to be capable of producing common vegetables, we were ſurprized to find that not a ſpot of it was cultivated. Neither were the inhabitants poſſeſſed of cattle of any ſort. In ſhort, their ſituation, during the winter months, muſt be wretched beyond conception. They were now removing from their jourts to their balagans, which gave us an opportunity of obſerving both theſe ſorts of habitations. The people invited us, very civilly, into their houſes; chearfulneſs and content were viſible in every countenance, to which the approaching change of ſeaſon might perhaps contribute. On returning to our hoſt's, ſupper was prepared for us, conſiſting of the ſame articles which compoſed our former repaſt. When we had finiſhed our meal, we entertained the Toion and his wife with punch made of ſome of our ſpirits; and Captain Gore, with his wonted generoſity, made them ſome valuable preſents, after which, they retired to the kitchen, leaving us in the other room; on the benches of which we ſpread our bear-ſkins, and ſought a little repoſe; having firſt ſettled with our conductors, to proceed on our journey, when the ground was judged to be in a ſuitable condition. The melancholy howlings of the dogs awakened us about nine the ſame evening. During the whole time our baggage was laſhing upon the ſledges, their horrid noiſe continued; but, when they were yoked, and prepared for travelling, a chearful yelping ſucceeded, which ceaſed the inſtant they marched off. We ſhall here give our readers an accurate deſcription of a ſledge brought over by Captain King, and late in the poſſeſſion of Sir Aſhton Lever. The length of the body is about four feet and an half, and the breadth one foot. It is made in the form of a creſcent, of light tough wood, faſtened together with wicker work; and, among the principal people, is elegantly ſtained with red and blue; the ſeat being covered with furs or bear-ſkins. It has four legs, about two feet in height, reſting on two long flat pieces of wood, of the breadth of five or ſix inches, extending a foot beyond the body of the ſledge, at each end. Theſe turn up before, ſomewhat like a ſkait, and are ſhod with the bone of ſome ſea-animal. The carriage is ornamented at the fore part with taſſels of coloured cloth, and leather thongs. It has a croſs bar, to which the harneſs is joined; and links of iron, or ſmall bells, are hanging to it, which, by the jingling, is ſuppoſed to encourage the dogs. They ſeldom carry more than one perſon at a time, who ſits aſide, with his feet on the lower part of the ſledge, having his baggage and proviſions, in a bundle behind him. The uſual number of dogs employed in drawing this carriage is five; four of them yoked two and two, and the other acting as leader. The reins, being faſtened to the collar, inſtead of the head, have no great command; and are therefore uſually hung upon the ſledge; the driver depending principally on their obedience to his voice. Great care and attention are conſequently uſed in training up the leader, which frequently becomes very valuable on account of his ſteadineſs and docility; the ſum of forty roubles (or ten pounds) being no unuſual price for one of them. The rider has alſo a crooked ſtick, anſwering the purpoſe both of whip and reins; with which, by ſtriking in the ſnow, he can regulate the ſpeed of the dogs, or even ſtop them at his pleaſure. When they are inattentive to their duty, he often chaſtiſes them by throwing it at them. The dexterity of the riders, in picking this ſtick up again, is very remarkable, and is the moſt difficult manœuvre in the exerciſe of their profeſſion; nor is it, indeed, ſurpriſing that they ſhould be ſkilful in a practice in which they are ſo materially intereſted; for they aſſured us, that if a driver ſhould happen to loſe his ſtick, the dogs immediately diſcover it; and, unleſs their leader is both ſteady and reſolute, they will inſtantly ſet off full ſpeed, and never ſtop till their ſtrength is exhauſted; or till the carriage is overturned and daſhed to pieces, or hurried down a precipice, when all are buried in the ſnow. The accounts of the ſpeed of theſe animals, and of the hardſhips and fatigues they ſuffer, would have appeared incredible, had they not been ſupported by the greateſt authority. We ourſelves were witneſſes of the extraordinary expedition with which the meſſenger returned, who had been diſpatched to Bolcheretſk with the news of our arrival at St. Peter and St. Paul's, though the ſnow was exceedingly ſoft. The Governor of Kamtſchatka aſſured us, that this journey was uſually performed in two days and an half; and that he had once received an expreſs from that harbour in 23 hours. Throughout the winter, the dogs are fed on the offals of dried and ſtinking fiſh; and, even this miſerable food is withheld from them, a day before they ſet out on a journey; and they are not permitted to eat a morſel of any thing till they arrive at the end of it. They are frequently kept faſting for two entire days, in which time they will perform a journey of great extent. The ſhape of theſe dogs reſembles that of the Pomeranian breed, but they are conſiderably larger.

As we did not chuſe to rely upon our own ſkill, we had each of us a man to conduct the ſledge, which, in the condition the roads then were, proved a very laborious buſineſs: for, as the thaw had been prevalent in the vallies, through which was our regular road, we were obliged to travel along the ſides of the hills; our guides being under the neceſſity of ſupporting the ſledges, on the lower ſides, with their ſhoulders, for many miles together. Mr. King was attended by a good-natured Coſſack, who was ſo imperfect in his buſineſs, that he was continually overturned, which afforded entertainment to his companions. The party conſiſted of ten ſledges in the whole. That which conducted Captain Gore, was formed of two laſhed together, and was plentifully furniſhed with furs and bear-ſkins. It was drawn by ten dogs, yoked four abreaſt; and thoſe which were laded with heavy baggage, were drawn by the ſame number. We had not proceeded more than four miles on our journey, when it began to rain, which, together with the darkneſs of the night, threw us into ſome confuſion. It was, after ſome little conſultation, agreed, that we ſhould continue where we were, till day-light; we therefore ſecured our ſledges, wrapped ourſelves up in furs, and waited patiently for the morning. At three o'clock we were ſummoned to proceed; our guides expreſſing their apprehenſions, that if we waited any longer, the thaw would perhaps ſtop us, and prevent our advancing or returning. Though we had many difficulties to encounter, owing principally to the bad condition of the road, we got ſafe to an oſtrog about two in the afternoon. It is called Natcheekin, and is ſituated on a ſmall ſtream, which falls into the Bolchoireka, at ſome diſtance below the town. It is 25 miles from Karatchin; which, by their account, we could have compaſſed in four hours, had the froſt continued; but the ſnow was ſo ſoft that the poor animals ſunk up to their bellies at almoſt every ſtep; and it was indeed ſurprizing that they ſhould be able to ſupport themſelves under ſo fatiguing a journey. This inconſiderable oſtrog conſiſts of one log-houſe, the reſidence of the Toion, one jourt, and five balagans. We were received here with the ſame civility and hoſpitality as at Karatchin; and, in the afternoon, were conducted to a remarkable hot ſpring, at a ſmall diſtance from this village. Before we came very near it, we ſaw a riſing ſteam from it, as from a boiling cauldron; and, when we approached it, we perceived a ſtrong ſulphureous effluvia. A baſon of about three feet in diameter, is formed by the main ſpring; beſides which, there are ſeveral leſſer ſprings, of equal heat, in the adjacent ground; by which means the whole ſpot, conſiſting of about an acre, was ſo very hot that we could not remain two minutes in the ſame place. The water iſſuing from theſe ſprings, ſupplies a ſmall bathing pond, and afterwards a little rivulet, which conducts it into the river, at the diſtance of about 150 yards. Great cures, they informed us, had been effected by this bath, in rheumatiſms, ſcorbutic ulcers, ſwelled and contracted joints, and many other diſorders. Where theſe ſprings flow, the ground is on a gentle aſcent; having a green hill of a moderate ſize behind it. Some plants ſeemed to thrive here with great luxuriance, among which we obſerved the wild garlick.

Monday, the 10th, in the morning, we embarked on the Bolchoireeka; and, going with the ſtream, expected to arrive at our journey's end the following day. Though Bolcheretſk is 80 miles from Natcheekin, we were informed, that, in the ſummer, when the melting of ſnow on the mountains has rendered the river full and rapid, the canoes have often gone there in a ſingle day; but now they told us we ſhould be much longer, the ice having broken up only three days before our arrival, and our's being the firſt boat that had attempted to paſs. There was but too much truth in this intelligence; for we were greatly impeded by the ſhallows; and, though the ſtream was rapid in many places, we frequently had ripplings and ſhoals,, and were under the neceſſity of hauling the boats over them. On each ſide of the river, the country was romantic, but not diverſified; the courſe of it being between craggy mountains, of a moſt dreary and barren aſpect; with nothing to vary the ſcene, except now and then the ſight of a bear, or a flock of wild-fowl. This, and the following night, we ſlept under our marquée, on the banks of the river, and ſuffered greatly from the ſeverity of the weather.

Wedneſday the 12th, at day-light, we had paſſed the mountains, and were proceeding through a low extenſive plain, on which were a number of ſhrubby trees. At nine in the morning we reached an oſtrog, called Opatchin, of about the ſame magnitude as Karatchin, and ſuppoſed to be 50 miles from Natcheekin. A ſerjeant and four Ruſſian ſoldiers had been here two days, waiting for our arrival; who inſtantly diſpatched a light boat to Bolcheretſk to give intelligence of our approach. A magnificent canoe, plentifully furniſhed with ſkins and furs, was prepared for our reception, and we were very commodiouſly equipped; but our fellow-travellers were excluded. It gave us ſome concern to be ſeparated from our old companion Mr. Port, who daily grew more ſhy and diſtant, as we drew nearer to the completion of our journey. He acknowledged, indeed, before we ſet out, that he was not entitled to the reſpect we had ſhewn him; but, finding him diſcreet, and not preſuming, we had inſiſted on his faring as we did, throughout the journey. We performed the remainder of our paſſage, with the utmoſt eaſe and expedition; for as we deſcended, the river grew more rapid, and had very few obſtructions. On our approaching Kamtſchatka, we judged, from an appearance of great ſtir and buſtle, that our reception was to be in form. This circumſtance was diſagreeable to us, as decent cloathing had long been ſcarce among us; and our travelling habits formed a ſtrange aſſemblage of the modes of India, Europe, and Kamtſchatka. To make a parade through the metropolis in this motley trim, we thought would appear ridiculous; and, as we obſerved a crowd of people collected on the banks of the river, and were informed that the commander would receive us at the water-ſide, we ſtopped at the houſe of a ſoldier, about a quarter of a mile before we came to the town. Here we diſpatched Mr. Port with a meſſage to his excellency, acquainting him, that, as ſoon as we had put off our travelling dreſſes, we would attend him at his own houſe to pay our reſpects to him; and entreated him not to think of waiting to conduct us. He perſiſted, however, in his reſolution of paying us this compliment, and we immediately proceeded to join him at the entrance of the capital. We were all remarkably awkward and defective in making our firſt ſalutations; not having been accuſtomed to bowing and ſcraping, for at leaſt two years and an half. The commander received us in a moſt engaging manner; but we had the mortification to diſcover, that he had almoſt wholly forgot the French language; ſo that only Mr. Webber had the ſatisfaction of converſing with him, as he ſpoke the German, which was his native tongue. Major Behm was accompanied by Captain Shmaleff, the next in command, and another officer; the whole body of merchants attended alſo. We were conducted to the commander's houſe where we were politely and reſpectfully received by his lady, who had prepared tea and other refreſhments for us. The firſt compliments being over, Captain Gore deſired Mr. Webber to acquaint the Major, that we were diſtreſſed for want of naval ſtores, freſh proviſions, flour, and other neceſſaries; and that we were convinced we could not receive much aſſiſtance from him, in the country about Awatſka Bay, from what we had already ſeen and heard; that the impoſſibility of conveying heavy ſtores over the peninſula, at that ſeaſon, we were but too ſenſible of, from the difficulties we had encountered in our journey; and that we could not delay the proſecution of our voyage, to wait for any material change. Here the Major interrupted Mr. Webber, by obſerving, that we knew not what they were capable of doing; that he ſhould not beſtow a thought upon the difficulties of ſupplying our wants: he only wiſhed to know what articles we ſtood in need of, and the time he could be allowed for procuring them. After expreſſing our acknowledgments for his obliging condeſcenſion, we preſented him an account of the naval ſtores, cattle, and flour, we were directed to purchaſe; and informed him, that we intended to proſecute our voyage about the 5th of June. After this, the converſation became more general, and it might naturally be ſuppoſed, that we were anxious to obtain ſome information reſpecting our native country. Having been three years abſent, we entertained the moſt flattering expectations of receiving ſome intereſting intelligence from Major Behm: but we were greatly diſappointed, when he aſſured us, that he could not communicate any intelligence of a much later date than that of our quitting England. The commander, ſuppoſing we might be fatigued, and deſirous of repoſe, begged leave to conduct us to our lodgings, at about ſeven o'clock. It was uſeleſs to proteſt againſt a compliment, to which we had no other title than that of being ſtrangers. That alone, with this generous Livonian, was ſufficient to counterbalance every other conſideration. In going along, we paſſed two guard-houſes, where the men were under arms, in compliment to Captain Gore, and were conducted to a neat decent houſe, which the Major had appointed for our reſidence, while we continued at Kamtſchatka. We had two ſentinels poſted at our door, and a ſerjeant's guard in an adjoining houſe. Having diſpoſed of us in our apartments, the Major took his leave, promiſing to viſit us the next day. We were now at leiſure to diſcover the conveniences which he had amply provided for us. Our fellow traveller, Mr. Port, and a ſoldier, of a rank between that of a ſerjeant and a corporal, (called a pulproperſckack) were fixed upon to be our male domeſtics. We had alſo a houſekeeper, and a cook, who were ordered to obey Mr. Port's directions in dreſſing us a ſupper, after the Engliſh mode of cookery. In the courſe of the evening, we were favoured with a number of civil meſſages, from the principal inhabitants of the town, politely obſerving, that their attending to pay their reſpects to us at that time, would add to our fatigues, but they would do themſelves that honour the next morning. Such attention and politeneſs in ſo uncultivated and deſolate a country, formed a contraſt highly in favour of its inhabitants; and, in addition to their civility, at ſun-ſet, the ſerjeant brought the report of his guard to Captain Gore.

In the morning of the 13th, compliments were ſent us by the Major, Captain Shmaleff, and the moſt reſpectable people of the town, from all whom we were honoured with viſits ſoon after. The two former having, after we had retired to reſt, enquired of Mr. Port what articles we ſtood in the greateſt need of on board the ſhips; they inſiſted on our ſharing with their garriſon, in the ſmall ſtock of proviſions they had then remaining; lamenting, at the ſame time, that our arrival ſhould happen to be in that ſeaſon of the year, when ſcarcity reigned univerſally among them; the ſloops from Okotſk not being yet arrived with their annual ſupply. We thankfully accepted the liberal offer of theſe hoſpitable ſtrangers; on condition, however, that we ſhould be made acquainted with the price of the articles we received from them, that Captain Clerke might draw upon the Victualling Office, in London, for the amount. This was refuſed in the moſt poſitive terms; and, though repeatedly urged, the Major always ſtopped us ſhort, by ſaying, that his miſtreſs would be highly gratified at his rendering every aſſiſtance in his power to the Engliſh, who are her good friends and allies; and that it would give her a peculiar ſatisfaction to find, that, in ſuch remote regions, her dominions had afforded any relief to veſſels engaged in ſuch important ſervices. He added, that he could not, therefore, act ſo contrary to the principles of his Empreſs, as to think of receiving any bills; but, if we inſiſted on it, we might give him a bare certificate of the articles he might ſupply us with, which he would tranſmit to the court of Ruſſia, as evidence of having performed his duty. All farther acknowledgments, continued he, muſt be ſubmitted to the two courts; but you muſt excuſe me from acceding to your propoſal. This matter being adjuſted, he requeſted to be informed reſpecting our private wants, ſaying he ſhould conſider it as offering him an affront, if we applied to any of the merchants, or had dealings with any other perſon except himſelf.

Not having it in our power to make an adequate return for ſuch ſingular generoſity, he had only our thanks and admiration. At this moment, Mr. King recollected, that Captain Clerke had ſent by him a ſet of the engravings to Captain Cook's ſecond voyage, deſiring him to preſent it, in his name, to the commander. Nothing could have been more acceptable to him than this preſent, the Major being an enthuſiaſt in all matters relative to diſcoveries. Captain Clerke had alſo given Mr. King a diſcretionary power, of permitting the commander to ſee a chart of the diſcoveries made in the preſent voyage; and, judging from his ſituation and diſpoſition of mind, that he would be highly gratified by ſuch a communication; though, from motives of delicacy, he had only aſked a few general queſtons on the ſubject, Mr. King repoſed in him that confidence, which his whole conduct ſo juſtly merited. He felt this compliment as it was intended he ſhould, and was ſtruck at beholding, in one view, the whole of that coaſt on the ſide of Aſia and America, which his countrymen had been ſo long employed in acquiring an imperfect knowledge of. Except this mark of confidence, and the ſet of copper-plates already mentioned, we had nothing with us deſerving of his acceptance; for it was hardly worth noticing, that Mr. King prevailed on his ſon (who was quite a youth) to accept of a ſilver watch; and contributed to his little daugnter's happineſs, by preſenting her with two pair of ear-rings, of French paſte. He alſo gave Captain Shmaleff the thermometer which he had uſed on his journey, when he engaged to keep a regiſter of the temperature of the air for one whole year, and to tranſmit it to Mr. Muller, with whom he was acquainted. This day we dined at the commander's, who, ever ſtudious to gratify our curioſity, had prepared variety of diſhes dreſſed after the Ruſſian and Kamtſchadale manner, beſides a number of others in the Engliſh ſtyle. In the afternoon, we took a ſurvey of the town, and the adjacent country. The ſituation of Bolcheretſk is in a low ſwampy plain, extending to the ſea of Okotſk, being about 40 miles in length, and of a conſiderable breadth. It lies north of the Bolchoi-reka, (or great river) and on a peninſula, which has been ſeparated from the continent by a large canal, under the directions of the preſent commander; which has added ſtrength to it as a fortreſs, and rendered it much leſs ſubject to inundations. The depth of the river, below the town, is from ſix to eight feet, and the breadth about a quarter of a mile. At the diſtance of 22 miles, it empties itſelf into the ſea of Okotſk, where it is capable of admitting pretty large veſſels. No corn, of any kind, is cultivated in this part of the country; and the Major aſſured us, that his was the only garden that had been planted. In general, the earth was covered with ſnow; the parts which were free from it, were full of black turfy hillocks. We ſaw about 20 or 30 cows, and the commander had ſix good horſes. Theſe, and their dogs, are their only tame animals: being obliged to keep a great number of the latter, they can rear only ſuch cattle as are a match for them in ſtrength and ſize. For, during the whole of the ſummer ſeaſon, the dogs are turned looſe, to provide entirely for themſelves; and are ſometimes ſo ravenous, that they will even venture to attack the bullocks.

In Bolcheretſk the buildings are all in the ſame ſtyle; they conſiſt of logs of wood, and are thatched. The Major's houſe is conſiderably larger than the reſt, and has three capacious rooms, neatly papered; but the talc, which covered the windows, gave them a diſagreeable and mean appearance. The town conſiſts of low buildings, in rows of five or ſix habitations each, connected together by a paſſage extending the whole length of them; having the kitchen and ſtore houſe on one ſide, and the dwelling apartments on the other. There are alſo barracks for the Ruſſian ſoldiers and coſſacks; a tolerable church; a court-room; and, at the end of the town, a number of Balagans. The number of the inhabitants is between five and ſix hundred. A handſome entertainment was given by the Major, in the evening, to which were invited all the reſpectable inhabitants of both ſexes. The next day we made a private application to Fedoſitch, the merchant, in order to purchaſe ſome tobacco; the ſailors having been without that favourite commodity for upwards of a year. This, however, like other ſimilar tranſactions, came immediately to the knowledge of the commander; and, in a very ſhort time after, we were ſurprized to find four bags of tobacco in our houſe, each containing upwards of 100 pounds; which the Major requeſted might be preſented to our ſailors, in his name, and that of the garriſon under his command. By the ſame conveyance, we received 20 loaves of ſugar, and as many pounds of tea, which they requeſted the officers to accept of; as they underſtood that we were almoſt deſtitute of thoſe articles. A preſent was alſo ſent by Madame Behm, for Captain Clerke, which conſiſted of honey, butter, figs, rice, and other articles; accompanied with her beſt wiſhes, that, in his infirm ſtate, they might prove ſerviceable to him. We ſtrenuouſly endeavoured to oppoſe this profuſion of bounty, and were extremely anxious to reſtrain it; fully convinced that they were giving us almoſt the whole ſtock of their garriſon. But the anſwer we received from the Major, on theſe occaſions, generally was, That he had been in diſtreſs himſelf, and he was ſenſible that we muſt now be in that ſituation. The length of time, indeed, ſince we had touched at any known port, appeared to them almoſt incredible, and ſeemed to require the evidence of our maps, and other concurrent circumſtances, to obtain their credit. Among the latter, we ſhall mention a curious fact, which Major Behm related to us this morning, and which he ſaid he ſhould not have known how to account for, but for our arrival. Among the people of the north of Aſia, it is well known, that the Tſchutſki only have maintained their independence, and reſiſted all the efforts of the Ruſſians to reduce them. The laſt attempt was in 1750, and, after variety of temporary advantages on each ſide, the Ruſſian forces retreated, after having loſt their commanding officer. The Ruſſians afterwards removed their frontier fortreſs, from the Anadyr to the Ingiga, a river which runs into the northern extremity of the ſea of Okotſk, and gives its name to a gulph, weſt of that of Penſhinſk.

ſhinſk. On the day of our arrival at Bolcheretſk, the Major had received diſpatches from this fort, acquainting him, that a party of the Tſchutſki had arrived there, with voluntary offers of friendſhip and a tribute. That, on aſking the cauſe of ſo unexpected an alteration in their ſentiments, they had acquainted his people, that two large Ruſſian boats had viſited them, towards the end of the preceding ſummer; that they had been ſhewn the greateſt kindneſs by the people who were in them, and had entered into a league of amity with them; and that, in conſequence of this, they came to the Ruſſian fort, in order to ſettle a treaty upon terms agreeable to both nations. This remarkable tale had given riſe to much ſpeculation, both at Ingiginſk and Bolcheretſk; and muſt have remained utterly unintelligible, had it not been elucidated by us. It was no ſmall ſatisfaction to us, to have thus ſhewn the Ruſſians, even by accident, the beſt method of collecting tribute, and extending their dominions; in hopes that the good underſtanding, which this event has produced, may reſcue a brave people from ſuch powerful invaders.

This day being Friday, the 14th, we were engaged to dine with Captain Shmaleff, who, in order to vary our amuſements, entertained us with an exhibition of dancing, in the Ruſſian and Kamtſchadale ſtyle. It is impoſſible to convey an adequate idea of this uncouth exhibition. The figure of the Ruſſian dance, reſembled thoſe of our hornpipes, and conſiſted of one, two, or four performers at a time. Their ſteps were exceedingly ſhort and quick, their feet being raiſed but a very little way from the ground; their arms were hung down cloſe to the ſides, the body being kept, the whole time, erect and immoveable, except when the performers paſſed each other, when the hand was ſuddenly raiſed with an awkward motion. But, if the Ruſſian dance was unmeaning and ridiculous, the Kamtſchadale was infinitely more ſo. The principal aim, in their performances, is to repreſent the clumſy geſtures of the bear, which the inhabitants of this country have frequent opportunities of obſerving in various ſituations. To deſcribe the awkward poſtures, exhibited on theſe occaſions, would appear tedious and unintereſting. In general, however, the body was bowed, and the knees bent, whilſt the arms were employed in imitating the motions of that awkward animal. Much time had been ſpent in our journey to Bolcheretſk, and being informed that our return might, perhaps, be more difficult and tedious, we were obliged to acquaint the Major this evening, with our intention of departing the next day. We could not think of leaving our new acquaintance without regret: and were agreeably ſurprized, when the Major promiſed to accompany us, if we would ſtay but one day longer. He told us, that he had made up his diſpatches, and reſigned the command of Kamtſchatka to Captain Shmaleff; having made the neceſſary preparations for his departure to Okotſk, which was ſhortly to take place; but that he ſhould be happy in poſtponing his journey, and attending us to St. Peter and St. Paul's, in order to be ſatisfied, that nothing which could be done to ſerve us, ſhould be omitted. For the articles which Mr. King had given to the Major's children, he received, the next morning, a moſt magnificent Kamtſchadale dreſs, ſuch as the principal Toions wear on the moſt ſolemn occaſions. This habit, as we were informed by Fedoſitſch, muſt have coſt, at leaſt, 120 roubles. He alſo, at the ſame time, was preſented with a handſome ſable muff, as a preſent from his daughter.

Saturday, the 15th, we dined with the commander, who, willing to give us an opportunity of ſeeing as much as we could of the manners and cuſtoms of the country, invited all the principal inhabitants of the town, to his houſe this evening. The dreſſes of the women were ſplendid, after the Kamtſchadale manner. Captain Shmaleff's lady, and the wives of the other officers of the garriſon, were dreſſed in a pretty taſte, partly in the Siberian, and partly in the European mode. Madame Behm, in particular, appeared in a grand European dreſs. The richneſs and variety of the ſilks worn by the women, as well as the ſingularity of their dreſs, was very ſtriking: and the whole had the air of ſome enchanted ſcene, in the midſt of the moſt deſert and dreary country in the univerſe. The entertainments of this night were dancing and ſinging. As we had fixed upon the next morning for our departure, we retired early to our apartments, where three travelling dreſſes preſented themſelves to our view, made after the Kamtſchadale mode, which had been provided for us by the commander. He came to us himſelf ſoon after, to ſee that proper care was taken in packing up our things. We had, indeed, no inconſiderable load of baggage; for, excluſive of his liberal preſents, Captain Shmaleff, and ſeveral other individuals, ſhewed us many inſtances of kindneſs and generoſity. On the 16th, early in the morning, we were preparing for our departure, when we were invited to take our leave of Madame Behm, in our paſſage to the boats. Already impreſſed with ſentiments of the warmeſt gratitude, for the benevolent and generous treatment we had received at Bolcheretſk, they were much heightened by the affecting ſcene which followed. On quitting our apartments, we ſaw all the ſoldiers and coſſacks of the garriſon drawn up on one ſide; and, on the other, were all the male inhabitants of the town, in their beſt cloathing; the whole body of the people joining in a melancholy ſong, which, we were informed, it was uſual to ſing on the departure of friends. Thus we marched till we arrived at the commander's houſe, preceded by the drums and muſic belonging to the garriſon. Here we were received by Madame Behm, accompanied by ſeveral ladies, habited in long ſilk cloaks, lined with furs of various colours; forming a moſt ſplendid appearance. Having partook of ſome refreſhment which had been provided for us, we proceeded to the water-ſide, attended by the ladies, who joined with the reſt of the people in the ſong; and, having taken leave of Madame Behm, after aſſuring her that the ſenſe of the hoſpitality of Bolcheretſk, would be indelible in our hearts, we were too much affected not to haſten into the boats. At putting off, we received three cheers, which we immediately returned; and, on doubling a point, where we laſt beheld our friendly entertainers, they ſtill added to our feelings, by a farewel cheer! On our return, the ſtream was ſo exceedingly rapid, that, notwithſtanding the utmoſt exertions of our conductors, we did not arrive at the firſt village, Opatchin, till the 17th in the evening, which did not exceed the rate of 20 miles a day. On the 19th, we reached Natcheekin, and croſſed the plain to Karatchin on the 20th. The road was in much better order than when we paſſed it before, as it froze ſmartly in the night of the 19th. We proceeded down the Awatſka river on Friday, the 21ſt, and paſſed over the ſhoals, at the entrance of the bay, before it was dark. During the whole of our journey, we were highly pleaſed with the willingneſs and alacrity, with which the Toions and the Kamtſchadales aſſiſted us at the different oſtrogs. On ſeeing the Major, joy appeared in every countenance; and they were much affected upon being informed that he would ſhortly leave them. A meſſenger had been diſpatched from Bolcheretſk to Captain Clerke, acquainting him with the nature of our reception; and that the Major intended to accompany us on our return; apprizing him, at the ſame time, of the day he might expect us. We obſerved, with pleaſure, as we approached the harbour, all our boats coming towards us. The men were all clean, and the officers as well arrayed as their wardrobes would then permit them to be. The Major was ſtruck at the healthy appearance of our ſailors, and was ſurprized to ſee that many of them had no other covering than a ſhirt and trowſers, though it actually ſnowed at that very inſtant. Major Behm had expreſſed an inclination to viſit the ſhips before he landed; but, being informed that Captain Clerke was extremely ill, he thought it would be improper to diſturb him at ſo late an hour; it being then after nine o'clock. Mr. King therefore attended him to the ſerjeant's houſe, and afterwards went on board to communicate to Captain

Clerke what had happened at Bolcheretſk. He was much concerned to find that, during his abſence, that officer's health was conſiderably impaired, inſtead of growing better, as we flattered ourſelves it might, from undiſturbed repoſe in the harbour, and a milk and vegetable diet. The next morning, Mr. King conducted the Major to the ſhips; where he was received with every poſſible mark of diſtinction, and ſaluted with 13 guns. He was attended by the commander of a Ruſſian galliot, two merchants from Bolcheretſk, a maſter of a ſloop, and the prieſt of the village of Paratounca. Having viſited the Captain, and taken a view of the two ſhips, he returned to dine on board the Reſolution. In the courſe of the afternoon, the curioſities which we had collected were ſhewn him, and an aſſortment of each article preſented to him by Captain Clerke. Here we cannot ſuppreſs an inſtance of great generoſity and gratitude in our ſailors; who, being informed of the handſome preſent which had been made them by the Major, voluntarily requeſted that their grog might be withheld, and their allowance of ſpirits preſented to the garriſon of Bolcheretſk; ſaying they knew brandy was extremely ſcarce in that country, the ſoldiers on ſhore having offered four roubles a bottle for it. We could not but admire this extraordinary ſacrifice, knowing how much the ſailors felt, when abridged or deprived of their grog. Indeed, they never had that article withheld from them but in warm weather, that they might enjoy a greater proportion when it was moſt neceſſary; but this generous propoſal would deprive them of it, even in the inclement ſeaſon we had naturally to expect in our northern expedition. The officers, however, would not permit them to ſuffer by their generoſity, and ſubſtituted, in the room of the ſmall quantity of brandy, which the Major conſented to accept, an equal quantity of rum. A dozen or two of Cape wine for Madame Behm, and ſome other trifling preſents which we were enabled to make, were accepted with great politeneſs. The tobacco was diſtributed the next morning, among the crews of both veſſels; every man that chewed or ſmoked tobacco being allowed three pounds, and the others who did not, only one. We have already obſerved that the Major had reſigned the command of Kamtſchatka, and was ſpeedily to repair to Peterſburgh; and he now expreſſed his willingneſs to convey any diſpatches we might chuſe to commit to his care. Such an opportunity was not to be neglected; and Captain Clerke requeſted him to take the charge of ſome papers relative to our voyage, to the Britiſh Ambaſſador at the Ruſſian court. At firſt, we intended to tranſmit only a conciſe journal of our proceedings; but, after mature conſideration, Captain Clerke was of opinion, that the whole account of our diſcoveries might ſafely be committed to the care of a man, who had given the ſtrongeſt proofs of probity and virtue. Conſidering alſo, that a very hazardous part of the voyage was ſtill to be performed, he reſolved to ſend, by him, the whole of Captain Cook's journal; together with his own, from the death of that commander, till our arrival at Kamtſchatka; and alſo a chart of our diſcoveries. Mr. Bayly and Mr. King alſo determined to ſend an account of our proceedings to the board of longitude. From theſe precautions, had any accident befallen us, the Admiralty would have become poſſeſſed of the principal facts of our voyage. It was farther reſolved, that a ſmaller packet ſhould be diſpatched from Okotſk, which the Major ſuppoſed would reach Peterſburgh by December; and that he expected to arrive there himſelf in February or March. The Major was entertained alternately in the two ſhips, as well as we were able, the three following days. On Thurſday, the 25th, he departed, and was ſaluted with 13 guns; the ſailors, at their own requeſt, expreſſing their regard for him by three cheers. Mr. King and Mr. Webber attended him, the next morning, ſome few miles up the Awatſka river, where the Ruſſian prieſt and his family were waiting to bid a laſt adieu to their commander. When taking our leave of the Major, it is difficult to ſay, whether the worthy prieſt and his family or ourſelves were moſt affected. Though our acquaintance had been of ſhort duration, his behaviour had inſpired us with the higheſt eſteem for him; and we could not part (perhaps for ever) with one, to whom we were under ſuch infinite obligations, without indulging the moſt tender feelings. Excluſive of the ſtores, which might probably be carried to a public account, the value of the private preſents beſtowed on us, muſt have amounted to upwards of 200 pounds. But, however extraordinary this generoſity may appear, it was exceeded by his delicacy in conferring favours, and his ingenious endeavours to prevent our feeling the weight of obligations, which he knew we were unable to requite. In ſupporting a public character, and maintaining the honour of his ſovereign, he is ſtill more entitled to our admiration, as he was actuated by ſentiments the moſt noble and enlarged. The ſervice in which we were engaged, he told us, was for the general benefit of mankind; and entitled us to the offices of humanity, and the privileges of citizens, in whatever country we might be driven. That, by affording us ſuch relief as was in his power, he was certain that he was acting agreeably to the wiſhes of his empreſs; and that he could not ſo entirely forget her character, or his own honour, as to barter for the performance of a duty. Among other things, he ſaid, he made a particular point of ſetting a good example to the Kamtſchadales, who were juſt emerging from a ſtate of barbariſm; that they conſidered the Ruſſians as their patterns, in every reſpect; and that he hoped they would, in future, think it a duty incumbent on them to render ſtrangers every aſſiſtance in their power, and believe it to be the univerſal practice of all poliſhed and civilized nations. The Major having, ſo far as he was capable, relieved our preſent diſtreſſes, he was not unmindful of our future wants; and, imagining we ſhould not be able to diſcover the paſſage we were in ſearch of, and that we ſhould return to Kamtſchatka; he procured from Captain Clerke, the particulars of what flour and cordage he ſhould want, promiſing to ſend them from Okotſk, to wait our arrival. He alſo preſented the Captain with a written paper, enjoining every Ruſſian ſubject to aſſiſt us to the utmoſt of their abilities. Having thus given a narrative of the journey of our party to, and their return from Bolcheretſk, their reception there, and the departure of Major Behm, we ſhall now recount the tranſactions which paſſed at Petropaulowſka during our abſence.

On Friday, the 7th of May, not long after we had quitted the bay of Awatſka, a great piece of ice drove againſt the Reſolution, and brought home the ſmall bower anchor; in conſequence of which the other anchor was weighed, and the ſhip was moored again. The carpenters, who were occupied in ſtopping the leak, were under the neceſſity of taking off great part of the ſheathing from the bows; and many of the trunnels were found to be ſo looſe and rotten, that they were drawn out eaſily with the fingers. On Tueſday the 11th, heavy gales blew from the N. E. which obliged both veſſels to ſtrike their yards and top-maſts; but the weather becoming more moderate in the afternoon, and the ice having drifted away as far as the mouth of the harbour of Petropaulowſka, they warped cloſe to the ſhore for the greater convenience of procuring wood and water, and again moored, as before: the mouth of the bay ſhut in by the moſt ſoutherly point of Rakowina harbour, bearing S. and the town N. half W. at the diſtance of half a mile. On the 12th, a party was detached to cut wood, but made little progreſs in that ſervice, on account of the ſnow, which ſtill covered the ground. A convenient ſpot, abreaſt of the ſhips, was cleared, where there was a good run of water; and a tent being pitched for the cooper, the empty caſks were landed, and the ſail-makers ſent aſhore. On Saturday, the 15th, as the beach was then clear of ice, a party was ſent to haul the ſeine, and caught a plentiful ſupply of fine flat-fiſh for the companies of both ſhips. From this time, indeed, till we quitted the harbour, we were even overpowered with the great quantities of fiſh which came in from every quarter. The Toions, both of this town, and of Paratounca, a neighbouring village, had received orders from Major Behm to employ, in our ſervice, all the Kamtſchadales; ſo that it frequently happened, that we could not take into the ſhips the preſents which were ſent us. They generally conſiſted of herrings, trout, flat fiſh, and cod. The former, which were in their higheſt perfection, and of a delicious flavour, were in extreme plenty in this bay. The people of the Diſcovery, at one time, ſurrounded ſuch an amazing quantity in their ſeine, that they were obliged to throw out a very conſiderable number, leſt the net ſhould be broken to pieces; and the cargo they landed was ſtill ſo abundant, that, beſides having a ſufficient ſtock for immediate uſe, they filled as many caſks as they could conveniently ſpare for ſalting; and, after ſending on board the Reſolution a tolerable quantity for the ſame purpoſe, they left behind ſeveral buſhels upon the beach.

The ice and ſnow now began rapidly to diſappear, and plenty of nettle-tops, celery, and wild garlick, were gathered for the uſe of the crews; which being boiled with portable ſoup and wheat, furniſhed them with an excellent and ſalutary breakfaſt; and with this they were every morning ſupplied. The birch-trees were alſo tapped, and the ſweet juice, of which they produced great quantities, was conſtantly mixed with the brandy allowed to the men. On the 16th, a ſmall bullock was killed, which the ſerjeant had procured for the ſhip's companies. Its weight was 272 pounds. It was ſerved out to both the crews for their Sunday's dinner, and was the firſt freſh beef which they had taſted ſince the departure of our veſſels from the Cape of Good Hope, in December, 1776; a period of almoſt two years and a half. This evening John Macintoſh, the carpenter's mate expired, after having been afflicted with a dyſentery ever ſince we had left the Sandwich Iſles. He was a peaceable and induſtrious man, and greatly regretted by his meſſmates. Though we was the fourth perſon that we had loſt by ſickneſs during our voyage, he was the firſt who, from his age and conſtitution, could be ſaid to have had, on our ſetting out, an equal chance of life with the reſt of his companions. Watman was ſuppoſed by us to be about 60 years old; and Roberts, and Mr. Anderſon, from the decline which had manifeſtly commenced before our departure from England, moſt probably could not, under any circumſtances, have lived to a later period than they did.

Captain Clerke's health continuing daily to decline, notwithſtanding the ſalutary change of diet which Kamtſchatka afforded him, the prieſt of Paratounca, as ſoon as he was informed of the weak ſtate he was in, ſupplied him every day with milk, bread, fowls, and freſh butter, though his habitation was 16 miles from the harbour where our ſhips were ſtationed. On our arrival, the Ruſſian hoſpital, near the town of St. Peter and St. Paul, was in a very deplorable ſtate. All the ſoldiers were, in a greater or leſs degree, afflicted with the ſcurvy, many being in the laſt ſtage of that diſorder. The reſt of the Ruſſian inhabitants were likewiſe in a ſimilar condition; and we obſerved, that our friend the ſerjeant, by drinking too freely of the ſpirits he had received from us, had brought on himſelf, in the courſe of a few days, ſeveral of the moſt alarming ſymptoms of that diſeaſe. Captain Clerke, deſirous of relieving them from this lamentable ſtate, put them all under the care of our ſurgeons, and gave orders, that a ſupply of ſour krout, and malt, for wort, ſhould be furniſhed for their uſe. A ſurpriſing alteration ſoon took place in the figures of moſt of them; and their ſpeedy recovery was chiefly attributed to the effects of the ſweet wort.

On Tueſday, the 1ſt of June, 250 poods, or 9,000 pounds weight of rye flour, were brought on board the Reſolution; and the Diſcovery received a proportional quantity. We were ſupplied with this flour from the ſtores of Petropaulouſka. The men were now put on their full allowance of bread, which, from the time of our leaving the Cape of Good Hope, they had not been indulged in. The ſame day we compleated our ſtock of water, 65 tons having been conveyed on board. Friday, the 4th, we had freſh breezes, and heavy rains, ſo that we were diſappointed in our deſign of dreſſing the ſhips, and obliged to content ourſelves with firing 21 guns, in honour of his Majeſty's birth-day, and celebrating it, in other reſpects, in the beſt manner we could. Port, who, on account of his ſkill in languages, was left with us, partook, as well as the ſerjeant, (in the capacity of commandant of the place) of the entertainment of the day. The worthy prieſt of Paratounca, having been informed that it was the anniverſary of our ſovereign's birth, gave likewiſe a ſumptuous feaſt, at which ſeveral of our gentlemen were preſent, who were highly pleaſed with their entertainment, of which dancing formed a part. On the 6th, 20 head of cattle arrived, having been ſent us, by the directions of the commander, from the Verchnei Oſtrog, which ſtands on the river Kamtſchatka, at the diſtance of almoſt a hundred miles from this place. Theſe cattle were of a moderate ſize; and, though the Kamtſchadales had been 17 days in driving them down to the harbour, were in good condition when they arrived. The four ſucceeding days were employed in making preparations for putting to ſea, and on Friday, the 11th, about two o'clock in the morning, we began to unmoor. Before, however, we had got up one anchor, ſo violent a gale ſprung up from the N. E. that we thought proper to moor again, ſuppoſing, from the poſition of the entrance of the Bay, that the current of wind would, in all probability, ſet up the channel. The pinnace was diſpatched to examine the paſſage, and returned with intelligence, that the wind blew violently from the S. E. with a great ſwell, ſetting into the bay; ſo that any attempt to get out to ſea would have been attended with conſiderable riſque. Mr. Port now took his leave of us, carrying with him the box containing the journals of our voyage, which Major Behm was to take charge of, and the packet that was to be forwarded by expreſs. On the 12th, the gale having abated, we began unmooring again; but, after having broken the meſſenger, and reeved a running purchaſe with a ſix inch hauſer, which likewiſe broke three times, we were, at laſt, under the neceſſity of heaving a ſtrain at low water, and waiting for the flowing of the tide to raiſe the anchor. This meaſure ſucceeded, though not without damaging the cable. About three o'clock in the afternoon, the beſt bower was weighed, and we ſet ſail; but, at eight, the tide making againſt us, and the wind being inconſiderable, we anchored again in ten fathoms water, off the mouth of Rakowina harbour: the Oſtrog being at the diſtance of between two and three miles, bearing N. by E. half E. the elevated rock on the weſtern ſide of the paſſage, bearing S. and the needle rocks, on the eaſtern ſide of the paſſage, S. S. E. half E.

On Sunday, the 13th, at four o'clock, A. M. we got under way with the tide of ebb; and, as there was a perfect calm, the boats were diſpatched a-head for the purpoſe of towing the ſhips. About 10, a ſouth-eaſterly wind ſpringing up, and the tide having turned, we were obliged to let go our anchors again, in ſeven fathoms; the Oſtrog bearing N. half E. at the diſtance of a mile from the land that was neareſt to us; and the three needle rocks being in the direction of S. half E. In the afternoon, Captain Gore and Lieutenant King landed on the eaſt ſide of the paſſage, where they obſerved, in two different places, the remains of ſpacious villages; and, on the ſide of a hill, they ſaw an old ruined parapet, with four or five embraſures. It had guns mounted on it in Beering's time, as that navigator himſelf informs us; and commanded the paſſage up the mouth of the bay. Not far from this ſpot, were the ruins of ſome ſubterraneous caverns, which our two gentlemen conjectured to have been magazines. About ſix o'clock P. M. we weighed anchor, with the ebb tide, and turned to windward; but, two hours after, a thick fog coming on, we were under the neceſſity of bringing to, our ſoundings not affording us a ſufficient direction for ſteering betwixt ſeveral ſunken rocks, ſituated on each ſide of the paſſage we were to make. The next morning, the fog in ſome degree diſperſing, we weighed as ſoon as the tide began to ebb; and, there being little wind, the boats were ſent a-head to tow; but, about 10 o'clock, both the wind and tide ſet in ſo ſtrong from the ſea, that we were once more obliged to caſt anchor, in 13 fathoms water, the high rock being at the diſtance of ſix furlongs, in the direction of W. one quarter S. We continued, during the remainder of the day, in this ſituation, the wind blowing freſh into the mouth of the bay. Towards the evening, the weather was extremely dark and cloudy with an unſettled wind.

On the 15th, we were ſurprized, before day-light, with a rumbling noiſe, that reſembled diſtant thunder; and when the day appeared, we found that the ſides and decks of our ſhips were covered, near an inch thick, with a fine duſt like emery. The air was at the ſame time loaded and obſcured with this ſubſtance; and, towards the volcano mountain, which ſtands to the northward of the harbour, it was exceedingly thick and black, inſomuch that we were unable to diſtinguiſh the body of the hill. About 12 o'clock, and during the afternoon, the loudneſs of the exploſions increaſed; and they were ſucceeded by ſhowers of cinders, which, in general, were of the ſize of peas, though many of thoſe that were picked up from the deck were larger than a hazel nut. Several ſmall ſtones, which had undergone no alteration from the action of fire, fell with the cinders. In the evening we had dreadful claps of thunder, and vivid flaſhes of lightning, which, with the darkneſs of the ſky, and the ſulphureous ſmell of the air, produced a very awful and tremendous effect. Our diſtance from the foot of the mountain was, at this time, about eight leagues. On the 16th, at day-break, we got up our anchors, and ſtood out of the bay; but the wind falling, and the tide of ebb ſetting acroſs the paſſage on the eaſtern ſhore, we were driven very near the three needle rocks, ſituated on that ſide of the entrance, and were under the neceſſity of hoiſting out the boats, for the purpoſe of towing the ſhips clear of them. At 12 o'clock, we were at the diſtance of ſix miles from the land; and our depth of water was 43 fathoms, over a bottom of ſmall ſtones, of the ſame kind with thoſe which had fallen upon our decks, after the late eruption of the volcano. The country had now a very different appearance from what it had on our firſt arrival. The ſnow, except what remained on the ſummits of ſome very lofty mountains, had vaniſhed; and the ſides of the hills, which abounded with wood in many parts, were covered with a beautiful verdure. As our Commander intended to keep in ſight of the coaſt of Kamtſchatka, as much as the weather would allow, in order to aſcertain its poſition, we continued to ſteer towards the N. N. E. with variable light winds, till Friday, the 18th. The volcano was ſtill obſerved to throw up immenſe volumes of ſmoke; and we did not ſtrike ground with 150 fathoms of line, at the diſtance of 12 miles from the ſhore. This day the wind blew freſh from the S. and the weather became ſo thick and hazy, that it was imprudent to make any further attempts at preſent to keep in ſight of the land. However, that we might be ready, whenever the fog ſhould clear up, to reſume our ſurvey, we ran on in the direction of the coaſt, (as repreſented in the Ruſſian charts) and fired ſignal guns for the Diſcovery to proceed on the ſame courſe. At 11 o'clock, juſt before we loſt ſight of land, Cheepoonſkoi Noſs, ſo denominated by the Ruſſians, was at the diſtance of ſeven or eight leagues, bearing N. N. E. On the 20th, at three o'clock in the morning, the weather becoming clearer, we ſtood in towards the land; and, in the ſpace of an hour afterwards, ſaw it a-head, extending from N. W. to N. N. E. at the diſtance of about five leagues. The northern part we conjectured to be Kronotſkoi Noſs; its poſition in the Ruſſian charts, nearly agreeing with our reckoning in reſpect to its latitude, which was 54 deg. 42 min. N. though, in point of longitude, we differed conſiderably from them; for they place it 1 deg. 48 min. E. of Awatſka; whereas our computation makes it 3 deg. 34 min. E. of that place, or 162 deg. 17 min. E. of Greenwich. The land about this cape is very elevated, and the inland mountains were, at this time, covered with ſnow. There is no appearance of inlets or bays in the coaſt; and the ſhore breaks off in ſteep cliffs. We had not long been gratified with this view of the land, when the wind freſhened from the S. W. bringing on a thick fog, which obliged us to ſtand off in the direction of N. E. by E. The fog diſperſing about noon, we again ſteered for the land, expecting to fall in with Kamtſchatſkoi Noſs, and gained a ſight of it at day-break on the 21ſt. The S. W. wind being ſoon after ſucceeded by a light breeze that blew off the land, we were prevented from approaching the coaſt ſufficiently near to determine its direction, or deſcribe its aſpect. At noon, our long. was 163 deg. 50 min. and our lat. 55 deg. 52 min. the extremes of the land bore N. W. by W. three quarters W. and N. by W. three quarters W. and the neareſt part was at the diſtance of about 24 miles. At nine in the evening, when we had approached about 6 miles nearer the coaſt, it appeared to form a projecting peninſula, and to extend 11 or 12 leagues in the direction nearly of N. and S. It is level, and of a moderate elevation; the ſouthern extreme terminates in a low ſloping point; that to the northward forms a ſteep bluff head; and between them, 10 or 12 miles to the S. of the northern cape, there is a conſiderable break in the land. On both ſides of this break, the land is low. A remarkable hill, reſembling a ſaddle, riſes beyond the opening; and a chain of lofty mountains, capped with ſnow, extends along the back of the whole peninſula. As the coaſt runs in an even direction, we were uncertain with reſpect to the poſition of Kamtſchatſkoi Noſs, which, according to Mr. Muller, forms a projecting point towards the middle of the peninſula; but we afterwards found, that, in a late Ruſſian map, that appellation is given to the ſouthern cape. The latitude of this, from ſeveral accurate obſervations, was 56 deg. 3 min. and its longitude, 163 deg. 20 min. To the S. of this peninſula, the great river Kamtſchatka runs into the ſea. The ſeaſon being too far advanced for us to make an accurate ſurvey of the coaſt of Kamtſchatka, it was the deſign of Captain Clerke, on our courſe to Beering's Straights, to aſcertain chiefly the reſpective ſituations of the projecting points of the coaſt. We therefore ſteered acroſs a ſpacious bay, laid down between Kamtſchatſkoi Noſs and Olutorſkoi Noſs, with a view of making the latter; which is repreſented by the Ruſſian geographers, as terminating the peninſula of Kamtſchatka, and as being the ſouthern limit of the country of the Koriacs.

On Tueſday, the 22d, we paſſed a dead whale, which emitted a moſt horrible ſmell, perceivable at the diſtance of three or four miles. It was covered with a very conſiderable number of gulls, petrels, and other oceanic birds, which were regaling themſelves upon it. On the 24th, the wind, which had ſhifted about during the three preceding days, ſettled at S. W. bringing on clear weather, with which we proceeded towards the N. E. by N. acroſs the bay, having no land in ſight. In the courſe of this day we obſerved a great number of gulls, and were diſguſted with the indelicate manner of feeding of the arctic gull, which has procured it the appellation of the paraſite. This bird, which is rather larger than the common gull, purſues the latter ſpecies whenever it meets them; the gull, after flying about for ſome time, with loud ſcreams, and manifeſt indications of extreme terror, drops its excrement, which its purſuer inſtantly darts at, and catches in its beak before it falls into the ſea.

On Friday, the 25th, at one o'clock, P. M. when in the latitude of 59 deg. 12 min. and in the longitude of 168 deg. 35 min. a very thick fog came on about the time we expected to obtain a view of Olutorſkoi Noſs, which (if Muller's poſition of it, in the latitude of 59 deg. 30 min. and in the longitude of 167 deg. 36 min. is right) could then have been only 12 leagues from us; at which diſtance, we might eaſily have diſcerned land of a moderate height. Our depth of water, at preſent, was ſo great, that we had no ground with 160 fathoms of line. The fog ſtill continuing, prevented us from making a nearer approach to the land, and we ſteered E. by N. at five o'clock, which is a little more eaſterly than the Ruſſian charts repreſent the trending of the coaſt from Olutorſkoi Noſs. The next day, a freſh gale blew from the S. W. which laſted till noon on the 27th, when the weather clearing up, we ſteered to the N. with an intention of making the land. Our latitude, at this time, was 59 deg. 49 min. and our longitude 175 deg. 43 min. Though we ſaw ſome ſhags in the morning, which are imagined never to fly far from the land, yet there was no appearance of it during the whole day. However, the next morning, about ſix o'clock, we had ſight of it towards the N. W. The coaſt appeared in hills of a moderate elevation; but inland, others were obſerved conſiderably higher. The ſnow lying in patches, and no wood being perceived, the land had a very barren aſpect. At nine o'clock, we were ten or eleven miles from the ſhore, the ſouthern extreme bearing W. by S. about ſix leagues diſtant, beyond which the coaſt ſeemed to incline to the W. This point being in the longitude of 174 deg. 48 min. and in the latitude of 61 deg. 48 min. is ſituated, according to the Ruſſian charts, near the mouth of the river Opuka. The northern extremity, at the ſame time, bore N. by W. between which, and a hill bearing N. W. by W. quarter W. the coaſt appeared to bend towards the W. and form a deep bay. At the diſtance of about eight miles from the land we obſerved a ſtrong rippling; and being under apprehenſions of meeting with foul ground, we made ſail to the N. E. along the coaſt. On heaving the lead, we found the depth of water to be 24 fathoms, over a bottom of gravel. We therefore concluded, that the appearance above-mentioned, was occaſioned by a tide, then running to the ſouthward. At noon, the extremes of the land bearing W. S. W. and N. N. E. we were abreaſt of the low land, which, we now obſerved, joined the two points, where we had before expected to diſcover a deep bay. The coaſt bends a little towards the W. and has a ſmall inlet, which is, perhaps, the mouth of ſome inconſiderable river. Our longitude was now 175 deg. 43 min. and our latitude 61 deg. 56 min. During the afternoon, we continued our courſe along the coaſt, which exhibited an appearance of ſterility, and the hills roſe to a conſiderable elevation inland, but the clouds on their tops prevented us from determining their height. About eight o'clock in the evening, ſome of our people thought they ſaw land to the E. by N. upon which we ſtood to the ſouthward of E. but it proved to be nothing more than a fog bank. At midnight, the extreme point bearing N. E. quarter E. we conjectured that it was St. Thadeus's Noſs; to the S. of which the land inclines towards the W. forming a deep bight, wherein the river Katirka, according to the charts publiſhed by the Ruſſians, is ſituate. On Tueſday the 29th, the weather was unſettled, with the wind at the N. E. point. On the 30th, at noon, we obſerved in longitude 180 deg. and latitude 61 deg. 48 min. At this time, St. Thadeus's Noſs bore N. N. W. at the diſtance of 23 leagues; and beyond it we perceived the coaſt extending almoſt directly N. The eaſternmoſt point of the Noſs is in the latitude of 62 deg. 50 min. and in the longitude of 179 deg. The land about it, from its being diſcerned at ſo great a diſtance, may juſtly be ſuppoſed to be of a conſiderable height. During this and the preceding day, we ſaw numbers of ſea-horſes, whales, and ſeals; alſo albatroſſes, gulls, ſea-parrots, guillemots, and other birds.

C H A P. XVIII.

The Reſolution and Diſcovery continue their courſe to the north—Tſchukotſkoi Noſs deſcried—Iſle of St. Lawrence—Sight of the two coaſts of Aſia and America at the ſame inſtant—Obſtructions from the ice—Fruitleſs attempts to diſcover a paſſage on the American ſide—The plan of Captain Clerke, with reſpect to our future deſigns—Attempt, in vain, to paſs the ice to the north-weſt—Critical ſituation of the Diſcovery—The damages ſuſtained, after having again been obſtructed by the ice—Captain Clerke reſolves, to the great joy of the ſhip's crew, to return to the ſouthward—Paſs Serdze Kamen—Proceed through Beering's Straits—Remarks on the extent of the north-eaſt coaſt of Aſia—Reaſons for rejecting Muller's map—Impracticability of a north-eaſt or north-weſt paſſage from the Atlantic into the Pacific Ocean—The progreſs made in 1778, compared with that made in 1779—Obſervations on the Sea, Sea-Coaſts, &c. North of Beering's Straits.

ON Thurſday, the 1ſt of July 1779, at noon, Mr. Bligh, maſter of the Reſolution, found by experiment, that the ſhip made a courſe to the N. E. at the rate of about half a mile in an hour: this he attributed to the effect of a ſoutherly ſwell, rather than to that of any current. The wind towards the evening, freſhening from the S. E. we ſteered to the N. E. by E. for the point that Beering calls Tſchukotſkoi Noſs, which we had obſerved on the 4th of September the preceding year, at the ſame time that we perceived, towards the S. E. the Iſle of St. Lawrence. This cape, and St. Thadeus's Noſs, from the north-eaſtern and ſouth-weſtern extremes of the extenſive Gulph of Anadir, into the bottom of which the river of that name diſcharges itſelf, ſeparating, as it paſſes, the country of the Tſchutſki from that of the Koriacs. On the 3d, at noon, we obſerved in latitude 63 deg. 33 min. longitude 186 deg. 45 min. Between twelve and one, we deſcried the Tſchukotſkoi Noſs, bearing N. half W. at the diſtance of 13 or 14 leagues. At five in the afternoon, we ſaw the iſland of St. Lawrence, in the direction of E. three-quarters N. and alſo another iſland, which we imagined was between St. Lawrence and Anderſon's Iſland, about 18 miles E. S. E. of the former. As we had no certain knowledge of this iſland, Captain Clerke was inclined to have a nearer view of it, and immediately hauled the wind towards it: but it unfortunately happened, that we were unable to weather the Iſle of St. Lawrence, and were therefore obliged to bear up again, and paſs them all to the leeward. The latitude of the Iſland of St. Lawrence, according to the moſt accurate obſervations, is 63 deg. 47. min. and its longitude is 188 deg. 15 min. This iſland, if its boundaries were at preſent within our view, is about three leagues in circumference. The northern part of it may be diſcerned at the diſtance of ten or a dozen leagues. As it has ſome low land to the S. E. the extent of which we could not perceive, ſome of us ſuppoſed, that it might perhaps be joined to the land to the eaſtward of it: we were, however, prevented by the hazineſs of the weather, from aſcertaining this circumſtance. Theſe iſlands, as well as the land adjoining to the Tſchukotſkoi Noſs, were covered with ſnow, and preſented a moſt diſmal aſpect. About midnight, the Iſle of St. Lawrence was five or ſix miles diſtant, bearing S. S. E. and our ſoundings were 18 fathoms. We were accompanied with ſea fowl of various ſorts, and obſerved ſome guillemots and ſmall creſted hawks. The weather continuing to thicken, we loſt ſight of land till Monday the 5th, when we had a view of it both to the N. E. and N. W. Our longitude, at this time, was 189 deg. 14 min. and our latitude 65 deg. 24 min. As the iſlands of St. Diomede, which are ſituated in Beering's Strait, between the two continents of Aſia and America, were determined by us the preceding year to be in the latitude of 65 deg. 48 min. we were at a loſs how to reconcile the land towards the N. E. with the poſition of thoſe iſlands. We therefore ſtood for the land till three o'clock in the afternoon, when we were within the diſtance of four miles from it, and diſcovering it to be two iſlands, were pretty well convinced of their being the ſame; but the hazineſs of the weather ſtill continuing, we, in order to be certain, with reſpect to our ſituation, ſtood over to the Aſiatic

Aſiatic coaſt, till about ſeven o'clock in the evening; at which time we had approached within two or three leagues of the eaſtern cape of that continent. The Cape is an elevated round head of land, and extends about five miles from N. to S. It forms a peninſula, which is connected with the continent by a narrow iſthmus of low land. It has a bold ſhore; and three lofty, detached, ſpiral rocks, are ſeen off its N. part. It was at preſent covered with ſnow, and the beach encompaſſed with ice. We were now convinced of our having been under the influence of a ſtrong current ſetting to the northward, which had occaſioned an error of twenty miles in our computation of the latitude at noon. At the time of our paſſing this Strait the laſt year, we had experienced a ſimilar effect. Having now aſcertained our poſition, we ſteered N. by E. At ten o'clock in the evening, the weather clearing up, we ſaw, at the ſame inſtant, the remarkable peaked hill near Cape Prince of Wales, on the North American coaſt, and the Eaſt Cape of Aſia, with the two iſlands of St. Diomede between them. In the courſe of this day, we ſaw ſeveral large white gulls, and great numbers of very ſmall birds of the hawk kind. The beak of the latter was compreſſed, and large in proportion to the body of the bird: the colour was dark brown, or rather black, the breaſt whitiſh, and towards the abdomen a reddiſh brown hue was viſible. On the 6th, at twelve o'clock, our latitude was 67 deg. and our longitude 191 deg. 6 min. Having already paſſed many large maſſes of ice, and obſerved that it adhered, in ſeveral places, to the ſhore of the Aſiatic continent, we were not greatly ſurpriſed when we fell in, about three o'clock, with an extenſive body of it, ſtretching towards the W. This appearance conſiderably diſcouraged our hopes of proceeding much further to the N. this year, than we had done the preceding. There being little wind in the afternoon, the boats were hoiſted out in purſuit of the ſea-horſes, great numbers of which were ſeen on the detached pieces of ice; but they returned without ſucceſs: theſe animals being extremely ſhy, and before our people could come within gun-ſhot of them, always retreated into the water. At ſeven o'clock P. M. having hoiſted in the boats, we ſtood on to the north-eaſtward, with a freſh ſoutherly breeze, intending to explore the American continent, between the latitudes of 68 deg. and 69 deg. which, on account of the foggy weather, we had not an opportunity of examining the laſt year. In this attempt we were partly diſappointed again: for, on the 7th, about ſix o'clock in the morning, we were ſtopped by a large body of ice, ſtretching from N. W. to S. E. but, not long afterwards, the horizon becoming clear, we had a view of the American coaſt, at the diſtance of about ten leagues, extending from N. E. by E. to E. and lying between 68 deg. and 68 deg. 20 min. of northern latitude. The ice not being high, we were enabled by the clearneſs of the weather to ſee over a great extent of it. The whole exhibited a compact ſolid ſurface, not in the leaſt thawed; and ſeemed alſo to adhere to the land. Soon after, the weather becoming hazy, we loſt ſight of the land; and it being impoſſible to approach nearer to it, we ſteered to the N. N. W. keeping the ice cloſe on board; and having, by noon, got round its weſtern extremity, we found that it trended nearly N. Our longitude, at this time, was 192 deg. 34 min. and our latitude 68 deg. 22 min. We proceeded along the edge of the ice, to the N. N. E. during the remainder of the day, paſſing through many looſe pieces which had been ſeparated from the main body, and againſt which our veſſels were driven with great violence, notwithſtanding our utmoſt caution. About eight in the evening, we paſſed ſome drift-wood: at midnight the wind veered to the N. W. and there were continued ſhowers of ſnow and ſleet. The thermometer had now fallen from 38 deg. to 31 deg. On Thurſday, the 8th, at five o'clock, the wind ſhifting more to the northward, we could continue no longer on the ſame tack, by reaſon of the ice, but were under the neceſſity of ſtanding towards the W. Our depth of water, at this time, was 19 fathoms; from which, upon comparing it with our remarks on the ſoundings in the preceding year, we inferred, that our preſent diſtance from the coaſt of America did not exceed ſix or ſeven leagues; but our view was circumſcribed within a much narrower compaſs, by a heavy fall of ſnow. Our latitude, at noon, was 69 deg. 21 min. and our longitude 192 deg. 42 min. At two o'clock P. M. the weather became clearer, and we found ourſelves cloſe to an expanſe of ice, which, from the maſt-head, was diſcovered to conſiſt of very large compact bodies; united towards the exterior edge, but, in the interior parts, ſome pieces were obſerved floating in vacant ſpaces of the water: it extended from W. S. W. to N. E. by N. We bore away towards the S. along the edge of it, endeavouring to get into clearer water; for the ſtrong northerly winds had drifted down ſuch numbers of looſe pieces, that we had been encompaſſed with them for ſome time, and were unable to prevent the ſhips from ſtriking againſt ſeveral of them. On the 9th, a freſh gale blew from the N. N. W. accompanied with violent ſhowers of ſnow and ſleet. We ſteered W. S. W. and kept as near the main body of ice as we could; but had the misfortune to damage the cut-water againſt the drift pieces, and rub off ſome of the ſheathing from the bows. The ſhocks, indeed, which our ſhips received, were frequently very ſevere, and were attended with conſiderable hazard. Our latitude, at noon, was 69 deg. 12 min. and our longitude 188 deg. 5 min.

We had now ſailed almoſt 40 leagues to the W. along the edge of the ice, without perceiving any opening, or a clear ſea beyond it towards the N. no proſpect therefore remained of making further progreſs to the northward at preſent. For this reaſon Captain Clerke determined to bear away to S. by E. the only quarter which was clear, and to wait till the ſeaſon was ſomewhat more advanced, before he made any further attempts to penetrate through the ice. He propoſed to employ the intermediate time in ſurveying the bay of St. Lawrence, and the coaſt ſituate to the S. of it, as it would be a great ſatisfaction to have a harbour ſo near, in caſe of future damage from the quantity of ice in theſe parts. We were alſo deſirous of paying another viſit to the Tſchutſki; and more particularly ſince the accounts we had heard of them from Major Behm. In conſequence of this determination, we made ſail to the ſouthward, till the 10th at noon, when we paſſed conſiderable quantities of drift ice, and a perfect calm enſued. The latitude, at this time, was 68 deg. 1 min. and the longitude 188 deg. 30 min. This morning we ſaw ſeveral whales; and in the afternoon, there being great numbers of ſea-horſes on the pieces of ice that ſurrounded us, we hoiſted out the boats, and diſpatched them in purſuit of thoſe animals. Our people had more ſucceſs on this occaſion, than they had on the 6th; for they returned with three large ones, and a young one, beſides having killed or wounded ſome others. They were witneſſes of ſeveral ſtriking inſtances of parental affection in theſe animals. All of them, on the approach of the boats towards the ice, took their young ones under their fins, and attempted to eſcape with them into the ſea. Some, whoſe cubs were killed or wounded, and left floating upon the ſurface of the water, roſe again, and carried them down, ſometimes juſt as our men were on the point of taking them into the boat; and could be traced bearing them to a conſiderable diſtance through the water, which was ſtained with their blood. They were afterwards obſerved bringing them, at intervals, above the ſurface, as if for air, and again plunging under it, with a horrid bellowing. The female, in particular, whoſe young one had been killed, and taken into the boat, became ſo furious, that ſhe even ſtruck her two tuſks through the bottom of the cutter. About eight o'clock in the evening, an eaſterly breeze ſprung up, with which we continued to ſteer to the ſouthward; and, at midnight, fell in with many extenſive bodies of ice. We attempted to puſh through them under an eaſy ſail, that the ſhips might ſuſtain no damage; and when we had proceeded a little further towards the S. nothing was viſible but a very large and compact maſs of ice, extending

tending to the N. E. S. W. and S. E. as far as the eye could reach. This formidable obſtacle prevented our viſiting the Tſchutſki; for no ſpace remained open, except back again to the northward. We therefore tacked, at three o'clock in the morning of the 11th, and ſtood to that quarter. The lat. at noon, was 67 deg. 49 min. and the long. 188 deg. 47 min. On Monday, the 12th, we had light winds and hazy weather. On examining the current, we found it ſet towards the N. W. at the rate of half a mile an hour. We continued our northerly courſe, with a breeze from the S. and fair weather, till 10 o'clock in the morning of the 13th, when we again found ourſelves cloſe in with a ſolid maſs of ice, to which we could perceive no limits from the maſt-head. This was an effectual diſcouragement to all our hopes of penetrating further; which had been greatly raiſed, by our having now advanced almoſt 10 leagues, through a ſpace, which, on the 9th, had been found to be occupied by impenetrable ice. Our ſituation, at this time, was nearly in the middle of the channel, betwixt the two continents; our lat. was 69 deg. 37 min. and the main body of the ice extended from W. S. W. to E. N. E.

In that part of the ſea where we now were, there was no probability of getting further to the north, Captain Clerke therefore determined to make a final attempt on the coaſt of America, for Baffin's Bay, ſince we had found it practicable to advance the furtheſt on this ſide, in the preceding year. We accordingly, during the remainder of the day, worked to the windward, with a freſh breeze from the eaſt. We obſerved ſeveral fulmars, and arctic gulls, and paſſed two trees, both of which ſeemed to have lain a long time in the water. The larger one was, in length, ten or eleven feet, and in circumference, about three, without either the bark or branches. We continued our courſe to the eaſtward on the 14th, with thick foggy weather. The next day, the wind blowing freſh from the weſt, and having, in ſome meaſure, diſperſed the fog, we immediately ſteered to the north, in order to have a nearer view of the ice; and we were ſoon cloſe in with it. It extended from N. N. W. to N. E. and was ſolid and compact: the exterior parts were ragged, and of various heights; the inner ſurface was even; and, as we ſuppoſed, from 8 to 10 feet above the level of the ſea. The weather becoming moderate during the reſt of the day, we ſhaped our courſe according to the trending of the ice, which, in ſeveral places, formed deep bays. On Friday, the 16th, the wind freſhened, in the morning, and was accompanied with frequent and thick ſhowers of ſnow. At eight o'clock in the forenoon, we had a ſtrong gale from the W. S. W. which brought us under double-reefed topſails; when, the weather in ſome degree clearing up, we found ourſelves, as it were embayed; the ice having ſuddenly taken a turn to the ſouth eaſtward, and encompaſſing us in one compact body, on all ſides, but the ſouth. In conſequence of this, we hauled our wind to the ſouthward, being, at that time, in 26 fathoms water, and in the lat. of 70 deg. 8 min. N. and, as we imagined, at the diſtance of about 25 leagues from the American coaſt. At four in the afternoon, the gale increaſing, we got the top-gallant-yards down upon the deck, furled the mizen top-ſail, and cloſe-reefed the fore and main top-ſails. About eight o'clock, finding that our ſoundings had decreaſed to 22 fathoms, which we conſidered as an indication of our near approach to the coaſt of America, we tacked and ſteered to the northward. In the night we had boiſterous weather, attended with ſnow; but the next morning it was clear and moderate; and, at eight o'clock, we got the top-gallant-yards acroſs, and bore away, with the wind ſtill at W. S. W. Our lat. at noon, was 69 deg. 55 min. and our long. 194 deg. 30 min. The wind ſlackened in the evening, and, about midnight, we had a calm. A light breeze ariſing from the E. N. E. at five in the morning of the 18th, we continued our progreſs towards the N. with a view of regaining the ice as ſoon as poſſible. We ſaw numbers of ſea-parrots, and ſmall ice-birds, and alſo many whales; and paſſed ſeveral logs of drift-wood. The lat. at 12 o'clock, was 70 deg. 26 min. and the long. 194 deg. 54 min. Our ſoundings, at the ſame time, were 23 fathoms; and the ice extended from N. to E. N. E. being about one league diſtant. At one o'clock in the afternoon, obſerving that we were cloſe in with a firm united maſs of ice, ſtretching from E. to W. N. W. we tacked, and, the wind veering to the weſtward, ſtood to the E. along the edge of it, till 11 in the evening. A very thick fog then coming on, and the depth of water decreaſing to 19 fathoms, we hauled our wind to the ſouthward. About nine o'clock in the evening a white bear ſwam cloſe by the Diſcovery; it afterwards went towards the ice, on which were likewiſe two others. The weather clearing up, at one in the morning of Monday, the 19th, we bore away to the N. E. till two o'clock, when we were again ſo completely embayed by the ice, that no opening remained, except to the ſouthward; to which quarter we therefore directed our courſe, and returned through a very ſmooth water, with favourable weather, by the ſame way we had come in. We were unable to penetrate further towards the N. than at this time, when our lat. was 70 deg. 33 min. which was about five leagues ſhort of the point to which we had advanced the preceding ſummer. We ſtood to the S. S. W. with light winds from the N. W. near the edge of the main body of ice, which was ſituated on our left-hand, extending between us and the American coaſt. At noon, our lat. was 70 deg. 11 min. and our long. 196 deg. 15 min. and our ſoundings were 16 fathoms. We ſuppoſed, from this circumſtance, that the Icy Cape was at the diſtance of only ſeven or eight leagues from us; but, though the weather was in general pretty clear, there was, at the ſame time a hazineſs in the horizon; ſo that we could not expect to have an opportunity of ſeeing the cape. During the afternoon, two white bears appearing in the water, ſome of our people immediately purſued them in the jolly-boat, and were ſo fortunate as to kill them both. The larger one, which was, in all probability, the dam of the younger, being ſhot firſt, the other would not leave it, though it might have eſcaped with eaſe on the ice, while the men were re-loading their muſquets; but continued ſwimming about, till after having been ſeveral times fired upon, it was ſhot dead. The length of the larger one, from the ſnout to the end of the tail was ſeven feet two inches; its circumference, near the fore legs, was four feet ten inches; the height of the ſhoulder was four feet three inches; and the breadth of the fore-paw was ten inches. The weight of its four quarters was 436 pounds. The four quarters of the ſmalleſt weighed 256 pounds. Theſe animals furniſhed us with ſome good meals of freſh meat. Their fleſh, indeed, had a ſtrong fiſhy taſte, but was infinitely ſuperior to that of the ſea-horſe; which, however, our people were again perſuaded, with no great difficulty, to prefer to their ſalted proviſions.

On Tueſday, the 20th, at ſix o'clock, A. M. a thick fog ariſing, we loſt ſight of the ice for the ſpace of two hours; but, when the weather became clearer, we again had a view of the main body to the S. S. E. and immediately hauled our wind, which was eaſterly, towards it, expecting to make the American coaſt to the S. E. which we effected between 10 and 11 o'clock. The lat. at noon, was 69 deg. 33 min. and the long. 194 deg. 53 min. Our depth of water, at the ſame time, was 19 fathoms. The land was at the diſtance of eight or ten leagues, extending from S. by E. to S. S. W. half W. being the ſame we had ſeen the preceding year; but it was, at preſent, much more covered with ſnow than at that time; and the ice ſeemed to adhere to the ſhore. We continued to ſail in the afternoon, through a ſea of looſe ice, and to ſteer towards the land, as near as the wind, which blew from E. S. E. would permit. A thick fog came on at eight o'clock in the evening, and the wind abated. Obſerving a rippling in the water, we tried the current, and found it ſet to the E. N. E. at the rate of a mile an hour: we therefore reſolved to ſteer before the wind, during the night, in order to ſtem it, and oppoſe the large pieces of looſe ice, which were ſetting us on towards the coaſt. Our ſoundings, at midnight, were twenty fathoms. The next morning, at eight o'clock, the wind freſhening, and the fog diſperſing, we again had ſight of the coaſt of America to the ſouth-eaſtward, at the diſtance of nine or ten leagues, and hauled in for it; but the ice in a ſhort time effectually ſtopped our further progreſs on that ſide, and we were obliged to bear away towards the W. along the edge of it. Our lat. at 12 was 69 deg. 34 min. our long. was 193 deg. and our ſoundings were 24 fathoms. A connected ſolid field of ice, thus baffling all our efforts to make a nearer approach to the land, and (as we had ſome reaſon to imagine) adhering to it, we relinquiſhed all hopes of a N. E. paſſage to Great-Britain. Our Commander now finding it impoſſible to advance further to the northward on the American coaſt, and deeming it equally improbable, that ſuch a prodigious quantity of ice ſhould be diſſolved by the few remaining weeks that would terminate the ſummer, conſidered it as the beſt ſtep that could be taken, to trace the ſea over to the coaſt of Aſia, and endeavour to find ſome opening that would admit him further N. or ſee what more could be done upon that coaſt, where he hoped to meet with better ſucceſs. In conſequence of this determination, we ſteered W. N. W. during the afternoon of the 21ſt of July, through a great quantity of looſe ice. About ten o'clock in the evening, diſcovering the main body of ice through the fog, right a-head, and very near us, and being unwilling to ſtand to the ſouthward, ſo long as we could poſſibly avoid it; we hauled our wind, which was eaſterly, and made ſail to the N. but in the ſpace of an hour afterwards, finding that the weather became clearer, and that we were ſurrounded by a compact field of ice on all ſides, except to the S. S. W. we tacked, and ſteered in that direction, for the purpoſe of getting clear of it. On the 22d, at noon, our lat. was 69 deg. 30 min. and our long. 187 deg. 30 min. In the afternoon we again came up with the ice, which extending to the N. W. and S. W. obliged us to proceed to the ſouthward, in order to weather it. It may not here be improper to remark, that, ſince the 8th of July, we had twice traverſed this ſea, in lines almoſt parallel with the run we had juſt now made; that we were unable in the firſt of thoſe traverſes, to penetrate ſo far N. by eight or ten leagues, as in the ſecond; and that in the laſt we had again met with a connected maſs of ice, generally about five leagues to the ſouthward of its poſition in the preceding run. This makes it evident, that the large compact fields of ice, obſerved by us, were moveable, or diminiſhing; but, at the ſame time, it does not authoriſe any expectation of advancing much farther, even in the moſt favourable ſeaſons. About ſeven o'clock in the evening, the weather being hazy, and no ice viſible, we made ſail to the weſtward; but, between eight and nine, the haze diſperſing, we found ourſelves in the midſt of looſe ice, and very near the main body; we therefore ſtood upon a wind, which was ſtill eaſterly, and continued to beat to windward during the night, hoping to weather the looſe pieces, which the wind drove down upon us in ſuch quantities, that we were in great danger of being blocked up by them. On Friday, the 23d, the clear water, in which we ſteered to and fro, did not exceed a mile and a half, and was leſſening every moment. At length, after exerting our moſt ſtrenuous endeavours to clear the looſe ice, we were under the neceſſity of forcing a paſſage to the S. which we accompliſhed between ſeven and eight, though not without ſubjecting the ſhip to ſome very ſevere ſhocks. The Diſcovery was not ſo ſucceſsful; for, about 11 o'clock, when ſhe had almoſt got clear out, ſhe became ſo entangled by ſeveral large pieces, that her progreſs was ſtopped, and ſhe immediately dropped to leeward, and fell, broadſide foremoſt, on the edge of a conſiderable body of ice; and there being an open ſea to windward, the ſurf occaſioned her to ſtrike with violence upon it. This maſs, at length, either ſo far broke, or moved, as to give the crew an opportunity of making another effort to eſcape; but, it unfortunately happened, that, before the ſhip gathered way enough to be under command, ſhe fell to leeward a ſecond time, on another fragment, and the ſwell rendering it unſafe to lie to windward, and finding no proſpect of getting clear, they puſhed into a ſmall opening, furled their ſails, and made the veſſel faſt with ice-hooks. We beheld them in this dangerous ſituation at noon, at the diſtance of about three miles from us, in a N. W. direction; a freſh gale from the S. E. driving more ice towards the N. W. and augmenting the body that lay between us. Our lat. at this time, was 69 deg. 8 min. our long. 187 deg. and our ſoundings were 28 fathoms. To add to the apprehenſions which began to force themſelves on our minds, between four and five in the afternoon, the weather becoming thick and hazy, we loſt ſight of the Diſcovery. However, that we might be in a ſituation to afford her every poſſible aſſiſtance, we ſtood on cloſe by the edge of the ice. About ſix o'clock the wind ſhifting to the north, gave us ſome hopes, that the ice might drift away, and releaſe her from her danger; and in that caſe, as it was uncertain in what condition ſhe might come out, we continued, every half hour, to fire a gun, with a view of preventing a ſeparation. Our fears for her ſafety did not ceaſe till nine, when we heard her guns fired in anſwer to ours; and not long afterwards being hailed by her, we were informed, that upon the change of wind, the ice began to ſeparate, and that her people, ſetting all the ſails, forced a paſſage through it.

On Saturday, the 24th, we ſteered to the S. E. till 11 o'clock A. M. when our courſe was again obſtructed by a large body of looſe ice, to which we could diſcover no bounds. At noon we found ourſelves in lat. 68 deg. 53 min. long. 188 deg. About four in the afternoon, we had a calm, and the boats were hoiſted out in purſuit of the ſea-horſes, which appeared in prodigious numbers. Ten of them were killed by our people, as many as could be made uſe of by us for eating, or for converting into lamp-oil. We held on our courſe with a ſouth-weſterly wind, along the edge of the ice, till four in the morning of the 25th, when perceiving a clear ſea beyond it, to the ſouth-eaſtward, we ſteered to that point. During the remaining part of the day, we continued to run towards the S. E. with no ice in ſight. At noon we obſerved in lat. 68 deg. 38 min. long. 189 deg. 9 min. and our ſoundings were 30 fathoms. For the remainder of the day, and till noon of the 27th, we ſtood backwards and forwards, to clear ourſelves of different pieces of ice. At two in the afternoon, we had ſight of the continent to the S. by E. and, at four, having run, ſince noon, to the S. W. we were encompaſſed by looſe maſſes of ice, with the main body in view, ſtretching in the direction of N. by W. and S. by E. as far as the eye could reach, beyond which we deſcried the Aſiatic coaſt, bearing S. and S. by E. It being now neceſſary to come to ſome determination reſpecting the courſe we were next to ſteer, Captain Clerke diſpatched a boat, with the carpenters, on board the Diſcovery, to make enquiries into the particulars of the damages ſhe had lately received. In the evening they returned, with the report of Captain Gore, and of the carpenters of both veſſels, that the damages ſuſtained were ſuch as would require three weeks to repair; and that it would be requiſite, for that purpoſe, to make the beſt of their way to ſome port. Thus finding our farther progreſs to the N. as well as our nearer approach to either continent, obſtructed by immenſe bodies of ice, we conſidered it as not only injurious to the ſervice, by endangering the ſafety of the ſhips, but likewiſe fruitleſs, with reſpect to the deſign of our voyage, to make any farther attempts for the diſcovery of a paſſage. This, therefore, added to Captain Gore's repreſentations, determined Captain Clerke to loſe no more time after what he concluded to be an unattainable object, but to proceed to the bay of Awatſka, to repair our damages there, and before the winter ſhould ſet in, to take a ſurvey of the coaſt of Japan. It is impoſſible to deſcribe the joy that ſparkled in the countenance of every individual, when the Captain's reſolution was made known. All were completely weary of a navigation full of danger, and in which the greateſt perſeverance had not been rewarded with the ſmalleſt proſpect of ſucceſs. We therefore turned our thoughts towards home, after an abſence of three years, with a delight and ſatisfaction as fully enjoyed, as if we had been already in ſight of the Land's-end. On Wedneſday, the 28th, we worked to windward, with a freſh breeze from the S. E. being ſtill in ſight of the coaſt of Aſia. At four in the morning, Cape Serdze Kamen bore S. S. W. diſtant 7 leagues. On the 29th, the wind continuing unfavourable, we made but ſlow progreſs to the ſouthward. We had no land in view till ſeven in the evening of the 30th, when the fog diſperſing, we ſaw Cape Prince of Wales bearing S. by E. diſtant ſix leagues; and the iſland of St. Diomede S. W. by W. We now ſtood to the W. and at eight made the Eaſt Cape, which at midnight, was four leagues diſtant, bearing W. by N. On Saturday, the 31ſt, at four o'clock A. M. the Eaſt Cape bore N. N. E. and the N. E. part of the Bay of St. Lawrence, W. by S. diſtant 12 miles. At noon, we obſerved in latitude 65 deg. 6 min. longitude 189 deg.

We had now paſſed Beering's Straits, and taken a final leave of the N. E. coaſt of Aſia; and here we ſhall ſtate our reaſons for adopting two general concluſions relative to its extent, in oppoſition to the ſentiments of Mr. Muller. The firſt is, that the promontory, called Eaſt Cape, is actually the moſt eaſterly point of that quarter of the globe; or in other words, that no part of that continent extends in longitude beyond 190 deg. 22 min. E. The ſecond is, that the latitude of the north-eaſternmoſt extreme is ſomewhat to the ſouth of 70 deg. N. With regard to the former, if ſuch land really exiſts, it muſt certainly be to the N. of the 69th deg. of latitude, where the diſcoveries made in our preſent voyage terminate.

We propoſe therefore in the firſt place to inveſtigate the probable direction of the coaſt beyond this point. Now, Ruſſia being the only nation that has hitherto navigated this part of the ocean, all our information reſpecting the poſition of the coaſt to the northward of Cape North, is derived from the journals and charts of the perſons who have been engaged, at different times, in determining the bounds of that extenſive empire, and theſe are, in general, ſo confined, contradictory, and imperfect, that we cannot eaſily form a diſtinct idea of their pretended, much leſs collect the particulars, of their real diſcoveries. On this account, the extent and figure of the peninſula, inhabited by the Tſchutſki ſtill remains a point, on which the Ruſſian Geographers are divided greatly in their opinions. Mr. Muller, in the map which he publiſhed in 1754, ſuppoſes that this country extends towards the N. E. as far as the latitude of 75 deg. and to the longitude of 190 deg. E. of Greenwich; and that it ends in a round cape, which he denominates Tſchukotſkoi Noſs. To the S. of this cape, the coaſt, as he imagines, forms a bay to the W. bounded in the latitude of 67 deg. 18 min. by Serdze Kamen, the moſt northerly point obſerved by Beering in his expedition in 1728. The map publiſhed in 1776 by the academy of St. Peterſburg, gives a new form to the whole peninſula, placing its north-eaſternmoſt extreme in the latitude of 73 deg. longitude 178 deg. 30 min. and the moſt eaſterly point in latitude 65 deg. 30 min. longitude 189 deg. 30. min. All the other maps we have ſeen, both manuſcript and printed, vary between theſe two, apparently more according to the fancy and conjectures of the compiler, than on any grounds of more accurate intelligence. The only particular in which there is a general, coincidence, with very little variation, is the poſition of the Eaſt Cape, in the latitude of 66 deg. The form of the coaſt both to the N. and S. of the Eaſt Cape, in the map of the academy, is extremely erroneous, and may be entirely diſregarded. In Mr. Muller's map, the coaſt towards the N. has ſome degree of reſemblance to our ſurvey, as far as the latter extends, except that he does not make it trend ſufficiently to the W. but makes it recede only about 5 deg. of longitude, between the latitude of 66 and 69 deg. whereas it actually recedes near ten. Between the latitude of 69 and 74 deg. the coaſt, according to him, bends round to the N. and N. E. and forms a large promontory. On what authority he grounds this repreſentation of the coaſt, comes next under our conſideration.

Mr. Coxe, whoſe accurate reſearches into this ſubject, give great weight to his ſentiments, is of opinion, that the extremity of the Noſs in queſtion, was never paſſed except by Deſhneff and his party, who ſailed in the year 1648, from the river Kovyma, and are imagined to have got round it into the Anadyr. As the narrative of this expedition, the ſubſtance of which has been given by Mr. Coxe, in his account of Ruſſian diſcoveries, comprehends no geographical delineation of the coaſt along which they ſailed, our conjectures reſpecting its poſition muſt be derived from incidental circumſtances; and from theſe it evidently appears, that the Tſchukotſkoi Noſs of Deſhneff, is, in reality, the promontory named by Captain Cook, the Eaſt Cape. Speaking of the Noſs, he ſays, that a perſon may ſail from the iſthmus to the Anadyr, with a favourable wind, in three days and three nights. This perfectly agrees with the ſituation of the Eaſt Cape, which is about 120 leagues from the mouth of the river Anadyr; and there being no other iſthmus to the N. between that and the latitude of 69 deg. it ſeems evident, that, by this deſcription, he certainly means either the Cape in queſtion, or ſome other ſituated to the S. of it. He ſays, in another place, that, oppoſite to the iſthmus, there are two iſlands in the ſea, upon which we obſerved ſome of the Tſchutſki nation, in whoſe lips pieces of the teeth of the ſea-horſe were fixed. This deſcription coincides exactly with the two iſlands that lie to the S. E. of the Eaſt Cape. We obſerved, indeed, no inhabitants upon them; but it is by no means improbable, that a party of Americans from the oppoſite continent, whom this deſcription ſuits, might have been accidentally there at that time, and he might eaſily miſtake them for a tribe of the Tſchutſki. Theſe two circumſtances ſeem to us to be concluſive on the point of the Tſchukotſkoi Noſs, though there are others of a more dubious nature from the ſame authority, and which now remain to be inveſtigated. Deſhneff, in another account, ſays, that in going from the Kovyma to the Anadyr, a great promontory which projects very far into the ſea, muſt be doubled; and that this cape extends between N. and N. E. It was, perhaps, from theſe expreſſions, that Muller was induced to repreſent the country of the Tſchutſki, in the form we find in his map; but, if he had been acquainted with the poſition of the Eaſt Cape, as determined by Captain Cook, and the ſtriking agreement between that and the promontory or iſthmus, (for it muſt be remarked, that Deſhneff ſtill appears to be ſpeaking of the ſame thing) in the circumſtances above-mentioned, we are confident that he would not have thought thoſe expreſſions of ſufficient weight to authoriſe his extending the north eaſtern extreme of Aſia, either ſo far to the N. or E. For theſe words of Deſhneff may be reconciled with the opinion we have adopted, if we ſuppoſe that navigator to have taken theſe bearings from the ſmall bight lying to the W. of the cape. The next authority, on which Muller has proceeded, ſeems to have been the depoſition of the Coſſac Popoff, taken at the Anadirſkoi oſtrog, in 1711. This Coſſac was ſent by land, in company with ſeveral others, to demand tribute from the independent Tſchutſki tribes, who inhabited the parts about the Noſs. The firſt circumſtance, in the narrative of this journey, that can tend to lead to the ſituation of Tſchukotſkoi Noſs, is its diſtance from Anadirſk; and this is repreſented as a journey of ten weeks, with loaded rein-deer; for which reaſon, it is added, their day's journey was very inconſiderable. We cannot, indeed, conclude much from ſo vague an account, but as the diſtance between the Eaſt Cape and the Oſtrog, exceeds 200 leagues in a direct line, and conſequently may be ſuppoſed to allow 12 or 14 miles a day, its ſituation is not incompatible with Popoff's calculation. Another circumſtance ſtated in this depoſition is, that their route lay at the foot of a rock, named Matkol, ſituate at the bottom of a ſpacious gulph. This gulph Muller conjectures to be the bay he had laid down between the latitudes of 66 deg. and 72 deg. and he accordingly places the rock Matkol in the center of it; but it appears to be more probable, that it might be a part of the Gulph of Anadyr, which they would doubtleſs touch upon in their journey from the Oſtrog to the Eaſt Cape. What ſeems, however, to put this point beyond all diſpute, and to prove that the Cape which Popoff viſited cannot be to the northward of the latitude of 69 deg. is that part of his depoſition which relates to an iſland lying off the Noſs, from whence the oppoſite continent might be diſcerned. For, as the two continents, in latitude 69 deg. diverge ſo far as to be upwards of 100 leagues diſtant, it is certainly very improbable, that the coaſt of Aſia ſhould again trend in ſuch a manner to the E. as to come almoſt within ſight of the American coaſt. If theſe arguments are allowed to be concluſive againſt the form and extent of the peninſula of the Tſchutſki, it muſt be evident that the Eaſt Cape is the Tſchukotſkoi of the earlier Ruſſian navigators: we ſay earlier, becauſe Beering, and, after him, the late Ruſſian geographers, have affixed this appellation to the S. E. cape of the peninſula of the Tſchutſki, which was formerly diſtinguiſhed by the name of the Anadirſkoi Noſs: and, conſequently, hence it will follow, that the undeſcribed coaſt, extending from the latitude of 69 deg. to the mouth of the Kovyma, muſt trend more or leſs towards the W. As an additional proof of this, we may obſerve, that the Tſchukotſkoi Noſs is conſtantly laid down as dividing the ſea of Kovyma from that of Anadyr, which we think could not poſſibly be, if any large cape had projected to the N. E. in the more advanced latitudes.

Another queſtion ariſing on this point is, to what degree of northern latitude this coaſt extends, before it inclines more immediately to the W. If the poſition of the mouth of the Kovyma, both with regard to its latitude and longitude, were aſcertained accurately, it might perhaps be eaſy to form a plauſible conjecture on this head. Captain Cook was always ſtrongly induced to believe, that the northern coaſt of Aſia, from the Indigirka eaſtward, has hitherto been uſually laid down above two degrees to the northward of its true ſituation: and he has therefore, on the authority of a map that was in his poſſeſſion, and on the intelligence which he received at Oonalaſhka, placed the mouth of the Kovyma, in his chart of the N. E. coaſt of Aſia, and the N. W. coaſt of America, in the latitude of 68 deg. Should the Captain be right in this conjecture, it is probable, for the reaſons we have already ſtated, that the coaſt of Aſia does not, in any part, exceed 70 deg. before it trends towards the W. and conſequently, that we were within one degree of its north-eaſtern extremity. For if the continent be imagined to extend any where to the north of Shelatſkoi Noſs, it can ſcarcely be ſuppoſed that ſuch an intereſting circumſtance would have been omitted by the Ruſſian navigators, who mention no remarkable promontory between the Anadyr and the Kovyma, except the Eaſt Cape. Another particular, which Deſhneff relates, may, perhaps, be deemed a farther confirmation of this opinion, namely, that he met with no obſtruction from ice in ſailing round the north-eaſtern extremity of Aſia; though he adds, that this ſea is not, at all times, ſo free from it; as indeed appears evidently from his not ſucceeding in his firſt expedition, and, ſince that, from the ſailure of Shalauroff, as well as from the interruptions and impediments we met with, in two ſucceſſive years, in our preſent voyage. That part of the continent between Cape North, and the mouth of the Kovyma, is 125 leagues in longitudinal extent. About a third of this diſtance from the Kovyma, eaſtward, was explored in 1723, by Fedot Amoſſoff, a Sinbojarſkoi of Jakuts, who informed Mr. Muller, that its direction was eaſterly. Since that time, it has been ſurveyed, with ſome degree of accuracy, by Shalauroff, whoſe chart makes it trend to the N. E. by E. as far as Shelatſkoi Noſs, which he places at the diſtance of about 43 leagues to the E. of the Kovyma. The ſpace, therefore, between this Noſs and Cape North, upwards of 80 leagues, is the only part of the Ruſſian dominions now remaining unexplored. If the Kovyma, however, be erroneouſly laid down, in point of longitude as well as latitude (a ſuppoſition by no means improbable) the extent of the unexplored coaſt will diminiſh in proportion. The reaſons which incline us to imagine, that in the Ruſſian charts, the mouth of the river is placed conſiderably too far to the W. are the following. Firſt, becauſe the accounts that have been given of the navigation of the Frozen Ocean, from that river, round the north-eaſtern extreme of Aſia, to the gulf of Anadyr, do not agree with the ſuppoſed diſtance between thoſe places. Secondly, becauſe the diſtance from the Anadyr to the Kovyma, over land, is repreſented by former Ruſſian travellers as a journey of no very great length, and eaſily performed. Thirdly, becauſe the coaſt from the Shelatſkoi Noſs of Shalauroff appears to trend directly S. E. towards the Cape. If this be really the caſe, it may be inferred, that, as we were, in all probability, not more than one degree to the ſouthward of Shelatſkoi Noſs, only 69 miles of the coaſt of Aſia are unaſcertained.

We are of opinion, thinking it highly probable, that a N. W. paſſage from the Atlantic into the Pacific Ocean, does not exiſt to the ſouthward of the 56th deg. of latitude. If therefore a paſſage really exiſts, it muſt certainly be either through Baffin's bay, or by the N. of Greenland, in the weſtern hemiſphere; or in the eaſtern, through the Frozen Sea, to the N. of Siberia; and on which ever ſide it is ſituated, the navigator muſt paſs through the ſtraits diſtinguiſhed by the name of Beering's Straits. The impracticability of penetrating into the Atlantic Ocean, on either ſide, through theſe Straits, is, therefore, all that now remains to be offered to the reader's conſideration. Here we muſt previouſly obſerve, that the ſea to the northward of Beering's Straits, was found by us to be more free from ice in Auguſt than in July, and perhaps in ſome part of September it may be ſtill more clear of it. But, after the autumnal equinox, the length of the days diminiſhes ſo faſt, that no farther thaw can be expected; and we cannot reaſonably attribute ſo great an effect to the warm weather in the firſt fortnight of the month of September, as to imagine it capable of diſperſing the ice from the moſt northern parts of the coaſt of America. Admitting this, however, to be poſſible, it muſt at leaſt be allowed, that it would be highly abſurd to attempt to avoid the icy cape by running to the known parts of Baffin's Bay, (a diſtance of 420 leagues, or 1260 miles) in ſo ſhort a ſpace of time as that paſſage can be ſuppoſed to remain open. On the ſide of Aſia there appears ſtill leſs probability of ſucceſs, not only from what came to our knowledge, relative to the ſtate of the ſea to the ſouthward of Cape North, but likewiſe from what we have gathered from the experience of the lieutenants under the direction of Beering, and the journal of Shalauroff, reſpecting that on the N. of Siberia. But, the poſſibility of ſailing round the north-eaſtern extremity of Aſia, is undoubtedly proved by the voyage of Deſhneff, if its truth be admitted; yet when we reflect, that ſince the time of that navigator, near a century and a half has elapſed, during which, in an age of curioſity and enterprize, no perſon has yet been able to follow him, we can entertain no very great expectations of the public benefits to be derived from it. But even on the ſuppoſition, that, in ſome remarkably favourable ſeaſon, a veſſel might find a clear paſſage round the coaſt of Siberia, and arrive ſafely at the mouth of the Lena, ſtill there remains the Cape of Taimura, extending to the 78th deg. of latitude, which no navigator has hitherto had the good fortune to double. Some, however, contend, that there are ſtrong reaſons for believing, that the nearer approach we make to the pole, the ſea is more clear of ice, and that what maſſes we obſerved in the lower latitudes, had originally been formed in the great rivers of Siberia and America, by the breaking up of which the intermediate ſea had been filled. But even if that ſuppoſition be true, it is no leſs certain, that there can be no acceſs to thoſe open ſeas, unleſs this prodigious maſs of ice ſhould be ſo far diſſolved in the ſummer, as to admit of a ſhip's making her way through it. If this be a real fact, we made choice of an improper time of the year for attempting to diſcover this paſſage, which ſhould have been explored in the months of April and May, before the rivers were broken up. But ſeveral reaſons may be alledged againſt ſuch a ſuppoſition. Our experience at Petropaulowſka, gave us an opportunity of judging what might be expected farther northward; and, upon that ground, we had ſome reaſon to entertain a doubt, whether the two continents might not, during the winter, be even joined by the ice; and this coincided with the accounts we received in Kamtſchatka, that, on the coaſt of Siberia, the inhabitants, in winter, go out from the ſhore upon the ice, to diſtances that exceed the breadth of the ſea, in ſome parts, from one continent to the other. The following remarkable particular is mentioned in the depoſition above referred to. Speaking of the land ſeen from the Tchutſki Noſs, it is ſaid, that, during the ſummer, they ſail in one day to the land in baidares, a kind of veſſel formed of whale-bone, and covered with the ſkins of ſeals; and, in the winter, as they go ſwift with rein-deer, the journey may be performed in a day. Muller's account of one of the expeditions, undertaken for the purpoſe of diſcovering a ſuppoſed iſland in the Frozen Sea, is ſtill more remarkable. His narrative is to the following purport. In 1714 a new expedition was prepared from Jakutzk, under the conduct of Alexei Markoff, who was to ſet ſail from the mouth of the Jana; and if the Schitiki were not well adapted for ſea voyages, he was to build, at a convenient place, proper veſſels for proſecuting the diſcoveries without any great riſque. Upon his arrival at Uſt-janſkoe Simovie, the port where he was to embark, he diſpatched an account, dated the 2nd of February 1715, to the Chancery of Jakutzk, intimating, that it was impracticable to navigate the ſea, as it was conſtantly frozen both in winter and ſummer; and that, conſequently, the expedition could only be proſecuted in ſledges drawn by dogs. He accordingly ſet out in this manner, accompanied with nine perſons the 10th of March, in the ſame year, and returned to Uſt-janſkoe Simovie on the 3d of the ſucceeding month. The account of his journey is as follows: that for the ſpace of ſeven days, he travelled with as much expedition as his dogs could draw, (which in good tracks, and favourable weather, is from 80 to 100 werſts a day) to the northward, upon the ice, without obſerving any iſland: that he was prevented from proceeding farther by the ice, which roſe like mountains in that part of the ſea: that he had aſcended ſome of theſe, whence he could ſee to a great diſtance around him, but could diſcern no land: and that, at length, proviſions for his dogs being deficient, many of them died, which reduced him to the neceſſity of returning.

Beſides the above-mentioned arguments, which proceed upon an admiſſion of the hypotheſis, that the ice in this ocean comes from the rivers, others may be adduced, which afford good reaſon for ſuſpecting the truth of the hypotheſis itſelf. Captain Cook, whoſe opinion, with regard to the formation of ice, had originally coincided with that of the theoriſts we are now endeavouring to confute, found ſufficient grounds, in the preſent voyage, for changing his ſentiments. We obſerved, that the coaſts of both continents were low; that the depth of water gradually decreaſed towards them, and that a ſtriking reſemblance prevailed between the two; from which circumſtances, as well as from the deſcription given by Mr. Hearne of the coppermine river, we have room for conjecturing, that, whatever rivers may diſcharge themſelves into the Frozen Ocean, from the continent of America, are of a ſimilar nature with thoſe on the Aſiatic ſide; which are ſaid to be ſo ſhallow at their entrance, as to admit only veſſels of inconſiderable magnitude; whereas the ice ſeen by us, riſes above the level of the ſea, to a height that equals the depth of thoſe rivers; ſo that its entire altitude muſt be, at leaſt, ten times greater. Another circumſtance will naturally offer itſelf in this place to our conſideration, which ſeems to be very incompatible with the opinion of thoſe who ſuppoſe that land is neceſſary for the formation of ice, we mean the different ſtate of the ſea about Spitſbergen, and of that which is to the northward of Beering's Straits. It is incumbent on thoſe objectors to explain how it happens, that in the former quarter, and in the neighbourhood of much known land, navigators annually penetrate to near 80 deg. of northern latitude; whereas, on the other ſide, no voyager has been able to proceed with his utmoſt efforts beyond the 71ſt deg. where, moreover, the continents diverge nearly in the direction of E. and W. and where there is not any land known to exiſt in the vicinity of the pole. For the farther ſatisfaction of our readers on this ſubject, we refer them to Dr. Forſter's "Obſervations round the world," where they will find the queſtion of the formation of the ice, diſcuſſed in a full and ſatisfactory manner, and the probability of open polar ſeas diſproved by many forcible arguments.

In order to give theſe obſervations their full force, we beg leave to ſubjoin a comparative view of the progreſs made by us to the northward, at the two different ſeaſons in which we were occupied in that purſuit; together with ſome general remarks reſpecting the ſea, and the coaſts of the two continents, which lie to the N. of Beering's Straits. In 1778, we did not diſcover the ice, till we advanced to the latitude of 70 deg. on the 17th of Auguſt: and then we found it in compact bodies, which extended as far as the eye could diſcern, and of which the whole, or a part, was in motion, ſince, by its drifting down upon our ſhips, we were almoſt hemmed in between that and the land. After we had experienced, both how fruitleſs and dangerous it would be to attempt to penetrate farther to the northward between the land and the ice, we ſtood over towards the ſide of Aſia, between the latitudes of 69 deg. and 70 deg. After having encountered in this track very large fields of ice, and though the fogs and thickneſs of the weather prevented us from entirely tracing a connected line of it acroſs, yet we were certain of meeting with it before it reached the latitude of 70 deg. whenever we made any attempts to ſtand to the N. On the 26th of Auguſt, we were in latitude 69 deg. 45 min. longitude 184 deg. obſtructed by it in ſuch a manner, and in ſuch quantities, that we could not paſs either to the N. or W. and were under the neceſſity of running along the edge of it to the S. S. W. till we perceived land, which proved to be the Aſiatic coaſt. With the ſeaſon thus far advanced, the weather ſetting in with ſnow and ſleet, and other indications of the approach of winter, we relinquiſhed our enterprize for that time.

When we made a ſecond attempt, the following ſeaſon, in 1779, we did little more than confirm the remarks made by us in the firſt; for we never had an opportunity of approaching the continent of Aſia in a higher latitude than 67 deg. nor that of America in any parts, except a few leagues between the latitude of 68 deg. and 68 deg. 20 min. that we had not ſeen the preceding year. We now met with obſtructions from the ice 3 deg. lower; and our efforts to make farther progreſs to the northward, were chiefly confined to the middle ſpace between the two coaſts. We penetrated near 3 deg. farther on the ſide of America, than that of Aſia, coming up with the ice both years ſooner, and in more conſiderable quantities, on the latter coaſt. As we advanced in our northerly courſe, we found the ice more ſolid and compact: however, as in our different traverſes from one ſide to the other, we paſſed over ſpaces which had before been covered with it, we imagined, that the greateſt part of what we ſaw was moveable. Its height, on a medium, we eſtimated at eight or ten feet, and that of the higheſt at 16 or 18 feet. We again examined the currents twice, and found that they were unequal, though they never exceeded one mile an hour. We likewiſe found the currents to ſet different ways, but more from the S. W. than from any other quarter; yet whatever their direction might be, their effect was ſo inconſiderable, that no concluſions, with reſpect to the exiſtence of any paſſage towards the N. could poſſibly be drawn from them. We found July much colder than Auguſt. The thermometer, in the 1ſt of theſe months, was once at 28 deg. and frequently at 30 deg. whereas, during the laſt ſeaſon, in 1778, it was very uncommon in Auguſt, to have it ſo low as the freezing point. In both ſeaſons, we experienced ſome high winds, all of which blew from the S. W. Whenever the wind was moderate from any quarter, we were ſubject to fogs; but they were obſerved to attend ſoutherly winds more conſtantly than others. The ſtraits, between the American and Aſiatic continents, at their neareſt approach, in lat. 66 deg. were aſcertained by us to be 13 leagues, or 39 miles, beyond which they diverge to N. E. by E. and W. N. W. and in the lat. of 69 deg. their diſtance from each other is about 300 miles, or 100 leagues. In the aſpect of the two countries to the N. of the ſtraits, a great reſemblance is diſcernible. Both of them are deſtitute of wood. The ſhores are low, with mountains farther inland, riſing to a great height. The ſoundings, in the midway of the ſtraits, were 29 and 30 fathoms, gradually decreaſing as we approached either continent; with this difference, however, that the water was ſomewhat ſhallower on the coaſt of America, than on that of Aſia, at an equal diſtance from land. The bottom, towards the middle, was a ſoft ſlimy mud; and near either ſhore, it was a browniſh ſand, intermixed with a few ſhells, and ſmall fragments of ſtones. We found but little tide or current, and that came from the W. But on the 30th of July, in the preſent year 1779, when in Beering's Straits, and ſteering to the ſouthward, we found a current ſo ſtrong as to make our paſſage both difficult and dangerous. It ſet at this time to the N. W. We might to theſe obſervations, which, we doubt not, will be highly acceptable to our very numerous friends and ſubſcribers, add ſome others; but we apprehend, they will think, with us, that it is now time to reſume the narrative of our voyage, which was broken off on the 31ſt of July, on which day, at noon, we had proceeded 18 leagues to the ſouthward of the Eaſt Cape.

CHAP. XIX.

Hiſtory of the voyage continued—Paſs the iſlands of St. Lawrence and Mednoi—Our Commodore, Captain Clerke, confined to his ſick bed, without hopes of recovery—His death, and public ſervices—The Reſolution and Diſcovery return to St. Peter and St. Paul—Promotions among the officers, in conſequence of the Commodore's death—Funeral of Captain Clerke, and the ſolemnities attending it—Inſcriptions to his memory—Letter from the Commander of Bolcheretſk to Captain Gore—A ſupply of flour, and a reinforcement of Ruſſian ſoldiers—An account of a remarkable exile—Bear hunting, and fiſhing parties—Particular deſcription of the former diverſion—The King's Coronation celebrated—A viſit from the Commander—Diſcipline of the military among the Ruſſians—Manner of hunting the bears, and curious particulars reſpecting thoſe animals—A ſupply of cattle received—Entertainments in honour of the Empreſs's name-day—Preſent from the Commander—The Reſolution and Diſcovery work out of Awatſka Bay—That Bay deſcribed—Aſtronomical and nautical remarks—A circumſtantial, full, and complete geographical and hiſtorical account and narrative of Kampiſchatka.

ON Sunday, the 1ſt of Auguſt, 1779, we obſerved in lat. 64 deg. 23 min. long. 189 deg. 15 min. at which time the Aſiatic coaſt extended from N. W. by W. to W. half S. diſtant 12 leagues, and the land to the E. of St. Lawrence bore S. half W. On the 2d, the weather being clear, we ſaw the ſame land again, at noon, extending from W. S. W. half W. to S. E. and forming ſeveral elevated hummocks, which had the appearance of ſeparate iſlands. Our lat. this day, at noon, we found to be 64 deg. 3 min. long. 189 deg. 28 min. and our ſoundings were 17 fathoms. We were not near enough to this land to aſcertain, whether it was a group of iſlands, or only a ſingle one. We had paſſed its moſt weſterly point in the evening of the 3d of July, which we then ſuppoſed to be the Iſle of St. Lawrence; the eaſternmoſt we ſailed cloſe by in September, the preceding year, and this we denominated Clerke's Iſland, and found it compoſed of a number of lofty cliffs, connected by very low land. Though thoſe cliffs were miſtaken by us, laſt year, for ſeparate iſlands, till we made a very near approach to the ſhore, we are ſtill inclined to conjecture, that the iſle of St. Lawrence is diſtinct from Clerke's Iſland, as there appeared between them a conſiderable ſpace, where we did not obſerve the leaſt appearance of riſing ground. In the afternoon, we likewiſe ſaw what had the appearance of a ſmall iſland, to the N. E. of the land that we had ſeen at noon, and which, from the thickneſs of the weather, we had only ſight of once. We ſuppoſed its diſtance to be 19 leagues from the iſland of St. Lawrence, in the direction of N. by E. half E. On the 3d, we had light variable winds, and ſteered round the N. W. point of the iſle of St. Lawrence. In the afternoon, a freſh breeze riſing from the E. we ſteered to the S. S. W. and quickly loſt ſight of St. Lawrence. On Saturday, the 7th, at noon, we obſerved in lat. 59 deg. 38 min. long. 183 deg. At four o'clock, having a dead calm, part of the companies of both ſhips were employed in fiſhing, and caught a number of fine large cod, in 17 fathoms water, which were diſtributed equally among the crews. To this place we gave the name of the Bank of Good Providence, and as ſoon as the breeze ſprung up, we made ſail, and ſtood to S. W. but we were forced more to the eaſtward than we wiſhed, it being our intention to make Beering's Iſland. On Tueſday, the 10th, we were, by obſervation, in lat. 56 deg. 37 min. Friday, the 13th, we diſpatched a boat to the Diſcovery, for the purpoſe of comparing time, and ſhe carried the diſagreeable intelligence, that Captain Clerke had been given over by the ſurgeon. The weather falling calm, we hove to, in order to get ſome fiſh for the ſick: a few were caught, and diſtributed accordingly.

On Tueſday, the 17th, at five o'clock, A. M. the man at the maſt-head called out, Land to the N. W. This we imagined to be the iſland of Mednoi, which, in the Ruſſian charts, is placed to the S. E. of Beering's Iſland. It is elevated land, and was at this time apparently free from ſnow. By our reckoning, it lies in lat. 54 deg. 28 min. long. 167 deg. 52 min. Captain Clerke, now perceiving his end drawing near, ſignified his deſire, that the officers would receive their orders from Mr. King; and directed for the laſt time, that we ſhould repair, with all convenient ſpeed, to the Bay of Awatſka. The wind continuing weſterly, we held on a ſoutherly courſe, till Thurſday, the 19th, when, after a few hours continuance of rain, early in the morning, it blew from the E. and became a ſtrong gale. We made the moſt of it, by ſtanding towards the W. with all the ſail we could carry. On the 20th, the wind varying to the S. W. we ſteered a W. N. W. courſe. At noon, we obſerved in lat. 53 deg. 7 min. long. 162 deg. 49 min. On Saturday, the 21ſt, between five and ſix o'clock, A. M. we deſcried a very lofty peaked mountain, on the coaſt of Kamtſchatka, known by the name of Chepoonſkoi mountain, bearing N. W. by N. and diſtant near 30 leagues. At noon, the coaſt was obſerved to extend from N. by E. to W. with a very great hazineſs upon it, and diſtant about 12 leagues.

On Sunday the 22nd, at nine o'clock, A. M. a boat was ſent off to the Diſcovery, to announce to Captain Gore, the death of our Commodore, Captain Charles Clerke, who paid the debt of nature when in the 38th year of his age. His death was occaſioned by a conſumption, which had manifeſtly commenced before his departure from England, and of which he had lingered during the whole continuance of the voyage.

His very gradual decay had for a long time rendered him a melancholy object to his friends; but the firmneſs and equanimity with which he bore the ſlow approaches of death, the conſtant flow of good ſpirits which he retained even to the laſt hour, and a chearful reſignation to the decree of heaven, furniſhed them with ſome conſolation. It was impoſſible not to feel an uncommon degree of compaſſion for a gentleman, who had experienced a ſeries of thoſe difficulties and hardſhips, which muſt be the inevitable lot of every ſeaman, and under which he at laſt ſunk. He was bred to the navy from his youth, and had been in many engagements during the war which commenced in 1756. In the action between the Bellona and Courageux, he was ſtationed in the mizen-top, and was carried overboard with the maſt; but was taken up, without having received the leaſt injury. He was midſhipman on board the Dolphin, commanded by Commodore Byron, when ſhe firſt ſailed round the world; and was afterwards on the American ſtation. In the year 1768, he engaged in a ſecond voyage round the world, in the ſituation of maſter's mate of the Endeavour; and, during that expedition, ſucceeded to a lieutenancy. In the Reſolution he made a third voyage round the world, in the capacity of ſecond lieutenant: and, in a ſhort time after his return, he was appointed maſter and commander. In the preſent expedition, he was appointed Captain of the Diſcovery, and to accompany Captain Cook. By the calamitous death of the latter, he ſucceeded of courſe, as we have already related, to the chief command. It would ſavour of injuſtice and ingratitude, not to mention, that, during the ſhort time he was Commodore, we always obſerved him to be remarkably zealous for the ſucceſs of the expedition. When the principal command devolved upon him, his health began rapidly to decline; and he was unequal, in every reſpect, to encounter the ſeverity of a high northern climate. The vigour of his mind, however, was not, in the leaſt, impaired by the decay of his body: and though he was perfectly ſenſible, that his delaying to return to a warmer region was depriving himſelf of the only chance of recovery; yet, ſo attentive was he to his duty, that he was determined not to ſuffer his own ſituation to bias his judgment to the prejudice of the ſervice: he therefore perſevered in the ſearch of a paſſage, till every officer in both ſhips, declared they were of opinion it was impracticable, and that any farther attempts would be equally hazardous and ineffectual.

The meſſenger who was ſent to the Diſcovery with the melancholy news of our Commodore's death, brought a letter from Captain Gore, containing an order for Captain King to exert his utmoſt endeavours to keep in company with the Diſcovery, and, if a ſeparation ſhould happen, to repair as ſoon as poſſible, to St. Peter and St. Paul. At noon, we were by obſervation in lat. 53 deg. 8. min. long. 160 deg. 40 min. E. Cheepoonſkoi Noſs bearing W. On the 23rd, we ſteered for the entrance of Awatſka Bay, which we ſaw in the evening, at the diſtance of 5 leagues. At eight o'clock, the light-houſe, which now furniſhed a good light, bore W. N. by W. 3 miles diſtant. It was now a perfect calm, but, the tide being favourable, our boats were ſent a-head, which towed us beyond the narrow parts of the mouth of the harbour. On the 24th, at one o'clock A. M. we dropped anchor, the ebb tide ſetting againſt us. At nine we weighed, and before three P. M. we anchored in the harbour of St. Peter and St. Paul; having up our enſign half ſtaff, as the body of our late Captain was in the veſſel; and the Diſcovery followed us in a very ſhort time. Both ſhips were moored in four fathoms water, muddy bottom. From the time we had ſet ſail out of this bay, till the preſent time of our return, we had been in no harbour to refit, and had been driven from iſland to iſland, and from one continent to the other, till our ſhips had in a manner loſt their ſheathing, and were otherwiſe in a miſerable condition; we therefore thought ourſelves exceeding happy in arriving at port. Soon after we had anchored, we were viſited by our old friend the Serjeant, ſtill the commanding officer, who brought with him a preſent of berries, intended for our late Commodore. He was much affected at hearing of his death, and ſeeing the coffin that contained his remains. As the deceaſed had particularly requeſted to be buried on ſhore, and gave the preference to the church at Paratounca, we conſulted the Serjeant about the neceſſary ſteps to be taken on this occaſion, who referred us to the prieſt, as being the perſon beſt qualified to give us information on this ſubject. At the ſame time he ſignified his intention of ſending an expreſs to the Commander of Bolcheretſk, with an account of our arrival; when Commodore Gore begged to avail himſelf of that opportunity of conveying a letter to him, wherein he requeſted that 16 head of black cattle might be ſent with all poſſible diſpatch. At this time, we received intelligence of Soposnicoff's arrival from Oonalaſhka, who took charge of the pacquet ſent by Captain Cook to the Admiralty, and which we had the pleaſure to find had been forwarded.

Wedneſday, the 25th, in the morning, Captain Gore, in conſequence of the death of our late Commodore, made out the new commiſſions.' He himſelf ſucceeded to the chief command in the Reſolution; and our lieutenant, Mr. King, was appointed Captain of the Diſcovery. Mr. Lanyan, maſter's mate of the Reſolution, and who had been in that capacity, in a former voyage, on board the Adventure, was appointed to the vacant lieutenancy. In conſequence of theſe arrangements, the following promotions took place. Lieutenants Burney and Rickman (from the Diſcovery) were appointed firſt and ſecond lieutenants of the Reſolution; and lieutenant Williamſon firſt lieutenant of the Diſcovery. Captain King, by the permiſſion of the Commodore, took in four midſhipmen, who had rendered themſelves uſeful to him in aſtronomical calculations; and whoſe aſſiſtance was become the more neceſſary, as we had not an ephemeris for the preſent year. And that aſtronomical obſervations might not be neglected to be made in either ſhip, Mr. Bayly took Captain King's place in the Reſolution, for theſe purpoſes. This day we were attended by the Pope Romanoff Vereſhagen, the worthy prieſt of Paratounca. His expreſſions of ſorrow for the death of Captain Clerke did honour to his feelings; but the good old gentleman, though much concerned, ſtarted ſeveral difficulties, and appeared rather unwilling to comply with the requeſt of the deceaſed. He urged, among other objections, that the Church was ſoon to be pulled down; that every winter it was three feet deep in water; and that in a few years no veſtige of it would remain, as the new church was to be erected near the Oſtrog of Awatſka, upon a drier and more convenient ſpot. He therefore adviſed, that the remains of our late Commodore ſhould be depoſited at the foot of a tree, the ſcite of which was to be included in the body of the new church, where the bones of the Captain might probably reſt for ages undiſturbed: however, he ſubmitted the choice of either place entirely to Captain Gore. Theſe reaſons, whether real or fictitious, the officers who had charge of the funeral could not diſprove, and therefore ſome of our people had orders to dig the grave where the prieſt ſhould direct.

The Diſcovery having ſuffered great injury from the ice, eſpecially on the 23d of July, and continued exceeding leaky ever ſince, it was apprehended that ſome of her timbers might have ſtarted: our carpenters were therefore ſent to aſſiſt thoſe of the Diſcovery in repairing her. To accommodate thoſe who were to be employed on ſhore, a tent was erected, and a party was ſent into the country, north of the harbour, to fell timber. The obſervatories were placed at the weſt end of the village, near which was erected a tent, as an abode for the Commodore and Captain King. When the carpenters began to rip the damaged ſheathing from the larboard bow, it was diſcovered, that three feet of the third ſtrake were ſtaved, and the timbers ſtarted: and as they proceeded, the decayed ſtate of the ſhip's hull became more and more apparent. The ſeaſon being now far advanced, Captain King was unwilling that any hindrance or delay ſhould happen through him, to Captain Gore's farther views of diſcovery, and therefore ordered the carpenters to rip off no more of the ſheathing, than ſhould be abſolutely neceſſary for repairing the damages occaſioned by the ice. He was apprehenſive of their meeting with more decayed planks, which he thought had better remain in that ſtate, than have their places ſupplied with green birch, even ſuppoſing it could be procured. All hands were now fully employed in their ſeparate departments, that we might be perfectly ready for ſea, by the time the carpenters had completed their buſineſs. Four men were ſet apart to haul the ſeine for ſalmon, which were caught in immenſe quantities, and we found them of moſt excellent quality. After the wants of both ſhips were ſufficiently ſupplied, we daily ſalted down almoſt a hogſhead. We had four invalids, who were employed in gathering greens, and cooking for thoſe who were aſhore. We alſo landed our powder, in order to have it dried; and the blubber of the ſea horſes, with which both ſhips had completely furniſhed themſelves, in our paſſage to the north, was now boiled down for oil, and was become a very neceſſary article, having long ſince expended all our candles. The cooper was alſo employed in his department. Both ſhips companies were thus engaged till Saturday, the 28th, in the afternoon, which was allowed to every man (except the carpenters) to waſh their linen, and get their clothes in tolerable order, that on Sunday they might make a decent appearance.

On Sunday, the 29th, we performed the laſt affecting offices at the interment of Captain Clerke, our late much reſpected Commodore; and to make the funeral the more ſolemn, every officer was deſired to appear in his uniform; the marines were ordered to be drawn up under arms; and the common men to be dreſſed as nearly alike as poſſible, in order to attend the corpſe from the water-ſide to the grave. All the Ruſſians in the garriſon aſſembled on the occaſion, aſſiſting reſpectfully in the ſolemnity, and the worthy paſtor of Paratounca joined in the proceſſion, walking with the gentleman who read the ſervice. The ſhips, at the ſame time fired minute guns, and the drums, muffled as uſual, beat the dead march. When the corpſe arrived at the grave, it was depoſited under a triple diſcharge of three vollies, fired by the marines, which concluded the burial ſervice. When the grave was covered, it was thought proper to fence it in by piles driven deep in the ground, and afterwards to fill up the ſpace incloſed with ſtones and earth, to preſerve the body from being devoured in the winter by bears, or other wild beaſts, who are remarkable for their ſagacity in ſcenting out the bodies of dead paſſengers, when any happen to periſh, and are buried near the roads. This mournful ceremony being over, an eſcutcheon was prepared, and neatly painted by the ingenious Mr. Webber, with the Captain's coat of arms properly emblazoned, and placed in the church of Paratounca. Underneath the eſchutcheon was the following inſcription.

There lies interred at the foot of a tree,
near the Oſtrog of St. Peter and St. Paul,
The Body of
CHARLES CLERKE, Eſquire,
Commander of his Britannic Majeſty's
Ships, the Reſolution and Diſcovery;
To which he ſucceeded on the Death of
JAMES COOK, Eſquire,
Who was killed by the natives of an Iſland we
diſcovered in the South Sea, after having explored the Coaſt of America, from 42 deg.
27 min. to 70 deg. 40 min. 57 ſec. N.
in ſearch of a N. W. paſſage
from EUROPE to the
EAST-INDIES.
The Second Attempt being made by
Captain Clerke, who ſailed within ſome few
Leagues of Captain Cook; but was brought
up by a ſolid body of Ice, which he found
from the America to the Aſia ſhore,
and almoſt trended due Eaſt and
Weſt—He died at Sea,
on his return to the
Southward, on the
22nd Day of
Auguſt, 1779,
Aged 38 Years.

Another inſcription was affixed to the tree under which he was interred. This tree ſtands on a little eminence, in the valley, north of the harbour (and at ſome diſtance from the town), where the ſtore-houſes and hoſpital are ſituated, and round which ſeveral Ruſſian gentlemen had been buried; but none ſo high upon the eminence as the ſpot pointed out for the grave of Captain Clerke, and which Captain Gore ſuppoſed to be ſuch a ſituation, as was moſt conſonant to the wiſhes of the deceaſed. The inſcription at this place was nearly the ſame as that in the Church, and is as follows.

Beneath this tree lies the Body of
Captain CHARLES CLERKE, Eſquire,
Commander of His Britannic Majeſty's
Ships, the Reſolution and Diſcovery:
Which Command he ſucceeded to, on the 14th
of February, 1779, on the death of
Captain JAMES COOK,
Who was killed by the Natives of ſome
Iſlands he diſcovered in the South
Sea, on the Date above.
CAPTAIN CLERKE died at Sea,
of a lingering Illneſs, on the 22nd Day of
Auguſt, 1779,
In the 38th Year of his Age:
And was Interred on Sunday, the 29th following.

On this occaſion the crews of both ſhips were ſuffered to continue on ſhore, and to divert themſelves, each as he liked beſt. It was Captain Clerke's deſire that they ſhould have double allowance for three days ſucceſſively, and all that while to be excuſed from every other duty, than what the ordinary attendance in the ſhips required; but the ſeaſon being far advanced, and a long track of unknown ſea to traverſe before they could reach China, the officers repreſenting the hardſhips and inconveniences that ſo much loſt time might bring upon themſelves, they very readily gave up that part of the Captain's requeſt, and returned to their reſpective duties early the next day. Accordingly, on Monday the 30th, the ſeveral parties reaſſumed their allotted employments; and on the 2nd of September, the carpenters proceeded to rip off ſuch of the ſheathing as had been injured by the ice, from the ſtarboard-ſide; having firſt ſhifted the damaged planks, and repaired and caulked the ſheathing of the larboard-bow. Four feet of the plank were diſcovered in the third ſtrake under the wale, ſo much ſhaken as to require to be replaced; which was accordingly done; and on the 3d the ſheathing was repaired. In the afternoon we got ſome ballaſt on board; after which we unhung the rudder, and cauſed it to be conveyed on ſhore, the lead of the pintles being much worn, and a conſiderable part of the ſheathing rubbed off. This day an enſign arrived from Bolcheretſk, with a letter from the Commander of that place to Captain Gore; from which, by the aſſiſtance of the ſerjeant, we underſtood, that proper orders had been given reſpecting the cattle; and that in a few days we might expect to ſee them: to which was added, that Captain Shmaleff, who ſucceeded Major Behm, in his command, would pay us a viſit on the arrival of a ſloop which he expected from Okotſk. The bearer of the letter was a ſon of Captain Lieutenant Synd, who about eleven years ago, was appointed to the command of an expedition on diſcovery, between Aſia and America, and now reſided at Okotſk. He told us he was appointed to receive our directions, and to ſupply us with every thing that our ſervice might require: that he ſhould remain with us, till it was convenient for the Commander to leave Bolcheretſk; and then he was to return, or the garriſon would be without an officer.

The Ruſſians, in Kamtſchatka, could not furniſh us with a better account of Synd than Mr. Coxe has given us; though they ſeemed diſpoſed to communicate, without reſerve, what they really knew. From Major Behm we had received only this general information; that the expedition had miſcarried, and that the Commander had been cenſured. It was evident, that he had been on the coaſt of America, ſouth of Cape Prince of Wales; and as he was too far north to meet with ſea otters, which the Ruſſians ſeem to have in view in all their attempts at diſcoveries, it is probable, that his return without having made any, from whence commercial advantages might be reaped, was the cauſe of his diſgrace, and on that account his voyage is ſpoken of with contempt by all the Ruſſians. On Sunday, the 5th, all the parties that were on ſhore returned to the ſhip, and were employed in ſcrubbing her bottom, and getting in ſome ſhingle ballaſt. On Wedneſday, the 8th, we hauled the Reſolution on ſhore, in order to repair ſome damages ſhe had received from the ice, in her cut-water. We began, about this time, to make a ſtrong decoction from a ſpecies of dwarf pine, which is very plentiful in this country, judging it would hereafter be uſeful in making beer, and that we might perhaps be able to procure ſugar, or a ſubſtitute, to ferment with it, at Canton. We knew, however, it would be an admirable medicine for the ſcurvy, and therefore were particularly deſirous of procuring a conſiderable ſupply; as moſt of the preventives with which we had furniſhed ourſelves, were either conſumed, or had loſt their efficacy through long keeping. When we had prepared about a hogſhead of it, the ſhip's copper was found to be remarkably thin, and that, in many places, it was even cracked. This obliged us to deſiſt, and orders were given, that, for the future, it ſhould be uſed as ſparingly as poſſible. Thoſe navigators, who may hereafter be engaged in long voyages, would act judiciouſly if they provided themſelves with a ſpare copper, or, at leaſt, they ſhould be fully convinced, that the copper, uſually furniſhed, ſhould be remarkably ſtrong and durable. Theſe neceſſary utenſils are employed in ſo many extra ſervices, particularly in that important one of brewing antiſcorbutic decoctions, that ſome ſuch proviſion ſeems abſolutely neceſſary; and the former appears the more eligible, becauſe a much greater quantity of fuel would be conſumed in heating coppers that are very thick.

Friday, the 10th, in the morning, the boats from both the ſhips were ordered to tow a Ruſſian galliot into the harbour, which had juſt arrived from Okotſk. She had been no leſs than 35 days on her paſſage, and, from the Light-houſe, had been obſerved a fortnight before, beating up towards the mouth of the bay. The crew had at that time diſpatched their boat on ſhore, in order to procure water, which they much wanted; but, the wind increaſing, the boat was loſt: the galliot was again driven to ſea, and thoſe who were paſſengers ſuffered, with the crew, inconceivable hardſhips. On board this galliot were fifty ſoldiers, with their wives and children; they had alſo other paſſengers, and the crew conſiſted of 25 ſeamen, making in the whole, upwards of 100 perſons; which, for a veſſel of 80 tons, was a great number, eſpecially as ſhe was heavily laden with ſtores and proviſions. This galliot, and the ſloop which we ſaw here in May, are built in the manner of the Dutch doggers. Soon after the veſſel had come to anchor, we were viſited by a Put-parouchich, or ſub-lieutenant, who arrived in her, and ſent to take the command of this place. Some of the ſoldiers were intended to reinforce the garriſon; and two pieces of cannon were brought on ſhore, to ſerve as an additional defence to the town; for, the honeſt ſerjeant obſerved ſhrewdly, that, as we had found the way here, others might do the ſame, who would not be ſo welcome as ourſelves. On the 11th, the damages of the Reſolution being repaired, we hauled her off from the ſhore, and, in the courſe of the day, we got ſome pitch, tar, cordage, and twine from the galliot. She alſo furniſhed us with 140 ſkins of flour, amounting to 13,782 Engliſh pounds troy weight. On the 12th, Enſign Synd left us to return to Bolcheretſk, with the remainder of the ſoldiers who had arrived in the galliot. During his abode here, he had been our conſtant gueſt; and, on his father's account, we thought him in ſome degree belonging to us; and, as one of the family of diſcoverers, entitled to a ſhare of our eſteem. The ſerjeant, as being commander of the place, had hitherto been admitted to our tables; and his company was additionally welcome to us, becauſe he was ſenſible and quick in his conceptions; and comprehended, better than any other perſon, the few Ruſſian words that we had acquired. Whilſt Enſign Synd remained among us, he very politely permitted him to enjoy the ſame privileges; but when the new Commander arrived from Okotſk, the ſerjeant, for what cauſe we did not underſtand, fell into diſgrace, and was no longer permitted to ſit in the company of his own officers. Our endeavours to obtain indulgence for him, we perceived would have been ineffectual; for though highly agreeable to us, it was, perhaps, incompatible with their diſcipline.

On Wedneſday, the 15th, we had completed the ſtowage of the holds, got our wood and water on board, and were ready for ſea; but we could not think of taking our departure, becauſe the cattle were not yet arrived from Verchnei; and freſh proviſions were now become the moſt important article of our wants, and eſſentially neceſſary for preſerving the health of our people. Having before us a proſpect of fine weather, we conſidered this as a favourable opportunity of engaging in ſome amuſement on ſhore, and of acquiring ſome knowledge of the country. A party for bear-hunting was therefore propoſed by Captain Gore; and on Friday, the 17th, we ſet out on this expedition; which was deferred to that day, in order to give a little reſt to the Hoſpodin Ivaſkin, a new acquaintance, who had arrived here on Wedneſday, and intended to be one of our party. Major Behm had deſired this gentleman, who reſided uſually at Verchnei, to attend us on our return to the harbour, and aſſiſt us as an interpreter; and, from what we had heard of him before his arrival, our curioſity to ſee him was much excited. He is allied to a conſiderable family in Ruſſia, and his father was a general in the ſervice of the Empreſs. He received his education partly in France; he had been a page to the Empreſs Elizabeth, and bore an Enſign's commiſſion in her guards. At 16 years of age he was knowted, had his noſe ſlit, and was baniſhed to Siberia. He was afterwards tranſported to Kamtſchatka, and had reſided there 31 years. His perſon was tall and thin, and his viſage furrowed with deep wrinkles. Old age was ſtrongly depicted in his whole figure, though only 53 years of his exiſtence had ſcarcely elapſed. Great was our diſappointment when we diſcovered, that he had ſo totally forgotten the French and German languages, as not to be able to ſpeak a ſingle ſentence, nor to comprehend readily any thing that was ſaid to him in either of thoſe languages. Thus were we deprived unfortunately, of what we expected would have furniſhed a favourable opportunity of acquiring further information reſpecting this country. The cauſe of his baniſhment remained a ſecret to every one in this country, but it was generally ſuppoſed, he had been guilty of ſome atrocious offence; eſpecially as ſeveral of the Commanders of Kamtſchatka have exerted their intereſt to get him recalled, in the reign of the preſent Empreſs; but, ſo far from ſucceeding in their applications, they were not able to change the place of his baniſhment. He aſſured us that, for 20 years, he had not taſted a morſel of bread, nor had been allowed any kind of ſubſiſtence; but had lived all that time with the Kamtſchadales, on what he had procured from the chace by his own activity and toil. Afterwards a ſmall penſion was allowed him, and his ſituation has been rendered much leſs intolerable, ſince Major Behm was appointed to the command. Being noticed by ſo reſpectable a character, who often invited him to become his gueſt, others were induced to follow his example. The Major had alſo occaſioned his penſion to be augmented to 100 roubles a year, which is an Enſign's pay in every other part of the Empreſs's dominions, but in this province, all the officers have double pay. Major Behm informed us, that he had obtained permiſſion for him to go to Okotſk, where he was to reſide in future; but that, at preſent, he ſhould leave him behind, as he might probably be uſeful to us as an interpreter, on our return to the Bay.

We now ſet out on our hunting party, directing our courſe to the northward, toward a pool of water, that lies near the mouth of the river Paratounca, and which was a known haunt of the bears. We had ſcarce landed, when unfortunately the wind changed to the eaſtward, and deſtroyed all hopes of coming up with our game; for the Kamtſchadales aſſured us, that it was in vain to expect to meet with bears, when to the windward of them; owing to their being poſſeſſed of an uncommon acuteneſs in ſcenting their purſuers, which enabled them, under ſuch circumſtances, to avoid the danger, though at a very great diſtance from them. We returned therefore to the boat, and paſſed the night on the beach, having brought a tent with us for that purpoſe. The next morning, being the 18th, we croſſed the bay, and purſued our courſe on foot along a plain, abounding with berries, on which the bears feed; but though ſeveral of theſe animals were ſeen at a diſtance, we could never contrive, the weather being ſhowery and unfavourable, to get within ſhot of them. Thus diſappointed gain, we changed our diverſion to that of ſpearing ſalmon, which we ſaw puſhing in great numbers through the ſurf into a ſmall river. Fortunately the water afforded us a little proviſion; for ill ſucceſs had not only attended us in the chace by land, but we had failed in our expectations of ſhooting wild fowl, after having almoſt depended ſolely upon a ſupply of them for our ſubſiſtence; and on its failure, we began to think it time to return to head quarters. Theſe ſentiments entirely correſponded with thoſe of the Hoſpodin, whom former ſeverities had rendered unable to endure fatigue. On Sunday, the 19th, at night, we reached the ſhips, after having been full 12 hours upon our legs. Poor Ivaſkin ſeemed perfectly overcome with fatigue, and was probably the more ſenſibly affected by it, for want of a ſupply of ſnuff; for, almoſt at every ſtep, his hand ſunk mechanically into his pocket, and roſe inſtantly again with his huge empty box. When arrived at the tent, the Hoſpodin's box was immediately repleniſhed, and, regaling upon a good ſupper, we forgot the fatigues and diſappointments of our fruitleſs excurſion.

On Monday, the 20th, we received the diſagreeable intelligence, that our much eſteemed friend, the ſerjeant, had ſuffered corporal puniſhment, which had been inflicted on him by command of the old Put-parouchick. None of us could learn the cauſe of his diſpleaſure; but it was ſuppoſed to have ariſen from ſome little jealouſy, which had been excited by our civility to the former. We were unwilling to remonſtrate on this ſubject, till Captain Shmaleff ſhould arrive; however, when we were next viſited by the Put-parouchick, the coolneſs with which we received him, muſt have teſtified fully our chagrin. The 22d, being the anniverſary of the King's Coronation, we fired 21 guns; and, in honour of our Royal Maſter, prepared as elegant a feaſt as our ſituation would allow of. The arrival of Captain Shmaleff was announced the very moment we were ſitting down to dinner. We were equally pleaſed and ſurprized at this unexpected viſit: firſt, becauſe the Captain came ſo opportunely to take a ſhare in the feſtivity of the day; and alſo, becauſe we were lately informed, that the effects of a late illneſs had rendered him unequal to the journey. We had the ſatisfaction to hear this had been merely an excuſe; and that, knowing we were diſtreſſed for tea and ſugar, &c. he was hurt at the idea of coming empty handed, and therefore had deferred his ſetting out, waiting impatiently for the arrival of a ſloop from Okotſk; but hearing no intelligence of her, and fearing we ſhould ſail before he had viſited us, he was reſolved to proſecute the journey, though he had nothing to preſent to us but apologies for the poverty of Bolcheretſk. At the ſame time he informed us, that the reaſon of our not having received the black cattle, was, that the heavy rains at Verchnei, had prevented their ſetting out. So much generoſity and politeneſs demanded the beſt anſwer we were capable of making; and on coming on board the next day, we ſaluted him with 11 guns. Friday, the 24th, he was entertained on board the Diſcovery; and the day following, being the 25th, he returned to Bolcheretſk. No intreaties could prevail on him to extend his viſit, having, as he aſſured us, ſome expectations that the ſub-governor-general would arrive in the ſloop expected from Okotſk, he being on a tour through all the provinces of the governor-general of Jakutſk. Without any application from us, he reinſtated the ſerjeant in his command, before his departure, having reſolved to take the Put-parouchick with him. We alſo underſtood, that he was much offended with him for puniſhing the ſerjeant, as there did not appear to be the ſlighteſt grounds for inflicting ſuch chaſtiſement. Encouraged by the Captain's great readineſs to oblige us, we ventured to requeſt a ſmall favour for another inhabitant of Kamtſchatka. It was to requite an honeſt old ſoldier, who kept a kind of ordinary for the inferior officers, and who had done a thouſand good offices both for them and the whole crew. The Captain obligingly complied with our wiſhes, and dubbed him inſtantly a corporal, telling him, at the ſame time, to thank the Engliſh officers for his very great promotion. It may not here be unneceſſary to remark, that the lower claſs of officers in the Ruſſian army have a greater pre-eminence above the private men, than thoſe in the Britiſh ſervice can poſſibly conceive. It was, indeed, a matter of aſtoniſhment to us, to ſee a ſerjeant aſſume all the ſtate, and exact as much homage from thoſe beneath him, as though he had been a field-officer. Beſides there are ſeveral gradations of rank among them, of which other countries are wholly ignorant; there being no leſs than four intermediate ſteps between a ſerjeant and a private ſoldier. But the diſcipline of the Ruſſian army, though ſo extremely remote from the ſeat of government, is remarkable for its ſtrictneſs and ſeverity; not exempting even the commiſſioned officers. Impriſonment, and bread and water diet, is the puniſhment of the latter for inconſiderable offences. A good friend of ours, an Enſign in this place, informed us, that the puniſhment he received for having been concerned in a drunken frolic, was three months impriſonment in the black hole, with a daily allowance only of bread and water for his ſubſiſtence; which ſo affected his whole nervous ſyſtem, that he has never ſince enjoyed a ſufficient flow of ſpirits to qualify him for a convivial meeting. Captain King attended Captain Shmaleff as far as the entrance of Awatſka river, and, having taken leave of him, embraced that opportunity of viſiting the prieſt of Paratounca.

On Sunday, the 26th, Captain King attended him to his church, where his whole congregation conſiſted of his own family, three men, and the ſame number of boys, who aſſiſted in the ſinging; and the whole of the ſervice was performed with great ſolemnity, and devotion. Though the church is of wood, it is much ſuperior to any other edifice, either in this town, or that of St. Peter and St. Paul. Among ſeveral paintings with which it is ornamented, are two pictures of St. Peter and St. Paul, the Apoſtles, preſented by the navigator, Beering, and which may vie with the firſt European performances, in the intrinſic richneſs of their draperies, the principal parts thereof being compoſed of thick plates of real ſolid ſilver, ſo faſhioned as to imitate the foldings of the robes which decorate the figures, and fixed upon the canvaſs. Monday, the 27th, was ſpent by another party in the diverſion of bear-hunting; when Captain King ſubmitted himſelf to the directions of the pariſh-clerk, who had acquired great reputation as a bear hunter. About ſun-ſet they arrived at one of the larger lakes, where it was deemed neceſſary to conceal themſelves; and this was effected eaſily among ſome long graſs, and bruſh-wood, of which we ſaw great plenty near the water's edge. We had not been long under our covert, before our ears were agreeably ſaluted with the growling of bears, in almoſt every quarter round about us; and we ſoon had the pleaſure of beholding one of them in the water, ſwimming in a direct courſe to where we lay concealed. At this time the moon ſhone, ſo as to afford a conſiderable light; and as the bear advanced towards us, three of us fired at it, almoſt at the ſame inſtant. Immediately the animal turned ſhort upon one ſide, and ſet up a moſt horrible noiſe, which was neither yelling, growling, nor roaring, but a very extraordinary mixture of the whole three. We could eaſily perceive, that the beaſt was wounded ſeverely, and that it reached the bank with difficulty; whence it retreated to ſome thick buſhes not far diſtant, ſtill continuing to make a hideous noiſe. The Kamtſchadales ſuppoſed it to be mortally wounded; but judged it an act of imprudence to attempt to rouſe it again immediately. It was then nine o'clock; and as the night became overcaſt, and a change of weather was to be apprehended, we thought it adviſeable to return home, and wait till morning for the gratification of our curioſity, when we accordingly repaired to the ſpot, and found the bear dead from the wounds it had received. It was a female, and larger than the ordinary ſize.

This account of our hunting party may convey a wrong idea of the method purſued uſually in this ſport, to prevent which, it may not be amiſs to ſubjoin a few words to this ſubject. The natives generally contrive to reach the ground about ſun-ſet, where the bears uſually frequent. They firſt look out for their tracks, and attend particularly to the freſheſt of them; always paying a regard to the ſituation with reſpect to concealment; and taking aim at the animal as it paſſes by, or advances, or goes from them. Theſe tracks are numerous between the woods and the lakes, and are often found among the long ſedgy graſs and brakes on the margin of the water. Having determined upon a convenient ſpot for concealment, the hunters fix their crutches in the ground, on which they reſt their firelocks, pointing them in a proper direction. They afterwards kneel or lie down, as the circumſtances of their ſituation may require; and, having their bear-ſpears in readineſs by their ſide, wait the arrival of their game. Theſe precautions are extremely neceſſary, that the hunters may make ſure of their mark: for the price of ammunition is ſo high at Kamtſchatka, that the price of a bear will not purchaſe more of it than will load a muſquet four or five times. It is much more material on another conſideration; for, if the firſt ſhot ſhould not render the bear incapable of purſuit, fatal conſequences too frequently enſue. The enraged beaſt makes immediately towards the place from whence the ſound and ſmoke iſſue, and furiouſly attacks his adverſaries. They have not ſufficient time to re-load their pieces, as the bear is ſeldom fired at till he comes within the diſtance 15 yards; therefore, if he ſhould not happen to fall, they immediately prepare to receive him upon their ſpears; their ſafety depending, in a great meaſure, on their giving him a mortal ſtab as he advances towards them. Should he parry the thruſt (which theſe animals are ſometimes enabled to do, by the ſtrength and agility of their paws; and break in upon his opponents, the conflict becomes bloody; for it is ſeldom that the loſs of a ſingle life will ſatisfy the beaſt's revenge. This buſineſs, or diverſion, is particularly dangerous at two ſeaſons of the year: in the ſpring, when they firſt iſſue from their caves, after having ſubſiſted the whole winter (as it is here poſitively aſſerted) ſolely on ſucking their paws; and eſpecially if the froſt ſhould continue to be ſevere, and the ice in the lakes is not broken up; as they cannot then have recourſe to their cuſtomary and expected food. Thus becoming exceedingly famiſhed, they grow fierce and ſavage in proportion; purſuing the inhabitants by the ſcent; and prowling about at a diſtance from their uſual tracks, dart upon them unawares. Under ſuch circumſtances, as the natives have no idea of ſhooting flying or running, or in any manner without reſting their piece, they often fall a ſacrifice to their ſavage rapacity. The time of their copulation, is the other dangerous ſeaſon to meet with them, and that is uſually about September. Many inſtances of natural affection in theſe animals are frequently related by the Kamtſchadales, who hence derive conſiderable advantages in hunting. They never preſume to fire at a young bear if the dam is upon the ſpot; for if the cub ſhould happen to be killed, ſhe becomes enraged to an immoderate degree; and, if ſhe can only obtain a ſight of the offender, ſhe is ſure to be revenged of him, or die in the attempt. On the other hand, if the mother ſhould be ſhot, the cubs continue by the ſide of her after ſhe has been a long time dead; exhibiting, by affecting geſtures and motions, the moſt poignant affliction. The hunters, inſtead of commiſerating their diſtreſſes, embrace theſe opportunities of deſtroying them. If the veracity of the Kamtſchadales may be depended on, the ſagacity of the bears is as extraordinary as their natural affection. Innumerable are the ſtories which they relate to this effect. They likewiſe acknowledge infinite obligations to the bears, for all the little progreſs they have hitherto made in ſeveral arts. They confeſs themſelves indebted wholly to thoſe animals for all their knowledge in phyſic and ſurgery; that, by obſerving what herbs they have applied to the wounds they have received, and what methods they have purſued when they were languid, and out of order, they have acquired a knowledge of moſt of thoſe ſimples which they have now recourſe to, either as external or internal applications. But the moſt ſingular circumſtance of all is, that they admit the bears to be their dancing-maſters, though the evidence of our own ſenſes places this matter beyond diſpute; for in the bear-dance of the Kamtſchadales, every geſture and attitude peculiar to that animal, is faithfully exhibited. All their other dances are ſimilar to this in many particulars; and thoſe attitudes are thought to come neareſt to perfection, which moſt reſemble the motions of the bear.

On Tueſday, the 28th, Captain King returned from his excurſion to the ſhips, not a little pleaſed, as it had afforded him an opportunity of ſeeing a part of the country, and of obſerving the manners and behaviour of the people, when under no reſtraint, evidently not the caſe when they were in company with the Ruſſians. On the 30th, our Commodore went to Paratounca; but, before his departure, ordered Captain King to get the ſhips out of the harbour, that they might be in readineſs to ſail.

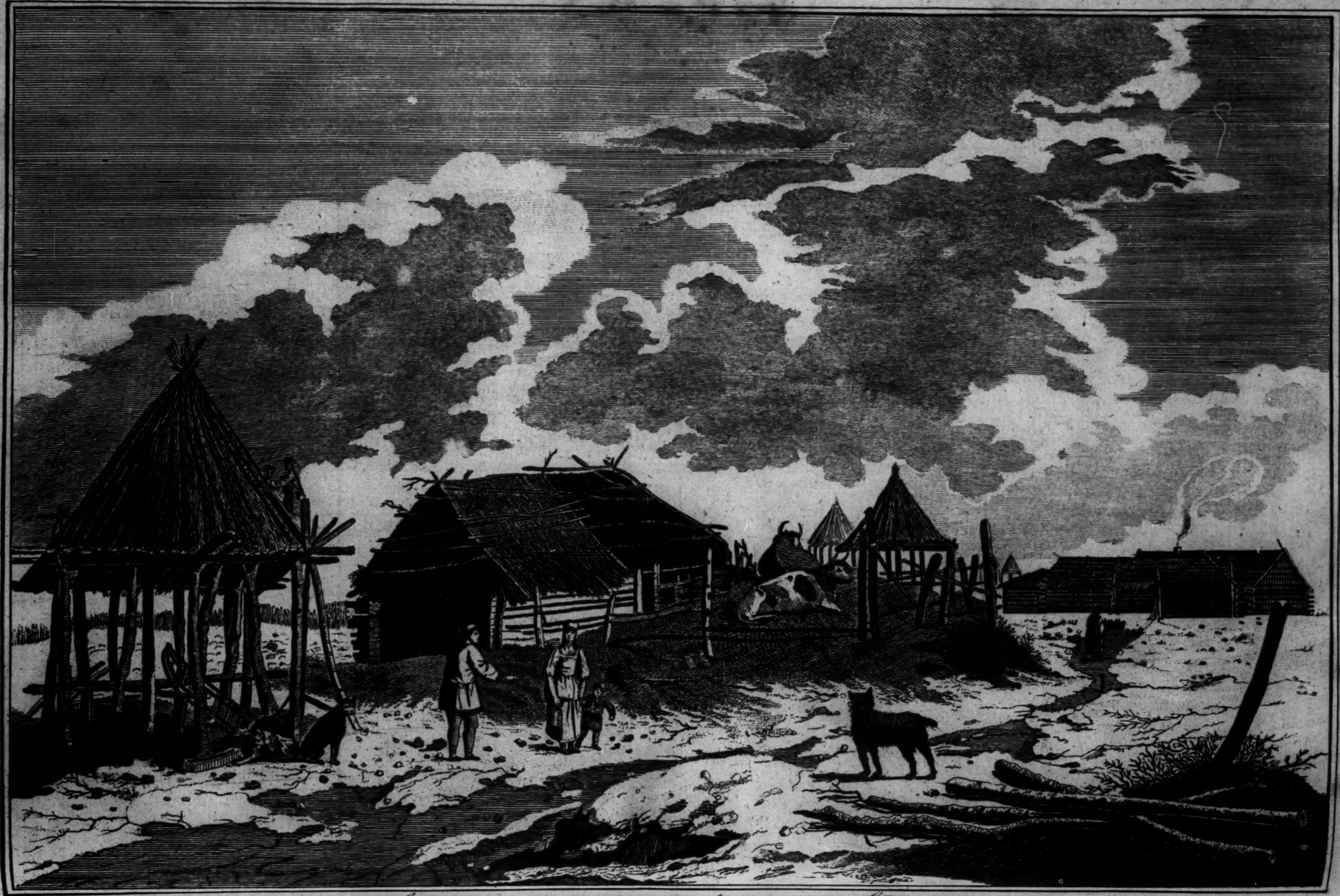
On Friday, the 1ſt of October, we had a violent gale of wind, which continued the whole day; but, on the 2nd, both ſhips warped out of the harbour, and anchored in 7 fathoms water, about a quarter of a mile from the oſtrog. Fortunately for us, the day before we quitted the harbour, the cattle from Verchnei arrived; and that the men might have the full enjoyment of this ſeaſonable ſupply, by eating it whilſt it was freſh, the Commodore determined to ſtay in our preſent ſtation five or ſix days longer. This time, however, was far from being miſapplied; for the pumps, ſails, and rigging of each ſhip, received an additional repair. Captain King having obtained permiſſion to uſe the copper belonging to the Reſolution, and being ſupplied with molaſſes from Captain Gore, he was enabled to brew a ſufficient quantity of beer to laſt the crew a fortnight, and to make ten additional puncheons of ſtrong ſpruce eſſence. This ſupply was the more acceptable as our laſt caſk of ſpirits was now ſerving out, except a ſmall quantity reſerved for caſes of emergency. The 3d being the name-day of the Empreſs of Ruſſia, we were cordially diſpoſed to ſhew it every poſſible reſpect. The paſtor of Paratounca, Ivaſkin, and the Serjeant, were invited to dine with us; and an entertainment was prepared for the two Toions of Paratounca, and St. Peter and St. Paul; as well as for the inferior officers of the garriſon, and the moſt reſpectable of the inhabitants. All the other natives were invited to partake in common with the ſhips companies; a pound of excellent beef being ſerved out to every man, and the remainder of our ſpirits was made into grog, and diſtributed among them. Twenty-one guns were fired upon the occaſion; and conſidering we were in a very remote part of the Empreſs's dominions, the whole feſtival was conducted in a manner not unworthy ſo illuſtrious a character. On Tueſday, the 5th, we received a freſh ſupply of tea, ſugar, and tobacco, from Bolcheretſk. Captain Shmaleff having met this preſent on his return, he tranſmitted a letter with it, informing us, that the ſloop from Okotſk had arrived in his abſence, and that Madame Shmaleff had inſtantly diſpatched a courier with theſe few articles, requeſting our acceptance of them. On the two following days we were prevented from unmooring by reaſon of foul weather; but on Friday the 8th, all the boats were hoiſted in, and we ſailed towards the mouth of the bay; when the wind, veering to the S. obliged us to drop anchor, the Oſtrog bearing N. diſtant half a league. On the 9th, at four o'clock, P. M. we again unmoored; but as we were raiſing our laſt anchor, we were informed that the drummer of the marines had fled from the boat of the Diſcovery, which had juſt left the village, and that he had lately been ſeen with a Kamtſchadale woman, to whom he was known to be much attached, and who had importuned him frequently to ſtay behind. This man was entirely uſeleſs in the ſervice, being lamed by a ſwelling in his knee; and on that very account Captain King was the more unwilling to leave him behind, leſt he ſhould become a miſerable burthen to himſelf and the Ruſſians. He therefore applied to the Serjeant to ſend parties of his men after him; and in the mean time, ſome ſailors viſited a well known haunt of his in the neighbourhood, where the drummer and his woman were found together. On his return the Diſcovery weighed anchor, and followed the Reſolution.

Having now taken our final departure from St. Peter and St. Paul, an account of Awatſka Bay, and the adjoining coaſt, may not be unacceptable to our friendly readers; eſpecially as it is, perhaps, the ſafeſt and moſt extenſive bay that has ever been diſcovered; and the only one, in this part of the world, that can admit veſſels of a conſiderable burthen. The entrance thereto is in the lat. 52 deg. 51 min. N. long. 158. deg. 48 min. E. It lies in the bight of another exterior bay, formed by Cape Gavereea to the S. and Cheepoonſkoi Noſs to the N. The latter of theſe head-lands bears from the former N. E. by N. and is 32 leagues diſtant. From the Cape Gavareea to the entrance of Awatſka Bay, the coaſt takes a northerly direction, and extends about 11 leagues. It conſiſts of ragged cliffs and rocks, and in many parts, preſents an appearance of bays and inlets; but, on a nearer approach, low ground was ſeen to connect the head-lands. From the entrance of Awatſka Bay, Cheepoonſkoi Noſs bears E. N. E. diſtant 17 leagues. The ſhore on this ſide is flat and low, with hills behind, riſing gradually to a conſiderable height. The latitude of Cape Gavereea is 52 deg. 21 min. This remarkable difference of the land on the ſides of Awatſka Bay, together with their different bearings, are very proper guides to ſteer for it, in coming from the ſouthward; and when it is approached from the northward, Cheepoonſkoi Noſs becomes very conſpicuous; it being a high projecting head-land, and is united to the continent, by a large extent of level ground, lower than the Noſs. We are rather particular in deſcribing this coaſt; for if we had poſſeſſed a good account of its form on both ſides of Awatſka Bay, we ſhould, when we firſt viſited it, have arrived two days ſooner than we did, and conſequently have avoided part of the tempeſtuous weather, which we experienced in plying off the mouth of the harbour. Beſides, as the fogs are ſo prevalent in theſe ſeas, it often happens, that an obſervation for aſcertaining the latitude cannot be taken. It ſhould alſo be conſidered, that land makes a very deceptive appearance when covered with ſnow, or when viewed through a hazy atmoſphere; both which circumſtances render it neceſſary for every navigator to be acquainted with as many diſcriminating objects as poſſible. Should the weather be ſufficiently clear to admit a view of the mountains, both on the coaſt and its neighbourhood, the ſituation of Awatſka Bay may be preciſely known, by the two high mountains to the S. of it. That neareſt the bay is in form of a ſugar-loaf: the other more inland, is flat at top, and not quite ſo high. There are three very conſpicuous mountains to the N. of the bay: that fartheſt to the W. appears to be the higheſt; the next, a volcano-mountain, may readily be known by the ſmoke iſſuing from the top. The third is the moſt northerly, and might, with ſome propriety, be called a cluſter of mountains, as it preſents ſeveral flat tops to our view. When we got within the capes, and into the outward bay, a light-houſe on a perpendicular head-land, pointed out the entrance into the harbour to the N. Many ſunken rocks lie to the eaſtward of this head-land, ſtretching two or three miles into the ſea, and when this or a ſwell are moderate, they will always ſhew themſelves. To the S. of the entrance, about 4 miles diſtant from it, lies a ſmall round iſland, compoſed chiefly of high pointed rocks, one of which is larger, and more perpendicular than the reſt. The entrance into the bay is at firſt, about three miles wide; one mile and a half in the narroweſt part; and it is four miles long, in a N. N. W. direction. Within the mouth is a noble baſon, 20 miles in circumference, in which are the harbours of Rakoweena to the E. Tarcinſka to the W. and St. Peter and St. Paul to the N. The breadth ef Tarcinſka harbour is three miles, and the length twelve. A narrow neck of land ſeparates it from the ſea at the bottom, and it ſtretches to the E. S. E. The entrance of the harbour of Rakoweena is impeded by a ſhoal in the middle of the channel, which, in general, makes it neceſſary to warp in, unleſs there ſhould happen to be a leading wind. Were it not for this circumſtance, this harbour would be preferable to the other two. It is one mile and a half broad, and three miles long, running in a S. E. and eaſterly direction.

But, one of the moſt convenient little harbours we have ſeen, is that of St. Peter and St. Paul. Six ſhips may be commodiouſly moored in it, head and ſtern, and it is, in every reſpect, convenient for giving them any kind of repairs. The S. ſide of this harbour is formed by a low, narrow, ſandy neck, whereon the Oſtrog is built. The mid-channel is only 270 feet acroſs, in which there was ſix fathoms and a half water. The deepeſt within is 7 fathoms, over a muddy bottom. We found, however, ſome inconvenience from the toughneſs of the ground, which often broke the meſſenger, and occaſioned ſome trouble in getting the anchors up. At the head of this harbour is the watering place. Off the eaſtern harbour is a ſhoal, and within the entrance a ſpit, ſtretching from the S. W. ſhore, having only three fathoms water over it. To ſteer clear of the latter, a ſmall iſland, or rather a large detached rock, on the W. ſhore of the entrance, muſt be ſhut in with the land to the S. of it. In order to ſteer clear of the former, the three needle rocks, near the light-houſe-head, on the E. ſhore of the entrance, muſt be kept open with the head-lands to the northward of the firſt ſmall bending on the E. ſide of the entrance. As you come into the harbour of St. Peter and St. Paul, and approach the village, it is very neceſſary to keep near the eaſtern ſhore, to avoid a ſpit which ſtretches from the head-land, to the S. W. of the Oſtrog.

Let it be noticed, that the obſervatories were placed on the W. ſide of the village of St. Peter and St. Paul; and from the ſun's meridian altitudes, and of five ſtars to the N. of the zenith we found the latitude to be 53 deg. 38 ſec. N. and its longitude from 146 ſets of lunar obſervations, to be 158 deg. 43 min. 16 ſec. E. At full and change of the moon it was high water, at 36 min. after four; and five feet eight inches, was the greateſt riſe. The tides were regular every twelve hours. It may be proper to obſerve further, in this place, that the time-keeper on board our ſhip, which was copied exactly from Mr. Harriſon's, by Mr. Kendal, ſtopped on the 27th of April, a few days before our firſt arrival in Awatſka Bay. During the voyage, it had always been carefully attended to, not having been truſted, even for a moment, in any other hands than thoſe of Captain Cook and Captain King. No accident, therefore, could poſſibly have happened, to which its ſtopping could be attributed; nor could it proceed from intenſe cold, the thermometer being but very little below the freezing point. When the failure of the piece was firſt diſcovered, the Commodore and Captain King conſulted about the meaſures to be purſued; whether they ſhould ſuffer it to remain in a uſeleſs ſtate, or ſubmit

BRITISH 7 FE 90 MUSEUM



A View in the Town of BOLCHERETZK the Capital of KAMTSCHATKA.

mit it to the inſpection of a ſeaman on board, who had been regularly bred a watch-maker in London, and who had given many ſatisfactory proofs of his ſkill in that profeſſion, in repairing ſeveral watches upon the voyage. Having experienced the accuracy of this time-piece, we were extremely unwilling to be deprived of its advantages. Beſides, it ſhould be conſidered, that the watch had already been ſufficiently tried to aſcertain its utility, as well in the former voyage, as during the three years of our having it on board: therefore, on the firſt clear day after we arrived in Awatſka Bay, the time-piece was opened, in the preſence of the two Captains, Clerke and King. No part of the watch appeared to be broken; but as the watch-maker was not able to make it go, he took off the cock and balance, and cleaned the pivot holes: theſe were extremely foul; and other parts of the work were in the ſame condition. Upon taking off the dial-plate, a piece of dirt was found between two teeth of the wheel, that carries the ſecond-hand, to which cauſe its ſtopping was principally attributed. After putting the work together, and oiling it very ſparingly, the watch ſeemed to go with freedom and regularity. Captain King having received orders to go the next day to Bolcheretſk, the time-keeper was left with Mr. Baily, in order to get its rate, by comparing it with his watch and clock; who informed him on his return, that it had gone very regularly for ſome days, not loſing more than 17 ſeconds a day; and afterwards ſtopped again. This we ſuppoſed to be occaſioned by its having been badly put together. It was therefore now a ſecond time opened; and when again adjuſted, it gained about a minute a day; when, the watch-maker in attempting to alter the regulator, broke the balance-ſpring. He made a new ſpring, but the watch went ſo irregularly afterwards, that we were obliged to lay it aſide as quite uſeleſs. The honeſt mechanic was as much vexed as we were at our ill ſucceſs; not ſo much owing, as we were convinced, to his want of ſkill, as to the improper tools he had to work with, and the callouſneſs his hands had contracted from his employment as a mariner. We ſhall now proceed, as propoſed in the contents of this chapter, to give a correct and perfect geographical and natural hiſtory of the Peninſula of Kamtſchatka.

Kamtſchatka is ſituated on the eaſtern coaſt of Aſia. It extends from 52 deg. to 61 deg. N. lat. the long. of its extremity to the S. being 156 deg. 45 min. The iſthmus, that joins it to the continent on the N. lies between the gulphs of Olutorſk and Penſhinſk. Its extremity to the S. is Cape Lapatka. The whole peninſula is ſomewhat in the form of a ſhoe; and its greateſt breadth is 236 computed miles, being from the mouth of the Tigil, to that of the river Kamtſchatka; and towards each extremity, it gradually becomes narrower. On the N. it is bounded by the country of the Koriacks; by the N. Pacific Ocean to the S. and E. and by the ſea of Okotſk to the W. A chain of high mountains extends the whole length of the peninſula, from N. to S. and almoſt equally divide it; whence ſeveral rivers take their riſe, and make their courſe into the Pacific Ocean, and the ſea of Okotſk. The three principal of theſe are, the Bolchoireka, or great river; the Kamtſchatka; and the river Awatſka. To the N. W. of the mouth of the Kamtſchatka, lies the great lake Nerpitſch; from Nerpi, a ſeal; that lake abounding with thoſe animals. A fort, called Niſhnei-Kamtſchatka Oſtrog, is ſituated about 20 miles up the river, where an hoſpital and barracks have been built by the Ruſſians; and this place, we underſtood, is now become the principal mart in the country.

Were we to judge of this country from what we ſaw of its ſoil and vegetable productions, it appears to be barren in the extreme. Neither about the bay, nor in our journey to Bolcheretſk, nor in any of our hunting excurſions, did we ever perceive the ſmalleſt ſpot of ground, that had the appearance of a good green turf, or that ſeemed capable of improvement by cultivation. Indeed, the whole ſurface of the country, in a moſt ſtriking degree, reſembles that of Newfoundland. At Paratounca, however, we ſaw ſome ſtacks of moſt excellent hay; and Major Behm aſſured us, that the banks of the Kamtſchatka, and the Biſtraia, as well as many other parts of the peninſula, produce a quantity of graſs, of great ſtrength and height, which is mowed twice in every ſummer, and that the hay is particularly adapted to the fattening of cattle, being of a very ſucculent quality. This agrees with Kraſcheninicoff's account, who relates, that the country which borders on the river Kamtſchatka, is much ſuperior, in point of fertility, to that of either the N. or S. The ſeverity of the climate, it may naturally be ſuppoſed, muſt be in proportion to the ſterility of the ſoil, of which it is perhaps the cauſe. We firſt ſaw this country in the beginning of May, 1779, when it was covered with ſnow, from ſix to eight feet in depth. On the 24th of Auguſt, when we returned, the foliage of the trees, and vegetation in general, appeared to be in the height of perfection. The weather, during the remainder of that month, and the whole of September, was not ſevere; but when October began, the new fallen ſnow again covered the tops of the hills. In computing the ſeaſons here, Spring ſhould certainly be omitted. Summer may be ſaid to extend from the middle of June, till the middle of September. October may be conſidered as Autumn; from which period to the middle of June, it is all dreary winter. The climate in the country adjacent to the river Kamtſchatka, is ſaid to be as ſerene and temperate, as in many parts of Siberia under the ſame latitude. The inhabitants, however, are ſometimes prevented, by the uncertainty of the ſummer ſeaſon, from providing a ſufficient ſtock of dried fiſh, for their food in winter; and the moiſture of the air occaſions worms to breed in them, which frequently deſtroy or ſpoil the greateſt part. The ſeverity of the winter, and the dreadful hurricanes of wind and ſnow which attend it, oblige the natives to retire to their ſubterraneous habitations, both for their ſecurity and warmth. We had neither thunder nor lightning during our ſtay at Kamtſchatka, excepting on the night of the eruption of the volcano. In this peninſula volcanoes are numerous; but only three have lately been ſubject to eruptions. That in the neighbourhood of Awatſka we have already mentioned. The volcano of Tolbatchick is ſituated between the river Kamtſchatka and Tolbatchick, on a neck of land. The eruptions proceed from the ſummit of a high mountain, which terminates in pointed rocks. On the top of the mountain of Kamtſchatka, ſuppoſed to be by far the higheſt in the peninſula, is the third volcano. Springs of hot water are ſaid to abound in this country.

The principal trees which fell under our notice, were the birch, the poplar, and the alder; ſeveral ſmall ſpecies of the willow, and two ſorts of dwarfiſh cedars. One of theſe ſorts grow upon the coaſt, ſeldom exceeding two feet in height, and creeping on the ground. Of this our eſſence for beer was made, and proved to be very proper for the purpoſe: the other, which grows much higher, is found on the mountains, and bears a kind of nut or apple. Of the birch which appears to be the moſt common, we remarked three ſorts. Two of them were large and fit for timber; differing from each other only in the colour and texture of the bark. The third is of a dwarfiſh kind. The natives apply this tree to a variety of uſes. When tapped, it yields a liquor in great abundance, which they drink without mixture, or any kind of preparation, as we obſerved frequently in our journey to Bolcheretſk. We drank ſome of it ourſelves, and found it pleaſant and refreſhing, though ſomewhat purgative. The bark they convert into veſſels for domeſtic purpoſes; and from the wood of this tree they make their ſledges and canoes. Not only the birch, but every other kind of tree, in the neighbourhood of the bay, were ſtunted, and very ſmall: the natives therefore are obliged to go a conſiderable diſtance up the country, to get wood of a proper ſize for their canoes, their balagans (or ſummer-houſes) and many other purpoſes. This peninſula likewiſe produces great abundance of the ſhrub kind, as mountain aſh, junipers, raſberry buſhes, and wild roſes. Alſo a variety of berries, as partridge-berries, blue-berries, black-berries, cran-berries, and crow-berries. Theſe are preſerved by maſhing hem into a thick jam; and they conſtitute a conſiderable part of their winter proviſions, ſerving as a general ſauce to their dried fiſh. They alſo eat them in puddings, and make decoctions of them for their common beverage. We found here large quantities of wholeſome vegetables in a wild ſtate, ſuch as chervil, garlic, onions, angelica, and wild celery. We alſo met with ſome excellent turnips, and turnip-radiſhes, upon a few ſpots of ground in the vallies. This was the utmoſt of their garden cultivation: yet, this account of vegetables only relates to ſuch parts of the country as fell within our obſervation: near the river Kamtſchatka, where, as we have already obſerved, both the ſoil and climate are the beſt in the peninſula, garden culture is attended to, and perhaps with ſucceſs; for with the ſecond drove of cattle which we received from Verchnei, we alſo received a preſent of cucumbers, celery, ſome large turnips, and other garden vegetables. Two plants are produced in this peninſula, which muſt not paſs unnoticed. The firſt is called by the natives Sarana, which grows wild and in great quantities. About the beginning of Auguſt, many women are employed in collecting the roots, which, after being dried in the ſun, are preſerved for uſe. It is a maxim with the Kamtſchadales, that Providence never deſerts them, for the ſeaſon that is prejudicial to the ſarana, is always favourable for fiſhing; and, on the contrary, an unſucceſsful fiſhing month, is always amply compenſated by an exuberant ſarana harveſt. This article is variouſly employed in cookery. When roaſted in embers, it is a better ſubſtitute for bread than any thing the country produces. When baked in an oven, and pounded, it ſupplies the place of flour and meal, and is mixed in all their ſoups, and many other diſhes. It is extremely nouriſhing, has a pleaſant bitter flavour, and may be eaten daily without cloying. We partook of theſe roots, boiled as we do potatoes, and found them very agreeable. The name of the other plant is Sweet Graſs. When at its full growth, it is about ſix feet high. This plant was formerly a principal ingredient in cookery among the natives; but ſince the Ruſſians have been in poſſeſſion of the country, it has been chiefly appropriated to the purpoſe of diſtillation. The liquor extracted is called raka, and has the ſtrength of brandy. Seventy-two pounds of the plant, produced generally 25 pints of raka. A vulgar well-known plant remains to be noticed, as being more eſſential to their ſubſiſtence than all which have hitherto been mentioned: this is the Nettle; which, as neither hemp nor flax are produced in this country, ſupplies materials for their fiſhing-nets; and on which their exiſtence principally depends.

Many parts of this peninſula would probably admit of ſuch cultivation, as might contribute to the comfort and convenience of the inhabitants; yet the number of wild animals it produces, muſt always be conſidered as its real riches; and no labour can be conſidered ſo productive of advantage, as what is employed upon its furrieries. And next to theſe, the animals that ſupply them are deſerving of attention. Theſe are the fox, the zebiline, or ſable; the ſtoat, or ermine; the iſatis, or arctic fox; the earleſs marmot; the varying hare; the weaſel; the glutton, or wolverene; the wild ſheep; the rein-deer; wolves; bears; and dogs. The moſt general objects of the chace are foxes, with which this country abounds, and among which are a variety of colours. The moſt common ſpecies is the ſame as the European, but their colours are more vivid and ſhining. Some are of a dark cheſnut; others have dark-coloured ſtripes; the bellies of ſome are black, but the other part of the body is of a light cheſnut. Some are wholly black; others of a dark brown; others of a ſtone-colour: and ſome few are entirely white; the laſt, however, are very ſcarce. The quality of their fur is much ſuperior to that of the ſame animals in Siberia or America. The ſables are much larger than thoſe of Siberia, and their fur is thicker and brighter; but thoſe in the neighbourhood of the rivers Olekma and Vitime, are of a finer black. The ſables of the Tigil and Ouka, are ſaid to be the beſt in Kamtſchatka; a pair of theſe being ſold frequently for five pounds ſterling. The inferior ſorts are found in the ſouthern parts.

A rifle barrel gun, of a very ſmall bore, a net, and a few bricks, are the whole apparatus of the ſable-hunters. With the firſt they ſometimes ſhoot them, when ſeen on trees: the net is uſed in ſurrounding hollow trees, in which they uſually take refuge when purſued; and the bricks are put hot into the cavities, in order to drive them out with the ſmoke. The ſkin of the arctic fox is of little value; and, on the ſame account, the varying hare is neglected. They are very numerous, and always become perfectly white during the winter. In the beginning of May, we obſerved ſeveral of this colour, but they were ſo extremely ſhy, as not to ſuffer us to come within gun-ſhot. The earleſs marmot, or mountain rat, is a beautiful creature, much ſmaller than a ſquirrel; and like that animal, feeds upon roots and berries. Its ſkin is of high eſtimation, being warm, light, and of a bright ſhining colour. The ermine, or ſtoat, is little regarded; its fur being of a very ordinary kind. The weaſel is alſo neglected on the ſame account. The ſkin of the wolverene, or glutton, on the contrary, is in the higheſt repute; a Kamtſchadale looking upon himſelf as moſt ſplendidly attired, when a ſmall quantity of this fur appears upon his garments. The women embelliſh their hair with its white pats, which is conſidered as the moſt ſuperlative piece of finery. All the bears which we had an opportunity of ſeeing, were of a dun brown colour. They appear generally in a company of four or five together; and frequently in the ſeaſon when the fiſh quit the ſea, and puſh in great quantities, up the rivers. In the winter months they are ſeldom viſible. Of their ſkins, warm mattreſſes, and coverings for beds, are made; alſo comfortable bonnets, gloves, and harneſs for the ſledges. The fleſh, eſpecially the fat, is held in great eſtimation. The wolves appear only in winter, when they are ſaid to prowl about in large companies. Rein-deer, both wild and tame, are found in many parts of the peninſula, but none in the neighbourhood of Awatſka. It is remarkable that theſe animals are not uſed here, for the purpoſes of carriage, as they are by their neighbours to the N. and E. Their place is indeed ſufficiently ſupplied by dogs; yet it appears ſomewhat extraordinary, that they ſhould not have preferred an animal ſo much more powerful and docile. The dogs reſemble the Pomeranian breed, in mien and figure; but they are larger, and the hair is conſiderably coarſer. The colour moſt prevalent among them, is that of a light dun, or a pale dirty yellow. Theſe animals are all turned looſe, about the latter end of May, and are obliged to ſhift for themſelves till the enſuing winter; but they never fail to return to their reſpective homes, when the ſnow begins to make its appearance. In the winter, their food conſiſts wholly of the head, back-bones, and intrails of ſalmon, which are preſerved and dried for that purpoſe; and even with this food they are very ſcantily ſupplied. The dogs muſt certainly be very numerous, no leſs than five being yoked together for a ſingle ſledge, in which only one perſon is carried. In our journey to Bolcheretſk, we had occaſion for 139 at two ſtages. It is obſervable, that bitches are never employed in this buſineſs, nor dogs that have been caſtrated. The whelps are trained to the draft, by being faſtened to ſtakes with leathern thongs, which are elaſtic; and having their food placed beyond their reach, by continually pulling to obtain it, they aquire ſtrength and a habit of drawing; both of which are eſſentially neceſſary for their deſtined labour. We muſt not omit, in our catalogue of animals, the wild mountain ſheep, or argali, unknown in all parts of Europe, except thoſe of Corſica and Sardinia. Its ſkin reſembles that of a deer's, but in its gait and general appearance, it nearer approaches the goat. Its head is adorned with two large twiſted horns, which, when the animal is full grown, weigh ſometimes from 25 to 30 pounds, and are reſted on the creature's back when it is running. Theſe animals are remarkably ſwift and active, frequent only the moſt craggy and mountainous parts, and traverſe the ſteepeſt rocks with an aſtoniſhing agility. Spoons, cups, and platters, are fabricated by the natives of their horns; and they often have one of the latter hanging to a belt; which ſerves them to drink out of, when on their hunting expeditions. This is a gregarious creature, extremely beautiful, and its fleſh is ſweet, and delicately flavoured.

Of northern ſea-fowl, almoſt every kind frequent the coaſt and bays of Kamtſchatka, and among others the ſea eagles. The inland rivers are plentifully ſtored with various ſpecies of wild ducks; one of which, called by the natives a-an-gitche, has a moſt beautiful plumage. Its cry is equally ſingular and agreeable. Another ſpecies is called the mountain duck. The plumage of the drake is remarkably beautiful. A variety of other water fowl were ſeen, which, from their magnitude, appeared to be of the gooſe kind. We obſerved in paſſing through the woods, ſome eagles of a prodigious ſize, but of what ſpecies we could not poſſibly determine. It is ſaid, there are three different kinds. The firſt is the black eagle with a white head, tail, and legs: the eaglets of which are perfectly white. The ſecond is improperly called the white eagle, though, in reality, it is of a light grey. The third is the ſtone coloured eagle, which is a very common ſort. There are great numbers of the hawk, falcon, and buſtard kind in this peninſula. Woodcocks, ſnipes, and grouſe are alſo found here. Swans are very numerous, and generally make a part of the repaſt at all public entertainments. The vaſt abundance of wild fowl, in this country, was ſufficiently manifeſt, from the many preſents we received, conſiſting frequently of twenty brace at a time. We ſaw no amphibious animals on the coaſt, except ſeals, and theſe were extremely numerous about the bay of Awatſka. The ſea-otters found here, and thoſe we met with at Nootka Sound, are exactly the ſame; and have already been particularly deſcribed. They were formerly in great abundance here; but ſince the Ruſſians have opened a trade with the Chineſe for their ſkins, where they bear a price ſuperior to any other kind of fur, the hunters have been induced to be ſo indefatigable in the purſuit of them, that very few remain in the country. They are ſtill found in the Kurile Iſlands, though the number is inconſiderable.

Fiſh is the main article of ſubſiſtence among the inhabitants of this peninſula, who cannot poſſibly derive it either from agriculture or cattle. The ſoil, indeed, affords ſome wholeſome roots, and every part of the country produces great quantities of berries; but fiſh alone may be called their ſtaff of life, with more propriety than bread in any other country; for neither the inhabitants, nor their domeſtic animals of the canine ſpecies, could poſſibly exiſt without it. Whales are common in this country, and when taken ſerve for a variety of uſes. After cleaning their inteſtines, drying them, and blowing them like bladders, they depoſit their oil and greaſe therein. Excellent ſnares are made of their nerves and veins; in ſhort, no part of the whale is uſeleſs in this peninſula. We caught abundance of fine flat fiſh, trout, and herrings. At one haul on the 15th of May, we dragged out above 300 flat fiſh, beſides a conſiderable quantity of ſea-trout. The firſt herring ſeaſon commences about the latter end of May. They viſit the coaſt in large ſhoals, but continue no conſiderable time. Theſe firſt are excellent, as are alſo large quantities of exceeding fine cod; and many of our empty caſks were filled with the former. But notwithſtanding this abundance, it is on the ſalmon fiſhery alone that the inhabitants depend for their winter ſuſtenance. The fiſhing ſeaſon begins about the middle of May, and continues to the end of June. The firſt ſhoals that enter the mouth of the Awatſka, are the largeſt and moſt eſteemed. Three feet and a half is their uſual length; and they are more than proportionably deep; their average weight being from 30 to 40 pounds. We had one of the firſt that were taken, but not without being told, that it was the higheſt compliment the Kamtſchadales could poſſibly confer upon us. It was formerly a cuſtom among them to eat the firſt fiſh they caught, in the midſt of great rejoicings, accompanied with many ſuperſtitious ceremonies. There is a ſmaller ſort of ſalmon, weighing from about 8 to 15 pounds, known by the name of the red fiſh, which aſſemble in the bays, and at the mouths of the rivers, early in the month of June. From this time till towards the end of September, vaſt quantities of them are taken upon the eaſtern and weſtern coaſts, where the ſea receives any freſh water, and alſo up the rivers, almoſt to their very ſource. All the lakes which communicate with the ſea abound with fiſh, which have much the appearance of ſalmon, and weigh uſually about five or ſix pounds. The natives, we underſtand, do not think it worth their labour to catch them. Theſe lakes being generally ſhallow, the fiſh become an eaſy prey to bears and dogs, in the ſummer ſeaſon; and from the quantities of bones appearing upon the banks, vaſt numbers of them ſeem to have been devoured. The natives dry the principal part of their ſalmon, and ſalt but very little of it. They cut a fiſh into three pieces. The belly-piece is firſt taken off, and then a ſlice along each ſide of the back bone. The former, which is eſteemed the beſt, is dried and ſmoked: the other ſlices are dried in the air, and are either eaten whole as a ſubſtitute for bread, or pulverized for paſte and cakes. The head, tail and bones are dried, and preſerved for their dogs.

The inhabitants of Kamtſchatka may be divided into three claſſes; the Kamtſchadales, the Ruſſians and Coſſacks; and a mixture produced by their intermarriages. The Kamtſchadales are a people of remote antiquity, and have inhabited this peninſula for many ages; and they doubtleſs deſcended from the Mangalians; though ſome have imagined they ſprang from the Tonguſian Tartars, and others from the Japaneſe. The Ruſſians, having made themſelves maſters of that vaſt extent of coaſt of the Frozen Sea, eſtabliſhed poſts and colonies, and appointed commiſſaries to explore and ſubject the countries ſtill farther to the E. They ſoon diſcovered that the wandering Koriacs inhabited part of the coaſt of the ſea of Okotſk, and they found no difficulty in making them tributary. Theſe not being at a great diſtance from the Kamtſchadales, with whom they had frequent intercourſe, a knowledge of Kamtſchatka muſt naturally follow; and the honour of the firſt diſcovery of this peninſula is attributed to Feodot Alexeieff, a merchant, in the year 1648; but a Coſſack, named Volodimer Atlaſſoff is the unqueſtionable firſt acknowledged diſcoverer of Kamtſchatka. He was ſent in 1697, in the capacity of commiſſary from Jakutſk to the Anadirſk, with directions to call in the Koriacs to his aſſiſtance, in order to diſcover, and make tributary, the countries beyond theirs. With ſixty Ruſſian ſoldiers, and as many Coſſacks, he penetrated in the year 1699, into the heart of the peninſula, and gained the Tigil. In his progreſs he levied a tribute upon furs, and proceeded to the river Kamtſchatka, on which he built an oſtrog, now called Verchnei; andl eaving a garriſon of 16 Coſſacks, returned to Jakutſk, with vaſt quantities of valuable tributary furs, in the year 1700. Since which time to the grand revolt of the Kamtſchadales in 1731, the hiſtory of this country preſents an unvaried detail of revolts, maſſacres, and murders, in every part of the peninſula. Though a great many of the inhabitants were loſt, in quelling the rebellion of 1731, yet the country had afterwards recovered itſelf, and was become as populous as ever in 1767; at which period the ſmall pox was, for the firſt time, introduced among them, by a ſoldier from Okotſk. It broke out with fury, and, in its progreſs was as dreadful as the plague; ſeeming almoſt to threaten their entire extirpation. Twenty thouſand were ſuppoſed to have died by this loathſome diſorder in Kamtſchatka, the Kurile iſlands, and the Koreki country. The inhabitants of whole villages were ſometimes ſwept away; of which ſufficient proof remains to this day. There are eight oſtrogs about the bay of Awatſka, which, we were informed, had been completely inhabited, but now they are all become deſolate, except St. Peter and St. Paul; and only ſeven Kamtſchadales, who are tributaries, reſide in that. At the oſtrog of Paratounca only 36 native inhabitants remain, including men, women, and children; though it contained 360 before it was viſited by the ſmall pox. We paſſed no leſs than four extenſive oſtrogs, in our journey to Bolcheretſk, which had not a ſingle inhabitant in either of them. We were informed by Major Behm, that thoſe who at this time pay tribute, including the Kuriles, do not exceed 3,000. The amount of the military forces, in five forts, is about 400, including Ruſſians and Coſſacks. Nearly the ſame number are ſaid to be at Ingiga; which, though in the N. of the peninſula, is under the command of Kamtſchatka. The Ruſſian traders and emigrants are not very conſiderable.

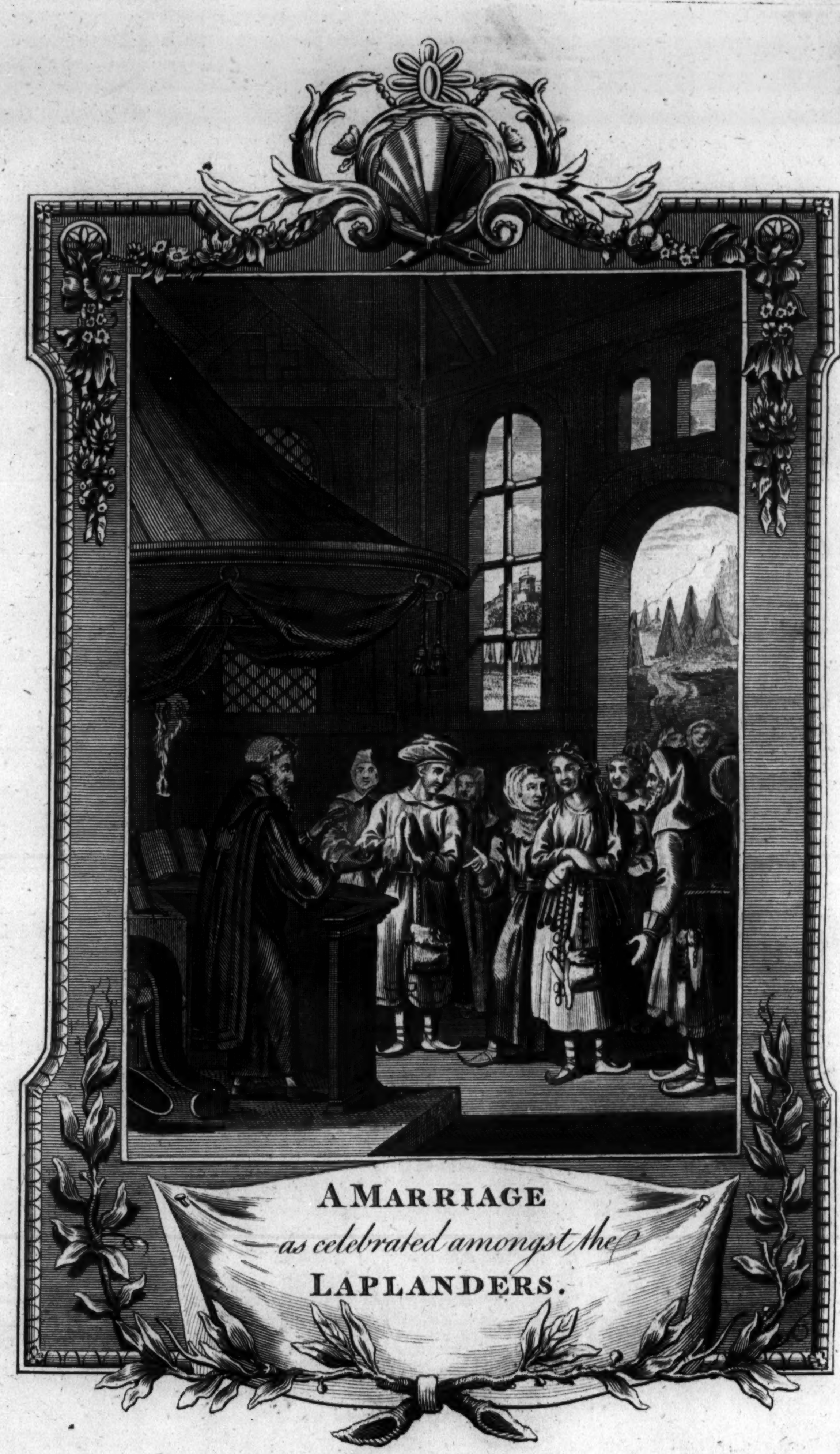
The government, eſtabliſhed in this country by the Ruſſians, conſidered as a military one, is remarkably mild and equitable. The natives are permitted to elect their own magiſtrates in their ancient mode. One of theſe, called a Toion, preſides over each oſtrog, to whom all differences are referred. In ſome diſtricts, the only tribute exacted is a ſable's ſkin; and in the Kurile iſlands, a ſea otter's; but as the latter is conſiderably more valuable, the tribute of ſeveral perſons is paid with a ſingle ſkin; a tribute ſo inconſiderable can hardly be conſidered in any other light, than that of an acknowledgment of the Ruſſian dominion over them. But the Ruſſians are not only to be commended for the mildneſs of their government: they are alſo entitled to approbation for their ſucceſsful endeavours in converting the natives to Chriſtianity, there being now but very few idolaters remaining among them. If we form a judgment of the other miſſionaries from the benevolent paſtor of Paratounca, more ſuitable perſons could not poſſibly be engaged in this buſineſs.

The exports of this country conſiſt entirely of furs; and this buſineſs is chiefly conducted by a company of merchants, appointed by the Empreſs. Twelve was the number originally, but three have ſince been added. Beſides a charter or grant of privileges, they are diſtinguiſhed by wearing a gold medal, expreſſive of the Empreſs's protection of the fur trade. There are other inferior dealers, chiefly Coſſacks, in different parts of the country. At what time the principal merchants remain here, they reſide either at Bolcheretſk, or the Niſhnei oſtrog; the trade centering wholly in thoſe two places. This buſineſs was formerly carried on in the way of barter, but every article is at preſent purchaſed with ready money, no inconſiderable quantity of ſpecie being circulated in that wretched country. The furs produce a high price; and the natives require few articles in return. Our ſailors brought a quantity of furs from the coaſt of America, and were both pleaſed and aſtoniſhed on receiving ſuch a quantity of ſilver for them from the merchants; but as they could not purchaſe gin or tobacco, or any thing elſe that would afford them any degree of entertainment, the roubles were ſoon conſidered as troubleſome companions, and they frequently diverted themſelves by kicking them about the deck. Our men received thirty roubles of a merchant, for a ſea-otter's ſkin, and in the ſame proportion for others; but the merchant underſtanding they had great quantities to diſpoſe of, and perceiving they were unacquainted with traffic, he afterwards procured them at a much cheaper rate.

European articles are the principal that are imported, but they are not ſolely confined to Ruſſian manufactures. They come from England, Holland, Siberia, Bucharia, the Calmucs, and China. They chiefly conſiſt of coarſe woollen and linen cloths, ſtockings, bonnets, and gloves; thin Perſian ſilks, pieces of nankeen, cottons, handkerchiefs, both of ſilk and cotton; iron ſtoves, braſs and copper pans, files, guns, powder and ſhot; hatchets, knives, looking-glaſſes, ſugar, flour, boots, &c. Theſe commodities, we obſerved, ſold for three times the ſum they might have been purchaſed for in England. And, notwithſtanding the merchants have ſo extravagant a profit upon theſe imported goods, they receive ſtill a greater advantage from the ſale of the furs at Kiachta, a conſiderable market for them on the frontiers of China. In Kamtſchatka, the beſt ſea-otter ſkins uſually produce about thirty roubles a-piece; at Kiachta, the Chineſe merchant gives more than double that price, and diſpoſes of them again at Pekin for a much greater ſum; after which, an additional profit is made of many of them at Japan. If, then, the original value of a ſkin at Kamtſchatka is thirty roubles, and it is afterwards tranſported to Okotſk, thence by land 1364 miles to Kiachta, thence 760 miles to Pekin, and after that to be tranſported to Japan, what a lucrative trade might be eſtabliſhed between Kamtſchatka and Japan, which is not above three weeks ſail from it, at the utmoſt? It may be neceſſary to obſerve, that the principal and moſt valuable part of the fur trade, lies among the iſlands between Kamtſchatka and America. Beering firſt diſcovered theſe in 1741, and as they were found to abound with ſea-otters, the Ruſſian merchants ſought anxiouſly for the other iſlands ſeen by that navigator, S. E. of Kamtſchatka, named in Muller's map the iſlands of St. Abraham, Seduction, &c. They fell in with no leſs than three groups of iſlands, in theſe expeditions. The firſt, about 15 deg. E. of Kamtſchatka; another, 12 deg. E. of the former; and the third, Oonalaſhka, and the neighbouring iſlands. Theſe mercantile adventurers alſo proceeded as far as Shumagin's Iſlands, of which Kodiak is the largeſt. But here they met with ſo warm a reception, for attempting to compel the payment of a tribute, that they never ventured ſo far again. The three groups before-mentioned, however, were made tributary. The whole ſea between Kamtſchatka and America is, according to the Ruſſian charts, covered with iſlands; for, as thoſe who were engaged in theſe expeditions, frequently fell in with land, which they ſuppoſed did not tally with the ſituation laid down by preceding adventurers, they immediately ſuppoſed it to be a new diſcovery, and reported it accordingly on their retutn; and, as theſe veſſels were uſually out three or four years, and ſometimes longer, ſuch miſtakes could not immediately be rectified. It is pretty certain, however, that only thoſe iſlands which have been enumerated, have been diſcovered in that ſea by the Ruſſians, S. of 60 deg. latitude. The ſea otter ſkins, which are certainly the moſt valuable article in the fur trade, are principally drawn from theſe iſlands; which being now under the Ruſſian dominion, the merchants have factors reſiding in ſettlements there, for the ſole purpoſe of bartering with the natives. To extend this trade, an expedition was fitted out by the admiralty of Okotſk, to make diſcoveries to the N. and N. E. of the above-mentioned iſlands, and the command of it given to Lieutenant Synd. But, as this gentleman directed his courſe too far N. he did not ſucceed in the object of his voyage; for as we never found a ſea-otter N. of Briſtol bay, they, perhaps, avoid thoſe latitudes where large amphibious ſea animals are numerous. The Ruſſians have not ſince undertaken any expedition for making diſcoveries to the eaſtward; but they will, probably, make an advantageous uſe of our diſcovery of Cook's river. Notwithſtanding the general intercourſe between the natives, the Ruſſians, and Coſſacks, the former are as much diſtinguiſhed from the latter by their habits and diſpoſition, as by their features and general figure.

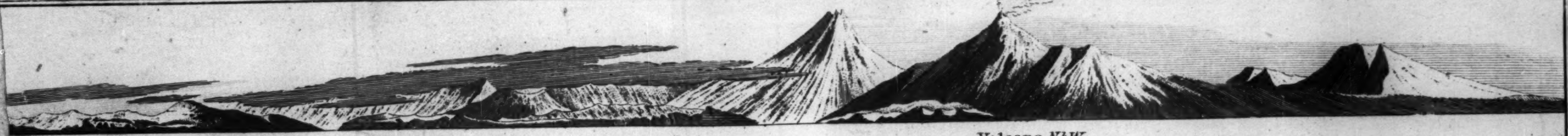
As the perſons of the natives have already been deſcribed, we ſhall only add, that, in their ſtature, they are below the common height, which Major Behm attributes to their marrying ſo very early; both ſexes uſually engaging in the conjugal ſtate at 13 or 14 years of age. They are exceedingly induſtrious, and may be properly contraſted with the Ruſſians and Coſſacks, who frequently intermarry with them, apparently, for no other reaſon, but that they may be ſupported in lazineſs and ſloth. To this inactivity may be attributed thoſe ſcorbutic complaints, which moſt of them are dreadfully afflicted with; whilſt the natives, who exerciſe in the open air, entirely eſcape them.

Their habitations conſiſt of three diſtinct ſorts; jourts, balagans, and log-houſes which are here called iſbas; they inhabit the firſt in the winter, and the ſecond in the ſummer; the third are introduced by the Ruſſians, wherein only the wealthier people reſide. The jourts are thus conſtructed. A kind of oblong ſquare is dug about ſix feet deep in the earth; the dimenſions muſt be proportioned to the numbers who are to inhabit it, for it is uſual for ſeveral to live together in the ſame jourt. Strong wooden poſts, or pillars, are faſtened in the



A MARRIAGE
as celebrated amongst the
LAPLANDERS.

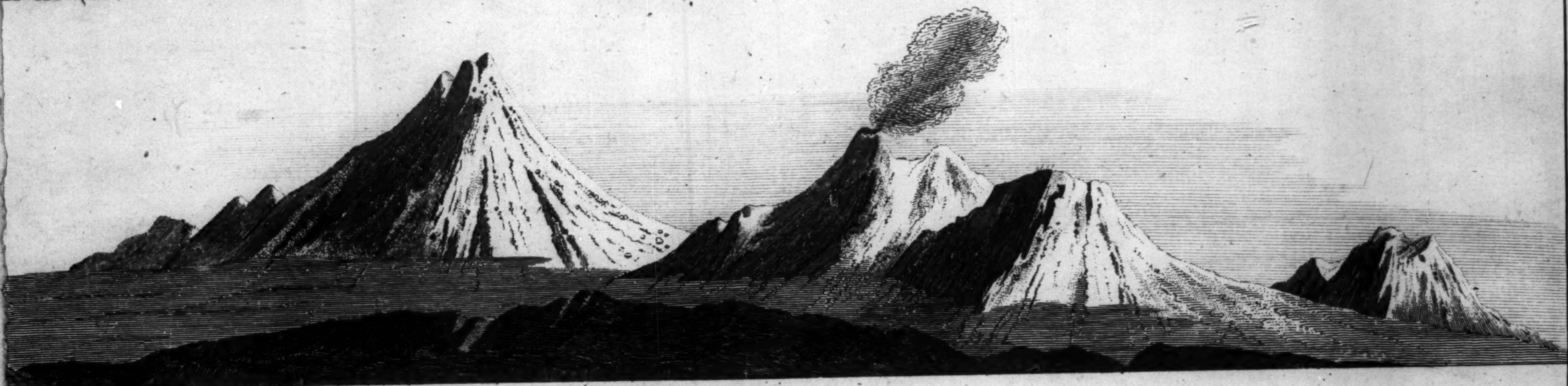
London Published by Alex.r Hogg at the Kings Arms N.o 16 Paternoster Row.



4 lea.s dist.

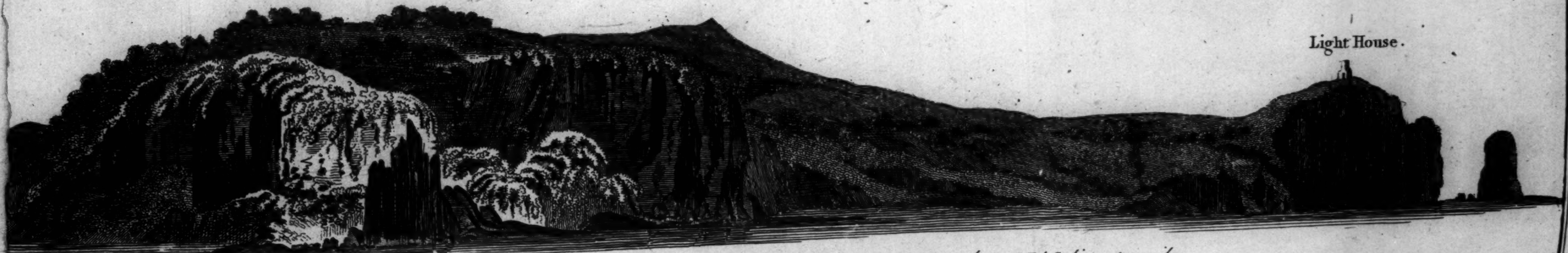
Volcano NbW.

AWATSKA.



AWATSKA Bay.

North head
3 miles distant.


Light House.

View in the entrance of AWATSKA Bay when the Light House on North Head bore SE b S. distant 2 miles.

C. Warren Sc:p

VIEWS on the Coast of KAMTSCHATKA.

the ground, at equal diſtances from each other, on which the beams intended to ſupport the roof are extended; which is formed by joiſts, one end of which reſt upon the ground, and the other on the beams. Between the joiſts, the interſtices are filled up with wicker work, and turf is ſpread over the whole. The external appearance of a jourt, reſembles a round ſquat hillock. A hole, ſerving for a chimney, window, and door, is left in the center, and the inhabitants go in and out by the aſſiſtance of a long pole, having notches deep enough to afford a little ſecurity for the toe. On the ſide, and even with the ground, there is another entrance, appropriated to the uſe of the women; but if a man paſſes in or out of this door, he becomes as much an object of ridicule, as a ſailor who deſcends through lubber's hole A jourt conſiſts of one apartment, forming an oblong ſquare. Broad platforms, made of boards, are extended along the ſides, at the height of about ſix inches from the ground; which ſerve them for ſitting on, and on which they repoſe; firſt taking care to cover them with mats and ſkins. The fire-place is on one ſide, and, on the other, their proviſions and culinary utenſils are ſtowed. When they make entertainments, the compliment is conſidered in proportion to the heat of the jourts; the hotter they are made, the more gracious is the reception of the gueſts conſidered. We always found them ſo extremely hot as to be intolerable. They generally retire to their jourts about the middle of October, and continue in them till the month of May is more than half expired. To erect a balagan, nine poſts are fixed into the earth, in three regular rows, at equal diſtances from each other, to the height of about 12 or 13 feet from the ſurface. About 10 feet from the ground, rafters are laid from poſt to poſt, and ſecurely faſtened by ſtrong ropes. The joiſts are laid upon theſe rafters, and a turf covering completes the platform or floor of the balagan. A roof of a conical figure is raiſed upon this, by means of long poles, which are faſtened to the rafters, at one end, and meet together in a point at the top. The whole is covered, or rather thatched, with a coarſe kind of graſs. Theſe ſummer habitations have two doors, placed directly oppoſite to each other, to which they aſcend by the ſame kind of ladders that are uſed in the jourts. In the lower part, which is left entirely open, they dry their fiſh, vegetables, and other articles intended for the conſumption of the winter. Though ſix families uſually live together in one jourt, a balagan is ſeldom occupied by more than one at a time. The iſbas, or log-houſes, are thus erected: long timbers are piled horizontally, with the ends let into each other, and the ſeams are filled up or caulked with moſs. Like thoſe of our common cottages, the roof is ſloping, and thatched either with graſs or ruſhes. Each log-houſe has three apartments in the inſide. One end may be ſaid to be a kind of entry, which extends the whole width and height of the houſe, and ſeems to be a kind of receptacle for their bulky articles, as ſledges, harneſs, &c. This has a communication with their beſt apartment, which is in the middle, and is furniſhed with broad benches, calculated both for eating and ſleeping upon. A door leads from this into the kitchen, almoſt half of which is taken up with an oven, or fire-place; which is let into the wall that ſeparates the middle apartment and the kitchen, and is ſo conſtructed as to communicate the heat to both rooms at the ſame time. There are two lofts over the kitchen and middle apartment, to which the inhabitants aſcend by a ladder placed in the entry for that purpoſe. Each apartment has two ſmall windows made of talc, and among the inferior people, of fiſh-ſkin. The boards and beams of their habitations, are ſmoothed only with a hatchet, for they are ſtrangers to the plane; and the ſmoke has rendered them of a deep ſhining black.

In Kamtſchatka, an oſtrog is called a town, and conſiſts of ſeveral houſes or habitations of the various kinds above-mentioned. Balagans are conſiderably the moſt numerous; and it is remarkable that we never ſaw a houſe of any kind that was detached from an oſtrog. There are, in St. Peter and St. Paul, ſeven log-houſes, nineteen balagans, and three jourts. Paratounca is nearly of the ſame ſize. Karatchin and Natcheekin have not ſo many log-houſes as the former, but rather more balagans and jourts; whence it may be concluded that ſuch is the moſt general ſize of an oſtrog.

The dreſs of the Kamtſchadale women having already been deſcribed, we ſhall proceed to that of the men. The upper garment reſembles that of a waggoner's frock. If for ſummer wear, it is made of nankeen; if intended for winter, it is made of a ſkin, (generally that of a deer or dog) having one ſide tanned, and the hair preſerved on the other, which is worn innermoſt. A cloſe jacket of nankeen, or ſome other cotton ſtuff, is the next under this; and beneath that, a ſhirt made of thin Perſian ſilk, of a red, blue, or yellow colour. They wear alſo a pair of long breeches, or tight trowſers, of leather, reaching below the calf of the leg. They have likewiſe a pair of boots, made of dog or deer ſkin, with the hair innermoſt. They have a fur cap, having two flaps that are uſually tied up cloſe to the head, but are permitted to fall round the ſhoulders in bad weather. The fur dreſs, which was preſented by Major Behm's ſon to Captain King, is one of thoſe worn on ceremonious occaſions by the Toions. It is ſhaped like the exterior garment we have juſt deſcribed, and conſiſts of ſmall triangular pieces of fur, chequered brown and white, and ſo ingeniouſly joined as to appear to be of the ſame ſkin. A border, of the breadth of ſix inches, curiouſly wrought with different coloured threads of leather, ſurrounds the bottom, and produces a rich effect. A broad edging of the ſea-otter's ſkin is ſuſpended to this. The ſleeves are ornamented with the ſame materials. An edging of it alſo encircles the neck, and ſurrounds the opening at the breaſt. It is lined with a beautiful white ſkin. And the preſent was accompanied with a pair of gloves, a cap, and a pair of boots, executed with the utmoſt neatneſs, and compoſed of the ſame materials. The Ruſſians who reſide in Kamtſchatka, wear the European dreſs; and the uniform worn by the troops here, is of a dark green turned up with red.

CHAP.

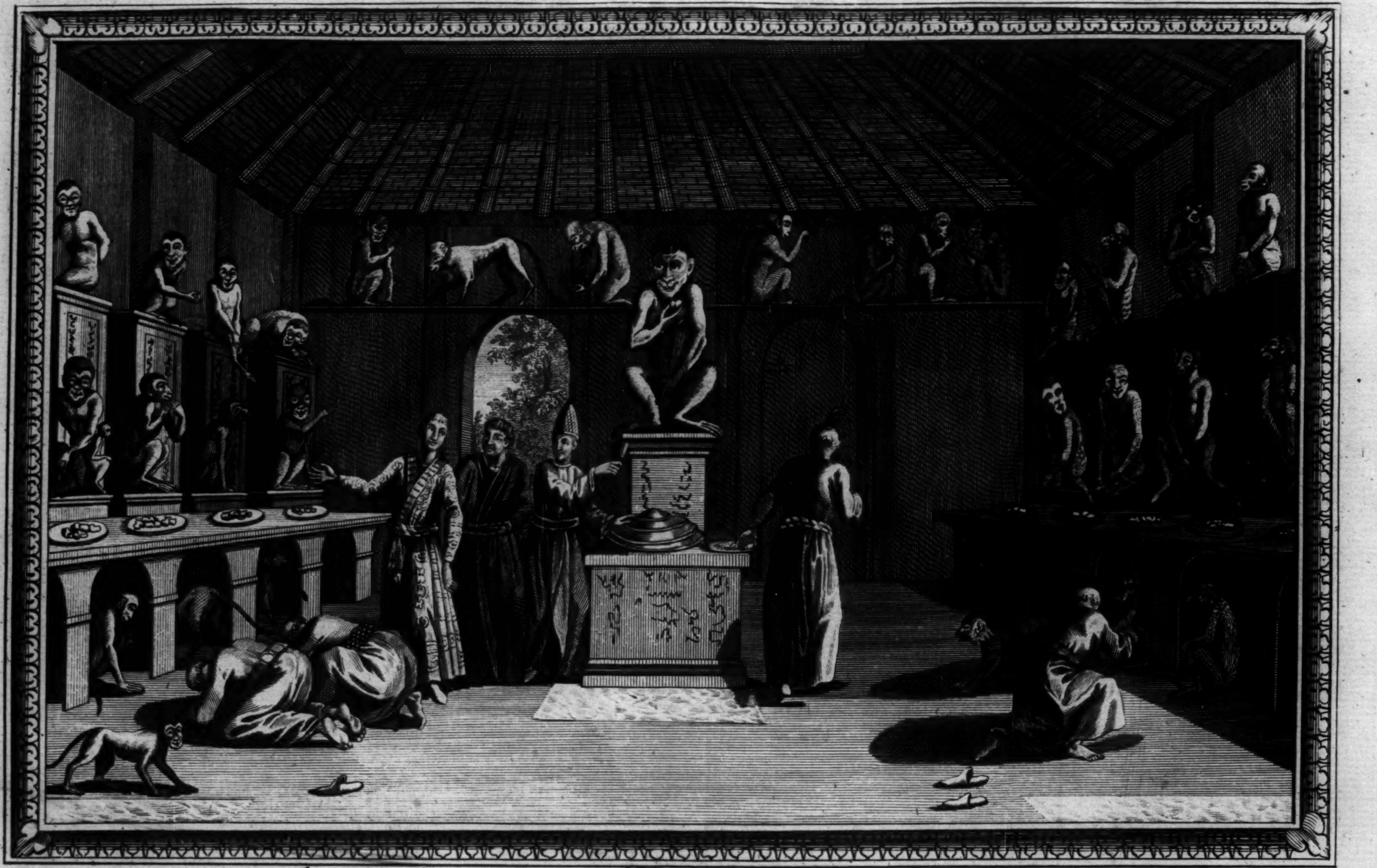
CHAP. XX.

An account of the Kurile Iſlands—Plan of future operations—The Reſolution and Diſcovery, on quitting the Bay of Awatſka, ſail along the coaſt—A violent ſtorm—Proceed for the Iſland of Japan—Deſcription of a Japaneſe veſſel—Proſecution of the voyage to China, in which three iſlands are diſcovered—Fruitleſs ſearch for the Baſhee Iſlands—The Grand Ladrone Iſland—Journals, and other papers relating to the hiſtory of the voyage, delivered up—The ſhips approach Macao—Captain King diſpatched to viſit the Portugueſe Governor—They anchor in the Typa—Captain King, accompanied by his ſecond Lieutenant and others, proceed to Canton—His reception at the Engliſh Factory—Suſpicious character of the Chineſe—Obſervations relative to the city of Canton—Captain King viſits a Chineſe of the firſt diſtinction—His return to Macao—Great demand for the ſea-otters-ſkins, and its effect on our ſeamen—Plan of a voyage for opening a fur trade on the weſtern coaſt of North-America, and making further diſcoveries in the neighbourhood of China and Japan—Nautical and other ſtrictures.

THE people ſituated to the N. and S. of Kamtſchatka, being but imperfectly known, we ſhall, before we proceed to the continuation of our voyage, give ſuch information as we have been able to acquire reſpecting the Kurile Iſlands, the Koreki, and Tſchutſki. The Kuriles are a chain of iſlands, extending from the ſouthern promontory of Kamtſchatka to Japan, in a S. W. direction. The inhabitants of the neighbourhood of Lopatka, who were called Kuriles, gave theſe iſlands the ſame name, as ſoon as they became acquainted with them. Spanberg makes their number amount to 22, excluſive of the very ſmall ones. The northernmoſt iſland is called Shoomſka, and lies about three leagues diſtant from the promontory of Lopatka, its inhabitants conſiſting of a mixture of natives and Kamtſchadales. The next, named Paramouſir, is conſiderably larger than Shoomſka, and is inhabited by the real natives, whoſe anceſtors, they ſay, came from an iſland called Onecutan, a little farther to the S. The Ruſſians paid their firſt viſit to theſe two iſlands in 1713, and added them to the dominions of the Empreſs. The others, as far as Ooſheſheer incluſive, are now made tributary, if we may rely upon the information of the worthy paſtor of Paratounca, their miſſionary; who pays them a viſit once in three years, and mentions the iſlanders in the moſt reſpectable terms, extolling them for their hoſpitality and humanity; and that they excel their Kamtſchadale neighbours as much in the gracefulneſs of their perſons, as in their docility and underſtanding. Though the iſland of Ooſheſheer is the fartheſt to the S. of any under the dominion of Ruſſia, yet they are ſaid to trade to Ooroop, which is the 18th in order; and is the only one that has a good harbour for veſſels of burthen. Nadeegſda lies to the S. of this, and is ſaid to be inhabited by a race of men who are remarkably hairy, and who live in a ſtate of perfect independence, like thoſe of Ooroop. Nearly in the ſame direction lie a group of iſlands called Jeeſo, by the Japaneſe; a name alſo given by them to the chain of iſlands between Kamtſchatka and Japan. That called Matmai, the fartheſt to the S. belongs to the Japaneſe, and has a garriſon and fortifications on the ſide towards the continent. The iſlanders of Kunachir, and Zellany, to the N. E. of Matmai, and three others, called the Three Siſters, ſtill farther to the N. E. are entirely independent. The inhabitants of Matmai barter with thoſe of the iſlands laſt mentioned, as well as with thoſe of the Kuriles to the northward. Many of the inhabitants of thoſe iſlands that are under the dominion of Ruſſia, are now converted to Chriſtianity. And perhaps the time is not far diſtant, when an advantageous commerce will be carried on between Kamtſchatka and this extenſive chain of iſlands, which may afterwards produce a communication with Japan itſelf. The advantages that muſt infallibly accrue to the Ruſſians by eſtabliſhing a commerce with the Japaneſe are ſufficiently obvious.

In the country of Koreki are two diſtinct nations, called the wandering and fixed Koriacs. Part of the ſthmus of Kamtſchatka is inhabited by the former, as as well all the coaſt of the eaſtern ocean, from thence to the Anadir. The nation of the wandering Koriacs, extends weſtward towards the river Kovyma, and along the N. E. of the ſea of Okotſk, as far as the river Penſkina. The reſemblance between the fixed Koriacs, and the Kamtſchadales, is very ſtriking: both coutries depend alike on fiſhing for ſubſiſtence. Their cloathing and habitations are equally ſimilar. The fixed Koriacs are under the diſtrict of Ingiga, and are tributary to Ruſſia. The wandering Koriacs are employed wholly in breeding and paſturing deer, and are ſaid to have immenſe numbers in their poſſeſſion; it being common for a ſingle chief to have a herd of 5,000. Upon the fleſh of theſe animals they ſubſiſt, having an averſion to every kind of fiſh. They erect no Balagans; their only habitations being ſomewhat like the Kamtſchadale jourts, except that, in winter, they are covered with raw deer-ſkins, and, in ſummer, with ſuch as have been tanned. Their ſledges are drawn only by deer, and thoſe that are uſed in drawing them feed in the ſame paſture with the others. When they are wanted, the herdſman makes uſe of a certain cry, which, being very familiar to them they obey, and quit the herd immediately. The two nations of the Koriacs, and the Tſchutſki, make uſe of different dialects of the ſame language; but it has not the ſmalleſt affinity to that of the Kamtſchadale. The Tſchutſki are a courageous, well made, warlike race of people; and are formidable neighbours to the Koriacs of both nations, who often experience their depredations. The country inhabited by the Tſchutſki, is bounded by the Anadir on the S. and extends to the Tſchutſkoi Noſs. Their attention, like that of the wandering Koriacs, is confined chiefly to their deer, with which their country abounds. The Ruſſians have long endeavoured to bring them under their dominion; but, though they have loſt a great number of men in different expeditions, they have not yet been able to accompliſh this purpoſe. It is now time to return to the hiſtory of our voyage, and to make known the plan of our future operations.

In the inſtructions for the regulation of the preſent voyage, the Lords of the Admiralty had intruſted the Commanding Officer of the expedition with a diſcretionary power, in caſe of not ſucceeding in the diſcovery of a paſſage from the Pacific Ocean into the Atlantic, to make choice, in his return to England, of whatever route he ſhould judge proper; the Commodore therefore deſired, that the principal officers would deliver their ſentiments, in writing, relative to the mode in which theſe inſtructions might moſt effectually be carried into execution. The reſult of their opinions, which, to his great ſatisfaction, he found unanimous, and perfectly agreeing with his own, was, that the condition of the ſhips, their ſails, cordage, &c. rendered it hazardous and unſafe to make any attempt, as the winter was now approaching, to navigate the ſea between Aſia and Japan, which would otherwiſe have opened to us the moſt copious field for diſcovery; that it was therefore moſt prudent to ſteer to the eaſtward of that iſland, and in our way thither, to ſail along the Kuriles, and examine particularly thoſe iſlands that are ſituated neareſt to the northern coaſt of Japan, which are ſaid to be of conſiderable extent, and not ſubject to the Ruſſians or Japaneſe. Should we have the good fortune to meet with ſome ſecure and commodious harbours in any of theſe iſlands, we ſuppoſed they might prove of conſiderable importance, as convenient places of ſhelter for ſubſequent navigators, who might be employed in exploring the ſeas, or as the means of producing a commercial intercourſe among the adjacent dominions of the two above-mentioned empires. Our next



Inside of the celebrated **PAGOD** *of the* **MONKIES**, *in* **JAPAN.**

BRITISH MUSEUM

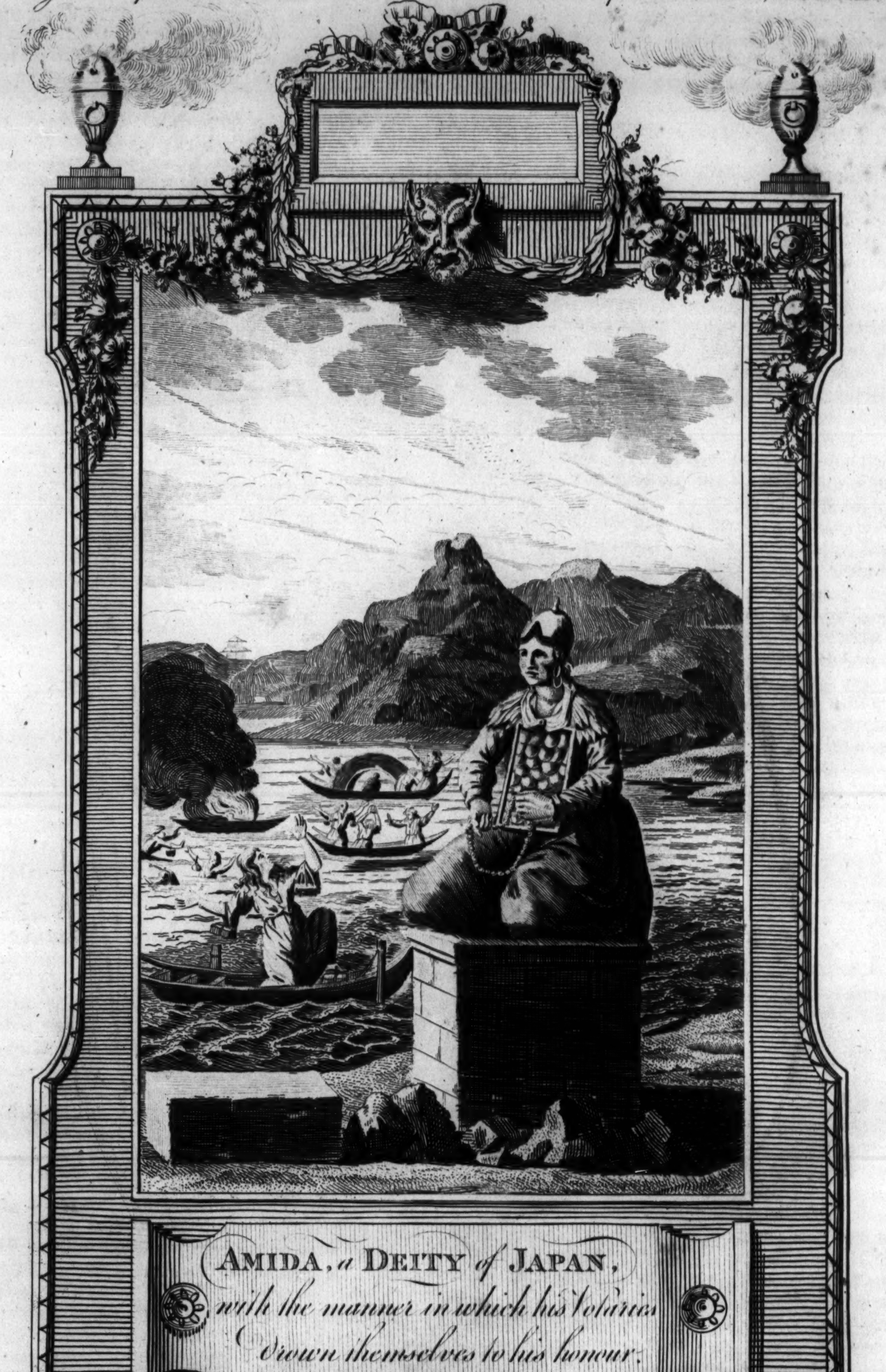
next object was to take a ſurvey of the Japaneſe Iſles; after which we deſigned to make the coaſt of China, as far to the N. as might be in our power, and then to proceed to Macao. This plan being adopted, Captain King received orders, in caſe the two ſhips ſhould ſeparate, to repair, without delay, to Macao.

On Saturday, the 9th of October, at ſix o'clock, P. M. having cleared the entrance of the Bay of Awatſka, we made ſail to the S. E. At midnight we had a dead calm, which continued till noon of the following day. A breeze ſpringing up from the W. about three o'clock, P. M. we ſteered to the S. along the coaſt. A head-land now opened with Cape Gavareea, in the direction of S. by W. ſituated nearly 20 miles beyond it. On Monday, the 11th, at noon, we obſerved in lat. 52 deg. 4 min. long. 158 deg. 31 min. Cape Gavareea bearing N. by W. one quarter W. and the ſouthern extremity S. W. half W. We were now at the diſtance of 9 or 10 miles from the neareſt part of the coaſt, and perceived the whole inland country covered with ſnow. A point of land towards the S. formed the northern ſide of a deep bay, diſtinguiſhed by the name of Achachinſkoi, to the ſouthward of which, the land did not exhibit ſuch a rugged and barren aſpect, as was obſervable in that part of the country which we had before paſſed. On Tueſday, the 12th, at ſix o'clock P. M. we diſcerned, from the maſt-head, Cape Lopatka, which is the moſt ſouthern extreme of Kamtſchatka. This, by accurate obſervations, we found to be in lat. 51 deg. and in the long. of 156 deg. 45 min. We perceived, to the N. W. of it, a very lofty mountain, whoſe ſummit was loſt in the clouds. At the ſame inſtant, the firſt of the Kurile iſlands, named Shoomſka, made its appearance, in the direction of W. half S. On Wedneſday, the 13th at day-break, we deſcried the ſecond of the Kurile iſlands, named Paramouſir, by the Ruſſians, extending from W. half S. to N. W. by W. This land was exceedingly high, and almoſt covered with ſnow. The iſland is the largeſt of the Kuriles; and its ſouthern extremity, ſtands, according to our computation, in lat. 49 deg. 58 min. the northern extremity we place in lat. 50 deg. 46 min. long. 10 deg. W. of Cape Lopatka. During the two following days, the wind, blowing freſh from the W. obliged us to ſteer to the ſouthward, and conſequently prevented us from ſeing any more of the Kuriles. On Saturday, the 16th, our lat. was 45 deg. 27 min. our long. deduced from many lunar obſervations taken the three preceding days, was 155 deg. 30 min. and the variation 4 deg. 30 min. E. In this ſituation, we were almoſt encompaſſed by the real or pretended diſcoveries of prior navigators; not one of which we were fortunate enough to meet with in our courſe. The wind having veered in the afternoon to the northward, we hauled round to the W. In the courſe of this day, we obſerved ſeveral albatroſſes, fulmars, and numerous flocks of gulls: we alſo ſaw a number of fiſh, called grampuſſes by our ſailors; but we were rather inclined to judge, from the appearance of thoſe which paſſed cloſe by our veſſels, that they were the Kaſatka, or ſword-fiſh. Sunday, the 17th, we obſerved in lat. 45 deg. 7 min. long. 154 deg. On the 19th, at two o'clock A. M. we hauled our wind, and ſtood to the ſouthward till five, at which time a violent ſtorm reduced us to our courſes. Though from the unfavorable ſtate of the weather, there was but little probability of our making the land, our attention was ſtill anxiouſly directed to this object; and on the appearance of day-light, we ventured to ſteer W. by S. We proceeded on the ſame courſe till 10 o'clock, when the wind ſuddenly veered round to the S. W. attended with fair weather. Scarce had we availed ourſelves of this, by letting out our reefs, and ſetting the top-ſails, when it began to blow with ſuch vehemence, that we were under the neceſſity of cloſe reefing again; and, about noon, the wind ſhifting more to the W. we were prevented from continuing any longer on this tack: we therefore put about, and ſtood towards the S. We were now in lat. 44 deg. 12 min. long. 150 deg. 40 min. ſo that, after all our exertions, we had the mortification of finding ourſelves, according to the Ruſſian charts, upon the ſame meridian with Nadeegſda, which they repreſent as the moſt ſoutherly of all the Kurile iſlands. Though the violent and adverſe winds that we had met with for ſix days paſt, had deprived us of an opportunity of getting in with theſe iſlands, yet the courſe on which we had been obliged to proceed, did not prove altogether deſtitute of geographical advantages: for the group of iſlands, comprehending Zellany, Kunaſhir, and the Three Siſters, which, in the maps of M. D'Anville, are laid down in the track we had juſt croſſed, are, by this means, demonſtrably removed from that poſition; and thus an additional proof is obtained of their being ſituated to the W. where Captain Spanberg has placed them, between the longitudes of 142 and 147 deg. But this ſpace being occupied, in the French charts, by Staten Iſland, and part of the ſuppoſed land of Jeſo, the opinion of Muller becomes highly probable, that they are all the ſame lands; and, as we have no reaſon to call in queſtion the accuracy of Spanberg, we have, in our general chart, reinſtated Kunaſhir, Zelany, and the Three Siſters, in their proper ſituation, and have totally omitted the reſt. When we conſider the manner in which the Ruſſians have multiplied the iſlands of the northern Archipelago, not only from the want of accuracy in aſcertaining their real poſition, but likewiſe from the deſire, natural to mankind, of propagating new diſcoveries, we ſhall not be ſurprized, that the ſame cauſes ſhould produce ſimilar effects. It is thus that the lands of Jeſo, which appear, as well from the earlieſt traditions among the Ruſſians, as from the accounts of the Japaneſe, to be no other than the Kurile Iſlands, have been imagined to be diſtinct from the latter. De Gama's land is next on record; and this was originally repreſented as being nearly the ſame in ſituation with thoſe we have juſt mentioned; but it was afterwards removed, in order to make room for Staten's Iſland, and the company's land; and as Jeſo, and the moſt ſoutherly of the Kuriles, had likewiſe poſſeſſion of this ſpace, that nothing might be loſt, the former had a place provided for it weſtward, and the latter towards the E. As, according to the Ruſſian charts, the iſles of Kunaſhir and Zellany, were ſtill to the S. we entertained ſome hopes of being able to make them, and, with this view, kept the head of the Reſolution towards the W. as much as the wind would permit. On Wedneſday, the 20th, at noon, we obſerved in lat. 43 deg. 47 min. long. 150 deg. 30 min. We were then ſtanding to the W. by S. with a gentle breeze from the S. E. but about three o'clock P. M. the wind, ſhifting to the N. W. point, began to blow with ſuch violence, that we were brought under our mizen ſtay-ſail, and fore-ſail. For the following 24 hours we had heavy rain, and vehement ſqualls; and as the wind continued to blow from the N. W. our attempts to make the land were rendered abortive; and we were at length obliged to relinquiſh all further thoughts of diſcovery to the northward of Japan. To this diſappointment we ſubmitted with the greater reluctance, as our curioſity had been conſiderably excited by the accounts that are given of the natives of theſe iſlands. On the 21ſt, in the afternoon, an accident befel our ſhip, the Reſolution; for the leach-rope of her fore-top-ſail gave way, and ſplit the ſail. This having frequently happened during the life of Captain Cook, he had, on ſuch occaſions, ordered the foot and leach-ropes of the top-ſails to be taken out, and larger ones to be fixed in their room; and theſe likewiſe proving incapable of ſupporting the ſtrain that was on them, gave him good reaſon to obſerve to us, that the juſt proportion of ſtrength between the ſail and thoſe ropes, is extremely miſcalculated in our ſervice. On the 22d, in the morning, we let out the reefs of our top-ſails, and carried more ſail. At noon, we found ourſelves to be in lat. 40 deg. 58 min. long. 148 deg. 17 min. variation of the needle 3 deg. E. This day ſome birds afforded us clear indications that we were not at any conſiderable diſtance from land: with this hope we ſteered to the W. N. W. in which direction were ſituated, at the diſtance of about 50 leagues, the ſouthernmoſt iſlands, ſeen by Captain Spanberg, and ſaid to be inhabited by hairy men. At eight o'clock, the following morning, a freſh breeze ſpringing up, with which we continued our courſe till the evening, when we had violent ſqually gales, accompanied with rain; and as we had, in the courſe of this day, paſſed ſome patches of green graſs, and obſerved a number of ſmall land birds, a ſhag, and many flocks of gulls, we did not think it conſiſtent with prudence, having all theſe ſigns of the vicinity of land, to ſtand on for the whole night: about midnight therefore we tacked, and for the ſpace of a few hours ſteered S. E.

Sunday, the 24th, we again bore away to the W. N. W. and carried a preſs of ſail till ſeven o'clock, P. M. when the wind veered round to the N. and blew a freſh gale. At this time our lat. was 40 deg. 57 min. long. 145 deg. 20 min. This ſecond diſappointment in our attempts to get to the N. W. the tempeſtuous weather with which we had been harraſſed, and the ſmall probability, at this ſeaſon of the year, of its becoming more favourable to our deſigns, were the motives that now induced Captain Gore to abandon finally all further ſearch for the iſlands ſituate to the northward of Japan, and to direct our courſe to the W. S. W. for the northern part of that iſland. On the 25th, at noon, we were in lat. 40 deg. 18 min. and in long. 144 deg. Flights of wild ducks were this day obſerved by us; a pigeon lighted upon our rigging; and many ſmall birds, reſembling linnets, flew about the ſhips, with a degree of vigour, that gave us reaſon to imagine they had not been long on the wing. We alſo paſſed a piece either of bamboo or ſugar-cane, and ſeveral patches of long graſs. Theſe indications of our being at no great diſtance from land, determined us to try for ſoundings; but we could not reach the bottom with 90 fathoms of line. On the approach of evening, the wind gradually veered round to the S. with which we continued our courſe to the W. S. W. On Tueſday, the 26th, at day-break, we had the ſatisfaction of perceiving high-land towards the W. which proved to be Japan. At eight o'clock, it was at the diſtance of ten or twelve miles, and extended from S. by W. to N. W. A low flat cape, which apparently conſtituted the ſouthern part of the entrance of a bay, bore N. W. three quarters W. Near the S. extremity, a hill of a conic figure appeared, bearing S. by W. three quarters W. To the N. of this hill, there ſeemed to be an inlet of very conſiderable depth, the northern ſide of whoſe entrance is formed by a low point of land; and as well as we were enabled to judge by the aſſiſtance of our glaſſes, has a ſmall iſland near it towards the S. Having ſtood on till nine o'clock, we had, by that time, approached within five or ſix miles of the land, which bore W. three quarters S. We now tacked, and ſtood off; but as the wind failed us, we had proceeded, at noon, to no greater diſtance than 3 leagues from the ſhore. This part of the coaſt extended from N. W. by N. to S. half E. and was principally bold and cliffy. The low cape above-mentioned, was about ſix leagues diſtant, bearing N. W. by W. and the northern point of the inlet was in the direction of S. three quarters W. Our lat. by obſervation, was 40 deg. 5 min. and our long. 142 deg. 28 min. The moſt northerly land in view, was ſuppoſed by us to be the northern extreme of Japan. It is ſomewhat lower than the other parts; and from the range of the elevated lands that were diſcerned over it from the maſt-head, the coaſt manifeſtly appeared to trend to the weſtward. The northern point of the inlet was imagined by us to be Cape Nambu; and we conjectured, that the town, which Janſen calls Nabo, ſtood in a break of the high land, towards which the inlet apparently directed itſelf. The neighbouring country is of a moderate elevation, and has a double range of mountains. It is well furniſhed with wood, and exhibits a variety of pleaſing hills and dales. We perceived the ſmoke ariſing from ſeveral villages or towns, and ſaw many houſes in delightful and cultivated ſituations, at a ſmall diſtance from the ſhore. While the calm continued, that we might loſe no time, we put our fiſhing lines overboard, in ten fathoms water, but had no ſucceſs. This being the only diverſion which our preſent circumſtances would permit us to enjoy, we very ſenſibly felt our diſappointment; and looked back with regret to the cod-banks of the diſmal regions we had lately quitted, which had furniſhed us with ſo many ſalutary meals, and by the amuſement they had afforded, given a variety to the tedious recurrence of aſtronomical obſervations, and the weariſome ſucceſſion of calms and gales. At two o'clock, P. M. the wind blew freſh from the S. and, by four, had reduced us to cloſe reefed top-ſails, and obliged us to ſtand off to the ſouth-eaſtward; in conſequence of which courſe, and the gloomineſs of the weather, we ſoon loſt ſight of land. We kept on during the whole night, and till eight o'clock the following morning, when the wind ſhifting to the N. and becoming moderate, we made ſail, and ſteered a W. S. W. courſe, towards the land, which, however, we did not make before three in the afternoon; at which time it was ſeen to extend from N. W. half W. to W. The moſt northerly extremity was a continuation of the elevated land, the ſouthernmoſt we had obſerved the preceding day. The land to the weſtward, we conjectured to be the High Table Hill of Janſen. The coaſt, between the two extremes, was low, and could ſcarcely be perceived, except from the maſt-head. We proceeded towards the coaſt till eight in the evening, when our diſtance from it was about 5 leagues, and having ſhortened ſail for the night, we ſteered in a ſoutherly direction, ſounding every four hours; but our depth of water was ſo great, that we did not find ground with 160 fathoms of line.

On Thurſday, the 28th, at ſix o'clock A. M. we again ſaw land, 12 leagues to the ſouthward of that we had ſeen the day before, and extended from W. by N. to W. S. W. At ten o'clock we ſaw more land in the ſame direction. At noon, the northern extremity of the land in view bore N. W. by N. and a peaked hill, over a ſteep head-land, was 15 or 16 miles diſtant, bearing W. by N. By obſervation, our lat. was 38 deg. 16 min. and our long. 142 deg. 9 min. During the remainder of the day, we continued our courſe to the S. W. and, at midnight, found our depth of water to be 70 fathoms, over a bottom of fine brown ſand. We therefore hauled up towards the E. till the next morning, when we again had ſight of land, eleven leagues to the S. of that we had ſeen the preceding day. The ground was low towards the ſea, but gradually ſwelled into hills of a moderate elevation. At nine o'clock, the ſky being overcaſt, and the wind veering to the S. we tacked and ſtood off to the E. Not long after, we obſerved a veſſel, cloſe in with the land, ſtanding to the N. along the ſhore; and we alſo ſaw another in the offing, coming down on us before the wind. Objects belonging to a country ſo celebrated, and yet ſo imperfectly known, excited a general eagerneſs of curioſity; in conſequence of which, every perſon on board came inſtantaneouſly upon deck to gaze at them. As the veſſel to windward approached us, ſhe hauled off to a greater diſtance from the ſhore; upon which being apprehenſive of alarming thoſe who were on board of her by the appearance of a purſuit, we brought to, and ſhe ſailed ahead of us. We might have ſpoken to them; but Captain Gore perceiving, by their manœuvres, that they were highly terrified, was unwilling to increaſe their apprehenſions; and, imagining that we ſhould have many better opportunities of a communication with the Japaneſe, ſuffered them to retire without interruption. According to the moſt probable conjectures we were enabled to form, the veſſel was of the burthen of 40 tons; and there ſeemed to be ſix men on board her. She had only one maſt, whereon was hoiſted a quadrangular ſail, extended aloft by a yard, the braces of which worked forwards. Three pieces of black cloth came half way down the ſail, at an equal diſtance from each other. The veſſel was lower in the middle than at each end; and from her figure we ſuppoſed, that ſhe could not ſail otherwiſe than large. At noon, the wind blew freſh, accompanied with much rain. By three o'clock it had increaſed in ſo great a degree, that we were reduced to our courſes. The ſea, at the ſame time, ran as high as any of our people ever remember to have ſeen it. About eight o'clock, in the evening,

Engraved for PORTLOCK's New COLLECTION of VOYAGES & TRAVELS.



AMIDA, a DEITY of JAPAN,
with the manner in which his Votaries
drown themselves to his honour.

Publiſhed by Alexr. Hogg March 22. 1794.

BRITISH
7 FE 90
MUSEUM

the gale, without the ſmalleſt diminution of violence, ſhifted to the W. and by producing a ſudden ſwell, in a direction contrary to that which had before prevailed, cauſed our ſhips to labour and ſtrain exceedingly. During the ſtorm, we had ſeveral of our ſails ſplit. They had, indeed, been bent for ſo long a time, and were worn ſo thin, that this accident had happened lately in both veſſels almoſt daily; particularly when the ſails were ſtiff, and heavy with rain, in which caſe they became leſs capable of bearing the ſhocks of the boiſterous and variable winds we experienced occaſionally. On Saturday, the 30th at noon, we obſerved in lat. 36 deg. 41 min. long. 142 deg. 6 min. In the afternoon, the wind ſhifting to the N. E. we ſtood to the S. at the diſtance of 18 leagues from the ſhore. On the 31ſt, at two o'clock A. M. the wind veered round to the W. and blew in violent ſqualls, accompanied with lightning and rain.

Monday, November the 1ſt, the wind ſhifted to the S. E. and was attended with fair weather; in conſequence of which, we obtained, with four different quadrants, 42 ſets of diſtances of the moon, from the ſun and ſtars, each ſet comprehending ſix obſervations. Theſe nearly coinciding with each other, we determined, at noon, by obſervation, our lat. to be 35 deg. 17 min. and our long. with great accuracy, to be 141 deg. 32. min. At two o'clock, we again made land towards the W. diſtant 13 leagues. A hummock to the northward, which had an inſular appearance, bore N. N. W. half W. We ſteered for the land till between five and ſix, when we hauled our wind to the S. At this time we deſcried to the weſtward a mountain of extraordinary height, with a round ſummit, riſing far inland. In its neighbourhood the coaſt is of a moderate elevation; but, to the S. of the hummock iſland, there appeared at a conſiderable diſtance up the country, a ridge of hills, extending towards the mountain, and which might perhaps join it. As the weather, in the morning of the 2nd, had a very threatening appearance, and the wind was at S. S. E. we thought it adviſeable to quit the neighbourhood of the ſhore, and ſtand off towards the E. that the ſhips might not be entangled with the land. We were not deceived in our prognoſtications; for not long afterwards, a heavy gale began to blow, which continued till the next day, and was attended with rainy and hazy weather. On Wedneſday the 3d, in the morning, we found ourſelves by our reckoning, upwards of 50 leagues from the coaſt; which circumſtance, united to the conſideration of the very uncommon effect of currents we had already experienced, the advanced period of the year, the variable and uncertain ſtate of the weather, and the ſmall proſpect we had of any alteration for the better, induced Captain Gore to form the reſolution of leaving Japan, and proſecuting our voyage to China: to which facts may be added, that the coaſt of Japan, according to Kæmpfer's deſcription of it, is the moſt dangerous in all the known world; that it would have been exceedingly hazardous, in caſe of diſtreſs, to have run into any of the harbours of that country; where, if we may credit the moſt authentic writers, the averſion of the natives to a communication with ſtrangers, has prompted them to the commiſſion of the moſt flagrant acts of barbarity; that our veſſels were in a leaky condition; that the rigging was ſo rotten as to require continual repair; and that the ſails were almoſt entirely worn out, and incapable of withſtanding the vehemence of a gale of wind. As the violent currents, which ſet along the eaſtern coaſt of Japan, may perhaps be attended with dangerous conſequences to thoſe navigators, who are not acquainted with their extreme rapidity, we will here ſubjoin a ſummary account of their direction and force, as remarked by us from the 1ſt to the 8th of November. On the 1ſt, at the time when we were about 18 leagues to the E. of White Point, the current ſet at the rate of 3 miles in an hour, to the N. E. and by N. On the 2d, as we made a nearer approach to the ſhore, we obſerved, that it continued in a ſimilar direction, but was augmented in its rapidity to 5 miles an hour. As we receded from the coaſt, it again became more moderate, and inclined towards the E. On the 3d, at the diſtance of 60 leagues from the ſhore, it ſet, at the rate of 3 miles an hour, to the E. N. E. On the two following days, it turned to the ſouthward, and, at 120 leagues from the coaſt, its direction was S. E. and its rate did not exceed one mile and a half an hour. It again, on the 6th, and 7th, ſhifted to the N. E. and its force diminiſhed gradually till the 8th, at which time we could not perceive any current,

During the 4th and 5th of November, we proceeded to the ſouth-eaſtward, with very unſettled weather, having much lightening and rain. On Saturday, the 6th, we changed our courſe to the S. S. W. but about eight o'clock, in the evening, we were obliged to ſtand towards the S. E. On the 9th at noon, we obſerved in lat. 31 deg. 46 min. long. 146 deg. 20 min. Friday, the 12th, a moſt violent gale aroſe, which reduced us to the mizen-ſtay-ſail and fore-ſail. At noon, we were in lat. 27 deg. 36 min. and in long. 144 deg. 25 min. On the 13th, we were nearly in the ſame ſituation attributed to the iſland of St. Juan, yet we ſaw not the leaſt appearance of land. At ſix o'clock, P. M. we ſteered to W. S. W. Captain Gore thinking it uſeleſs to ſtand any longer to the S. S. W. as we were nearly in the ſame meridian with the Ladrones, or Marianne Iſlands, and at no very conſiderable diſtance from the track of the Manilla galleons. On Monday, the 15th, we ſaw three iſlands, and bore away for the S. point of the largeſt, upon which we obſerved a high barren hill, flattiſh at the top, and when ſeen from the W. S. W. preſents an evident volcanic crater. The earth, rock, or ſand, for it was not eaſy to diſtinguiſh of which its ſurface is compoſed, exhibited various colours, and a conſiderable part we conjectured to be ſulphur, both from its appearance to the eye, and the ſtrong ſulphureous ſmell perceived by us in our approach to the point. The Reſolution having paſſed nearer the land, ſeveral of our officers thought they diſcerned ſteams proceeding from the top of the hill. Theſe circumſtances induced the Commodore to beſtow on this diſcovery, the name of Sulphur Iſland. On Friday, the 26th, at ſix o'clock A. M. the wind having conſiderably abated, we ſet our top-ſails, let out the reefs, and bore away to the weſtward. At noon, we obſerved in lat. 21 deg. 12 min. long. 120 deg. 25 min. In the courſe of this day, we ſaw many tropic birds, and a flock of ducks; alſo porpoiſes and dolphins; and continued to paſs many pumice ſtones. We ſpent the night on our tacks; and on the 27th, at ſix o'clock A. M. we again made ſail to the W. in ſearch of the Baſhee Iſles. On the 28th, at four o'clock, A. M. we had ſight of the iſland of Prata. At noon, our lat. was 20 deg. 39 min. long. 116 deg. 45 min. The extent of the Prata ſhoal is conſiderable; for it is about 6 leagues from N. to S. and extends 4 leagues to the E. of the Iſland; its limits to the weſtward, we had not an opportunity of aſcertaining. We carried a preſs of ſail during the remainder of the day, and kept the wind, which now blew from the N. E. by N. in order to ſecure our paſſage to Macao.

On Monday, the 29th, in the morning, we paſſed ſome Chineſe fiſhing-boats, the crews of which eyed us with marks of great indifference. At noon, our lat. by obſervation, was 22 deg. 1 min. and, ſince the preceding noon, we had run 110 miles upon a N. W. courſe. On the 30th, in the morning, we ran along the Lema Iſles, which, like the other iſlands ſituated on this coaſt, are deſtitute of wood, and, as far as we had an opportunity of obſerving, devoid of cultivation. We now fired a gun, and diſplayed our colours, as a ſignal for a pilot. On the repetition of the ſignal, there was an excellent race between four Chineſe boats; and Captain Gore engaged with the perſon who arrived firſt, to conduct the ſhip to the Typa, for the ſum of 30 dollars, ſending word, at the ſame time to Captain King, that as he could eaſily follow with the Diſcovery, that expence might be ſaved to him. In a ſhort time afterwards a ſecond pilot got on board, and immediately laying hold of the wheel, began to order the ſails to be trimmed. This gave riſe to a violent altercation, which was at length compromiſed, by agreeing to divide the money between them. In obedience to the inſtructions from the Lords of the Admiralty, it now became neceſſary to demand of the officers and men, belonging to both ſhips, their journals, and what other papers they might have in their poſſeſſion, relative to the hiſtory of the voyage. At the ſame time Captain King gave the Diſcovery's people to underſtand, that whatever papers they wiſhed ſhould not be ſent to the Lords of the Admiralty, he would ſeal up in their preſence, and preſerve in his cuſtody till the intentions of their Lordſhips, reſpecting the publication of the hiſtory of the voyage, were accompliſhed, after which, he ſaid they ſhould be faithfully reſtored to them. The Captain obſerves upon thisoccaſion, that it is but doing juſtice to his company to declare, that, as to the crew, they were the beſt diſpoſed, and the moſt obedient men he ever knew, though the greateſt part of them were very young, and had never ſerved before in a ſhip of war. The ſame propoſals were made to the people of the Reſolution, and inſtantly complied with.

We continued working to windward, by the direction of our pilot till about ſix o'clock P. M. when we let go our anchors, he being of opinion, that the tide was now ſetting againſt us. During the afternoon, we ſtood on our tacks, between the Grand Ladrone and the iſland of Potoe, having paſſed to the eaſt of the latter. At nine o'clock we again caſt anchor in ſix fathoms water: the town of Macao being at the diſtance of 9 or 10 miles, in a N. W. direction; and the iſland of Potoe bearing S. half W. ſeven miles diſtant.

On the 2d of December, in the morning, one of the Chineſe contractors, called Compradors, came on board, and ſold us as much beef as weighed 200 weight, together with a conſiderable quantity of greens, oranges, and eggs. In the evening Captain Gore ſent Mr. King on ſhore to viſit the Portugueſe Governor, and to requeſt his aſſiſtance in procuring refreſhments, which he thought might be done on more reaſonable terms than the Comprador would undertake to furniſh them; with whom we had agreed for a daily ſupply; for which, however, he inſiſted on our paying him before-hand. Upon Mr. King's arrival at the citadel, the Fort-Major informed him that the governor was ſick, and not able to ſee company. Having acquainted the Major with his deſire of proceeding immediately to Canton, the former told him, that they could not perſume to provide a boat, till permiſſion had been obtained from the Hoppo, or officer of the cuſtoms; and that it was neceſſary to apply, for this purpoſe, to the Chineſe government at Canton. When the Captain was returning, the Portugueſe officer aſked him, if he did not mean to viſit the Engliſh gentlemen at Macao? This queſtion gave him inexpreſſible pleaſure. He proceeded immediately to the houſe of one of his countrymen; from whom he received information of the French war, and of the continuance of the American war; and that five ſail of Engliſh ſhips were now at Wampu, near Canton, in China. The intelligence we had gained concerning the ſtate of affairs in Europe, rendered us the more anxious to accelerate our departure as much as we poſſibly could. The firſt thing that claimed the attention of the Commodore, was to provide as well as he could for the general ſafety of the people under his command, on their return home. The news of a French war, without letting us know the order iſſued by the King of France in our favour, give us much concern. Our ſhips were ill fitted for war; the decks fore and aft, being finiſhed fluſh, had no covering for men or officers; it was therefore thought neceſſary to raiſe a kind of parapet, muſquet-proof, on both decks; and likewiſe to ſtrengthen the cabins as much as poſſible in caſe of action. On Thurſday, the 9th, we received an anſwer from the Engliſh ſupercargoes at Canton, in which they promiſed to exert their moſt ſtrenuous endeavours in procuring the ſupplies of which we were in want, with all poſſible diſpatch; and that a paſſport ſhould be ſent for one of our officers. Friday, the 10th, an Engliſh merchant, from one of our Eaſt-Indian ſettlements, made application to Captain Gore for the aſſiſtance of a few of his people, to navigate as far as Canton a veſſel which he had purchaſed at Macao. The Commodore conſidering this as a good opportunity for Captain King to repair to that city, gave orders, that he ſhould take with him his ſecond lieutenant, the lieutenant of the marines, and 10 ſailors. Accordingly, they quitted the harbour of Macao, on Saturday, the 11th; and as they approached the Bocca Tygris, which is near 40 miles diſtant from Macao, the coaſt of China appeared to the eaſtward in white ſteep cliffs. Their progreſs being retarded by contrary winds, and the lightneſs of the veſſel, they did not arrive at Wampu, which is only nine leagues from the Bocca Tygris, till Saturday, the 18th. Wampu is a ſmall town, off which the ſhips of various nations, who trade with the Chineſe, are ſtationed, in order to receive their reſpective ladings. At Wampu, Captain King embarked in a Sampane, or Chineſe boat, the moſt convenient for paſſangers that we ever ſaw; and in the evening we reached Canton, and diſembarked at the Engliſh Factory, where the Captain was received with every mark of civility and reſpect. Meſſrs. Fitzhugh, Bevan, and Rapier, compoſed, at that time, the Select Committee; and the former of theſe gentlemen acted as preſident. They immediately gave the Captain an inventory of thoſe ſtores with which the Eaſt-India ſhips were able to ſupply us, and he had the pleaſure to find, that they were ready to be ſhipped, and that the proviſions we might have occaſion for might be had at a day's notice. Being deſirous of making our ſtay here as ſhort as poſſible, the Captain requeſted, that the gentlemen would endeavour to procure junks for us the next day; but we were ſoon convinced by them, that patience is an indiſpenſable virtue in China. After the Captain had waited ſeveral days for the iſſue of his negociation with the Chineſe, and was conſidering what ſteps he ſhould take, the commander of a country ſhip preſented him with a letter from Captain Gore, whereby he was informed of that Commander being engaged to bring our party from Canton, and to deliver our ſupplies, at his own hazard, in the Typa. All difficulties being thus removed, Captain King had leiſure to beſtow ſome attention on the purchaſe of our ſtores and proviſions, which he completed on Sunday, the 26th, and, on the following day, the whole ſtock was conveyed on board. As Canton was likely to be the moſt advantageous market for furs, the Commodore had deſired Captain King to take with him about 20 ſkins of ſea-otters; moſt of which had been the property of our deceaſed Commanders; and to diſpoſe of them at the beſt price he could obtain. The Engliſh ſupercargoes being informed of theſe circumſtances, they directed him to a member of the Hong (a ſociety of the principal merchants of the city) who being fully appriſed of the nature of the buſineſs, ſeemed to be ſenſible of the delicacy of the Captain's ſituation, and therefore aſſured him, that, in an affair of this kind, he ſhould conſider himſelf as a mere agent, without ſeeking any profit for himſelf. The ſkins being laid before this merchant, he examined them over and over again with particular attention; and at laſt informed Captain King, that he could not think of offering more than 300 dollars for them. As the Captain knew he had not offered one half of their value, he, therefore, in his turn, demanded 1000 dollars; the Chineſe merchant then advanced to five, and, at length to 700 dollars; upon which the Captain lowered his demands to 900. Here each of them declaring that he would not recede, they parted; but the Chineſe ſpeedily returned, and propoſed finally, that they ſhould divide the difference, which the Captain agreed to, and received 800 dollars. The ſubſequent remarks, relative to Canton, were collected by Captain King, from the intelligence which he received from ſeveral Engliſh gentlemen; who had reſided a long time near that city.

Canton, containing the old and new town, with the ſuburbs, is about 10 miles in circumference. The number of its inhabitants, as near as can be computed, may be from 100 to 150,000. Excluſive of whom there are 40,000 who reſide conſtantly in Borges, called Sampares,

res, or floating houſes upon the river. They are moored in rows cloſe to each other, with a narrow paſſage, at intervals, for the boats to paſs up and down the river.

The ſtreets of this city are long, narrow, and deſtitute of uniformity. They are well paved with large ſtones, and, in general, kept extremely clean. The houſes are built of brick, and are only one ſtory high. They have, for the moſt part, two or three courts backwards, in which are erected the warehouſes for the reception of merchandize; and, in the houſes within the city, are the apartments for the females. Some of the meaner ſort of people, though very few, have their habitations compoſed of wood.

Thoſe that belong to the European factors, are built on a fine quay, having a regular facade of two ſtories towards the river. They are conſtructed, with reſpect to the inſide, partly after the Chineſe, and partly after the European mode. Adjoining to them are a conſiderable number of houſes which belong to the Chineſe; and are let out by them to the commanders of veſſels, and to merchants, who make only an occaſional ſtay. As no European is permitted to take his wife with him to Canton, the Engliſh ſupercargoes live together at one common table, which is maintained by the Company, and each of them has alſo an apartment appropriated to himſelf, conſiſting of three or four rooms. The period of their reſidence rarely exceeds eight months in a year; and as during that time, they are almoſt conſtantly employed in the ſervice of the Company, they may ſubmit, with the leſs uneaſineſs, to the reſtrictions under which they live. They ſeldom make any viſits within the walls of Canton, except on public occaſions. Nothing contributed more to give Captain King an unfavourable opinion of the Chineſe, than his finding that ſeveral of them who had reſided in that country for near 15 ſucceſſive years, had never formed any ſocial connection or friendſhip. When the laſt ſhip departs from Wampu, they are all under the neceſſity of retiring to Macao; but they leave behind them all the money they poſſeſs in ſpecie, which, Mr. King was informed, ſometimes amounts to 100,000l. ſterling, and for which they have no other ſecurity than the ſeals of the Viceroy, the Mandarines, and the merchants of the Hong: a ſtriking proof of the excellent police maintained in China.

During our continuance at Canton, Mr. King accompanied one of the Engliſh gentlemen on a viſit to a perſon of the firſt diſtinction in the place. They were received in a long room or gallery, at the further end of which a table was placed, with a large chair behind it, and a row of chairs extending from it, on both ſides, down the room. The captain having been previouſly inſtructed, that the point of politeneſs conſiſted in remaining unſeated as long as poſſible, readily ſubmitted to this piece of etiquette; after which he and his friend were treated with tea, and ſome freſh and preſerved fruits. Their entertainer was very corpulent, had a dull heavy countenance, and diſplayed great gravity in his deportment. He had learned to ſpeak a little broken Engliſh and Portugueze. After his two gueſts had taken their refreſhment, he conducted them about his houſe and garden; and when he had ſhewn them all the improvements he was making, they took their leave.

The Captain being deſirous of avoiding the trouble and delay that might attend an application for paſſports, as well as of ſaving the unneceſſary expence of hiring a ſampan, which he was informed amounted at leaſt to 12 pounds ſterling, had hitherto deſigned to go along with the ſupplies to Macao, in the country merchant's ſhip we mentioned before: but receiving an invitation from two Engliſh gentlemen, who had found means to procure paſſports for four, he accepted, together with Mr. Phillips, their offer of places in a Chineſe boat, and intruſted Mr. Lannyon with the ſuperintendance of the men and ſtores, which were to ſail the following day.

On Sunday, the 26th, in the evening, Captain King took his leave of the ſupercargoes, after having returned them thanks for their many favours; among which muſt be mentioned a preſent of a conſiderable quantity of tea, for the uſe of the companies of both ſhips, and a copious collection of Engliſh periodical publications. The latter proved a valuable acquiſition to us, as they not only ſerved to beguile our impatience, in the proſecution of our tedious voyage homewards, but alſo enabled us to return not wholly unacquainted with what had been tranſacting in our native country during our abſence. On the 27th, at one o'clock in the morning, Meſſrs. King and Phillips, and, the two Engliſh gentlemen, quitted Canton, and, about the ſame hour of the ſucceeding day, arrived at Macao, having paſſed down a channel ſituated to the weſt of that by which we had come up.

In the abſence of our party from Macao, a briſk traffic had been carrying on with the Chineſe for our ſea-otter-ſkins, the value of which had augmented every day. One of our ſailors diſpoſed of his ſtock, alone, for 800 dollars; and a few of the beſt ſkins, which were clean, and had been carefully preſerved, produced 120 dollars each. The total amount of the value, in goods and caſh, that was obtained for the furs of both our veſſels, we are confident was not leſs than 2,000l. ſterling; and it was the general opinion, that at leaſt two-thirds of the quantity we had originally procured from the Americans, were by this time ſpoiled and worn out, or had been beſtowed as preſents, and otherwiſe diſpoſed of in Kamtſchatka. If, in addition to theſe facts, we conſider, that we at firſt collected the furs without having juſt ideas of their real value; that moſt of them had been worn by the ſavages from whom we purchaſed them; that little regard was afterwards ſhewn to their preſervation; that they were frequently made uſe of as bed-clothes, and likewiſe for other purpoſes, during our cruiſe to the northward; and that, in all probability, we never received the full value for them in China, the benefits that might accrue from a voyage to that part of the American coaſt where we obtained them, undertaken with commercial veiws, will certainly appear of ſufficient importance to claim the public attention. So great was the rage with which our ſeamen were poſſeſſed to return to Cook's River, and there procure another cargo of ſkins, by which they might be enabled to make their fortunes, that, at one time, they were almoſt on the point of proceeding to a mutiny. And Captain King acknowledges, that he could not refrain from indulging himſelf in a project, which was firſt ſuggeſted to him by the diſappointment we had met with in being compelled to leave the Japaneſe Archipelago, as well as the northern coaſt of China, unexplored; and he is of opinion, that this object may ſtill be happily attained, by means of our Eaſt-India Company, not only with trifling expence, but even with the proſpect of very beneficial conſequences. The ſtate of affairs at home, or perhaps greater difficulties in the accompliſhment of his plan than he had foreſeen, have hitherto prevented its being carried into execution; but, as the ſcheme ſeems to be well contrived, the reader will not be diſpleaſed with our inſerting it here.

In the firſt place, Capt. King propoſes, that the Eaſt-India Company's China ſhips ſhould, each, carry an additional number of men, making 100 in the whole. Two veſſels, one of 200 tons, and the other of 150, might, with proper notice, (as Mr. King was informed) be purchaſed at Canton; and, as victualling is as cheap there as in Europe, he has calculated that they might be completely equipped for ſea, with one year's proviſions and pay, for the ſum of 6,000l. including the purchaſe. The expence of the requiſite articles for barter is very inconſiderable.

Captain King particularly recommends that each of the ſhips ſhould have a forge, five tons of unwrought iron, and a ſkilful ſmith, with an apprentice and journeyman, who might occaſionally make ſuch tools, as the Indians ſhould appear to have the greateſt inclination for poſſeſſing. For, though half a dozen of the fineſt ſkins, obtained by us, were purchaſed with twelve large green glaſs beads, yet it is very certain, that the fancy of theſe people, for ornamental articles, is extremely capricious and variable; and that the only ſure commodity for their market is iron. To this might be added ſeveral bales of coarſe woollen cloth, two or three barrels of glaſs and copper trinkets, and a few groſs of large pointed caſe-knives. He then propoſes, that two veſſels, not only for the greater ſecurity of the voyage, but becauſe ſingle ſhips ought never, in his opinion, to be ſent out for the purpoſe of diſcovery. For where riſques are frequently to be run, and uncertain and dangerous experiments tried, it can by no means be expected that ſingle ſhips ſhould venture ſo far, as where ſome ſecurity is provided againſt an unfortunate accident. When the ſhips are prepared for ſea, they will ſail with the firſt S. W. monſoon, which uſually ſets in about the commencement of the month of April. They will ſteer a northward courſe, with this wind, along the Chineſe coaſt, beginning to make a more accurate ſurvey from the mouth of the Nankin river, or the river Kyana, in the 30th degree of latitude, which is ſuppoſed to be the remoteſt limit of this coaſt hitherto viſited by European veſſels. The extent of the great gulph called Whang Hay, or the Yellow Sea, being at preſent unknown, it may be left to the Commander's diſcretion, to proceed up it as far as he may think proper: he muſt be cautious, however, not to entangle himſelf in it too far, leſt he ſhould not have ſufficient time left for the proſecution of the remainder of his voyage. The ſame diſcretion may be uſed, when he has reached the ſtraits of Teſſoi, with regard to the iſlands of Jeſo, which, if the wind and weather ſhould be favourable, he muſt not neglect to explore. Having arrived in the latitude of 51 deg. 40 min. where he will make the moſt ſoutherly point of the iſle of Sagaleen, beyond which we have a conſiderable knowledge of the ſea of Okotſk, he will ſteer towards the S. probably about the beginning of June, and exert his endeavours to fall in with the moſt ſouthern of the Kurile iſlands. If the accounts of the Ruſſians may be depended on, Ooroop, or Nadeſchda, will furniſh the ſhips with a commodious harbour, where they may recruit their wood and water, and provide themſelves with ſuch refreſhments as the place may afford. Near the end of June the commander will direct his courſe to the Shumagins, whence he will proceed to Cook's River, purchaſing, in his progreſs, as many ſkins us poſſible, without loſing too much time, ſince he ought to ſail again to the ſouthward, and trace the coaſt with the utmoſt accuracy between the 56th and 50th degrees of latitude, the ſpace where contrary winds drove us out of ſight of land. We think it proper to obſerve here, that Captain King conſiders the purchaſe of ſkins, in this expedition, as a ſecondary concern, for defraying the expence; and, from our experience in the preſent voyage, there is no reaſon to doubt that 250 ſkins, each worth 100 dollars, may be obtained without loſs of time; particularly as they will, in all probability, be met with along the coaſt to the S. of Cook's River.

The commander of this expedition, after having continued about three months on the American coaſt, will ſet out on his return to China in the former part of October, taking care, in his route, to avoid, as much as poſſible, the tracks of preceding navigators. All that remains to be added on this ſubject, is, that if the fur trade ſhould become an eſtabliſhed object of Indian commerce, many opportunities will occur of completing whatever may have been left unfiniſhed, in the voyage of which the outlines are here delineated.

During our abſence, a very ludicrous alteration took place in the dreſs of all our crew, in conſequence of the barter which the Chineſe had carried on with us for our ſea-otter ſkins. On our arrival in the Typa, not only the ſailors, but likewiſe the younger officers, were extremely ragged in their apparel; for, as the voyage had now exceeded, almoſt by a year, the time it was at firſt ſuppoſed we ſhould continue at ſea, the far greater part of our original ſtock of European clothes had been long ago worn out, or repaired and patched up with ſkins, and the different manufactures we had met with in the courſe of the expedition. Theſe were now mixed and eked out with the gayeſt ſilks and cottons that China could produce.

On the 30th, being Friday, Mr. Lannyon arrived with the ſtores and proviſions, which, without delay, were ſtowed in due proportion on board both the ſhips. While in the Typa, Captain King was ſhewn, in the garden of an Engliſh gentleman at Macao, the rock, under which, according to traditional accounts, Camoens, the celebrated Portugueſe poet, was accuſtomed to ſit and compoſe his Luſiad. It is an arch of conſiderable height, conſiſting of one ſolid ſtone, and forming the entrance of a grotto dug out of the elevated ground behind it. Large ſpreading trees overſhadow the rock, which commands a beautiful and extenſive proſpect of the ſea, and the iſlands diſperſed about it. During our continuance in the Typa, we heard nothing with reſpect to the meaſurement of the ſhips; we may therefore reaſonably conclude, that the point ſo ſtrongly conteſted, in Commodore Anſon's time, by the Chineſe, has, in conſequence of his firmneſs and reſolution, never ſince been inſiſted on. By the obſervations made while our veſſels lay here, the harbour of Macao is ſituated in the lat. of 22 deg. 12 min. N. and the long. of 113 deg. 47 min. E. our anchoring place, in the Typa, in lat. 22 deg. 9 min. 20 ſec. long. 113 deg. 48 min. 34 ſec. E. It was high water in the Typa, on the full and change days, at a quarter after five o'clock; and in the harbour of Macao, at 50 minutes paſt five: the greateſt riſe was ſix feet one inch. We ſhall conclude theſe remarks, and this chapter, with the prices of labour, and a few articles of proviſions in China.

PRICES of LABOUR and PROVISIONS at CANTON.

	£.	S.	D.	
A Coolee, or Porter	0	0	8	Per Day
A Taylor	0	0	5	and rice
A Handicraftſman	0	0	8	ditto

A common Labourer from 3d. to 5d. per day

A Woman's labour conſiderably cheaper.

	£.	S.	D.	
Butter	0	2	$4\frac{4}{5}$	Per Catty
Beef	0	0	$2\frac{3}{4}$	or 18 oz.
Calf	1	6	$9\frac{3}{5}$	each
Ducks	0	0	$5\frac{1}{2}$	Per Catty
Ditto, wild	0	1	$0\frac{4}{5}$	each
Eggs	0	2	0	Per 100
Frogs	0	0	$6\frac{2}{5}$	Per Catty
Fowls, Capons, &c.	0	0	$7\frac{2}{5}$	ditto
Geeſe	0	0	$6\frac{2}{5}$	ditto
Ham	0	1	$2\frac{2}{5}$	ditto
Hog, alive	0	0	$4\frac{1}{4}$	ditto
Kid, ditto	0	0	$4\frac{3}{4}$	ditto
Milk	0	0	$1\frac{1}{4}$	ditto
Pork	0	0	$7\frac{1}{5}$	ditto
Pig	0	0	$5\frac{3}{5}$	ditto
Pheaſants	0	0	$5\frac{1}{4}$	each
Partridges	0	0	$9\frac{3}{5}$	ditto
Pigeons	0	0	$5\frac{1}{5}$	ditto
Rabbits	0	1	4	ditto
Sheep	3	6	8	ditto
Spices	0	16	8	Per Catty
Soy	0	0	$1\frac{3}{5}$	ditto
Samſui ditto	0	0	$2\frac{2}{5}$	ditto
Turtle	0	0	$9\frac{3}{5}$	ditto

CHAP.

C H A P. XXI.

Two mariners belonging to the Reſolution make off with the ſix-oared cutter—Defenſible ſtate of the two ſhips—They unmoor and leave the Typa—Orders of the French Court relative to Captain Cook—Paſs Pulo Sapatra, and anchor in the harbour of Pulo Condore—Tranſactions, and incidents during our ſtay—A mandarine viſits the ſhips—Information received from him—Reference for the deſcription of Pulo Condore, and other iſlands to the firſt and ſecond Hiſtories of Captain Cook's Voyages—Preſents to the Mandarine, and the biſhop of Adrian—Aſtronomical and nautical obſervations—Departure of the Reſolution and Diſcovery from Pulo Condore—Enter the ſtraits of Banca—Deſcription of the country that borders thereon—Enter the ſtraits of Sunda—Mr. Williamſon ſent on board a Dutch ſhip to procure intelligence—The two ſhips anchor at Cracatoa—That iſland deſcribed—Proceed to Prince's Iſland—Unhealthy effects of the climate of Java—A ſudden ſtorm—Steer for the Cape of Good Hope—Anchor in Simon's Bay—A viſit to the governor—An account of Falſe Bay, Simon's Bay, Noah's Ark, and Seal Iſland—Set ſail for England; and ſtand to the weſt of the iſlands of Aſcenſion and St. Helena—Deſcry the weſtern coaſt of Ireland, and endeavour, in vain, to get into Port Galway—Steer to the north of Lewis Iſland—Both ſhips anchor at Stromneſs—And on Wedneſday, the 4th of October, arrive ſafe at the Nore, after an abſence of 4 years, 2 months, and 22 days—Concluding Remarks.

A. D. 1780. ON Tueſday, the 11th of January, two ſailors, John Cave quarter-maſter, and Robert Spencer belonging to the Reſolution, went off with a ſix-oared cutter; and though the moſt diligent ſearch was made, both this and the following morning, we could not gain any intelligence of them. It was imagined, that theſe ſeamen had been ſeduced by the hopes of acquiring a fortune, if they ſhould return to the fur iſlands. On the 12th, at noon, we unmoored, and ſcaled the guns, which, on board the Diſcovery, amounted at this time to ten; ſo that her people by means of four additional ports, could fight ſeven on a ſide. In the Reſolution likewiſe, the number of guns had been augmented from 12 to 16; and, in each of the ſhips, all other precautions were taken to give our inconſiderable force a reſpectable appearance. We conſidered it as our duty to furniſh ourſelves with theſe means of defence, though there was ſome reaſon to believe, that they had in a great meaſure been rendered ſuperfluous by the generoſity of our enemies; for we were informed, by the public prints, which Captain King had brought with him from Canton, of inſtructions having been found on board all the French ſhips of war, that had been taken in Europe, importing, that their Commanders, if they ſhould happen to fall in with the Reſolution and Diſcovery, were to ſuffer them to proceed unmoleſted on their voyage. It was alſo reported, that the American Congreſs had given ſimilar orders to the veſſels employed in their ſervice. This intelligence being further confirmed by the private letters of ſome of the ſuper-cargoes, Captain King deemed it incumbent on him, in return for the liberal exceptions which our enemies had made in our favour, to refrain from embracing any opportunities of capture, and to maintain the ſtricteſt neutrality during the whole of our voyage. Having got under ſail about two o'clock, P. M. we paſſed the fort of Macao, and ſaluted the garriſon with eleven four-pounders, which they anſwered with an equal number. We were under the neceſſity of warping out into the entrance of the Typa, which we gained by eight o'clock in the evening of the 13th; and lay there till nine o'clock the following morning, when we ſtood, with a freſh eaſterly breeze, to the S. between Wungboo and Potoe. At four in the afternoon, the Ladrone was about two leagues diſtant in an eaſtern direction. On Saturday, the 15th, at noon, we obſerved in lat. 18 deg. 57 min. long. 114 deg. 13 min. On the 16th, we ſtruck ſoundings over Macclesfield Bank, and found the depth of water to be 50 fathoms, over a bottom conſiſting of white ſand and ſhells. We computed this part of the bank to be ſituated in lat. 15 deg. 51 min. and in long. 114 deg. 20 min. Thurſday, the 19th, at four o'clock P. M. we had in view Pulo Sapatra, bearing N. W. by W. and diſtant about four leagues. Having paſſed this iſland, we ſtood to the weſtward; and on the 20th made the little group of iſlands known by the name of Pulo Condore, at one of which we anchored, in ſix fathoms water. The harbour where we now moored, has its entrance from the N. W. and affords the beſt ſhelter during the N. E. monſoon. Its entrance bore W. N. W. quarter W. and N. by W. the opening at the upper end bore S. E. by E. three quarters E. and we were about 2 furlongs diſtant from the ſhore. On the 21ſt, early in the morning, parties were ſent out to cut wood, the Commodore's principal motive for touching at this iſland being to ſupply the ſhips with that article. None of the natives having as yet made their appearance, notwithſtanding two guns had been fired at different times, Captain Gore thought it adviſeable to land, and go in ſearch of them. Accordingly, on Sunday, the 22nd, he deſired Captain King to attend him. They proceeded in their boats along ſhore for the ſpace of two miles, when perceiving a road that led into a wood, they landed. Here Captain King left the Commodore, and, attended by a midſhipman, and four armed ſailors, purſued the path, which appeared to point directly acroſs the iſland. They proceeded through a thick wood up a ſteep hill, to the diſtance of a mile, when after deſcending, they arrived at ſome huts. Captain King ordered the party to ſtay without, leſt the ſight of armed men ſhould terrify the inhabitants, while he entered and reconnoitered alone. He found, in one of the huts, an elderly man, who was in a great fright, and preparing to make off with the moſt valuable effects. However a few ſigns, particularly that moſt ſignificant one of holding out a handful of dollars, and then pointing to a herd of buffaloes, and the fowls that were running about the huts in great numbers, left him without any doubts as to the objects of their viſit. He pointed towards a place where the town ſtood, and made them comprehend, that by going thither, all their wants would be ſupplied. On their firſt coming out of the wood, a herd of buffaloes, to the number of 20 at leaſt, came running towards them, toſſing up their heads, ſnuffing the air, and roaring in a hideous manner. They had followed them to the huts, and now ſtood drawn up in a body, at a little diſtance; and the old man made them underſtand, that it would be exceeding dangerous to move, till they were driven into the woods; but ſo enraged were the animals grown, at the ſight of them, that this was not effected without a good deal of time and difficulty. The men not being able to accompliſh it, they called to their aſſiſtance a few little boys, who ſoon drove them out of ſight. Afterward they had an opportunity of obſerving, that in driving theſe animals, and ſecuring them, which is done by putting a rope through a hole made in their noſtrils, little boys were always employed, who could ſtroke and handle them with impunity at times, when the men durſt not approach them. Having got rid of the buffaloes, they were conducted to the town, which conſiſts of between 20 and 30 houſes, built cloſe together; beſides 6 or 7 others that are ſcattered about the beach. The roof, the two ends, and the ſide fronting the country, are neatly conſtructed of reeds; the oppoſite ſide, facing the ſea, is entirely open; but, by means of a kind of bamboo ſcreens, they can exclude or let in as much of the ſun and air as they pleaſe. They were conducted to the largeſt houſe, where the chief, or captain, as they called him, reſided, but he was abſent, or would not be ſeen; therefore no purchaſes could, as they ſaid, be made. At two o'clock, in the afternoon, they returned to the ſhips; as did likewiſe ſeveral of our ſhooting parties from the woods, about the ſame time. At five o'clock, ſix men in a proa, rowed up to the ſhips, from the upper-end of the harbour; and one of them, who was a perſon of decent appearance, introduced himſelf to Captain Gore, with an eaſe and politeneſs which indicated that he had been accuſtomed to paſs his time in other company than what Condore afforded. He brought with him a ſort of certificate, written in the French language, of which the following is a tranſlation.

"Peter George, Biſhop of Adrian, Apoſtolic Vicar of Cochin-China, &c. The little Mandarin, who is the bearer hereof, is the real Envoy of the Court to Pulo Condore, to attend there for the reception of all European veſſels, whoſe deſtination is to approach that place, &c. A Sai-Gon, 10 Auguſt, 1779."

He gave us to underſtand, that he was the Mandarin mentioned in it; and produced another paper, which was a letter ſealed up, and addreſſed to the Captains of any European ſhips that may touch at Condore. From this letter, and the whole of Luco's converſation, the Mandarin, we had little doubt, that the veſſel he expected was a French one. We found, at the ſame time, that he was deſirous of not loſing his errand, and was not unwilling to become our pilot. We could not diſcover from him the preciſe buſineſs which the ſhip he was waiting for deſigned to proſecute in Cochin-China. We ſhall only add, that he acquainted us, that the French veſſels might perhaps have touched at Tirnon, and from thence ſail to Cochin-China; and as no intelligence had been received, he imagined that this was moſt likely to have been the caſe. Captain Gore afterwards enquired, what ſupplies could be procured from this iſland. Luco replied, he had two buffaloes belonging to him, which were at our ſervice, and that conſiderable numbers of thoſe animals might be purchaſed for four or five dollars each. We had purchaſed eight of theſe animals; and on the 23rd, early in the morning, the launches of both ſhips were diſpatched to the town to bring them away, but our people were much at a loſs to bring them on board. After conſulting with the Mandarin, it was determined, that they ſhould be driven through the wood, and over the hill, down to the bay, where our two Captains had landed. This plan was accordingly executed; but the untractableneſs, and amazing ſtrength of the animals rendered it a ſlow and difficult operation. The mode of conducting them was, by putting ropes through their noſtrils, and round their horns; but when they were once enraged at the ſight of our people, they became ſo furious, that they ſometimes tore aſunder rhe cartilage of the noſtril, through which the ropes paſſed, and ſet themſelves at liberty; at other times they broke the trees, to which it was found neceſſary to faſten them. On ſuch occaſions, all the endeavours of our men, for the recovery of them, would have been unſucceſsful, without the aid of ſome little boys, whom the buffaloes would ſuffer to approach, and by whoſe puerile managements their rage was quickly appeaſed; and when brought down to the beach, it was by their aſſiſtance, in twiſting ropes about their legs, in the manner they were directed, that our people were enabled to throw them down, and, by that means, to get them into the boats; and, a circumſtance very ſingular, they had not been a whole day on board, before they were as tame as poſſible. Captain King kept a male and a female for a conſiderable time, which became great favourites with the ſeamen. Thinking a breed of theſe animals, ſome of which weighed, when dreſſed, 700 pounds, would be an acquiſition of ſome value, he intended to have brought them with him to England; but that deſign was fruſtrated by an incurable hurt which one of them received at ſea. Beſides the buffaloes, of which there are ſeveral large herds in this iſland, we purchaſed from the natives ſome remarkably fine fat hogs, of the Chineſe breed. We procured three or four of the wild ſort; ſeveral of whoſe tracks were ſeen in the woods; which alſo abound with monkeys and ſquirrels, but ſo ſhy, that it was difficult to ſhoot them. Here we found the cabbage-tree, and other ſucculent greens, with which our people made very free without aſking queſtions. Two wells of excellent water had been diſcovered, in conſequence of which part of the companies of both ſhips had been employed in providing a competent ſupply of it. Our numerous ſubſcribers will be pleaſed to recollect, that in our hiſtory of Captain Cook's firſt and ſecond voyages, we have given a conciſe, though comprehenſive account of Pulo Condore, Celebes, Sumatra, Java, the Philippine, Ladrones, and, in ſhort, all the principal iſlands in the Indian Sea; it therefore only now remains, during the remainder of our paſſage home, with a view of eſtabliſhing the credit and reputation of this work, and of rendering it the moſt complete undertaking of the kind extant, to mention a few particulars that came under our own obſervation, and which may be reckoned as improvements ſince the labours of former compilers, or the expeditions of prior navigators.

Pulo Condore ſignifies the iſland of Calabaſhes, its name being derived from two Malay words, Pulo implying an iſland, and Condore, a Calabaſh, great quantities of which fruit are produced here. Among the vegetable improvements of this iſland, may be reckoned the fields of rice that we obſerved; alſo cocoa-nuts, pomegranates, oranges, ſhaddocks, and various ſorts of pompions. We continued at this harbour till the 28th, when the little Mandarin took leave of us; at which time the Commodore gave him, at his requeſt, a letter of recommendation to the Commanders of any other veſſels that might put in here. He alſo beſtowed on him a handſome preſent, and gave him a letter for the biſhop of Adrian, together with a teleſcope, which he deſired might be preſented to him as a compliment for the favours we had received, through his means, at Pulo Condore. The latitude of the harbour is 8 deg. 40 min. N. and its longitude, deduced from many lunar obſervations, 106 deg. 18 min. 46 ſec. E. At full and change of the moon it was high water at 4 h. 15 m. apparent time; after which the water continued for 12 hours, without any perceptible alteration. The tranſition from ebbing to flowing was very quick, being in leſs than five minutes. The water roſe and fell ſeven feet four inches perpendicular.

On Friday, the 28th, we unmoored, and cleared the harbour. On the 30th, at one o'clock, P. M. we had ſight of Pulo Timoan, and at five, Pulo Puiſſang was ſeen in the direction of S. by E. three quarters E. At nine o'clock, we had, from the effect of ſome current, out-run our reckoning, and found ourſelves cloſe upon Pulo Apr, in the lat. of 2 deg. 46 min. N. long. 104 deg. 37 min. E. in conſequence of which we hauled the wind to the E. S. E. This courſe we proſecuted till midnight, and then ſteered S. S. E. for the ſtraits of Banca.

On Tueſday, the 1ſt of February, we obſerved in lat. 1 deg. 20 min. N. and our long. by a number of lunar obſervations, we found to be 105 deg. E. Towards ſun-ſet, we had a view of Pulo Panjang; at which time our lat. was 53 min. N. On the 2d, we paſſed the ſtraits of Sunda; and, at noon, we came in ſight of the ſmall iſlands known by the name of Dominis, lying off the eaſtern part of Lingen. At one o'clock, P. M. Pulo Taya made its appearance in the direction of S. W. by W. diſtant 7 leagues. On the 3d, at day-break, we had ſight of the three iſlands; and, not long afterwards, ſaw Monopin Hill, in the iſland of Banca. Having got to the W. of the ſhoal, named Frederic Endric, we entered the ſtraits of Banca, and bore away towards the S. On the 4th, in the morning, we proceeded down the ſtraits with the tide; and, at noon, the tide beginning to make againſt us, we caſt anchor, at the diſtance of about one league from what is denominated the Third Point, on the Sumatra ſhore; Monopin Hill bearing N. 54 deg. W. and our lat. being 2 deg. 22 min. S. long. 105 deg. 38 min. E. At three in the afternoon we weighed, and continued our courſe through the ſtraits with a gentle breeze. In paſſing theſe ſtraits, ſhips may make a nearer approach to the coaſt of Sumatra than to that of Banca. On Sunday, the 6th, in the morning, we paſſed to the W. of Luſepara; and at five o'clock, P. M. we deſcried the Siſters, in the direction of S. by W. half W. At ſeven we caſt anchor three leagues to the northward of thoſe iſlands. On the 7th, at five o'clock, A. M. we weighed, and in three hours afterwards we were in ſight of the Siſters. Theſe are two iſlands of very ſmall extent, plentifully ſtocked with wood, and ſituated in 50 deg. S. lat. and in long. 106 deg. 12 min. They lie nearly N. and S. from each other, encompaſſed by a reef of coral rocks. At noon, we had ſight of the iſland of Java; and about four in the afternoon, we perceived two veſſels in the Straits of Sunda; one of which lay at anchor near the mid-channel iſland, the other nearer the ſhore of Java. On the 8th, about eight o'clock in the morning, we weighed, and proceeded through the Straits of Sunda. On Wedneſday the 9th, between ten and eleven, Captain King was ordered by the commodore to make ſail towards a Dutch veſſel, that now came in ſight to the ſouthward, which we imagined was from Europe; and, according to the nature of the information that might be obtained from her, either join him at Cracatoa, or to proceed to the ſouth-eaſtern extremity of Prince's-Iſland, and there provide a ſupply of water, and wait for him. In compliance with theſe inſtructions Captain King bore down towards the Dutchman; and on the 10th, in the morning, Mr. Williamſon went on board her; where he was informed, that ſhe had been ſeven months from Europe, and three from the Cape of Good Hope; that, before her departure, the kings of France and Spain had declared war againſt his Britannic Majeſty; and that ſhe had left Sir Edward Hughes at the Cape with a ſquadron of men of war, and alſo a fleet of Eaſt-India ſhips. On the return of Mr. Williamſon, Captain King took the advantage of a fair breeze, and made ſail towards the iſland of Cracatoa, where he ſoon after perceived the Reſolution at anchor, and immediately diſpatched a boat to communicate to Captain Gore the intelligence procured by Mr. Williamſon. When we ſaw our conſort preparing, at the diſtance of near two leagues, to come to, we fired our guns, and diſplayed the ſignal for leading a-head, by hoiſting an Engliſh jack at the enſign ſtaff. This was intended to prevent the Diſcovery's anchoring, on account of the foul ground, which the maps on board our ſhip placed in this ſituation. However, as Captain King met with none, but, on the contrary, found a muddy bottom, and good anchoring ground, at the depth of 60 fathoms, he remained faſt till the return of the boat, which brought him orders, the enſuing morning to proceed to Prince's-Iſland.

The iſland of Cracatoa is the ſouthernmoſt of a cluſter of iſlands lying in the entrance of the Straits of Sunda. It has a lofty peaked hill at its ſouthern extremity, ſituated in lat. 6 deg. 9 min. S. and in long. 105 deg. 15 min. E. The whole circumference of the iſland does not exceed nine miles. The iſland of Sambouricou, or Tamarin, which ſtands 12 miles to the northward of Cracatoa, may eaſily be miſtaken for the latter, ſince it has a hill of nearly the ſame figure and dimenſions, ſituate likewiſe near its ſouth end. The lat. of the road where we caſt anchor is 8 deg. 6 min. S. long. by obſervation, 105 deg. 36 min. E. It is high water on the full and change days, at ſeven o'clock in the morning; and the water riſes three feet two inches perpendicular.

At three o'clock, A. M. on Friday, the 11th, the Diſcovery weighed anchor, and ſteered for Prince's-Iſland; and, at noon, ſhe came to, and moored off its eaſtern extremity. On Monday, the 14th, at day break, we deſcried our conſort, and, at two o'clock P. M. we anchored cloſe by her. By the 16th, both ſhips ſtarted their caſks, and had repleniſhed them with freſh water. In the evening the decks were cleared, and we prepared for ſea. On Saturday, the 19th, being favoured with a weſterly breeze, we broke ground, to our extreme ſatiſfaction, for the laſt time in the Straits of Sunda; and on the 20th, we had totally loſt ſight of Prince's-Iſland. If Mr. Lannyon had not been with us, we ſhould probably have met with ſome difficulty in finding the watering place: it may, therefore, not be improper to give a particular deſcription of its ſituation, for the benefit of ſubſequent navigators. The peaked hill on the iſland bears N. W. by N. from it. A remarkable tree, which grows on a coral reef, and is entirely detached from the adjacent ſhrubs ſtands juſt to the north of it; and a ſmall plot of reedy graſs, may be ſeen cloſe by it. Theſe marks will indicate the place where the pool diſcharges itſelf into the ſea; but the water here, as well as that which is in the pool, being in general ſalt, the caſks muſt be filled about 50 yards higher up; where, in dry ſeaſons, the freſh water which deſcends from the hills, is in great meaſure, loſt among the leaves, and muſt therefore be ſearched for by clearing them away. The lat. of the anchoring-place at Prince's-Iſland, is 6 deg. 36 min. 15 ſec. S. and its long. 105 deg. 17 min. 30 ſec. E.

We were attacked with a violent ſtorm, attended with thunder, lightning, and heavy rain, on Friday the 25th. From the 26th to the 28th of March, we had a regular trade wind from the S. E. to E. by S. accompanied with fine weather; and as we ſailed in an old beaten track, no incident worthy of notice occurred. It had hitherto been Captain Gore's intention to proceed directly to St. Helena, without ſtopping at the Cape, but our rudder having been for ſome time complaining, and, on being examined, reported to be in a dangerous ſtate, he reſolved to ſteer directly for the Cape, as the moſt eligible place, both for procuring a new main piece for the rudder, and recovering the ſick.

On Monday, the 10th of April, a ſnow was ſeen bearing down, which proved to be an Engliſh Eaſt-India packet, that had left Table Bay three days before, and was cruizing with orders for the China fleet, and other India ſhips. She told us, that, about three weeks before, Monſ. Trongollar's ſquadron, conſiſting of ſix ſhips, had ſailed from the Cape, and was gone to cruize off St. Helena, for the Engliſh Eaſt-Indiamen. The next morning we ſtood into Simon's-Bay. At eight o'clock, we came to anchor, at the diſtance of one third of a mile from the neareſt ſhore; the S. E. point of the bay bearing S. by E. and Table Mountain N. E. half N. The Naſſau and Southampton Eaſt-Indiamen were here, in expectation of a convoy from Europe. We ſaluted the fort with eleven guns, and were complimented with an equal number in return. As ſoon as we had caſt anchor, Mr. Brandt, the governor of this place, favoured us with a viſit. This gentleman had the higheſt regard for Captain Cook, who had been his conſtant gueſt, whenever he had touched at the Cape; and though he had, ſome time before, received intelligence of his untimely fate, he was extremely affected at the ſight of our veſſels returning without their old Commander. He was greatly ſurpriſed at ſeeing moſt of our people in ſo healthy a ſtate, as the Dutch ſhip which had quitted Macao, at the time of our arrival there, and had afterwards ſtopped at the Cape, reported, that we were in a moſt wretched condition, there being only 15 hands left on board the Reſolution, and ſeven in the Diſcovery. What could have induced theſe people to propagate ſo infamous a ſtory, is not very eaſy to conceive.

Captain King accompanied our Commodore to Cape Town, on Saturday the 15th, and the next day, in the morning, they waited on Baron Plettenberg, the Governor, who received them with every poſſible indication of civility and politeneſs. He entertained a great perſonal eſteem for Captain Cook, and profeſſed the higheſt admiration of his character, and on hearing the recital of his affecting cataſtrophe, broke forth into many expreſſions of unaffected ſorrow. In one of the principal apartments of the baron's houſe, he ſhewed our gentlemen two pictures, one of De Ruyter, the other of Van Tromp, with a vacant ſpace left between them, which, he ſaid, he intended to fill up with the portrait of Captain Cook; and for this purpoſe he requeſted that they would endeavour to procure one for him, on their arrival in Great-Britain, at any price. During our continuance at the Cape, we met with the moſt friendly treatment, not only from the Governor, but alſo from the other principal perſons, as well Africans as Europeans, belonging to the place.

Eaſtward of the Cape lies Falſe-Bay; and at the diſtance of about 12 miles from the Cape, on the weſtern ſide, is Simon's-Bay, the only commodious ſtation for ſhipping to lie in. To the N. N. eaſtward of this bay, there are ſome others, from which, however, it may with eaſe be diſtinguiſhed, by a remarkable ſandy way to the N. of the town, which forms a conſpicuous object. The anchoring place in Simon's Bay, is ſituated in the lat. of 84 deg. 20 min. S. and its long. is 18 deg. 29 min. E. In ſteering for the harbour, along the weſtern ſhore, there is a ſmall flat rock, known by the name of Noah's Ark; and about a mile to the N. eaſtward of it, are others, denominated the Roman Rocks. Theſe are a mile and a half diſtant from the anchoring place; and either to the northward of them or between them, there is a ſafe paſſage into the bay. When the N. weſterly gales are ſet in, the navigator, by the following bearings, will be directed to a ſecure and convenient ſtation: Noah's Ark S. 51 deg. E. and the centre of the hoſpital S. 53 deg. W. in 7 fathoms water. But if the S. eaſterly winds ſhould not have ceaſed blowing, it is more adviſeable to remain further out in 8 or 9 fathoms water. The bottom conſiſts of ſand, and the anchors, before they get hold, ſettle conſiderably. About two leagues to the eaſtward of Noah's Ark, ſtands Seal-Iſland, whoſe ſouthern part is ſaid to be dangerous, and not to be approached nearer than in 22 fathoms water with any degree of ſafety.

The ſignal was made for unmooring on Tueſday, May the 9th, and about noon we took our departure from Simon's-Bay. We had now proviſions, live ſtock, water, and naval ſtores, aboard, in great plenty: alſo healthy crews, in high ſpirits, wiſhing for nothing but a fair wind to ſhorten our paſſage home. On the 14th, we got into the S. E. trade wind, and ſtood to the W. of the iſlands of Aſcenſion and St. Helena. Wedneſday, the 31ſt, we were in lat. 12 deg. 48 min. long. 15 deg. 40 min. W. On Saturday the 10th of June, the Diſcovery's boat brought us word, that, in exerciſing her great guns, the carpenter's mate had his arm ſhattered in a ſhocking manner, by part of the wadding being left in after a former diſcharge; another man was ſlightly wounded at the ſame time. On the 12th, it began to blow very hard; and continued ſo till the next day, when we croſſed the line to the northward, for the fourth time during our voyage, in the long. of 26 deg. 16 min. W.

We deſcried the weſtern coaſt of Ireland on Saturday the 12th of Auguſt, and endeavoured in vain to get into Port Galway, but were compelled by violent ſoutherly winds, to ſtand to the N. We made the iſland of Lewis, the wind ſtill continuing in the ſame quarter.

About eleven o'clock, A. M. on Tueſday the 22d, both ſhips came to anchor at Stromneſs in Scotland, from whence the commodore ſent Captain King to inform the Lords of the Admiralty of our arrival.

We arrived off Yarmouth on the 30th, in company with his Majeſty's ſloops of war the Fly and Alderney. Our boats were immediately ſent on ſhore for proviſions, and for a ſpare cable for our ſmall bower, that we had being nearly rendered unfit for uſe.

The Reſolution and Diſcovery reached the Nore in ſafety on the 4th of October 1780; and, on the 6th, dropped anchors at Deptford; after four years, three months, and two days abſence.

During this long and hazardous voyage, the two ſhips never loſt ſight of each other for a day together except twice; the firſt time, owing to an accident that happened to the Diſcovery off the coaſt of Owhyhee; the ſecond, to the fogs they met with at the entrance of Awatſka Bay; a ſtriking proof of the ſkill and vigilance of the ſubaltern officers.

Another circumſtance, no leſs remarkable, is, the uncommon healthineſs of the companies of both ſhips. When Captain King quitted the Diſcovery at Stromneſs, he had the ſatisfaction of leaving the whole crew in perfect health; and, at the ſame time, the number of ſick perſons on board the Reſolution did not exceed two or three, only one of whom was incapable of ſervice.

During the whole voyage, the Reſolution loſt no more than five men by ſickneſs, three of whom were in a precarious ſtate of health at their departure from England. The Diſcovery did not loſe one. This ſingular ſucceſs may, under the bleſſing of an all-directing Providence, be juſtly attributed to a ſtrict and unremitting attention to all the ſalutary and well-known regulations eſtabliſhed by Capt. Cook. However, in ſpite of thoſe precautions, the baneful effects of ſalt proviſions might have, perhaps, in the end, been ſeverely felt, had they not availed themſelves of every ſubſtitute their ſituation, at various times, afforded. Theſe frequently conſiſting of articles, which their people had not been uſed to conſider as food for men, and being ſometimes exceedingly nauſeous, it required the joint aid of perſuaſion, authority, and example, to conquer their prejudices and diſguſts.

Sour krout and portable ſoup were the preventives chiefly relied on. As to the antiſcorbutic remedies, with which they were amply ſupplied, they had no opportunity of trying their effects, as there did not appear the ſlighteſt ſymptoms of the ſcurvy, in either ſhip, during the whole voyage. Their malt and hops had alſo been kept as a reſource, in caſe of actual ſickneſs, and on examination at the Cape of Good Hope, were found entirely ſpoiled. About the ſame time, were opened ſome caſks of biſcuit, flour, malt, peaſe, oatmeal, and groats, which, by way of experiment, had been put up in ſmall caſks, lined with tin-frail, and found all, except the peaſe, in a much better ſtate, than could have been expected, had they been packed up in the uſual manner.

It happened very fortunately in the Diſcovery, that only one of the men that had fevers in the Straits of Sunda, ſtood in need of Peruvian Bark, as he alone conſumed the whole quantity uſually carried out by Surgeons, in ſuch veſſels as theſe. Had more been affected in the ſame manner, they would probably all have periſhed, from the want of the only remedy capable of affording them effectual relief This proves the abſolute neceſſity of allowing a ſufficient quantity of this excellent medicine to ſuch of his Majeſty's ſhips as may be expoſed to the influence of unwholeſome climates.

Having thus completed, in ſuch a manner, we preſume, as to ſet all rivalſhip at defiance, the three great and intereſting Voyages of this ever-to-be-honoured Navigator, Capt. Cook, *and the other Voyages intended for this Collection, we ſhall now, agreeable to our promiſe, preſent our numerous readers with thoſe reſpective productions of eminent modern travellers, which are moſt eſteemed for their authenticity and entertainment, beginning with the intereſting narrative of* Bruce's *Travels into* Abyssinia, *to diſcover the Source of the* Nile; *and, we truſt, while the ſame accuracy and attention, hitherto preſerved, ſhall mark our future labours, that we ſhall ſtill retain that diſtinguiſhed liberality and encouragement with which we have been already ſo eminently honoured by the* Public *at large.*

A NEW, COMPLETE, AND GENUINE

HISTORY OF THE

TRAVELS of JAMES BRUCE, Eſq.

Into ABYSSINIA,

To Diſcover the SOURCE of the NILE.

Undertaken and Performed in 1768, 1769, 1770, 1771, 1772, and 1773.

Including all the Author's Remarks and Information during his Travels and Adventures in EGYPT, ABYSSINIA, MASUAH, &c.

Being an Entire New HISTORY of all thoſe Intereſting OCCURRENCES, DISCOVERIES, &c. at the NILE; with a Full and Circumſtantial Account of the Traveller's being made Governor of RAS EL FEEL—his ſeveral Diſaſtrous Interviews—the Bloody Banquet—King's Ladies at SENAAR, &c. &c. &c.

Which, with the ſeveral other VOYAGES and TRAVELS included in this Collection, will be Embelliſhed with a Variety of Elegant CHARTS, MAPS, VIEWS, and other COPPER-PLATES, Engraved by Eminent Artiſts.

INTRODUCTION.

MR. BRUCE had long entertained a wiſh to attempt the diſcovery of the Nile; being appointed to the conſulſhip of Algiers, he ſet out for Italy, through France. On his arrival at Rome, he received orders to proceed to Naples, there to wait his majeſty's further commands. Having ſtopped there a ſhort time, he received orders to proceed to take poſſeſſion of his conſulſhip. He returned without loſs of time to Rome, and thence to Leghorn, where having embarked on board the Montreal man of war, he arrived at Algiers, where he ſpent a year, then prepared to take a voyage to Mahon on private buſineſs; here being diſappointed in his views, he ſailed in a ſmall veſſel from that port, and, having a fair wind, ſoon made the coaſt of Africa, and landed at Bona: after a favourable voyage he arrived at Tunis, and having obtained permiſſion to viſit the country in whatever direction he pleaſed, ſet out on his intended journey through the kingdoms of Algiers and Tunis; he explored the ruins at Dugga, thence proceeded the upper road to Keff, and then to Hydra, inhabited by a tribe of Arabs. From this he paſſed to the ancient Tipeſa, another Roman colony. From hence he continued his journey in a ſtraight line nearly S. E. and arrived at Medraſhem, a ſuperb pile of building, the ſepulchre of Syphax, and the other kings of Numidia, and where, as the Arabs believe, were alſo depoſited the treaſures of thoſe kings. Advancing ſtill to the S. E. through broken ground and ſome very barren vallies, which produced nothing but game, he came to Jibbel Aurez, the Auraſius Mons of the middle age. This is not one mountain, but an aſſemblage of many of the moſt craggy ſteeps in Africa. Having proceeded to the north-eaſt as far as Tuberſoke, he returned to Dugga, and from thence to Tunis. His next journey through Tunis, was by Zowan, a high mountain, where is a large aqueduct which formerly carried its water to Carthage. He now continued his journey along the coaſt to Suſa, through a fine country planted with olive trees, and came again to Tunis, not only without diſagreeable accident, but without any interruption from ſickneſs or other cauſe. He again ſet out from Tunis, over the deſert to Tripoli, the firſt part of which was to Gabs, and from thence to the iſland of Gerba.

Afterwards he encompaſſed a great part of the Pentapolis, and viſited the ruins of Arſinoe without any accident, and thence proceeded to Ras Sem, the petrified city, concerning which ſo many idle fictions have been reported.

Mr. Bruce now approaching the ſea-coaſt, came to Ptolometa, where he met a Greek junk belonging to Lampedoſa, a little iſland near Crete, which had been unloading corn, and was now ready to ſail. At the ſame time the Arabs of Ptolometa told him, that the Welled Ali, a powerful tribe that occupy the whole country between that place and Alexandria, were at war among themſelves, and had plundered the caravan of Morocco, and that the pilgrims compoſing it had moſtly periſhed, having been ſcattered in the deſert without water; that a great famine had been at Derna, the neighbouring town, to which Mr. Bruce intended to go; that a plague had followed, and the town, which is divided into upper and lower, was engaged in a civil war. This torrent of ill news was irreſiſtible, and was of a kind he did not propoſe to ſtruggle with; beſides, there was nothing, as far as he knew, that merited the riſk. He reſolved, therefore, to fly from this inhoſpitable coaſt, and ſave to the public, at leaſt, that knowledge and entertainment he had acquired for them.

Accordingly he embarked on board the Greek veſſel, very ill accoutred, as he afterwards found, for, though it had plenty of ſail, it had not an ounce of ballaſt. A number of people, men, women, and children, flying from the calamities which attend famine, crowded in unknown to him; but the paſſage was ſhort, the veſſel light, and the maſter, as was ſuppoſed, well accuſtomed to thoſe ſeas. The contrary of this, however, was the truth, as he learned afterwards, when too late, for he was an abſolute landſman; proprietor indeed of the veſſel, but this had been his firſt voyage. They ſailed at dawn of day in very favourable and pleaſant weather. It was the beginning of September, and a light and ſteady breeze, though not properly fair, promiſed a ſhort and agreeable voyage; but it was not long before it turned freſh and cold; a violent ſhower of hail came on, and the clouds were gathering as if for thunder. Mr. Bruce obſerved that they gained no offing, and hoped, if the weather turned bad, to perſuade the captain to put into Bengazi, for one inconvenience he preſently diſcovered, that they had not proviſion on board for one day.

Unfortunately, however, the wind became contrary, and blew a violent ſtorm. The veſſel being in her trim with large latine ſails, fell violently to leeward, and they ſcarce had weathered the cape that makes the entrance into the harbour of Bengazi, which is a very bad one, when all at once it ſtruck upon a ſunken rock, and ſeemed to be ſet down upon it. The wind at that inſtant ſeemed providentially to calm; but our traveller no ſooner obſerved the ſhip had ſtruck, than he began to think of his own ſituation. They were not far from ſhore, but there was an exceeding great ſwell at ſea. Two boats were ſtill towed aſtern of them, and had not been hoiſted in. Roger M'Cormack, Mr. Bruce's Iriſh ſervant, had been a ſailor on board the Monarch before he deſerted to the Spaniſh ſervice. He and the other, who had likewiſe been a ſailor, preſently unlaſhed the largeſt boat, and all three got down into her, followed by a multitude of people whom they could not hinder; and there was, indeed, ſomething that bordered on cruelty, in preventing poor people from uſing the ſame means that they had done for preſerving their lives. The moſt that could be done was, to get looſe from the ſhip as ſoon as poſſible, and two oars were prepared to row the boat aſhore. Mr. Bruce had ſtripped himſelf to a ſhort under-waiſtcoat and linen drawers; a ſilk ſaſh, or girdle, was wrapt round him; a pencil, ſmall pocket-book, and watch, were in the breaſt-pocket of his waiſtcoat; two Mooriſh and two Engliſh ſervants followed him; the reſt more wiſe remained on board. They were not twice the length of the boat from the veſſel, before a wave very nearly filled the boat. A howl of deſpair from thoſe that were in her ſhewed their helpleſs ſtate, and that they were conſcious of a danger they could not ſhun. Mr. Bruce ſaw the fate of all was to be decided by the very next wave which was rolling in; and apprehenſive that ſome woman, child, or helpleſs man, would lay hold of him, and entangle his arms or legs, and weigh him down, he cried to his ſervants, both in Arabic and Engliſh, "We are all loſt; if you can ſwim, follow me:" he then let himſelf down in the face of the wave.

Though Mr. Bruce was a good and practiſed ſwimmer, young, vigorous, healthy, and capable of fatigue, yet he found himſelf very inſufficient when he came to the ſurf; he was, however, floated up by a large wave, in a very exhauſted condition, and remained ſtruggling with the ſea, when he crept out of its reach, and loſt both his underſtanding and recollection. At this time the Arabs came down to plunder the veſſel. Mr. Bruce, who hitherto remained inſenſible, was arouſed from his lethargy by a blow with the butt-end of a lance, ſhod with iron, upon the juncture of the neck with the back-bone; after many kicks, blows, &c. they ſtripped him of his clothes, which had been made at Algiers, and left him naked. He found afterwards, by a young man who had accoſted him, that he was taken for a Turk, his clothes having been made in the Turkiſh faſhion. The Arab, convinced at laſt that he was a poor Chriſtian from Tunis, and ſhipwrecked, gave him a ragged dirty baracen to cover him. He was then ordered up to a tent, examined, and he and his ſervants, who were all ſaved, allowed a plentiful ſupper, and every thing taken from them was reſtored after two days; being then mounted upon camels, they were forwarded to Bengazi, where Mr. Bruce found a ſmall French ſloop, and being known to the captain, was ſupplied with what money he wanted, and other neceſſaries. They ſailed with a fair wind, and landed at Canea, where Mr. Bruce was taken very ill. From Canea he ſailed for Rhodes: thence proceeded to Caſtelroſſo, on the coaſt of Caramania, a part of Aſia Minor, which Mr. Bruce, notwithſtanding a ſtrong inclination, was prevented from exploring, through the ſeverity of his illneſs.

On the reſtoration of his health, Mr. Bruce began to think of his long intended journey to Palmyra. He ſet out at a time appointed for Hamath, where he found his conductor, and proceeded to Haſſia; from Haſſia they proceeded to Cariateen, when two old men on horſeback, one from the Mowalli, and another from the Anney tribe, accompanied them to Palmyra. From this he proceeded to Balbec (which is about 130 miles diſtance) and very fortunately arrived the ſame day that Emir Youſef had reduced the town and ſettled the government, and was decamping from it on his return home. It was fortunately for Mr. Bruce, becauſe he was the Emir's friend, and had obtained liberty to do there what he pleaſed. Having made all neceſſary obſervations, Mr. Bruce arrived at Sidon in good health, and now prepared to ſet out on his diſcovery of the ſource of the Nile, the ſucceſs of which undertaking ſhall be the ſubject of our two following books.

BOOK I.

CHAPTER I.

Mr. BRUCE *begins his Travels, &c.—Deſcription of Alexandria, Roſetto, Egypt, Cairo, &c. &c. &c.—The ſeveral Adventures of Mr.* BRUCE *during his Voyage in the Red Sea—His Arrival in the Harbour of Meſuah.*

ON the 15th of June 1768, Mr. Bruce ſailed from Sidon, with a favourable wind, for the iſland of Cyprus. On the 17th they left Lernica; and on the 18th ſteered for Alexandria. Mr. Bruce, on his arrival here, found that the people had begun only two days before to open their doors and communicate with each other, as a terrible plague had raged in that city and neigbourhood from the beginning of March, being almoſt four months.

We find from Mr. Bruce's account, that Alexandria (which has been often taken ſince the time of Cæſar) was at laſt deſtroyed by the Venetians and Cypriots, upon, or rather after the releaſe of St. Lewis. The building of the preſent gates and walls, which ſome have thought to be antique, does not ſeem earlier than the laſt reſtoration in the thirteenth century. Some parts of the gates and walls may be of older date (and probably were thoſe of the laſt Caliphs before Saladin); but, except theſe, and the pieces of columns which lie horizontally in different parts of the wall, every thing elſe is apparently of very late times, and the work has been huddled together in great haſte. There is nothing beautiful or pleaſant in the preſent Alexandria, but a handſome ſtreet of modern houſes, where a very active and intelligent number of merchants live upon the miſerable remnants of that trade, which made its glory in the firſt times. It is thinly inhabited, and there is a tradition among the natives, that, more than once, it has been in agitation to abandon it altogether, and retire to Roſetto, or Cairo, but that they have been withheld by the opinion of divers ſaints from Arabia, who have aſſured them, that Mecca being deſtroyed (which muſt be as they think by the Ruſſians) Alexandria is then become the *holy place*, and that Mahomet's body is to be tranſported thither.

Mr. Bruce now left this place in order to proſecute his undertaking. Egypt is full of deep duſt and ſand, from the beginning of March to the firſt of the inundation. It is this fine powder and ſand, raiſed and looſened by the heat of the ſun, and want of dew, and not being tied faſt, as it were, by any root or vegetation, which the Nile carries off with it, and buries in the ſea, and which many ignorantly ſuppoſe comes from Abyſſinia, where every river runs in a bed of rock. When you leave the ſea, you ſtrike off nearly at right angles, and purſue your journey to the eaſtward. Here heaps of ſtones and trunks of pillars are ſet up to guide you in your road, through moving ſands, which ſtand in hillocks, in proper directions, and which conduct you ſafely to Roſetto, ſurrounded on one ſide by theſe hills of ſand, which ſeem ready to cover it.

The journey to Roſetto is always performed by land, as the mouth of the branch of the Nile leading to Roſetto, called the Bogaz, is very ſhallow and dangerous to paſs, and often tedious; beſides, nobody wiſhes to be a partner for any time in a voyage with Egyptian ſailors, if he can poſſibly avoid it. The journey by land is alſo reputed dangerous, and people travel burdened with arms, which they are determined never to uſe.

Roſetto is upon that branch of the Nile which was called the Bolbuttic Branch, and is about four miles from the ſea. It is a large, clean, neat town, or village, upon the eaſtern ſide of the Nile. It is about three miles long, much frequented by ſtudious and religious Mahometans; among theſe too are a conſiderable number of merchants, it being the entrepot between Cairo and Alexandria, and *vice verſa*; here too the merchants have their factors, who ſuperintend and watch over the merchandize which paſſes the Bogaz to and from Cairo. There are many gardens, and much verdure, about Roſetto; the ground is low, and retains long the moiſture it imbibes from the overflowing of the Nile. Here alſo are many curious plants and flowers brought from different countries.

Mr. Bruce embarked for Cairo on the 30th, and arrived there at the beginning of July. That part in which the French are ſettled is exceedingly commodious. There is only one long ſtreet, which contains all the merchants of that nation: it is ſhut at one end by large gates, where there is a guard, and at the other end there is a large garden, with ſome pleaſant walks. About four hundred inhabitants have abſolute power, and in their own manner adminiſter what they call juſtice; however, in Mr. Bruce's time there was ſome moderation, there being only one Ali Bey. Every Bey has a great number of ſervants, ſlaves to him, as he was to others before; theſe are his guards, whom he occaſionally promotes, and, what is very remarkable, theſe ſlaves, that are purchaſed, always ſucceed them in dignity and eſtate, in preference to their own children.

Mr. Bruce had an audience with the Bey, who was a younger man than he thought; he was ſitting upon a large ſofa, covered with crimſon cloth of gold; his turban, his girdle, and the head of his dagger, all thick covered with fine brilliants. The Bey entered into diſcourſe with him on various ſubjects, and, after frequent interviews, ſhewed him much favour. Mr. Bruce having obtained ſeveral letters and diſpatches prepared for his journey, he and his companions ſecured a boat to carry them to Furſhout, the reſidence of Hamam, the Shekh of Upper Egypt. This boat is called a canja, and is one of the moſt commodious uſed on any river, being ſafe and expeditious at the ſame time, though at firſt it has a ſtrong appearance of danger. That on which they embarked was about 100 feet from ſtern to ſtem, with two maſts, main and foremaſt, and two monſtrous *Latine* ſails, the mainſail yard being about 200 feet in length.

There is peculiar to the Nile a certain kind of pirates conſtantly on the watch to rob boats, in which they ſuppoſe the crew are off their guard. They generally approach the boat when it is calm, either ſwimming under water, or when it is dark, upon goat ſkins; after which they mount with the utmoſt ſilence, and take away whatever they can lay their hands on. They are not very fond it ſeems of meddling with veſſels where they ſee Franks or Europeans, being in dread of fire-arms, the effects of which they had experienced.

Mr. Bruce and his companions embarked on the Nile at Bulac, on board this canja, December 12; the wind being contrary, the boat was obliged to be drawn with a rope againſt the ſtream. They advanced a few miles to two convents of Cophts, called Deireteen. Here they ſtopped to paſs the night, having had a fine view of the pyramids of Geeza and Saccara, and being then in ſight of a prodigious number of others built of white clay, and ſtretching far into the deſert to the ſouth-weſt. Two of theſe ſeemed full as large as thoſe that are called the pyramids of Geeza. One of them was of a very extraordinary form; it ſeemed as if it had been intended at firſt to be a very large one, but that the builder's heart or means had failed him, and that he had brought it to a very miſhapen diſproportioned head at laſt.

A tribe of Arabs was encamped on the ſide of the Nile, oppoſite to their boat, a little further to the ſouth. Theſe were ſubject to Cairo, or were then at peace with its government. They are called Howadat, being a part of the Atouni, a large tribe that poſſeſſes the Iſthmus of Suez, and from that go up between the Red Sea and the mountains that bound the eaſt part of the valley of Egypt. They reach to the length of Coſſeir, where they border upon another large tribe called Ababdé, which extends from thence up into Nubia. Both theſe are what were anciently called Shepherds, and are conſtantly at war with each other.

The Shekh of Howadat furniſhed Mr. Bruce with horſes, who, with his companions, let out their veſt ſails on the 13th, and paſſed a very conſiderable village called Tuna, on the eaſt ſide of the river, and a ſmall village, conſiſting of about thirty houſes, on the weſt, called Shekh Atman; here the Nile is about a quarter of a mile broad. Having made ſome few obſervations, Mr. Bruce and friends returned about four o'clock in the afternoon.

They hoiſted their main and fore-ſails, leaving the point of Metrahenny with a fair freſh wind; when they had ſailed about two miles, they ſaw three men fiſhing in a manner and ſituation very extraordinary. They were on a raft of palm branches, ſupported on a float of clay jars, made faſt together. The form was triangular, like the face of a pyramid; two men, each provided with a caſting-net, ſtood at the two corners, and threw their net into the ſtream together; the third ſtood at the third corner, which was foremoſt, and threw his net the moment the other two drew theirs out of the water. And this they repeated, in perfect time, and with ſurpriſing regularity. The Rais thought our travellers wanted to buy fiſh, and letting go his mainſail, ordered them on board with a great tone of ſuperiority. They were in a moment along-ſide of them; and one of them came on board, laſhing his miſerable raft to a rope at their ſtern. In recompence for their trouble they gave them ſome large pieces of tobacco, and this tranſported them ſo much, that they brought them a baſket of ſeveral different kinds of fiſh, all ſmall, excepting one laid on the top of the baſket, which was a clear ſalmon-coloured fiſh, ſilvered upon its ſides, with a ſhade of blue upon its back. It weighed about 10lb. and was moſt excellent, being perfectly firm, and white like a perch. There are ſome of this kind 70lb. weight. Mr. Bruce examined their nets, they were rather of a ſmaller circumference than our caſting nets in England; the weight, as far as he could gueſs, rather heavier in proportion than ours, the thread that compoſed them being ſmaller. He could not ſufficiently admire their ſucceſs, in a violent ſtream of deep water, ſuch as the Nile; for the river was at leaſt twelve feet deep where they were fiſhing, and the current very ſtrong. Theſe fiſhers offered willingly to take Mr. Bruce upon the raſt to teach him; but he declined it on account of the danger. They ſaid their fiſhing was merely accidental, and in courſe of their trade, which was ſelling theſe potter earthen jars, which they got near Aſhmounein; and after having carried the raſt with them to Cairo, they untie, ſell them at the market, and carry the produce home in money, or in neceſſaries upon their backs.

In the afternoon, about two o'clock, they came to the point of an iſland, where there were ſeveral villages with date trees on both ſides of them. They then came to Halouan, an iſland divided into ſeveral ſmall ones, by celiſhes cut through it, under different Arabic names. They left the north end of the iſland, proceeding due ſouth on the 15th, and paſſed a collection of villages called Woodan.

It is nice cultivated ground about this village, to the foot of the mountains, which is not above four miles; but it is full eight on the weſt, all overflowed and ſown. The Nile is here but ſhallow, and narrow, not exceeding a quarter of a mile broad, and three feet deep; owing, as is ſuppoſed, to the reſiſtance made by the iſland in the middle of the current, and by a bend it makes, thus intercepting the ſand brought down by the ſtream. The mountains here come down till within two miles of Suf el Woodan, for ſo the village is called. They were told there were ſome ruins to the weſtward of this, but only rubbiſh, neither arch nor column ſtanding.

They paſſed by ſeveral villages on each ſide, all ſurrounded with palm-trees, verdant and pleaſant, but conveying an idea of ſameneſs and want of variety, ſuch as every traveller muſt have felt who has ſailed in the placid, muddy, green-banked rivers in Holland. The Nile, however, is here full a mile broad, the water deep, and the current ſtrong. The wind ſeemed to be exaſperated by the reſiſtance of the ſtream, and blew freſh and ſteadily, as indeed it generally does where the current is violent. They paſſed with great velocity Nizelet Embarak, Cubabac, Nizelet Omar, Racca Kibeer, then Racca Seguier, and came in ſight of Atſia, a large village at ſome diſtance from the Nile; and all the valley here was green, the palm groves beautiful, and the Nile deep.

Having paſſed Conſadreedy on the 18th, they found the Nile again divided by another fragment of the iſland, and inclining a little to the weſtward. The village Sidi Ali el Courani is on the Eaſt; it had a deſerted appearance, but the wheat, which was five inches high on the banks, was more advanced than any hitherto ſeen. There was no appearance of villages. The river here is about a quarter of a mile broad, or a little more. They paſſed a convent of Cophts, with a ſmall plantation of palms. This was a wretched building. At four miles diſtance ſtood the village of El Nizelet el Arab, conſiſting of miſerable huts. Here they procured ſome excellent ſugar canes, it being the firſt place where they diſcovered any.

Next they paſſed Bouſh, a village on the weſt ſide of the Nile, two miles ſouth of Shenuiah; and, a little further, Beni Ali, where they ſaw for a minute the mountains on the right or weſt ſide of the Nile, running in a line nearly ſouth, and very high. About five miles from Bouſh is the village of Maniareiſh, on the eaſt ſide of the river, and here the mountains on that ſide end. The country all around is well cultivated, and ſeemed to be of the utmoſt fertility; the inhabitants were better clothed, and ſeemingly leſs miſerable and oppreſſed, than thoſe they left behind in the places near Cairo. The Nile was very ſhallow at Beni Suef, and the current ſtrong. They touched ſeveral times in the middle of the ſtream, and came to anchor at Baha, about a quarter of a mile above Beni Suef, where they paſſed the night.

In the evening of the 18th they arrived at Zohora, about a mile ſouth of Etſa. Here they paſſed the night. This place conſiſted of three plantations of dates, and was five miles from Miniet. Several villages on the weſtern ſhore had been paſſed; thoſe of the eaſtern ſeeming wholly unpeopled. They came to a village called Rhoda, whence they ſaw the magnificent ruins of the ancient city of Antinous, built by Adrian. The Rais (by deſire of Mr. Bruce) hauled in his mainſail, and with his foreſail full, ſtood S. S. E. directly under the ruins. In a ſhort time they arrived at the landing place; when Abou Cuſſi's ſon, Mahomet, and an Arab, who were of the party, went on ſhore under pretence of buying ſome proviſion, and to ſee how the land lay. All their fire arms were brought to the door of the cabin for fear of an alarm.

Preſently Mr. Bruce, and thoſe who remained in the boat, heard a violent contention between the two who were ſent on ſhore and the inhabitants.

Upon this the Rais ſtripping, ſlipped off the rope from the ſtake, and another of the Arabs ſtruck a ſtrong perch or pole into the river, and twiſted the rope round it. They were in a bight, or calm place, ſo that the ſtream did not move the boat.

Mahomet and the Arab came preſently in ſight; the people had taken Mahomet's turban from him, and they were apparently on the very worſt terms. Mahomet cried to our travellers that the whole town was coming, and getting near the boat, he and the Arab jumped in with great agility. A number of people was aſſembled, and three ſhots were fired into the boat, very quickly, the one after the other.

Mr. Bruce having now uttered ſome threats in Arabic, immediately fired a ſhip blunderbuſs, with piſtol ſmall bullets, but with little elevation, among the buſhes, ſo as not to touch them; on which the purſuers diſappeared, and putting their veſſel into the ſtream, they filled their foreſail and ſtood off.

The Rais attributed their ſafe delivery to the ſacred preſence of Mahomet, who obſerved the people had not ſeen them come in, but had heard of them ever ſince they were at Metrahenny, and had waited to rob or murder them; that upon now hearing they were come, they had all ran to their houſes for their arms, and were coming down, immediately, to plunder the boat; upon which he and the Moor ran off, and being met by theſe three people, and the boy, on the road, who had nothing in their hands, one of them ſnatched the turban off. He likewiſe added, that there were two parties in the town; one in favour of Ali Bey, the other friends to a rebel Bey, who had taken Miniet: that they had fought two or three days ago, among themſelves, and were going to fight again, each of them having called Arabs to their aſſiſtance. So violently exaſperated were Haſſan and his ſon Mahomet, that they could hardly be diſſuaded from returning again to the ſhore, and diſcharging all the guns and blunderbuſſes they had among the inhabitants.

After Mr. Bruce had moderated their paſſion, they paſſed Aſhmounein, probably the ancient Latopolis, a large town, which gives the name to the province, where there are magnificent ruins of Egyptian architecture; and after they came to Melawé, larger, better built, and better inhabited than Aſhmounein, the reſidence of the Cacheff. Mahomet Aga was there at that time with troops from Cairo; he had taken Miniet, and, by the friendſhip of Shekh Hamam, the great Arab, governor of Upper Egypt, he kept all the people on that ſide of the river in allegiance to Ali Bey.

Here Mr. Bruce procured about a gallon of brandy, a jar of lemons and oranges preſerved in honey, a lamb, ſome garden ſtuff, &c. &c. They paſſed the Molle, a ſmall village, with a great number of acacia trees, intermixed with the plantations of palms.

They paſſed ſeveral villages on the 20th; at length reached Sionts, but were obliged to ſtay at Tiona, as the wind turned directly ſouth. This is a ſmall town, ſurrounded with groves of palm trees. The Nile is here full of ſandy iſlands.

On the 21ſt they came to Gawa. The next day, they arrived at Achmrin, where they ſtaid till the 24th, when they viſited the village Shekh Ali on the weſt, two miles and a quarter diſtant. Now they paſſed ſeveral villages, particularly Kundi, and having ſet out from Beliani on the 25th, arrived at Dendeſa about 12 o'clock in the afternoon. This (even at preſent) is a conſiderable town, all covered with thick groves of palm trees, the ſame that Juvenal deſcribes it to have been in his time. A mile ſouth of the town are ruins of two temples, one of which is ſo much buried under ground, that little of it is to be ſeen; but the other, which is by far the moſt magnificent, is entire, and acceſſible on every ſide. It is alſo covered with hieroglyphics, both within and without, all in relief; and of every figure, ſimple and compound, that ever has been publiſhed, or called an hieroglyphic. The form of the building is an oblong ſquare, the ends of which are occupied by two large apartments, or veſtibules, ſupported by monſtrous columns, all covered with hieroglyphics likewiſe. Some are in form of men and beaſts; ſome ſeem to be the figures of inſtruments of ſacrifice, while others, in a ſmaller ſize, and leſs diſtinct form, ſeem to be inſcriptions in the current hand of hieroglyphics. They are all finiſhed with peculiar attention.

The capitals are of one piece, and conſiſt of four huge human heads, placed back to back againſt one another, with bat's ears, and an ill-imagined, and worſe executed, fold drapery between them. Above theſe is a large oblong ſquare block, ſtill larger than the capitals, with four flat fronts, diſpoſed like panels, that is with a kind of ſquare border round the edges, while the faces and fronts are filled with hieroglyphics, as are the walls and ceilings of every part of the temple. Between theſe two apartments in the extremities, there are three other apartments, reſembling the firſt, in every reſpect, only that they are ſmaller. The whole building is of common white ſtone, from the neighbouring mountains, only thoſe two, in which have been ſunk the pirns for hanging the outer doors (for it ſeems they had doors even in thoſe days) are of granite, or black and blue porphyry. The top of the temple is flat, the ſpouts to carry off the water are monſtrous heads of ſphinxes; the globes with wings, and the two ſerpents, with a kind of ſhield or breaſt-plate between, are here frequently repeated, ſuch as we ſee them on the Carthaginian medals. The hieroglyphics have been painted over, and great part of the colouring yet remains upon the ſtones, red, in all its ſhades, eſpecially that dark duſky colour called Tyrian purple; yellow, very freſh; ſky blue (that is, near the blue of an eaſtern ſky, ſeveral ſhades lighter than ours); green of different ſhades: theſe are all the colours preſerved.

Some ſhort time before Mr. Bruce came to Dendera, they ſaw the firſt crocodile, and afterwards hundreds, lying upon every iſland, like large flocks of cattle; yet the inhabitants of Dendera drive their beaſts of every kind into the river, and they ſtand there for hours. The girls and women too, that come to fetch water in jars, ſtand up to their knees in water for a conſiderable time; and if we may gueſs by what happens, their danger is full as little as their fear, for none of them, as far as our travellers could learn, had been bitten by a crocodile. However, if the Denderites were as keen and expert hunters of crocodiles, as ſome hiſtorians tell us they formerly were, there is ſurely no part of the Nile where they would have better ſport than here, immediately before their own city.

They now proceeded to Furſhout, and viſited the convent of Friars, who are of the order of the reformed Franciſcans. Furſhout is a very conſiderable well-cultivated plain. It is ſown with wheat nine miles over to the foot of the mountains, and contains plantations of ſugar canes. They left this place Jan. 7th, 1769, and paſſed a large town called How, on the weſt ſide of the Nile, and arrived about four o'clock in the afternoon at El Gourni, which is a ſmall village diſtant a quarter of a mile from the Nile.

About half a mile north of El Gourni, are the magnificent, ſtupendous ſepulchres of Thebes. The mountains of the Thebaid come cloſe behind the town; they are not connected with each other in ridges, but ſtand inſulated upon their baſes; ſo that you can get round each of them. A hundred of theſe, it is ſaid, are excavated into ſepulchral, and a variety of other apartments.

Luxor, and Carnac, which is a mile and a quarter below it, are by far the largeſt and moſt magnificent ſcenes of ruins in Egypt, much more extenſive and ſtupendous than thoſe of Thebes and Dendera put together.

There are two obeliſks here of great beauty, and in good preſervation; they are leſs than thoſe at Rome, but not at all mutilated. The pavement, which is made to receive the ſhadow, is to this day ſo horizontal, it might ſtill be uſed in obſervation.

At Carnac they ſaw the remains of two vaſt rows of ſphinxes, one on the right hand, the other on the left (their heads were moſtly broken) and, a little lower, a number as it ſhould ſeem of termini. They were compoſed of baſaltes, with a dog or lion's head, of Egyptian ſculpture. They ſtood in lines likewiſe, as if intended as an avenue to ſome principal building.

They left Luxor on the 17th, and came to an anchor in the evening on the eaſtern ſhore, nearly oppoſite to Eſné, which they paſſed over the next morning, and alſo the town of Edfre, where there are conſiderable remains of Egyptian architecture. Eſné is the ancient Latopolis, and has very great remains, particularly a large temple, which, though the whole of it is of the remoteſt antiquity, ſeems to have been built at different times, or rather out of the ruins of different ancient buildings. The hieroglyphics upon this are very ill executed, and are not painted. The town is the reſidence of an Arab Shekh, and the inhabitants are a very bad ſort of people; but as Mr. Bruce was dreſſed like an Arab, they did not moleſt, becauſe they did not know him.

They were obliged to ſtop at Jibbel el Silſelly, a dangerous part of the Nile, on account of the wind failing; they paſſed Goom Ambo about noon, and arrived at Daroo. On the 20th, they came to an anchor about nine o'clock, on the ſouth end of the palm groves, and north end of the town of Syene.

As this was the time when Mr. Bruce was to take leave of Europe, and launch out on his deſperate expedition, he made all neceſſary preparations, having heard that a caravan was ready to ſet out for Kenné, the cœni emporium of antiquity. Therefore, at eight in the morning of the 17th of February, Mr. Bruce mounted his ſervants all on horſeback, and having taken the charge of their own camels, they advanced ſlowly into the deſert; for all the way from Kenné, cloſe to the left, were deſert hills; it was ſuch a barren way, that there was no appearance of plant or living creature, and the ſun was ſo exceedingly hot, that two ſticks, when rubbed together, took fire and flamed!

They pitched their tent at half paſt three in Legeta, near ſome draw-wells, which were remarkably bitter; here they waited the arrival of the caravan of Cus, Eſné, &c.

There came about twenty Turks in the evening from Caramania, which is that part of Aſia Minor immediately on the ſide of the Mediterranean oppoſite to the the coaſt of Egypt; all of them neatly and cleanly dreſſed like Turks, all on camels, armed with ſwords, a pair of piſtols at their girdle, and a ſhort neat gun; their arms were in very good order, with their flints and ammunition ſtowed in cartridge boxes, in a very ſoldier-like manner. A few of theſe ſpoke Arabic, and Mr. Bruce's Greek ſervant, Michael, interpreted for the reſt. Having been informed, that the large tent belonged to an Engliſhman, they came into it without ceremony. They told Mr. Bruce, that they were a number of neighbours and companions, who had ſet out together to go to Mecca, to the Hadje; and not knowing the language, or cuſtoms of the people, they had been but indifferently uſed ſince they landed at Alexandria, particularly ſomewhere about Achmim; that one of the Owam, or ſwimming thieves, had been on board of them in the night, and had carried off a ſmall portmanteau, with about 200 ſequins in gold; that, though a complaint had been made to the Bey of Girgé, yet no ſatiſfaction had been obtained; and that now they had heard an Engliſhman was here, whom they reckoned their *countryman*, they had come to propoſe, that they ſhould make a common cauſe to defend each other againſt all enemies.—What they ſignified by *countryman* was this:—There is in Aſia Minor, ſomewhere between Anatolia and Caramania, a diſtrict which they call Caz Dagli, and this the Turks believe was the country from which the Engliſh firſt drew their origin; and on this account they never fail to claim kindred with the Engliſh wherever they meet, eſpecially if they ſtand in need of their aſſiſtance.

They ſpent the 18th, at Legda, waiting for the junction of the caravans, and the next day departed about ſix in the morning.

Their journey, all that day, was through a plain, never leſs than a mile broad, and never broader than three; the hills, on their right and left, were higher than the former, and of a browniſh calcined colour, like the ſtones on the ſides of Mount Veſuvius, but without any herb or tree upon them.

They paſſed a mountain of green and red marble at half paſt ten, and at twelve they entered a plain called Hamra, where they firſt obſerved the ſand red, with a purple caſt, of the colour of porphyry; and this is the reaſon the valley is called Hamra.

Mr. Bruce diſmounted here, to examine of what the rocks were compoſed; and found that here began the quarries of porphyry, without the mixture of any other ſtone; but it was imperfect, brittle, and ſoft. He had not been engaged in this purſuit an hour, before they were alarmed with a report that the Atouni had attacked the rear of the caravan; they were at the head of it. The Turks and his ſervants were all drawn together, at the foot of the mountain, and poſted as advantageouſly as poſſible. But it ſoon appeared, that they were ſome thieves only, who had attempted to ſteal ſome loads of corn from camels that were weak, or fallen lame, perhaps in intelligence with thoſe of their own caravans.

They left Mecir el Mafarek on the 20th, and came to the mouth of the defiles at ten o'clock. They departed early from Koraim on the 21ſt, and paſſed ſeveral defiles; at laſt they arrived at Coſſeir.—This is a ſmall mud-walled village, built upon the ſhore, among hillocks of floating ſand. It is defended by a ſquare fort of hewn ſtone, with ſquare towers in the angles, which have in them three ſmall cannon of iron, and one of braſs, all in very bad condition; of no other uſe but to terrify the Arabs, and hinder them from plundering the town when full of corn, going to Mecca in time of famine. The walls are not high; but their ramparts are heightened by clay or mud-walls to ſcreen the ſoldiers from the firearms of the Arabs. The port is nothing but a rock, on the eaſt end of the town, which runs out about 400 yards into the ſea, and defends the veſſels which ride to the weſt of it, from the north and north eaſt winds. There is a large encloſure with a high mud wall, where every merchant has a ſhop or magazine for his corn and merchandiſe.

At this time the caravan, from Syene, arrived, eſcorted by 400 Ababdè, all upon camels, each armed with two ſhort javelins, and making a whimſical appearance. The Ababde having told ſtrange ſtories about the mountain of emeralds; Mr. Bruce determined, till his captain ſhould return, to make a voyage there. Accordingly he choſe a man who had been twice at theſe mountains of emeralds; and with the beſt boat then in the harbour, on Tueſday the 14th of March, they ſailed, with the wind at north-eaſt, from the harbour of Coſſeir, about an hour before the dawn of day. They kept coaſting along, with a very moderate wind, much diverted with the red and green appearances of the marble mountains upon the coaſt. Their veſſel had one ſail, like a ſtraw mattreſs, made of the leaves of a kind of palm tree, which they call *Doom*. It was fixed above, and drew up like a curtain, but did not lower with a yard like a ſail; ſo that upon ſtreſs of weather, if the ſail was furled, it was ſo top-heavy, that the ſhip muſt founder, or the maſt be carried away. But, by way of indemnification, the planks of the veſſel were ſewed together, and there was not a nail, nor a piece of iron in the whole ſhip; ſo that when ſhe ſtruck upon a rock, ſeldom any damage attended. About nine o'clock, on the 15th, Mr. Bruce ſaw a large high rock, like a pillar, riſing out of the ſea. At firſt, he took it for a part of the continent; but, as he advanced nearer it, the ſun being very clear, and the ſea calm, he took an obſervation, and as their ſituation was lat. 25 deg. 6 min. and the iſland about a league diſtant, to the S. S. W. of them, he concluded its latitude to be pretty exactly 25 deg. 3 min. North. This iſland is about three miles from the ſhore, of an oval form, riſing in the middle. It ſeems to be of granite; and is called, in the language of the country, Jibbel Siberget, which has been tranſlated *the Mountain of Emeralds*. Very early on the 16th, Mr. Bruce took the Arab of Coſſeir with him, who knew the place. They landed on a point perfectly deſert; at firſt, ſandy like Coſſeir; afterwards, where the ſoil was fixed, producing ſome few plants of rue or abſinthium. They advanced above three miles further in a perfectly deſert country, with only a few acacia-trees ſcattered here and there, and came to the foot of the mountain; where, or about ſeven yards up from the baſe of it, are five pits or ſhafts, none of them four feet in diameter, called the *Zumrud Wells*, from which the ancients are ſaid to have drawn the emeralds. The travellers were not provided with materials, and little endowed with inclination, to deſcend into any one of them, where the air was probably bad. Mr. Bruce picked up the nozels, and ſome fragments of lamps, like thoſe of which we find millions in Italy; and ſome worn fragments, but very ſmall ones, of that brittle green cryſtal, which is the ſiberget and bilur of Ethiopia, perhaps the zumrud, the ſmaragdus deſcribed by Pliny, but by no means the emerald, known ſince the diſcovery of the new world, whoſe firſt character abſolutely defeats its pretenſion, the true Peruvian emerald being equal in hardneſs to the ruby.

Having now ſufficiently ſatiſfied curioſity, Mr. Bruce returned to his boat, and continued along the coaſt with an eaſy ſail; and, after ſome dangerous ſtorms, arrived on the 19th, about evening, at Coſſeir: here Mr. Bruce procured a veſſel, and ſailed from that port on the 5th of April, and on the 6th, made the Jaffateen iſlands. Theſe iſlands are four in number, joined by ſhoals and ſunken rocks. They are crooked, or bent, like half a bow, and are dangerous for ſhips ſailing in the night, becauſe there ſeems to be a paſſage between them, to which, when pilots are attending, they neglect two ſmall dangerous ſunk rocks, that lie almoſt in the middle of the entrance, in deep water.

They arrived at Tor on the 9th, which is a ſmall ſtraggling village, with a convent of Greek monks, belonging to Mount Sinai. They ſtood out of this harbour at day-break on the 11th and made the Cape Mahomet.

They ſailed from Cape Mahomet on the 12th, juſt as the ſun appeared. They paſſed the iſland of Tyrone, in the mouth of the Elanitic Gulf, which divides it near equally into two; or rather the north-weſt ſide is narroweſt. The direction of the gulf is nearly north and ſouth.

On the 15th they came to an anchor at El Har, where they ſaw high, craggy, and broken mountains, called the Mountains of Ruddua. Theſe abound with ſprings of water; all ſorts of Arabian and African fruits grow here in perfection, and alſo every kind of vegetable that is cultivated with any attention.. About ten o'clock on the 16th, they paſſed a moſque, or Shekh's tomb on the main land, on their left hand, called Kubbet Yambo, and before eleven they anchored in the mouth of the port in deep water. Yambo, corruptly called Imbo, is an ancient city, now dwindled to a paltry village. Yambo, in the language of the country, ſignifies a fountain or ſpring, a very copious one of excellent water being found there among the date trees, and it is one of the ſtations of the Emir Hadje in going to, and coming from Mecca. The advantage of the port, however, which the other has not, and the protection of the caſtle, have carried trading veſſels to the modern Yambo, where there is no water, but what is brought from pools dug on purpoſe to receive the rain when it falls.

Mr. Bruce was obliged to ſtay here, much againſt his inclination, till the 27th of April, on account of the ſeveral delays attending the loading of wheat, &c.

They ſailed in the morning, April 28, with a cargo of wheat that did not belong to them, and three paſſengers, inſtead of one for whom only Mr. Bruce had undertaken.

On the 3d of May they arrived at Jidda, cloſe upon the quay, where the officers of the cuſtom-houſe immediately took poſſeſſion of their baggage. This port is very extenſive, conſiſting of ſeveral iſlands, ſeveral ſhoals and ſunken rocks, with channels, however, between them and deep water.

The moſt remarkable occurrence which attracted the travellers notice, was the extraordinary manner in which trade was carried on at this place. There were nine ſhips from India of great value. One merchant, a Turk, living at Mecca, thirty hours journey off, where no Chriſtian dare go, whilſt the whole continent is open to the Turk for eſcape, offers to purchaſe the cargoes of four out of nine of theſe ſhips himſelf; another, of the ſame caſt, comes and ſays, he will buy none, unleſs he has them all. The ſamples are ſhewn, and the cargoes of the whole nine ſhips are carried into the wildeſt part of Arabia, by men with whom one would not wiſh to truſt himſelf alone in the field. This is not all, two India brokers come into the room to ſettle the price. One on the part of the India captain, the other on that of the buyer, the Turk. They are neither Mahometans nor Chriſtians, but have credit with both. They ſit down on the carpet, and take an India ſhawl, which they carry on their ſhoulders, like a napkin, and ſpread it over their hands. They talk, in the mean time, on different ſubjects, of the arrival of ſhips from India, or of the news of the day, as if they were employed in no ſerious buſineſs whatever. After about twenty minutes ſpent in handling each others fingers below the ſhawl, the bargain is concluded, ſay for nine ſhips, without one word ever having been ſpoken on the ſubject, or pen or ink uſed in any ſhape whatever. There never was one inſtance of a diſpute happening in theſe ſales.

The mode of payment is equally extraordinary. A private Moor, who had nothing to ſupport him but his character, became reſponſible for the payment of theſe cargoes; his name was Ibrahim Saraf when Mr. Bruce was there; *i. e.* Ibrahim the broker. This man delivers a number of coarſe hempen bags, full of what is ſuppoſed to be money. He marks the contents upon the bag, and puts his ſeal upon the ſtring that ties the mouth of it. This is received for what is marked upon it, without any one ever having opened one of the bags, and, in India, it is current for the value marked upon it, as long as the bag remains.

Jidda, as well as all the eaſt coaſt of the Red Sea, is very unwholeſome. Immediately without the gate of that town, to the eaſtward, is a deſert plain filled with the huts of the Bedoweens, or country Arabs, built of long bundles of ſpartum, or bent graſs, put together like faſcines. Theſe Bedoweens ſupply Jidda with milk and butter. There is no ſtirring out of town, even for a walk, unleſs for about half a mile, on the ſouth ſide by the ſea, where there is a number of ſtinking pools of ſtagnant water, which contributes to make the town very unwholeſome.

Jidda, beſides being in the moſt unwholeſome part of Arabia, is, at the ſame time, in the moſt barren and deſert ſituation. This, and many other inconveniencies, under which it labours, would, probably, have occaſioned its being abandoned altogether, were it not for its vicinity to Mecca, and the great and ſudden influx of wealth from the India trade, which, once a year, arrives in this part, but does not continue, paſſing on, as through a turnpike, to Mecca; whence it is diſperſed all over the eaſt. Very little advantage, however, accrues to Jidda. The cuſtoms are all immediately ſent to a needy ſovereign, and a hungry ſet of relations, dependents, and miniſters at Mecca. The gold is returned in bags and boxes, and paſſes on as rapidly to the ſhips as the goods do to the market, and leaves as little profit behind. In the mean time, proviſions riſe to a prodigious price, and this falls upon the townſmen, while all the profit of the traffic is in the hands of ſtrangers; moſt of whom, after the market is over (which does not laſt ſix weeks) retire to Yemen, and other neighbouring countries, which abound in every ſort of proviſion.

Notwithſtanding Jidda is the country of their prophet, yet no where are there ſo many unmarried women, and the permiſſion of marrying four wives was allowed in this diſtrict in the firſt inſtance, and afterwards communicated to all the tribes. But Mahomet, in his permiſſion of plurality of wives ſeems conſtantly to have been on his guard, againſt ſuffering that, which was intended for the welfare of his people, from operating in a different manner. He did not permit a man to marry two, three, or four wives, unleſs he could maintain them. He was intereſted for the rights and rank of theſe women; and the man ſo marrying was obliged to ſhew before the Cadi, or ſome equivalent officer, or judge, that it was in his power to ſupport them, according to their birth. It was not ſo with concubines, with women who were purchaſed, or who were taken in war. Every man enjoyed theſe at his pleaſure, and their peril, that is, whether he was able to maintain them or not. From this great ſcarcity of proviſions, which is the reſult of an extraordinary concourſe to a place almoſt deſtitute of the neceſſaries of life, few inhabitants of Jidda can avail themſelves of the privilege granted them by Mahomet. He therefore cannot marry more than one wife, becauſe he cannot maintain more, and from this cauſe ariſes the want of people, and the large number of unmarried women.

Mr. Bruce's reception here was particularly kind: the inhabitants did him the honour to attend him to the water edge. All the quay of Jidda was lined with people to ſee the Engliſh ſalute, and along with his veſſel there parted, at the ſame time, one bound to Maſuah, which carried Mahomet Abdiel Cader, governor of Dahalac, over to his government.

Mr. Bruce ſailed from this harbour July 8th, on board the ſame veſſel as before, and ſuffered the

Rais to take a ſmall loading for his own account, upon condition that he was to carry no paſſengers. The wind was fair, and they ſailed through the Engliſh fleet at their anchors. As they had all honoured our traveller with their regret at parting, and accompanied him to the ſhore, the Rais was ſurpriſed to ſee the reſpect paid to his little veſſel as it paſſed under their huge ſterns, every one hoiſting his colours, and ſaluting it with eleven guns.

On the 11th, they were towed to their anchorage in the harbour of Konfodah. Konfodah means the town of the hedge-hog. It is a ſmall village, conſiſting of about two hundred miſerable houſes, built with green wood, and covered with mats, made of the doom, or palm-tree, lying on a bay, or rather a ſhallow baſon, in a deſert waſte or plain. Behind the town are ſmall hillocks of white ſand. Nothing grows on ſhore except kelp, but it is exceedingly beautiful, and very luxuriant; further in there are gardens. Fiſh is in perfect plenty; butter and milk in great abundance; even the deſert looks freſher than other deſerts, which makes it probable that rain ſometimes falls there. This, however, is a very unwholeſome place, proviſion is very dear, and the water very bad.

On the 14th, in the afternoon, they paſſed Ras Heli, which is the boundary between Yemen, or Arabia Felix, and the Hejaz, or province of Mecca; they anchored here for the night, cloſe under the Cape.

Every part of the ſandy deſert at the foot of the mountains is called *Tehama*, which extends to Mocha. It is called *Tema* in ſcripture, and derives its name from *Taami* in Arabic, which ſignifies the ſea-coaſt. There is little water here, as it never rains; there is alſo no animal but the gazel or antelope, and but a few of them. There are few birds, and thoſe which may be found are generally ſilent.

Early on the 18th, they diſcovered the mountains, under which lies the town of Loheia. The bay was ſo ſhallow, and the tide being at ebb, they could get no nearer than within about five miles of the ſhore. Loheia is built upon the ſouth-weſt ſide of a peninſula, ſurrounded every where, but on the eaſt, by the ſea. In the middle of this neck there is a ſmall mountain which ſerves for a fortreſs, and there are towers with cannon, which reach acroſs on each ſide of the hill to the ſhore. Beyond this is a plain, where the Arabs intending to attack the town, generally aſſemble. At Loheia they had a very uneaſy ſenſation, a kind of prickling came into their legs, which were bare, occaſioned by the ſalt effluvia, or ſteams, from the earth, which all about the town, and further to the ſouth, is ſtrongly impregnated with that mineral. Fiſh, and butchers meat, and indeed all ſorts of proviſion, are plentiful and reaſonable at Loheia, but the water is bad. It is found in the ſand at the foot of the mountains, down the ſides of which it has fallen in the time of the rain, and is brought to the town in ſkins upon camels. There is alſo plenty of fruit brought from the mountains by the Bedowé, who live in the ſkirts of the town, and ſupply it with milk, fire-wood, and fruit, chiefly bananas and grapes.

The government of the Imam is much more gentle than any Mooriſh government in Arabia or Africa; the people too are of gentler manners, the men, from early ages, being accuſtomed to trade. The women at Loheia are as ſolicitous to pleaſe as thoſe of the moſt poliſhed nations in Europe; and, though very retired, whether married or unmarried, they are not leſs careful of their dreſs and perſons. At home they wear nothing but a long ſhift of fine cotton-cloth, ſuitable to their quality. They dye their feet and hands with henna, not only for ornament, but as an aſtringent, to keep them dry from ſweat; they wear their own hair, which is plaited, and falls in long tails behind.

They left Loheia on the 27th, in the evening, but were obliged to tow the boat out. About eleven they ſailed with a wind at north-eaſt, and paſſed a cluſter of iſlands on their left. After paſſing ſome dangerous ſhoals, on the 30th, at ſeven o'clock in the morning, with a gentle but ſteady wind at weſt, they ſailed for the mouth of the Indian Ocean.

They continued their courſe within a mile of the ſhore, where in ſome places there appeared to be ſmall woods, in others a flat bare country, bounded with mountains a conſiderable diſtance. The wind freſhened as they advanced. About four in the afternoon they ſaw the mountain which forms one of the Capes of the Straits of Babelmandeb, in ſhape reſembling a gunner's quoin.

On the 31ſt, at nine in the morning, they came to an anchor above Jibbel Raban, or Pilots-Iſland, juſt under the Cape, which, on the Arabian ſide, forms the north entrance of the Straits.

After getting within the Straits, the channel is divided into two, by the iſland of Perim, otherwiſe called *Mehum*. The inmoſt and northern channel, or that towards the Arabian ſhore, is two leagues broad at moſt, and from twelve to ſeventeen fathom of water. The other entry is three leagues broad, with deep water, from twenty to thirty fathom. From this, the coaſt on both ſides runs nearly in a north-weſt direction, widening as it advances, and the Indian Ocean grows ſtraiter. The coaſt upon the left hand is part of the kingdom of Adel, and, on the right, that of Arabia Felix.

Early on the 2d, they ſaw land a-head, which they took to be the main; but, upon nearer approach, and the day becoming clearer, they found two low iſlands to the leeward; one of which they fetched with great difficulty. They found there the ſtock of an old acacia-tree, and two or three bundles of wreck, or rotten ſticks, which they gathered with great care; and all of them agreed, that they would eat breakfaſt, dinner, and ſupper hot, inſtead of the cold repaſt they had made in the Straits. They now made ſeveral large fires; one took the charge of the coffee, another boiled the rice; they killed four turtles, made ready a dolphin; got beer, wine, and brandy, and drank the king's health in earneſt, which their regimen would not allow them to do in the Straits of Babelmandeb. While this good cheer was preparing, Mr. Bruce ſaw with his glaſs, firſt, one man running along the coaſt weſtward, who did not ſtop; about a quarter of an hour after, another upon a camel, walking at the ordinary pace, who diſmounted juſt oppoſite to them, and, as he thought, kneeled down to ſay his prayers upon the ſand. They had launched their boat immediately upon ſeeing the trunk of the tree on the iſland; ſo they were ready, and Mr. Bruce ordered two of the men to row him on ſhore, which they did. It is a bay of but ordinary depth, with ſtraggling trees, and ſome flat ground along the coaſt. Immediately behind is a row of mountains of a browniſh or black colour. Mr. Bruce went on ſhore, and, after ſome little intercourſe with ſome of the natives, whoſe conduct was very ſuſpicious, he directed the Rais to ſtand out towards Crab-Iſland, and there being a gentle breeze from the ſhore, carrying an eaſy ſail, they ſtood over upon Mocha town, to avoid ſome rocks or iſlands.

About three o'clock in the morning of the 3d, they paſſed Jibbel el Ourèe, then Jibbel Zekir; and having a ſteady gale, with fair and moderate weather, paſſing to the weſtward of the iſland Raſab, between that and ſome other iſlands to the north-eaſt, where the wind turned contrary, they arrived at Loheia, the 6th, in the morning, and on the 3d of September ſailed from Loheia for Maſuah.

The harbour of Loheia, which is by much the largeſt in the Red Sea, is now ſo ſhallow, and choked up, that, unleſs by a narrow canal through which you enter and go out, there is no where three fathom of water, and in many places not half that depth. This is the caſe with all the harbours on the eaſt-coaſt of the Red Sea, while thoſe on the weſt are deep, without any banks or bars before them.

In the evening of the 11th, they ſtruck upon a reef of coral rocks; the Arabs were for taking immediately to the boat, till Mr. Bruce exerted his authority, and obliged all hands to work, and get the veſſel off while it was calm. The boat was immediately launched, and one of Mr. Bruce's ſervants, the Rais, and two ſailors, were put on board. They were ſoon upon the bank, where the two ſailors got out, who cut their feet at firſt upon the white coral, but afterwards got firmer footing. They attempted to puſh the ſhip backwards, but ſhe would not move. Poles and handſpikes were tried in order to ſtir her, but theſe were not long enough. In a word, there was no appearance of getting her off before morning, when they knew the wind would riſe, and it was to be feared ſhe would then be daſhed to pieces. Other efforts were then uſed, and a great cry was ſet up, that ſhe began to move. A little after, a gentle wind juſt made itſelf felt from the eaſt, and the cry from the Rais was, "Hoiſt the foreſail and put it a-back." This being immediately done, and a gentle breeze filling the foreſail at the time, they all puſhed, and the veſſel ſlid gently off, free from the ſhoal. Mr. Bruce did not partake of the joy ſo ſuddenly as the others did. He had always ſome fears a plank might have been ſtarted; but they ſaw the advantage of a veſſel being ſewed, rather than nailed together, as ſhe not only was unhurt, but made very little water.

At five in the afternoon, on the 19th of September, they came to an anchor in the harbour of Maſuah, having been ſeventeen days on their paſſage, including the day they firſt went on board, though this voyage, with a favourable wind, is generally made in three days; it often has, indeed, been ſailed in leſs. Yet this muſt not be wholly attributed to the weather, as they ſpent much time in ſurveying the iſlands.

Maſuah, or the harbour of the Shepherds, is a ſmall iſland on the Abyſſinian ſhore, having an excellent harbour, and water deep enough for ſhips of any ſize to the very edge of the iſland: here they may ride in the utmoſt ſecurity, from whatever point, or with whatever degree of ſtrength the wind blows. The iſland itſelf is very ſmall, being ſcarcely three quarters of a mile in length, and about half that in breadth: one third is occupied by houſes, one by ciſterns to receive the rain-water, and the laſt is reſerved for burying the dead. This iſland was the place of much reſort as long as commerce flouriſhed: but it fell into ſudden obſcurity under the oppreſſion of the Turks, who put the finiſhing hand to the ruin of the Indian trade in the Red Sea, begun ſome years before, by the diſcovery of the Cape of Good Hope, and the ſettlements made by the Portugueſe on the continent of India.

CHAP. II.

Various Tranſactions at Maſuah—Accounts of the Diſeaſes of the Place, &c.—Mr. BRUCE's *Conference with the Naybe—His Journey from Arkeeko over the Mountain Taranta—From Dixen to Adowa—His Reception there—He viſits ſeveral Places, Fremona, &c.—Journey from Sirè to Addergey—Tranſactions there—Journey over Lamalnon to Gondar—Reception there—The King's triumphal Entry—*BRUCE's *firſt Audience—Manners and Cuſtoms of the Abyſſinians—Deſcription of a Bloody Banquet—Religion of the Country, &c. &c.*

THOUGH Mr. Bruce, on his arrival at Maſuah, was very tired of the ſea, and deſirous to land, yet, as it was evening, he thought it adviſable to ſleep on board that night, that he might have a whole day (as the firſt is always a buſy one) before him, and receive in the night any intelligence from friends, who might not chooſe to venture to come openly to ſee him and his company in the day, at leaſt before the determination of the Naybe, the governor of that place, had been heard concerning them.

A perſon came from Mahomet Gibberti, on the 20th, to conduct Mr. Bruce on ſhore. The Naybe himſelf was ſtill at Arkeeko, and Achmet, his couſin and ſucceſſor, therefore had come down to receive the duties of the merchandiſe on board the veſſel which brought Mr. Bruce. There were two elbow chairs placed in the middle of the market-place. Achmet ſat on one of them, while the ſeveral officers opened the bales and packages before him; the other chair on his left hand was empty. He was dreſſed all in white, in a long Banian habit of muſlin, and a cloſe-bodied frock reaching to his ancles, much like the white frock and petticoat the young children wear in England. This ſpecies of dreſs did not, in any way, ſuit Achmet's ſhape or ſize; but, it ſeems, he meant to be in gala. As ſoon as Mr. Bruce came in ſight of him, he doubled his pace: Mahomet Gibberti's ſervant whiſpered Mr. Bruce not to kiſs his hand, which indeed he intended to have done. Achmet ſtood up, juſt as he arrived within arm's length of him; when they touched each other's hands, carried their fingers to their lips, then laid their hands acroſs their breaſts: Mr. Bruce pronounced the ſalutation of the inferior *Salam Alicum!* Peace be between us; to which he anſwered immediately, *Alicum Salam!* There is peace between us. He pointed to the chair, which Mr. Bruce declined; but he obliged him to ſit down.

The greater honour that is ſhewn on a firſt meeting, in theſe countries, the more conſiderable preſent is expected. He made a ſign to bring coffee directly, as the immediate offering of meat or drink is an aſſurance of amity and friendſhip. Mr. Bruce now preſented the letters of the ſheriffe of Mecca, and one from Metical Aga, which latter Achmet kept, as it was to himſelf, but returned the others, as Mr. Bruce, he ſaid, ſhould give them himſelf to the Naybe the next day.

Having drank their coffee, Mr. Bruce roſe to take his leave, and was ſoon wet to the ſkin by a great quantity of orange flower-water, which two attendants ſhowered upon him from ſilver bottles, from the right and left.

Our traveller was provided with a very commodious houſe, which he had no ſooner entered, than a large dinner was ſent to him and his friends, by Achmet, with a great quantity of lemons and nice freſh water. Some ſhort time after, their baggage was ſent unopened, which gave Mr. Bruce no ſmall pleaſure.

A female ſlave came on the 10th of September, with the proper credentials, viz. an Indian handkerchief full of dry dates, and a pot or bottle of unvarniſhed potter's earth, which keeps the water very cool and agreeable.

The Naybe came from Arkeeko in the morning of the 21ſt. He was poorly attended by three or four ſervants, miſerably mounted, and about forty naked ſavages on foot, armed with ſhort lances and crooked knives. The drum beat before him all the way from Arkeeko to Maſuah. Upon entering the boat, the drum on the land-ſide ceaſed, and thoſe, in what is called the Caſtle of Maſuah, began. The caſtle is a ſmall clay hut, and in it one ſwivel gun, which is not mounted, but lies upon the ground, and is fired always with great trepidation and ſome danger. The drums are earthen jars, ſuch as they ſend butter into Arabia; the mouths of which are covered with a ſkin, ſo that a ſtranger, on ſeeing two or three of theſe together, would run a great riſk of believing them to be jars of butter, or pickles, carefully covered with oiled parchment. All the proceſſion was in the ſame ſtyle. The Naybe was dreſſed in an old ſhabby Turkiſh habit, much too ſhort for him, and ſeemed to have been made about the time of Sultan Selim. He wore alſo upon his head a Turkiſh cowke, or high cap, which ſcarcely admitted any part of his head. In this dreſs, which on him had a truly ridiculous appearance, he received the caftan, or inveſtiture, of the iſland of Maſuah; and being thereby repreſentative of the grand ſeignior, conſented that day, in honour of the commiſſion, to be called Omar Aga.

Mr. Bruce went in the afternoon to pay his reſpects to the Naybe, and found him ſitting on a large wooden elbow-chair, at the head of two files of naked ſavages, who made an avenue from his chair to the door. He had nothing upon him but a coarſe cotton ſhirt, ſo dirty, that it ſeemed all pains to clean it again would be thrown away, and ſo ſhort that it ſcarcely reached his knees. He was very tall and lean, his colour black, had a large mouth and noſe; in place of a beard, a very ſcanty tuft of grey hairs upon the point of his chin; large, dull, and heavy eyes; a kind of malicious, contemptuous ſmile on his countenance; he was altogether of a moſt ſtupid, and brutal appearance. His character perfectly corresponded with his figure, for he was a man of mean abilities, cruel to exceſs, avaricious, and a great drunkard.

Mr. Bruce preſented his firman, which the Naybe puſhed back and deſired him to read. Mr. Bruce told him it was Turkiſh; that he had never learned to read a word of that language.—"Nor I neither," ſays he; "and I believe I never ſhall." Mr. Bruce then gave him the other letters he had brought with him. He took them altogether in both his hands, and laid them unopened beſide him, ſaying, "You ſhould have brought a moullah along with you. Do you think I ſhall read all theſe letters? Why, it would take me a month." He then gazed upon our traveller, with his mouth open, ſo like an idiot, that it was with the utmoſt difficulty Mr. Bruce kept his gravity. This ſhort converſation was ſucceeded with a long ſilence; at laſt Mr. Bruce took the opportunity to give him his preſent, with which he did not ſeem diſpleaſed, but rather that it was below him to tell him ſo; he then took his leave of the Naybe, very little pleaſed with his reception, and the ſmall account he ſeemed to make of his letters, or of himſelf. About this time the ſmall-pox was raging with ſuch violence at Maſuah, that it was feared the living would not be ſufficient to bury the dead. The whole iſland was filled with ſhrieks and lamentations both night and day. They at laſt began to throw the bodies into the ſea, which deprived our travellers of the fiſh, of which they had ate ſome kinds that were excellent.

On the 15th of October the Naybe came to Maſuah, diſpatched the veſſel that brought our travellers over; and, as if he had only waited till this evidence was out of the way, he, that very night, ſent word, that Mr. Bruce was to prepare him a handſome preſent. He gave in a long liſt of particulars to a great amount, which he deſired might be divided into three parcels, and preſented three ſeveral days. One was to be given him as Naybe of Arkeeko; one as Omar Agar, repreſentative of the grand ſeignior; and one for having paſſed their baggage *gratis* and unviſited, eſpecially the large quadrant.

Mr. Bruce encouraged by the aſſurance of protection he had received, anſwered, That, having a firman of the grand ſeignior, and letters from Metical Aga, it was mere generoſity ſhould he give him any preſent at all, either as Naybe or Omar Aga; that he was not a merchant that bought and ſold, nor had merchandize on board, therefore had no cuſtoms to pay. Upon this he ſent for Mr. Bruce to his houſe, where he found him in a violent fury, and many uſeleſs words paſſed on both ſides. At laſt he peremptorily told our traveller, That unleſs he had 300 ounces of gold ready to pay him on Monday, upon his landing from Arkeeko, he would confine him in a dungeon, without light, air, or meat, till the bones came through his ſkin for want.

October the 29th, the Naybe came again from Arkeeko to Maſuah, and Mr. Bruce was told, in a very ill humour with him. He ſoon received a meſſage to attend him, and found him in a large waſte room like a barn, with about ſixty people with him. This was his divan, or grand council, with all his janizaries and officers of ſtate, all naked, aſſembled in parliament. There was a comet that had appeared a few days after their arrival at Maſuah, which had been many days viſible in Arabia Felix, being then in its perihelion; and, after paſſing its conjunction with the ſun, it now appeared at Maſuah early in the evening, receding to its aphelion. Mr. Bruce had been obſerved watching it with great attention, and the large tubes of the teleſcopes had given offence to ignorant people. The firſt queſtion the Naybe aſked him was, "What that comet meant, and why it appeared?" And before he could anſwer him, he again ſaid, "The firſt time it was viſible it brought the ſmall-pox, which has killed above 1000 people in Maſuah and Arkeeko. It is known you converſed with it every night at Loheia; it has now followed you again to finiſh the few that remain, and then you are to carry it into Abyſſinia. What have you to do with the comet?"

Before Mr. Bruce had time to ſpeak, his brother, Emir Achmet, then ſaid, "That he was informed, our traveller was an engineer going to Michael, governor of Tigre, to teach the Abyſſinians to make cannon and gunpowder; that the firſt attack was to be againſt Maſuah." Five or ſix others ſpoke much in the ſame ſtrain; and the Naybe concluded by ſaying, That he would ſend Mr. Bruce in chains to Conſtantinople, unleſs he went to Hamazen, with his brother Emir Achmet, to the hot-wells there, and that this was the reſolution of all the janizaries; for he had concealed his being a phyſician.

After much altercation between Mr. Bruce and the Naybe, the former turned his back, and Mr. Bruce went away exceedingly diſturbed, as it was plain his affairs were coming to a criſis for good or for evil. He obſerved, or thought he obſerved, all the people ſhunned him. He was, indeed, upon his guard, and did not wiſh them to come near him; but, turning down into his own gateway, a man paſſed cloſe by him, ſaying diſtinctly in his ear, though in a low voice, firſt in Tigre and then in Arabic, "Be not afraid." This hint, ſhort as it was, gave him no ſmall courage.

In the morning of the 6th of November while at breakfaſt Mr. Bruce was told, that three ſervants had arrived from Tigre; one from Janni, a young man and ſlave, who ſpoke and wrote Greek perfectly; the other two ſervants were Ras Michael's or rather the king's, both wearing the red ſhort cloak lined and turned up with mazarine-blue, which is the badge of the king's ſervant, and is called *ſhalaka*. Ras Michael's letters to the Naybe were very ſhort. He ſaid the king Hatzé Hannes's health was bad, and wondered at hearing that the phyſician, ſent to him by Metical Aga from Arabia, was not forwarded to him inſtantly at Gondar, as he had heard of his being arrived at Maſuah ſome time before. He ordered the Naybe, moreover, to furniſh him with neceſſaries, and diſpatch him without further delay.

The iſland of Maſuah is very unwholeſome, as, indeed, is the whole coaſt of the Red Sea from Suez to Babelmandeb, but more eſpecially between the tropics. Violent fevers, called there *nedad*, make the principal figure in this fatal liſt, and generally terminate the third day in death. The next common diſeaſe in the low country of Arabia, the intermediate iſland of Maſuah, and all Abyſſinia (for the diſeaſes are exactly ſimilar in all this tract) is the Tertian fever, which is in nothing different from our Tertian, and is ſucceſsfully treated here in the ſame manner as in Europe. As no ſpecies of this diſeaſe, as far as Mr. Bruce ſaw, menaces the patient with death, eſpecially in the beginning of the diſorder, ſome time may be allowed for preparation to thoſe who doubt the effect of the bark in this country. But ſtill he apprehends the ſafeſt way is to give ſmall doſes from the beginning, on the firſt intermiſſion, or even remiſſion, though this ſhould be ſomewhat obſcure and uncertain. The next diſeaſe, is called *banzeer*, the *hogs* or the *ſwine*, and is a ſwelling of the glands of the throat, and under the arms. The next (though not a dangerous complaint) has a very terrible appearance. Small tubercles or ſwellings appear all over the body, but thickeſt in the thighs, arms, and legs. Theſe ſwellings go and come for weeks together without pain; though the legs often ſwell to a monſtrous ſize, as in the dropſy. The next complaint Mr. Bruce mentions, as common in theſe countries, is called Farenteit, a corruption of an Arabic word, which ſignifies the worm of Pharaoh. This extraordinary animal only afflicts thoſe who are in conſtant habit of drinking ſtagnant water, whether that water is drawn out from wells, as in the kingdom of Sennaar, or found by digging in the ſand where it is making its way to its proper level the ſea, after falling down the ſide of the mountains after the tropical rains. This plague appears indiſcriminately in every part of the body, but ofteneſt in the legs and arms. Upon looking at this worm, on its firſt appearance, a ſmall black head is extremely viſible, with a hooked beak of a whitiſh colour. Its body is ſeemingly of a white ſilky texture, very like a ſmall tendon bared and perfectly cleaned. After its appearance, the natives of theſe countries, who are uſed to it, ſeize it gently by the head, and wrap it round a thin piece of ſilk or ſmall bird's feather. Every day, or ſeveral times a day, they try to wind it up upon the quill as far as it comes readily; and, upon the ſmalleſt reſiſtance, they give over for fear of breaking it.

Mr. Bruce himſelf experienced this complaint. About three inches of the worm were wound out upon a piece of raw ſilk in the firſt week, without pain or fever; but it was broken afterwards, through the careleſſneſs and raſhneſs of the ſurgeon, when changing a poultice on board the ſhip in which he returned to France: a violent inflammation followed; the leg ſwelled ſo as to ſcarce leave the appearance of knee or ancle; the ſkin, red and diſtended, ſeemed glazed like a mirror. The wound was now healed, and diſcharged nothing; and there was every appearance of a mortification coming on. The great care and attention procured him in the lazaretto at Marſeilles, by a nation always foremoſt in the acts of humanity to ſtrangers, and the attention and ſkill of the ſurgeon, recovered him from this troubleſome complaint.

The laſt and moſt horrible of all theſe endemial diſeaſes, is the Elephantiaſis, which ſome have choſen to call the Leproſy, or Lepra Arabum. During the courſe of it, the face is often healthy to appearance; the eyes vivid and ſparkling: thoſe affected have ſometimes a kind of dryneſs upon the ſkin of their backs, which, upon ſcratching, leaves a mealineſs, or whiteneſs; the only circumſtance, in which it reſembled the leproſy; but it has no ſcalineſs. The hair, too, is of its natural colour; not white, yellowiſh, or thin, as in the leproſy, but ſo far from it, that though the Abyſſinians have very rarely hair upon their chin, Mr. Bruce has ſeen people apparently in the laſt ſtage of the elephantiaſis, with a very good beard of its natural colour. The appetite is generally good during this diſeaſe, nor does any change of regimen affect the complaint.

When a relative or friend is dead at Maſuah, the women, friends, and viſitors, place themſelves in a ring; then dance ſlowly, figuring in and out as in a country dance. This dance is all to the voice, no inſtrument being uſed upon the occaſion; only the drum (the butter-jar before mentioned) is beat adroitly enough, and ſeems at once neceſſary to keep the dance and ſong in order. In Abyſſinia too this is purſued in a manner more ridiculous. Upon the death of an ozoro, or any nobleman, the twelve judges (who are generally between 60 and 70 years of age) ſing the ſong, and dance the figure-dance, in a manner truly ridiculous.

It is cuſtomary in Maſuah for people to burn myrrh and incenſe in their houſes before they open the doors in the morning; and when they go out at night, or early in the day, they have always a ſmall piece of rag, highly fumigated with theſe two perfumes, which they ſnuff into each noſtril to keep them from the unwholeſome air. Their houſes are, in general, built of poles and bent graſs, as in the towns of Arabia: but beſides theſe, there are about twenty of ſtone, ſix or eight of which are two ſtories each; though the ſecond ſeldom conſiſts of more than one room, and that one generally not a large one. Situated as Maſuah is, in the very entrance of Abyſſinia, a very plentiful country, yet all the neceſſaries of life are ſcarce and dear. Their quality too, is very indifferent, notwithſtanding a conſiderable trade is carried on; but it is all done in a ſlovenly manner, and for articles where a ſmall capital is inveſted.

Mr. Bruce waited upon the Naybe at his own houſe on the 13th, and was received with more civility than uſual; he repeated his viſit, by appointment, next day, having firſt ſtruck his tent, and got all his baggage in readineſs. He received him as before, then told him with a grave air, "that he was willing to further his journey into Habeſh to the utmoſt of his power, provided he ſhewed him that conſideration which was due to him from all paſſengers; that as, by his tent, baggage, and arms, he ſaw he was a man above the common ſort, which the grand ſeignior's firman, and all his letters teſtified, leſs than 1000 patakas offered by him would be putting a great affront upon him; however, in conſideration of the governor of Tigré, to whom he was going, he would conſent to receive 300, upon his ſwearing not to divulge this, for fear of the ſhame that would fall upon him abroad. Mr. Bruce anſwered in the ſame grave tone, that he thought him very wrong to take 300 patakas with ſhame, when receiving a thouſand would be more honourable as well as more profitable; therefore he had nothing to do but put that into his account-book with the governor of Tigré, and ſettle his honour and his intereſt together. As for himſelf, he was ſent for by Metical Aga, on account of the king, and was proceeding accordingly, and if he oppoſed his going forward to Metical Aga, he ſhould expect ten thouſand patakas from Metical Aga, for the trouble and loſs of time he had been at, which he and the Ras would no doubt ſettle with him." The Naybe made no reply, but muttered with vexation.

Early on the 15th, Mr. Bruce again ſtruck his tent, and had his baggage prepared, to ſhew they were determined to ſtay no longer. At eight o'clock, he went to the Naybe, and found him almoſt alone, when he received him in a manner that, for him, might have paſſed for civil. He began with a conſiderable degree of eloquence, or fluency of ſpeech, a long enumeration of the difficulties of their journey, the rivers, precipices, mountains, and woods they were to paſs; the number of wild beaſts every where to be found; as alſo the wild ſavage people that inhabited thoſe places; the moſt of which, he ſaid, were luckily under his command, and he would recommend to them to do them all manner of good offices. He commanded two of his ſecretaries to write the proper letters, and then ordered them coffee. In the mean time came in a ſervant covered with duſt and ſeemingly fatigued, as having arrived in haſte from afar. The Naybe, with a conſiderable deal of uneaſineſs and confuſion, opened the letters, which were ſaid to bring intelligence, that the Hazorta, Shiho, and Tora, the three nations who poſſeſſed that part of Sambar, through which the road led to Dobarwa, the common paſſage from Maſuah to Tigré, had revolted, driven away his ſervants, and declared themſelves independent. He then (as if all was over) ordered his ſecretaries to ſtop writing; and, lifting up his eyes, began, with great ſeeming devotion, to thank God they were not already on their journey; for, innocent as he was, when our travellers ſhould have been cut off, the fault would have been imputed to him. Angry as Mr. Bruce was at ſo bare-faced a farce, he could not help burſting out into a fit of loud laughter, when the Naybe put on the ſevereſt countenance, and deſired to know the reaſon of his laughing at ſuch a time. "It is now two months (anſwered Mr. Bruce) ſince you have been throwing various objections in my way; can you wonder that I do not give into ſo groſs an impoſition? This ſame morning, before I ſtruck my tent, in preſence of your nephew Achmet, I ſpoke with two Shiho juſt arrived from Sambar, who brought letters to Achmet, which ſaid, all was in peace. Have you earlier intelligence than that of this morning? The Naybe was for ſome time without ſpeaking; then ſaid, "If you are weary of living, you are welcome to go; but I will do my duty in warning thoſe that are along with you of their and your danger, that, when the miſchief happens, it may not be imputed to me." "No number of naked Shiho (ſaid Mr. Bruce) unleſs inſtructed by you, can ever be found on our road, that will venture to attack us. The Shiho have no fire arms; but if you have ſent on purpoſe ſome of your ſoldiers that have fire arms, theſe will diſcover by what authority they come. For our part, we cannot fly; we neither know the country, the language, nor the watering-places, and we ſhall not attempt it. We have plenty of different ſorts of fire-arms, and your ſervants have often ſeen at Maſuah we are not ignorant in the uſe of them. We, it is true, may loſe our lives, that is in the hand of the Almighty; but we ſhall not fail to leave enough on the ſpot, to give ſufficient indication to the king and Ras Michael, who it was that were our aſſaſſins." Mr. Bruce then roſe very abruptly to go away. The countenance of the Naybe now changed in a moment. In his turn he burſt out into a loud fit of laughter, which ſurpriſed our traveller full as much as his, ſome time before, had done him. Every feature of his treacherous countenance was altered and ſoftened into complacency; and he, for the firſt time, bore the appearance of man. He then confeſſed, that the whole was only a pretence to keep them there. "But ſince you are reſolved to go, be not afraid; the roads are ſafe enough. I will give you a perſon to conduct you, that will carry you in ſafety, even if there was danger; only go and prepare ſuch remedies as may be proper for the Emir, and leave them with my nephew Achmet, while I finiſh my letters." This Mr. Bruce willingly conſented to do, and on his return found every thing ready for their departure.

Mr. Bruce and his party left Arkeeko on the 15th, taking road ſouthward, along the plain, which is not here above a mile broad, and covered with ſhort graſs, nothing different from ours, only that the blade is broader. After an hour's journey Mr. Bruce pitched his tent at Laberhey, near a pit of rain-water. The mountains of Abyſſinia have a ſingular aſpect from this, as they appear in three ridges. The firſt is of no conſiderable height, but full of gullies and broken ground, thinly covered with ſhrubs; the ſecond, higher and ſteeper, ſtill more rugged and bare; the third is a row of ſharp, uneven-edged mountains, which would be counted high in any country in Europe. Far above the top of all, towers that ſtupendous maſs, the mountain of Taranta, probably one of the higheſt in the world, the point of which is buried in the clouds, and very rarely ſeen, but in the cleareſt weather; at other times abandoned to perpetual miſt and darkneſs, the ſeat of lightning, thunder, and of ſtorm.

A meſſenger from the Naybe arrived in the evening at their tent at Laberhey, and carried away their guide Saloomé. It was not till the next day that he appeared again, and with him Achmet, the Naybe's nephew, who went into the tent, called for coffee, and, while drinking it, told Mr. Bruce he was not to go to Dobarwa, though it is the beſt road, the ſafeſt being preferable to the eaſieſt. He then gave his orders to Saloomé, and took his leave of the travellers.

They left Laberhey on the 16th, in the evening, and after continuing about an hour along the plain, their graſs ended, the ground becoming dry, firm, and gravelly, and they then entered into a wood of acacia-trees of conſiderable ſize.

Early on the 18th, they left their ſtation on the ſide of a green hill at Hamhammon: for ſome time their road lay through a plain ſo thick ſet with acacia-trees that their hands and faces were all torn and bloody with the ſtrokes of their thorny branches. At half paſt ſeven, they came to the mouth of a narrow valley, through which a ſtream of water ran very ſwiftly over a bed of pebbles. It was the firſt clear water they had ſeen ſince they left Syria, and gave them unſpeakable pleaſure.

The next day they continued their journey, the road ſtill winding between mountains in the bed, or torrent of a river, bordered on each ſide with rack and ſycamore trees of a good ſize. At half paſt eight o'clock, they encamped at a place called Tubbo, where the mountains are very ſteep, and broken very abruptly into cliffs and precipices. Tubbo was by much the moſt agreeable ſtation they had ſeen; the trees were thick, full of leaves, and gave them abundance of very dark ſhade.

On the 20th, they began to aſcend the hills, or eminences, which ſerve as the roots or ſkirts of the great mountain Taranta. The road was on each ſide bordered with nabca, or junep trees of great beauty, and ſycamores perfectly deprived of their verdure and branches. The country here is every where deprived of the ſhade it would enjoy from theſe fine trees, by the barbarous axes of the Hazorta. They found every where immenſe flocks of antelopes; as alſo partridges of a ſmall kind that willingly took refuge upon trees: neither of theſe ſeemed to conſider our travellers as enemies. In the afternoon, they began to aſcend the mountain, through a moſt rocky, uneven road, if it can deſerve the name, not only from its incredible ſteepneſs, but from the large holes and gullies made by the torrents, and the huge monſtrous fragments of rocks, which, looſened by the water, had been tumbled down into their way. It was with great difficulty they could creep up, each man carrying his knapſack and arms. The quadrant had hitherto been carried by eight men, four to relieve each other; but theſe were ready to give up the undertaking upon trial of the firſt few hundred yards. At laſt, Mr. Bruce and a ſtranger Moor who had followed them, carried the head of it for about 400 yards over the moſt difficult and ſteepeſt part of the mountain, which before had been conſidered as impracticable by all. This Moor's name was Yaſine, recommended to Mr. Bruce by Metical Aga, a perſon whom he had diſcovered to be of a moſt ſagacious turn of mind, firm heart, and ſtrenuous nerves: never more diſtinguiſhed for theſe qualities than in the hour of imminent danger; at other times remarkable for quietneſs and ſilence, and a conſtant ſtudy of his Koran.

From the extreme wearineſs in the exertions they had made, they found it impoſſible to pitch their tents; add to this, there was not earth enough covering the bare ſides of Taranta to hold faſt a tent-pin; there were, however, variety of caves near them, and throughout the mountain, which had ſerved for houſes to the old inhabitants; and in theſe they found a quiet and not inconvenient place of repoſe, during the preſent night.

Early on the 21ſt, Mr. Bruce, having encouraged his company with good words, increaſe of wages, and hopes of reward, they began to encounter the other half of the mountain. His baggage moved much more briſkly than the preceding day. The upper part of the mountain was, indeed, ſteeper, more craggy, rugged, and ſlippery, than the lower, and impeded more with trees, but not embarraſſed ſo much with large ſtones and holes. Their knees and hands, however, were cut to pieces by frequent falls, and their faces torn by the multitude of thorny buſhes. At laſt, they gained the top of the mountain, upon which is ſituated a ſmall village called Halai, the firſt they had ſeen ſince their leaving Maſuah. It is chiefly inhabited by poor ſervants and ſhepherds, keeping the flocks of men of ſubſtance living in the town of Dixan. The plain on the top of the mountain Taranta was, in many places, ſown with wheat, which was then ready to be cut down, though the harveſt was not yet begun. The grain was clean, and of a good colour, but inferior in ſize to that of Egypt. It did not, however, grow thick, nor was the ſtalk above fourteen inches high. The water is very bad on the top of Taranta, being only what remains of the rain in the hollows of the rocks, and in pits prepared for it. Being very tired, they pitched their tent on the top of the mountain. The night was remarkably cold, at leaſt appeared ſo to them, whoſe pores were opened by the exceſſive heat of Maſuah. The dew began to fall ſtrongly, and ſo continued till an hour after ſun-ſet, though the ſky was perfectly clear, and the ſmalleſt ſtars were perceptible.

Our traveller killed a large eagle here, about ſix feet ten inches from wing to wing. It ſeemed very tame till ſhot. The ball having wounded it but ſlightly, when on the ground it could not be prevented from attacking the men or beaſts near it with great force and fierceneſs, ſo that Mr. Bruce was obliged to ſtab it with a bayonet. It was of a dirty white; only the head and upper part of its wings were of a light brown.

On the 22d in the morning they left their ſtation on the top of Taranta, and ſoon after began to deſcend on the ſide of Tigré through a broken and uneven road. After this they began to mount a ſmall hill, from which they had a diſtinct view of Dixan. They pitched their tent near ſome marſhy ground for the ſake of water, at three quarters paſt ten, but it was very bad, having been for ſeveral weeks ſtagnant. They ſaw here the people buſy at their wheat harveſt; others, who had finiſhed theirs, were treading it out with cows or bullocks. They make no uſe of their ſtraw; ſometimes they burn it, and ſometimes leave it on the ſpot to rot.

They came to Dixan at half an hour after four in the afternoon. Halai was the firſt village, ſo is this the firſt town in Abyſſinia, on the ſide of Taranta. Dixan is built on the top of a hill, perfectly in the form of a ſugar loaf; a deep valley ſurrounds it every where like a trench, and a road winds ſpirally up the hill till it ends among the houſes.

Mr. Bruce's baggage had paſſed the trench, and had reached the low town through which Saloomé had conducted him, under pretence of getting a ſpeedy ſhelter from the heat: but he overacted his part; and Janni, his ſervant, who ſpoke Greek, giving Mr. Bruce a hint to go no further, he turned ſhort towards the houſe, and ſat down with his firelock upon a ſtone at the door. Their baggage quickly followed, and all was put ſafe in a kind of court encloſed with a ſufficient ſtone-wall.

Soon after Hagi Abdelcader, Achmet's friend, came to them, inviting Mr. Bruce civilly to his houſe, and declaring to him the friendly orders he had received from Achmet concerning him; bringing along with him alſo a goat, ſome butter, and honey. Mr. Bruce excuſed himſelf from leaving Janni's friend, the Chriſtian, where he had firſt alighted; but he recommended Yaſine to him, for he had begun to ſhew great attachment to Mr. Bruce. In about a quarter of an hour came Saloomé with about twenty men, and demanded our travellers, in the name of the Naybe, as his ſtrangers: he ſaid they owed him money for conducting them, and likewiſe for the cuſtom-houſe dues. In a moment near an hundred men were aſſembled round Hagi Abdelcader, all with ſhields and lances, and Mr. Bruce expected to ſee a fray of the moſt ſerious kind. But Abdelcader, with a ſwitch in his hand, went gravely up to Saloomé, and, after chiding his party with great authority, he held up his ſtick twice over Saloomé's head, as if to ſtrike him; then ordered him, if he had any demands, to come to him in the evening; upon which both parties diſperſed, and left them in peace. The matter was ſettled very amicably in the evening with Saloomé.

The town of Dixan conſiſts of Moors and Chriſtians, and is very well peopled; yet the only trade of either of theſe ſects is a very extraordinary one, that of ſelling children. The Chriſtians bring ſuch as they have ſtolen in Abyſſinia to Dixan as a ſure depoſit; and the Moors receive them there, and carry them to a certain market at Maſuah, whence they are ſent over to Arabia or India. The prieſts of the province of Tigré, eſpecially thoſe near the rock Damo, are openly concerned in this infamous practice; and ſome of theſe have been licenſed by Michael to carry it on as a fair trade, upon paying ſo many firelocks for each dozen or ſcore of ſlaves.

Mr. Bruce and his party left Dixan on the 25th of November, deſcending the very deep hill on which the town is ſituated. Hagi Abdelcader had attended them thus far before he left them, and the noted Saloomé came likewiſe, to ſee if ſome occaſion would offer of doing them further miſchief; but the king's ſervants, now upon their own ground, began to take upon them a proper conſequence. One of them went to meet Saloomé at the bank of the river; and, making a mark on the ground with his knife, declared that his patience was quite exhauſted by what he had been witneſs to at Meſuah and Dixan; and if now Saloomé, or any other man belonging to the Naybe, offered to paſs that mark, he would bind him hand and foot, and carry him to a place, where he ſhould be left tied to a tree, a prey to the lion and hyæna. They all returned, and there our traveller's perſecution from the Naybe ended. But it was very evident, from Achmet's behaviour and diſcourſe, had they gone by Dobarwa, which was the road propoſed by the Naybe, their ſufferings would not have been as yet half finiſhed, unleſs they had ended with their lives. They remained, during the night, under a tree ſeven feet and a half in diameter.

Early on the 26th, they left their moſt pleaſant quarters under the tree, and ſet forward with great alacrity. About a quarter of a mile from the river they croſſed the end of the plain Zarai. Though this is but three miles long, and one where broadeſt, it was the largeſt plain they had ſeen ſince their paſſing Taranta, whoſe top was now covered wholly with large, black, and very heavy clouds, from which they heard and ſaw frequent peals of thunder, and violent ſtreams of lightning. This plain was ſown partly with wheat, partly with Indian corn; the firſt was cut down, the other not yet ripe.

They left Hadawi on the 27th, continuing their journey down a very ſteep and narrow path between two ſtony hills; then aſcended one ſtill higher, upon the top of which ſtands the large village of Goumbubba, whence they had a proſpect over a conſiderable plain, all ſown with the different grain this country produces, wheat, barley, teff, and tocuſſo; ſimſim (or ſeſame) and nook; the laſt is uſed for oil.

About five o'clock in the afternoon, they had a violent ſhower of hailſtones. Nothing is more common than aggravation about the ſize of hail; but, ſtooping to take up one, Mr. Bruce thought as large as a nutmeg, he received a blow from another juſt under his eye, which he imagined had blinded him, and which occaſioned a ſwelling all the next day.

Yaſine, the Moor, already mentioned, who was recommended by Metical Aga, during the four days Mr. Bruce had ſtaid at a place called Kello, had told him his whole hiſtory. It ſeems he had been ſettled in a province of Abyſſinia, near to Sennaar, called Ras el Feel; had married Abd el Jilleel, the Shekh's daughter; but, growing more popular than his father-in-law, he had been perſecuted by him, and obliged to leave the country. He began now to form hopes, that, if Mr. Bruce was well received, as he ſaw, in all appearance, he was to be, he might, by his intereſt, be appointed to his father-in-law's place; eſpecially if there was war, as every thing ſeemed to indicate. Abd el Jilleel was a coward, and incapable of making himſelf of perſonal value to any party. On the contrary, Yaſine was a tried man, an excellent horſeman, ſtrong, active, and of known courage, having been twice with the late king Yaſous in his invaſions of Sennaar, and both times much wounded there.

They began, on the 5th of December, for the firſt time, to ſee the high mountains of Adowa, nothing reſembling in ſhape to thoſe of Europe, nor, indeed, any other country. Their ſides were all perpendicular rocks, high like ſteeples, or obeliſks, and broken into a thouſand different forms.

Afterwards they paſſed the Mareb, which is the boundary between Tigré and the Baharnagaſh, on this ſide. It runs over a bed of ſoil; is large, deep, and ſmooth; but, upon rain falling, it is more dangerous to paſs than any river in Abyſſinia, on account of the frequent holes in its bottom. They then entered the narrow plain of Yecha, wherein runs the ſmall river, which either gives its name to, or takes it from it. At eleven o'clock, they reſted by the ſide of the mountain whence the river falls. All the villages that had been built here bore the marks of the juſtice of the governor of Tigré. They had been long the moſt incorrigible banditti in the province. He ſurrounded them in one night, burnt their houſes, extirpated the inhabitants, and would never ſuffer any one ſince to ſettle in thoſe parts.

On the 6th of December, they again proceeded on their journey, and in about three hours travelling on a very pleaſant road, over eaſy hills, and through hedge-rows of jeſſamine, honey-ſuckles, and many kinds of flowering ſhrubs, they arrived at Adowa, where Michael Suhul, governor of Tigré, once reſided.

Adowa is ſituated on the declivity of a hill, on the weſt ſide of a ſmall plain, ſurrounded every where by mountains. This plain is watered by three rivulets which are never dry in the midſt of ſummer. There are fiſh in theſe three ſtreams, but none of them remarkable for their ſize, quantity, or goodneſs. The beſt are thoſe of Mai Gogua, a clear and pleaſant rivulet, running very violently, and with great noiſe. There are many agreeable ſpots to the ſouth-eaſt of the convent, on the banks of this river, which are thick-ſhaded with wood and buſhes. Adowa conſiſts of about 300 houſes, and occupies a much larger ſpace than would be thought neceſſary for theſe to ſtand on, by reaſon that each houſe has an encloſure round it of hedges and trees; the laſt chiefly the wanzey. The number of theſe trees ſo planted in all the towns, ſcreen them ſo, that, at a diſtance, they appear ſo many woods. Adowa was not formerly the capital of Tigré, but has accidentally become ſo upon the acceſſion of this governor, whoſe property, or paternal eſtate, lay in and about it. His manſion-houſe is not diſtinguiſhed from any of the others in the town, unleſs by its ſize; it is ſituated upon the top of the hill, and reſembles a priſon rather than a palace; for there are in and about it above three hundred perſons in irons, ſome of whom have been there for twenty years, moſtly with a view to extort money from them; and, what is the moſt unhappy, even when they have paid the ſum of money which he aſks, they do not get their deliverance from his mercileſs hands: moſt of them are kept in cages like wild beaſts, and treated every way in the ſame manner.

The appearance of their kind and hoſpitable landlord, Janni, particularly intereſted our travellers. He had ſent ſervants to conduct them from the paſſage of the river, and met them himſelf at the outer-door of his houſe. He had his own ſhort white hair, covered with a thin muſlin turban, a thick well-ſhaped beard, as white as ſnow, down to his waiſt. He was clothed in the Abyſſinian dreſs, all of white cotton, only he had a red ſilk ſaſh, embroidered with gold, about his waiſt, and ſandals on his feet; his upper garment reached down to his ancles. He had a number of ſervants and ſlaves about him of both ſexes; and, when Mr. Bruce approached him, he ſeemed diſpoſed to receive him with marks of humility and inferiority, which mortified him much, conſidering the obligations he was under to him, the trouble he had given, and was unavoidably ſtill to give him. Mr. Bruce embraced him with great acknowledgements of kindneſs and gratitude, calling him Father; a title he always uſed in ſpeaking either to him or of him afterwards, when he was in higher fortune, which he conſtantly remembered with great pleaſure. He conducted them through a court-yard planted with jeſſamine, to a very neat, and, at the ſame time, large room, furniſhed with a ſilk ſopha; the floor was covered with Perſian carpets and cuſhions. All round, flowers and green leaves were ſtrewed upon the outer yard; and the windows and ſides of the room ſtuck full of ever-greens, in commemoration of the Chriſtmas feſtival that was at hand. Mr. Bruce ſtopped at the entrance of this room; for his feet were both dirty and bloody; and it is not good breeding, to ſhow or ſpeak of your feet in Abyſſinia, eſpecially if any thing ails them; and at all times, they are covered. Janni immediately perceived the wounds that were upon his feet. Both their clothes and fleſh were torn to pieces at Taranta, and ſeveral other places; but he thought they had come on mules furniſhed them by the Naybe. For the young man Mr. Bruce had ſent to him from Kella, following the genius of his countrymen, though telling truth was juſt as profitable to him as lying, had choſen the latter, and ſeeing the horſe he had got from the Baharnagaſh, had figured, in his own imagination, a multitude of others, and told Janni that there were with Mr. Bruce horſes, aſſes, and mules, in great plenty, ſo that when Janni ſaw them paſſing the water, he took our traveller for a ſervant, and expected, for ſeveral minutes, to ſee the ſplendid company arrive, well-mounted upon horſes and mules capariſoned.

Janni was ſo ſhocked at Mr. Bruce's ſaying, that he performed this terrible journey on foot, that he burſt into tears, uttering a thouſand reproaches againſt the Naybe for his hard-heartedneſs and ingratitude, as he had twice, as he ſaid, hindered Michael from going in perſon and ſweeping the Naybe from the face of the earth. Water was immediately procured to waſh their feet. And here began another contention: Janni inſiſted upon doing this himſelf, which made Mr. Bruce run out into the yard, and declare he would not ſuffer it. After this, the like diſpute took place among the ſervants. It was always a ceremony in Abyſſinia, to waſh the feet of thoſe that come from Cairo, and who are underſtood to have been pilgrims at Jeruſalem. No ſooner was this finiſhed, than a great dinner was brought, exceedingly well dreſſed. But no conſideration or entreaty could prevail upon their kind landlord to ſit down and partake with them. He would ſtand all the time, with a clean towel in his hand, though he had plenty of ſervants; and afterwards dined with ſome viſitors, who had come out of curioſity, to ſee a man arrived from ſo far. It was long before Mr. Bruce cured his kind landlord of theſe reſpectful obſervances, which troubled him very much, nor could Janni wholly ever get rid of them.

Adowa is the ſeat of a very valuable manufacture of coarſe cotton cloth, which circulates all over Abyſſinia, inſtead of ſilver money; each web is ſixteen peek long of $1\frac{3}{4}$ width, their value a pataka; that is, ten for the ounce of gold. The houſes in Adowa are all of rough ſtone, cemented with mud inſtead of mortar. That of lime is not uſed but at Gondar, where it is very bad. The roofs are in the form of cones, and thatched with a reedy ſort of graſs, ſomething thicker than wheat ſtraw. Excepting a few ſpots taken notice of as they came to Adowa, this was the only part of Tigré where there was ſoil ſufficient to yield corn; the whole of the province beſides is one entire rock.

They have three harveſts annually at Adowa, and all the neighbourhood. The firſt ſeed time is in July and Auguſt; it is the principal one for wheat, which they then ſow in the middle of the rains. In the ſame ſeaſon they ſow tocuſſo, teff, and barley. From the 20th of November, they reap firſt their barley, then their wheat, and laſt of all their teff. In the room of theſe they ſow immediately upon the ſame ground, without any manure, barley, which they reap in February; and then often ſow teff, but more frequently a kind of vetch, or pea, called Shimbra; theſe are cut down before the firſt rains, which are in April. With all theſe advantages of triple harveſts, which coſt no fallowing, weeding, manure, or other expenſive proceſſes, the farmer in Abyſſinia is always poor and miſerable. The cattle roam at diſcretion through the mountains. The herdſmen ſet fire to the graſs, bent, and bruſhwood, before the rains, and an amazing verdure immediately follows. As the mountains are very ſteep and broken, goats are chiefly the flocks that graze upon them. It is not the extreme height of theſe mountains in Abyſſinia that occaſions ſurpriſe, but the number of them, and the extraordinary forms they preſent to the eye. Some of them are flat, thin, and ſquare, in ſhape of a hearth-ſtone, or ſlab, that ſcarce would ſeem to have baſe ſufficient to reſiſt the action of the winds. Some are like pyramids, others like obeliſks or priſms, and ſome, the moſt extraordinary of all the reſt, pyramids pitched upon their points, with their baſe uppermoſt.

Mr. Bruce viſited the remains of the Jeſuits' convent of Fremona, Jan. 10, 1770. It is built upon the even ridge of a very high hill, in the middle of a large plain, on the oppoſite ſide of which ſtands Adowa. It riſes from the eaſt to the weſt, and ends in a precipice on the eaſt; it is alſo very ſteep to the north, and ſlopes gently down to the plain on the ſouth. The convent is about a mile in circumference, built ſubſtantially with ſtones, which are cemented with lime-mortar. It has towers in the flanks and angles; and, notwithſtanding the ill-uſage it has ſuffered, the walls remain ſtill entire to the height of twenty-five feet. It is divided into three, by croſs walls of equal height. The firſt diviſion ſeems to have been deſtined for the convent, the middle for the church, and the third diviſion is ſeparated from this by a wall, and ſtands upon a precipice.

Janni ſtill continued his kindneſs and hoſpitality. He had already repreſented Mr. Bruce in the moſt favourable light to the Iteghé, or queen-mother, (whoſe ſervant he had long been) to her daughter Ozoro Eſther, and Ozoro Atlaſh; but, above all, to Michael, with whom his influence was very great; and, indeed, to every body he had any weight with, his own countrymen, Greeks, Abyſſinians, and Mahometans; and, as they afterwards found, he had raiſed their curioſity to a great pitch.

Our travellers ſet out from Adowa on the 17th, reſuming their journey to Gondar; in the morning of the next day they aſcended one of thoſe hills, through a very rough ſtony road, and again came into the plain, wherein ſtood Axum, once the capital of Abyſſinia.

The ruins of Axum are very extenſive; but, like the cities of ancient times, conſiſt altogether of public buildings. In one ſquare, which Mr. Bruce apprehended to have been the centre of the town, there are forty obeliſks, none of which have any hieroglyphics upon them. Axum is watered by a ſmall ſtream, which flows all the year from a fountain in the narrow valley, where ſtand the rows of obeliſks. The ſpring is received into a magnificent baſon of 150 feet ſquare, and thence it is carried, at pleaſure, to water the neighbouring gardens, where there is little fruit, excepting pomegranates, neither are theſe very excellent. The preſent town of Axum ſtands at the foot of the hill, and may have about ſix hundred houſes. There are ſeveral manufactures of coarſe cotton cloth; and here too the beſt parchment is made of goats ſkins, which is the ordinary employment of the monks.

Mr. Bruce left Axum in the morning of the 20th of January; the road was at firſt ſufficiently even, through ſmall vallies and meadows; they began to aſcend gently, but through a road exceedingly difficult in itſelf, by reaſon of large ſtones ſtanding on edge, or heaped one upon another; apparently the remains of an old large cauſeway, part of the magnificent works about Axum. The laſt part of the journey made ample amends for the difficulties and fatigue they had ſuffered in the beginning. For the road, on every ſide, was perfumed with variety of flowering ſhrubs, chiefly different ſpecies of jeſſamine; one in particular of theſe, called Agam, impregnated the whole air with the moſt delicious odour, and covered the ſmall hills through which they paſſed, in ſuch profuſion, that they were, at times, almoſt overcome with its fragrance. The country all round had now the moſt beautiful appearance, and this was heightened by the fineſt of weather, and a temperature of air neither too hot nor too cold.

When they had loſt ſight of the ruins of this ancient capital of Abyſſinia, they overtook three travellers driving a cow before them; they had black goat ſkins upon their ſhoulders, and lances and ſhields in their hands; in other reſpects were but thinly clothed; they appeared to be ſoldiers. The cow did not ſeem to be fatted for killing, and it occurred to our travellers that it had been ſtolen. This, however, was not their buſineſs, nor was ſuch an occurrence at all remarkable in a country ſo long engaged in war. They ſaw that their attendants attached themſelves in a particular manner to the three ſoldiers who were driving the cow, and held a ſhort converſation with them. Soon after, the drivers ſuddenly tript up the cow, and gave the poor animal a very rude fall upon the ground, which was but the beginning of her ſufferings. One of them ſat acroſs her neck, holding down her head by the horns, the other twiſted the halter about her fore feet, while the third, who had a knife in his hand, to Mr. Bruce's very great ſurpriſe, in place of taking her by the throat, got aſtride upon her belly before her hind legs, and gave a very deep wound in the upper part of her buttock. From the time Mr. Bruce had ſeen them throw the beaſt upon the ground, he had rejoiced, thinking, that when three people were killing a cow, they muſt have agreed to ſell part of her to them; and he was much diſappointed upon hearing the Abyſſinians ſay, that they were to paſs the river to the other ſide, and not encamp where he intended. Upon Mr. Bruce's propoſing they ſhould bargain for part of the cow, his men anſwered, what they had already learned in converſation, that they were not then to kill her, that ſhe was not wholly theirs, and they could not ſell her. This awakened Mr. Bruce's curioſity: he let his people go forward, and ſtaid himſelf, till he ſaw, with the utmoſt aſtoniſhment, two pieces, thicker and longer than our ordinary beef ſteaks, cut out of the higher part of the buttock of the beaſt. How it was done he cannot poſitively ſay, becauſe judging the cow was to be killed from the moment he ſaw the knife drawn, he was not anxious to view that cataſtrophe, which was by no means an object of curioſity; whatever way it was done, it ſurely was adroitly, and the two pieces were ſpread upon the outſide of one of their ſhields. One of them ſtill continued holding the head, while the other two were buſied in curing the wound. This too was done not in an ordinary manner; the ſkin which had covered the fleſh that was taken away was left entire, flapped over the wound, and was faſtened to the correſponding part by two or more ſmall ſkewers, or pins. Whether they had put any thing under the ſkin between that and the wounded fleſh, Mr. Bruce cannot tell; but at the river ſide where they were, they had prepared a cataplaſm of clay, with which they covered the wound; they then forced the animal to riſe, and drove it on before them, to furniſh them with a fuller meal when they ſhould meet their companions in the evening.

They pitched their tent this day in a ſmall plain, by the banks of a quick clear running ſtream; the ſpot is called Mai Shum. A peaſant had made a very neat little garden on both ſides of the rivulet, in which he had ſown abundance of onions and garlic, and he had a ſpecies of pumpkin, which Mr. Bruce thought was little inferior to a melon. This man gueſſed by their arms and horſes that they were hunters, and he brought them a preſent of the fruits of his garden, and begged their aſſiſtance againſt a number of wild boars, which carried havoc and deſolation through all his labours, marks of which were, indeed, too viſible every where. Such inſtances of induſtry are very rare in this country, and demanded encouragement. Mr. Bruce paid him, therefore, for his greens; and ſent two of his ſervants with him into the wood, and got on horſeback himſelf. Mirza, his horſe, indeed, as well as his maſter, had recruited greatly during their ſtay at Adowa, under the hoſpitable roof of their good friend Janni.

They killed five boars, all large ones, in the ſpace of about two hours; one of which meaſured ſix feet nine inches; and, though he ran at an amazing ſpeed near two miles, ſo as to be with difficulty overtaken by the horſe, and was ſtruck through and through with two heavy lances loaded at the end with iron, no perſon dared to come near him on foot; and he defended himſelf above half an hour, till, having no lances left, Mr. Bruce ſhot him with a horſe piſtol. But the misfortune was, that after their hunting had been crowned with ſuch ſucceſs, they did not dare to partake of the excellent veniſon they had acquired; for the Abyſſinians hold pork of all kinds in the utmoſt deteſtation; and our traveller was now become cautious, leſt he ſhould give offence, being at no great diſtance from the capital.

In the courſe of their journey, Mr. Bruce heard a cry from his ſervants, "Robbers! Robbers!" He immediately got upon his mule to learn what alarm this might be, and ſaw, to his great ſurpriſe, part of his baggage ſtrewed on the ground, the ſervants running, ſome leading, others on foot driving ſuch of their mules as were unloaded before them; in a word, every thing in the greateſt confuſion poſſible. Having got to the edge of the wood, they faced about, and began to prepare their fire-arms; but as Mr. Bruce ſaw the king's two ſervants, and the man that Janni ſent with them endeavouring all they could to pitch the tent, he forbade them to fire, till they ſhould receive orders from him. Mr. Bruce now rode immediately up to the tent, and in his way was ſaluted from among the buſhes with many ſtones, one of which gave him a violent blow upon the foot. At the ſame inſtant he received another blow with a ſmall unripe pumpkin, juſt upon the belly, where he was ſtrongly defended by the coarſe cotton cloth wrapped ſeveral times about him by way of ſaſh or girdle. As robbers fight with other arms than pumpkins, when Mr. Bruce ſaw this fall at his feet, he was no longer under apprehenſion.

Our traveller now advanced towards them, crying out, they were friends, and Ras Michael's friends; and deſired only to ſpeak to them, and he would give them what they wanted. A few ſtones were the only anſwer, but they did no hurt. Mr. Bruce then gave Yaſine his gun, thinking that might have given offence. The top of the tent being now up, two men came forward making great complaints, but of what he did not underſtand, only that they ſeemed to accuſe our travellers of having wronged them. In ſhort they found the matter was this; one of the Moors had taken a heap of ſtraw, which he was carrying to his aſs, and the proprietor, at ſeeing this, had alarmed the village. Every body had taken lances and ſhields; but, not daring to approach for fear of the fire-arms, they had contented themſelves with ſhowering ſtones from their hiding-places, at a diſtance from among the buſhes. Mr. Bruce and his people immediately told them, however, that though, as the king's gueſt, he had a title to be furniſhed with what was neceſſary, yet, if they were averſe to it, he was very well content to pay for every thing they furniſhed, both for his men and beaſts; but that they muſt throw no ſtones, otherwiſe they ſhould defend themſelves. The tent being now pitched, and every thing in order, a treaty ſoon followed. They conſented to ſell them what they wanted, but at extravagant prices, which, however, Mr. Bruce was content to comply with. But a man of the village, acquainted with one of the king's ſervants, had communicated to him, that the pretence of the Moor's taking the ſtraw was not really the reaſon of the uproar, for they made no uſe of it except to burn; but that a report had been ſpread abroad, that an action had happened between Faſil and Ras Michael, in which the latter had been defeated, and the country, no longer in fear of the Ras, had indulged themſelves in their uſual exceſſes, and, taking them for a caravan of Mahometans with merchandiſe, had reſolved to rob them.

They arrived at the town of Siré on the 22d, and pitched their tent in a ſtrong ſituation, in a very deep gulley on the weſt extremity of the town.

Siré, the province properly ſo called, reaches from Axum to the Tacazzé. The town of Siré is ſituated on the brink of a very ſteep, narrow valley; and through this the road lies, which is almoſt impaſſable. In the midſt of this valley runs a brook bordered with palm-trees, ſome of which are grown to a conſiderable ſize, but bear no fruit. The town is larger than that of Axum; it is in form of a half-moon fronting the plain, but its greateſt breadth is at the weſt end; all the houſes are of clay, and thatched; the roofs are in the form of cones, as, indeed, are all in Abyſſinia. Siré is famous for a manufacture of coarſe cotton cloths, which paſs for current money through all the province of Tigré, and are valued at a drachm, the tenth part of a wakea of gold, or near the value of an imperial dollar each; their breadth is a yard and a quarter. Beſides theſe, beads, needles, cohol, and incenſe, at times only, are conſidered as money. The articles depend greatly on chance, whether any are current for the time or not; but the latter is often demanded; and, for the firſt, there are modes and faſhions among theſe barbarians, and all, except thoſe of a certain colour and form, are uſeleſs. Theſe people were not of a humour to buy and ſell with them. They were not perfectly ſatisfied that Michael was alive, and waited only for a confirmation of the news of his defeat, to make their own terms with all ſtrangers unfortunate enough to fall into their hands. On the other hand, our travellers were in poſſeſſion of ſuperior force, and knowing their inclinations, they treated them pretty much in the manner they would have done by them.

Although Siré is ſituated in one of the fineſt countries in the world, like other places, it has its inconveniencies. Putrid fevers, of the very worſt kind, are almoſt conſtant here; and there did then actually reign a ſpecies of theſe that daily ſwept away a great number of people.

Here Mr. Bruce heard the good news that Ras Michael, on the 10th of this month, had come up with Faſil at Fagitta, and entirely diſperſed his army, after killing 10,000 men. This account, though not confirmed by any authority, ſtruck all the mutinous of this province with awe; and every man returned to his duty for fear of incurring the diſpleaſure of this ſevere governor, which they well knew would inſtantly be followed by more than an adequate portion of vengeance, eſpecially againſt thoſe that had not accompanied him to the field.

Early on the 24th, they ſtruck their tent at Siré, and paſſed through a vaſt plain. All this day they could diſcern no mountains, as far as eye could reach, but only ſome few detached hills, ſtanding ſeparate on the plain, covered with high graſs, which they were then burning, to produce new with the firſt rains. The country to the north is altogether flat, and perfectly open; and though they could not diſcover one village this day, yet it ſeemed to be well inhabited, from the many people they ſaw on different parts of the plain, ſome at harveſt, and ſome herding their cattle.

They encamped at Addergey on the 30th, near a ſmall rivulet called Mai-Lumi, the river of limes, or lemons, in a plain ſcarce a mile ſquare, ſurrounded on each ſide with very thick wood in form of an amphitheatre. Above this wood, are bare, rugged, and barren mountains. Midway in the cliff is a miſerable village, that ſeems rather to hang than to ſtand there, ſcarce a yard of level ground being before it to hinder its inhabitants from falling down the precipice. The wood is full of lemons and wild citrons, from which it acquires its name. Before the tent, to the weſtward, was a very deep valley, which terminated this little plain in a tremendous precipice.

This night the hyænas devoured one of the beſt of their mules. They are here in great plenty, and ſo are lions; the roaring and grumbling of the latter, in the part of the wood neareſt their tent, greatly diſturbed their beaſts, and prevented them from eating their provender. Mr. Bruce lengthened the ſtrings of his tent, and placed the beaſts between them. The white ropes, and the tremulous motion made by the impreſſion of the wind, frightened the lions from coming near them. They had procured from Janni two ſmall braſs bells, ſuch as the mules carry, and had tied theſe to the ſtorm ſtrings of the tent, where their noiſe, no doubt, greatly contributed to the ſafety of their beaſts, from theſe ravenous, yet cautious animals, ſo that they never ſaw them; but the noiſe they made, and, perhaps, their ſmell, ſo terrified the mules, that, in the morning, they were drenched in ſweat, as if they had been a long journey. The brutiſh hyæna was not ſo to be deterred. Mr. Bruce ſhot one of them dead on the night of the 31ſt of January, and on the 2d of February, he fired at another ſo near, that he was confident of killing him. Whether the balls had fallen out, or that he had really miſſed him with the firſt barrel, he knew not, but he gave a ſnarl and a kind of bark upon the firſt ſhot, advancing directly upon him, as if unhurt. The ſecond ſhot, however, took place, and laid him without motion on the ground. Yaſine and his men killed another with a pike; and ſuch was their determined coolneſs, that they ſtalked round about our travellers with the familiarity of a dog, or ſome other domeſtic animal brought up with man. However, they were ſtill more incommoded by a ſmaller animal, a large, black ant, little leſs than an inch long, which, coming out from under the ground, demoliſhed their carpets, which they cut all into ſhreds, and part of the lining of their tent likewiſe, and every bag or ſack they could find. Their bite cauſes a conſiderable inflammation, and the pain is greater than that which ariſes from the bite of a ſcorpion; they are called *gundam*.

On the firſt of February, the Shum ſent his people to value, as he ſaid, their merchandiſe, that they might pay cuſtom. Many of the Moors, in their caravan, had left them to go a near way to Hauza. Mr. Bruce had at moſt five or ſix aſſes, including thoſe belonging to Yaſine. He humoured them ſo far as to open the caſes where were the teleſcopes and quadrant, or, indeed, rather ſhewed them open, as they were not ſhut from the obſervation he had been making. They could only wonder at things they had never before ſeen. On the 2d of February the Shum came himſelf, and a violent altercation enſued. Mr. Bruce, however, getting the better, on the 4th of February, in the morning, they left Addergey. While employed in making ready for their departure, which was juſt at the dawn of day, a hyæna, unſeen by any of them, faſtened upon one of Yaſine's aſſes, and had almoſt pulled his tail away. Mr. Bruce was buſied at gathering the tent pins into a ſack, and had placed his muſket and bayonet ready againſt a tree, as it is uſual at that hour, and the cloſe of the evening, in order to be on their guard againſt any banditti. A boy, who was ſervant to Yaſine, ſaw the hyæna firſt, and flew to Mr. Bruce's muſket. Yaſine was disjoining the poles of the tent, and, having one half of the largeſt in his hand, he ran to the aſſiſtance of his aſs, and in that moment the muſket went off, luckily charged with only one ball, which gave Yaſine a fleſh wound between the thumb and forefinger of his left hand. The boy inſtantly threw down the muſket, which had terrified the hyæna, and made him let go the aſs; but he ſtood ready to fight Yaſine, who, not amuſing himſelf with the choice of weapons, gave him ſo rude a blow with the tent-pole upon his head, that it felled him to the ground; others with pikes, put an end to his life. They were then obliged to turn their cares towards the wounded. Yaſine's wound was ſoon ſeen to be a trifle; beſides, he was a man not eaſily alarmed on ſuch occaſions. But the poor aſs was not ſo ſoon comforted. The ſtump remained, the tail hanging by a piece of it, which they were obliged to cut off. The next operation was actual cautery; but, as they had made no bread for breakfaſt, their fire had been nearly out. They therefore were obliged to tie the ſtump round with whip-cord, till they could get fire enough to heat an iron. What ſufficiently marked the voracity of theſe beaſts, the hyænas, was, that the bodies of their dead companions, which our travellers hauled a long way from them, and left there, were almoſt entirely eaten by the ſurvivors the next morning. They continued their journey along the ſide of a hill, through thick wood and high graſs; then deſcended into a ſteep, narrow valley, the ſides of which had been ſhaded with high trees, but in burning the graſs the trees were conſumed likewiſe; and the ſhoots from the roots were ſome of them above eight feet high ſince the tree had thus ſuffered that ſame year.

On the 8th of February they began to aſcend Lamalmon, through a very narrow road, or rather path, for it ſcarcely was two feet wide any where. It was a ſpiral winding up the ſide of the mountain, always on the very brink of a precipice. Torrents of water, which in winter carry prodigious ſtones down the ſide of this mountain, had divided this path into ſeveral places, and opened to our travellers a view of that dreadful abyſs below, which few heads can bear to look down upon. They were here obliged to unload their baggage, and, by ſlow degrees, crawl up a hill, carrying them little by little upon their ſhoulders round theſe chaſms, where the road was interſected. The mountains grew ſteeper, the paths narrower, and the breaches more frequent as they aſcended. Scarce were their mules, though unloaded, able to ſcramble up, but were perpetually falling; and, to increaſe their difficulties, which, in ſuch caſes, ſeldom come ſingle, a large number of cattle was deſcending, and ſeemed to threaten to puſh them all into the gulf below. After two hours of conſtant toil, at nine o'clock, they alighted in a ſmall plain called Kedus, or St. Michael, from a church and village of that name, neither beaſt nor man being able to go a ſtep further.

The plain of Kedus, or St. Michael, is at the foot of a ſteep cliff which terminates the weſt ſide of Lamalmon. It is here perpendicular like a wall, and a few trees only upon the top of the cliff. Over this precipice flow two ſtreams of water, which never are dry, but run in all ſeaſons. They fall into a wood at the bottom of this cliff, and preſerve it in continual verdure all the year, though the plain itſelf below is all rent in chaſms, and cracked by the heat of the ſun. Theſe two ſtreams form a conſiderable rivulet in the plain of St. Michael, and are a great relief both to men and cattle in this tedious and difficult paſſage over the mountain.

The air of Lamalmon is pleaſant and temperate. They here found their appetite return, with a cheerfulneſs, lightneſs of ſpirits, and agility of body, which indicated that their nerves had again reſumed their wonted tone, which they had loſt in the low, poiſonous, and ſultry air on the coaſt of the Red Sea. The ſun here is indeed hot, but in the morning a cool breeze never fails, which increaſes as the ſun riſes high. In the ſhade it is always cool. Lamalmon is the paſs through which the road of all caravans to Gondar lies. It is here they take an account of all baggage and merchandiſe, which they tranſmit to the Negadé Ras, or chief officer of the cuſtoms at Gondar, by a man whom they ſend to accompany the caravan. There is alſo a preſent, or awide, due to the private proprietor of the ground: and this is levied with great rigour and violence, and, for the moſt part, with injuſtice; ſo that this ſtation, which, by the eſtabliſhment of the cuſtom-houſe, and nearneſs to the capital, ſhould be in a particular manner attended to by government, is always the place where the firſt robberies and murders are committed in unſettled times. Though our travellers had nothing with them which could be conſidered as ſubject to duty, they ſubmitted every thing to the will of the robber of the place, and gave him his preſent. If he was not ſatisfied, he ſeemed to be ſo, which was all they wiſhed for.

Leave of departure was granted early in the morning of the 9th, but it was with great regret they were obliged to abandon their Mahometan friends into hands that ſeemed diſpoſed to ſhew them no favour. The king was in Maitſha, or Damot, that is to ſay, far from Gondar, and various reports were ſpread abroad about the ſucceſs of the campaign. Theſe people only waited for an unfavourable event, to make a pretence for robbing travellers of every thing they had. The perſons whoſe right it was to levy theſe contributions were two, a father and ſon; the old man was dreſſed very decently, ſpoke little, but ſmoothly, and had a very good carriage. He profeſſed a violent hatred to all Mahometans, on account of their religion; a ſentiment which ſeemed to promiſe nothing favourable to their friend Yaſine and his companions: but, in the evening, the ſon, who ſeemed to be the active man, came to their tent, and brought them a quantity of bread and bouza, which his father had ordered before. He ſeemed to be much taken with our travellers' fire-arms, and was very inquiſitive about them. Mr. Bruce gave him every ſort of ſatisfaction, and, little by little, ſaw he might win his heart entirely; which he very much wiſhed to do, that he might free his companions from bondage. This young man, was a good ſoldier; and, having been in ſeveral actions under Ras Michael, as fuſileer, he brought his gun, and inſiſted on ſhooting at marks. Mr. Bruce humoured him in this: but as he uſed a rifle which he did not underſtand, he found himſelf overmatched, eſpecially by the greatneſs of the range, for he ſhot ſtraight enough. He then ſhewed him the manner they ſhot flying, there being quails in abundance, and wild pigeons, of which he killed ſeveral on the wing, which left him in the utmoſt aſtoniſhment. Having got on horſeback, Mr. Bruce next went through the exerciſe of the Arabs, with a long ſpear and a ſhort javelin. This was more within his comprehenſion, as he had ſeen ſomething like it; but he was wonderfully taken with the fierce and fiery appearance of his horſe, and, at the ſame time, with his docility, the form of his ſaddle, bridle, and accoutrements. He threw at laſt the ſandals off his feet, and twiſted his upper garment into his girdle, and ſet off at ſo furious a rate, that Mr. Bruce could not help doubting whether he was in his ſober underſtanding. It was not long till he came back, and with him a man ſervant carrying a ſheep and a goat, and a woman carrying a jar of honey-wine. Mr. Bruce had not yet quitted the horſe; and when he ſaw what his intention was, he put Mirza to a gallop, and, with one of the barrels of the gun, ſhot a pigeon, and immediately fired the other into the ground. There was nothing after this that could have ſurpriſed him, and it was repeated ſeveral times at his deſire; after which he went into the tent, where he invited himſelf to Mr. Bruce's houſe at Gondar. There he was to teach him every thing he had ſeen. They now ſwore perpetual friendſhip; and a horn or two of hydromel being emptied, Mr. Bruce introduced the caſe of his fellow-travellers, and obtained a promiſe that they ſhould have leave to ſet out together. He would, moreover, take no awide, and ſaid, he would be favourable in his report to Gondar. Matters were ſo far advanced, when a ſervant of Michael's arrived, ſent by Petro, Janni's brother, who had obtained him from Ozoro Eſther. This put an end to all their difficulties. Our young ſoldier alſo kept his word, and a mere trifle of awide was given, rather by the Moor's own deſire than from demand, and the report of the baggage, and dues thereon, were as low as could be wiſhed. News was now brought them, that Ras Michael had actually beaten Faſil, forced him to retire to the other ſide of the Nile, and was then in Maitſha, where it was thought he would remain with the army all the rainy ſeaſon. This was juſt what Mr. Bruce could have wiſhed, as it brought him at once to the neighbourhood of the ſources of the Nile, without the ſmalleſt ſhadow of danger or fear.

February the 9th, they took leave of the friends they had ſo newly acquired at Lamalmon. They began to aſcend what ſtill remained of the mountain, which though ſteep and full of buſhes, was much leſs difficult than that which they had paſſed. At a quarter paſt ſeven they arrived at the top of Lamalmon, which has, from below, the appearance of being ſharp-pointed. On the contrary, they were much ſurpriſed to find there a large plain, part in paſture, but more bearing grain. It is full of ſprings, and ſeems to be the great reſervoir from whence ariſe moſt of the rivers that water this part of Abyſſinia. A multitude of ſtreams iſſue from the very ſummit in all directions; the ſprings boil out from the earth in large quantities, capable of turning a mill. They plough, ſow, and reap here in all ſeaſons; and the huſbandman muſt blame his own indolence, and not the ſoil, if he has not three harveſts. They ſaw, in one place, people buſy cutting down wheat; immediately next to it, others at the plough; and the adjoining field had green corn in the ear; a little further, it was not an inch above the ground. The mountain is every where ſo ſteep and high, that it is not enough to ſay againſt the will, but without the aſſiſtance of thoſe above, no one from below can venture to aſcend. On the top is a large plain, affording plenty of paſture, as well as room for ploughing and ſowing for the maintenance of the army; and there is water, at all ſeaſons, in great plenty, and even fiſh in the ſtreams upon it; ſo that, although the inhabitants of the mountain had been often beſieged for a conſiderable time together, they ſuffered little inconvenience from it, nor ever were taken unleſs by treaſon; except by Chriſtopher de Gama and his Portugueſe, who are ſaid, by their own hiſtorians, to have ſtormed this rock, and put the Mahometan garriſon to the ſword.

The next day they continued along the plain on the top of Lamalmon; and, after having ſuffered, with infinite patience and perſeverance, the hardſhips and danger of this long and painful journey, at forty minutes paſt ten they were gratified, at laſt, with the ſight of Gondar, and arrived there on the 11th.

Abba Salama, at that time filled the poſt of Acab Saat, or *guardian of the fire.* It is the third dignity of the church, and he is the firſt religious officer in the palace. He had a very large revenue, and ſtill a greater influence. He was a man exceedingly rich, and of the very worſt life poſſible; though he had taken the vows of poverty and chaſtity, it was ſaid he had at that time above ſeventy miſtreſſes in Gondar. His way of ſeducing women was as extraordinary as the number ſeduced. It was not by gifts, attendance, or flattery, the uſual means employed on ſuch occaſions; when he had fixed his deſires upon a woman, he forced her to comply, under pain of *excommunication.* He was exceedingly eloquent and bold, was a man of a pleaſing countenance, ſhort, and of a very fair complexion; indifferent, or rather averſe to wine, but a monſtrous glutton; nice in what he had to eat, to a degree ſcarcely before known in Abyſſinia; a mortal enemy to all white people, whom he claſſed under the name of Franks, for which the Greeks, uniting their intereſts at favourable times, had often very nearly overſet him.

On the 12th, about ten o'clock, Mr. Bruce, dreſſed in his Mooriſh habit, went to Ayto Aylo, and found him with ſeveral great plates of bread, melted butter, and honey, before him, of one of which he and our traveller ate; the reſt were given to the Moors, and other people preſent. There was with him a prieſt of Koſcam, and they all ſet out for that palace as ſoon as they had finiſhed breakfaſt. They paſſed the brook of St. Raphael, a ſuburb of Gondar, where is the houſe of the Abuna; and upon coming in ſight of the palace of Koſcam, they all uncovered their heads, and rode ſlowly. As Aylo was all-powerful with the Iteghé, indeed her firſt counſellor and friend, their admittance was eaſy and immediate. They alighted, and were ſhewn into a low room in the palace. Ayto Aylo went immediately to the Iteghé, or queen, to inquire about Welled Hawaryat, who was then ill, and his audience laſted two long hours. He returned to them with the news, that Welled Hawaryat was much better, by a medicine a ſaint from Waldubba had given him, which conſiſted in ſome characters, written with common ink upon a tin plate, which characters were waſhed off by a medical liquor, and then given him to drink. It was agreed, however, that the complaint was the ſmall pox, and the good it had done him was, he ate heartily of *brind*, or raw beef, after it, though he had not ate before ſince his arrival, but called perpetually for drink.

Before Mr. Bruce entered on his charge of phyſician, he ſtated to thoſe preſent in the palace, the diſagreeable taſk now impoſed upon him, a ſtranger without acquaintance or protection, having the language but imperfectly, and without power or control among them. He profeſſed his intention of doing his utmoſt, although the diſeaſe was much more ſerious and fatal in this country than in his own; but he inſiſted one condition ſhould be granted him, which was, that no directions as to regimen or management, even of the moſt trifling kind, as they might think, ſhould be ſuffered, without his permiſſion and ſuperintendence. This being aſſented to, Mr. Bruce ſet the ſervants to work. There were apartments enough. He opened all the doors and windows, fumigating them with incenſe and myrrh in abundance, and waſhed them with warm water and vinegar. The common and fatal regimen in this country, and in moſt parts in the eaſt, has been to keep their patient from feeling the ſmalleſt breath of air; hot drink, a fire, and a quantity of covering are added in Abyſſinia, and the doors ſhut ſo cloſe as even to keep the room in darkneſs, whilſt this heat is further augmented by the conſtant burning of candles. Ayabdar, Ozoro Altaſh's remaining daughter, and the ſon of Mariam Barea, were both taken ill at the ſame time, and happily recovered. A daughter of Kaſmati Boro, by a daughter of Kaſmati Eſhtés, died; and her mother, though ſhe ſurvived, was a long time ill afterwards. Ayabdar was very much marked, ſo was Mariam Barea's ſon. At this time, Ayto Conſu, ſon of Kaſmati-Netcho by Ozoro Eſther, had arrived from Tcherkin, a lad of very great hopes, though not then fourteen. He came to his mother without Mr. Bruce's knowledge or her's, and was infected likewiſe. Laſt of all the infant child of Michael, the child of his old age, took the diſeaſe, and though the weakeſt of all the children, recovered beſt. The patients, being all likely to do well, were removed to a large houſe of Kaſmati Eſhté, which ſtood within the boundaries of Koſcam, while the rooms underwent another luſtration and fumigation, after which they all returned; and Mr. Bruce got, as his fee, a preſent of the neat and convenient houſe formerly belonging to Baſha Euſebius, which had a ſeparate entry, without going through the palace.

March the 10th, the army marched into the town in triumph, and the Ras at the head of the troops of Tigré. He was bareheaded; over his ſhoulders, and down to his back, hung a pallium, or cloak, of black velvet, with a ſilver fringe. A boy, by his right ſtirrup, held a ſilver wand of about five feet and a half long, much like the ſtaves of our great officers at court. Behind him all the ſoldiers, who had ſlain an enemy and taken the ſpoils from them, had their lances and firelocks ornamented with ſmall ſhreds of ſcarlet cloth, one piece for every man he had ſlain. Remarkable among all this multitude was Hagos, door-keeper of the Ras. This man, always well-armed and well mounted, had followed the wars of the Ras from his infancy, and had been ſo fortunate in this kind of ſingle combat, that his whole lance and javelin, horſe and perſon, were covered over with the ſhreds of ſcarlet cloth. At this laſt battle of Fagitta, Hagos is ſaid to have ſlain eleven men with his own hand. Indeed, there is nothing more fallacious than judging of a man's courage by theſe marks of conqueſts. A good horſeman, armed with a coat of mail, upon a ſtrong, well-fed, well-winded horſe, may, after a defeat, kill as many of theſe wretched, weary, naked fugitives as he pleaſes, confining himſelf to thoſe that are weakly, mounted upon tired horſes, and covered only with goat's-ſkins, or thoſe that are flying on foot.

The head-dreſs of the governors of provinces was very remarkable. A large broad fillet was bound upon their forehead, and tied behind their head. In the middle of this was a horn, or a conical piece of ſilver, gilt, about four inches long, much in the ſhape of our common candle extinguiſhers. This is called *kirn*, or horn, and is only worn in reviews or parades after victory. Next to theſe came the king, with a fillet of white muſlin about three inches broad, binding his forehead, tied with a large double knot behind, and hanging down about two feet on his back. About him were the great officers of ſtate, ſuch of the young nobility as were without command; and after theſe, the houſehold troops. Then followed the Kanitz Kitzera, or executioner of the camp, and his attendants; and, laſt of all, amidſt the king's and the Ras's baggage, came a man bearing the ſtuffed ſkin of the unfortunate Wooſheka upon a pole, which he hung upon a branch of the tree before the king's palace appropriated for public executions.

Mr. Bruce conſtantly attended his patients at Koſcam: at all which times he had been received with the greateſt cordiality and marks of kindneſs by the Iteghé, and orders given for his free admittance, upon all occaſions, like an officer of her houſehold.

Mr. Bruce was informed, on the 14th, that all his recommendatory letters were to be read. He expected at the ordinary hour, about five in the afternoon, to be ſent for, and had rode out to Koſcam with Ayto Heikel, the queen's chamberlain, to ſee the child, who was pretty well recovered of all its complaints, but very weak. In the interim, Mr. Bruce was ſent for to the Ras, with orders to diſpatch a man with the king's preſent, to wait for him at the palace, whither he was to go after leaving Michael. Five in the evening was fixed as the hour. Mr.

Bruce came a little before the time, and met Ayto Aylo at the door. He ſqueezed him by the hand, and ſaid, "Refuſe nothing, it can be all altered afterwards; but it is very neceſſary, on account of the prieſts and the populace, you ſhould have a place of ſome authority, otherwiſe you will be robbed and murdered the firſt time you go half a mile from home: fifty people have told me that you have cheſts filled with gold, and that you can make gold, or bring what quantity you pleaſe from the Indies; and the reaſon of all this is, becauſe you refuſed the queen and Ozoro Eſther's offer of gold at Koſcam, and which you muſt never do again.

Mr. Bruce and his friends went in and ſaw the Ras, who was an old man, ſitting upon a ſofa; his white hair was dreſſed in many ſhort curls. He appeared to be thoughtful, but not diſpleaſed; his face was lean, his eyes quick and vivid, but ſeemed to be a little ſore from expoſure to the weather. He ſeemed to be about ſix feet high, though his lameneſs made it difficult to gueſs with accuracy. His air was perfectly free from conſtraint, what the French call *degagee*. They muſt have been bad phyſiognomiſts that did not diſcern his capacity and underſtanding by his very countenance. Every look conveyed a ſentiment with it: he ſeemed to have no occaſion for other language; and, indeed, he ſpoke little. Mr. Bruce offered, as uſual, to kiſs the ground before him; and of this he ſeemed to take little notice, ſtretching out his hand, and ſhaking Mr. Bruce's upon his riſing.

Mr. Bruce ſat down with Aylo, three or four of the judges, Heikel the queen's chamberlain, and others, who whiſpered ſomething in his ear, and went out; which interruption prevented Mr. Bruce from ſpeaking as he was prepared to do, or give him his preſent, which a man held behind him. A tedious incongruous converſation then enſued, after which Mr. Bruce gave the preſent, and retired.

Our traveller went afterwards to the king's palace, and met Aylo and Heikel at the door of the preſence-chamber. Tecla Mariam walked before them to the foot of the throne: after which Mr. Bruce advanced and proſtrated himſelf upon the ground. "I have brought you a ſervant, ſays he to the king, from ſo diſtant a country, that if you ever let him eſcape, we ſhall never be able to follow him, or know where to ſeek him." To this the king made no reply, nor did he ſhew any alteration of countenance. Five people were ſtanding on each ſide of the throne, all young men, three on his left, and two on his right. One of theſe, the ſon of Tecla Mariam (afterwards Mr. Bruce's great friend) who ſtood uppermoſt on the left hand, came up, and taking hold of him by the hand, placed him immediately above him; when ſeeing Mr. Bruce had no knife in his girdle, he pulled out his own and gave it to him. Upon being placed, Mr. Bruce again kiſſed the ground. The king was in an alcove; the reſt went out of ſight from where the throne was, and ſat down. The uſual queſtions were now put to Mr. Bruce about Jeruſalem and the holy place—where his country was? which it was impoſſible to deſcribe, as they knew the ſituation of no country but their own—why he came ſo far—whether the moon and the ſtars, but eſpecially the moon, was the ſame in his country as in theirs? and a great many ſuch idle and tireſome queſtions. He had ſeveral times offered to take his preſent from the man who held it, that he might offer it to his majeſty and go away; but the king always made a ſign to put it off, till, being tired to death with ſtanding, he leaned againſt the wall. Mr. Bruce was abſolutely in deſpair, and ſcarcely able to ſpeak a word, inwardly mourning the hardneſs of his lot in this his firſt preferment, and ſincerely praying that it might be his laſt promotion in that court. However, he was at laſt permitted to retire.

We ſhall now proceed in a deſcription of the place, according to Mr. Bruce's information.—At Maſuah, that is, on the coaſt of the Red Sea, begins an imaginary diviſion of Abyſſinia into two, which is rather a diviſion of language than ſtrictly to be underſtood as territorial. The firſt diviſion is called *Tigré*, between the Red Sea and the river Tacazzé. Between that river and the Nile, weſtward, where it bounds the Galla, it is called *Ambara*. But whatever convenience there may be from this diviſion, there is neither geographical nor hiſtorical preciſion in it, for there are many little provinces included in the firſt that do not belong to Tigré: and, in the ſecond diviſion, which is Amhara, that which gives the name, is but a very ſmall part of it. Maſuah, in ancient times, was one of the principal places of reſidence of the Baharnagaſh, who, when he was not there himſelf, conſtantly left his deputy or lieutenant. In ſummer he reſided for ſeveral months in the iſland of Dahalac, then accounted part of his territory. He was, after the King and Betwudet, the perſon of the greateſt conſideration in the kingdom, and was inveſted with ſendick and nagareet, the kettle-drum and colours, marks of ſupreme command. Tigré is the next province in Abyſſinia, as well for greatneſs as riches, power, and dignity, and neareſt Maſuah. It is bounded by the territory of the Baharnagaſh, that is, by the river Mareb on the eaſt, and the Tacazzé upon the weſt. It is about one hundred and twenty miles broad from E. to W. and two hundred from N. to S. This is its preſent ſituation. The hand of uſurping power has aboliſhed all diſtinction on the weſt ſide of the Tacazzè; beſides, many large governments, ſuch as Enderta and Antalow, and great part of the Baharnagaſh, were ſwallowed up in this province to the eaſt. What, in a ſpecial manner, makes the riches of Tigré, is, that it lies neareſt the market, which is Arabia; and all the merchandiſe deſtined to croſs the Red Sea muſt paſs through this province, ſo that the governor has the choice of all commodities wherewith to make his market. The ſtrongeſt male, the moſt beautiful female ſlaves, the pureſt gold, the largeſt teeth of ivory, all muſt paſs through his hands. Fire-arms, moreover, which for many years have decided who is the moſt powerful in Abyſſinia, all theſe come from Arabia, and not one can be purchaſed without his knowing to whom it goes, and after his having had the firſt refuſal of it. Siré, a province about twenty-five miles broad, and not much more in length, is reckoned as a part of Tigré alſo, but this is not a new uſurpation. It loſt the rank of a province, and was united to Tigré for the miſbehaviour of its governor Kaſmati Claudius, in an expedition againſt the Shangalla in the reign of Yaſous the Great. After paſſing the Tacazzé, the boundary between Siré and Samen, we come to that mountainous province called by the laſt name. A large chain of rugged mountains, where is the Jew's Rock, reaches from the ſouth of Tigré down near to Waldubba, the low, hot country that bounds Abyſſinia on the north. On the N. E. of Tigré lies the province of Begemder. It borders upon Angot, whoſe governor is called Angot Ras; but the whole province now, excepting a few villages, is conquered by the Galla. It has Amhara, which runs parallel to it, on the ſouth, and is ſeparated from it by the river Baſhilo. Both theſe provinces are bounded by the river Nile on the weſt. Begemder is about 180 miles in its greateſt length, and 60 in breadth, comprehending Laſta, a mountainous province, ſometimes depending on Begemder, but often in rebellion. Begemder is the ſtrength of Abyſſinia in horſemen. It is ſaid that, with Laſta, it can bring out 45,000 men; but this, as far as ever Mr. Bruce could inform himſelf, is a great exaggeration. They are exceeding good ſoldiers when they are pleaſed with their general, and the cauſe for which they fight; otherwiſe, they are eaſily divided, great many private intereſts being continually kept alive, as it is thought induſtriouſly, by government itſelf. It is well ſtocked with cattle of every kind, all very beautiful. The mountains are full of iron mines; they are not ſo ſteep and rocky, nor ſo frequent, as in other provinces, if we except only Laſta, and abound in all ſort of wild fowl and game. Amhara is the next province,

vince, between the two rivers Baſhilo and Geſhen. The length of this country from E. to W. is about 120 miles, and its breadth ſomething more than 40. It is a very mountainous country, full of nobility; the men are reckoned the handſomeſt in Abyſſinia, as well as the braveſt. Between the two rivers Geſhen and Samba, is a low, unwholeſome, though fertile province, called Walaka; and ſouthward of that is Upper Shoa. This province, or kingdom, was famous for the retreat it gave to the only remaining prince of the houſe of Solomon, who fled from the maſſacre of his brethren by Judith, about the year 900, upon the rock of Damo. Here the royal family remained in ſecurity, and increaſed in number, for near 400 years, till they were reſtored. Gojam, from north-eaſt to ſouth-eaſt, is about 80 miles in length, and 40 in breadth. It is a very flat country, and all in paſture; has few mountains, but thoſe are very high ones, and are chiefly on the banks of the Nile, to the ſouth, which river ſurrounds the province. On the ſouth-eaſt of the kingdom of Gojam is Damot. It is bounded by the Temci on the eaſt, by the Gult on the weſt, by the Nile on the ſouth, and by the high mountains of Amid Amid on the north. It is about 40 miles in length from north to ſouth, and ſomething more than 20 in breadth from eaſt to weſt. On the other ſide of Amid Amid is the province of Agows, bounded by thoſe mountains on the eaſt; by Buré and Umbarma, and the country of the Gongas, on the weſt; by Damot and Gafat upon the ſouth, and Dingleber on the north. South from Dembea is Kuara, a very mountainous province confining upon the Pagan blacks, or Shangalla, called Gongas and Guba, the Macrobi of the ancients.—It is a very unwholeſome province, but abounding in gold, not of its own produce, but that of its neighbourhood, theſe Pagans, Guba, Nuba, and Shangalla. Nara, and Ras el Feel, Tchelga, and on to Tcherkin, is a frontier wholly inhabited by Mahometans. Its government is generally given to a ſtranger, often to a Mahometan; but one of that faith is always deputy-governor. The uſe of keeping troops here is to defend the friendly Arabs and Shepherds, who remain in their allegiance to Abyſſinia, from the reſentment of the Arabs of Sennaar, their neighbours; and, by means of theſe friendly Arabs and Shepherds, ſecure a conſtant ſupply of horſes for the king's troops. It is a barren ſtripe of a very hot, unwholeſome country, full of thick woods, and fit only for hunting. The inhabitants, fugitives from all nations, are chiefly Mahometans, but very bold and expert horſemen, uſing no other weapon but the broad ſword, with which they attack the elephants and rhinoceroſes. There are many other ſmall provinces, which occaſionally are annexed, and ſometimes are ſeparated.

The crown of Abyſſinia is hereditary, and has always been ſo, in one particular family, ſuppoſed to be that of Solomon by the queen of Saba, Negaſta Azab, or queen of the ſouth. It is neverthele ſs elective in this line; and there is no law of the land, nor cuſtom, which gives the eldeſt ſon an excluſive title to ſucceed to his father. The practice has, indeed, been quite the contrary. When, at the death of a king, his ſons are old enough to govern, and, by ſome accident, not yet ſent priſoners to the mountain, then the eldeſt, or he that is next, and not confined, generally takes poſſeſſion of the throne by the ſtrength of his father's friends; but if no heir is then in the low country, the choice of the king is always according to the will of the miniſter, which paſſes for that of the people; and his inclination and intereſt being to govern, he never fails to chooſe an infant whom he afterwards directs, ruling the kingdom abſolutely during the minority, which generally exhauſts, or is equal to the term of his life. The king is anointed with plain oil of olives, which, being poured upon the crown of his head he rubs it into his long hair indecently enough with both his hands, pretty much as his ſoldiers do with theirs when they get acceſs to plenty of butter. The crown is made in the ſhape of a prieſt's mitre, or head-piece; it is a kind of helmet, covering the king's forehead, cheeks, and neck. It is lined with blue taffaty; the outſide is half gold and half ſilver, of the moſt beautiful fillagrane work. The king goes to church regularly, his guards taking poſſeſſion of every avenue and door through which he is to paſs, and nobody is allowed to enter with him, becauſe he is then on foot, excepting two officers of his bed-chamber who ſupport him. He kiſſes the threſhold and ſide-poſts of the church-door, the ſteps before the altar, and then returns home: ſometimes there is ſervice in the church, ſometimes there is not; but he takes no notice of the difference. He rides up ſtairs into the preſence chamber on a mule, and lights immediately on the carpet before his throne; and Mr. Bruce has ſometimes ſeen great indecencies committed by the ſaid mule in the preſence-chamber, upon a Perſian carpet. The Serach Maſſery, an officer ſo called, with a long whip, begins cracking and making a noiſe, worſe than twenty French poſtilions, at the door of the palace before the dawn of day. This chaſes away the hyæna and other wild beaſts; this, too, is the ſignal for the king's riſing, who ſits in judgment every morning faſting, and after that, about eight o'clock, he goes to breakfaſt. There are ſix noblemen of the king's own chooſing who are called Baalmaal, or gentlemen of his bed-chamber; four of theſe are always with him. There is a ſeventh, who is the chief of theſe, called Azeleffa el Camiſha, groom of the robe, or ſtole. He is keeper of the king's wardrobe, and the firſt officer of the bed-chamber. Theſe officers, the black ſlaves, and ſome others, ſerve him as menial ſervants, and are in a degree of familiarity with him unknown to the reſt of the ſubjects. When the king ſits to conſult upon civil matters of conſequence, he is ſhut up in a kind of box oppoſite to the head of the council-table. The perſons that deliberate ſit at the table, and, according to their rank, give their voices, the youngeſt or loweſt officer always ſpeaking firſt. The firſt that give their votes are the Shalaka, or colonels of the houſehold-troops. The ſecond are the great butlers, men that have the charge of the king's drink. The third is the Badjerund, or keeper of that apartment in the palace called the *lion's houſe*; and after theſe the keeper of the banqueting-houſe. The next is called Lika Magwaſs, an officer that always goes before the king to hinder the preſſure of the crowd. In war, when the king is marching, he rides conſtantly round him at a certain diſtance, and carries his ſhield and his lance; at leaſt he carries a ſilver ſhield, and a lance pointed with the ſame metal, before ſuch kings as do not chooſe to expoſe their perſon. No prince ever loſt his life in battle till the coming of the Europeans into Abyſſinia, when both the excommunicating and murdering of their ſovereigns ſeem to have been introduced at the ſame time. After the Lika Magwaſs comes the Palambaras; after him the Fit-Auraris; then the Gera Kaſmati, and the Kanya Kaſmati, their names being derived from their rank or order in encamping, the one on the right, the other on the left of the king's tent; Kanya and Gera ſignifying *the right* and *the left*; after them the Dakakin Billetana Geeta, or the under chamberlain; then the ſecretary for the king's commands; after him the right and left Azages, or generals; after them Rak Maſſery, after him the baſha, after him Kaſmati of Damot, then of Samen, then Amhara, and, laſt of all, Tigré, before whom ſtands a golden cup upon a cuſhion, and he is called Nebrit, as being governor of Axum, or keeper of the book of the law ſuppoſed to be there. After the governor of Tigré comes the Acab Saat, or guardian of the fire, and the chief eccleſiaſtical officer of the king's houſehold. Some have ſaid, that this officer was appointed to attend the king at the time of eating, and that it was his province to order both meat and drink to be withdrawn whenever he ſaw the king inclined to exceſs. After the Acab Saat comes the firſt maſter of the houſehold; then the Betwudet, or

Ras; laſt of all the king gives his ſentence, which is final, and ſends it to the table, from the balcony where he is then ſitting, by the officer called Kal-Hatzé.

The next remarkable ceremony, is that of adoration, inviolably obſerved in Abyſſinia to this day, as often as you enter the ſovereign's preſence. This is not only kneeling, but an abſolute proſtration. You firſt fall upon your knees, then upon the palms of your hands, then incline your head and body till your forehead touch the earth; and, in caſe you have an anſwer to expect, you lie in that poſture till the king, or ſomebody from him, deſires you to riſe.

Another practice in Abyſſinia was to beſet the king's doors and windows within his hearing, and there, from early morning to night, to cry for juſtice as loud as poſſible, in a diſtreſſed and complaining tone, and in all the different languages they are maſters of, in order to their being admitted to have their ſuppoſed grievances heard. In a country ſo ill governed as Abyſſinia is, and ſo perpetually involved in war, it may be eaſily ſuppoſed there is no want of people, who have real injuries and violence to complain of: but if it were not ſo, this is ſo much the conſtant uſage, that when it happens (as in the midſt of the rainy ſeaſon) that few people can approach the capital, or ſtand without in ſuch bad weather, a ſet of vagrants are provided, maintained, and paid, whoſe ſole buſineſs is to cry and lament, as if they had been really very much injured and oppreſſed; and this they tell you is for the king's honour, that he may not be lonely by the palace being too quiet. This, of all their abſurd cuſtoms, was the moſt grievous and troubleſome to Mr. Bruce.

The king of Abyſſinia wears his hair long; he wears his diadem while marching, as a mark of ſovereignty, that does not impede or incommode him, as any other heavier ornament would do, eſpecially in hot weather. This fillet ſurrounds his head above the hair, leaving the crown perfectly uncovered. It is an offence of the firſt magnitude for any perſon at this time, to wear any thing upon his head, eſpecially white, unleſs for Mahometans, who wear caps, and over them a large white turban; or for prieſts, who wear large turbans of muſlin alſo. The kings of Abyſſinia anciently ſat upon a gold throne, which is a large, convenient, oblong, ſquare ſeat, like a ſmall bedſtead, covered with Perſian carpets, damaſk, and cloth of gold, with ſteps leading up to it. It is ſtill richly gilded; but the many revolutions and wars have much abridged their ancient magnificence. It is, in Abyſſinia, high-treaſon to ſit upon any ſeat of the king's; and he that preſumed to do this would be inſtantly hewn to pieces, if there was not ſome other collateral proof of his being a madman.

In Abyſſinia it is conſidered as a fundamental law of the land, that none of the royal family, who has any deformity or bodily defect, ſhall be allowed to ſucceed to the crown; and for this purpoſe, any of the princes, who may have eſcaped from the mountain of Wechné, and who are afterwards taken, are mutilated in ſome of their members, that thus they may be diſqualified from ever ſucceeding.

They have ſeveral kinds of bread in Abyſſinia, ſome of different ſorts of teff, and ſome of tocuſſo, which alſo vary in quality. The king of Abyſſinia eats of wheat bread, though not of every wheat, but of that only that grows in the province of Dembea, therefore called the king's food. It always has been, and ſtill is the cuſtom of the kings of Abyſſinia, to marry what number of wives they chooſe; that theſe were not, therefore, all queens; but that among them there was one who was conſidered particularly as queen, and upon her head was placed the crown, and ſhe was called Iteghé. The king of Abyſſinia never is ſeen to walk, nor to ſet his foot upon the ground, out of his palace: and when he would diſmount from the horſe or mule on which he rides, he has a ſervant with a ſtool, who places it properly for him for that purpoſe. He rides into the anti-chamber to the foot of the throne, or to the ſtool placed in the alcove of his tent. He very often judges capital crimes himſelf. No man is condemned by the king in perſon to die for the firſt fault, unleſs the crime be of a horrid nature, ſuch as parricide or ſacrilege. And, in general, the life and merits of the priſoner are weighed againſt his immediate guilt; ſo that if his firſt behaviour has had more merit towards the ſtate than his preſent delinquency is thought to have injured it, the one is placed fairly againſt the other, and the accuſed is generally abſolved when the ſovereign judges alone. When a priſoner is condemned in capital caſes, he is not again remitted to priſon, which is thought cruel, but he is immediately carried away, and the ſentence executed upon him. The capital puniſhments in Abyſſinia, are the croſs, and flaying alive. Lapidation, or ſtoning to death, is the next. This is chiefly inflicted upon ſtrangers, called *Franks*, for religious cauſes. The Catholic prieſts in Abyſſinia that have been detected there, in theſe latter days, have been ſtoned to death, and their bodies ſtill lie in the ſtreets of Gondar, in the ſquares or waſte-places, covered with the heaps of ſtone which occaſioned their death by being thrown at them. There are three of theſe heaps at the church of Abbo, all covering Franciſcan friars; and beſides them, a ſmall pyramid over a boy who was ſtoned to death with them, about the firſt year of the reign of David the IVth. Among capital puniſhments may be reckoned likewiſe the plucking out of the eyes, a cruelty which Mr. Bruce had but too often ſeen committed during the ſhort ſtay he made in Abyſſinia. This is generally inflicted upon rebels. After the ſlaughter of the battle of Fagitta, twelve chiefs of the Pagan Galla, taken priſoners by Ras Michael, had their eyes torn out, and were afterwards abandoned to ſtarve in the valleys below the town. Several priſoners of another rank, noblemen of Tigré, underwent the ſame misfortune; and, what is wonderful, not one of them died in the operation, nor its conſequences, though performed in the coarſeſt manner with an iron forceps, or pincers. The dead bodies of criminals ſlain for treaſon, murder, and violence, on the highway at certain times, are ſeldom buried in Abyſſina. The ſtreets of Gondar are ſtrewed with pieces of their carcaſes, which bring the wild beaſts in multitudes into the city as ſoon as it becomes dark, ſo that it is ſcarcely ſafe for any one to walk in the night. The dogs uſed to bring pieces of human bodies into the houſe, and court-yard, to eat them in greater ſecurity.

Though the Abyſſinians were ſo anciently and nearly connected with Egypt, yet they never ſeem to have made uſe of paper, or papyrus, but imitated the practice of the Perſians, who wrote upon ſkins, and they do ſo to this day. This ariſes from their having early been Jews.

The Abyſſinians neither eat nor drink with ſtrangers, though they have no reaſon for this; and it is now a mere prejudice, becauſe the old occaſion for this regulation is loſt. They break, or purify, however, every veſſel a ſtranger of any kind ſhall eat or drink in. It is infamy for a man to go to market to buy any thing. He cannot carry water or bake bread; but he muſt waſh the clothes belonging to both ſexes; and, in this function, the women cannot help him. The men carry their burdens on their heads, the women on their ſhoulders. No man eats veal, although every one very willingly eats of a cow. They eat no wild or water-fowl, not even the gooſe, which was a great delicacy in Egypt. The reaſon of this is, that, upon their converſion to Judaiſm, they were forced to relinquiſh their ancient municipal cuſtoms, as far as they were contrary to the Moſaical law; and the animals, in their country, not correſponding in form, kind, or name, with thoſe mentioned in the Septuagint, or original Hebrew, it has followed, that there are many of each claſs that know not whether they are clean or not; and a wonderful confuſion and uncertainty have followed through ignorance or miſtake, being unwilling to violate the law in any one inſtance through not underſtanding it.

The following is Mr. Bruce's account of a polyphemus banquet. "In the capital, where one is ſafe from ſurpriſe at all times, or in the country or villages, when the rains have become ſo conſtant, that the valleys will not bear a horſe to paſs them, or that men cannot venture far from home, through fear of being ſurrounded and ſwept away by temporary torrents, occaſioned by ſudden ſhowers on the mountains; in a word, when a man can ſay he is ſafe at home, and the ſpear and ſhield are hung up in the hall, a number of people of the beſt faſhion in the villages, of both ſexes, courtiers in the palace, or citizens in the town, meet together to dine between twelve and one o'clock. A long table is ſet in the middle of a large room, and benches beſide it for a number of gueſts who are invited. Tables and benches the Portugueſe introduced amongſt them; but bull-hides, ſpread upon the ground, ſerved them before, as they now do in the camp and country. A cow or bull, one or more, as the company are numerous, is brought cloſe to the door, and his feet ſtrongly tied. The ſkin that hangs down under his chin and throat, is cut only ſo deep as to arrive at the fat, of which it totally conſiſts, and, by the ſeparation of a few ſmall blood veſſels, ſix or ſeven drops of blood only fall upon the ground. They have no ſtone, bench, nor altar, upon which theſe cruel aſſaſſins lay the animal's head in this operation. Having ſatisfied the Moſaical law, as they think by pouring theſe ſix or ſeven drops upon the ground, two or more of them fall to work; on the back of the beaſt, and on each ſide of the ſpine they cut ſkin deep; then putting their fingers between the fleſh and the ſkin, they begin to ſtrip the hide of the animal half way down his ribs, and ſo on to the buttock, cutting the ſkin wherever it hinders them commodiouſly to ſtrip the poor animal bare. All the fleſh on the buttocks is then cut off, and in ſolid ſquare pieces, without bones, or much effuſion of blood; and the prodigious noiſe the animal makes is a ſignal for the company to ſit down to table. There are then laid before every gueſt, inſtead of plates, round cakes, if they may be ſo called, about twice as big as a pan-cake, and ſomething thicker and tougher. It is unleavened bread of a ſouriſh taſte, far from being diſagreeable, and very eaſily digeſted, made of a grain called teff. It is of different colours, from black to the colour of the whiteſt wheat-bread. Three or four of theſe cakes, are generally put uppermoſt, for the food of the perſon oppoſite to whoſe ſeat they are placed. Beneath theſe are four or five of ordinary bread, and of a blackiſh kind. Theſe ſerve the maſter to wipe his fingers upon, and afterwards the ſervant for bread to his dinner. Two or three ſervants then come, each with a ſquare piece of beef in their bare hands, laying it upon the cakes of teff, placed like diſhes down the table, without cloth or any thing elſe beneath them. By this time all the gueſts have knives in their hands, and the men have the large crooked ones, which they put to all ſorts of uſes during the time of war. The women have ſmall claſped knives, ſuch as the worſt of the kind made at Birmingham, ſold for a penny each. The company are ſo arranged that one man ſits between two women; the man with his long knife cuts a thin piece, which will be thought a good beef-ſteak in England, while you ſee the motion of the fibres yet perfectly diſtinct, and alive in the fleſh. No man in Abyſſinia, of any faſhion whatever, feeds himſelf, or touches his own meat. The women take the ſteak and cut it length-ways like ſtrings, about the thickneſs of a little finger, then croſs-ways into ſquare pieces, ſomething ſmaller than dice. This they lay upon a piece of the teff bread, ſtrongly powdered with black pepper, or Cayenne pepper, and foſſile ſalt; they then wrap it up in teff bread like a cartridge. In the mean time, the man having put up his knife, with each hand reſting upon his neighbour's knee, his body ſtooping, his head low and forward, and mouth open very like an ideot, he turns to the one whoſe cartridge is firſt ready, who ſtuffs the whole of it into his mouth, which is ſo full that he is in conſtant danger of being choked. This is a mark of grandeur. The greater the man would ſeem to be, the larger piece he takes in his mouth; and the more noiſe he makes in chewing it, the more polite he is thought to be. They have, indeed, a proverb that ſays, "Beggars and thieves only eat ſmall pieces, or without making a noiſe." Having diſpatched this morſel, which he does very expeditiouſly, his next female neighbour holds forth another cartridge, which goes the ſame way, and ſo on till he is ſatisfied. He never drinks till he has finiſhed eating; and, before he begins, in gratitude to the fair-one that fed him, he makes up two ſmall rolls of the ſame kind and form; each of his neighbours open their mouths at the ſame time, while with each hand he puts their portion into their mouths. He then falls to drinking out of a large handſome horn; the ladies eat till they are ſatisfied, and then all drink together. A great deal of mirth and joke goes round, very ſeldom with any mixture of acrimony or ill-humour. During all this time, the unfortunate victim at the door is bleeding indeed, but bleeding little. As long as they can cut off the fleſh from his bones, they do not meddle with the thighs, or the parts where the great arteries are. At laſt they fall upon the thighs likewiſe; and ſoon after the animal, bleeding to death, becomes ſo tough that the cannibals, who have the reſt of it to eat, find very hard work to ſeparate the fleſh from the bones with their teeth like dogs. In the mean time, thoſe within are very much elevated; love lights all its fires, and every thing is permitted with abſolute freedom. There is no coyneſs, no delays, no need of appointments or retirement, to gratify their wiſhes; there are no rooms but one, in which they ſacrifice to Bacchus and to Venus."

There is no ſuch thing as marriage in Abyſſinia, unleſs that which is contracted by mutual conſent, without other form, ſubſiſting only till diſſolved by diſſent of one or other, and to be renewed or repeated as often as it is agreeable to both parties, who when they pleaſe, cohabit together again as man and wife, after having been divorced, had children by others, or whether they have been married, or had children with others or not. Upon ſeparation they divide the children. The eldeſt ſon falls to the mother's firſt choice, and the eldeſt daughter to the father. If there be but one daughter, and all the reſt ſons, ſhe is aſſigned to the father. If there be but one ſon, and all the reſt daughters, he is the right of the mother. If the numbers are unequal after the firſt election, the reſt are divided by lot. There is no ſuch diſtinction as legitimate and illegitimate children from the king to the beggar; for ſuppoſing any one of their marriages valid, all the iſſue of the reſt muſt be adulterous baſtards.

The king in his marriage uſes no other ceremony than this: he ſends an Azage to the houſe where the lady lives, when the officer announces to her, it is the king's pleaſure that ſhe ſhould remove inſtantly to the palace. She then dreſſes herſelf in the beſt manner, and immediately obeys. Thenceforward he aſſigns her an apartment in the palace, and gives her a houſe elſewhere in any part ſhe chooſes. Then, when he makes her Iteghé, it ſeems to be the neareſt reſemblance to marriage; for, whether in the court or the camp, he orders one of the judges to pronounce in his preſence, that he, the king, has choſen his hand-maid, naming her, for his queen; upon which the crown is put upon her head, but ſhe is not anointed.

The crown being hereditary in one family, but elective in the perſon, and polygamy being permitted, muſt have multiplied theſe heirs very much, and produced conſtant diſputes, ſo that it was found neceſſary to provide a remedy for the anarchy and effuſion of royal blood, which was otherwiſe inevitably to follow. The remedy was a humane and gentle one, they were confined in a good climate upon a high mountain, and maintained there at the public expence. They are there taught to read and write, but nothing elſe; 750 cloths for wrapping round them, 3000 ounces of gold, which is 30,000 dollars, or crowns, are allowed by the ſtate for their maintenance. Theſe princes are hardly uſed; and, in troubleſome times, often put to death upon the ſmalleſt miſinformation.

The accounts of the military force of this kingdom have been greatly exaggerated. The largeſt army that ever was in the field, was that in the rebellion before the battle of Serbraxos. When they firſt encamped upon the lake Tzana, the rebel army altogether might amount to about 50,000 men. Their ſtandards are large ſtaves, ſurmounted at the top with a hollow ball; below this is a tube, in which the ſtaff is fixed; and immediately below the ball, a narrow ſtripe of ſilk made forked, or ſwallow-tailed, like a vane, and ſeldom much broader. The ſtandards of the infantry have their flags painted two colours croſs-ways—yellow, white, red, or green. The horſe have all a lion upon their flag, ſome a red, ſome a green, and ſome a white lion. The black horſe have a yellow lion, and over it a white ſtar upon a red flag, alluding to two prophecies, the one, "Judah is a young lion," and the other, "There ſhall come a ſtar out of Judah." This had been diſcontinued for want of cloth till the war of Begemder, when a large piece was found in Joas's wardrobe, and was thought a certain omen of his victory, and of a long and vigorous reign. This piece of cloth was ſaid to have been brought from Cairo by Yaſous II. for the campaign of Senaar, and, with the other ſtandards and colours, was ſurrendered to the rebels when the king was made priſoner.

The king's houſehold troops ſhould conſiſt of about 8000 infantry, 2000 of which carry firelocks, and ſupply the place of archers; bows have been laid aſide for near a hundred years, and are now only uſed by the Waito Shangalla, and ſome other barbarous inconſiderable nations. Theſe troops are divided into four companies, each under an officer called Shalaka, which anſwers to our colonel. Every twenty men have an officer, every fifty a ſecond, and every hundred a third; that is, every twenty have one officer who commands them, but is commanded likewiſe by an officer who commands the fifty; ſo that there are three officers who command fifty men, ſix command a hundred, and thirty command five hundred, over whom is the Shalaka; and this body they call Bet, which ſignifies a *houſe*, or *apartment*, becauſe each of them goes by the name of one of the king's apartments.

There are four regiments, that ſeldom, if ever, amount to 1600 men, which depend alone upon the king, and are all foreigners, at leaſt the officers; theſe have the charge of his perſon while in the field. In times, when the king is out of leading-ſtrings, they amount to four or five thouſand, and then oppreſs the country; for they have great privileges. At times, when the king's hands are weak, they are kept incomplete out of fear and jealouſy.

Before the king marches, three proclamations are made. The firſt is, "Buy your mules, get ready your proviſion, and pay your ſervants; for, after ſuch a day, they that ſeek me here ſhall not find me." The ſecond is about a week after, or according as the exigency is preſſing; this is, "Cut down the kantuffa in the four quarters of the world, for I do not know where I am going." This kantuffa is a terrible thorn which very much moleſts the king and nobility in their march, by taking hold of their long hair, and the cotton cloth they are wrapped in. The third and laſt proclamation is, "I am encamped upon the Angrab, or Kahha; he that does not join me there, I will chaſtiſe him for ſeven years."

The rains generally ceaſe the eighth of September; a ſickly ſeaſon follows, till they begin again about the 20th of October; they then continue pretty conſtant, but moderate in quantity, till Hedar St. Michael, the eighth of November. All epidemic diſeaſes ceaſe with the end of theſe rains, and it is then the armies begin to march.

There are more churches in Abyſſinia than in any other country. Every great man that dies thinks he has atoned for all his wickedneſs if he leaves a fund to build a church, or has built one in his life-time. The king builds many. Wherever a victory is gained, there a church is erected in the very field ſtinking with the putrid bodies of the ſlain. Formerly this was only the caſe when the enemy was Pagan or Infidel; now the ſame is obſerved when the victories are over Chriſtians. The ſituation of a church is always choſen near running water, for the convenience of their purifications and ablutions, in which they obſerve ſtrictly the Levitical law. They are always placed upon the top of ſome beautiful round hill, which is ſurrounded entirely with rows of the oxycedrus, or Virginia cedar, which grows here in great beauty and perfection, and is called Arz. There is nothing adds ſo much to the beauty of the country as theſe churches and the plantations about them. In the middle of this plantation of cedars is interſperſed, at proper diſtances, a number of thoſe beautiful trees called Cuſſo, which grow very high, and are all extremely pictureſque. The churches are all round, with thatched roofs; their ſummits are perfect cones; the outſide is ſurrounded by a number of wooden pillars, which are nothing elſe than the trunks of the cedar tree, and are placed to ſupport the edifice, about eight feet of the roof projecting beyond the wall of the church, which forms an agreeable walk, or colonade, around it in hot weather, or in rain. The inſide of the church is in ſeveral diviſions, according as is preſcribed by the law of Moſes. The firſt is a circle ſomewhat wider than the inner one; here the congregation ſit and pray. Within this is a ſquare, and that ſquare is divided by a veil or curtain, in which is another very ſmall diviſion anſwering to the holy of holies. This is ſo narrow that none but the prieſts can go into it. Whoever enters a church muſt be bare-footed, and if bare-footed, may go through every part of it, if he has any ſuch curioſity, provided he is pure, that is, has not been concerned with women for twenty-four hours before, or touched carrion or dead bodies; for in that caſe he is not to go within the precincts, or outer circumference of the church, but ſtand and ſay his prayers at an awful diſtance among the cedars: which diſtance every perſon of both ſexes, under Jewiſh diſqualifications, are obliged to obſerve; and this is always a place belonging to the church, where, unleſs in Lent, the greateſt part of the congregation may be ſeen; but this is left to the perſon's own conſcience; and if there was either great inconvenience in the one ſituation, or great ſatiſfaction in the other, the caſe would be otherwiſe.

On firſt entering the church, they put off their ſhoes; but leave a ſervant there with them, or elſe they would be ſtolen, if good for any thing, by the prieſts and monks before they come out of the church. At entering they kiſs the threſhold, and the two door-poſts, go in and ſay what prayer they pleaſe; that finiſhed, they come out again, and their duty is over. The churches are full of pictures, painted on parchment, and nailed upon the walls, in a manner little leſs ſlovenly than paltry prints in beggarly country ale-houſes.

Nothing emboſſed, nor in relief, ever appears in any of their churches; all this would be reckoned idolatry, ſo much ſo, that they do not wear a croſs, as has been repreſented, on the top of the ball of the ſendick, or ſtandard, becauſe it caſts a ſhade; but there is no doubt that pictures have been uſed in their churches from the very earlieſt age of Chriſtianity.

The Abyſſinians receive the holy ſacrament in both kinds in unleavened bread, and in the grape bruiſed with the huſk together as it grows, ſo that it is a kind of marmalade, and is given in a flat ſpoon: whatever they may pretend, ſome mixture ſeems neceſſary to keep it from fermentation in the ſtate that it is in, unleſs the dried cluſter is freſh bruiſed juſt before it is uſed, for it is little more fluid than the common marmalade of confectioners; but it is perfectly the grape as it grew, bruiſed, ſtones and ſkin together. Some means, however, have been uſed, as Mr. Bruce ſuppoſes, to prevent fermentation, and make it keep; and though this is conſtantly denied, he has often thought he taſted a flavour that was not natural to the grape itſelf.

A quantity of excellent ſtrong wine is made at Dreeda, ſouth-weſt from Gondar, about thirty miles, which would more than ſupply the quantity neceſſary for the celebration of the euchariſt in all Abyſſinia twenty times over. The people themſelves are not fond of wine, and plant the vine in one place only; but a ſmall black grape, of an excellent flavour, grows plentifully wild in every wood in Tigré.

Large pieces of bread are given to the communicants in proportion to their quality; and Mr. Bruce has ſeen great men, who, though they opened their mouths as wide as conveniently a man can do, yet, from the reſpect the prieſt bore him, ſuch a portion of the loaf was put into his mouth that water ran from his eyes, from the incapacity of chewing it, which, however, he does as indecently, and with full as much noiſe, as he eats at table.

After receiving the ſacrament of the euchariſt in both kinds, a pitcher of water is brought, of which the communicant drinks a large draught; and well he needs it to waſh down the quantity of bread he has juſt ſwallowed. He then retires from the ſteps of the inner diviſion, upon which the adminiſtering prieſt ſtands, and, turning his face to the wall of the church, in private ſays ſome prayer with ſeeming decency and attention.

The Abyſſinians are not all agreed about the ſtate of ſouls before the reſurrection of the body. The opinion which generally prevails is, that there is no third ſtate: but that, after the example of the thief, the ſouls of good men enjoy the beatific viſion immediately upon the ſeparation from the body.

Their circumciſion is performed with a ſharp knife, or razor. There is no laceration with the nails, no formula or repetition of words, nor any religious ceremony at the time of the operation, nor is it done at any particular age, and generally it is a woman that is the ſurgeon.

There is another ceremony which regards the women alſo, and which Mr. Bruce calls *inciſion*. As ſoon as a near relation dies in Abyſſinia, a brother or parent, couſin-german or lover, every woman in that relation, with the nail of her little finger, which ſhe leaves long on purpoſe, cuts the ſkin of both her temples, about the ſize of a ſixpence; and therefore you ſee either a wound or a ſcar in every fair face in Abyſſinia; and in the dry ſeaſon, when the camp is out, from the loſs of friends, they ſeldom have liberty to heal till peace, and the army return with the rains.

The Abyſſinians, like the ancient Egyptians, their firſt colony, in computing their time, have continued the uſe of the ſolar year. They have another way peculiar to themſelves; they read the whole of the four evangeliſts every year in their churches. They begin with Matthew, then proceed to Mark, Luke, and John, in order; and when they ſpeak of an event, they write and ſay it happened in the days of Matthew, that is, in the firſt quarter of the year, while the goſpel of St. Matthew was yet reading in the churches. They compute the time of the day in a very arbitrary, irregular manner. The twilight is very ſhort, almoſt imperceptible, and was ſtill more ſo when the court was removed further to the ſouthward in Shoa. As ſoon as the ſun falls below the horizon, night comes on, and all the ſtars appear. This term, then, the twilight, they chooſe for the beginning of their day, and call it Naggé, which is the very time the twilight of the morning laſts. The ſame is obſerved at night, and Meſet is meant to ſignify the inſtant of beginning the twilight, between the ſun's falling below the horizon and the ſtars appearing. Mid-day is by them called *Kater*, a very old word, which ſignifies *culmination*, or a thing's being arrived or placed at the middle or higheſt part of an arch. All the reſt of times, in converſation, they deſcribe by pointing at the place in the heavens where the ſun then was, when what they are deſcribing happened.

CHAP. III.

Mr. BRUCE *appointed Governor of Ras el Feel—Account of the Battle of Banja—Conſpiracy againſt Michael—Deſcription of Gondar, Emfras, and Lake Izana—A Viſit to the great Cataract of Alata—Mr.* BRUCE *paſſes the Nile—An Alarm on approaching the Army—He joins the King—A Retreat towards Gondar—Dangerous Paſſage of the Nile—Battle of Limjour—Peace with Faſil—Arrival at Gondar—Retreat to Tigré.*

MR. BRUCE being one day at court, met the king's ſecretary Tecla Mariam, who informed him, with a ſmiling countenance, that he was made the governor of Ras el Feel. Mr. Bruce ſtood motionleſs with aſtoniſhment, particularly as he was at that identical time, endeavouring to get Yaſine appointed deputy of Ras el Feel. He now found the power in his own hands; and, after having recovered himſelf a little from his ſurpriſe, went to Ayto Confu to kiſs his hand as his ſuperior; but this he would by no means ſuffer him to do. A great dinner was provided them by the Iteghé; and Yaſine being ſent for, was appointed, clothed, that is, inveſted, and ordered immediately to Ras el Feel to his government, to make peace with the Daveina, and bring all the horſes he could get with him from thence, or from Atbara. The having thus provided for Yaſine, and ſecured, as he thought, a retreat to Sennaar for himſelf, gave him the firſt real pleaſure that he had received ſince his landing at Maſuah; and that day, ſeeing himſelf in company with all his friends, and the hopes of this country, for the firſt time ſince his arrival in Abyſſinia, he abandoned himſelf to joy. However, his conſtitution was too much weakened to bear any exceſſes. The day after, when he went home to Emfras, he found himſelf attacked with a ſlow fever, and thinking that it was the prelude of an ague, with which he was often tormented, he fell to taking bark, without any remiſſion, or, where the remiſſion was very obſcure, he ſhut himſelf up in the houſe, upon his conſtant regimen of boiled rice, with abundant draughts of cold water. There was about this time a piece of bad news circulated at Gondar, that Kaſmati Boro, whom the Ras had left governor at Damot, had been beaten by Faſil, and obliged to retire to his own country in Gojam, to Stadis Amba, near the paſſage of the Nile, at Miné; and that Faſil, with a much larger army of Galla than that he had brought to Fagitta, had taken poſſeſſion of Buré, the uſual place of his reſidence.

After Faſil's defeat at Fagitta, and the affront he received at Aſſoa in the heart of his own country, he had continued his route to Buré, a diſtrict of the Agows, where was his conſtant reſidence. After this he had croſſed the Nile into the country of Bizamo; and Boro de Gago had taken up his reſidence at Brué, when Michael returned to Gondar; but no ſooner had he heard of his arrival in thoſe parts, than he marched with a number of horſe, and forced his rival to retire to Gojam. A very obſtinate battle was fought at Banja, in which the Agows were entirely defeated by Faſil, ſeven of their chiefs killed, all men of great conſequence, among whom was Ayamico, a very near relation of the king.

The news was firſt brought by a ſon of Nanna Georgis, chief of the Agows, who eſcaped from the battle. Michael was at dinner, and Mr. Bruce was preſent. It was one of his carouſals for the marriage of Powuſſen, when young Georgis came into the room, in a torn and dirty habit, unattended, and almoſt unperceived, and preſented himſelf at the foot of the table. Michael had then in his hand a cup of gold, it being the excluſive privilege of the governor of the province of Tigré to drink out of ſuch a cup; it was full of wine; before a word was ſpoken, and, upon the firſt appearance of the man, he threw the cup and wine upon the ground, and cried out, "I am guilty of the death of theſe people." Every one aroſe, the table was removed, and Georgis told his misfortune, that Nanna Georgis his father, Zeegam Georgis, the next in rank among them, Ayamico the king's relation, and four other chiefs, were ſlain at Banja, and their race nearly extirpated by a victory gained with much bloodſhed, and after cruelly purſued in retaliation for that of Fagitta. A council was immediately called, where it was reſolved, that, though the rainy ſeaſon was at hand, the utmoſt expedition ſhould be made to take the field; that Guſho and Powuſſen ſhould return to their provinces, and increaſe their army to the utmoſt of their power; that the king ſhould take the low road by Foggora and Dara, there to join the troops of Begemder and Amhara, croſs the Nile at the mouth of the lake, above the ſecond cataract, as it is called, and march thence ſtraight to Buré, which, by ſpeedy marches, might be done in five or ſix days.

No reſolution was ever embraced with more alacrity; the cauſe of the Agows was the cauſe of Gondar, or famine would elſe immediately follow. The king's troops and thoſe of Michael were all ready, and had juſt refreſhed themſelves by a week's feſtivity. Guſho and Powuſſen, after having ſworn to Michael that they never would return without Faſil's head, decamped next morning with very different intentions in their hearts; for no ſooner had they reached Begemder than they entered into a conſpiracy in form againſt Michael, which they had long meditated; they had reſolved to make peace with Faſil, and ſwear with him a ſolemn league, that they were but to have one cauſe, one council, and one intereſt, till they had deprived Michael of his life and dignity.

Mr. Bruce, at this time, found himſelf declining in health, to which the irregularities of the laſt week had greatly contributed. He obtained leave from the king to go to Emfras, a town about twenty miles ſouth from Gondar, where a number of Mahometan tent-makers lived. Guſho had a houſe there, and a pleaſant garden, which he very willingly gave Mr. Bruce the uſe of, with this advice, however, which at the time he did not underſtand, rather to go on to Ambara with him, for he would there ſooner recover his health, and be more in quiet, than with the king or Michael. As the king was to paſs immediately under this town, and as moſt of thoſe that loaded and unloaded his tents and baggage were Mahometans, and lived at Emfras, he could not be better ſituated, or more at his liberty and eaſe than at Emfras.

Gondar, the metropolis of Abyſſinia, is ſituated upon a hill of conſiderable height, the top of it nearly plain, on which the town is placed. It conſiſts of about ten thouſand families in times of peace; the houſes are chiefly of clay, the roofs thatched in the form of cones, which is always the conſtruction within the tropical rains. On the weſt end of the town is the king's houſe, formerly a ſtructure of conſiderable conſequence; it was a ſquare building, flanked with ſquare towers; it was formerly four ſtories high; and, from the top of it, had a magnificent view of all the country ſouthward to the lake of Tzana. Great part of this houſe is now in ruins, having been burnt at different times; but there is ſtill ample lodging in the two loweſt floors of it, the audience-chamber being above one hundred and twenty feet long.

Mr. Bruce left Gondar the 4th of April at eight o'clock in the morning, and the next day arrived at Emfras, after a very pleaſant, though not intereſting excurſion. The town is ſituated on a ſteep hill, and the way up to it is almoſt perpendicular, like the aſcent of a ladder. The houſes are all placed about the middle of the hill, fronting the weſt, in number about 300. Above theſe houſes are gardens, or rather fields, full of trees and buſhes, without any ſort of order, up to the very top. Emfras commands a view of the whole lake of Tzana, and part of the country on the other ſide. It was once a royal reſidence. On a ſmall hill is a houſe of Hatzé Hannes, in form of a ſquare tower, now going faſt to ruin.

The lake of Tzana is much the largeſt expanſe of water known in that country. Its extent, however, has been greatly exaggerated. Its greateſt breadth is 35 miles; but it decreaſes greatly at each extremity, where it is not ſometimes above ten miles broad. Its greateſt length is 49 miles from north to ſouth, and which extent this lake has in length. In the dry months, from October to March, the lake ſhrinks greatly in ſize; but after that all thoſe rivers are full which are on every ſide of it, and fall into the lake, like radii drawn to a centre, then it ſwells, and extends itſelf into the plain country, and has of courſe a much larger ſurface.

News was received on the 12th of May, that the king had marched to Tedda, and on the 15th, Mr. Bruce and his friends heard the king's kettle-drums. Forty-five of theſe inſtruments conſtantly go before him, beating all the way while he is on his march. The Mahometan town near the water was plundered in a minute; but the inhabitants had long before removed every thing valuable.

Early on the 14th, Mr. Bruce mounted his horſe, with all his men ſervants, leaving the women-ſervants and an old man to take care of the houſe. It was very unſafe to travel in ſuch company at ſuch an hour. Early as it was, the king was then in council, and Ras Michael, who had his adviſers aſſembled alſo in his tent, had juſt left it to go to the king's. There was about 500 yards between their tents, and a free avenue is conſtantly left, in which it is a crime to ſtand, or even to croſs, unleſs for meſſengers ſent from the one to the other. Our traveller took an opportunity of paying a viſit to the great cataract of Alata. The firſt thing our traveller was ſhewn was the bridge, which conſiſts of one arch of about twenty-five feet broad. Fragments of the parapets remained, and the bridge itſelf ſeemed to bear the appearance of frequent repairs, and many attempts to ruin it; otherwiſe, in its conſtruction, it was exceedingly commodious. The Nile here is confined between two rocks, and runs in a deep trough, with great roaring and impetuous velocity. They were told no crocodiles were ever ſeen ſo high, and were obliged to remount the ſtream above half a mile before they came to the cataract, through trees and buſhes of a beautiful and delightful appearance. The cataract itſelf was a moſt magnificent ſight. The miſſionaries ſay the fall is about ſixteen ells, or fifty feet. The meaſuring is, indeed, very difficult; but, by the poſition of long ſticks, and poles of different lengths, at different heights of the rock, from the water's-edge, Mr. Bruce thinks it is nearer forty feet than any other meaſure. The river had been conſiderably increaſed by rains, and fell in one ſheet of water, without any interval, above half an Engliſh mile in breadth, with a force and noiſe that was truly terrible, and which ſtunned, and made him, for a time, perfectly dizzy. A thick fume, or haze, covered the fall all round, and hung over the courſe of the ſtream both above and below, marking its track, though the water was not ſeen. The river, though ſwelled with rain, preſerved its natural clearneſs, and fell, as far as he could diſcern, into a deep pool, or baſon, in the ſolid rock, which was full, and in twenty different eddies to the very foot of the precipice; the ſtream, when it fell, ſeeming part of it to run back with great fury upon the rock, as well as forward in the line of its courſe, raiſing a wave, or violent ebullition, by chaffing againſt each other.

Mr. Bruce and his friends reſumed their journey on the 22d of May. They ſet out accordingly at ſix o'clock in the morning, aſcending ſome hills covered with trees and ſhrubs of inexpreſſible beauty, and many of extraordinary fragrance. They continued aſcending about three miles, till they came to the top of the ridge within ſight of the lake. As they roſe, the hills became more bare and leſs beautiful.

Having paſſed the Nile, Mr. Bruce found himſelf more than ordinarily depreſſed: his ſpirits were ſunk almoſt to a degree of deſpondency, and yet nothing had happened ſince that period more than was expected before. This diſagreeable ſituation of mind continued the whole night. Impatient of ſuffering any longer, he leaped out of bed, and went to the door of the tent, where the outward air perfectly awakened him, and reſtored his ſtrength and courage. All was ſtill, and at a diſtance he ſaw ſeveral bright fires, but lower down, and more to the right than he expected, which made him think he was miſtaken in the ſituation of Karcagna. It was then near four in the morning of the 25th. He called upon his companions, happily buried in deep ſleep, as he was deſirous, if poſſible, to join the king that day. They accordingly were three or four miles from Derdera when the ſun roſe; there had been little rain that night, and they found very few torrents on their way; but it was ſlippery, and uneaſy walking, the rich ſoil being trodden into a conſiſtence like paſte. A little before nine they heard a gun fired, which gave them ſome joy, as the army ſeemed not to be far off; a few minutes after, they heard ſeveral dropping ſhots; and, in leſs than a quarter of an hour's time, a general firing began from right to left, which ceaſed for an inſtant, and then was heard again as ſmart as ever; about the occaſion of which they were divided in opinion. The firing continued much in the ſame way, rather ſlacker, but apparently advancing nearer them; a ſure ſign that their army was beaten and retreating. They, therefore, made themſelves ready, and mounted on horſeback, that they might join them. They had not gone far in the plain before they had a ſight of the enemy, to their very great ſurpriſe and no ſmall comfort. A multitude of deer, buffaloes, boars, and various other wild beaſts, had been alarmed by the noiſe and daily advancing of the army, and gradually driven before them. The country was all overgrown with wild oats, a great many of the villages having been burnt the year before the inhabitants had abandoned them: in this ſhelter the wild beaſts had taken up their abodes in very great numbers. When the army pointed towards Karcagna to the left, the ſilence and ſolitude on the oppoſite ſide made them turn to the right to where the Nile makes a ſemi-circle, the Jemma being behind them, and much overflowed. When the army, therefore, inſtead of marching ſouth and by eaſt towards Samſeen, had turned their courſe north-weſt, their faces towards Gondar, they had fallen in with theſe innumerable herds of deer and other beaſts, who, confined between the Nile, the Jemma, and the lake, had no way to return but that by which they had come. Theſe animals, finding men in every direction in which they attempted to paſs, became deſperate with fear; and, not knowing what courſe to take, fell a prey to the troops. The ſoldiers, happy in an occaſion of procuring animal food, preſently fell to firing wherever the beaſts appeared; every loaded gun was diſcharged upon them, and this continued for very near an hour.

His majeſty and Ras Michael were in the moſt violent agitation of mind; though the cauſe was before their eyes, yet the word went about that Woodage Aſahel had attacked the army; and this occaſioned a great panic and diſorder, for every body was convinced with reaſon that he was not far off. The firing, however, continued, the balls flew about in every direction, ſome few were killed, and many people and horſes were hurt; ſtill they fired, and Ras Michael, at the door of his tent, crying, threatening, and tearing his grey locks, found, for a few minutes, the army was not under his command. At this inſtant, Kaſmati Netcho, whoſe Fit-Auraris had fallen back on his front, ordered his kettle-drums to be beat before he arrived in the king's preſence; and this being heard, without it being known generally who they were, occaſioned another panic. The king ordered his tent to be pitched, his ſtandard to be ſet up, his drums to beat (the ſignal for encamping) and the firing immediately ceaſed. But it was a long while before all the army could believe that Woodage Aſahel had not been engaged with ſome part of it that day. Mr. Bruce coming up with the army, he aſked one of the generals, whither they were now marching? He ſaid, that as ſoon as the news of the conſpiracy were known, a council was held, where it was the general opinion they ſhould proceed briſkly forward, and attack Faſil alone at Buré, then turn to Gondar, to meet the other two; but then they had it upon the very beſt authority that great rains had fallen to the ſouthward; that the rivers, which were ſo frequent in that part of the country, were moſtly impaſſable, ſo there would be great danger in meeting Faſil with an army ſpent and fatigued with the difficulty of the roads. It was, therefore, determined, and the Ras was decidedly of that opinion, that they ſhould keep their army entire for a better day, and immediately croſs the Nile, and march back to Gondar; that they had accordingly wheeled about, and that day was the firſt of their proceeding, which had been interrupted by the accident of the firing. Mr. Bruce then waited upon the king, and ſtaid a conſiderable time with him.

Early on the 26th, the army marched towards the Nile. In the afternoon they encamped, between two and three, on the banks of the river Coga. On the 27th, they left the river Coga, marching down upon the Nile, and paſſed the church of Mariam Net, as they call the church of St. Anne. Here the ſuperior, attended by about fifty of his monks, came in proceſſion to welcome Ras Michael; but he, it ſeems, had received ſome intelligence of ill-offices the people of this quarter had done to the Agows by Faſil's direction; he, therefore, ordered the church to be plundered, and took the ſuperior, and two of the leading men of the monks, away with him to Gondar; ſeveral of the others were killed and wounded, without provocation, by the ſoldiers, and the reſt diſperſed through the country. They arrived about four on the banks of the Nile, and took poſſeſſion in a line of about 600 yards of ground. From the time they decamped from Coga, they had violent rain, thunder, lightning, &c. The Abyſſinian armies paſs the Nile at all ſeaſons. It rolls with it no trees, ſtones, nor impediments; yet the ſight of ſuch a monſtrous maſs of water terrified our traveller, and made him think the idea of croſſing would be laid aſide. It was plain in the face of every one, that they gave themſelves over for loſt; an univerſal dejection had taken place, and it was but too viſible that the army was defeated by the weather, without having ſeen an enemy. A cold and briſk gale now ſprung up at N. W. with a clear ſun; and ſoon after four, when the army arrived on the banks of the Nile, theſe temporary torrents were all ſubſided, the ſun was hot, and the ground again becoming dry.

Ras Michael's Fit-Auraris, with about 400 men, had paſſed in the morning, and had ſent back word to the king, that his men had paſſed ſwimming, and with very great difficulty; that he doubted whether the horſes, or loaded mules, could croſs at any rate; but if it were reſolved to make the trial, they ſhould do it immediately, without ſtaying till the increaſe of the river. He ſaid both banks were compoſed of black earth, ſlippery and miry, which would become more ſo when horſes had puddled it; he adviſed, above all, the turning to the right immediately after coming aſhore, in the direction in which he had fixed poles, as the earth there was hard and firm, beſides having the advantage of ſome round ſtones, which hindered the beaſts from ſlipping or ſinking. Inſtead, therefore, of reſting there that night, it was reſolved that the horſe ſhould croſs immediately. The firſt who paſſed was a young man, a relation of the king, brother to Ayamico, killed at the battle of Banja; he walked in with great caution, marking a track for the king to paſs. He had gone upon rather ſolid ground, about twice the length of his horſe, when he plunged out of his depth, and ſwam to the other ſide. The king followed him immediately with a great degree of haſte, Ras Michael calling to him to proceed with caution, but without ſucceſs. Afterwards came the old Ras on his mule, with ſeveral of his friends ſwimming both with and without their horſes on each ſide of him, in a manner truly wonderful. He ſeemed to have loſt his accuſtomed calmneſs, and appeared a good deal agitated; forbade, upon pain of death, any one to follow him directly, or to ſwim over, or, as their cuſtom is, holding their mules by the tail. As ſoon as theſe were ſafely aſhore, the king's houſehold and black troops, and Mr. Bruce with them, advanced cautiouſly into the river, and ſwam happily over, in a deep ſtream of reddiſh coloured water which ran without violence almoſt upon a level. Each horſeman had a mule in his hand, which ſwam after him, or by his ſide, with his coat of mail and head-piece tied upon it. It is impoſſible to deſcribe the confuſion that followed; night was hard upon them, and, though it increaſed their loſs, it, in great meaſure, concealed it; a thouſand men had not yet paſſed, though on mules and horſes; many mired in the muddy landing-place, fell back in the ſtream, and were carried away and drowned. Of the horſe belonging to the king's houſehold, one hundred and eighty in number, ſeven only were miſſing; with them Ayto Aylo, vice-chamberlain to the queen, and Tecla Mariam the king's uncle, a great friend of Ras Michael's, both old men. There was no baggage (the tent of the Ras and that of the king excepted) which had as yet come over, and theſe were wet, being drenched in the river. The Fit-Auraris had left, ready made, two rafts for Ozoro Eſther, and the other two ladies, with which ſhe might have eaſily been conducted over, and without much danger; but the Ras had made Ozoro Eſther paſs over in the ſame manner he had croſſed himſelf, many ſwimming on each ſide of her mule. She would have fain ſtaid on the eaſt ſide, but it was in vain to remonſtrate. She was with child, and had fainted ſeveral times; but yet nothing could prevail with the Ras to truſt her on the bank till morning. She croſſed, however, ſafely, though almoſt dead with fright. The night was cold and clear, and a ſtrong wind at north-weſt had blown all the afternoon. The river had abated towards mid-night, when, whether from this cauſe, or, as they alleged, that they found a more favourable ford, all the Tigré infantry, and many mules lightly loaded, paſſed with leſs difficulty than any of the reſt had done, and with them ſeveral loads of flour; luckily alſo, Mr. Bruce's two tents and mules, to his great conſolation, came ſafely over when it was near morning. Still the army continued to paſs, and thoſe that could ſwim ſeemed beſt off. Ayto Aylo, the queen's chamberlain, and Tecla Mariam, were probably drowned at the firſt attempt to paſs, as they were never after heard of. Before day-light the van and the centre had all joined the king; the number that had periſhed was never diſtinctly known, for thoſe that were miſſing were thought to have remained on the other ſide with Keſla Yaſous, at leaſt for that day.

Keſla Yaſous croſſed Amlac Ohha, on the 28th, with ſome degree of difficulty, and was obliged to abandon ſeveral baggege mules. He advanced after this with as great diligence as poſſible to Delakus, and found the ford, though deep, much better than he expected. He had pitched his tent on the high road to Gondar, before Welleta Yaſous, the enemy, knew he was decamped, and of this paſſage he immediately adviſed Michael, refreſhing his troops for any emergency. About two in the afternoon Welleta Yaſous appeared with his horſe on the other ſide of the Nile, but it was then too late. Keſla Yaſous was ſo ſtrongly poſted, and the banks of the river ſo guarded with fire-arms, down to the water-edge, that Faſil and all his army would not have dared to attempt the paſſage, or even approach the banks of the river.

When Ras Michael received this intelligence, he diſpatched the Fit-Auraris, Netcho, to take poſt upon the ford of the Kelti, a large river, but rather broad than deep, about three miles off. He himſelf followed early in the morning, and paſſed the Kelti juſt at ſun-riſe, without halting; he then advanced to meet Keſla Yaſous, as the army began to want proviſions, the little flour that had been brought over, or which the ſoldiers had taken with them, being nearly exhauſted during that night and the morning after. It was found too, that the men had but little powder, none of them having recruited their quantity ſince the hunting of the deer; but what they had was in perfect good order, being kept in horns and ſmall wooden bottles, corked in ſuch a manner as to be ſecured from water of any kind. Keſla Yaſous, therefore, being in poſſeſſion of the baggage, powder, and the proviſions, a junction with him was abſolutely neceſſary, and they expected to effect this at Wainadega, about twenty miles from their laſt night's quarters. Between twelve and one they heard the Fit-Auraris engaged; and there was ſharp firing on both ſides, which ſoon ceaſed. Michael ordered his army immediately to halt; he and the king, and Billetana Gueta Tecla, commanded the van; Welleta Michael, and Ayto Tesfos of Siré, the rear. Having marched a little further, he changed his order of battle. It was not long before the Fit-Auraris's two meſſengers arrived, running like deer along the plain, which was not abſolutely flat, but ſloped gently down, declining not a fathom in fifteen. Their account was, that they had fallen in with Faſil's Fit-Auraris; that they had attacked him ſmartly, and, though the enemy were greatly ſuperior, being all horſe except a few muſqueteers, had killed four of them. The Ras, having firſt heard the meſſage of the Fit-Auraris alone, he ſent a man to report it to the king; and, immediately after this, he ordered two horſemen to go full gallop along the eaſt-ſide of the hill, the low road to Walnadega, to warn Keſla Yaſous of Faſil's being near at hand; he likewiſe directed the Fit-Auraris to advance cautiouſly till he had ſeen Faſil, and to purſue no party that ſhould retreat before him.

Shortly after, Faſil appeared at the top of the hill, with about 3000 horſe. It was a fine ſight, but the evening was beginning to be overcaſt. After having taken a full view of the army, they all began to move ſlowly down the hill, beating their kettle-drums. Faſil ſent down a party to ſkirmiſh with theſe; and he himſelf halted after having made a few paces down the hill. The two bodies of horſe met juſt half way, and mingled together, as appeared at leaſt, with very deciſive intention; but whether it was by orders or from fear, for they were not overmatched in numbers, the Abyſſinian horſe turned their backs and came precipitately down, ſo that they were afraid they would break in upon the foot. Several ſhots were fired from the centre at them by order of the Ras, who cried out aloud, in deriſion, "Take away theſe horſes and ſend them to the mill." They divided, however, to the right and left, into the two graſſy valleys under cover of the muſquetry, and a very few horſes of Faſil's were carried in along with them, and ſlain by the ſoldiers on the ſide of the hill. On the king's ſide, no man of note was miſſing but Welleta Michael, nephew of Ras Michael, whoſe horſe falling, he was taken priſoner by Faſil, and carried off.

Now the whole army advanced at a very briſk pace, hooping and ſcreaming, according to their cuſtom, in a moſt harſh and barbarous manner, crying out Hatxé Ali! but Faſil, who ſaw the forward countenance of the king's troops, and that a few minutes would lay him under neceſſity of riſking a battle, which he did not intend, withdrew his troops at a ſmart trot over the ſmooth downs, returning towards Boſkon Abbo. This is what was called the battle of Limjour, from a village burnt by Ras Michael laſt campaign. The Ras, who ſaw that Faſil would not fight, eaſily penetrated his reaſons; and no ſooner was he gone, and his own drums ſilent, than he heard a negareet beat, and knew it to be that of Keſla Yaſous. This general encamped upon the river Avoley, leaving his tents and baggage under a proper guard, and had marched with the beſt and freſheſt of his troops to join Michael before the engagement. All was joy at meeting; every rank of men joined in extolling the merit and conduct of their leaders.

Next day the army marched to Dingleber, a high hill, or rock, approaching ſo cloſe to the lake as ſcarcely to leave a paſſage between. Upon the top of this rock is the king's houſe. As they arrived very early there, and were now out of Faſil's government, the king inſiſted upon treating Ras Michael and all the people of conſideration. Unfortunately, however, when his majeſty ſat down to dinner, an accident happened that occaſioned great trepidation among all his ſervants. A black eagle was chaſed into the king's tent by ſome of the birds of prey that hover about the camp; and it was after in the mouth of every one, that the king would be dethroned by a man of inferior birth and condition. Every body at that time looked to Faſil: the event proved the application falſe, though the omen was true. Powuſſen of Begemder was as low-born as Faſil, as great a traitor, but more ſucceſsful, to whom the ominous preſage pointed; and, though we cannot but look upon the whole as accident, it was but too ſoon fulfilled.

Two horſemen arrived at Dingleber, from Faſil, on the 29th, in the evening, clad in habits of peace, and without arms; they were known to be two of his principal ſervants, were grave, genteel, middle-aged men. They had an audience early after their coming, firſt of the Ras, then of the king. They ſaid, and ſaid truly, that Faſil had repaſſed the Kelti, was encamped on the oppoſite ſide, and was not yet joined by Welleta Yaſous. Their errand was, to deſire that the Ras might not fatigue his men by unneceſſarily hurrying on to Gondar, becauſe he might reſt ſecured of receiving no further moleſtation from Faſil their maſter, as he was on his march to Buré. They told the Ras the whole of the conſpiracy, as far as it regarded him, and the agreement that Powuſſen and Guſho had made with their maſter to ſurround him at Derdera: they mentioned, moreover, how ſenſible Faſil was of their treaſon towards him; that, inſtead of keeping their word, they had left him to engage the king and the Ras's whole force, at a time when they knew the greateſt part of his Galla troops were retired to the other ſide of the Nile, and could be aſſembled with difficulty: that if the Ras by chance had croſſed at Delakus, as Keſla Yaſous had done, inſtead of embarraſſing his army among the rivers of Maitſha, and croſſing the Nile at that moſt dangerous place near Amlac-Ohha (a paſſage never before attempted in the rainy ſeaſon) the conſequence would have been, that he muſt have either fought at great diſadvantage with an inferior army againſt the Ras, or have retired to Metchakel, leaving his whole country to the mercy of his enemies. Faſil declared his reſolution never again to appear in arms againſt the king, but that he would hold his government under him, and pay the accuſtomed taxes punctually: he promiſed alſo, that he would renounce all manner of connection with Guſho and Powuſſen, as he had already done, and that he would take the field againſt them next ſeaſon with his whole force, whenever the king ordered him. The meſſengers concluded, with deſiring the Ras to give Faſil his grand-daughter, Welleta Selaſſeé, in marriage, and that he would then come to Gondar without diſtruſt or apprehenſion. Though the Ras did not believe all this, he made no difficulty in agreeing to every thing that they deſired. He promiſed the grand-daughter; and, as earneſt of his believing the reſt, the king's two nagareets were brought to the door of the tent, where, to the very great ſurpriſe of our travellers, they heard it proclaimed, "Faſil is governor of the Agow, Maitſha, Gojam, and Damot; proſperity to him, and long may he live a faithful ſervant to the king our maſter!"—This was an extraordinary revolution in ſo ſmall a ſpace of time. It was ſcarce 43 hours ſince Faſil had laid a ſcheme for drowning the greater part of the army in the Nile, and cutting the throats of the reſidue on both ſides of it; it was not twenty-four hours, ſince he had met them to fight in open field, and now he was become the king's lieutenant general in four of the moſt opulent provinces of Abyſſinia. This was produced, however, by the neceſſity of the times, and both parties were playing at the ſame game, who ſhould over-reach the other. Faſil's meſſengers were magnificently clothed, and it was firſt intended they ſhould have gone back to him; but, after reflection, another perſon was ſent, theſe two chooſing to go to Gondar with the king, to remain hoſtages for Faſil's word, and to bring back his inveſtiture from thence to Buré. Soon after this, they arrived at Gondar. Several of the great officers of ſtate reached Gondar, and many others met them at Abba Samuel. The king would fain have perſuaded Mr. Bruce to accompany him to Tigré, but this our traveller declined. He then adviſed Mr. Bruce to live entirely at Kaſcom with the Iteghé, without going out, unleſs Faſil came to Gondar, and to ſend him a full account how he was treated. Upon this they parted with inexpreſſible reluctance.

Our traveller, much impreſſed with the peculiar kindneſs and condeſcenſion of this king, expatiates much in his favour. He was, however, like his countrymen, much addicted to ſuperſtition, and ſwayed, for ever, by ridiculous omens. He imagined Mr. Bruce competent in the taſk of foretelling, eſpecially when he talked with confidence of his ſpeedy return—"Then" (ſays he, in an humble, complaining tone) "you, Yagoube, could tell me if you pleaſed, whether I ſhall or not return in ſafety, and what is to befall me: thoſe inſtruments and thoſe wheels, with which you are ſo conſtantly looking at the ſtars, can certainly be for no other uſe than prying into futurity." Mr. Bruce aſſured him, that theſe were only inſtruments to guide ſhips at ſea and which all travellers required in order to mark the roads they take, that, being once traced, they might thus be made known to all mankind, and certified even to ſtrangers. He further aſſured his majeſty, that he was, like others, totally ignorant of the decrees of Providence, and that what made him ſpeak of his return as certain, was meerly from obſervations and the conſequent reflections which he made, which were, in his opinion, more to be relied on than prophecies and divinations by ſtars.

BOOK

BOOK II.

CHAPTER I.

Mr. Bruce's Second Journey to diſcover the Source of the Nile—An Interview with Faſil—His Character, &c. Journey continued—They paſs the Nile—Arrive at Goutto—Mountains of the Moon—Diſſimulation of Waldo—Bruce's Behaviour to him—A Reconciliation, &c.—Arrival at the Source of the Nile—Deſcription thereof—Mr. Bruce's Reception among the Inhabitants—Their Character, Trade, &c. &c.

ON the 27th of October, Mr. Bruce prepared for his departure from Gondar. But, about twelve o'clock, he was told a meſſage from Ras Michael had arrived with great news from Tigré. He went immediately to Koſcam as faſt as he could gallop, and found there Guebra Chriſtos, a man uſed to bring the jars of bouza to Ras Michael at his dinner and ſupper; low men are always employed on ſuch errands, that they may not, from their conſequence, excite a deſire of vengeance. The meſſage that he brought was to order bread and beer to be ready for 30,000 men who were coming with the king, as he had juſt decamped from before the mountain Haramat, which he had taken, and put Za Menfus to the ſword, with every man that was in it: this meſſage ſtruck the queen with ſuch a terror that for the whole day after ſhe was inviſible.

They left Gondar on the 28th, paſſed the river Kahha, at the foot of the town, and reached Bamba, where Faſil was encamped on the 30th. Bamba is a collection of villages, in a valley now filled with ſoldiers. They went to the left with their guide, and got a tolerable houſe, but the door had been carried away. Faſil's tent was pitched a little below them, larger than the others, but without further diſtinction: it was eaſily known, however, by the lights about it; and by the nagareet, which ſtill continued beating; he was then juſt alighting from his horſe. Mr. Bruce immediately ſent Ayto Aylo's ſervant, whom he had with him, to preſent his compliments, and acquaint him of his being on the road to viſit him. He thought now all his difficulties were over: for he knew it was in his power to forward them to their journey's end; and his ſervants, whom he ſaw at the palace near the king, when Faſil was inveſted with his command, had aſſured Mr. Bruce, not only of an effectual protection, but alſo of a magnificent reception, if he chanced to find him in Maitſha.

However, it was near eight at night of the 30th, before Mr. Bruce received a meſſage to attend him. He repaired immediately to his tent, and after announcing himſelf, waited about a quarter of an hour before he was admitted; he was ſitting upon a cuſhion with a lion's ſkin upon it, and another ſtretched like a carpet before his feet, and had a cotton cloth, ſomething like a dirty towel, wrapped about his head; his upper cloak, or garment, was drawn tight about him over his neck and ſhoulders, ſo as to cover his hands. Mr. Bruce bowed, and went forward to kiſs one of them, but it was ſo entangled in the cloth, that he was obliged to kiſs the cloth inſtead of the hand. This was done either as not expecting he ſhould pay him that compliment, as he certainly ſhould not have done, being one of the king's ſervants, if the king had been at Gondar, or elſe it was intended for a mark of diſreſpect, which was very much of a piece with the reſt of his behaviour afterwards. There was no carpet or cuſhions in the tent, and only a little ſtraw, as if accidentally, thrown thinly about it. Mr. Bruce ſat down upon the ground, thinking him ſick, not knowing what all this meant; he looked ſtedfaſtly at our travellers, ſaying ſoftly, in Amharic, "How do you do? Are you very well?" Mr. Bruce made the uſual anſwer. There was only one old man preſent, who was ſitting on the floor mending a mule's bridle. He took him at firſt for an attendant, but obſerving that a ſervant uncovered held a candle to him, he thought he was one of his Galla; but then he ſaw a blue ſilk thread, which he had about his neck, which is a badge of Chriſtianity all over Abyſſina, and which a Galla would not wear. Mr. Bruce was unable to conjecture what he was. Ayto Aylo's ſervant, who ſtood behind Mr. Bruce, now puſhed him with his knee, as a ſign that he ſhould ſpeak, which he accordingly began to do with ſome difficulty. Faſil's behaviour was exceedingly haughty and impertinent, and Mr. Bruce, in the courſe of converſation, was at laſt ſo provoked, that his noſe burſt out in a ſtream of blood; and, that inſtant, Aylo's ſervant took hold of Mr. Bruce by the ſhoulder, to hurry him out of the tent. Faſil ſeemed to be a good deal concerned, for the blood ſtreamed out in plenty; our traveller then returned to his tent, and the blood was ſoon ſtaunched by waſhing his face with cold water. He now went to bed, and falling into a ſound ſleep, was waked near mid-night by two of Faſil's ſervants, who brought each of them a lean live ſheep; they ſaid they had brought the ſheep, and were come to aſk how Mr. Bruce was, and to ſtay all night to watch the houſe for fear of the thieves in the army; they likewiſe brought their maſter's order for him to come early in the morning to him, as he wanted to diſpatch him on his journey before he gave the Galla liberty to return. This diſpelled every doubt, but it raiſed his ſpirits ſo much, that, out of impatience for morning, he ſlept very little more that night.

Faſil, having ſent for Mr. Bruce the next morning, invited him to partake of a great breakfaſt; honey and butter, and raw beef in abundance, as alſo ſome ſtewed diſhes that were very good. He was very hungry, having taſted nothing ſince dinner the day before; and he had had much exerciſe of body as well as of mind. They were all very cheerful, every one ſaying ſomething about the Agows, or of the Nile. Mr. Bruce, at laſt, thus addreſſed Faſil: "Your continual hurry, ſaid he, all the times I have ſeen you, has put it out of my power till now to make you the acknowledgement it is ordinary for ſtrangers to preſent when they viſit great men in their own country, and aſk favours of them." Mr. Bruce then took a napkin, and opened it before him; he ſeemed to have forgotten the preſent altogether; but from that moment he ſaw his countenance changed, he was like another man. "O Yagoube, ſaid he, a preſent to me! you ſhould be ſenſible that is perfectly needleſs; you were recommended to me by the king and the Ras; you know we are friends, and I would do twenty times as much for yourſelf, without recommendation from either; beſides, I have not behaved to you like a great man." It was not a very hard thing to conquer theſe ſcruples; he took the ſeveral pieces of the preſent one by one in his hands, and examined them; there was a crimſon ſilk ſaſh, made at Tunis, about five yards long, with a ſilk fringe of the ſame colour; it was as beautiful a web of ſilk as ever Mr. Bruce ſaw; it had a ſmall waved pattern wrought in it; the next was a yellow, with a red narrow border, or ſtripe, and a ſilver wrought fringe, but neither ſo long nor thick as the other; the next were two Cyprus manufactured ſaſhes, ſilk and cotton, with a ſatin ſtripe, the one broader than the other, but five yards long each; the next was a Perſian pipe, with a long pliable tube, or worm, covered with Turkey leather, with an amber mouth-piece, and a cryſtal vaſe for ſmoking tobacco through water, a great luxury in the eaſtern countries; the next were two blue bowls, as fine as the one he had juſt then broken, and of the ſame ſort. Faſil folded up the napkin with all the articles, and gave them to an officer; after which the tent was again cleared for conſultation; and, during this time, he had called his man of confidence, whom he was to ſend with us, and inſtructed him properly. Mr. Bruce plainly ſaw that he had gained the aſcendant; and, in the expectation of Ras Michael's ſpeedily coming to Gondar, he was as willing to be on his journey the one way, as he was the other. "Friend Yagoube, ſaid Faſil, I am heartily ſorry that you did not meet me at Buré before I ſet out; there I could have received you as I ought; but I have been tormented with a multitude of barbarous people, who have turned my head, and whom I am now about to diſmiſs. I go to Gondar in peace, and to keep peace there, for the king on this ſide the Tacazzé has no other friend than me; Powuſhen and Guſho are both traitors, and ſo Ras Michael knows them to be. I have nothing to return you for the preſent you have given me, for I did not expect to meet a man like you here in the fields; but you will quickly be back; we ſhall meet on better terms at Gondar; the head of the Nile is near at hand; a horſe-man, expreſs, will arrive there in a day. I have given you a good man, well known in this country to be my ſervant; he will go to Geeſh with you, and return you to a friend of Ayto Aylo's and mine, Shalaka Welled Amlac; he has the dangerous part of the country wholly in his hands, and will carry you ſafe to Gondar; my wife is at preſent in his houſe; fear nothing, I ſhall anſwer for your ſafety: when will you ſet out? to-morrow?" Mr. Bruce replied, with many thanks for his kindneſs, that he wiſhed to proceed immediately, and that his ſervants were already far off, on their way. Hereupon Faſil addreſſed Mr. Bruce, "Throw off thoſe clothes; they are not decent; I muſt give you new ones, you are my vaſſal. The king granted you Geeſh, where you are going, and I muſt inveſt you." A number of Faſil's ſervants then hurried him out; our traveller preſently threw off his trowſers, and his two upper garments, and remained in his waiſtcoat; theſe were preſently replaced by new ones, and he was brought back in a minute to Faſil's tent, with only a fine looſe muſlin under garment or cloth round him, which reached to his feet. Upon his coming back to the tent, Faſil took off the one that he had put on himſelf new in the morning, and put it about Mr. Bruce's ſhoulders with his own hand, his ſervants throwing another immediately over him, ſaying at the ſame time to the people, "Bear witneſs, I give to you, Yagoube, the Agow Geeſh, as fully and freely as the king has given it me." Mr. Bruce bowed and kiſſed his hand, as is cuſtomary for feudatories, and he then pointed to him to ſit down.

"Hear what I ſay to you, continued Faſil, I think it right for you to make the beſt of your way now, for you will be the ſooner back at Gondar. You need not be alarmed at the wild people who are going after you, though it is better to meet them coming this way, than when they are going to their homes; they are commanded by Welletta Yaſous, who is your friend, and is very grateful for the medicines you ſent him at Gondar: he has not been able to ſee you, being ſo much buſied with thoſe wild people; but he loves you, and will take care of you, and you muſt give me more of that phyſic when we meet at Gondar." Mr. Bruce bowed and he continued—"Hear me what I ſay; you ſee thoſe ſeven people (our traveller never ſaw more thief-like fellows in his life)—theſe are all leaders and chiefs of the Galla—ſavages if you pleaſe; they are all your brethren. You may go through their country as if it were your own, without a man hurting you: you will be ſoon related to them all; for it is their cuſtom that a ſtranger of diſtinction, like you, when he is their gueſt, ſleeps with the ſiſter, daughter, or near relation of the principal men among them. I dare ſay, you will not think the cuſtoms of the Galla contain greater hardſhips than thoſe of Amhara." He then jabbered ſomething to them in Galla, which Mr. Bruce did not underſtand. "When Ras Michael, continued Faſil, came from the battle of Fagitta, the eyes of forty-four brethren and relations of theſe people preſent were pulled out, at Gondar, the day after he arrived, and they were expoſed upon the banks of the river Angrab to ſtarve, where moſt of them were devoured by the hyænas; you took three of them up to your houſe; nouriſhed, clothed, protected, and kindly treated them." "They are now in good health, ſaid Mr. Bruce, and want nothing: the Iteghé will deliver them to you. The only other thing I have done to them was, I got them baptiſed: I do not know if that will diſpleaſe them; I did it as an additional protection to them, and to give them a title to the charity of the people of Gondar." "As for that, ſaid Faſil, they do not care the leaſt about baptiſm; it will neither do them good nor harm, they do not trouble themſelves about theſe matters; give them meat and drink, and you will be very welcome to baptiſe them all from morning to night; after ſuch good care theſe Galla are all your brethren, they will die for you before they ſee you hurt." After ſome further converſation, Faſil turned about to his ſeven chiefs, who all got up, himſelf, Mr. Bruce, and his companions; they ſtood round in a circle, and raiſed the palm of their hands, while he and his Galla together repeated a prayer about a minute long; the Galla ſeemingly with great devotion. "Now, ſaid Faſil, go in peace, you are a Galla; this is a curſe upon them, and their children, their corn, graſs, and cattle, if ever they lift their hand againſt you or yours, or do not defend you to the utmoſt, if attacked by others, or endeavour to defeat any deſign they may hear is intended againſt you." Upon this, Mr. Bruce offered to kiſs his hand before he took his leave, and they all went to the door of the tent, where there was a very handſome grey horſe bridled and ſaddled. "Take this horſe, ſaid Faſil, as a preſent from me; it is not ſo good as your own, but, depend upon it, it is the horſe which I rode upon yeſterday, when I came here to encamp; but do not mount it yourſelf, drive it before you ſaddled and bridled as it is; no man of Maitſha will touch you when he ſees that horſe; it is the people of Maitſha, whoſe houſes Michael has burnt, that you have to fear, and not your friends the Galla. Mr. Bruce then took the moſt humble and reſpectful leave of him poſſible, and alſo of his new-acquired brethren, the Galla, praying inwardly he might never ſee them again. Mr. Bruce then turning to Faſil, according to the cuſtom of the country to ſuperiors, aſked him leave to mount on horſeback before him, and was ſpeedily out of ſight.

November the 2d, they purſued their journey in a direction ſouthward, and paſſed the church of Boſkon Abbo; ever memorable to them, as being the ſtation of Faſil in May, when he intended to cut them off after their paſſage of the Nile. At three quarters after ten in the morning, they paſſed the ſmall river Arooſſi, which either gives its name to, or receives it from, the diſtrict through which it paſſes; it falls into the Nile about four miles below; is a clear, ſmall, briſk ſtream; its banks covered with verdure not to be deſcribed. All the little territory of Arooſſi is by much the moſt pleaſant that our traveller had ſeen in Abyſſinia, perhaps it is equal to any thing the eaſt can produce; the whole is finely ſhaded with acacia-trees, which, in the ſultry parts of Africa, produce the gum-arabic. Theſe trees grow ſeldom above fifteen or ſixteen feet high, then flatten and ſpread wide at the top, and touch each other, while the trunks are far aſunder, and under a vertical ſun, leave you, many miles together, a free ſpace to walk in a cool, delicious ſhade.

Having paſſed the Aſſar, and ſeveral villages belonging to Goutto, they had, for the firſt time, a diſtinct view of the high mountain of Geeſh, the long-wiſhed-for end of their dangerous and troubleſome journey. Under this mountain are the fountains of the Nile; about thirty miles, as near as they could conjecture in a ſtraight line, without counting the deviations or crookedneſs of the road. At two o'clock in the afternoon of the ſecond of November, they came to the banks of the Nile; the paſſage is very difficult and dangerous, the bottom being full of holes made by conſiderable ſprings, light ſinking ſand, and, at every little diſtance, large rocky ſtones; the eaſtern ſide was muddy and full of pits, the ground of clay; the Nile here is about 260 feet broad, and very rapid; its depth about four feet in the middle of the river, and the ſides not above two. Its banks are of a very gentle, eaſy deſcent; the weſtern ſide is chiefly ornamented with high trees of the ſalix, or willow tribe, growing ſtraight, without joints or knots, and bearing long pointed pods full of a kind of cotton.

When they had paſſed the Nile, they arrived at Goutto, the village ſo called, and took up their lodgings in the houſe of a conſiderable perſon, who had abandoned it upon their approach, thinking them part of Faſil's army. Though this habitation was of uſe in protecting them from the poor, yet it hurt them by alarming, and ſo depriving them of the aſſiſtance of the opulent, ſuch as the preſent owner, who, if he had known they were ſtrangers from Gondar, would have willingly ſtaid and entertained them, being a relation and friend of Shalaka Welled Amlac.

Having heard diſtinctly the noiſe of the cataract, and having ſtill a full hour and a half of light, Mr. Bruce determined to viſit the water-fall, leſt he ſhould be thereby detained the next morning. Being well-armed, Mr. Bruce ſet out for the cataract; and, after riding through a plain, hard country, in ſome parts very ſtony, and thick-covered with trees, in ſomething more than half an hour's eaſy galloping all the way, they came ſtraight to the cataract, conducted thereto by the noiſe of the fall. This, known by the name of the Firſt Cataract of the Nile, did not by its appearance come up to the idea they had formed of it, being ſcarce fifteen feet in height, and about ſixty yards over; but in many places the ſheet of water is interrupted, and leaves dry intervals of rock. The ſides are neither ſo woody nor verdant as thoſe of the cataract of the Aſſar; and it is in every ſhape leſs magnificent, or deſerving to be ſeen, than is the noble cataract at Alata before deſcribed, erroneouſly called the Second Cataract. Mr. Bruce, having ſatisfied his curioſity at this cataract, galloped back the ſame road that he had come, without having ſeen a ſingle perſon ſince he left Goutto.

Early on the 3d of November, they left the village of Goutto, and continued, for the firſt part of the day, through a plain country full of acacia-trees. They continued their journey from thence, and at length arrived at a tripple ridge of mountains diſpoſed one ridge behind the other, nearly in form of three concentric circles, which ſeemed to ſuggeſt an idea, that they are mountains of the moon, or the *Montes Lunæ* of antiquity, at the foot of which the Nile was ſaid to riſe; in fact, there are no others. Theſe mountains are all of them excellent ſoil, and every where covered with fine paſture; but as this unfortunate country had been for ages the theatre of war, the inhabitants have only ploughed and ſown the top of them, out of the reach of enemies or marching armies. On the middle of the mountain are villages built of a white ſort of graſs, which makes them conſpicuous at a great diſtance; the bottom is all graſs, where their cattle feed continually under their eye; theſe, upon any alarm, they drive up to the top of the mountains out of danger.

When they arrived at the top of the mountain, they had a diſtinct view of all the remaining territory of Sacala, the mountain Geeſh, and church of St. Michael Geeſh, about a mile and a half diſtant from St. Michael Sacala, where they then were. They ſaw, immediately below them, the Nile itſelf ſtrangely diminiſhed in ſize, and now only a brook that had ſcarcely water to turn a mill. Mr. Bruce was now interrupted in his obſervations, by an alarm that they had loſt Woldo their guide. Though Mr. Bruce had long expected ſomething from his behaviour, he did not think, for his own ſake, it could be his intention to leave them. Various conjectures immediately followed; ſome thought he had reſolved to betray and rob them; ſome conceived it was an inſtruction of Faſil's to him, in order to their being treacherouſly murdered; ſome again ſuppoſed he was ſlain by the wild beaſts, eſpecially thoſe apes or baboons, whoſe voracity, ſize, and fierce appearance, were exceedingly magnified. Mr. Bruce began to think, that he might be ill, for he had before complained, and that the ſickneſs might have overcome him upon the road; and this, too, was the opinion of Ayto Aylo's ſervant, who ſaid, however, with a ſignificant look, that he could not be far off; they, therefore, ſent him, and one of the men that drove the mules, back to ſeek after him; and they had not gone but a few hundred yards when they found him coming, but ſo decrepid and ſo very ill, that he ſaid he could go no further than the church, where he was poſitively reſolved to take up his abode that night. Mr. Bruce felt his pulſe, examined every part about him, and ſaw, he thought, evidently, that nothing ailed him. Without loſing his temper, however, Mr. Bruce told him firmly, that he perceived he was an impoſtor; that he ſhould conſider he was a phyſician, as he knew he cured his maſter's firſt friend, Welleta Yaſous: that the feeling of his hand told him as plain as his tongue could have done, that nothing ailed him; that it told him likewiſe he had in his heart ſome prank to play, which would turn out very much to his diſadvantage. He ſeemed diſmayed after this, ſaid little, and only deſired them to halt for a few minutes, and he ſhould be better; "for, ſays he, it requires ſtrength in us all to paſs another great hill before we arrive at Geeſh."

"Lying, ſaid Mr. Bruce, is to no purpoſe: I know where Geeſh is as well as you do, and that we have no more mountains or bad places to paſs through; therefore, if you chooſe to ſtay behind, you may; but to-morrow I ſhall inform Welleta Yaſous at Buré of your behaviour." He ſaid this with the moſt determined air poſſible, and left them, walking as hard as he could down to the ford of the Nile. Woldo remained above with the ſervants, who were loading their mules; he ſeemed to be perfectly cured of his lameneſs, and was in cloſe converſation with Ayto Aylo's ſervant for about ten minutes, which Mr. Bruce did not chooſe to interrupt, as he ſaw that man was already in poſſeſſion of part of Woldo's ſecret. This being over, they all came down to Mr. Bruce as he was ſketching a branch of a yellow-roſe tree, a number of which hang over the ford. The whole company paſſed, and Woldo, ſeeming to walk as well as ever, aſcended a gentle riſing hill, near the top of which is St. Michael Geeſh. The Nile here is not four yards over, and not above four inches deep, where they croſſed; it was indeed become a very trifling brook, but ran ſwiftly over a bottom of ſmall ſtones, with hard black rock appearing amidſt them: it is at this place very eaſy to paſs, and very limpid, but, a little lower, full of inconſiderable falls; the ground riſes gently from the river to the ſouthward, full of ſmall hills and eminences, which you aſcend and deſcend almoſt imperceptibly. The whole company had halted on the north ſide of St. Michael's church, and there Mr. Bruce reached them without affecting any hurry.

In the afternoon, about four o'clock, the day having been very hot for ſome hours, they were ſitting in the ſhade of a grove of magnificent cedars, intermixed with ſome very large and beautiful cuſſo-trees, all in the flower; the men were lying on the graſs, and the beaſts fed, with the burdens on their backs, on the moſt luxuriant herbage. Mr. Bruce ſaid indifferently to Woldo, in paſſing, that he was glad to ſee him recovered; that he would preſently be well, and ſhould fear nothing. He then got up, and deſired to ſpeak with Mr. Bruce alone, taking Aylo's ſervant along with him. "Now, ſaid our traveller very calmly, I know by your face you are going to tell me a lie. I do ſwear to you ſolemnly, you ſhall never, by that means, obtain any thing from me, no not ſo much as a good word; truth and good behaviour will get you every thing; what appears a great matter in your ſight is not perhaps of ſuch value in mine; but nothing except truth and good behaviour will anſwer to you; now I know for a certainty that you are no more ſick than I am."—"Sir, ſaid he, with a very confident look, you are right; I did counterfeit; I neither have been, nor am I at preſent any way out of order; but I thought it beſt to tell you ſo, not to be obliged to diſcover another reaſon that has much more weight with me why I cannot go to Geeſh, and much leſs ſhew myſelf at the ſources of the Nile, which I confeſs are not much beyond it, though I declare to you there is ſtill a *hill* between you and thoſe ſources."—"And pray, ſaid Mr. Bruce calmly, what is this mighty reaſon? Have you had a dream, or a viſion in that trance you fell into when you lagged behind below the church of St. Michael Sacala?" "No, ſays he, it is neither trance, nor dream, nor devil neither; I wiſh it was no worſe; but you know as well as I, that my maſter Faſil defeated the Agows at the battle of Benja. I was there with my maſter, and killed ſeveral men, among whom ſome were of the Agows of this village Geeſh, and you know the uſage of this country, when a man, in theſe circumſtances, falls into their hands, his blood muſt pay for their blood." Upon this Mr. Bruce burſt out into a violent fit of laughter, which very much diſconcerted him. "There, ſaid our traveller, did not I ſay to you it was a lie that you were going to tell me? Do not think I diſbelieve or diſpute with you the vanity of having killed men; many men were ſlain at that battle; ſomebody muſt, and you may have been the perſon who ſlew them; but do you think that I can believe that Faſil, ſo deep in that account of blood, could rule the Agows in the manner he does, if he could not put a ſervant of his in ſafety among them 20 miles from his reſidence; do you think I can believe this?" "Come, come, ſaid Aylo's ſervant to Woldo, did you not hear that truth and good behaviour will get you every thing you aſk? Sir, continued he, I ſee this affair vexes you, and what this fooliſh man wants will neither make you richer nor poorer; he has taken a great deſire for that crimſon ſilk-ſaſh which you wear about your middle. I told him to ſtay till you went back to Gondar; but he ſays he is to go no further than to the houſe of Shalaka Welled Amlac in Maitſha, and does not return to Gondar; I told him to ſtay till you had put your mind at eaſe, by ſeeing the fountains of the Nile, which you are ſo anxious about. He ſaid, after that had happened, he was ſure you would not give it him, for you ſeemed to think little of the cataract at Goutto, and of all the fine rivers and churches which he had ſhewn you; except the head of the Nile ſhall be finer than all theſe, when, in reality, it will be juſt like another river, you will then be diſſatisfied, and not give him the ſaſh."

Our traveller thought there was ſomething very natural in theſe ſuſpicions of Woldo; beſides, he ſaid he was certain that, if ever the ſaſh came into the ſight of Welled Amlac, by ſome means or other, he would get it into his hands. This rational diſcourſe had pacified Mr. Bruce a little; but it muſt have been fine indeed to have ſtood for a minute between him and the accompliſhment of his wiſhes. Mr. Bruce then laid his hand upon the piſtols that ſtuck in his girdle, and drew them out to give them to one of his ſuite, when Woldo, who apprehended it was for another purpoſe, ran ſome paces back, and hid himſelf behind Aylo's ſervant. Mr. Bruce, after having taken off his ſaſh, gave it to him, but threatened him hard in caſe he detected him in any further tricks.

Woldo took the ſaſh, but ſeemed terrified at the threat, and began to make apologies. He then carried our traveller round to the ſouth ſide of the church, out of the grove of trees that ſurrounded it. "This is the hill, ſaid he, that, when you were on the other ſide of it, was between you and the fountains of the Nile; there is no other; look at that hillock of green ſod in the middle of that watery ſpot, it is in that the two fountains of the Nile are to be found: Geeſh is on the face of the rock where yon green trees are; if you go the length of the fountains, pull off your ſhoes as you did the other day; for theſe people are all Pagans, worſe than thoſe that were at the ford, and they believe in nothing that you believe, but only in this river, to which they pray every day as if it were God; but this perhaps you may do likewiſe." Half undreſſed as Mr. Bruce was, by loſs of his ſaſh, and throwing his ſhoes off, he ran down the hill towards the little iſland of green ſods, which was about two hundred yards diſtant; the whole ſide of the hill was thick grown over with flowers, the large bulbous roots of which appearing above the ſurface of the ground, and their ſkins coming off on treading upon them, occaſioned two very ſevere falls before he reached the brink of the marſh. Mr. Bruce, after this, came to the iſland of green turf, which was in form of an altar, apparently the work of art, and he ſtood in rapture over the principal fountain which riſes in the middle of it. The ſituation of Mr. Bruce's mind at preſent may be eaſier conceived than expreſſed.

Now Mr. Bruce proceeds to deſcribe the ſources of the Nile, which have, as he ſays, remained to our days as unknown as they were to antiquity, no good or genuine voucher having yet been produced capable of proving that they were before diſcovered, or ſeen by the curious eye of any traveller, from the earlieſt ages to this day; and it is with confidence Mr. Bruce propoſes to his reader, that he will conſider him as ſtill ſtanding at theſe fountains, and patiently hear from him the recital of the origin and circumſtances of this the moſt famous river in the world, which are not to be found in books, or from any other human authority whatever, and which, by the care and attention he has paid to the ſubject, will, he hopes, be found ſatisfactory here.

The Agows of Damot pay divine honors to the Nile; they worſhip the river, and thouſands of cattle have been offered, and ſtill are offered, to the ſpirit ſuppoſed to reſide at its ſource. They are divided into clans, or tribes; and it is worthy of obſervation, that it is ſaid there never was a feud, or hereditary animoſity between any two of theſe clans; or, if the ſeeds of any ſuch were ſown, they did not vegetate longer than till the next general convocation of all the tribes, who meet annually at the ſource of the river, to which they ſacrifice, calling it by the name of the *God of Peace*. One of the leaſt conſiderable of theſe clans, for power and number, has ſtill the preference among its brethren, from the circumſtance that, in its territory, and near the miſerable village that gives it name, are ſituated the much ſought-for ſprings from which the Nile riſes.

Though Geeſh is not further diſtant from theſe than 600 yards, yet it is not in ſight of the ſources of the Nile. The country upon the ſame plain with the fountains, terminates in a cliff about 300 yards deep down to the plain of Aſſoa, which flat country continues in the ſame ſubaltern degree of elevation, till it meets the Nile again about ſeventy miles ſouthward, after it has made the circuit of the provinces of Gojam and Damot.

There is a prodigious cave in the middle of this cliff, in a direction ſtraight north towards the fountains; there are many bye-paths in it, ſo that it is very difficult for a ſtranger to extricate himſelf; it is a natural labyrinth, large enough to contain the inhabitants of the village, and their cattle. In this large cliff, Mr. Bruce tired himſelf part of ſeveral days, endeavouring to reach as far northward as poſſible; but the air, when he had advanced ſomething above one hundred yards, ſeemed to threaten to extinguiſh his candle by its dampneſs, and the people were beſides not at all diſpoſed to gratify his curioſity further, after aſſuring him that there was nothing at the end more remarkable than what he then ſaw, which he had reaſon to believe was the caſe. The face of this cliff, which fronts to the ſouth, has a moſt pictureſque appearance from the plain of Aſſoa below, parts of the houſes at every ſtage appearing, through the thickets of trees and buſhes with which the whole face of the cliff is thickly covered; impenetrable fences of the very worſt kind of thorn, hide the mouths of the caverns above mentioned, even from ſight; there is no other communication with the houſes, either from above or below, but by narrow-winding ſheep-paths, which through theſe thorns are very difficult to be diſcerned, for all are allowed to be overgrown with the utmoſt wildneſs, as a part of their defence; lofty and large trees, moſt of them of the thorny kind, tower high up above the edge of the cliff, and ſeem to be a fence againſt people falling down into the plain; theſe are all at their proper ſeaſon covered with flowers of different ſorts and colours, ſo are the buſhes below on the face of the cliff: every thorn in Abyſſinia bears a beautiful flower. From the edge of the cliff of Geeſh, above where the village is ſituated, the ground ſlopes with a very eaſy deſcent due north, and lands you at the edge of a triangular marſh above eighty-ſix yards broad, in the line of the fountains, and two hundred and eighty-ſix yards two feet from the edge of the cliff above the houſe of the prieſt of the river, where Mr. Bruce lived. In the middle of the marſh, near the bottom of the mountain of Geeſh, ariſes a hillock of a circular form, about three feet from the ſurface of the marſh itſelf, though apparently founded much deeper in it. The diameter of this is ſomething ſhort of twelve feet, it is ſurrounded by a ſhallow trench, which collects the water, and voids it eaſtward; it is firmly built with ſod or earthen turf, brought from the ſides, and conſtantly kept in repair, and this is the altar upon which all their religious ceremonies are performed. In the middle of this altar is a hole, obviouſly made, or at leaſt enlarged, by the hand of man. It is kept clear of graſs, or other aquatic plants, and the water in it is perfectly pure and limpid, but has no ebullition or motion of any kind diſcernible upon its ſurface. This mouth, or opening of the ſource, is ſome parts of an inch leſs than three feet diameter, and the water ſtood at that time, the 5th of November, about two inches from the lip or brim, nor did it either increaſe or diminiſh during all the time of his ſtay at Geeſh, though they made plentiful uſe of it. This ſpring is about ſix feet ſix inches deep. At the diſtance of ten feet from the firſt of theſe ſprings, a little to the weſt of ſouth, is the ſecond fountain, about eleven inches in diameter; but this is eight feet three inches deep. And about twenty feet diſtant from the firſt, is the third ſource, its mouth being ſomething more than two feet large, and it is five feet eight inches deep. Both theſe laſt fountains ſtand in the middle of ſmall altars, made, like the former, of firm ſod, but neither of them above three feet diameter, and having a foot of leſs elevation than the firſt. The altar in this third ſource ſeemed almoſt diſſolved by the water, which in both ſtood nearly up to the brim; at the foot of each appeared a clear and briſk running rill; theſe uniting, joined the water in the trench of the firſt altar, and then proceeded directly out, pointing eaſtward, in a quantity that would have filled a pipe of about two inches diameter. The water from theſe fountains is very light and good, and perfectly taſteleſs; it was at this time moſt intenſely cold, though expoſed to the mid-day without ſhelter, there being no trees nor buſhes nearer it than the cliff of Geeſh on its ſouth-ſide, and the trees that ſurround Saint Michael Geeſh on the north, which, according to the cuſtom of Abyſſinia, is, like other churches, planted in the midſt of a grove.

Mr. Bruce had procured from the Engliſh ſhips, while at Jidda, ſome quick-ſilver, perfectly pure and heavier than the common ſort; warming, therefore, the tube gently at the fire, he filled it with this quick-ſilver, and, to his great ſurpriſe, found that the Nile ſtood at the height of 22 Engliſh inches. Suſpecting that ſome air might have inſinuated itſelf into the tube, he laid it by in a warm part of the tent, covered till morning, and returning to bed, ſlept there profoundly till ſix, when, ſatisfied the whole was in perfect order, he found it to ſtand at 22 Engliſh inches; neither did it vary ſenſibly from that height any of the following days he ſtaid at Geeſh; and thence he inferred, that at the ſources of the Nile, he was then more than two miles above the level of the ſea; a prodigious height, to enjoy a ſky perpetually clear, as alſo a hot ſun never over-caſt for a moment with clouds from riſing to ſetting. The Nile, keeping nearly in the middle of the marſh, runs eaſt for thirty yards, with a very little increaſe of ſtream, but perfectly viſible, till met by the graſſy brink of the land declining from Sacala. This turns it round gradually to the N. E. and then due north; and, in the two miles it flows in that direction, the river receives many ſmall contributions from ſprings that riſe in the banks on each ſide of it: there are two, particularly one on the hill at the back of St. Michael Geeſh, the other a little lower than it on the other ſide, on the ground declining from Sacala. Theſe laſt-mentioned ſprings are more than double its quantity: and being arrived under the hill whereon ſtands the church of Saint Michael Sacala, about two miles from its ſource, it there becomes a ſtream that would turn a common mill, ſhallow, clear, and running over a rocky bottom about three yards wide. Nothing can be more beautiful than this ſpot; the ſmall riſing hills about them were all thick covered with verdure, eſpecially with clover, the largeſt and fineſt he ever ſaw; the tops of the heights crowned with trees of a prodigious ſize; the ſtream, at the banks of which they were ſitting, was limpid and pure as the fineſt cryſtal; the ford, covered thick with a buſhy kind of tree that ſeemed to affect to grow to no height, but thick with foliage and young branches, rather to court the ſurface of the water, whilſt it bore, in prodigious quanities, a beautiful yellow flower, not unlike a ſingle wild roſe of that colour, but without thorns.

Mr. Bruce after having ſtepped over the ford fifty times, obſerved it no larger than a common mill ſtream. The Nile, from this ford, turns to the weſtward, and after running over looſe ſtones occaſionally, in that direction, about four miles further, the angle of inclination increaſing greatly, broken water, and a fall commences of about ſix feet, and thus it gets rid of the mountainous place of its nativity, and iſſues into the plain of Goutto, where is its firſt cataract. Arrived in the plain of Goutto, the river ſeems to have loſt all its violence, and ſcarcely is ſeen to flow; but, at the ſame time, it there makes ſo many ſharp, unnatural windings, that it differs from any other river Mr. Bruce ever ſaw, making about twenty ſharp angular peninſulas in the courſe of five miles, through a bare, marſhy plain of clay, quite deſtitute of trees, and exceedingly inconvenient and unpleaſant to travel. After paſſing this plain, it turns due north, receives the tribute of many ſmall ſtreams, the Gometti, the Googueri, and the Kebezza, which deſcend from the mountains of Aformaſha; and, united, fall into the Nile about twenty miles below its ſource; it begins here to run rapidly, and again receives a number of beautiful rivulets, which have their riſe in the heights of Litchambara, the ſemicircular range of mountains that paſs behind, and ſeem to encloſe Aformaſha. Here it begins to become a conſiderable ſtream; its banks high and broken, covered with old timber trees for the ſpace of about three miles; it inclines to the north-eaſt, and winds exceedingly, and is then joined by the ſmall river Diwa from the eaſt. As the mere names of places, through which the Nile paſſes, can afford very little amuſement to our readers, we ſhall only obſerve, that it empties itſelf at laſt into the Mediterranean.

All this while Woldo was left ſettling their reception with the chief of the village of Geeſh. They found the meaſures taken by this man ſuch as convinced them at once of his capacity and attachment. The miſerable Agows, aſſembled all around him, were too much intereſted in the appearance our travellers made, not to be exceedingly inquiſitive how long their ſtay was to be among them. They ſaw, by the horſe driven before them, that they belonged to Faſil, and ſuſpected, for the ſame reaſon, that they were to maintain them, or in other words, that they ſhould live at diſcretion upon them as long as they choſe to tarry there; but Woldo, with great addreſs, had diſpelled thoſe fears almoſt as ſoon as they were formed. He informed them of the king's grant to Mr. Bruce of the village of Geeſh; that Faſil's tyranny and avarice would end that day, and another maſter, like Negadé Ras Georgis, was come to paſs a cheerful time among them, with a reſolution to pay for every labour they were ordered to perform, and purchaſe all things for ready money: he added, moreover, that no military ſervice was further to be exacted from them, either by the king or governor of Damot, nor from their preſent maſter, as he had no enemies. They found this news had circulated with great rapidity, and they met with a hearty welcome upon their arrival at the village. Woldo had aſked a houſe from the Shum, who very civilly had granted Mr. Bruce his own; it was juſt large enough to ſerve him, but they were obliged to take poſſeſſion of four or five others, and they were ſcarcely ſettled in theſe, when a ſervant arrived from Faſil to intimate to the Shum his ſurrendry of the property and ſovereignty of Geeſh to Mr. Bruce, in conſequence of a grant from the king: he brought with him a fine, large, milk-white cow, two ſheep, and two goats; the ſheep and goats Mr. Bruce underſtood were from Welleta Yaſous. Faſil alſo ſent them ſix jars of hydromel, fifty wheat loaves of very excellent bread, and to this Welleta Yaſous had added two middle ſized horns of excellent ſtrong ſpirits. Their hearts were now perfectly at eaſe, and they paſſed a very merry evening. Woldo, who had done his part to great perfection, and had reconciled the minds of all the people of the village to our travellers, had a little apprehenſion for himſelf; he thought he had loſt credit with Mr. Bruce, and therefore employed the ſervant of Ayto Aylo to deſire Mr. Bruce not to ſpeak of the ſaſh to Faſil's ſervant. Our traveller aſſured him, that, as long as he ſaw him acting properly, as he now did, it was much more probable he ſhould give him another ſaſh on their return, than complain of the means he had uſed to get this laſt. This entirely removed all his fears, and, indeed, as long after as he was with them, he every day deſerved their commendations more and more.

Now Woldo was perfectly happy; he had no ſuperior or ſpy over his actions; he had explained himſelf to the Shum, that they ſhould want ſomebody to buy neceſſaries to make bread for our travellers, and to take care of the management of their houſe. They diſplayed their leſſer articles for barter to the Shum, and told him the moſt conſiderable purchaſes, ſuch as oxen and ſheep, were to be paid in gold. He was ſtruck with the appearance of our traveller's wealth, and the generoſity of their propoſals, and told Woldo that he inſiſted, ſince they were in his houſes, they would take his daughters for their houſekeepers. The propoſal was a moſt reaſonable one, and readily accepted. He accordingly ſent for three in an inſtant, and they delivered them their charge. The eldeſt took it upon her readily; ſhe was about ſixteen years of age, of a ſtature above the middle ſize, but ſhe was remarkably genteel, and, colour apart, her features would have made her a beauty in any country in Europe; ſhe was, beſides, very ſprightly; they underſtood not one word of her language, though ſhe comprehended very eaſily the ſigns that they made. This nymph of the Nile was called by nick-name Irepone, which ſignifies ſome animal that deſtroys mice, but whether of the ferret or ſnake kind, Mr. Bruce could not perfectly underſtand; ſometimes it was one, and ſometimes another, but which it was he thought of no great conſequence.

Having diſpoſed of ſome of their ſtock in purchaſes, ſhe thought herſelf obliged to render our travellers an account, and give back the reſidue at night to Woldo, with a proteſtation that ſhe had not ſtolen or kept any thing to herſelf. Mr. Bruce looked upon this regular accounting as an ungenerous treatment of their benefactreſs. Mr. Bruce called on Woldo, and made him produce a parcel that contained the ſame with the firſt commodities they had given her; and this conſiſted of beads, antimony, ſmall ſciſſors, knives, and large needles. He then brought out a packet of the ſame that had not been broken, and told her, they were intended to be diſtributed among her friends, and that they expected no account from her; on the contrary, that, after ſhe had beſtowed theſe, to buy them neceſſaries, and for any purpoſes ſhe pleaſed, he had ſtill as many more to leave her at parting, for the trouble ſhe had given herſelf. Mr. Bruce often thought the head of the little ſavage would have been turned with the poſſeſſion of ſo much riches, and ſo great confidence; and it was impoſſible to be ſo blinded, as not to ſee that our traveller had already made great progreſs in her affections.

The houſes being all clay and ſtraw, there was no place for fixing his clock; he was therefore obliged to employ a very excellent watch made for him by Ellicott. The dawn now began, and a few minutes afterwards every body was at their doors; every one crowded to ſee them, and they breakfaſted in public with very great cheerfulneſs. The white cow was killed. and every one was invited to his ſhare of her. The Shum, prieſt of the river, would likewiſe have been of the party, but he declined either ſitting or eating with them, though his ſons were not ſo ſcrupulous.

Once a year, upon their principal fountain and altar, on the firſt appearance of the dog-ſtar, or, as others ſay, eleven days after, this prieſt aſſembles the heads of the clans; and having ſacrificed a black heifer that never bore a calf, they plunge the head of it into this fountain, they then wrap it up in its own hide, ſo as no more to be ſeen, after having ſprinkled the hide within and without with water from the fountain. The carcaſe is then ſplit in half, and cleaned with extraordinary care; and, thus prepared, it is laid upon the hillock over the firſt fountain, and waſhed all over with its water, while the elders, or conſiderable people, carry water in their hands joined (it muſt not be in any diſh) from the two other fountains; they then aſſemble upon the ſmall hill a little weſt of St. Michael (it uſed to be the place where the church now ſtands) there they divide the carcaſe into pieces correſponding to the number of the tribes, and each tribe has its privilege, or pretenſions, to particular parts, which are not in proportion to the preſent conſequence of the ſeveral clans. Geeſh has a principal ſlice, though the moſt inconſiderable territory of the whole; Sacala has the next; and Zeegam, the moſt conſiderable of them all in power and riches, has the leaſt of the whole. After having ate this carcaſe raw, according to their cuſtom, and drunk the Nile water, to the excluſion of any other liquor, they pile up the bones on the place where they ſit, and burn them to aſhes. This uſed to be performed where the church now ſtands; but Ras Sela Chriſtos, ſome time after, having beaten the Agows, and deſirous, at the Jeſuits inſtigation, to convert them to Chriſtianity, he demoliſhed their altar where the bones were burnt, and built a church upon the ſite, the doors of which, Mr. Bruce believes, were never opened ſince that reign; nor is there now, as far as he could perceive, any Chriſtian there who might wiſh to ſee it frequented. After Sela Chriſtos had demoliſhed their altars by building this church, they ate the carcaſe, and burnt the bones, on the top of the mountain of Geeſh, out of the way of profanation, where the veſtiges of this ceremony may yet be ſeen; but probably the fatigue attending this, and the great indifference their late governors have had for Chriſtianity, have brought them back to a ſmall hillock by the ſide of the marſh, weſt of St. Michael's church, and a little to the ſouthward, where they perform this ſolemnity every year, and they will probably reſume their firſt altar when the church is fallen to ruins, which they are every day privately haſtening.

When their bloody banquet is finiſhed, they carry the head, cloſe wrapt from ſight in the hide, into the cavern, which they ſay reaches below the fountains, and there, by a common light, without torches, or a number of candles, as denoting a ſolemnity, they perform their worſhip, the particulars of which Mr. Bruce never could learn; it is a piece of free maſonry, which every body knows, and nobody ventures to reveal. At a certain time of the night they leave the cave, but at what time, or by what rule, our traveller could not learn; neither would they tell him what became of the head, whether it was ate, or buried, or how conſumed. The Abyſſinians have a ſtory, probably created by themſelves, that the devil appears to them; and with him they eat the head, ſwearing obedience to him upon certain conditions, that of ſending rain, and a good ſeaſon for their bees and cattle: however this may be, it is certain, that they pray to the ſpirit reſiding in the river, whom they call the Everlaſting God, Light of the World, Eye of the World, God of Peace, their Saviour, Father of the Univerſe, &c. &c. &c.

At this time, their landlord, the Shum, made no ſcruple of reciting his prayers for ſeaſonable rain, for plenty of graſs, for the preſervation of ſerpents, at leaſt of one kind of this reptile; he alſo deprecated thunder in theſe prayers, which he pronounced very pathetically with a kind of tone or ſong; he called the river, "Moſt High God, Saviour of the World;" of the other words Mr. Bruce could not well judge, but by the interpretation of Woldo. Thoſe titles, however, of divinity which he gave to the river, he could perfectly comprehend without an interpreter, and for theſe only he is a voucher.

The Shum, upon being aſked by Mr. Bruce if he had ever ſeen any ſpirit, anſwered, without heſitation, Yes, very frequently. He ſaid he had ſeen the ſpirit the evening of the 3d, juſt as the ſun was ſetting, under a tree, which he ſhewed our traveller at a diſtance, who told him of the death of a ſon, and alſo that a party from Faſil's army was coming; that, being afraid, he conſulted his ſerpent, who ate readily and heartily, from which he knew no harm was to befall him from his viſitors. Mr. Bruce aſked him, if he could prevail on the ſpirit to appear to him. He ſaid he could not venture to make that requeſt; but ſaid he was of a very graceful figure and appearance, he thought rather older than middle age; but he ſeldom choſe to look at his face: he had a long white beard, his clothes not like theirs of leather, but like ſilk, of the faſhion of the country. Mr. Bruce aſked him how he was certain it was not a man, he laughed, or rather ſneered, ſhaking his head, and ſaying, "No, no, it is no man, but a ſpirit." Mr. Bruce then deſired to know why he prayed againſt thunder. He ſaid, Becauſe it was hurtful to the bees, their great revenue being honey and wax: then, why he prayed for ſerpents? he replied, Becauſe they taught him the coming of good or evil. It ſeems they have all ſeveral of theſe creatures in the neighbourhood, and the richer ſort always in their houſes, whom they take care of, and feed before they undertake a journey, or any affair of conſequence. They take this animal from his hole, and put butter and milk before him, of which he is extravagantly fond; if he does not eat, ill-fortune is ſhortly expected.

Previous to an invaſion of the Galla, or an inroad of the enemy, they ſay theſe ſerpents diſappear, and are no where to be found. Faſil, the ſagacious and cunning governor of the country, was, as it was ſaid, greatly addicted to this ſpecies of divination, inſomuch as never to mount his horſe, or go from home, if an animal of this kind, which he had in his keeping, refuſed his butter and milk.

Keſla Abay, or Servant of the River, was the Shum's name; he was a man about ſeventy, not very lean, but infirm, fully as much ſo as might have been expected from that age. He conceived that he might have had eighty-four or eighty-five children. That honourable charge which he poſſeſſed had been in his family from the beginning of the world, as he imagined. Indeed, if all his predeceſſors had as numerous families as he, there was no probability of the ſucceſſion devolving to ſtrangers. He had a long white beard, and very moderately thick; an ornament rare in Abyſſinia, where they have ſeldom any hair upon their chin. He had round his body a ſkin wrapt and tied with a broad belt. Above this he wore a cloak with the hood up, and covering his head; he was bare legged, but had ſandals, much like thoſe upon ancient ſtatues; theſe, however, he put off as ſoon as ever he approached the bog where the Nile riſes, which our travellers were all likewiſe obliged to do. They were allowed to drink the water, but make no other uſe of it. None of the inhabitants of Geeſh waſh themſelves, or their clothes, in the Nile, but in a ſtream that falls from the mountain of Geeſh down into the plain of Aſſo, which runs ſouth, and meets the Nile in its turn northward, paſſing the country of the Gafars and Gongas.

The Agows, in whoſe country the Nile riſes, are, in point of number, one of the moſt conſiderable nations in Abyſſinia; when their whole force is raiſed, which ſeldom happens, they can bring to the field 4000 horſe, and a great number of foot; they were, however, once much more powerful; ſeveral unſucceſsful battles, and the perpetual inroads of the Galla, have much diminiſhed their ſtrength. The country, indeed, is ſtill full of inhabitants; but from their hiſtory we learn, that one clan, called Zeegam, maintained ſingly a war againſt the king himſelf, from the time of Socinios to that of Yaſous the Great, who, after all, overcame them by ſurpriſe and ſtratagem; and that another clan, the Denguis, in like manner, maintained the war againſt Facilidas, Hannes I. and Yaſous II. all of them active princes. Their riches, however, are ſtill greater than their power, for though their province in length is no where 60 miles, nor half that in breadth, yet Gondar and all the neighbouring country depend for the neceſſaries of life, cattle, honey, butter, wheat, hides, wax, and a number of ſuch articles, upon the Agows, who come conſtantly in ſucceſſion, a thouſand and fifteen hundred at a time, loaded with theſe commodities, to the capital. As the dependence upon the Agows is for their produce rather than on the forces of their country, it has been a maxim with wiſe princes to compound with them for an additional tribute, inſtead of their military ſervice; the neceſſities of the times have ſometimes altered theſe wiſe regulations, and between their attachment to Faſil, and afterwards to Ras Michael, they have been very much reduced, whereby the ſtate hath ſuffered much. As, in a long carriage, ſuch as that of a hundred miles in ſuch a climate, butter muſt melt, and be in a ſtate of fuſion, conſequently very near putrefaction; this is prevented by the root of an herb, called Moc-moco, yellow in colour, and in a ſhape nearly reſembling a carrot; this they bruiſe and mix with their butter, and a very ſmall quantity preſerves it freſh for a conſiderable time; and this is a great ſaving and convenience; for, ſuppoſing ſalt was employed, it is very doubtful if it would anſwer the intention; beſides, ſalt is a money in this country, being circulated in the form of wedges, or bricks, it ſerves the purpoſe of ſilver coin, and is the change of gold; ſo that this herb is of the utmoſt uſe in preventing the increaſe in price of this neceſſary article, which is the principal food of all ranks of people in this country.

Excluſive of the market of Gondar, the neighbouring black ſavages, the woolly-headed Shangalla, purchaſe the greateſt part of theſe commodities from them, and many others, which they bring from the capital when they return thence; they receive in exchange elephants teeth, rhinoceros' horns, gold in ſmall pellets, and a quantity of very fine cotton; of which goods they might receive a much greater quantity were they content to cultivate trade in a fair way, without making inroads upon theſe ſavages for the ſake of ſlaves, and thereby diſturbing them in their occupations of ſeeking for gold and hunting the elephant.

The Agows' clothing is entirely of hides, which they ſoften and manufacture in a method peculiar to themſelves; and this they wear in the rainy ſeaſon, when the weather is cold: for here the rainy ſeaſons are of long duration and violent, which ſtill increaſes the nearer you approach the Line. The younger ſort are chiefly naked, the married women carrying their children about with them upon their backs; their clothing is like a ſhirt down to their feet, and girded with a belt or girdle about their middle; the lower part of it reſembles a large double petticoat, one ply of which they turn back over their ſhoulders, faſtening it with a broach, or ſkewer, acroſs their breaſt before, and carrying their children in it behind. The women are generally thin, and, like the men, below the middle ſize. There is no ſuch thing as barrenneſs known among them. They begin to bear children before eleven; they marry generally about that age, and are marriageable two years before: they cloſe child-bearing before they are thirty, though there are ſeveral inſtances to the contrary.

The Agows, beſides what they ſell, and what they pay to the governor of Damot, have a particular tribute which they preſent to the king: one thouſand dabra of honey, each dabra containing about ſixty pounds weight, being a large earthen veſſel. They pay, moreover, fifteen hundred oxen and 1000 ounces of gold; formerly the number of jars of honey was four thouſand, but ſeveral of theſe villages being daily given to private people by the king, the quantity is diminiſhed by the quota ſo alienated. The butter is all ſold; and, ſince the fatal battle of Benja, the king's ſhare comes only to about one thouſand jars. The officer that keeps the accounts, and ſees the rents paid, is called Agow Miziker; his poſt is worth one thouſand ounces of gold; and by this it may be judged with what œconomy this revenue is collected.

Notwithſtanding Mr. Bruce had with him two large tents ſufficient for his people, he was adviſed to take poſſeſſion of the houſes to ſecrete their mules and horſes from thieves in the night, as alſo from the aſſaults of wild beaſts, of which this country is full. Almoſt every ſmall collection of houſes has behind it a large cave, the ſubterraneous dwelling, dug in the rock, of a prodigious capacity, and which muſt have been a work of great labour. It is not poſſible at this diſtance of time, to ſay whether theſe caverns were the ancient habitations of the Agows when they were Troglodytes, or whether they were intended for retreats upon any alarm of an irruption of the Galla into their country.

November the 9th, our traveller having finiſhed his memorandum relating to theſe remarkable places, traced again on foot the whole courſe of this river from its ſource to the plain of Goutto. He was unattended by any one, having with him only two hunting dogs, and his gun in his hand. The quantity of game of all ſorts, eſpecially the deer kind, was, indeed, ſurpriſing; but though he was, as uſual, a very ſucceſsful ſportſman, he was obliged, for want of help, to leave each deer where he fell. They ſleep in the wild oats, and do not riſe till you are about to tread upon them, and then ſtare at you for half a minute before they attempt to run off.

Mr. Bruce and his friends having now finiſhed their buſineſs, nothing remained but to depart. They had paſſed their time in perfect harmony; the addreſs of Woldo, and the great attachment of their friend Irepone, had kept their houſe in a cheerful abundance. They had lived, it is true, too magnificently for philoſophers, but neither idly nor riotouſly; and, it is the opinion of Mr. Bruce, no *ſovereign* of Geeſh will be again ſo popular, or reign over his ſubjects with greater mildneſs. Mr. Bruce had practiſed medicine gratis, and killed, for three days ſucceſſively, a cow each day for the poor and the neighbours. He had clothed the high prieſt of the Nile from head to foot, as alſo his two ſons, and decorated two of his daughters with beads of all the colours of the rainbow, adding every other little preſent they ſeemed fond of, or that our travellers thought would be agreeable. As for their amiable Irepone, they had reſerved for her the choiceſt of their preſents, the moſt valuable of every article they had with them, and a large proportion of every one of them; they alſo gave her ſome gold; but ſhe, more generous and noble in her ſentiments than they, ſeemed to pay little attention to theſe that announced to her the ſeparation from her friends; ſhe tore her fine hair, which ſhe had every day before braided in a newer and more graceful manner; ſhe threw herſelf upon the ground in the houſe, and refuſed to ſee our travellers mount on horſeback, or take their leave, and came not to the door till they were already ſet out, then followed them with her good wiſhes and her eyes as far as ſhe could ſee or be heard.

Our traveller now took his leave of Kefla Abay, the venerable prieſt of the moſt famous river in the world, who recommended him with great earneſtneſs to the care of his god, which as one of our travellers humourouſly enough obſerved, meant nothing leſs than he hoped the devil would take him. All the young men in the village, with lances and ſhields, attended them to Saint Michael Sacala.

CHAP. II.

Preparations for returning from the Source of the Nile—Mr. BRUCE's *Arrival at the Houſe of Welled Amlac—He paſſes the Nile at Delakus—Proceeds to Gondar—Obtains Permiſſion to return Home—Takes Leave of the Iteghé at Koſcam—His laſt Interview with the Monks.*

NOVEMBER the 10th, 1770, Mr. Bruce and his friends left Geeſh on their return to Gondar, and paſſed the Abay, under the church of Saint Michael Sacala. The next day, they continued their journey in their former road, and in the afternoon they halted at the houſe of Shalaka Welled Amlac, with whom Mr. Bruce was well acquainted at Gondar; his houſe is called Welled Abea Abbo, from a church of Abbo, about an eighth part of a mile diſtant.

Mr. Bruce ſettled here with his former guide Woldo, to his perfect ſatisfaction, and cancelled entirely the memory of ſome diſagreeable things paſſed. He then conſigned our traveller very ſolemnly to Ayto Aylo's ſervant, in preſence of Welled Amlac, and then took his leave.

November the 12th, having ſettled their account with their hoſt, they ſet out from the hoſpitable houſe of Shalaka Welled Amlac. Their landlord accompanied them in perſon to the ford; and by this, and his readineſs to ſhew them what he thought worthy of their curioſity, and by his care in aſcertaining for them the diſtances and ſituations of places, he gave them a certain proof he was well contented, and, therefore, that they had nothing to apprehend.

After ſome difficulty, they gained the middle of the river, where the bottom was firm, and there they reſted a little. Whilſt they were wading near the other ſide, they found foul ground, but the water was ſhallow, and the banks low and eaſy to aſcend. The river ſide, as far as they could ſee, was bare and deſtitute of wood of any kind, only bordered with thiſtles and high graſs, and the water tinged deep with red earth, of which its banks are compoſed. This paſſage is called Delakus, and is paſſable from the end of October to the middle of May. Immediately on the top of the hill, aſcending from the river, is the ſmall town of Delakus, which gives this ford its name; it is more conſiderable in appearance than is the generality of theſe ſmall towns or villages in Abyſſinia, becauſe inhabited by Mahometans only, a trading, frugal, intelligent, and induſtrious people.

Welled Amlac, their conductor, put our travellers in mind of the ſervice he had rendered them, and they were not unmindful of him. He had been received with very great reſpect at the laſt place, and it is incredible with what expedition he ſwallowed near a pound of raw fleſh cut from the buttocks of the animal yet alive. After ſome horns of hydromel, he paſſed to the other ſide, where he was received with ſtill more affection, if poſſible, by Welleta Michael; and there he began again to eat the raw meat with an appetite as keen as if he had faſted for whole days: he then conſigned our travellers to Ayto Welleta Michael, his friend, who furniſhed them with a ſervant to conduct them on their way, while he himſelf remained that night at the ford. They left this at five in the evening, and, purſuing their journey north, they paſſed the ſmall town of Delakus, continuing along the hill among little ſpots of bruſh-wood and ſmall fields of corn intermixed.

The place our travellers were now preparing to leave, called Maitſha, is governed by ninety-nine Shums, and is an appendage of the office of Betwuder, to whom it pays two thouſand ounces of gold. The people are originally of thoſe Galla weſt of the Abay. Yaſous the Great, when at war with that people, who, in many preceding reigns, had laid waſte the provinces of Gojam and Damot, and eſpecially Agow, when he paſſed the Abay, found theſe people at variance among themſelves; and the king, who was every where victorious, being joined by the weakeſt, advanced to Narea, and, on his return, tranſplanted theſe Galla into Maitſha, placing part of them along the Nile to guard the paſſes. His ſucceſſors at different times followed his example; part they ſettled in Maitſha, and part along the banks of the Nile in Damot and Gojam, where being converted to Chriſtianity, at leaſt to ſuch Chriſtianity as is profeſſed in Abyſſinia, they have increaſed exceedingly, and amounted, at leaſt before the war in 1768, to 15,000 men, of whom about 4000 are horſemen.

Mr. Bruce's ſervants and baggage arrived at Gondar, while he himſelf went to Koſcam, and thus finiſhed their long-projected expedition, or journey, to the fountains of the Nile, having, in their return home, made, as it were, the chord of the arch of their former journey, or about ninety-three miles.

On account of the troubles that then reigned in the capital of Abyſſinia, Mr. Bruce did not ſee the Iteghé till November the 23d. She ſent for him early in the morning, and had a large breakfaſt prepared: ſhe looked very much worn out and indiſpoſed. When he came firſt into her preſence, he kneeled, with his forehead to the ground. She put on a very ſerious countenance, and, without deſiring him to riſe, ſaid gravely to her people about her, "There, ſee that madman, who in times like theſe, when we the natives of the country are not ſafe in our own houſes, raſhly, againſt all advice, runs out into the fields to be hunted like a wild beaſt by every robber, of which this country is full." She then made him a ſign to riſe, which he did, and kiſſed her hand. "Madam, ſaid he, if I did this, it was in conſequence of the good leſſons your majeſty deigned to give me."—"Me! ſays ſhe, with ſurpriſe, was it I that adviſed you, at ſuch a time as this, to put yourſelf in the way of men like Coque Abou Barea, and Woodage Aſahel, to be ill-uſed, robbed, and probably murdered?"—"No, ſaid Mr. Bruce, Madam, you certainly never did give me ſuch advice; but you muſt own that every day I have heard you ſay, when you was threatened by a multitude of powerful enemies, that you was not afraid, you was in God's hands, and not in theirs. Now, Madam, Providence has hitherto protected you: I have, in humble imitation of you, had the ſame Chriſtian confidence, and I have ſucceeded; I knew I was in God's hands, and therefore valued not the bad intentions of all the robbers in Abyſſinia."

During the wars and rebellions of Abyſſinia, Mr. Bruce diſplayed ſo much courage, that he was preſented by the king with a large chain of gold, with very maſſy links, which he doubled twice, and then put it over Mr. Bruce's neck. The chain conſiſted of 184 links, each of them weighing 3 1-12 pennyweights of fine gold, "It was with the utmoſt reluctance, ſays Mr. Bruce, that, being in want of every thing, I ſold a great part of this honourable diſtinction at Sennaar in my return home. It is hoped my ſucceſſors will never have the ſame excuſe I had for further diminiſhing this honourable monument which I have left them."

After the troubles had ceaſed, and Ras Michael was ſent away priſoner from Gondar, the queen returned to Koſcam, where Mr. Bruce paſſed a great part of his time; but his health declining every day, he had obtained, with great difficulty, liberty from her to attempt his return home. The king, too, after a hundred exceptions and proviſos, had at length been brought to give an unwilling conſent.

Captain Thomas Price, of the Lion of Bombay, had been obliged, by this buſineſs with the government of Mecca, to continue at Jidda, till the ſeaſon after Mr. Bruce went from thence to Abyſſinia. He had already heard once from him, and now a ſecond time. He informed Mr. Bruce, that his countrymen had been in the greateſt pain for him; that ſeveral reports had been current, both at Jidda and Mocha, of his having been aſſaſſinated; ſometimes it was ſaid by the Naybe of Maſuah; ſometimes that it happened at Gondar; by others at Sennaar, at his return home. Captain Price wrote in this laſt letter, that, thinking Mr. Bruce muſt be diſtreſſed for want of money, he had left orders with Ibrahim Seraff, the Engliſh broker at Jidda, to advance him 1000 crowns, deſiring his draft to be ſent to Ibrahim, directed to him or his brother at Bombay, and to make it payable to a gentleman of that name who lived in Smithfield.

Mr. Bruce had occaſionally borrowed money from a Greek, whoſe name was Petros. This man was originally a native of the iſland of Rhodes, which he muſt have left early, for he was not at this time much paſt thirty; he had been by trade a ſhoe-maker. For what reaſon he left his own country, Mr. Bruce does not know, but he was of a very pleaſing figure and addreſs, though very timid. The Iteghé very much diſtinguiſhed him, and the king had made him Azeleſſa el Camiſha, which anſwers preciſely to groom of the ſtole, or firſt lord of the bed-chamber in England. Being pliant, civil, and artful, and always well dreſſed, he had gained the good graces of the whole court; he was alſo rich, as the king was generous, and his perquiſites not inconſiderable. After one of the campaigns, in which a dwarf was ſhot who was ſtanding before Ras Michael, and the palace ſet on fire in the fray which followed, the crown, which was under Petros's charge, was melted; the gold, indeed, that it conſiſted of, was afterwards found, but there was ſaid to have been on the top of it a pearl, or jewel, of immenſe price and ſize, larger than a pigeon's egg; and this, whatever it was, had diſappeared, being in all probability conſumed by the fire. Ras Michael, on the contrary, believed that it had been taken out by Petros with a view to ſell it, and for this reaſon he had conſtantly refuſed him liberty to leave Abyſſinia, and had kept him always in fear, that ſome day or other he would ſtrip him of all that he had ſaved. While Michael was beſieging the mountain Haramat, Petros beſeeched Mr. Bruce to take 30l. of him, and give him his firſt, ſecond, and third bill of exchange upon Meſſrs. Julian and Roſa, his correſpondents at Cairo, payable a month after ſight, to the Maronite Biſhop of Mount Sinai, after which he ſet out for his own country, *in formâ pauperis*, and thereby eſcaped the rapacity of both Ras Michael and the Naybe of Maſuah. As for the bill, it came duly to hand, and was paid to the biſhop, who would very gladly have received for each of the duplicates, and was near being baſtinadoed for inſiſting upon this before the Bey at Cairo.

Mr. Bruce had made a ſhew of ſending his gold chain to Cairo by the hands of Metical Aga's ſervant, declaring always that it was the only piece of Abyſſinian gold he ſhould carry out of the country, which he was to leave, both in fact and appearance, a *pauper*. Mules are the only beaſts for carriage commonly uſed in Abyſſinia, though bulls and cows, of a particular kind, are bought for the purpoſe by carriers, merchants, and ſuch like, in that country, eſpecially near the mines or quarries of ſalt; they are very ſlow, however, and capable of no great burden, though very eaſily maintained. Mr. Bruce had abundance of mules of his own for carrying his inſtruments and baggage; and the king and Iteghé furniſhed him with others for his own riding. He had, beſides, two favourite horſes, which he intended to attempt to carry home, fooliſhly enough; for though he thought in his own mind, that he was ſufficiently informed of, and prepared for all ſorts of hardſhips, he had not foreſeen the hundredth part of the difficulties and dangers that were then awaiting him.

When the Iteghé had returned, Mr. Bruce always lived at Koſcam by her own deſire, as her health was very precarious ſince her reſidence in Gojam. This ſuited his intention of withdrawing privately, and therefore, not to multiply the number of leave-takings, he had reduced his whole attendance to the king and queen.

All Mr. Bruce's attention was now taken up in preparations for his return through the kingdom of Sennaar and the Deſert. Tenſa Chriſtos, who was one of the chief prieſts of Gondar, was a native of Gojam, and conſequently of the low church, or a follower of Abba Euſtathius, in other words, as great an enemy as poſſible to the Catholic, or as they will call it, *the religion of the Franks*. He was, however, reputed a perſon of great probity and ſanctity of manners, and had been on all occaſions rather civil and friendly to Mr. Bruce when they met, though evidently not deſirous of any intimate connexions or friendſhip; and as Mr. Bruce, on his part, expected little advantage from connecting himſelf with a man of his principles, he very willingly kept at all poſſible diſtance. This prieſt came often to the Iteghé's and Ayto Aylo's, with both of whom he was much in favour; and here Mr. Bruce happened to meet him, when he was taking his leave in the evening. "I beg of you, ſaid he, Yagoube, as a favour, to tell me, now you are immediately going away from this country, and you can anſwer me without fear, Are you really a Frank, or are you not?"—"Sir, ſaid Mr. Bruce, I do not know what you mean by fear; I ſhould as little decline anſwering you any queſtion you have to aſk had I ten years to ſtay, as now I am to quit this country to-morrow: I came recommended, and was well received by the king and Ras Michael: I neither taught nor preached; no man ever heard me ſay a word about my particular mode of worſhip; and as often as my duty has called me, I have never failed to attend divine ſervice as it is eſtabliſhed in this country. What is the ground of fear that I ſhould have, while under the king's protection, and cuſtoms of Abyſſinia?"—"True, replied Tenſa Chriſtos, I do not ſay you ſhould be alarmed; whatever your faith is, I will defend you myſelf; the Iteghé knows I always ſpoke well of you: but will you gratify an old man's curioſity, in telling me whether or not you really are a Frank, Catholic, or Jeſuit?"

"I have too great a regard, replied Mr. Bruce, to the requeſt of a man, ſo truly good and virtuous as you, not to have anſwered you the queſtion at whatever time you could have aſked me; and I do now declare to you, by the word of a Chriſtian, that my countrymen and I are more diſtant in matters of religion, from theſe you call Catholics, Jeſuits, or Franks, than you and your Abyſſians are; and that a prieſt of my religion, preaching in any country ſubject to thoſe Franks, would as certainly be brought to the gallows as if he had committed murder, and juſt as ſpeedily as you would ſtone a Catholic prieſt preaching here in the midſt of Gondar. Every man in our country is allowed to ſerve God in his own way; and as long as their teachers confine themſelves to what the ſacred books have told them, they can teach no ill, and therefore deſerve no puniſhment. No religion, indeed, teaches a man evil; but when forgetting this, they preach againſt government, curſe the king, abſolve his ſubjects from allegiance, or incite them to rebellion, as being lawful, the ſword of the civil power cuts them off, without any blame falling upon their religion, becauſe theſe things were done in contradiction to what their prieſts, from the ſcripture, ſhould have taught them were truly the tenets of that very religion." The Iteghé now interpoſed, and the ſubject terminated.

Hereupon Mr. Bruce got up, and, paſſing to the other ſide of the room, he ſtood by Tenſa Chriſtos, ſaying to him, "And now, holy father, I have one laſt favour to aſk you, which is your forgiveneſs, if I have at any time offended you; your bleſſing, now that I am immediately to depart, if I have not; and your prayers while on my long and dangerous journey, through countries of Infidels and Pagans."

There was a hum of applauſe ſounded all throughout the room. The Iteghé ſaid ſomething, but what, Mr. Bruce did not hear. Tenſa Chriſtos was ſurpriſed apparently at Mr. Bruce's humility, which he had not expected, and cried out with tears in his eyes, "Is it poſſible, Yagoube, that you believe my prayers can do you any good?"—"I ſhould not be a Chriſtian, as I profeſs to be, Father, replied Mr. Bruce, if I had any doubt of the effect of good men's prayers." So ſaying, he ſtooped to kiſs his hand, when he laid a ſmall iron croſs upon his head; and, to our traveller's great ſurpriſe, inſtead of a benediction, he repeated the Lord's Prayer. Mr. Bruce was afraid he would have kept him ſtooping till he ſhould add the ten commandments likewiſe, when he concluded, May God bleſs you. After which, Mr. Bruce made his obeiſance to the Iteghé, and immediately withdrew, it not being the cuſtom, at public audiences, to ſalute any one in the preſence of the ſovereign.

Now twenty greaſy monks had placed themſelves in his way as he went out, that they might have the credit of giving him the bleſſing likewiſe after Tenſa Chriſtos. As he had very little faith in the prayers of theſe drones, ſo he had ſome reluctance to kiſs their greaſy hands and ſleeves; however, in running this diſagreeable gauntlet, he gave them his bleſſing in Engliſh,—"Lord ſend you all a halter, as he did to Abba Salama," meaning the Acab Saat. But they, thinking he was recommending them to the patriarch Abba Salama, pronounced, at random, with great ſeeming devotion, their Amen,—So be it. Mr. Bruce being now releaſed from all diſagreeable ceremonies, prepared for his journey.

CHAP. III.

Mr. Bruce's *Journey from Gondar to Tcherkin—His reception from Ozoro Eſther, &c. &c.—Hunting of the Elephant, Rhinoceros, Buffalo, &c.—Account of his Travels from Tcherkin to Hor-Cacamoot, in Ras-el-Feel—From Hor-Cacamoot to Teawa—Various Tranſactions there—The Shekh attempts to detain Mr.* Bruce, *who gives him and his Wives Medicines—Their Converſations—Proofs of the Shekh's Treachery—Mr.* Bruce's *Departure from Teawa—His Arrival at Belga—Account of his Reception there and among the Nuba—His Arrival at Sennaar—Converſation with the King—Afterwards with Shekh Adelan—Interview with the King's Ladies—With Achmet—Account of the Diſorders, Trade, &c. of Sennaur—Diſtreſſed Situation of Mr.* Bruce*—His Departure from Sennaar—Arrival at Chendi—His Reception by Sittina, and Converſation with her—His Entrance into the Deſert—Account of the Pillars of moving Sand—The Simoom, &c. &c.—Diſaſters—Arrival and kind Reception at Aſſouan—At Cairo, &c. &c.—The Concluſion.*

ABOUT one o'clock in the afternoon, December 26, 1771, Mr. Bruce left Gondar. He had purpoſed to ſet out early in the morning, but was detained by the importunity of his friends. The king had delayed his ſetting out, by ſeveral orders ſent him in the evening each day; and he plainly ſaw there was ſome meaning in this, and that he was wiſhing to throw difficulties in the way, till ſome accident, or ſudden emergency, never wanting in that country, ſhould make it abſolutely impoſſible for him to leave Abyſſinia. When, therefore, the laſt meſſage came to Koſcam on the 27th, at night, Mr. Bruce returned his reſpectful duty to his majeſty, put him in mind of his promiſe, and ſomewhat peeviſhly, he believes, entreated him to leave him to his fortune; that his ſervants were already gone, and he was reſolved to ſet out the next day.

Early the next morning, Mr. Bruce was ſurpriſed at the arrival of a young nobleman, lately made one of his bed-chamber, with fifty light-horſe. As he was ſatisfied, that leaving Abyſſinia, without parade, as privately as poſſible, was the only way to paſs through Sennaar; he therefore inſiſted upon none of his friends accompanying him, and he begged to decline this eſcort. At one o'clock, Mr. Bruce ſet out by the weſt ſide of Debra Tzai, having the mountain on their right hand. From the top of that aſcent, they ſaw the plain and flat country below, black, and in its appearance, one thick wood, which ſome authors have called lately, the Shumeta, or Nubian foreſt.

He now advanced down the ſteep ſide of the mountain, through very ſtrong and rugged ground, torn up by the torrents that fall on every ſide from above. This is called the Deſcent of Moura; and though both our travellers and their beaſts were in great health and ſpirits, they could not, with their utmoſt endeavours, advance much more than one mile an hour.

They entered a thick wood on the 28th, winding round a hill, in a ſouth-eaſt direction, to get into the plain below, where they were ſurrounded by a great multitude of men, armed with lances, ſhields, ſlings, and large clubs or ſticks, who rained a ſhower of ſtones towards them; but they were at ſuch a diſtance, that all of them fell greatly ſhort of them. Whether this was owing to fear, or not, they did not know; but ſuppoſing that it was, they thought it their intereſt to keep it up as much as poſſible. Mr. Bruce, therefore, ordered two ſhots to be fired over their heads; not with any intention to hurt them, but to let them hear, by the balls whiſtling among the leaves of the trees, that their guns carried further than any of their ſlings; and that, diſtant as they then were, they were not in ſafety, if they had a diſpoſition to do harm. They ſeemed to underſtand their meaning, by gliding through among the buſhes, and appearing at the top of a hill further off, where they continued hooping and crying, and making ſigns, which our travellers could not, neither did they endeavour to underſtand. While reſting on the banks of the river Mogetch, they had been overtaken by two men and two women, who were driving two loaded aſſes, and were going to Tcherkin; they had deſired leave to keep company with our travellers, for fear of danger on the road. Mr. Bruce had two Abyſſinian ſervants, but they were not yet come up, attending one of the baggage mules that was lame. They were obliged then to have recourſe to one of theſe ſtranger women, who underſtood the language of Tigré, and undertook readily to carry their meſſage to a ſtranger, who was ſtill very buſy making ſigns from behind a tree, without coming one ſtep nearer.

The meſſage Mr. Bruce ſent them was, that if they ſhewed the ſmalleſt appearance of further inſolence, either by approaching the tent, or flinging ſtones that night, the next morning, when the horſe he expected were come up, he would burn their town, and put every man of them to the ſword. A very ſubmiſſive anſwer was ſent back, with a heap of lies in excuſe of what they called their miſtake. His two ſervants coming ſoon after, both of whom, hereafter, were to be in the ſervice of Ayto Confu, went boldly one to each village, to bring two goats, ſome jars of bouza, and to prepare fifty loaves of bread for next morning. The goats were diſpatched inſtantly, ſo was the bouza; but when the morning came, the people had all fled from their houſes, without preparing any bread. Theſe villages were called Gimbaar. They were three in number; each ſituated upon the top of a pointed hill, in a direction from eaſt to weſt, and made a very beautiful appearance from the plain below.

They left the inhoſpitable villages of Gimbaar on the 29th, not without entertaining ſome apprehenſions of meeting the inhabitants again in the courſe of the day. But though they took every precaution againſt being ſurpriſed, that prudence could dictate, their fears of the encounter did not riſe to any great height. Mr. Bruce got, indeed, on horſeback, leaving his mule, and, putting on his coat of mail, leaving the fire-arms under the command of Hagi Iſmael, the old Turk, he rode always about a quarter of a mile before the baggage, that they might not come ſuddenly upon them, as they had done the night before. However, they met with no oppoſition, but proceeded on to Waalia; and at half paſt four in the afternoon encamped in the market-place.

This Waalia is a collection of villages, each placed upon the top of a hill, and encloſing, as in a circle, an extenſive flat piece of ground about three miles over, on which a very well frequented market is kept. The name is given it from a ſpecies of ſmall pigeons, with yellow breaſts and variegated backs, the fatteſt and beſt of all the pigeon kind. Waalia lies due N. W. from Gondar.

They left Waalia on the 30th, and proceeded along the Mai Lumi, or the River of Lemons. A prodigious quantity of fruit loaded the branches of theſe trees, even likely to break them; and theſe were in all ſtages of ripeneſs. Multitudes of bloſſoms covered the oppoſite part of the tree, and ſent forth the moſt delicious odour poſſible. They provided themſelves amply with this fruit. The natives make no uſe of it, but our travellers found it a great refreſhment to them, both mixed with their water, and as ſauce to their meat, of which they had now no great variety ſince their onions had failed them, and a ſupply of them was to be procured no longer.

Soon after they reached the paſs of Dov-Dohha, a very narrow defile, full of ſtrata of rocks, like ſteps of ſtairs, but ſo high, that, without leaping, or being pulled up, no horſe or mule can aſcend. Beſides, the deſcent, though ſhort, is very ſteep, and almoſt choked up by huge ſtones, which the torrents, after waſhing the earth from about them, had rolled down from the mountain above. Both ſides of the defile are covered thick with wood and buſhes, eſpecially that deteſtable thorn the kantuffa, ſo juſtly reprobated in Abyſſinia. Having extricated themſelves ſucceſsfully from this paſs, their ſpirits were ſo elated, that they began to think their journey now at an end, not reflecting how many paſſes, full of real danger, were ſtill before them.

Mr. Bruce having dreſſed his hair, perfumed it according to the cuſtom of the country, and put on clean clothes, with no other arms but his knife, and a pair of piſtols at his girdle, came out of the tent to mount his mule for Tcherkin, on January 2, 1772. He now ſaw Conſu's ſervant, whoſe name was Welleta Yaſous, pulling the Guinea-fowls and pigeons out of the pannier, where his ſervants had put them, and ſcattering them upon the ground, ſaying to thoſe who interrupted him, "Throw away this carrion; you ſhall have a better breakfaſt and dinner to day;" and turning to Mr. Bruce, more than ordinarily pleaſed at ſeeing him dreſſed, and that he continued to uſe the Abyſſinian habit, he jumped upon his mule, and appeared in great ſpirits. They all ſet out at a briſker pace than uſual, by the aſſiſtance of the two freſh mules. They paſſed through the midſt of ſeveral ſmall villages; and at laſt Mr. Bruce pitched his tent in the market-place at Tcherkin, which ſeemed a beautiful lawn laid out for pleaſure, ſhaded with fine old trees, of an enormous height and ſize, and watered by a ſmall but very limpid brook, running over beds of pebbles as white as ſnow.

Welleta Yaſous was ſo very impatient, that he would only give Mr. Bruce time to ſee his quadrant and other inſtruments ſafely ſtowed, and hurried him through a very narrow and crooked path up the ſide of the mountain, at every turn of which was placed a great rock or ſtone, the ſtation for muſkets to enfilade the different ſtages of the road below, where it was ſtraight for any diſtance. They at laſt reached the outer court, where Mr. Bruce ſaw a great many of his old acquaintance, whom he had known at Ozoro Eſther's houſe at Gondar, and who all welcomed him with the greateſt demonſtrations of joy, as if he had come from a long journey.

Now Mr. Bruce was taken to an inner apartment, where, to his great ſurpriſe, inſtead of Ayto Conſu, he ſaw his mother, Ozoro Eſther, ſitting on a couch, and at her feet the ſecretary's daughter, the beautiful Tecla Mariam; and, ſoon after, the ſecretary himſelf, and ſeveral others belonging to the court. After having made a profound obeiſance, "Ozoro Eſther, ſaid Mr. Bruce, I cannot ſpeak for ſurpriſe. What is the meaning of your having left Gondar to come into this wilderneſs? As for Tecla Mariam, I am not ſurpriſed at ſeeing her; I know ſhe, at any time, would rather die than leave you; but that you have both come hither without Ayto Conſu, and in ſo ſhort a time, is what I cannot comprehend."—"There is nothing ſo ſtrange in this, replied Ozoro Eſther, the troops of Begemder have taken away my huſband, Ras Michael, God knows where; and, therefore, being now a ſingle woman, I am reſolved to go to Jeruſalem to pray for my huſband, and to die there, and be buried in the Holy Sepulchre. You would not ſtay with us, ſo we are going with you. Is there any thing ſurpriſing in all this?" "But tell me, truly, ſaid Tecla Mariam, you that know every thing, while peeping and poring through theſe long glaſſes, did not you learn by the ſtars that we were to meet you here?"—"Madam, anſwered Mr. Bruce, if there was one ſtar in the firmament that had announced to me ſuch agreeable news, I ſhould have relapſed into the old idolatry of this country, and worſhipped that ſtar for the reſt of my life." Breakfaſt now came in; the converſation took a very lively turn, and from the ſecretary our traveller learned that the matter ſtood thus: "The king, reſtoring the villages to the Iteghé, according to the ſtipulation of his laſt treaty with Powuſſen, thought that he might ſo far infringe upon it, from gratitude to Ras Michael, as to give part of the number to Ozoro Eſther, the Iteghé's daughter; and Ayto Conſu, going to Tcherkin to hunt, he took his mother along with him to put her in poſſeſſion; for the Iteghé's people were not lambs, nor did they pay much regard to the orders of the king, nor to that of the Iteghé their miſtreſs."

Ayto Conſu came about four o'clock, and with him Ayto Engedan, and a great company. There was nothing but rejoicing on all ſides. Seven ladies, relations and companions of Ozoro Eſther, came with Ayto Conſu; and Mr. Bruce confeſſes this to have been one of the happieſt moments of his life. He quite forgot the diſaſtrous journey he had before him, and all the dangers that awaited him. He began even to regret being ſo far in his way to leave Abyſſinia for ever.

Ayto Conſu's houſe at Tcherkin is built on the edge of a precipice, which takes its name from the mountain Amba Tcherkin. It is built all with cane very artificially, the outer wall being compoſed of faſcines of canes, ſo neatly joined together as not to be penetrated by rain or wind. The entry is from the ſouth-ſide of it, very crooked and difficult, half way up the rock. On the eaſt, is a very plentiful ſpring, which furniſhes the houſe with excellent water. Yet, after all, this houſe, though inacceſſible, is not defenſible, and affords very little ſafety to its maſter; for the Shangalla, with flax, or any thing combuſtible, tied to the point of their arrows, would eaſily ſet it on fire if they once approach it; and the Abyſſinians with guns could as eaſily deſtroy it, as, on ſuch occaſions, they wrap their balls in cotton wads. The inſide of the ſtate rooms were hung with long ſtripes of carpeting, and the floors covered with the ſame.

There is great plenty of game about Tcherkin of every ſort, elephants, rhinoceroſes, and a great number of buffaloes, which differ nothing in form from the buffaloes of Egypt. but very much in temper and diſpoſition. They are fierce, raſh, and fearleſs of danger; and, contrary to the practice of any other creature not carnivorous, they attack the traveller and the hunter equally, and it requires addreſs to eſcape from them. They ſeem to be, of all others, the creatures moſt given to eaſe and indulgence. They lie under the ſhady trees, near large pools of water, of which they make conſtant uſe, and ſleep ſoundly all the day long. The fleſh of the female is very good when fat, but that of the male, hard, lean, and diſagreeable. Their horns are uſed in various manners by the turners, in which craft the Abyſſinians are very clever.

Notwithſtanding they were all happy to their wiſh in this enchanted mountain, the active ſpirit of Ayto Conſu could not reſt; he was come to hunt the elephant, and hunt him he would. All thoſe that underſtood any thing of this exerciſe had aſſembled from a great diſtance to meet Ayto Conſu at Tcherkin. He and Engedan, from the moment they arrived, had been overlooking, from the precipice, their ſervants training and managing their horſes in the market-place below. Great bunches of the fineſt canes had been brought from Kuara for javelines; and the whole houſe was employed in fitting heads to them in the moſt advantageous manner. Mr. Bruce, though he ſays he ſhould have been very well contented to have remained where he was, yet the preparations for ſport of ſo noble a kind rouſed his ſpirits, and made him deſirous to join it. On the other hand, the ladies all declared, that they thought, by leaving them, they were devoting them to death or ſlavery, as they did not doubt, if the Shangalla miſſed the hunting party, they would come forward to the mountain and ſlay them all. But a ſufficient garriſon was left, and they were well aſſured that the

Shangalla, being informed they were out, and armed, and knowing their numbers, would take care to keep cloſe in their thickets far out of their reach.

An hour before day, on the 6th, after a hearty breakfaſt, they mounted on horſeback, to the number of about thirty belonging to Ayto Confu. But there was another body, both of horſe and foot, which made hunting the elephant their particular buſineſs. Theſe men dwell conſtantly in the woods, and know very little of the uſe of bread, living entirely upon the fleſh of the beaſts they kill, chiefly that of the elephant or rhinoceros. They are exceedingly thin, light, and agile, both on horſeback and foot; are very ſwarthy, though few of them black; none of them woolly-headed, and all of them have European features. They are all called Agageer, a name of their profeſſion, not of their nation, which comes from the word Agar, and ſignifies to hough or ham-ſtring with a ſharp weapon. More properly it means, indeed, the cutting the tendon of the heel, and is a characteriſtic of the manner in which they kill the elephant, which is ſhortly as follows:

"Two men, abſolutely naked, without any rag or covering at all about them, get on horſeback; this precaution is from fear of being laid hold of by the trees or buſhes, in making their eſcape from a very watchful enemy. One of theſe riders ſits upon the back of the horſe, ſometimes with a ſaddle, and ſometimes without one, with only a ſwitch or ſhort ſtick in one hand, carefully managing the bridle with the other; behind him ſits his companion, who has no other arms but a broad-ſword, ſuch as is uſed by the Sclavonians, and which is brought from Trieſte. His left hand is employed graſping the ſword by the handle, and about fourteen inches of the blade is covered with whip-cord. This part he takes in his right hand, without any danger of being hurt by it; and, though the edges of the lower part of the ſword are as ſharp as a razor, he carries it without a ſcabbard. When the elephant is found feeding, the horſeman rides before him as near his face as poſſible; or, if he flies, croſſes him in all directions, crying out, "I am ſuch a man, and ſuch a man; this is my horſe, that has ſuch a name; I killed your father in ſuch a place, and your grandfather in ſuch another place, and I am now come to kill you; you are but an aſs in compariſon of them." This nonſenſe he verily believes the elephant underſtands, who, chafed and angry at hearing the noiſe immediately before him, ſeeks to ſeize him with his trunk, or proboſcis; and, intent upon this, follows the horſe every where, turning round with him frequently, neglectful of making his eſcape by running ſtraight forward, in which conſiſts his only ſafety. After having made him turn once or twice in purſuit of the horſe, the horſeman rides cloſe up along-ſide of him, and drops his companion juſt behind on the off ſide; and while he engages the elephant's attention upon the horſe, the footman behind gives him a drawn ſtroke juſt above the heel, or what in man is called the tendon Achilles. This is the critical moment; the horſeman immediately wheels round, and takes his companion up behind him, and rides off full ſpeed after the reſt of the herd, if they have ſtarted more than one; and ſometimes an expert Agageer will kill three out of one herd. If the ſword is good, and the man not afraid, the tendon is commonly entirely ſeparated; and if it is not cut through, it is generally ſo far divided, that the animal, with the ſtreſs he puts upon it, breaks the remaining part aſunder. In either caſe, he remains incapable of advancing a ſtep, till the horſeman returning, or his companions coming up, pierce him through with javelins and lances; he then falls to the ground, and expires with the loſs of blood.

"The Agageer neareſt Mr. Bruce preſently lamed his elephant, and left him ſtanding. Ayto Engedan, Ayto Confu, Guebra Mariam, and ſeveral others, fixed their ſpears in the other, before the Agageer had cut his tendons. Mr. Bruce's Agageer, however, having wounded the firſt elephant, failed in the purſuit of the ſecond; and, being cloſe upon him at entering the wood, he received a violent blow from a branch of a tree which the elephant had bent by his weight, and, after paſſing, allowed it to replace itſelf, when it knocked down both the riders, and very much hurt the horſe. This, indeed, is the great danger in elephant-hunting; for ſome of the trees, that are dry and ſhort, break, by the violent preſſure of ſo immenſe a body moving ſo rapidly, and fall upon the purſuers, or acroſs the roads. But the greateſt number of theſe trees, being of a ſucculent quality, they bend without breaking, and return quickly to their former poſition, when they ſtrike both horſe and man ſo violently, that they often beat them to pieces, and ſcatter them upon the plain. Dextrous, too, as the riders are, the elephant ſometimes reaches them with his trunk, with which he daſhes the horſe againſt the ground, and then ſets his feet upon him, till he tears him limb from limb with his proboſcis: a great many hunters die this way. Beſides this, the ſoil, at this time of the year, is ſplit into deep chaſms, or cavities, by the heat of the ſun, ſo that nothing can be more dangerous than the riding. As ſoon as the elephant is ſlain, they cut the whole fleſh off his bones into thongs, like the reins of a bridle, and hang theſe, like feſtoons, upon the branches of trees, till they become perfectly dry, without ſalt, and they then lay them by for their proviſion in the ſeaſon of the rains."

Now only two elephants remained of thoſe that had been diſcovered, which were a ſhe one with a calf. The Agageer would willingly have let theſe alone, as the teeth of the female are very ſmall, and the young one is of no ſort of value, even for food, its fleſh ſhrinking much upon drying. But the hunters would not be limited in their ſport. The people having obſerved the place of her retreat, thither they eagerly followed. She was very ſoon found, and as ſoon lamed by the Agageers; but when they came to wound her with the darts, as every one did in their turn, to their very great ſurpriſe, the young one which had been ſuffered to eſcape unheeded and unpurſued, came out from the thicket apparently in great anger, running upon the horſes and men with all the violence it was maſter of. Mr. Bruce was amazed, and as much as ever he was, upon ſuch an occaſion, afflicted, at ſeeing the great affection of the little animal defending its wounded mother, heedleſs of its own life or ſafety. He, therefore, cried to them for God's ſake to ſpare the mother, though it was then too late; and the calf had made ſeveral rude attacks upon Mr. Bruce, which he avoided without difficulty; but he ſays he is happy to this day, in the reflection that he did not ſtrike it. At laſt, making one of his attacks upon Ayto Engedan, it hurt him a little on the leg; upon which he thruſt it through with his lance, as others did after, and it then fell dead before its wounded mother, whom it had ſo affectionately defended.

Our travellers then ſought about for the buffaloes and rhinoceroſes; but though there was plenty of both in the neighbourhood, they could not find them; their noiſe and ſhooting in the morning having probably ſcared them away. One rhinoceros was only ſeen by a ſervant. They returned in the evening to a great fire, and lay all night under the ſhade of trees.

Very early the next morning they were on horſeback in ſearch of the rhinoceroſes, many of which they had heard make a very deep groan and cry as the morning approached; ſeveral of the Agageers then joined them; and, after they had ſearched about an hour in the very thickeſt part of the wood, one of them ruſhed out with great violence, croſſing the plain towards a wood of canes that was about two miles diſtance. But though he ran, or rather trotted, with ſurpriſing ſpeed, conſidering his bulk, he was, in a very little time, transfixed with thirty or forty javelins; which ſo confounded him, that he left his purpoſe of going to the wood, and ran into a deep hole, ditch, or ravine, a *cul de ſac*, without outlet, breaking above a dozen of the javelins as he entered. Here they thought he was caught as in a trap, for he had ſcarce room to turn; when a ſervant, who had a gun, ſtanding directly over him, fired at his head, and the animal fell immediately, to all appearance dead. All thoſe on foot now jumped in with their knives to cut him up, and they had ſcarce begun, when the animal recovered ſo far as to riſe upon his knees; happy then was the man that eſcaped firſt; and had not one of the Agageers, who was himſelf engaged in the ravine, cut the ſinew of the hind leg as he was retreating, there would have been a very ſorrowful account of the foot-hunters that day.

When Mr. Bruce diſpatched him, he was curious to ſee what wound the ſhot had given, which had operated ſo violently upon ſo huge an animal; and he doubted not it was in the brain. But it had ſtruck him no where but upon the point of the foremoſt horn, of which it had carried off above an inch; and this occaſioned a concuſſion that had ſtunned him for a minute, till the bleeding had recovered him. Mr. Bruce preſerved the horn from curioſity. Ere they had gone far, a wild boar aroſe between Mr. Bruce and Ayto Engedan, which our traveller immediately killed with his javelin. This was the ſport Mr. Bruce had been many years uſed to in Barbary, and was infinitely more dexterous at it than any of the preſent company; this put him more upon a par with his companions, who had not failed to laugh at him, upon his horſe's refuſal to carry him near either to the elephant or rhinoceros.

Now Ammonios was a man of approved courage and conduct: he had been in all the wars of Ras Michael, and was placed about Ayto Conſu, to lead the troops, curb the preſumption, and check the impetuoſity of that youthful warrior. He was tall, and aukwardly made; ſlow in ſpeech and motion, ſo much as even to excite ridicule; about ſixty years of age, and more corpulent than the Abyſſinians generally are; in a word, as pedantic and grave in his manner as it is poſſible to expreſs. He ſpent his whole leiſure time in reading the Scripture, nor did he willingly diſcourſe of any thing elſe. He had been bred a foot ſoldier; and, though he rode as well as many of the Abyſſinians, yet, having long ſtirrup-leathers, with iron rings at the end of them, into which he put his naked toe only, inſtead of ſtirrups, he had no ſtrength or agility on horſeback, nor was his bridle ſuch as could command his horſe to ſtop, or wind and turn ſharply among trees, though he might make a tolerable figure on a plain.

A boar had wounded a horſe and a footman of Ayto Conſu, and then eſcaped. Two buffaloes were found by thoſe on the right, one of which wounded a horſe likewiſe. Ayto Conſu, Engedan, Fuebra Mariam, and Mr. Bruce killed the other with equal ſhare of merit, without being in any ſort of danger. All this was in little more than an hour when their ſport ſeemed to be at the beſt; their horſes were conſiderably blown, not tired; and though they were beating homewards, ſtill they were looking very keenly for more game. Ammonios was on the left among the buſhes, and ſome large, beautiful, tall ſpreading-trees, cloſe on the banks of the river Bedowi, which ſtands there in pools. Whether the buffalo found Ammonios, or Ammonios the buffalo, is what they could never get him to explain to them; but he had wounded the beaſt ſlightly in the buttock, which, in return, had gored his horſe, and thrown both him and it to the ground. Luckily, however, his cloak had fallen off, which the buffalo tore in pieces, and employed himſelf for a minute with that and with the horſe, but then left them, and followed the man as ſoon as he ſaw him riſe and run. Ammonios got behind one large tree, and from that to another ſtill larger. The buffalo turned very aukwardly, but kept cloſe in purſuit; and there was no doubt he would have worn out their companion, who was not uſed to ſuch quick motion. Ayto Engedan, who was near him, and might have aſſiſted him, was laughing, at the droll figure Ammonios made; and continued calling to Conſu to partake of the diverſion.

As ſoon as Mr. Bruce heard his cries, he galloped out of the buſhes to the place where he was, and could not help laughing at his ridiculous figure, very attentive to the beaſt's motions, which ſeemed to dodge with great addreſs, and keep to his adverſary with the utmoſt obſtinacy. Conſu immediately arrived, and laughed more than Engedan, but did not offer to interfere; on the contrary, he clapped his hands, and cried, "Well done, Ammonios," ſwearing he never ſaw ſo equal a match in his life. The unfortunate Ammonios had been driven from tree to tree, till he had got behind one within a few yards of the water; but the bruſh-wood upon the banks, and his attention to the buffalo, hindered him from ſeeing how far it was below him. Nothing could be more ridiculous than to ſee him holding the tree with both his hands, peeping firſt one way, and then another, to ſee by which the beaſt would turn. And well he might be on his guard; for the animal was abſolutely mad, toſſing up the ground with his feet both before and behind. Mr. Bruce, thinking the joke might become ſerious, cried to Ammonios to throw himſelf into the water, when he ſhould ſtrike the beaſt; and ſeeing the buffalo's head turned from Mr. Bruce, at full ſpeed, he ran the ſpear into the lower part of his belly, through his whole inteſtines, till it came out above a foot on the other ſide, and there he left it with a view to hinder the buffalo from turning. It was a ſpear which, though ſmall in the head, had a ſtrong, tough, ſeaſoned ſhaft, which did not break by ſtriking it againſt the trees and buſhes; and it pained and impeded the animal's motions, till Ammonios quitting the tree, daſhed through the buſhes with ſome difficulty, and threw himſelf into the river. But here a danger occurred that Mr. Bruce had not foreſeen. The pool was very deep, and Ammonios could not ſwim; ſo that though he eſcaped from the buffalo, he would infallibly have been drowned, had he not caught hold of ſome ſtrong roots of a tree ſhooting out of the bank; and there he lay in perfect ſafety from the enemy till the ſervants went round, and brought him out of the pool on the further ſide.

During this time, the buffalo, mortally wounded, ſeeing his enemy had eſcaped, kept his eyes intent upon the hunters, who were about forty yards from him, walking backwards towards the company, with intent to turn ſuddenly upon the neareſt horſe; when Ayto Conſu ordered two men with guns to ſhoot him through the head, and he inſtantly fell. The two they firſt killed were females; this laſt was a bull, and one of the largeſt, confeſſedly, that had ever been ſeen. Though not fat, Mr. Bruce ſuppoſes he weighed nearer fifty than forty ſtone. His horns from the root, following the line of their curve, were about fifty-two inches, and nearly nine where thickeſt in the circumference. They were flat, not round. Ayto Conſu ordered the head to be cut off, and cleared of its fleſh, ſo that the horns and ſkeleton of the head only remained; this he hung up in his great hall among the proboſces of elephants, and horns of rhinoceroſes, with this inſcription in his own language, "*Yagoube the Kipt killed this upon the Bedowi.*"

The evening of the day on which they ſet out to hunt, ſome men arrived from Ras el Feel ſent by Yaſine, with camels for their baggage, nothing but mules being uſed at Tcherkin. They brought word, that the Shangalla were down near the Tacazzé, ſo that now was the time to paſs without fear; that Abd el Jeleel, the former Shum of Ras el Feel, Yaſine's mortal enemy, had been ſeen lurking in the country near Sancaho; but as he had only four men, and was himſelf a known coward, it was not probable he would attempt any thing againſt our travellers, though it would be always better for them to keep on their guard.

Tcherkin has a market on Saturday, in which raw cotton, cattle, honey, and coarſe cotton cloths are ſold. The Shangalla formerly moleſted Tcherkin greatly, but for thirty years paſt they had done little damage. The ſmall-pox raged ſo violently for a number of years among them, that it greatly diminiſhed their numbers, and conſequently their power of troubling their neighbours.

They left Tcherkin on the morning of the 15th of January, and entered immediately into thick woods; but proceeded very ſlowly, the road being bad and unknown, if it could be called a road, and their camels overloaded.

They came to Sancaho, an old frontier territory of Abyſſinia, on the 17th. The town may conſiſt of about 300 huts or houſes, neatly built of canes, and curiouſly thatched with leaves of the ſame. It riſes in the midſt of a plain, and reſembles in ſhape Tcherkin Amba, though much larger; a conſiderable diſtrict all around belongs to it, of wilds and woods, if ſuch as theſe, abandoned entirely to wild beaſts, can be ſaid to belong to any man. The eaſt end ſlopes with rather a ſteep deſcent into the plain; and through that is a narrow winding road, ſeemingly the work of art, being obſtructed at turns by huge ſtones, and at different ſtages, for the purpoſe of defence by guns or arrows; all the other ſides of the rock are perpendicular precipices. The inhabitants of the town are Baaſa, a race of Shangalla, converted to the Mahometan religion.

Our travellers proceeded but a mile and a half on the 20th, their beaſts and themſelves being equally fatigued, and their cloaths torn all to rags, when they arrived at Guanjock, which is a very delightful ſpot by the river ſide; ſmall woods of very high trees, interſperſed with very beautiful lawns; ſeveral fields alſo cultivated with cotton; variety of game, eſpecially Guinea fowls, in great abundance, and, upon every tree, parroquets, of all the different kinds and colours, compoſe the beauties of Guanjock. Mr. Bruce ſaw no parrots, and ſuppoſes there were none; but on firing a gun, the firſt probably ever heard in thoſe woods, there was ſuch a ſcreaming of other birds on all ſides, ſome flying to the place whence the noiſe came, and ſome flying from it, that it was impoſſible to hear diſtinctly any other ſound.

Having continued the journey from thence, at a quarter after one they came to Mariam-Ohha, and at half paſt three arrived at Hor-Cacamoot. Hor, in that country, ſignifies the dry deep bed of a torrent, which has ceaſed to run; and Cacamoot, the ſhade of death; ſo that Yaſine's village, where they now took up their quarters, is called the valley of the ſhadow of death.

Hor-Cacamoot is ſituated in a plain in the midſt of a wood, ſo much only of which has been cleared away as to make room for the miſerable huts of which it conſiſts, and for the ſmall ſpots of ground on which they ſow maſhilla, or maize, to furniſh them with bread. Their other food conſiſts entirely of the fleſh of the elephant and rhinoceros, and chiefly of the former; for the trouble of hunting the elephant is not greater than chaſing the rhinoceros, and the difference of gain is much ſuperior. The elephant has a greater quantity of better fleſh, while his large teeth are very valuable, and afford a ready price every where. The inhabitants being little acquainted with the uſe of fire-arms, the ſmaller game, of the deer kind, are not much moleſted, unleſs by the wild Shangalla, who make uſe of bows and arrows, ſo that theſe animals are increaſed beyond imagination.

Formerly Ras el Feel conſiſted of thirty-nine villages. All the Arabs of Atbara reſorted to them with butter, honey, horſes, gold, and many other commodities; and the Shekh of Atbara, living upon the frontier of Senaar, entertained a conſtant good correſpondence with the Shekh of Ras el Feel, to whom he ſent yearly a Dongola horſe, two razors, and two dogs. The Shekh of Ras el Feel, in return, gave him a mule and a female ſlave; and the effect of this intercourſe was to keep all the intermediate Arabs in their duty. But ſince the expedition of Yaſous II. againſt Sennaar, no peace has ever ſubſiſted between the two ſtates; on the contrary, all the Arabs that aſſiſted the king, and were defeated with him, pay tribute no longer to Sennaar, but live on the frontiers of Abyſſinia and are protected there.

March the 17th, they ſet out from Hor-Cacamoot on their journey to Teawa, the capital of the province of Atbara. Early in the morning of the 18th, they continued their journey through thick, and almoſt impenetrable woods full of thorns; and in two hours came to the bed of a torrent, though, in appearance, dry, upon digging with their hands in the looſe ſand, they found great plenty of freſh water exceedingly well taſted, being ſheltered by projecting rocks from the action of the ſun. This is called Surf el Shekh. Here they filled their girbas, for there is very little good water to be found between this and Teawa.

A girba is an ox's ſkin ſquared, and the edges ſewed together very artificially by a double ſeam, which does not let out water, much reſembling that upon the beſt Engliſh cricket-balls. An opening is left in the top of the girba, in the ſame manner as the bunghole of a caſk. Around this the ſkin is gathered to the ſize of a large handful, which, when the girba is full of water, is tied round with whip-cord. Theſe girbas generally contain about ſixty gallons each, and two of them are the load of a camel. They are then all beſmeared on the outſide with greaſe, as well to hinder the water from oozing through, as to prevent its being evaporated by the action of the ſun upon the girba, which, in fact, happened to them twice, ſo as to put them in imminent danger of periſhing with thirſt.

Yaſine had provided a camel and two girbas, as well as every other proviſion neceſſary for them, till they ſhould arrive at Teawa. Surf el Shekh is the boundary of Ras el Feel. Here Mr. Bruce took an affectionate leave of his friend Yaſine, who, with all his attendants, ſhewed, at parting, that love and attachment they had conſtantly preſerved to Mr. Bruce ſince their firſt acquaintance.

Our travellers arrived at Imſerrha, on the 20th, and from thence were two hours in going to Raſhid, for they were flying for their lives; the *Simoom*, or hot-wind, having ſtruck them not long after they had ſet out from Imſerrha; and their little company, all but Mr. Bruce, fell ſick with the quantity of poiſonous vapour that they had imbibed. From Raſhid to Imſerrha it is about five miles; and though it is one of the moſt dangerous halting places between Ras el Feel and Sennaar, yet they were ſo enervated, their ſtomachs ſo weak, and their head-achs ſo violent, that they could not pitch their tent, but each wrapping himſelf in his cloak, reſigned himſelf immediately to ſleep, under the cool ſhade of the large trees, invited by the pleaſant breeze from the north, which ſeemed to be merely local, confined to this ſmall grove, created probably by the vicinity of the water, and the agitation they had occaſioned in it. In this helpleſs ſtate to which they were reduced, Mr. Bruce alone continued not weakened by the Simoom, nor overcome by ſleep. A Ganjar Arab, who drove an aſs laden with ſalt, took this opportunity of ſtealing one of the mules, together with a lance and ſhield belonging to one of Mr. Bruce's ſervants. The country was ſo woody, and he had ſo much the advantage of them in point of time, and they were in ſo weak and diſcouraged a ſtate, that it was thought in vain to purſue him one ſtep. So he got off with his booty, unleſs he was intercepted by ſome of thoſe wild beaſts, which he would find every where in his way, whether he returned to Ras el Feel, or the frontiers of Kuara, his own country.

When they had refreſhed themſelves with a little ſleep, their next care was to fill their girbas, or ſkins, with water. But before they attempted this, Mr. Bruce thought to try an experiment of mixing about twenty drops of ſpirit of nitre in a horn of water about the ſize of an ordinary tumbler. This he found greatly refreſhed him, though his head-ach ſtill continued. It had a much better effect upon his ſervants, to whom he gave it; for they all ſeemed immediately recovered, and their ſpirits much more ſo, from the reflection that they had with them a remedy they could truſt to, if they ſhould again be ſo unfortunate as to meet this poiſonous wind or vapour.

On the 23d, they arrived at Teawa, the principal village and reſidence of the Shekh of Arbara, between three and four miles from the ruins of Garigana. The ſtrength of Teawa was about 25 horſe, of which about ten were armed with coats of mail. They had about a dozen of firelocks, very contemptible from the order in which they were kept, and ſtill more ſo from the hands that bore them. The reſt of the inhabitants might amount to twelve hundred men, naked, miſerable, and deſpicable Arabs, like the reſt of thoſe that live in villages, who are inferior in courage to the Arabs that dwell in tents: weak as its ſtate was, it was the ſeat of government, and as ſuch a certain degree of reverence attended it. Such was the ſtate of Teawa. Its conſequence was only to remain till the Daveina ſhould reſolve to attack it, when its corn fields being burnt and deſtroyed in a night by a multitude of horſemen, the bones of its inhabitants ſcattered upon the earth would be all its remains.

Mr. Bruce being ſent for by the Shekh, found him ſitting in a ſpacious room, in an alcove, on a large broad ſofa like a bed, with India curtains gathered on each ſide into feſtoons. He called to a black boy who attended him, in a very ſurly tone, to bring him a pipe; and, in much the ſame voice, ſaid to Mr. Bruce, “What! alone?” He replied, “Yes; what are your commands with me?” Mr. Bruce ſaw he either was, or affected to be, drunk, and which ever was the caſe, he knew it would lead to miſchief; he therefore repented heartily of having come into the houſe alone. After he had taken two whiffs of his pipe, and the ſlave had left the room, “Are you prepared? ſaid he: Have you brought the *needful* along with you?” Mr. Bruce wiſhed to have occaſion to join Soliman, his ſervant, and anſwered, “My ſervants are at the outer door, and have the vomit you wanted.” “D——n you and the vomit too, ſaid he, with great paſſion, I want money, and not poiſon. Where are your piaſtres?” “I am a bad perſon, replied Mr. Bruce, to furniſh you with either. I have neither money nor poiſon; but I adviſe you to drink a little warm water to clear your ſtomach, cool your head, and then lie down and compoſe yourſelf; I will ſee you to-morrow morning.” Mr. Bruce was going out. “Haikim, ſaid he, infidel, or devil, or whatever is your name, hearken to what I ſay. Conſider where you are; this is the room where Mek Baady, a king, was ſlain by the hand of my father: look at his blood, where it has ſtained the floor, which never could be waſhed out. I am informed you have 20,000 piaſters in gold with you; either give me 2000 before you go out of this chamber, or you ſhall die; I will put you to death with my own hand.” Upon this he took up his ſword, that was lying at the head of his ſofa, and, drawing it with a bravado, threw the ſcabbard into the middle of the room; and, tucking the ſleeve of his ſhirt above his elbow like a butcher, ſaid, “I wait your anſwer.” Mr. Bruce now ſtept one pace backwards, and held the little blunderbuſs in his hand, without taking it off the belt. He ſaid, in a firm tone of voice, “This is my anſwer: I am not a man, as I have told you before, to die like a beaſt by the hand of a drunkard. On your life, I charge you, ſtir not from your ſofa.” He had no need to give this injunction; he heard the noiſe which the cloſing the joint in the ſtock of the blunderbuſs made, and thought he had cocked it, and was inſtantly to fire. He let his ſword drop, and threw himſelf on his back on the ſofa, crying, “For God's ſake, Haikim, I was but jeſting.” At the ſame time, with all his might, he cried, “Brahim! Mahomet! El coom! El coom!”—“If one of your ſervants approach me, ſaid Mr. Bruce, that inſtant I will blow you to pieces: not one of them ſhall enter this room till they bring in my ſervants with them; I have a number of them armed at your gate, who will break in the inſtant they hear me fire.” The women had come to the door, and Mr. Bruce's ſervants were admitted, each having a blunderbuſs in his hand, and piſtols at his girdle. They were now greatly an overmatch for Shekh, who ſat far back on the ſofa, and pretended that all he had done was in joke, in which his ſervants joined, and a very confuſed, deſultory diſcourſe followed, till the Turk, Sherriffe Iſmael, happened to obſerve the Shekh's ſcabbard of his ſword thrown upon the floor, on which he fell into a violent fit of laughter. He endeavoured to make the Shekh underſtand, that drunkards and cowards had more need of the ſcabbard than the ſword; that he, Fidele, and the other drunkard that came to their houſe two or three nights before, who ſaid he was Shekh of Jehaina were juſt poſſeſſed of the ſame portion of courage and inſolence. As no good could be expected from this expoſtulation, Mr. Bruce ſtopt it, and took his leave, deſiring the Shekh to go to-bed and compoſe himſelf, and not try any more of theſe experiments, which would certainly end in his ſhame, if not in his puniſhment.

Now Mr. Bruce and his ſervants went to the door, through the ſeveral apartments, very much upon their guard, for there was no perſon to light them out, and they were afraid of ſome treachery or ambuſh in the antichamber and dark paſſages; but they met nobody; and were, even at the outer gate, obliged to open the door themſelves. Without the gate there were about twenty people gathered together, but none of them with arms; and, by the half words and expreſſions they made uſe of, they could judge they were not the Shekh's friends. They followed them for a little, but diſperſed before they arrived at their houſe.

Mr. Bruce and his party had ſcarce got rid of this real danger, when the apprehenſion of an imaginary one ſtruck them violently. The water at Teawa is ſtagnant in pools, and exceedingly bad. Either that, or the bouza, a kind of new beer which they ſent them with their meat, had given all of them, at the ſame time, a violent diarrhœa, and Mr. Bruce was tormented with a perpetual thirſt ever ſince they had been overtaken by the Simoom; and the bouza being acid was not only more agreeable, but, he thought, relieved him more than bad water: in this, therefore, he certainly had exceeded. When they found they were all taken ill at the ſame time, it came into their heads that Shekh Fidele had given them poiſon in their dinner, and they were very much perplexed what they ſhould do the next day. None of them, therefore, taſted the meat ſent them; when at night, their friend, the black ſlave, came, and to her they frankly told their doubts. The poor creature fell into ſuch violent fits of laughing, which followed ſo cloſe the one upon the other, and laſted ſo long, that Mr. Bruce feared ſhe would have expired upon the ſpot. “It is the water, ſaid ſhe, it does ſo to all ſtrangers; and then ſhe fell into another great fit of laughter.” “Child, anſwered Mr. Bruce, you know the Shekh is not our friend, and there is no eaſier way to get rid of us than by poiſon, as we eat every thing that comes from you without fear.” “And ſo you may, ſaid ſhe, the Shekh could do no ſuch thing without our knowledge, and we would rather all be burnt alive than be guilty of ſo vile an action. Beſides, ſaid ſhe, this is not like Habeſh, where both meat and drink, brought to you, are taſted by the bearer before you uſe them. There is no ſuch thing as poiſon in Arbara; the lance and the knife in the field, that is the manner in which they kill one another here.” They then ſhewed her their dinner uneaten, and ſhe again fell into a violent fit of laughter, and took the meat away that ſhe might warm it, and they heard her laughing all the way as ſhe went by herſelf. She was not long in returning with proviſions in plenty, and told them, that her miſtreſſes never were ſo diverted in their lives, and ſhe left them ſtill laughing.

All the while Mr. Bruce ſtaid at Teawa, the behaviour of Fidele was all of a piece, and it is probable our traveller would have finiſhed his travels in that place, had not ſome of his powerful friends intereſted themſelves in his ſecurity. However, after various impediments, on the 18th, they took leave of the Shekh to proceed on their journey. The day had been immoderately hot, and they had reſolved to travel all night, though they did not ſay ſo to the Shekh, who adviſed them to ſleep at Imgededema, where there was freſh water. But they had taken a girba of water with them, or rather, in caſe of accident, a little in each of the three girbas.

During the firſt ſeven hours, their journey was through a barren, bare, and ſandy plain, without finding a veſtige of any living creature; without water, and without graſs; a country that ſeemed under the immediate curſe of Heaven. However, after a moſt diſagreeable journey, on the 19th, at eight in the evening they arrived at Beyla, about eleven miles weſt of Teawa, and thirty-one and a half miles due ſouth. They were met by Mahomet, the Shekh, at the very entrance of the town. He ſaid, he looked upon them as riſen from the dead; that they muſt be good people, and particularly under the care of Providence, to have eſcaped the many ſnares the Shekh of Arbara had laid for them. Mahomet, the Shekh, had provided every ſort of refreſhment poſſible for them, and, thinking they could not live without it, he had ordered ſugar for them from Sennaar. Honey for the moſt part hitherto had been its ſubſtitute. They had a good comfortable ſupper; as fine wheat-bread as ever Mr. Bruce ate in his life, brought from Sennaar, as alſo rice: in a word, every thing that their kind landlord could contribute to their plentiful and hoſpitable entertainment. Our traveller's whole company was full of joy, to which the Shekh greatly encouraged them; and if there was any alloy to the happineſs, it was ſeeing that Mr. Bruce did not partake of it. Symptoms of an aguiſh diſorder had been hanging about him for ſeveral days, ever ſince the diarrhœa had left him. He found the greateſt repugnance, or nauſea, at the ſmell of warm meat; and, having a violent head-ach, he inſiſted upon going to bed ſupperleſs, after having drank a quantity of warm water by way of emetic. Being exceedingly tired, he ſoon fell ſound a-ſleep, having firſt taken ſome drops of a ſtrong ſpirituous tincture of the bark which he had prepared at Gondar, reſolving, if he found any remiſſion, as he then did, to take ſeveral good doſes of the bark in powder on the morrow, beginning at day-break, which he accordingly did with ſucceſs.

April the 20th, a little after the dawn of day, the Shekh, in great anxiety, came to the place where Mr. Bruce was lying, upon a tanned buffaloe's hide, on the ground. His ſorrow was ſoon turned into joy when he found him quite recovered from his illneſs. He had taken the bark, and expreſſed a deſire of eating a hearty breakfaſt of rice, which was immediately prepared for him. The Shekh of Beyla was an implicit believer in medicine. Seeing him take ſome drops of the tincture before coffee, he inſiſted upon pledging Mr. Bruce, and he believes would have willingly emptied the whole bottle. The Shekh, having ſuffered great agony with his own complaint, had paſſed ſome ſmall ſtones, and was greatly better, as he ſaid, for the ſoap-pills. Mr. Bruce put him in a way to prepare theſe, as alſo his lime-water. It was impoſſible to have done any favour for him equal to this, as his agony had been ſo great.

This being the time to give the Shekh a preſent, Mr. Bruce had prepared one for him, ſuch as he very well deſerved; but no entreaty, nor any means he could uſe, could prevail upon him to accept of the meereſt trifle. On the contrary, he ſolemnly ſwore, that if Mr. Bruce importuned him further, he would get upon his horſe and go into the country. All that he deſired, and that too as a favour, was, that when Mr. Bruce had reſted at Sennaar, he might come and conſult him further as to his complaints, for which he promiſed he ſhould bring a recompence with him.

Notwithſtanding Mr. Bruce's reception here was very kind, yet he determined to preſs on to Sennaar before affairs there were in a deſperate ſituation, or ſome ſcheme of miſchief ſhould be contrived by Fidele. They had again a large and plentiful dinner, and a quantity of bouza; veniſon of ſeveral different ſpecies of the antelope or deer kind, and Guinea-fowls, boiled with rice, were the beſt part of their fare, for the veniſon ſmelled and taſted ſtrongly of muſk. This was the proviſion made by the Shekh's two ſons, boys about fourteen or fifteen years old, who had got each of them a gun with a matchlock, and whoſe favour he ſecured to a very high degree, by giving them ſome good gunpowder, and plenty of ſmall leaden bullets.

They went in the afternoon to ſee the village, which is a very pleaſant one, ſituated at the bottom of a hill, covered with wood, all the reſt flat before it. Through this plain there are many large timber trees, planted in rows, and joined with high hedges, as in Europe, forming encloſures for keeping cattle; but of theſe they ſaw none, as they had been moved to the Dender for fear of the flies. There is no water at Beyla but what is got from deep wells. Large plantations of Indian corn are every where about the town. The inhabitants are in continual apprehenſion from the Arabs Daveina at Sim Sim, about 40 miles ſouth-eaſt from them; and from another powerful race called Wed abd el Gin, i. e. *Sons of the ſlaves of the Devil*, who live to the ſouth-weſt of them, between the Dender and the Nile. Beyla is another frontier town of Sennaar, on the ſide of Sim Sim; and between Teawa and this, on the Sennaar ſide, and Ras el Feel, Nara, and Tehelga, upon the Abyſſinian ſide, all is deſert and waſte, the Arabs only ſuffering the water to remain there without villages near it, that they and their flocks may come at certain ſeaſons while the graſs grows, and the pools or ſprings fill elſewhere.

Mr. Bruce, though he went early to bed with a full determination to ſet out by day-break, found it was impoſſible to put his deſign in execution, or get from the hands of their kind landlord. One of their girbas ſeemed to fail, and needed to be repaired. Nothing good, as he truly ſaid, could come from the Shekh of Arbara.

They left Beyla at three o'clock in the afternoon on the 21ſt of April, and proceeded through a very pleaſant, flat country, but without water; there had been none in their way nearer than the river Rahad. About eleven at night they alighted in a wood: The place is called Baharie, as near as they could compute, nine miles from Beyla.

At half paſt five o'clock in the morning of the 22d, they left Baharie, ſtill continuing weſtward, and at nine they came to the banks of the Rahad. The ford is called Tehir Chaira. The river itſelf was now ſtanding in pools, the water foul, ſtinking, and covered with a green mantle; the bottom ſoft and muddy, but there was no choice. The water at Beyla was ſo bad, that they took only as much as was abſolutely neceſſary till they arrived at running water from the Rahad.

They met ſeveral men the next day on horſeback and foot, coming out from among the buſhes, who endeavoured to carry off one of their camels. They indeed were ſomewhat alarmed, and were going to prepare for reſiſtance. The camel they had taken away had on it the king's and Shekh Adelan's preſents, and ſome other things for their future need. Their clothes too, books, and papers, were upon the ſame camel. However, as this was only a contrivance to extort a preſent from Mr. Bruce, the matter was eaſily got over, and the camel reſtored.

On the 24th, they came to the river Dender, ſtanding now in pools, but by the vaſt wideneſs of its banks, and the great deepneſs of its bed, all of white ſand, it ſhould ſeem that in time of rain, it will contain nearly as much water as the Nile. The banks are every where thick overgrown with the rack and jujeb tree, eſpecially the latter. The wood, which had continued moſtly from Beyla, here failed entirely, and reached no further towards Sennaar. Theſe two ſorts of trees, however, were in very great beauty, and of a prodigious ſize. At ſix o'clock in the evening, they ſet out from a ſhady place of repoſe on the banks of the Dender, through a large plain, with not a tree before them; but they preſently found themſelves encompaſſed with a number of villages, nearly of a ſize, and placed at equal diſtances in form of a ſemi-circle, the roofs of the houſes in ſhape of cones, as are all thoſe within the rains. The plain was all of a red, ſoapy earth, and the corn juſt ſown. This whole country is in perpetual cultivation, and though, at this time, it had a bare look, would no doubt have a magnificent one when waving with grain. At nine they halted at a village of Pagan Nuba. Theſe are all ſoldiers of the Mek of Sennaar, cantoned in theſe villages, which, at the diſtance of four or five miles, ſurround the whole capital. They are either purchaſed or taken by force from Fazuclo, and the provinces to the ſouth upon the mountains Dyre and Tegla. Having ſettlements and proviſions given them, as alſo arms put into their hands, they never wiſh to deſert, but live a very domeſtic and ſober life. They pay adoration to the moon; and that their worſhip is performed with pleaſure and ſatisfaction, is obvious every night that ſhe ſhines. Coming out from the darkneſs of their huts, they ſay a few words upon ſeeing her brightneſs, and teſtify great joy, by motions of their feet and hands, at the firſt appearance of the new moon. Mr. Bruce never ſaw them pay any attention to the ſun, either riſing or ſetting, advancing to or receding from the meridian; but, as far as he could learn, they worſhip a tree, and likewiſe a ſtone, though he never could find out what tree or ſtone it was, only that it did not exiſt in the country of Sennaar, but in that wherein they were born. Their prieſts ſeemed to have great influence over them, but through fear only, and not from affection. They are diſtinguiſhed by thick copper bracelets about their wriſts, as alſo ſometimes one, and ſometimes two about their ancles.

About four o'clock in the afternoon of the 25th, they ſet out from the villages of the Nuba, intending to arrive at Baſboch, where is the ferry over the Nile; but they had ſcarcely advanced two miles into the plain, when they were encloſed by a violent whirlwind, or what is called, at ſea, the water-ſpout. The plain was red earth, which had been plentifully moiſtened by a ſhower in the night-time. The unfortunate camel that had been taken by the Cohala ſeemed to be nearly in the centre of its vortex. It was lifted up and thrown down at a conſiderable diſtance, and ſeveral of its ribs broken. Although, as far as Mr. Bruce could gueſs, he was not near the centre, it whirled him off his feet, and threw him down upon his face, ſo as to make his noſe guſh out with blood. Two of the ſervants likewiſe had the ſame fate. It plaſtered them all over with mud, almoſt as ſmoothly as could have been done with a trowel. It took away Mr. Bruce's ſenſe and breathing for an inſtant, and his mouth and noſe were full of mud when he recovered. He gueſſes the ſphere of its action to be about 200 feet. It demoliſhed one half of a ſmall hut, as if it had been cut through with a knife, and diſperſed the materials all over the plain, leaving the other half ſtanding.

When they recovered themſelves, they took refuge in a village, from fear only, for they ſaw no veſtige of any other whirlwind. It involved a great quantity of rain, which the Nuba of the villages told them was very fortunate, as it portended good luck to them, and a proſperous journey; for they ſaid, that had duſt and ſand ariſen with the whirlwind, in the ſame proportion it would have done, had not the earth been moiſtened, they would all infallibly have been ſuffocated; and they cautioned them, by ſaying, that tempeſts were very frequent at the beginning and end of the rainy ſeaſon, and whenever they ſhould ſee one of them coming, to fall down upon their faces, keeping their lips cloſe to the ground, and ſo let it paſs; and thus it would neither have power to carry them off their feet, nor ſuffocate them, which was the ordinary caſe. Their kind landlords, the Nuba, gave them a hearty welcome, and helped them to waſh their clothes firſt, and then to dry them. They gave them a piece of roaſted hog, which they ate (except Iſmael and the Mahometans) very much to the ſatisfaction of the Nuba. On the other hand, as their camel was lame, they ordered one of their Mahometan ſervants to kill it, and take as much of it as would ſerve themſelves that night; they alſo provided againſt wanting themſelves the next day. The reſt they gave among their new-acquired acquaintance, the Nuba of the village, who did not fail to make a feaſt upon it for ſeveral days after; and, in recompence for their liberality, they provided them with a large jar of bouza, not very good, indeed, but better than the well water. This Mr. Bruce repaid by tobacco, beads, pepper, and ſtibium, which he ſaw plainly was infinitely more than they expected. Mr. Bruce had ſeldom, in his life, upon a journey, paſſed a more comfortable night. He had a very neat, clean hut, entirely to himſelf, and a Greek ſervant that ſat near him. Some of the Nuba watched for them all night, and took care of their beaſts and baggage. They ſung and replied to one another alternately, in notes full of pleaſant melody, till Mr. Bruce fell faſt aſleep, involuntarily, and with regret; for, though bruiſed, they were not fatigued, but rather diſcouraged, having gone no further than two miles that day.

Early on the 26th, they ſet out from this village of Nuba, their way being ſtill acroſs this immenſe plain. All the morning there were terrible ſtorms of thunder and lightning, ſome rain, and one ſhower of ſo large drops, that it wet them to the ſkin in an inſtant. It was quite calm, and every drop fell perpendicularly upon them. Mr. Bruce thinks he never in his life felt ſo cold a rain, yet it was not diſagreeable; for the day was cloſe and hot, and they ſhould have wiſhed every now and then to have had a moderate refrigeration: this, however, was rather too abundant. The villages of the Nuba were, on all ſides, throughout this plain. At nine o'clock they arrived at Baſboch, which is a large collection of huts of theſe people, and has the appearance of a town.

The governor, a venerable old man of about ſeventy, who was ſo feeble that he could ſcarcely walk, received them with great complacency, only ſaying, when he took Mr. Bruce by the hand, "O Chriſtian! what doſt thou, at ſuch a time, in ſuch a country?" Mr. Bruce was ſurpriſed at the politeneſs of his ſpeech, when he called him Nazarini, the civil term for Chriſtian in the eaſt; whereas Infidel is the general term among theſe brutiſh people; but it ſeems he had been ſeveral times at Cairo. Mr. Bruce had here a very clean and comfortable hut to lodge in, though they were ſparingly ſupplied with proviſions all the time they were there, but never were ſuffered to faſt a whole day together.

Baſboch is on the eaſtern bank of the Nile, not a quarter of a mile from the ford below. The river here runs north and ſouth; towards the ſides it is ſhallow, but deep in the middle of the current, and in this part it is much infeſted with crocodiles. Sennaar is two miles and a half S. S. W. of it. They heard the evening drum very diſtinctly, and not without anxiety, when they reflected to what a brutiſh people, according to all accounts, they were about to truſt themſelves.

Permiſſion was granted on the 29th to enter Sennaar. They were conducted by Adelan's ſervant to a very ſpacious good houſe belonging to the Shekh himſelf, having two ſtories, a long quarter of a mile from the king's palace. He left a meſſage for them to repoſe themſelves, and in a day or two to wait upon the king, and that he ſhould ſend to tell them when they were to come to him. This they reſolved to have complied with moſt exactly; but the very next morning, the 30th of April, there came a ſervant from the palace to ſummon them to wait upon the king, which they immediately obeyed. Mr. Bruce took with him three ſervants, black Soliman, Iſmael the Turk, and his Greek ſervant Michael. The palace covers a prodigious deal of ground. It is all one ſtory, built of clay, and the floors of earth. The chambers through which they paſſed were all unfurniſhed, and ſeemed as if a great many of them had formerly been deſtined as barracks for ſoldiers, of whom Mr. Bruce did not ſee above fifty on guard. The king was in a ſmall room not twenty feet ſquare, to which they aſcended by two ſmall flights of narrow ſteps. The floor of the room was covered with broad ſquare tiles; over it was laid a Perſian carpet, and the walls hung with tapeſtry of the ſame country; the whole very well kept, and in good order.

His Majeſty was ſitting upon a mattreſs, laid on the ground, which was likewiſe covered with a Perſian carpet, and round him was a number of cuſhions of Venetian cloth of gold. His dreſs did not correſpond with this magnificence, for it was nothing but a large, looſe ſhirt, of Surat blue cotton cloth, which ſeemed not to differ from the ſame worn by his ſervants, except that, all round the edges of it, the ſeams were double-ſtitched with white ſilk, and likewiſe round the neck. His head was uncovered; he wore his own ſhort black hair, and was as white in colour as an Arab. He ſeemed to be a man about thirty-four, his feet were bare, but covered by his ſhirt. He had a very plebeian countenance, on which was ſtamped no decided character; Mr. Bruce ſhould rather gueſs him to be a ſoft, timid, irreſolute man. At our traveller's coming forward and kiſſing his hand, he looked at them for a minute as if undetermined what to ſay. He then aſked for an Abyſſinian interpreter, as there are many of theſe about the palace. He ſaid to him in Arabic, "I apprehend I underſtand as much of that language as will enable me to anſwer any queſtion you have to put to me." Upon which he turned to the people that were with him, "Downright Arabic, indeed! You did not learn that language in Habeſh?" ſaid he to Mr. Bruce, who anſwered, "No; I have been in Egypt, Turkey, and Arabia, where I learned it; but I have likewiſe often ſpoken it in Abyſſinia, where Greek, Turkiſh, and ſeveral other languages are uſed. He ſaid, "Impoſſible! he did not think they knew any thing of languages, excepting their own, in Abyſſinia."

Oppoſite the king, were ſitting in the ſide of the room four men dreſſed in white cotton ſhirts, with a white ſhaul covering their heads, and part of their face, by which it was known they were religious men, or men of learning, or of the law. One of theſe anſwered the king's doubt of the Abyſſinians knowledge in languages. "They have languages enough, and you know that Habeſh is called the paradiſe of Aſſes." During this converſation, Mr. Bruce took the ſheriffe of Mecca's letter, alſo one from the king of Abyſſinia; he gave him the king's firſt, and then the ſheriffe's. He took them both as Mr. Bruce gave them, but laid aſide the king's upon a cuſhion, till he had read the ſheriffe's. After this he read the king's, and called immediately again for an Abyſſinian interpreter; upon which, Mr. Bruce ſaid nothing, ſuppoſing, perhaps, he might chuſe to make him deliver ſome meſſage to him in private, which he would not have his people hear. But it was pure confuſion, and abſence of mind, for he never ſpoke a word to him when he came. An unintereſting converſation took place between the king and our traveller, till a little after ſix o'clock in the evening, when the drum beat. They then had a very comfortable dinner ſent them, camels fleſh ſtewed with an herb of a viſcous ſlimy ſubſtance, called Bammia. After having dined, and finiſhed the journal of the day, Mr. Bruce fell to unpacking his inſtruments, the barometer and thermometer firſt, and, after having hung them up, was converſing with Adelan's ſervant when he ſhould pay his viſit to his maſter. About eight o'clock came a ſervant from the palace, telling Mr. Bruce, now was the time to bring the preſent to the king. He ſorted the ſeparate articles with all the ſpeed he could, and they went directly to the palace. The king was then ſitting in a large apartment, as far as he could gueſs, at ſome diſtance from the former. He was was naked, but had ſeveral clothes lying upon his knee, and about him, and a ſervant was rubbing him over with very ſtinking butter, or greaſe, with which his hair was dropping as if wet with water. Large as the room was, it could be ſmelled through the whole of it. The king aſked Mr. Bruce if ever he greaſed himſelf as he did? Mr. Bruce ſaid, Very ſeldom, but fancied it would be very expenſive. He then told him, that it was elephants greaſe, which made people ſtrong, and preſerved the ſkin very ſmooth. Our traveller ſaid, he thought it very proper, but could not bear the ſmell of it, though his ſkin ſhould turn as rough as an elephant's for the want of it. He ſaid, if Mr. Bruce had uſed it, his hair would not have turned ſo red as it was, and that it would all become white preſently, when that redneſs came off.

After having rubbed him abundantly with greaſe, they brought a pretty large horn, and in it ſomething ſcented, about as liquid as honey. It was plain that civit was a great part of the compoſition. The king went out at the door, Mr. Bruce ſuppoſes into another room, and there two men deluged him over with pitchers of cold water, whilſt, as he imagined, he was ſtark-naked. He then returned, and a ſlave anointed him with this ſweet ointment; after which he ſat down, as completely dreſſed, being juſt going to his woman's apartment where he was to ſup. Mr. Bruce told him, he wondered why he did not uſe roſe-water as in Abyſſinia, Arabia, and Cairo. He ſaid, he had it often from Cairo, when the merchants arrived; but as it was now long ſince any came, his people could not make more, for the roſe would not grow in his country, though the women made ſomething like it of lemon-flower. His toilet being finiſhed, our traveller then produced his preſent, which he told him the king of Abyſſinia had ſent to him, hoping that, according to the faith and cuſtom of nations, he would not only protect him while here, but ſend him ſafely and ſpeedily out of his dominions into Egypt. He anſwered, there was a time when he could have done all this, and more, but thoſe times were changed. Sennaar was in ruin, and was not like what it was. He then ordered ſome perfumed ſorbet to be brought for Mr. Bruce to drink in his preſence, which is a pledge that your perſon is in ſafety. The king thereupon withdrew, and went to his ladies.

On the eighth of May Mr. Bruce had an audience with Shekh Adelan at Aira, which is three miles and a half from Sennaar; they walked out early in the morning, for the greateſt part of the way along the ſide of the Nile, which had no beauty, being totally diveſted of trees, the bottom foul and muddy, and the edges of the water white with ſmall concretions of calcarious earth, which, with the bright ſun upon them, dazzled and affected their eyes very much. They then ſtruck acroſs a large ſandy plain, without trees or buſhes, and came to Adelan's habitation. Within the gate was a number of horſes, with the ſoldiers barracks behind them; they were all picqueted in ranks, their faces to their maſter's barracks. It was one of the fineſt ſights Mr. Bruce ever ſaw of the kind. They were all above ſixteen hands high, of the breed of the old Saracen horſes, all finely made, and as ſtrong as our coach-horſes, but exceedingly nimble in their motion; rather thick and ſhort in the forehand, but with the moſt beautiful eyes, ears, and heads in the world; they were moſtly black, ſome of them black and white, ſome of them milk-white foaled, ſo not white by age, with white eyes and white hoofs, not perhaps a great recommendation. A ſteel ſhirt of mail hung upon each man's quarters oppoſite to his horſe, and by it an antelope's ſkin, made ſoft like ſhamoy, with which it was covered from the dew of the night. A head-piece of copper, without creſt or plumage, was ſuſpended by a lace above the ſhirt of mail, and was the moſt pictureſque part of the trophy. To theſe was added, an enormous broad-ſword, in a red leather ſcabbard; and upon the pummel hung two thick gloves, not divided into fingers as ours, but like hedgers gloves, their fingers in one poke. They told Mr. Bruce, that, within that encloſure at Aira, there were 400 horſes, which, with the riders, and armour complete for each of them, were all the property of Shekh Adelan, every horſeman being his ſlave, and bought with his money.

Adelan was then ſitting upon a piece of the trunk of a palm-tree, in the front of one of theſe diviſions of his horſes, which he ſeemed to be contemplating with pleaſure; a number of black people, his own ſervants and friends, were ſtanding round him. He had on a long drab-coloured camlet gown, lined with yellow ſatin, and a camlet cap like a head piece, with two ſhort points that covered his ears. This, it ſeems, was his dreſs when he roſe early in the morning to viſit his horſes, which he never neglected. The Shekh was a man above ſix feet high, rather corpulent, had a heavy walk, ſeemingly more from affectation of grandeur than want of agility. He was about ſixty, of the colour and features of an Arab, and not of a Negro, but had rather more beard than falls to the lot of people in this country; large piercing eyes, and a determined, though, at the ſame time, a very pleaſing countenance.

They went into a large ſaloon, hung round with mirrors and ſcarlet damaſk; in one of the longeſt ſides were two large ſofas covered with crimſon and yellow damaſk, and large cuſhions of cloth of gold, like to the king's. He now pulled off his camlet gown and cap, and remained in a crimſon ſatin coat reaching down below his knees, which lapped over at the breaſt, and was girt round his waiſt with a ſcarf, or ſaſh, in which he had ſtuck a ſhort dagger, in an ivory ſheath, mounted with gold; and one of the largeſt and moſt beautiful amethyſts upon his finger that Mr. Bruce ever ſaw, mounted plain, without any diamonds, and a ſmall gold ear-ring in one of his ears.

After ſome introductory diſcourſe, Mr. Bruce gave him the ſheriffe's letter, which he opened, looked at, and laid by without reading, ſaying only, "Aye, Metical is a good man, he ſometimes takes care of our people going to Mecca; for my part, I never was there, and probably never ſhall." Mr. Bruce then preſented his letter from Ali Bey to him. He placed it upon his knee, gave a ſlap upon it with his open hand, and then exclaimed, "What! do you not know, have you not heard, Mahomet Abou Dahab, his Haſnadar, has rebelled againſt him, baniſhed him out of Cairo, and now ſits in his place? But don't be diſconcerted at that, I know you to be a man of honour and prudence; if Mahomet, my brother, does not come, as ſoon as I can get leiſure, I will diſpatch you." The ſervant that had conducted Mr. Bruce to Sennaar, and was then with him, went forward cloſe to him, and ſaid, in a kind of whiſper, "Should he go often to the king?"—"When he pleaſes; he may go to ſee the town, and take a walk, but never alone, and alſo to the palace, that, when he returns to his own country, he may report that he ſaw a king at Sennaar, that neither knows how to govern, nor will ſuffer others to teach him; who knows not how to make war, and yet will not ſit in peace." Mr. Bruce then took his leave of him; there was a plentiful breakfaſt in the other room, to which he ſent them.

Our traveller returned home to Sennaar, very well pleaſed with his reception at Aira. He had not ſeen, ſince he left Gondar, a man ſo open and frank in his manners, and who ſpoke without diſguiſe what apparently he had in his heart.

Mr. Bruce having come home from Aira, the next morning he was agreeably ſurpriſed by a viſit from Hagi Belal, to whom he had been recommended by Metical Aga, and to whom Ibrahim Seraff, the Engliſh broker at Jidda, had addreſſed him for any money he ſhould want at Sennaar. Belal welcomed him with great kindneſs, and repeated teſtimonies of joy and wonder at his ſafe arrival. He had been down at Atbara at Gerri, or ſome villages near it, with merchandize, and had not yet ſeen the king ſince he came home, but gave Mr. Bruce the very worſt deſcription poſſible of the country, inſomuch that there ſeemed to be not a ſpot, but the one he then ſtood on, in which he was not in imminent danger of deſtruction, from a variety of independent cauſes, which it ſeemed not poſſibly in his power to avoid. In the evening, he ſent Mr. Bruce ſome refreſhments, which he had long been unaccuſtomed to: ſome tea, excellent coffee, ſome honey and brown ſugar, ſeveral bottles of rack, likewiſe nutmegs, cinnamon, ginger, and ſome very good dates of the dry kind which he had brought from Atbara.

This Hagi Belal was a native of Morocco. He had been at Cairo, and alſo at Jidda and Mocha. He knew the Engliſh well, and profeſſed himſelf both obliged and attached to them. It was ſome days before Mr. Bruce ventured to ſpeak to him upon money buſineſs, or upon any probability of finding aſſiſtance here at Sennaar. He gave him little hopes of the latter, repeating to him what he very well knew about the diſagreement of the king and Adelan. He ſeemed to place all his expectations, and thoſe were but faint ones, in the coming of Shekh Abou Kalec from Kordofan. He ſaid, nothing could be expected from Shekh Adelan without going to Aira, for that he would never truſt himſelf in Sennaar, in this king's life-time, but that the miniſter was abſolute the moment he aſſembled his troops without the town.

He came to Mr. Bruce one morning, after having been with the king, when our traveller was himſelf preparing to go to the palace. He ſaid, he had been ſent for upon his account, and had been queſtioned very narrowly what ſort of a man he was. Having anſwered very favourably, both of him and his nation, he had aſked for Metical Aga's letters, or any other letters received concerning him from Jidda; he ſaid, that he had only ſhewn Metical's letter, wrote in the name of the ſheriffe, as alſo one from himſelf; that there were ſeveral great officers of government preſent; and the Cadi (whom Mr. Bruce had ſeen the firſt time he had been with the king) had read the letters aloud to them all: that one of them had aſked, how it came that ſuch a man as our traveller ventured to paſs theſe deſerts, with four or five old ſervants, and what it was he came to ſee; that he anſwered, he apprehended his chief object at Sennaar was to be forwarded to his own country. It was alſo aſked, Why Mr. Bruce had not ſome Engliſhmen with him, as none of his ſervants were of that nation, but poor beggarly Kopts, Arabs, and Turks, who were none of them of his religion. Belal anſwered, That travellers, through theſe countries muſt take up with ſuch people as they can find going the ſame way; however, he believed ſome Engliſh ſervants had died in Abyſſinia, which country he had left the firſt opportunity that had offered, being wearied by the perpetual war which prevailed.

Some ſhort time after this, Mr. Bruce had a meſſage from the palace. He found the king ſitting alone, apparently much chagrined, and in ill-humour. He aſked him, in a very peeviſh manner, if he was not yet gone? to which he anſwered, "Your Majeſty knows that it is impoſſible for me to go a ſtep from Sennaar without aſſiſtance from you." He again aſked him, in the ſame tone as before, "How he could think of coming that way?" He ſaid, nobody imagined in Abyſſinia but that he was able to give a ſtranger ſafe conduct through his own dominions. He made no reply, but nodded a ſign for him to depart, which he immediately did, and ſo finiſhed this ſhort, but diſagreeable interview.

Mr. Bruce was again ſent for to the palace, about four o'clock that ſame afternoon, when the king told him, that ſeveral of his wives were ill, and deſired that he would give them his advice, which he promiſed to do without difficulty, as all acquaintance with the fair ſex had hitherto been much to his advantage. He was admitted into a large ſquare apartment very ill-lighted, in which were about fifty women, all perfectly black, without any covering but a very narrow piece of cotton rag about their waiſts. While he was muſing whether or not theſe all might be queens, or whether there was any queen among them, one of them took him by the hand and led him rudely enough into another apartment. This was much better lighted than the firſt. Upon a large bench, or ſofa, covered with blue Surat cloth, ſat three perſons clothed from the neck to the feet with blue cotton ſhirts.

One of theſe, whom Mr. Bruce found to be the favourite, was about ſix feet high, and corpulent beyond all proportion. She ſeemed to him, next to the elephant and rhinoceros, to be the largeſt living creature he had met with. Her features were perfectly like thoſe of a Negro; a ring of gold paſſed through her under lip, and weighed it down, till, like a flap, it covered her chin, and left her teeth bare, which were very ſmall and fine. The inſide of her lip ſhe had made black with antimony. Her ears reached down to her ſhoulders, and had the appearance of wings; ſhe had in each of them a large ring of gold, ſomewhat ſmaller than a man's little finger, and about five inches diameter. The weight of theſe had drawn down the hole where her ear was pierced, ſo much that three fingers might eaſily paſs above the ring. She had a gold necklace, like what we uſed to call Eſclavage, of ſeveral rows, one below another, to which were hung rows of ſequins pierced. She had on her ancles two manacles of gold, larger than any he had ever ſeen upon the feet of felons, with which he could not conceive it was poſſible for her to walk; but afterwards he found they were hollow. The others were dreſſed pretty much in the ſame manner; only, there was one that had chains which came from her ears to the outſide of each noſtril, where they were faſtened. There was alſo a ring put through the griſtle of her noſe, and which hung down to the opening of her mouth. It had altogether, ſomething of the appearance of a horſe's bridle. Upon his coming near them, the eldeſt put her hand to her mouth and kiſſed it, ſaying, at the ſame time, in very vulgar Arabic, "How do you do, merchant?" Mr. Bruce never in his life was more pleaſed with diſtant ſalutations than at this time. He anſwered, "Peace be among you! I am a phyſician, and not a merchant." Mr. Bruce now adminiſtered all the relief in his power, which their ſeveral complaints required.

No horſe, mule, aſs, or any other beaſt of burden, breed, or even live at Sennaar, or many miles about it. Poultry does not live there. Neither dog nor cat, ſheep nor bullock, can be preſerved a ſeaſon there. They muſt go all, every half year, to the ſands. Though all poſſible care be taken of them, they die in every place where the fat earth is about the town during the firſt ſeaſon of the rains. Two greyhounds, which Mr. Bruce brought from Atbara, and the mules which he brought from Abyſſina, lived only a few weeks after he arrived. They ſeemed to have ſome inward complaint, for nothing appeared outwardly. Several kings have tried to keep lions, but no care could prolong their lives beyond the firſt rains. Shekh Adelan had two, which were in great health, being kept with his horſes at graſs in the ſands but three miles from Sennaar: neither roſe, nor any ſpecies of jeſſamine, grow here; no tree but the lemon flowers near the city, that ever Mr. Bruce ſaw; the roſe has been often tried, but in vain.

Sennaar is on the weſt ſide of the Nile, and cloſe upon the banks to it. The ground whereon it ſtands riſes juſt enough to prevent the river from entering the town, even in the height of the inundation, when it comes to be even with the ſtreet. The country around it is exceedingly pleaſant in the end of Auguſt and beginning of September, Mr. Bruce means ſo far as the eye is concerned; inſtead of that barren, bare waſte, which it appeared on their arrival in May, the corn now ſprung up, and covering the ground, made the whole of this immenſe plain appear a level, green land, interſperſed with great lakes of water, and ornamented at certain intervals with groups of villages, the conical tops of the houſes preſenting at a diſtance, the appearance of ſmall encampments. Through this immenſe, extenſive plain, winds the Nile, a delightful river there, above a mile broad, full to the very brim, but never overflowing. Every where on theſe banks are ſeen numerous herds of the moſt beautiful cattle of various kinds, the tribute recently extorted from all the Arabs, who, freed from their vexations, return home with the remainder of their flocks in peace, at as great a diſtance from the town, country, and their oppreſſors, as they poſſibly can.

War and treaſon ſeem to be the only employment of this horrid people, whom Heaven has ſeparated, by almoſt impaſſable deſerts, from the reſt of mankind, confining them to an accurſed ſpot, ſeemingly to give them earneſt in time of the only other worſe which he has reſerved to them for an eternal hereafter. The dreſs of Sennaar is very ſimple. It conſiſts of a long ſhirt of blue Surat cloth called Marowty, which covers them from the lower part of the neck down to their feet, but does not conceal the neck itſelf; and this is the only difference between the mens and the womens dreſs; that of the women covers their neck altogether, being buttoned like ours. The men have ſometimes a ſaſh tied about their middle; and both men and women go barefooted in the houſe, even thoſe of the better ſort of people. Their floors are covered with Perſian carpets, eſpecially the women's apartments. In fair weather, they wear ſandals; and without doors they uſe a kind of wooden patten, very neatly ornamented with ſhells. In the greateſt heat at noon, they order buckets of water to be thrown upon them inſtead of bathing. Both men and women anoint themſelves, at leaſt once a-day, with camels greaſe mixed with civet, which they imagine ſoftens their ſkin, and preſerves them from cutaneous eruptions, of which they are ſo fearful, that the ſmalleſt pimple in any viſible part of their body keeps them in the houſe till it diſappears; for the ſame reaſon, though they have a clean ſhirt every day, they uſe one dipt in greaſe to lie in all night, as they have no covering but this, and lie upon a bull's hide tanned, and very much ſoftened by this conſtant greaſing, and at the ſame time very cool, though it occaſions a ſmell that no waſhing can free them from.

The indigent live upon millet, made into bread or flour. The rich make a pudding of this, toaſting the flour before the fire, and pouring milk and butter into it; beſides which, they eat beef, partly roaſted and partly raw. Their horned cattle are the largeſt and fatteſt in the world, and are exceedingly fine; but the common meat ſold in the market is camels fleſh. The liver of the animal, and the ſpare rib, are always eaten raw through the whole country. Mr. Bruce never ſaw one inſtance where it was dreſſed with fire. It is not then true that eating raw fleſh is peculiar to Abyſſinia; it is practiſed in this inſtance of camels fleſh in all the black countries to the weſtward. Hogs fleſh is not ſold in the market; but all the people of Sennaar eat it publickly: men in office, who pretend to be Mahometans, eat theirs in ſecret.

Auguſt the 7th Mr. Bruce was informed by Hagi Belal, that Shekh Fidele of Teawa had been ſeveral days in the palace with the king, and had informed him that Mr. Bruce was laden with money, beſides a quantity of cloth of gold, the richeſt he had ever ſeen, which the king of Abyſſinia had deſtined as a preſent to him, but which our traveller had perverted to his own uſe: he added, that the king had expreſſed himſelf in a very threatening manner, and that he was very much afraid he was not in ſafety if Shekh Adelan was gone from Aira. Upon this, Mr. Bruce deſired Hagi Belal to go to the palace, and obtain for him an audience of the king. In vain he repreſented to our traveller the riſk he run by this meaſure; he perſiſted in his reſolution, he was tied to the ſtake: to fly was impoſſible, and he had often overcome ſuch dangers by braving them.

With great unwillingneſs Belal went to the palace. Whether he delivered the meſſage, our traveller knows not, but he returned, ſaying, the king was buſy and could not be ſeen. Mr. Bruce had, in the interim, ſent Soliman to the Gindi, or Sed el Coom, telling him his difficulties, and the news he had heard. In place of returning an anſwer, he came directly to him himſelf, and was ſitting with him when Hagi Belal returned, who appeared ſomewhat diſconcerted at the meeting. Gindi chid Hagi Belal very ſharply, aſking him what good all that tittle-tattle did either him or Mr. Bruce, and inſinuated pretty plainly, that he believed Hagi Belal did this in concert with the king, to extort ſome preſent from our traveller. After ſome further converſation, Gindi took his leave, and Mr. Bruce attended him down ſtairs, with many profeſſions of gratitude; and at the door he ſaid, in a very low voice, to our traveller, "Take care of yon Belal, he is a dog worſe than a Chriſtian."

It was now the 20th; and, for ſeveral days ſince Adelan's departure, no proviſions were ſent to Mr. Bruce's houſe, as before was uſual. Money therefore became abſolutely neceſſary, not only for their daily ſubſiſtence, but for camels to carry their baggage, proviſions, and water acroſs the deſert. He now deſpaired abſolutely of aſſiſtance of any kind from the king; and an accident that happened made him lay all thoughts aſide of ever troubling him more upon the ſubject. There are at Mecca a number of black eunuchs, whoſe ſervices are dedicated to that temple, and the ſepulchre of Medina. Part of theſe, from time to time, procure liberty to return on a viſit to their reſpective homes, or to the large cities where they were ſold from, on the Niger, Bornou, Tocrur, and Tombucto, where they beg donations for the holy places, and frequently collect large ſums of gold, which abounds in theſe towns and territories. One of theſe, called Mahomet Towaſh, which ſignifies Eunuch, had returned from a begging voyage in Sudan, or Nigritia, and was at Sennaar exceedingly ill with an intermitting fever. The king had ſent for Mr. Bruce to viſit him, and the bark in a few days had perfectly recovered him. A proportional degree of gratitude had, in return, taken place in the breaſt of Mahomet, who, going to Cairo, was exceedingly deſirous of taking Mr. Bruce with him, and this deſire was increaſed when he heard he had letters from the ſheriffe of Mecca, and was acquainted with Metical Aga, who was his immediate maſter.

Nothing could be more fortunate than this rencounter at ſuch a time, for he had ſpare camels in great plenty, and the Arabs, as he paſſed them, continued giving him more, and ſupported him with proviſions wherever he went; for theſe people, being accounted ſacred, and regarded with a certain religious awe, as being in the immediate ſervice of their prophet, till now uſed to paſs inviolate wherever they were going, however unſettled the times, or however ſlenderly attended.

Now every thing was ready, and the 25th of Auguſt fixed when they ſhould begin their journey to Atbara. Mahomet, who paſſed a great part of his time at Mr. Bruce's houſe, had not been ſeen by them for ſeveral days, which they did not think extraordinary, being buſy themſelves, and knowing that his trade demanded continual attendance on the great people; but they were exceedingly ſurpriſed at hearing from his black Soliman, that he and all his equipage had ſet out the night of the 20th for Atbara. This they found afterwards was at the earneſt perſuaſion of the king, and was at that time a heavy diſappointment to Mr. Bruce, however fortunate it turned out afterwards.

On the night of the 25th, which was to have been that of their departure, Mr. Bruce ſat late in his room up ſtairs, in the back, or moſt private part of their houſe. His little company was holding with him a moſt melancholy council on what had ſo recently happened, and, in general, upon the unpromiſing face of their affairs. Their ſingle lamp was burning very low, and ſuggeſted to them that it was the hour of ſleep, to which, however, none of them were very much inclined. Georgis, a Greek, who, on account of the ſoreneſs of his eyes, had ſtaid below in the dark, and had fallen aſleep, came running up ſtairs in a great fright, and told them he had been awakened by the noiſe of men endeavouring to force open the door; that he hearkened a little, and found there were many of them. Their arms were all ready, and they ſnatched them up and ran towards the door; but Mr. Bruce ſtopt, and planted them upon the firſt landing-place in the ſtair-caſe, as he wiſhed not to fire till the enemy was fairly in the houſe, that no excuſe might remain for this their violation of hoſpitality. By this time, the aſſailants had forced the outer-gate, and were then in the lodge, endeavouring to do the ſame by the inner, having put a handſpike under it to lift it up from the hinges. "Are you not madmen, ſaid Mr. Bruce, and weary of your lives, to attempt to force Adelan's houſe, when there are within it men abundantly provided with large fire-arms, that, upon one diſcharge through the door, will lay you all dead where you now ſtand?" "Ullah! Ullah! cries one of them ſoftly, how ſound you ſleep! we have been endeavouring to waken you this hour. The king is ill; tell Yagoube to come to the palace, and open the door inſtantly." "Tell the king, ſaid Mr. Bruce, to drink warm water, and I will ſee him in the morning." At this time one of Mr. Bruce's ſervants fired a piſtol in the air out of an upper window, upon which they all ran off. They ſeemed to be about ten or twelve in number, and left three handſpikes behind them. The noiſe of the piſtol brought the guard, or patrole, in about half an hour, who carried intelligence to the Sid el Coom, our traveller's friend, by whom he was informed in the morning, that he had found them all out, and put them in irons; that Mahomet, the king's ſervant, who met them at Teawa, was one of them; and that there was no poſſibility now of concealing this from Adelan, who would order him to be impaled.

Affairs were now come to ſuch a criſis that Mr. Bruce was determined to leave his inſtruments and papers with Kittou, Adelan's brother, or with the Sid el Coom, while he went to Shaddly to ſee Adelan. But firſt he thought it neceſſary to apply to Hagi Belal to try what funds they could raiſe to provide the neceſſaries for their journey. Mr. Bruce ſhewed him the letter of Ibrahim, the Engliſh broker of Jidda, of which before he had received a copy and repeated advices, and told him he ſhould want 200 ſequins at leaſt, for his camels and proviſions, as well as for ſome preſents that he ſhould have occaſion for, to make his way to the great men in Atbara. Never was ſurpriſe better counterfeited than by this man. He held up his hands in the utmoſt aſtoniſhment, repeating, 200 ſequins! over twenty times, and aſked Mr. Bruce if he thought money grew upon trees at Sennaar, that it was with the utmoſt difficulty he could ſpare him 20 dollars, part of which he muſt borrow from a friend.

Now Mr. Bruce's deſtruction ſeemed inevitable, no other reſources being now left. They were already indebted to Hagi Belal twenty dollars for proviſion; they had ſeven mouths to feed daily; and as they had neither meat, money, nor credit, to continue at Sennaar was impoſſible. They had ſeen, a few nights before, that no houſe could protect them there; and to leave Sennaar was, in their ſituation, as impoſſible as to ſtay there. They had neither camels to carry their proviſions and baggage, nor ſkins for their water, nor, indeed, any proviſions to carry, nor money to ſupply them with any of theſe, nor knew any perſon that could give them aſſiſtance nearer than Cairo, from which they were then diſtant about 17° of the meridian, or above 1000 miles in a ſtraight line; great part of which was through the moſt barren, inhoſpitable deſerts in the world, deſtitute of all vegetation, and of every animal that had the breath of life. Hagi Belal was inflexible, he began now to be weary of our travellers, to ſee them but ſeldom, and there was great appearance of his ſoon withdrawing himſelf entirely. Mr. Bruce's ſervants alſo began to murmur; ſome of them had known of his gold chain from the beginning, and theſe, in the common danger, imparted what they knew to the reſt. In ſhort, he reſolved, though very unwillingly, not to ſacrifice his own life and that of his ſervants, and the finiſhing his travels, now ſo far advanced, to childiſh vanity. He determined therefore to abandon his gold chain, the honourable recompence of a day full of fatigue and danger. Whom to intruſt it to was the next conſideration; and upon mature deliberation, he found it could be to nobody but Hagi Belal, bad as he had reaſon to think he was. However, to put a check upon him, he ſent for the Sid el Coom, in whoſe preſence he repeated his accuſation againſt Belal; he read the Seraff's letter in his favour, and the ſeveral letters that Belal had written him whilſt he was at Gondar, declaring his acceptance of the order to furniſh him with money when he ſhould arrive at Sennaar; and he upbraided him in the ſtrongeſt terms with breach of faith and duplicity.

All that he could ſay, however, was very far ſhort of the violent expoſtulation from the Gindi that immediately followed. He gave Hagi Belal many broad hints, that he looked upon this injury as done to himſelf, and would repay him; that though he had done this to pleaſe the king, the time might not be far off when that favour would be of very little uſe to him; on the contrary, it might be a reaſon for ſtripping him of all he had in the world." The force of theſe arguments ſeemed to ſtrike Hagi Belal's imagination very powerfully. He even offered to advance 50 ſequins, and to ſee if he could raiſe any more among his friends. The Gindi (a rare inſtance in that country) offered to lend him fifty. But the dye was now caſt, the chain had been produced and ſeen, and it was become exceedingly dangerous to carry ſuch a quanity of gold in any ſhape along with him. He therefore conſented to ſell it to Hagi Belal in preſence of the Gindi, and they immediately ſet about the purchaſe of neceſſaries, with this proviſo, that if Adelan, upon Mr. Bruce's going to Shaddly, did furniſh him with camels and neceſſaries, ſo much of the chain ſhould be returned.

On the 5th of September they were all prepared to leave this capital of Nubia, an inhoſpitable country from the beginning, and which, every day they continued in it, had engaged them in greater difficulties and dangers. They flattered themſelves, that, once diſengaged from this bad ſtep, the greateſt part of their ſufferings was over; for they apprehended nothing, but from men, and, with very great reaſon, thought they had ſeen the worſt of them.

Mr. Bruce received a meſſage from the king, in the evening, to come directly to the palace. He accordingly obeyed, taking two ſervants along with him, and found him ſitting in a little, low chamber, very neatly fitted up with chintz, or printed callico curtains, of a very gay and glaring pattern. He was ſmoking with a very long Perſian pipe through water, was alone, and ſeemed rather grave than in ill-humour. He gave Mr. Bruce his hand to kiſs as uſual, and after pauſing a moment without ſpeaking, (during which our traveller ſtanding before him) a ſlave brought him a little ſtool, and ſet it down juſt oppoſite to him; upon which he ſaid, in a low voice, ſo that Mr. Bruce could ſcarcely hear him, "Sit down," pointing to the ſtool. He ſat down accordingly. Their converſation was now taking a very laconic and ſerious turn. "Adelan, ſaid the king, has ſent for you by my deſire; Wed Abroff and all the Jehaina Arabs have rebelled, and will pay no tribute. They ſay you have a quantity of powerful fire-arms with you that will kill twenty or thirty men at a ſhot. He is therefore to employ you with your guns to puniſh thoſe Arabs, and ſpoil them of their camels, part of which he will give to you." Mr. Bruce preſently underſtood what he meant, and only anſwered, "I am a ſtranger here, and deſire to hurt no man. My arms are for my own defence againſt robbery and violence." Adelan, continued the king, has been informed that Mahomet, my ſervant, who brought you from Teawa, has been guilty of a drunken frolic at the door of his houſe, and has ſent ſoldiers to take him to-day, with two or three others of his companions.

I charge you when you ſee Adelan, to aſk for Mahomet's life, or a conſiderable deal of blame will fall upon you. When you return back, I will ſend him to conduct you to the frontiers of Egypt. Upon this Mr. Bruce bowed, and took his leave. He went home perfectly determined what he was to do. He had now obtained from the king an involuntary ſafeguard till he ſhould arrive at Adelan's, that is, he was ſure that, in hopes Mr. Bruce might procure a reprieve for Mahomet, no trap would be laid for him on the road. He determined therefore to make the beſt uſe of his time; and every thing being ready, they loaded the camels, and ſent them forward that night to a ſmall village called Soliman, three or four miles from Sennaar; and having ſettled his accounts with Hagi Belal, he received back ſix links, the miſerable remains of one hundred and eighty-four, of which his noble chain once conſiſted. This traitor kept him the few laſt minutes to write a letter to the Engliſh at Jidda, to recommend him for the ſervice he had done Mr. Bruce at Sennaar; and this he complied with, that he might inform the broker Ibrahim that he had received no money from his correſpondent, and give him a caution never, in ſimilar circumſtances, to truſt Hagi Belal again.

Having left Sennaar, Mr. Bruce was overtaken on the road by a black ſlave, who at firſt gave him ſome apprehenſion, as he was alone with only one Barbarian, a Nubian ſervant, by the ſide of his camel, and was going ſlowly. Upon inquiry, he found him to be ſent from Hagi Belal, with a baſket containing ſome green tea and ſugar, and four bottles of rack, in return for his letter. He ſent back the meſſenger, and gave the care of the baſket to his own ſervant; and, about ten o'clock in the evening of the 5th of September, they all met together joyfully at Soliman.

They left the village of Soliman, September the 8th, and about three o'clock in the afternoon came to Wed el Tumbel, which is not a river, as the name would ſeem to ſignify, but three villages ſituated upon a pool of water, nearly in a line from north to ſouth.

After meeting with various adventures in the courſe of their journey, but none of them of any material conſequence, they arrived on the 4th of October, at Chendi, or Chundi, which is a large village, the capital of its diſtrict, the government of which belongs to Sittina, as ſhe is called, which ſignifies the miſtreſs, or the lady, ſhe being ſiſter to Wed Ageeb, the principal of the Arabs in this country. She had been married, but her huſband was dead. She had one ſon, Idris Wed el Faal, who was to ſucceed to the government of Chendi upon his mother's death, and who, in effect, governed all affairs of his kindred already.

Chendi has in it about 250 houſes, which are not all built contiguous, ſome of the beſt of them being ſeparate, and that of Sittina's is half a mile from the town. There are two or three tolerable houſes, but the reſt of them are miſerable hovels, built of clay and reeds. Sittina gave Mr. Bruce one of theſe houſes, which he uſed for keeping his inſtruments and baggage from being pilfered or broken; he ſlept abroad in the tent, and it was even there hot enough. The women of Chendi are eſteemed the moſt beautiful in Atbara, and the men the greateſt cowards. This is the character they bear among their countrymen, but they had little opportunity of verifying either.

They found the people at Chendi very much alarmed at a phænomenon, which, though it often happens, by ſome ſtrange inadvertency, had never been obſerved, even in this ſerene ſky. The planet Venus appeared ſhining with undiminiſhed light all day, in defiance of the brighteſt ſun, from which ſhe was but little diſtant. The very regular and natural appearance of this planet was immediately converted, therefore, into a ſign that there would be a bad harveſt next year, and ſcanty rains; that Abou Kalec with an army would depoſe the king, and over-run all Atbara; whilſt ſome threatened Mr. Bruce as a principal operator in bringing about theſe diſaſters. On the other hand, without ſeeming over-ſolicitous about his vindication, he inſinuated among the better ſort, that this was a lucky and favourable ſign, a harbinger of good fortune, plenty, and peace. The clamour upon this ſubſided very much to his advantage, the rather, becauſe Sittina and her ſon Idris knew certainly Mahomet Abou Kelec was not to be in Atbara that year.

Mr. Bruce waited upon Sittina on the 12th of October, who received him behind a ſcreen, ſo that it was impoſſible either to ſee her figure or face; he obſerved, however, that there were apertures ſo managed in the ſcreen that ſhe had a perfect view of him. She expreſſed herſelf with great politeneſs, talked much upon the terms in which Adelan was with the king, and wondered exceedingly how a white man like him ſhould venture ſo far in ſuch an ill-governed country. She deſired Mr. Bruce to come to her the next day; that her ſon Idris would then be at home from the Howat, and that he very much wiſhed to ſee him. She that day ſent them plenty of proviſions from her own table.

It was ſo exceſſively hot on the 13th, that it was impoſſible to ſuffer the burning ſun. The poiſonous Simoom blew likewiſe as if it came from an oven. Their eyes were dim, their lips cracked, their knees tottering, their throats perfectly dry, and no relief was found from drinking an immoderate quantity of water. The people adviſed Mr. Bruce to dip a ſponge in vinegar and water, and hold it before his mouth and noſe, and this greatly relieved him. In the evening he went to Sittina. Upon entering the houſe, a black ſlave laid hold of him by the hand, and placed him in a paſſage, at the end of which were two oppoſite doors. Mr. Bruce did not well know the reaſon of this; but ſtaid only a few minutes, when he heard one of the doors at the end of the paſſage open, and Sittina appeared magnificently dreſſed, with a kind of round cap of ſolid gold upon the crown of her head, all beat very thin, and hung round with ſequins; with a variety of gold chains, ſolitaires, and necklaces of the ſame metal, about her neck. Her hair was plaited in ten or twelve ſmall diviſions like tails, which hung down below her waiſt, and over her was thrown a common cotton white garment. She had a purple ſilk ſtole, or ſcarf, hung very gracefully upon her back, brought again round her waiſt, without covering her ſhoulders or arms. Upon her wriſts ſhe had two bracelets like handcuffs, about half an inch thick, and two gold manacles of the ſame at her feet, fully an inch in diameter, the moſt diſagreeable and awkward part of her dreſs. The ſlave carried him through a door at the bottom of the paſſage into a room, while her miſtreſs vaniſhed in at another door at the top, and there was the ſcreen he had ſeen the day before, and the lady ſitting behind it. She was a woman ſcarcely forty, taller than the middle ſize, had a very round plump face, her mouth rather large, very red lips, the fineſt teeth and eyes he had ſeen, but at the top of her noſe, and between her eye-brows, ſhe had a ſmall ſpeck made of cohol or antimony, four-corner'd, and of the ſize of the ſmalleſt patches our women uſed to wear; another rather longer upon the top of her noſe, and one on the middle of her chin.

In the evening of the 20th of October, they left Chendi, and reſted two miles from the town; and, on the 9th of November, having received all the aſſurances poſſible from Idris, the guide whom Mr. Bruce had engaged at Chendi, they committed themſelves to the deſert.

On the 14th, they were at once ſurpriſed and terrified by a ſight ſurely one of the moſt magnificent in the world. In that vaſt expanſe of deſert, from W. and to N. W. of them, they ſaw a number of prodigious pillars of ſand at different diſtances, at times moving with great celerity, at others ſtalking on with a majeſtic ſlowneſs; at intervals they thought they were coming in a very few minutes to overwhelm them; and ſmall quantities of ſand did actually more than once reach them. About noon they began to advance with conſiderable ſwiftneſs upon them, the wind being very ſtrong at north. Eleven of them ranged along ſide of them, about the diſtance of three miles.

On the 22d, their camels were reduced to five, and it did not ſeem that theſe were capable of continuing their journey much longer. In that caſe, no remedy remained but that each man ſhould carry his own water and proviſions. Their ſituation ſeemed to be moſt deſperate till the 29th, when, to their inexpreſſible joy, they ſaw the palm trees at Aſſouan, and a quarter before ten arrived in a grove of palm trees on the north of that city.

They were not long arrived, before they received from the Aga about fifty loaves of fine wheat bread, and ſeveral large diſhes of dreſt meat. But the ſmell of theſe laſt no ſooner reached Mr. Bruce than he fainted upon the floor. His ſervants had none of theſe qualms, for they partook largely and greedily of the Aga's bounty.

Our traveller was obliged to keep his room five or ſix days after his arrival; but, as ſoon as he got better, he and his ſervants ſet out on dromedaries, in order to recover his baggage. After having gone about half an hour in their former footſteps, they had the unſpeakable ſatisfaction to find the quadrant and whole baggage; and by them the bodies of their ſlaughtered camels, a ſmall part of one of them having been torn by the haddaya, or kite.

After having received a very kind reception at this place, Mr. Bruce, on the 11th of December, ſet out for Cairo, where he arrived on the 10th of January 1773. After ſome ſtay there, he proceeded to Alexandria, where he arrived without any thing material occurring. At length, Mr. Bruce happily reached Marſeilles, where his travels terminated.

Thus, having preſented the Public with the ſeveral curious ADVENTURES *of Mr.* BRUCE *during his* TRAVELS *in* ABYSSINIA, *without entering into thoſe ſuperfluous details, which not only render the original voluminous, but ſoon diſguſt and weary the impatient reader, we ſhall now, with equal accuracy and attention, proceed with Mr.* HODGES's *intereſting* TRAVELS *in* INDIA, *faithfully recording every circumſtance and obſervation that may tend to the improvement and entertainment of our* NUMEROUS SUBSCRIBERS.

A NEW

A NEW, COMPLETE, AND GENUINE
HISTORY OF
TRAVELS in INDIA;

Undertaken and performed in 1780, 1781, 1782, and 1783,

By WILLIAM HODGES, R. A.

INCLUDING MANY NEW AND INTERESTING ACCOUNTS OF

The Country, Buildings, Wars, Curiosities, Ruins, &c. with all the Information, Discoveries, and Adventures contained in the Memoranda and Communications of the Governor-General, Warren Hastings, Eſq. Mr. Hodges, Major Brown, &c. &c.

Being an Entire New Hiſtory of India and its Environs, containing many curious Remarks, Events, &c. more Accurate and Full than any hitherto publiſhed.

CHAPTER I.

The hearty Welcome which Strangers receive on their firſt Introduction to India—Deſcription of the Hindoos—Of the Maſſoolah Boats—Terrible Conſequences of War—Origin and Riſe of Madras—Deſcription of Fort St. George—Its Streets, Houſes, &c.—Public Buildings for the Poor, erected by Princes, &c.—The Hindoo Temple at Triplicane—Voyage to Bengal—Deſcription of the Country—City of Calcutta—A conſiderable Fortreſs—Streets, Buildings, &c.—Manners of the Inhabitants—A Journey to Mongheir—Mode of Travelling—Deſcription of Plaſſey—Of Moorſhedabad—Of Oodooanullah—Ruins of Zananah—Caſcades, &c.—Country of Colgong—Village of Sultungunge—An Hermitage—Kind Reception at Bauglepoor—Mr. Hodges's *Remarks, and Return by Water to Calcutta.*

MR. Hodges expatiates much on the vaſt delight which accrues from a firſt introduction to India. When the veſſel arrives at her anchoring-place, ſhe is welcomed by crowds of inhabitants, who come in boats to hail her; their ornaments of large gold ear-rings, and white turbans, long muſlin dreſſes, and black faces, are very ſtriking; their mode of ſalutation is bending the body very low, touching the deck with the back of the hand and the forehead three times. The Hindoos (original inhabitants of Peninſula) are the firſt natives to be ſeen. Theſe are remarkable for delicate hands, and are very attentive, mild, and good humoured; their appearance is exceedingly varied, ſome are entirely naked, others ſo covered that ſcarce the face or neck is to be ſeen; the men are frequently met on horſeback, dreſſed like women, and the women are often carried on men's ſhoulders.

The Maſſoolah boat, in which they convey a ſtranger on ſhore, is a work of curious manufacture, formed without a keel, flat bottomed, with the ſides raiſed high, and ſewed together with the fibres of the cocoa-nut tree, and caulked with the ſame article; they are exceeding light, and admirably calculated to elude the ſhocks of the ſurf, which are here very violent. The natives manage them with great dexterity; they are commonly attended by two kattamarans (i. e. rafts) paddled each by one man, who in caſe of any accident are to give aſſiſtance.

From the 18th to the 21ſt of July 1780, great diſmay and confuſion were incurred by the terrible ravages of war. Numbers were pouring in from all quarters of Madras, in a moſt miſerable manner, with the remains of their properties and families: it is ſuppoſed that about 200,000 of the country people were at this time received within the black town of Madras: the enemy had now extended their depredations even to the walls of Madras.

It was about the middle of the laſt century when the Engliſh formed the ſettlement of Madras. It was a place of no real conſequence but for its trade, until the war which broke out in 1748; and was concluded in 1752, when the Engliſh were conſidered as ſovereigns.

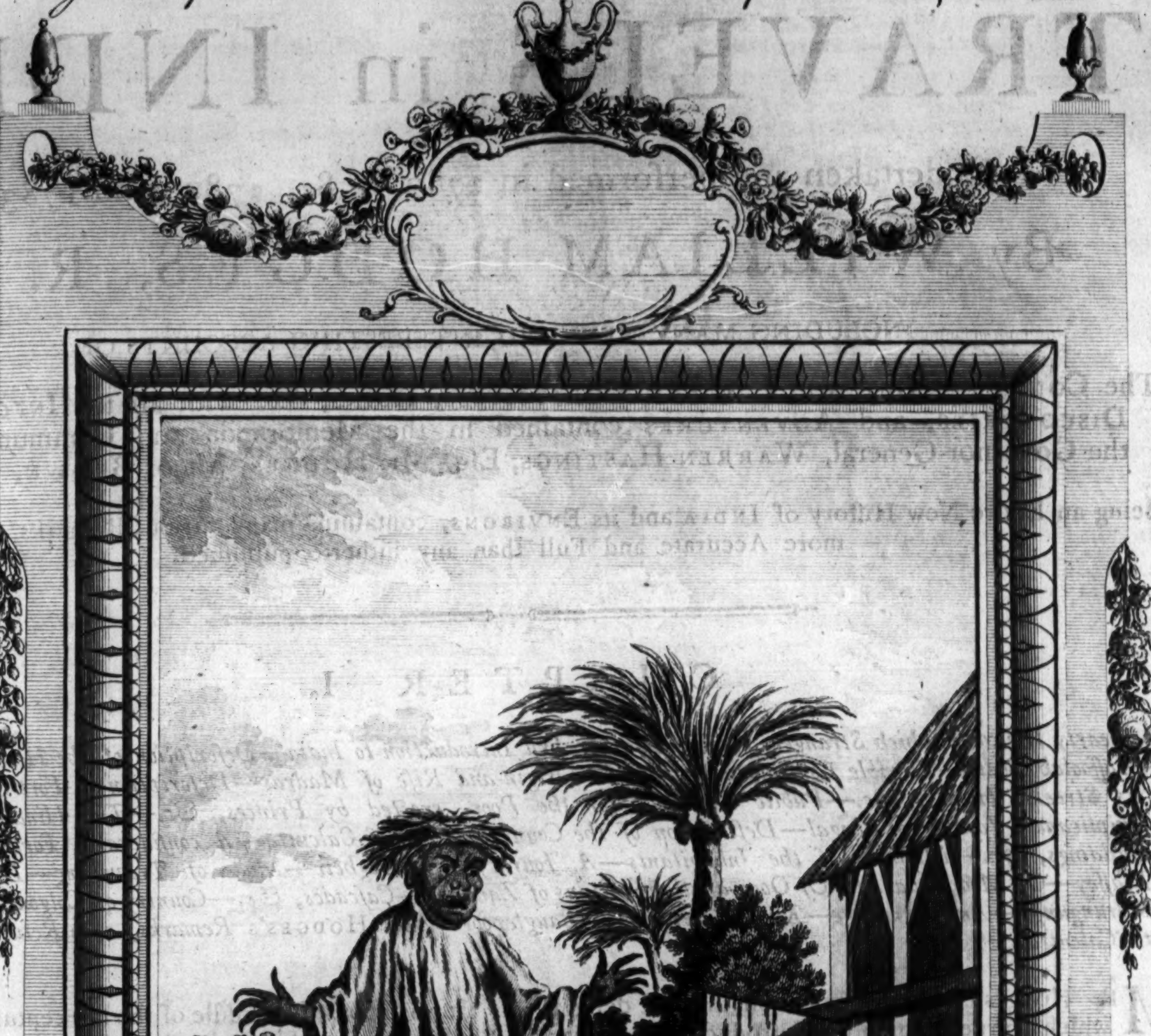
Fort St. George, or Madras, which is a place of conſiderable ſtrength, riſes from the margin of the ſea; it contains many ſpacious and handſome ſtreets; the houſes very elegant, being covered with a ſtucco, called Chunam, which appears equal to the fineſt poliſhed marble. Their ſtyle of building is alſo neat and ingenious; the roofs are flat, the porticoes open, and the colonades long; ceilings are very uncommon in the rooms, and the inner apartments are chiefly white walls.

The country near Madras is a perfect flat, on which is built, at a ſmall diſtance from the fort, a ſmall Choultry; theſe are public buildings found all over Hindoſtan, and are of Hindoo origin: they are, in fact, analagous to thoſe buildings called Caravanſerais, well known through Aſia. They have been erected and endowed by the liberality of princes, or the benevolence and piety of individuals. A Bramin generally attends them, who adminiſters relief to the poor and diſtreſſed, who are frequently ſupplied alſo with a mat to lie on; tanks, or reſervoirs of water, or wells, are commonly near them. The houſes on Choultry plain are for the moſt part beautiful pieces of architecture, and contain ſeveral magnificent and ſpacious apartments.

The Hindoo Temple, or Pagoda, at Triplecane, two miles on the ſouth of Madras, is of wonderful magnitude, it is ſeen all over the country, the top thereof riſing conſiderably above the trees. A large tank with ſteps deſcending to the bottom, filled with water, adjoins the temple. It is all of ſtone, and remarkable for its maſonry. There are ſeveral baſſo-

relievos

Engraved for **PORTLOCK's** *New* **COLLECTION** *of* **VOYAGES** *&* **TRAVELS.**



NUMBO JUMBO an INDIAN IDOL
of a monstrous size and appearance, before whom the King of the Country is summoned by the People to pay homage.

BRITISH 7 FE 90 MUSEUM

relievos on the ſurface of the temple, which Mr. Hodges ſuppoſes relate to the religion of the Hindoos.

Mr. Hodges, determined to purſue his voyage to Bengal, embarked in February 1781, and arrived in the Ganges in March. This country at firſt view is very unpromiſing, but on a nearer approach attracts the eye, there being many beautiful villas, belonging to the rich inhabitants of Calcutta, on a flat ſurrounded by gardens, called Garden-Reach. On the ſouth ſide of the river the city of Calcutta makes a very grand appearance; it is marked by a conſiderable fortreſs, allowed to be ſuperior to any in India. The inhabitants are very kind to ſtrangers, and no moleſtation whatever is offered to any. The city extends from the weſtern point of Fort-William, along the banks of the river, almoſt to the village of Coſſipoor, which is about four miles and a half Engliſh. The ſtreets are broad; the ſtyle of building, which is on a large ſcale, very magnificent; and the houſes, being detached from each other and inſulated in a great ſpace, very ſuperb; they are ſurrounded by colonades, have great projecting porticoes, and are generally aſcended by a flight of ſteps. The preſent inhabitants have imbibed a ſtrange mixture of manners; they retain ſeveral old Aſiatic ones, and have introduced many new European ones; thus, though we witneſs the paſſing ceremonies of the Hindoos, the different appearances of the fakirs, the pallankeens and hackeries of the natives, &c. &c. we may often ſee our own ſingle-horſe chaiſes, coaches, phaetons, &c.

About the middle of April, Mr. Hodges undertook a journey as far as Mongheir, on the Ganges, which was a diſtance of about 300 Engliſh miles. He proceeded by dauk-bearers (in a pallankeen) or pallankeen-carriers, who are perſons hired by government, and fixed at the ſeveral poſts or ſtages for facilitating travelling; the number of perſons are commonly nine, with the addition of two men or boys to carry baggage and lights in the night, who from the name of thoſe lights (moſſol) are called moſſoljees. Each ſtage is about ten Engliſh miles. All the country appears highly flouriſhing in tillage of every kind, and abounding in cattle. The villages, which are very populous, are remarkably neat and clean.

Plaſſey is diſtant from Calcutta about ſeventy Engliſh miles, and from Moorſhedabad about thirty. There are few buildings of any note in Moorſhedabad, except the remains of the Cutterah, which was formerly a public ſeminary for men of learning among the Muſſulmen. From Moorſhedabad the road proceeds through the villages of Jungepoor and Sooty to Oodooanullah; it is croſſed by ſeveral ſmall ſtreams called Nullahs, ſome of which have ferry-boats for the accommodation of the traveller. There is a famous bridge at Oodooanullah, which was built by Sultan Sujah, the ſecond ſon of the Emperor Shah Jehan, in 1627. This place is two miles from Rajemahel, which is nearly eighty miles from Moorſhedabad, where at a little diſtance are the ruins of Zananah. From Rajemahel the public road continues by the ſide of the river, at the foot of the hills, to the paſs of Sicri Gully, whence it enters the province of Bahar. The paſs of Sicri Gully exhibits a very pictureſque ſcene; on the top of the hill there is a ruined tomb of a Muſſulman ſaint. Mr. Hodges was eſcorted by a party of ſeapoys to the falls of Mootejerna, in the hills, about eight Engliſh miles inland from the river. In the time of the rains the caſcades may be eaſily diſcerned from the hills, the river being then near thirty feet higher than in the dry ſeaſon, and the falls conſiderably increaſed, and when rain has lately fallen in the hills the cataracts may be diſtinctly heard at the diſtance of two Engliſh miles. The road is through the woods.

Mr. Hodges proceeded acroſs the paſs of Terriegully, whence the road continues by the river ſide, opening in extenſive glades, covered with a fine turf, and interſperſed with woods only, which conſiſt of large timber trees, that for the greater part of the year continue verdant like all other vegetable productions of the country. Further on, the road ſkirts the woods, and is ſhaded with ſeveral great trees, whereon are a variety of beautiful birds, particularly peacocks. There are ſeveral ſmall rivers to paſs, which, on account of the ſteepneſs of their banks, are very troubleſome to the pallankeen carriers.

The country and proſpects about Colgong are exceedingly beautiful. This place is remarkable for a conſiderable ſtream that falls into the Ganges, which by its continued force, particularly in the rainy ſeaſons, has detached two large rocks and formed them into iſlands, covered with woods, full ſeventy yards from the ſhore. In the time of the rains this paſſage is very dangerous, and can only be effected by ſmall boats.

Mr. Hodges now proceeded to the village of Sultungunge, oppoſite which, in the river, is Jehangueery, a rocky iſland, with a few trees and a ſmall hermitage on the top, inhabited by a Hindoo monk, it being conſidered by the Hindoos as a ſacred place. From this our traveller proceeded to Bauglepoor, where he met with a very kind reception from the gentleman who then governed this diſtrict. It is about thirty or forty Engliſh miles from this to Mongheir. The country is highly cultivated, the villages very neat, and the roads exceedingly good. There are ſeveral burial-places of the Muſſulmen (who, like the ancient Greeks, buried near the highways) along the ſide of the road. Thoſe of ſuperior rank have mauſoleums, adorned according to their family wealth or munificence, and thoſe of the common people are mounds of earth, covering the whole length of the body, with a ſmall ſquare column at the head, about three feet high, and another, not more than eighteen inches, at the feet.

There is a great variety in the country, from Calcutta to Mongheir, which is a large Indian town with an old fort, one ſide of which is flanked by the Ganges, and that to the land by a deep wide ditch. Here are three capital gates, the firſt on the ſide next the river, the ſecond on the eaſt ſide, and the third on the ſouth; the ſecond ſeems very ſtrong, and agrees with the old ſtyle of caſtles.

Mr. Hodges expatiates much on the variety of travellers that are to be met with in the courſe of this route. Several ſavage-looking fakirs are to be ſeen; alſo whole families, ſome with camels loaded with goods, others riding on bullocks, the females in hackeries, and the younger part of the company on ſmall horſes, which are called tanyans, and are for the chief part pie-balled. The men, who march on foot, are armed with ſpears and match-locks, alſo ſabres and ſhields ſlung acroſs their backs.

Mr. Hodges departed by water from Mongheir, which afforded him an opportunity of admiring the varied ſhores of the Ganges, and the different boats of the country. He remarks, that it is common about this ſeaſon of the year to ſee a ſmall black cloud riſing in the eaſtern part of the horizon, and ſpreading itſelf afterwards to the north-weſt; this phenomenon is always attended with violent thunder, lightning and rain. He alſo informs us, that paſſing by the city of Moorſhedabad, in the evening of a Muſſulman's holy-day, he was very much entertained at beholding the river covered with innumerable lights juſt floating above the ſurface of the water; at firſt he could not comprehend this uncommon appearance, but, on inquiry, underſtood that upon theſe occaſions they fabricate a number of ſmall lamps, which they light and ſet a-float on the river, theſe, by the ſtream conſtantly running down, are carried for ſeveral hours to a conſiderable diſtance. After a paſſage of a few days he arrived at Calcutta.

CHAP. II.

Mr. Hodge's Expedition with the Governor-General—His Obſervation of the Daniſh Settlement of Serampoor—Seat at Cheretty—French Settlement of Chandernagore—Dutch Settlement of Chinſurah—Hoogly, &c.—Arrival of the Fleet at Patna—Governor's Reception—Deſcription of the City—Of the Moſque of Moonhier—Of Bankepour—Arrival of Mr. Hodges at Buxar—Curioſities of Gazipoor—Proceeds to Benares—Diſturbances—Sad Conſequences—Period to the War—Remarks—Deſcription of Benares—Temples, &c.—Deſcription of the horrid Sacrifice of a Wife on the Death of her Huſband—The Woods which ſurround the Fort of Lutteeſpoor—A Rocky Paſs—Deſcription of Bidjegur—Arrival of the Governor-General's Party at Bauglepoor.

THE Bengal government having deemed it expedient for the public utility, that the governor-general ſhould make a tour through a part of the country, Mr. Hodges procured Mr. Haſtings's permiſſion to accompany him. Accordingly the former embarked in a budgerow, June 25th, 1781. The fleet conſiſting of all kinds of boats belonging to the country, except burs, was very large, on account of the great number who neceſſarily attended the governor-general.

Mr. Hodges's firſt obſervation was the Daniſh ſettlement of Serampoor, which is a ſmall diſtance above Calcutta. Both ſides of the river are decorated with a few houſes belonging to Engliſh gentlemen; there is a very fine ſeat at Cheretty, about twenty miles from Calcutta. The French ſettlement of Chandernagore is a little above this; it ſeems to have been very conſiderable from the ruins of the fort. Adjoining this, is the town of Chinſurah, the Dutch ſettlement on the banks of the river. The appearance of this town is very handſome. There are ſeveral good houſes and a church, with a little mole projecting into the river. This town lies nearly midway between Chandernagore and Hoogly, which, though in ruins, retain the veſtiges of former munificence. Culna and Huddea, leading to Cutwa, are both conſiderable towns. Mr. Hodges now paſſed ſeveral other towns already mentioned.

On the arrival of the fleet at the city of Patna, the windows in the houſes on the banks of the river, and all the tops of the buildings and every wall, were crowded. The governor-general was received by the multitude with great joy and reſpect. This city which is the principal ſeat of the province and government of Bahar, is long, narrow, and very populous; it has been long famous, having a fort, and being the reſidence of the political and commercial chiefs, and the courts of juſtice of the province; the ſtreets, which are narrow, are ſeldom clean, the buildings are very lofty.

Mr. Hodges went to examine the moſque of Moonhier, on the river Soane, which is a beautiful large building, being a ſquare with pavilions riſing from the angles; in the centre there is a majeſtic dome, the top of which is finiſhed by what the Indian architects call a *Cullus:* the line of the curve of the dome is not broken but continued by an inverted curve until it finiſhes in a creſcent. The outer ſurface is ornamented by platone leaves cut in ſtone, covering the whole; the lines interſect each other in great lozenges and are altogether very beautiful. The great entrance to this moſque has columns, diminiſhing as it were in perſpective to the inner door. A large tank belongs to it, with ſeveral buildings ariſing from the water containing pavilions.

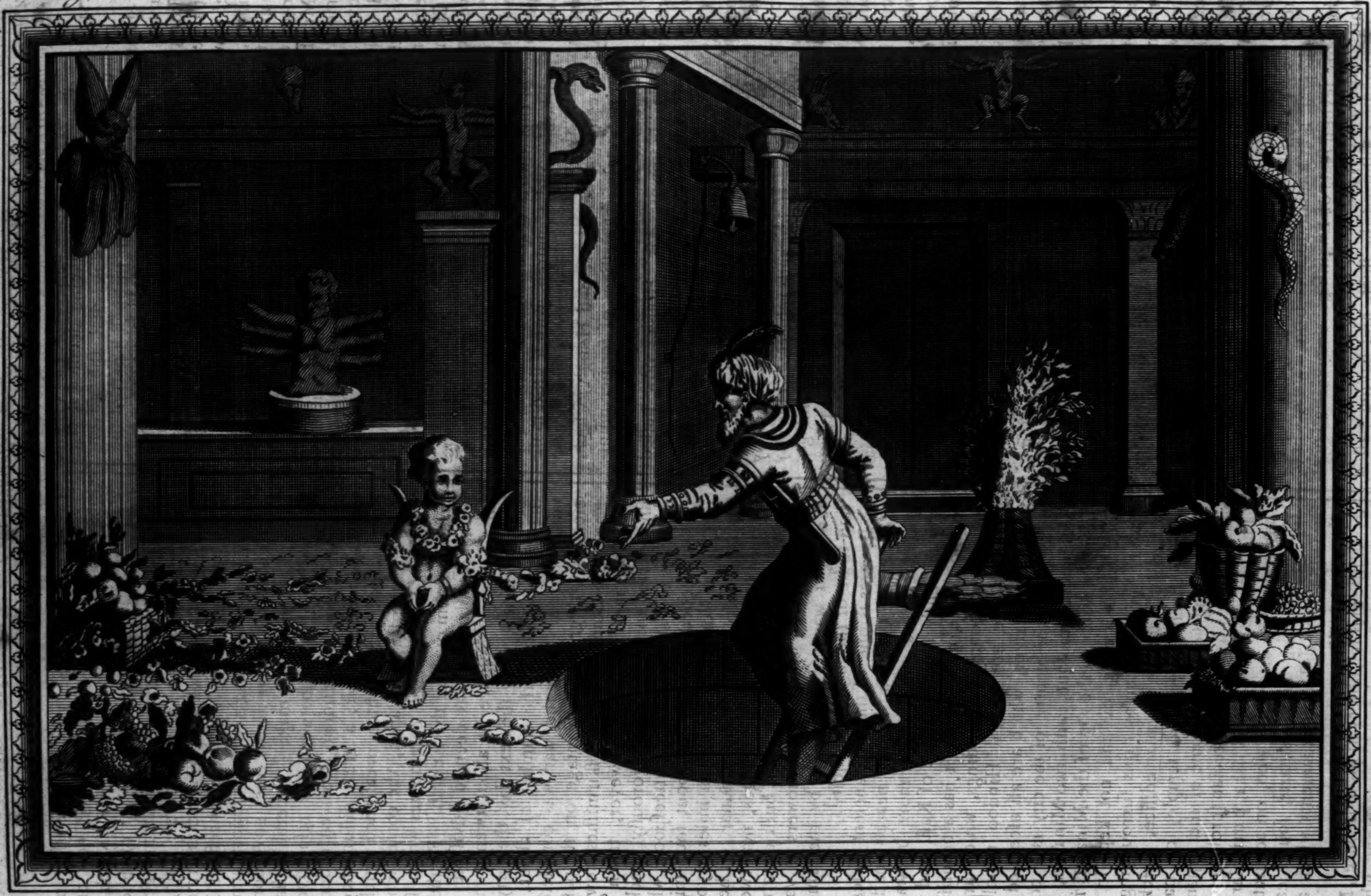
Bankepour is at a ſmall diſtance from Patna, where there are ſeveral ſeats of Engliſh gentlemen, and near which is the military ſtation of Dinapour.

Mr. Hodges followed the fleet, and having paſſed the mouth of the river Caramnaſſa, arrived at Buxar, Auguſt the 12th; from this they proceeded to Gazipoor on the eaſtern ſhore of the Ganges; here are the ruins of a very fine palace, raiſed on a high bank, almoſt adjoining which is a building for raiſing water and ſupplying the fountains by means of pipes. There are about two miles from the river, the remains of a Serai, and ſome tombs at a ſmall diſtance: from this Mr. Hodges proceeded to Benares, and arrived the day after the governor landed. The affair of Cheyt Sing, the Zemindar of the province, now engroſſed general attention. The Zemindar (which implies ſimply a landholder either by a right of inheritance, or merely as a renter) met the governor-general at Buxar, attended with a conſiderable train, and a large fleet of boats wherein were 2000 armed men, being the moſt active and experienced of Benares, and intended, as imagined, to ſupport him in the refuſal of ſuch demands as the governor-general might think proper to make. Several meſſages and letters having paſſed between the reſpective parties. Mr. Markham, the reſident, received orders to put the Rajah under arreſt; a great diſturbance immediately took place, which occaſioned much bloodſhed and the Rajah eſcaped; the conſequent loſs of friends and the funeral ceremonies which followed, threw a gloom over all the Engliſh. Further diſtreſſes taking place, it was deemed adviſable to make for Chunar, a diſtance of about twenty miles, and oppoſite which, early the next day, the party, including ſervants, &c. to the number of about 400 men ſafely arrived. Now the war was completely commenced with great diſadvantage on the part of the Engliſh. Some deſperate ſkirmiſhes now enſued. Effective meaſures were, however, taken to put a final period to the war, by vigorouſly attacking both the forts of Pateeta and of Lutteeſpoor, which happily ſucceeded. Pateeta lies about four miles north of Chunar, and Lutteeſpoor ten miles beyond; Bidjegur is fifty miles from Chunar. The fort of Chunar is ſituated on the Ganges, near twenty miles above the city of Benares; it is built on a rock, fortified all round by a wall and towers at various diſtances; it was originally built by the Hindoos, and ſaid to be of the higheſt antiquity.

Benares is one of the moſt ancient cities; the diſtance, from Calcutta, by the neareſt road, is above 460 miles, it is a great deal more by water. The city anciently bore the name of Kaſi, and is built on the north ſide of the river; it has a beautiful appearance, as it abounds in buildings, which are very ſuperb. There are ſeveral Hindoo temples on the banks of the river, which are all aſcended by flights of ſteps; in the centre of the city is a conſiderable Mahometan moſque, with two Minarets, the height from the water to the top of the Minarets is 232 feet. The ſtreets are narrow and not kept in very good order: there are many ruins ſurrounding the city, particularly a large circular edifice, which had evidently been an Hindoo temple, or part of one, there being veſtiges of ſome of the ornaments; and Mr. Hodges found the Grecian ſcroll on one part.—The temple named Viſs Viſsha, particularly engaged our traveller's attention, who, on accurately obſerving the building in all its parts, found each column to contain the different ornaments which appeared in the other parts.

While making obſervations in Benares, Mr. Hodges received information of a ceremony which was to take place on the banks of the river, and which greatly excited his curioſity; this was the horrid ſacrifice of the wife on the death of her huſband. On repairing to the ſpot on the banks of the river where the ceremony was to take place, Mr. Hodges perceived the body of a man, on a bier, laid at the edge of the river, and covered with linen. There were now

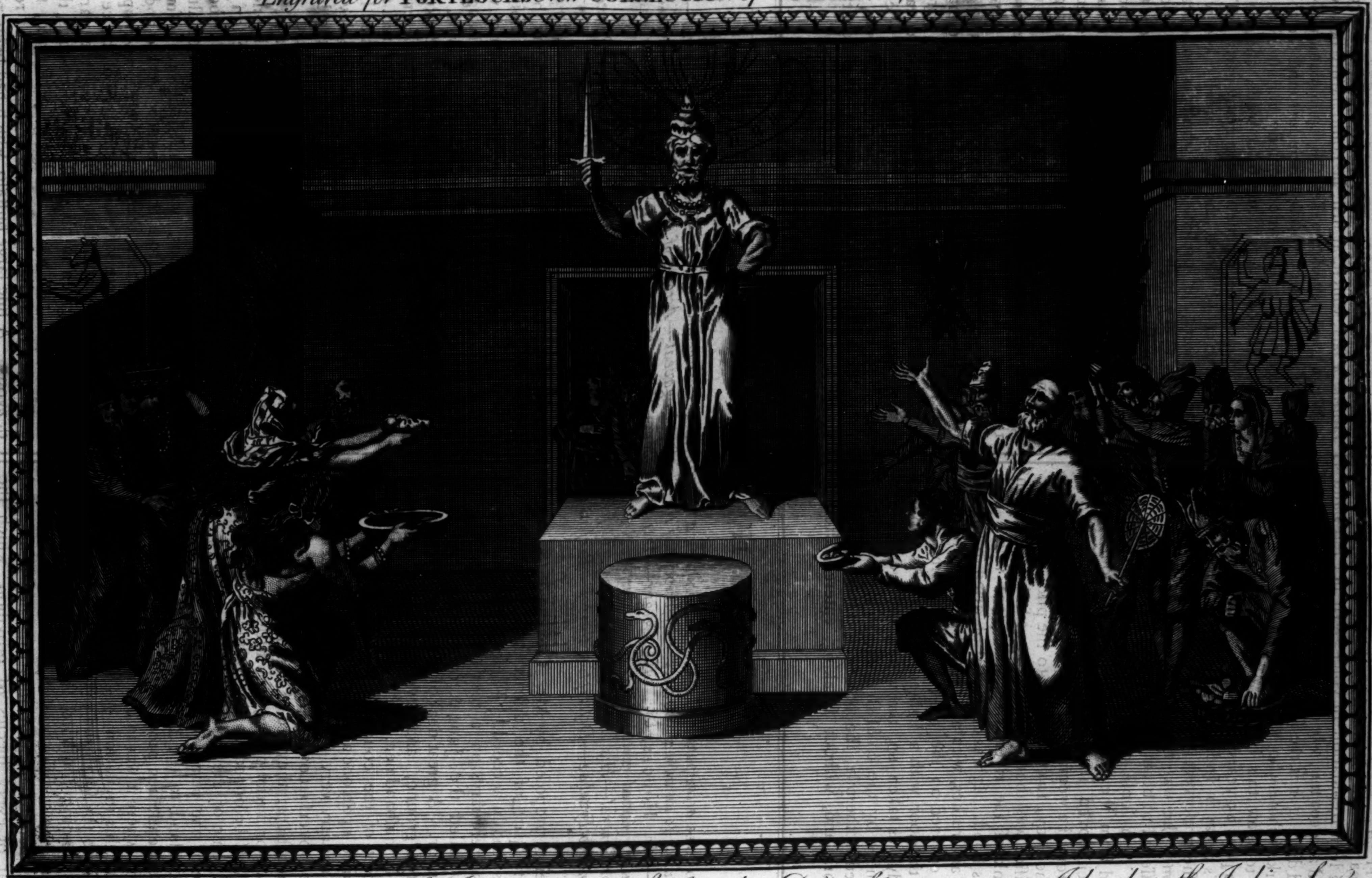
Engraved for PORTLOCK's New COLLECTION of VOYAGES & TRAVELS.



Inside View of the PAGOD of KAMAETSMA.

Published by Alexr. Hogg April 19. 1794.

Engraved for **PORTLOCK'S** *New* **COLLECTION** *of* **VOYAGES & TRAVELS.**



Ceremonies & Adoration paid to the Idol **BUDDU**, *the Guardian Deity of* **CEYLON**, *an Island on the Indian Sea.*

now only a few people aſſembled, it being about ten in the morning. After ſome time the unfortunate widow appeared, attended by the Bramins and ſome few relatives, with muſic; ſolemn and ſlow the proceſſion, while the victim moved with a firm and ſteady pace. She approached the body of her departed huſband, with a countenance perfectly compoſed, and ſtopping here for ſome time, addreſſed thoſe who were near her with apparent good humour, and without the leaſt trepidation of voice. In her left hand ſhe held a cocoa nut, wherein a red colour was mixed up, and dipping in it the fore-finger of her right hand, ſhe marked thoſe who were near her, to whom ſhe wiſhed to ſhew this laſt act of attention. She was about 24 or 25 years of age, which is the time of beauty's decay in India, notwithſtanding the remains which ſhe preſerved, proved that ſhe was once very handſome; ſhe was rather ſhort, but well formed, and poſſeſſed of beautiful hands and arms. She was dreſſed in a looſe robe of white drapery, which reached from the head to the feet. About half an hour (employed in prayer with the Bramins) was ſpent from the woman's firſt appearance to the taking up of the body, to convey it into the pile. The place of ſacrifice was about a hundred yards higher, upon the bank of the river Ham, the place where Mr. Hodges ſtood. It was compoſed of dried branches, leaves, and ruſhes, with a door on one ſide, and arched and covered on the top: a man ſtanding by the ſide of the door with a lighted brand. As ſoon as the body was taken up, the widow followed cloſe to it, attended by the chief Bramin, and on its being depoſited in the pile, ſhe bowed to the ſurrounding ſpectators, and, without ſpeaking, entered after it, whereupon the door was immediately cloſed; fire was now adminiſtered to the combuſtibles, which blazed inſtantaneouſly, and ſtill kept burning by additional fuel being occaſionally thrown in. The multitude who now became numerous, and diſcovered more joy than grief on the occaſion, accompanied the laſt part of this abominable ceremony, with loud and continued ſhouts. The only inducement Mr. Hodges had to be a ſpectator, was the deſire of aſcertaining a fact, which, at firſt, he could hardly believe.

When the traveller paſſes the open country, he enters the jungles or woods which ſurround the forts of Lutteeſpoor. The woods chiefly conſiſt of bamboos, which come very cloſe to the walls, and are ſo very thick as to be impenetrable in many parts. The fort is erected of ſtone, the walls are flanked with round towers, at preſent the whole is in decay. There is a very high and difficult rocky paſs about two miles from the fort, at the top of which the country continues flat and level, till within about four miles of Bidjegur, when it ſinks, and is generally overflowed in the time of the rains. There are conſiderable woods between Lutteeſpoor and Bidjegur intermixed with a few villages and ſome cultivated ground. Bidjegur is about fifty miles from Benares; the fort is ſeated on the top of a lofty mountain, covered with wood from the ſummit to the deſcent. As ſoon as this place was taken, preparations were made for the departure of the governor-general's party; they ſailed towards the end of December, and early in January 1782, arrived at Bauglepoor. It being Mr. Hodges' wiſh to remain here for ſome time, he took his leave of thoſe gentlemen who departed about the end of the ſame month.

CHAP. III.

Mr. Hodges *accompanies Mr.* Cleveland *on a Tour through Part of his Diſtrict—They paſs ſome Durgows—An Invitation to an annual Sacrifice—Deſcription of the Chiefs who gave it—Account of the Ceremony, &c.—Rejoicing, &c.—Mr.* Hodges, *&c. viſit Deogur—Ancient Pagodas—Trade of the Pilgrims—Mr.* Hodges *returns to Calcutta, ſeized with a dangerous Illneſs—Recovers, and undertakes another Journey, by Permiſſion of the Governor-General—His Arrival at Allahabed—Deſcription of the Forts, &c.—Of Lucknow—The Nabob's Palace—Journey to Fyzabad—Deſcription thereof—Preſent from the Nabob's Mother—Deſcription of Oud, &c.*

IT being propoſed by Mr. Cleveland to perambulate part of the diſtrict into the hills, Mr. Hodges readily acceded. Theſe gentlemen ſet out early in February, on a tour through a part of the country called the Jungleterry to the weſtward of Bauglepoor. A great deal of wood, including much cultivated ground, and ſeveral villages, inhabited chiefly by huſbandmen, are to be found in this interior part of the country. Great maſſes of ſtone being piled upon one another, render the appearance of this country very ſingular: ſeveral immenſe timber trees, overſhadowing theſe rocks, grow out from their interſtices: they are of different kinds. Some Durgows, or burial places, with little chapels adjoining, which belonged to the Muſſulmans, are to be ſeen on ſome of the higheſt of theſe hills.

Some of the principal hill chiefs having invited Mr. Cleveland to the ceremony of an annual ſacrifice, the gentlemen proceeded to the village on the mountain where it was to be ſolemnized. The chiefs, who gave this invitation, reſided on a range of hills, which lie to the ſouth and to the weſtward of Bauglepoor, extending ſouth to the back of Rajemahel. Their manners differ entirely from the Hindoos; they are neither divided into caſts nor tribes, and they eat of every ſpecies of proviſion, which the followers of Bramah cannot, being limited in this article according to their caſt. The ferocity of this people was entirely ſubdued by the mildneſs of Mr. Cleveland's adminiſtration. This gentleman, by a variety of attentions, had weaned them completely from their uſual depredations. He ordered clothes to be made like thoſe of the Seapoys in the Company's ſervice for a few, gave them fire arms, and had them inſtructed in the exerciſe of them. This inſpired military courage in others, and ſhortly a camp was formed of a thouſand men, three miles from Bauglepoor, where the ſtricteſt diſcipline was obſerved.

The gentlemen having left the village of Barkope (which is almoſt in the centre of the Jungleterry) travelled through the flat country, and entered the hills, which are covered with wood, whence they had ſeveral beautiful proſpects. On the ſecond day of their journey they arrived at the village of the hill, where the annual ſacrifice was to be ſolemnized. A ſmall open hut had been erected in the village, on purpoſe for Mr. Cleveland's reception, and the next morning being the time appointed, every perſon in the neighbourhood was ſummoned to attend. About nine o'clock the ceremony began. A kind of altar, conſiſting of bamboos, was raiſed before a ſmall hut, about ſix feet from the ground. A kid and a cock being decapitated, their heads were thrown upon the altar, and there left. This firſt part of the ceremony was little attended to by any of the party. Notice being given in about an hour afterwards, that the principal rite was about to be performed, the gentlemen immediately repaired to the place of rendezvous. A fine large buffalo, which had been previouſly purchaſed and fattened by the people, was now dragged with ropes, by the horns, towards the ſpot where the decollation of the kid and the cock was performed. The chief of the village, who had no covering except a cloth round his middle, now held a large and bright ſabre in his hand, while, after much difficulty, the animal was brought to the place of ſacrifice. A concourſe of people (men, women, and children) ſurrounded the altar. The young men being all naked! the animal was firſt of all hamſtringed, to prevent his eſcape. The chief then ſtood on the left ſide of the animal, and ſtriking the upper part of the neck near the ſhoulder with his ſabre, ſet the poor animal bellowing and ſtruggling for his liberty ſo violently, that it required no little exertion to detain him. Upwards of a quarter of an hour was ſpent in thus cutting the ſpine of the neck, and it was ſome time before the head was ſevered, even after the animal fell. A great pauſe and univerſal ſilence preceded the laſt ſtroke! When the chief had given it, he then ſtood up, and extending his arm, which held the ſabre, ſeemed to give a ſignal to the people, who thereupon ruſhed in, and began to take up the blood of the animal, which, though mixed with the dirt of the ground, they drank up, and having beſmeared each other, and tumbled about in a moſt frantic manner, they proceeded to eat the body, which was afterwards cut in pieces. The head, like thoſe of the kid and cock, was, however, preſerved. The ſacrifice being over, each returned to his reſpective dwelling. Great rejoicing now took place, and the remainder of the day was ſpent in mirth and revelry. Singing, dancing, and drinking became univerſal; the laſt prevailed ſo much among the men, that the women loſt half their partners.

After the ſacrifice, the gentlemen returned to Bauglepoor, and the next day viſited Deogur, a ſmall village, and, being deemed a ſacred ſpot, is much frequented by the Hindoo pilgrims. Here are five ancient pagodas, which have each a ſmall chamber in the centre of twelve feet ſquare, with a lamp hanging over the *Leingham*, which is the great object of ſuperſtition among the followers of Brahmah, being the general ſymbol of renovative nature. The paſſage is only ſufficiently high and broad for the admiſſion of one perſon. Theſe pagodas are formed like pyramids. The pilgrims are daily employed in carrying the water of the Ganges to the weſtern ſide of the peninſula of India in large flaſks or bottles, containing about five quarts each; one at each end of a bamboo, which they bear on their ſhoulders. They charge a proportionable price for this holy water, according to the diſtance of the place where it is carried to, and ſo many are the purchaſers as to render it a conſiderable trade.

As our travellers returned nearly in the ſame direction in which they came, they had of courſe no opportunity for further obſervations.

Mr. Hodges having remained about four months at Bauglepoor, proceeded for Calcutta, and arrived there May 15, 1782. Here our traveller was ſeized with a dangerous illneſs, which rendered him exceedingly weak till about the end of November. When recovered, he applied to the governor-general for permiſſion to renew his travels, which being immediately granted, he began his next journey by land January 10, 1783, paſſing through Moorſhedabad, Bauglepoor, &c. already mentioned.

Having reſted at Benares four days, he proceeded on his journey, and, on the ſecond day after his departure from thence, arrived at Allahabed, which is the point of confluence of the two great rivers Jumna and Ganges, and between the eaſtern boundaries of the Jumna and the weſtern boundaries of the Ganges is Dooab, a country eſteemed very fertile, lying between two rivers. Immediately at the point is the fort of Allahabed, built entirely of ſtone, and commanding from its ſituation the navigation of both rivers; notwithſtanding which peculiar advantage, it is left to ruin. The building is entirely in the old ſtyle. The walls are flanked with round and ſquare towers; that called Agra gate is ornamented with ſeveral ſmall pavilions on the top, and is very handſome; there are two other gates within the exterior gate, formerly ſecured with portcullies. The firſt, which is very extenſive, has large areas within the walls, which, covered with the crumbled remains of buildings, are now heaps of ruins. The city, as it is called, conſiſting only of thatched huts, is without the fort. From this Mr. Hodges proceeded to Cawnpoor, which is a large military ſtation, on the Ganges. It is a cantonment for a brigade, amounting to ten thouſand men on the war eſtabliſhment; the men live in huts inſtead of tents, with their ſamilies: it is conſidered as a great encampment.

On the 25th of January Mr. Hodges arrived at Lucknow, which is ſuppoſed to be about 900 miles diſtance from Calcutta by the route through Benares, though ſome think it only 650. It is an extenſive city, but the buildings are very mean, conſiſting only of mud walls, covered with thatch. Several conſiſt entirely of mats and bamboos, and are thatched with leaves of the cocoa nut, palm-tree, and ſometimes with ſtraw; there are very few brick houſes, the ſtreets are very bad, narrow, and crooked. When the ſeaſon is wet, the mire is ſo deep, there is ſcarce any walking; when dry, the heat and duſt are intolerable; the foot paſſenger is equally annoyed by the great number of elephants, belonging to the nabob and his ſuite, which are continually paſſing the ſtreets. Indeed the great men of this place and their ſervants, attend very little to the convenience of the poor.

The nabob's palace is on a high bank near the river. It commands an extenſive view both of the Goomtry and the country on the eaſtern ſide. There are large courts within the walls, and a durbar, where all perſons, on being preſented, are received by the prince. This durbar is a range of three arcades, parallel to each other, and ſupported by the columns in the Mooriſh taſte. The ceiling and all are painted with ornaments and flowers, and beautifully gilt; it is aſcended by ſteps from a flower-garden, wherein are planted ſtrong ſcented flowers; there is nothing to be commended in the exterior of the building; near the palace there is a garden, walled round, divided by a narrow diſagreeable road: at each angle of which is a grand pavilion, erected of brick, covered with chunem and richly ornamented.

On the 9th of February Mr. Hodges determined to make a journey to Fyzabad and the ancient city of Oud; he arrived at Fyzabad the ſecond day after ſetting out, which is a diſtance of about eighty Engliſh miles, in a ſouth-eaſt direction. On entering the city, Mr. Hodges was received by a perſon who was ordered to ſhow the pallankeen bearers to a ſmall houſe in a large garden, which was allotted Mr. Hodges during his ſtay.

Fyzabad is a very extenſive city, and, to all appearance, very populous, but its inhabitants are chiefly of the loweſt claſs; the moſt eminent of the merchants, &c. having followed the court which was removed to Lucknow. Some remains of many handſome brick buildings are to be ſeen. The one appropriated to Mr. Hodges's accommodation, had a large beautiful pavilion over the principal entrance; it was aſcended by a narrow ſtair-caſe, leading to three open rooms, commanding on one ſide the whole city, and on the other the garden, a vaſt extent of country, and the river Gogra; a moſque with three domes, was oppoſite the gate. Some ſhort time after Mr. Hodges's arrival here, he was waited upon by a perſon from the nabob's mother, who brought him a number of diſhes of various curries and pillows for his refreſhment. The compliments which were in the Mooriſh ſtyle, were ſo high and flattering, that our traveller almoſt imagined himſelf transformed into an Indian nabob. Having returned his moſt reſpectful compliments, he partook of the repaſt, which was very good, but would have been better if accompanied with wine inſtead of water. After this Mr. Hodges proceeded to make his further obſervations.

The remains of the palace, built by the late nabob, now attracted his attention. This building, which covers a great extent of ground, has ſeveral areas or courts which contain many ſeparate buildings. In the inner court are the remains of the durbar,

durbar; the reſt were evidently deſigned for public offices, or the like, but with the painting, &c. greatly gone to decay. A large extent of building, which muſt have been once very magnificent, is within an interior court, the principal front of which is on the banks of the river: this was deſigned for the nabob's private dwelling. Near this are other edifices, intended for the Zenanah, wherein ſome traces of gardens are to be ſeen. A very handſome large gate conſtitutes the grand entrance to the palace, the ſuperſtructureof which was a place for arms, and there is ſtill a guard kept in it. The Nobut (i. e. a great drum) which is an appendage of royalty in India, and when beaten, which is both at ſun-riſe and ſun-ſet, may be heard afar off, was fixed on the top of the gate.

The remains of the ancient city of Oud, reported to have been the firſt imperial city of Hindoſtan, are nearly adjoining Fyzabad. This is conſidered as a place of ſanctity, and the Hindoos conſequently perform pilgrimages thither, from all parts of India, continually. There are no veſtiges whatever of this city's former magnificence. It is ſeated on the banks of Gogra, but Mr. Hodges thinks it probable, that formerly it was at a conſiderable diſtance from it, it being in a line with Fyzabad. Mr. Hodges concludes theſe remarks with obſerving, that the villages he had paſſed during this perambulation, were, ſome of them comfortable to all appearance, and others apparently diſtreſſed.

CHAP. IV.

Mr. HODGES *accompanies Major* BROWN *on an Expedition—Deſcription of Etaya—They proceed to Jeſwontnagur—Halt at O'Kraine—Arrive at Shekoabad—Derivation of its Name—Deſcription of the Place—The Ruins of a Hunting Seat, &c.—They proceed to Fyrozabad—Its Government and Army—They arrive at Etamadpoor—Account of a ſmall Building, &c.—They encamp at Shah Darah—Ruins—Palaces of the great Omrahs—Derivation of the Name of Shah Dara—An ancient Cuſtom—A Viſit from an Omrah of high Rank—The Nabob Merzah Shuffey Khawn waited upon—Deſcription of his wonderful Camp—A Viſit to the Durbar—Old Perſian Chiefs ſeen—Excurſions—Remarks—Palace of Dara Shako—Obſervations—Deſcription of Futtypoor Sicri—Of Siedpoor—Mr.* HODGES *takes Leave of the Major—Arrives at Dohlpoor—At Nurabad—At Gwalior—Deſcription of the Fortreſs—Proceeds to Gohd—Returns to Lucknow—His Departure—Voyage down the River Goomty—Fort of Jionpoor—A Mauſoleum—Proceeds to Bauglepoor—Arrives at Calcutta—Concluſion.*

MAJOR Brown being appointed on an embaſſy to Mirza Shuffey Khawn, and preparing to proceed immediately on his miſſion through a part of the country which Mr. Hodges was very deſirous to viſit, our traveller wrote to the Major, ſignifying his wiſhes to accompany him. The propoſal being accepted, Mr. Hodges ſet out on his journey to join Major Brown at Etaya on the 10th of February 1783. From the ſmall number of pallankeen bearers, and the quantity of baggage, Mr. Hodges's ſtages were now ſhort: however, he arrived at Major Brown's encampment, which was cloſe to the town of Etaya, on the 13th. The road runs weſtward from Lucknow to this place, and is at many places fordable at this time of the year: there is alſo to the weſtward of the Ganges, a fordable ſtream called Callinuddie; this, however, is a conſiderable river at the time of the rains. It is tolerably well cultivated from Lucknow to Etaya, but the villages are very poor.

Etaya is ſituated on a very high bank of Jumna, which is a very large river, wherein are many iſlands of ſand, which are overflowed during the periodical rains. The ſides of this high bank conſiſt of what the Indians call Concha (i. e. ſand) which is formed into almoſt a vitrification, by the conſtant action of the ſun. There are only two decent houſes in the town, which, notwithſtanding its novelty, is very large.

The Major and Mr. Hodges proceeded on the 15th to Jeſwontnagur, which is about 12 Engliſh miles from Etaya; the cultivation of the country is very middling from Etaya to this place; the villages appear deſtitute, and their few inhabitants very poor. They ſtopped at O'Kraine on the 16th, about 12 miles further, and almoſt at the termination of the nabob of Oud's land.

There was very little cultivation to be ſeen during this laſt day's journey: ſeveral of the villages were in ruins, and all appeared wild and deſolate. Some few wretched looking people, who were begging their way, were met on the laſt day's march.

They arrived at Shekoabed on the 17th. There is ſome little cultivation from O'Kraine to this place, and ſuch is the fulneſs and richneſs of the grain, as to demonſtrate, that if properly cultivated, it would be exceedingly productive.

Shekoabed takes its name from Dara Sheko, the Emperor Shah Jehan's eldeſt and moſt unfortunate ſon, who, when contending with his youngeſt brother Aurungzebe, was defeated, hunted down like a wild beaſt, and at laſt made priſoner. He was then ſtripped and ſeated on an elephant, to be the may-game of their victorious bands, who at laſt murdered him unmercifully.

They had paſſed this day two villages, which were ſuperior to any hitherto met with. Several villages in ruins were ſeen on both ſides of the road, and mud-forts or their ruins on every hillock or riſing ground.

Shekoabed is very populous, and the adjacent ground ſeemingly well cultivated. The remains of a hunting ſeat, erected by Dara Sheko, and a tank belonging thereto, were here diſcovered. It appears to have been conſiderably large from the ruins. There was a ſmall grove of palm and other trees adjoining the tank, which were all the trees to be ſeen in the neighbourhood: there is alſo a ſcarcity of water, there being very few wells, and thoſe few nearly dry. They ſaw in Faleant, the town, the ruins of ſeveral buildings, ſome of which had been apparently erected on a large ſcale.

Having gone twelve miles further, they reached Fyrozabad, which is a conſiderable village; it takes its name from Purgunnah, which is a ſmall diſtrict within a larger. At this time it was under the government of a Goſine, or Hindoo religious, which government being very favourable to agriculture, the cultivation of this place was exceeding beautiful. The Goſine had, for the protection of the poor, a camp formed in the neighbourhood, amounting to 2000 men well armed, and a ſmall park of artillery, where Mr. Hodges ſaw two fine pieces of battering cannon. Theſe ſoldiers, whoſe ſtature was generally ſix feet, and their behaviour very modeſt and decorous, were remarkable for their manly comelineſs and beauty.

They arrived at Etamadpoor the next day, which is about twelve miles further. Here is a ſmall building in the centre of a large tank, the ſides of which, as likewiſe the centre building and a bridge of ſeveral arches, which communicates with it from the ſide of the tank, are erected with ſtone. Large mounds of earth, formed from the excavations in making the tank, ſurround the whole: there was but little water in it at the time of our travellers arrival. Hence they had a full view of the ſpires of Agra.

They encamped on the Shah Dara on the 23d, which is at the diſtance of almoſt ten miles from Etamadpoor, and about two on the eaſtern ſide of the river Jumna, oppoſite the city. Nothing but ruined buildings (ſome very large, as the Cuttera, built by the great Shah Heſt Khawn, in the reign of Aurungzebe) tombs, long walls, domes, arches, &c. &c. are to be ſeen here. The ruined palaces of the great omrahs are to be ſeen along the weſtern bank of the river; further on, the great fort and palace of the city of Agra are to be ſeen, which proſpect is terminated to the ſouth-weſt by the elegant monument that was erected by the emperor Shah Jehan.

Shah Dara derives its name from Shah, a king, and Dara, a tent, being the ſpot where the emperor's tent was firſt fixed when he made his progreſs from Agra to the eaſtern provinces of the empire. From the time the dynaſty of the Moguls was fixed in India, it was cuſtomary for the emperor, in the ſummer ſeaſon, to take the field with a large army, attended by the whole court, artiſans, bankers, &c. Accordingly, the camp became a great city, under tents, that of the emperor being in the centre of the whole, ſurrounded by thoſe of the great officers of ſtate, while each trade had its ſeveral quarter allotted to them.

Araſeab Khawn, an omrah of high rank, waited upon Major Brown, on the 24th, from the nabob, Mirza Shuffey Khawn, who lay encamped about ſix miles to the north-weſt of Agra, and to whoſe camp the major and Mr. Hodges proceeded, having croſſed the river Jumna, and paſſed through a part of the city of Agra. The next day they pitched their tents to the eaſtward of the nabob's encampment, in a garden, walled round, and which was formerly adorned with ſome magnificent buildings which are now gone to ruin.

Mirza Shuffey Khawn's camp covered a great ſpace of ground, and as it contained ſhops of all kinds, might, with greater propriety, have been called a city. It contained 40,000 men, according to report, which Mr. Hodges could not credit. However, every ſoldier, tradeſman, and artificer, had his family with him; there were 42 pieces of cannon of various calibers in the park of artillery; ſome of the largeſt guns, which were remarkable fine ones, were French pieces, but the reſt, which formed the greateſt number, were indifferent. The nabob's tent being of crimſon velvet, in many parts embroidered with gold, and lined with ſilk. Mr. Hodges thinks, that, in all probability, it was formerly an imperial one; at preſent the appearance was very far from ſplendid, it being much torn and moth-eaten.

Mr. Hodges accompanied the major ſhortly after their arrival to the Durbar of the nabob, where they found the principal commanders, among whom there were ſeveral old Perſian chiefs, whoſe countenances were marked with great dignity, and their beards ſo long as to hang down to their girdles. On being received, the ceremony of which conſiſted of touching the turban with the right hand, without ever riſing from their ſeats, the gentlemen were deſired to ſit, and accordingly old faſhioned chairs were brought, which, though greatly injured by length of time, retained the evident ſigns of having been formerly very richly ornamented with velvet and carved work. The nabob ſat in the centre of a ſemicircle; his chiefs ſurrounding him, and a great number of attendants ſtanding behind. Amongſt theſe people delay ſeems a ſettled principle of etiquette, for the major's buſineſs was neither taken into conſideration now nor for many days afterwards; this firſt was only a viſit of ceremony.

Mr. Hodges took every opportunity of making excurſions to Agra and its vicinities, the weather being at this ſeaſon very favourable. The mornings which he choſe for his excurſions, were clear and very cold; the froſt was ſo very great at times that ſeveral tanks were entirely frozen over; it was, however, very hot in the middle of the day, which time our traveller appropriated to his ſtudies. Mr. Hodges ſpent moſt of his time at Agra.

This city is ſituated on the ſouth ſide of the river Jumna, which is impaſſable at this place, and riſing immediately from the water extends in a vaſt ſemicircle. It is held to be a place of great antiquity. The fort, including the preſent palace, is very extenſive, it is conſtructed of a red free ſtone, and ſeems to have been very ſtrong when firſt erected. It had originally a double wet ditch, which was both very deep and broad, and well ſupplied from the river. The city was encircled by a wall and towers, very near each other. The fort was an iſland formed by three ditches, one face thereof inclining to the eaſtward was waſhed by the river to the foot of the walls; the outer ditch is now entirely demoliſhed, and the high road goes through it. The inner ditch is very bad in ſeveral places and quite dry in others.

Jehanadab was built by Shah Jehan, the grandſon of Achar, who, not being able to bear Agra on account of the immenſe heat of ſummer, determined to raiſe a metropolis which ſhould bear his own name. In order to people this new city, it is ſaid that he tranſported thither upwards of 500,000 of the people of Agra, being one half of the inhabitants. The conſequent ruins in Agra rendered it expedient for the ſecurity of the people to build another wall, forming a part of a circle within the old one, and this wall was accordingly erected by a Hindoo Raja, in the ſervice of the emperor Aurungzebe, named Jay Singh. The empire of Jehanabad, as well as its name, is now nearly extinguiſhed. A meer maſs of ruins appears likewiſe between the two walls; the inner wall is alſo decaying faſt. Near the Dehli gate of the fort, where there are the remains of a moſque, is the Choke, or Exchange, which is likewiſe in decay, and even the fort itſelf is waſting away rapidly. The imperial reſidence built of white marble, covered on the top with plates of copper gilt, is ſituated in the eaſtern front of the fort; the luſtre of its ornaments ſtill remains. A moſque, conſiſting of various beautiful ornaments, is almoſt adjoining. The ruins of this grand and venerable city are computed to extend no leſs than fourteen Engliſh miles along the banks of the river. There is conſiderable danger in walking among theſe ruins, as an unwary paſſenger may ſink through ſeveral holes into the covered vaults, where many poiſonous reptiles inhabit. The ſtreets are very narrow, and no great judgment diſplayed in their conſtruction.

The palace of Dara Sheko, which was built by that prince, is very extenſive. There is a hummum or bath that Mr. Hodges went to ſee, which was very ſuperb. It was lined with the fineſt coloured marble, and ſeveral pieces of lapis lazuli introduced amongſt the ornaments, which were after the Mooriſh taſte, (compoſed of Moſaic work and flowers) and exceedingly handſome. Mr. Hodges concludes, from the great expence that was evidently beſtowed upon it, that it formerly belonged to the palace of one of the great men of the court.

The tomb of the emperor Acbar, ſtands at a place called Secundrii, on the great high road leading to Dehli, about ſix miles diſtance from Agra; this ſtupendous edifice is ſituated in a garden, regularly planted with both foreſt and fruit trees, and ſeveral flowering ſhrubs; it is alſo walled round, and is ſaid to contain a ſpace of above twenty Engliſh acres. In the centre of this garden is raiſed the monument, which is a ſquare building with gates in the centre on each ſide, and great pavilions at the angles and over the gates. There are five ſeveral ſtories which diminiſh gradually with pavilions at each angle. The domes of theſe pavilions are of white marble; the reſt of the building of red ſtone and white marble intermixed. The fifth or upper ſtory is entirely of white marble: here is a range of windows running round each ſide which are fret work, cut out of the ſolid ſlab. This ſtory is finiſhed with pavilions conſiſting in like manner of marble, but they have been greatly damaged by lightning and an earthquake, as the people of that place report. One of the pavilions

lions is gone entirely, and the domes of the reſt conſiderably injured. The inſide of this upper ſtory is curiouſly inlaid with black marble with quotations from the Koran, which, a judge of Perſian writing aſſured Mr. Hodges, was in the moſt perfect ſtyle. There are large terraces on each ſtory of this building, which, it is reported, had coverings of gold cloth, ſupported by pillars of ſilver, in the days of the emperors Jehanguire and Jehan. The Mollahs, or prieſts of the Mahommedan religion, converſed with the literati under the ſhade of theſe awnings.

A grand gate leading to the garden, conſtitutes the principal entrance. The front of this is moſt richly ornamented with Moſaics of different coloured marbles, inlaid in co-partments. There are two ſtories of pointed arches and large receſſes on either ſide the centre. On the upper ſtory there is a door in the centre, and a window over it with a baluſtrade in front, the lower receſſes have one window each. There is one vaſt pointed arch in the centre; this part of the building riſes conſiderably above the ſide of the two ſtories already mentioned. There are two ſarcophagi of black marble on the top and ſomewhat behind the front of this part of the edifice, which are raiſed on two columns: two others, anſwering to theſe, are immediately behind the back front of the gate. At each angle of the gate (this building being an oblong ſquare) are minerets of white marble, partly fluted and riſing to a great height; there are baluſtrades above the flutes, half way up the minerets, and likewiſe one near the top. Formerly theſe minerets were crowned with open pavilions and finiſhed with domes, but theſe have been long ſince deſtroyed. There are ſtair-caſes in the minerets which lead to the two balconies, which ſurround them; we paſs through this gate into a vaſt open hall which riſes in a dome almoſt to the top of the edifice. This hall was richly ornamented with painting and gilding, by the emperor Jehanguire, ſon of Acbar; however, in the courſe of time it went to decay, and either from avarice or ſuperſtition, the emperor Aurungzebe commanded it to be entirely defaced and the walls whitened. The deſcent into the garden is through an arch ſimilar to that in the front; from this hall and on deſcending, the whole of the tomb is perceptible through an avenue of lofty trees, which is paved with ſtone, and a large ſquare baſon formerly filled with water, but at this time quite dry, is in the centre, and in the centre of this baſon a fountain, the pipe of which only remains. There were ſeveral channels to be ſeen, evidently deſigned for aqueducts. Not far from the principal building riſes a high open gate, exceedingly beautiful, being entirely of white marble.

This curious building from the reflection of a continual blazing eaſtern ſun, and the varied materials of which it is compoſed, produces a glare of ſplendour beyond the power of pen to deſcribe. The curioſity of our traveller being further excited, he deſired to ſee the ſtone which contained the remains of an emperor, ſo highly eſteemed and ſo highly honoured. An old Mollah, who attended and had the keys of the interior of the building (ſtill held in profound veneration) acquieſced with Mr. Hodges's deſire. This Mollah's chief employment was in ſatisfying the curioſity of travellers. A vaſt hall occupying the whole ſpace of the interior of the building, which terminates in a dome, forms the inſide of this curious tomb. A dim light is admitted through a few windows at the top, and the whole is lined with white marble. In the centre the body is depoſited in a ſarcophagus of plain white marble, on which the name of 'ACBAR' is written in black marble inlaid.

There are many tombs ſurrounding the monument of Acbar, which, from their beauty, are ſuppoſed to contain the remains of ſome of his family; but the traditionary report is, that they are the tombs of his wives. The proſpect from the ſummit of the minerets in the front is very beautiful and extenſive.

There are ſeveral ſmall buildings on the high road from Agra to Dehli, the form of which is a ſquare pedeſtal, whereon riſes a cone to the heighth of about eight feet. A great number of ſquare niches are in this cone, which contain the heads of malefactors, which are expoſed for an example. Several of theſe, however, are gone to ruin.

There is a beautiful monument to the ſouth-eaſt of the city of Agra: it was erected by the emperor Shah Jehan to the memory of his beloved wife Taje Mahel, whoſe name it bears, and is called the Taje Mahel, by way of eminence. Formerly it joined the city, but at preſent ſtands two miles from it. Near this monument was the great bazar, or market for the moſt valuable commodities of India and foreign countries; this market, according to report, conſiſted of ſix courts, encompaſſed with great open porticoes, but there is ſcarce now remaining a veſtage of this remarkable building. The monument of Taje Mahel riſes immediately from the river, founded on a baſe of red free ſtone, at the extremity of which are octagon pavilions, containing each three ſtories. There are two large buildings on the ſame baſe, one on either ſide, and exactly ſimilar, each being crowned with three domes of white marble, of which the centre dome is the largeſt. One of theſe buildings is a muſjiid, or moſque, the other was deſigned for the accommodation of any noble paſſenger, or curious traveller. On this baſe of free ſtone, which has a platform about twenty-five feet broad, another reſts of white marble about fourteen feet high; it is of a ſquare form; the angles are octagon, from which riſe minerets, or immenſe columns tapering upwards, which have three ſeveral galleries running round them, and an open pavilion crowned with a dome on the top of each. The minerets are of white marble, and contain ſtair-caſes leading to the ſummits. The body of the building which has a platform, riſes like all the reſt from this baſe. The plan of the platform is octagon, the four principal ſides oppoſed to the cardinal points of the compaſs: a vaſt and pointed arch is raiſed in the centre of each of the four ſides, and the top above this arch is far more high than any other part of the building. Thoſe faces which form the octagon on either ſide the great arches, have two ſtories of pointed arches with receſſes, and a low baluſtrade in front: the ſpandals above the arches are very much ornamented with inlaid marble of various colours, and likewiſe the heads of the arches within the receſſes: there are windows within the ſeveral arches running round the building, compoſed of an open fret-work in the ſolid ſlab for the purpoſe of illuminating the interior of the building. There are four octangular pavilions with domes from behind the octagon front, which riſe conſiderably higher; alſo a cone from the centre of the whole, which riſes equally as high as the domes of theſe pavilions; hence the great dome proceeds, which ſwells conſiderably outwards from its baſe, and finiſhes with a beautiful curve in the upper point of the cullus, whereon two balls of copper gilt reſt, one above the other. There is a creſcent above theſe balls, in the middle of which there is a ſpear head. This building is exactly uniform and finiſhed in the moſt complete manner; it is as famous for excellence of workmanſhip as for extent and grandeur, and when beheld at a diſtance is a beautiful proſpect.

The entrance to the garden, where the Taje Mahel ſtands, is from the oppoſite ſide through a handſome large gate, where a large flight of ſteps lead to the garden: from the top of theſe there is a view of the centre part of the building through an avenue of cypreſs and other different trees. This avenue is paved with ſtone, and co-partments or beds of flowers, with fountains at equal diſtances, are in the middle; four of the grandeſt fountains lie about half way up the avenue and riſe from a ſquare baſe of white marble. A reſervoir without the building, filled from the river by pumps, ſupplies all the fountains, which are yet in tolerable order, and the garden ſtill kept in repair. The centre building is in a good ſtate, but the reſt going to ruin. The moſque here is attended by ſeveral Mollahs at the time of prayer, who ſeem very decent or orderly, and are at all times ready to ſatisfy the curioſity of ſtrangers. The inſide of the great building conſiſts of white marble and ſeveral curious carved flowers. The tomb is below in a chamber, and Taje Mahel's body is depoſited in a ſarcophagus of white marble under the centre of the edifice. A ſimilar containing the body of Shah Jehan, her huſband, is adjoining. They are exactly the ſame as thoſe ſarcophagi in Acbar's tomb; but the ſpace of ground occupied by the garden and buildings is only about one half of what is devoted to that emperor.

The nabob's camp moved cloſe to Secundrii on March the 3d, where they remained till the 15th; then they removed to Gougaut, about 14 miles from Agra. The water in Gougaut is very bad, being ſtrongly impregnated with nitre. They encamped near the ſmall village of Krowley on the 22d, which is ten miles to the weſtward of Gougaut.

Krowley is one very extenſive plain, which is but miſerably furniſhed with trees and bounded by ſome low hills, extending to the eaſtward; there is very little cultivation to be met with, the ſoil is poor; there are ſome quarries of red free ſtone in the hills. The water here is as bad as that at Gougaut for the ſame reaſon.

They encamped on the town of Futtypoor Sicri, on the 23d, which, for extent, bad water, barrenneſs, &c. is much the ſame as the country already paſt.

Mr. Hodges was very much entertained during theſe excurſions with the variety of characters he met, particularly the people of the bazar (i. e. the market) with their wives and children, who, by riding their horſes in full gallop, and firing behind as if purſuing and purſued by an enemy, with ſeveral other antic poſitions after the oriental faſhions, diſplayed much dexterity and adroitneſs. The majeſtic movements of the elephants conſiderably heightened this curious ſcene.

Futtypoor Sicri is a very extenſive town, and the adjoining country in tolerable cultivation; on the top of one of the higheſt hills which this town lies under, there is a large moſque, erected by Acbar, in the Mooriſh ſtyle of building. A flight of broad ſteps, extending to the principal entrance, which is through a very magnificent portal aſcends to this moſque from the foot of the hill. The moſque is ſituated in a large ſquare, paved throughout with apartments round the ſides for the different prieſts. The remains of a palace, occupying conſiderable ground, are to be ſeen at the foot of the hill, where the moſque is. Nothing of this but the principal gate remains, which gives but a faint idea of it. There was a lake at the back of the hills, formed by great mounds of earth artificially raiſed to keep in the water; and it is ſaid, when the palace was inhabited, that a number of fine boats of every kind were, for the entertainment of the imperial family, kept on this lake, of which the banks and boundaries are now the only veſtiges. There is no good water in this part of the country except at the moſque.

They encamped at Siedpoor on the 26th, which is upwards of fourteen miles from Futtypoor Sicri. This country was very ſuperior to any hitherto paſſed, the cultivation being very fine. During their ſtay here there were ſeveral ſtorms of wind, which the country people term aundees and typhawns; they reſemble hurricanes and are very alarming. The hot winds were alſo very inconvenient to our travellers.

On the 28th of April, at night, Mr. Hodges finding the neceſſity of directing his courſe towards Gwalior, took his leave of Major Brown. His baggage he ſent off, under the eſcort of a party of ſeapoys, who were attacked during their march by a banditti, (who are very numerous here) but the robbers were repelled by the bravery of the havildar.

On the 29th they arrived at Dohlpoor, and the next day croſſed the river Chumbull; the road was very bad, full of ravines and deep hollow-ways. Having reached the plain, Mr. Hodges encamped under the walls of a large mud fort, which had been lately taken from the Banna of Ghod, by Madajee Scindia, the Mahratta chief. Mr. Hodges and his people were very kindly treated by the governor here, who, though he would not permit Mr. Hodges to enter the fort, yet ſuffered his people to purchaſe grain and vegetables within it.

On the firſt of May Mr. Hodges arrived at Nurabad, which is a ſmall town with an old ſtone fort in it, and a ſtone bridge over a ſmall nullah (a branch of the Chumbull) conſiſting of ſeven tall, narrow-pointed arches. Two open pavilions, raiſed upon the bridge, crowned on each ſide with domes, are at the extremes of the three centre arches and ſmall cones, all built of the ſame ſtone as the bridge, and finiſhed with little domes, are at the extremes of the other two arches. Mr. Hodges arrived at Gwalior on the 2d. No kind of cultivation, nor even a hut was to be ſeen in all the excurſion from Dohlpoor.

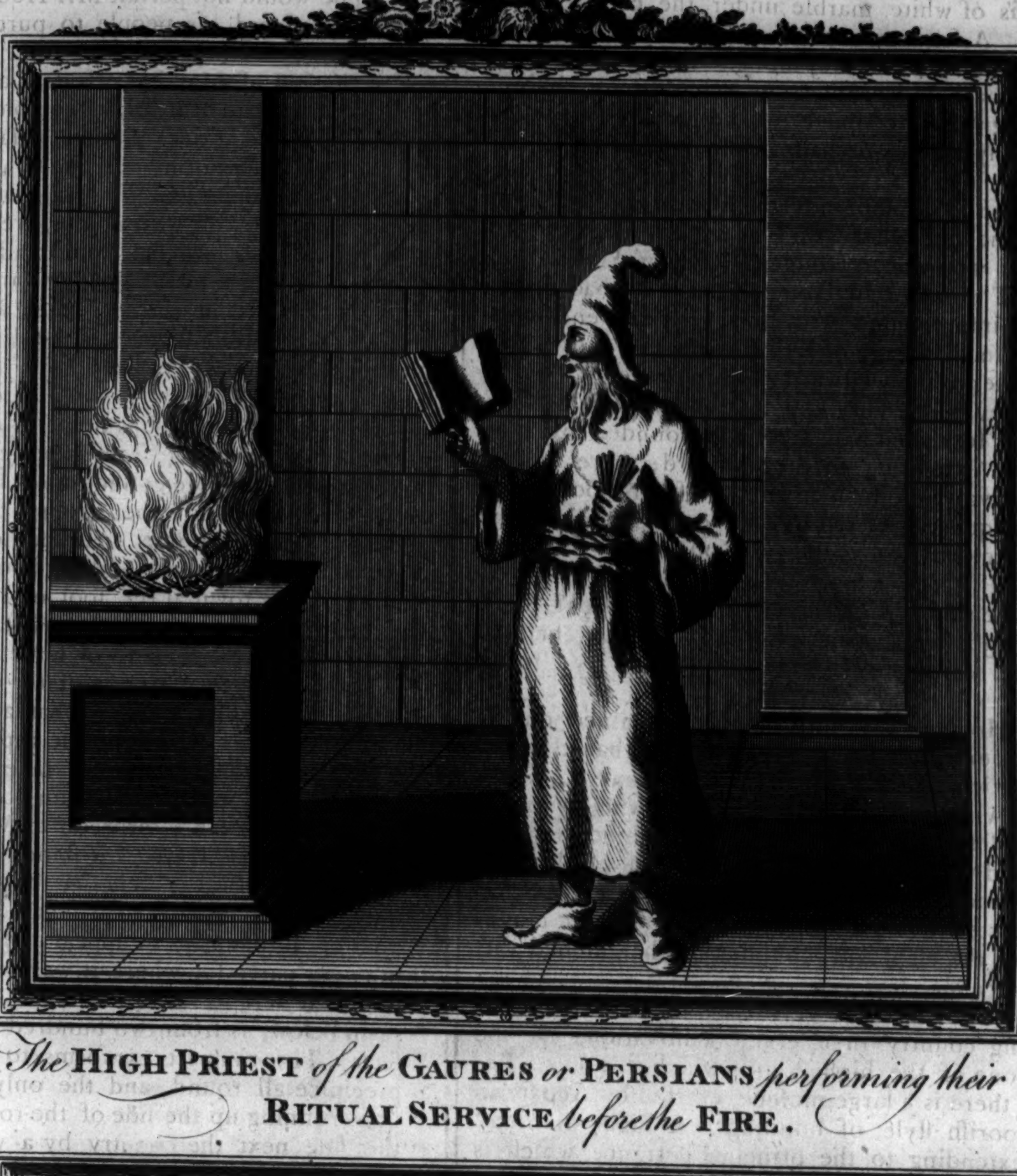
The fort of Gwalior is ſituated on the top of a great mountain, riſing from a perfect flat country. To the weſt are ſome conſiderable hills. The rock on which it ſtands is either from nature or art, perpendicular on every ſide. At the north-weſt end is the citadel, and a palace with a chain of ſeven gates leading to the town at the foot of the mountain. A wall ſurrounds the town, which is large, containing a moſque, and the remains of ſome good houſes.

For the further ſatisfaction of the curious, we ſhall inſert a letter of Captain Jonathan Scott's, to his brother, fully deſcriptive of the capture of Gwalior, and the meaſures which were taken of penetrating into Scindia's country. Captain Jonathan Scott was at that time Perſian interpreter to Major Popham.

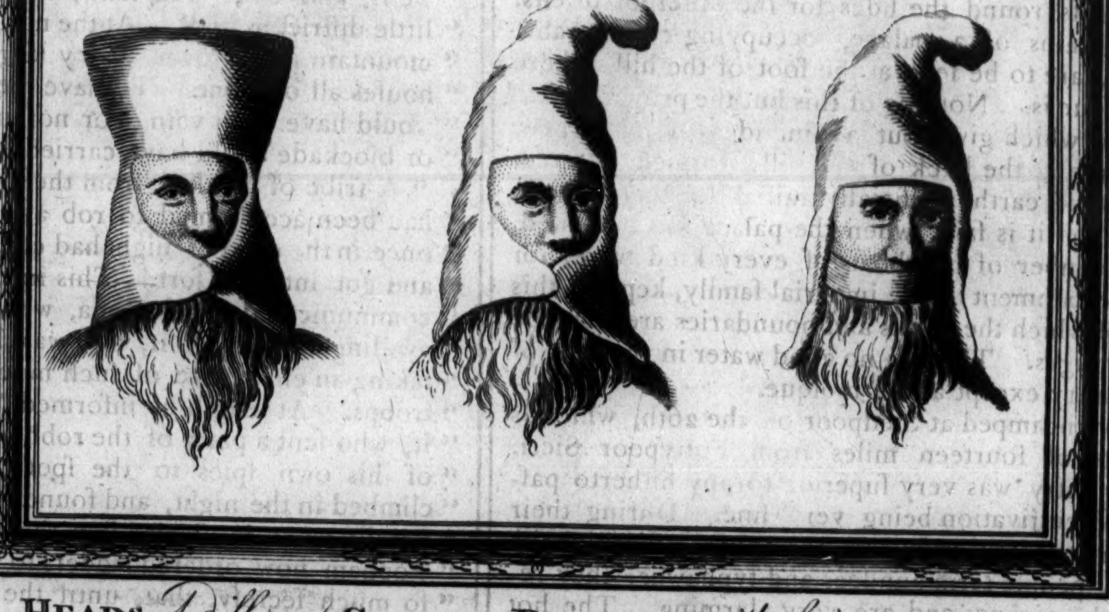
“The fortreſs of Gwalior ſtands on a vaſt rock of about four miles in length; but narrow, and of unequal breadth, and nearly flat on the top. The ſides are ſo ſteep, as to appear almoſt perpendicular in every part; for where it was not naturally ſo, it has been ſcraped away; and the height, from the plain below, is from two hundred to three hundred feet. The rampart conforms to the edge of the precipice all round, and the only entrance is by ſteps running up the ſide of the rock, defended on the ſide next the country by a wall and baſtions, and further guarded by ſeven ſtone gateways, at certain diſtances from each other. The area within is full of noble buildings, reſervoirs of water, wells, and cultivated land; ſo that it is really a little diſtrict in itſelf. At the north-weſt foot of the mountain is the town, pretty large, well-built, the houſes all of ſtone. To have beſieged this place would have been vain; for nothing but a ſurpriſe or blockade could have carried it.

“A tribe of banditti, from the diſtrict of the Rana, had been accuſtomed to rob about this town, and once in the dead of night had climbed up the rock, and got into the fort. This intelligence they had communicated to the Rana, who often thought of availing himſelf of it, but was fearful of undertaking an enterprize of ſuch moment with his own troops. At length he informed Major Popham of it, who ſent a party of the robbers to conduct ſome of his own ſpies to the ſpot: they accordingly climbed in the night, and found that the guards generally went to ſleep after their rounds. Major Popham now ordered ladders to be made, but with ſo much ſecreſy, that, until the night of the ſurpriſe, only myſelf and a few others knew of it.

“On the 3d of Auguſt, in the evening, a party was ordered to be in readineſs to march, under the command of Captain William Bruce; and Major Popham put himſelf at the head of two battalions, which were immediately to follow the ſtorming party. To prevent, as much as poſſible, any noiſe in approaching or aſcending the rock, a kind of ſhoes, of woollen cloth, were made for

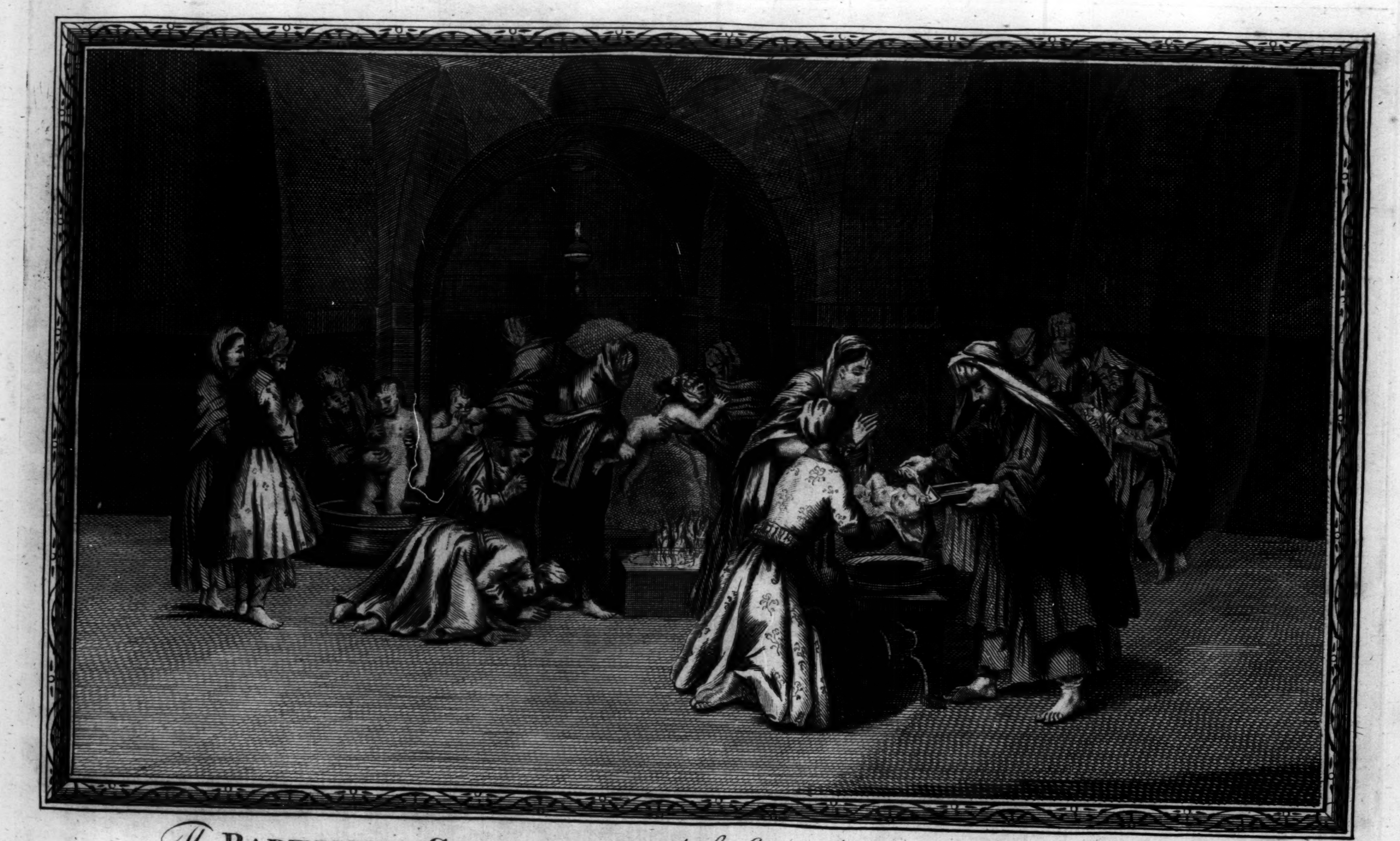


The **HIGH PRIEST** *of the* **GAURES** *or* **PERSIANS** *performing their* **RITUAL SERVICE** *before the* **FIRE.**



HEADS *of different* **GAURIAN PRIESTS**, *with their* **MITRES** *on, and their* **MOUTHS** *covered.*

BRITISH
7 FE 00
MUSEUM



The BAPTISMAL CEREMONIES of the Gaures parsis, or Guebres in PERSIA.

"the Seapoys, and ſtuffed with cotton. At eleven o'clock the whole detachment moved from the camp at Reypoor, eight miles from Gwalior, through unfrequented paths, and reached it a little before day-break. Juſt as Capt. Bruce arrived at the foot of the rock, he ſaw the lights which accompanied the rounds moving along the ramparts, and heard the centinels cough (the mode of ſignifying that all is well in an Indian camp or garriſon) which might have damped the ſpirits of many men, but ſerved only to inſpire him with more confidence, as the moment for action, that is, the interval between the paſſing of the rounds was now aſcertained: accordingly, when the lights were gone, the wooden ladders were placed againſt the rock, and one of the robbers firſt mounted, and returned with an account that the guard was retired to ſleep. Lieut. Cameron, our engineer, next mounted, and tied a rope ladder to the battlement of the wall; this kind of ladder being the only one adapted to the purpoſe of ſcaling the wall in a body (the wooden ones only ſerving to aſcend the crag of the rock, and to aſſiſt in fixing the rope ladder). When all was ready, Capt Bruce, with twenty Seapoy grenadiers, aſſembled without being diſcovered, and ſquatted down under the parapet; but, before a reinforcement arrived, three of the party had ſo little recollection as to fire on ſome of the garriſon, who happened to be lying aſleep near them; this had nearly ruined the whole plan: the garriſon were of courſe alarmed, and ran in great numbers towards the place; but, ignorant of the ſtrength of the aſſailants (as the men fired on had been killed outright) they ſuffered themſelves to be ſtopped by the warm fire kept up by the ſmall party of grenadiers, until Major Popham himſelf, with a conſiderable reinforcement, came to their aid. The garriſon then retreated to the inner buildings, and diſcharged a few rockets, but ſoon afterwards retreated precipitately through the gate; whilſt the principal officers, thus deſerted, aſſembled together in one houſe, and hung out a white flag. Major Popham ſent an officer to give them aſſurance of quarter and protection; and thus, in the ſpace of two hours, this important and aſtoniſhing fortreſs was completely in our poſſeſſion: we had only twenty men wounded, and none killed. On the ſide of the enemy, Bapogee, the governor, was killed, and moſt of the principal officers were wounded."

This celebrated and ancient fortreſs is ſituated in the heart of Hindoſtan Proper, the ancient capital of the empire, about eighty miles to the ſouth of Agra, and 130 from the neareſt part of the Ganges: from Calcutta, by the neareſt route, upwards of 800, by the ordinary road 910; and from the Britiſh frontiers 280. Some time after the circumſtances already mentioned, the fort was delivered up to the Rana of Gohd: the peace being agreed on, though not finally ſettled, between the Britiſh government and Scindia, the chief found an opportunity to inveſt it once more, and was at this time before the place with 70,000 men: his ſucceſs in reducing it was entirely owing to the treachery of one of the Rana's officers, who admitted a party of the Maharatta troops.

Mr. Hodges acknowledges the great attention and kindneſs of Meſſrs. Anderſon's, who were then in Scindia's camp, forming the treaty of peace and alliance between the Engliſh company and Madejee Scindia, which was concluded afterwards in a very able manner. Mr. Anderſon had ſent for our traveller's protection an eſcort of Maharatta horſe, which, conſidering the then dangerous ſituation of the country, was abſolutely neceſſary; indeed, owing to the ſtate of Gwalior at this time, Mr. Hodges was prevented from making further obſervations. After a ſtay of ten days, he was determined to purſue his journey to Lucknow with all poſſible expedition; accordingly he ſet off at night on the 12th, by dank-bearers, leaving his ſervants to follow with his baggage at leiſure, and reached Gohd the next day, where he ſtopped a few hours for refreſhment.

At Gohd Mr. Hodges met an Engliſhman, who had been a Watch-Maker, but now commanded two battalions of the Rana's infantry. This perſon ſeemed heartily tired of his military profeſſion, and was deſirous to return to his former occupation, having now made ſome little property in the Rana's ſervice, with which he wiſhed much to retreat, but not being ſuffered to depart, had no means of conveying it, and therefore requeſted Mr. Hodges to take charge of a caſket for him to Lucknow, and deliver it to his friend; with which requeſt Mr. Hodges readily complied, though, had he foreſeen the diſmal, dreary, duſky, and barren country he had to paſs through, he owns he would have been extremely averſe to the undertaking. He met with no villages, or ſcarcely any human being, till he reached Chumbull, the banks of which river are very high, deſcending through deep ravines, where there are ſome huts; and here every perſon he met had a ſavage-like appearance. Mr. Hodges was two days and a night on his journey from Gwalior to Etaya: having ſuffered much on account of the extreme heat, he felt conſiderable ſatisfaction on reaching Etaya.

Mr. Hodges arrived at Lucknow on the 16th, but owing to the great heat and fatigue of the journey, he was taken exceedingly ill of a violent dyſentery, his recovery from which was very tedious. He ſtayed with Colonel Polier ten days, and experienced much attention and hoſpitality from that gentleman, he was, however, obliged to accept of an invitation from Colonel Merlin, who had a large brick houſe, where he gradually recovered; the houſe of his former friend (Colonel Polier) being exceedingly hot, as it was only a large bungelow. Theſe bungelows are buildings in India, generally raiſed on a baſe of brick, one, two, or three feet from the ground, and conſiſt only of one ſtory; the following is the common plan. A large room in the centre for an eating and ſitting-room and rooms at each corner for ſleeping; one general thatch which comes low to each ſide, covers the whole; the ſpace between the angle rooms are viſanders or open porticoes, to ſit in during the evenings; the centre hall is lighted from the ſides with windows and a large door in the centre; ſometimes the centre viſanders at each end are converted into rooms.

As ſoon as Mr. Hodges had recovered his health and ſtrength, he was determined to return towards Calcutta, but inſtead of travelling the ſame route by which he came, reſolved to paſs down the river Goomty by water; accordingly he left Lucknow on the 16th of July, but did not enter the Ganges, into which the river Goomty falls, till Auguſt the 1ſt, owing to the ſeveral windings of the river.

The banks of the river Goomty are in ſeveral places extremely beautiful, and particularly ſo at this time of the year, when they diſplay fine verdure, and are formed of ſmooth ſloping vegetable earth. Several villages are on its banks between Lucknow and the town of Jionpoor, but which are not ſo well cultivated, as might be expected from the apparent number of inhabitants. A ſafeguard is abſolutely neceſſary in a voyage down this river, on account of the various depredations continually made here. Mr. Hodges ſaw a body of about fifty horſe near a village of Sultenpoor, which belonged to a famous marauder, Rah Sing, whoſe robberies had rendered him an univerſal nuiſance. This party of plunderers watched Mr. Hodges's boats the whole of one night, but they were diſappointed in their views, through the vigilance of the Seapoys, and diſappeared entirely at day-break.

The fort of Jionpoor, a very extenſive building, is ſituated on a high land, and which commands the bridge. This now, is for the moſt part in ruins, though formerly it commanded the country from the Ganges to Lucknow entirely; both in reſpect to ſuperior ſtrength and natural ſituation. Sultan Firoz Shah erected it in 1102, and once it was the ſeat of an empire. The great muſjiid or mauſoleum now remaining, was built by Chaja Jehan, vizier to Sultan Mahummud Shah, during the minority of his ſon, when he aſſumed the title of Sultan Shicke (king of the eaſt) took poſſeſſion of Bahar, and fixed his reſidence at Jionpoor. This mauſoleum he intended for his own and family's interment. In its preſent ruinous ſtate it is a great pyramid in the front, which is covered with ornaments; the pyramid, the apex being cut off, is blunt at the top; a dome riſes over the centre of the building (wherein are the remains of the tombs) conſiderably below the front of the building, which is ſeen from without. It alſo appears from the foundations now only remaining, that there has been a ſquare of buildings in the front.

The ſtone bridge croſſing the river at this place, conſiſting of ſixteen pointed arches, is in tolerable good repair. There are ſeveral little ſhops erected of ſtone on both ſides, on the top of the bridge. This bridge, as appears from a Perſian inſcription thereon, was founded in 1567, by Khan Khannah, vizier to the Emperor Acbar, and Subeh of the province of Oud. The length of time, and particularly the force of the ſtream (which, in the time of the rains is very great) that this bridge has withſtood, ſufficiently evince the ſound materials of its conſtruction. It has been known that the inundations have frequently riſen above the bridge, particularly in 1774, when a whole brigade (which conſiſts of 10,000 men) of the Britiſh forces paſſed in boats over it. This river falls into the Ganges ſome ſmall diſtance below the city of Benares, when Mr. Hodges proceeded ſtraight to Buxar.

Mr. Hodges was now reſolved to make a journey to Saſſeram, forty miles inland, the birth place of the Emperor Shere Shah, to viſit the mauſoleum of that emperor. The rains being now in ſeaſon, it was with the greateſt difficulty he paſſed in his palankeen: the whole ground was one continued ſwamp, and the bearers waded in ſeveral places above their middle in water.

This monument is exceedingly grand; it riſes from the centre of a large ſquare lake, each ſide bounded by maſonry and deſcending to the water by ſtone ſteps on every ſide, now almoſt gone to ruin. Mr. Hodges imagines that it exceeds a mile. The plan is as follows: there is a ſquare baſe riſing from the centre of the lake, which, at each angle, has pavilions crowned with domes, and finiſhed with a cullus. There was a bridge from this baſe, which appears from the now remaining ruins, to have conſiſted of ſix pointed arches, which communicated to the ſide of the lake, and a double flight of ſteps to the water are on two ſides. An octagon building is raiſed on the baſe, which has three pointed arches in each face, and there are pavilions finiſhed like the former on each angle. There runs ſomewhat behind this an octagon with one window in each ſide, and pavilions on the angles ſimilar to thoſe below. There is likewiſe an octagon behind this, which, in diameter, is ninety-two feet, and from the extremes, the dome riſes, which, on the top is finiſhed by a ſmall pavilion, ſimilar to thoſe already mentioned.

At preſent a great part of this building is covered with ſhrubs and trees, which have taken root within the ſtones, and threaten to bring this grand edifice very ſpeedily to ruin, if not very ſuddenly to a total overthrow. The inſide of the building is quite ſimple and plain; there are no traces whatever of any ornaments having been beſtowed thereupon. The emperor's tomb is ſtill remaining. It lies in the centre, ſurrounded with ſeveral others which belong to his children. The dome, which is now, by length of time and neglect, much disfigured, is like the reſt of the building, of a fine grey free ſtone. The country, throughout the vicinities, is hilly: there are hills ſurrounding the lakes which are formed by the excavations when it was firſt made; the majority of theſe are at preſent covered with trees.

Mr. Hodges, on his return to Buxar, proceeded to Bauglepoor, where he was very much grieved to find his friend Mr. Cleveland on his death-bed. This gentleman not having paid a proper attention to a delicate conſtitution, but ſo attached to public buſineſs, that, by a conſtant and inceſſant application thereto, he poſtponed the only ſalutary expedient of a more favourable climate, now died in the courſe of three months on board a veſſel at the mouth of the Ganges, wherein he had embarked for the Cape of Good Hope. His remains were brought back in the pilot veſſel, which had attended the ſhip, and were interred at Bauglepoor, where a handſome monument was erected to his memory; the laſt tribute his much affected friends could pay.

Mr. Hodges now proceeds to give his impartial opinion of the arts in India; there are no inſtances of excellence, he thinks, in ſculpture among the Moors, except in the Taja Mahel at Agra, whereon there are flowers carved with much taſte and ingenuity.

The amazing monuments ſtill to be found in India, ſufficiently declare the Muſſulman conquerors to have been great adepts in the principles of architecture, and to have had conſiderable taſte for grand compoſition. They are, in painting, however, confined to miniature, wherein, for delicacy of colour and neatneſs of execution, they are excellent. Their attempts are only in water colours, and as the religion of Mahomet forbids all reſemblance of animated nature, it is not to be wondered that their progreſs therein is ſo ſlow and confined.

Mr. Hodges thinks the Hindoos ſuperior to the Mahometans in the ornamental parts of architecture. In ſeveral of their buildings the ſculpture is beautifully executed, and being cut with a peculiar ſharpneſs and finely drawn, is deſerving of great commendation. However, their paintings, which, like their ſculpture, are, for the moſt part, repreſentations of thoſe objects they make their religious worſhip, are inferior to the Mooriſh pictures, which are all portraits.

Mr. Hodges arrived at Calcutta on September the 24th, the time of travel was nine months and fourteen days. This journey was through a country which had been once ſubject to the Moguls: "It is," Mr. Hodges ſays, "the greateſt and richeſt empire, "perhaps, of which the human annals can produce "an inſtance, and which was adorned by many really "great characters in politics and arms."

Our traveller had entertained the intention of undertaking another journey from the Ganges, through the Deccan to the weſtern coaſt of India. This journey he intended to have commenced at Benares and finiſhed at Surat. Mr. Hodges ſtrongly recommends ſuch a journey to the attention of any artiſt who may hereafter be induced to viſit India; this being a part unexplored, and which would, of courſe, afford much matter relative to the ſtate of India, as ſeveral of the Rajahs in that part of the country are in poſſeſſion of lands handed down from the earlieſt period of the Hindoos records. He alſo judges, from what he has ſeen of the Hindoos character, that ſuch an undertaking would add conſiderably to their ſtock of knowledge, relative to the eaſtern continent, and might with the greateſt ſafety be carried into execution.

Having now accompliſhed theſe intereſting TRAVELS IN INDIA, *we ſhall proceed with the four great journeys of Lieutenant Patterſon into the country of the Hottentots and Caffraria; and truſt, while we preſent our numerous readers with novel facts and curious diſcoveries, they will ſtill approve ef, and be further pleaſed with our collection.*

A COMPLETE

ſtrength and natural ſituation. Sultan Firoz Shah erected it in 1105, and once it was the ſeat of an empire. The great muſjid or mauſoleum now remaining, was built by Chaja Jehan, vizier to Sultan Mahummud Shah, during the minority of his ſon, when he aſſumed the title of Sultan Shicke (king of the eaſt) took poſſeſſion of Bahar, and fixed his reſidence at Jionpoor. This mauſoleum he intended for his own and family's interment. In its preſent ruinous ſtate it is a great pyramid in the front, which is covered with ornaments; the pyramid, the apex being cut off, is blunt at the top; a dome riſes over the centre of the building (wherein are the remains of the tombs) conſiderably below the front of the building, which is ſeen from without. It alſo appears from the foundations now only remaining, that there has been a ſquare of buildings in the front.

The ſtone bridge croſſing the river at this place, conſiſting of ſixteen pointed arches, is in tolerable good repair. There are ſeveral little ſhops erected of ſtone on both ſides, on the top of the bridge. This bridge, as appears from a Perſian inſcription thereon, was founded in 1567, by Khan Khanah, vizier to the Emperor Acbar, and Subeh of the province of Oud. The length of time, and particularly the force of the ſtream (which, in the time of the rains is very great) that this bridge has withſtood, ſufficiently evince the ſound materials of its conſtruction. It has been known that the inundations have frequently riſen above the bridge, particularly in 1774, when a whole brigade (which conſiſts of 10,000 men) of the Britiſh forces paſſed in boats over it. This river falls into the Ganges ſome ſmall diſtance below the city of Benares, when Mr. Hodges proceeded ſtraight to Buxar.

Mr. Hodges was now reſolved to make a journey to Safferam, forty miles inland, the birth place of the Emperor Shere Shah, to viſit the mauſoleum of that emperor. The rains being now in ſeaſon, it was with the greateſt difficulty he paſſed in his palankeen: the whole ground was one continued ſwamp, and the bearers waded in ſeveral places above their middle in water.

This monument is exceedingly grand; it riſes from the centre of a large ſquare lake, each ſide bounded by maſonry and deſcending to the water by ſtone ſteps on every ſide, now almoſt gone to ruin. Mr. Hodges imagines that it exceeds a mile. The plan is as follows: there is a ſquare baſe riſing from the centre of the lake, which, at each angle, has pavilions crowned with domes, and finiſhed with a cuſpus. There was a bridge from this baſe, which appears from the now remaining ruins, to have conſiſted of ſix pointed arches, which communicated to the ſide of the lake, and a double flight of ſteps to the water appears on two ſides. An octagon building is raiſed on the baſe, which has three pointed arches on each face, and there are pavilions finiſhed like the former on each angle. There riſes ſomewhat behind this an octagon with one window in each ſide, and pavilions on the angles ſimilar to thoſe below. There is likewiſe an octagon behind this, which, in diameter, is ninety-two feet, and from the extremes, the dome riſes, which, on the top is finiſhed by a ſmall pavilion, ſimilar to thoſe already mentioned.

At preſent a great part of this building is covered with ſhrubs and trees, which have taken root within the ſtones, and threaten to bring this grand edifice very ſpeedily to ruin, if not very ſuddenly to a total overthrow. The inſide of the building is quite ſimple and plain; there are no traces whatever of any ornaments having been beſtowed thereupon. The emperor's tomb is ſtill remaining. It lies in the centre, ſurrounded with ſeveral others which belong to his children. The dome, which is now, by length of time and neglect, much diſfigured, is like the reſt of the building, of a fine grey free ſtone. The country, throughout the vicinities, is hilly: there are hills ſurrounding the lakes which are formed by the excavations when it was firſt made; the majority of theſe are at preſent covered with trees.

Mr. Hodges, on his return to Buxar, proceeded to Bauglepoor, where he was very much grieved to find his friend Mr. Cleveland on his death-bed. This gentleman not having paid a proper attention to a delicate conſtitution, but ſo attached to public buſineſs, that, by a conſtant and inceſſant application thereto, he poſtponed the only ſalutary expedient of a more favourable climate, now died in the courſe of ſome months on board a veſſel at the mouth of the Ganges, wherein he had embarked for the Cape of Good Hope. His remains were brought back in the pilot veſſel, which had attended the ſhip, and were interred at Bauglepoor, where a handſome monument was erected to his memory; the laſt tribute his much afflicted friends could pay.

Mr. Hodges now proceeds to give his impartial opinion of the arts in India; there are no inſtances of excellence, he thinks, in ſculpture among the Moors, except in the Taja Mahel at Agra, whereon there are flowers carved with much taſte and ingenuity.

The amazing monuments ſtill to be found in India, ſufficiently declare the Muſſulman conquerors to have been great adepts in the principles of architecture, and to have had conſiderable taſte for grand compoſition. They are, in painting, however, confined to miniature, wherein, for delicacy of colour and neatneſs of execution, they are excellent. Their attempts are only in water colours, and as the religion of Mahomet forbids all reſemblance of animated nature, it is not to be wondered that their progreſs therein is ſo ſlow and confined.

Mr. Hodges thinks the Hindoos ſuperior to the Mahometans in the ornamental parts of architecture. In ſeveral of their buildings the ſculpture is beautifully executed, and being cut with a peculiar ſharpneſs and finely drawn, is deſerving of great commendation. However, their paintings, which, like their ſculpture, are, for the moſt part, repreſentations of thoſe objects they make their religious worſhip, are inferior to the Mooriſh pictures, which are all portraits.

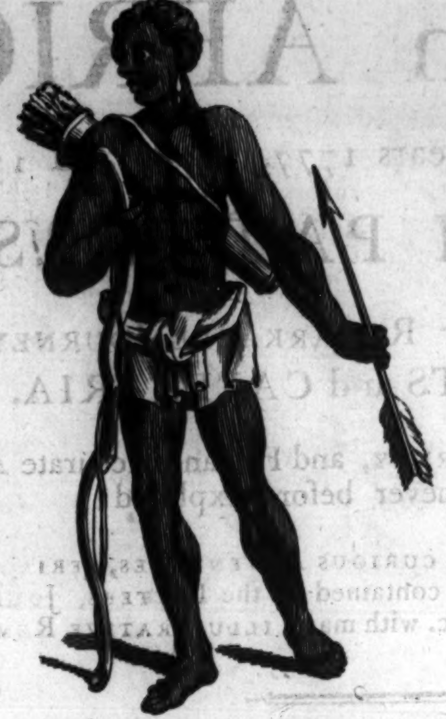
Mr. Hodges arrived at Calcutta on September the 25th; the time of travel was nine months and fourteen days. This journey was through a country which had been once ſubject to the Moguls: "It is," Mr Hodges ſays, "the greateſt and richeſt empire, "perhaps, of which the human annals can produce "an inſtance, and which was adorned by many really "great characters in politics and arms."

Our traveller had entertained the intention of undertaking another journey from the Ganges, through the Deccan to the weſtern coaſt of India. This journey he intended to have commenced at Benares and finiſhed at Surat. Mr. Hodges ſtrongly recommends ſuch a journey to the attention of any artiſt who may hereafter be induced to viſit India; this being a part unexplored, and which would, of courſe, afford much matter relative to the ſtate of India, as ſeveral of the Rajahs in that part of the country are in poſſeſſion of lands handed down from the earlieſt period of the Hindoos records. He alſo judges, from what he has ſeen of the Hindoos character, that ſuch an undertaking would add conſiderably to their ſtock of knowledge, relative to the eaſtern continent, and might with the greateſt ſafety be carried into execution.

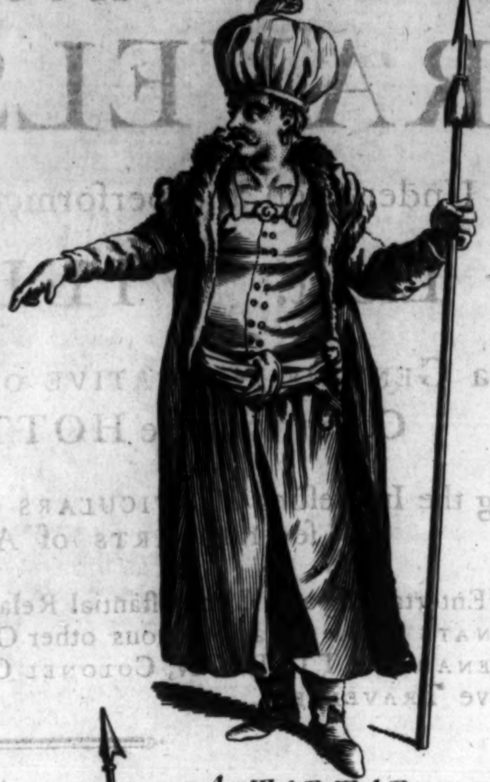
BRITISH MUSEUM

Having now accompliſhed theſe intereſting TRAVELS IN INDIA, *we ſhall proceed with the four great journeys of Lieutenant Patterſon into the country of the Hottentots and Caffraria; and truſt, while we preſent our numerous readers with novel facts and curious diſcoveries, they will ſtill approve of, and be further pleaſed with our collection.*

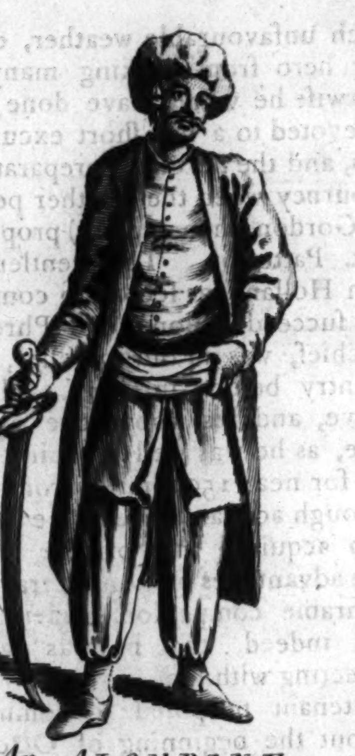
Engraved for **PORTLOCK's** *New* **COLLECTION** *of* **VOYAGES & TRAVELS.**



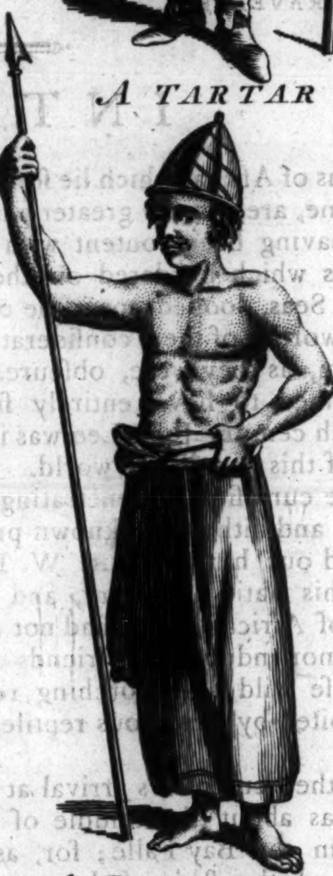
A MALABAR



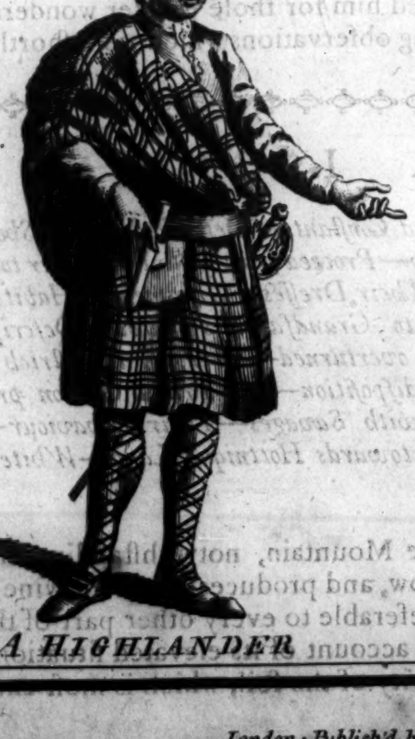
A TARTAR



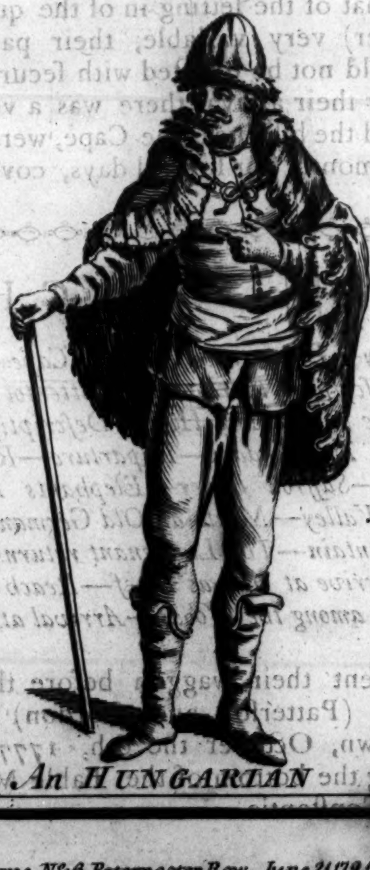
An ALGERINE



A JAVANESE



A HIGHLANDER



An HUNGARIAN

London; Publish'd by Alexr. Hogg, at the Kings Arms No.16 Paternoster Row, June 21.1794.

A COMPLETE, NEW, AND AUTHENTIC

HISTORY OF TRAVELS in AFRICA;

Undertaken and performed in the Years 1777, 1778, and 1779,

By Lieut. WILLIAM PATTERSON,

Being a Genuine Narrative of his Four Remarkable Journeys into the Country of the HOTTENTOTS and CAFFRARIA.

Including the Intereſting Particulars of each Journey, and Full and Accurate Accounts of ſeveral Parts of AFRICA, never before explored;

Being an Entertaining and Circumſtantial Relation of ſeveral curious Adventures, perilous Attempts, fortunate Escapes, and various other Occurrences contained in the Letters, Journals, &c. of Lieutenant PATTERSON, Colonel GORDON, &c. with many illustrative Remarks by other reſpective Travellers.

INTRODUCTION.

THE regions of Africa, which lie ſouth of the equinoctial line, are, for the greater part, unknown. The Romans having been content with the ſpoils of thoſe provinces which bordered on the Mediterranean and Red Seas, looked upon the other parts as barren and unworthy of their conſideration; accordingly left them, as they were, obſcure. The ſpirit of inquiry ſeemed to have entirely ſubſided; for even in the 16th century John Leo was ignorant of at leaſt one half of this part of the world.

The laudable curioſity of penetrating into the ſeveral wonders, and hitherto unknown productions of nature, induced our hero (Lieut. W. Patterſon) to leave a-while his native country, and explore the dreary deſerts of Africa, which had not as yet ſtimulated ambition nor induced the friends of commerce to examine thoſe wild and ſcorching regions which were only inhabited by venomous reptiles and ravenous beaſts.

The time of the lieutenant's arrival at the Cape of Good Hope, was about the middle of May 1777: they anchored in the Bay Falſe; for, as the ſeaſon was very late, and the ſtate of the weather, at this time, (being that of the ſetting in of the quoad monſoon or winter) very variable, their paſſage into Table-Bay could not be effected with ſecurity. In a ſhort time after their arrival there was a very heavy fall of rain, and the hills near the Cape, were, towards the end of the month, for ſeveral days, covered with ſnow. Such unfavourable weather, of courſe, prevented our hero from making many obſervations, which otherwiſe he would have done; this time he therefore devoted to a few ſhort excurſions from the Cape Town, and the neceſſary preparations for a more extenſive journey when the weather permitted.

Colonel Gordon (then captain) propoſed to accompany Lieut. Patterſon. This gentleman lately returned from Holland, as ſecond in command, and appointed to ſucceed Colonel Du Phren, then commander in chief, was an old traveller, and had been in this country before in 1774. His information was extenſive, and his knowledge of that country conſiderable, as he was well acquainted with the interior parts for near 1500 miles from the Cape; beſides a thorough acquaintance of the Dutch language, he had alſo acquired that of the Hottentots, and having theſe advantages over many travellers, was certainly a deſirable companion. Lieut. Patterſon acknowledges, indeed, that he was particularly fortunate in meeting with him.

The lieutenant purpoſed to commence his firſt journey about the beginning of October, at which time the atmoſphere is generally in a ſettled ſtate and cultivation in maturity: he continually ripened himſelf for his arduous undertaking, by ſeveral ſhort excurſions, which afforded him much amuſement, and prepared him for thoſe greater wonders and more intereſting obſervations which were ſhortly to take place.

CHAPTER I.

The firſt Journey—Departure from the Cape—Table Mountains, and Conſtantia Deſcribed—The Shore of Bay Falſe explored—Deſcription thereof—Of Hottentot Holland—Of Hang Lip—Proceed from Palmita Rivier to Knofleck Rivier—From thence to the How Hook—Deſcription of the Hottentots—Their Dreſſes, Ornaments, Habitations, &c. &c.—Arrival at Zwellendam—Departure—Reed Valley—Proceed to Grandfather's Wood—Deſcription thereof—Channa Land—Saffron River—Elephants River—The Waggon overturned—Arrival at Oſtrich Leg—Proceed through Beer Valley—Meets an Old German—The Lieutenant's Indiſpoſition—His Friend Gordon proceeds towards the Snow Mountain—The Lieutenant returns to Tſimcko—Meets with Savages—Their Behaviour—An agreeable Excurſion—Arrive at Atquas Kloef—Reach Sure Flacta—Proceed towards Hottnique Land—White Elſe River—An Adventure among the Woods—Arrival at Cape Town.

HAVING ſent their waggon before them, our travellers (Patterſon and Gordon) departed from Cape Town, October the 6th, 1777. They proceeded along the bottom of the Table Mountain, which leads to Conſtantia.

Table Mountain, notwithſtanding its ſituation, is rather low, and produces excellent wine; but Conſtantia is preferable to every other part of this diſtrict, not only on account of its elevated ſituation, but for the ſuperiority of the ſoil, which is moſt excellent mould.

They paſſed the night at ſand-fleet, where they experienced much hoſpitality, and alſo ſtayed here the next day on account of the unfavourable weather.

They proceeded on the 8th, along the bottom of Bay Falſe, from the point of Moeſen-Berg, to very near Hottentot Holland, being a continuation of what is called the Sand-Down, which is a conſiderable ſpace of ground between the Table-Bay and Bay Falſe. The greater part of this, on account of a white ſand blown up by the ſouth eaſt winds in very large ridges, is uninhabited; there are, however, ſeveral ſcattered ſhrubs and other produce. A ſmall fleet is near the middle of the bay, where our travellers having found ſome fiſhermen, hoped to regale themſelves with oyſters, but herein were diſappointed, as they could not reach the banks on account of the violence of the ſurf; they reſted at the hut about an hour, being much fatigued with the heat of the day.

About ſun-ſet they arrived at Erſt Rivier, (i. e. Friſt River) which begins from the Stillen Boſch mountains, and here empties itſelf into Bay Falſe. On account of the late rains they had ſome difficulty in croſſing it. When dark they heard ſeveral hyenas; at nine o'clock they reached Hottentot Holland. This is ſituated on the north-eaſt ſide of the Bay Falſe, and ſurrounded on three ſides by lofty mountains; it is, however, open to the ſouth weſt, which affords a proſpect of the Bay. Hottentot Holland's Kloaf is one of the moſt difficult paſſes there is into the country; it is a narrow road, cut through the hill (as the word Kloaf ſignifies) the top of which ſeems on a par with Table Land. The ſoil of Hottentot Holland is wet and marſhy, but it produces good corn.

Having ſent their baggage through Hottentot Holland's Kloaf, they went round the Hang Lip on the 12th, and examined all the rocks and bays in the mouth of the Bay Falſe. They took horſe as far as poſſible, and Lieutenant Patterſon got a fall from his, upon the ſide of a very high precipice; he fortunately ſaved himſelf by laying hold of a ſhrub, which grew out of a rock: the rocks and mountains here are exceeding rugged and unſafe. They reached the mouth of Stienbraſſam river about noon, and in the morning came to a deep bay which was unknown. It is open to the north weſt, and being ſcreened by lofty mountains, is well ſheltered from the ſouth-eaſt winds. Our travellers called this Van Pletenbey's Bay. Here they agreed to ſtay all night, there being a ſmall ſtream of excellent water, and having brought with them a portion of proviſions and cloaks, in caſe of delay.

They purſued their journey next morning round the Hang Lip, or Cape Falſe; all the country from Hottentot to this place is uninhabited, as it entirely conſiſts of rugged mountains and precipices. They paſſed Gordon's Bay, which, though the entrance is free from rocks and a fine white ſandy bottom, is ſmaller than the firſt. About a mile and a half from this they came to Patterſon's Bay, which is larger than Gordon's Bay, but ſmaller than Van Pletenbey's Bay. Between Van Pletenbey's Bay and Gordon's Bay there is plenty of wood and lakes of freſh water. All theſe bays open to the north weſt and ſtrike ſouth inland. They paſſed Cape Falſe about two in the afternoon. Here to the S. E. is an extenſive plain, covered with different kinds, but all very bad for feeding cattle. They ſaw a kind of antelope and ſeveral buffaloes. About evening they came to the mouth of Palmita Rivier, which it was with the greateſt difficulty they could ſwim through, as the rains to the northward had raiſed it very high, and the courſe was exceedingly rapid. This night they had very heavy rain, attended with lightning and loud thunder. They reached Knoflick Kraal's Rivier about two in the morning. This river takes its name from a ſpecies of wild garlick, which is common there. On the firſt attempt which the lieutenant made to paſs the river, he found himſelf out of his depth and got out with great difficulty, as it was exceedingly dark. Here they were obliged to ſtay till day-light; in vain they attempted to kindle a fire, and the rain ſtill continued very hard; they croſſed the river as ſoon as ever they could ſee, and reached the houſe of Michael Otto, about nine in the morning, where they met with a very kind reception. Here they had their clothes dried, and refreſhed themſelves with ſleep and proviſions: they had been twenty-four hours without eating.

This place, ſituated between the Hottentot Holland mountains and the How-Hook (a ſteep ſandy paſs) produces very good wine and corn; but, though the ſoil be a fine rich mould, yet the paſture is coarſe and does not agree with cattle in general. They proceeded, at two o'clock, on their journey through the How-Hook, where they met with a gentleman on his return to the Cape, who had been at Zwellendam. This gentleman forewarned them of the lions which are lurking about between this place and the Cape. When they had parted, our travellers croſſed the Bott Rivier, and arrived at the Swart Berg, or Black Hill, about eight in the evening, where there is a warm bath. Here were ſeveral people from the Cape, uſing the water of the bath, which, in all caſes, they imagine a ſpecific. The hill whence the ſpring iſſues, is compoſed of a ſpecies of granites, with a good deal of iron. There is another bath at a little diſtance for ſlaves and Hottentots. That uſed by Europeans is 130 degrees in temperature, but by a ſtream of cold water, which runs cloſe by the place, may be reduced to any degree of heat; the other, uſed by the ſlaves, &c. is about 115 degrees. There is excellent paſture here, and the country very pleaſant.

They next directed their courſe eaſtward, paſſed a number of pleaſant farms, and, in a day's journey, arrived at the firſt Hottentot Kraal, which conſiſted of about ſix huts, built in a circular form.

The Hottentots are as tall as the generality of Europeans: they are, in general, more ſlender, on account of their being either ſtinted in ſoot, or unaccuſtomed to exerciſe. Their hands and feet, compared with the other parts of their body, are very ſmall. The root of the noſe is, for the moſt part, very low, by which means the diſtance of the eyes from each other appears to be greater than in Europeans. The tip of the noſe likewiſe is pretty flat. The iris is ſcarcely ever of a light colour, but has a dark brown caſt, which ſometimes approaches to black. Their ſkin is of a yellowiſh brown hue, which ſomething reſembles that of an European who has the jaundice in a high degree; however, this colour is not in the leaſt obſervable in the whites of the eyes. One does not find ſuch thick lips among the Hottentots as among their neighbours the Negroes, the Caffres, and the Mozambiques. In fine, their mouths are of a middling ſize, and almoſt always furniſhed with a ſet of the fineſt teeth that can be ſeen; and, taken together with the reſt of their features, as well as their ſhape, carriage, and every motion, in ſhort their tout enſemble, indicates health and content, or at leaſt an air of ſans ſouci. At the ſame time, this careleſs mien diſcovers marks of alacrity and reſolution; qualities which the Hottentots, in fact, can exhibit upon occaſion. Their heads one would ſuppoſe to be covered with a black, though not very cloſe, frizzled kind of wool, if the natural harſhneſs of it did not ſhow, that it was hair, if poſſible, more woolly than that of the negroes. If in other reſpects there ſhould, by great chance, be obſerved any traces of a beard, or of hair on any other parts of the body, ſuch as are ſeen on the Europeans, it is, however, very trifling, and generally of the ſame kind as that on the head.

The women have no parts uncommon to the reſt of their ſex. With reſpect to their dreſs, and method of painting themſelves, the latter (if painting it may be called) conſiſts in beſmearing their bodies all over moſt copiouſly with fat, in which there is mixed up a little ſoot. This is never wiped off; on the contrary, they never uſed any thing to clean their ſkins, excepting that when, in greaſing the wheels of their waggons, their hands were beſmeared with tar and pitch, they uſed to get it off very eaſily with cow-dung, at the ſame time rubbing their arms into the bargain up to the ſhoulders with this coſmetic: ſo that as the duſt and other filth, together with their ſooty ointment and the ſweat of their bodies, muſt neceſſarily, notwithſtanding it is continually wearing off, in ſome meaſure adhere to the ſkin, it contributes not a little to conceal the natural hue of the latter, and at the ſame time to change it from a bright umber-brown to a browniſh-yellow colour obſcured with filth and naſtineſs.

Beſides the pleaſure the Hottentots enjoy in beſmearing their bodies from head to foot, they likewiſe perfume themſelves with powder of herbs, with which they powder their heads and bodies, rubbing it in all over them when they beſmear themſelves. The odour of it is at the ſame time rank and aromatic, and ſeems to come neareſt to that of the poppy mixed with ſpices.

The Hottentots, with their ſkins beſmeared with greaſe and ſoot, and bucku-powder, are by this means in a great meaſure defended from the influence of the air, and may in a manner reckon themſelves dreſſed. In other reſpects, both men and women are wont to appear quite undreſſed; indeed, one may ſay naked, except a trifling covering, with which they always conceal part of their bodies. With the men this covering conſiſts of a bag or purſe made of ſkin, hanging quite open, the hollow part of which ſeems deſigned to receive that which with us modeſty requires to be concealed; but as this piece of furniture is only faſtened by a ſmall part of its upper end to a narrow belt, in other reſpects hanging quite looſe, it is but a very imperfect concealment; and when the wearer is walking, or otherwiſe in motion, it is none at all. They call this purſe by the Dutch name of Jackall, the name of an animal of the fox kind common in that country, as it is almoſt always prepared of the ſkin of this creature, with the hairy ſide turned outward. As another covering, which decency requires of the men, we ought, perhaps, to conſider the two leather ſtraps, which generally hang from the bottom of the chine of the back down upon the thighs; each of them being of the form of an Iſoſceles triangle, with their points or upper ends faſtened to the belt juſt mentioned, and with their baſes, at furtheſt three fingers broad, hanging careleſsly down. Theſe ſtraps have very little dreſſing beſtowed upon them, ſo that they make ſomewhat of a rattling as the Hottentot runs along; and probably by fanning him, ſerve to produce an agreeable coolneſs. The only and real intention, however, of this part of their dreſs, is ſaid to be to cloſe a certain orifice when they ſit down. They are at that time likewiſe brought forwards, ſo as to cover the little flap above deſcribed; for, they ſay, theſe parts ſhould by no means be uncovered when one ſits, eſpecially at meals. Nevertheleſs, they have been obſerved ſometimes to neglect this decent cuſtom.

Among the Hottentots, as well as in all probability among the reſt of mankind diſperſed over the whole globe, we muſt acknowledge the fair ſex to be the moſt modeſt; for the females of this nation, cover themſelves much more ſcrupulouſly than the men. They ſeldom content themſelves with one covering, but almoſt always have two, and very often three. Theſe are made of a prepared and well-greaſed ſkin, and are faſtened about their bodies with a thong, almoſt like the aprons of our ladies. The outermoſt is always the largeſt, meaſuring from about ſix inches to a foot over. This is likewiſe generally the fineſt and moſt ſhowy, and frequently adorned with glaſs beads ſtrung in different figures, in a manner that ſhows, even among the unpoliſhed Hottentots, the ſuperior neatneſs of the fair ſex in works of ornament, as well as their powers of invention and their diſpoſition to ſet off their perſons to the beſt advantage. The outermoſt apron, which is chiefly intended for ſhow and parade, reaches about half way down the thighs. The middle one is about a third, or one half leſs, and is ſaid by them to be neceſſary by way of reſerve, and as an additional intrenchment of modeſty, when their gala-garment is laid aſide. The third, or innermoſt, which is ſcarcely larger than one's hand, is ſaid to be uſeful at certain periods, which are much leſs troubleſome to the fair ſex here than in Europe. All theſe aprons, however, even to that which is decorated with beads, are not leſs beſmeared and greaſy than their bodies. In fine, the garment worn by the Hottentots for covering their bodies is a ſheep-ſkin, with the woolly ſide turned inwards; this pelliſſe, or elſe a cloak made of ſome ſmaller fur, is tied forwards over the breaſt. When the weather is not cold, they let it hang looſe over their ſhoulders in a careleſs manner, when it reaches down to the calves of the legs, leaving the lower part of the legs and thighs bare; but in rainy and cold weather they wrap it round them; ſo that the fore part of the body likewiſe, is in ſome meaſure covered with it as far as below the knees. As one ſheep-ſkin alone is not ſufficient for this purpoſe, there is a piece ſewed, or rather faſtened on with a thong, ſinew, or catgut, to the top of each ſide. In warmer weather they wear this cloak ſometimes with the hair ſide outwards, but in that caſe they oftner take it off entirely and carry it on their arms. In general, the Hottentots do not burden themſelves with a great many changes of their cloaks or Kroſſes, (as they call them in broken Dutch) but are content with one which ſerves them at the ſame time for clothing and bedding; and in this they lie on the bare ground, drawing themſelves up in a heap ſo cloſe, eſpecially when the weather is cold, that this Kroſs (as they call it) or Karoſs, is quite ſufficient to cover them. The cloak, or Karoſs, which is uſed by the women for the ſame purpoſe, does not differ from thoſe uſed by the men in any other reſpect, than that the women have a long peak to their Karoſſes, which they turn up, forming with it a hood or little pouch, with the hairy ſide inwards; in this they carry their little children, to which they now and then give the breaſt over their ſhoulders, a practice that likewiſe prevails with ſome other nations. The men in general wear no peculiar covering on their heads. A few have been ſeen that had a cap made of greaſed ſkin, the fur of which had been taken off in the preparation. Thoſe who live neareſt to the coloniſts, fancy the European hats, wearing them ſlouched all round, or elſe with one ſide turned up. The women in like manner frequently go bareheaded. When they cover their heads, it is with a cap in the form of a ſhort troncated cone. It is made without any ſeam, of the ſedgment of ſome animal's ſtomach, and is as black as ſoot mixed up with fat can make it. Theſe are frequently ſo prepared, as to look as if they were ſhaggy, and others again to reſemble velvet, and upon the whole make a tolerably handſome appearance. Over this cap they ſometimes wear another ornament, conſiſting of an oval wreath, or, a crown made of a buffalo's hide, with the brown hair upwards. This is about four fingers in height, and ſurrounds the head ſo as to reach a little way down upon the forehead, and the ſame depth in the neck behind, without covering the upper part of the cap above deſcribed. Both the rims of this wreath, as well as the lower one on which it reſts, as the upper one, are always ſmooth and even, and each of them ſet with a row of ſmall ſhells, of the Cyprea kind, to the number of more than thirty, in ſuch a manner, that being placed quite cloſe to each other, their beautiful white enamel, together with their mouths, is turned outwards. Between theſe two rows of ſhells run one or two more in a parallel line, or elſe waved or indented in various fancies. It may eaſily be imagined, what a pretty effect theſe ſhells have, projecting from the brown fur of the buffalo's ſkin, and at the ſame time, with what additional charms a greaſy Hottentot dame appears in one of theſe caps and wreaths, which, however, is to the full as greaſy as herſelf.

The ears of the Hottentots are never adorned with any pendant or other ornament hanging from them, any more than the noſe, as they both are among other ſavages; this latter, however, is ſometimes, by way of greater ſtate, marked with a black ſtreak of ſoot, or, more rarely indeed, with a large ſpot of red-lead; of which latter, on high days and holidays, they likewiſe put a little on their cheeks. The necks of the men are bare, but thoſe of the women are decorated with what is, in their opinion, a great ornament. It conſiſts of a thong of undreſſed leather, upon which are ſtrung eight or ten ſhells. Appearing collectively in the form of a necklace, they certainly adorn the greaſy part they are hung upon, though perhaps not in proportion to the price at which they are obtained; for theſe ſhells are commonly ſold for not leſs than a ſheep a piece, as it is ſaid they are to be had no where elſe than on the moſt diſtant coaſt of Caffraria.

Another ornament in uſe with both ſexes, is rings on their arms and legs. Moſt of theſe rings are made of thick leather ſtraps, generally cut in a circular ſhape, which by being beat and held over the fire, are rendered tough enough to retain the curvature that is given them. It is theſe rings that have given riſe to the almoſt univerſally received notion, that the Hottentots wrap guts about their legs, in order to eat them occaſionally. The men wear from one to five or ſix of theſe rings on their arms, juſt above the wriſt, but ſeldom any on their legs. The matrons of a higher rank frequently have a conſiderable number of them both on their arms and legs, eſpecially on the latter, ſo that they are covered with them from the feet up to their knees. Theſe rings are of various thickneſſes, viz. ſometimes to that of a gooſe-quill, and ſometimes two or three times that ſize. Now and then they are made of pieces of leather, forming one entire ring, ſo that the arms and feet muſt be put through them when the wearer wiſhes to put then on. Upon the legs they are ſtrung on, ſmall and great, one with another, without any peculiar nicety; and are ſo much larger than the legs, as to ſhake off and get twiſted, when the wearer walks or is otherwiſe in motion. It may eaſily be imagined, that theſe rings give the good Hottentot matrons a world of trouble, as well in the wear as in the preparation; and at the ſame time are not a little clumſy and ponderous, not to mention ſeveral other inconveniencies. But ſuch is the peculiar turn of mankind, that from the Hottentot, as unconſtrained as rude in his manners, to thoſe nations which carry the arts and ſciences to the higheſt degree of perfection, people are univerſally apt to fall into ſuch modes of dreſs, as are not only uſeleſs, but likewiſe in a great meaſure impriſon their limbs and bodies. Rings of iron or copper, but eſpecially of braſs, of the ſize of a gooſe-quill, are conſidered as genteeler or more valuable than thoſe made of leather. They are, however, ſometimes worn along with theſe latter, to the number of ſix or eight at a time, particularly on the arms. The girls are not allowed to uſe any rings, till they are marriageable. We are informed that a traveller, who was paſſing through the diſtrict of Zwellendam, endeavoured to aſſail the chaſtity of a Hottentot girl, about ſixteen or ſeventeen years of age, but in every other reſpect quite a woman: it is ſaid, however, ſhe refuſed his preſents and offers, principally for this reaſon, that the old people in her craal had not yet inveſted her with the privilege of wearing rings. Whether this ſame law prevails in every craal, is not aſcertained; but it does not ſeem extremely probable that the girls in every craal are ſo obedient to the laws. The Hottentots ſeldom wear any ſhoes; when they do, the leather of them is undreſſed, with the hairy ſide outwards, and undergoes no other preparation, than that of being beat and moiſtened. If it be of a thick or ſtout ſort, as for example, of buffalo's hide, it is beſides kept ſome hours in cow-dung, by which means it is rendered very ſoft and pliable; afterwards ſome kind of greaſe is made uſe of for the ſame purpoſe. The ſhoes are then made of this leather in the following manner: they take a piece of leather of a rectangular form, ſomething longer and broader than the foot of the perſon for whom the ſhoes are intended. The two foremoſt corners are doubled up together, and ſewed down, ſo as to cover the forepart of the foot. This ſeam may be avoided, and the ſhoes may be made much neater at the toes, by fitting immediately over them a cap taken from the membrane in the knee joint of the hind leg of ſome animal. Now, in order to make this piece of ſkin or leather riſe up to the height of an inch on both ſides of the foot, and cloſe it in neatly, it is pierced with holes at ſmall diſtances all round the edge, as far as the hind-quarters, and through theſe holes is paſſed a thong, by which the rim is drawn up into gathers; further, in order to make ſtrong hind-quarters, the back part of the piece of leather is doubled inwards, and then raiſed up and preſſed along the heel. The ends of the thong, or gathering-ſtring, are then threaded on both ſides through the upper edge of the hind-quarters to the height of about two inches; they are then carried forwards, in order to be drawn through two of the above-mentioned holes on the inſide of each rim. They are then tied over the inſtep, or, if it be thought neceſſary to tie the ſhoe ſtill faſter, they are carried croſſways over the inſtep, and ſo downwards under the thong, which comes out from the hind-quarters, then upwards again over the ankle, and even round the leg itſelf, if the wearer chooſes.

Shoes of this kind are certainly not without their advantages. They fit as neat upon the foot as a ſtocking, and at the ſame time preſerve their form. They are eaſily kept ſoft and pliable, by conſtantly wearing them. Should they at any time grow rather hard above the edge, this is eaſily remedied by beating them and greaſing them a little. They are extremely light and cool, by reaſon they do not cover ſo much of the foot as a common ſhoe does. They wear very well, as they are without any ſeam, and the ſoles, or rather bottoms of the ſhoes, are both tough and yielding. As ſhoes of the common tanned leather are burnt up, as it were, and are apt to ſlide about in the ſcorching African ſands, and at the ſame time are eaſily torn in a ſtony and rocky ſoil, theſe field ſhoes, as they are called, made of almoſt raw leather, are much more durable. Theſe may be likewiſe had at a much inferior price, as the leather uſed in the making of them is entirely undreſſed; and a man can make himſelf a pair of them in the ſpace of an hour or two.

The Hottentots who live in theſe parts, or within the boundaries of the Dutch colonies, ſeldom make uſe of any weapons. Here and there, indeed, a man will furniſh himſelf with a javelin, by way of defence againſt the wolves: this is called a Haſſagai. Their habitations are as their dreſs, and equally adapted to the wandering paſtoral life they lead in thoſe parts. In fact, they ſcarcely merit any other name than that of huts; though, perhaps, as ſpacious and eligible as the tents and dwelling-places were of the partriarchs of old, at leaſt they are ſufficient for the Hottentot's wants and deſires; who may therefore be conſidered as a happy man, in being able in this point likewiſe ſo eaſily to ſatisfy them. The great ſimplicity of them is, perhaps, the reaſon, why in a Hottentot craal, or village, the huts are all built exactly alike; and that one meets there with a ſpecies of architecture, that does not a little contribute to keep envy from inſinuating itſelf under their roofs. In fact, the equality of fortune and happineſs in ſome meaſure enjoyed by theſe people, cannot but have a ſingular effect in preventing their breaſts from being diſturbed by this baneful paſſion. Every hut is diſpoſed in the following manner. Some of them are of a circular, and others of an oblong ſhape, reſembling a round beehive or a vault. The ground-plot is from eighteen to twenty-four feet in diameter. The higheſt of them are ſo low, that even in the centre of the arch, it is ſcarcely ever poſſible for a middle-ſized man to ſtand upright. But neither the lowneſs of the hut, nor that of the door, which is barely three feet high, can perhaps be conſidered as any inconvenience to a Hottentot, who finds no difficulty in ſtooping and crawling on all fours, and who is at any time more inclined to lie down than ſtand. The fire place is in the middle of each hut, by which means the walls are not ſo much expoſed to danger from fire. From this ſituation of their fire-place, the Hottentots likewiſe have this additional advantage, that when they ſit or lie in a circle round the fire, the whole company equally enjoys the benefit of its warmth. The door, low as it is, is the only place that lets in the day-light; and, at the ſame time, the only outlet that is left for the ſmoke. The Hottentot, inured to it from his infancy, ſees it hover round him, without feeling the leaſt inconvenience ariſing from it to his eyes: while, rolled up like a hedgehog, and wrapped up ſnug in his ſkin, he lies at the bottom of his hut, quite at his eaſe in the midſt of his cloud, excepting that he is now and then obliged to peep out from beneath his ſheep-ſkin in order to ſtir the fire, or perhaps to light his pipe, or elſe ſometimes to turn the ſteak he is broiling over the coals. The materials for theſe huts are by no means difficult to be procured; and the manner of putting them together being both neat and inartificial, merits commendation in a Hottentot, and is very ſuitable to his character. The frame of this arched roof is compoſed of ſlender rods or ſprays of trees. Theſe rods, being previouſly bent into a proper form, are laid, either whole or pieced, ſome parallel with each other, others croſſwiſe; they are ſtrengthened, by binding others round them in a circular form with withies. Theſe withies, as well as the rods themſelves, are taken chiefly from the Cliſfortia Conoides, which grows plentifully in this country near the rivers. Large mats are then laid very neatly over this lattice-work, ſo as perfectly to cover the whole. The aperture which is left for the door is cloſed, whenever there is occaſion for it, with a ſkin fitted to it, or a piece of matting. Theſe mats are made of a kind of cane or reed. The reeds, being laid parallel to each other, are faſtened together with ſinews or catgut, or elſe ſome kind of packthread, ſuch as they have had an opportunity of procuring from the Europeans. They have it, therefore, in their power, to make their mats as long as they chooſe, and at the ſame time as broad as the length of the ruſh will admit of, viz. from ſix to ten feet. This ſame kind of matting is now made uſe of likewiſe by the coloniſts, next to the tilts of their waggons, by way of preventing the ſail-cloth from being rubbed and worn by them, as well as of aſſiſting to keep out the rain. When a Hottentot has a mind to take his houſe down and remove his dwelling, he lays all his mats, ſkins, and ſprays on the backs of his cattle, which to a ſtranger makes a monſtrous unwieldy, and, indeed, ridiculous appearance. The order or diſtribution of theſe huts in a craal or clan, is moſt frequently in the form of a circle with the doors inwards; by this means a kind of yard or court is formed, where the cattle is kept on nights. The milk, as ſoon as taken from the cow, is put to other milk which is curdled, and is kept in a leather ſack; of this the hairy ſide, being conſidered as the cleanlier, is turned inwards: ſo that the milk is never drank while it is ſweet. In certain northern diſtricts, ſuch as Roggeveld, or Bokkeveld, where the land is, as it is called, Carrow, or dry and parched, the Hottentots, as well as the coloniſts, are ſhepherds. The Hottentots of Hottentot-Kraal hire themſelves, as they are wanted, to the Dutch.

Our travellers ſtayed all night at the Tyger-Hoch, a place belonging to the company. They proceeded in the morning eaſtward, through a flat country covered with paſture. They croſſed in the afternoon the Breed-Rivier, where there is a ferry, which having likewiſe croſſed, they arrived at Zwellendam, the reſidence of a chief juſtice.

Zwellendam lies under the chain of mountains which begin near the Bay Aldgoa, and take their direction weſt-north-weſt. They have a different climate here from that of the Cape, having inſtead of ſouth-eaſt winds, ſtorms from the north-weſt. They delayed here a few days, it being the ſeaſon that the farmers meet for exerciſing. The lieutenant, during this time, made ſeveral excurſions through the woods, and along the mountains. On the 20th they departed from Zwellendam, and proceeded E. N. E. towards the Reed Valley. They croſſed the Buffalye Agte Rivier (ſignifying a river to hunt buffaloes, for which it was formerly famous) about four in the afternoon. The river here winds to the ſouthward, and joins the Breed Rivier. Having loſt their road in the evening, it was with great trouble they reached Reed Valley, which is about twelve miles diſtant from Zwellendam, and 120 from the Cape. The Dutch Company have poſſeſſion of this place, and employ it in breeding cattle. It produces a great quantity of wild fowl, particularly ſeveral kinds of partridges. Their waggon, which they overtook here, was ſo much out of repair, through the ruggedneſs of the way, they were obliged to ſtop a few days to repair it.

They left this on the 26th, and proceeded to Grandfather's-Wood, where a heavy ſhower of rain obliged them to ſtop for ſome hours. Having ſent their waggon the beſt road to Plata-Kloaf, they went a nearer way themſelves, but could not poſſibly ride, as the way was exceedingly ſlippery. When they had croſſed Pidgeon-Houſe River, they arrived late in the evening at a farmer's houſe, which ſtood adjoining the Kloaf or paſs. Their waggon did not arrive till the 28th.

This place, which is called the Land of Egypt, conſiſts, to all appearance, of about thirteen farms, which are ſeemingly four or five miles diſtant from each other; they had ſome very good fruit, particularly oranges, here. The country is exceedingly fertile and delightful. They now proceeded to Channa Land, ſo called from a herb called Channa, uſed by the natives in ſmoking and chewing. Having now laid in a freſh ſupply, they purſued their journey; but the mountain proved ſo rugged, that on attempting to take the waggon over, it overſet, but providentially ſuſtained no injury. When they had attained the top of the mountain, they had a moſt delightful view of the ſea and country. They now proceeded E. N. E. the road very diſagreeable and rugged. In the evening they reached Rocky-River, where they ſtaid all night, and purchaſed in the morning a ſheep, at the price of three Engliſh ſhillings. Proceeding eaſtwards, they arrived at a peaſant's houſe about three in the afternoon. The inhabitants, unaccuſtomed to ſtrangers, were exceedingly ſhy, notwithſtanding which they diſplayed much hoſpitality and good-nature.

On the 30th, early in the morning, they purſued their journey through a very diſagreeable road, eaſt half north, and reached the great river about one in the afternoon, where they dined. They then croſſed the river, and came to another, Gold-River, in the evening. This river, on account of numerous large pools, is very dangerous to croſs; it has a ſoutherly direction, and empties itſelf to the weſtward of Catherina-Bay, in the Indian Ocean. They now proceeded, and were totally ignorant in the night where they were. At day-break they could ſee no inhabitants: advancing, however, towards the ſide of a ſmall brook, where they had agreed to reſt, they found themſelves at Sleng Rivier (i. e. Snake-River). This day they travelled near forty miles. The next day they proceeded eaſterly through a very barren country, and reached in the afternoon a ſmall eſtabliſhment, ſituated under the Atquas Kloaf, on Saffron-River; they reſted here all night.

Being ſupplied with a freſh ſtore of proviſions, they now proceeded N. N. E. towards Elephants-

River. At noon they reached a place called Poverty, and in the afternoon croſſed it, where it was about half a mile broad. They travelled till very late this evening, and would have proceeded further, but the waggon having overturned, they were obliged to ſtop till it was day-light. The damage was not ſo great as was apprehended.

November 1, they proceeded E. by S. and arrived about eleven o'clock at an European's houſe, where they ſpent the day. Thence they proceeded eaſterly, and were directed to ſome hot baths, by obſerving two farmers making uſe of them. Having left this in the afternoon, they arrived at Tſimeko, or Oſtrich Leg, in the evening. The inhabitants here are very kind; they are happy to ſee ſtrangers, and ready to entertain them; they live chiefly on milk and fleſh, and are totally ignorant of bread.

November 3, being ſupplied with a team of freſh cattle, they travelled the whole day, and perceiving freſh traces of lions, our travellers rode before the waggon with their guns loaded, in caſe of an attack. They reached a lake of brackiſh water about midnight, where they agreed to ſtay till morning; accordingly tied their cattle round the waggon, in order to ſecure them, and, to defend themſelves from wild beaſts, made fires on the outſide all round them. There was very heavy rain, thunder, and lightning this night, which prevented them from enjoying much reſt.

They proceeded early in the morning through an extenſive plain called Beer-Valley, and reached ſome miſerable huts (in the Hottentot ſtyle) about nine in the morning. They found here an old German, who having attached himſelf to one of the Hottentot tribes, and reſided now upwards of twenty years with them, had acquired the ſame manners and dreſs.

The lieutenant being now in an ill ſtate of health, was obliged to ſtay awhile with this old Hottentot-German, who accommodated him with a hut, and behaved to him with the utmoſt kindneſs; while Colonel Gordon, having parted with his friend, purſued his journey towards Snow Mountain. The lieutenant being ſomewhat recovered, took leave of the old German, and returned to Tſimeko, or Oſtrich Leg, on the 11th. Here he ſtayed ſome time, for the purpoſe of exploring the mountains. Travelling is very dangerous here, there being ſeveral wild beaſts, and particularly Boſhieſmen, who take every opportunity of plundering the inhabitants of their cattle. The Boſhieſmen are ſworn enemies to the paſtoral life. Some of their maxims are, to live on hunting and plunder, and never to keep any animal alive for the ſpace of one night. By this means they render themſelves odious to the reſt of mankind, and are purſued and exterminated like the wild beaſts, whoſe manners they have aſſumed. Others of them again are kept alive, and made ſlaves of. Their weapons are poiſoned arrows, which, ſhot out of a ſmall bow, will fly to the diſtance of two hundred paces; and will hit a mark with a tolerable degree of certainty, at the diſtance of fifty, or even a hundred paces. From this diſtance they can by ſtealth, as it were, convey death to the game they hunt for food, as well as to their foes, and even to ſo large and tremendous a beaſt as the lion: this noble animal thus falling by a weapon which, perhaps, it deſpiſed, or even did not take notice of. The Hottentot, in the mean time, concealed and ſafe in his ambuſh, is abſolutely certain of the operation of his poiſon, which he always ſelects of the moſt virulent kind; and it is ſaid, he has only to wait a few minutes, in order to ſee the wild beaſt languiſh and die.

Their bows are hardly a yard long, being at the ſame time ſcarcely of the thickneſs of an inch in the middle, and very much pointed at both ends. What kind of wood they are made of is unknown, but it does not ſeem to be of a remarkably elaſtic nature. The ſtrings of the bows were made ſome of them of ſinews, others of a kind of hemp, or the inner bark of ſome vegetable, and moſt of them are made in a very ſlovenly manner; which ſhows, that theſe archers depend more on the poiſon of the weapons, than on any exactneſs in the formation of them, or any other perfection in them. Their arrows are a foot and a half long. They are made of a reed one foot in length, which, at the baſe, or the end that receives the bow-ſtring, has a notch of a proper ſize to fit it. Juſt above this notch there is a joint in the reed, about which ſtrings made of ſinews are wound, in order to ſtrengthen it. The other end of the reed armed with a highly poliſhed bone, five or ſix inches long. At the diſtance of an inch or two from the tip of this bone, a piece of a quill is bound on very faſt with ſinews. This is done, in order that the arrow ſhall not be eaſily drawn out of the fleſh; and thus there may be ſo much the longer time for the poiſon, which is ſpread on of a thick conſiſtence like that of an extract, to be diſſolved, and infect the wound. It is not common, however, for an arrow to be headed in the manner above-mentioned, with a pointed bone only; this latter being uſually cut off ſquare at the top, and a thin triangular piece of iron fixed into it. In the ſtate in which it is ſeen, as it makes part of the arrow, it is of a dark brown colour, full of ſmall grooves and ribs, and does not appear ever to have been as white as ivory. Hence we may conclude, that on ſuch arrows as are headed with iron, the bone is employed chiefly for giving this weapon a kind of weight and poiſe; and likewiſe, that theſe arrows coſt the Hottentots a great deal of labour.

Their quivers are two feet long and four inches in diameter. They are made of a branch of a tree hollowed out; or, ſtill more probable, of the bark of one of theſe branches taken off whole and entire, the bottom and cover to which are compoſed of leather. On the outſide it is bedaubed with an unctuous matter, that grows hard when dry. The quivers are lined about the aperture with a ſerpent's ſkin; and, with the ſkin of the yellow ſerpent, which is conſidered as the moſt venomous of any in that country. Beſides a dozen of arrows, every quiver contains a ſlender hone of ſand-ſtone for whetting the iron head upon, and a bruſh for laying on the poiſon, together with a few wooden ſticks, differing in thickneſs, but all of the ſame length with the arrows. For what uſe they are deſigned, cannot be aſcertained. The poiſon is taken from ſeveral different kinds of ſerpents, the more venomous the better, whether their arrows are to be employed againſt their foes, or are only deſigned for ſhooting game; for the Hottentots know very well, that taken internally it is quite harmleſs.

The dwellings of theſe foes to a paſtoral life are generally not more agreeable, than their maxims and manners. Like the wild beaſts, buſhes and clifts in rocks by turns ſerve them inſtead of houſes; and ſome of them are ſaid to be ſo far worſe than beaſts, that their ſoil has been found cloſe to their habitations. A great many of them are entirely naked; but ſuch as have been able to procure the ſkin of any ſort of animal, great or ſmall, cover their bodies with it from the ſhoulders downwards as far as it will reach, wearing it till it falls off their backs in rags. As ignorant of agriculture as apes and monkies, like them they are obliged to wander about over hills and dales after certain wild roots, berries, and plants (which they eat raw) in order to ſuſtain a life that this miſerable food would ſoon extinguiſh and deſtroy, were they uſed to better fare. Their table, however, is ſometimes compoſed of ſeveral other diſhes, among which may be reckoned the larvæ of inſects, or thoſe kind of caterpillars from which butter-flies are generated; and in like manner a ſort of white ants (the termes) graſhoppers, ſnakes, and ſome ſort of ſpiders. With all theſe changes of diet, the Boſhieſman is nevertheleſs frequently in want, and to ſuch a degree, as to waſte almoſt to a ſhadow. Their ſtomachs are ſtrong enough to digeſt a great quantity of food, as they may rather be ſaid to bolt than eat; it ſometimes happens, indeed, that they cannot long retain what they have taken in; but this circumſtance, it is ſaid, does not hinder them from beginning again upon a freſh ſcore.

The capture of ſlaves from among this race of men is by no means a difficult matter, and is effected in the following manner. Several farmers, that are in want of ſervants, join together, and take a journey to that part of the country where the Boſhieſmen live. They themſelves, as well as their Lego-Hottentots, or elſe ſuch Boſhieſmen as have been caught ſome time before, and have been trained up to fidelity in their ſervice, endeavour to ſpy out where the wild Boſhieſmen have their haunts. This is beſt diſcovered by the ſmoke of their fires. They are found in ſocieties from ten to fifty and a hundred, reckoning great and ſmall together. Notwithſtanding this, the farmers will venture on a dark night to ſet upon them with ſix or eight people, which they contrive to do, by previouſly ſtationing themſelves at ſome diſtance round about the craal. They then give the alarm by firing a gun or two. By this means there is ſuch a conſternation ſpread over the whole body of theſe ſavages, that it is only the moſt bold and intelligent among them, who have the courage to break through the circle and ſteal off. Theſe the captors are glad enough to get rid of at ſo eaſy a rate; thoſe that are ſtupid, timorous, and ſtruck with amazement, and who, in conſequence of this ſtupor, allow themſelves to be taken and carried into bondage, anſwering their purpoſe much better. They are, however, at firſt, treated by gentle methods; that is, the victors intermix the faireſt promiſes with their threats, and endeavour, if poſſible, to ſhoot ſome of the larger kinds of game for their priſoners, ſuch as buffaloes, ſea-cows, and the like. Such agreeable baits, together with a little tobacco, ſoon induce them, continually cockered and feaſted as they are, to go with a tolerable degree of cheerfulneſs to the coloniſt's place of abode. There theſe luxurious feaſts of meat and fat are exchanged for more moderate portions, conſiſting for the moſt part of butter-milk, frumenty, and haſty-pudding. This diet, nevertheleſs, makes the Boſhieſman fat in a few weeks. However, he ſoon finds his good living embittered by the maundering and grumbling of his maſter and miſtreſs. The words T'guzeri and T'gaunatſi, which, perhaps, are beſt tranſlated by thoſe of *Young Sorceror* and *Imp*, are expreſſions which he muſt frequently put up with, and ſometimes a few curſes and blows into the bargain; and this for neglect, remiſſneſs, or idleneſs: which laſt failure, if it cannot be ſaid to be born with him, is however in a manner naturalized in him. So that, both by nature and cuſtom, deteſting all manner of labour, and now, from his greater corpulency, becoming ſtill more ſlothful, and having beſides been uſed to a wandering life, ſubject to no control, he moſt ſenſibly feels the want of his liberty. No wonder then, that he generally endeavours to regain it by making his eſcape: but what is really a ſubject of wonder is, that, when one of theſe poor devils runs away from his ſervice, or more properly bondage, he never takes with him any thing that does not belong to him.

The lieutenant, in one of his excurſions, fell in with a party of theſe Boſheiſmen, who behaved very well; our traveller gave them ſome tobacco, for which they made ſigns, and they, in return, offered him ſome honey, which they had juſt collected in the mountains. They had bows and arrows, and their leader a ſpear in his hand, with heavy ivory rings on his right arm; theſe were of the tribe of the Chonaegues.

On the 3d of December, our traveller viſited the moſt fertile and agreeable place he had yet ſeen, called Good Hope. It lay at the ſource of the Elephant's River, and was productive of plenty of corn, with very little cultivation. The inhabitants ſow the grain when the river has overflowed the banks, and it ripens here a month ſooner than at the Cape, the climate is ſo very favourable. This place is alſo productive of excellent fruit, mulberries, apricots, peaches, oranges, figs, &c. &c.

Lieutenant Patterſon now proceeded S. W. and paſſed the hot baths. He met with a great number of oſtriches, and after a fatiguing journey, reached the dwelling of one Folkenhager, on the 11th, where he reſted two days.

Two peaſants, who were on their way to the Cape, now came up and offered our traveller a place in their waggon, which propoſal was very acceptable, as the lieutenant's horſe was exceedingly weary and lame, through the badneſs of the roads. They proceeded along the banks of the Elephant's River, and arriving at the Atquas Kloaf, reſted there a day.

On the 19th, they paſſed the Atquas Kloaf, which is a very rugged way. The next day our traveller took leave of his kind waggoners at Sure Flacta, and purſued his journey towards the Hottniqua-Land, for the purpoſe of examining the extenſive woods upon the range of mountains which he had lately paſſed. This night he lodged at Mr. Bota's, who behaved with great hoſpitality and provided him with a guide the next morning, when he arrived at White-Elſe-River, ſo called from a tree of the ſame name.

On the 22d, the lieutenant and his guide being furniſhed with dogs, for fear of tigers, ventured in the woods, which begin to the north of Moſſel-Bay, and reach about 120 miles to the eaſt, terminating at a place called Sitſicamma. They are very thick and produce ſeveral trees, uncommonly tall, whereon may be ſeen a variety of beautiful party-coloured birds; ſome of theſe trees grow out of the naked ſtrata of the rocks; the mountains are extremely ſteep: an extenſive plain lies between the woods and the Indian Ocean. It is productive of a very inferior ſort of corn and wine, and though covered with graſs, the paſturage is very unwholeſome. It is well inhabited with Europeans, whoſe traffic conſiſts chiefly in wood, which they bring in planks to the Cape.

Our traveller returned to the Cape, the ſame road that he travelled with Colonel Gordon, and arrived at the Cape-Town, January 13, 1778.

CHAP. II.

The Lieutenant commences his ſecond Journey, with a Companion—They proceed to Tiger-Berg, &c.—A ſhort Excurſion—A Bonta-Bock hunted and killed—Detained by bad Weather—Viſit Catherina-Bay—Croſs the Mountains with Difficulty—Loſe their People—Find them—Purſue their Journey—Obſerve the Prints of Lions, &c.—Viſit two Boars in the Karo—Deſcription of them—Meet an European Woman wounded with a poiſoned Arrow—Arrive at Olive-Buſh—Next Day at a Farm called Rhinoceros-Boſch—Difficulty in reaching the Summit of the Mountain—Further Travels—Curſory Obſervations—Arrive at the Tower—Paſs the Baboon's Hill—Hire an Hottentot—Shoot two Gems-Bocks—Deſcription of them—Proceed further—The Lieutenant eats broiled White Ants—Journey continued—Entertained at an Hottentot Village—Paſs the Copper Mountain—Meet ſeveral Natives armed—Scarcity of Proviſions—Supply of three Sheep—Wild Apes, &c. ſeen—A ſmall Float invented for croſſing Orange-River—An Attack by two Hippopotami—One of the Animals killed—Scarcity of Water—The Lieutenant, &c. miſs their Oxen—Recover them—Procure Water—Purſue their Journey in Expectation of a Supply of Oxen—Agreeably ſurpriſed by a Proviſion of twelve Bullocks—Proceed on their Journey—Furniſhed with a Team of freſh Oxen—Reach Caſper's Kloaf—An Excurſion to the Camis-Berg—Proviſions for a Week procured at a Dutchman's—Make for Horn-River—Arrive at the Bokke-Land—Freſh Supply—Purſue their Journey—Traverſe Sweat-Land—Return to Cape-Town.

LIEUT. Patterſon remained at the Cape four months, and being now determined on his ſecond journey, was accompanied by a young gentleman, who, though an inhabitant of the Cape-Town, poſſeſſed ſeveral farms in the interior parts of the country, and proceeded, May 22, 1778, through a large ſandy plain, to the Tiger-Berg, where they dined. The farmers being all now buſy in plowing and ſowing their grain, the country had a lively appearance. They proceeded S. E. in the afternoon and ſpent the night near Stillen-Boſch, at the houſe of Mr. Clutta.

On the 23d they purſued their journey to the Eaſt Rivier, and made a ſhort excurſion to the Stillen-Boſch mountains; the country here is very fertile, productive of a variety of fruit, and plenty of corn and wine. Proceeding now E. S. E. they reached Knofflick Kraal's Rivier in the afternoon; this was impaſſable till the 26th, when they made for the Worm, both about ſixty miles diſtant from the Cape.

On reaching the Tiger-Hock, they hunted a ſpecies of antelope, called Bonta-Bock, which they killed. Two peaſants who had travelled from afar, and were on their way to the Cape, informed our travellers that the country they had come through, was parched up for want of rain, and notwithſtanding the rivers in this part were ſo ſwoln as to be impaſſable, yet it was with the greateſt difficulty, during their journey, they could procure water for their cattle.

They proceeded eaſtward on the 28th, but were obliged to ſtop at the firſt houſe they could find, on account of the inclemency of the weather. They took up their night's lodgings about eight miles from the Tyger-Hock, and the next day advanced towards the Breed-Rivier, where it is joined by the river Zondereynd; but were compelled to ſtop, from the impracticability of croſſing the river. They were not the only travellers who were detained from the ſame cauſe; many waggons were ſtationed on the oppoſite ſide, which had been there for ſome days, waiting till the water ſhould ſubſide. There is a ferry at this place, but it is of no uſe when the river is rapid. The man who had the charge of the ferry, was an old German, and had lived between the two rivers for many years. He very kindly propoſed to get our travellers acroſs the river Zondereynd; and offered them the uſe of his houſe till the river became paſſable for the waggon. They left the Hottentots to take care of the baggage, and thankfully accepted of his offer. During their ſtay here, they had much rain and ſleet; and the mountains were covered with ſnow. They croſſed with great difficulty June the 8th, and proceeded to Zwellendam, where they ſtayed all night.

From Zwellendam they proceeded to Buffalye Agte Rivier, where they made ſome ſhort ſtay. They lodged at the houſe of Mr. Van Renan, who, having ſupplied them with a team of freſh oxen, accompanied them to the mouth of Gouds-Rivier on the 16th. The lieutenant viſited Catherina-Bay, about 280 miles from the Cape. This bay, which opens from the ſea, W. by N. is wide, and expoſes veſſels very much to the S. E. winds. The place is altogether unfavourable to ſhips, as very little refreſhment can be procured from any part of the adjacent country, which is both barren and poorly inhabited.

Having agreed by a paſs called Groena-Kloaf (which they were informed was the moſt ſecure and agreeable road at that ſeaſon) to go through a large chain of mountains to the weſtward: they accordingly directed their courſe that way, and reached the houſe of a very old man, one Jacobus Botta, on the 27th. The next day was exceedingly cold and boiſterous, with heavy rain; they purſued their journey ſtill to the weſt, and came to a farm on the Breed-Rivier at night. The weather ſtill continuing bad the 29th, they ſtopped for that day, and being adviſed not to proceed any further in that direction, on account of the difficulty in croſſing the rivers, they agreed to return and croſs the mountains at another place to the eaſtward, called Plata-Kloaf.

July the 8th, they reached Plata-Kloaf, and, after ſome trouble, croſſed the mountains on the 10th, and arrived at Channa-Land, thence they proceeded weſtward, and in the evening came to a hot bath, more temperate than thoſe obſerved in the firſt journey.

Having a very long day's march before them, they reſted here a few days, and early on the thirteenth, ſent their waggon before them; they arrived at a ſtream of water, where they reſted for the night; there were violent claps of thunder and heavy rain; the country they had travelled was very barren and full of wild beaſts.

On the 14th, perceiving a Hottentot Kraal, about two miles diſtance, one of the natives was hired for a guide. Having left the waggon, Lieutenant Patterſon, deſirous to ſee as much of the country as poſſible, with Mr. Van Renan and their guide, now purſued a different direction, and when they had travelled till about four in the afternoon they then began to think of their baggage. They travelled till nine, through a very wild country, inhabited only by beaſts, without diſcovering the object of their ſearch. The lieutenant then aſcended the hills, in hopes of diſcerning a fire on ſome adjacent heights; which is the uſual ſignal made by travellers in Africa when they are loſt, or ſeparated from their companions. However, their labours being unſucceſsful, they agreed to remain till day-light, at the ſide of a ſmall fountain; though they were far from being in either an agreeable or ſafe ſituation, having no fire-arms, nor any poſſible means of lighting a fire. Numbers of hyenas howled about them the whole night; and in the morning, they found that a large tiger had been within ten yards of them.

On the 16th, they proceeded in ſearch of their people, whom they diſcovered about noon. They reſted a few hours, and in the afternoon continued their journey, about ſix miles to the weſtward, where they ſtayed all night. Their oxen and horſes were faſtened to the waggon, and fires kindled around them, as uſual; they afterwards paſſed a dry barren country, and, in the morning, came to a miſerable hovel belonging to an European, where they ſtayed all night.

On the 18th, they proceeded through what the Dutch call Karo, which is a very extenſive plain, interſperſed with ſmall ſucculent and fruiteſcent plants. This deſcription may be applicable to many parts of Africa; particularly thoſe which are ſituated to the north of the Cape. They travelled all this day without finding a drop of water; and in the evening arrived at a houſe called the Staart, which is pleaſantly ſituated on the banks of a ſmall river. Here they amuſed themſelves with ſhooting wild ducks, and a ſpecies of reed-hens, which they found in great plenty.

They purſued their journey on the nineteenth, along the Verkered Valley; which is thus denominated, from the river which courſes through it, taking a direction different from that of any other in this country. At the time we were there it was quite full. They were now advancing towards the Coud Bokke Veld, or the cold country of antelopes; the mountains of which were covered with ſnow; which frequently remains upon their ſummits till the month of November. The next day they arrived at a houſe ſituated on the north-eaſt ſide of the Whitſon-Berg, or White Hill, where they remained all night. The people informed them of the danger of croſſing the Great Karo, not only from its being a deſart country, but alſo from parties of the Boſhieſmen Hottentots, who were at war with the Dutch; and were often lurking about to fall in with Europeans. They gave them inſtances of perſons having been wounded by their poiſoned arrows, and that they were very ſeldom cured. Notwithſtanding their good advice, our travellers determined to croſs the country, keeping as much on their guard as poſſible.

On the 21ſt, they directed their courſe north; and in the evening took up their lodgings on the ſide of a ſmall ſtream of water, called Thorn-River. Our hero made an excurſion in the morning, through the country, and in the afternoon they joined the waggon. In the evening they found water at a place, called Porde-Berg, or Horſe Mountain, where they reſted all night.

On the 23d, they obſerved a fire about half a mile from them, which they imagined had been lighted by a party of wild Hottentots. Being reſolved to ſee who they were, they found them to be the ſervants of a Dutchman, who lived near the Cape. They had a large flock of ſheep under their charge. The lieutenant found them ſo well acquainted with the country, that he hired one of them as a guide. They then continued their journey about twenty miles, and at night arrived at Unlucky-River; ſo called, from a man's having been devoured by a lion ſome years ago on its banks.

The next day their road lay through a dry ſandy country, with a very naked appearance. The hills were compoſed of horizontal ſtrata of a ſoft mouldering kind of ſtone. At noon they were informed by a peaſant (who was on his way to the Cape) that if they did not proceed on their journey with all poſſible expedition, they would not be able to come to any place where there was water: moreover, that travelling at night was very dangerous, on account of the number of lions which inhabited that part of the country. After a very fatiguing march they arrived at a brackiſh fountain, where they reſted all night.

On the 25th, they continued their route to the northward, through much the ſame kind of barren ſoil they had paſſed on the preceding day. Wherever they paſſed, they obſerved the freſh print of lions and tigers; and early next morning Mr. Van Renan ſaw a lion within fifty yards of him, which our travellers afterwards purſued; but the track brought them to a clump of thick thorny ſhrubs, which prevented them from proceeding further. The next day, they viſited two of the boors who reſide in the Karo during the time when the ſnow lies upon the Rogge Veld mountains. This practice is not, however, general, ſeveral of them remain in their habitations, expoſed to all the inclemencies of the weather. The principal cauſe of the migrations from the mountains to the Karo, is a want of firewood, which is very ſcarce on theſe heights. Thoſe of them that remain, in general, employ their ſervants, before the winter begins, in carrying wood from the bottom of the mountain, which is certainly a very laborious taſk. There are ſome to whom theſe temporary removals are far from appearing a great evil. Indeed, ſeveral of the inhabitants of this diſtrict are ſo much in the habit of changing their abode, that rather than undergo the trouble of making a proper proviſion for this dreary ſeaſon, they would travel for many miles. As this deſart part of the country is inhabited only during a ſhort part of the year, very few houſes are to be found in it. Moſt of the inhabitants live in huts ſimilar to thoſe of the Hottentots already deſcribed; ſome dwell in the tent that covers their waggon; and, even in this ſituation, the boors have the appearance of being the happieſt of all human beings. When a ſtranger viſits them, he is treated with the greateſt hoſpitality; and every thing they have is at his command. This, in general, is the caſe throughout the whole country.

They proceeded on their journey this day only about ten miles; and in the evening came to a very mean cottage under the mountain. The inhabitants were poſſeſſed of a very large herd of cattle, particularly ſheep; but at this ſeaſon many die of a diſeaſe, which they term, the burning ſickneſs, in which they loſe moſt of their hair. There is a paſſage at this place over the mountain, but there was now no poſſibility of croſſing it; our travellers, therefore, proceeded to the weſtward, by the direction of the boors. At night they came to a ſmall ſtream of water, where they reſted.

On the 29th, they directed their courſe north by weſt, through a hilly country. On their way they ſaw ſeveral huts, which they ſuppoſed to belong to Hottentots; but they proved ſuch before deſcribed; the winter reſidence of the Dutch boors. At one of theſe huts was an European woman who had been wounded in the arm with a poiſoned arrow. Great pains had been taken to cure her, but to no purpoſe; for at different periods of the year, an inflammation came on which was ſucceeded by a partial mortification. She ſaid, that the wound was not long in healing up; but that, in two months afterwards, there was a certainty of its breaking out again; and this had been the caſe for many years.

At night they arrived at a place called Olive-Buſh, where they reſted. The man, to whom this place belonged, was the only one, of a whole family, who eſcaped from a party of the Boſhieſmen Hottentots. Thoſe ſavages had attacked them a few years before, and put to death his mother, brother, ſiſter, &c.

The next day they proceeded to the northward; and, in the evening, came to a farm called Rhinoceros-Boſch. During the night they had much wind and rain. Purſuing their journey, north by weſt, they had the Rogge Veld Berg on their right hand. On their way they met one of the inhabitants of the mountain, who promiſed to aſſiſt them with a team of freſh oxen to carry them to the ſummit, which was very difficult of aſcent. In the evening, they reſted by the ſide of the Rhinoceros-River; but as they had no ſhelter from the inceſſant hail and rain, and were unable to keep their fire lighted, their ſituation was extremely uncomfortable. In this condition they remained during the whole of the following day; and on the ſecond of Auguſt, the promiſed aſſiſtance arrived in order to conduct them up the mountain; but it was with the utmoſt difficulty they could reach the ſummit, the path was ſo very ſteep and rugged; and the top thereof ſo wet, that their oxen and horſes went often up to their bellies in the low ground. In the afternoon they came to the houſe of their friend, who had afforded them ſo much aſſiſtance, where they ſtayed all night, and were hoſpitably entertained.

Though the ſoil appears to be very good here, yet it ſeldom produces any conſiderable crop of grain. This proceeds not only from blights, which are very frequent here; but ſometimes from heavy ſhowers of hail, which break down the corn about the time that it is ready to be cut. The locuſts alſo are fatal enemies to all vegetation, and deſtroy every thing in their courſe, not ſparing even the fruit trees. The ſoil of this mountain is a reddiſh clay; in many places containing a quantity of ſaline matter, ſo as to be quite perceptible to the taſte. It is neceſſary to obſerve, that towards the interior parts of this country, or rather the centre of the peninſula, the country does not decline in a north-weſt direction, at leaſt not in proportion to the immenſe mountains which progreſſively preſent themſelves to view: for inſtance, though the aſcent of the mountain, called the Rogge-Veld, is not leſs than two thouſand feet from the Karo, the deſcent is not more than one thouſand before they come to a ſecond, which appears of equal height with the former.

Having taken leave of their kind hoſt, they proceeded nearly north by weſt, through a very hilly country. On the 3d, in the evening, they arrived at a miſerable hut, which they found belonged to an European who lived with the Hottentots; his name was Swertz. He was not at home; but as our travellers could not advance any further, for want of water, they remained there during the night. The only thing they could procure at this place was milk, for which they gave the Hottentots ſome tobacco.

On the 4th, they travelled through a dry barren country which lies between the Rogge-Veld and Hentum. At noon they croſſed the Rhinoceros-River, where they ſaw ſeveral large herds of quachas; and, in the evening, came to a very decent houſe, where they were well received. This houſe is ſituated on the very borders of the Boſhieſmens-Land;

and is frequently attacked by that tribe of Hottentots. As they had undergone many inconveniences for ſome time before, from the ſeverity of the weather, and the want of ſhelter in many places through which they had paſſed, our travellers determined to reſt here a few days, and to viſit the Hentum and other countries adjoining.

In this part of the country there are many things worthy of obſervation. The horſes in this diſtrict are yearly attacked by a diſorder, for which it is very difficult, if not impoſſible, to account. Certain it is, that the utmoſt care, the feeding of them with corn, and keeping of them in ſtables, as much from the air as poſſible, does not operate as a preſervative from this diſeaſe; ſo that thoſe who have other farms near, remove their cattle till this ſeaſon is paſſed. Horned cattle are expoſed to equal danger from the Amaryllis Diſticha, or poiſon bulb, with which the country is covered; they are extremely fond of its leaves, which generally prove fatal.

On the 9th, we proceeded towards the Bokke-Land, which is nearly weſt by ſouth, from the Hentum mountain; and, in two days, arrived at a place called the Tom, or Tower, which is a hill of a pyramidal figure, where they ſtayed all night. The next day (the 11th) they paſſed the Baboons-Hill; the road was ſo very bad, that it was with great difficulty they could keep the waggon upon its wheels. This night they ſtayed at a brackiſh river; and the following day were detained till noon, having miſſed their oxen. Here our hero viſited a Hottentot Kraal, which was about a mile diſtant; and, as he propoſed travelling over the Small Nimiqua Land, he hired one of the Hottentots, who ſpoke Dutch, as an interpreter. In the afternoon they continued their journey as far as Thorn-River, where are many lions, ſo that they were obliged to faſten their oxen, and make fires as before.

On the 12th, they deſcended the Bokke Veld Berg, which was ſteep, but not very high, and came to a farm belonging to Mr. Van Renan. In this journey from the Hantum, they ſhortened their diſtance from the Cape about fifty miles.

On the 13th, they proceeded to the northern extremity of the mountain, which is quite level on this ſide, and almoſt perpendicular for more than two thouſand feet. The ſoil is of a white ſandy mould, intermixed with large fragments of a ſort of freeſtone. This part of the country produces very little corn: the paſture is eſteemed good for cattle; but, in the dry ſeaſon, they are much diſtreſſed for want of water. The people here behaved with the utmoſt hoſpitality; particularly one Jacobus Ryke, who accompanied the lieutenant to the Great River.

They followed their waggon on the 18th, in its deſcent down the mountain, which was really ſteep and dreadful. About ten in the morning they got into a low level country. This day they ſhot at ſeveral of a ſpecies of antelope, called Gems-Bock, and killed two. Theſe animals are among the largeſt of the antelope kind at the Cape, and in general their fleſh is excellent food. They have ſtraight ſlender horns, near three feet long, annulated above half of their length: the reſt ſmooth. The ſpace between horn and horn at the points is about fourteen inches. At their baſe is a black ſpot; in the middle of the face another; a third falls from each eye to the throat, united to that in the face by a lateral band of the ſame colour: the noſe and reſt of the face white. From the hind-part of the head, along the neck and top of the back, runs a narrow duſky line of hairs, longer than the reſt, and ſtanding above them, dilating towards the rump. Its ſides are of a light reddiſh aſh-colour; the lower part bounded by a broad longitudinal duſky band, reaching to the breaſt. The belly, rump, and legs are white; each leg marked below the knees with a duſky mark. The tail is covered with long black hairs; from the rump to the end of the hairs, two feet ſix inches long. The length of the ſkin about ſix feet ſix inches. When attacked by dogs it will ſit on its hind quarters and defend itſelf with remarkable long ſharp horns.

They ſlept this night under a large mimoſa tree, and the next morning went forward to the northward. About nine they arrived at the Great Thorn River, where they reſted a few hours during the heat of the ſun. In the afternoon they continued their journey through a level country, having the Boſhieſmens-Land, or Long Hill, on their right hand, and the Karo-Berg on the left. On their way they ſaw ſeveral elks, eyelands, &c. The country is in moſt parts covered with a very curious ſort of cubic iron ore. In the evening they came to a place, called the Lion's Den, which is a large hollow rock, where they found water juſt ſufficient to ſupply themſelves and their cattle.

The lieutenant made an excurſion to the weſtward, and his two companions, Mr. Van Renan and Jacobus Ryke, directed their courſe to the northward in purſuit of game. At noon the lieutenant returned to the Lion's Den, and thence proceeded to the northward, directing his ſervants to follow him with the waggon. After travelling about eight miles, he found his companions at a ſmall fountain, broiling ſome white ants, which they eat, and which the lieutenant declares, are by no means diſagreeable.

They proceeded the next day to the north-weſt, through a deep ſandy country. About noon they obſerved a habitation a little to the eaſtward, and found that it belonged to an European, who lived here during the winter ſeaſon: this place they called the Pickled Fountain, from the water being ſo brackiſh that they could not drink it. In the afternoon they continued their journey to another fountain, called Brack Fountain. The water here was exceedingly brackiſh, though much better than the firſt. During the night they had much rain; and next day found good water in the hollow rocks; but our hero obſerved that the water, by ſtanding a few hours in the rocks, became ſimilar in its qualities to that of the fountain. They now went through a hilly country. Moſt of the hills form large pyramids of looſe, red, ſandy ſtone.

On the twenty-ſecond, at noon, they came to the Hartebeeſt-Rivier, which was brackiſh; here they reſted about two hours. In the afternoon they proceeded to the weſtward, when they came to another houſe on the ſame river, where they ſtayed all night. Towards the weſtward this river joins another, called the Thorn-River.

On the 23d, they directed their courſe to the northward, and in the forenoon came to the Black-Thorn-River; which has its ſource at the Camis-Berg. This is one of the higheſt mountains in this part of the country, and ſupplies the greateſt part of the Small Nimiqua Land with water in the ſummer. At this river they ſtayed all day, having excellent paſture and good water for their cattle: and the next day continued their journey north-weſt, and entered the Small Nimiqua Land. The country is very mountainous. In the afternoon they arrived under the Camis-Berg, where they met with a peaſant who had been ſome miles to the northward, inquiring after ſome of his friends; he was on his way to the Cape. There being a good ſupply of water at this place, they reſolved to continue here all night; and in the morning directed their courſe towards the weſt; having in the road paſſed ſeveral dangerous precipices. At noon they reſted, about an hour, by a ſmall ſtream of water. In the afternoon they proceeded in the ſame direction; and in the evening came to a houſe belonging to a Dutchman, ſituated on the banks of a pleaſant river, called the Green-River. Here they ſtayed all night. The Hottentots, to whom they gave tobacco and hemp leaves, ſupplied them with plenty of milk.

Our travellers took an excurſion towards the north early on the morning of the 27th. They arrived at an Hottentot's village at night, which contained about 150 inhabitants and nineteen huts. Having treated the natives with tobacco, &c. they, in return, entertained them with a dance, wherein the men form themſelves into a circle with their flutes (which are made of the barks of trees of different ſizes) and the women dance round them, making a noiſe with their hands. Thus they continue to dance in parties, and being relieved every now and then by freſh couples, keep the entertainment up the whole night.

On the 28th, they aſcended a ſteep mountain, whereby their waggon was very much injured, and proceeded about thirty miles to the weſtward. They reached a fountain, at noon, called by the inhabitants Eye Fountain, where there were ſeveral Hottentot huts, and in the evening arrived at a ſmall ſtream of water, where they reſted that night. The next day they purſued their journey N. by W. through a mountainous country, and came, about evening, to a ſmall fountain of brackiſh water, which lay under a naked rock of a conical figure, upwards of 500 feet high. In the afternoon they directed their courſe to the northward, and arrived in the evening, at the houſe of one Jan Vander Hever, ſituate on the Copper-Berg-Rivier; where, having met a kind reception, they reſted a few days.

Now, having procured a team of freſh oxen, they took the north direction, through a rugged country, where they ſaw ſeveral natives at a diſtance. They arrived in the evening at a ſmall fountain where there was very little water, but being thirty miles diſtant from the next water, as they were informed, they were reſolved to weather it out; indeed, they had experienced, for ſeveral days, a great ſcarcity of wood and water. Some natives being ſeen approaching, armed with bows and arrows, our travellers imagined they were Buſh-Hottentots, and, loading their guns, prepared for an attack. However, having met, the ſtrangers only begged ſome tobacco, which was given them with much cheer. One of them, who ſpoke Dutch, informed the lieutenant that they had no cattle, but lived upon roots and gums; and ſometimes feaſted on an antelope, which they occaſionally ſhot with their poiſoned arrows. Shortly after, one of the inhabitants of the Nimiqua-Land overtook our travellers and requeſted them to accept of his company to the Great-River. His nation being at war with the Buſh-Hottentots, he was rather afraid, as they frequently rob the Nimiquas of their cattle, and often kill the people. Having travelled about thirty miles without meeting with a drop of water, they came at laſt to a ſmall fountain in the evening, where they ſtayed all night, and the next day proceeded north by eaſt, through a ſandy plain; and about ſunſet came to a brackiſh fountain, where they ſtayed all that night.

On the 5th of September, our hero made an excurſion to the ſummit of an high mountain, whence he had an extenſive view of the adjacent country to the north and eaſt. At noon he returned to the waggon; and in the afternoon they directed their courſe northward, through a ſandy plain, which they had much difficulty in croſſing, the ſand being ſo deep that their cattle ſunk in it to their knees. Towards the evening Lieut. Patterſon and Mr. Van Renan left the waggon, directing their courſe northward in ſearch of water; and reſolved not to return till they found ſome. At night they came to the Great-River, where they agreed to wait till the waggon arrived, their horſes being much fatigued. At this place was a kind of ſhed, which had been built by an European who had lived ſome time on the banks; there being excellent paſture for cattle. They had been a whole day without taſting food; ſo that they were very glad to find a piece of ruſty fleſh of an hippopotamus, a ſpecies of diet which the Africans are very fond of. Mr. Van Renan eat very heartily of it; but a very ſmall portion ſatisfied the lieutenant. After this regale they endeavoured to ſleep; but though they were much fatigued, they could get no reſt for the frightful cries of the hippopotami.

On the 6th, their waggon not being arrived, they ſaddled their horſes and returned the ſame way, ſuppoſing ſome accident had happened to it. On their return they found their drivers had miſſed the way, and gone more to the eaſtward. They diſcovered their track, and followed them to another part of the river. When they arrived, all their Hottentots were hunting the hippopotami, having no proviſion in the waggon. They had hunted the whole day without ſucceſs; and one of them had been wounded by the animal; but the ſtream being rapid, had driven him off to the oppoſite ſhore. They obſerved ſeveral natives, to whom they made repeated ſigns, which they did not ſeem to underſtand.

Having had nothing to eat for the two preceding days, except ſome wild prickly cucumbers, which grew here in abundance, they agreed to return the way they came; previous to this our travellers aſcended a high hill, about a league to the eaſtward. When arrived at the ſummit, they ſaw a large herd of cattle about ſix miles to the eaſtward; on which they immediately returned to the waggon with the glad-tidings, and a Hottentot was diſpatched to bring them a ſheep or a bullock, whatever it ſhould coſt. The meſſenger returned in the evening with three ſheep, and the Hottentots to whom they belonged, who ſtayed with them during the night. The river aſſumes a weſterly direction in this part; on both ſides are large trees, peculiar to this country. The mountains have, upon the whole, a barren appearance, being in general naked rocks; though they are in ſome places adorned by a variety of ſucculent plants.

On the 7th, they purſued their journey eaſterly, along the banks of the river. In their progreſs they ſaw a variety of moſt beautiful birds; and great numbers of elephants and wild apes. The next day the lieutenant propoſed croſſing the river with ſeveral of the Hottentots who were ſwimmers. They invented a ſmall float, which conſiſted of three pieces of dry wood, on which they tranſported their guns and clothes. After ſwimming about half an hour, they gained the oppoſite ſhore, where they wounded an hippopotamus.

Our hero made an excurſion at noon along the mountains, which were ſo naked that ſcarcely a plant was to be ſeen. Some of theſe mountains conſiſt of a ſpecies of quartz, others of iron, and ſeveral ſtrata of copper ore. Along the banks of the river there were many pebbles of hard agate. In the evening they returned to the waggon, much fatigued. The wind being eaſterly, had driven them above a thouſand yards down the river. Our travellers continued their obſervation here for ſeveral days. In the courſe of one of their excurſions, Mr. Van Renan, very narrowly eſcaped with his life. In croſſing the river on the 15th, accompanied by four Hottentots, the whole party were attacked and purſued by two hippopotami. They had, however, the good fortune to get upon a rock in the middle of the river, and their guns being loaded they killed one of theſe animals; the other ſwam to the oppoſite ſide. Mr. Van Renan's intention was to go to the northward, being informed that the camelopardales were in that part of the country, while his friend made excurſions to the eaſtward through a large plain in ſearch of plants.

A ſpecies of locuſts come down to this plain at different ſeaſons of the year in ſuch numbers as to deſtroy moſt of the plants. The Boſhieſmen eſteem theſe inſects excellent food. The locuſts are dried and kept for uſe when they have no other proviſion. This part of the country abounds with poiſonous reptiles. The quadrupeds are elephants, camelopardales, rhinoceroſes, zebras, koedoes, elks, tigers, lions, jackals, hyenas, &c. &c.

On the 19th, Mr. Van Renan returned. He had ſhot a camelopardalis, towards the evening, at a great diſtance from the water, to which they immediately directed their courſe, intending to ſend a Hottentot next day to ſkin the animal. On their return, to their great ſurpriſe, a lion ſprung up about fifty yards from the place where the camelopardalis lay; and, on their arrival, they found he had disfigured it ſo much, that nothing could be preſerved except part of the ſkin of the neck, with the horns, and part of the hind quarters. After ſeeing this, the lieutenant reſolved to croſs the river with ſome of the Hottentots, and procure the ſkeleton which they left in the fields. But by this time the river began to ſwell, and the Hottentots refuſed to accompany our hero, as they would be in danger of being detained for ſeveral months on the oppoſite ſide, this being the rainy ſeaſon, to the eaſtward of their preſent ſituation, in which quarter they diſcovered many thunder clouds.

They ſpent the whole day of the 23d in ſhooting at the hippopotami, one of which they killed. They ſaw alſo the method made uſe of by the natives to catch theſe animals, which is as follows: they dig large holes in the ground, along the banks of the river, about ten feet diameter, and ſome of them about ten feet deep. In the bottom of theſe pits they place pieces of wood ſharpened at the points, and then cover the cavity with branches of trees and turf. When the hippopotami come out of the river in the night to graze, they often fall into theſe ſnares, and very frequently receive wounds which occaſion their immediate diſſolution.

The ſeaſon being too far advanced to admit of their proceeding further to the north, and there being no other path than that they had already taken, they returned by the ſame route. In their way they were viſited by two peaſants of the Nimiqua-Land, who were ſent out on a commiſſion to the Boſhieſmen, in ſearch of cattle which they had purloined from the inhabitants of Nimiqua-Land.

On the twenty-fourth they directed their courſe weſterly. At night they came to a ſmall fountain, called Zebras Fountain. Here was but little water; but they were, nevertheleſs, under the neceſſity of ſtaying all night, having an extenſive plain to croſs, where there was not a drop of water to be ſeen for about fifty miles. They left this at ſun-ſet the next day, and proceeded ſouthward, intending to travel through the dry deſart. After travelling about eight miles, ſeveral of their cattle began to drop down under the yoke, which obliged them to ſtay the remaining part of the night without a drop of water. In the morning they miſſed their oxen, and ſent a Hottentot out in ſearch of them, who returned at midnight. Being expoſed to the ſcorching heat of the ſun, and entirely deſtitute of water, this proved a very diſagreeable day.

On the 26th, they agreed it would be beſt to return to the river for water, and leave the waggon in its preſent ſituation. Mr. Van Renan being ſick, remained to take charge of the baggage, which required ſome guard, from the number of Buſh-Hottentots who infeſted this part of the country. They then directed their courſe towards the river, and took with them an empty caſk and a cann, which they had by the waggon. They found the river to be diſtant from them about eight miles, in a direct line. They ſaw on their arrival, the remainder of two hippopotami, which they had ſhot ſome days before, thrown out of the river. After refreſhing themſelves, they filled their caſk and cann, which the lieutenant and another carried, leaving their Hottentots to bring the cattle to the waggon. The heat of the ſun, and the fatiguing journey they had over the ſand, obliged them to expend great part of the water before they arrived at the waggon, which was at ſix in the evening. As ſoon as their oxen arrived, they made another attempt to proceed; but after travelling about ten miles further, their cattle appeared in the ſame condition as before. It was therefore agreed that Mr. Van Renan and a companion ſhould go on to the houſe of one Vander Hever, which was about fifty miles to the ſouthward of this place. Accordingly, on the 28th, they ſaddled their horſes, and left the lieutenant and his party in this diſagreeable ſituation, without water or fire. The lieutenant ſent a Hottentont to a rock, about ten miles diſtance to the ſouth-eaſt, where there was a little water. In the afternoon, being tired of their ſituation, they reſolved to make a third effort; and, if they ſhould find it impoſſible to proceed, to leave the waggon and return to the Orange-River, being almoſt exhauſted for want of water. Very luckily their cattle did much better than they expected, and brought them out of that ſandy deſart; in which there was ſcarcely any thing to be ſeen except mice and ſnakes, both of which were obſerved in great numbers. Towards the evening they met the Hottentot whom they had ſent to the rock in ſearch of water. He brought with him about forty quarts, which refreſhed them and their cattle exceedingly. In the night they arrived at the Brack-Fountain, which by this time was almoſt dried up: being much fatigued, they were very unwilling to leave this place. The next day the lieutenant employed the Hottentots in digging the fountain a little deeper; and, by their exertions, they procured abundance of water, both for their own uſe and that of the cattle. Having left this place, they purſued their journey towards the Copper-Berg, in the expectation of meeting with a ſupply of freſh oxen from their friend Vander Hever. About ten at night, they perceived a fire at a diſtance, and, on their arrival at the place, had the pleaſure of finding a Hottentot with twelve bullocks under his care, which had been diſpatched for our hero's aſſiſtance. They continued to travel till three o'clock in the morning, when they arrived at the Small Copper-Berg-Fountain, where they reſted.

At day-break they proceeded on their journey; and at nine o'clock the lieutenant left the waggon, and directed his courſe through the mountainous part of the country, to make obſervations. He viſited the Copper-Mines; and brought with him ſeveral ſpecimens of the ore, which is very rich. In the evening he arrived at the houſe of Vander Hever; and about two hours afterwards his waggon arrived. They reſted here ſeveral days, made many excurſions, and were kindly entertained.

On the 4th of October, being furniſhed with a team of freſh oxen, they travelled towards the ſouthward, and at night arrived at the Sand-River, the water of which they found brackiſh. Here they remained till morning, and then purſued their journey for about fourteen miles, to a place where they found excellent water. Afterwards they proceeded to Caſpers-Kloaf, where they remained another night.

On the ſeventh, our hero made an excurſion to the Camis-Berg; and the next morning they purſued their journey towards the Bokke-Veld, and in their way paſſed ſeveral Hottentot kraals. At the Eye-Fountain they met a peaſant who had travelled from the Cape, and was going towards the Orange-River.

On the 10th, they proceeded to the Green-River, where they reſted during the heat of the day; and in the afternoon travelled about four miles further to the ſouth-eaſt. The next day they were informed of a much better path than that which they had already traverſed, and which they reſolved to take: they travelled the whole day, and at night arrived at a ſmall ſtream of water, ſuppoſed to be the Thorn-River, where they agreed to remain till the morning.

Early on the 12th, the lieutenant aſcended a high mountain to the ſouthward, which afforded him a very extenſive view of the country to the eaſt, and the pleaſure of obſerving they had taken the right path. After travelling about fifteen miles, they came to the houſe of a Dutchman at Two-Fountain, ſituated to the ſouth-eaſt of the Camis-Berg, where they procured proviſions for a week, as they had an extenſive country to paſs before they could reach the Bokke-Veld. From this they proceeded to the Thorn-River, where they repoſed during the heat of the day. In the afternoon they continued their journey to the Hartebeeſt-Rivier, and remained there all night.

On the 14th, they found the Brack-Fountain nearly dried up, and ſo bitter that their cattle refuſed to drink of the water. Here, however, they ſtayed all night, and early the next morning proceeded on their journey towards the Lion's-Den, where they flattered themſelves with the hopes of finding water; but were diſappointed, for not a ſingle drop of water was diſcoverable in this place. They, however, unyoked their cattle, and reſted about two hours. In the afternoon they proceeded towards the Stink-Fountain, which was diſtant about thirty miles. In the night they loſt their way, and were obliged to ſleep in this dry deſart.

Early on the 16th, they ſaw the Bokke-Lands-Bergen to the ſouth-eaſt of them, about twenty miles. The lieutenant and Mr. Van Renan left the waggon at an early hour, directing their courſe to the Bokke-Land; and ſent a freſh team of oxen from thence to relieve the others, which were greatly fatigued, and ſcarcely able to ſtand, in conſequence of the injury they had received in their hoofs from the ſharp ſtones.

The next day they brought their waggon to the houſe of Mrs. Ryck. Our traveller's intention was to croſs the country, from this place to the great nation of Caffres, which is about nine hundred miles to the ſouth-eaſt; but finding both their oxen and waggon in very indifferent order for ſo long a journey, the lieutenant altered his plan, and conceived the deſign of making an excurſion to the Hentum, and part of the Boſhieſmen's-Land. This day they had ſeveral loud claps of thunder, and heavy rain. The variable ſtate of the weather detained our travellers here ſeveral days.

Having left the Bokke-Land, they directed their courſe eaſtward, and arrived, on the twenty-third, at the houſe of Chriſtian Bockchere, where they paſſed the night. The following day they had ſtormy weather, and heavy ſhowers of rain and ſleet; and towards the evening, hail and ſnow. The next morning a ſevere froſt killed moſt of the corn, which at this time was about a foot in height; a circumſtance which in this part of the country often happens.

On the twenty-ſeventh, the lieutenant made an excurſion to the northward, which is called the Boſhieſmen's-Land, from its being inhabited by the Buſh-Hottentots, who are a very different people from the other peaceable and well-diſpoſed inhabitants of this region. They are in fact, fierce, cruel, and diſhoneſt. In this tour our hero viſited a houſe belonging to a Dutchman, who had lived here for many years. A few weeks before their arrival he had been attacked by the Boſhieſmen, who had killed four of his Hottentots, and wounded another. Theſe marauders carried away alſo ſeveral of his cattle, which he was never able to recover.

Having left the Hentum on the 29th, they returned to the Bokke-Lands-Bergen, intending to return to the Cape, along the ſhore of the Atlantic Ocean.—But when they arrived at the Bokke-Land, on the 31ſt, they were compelled to remain there ſeveral days, from the ſtate of the weather, which was very rainy and variable. They took leave of this place on the ſixth of November, accompanied by two ſons of Mrs. Ryck, and an overſeer of Mr. Van Renan's farms, in this part of the country, who was going on a ſhooting party. Our traveller alſo partook of the diverſion, and left the waggon to proceed to a place called the Lion's-Dance, where they intended to ſtay all night. Their way lay through a low country of a clayey ſoil, called Karo. They ſaw much game; and the ſervant of Mr. Van Renan, being an excellent markſman, ſhot two elks, both of which were much larger than an Engliſh bullock: the fleſh of this animal is palatable though dry. At night they returned to the Lion's-Dance, where they found their waggon: and early the next day they parted with their friends, and directed their courſe ſouth-weſt, having the Bokke-Lands-Bergen on their left hand, and the Atlantic Ocean on their right, at the diſtance of about thirty miles. They travelled the whole day and till midnight, when they found a fountain of brackiſh water. They reſted at the ſide of this fountain the remaining part of the night.

On the 8th, the lieutenant and Mr. Van Renan left the waggon, and directed their courſe weſt-north-weſt. In the afternoon they arrived at the Elephant's-River, and found it ſo deep that their horſes ſwam about ten yards. They ſoon reached the oppoſite ſhore, where, at a little diſtance, was the houſe of a Dutchman who had lived many years on the banks of this river, and kept a ſmall boat for tranſporting waggons, in time of neceſſity. They ſtayed here, waiting for their waggon, and dried their clothes. The following day was employed in tranſporting their baggage over the river. The country around is rather naked of trees; but produces a great variety of ſucculent plants. They were furniſhed by their benevolent hoſt with a team of freſh oxen, which were neceſſary to enable them to paſs through a deep ſandy plain; and were accompanied by a peaſant of the Nimiqua-Land, who was travelling towards the Cape. They continued their journey about twenty miles to the ſouthward, and at night came to a large cove, called the Heer-Lodſiement (i. e. gentlemen's lodgings) where they reſted till the next day. In the afternoon they proceeded on their journey through a deep white ſandy plain. They travelled till midnight, when they found a little water, near which they paſſed the night. The next morning they proceeded to a farm, called the Long-Valley, which is diſtant from the Elephant's-River about ſixty miles. Here they ſtayed all night, and were, as uſual, hoſpitably entertained. From this place they directed their courſe eaſt by ſouth, along the valley. In the night ſome animal ſprung out of a buſh, which ſo greatly alarmed their oxen, that it was with difficulty they could keep them ſtill. They ſuppoſed the noiſe to proceed from an hyena, as they heard the cries of thoſe animals ſome time after at a very conſiderable diſtance. On the fourteenth, they arrived at the Berg-Valley, where they ſtayed all night, at the houſe of Joſias Engelbright.

The lieutenant now diſpatched his waggon, on the fifteenth, towards the Picquet-Berg, and together with his companion paſſed the day in this place, where he ſhot variety of birds, which he found in great abundance. The next day they proceeded on their journey; paſſed a place called the Croſſe, where the Berg-Valley joins the Venlore-Valley, and both aſſume a weſtward direction. At noon they overtook the waggon, and reſted the afternoon at the houſe of a Mr. Smith. Towards the evening, the lieutenant and Mr. Smith made a ſhort excurſion towards the hill, and took each of them a gun. On their return they ſhot four large flamingoes, from four to five and ſix feet long. They ſaw alſo the Yellow Snake, or Covra-Capel. Afterwards they directed their courſe along the Picquet-Berg, on the ſide of the large chain of mountains which commences at the end of the Hottniqua-Land, and extends through the interior part of the country to about twenty miles from the Atlantic Ocean. In the afternoon they arrived at the houſe of a Dutchman, where they ſtayed all night, and were well entertained.—This farm is fruitful, producing plenty of European fruits and corn.

On the 17th, the lieutenant made an excurſion to the top of the mountain, where he had a view of the Table-Land to the ſouthward, diſtant about ſixty or ſeventy miles. The mountain is well watered, and is covered with variety of graſs. There is alſo a farm here belonging to Mr. Hana Camp, where he kept part of his cattle during ſummer; but in the winter it is often covered with ſnow. On our hero's return he ſaw ſeveral zebras, which inhabit the mountain; but as they are not found in conſiderable numbers, ſhooting them is prohibited. After refreſhing himſelf, he followed his waggon, and towards the evening overtook it. About midnight they came to the Berg-Rivier, where there is a ferry; they continued here during the remaining part of the night; and the next morning the lieutenant and Mr. Van Renan left the waggon, and traverſed Black-Land, leaving the Rie-Beck's-Caſtiel on their left. In the afternoon they paſſed the Swart-Land's church, and at night came to the houſe of Claſs Lopſer, which is ſituated on the Deep River. He was juſt arrived from the Cape, and had brought with him ſome excellent wine, to which he very liberally made our travellers welcome. Hence they directed their courſe along the Camis-Berg, and obſerved the farmers now engaged in their harveſt. At noon they came to a place belonging to the Dutch company, called Fiſhers-Hook, where they refreſhed themſelves, and in the afternoon proceeded on their way, and after a journey of ſix months arrived at the Cape-Town, November 20, 1778.

CHAP. III.

In order to explore Caffraria, hitherto unknown, the Lieutenant undertakes his THIRD JOURNEY—*Accompanied by Mr. Tunies proceeds to Groot-Faders-Boſch—They paſs ſeveral Rivers—Deſcend the Canna-Lands Height—Okker Hynn's Farm—Arrive at the Houſe of Rulof Comphor—At Crooked-River—Reach Eſſen-Boſch—Proceed to Camtours-Rivier—Surpriſed by a wild Buffalo—Arrive at Van Stada's Rivier—Reſt at Swart Kop's Rivier—Pick up a Companion—Obſervations on Zout-Pan—Viſited by two Caffres—Arrive at Hottentots Kow-Cha—Meet with wild Dogs, &c.—Viſit one of the Dutch Boors—Mr. Tunies leaves the Party, and Jacob Kock ſupplies his Place—Sand-Fleet—Viſit a Kraal—Miſs their Cattle which were ſtolen—Recover them—Proceed to Great Fiſh-River—To Now-Tio—Proceed to Caffraria—Manners, Ornaments, &c. of the People—Deſcription of the Chief—Of the Country—Their Return to the Cape.*

NOTWITHSTANDING the Caffres are ſo jealous of the encroachments of the Dutch (the only Europeans they have knowledge of) that they deny all others admittance to their territory, yet our hero was determined to pay them a viſit, Caffraria having been never yet explored, and on account of its remoteneſs, deemed unworthy the notice of the States or Company. Accordingly, Lieutenant Patterſon left Cape-Town December 23, and January 3, 1779, arrived at Zwellendam. Here a Mr. Tunies, one of the Company's overſeers, who was then going to the eaſtward to exchange cattle for tobacco and beads, joined our travellers, and they proceeded to Groot-Fader's-Boſch.

On the 8th, they paſſed the Doven-Hocks-Rivier, where they reſted that night, and next day paſſed the Falſe-River and Caffre-Kulls-Rivier, and from this directed their courſe to the Gauds-Rivier, and afterwards to the Hagal-Kraal, leaving the ſhore of the Indian Ocean, about 10 miles diſtance, on their right hand.

On the 12th, with as much difficulty as before (journey the firſt) they paſſed Atquas-Kloaf, and now took the eaſtward direction through part of the Canna-Land.

On the 13th, in the afternoon, they deſcended the Canna-Lands height, which is a ſteep, horrid, rugged path; the country had a moſt miſerable appearance, ſo very deſtitute that the ſudden diſcovery of a piece of cultivated land which belonged to one Okker Hynns, afforded no ſmall aſtoniſhment. This induſtrious farmer, had, notwithſtanding the drearineſs of the ſituation, built a capital houſe and planted vineyards and gardens, which produced excellent wine and fruit, particularly peaches, apricots, figs, almonds, &c. &c. which he dried and ſent to the Cape for ſale. About three weeks before their arrival, there had been a very heavy ſtorm of hail and wind; the hailſtones, which were of an enormous ſize, and the impetuous wind, had deſtroyed every thing about his houſe. His corn, vineyard, and fruit trees, were totally ſpoiled; one of his children, who was at the time keeping a flock of ſheep at ſome diſtance from any ſhelter, was very much hurt, and many of the ſheep were deſtroyed.

At ſun-ſet they travelled to a ſmall river, about ſix miles diſtant from this place, where they continued all night: and proceeded the next day to the eaſtward, arriving in the evening at the houſe of one Rulof Comphor. This is the beginning of the Lange-Kloaf, which is about an hundred miles long, and about two miles in breadth; the ſoil is a ſtrong reddiſh clay, and the paſture very unwholeſome for cattle. This part of the country has been very much improved of late, the farmers have cultivated corn-land, gardens, and vineyards, and in general are poſſeſſed of very good houſes.

They now purſued their journey along this valley, making occaſional ſhort ſtages, and on the 20th arrived at the Crooked-River, which runs through a long marſhy valley bounded by two ridges of hills, but not ſo lofty as that of the Lange-Kloaf. At the mouth of this river is a kind of bay, which may afford a ſafe harbour for ſhips. This part of the coaſt is but little known, particularly to the eaſt. They reached in the afternoon a place, called Eſſen-Boſch, ſo called from a tree very uſeful in making waggons, which the Dutch term Eſſen, or Aſh. Thence they proceeded to a houſe beautifully ſituated on the banks of a pleaſant river, called Cableows-River, from a fiſh which goes by that name, and which is a ſpecies of cod, being found near its mouth. This houſe being the property of Mr. Van Renan, our travellers ſtaid here a day, and viſited the ſhore, which is only about an Engliſh mile diſtant. Among the rocks they found abundance of oyſters, which were very good. The farm produces plenty of corn, wine, and European fruits, and the paſture here is excellent for cattle.

On the 23d they proceeded to the Camtours-Rivier, where they reſted during the heat of the day. On the banks of this river are woods of very large trees, which are generally frequented by wild buffaloes, ſo very fierce, as to render travelling hereabouts exceedingly dangerous. In the afternoon they were accompanied by a ſervant of Mr. Van Renan, who was going towards the Lorie-Rivier. About ten o'clock at night, they arrived at the place where their waggon already was, and to their great ſurpriſe they ſaw a wild buffalo ſtanding cloſe to it, which they at firſt took for one of the oxen. Before they could aſcertain whether this was the caſe or not, it ſprung into the wood.

Hence they proceeded, ſouth by eaſt, through an uneven country, and in the evening came to Van Stada's Rivier, where they obſerved a beautiful wood upon the declivity of a hill, extending to the very banks of the river. On the 26th, our hero viſited the ſea-ſhore, which was five or ſix miles to the ſouthward. About a thouſand yards from the ſea, the mouth of the river forms a lake, being dammed up by a bank of ſand, which extends along the ſhore. In the afternoon they continued their journey through an extenſive plain, where they met with numerous herds of different animals peculiar to this country, ſuch as the zebra, quacha, eland, and a ſpecies of antelope, called by the Dutch, hartebeeſt, which is the Capra Dorcas of Linnæus, one of which they had the good fortune to ſhoot. It is of a browniſh colour, and the fleſh is palatable though dry.

In the evening they arrived at the Swart-Kops-Rivier, where they paſſed the night, and the next morning were overtaken by a peaſant who was on his way to the Boſhieſmen's-Land, and was glad to accompany them, as this place lay in their way. Being a man well acquainted with the country, and the manners of the natives, his company was equally acceptable. They paſſed the Swart-Kops-Rivier at noon.

Zout-Pan, which is ſituate in this neighbourhood, is an object that cannot fail to attract the attention of travellers. This lake is a plain much above the level of the ſea, and between three and four miles in circumference. At ſome ſeaſons of the year it is formed into an entire maſs of fine white ſalt, which has a very ſtriking appearance. The heavy rains had diſſolved the middle part of it, a ſhort time before the arrival of our travellers; but round the ſides was a hard cruſt of ſalt exactly reſembling ice. The adjacent country is covered with variety of fruteſcent and ſucculent plants.

They were here viſited by two Caffres, the firſt they had yet ſeen; for they very ſeldom venture ſo far out of their own country. At night they arrived at a place, called by the Hottentots Kow-Cha, which is much frequented by buffaloes, rhinoceroſes, and lions. The ſoil is of a ſandy loam, and produces excellent paſture for cattle, but no corn; there is, however, no proof that the land is not fit to produce grain, for no care is taken reſpecting cultivation at this diſtance from the Cape.

On the 29th they purſued their journey to the eaſtward, towards the Sundays-River. The face of the country, at this place, has a very barren appearance; but it produces a variety of arboreous plants, though very few of any conſiderable height or ſize, which demonſtrates the poverty of the ſoil. On their way they ſaw great numbers of wild dogs, which travel in flocks, and are very deſtructive when they get where there are flocks of ſheep. Theſe wild dogs are common near the Cape. They are much larger than the jackall, with large irregular blotches or ſpots on their ſkin. After a very diſagreeable day's march, through a dry ſtony country, they arrived at night at the Sundays-River, which is diſtant from the Cape-Town about nine hundred miles.

Next day the lieutenant viſited one of the Dutch boors, who had reſided in that part of the country for many years. This man was poſſeſſed of numerous herds of cattle; but had no corn, and ſcarcely a houſe to live in, though the place was favourable for both. But the generality of thoſe people are of ſo indolent a diſpoſition, that they ſeldom trouble themſelves either to build houſes or to cultivate the ground. Such as are inclined to be induſtrious, and wiſh to make the moſt of their advantages, never fail in deriving the ſought-for benefits.

Mr. Tunies took his leave of the lieutenant on the thirty-firſt, and his place was ſupplied by Jacob Kock, an old German. Mr. Van Renan and the lieutenant went on towards the Great Fiſh-River. At noon they overtook their waggon, at a place which, in the Hottentot language, is called Curnow. They were informed by their ſervants, that they had been diſturbed in the night by ſome elephants, which came very near the waggon. They proceeded in the afternoon to a plantation, called the Sand-Fleet, belonging to their fellow-traveller Jacob Kock.

The country here is extremely beautiful and picturеſque, very hilly, and the hills are ſhaded with impenetrable woods; the vallies well watered and covered with graſs, which affords excellent paſture for cattle. Great numbers of quadrupeds inhabit this neighbourhood, ſuch as panthers, lions, rhinoceroſes, elephants, ſpring bocks, buffaloes, &c. At a little diſtance to the eaſtward are ſome kraals belonging to the tribe of Hottentots, called Chonacquas. Theſe people are much darker in their complexion, and better ſhaped than any of the other tribes that were before ſeen. Whether this difference ariſes from their mixing with the Caffres, ſeveral of whom dwell in this part of the country, or from any other cauſe, our hero could not aſcertain. It is not very uncommon for the Caffres and Chonacquas to quarrel, which generally ends in an engagement. In theſe encounters ſeveral hundreds of the Caffres ſometimes unite to oppoſe their enemies, who very ſeldom bring a proportionable force into the field. But the dexterity with which the Hottentots uſe their bows and arrows, and the practice of poiſoning the latter, render them very dangerous enemies to thoſe who only uſe the haſſagai. The diſputes between theſe people generally originate about cattle, of which both nations are remarkably greedy.

They now proceeded eaſtward, to the Boſhieſman's-River, and at noon our hero viſited a kraal belonging to a Hottentot captain, called De Royter. This man has upwards of two hundred Hottentots and Caffres in his ſervice, and a few hours before their arrival, had fought againſt a number of Caffres, and taken many of their cattle, having beaten them entirely off the field.

After ſome time, they reached a lake of brackiſh water on February the firſt, and ſtayed here the whole night. They intended to proſecute their journey early the following morning, but miſſing their cattle, their firſt care was to diſpatch their Hottentots in ſearch of them. In a few hours one of the men returned and informed our travellers, that they had been ſtolen by the Caffres, that they had diſcerned the prints of their feet, and ſaw, from tracing them, that the cattle had been driven towards a village belonging to a Caffre captain, whoſe name was Mahhotie. A meſſenger was immediately diſpatched to the other Hottentots, with an order that they ſhould follow the path of the cattle till they found them, which they did. They returned with them towards the evening, and informed the lieutenant that they were found a little way from the kraal. One of the Caffres told our travellers that they had taken the cattle by miſtake, as the evening was dark, and they thought they belonged to the Hottentots with whom they had fought the day before. Though it was now late they continued their journey about twenty miles. In the night they arrived at a place, called the K'a Cha Chow, which is one of the branches of the Boſhieſman's-River, and where their companion, Jacob Kock, had formerly his reſidence. This old German accompanied our travellers (on the 3d) to the Great Fiſh-River. Thence they purſued their journey to the eaſtward, through a pleaſant country, though quite uninhabited. There are numerous herds of quadrupeds to be found here, and ſuch the amazing height of the graſs, that it reached their horſes bellies. This part of the country is agreeably diverſified with little pleaſant woods upon the declivities of the hills. In the evening they came to a place, called Now-Tio, and the next day at noon reached a ſmall river, which at this time was almoſt dry; here, however, they reſted a few hours, ſeeing a herd of buffaloes at a diſtance from them, which they intended to amuſe themſelves with ſhooting in the afternoon. After dinner they divided themſelves into different parties, and as ſoon as they were within ſhot they attacked the buffaloes; they were about an hundred in number; five of them they ſhot, ſome of which were much heavier than an European bullock; the others fled into a wood, which was about a mile to the eaſtward of them. Mr. Kock had the animals ſkinned; their hides making ſuch excellent thongs for oxen, that they are preferred to every other material for this purpoſe. At night they arrived at the Fiſh-River, where they ſtayed two days. During the night they had heavy ſhowers of rain, with loud claps of thunder. Here the river aſſumes a ſouthern direction, and empties itſelf into the great Indian Ocean, at about twenty miles diſtance. The deepeſt parts of the river are inhabited by the hippopotami, and the adjacent woods by buffaloes, rhinoceroſes, and elephants.

Mr. Van Renan having agreed to ſtay with the waggon, there being no poſſibility as yet of getting it through the impenetrable woods, the lieutenant and Mr. Kock proceeded eaſterly towards the Caffres, being informed that they could reach their country in two or three days. They took with them an Hottentot who was perfectly acquainted with the language of the Caffres. In paſſing through the thickets, on the banks of the Fiſh-River, they encountered conſiderable difficulties, till they fortunately got into an elephant's path, in which they continued till noon; they then croſſed the river and entered a ſpacious plain, remarkable for beautiful evergreens, &c.

In the evening they encamped under a large Mimoſa, and during the night kindled fires. When they had paſſed this extenſive plain, they entered a wood about eight miles broad. In many places the trees were thinly ſcattered; in theſe openings they diſcovered numerous herds of buffaloes, which had not the leaſt appearance of ſhyneſs; one of them they wounded. Shortly after this they perceived a herd of elephants, about eighty in number, which approached ſo near that they could obſerve the length and thickneſs of their teeth.

Having left the wood, they aſcended a ſteep mountain, where they had a view of the Indian Ocean to the ſouthward; and to the northward, a hilly country covered with trees and evergreen ſhrubs, which extended about thirty miles. The proſpect was bounded by a range of mountains, called the Bamboo-Berg, ſo called from a ſpecies of Bamboo which grows there. To the eaſt they had a view of a pleaſant country decorated with great variety of plants. The country is here well watered, and produces excellent paſture for cattle.

On the 7th, near evening time, they obſerved a fire about ten miles to the eaſtward of them upon the ſlope of a green hill. Their interpreter told them this was at a Caffre village. At ſunſet they diſcovered another much nearer, and ſaw ſeveral herds of cattle. About eight in the evening they met three of the Caffres, who were much ſurpriſed at our travellers' appearance, as they were certainly the firſt Europeans they had ever ſeen. They ſpeedily returned and alarmed the whole village; but on the arrival of the lieutenant and his friend, they received them kindly, brought them milk, and offered a fat bullock, agreeable to their cuſtom of hoſpitality. This village conſiſted of about fifty houſes, ſituate on the banks of a pleaſant river, called in the Caffre language, Mugu Ranie, and which belonged to their chief. It contained about three hundred inhabitants, all of whom were ſervants or ſoldiers to their chief, who was likewiſe the proprietor of the numerous herds of cattle. Theſe people ſubſiſt on the milk of their cows, and on game, not being allowed to kill any of their cattle. The men milk the cows, and the women take care of the gardens and corn. Our travellers were accompanied by all theſe people from one village to another, till they arrived at the place belonging to the perſon who is denominated chief or king. His habitation was ſituate on a pleaſant river, called Becha Cum, or Milk-River. Indeed all their houſes are built on the banks of rivers or ſtreams; but there was no corn or garden near it. The chief (whoſe name was Khouta) had about an hundred cows, which ſupplied him and his houſehold with milk. His family conſiſted of about twenty-two ſervants, who attended him wherever he went. On the appearance of our travellers he ſeemed very ſhy, and kept at a great diſtance for about an hour, when a number of Caffres met and accompanied him to his houſe. He ſoon afterwards ſent one of his ſervants to invite the lieutenant and his party thither. The firſt thing our hero preſented him with was ſome beads, which he freely accepted: next with ſome tobacco; but he ſeemed to prefer his own, which was much lighter. He ſoon offered the lieutenant a herd of fat bullocks in return; this being refuſed, he ſeemed greatly affronted, and often repeated, "What do you think of our country?" After a few words between them, our hero accepted of one, which his people immediately ſhot; this ſurpriſed all the ſpectators, who were about ſix hundred perſons, few of them having ever ſeen a gun, or heard the report of one. They had a part of the bullock dreſſed, which the lieutenant thought much ſuperior to the beef near the Cape. The reſt of the animal was diſtributed among the king and his ſervants; the former ſtill ſeeming diſpleaſed that our hero would accept of nothing more in return. The lieutenant then aſked him for ſome of their baſkets, which he gave him, and alſo two of their lances or haſſagais, which they make with great ingenuity; but the conſtruction of the baſkets, which are made by their women, is much more ſurpriſing; they are compoſed of graſs, and woven ſo cloſely that they are capable of holding any fluid. Khouta now entreated our travellers to remain with him a few days; this, however, they did not conſent to; but after much perſuaſion, agreed to ſtay all night. As the weather was hot, they choſe to ſleep in the woods rather than in any of the huts. During the night there were two guards placed on each ſide the door of the chief's houſe, who were relieved about every two hours.

The lieutenant, allured by the pleaſantneſs of the country, propoſed to proceed further to the eaſt, but finding there was a river a little to the eaſtward of them, they determined on returning the ſame way they came.

The large palm, which grows here in abundance, is uſed for bread by the Caffres as well as the Hottentots. They take the pith of this plant, and after collecting a ſufficient quantity, let it lie for ſeveral days till it becomes a little ſour; after this they bake it in an oven which is erected for the purpoſe. They alſo bake bread of their own corn, which is the ſame as the Guinea corn. But this grain is moſtly uſed for making punch, called by ſome of them Pombie, which is ſtrong and intoxicating. The men amongſt the Caffres are from five feet ten inches to ſix feet high, and well proportioned, and in general evince great courage in attacking lions, or any beaſts of prey. This nation, at this time, was divided into two parties; to the northward were a number of them commanded by one Chatha Bea, or Tambuſhie, who had obtained the latter denomination from his mother, a woman of the tribe of Hottentots, called Tambukies. This man was the ſon of a chief, called Pharoa, who died about three years before, and left two ſons, Cha Cha Bea, and another named Dſirika, who claimed the ſupreme authority on account of his mother being of the Caffre nation. This occaſioned a conteſt between the two brothers, in the courſe of which Cha Cha Bea was driven out of his territories, with a number of his adherents. The unfortunate chief travelled about an hundred miles to the northward of Khouta, where he reſided, and had entered into an alliance with the Boſhieſmen Hottentots. The colour of the Caffres is a jet black, their teeth white as ivory, and their eyes large. The clothing of both ſexes is nearly the ſame, conſiſting entirely of the hides of oxen, which are as pliant as cloth. The men wear tails of different animals tied round their thighs, pieces of braſs in their hair, and large ivory rings on their arms: they are alſo adorned with the hair of lions, and feathers faſtened on their heads, with many other fantaſtical ornaments. When they are about nine years of age they undergo the operation of being circumciſed, and afterwards wear a muzzle of leather which covers the extremity of the penis, and is ſuſpended by a leathern thong from their middle. This covering is in general ornamented with beads and braſs rings, which they purchaſe from the Hottentots for tobacco and dacka. They are extremely fond of dogs, which they exchange for cattle, and to ſuch a height do they carry this paſſion, that if one particularly pleaſes them, they will give two bullocks in exchange for it. Their whole exerciſe through the day is hunting, fighting, or dancing. They are expert in throwing their lances, and in time of war uſe ſhields made of the hides of oxen. The women (as before obſerved) are employed in making baſkets, and cultivating their gardens and corn; they alſo make the mats on which they ſleep. They rear ſeveral vegetables, which are not indigenous to their country, ſuch as water-melons, tobacco, hemp, and a ſmall ſort of kidney-beans. The men have great pride in their cattle; they cut their horns in ſuch a way as to be able to turn them into any ſhape they pleaſe, and teach them to anſwer a whiſtle. Some of them uſe an inſtrument for this purpoſe, ſimilar to a Boſhieſman's pipe. When they wiſh their cattle to return home, they go a little way from the houſe and blow this ſmall inſtrument, which is made of ivory or bone, and ſo conſtructed as to be heard at a great diſtance, and in this manner bring all their cattle home without any difficulty.

The ſoil of this country is a blackiſh loamy ground, and ſo extremely fertile, that every vegetable ſubſtance, whether ſown or planted, grows with great luxuriance. There are great variations in the climate; it ſeldom rains except in the ſummer ſeaſon, when it is accompanied with thunder and lightning. The country is, however, extremely well ſupplied with water, not only from the high land to the north, which furniſhes abundance throughout the year, but from many fountains of excellent water, which are found in the woods, wherein are various arboreous plants, ſome of a great ſize, and a number of buffaloes, elephants, &c. alſo a variety of beautiful birds and butterflies.

Having returned to their waggon, they were accompanied by the chief and about ſix hundred of his ſervants or ſoldiers, who followed them till noon, when they took leave of them. They then directed their courſe towards the Great Fiſh-River, where they ſtayed all night; and on the 10th, left their Hottentot, with a gun, as he was ſo much fatigued that he could not keep pace with them. On the 12th they proceeded on their return by the route they had before taken. This day they were overtaken by the Hottentot, who on his way had ſhot two rhinoceroſes, and brought part of the fleſh with him, which proved good eating, being very young and tender.

About evening they arrived at the Now-Tio. Mr. Van Renan left the waggon, accompanied by ſome Hottentots, with an intention of ſhooting at a herd of buffaloes, which they obſerved at about the diſtance of a mile. Before they returned there were many loud claps of thunder, with lightning and heavy rain; and it became ſo dark that they loſt their way. On account of the rain, thoſe left behind could make no fires till about nine, when the ſtorm was much abated, and then they lighted ſeveral, which the wanderers ſoon ſaw. About ten they arrived at the waggon, Mr. Van Renan having fallen into the river, the only accident which happened to them.

On the 13th they miſſed their cattle, and diſpatched their Hottentots in purſuit of them, who returned in the evening without having obſerved any traces of them. Accordingly the lieutenant and Mr. Kock ſaddled their horſes the next morning, and directing their courſe through the country in ſearch of them, found them at the Boſhieſman's-River, about twenty miles diſtant. They then, with ſome of Mr. Kock's Hottentots, returned.

When they had reached Cableows-Rivier, they agreed to remain in that place a few days. Here they were ſupplied with great variety of fruit, as it was in the height of the ſeaſon for grapes, peaches, water-melons, &c. &c. Having taken leave of their hoſpitable friend, they directed their courſe ſouth by weſt, towards the houſe of their companion Mr. Kock, which is ſituate on the Zie-Koe-Rivier, or Sea-Cow-River, ſo called from its being formerly inhabited by the hippopotami. Here many of their oxen fell ſick, having caught a diſeaſe called the klow ſickneſs, which rages among the horned cattle in the ſummer, and affects their hoofs ſo much that they drop off, and numbers of the cattle die. Mr. Van Renan diſpatched one of his Hottentots to his father's houſe, who returned to them with a ſupply of freſh cattle. They then proceeded weſtward.

On the firſt of March, in the evening, they arrived at the houſe of a Dutchman, where they reſted that night, and the next day paſſed the Krome-Rivier. In a few days they arrived at the houſe of one Veraira, a wealthy farmer, where they had the mortification to find their cattle in the ſame condition as before, and thoſe they had brought from the Cableows-River ſtill worſe than the others which had previouſly ſuffered.

After a journey of three months, the lieutenant having left Mr. Van Renan with the waggon, arrived at the Cape, March the 23d.

CHAP. IV.

The Lieutenant, accompanied by Mr. Sebaſtian Van Renan, undertakes his FOURTH JOURNEY*—Proceed towards Gloena-Kloaf—Arrive at Rie Beck's Caſtle—Berg-Rivier—Picquet-Berg—The Crois—Loſt Valley—Entertained by Mr. Gueſf—Lange-Valley—Jackals-Valley—They loſe their Way—Reach the Houſe of Peter Van Syl—Waggon damaged—Meet Colonel Gordon—Separate in a different Route—Arrive at Bokke-Veld—Thorn-River—Meet an Hottentot on the Way to Lion's-Den—Misfortunes—Viſited by ſeveral Boſhieſmen—Proceed to Brack-Fountain—Hartebeeſt-Rivier—Three-Fountain—Green-Rivier—Meet Colonel Gordon again—Examine Camis-Berg—Meet a Peaſant and Deſerter—Adviſed by the Natives not to proceed—Lieutenant Patterſon and Colonel Gordon ſeparate again—Continuation of the Journey—Paſs ſeveral dangerous Places—A Letter from the Colonel—Hottentots murmur—The Colonel joins again the Party—Obſervations—The Cattle drop for Want of Graſs and Water—Reach a Fountain of excellent Water—Proceed Northward—A Companion of the Colonel's loſt—A large Valley diſcovered—Find an Oſtrich Neſt—Remarks—Find the Colonel's Companion—Meet with wild Men, &c.—Adventures—Reſt at Woter Val—Arrive at Lee-Fountain—Cork-Fountain—Viſited by ſeveral Nimiquas—Further Progreſs—Meet ſeveral Hottentots—Curſory Remarks—Finding ſeveral Natives eating the Gums of the Trees—Obliged to dig Pits for Water—Thunder Clouds obſerved—Viſited by Buſh-Hottentots—Continuation of the Journey—Arrive at Hier-Lodſiement—Supplied with freſh Oxen—Return to the Cape.*

LIEUT. Patterſon, accompanied by Mr. Sebaſtian Van Renan, now undertook his fourth journey. They proceeded to Ronde-Boſch, the houſe of Sebaſtian's father, where, on account of the badneſs of the weather, they ſtaid three days. Thence they proceeded north, towards Groena-Kloaf, which country is chiefly the Dutch Company's property. Having paſſed a heavy ſand, they arrived at a butcher's houſe, where they reſted for a night. This part of the country is celebrated for pheaſants, partridges, water-ſnipes, and a variety of game. They now proceeded north-eaſt, through Swart-Land, and arrived at Rie Beck's Caſtle, at the houſe of one Mr. Droyer, a wealthy farmer, where they remained two days. The lieutenant made an excurſion to the Rie Beck's Caſtle-Berg. On the top of this hill a piece of cannon is placed for the purpoſe of giving ſignals, to prevent ſurpriſe from an enemy, and to alarm the adjacent country. They left Mr. Droyer's on the 25th, and arrived at the Berg-Rivier, where they ſtayed all night, and early next morning croſſed it at a ferry. This day they proceeded on their journey to the Picquet-Berg, and the next arrived at the Crois, where they ſtayed all night. Hence they proceeded weſterly, along the Loſt-Valley; and in the evening came to the houſe of Mr. Gueff. During the night of the 25th, a very heavy rain fell, which ſwelled the river ſo much that the next day they found it impaſſable. The farmer was much pleaſed with their company, and entreated them to prolong their ſtay for ſeveral days, to which, as the river ſtill continued very high, they agreed. Upon ſeeing the waters ſubſide, they propoſed to proceed in their journey, and were aſſiſted by their hoſpitable friend Mr. Gueff, who ſupplied them with ſome of his cattle, which were more accuſtomed to paſſing the flood than their own. The river was broad, and in ſeveral places the oxen were obliged to ſwim. When they reached the oppoſite ſhore they directed their courſe northward, through a high ſandy country. At night they arrived at the Lange-Valley, at the houſe of Mrs. Low, an old French woman, who had long lived in this part of the country, and was poſſeſſed of numerous herds of cattle. They ſtayed all night here, and the following day proceeded on their journey through a large ſandy plain, towards the Hier-Lodſiement, which is above forty miles diſtant. At night they came to the Jackals-Valley, where, though they found no water, they were obliged to remain a few hours in order to refreſh their oxen, which were much fatigued. About two in the morning they proceeded to the place where they intended to reſt, and which they reached at nine in the afternoon; here they found a peaſant who had arrived about two hours before them. Our hero inquired which way he was going, obſerving he had many Hottentots and a number of guns in his waggon: he ſaid that his courſe was towards the Great-River, and that he intended to accompany Colonel Gordon, whom he left at the Cape, but expected he would ſoon overtake them. In the afternoon they directed their courſe towards the Elephants-River; but unluckily in the night loſt their way. They ſaw ſome fires, which they expected had been made at the place of their deſtination; but on their arrival at the ſpot, they found they had been lighted by ſome Hottentots who had the care of a flock of ſheep belonging to a Dutchman. One of theſe directed them on their right way, and at two in the morning they came to the houſe of Peter Van Syl, who had lived on the banks of this river for many years. Their waggon was ſo much damaged, on their journey hither from the Cape, that they were compelled to remain here a few days in order to have it repaired; which having done, they tranſported their baggage and waggon acroſs the river, at this time very high. In the evening Colonel Gordon arrived; but as he was purſuing a different route, it was agreed to meet in the Small Nimiqua-Land, and then to proceed together along the ſhore of the Atlantic Ocean, as far as they could poſſibly travel to the northward. Accordingly our hero and his party directed their courſe to the Bokke-Lands-Bergen, where they had appointed to receive a team of freſh oxen. When they arrived at the Bokke-Veld, they aſcended the mountain, and left the waggon by a ſmall fountain; the path being impaſſable on account of the heavy rains which had fallen. At this place they ſupplied themſelves with ſome proviſion; and Mr. Sebaſtian Van Renan took a cart with him, and ſixteen bullocks belonging to his father Mr. Van Renan.

They proceeded on their journey towards the Small Nimiqua-Land, and arrived at the Thorn-River, where, during the night of the ſixteenth, they heard the roaring of lions, which they ſuppoſed to be about a thouſand yards from them. On their way to a place, called the Lion's-Den, they met a Hottentot, who informed them, that at his kraal, the family had been viſited by the ſame lions which they had heard, and that they had devoured two of his calves. This Hottentot was the ſervant of Mrs. Ryck, and lived here in the Karo during the winter ſeaſon, the charge of part of her cattle having been committed to him. After travelling till night without finding a drop of water, and being ſo unfortunate as to loſe their way, they were obliged to ſtop till the next morning. During the night Mr. S. Van Renan loſt his horſe, which it was ſuppoſed had returned to the Bokke-Veld, whence they had brought him. At day-light they proceeded on their journey, and at ten in the morning arrived at the Lion's-Den, where they reſted all day, and were viſited by ſeveral of the Boſhieſmen.

Next they proceeded to the Reed, or Brack-Fountain, where they had very indifferent water, and thence to the Hartebeeſt-Rivier, and from this to Three-Fountain, where they ſtayed all night, and early the following day continued their journey north-weſt, to the Green-River, were they had the ſatisfaction of meeting Colonel Gordon, who had arrived there only a few hours before them.

As their caravan made a ſhort ſtay on the banks of this river, our hero took this advantage of viſiting and inſpecting the ſlope of the Camis-Berg, which is adorned with a great variety of evergreen ſhrubs; but this being the winter ſeaſon very few were in flower.

Having been ſufficiently reſted, they determined on proſecuting their journey to the northward, and in the evening of the twenty-fifth, arrived at a Hottentot village, which conſiſted of eighteen huts, where they paſſed the night, and next day continued their courſe northward. At noon they met a peaſant who had come from the Great-River, and was travelling towards the Cape, accompanied by a deſerter, who had been ſeven years abſent, and had travelled over a great part of the country. This poor fellow was a native of Sweden, and made many ſenſible reflections upon his misfortunes in Africa. This evening they arrived at the houſe of one Hermannias Engelbright, where they ſtayed ſeveral days, and ſupplied themſelves with neceſſaries for their intended journey along the ſhore of the Atlantic Ocean, as this was the laſt houſe they were likely to meet with in their way. It is ſituate on a branch of the Camis-Berg.

They were ſtrenuouſly adviſed by the natives not to proceed further, it being they ſaid an uninhabited deſart, where neither man nor beaſt was viſible, and where there was a great ſcarcity of water, and hardly a blade of graſs for the ſupport of their cattle. Notwithſtanding theſe diſcouragements, they reſolved to proceed as far as they poſſibly could; and it was agreed that one of them ſhould ſet out a few days before the other, and that they ſhould endeavour, if poſſible, to meet at the mouth of the Great-River. Colonel Gordon accordingly parted from them, and proceeded on his intended journey, entirely without a guide, as the natives at that time refuſed to accompany them. The next day, after much perſuaſion, the lieutenant prevailed on one, who was rather more ſpirited than the reſt, to attend him, for which he recompenſed him with ſome beads and tobacco; they were alſo accompanied by a brother of his companion, Jacobus Van Renan, who had been to the eaſtward to ſhoot elephants.

Auguſt the 1ſt they departed from this place, and were ſupplied with a team of freſh oxen for two days. The day after their departure they continued their journey about ten miles to the weſtern extremity of the mountain, where they had a view of the Atlantic at the diſtance of about forty miles. They deſcended the mountain with much difficulty, as it was both ſteep and rugged; and towards the evening of the ſecond, they arrived at a fountain of brackiſh water. The ſoil in this part of the country conſiſts of a ſandy clay.

Next they directed their courſe through a ſandy plain. In the evening they ſaw the dung of elephants, and at night came to a hollow rock, where they had abundance of water; on the north and ſouth ſide were lofty mountains of a conical figure, and covered with the Aloe Dichotoma.

On the 3d in the afternoon, they proceeded on their journey through a ſandy country. In the night they paſſed ſeveral dangerous places, and ſaw the print of lions, which occaſioned them to ſtay all night at a pit of brackiſh water. This was not a country which flattered them with the expectation of pleaſure; they therefore continued their journey northward, as ſoon as day, along a bed of heavy ſand, between two precipices. This ſand is driven down by the violent torrents of water which fall here during the ſummer ſeaſon; but at this time the ground was almoſt dry, and the little water they found was rather ſalt; at many places indeed where the water had dried up, were quantities of excellent ſalt. At night they arrived at the Sand-River; they were now about ten miles from the Atlantic-Ocean, where the Sand-River empties itſelf. The banks afforded them excellent paſture for their cattle, and as they were greatly fatigued, they agreed to reſt a few days.

While they remained here, one of the Hottentots who had been upon the hill, told them that he ſaw two waggons about three miles to the weſtward, which they ſuppoſed to belong to Colonel Gordon. Soon after the lieutenant received a letter from him, and they proceeded to the Rhinoceros-Fountain. The river was frequented by a variety of water-fowl, which afforded them excellent ſport; among theſe they found great numbers of flamingoes, of two ſpecies, one much ſmaller than the other. They ſtayed here two days, and made excurſions along the ſhore, where they ſaw ſtrata of the moſt beautiful rocks, ſome of them as white as ſnow, and others veined with red and other colours. Here alſo they ſaw ſeveral huts made of the ribs of whales, and others of elephants bones; but they perceived that they had not been inhabited for ſome time.

On the 7th, Colonel Gordon's companion, and the two Van Renans, being informed of a herd of elephants which were ſeen to the northward, left them, while the reſt directed their courſe to the mouth of the river, where was a large lake of water which communicated with the ſea. Here they expected to catch ſome fiſh, but they found none that were larger than a ſprat. In the afternoon they ſhot ſome wild ducks and returned to the waggon. In the evening their companions returned, finding the elephants were gone. From this place they directed their courſe north, through a ſandy country. They travelled the whole day, and at night were informed by their guide, that they were not half way to the firſt water, and that, as it was extremely dark, he would not venture to conduct or direct them through the ſandy downs which lay along the ſhore, and extended many miles to the eaſtward. On hearing this they determined to remain where they were till day-light, when they proceeded on their journey, through the moſt barren country ever ſeen. Several of their Hottentots complained, and wanted much to return. After travelling all day, and, towards the evening, not diſcerning any appearance of water, the country every where being equally dry, they conſulted with their guide, who ſeemed not perfectly to know, whether they had paſſed the water or not. They all agreed to ſet out with their guide in ſearch of water, and leave the waggons under the care of a ſervant of Colonel Gordon; accordingly they took with them a few bottles, that if they ſhould be fortunate enough to find water, they might ſend ſome to their Hottentots, who had not taſted any for two days. After travelling about four miles, they diſcovered a fountain on the ſhore, but which at high water was overflowed by the ſea. This water was extremely diſagreeable, and the quantity ſo ſmall as to be barely ſufficient for themſelves and their horſes. After ſlightly refreſhing themſelves, Colonel Gordon and an Hottentot returned to the waggon and took with them ſome water for their ſervants, while the reſt determined to remain at the fountain, where they ſhot ſome flamingoes, which they eat. About midnight one of their Hottentots arrived, who had been abſent from them two days; he had ſhot a chamois-bock, part of which he brought with him, and it proved good eating.

On the ſucceeding day they made an excurſion along the coaſt, which is low and rocky, with ſtrong ſurfs off ſhore, which break about four miles from the land. They tried to fiſh at ſeveral places, but without ſucceſs; the rocks were covered with muſcles, and in the inlets, or ſmall bays, were numbers of wild ducks, many of which they ſhot; but they were ſo oily, as to prove very diſagreeable food.

On the next day, having filled ſome empty caſks, they continued their journey northward. Colonel Gordon and Lieutenant Patterſon left the waggon at ten in the morning, and proceeded along the ſhore, where they diſcovered ſeveral huts, about which lay a great number of ſhells, which inclined our travellers to ſuppoſe that the inhabitants ſubſiſted entirely on the fiſh that they contained. At about one mile diſtant from the ſhore they ſaw a ſmall iſland, where they obſerved ſeveral pieces of wood ſtuck into the ground; but they could not perceive any huts, and were convinced, by the number of ſeals which they ſaw every where round it, that at this time it was uninhabited. Along the ſhore they obſerved many bones of ſeals. At nine in the evening they loſt their way, and the guide adviſed them to continue where they were till next morning. This day Colonel Gordon's companion, Mr. Pinar, left them, and promiſed that he would return at night to the waggon; accordingly they made fires, that he might diſcern where they were, but in vain. They remained in this place during the night, having faſtened their cattle as uſual.

Next day they continued their courſe north, through a ſandy country. They obſerved to the eaſtward a high ridge of ſandy hills, evidently thrown up by the ſouth-eaſt winds, which blow here every day. Having left the waggons, they directed their courſe along the ſhore, which was much elevated. In the higheſt rocks they found ſeveral petrefactions of ſhells, ſome of which were about an hundred and fifty feet above the ſurface of the ſea. Colonel Gordon's cattle began to drop down in the waggon, having had neither graſs nor water for two days; but the lieutenant's waggoner kept on his journey, and unknown to him, left the others behind. At nine in the evening they overtook his waggon, and found their people had been conſulting whether or not they ſhould return, as they had not the leaſt proſpect of finding water. They ſuppoſed that Colonel Gordon's companion had loſt his way, and were in great doubt whether they ſhould ever ſee or hear of him more. About ten, one of the Hottentots arrived, who had left the waggon in company with him, but parted the firſt day. He imparted the glad-tidings, that he had found a fountain of excellent water about ſix miles to the northward, and brought a little with him in a calabaſh. This animated them greatly, and next morning Colonel Gordon and Jacobus Van Renan returned to his waggon, while the lieutenant's party directed their courſe to the fountain, which they reached about nine, and the others arrived at noon. This fountain is ſituate between the two precipices, which were much decayed and worn. This place not only afforded good water, but excellent graſs for cattle, and variety of ſucculent plants.

In order to reſt their cattle they continued here a whole day: during the interim, the lieutenant and colonel made an excurſion to the ſea, which was diſtant about nine miles.

On the 15th, they directed their courſe northward, and with much difficulty and fatigue penetrated about ten miles, through a ſandy country. In their road along the ſhore they obſerved the traces of human feet, which appeared ſo recent that they concluded ſome perſon had paſſed that way on that day or the day preceding. They were in hopes that theſe might have been ſome of the Hottentots who accompanied Mr. Pinar, Colonel Gordon's companion. In the night they made fires as a ſignal, but the ſignal not being anſwered, they concluded that they muſt have been the wild natives; and from finding the ſkin of a ſeal, which was quite freſh, this conjecture was confirmed. All hopes of ever ſeeing Mr. Pinar again now vaniſhed, as he had been abſent four days in theſe dreary deſarts, and there was no poſſibility of tracing his ſteps.

On the 16th, their road lay to the northward, and at noon they paſſed two hills, which they had obſerved during their journey the two preceding days. Being ſituate at a very ſmall diſtance from each other, and ſimilar in figure and ſize, they gave them the name of the Two Brothers; and in this deſolate region there was no one who could diſpute any denomination by which they choſe to diſtinguiſh whatever they met with. To the northward they diſcovered a large valley about three miles diſtant, but found there was no water: this Colonel Gordon called Benting's-Valley. They were obliged to ſtay here all night, as their cattle was ſo much fatigued that it was impoſſible to proceed further. They were then about eight miles from the river, according to the information of their guide.

Lieutenant Patterſon, Colonel Gordon, and Jacobus Van Renan left the waggons early on the 17th, and proceeded on their journey. In their way they found an oſtrich neſt, containing thirty-four freſh eggs, which proved excellent food. They ſaw ſeveral zebras, elks, and quachas. At ten in the forenoon they arrived at the river, which appeared at once to be a new creation to them, after having paſſed nine days in croſſing an arid and ſultry deſart, where no living animal was to be ſeen, and during which their cattle had but twice taſted the luxury of a drop of water. Here they unſaddled their horſes and refreſhed themſelves by the ſide of the river, under the ſhade of a willow, which hung over its banks; and afterwards made an excurſion along the river to the eaſtward, hoping that they ſhould find ſome appearance of their loſt companion, Mr. Pinar. They obſerved ſeveral old uninhabited huts, where numbers of baboons bones lay, with thoſe of various other wild beaſts. About a thouſand yards from the banks of the river, the country is extremely barren, and to the eaſtward very mountainous. On theſe eminences there is ſcarcely any apparent vegetation. The banks of the river produce lofty trees peculiar to this country. In the afternoon, their waggon not being arrived, they returned the ſame way they came, and found their people had taken a different direction. They followed their tract, and overtook them near the mouth of the river. In the evening they launched Colonel Gordon's boat, and hoiſted Dutch colours. Colonel Gordon propoſed firſt to drink the States' health, and then that of the Prince of Orange, and the Company; after which he gave the river the name of the Orange River, in honour of that Prince, and which in our former chapters we have ſo termed. They agreed to remain in this ſituation a few days, and to viſit the oppoſite ſhore, as they had in this place very good paſture for their cattle.

On the 18th, they employed themſelves in fiſhing, and towards the evening had the great ſatisfaction of once more beholding their loſt companion, Mr. Pinar, who arrived with three of the Hottentots. They looked dreadfully ill, having travelled five days through ſultry deſarts, over ſandy hills and rocky mountains, without taſting food or ſwallowing a drop of water. On the fifth day they diſcovered a ſmall fountain, where they left one of the Hottentots, who was ſo exhauſted that they had no expectation he could ſurvive the day. Mr. Pinar appeared to be much leſs injured by his unfortunate expedition than the Hottentots; their eyes were ſunk in their heads, and they ſeemed entirely exhauſted.

On the nineteenth, they made their propoſed excurſion along the ſhore, where they found numbers of ducks, wild geeſe, pelicans, flamingoes, &c. The land forms a flat point, which extends from the mouth of the river, north-weſt half weſt: the Two Brothers, ſouth-eaſt by ſouth, are diſtant about twelve miles. The mouth is about half a mile in breadth; but is encloſed by a ridge of rocks which lie a mile from the ſhore, in a direction eaſt and weſt, and which render it impoſſible for ſhips to enter the river. The land is extremely low and barren; to the weſtward, ſandy; and to the eaſt, rocky. In the evening their Hottentot arrived, whom they had given up as loſt.

The colonel and lieutenant croſſed the river on the 20th, and left the boat in order to make an excurſion to the weſtward. Here they obſerved the print of human feet, which appeared to them to be freſh. Upon this they reſolved to purſue the track, and on their way ſaw ſeveral ſnares laid for the wild beaſts. After travelling about five miles to the northward, they perceived ſome of the natives on a ſandy hillock, about one mile from them; they made ſeveral ſignals to them, but they ſeemed to be quite wild, and made their eſcape. Our travellers continued to follow their path, which brought them to their habitation; but they were ſtill as unable to bring about any intercourſe with them as before; for the whole family immediately betook themſelves to flight, except a little dog, which ſeemed to be equally unacquainted with Europeans. The lieutenant and friends now ſtayed ſome time, and examined their huts; where they found ſeveral ſpecies of aromatic plants which they had been drying, and a few ſkins of ſeals. Their huts were much ſuperior to thoſe of the generality of Hottentots; they were loftier, and thatched with graſs; and were furniſhed with ſtools made of the back bones of the grampus. Several ſpecies of fiſh were ſuſpended from poles ſtuck into the ground. Having nothing about them which they thought would prove an acceptable preſent, Colonel Gordon cut the buttons from his coat, and depoſited them among the aromatic plants which were drying. In the mean time they again obſerved theſe natives at the ſame place where they had firſt diſcovered them. They made every poſſible ſign in order to allure them to them, and diſpatched one of their Hottentots, who ſpoke to them and aſſured them they had no evil intention. After ſome time, Colonel Gordon went to them while the lieutenant remained at their huts with the guns, and after much perſuaſion he induced them to return to their kraal. They were eleven in number, and were the only natives who inhabited this part of the country. Our travellers inquired after other nations, but they could give them no account, except of the Nimiquas, whence they had juſt come. A Nimiqua woman who lived with them, was the only one of the company who knew any thing of Europeans. Though few in number, they were governed by a chief, whoſe name was Cout. The mode of living amongſt theſe people was in the higheſt degree wretched; and they were apparently the dirtieſt of all the Hottentot tribes. Their dreſs was compoſed of the ſkins of ſeals and jackals, the fleſh of which they eat. When it happens that a grampus is caſt aſhore, they remove their huts to the place, and ſubſiſt upon it as long as any part of it remains; and in this manner it ſometimes affords them ſuſtenance for half a year, though in a great meaſure decayed and putrified by the ſun. They ſmear their ſkins with the oil or train; the odour of which is ſo powerful, that their approach may be perceived ſome time before they preſent themſelves to the ſight. Their arrows are the ſame as thoſe of all the other Hottentots. They carry their water in the ſhells of oſtrich eggs, and the bladders of ſeals, which they ſhoot with bows.

Being accompanied by four of the natives, they returned to their boat towards evening. Their companions left behind had been the whole day employed in fiſhing, with tolerable ſucceſs; part of the fiſh they had taken was given to the ſtrangers, which they thankfully received, and returned to their habitation.

Our travellers now propoſed to croſs the river to their waggons. The evening, however, being dark, their boat overloaded, and they totally ignorant of their courſe, they got into the ſurf, quite in the mouth of the river, and had a very narrow eſcape. They were about half an hour in great danger; but one of their Hottentots obſerving the fires made by their companions, they ſoon got into the right track.

On the 22d, they made an excurſion through the adjacent country, and the next day again croſſed the river, to inquire whether there was any poſſibility of proceeding on their journey to the eaſtward; but of this the natives ſeemed unable to give them any information. They obſerved that all thoſe people had loſt the * firſt joint of their little finger; the reaſon they gave for cutting it off was, that it was a cure for a particular ſickneſs to which they were ſubject in their youth.

They employed the laſt day they intended to remain at this part of the river in fiſhing, and were viſited by their friends from the oppoſite ſhore. The lieutenant obſerved they eat, with a very good appetite, ſome old ſhoes which ſome of their Hottentots gave them. Their own ſhoes are made of a piece of leather, which merely defends the ſoles of their feet from thorns, and is in general faſtened to their toes and ankle. As our travellers obſerved a great number of huts along the ſhore which were uninhabited, and yet found only eleven perſons dwelling in this part of the country, they conjectured that by ſome accident ſeveral of theſe people had periſhed. Thoſe that remain are diſtinguiſhed by the name of the Shore-Boſhieſmen.

On the twenty-fifth, in the morning, they proſecuted their journey to the eaſtward, keeping along the banks of the river, as they were informed that many hippopotami were there, one of which, indeed, they were quite near; but they had left their guns in the waggon, which occaſioned them much vexation, as they had ſcarcely any proviſion for their Hottentots. They ſtill continued their courſe to the eaſtward, and in the afternoon met Jacobus Van Renan, who had been about ſix miles to the eaſtward, and had only ſeen the prints of three hippopotami, which ſeemed to be freſh, and he believed they were gone to the mouth of the river. They informed him of that which they had ſeen, and he fired ſeveral ſhots at the animal, but without being able to give it a mortal wound. Mr. Sebaſtian Van Renan, and Mr. Pinar, returned to the waggon in the evening, and acquainted their friends that there were a number of lions about twelve miles to the eaſtward, attracted by a dead elephant which had been ſhot by Mr. Pinar during the time he was abſent from the waggons.

They now proceeded to the eaſtward, through a moſt barren hilly country. The hills were naked and decayed, with hardly a plant to be ſeen upon them; in the lower parts here and there was a little graſs: from theſe appearances they judged that it would be in vain to think of proceeding further. They agreed, therefore, to remain a few days, and, if poſſible, to ſhoot ſome game for proviſion on their way through the dry country they had to paſs. Mr. Pinar, however, reſolved to direct his courſe to the eaſtward, and took with him five Hottentots, each of whom was provided with a gun.

The lieutenant likewiſe ſent a party of his Hottentots in ſearch of game, on the twenty-ſeventh, one of whom returned with a hart, which ſupplied them for three days. Jacobus Van Renan wounded an hippopotamus; but it ſwam to a place on the oppoſite ſide, where there was no poſſibility of approaching it.

The next day (Auguſt 28) they prepared their waggon for their departure; and on the following evening left the river, intending to travel in the night, which they conceived would be better for their cattle. Having travelled about three hours, their dogs attacked a herd of zebras, which were at a little diſtance from the waggons; they ſeemed not in the leaſt ſhy, and our travellers ſhot two of them, which detained them about an hour; part of the fleſh they took with them, and it proved very good food. On paſſing the Two Brothers, they obſerved a fire which they ſuppoſed was made by three of their Hottentots who had left them in the morning. They travelled till four in the morning, when they unyoked their bullocks in a dry ſandy plain.

Auguſt the 31ſt, they continued their journey to the Water Val, where they reſted; and in the evening of September 1ſt, proceeded on their route till about two in the morning. On their way they killed ſeveral ſnakes, one in particular, called the horned ſnake; which ſpecies meaſures from twelve to eighteen inches long, and is ſuppoſed to be very venomous. They arrived Sept. 2, at the Sea Fountain.

On the 3d, they continued their journey through the deſart, but were obliged to ſtop in order to reſt their oxen, which were ſo much fatigued that it was impoſſible to proceed further, when they were about twelve miles from the Sand-River.

They reſumed their journey on the evening of the fourth, and next morning arrived at the river, where they reſted the following day, having excellent graſs and water for their oxen. From this they proceeded (on the 6th) to the Small Nimiqua-Land, and ſtopped that night on the ſame river, about eight miles to the eaſtward of Rhinoceros-Fountain, which they had before viſited. Their proviſion began to be ſhort; but one of the Hottentots, notwithſtanding this circumſtance, was determined on a good meal, and accordingly, during the night, contrived to rob the others of their ſhoes, every one of which he eat.

Hence they proceeded to Cock-Fountain, where they arrived on the 11th. Here they were viſited by ſeveral Nimiquas, who brought them milk, for which they were very thankful, and gave them ſome tobacco and dacka in return. Among theſe Hottentots was their guide Pedro, who had left them a few days before; there were alſo two captains, one of whom had a cane, dated "1705," and his name engraved on the top of it, "Vulcan;" and the other had one with the name, "Jephtah."

Early on the 12th, the lieutenant diſpatched a Hottentot to Hermannias Englebright, deſiring him to ſend them a ſupply of freſh cattle, in order to enable them to aſcend a ſteep hill which lay in their next day's journey. On their firſt arrival amongſt their hoſpitable friends, they were quite invigorated, and delighted with the appearance of every thing around them. They had exchanged a country untrodden by human feet, or only inhabited by the moſt wretched of ſavages, for the ſociety of friends and generous hoſts, and after a journey of ſix weeks, through dry and ſultry deſarts, found themſelves in a land adorned with flowers of the moſt beautiful colours. The contraſt was truly exhilirating, though it was not unexpected. They agreed to remain here a few days, during which time the lieutenant loſt his companion, Colonel Gordon, who intended to direct his courſe to the eaſtward in ſearch of a nation, called the Caffre tribe. The lieutenant's intention was to proceed to the northward, to croſs the Orange-River,

and

---

* Our readers may remember that Capt. Cook and others have made this remark reſpecting the different natives they met with, but, till now, no kind of reaſon has been given for this ſtrange cuſtom: it has been, indeed, ſuppoſed to have proceeded from ſome religious ceremony.

and to viſit the Great Nimiqua-Land. During his ſtay at this place, he made ſeveral excurſions along the mountains.

Having prevailed upon their friend and hoſt, Hermannias Engelbright, to accompany them in their intended expedition, he took with him, accordingly, three good horſes. They then directed their courſe north, over a rugged path, involved in many turnings between the branches of the Camis-Berg; and in the evening of the 22d, came to a Hottentot village, which conſiſted of eleven huts, where they ſtayed all night, and proceeded the next day to the houſe of one Vander Hever, where they remained till the following evening, and then reſumed their journey till midnight, when they reached the Copper-Mountain. At this place they had very brackiſh water.

On the 25th, in the afternoon, they proceeded to the Small Copper-Bergs-Fountain, where they had tolerably good water. Here our hero made an excurſion along the hills, which have all a rugged appearance, and moſt of them contain copper ore.

They continued their journey to the Small Brack-Fountain, where they ſaw the freſh print of lions, and proceeded to the Great Brack-Fountain. Here they met ſeveral Hottentots who had been at the Great Nimiqua-Land, exchanging cattle for beads and tobacco. They told our travellers that the river was paſſable, but ſeemed rather to ſwell when they left it, which was the day before.

Having delayed here two days in exploring the adjacent parts of the country, they next directed their courſe north by eaſt, through a ſandy plain; and after travelling about four miles, found a large rock of a conical figure, where was a ſmall fountain of freſh water. There were ſeveral Hottentots who came from the Orange-River. One of them was a good markſman, and on that account they took him with them. After travelling till next day, they were obliged to ſtop to reſt their cattle at a place from the river, about ſix miles diſtant.

Our hero and Meſſrs. Van Renan and Engelbright left the waggon on the firſt of October, and directed their courſe to the river. On their firſt arrival they were all in great hopes that it was paſſable, but were ſoon convinced of the contrary. They then reſolved to proceed to the eaſtward, and after ſome days arrived at a Hottentot village, ſituate by a large wood on the banks of the river. Here they were informed that Colonel Gordon was about one day's journey to the eaſtward, and that he intended to leave his boat at that place. The lieutenant therefore ſent one of the Hottentots to beg he would allow them to make uſe of it, in order to tranſport themſelves over the river, which was otherwiſe impaſſable; but the river began to decreaſe with great rapidity before the meſſenger returned.

The lieutenant made an excurſion through the woods on the 7th. He found them inhabited by variety of birds and monkies, which are exceedingly ſhy. There are ſeveral paths made by elephants and hippopotami. The country is every where equally barren; the ſoil is a looſe ſandy clay; along the banks of the river was good graſs. Here the river divides itſelf into three branches, which are each about a mile broad. They ſaw ſeveral fires to the eaſtward; and on the fourteenth went over the river. The ſtream was ſo rapid that they had much difficulty in croſſing it. They had all their neceſſaries packed upon oxen, which the lieutenant hired from the Hottentots for that purpoſe; and this night encamped under a large ebony tree, to the northward of the river about eight miles.

Next they directed their courſe eaſt-north-eaſt, through a hilly country; and at noon paſſed the Lions-River, the banks of which are in general inhabited by thoſe animals. The country is extremely barren, and covered with ſmall ſharp ſtones, which proved very injurious to their horſes hoofs. In the evening they arrived at a ſmall brackiſh fountain, where they ſtayed all night, and the next day their way lay thro' a narrow path between two high mountains. At noon they ſaw ſeveral of the natives, who were in ſearch of wild honey. In the afternoon they came to a fountain of brackiſh water, where they ſtayed all night, being informed by the natives that there were numbers of the camelopardalis in this neighbourhood, one of which they were very deſirous of ſhooting, as it is a beaſt ſo little known to Europeans, that even its exiſtence has been matter of doubt.

About evening the lieutenant made an excurſion to a hill which was at a little diſtance from them. When he gained the ſummit he ſaw ſeveral of the natives near a wood of mimoſa, to whom he immediately endeavoured to approach. On his arrival he found they were eating the gum off the trees, on which, indeed, a great part of theſe people ſubſiſt. They were dreſſed exactly as the inhabitants of the Small Nimiqua-Land; ſome in the ſkins of jackals, and others in the ſkins of marmottes, ſewed together; theſe animals being very numerous in this part of the country. Their habitation was about three miles from the fountain, which our hero viſited in the evening; it conſiſted of ſix huts. Their ſheep are very different from thoſe near the Cape; theſe having much longer tails, and being covered with hair inſtead of wool, which at a diſtance gives them the appearance of dogs.

They proceeded on the 17th, north-eaſt, to a ſmall fountain of water; and took with them ſome of the natives who knew the country. On their arrival they were obliged to dig pits in the ſand before they could come at the water. This day they made an excurſion through the country, which is level and high. Here they had an extenſive view to the ſouthward of the Orange-River; and to the northward of a large plain, bounded at about the diſtance of four days journey, by a range of mountains in a direction from eaſt to weſt. Theſe mountains they were told formed part of the Brenas, or Brequas. The country is here inhabited by rhinoceroſes, zebras, koedoes, camelopardaliſes, &c. &c.

During the next day they reſted their horſes, as they intended to direct their courſe weſt-north-weſt towards a hot bath. In their way they ſaw ſix camelopardaliſes, which they purſued; Mr. Van Renan ſhot one, which proved to be a male. It was 14 feet 9 inches high. Theſe animals chiefly ſubſiſt upon the mimoſa, and wild apricots. Their colour is in general reddiſh, or dark brown and white, and ſome of them black and white: they are cloven-footed; have four teats; their tail reſembles that of a bullock; but the hair of the tail is much ſtronger, and in general black; they have eight fore teeth below, but none above, and ſix grinders, or double teeth, on each ſide above and below; the tongue is rather pointed and rough; they have no footlock hoofs; they are not ſwift, but can continue a long chaſe before they ſtop; which may be the reaſon that few of them are ſhot. The ground is ſo ſharp that a horſe is in general lame before he can get within ſhot of them. It is difficult to diſtinguiſh them at any diſtance, from the length of their body, which, together with the length of their neck, gives them the appearance of a decayed tree.

Our travellers, during their ſtay in this place, wounded two rhinoceroſes; the next day they obſerved thunder clouds to the eaſtward; and being apprehenſive of the river becoming impaſſable, they agreed to return the ſame way to their waggons, being informed by the natives, that after the appearance of ſuch clouds to the eaſtward, they had ſeen the river impaſſable in two days, and had frequently known it to continue ſo till the month of May.

On the 21ſt, at night, they croſſed the river with ſafety, and their Hottentots and oxen arrived on the twenty-ſecond. They were now viſited by ſome of the Buſh-Hottentots, who had come from the eaſtward. Here alſo they parted with Hermannus Engelbright, who went on before them.

They remained a few days on the banks of the river, and then prepared their waggon, with a view of proceeding on their journey; but a ſtorm came on from the ſouth-weſt, which obliged them to ſtay all night. This tempeſt began at noon and continued till midnight, during which time it blew down ſeveral large trees; and ſtones of a large ſize were hurled by the force of the wind up very conſiderable eminences. As ſoon as the ſtorm abated, they continued their journey to the Small Nimiqua-Land, where they arrived after a journey of five days, at the houſe of their companion Engelbright, who informed them that one of his horſes was devoured by a lion, the ſecond day after he parted from them. They remained here a few days in order to refreſh themſelves, and to reſt their cattle. They now took leave of their friend on the 4th of November, and directed their courſe towards the Bokke-Veld, making ſhort ſtays for occaſional obſervations.

The lieutenant and Mr. Van Renan left the waggon on the 10th, and in the evening arrived at the houſe of Mrs. Ryck. On the 11th they ſent freſh oxen to their waggon, which arrived in the evening.

After a ſtay of a few days in this place, they reſumed their journey to the north-eaſt, towards the Boſhieſmen's-Land. In the evening they arrived at the houſe of Jacobus Van Renan, where about thirty of the Hottentots were aſſembled, who had made peace with the Dutch, and were retained in their ſervice. Theſe proved more faithful and attentive ſervants than any of thoſe whom the Dutch had before brought up in ſubjection.

They altered their direction a little in the morning and travelled to the northward; at night they arrived at a brackiſh fountain, ſituate on a river, called by the Hottentots, Camdinie-Rivier, where they remained all night on being informed that there were numbers of antelopes, called Spring-Bocks, in this neighbourhood, which they intended to have the amuſement of ſhooting at the next day. Accordingly, they left the waggon the next morning, and directed their courſe north, when after aſcending a high hill, they entered a large plain to the northward. Here they prepared to enjoy the propoſed entertainment. The antelopes divided themſelves into large flocks of at leaſt twenty or thirty thouſand in each flock. They purſued them from eight in the morning till noon, and killed and wounded ſeveral; and the Hottentots who accompanied them, ſhot ſeveral with their poiſoned arrows, in the uſe of which they are expert. In the afternoon they continued their journey to a place called the Kibiſkow, where there was a Hottentot's kraal. They were here viſited by four captains, or chiefs, who amuſed them during the whole night. The ſoil of this country is of a ſandy loam, and the water is every where bad. The climate and produce of the country are much the ſame as in the vicinity of the Orange-River.

Our travellers now returned to the Bokke-Veld, and arrived there after a journey of four days. Thence they directed their courſe towards the Windhock, where they arrived in a few days more. In their way they had heavy ſhowers of rain, accompanied with thunder and lightning; and the lieutenant was neceſſarily detained at the Windhock by the inclemency of the weather. The land in this part of the country is fruitful, and produces excellent fruit and corn; but the ſouth-eaſt winds, which blow from the mountains in the manner they do at the Cape, frequently prove as pernicious to the riſing grain as they do there.

The lieutenant was convoyed by two ſons of Niuve Houds, through the Elephants-River, on the 6th of December. The water was ſo deep that it came up to their ſaddles. The ſame day they arrived at the Hier-Lodſiement. He then left the waggon and directed his courſe through a ſandy plain, to the houſe of Mrs. Low, ſituate in the Long Valley.

The waggon arrived on the 8th, and the following day our hero was ſupplied with a team of freſh oxen, and proceeded to the Berg-Valley, where he ſtayed two days, making ſome occaſional excurſions through part of the country. When they arrived at the Croiſe, they remained there all night, and on the ſucceeding day proceeded on their journey along the Picquet-Berg. At night they arrived at the houſe of Abert Honna Cambt, where the lieutenant continued two days, and made an excurſion to the mountain. Then they proceeded on their journey, and arrived at Rie Beck's Caſtle, at the houſe of Mr. Droyer, where Lieutenant Patterſon viſited the Roode-Sand, or Land-Van-Waveren, which is ſituate to the eaſtward of Rie Beck's Caſtle.

This is a pleaſant and fruitful country, bounded by the large chain of mountains which are terminated on the eaſt by Hottniqua-Land, and on the weſt by the chain of mountains which begin at Cape-Falſe, they join to the northward, where the mountain is called the Winter-Hocks-Berg. This mountain is extremely high; and during a conſiderable part of the year its ſummit is covered with ſnow. To the eaſtward is a pleaſant country, called the Goudinnie, where there is a hot-bath. The Breed-Rivier has its ſource in this place, and to the eaſtward is joined by the Hexen-River, or Witches-River. Along the weſt ſide of the chain of mountains, which begins at Cape-Falſe, are ſituate the Parel and Draken-Styne, a well watered and plentiful country, which extends to the ſouthward, and joins Stellen-Boſch. Wine is the only produce of this country.

Having left Rie Beck's Caſtel, our travellers proceeded through Swart-Land towards the Groena-Kloaf, where he arrived the following day, and found the farmers all buſy in gathering in their harveſt. After a journey of ſix months and five days, our hero arrived at the Cape, December 21, 1779.

The lieutenant, in noticing the poiſonous reptiles of the country he had travelled, deems the horned ſnake the moſt poiſonous of all; it is of a greyiſh colour, and about eighteen inches long: its head, which is very flat, is large in proportion to the ſize of the body, with ſmall ſcales, which the inhabitants call horns, riſing over its eyes.

The garter-ſnake is another poiſonous reptile, particularly dangerous to travellers, as it reſembles the ſoil ſo much in colour, that it is not readily perceived. The yellow-ſnake, which is very deſtructive, is eaſily avoided, by means of its fire and bright yellow colour. It is moſtly found in rat-holes, for, after eating theſe animals, which form the chief part of its food, it takes poſſeſſion of their holes, and conſequently becomes dangerous to the unwary traveller, who lies down: beſides theſe, there is the ruſt-adder, extremely dangerous to cattle. A horſe of the lieutenant's, while grazing, was bit by one of them in the mouth, and lived only two days after. Alſo, the ſpring-adder, which is jet-black with white ſpots, from three to four feet long, and proportionably thick. The night-ſnake, which at night has the appearance of fire; it is very thin, and from 18 to 20 inches long. The ſpitting ſnake, rock ſcorpion, &c. all equally pernicious. Frequent diſaſters have happened from the bites of theſe reptiles. This country likewiſe abounds in deleterious vegetables, employed as inſtruments of deſtruction by the natives.

Having now preſented the Public with a complete hiſtory of LIEUTENANT PATTERSON'S *Travels in Africa, we ſhall next proceed with the celebrated* M. NIEBUHR'S *intereſting Adventures in* EGYPT, ARABIA, *&c. Adventures, which have not only increaſed the fame of the Author, but have been of conſiderable ſervice to other Travellers: and we truſt, the obſervations occaſionally introduced, are ſuch as will lead our attentive Readers to a fuller comprehenſion of the Diſcoveries contained in the preceding and ſucceeding Voyages and Travels.*

A GENUINE, NEW, AND COMPLETE

HISTORY OF
Travels and Occaſional Voyages
THROUGH AND TO
EGYPT, ARABIA, &c.

UNDERTAKEN AND PERFORMED

By MONSIEUR NIEBUHR,

(Captain of Engineers in the Service of the King of Denmark)

And four other DANISH TYAVELLERS.

Including the moſt accurate Accounts of ſeveral COUNTRIES in the EAST. The MANNERS, DRESSES, RELIGION, &c. of the reſpective INHABITANTS; their BUILDINGS, GOVERNMENT, and every other NECESSARY DESCRIPTION.

Interſperſed with intereſting Anecdotes and judicious Obſervations on the different ORIENTALS. The ſeveral ADVENTURES, RECEPTIONS, &c. of theſe TRAVELLERS, during their PERAMBULATIONS, and curſory REMARKS on each JOURNEY; throwing a conſiderable new Light on the Laws, Events, Worſhip, Cuſtoms, &c. recorded in SACRED HISTORY.

Faithfully TRANSLATED and CORRECTED (according to the RECENT INFORMATIONS of our moſt RESPECTABLE WRITERS) from the WORKS of the above CELEBRATED AUTHOR.

INTRODUCTION.

OUR celebrated and ingenious Author, M. Niebuhr, was the ſole ſurvivor of a party of five Daniſh travellers, who being ſelected as perſons eminently qualified to accompliſh the ſeveral purpoſes of the then propoſed expeditions, were ſent into the Eaſt at the expence of the King of Denmark, to explore the various curioſities of Egypt, but eſpecially of Arabia. They proceeded firſt to Egypt. After making an excurſion to Mount Sinai, and preparing themſelves, by the ſtudy of the Arabic language, for the further proſecution of their journey, they ſailed from Suez, down the Red Sea, to Jidda. Having landed at Jidda, they continued their journey ſouthward to Mokha; not without occaſional excurſions to the N. E. into the interior parts of the country. From Mokha, they travelled nearly in a ſouth-eaſtern direction to Sana, the ſeat of the greateſt prince in Arabia. By the time they had accompliſhed this laſt journey, and returned to Mokha, two of the party were dead; and, by the pernicious influence of the climate, by the unfavourableneſs of the oriental mode of living to European conſtitutions, by their inability to relinquiſh European habits, and by the fatigue neceſſarily attending their inveſtigations, the health of the ſurvivors was ſo much impaired, that they were obliged to reſolve upon leaving Arabia with the firſt Engliſh ſhip that ſailed for Bombay. M. Niebuhr and another of his companions lived to reach India. This other, after languiſhing for a while, died at laſt at Bombay.

After this event, Niebuhr remained in the Eaſt only till he could find a fit opportunity of returning ſafe into Europe, with the collection of curioſities which was left in his hands.

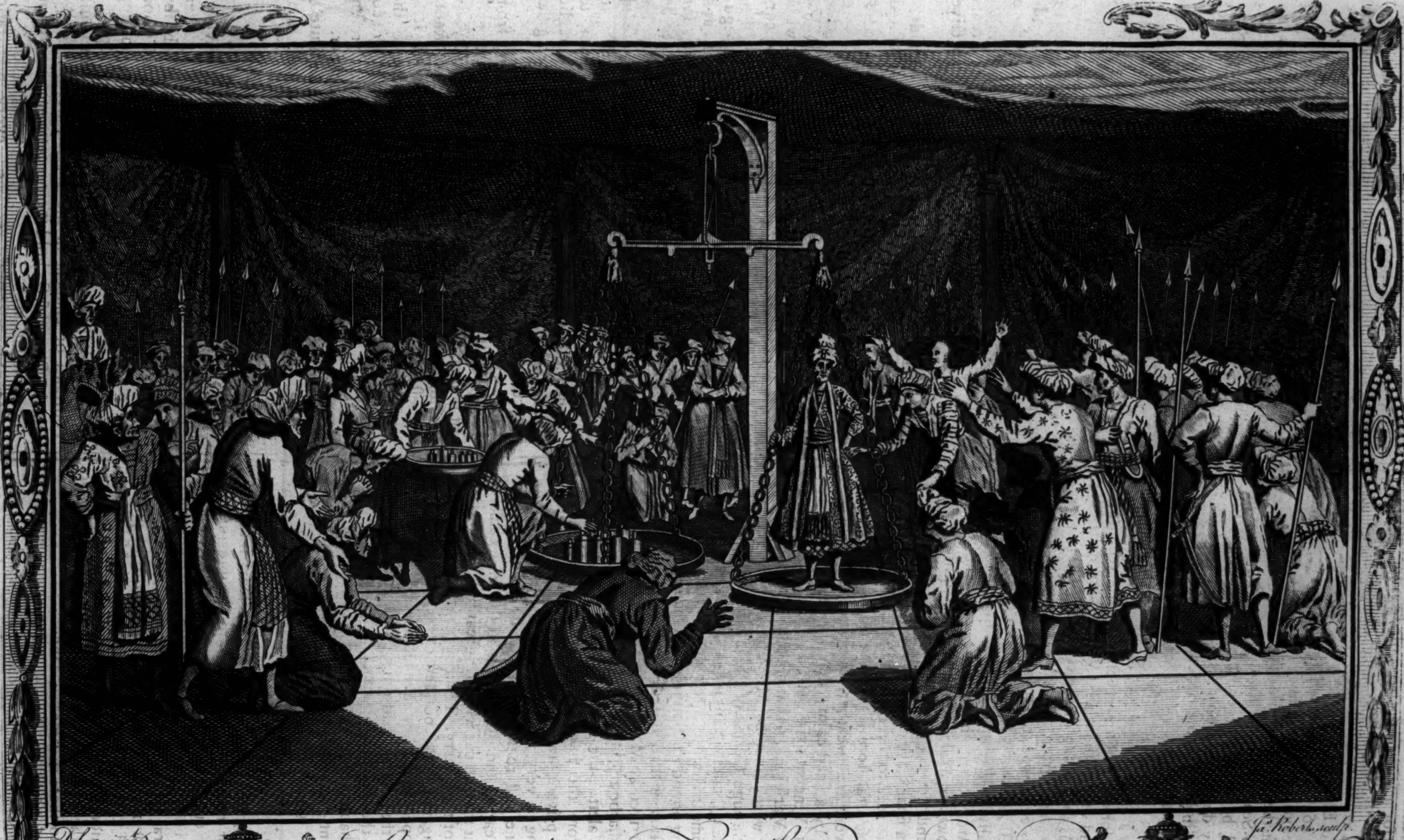
Theſe travels afford a very faithful account of Arabia in the hands of the European public, having the advantage of the majority of wayfarers in this part of the world, not being confined to the inquiries of one man, but a party equally inſpired with the ſpirit of inveſtigation, and whoſe abilities were alike adapted to the arduous taſk. A body therefore of ſuch truly valuable information is ſeldom to be met with in one work: valuable and peculiarly intereſting, ſeeing it relates to a country which has been famous from the earlieſt ages of antiquity.

We have in this our tranſlation omitted ſuch remarks as have been already given in our former travels, particularly Mr. Bruce's, &c. to which the reader will be occaſionally referred. Alſo thoſe confined obſervations and propoſed plans (which attempts have hitherto proved abortive) that are apparently addreſſed by our Author to his own countrymen, and conſequently unintereſting to an ENGLISH READER.

CHAPTER I.

Our Travellers embark for Smyrna—Return to Elſineur on Account of contrary Winds—Sail from thence—Paſs the Categat—Return again to Elſineur—Sail from thence the third Time—Forced back—Leave the Place for the laſt Time—Arrive at Marſeilles—At Malta—Deſcription of the City—Cultivation and Government—Catacombs—Enter the Archipelago—Road of Smyrna—Repair to Conſtantinople—Remarks on the City, &c—Proceed to Rhodes—Dinner in a Turkiſh Inn—Make for Alexandria—Familiarity of the Turkiſh Women—Obſervations—Proceed to Roſetta—Thence to Cairo—To the Delta—Arrive at Siſta—At Damietta—At Bulak—Deſcription of the Place—Remarks on the Orientals—Account of their Entertainments—Deſcription of a Play that was acted—Curſory Obſervations, &c.

OUR



Dubourg inv.

Ja. Roberts sculp.

Ceremony of WEIGHING the GREAT MOGUL

On his Birth Day In the Royal Pavilion

OUR travellers embarked January 4, 1761, on board a ſhip of war, commanded by Mr. Fiſcher, afterwards Vice-Admiral in the Daniſh ſervice, for the purpoſe of reaching Smyrna. Being delayed three days for a fair wind, they ſailed on the 7th out of the road of Copenhagen, but being toſſed by ſtorms and contrary winds they agreed on the 17th to return to Elſineur.

January 26, they ventured again; the wind being fair, and continuing ſo a few days. Having paſſed the Categat they proceeded to ſome diſtance through the North-Sea; but the ſtormy weather returning again, and being toſſed conſiderably by contrary winds, they determined on declining at preſent their undertertaking, and came back a ſecond time to Elſineur, February 10. Such was the violence of the wind, that in thirty hours they were carried as far backwards as they had been before fifteen days in advancing forwards. Our travellers were exceedingly ſea-ſick, and one of them Mr. Van Haven, not being able to bear the toſſing of the veſſel any longer, proceeded by land from Copenhagen to Marſeilles, where their veſſel was to put in.

They left Elſineur a third time, February 19, but were equally unfortunate and obliged to return, having ſcarce paſſed the Skagen. On the 10th of March, however, the weather became quite ſerene and fair, and availing themſelves of this opportunity, they took a final leave of the place.

From the 12th to the 19th of this month, they encountered ſeveral ſtorms. In the beginning of April they had very fine weather, but were detained for ſome time by a dead calm; they arrived within ſight of Cape St. Vincent's the 21ſt, and May 14, reached the road of Marſeilles, and anchored near St. Euſtace. Here they were joined by Mr. Van Haven, who had travelled through Germany and France.

June the 3d, after examining the country, they ſet ſail, in company with three other Daniſh veſſels, which being bound for Smyrna, put themſelves under the protection of their ſhip of war.

They arrived at Malta June 14, and anchored in the grand-harbour, in the middle of the cities which environ Valetta: the appearance of this city, when viewed from the harbour, is very fine; all the buildings, private and public, are of hewn ſtone, ſtone being a very common article, as the whole iſland is one vaſt rock, covered with a thin layer of vegetable earth, and this rock is ſo ſoft and calcareous, that it may be cut with the greateſt facility when taken out of the quarry. Their private houſes, which are built againſt ſteep, pointed rocks, have quite an oriental appearance, they have terraces on their roofs. Amongſt the public buildings, that of St. John's-Church is the moſt magnificent.

The inhabitants of this iſland live under a mild government; and accordingly cultivate this bare rock with ſuch care, that it produces excellent fruits. The old capital, Civita Vecchia, is every day more and more deſerted.

Adjoining the city are ſome very remarkable catacombs, or more properly ſpeaking, ſubterraneous dwellings, cut in the rock. They are ſo extenſive, that it has been found proper to build up the entrances into ſeveral of the paſſages, to prevent the curious from loſing themſelves. The remains of public halls, and of a miln, which are there obſervable, afford reaſon for thinking, that the iſlanders once lived in theſe ſubterraneous dwellings, or at leaſt retired into them in times of danger.

They left Malta on the 20th of June, and ſaw no land till the 26th, when they entered the Archipelago. On the third of July, they entered the road of Smyrna, where they ſtaid till the 10th. A very ſevere dyſentery, with which M. Niebuhr had been attacked, prevented him from examining the city.

They reached the iſle of Tenedos on the 13th, where they found the interpreter of Mr. Gœbler, at that time their ambaſſador at the Porte. He brought them orders to quit the veſſel, and repair in a ſmall bark to Conſtantinople. In this iſle they ſaw Turks for the firſt time; and their language and manners appeared to them ſo extraordinary, that our travellers began to deſpair of eaſe or pleaſure in their intercourſe with the people of the Eaſt. A man of diſtinction from the continent, however, ſo far forgot the precepts of the Alcoran, when he viſited the veſſel that he ſeemed to have come on board for no other purpoſe than to drink the captain's wine.

They left the ſhip on the 19th of July, but did not land at Conſtantinople till the 30th. They went immediately to Pera, where they were received by Mr. Gœbler, and all lodged in his houſe; a piece of kind attention which contributed greatly to the recovery of our hero.

Conſtantinople is a city of great extent, though it appears larger than it really is, as the houſes riſe from the ſides of hills, and conſequently appear to cover a conſiderable ſpace of ground. The palaces of the great, occupy much room, on account of their gardens and ſeraglios, and people in eaſy circumſtances have alſo a large area behind their houſes. The jealouſy of the people of the Eaſt, renders them unwilling to admit perſons into their houſes with whom they have buſineſs. Artizans therefore work without doors, and ſpend the whole day in open palaces. The ſtreets are full of trades-people, all buſy in their reſpective occupations.

The population of Conſtantinople is very conſiderable, though travellers, no doubt, have exaggerated it. Its harbour, which is always full of veſſels, is the fineſt in the world.

The medley of ſuperb moſques and palaces, gardens and trees of all ſorts, which the city diſplays, appears remarkably ſtriking to a ſtranger. But within, the arrangement and appearance of the city, correſpond not to its ſplendour when ſeen from a diſtance. The ſtreets are almoſt all narrow, dirty, and irregular; the houſes are of wood, ſlight, and ill built, and appear more like coops for birds than dwellings for men. Of the palaces built of ſtone, nothing is to be ſeen but the high walls that ſurround them. In this city, it is equally dangerous to live in ſtone and in wooden houſes. In the former, one is liable to be buried in ruins, by earthquakes; in the latter, to be burnt, by the breaking out of a fire. The ſeraglio of the grand ſignior is a vaſt but very irregular edifice.

The city is plentifully ſupplied with water, from three great bents, or reſervoirs. As this water cannot be equally diſtributed through the whole city, on account of the inequality of the ground, water-houſes are eſtabliſhed in proper places, from which it is ſerved out to every perſon gratis. Oppoſite to the outer-gate of the ſeraglio, is a houſe ſplendidly decorated, where perſons paid by the public, preſent water to the paſſengers, in veſſels of gilt copper.

This capital of a great empire is almoſt deſtitute of means of defence. A double wall, and a ditch nearly filled up, are all its fortifications.

The ſultan has many houſes of pleaſure, both in the vicinities of the capital and on the ſhores in the channel of the Black Sea. The Greeks have 23 churches in Conſtantinople, and the Armenians three, excluſive of thoſe the two nations have in the ſuburbs. Reſident at Pera, is a Catholic clergyman, on whom the pope confers the pompous title of archbiſhop, placing him at the head of a great many ſuppoſed biſhops. The law prohibits any ſtrange ſect to build churches or chapels in the capital, notwithſtanding which, ſeveral ſects hold their meetings there without any moleſtation.

On M. Niebuhr's recovery, every preparation was made for leaving Conſtantinople. Notwithſtanding they might have ventured to appear in their European dreſs at Alexandria (the inhabitants there being accuſtomed to ſee a great many Franks) yet, through the reſt of Egypt, and in Arabia, as this apparel, conſiſting of ſo many pieces, and ſo materially different from the beautiful ſimplicity of the eaſtern garments, might have expoſed them to ſome inconveniencies, they deemed it expedient to aſſume the Turkiſh dreſs, and having by means of their guide, (Mr. Gœhler) obtained a paſſport from th ſultan, they embarked with letters of recommendation, on board a veſſel belonging to Dolcigno. All veſſels, on leaving Conſtantinople, are viſited by an officer of the cuſtoms, in order to prevent the deſertion of ſlaves, and any defraud to the revenue of the eſtabliſhed dues.

Our heroes ſet ſail September 11, and reached the Dardenelles on the 15th; they hoiſted their ſails again the 17th, and paſſing the iſles of the Archipelago, anchored in the harbour of Rhodes the 21ſt. Some ſhips of war had arrived here, whoſe viſits the iſlanders are by no means fond of, both on account of the inſolence of their ſailors, and the preſents which every admiral expects from them.

As ſoon as our travellers landed, they went immediately to the houſe of the Daniſh conſul; but found his doors ſhut, to keep out the ſailors; on account of their turkiſh dreſs, they could not obtain admiſſion, till they met with an honeſt capuchin, who knew them for Europeans, and introduced them. The conſul ſent his interpreter to accompany them in ſome little excurſions, which curioſity induced them to make through the iſland.

The city of Rhodes contains a number of noble old buildings, ſome of which are decorated with the armorial bearings of the moſt ancient families in Europe, but the palace which belonged to the grand maſter of the order, is now falling into ruins. The Turks neglect the fortifications; although they might know their importance, from having beſieged the iſland ſo long before they could make themſelves maſters of it. But, notwithſtanding this neglect, Rhodes is one of the beſt fortified places in the Ottoman empire, and the Turks think it impregnable.

Here our travellers had the curioſity, for the firſt time, to go to dine in a Turkiſh inn. Dinner was ſerved up to them in the open ſtreet, upon a large ſtone ſeat, connected with the kitchen-wall: the meat was in a coarſe, ill-faſhioned, earthen plate, and they eat it without knife or fork. They had an excellent dinner, and were charged high. They went thence to drink ſome wine at a Jew's houſe, who valued himſelf on ſupplying it to all ſtrangers. He had two handſome girls with him, whom he called his daughters, and who ſpoke Italian well. Their entertainment at his houſe coſt them much dearer than their Turkiſh meal.

There are a great many Greeks in the iſle of Rhodes, but they are not ſuffered to live in the city. Meſſrs. Van Haven and Cramer witneſſed an inſtance of the ill-treatment which that people ſuffer from their conquerors. Theſe gentlemen had gone with ſome Greeks to viſit their biſhop, in a village near the city. While they were with him, ſome Turkiſh muſicians made their appearance, and inſiſted upon entertaining the good prelate with muſic, which he had no deſire to hear. Although he refuſed their concert, the muſicians would be paid; and did not retire without inſulting him and his company.

Early on the morning of the 22d of September they ſet ſail. Hitherto, they had ſailed near the coaſts, and among iſlands; and it would conſequently have been vain to make obſervations on the courſe they ſailed. But, in the open ſea, they had ſoon an opportunity of remarking the ignorance of the Turks in every thing relative to navigation. The maſter of their ſhip had compaſſes and ſeveral inſtruments, but knew not what uſe to make of them. They were probably a part of the plunder which he had taken in ſome Chriſtian ſhip: for the Dolcignots often give themſelves out for Algerines, and take European ſhips belonging to powers at peace with the Porte. In the courſe of their voyage, their Dolcignot was afraid of being taken himſelf; for it was reported that the Malteſe, or rather ſome privateers, with letters of marque from ſome Italian prince, were at that time ſcouring thoſe ſeas. They could not have made any defence; their ſhip being a heavy ſailer, and over-laden, and having only a few ruſty guns, not properly mounted.

Their captain held for Alexandria, by chance. Luckily for them, a very favourable wind ſprung up, and carried them ſtraight into the harbour in the day. The ſhores of Egypt are ſo low that they cannot be ſeen from a diſtance, and a ſhip approaching, without knowing her courſe, can hardly fail to run aground.

The captain, his ſecretary, and two pilots, ſpoke Italian tolerably well. The ſecretary had been at Venice, in different other Italian cities, and even at Vienna; he was at the ſame time imam, or almoner of the veſſel. The imam's buſineſs is to direct the crew in their evening prayers, which the Mahometans perform regularly after waſhing. The imam then ſpreads his carpet, kneels with his face towards Mecca, and mutters his prayers, proſtrating himſelf from time to time, and crying *Allah akbar*, God is great. The aſſembly repeat his words, and regularly imitate his motions and geſtures. One thing eſſential, is, to put the thumbs behind the ears, to mark the perfect abſtraction of the mind from all worldly cares, and the elevation of the ſoul towards heaven. Beſides this public evening prayer, the Mahometans are directed by law to ſay other prayers, in the courſe of their avocations, whenever they find themſelves moſt diſpoſed to the duty. They make no difficulty of diſplaying their humility and devotion before ſpectators. M. Niebuhr was at firſt afraid to diſturb them by his preſence, and attempted to retire; but moſt of them preſſed him to remain and join them. It is only the inſolence of the populace, that hinders Chriſtians from entering moſques, or witneſſing their worſhip.

The veſſel being too full, the Muſſulman paſſengers were ſeated on the decks. Our travellers had hired the captain's apartment, with another long room adjoining, in order to ſeparate themſelves from the Turks. In a cabin above them, were lodged ſome ſlaves intended for the market, girls who had received a good education in the Turkiſh mode, and were deſtined for the haram of ſome grandee. Meſſrs. Niebuhr and Forſkall one day, while they were in their chamber, overheard a female voice, and ſet their heads to the window, to obſerve whence it came. Thoſe ſlaves obſerving them to be ſtrangers, cried out, and ſcolded them; but one of them ſoothed the reſt. They held out to them fruits and ſugar; and they put down their handkerchiefs to receive what they liked. Their language being unknown to each other, they converſed by ſigns. The youngeſt addreſſed a few words to our hero, ſeveral different times. Our travellers, to learn their wiſhes, aſked the clerk of the ſhip, to explain the meaning of a great many Turkiſh words and phraſes, and at length came to underſtand, that the girl had warned them to beware of appearing at the window, except when the crew were at prayers. Thoſe females became at laſt ſo familiar with our travellers, as to give them notice by knocking at the window, whenever they were alone. This imprudent frolic amuſed them a few moments; but it might have occaſioned them much ſerious trouble; and they came afterwards to underſtand, what extreme folly it is to make the ſlighteſt acquaintance with Turkiſh women.

On the 26th of September, in the evening, they arrived at Alexandria, and anchored in the great harbour, which Chriſtian ſhips are not permitted to do; they are obliged to anchor in the ſmall harbour, which is very dangerous. The paſſengers went immediately on ſhore; but the ſlaves remained till night, and were carried away with the utmoſt ſecrecy.

In the courſe of the voyage, eight of the crew had died ſuddenly; which made them afraid that the plague might be among them. Happily their fears proved vain; for their phyſician, who viſited ſeveral of thoſe perſons, while they were ill, found no ſymptom of peſtilential infection among them.

Alexandria, or Scandria, as the Turks and Arabs call it, is ſituate upon a narrow iſthmus, between a peninſula and the walls of the ancient city, and dividing the two harbours. The ground on which the modern city ſtands, ſeems to have riſen out of the waters. Although long ſince diveſted of its ancient ſplendour, yet the remains of the magnificent buildings which it once poſſeſſed,—palaces, temples, and moſques, with a plentiful intermixture of palm trees, —give this city an aſpect of beauty and dignity, when viewed from the harbour.

Alexandria has fallen by degrees from its grandeur, population, and wealth. The filling up of the branch of the Nile, upon which this city ſtands, and which is now no longer navigable, is what has chiefly contributed to its decline. It is however cleanſed from time to time, as it ſupplies the city with ſoft water, which could be no where elſe obtained. The magnificent reſervoirs of old Alexandria ſtill remain; they were intended to contain water for the uſe of the city, through the whole year; which was received into them at the time of the overflowing of the Nile.

This city might be in a more flouriſhing condition; did not diſadvantages of all ſorts concur to depreſs it. Its inhabitants appear to have a natural genius for commerce; were it not checked by the malignant influence of the government. The inhabitants of Alexandria are in uſe to enter as ſailors on board Chriſtian ſhips; and when they have ſeen the world, and learned ſome languages, they return home, and become couriers, or interpreters, to the nations they have ſerved. The Mahometans have commonly a great averſion at living among Chriſtians, becauſe they cannot join in the ceremonies of their religion. The modern Egyptians, being leſs attached than the other Muſſulmans to the peculiarities of their religion and manners, are fitter for commercial intercourſe with the Europeans.

The trade of Alexandria is, notwithſtanding, very trifling; although almoſt all the nations of Europe have conſuls here. But, as moſt part of thoſe articles of traffic which are imported into Egypt, paſs by Alexandria, the cuſtoms afford a conſiderable ſum to the Sultan annually.

The Arabic is the ordinary language of the native inhabitants, both here and through all Egypt. Europeans, unſkilled in Arabic, ſpeak Italian, which is not a little uſed in theſe countries.

Several tribes of wandering Arabs are continually roaming about through Lower-Egypt; and often approach near to Alexandria. The inhabitants pay ſome contributions. But thoſe troops pillage the country, ſo that government is obliged to ſend ſoldiers to reduce them, or drive them into the more remote provinces. During their ſtay at Alexandria, ſome hundreds of thoſe robbers encamped within a quarter of a league of the city. They diſtreſſed the huſbandmen, and plundered the travellers.

Having ſtruggled conſiderably with contrary winds, they arrived, on the 2d of November, at Roſetta, as it is called in Europe, or Raſchid, in the language of the country. This city is of a conſiderable ſize, and ſtands upon an eminence, whence opens a charming proſpect of the courſe of the Nile, and a part of the Delta. It ſerves as a ſtaple for the trade between Alexandria and Cairo. The boats of the latter city proceed no farther than to Roſetta, where they lade with goods brought by the veſſels of Alexandria, which never advance up the river. For this reaſon, the French and Venetian conſuls reſide at Roſetta, as well as ſeveral European merchants, who manage the conveyance of goods belonging to their friends.

Being in haſte to reach Cairo they left Roſetta on the 6th of November, and two days after paſſed Fue, once a conſiderable city, and the ſtaple of the trade between Alexandria and Cairo. The canal between Alexandria and Fue is no longer navigable; and Fue entirely deſerted. The Nile carries ſo much of the ſoil from the lands, that it gradually fills up the canals; although they are cleanſed from time to time; but in a very ſuperficial manner. The earth taken out of the canals forms thoſe mounts which are obſerved in the Delta, and which appear ſtrange in ſo flat a country as Egypt.

In this ſeaſon, when the country is all verdant, there is great pleaſure in ſailing up the Nile. A number of villages are ſcattered along each ſide of the river. The houſes are indeed low, and built of unburnt bricks; but, intermixed as they are with palm trees, and pigeon-houſes of a ſingular form, they preſent to the eye of the ſtranger, an uncommon and pleaſing proſpect. Near ſeveral of theſe villages are ſeen large heaps of the ruins of ancient cities.

The navigation of the Nile would be ſtill more agreeable, were it not infeſted by pirates. But, when a great number of people are on board of a veſſel, they keep on their guard; they diſcharge a few ſhots from time to time, to ſhew, that they are provided with fire arms; this keeps the robbers in awe, and renders the paſſage leſs dangerous. There is much more danger in truſting to a maſter of a veſſel, with whom you are unacquainted, who may favour the robbers, and ſhare their plunder. Whole villages are ſaid to follow this trade; and for this reaſon the boats never ſtop in their neighbourhood. The inhabitants on the banks of the Nile are very dexterous in the art of ſwimming, which they frequently exerciſe in ſtealing from the boats, if not with open force, yet with a degree of addreſs and audacity worthy of the moſt noted pick-pockets.

They reached Bulak November the 10th, which may be conſidered as the port of Cairo, as all boats that come by the Nile diſcharge their paſſengers and cargoes at this place.

Our hero, in advancing to Cairo, having examined one of the great branches of the Nile, was deſirous of ſeeing the other between Cairo and Damietta. However, by the rains and other circumſtances he was prevented from accompliſhing his intention, till the ſucceeding year. In the mean time he gained ſome knowledge of the language of the country, and became more familiar with the manners of the Eaſt. Mr. Baurenſeind, too, who, ſince his arrival at Cairo, had ſcarce ever gone abroad, now determined to accompany our traveller. They left Bulak on the 1ſt of May 1762, ſailing at firſt gently down the Nile.

From Cairo to the Delta, the river is very large, with ſmall iſles ſcattered through it; which, when the river overflows, are often tranſported, by the impetuoſity of the ſtream, from one ſituation to another. This occaſions frequent diſputes among the villagers on the banks of the river. But, at this time, the Nile was ſo low, that their boat was ſeveral times a-ground. They might have proceeded with the ſtream, in the calm, during night, had they not been afraid of pirates. A north wind blows uſually through the day, and oppoſes the progreſs of boats down the river. Violent blaſts ſometimes ariſe, and bear ſand and duſt before them, darkening the air, and endangering the ſafety of the boats, which are commonly very indifferent ſailers. All the villages have, indeed, guards to watch the approach of pirates, and warn paſſengers. But thoſe very guards often join with the inhabitants of the villages, and fit out barks themſelves, to plunder thoſe whom they ſhould protect.

They arrived at Siſta on the 3d of May; this is a very conſiderable village, between Cairo and Damietta. It has three moſques, and a church belonging to the Copts, the congregation of which conſiſts of three hundred families. Thoſe good people invited our traveller to ſee their church: it is ill-built, dirty, and hung with cobwebs. During the public worſhip, they ſtand, leaning on their ſtaves. Their churches are adorned with bad paintings.

In the courſe of their voyage they ſaw ſeveral boats which they ſuſpected to belong to pirates: but none of them ventured to attack them. They ſaw, likewiſe, ſeveral rafts laden with pots and other earthen ware from Upper Egypt. Thoſe cargoes of earthen ware are fixed upon very light planks of the timber of the palm tree, joined into a raft, the progreſs of which is directed by ſix or eight men with poles in their hands. After ſelling their cargoes at Damietta, they walk home. They defend themſelves very dexterouſly, with ſlings, againſt robbers.

They paſſed by Manſura. It ſeemed of the ſame ſize as Damietta. A wall has been built upon the branch of the river near the city, to hinder the water from entering the canal that communicates with the lake of Baheira, in a larger quantity than is requiſite for watering the fields of rice, of which a great deal is raiſed in this part of the country.

Below Manſura they met twenty boats laden with bee-hives, which they were bringing up to make honey on the banks of the river. In each boat were two hundred hives, four thouſand in all. The Sandyak of Manſura lay in the neighbourhood, with a party of forty ſlaves and domeſtics, to levy the tax due upon the bees.

They arrived at Damietta on the 5th of May. This city is at leaſt as advantageouſly ſituated as Roſetta. The imports from Syria enter at this port; and it has alſo a great trade in rice, of which there is much raiſed in the neighbourhood. Yet, no Chriſtian merchant, or European monk, reſides here; although there be in Damietta, a conſiderable number of Maronites and Armenians, who communicate with the church of Rome.

Formerly, a conſul and French merchants reſided in Damietta. But, the inhabitants obſerving that that thoſe ſtrangers made too free with their women, roſe up in a fury, and maſſacred them all. The inhabitants of Damietta are generally reckoned more unfriendly to the Chriſtians, than any of the other inhabitants of Egypt. The memory of the Cruſades, perhaps, keeps up this inveterate averſion. But, as our travellers wore the Turkiſh dreſs, and ſpoke the language of the country tolerably well, they had nothing to fear.

There are many rice fields in the neighbourhood of this city. But towards the ſhore, the ground is covered with ſand, and conſequently barren. To travel by land from Damietta to Roſetta, it is only a journey of a day and a half. But the road is very dangerous, being infeſted with robbers.

M. Niebuhr being ſo near the ſea, went to ſee the Boghas, two German leagues below Damietta. This mouth of the Nile is not leſs dangerous to veſſels than that of Roſetta. It was formerly defended by a fort; but the garriſon have been frightened away by ſuppoſed apparitions. Our hero viſited it in company with ſome Mahometans, who ſaid their prayers very devoutly in that abode of ſpirits. This was the only time M. Niebuhr remarked this ſpecies of ſuperſtition among the Muſſulmans; the ſuppoſition of apparitions being unknown in Arabia.

The lake of Baheira extends from Damietta to Ghaſſa. The inhabitants being poor, and from their inſulated ſituation almoſt independent, are to be dreaded equally by land and water. They rob all travellers without diſtinction. This, therefore deterred our hero from examining the place.

A number of the villages on the banks of the Nile belong to beys who reſide at Cairo. They left Damietta on the 12th of May; and the wind blew ſo fair, that they reached Bulak on the 15th.

Our author now proceeds in giving his deſcriptions of Egypt, Cairo, &c. for which we ſhall refer our readers to Mr. Bruce's travels. Speaking of the inhabitants, he ſays that the Arabs and Turks from all the provinces in the Ottoman empire, form the moſt numerous part of the people of Cairo. There are alſo Magrebbins, or Arabs from Barbary, other Africans, Perſians, and Tartars: all theſe are Mahometans, and moſt of them attached to the ſect of Schafei.

After the Mahometans, the Copts are the next in number. They occupy whole quarters of the city, and very large ſtreets. They have a great many churches, both in the capital, and at Maſr-el-atik in its vicinity. Their patriarch alſo reſides at Cairo. Theſe people are deſcended from the ancient Egyptians; and the Turks, upon this account, call them, in deriſion, the poſterity of Pharaoh. But their uncouth figure, their ſtupidity, ignorance, and wretchedneſs, do little credit to the ſovereigns of ancient Egypt. They have lived for 2000 years under the dominion of different foreign conquerors, and have experienced many viciſſitudes of fortune. They have loſt their manners, their language, their religion, and almoſt their exiſtence. They are reduced to a ſmall number in compariſon of the Arabs, who have poured like a flood over this country. Of the diminution of the number of the Copts ſome idea may be formed from the reduction of the number of their biſhops. They were ſeventy in number at the period of the Arabian conqueſt; they are now only twelve.

The Jews are the moſt numerous claſs, next after the Mahometans and the Copts. Some Phariſees or Talmudiſts, reſide here, as well as Karaites, who, though not numerous, have a ſynagogue of their own. The Talmudiſts are numerous and powerful. They have long farmed all the cuſtoms; an undertaking which brings them both wealth and credit. In the republican government of Egypt, they find it eaſier to gain ſteady protectors, than in the other provinces of Turkey, where all depends upon the caprice of a pacha, who knows not how ſoon he may loſe his place, or of the ſuperintendant of the cuſtoms who reſides in Conſtantinople. One proof of the conſequence which the Jews enjoy under the ariſtocracy of Cairo, is, that the offices of the cuſtoms are ſhut upon their ſabbath, and no goods can paſs on that day, although belonging to Chriſtians or Muſſulmans.

The Greeks have only two churches in Cairo, in one of which the ſervice is performed by the patriarch of Alexandria, and in the other by the biſhop of Mount Sinai. The Armenians, who are not numerous, have only one church, but that a handſome one. From Europe here are ſeveral French and Italian merchants, but no Dutchmen; yet the Dutch have a conſul here, as well as France and Venice.

In reſpect to the entertainments of the Eaſt, our author ſays that the Oſmanli, or Turks of diſtinction, who are ſtill attached to the ancient military inſtitutions of the nation, amuſe themſelves chiefly with equeſtrian exerciſes. The principal inhabitants of Cairo meet twice a-week in a large ſquare, called Maſtabe, with a number of attendants on horſeback. In this ſquare they play at Gerid; which conſiſts in running, by two and two, with the ſtirrups looſe, purſuing one another, and toſſing ſtaves four feet long: theſe they throw with ſuch force, that if any one be not upon his guard, he is in danger of having a leg or an arm broken. Others, while riding at full gallop, throw balls into a pot placed upon a heap of ſand. Others, again, ſhoot the bow; an exerciſe in ſuch repute, that pillars are erected in honour of thoſe who exhibit extraordinary proofs of ſtrength or dexterity in launching the arrows.

When the Nile is at its greateſt height, the great about Cairo divert themſelves in little boats ſplendidly decked out, upon the birkets in the middle of the city. Upon this occaſion, they regale the inhabitants with muſic, and often with fire-works.

A man originally from Tripoli in Barbary informed them, that the pacha of that city uſed ſometimes to erect two ſcaffolds, with cords running between them, and upon theſe miniature models of ſhips of war, armed with cannons of a ſize in proportion to that of the veſſel. Thoſe veſſels, thus ſuſpended in the air, and commanded by naval officers, who directed the evolutions and the fire of the ſmall artillery, preſented no unentertaining repreſentation of a ſea fight. The captain whoſe veſſel firſt ſuffered conſiderable damage was conſidered as conquered. But his diverſion often ended in ſerious quarrels among the commanders, and was therefore aboliſhed.

The noblemen's ſervants exerciſe themſelves on foot, in throwing, one againſt another, ſtaves five or ſix feet long; and thus learn to throw the Gerid, when on horſeback. The common people and peaſants divert themſelves with cudgel-playing. Gladiators by profeſſion there are, too, who exhibit in public. But ſtaves are their only weapons; and a ſmall cuſhion faſtened under the left arm, ſerves them as a buckler.

The young people of the villages amuſe themſelves at diverſions much the ſame as ſeveral of thoſe which are practiſed in Europe. They run, leap, play at the ball, ſometimes at odds and evens, and at toſſing a number of ſmall ſtones into the air and receiving them again into the hand.

It is natural for a people who live in ſecluſion from ſociety, and in ſubjection to arbitrary authority, to be fond of public feſtivals. Theſe are celebrated in Egypt with much pomp and ceremony, particularly the feſtival upon the departure of the pilgrims for Mecca, of which ſeveral authors have given a deſcription. The other feaſts, beſides this, are numerous: each moſque celebrates a feaſt in honour of its founder; upon occaſion of which there is a proceſſion of perſons of all ranks; and the people are permitted to divert themſelves in an adjoining ſquare. The Copts have their feaſts, as well as the Mahometans, and contribute, by their ceremonies, to the general amuſement.

Sometimes theſe feſtivals are celebrated by night. The ſtreets are then illuminated by the blaze of reſinous wood in a chafing diſh, held up on a long pole. They uſe alſo another more luminous flambeau, which is a machine conſiſting of divers pieces of light wood, to which are hung a number of ſmall lamps, and the whole carried on a pole, as the former. When theſe feſtivals are celebrated by day, the people divert themſelves upon ſwings, and other ſimilar diverſions.

Throughout Egypt, Syria, and Arabia, the favorite amuſement of perſons in any degree above the very loweſt claſſes, is, to ſpend the evening in a public coffee-houſe, where they hear muſicians, ſingers, and tale-tellers, who frequent thoſe houſes in order to earn a trifle by the exerciſe of their reſpective arts. In thoſe places of public amuſement, the Orientals maintain a profound ſilence, and often ſit whole evenings without uttering a word. They prefer converſing with their pipe; and its narcotic fumes ſeem very fit to allay the ferment of their boiling blood. Without recurring to a phyſical reaſon, it would be hard to account fot the general reliſh which theſe people have for tobacco; by ſmoking, they divert the ſpleen and langour which hang about them, and bring themſelves, in a ſlight degree, into the ſame ſtate of ſpirits which the opium-eaters obtain from that drug. Tobacco ſerves them inſtead of ſtrong liquors, which they are forbidden to uſe.

The koran prohibits playing for money; and for this reaſon the Orientals ſeldom play at any game of chance.

They know nothing of cards; but at Bombay our traveller met with four Arabian merchants, who played with chineſe cards, ſo large and thick, that not one of the four but had enough to do with both hands. Some young Mahometan merchants, whom he ſurpriſed playing at Bombay, concealed their game with an appearance of anxiety, till they learned that he was an European. The Greeks are too poliſhed, not to imitate our manners; they ſhew themſelves good Chriſtians, by playing with our cards, and a deep game too.

The inhabitants of the Eaſt have, however, ſome games, more ſuitable to their ſedentary life, and ſplenetic humour, at which they play without keenneſs, and merely to fill up the vacant hours. Such are cheſs, draughts, trictrac. The Arabic names of theſe games, and their antiquity prove them to have been originally introduced from the Eaſt into Europe. If the Mahometans ſhew any degree of paſſion for any one game, it is for cheſs, at which they ſpend, ſometimes, whole days without interruption. But thoſe who enter into the game with this keenneſs and ſeriouſneſs, are recknoned dull by their companions. Inſtead of wooden cheſs-boards, they uſe a white linen cloth, with pieces of a different colour ſewed upon it. When the game is ended, the cloth is wrapped up, with the victors and the vanquiſhed, amicably mixed within it.

They have another game, which is played upon boards, marked with two ſquares, one within another, and theſe divided diagonally,—with ſtones or ſhells of different colours; people play at it with black and white beans. There are many others, particularly an ancient game which the Arabs call Lal el Kab; it is played with ſmall bones of ſheep or goats; and the value of the ſeveral ſtrokes in the progreſs of game is determined by the appearance of one or another of the ſides of the bone above. The elder Greek and Latin authors ſpeak of this game, which muſt have given riſe to the uſe of the dice.

At the time of our travellers arrival in Cairo, there was a numerous company of players, Mahometans, Chriſtians, and Jews. Their appearance beſpoke their poverty. They played their pieces, wherever they were invited, for a moderate hire. They exhibited in the open air. The court of the houſe was their theatre; and a ſcreen concealed them from the audience, when they changed their dreſſes. Several European merchants had lived long at Cairo without ſeeing an Egyptian play; our travellers therefore invited the company to the houſe of a married Italian: but they were not much gratified either by the muſic or the players. The piece was in Arabic. M. Niebuhr was not then ſufficiently maſter of this language to underſtand the dialogue; but the fable was explained to him. The principal character was a female; but was acted by a man in woman's dreſs, who had much to do to hide his beard. This heroine enticed all travellers into her tent; and after robbing them of their purſes, cauſed them to be beaten off. She had already plundered a good many, when a young merchant, weary of the inſipid repetition of the ſame tricks, expreſſed aloud his diſapprobation of the piece. The other ſpectators, to ſhew that their delicacy was not inferior to his, joined his expreſſion of diſapprobation, and obliged the players to ſtop, although the piece was not more than half done.

Though few plays are repreſented in Cairo, yet puppet-ſhews are very common, and are to be met with through all the ſtreets. This exibition is repreſented upon a very narrow ſtage, a ſort of box which a ſingle perſon can eaſily carry about, and into which the performer goes. He ſends forward his figures through holes in the coffer, and makes them perform the neceſſary movements by means of wires paſſing through the grooves in the lid of the box. With an inſtrument in his mouth, he gives his voice a ſhrillneſs anſwerable to the ſize of the figures. The whole together might merit attention, were not the pieces, which the taſte of the ſpectators in Cairo requires to be performed, abſolutely execrable. The puppets begin by paying compliments, quarrel by degrees, and end with beating one another.

The magic lantern is a favourite amuſement in the Eaſt: and jugglers are to be ſeen in all the public ſtreets: they are paid by a voluntary contribution of the ſpectators, but that ſo moderate, that their profeſſion ſcarcely enables them to live. Monkies, dreſſed up like human beings, alſo contribute to the amuſement of the populace. Thoſe who lead beaſts about for exhibition, have alſo ſheep and aſſes who are taught to perform ſome diverting tricks: but what at firſt ſurpriſed our travellers moſt of all, was to ſee ſerpents dancing; however their wonder ceaſed upon conſidering the inſtinct of this animal, which ſeems to have a natural taſte for ſounds.

CHAP.

C H A P. II.

Our Travellers delayed—Reaſons thereof—Prepare for their Departure from Seriagus, &c.—Make for Suez—Proceed to Adgerud—Deſcription thereof—Reach Bir-Suez—Account of the City—Adventures and Obſervations—Journey to Mount Sinai—Travel through the Plain of Girdan—See a great Maſs of Rock—Enter Girondel—Jebbel Hammem Faurum, &c. &c.—The Valley of Faran—Deſcription of Mount Sinai.

NOTWITHSTANDING the chief object of M. Niebuhr's voyage was to viſit Arabia, yet ſeveral circumſtances detained him in Egypt for nearly a year.

Chriſtians, on account of the pretended ſanctity of the pilgrims, are prohibited from travelling to Arabia by land, with the caravan for Mecca. They are under a neceſſity, therefore, of waiting till the ſeaſon when the Red Sea becomes navigable, and veſſels ſail from the harbour of Suez for Jidda.

While they waited theſe opportunities, they found it equally impoſſible to viſit Mount Sinai, or Jibbel-el-Mokatteb, the celebrated hill of inſcriptions, both of which they deſigned to examine. The Egyptians had been at war, during all the laſt year, with a ſmall tribe of Arabs who dwelt in the environs of Tor, which rendered ſuch a journey impracticable before the return of the caravan from Mecca, the conductor of which had been commiſſioned to negotiate a peace with the offended Arabs.

The cauſe of this war was the intemperate rapacity of the Arabs, who gain their livelihood by hiring out camels, and carrying goods between Suez and Cairo. A number of veſſels laden with corn, are ſent every year from Egypt to Mecca. One of theſe veſſels had anchored near Tor, to take in water, which is better and cheaper there than at Suez; and the captain had made his whole crew go on ſhore. The Arabs could not reſiſt ſuch a temptation; but ſeized the captain and the ſailors, and plundered the veſſel. While this ſupply of proviſions laſted, they gave themſelves little concern about the reſentment of the Egyptians. But, when they had uſed all the corn, and durſt no longer go to Cairo, for fear of having their camels taken from them, and being otherwiſe puniſhed, they found themſelves much at a loſs for the means of ſubſiſtence. They began, therefore, to pillage the caravans which go and come regularly between Suez and Cairo. They had even the confidence to repreſent to government, that they would continue to rob the caravans, till an amneſty ſhould be granted them for what was paſt, and ſecurity given that they and their camels might come and go in ſafety.

Notwithſtanding the ſultan calls himſelf ſovereign of Egypt, yet ſo feeble is his authority, that an handful of raggamuffins ventured to brave the pride of the Ottoman throne, and came off with impunity. To reſtore peace and ſecurity, the regency at Cairo found themſelves obliged to empower the Emir Hadgi to make the conceſſion which the Arabs required. The treaty was accordingly concluded at a place where the caravan halted, on their return from Mecca.

Having received notice of this event, Auguſt 27, 1762, by the diſcharge of a cannon upon the arrival of a courier with the news, our travellers immediately prepared to ſet out. Preparations for ſuch a journey as that which they propoſed to make, in the Eaſt, was a very ſerious and difficult concern. A traveller, although he knows a little of the language, cannot but want ſervants, who muſt have been previouſly in thoſe parts which he means to viſit. With ſuch, they were ill provided. Their Swediſh ſervant was as much a ſtranger as themſelves; they had a Greek cook who had lived long enough in Cairo, but had never been out of Egypt; an interpreter to aſſiſt their phyſician in his practice, who was a renegado Greek, and had never travelled before; and a young Jew of Sana, who had before travelled the ſame road upon which they were entering, but was regarded with ſovereign contempt by the Mahometans, on account of the nation to which he belonged. None of theſe could be of much ſervice to them in their intercourſe with the Arabs. They had likewiſe great occaſion to ſupply themſelves carefully with proviſions and articles of furniture. In the deſarts through which they were to travel, a tent and beds were indiſpenſably neceſſary. They had a neat collection of kitchen utenſils made of copper, and tinned without and within. Inſtead of glaſſes, which are ſo liable to be broken, they uſed alſo copper bowls completely tinned. A bottle of thick leather ſerved them as a caraffe. Their butter they put up in a leathern jar. In a wooden box, covered with leather, and parted out into ſhelves, they ſtored their ſpiceries of all ſorts; and in another ſimilar box, they laid their candles; in the lid of the latter, they fixed an iron ſocket, which ſerved them for a candleſtick. They had large lanterns of folded linen, with the lid and bottom of white iron. For a table, with table linen, they had a round piece of leather, with iron rings at certain diſtances round it, through which cords were paſſed, after their meals, and the table hung, in the form of a purſe, upon one of their camels. But they imprudently put their wine into great flaſks, inſtead of goats-ſkin bottles, large enough, each of them to contain twenty ordinary bottles. Theſe vaſes are very liable to be broken by the jolting of the camels, as they found by the loſs of a part of their wine.

All except M. Niebuhr hired horſes. He, out of curioſity, preferred a dromedary, and found no reaſon to repent of his choice. On a camel, the ſaddle is always open above, that it may not hurt the bunch of the animal; but a dromedary's ſaddle is made like a horſe's, and covers the bunch. The dromedary, as well as the camel, kneels to receive a load, or a rider upon his back. At a certain ſignal, he droops his head and neck, ſo that one can alight and remount whenever there is occaſion, without making the animal ſtop. Our hero ſpread his bed-clothes upon his ſaddle, and was thus enabled to change his poſture, and to ſeat himſelf ſo as to avoid the direct impulſe of the ſun's rays. A dromedary walks with long and regular ſteps, and the rider, of conſequence, feels the motion no otherwiſe than if he were rocked in a cradle. When his companions, who rode on horſeback, were weary and faint by the fatigue of riding, and by the exceſſive heat, he found himſelf as little fatigued as if he had been all day in a chaiſe at his eaſe.

The caravan with which they had deſigned to travel, waited a long while for the concluſion of peace between the governor of Egypt and the Arabs of Tor. On its return, they went immediately to find the Schiech from whom they had hired their beaſts for the journey. He had pitched his tent near the village of Seriagus, where he, with his party, lay encamped, till they ſhould find it proper to ſet out. But on that day no body muſt ſtir.

When large caravans paſs through the territories of the independent Arabs, they have at their head a caravan-baſchi, whoſe buſineſs is to guide the caravan, and to treat with the princes who may exact duties for the liberty of paſſing through their dominions. This chief regulates the departure of the caravan, its journies, and the times at which it is to reſt. But ſmall caravans, ſuch as our travellers employed, whoſe expeditions are ſhort, have no ſuch guide. The chief merchant in the party, always halts and proceeds as he pleaſes, and the reſt follow his example. When none of the merchants in the company is conſiderable enough to have this influence, the Arab who has moſt beaſts of burden, regulates the reſt. Our travellers did not know the preciſe time at which they were to ſet out, till the 28th of Auguſt, when they ſaw troops of paſſengers begin to move.

Their caravan had no very formidable aſpect. Being in haſte to ſet out from Cairo before the great caravan, which goes always to Suez immdiately after the departure of the veſſels, they had not more than forty camels which were loaded with corn and materials for building. Three or four camels were employed in carrying an anchor. Their camel-drivers, who were but few, carried broken guns, and ruſty or pointleſs ſabres. A few Schiechs, indeed, to whom the moſt of their camels belonged, carried complete armour, and rode upon dromedaries. But they could not truſt to them for defence; for no Arab will willingly riſk his life to ſave a Turk. It was their part, therefore, to keep in the middle of the caravan, and on no account to leave them, or encamp apart, unleſs they were willing to be plundered. In ſome places, where the danger was leaſt, our hero and his comrade ventured to go before the main body of the caravan, to reſt and enjoy purer air for a little while.

They left Seriagus on the evening of the 28th of Auguſt, and paſſed near by a large village, called Hanſke, after which they returned into the great road, and about eleven at night, encamped in a place named El-Firn-bebad. The great road conſiſts of a number of parallel paths, formed by camels who travel in files, juſt as they pleaſe. Two miles from Cairo, they ſaw a ſquare area encloſed within a wall, ſeveral feet high, in which the principal inhabitants of Cairo aſſemble to receive the Emir Hadgi, at his return from Mecca. From this place to Adgerud, within four leagues of Suez, the country is abſolutely a deſart; for the ſpace of three and twenty leagues, neither houſes, water, nor the ſmalleſt ſpot of verdure being to be ſeen.

Early on the 29th, they decamped, after taking a very ſlight refreſhment. They travelled onwards, thirteen leagues, croſſed the mountain of Wehbe; and about ſun-ſet, encamped near the hill of Taja. The great caravan from Mecca had paſſed on the preceding night; but as they travelled further to the ſouth, our travellers of courſe failed to meet them. Early on the next day, they proceeded to Adgerud, where travellers are induced to halt, by finding water fit for drinking.

Adgerud is a ſmall caſtle, that has been built by the Turks for the protection of the road, and the preſervation of the wells between Suez and the entrance into the deſart. Although built only about the end of the ſixteenth century, it is now ruinous.

Within three hours, they reached Bir-Suez, where are two deep wells, ſurrounded with walls, and ſhut up with ſtrong gates, to exclude the Arabs from the water. This water, although bad, and almoſt unfit for human uſe, is however precious to the inhabitants of Suez, as it ſerves for their cattle. It is drawn from the wells in leathern buckets. Bir-Suez being only a league from Suez, they reached that city in good time. By M. Niebuhr's obſervations, it is thirty-two ordinary leagues, or three and twenty German miles from Cairo.

The city of Suez ſtands upon the weſtern ſide, but not juſt upon the weſtern extremity, of the Arabic gulf. It is not ſurrounded with walls; but the houſes are built ſo cloſely together, that there are only two paſſages into the city, of which that neareſt the ſea is open, the other ſhut by a very inſufficient gate. The houſes are very ſorry ſtructures; the kans being the only ſolid buildings in the city. Hardly any part now remains of the caſtle which the Turks built upon the ruins of the ancient Kolſum. It is very thinly inhabited. Among its inhabitants are ſome Greeks, and a few families of Copts. But, about the time of the departure of the fleet, it is crowded with ſtrangers. The ground lying around it, is all one bed of rock, ſlightly covered with ſand. Scarce a plant is to be ſeen any where in the neighbourhood. Trees, gardens, meadows, and fields, are entirely unknown at Suez. Fiſh is the only article of proviſions plentiful here. All other neceſſaries of life, for both men and the domeſtic animals, are brought from afar; from Cairo, which is three days journey diſtant from Suez; Mount Sinai, at the diſtance of ſix days journey; or Ghaſſo, at the diſtance of ſeven.

At Suez, there is not a ſingle ſpring of water. That at Bir-Suez is ſcarcely good enough for cattle, though drawn to Suez twice a-day for their uſe. The water of the pretended wells of Moſes is ſtill worſe; and beſides, theſe wells lie at a league and a half's diſtance on the other ſide of the gulf. The only water fit for drinking that is to be had here, comes from the wells of Naba, upon the other ſide of the gulf, and more than two leagues diſtant from Suez. The Arabs are the carriers.

Ship-building is the chief employment of the inhabitants of Suez: although wood, and iron, and all the other materials, are to be brought from Cairo upon camels, and are, of conſequence, very dear. The ſhips built here have a very awkward rudder, made of a large beam, the uſe of which is dangerous and inconvenient. Our hero ſaw a veſſel in this harbour of a different conſtruction, which had been built at Surat. So durable was the wood of which it was formed, that, although it had been in conſtant uſe for twenty years, it was ſtill in a perfectly ſound ſtate.

The governor of Suez was a Bey from Cairo; and he kept a very numerous houſehold. This employment placed him in a ſort of honourable exile; and being therefore very deſirous of returning to the capital, he liſtened eagerly to any predictions reſpecting the period of his return thither. He aſſured our travellers, that a learned Muſſulman had foretold the time when he was to be recalled; and he wiſhed them to conſult the unknown inſcriptions in the deſart, and ſee whether they might not confirm the prediction of the prophetic Muſſulman. However Niebuhr and his party excuſed themſelves, as ignorant of the ſublime ſcience which unveils futurity. This Bey was a Mahometan by birth, and the ſon of a ſugar merchant.

The Schiechs, whom they had hired to conduct them to Mount Sinai, not having fulfilled their engagement, our travellers refuſed, upon their return to Suez, to pay the whole ſum that had been ſtipulated. Hereupon the Schiechs threatened to kill them, but our travellers let them know that they were able to defend themſelves. They then declared that they would deprive them of the water of the Naba. Mr. Van Haven replied, that this was a matter of no conſequence to Europeans who drank wine; an anſwer which moved the Turks to laugh at the expence of the Arabs. But, as their tribe eſpouſed their quarrel, it was ſeriouſly feared that they might execute what they threatened, and reduce the city to diſtreſs for want of water. Wherefore, the governor begged them to terminate the difference, and pay the Schiechs what they demanded: with which requeſt M. Niebuhr cheerfully complied.

One thing that they had in view in their journey, was to examine the Hill of Inſcriptions in the deſart; and they were, therefore, deſirous of receiving all poſſible information concerning ſo remarkable a place. On their arrival therefore at Suez, they applied to ſome Greeks for information concerning that hill. But none of them had ever heard of the name of Jibbel-el-Mokatteb. They directed them, however, to a Schiech of the tribe of Said, who had paſſed his life in travelling between Suez and Mount Sinai. That Schiech was equally a ſtranger to the name of the Hill of Inſcriptions. But, underſtanding that they would give a conſiderable reward to the perſon who ſhould guide them thither, he returned next day with another Schiech, of the tribe of Saccalha, who pretended to have a particular knowledge, not only of that mountain, but of all other places in the deſart where incriptions were to be met with. However, by his anſwers to ſome queſtions, our travellers ſoon ſaw that he knew as little as the former of the place which they wiſhed to viſit. At laſt a Schiech of the tribe of Leghat was brought them, who, by his converſation, convinced them, that he had ſeen ſtones inſcribed with unknown characters. When he learned that the object of their curioſity was called Jibbel-el-Mokatteb, he aſſured them that this was the name of the mountain among all the Arabs who knew it. Pleaſed with finding, at length, an inhabitant of the deſart, at leaſt, who could guide them to the place where the inſcriptions were to be ſeen; they determined to take him for their conductor, eſpecially becauſe his abode, as he told them, was near to that mountain. But the other two Schiechs, who had brought them the latter, warmly oppoſed their purpoſe, and inſiſted upon accompanying them as well as he. The inhabitants of Suez, adviſed them to take them all three, and told them, that they could not travel the deſart in ſafety, without having guides from every one of the three tribes, that inhabited the country between Suez and Mount Sinai. Accordingly they took the three Schiechs, who ſupplied them with camels for themſelves and their ſervants. To prevent diſputes, they had their contract written out by the cadi of Suez, in the preſence of the governor.

Being anxious to ſet out in time, that they might return to Suez before the firſt ſhips ſhould ſail, they choſe the beginning of October: for in the ſucceeding months, the paſſage to Jidda becomes too dangerous. At this time their painter, Mr. Baurenfiend, had fallen ill, immediately after their arrival at Suez, from the exceſſive fatigues which he had undergone. Notwithſtanding his aſſiſtance was neceſſary in their expedition, yet M. Niebuhr and Mr. Van Haven reſolved to ſet out by themſelves, leaving Meſſrs. Forſkal and Cramer at Suez, to take care of Mr. Baurenfiend.

They croſſed the gulf on the 6th of September 1762, and ſet out next morning with their Arabs. Beſide the three Schiechs and their ſervants, they were accompanied by ſeveral of thoſe people's friends, who had, for ſome time, carried water from the wells of Naba to Suez, and were now going to ſee their friends in the deſart, hoping to live at our travellers expence by the way. It is a rule with theſe people, that an Arab of diſtinction, travelling, muſt maintain all who chooſe to accompany him, whether it be at his own deſire or not; and our travellers, as they lived at ſome expence, were thought to be very rich.

The firſt day they travelled along the coaſt of the Arabic gulf, through a ſandy plain, having a few hills ſcattered over it. The Arabs call ſuch plains, when they lie ſomewhat low, *vallies*, becauſe water remains ſtagnant in them after heavy rains. They reſted under a palm-tree, Moſes' Fountains. Theſe pretended fountains, are five holes in the ſand, in a well of very indifferent water, that becomes turbid whenever any of it is drawn. As the holes bear the name of Moſes, the Arabs aſcribe them to the Jewiſh law-giver. After a day's journey of five German miles and a half, they encamped on the ſand, in the plain of El-Ti.

The country through which they paſſed, is famous as the ſcene of the emigration of the Jews, under Moſes. They were therefore deſirous of learning from the Arabs, the names of all the places, and of all the mountains, eſpecially in their way. Mr. Van Haven who could not reſolve to make himſelf familiar with the Bedouins, could obtain nothing but vague and uncivil anſwers from them. M. Niebuhr again ſought to gain the confidence and friendſhip of one of thoſe Arabs, by making him ſome preſents, and cauſing him to ride ſometimes behind him upon his camel. From him he received honeſt and diſtinct anſwers. To the objects which he pointed out to him, he gave the ſame names coming as going. M. Niebuhr likewiſe meaſured the diſtances of places, by counting the ſteps of the camel, and comparing the number with the time in which they were travelled, by his watch. By means of a compaſs, he diſtinguiſhed, likewiſe, the directions of the road. None of the Arabs underſtood the nature of this inſtrument. It is plainly, therefore, an idle tale, that they follow the direction of the compaſs, in travelling through their deſarts.

On the 8th of September, they travelled through the plain of Girdan. They ſaw, on their way, an enormous maſs of rock, that had fallen from a neighbouring mountain. They entered next the valley of Girondel, and, after proceeding five miles and a half further, found themſelves in the vicinity of Jibbel-Hammen-Faurum. Next day, ſending their ſervants forward, they themſelves ſtayed to examine theſe environs. In the rainy ſeaſon, a conſiderable torrent runs through the valley of Girondel. It was at this time dry; yet, by digging in the bed, to the depth of two feet, they found better water than that which is uſed at Suez. This valley not being deficient in water, has in it ſeveral trees, and even groves, that appear ſingularly ſtriking to travellers from Cairo, who have ſeen no ſimilar appearance in the previous part of their journey.

Hamman-Faraun is the name of a hot ſpring which riſes by two apertures out of a rock, at the foot of a high mountain. It is uſed in baths by the neighbouring ſick, who commonly ſtay forty days for a cure, during which their only food is but a fruit, called Laſſaf, which grows here. An extenſive burying-place near the baths, ſuggeſted doubts in our traveller's mind of the beneficial effects of this regimen. The tradition that the Jews paſſed this way, and that Pharaoh's army was drowned here, has occaſioned this place to receive the name of Birket-el-Faraun. The Arabs imagine that Pharaoh is doing penance at the bottom of this well, and vomits up the ſulphureous vapour with which the water is impregnated.

This eaſtern ſide of the Arabic gulph, is tolerably level and uniform. But the oppoſite ſide is one range of lofty mountains; broken, however, and divided by two vales, one of which muſt be paſſed by in travelling from Egypt to the ſhore of the Red Sea.

They turned by degrees towards the north-eaſt, in purſuing the direct road to Mount Sinai, and at length entered a narrow vale, which appeared to have been cut by the torrents, in the rock. The mountains which roſe upon every ſide of them, in uninterrupted chains, were maſſes of a ſort of limeſtone intermingled with veins of granite. In ſeveral places through them, M. Niebuhr diſcovered a quantity of petrified ſhells, of a ſpecies which is to be found with the living ſhell-fiſh in it, in the Arabic gulf. One of thoſe hills is entirely covered with flints. The granite became more and more plentiful, as they approached Mount Sinai.

Their road lay often along the brink of precipices, commonly through ſtony glynns, and ſometimes through wide vallies, watered and fertile. Such were Uſaitu, El-Hamer, and Warſan. They paſſed, alſo, in their way, by Naſbe, the ſeat of ſome Bedouins of this country. As water was ſometimes at a diſtance from the places where they encamped, their ſervants were obliged to go and fetch it. They could have wiſhed to accompany them, in order to ſee a little of the country; but their guides would not always permit them.

After paſſing through the valley of Warſan, they turned a little out of the highway, and in the ſame evening reached the abode of their chief of the tribe of Leghat. As it could not be far from Jibbel-el-Mokatteb, our traveller began to hope that he might take this opportunity of going thither. But the converſation of the Schiech made him ſoon give up that hope.

The Schiech had given notice of his arrival to ſeveral of his friends, who, to the number of ten or twelve, came to ſee him. Our hero left him to entertain his gueſts, and in the mean time ranged over ſeveral hills in the neighbourhood. He ſaw by accident, in a ſequeſtered ſpot, a wretched tent, the dwelling of their Schiech, in which were his wife and ſiſter, buſy grinding corn. One of the women came out of the tent, to preſent him with a bit of gum, and did not refuſe a ſmall piece of money in return. At a little further diſtance, he met the Schiech's ſon, who was tending goats, and converſed with him for a conſiderable time. M. Niebuhr was ſurpriſed at the ſenſe, gravity, and aſſurance of the child, who ſeemed to be, in no degree, embarraſſed by the preſence of a ſtranger. He invited our traveller very kindly to the houſe, to drink ſome excellent water which had been drawn on that ſame day from the well. He had here an opportunity of remarking the relation between language and manners. A tent, of which the original Arabic name is Cheime, is, however, called by theſe Bedouins, Beit, which ſignifies houſe; becauſe they have no other houſes than tents.

Moſt of their Schiech's friends were diſtinguiſhed by the ſame title of Schiech, although nowiſe ſuperior in their air or dreſs, to the vulgar Arabs. The title, therefore, is ſuppoſed to mean no more among the Arabs, than maſter, or ſir.

Being determined to proceed on to Mount Sinai, they ſet out from the dwelling of their Schiech of Beni-Leghat, on the 12th of September. The country became more mountainous, as they advanced. Yet they paſſed through ſome pleaſant vallies; ſuch were thoſe of Chamela, Dabur, Barak, and Genna. Before reaching the vale of Iſraitu, which, although ſurrounded with rocky and precipitous mountains, diſplays ſome rich and cheerful proſpects, they were obliged to go over another lofty and almoſt inacceſſible hill.

In this vale they met an Arabian lady attended by a ſervant. In reſpect to their Schiech, ſhe quitted the road, alighted from her camel, and paſſed them on foot. Another woman veiled, and walking on foot, who happened to meet them in ſo narrow a part of the valley of Genna, that ſhe could not avoid them, ſat down as they paſſed, and turned her back upon them. M. Niebuhr gave her the ſalutation of peace; but his conductors told him, that ſhe had turned her back in reſpect to them as ſtrangers, and that he had done wrong in ſaluting her.

At the diſtance of nearly ſeven German miles from the dwelling of their Schiech of the tribe of Leghat, they found the abode of their other Schiech of the tribe of Said. The latter was as little willing as the former had been, to paſs ſo near his family without ſeeing them. They were again therefore obliged to leave the highway, and to follow their conductor half a league out of the road. The Arabs ſet up their tents near a tree in the valley of Faran, and left them to amuſe themſelves there, in the beſt manner they could, till they went to ſee their friends in gardens of date-trees, ſcattered over the valley. They were at no great diſtance from their Schiech's camp, which conſiſted of nine or ten tents. They were informed that the ruins of an ancient city were to be ſeen in the neighbourhood. But, when the Arabs found them curious to viſit it, they left them and would give them no further account of it.

The famous valley of Faran, in which they now were, has retained its name unchanged ſince the days of Moſes, being ſtill called the Valley of Faran. Its length is equal to a journey of a day and a half, extending from the foot of Mount Sinai to the Arabic Gulf. In the rainy ſeaſon, it is filled with water; and the inhabitants are then obliged to retire up the hills: it was dry, however, when they paſſed through it. That part of it which they ſaw was far from being fertile, but ſerved as a paſture to goats, camels, and aſſes. The other part is ſaid to be very fertile; and the Arabs told our travellers, that, in the diſtricts to which their Ghaſirs had gone, were many orchards of date-trees, which produced fruit enough to ſuſtain ſome thouſands of people. Fruit muſt, indeed, be very plenteous there: for the Arabs of the valley bring every year to Cairo an aſtoniſhing quantity of dates, raiſins, pears, apples, and other fruits, all of excellent quality.

Some Arabs, who came to ſee them, offered them freſh dates, which were yellow, but ſcarcely ripe. The chief of their Schiech's wives (for he had two) came likewiſe to ſee them, and preſented them with ſome eggs and a chicken. The two wives of the Schiech preſided over two different departments of his affairs. One was placed at ſome diſtance from where our tents happened to be pitched, in order to manage a garden of date-trees. The other was their neighbour, and ſuperintended the cattle and the ſervants. The latter would not enter their tents; but ſat down near enough to converſe with them. She complained of her huſband, who neglected her, ſhe ſaid, for her rival, and ſpent all his time in drawing water in Egypt, or in carrying articles of merchandize from one place to another. The European law, by which every man is confined to one wife, appeared to her admirable. This was the firſt opportunity M. Niebuhr had of converſing, without reſtraint, with a Mahometan female.

They left this place on the 14th of September, and, after travelling two miles further, in the valley of Faran, arrived at the foot of Jibbel-Muſa. Up this mountain they aſcended a mile and a half, and encamped near a large maſs of ſtone, which Moſes is ſaid by the Arabs to have divided into two, as it at preſent appears, with one blow of his rod. Among thoſe mountains they found ſeveral ſprings of excellent water.

The Arabs call Jibbel-Muſa, the Mount of Moſes, all that range of mountains which riſes at the interior extremity of the valley of Faran; and to that part of the range on which the convent of St. Catharine ſtands, they give the name of Tur-Sina. This ſimilarity of name, owing, moſt probably, to tradition, affords ground for preſumption, that the hill which they now reached was the Sinai of the Jews, on which Moſes received the law. It is, indeed, not eaſily to comprehend, how ſuch a multitude of people, as the Jews, who accompanied Moſes out of Egypt, could encamp in thoſe narrow gullies, amidſt frightful and precipitous rocks. But, our hero ſuppoſes there are plains, that he knew not of, on the other ſide of the mountain.

Two German miles and a half up the mountain, ſtands the convent of St. Catharine. The body of this monaſtery is a building one hundred and twenty feet in length, and almoſt as many in breadth. Before it ſtands another ſmall building, in which is the only gate of the convent, which remains always ſhut, except when the biſhop is here. At other times, whatever is introduced within the convent, whether men or proviſions, is drawn up by the roof in a baſket, and with a cord and a pulley. The whole building is of hewn ſtone; which, in ſuch a deſart, muſt have coſt prodigious expence and pains.

Before the convent is a large garden, planted with excellent fruit-trees. The Arabs ſay that the Monks enter it by a ſubterraneous paſſage.

Theſe Greek eccleſiaſtics are not allowed to receive an European without an order from the biſhop of Mount Sinai, who reſides ordinarily at Cairo. He had promiſed our travellers a letter, but had ſet out, without their knowledge, to Conſtantinople. By the favour of the Engliſh ambaſſador at Conſtantinople, they had obtained another letter from a depoſed patriarch, who had reſided three years in the convent of St. Catharine. Believing that this letter might be ſufficient to gain them admittance, they preſented it to thoſe clergymen, through a ſmall chink in the wall. They took ſome time to conſider, and, after making them wait long, let them know that they could not receive them, as they had not a letter from their biſhop.

During this parley, many Arabs, who had obſerved the Europeans from the neighbouring hills, gathered round them. They are paid a certain ſum for every ſtranger that is received into the convent. When the biſhop happens to be preſent, the gate is opened, and the convent muſt entertain all the Arabs who come in. This cuſtom is very burthenſome to thoſe poor monks, who have nothing but alms to live upon; and have their proviſions, which they are obliged to bring from Cairo, often ſtolen by the way. The Arabs are in general very dangerous neighbours. They often fire upon the convent from the adjacent rocks. They ſeize the monks whenever they happen to find them without the walls of the monaſtery, and refuſe to releaſe them, without a conſiderable ranſom.

Not to occaſion uneaſineſs to thoſe monks, our travellers retired, and encamped at a quarter of a league's diſtance from the monaſtery. As a recompence for their diſcretion, they immediately received a preſent of fruits, which were highly acceptable.

Our hero wiſhed to chooſe from among the Arabs who had gathered about them, a guide to conduct him to Sinai. This, however, their Ghaſirs would not permit; which occaſioned a quarrel among them and the other Arabs. Next day, however, their Schiechs brought him an Arab, whom they qualified with the title of Schiech of Mount Sinai, to procure him ſome profit from them, by the right which he then arrogated to himſelf of attending ſtrangers who came to viſit the mountain.

Under the conduct of this newly created lord of Sinai, with their other Schiechs, our hero attempted, on this ſame day, to clamber to the ſummit of that mountain. It is exceedingly ſteep. The Greeks have cut a flight of ſteps up the rock. Pococke reckons three thouſand of theſe ſteps to the top of the mountain, or rather bare, pointed rock.

Five hundred ſteps above the convent, they found a charming ſpring, which, by a little pains, might be improved into a very agreeable ſpot. A thouſand ſteps higher ſtands a chapel dedicated to the Bleſſed Virgin; and five hundred above this, two other chapels, ſituated in a plain, which the traveller enters by two ſmall gates of maſon-work. Upon this plain are two trees, under which, at high feſtivals, the Arabs are regaled at the expence of the Greeks. His Mahometan guides, imitating the practices which they had ſeen the pilgrims obſerve, kiſſed the images, and repeated their prayers in the chapels.

CHAP. III.

Their Return from Mount Sinai—Meet a young Arab drunk—Continue their Journey—Find ſome Inſcriptions coarſely engraven—Arrive again at Suez—Recovery of Mr. Baurenfiend—An Attempt to examine the Weſtern Side of the Gulf—Unſucceſsful—A ſtrange Appearance—Remarks—Departure from Suez—Bad Accommodations of the Veſſel—Unſkilfulneſs of the Seamen—Weigh Anchor—The Harbour of Tor—Mr. Forſkal viſits the Valley of Elin—A falſe Report—Make for Jidda—Veſſel in danger of being burnt—The Women corrected—An Eclipſe of the Sun—Approach the Iſle of Keſſani—Joy on the Occaſion—Conſiderable Danger owing to the Pilot's Drunkenneſs—Arrive at Jambo—Some of the Paſſengers land—The reſt proceed on their Voyage—Supply of Proviſions at Rabogh—Arrive at Jidda—Deſcription thereof—Remarks, &c.

SEPTEMBER the 16th, in the afternoon, they deſcended Jibbel-Muſa, and paſſed the night at the bottom of that cliffy mountain, at the opening into the valley of Faran. Next day, after advancing three miles through the vale, they halted near the dwelling of their Schiech of the tribe of Said.

Their Ghaſirs left them again, and went to ſee their friends in the gardens of date-trees. During their abſence, our travellers had met with a young Arab, riding on a dromedary, who had made himſelf drunk in one of thoſe gardens. Underſtanding that they were Europeans and Chriſtians, he began to pour out abuſive language againſt them, much in the ſame ſtrain in which an inſolent and ill-bred young man in Europe might perhaps wantonly abuſe a Jew. From this incident, they judged that the Bedouins uſed wine. They could not help remarking, at the ſame time, that the law of Mahomet, with great wiſdom, forbids the uſe of ſtrong liquors, as they have ſuch tendency to warm the paſſions, which, with the inhabitants of hot climates, have naturally but too much violence. In the cities, indeed, many of the Mahometans are in the habit of getting drunk. But, either for ſhame, or for fear of puniſhment, they never appear drunk in public; and take this vicious indulgence only in private, in their own houſes. Except that young man, they never ſaw another Mahometan brutally drunk, during all their travels.

Their Ghaſirs returned, and they continued their journey on the 20th of the month. Next day M. Niebuhr advanced before his fellow-travellers, on purpoſe again to view the mountain. The next day they had an opportunity of ſeeing a part of the road which they had paſſed by night, when travelling to Jibbel-Muſa. In this place, near a defile, named Om-er-ridg-lein, they found ſome inſcriptions in unknown characters, which had been mentioned to M. Niebuhr at Cairo. They are coarſely engraven, apparently with ſome pointed inſtrument of iron, in the rock, without order or regularity. Their Arabs thought the time loſt which was ſpent in copying thoſe inſcriptions.

On the 25th of September, they arrived again at Suez. Mr. Baurenfeind was much recovered. Before they could reach the city, they had to croſs the ſame arm of the ſea, over which they had been ferried when they ſet out on their journey; but they could find no boat on the Eaſtern ſide. Perceiving, however, that the tide was ebbing, they ventured to ford this part of the gulf. They ſucceeded happily, a little north from the ruins of Kolſum. Their camels walked ſteadily; and the Arabs who waded, were only in water to the knees. This was perhaps the firſt time that any Europeans attempted to paſs here in this manner. This attempt proved that the waters in the gulf are much influenced by the tides, and that in the ebb, the Red Sea may be ſafely paſſed on foot.

After M. Niebuhr's return to Suez, he was deſirous to examine alſo the weſtern ſide of the gulf, and the adjoining hills. He could prevail with no perſon to accompany him in ſo dangerous an expedition, for, at the ſmalleſt diſtance from the city, the paſſenger is in no leſs danger of being robbed, than in the deſart. At length, however, an Arab undertook to be his guide. But he trembled at the ſight of every human being that they met; and indeed thoſe whom they met, ſeemed to be no leſs afraid of them. Thus teazed and vexed as he was, our hero could make but few intereſting obſervations in theſe petty excurſions.

He now, for the firſt time, obſerved an appearance with which he was ſingularly ſtruck: but which became afterwards familiar to him. An Arab, whom he ſaw approaching at a diſtance, upon a camel, appeared to move through the air, with the gigantic bulk of a tower; although he was travelling along the ſand like themſelves. Several travellers mention this error of viſion, which is owing to a peculiar refraction produced in theſe torrid climates, by vapours differing greatly in their nature, from thoſe which fill the air in temperate regions.

M. Niebuhr could learn nothing certain concerning the canal which is ſaid to have joined the Nile with the Arabic gulf. No Arab would conduct him into that part of the country through which it is probable that the canal might paſs; becauſe the tribe who inhabit it, were at variance with the inhabitants of Suez. In the neighbourhood of Suez, he could find no trace of any canal; unleſs the valley of Moſbeiha, between Bir-Suez and the city, may be regarded as ſuch. After the rains, a conſiderable quantity of water remains ſtagnate in this vale, which the inhabitants draw for uſe: and when the waters are gone off, it is ſoon covered with graſs.

During their abſence, ſeveral ſmall caravans had ſucceſſively arrived at Suez; and the arrival of the great caravan from Cairo, followed ſoon after their return from Mount Sinai. Although from pirates, properly ſo called, there is little to be feared in the Arabic gulf, yet, ſo unſkilful are the mariners in theſe latitudes, that they dare not venture to any diſtance from the coaſts. This timorous mode of ſailing might expoſe a ſingle veſſel to the robbery of the Arabs; to avoid which, theſe ſhips ſail in little fleets; four always ſetting out together, that they may join to defend themſelves.

After the arrival of the caravans, Suez ſeemed more populous than Cairo; and as ſuch a multitude could not long find ſubſiſtence there, all were eager to ſet out without delay. M. Niebuhr was recommended to the maſters of two ſhips that were to make the voyage. Although now accuſtomed to live with the Mahometans, yet, in their paſſage to Jidda, they ſuffered a degree of uneaſineſs, which they had not felt upon occaſions of greater danger. Some Greeks had hinted to them, that the Muſſulmans thought Chriſtians unworthy of making this voyage in the company of the pilgrims who were journeying to the holy city; and that upon this account they ſhould not go abroad with ſhoes upon their feet. Some of the pilgrims, indeed, ſeemed to look upon them little leſs unfavourably than a Capuchin going to Jeruſalem would regard a Proteſtant. But, to be obliged to walk without ſhoes upon the deck, was not an humiliating diſtinction, confined to Chriſtians: it was a reſtraint to which all on board were ſubjected. Nobody in thoſe veſſels but muſt walk upon deck without ſhoes.

To avoid the company of the Mahometans, they had hired an apartment which they thought the beſt. In a chamber oppoſite to them, lodged a rich black eunuch, who was going to Mecca; and, uſeleſs as it could not but be to him, was accompanied with his ſeraglio, like a Turkiſh lord. In a large apartment under theirs, were forty women and ſlaves, with their children, whoſe crying and noiſe gave them no little diſturbance. Every one of the other paſſengers had hired a place upon the deck, where he remained with his bales and parcels around him, having only a ſmall ſpace vacant in the middle, where he might dreſs his victuals, ſit, and ſleep. Their Greek ſailors, who were very unſkilful, were perplexed by theſe incumbrances, and could not go about to manage the veſſel, without trampling upon the goods of the merchants, which produced endleſs diſputes.

Their veſſel, although large enough to have carried at leaſt forty guns, was very deeply laden. Beſides her own freight, ſhe towed after her three large ſhallops, and one ſmall; the three larger filled with paſſengers, horſes, ſheep, and even women of pleaſure.

The maſter, an honeſt merchant from Cairo, whoſe name was Schoreibe, would not have been diſtinguiſhed among the ſeamen of Europe. He took upon himſelf the taſk of pilot to the veſſel; but was indeed a very unſkilful pilot. Between the two compaſſes, where European navigators ſet a light, he had placed a large magnet, to reſtore, imperceptibly, as he ſaid, their magnetic virtue to the needles. It was with difficulty that M. Niebuhr perſuaded him to remove it.

With ſuch ſeamen, however, they were obliged to ſail; although they durſt not venture out into the open ſea, but coaſted round the ſhores, at the riſk of being daſhed in pieces upon jutting rocks, or ſtranded upon banks of coral. They had paid the maſter for their paſſage, immediately after agreeing for it. But, according to the cuſtom of the country, they were obliged to give an acknowledgement to the ſailors before going on board, which, in other places, is not expected till paſſengers be leaving the veſſel.

To avoid any diſagreeable encounters with the other paſſengers, our adventurers had taken care to go firſt on board. They had yet ſeveral days to wait, till the governor ſhould inſpect the ſhips, to ſee whether they were not overladen. This duty he never fails to perform; for a ſum of money is payable to him from each veſſel, upon the occaſion, which conſtitutes a part of his revenue.

At length, after all theſe delays, the four ſhips weighed anchor about midnight, on the 10th of October. The ſide upon which they paſſed would have been dangerous, if the wind had not been favourable; for it is covered all over with coral rocks. The ſhips caſt anchor every night; and they had then liberty to go on ſhore, if they choſe to run the hazard, in order to ſee any object of curioſity.

The harbour, in which they happened to caſt anchor, was once a place of ſome conſideration: but the ſmall fort of Kalla and Tor is now ruinous, and without a garriſon. In its neighbourhood, however, are ſome remarkable villages, the inhabitants of which, as of all this barren coaſt, live by fiſhing.

The inhabitants of Beled-en-Naſſara are Greek Chriſtians. In the neighbourhood is a convent, but only a ſingle eccleſiaſtic in it. At Bir is a well, the water of which is better than at Naba, but not equal to what the Arabs bring upon camels from the hills. All the pilots who ſail between Suez and Jidda, live in the village of Jebil. Each of theſe pilots receive five hundred crowns for the voyage; and gains ſomething, beſides, in the courſe of it, by inſtructing young perſons who accompany him, to learn his art, which conſiſts merely in diſtinguiſhing where the ſand-banks and beds of coral lie.

Mr. Forſkal went on ſhore to viſit the pretended Valley of Elim. The eccleſiaſtic belonging to the Greek convent, ſent a guide to conduct him thither. He found it overgrown with date-trees. As he did not immediately return, a report aroſe in the veſſel, that he had been detained by the Arabs, for attempting to take draughts of their hills. Some merchants, who were alſo Janiſſaries, ſet inſtantly out, to relieve and bring him back. Happily, the report turned out to have been falſe; and Mr. Forſkal returned, without having met with any unpleaſant accident.

They continued, till they had ſailed as far as Ras-Mahommed, to caſt anchor every night. But, between that cape and the coaſt of Arabia, they had to croſs the Red Sea at its full breadth. The Europeans think this the ſafeſt route, as there is not, through the whole, one rock on which a ſhip can be wrecked: but the Turks think themſelves undone whenever they loſe ſight of land.

So many misfortunes happen, indeed, from the ignorance of their ſeamen, that they have reaſon for their fears. Out of four veſſels that had ſet out rather too late in the foregoing year, two had periſhed in theſe latitudes.

In their paſſage, they found themſelves in danger of a worſe misfortune than ſhipwreck. The females, who were lodged under them, more than once ſuffered linen, which they were drying, to catch fire, in conſequence of which the veſſel muſt have been burnt, if our adventurers had not been alarmed by their ſcreams, and haſtened to their aſſiſtance. The ſecond time when this happened, their captain was enraged, and ſent down an inferior officer into the ſeraglio, to beat the women for their careleſſneſs. The infliction of this puniſhment produced, at firſt, no ſmall noiſe among them; but it was followed by four and twenty hours of a ſweet ſilence. Thoſe women were indeed extremely troubleſome and indiſcreet. Hearing their voices ſo very near them, our hero was tempted to look through a chink, and ſaw three or four of them naked and bathing.

Nothing remarkable appeared upon the track by which they ſailed, unleſs a few ſmall and deſart iſlands, and the ſummits of ſome diſtant hills. The laſt objects that remained within their view upon the coaſt of Egypt, were the famous mountains of emeralds, called by the Arabs Jibbel Sumrud.

On the 17th of October, an eclipſe of the ſun happened, which had been foretold to the captain by Mr. Forſkal. He ſhewed this phænomenon through glaſſes to the captain and the principal merchants, with which they were much pleaſed; for, among the Mahometans, a perſon who can predict an eclipſe, paſſes for an univerſal ſcholar, and eſpecially for a very ſkilful phyſician. Mr. Forſkal was conſulted by ſeveral of the paſſengers, who fancied themſelves ſuddenly ſick. He mentioned ſome harmleſs medicines to them, and recommeded exerciſe and a peculiar regimen. At length, one of the pilgrims complaining that he could not ſee by night, he facetiouſly adviſed him to light a candle. This humourous preſcription did him better ſervice than the moſt profound ſkill in medicine could have done. Thoſe Muſſulmans were pleaſed to find him thus accommodate himſelf to their manners, and became very fond of him.

When they came near to the ſmall iſle of Kaſſani, the Turks began to expreſs their joy at having eſcaped the dangers of ſuch a paſſage, and having ſo nearly reached the coaſt of Arabia. Cannons and muſkets were fired; the ſhip and the boats were illuminated with lamps and lanterns; and all was exultation and jollity. The ſailors went round with a box, aſking a dole from the paſſengers; every one gave ſome trifle; and they then threw into the ſea,—not the money,—but the box in which they had collected it.

Continuing their courſe, they incurred conſiderable danger, in doubling a cape ſurrounded with banks of coral, becauſe their pilot was drunk. He had frequently aſked for brandy, on pretence that he could not ſee the hills, or the outline of the coaſt, unleſs his ſight were cleared by the drinking of a little ſtrong liquor. They had refuſed him, for fear of giving offence to the other Muſſulmans: but they ſoon ſaw that they are not ſo ſcrupulous, for the captain ſent to them every morning for a quarter of a bottle of brandy for his pilot. The Greek merchants might perhaps have made him drunk, by adding to the doſe which he received daily from the Europeans.

They arrived ſoon after at Jambo, a walled town near the ſea, and having a ſafe harbour. Not having ſeen a ſingle houſe ſince they had left Tor, they felt no ſmall pleaſure at the ſight of Jambo.

Such as meant to take Medina, on their way to Mecca, went on ſhore here. Three of their party alſo landed, and took their ſabres in their hands, like the other paſſengers. An inhabitant of Jambo, ſuppoſing them Turks, gave them the ſalutation of peace, and entered familiarly into converſation with them. But learning that they were Franks, he became vexed at having profaned his form of ſalutation, by addreſſing it to Chriſtians, and paſſionately railed at the inſolent audacity of theſe infidels, who dared to wear arms in Arabia. But the other Arabs not ſeconding his complaint, their fellow-travellers came on board, without meeting with any other unpleaſant accident.

After ſtopping for one day in this harbour, they proceeded upon their voyage, retiring by degrees from the coaſt, near which many beds of coral rocks were ſcattered. They had an opportunity of ſeeing the town of Maſtura, which ſtands at the foot of a hill of the ſame name. They doubled cape Wardan; and anchored near Rabogh, a permanent habitation of a body of Arabs, who live there in tents. They purchaſed from them a plentiful ſtock of proviſions.

Pilgrims, in their firſt journey to Mecca, are obliged to aſſume the Ihhram immediately after paſſing Cape Wardan, if the ſtate of their health permit. This is a piece of linen, which is wrapped round the loins. The reſt of the body is naked; and in this ſtate they proceed through the reſt of the pilgrimage, till they have viſited the Kaaba. The only other garment they are ſuffered to wear, is a linen cloth upon the ſhoulders, which hangs down in the faſhion of a ſcarf. But many, under pretext of indiſpoſition, retained their ordinary dreſs. Others, more devout, aſſumed the Ihhram, although they had been formerly at Mecca; ſo that by the evening, they ſaw moſt of thoſe Muſſulmans dreſſed in a garb different from what they had worn in the morning.

On the 29th of October, they arrived in the harbour of Jidda. The ſame reaſon which had induced them to enter the ſhip before the other paſſengers, diſpoſed them to remain in it till they had all gone on ſhore. Every one was eager to get away with his goods as ſoon as poſſible, and to conceal them as much as he could from the officers of the cuſtoms. They were particularly at pains to conceal their ready money, which pays two and a half per cent. duty. One of the paſſengers failed in this attempt; for his purſe burſt as he entered the boat, and his crowns fell into the ſea. Thoſe who defraud the cuſtoms, ſuffer no confiſcation of their goods upon detection; they are only laughed at. In ſeveral places in Turkey, thoſe detected in theſe practices are compelled to pay double duties.

All who had been this way in the former year, and were now returning from the city, complained bitterly of the harſhneſs with which they had been treated by the cuſtom-houſe officers. Our travellers were therefore perplexed about their ready money, not that they were unwilling to pay the duties, but they were afraid of being plundered by the Arabs. As the Mahometans are unacquainted with the uſe of letters of exchange, they had been obliged to carry with them in Venetian ſequins, the whole ſum that they intended to expend on their journey. After various thoughts, they reſolved to put their money in the bottom of their medicine-cheſt, reſerving only two hundred ſequins, where they expected the officers of the cuſtoms to ſearch. The ſtratagem ſucceeded; and no perſon offered to move their medicines.

We entered Jidda under ſtrong apprehenſions of ill-treatment from its inhabitants. Recollecting with what contempt Chriſtians are regarded at Cairo, and how their companions had been inſulted by the Arab at Jambo; they feared, that they might experience ſtill more of the inhoſpitable inſolence of the Muſſulmans, as they approached nearer to their holy cities. But they found themſelves agreeably diſappointed. The inhabitants of Jidda, who are much accuſtomed to Chriſtian merchants in the European dreſs, were not ſtruck with any thing ſtrange in their appearance, and did not ſeem to take much notice of them. They went freely to the coffee-houſes and markets, without ſuffering any inſults. But they underſtood, that none except Muſſulmans, are permitted to paſs through the gate that opens towards Mecca, or even to approach it; and kept therefore carefully at a diſtance from that gate, leaſt they might be diſcovered.

Their letters of recommendation were of great uſe to them. Mr. Gæhler had been perſonally acquainted with the Pacha of Jidda, at Conſtantinople, and had accordingly recommended them to him. They had letters from two conſiderable merchants at Cairo to two of the principal merchants in Jidda. A poor Schiech had given them one to the Kiaja, the Pacha's lieutenant: a recommendation from which they had not expected much, but which was, nevertheleſs, of more ſervice to them than all the reſt. This Schiech was ſecretary to one of the principal members of the academy of Jamea-el-Aſhar, at Cairo. He had been born in European Turkey, and having often heard of the ſuperiority of the European Chriſtians in matters of ſcience, came frequently to ſee our travellers, and was eager to receive information from them. He was a truly worthy man, perfectly free from ſuperſtition, and a friend to the whole human race. M. Niebuhr and Mr. Forſkal inſtructed him in the elements of botany and aſtronomy. He was very uſeful to them in the Arabic language, and explaining to them many things of which they muſt otherwiſe have remained ignorant. In his youth, he had given the Kiaja ſome leſſons. He had written, without M. Niebuhr's knowledge, by the laſt caravan, to prepoſſeſs his old friend in our hero's favour: and gave him beſides, this letter.

As they had not time to deliver all their letters with their own hands, they ſent thoſe to the two merchants by their ſervant, in hopes that they might find them lodgings, but when the people underſtood that there were ſo many, they excuſed themſelves, alleging that it was not poſſible to find a houſe large enough. Had they been fewer, they might have taken chambers in the public Kan. Their Greek ſervant, when they were thus at a loſs for lodgings, applied to one of his countrymen, who was goldſmith to the Sheriffe of Mecca, and in great credit with the principal men in the city. This goldſmith informed him, that the Kiaja, having had previous intimation of their coming, had given him orders to do them any ſervice in his power. He even offered them the uſe of his own houſe for a night, and promiſed them a whole houſe to themſelves the next day.

Upon receiving this notice, they went inſtantly to deliver the Schiech's letter to the Kiaja; who received them with great politeneſs. They went frequently afterwards to ſee him; and in their anſwers to his queſtions concerning the cuſtoms and manners of Europe, they communicated to him and his friends, more juſt and favourable ideas of the Europeans, than they ſeemed to have before entertained. The Arabs conſider them in the ſame light in which they regard the Chineſe. They eſteem themſelves the more enlightened and ingenious people; and think they do the Europeans great honour, when they rank them in the ſecond place. The Kiaja was fond of converſing about aſtronomy. Mr. Forſkal, who often viſited him, perſuaded him to form a garden for plants near his own houſe, and to bring from the interior parts of the country, the ſhrub which produces the balm in Mecca. The Arabs looked upon this as a happy thought; and the more ſo, becauſe the balm is not to be obtained pure at Jidda, but is commonly corrupted with an intermixture of extraneous ſubſtances, before it comes there.

After a few days, they delivered their letter of recommendation to the Pacha. He had alſo ſome knowledge of aſtronomy, and wiſhed to ſee their inſtruments. He thought them better than thoſe uſed in the Eaſt, and ſhewed them to a Schiech, a learned Turk, whom he had with him. The Pacha and the Schiech ſpoke no language but the Turkiſh, to which M. Niebuhr was a ſtranger. But they had enough of interpreters; and, among others, three French and Italian renegadoes in the ſervice of the Pacha. Yet they knew not the terms of ſcience, either in their native language, or in the Turkiſh. Our hero could not, of conſequence, make himſelf well underſtood by the Pacha; and their converſation upon theſe ſubjects was not long nor profound. With the Kiaja he was obliged to ſpeak Arabic, which he found not a little difficult, being ſtill ignorant of the terms of ſcience in that language.

On the 1ſt of November, after hiring a houſe, they had their effects carried to the cuſtom-houſe, before they removed them into the city, and were happy to find, that they were not the leſs kindly dealt with for being known to the Kiaja. That officer ſat in an elevated ſituation, with his clerks around him, and directed the goods of the merchants to be examined, piece by piece; but he was ſatisfied with opening their trunks, and did not make them be emptied. The officers of the cuſtoms expect a gratuity when they behave with diſcretion. The Sheriffe's goldſmith, who had taken upon himſelf the direction of their expence, gave them a trifle in their name publicly.

The news of the arrival of a party of Europeans, among whom was an aſtronomer, ſoon reached Mecca. The brother of the reigning Sheriffe was at that time advancing with an army to attack the city. With the Mahometans, an aſtronomer is always deemed an aſtrologer. The Sheriffe, therefore, directed his Greek goldſmith to inquire of M. Niebuhr whether he ſhould remain in poſſeſſion of the ſovereign power, or be compelled to give place to his brother? Our hero excuſed himſelf from returning an anſwer, as being ignorant of future events, and as cultivating aſtronomy only to improve the art of navigation. But Mr. Van Haven replied, that, of the two brothers, he who bore the greater reſemblance to Haſſan, the founder of the family, ſhould remain victorious. This reſponſe turned out the more happily, that the reigning Sheriffe was enabled to maintain himſelf upon the throne.

A nobleman in Jidda aſked M. Niebuhr to diſcover to him the thief who had ſtolen two hundred ſequins which he had loſt. He alleged the ſame excuſe as in the former caſe. The nobleman then applied to a famous Schiech, who was a better aſtrologer. The Schiech gathered all his ſervants, ranged them in a line, and, after a long prayer, made each of them take into his mouth a bit of folded paper, telling them, that they who were innocent might ſwallow it with ſafety, but that the guilty perſon would be choaked by it. They all ſwallowed the paper, ſave one, who, being thus ſurpriſed and embarraſſed, confeſſed the theft, and made reſtitution.

Jidda was ſurrounded with walls by the ſultan El Guri, ſovereign of Egypt, in the year 1514, to protect it from the Portugueſe, then beginning to become formidable on the Red Sea. Thoſe walls are ſtill ſtanding, but are now ſo ruinous, that a perſon may, in many places, enter over them on horſeback. The bridge is in an equally defenceleſs ſtate; a ruinous battery, with one diſmounted cannon, is all that remains to ſhelter it. Some cannons before the palace of the Pacha, are good for nothing but to return the ſalute of ſhips which enter the harbour. This palace is but an indifferent building, like the houſes of the other Pachas through the Ottoman empire. In the city, however, are ſeveral fine buildings of coral ſtone. But the other houſes are ſlight wooden fabrics, like the ordinary dwellings of the Arabs through the country. The city is entirely deſtitute of water. The inhabitants have none to drink, but what is collected by the Arabs, in reſervoirs among the hills, and brought by them from thence upon camels.

All of diſtinction here dreſs nearly as the Turks in Cairo; but the poorer ſort wear only a ſhirt without breeches. The Bedouins in the neighbourhood wear only the Ibhram upon their loins. The dreſs of the women among the lower ranks is the ſame which is worn by the Arabian females in general; large drawers, a flowing ſhirt, and a veil. Many of the poorer people are employed in fiſhing, by which they ſeem to earn but a bare ſubſiſtence.

The country lying immediately around this city, is ſandy and barren. If one may believe tradition, theſe regions have undergone no change ſince the creation; for the tomb of Eve is ſtill ſhewn in a ſpot at no great diſtance from the ſea. But, M. Niebuhr remarked ſome ſure indications of the ſea having receded from the ſurface of the land here as well as in other places. At a certain diſtance from the ſhore, are hills entirely compoſed of coral-rock, and having a perfect reſemblance to the banks of coral lying along the coaſt.

As he was walking by the harbour, he had an opportunity of obſerving a ſingular practice, which the Arabs uſe for taking up wild ducks. The perſon who is in ſearch of the game, ſtrips, puts ſea-weeds upon his head, and approaches the bird. The duck, not being alarmed at the ſight of the ſea-weeds, ſtirs not till the Arab ſeizes it by the feet.

Jidda has always been a part of the dominions of the Sheriffe of Mecca. A Pacha is ſent by the Turkiſh Sultan to this city, but he is not the abſolute ſovereign, for the ſupreme authority is ſhared between the Sheriffe and the Turkiſh Governor, which latter is changed every year, and ſometimes refuſes to obey the Pacha. Though the trade of Jidda is conſiderable, yet this city is no more than a mart between Egypt and India. No money is coined in this province; the ſpecie current is all foreign, and the ſame as at Conſtantinople and Cairo.

CHAP. IV.

Departure from Jidda—Deſcription of the Veſſel in which they take their Paſſage—Their Voyage—Anchor near Ghunfude—Paſs within Sight of Hali—Interview with ſome Arabs—Stop at a Mountain called Kanembel—Arrive at Loheia—Adventures there—Deſcription of the Place—Inhabitants, &c.—Departure—Route by Tehama—Curſory Obſervations.

IT being their intention to proceed immediately to Yemen, nothing detained them at Jidda but the prevalence of the north wind, which kept back the arrival of the ſhips going thither for coffee; for there were none elſe with which they could continue their voyage to the ſouth of the Arabic gulf. At laſt, ſome of thoſe veſſels arrived in the beginning of December; and they were adviſed to take their paſſage in a ſhip from Maſkate bound to Hodeida, for a cargo of coffee.

They went in haſte to ſee this veſſel, but were not a little ſurpriſed to find it more like a hogſhead than a ſhip. It was only ſeven fathoms long, by three in breadth; it had no deck; its planks were extremely thin, and ſeemed to be only nailed together, but not pitched. The captain wore nothing but a linen cloth upon his loins; and his ſailors, who were nine in number, and all black ſlaves from Africa or Malabar, had nothing to cover their nakedneſs, but about an hand's-breadth of linen, bound upon their haunches with a cord. Being perſuaded not to ſtickle at appearances, they agreed with the maſter, for their paſſage to Hodeida; as the Arabs of Maſkate are eſteemed good ſailors, and manage their ſails like European mariners; but the ſubjects of the Imam are very unſkilful navigators, and uſe mats for ſails, which it is very difficult to manage.

Their firſt intention had been, to go ſtraight by ſea to Mokha, as they hoped that ſome Engliſh veſſels might be found there. But they were told, that this paſſage would be extremely tedious, and that they might travel more agreeably by land, and could meet with no moleſtation in the dominions of the Imam. However, the danger of living among Arabs, whom they repreſented to themſelves ſuch as thoſe whom they had ſeen in the deſart, ſtill dwelt upon their imagination. But their friends again aſſured them, that their fears were groundleſs; and they accordingly determined to land at Loheia, or rather at Hodeida, as they ſhould thus begin the ſooner to traverſe Arabia the happy. The Kiaja gave them letters to the Dolas or governors of Loheia and Hodeida: and the merchants to whom they had been recommended, gave them others to ſome of the principal merchants in thoſe two cities. The Pacha gave orders, that their baggage ſhould paſs unexamined. They had freighted the veſſel for themſelves alone; but yet they found it laden with goods. The maſter excuſed this by telling them, that theſe were abſolutely neceſſary for ballaſt. A ſmall ſpace was however allotted to each of them, which they found ſpread with a ſtraw mat, intended equally for a ſeat and a bed upon which they might ſleep if they could. Bales of goods occupied every place elſe, except one ſmall corner, which ſerved as a kitchen. It was impoſſible therefore, to walk or take the leaſt exerciſe. Mr. Cramer loſt his watch the firſt night between the boards and a mat of branches of trees, which was ſpread all over the bottom of the veſſel, to keep the goods dry. It was found undamaged, when they reached Loheia; a circumſtance which proves that the timber of thoſe veſſels is more cloſely joined than one would at firſt imagine.

They ſet out from Jidda on the 13th of December, and their captain followed the practice of caſting anchor every night; although the banks of coral are leſs numerous in the ſouthern, than in the northern part of the Arabic gulf. If they had ſeen few towns or villages between Suez and Jidda, they ſaw not more between Jidda and Loheia.

Their voyage was uniformly ſafe and pleaſant. They obſerved ſome flying fiſhes, which the Arabs call ſea-locuſts. On the ſixth day of their voyage, they overtook a veſſel belonging to Hodeida, which had ſailed from Jidda three days before them. This was an inſtance of the ſlow ſailing of the ſhips of Yemen, whoſe mat-ſails receive ſo little wind, that often the Arabs can ſcarce get out of the harbour. They ſaw alſo ſeveral ſmall veſſels, which proceeded in ſuch a manner, as to ſhew themſelves to be managed by men of much more ſpirit than the Turkiſh ſailors.

After ſeven days ſailing, they anchored near Ghunfude, a conſiderable city, but conſiſting merely of huts. It belongs to the Sheriffe of Mecca, and is governed by one of his officers, who lives in a ſmall iſle, at ſome diſtance from the city. He is obliged to paſs daily between the iſle and the town, in order to attend the receipt of the cuſtoms. All the ſhips which are employed in carrying coffee to Jidda, are obliged to anchor here, and pay a duty to the Sheriffe. They are under no neceſſity of ſtopping on their return; if the crew, however, wiſh to go on ſhore, they may obtain a general permiſſion for the payment of two crowns.

The next morning after their departure from Ghunfude, where they ſtayed only one day, they paſſed within ſight of Hali, where the Sheriffe of Mecca keeps a garriſon. This city is upon the confines of his dominions, and upon the border of the province of Hedjas. The neighbouring Arabs belong to Yemen.

As their captain needed proviſions, they had an early opportunity of forming acquaintance with thoſe independent Arabs who live between the dominions of the two Sheriffes of Mecca and Abu-Ariſch. They are governed by Schiechs of their own, and profeſs a religion which ſeems to have been that of their anceſtors before Mahomet aroſe. They had heard it mentioned, that thoſe people have a ſtrong inclination to appear in the clothes of travellers: in imitation of their ſhip-captain, therefore our adventurers dreſſed themſelves modeſtly and ſimply, in indifferent ſhirts, and in this guiſe went on ſhore unarmed. Some men immediately advanced to meet them; inſtead of a turban they wore only a ſtring upon the head, to confine the air; and a cloth upon the loins was all the reſt of their dreſs. Conceiving the behaviour of our Europeans to be expreſſive of ſuſpicion and diſtruſt, they threw down their lances, and told them that they had nothing to fear.

As they wiſhed to purchaſe proviſions, they led them to their tents. As they approached, two women came out to meet them, and reſpectfully kiſſed the arms of the Schiechs, who kiſſed their heads in return. Theſe women wore no veils upon their faces; their eyes were blackened with lead ore; and they had black ſpots impreſſed, as ornaments upon their brow, cheeks, and chin. Thoſe beauties, whoſe complexion was a yellowiſh brown, and who were almoſt naked. immediately aſked them for Kochhel, to blacken their eyes, and for Elheune, to dye their nails yellow. They were not a little mortified, that they had forgotten to provide themſelves with thoſe articles, by which they might have been enabled to gratify the eagerneſs of thoſe fair ones for dreſs, and to ſupply them with powerful aids to their charms. They regaled our heroes with milk and butter, which had been kept in goat ſkins, and gave them bad bread to eat with theſe dainties. They were not diſpleaſed at their paying them before-hand. Although wanderers in the deſart, they ſeemed to our people more civilized than moſt of the other Bedouin tribes.

The next day, after this interview, they halted near a mountain called Konembel, ſituate in the middle of the ſea, and ſaid by the Arabs to have been originally a volcano. It may poſſibly be the remains of that burning iſland which is placed by Arrian and Ptolemy in theſe latitudes. They ſaw, likewiſe, not far off, the city of Geſan, ſituate upon a tongue of land, on the coaſt; but they did not venture to approach it; for the Sheriffe to whom it belongs bears the character of being inhoſpitable to ſtrangers.

They arrived in the harbour of Loheia, December 29, and caſt anchor within a league of the town.

Dola, or Emir, is the title which the Arabs give to the governors of cities. He of Loheia was an Emir, and his name was Farhan. He was a native of Africa, and entirely black; but had been brought into Arabia in his youth, and ſold to a man of rank, who was ſince dead, after having occupied one of the firſt offices in the ſervice of the Imam. He had given young Farhan a good education, and had obtained for him a ſmall office, in which he gave ſo much ſatisfaction, that his merit ſoon raiſed him to be Dola of a conſiderable city.

Our travellers found him to poſſeſs the dignified politeneſs of a nobleman, the ſtricteſt integrity, and the candid benevolence of a true friend to mankind. They explained to him their ſituation; and told him that they were Europeans, and wiſhed to go by Hodeida to Mokha, where they hoped to find ſome Engliſh ſhips, in which they might take their paſſage to India; but being ſtrangers to the country through which they were to travel, had brought a letter to him from the Kiaja of Jidda, and another from one of the principal merchants in Jidda to Mæchſen-el-Makkawiſch, the chief merchant in Loheia. The Emir had known a good many Europeans, or Franks, at Mokha, but had never before ſeen any arrayed in the garb of the Eaſt, which is, however, univerſally worn by the Oriental Chriſtians. The Muſſulmans regard Chriſtians with greater eſteem than thoſe of any other religious community except their own. When they were aſked, therefore, by Emir Farhan, whether they were Franks or Nazarites, they replied that they were both; fearing that he might perhaps take the Europeans for Pagans. Mæchſen, the merchant was then ſick; but the Emir ſent for his clerk to receive the letter addreſſed to him.

Hitherto, this governor had known no Europeans but India merchants. He was ſurpriſed, when he underſtood, from the letters, that one of our travellers was a phyſician; another in ſearch of plants: and a third, an obſerver of ſtars. Struck with this ſingularity, and ſuppoſing that they might not be in very great haſte, he propoſed to them to ſtay ſome time at Loheia, offering to ſend them to Mokha upon his own camels. Mæſchen, the merchant, who needed a phyſician, earneſtly invited them, at the ſame time, to take up their lodgings in one of his houſes.

They were delighted thus to find the Arabs more civilized the further they proceeded from Egypt, and to meet with ſo polite a reception among the people who were the objects of their inquiries. They were ſtill more delighted to find that people themſelves contributing to afford them opportunities of tranſverſing their country unſuſpected. To hide their joy at the propoſal, they expreſſed their fears of danger in travelling ſo near the ſeat of the war between the Schiech of Mekkrami and the Sheriffe of Abu-Ariſch. But the Emir aſſured them, that they ſhould be ſafe from all danger at Loheia, and might travel in full ſecurity through the whole territories of his maſter the Imam.

They no longer heſitated to quit the veſſel. The captain, not having taken the precaution to exact payment for their paſſage, when they came firſt on board, now applied to the governor, begging him to compel them to pay in full for their paſſage to Hodeida. The Emir generouſly replied, that he would pay his demand from his own purſe, if they refuſed; and the merchant Mæchſen made the ſame promiſe. They did not put the generoſity of their Arabian friends to the trial; but felt themſelves deeply indebted to them for their offers and ſervices.

When they ſpoke of the conveyance of their baggage to the ſhore, the Emir ſent his own boat for it; and, to ſpare them all trouble, directed the merchant's clerk to ſatisfy the officers of the cuſtoms. In the evening, he ſent them an excellent ſheep, as a preſent of welcome, and accompanied it with a letter, in which he called them his gueſts, and aſſured them of his friendſhip. His boat having only mat-ſails, moved ſo ſlowly, that they could not bring all their effects on ſhore in one day, which gave them ſome concern, leſt they might loſe what remained behind, or be robbed of what lay on the ſhore. The Emir underſtanding that they were uneaſy upon this head, immediately ſent ſome ſoldiers to guard their baggage.

They paſſed the night on the ſhore, whither their good friend Mæchſen, who very naturally ſuppoſed that their cooking utenſils muſt be yet in confuſion, ſent them an excellent ſupper. Nothing was wanting but wine; and their ſtock of bad brandy, which they had brought from Jidda, was by this time finiſhed. They might have ſupplied themſelves with wine, and other liquors, from the Jews of Sana, who manufacture large quantities of thoſe articles: but then they ſhould have been obliged to carry them in copper veſſels, which would have rendered them noxious to the health. They offered them a ſort of bowza, which they found nauſeous. They were therefore obliged to content themſelves with the proſpect of living without ſtrong liquors of any kind for ſome months.

Their trunks were carried next day to the cuſtom-houſe: they were opened; and they were afraid that they might be ſtrictly examined. But the cuſtom-houſe officers behaved with great civility. The Emir's attention was fixed upon their inſtruments ſolely, and he ſeemed anxious to underſtand the uſe of them: they therefore explained to him whatever he wiſhed to know.

The houſe aſſigned them for a lodging was built in the Eaſtern faſhion, with a ſquare court in the middle. There was not one well-furniſhed room in it; yet it conſiſted of ſeveral diſtinct apartments, into which the entrance was through an open gallery, which extended all around it. This lodging was far from being elegant, in compariſon with the ſplendid inns in Europe; but in Arabia, it was both elegant and commodious. At firſt, their court was conſtantly filled with crowds of people, curious to ſee them. This they found troubleſome; and therefore hired a porter, who ſuffered none to enter, but perſons who had buſineſs to tranſact with them.

The territory of Loheia is arid and barren. The harbour is ſo indifferent, that even the ſmalleſt veſſels are obliged to anchor at a great diſtance from the city: and when the tide is at ebb, laden boats cannot approach near it. Notwithſtanding this diſadvantage, a conſiderable trade in coffee is carried on from Loheia; the coffee is brought from the neighbouring hills, and expoſed in one large heap for ſale. This coffee is not reputed to be ſo good as that which comes from Beit-el-Fakih, and is ſhipped at Mokha and Hodeida. But coffee is to be purchaſed here upon more reaſonable terms; and the carriage to Jidda coſts leſs. On this account, ſeveral merchants from Cairo live at Loheia, and others come annually hither to make purchaſes of coffee. In this city, are alſo forty poor Banians, employed in different trades.

Loheia, although without walls, is not entirely defenceleſs. Twelve towers, guarded by ſoldiers, ſtand at equal diſtances round it. Theſe towers reſemble thoſe in ſome of the imperial cities of Germany; the height of its gates renders it neceſſary to climb upon them upon ladders. In Turkey, and even in Europe, it would have been dangerous to approach near ſuch fortifications, in order to examine them. But the Arab guards ſat ſmoking their pipes, and drinking Kiſcher, and gave M. Niebuhr no interruption in his walks about them. Some of the officers even invited him to ſit down and partake of their refreſhments.

They put many queſtions to him concerning the military ſkill of the Europeans, and ſeemed to be ſurpriſed at what he told them.

Several of the houſes in Loheia are built of ſtone; but the greater part are huts conſtructed in that faſhion which is common among the Arabs. The walls are of mud mixed with dung; and the roof is thatched with a ſort of graſs which is very common there. Around the walls, within, are a range of beds made of ſtraw, on which, notwithſtanding their ſimplicity, a perſon may either ſit or lie commodiouſly enough. Such a houſe is not large enough to be divided into ſeparate apartments; it has ſeldom windows, and its door is only a ſtraw mat. When an Arab has a family and cattle, he builds, for their accommodation, ſeveral ſuch huts, and encloſes the whole with a ſtrong wooden fence. The population of the cities of Arabia, therefore, cannot be proportionate to their extent.

Lime is prepared in the neighbourhood of this city, by the calcination of coral from the ſea, in the open air, and without a furnace. In the larger maſſes, when they were broken, our travellers often ſaw oblong ſhells, with the animal ſtill alive within them. Theſe ſeas abound in beautiful ſhells and uncommon fiſhes.

The water at Loheia is very bad, and is brought from a diſtance. The common people drink from a well, which is a league from the city. The beſt water, which, however, cannot be praiſed as good, comes from two leagues and a half diſtance. As wheeled carriages are unknown here, this water is carried upon camels or aſſes; not in ſkins, as in Egypt and Turkey, but in earthen jars, a number of which hang upon each ſide of a camel. Within two leagues of the city is a ſmall hill which affords conſiderable quantities of mineral ſalt. The inhabitants ſeemed to be curious, intelligent, and poliſhed in their manners. All were eager to ſee the Europeans, and the wonders which they performed. After our heroes had employed a porter, thoſe who had no other pretext upon which they might obtain admiſſion to them, pretended to conſult their phyſician. One aſked him to feel his pulſe, and to tell him what medicines or regimen he ſtood in need of; while another inquired, how it came that he could not ſleep?

Two Arabs came, one day, to ſee them eat. The one was a young nobleman of Sana, who had received a good education; the other a man of ſome conſequence, from the province of Hachtan, where few ſtrangers are ever ſeen, and the greateſt ſimplicity of manners ſtill prevails. When M. Niebuhr invited them to dine with him, the latter earneſtly replied, "God preſerve me from eating with infidels who believe not in God." When he aſked him ſome particulars concerning his country, he replied, "What is my country to you? Do you want to conquer it?" He was aſtoniſhed at every thing he ſaw, their ſpoons, their plates, their forks. He aſked ſome ſimple queſtions which excited laughter. He then went out in a paſſion, and his companion from Sana had ſome difficulty to perſuade him back. When he came back, he ſaw whole fowls before our travellers, which ſurpriſed that ſober Arab not a little, as he imagined that they had eaten too much before. When, at laſt, he ſaw Mr. Van Haven about to carve one of theſe fowls, he ſtepped forward, and ſeized him by the arm, ſaying, with a peeviſh tone, "What! wilt thou eat ſtill?" He then went out in a rage, and would not return. The young man from Sana apologized for him, and begged them to excuſe the ſimplicity of his countryman.

Our hero and Mr. Baurenfiend ſometimes diverted themſelves with playing on the violin, which led ſuch as happened to overhear them, to think them muſicians. A rich merchant ſent for them, to come with their inſtruments to his houſe. They refuſed, becauſe the Arabs look with contempt upon muſicians by profeſſion. The merchant, being old, and not able to walk ſo far, mounted an aſs, and came with two ſervants ſupporting him, to their houſe, in order to gratify his curioſity, by ſeeing and hearing them. He was very polite, and aſſured them that he had no averſion to Chriſtians; for, a diverſity of religions was tolerated by God, the Creator of all. After ſome converſation, he expreſſed a wiſh to ſee their violins, and hear them play upon them. They played ſome ſolemn tunes, which are more to the taſte of the Orientals than gayer muſic. He ſeemed to be pleaſed, and offered each of them half a crown at parting. The Arabs refuſe no preſents, however ſmall, and he was not a little ſurpriſed when our travellers declined accepting his money; eſpecially as he could not conceive what inducements any perſon could have to learn muſic, if not to gain by it. This merchant was one of thoſe few who wear their beards dyed red; a cuſtom which ſeems to be diſapproved by the more judicious Arabs. His reaſon was, that a red beard was handſomer than a white one; but others ſaid, that he had the weakneſs to think to conceal his age by this ſilly diſguiſe. He told M. Niebuhr that he was above ſeventy years of age; but his acquaintance affirmed that he was ninety. They had obſerved of the Muſſulmans in general, however, that they ſeldom know their own age exactly. They reckon by the moſt remarkable incidents in their lives, and ſay, "I was a child when ſuch an event happened, or when ſuch a one was governor of the province or city."

The women of Loheia wear large veils in the ſtreet, which cover their countenances ſo entirely, that only one of their eyes can be diſcovered, and that but imperfectly. Yet they make no difficulty of unveiling before ſtrangers, as they paſs, eſpecially if they happen to think themſelves pretty, and are ſure that they are not obſerved by any of their countrymen.

After examining all that ſeemed worthy of notice in this city, and its neighbourhood, our adventurers became deſirous to proceed on their journey, and to viſit the other parts of Yemen. It was requiſite, however, that they ſhould aſſign a reaſon to their friend Farhan for their earneſtneſs to depart. By good fortune they learned that an Engliſh veſſel was arrived at Mokha: but this veſſel, the Emir well knew, was not to ſail from that harbour till June. They told him, therefore, that they had ſome immediate buſineſs to tranſact with their countrymen that were newly arrived; upon which account they meant to ſet out for Beit-el-Fakih, and after reſting there a ſhort time, to continue their journey to Mokha. He anſwered, that they were ſurely diſſatisfied with their entertainment at Loheia, otherwiſe they would not think of quitting it ſo ſoon; and yet no governor could take more concern to ſerve them than he. After convincing him that they were actually under a neceſſity of ſetting out for Mokha, they prepared for their departure.

When they ſent to take leave of their friend Emir Farhan, he was indiſpoſed, and they could not ſee him. But when he heard, that they had determined to ſet out, he deſired that they would come to him very late in the evening. They found him in company with ſeveral Arabs. A piece of ſilk, with twenty crowns, he made a preſent to their phyſician; and other crowns he preſſed them to accept, in order to pay the hire for their aſſes and camels. He and his company teſtified the ſtrongeſt ſurpriſe, when they ſaw them refuſe the money, for inſtead of refuſing, Turkiſh travellers are ready to demand ſuch gratuities.

They were unwilling to be burthenſome to the Arabs, and would therefore accept of nothing from them, without making a recompenſe. They made the Emir a preſent of a watch, which, having never before had one of his own, he knew not how to manage. A merchant from Cairo, who was ſettled at Loheia, promiſed to wind it up every day. They parted with ſincere regret from this good governor.

They hired camels for their baggage, and horſes for themſelves. In Arabia, Chriſtians are not prohibited the uſe of horſes; but theſe can rarely be had for hire. The uſual mode of travelling here, is upon aſſes; which in this province are large, ſtrong, ſpirited, and walk with a pace, not the moſt pleaſant to the rider.

Travelling being as little expoſed to danger in Yemen, as in any other country in the world, they did not need to wait for the ſetting out of any caravan. They therefore left Loheia alone, on the 20th of February 1793, ſending the camels before, and following them within a few hours upon their aſſes.

The territory of Yemen is naturally divided into two diſtinct provinces. That part which borders on the Arabic gulf is a ſandy plain, which, as it ſpreads backward, riſes by a gradual aſcent, into hills, and terminates in a lofty range of mountains. The plain is called Tehama. They had to croſs it in their way to Beit-el-Fakih.

In the firſt day of their journey, they travelled through a parched and barren tract of country, along an arm of the ſea, which penetrates a conſiderable way into the land. They reſted in a coffee-houſe ſituate near a village. Mokeya is the name given by the Arabs to ſuch coffee-houſes, which ſtand in the open country, and are intended, like inns, for the accommodation of travellers. They are mere huts, and are ſcarcely furniſhed with a Serir, or long ſeat of ſtraw ropes; nor do they afford any refreſhment but Kiſcher, a hot infuſion of coffee-beans. This drink is ſerved out in coarſe earthen cups; but perſons of diſtinction carry always porcelain cups in their baggage. Freſh water is diſtributed gratis. The maſter of the coffee-houſe lives commonly in ſome neighbouring village, whence he comes every day to wait for paſſengers.

After a journey of ſix German miles, they arrived by midnight, at a large city in which a Sub-Dola reſides, with a few ſoldiers. Emir Farhan had given them a letter to the deputy-governor, with an order to the inhabitants to ſupply them with a ſheep, which, however, they did not chooſe to accept. But they came afterwards to underſtand, that the inhabitants had been obliged to pay a ſum of money equivalent to the value of the ſheep, which had been ſhared between the Sub-Dola and a ſervant of the Emir's who accompanied them upon buſineſs of his own. In the other villages through which they paſſed, therefore, they made no difficulty of accepting the ſheep which the Emir had ordered them.

Through the whole country, they found water ſcarce and bad. But they met with many large villages, leſs diſtant from one another than they ſhould have expected in ſo barren a plain. Menegre is one of thoſe villages, of which they were led to take particular notice, by finding in it the firſt Manſale that they ſaw. This is a houſe in which travellers are received and entertained gratis, if they will be content with ſuch treatment as is uſual in the country; they are all lodged in one common apartment, which is furniſhed with a Serir, and are ſerved with Kiſcher, hot millet bread, camels milk and butter. When the maſter of this Manſale underſtood that ſome European gueſts were arrived, he came to ſee whether his ſervants treated them properly; and was going to kill a ſheep for their entertainment, if they had ſtayed longer. He cauſed wheat bread to be baked for them, which is in this province very rare; and made them bring cow-milk, when he ſaw them nauſeate the viſcidity of the camel's milk. The Arabian ſervant told M. Niebuhr that he might be diſobliged, if he ſhould offer any compenſation for his kind hoſpitality; but the attendant who ſerved them with thoſe things, took an opportunity, in a place where he could not be ſeen by his maſter, to aſk a ſmall gratuity.

At Dahhi, a large village, where is a moſque, the tomb of a ſaint, and ſeveral houſes built of ſtone, they ſtayed a whole day. Near this, they ſaw a tannery, and a manufacture of earthen-ware, which is prepared in the open air, and without a furnace. They ſaw, likewiſe, indigo manufactured here; it is ſold at a cheap rate, but is of a bad quality. Much of this dying ſtuff is uſed here; for the women, among the commonalty, wear blue ſhirts and drawers.

From this village, there is a direct road leading to Beit-el-Fakih. But the tract of country through which it paſſes, is extremely arid, and almoſt uninhabited, and affords ſcarcely any water. They therefore preferred a longer road, nearer the mountains, and found reaſon to be pleaſed with their choice; for they met with ſeveral ſmall woods, a number of villages ſkirted with buſhes, and many wells, which were from an hundred and ſixty, to an hundred and ſeventy feet deep; but happily for both men and beaſts, dug in ſloping ground; for, as the water is to be raiſed by a cord dragging a leathern bucket, this is more eaſily accompliſhed in a going down hill, than if the ground were barely level, or an aſcent were to be climbed.

They paſſed two large villages, under the juriſdiction of the governor of Beit-el-Fakih; but in neither of theſe did any thing remarkable offer itſelf to their obſervation. But in two places upon this journey, they ſaw ſpots ſcattered with ſmall villages, bearing all the ſame name; from which they were led to think that ſome ſmall detached tribes might have ſettled, each in a particular diſtrict of this province. They paſſed alſo two of thoſe vallies ſo common in Arabia, which, when heavy rains fall, are filled with water, and are then called rivers, although perfectly dry at other times of the year.

After reſting a night in one of thoſe wretched coffee-houſes, they arrived, in the morning of the 25th of February at Beit-el-Fakih, and had their trunks ſent immediately to the cuſtom-houſe; but they were not inſpected till noon, and then in the preſence of the Dola. They, in the mean time, delivered letters of recommendation from Mæchſen of Loheia, to Ambar Seif, one of the principal merchants in Beit-el-Fakih. This worthy man received them in a very obliging manner, hired them a houſe, ſaw their effects carried thither, and invited them to dine with him, till they could have matters put into order in their own habitation.

The city of Beit-el-Fakih is ſituated on a plain, which, although far from being naturally fertile, is, however, carefully cultivated. The houſes join not one to another, but are built ſeparate. Many are of ſtone; and the mode of building is every day improving. In the city of Beit-el-Fakih is a citadel, which is thought of the utmoſt importance in a country where armies are without artillery.

The houſe which our travellers occupied was a building of ſtone; but the propietor had been diſlodged by a ſpecies of ants, named by the Arabs, Ard. Theſe ants, which are well known to naturaliſts, form covert ways, through which they introduce themſelves into houſes, where they deſtroy equally cloths and proviſions of all kinds. They are not leſs troubleſome in gardens, where they alſo form their covert ways, between the root and the top of trees, waſting the ſap, and devouring the buds and the extremities of the branches. Their chambers were full of them. They took the meaſures which are ordinarily employed, to quit themſelves of them: deſtroying their cells and paſſages ſeveral times ſucceſſively. The inſect indeed reſtores theſe with amazing rapidity, eſpecially in the dark; but it at length yields. On their way hither, they had obſerved a number of buſhes covered with earth, in which were a vaſt quantity of galleries formed by thoſe little animals. The ſhrub which they had attacked in this manner was always withered.

The city of Beit-el-Fakih is not of ancient origin. It has exiſted only for ſome centuries: and, like Loheia, owes its riſe to a ſaint, called Achmed-iba-Muſa, from whom it has derived its name; Beit-el-Fakih meaning the houſe or dwelling of the ſage. The tomb of that ſaint is ſhewn without the city, upon a ſandy hill, where a fine moſque has been reared. At firſt, ſome devout perſons built themſelves cottages round the tomb. The harbour of Ghalefka was about the ſame time choaked up; and the inhabitants of that city, for the convenience of trade, then removed all their effects to the vicinity of this tomb, and ſettled about it. When it had thus become a conſiderable city, the lord of the territory built a citadel for its defence, in a place where water had been ſound. The city is now nearer the tomb: and the vicinity of the tomb is almoſt deſerted.

So modern a city cannot contain many antiquities of an intereſting nature. Yet M. Niebuhr copied here an ancient Kuſic inſcription, in the preſence of many ſpectators, none of whom ſuſpected him, as the Egyptians had done, of any intention to ſeek out and pilfer their treaſures. They were all very obliging, and eſpecially the Schiechs, or learned Arabs, who ſeemed pleaſed that ſtrangers ſhould ſhew a deſire to acquire their language. In this city, as well as in Loheia, he obtained much information from a claſs of Arab literati, who often viſited them. Theſe are denominated Fakih, and no where through Arabia do their circumſtances appear to correſpond to their merit.

The city of Beit-el-Fakih is in a favourable ſituation for trade; being only half a day's journey from the hills in which the coffee grows, and but a few days journey from the harbours of Loheia, Hodeida, and Mokha, from which this commodity is exported, it naturally becomes the moſt conſiderable mart for it. This trade brings hither merchants from Egypt, Syria, Barbary, Perſia, Habbeſch, India, and often from Europe. Here are alſo, as in all the other great towns in Arabia, a number of Banians, all of them natives of Diu, who are allowed the free exerciſe of their religion. Yet they dare not bring their women hither, nor burn their dead: and theſe prohibitions induce them to return to their native country, as ſoon as they have accumulated a little fortune.

Beit-el-Fakih is the reſidence of a Dola, whoſe juriſdiction extends over a large diſtrict. This Dola ſeemed to take little concern about our travellers, and his indifference left them more at liberty than they had been at Loheia; for, unincumbered with attendants, and unmoleſted with civilities, they travelled about the country whenever they liked.

Thus enabled to travel in ſafety through all Tehama, M. Niebuhr firſt reſolved to go by Ghaleſka, and perform this expedition in as ſimple a guiſe as poſſible, and without any appearance of ſplendour or opulence that might prove a temptation to robbers. He hired an aſs; and its owner agreed to follow him as his ſervant, on foot. A turban, a great coat wanting the ſleeves, a ſhirt, linen drawers, and a pair of ſlippers, were all the dreſs that he wore. It being the faſhion of the country to wear arms in travelling, he carried a ſabre, and two piſtols hung by his girdle. A piece of an old carpet was his ſaddle, and ſerved him likewiſe for a ſeat, a table, and various other purpoſes. To cover him at night, he had the linen cloak which the Arabs wrap about their ſhoulders, to ſhelter them from the ſun and rain. A bucket of water, an article of indiſpenſible neceſſity to a traveller in theſe arid regions, hung by his ſaddle. He had for ſome time endeavoured to ſuit himſelf to the Arabian manner of living, and now could ſpare many conveniences to which he had been accuſtomed in Europe, and could content himſelf with bad bread, the only article to be obtained in moſt of the inns.

March the 7th, he ſet out from Beit-el-Fakih; and, before he had travelled a mile, ſaw ſeveral villages; but, upon all the reſt of the way to Ghaleſka, which is four miles and a half, he perceived not a ſingle dwelling, nor any mark of human induſtry, but a few wells. For the two laſt miles, the way lies through ſo ſandy a tract, that his guide often loſt himſelf; ſuch are the continual changes which the wind produces on the ſcenery, by demoliſhing the hillock, carrying the ſand about, and forming others. They were even obliged to turn ſeveral times out of what they knew to be the true direction, in order to avoid being buried in ſome of thoſe hillocks which were then forming. Ghaleſka is at the ſame diſtance from Zebid as from Beit-el-Fakih. It was once a famous city; and the ſea-port town of Zebid was then in an equally flouriſhing condition. That harbour is now filled up, ſo that no ſhip, of however ſmall burthen, can enter it: not only has the ſea receded, while the banks of coral have been augmented, but a quantity of ſand has been here accumulated by the winds, which actually riſes into a hill of conſiderable height. The ruins of a moſque are ſtill to be ſeen here, which was dedicated to a ſaint, who, as is ſaid, by his prayers, obtained from Heaven an excellent ſpring of water, for which, the inhabitants believe, that they ought ſtill to be grateful to him. About a ſcore of cottages now hold all the inhabitants of this once flouriſhing city; and dates, with the milk and fleſh of a few ſheep, are all the proviſions they have. The ſea affords them no fiſh, nor any thing elſe, but ſalt; of which every perſon may have as much as he pleaſes, upon paying a ſmall fee to the Dola of Beit-el-Fakih's ſecretary.

In a burying place near this poor vilage, M. Niebuhr found two ſtones bearing Kuſic inſcriptions; one of them was large, and ſtood on end; the other lay flat upon a tomb, and was but ſmall. The inhabitants could not comprehend for what reaſon he was ſo eager to copy the inſcriptions from the larger ſtone; but when he returned next day to do the ſame for that upon the ſmaller ſtone, he found it to have been carried away in the night. He applied to the Hakim or judge of the village, and offered him a trifle if he could procure him another ſight of it. The judge led him through many turnings and windings to a poor hut, in which was the tomb of another ſaint; and there they found the ſtone that our hero was in ſearch of; by his account of the matter, it had not been hidden by the inhabitants, but the ſaint had brought it thither himſelf. Notwithſtanding the ſaint's care of it, the Hakim offered Niebuhr this ſtone with him to Beit-el-Fakih, if he would be at the expence of having it conveyed.

CHAP. V.

Excurſions of M. NIEBUHR*—Departure from Ghaleſka—Arrives at Hodeida, where he finds his Friends—Departs for Zebid—Reaches El-Mohed—Remarks—Arrival at Zebid—Deſcription of it—Our Hero meets a vain loquacious Man—Reaches Tabæte—Obſervations thereon—Departure—Sets out for Kahhme—Searches for Antiquities after his Arrival—His Return—Joins* Mr. FORSKAL, *&c. in a Journey to Coffee-Mountains—Remarks—Natives of Bulgoſa viſit them—Journey through the mountainous Part of Yemen, with curſory Obſervations—Journey from Beit-el-Fakih to Mokha—From Mokha to Taoes—To Sana—Tranſactions there—*Mr. FORSKAL'S *Death—Return to Mokha, &c. &c.*

M. NIEBUHR now left Ghaleſka, with his aſs and the owner. He arrived the ſame evening at Hodeida, which is about five German miles diſtant from Ghaleſka.

The harbour of Hodeida is ſomewhat better than that of Loheia. Yet large veſſels cannot enter it. The Dola of Hodeida is accountable only to the Imam. But his juriſdiction is confined to this city. His revenues conſiſt in part of the duties upon coffee exported. The manſion of the Dola, the cuſtom-houſe, and the houſes of the principal merchants are ſtone buildings; the reſt of the town conſiſts of huts built in the ordinary ſtyle. Near the ſea, ſtands a ſmall citadel, which could not prove a very ſtrong defence. This city has alſo its patron ſaint, Shech Sddik, who is honoured with due veneration.

At Hodeida, our hero found his friends Van Haven and Cramer, who had come hither to deliver two letters of recommendation, from their friends in Jidda to the Dola, and an eminent merchant in this place. They had been received, lodged, and treated in the kindeſt manner. But M. Niebuhr not being diſpoſed to loſe his time in viſits, returned on the 9th of March, to Beit-el-Fakih.

On the road our traveller found a number of coffee-huts, but very few villages. A mile and a half from Hodeida, there is a well of excellent water, which is carried to that city for the uſe of the inhabitants; the water which they have nearer being very bad. As M. Niebuhr approached Beit-el-Fakih, he paſſed through ſome paltry villages; and arrived at his place of deſtination, on the ſame day upon which he had ſet out. The diſtance between Beit-el-Fakih and Hodeida, is, by his eſtimation, ſeven German miles; and this journey he performed in one day, under the moſt ſcorching heat and upon an hired aſs.

Having found the Arabs very civil, and having met with no diſagreeable accident in his firſt excurſion, he was impatient to ſet out again. Accordingly he departed for Zebid on the 11th of March, to ſee the remains of that famous city, which was once the capital of Tehama; and to inveſtigate ſome ancient inſcriptions which were ſaid to be concealed at Tahæte, a ſmall town in that neighbourhood. An Arab, who was learned, but poor, accompanied him in this expedition, and was glad of the opportunity of viſiting an old friend at Zebid, without expence. Our hero was no leſs pleaſed to have him for the companion of his journey, as his converſation was very entertaining.

After paſſing by ſeveral coffee-houſes, and through ſome ſmall hamlets, they came to a large village called El-Mahad, ſtanding in a beautiful valley which receives the waters that fall from Mount Rema. In the rainy ſeaſon, theſe waters form a river which ſpreads into ſeveral branches, and fertilizes the adjacent lands. A large quantity of indigo grows in this valley. In this neighbourhood, too, there ſtood anciently a conſiderable city, called alſo El-Mahad; but of it no veſtige now remains.

Near Zebid are ſome heaps of ſtones, which are ſaid to be a part of the ruins of another large and ancient city that was called El-Haud. Our hero arrived early in the morning at Zebid; having travelled in a ſhort time five German miles, which is the computed diſtance between this town and Beit-el-Fakih.

Zebid is ſituate near the largeſt and moſt fertile valley in all Tehama. It was dry when M. Niebuhr viſited it; but, in the rainy ſeaſon, a large river runs through it, and being, like the Nile, conducted by canals through the neighbouring fields, communicates to them an high degree of fertility. This was once the place of a ſovereign's reſidence, and the moſt commercial city in all Tehama. But, ſince the harbour of Ghalefka was choaked up, its trade has been transferred to Beit-el-Fakih and Mokha; and this city now retains nothing but the ſhadow of its former ſplendour. Viewed from a diſtance, it appears to ſome advantage, by means of the moſques and kubbets, of which it is full. Several of thoſe moſques were erected by different Pachas who reſided here, during the ſhort period while this part of Arabia was in the poſſeſſion of the Ottoman Porte. But Zebid pays dear for its exterior magnificence; its inhabitants are impoveriſhed by the numerous clergy belonging to thoſe pious foundations, by whom the wealth of this place is almoſt wholly engroſſed. M. Niebuhr was told, as a matter of certainty, that if the whole revenue of the territory be conſidered as divided into five parts, the clergy receive three of theſe, the Imam one for the taxes, and the inhabitants have only one-fifth remaining for their maintenance. The Turks have left here one uſeful monument of their power; an aqueduct, which conveyed water from the hills into the city. But this work has been ſo long neglected, that only its ruins now remain, and the inhabitants are obliged to content themſelves with water from their draw-wells; which is fortunately not bad, and in ſuch plenty as to water many fine gardens that are to be ſeen in the neighbourhood of the city. Abulfeda aſcribes eight gates to Zebid; but of theſe, only five are now ſtanding, and the river is gradually breaking down a part of them. The walls of the old city are demoliſhed, and the very ruins are ſold by poor people who gather out the ſtones, and ſell them for building new houſes. The preſent buildings occupy about one half of the ancient extent of the city.

Zebid is ſtill diſtinguiſhed for an academy, in which the youth of Tehama, and of a part of Yemen ſtudy ſuch ſciences as are cultivated among the Muſſulmans. This is, beſides, the ſeat of a Dola, a Mufti, and a Cadi, of the ſect of Schafey; and of two other Cadis of the ſect of Zeidi, to which the Imam and the greater part of his ſubjects profeſs to belong.

The vaineſt and moſt fooliſhly loquacious man our hero ever ſaw, he met in an inn. He was a Sherriffe, or nobleman of the firſt rank; but, being poor and beggarly, travelled about the country, living at the expence of the more opulent profeſſors of his religion. Having been in Egypt, Syria, and even Abyſſinia, he boaſted, that he could ſpeak ſeveral foreign languages, although a few proverbs were all that he knew. Our traveller wiſhed to obtain ſome information from him concerning the countries through which he had travelled; but he could tell nothing but the names of a vaſt number of Schiechs, Pachas, and Dolas, by all of whom he pretended to have been received with the honours due to a deſcendant of Mahomet. His ſon, a boy of ten years, who acted as his ſervant, never received any other name from him than Sheriffe Achmet. The father had hired only one Serir for his ſon and himſelf together: whereas every other traveller who is not abſolutely mendicant, hires here a ſeparate couch, juſt as ſeparate rooms are occupied by different travellers in the inns of Europe. With all thoſe airs of greatneſs, he often abuſed his ſon, and called him, "Dog, ſon of a dog."

When M. Niebuhr had finiſhed his reſearches at Zebid, he and his friends ſet out on the 12th of March, and after a ride of two German miles, reached Tahæte, which was once a town of ſome magnitude, but has now dwindled to a ſmall village. The road leads ſtill through Wadi Zebid, the vale or the bed of the river; in which the fields had a beautiful and rich appearance, wherever they had not been encroached upon and ravaged by the torrents. Much indigo is raiſed here; our hero counted more than ſix hundred large veſſels, in which this colouring matter is prepared for ſale. In this village are alſo ſeveral moſques and houſes of prayer, reared over the tombs of ſaints or opulent perſons. Ibn Haſſan is the chief of the ſaints. His tomb is always illuminated by night with lamps; and one of his deſcendants keeps a Manſale, or houſe of hoſpitable entertainment, in the village.

Niebuhr lodged in a common inn; but the maſter of the Manſale came to invite him to his houſe, and when be found him unwilling to remove, ſent him a good ſupper. Our hero was told, that the maſters of Manſales accept no money; but he of Tahæte did not refuſe a ſmall gratuity.

Finding nothing remarkable in this village, they ſet out upon the 13th of March, for Beit-el-Fakih. They ſaw no houſes by the way except the populous village of Murra, ſituate in the beautiful vale El-Mahad. In this village are many Kubbets, and a large Manſale, in which thirty or forty people are daily entertained.

On the 19th, accompanied only by the owner of the aſs upon which he rode, M. Niebuhr ſet out for Kahhme, where he expected to find ſome remains of antiquity in the ruins of the city Lelue. He paſſed by ſome villages; and, nearer the mountains, villages are indeed more numerous. He alſo croſſed a vale, through which runs a river which joins the river of Rema. In the rainy ſeaſon, the latter holds its courſe to the ſea, and enters it near Schurem.

He went, immediately after his arrival at Kahhme, to ſearch for the antiquities of Lelue. But he found only a large burying-place, filled with pentagonal ſtones, each eight inches in diameter, and four or five feet long. When he ſaw thoſe ſtones, ſo uniformly of this regular figure, he was at firſt inclined to think, that they might have received it from the hand of art. But he ſoon perceived a hill in the neighbourhood wholly compoſed of pentagonal ſtones, where thoſe people had found the ſeemingly artificial ornaments of their burying-place. The rocks of that hill are a pile of vertical columns, of the figure and thickneſs above-mentioned, riſing one over another, as well as ſpreading for ſome extent, in a parallel body, and ſeemingly joined by a ſort of ſlight cement. He ſaw ſome other piles of rocks of the ſame ſort, in other places through Arabia.

After examining the few curioſities which Kahhme afforded, our traveller returned to Beit-el-Fakih, purpoſing ſoon to ſet out on ſome new excurſions.

During M. Niebuhr's abſence, Mr. Forſkal had not been idle upon the hills where the coffee is produced, whither he had gone to proſecute his botanical reſearches. His deſcription of that part of the country had already induced Meſſrs. Cramer and Baurenfeind to follow him: M. Niebuhr alſo reſolved to join his comrades, that he might breathe cooler air, and drink better water. The ſpace he had to travel was only half a day's journey; and, in the courſe of this, he met with nothing remarkable.

He ſoon came within ſight of the ſmall town of Hadie, ſituate upon one of the foremoſt eminences. The roads are very bad: a cauſeway was indeed formed by the Turks; but it has been ſuffered to fall away, without receiving any repairs. Neither aſſes nor mules can be uſed here: the hills are to be climbed by narrow and ſteep paths: yet, in compariſon with the parched plains of Tehama, the ſcenery ſeemed charming; as it was covered with gardens and plantations of coffee-trees.

In the neighbourhood of Kahhme, our hero had ſeen only one ſmall baſaltic hill; but here, whole mountains were compoſed chiefly of thoſe columns. The coffee-trees were all in flower at Bulgoſa, and exhaled an exquiſitely agreeable perfume. They are planted upon terraces, in the form of an amphitheatre. Moſt of them are only watered by the rains that fall; but ſome, indeed, from large reſervoirs upon the heights, in which ſpring-water is collected, in order to be ſprinkled upon the terraces; where the trees grow ſo thick together, that the rays of the ſun can hardly enter among their branches.

Stones being more common in this part of the country, than at Tehama, the houſes, as well of the villages, as thoſe which are ſcattered ſolitarily over the hills, are built of this material. Although not to be compared with the houſes in Europe, for commodiouſneſs or elegance, yet they have a good appearance; eſpecially ſuch of them as ſtand upon the heights, with beautiful gardens and trees, arranged in the form of an amphitheatre, around them.

They paſſed the night at Bulgoſa. Several of the men of the village came to ſee them; and, after they retired, they had a viſit from their hoſteſs, with ſome young women accompanying her, who were all very deſirous to ſee the Europeans. They ſeemed leſs ſhy than the women in the cities: their faces were unveiled; and they talked freely. As the air is freſher and cooler upon theſe hills, the women have here a finer and fairer complexion than in the plain.

On the 10th of March, they returned downwards as far as Hadie, a place well known to the Europeans; who come hither from Beit-el-Fakih, to paſs ſome time occaſionally in this little town, where the air is cool, and the water freſh and pure. It is, however, but ill-built, and has nothing elſe of conſequence except its trade in coffee, which the inhabitants of the hills bring down upon certain days in the week. After the duties are paid to the Dola, the coffee is packed up and conveyed upon camels, either to Beit-el-Fakih or directly to Hodeida.

They enjoyed a ſingular and beautiful proſpect from the houſe of the Sub-Dola at Hadie, and returned in the evening to Beit-el-Fakih, by the ſame way by which they had gone in their journey up the mountains.

They met with leſs difficulty in the proſecution of their reſearches at Beit-el-Fakih, than any where elſe through Yemen. The inhabitants of that city were no ſtrangers to European manners, and knew that they could not, like them, reſt conſtantly in one place. They were therefore nowiſe ſurpriſed at their excurſions, but were fully ſatisfied when they told them, that the exerciſe was neceſſary for their health.

The preparations for their journey were eaſily made. They hired two aſſes, and the owner attended them on foot, as their guide, their ſervant, and occaſionally their interpreter. They had already large beards in the Arab faſhion; and theſe, with their long robes, gave them a very oriental appearance. To diſguiſe themſelves ſtill more, each of them aſſumed an Arabic name: and, under theſe pretenſions, their real condition was ſo perfectly concealed, that even the owner of aſſes thought them Chriſtians of the Eaſt; and had no ſuſpicion that they were Europeans. In this garb, and attended by the aſs-hirer, they ſet out on the 26th of March, from Beit-el-Fakih.

They paſſed through ſeveral villages in croſſing the plain, and, after a journey of five German miles and a half, reached Robo, where is a weekly Suk or market. Here they lay the firſt night.

Next day, after advancing a mile further, they entered upon the mountains. Near the firſt village, they obſerved a running ſtream, the firſt they ſaw in Arabia. Till it enters Tehama, this river is called Wadi Zebid. Its channel is very broad; but as no rain had for a long time fallen, the ſtream covered the breadth of twenty, or four and twenty feet. In this place it runs with a conſiderable current; but in Tehama it ſpreads into a ſhallow lake, and is loſt among the ſands.

The ſame day they paſſed near Mount Sullam, where, from the account given by an Arab who lived in the country, our hero had been led to expect that he ſhould find hieroglyphics or inſcriptions, cut upon the rock: but he found only ſome figures which had been impreſſed at an idle hour by ſome ſhepherd, and were as coarſely executed as thoſe upon Mount Sinai. They lay at Machſa; this is one of the villages in which weekly fairs are held. The houſes are ſtill more wretched here than in Tehama. They have no walls, and conſiſt merely of a few poles laid together, and covered with reeds. They could ſcarcely lodge in one of thoſe huts; ſo ſmall were they, that a perſon could not ſtand ſtraight in the middle; and two perſons lying together upon the floor, occupied the whole area of the houſe. It would not have held a ſingle Serir. The inhabitants ſit and ſleep upon the bare ground. The air being colder in this part of the country than in Tehama, the people here put on a bag upon their bodies when they go to ſleep, and are warmed by their natural perſpiration. In none of the inns, could they find any ſort of food but coarſe durra bread, made of millet with camel's milk; but the water is every where delicious.

The road by which they travelled is not much frequented by travellers. The ways are very bad and unſafe, and ſcarce a houſe appears upon any hand. Within theſe few years, however, they have become leſs dangerous than they were before. The lord of Udden has placed ſome ſoldiers with a Sub-Dola, at Machſa, who is reſponſible for the thefts or robberies that happen in his diſtrict. This regulation of the police has diſperſed the robbers.

On the 28th of March, they paſſed, by winding roads, through a diſtrict in which the lands began to appear more fertile and better cultivated. The houſes are here much more commodious, being built of ſtone, and flat roofed. Yet, the houſes of the peaſants are, here too, without walls, unleſs they give that name to dry ſtones, piled one upon another, and having no mortar to cement them. The roofs are covered with earth.

They paſſed through a village in which was a fair; a circumſtance which made them haſten forward, as they were deſirous to avoid the crowd. Near this place, at the foot of a high hill, they obſerved a ſort of glittering, micaceous ſand. The people of the country have been led, from the appearance of this ſand, to fancy that the hill affords gold. On the heights, they ſaw the tombs of ſeveral ſaints too; and near one of thoſe tombs a wooden trough, into which ſome devout perſons are conſtantly pouring water for the uſe of the cattle which paſs. They lay in a coffee-hut, near a village which is inhabited only for one day in the week, namely the market-day; ſo that they found no inhabitant there, when they paſſed, except their landlord.

The inhabitants of thoſe parts had been long looking impatiently for rain. In order that they might make the moſt of it, when it ſhould fall, the peaſants had raiſed dykes along the heights, to direct the courſe of the waters upon their fields. The fields lay favourably for receiving it, being formed into terraces, and theſe ſupported by walls, with ditches to preſerve what water may be neceſſary to ſupport vegetation.

Next day, they came to a ſmall river which runs into the Zebid, and croſſed alſo ſeveral rivulets, which ſeem to be numerous in this part of the country. Here, for the firſt time ſince their departure from Beit-el-Fakih, they ſaw plantations of coffee-trees, along the ſides of the road. They now drew nearer to the river Zebid, of which a branch at this time was dry, and having its channel filled with reeds growing to the height of twenty feet, ſerved as a line of road, which was agreeably ſhaded by the reeds. In the evening they arrived at Udden. This town is ſmall and unprotected; it contains three hundred houſes, all of ſtone. The Imam keeps no Dola here. An hereditary Schiech, who is a vaſſal of the Imam's, is the governor. The Schiech reſides in a palace, ſtanding upon a high hill without the city.

Except the immediate neighbourhood of Udden, the whole tract of country through which they travelled in this excurſion, is thinly peopled. But the territory of the town is ſo much the more populous, on account of the abundant produce of its coffee-trees, which is eſteemed the very beſt coffee in all Arabia.

Leaving Udden on the 30th of March, they proceeded through a country which they found every where more populous. Near a village they ſaw a plain planted with very indifferent ſugar-canes.

Half the way lay over a very ſteep mountain, and had been formerly paved; but had now been long left without repairs. On this mountain, they ſaw a new inſtance of the care with which the Arabians provide for the accommodation of travellers. Here, for the firſt time, they found a Madgil, or reſervoir of excellent freſh water for the uſe of paſſengers. Such reſervoirs are of maſon-work, of a conical figure, and beſide a reſervoir, a vaſe always ſtands for drawing the water. Through all the fertile parts of Yemen, they found many of thoſe Madgils, by the ſides of the highways.

As ſtorms are pretty frequent among theſe mountains, ſome ſmall vaulted houſes have been built upon that over which they paſſed, to ſhelter travellers when ſurpriſed by any ſudden blaſt.

As they advanced on their journey, they ſaw ſeveral villages ſituate in a cultivated tract. The ſides of the hills were covered with rye, and had an agreeable aſpect. This part of the country, although in other reſpects very fertile, produces no coffee.

Through the whole of this journey, they were not once teized for paſſports, or required to pay duties of any ſort, nor ſubjected to any of thoſe difficulties, which, even in Europe, are ſo generally troubleſome to travellers. Although it was in Ramadan, they ſtill found their ordinary food, even in the moſt ſolitary coffee-houſes; and, in the towns, gave no offence, when they purchaſed thoſe articles which they preferred, in open day.

The town of Dsjobla is the capital of a diſtrict, and the ſeat of a Dola. It ſtands upon the brink of a ſteep precipice, and ſeems to contain about ſix hundred houſes, of a conſiderable height and a good appearance. Its ſtreets are paved; a caſe uncommon in Arabia. The Jews dwell here, and through all Yemen, in a ſeparate quarter without the city.

Though this place has been celebrated for ages; yet our hero could diſcover no remarkable inſcription about it. He was ſhewn the ruins of ſome moſques; but theſe did not appear to him very ancient. The town has neither a caſtle, nor walls. At ſome diſtance is a place encloſed with walls, where a Turkiſh Pacha has been interred: and this proves that the conqueſts of the Ottoman Porte have been extended even over theſe mountainous regions.

On the 31ſt of March, they continued their journey, by winding paths, over a tract of country diverſified by many inequalities of ſurface. They lay in a very large Simſera, the Arabic name for Caravanſary, ſituate on the ſide of a lofty hill.

From this Caravanſary they took a guide, to conduct them over a contiguous mountain, which was much higher, and on which, they had been told, that they ſhould ſee an old Arabic caſtle. On the ſummit of this mountain they accordingly found the ruins of a conſiderable building of hewn ſtone, the walls of which were flanked with towers. Here are ſtill two reſervoirs, of ſolid maſon-work. The whole ſtructure appears to be of great antiquity. From this eminence, a noble proſpect opens, of towns and villages ſpreading over the country, to a conſiderable diſtance.

From the Simſera, where they had ſlept, they proceeded down the hill by the highway, which paſſed between Mokha and Sana. This road is paved, and not at all incommodious to the traveller, although it winds around the ſteep declivity of a hill. They then croſſed a pretty large plain, and paſſed near by a great number of villages, coffee-huts, and madsjils.

They lay in one of the huts, which was ſo ill-provided in victuals, that they could procure nothing for ſupper, but a ſmall portion of bad bread. The landlord had even difficulty in gathering ſome forage to feed their aſſes. Early next day, they came within ſight of the citadel of Taœs, but it was noon before they reached or ſaw the city.

Not wiſhing to be known, and intending to ſee Taœs again on their journey to Sana, they did not enter the city, but continued their progreſs towards Tehama. They ſoon left the great road from Mokha, and turning weſtward, travelled along ſtony and irregular paths, without ſeeing any thing remarkable.

On the 3d of April, they continued their journey through a thinly inhabited and unfertile region. They were ſurpriſed at the quantities of ſtones which lay over the arable lands. Some of the inhabitants think them neceſſary, to prevent the lands from being parched by the ſun, but they rather mark negligence in the huſbandmen: and, indeed, to ſuch a degree is every exertion of induſtry, that might contribute to furniſh the neceſſaries of life, relaxed here, that they ſhould ſcarcely have found food in this diſtrict, if they had not taken the precaution to bring with them eggs and bread.

They then croſſed a plain covered with date-trees; but ſoon after, regaining the mountains, they entered the territory of Ibn Aklan, where the fields, though leſs ſtony, appeared to be equally ill-cultivated. The terrace walls were generally in a burſting, broken condition. This deſolation is the conſequence of a war between the Imam of Sana, and the independent

Schiech of the family of Aklan, to whom this diſtrict appertains. But, in the iſſue of the war, the Schiech was obliged to acknowledge the ſovereign authority of the Imam, and now no longer maintains troops.

Proceeding on their way to Tehama, they ſaw ſeveral villages, and croſſed ſome ſmall rivers. They paſſed the night in a detached coffee-hut: and even the maſter of it left them by night, and retired to a neighbouring village.

On the 4th of April, they travelled along bad roads, among hills, and croſſed ſeveral times over the Wadi Suradsji, a conſiderably large and rapid river, even at that time, although no rain had fallen for a long while. They ſaw no village near, but ſeveral coffee-huts.

Continuing their journey, they paſſed through ſeveral ſmall rivers, which appeared all to empty themſelves into one large river. To the ſouth they had a view of a large chain of mountains; but the only habitations that they ſaw in this hilly region, were a few inns. They came at length to a large village, containing many kubbets, and at no great diſtance from Hœs, where they arrived this evening.

The city of Hœs, twelve miles diſtant from Taœs, and ſituate in the Tehama, is ſmall and ill-built. However, it is the capital of the diſtrict, and the ſeat of a Dola, who occupies a ſmall fortreſs. A conſiderable quantity of earthen-ware is manufactured here, eſpecially coarſe drinking cups. This diſtrict is but of narrow extent, being bounded on one ſide by Zebid, and on the other, by the territories of the Schiech of Ibn Aklan.

They left Hœs on the 5th of April, and, after paſſing ſeveral villages and coffee-huts, arrived on the ſame evening at Zebid. They paſſed without wetting their feet, over the river Suradsji, which they had lately ſeen ſo large among the hills. But as they proceeded through the beautiful and cultivated plains which it watered, they perceived both the cauſe of its diminution, and the effects which it produced.

Their way from Zebid to Beit-el-Fakih was the ſame already deſcribed. They arrived at the latter city on the 6th of April.

Upon leaving the mountains, they felt the heat exceſſive. They halted to reſt themſelves at an inn in a village between Hœs and Zebid. There they were refreſhed by an agreeable breeze, although all was calm and torrid without; for the walls being built of looſe ſtones, the many chinks among which naturally admitted a current of air. They found this coolneſs a great refreſhment amidſt the burning heat which prevailed all around. Our hero imprudently ſat down on the ground, without wrapping himſelf in his large cloak, and being faint, from the heat and fatigues of his journey, he fell aſleep. This indiſcretion coſt him dear; he was in a violent fever before they reached Zebid, which continuing after his return to Beit-el-Fakih, rendered him unable to bear any fatigue.

On their arrival in this city, upon the 6th of April, they found Mr. Van Haven likewiſe indiſpoſed. He had been attacked with a ſcurvy, and was weary of the mode of life to which they were confined. They had long wanted wine and brandy; they were diſſuaded from coffee, as being of a heating quality. Kiſcher, although eſteemed wholeſome, is but an inſipid drink; and through all Tehama the water is very bad. Their cook could procure them no ſuch ſimple diſhes of food as thoſe uſed by the Arabs, a nation diſtinguiſhed for temperance. Upon this account, they daily ate animal food, although their friends, who knew the climate better, had adviſed them to abſtain from it. Their perſiſting in this, doubtleſs, greatly injured their health, and was, in a particular manner hurtful to Mr. Van Haven, who, except to ſit down at table, never roſe from his ſofa.

The firſt day of Bairam happened this year to be the 14th of April. On this day the Dola proceeded out of the city with a multitude of attendants, to perform prayers in a large encloſed ſquare area, in the open air. This feſtival laſts three days, during which the Arabs indulge in feſtive amuſements, and begin no piece of work, nor enter upon any journey.

On the 17th of April, they ſaw an inſtance at Beit-el-Fakih, of the coolneſs of temper, and firmneſs of mind, by which the Arab character is diſtinguiſhed. The ſouthern end of a houſe caught fire; and, as the wind blew ſtrong from the ſouth, a great part of the city was ſoon burnt down. The inhabitants, however, retained their uſual tranquillity. No cries nor complaints were heard in the ſtreets, and when addreſſed with expreſſions of condolence, upon their misfortune, they would calmly reply, "It is the will of God." Our travellers occupied a houſe with ſtone walls, in that part of the town which was ſpared by the flames; they went upon the roof, and ſaw the roofs of the other houſes crowded with people, who were beholding the conflagration with the utmoſt indifference. A poor ſcholar, who uſed often to viſit them, came, after removing his effects to a place of ſecurity, to ſee them, and, with an air of indifference, marked the inſtant when the flames reached his own houſe. When ſuch an accident happens, indeed, an Arab does not loſe much; as the fire approaches, he removes his goods, and takes refuge, either in a different quarter of the city, or in the open country. He thus loſes nothing but his paltry hut, which is rebuilt eaſily, and at a ſmall expence.

As ſoon as M. Niebuhr and Mr. Van Haven were ſufficiently recovered to bear the fatigues of travelling, it was reſolved, that their whole party ſhould leave Beit-el-Fakih. They ſet out, therefore, on the 20th of April, and took the road to Zebid.

In Tehama, it has been obſerved, people generally travel by night, rather than in the day. But if they had regulated their journies in this manner, Mr. Forſkal could not have continued to examine and collect plants, nor could M. Niebuhr have ſurveyed the face of the country. Both, therefore, reſolved to proceed forward by day, taking the owner of their aſſes to attend them, and to leave the reſt of their party, with the ſervants and the baggage, to come up by night.

In conſequence of this arrangement, they ſet out alone next morning, and paſſed through the plains contiguous to the river Zebid, and by the canals which are ſupplied from it. This beautiful tract of country is about two miles in breadth. The peaſants were buſy in cultivating the fields, and raiſing earthen dykes about them, to retain the water for a certain time, after which it would be conveyed into other fields, to water and fertilize them in like manner. From theſe fields to Mokha, hardly any villages are to be ſeen. The whole intervening country is dry, ſandy, and covered with that coarſe ſpecies of graſs with which the houſes are thatched here. On theſe ſandy plains the heat is exceſſive: they were overjoyed whenever they could ſhelter themſelves for a little, in any paltry coffee-hut.

On the ſecond and third days of their journey, they ſaw nothing but coffee-huts, till they, at laſt, arrived in the large village of Mauſchid. They were there alarmed with an account of a ſkirmiſhing war between two families, in which a man had been killed on the day preceding. Our travellers were aſſured, that ſuch private quarrels never interrupt the public tranquillity. When an Arab happens to be killed, his family may compromiſe with the murderer, for a ſum of money, or may demand of the magiſtrate to put him to death; or, if unwilling to receive ſatisfaction in either of theſe ways, may declare a reſolution of taking vengeance themſelves upon the perſon of the aſſaſſin, or upon his relations.

In that ſame village, a Sub-Dola reſides, with a few ſoldiers from the troops of the Dola of Hœs. Here, as at Zebid, a tax was demanded for each of our travellers camels. By their agreement with the camel-driver, he was obliged to diſcharge all demands of this nature; but he contrived to ſhift this payment, by entering into a ſecret underſtanding with the officers who were to receive it. They told M. Niebuhr, that he muſt either pay it himſelf, or ſuffer them to open and inſpect his baggage. However, on his threatening to complain to the judge of the place, they deſiſted from their inſolent pretenſions. Thus the eſtabliſhment of cuſtoms and cuſtom-houſe officers, is every where a ſource of endleſs villanies and vexations.

They paſſed through two other villages and ſeveral more coffee-huts. They ſaw, near the road, a ſalt-work, from which ſalt is carried to the mountains upon camels. The whole of this way is over ſands.

After a very diſagreeable journey from Beit-el-Fakih, they entered the city of Mokha on the 23d of April. All who travel by land to Mokha, are obliged to enter by the ſame gate; and Europeans are under the humiliating neceſſity of alighting from their aſſes, and proceeding to their lodgings on foot. They therefore alighted while their baggage was inſpected. Thoſe who examined that, aſked neither their names nor their paſſports, but directed them to a Kan, where Turks lodge, and where, as they ſuppoſed, they might poſſibly find ſome of their countrymen.

At the time of their arrival, there was an Engliſh merchant from Bombay in the city. They were unwilling to addreſs themſelves to him, leſt he might think them vagrants of ſuſpicious character. Beſides, they had letters of recommendation from their friends at Jidda, Loheia, and Beit-el-Fakih, to the Dola, to the Engliſh interpreter, a Banian in great credit, and to a merchant of the city, whoſe name was Seid Salek. Having obſerved, that the Muſſulmans treated thoſe Pagans from India, commonly in a very contemptuous manner, they were in no haſte to begin an acquaintance with the Banian, whom they found afterwards to be a very worthy man. They were already acquainted with Seid Salek's ſon Iſmael, who had been their companion in the paſſage from Jidda to Loheia, and had made advances to obtain their friendſhip. This Iſmael, beſides, had early prepoſſeſſed them in his favour, by ſpeaking Dutch tolerably well. They unluckily, therefore, addreſſed themſelves to him in preference to every other perſon.

Theſe two, the father and ſon, were accuſtomed to attach themſelves to ſtrangers with diſhoneſt views; and the ſon had ſtudied ſome of the languages of Europe, in order that he might be the better able to accompliſh his knaviſh purpoſes. They had enticed a Dutch veſſel from Batavia to Mokha, the maſter of which falling, without reſource, into their hands, was cruelly duped and plundered. By their intrigues, they had kept every other merchant at a diſtance; ſo that, with reſpect to the ſale of the cargo, he was abſolutely at their mercy. They had hoped to make their gain of our travellers in the ſame manner; and when they ſaw their hopes of this fruſtrated, laboured, out of ſpite, to do them every ill office in their power.

Our heroes paid their firſt viſit to Iſmael. He received them ſeemingly with great kindneſs, treated them with punch, and invited a renegado from India, who was ſettled as a merchant at Mokha, to keep them company. This renegado was a deep drinker, and endeavoured, but without ſucceſs, to make them drunk. Iſmael adviſed them to reſume their European dreſs, and not to diſcover their knowledge of Arabic, leſt they ſhould be taken for renegadoes. He endeavoured to diſſuade them from their intended journey to Sana; telling them, that thoſe highlanders were a ſavage, inhoſpitable race, and the Imam treated all ſtrangers who had the misfortune not to be Muſſulmans, in the moſt abuſive manner. He was alſo careful to prepoſſeſs them againſt the people of Mokha, who by his account, entertained inveterate hatred againſt Europeans: but encouraged them, by offering the powerful protection of his father, to ward off every danger or mortification that they might have to fear. In ſhort, his whole converſation was of ſuch a nature, that M. Niebuhr could not help perceiving from it, that travellers muſt be groſsly impoſed upon, whenever they truſt credulouſly to the relations they receive from the inhabitants of the country through which they travel. Had they not known Arabic, they might have returned into Europe with very falſe impreſſions of every thing in Arabia.

The only piece of ſervice that this man did our Europeans, was, in immediately hiring for them a houſe that was large enough to lodge them all.

From what happened to them firſt, after their arrival in this city, they found reaſon to ſuſpect, that Iſmael had ſecretly inſtigated the under officers of the cuſtoms to haraſs and oppreſs them, in order that they might be thus forced to throw themſelves into a blind and implicit dependence upon him. Their baggage was carried ſtraight to the cuſtom-houſe, where was the Dola in perſon. They begged, that thoſe articles which they needed for immediate uſe, might firſt be inſpected: but the officers would begin with examining their cheſts of natural curioſities, which they had ſent by ſea from Loheia, and which had been kept here unopened, ever ſince the arrival of the veſſel by which they had been brought. In one of the cheſts were fiſhes from the Arabic gulf, preſerved in ſpirits of wine, and encloſed in a ſmall barrel. They begged the officers of the cuſtoms not to open the barrel; for that the fiſhes ſmelled diſagreeably. They, however, not only opened it, but ſearched it with a pointed inſtrument of iron, and at length emptied it entirely of the contents. The Arabs, who have a violent averſion to ſtrong liquors, were much prepoſſeſſed againſt them, when they had the ſmell of the ſpirituous liquor; and were no leſs diſpleaſed to find the fætor of the dead fiſhes ſpread through the whole cuſtom-houſe.

They inſiſted that they ſhould, at leaſt, let them have their beds. But, without liſtening to their requeſt, they continued to toſs over and examine their cheſts, which contained ſpecimens of ſhells, at the riſk of breaking them. The Arabs could not comprehend how a man of ſenſe could collect ſuch trifles, without ſome intereſted views: and they accordingly accuſed them of intending to abuſe the Dola, by producing only articles of trifling value, to amuſe his people, while they concealed their more precious effects.

At laſt, appeared a veſſel in which Mr. Forſkal had preſerved ſome ſerpents in ſpirits of wine. At ſight of this, the Arabs were terrified. A perſon, who was ſervant to the Dola, obſerved, that thoſe Franks had come hither to poiſon the Muſſulmans, and that it was in order to their ſucceſs in this, that one of them pretended to be a phyſician. The Dola, who was a mild old man, and till now did not ſeem to have conceived any prejudice againſt them, became ſuddenly in a paſſion when this idea was ſuggeſted, and ſwore, that they ſhould not remain a ſingle night in the city. The reader will readily conceive, how the inſolence of the people of the cuſtom-houſe, and of the attending mob, would naturally riſe upon this. The cuſtom-houſe was abruptly ſhut, and they could obtain none of their goods.

While they were in the cuſtom-houſe, a ſervant came to tell them, that their books and other things had been all thrown out of the windows of the houſe which they had hired, and the door ſhut againſt them. They went to ſee what might be the reaſon of that outrage, but could find neither Iſmael nor his father. One of the citizens, who was a friend of Iſmael's, attacked them with abuſive language. No perſon would afford them lodgings; but every one looked upon them as vagrants who would inſtantly be driven out of the city in diſgrace. At length, one of the citizens expreſſed himſelf willing to receive them into his houſe, if he were ſure that government would not puniſh him for it. They led him to the Cadi, who aſſured him, that he ſhould riſk nothing by lodging them. In Turkey, the Cadies are reputed very corrupt and ſelfiſh: but in Yemen, our travellers found them perſons of great worth and integrity, earneſt to do prompt and candid juſtice. The Engliſh merchant, Mr. Francis Scott, had heard of their difficulties and perplexity; and although they had not yet viſited him, he gave them an invitation to dinner, which they accepted with the greateſt pleaſure. He expreſſed a warm deſire to ſerve them; and they now perceived, how fooliſhly they had acted in not applying, at firſt, to him and his Banian interpreter. However, they durſt not break off abruptly with Iſmael and his father.

When they could not obtain any of their things from the cuſtom-houſe, Iſmael adviſed them to offer the Dola a preſent of fifty ducats; and hinted that he ſhould be the bearer of the preſent, for that the Dola would not condeſcend to ſpeak with Chriſtians. They had no intention of making ſo large a preſent, ſtill leſs of intruſting him with it. But, after various reflections, they at laſt reſolved to ſacrifice thoſe fifty ducats upon the occaſion; and it was agreed, that M. Niebuhr ſhould wait upon the Dola with this preſent, next day. On his way, however, he learned, that the Dola having been exerciſing his troops, had received a wound in the foot. Upon receiving this information, he returned home; hoping that their phyſician would be ſent for, and that they might thus avoid the expence of the preſent.

But, as Mr. Cramer was not called by the Dola, and their effects ſtill remained at the cuſtom-houſe, they underſtood that a conſiderable preſent was expected from them. Mr. Forſkal had hitherto been always refuſed admiſſion by the ſervants of the Dola, upon pretence, that their maſter would not treat with them otherwiſe, than through the medium of Iſmael and his father; yet, he now undertook to make a new attempt to obtain an audience. When he had explained the purpoſe of his viſit, he was admitted, and ſo graciouſly received, that the Dola kindly chid him for not applying directly to himſelf at the firſt. Next day, he in his turn, ſent them a preſent of four lambs, and two ſmall bags of rice; and at the ſame time gave orders, that their effects ſhould be delivered to them, without being more particularly examined.

The Dola, when he received his wound, had been adviſed by the principal perſons about him, to ſend for the European phyſician. But he was afraid, that Mr. Cramer might, in revenge for the ill-treatment which they had ſuffered, adminiſter to him improper medicines, or might apply heating drugs, which the Arabs think very dangerous. But the Cadi repreſented to him, that no perſon had yet complained of our travellers; and that it was nowiſe ſtrange, that a phyſician ſhould have dead ſerpents in his poſſeſſion, theſe being uſed as ingredients in ſome medical compoſitions. The Europeans, he further told him, ought not to be deſpiſed or ſlighted for collecting ſhells or inſects, of which the Arabs knew not the uſe.

Theſe repreſentations, and the alarming ſtate of the wound, which was becoming worſe, in the hands of four or five empirics, induced the Dola to ſend, on the 4th of May, to inquire whether they were ſtill angry with him, or if their phyſician would undertake to cure him. They were all overjoyed to hear that the prejudices which the governor had conceived againſt them were ſo perfectly removed, and Mr. Cramer gladly offered his ſervices. No ſooner had their anſwer been carried to the Dola, than he ſent one of his ſervants with a mule for Mr. Cramer. Europeans, when they paſs before the Dola's palace, are uſually obliged to alight and walk, if they happen to be mounted: but, to evince to the people the entire reconciliation that had taken place between the Dola and them, Mr. Cramer was permitted to paſs through this forbidden ground, and even to enter the court of the palace without diſmounting.

They had, after this, frequent opportunities of ſeeing the Dola, and teſtifying their friendſhip to him. Mr. Forſkal one day related to him, how they had been inſulted and turned out by the owner of their firſt lodging. The Dola promiſed him ſatisfaction, and made the perſon of whom he complained, be caſt, that very night, into priſon. Iſmael, enraged to ſee his friend puniſhed for an act of inſolence which he himſelf had prompted, threatened the Europeans with a mob, by which they might be torn in pieces. Mr. Forſkal, although regardleſs of his threats, waited on the Dola, and entreated him to liberate the priſoner, and only recommend to him, to be more civil to ſtrangers in future.

This change in their ſituation, rendered Mokha much leſs unpleaſant to them than it had been at firſt. But diſeaſe began now to fall ſeverely upon them. M. Niebuhr had been attacked, ſoon after his arrival here, with a violent dyſentery, from which, however, he recovered, after fifteen days illneſs. Mr. Van Haven, who had been ill at Beit-el-Fakih, became much worſe here. After walking out in the cool of the evening, he was tolerably well through the night; but the heat of the day he was quite unable to bear. At laſt he ventured to lie for ſeveral nights ſucceſſively, upon the roof of the houſe, in the open air, and with his face uncovered. On the night of the 24th of May, he caught cold, and was ſo ill in the morning, that it was neceſſary for two ſervants to carry him down into his apartment. His fever was become doubly violent, and he was delirious by the evening. He then ſunk into a deep lethargy, and expired in the night.

The cuſtom of interring the dead in a coffin, is unknown in Arabia. They had one made, however, for their deceaſed friend, in order to preſerve his remains from any accident. The captain of an Engliſh ſhip lent them ſix of his ſailors to bear the body to the European burying-place. All the Engliſh in Mokha attended at the funeral: and the obſequies were performed with more decency, and with leſs interruption than thoſe of a Conſul at Cairo, which were diſturbed by the crowding of the people to witneſs the ſolemnity, and by the robbery of the audacious Bedouins. On this occaſion, the Arabs of Yemen ſhewed themſelves reaſonable and humane.

After the death of Mr. Van Haven, they began to think ſeriouſly of leaving Mokha, and making a tour into the interior parts of Yemen. They were divided in opinion, with regard to the plan upon which they ought to regulate their ſubſequent proceedings; ſome being diſpoſed to remain another year in Arabia, while the reſt were deſirous of returning immediately to Europe. But they all agreed to ſet out without further delay, upon their journey to Sana.

M. Niebuhr and Mr. Forſkal had made ſeveral excurſions in a very ſimple guiſe, and almoſt without attendants. But as their whole party were now to travel together, they could not well go without a certain train to accompany them. They could not, however, travel in this ſtyle without permiſſion from the Dola, which would not be eaſily obtained; as it could not be thought, that he would willingly ſuffer his phyſician to leave him before his wound was healed. They nevertheleſs ventured to make the requeſt: but the Dola refuſed them upon a fair pretext. He told them, that he muſt firſt write to Sana, to know whether the Imam would receive them, and that they could not leave Mokha till the Imam had returned an anſwer.

When thus refuſed permiſſion to proceed to Sana, they begged that they might, at leaſt, be allowed to remove to Taces, in the mean time, for the ſake of their health. Even this was refuſed them. They then propoſed to the Dola, to leave their phyſician behind. But the Arabs feared, that the pain of ſeparation from his friends, might ſecretly diſtreſs Mr. Cramer, ſo as to render him more negligent of his patient's cure.

When they complained of theſe reſtraints to the principal men of the city, they obſerved, that it was hard to conceive what rendered them ſo impatient to depart; for that by going to the Highlands, they ſhould only endanger their health more, as thoſe who went thither from the burning ſands of Tehama, were commonly attacked with a violent fever immediately upon their arrival.

At length, when they were much at a loſs how to proceed, a ſurgical empiric luckily came in, to free them from their perplexity. He promiſed to cure the Dola's wound within eight days; and their phyſician was immediately diſmiſſed. They, at the ſame time, obtained permiſſion to ſet out for Taœs, and were favoured with a letter of recommendation to the Dola of that city. Mr. Cramer received for his fee, a mule with a ſaddle and bridle, and Indian ſtuff for a ſuit of clothes in the Arab faſhion. As an additional proof of his friendſhip, the Dola ſent one of his ſervants to attend them. They ſhould have been well pleaſed to excuſe this inſtance of his attention; for his ſervant was only a ſpy, under a more honourable name, to watch over their conduct, and hinder them from going further than Taœs.

Not wiſhing to run any riſk of loſing their ready money, they put it all into the hands of the Engliſh interpreter, who gave them bills upon his countrymen, the Banians at Taœs and Sana. This was the firſt time they could get bills of Exchange in the Eaſt.

Leaving Mokha with pleaſure, as their ſtay in it had been not a little diſagreeable, they proceeded, on the 9th of June, through a dry and deſart country, and, after advancing four miles, reached Muſa, a village ſituate juſt upon the confines of the Highlands. This village is known to the Europeans, who ſometimes come hither in parties for pleaſure. But the buildings are wretched, and the heat is as oppreſſive here as at Mokha. The water is, however, good, and the richer inhabitants of Mokha ſend hither for it; as that in the wells immediately around the city is very bad.

Next day they travelled along the channel of a large river, which, in the rainy ſeaſon, diſembogues itſelf into the ſea near Mokha; but is commonly loſt, at no great diſtance from its head, in the ſands of Tehama. They paſſed through ſeveral villages; and near the laſt of theſe, remarked a ſmall houſe, at which duties are paid for all goods ſent to the independent country of Jaſa: goods paſſing into the ſtates of the Imam, pay no ſuch duties.

In the hilly country, the roads are too bad for travelling by night. They ſaw, as they proceeded, a large village, and near it, the fertile hills of Hammara, which belong to Schiech Ibn Aklan; but the inhabitants of the village are not ſubject to his authority. They had lately ſlain two men, and when the Schiech ſent troops to chaſtiſe them, they retreated to the ſummits of the hills. Our travellers happened, fortunately, to enter one of the large inns called by the Arabians, Mattrach; for, early in the afternoon, a violent ſtorm aroſe, and ſuch a quantity of rain fell, that all the highways were flooded, and it became impoſſible for them to continue their journey.

On the 12th of June, after paſſing through ſeveral villages, and croſſing ſome fertile fields, they arrived at Dorebat, a town ten miles diſtant from Mokha. It is the capital of the territories of Schiech Ibn Aklan, who reſides here; its ſituation on the ſummit of a hill, renders it naturally ſtrong. At the foot of the hill ſtands a town, the public priſon in which is ſaid to be the moſt diſmal in Yemen. Before the door of the priſon in Dorebat, they ſaw perſons who had been guilty only of very trivial faults, confined, a number of them together, by one chain in the open air. Near them ſtood a guard of ſoldiers of the Imam's, whom the Schiech is obliged to maintain. Continuing their journey from Dorebat, they found on their way, a number of fine villages, and many coffee-huts, and madsjils, or reſervoirs for water, in a columnar form. A violent ſtorm again compelled them to halt. Next day they ſaw from a hill, the caſtle of Taœs, ſtill at a diſtance. Early on the 13th they reached the city.

Immediately after their arrival, they ſent their letter from the Dola at Mokha, to the Dola of Taœs, who ſtraightway required them to wait upon him at his houſe. He ſeemed to be in a very good humour, and made them an offer of pipes, and kaad (the buds of a certain tree which the Arabs chew, as the Indians do Betel); but they did not reliſh this drug. He related to them, how that a report had been ſpread at Taœs, of their having brought ſeveral cheſts full of ſerpents to Mokha. He ordered them to be conducted into a houſe, the proprietor of which he had lately impriſoned; and ſent them, as a preſent, two lambs, with a ſmall quantity of meal. They, in turn, offered him a piece of India ſtuff.

Next day, they delivered their other letters of recommendation from their friends at Mokha. They were well received every where. The Dola of Mokha's ſervant had the preſumption to attend them on all their viſits, and impoſed his company on them, in like manner, when they received the viſits of others. They could not imagine whether this were done out of vanity, or in order to keep a ſtrict eye on all their motions.

They found the temperature of this country to agree entirely with their conſtitutions. Inſtead of the oppreſſive heats under which they had fainted at Mokha, they had here, almoſt every evening, refreſhing rains.

The city of Taœs ſtands at the foot of the fertile hill of Sabber. It is encompaſſed with a wall, between ſixteen and thirty feet thick, and flanked with ſeveral towers. The fortreſs of Kahhre ſtands in the circuit of the wall: its walls are faced with burnt bricks, but within conſiſt of bricks, which inſtead of being burnt have been only dried in the ſun. This city has only two gates; and each of theſe is after the Arabic faſhion, fortified with three towers. Only two of them are in a condition to bear cannon. The garriſon conſiſted at this time of ſix hundred men. Theſe works lie ſo under the command of the neighbouring heights, that they would afford no defence against any but an army of Arabs, who are ſtrangers, in a manner, to the uſe of artillery.

The ſaint who has been aſſumed as the patron of the city of Taœs, is the famous Iſmael Mulk, who, according to tradition, was once king of this country. His remains are buried in a moſque which bears his name. But none have been permitted to approach his tomb, ſince once that the ſaint thought proper to perform a miracle, which gave diſſatisfaction to the rulers.

Near the moſque of Iſmael Mulk is a garden, which was poſſeſſed by Iſchia his ſon. In it there was ſhewn to M. Niebuhr a large baſon, and an hydraulic machine, which in its time muſt have been an ornament of no ſmall conſequence; but all is now in a ſtate of decay, and almoſt ruinous.

In the ſame city, and in its neighbourhood, are many deſerted and ruinous moſques; one of them, in a ſtyle of architecture unuſual in this country, ſhould ſeem to have been built by ſome Turkiſh Pacha. The devout founders of theſe moſques, if they intended thereby to tranſmit their memory to poſterity, have failed of their purpoſe. Their names have been forgotten, as the moſques have ſunk into ruins. The laſt lords of Taœs have made a more judicious choice of buildings to diſtinguiſh themſelves by; they have erected noble palaces for themſelves and their poſterity, and were content with a ſmall kubbet for their oratory and burial-place: thus have they ſpared the lands, which muſt otherwiſe have been appropriated to the maintenance of the clergy of an uſeleſs moſque: their palaces are ſtill ſtanding, and are the ornaments of the city, which indeed does not poſſeſs many other fine buildings. Since the laſt war, many of the houſes have remained ruinous, and ſome of the ſquares have even been converted into fields and meadows. The ruins of two ancient cities are ſtill to be ſeen in the neighbourhood of Taœs. One of them is Thobad, which is ſituate near Mount Sabber; ſome parts of its walls, with a large moſque belonging to it, are ſtill ſtanding: the other is Oddena, which ſtands at no great diſtance from Thobad, upon the ſummit of Mount Sabber, over againſt Kahhre. The latter was the place of the reſidence of the kings of this country; its only remains are the ruins of ſome moſques. Iſmael Mulk having built his tomb at the foot of the rock of Kahhre, ſome of his devout ſubjects choſe to live near their ſaint; others following their example, Oddena was thus abandoned, and Taœs built. So this city, like Loheia, Beit-el-Fakih, and Mokha, owes its riſe to a ſaint.

The Dola who now governed this city had been an officer in the Imam's army, and had riſen rapidly to the rank of Nakib, without owing his fortune to his birth, as moſt of theſe governors do. His government was very extenſive, comprehending both Mount Sabber and the territory of Hodsjerie, in which are a number of Schiechs, whoſe families have, for theſe ſeveral centuries, poſſeſſed ſmall and almoſt independent lordſhips. They pay taxes to the Imam, but value themſelves much on their nobility of deſcent, and treat their governors with contempt. Our travellers Dola had already had ſeveral differences with thoſe haughty nobles, who refuſed ſubmiſſion to his authority. He had put one of the mutinous Schiechs in priſon, and had detained a female ſlave whom the Arab was carrying away with him. An order from the Imam, however, obliged him to ſet both at liberty; but he remained in indignation againſt thoſe Schiechs in general. He ſeized the firſt occaſion that offered, and ſent out half a dozen ſoldiers among them, who, according to their maſter's orders, conducted themſelves with great inſolence towards thoſe highlanders. The Schiechs could not bear ſuch inſults; but made an inſurrection, and maſſacred them all. Since that period, nobody from Taœs has ventured to viſit the highlands without expoſing his life to extreme danger; it was even ſaid, that the Schiechs would never be quiet till the Imam ſhould recall the Dola.

The exuberant fertility of Mount Sabber affords, according to the accounts of the Arabs, plants of every ſpecies that is to be found any where elſe through the world. Mr. Forſkal had this mountain daily before his eyes; but, to his infinite mortification, could not obtain permiſſion to botanize upon it. He propoſed to bring a Schiech from the mountains at his own expence, under whoſe protection he might go out upon his herbarizing expeditions without danger. But the Dola put a negative upon all his propoſals, and would only ſuffer him to take a ſhort ramble over Mount Saurek. He ſet out on the 20th of June, and returned on the 22d, having found the villages in that diſtrict deſerted, in conſequence of the intolerable exactions of the Dola, which had forced the inhabitants to retire and ſettle elſewhere. In ſo wretched a country, Mr. Forſkal could neither find proviſions, nor travel about in ſafety.

In order to make the moſt of his ſtay at Taœs, M. Niebuhr wiſhed to make ſome excurſions through the interior country, but durſt not attempt them, on account of the prevailing diſturbances. He was at laſt diſpoſed to content himſelf with copying an inſcription in the fortreſs; and Mr. Forſkal reſumed his intention of ſending for a Schiech from Mount Sabber. The Dola agreed to their wiſhes; but at midnight he ſent to tell them, that he had received a letter from the Dola of Mokha, requiring them to return immediately to the latter city. They ſuſpected this letter to be a pretence, and refuſed to comply. Early in the morning, however, camels were ſent to carry them away, but they ſent them back. With Turks they durſt not have done ſo much.

They could not comprehend what were the Dola's views, unleſs, perhaps, he might, like the Dola of Mokha, intend to extort ſome conſiderable preſent from them. Into theſe views they had no diſpoſition to enter, and therefore ſought a private audience of him, in hopes of bringing him to reaſon. Their ſervant was ſeveral times ſent back under different pretexts. At laſt, Mr. Forſkal obtained acceſs to the Dola, and begged of him only to permit them to wait till they ſhould receive the Imam's anſwer, without mentioning their little ſchemes. But the governor cut him ſhort, ſaying; "Since you would not credit my ſervants, I myſelf order you to be gone to Mokha to-morrow."

Seeing no means to elude the Dola's orders, they had already packed up their goods, when a favourable change ſuddenly took place upon their circumſtances. A letter was brought them by expreſs from the Dola of Mokha, and in it were three others; one to the Imam, another to his vizier, and a third to the Dola of Taœs. He informed them, that the Imam gave them permiſſion to go to Sana, and wiſhed them to carry their curioſities with them. He acquainted the Dola of Taœs with their maſter's orders, and begged him to favour their departure to Sana. Mr. Forſkal went inſtantly with this letter to the governor, but could not obtain acceſs to him, and was obliged to give it to his ſervant.

They now thought their affairs in a good train, and would even have ſet out without troubling the Dola further, if they could have obtained camels without his interpoſition on their behalf. Thoſe who hire theſe cattle are united in a ſort of corporation; and travellers are obliged to apply to the head of the company, who has recourſe upon the owners of the camels, and makes them furniſh, in turn, the number which may be wanted. Unluckily the Dola himſelf was at the head of this company, and was obliged to furniſh camels in his turn. They let him know that they were about to depart. He anſwered, that camels were ready to convey them back to Mokha, but that the orders reſpecting their journey to Sana regarded only the Dola of Mokha.

In the perplexity to which they were reduced by this conduct of the Dola's, they knew not what to do. Several inſtances of the equity and generoſity of the Cadi were in the mean time related to them, in which he had brought the governor to reaſon in caſes ſimilar to theirs. They made their complaints therefore to that judge, and ſhewed him their letters from Mokha. He thought the Dola's conduct very unreaſonable, and immediately wrote to him to beware of doing any thing in contradiction to the orders of the Imam. The Dola replied, that he did not hinder their journey to Sana, but, aſked them to ſtay one day, till he ſhould write his letters to court upon the occaſion. They offered to ſtay two or three days. Notwithſtanding this, the Dola's ſervants came next morning, and ordered them in his name, to depart to Mokha. They had again recourſe to the Cadi, who being previouſly informed of all that had happened, had, in the morning, written to the Dola, that he ſhould not act in a harſh or intereſted manner with them; for they were ſtrangers. The Baſkateb told them in the evening, that the Dola was ſorry, that his ſervants had come to them with a meſſage in his name which he had given them no orders to deliver. But upon this head they knew ſufficiently what to think.

The Dola of Mokha's ſervant could not now be of further uſe to them; they diſmiſſed him therefore with a handſome reward. But as they ſtill wanted a guide who knew the interior parts of Yemen, they begged the Cadi to direct them to ſuch a one; and he politely ſent them an Arab, who afterwards accompanied them to Mokha, and with whom they were perfectly ſatisfied. The Dola ſhewed likewiſe a diſpoſition to make amends by kindneſs for the trouble he had given them, and ordered one of his ſervants to accompany them on their journey. This man had the addreſs to ſtipulate before-hand, in the preſence of ſeveral perſons of diſtinction, for the wages which they were to pay him.

The Cadi, unaſked, had the generoſity to give our travellers a letter of recommendation to the Imam's vizier, in which he told him, that he ſhould beware of believing any thing that might be related to him to the diſadvantage of theſe Franks. They could have wiſhed to make the judge a preſent of a watch; his probity and beneficence having inſpired them with the higheſt veneration for his character, and the livelieſt gratitude for his favours. But they were informed that he would accept no ſuch thing, leſt he might appear to have intereſted views in taking part with them.

They could not ſee the Dola before their departure; he avoided receiving their viſit under pretence of illneſs. Their friends however aſſured them, that he was fallen ſeriouſly ill, in conſequence of the uneaſineſs which their obſtinate reſiſtance to his will had given him. Their firmneſs was indeed ſaid to have made him contemptible in the eyes of the inhabitants of the city.

His conduct had occaſioned them no leſs vexation. M. Niebuhr even blamed the uneaſineſs with which Mr. Forſkal was at that time agitated, as the firſt occaſion of the illneſs which ſoon after hurried him to the grave.

From Taœs they ſet out on the 28th of June; and for the firſt two days, found no human habitations on their way, except ſome paltry coffee-huts, a few villages, and a ſmall town; and moſt of the villages were falling into ruins. The country is uncultivated, and almoſt deſolate; which ſeems to be owing to the late wars for the ſucceſſion to the throne of Taœs.

On the third day they reached Mharras. A violent ſtorm ſurpriſed them, and gave them an opportunity of remarking how the torrents, ruſhing upon ſuch occaſions from the hills, produce the gullies, one of which they paſſed on an arch of ſolid ſtone.

The great inns which are ſcattered over the country from the Tehama thus far, are called Mattrach. Theſe are private houſes, the maſters of which furniſh travellers with their meals, which are commonly very indifferent. Between Mharras and Sana, almoſt at every half day's journey, ſtands a large Simſera of burnt bricks. Theſe edifices, like the caravanſeras in Turkey, have been built by wealthy perſons for the accommodation of travellers, and afford ſafe lodging, but no other ſort of food than coffee, rice, bread, and butter. The traveller muſt bring his other proviſions with him.

On the 1ſt of July, having croſſed Mount Mharres upon a paved road, they entered a more fertile country, and after paſſing ſeveral villages and a number of madſjils, arrived at Abb. This city ſtands on the height of a hill, is ſurrounded by a ſtrong wall, and contains 800 houſes, moſt of which are in a good faſhion of building. Its ſtreets are paved, and it has a good many ſmall moſques. Beſide one of theſe is a large reſervoir, which receives water by an aqueduct, and ſupplies all the houſes in the city.

At a ſmall diſtance, between Abb and Dsjobla are two rivulets, one of which running weſtward, is increaſed into the river Zebid; and the other running ſouthward, forms Meidam, a river which diſembogues itſelf into the ſea near Aiden. The different courſes of theſe rivers, two of the moſt conſiderable in the country, and the circumſtance of their taking their riſe here, ſeem to indicate this as the moſt elevated ſpot in the mountainous part of the Imam's dominions. The height of Mount Sumara, which they paſſed on the day following, is another proof of this. They travelled down Mount Abb, along good paved roads, and then croſſed a country of a varied ſurface, having villages, madſjils, and houſes for the protection of travellers, ſcattered over it. No remarkable place was to be ſeen except the city of Muchoder, ſtanding on a hill, and the ſeat of a Dola.

After ſpending the night in a Simſera, they began to aſcend Mount Sumara, a hill much higher than Mharres, by ways which had been rendered acceſſible to camels by being paved, and carried in a winding direction round thoſe places, which were too ſteep for direct acceſs. Half way up the hill is the village of Menſil, in which is a ſuperb Simſera built all of hewn ſtone. They obtained a convenient apartment upon the roof, of which Mr. Forſkal, who was now extremely weak, ſtood very much in need.

Here they remained during the next day, and would gladly have ſtayed till their friend had been ſomewhat better; but their camel-drivers could not here find food fitting for their cattle. They propoſed to them to proceed to Jerim, a city at a ſmall diſtance, and promiſed that their ſick friend ſhould be borne by men over the rugged roads of Mount Sumara.

They were perſuaded, and ſet forward on the 5th of July. Our hero went before, to enjoy the freſh air; a piece of inexcuſable imprudence in places of ſo keen a temperature. He ſoon felt himſelf affected with a ſevere rheum, vomitings, and exceſſive thirſt, which he could not have quenched on that deſart mountain, if he had not fortunately met with a peaſant who permitted him to drink out of his pitcher of water. He ſaw nothing in this part of their journey, which ſeemed worthy of attention, except a ruinous caſtle, the property of the family of Haſſan, and ſtanding on the very peak of Mount Sumara. In this neighbourhood, are two tribes of wandering Arabs, who are now ſettled in villages. There are no more Bedouins in the Imam's dominions.

The Arabs could not be perſuaded to carry a Chriſtian; and Mr. Forſkal was therefore placed in his bed upon a camel. Although they had proceeded ſlowly, he was in a deplorable condition, by the time they reached Jerim. They now found, that, although they had accuſtomed themſelves to live like the inhabitants of the country, yet there were certain conveniences which, in caſe of illneſs, they could not but want. They lodged in a public inn; but the crowd of ſpectators whom curioſity brought together, to ſee the Europeans, becoming extremely troubleſome, they hired a more quiet apartment in the city, where they might live undiſturbed till their fellow traveller ſhould recover his health. It was impoſſible to find perſons who would carry their ſick friend. Their Mahometan ſervant refuſed to aſſiſt them in removing Mr. Forſkal from the one houſe to the other; and they were obliged to carry him themſelves.

Jerim is but a ſmall town, yet the ſeat of a Dola, who reſides in a caſtle ſituate on a rock. The houſes are built of ſtone, and of bricks which have been dried in the ſun. At two miles diſtance from this place, according to the tradition of the Arabs, ſtood once the famous city Dhafar, very little of the ruins of which now remain. The firſt magiſtrate of Jerim, however, told M. Niebuhr, that a large ſtone is ſtill to be ſeen there, with an inſcription, which neither Jews nor Mahometans can explain. This was probably the ſituation of the city of Taphar, which ancient hiſtorians mention as the ſeat of the Hamjarines. If any Hamjarine inſcription ſhall ever be diſcovered, it will probably be among theſe ruins. The Arabs maintain that Dhafer was the ſeat of Saad-el-Kammel, a famous hero, king of all Arabia, who lived eighteen hundred years ago.

On the eaſt ſide of Mount Sumara, they found the climate very different from what it was on the weſt ſide. It had rained almoſt every day of their journey from Taœs to Menſil; and the earth was covered with a charming verdure. At Jerim, on the contrary, no rain had fallen for three months, although diſtant thunder had been heard almoſt every day. In this want of rain, the locuſts had multiplied prodigiouſly, and had eaten up almoſt all the productions of the earth. The inhabitants of Jerim reſolved to put up public prayers for rain, on the eighth of July; and for that purpoſe, repaired in proceſſion to a place without the city, where ſuch ſolemnities were uſually performed. The company who walked in proceſſion, conſiſted of a number of clergymen in a dreſs expreſſive of humility. Two venerable Schiechs walked at their head, bearing open caſkets full of books. As they proceeded, all ſang and repeated ſhort prayers. Hardly was this ceremony over, when, on the very ſame evening, a ſtorm aroſe, with hail and a very heavy rain. The rains became afterwards more frequent. Between the tropics they fall at regular periods, on the different ſides of the great ranges of hills. In all the markets, locuſts were ſold at a low price; for ſo prodigiouſly numerous were they in a plain near Jerim, that they might be taken by handfuls. Our travellers ſaw a peaſant having a ſack full of them, which he was going to dry and lay up for winter proviſions. Whenever it ceaſed raining for an hour or two on the other ſide of Mount Sumara, legions of theſe inſects uſed to come over to Jerim. They ſaw the peaſants of Menſil purſuing them, in order to preſerve their fields from abſolute deſolation.

In the ſtreets of Jerim, they ſaw a bridegroom proceeding to the bath in ceremony. Two boys went before, dancing to the muſic of a timbrel; a crowd followed, conſiſting of perſons of all ages, who ſhot piſtols in the air as they went on; the bridegroom with his friends cloſed the proceſſion. At night, a number of flambeaux were lighted up, and formed a handſome illumination.

They were one day entertained by two gladiators, who, for a few pieces of ſmall money, exhibited their addreſs in the ſtreets. They wore maſks, the firſt our hero had ſeen in the Eaſt, and were armed with a buckler and a poignard. They did not fight to wound one another: the perfection of their art conſiſted in their leaping, and in ſeveral agile turns of the body.

Being ever unwilling to mingle with crowds, M. Niebuhr had not yet ſeen any of the markets in Arabia, although theſe are reſorted to as places of amuſement by the inhabitants of the country. To divert himſelf a little, he went to the market at Jerim. A great many people were met in it, who were chiefly peaſants that had come to ſell their different articles. He ſaw no ſhops furniſhed with goods of any conſiderable value. Many taylors, ſhoemakers, blackſmiths, and other artiſans, ſat along the ſtreets, behind low walls, and wrought at their trades in the open air. He ſaw alſo ſurgeons who drew blood with a common knife, and then dreſſed the wound with pieces of hartſhorn cut off at the root of the horn.

On the firſt days after their arrival at Jerim, Mr. Forſkal's illneſs ſeemed to decreaſe. But it ſoon after returned with ſuch violence that they deſpaired of his recovery. On the evening of the tenth of July, he ſunk into a deep lethargy, in which ſtate he continued till his death, the next morning.

It being neceſſary for them to notify the death of their companion to government. Our travellers ſent the Dola of Taœs's ſervant to the Dola and the Cadi of Jerim. The latter politely directed them to an Arab, who could ſell them a place, where they might inter their deceaſed friend. The bargain which they ſtruck with this man did not take effect; for the place being near a canal intended for the watering of the meadows, the poſſeſſors of theſe had threatened their Arab with an action at law, if the water ſhould fail on account of the Chriſtian's body. They ſoon after obtained a different place for the ſame price.

The Dola then expreſſed a wiſh to confer with ſome one of their number. He informed M. Niebuhr, that, in quality of governor, he had a right to the perſonal effects of all Jews and Banians who died within his dominions. Our hero anſwered that the deceaſed was neither a Jew nor a Banian, but an European; and that the Dola of Mokha had laid no claim to the effects of one of his companions, who died in that city. The Dola's ſon then explained to him his father's intentions, who expected to receive at leaſt a conſiderable preſent. M. Niebuhr told him that Europeans were accuſtomed to pay nothing without receiving a written acquittance; and that if he would give them in writing a ſtatement of what he required, they ſhould then ſee what they could do. After this, the Dola who knew that they were going to Sana, and probably feared that they might complain of him there, left them at peace.

Their greateſt difficulty now was to find perſons to bear the body to the grave; and this, even although they promiſed to pay very liberally for the ſervice. At laſt they prevailed with ſix men to convey it to the burying-place at midnight. They performed the taſk, but ran and hid themſelves, in the beſt manner they could, all the way; ſo great is the averſion of thoſe people to touch a Chriſtian.

They reſolved to bury their deceaſed friend in a coffin; but they had done better to have followed the Arabian mode, and wrapped him ſimply in a ſearcloth. The coffin made the people ſuſpect that the Europeans buried riches with the bodies of their dead. At Sana, they learned that Mr. Forſkal's body had been taken up by night, and that the graveclothes had been ſnatched away, after the coffin was opened. The Dola obliged the Jews to bury it again, and left them the coffin for their pains.

After the burial of their friend, they had nothing to detain them from continuing their journey. On the 13th of July, they left Jerim, and after proceeding for four miles along rugged roads, and through a barren country, arrived on the ſame day at Damar. Through this tract of road, the people who ſell Kiſcher are in ſo wretched condition, that they live in poor huts, and lie on the ground.

As they had lived ſo long at Jerim, the inhabitants of Damar had previous notice of their approach. Europeans ſeldom paſs this way; and the people of this place being therefore very curious to ſee them, came out and met them half a league from the city. As they drew nearer, the crowd became more numerous; and therefore, to avoid being ſeized and diſturbed by them, they would not enter an inn, but hired an empty houſe. This precaution little availed them: for the crowd ſurrounded them in ſuch a manner, that they could not enter their lodging. Mr. Cramer being mounted on his mule, forced his way; but then they exclaimed againſt the inſolence of the infidels, and began to throw ſtones in at their windows. They thought of aſking a guard from the Dola, but were told that he had only thirty ſoldiers in all, and was afraid of the mob himſelf. At laſt, the firſt magiſtrate coming to conſult their phyſician, adviſed them to take no notice of the petulance of the ſtudents, who threw ſtones that they might draw them to the windows. The tumult ſoon ceaſed, and the mob diſperſed.

The city of Damar ſtands in a fertile plain. It is the capital of a province, and is governed by a Dola, who reſides in a large caſtle. It has a famous univerſity, in which to the number of five hundred ſtudents are commonly employed in their ſtudies. It is without walls; its buildings are good; and it is very large, containing no fewer than five thouſand houſes. The Jews live in a detached village; but the Banians are permitted to live in the town among the Muſſulmans.

In no other city had their phyſician better practice. As he was unwilling to go out on account of the mob, the ſick were brought to him in their beds; and an inhabitant of this town accompanied them to Sana, purely that he might have an opportunity of conſulting their phyſician by the way, and in that city.

Near Damar is a mountain containing a mine of native ſulphur. In another hill, ſomewhat further diſtant, thoſe fine cornelians are found, which are ſo much eſteemed in Arabia.

Their European ſervant falling ill, they left him at Damar, to follow them by ſhort journies. At his arrival, he complained that nobody would give him lodging by the way. The Arabs were afraid that he might die in their houſes, and that they might be obliged to take the expence and pains of burying him.

On the 14th of July they croſſed a plain encompaſſed with bare and arid hills. Near the road, and within a mile of Damar, is the ſmall town of Mauahhel. The road becomes very rugged; and the country appears marſhy and ill-cultivated towards Suradge. From Suradge to Sana, the villages are all ſurrounded with orchards and vineyards. They were here overtaken by a ſtorm of hail, accompanied with peals of thunder; but no madsjils were nigh, to ſhelter our travellers.

Next day they had ſtill worſe roads to travel; which ſeemed ſurpriſing, ſo near the capital. They ſaw Hodaſa, which ſtands on a ſteep, inſulated rock, and in which is ſaid to be a curious inſcription, upon an old wall. This inſcription was mentioned to M. Niebuhr at Taœs; and he was informed by a Jew at Sana, that the characters reſemble neither the Arabic nor the Hebrew. He ſuſpected them to be Hamjarine, and was ſorry that it was not in his power to examine them.

After paſſing through ſeveral paltry villages, they at length reached Seijan, a village, which, together with Suradge, belongs to the princes of the blood; they obſerved in it a good many ruinous houſes. As there falls not enough of rain here, large reſervoirs have been formed at the foot of the hills, and from theſe the water is diſtributed through the country at conſiderable expence and trouble.

Hoping to enter Sana, on the 16th of July, they put on their Turkiſh dreſſes in the morning; their appearance being ſomewhat better than that of the Arabic garb they had worn in the courſe of their journey. Along a ſtone bridge, they paſſed a ſmall river, the water of which is, not far below, loſt among the ſand; and they halted near the village of Hadde, where the Imam has an orchard, at a mile's diſtance from Sana.

On the morning of the 16th of July they had ſent their ſervant forward, with a letter, addreſſed to Fakib Achmed, the Imam's vizier, announcing to him their arrival. But that nobleman, having already heard of their near approach, had ſent one of his principal ſecretaries to meet them, and bid them welcome. This deputy informed them, that they had been long expected at the court of Sana, and that the Imam had hired an elegant country houſe for them, in the ſuburb of Bir-el-Aſſab.

They learned that the vizier had likewiſe a villa there. When they arrived near this place, the ſecretary aſked them to alight. They ſuppoſed upon this, that they were to be immediately introduced to the vizier; but they only ſaw their ſecretary and their muſſulman ſervants proceed on their aſſes, while they were obliged to march on foot, a long way, before they reached their lodging. This humiliating ceremony was what they had not expected to be ſubjected to among the Arabs, who value themſelves upon their politeneſs.

In their villa they found very good rooms, but thoſe perfectly naked and unfurniſhed. They were here as ill accommodated as they had been in Yemen, and more ſo than they could have been in a caravanſera, where they would at leaſt have found food. Here they were obliged to faſt till they could have victuals brought from the city. Beſide their houſe, was an orchard, in which the trees appeared to have grown of themſelves, without receiving any culture.

Next morning the Imam ſent them a preſent, conſiſting of five ſheep, with wood, rice, lights, and ſpices. The bearer of this preſent had at the ſame time orders to let them know, that the Imam was ſorry that he could not ſee them for theſe two days yet, he being at preſent employed in paying off his mercenary troops. This delay they would have regarded with indifference, had they not been at the ſame time enjoined to keep within doors, till they ſhould obtain their firſt audience of his highneſs. They could have wiſhed to make the moſt of their ſtay here.

They had however forgotten to warn our travellers, that the etiquette of this court likewiſe prohibited ſtrangers from receiving viſits from the inhabitants of the country till they ſhould firſt appear there. They had an acquaintance at Sana, a Jew, who had made the voyage from Cairo to Loheia in their company. This Jew, although belonging to one of the richeſt and moſt reſpectable families of his nation, had entered into their ſervice, for the courſe of that voyage, either that he might travel in the greater ſecurity, or to ſpare the expence. Accordingly, he no ſooner heard of their arrival, than he came to pay them a viſit, and, next day brought one of the greateſt aſtrologers in his nation to ſee them. While theſe men were in their company, the ſecretary of Vizier Fakib Achmed happened to come in. The two Jews roſe before him, in teſtimony of reſpect. But the ſecretary, angry that they ſhould have preſumed to violate the etiquette, drove them out of the houſe, and ordered their ſervants to admit no perſon to viſit the Europeans, till they ſhould firſt have waited on his maſter.

On the 19th of July, the ſecretary of the vizier, Fakih Achmed, came to conduct them to an audience of the Imam, in his palace of Buſtan-el-Metwokkel. They had expected that they ſhould be introduced privately to an audience of this monarch, or at leaſt in preſence only of a few of his principal courtiers. They were ſurpriſed therefore to ſee every thing prepared for an occaſion of great ceremony. The court of the palace was ſo full of horſes, officers, and others, that they ſhould ſcarcely have made their way through the crowd, if the Nakib Gheir Alla, who had been a ſlave, but was now maſter of the horſe, had not come with a great ſtaff in his hand, to open a paſſage for them.

The hall of audience was a ſpacious ſquare chamber having an arched roof. In the middle was a large baſon, with ſome jets d'eau, riſing fourteen feet in height. Behind the baſon, and near the throne, were two large benches, each a foot and an half high: upon the throne was a ſpace covered with ſilken ſtuff, on which, as well as on both ſides of it, lay large cuſhions. The Imam ſat between the cuſhions, with his legs croſſed in the eaſtern faſhion; his gown was of a bright green colour, and had large ſleeves On each ſide of his breaſt was a rich filleting of gold lace, and on his head he wore a great white turban. His ſons ſat on his right hand, and his brothers on his left. Oppoſite to them, upon the higheſt of the two benches, ſat the vizier; and our travellers place was on the lower bench. On the two ſides of the hall, ſat many of the principal men about court.

They were firſt led up to the Imam, and were permitted to kiſs both the back and the palm of his hand, as well as the hem of his robe. It is an extraordinary favour, when the Mahometan princes permit any perſon to kiſs the palm of the hand. There was a ſolemn ſilence through the whole hall. As each of us touched the Imam's hand, a herald ſtill proclaimed, "God preſerve the Imam!" All who were preſent repeated thoſe words aloud after him. M. Niebuhr was thinking at the time, how he ſhould pay his compliments in Arabic, and was not a little diſturbed by this noiſy ceremony; but he had afterwards time to recollect himſelf.

As the language ſpoken at the court of Sana, differs greatly from that of Tehama, the only dialect of the Arabic tongue with which they were familiarly acquainted, or could ſpeak tolerably, they had brought their ſervant whom they had hired in Mokha, to be their interpreter. The vizier who had reſided long in Tehama, did the ſame ſervice for the Imam. Their converſation conſequently, could not be either very long, or very intereſting. They did not think proper to mention the true reaſons of their expedition through Arabia; but told the Imam, that wiſhing to travel by the ſhorteſt way to the Daniſh colonies in the Eaſt-Indies, they had heard ſo much of the plenty and ſecurity which prevailed through the dominions of the Imam, that they had reſolved to ſee them with their own eyes, that they might deſcribe them to their countrymen. The Imam told them, they were welcome into his dominions, and might ſtay as long as they pleaſed. After repeating the ceremony of kiſſing the Imam's hands, and hearing the repeated acclamations of the ſpectators, they now retired in the ſame order in which they had come in.

The Imam ſent them, after their return home, each a ſmall purſe containing ninety-nine Komaſſis, two and thirty of which make a crown. This piece of civility might perhaps appear no compliment to a traveller's delicacy. But, when it is conſidered that a ſtranger, unacquainted with the value of the money of the country, obliged to pay every day for his proviſions, is in danger of being impoſed upon by the money-changers, this care of providing them with ſmall money will appear to have been ſufficiently obliging. They therefore accepted the preſent, although they had reſolved not to be in any degree chargeable to the Arabs.

In Turkey no perſon is admitted to an audience of the Sultan, till after he has viſited the vizier. The cuſtom in Yemen is directly contrary. After being honoured with an audience of the Imam in the morning, they were invited to wait on Fakih Achmed in the afternoon, at his country ſeat, near Bir-el-Aſſab. They were at the ſame time deſired to bring with them thoſe curioſities which they had ſhewn to Emir Farhan at Loheia, and to ſeveral Arabs of diſtinction in other cities.

The vizier received them with great politeneſs, and expreſſed himſelf highly pleaſed with what they ſhewed him. He put various queſtions to them, from which he appeared to poſſeſs conſiderable knowledge, and to have ſtudied the ſciences with a degree of care far from common among his countrymen. By means of Turkiſh, Perſian, and Indian merchants, he had acquired tolerably correct notions of geography. The Arabians imagine that Europe lies ſouth from them, becauſe the Franks whom they ſee, come from India. But the Fakih knew very well the ſituation of the different ſtates of Europe, with their reſpective powers and forces, both by ſea and land. Nor could more be expected from an Arabian who had never ſeen a map.

In the narratives of many voyages, they had read, that in the Eaſt an inferior might not appear before a ſuperior, without bringing a preſent in his hand. Beſides, they were deſirous of returning the marks of politeneſs which had been ſhewn them, and of expreſſing their gratitude for the entertainment they had received.

For theſe reaſons, they reſolved to take this opportunity of offering their preſent to the Imam and the Fakih; they ſent to the latter ſome pieces of mechaniſm, ſuch as watches, and ſome other inſtruments little known among the Arabs. They ſoon after learned, that this was more than had been expected at their hands, ſince, not being merchants, they had no favour to aſk. All had however been very graciouſly accepted. The Turks regard the preſents of the Europeans as a tribute; but at the court of Sana they appear to be conſidered in a different light.

The vizier's country-houſe was not large; it was even entirely open upon one ſide. A number of fruit-trees grew in the garden. In the midſt of it was a jet d'eau, ſimilar to that which we had ſeen in the Imam's hall of audience; the water was put in motion, by being raiſed in a reſervoir by an aſs and a man who led him. This jet d'eau was no ornament, but it cooled the air; a thing very agreeable in hot countries. They ſaw others of the ſame ſort in the gardens of all the principal inhabitants of Sana.

The city of Sana, is ſituate at the foot of Mount Nikkum, on which are ſtill to be ſeen the ruins of a caſtle, which the Arabs ſuppoſe to have been built by Shem. Near this mountain ſtands the caſtle; a rivulet runs upon the other ſide; and near it, is the Buſtan-el-Metwokkel, a ſpacious garden, which was laid out by Imam Metwokkel, and has been embelliſhed with a fine garden by the reigning Imam. The walls of the city, which are built of bricks, exclude this garden, which is encloſed within a wall of its own. The city, properly ſo called, is not very extenſive: one may walk round it all in an hour. The city-gates are ſeven. Here are a number of moſques, ſome of which have been built by Turkiſh Pachas. Sana has the appearance of being more populous than it actually is; for gardens occupy a part of the ſpace within the walls. In Sana, are only twelve public baths: but many noble palaces, three of the moſt ſplendid of which have been built by the reigning Imam. The palace of the late Imam El Manzor, with ſome others, belong to the royal family, who are very numerous. The Arabian palaces are built in a ſtyle of architecture different from ours. The materials are, however, burnt bricks, and ſometimes even hewn ſtones; but the houſes of the common people are of bricks which have been dried in the ſun. M. Niebuhr ſaw no glaſs windows, except in one palace, near the citadel. The reſt of the houſes have, inſtead of windows, merely ſhutters, which are opened in fair weather, and ſhut when it is foul. In the laſt caſe, the houſe is lighted by a round wicket, fitted with a piece of Muſcovy glaſs. Some of the Arabians, uſe ſmall panes of ſtained glaſs from Venice.

At Sana, and in the other cities of the Eaſt, are great Simſeras or caravanſeras for merchants and travellers. Each different commodity is ſold in a ſeparate market. In the market for bread, none but women are to be ſeen; and their little ſhops are portable. The ſeveral claſſes of mechanics work in the ſame manner, in particular quarters in the open ſtreet. Writers go about with their deſks, and make out briefs, copy-books, and inſtruct ſcholars in the art of writing, all at the ſame time. There is one market, where old clothes are taken in exchange for new.

Wood for the carpenter's purpoſes is in general extremely dear through all Yemen; and wood for the fire at Sana is no leſs ſo. All the hills near the city are bleak and bare, and wood is therefore to be brought hither from the diſtance of three days journey; and a camel's burthen commonly coſts two crowns. This ſcarcity of wood is particularly ſupplied by the uſe of a little pit-coal. Fruits are, however, very plenteous at Sana.

In the caſtle which ſtands on a hill, are two palaces. Our hero ſaw about it ſome ruins of old buildings, but, notwithſtanding the antiquity of the place, no remarkable inſcriptions. There is the mint, and a range of priſons for perſons of different ranks. The reigning Imam reſides in the city; but ſeveral princes of the blood-royal live in the caſtle. M. Niebuhr was conducted to a battery, as the moſt elevated place about theſe buildings; and there he met with what he had no expectation of, a German mortar, with this inſcription, "*Jorg Selos Goſmick*, 1513. He ſaw alſo, upon the ſame battery, ſeven iron cannons, partly buried in the ſand, and partly ſet upon broken carriages. Theſe ſeven ſmall cannons, with ſix others, near the gates, which are fired to announce the return of the different feſtivals, are all the artillery of the capital of Yemen.

The ſuburb of Bir-el-Aſſab is nearly adjoining to the city upon the eaſt ſide. The houſes of this village are ſcattered through the gardens, along the bank of a ſmall river. Two leagues northward from Sana is a plain, named Rodda, which is overſpread with gardens, and watered by a number of rivulets. This place bears a great reſemblance to the neighbourhood of Damaſcus. But Sana, which ſome ancient authors compare to Damaſcus, ſtands on a riſing ground, with nothing like florid vegetation about it. After long rains, indeed, a ſmall rivulet runs through the city; but all the ground is dry through the reſt of the year. However, by aqueducts from Mount Nikkum, the town and caſtle of Sana, are, at all times, ſupplied with abundance of excellent freſh water.

Jews are not permitted to live in the city of Sana. They live by themſelves in a village, named Kaa-el-Ihud, ſituate near Bir-el-Aſſab. Their number amounts to two thouſand. But in Yemen, they are treated even more contemptuouſly than in Turkey. Yet, the beſt artiſans in Arabia are Jews; eſpecially potters and goldſmiths, who come to the city, to work in their little ſhops by day, and in the evening retire to their village. Thoſe Jews carry on a conſiderable trade.

The Banians in Sana, are reckoned to be about 125. They pay 300 crowns a-month for permiſſion to live in the city; whereas the populous village of Kaa-el-Ihud pays only 125 crowns a-month. The heirs of a deceaſed Banian are obliged to pay from forty to fifty crowns: and, if the defunct leaves no near relations in Yemen, his whole property devolves to the Imam.

The favourable reception our travellers met with at Sana, which was above their expectations, might have tempted them to ſtay longer. Many of the principal men about the Imam's court urged them to ſpend another year in Yemen. But they had loſt two of their companions, who could have availed themſelves more than they of a continued ſtay in Arabia. Some inſtances, too, of the Imam's avarice, which had come to their knowledge, added to what they had experienced in thoſe caſes in which they had been embroiled with the Dolas, impreſſed them with a degree of diſtruſt, and made them fear that their preſent good treatment might end in a very different manner. They had, beſides, found the climate hurtful to their conſtitutions, and their health was much injured by the changing temperature of the atmoſphere. They therefore began to think ſeriouſly of ſailing for India with the Engliſh, that they might ſave their lives and papers.

They had permiſſion to leave Sana whenever they ſhould think proper; but it was required that they ſhould take a formal leave of the Imam, and ſhew him the curioſities which the vizier had ſeen; a circumſtance which obliged them to defer their journey for ſome days.

They were ſent for to court on the 23d of July, and conducted into the ſame hall in which the Imam had received them at their former audience. Upon this ſecond occaſion, every thing paſſed very quietly. The Imam ſat on the loweſt bench beſide the throne, upon a chair wrought of reeds. They kiſſed the hem of his robe, and both ſides of his hand. Nobody was preſent but the vizier, the ſecretary, by whom they had been conducted into the preſence, and ſix or ſeven ſlaves or ſervants. None of their ſervants were permitted to accompany them; as the vizier thought them qualified to expreſs themſelves in the language of the country. All that they ſhewed the Imam ſeemed to pleaſe him highly; and both he and his miniſter put many queſtions to them concerning the manners, trade, and learning of the Europeans. A ſmall cheſt of medicines, which the Imam had received from an Engliſhman, was then brought in. Mr. Cramer was aſked to explain the virtues of thoſe drugs: and the Imam cauſed what he ſaid, concerning their nature, to be taken down in writing.

M. Niebuhr had been indiſpoſed when he came out to wait on the Imam; and, in conſequence of ſtanding ſo long, he felt himſelf ſo weak, that he was obliged to aſk permiſſion to retire. Before the door he found ſome of the firſt officers in the court, ſitting on piles of ſtones along the wall.

The great chamberlain, Gheir Allah, with whom he had often had occaſion to ſpeak, immediately made him an offer of his ſeat, and gathered ſtones to make himſelf another. In this company he was again addreſſed with a number of queſtions concerning the manners and cuſtoms of Europe. Thoſe Arabs ſtrongly diſapproved of their practice of drinking ſpirituous liquors. But when our hero aſſured them that the Chriſtians were forbidden to indulge in drunkenneſs, and that no ſenſible European drank more wine than was good for his health, they allowed the cuſtom to be rational. They even acknowledged that it was abſurd to abſtain entirely from the uſe of a liquor of which they had ſuch abundance, and which, on many occaſions, might prove ſalutary as a remedy.

M. Niebuhr returned into the hall; and, after Mr. Cramer had finiſhed his account of the drugs, and they had anſwered various other queſtions, they took their leave with the ſame ceremonies which they had obſerved at entering. In the afternoon, they went to take leave of vizier Fakih Achmed, and ſome other perſons of diſtinction.

They had, indeed, good reaſons to induce them to return to Mokha, by the ſame way by which they had come. It is better frequented; and upon it M. Niebuhr would have had an opportunity of copying the inſcriptions of which the Arabs had ſpoken to him: but he had been ſo often deceived already by ſtories of pretended antiquities, that to the uncertain hopes which thoſe inſcriptions held out to him, he preferred the certain advantage of ſurveying another part of Yemen, and of ſeeing the Tehama in the rainy ſeaſon. Our travellers acquainted the vizier, therefore, that they wiſhed to travel by Moſhak to Beit-el-Fakih. He not only approved of their intention, but told them, that the Imam would ſupply them with camels and aſſes for their journey.

On the 25th of July, the Imam ſent each of them a complete ſuit of clothes, with a letter to the Dola of Mokha to pay them two hundred crowns as a farewell preſent. They were at firſt afraid that this prince might ſuppoſe them to have come like the Turks, to draw money from him, or that they had made their preſents with intereſted views. But, after reflecting that they had been obliged to ranſom themſelves, in a manner, at Mokha, they reſolved to accept that letter of credit. When they afterwards preſented it to the Dola, he ſent them to receive the money from his Saraf, or banker, who paid them by inſtalments, but never without an air of diſſatisfaction.

They could hardly think the vizier ſerious in his offer, when he told them that the Imam would furniſh them with beaſts of burthen. They were even afraid that this might be a ſcheme to delay their journey, and would rather have hired camels at their own expence. They thereupon came to an explanation with the ſecretary, whoſe anſwers led them to ſuſpect an intereſted underſtanding between him and the Arabian camel-hirer, or poſt-maſter.

They therefore ventured to addreſs the vizier again. He ſhewed ſurpriſe at their perplexity; becauſe he had delivered to the ſecretary a written order, ſigned by the Imam's own hand, in which he was directed to furniſh them with camels and aſſes for their whole journey, and with a ſheep for their proviſions. The ſecretary, on account of their impatience to depart, had not had time to bargain for a ſhare of the profits with the camel-drivers, and was obliged to deliver up the written order, with ſome pieces of ſtuff which the Imam had ſent them for clothes for their ſervants. He gave them alſo notice, that ſome other preſents were intended them, which could not be ready till after a certain number of hours. They ſet out without them, and the ſecretary probably kept them to himſelf.

The dreſs which M. Niebuhr received from the Imam was exactly like that worn by the Arabs of diſtinction through Yemen. They wear the ſhirt over wide drawers of cotton-cloth. The Jambea, a ſort of crooked cutlaſs, hangs by a broad girdle; and a veſt with ſtraight ſleeves is covered by a flowing gown. The Arabs are ſtrangers to the uſe of ſtockings. The only thing they wear on their feet is a ſort of half-boots, or ſlippers. The Turks appear to abuſe the generous hoſpitality with which the Imam treats ſtrangers travelling through his dominions. Poor pilgrims of that nation often come from Jidda, are entertained for months at Sana, and then aſk money to defray the expences of their journey home. The Imam even orders a ſum of money to be paid them in ſome of his ſea-port towns, that they may return no more to be further chargeable to ſo hoſpitable a people.

On the 26th of July, the day of their departure from Sana, they made a ſhort ſtage along a bad road among bare hills, with few villages interſperſed over them. Next day, the road was ſtill worſe, lying over rocky mountains. This was the moſt rugged road they ever ſaw in all Yemen. The hills were bleak and wild, and the deep vallies among them contained only a few wretched hamlets.

On the 28th of July, they proceeded down ſteep declivities; but the hills began now to diſplay a ſmall ſhare of verdure: and they here met with ſeveral camels, loaded with very bad wood, for Sana. The towns were poor and thinly ſcattered. In the evening, they were attacked by legions of locuſts; but theſe were ſoon driven away by a violent ſtorm of wind, accompanied by heavy rain.

They travelled this day onward to Moſhak, a ſmall town ſituate on the ſummit of a precipitous hill. The houſes in which travellers lodge, ſtand at the foot of the hill. They preſented the Imam's written order to the Dola of this city, who accordingly furniſhed them with camels, provender, a good meal for their ſervants, a ſheep for their own ſupper, and even paid for their lodging. The revenue of Moſhak, and the territory annexed to it, is enjoyed by one of the Imam's ſons.

Their next day's journey was upon a ſtill more diſagreeable road. Nothing can be worſe than the roads between Moſhak and Sehan. Upon the hill they found ſix large reſervoirs, in which rain-water is collected. It becomes putrid, after ſtanding for ſome time, and is then very diſagreeable. In this country the Arabs believe they have moſt to fear from the worm in the nerves. If it be ſo, the cauſe muſt lay in their drinking that putrid water.

Leaving Sehan on the 30th of July, they continued their journey upon ſomewhat better roads which winded round the hills. Upon Harras, one of thoſe hills, they came to a defile ſo narrow that a ſingle camel could hardly paſs. On either ſide are ſteep rocks; and rain, which had fallen on the preceding day, had broken a gap eight feet deep, preciſely in the narroweſt part of this road, and made it abſolutely impaſſable. There was no other paſſage, and all their Arabs were of opinion that they ſhould return ſtraight to Sana, and take the road by Taœs; but they were unwilling to turn ſo far about, and therefore reſolved to fill up the gap with ſtones. Their Arabs laughed to hear them propoſe an undertaking which they ſuppoſed would give them work for ſeveral days. But they began to gather ſtones, and by promiſes prevailed with them to aſſiſt them. Three hours of hard work completed their cauſeway, and they paſſed ſafe over. The Arabs maintained, that, in ſuch a caſe, the firſt Dola of Yemen would rather have returned to Sana, than have undertaken what they had accompliſhed. This gave no favourable impreſſion of the ſpirit or induſtry of the nation.

On their way they met with a wandering family, the firſt of this character they ſaw in Yemen. They had no tents, but lived under trees with their aſſes, ſheep, dogs, and fowls. Their mode of life is perfectly like that of our European gypſies. They are confined in no place, but go about the villages begging and ſtealing; and the poor peaſants often give them ſomething voluntarily, to remove them from their neighbourhood. A young girl of this company came to aſk alms from them: her face was uncovered.

At a ſmall diſtance from the dangerous paſs abovementioned, they ſaw the firſt plantation of coffee trees. They had ſeen none of theſe ſince their excurſions in the month of May; but this production does not appear to enrich thoſe by whom it is here cultivated. The villages in the coffee country are declining into a ſtate of wretched poverty: the houſes conſiſt of dry walls, covered with reeds, and reſemble thoſe of the hills about Beit-el-Fakih and Dſobla. The river Sehan was ſo ſwoln that they had difficulty in paſſing it with their aſſes.

They ſpent the night at Samfur, a poor village. In the morning, they found themſelves obliged to paſs, more than a dozen times in the ſpace of a mile, over the river Sehan, which runs with a meandering courſe, among rocks, and with a very rapid current. This country being very poor, the roads are not exceedingly ſafe, and they were therefore obliged to travel ſlowly, without going before their baggage. They ſaw here many ſhrubs of the ſpecies which affords the balſam of Mecca; but the inhabitants of the country know not their value, and therefore neglect to cultivate them.

In the coffee-houſe of Til they met with ſeveral pilgrims returning from Mecca. From this inn the country improves. It is covered with verdure: in the valley are a number of rivulets which diſcharge themſelves into the river Sehan; and a great many villages are ſcattered over the hills.

They ſaw a rivulet which loſes itſelf under ground, and appears again at a conſiderable diſtance. After leaving the hills, it diſappears entirely, and its waters are diſperſed over the plains of the Tehama. The arable grounds among theſe hills are ſown only with durra, a ſort of coarſe millet, of which the poorer people make their bread. The peaſants cut out ſeats in the trees, and ſit in theſe to watch their fields.

The rocks on the confines of the Tehama are baſaltic, like thoſe of the coffee-country near Biet-el-Fakih. They came to another rivulet which loſes itſelf in the ſands of the Tehama. At laſt they reached the plain, and arrived at Beit-el-Fakih in the evening of the firſt of Auguſt.

The greater part of this city having been burnt down in the month of April laſt, they had expected to find it deſolate. They were, therefore, greatly ſurpriſed to ſee all the houſes, or rather huts, rebuilt. Several edifices of ſtone, fitter to reſiſt the force of fire, had likewiſe been raiſed.

They ſent notice to the Dola of their arrival, and deſired him to have camels in readineſs, on which they might continue their journey. Their Arabian ſervants would have demanded proviſions from him, that they might make merry, and ſhew the people in what an honourable manner they were received.

Having ſet out from Beit-el-Fakih on the evening of the 2d of Auguſt, they met with two men, on their way to Zebid, who were leading aſſes loaded chiefly with ſilver, which had been received by the merchants from Egypt, for coffee, and which they were ſending to Mokha, to purchaſe India goods. This mode of carrying money about, was a proof that in this province there were no fears from robbers.

On the 3d of Auguſt, the Dola of Zebid was obliged to furniſh our travellers with proviſions and camels. They had expected to find the river Zebid conſiderably ſwoln; but, near the city, its channel was entirely dry; the waters having been turned off, to overflow a great extent of the adjacent fields which were ſurrounded by dykes. It ſhould ſeem that the waters are not ſuffered to run in the channel of the river, till after they have been plentifully diſtributed over the country. The peaſants conſtruct their dykes in a very ſimple manner. After plowing up a field, they yoke a plank of wood to two oxen, lead theſe over the field, till the plank is loaded with earth, empty it upon the line where the dyke is to be drawn, and repeat this till it is formed. They ſtopped to reſt for a few hours at Mauſchid, and on the morning of the 5th of Auguſt arrived at Mokha.

They had been extremely earneſt to return to this city, leſt the Engliſh ſhip in which we intended to ſail for India, might be gone before our arrival. But, ſeveral circumſtances happened to detain that veſſel ſome time longer at Mokha; and they ſoon felt that they had travelled too haſtily in that ſultry climate. M. Niebuhr fell ill on the 8th of Auguſt; Mr. Baurenfeind was confined to his bed, within a few days after; and in a ſhort time, Mr. Cramer likewiſe, and all their European ſervants. They fortunately found their friend Mr. Scott ſtill here, who kindly ſupplied them with European refreſhments, which did them more ſervice than they could have received from the uſe of the beſt medicines. But all his friendly cares could not remove the lurking diſtemper which ſoon afterwards broke out with renewed violence, and deprived our hero of all his remaining fellow travellers.

The city of Mokha ſtands in a very dry and barren ſituation: its fortifications are the walls which ſurround it, ſome towers on the way to Muſa, which are dignified with the name of caſtles, and two other caſtles of the ſame ſort, upon the two arms of the harbour. The greateſt of theſe two caſtles is called Kalla Tejar, and the ſmalleſt Kalla Abdurrah, from the name of two ſaints, buried in theſe two places. They are provided with ſome few pieces of cannon. The houſes of the city are built of ſtone; and ſome are handſome, in the ſtyle of thoſe of the ſuburb of Sana. However, there are others, both within and without the walls, no better than the huts common through all the Tehama. In the environs of this city are abundance of date-trees and many agreeable gardens.

The city of Mokha is not ancient, being built about four centuries ſince. Like many other cities in the Tehama, this owes its origin to a ſaint, the celebrated Schiech Schœdeli. This Schiech acquired at that period ſo great a reputation, that perſons eagerly reſorted from the moſt diſtant countries to receive his inſtructions. Some of his devout diſciples built huts round his hermitage, which ſtood on the ſea-ſide. A ſmall village aroſe on this ſpot, and was by degrees enlarged into a city.

Our Readers will find in Mr. BRUCE's Travels, all the remaining information which M. NIEBUHR gives of this City:—we ſhall therefore proceed with the more intereſting part of the Work.

CHAP. VI.

Their Departure from Mokha—Streight of Babel-Mandel—Death of Mr. BAURENFEIND*—Of their Servant—They ſee Serpents—Land in the Harbour of Bombay—Deſcription of the City—Proper Mode of living there—A valuable Work—Government, Trade, &c.—Of the Iſle Elephanta—The Indian Temple—The Figures, &c.—Death of* Mr. CRAMER*—Departure from Bombay—Arrive at Surat—Deſcription thereof—Concluſion.*

THE veſſel belonging to Mr. Scott, with whom they were to take their paſſage for Bombay, having been detained for a conſiderable time at Mokha, they could not leave the city till the 23d of Auguſt 1763. Though Meſſrs. Cramer and Baurenfeind were at this time very ill, yet they determined not to loſe the opportunity of leaving Arabia. As to M. Niebuhr, his health was ſo far re-eſtabliſhed, that he could ſafely venture upon the voyage to India.

The famous ſtreight of Babel-Mandel, where the Arabian gulf joins the ocean, and where they arrived on the ſecond day of their voyage, is about ten German miles in breadth. It is interſperſed with ſmall iſles, of which that neareſt Africa is called Perim, and forms with the African continent a channel, through which ſhips uſually paſs, notwithſtanding the rapid current which prevails in it. In the ſea, between Arabia and India, there is generally a rapid current driving to the eaſt, with ſo much violence, that it is impoſſible to reckon the rate at which a ſhip runs in paſſing here. In this ſea, they met likewiſe with north winds ſo cold that they were obliged to put on warmer clothes.

In this firſt part of their voyage, Mr. Cramer's health ſeemed to recover daily; but Mr. Baurenfeind grew worſe and worſe. He ſunk into a deep lethargy, and died on the 29th of Auguſt.

Next day after Mr. Baurenfeind, died alſo their ſervant, Berggreen, a Swede, who had made ſeveral campaigns in the ſervice of a colonel of huſſars. This man, who was naturally robuſt, and had been inured to fatigue, had at firſt laughed at the idea of the hardſhips of a voyage to Arabia; but he ſunk under them at laſt.

The paſſage between Arabia and India was formerly thought very dangerous. Ships were carried on by ſo rapid a current, that they could neither keep their reckoning, nor diſtinguiſh the coaſt during the rainy ſeaſon; ſeveral were conſequently loſt on the low coaſts of Malabar. Theſe misfortunes have ceaſed to take place, ſince an obſervation was made, which has been thought new, although Arrian ſpeaks of it as being known to the ancients: in the Indian ocean, at a certain diſtance from land, a great many water ſerpents, from twelve to thirteen inches in length, are to be ſeen riſing above the ſurface of the water. When theſe ſerpents are ſeen, they are an indication that the coaſt is exactly two degrees diſtant.

They ſaw ſome of theſe ſerpents, for the firſt time, on the evening of the 9th of September; on the 11th they landed in the harbour of Bombay; and on the 13th entered the city.

The iſle of Bombay is two German miles in length, by rather more than half a mile in breadth. A narrow channel divides it from another ſmall iſle of little value, called by the Engliſh Old Woman's Iſland. Bombay produces nothing but cocoas and rice; and on the ſhore a conſiderable quantity of ſalt is collected. The inhabitants are obliged to bring their proviſions from the continent, or from Salſet, a large and fertile iſland not far from Bombay, and belonging to the Mahrattas. The ſea-breezes, and the frequent rains, cool the atmoſphere, and render the climate of this iſland temperate. Its air was formerly unhealthy and dangerous, but has become pure ſince the Engliſh drained the marſhes, in the city and its environs. Still, however, many Europeans die ſuddenly here; but they are new-comers, who ſhorten their days by a mode of life unſuitable to the climate; eating great quantities of beef and pork, which the Indian legiſlator had wiſely forbidden, and drinking copiouſly of the ſtrong wines of Portugal in the hotteſt ſeaſon. They likewiſe perſiſt obſtinately in wearing the European dreſs, which by its ligatures impedes the free circulation of the blood, and by confining the limbs, renders the heat more intolerable. The Orientals again live to a great age, and are little ſubject to diſeaſes, becauſe they keep the body at eaſe in wide flowing robes, abſtain from animal food and ſtrong liquors, and eat their principal meal in the evening after ſunſet.

The city of Bombay, ſituate in the northern part of the iſland, is a quarter of a German mile in length, but narrow. It is defended by an indifferent citadel towards the ſea, and at the middle of the city. On the land ſide, its fortifications are very good. During the war the Eaſt-India-Company expended no leſs than 900,000 French livres a year, in the conſtruction of new works for its defence; and, although theſe works are no longer carried on with the ſame activity, yet the fortifications of Bombay are ſtill continued, ſo that it muſt be in a ſhort time the moſt conſiderable fortreſs in India. Beſide the town, there are in the iſland ſome ſmall forts ſufficient to protect it from any irruption of the Indians.

In this city are ſeveral handſome buildings; among which are the Director's palace, and a large and elegant church near it. The houſes are not flat roofed here, as through the reſt of the Eaſt, but are covered with tiles in the European faſhion. The Engliſh have glaſs windows. The other inhabitants of the iſland have their windows of ſmall pieces of tranſparent ſhells framed in wood, which renders the apartments very dark. In the Eaſt it is the faſhion to live during the dry ſeaſon in chambers open on one ſide. The houſes of Bombay are in general neither ſplendid nor commodious in any great degree. The harbour is ſpacious, and ſheltered from all winds. A valuable work, which has been conſtructed at the Company's expence, is two baſons hewn out in the rock, in which two ſhips may be at once careened. A third is now preparing. This work, which has been very expenſive, likewiſe brings in a conſiderable annual return. Strangers pay very dear for liberty to careen in theſe baſons.

The toleration which the Engliſh grant to all religions has rendered this iſland very populous. During theſe hundred years, for which it has been in the poſſeſſion of the Company, the number of its inabitants has greatly increaſed. Of theſe the Europeans are naturally the leaſt numerous claſs; and this the rather as they do not marry, and their numbers conſequently do not multiply. The other inhabitants are Portugueſe, or Indian Catholics; Hindoos, the original poſſeſſors of the country; Perſians from Kerman; Mahometans of different ſects; and in the laſt place ſome Oriental Chriſtians.

The Engliſh have a handſome church at Bombay, but only one Engliſh clergyman to perform the ſervices of religion in it; and, if he ſhould die, the congregation would be abſolutely deprived of a paſtor; for the Company have no chaplains in their ſhips, and entertain no clergy in their ſettlements on the coaſt. Wherefore, when a child is to be baptized, which is not often, as the Engliſh rarely marry in India, a Daniſh miſſionary is ſent for, to adminiſter the ſacrament of baptiſm.

The Catholics, a ſcanty remainder of the Portugueſe, and a great number of Indians, their converts, are much more numerous than the Proteſtants. They have abundance of prieſts, as well Europeans as Indians, who attend their ſtudies at Goa. To ſuperintend this herd, the Pope named ſome years ago a biſhop of Bombay, but the governor of the iſland ſent him away, declaring that they needed not Catholic prieſts of ſo high a rank. The Catholic churches are decent buildings, and are ſumptuouſly ornamented within. The Jews had once a college and a church in the middle of this iſland. Their college is at preſent the country-houſe of the Engliſh governour. And the old church has been converted into a ſuite of aſſembly-rooms.

All religions are here indulged in the free exerciſe of their public worſhip, not only in their churches, but openly, in feſtivals and proceſſions, and none takes offence at another. Yet government allows not the Catholic prieſts to give a looſe to their zeal for making proſelytes. When any perſon chooſes to become a Catholic, the reaſons muſt be laid before government, and if they are judged valid, he is then allowed to profeſs his converſion. The prieſts complain of the difficulty of obtaining this permiſſion. They, however, have conſiderable ſucceſs in converſion among the ſlaves, who, being ſtruck with the pomp of the Romiſh worſhip, and proud of wearing the image of a ſaint upon their breaſts, chooſe rather to frequent the Catholic churches than any others, and perſuade their countrymen, as they ſucceſſively arrive, to follow their example. M. Niebuhr had purchaſed a young Catholic negro at Bombay, who was alſo born of Chriſtian parents, and intended to bring him with him into Europe; but, fearing afterwards that the Muſſulmans in Perſia and Turkey might give him trouble, and pretend that he was carrying away a Mahometan boy in order to make him a Chriſtian, he gave him away before his departure from India.

The Engliſh Eaſt-India-Company govern their ſettlements in a mode of adminiſtration different from that of the Portugueſe and Dutch. Theſe laſt nations intruſt the diſpoſal of all places to the power of a ſingle governor; the Portugueſe to the viceroy of Goa; the Dutch, to the governor-general of Batavia. The conqueſts of the Engliſh are, on the contrary, all divided into four independent governments, each of which receives its orders immediately from the Court of Directors at London. The ſeats of theſe four governments are, Bombay for the coaſt of Malabar, Madras for the Coromandel coaſt, Calcutta for Bengal, and Bencoolen for the iſland of Sumatra.

Although independent of each other, the ſeveral Engliſh governors are however obliged to lend one another mutual aid in extraordinary exigencies. On a late occaſion, news being received at Bombay of an inſurrection, the council of Bombay, without waiting for orders from the Court of Directors in London, ſent troops and artillery to Calcutta. Theſe different eſtabliſhments are all governed in the ſame manner. All proceſſes between ſubjects of the Company are determined by the law of England.

The council or regency of Bombay conſiſt of a governor, with the title of preſident, and twelve counſellors, who are all merchants, except the commander of the troops, who held lately the rank of major. The Company have of late made ſome changes upon this arrangement. The preſident muſt be a military man; the commander of the troops is a brigadier, and has a voice in the council; and the director of the naval affairs has a place among the twelve counſellors who were formerly all merchants. The other ſervants of the Company are factors and writers of different ranks. Theſe riſe from lower to higher places in the order of ſeniority,—even to the very firſt offices, that of preſident only excepted; who is nominated by the Court of Directors in London. The ſervants of the Company are ſometimes transferred from one department to another.

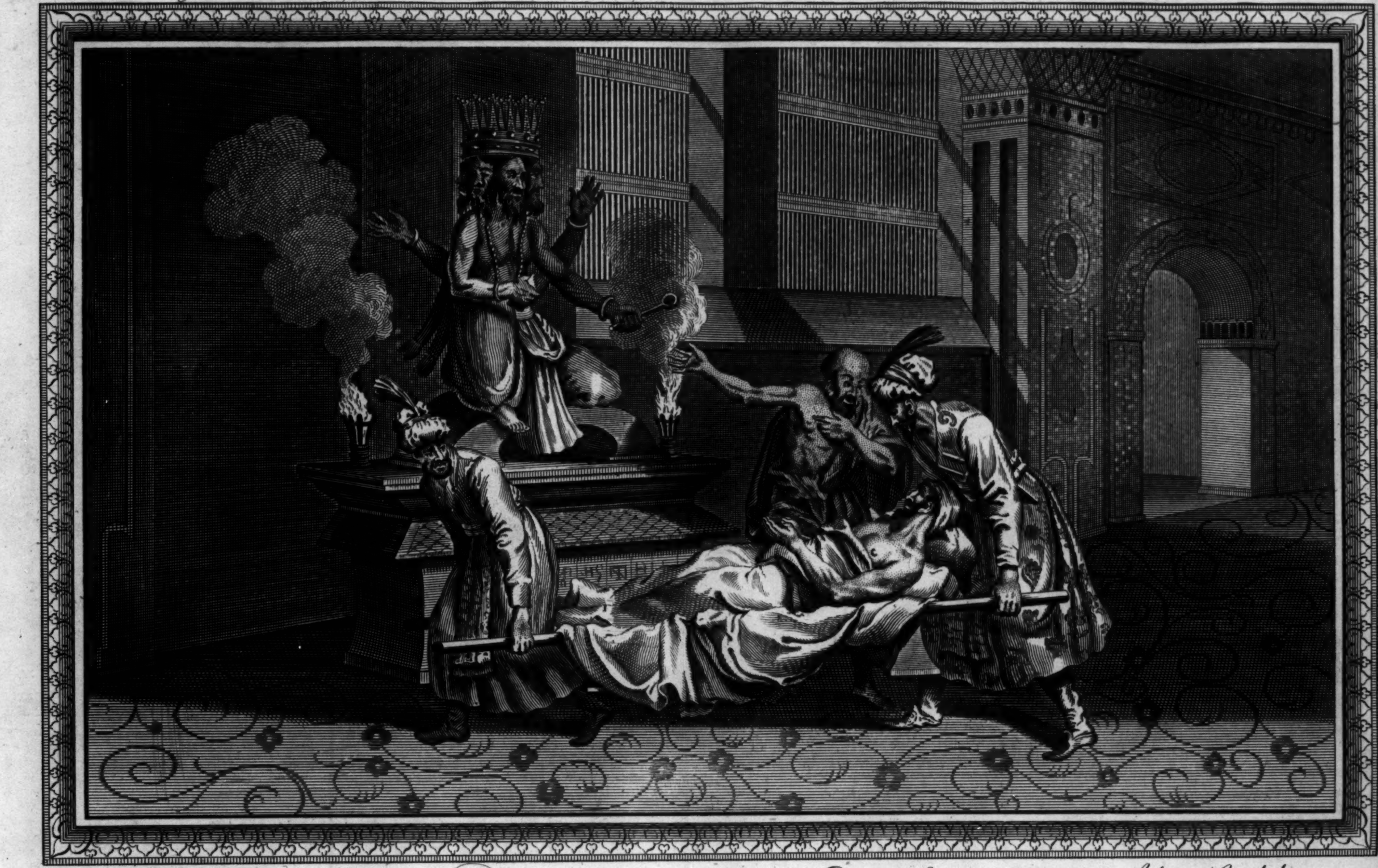
The preſident of the council of Bombay is obliged to reſide in the iſland; as are alſo thoſe counſellors who hold the offices of treaſurer and inſpector of the Company's ſtores. The other counſellors are ſent out to manage the concerns of the Company's trade in the eſtabliſhments dependent on the government of Bombay. In M. Niebuhr's time, the directors of the trade at Surat, Tellicherry, Anjengo, and Baſra, were members of the council. In three of theſe places, the Company have forts in which they keep up garriſons of ſufficient ſtrength. Since he left that country, the Engliſh have conquered Baradſch, a great town, north from Surat, which was ſubject to a Nabob of its own, and was formerly the ſeat of a Dutch factory. A counſellor from Bombay now reſides as director in this city.

Factors are ſent to the inferior ſettlements; ſuch as, in the province of Scindi, the great city of Tatta, the ſeat of the ſovereign of the country; Lær Bunder; and Schah Bunder. The Company have likewiſe factors at Abu Schæhr, Cambay, Onor, Calicut, and even in the fort of Victoria. This fort ſtadns on a great river, which holds its courſe through the interior country, even to as great diſtance as Puna, the ſeat of the chief of the Mahrattas. The Engliſh acquired this place, with ſome adjacent villages, from the Mahrattas, in exchange for Geri, a fortreſs once belonging to the famous Angria, of which they had taken poſſeſſion. The Company expected, that, by means of this river, they might extend their trade through the country of the Mahrattas. This project having, however failed, they avail themſelves of the fort, and purchaſe butcher's-meat from the Mahometans in the neighbourhood, as the Hindoos about Bombay will not ſell their cattle for ſlaughter.

It is for the benefit of the Company to ſend its ſervants ſucceſſively to different places, before they are advanced to the firſt employments. Factors thus gain a knowledge of the affairs of all the different ſettlements ſubject to the government of which they are afterwards to be counſellors. The Company, however, allow but very moderate ſalaries to its factors and directors. But they are permitted to trade on their own account in India only from Delegoa near the Cape of Good Hope, to China, and northward, as far as Jidda and Baſra. By means of this extenſive trade chiefly, do the directors acquire that wealth which is the aſtoniſhment and envy of their countrymen in Europe. Theſe advantages for the acquiſition of wealth in trade, are reſerved for the Engliſh excluſively. The Company admit ſtrangers into none but the military department of their ſervice, and in it they muſt enter the loweſt rank; but advancement is pretty rapid: for their mode of life cuts off the officers very faſt.

BRITISH
7 FE 90
MUSEUM

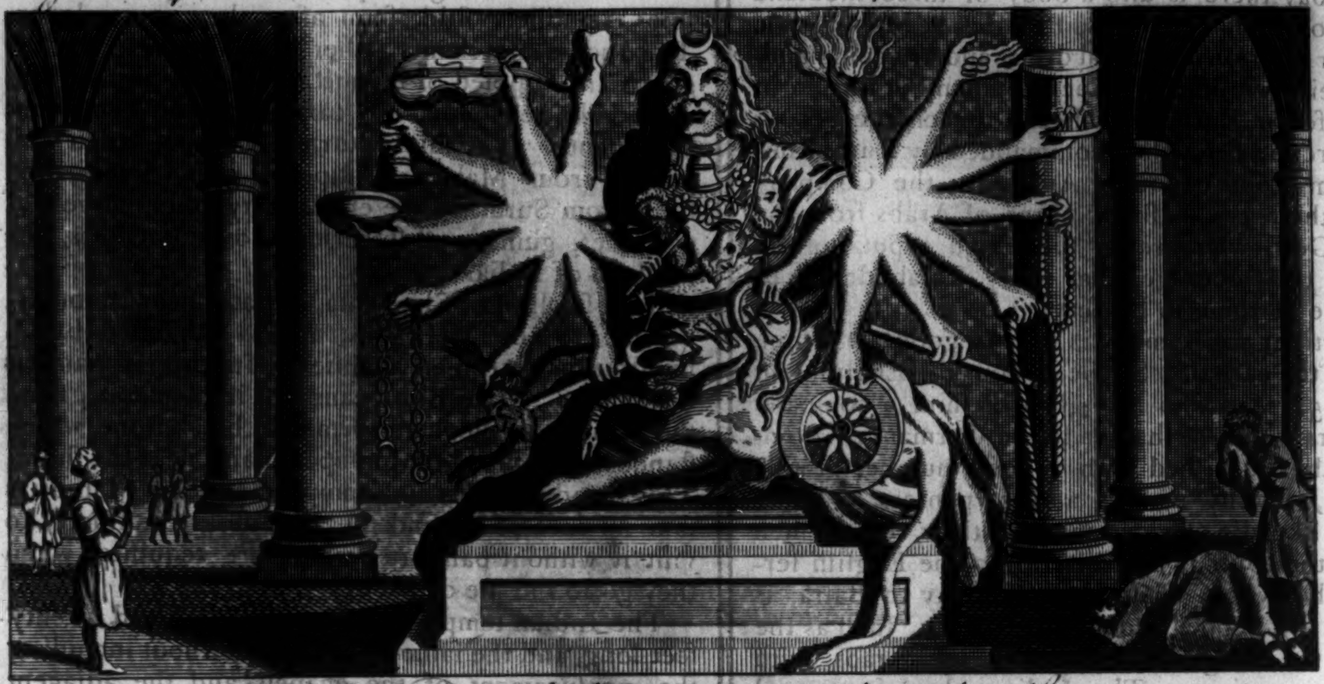
Engraved for PORTLOCK's *New* COLLECTION *of* VOYAGES *&* TRAVELS.



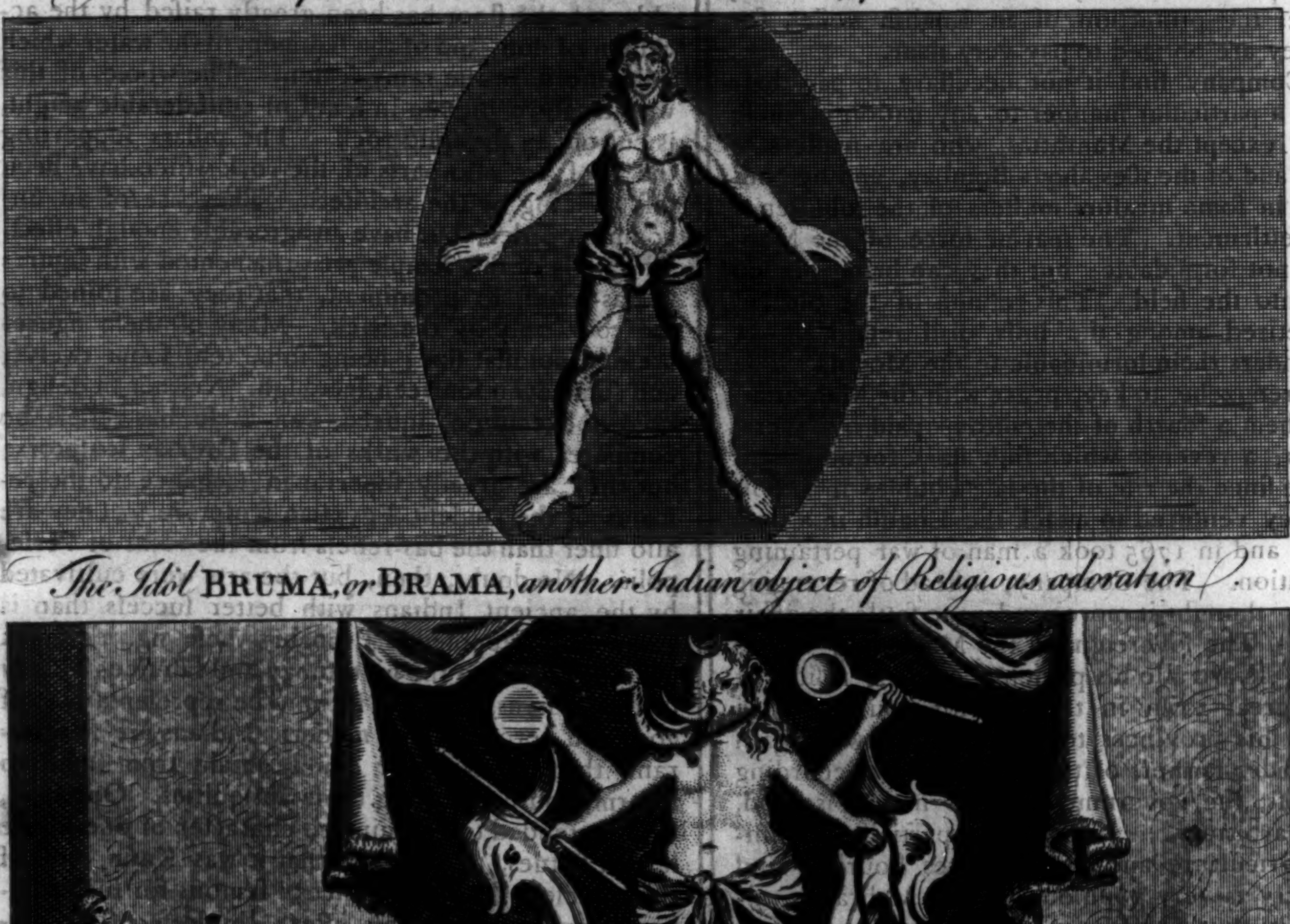
A SICK PERSON *presented to* IXORA, *an Indian Deity for the recovery of his Health.*

BRITISH
7 FE 90
MUSEUM

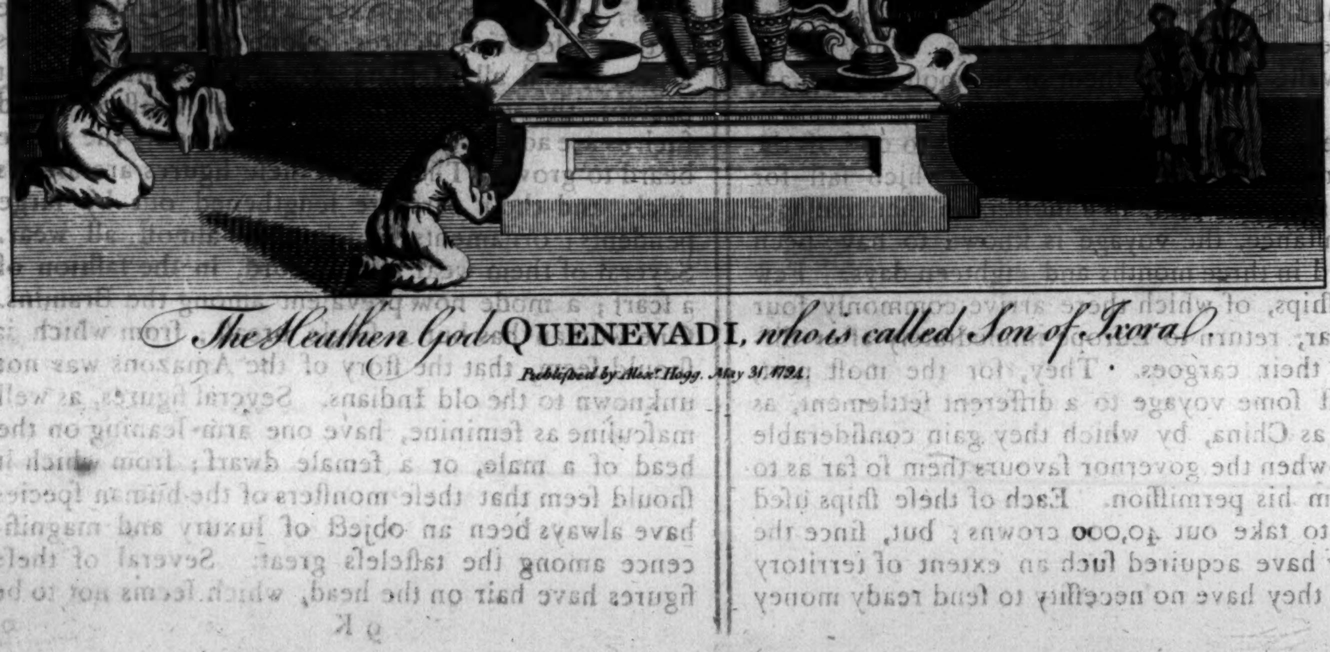
Engraved for **PORTLOCK's** *New* **COLLECTION** *of* **VOYAGES** *&* **TRAVELS.**



A very remarkable form under which **IXORA** *is worshipped in the* **EAST INDIES.**



The Idol **BRUMA**, *or* **BRAMA**, *another Indian object of Religious adoration*



The Heathen God **QUENEVADI**, *who is called Son of Ixora*

Published by Alexr. Hogg. May 31. 1784.

In the government of which Bombay is the centre, the Company maintain ſeventeen companies of regular troops, each conſiſting of about an hundred and twenty men, with three companies of artillery. The ſoldiers are moſtly Europeans, except ſome Topaſes, or Catholic Indians, dreſſed in the European faſhion. At Bombay there is alſo a body of three thouſand Sepoys, or Indian ſoldiers, Pagan and Mahometan, who wear their own original dreſs, and are commanded by their own officers. Each company of this corps has an inferior European officer to teach the Sepoys their exerciſe; for, when commanded by Europeans, they form good troops. At Surat, the Company have in their pay a ſmall corps of Arabs from the Perſian Gulf, who are in ſuch high reputation in India for their courage, that every Rajah deſires to have ſome of them in his ſervice.

The artillery of Bombay is in very good condition, owing to the care of a Swede, whom the Engliſh ſent out in 1752, and who brought with him a company of gunners whom he had raiſed in Germany. Bombay was thus furniſhed with a good number of able workmen, chiefly maſons and carpenters. Thoſe Germans likewiſe engaged many of their countrymen to leave the Dutch, and enter into the Engliſh ſervice. The whole coaſt from Bombay to Baſra, is inhabited by people addicted to piracy, ſuch as the Malays, the Sangeries, the Kulis, the Arabs, with other petty nations. The Indians dare not travel from one port to another, otherwiſe than in caravans, and under the protection of an Engliſh veſſel, for which they are obliged to pay very dear.

The Company find it not neceſſary to pay their court in a particular manner to any nation in theſe latitudes, except the Mahrattas, who are maſters of the coaſt and of the iſles about Bombay, and by conſequence in ſome meaſure maſters of the ſubſiſtence of this ſettlement. The marine force of the Mahrattas is not formidable; but they can bring 80,000 cavalry into the field. This reſidue of the old Indians, retired among the hills, ſtill retain power which renders them formidable to the Moguls. The great Aurengzebe, to keep peace with the Mahrattas, granted them a fourth of the cuſtoms paid by ſeveral provinces; a revenue which they have found means to enlarge ſince the riſe of the laſt troubles in Indoſtan. They ventured to attack the Engliſh in a time of peace, and in 1765 took a man of war pertaining to that nation. The Company, inſtead of revenging this inſult, thought it more prudent to ſettle the affair amicably. The ſovereign of the Mahrattas, who is a Bramin, as are alſo his principal officers, reſides at Puna, a great town in the interior country. He farms out his provinces to the Bramins, who again employ under-farmers of their own caſt. According to accounts, the government of this nation is good, although arbitrary. Juſtice is impartially adminiſtered; agriculture and manufactures flouriſh; and the country is very populous. The Mahrattas, although they thus practiſe juſtice among themſelves, are, however guilty of great barbarities in their frequent incurſions into the neighbouring provinces under the government of Mahometans. They pillage and lay waſte all before them in the moſt cruel manner.

All the Engliſh ſhips for India ſail to one of the four principal ſettlements. Thoſe which ſail for Bombay are commonly five months in their paſſage. In one inſtance, the voyage is known to have been performed in three months and eighteen days. Few of thoſe ſhips, of which there arrive commonly four in the year, return to Europe immediately after diſcharging their cargoes. They, for the moſt part, make firſt ſome voyage to a different ſettlement, as far often as China, by which they gain conſiderable freights, when the governor favours them ſo far as to grant them his permiſſion. Each of theſe ſhips uſed formerly to take out 40,000 crowns; but, ſince the Company have acquired ſuch an extent of territory in India, they have no neceſſity to ſend ready money from London to their ſettlements. The principal article with which the ſhips from India are freighted, is cloth of all ſorts, which is ſold moſtly at Baſra, and in Perſia. The others are cochineal, iron, guns, arms, copper, ivory, &c. The crew of theſe ſhips carry out likewiſe, each man a parcel of goods on his own account. A great part of the cargoes of theſe ſhips is publicly ſold, ſoon after they are unladen. The Indian merchants gather in to the ſale; and the goods are diſpoſed of by auction, to the higheſt bidder. The remainder are carried to the dependent ſettlements. The ſhips return to Europe, laden with pepper from Malabar, ſaltpetre from Scindi, and ſtuffs from Surat. The crews carry home parcels of perfumes, gums, and ſpiceries of different ſorts, the produce of India.

The ſmall iſle Elephanta, ſituate near Bombay, belongs to the Mahrattas, and is inhabited by an hundred poor Indian families. Its proper name is Gali Pouri. The Europeans call it Elephanta, from the ſtatue of an elephant formed of black ſtone, which ſtands in this iſland, in the open plain, near the ſhore. This iſland being of ſmall importance, the Mahrattas take no care of it; and the Engliſh are at liberty to viſit it without paſſports, which are requiſite, when they go to the iſle of Salſet.

The Indian temple here is an hundred and twenty feet long, and the ſame in breadth; without including the meaſurement of the chapels and the adjacent chambers. Its height within is nearly fifteen feet, although the floor has been greatly raiſed by the acceſſion of duſt, and of the ſediment of the water which falls into it in the rainy ſeaſon. The whole of this vaſt ſtructure, ſituate in a hill of conſiderable height, is cut out in the ſolid rock. The pillars ſupporting the roof are alſo parts of the rock which have been left ſtanding by the architect. They are of an uncommon order; but have an agreeable enough effect. The walls of this temple are ornamented with figures in bas-relief, ſo prominent, that they are joined to the rock only by the back. Many of theſe figures are of a coloſſal ſize; being ſome ten, ſome twelve, and ſome even fourteen feet high. Neither in deſign, nor in execution, indeed, can theſe bas-reliefs be compared with the works of the Grecian ſculptors; but they are greatly ſuperior in elegance to the remains of the ancient Egyptian ſculpture. They are alſo finer than the bas-reliefs from the ruins of Perſepolis. No doubt, then, but the arts were cultivated by the ancient Indians with better ſucceſs than is commonly ſuppoſed. Probably theſe figures mark events relative to the mythology and fabulous hiſtory of the Indians, for they ſeem to be repreſentatives of gods and heroes. The modern Indians are ſo ignorant, that M. Niebuhr could obtain from them no information concerning thoſe antiquities. One man, who pretended to explain the character of one of the largeſt ſtatues, aſſured him that it was Kaun, one of their ancient fabulous princes, famous for his cruelties committed upon his ſiſter's children. This ſtatue, which is in other reſpects well formed, has eight arms; an emblem of power, which the Indians give to their allegorical figures. None of theſe figures has a beard, and all of them very ſcanty whiſkers. At preſent, the young Indians wear all whiſkers; and ſuch as are advanced in life have commonly the whole beard to grow. The lips of theſe figures are always thick, and their ears are lengthened out by large pendents; ornaments which they almoſt all wear. Several of them wear a ſmall cord, in the faſhion of a ſcarf; a mode now prevalent among the Bramins. One woman has but a ſingle breaſt; from which it ſhould ſeem, that the ſtory of the Amazons was not unknown to the old Indians. Several figures, as well maſculine as feminine, have one arm leaning on the head of a male, or a female dwarf; from which it ſhould ſeem that theſe monſters of the human ſpecies have always been an object of luxury and magnificence among the taſteleſs great. Several of theſe figures have hair on the head, which ſeems not to be of its native growth, but is perfectly like a wig; ſo that this covering for the head appears to be of very ancient invention. The female boſom is always perfectly round; from which it ſeems that the Indian faſhion of wearing thin wooden caſes upon the breaſts is alſo very ancient. One woman too appears bearing her child in the ſame attitude which is ſtill in uſe among the Indians, and which forms thoſe children to ſtand firmly upon their feet and legs. The head-dreſs of theſe female figures is commonly an high-crowned bonnet; alſo a turban. Some are bare-headed, and have their hair at leaſt well combed, if it is not rather a periwig they wear. Several are naked. The dreſs of others is more nearly like that of the moderns. Some of the women wear a cap. In many places the handkerchief, ſtill uſed through all India, is obſervable in the hands of the inferior figures. In ſeveral parts of theſe bas-reliefs appears the famous Cobra de Capello, a ſort of ſerpent, which the human figures treat with great familiarity. Theſe ſerpents are ſtill very common in the iſle of Elephanta, the inhabitants of which are not afraid of them, but ſay that they are friendly to man, and do no harm, unleſs when intentionally provoked. Certain it is, however, that their bite is mortal.

On each ſide of this temple is a chapel, nine feet high, conſequently lower than the principal building. The walls of theſe chapels are alſo covered with bas-relief figures, on a ſmaller ſcale than thoſe upon the walls of the temple. Behind the chapels are three chambers, the walls of which diſplay no ſculptures; their uſe our hero could not conjecture. The ſmalleſt of the chapels, having no ſculptured figure, but that of the god Gonnis, is ſtill in a ſtate of neat preſervation, which muſt be owing to the care of the preſent inhabitants, who repair thither to perform their devotions. Before the entrance into this chapel, M. Niebuhr found a pile of ſhapeleſs ſtones, newly bedaubed with red paint. He ſuppoſed that the modern Indians no longer adore their ancient gods, but have adopted new objects of worſhip, whom they repreſent by ſtones painted red, for want of more artificial ſtatues. In many places through India, indeed, may be ſeen ſimilar piles of red ſtones, which are held in high veneration among a people who have now almoſt entirely loſt all knowledge of the fine arts.

The reſt of the temple being perfectly neglected, is now the haunt of ſerpents and beaſts of prey. One dares not enter it without firſt making ſeveral diſcharges of fire arms, to expel thoſe creatures. Even after uſing this precaution, a Dutchman was once in great danger from ſwarms of waſps of a peculiar ſpecies, which he had rouſed from their neſts with his gun. In the hot ſeaſon, horned cattle reſort to the lower chambers of the temple, to drink of the water which is depoſited there during the rains.

There is no way of obtaining any information from the preſent inhabitants of the iſland, concerning the period when this temple was built. Thoſe good folks relate with ſimplicity, that a number of ſtrangers came one night into the iſland, and reared this edifice before the return of day-light. They ſeem very fond of the marvellous in India.

On a hill at a ſmall diſtance, there is ſaid to be another temple; but to it there is no open road: and as the graſs was at that time very tall, our hero's guides would not accompany him thither, for fear of ſerpents and wild animals.

It was their intention to return into Europe through Turkey, and take their paſſage on board a ſhip of the Company's which was to ſail for Baſra the beginning of the next year; but the ſtate of their health would not allow them to take that opportunity. Mr. Cramer, ſinking at length under his complaints, died at Bombay, in ſpite of all medical aſſiſtance, February the 10th, 1764.

M. Niebuhr, now the ſole ſurvivor of all his party, thought it his duty to attend to his own preſervation, and to provide for the ſafe conveyance of their papers to Europe, as he feared that theſe would be loſt, if he alſo ſhould die by the way. Foreſeeing that he ſhould have to undergo the ſame fatigues in paſſing through Turkey, which he had already encountered in Arabia, and which the weak ſtate of his health was unfit to bear, he reſolved to ſet out ſtraight for London, by the firſt ſhip which ſhould ſail for Europe. In the mean time, to gratify his curioſity with a ſight of Surat, he took the opportunity of going on board an Engliſh ſhip bound on a voyage to that port.

They ſailed from Bombay on the 24th of March 1764, and were obliged to ſtop at Mahim, a ſmall town in the northern part of the iſle, where a member of the Council of Bombay conſtantly reſides.

On the 26th of March they arrived in the road of Surat, at the diſtance of three German miles from the city. They went on ſhore at Domus, a village diſtinguiſhed by the reſidence of ſome, and by a vaſt Indian fig-tree, which is held in high veneration. Here they took a Kakkri, the carriage common in the country, which is neither more nor leſs than a covered cart, drawn by two oxen, which are driven by a peaſant ſeated on the pole. M. Niebuhr had here an inſtance of the great dryneſs of this country, for the movement of their light carriage raiſed a cloud of duſt about them. He never ſuffered ſo much from the duſt, even in caravans of ſome hundreds of camels, horſes, and mules.

The city of Surat ſtands in a large and fertile plain, on the banks of a conſiderable river, named Tappi. On the land ſide, it is encompaſſed with two brick walls, which divide it into the inner and the outer town. The citadel ſtands within the inner, on the ſhore of the Tappi, and is divided by trenches from the town. One may walk round the outer wall in two hours and a half; the ſpace which it encloſes is chiefly occupied by gardens, having but a very few houſes.

The larger houſes are flat-roofed here, as through the reſt of the Eaſt, with courts before them. The houſes of the common people are high-roofed. Although Surat has been long under the dominion of the Mahometan Moguls, yet here is no handſome moſque with towers, as among the Turks and Arabians. The ſquares of this city are large, and the ſtreets ſpacious, but not paved; ſo that the duſt is inſufferable. Each ſtreet has gates of its own, with which it is ſhut up in times of turbulence; and theſe are as frequent here as at Cairo.

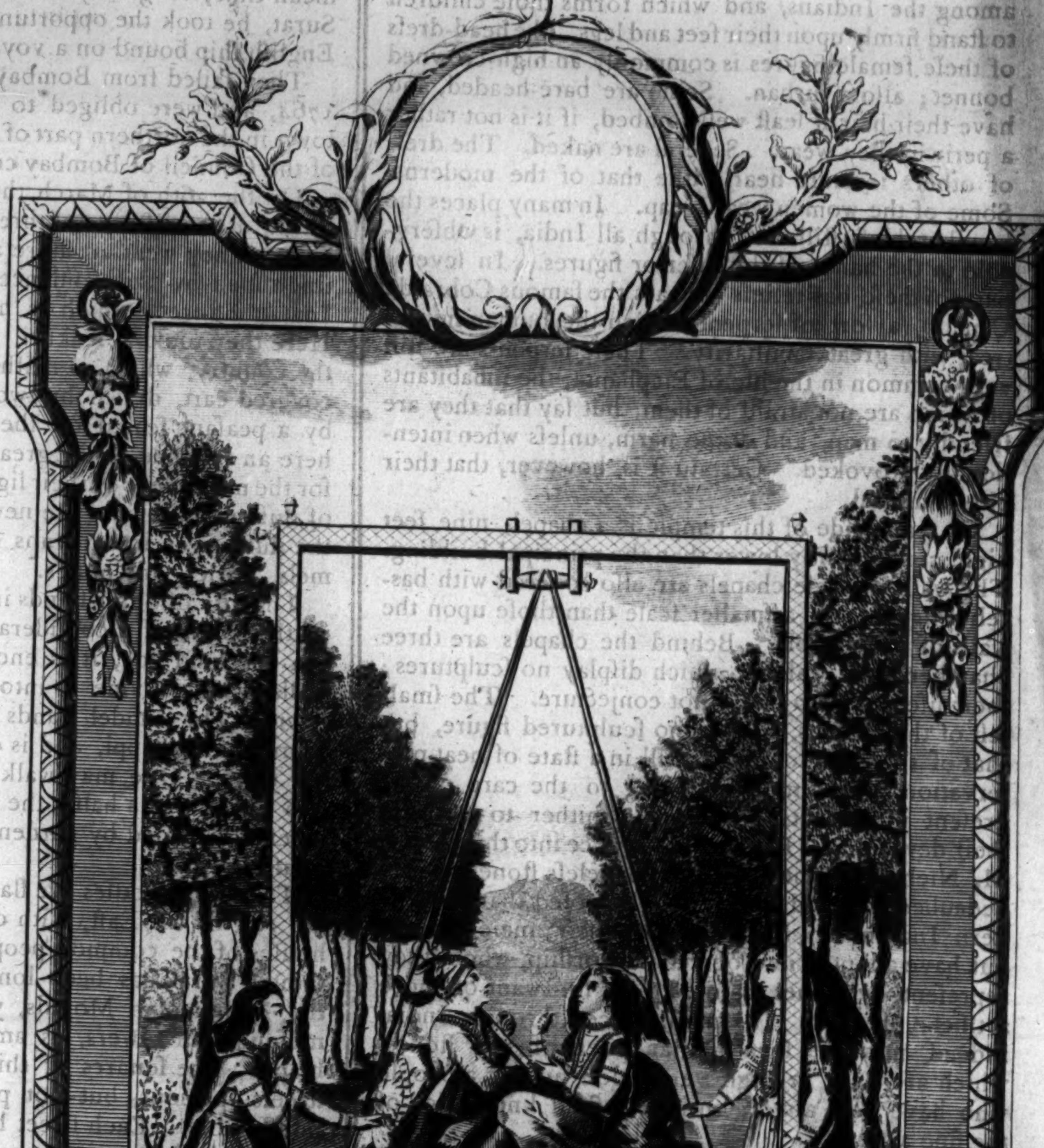
At Surat proviſions are plenteous and cheap; the air, too, is wholeſome, notwithſtanding the warmth of the climate. One thing unfavourable is, that ſhips cannot enter the harbour, becauſe the Tappi is full of ſand-banks. This river is too low in the dry ſeaſon; and in the rains ſwells too ſuddenly, to ſuch a height as to overflow all the neighbourhood.

Univerſal toleration and liberty are enjoyed in this city by all religious profeſſions; and its inhabitants are accordingly very numerous. The Europeans reſiding here eſtimate the population of the city at a million of ſouls. But this calculation M. Niebuhr eſteems above the truth, by two thirds.

One thing ſingular in Surat is, that here is no hoſpital for human beings, but an extenſive eſtabliſhment of this nature for ſick or maimed animals. When the Europeans turn out an old horſe, or any other domeſtic animal, to periſh as uſeleſs, the Indians voluntarily aſſume the care of it, and place it in this houſe, which is full of infirm, decrepid cows, ſheep, hens, rabbits, pigeons, &c. M. Niebuhr ſaw in it a great tortoiſe, which was blind and helpleſs, and, as he was told, 125 years of age. The charitable Indians keep a phyſician on purpoſe for theſe animals.

The environs of Surat are not without gardens, which are the property either of Europeans, or of natives of the country. The fineſt of thoſe belonging to Europeans is the property of the Dutch Eaſt-India Company. Its aſpect is rich and charming.

To obtain a proper idea of an Indian garden, our hero went to ſee one which was formed by a late Nabob,



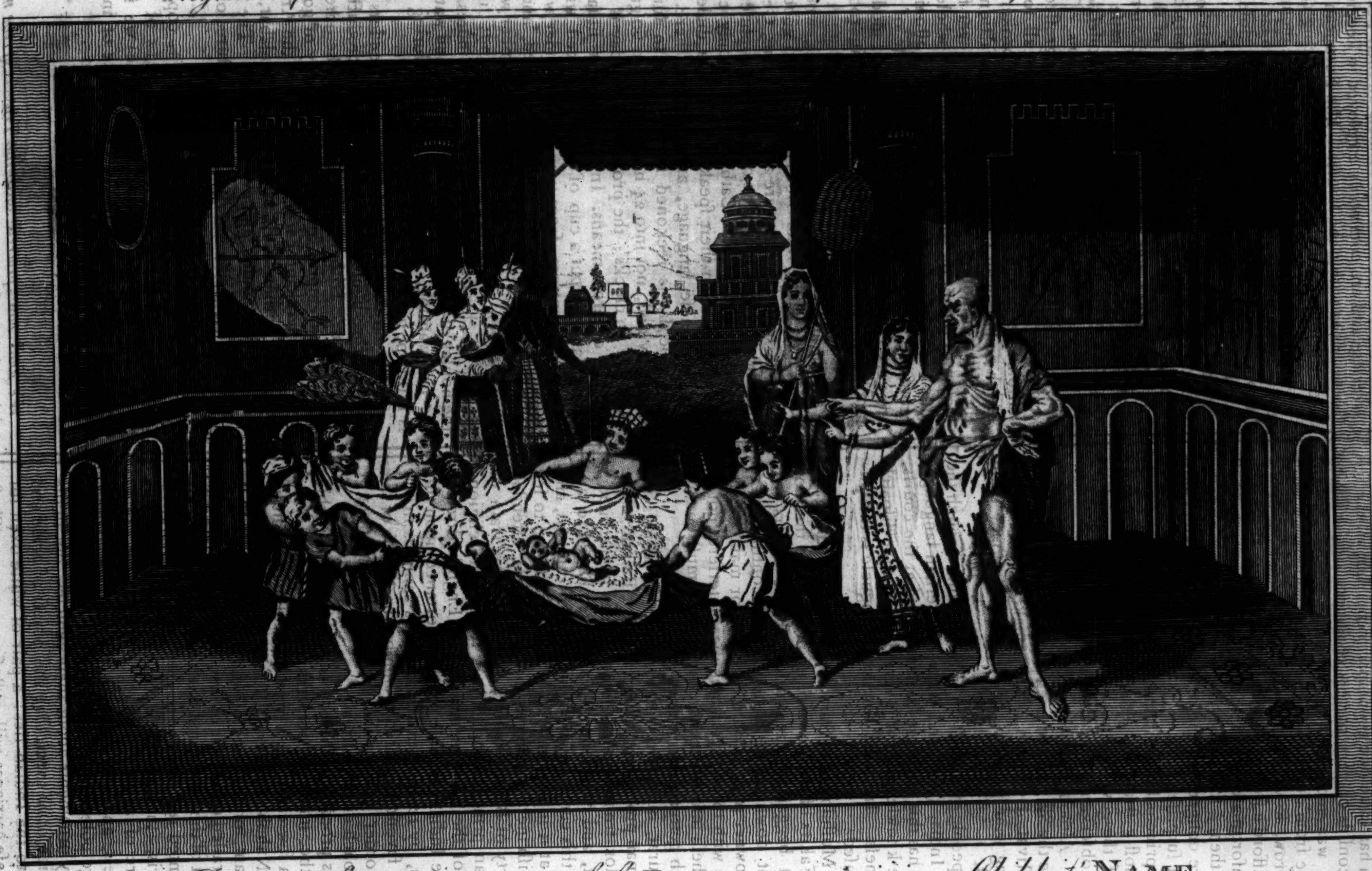
A Diversion of
SWINGING,
practised by the principal People
IN INDIA.

Wale delin.

Walker sculp.

Published by Alex. Hogg, No. 16 Paternoster Row.

Engraved for PORTLOCK'S New COLLECTION of VOYAGES & TRAVELS.



Remarkable CEREMONY of the BANIANS, on giving a Child it's NAME.

Publiſhed by Alexr. Hogg, May 3. 1794.

Nabob, at the expence of 500,000 rupees. This garden was of conſiderable extent, but had not the leaſt appearance of regularity in the deſign, and had in it nothing in the faſhion of Europeon gardens, but a few ponds and fountains: the reſt was a confuſed medley of buildings and ſmall orchards. Among the buildings was one of great dimenſions, having baths and ſaloons, and ornamented with the magnificence of India. The other buildings are harams for the Nabob's wives, entirely ſeparate from each other, ſo that each lady can hold her little court apart. Every haram has ſome one good apartment; but all the reſt of it conſiſts of very narrow chambers for the ſlaves. What was moſt ſtriking in this garden, was the paſſage from one ſuit of rooms to another, by paths ſo narrow, ſo winding, and ſo blocked up by doors, as to afford a ſtrong inſtance of the diſtruſt with which the unfortunate great in deſpotic countries regard all about them; ſo that they are never free from anxiety, and are obliged to ſtand continually on their guard againſt ſurpriſe.

The principal inhabitants of Surat are Mahometans, and moſtly ſtrangers, although employed in the ſervice of the government. They are equally zealous in the obſervance of their law as the Turks and Arabians. Although of the ſect of the Sunnites, they tolerate the Shiites, and even permit them to celebrate the feſtival of Haſſein. They make no ſcruple of drinking wine publicly, or of lending money upon intereſt.

All people of diſtinction in Surat, and through the reſt of India, ſpeak and write the Perſian language. Hence has this language been received at the courts, and the knowledge of it is very uſeful for the diſpatch of buſineſs. In trade, corrupt Portugueſe is the language uſed.

The Muſſulmans of Surat bring about them a great many Fakirs of their own religion, who are the moſt inſolent beggars in the world. Thoſe Fakirs will often ſit down before a houſe, and continue there till the owner pays the ſum they aſk, or make a compoſition with them. As the police interferes not to check theſe inſolent mendicants, people muſt be content with getting quit of them at any price.

At Surat, our hero had occaſion to witneſs the Muſſulman proceſſion at the feſtival of Bairam. The counſellor from Bombay, who reſides in the citadel of Surat, and repreſents a Nabob, is obliged to announce this ceremony by a diſcharge of cannons, and to aſſiſt at it in perſon. It is a ſtrange ſight, to ſee an Engliſh merchant in the European dreſs, attended by a party of Britiſh ſoldiers, and with the train of an Indian prince, conduct and regulate a religious feſtival of the Mahometans. The Engliſh director made the Indians ſenſible of his importance upon this occaſion, by refuſing to diſcharge his cannons in the night; a favour requeſted of him by the Nabob of the city, in order to give the people timely warning of the approach of the feſtival.

In this proceſſion there was nothing remarkable, except the numbers of kakkris, palanquins, and horſes, a few cannons, a great deal of martial muſic, and the Nabob's ſoldiers. The governor rode upon an elephant, on the back of which he ſat on a ſort of throne, raiſed upon four pillars. This elephant was, like moſt of the horſes and oxen which drew the kakkris, painted red.

Kakkris, the carriages moſt common through India, are of a very ſimple conſtruction, run upon two wheels, and are drawn by oxen: the driver ſits on a large pole, conſiſting of ſeveral bamboos. It is not in any ornaments about theſe vehicles, but in the cattle which draw them, that the object of pride and expence to the Indian lies: a pair of white oxen for one of theſe carriages will coſt 600 rupees. Theſe oxen have the points of their horns ornamented with ſilver; their pace is quick, but leſs ſo than that of horſes.

The citizens of Surat diſplay their magnificence likewiſe in their palanquins. This is a ſort of couch ſuſpended from a bamboo, and borne by four men. The traveller reclines in this vehicle, and is ſhaded from the ſun by a curtain. A palanquin completely ornamented with ſilver, covered with rich ſtuffs, and ſuſpended upon a handſome bamboo, properly bent, will coſt above 200 pounds ſterling. The bamboo only of the governor of Bombay's palanquin, excluſive of the other ornaments, coſt 125 pounds ſterling. The bearers of the palanquins are Indian ſervants, who wear no clothes, except a ſmall linen cloth about their loins, with cloſe flat bonnets on their heads, as liveries, and are commonly employed in keeping the rooms clean within the houſes. The European ladies are at firſt ſhocked at the indecency of being carried by naked men, but ſoon learn to accuſtom themſelves to it. The palanquins of the Mahometan ladies are incommodious wooden boxes, entirely cloſe, and fixed upon a ſtraight pole.

The Hindoos, the aboriginal inhabitants of the country, compoſe the moſt conſiderable part of the population of Surat. They are almoſt all of the caſt of the Banians; and hence their ſkill and dexterity in matters of calculation and economy often raiſe them to places of conſiderable truſt, in the collection of the taxes and cuſtoms for the Mahometans. Theſe Banians, being born to trade, have engroſſed the commerce of India to ſuch a degree, that all foreign nations are obliged to employ them as brokers; in which employment they give better ſatisfaction than the Jews in Turkey. Europeans have never found reaſon to repent the intruſting even their whole fortune to the Banians, who continue to give aſtoniſhing proofs of their probity and fidelity. Some of them are very rich; but they live all in a ſtyle of moderate ſimplicity, wearing for dreſs only a plain robe of white cotton.

At Surat there are numbers of Perſians, who are ſkilful merchants, induſtrious artiſans, and good ſervants. In the ſame city are alſo Armenians, Georgians, and Jews; but of none of theſe any conſiderable number. The Indian Catholics, commonly called Portugueſe, from their ſpeaking the India dialect of the Portugueſe language, are numerous here. At Surat, the day is reckoned from ſun-ſet to ſun-ſet, and is divided, not into 24 hours, but into 60 garris. Here are no clocks; the progreſs of the day is meaſured by different means. In a conſpicuous ſituation, a man ſtands to put a cup of copper, pierced with a hole in the bottom, from time to time under water; every time the cup ſinks, a garri is counted, and the man announces its lapſe by ſtriking the number which it makes upon a plate of metal that ſounds like a clock. Each garri conſiſts of 24 of our minutes. In the houſes of the great, too, where clocks and watches are not wanting, this old faſhion of meaſuring time is ſtill kept up.

The great trade carried on at Surat, renders this city the ſtore-houſe of the moſt precious productions of Indoſtan. Hither is brought from the interior parts of the empire an immenſe quantity of goods, which the merchants carry in their ſhips to the Arabic Gulf, the Perſian Gulf, the coaſt of Malabar, the coaſt of Coromandel, and even to China. The provinces near this city are full of manufactures of all ſorts.

Having already given our Readers a copious Deſcription of this Place in the TRAVELS of Mr. BRUCE (which are of a more modern date) we ſhall decline any further repetition, for the ſake of introducing other novel and intereſting Matter.

We ſhall now proceed with the Travels of the much celebrated and unfortunate M. BRISSOT DE WARVILLE, *in* AMERICA; *preſuming that his Deſcriptions of the* UNITED STATES *of that now Independent Nation, accurately Tranſlated from the French, will be highly acceptable to our numerous Readers.*

A NEW, COMPLETE, AND GENUINE

HISTORY of TRAVELS
IN THE
United States of America.

Undertaken and Performed in the Year 1788,

By J. P. BRISSOT DE WARVILLE,

(About Five Years before he was Guillotined in PARIS.)

Including ſeveral Intereſting REMARKS—The PLAN of each SETTLEMENT in the UNITED STATES—CURSORY OBSERVATIONS; and the Means uſed to ABOLISH SLAVERY.

Being an Entire New Tranſlation of the famous BRISSOT's ingenious Memoranda of PHILADELPHIA, aſcertaining the Progreſs of that Country; with ſeveral Curious and Intereſting Anecdotes.

Alſo, The Commerce between each STATE, and the SAVAGES, the CANADIANS, NOVA-SCOTIA, ENGLISH ISLANDS, &c. &c. Government of each STATE—LEGISLATION—REVENUE—FRONTIERS—CULTIVATION—CIRCULATION of MONEY—COUNTRY MANUFACTURES, &c. &c.

INTRODUCTION.

THE author informs us that the object of his travels was not to ſearch for unknown plants or curioſities, but to ſtudy men who had juſt acquired their liberty, and now ſtyled themſelves an independent nation. His firſt object was to examine the effects of liberty on the character of man, of ſociety, and of government; and as this was the moſt eſſential point of his obſervations, for the purpoſe of attaining a ſo neceſſary knowledge, he wrote every evening in a journal what principally ſtruck him in the day. His next rule was to conſider the compoſition of the legiſlative body, the ſenate, and executive power, elections, any abuſes that may be in them, &c. &c. and to draw forth ſuch concluſions from them as reaſon might dictate; likewiſe to remark the principal articles of exportation and importation, the number of ſhips made uſe of, and the ſtate of money uſed in commerce: moreover, as Banks are an important article in the common-wealth, to mark well the proportion obſerved between the money they contained and the bills they circulated; likewiſe to note the prevailing ſyſtem of taxation,—the federal debt of every State, and of individuals,—the federal expences of every State, and their accountability.

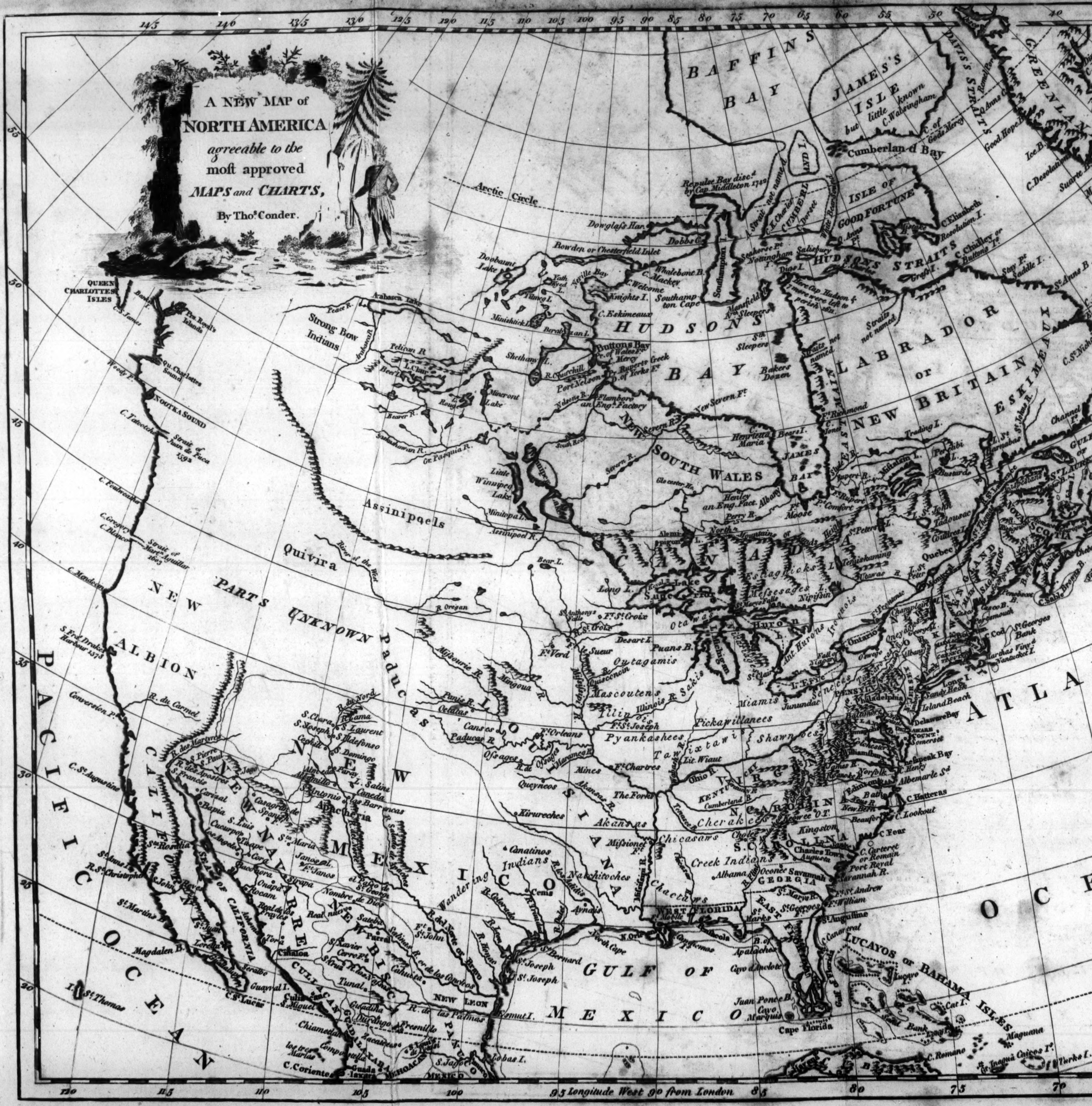
Our author further intended to ſee if report was juſt reſpecting the accounts of New-York, which intimated that the lands were uncultivated, the town ſurrounded with foreſts, and that, though fire-wood was cheap, they preferred coals at a high price. Alſo, to inquire into their mode of rearing cattle; the diſpoſitions and private morals of the inhabitants; of education, public and private; and to make acquaintance, as far as poſſible, with the miniſters of religion, for the purpoſe of gaining the ſureſt knowledge of this grand point.

M. de Warville, our author, was one of the deputies to the National Convention; he and his partners, Vergniaux, Genſonne, Duperret, Valaze, Carra, Gardien, Duprat, Sillery, Fauchet, Ducros, Boyer-Fonfrede, Laſource, Leſterp, Beauvais, Duchatel, Mainville, Lacaze, Lehardi, Boileau, Antiboul, and Vigée, having been convicted of a conſpiracy againſt the unity and indiviſibility of the republic, and againſt the liberty and ſafety of the French nation, were condemned to die at Paris, by the guillotine, November 30, 1793. Valaze ſtabbed himſelf in court as ſoon as ſentence was paſſed; the reſt ſuffered the next day, and the ſentence was executed on them all in the ſpace of thirty-ſeven minutes. The corpſe of Valaze was conveyed ſeparately, on a cart, to the place of execution, exhibited at the ſcaffold, and buried on the ſame ſpot.

CHAPTER I.

M. DE WARVILLE's *Departure from Havre de Grace—Remarks—His Arrival at Boſton—Joy—Deſcription of the Boſtonians—Of the Young Women, Mothers, &c.—Penalties againſt Adultery—Characteriſtic Neatneſs—Their Appearance at Church—Religion—Clubs—Entertainments—Mode of Living, &c.—College at Norton—Buildings, &c.—The Commencement of a Feaſt—Their Authors—Publications, &c.—The Humane Society—Medical Society—Alms-Houſe—Workhouſe—Account of the Parts adjoining Boſton—Bunker-Hill, &c.*

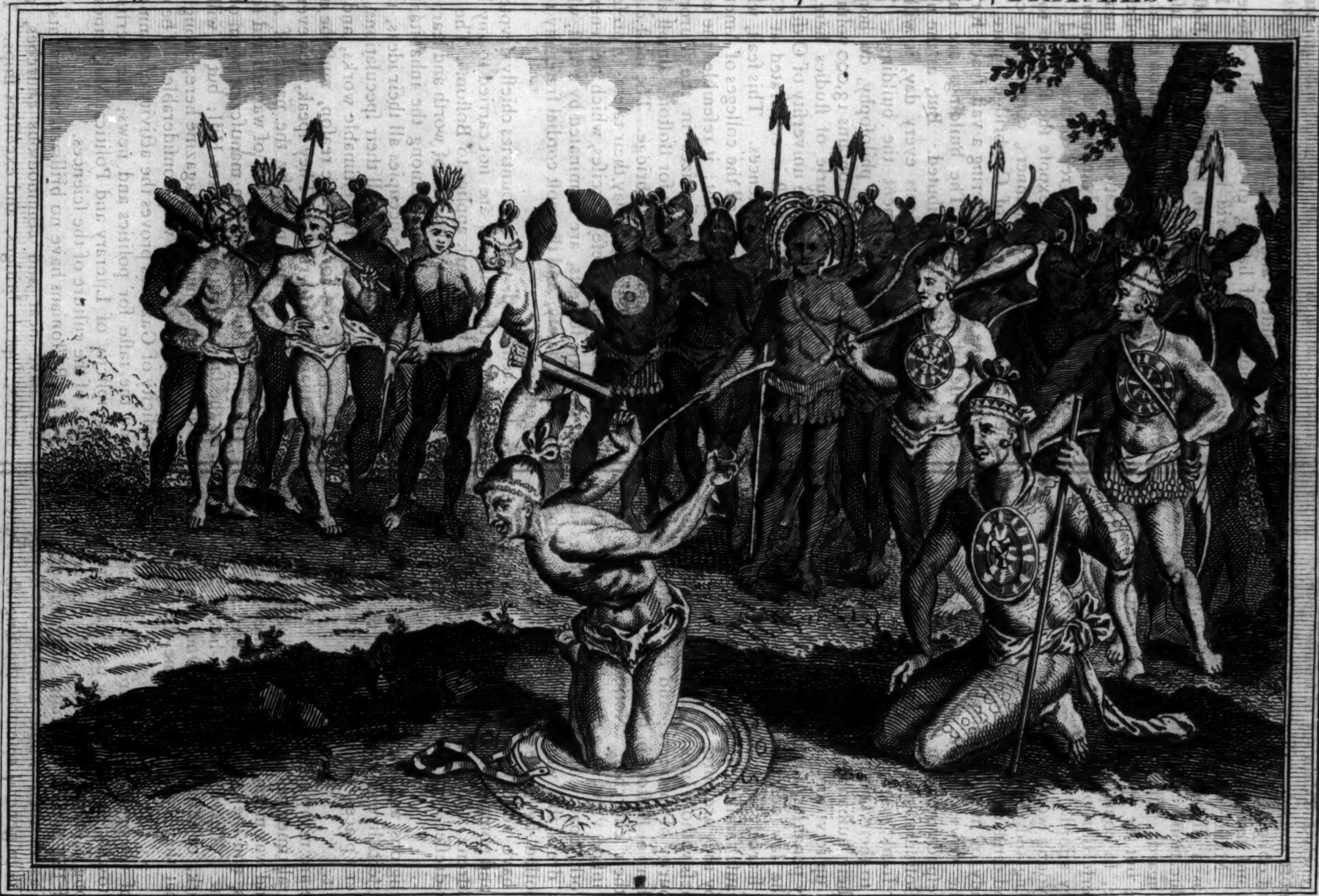
M. De Warville prepared to leave Havre de Grace, June 3, 1788. Bolbec and Bottes, near Havre, afford many charming and pictureſque ſituations. Havre is next to Nantz and Bourdeaux, the moſt conſiderable place for the ſlave-trade. This infamous traffic, which inſtead of decreaſing ſeems to increaſe, has contributed not a little towards the proſperity of many great houſes of this city. Indeed, the



A NEW MAP of NORTH AMERICA agreeable to the most approved *MAPS and CHARTS*, By Thos. Conder.

BAFFINS BAY
JAMES'S ISLE but little known
GREENLAND
DAVIS'S STRAITS
Arctic Circle
Cumberland Bay
ISLE OF GOOD FORTUNE
HUDSONS STRAITS
HUDSONS BAY
LABRADOR or NEW BRITAIN
ESKIMEAUX
NEW SOUTH WALES
JAMES BAY
NEW FOUND LAND
GULF OF ST. LAURENCE
NOVA SCOTIA
CANADA
Quebec
Assinipoels
Quivira
Strong Bow Indians
QUEEN CHARLOTTES ISLES
NOOTKA SOUND
NEW ALBION
PARTS UNKNOWN
Paducas
LOUISIANA
Mascoutens
Outagamis
Illinois
Miamis
Pickawillanees
Shawnees
Pyankashees
Tawixtawi
VIRGINIA
KENTUCKY
N. CAROLINA
S. CAROLINA
GEORGIA
Cherakees
Chicasaws
Chactaws
Creek Indians
EAST FLORIDA
WEST FLORIDA
Cape Florida
Philadelphia
Albemarle Sd.
C. Hatteras
C. Lookout
Charles Town
Bermudas Is.
ATLANTIC OCEAN
LUCAYOS or BAHAMA ISLES
Tropic of Cancer
GULF OF MEXICO
NEW MEXICO
Apacheria
NEW NAVARRE
NEW BISCAY
CULIACAN
NEW LEON
CALIFORNIA
PACIFIC OCEAN
C. St. Lucas
C. Coriente
Magdalen B.
Longitude West from London

Engraved for **PORTLOCK's** New **COLLECTION** of **VOYAGES** & **TRAVELS**.



A **KING** of **FLORIDA** consulting his **MAGICIAN** previous to his going to Battle.

the increaſed demand for ſugar, cotton, coffee, &c. in Europe, has augmented in a great degree the demand for ſlaves in the colonies.

July 30, our hero arrived at Boſton, and was highly delighted in wandering up and down that long ſtreet, whoſe ſimple houſes of wood border the magnificent channel, and whoſe full ſtores afforded a ſupply of every deſirable production. He enjoyed, while every thing as yet was in its infancy, the activity of the merchants, the artiſans, and ſailors.

The Boſtonians unite ſimplicity of morals with that politeneſs and delicacy of manners which render virtue more amiable. They are hoſpitable to ſtrangers, and obliging to friends; they are tender huſbands, fond and almoſt idolatrous parents, and kind maſters. Muſic, which their teachers formerly proſcribed as a diabolic art, begins to make part of their education. In ſome houſes the forte-piano may be heard. This art, it is true, is ſtill in its infancy; but the young novices who exerciſe it, are ſo gentle, ſo complaiſant, and ſo modeſt, that the proud perfection of art gives no pleaſure equal to what they afford.

The young women here, enjoy the liberty they do in England, and they do not abuſe it. Their frank and tender hearts have nothing to fear from the perfidy of men. Examples of this perfidy are rare; the vows of love are believed; and love always reſpects them, or ſhame follows the guilty.

The Boſtonian mothers are reſerved; their air is however frank, good, and communicative. Entirely devoted to their families, they are occupied in rendering their huſbands happy, and in training their children up to virtue.

Heavy penalties, ſuch as the pillory and impriſonment, the law denounces againſt adultery. This law has ſcarcely ever been called into execution. It is becauſe families are happy; and becauſe they are happy they are pure.

Neatneſs without luxury, is a characteriſtic feature of this purity of manners; and this neatneſs is ſeen every where at Boſton, in their dreſs, in their houſes, and in their churches. Nothing is more charming than an inſide view of a church on Sunday. The good cloth coat covers the man; calicoes and chintzes dreſs the women and children, without being ſpoiled by thoſe gewgaws which whim and caprice have added to them among our women. Powder and pomatum never ſully the heads of infants and children: adults, however, invoke the art of the hair-dreſſer; for this art has already croſſed the ſeas.

All religions are tolerated, and the miniſters of different ſects live in ſuch harmony, that they ſupply each other's places when any one is detained from his pulpit.

There are many clubs at Boſton. M. de Warville was ſeveral times at a particular club held once a week, and was much pleaſed with their politeneſs to ſtrangers, and the knowledge diſplayed in their converſation. There is no coffee-houſe at Boſton, New-York, or Philadelphia. One houſe in each town, that they call by that name, ſerves as an exchange.

One of the principal pleaſures of the inhabitants of theſe towns, conſiſts in little parties for the country, among families and friends. The principal expence of the parties, eſpecially after dinner, is tea. In this, as in their whole manner of living, the Americans in general reſemble the Engliſh. Punch, warm and cold, before dinner; excellent beef, and Spaniſh and Bordeaux wines, cover their tables, always ſolidly and abundantly ſerved. Spruce beer, excellent cyder, and Philadelphia porter, precede the wines. This porter is equal to the Engliſh: the manufacture of it ſaves a vaſt tribute formerly paid to the Engliſh induſtry. Our traveller alſo found American cheeſe equal to the beſt Cheſhire of England, or the Rochfort of France. This may with truth be ſaid of that made on a farm on Elizabeth-Iſland, belonging to the reſpectable Governor Bowdoin.

After forcing the Engliſh to give up their domination, the Americans determined to rival them in every thing uſeful. This ſpirit of emulation ſhews itſelf every where: it has erected at Boſton an extenſive glaſs manufactory, belonging to M. Breek and others.

Maſſachuſetts wiſhes to rival, in manufactures, Connecticut and Pennſylvania; ſhe has, like the laſt a ſociety formed for the encouragement of manufactures and induſtry. The greateſt monuments of the induſtry of this ſtate, are the three bridges of Charles, Malden, and Eſſex.

The honour of having given the firſt college or univerſity to the new world is due to Boſton. It is placed on an extenſive plain, four miles from Boſton, at a place called Cambridge; the origin of this uſeful inſtitution was in 1636. The imagination could not fix on a place that could better unite all the conditions eſſential to a ſeat of education; ſufficiently near to Boſton, to enjoy all the advantages of a communication with Europe and the reſt of the world; and ſufficiently diſtant, not to expoſe the ſtudents to the contagion of licentious manners, common in commercial towns. The air of Cambridge is pure, and the environs charming, offering a vaſt ſpace for the exerciſe of the youth. The buildings are large, numerous, and well diſtributed. But, as the number of the ſtudents augments every day, it will be neceſſary ſoon to augment the buildings. The library, and the cabinet of philoſophy, do honour to the inſtitution. The firſt contains 13,000 volumes. The regulation of the courſe of ſtudies here, is nearly the ſame as that at the univerſity of Oxford.

Every year a ſolemn feaſt is celebrated at Cambridge in honour of the Sciences. This feaſt, which takes place once a year in all the colleges of America, is called the Commencement: it reſembles the exerciſes and diſtribution of prizes in the European colleges. It is a day of joy for Boſton; almoſt all its inhabitants aſſemble in Cambridge. The moſt diſtinguiſhed of the ſtudents diſplay their talents in preſence of the public; and theſe exerciſes, which are generally on patriotic ſubjects, are terminated by a feaſt, where the freeſt gaiety, and the moſt cordial fraternity reign together.

It is remarked, that in countries chiefly devoted to commerce, the ſciences are not carried to any high degree. This remark applies to Boſton. The univerſity certainly contains men of worth and learning; but ſcience is not diffuſed among the inhabitants of the town. Commerce occupies all their ideas, turns all their heads, and abſorbs all their ſpeculations. On this account there are few eſtimable works, and few authors. Poets, for the ſame reaſon, muſt be more rare than other writers. They ſpeak, however, of an original, but lazy poet, by the name of Allen, whoſe verſes are ſaid to be full of warmth and force. They mention particularly a manuſcript poem of his, on the famous battle of Bunker-Hill; but he will not print it. They publiſh a Magazine here, though the number of Gazettes is very conſiderable. The multiplicity of Gazettes proves the activity of commerce, and the taſte for politics and news; the merits and multiplicity of Literary and Political Magazines are ſigns of the culture of the ſciences.

The Boſtonians have no brilliant monuments; but they have neat and commodious churches, good houſes, ſuperb bridges, and excellent ſhips. Their ſtreets are well illuminated at night.

Beſides the ſocieties for the encouragement of agriculture and manufactures, they have another, known by the name of the Humane Society. Their object is to recover drowned perſons: it is formed after the model of the one at London, as that is copied from the one at Paris. They follow the ſame methods as in Europe, and have effected many recoveries.

The Medical Society is not leſs uſeful. It holds a correſpondence with all the country towns; to know the ſymptoms of local diſeaſes, propoſe the proper remedies, and give inſtruction thereupon to their fellow-citizens.

The alms-houſe is another very laudable eſtabliſhment. It is deſtined to the poor, who, by age and infirmity, are unable to gain their living. It contains at preſent about one hundred and fifty perſons.

The work-houſe, or houſe of correction, is not very full, the morals of the people being in general good, and the ſpirit of induſtry prevalent.

The profeſſion of the law is one of the moſt lucrative employments in this ſtate, and they ſtill preſerve the expenſive forms of the Engliſh practice.

The parts adjoining Boſton, are charming and well cultivated, adorned with elegant houſes and agreeable ſituations. Among the ſurrounding eminences may be diſtinguiſhed Bunker-Hill, to which the ſuperb bridge of Charleſton leads. This town was entirely burnt by the Engliſh, in their attack of Bunker-Hill. It is at preſent rebuilt with elegant houſes of wood.

CHAP. II.

Departure from Boſton—Remarks on the Taverns, &c.—From Spenſer to Brookfield—To Wilbraham—Arrive at Springfield—Deſcription of the Place—Set out for Hartford—Deſcription of that Town—Its Productions, &c. Connecticut—Wetherſfield—Newhaven—Of the Women—Middleton—Danger of the Ferry at Stratford—Fairfield—Horſeneck—New Rochelle—Arrive at New-York—Make for Philadelphia—Land at Paulus-Hook—Newark—New Brunſwick—Trenton—Briſtol—Frankford—Their Arrival at Philadelphia—Journey to Burlington, &c.

OUR travellers ſet out from Boſton at four o'clock in the morning of Auguſt the 8th, and paſſed through the handſome town of Cambridge.

The diſtance from Boſton to New-York is about two hundred and fifty miles. Many perſons have united in eſtabliſhing a kind of diligence, or public ſtage, which paſſes regularly for the convenience of travellers. In the ſummer ſeaſon, the journey is performed in four days.

The country appears well cultivated as far as Weſton, where they breakfaſted; thence they paſſed to Worceſter to dinner, forty-eight miles from Boſton. This town is elegant and well peopled. They ſlept the firſt night at Spenſer, a new village in the midſt of the woods. The houſe of the tavern was but half built; however, the part that was finiſhed, was very clean. The chambers were neat, the beds good, the ſheets clean, ſupper paſſable; cyder, tea, punch, and all for fourteen pence a-head.

They left Spenſer at four o'clock in the morning. New carriage, new proprietor. It was a carriage without ſprings, a kind of waggon. It ſeemed at firſt very inconvenient, but by the time they had run thirty miles among the rocks, they were convinced that a carriage with ſprings would very ſoon have been overſet and broke.

Though great the fatigue of this route, yet the traveller is amply recompenſed by the variety of romantic ſituations, by the beauty of the proſpects which it offers at each ſtep, by the perpetual contraſt of ſavage nature and the efforts of art. Thoſe vaſt ponds of water, which loſe themſelves in the woods; thoſe rivulets, that waſh the meadow, newly ſnatched from uncultivated nature; thoſe neat houſes, ſcattered among the foreſts, and containing ſwarms of children, joyous and healthy, and well clad; thoſe fields, covered with trunks of trees, whoſe deſtruction is committed to the hand of time, and which are covered under the leaves of Indian corn; thoſe oaks, which preſerve ſtill the image of their ancient vigor, but which, girdled at the bottom, raiſe no longer to heaven but dry and naked branches, which the firſt ſtroke of wind muſt bring to the earth:—all theſe objects, ſo new to an European, arreſt him, abſorb him, and plunge him into an agreeable reverie. The depths of the foreſts, the prodigious ſize and height of the trees, call to his mind the time when the ſavages were the only inhabitants of this country. This ancient tree has beheld them; they filled theſe foreſts: they have now given place to another generation. The cultivator fears no more their vengeance; his muſket, formerly his neceſſary companion at the plough, now reſts ſuſpended in his houſe. Alone, with his wife and children, in the midſt of the foreſts, he ſleeps quietly, he labours in peace, and is happy. Such were the ideas which occupied our hero the greater part of his journey: they ſometimes gave place to others, ariſing from the view of the country-houſes, which are ſeen at ſmall diſtances through all the foreſts of Maſſachuſetts. Neatneſs embelliſhes them all. They have frequently but one ſtory and a garret; their walls are papered; tea and coffee appear on their tables; their daughters clothed in calicoes, diſplay the traits of civility, frankneſs, and decency; virtues which always follow contentment and eaſe. Almoſt all theſe houſes are inhabited by men who are both cultivators and artiſans; one is a tanner, another a ſhoemaker, another ſells goods; but all are farmers. The country ſtores are well aſſorted; one may find in the ſame ſhop hats, nails, liquors. It is not ſuppoſed that one third of the land of Maſſachuſetts is under cultivation: it is difficult to ſay when it will all be ſo, conſidering the invitations of the weſtern country and the province of Maine. But the uncleared lands are all located, and the proprietors have encloſed them with fences of different ſorts. Theſe ſeveral kinds of fences are compoſed of different materials, which announce the different degrees of culture in the country. Some are compoſed of the light branches of trees; others, of the trunks of trees laid one upon the other; a third ſort is made of long pieces of wood, ſupporting each other by making angles at the end; a fourth kind is made of long pieces of hewn timber, ſupported at the ends by paſſing into holes made in an upright poſt; a fifth is like the garden fences in England; the laſt kind is made of ſtones thrown together to the height of three feet. This laſt is moſt durable, and is common in Maſſachuſetts.

From Spenſer to Brookfield is fifteen miles. The road is good as far as this laſt town. A town in the interior of America, deſignates an extent of eight or ten miles, where are ſcattered a hundred or two hundred houſes. This diviſion into towns is neceſſary for aſſembling the inhabitants for elections and other purpoſes. Without this diviſion, the inhabitants might go ſometimes to one aſſembly, and ſometimes to another, which would lead to confuſion. Beſides, it would render it impoſſible to know the population of any particular canton; this ſerves for the baſis of many regulations. No people carry their attention in this particular, ſo far as the Americans. The ſituation of Brookfield is pictureſque. While breakfaſt was preparing, our travellers read the gazettes and journals, which are diſtributed through all the country. Their breakfaſt conſiſted of coffee, tea, boiled and roaſted meat; the whole for ten-pence, New-England currency, for each traveller.

From this place to Wilbraham the road is covered with rocks, and bordered with woods. At this place, a new proprietor, and a new carriage. A ſmall light carriage, well ſuſpended, and drawn by two horſes, took place of their heavy waggon. They could not conceive how five of them could ſit in this little Pariſian chariot, and demanded another. The conductor ſaid he had no other; that there were ſo few travellers in this part of the road, that he could not afford to run with more than two horſes; that moſt of the travellers from New-York ſtopped in Connecticut, and moſt of thoſe from Boſton, at Worceſter. They were obliged to ſubmit. They ſtarted like lightning; and arrived in an hour and a quarter at Springfield, ten miles.

This place, where we dined, reſembles an European town; that is, the houſes are placed near together. On a hill that overlooks this town, is a magazine of ammunition and arms belonging to the ſtate of Maſſachuſetts. This is the magazine that the rebel Shays endeavoured to take, and was ſo happily defended by General Shepard. They ſet out from Springfield, after dinner, for Hartford. They paſſed in a ferry-boat, the river that waſhes the environs of Springfield.

Hartford is a conſiderable rural town; the greater part of the inhabitants live by agriculture; ſo that eaſe and abundance univerſally reign in it. It is conſidered as one of the moſt agreeable in Connecticut, on account of its ſociety. The environs of Hartford diſplay a charming cultivated country; neat elegant houſes, vaſt meadows covered with herds of cattle of an enormous ſize, which furniſh the market of New-York, and even Philadelphia. Their ſheep reſemble ours; but not, like ours, watched by ſhepherds, and tormented by dogs: hogs of a prodigious ſize, ſurrounded with numerous families of pigs, wearing on the neck a triangular piece of wood, invented to hinder them from paſſing the barriers which encloſe the cultivated fields; geeſe and turkies in abundance, as well as potatoes and all other vegetables. Productions of every kind are excellent and cheap: the fruits, however, do not partake of this excellent quality, becauſe they are leſs attended to. Apples ſerve for making cyder; and great quantities of them are likewiſe exported. This ſtate owes all its advantages to its ſituation. It is a fertile plain, encloſed between two mountains, which render difficult its communications by land with the other ſtates. It is waſhed by the ſuperb river Connecticut, which falls into the ſea, and furniſhes a ſafe and eaſy navigation. Agriculture being the baſis of the riches of this ſtate, they are here more equally divided. Connecticut appears like one continued town. On quitting Hartford, you enter Wethersfield, a town not leſs elegant, very long, conſiſting of houſes well built. It is remarkable for its vaſt fields uniformly covered with onions; of which great quantities are exported to the Weſt-Indies. It is likewiſe remarkable for its elegant meeting-houſe, or church. On Sunday it is ſaid to offer an enchanting ſpectacle, by the number of young handſome perſons who aſſemble there, and by the agreeable muſic with which they intermingle the divine ſervice.

Nor is Newhaven inferior to Wethersfield for lovely women. At their balls during the winter, it is not rare to ſee an hundred charming girls, adorned with thoſe brilliant complexions ſeldom met with in journeying to the South, and dreſſed in elegant ſimplicity. The beauty of complexion is as ſtriking in Connecticut, as its numerous population. Every tavern exhibits neatneſs, decency, and dignity. The tables are ſerved by a young girl, decent and pretty; by an amiable mother, whoſe age has not effaced the agreeableneſs of her features; by men devoid of pride, and yet are not ignoble and baſe, like the greateſt part of our tavern-keepers. On the road one may often meet thoſe fair Connecticut girls, either driving a carriage, or alone on horſe-back, galloping boldly; with an elegant hat on the head, a white apron, and a calico gown;—uſages which prove at once the early cultivation of their reaſon, ſince they are truſted ſo young to themſelves, the ſafety of the road, and the general innocence of manners. Other proofs of the proſperity of Connecticut, are the number of new houſes every where to be ſeen, and the number of rural manufactories ariſing on every ſide.

Previous to their arrival at Middleton, where they were to breakfaſt, they ſtopped on the hill which overlooks that town, and the immenſe valley on which it is built. It is one of the fineſt and richeſt proſpects in America. Middleton is built like Hartford: broad ſtreets, trees on the ſides, and handſome houſes. They changed horſes and carriages at Durham; and after admiring a number of pictureſque ſituations on the road, they arrived at Newhaven, where they dined. The univerſity here enjoys a great reputation through the continent; the port is much frequented; the ſociety is ſaid to be very agreeable. They were obliged to quit this charming town, to arrive in the evening at Fairfield. They paſſed the inconvenient ferry at Stratford; afterwards, aſſailed by a violent ſtorm, they were well enough defended from it by a double curtain of leather which covered the carriage. The driver, though pierced through with the rain, continued his route through the obſcurity of a very dark night. They paſſed the night at Fairfield, a town unhappily celebrated in the laſt war, being burnt by the Engliſh. Moſt of the houſes are rebuilt; but thoſe who have ſeen this town before the war, regret its ancient ſtate, and the air of eaſe, and even opulence, that then diſtinguiſhed it. At Fairfield finiſhed the agreeable part of their journey. From this town to Rye, thirty-three miles, they had to ſtruggle againſt rocks and precipices. One of theſe is called Horſeneck; a chain of rocks ſo ſteep, that if a horſe ſhould ſlip, the carriage muſt be thrown into a valley two or three hundred feet. From Horſeneck they paſſed to New Rochelle, a colony founded the laſt century by ſome French emigrants, which appears not to have proſpered.

It is thirty-one miles from Rye to New-York. The road is good, even, and gravelly. They ſtopped at one of the beſt taverns in America, where they had an excellent dinner, and cheap.

Early on the 25th of Auguſt, M. de Warville went from New-York, and had the north river to paſs before arriving at the ſtage. They paſſed the ferry in an open boat, and landed at Paulus-Hook: they reckon two miles for this ferry, for which they pay ſixpence, money of New-York.

The carriage is a kind of open waggon, hung with double curtains of leather and woollen, which are raiſed or let fall at pleaſure: it is not well ſuſpended. But the road was ſo fine, being ſand and gravel, that they felt no inconvenience from that circumſtance. The horſes are good, and go with rapidity. Theſe carriages have four benches, and may contain twelve perſons. The light baggage is put under the benches, and the trunks fixed on behind. A traveller who does not chooſe to take the ſtage, has a one-horſe carriage by himſelf.

In theſe ſtages may be found men of all profeſſions. They ſucceed each other with rapidity. One who goes but twenty miles, yields his place to one who goes further. The mother and daughter mount the ſtage to go ten miles to dine; another ſtage brings them back: at every inſtant, then, they are making new acquaintances. The frequency of theſe carriages, the facility of finding places in them, and the low and fixed price, invite the Americans to travel.

The road from New-York to Newark is in part over a marſh: built wholly of wood, with much labour and perſeverance in the midſt of water, on a ſoil that trembles under the feet, it proves to what point may be carried the patience of man, who is determined to conquer nature. But though much of theſe marſhes are drained, there remains a large extent of them covered with ſtagnant waters, which infect the air, and give birth to thoſe muſquitoes with which ſtrangers are cruelly tormented, and to an epidemical fever which makes great ravages in ſummer; a fever known likewiſe in Virginia and in the Southern States, in parts adjacent to the ſea. Our traveller thinks that the upper parts of New-

Jerſey are exempt from this ſever, and from muſquitoes; but this ſtate is ravaged by a political ſcourge, more terrible than either; it is paper money. This paper is ſtill in New-Jerſey, what the people call a legal tender; that is, they are obliged to receive it at its nominal value, as a legal payment.

From Newark they went to dine at New-Brunſwick, and to ſleep at Trenton. The road is bad between the two laſt places, eſpecially after rain; it is a road difficult to be kept in repair. They paſſed by Prince-Town; this part of New-Jerſey is very well cultivated. M. de Crevecœur has not exaggerated in his deſcription of it. All the towns are well built, whether in wood, ſtone, or brick. Theſe places are too well known in the military annals of this country, to require a deſcription of them. The taverns are much dearer on this road, than in Maſſachuſetts and Connecticut: our traveller paid at Trenton for a dinner, three ſhillings and ſixpence, money of Pennſylvania.

They paſſed the ferry from Trenton at ſeven in the morning. The Delaware, which ſeparates Pennſylvania from New-Jerſey is a ſuperb river, navigable for the largeſt ſhips. Its navigation is intercepted by the ice during two months in the year. Veſſels are not attacked here by thoſe worms, which are ſo deſtructive to them in rivers further ſouth. The proſpect from the middle of the river is charming: on the right hand, are the mills and manufactories; on the left, two charming little towns, which overlook the water. The borders of this river are ſtill in their wild ſtate. In the foreſts which cover them are ſome enormous trees. There are likewiſe ſome houſes, but they are not equal to thoſe of Maſſachuſetts, in point of ſimple elegance.

They breakfaſted at Briſtol, a town oppoſite to Burlington. It was here that the famous Penn firſt planted his colony: but it was repreſented to him, that the river here did not furniſh anchoring ground ſo good and ſo ſafe as the place already inhabited by the Swedes, where Philadelphia has ſince been built. He reſolved then, to purchaſe this place of them, give them other lands in exchange, and to leave Briſtol.

Paſſing the river Shammony, on a new bridge, and then the village of Frankford, they arrived at Philadelphia, by a fine road bordered with the beſt cultivated fields and elegant houſes, which announce the neighbourhood of a great town.

Our traveller's ſtay here was ſhort, as particular buſineſs called him to Burlington, on the borders of the Delaware. This is an elegant little town, more ancient than Philadelphia. Many of the inhabitants are Friends, or Quakers: this was formerly their place of general rendezvous.

Burlington is ſeparated from Briſtol only by the river. Here is ſome commerce, and ſome men of conſiderable capital. The children here are all decent and healthy.

M. de Warville viſited a bettering houſe, or houſe of correction ſituated in the open country, in one of thoſe parts of the original plan of Philadelphia not yet covered with houſes. This hoſpital is conſtructed of bricks, and compoſed of two large buildings; one for men, and the other for women. There is a ſeperation in the court, which is common to them. This inſtitution has ſeveral objects: they receive into it, the poor, the ſick, orphans, women in travail, and perſons attacked with venereal diſeaſes. They likewiſe confine here, vagabonds, diſorderly perſons, and girls of ſcandalous lives. There are particular halls appropriated to each claſs of poor, and to each ſpecies of ſickneſs; and each hall has its ſuperintendant.

Every ſick, and every poor perſon, has his bed well furniſhed, but without curtains. Every room is lighted by windows placed oppoſite, which introduce plenty of light. Theſe windows admit a free circulation of air: moſt of them open over the fields; and as they are not very high, and are without grates, it would be very eaſy for the priſoners to make their eſcape; but the idea never enters their heads. This fact proves that the priſoners are happy, and conſequently, that the adminiſtration is good. The kitchens are well kept. The eating-rooms, which are on the ground floor, are equally clean, and well aired: neatneſs and good air reign in every part. A large garden at the end of the court furniſhes vegetables for the kitchen. Our traveller was ſurpriſed to find there, a great number of foreign ſhrubs and plants. The garden is well cultivated. In the yard they rear a great number of hogs: for in America, the hog as well as the ox, does the honours of the table through the whole year. Blacks are intermingled with the whites, and lodged in the ſame apartments.

The expences of this hoſpital amount to about five pence per diem, money of Pennſylvania, for each penſioner.

The hoſpital for lunatics, which our hero likewiſe viſited, is fine, elegant, and well kept. He was charmed with the cleanlineſs in the halls of the ſick, as well as in the particular chambers. The library is not numerous, but it is well choſen. The hall on the firſt floor is appropriated to ſick men: there were ſix in it. About the ſame number of ſick women were in a like hall on the ſecond floor. Theſe perſons appeared by no means miſerable; they ſeemed to be at home. Our hero went below to ſee the lunatics; they were about fifteen, male and female. Each one has his cell, with a bed, a table, and a convenient window with grates. Stoves are fixed in the walls, to warm the cell in the winter. There were no mad perſons among them: moſt of the patients are the victims of religious melancholy, or diſappointed love. Theſe unhappy perſons are treated with the greateſt tenderneſs; they are allowed to walk in the court, and are conſtantly viſited by two phyſicians.

CHAP. III.

M. DE WARVILLE *preſent at a Meeting of the Agricultural-Society—The Subject—The Public Library—The Market at Philadelphia—The General Aſſembly—The Falls of the Skuylkill—Spring-Mill—Remarks—He meets two Frenchmen—Account of a Journey to the Ohio—The School for Blacks—Means uſed to aboliſh the Slave Trade—Laws, &c.—Deſcription of Philadelphia, &c.*

M. DE WARVILLE was preſent at a meeting of the Agricultural-Society. It is not of long ſtanding, but is numerous, and poſſeſſes a conſiderable fund. If ſuch a ſociety ought to receive encouragement in any country, it is in this. Agriculture is the firſt pillar of this ſtate; and though there are many good farmers here, yet the great maſs of them want information; and this information can only be procured by the union of men well verſed in theory and practice. The ſubject of this meeting was an important one. The papillion, or worm, called the Heſſian fly, had for ſeveral years ravaged the wheat in many parts of the United-States. The ſeveral farmers preſent, from their own experience, and that of their neighbours and correſpondents, declared that the inſect depoſited its eggs, not in the ear, but in the ſtalk; ſo that they were well convinced, that on threſhing the wheat, there could be nothing to fear that the eggs would mix with the grain; and conſequently they could not be communicated with the grain.

Among the uſeful inſtitutions which do honour to

Philadelphia, is the public library; it is ſupported by ſubſcription. The price of entrance into this ſociety is ten pounds. Any perſon has the privilege of borrowing books. Half of the library is generally in the hands of readers.

At the ſide of this library is a cabinet of natural hiſtory. M. de Warville obſerved nothing curious in it, but an enormous thigh-bone, and ſome teeth as enormous, found near the Ohio, in a maſs of prodigious bones, which nature ſeems to have thrown together in thoſe ages whoſe events are covered from the eye of hiſtory by an impenetrable veil.

The market at Philadelphia is, without contradiction, one of the fineſt in the univerſe. Variety and abundance in the articles, order in the diſtribution, good faith and tranquillity in the trader, are all here united. Cleanlineſs is conſpicuous here in every thing; even meat, whoſe aſpect is more or leſs diſguſting in other markets, here ſtrikes the eye agreeably. The ſpectator is not tormented with the ſight of little ſtreams of blood, which infect the air, and foul the ſtreets. The women who bring the produce of the country, are dreſſed with decency; their vegetables and fruits are neatly arranged in handſome, well-made baſkets. Every thing is aſſembled here, the produce of the country, and the works of induſtry; fleſh, fiſh, fruits, garden-ſeeds, pottery, iron-ware, ſhoes, trays, buckets extremely well made, &c. The ſtranger is never wearied in contemplating this multitude of men and women moving and croſſing in every direction, without tumult or injury. The carts and horſes which have brought in the ſupplies, are peaceably arranged in the next ſtreet, in the order in which they arrive; when diſengaged, they move off in ſilence: no quarrels among the carmen and the porters.

Two clerks of the police walk in the market. If they ſuſpect a pound of butter of being light, they weigh it: if light, it is ſeized for the uſe of the hoſpital.

The price of bread is from one penny to twopence the pound, beef and mutton from twopence to fourpence, veal from one penny to twopence; hay from twenty to thirty ſhillings the ton; butter from fourpence to ſixpence the pound; wood from ſevenpence to eightpence the cord. Vegetables are in abundance, and cheap. Wines of Europe, particularly thoſe of France, are cheaper here than anywhere elſe. Our hero drank the wine of Provence, ſaid to be made by M. Bergaſſe, at ninepence the bottle; but the taverns are extremely dear. Articles of luxury are expenſive: a hair-dreſſer coſts eightpence a day, or twelve ſhillings the month. M. de Warville hired a one-horſe chaiſe three days, which coſt him three louis d'ors.

M. de Warville was introduced one day to the General Aſſembly: he ſaw nothing remarkable in it. It is certainly a fine building, when compared with the other edifices of Philadelphia; but it cannot be put in competition with thoſe public buildings which are called fine in Europe. There were about fifty members preſent, ſeated on chairs encloſed by a baluſtrade. Behind the baluſtrade, was the gallery for ſpectators. Our traveller dined about five miles from town, by the falls of the Skuylkill. Theſe falls are formed by a conſiderable bed of rocks: they are not perceivable when the water of the river is high.

Springmill, where he went to ſleep, is a hamlet eight miles up the Skuylkill. The ſoil is here compoſed of a great quantity of talc, granite, and a yellow gravel; ſome places a very black earth. In the neighbourhood are quarries of marble of a middling fineneſs, of which many chimney-pieces are made.

It is a remark to be made at every ſtep in America, that vegetation is rapid and ſtrong. The peach-tree, for example, grows faſt and produces fruit in great quantities. Within one month after the wheat is cut, the field is covered with graſs, very high and very thick. The birds are a great diſcouragement to the culture of the vine in America. Immenſe clouds of black-birds may be ſeen ſettling on a vineyard, which deſtroy it very ſoon.

The paſtures and fields in America are encloſed with barriers of wood or fences. Theſe, when made of rails ſupported by poſts as above deſcribed, are expenſive, eſpecially in the neighbourhood of great towns, where wood is dear. The country here is full of ſprings; our traveller ſaw ſome very fine ones. He was told of one which carries a mill night and day, and ſerves to water meadows when occaſion requires.

M. de Warville had the good fortune to meet a Frenchman here who was travelling in this country, not in purſuit of wealth, but to gain information. He and another arrived at Philadelphia, and paſſed immediately to Pittſburg. There the winter overtook them, and the Ohio froze over, which rarely happens. They lodged themſelves a few miles from Pittſburg, in an open houſe, where they ſuffered much from the cold. On the opening of the ſpring, they deſcended the Ohio. They landed at Muſkinquam, where they ſaw General Harmer, and ſome people who were beginning a ſettlement there.

At ſome diſtance below this place, they fell in with a party of ſavages. One of them was killed, and the other wounded and taken priſoner; he fortunately made his eſcape, rejoined the Virginian, and found the means of returning to Pittſburg, having loſt his money and all his effects. He then returned to Philadelphia, and was now on his way to Europe.

The immenſe valley waſhed by the Ohio, appeared to him the moſt fertile that he had ever ſeen. The ſtrength and rapidity of vegetation in that country were incredible, the ſize of the trees enormous, and their variety infinite. The inhabitants were obliged to exhauſt the firſt fatneſs of the land in hemp and tobacco, in order to prepare it for the production of wheat. The crops of Indian corn were prodigious; the cattle acquire an extraordinary ſize, and keep fat the whole year in the open fields. The facility of producing grain, rearing cattle, making whiſkey, beer, and cyder, with a thouſand other advantages, attract to this country great numbers of emigrants from other parts of America. A man in that country, works ſcarcely two hours in a day for the ſupport of himſelf and family; he paſſes moſt of his time in idleneſs, hunting, or drinking. The women ſpin, and make clothes for their huſbands and families. They have very little money; every thing is done by barter.

M. de Warville viſited the ſchool for the blacks, at Philadelphia, and ſaw, heard, and examined the black children. They read well, repeated from memory, and calculated with rapidity.

The black girls, beſides reading, writing, and the principles of religion, are taught ſpinning, needle-work, &c. and their miſtreſſes aſſured our author, that they diſcovered much ingenuity. They have the appearance of decency, attention, and ſubmiſſion.

In 1774, the Congreſs declared the ſlavery of the blacks to be incompatible with the baſis of republican governments. Different legiſlatures haſtened to conſecrate this principle of Congreſs. Three diſtinct epochs mark the conduct of the Americans in this buſineſs—the prohibition of the importation of ſlaves—their manumiſſion—and the proviſion made for their inſtruction. All the different ſtates are not equally advanced in theſe three objects.

In the northern and middle ſtates, they have proſcribed for ever the importation of ſlaves; in others, this prohibition is limited to a certain time. In South-Carolina, where it was limited to three years, it has lately been extended to three years more. Georgia is the only ſtate that continues to receive tranſported ſlaves. Yet, when General Oglethorpe laid the foundation of this colony, he ordained, that neither rum nor ſlaves ſhould ever be imported into it. This law, in both its articles, was very ſoon violated.

A numerous party who ſtill argued the impoſſibility of cultivating their ſoil without the hands of ſlaves, and the impoſſibility of augmenting their number without recruiting them in Africa, took ſuch meaſures as to put it out of the power of the new Congreſs to prohibit the importation of ſlaves for twenty years.

Nine States however have proſcribed the ſlave trade, and the blacks, which there abound, are conſidered as free. There are then nine aſylums for thoſe to eſcape to from Georgia; not to ſpeak of the neighbourhood of the Floridas, where the ſlaves from Georgia take refuge, in hopes to find better treatment from the Spaniards; and not to ſpeak of thoſe vaſt foreſts and inacceſſible mountains which make part of the Southern States, and where the perſecuted negro may eaſily find a retreat from ſlavery. The communications with the back country are ſo eaſy, that it is impoſſible to ſtop the fugitives; and the expence of reclaiming is diſproportioned to their value. And though the free States do not in appearance oppoſe theſe reclamations, yet the people there hold ſlavery in ſuch horror, that the maſter who runs after his human property, meets little reſpect, and finds little aſſiſtance.

There was never any law in New Hampſhire, or Maſſachuſetts, which authoriſed ſlavery. There was very little of it in Connecticut; the puritanic auſterity which predominated in that colony, could ſcarcely reconcile itſelf with ſlavery. Agriculture was better performed there by the hands of freemen; and every thing concurred to engage the people to give liberty to the ſlaves:—ſo that almoſt every one has freed them; and the children of ſuch as are not yet free, are to have their liberty at twenty-five years of age.

The caſe of the blacks in New-York is nearly the ſame; yet the ſlaves there are more numerous.

The State of Rhode-Iſland formerly made a great buſineſs of the ſlave trade. It is now totally and for ever prohibited.

In New-Jerſey the bulk of the population is Dutch: people leſs diſpoſed than any other to part with their property. Yet the Weſtern parts of the State are diſpoſed to free their negroes; but the Eaſtern part are oppoſed to it.

The little State of Delaware has followed the example of Pennſylvania in liberating ſeveral ſlaves, and there are ſome negroes freed in Maryland,—but very few; and ſcarcely any in Virginia.

The free blacks in the Eaſtern States, are either hired ſervants, or they keep little ſhops, or they cultivate the land. Some of them may be ſeen on board of coaſting veſſels. They dare not venture themſelves on long voyages, for fear of being tranſported and ſold in the iſlands. As to their phyſical character, the blacks are vigorous, of a ſtrong conſtitution, capable of the moſt painful labour, and generally active. As ſervants, they are ſober and faithful. Thoſe who keep ſhops, live moderately, and never augment their affairs beyond a certain point.

Of all vegetables containing ſugar, the maple, after the ſugar-cane, contains the greateſt quantity. It grows naturally in the United-States, and may be propagated with great facility. All America ſeems covered with it, from Canada to Virginia; it becomes more rare at the ſouthward, on the eaſt of the mountains; but it is found in abundance in the back country. Such is the beneficent tree which has, for a long time, recompenſed the happy coloniſts, whoſe poſition deprived them of the delicate ſugar of our iſlands. They have till lately contented themſelves with beſtowing very little labour on the manufacture, only bringing it to a ſtate of common coarſe ſugar; but ſince the Quakers have diſcerned in this production, the means of deſtroying ſlavery, they have felt the neceſſity of carrying it to perfection; and ſucceſs has crowned their endeavours.

Great difficulties attend the cultivation of the cane. It is a tender plant: it has many enemies, and requires conſtant care and labour to defend it from numerous accidents: add to theſe, the painful efforts that the preparation and manufacture coſts to the wretched Africans; and, on comparing theſe to the advantages of the maple, every one muſt be convinced, by a new argument, that much pains are often taken to commit unprofitable crimes. The maple is produced by nature; the ſap to be extracted, requires no preparatory labour; it runs in February and March, a ſeaſon unſuitable for other rural operations. Each tree, without injury to itſelf, gives twelve or fifteen gallons, which will produce at leaſt five pounds of ſugar. A man aided by four children, may eaſily, during four weeks running of the ſap, make fifteen hundred pounds of ſugar. Several have declared this ſugar equal to that of the iſlands, in grain, colour, and taſte: and the cultivators in the State of New-York perceive, in an equal degree, the advantages of this production; they made, in one year, a large quantity of ſugar, and brought it to great perfection.

Philadelphia may be conſidered as the metropolis of the United-States. It is certainly the fineſt town, and the beſt built: it is the moſt wealthy, though not the moſt luxurious. There are men of information, political and literary knowledge, and ſeveral learned ſocieties. Many towns in America are more ancient; but Philadelphia has ſurpaſſed her elders.

The Swedes were firſt eſtabliſhed on the ſpot where this town has been ſince built. The Swediſh church on the banks of the Delaware is more than one hundred years old. It is the oldeſt church in the town.

At ten o'clock in the evening all is tranquil in the ſtreets; the profound ſilence which reigns there, is only interrupted by the voice of the watchmen, who are in ſmall numbers, and who form the only patrole. The ſtreets are lighted by lamps, placed like thoſe of London.

On the ſide of the ſtreets are footways of brick, and gutters conſtructed of brick or wood. Strong poſts are placed to prevent carriages from paſſing on the footways. All the ſtreets are furniſhed with public pumps, in great numbers. At the door of each houſe are placed two benches, where the family ſit at evening to take the freſh air, and amuſe themſelves in looking at the paſſengers. This is certainly a bad cuſtom, as the evening air is unhealthful, and the exerciſe is not ſufficient to correct this evil, for they never walk here: they ſupply the want of walking, by riding out into the country. They have few coaches at Philadelphia, but they have ſeveral handſome waggons, which are uſed to carry the family into the country; they are a kind of long carriage, light and open, and may contain twelve perſons. They have many chairs and ſulkeys, open on all ſides; the former may carry two perſons, the latter only one. The horſes uſed in theſe carriages are neither handſome nor ſtrong; but they travel very well.

Philadelphia is built on a regular plan; long and large ſtreets croſs each other at right angles: this regularity, which is a real ornament, is at firſt embarraſſing to a ſtranger; he has much difficulty in finding himſelf, eſpecially as the ſtreets are not inſcribed, and the doors not numbered. The ſhops, which adorn the principal ſtreets, are remarkable for their neatneſs.

The State-Houſe, where the Legiſlature aſſembles, is a handſome building: by its ſide they are building a magnificent houſe of juſtice. The ſtreets are generally from 50 to 60 feet wide. Market-Street is about 100. The wharfs are in general ſmall and niggardly.

Behind the State-Houſe is a public garden; it is the only one that exiſts in Philadelphia. It is not large; but it is agreeable, and one may breathe in it. It is compoſed of a number of verdant ſquares, interſected by alleys.

All the ſpace from Front-Street on the Delaware to Front-Street on the Skuylkill, is already diſtributed into ſquares for ſtreets and houſes, they build here; but not ſo briſkly as at New-York.

The ladies beſtow immenſe expences on their toilet and head-dreſs, and diſplay pretenſions too affected to be pleaſing. Adultery is not known here; there is no inſtance of a wife, of any ſect, who has failed in her duty. They marry without dower; they bring to their huſbands only the furniture of their houſes; and they wait the death of their parents, before they come to the poſſeſſion of their property.

There is no town on the continent where there is ſo much printing done as at Philadelphia. Gazettes and book-ſtores are numerous in the town, and paper mills in the ſtate.

There are ſeveral uſeful inſtitutions in Philadelphia. One of them is the Diſpenſary, which diſtributes medicines gratis to the ſick who are not in a ſituation to purchaſe them. There is alſo the Benevolent Inſtitution, whoſe object is to ſuccour, in their own houſes, poor women in child-bed. Another ſociety has for its object to alleviate the ſituation of priſoners.

The Philadelphians confine not their attention to their brethren; they extend it to ſtrangers; they have formed a ſociety for the aſſiſtance of emigrants who arrive from Germany. A ſimilar one is formed at New-York, called the Hibernian-Society, for the ſuccour of emigrants from Ireland. Theſe ſocieties inform themſelves, on the arrival of a ſhip, of the ſituation of the emigrants, and procure them immediate employ.

Here is a company for inſurance againſt fire. The houſes are conſtructed of wood and brick, and conſequently expoſed to the ravages of fire.

The climate of Philadelphia is reckoned one of the moſt healthful in the world. In dry weather, the air has a peculiar elaſticity, which renders heat or cold leſs inſupportable than they are in places more humid. The air never becomes heavy and fatiguing, but when the rains are not followed by the beneficent North-Weſt. During the three weeks that M. de Warville paſſed here (in Auguſt and September) he felt nothing of the languor of body, and depreſſion of ſpirits, which he expected: though the heat was very great, he found it ſupportable; nearly like that of Paris, but it cauſed a greater perſpiration.

Variability is the characteriſtic of the climate of Pennſylvania. It has changed by the clearing of lands, and the diminution of waters, which formerly abounded in this part of America. Many creeks, and even rivers, have diſappeared by degrees; and this is to be expected in a country where foreſts give place to cultivated fields.

However, theſe changes have produced happy effects on the health of the people. An old man of this country obſerved to our traveller, that the health of the Pennſylvanians augments in proportion to the cultivation of the country; that their viſages are leſs pale than they were thirty or forty years paſt; that for ſome time the number of centenaries has increaſed, and that the ſeptuagenaries are very numerous.

There was ſuch an extraordinary drought in 1782, that the Indian corn did not come to perfection, the meadows failed, and the ſoil became ſo inflammable, that in ſome places it caught fire, and the ſurface was burnt. In our traveller's time it was exceſſively rainy. On the 18th and 19th of Auguſt, there fell at Philedelphia ſeven inches of water. Wheat ſuffered much from the rains this year.

But happily all parts of the country are not ſubject to the ſame variations of the atmoſphere; ſo that a general ſcarcity is never known. If the harveſt fails here, at fifty miles diſtance it abounds.

Among the diſeaſes of the United-States, the conſumption doubtleſs makes the greateſt ravages. It was unknown to the original inhabitants of the country; it is then the reſult of European habits of life tranſported to this new continent. It is more common in the towns than in the country; it deſtroys more women than men; it is a languid diſorder, which drags, by ſlow ſteps, its victim to the tomb; each day plunges the dagger deeper in his breaſt, and renders more viſible the incurable wound. Death, without ceaſing, ſtares him in the face, and throws a funeral ſhroud over the remainder of his days. The world and its pleaſures diſappear; the ties of friendſhip are the only ones that are ſtrengthened and endeared, and which double the bitterneſs of his approaching diſſolution. The conſumption, in a word, is a long continued agony, a ſlow tormenting death. The phyſicians of this country attribute it to different cauſes; to the exceſſive uſe of hot drinks, ſuch as tea and coffee; to the habit of remaining too long in bed, and the uſe of feather-beds, for they know not the uſe of mattreſſes; to the cuſtom of eating too much meat, and of drinking too much ſpirituous liquors. Women are more ſubject to it than men; becauſe, independently of the above cauſes, they take but little exerciſe, which is the only powerful remedy againſt the ſtagnation of humours, the great principle of the maraſma: they taſte but little the pleaſures of walking; a movement which, varying the ſpectacle of nature, gives a refreſhment to the ſenſes, a new ſpring to the blood, and a new vigour to the ſoul. Conſumptions, however, are not ſo numerous in America as is generally imagined. This name is ignorantly given to many other diſorders, which reduce the body to the ſame meagre ſtate which follows a decay of the lungs. This appearance deceives, and may eaſily deceive the attendants of the ſick, who give information to thoſe who keep the bills of mortality.

Another diſeaſe very common here, is the ſore-throat; when putrid, it is mortal. It generally proceeds from exceſſive heats, cold drinks, and careleſſneſs in clothing.

The diſeaſe known in Europe by the name of the Influenza, is likewiſe common in America: it made great ravages in 1789. It began in Canada, paſſed through New-York, and very ſoon infected Pennſylvania and the Southern States. Its ſymptoms are laſſitude, feebleneſs, chills, heats, and the head-ache. It reſpects no age or ſex, and eſpecially precipitates to the tomb thoſe who were attacked by the conſumption.

The fever and ague may be ranked in the claſs of theſe cruel epidemics; but it is more terrible, as its returns are annual. It not only viſits the marſhy countries and the ſea-coaſt, but it is ſeen even in the healthy region of Albany. It is combated by the Peruvian bark: but the moſt ſucceſsful remedy, is a journey among the mountains, or into the Northern States. This fever never attacks the black ſlaves. This exemption is attributed to a cuſtom they preſerve with obſtinacy, of keeping fires always in their cabins, even in the hotteſt ſeaſon. The negroes are accuſtomed to conſider exceſſive heat as a guarantee of health; and one may ſee a negreſs, while ſhe labours in the field, in the ardour of a burning ſun, expoſe her infant to its fires, rather than lay it under the refreſhing ſhade of a tree.

Among the maladies common in the United-States, muſt be reckoned the pleuriſy aud the peripneumony, though they are leſs frequent than formerly. The ſmall-pox, which formerly made ſuch havocks in the United-States, is leſs formidable ſince the general practice of inoculation.

There are many phyſicians at Philadelphia, and this may be aſſigned as the cauſe of ſo many diſeaſes; but ſuch an opinion is erroneous. They are ſaid to be ſkilful; they are generally ſtrangers to quackery.

The greateſt part of theſe phyſicians are at the ſame time apothecaries. They continue to unite theſe two ſciences, out of reſpect to the people, who wiſh that the man who orders the medicine ſhould likewiſe prepare it. There are, however, other apothecaries, of whom the phyſicians purchaſe their drugs.

The practice of this country is the Engliſh practice; that is, they are much in the uſe of violent remedies. Laxatives are little in uſe. Almoſt all the phyſicians of this country are formed at the ſchool of Edinburgh, and this is the cauſe of their predilection for the Engliſh practice.

The priſon of Philadelphia is a kind of houſe of correction. The priſoners are obliged to work; and each enjoys the profit of his own labour. Thoſe who govern the houſe of correction in New-York, on conſenting to take charge of criminals condemned by the law, have obtained leave to ſubſtitute to whips and mutilation, their humane method of correction; and they daily ſucceed in leading back to induſtry and reaſon theſe deluded men.

By the ſmall number of Pennſylvanians contained in the priſon of Philadelphia, one may conclude, that were it not for the ſtrangers, the government of this town, like that of Nantucket, might have a priſon with open doors, of which honour and repentance are the only keepers.

CHAP. IV.

M. de Warville and a Party undertake a Journey from Boſton to New-York by Providence—Proceed to Newport in a Packet-Boat—Port of Newport and the Place deſcribed—Leige—Hell-Gate—Remarks on the Packet-Boats—Deſcription of New-York—Albany—Hudſon—Buildings, &c. &c.

ON the 12th of October, M. de Warville and a party ſet out from Boſton at half paſt ſeven in the morning, and arrived by ſix in the evening at Providence. It is forty-nine miles, the road good, the ſoil ſtoney, gravelly, and ſandy, and, as uſual for ſuch a ſoil, covered with pines. The country bordering the road, appears neither fertile, nor well peopled: the houſes are in decay, the children covered with rags. They had, however, good health, and good complexions. The ſilence which reigns in the other American towns on Sunday, reigns at Providence even on Monday. Every thing here announces the decline of buſineſs. Few veſſels are to be ſeen in the port. They were building, however, two diſtilleries; as if the manufactories of this poiſon were not already ſufficiently numerous in the United-States. Whether it be from prejudice or reality, our author ſeemed to perceive every where the ſilence of death, the effect of paper-money. He ſeemed to ſee, in every face, the air of a Jew; the reſult of a traffic founded on fraud and fineſſe. He ſeemed to ſee, likewiſe, in every countenance, the effects of the contempt which the other States bear to this, and the conſciouſneſs of meriting that contempt. The paper-money at this time was at a diſcount of ten for one.

M. de Warville went from Providence to Newport in a packet-boat. This journey might be made by land; but they preferred the water. They arrived in ſeven hours and a half; and during two hours they had contrary wind. This diſtance is thirty miles. They never loſt ſight of land; but it offers nothing pictureſque or curious. A few houſes, ſome trees, and a ſandy ſoil, are all that appears to the eye.

The port of Newport is conſidered as one of the beſt in the United-States. The bottom is good, the harbour capable of receiving the largeſt ſhips, and ſeems deſtined by nature to be of great conſequence. This place was one of the principal ſcenes of the laſt war. The ſucceſſive arrival of the American, Engliſh, and French armies, left here a conſiderable quantity of money.

Since the peace, every thing is changed. The reign of ſolitude is only interrupted by groups of idle men, ſtanding with folded arms at the corners of the ſtreets, houſes falling to ruin, miſerable ſhops, which preſent nothing but a few coarſe ſtuffs, or baſkets of apples, and other articles of little value; graſs growing in the public ſquare, in front of the court of juſtice; rags ſtuffed in the windows, or hung upon hideous women and lean unquiet children. Every thing announces miſery, the triumph of ill faith, and the influence of a bad government.

Liege and Newport are nevertheleſs well ſituated for commerce, and ſurrounded by lands by no means unfruitful.

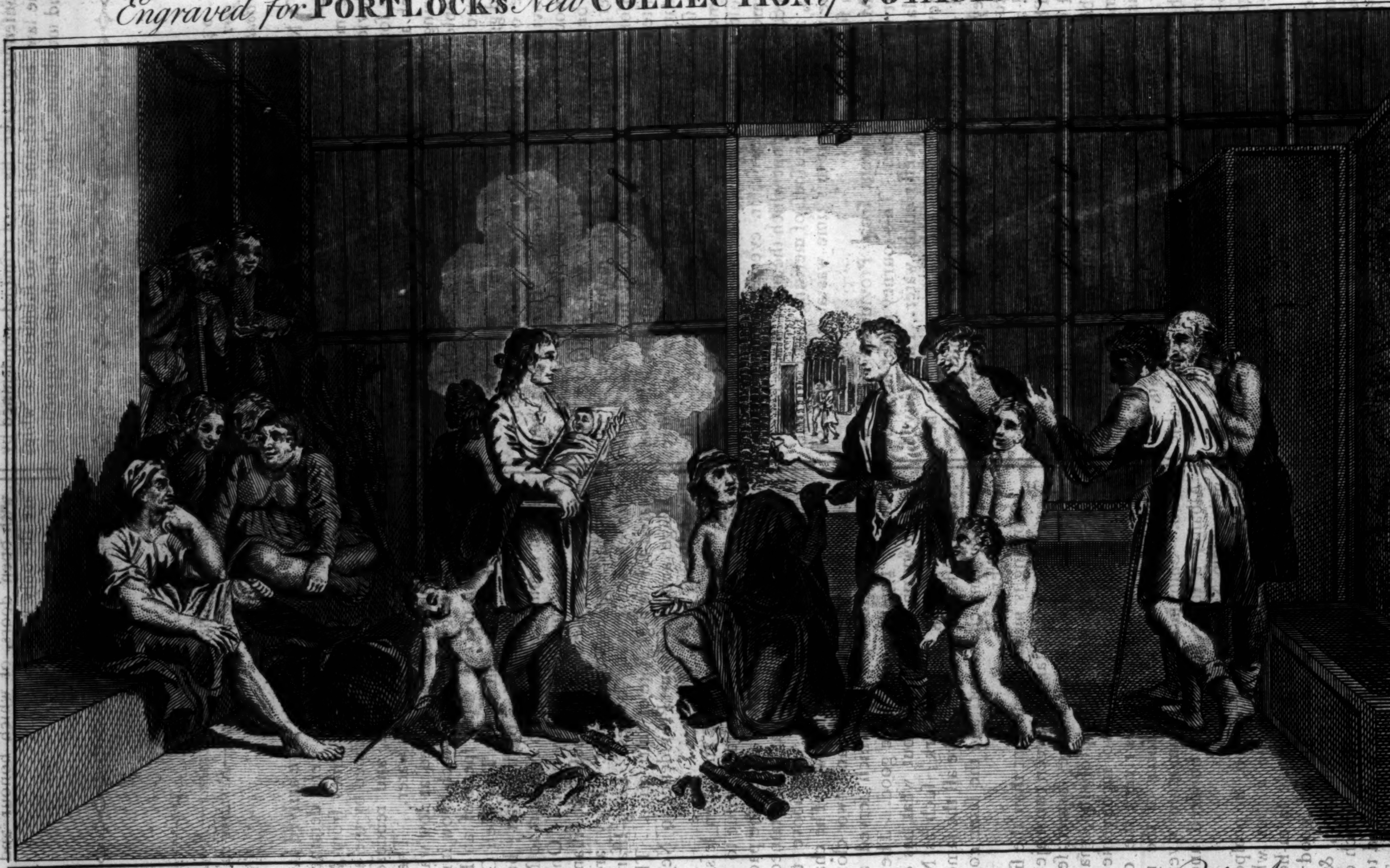
M. de Warville was detained at Newport by the ſouth-weſt winds till the 13th, when they ſet ſail at midnight; the captain not wiſhing to ſail ſooner, for fear of touching before day on Block-Iſland. The wind and tide carried them at the rate of nine or ten miles an hour; and they ſhould have arrived at New-York the next evening, but they were detained at Hell-Gate, a kind of gulf, eight miles from New-York. This is a narrow paſſage, formed by the approach of Long-Iſland to York-Iſland, and rendered horrible by rocks, concealed at high water. The whirlpool of this gulph is little perceived at low water; but it is not ſurpriſing that veſſels which know it not, ſhould be daſhed in pieces. They ſpeak of an Engliſh frigat loſt there the laſt war. This Hell-Gate is an obſtacle to the navigation of this ſtrait; but it is not rare in ſummer to run from Newport to New-York, two hundred miles, in twenty hours. On approaching this city, the coaſts of theſe two iſlands preſent the moſt agreeable ſpectacle. They are adorned with elegant country-houſes. Long-Iſland is celebrated for its high ſtate of cultivation. The price of paſſage and diet from Providence to New-York is ſix dollars.

It is more advantageous, and often leſs expenſive to go by land; yet much praiſe is due to the cleanlineſs and good order obſervable in the packet-boats. The one which our hero was in contained fourteen beds, ranged in two rows, one above the other; every one had its little window. The chamber was well aired; well varniſhed; and two cloſe corners were made in the poop, which ſerved as private places. The proviſions were good. There is not a little town on all this coaſt, but what has theſe kind of packets going to New-York; ſuch as Newhaven, New-London, &c. They have all the ſame neatneſs, the ſame embelliſhment, and the ſame convenience for travellers.

Nothing is more magnificent than the ſituation of New-York, which ſtands between two majeſtic rivers, the north and the eaſt. The former ſeparates it from New-Jerſey: it is ſo profound, that ſhips of the line anchor in it. Two inconveniencies are, however, experienced in this river; the deſcent of ice in the winter, and the force of the north-weſt wind. Ships mount this commodious river as far as Albany, a town ſituated an hundred and ſeventy miles from New-York.

Albany will yield very ſoon, in proſperity, to a town called Hudſon, built on a ſpot where, four years ago, there was only a ſimple farm-houſe. At preſent, it contains an hundred good dwelling houſes, a court-houſe, public fountains, &c. More than fifty ſhips are owned there, which export the American productions to the iſlands and to Europe. Two whaling ſhips are of the number. Their veſſels do not winter idly, like thoſe of Albany, in the port. They trade in the Weſt-Indies during this ſeaſon. Poughkeepſie, on the ſame river, has doubled its population and its commerce ſince the war. The inattention of the people of Albany to foreign commerce, may be attributed to the fertility of their lands. Agriculture abounds there, and they like not to hazard themſelves to the dangers of the ſea, for a fortune which they can draw from the bounty of the ſoil which ſurrounds them. The fertility

Engraved for PORTLOCK's New COLLECTION of VOYAGES & TRAVELS.



The Ceremony of a DIVORCE, as practised by the natives of CANADA, in North America.

to an immense distance, are far from possessing the beauty and goodness of those of Europe. [illegible] in September, loaded at once with apples and with flowers. The bank of New-York enjoys a good reputation, and is well conducted. It receives and pays without regard [illegible] for merchants and others who choose to open an account with it.

There is an abundance of excellent provisions at New-York; vegetables, fish, and butcher's meat. [illegible] many advantages to this place. [illegible] dearer at New York than in any other of the northern or middle States. Many things, especially those of luxury, are also dear. A servant [illegible] twenty shillings per month; washing costs [illegible] for a dozen pieces. Board and lodging [illegible] week, is from four to six dollars. [illegible]

[illegible] cold and the want of care; [illegible]

New-York was in great part consumed by fire in the time of the war. The vestiges of this terrible conflagration still appear; the activity which reigns every where, announces a rising prosperity; they are rising in every quarter, and extend their streets. Elegant buildings, in the English style, take place of [illegible] houses of the Dutch. There are some few remaining in the Dutch style; they afford some pleasure to the European observer; they trace to him the origin of this colony, and the manners of those who inhabit it, which they call to his mind the ancient Belgic taste.

M. de Warville having walked out by the side of the North River, saw what a rapid change there was in the space of six months. The river forced back two hundred feet, and, by a simple mechanism, they have constructed a kind of scaffolding, composed of large trunks of trees crossing each other at convenient distances, and fastened together by strong beams. They conduct this floating scaffolding to the place where it is to be fixed, and where there is often forty feet of water. Arrived at its destination, it is sunk with an enormous weight of stones. On all sides, houses are rising, and streets extending; busy workmen building and repairing, are to be seen every where.

They are also erecting a building for Congress. They are likewise repairing the hospital; the building is in a bad condition, and [illegible] at the end of the war. [illegible] and the reparations are executing with the greatest vigour. The building is well [illegible] and perfectly well situated on the bank of the North River. It enjoys every advantage [illegible] in abundance, pleasant and extensive walks for the sick, magnificent and agreeable prospects, view of the town, and yet sufficiently [illegible]

[illegible]ty of the uncultivated lands, and the advantages which they offer, attract settlers to this quarter. New settlements are forming here, but slowly, because the States furnish lands, if not as fertile, at least loaded with more advantages for agriculture, as they are less exposed to the excessive rigours of so long a winter.

When this part of America shall be well peopled, the North River will offer one of the most [illegible] for the exportation of its productions. Navigable for more than two hundred miles from [illegible] communicated with the river [illegible] Oneida, Ontario, Erie, and [illegible] falls which are found in this river [illegible] by canals. [illegible] communicates with Canada [illegible] George and Champlain [illegible] the navigation which will render New York the [illegible]

[illegible]

[illegible] New-York will explain the [illegible] to give it the importance over the other parts of America. Being the great mart [illegible] and New-Jersey, it [illegible] the productions of the East Indies and of Europe. It is difficult to obtain an account of the exportations and importations of this State. [illegible] American merchandise [illegible] of New-York.

The residence of Congress [illegible] and the concourse [illegible] much to [illegible] here the [illegible] luxury. The inhabitants are far from complaining of it; they prefer [illegible] of wealth, and the show of enjoyment, to the simplicity of manners and the pure pleasures resulting from it. [illegible] in this town, [illegible] which come from the Spanish islands. They [illegible] leaves of tobacco, [illegible] in form of a tube, of six inches long. [illegible] The great commerce of this city, and the facility of living here, augments the population of the State with great rapidity. [illegible]

If there is a town on the American continent where the English luxury displays its follies, it is New-York. [illegible] the English fashions. In the dress of the women may be seen the most brilliant silks, gauzes, hats, and borrowed hair. Equipages are rare, but they are elegant. The men have more simplicity in their dress; they disdain gewgaws, but they take their revenge in the luxury of the table.

Luxury forms already, in this town, a class of men very dangerous in society; I mean bachelors. The expence of women causes matrimony to be dreaded by men.

Tea forms, as in England, the basis of the principal parties of pleasure. [illegible] tility of the uncultivated lands, and the advantages which they offer, attract ſettlers to this quarter. New ſettlements are forming here; but ſlowly, becauſe other ſtates furniſh lands, if not as fertile, at leaſt attended with more advantages for agriculture, as they are leſs expoſed to the exceſſive rigours of ſo long a winter.

When this part of America ſhall be well peopled, the north river will offer one of the fineſt channels for the exportation of its productions. Navigable for more than two hundred miles from the ocean, it communicates with the river Mohawk, with the lakes Oneida, Ontario, Erie, and all that part of Canada. The falls which are found in this route may be eaſily vanquiſhed by canals, ſo eaſy to conſtruct in a country abounding with men and money. This river communicates with Canada in another quarter, by the lakes George and Champlaine. It is this ſituation which will render New-York the channel of the fur-trade, at leaſt during the exiſtence of this kind of commerce, which ſuppoſes the exiſtence of ſavages, and great quantities of uncultivated lands.

New-York, by the Eaſt-River, communicates with Long-Iſland, and with all the Eaſtern States. Ships of the line anchor likewiſe in this river, and near the quay, where they are ſheltered from the ſtorms which ſometimes ravage theſe coaſts. This happy ſituation of New-York will explain the cauſes why the Engliſh give it the preference over the other parts of America. Being the great market for Connecticut and New-Jerſey, it pours in upon thoſe ſtates the productions of the Eaſt-Indies, and of Europe. It is difficult to obtain an account of the exportations and importations of this ſtate. The Engliſh have a great predilection for this city, and for its productions; thus its port is always covered with Engliſh ſhips. They prefer even its wheat; ſo that the American merchants bring wheat from Virginia, and ſell it for that of New-York.

The preſence of Congreſs with the diplomatic body and the concourſe of ſtrangers, contributes much to extend here the ravages of luxury. The inhabitants are far from complaining at it; they prefer the ſplendour of wealth, and the ſhow of enjoyment, to the ſimplicity of manners, and the pure pleaſures reſulting from it. The uſage of ſmoking has not diſappeared in this town, with the other cuſtoms of their fathers, the Dutch. They ſmoke cigars, which come from the Spaniſh iſlands. They are leaves of tobacco, rolled in form of a tube, of ſix inches long, which are ſmoked without the aid of any inſtrument. The great commerce of this city, and the facility of living here, augments the population of the ſtate with great rapididity. In 1773, they reckoned 148,124 whites; in 1786, the number was 219,996.

If there is a town on the American continent where the Engliſh luxury diſplays its follies, it is New-York. Here one may find the Engliſh faſhions. In the dreſs of the women, may be ſeen the moſt brilliant ſilks, gauzes, hats, and borrowed hair. Equipages are rare; but they are elegant. The men have more ſimplicity in their dreſs; they diſdain gewgaws, but they take their revenge in the luxury of the table.

Luxury forms already, in this town, a claſs of men very dangerous in ſociety; to wit, bachelors. The expence of women cauſes matrimony to be dreaded by men.

Tea forms, as in England, the baſis of the principal parties of pleaſure. Fruits, though more attended to in this ſtate, are far from poſſeſſing the beauty and goodneſs of thoſe of Europe. I have ſeen trees, in September, loaded at once with apples and with flowers. The bank of New-York enjoys a good reputation, and is well conducted. It receives and pays without reward, for merchants and others who chooſe to open an account with it.

There is an abundance of excellent proviſions at New-York; vegetables, fleſh, and eſpecially fiſh. It is difficult to unite ſo many advantages in one place. Proviſions are dearer at New-York, than in any other of the northern or middle ſtates. Many things, eſpecially thoſe of luxury, are alſo dear. A hair-dreſſer aſks twenty ſhillings per month; waſhing coſts four ſhillings for a dozen pieces. Board and lodging by the week, is from four to ſix dollars. The fees of lawyers are out of all proportion; they are, as in England, exceſſive. Phyſicians have not the ſame advantage in this reſpect as lawyers: the good health generally enjoyed here, renders them little neceſſary; yet they are ſufficiently numerous. Our hero having converſed with ſome of them, aſked what were the diſeaſes moſt common? They anſwered, bilious fevers; and that the greateſt part of diſeaſes among them, were occaſioned by exceſſive cold, and the want of care; but there are few diſeaſes here, added they. The air is pure; the inhabitants are tolerably temperate; the people in good circumſtances, are not ſufficiently rich to give themſelves up to thoſe debaucheries which kill ſo many in Europe; and there are no poor, proviſions being ſo cheap.

New-York was in great part conſumed by fire in the time of the war. The veſtiges of this terrible conflagration diſappear; the activity which reigns every where, announces a riſing poſterity; they enlarge in every quarter, and extend their ſtreets. Elegant buildings, in the Engliſh ſtyle, take place of thoſe ſharp-roofed ſloping houſes of the Dutch. There are ſome ſtill ſtanding in the Dutch ſtyle; they afford ſome pleaſure to the European obſerver; they trace to him the origin of this colony, and the manners of thoſe who inhabit it, whilſt they call to his mind the ancient Belgic ſtate.

M. de Warville having walked out by the ſide of the North-River, ſaw what a rapid change there was in the ſpace of ſix weeks! The river forced back two hundred feet, and, by a ſimple mechaniſm, they have conſtructed a kind of encaſement, compoſed of large trunks of trees croſſing each other at convenient diſtances, and faſtened together by ſtrong beams. They conduct this floating dyke to the place where it is to be fixed, and where there is often forty feet of water. Arrived at its deſtination, it is ſunk with an enormous weight of ſtones. On all ſides, houſes are riſing, and ſtreets extending; buſy workmen building and repairing, are to be ſeen every where.

They are alſo erecting a building for Congreſs. They are likewiſe repairing the hoſpital: this building is in a bad condition; not a ſick perſon could be lodged in it at the end of the war; it was a building almoſt abandoned: now they have ordered it to be repaired, and the reparations are executing with the greateſt vigor. This building is vaſt; it is of brick, and perfectly well ſituated on the bank of the North River. It enjoys every advantage: air the moſt ſalubrious, that may be renewed at pleaſure; water in abundance; pleaſant and extenſive walks for the ſick; magnificent and agreeable proſpects; out of the town, and yet ſufficiently near it.

C H A P. V.

M. DE WARVILLE *leaves Boſton—Sleeps at Salem—Paſſes the Bridge of Malden and the Town of Lime—Beverley—Londonderry—Newberry—Portſmouth—Proceeds to Andover—Importations, Exportations, Manufactures, &c. of the United-States—The Weſtern Territory, &c.*

M. DE WARVILLE left Boſton the ſecond of October, after dinner, with Mr. Batret. They ſlept at Salem, fifteen miles from Boſton; an excellent gravelly road, bordered with woods and meadows. This road paſſes the fine bridge of Malden, and the town of Linn, remarkable for the manufacture of women's ſhoes. It is calculated that more than an hundred thouſand pairs are annually exported from this town. At Reading, not far from Linn, is a ſimilar manufacture of men's ſhoes.

In paſſing to Beverley, they croſſed another excellent wooden bridge. It is over a creek near a mile wide. The conſtruction of this bridge, and the celerity with which it was built, give a lively idea of the activity and induſtry of the inhabitants of Maſſachuſetts. It coſt but three thouſand pounds; the toll for a horſe and carriage is eight-pence; the opening in the middle for the paſſage of veſſels, is of a ſimpler mechaniſm than that of Charles-Town. On the road to Beverley, they ſaw a flouriſhing manufacture of cotton.

At Londonderry, a town chiefly inhabited by Iriſh, is a conſiderable manufacture of linen. They dined at Newberry. This would be one of the beſt ports in the United-States, were it not for a dangerous bar at the entrance. The buſineſs of ſhip-building has much declined here. In the year 1772 ninety veſſels were built here, in 1788 only three. This town ſtands at the mouth of the fine river Marrimak, abounding in fiſh of different kinds.

It is about twenty-four miles of fine road from Newberry to Portſmouth, the capital of New-Hampſhire. There is little appearance of activity in this town. A thin population, many houſes in ruins, women and children in rags; every thing announces decline. Yet there are elegant houſes and ſome commerce. Portſmouth is on the Piſcataway, a rapid and deep river, which never freezes till four miles above the town. This was formerly one of the greateſt markets for ſhip-timber. Every thing in this town is commerce and ſhip-building.

They left Portſmouth on Sunday, and came to dine at Mr. Dalton's, five miles from Newberry, on the Marrimak: this is one of the fineſt ſituations that can be imagined. It preſents an agreeable proſpect of ſeven leagues. This farm is extremely well arranged; our hero ſaw on it thirty cows, numbers of ſheep, &c. and a well furniſhed garden.

The Americans are not accuſtomed to grand feaſts; they treat ſtrangers as they treat themſelves every day, and they live well. They ſay they are not anxious to ſtarve themſelves the week, in order to gormandiſe on Sunday. From this they proceeded to Andover.

The importations into the United-States have much increaſed ſince the peace. Among the principal manufactures and exportations, are ſhip-building, flour, rice, tobacco, manufactures in woollen, linen, hemp, and cotton; the fiſheries, oils, forges, and the different articles in iron and ſteel; inſtruments of agriculture, nails, leather, and the numerous objects in which they are employed; paper, paſteboard, parchment, printing, pot-aſh, pearl-aſh, hats of all qualities, ſhip-timber, and other wood of conſtruction; cabinet-work, cordage, cables, carriages, works in braſs, copper, and lead; glaſs of different kinds; gunpowder, cheeſe, butter, calicoes, printed linen, indigo, furs, &c. Ship-building is one of the moſt profitable branches of buſineſs in America. They built ſhips here before the war; but they were not permitted to manufacture the articles neceſſary to equip them; every article is now made in the country.

Breweries augment every where, and take place of the fatal diſtilleries. There are no leſs than fourteen good breweries in Philadelphia. The infant woollen manufactory at Hartford, from September 1788 to September 1789, gave about five thouſand yards of cloth, ſome of which ſells at 5 dollars a yard; another at Watertown, in Maſſachuſetts, promiſes equal ſucceſs, and engages the farmers to multiply their ſheep.

Cotton ſucceds equally well. The ſpinning machines of Arkwright are well known here, and are made in the country.

Pennſylvania, New-Jerſey, and Delaware, make annually three hundred and fifty tons of ſteel, and ſix hundred tons of nails and nail rods. Theſe articles are already exported from America; as are machines for carding wool and cotton, particularly common cards, which are cheaper than the Engliſh, and of a ſuperior quality. In theſe three ſtates are ſixty-three paper-mills, which manufacture annually to the amount of 250,000 dollars. The ſtate of Connecticut laſt year made five thouſand reams, which might be worth nine thouſand dollars.

The prodigious conſumption of all kinds of glaſs, multiplies the eſtabliſhment of glaſs works. The one on the Potowmack employs five hundred perſons. They have begun with ſucceſs at Philadelphia, the printing of calicoes, cotton, and linen. Sugar-Refiners are increaſing every where. In Pennſylvania are twenty-one powder mills, which are ſuppoſed to produce annually 625 tons of gunpowder. Among the principal articles of exportation are wheat and flour.

In treating of the Weſtern territory our author obſerves, that at the foot of the Alleganies, whoſe ſummits, however, do not threaten the heavens, like thoſe of the Andes and the Alps, begins an immenſe plain, interſected with hills of a gentle aſcent, and watered every where with ſtreams of all ſizes; the ſoil is from three to ſeven feet deep, and of an aſtoniſhing fertility: it is proper for every kind of culture, and it multiplies cattle almoſt without the care of man.

It is there that thoſe eſtabliſhments are formed, whoſe proſperity attracts ſo many emigrants; ſuch as Kentucky, Frankland, Cumberland, Holſton, Muſkingum, and Scioto. The oldeſt and moſt flouriſhing of theſe is Kentucky, which began in 1775, had eight thouſand inhabitants in 1782, fifty thouſand in 1787, and ſeventy thouſand in 1790. It will ſoon be a ſtate.

Cumberland, ſituated in the neighbourhood of Kentucky, contains 8000 inhabitants, Holſton 5000, and Frankland 25,000. It appears that Kentucky will preſerve its advantage over the other ſettlements on the ſouth; its territory is more extenſive, its ſoil more fertile, and its inhabitants more numerous: it is ſituated on the Ohio, navigable at almoſt all ſeaſons; this laſt advantage is equally enjoyed by the two ſettlements hereafter mentioned. The eſtabliſhment at the Muſkingum was formed in 1788, by a number of emigrants from New-England, belonging to the Ohio-Company. The Muſkingum is a river which falls into the Ohio from the Weſt. Theſe people have an excellent ſoil, and every proſpect of ſucceſs.

From theſe proprietors is formed another aſſociation, whoſe name is that of the Scioto-Company; a name taken from a river, which after having traverſed the two millions of acres which they poſſeſs, falls into the Ohio. This ſettlement would ſoon riſe to a high degree of proſperity, if the proper cautions were taken in the embarkation, and the neceſſary means employed to ſolace them, and to prepare them for a kind of life ſo different from that to which they are accuſtomed.

The revolution in the American government, will, doubtleſs, be beneficial to the ſavages; for the government tends eſſentially to peace. But as a rapid increaſe of population muſt neceſſarily be the conſequence of its operations, the ſavages muſt either blend with the Americans, or a thouſand cauſes will ſpeedily annihilate that race of men.

There is nothing to fear, that the danger from the ſavages will ever arreſt the ardour of the Americans for extending their ſettlements. They all expect that the navigation of the Miſſiſſippi becoming free, will ſoon open to them the markets of the iſlands, and the Spaniſh colonies, for the productions with which their

M. DE WARVILLE left Boſton the ſecond of October, after dinner, with Mr. Barret. They ſlept at Salem, fifteen miles from Boſton: an excellent gravelly road, bordered with woods and meadows. This road paſſes the fine bridge of Malden, and the town of *Linn*, remarkable for the manufacture of women's ſhoes. It is calculated that more than an hundred thouſand pairs are annually exported from this town. At Reading, not far from Linn, is a ſimilar manufacture of men's ſhoes.

In paſſing to Beverley, they croſſed another excellent wooden bridge. It is over a creek near a mile wide. The conſtruction of this bridge, and the celerity with which it was built, give a lively idea of the activity and induſtry of the inhabitants of Maſſachuſetts. It coſt but three thouſand pounds; the toll for a horſe and carriage is eight-pence; the opening in the middle for the paſſage of veſſels, is of a ſimpler mechaniſm than that of Charles-Town. On the road to Beverley, they ſaw a flouriſhing manufacture of cotton.

At Londonderry, a town chiefly inhabited by Iriſh, is a conſiderable manufacture of linen. They dined at *Newberry*. This would be one of the beſt ports in the United-States, were it not for a dangerous bar at the entrance. The buſineſs of ſhip-building has much declined here. In the year 1772 ninety veſſels were built here, in 1788 only three. This town ſtands at the mouth of the fine river Marrimak, abounding in fiſh of different kinds.

It is about twenty-four miles of fine road from Newberry to Portſmouth, the capital of New-Hampſhire. There is little appearance of activity in this town. A thin population, many houſes in ruins, women and children in rags; every thing announces decline. Yet there are elegant houſes and ſome commerce. Portſmouth is on the Piſcataway, a rapid and deep river, which never freezes till four miles above the town. This was formerly one of the greateſt markets for ſhip-timber. Every thing in this town is commerce and ſhip-building.

They left Portſmouth on Sunday, and came to dine at Mr. Dalton's, five miles from Newberry, on the Marrimak: this is one of the fineſt ſituations that can be imagined. It preſents an agreeable proſpect of ſeven leagues. This farm is extremely well arranged; our hero ſaw on it thirty cows, numbers of ſheep, &c. and a well furniſhed garden.

The Americans are not accuſtomed to grand feaſts; they treat ſtrangers as they treat themſelves every day, and they live well. They ſay they are not anxious to ſtarve themſelves the week, in order to gormandiſe on Sunday. From this they proceeded to Andover.

The importations into the United-States have much increaſed ſince the peace. Among the principal manufactures and exportations, are ſhip-building, flour, rice, tobacco, manufactures in woollen, linen, hemp, and cotton; the fiſheries, oils, forges, and the different articles in iron and ſteel; inſtruments of agriculture, nails, leather, and the numerous objects in which they are employed; paper, paſteboard, parchment, printing, pot-aſh, pearl-aſh, hats of all qualities, ſhip-timber, and other wood of conſtruction, cabinet-work, cordage, cables, carriages, works in braſs, copper, and lead; glaſs of different kinds; gunpowder, cheeſe, butter, calicoes, printed linen, indigo, furs, &c. Ship-building is one of the moſt profitable branches of buſineſs in America. They built ſhips here before the war; but they were not permitted to manufacture the articles neceſſary to equip them; every article is now made in the country.

Breweries augment every where, and take place of the fatal diſtilleries. There are no leſs than fourteen good breweries in Philadelphia. The infant woollen manufactory at Hartford, from September 1788 to September 1789, gave about five thouſand yards of cloth, ſome of which ſells at 5 dollars a yard; another at Watertown, in Maſſachuſetts, promiſes equal ſucceſs, and engages the farmers to multiply their ſheep.

Cotton ſucceeds equally well. The ſpinning machines of Arkwright are well known here, and are made in the country.

Pennſylvania, New-Jerſey, and Delaware, make annually three hundred and fifty tons of ſteel, and ſix hundred tons of nails and nail rods. Theſe articles are already exported from America; as are machines for carding wool and cotton, particularly common cards, which are cheaper than the Engliſh, and of a ſuperior quality. In theſe three ſtates are ſixty-three paper-mills, which manufacture annually to the amount of 250,000 dollars. The ſtate of Connecticut laſt year made five thouſand reams, which might be worth nine thouſand dollars.

The prodigious conſumption of all kinds of glaſs, multiplies the eſtabliſhment of glaſs works. The one on the Potowmack employs five hundred perſons. They have begun with ſucceſs at Philadelphia, the printing of calicoes, cotton, and linen. Sugar-Refiners are increaſing every where. In Pennſylvania are twenty-one powder mills, which are ſuppoſed to produce annually 625 tons of gunpowder. Among the principal articles of exportation are wheat and flour.

In treating of the Weſtern territory our author obſerves, that at the foot of the Alleganies, whoſe ſummits, however, do not threaten the heavens, like thoſe of the Andes and the Alps, begins an immenſe plain, interſected with hills of a gentle aſcent, and watered every where with ſtreams of all ſizes; the ſoil is from three to ſeven feet deep, and of an aſtoniſhing fertility: it is proper for every kind of culture, and it multiplies cattle almoſt without the care of man.

It is there that thoſe eſtabliſhments are formed, whoſe proſperity attracts ſo many emigrants; ſuch as Kentucky, Frankland, Cumberland, Holſton, Muſkingum, and Scioto. The oldeſt and moſt flouriſhing of theſe is Kentucky, which began in 1775, had eight thouſand inhabitants in 1782, fifty thouſand in 1787, and ſeventy thouſand in 1790. It will ſoon be a ſtate.

Cumberland, ſituated in the neighbourhood of Kentucky, contains 8000 inhabitants, Holſton 5000, and Frankland 25,000. It appears that Kentucky will preſerve its advantage over the other ſettlements on the ſouth; its territory is more extenſive, its ſoil more fertile, and its inhabitants more numerous: it is ſituated on the Ohio, navigable at almoſt all ſeaſons; this laſt advantage is equally enjoyed by the two ſettlements hereafter mentioned. The eſtabliſhment at the Muſkingum was formed in 1788, by a number of emigrants from New-England, belonging to the Ohio-Company. The Muſkingum is a river which falls into the Ohio from the Weſt. Theſe people have an excellent ſoil, and every proſpect of ſucceſs.

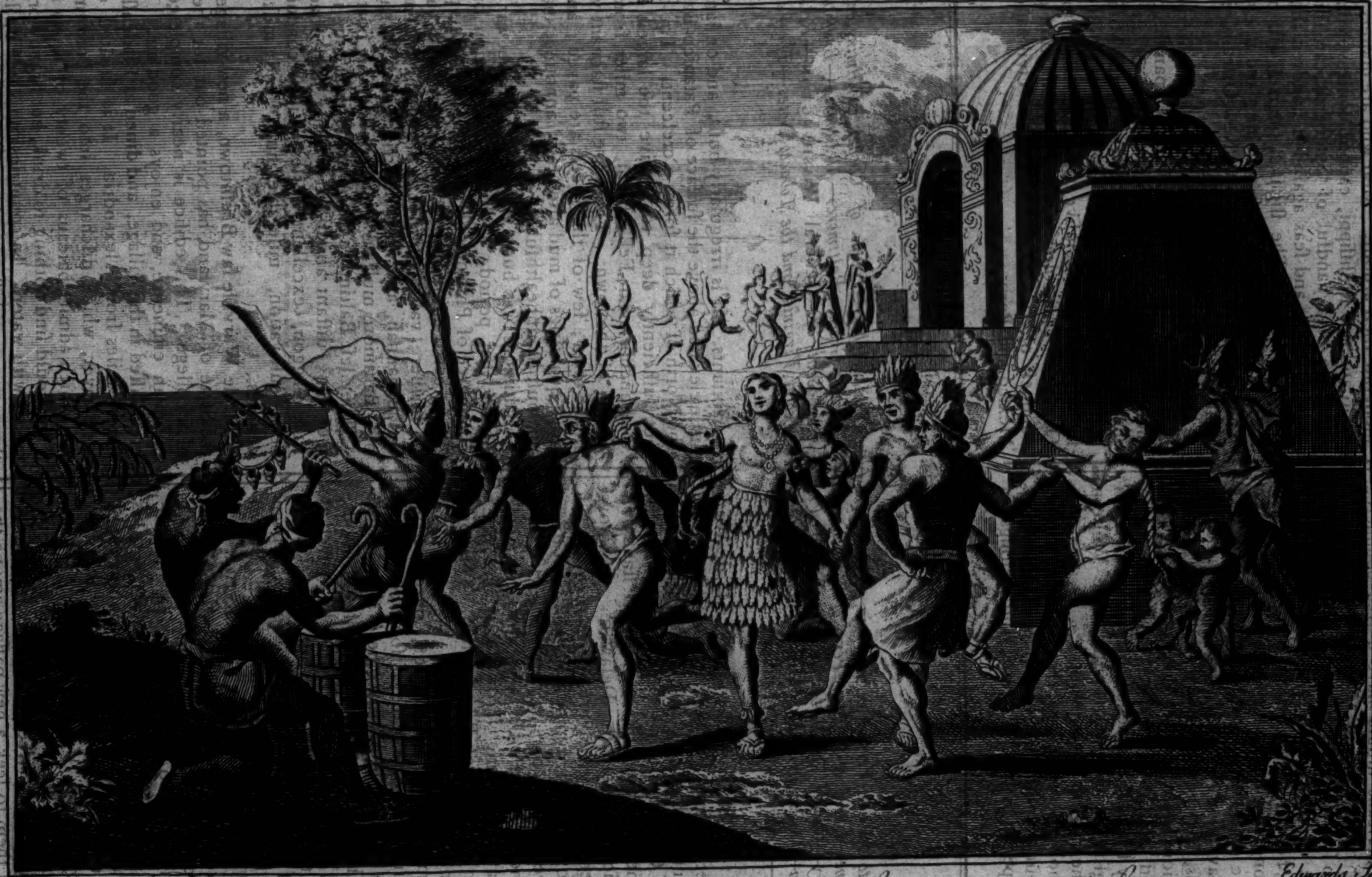
From theſe proprietors is formed another aſſociation, whoſe name is that of the Scioto-Company; a name taken from a river, which after having traverſed the two millions of acres which they poſſeſs, falls into the Ohio. This ſettlement would ſoon riſe to a high degree of proſperity, if the proper cautions were taken in the embarkation, and the neceſſary means employed to ſolace them, and to prepare them for a kind of life ſo different from that to which they are accuſtomed.

The revolution in the American government will, doubtleſs, be beneficial to the ſavages; for the government tends eſſentially to peace. But as a rapid increaſe of population muſt neceſſarily be the conſequence of its operations, the ſavages muſt either blend with the Americans, or a thouſand cauſes will ſpeedily annihilate that race of men.

There is nothing to fear, that the danger from the ſavages will ever arreſt the ardour of the Americans for extending their ſettlements. They all expect that the navigation of the Miſſiſſippi becoming free, will ſoon open to them the markets of the iſlands, and the Spaniſh colonies, for the productions with which

their

London Published by Alexr. Hogg at the Kings Arms No. 16 Paternoster Row.



Edwards Sc.

The REJOICINGS of the MEXICANS, at the beginning of the AGE.

their country overflows. But the queſtion to be ſolved is, whether the Spaniards will open this navigation willingly, or whether the Americans will force it. A kind of negotiation has been carried on, without effect for four years; and it is ſuppoſed, that certain ſtates, fearing to loſe their inhabitants by emigration to the Weſt, have, in concert with the Spaniſh miniſter, oppoſed it; and that this concert gave riſe to a propoſition, that Spain ſhould ſhut up the navigation for twenty-five years, on condition that the Americans ſhould have a free commerce with Spain. Virginia and Maryland, though they had more to fear from this emigration than the other ſtates, were oppoſed to this propoſition, as derogatory to the honour of the United-States; and a majority of Congreſs adopted the ſentiment.

A degree of diffidence, which the inhabitants of the Weſt have ſhewn relative to the ſecret deſigns of Congreſs, has induced many people to believe, that the union would not exiſt a long time between the old and new ſtates; and this probability of a rupture they ſay, is ſtrengthened by ſome endeavours of the Engliſh in Canada, to attach the Weſtern ſettlers to the Engliſh government.

Our author is however induced to believe, that the preſent union will for ever ſubſiſt. A great part of the property of the Weſtern land belongs to people of the Eaſt; the unceaſing emigrations ſerve perpetually to ſtrengthen their connexions; and as it is for the intereſt both of the Eaſt and Weſt, to open an extenſive commerce with South-America, and to overleap the Miſſiſſippi; they muſt, and will, remain united for the accompliſhment of this object.

The Weſtern inhabitants are convinced that this navigation cannot remain a long time cloſed. They are determined to open it by good will or by force; and it would not be in the power of Congreſs to moderate their ardour. Men who are maſters of the Ohio and the Miſſiſſippi, cannot conceive that the inſolence of a handful of Spaniards can think of ſhutting rivers and ſeas againſt a hundred thouſand free Americans. The ſlighteſt quarrel will be ſufficient to throw them into a flame; and if ever the Americans ſhall march towards New Orleans, it will infallibly fall into their hands.

In order to avert the effects of this enterprizing character of the free Americans, the Spaniſh government has adopted the pitiful project of attracting them to a ſettlement on the weſt of the Miſſiſſippi, and by granting to thoſe who ſhall eſtabliſh themſelves there, the excluſive right of trading to New Orleans. This colony is the firſt foundation of the conqueſt of Louiſiana, and of the civilization of Mexico and Peru.

CHAP. VI.

A Journey to Mount Vernon in Virginia—Departure from Philadelphia—Towns of Cheſter, Wilmington, and Brandywine—Chriſtine-Bridge—Ferry of Suſquehannah—Havre de Grace—Baltimore—Alexandria—Bruſhtown—Bladenſbury—George-Town—Arrival at Mount Vernon, the Seat of General WASHINGTON*—Return to Alexandria—Obſervations on Maryland and Virginia—Tobacco of Virginia, and the Tobacco Notes—The Valley of Shenadore—Remarks—Concluſion.*

ON the 15th of November 1788, M. de Warville ſet out from Philadelphia for Wilmington, diſtance twenty-eight miles, and road tolerably good. The town of Cheſter, fifteen miles from Philadelphia, is a place where ſtrangers like to reſt. It ſtands on a creek, which falls into the Delaware. It enjoys ſome commerce, and the taverns here are good.

Wilmington, which is a handſome well-built town, is much more conſiderable; it ſtands likewiſe on a creek near the Delaware; the baſis of its commerce is the exportation of flour. It is about one mile's diſtance from the town of Brandywine. This town is famous for its fine mills.

At nine miles from Wilmington, our traveller paſſed Chriſtine-Bridge, a place of ſome commerce. From thence to the head of Elk, there are but few plantations; he paſſed through eight miles of woods, only meeting with a few log-houſes, till he arrived at Henderſon's tavern, a very good inn, alone in the midſt of vaſt foreſts. It is twenty-two miles from thence to the ferry of the Suſquehannah. The town here is called Havre de Grace, a name given it by a Frenchman who laid the foundation of the town. It is at preſent an irregular maſs of about 150 houſes; but there is no doubt, when the entrance of the river ſhall be rendered navigable, but this will be an intereſting ſituation, and a populous town. From thence to Baltimore are reckoned ſixty miles. The road in general is frightful, it is over a clay ſoil, full of deep ruts, always in the midſt of foreſts; frequently obſtructed by trees overſet by the wind, which obliged them to ſeek a new paſſage among the woods. Our author cannot conceive why the ſtage does not often overſet. Both the drivers and their horſes diſcover great ſkill and dexterity, being accuſtomed to theſe roads.

Some vaſt fields of Indian corn, but bad cultivation, pale faces worn by the fever and ague, naked negroes, and miſerable huts, are the moſt ſtriking images offered to the eye of the traveller in Maryland.

They arrived at Baltimore in the night. It contains near two thouſand houſes, and fourteen thouſand inhabitants. It is irregularly built, and on land but little elevated above the ſurface of Patapſco-Bay, on the North of which it forms a creſcent. The bay is not ſufficiently deep to receive the largeſt ſhips; they anchor near Fell's-Point, two miles from the centre of the town. There are ſtill ſtagnant waters in the town; few of the ſtreets are paved; and the great quantities of mud after rain, announce that the air muſt be unhealthful.

Baltimore was but a village before the war; but during that period, a conſiderable portion of the commerce of Philadelphia was removed to this place. The greateſt ſhips come as far as here, and can go no further; vaſt quantities of proviſions deſcend the Suſquehannah, and when that river ſhall be navigable, Baltimore muſt be a very conſiderable port.

They left Baltimore for Alexandria at four in the morning; diſtant about ſixty miles, bad roads, a rude waggon, excellent horſes, ſkilſul conductors, poor cultivation, miſerable huts, and miſerable negroes.

M. de Warville ſaw Bruſhtown, a new village that the State of Maryland has pointed out for the ſeat of a college. This edifice is nearly completed; it is on an eminence, and enjoys a good air. They breakfaſted in this village, and dined at Bladenſbury, ſixteen miles from Alexandria. It is ſituated on a little river, which diſcharges into the Potowmack, and which admits bateaus of twenty or thirty tons. They could find nothing to drink, but brandy or rum mixed with water. In countries cultivated by ſlaves, there is no induſtry and no domeſtic œconomy. The people know not the advantage of making beer or cyder on their farms.

George-Town terminates the State of Maryland: it overlooks the Potowmack, has an agreeable ſituation, and a conſiderable commerce. Regulations and impoſts, inconſiderately laid on commerce by the State of Virginia, have baniſhed to George-Town a conſiderable part of the commerce of Alexandria.

This place is eight miles below George-Town, on the oppoſite ſide of the Potowmack. Alexandria has grown from nothing to its preſent ſize within theſe forty years. It is not ſo conſiderable as Baltimore, which it ought to ſurpaſs. It is almoſt as irregular and as deſtitute of pavements. There is here a greater parade of luxury; but it is a miſerable luxury; ſervants with ſilk ſtockings in boots, women elegantly dreſſed, and their heads adorned with feathers. The inhabitants, at the cloſe of the war, imagined that every natural circumſtance conſpired to render it a great commercial town,—the ſalubrity of the air, the profundity of the river admitting the largeſt ſhips to anchor near the quay, an immenſe extent of back country, fertile and abounding in proviſions. They have therefore built on every ſide, commodious ſtore-houſes and elegant wharfs.

Our traveller made haſte to arrive at Mount Vernon, the ſeat of General Waſhington, ten miles below Alexandria on the ſame river. On this route there is a conſiderable wood, and after having paſſed over two hills, M. de Warville diſcovered a country-houſe of an elegant and majeſtic ſimplicity. It is preceded by graſs plats; on one ſide of the avenue are the ſtables, on the other a green-houſe, and houſes for a number of negro mechanics. In a ſpacious back yard are turkies, geeſe, and other poultry. This houſe overlooks the Potowmack, enjoys an extenſive proſpect, has a vaſt and elevated portico on the front next the river, and a convenient diſtribution of the apartments within.

After paſſing three days in the houſe of General Waſhington, who loaded our traveller with kindneſs, and gave him much information relative to the late war, and the preſent ſituation of the United-States, he returned to Alexandria.

The Bay of Cheſapeak divides Maryland into two parts, nearly equal. The weſtern diviſion is the moſt peopled. Numerous bays and navigable rivers render this ſtate ſingularly commodious for commerce. Cotton is here cultivated, as in Virginia; but little care is taken to perfect either its culture or its manufacture. There are excellent lands in theſe two ſtates; but they have very few good meadows, though theſe might be made in abundance. For want of attention and labour, the inhabitants make but little hay; and what they have is not good. They likewiſe neglect the cultivation of potatoes, carrots, and turnips, for their cattle, of which their neighbours of the north make great uſe. Their cattle are left without ſhelter in winter, and nouriſhed with the tops of Indian corn. Of conſequence many of them die with cold and hunger; and thoſe that ſurvive the winter, are miſerably meagre.

They have much perfected in this country the Engliſh method of inoculation for the ſmall-pox. In the manner practiſed here, it is very little dangerous. Whoever inoculates in Virginia, is obliged, by law, to give information to his neighbours within the ſpace of two miles.

The population augments every where in theſe ſtates, notwithſtanding the great emigration to the Ohio. The horſes of Virginia are, without contradiction, the fineſt in the country; but they bear double the price of thoſe in the northern ſtates. The practice of races, borrowed from the Engliſh by the Virginians, is fallen into diſuſe. The places renowned for this buſineſs are all abandoned.

The towns in Virginia are but ſmall; this may be ſaid even of Richmond with its *capitol*. This capitol turns the heads of the Virginians; they imagine, that from this, like the old Romans, they ſhall one day give law to the whole North.

There is a glaſs manufactory forty miles from Alexandria, which exported laſt year to the amount of ten thouſand pounds in glaſs: and notwithſtanding the general character of indolence in this ſtate, the famous canal of the Potowmack advances with rapidity. Crimes are more frequent in Virginia than in the northern ſtates. Porter, wine, and every article, bear an exceſſive price here.

Virginia has public magazines, where the tobacco is depoſited. Inſpectors are appointed to take charge of theſe magazines, and inſpect the quality of the tobacco; which, if merchantable, is received, and the proprietor is furniſhed with a note for the quantity by him depoſited. This note circulates freely in the ſtate, according to the known value of the tobacco. The price is different, according to the place where it is inſpected. The following places are ranked according to the rigidity of the inſpection: Hanover-Court, Pittſburg, Richmond, Cabin-Point. When the tobacco is worth ſixteen ſhillings at Richmond, it is worth twenty-one at Hanover-Court. The tobacco travels to one place or the other, according to its quality; and if it is refuſed at all places, it is exported by contraband to the iſlands, or conſumed in the country. There are two cuttings in a year of this crop; the firſt only is preſented for inſpection, the ſecond conſumed in the country or ſmuggled to the iſlands.

As Virginia produces about eighty thouſand hogſheads, there circulates in the ſtate about eight hundred thouſand pounds in theſe notes; this is the reaſon why the Virginians have not need of a great quantity of circulating ſpecie, nor of copper coin. The rapid circulation of this tobacco-money ſupplies their place.

This ſcarcity, however, of ſmall money, ſubjects the people to great inconveniences, and has given riſe to a pernicious practice of cutting pieces of ſilver coin into halves and quarters; a ſource of many little knaveries. A perſon cuts a dollar into three pieces, keeps the middle piece, and paſſes the other two for half dollars. The perſon who receives theſe without weighing, loſes the difference, and the one who takes them by weight, makes a fraudulent profit by giving them again at their pretended value; and ſo the cheat goes round.

But notwithſtanding this pitiful reſource of cutting the ſilver, ſociety ſuffers a real injury for want of a plentiful copper coin; it is calculated, that in the towns the ſmall expences of a family are doubled, on account of the impoſſibility of finding ſmall change. It ſhews a ſtriking want of order in the government, and increaſes the miſery of the poor. Though tobacco exhauſts the land to a prodigious degree, the proprietors take no pains to reſtore its vigor; they take what the ſoil will give, and abandon it when it gives no longer. They like better to clear new lands, than to regenerate the old. Yet theſe abandoned lands would ſtill be fertile, if they were properly manured and cultivated. The Virginians take no tobacco in ſubſtance, either in the noſe or mouth; ſome of them ſmoke, but this practice is not ſo general among them as in the Carolinas.

The Americans wiſh for the free commerce of tobacco with France; and they complain much of the monopoly of the farmers-general. If this monopoly were removed, and the tobacco ſubjected only to a ſmall duty on importation into France, there is no doubt but that the Americans would give the French a ſhare of thoſe immenſe quantities with which they inundate Europe. They are now carried chiefly to England; where about the tenth part is conſumed, and the reſt is exported. England pays the whole in her own merchandize.

The high duty paid in England on tobacco, will prevent the Americans from giving the preference to France. It amounts to fifteen pence ſterling on the pound. Though England conſumes little tobacco, ſhe draws from it a revenue of 600,000 pounds ſterling. The ſtate of the finances of that iſland, will not admit of her diminiſhing this duty in order to rival France.

The great conſumption of tobacco in all countries, and the prohibitive regulations of almoſt all governments, may engage the Americans to continue this culture; for as they can furniſh it at a low price, as they navigate at a ſmall expence, as no people equal them in enterprize and induſtry, they may undertake to furniſh the whole earth.

Spain, for inſtance, will doubtleſs become a market for them. A reſpectable author makes the revenue which the king draws from this article, amount to twenty millions of livres (£833,333 $\frac{6}{8}$ ſterling). The greater part of this tobacco is brought from Braſil by the Portugueſe, ſold to the king at fivepence ſterling the pound, and then ſold by him at eight ſhillings and fourpence. At the expiration of the preſent contract, the ſame author obſerves, the Americans will offer a more advantageous one, and it is ſaid they will have the preference.

This high price encourages a conſiderable contraband in Spain, though interdicted by the pains of death. The law is too rigid to be executed.

The tobacco of the Miſſiſſippi and the Ohio will, doubtleſs, one day furniſh the greater part of the conſumption of Spain as well as of France. For it is proved, by thoſe who know the ſecrets of the farm, that the conſumption of the latter amounts to more than thirty millions of pounds annually, inſtead of fifteen, as we have been made to believe.

M. de Warville propoſed, on quitting Alexandria, to viſit that charming valley, waſhed by the Shenadore. From thence he intended to return by the vale of Lancaſter, and pay his reſpects to the virtuous Moravians. But the Revolution in France haſtened his return, and obliged him to decline the greater part of his intentions.

The Valley of Shenadore, which lies between the ſouth mountain and the north, or endleſs mountain, is from thirty to forty miles wide; chalky bottom, a fertile ſoil, and a good air. This ſituation offers almoſt all the advantages of the weſtern country, without its inconveniences. It is almoſt in the centre of the United States, and has nothing to fear from foreign enemies. It lies between two conſiderable rivers, which fall into the Cheſapeak; and though the navigation of theſe rivers is interrupted for the preſent, yet there is no doubt, from the progreſs of the works on the Potowmack, that this inconvenience will ſoon be removed.

The price of lands here, as elſewhere, varies according to their quality. They purchaſe at any price, from one to five guineas the acre, land of the ſame quality as in Pennſylvania from four to twenty guineas.

The average diſtance of theſe lands from commercial towns is as follows: fifty miles from George-Town, about fifty miles from Alexandria, eighty or an hundred from Richmond and from Baltimore. But this part of the country is ſtill more inviting for its future proſpects. Of all the rivers that diſcharge into the Atlantic, the Potowmack offers the moſt direct communication with the rivers of the Weſt. This circumſtance will make it one day the great channel of intercourſe for almoſt all the United-States; and its ſituation renders it ſecure againſt being interrupted by war.

But to realize the advantages which the ſituation of this country ſeems to promiſe, requires a reformation of manners, and the baniſhment of luxury, which is more conſiderable here than in Pennſylvania. Idleneſs and the love of the chace, which are deeply rooted in the ſoul of the Virginians, and, above all things, ſlavery muſt be extirpated; which infallibly produce thoſe great ſcourges of ſociety, lazineſs and vice, in one claſs of men, uninduſtrious labour and degrading miſery in another. The view of this deforming wound of humanity, will diſcourage foreigners of ſenſibility from coming to this ſtate; while they have not to dread this diſguſting ſpectacle in Pennſylvania. But it is in a country life in America, that true happineſs is to be found by him who is wiſe enough to make it conſiſt in tranquillity of ſoul, in the enjoyment of himſelf, and of nature. What is the fatiguing agitation of our great cities, compared to this delicious calmneſs? The trees, do not calumniate; they revile not their benefactors; men of the greateſt merit cannot always ſay this of their fellow-creatures.

Our author in treating of the American trade to the Eaſt-Indies, obſerves that the firſt motive to it, was the hope of œconomizing in the price of Eaſt-India goods, which they formerly imported from England, and this œconomy muſt be immenſe, if eſtimated by the great conſumption of tea in America, and the high price it bears in England. In the year 1761, the Engliſh American colonies ſent to England 85,000*l.* ſterling in Spaniſh dollars for this ſingle article, and ſince that time the conſumption of it has at leaſt tripled. Another motive which encouraged them to puſh this commerce, was the hope of being able to ſupply South-America, the Spaniſh and other iſlands, and even the markets of Europe, with the goods of the Eaſt; and to obtain every where the preference, by the low price at which they might be afforded. And this project is not without foundation. The nature of things invites the Americans to become the firſt carriers in the world. They build ſhips at two-thirds of the expence that they are built at in Europe, and navigate with leſs ſeamen, and at leſs expence. Alſo, the productions of their country are more favourable to this commerce than thoſe of Europe. They carry ginſeng to China; plank, ſhip-timber, flour, and ſalted proviſions to the Cape of Good Hope, and to the iſles of France and Bourbon. They are not, therefore, obliged to export ſo great a proportion of ſpecie as the Europeans, who have eſtabliſhments in the Eaſt.

Notwithſtanding the number of maladies in America, the inhabitants are remarkable for longevity. It is difficult here to obtain regular tables of births and deaths. There are ſome ſects who do not baptiſe their children, and whoſe regiſters are not carefully kept; others who baptiſe only their adults. Some of the ſick have no phyſicians or ſurgeons, and their attendants who give the information are not exact. The conſtant fluctuations occaſioned by emigrations and immigrations, ſtill increaſe the difficulty.

A principal cauſe of emigration in the back parts of Pennſylvania, is the hope of eſcaping taxes; yet the land-tax is very light, as it does not exceed a penny in the pound of the eſtimation; and the eſtimation is much under the value of the lands. There is much irregularity in the land-tax, as likewiſe in the capitation, or poll-tax; but one thing pleaſed our author much—that bachelors pay more than married men.

No ſea is impenetrable to the navigating genius of the Americans. Their flag is every where diſplayed; they are continually exploring iſlands, ſtudying their wants, and returning to ſupply them.

The Americans have already made a conſiderable commerce on the coaſt of Nootka-Sound, in furs and peltry. They were there trading in the year 1789, in good intelligence with both parties. In the ſame year, no leſs than forty-four veſſels were ſent from the ſingle town of Boſton to the north-weſt of America, to India, and to China. They bound not their hopes here: they expect, one day, to open a communication more direct to Nootka-Sound. It is probable that this place is not far from the head waters of the Miſſiſſippi; which the Americans will ſoon navigate to its ſource, when they ſhall begin to people Louiſiana and the interior of New Mexico.

Having now completed the Travels of M. BRISSOT DE WARVILLE *in* AMERICA, *and rendered his Obſervations on the* UNITED-STATES *more candid and impartial than they have hitherto appeared, by expunging all thoſe fulſome Compliments and unneceſſary Alluſions with which his own Accounts are interlarded, and rectifying many Errors committed through the hurry of Compoſition; we ſhall now proceed with the intereſting Narrative of* Lord MACARTNEY'S *Embaſſy to China, interſperſed with ſeveral new and entertaining Anecdotes, and fully deſcriptive of* TCHIEN LOONG, *the preſent Emperor—Hoping, that while we preſerve our uſual Accuracy and Spirit, we ſhall ſtill retain the preference and attention of our numerous Readers and Subſcribers.*

A NEW, GENUINE, AND COMPLETE

HISTORY OF Voyages & Travels:

Undertaken and Performed in the Years 1792 and 1793,

By LORD MACARTNEY and his Suite,

IN CONSEQUENCE OF

His LORDSHIP'S EMBASSY to CHINA.

Containing an INTERESTING NARRATIVE of all the CHINESE CUSTOMS, ENTERTAINMENTS, &c. with ACCURATE OBSERVATIONS of the ſeveral Remarkable ISLANDS they paſſed.

Including many New and Entertaining Anecdotes of TCHIEN LOONG, the preſent Emperor of CHINA, and interſperſed with ſeveral other Curious Relations.

CHAPTER I.

Lord MACARTNEY *and Suite embark on board the Lion—Part Company with the Jackall—Paſs the Deſart-Iſland, &c.—Anchor in Funchal-Bay—Deſcription of Funchal and Madeira—Departure—An Attempt to reach the Peak of Teneriffe—Anchor in Rio-Janeiro-Harbour—A ceremonial Viſit to the Viceroy—Purſue their Voyage—Diſcover the Iſle of Amſterdam—An awful Volcano—Land at Batavia—Deſcription of that City—His Lordſhip ſeized with the Gout—A Viſit to the Theatre—Departure from Batavia—They continue their Voyage—A Veſſel purchaſed in the Place of the Jackall—Recovery of the Jackall—Anchor in Pulo-Condore-Bay—An Interview with the Natives—The Village ſuddenly deſerted—Reaſons—Departure from Pulo-Condore—Anchor in Turon-Bay—A Viſit from the Prime Miniſter of the King of Cochin-China, with an Invitation—A Preſent—They viſit the Town of Fie-Foo—An Entertainment by Six Elephants—The Maſter of the Lion, with Seven Men, taken Priſoners—Conſequent Uneaſineſs—The Maſter, &c. ſet free—Death of the Purſer—Proceed on their Voyage—Anchor in Jangangfoe-Bay—A Preſent—A principal Mandarin invited to Dinner—Deſcription of the Town of Mettow.*

LORD Macartney, with his whole ſuite, went on board the Lion, at Spithead, September 21, 1792; and on the 29th of the ſame month they took their final departure, accompanied by the Hindoſtan Eaſt-Indiaman, and the Jackall brig. During the beginning of their voyage nothing particular happened, except that the Jackall parted company in a gale of wind, in the Bay of Biſcay, and did not rejoin them till after they had left Batavia.

They made land on the 10th of October, and paſſed the Deſart-Iſland and Porto-Sancto; the next day they caſt anchor in Funchal-Bay, in the iſland of Madeira.

On Lieutenant Campbell being ſent to the governor of the Madeiras, to notify the ambaſſador's arrival, ſalutes of guns were interchanged between the Lion and the garriſon. Soon after, the Britiſh conſul, attended by ſeveral Engliſh gentlemen and merchants, came to pay their reſpects to his excellency, and to invite him on ſhore. This invitation being accepted, the yard-arms were manned; during his lordſhip's paſſage from the ſhip to the ſhore, ſalutes were repeated; and at the landing-place, the governor of the Madeiras, the Britiſh conſul, and the principal inhabitants, received the ambaſſador with every mark of eſteem and congratulation. During his ſtay, he was ſplendidly entertained by the Britiſh conſul and the governor on ſucceſſive days; and before his departure, had the honour of a viſit in return on board the Lion, from all the moſt diſtinguiſhed perſons of the iſland.

Funchal, a town, is about three miles in length and one in breadth. Its population is very conſiderable; conſiſting of Portugueſe, mulattoes, negroes, and a few Britiſh, who are engaged in the commerce of the place. The natives ſeem to be courteous in their diſpoſition, and attentive to ſtrangers.

Madeira, an iſland, is extremely mountainous; but the views are beautifully romantic; and verdure and fertility cover the moſt unpromiſing ſituations.

They took their leave of Madeira on the 18th of October, and on the 21ſt anchored in Santa-Cruz-Bay, in the iſle of Teneriffe. This iſland, in extent, riches, and population, is the moſt conſiderable of thoſe known by the general appellation of the Canaries. The town of Santa-Cruz is pretty large, well built, and populous, and is defended by two forts, which alſo command the bay. The Peak of Teneriffe is well known to be one of the higheſt mountains in the world; and it preſents a number of objects which the curious inquirer into nature can never ceaſe to contemplate with admiration. It riſes in the centre of the iſland, and its aſcent from Santa-Cruz may be about twenty miles. Some of the principal gentlemen of the embaſſy, with attendants, reſolved to viſit the Peak.

They ſet out on the morning of the 24th, prepared and equipped for the expedition, and furniſhed with guides; but after encountering a ſeries of dangers, night coming on, they determined to take up their lodging at the bottom of the Peak, to which they were now advanced, and to renew their journey in the morning. At an early hour they again ſet out; but were obliged by the innumerable difficulties and dangers they encountered, to relinquiſh the gratification of reaching the ſummit. After a fatiguing excurſion of two days, they returned to Santa-Cruz; and on the 27th they bid adieu to the Canaries. The Cape de Verd Iſlands lay next in their route; and Port-Praya-Bay, in the iſle of St. Jago, received them November the 2d.

The town of Praya is chiefly remarkable for the advantage of its port, where outward-bound ſhips of all nations frequently touch.

On the 18th of November they paſſed the line; and on the 1ſt of December came to anchor in Rio-Janeiro-Harbour, in the Brazils; where they found an opportunity of tranſmitting letters to England by a South-Sea whaler.

December 2, an officer was diſpatched to announce the ambaſſador's arrival to the viceroy. Being then at his country reſidence, the uſual ſalutes were ſuſpended; however, the deputy-viceroy came in ſtate next morning, to compliment Lord Macartney; but his lordſhip being much indiſpoſed, was unable to receive him in perſon, Sir George Staunton and Sir Eraſmus Gower, therefore, repreſented his excellency on this occaſion. The day following, the deputy-viceroy, in the name of his principal, congratulated his excellency the ambaſſador on his arrival, and made a tender of a houſe for his reſidence during his ſtay.

Having accepted this obliging offer, on the 7th at noon his lordſhip proceeded on ſhore with the uſual formalities, and was received with all poſſible diſtinction by the viceroy, attended by his guards and the moſt diſtinguiſhed perſons of the place. After taking ſome refreſhment at the viceroy's palace, the ambaſſador, and the principal gentlemen of his ſuite, were accommodated with carriages to convey them to the houſe deſtined for their reception, about two miles diſtant from the city.

Lord Macartney, with his whole ſuite, paid a ceremonial viſit to the viceroy on the 10th. In the evening his lordſhip and attendants took a walk in the public garden, the uſual amuſement, and the ſcene of the principal entertainment of the inhabitants of the place. This garden is laid out into graſs plots and gravel walks, ſhaded with trees of perpetual verdure, interſperſed with lamps. At one end they obſerved a large ſtructure for muſic and dancing, which it ſeems are favourite recreations here at the proper ſeaſons of the year.

On the 11th, the viceroy, in grand proceſſion, returned Lord Macartney's viſit. A diſcharge of artillery announced the moment of his departure from his palace. The ambaſſador ſtood ready to receive him on his arrival; and after conducting him to the principal apartment, preſented the gentlemen of the embaſſy, who were all reſpectfully noticed by the viceroy. An elegant repaſt concluded the viſit. The viceroy's dreſs was very ſplendid. It was ſcarlet cloth embroidered with gold and precious ſtones. His attendants, in general, wore a livery of green and gold.

Having already deſcribed the town of Rio-Janeiro, by ſome called St. Sebaſtian, in our former voyages, a repetition here would be unneceſſary.

Lord Macartney, being ſtill under indiſpoſition, privately returned on board the Lion, on the afternoon of the 15th; and every preparation having been made for renewing their voyage, on the 18th they left the harbour of Rio-Janeiro.

The feſtival of Chriſtmas overtook them amid the waſte of waters; it is ſcarcely neceſſary to ſay that it did not paſs unobſerved, or its ſocial rites unenjoyed. For ſome preceding and following days, their voyage was barren of occurrences; however, on the laſt day of the old year they reached the iſland of Triſtan de Cunha, a barren and almoſt inacceſſible rock, near the centre of the Southern Ocean. Uninhabited by men, it is the reſort of a prodigious variety of marine fowls; and its ſurrounding ſeas abound in whales and other tenants of the deep. An officer being ſent on ſhore in the cutter, reported that the beach was favourable, and that freſh water was plenty.

They intended, January 1, 1793, to ſend out a watering party; and another on natural and philoſophical reſearches. Both ſchemes were fruſtrated. A heavy gale came on at midnight, and had not the wind providentially changed, at a moment of imminent danger, their deſtruction would have been inevitable. During many ſucceſſive days the weather was generally moderate; and a month paſſed away without their ſeeing land.

On the 1ſt of February, however, they diſcovered the iſle of Amſterdam. They came to an anchor on the Eaſt ſide of this iſland; and found here five ſeal hunters from the Iſle of France, who had mutually engaged to ſpend eighteen months on this unpropitious ſpot; ſix were already elapſed; and during that period, it ſeems, they had killed no fewer than 8000 ſeals. Theſe men, with the utmoſt civility, conducted them to a hut they had built, and ſerved as their conductors round their uſurped domain. They had formed a path, with incredible labour, over a mountain, crowned with a volcano, which throws out a ſubſtance reſembling ſalt-petre. In aſcending this path, our adventurers found a ſmall ſpring of boiling-hot water, in which ſome fiſh were perfectly dreſſed in a few minutes. The whole iſland, which is about eight miles long and ſix broad, has a volcanic appearance; and produces neither tree nor ſhrub. Vaſt quantities of fiſh were caught here, and ſalted for uſe; many ſpecies were very delicate, particularly lobſters.

It being a dark night when they departed, they had an opportunity of contemplating one of the moſt awful ſpectacles in nature. The flames of the volcano were ſeen riſing from ſix different openings. Whether this was its uſual appearance, or only one of its occaſional eruptions, could not be affirmed.

They came in ſight of the Trial-Rocks on the 18th. They ſcarcely riſe above the ſurface of the deep; but the waves daſh againſt them with ſo much impetuoſity, that they run mountains high. This fortunately marks the ſituation of theſe formidable rocks, and in reality leſſens the danger by magnifying its appearance.

Some ſhort time after, they entered the Straits of Sunda; and on the 6th of March arrived in the Road of Batavia, where they immediately received the ſalutes of all the Engliſh ſhips, and of one French veſſel. Early next morning, the garriſon fired a ſalute, which was returned; and ſoon after a deputation from the governor-general waited on Lord Macartney, to invite him on ſhore. His lordſhip landed on the 8th, it being the anniverſary of the birth-day of the Prince of Orange, and a royal ſalute was fired in honour of the day; afterwards the ambaſſador went on ſhore, with the uſual ceremonies and attendants. The Royal Batavian Hotel was fixed on for the reſidence of the ſuite, and in the afternoon the baggage was ſafely landed before the door. This hotel is an elegant and ſpacious ſtructure, and was built at the public expence, for the accommodation of occaſional viſitors of diſtinction. The ſtyle of living here is expenſive; European liquors of every deſcription being at a very high price; but when it is conſidered that the landlord is obliged to import them from Europe, and pays an annual rent to government of ſixty thouſand rixdollars, it may reaſonably be ſuppoſed, that the profits muſt be great, to counterbalance his riſk and certain outgoings.

The governor-general gave a ſplendid entertainment to the principal perſons in Batavia, at his country reſidence, to which Lord Macartney went by invitation. A ball and ſupper concluded the fete, and mirth and feſtivity were prolonged beyond the hours of night.

Batavia, the oriental emporium of the Dutch, is the principal city in the iſland of Java: it is almoſt ſquare, ſurrounded by high walls and gates, and protected by forts, which are well garriſoned. The ſtreets are ſpacious, and well paved; the buildings in general are uniformly elegant; and through every principal ſtreet runs a canal of conſiderable width, lined on both ſides with trees of perennial leaves. In a climate ſo intolerably hot, this furniſhes an agreeable refreſhment; but perhaps the quantity of ſtagnant or ſlow moving water, thus collected, increaſes the natural inſalubrity of the place. Indeed, ſo fatal is the climate of Batavia to Europeans, that ſcarcely one in twenty reviſit their native land; and thoſe who eſcape death there, carry with them emaciated forms and debilitated conſtitutions to the grave. From the regiſters of the public hoſpital, it appears, that the average number of deaths, annually, in that ſingle receptacle of miſery, does not amount to much leſs than five thouſand. The population of Batavia, however, is nevertheleſs very conſiderable; amounting, at a moderate calculation, to two hundred thouſand ſouls, of whom a majority are Chineſe. Theſe chiefly inhabit the ſuburbs, or Chineſe Town, and appear to be an induſtrious and regular people. They carry on a variety of trades and manufactures; for Europeans think it beneath them to engage in mechanical operations. The Malays are alſo very numerous in Batavia, and poſſeſs all the malignant qualities that ſo univerſally adhere to that ferocious race of men. Nothing but conſtant ſeverity, it is ſaid, can keep them within the bounds of duty. Adapted to the depravity of the people in general, is the nature of the government of Batavia. It is arbitrary in a high degree; and the rigour, with which every ſpecies of delinquency is puniſhed, can only find a juſtification in the ferocious diſpoſition and the baſe propenſities of the natives.

His lordſhip ſoon after his landing, was ſeized with a fit of the gout, which put a ſtop to all the feſtivities intended to fill up the time of their ſtay. Several gentlemen of his ſuite alſo fell ill; in leſs than a week after their arrival; and to facilitate their recovery, they were ordered on board their reſpective ſhips.

During their ſtay here, a party of them attended the theatre. The play was the tragedy of Mahomet; and the entertainment, Barnaby Brittle. The audience ſeemed vaſtly amuſed; but not underſtanding the language, our heroes could form no idea of the merits of the performance, except from the attitudes and expreſſion of the actors, which ſeemed to be impreſſive and correct.

They left Batavia on the 16th, and next morning they made ſail, paſſing the iſle of Ourooſt, which lies in the middle of the bay; and notwithſtanding the ſmallneſs of its ſize, contains a populous town, many elegant villas, and ſeveral flouriſhing manufactures. The ſuperior ſalubrity of the air recommends this and ſome other ſurrounding iſles, to thoſe whoſe circumſtances qualify them to reſide where pleaſure or health invites.

As the Jackall brig was now given up for loſt, Lord Macartney purchaſed a French veſſel at Batavia to ſupply her place, and gave her the name of the Clarence. The Clarence, however, had only joined them the day before they received ſome intelligence of the Jackall by a ſhip from Oſtend to Batavia; and this intelligence was confirmed by the brig joining them on the 23d, to the great joy of the whole embaſſy.

One of their crew named Leighton had gone on ſhore on the 29th, to waſh his linen at Sumatra-Beach, and was found covered with wounds, and murdered by the Malays. To the ſavage diſpoſition of theſe people, this event gave an additional, though melancholy teſtimony. The laſt rites were paid to the body of the deceaſed with the utmoſt decency and reſpect; and the feelings of the whole ſhip's company on the occaſion, were the beſt eulogium on his character and conduct. This day in the afternoon Lord Macartney ſignified his intention of going on ſhore, to view the ſpot where the Honourable Colonel Cathcart (who held a ſimilar ſituation to his lordſhip ſome years back) was buried; all that was to be expected from their miſſion, was of courſe anticipated by him, but his death put an end to that diplomatic attempt. After paſſing a variety of iſlands, they came to anchor in Pulo-Condore-Bay, May 16.

Soon after their arrival, a party of gentlemen, accompanied by one of the Chineſe interpreters, went on ſhore. Some of the natives met them on the beach, with whom they proceeded till they came at a ſmall diſtance to a village of bamboo huts; one of which was the reſidence of the chief, whoſe authority extended over the whole iſland. Like the reſt, his habitation was formed of bamboo, raiſed on four poſts, a few feet from the ground. Here we found ſeveral natives of Cochin-China, who wore no other dreſs but a piece of linen round their waiſts, and a black turban on their heads. The chief was habited in a looſe black gown, and a pair of black ſilk trowſers. He was alſo decorated with a ſilver cord thrown over his ſhoulder, from which a ſmall bag of elegant workmanſhip was ſuſpended. In common with the reſt, he wore a turban, but no ſhoes. He appeared to be the object of very great adoration.

Adjoining his palace, if ſo it may be called, ſtood the temple. Externally, it reſembled the other buildings: but the inſide was adorned with various military weapons of Europe, particularly ſome old fire arms, of which they evidently did not know the uſe, and ſeemed to conſider them only as objects of veneration. The diſcharge of a muſket againſt a tree, excited the moſt lively alarm and aſtoniſhment. They eagerly examined the place where the ball entered; they even contrived to extract it, and then preſented it to each other, with the moſt viſible emotion.

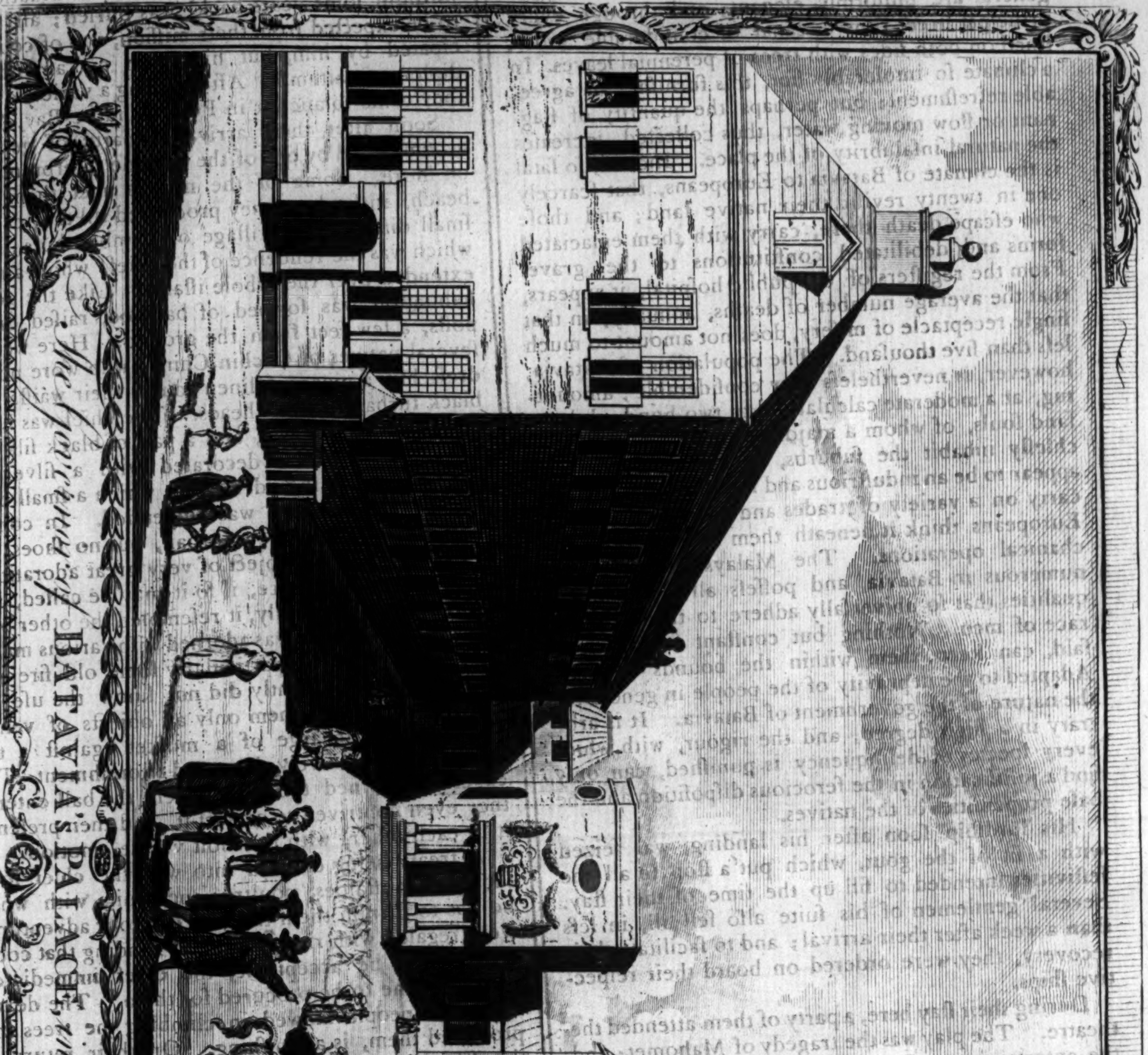
A treaty being entered into with the chief for a ſupply of buffaloes, poultry, and fruit, with which he was to furniſh them the next day, our adventurers were regaled with rice and fiſh. Finding that cocoa nuts would be acceptable, the chief immediately ordered ſome to be procured for them. The dexterity theſe people ſhewed in climbing the trees that produced them, is aſtoniſhing. On their return to the ſhip, they obſerved caves on the beach very ingeniouſly conſtructed.

Pulo-Condore is but thinly peopled. The means of ſubſiſtence is difficult; and population of courſe muſt be influenced thereby. This iſland is ſubject to the king of Cochin-China.

On landing next morning, to receive the ſtipulated ſupply of proviſions, they found, to their great aſtoniſhment, the village deſerted, and every moveable carried off. A letter in Chineſe characters, left in the hut of the chief, explained the reaſons of this ſudden and unexpected movement. It ſeems they were apprehenſive of hoſtilities againſt them, from the ſhips coming to anchor in their bay: they earneſtly implored the Europeans to ſpare their humble dwellings, which they intended to re-occupy on their departure; and dwelt on their poverty, which they perhaps concluded was their beſt protection, and the ſtrongeſt arguments to allay European rapacity. Thus being obliged to ſet ſail without their expected ſupply, they left Pulo-Condore on the 18th, and paſſing ſeveral iſlands of different forms and magnitude, they anchored on the evening of the 26th in Turon-Bay, in Cochin-China.

The ambaſſador ſhortly after their arrival received a viſit from ſeveral mandarins, who came in great ſtate. They were liberally entertained; but at firſt ſeemed averſe to taſte the wines and other liquors which were ſet before them. This reſerve appearing to ariſe from fear, Lord Macartney ſet them an example, country reſidence, to which Lord Macartney went by invitation. A ball and ſupper concluded the fete, and mirth and feſtivity were prolonged beyond the hours of night.

Batavia, the oriental emporium of the Dutch, is the principal city in the iſland of Java: it is almoſt ſquare, ſurrounded by high walls and gates, and protected by forts, which are well garriſoned. The ſtreets are ſpacious, and well paved; the buildings in general are uniform



The Governor of BATAVIA'S PALACE, in the EAST INDIES.

murdered by the Malays. To the ſavage diſpoſition of theſe people; this event gave an additional, though

melancholy teſtimony. The laſt rites were paid to the body of the deceaſed with the utmoſt decency and reſpect; and the feelings of the whole ſhip's company on the occaſion, were the beſt eulogium on his character and conduct. This day in the afternoon Lord Macartney ſignified his intention of going on ſhore, to view the ſpot where the Honourable Colonel Cathcart (who held a ſimilar ſituation to his lordſhip

entertained; but at firſt ſeemed averſe to taſte the wines and other liquors which were ſet before them. This reſerve appearing to ariſe from fear, Lord Macartney ſet them an example.

example, when they indulged very freely; ſhewing a particular predilection for cherry and raſpberry brandy. Theſe chiefs wore nearly the ſame kind of dreſs as thoſe at Pulo-Condore, except that they had a girdle of ſilver cordage. Their domeſtics were clad in a fancy dreſs, reſembling tartan; and their legs and feet were wholly bare.

News of their arrival having reached the court, in the evening of the 29th the prime miniſter of the king of Cochin-China, attended by ſeveral mandarins, came, in his majeſty's name, to invite the ambaſſador to dinner. His excellency obligingly accepted the invitation, but poſtponed the day to June the 4th.

He received in the mean time a preſent from the king, conſiſting of a great number of bullocks, hogs, fowls, ducks, ſome bags of rice, and ſome jars of ſamptſoo, a Chineſe liquor, [illegible] deli-cious.

They viſited the town of Fai-Fong, while they lay here. It is nothing but an aſſemblage of wretched bamboo huts, but it has a good harbour; and were the induſtry of the natives equal to the fertility of the ſoil, this place would be remarkably abundant. They ſeem, however, to have little knowledge of agriculture: they ſubſiſt therefore chiefly on the ſpontaneous produce of the earth; and make their women a principal branch of their trade. For a certain conſideration, they are always ready to conſign them to the ſociety of Europeans who touch here, without any apparent ſenſe of impropriety. In one of their excurſions on the ſhore, they ſaw the elephants performing a variety of amuſing feats, for the entertainment of the mandarins who had aſſembled here.

The 4th of June, being his majeſty's birth-day, was uſhered in with a ſalute of twenty-one guns; the royal ſtandard of Great-Britain, the St. George's enſign, and the union, were all diſplayed at their appropriate ſtations. In honour of this day, Lord Macartney had fixed his landing. Several mandarins waited his arrival on ſhore, and attended him, under an eſcort of his own guards, to the reſidence of the prime miniſter. A collation was there provided for him, conſiſting of all the dainties the country afforded; after partaking of which, he returned on board, interchanging mutual [illegible] with the mandarins.

Matters thus far proceeded to the ſatisfaction of all parties in Cochin-China; but the maſter of the Lion, who had gone in the cutter to take ſoundings in the bay, having unfortunately begun to ſurvey the coaſt, was immediately ſeized, with ſeven men, who accompanied him, and carried priſoners to the capital.

When they had received this diſagreeable intelligence, the apprehenſions it raiſed may be eaſily conceived. It was not merely the danger to which their countrymen had expoſed themſelves, that affected the embaſſy; but, as this kingdom is tributary to China, it was feared, that a repreſentation of this inconſiderate conduct, in ſo far as it might appear criminal, would have an injurious effect on all their future proceedings, and that the emperor [illegible] to inſpire confidence, would be changed into ſuſpicion and alarm. The good offices of the friendly mandarins were [illegible] and earneſtly ſolicited. One of the interpreters was ſent on ſhore to promote an inquiry and ſearch for explanation; and on the 29th, they had the happineſs to ſee the maſter and his men return on board, after an abſence of five days. What they ſuffered during this period of ſuſpenſe, cannot well be determined. Nothing but a regard for the country to which they belonged, and a reſpect to the miſſion on which they were employed, could have ſaved them from certain death. This was not the only unpleaſant event that befel them here. They loſt a reſpectable gentleman, the purſer of the Lion, who died, after a few days illneſs, on the 10th, and was interred on ſhore with all poſſible ſolemnity and reſpect. Over his grave was placed an inſcription, cut in wood.

On the 16th of June they left Cochin-China, and the Jackall and Clarence brigs, with Sir George Staunton and one of Lord Macartney's ſecretaries, were diſpatched to Macao on the 20th. Theſe gentlemen were charged with letters to the commiſſioners ſent from England to notify the expected embaſſy. The two gentlemen who were the Chineſe interpreters, took this opportunity of proceeding to reviſit their relations and friends, from whom they had been long ſeparated.

The intelligence brought by Sir George Staunton, who rejoined them on the 23d, gave very flattering hopes of the ſucceſs of the embaſſy. At a time when they were approaching the ſcene of negociation, this news was highly gratifying. During their paſſage up the Yellow Sea, they paſſed numerous iſlands.

On the 26th of July they caſt anchor in Jangouſee Bay. Several officers were immediately ſent in the cutter to Mettow, to reconnoitre the coaſt, and to aſcertain if there were any practicable means of approaching nearer the capital by [illegible]. The cutter returned on the 28th. They gave a very favourable report of the reception they had experienced from the Chineſe; but reported, that it was abſolutely impracticable to proceed farther, on account of ſhoals and other natural impediments. It was therefore reſolved to diſembark; and a gentleman, accompanied by an interpreter, failed in the cutter to Mettow, to make arrangements for that purpoſe. The mandarin promiſed to provide large junks for the conveyance of the ſuite and baggage, as ſoon as the wind proved favourable. Some ſhort time after, they received a preſent of ſome bullocks and ſheep, [illegible], poultry, vegetables, and other productions of the country. A principal mandarin alſo came on board the Lion, who [illegible] the mode and the day of the diſembarkation. He was invited to dinner; but not being provided with his uſual table appendages, he ſeemed to find himſelf in an unpleaſant ſituation. The Chineſe neither uſe knives nor forks: whether they appeared more ridiculous to him, or he to them, it may be difficult to decide. He expreſſed the greateſt admiration of the ſhip, and the various arrangements and conveniences he ſaw on board; but what ſeemed to delight him moſt, was his being hoiſted into one of their boats in the accommodation chair.

Now the greateſt part of the baggage was put on board the junks ſent to convey it, and on the 5th of Auguſt, ſeveral more came alongſide the Lion to take the remainder, and the ſuite. Before his excellency diſembarked, the captain ordered the company to man ſhip: he was ſaluted with three cheers from the ſeamen, and a diſcharge of guns from the ſhips.

The junk intended for his lordſhip's reception, being found inconvenient and filthy, as indeed they were all, he quitted it and went on board the Clarence brig.

For this purpoſe, they occupied no fewer than twenty junks, of about an hundred tons burthen, and proceeding ſlowly, from the various ſhallowneſs of the river, the whole fleet anchored oppoſite the palace of the principal mandarin at Mettow, in the afternoon of the ſame day. This town, the firſt which they had ſeen in China, poſſeſſed none of thoſe attractions that ariſe from the elegance of building, or the beauty of ſituation. It ſtands on a ſwamp, frequently overflowed by the ſea, which no precaution of the inhabitants is able to prevent: and the houſes or huts are wholly conſtructed of mud, covered with bamboo, without either floors or pavements. The reſidences of the mandarins, however, which lie at a ſmall diſtance from the town, are built of ſtone and wood, three ſtories high, and are adorned with painting, gilding, and pillars. They appear to contain a conſiderable number of apartments, each palace being furniſhed with projecting wings, which are generally of curiouſly painted wood. Guards of both infantry and cavalry attend each mandarin, and [illegible]

BRITISH MUSEUM

example, when they indulged very freely; ſhewing a particular predilection for cherry and raſpberry brandy. Theſe chiefs wore nearly the ſame kind of dreſs as thoſe at Pulo-Condore; except that they had a girdle of ſilver cordage. Their domeſtics were clad in a fancy dreſs, reſembling tartan; and their legs and feet were wholly bare.

News of their arrival having reached the court, in the evening of the 29th the prime miniſter of the king of Cochin-China, attended by ſeveral mandarins, came, in his majeſty's name, to invite the ambaſſador to dinner. His excellency obligingly accepted the invitation, but poſtponed the day to June the 4th.

He received in the mean time a preſent from the king, conſiſting of a great number of buffaloes, hogs, fowls, ducks, ſome bags of rice, and ſome jars of samptſoo, a Chineſe liquor, reckoned very delicious.

They viſited the town of Fie-Foo, while they lay here. It is nothing but an aſſemblage of wretched bamboo huts, but it has a good market; and were the induſtry of the natives equal to the fertility of the ſoil, this place would be remarkably abundant. They ſeem, however, to have little knowledge of agriculture: they ſubſiſt therefore chiefly on the ſpontaneous produce of the earth; and make their women a principal branch of their trade. For a certain conſideration, they are always ready to conſign them to the ſociety of Europeans who touch here, without any apparent ſenſe of impropriety. In one of their excurſions to the ſhore, they ſaw ſix elephants performing a variety of unwieldy feats, for the entertainment of the mandarins who had aſſembled here.

The 4th of June, being his majeſty's birth-day, was uſhered in with a ſalute of twenty-one guns; the royal ſtandard of Great-Britain, the St. George's enſign, and the union, were all diſplayed at their appropriate ſtations. In honour of this day, Lord Macartney had fixed his landing. Several mandarins waited his arrival on ſhore; and attended him, under an eſcort of his own troops, to the reſidence of the prime miniſter. A collation was here provided for him, conſiſting of all the dainties the country afforded; after partaking of which, he returned on board, interchanging mutual civilities with his hoſts.

Matters thus far proceeded to the ſatisfaction of all parties in Cochin-China; but the maſter of the Lion, who had gone in the cutter to take ſoundings in the bay, having unreflectingly begun to ſurvey the coaſt, was immediately ſeized, with ſeven men, who accompanied him, and carried priſoners to the capital.

When they firſt received this diſagreeable intelligence, the impreſſion it made is not eaſily conceived. It was not only the danger to which their countrymen had expoſed themſelves, that affected the embaſſy; but as this kingdom is tributary to China, it was feared, that a repreſentation of this inconſiderate conduct, as to them it might appear criminal, would have an injurious effect on all their future proceedings; and that the object ſo much at heart—to inſpire confidence, would be changed into ſuſpicion and alarm. The good offices of the friendly mandarins were inſtantly and earneſtly ſolicited. One of the interpreters was ſent on ſhore to promote an inquiry and furniſh an explanation; and on the 13th, they had the happineſs to ſee the maſter and his men return in ſafety, after an abſence of ſix days. What they ſuffered during this period of ſuſpence, cannot well be deſcribed. Nothing but a reſpect for the country to which they belonged, and a regard to the miſſion on which they were employed, could have ſaved them from certain death. This was not the only unpleaſant event that befell them here. They loſt a reſpectable gentleman, the purſer of the Lion, who died, after a few days illneſs, on the 12th, and was interred on ſhore with all poſſible ſolemnity and reſpect. Over his grave was placed an inſcription, cut in wood.

On the 16th of June they left Cochin-China, and the Jackall and Clarence brig, with Sir George Staunton and one of Lord Macartney's ſecretaries, were diſpatched to Macao on the 20th. Theſe gentlemen were charged with letters to the commiſſioners ſent from England to notify the expected embaſſy. The two gentlemen who were the Chineſe interpreters, took this opportunity of proceeding to reviſit their relations and friends, from whom they had been long ſeparated.

The intelligence brought by Sir George Staunton, who rejoined them on the 23d, gave very flattering hopes of the ſucceſs of the embaſſy. At a time when they were approaching the ſcene of negotiation, this news was highly gratifying. During their paſſage up the Yellow-Sea, they paſſed numerous iſlands.

On the 21ſt of July they caſt anchor in Janganſoe-Bay. Several officers were immediately ſent in the cutter to Mettow, to reconnoitre the coaſt, and to aſcertain if there were any practicable means of approaching nearer the capital on ſhipboard. The cutter returned on the 25th. They gave a very favourable report of the reception they had experienced from the Chineſe; but reported, that it was abſolutely impracticable to proceed further, on account of ſhoals and other natural impediments. It was therefore reſolved to diſembark; and a gentleman, accompanied by an interpreter, failed in the cutter to Mettow, to make arrangements for this purpoſe. The mandarins promiſed to provide large junks for the reception of the ſuite and baggage, as ſoon as the wind proved favourable. Some ſhort time after, they received a preſent of ſome bullocks and ſheep, ſeveral hogs, poultry, vegetables, and other productions of the country. A principal mandarin alſo came on board the Lion, who finally ſettled the mode and the day of the diſembarkation. He was invited to dinner; but not being provided with his uſual table appendages, he ſeemed to feel himſelf in an unpleaſant ſituation. The Chineſe neither uſe knives nor forks: whether they appeared more ridiculous to him, or he to them, it may be difficult to decide. He expreſſed the greateſt admiration of the ſhip, and the various arrangements and conveniences he ſaw on board; but what ſeemed to delight him moſt, was his being hoiſted into one of their boats in the accommodation chair.

Now the greateſt part of the baggage had been put on board the junks ſent to receive it, and on the 5th of Auguſt, ſeveral more came alongſide the Lion to take the remainder, and the ſuite. Before his excellency diſembarked, the captain ordered the company to man ſhip: he was ſaluted with three cheers from the ſeamen, and a diſcharge of guns from the ſhips.

The junk intended for his lordſhip's reception, being found inconvenient and filthy, as indeed they were all, he quitted it and went on board the Clarence brig.

For this purpoſe they occupied no fewer than twenty junks, of about an hundred tons burden; and proceeding ſlowly, from the various difficulties of the river, the whole fleet anchored oppoſite the palace of the principal mandarin in Mettow, in the afternoon of the ſame day. This town, the firſt which they had ſeen in China, poſſeſſed none of thoſe attractions that ariſe from the elegance of building, or the beauty of ſituation. It ſtands on a ſwampy ſpot, frequently overflowed by the ſea, which no precaution of the inhabitants is able to prevent; and the houſes or huts are wholly conſtructed of mud, covered with bamboo, without either floors or pavements. The reſidences of the mandarins, however, which lie at a ſmall diſtance from the town, are built of ſtone and wood, three ſtories high, and are adorned with painting, gilding, and piazzas. They appear to contain a conſiderable number of apartments; each palace being furniſhed with projecting wings, which are generally of variouſly painted wood. Guards of both infantry and cavalry attend each mandarin, and environ his palace with their tents.

One ſolitary fort, conſiſting of a ſquare tower, was probably meant for the defence of the place, as its ſituation commands the entrance of the river; but having neither ordnance or garriſon, it ſerves rather as an ornament than a ſecurity. The river here is of conſiderable breadth, but of ſmall and unequal depth. Acroſs its entrance runs a bank of ſand. The ſurrounding country preſents a flat expanſe of a rich ſoil and great fertility. Curioſity, which induced vaſt numbers to crowd the ſhores, during the landing of the embaſſy, gave them a very grand idea of the population of Mettow and the environs.

CHAP. II.

Office of Van-Tadge-In, a Mandarin—Junks provided for their Conveyance to Pekin, and Proviſions—Indifference of the Chineſe reſpecting their Meats—Deſcription of the Junks—They ſail for Pekin—Deſcription of a Chineſe Soldier—Remarks on the Tea-Tree—Tyen-Sing—A Chineſe Play—Cho-Tung-Poa—Arrival at the City of Tong-Tchew—Obſervations—Death of Mr. Eades, &c.

VAN-Tadge-In, a mandarin of the firſt claſs, being delegated by the emperor, to ſuperintend the progreſs, and provide for the accommodation of the embaſſy, during its continuance in China, began the exerciſe of his functions, by furniſhing our heroes with junks which were to convey them to Pekin. The important truſt with which he was inveſted, proved his country's opinion of his abilities to execute it; and there was every reaſon to confirm the favourable deciſion it had paſſed. This diſtinguiſhed perſonage was about the middle ſize, robuſt, and finely formed. The darkneſs of his complexion was relieved by a ſet of features expreſſive of intelligence and feeling; and his manners were at once conciliating and correct.

From this mandarin they received, Auguſt the 6th, a quantity of beef, bread, and fruit. The beef was well flavoured, but not very fat. The bread, not being baked in the European mode, though made of excellent flour, was leſs agreeable to their taſte. It was in fact little better than dough, being baked without an intermixture of yeaſt, which the Chineſe are either unacquainted with, or reject its uſe. In ſhape and ſize, the loaves reſemble a common waſhball, divided in two. They are baked on bars ranged acroſs an iron pan, in which is a certain quantity of water, and placed on an earthen ſtove. When the water begins to boil, the ſteam is confined by a ſhallow tub for a few minutes; and thus the buſineſs ends. This curious method of baking, or rather boiling, rendered it neceſſary for our adventurers to ſlice and toaſt the bread before they could reliſh it.

Towards the afternoon they received a variety of meats, both roaſt and boiled. The roaſt meat appeared as if covered with an oily varniſh, and taſted accordingly: the boiled was much more agreeable.

They were indeed a little prejudiced againſt Chineſe cookery, from the accounts they had heard of their indifference in regard to animals killed on purpoſe, or by accident, or dying of diſeaſe. It ſeems all are equally uſed. The reports that had reached their ears, in this reſpect, were confirmed by the evidence of their eyes. Some pigs, being infected with an incurable diſorder, were thrown overboard; but the frugal Chineſe inſtantly picked them up and dreſſed them; and while they were enjoying their unenvied feaſt, appeared to laugh at the Engliſh for their faſtidious delicacy. Nor is this groſſneſs of appetite confined to thoſe whom want may be ſuppoſed to ſtimulate. The higher ranks, in their domeſtic œconomy, appear to be governed by the ſame motives as their inferiors, and adopt cuſtoms which Europeans would deſpiſe.

On the 7th the ſquadron received orders to return to Chuſan-Harbour, and to wait for further orders.

Their junks are built of beach wood and bamboo, flat bottomed, and of various ſizes; and nearly a fourth part as broad as they are long. On the firſt deck of the larger veſſels, employed in the navigation of rivers, is a range of apartments, conſiſting of bed rooms, parlour, and kitchen. The floor from one end of the junk to the other, is full of hatches, which being lifted up by a braſs ring, open a ſtowage below for immenſe quantities of ſtores or goods. The windows are formed of ſmall ſquares of tranſparent paper; and the ſaſhes may be taken out on occaſion for the admiſſion of air. A coloured curtain on the outſide extends the whole length of the junk; and this is either furled or drawn, according to the pleaſure or convenience of the paſſengers. The main deck is laid out into chambers for the uſe of the crew. A gangway runs on both ſides the veſſel, ſo as to render the apartments private. It is aſtoniſhing how little water theſe junks draw. Some of two or three hundred tons may be navigated with ſafety on the moſt ſhoally rivers. Moſt of them have only one maſt, which, as well as the rudder, is clumſy and inelegant. A very wiſe precaution is uſed in the navigation of the rivers of China. No ſooner does it become dark, but a lighted lamp is ſuſpended from the maſt's head, as the ſignal of approach. Thus the danger of veſſels running foul of each other is prevented. Beſides theſe lamps being formed of tranſparent paper, inſcribed with Chineſe characters, ſerve to announce the name of the junk, or the rank of its paſſengers. Other lights likewiſe are diſtributed round the veſſel at night. During the day, ſilken flags are diſplayed, which being ſtamped with letters, anſwer the purpoſe of notification, the ſame as the lamps. Theſe lights and flags have ſometimes a grand and novel effect.

The mandarin and his ſuite occupied five junks, and took the lead of the proceſſion. His excellency the ambaſſador, and the principal gentlemen, had ſeven junks for their accommodation. The ſoldiers, mechanics, and ſervants, brought up the rear.

On the 8th of Auguſt his lordſhip took leave of the principal mandarin at Mettow, and having received a very liberal ſupply of proviſions, tea, ſugar, vegetables, and fruit, together with a quantity of wood and charcoal—for mineral coal is not known here, nor did they find it was uſed in any part of this empire—the embaſſy proceeded up the river. During this delightful voyage, the mandarin's guards marched by day along the banks of the river, and at night pitched their tents where the junks lay at anchor. Both the fronts of the huts on land, and the veſſels on the water, were decorated with lamps, and together formed an attractive ſight. The centinels, who kept a regular watch during the night, were furniſhed with a piece of hollow bamboo, which they ſtrike with a mallet at regular intervals, to ſignify their vigilance and activity. This cuſtom, the peyings, or ſoldiers, ſaid was univerſally adopted by the Chineſe army.

Early the next morning, the gongs gave the ſignal for ſailing. Theſe inſtruments are made of braſs, ſomething reſembling the cover of a large culinary veſſel; and when ſtruck with a large mallet, covered with leather, produce a ſound that may be heard further than the European trumpet, or bell, in the room of which they are ſubſtituted.

This day, with the uſual ſupply of proviſions, for the firſt time, they received a jar of the country wine;

it poſſeſſed a good body; but the taſte was ſharp and unpleaſant: in colour it reſembled Liſbon wine.

In China, military honours are not unknown. In paſſing ſeveral populous towns where ſoldiers were quartered, they were drawn up on the banks to receive the ambaſſador, while crowds of ſpectators filled every acceſſible ſpot of view. The uniform of a Chineſe ſoldier deſerves a deſcription. It conſiſts of black nankeen trowſers, over which a kind of cotton ſtockings are drawn. Their ſhoes, which are alſo made of cotton, are extremely clumſy, broad at the toes, and furniſhed with immoderately thick ſoles. From the top of their trowſers is ſuſpended a purſe, which contains their money. They have neither ſhirts nor waiſtcoats, but only a large black nankeen mantle with looſe ſleeves, turned up and fringed with red coloured cloth of the ſame fabric. A broad girdle confines this looſe robe, ornamented in front with a kind of plate, ſaid to be a compoſition of rice; a pipe, and bag for tobacco, hangs from this cincture on one ſide, and a fan on the other. Theſe appendages, and a ſupply of tobacco, are allowed by the emperor. They wear their ſwords on the left ſide, with the point forwards. A bow is ſlung under the left arm, and a quiver on their backs generally contains twelve arrows. Many, however, carry fire arms; and though it is impoſſible for the Chineſe to teach Europeans any improvements in the arts of deſtruction, in the caution they employ to prevent accidents with artillery and muſkets, they might give the wiſeſt of us a leſſon in the more commendable art of preſervation. The ſoldiers have a tuft of hair on the back of their head, which is plaited down the back, and tied at the extremity with a ribband. The reſt they ſhave. They cover their heads with ſhallow ſtraw hats, bound under the chin, and decorated with a red plume of camel's hair. According to our ideas, little that looks like military enters into the compoſition of a Chineſe ſoldier's dreſs. Their colours are commonly of green ſilk, edged with red, and painted with characters in gold. Of theſe they employ a great number.

In ſailing up the river, they ſaw numbers of ruſtic habitations, chiefly conſtructed of mud, with ſome few of ſtone. The country women, with the curioſity natural to their ſex, advanced to ſee the proceſſion. They ſeemed to walk with difficulty; having their feet and ancles bound with a red fillet to confine their growth. Their front hair is combed back on the crown of the head, and clubbed, and decorated with artificial flowers and ſilver pins; the hind hair is then brought up, and ſecured under the club. Except in regard to the decorations of the head and the bandages on their feet, the dreſs of the Chineſe women differs but little from that of the ſoldiers.

The progreſs of our adventurers was by no means rapid; but they were every moment attracted by ſome new objects, which prevented their wiſh for greater expedition. In the courſe of one day's ſailing, which could not exceed twenty-four miles, they paſſed ſuch an immenſe number of junks, and ſaw ſuch crowds of people, as would almoſt exceed belief did they attempt calculation. Independent of the moving ſcene, the river itſelf, ſpacious and meandering, was a noble object; and the diverſity of its banks, and the views which occaſionally opened over a rich and varied country, would have afforded a ſcope to the moſt glowing pencil.

On the 10th, for the firſt time, they ſaw the plantations of the tea-tree. This plant, ſo injurious to the conſtitution, and ſo captivating to the taſte, which, from being originally an uſeleſs luxury, has now become a neceſſary in ſo many countries, has been well deſcribed by botaniſts, and a repetition here would be needleſs. It may be neceſſary, however, to obſerve that it is of a low ſize, with a narrow leaf, ſomewhat like myrtle. It was now the ſeaſon when the tea-tree was in bloſſom. The bloſſoms are picked when young, and mixed with the tea, to which they communicate a more agreeable flavour. Plentiful as tea appears to be in this province, it is not within the reach of the lower claſſes, for the crew of the junks were glad to receive the tea leaves, which they dried, and then boiled, to procure their favourite beverage. Tea is univerſally uſed in China without ſugar; and as the natives, particularly the lower orders, frequently dry and reboil the leaves for ſome weeks ſucceſſively, they unite œconomy with gratification.

On the 11th in the morning, they approached the city of Tyen-Sing: the banks of the river here preſented fields of millet and rice. The number of ſpectators that met them, both in veſſels and by land, exceed all calculation. For nearly two miles they obſerved a range of ſalt heaps, diſpoſed in columns, and covered with matting; but whether manufactured on the ſpot, or for what purpoſe ſuch a prodigious quantity was collected, they were unable to conceive.

Their entrance into the city was attended with the noiſe and ſhouts of an innumerable multitude of people. This is a very populous and extenſive place. The houſes are built of brick, and are in general two ſtories high, covered with tiles: but the want of regularity offends the eye; and the ſtreets are ſo uncommonly narrow, that no more than two perſons can walk abreaſt at once.

The ambaſſador, who was received with military honours, went ſoon after their arrival, in full form to viſit the chief mandarin. His palace is large and lofty, paliſadoed in front, gilt and painted in a very fanciful and expenſive form. Even the external walls are decorated with paintings; and the roof is coated with a yellow varniſh of brilliant effect. Here the ambaſſador and ſuite partook of a cold collation, at which all the dainties of the country were collected.

A Chineſe play was performed in honour of the diſtinguiſhed viſitor. The theatre is a ſquare wooden ſtructure, in the front of the mandarin's palace. The ſtage is ſurrounded with galleries, which were decorated with ribbands and ſilken ſtreamers. The repreſentations conſiſted of warlike manœuvres, varied by ſleight of hand deceptions, and a diſplay of perſonal agility, in which the performers acquitted themſelves with admirable adroitneſs. A band of muſic, conſiſting of wind inſtruments, enlivened the ſcene. The novelty of both pleaſed the eye, rather than delighted the ear. The female characters were performed by eunuchs: the delicacy of the Chineſe would be ſhocked at the public exhibition of their women.

As ſoon as the ambaſſador and attendants returned on board, ſuch an immenſe number of people accompanied them, in every kind of conveyance capable of floating, that accidents appeared inevitable. They were witneſs to one, where part of the deck of an old junk gave way, from the enormous preſſure of ſpectators, whereby ſeveral perſons periſhed in the waves.

There was a very liberal ſupply of proviſions ſent them before they embarked. Indeed, from the ſuperabundance, they entertained the crews who navigated the junks; thus converting the hoſpitality of the country to the relief of the natives, for which mark of attention they teſtified a due ſenſe of gratitude.

There was a preſent made of ſome parcels of ſilk by the mandarin Tyen-Sing, to the embaſſy, and an officer, by the direction of the ambaſſador, diſtributed them among his ſuite; but it not being poſſible for every one to have an equal ſhare, it was determined, after two pieces were diſtributed to each of the gentlemen, the remainder ſhould be diſpoſed of by drawing lots, by which means every perſon had an equal chance, in ſpite of his ſtation.

For ſeveral days the weather was exceſſively hot, and at an early hour on the morning of the 12th of Auguſt they were viſited by a moſt tremendous ſtorm of thunder, lightning, and rain, which is not unuſual in this climate.

During ſeveral hours this day it was found neceſſary to employ men to tow the junks along. In China, numbers follow this laborious vocation, to which they are called when the wind or tide fails. A rope is fixed to the maſt, and another to the head of the junk. Theſe are of a length proportionable to the breadth of the river, and are fixed one at each end, to a ſtick of about thirty inches long. This is thrown over the head and reſts on the breaſt, forming a kind of harneſs. Every draughtſman is furniſhed with a ſimilar apparatus, and when all are ready, the leader gives the ſignal to advance. The towers act in concert, and proceed with a meaſured ſtep, which is regulated by a kind of muſical tone, conſtantly repeated. The fatigue theſe uſeful drudges undergo would appear exceſſive to any but the Chineſe; they wade through marſhy banks, and ſtalk through muddy ſoil, with a perſeverance that claims at once admiration and pity.

Having received the uſual ſupply of proviſions, the next day they ſet about cooking it themſelves; being perfectly diſguſted with Chineſe filthineſs in regard to their victuals. With reſpect to rice, however, they deſerve the praiſe of cleanlineſs. They waſh it well in cold water, and drain it through a ſieve, then throw it into boiling water, and when pulpy, take it out with a ladle, and put it into another clean veſſel, where it is ſuffered to remain till it becomes quite white and dry. In this form it is uſed for bread. Indeed, boiled rice, and ſometimes millet, with vegetables, fried in oil, conſtitute the uſual food of the lower claſs. They eat regularly every four hours of the day, and ſeldom vary their humble repaſt. Their tables are about a foot high: on them a large veſſel of rice is placed, and each perſon, ſitting on the floor, helps himſelf into a ſmall baſon. The vegetables are taken up with a couple of chopſticks, and eaten with the rice. On particular days a more genial diet is uſed. A weak infuſion of tea is the uſual beverage.

They ſailed by the town of Cho-Tung-Poa on the 15th. It commands a pleaſant view, and appears to be of conſiderable extent.

Shortly after leaving Cho-Tung-Poa they reached a tributary ſtream, over which were two bridges with two arches of elegant architecture. On a gentle eminence, at no great diſtance, ſtood the palace of the mandarin. It was built of ſtone, two ſtories high, and exhibited a favourable ſpecimen of Chineſe taſte and deſign. The ambaſſador received military ſalutes wherever he paſſed.

As ſoon as they had moored for the night, the principal mandarin of Tyen-Sing arrived, with a numerous retinue, to pay his reſpects to the ambaſſador. A troop of men preceded him, who notified his approach by ſhouts. Then followed two men carrying large ſilk umbrellas, to ſhade the palanquin from the ſun, when required; the ſtandard-bearers ſucceeded; then the foot ſoldiers; the mandarin in his palanquin came next; and a troop of cavalry brought up the rear. In this ſtyle, perſons of diſtinction in China generally travel; and the higher their quality, the more numerous their attendants.

They took a walk in the evening along the banks of the river, which were exceedingly pleaſant. The corn was now almoſt ripe; agriculture appeared in its beſt form; and copious plenty ſeemed to countenance and ſupport the immenſe population they every where obſerved. On the 16th of Auguſt they arrived at the city of Tong-Tchew, where their voyage terminated. This place is diſtant only twelve miles from Pekin. Expectation was now rouſed, and ſome degree of anxiety awakened. They found an encloſure here, purpoſely erected, for the landing of the baggage and preſents. Lord Macartney and the conducting mandarin went to inſpect it. It occupied nearly the ſpace of an acre.

There was a temple allotted for the reſidence of the embaſſy, during its ſtay at this place; and the whole ſuite, of every deſcription, received an invitation from the grand mandarin to partake of a public breakfaſt, which was to be provided here next morning. Accordingly, Lord Macartney and Sir George Staunton ſet out in two palanquins, and were eſcorted to the temple by a party of Chineſe ſoldiers. The breakfaſt was compoſed of various made diſhes, meat, tea, wines, fruit, and confectionary.

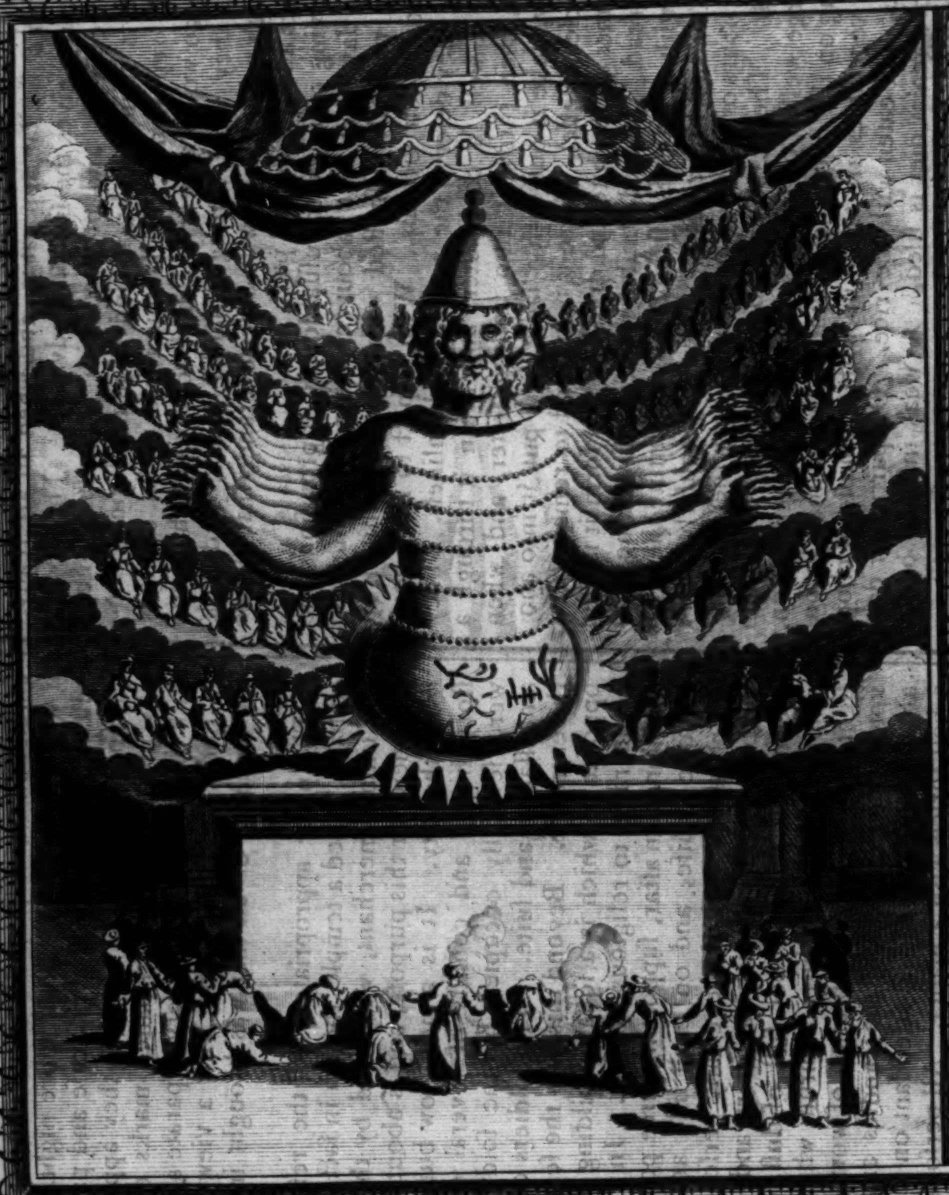
There was every exertion made to land the baggage and preſents with ſpeed and ſafety; and ſuch emulation was diſplayed in this ſervice, that moſt of it was lodged in the depot before night. Two Chineſe officers inſpected every caſe and package at the gate of the encloſure, of which they appeared to take a written account, and paſted marks correſponding with their minutes on every ſeparate article. This, as underſtood, was done with a view of certifying the emperor of all that was brought into his dominions.

The place appropriated for the reſidence of the embaſſy, called a temple, though in fact the habitation of a timber merchant, was hired by the Chineſe government for this purpoſe, and is about a mile diſtant from the city. It is a neat, low building, of one ſtory high; and conſiſts of ſeveral courts, which were ſeverally occupied by the ſoldiers, ſervants, ambaſſador, and ſuite. The ſoldiers court was next the entrance. Beyond this was the ſervants quarter, oppoſite to which is a ſquare building of one room, conſecrated to religious worſhip. In the middle of this ſtands an altar, ſupporting three porcelain ſtatues as large as life; and on each ſide are candleſticks, which are lighted whenever any perſon is paying his devotion, and regularly at morn and eve. Before the images, ſtands a pot full of duſt, into which a number of long matches are thruſt, which are likewiſe lighted during the celebration of worſhip. The devotees having finiſhed, the candles and the matches are extinguiſhed, and an attendant on the altar ſtrikes a bell thrice with a mallet. All perſons preſent then kneel before the images, inclining their heads three times, with their hands claſped, which they lift over their heads as they riſe. Such is the ſimple ceremony of the daily worſhip of the Chineſe, invariably obſerved from the humbleſt to the higheſt, from the peaſant to the emperor. This worſhip obtains the appellation of Chin-Chin-Joſh, or the ſervice of God. The meaneſt hut has its altar and its image; nor is there a junk without thoſe appendages.

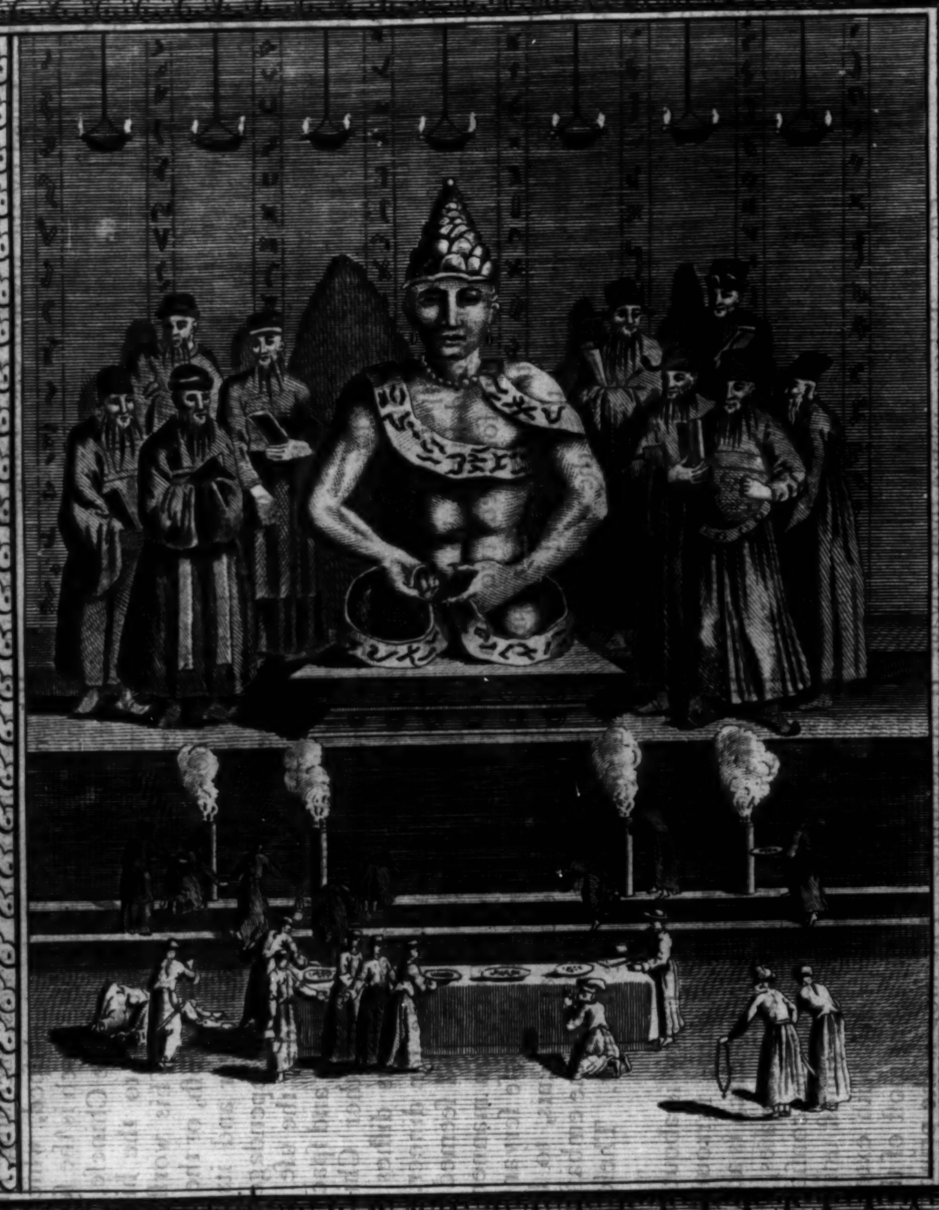
The court appropriated to the uſe of the ambaſſador and ſuite, was handſome and ſpacious, decorated with lamps, gildings, and other Chineſe embelliſhments. An hundred various diſhes were ſerved up at his excellency's table for dinner. A number of Chineſe crowded round, and ſeemed highly diverted with the diſplay of European manners, ſo oppoſite to their own. Indeed, Chineſe ſervants were diſtributed in the different apartments, to be ready at any hour of the day, to ſupply the embaſſy with the various beverages of the country. Theſe are chiefly tea, cold or warm.

The city of Tong-Tchew is about ſix miles in circumference, almoſt ſquare, ſurrounded by a high wall, to which an external ditch is added, in the moſt acceſſible ſpots. It has three gates, each well fortified, and may, altogether, be conſidered as a ſtrong place. The houſes are almoſt univerſally of wood, of one ſtory high, pretty with exterior decorations in the Chineſe ſtyle; but moſt of them are deſtitute of furniture. The ſhop is the principal room. Before this are high pillars, ſupporting an awning, covered with painting and gilding, and decorated with ſtreamers. Theſe ſtreamers indicate the commodities to be ſold; and ſometimes a wooden figure is ſuperadded, to direct to the ſpot. In the form and ſize of the houſes and ſhops there is very little variety; the ſame plan prevails throughout the city in almoſt every reſpect. The ſtreets indeed are of different breadths; but all of them have a pavement on each ſide for the accommodation of foot paſſengers.

Engraved for **PORTLOCK's** New **COLLECTION** of **VOYAGES** & **TRAVELS**.



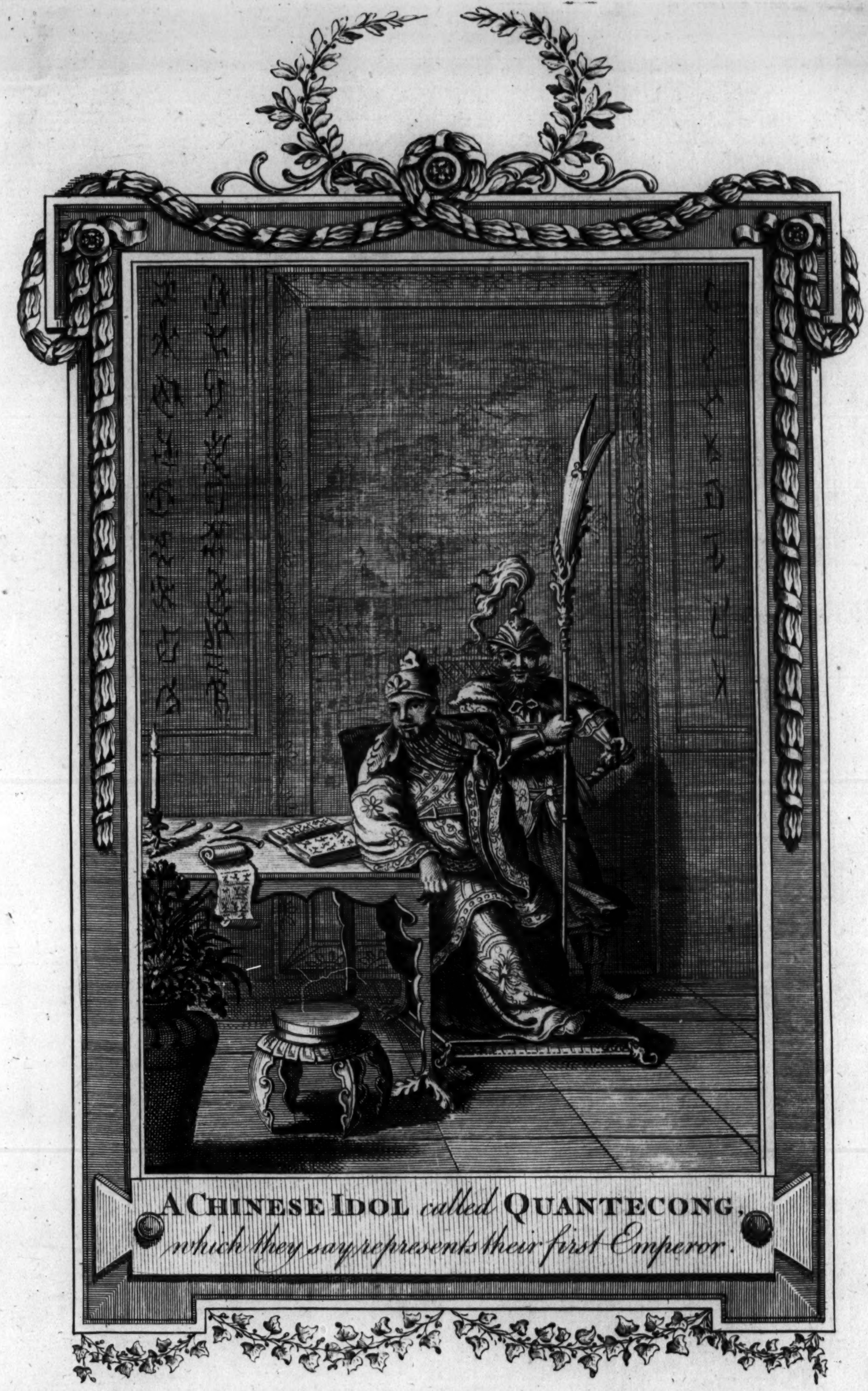
One of the forms in which **AMIDA** is worſhipped
by the People of **JAPAN** and **TARTARY**.



The Image of **CONFUTIUS** with the **SUTANGS**,
as exhibited in the College of the **CHINESE**.

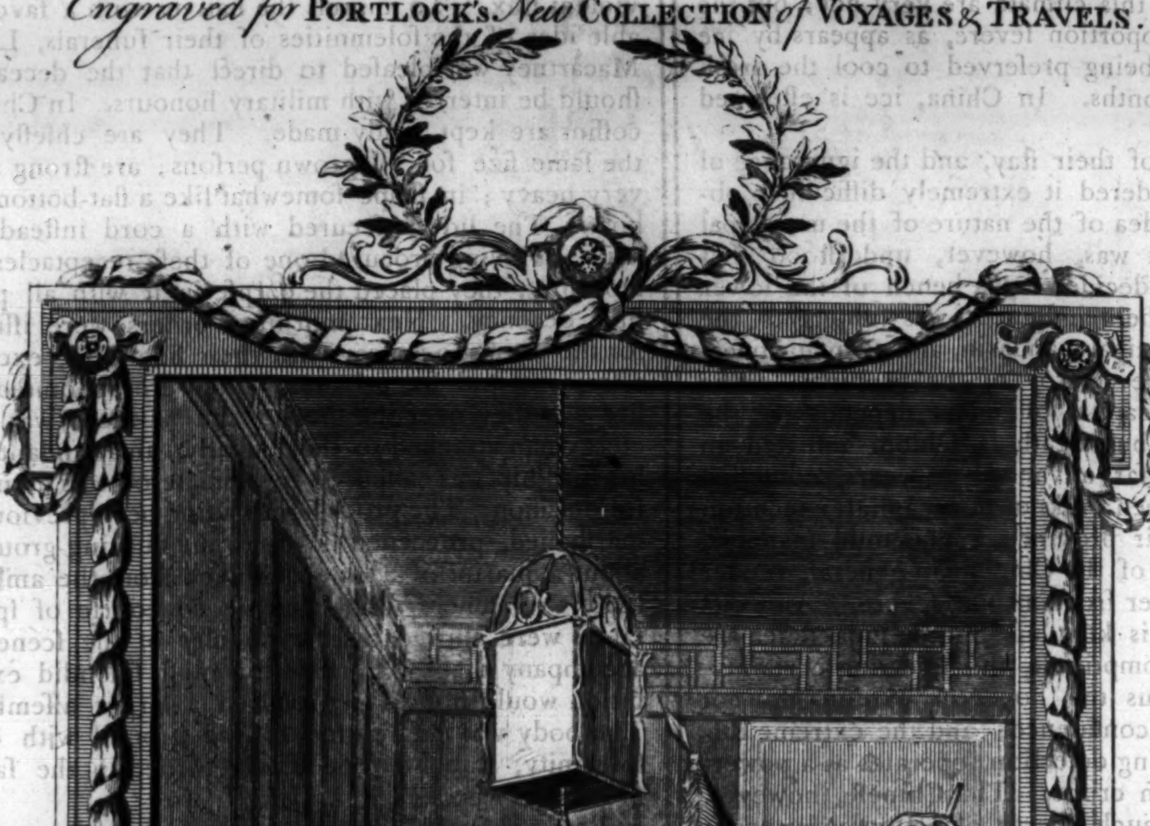
Publiſhed by Alexr. Hogg May 10.1794.

BRITISH 7 FE 90 MUSEUM



A CHINESE IDOL *called* QUANTECONG, *which they say represents their first Emperor.*

Engraved for **PORTLOCK's** *New* **COLLECTION** *of* **VOYAGES & TRAVELS.**



A FESTIVAL *annually celebrated in honour of* **CONFUCIUS,** *an eminent* **CHINESE PHILOSOPHER,** *who reviv'd the antient Mythology of that Empire.*

Published by Alexr. Hogg July 12. 1794.

ſengers. As a ſubſtitute for glaſs, a thin glazed paper is univerſally uſed in China: however, ſome of the palaces of the higher claſſes are furniſhed with ſilk to admit the light.

This city ſeems to carry on a very extenſive trade. An immenſe number of junks reſort to it. The population is computed at nearly half a million. The ſummers in this climate are very hot; but the winters are in proportion ſevere, as appears by ice of vaſt thickneſs being preſerved to cool the drink during the hot months. In China, ice is eſteemed a peculiar luxury.

The ſhortneſs of their ſtay, and the ignorance of the language, rendered it extremely difficult to obtain any correct idea of the nature of the municipal government. It was, however, underſtood that civil cauſes were decided by a bench of the lower mandarins, but their judgment was ſubject to the review of the principal mandarin, and even an appeal lay from him to the viceroy of the province. The ultimate fate of capital offenders depends on the emperor alone; but death is ſeldom inflicted in China. Perſons far advanced in years, confeſſed they had never ſeen or known a capital execution take place in their province. The mild manners, the ſober virtues, of the Chineſe in general, render puniſhments neither frequent nor ſevere. An exact police, however, is kept up, and delinquencies are expiated with promptitude and unerring certainty, if detected. Thus the hopes of pardon do not inſpire a vitious confidence; and the extreme difficulty of preventing detection, operates as a powerful diſſuaſive from crime. The Chineſe, however, ſeem to enjoy as much liberty of action as is reconcileable to the well-being of ſociety; and peace and contentment mark their days.

Our adventurers found the curioſity of the people very troubleſome during their excurſion round the city. They were frequently obliged to ſeek an aſylum in the ſhops till the gazing multitude had diſperſed. The ſecond day after their arrival, the ordnance and ſtores were examined, and a trial made of the guns in the preſence of the ambaſſador. It was found they anſwered perfectly well.

Towards the evening his excellency was viſited by the chief mandarin, accompanied by Van-Tadge-In. A band of muſic performed during his ſtay, with which the viſitors ſeemed vaſtly pleaſed. This day Mr. Eades, one of the mechanics, died by a violent flux. To impreſs the natives with a favourable idea of the ſolemnities of their funerals, Lord Macartney was pleaſed to direct that the deceaſed ſhould be interred with military honours. In China, coffins are kept ready made. They are chiefly of the ſame ſize for all grown perſons; are ſtrong and very heavy; in ſhape ſomewhat like a flat-bottomed boat. The lid is ſecured with a cord inſtead of nails. Having procured one of theſe receptacles of mortality, they placed the corpſe in it with all poſſible decency. Next morning, orders were iſſued for the troops to appear with their ſide-arms, except a ſerjeant and ſix privates, who were appointed to fire a volley over the grave; and as there was no clergyman attached to the embaſſy, an attendant on his lordſhip was called on to officiate on this mournful occaſion. The proceſſion, having been previouſly marſhalled, proceeded ſlowly to the burying-ground, about a quarter of a mile's diſtance from the ambaſſador's reſidence. An immenſe concourſe of ſpectators were allured by the novelty of the ſcene to accompany them. Perhaps the moſt ſplendid exhibition would not have procured a larger aſſembly. The body was committed to the ground with due ſolemnity, and the proceſſion returned in the ſame order as it went.

They obſerved in this country that the graves were very ſhallow. They have memorials of marble and ſtone, charged with inſcriptions. Some of the monuments here exhibited traces of no ordinary ſculpture. This receptacle of duſt was of very conſiderable extent, but without walls. Except in the vicinity of large towns, there are no public burial grounds: in the country, the deceaſed repoſe within the precincts where they lived.

C H A P. III.

Departure from Tong-Tchew—They enter a fine Champaign Country—Town of Kiyeng-Foo—Arrive at Pekin—Remarks on the City—Incident at a Butcher's Shop—Manners of the itinerant Tradeſmen—Barbers—Street Auctioneers, &c.—Of the Buildings—Women, &c.—Meet a Funeral Proceſſion—Arrive at Yeumen-Manyeumen—Deſcription of the Palace there—Diſagreeable Situation of the Embaſſy—Unpleaſant Altercations—A Pagoda—Palace belonging to the Viceroy of Canton—Viſit from the conducting Mandarin—They leave Pekin and proceed to Tartary—Village of Chin-Gibo—Town of Wheazon—Palace of Chan-Chin—City and Palace of Caungchumfoa—A prodigious Arch—Waung-Chanyeng—The wonderful Wall—A Mountain—Palace of Chaung-Shanuve—A Proof of Chineſe Induſtry—Arrive at the Palace Callachottueng—Palace of Callachotreſhangſu—Village of Quoangcho—Arrive at Jehol—A Viſit from a Mandarin—Preſents to the Ambaſſador—An Audience granted—The Reception—A ſecond Viſit to the Emperor—A Play—A Private puniſhed for Diſobedience—Thoughts of the Chineſe thereupon, &c.

PREPARATIONS were made for their departure early on the 21ſt of Auguſt: the ſoldiers were firſt marched off, and then the ſervants, for both of whom covered waggons had been provided. The gentlemen of the ſuite followed in light carts, and Lord Macartney, Sir George Staunton, and the interpreter, had each a palanquin.

When they had left Tong-Tchew, they entered a fine champaign country, through which they travelled on a road of uncommon breadth and beauty. A foot pavement, about ſix yards wide, occupied the centre, and on each ſide ſeveral carriages had room to run abreaſt. Roads of a ſimilar deſcription conduct to the capital from the principal towns of the empire; and theſe are kept in perfect repair by labourers regularly diſpoſed, and conſtantly employed.

About ſeven in the morning they reached the town of Kiyeng-Foo. This is a large and populous place, and exhibits the appearance of commercial opulence. As it was moſt probably a matter of general notoriety, when they were to enter Pekin, the concourſe of people who filled every acceſſible ſpot of view, and even crowded on them, notwithſtanding all the exertions of the mandarins, conſiderably impeded their progreſs, and exceeded what they had hitherto ſeen of Chineſe population. Yet to their mortification they obſerved, that their appearance excited rather ridicule than reſpect; and burſts of laughter accompanied every tranſient ſight of them, on account of their vile carriages.

They ſtopped nearly an hour at Kiyeng-Foo, and received ſome refreſhments of meats, tea, and fruits. Van-Tadge-In likewiſe ordered ſome joau, an unpleaſant Chineſe wine, to be diſtributed to the attendants of the embaſſy. This he did from the benevolent motive of enabling them to reſiſt the calls of appetite till another opportunity offered of gratifying them, which at preſent could not be aſcertained. Of the face of the country between this town and Pekin, it is impoſſible to ſpeak; their view was intercepted by the crowds.

On entering the ſuburbs of the metropolis, they paſſed beneath ſeveral beautiful triumphal arches. The houſes in the ſuburbs are built of wood, two ſtories high, variouſly painted in front. The ſhops make a very reſpectable appearance. The ſtreets are ſpacious, and on this occaſion they were lined with ſoldiers, without whoſe aſſiſtance it would have been impoſſible for the cavalcade to have advanced.

About two in the afternoon they reached the gate of the imperial city of Pekin, or Pit-chin, as pronounced by the natives. The walls encloſe a circumference of twelve leagues. In the centre of each angle is a grand gate or entrance, and a leſſer one at each corner of the ramparts. They are all of ſtrong ſtone arch work, and fortified by a tower of ſeven ſtories, riſing over each. The gates indeed are double: the inner is of the ſame form as the firſt, except that it has no tower; and between them are barracks for ſoldiers. Ordnance and troops are ſtationed at every gate; and though the olive branch of peace bleſſes Pekin with almoſt a perpetual ſhade, the arts of defence and prudent caution are neither neglected nor unknown. At ten every night the gates are ſhut, and till dawn of day all communication is ſuſpended between the city and the ſuburbs. During that ſpace, a ſpecial order from the principal mandarin of the city is abſolutely neceſſary to procure ingreſs or egreſs. The walls are of great height, and of maſſy thickneſs; the foundation is of ſtone, but the ſuperſtructure is wholly of brick. Outworks and batteries at ſhort intervals increaſe the ſtrength of the walls, and forts are very frequent; but except at the gates there are neither cannons nor guards.

His imperial majeſty generally reſides here from October to April; and during that period, ſoldiers patrole the walls every night. On the moſt moderate computation, from the ſouth gate to the eaſt gate is a ſpace of ten miles. This was their route through Pekin; and every ſtep preſented ſome new object to arreſt their attention. The ſtreets are ſpacious, clean, and commodious, well paved, and well regulated. An exact police is kept up; and as every public functionary, from the higheſt to the loweſt, is attentive to the diſcharge of his duty, order, neatneſs, and activity, are every where perceptible. Large bodies of ſcavengers are employed in ſeparate diſtricts in removing every ſpecies of filth; and another claſs of men ſprinkle the ſtreets, to prevent the duſt from incommoding paſſengers, or injuring the gaudy wares and elegant manufactures which every ſhop preſents for ſale. In the capital, and indeed in almoſt every town in China, the pride of architectural elegance and embelliſhment ſeems to be chiefly diſplayed in the ſhops. The tradeſmen wiſely lay out the greateſt expence in that apartment which brings them in the moſt profit; hence the ſhops in general are magnificent, while their domeſtic accommodations are neither numerous nor great. The houſes here are low, but highly embelliſhed in front, with galleries, paintings, and golden characters. Fine pillars are erected at the doors of the ſhops, ſupporting a flag, which indicates the name and profeſſion of the maſter of the houſe. Theſe flags, with the intermixture of gilding, ſculpture, and valuable commodities, which attract the eye every moment, give an idea of ſplendor, which fancy can ſcarcely enlarge. The butchers ſhops appear to be ſupplied with excellent meat. On entering one of them, to ſatisfy their curioſity in regard to the pieces of meat, and the mode of cutting it up, which laſt agrees almoſt with the European faſhion, they obſerved an earthen ſtove with a gridiron. The butcher conſtruing their ſigns into a want of meat, began cutting off and broiling ſmall ſlices, which he continued to ſupply them with till they were ſatisfied. Perhaps they might conſume about a pound; and on producing a ſtring of caxee, the only coin allowed to be current in China, he took off one conderon, as the price of his meat. Numbers were feaſting on beef and mutton in this manner.

The itinerant tradeſmen in Pekin, according to the nature of their buſineſs, either bear baſkets over their ſhoulders, or carry a kind of pack. Street barbers are very numerous. Theſe carry with them the implements of their trade, together with a chair, a ſmall ſtove, and a water baſon. Their cuſtomers ſit down in the ſtreet, where the operation is performed with diſpatch, and a mace is the general compliment to the operator. A pair of large ſteel tweezers ſnapped with force, gives the ſignal that the barber is at hand; and in a country where it is impoſſible that any perſon can entirely ſhave himſelf, if he complies with the eſtabliſhed mode, this muſt be a lucrative trade. Street auctioneers, apparently poſſeſſed of all the low eloquence and the vociferous exertions of that craft, preſent themſelves frequently on a kind of platform. The principal ſtreets being of enormous length, are ſubdivided by arched gateways, under each of which the name of the partial ſtreet is written in gilt characters. Theſe arches continually appearing, ſerve as central objects for the eye to repoſe on. The croſs ſtreets are terminated by ſmall latticed gates, ſhut during the night; while the principal ones are inceſſantly guarded by ſoldiers, who are armed with ſwords and whips, to quell any diſturbance, or to correct ſlighter irregularities.

Their chief expence ſeems to be laid out on the ſhops, and except in the variety of their embelliſhments, an uniformity prevails in the height and extent of their houſes. Few private buildings are more than one ſtory high, and theſe are chiefly of wood. The imperial palace, however, the houſes of the mandarins, and the pagodas, are diſtinguiſhed by their ſuperior elevation, as well as their magnificence. Palanquins are the faſhionable vehicles of the great, while covered carts, drawn by a horſe or a mule, ſerve for the inferior claſſes.

The Chineſe women frequently preſent themſelves from the galleries in front of their houſes, and are very fond of gazing at ſights. The females of Pekin in general poſſeſs delicate features, the effects of which they heighten by coſmetics. They alſo apply vermillion to the middle of their lips, which certainly is not an unattractive addition to their beauty. Their eyes are ſmall, but very expreſſive; and their brilliance is contraſted by a peak of black velvet or ſilk, ſet with ſtones, which depends from the forehead to the inſertion of the noſe. Their feet appear to be of the natural ſize. In fact, the women ſeem to enjoy as much liberty as is conſiſtent with the delicacy of the ſex; nor is jealouſy, as far as they could judge, a predominant paſſion among the men. On obſerving a crowd of women, our heroes addreſſed them with the word Chou-au, or beautiful, on which they gathered round them with an air of modeſt politeneſs, examined the make and texture of their clothes, and appeared to be vaſtly entertained. They did not decline a gentle ſhake of the hand, on one of their party taking leave; nor did the men who were preſent ſeem diſſatisfied with the attention which was paid to and by them.

They met a funeral proceſſion in their way to the city. The coffin was covered by a rich canopy, with ſilk curtains, highly ornamented, and hung with eſcutcheons. It was placed on a large bier, and had a great number of men to ſupport it, who advanced with a ſlow and ſolemn ſtep. A band of muſic followed, playing a kind of dirge; and after them came the friends and relations of the deceaſed, in dreſſes of black and white.

Having paſſed the eaſtern ſuburbs, they again entered a rich and beautiful country, and ſoon arrived at Yeumen-Manyeumen, one of the emperor's palaces, diſtant about five miles from the city. Here they found rather a ſcanty and indifferent refreſhment; but being much fatigued, the idea of reſt was their moſt acceptable gratification. This palace is low, both in ſituation and building. They entered it by a common ſtone gateway, guarded by ſoldiers; beyond this is a kind of parade, in the centre of which is a ſmall lodge for the accommodation of the mandarins in waiting. The body of the palace is divided into two ſquare courts, equally deſtitute of elegance and convenience; the windows of the apartments are formed of lattice, covered with glazed and painted paper; and throughout the whole range there was no other furniture than a few ordinary tables and chairs; not a bed or bedſtead was any where to be ſeen. Indeed the natives ſleep on a kind of mattreſs, and cover themſelves with a cuſhion of ſtuffed and quilted cotton. They undreſs only partially, when they retire to reſt, and increaſe the number of their coverings according to the ſeverity of the ſeaſon. Inſtead of bedſteads, they uſe a large wooden bench, raiſed about two feet from the ground, and bottomed with bamboos or wicker work; on one of theſe ſeveral perſons may ſpread their mattreſſes. Every thing about this reſidence evinced that it had been long deſerted or neglected; and indeed a more unpromiſing ſituation for a royal reſidence could no where be found. The ſituation was naturally ſwampy, and two ponds of ſtagnant water communicated their mephitic odours to every apartment. Some ſmall graſs fields belong to the place; but theſe too were an exception to the general cultivated appearance of the country. In ſhort, centipedes, ſcorpions, and muſquetos, infeſted every part of this palace; and for ſuch inhabitants it was ſolely adapted.

Diſagreeable as the internal ſtate of their reſidence was, they were ſtill cut off from all external communication. Soldiers and mandarins guarded every avenue; and the embaſſy could be conſidered in no other light than as priſoners of ſtate. His excellency the ambaſſador juſtly conceiving a diſguſt at a ſituation ſo unfavourable to health or accommodation, as well as derogatory to his perſonal dignity and the honour of his country, made a ſerious remonſtrance on the occaſion. His application was at laſt productive of a change of reſidence; it was not, however, till the 26th that they were ſuffered to quit this melancholy dwelling.

Previous to this, ſeveral unpleaſant altercations took place between the members of the embaſſy and the ſoldiers on guard. The former could ill brook the diſgraceful reſtraints laid on them by confinement within the walls of their priſon; and the latter pertinaciouſly oppoſed every attempt at greater liberty. Theſe contentions were not unfrequent, and perhaps were productive of future ill conſequences to the intereſts of the miſſion.

The pleaſure at the proſpect of leaving this wretched place was ſo great, that every neceſſary preparation was made for the purpoſe in the ſhorteſt poſſible ſpace of time. Some of the preſents and the more delicate articles of art or manufacture were left here, leſt they ſhould be injured by frequent removal. The proceſſion ſet out on its return to Pekin with the ſame accommodations as it came; and the arrangements having been made more perfectly than before, they arrived without any accident or confuſion, at the north gate of Pekin about one in the afternoon of the 26th of Auguſt. This was the counter-gate to what they had entered in their former proceſſion through Pekin, and preſented new views of ſtreets and buildings.

A pagoda attracted their notice in their progreſs, being the firſt they had found an opportunity of obſerving. It ſtood in the centre of a beautiful garden; is ſquare, ſtone built, and gradually diminiſhes from the bottom till it terminates in a ſphere. It riſes to the height of ſeven ſtories, and has a gallery near the top, encompaſſed by a rail.

Their return no doubt being unexpected, they paſſed with facility through the ſtreets, and ſoon arrived at a princely palace, belonging to the viceroy of Canton, who it ſeems was a ſtate priſoner here for ſome miſconduct in office. This palace conſiſts of twelve large and ſix ſmaller courts: it is built of a grey coloured brick, of moſt elegant workmanſhip, but except two detached edifices, which were occupied by Lord Macartney and the ſecretary to the embaſſy, the palace was only one ſtory high, though this was of unuſual elevation.

Every thing without and within convinced them they now lodged in a palace: the embelliſhments were in the firſt ſtyle of Chineſe taſte; and in regard to the beauty of colours and the brilliant effect of houſe painting, no nation can enter into competition with this. The gloſſy effect of japan is every where perceptible, without the invention of varniſh; for they were convinced that the beauty produced aroſe from ſome ingredients in the original compoſition. The apartments were very ſpacious, and hung with the moſt elegant paper, enriched with gilding. Lord Macartney's reſidence was ſingularly ſuperb, and moreover had an elegant private theatre belonging to it; and in a word, all ranks and deſcriptions were accommodated in a ſtyle that gave ſatisfaction, and deſerved acknowledgment. Here, however, the furniture was neither valuable nor in any quantity. Chairs and tables, a few platforms, covered with bamboo matting and carpets, were the only moveables in a palace whoſe decorations, both external and internal, would not have diſgraced the reſidence of the Emperor himſelf. Under the floor, in each of the principal apartments, is a ſtove, with a circular tube, which conveys warm air into every part of the room above. They ſaw no chimnies in this country, and underſtood that ſtoves ſupplied with charcoal were the univerſal cuſtom.

Their tables conſiſted of diſhes in the beſt ſtyle of Chineſe living; but more particularly ſtews and haſhes than ſolid joints. In this reſpect, however, they had no reaſon to complain; but the ſame vigilance was employed to keep them within the limits of their reſidence as ever; and on no pretence could they paſs the gates, or even ſcale the walls, which were conſtantly guarded by a military force.

Notwithſtanding they wiſhed that their continuance in this place might be of no long duration, as it was impoſſible to make any progreſs in the grand object of their miſſion till they had an interview with the emperor, yet every arrangement was made to add to the dignity of the embaſſy, or promote its convenience. Having ſettled this buſineſs, they waited with anxious expectation the return of a mandarin, who had been diſpatched to learn his Imperial majeſty's pleaſure, whether they ſhould proceed to Tartary, where he was then reſident, or wait till the period of his uſual return to Pekin.

Early on the 28th of Auguſt, the conducting mandarin came to acquaint the ambaſſador that it was his Imperial majeſty's pleaſure to receive him in Tartary: thereupon a new arrangement took place. The principal gentlemen belonging to the embaſſy were ſelected to accompany his excellency into Tartary; ſeveral of the ſcientific gentlemen, mechanics, and ſick, were to remain in charge of the baggage and preſents. The guards, muſicians, and ſervants, received orders to hold themſelves in readineſs, with only indiſpenſible neceſſaries; and even the gentlemen of the ſuite were to be as little incumbered as poſſible. They were to carry with them only the uniform of the embaſſy and a common ſuit of clothes: the muſicians and ſervants were to be dreſſed out in a ſuit of ſtate liveries, which, on being unpacked, it was evident that this was not their firſt appearance in public; ſeveral of the dreſſes bearing the names of their former wearers, and from ſome circumſtances that they diſcovered, had been made up for the ſervants of ſome former ambaſſador. With theſe habiliments, ſuch as they were, every man fitted himſelf out in the beſt manner he could. The ambaſſador and Sir George Staunton were to travel in an old chaiſe belonging to the latter, which on being unpacked, had none of that gaudy appearance which diſtinguiſhed the works of art in this country; and ſome of them did not heſitate to expreſs their diſapprobation of its external appearance. Such of the ſuite as preferred riding on horſeback were to be accommodated on giving in their names; and carts were to be provided for the reſt. The baggage and preſents which were to accompany them having been previouſly ſent off, the ambaſſador's carriage was to be driven by a corporal of infantry, who fortunately had once been a poſtillion, and a light horſeman, who was to act as his aſſiſtant. A man who has learned two trades is frequently uſeful to himſelf and to others: this humble corporal was the only man who could have headed the ambaſſador. He and his aſſiſtant were permitted to exerciſe the horſes in the chaiſe for a ſhort time through the ſtreets of Pekin, under a guard of mandarins and ſoldiers; and ſuch crowds aſſembled to ſee this extraordinary ſpectacle, that authority was abſolutely neceſſary to reſtrain the conſequent moleſtations.

Early on the 2d of September, a number of horſes having been already brought to the palace, and the riders having made a ſelection, they began their march, but meeting with frequent interruption, it was ſome time before they could paſs the city gate. This being effected, they ſoon drove through the ſuburbs, and entered a rich and beautiful country by a road of great width, but without any central pavement. After travelling about ſix miles they reached the village of Chin-Giho, where they were allowed the morning refreſhments.

In their route they paſſed a great number of populous villages; and took up their firſt night's lodging at one of the Emperor's palaces, named Nanſhighee. They were now furniſhed every day with the beſt accommodations, and received an allowance of ſamtchoo and Chineſe wine; the former is a ſpirit diſtilled from rice and millet, and may deſerve the appellation of Chineſe gin.

The diſtance from Pekin to Jehol, whither they were bound, is one hundred and ſixty miles, which was divided into ſeven days journies, that they might have the advantage of ſleeping in an imperial reſidence every night. This flattering mark of diſtinction is the higheſt it ſeems that can be paid; and is never conferred even on the firſt mandarins. The palace where they paſſed the firſt night had but little to demand attention, either in its external appearance or its internal decorations. It was environed by a ſpacious garden; but to this they were denied acceſs.

About four the next morning they reſumed their journey, and took their firſt refreſhment at the town of Wheazon, a place of ſome conſequence. From thence they proceeded through duſty roads, beneath a burning ſun, till they reached the palace of Chan-Chin, where they halted for the night. This is a ſpacious ſtructure, covering a great extent of ground, and is adorned with gardens and plantations. The ſurrounding country is encloſed; and in point of fertility is equal to any they had ſeen: it fed immenſe herds of cattle. The ſheep here are ſmall, but very fat; they have a thick ſhort tail weighing ſeveral pounds.

The next morning as they proceeded on their journey, the diſtant country aſſumed a mountainous aſpect; fertility was ſenſibly diminiſhed, and the villages became more thin. About noon they ſaw the city of Caungchumfoa. It ſeems to be a large place, and is walled in the manner of Pekin. The palace of Caungchumfoa received them at an early hour of the afternoon, after the moſt fatiguing and diſagreeable journey they had hitherto experienced.

This palace has little to diſtinguiſh it from thoſe they had already occupied, and the treatment which the ambaſſador and his attendants received, correſponded in every reſpect with what they had undergone before, in their journey to and from Pekin. It is almoſt unneceſſary to ſay, that however unfavourable appearances might be, moſt of them gladly accepted of whatever was prepared for their refreſhment; and it will be doubted by none, that nothing gave them greater ſatisfaction than when their conductor informed them that they might retire to the different apartments allotted for their repoſe.

Early the next morning they were ſummoned together, and ſoon after departed. The roads now became indifferent, and the country diſplayed a mountainous appearance.

At a ſmall diſtance from Waung-Chanyeng, they paſſed a prodigious arch, which united two hills, with a parapet of maſſy ſtrength on both ſides. The further hill is crowned with a fort, whoſe ramparts ſtretch to a very great diſtance. Beneath this fort is a ponderous arch-way conducting down the hill, ſo ſteep as to render travelling dangerous. In a romantic valley at the bottom, appears the town of Waung-Chanyeng: it is irregularly built, about a mile in length, and diſplays a conſiderable ſhare of commerce and opulence. At the extremity of this town a temporary triumphal arch was erected to the honour of the embaſſy, finely ornamented with ſilk ſtreamers. Here the ambaſſador received a ſalute from ſome guns, and paſſed between a double line of ſoldiers, who diſplayed a martial appearance and military parade beyond what they had hitherto witneſſed in China. They were regularly drawn up in companies; and each regiment was diſtinguiſhed by a different dreſs. They all wore a kind of coat of mail; and had their head and ſhoulders covered with ſteel helmets. Their armour was matchlocks, ſabres, ſpears, lances, and bows and arrows, together with ſome weapons of which they knew not the appropriate name. Almoſt every diviſion varied in its armour as well as its dreſs.

Now they approached one of the wonders of the world, the wall that ſeparates China from Tartary, the moſt ſtupendous work every produced by man. In the vicinity are cantonments for an army of conſiderable magnitude; at the extremity of which is a maſſy gateway of ſtone, defended by three iron doors, which guard the paſs between countries formerly diſtinct. This wall, the pride of human labour, is ſuppoſed to be upwards of twelve hundred miles in length: its height varies according to the circumſtances of the ſurface. Where one of them contrived to get to the top, it was upwards of thirty feet high, and about twenty-four broad. The foundation is laid on large ſquare ſtones; the ſuperſtructure is brick; the centre is a kind of mortar, covered with flag ſtones. A parapet of no ordinary ſtrength runs on each ſide of an embattled wall.

The country on the other ſide aſſumed a new appearance; even the climate was changed. Inſtead of cultivated champain, the abodes of wealth, and the buſtle of commerce, they now encountered barren waſtes, where art has not yet diſplayed her magic powers.

About ſeven miles from the great wall they came to a mountain, which exhibited an additional proof of the indefatigable labours of the Chineſe in works of public utility. A road, thirty feet wide, is cut through the ſolid rock; and to leſſen the declivity, it is ſunk no leſs than an hundred feet from the ſummit of the mountain. Yet ſtill the aſcent has a tremendous appearance; and without this vaſt labour, it could not have been ſurmounted by man. At a moderate diſtance, on the other ſide of this ſteep mountain, ſtands the palace of Chaung-Shanuve. It conſiſts, like the reſt, of a number of courts, ſurrounded by a high wall. In the palaces, at leaſt in this country, picturſeque beauty is either unknown or diſregarded. No diſtant proſpects glad the eye: nature, though frequently enchanting, is excluded from the ſight. Here a conſiderable number of the emperor's ladies are lodged, guarded by eunuchs. Their apartments of courſe were diſtinct; but ſeveral of them were ſeen peeping over the partition that ſeparated their apartments from the embaſſy. A few truſty mandarins have the ſuperintendence of this ſeraglio. This place is ſurrounded with extenſive gardens: the road from Chaung-Shanuve was every where broken and mountainous. Yet ſterile as it now appeared, this evidently did not proceed from any want of activity from the natives. Every ſpot capable of cultivation was covered with corn; and in one place they ſaw ſeveral patches of tillage where the declivity ſeemed to be wholly inacceſſible. This excited their admiration; but judge their ſurpriſe when they obſerved a peaſant labouring on one of them, where they at firſt could not conceive how he was capable of ſtanding. This poor man, whoſe hut was erected at the bottom of the precipice, let himſelf down from its top by a cord tied round his middle; depending on the ſtrength of this, he laboured for his daily fare, amid continual danger: a proof at once of Chineſe induſtry and fortitude.

They arrived before noon at the palace of Callachottueng, where they ſpent the remainder of the day. This palace ſtands between two lofty hills; it appears of more modern erection, but in ſtyle and form reſembles thoſe they had already ſeen.

As they were now hear the termination of their journey, the ambaſſador gave orders to practiſe the proceſſion and ceremonies with which they were to appear before the imperial court. His excellency was pleaſed to approve of the rehearſal; during the performance of which the band played the favourite march, known by the appellation of the Duke of York's.

September 7, they continued their route over a hilly country, where the air was piercingly cold. They paſſed ſeveral well-peopled villages, but neither the country nor the people were the ſame as on the other ſide of the Chineſe wall.

They reached the palace of Callachotreſhangſu early in the afternoon: in extent and form it was equal to any they had lately ſeen; but they found it tenanted only by ſquirrels which bounded round the courts and inhabited the rooms.

September 8, they arrived at one of the emperor's pagodas, where they found an abundant ſupply of proviſions. Here they made a ſhort ſtay to equip themſelves for their progreſs.

They arrived next at the village of Quoangcho, within a mile of Jehol, the imperial reſidence. Here they were marſhalled, and proceeded amid an immenſe concourſe of ſpectators, with all the parade that circumſtances would allow. The military made a moſt reſpectable ſhew; and the gentlemen of the ſuite, it may be reaſonably ſuppoſed, were not forgetful of their dignity, and ſtrove to ſupport it by every external diſplay; but the generality were a motley groupe, without even the advantage of a tolerable uniformity in dreſs or appearance. The whole certainly could not convey any extraordinary ideas of the ſplendour or power of the country from which they came. The novelty of the ſcene might poſſibly amuſe the Chineſe, but its grandeur could make no impreſſion. As their progreſs was ſlow, they did not reach Jehol until ten in the morning, and drew up before the palace provided for the reception of the embaſſy. The Britiſh military formed a line for the ambaſſador as he paſſed; but not a mandarin was in waiting to receive him: and they took poſſeſſion of the palace without the welcome of an addreſs. Indeed it was reported that the grand choulaa, or miniſter of ſtate, would meet the ambaſſador, and eſcort him into Jehol; and after their arrival, they were kept for ſome hours in anxious expectation of receiving this honour; but at laſt dinner being ſerved up, all their hopes of ſeeing him that day terminated.

They now occupied a palace ſituated on the declivity of a hill. The entrance was by a wooden gateway, which conducts to a large court. Each ſide of this court has a long gallery, ſupported by wooden pillars, and roofed with black gloſſy tiles. That on the left was converted into a kitchen, the other ſerved for the ſoldiers to exerciſe in. At the upper end was another gallery of more elegance, from which a door opens into a further court, the principal apartments of which were appropriated for the uſe of the ambaſſador and Sir George Staunton, the reſt for the military gentlemen attached to them: a third court was occupied by the gentlemen of the ſuite, the muſicians, ſervants, and mechanics. The whole fabric is ſurrounded by a high wall; but owing to the declivity of the ſituation, the view was not entirely obſtructed. They had plenty within the walls, but no one had liberty of egreſs.

On the ſecond day after their arrival, the ambaſſador received a viſit from a mandarin, with a numerous retinue. He remained nearly an hour in conference with his excellency and Sir George Staunton. During his ſtay, his attendants amuſed themſelves in examining the dreſs of the Engliſh ſervants; and on rubbing the lace on their clothes with a ſtone, to aſcertain its quality, ſmiled when they found it leſs valuable than brilliant. What paſſed at this conference could not be generally known; but a ſpirit of conjecture was conjured up among the attendants on the embaſſy, and the preſages they formed were by no means auſpicious.

This day, inſtead of that profuſion which had hitherto crowned their board, the lower claſſes in the embaſſy found ſcarcely enough at dinner to ſatiſfy one half of them. They had, however, been previouſly inſtructed, though for what reaſon cannot be ſaid, that if their proviſions ſhould be defective in quantity or in quality, they were to intimate the grievance to his excellency alone, and leave them untouched. According to theſe inſtructions the meat was left untouched; but his excellency having remonſtrated to the mandarin by means of his interpreter, in a few minutes every table was ſerved with hot diſhes, in the uſual variety and profuſion. Why this entertainment, which muſt have been nearly ready, was thus withheld, and ſo ſpeedily produced, ſerved as an enigma to exerciſe their ingenuity, but which they could never ſolve.

On the ſucceeding day, the preſents brought from Pekin were unpacked; they conſiſted of a great number of pieces of coarſe cloth, principally black and blue, two teleſcopes, two air-guns, two richly mounted fowling-pieces, two pair of ſaddle piſtols, two boxes of Iriſh tabbinets, two large boxes of Britiſh carpeting, and two moſt elegant ſaddles with furniture complete. Centinels were placed to guard theſe ſpecimens of Britiſh art and manufacture, till the imperial pleaſure reſpecting them ſhould be known, which was afterwards notified by the attendant mandarin.

September 12, a mandarin of the firſt order, came to acquaint the ambaſſador, that his imperial majeſty would give him an audience on the 14th. This intelligence diffuſed hope and ſpirits through the whole embaſſy, and orders were immediately iſſued that the ſuite ſhould be ready on the morning of the day appointed, to accompany his excellency to the imperial palace. The attendants were to appear in their beſt liveries; and the ſoldiers and ſervants, after having eſcorted the ambaſſador, were to return immediately to their quarters; his excellency informing them, that he had reaſon to hope the reſtrictions impoſed on them, which were ſo irkſome to all, would, by his endeavours, be in a few days removed.

Lord Macartney was ſplendidly dreſt, in mulberry colour velvet, with his diamond ſtar and ribband, and over the whole he wore the full habit of the order of the Bath. Sir George Staunton was in a full court dreſs, over which he wore the gown and hood of a doctor of laws, with the academical cap. As the morning was very dark, a conſiderable confuſion aroſe in the intended order of the cavalcade: about five o'clock the ambaſſador alighted from his palanquin, amid an immenſe number of the populace. Sir George and Mr. Staunton ſupported his train.

As it was day-light when they returned, they had a view of the city. It is large and populous, but very irregularly built; the houſes are low, and chiefly of wood: except in the quarter contigious to the imperial palace, none of the ſtreets are paved. The principal ſupport of this place ſeems to be derived from the emperor's partiality for it. No river connects it with remote ſituations; the ſplendid expence of a court, however, renders it rich and buſy. The ſurrounding country, though not comparable to China, is in the beſt ſtate of Tartary cultivation.

As their viſit was a meer matter of form and preſentation, his excellency was not detained long: he returned before noon. The emperor, it is ſaid, received the credentials with all the dignity of form. He appeared to be vaſtly ſtruck with the manners and abilities of Mr. Staunton, to whom he preſented, with his own hands, a beautiful fan, and ſome embroidered purſes.

Some ſhort time after the ambaſſador's return, a number of valuable preſents were received from court, conſiſting of velvets, ſilks, and purſes, and ſome of the fineſt tea of the country, made up into ſolid cakes of about five pounds each. Except ſuch as were addreſſed for their Britannic majeſties, theſe preſents were proportionably divided among the gentlemen of the ſuite.

On the 15th, the ambaſſador, attended only by his ſuite, paid a ſecond viſit to the emperor, in order, as they underſtood, to attempt to open the wiſhed-for negotiation. On this occaſion, he ſtopped ſeveral hours. The interpreter gave a very favourable report of the aſpect of the negotiation, as far as it had advanced; and their hopes for its ſucceſs ſeemed to derive ſome confirmation from a ſecond cargo of preſents, conſiſting of ſilks as before, Chineſe lamps, and valuable porcelain; to theſe were added a number of calibaſh boxes of the moſt exquiſite fabric. A diſtribution was made as before; and this evening was ſpent in mirth and feſtivity, ariſing from the moſt ſanguine hopes of ſucceſs.

On the 16th, ſeveral mandarins viſited the ambaſſador, and invited him and the whole embaſſy to attend the anniverſary of the emperor's birth-day at court, on the morrow. Accordingly, his excellency ſet out very early in the morning, and the whole cavalcade reached the Imperial palace about four o'clock.

The emperor's palace commands an elevated ſituation and extenſive views: it contains a numerous range of courts, none of which, however, appear very magnificent, though ſome of them are highly decorated with painting and gilding. The gardens ſurround it for ſeveral miles; theſe are bounded by a wall thirty feet high. In the front of the palace is a fine lawn, with a lake in the centre. On the emperor's approach, the mandarins in waiting proſtrated themſelves, or it would have been impoſſible to have diſtinguiſhed his palanquin from one of theirs. No external pomp or badge of dignity, marked his dreſs or equipage. It is a favourite maxim of his government to check ſuperfluous expence, and to encourage frugality and induſtry in every department of his government. Actuated by the ſame wiſe and patriotic principle, he has forbid any public rejoicings on his birth-day, in this leſs flouriſhing part of his empire; but ſuch unfeigned homage is paid to his dignified and amiable character, that except in his immediate preſence, and under his perſonal view, all ranks and deſcriptions of men, throughout his extenſive dominions, give a looſe to joy on this auſpicious day. He had now completed the 85th year of his age, and the 57th of his reign. In the palanquin they could only obſerve his countenance, which was animated, and little expreſſive of his advanced years; his eyes were dark and piercing; and his whole air bore the impreſſion of the conſcious dignity of virtue rather than of ſtate and parentage.

Their return was followed by a repetition of the ſame kind of preſents, varied in pattern and colour. A profuſion of fruits and confectionary accompanied thoſe expreſſions of imperial munificence. In the confectionary art, the Chineſe ſeem capable of giving a leſſon to the moſt eminent in that line among the Europeans.

On the 18th, the ambaſſador went in a more private manner to have an audience of leave, as the court was ſoon to return to Pekin. At the ſame time, he tranſacted certain official buſineſs, but the emperor declined entering into any written treaty with Great-Britain, or indeed with any nation, as being contrary to ancient uſage; though, at the ſame time, he expreſſed the higheſt reſpect for the Britiſh nation and the king: he was ſtrongly diſpoſed to give them a preference in all commercial concerns; yet he would not ſacrifice the intereſts of his own people to any foreign connections, and would only continue his avowed partiality for the Engliſh, while he found they conducted themſelves in their commercial intercourſe in ſuch a manner as to deſerve it. Furthermore, to evince his high perſonal regard for the king of Great-Britain, he delivered to the ambaſſador with his own hand, a box of great value, containing the miniatures of all the preceding emperors, with a ſhort character of each in verſe, written by themſelves, accompanied with an addreſs to the following purport:

“Deliver this caſket to the king your maſter, and tell him from me, that ſmall as the preſent may appear, it is the moſt valuable I have to beſtow, or my empire can furniſh. It has been tranſmitted to me through a long line of anceſtors; and I had reſerved it as the laſt token of affection I had to bequeath to my ſon and heir, as a tablet of the virtues of his progenitors, which I ſhould hope he had only to peruſe to be induced to imitate; and to make it, as they had done, the grand object of his life to exalt the imperial honour, and advance the happineſs of his people.”

His excellency, after dinner, returned with his whole ſuite and attendants, to ſee a play performed in the Imperial palace, on a temporary ſtage. The dramatic entertainments conſiſted of mock battles, vaulting, tumbling, rope-dancing, and other gymnaſtic amuſements, which would have done no diſcredit to any performers. A variety of deceptions concluded the theatrical fete. One of which was the exhibition of a large bowl, in every poſſible poſition; which was immediately placed on the ſtage bottom upwards, and on being lifted up again, diſcovered a large rabbit, which eſcaped from the performer by taking refuge among the audience. The ſpectators in general, including many Europeans, were totally at a loſs to account for this deception; but to others it was no novelty, having frequently ſeen the ſame trick exhibited by the jugglers of Europe. Other ſimilar tricks, very dextrouſly performed, amuſed them by their novelty and apparent difficulty. The theatre, being well filled with perſons of diſtinction, made a ſplendid appearance.

On the 19th, pipes and tobacco, ſufficient to ſupply every individual belonging to the embaſſy, were received; and ſeveral mandarins came to pay their reſpects to the ambaſſador. In theſe viſits they obſerved how little regard is paid to external appearance in China. The mandarins never varied their habits; and even the court-dreſſes here differ very little from the ordinary habiliments. It may be ſaid to conſiſt of a looſe robe, falling half way down the leg, and drawn round the neck with ribbands. Over the breaſt is a piece of embroidery, about five inches ſquare, finiſhed in gold, or ſilk of various colours, with an exact counterpart on the back; which badges denote the rank of the wearer. The ſaſh, which at other times is uſually worn round the waiſt, is diſpenſed with at court.

His excellency, on their approaching the coaſt of China, had communicated the general orders, by which the conduct of the embaſſy was to be regulated: theſe ſeemed to be dictated by good ſenſe, and a regard to the ſucceſsful proſecution of the grand objects in view. His lordſhip's obſervations and injunctions, however, delivered at the ſame time, did not ſeem to accord with the ſpirit of liberty and perſonal ſecurity, which accompanies an Engliſhman wherever he is placed; and it is to be feared they gave no very favourable idea of the Britiſh character to thoſe on whom it was wiſhed to impreſs the higheſt. Hitherto they had not been attempted to be carried into execution; and it was generally believed, that a perſon of ſome rank in the embaſſy never approved of their tenor; but now it was intimated, that all the ſervants of the ambaſſador were to conſider themſelves as under martial law, and that they would be puniſhed according to its regulations, in any caſe of diſobedience or neglect. It is true, that the experiment was never made in regard to the civil ſervants of the embaſſy; but the alarm which this information gave was felt with ſecret indignation.

There was among theſe orders an expreſs injunction, forbidding any traffic with the natives. This, it was believed, was punctually obſerved, as far as gain was concerned; but a private in the infantry, compoſing part of the ambaſſador's guard, having been reported to have procured a ſmall quantity of ſamtchoo by the aſſiſtance of a Chineſe ſoldier, he was immediately confined; and being brought to a court-martial, of which a corporal was preſident, he was ſentenced to receive ſixty laſhes. This ſentence being approved by the commanding officer, the Britiſh ſoldiers were drawn up in form, in the outer court of the palace where they reſided, and the poor culprit being faſtened to one of the pillars of the great portico, without any mitigation, received the puniſhment. The abhorrence excited in the breaſts of the Chineſe, at a conduct which appeared cruel to them, was demonſtrably proved by their words and looks; they expreſſed their aſtoniſhment, that a people profeſſing the mildeſt, the moſt benevolent religion on earth, as they wiſhed to have it believed, could be guilty of ſuch flagrant inattention to its merciful dictates. The commander of the Lion went a ſtep further towards alienating the affections of the Chineſe from our heroes. When that ſhip lay at Chuſan, a native brought a bottle of ſamtchoo on board, intending to exchange it for ſome European article. His deſign being diſcovered, the captain ordered him to be ſeized and puniſhed with twelve laſhes, in the preſence of numbers of his countrymen; though a complaint preferred to a mandarin would have obtained the ſatisfaction neceſſary, and ſaved the appearance of deſpotiſm. Indeed, the mild manners of the Chineſe revolt at the public exhibition of puniſhments: they are at a loſs to reconcile European behaviour with European profeſſions. Their faith and practice, in almoſt every inſtance, appear to them to be oppoſite; in ſhort, their prejudices, inſtead of decreaſing on better acquaintance, were, through freſh circumſtances, hourly increaſing.

CHAP. IV.

Departure from Jehol—Account of two extraordinary Rocks—Loſe an Artillery-Man—Conſequent Apprehenſions—Arrival at Pekin—An Hoſpital eſtabliſhed for the Sick—Imperial Palace in Pekin--The Emperor viſits the Palace of Yeumen-Manyeumen—Deſcription of him—Mutual Preſents—A ſudden Order from the Emperor—Conjectures reſpecting their unexpected Mandate—Their abrupt Departure from Pekin—Leave the Channel of the River and enter an expenſive Canal—Remarks—A lofty Pagoda—Anchor—Arrive at Kord-Chuaung—Anchor at Lee-Yaungod—Paſs the City Kaunghoo—Yellow River—Chun-Foong—Kiangfou, &c. &c.—An unexpected Meander--A Brick-Kiln—Deſcription of the Chineſe Horſes, &c.—Voyage the Yellow and Green Rivers—Anchor at Vang-on-Chean.

AFTER a ſtate impriſonment of fourteen days (for the liberty they had been encouraged to expect was never granted) they left Jehol September 21, and proceeded to Pekin.

There are two extraordinary rocks in the vicinity of Jehol. One is an immenſe pillar of ſtone, about an hundred feet high, ſmall at the baſe, and gradually ſpreading towards the top, from ſeveral parts of which iſſue ſtreams of the pureſt water. This lofty object is ſituated on the pinnacle of a mountain, which adds to its ſublime effect. The upper part of this rock is rather flat, and appears to be clothed with verdure and ſhrubs; but it is totally inacceſſible. Some convulſion of nature muſt certainly have placed it here; and it is impoſſible to view it from the valley below without the ſtrongeſt emotions of wonder and fear. The Chineſe give it the name of Panſuiaſhaung; and juſtly eſteem it as one of the firſt natural curioſities of their country. The other is rather a cluſter of rocks, whoſe greateſt height is nearly two hundred feet; theſe ſtand likewiſe on the ſummit of a mountain; and from one point of view, appear one ſolid maſs.

Shortly after they left Jehol, they paſſed the emperor's pagoda, where they ſaw the tributary king of Cochin-China's ambaſſador and ſuite, advancing with the annual acknowledgment. They ſlept at the Imperial palace of Callachottueng, where they loſt an artillery-man of the bloody flux; of which alarming malady ſeveral others among the military were ill. The attendant mandarin expreſſed great apprehenſion, leſt the emperor ſhould hear of this circumſtance, and an alarm of contagious diſorders be given him.

They received intelligence the next morning that the emperor had left Jehol, and that it would be neceſſary to advance two ſtages this day in order that the palaces might be at liberty to accommodate his majeſty's attendants.

As they purſued the ſame route they had done before, their journey to Pekin was now deſtitute of novelty. They arrived there on the afternoon of the 26th, and took up their reſidence in the palace which had been appropriated for their uſe before they ſet out for Jehol. The arrangements which had been made, during the ambaſſador's abſence, ſeemed to meet his entire approbation; and as their ſtay here, at this period, was likely to be of ſome continuance, every preparation and proviſion was made for the domeſtic comfort of the eſtabliſhment, and the ſplendour of the embaſſy. The ſtate canopy was erected in the principal room of the ambaſſador's apartments. It was made of flowered crimſon ſilk, and fringed with gold: the back diſplayed the arms of Great-Britain; under its cover five chairs of ſtate were placed; the centre one being elevated above the reſt for the ambaſſador. At the other end of the apartment were hung whole length portraits of their Britannic majeſties. The whole formed an appearance for an audience-chamber, equal to the conſequence of the country repreſented.

On the 28th, the arrival of the emperor was announced by a grand diſcharge of artillery, and the next day his excellency was viſited by ſeveral mandarins.

About this time ſickneſs prevailed ſo much among the ſoldiers, attached to the embaſſy, that it was found expedient to eſtabliſh an hoſpital in ſome vacant buildings within the precincts of the palace in which they reſided, for their reception and more ſpeedy recovery.

October the 1ſt, a mandarin requeſted, in the name of the emperor, that the ordnance preſents might be ſent to the palace of Yeumen-Manyeumen, where the Chineſe themſelves were to prove and examine them. The chariots and other preſents were alſo removed to the ſame place; and on the 2d, the ambaſſador received a formal invitation to wait on the emperor on the morrow. His excellency went in a private manner, and tranſacted buſineſs with the officers of ſtate. The conference laſted for two hours.

The imperial palace in Pekin ſtands in the middle of the city, and is ſurrounded by a very high wall. It is ſaid to occupy a circumference of about ſeven miles, containing gardens both for pleaſure and utility, repleniſhed with all that is rare in art or nature. The entrance is by a ſtrong ſtone arched way; the range of buildings fronting it is three ſtories high, and much embelliſhed with galleries, gilding, and painting; the roof is covered with ſhining tiles, of a yellow colour; the walls are variouſly painted and decorated. A large body of ſoldiers guard the gate; and ſeveral mandarins of the firſt claſs are in conſtant waiting.

His excellency now ſettled the order and diſpoſition of the tables for the different departments of the houſehold; and every thing ſeemed to indicate a reſidence of ſome permanency at Pekin.

On the 5th, the emperor viſited the palace of Yeumen-Manyeumen, to inſpect the preſents which were lodged there; and was pleaſed to order ſeveral ingots of ſilver to be diſtributed to every perſon attending. The Engliſh artificers, who were the immediate objects of his generoſity, and had a complete view of him, deſcribed his majeſty as being about five feet ten inches high, of a ſlender form, but well proportioned; and that his countenance preſented a regularity of features, free from the decrepitude of age. His deportment was attractively affable; and the dignity of the prince was only diſplayed in the ſuperior manners of the man. He was habited in a robe of yellow ſilk, and a cap of black velvet, ſurmounted with a red ball, and adorned with a peacock's feather. He wore ſilk boots, embroidered with gold, and a blue ſilk ſaſh. The opinion his majeſty formed of the preſents could only be collected from their being generally received. Two camera obſcuras were, however, returned, as being ſuited only to the amuſement of children. The interpreter, explained to the mandarins the nature and uſe of a variety of articles.

This day preſents were received from the emperor for their Britannic majeſties. The ambaſſador and ſuite had likewiſe their proportion.

On the 6th, about noon, the ambaſſador again went to viſit the emperor; but on his arrival at court he fainted away, and being conveyed home, continued indiſpoſed during the day. In the meanwhile, Sir George Staunton and Colonel Benſon diſtributed to each of the ſoldiers and ſervants, ſome pieces of ſilk, others of dongaree (a kind of nankeen) and a junk of ſilver of conſiderable weight, as a preſent from his Imperial majeſty.

It was now reported, that they were ſoon to quit Pekin. It occaſioned a conſiderable ſhare of ſpeculation, though it obtained leſs credit than afterwards appeared to be due. This report, which at firſt met with only a faint belief in general, was confirmed by an order from the ambaſſador, to prepare for their departure on Wedneſday. Their ſurpriſe and concern may eaſily be conceived. After a variety of fatigues, they conſoled themſelves that they ſhould now have enjoyed ſome repoſe; but all perſonal conſiderations were abſorbed in public affairs, in which the humbleſt individual felt an intereſt. The grand objects of the embaſſy were evidently unaccompliſhed; and in their attachment to the good of their country, its honour, its advantage, they forgot every other care. A little reſpite was therefore requeſted, till the baggage was packed up and arranged. The attendant mandarin made the requiſition; an order arrived from the grand choulaa to ſuſpend their departure till Friday; but judge their aſtoniſhment, when this was countermanded by the emperor himſelf, and they were expreſsly ordered to depart on the day firſt intimated.

It was reported by the Chineſe, that as the buſineſs on the part of the emperor was already completed, he was ſurpriſed the Engliſh ambaſſador was not anxious to return to his own country. It was alſo ſaid that his majeſty was alarmed at the number of their ſick, leſt any contagion ſhould be communicated to his ſubjects. Nor were there perſons wanting who aſcribed his determination to an averſion contracted againſt them, from the ſkill and ingenuity they evinced in thoſe engines of deſtruction, the braſs mortars, which were tried in his preſence. It was ſaid he depreciated the ſpirit of a people, who, contrary to the vital avowed principles of their religion, had made ſuch a proficiency in arts which ſeemed to contradict them all.

In this ſtate of affairs, Lord Macartney ſent the carriage of ceremony, as a preſent to the grand choulaa, which was refuſed; and after they had left Pekin they found it returned on their way. The confuſion ariſing from this ſudden and unexpected event, rendered it impoſſible to arrange the baggage with any order. They huddled it together in the beſt manner that circumſtances would permit. Some articles, which could not be packed up, or were now uſeleſs, were given to the mandarins; the natives took care to purloin a ſhare, and Lord Macartney's ſervants had the canopy of ſtate. They ſet out on the road that leads to Tong-Tchew at a very early hour on the morning of the 9th, and reached that town in the evening. Even the thoughts of being on the return to their country failed to relieve the gloom of diſappointment; and to increaſe their unpleaſant ſenſations, they met with neglect and humble accommodations, compared to what they had experienced before. They were lodged here in temporary ſheds, hung with ſtraw matting.

On the 10th, while proceeding to the ſide of the river, they found the junks intended for their reception. The baggage was put on board with all poſſible expedition, but not without a degree of confuſion beyond what they had yet known. The ambaſſador and his ſuite occupied ſeven junks; the attendant mandarin and his party followed in ſeparate veſſels. Soon after the embarkation was performed, dinner was ſerved up; and at an early hour, after a moſt fatiguing day, they retired to reſt.

They left the channel of the river on the 16th, and entered a canal of infinite labour and expence. The ſides are maſonry throughout its extent; and at certain diſtances locks, in the form of a creſcent, are erected, which confining the water to a narrow paſſage in the middle of the canal, occaſions a moderate fall of about three feet. The motion of the junks is accelerated in paſſing theſe locks, and continues to ſome diſtance; and to prevent veſſels receiving damage from ſtriking againſt the walls of the lock, men are always ready to let down large leathern pads, which effectually break the ſhock. In the courſe of this day, they paſſed a number of theſe locks, whoſe conſtruction and effects, they found invariably the ſame.

They ſailed for ſome days through a country rich in agriculture and population. They obſerved plantations of the ſhrub which produces the Imperial and gunpowder tea: in ſize and figure it reſembles the gooſeberry-buſh. Imperial tea is the produce of the firſt bloſſoms; gunpowder tea is a collection of the ſucceſſive bloſſoms, as they appear.

Not only the exterior marks of reſpect had been withdrawn from the embaſſy by the Chineſe, but they even found their proviſions deficient, both in quantity and quality. A repreſentation to the mandarin procured immediate redreſs in this particular; and it was further reported, that the ſame benevolent character had exerted himſelf with effect to do away ſome very unfavourable impreſſions, with which a

Tartar mandarin had prejudiced the emperor againſt the Engliſh, by repreſenting them as diveſted of every amiable quality, and addicted to every vice. They paſſed numerous plantations of tobacco; a plant cultivated here in the greateſt variety, and to the greateſt extent, of any country in the world. Indeed ſmoking being the univerſal practice from infancy to old age, the quantity of tobacco conſumed in China muſt exceed all moderate calculation. Several conſiderable cities appeared at a ſmall diſtance from the canal; the garriſons from which advanced to the banks, to give the uſual ſalute. Alſo ſeveral corn-mills, worked by water, and apparently on the ſame conſtruction as in Europe, arreſted their attention in their progreſs.

On the 23d, a lofty pagoda, of eight ſtories, opened to their view. Next day they ſaw the Chineſe poſt paſs along the road on the margin of the canal. The letters are encloſed in a large bamboo baſket, hooped with cane; it is then locked, and the key is given into the cuſtody of one of the ſoldiers, who delivers it to the poſt-maſter. The baſket is then ſtrapped on the courier's ſhoulders, and being decorated with a number of little bells at the bottom, they make a loud jingling when ſhaken by the motion of the horſe, and announce the approach of the poſt. Five light-horſemen eſcort the courier; and as the fleeteſt horſes are ſelected, and changed at every ſtage, the mails in China are conveyed with extraordinary expedition.

On the 24th, in the evening, the junks anchored in the heart of a large city, through which the canal paſſes. A continual ſucceſſion of bridges connects the banks. Theſe are guarded by ſoldiers, who ſuffer no veſſel to paſs till a mandarin has inſpected it. The fleet here received a ſalute of three guns; and a numerous body of ſoldiers lined the banks.

They arrived ſoon at Kord-Cheeaung, a city of equal magnitude with the laſt; in the centre of which they ſaw a pagoda of ten ſtories, each ſurrounded by a gallery. After paſſing ſeveral large cities in the courſe of this day's voyage, they anchored for the night at Lee-Yaungoa, which was illuminated in honour of the ambaſſador.

On the 26th, they paſſed the city of Kaunghoo, and found ſuch an amazing number of junks lying there as impeded their paſſage for ſome time. The canal winds through this place, and its banks ſlope down to the water in a very beautiful form. Every ſpot in their paſſage gave teſtimony to the exiſtence of art, and the effects of induſtry.

On the 29th, they obſerved the peaſants ploughing. They worked with oxen; and though their ploughs were of a very clumſy form, the labour ſeemed to be neatly and properly executed. On the 2d of November they reached a city of great extent and trade. Several canals meet here; and on the ſouth ſide of it is a bay, communicating with the Yellow River, in which the nobleſt fleets of Europe might ride. The hills in the vicinity are beautifully green; their ſummits are crowned with pagodas; while villas and gardens adorn the lower ſlopes. Paſſing through the bay, in which various oppoſite currents meet, they ſoon entered a large river, and found themſelves again emboſomed in a rich and delightful country. Town opened on their enchanted ſenſes after town; and no words can convey an adequate idea of the pictureſque ſcenery that ſurrounded them.

They arrived about the hour of dinner, at a town of unuſual magnitude and beauty, through which the river flowed for the ſpace of three miles. The houſes were uniformly of brick, varied with a bluiſh coloured ſtone, and generally riſe to two ſtories high. Here they received the military honours ſo often mentioned; and indeed it may in general be obſerved, that there was neither town nor village through which they paſſed, that had not its mandarin, and its proportionate number of guards and troops, not only in China, but alſo in the remote and leſs populous regions of Tartary.

Soon after, the country aſſumed a ſwampy appearance; the natural conſequence of ſo many rivers, canals, and lakes, which interſect it, and promote its commercial intercourſe. The weather was cold and the mornings froſty. The climate unqueſtionably is affected by the large bodies of water which every where abound in this part of the country. They now underſtood that it was the Yellow River on which they were ſailing, probably ſo called from ſome communications with the Yellow Sea. They paſſed ſeveral lakes.

On the 3d, they ſaw a number of fiſhing-boats employed in their vocations, and procured from them a ſmall fiſh, about the ſize of a ſprat, but in flavour and form reſembling the haddock. On the oppoſite ſide of this lake they diſcovered the city of Chun-Foong: it is built of a dark-coloured ſtone, roofed with tiles of the ſame hue. This place appears to be about eight miles in circumference; and from the dreſs and manners of its inhabitants, they could eaſily determine was both commercial and polite.

On the 4th, they paſſed two other large lakes; and ſoon after reached the town of Kiangfou, which is large and walled. A mandarin and his guards appeared, to give the cuſtomary ſalutes; and at each end of the line of troops, a temporary arch was erected, with a platform reaching down to the river, very elegantly adorned, to afford a landing to the ambaſſador, ſhould he happen to be diſpoſed to ſtop. At a ſmall diſtance, tents were pitched, in the centre of which was the mandarin's pavilion, where a collation was ready for the entertainment of his excellency and the mandarins in their fleet. But the order of the voyage prevented them from accepting this tribute of hoſpitality and politeneſs.

They came to another large town beyond this, of ſuperior beauty, where they ſtopped to receive a ſupply of proviſions, and to be furniſhed with towers for the junks. Here they were gratified with the ſight of a number of fine women, whoſe complexions were uncommonly fair.

They paſſed a town in the afternoon, which could not be leſs than nine miles in circuit: the walls are of immenſe height, and ſeem to be ancient. Several hundreds of junks were moored along its wharfs. They entered a lake on the 5th, ſprinkled with a variety of beautiful iſlands: the moſt conſiderable of them contains the palace of a mandarin, with moſt beautiful ſummer-houſes, plantations, and gardens; a lofty rock roſe amid the trees, and ſupported on its top a ſtately pagoda. They ſoon entered another river, whoſe banks became highly pictureſque, on which, and the adjoining heights, they ſaw a variety of villas, with gilt pyramids riſing from the roofs, in the Gothic ſtyle. They ſtopped at the city of Mee-you-Mee-aung to take in the cuſtomary ſupply of proviſions. Nature ſeems to have formed this place for the purpoſes of navigation; and rural beauty to have fixed her reſidence in its vicinity. Falling down the river, an unexpected meander brought them back again upon the city, and aſtoniſhed them with its extent and the variety of new proſpects that preſented themſelves. The mandarin's palace was a ſplendid object. It was uniformly built; the wings were two ſtories high, and the centre three. The country continued to improve in landſcape beauty; the hills were verdant to their tops, and covered with cattle and ſheep. In their progreſs they obſerved a brick-kiln. The materials of which theſe valuable articles in building were compoſed, ſeemed to be a mixture of ſand and river mud; the kiln was of a pyramid form. In the evening ſeveral pagodas were illuminated in honour of the ambaſſador.

On the 6th of November, they entered a town of a moſt diſmal hue. It was wholly erected of black bricks; and as the houſes were more lofty than thoſe generally ſeen in this country, its peculiar character made the ſtronger impreſſion. In a ſhort time after they reached the mandarin's palace; a ſtone building of ſingular architecture. This officer had erected a temporary ſtage to communicate between his reſidence and the river, the roof of which was covered with ſilk of every dye; and from it a number of lamps were fancifully ſuſpended. All this was done for the accommodation, and in honour of the ambaſſador, if he or the attendant mandarins ſhould be diſpoſed to land; but the circumſtances of their voyage did not allow them to partake of this reſpectful hoſpitality. In the afternoon, the banks of the river roſe with ſuch a bold elevation as to intercept their view of the country.

On account of a complaint againſt ſome of the captains of the junks, for embezzlement of proviſions, the grand mandarin inſtituted an inquiry after the fleet came to anchor this evening; and being convinced of the truth of the charge, condemned the culprits to be bambooed, which ſentence was put into execution immediately.

They paſſed another town, the houſes of which were covered with plaſter, and painted black. At the entrance and the extremity of this place, which is very large, they ſailed under a noble arch. As it was intended to forward the heavy baggage from Hoang-Tchew to Chuſan, in order to its being conveyed by ſea to Canton, arrangements were made for this purpoſe. A party of the gentlemen of the embaſſy, and the ſervants, were to accompany it; the ambaſſador and the remainder were to proceed over land, with only the abſolute neceſſaries of apparel and travelling.

The grand mandarin viſited every junk on the 9th, the owners of which he briefly examined; and then ordered them to ſuffer the puniſhment of the bamboo. Their crime was kept a ſecret.

The next day having paſſed ſeveral plantations of tallow-trees, they arrived at Hoang-Tchew, when the junks were all faſtened together, and every perſon belonging to the ſuite was forbid to land. Indeed a body of Chineſe ſoldiers pitched their tents oppoſite to them, as if to awe them into compliance. During the time they lay here, no circumſtance happened worthy of being recorded. The mandarin of Hoang-Tchew had accompanied them from Pekin, and being ſuperior to Van-Tadge-In, of courſe aſſumed the ſupreme direction during this part of their voyage. Here he was to remain. The heavy baggage, which was to be ſent to Chuſan, being ſeparated from the light articles they were to carry with them to Canton, Colonel Benſon, Captain Mackintoſh, and party, ſet off to join the Hindoſtan at Chuſan, on the fifth day after their arrival; and the ſame day alſo they left Hoang-Tchew.

November 14, his excellency, accompanied by his retinue, proceeded for the Green River, where they were again to embark in ſmaller junks. On paſſing the city gates, the embaſſy received the cuſtomary ſalute. Between the two rivers the diſtance could not be leſs than ſeven miles; and the whole ſpace was covered by the city and ſuburbs, and lined with ſoldiers, who ſecured them from the preſſure of an innumerable multitude of people. The ſtreets are narrow, but well paved; the houſes two and three ſtories high; and the magnificence of the ſhops was beyond any thing they had hitherto ſeen. In commerce and population, Hoang-Tchew is a very conſiderable city.

They reached the Green River at noon, where the ambaſſador was received with military honours. The troops were armed with helmets, and made a ſplendid appearance with their accompaniments. A triumphal arch, with a platform deſcending to the ambaſſador's junk, had been erected for the occaſion. Their embarkation was attended by myriads of people. Some were mounted on buffaloes, which animal carried ſeveral at a time on its back, and appeared very docile.

Their voyage was continued between ranges of mountains, preſenting the moſt romantic ſcenery. The vallies were covered with tallow and mulberry-trees. The former is called the latchoo, and is remarkably beautiful, having ſcarlet leaves edged with yellow, and purpliſh bloſſoms. The river on which they now ſailed, was, at a medium, about three feet deep. The water has a green caſt, and the bottom is gravelly.

The city of Zanguoa made a moſt brilliant appearance on the evening of the 15th, with its illuminations. The effect was increaſed by numerous bodies of ſoldiers ranged along the banks of the river, with paper lanterns.

On the 16th, the features of the country through which they ſailed, were ſtill mountainous and pictureſque; and the forts and ſalutes became ſo frequent that they grew abſolutely tireſome. Indeed, ſo much military honour was paid to the embaſſy, that the ſalutes could only be compared to a train of wild-fire laid from Pekin to Canton, and continually exploding as they proceeded.

November the 18th, the country changed to a fine champaign, in which numerous villages roſe, amid plantations of tallow and mulberry-trees. This day they paſſed a group of water-mills, all turned by a ſmall cut from the river, flowing in a circular direction. Theſe appeared to be on the European conſtruction: and as they underſtood, were employed in threſhing rice. The following day the banks of the river reſumed the uſual appearance; and long ranges of mountains roſe into the horizon.

On the 20th they reached a large and beautiful town, where they were again to diſembark. The ſcenery here might have advantageouſly employed the warmeſt pencil. The river formed a central object, on one ſide was the town, with its appropriate circumſtances, and a military encampment in front, with all its gaudy enſigns; on the other ſide lofty perpendicular hills bounded the view in the moſt ſublime ſtyle. As ſoon as they diſembarked, they proceeded next day by land, and ſoon reached the city of Chanſoiyeng, where the ambaſſador was received with due diſtinction. Leaving this, they paſſed another walled city and ſeveral villages; and arrived at the city of Yooſaun early in the afternoon, where they drank refreſhments of tea at the palace of the mandarin; and having ſtowed the baggage on board another fleet of junks provided for their accommodation, they all embarked, and were anxious to proceed on their voyage.

November the 24th, they found themſelves before the city of Mammenoa. The river now winded away between enormous maſſes of ſtone, without any continuity or connection; exhibiting the appearance of ſome volcanic eruption. Some of theſe huge ſtones had been excavated into dwellings; and every interſtice between them was occupied by hortulane productions. This ſtupendous ſcenery continued for ſeveral miles; it was grand, perhaps unique, in itſelf; and where it admitted of views into the more diſtant country, it produced a moſt delightful picture. In the afternoon they reached the city of Hoa-Quoo, where, much to their ſatisfaction, they found larger junks ready to receive them. The mandarin of the place politely ſent a variety of fruits and confectionary for the uſe of every junk. For two days the weather had been very rainy; it now became more moderate. The country through which they paſſed was rich and fertile; a few red rocks occaſionally broke the level of the ſcene.

On the 26th, in the morning, the fog was ſo thick as to obſcure the country. About noon it diſperſed; and the eye ranged over a level extent of rice fields, interſected with villas and gardens. Their proviſions had for ſome time been very indifferent; not from neglect, but the nature of the country. In proportion as they fared worſe their Chineſe junk-men fared better; who received not only their ſuperfluity, but ſometimes almoſt the whole.

On the 27th they reached a village entirely built of mud, with inhabitants as wretched in appearance as their habitations were mean. For this ſight they were unable to account. The river had now aſſumed a formidable breadth; and as the wind was high, the waves and ſurf reſembled thoſe of the ſea. They paſſed numbers of fiſhing boats, which ſerved to vary the navigation of the ſtream.

On the 28th, the city of Tyaung-Shi-Sennau appeared in view. They paſſed it in the afternoon, and for extent and the advantages of ſituation, it unqueſtionably deſerves to be reckoned one of the firſt in China. Not leſs than a thouſand junks lay at anchor before it: it is built near the conflux of ſeveral rivers, and enjoys a moſt extenſive commerce. The grand mandarin paid a viſit on board his excellency's junk, and made a variety of preſents, in ſilk, porcelain, and tea.

On the 29th they reached another village, built with blue bricks, and covered with tiles of the ſame colour. Pagodas and the palaces of mandarins were now become familiar objects. Next day they paſſed a city lying amid beautiful meadows and orchards, about two miles diſtance from the river. Beyond this the proſpect became as delightful as fancy can conceive. Mountains roſe into the horizon, foreſts waved on the ſlopes, and flocks and herds covered the vales. The river was now expanded to a great breadth, and as the wind blew freſh, the junks ſometimes appeared in danger of being overſet. At this time the fields were covered with froſt.

December the 1ſt, they ſailed by the town of Saunt-Yo-Tawn, where ſeveral ſuperb pagodas roſe above the ſurrounding groves. Numerous timber-yards occupied the banks of the river; and a large quantity of timber was immerſed in the ſtream, which, as they were told, were in a ſtate of preparation for the building of junks, the principal buſineſs of the place. The cities of Loo-Dichean, Morriun-Dew, and Chic-a-Foo, which they now approached, all lie contiguous to each other. Art and nature have united their efforts to increaſe the beauty of this charming vicinity. At a diſtance they obſerved vaſt columns of ſmoke, which roſe, as they were informed, from a porcelain manufactory. In the evening they reached the city of Chinga-Foo. Here illuminations, the firing of rockets, and of artillery, took place in honour of the ambaſſador. They received alſo a preſent of fruit and confectionary from the mandarin of this city.

December 2, they paſſed the city of Fie-Cho-Jeunau, emboſomed in plantations. From its apparent population, and the number of junks employed in its commerce, it was evidently to be ranked in the firſt claſs of Chineſe towns. On the 3d they were gratified with the view of ſome beautiful ruins. The original deſtination of the edifice they could not certainly diſcover; but from the remains ſtill viſible, they concluded it muſt have been a work of no common magnificence. In this part of the empire, ſituation ſeems to be duly appreciated. The villas of the mandarins, the pagodas, and even ſome of the private dwellings, are erected with a palpable regard to the circumſtances of the place, and the beauty of the ſcenery. They obſerved numbers of fiſhermen employed in their vocation with rods and lines. In lakes and large rivers, the ſame kind of bait is frequently uſed as at ſea: nets too are in very common uſe. In ſome places bamboo canes, ſupporting a curtain of ſtrong gauze, are placed acroſs the ſtreams; and then the fiſh being allured to the ſpot by baits, are caught in nets with great ſucceſs. On inquiry, they found that the rights of fiſhery, as in Europe, are private property. In thoſe rivers they navigated, a kind of whiting and trout were the moſt plentiful. Theſe are ſold to the crews of the junks, and the demand for them is very great.

Early in the afternoon they anchored before the city of Vang-on-Chean; where the ambaſſador received a viſit from the mandarin. This place occupies a conſiderable ſpace: on one ſide it is bounded by the river, on the other by a range of high mountains. A ſucceſſion of towns and villages enlivened our voyage during the ſucceeding day. The features of the country became craggy and elevated into hills; but fertility, in every poſſible ſituation, ſhewed the labour of diligent cultivation.

On the 5th, the river became very ſhoally, and they anchored before dark to avoid the dangers of ſuch a navigation. This day they paſſed the city of Joo-Jennau, ſituated at the bottom of a lofty mountain. Here they found that the river on which they had ſailed communicated with another of equal magnitude. The poſition of a city, at the conflux of two large rivers, readily points out its convenience for trade. Leaving this place, the ſtream was divided into two ſtreams by a beautiful iſlet, in which the mandarin had an elegant ſeat, probably for his occaſional retirement. In the evening, the city of Kaung-Joo-Foo preſented the moſt brilliant nocturnal illumination they had hitherto ſeen; and this complimentary attention was heightened by a preſent of fruits and confectionary from the mandarin of the place.

CHAP. V.

They continue their Paſſage—Obſerve a Number of Machines—Their Utility—Village of Shaiboo—Pagoda of Tau-ay—Town of Wan-Ting-Taun—Obſervations—Arrive at Naung-Aum-Foo—Journey over Land—Paſs ſeveral Villages—Dine at Lee-Cou-Au—City of Naung-Chin-Oa—Mandarin's Palace—Embark—Sepulchral Monuments—Larger Junks prepared—A Mountain of immenſe perpendicular Height—Extraordinary Illuminations—The Mountain of Koan-Yeng-Naum—City of Shizing-Ta-Heng—Of Tſing-Yan-Yeun—One of the Junks in Danger of being burned—Village of Ouz-Chouaa—Several other Towns, &c.—Arrival at Canton, the Termination of their Voyage—Remarks—Anchor at Spithead—Concluſion, &c.

IN their paſſage down the river on the 6th of December, they obſerved a number of machines with which the Chineſe water their grounds. They conſiſt of a wheel of bamboo, turned by a ſtream, which throwing the water into large reſervoirs, it is from thence diſtributed by ſluices into a thouſand channels. The beautiful village of Shai-Boo, ſituated on a bold elevation, above the river, was the principal object in the landſcape, till the attention was called away by the pagoda of Tau-Ay; the upper part of which being in ruins, gave it a more picturesque and impreſſive appearance, and well accorded with the character of the little burial-place at its foot.

In this day's voyage the town of Whan-Ting-Taun was the only place of any importance they paſſed; villages were numerous; and ſome huts again made their appearance, of the humbleſt conſtruction.

The 8th was the moſt remarkable day they had yet experienced. During their whole progreſs they ſaw neither city, town, nor village. A few farm-houſes were, however, diſperſed over the face of the country; the banks of the river were lofty, and formed of a perpendicular barrier of red earth, ſtreaked with horizontal veins of ſtone, in a direction perfectly rectilinear. The natural curioſity continued for ſeveral miles. The ſhallowneſs of the river obliged them again to ſhift the baggage into junks of leſſer burden; and in the courſe of the evening they found themſelves in the vicinity of ſome town or village, from the number of paper lanterns they ſaw exhibited by the ſoldiers, and the complimentary ſalute they paid them. The weather had for ſome days been temperate; but the face of the country was no longer the ſame. Barren mountains, ſeparated by plains that ſeemed to defy the labour of man to produce fertility, now preſented themſelves on all hands. Some dwarf-trees, however, among which the camphire is ſaid to predominate, broke the abruptneſs of the ſlopes; and here and there a village or a pagoda animated the ſcene. In this place they obſerved ſeveral ſepulchral monuments, with excavations in the rocks beneath, as receptacles for the dead. The moſt elevated ſpots, the moſt abrupt precipices, they generally obſerved, were appropriated for the repoſe of the dead. Whether this choice was determined with a regard to notoriety, or from any ſuperſtitious opinion that the body might be placed as near as poſſible to that heaven where ſpirits wing their flight, they could obtain no ſatisfactory information. The amiable virtues, however, of the Chineſe, were rendered more conſpicuous by the feeling regard they uniformly appear to ſhew to the remains of thoſe they have once eſteemed.

They arrived at the city of Naung-Aum-Foo on the 9th. Here the embaſſy was to make a day's march over land; and accordingly they diſembarked. The landing-place was adorned with a triumphal arch, highly decorated with ſilken ſtreamers, and connected by a platform, with a circular court, ſurrounded by a ſkreen of ſilk. In this place a number of horſes were collected, with the choice of one of which every perſon in the ſuite was indulged, for the journey of the day. The ambaſſador, with two or three gentlemen of his ſuite, were to proceed as uſual in palanquins. The horſes being ſelected, the cavalcade commenced their progreſs; and perhaps ſuch an exhibition of equeſtrian exerciſe and groteſque dreſs, never before amuſed a Chineſe populace. The horſes were ſpirited, many of the riders were new to this mode of travelling. The cries of fear, and the ſhouts of ridicule, were every where heard; and ſcarcely could they attend to the paſſing ſcene; ſo much were they engaged by the peculiarities of their own ſituation.

Naung-Aum-Foo, through which they paſſed, is a large walled city; and though the river here does not admit large junks, from the very great number of ſmaller ones which lined its ſhores, they concluded it had no inconſiderable pretenſions to traffic.

They arrived at noon at the foot of a lofty mountain, where they were obliged to diſmount. Having gained the aſcent, they paſſed ſeveral villages; and dined at the town of Lee-Cou-Au, where the road was lined with ſoldiers in armour, to ſalute the ambaſſador as he paſſed. They arrived at the gates of Naung-Chin-Oa, juſt as the ſun had ſunk beneath the horizon. This city ſtands in a plain, encircled on three ſides by hills, and on the fourth by the river, on which they were to continue their voyage. The houſes are chiefly built of wood, in general two ſtories high; and the ſtreets are narrow, but well paved. In exterior appearance and decoration, it preſerves the general character of Chineſe towns. Soldiers lined the ſtreets, to facilitate their paſſage to the mandarin's palace, a very noble building, conſiſting of ſeveral courts. A ſplendid entertainment was provided for the whole ſuite; and ſuch a profuſion of lights decorated the principal apartments as are never diſplayed in Europe on any occaſion. Indeed, illumination conſtitutes the grand appropriate feature of Chineſe magnificence.

They began embarking in the morning of the 11th of December, on board ſmall junks, correſponding with the depth of the river; and before noon they reſumed their voyage; ſailing under a wooden bridge of ſeven arches, with ſtone pillars, ſtrongly guarded by ſoldiers at each end. From this point, the city appears in a very advantageous view. Beyond the bridge the river divided into two branches, taking almoſt oppoſite directions. The town of Chang-Fang was the only place of note they paſſed in this day's voyage. The face of the country had few lively features; and its artificial circumſtances increaſed the gloom. Sepulchral monuments were the chief objects which they ſaw in the courſe of next day. The only novelty was floating rafts, with ſeveral bamboo huts, well tenanted, which they paſſed near the village of Ty-Ang-Koa.

They reached the city of Shaw-Choo on the 13th, where the houſes, adjoining the river, appear to be ſo ſlenderly ſupported, as to threaten conſtant ruin to their inhabitants and the paſſengers. At the extremity of this city the fleet anchored; and here the ambaſſador experienced the elegant attention of the mandarin in a very ſuperior degree.

Now junks of larger dimenſions were prepared to receive the embaſſy; and next day they paſſed through a country ſometimes varied with patches of cultivated ground, though mountainous ſterility was ſtill the predominant feature. Towards evening they found the hills gradually approaching the river, till at laſt they ſeemed to cloſe, and admit only its courſe. This gloomy ſcene continued for ſome time, as if to heighten the contraſt that was to open. They now reached a mountain of immenſe perpendicular height, the upper part of which appears to project over the ſtream. Its contour is bare rock and ſhaggy foliage; and this extends for nearly two miles. Its termination, like its commencement, is abrupt. At the extreme point, a pyramidial rock appears to riſe above the edge of the precipice; and this is ſeparated by an interjacent plain from another enormous rock, of the ſame character, though of a different form. Another range of hills commenced after they had left theſe ſtupendous objects, and continued to exclude their view of the country; but no ſooner were they come to the end of this chain, than a burſt of illumination, carried over mountains and vallies for ſeveral miles, wrapt the ſenſes in ecſtacy and aſtoniſhment; this line of undulating light was ſo various and ſo brilliant, that no words can do juſtice to its ſublime effects. Immenſe bonfires on the ſummits reddened the clouds; while ſpiral ſtreams of fire ſerpentiſed up the aſcents, or ſunk into the declivities below. The number of lanterns or torches employed on this occaſion muſt have aſtoniſhed by their immenſity, as well as by their effects; and they can only ſay, that ſuch a magnificent ſpectacle was never before diſplayed to European eyes. Diſcharges of artillery were repeated at intervals; and night was loſt in the artificial blaze.

December 15, the grand mandarin ordered the fleet to ſtop to indulge the embaſſy with a leiſure view of the mountain of Koan-Yeng-Naum, one of the natural curioſities of China. It has a perpendicular aſcent from the water, terminating in a peak; and from the face towards the river, ſuch enormous maſſes project, as menace every moment to fill up the channel of the ſtream. But art has heightened the curious circumſtances of this extraordinary mountain. It contains ſeveral caverns: one of them is about forty feet above the level of the water. To this there is acceſs by a flight of ſteps, guarded by a rail. On reaching the top of the flight, they enter a room of good dimenſions, excavated from the rock, in which ſtands an image ſacred to Chineſe devotions. An artificial ſtair-caſe conducts to two other ſuperior apartments; and the whole is fitted up by the mandarin to whom the mountain belongs, in a ſtyle of rude magnificence, correſponding to the character of the place.

Having proceeded through a country preſenting many ſublime features, they reached the city of Shi-zing-Ta-Heng about noon. This place enjoys every local advantage that can contribute to render it pictureſque in a high degree. Lofty banks for a conſiderable ſpace ſhut out their view of the land; and where a caſual opening gave a wider proſpect, it was not marked with any new features. Similar objects occurred—varied only by ſhape, or diſcriminated by light and ſhadow. The evening was cheered with an illumination of the diſtant hills. The coup d'œil was extremely grand, but inferior to what they had witneſſed before.

On the 16th, ſteep rocks, in various groteſque forms, ſometimes tinted with foliage, ſometimes the traces of laborious taſte, were the prevailing character of the landſcape. They reached the city of Tſing-Yan-Yeun. It is well fortified, of great extent and population. The number of junks which lay before it, indicated an enlarged commerce. Triumphal arches decorated the beach; and ſeveral regiments of ſoldiers paid the military honours as they paſſed. From this city the river takes a direct courſe for ſome miles, amid fertile and highly cultivated meadows. The mountains fall into the back ground.

This day one of the junks was in imminent danger of being conſumed by a ſpark falling unobſerved from a tobacco-pipe. Indeed, where ſmoking is ſo generally uſed, it is a matter of aſtoniſhment that accidents are not more frequent and fatal.

They paſſed the extenſive village of Ouz-Chouaa on the 17th, where a number of manufactories appear to be eſtabliſhed. The country now reſumed its fertility and beauty; and proviſions became both plentiful and excellent. In the evening they reached Sangs-We-Yenno, where the ambaſſador received every honour that the moſt elegant attention on the part of the mandarin could pay, or his excellency expect. This is a large and commercial city: the illuminations diſplayed here were peculiarly grand. On the following morning they paſſed a ſeries of very large and populous towns, ſo cloſely connected, that they ſeemed for ſome hours to be ſailing through one city of immenſe extent. The ſalutes were almoſt inceſſant as they proceeded; and every place poured thouſands of its inhabitants, though at a very early hour, to obtain a tranſient view of an European embaſſy. They now approached the city of Tayn-Tſyn-Tau, a place of the firſt importance and the moſt extenſive trade. The ſuburbs lie on both ſides the river for ſeveral miles: and as far as our heroes could judge in extent, population, and commerce, this city is only inferior to Pekin or Canton. Thouſands of junks covered the river for a vaſt ſpace; and ſcarcely had they overcome the difficulties and impediments of this crowded navigation, before they found themſelves approaching to Canton, the termination of their voyage.

Their arrival here being notified, ſeveral mandarins waited on his excellency; and theſe were ſoon followed by the gentlemen of the Engliſh factory, and Colonel Benſon. This officer brought with him the public diſpatches for the ambaſſador, and a packet of private letters from their friends in England.

They were moved on the ſucceeding day into larger junks. The magnificence of the river at this place baffles deſcription. Its ſurface was almoſt covered with veſſels, engaged in trade, or attracted by curioſity. The banks were lined with ſoldiers, and covered with elegant houſes; and a ſucceſſion of forts thundred out ſalutes with almoſt inceſſant rapidity. They reached the Engliſh factory about one in the afternoon, and both it and the Dutch factory paid his excellency the uſual ſalute, hoiſting at the ſame time the ſtandard of their reſpective countries. A temporary reſidence for the ambaſſador and ſuite had been provided by the Eaſt-India-Company's ſupercargoes: and in point of accommodation and domeſtic arrangement, they found it ſuperior to the firſt palaces in which they had lodged, during their long peregrination in China.

Canton is walled, ſtrongly fortified, and garriſoned with numerous troops. The ſtreets are generally narrow, but well paved; and the houſes, which are conſtructed of wood and ſtone, ſeldom riſe above one ſtory high. The viceroy's palace is exactly on the model of that in which they reſided at Pekin. Triumphal arches are numerous and ſplendid; and theſe are the only public buildings in the place. The population has been eſtimated at a million of ſouls: the ſuburbs cannot contain leſs than half that number. The river at Canton is noble and deep; the water, however, is not wholeſome for ſtrangers, till its ſediment has been allowed to ſubſide. In this reſpect the natives give themſelves no concern. The ſuburbs of Canton, in which, indeed, properly ſpeaking, all the European commerce is carried on, are very extenſive, and every where exhibit commercial opulence; but they have no pretenſions to grandeur or elegance.

The viceroy of Canton only once viſited the ambaſſador during his ſtay. Large preſents of ſugar-candy, porcelain, and nankeen, were diſtributed to the whole embaſſy. For ſeveral days, during the time of dinner, the ambaſſador was entertained with Chineſe plays, performed on a ſtage erected before the windows of his apartments.

On the firſt day of the new year 1794, his excellency and ſuite were ſplendidly entertained by the gentlemen of the Britiſh factory. The band of muſic which had accompanied the embaſſy, on the requeſt of the factory, were permitted to enter into its ſervice; and in a country where amuſements are ſo few and confined, it could not fail to be a valuable acquiſition.

January the 8th, the ambaſſador proceeded to Whampoa to join the ſhips. At the ſame time a deputation of the retinue was diſpatched to Macao, to make preparations for his excellency's reception at that place. We have already given our readers full deſcriptions of theſe places.

Whampoa, beyond which European ſhips are never permitted to paſs, is an elegant and populous village, about eighteen miles below Canton. The river, near this place, is defended by a ſand-bank, which prevents the paſſage of large ſhips, except at high water, and two necks of land, projecting from the ſtrait of Bocca Tigris. Van-Tadge-In took his farewell leave of the ambaſſador here.

On the 14th, Lord Macartney landed at Macao; and took up his reſidence with Mr. Drummond, one of the ſupercargoes of the Eaſt-India-Company. Here the gentlemen of the ſeveral European factories have their houſes; as they are not permitted to remain at Canton longer than is abſolutely neceſſary for the purpoſe of trade.

The long intercourſe which has ſubſiſted between Europeans and the Chineſe in Macao, has not altered the eſtabliſhed cuſtoms and habits of the latter. The Chineſe never deviate from the uſages of their country, which may be conſidered as invariable.

March the 8th, Lord Macartney and retinue embarked for Europe, amid the ſalutes of forts and ſhips; and being joined by a large homeward-bound fleet of Indiamen, on the 17th proceeded to ſea.

There was nothing of particular conſequence which happened during their voyage. They arrived at St. Helena on the 19th of June, and remained there till the 1ſt of July.

On the 3d of September they were ſeriouſly alarmed by running foul of a large fleet off Portland-Roads, which proved to be the Grand Fleet, commanded by Earl Howe. Two or three of the Indiamen received ſome damage; but except in this inſtance, their voyage was free from accident, and barren of intereſting occurrence.

After an abſence of little leſs than two years from their native land, they anchored in the afternoon of this day ſafe at Spithead.

Having now accompliſhed the Narrative of this remarkable EMBASSY *to* CHINA, *we ſhall, for the completion of our arduous Taſk, preſent our Readers in the laſt place with a genuine Deſcription of a Tour through* GERMANY, SWITZERLAND, *and* ITALY, *including all the Particulars of our moſt eminent Travellers, and being more full and deſcriptive than any hitherto publiſhed.*

A NEW, COMPLETE, AND ENTERTAINING
HISTORY of TRAVELS
THROUGH
Germany, Switzerland, Italy, Genoa, Venice, Rome, &c.

Undertaken and Performed chiefly in the Years 1791 and 1792.

Compoſed from the reſpectable Journals of
LADY WALLACE, DR. MOORE, C. ESTE, ESQ.
And ſeveral other eminent Travellers and Perſons of Diſtinction, who have lately viſited the Continent.

Containing an accurate Deſcription of the MANNERS, LITERATURE, RELIGION, &c. of the ſeveral Countries herein explored, and a Variety of Anecdotes and Remarks NEVER BEFORE UNITED.

Collected, Arranged, and Re-Written by
WILLIAM HENRY PORTLOCK, ESQ.

CHAPTER I.

Beginning of the Journey—Conveyed to Boulogne—Proceed to St. Omer's—To Liſle—Ghent—Bruſſels—Liege—Chaufontaine—Spa—Arrive at Aix-la-Chapelle—Conveyed to Duſſeldorf by Horſes—Deſcription thereof—Cologne—Bonn—A mineral Spring called Newth—Andernach—Diſagreeable Roads—Sleep at Konigſtein—Arrive at Franckfort—Viſit Heſſe-Caſſel—Deſcription of the Towns between it and Franckfort, and the Buildings—Mayence or Mentz—Village of Hockheim—Palace of Martinſburgh—Proceed to Worms—Manheim—Viſit the Elector's Palace and Gardens at Schweſſinger—Bad Accommodation at Waghenſel—Carlſruhe—Deſcription of this Town, &c.—Raſtade—Bune—Freiburg—Baſle—Viſit the famous Garden at Arleſheim.

OUR travellers undertook their journey June 6 1791, with a view of improving their taſte and gratifying curioſity. Having paſſed the Dover road they admired the well wooded ſcenery of Kent; after which Captain Radcliffe's veſſel conveyed them, in about twelve hours, to Boulogne, where they ſtaid only for the examination of their baggage, and then proceeded to St. Omer's, a town which ſtill retains a gloomy appearance, though the miſts of Jeſuitiſm are diſperſed. They looked into the church and convent of St. Bertin. The monks were then in daily expectation of the order of diſmiſſion from their ſpacious and handſome buildings: the courts and gardens likewiſe exhibited the rude appearance of neglect.

From St. Omer's they proceeded by Caſſel to Liſle. The rich land through which their road was directed, was covered with full crops of various vegetation. The fields of tobacco, the ſtraight roads, and the rows of willows and poplars fantaſtically ſtripped to the top, reminded them that they were in Flanders; and they remarked that the people appeared well clothed and comfortably fed and lodged.

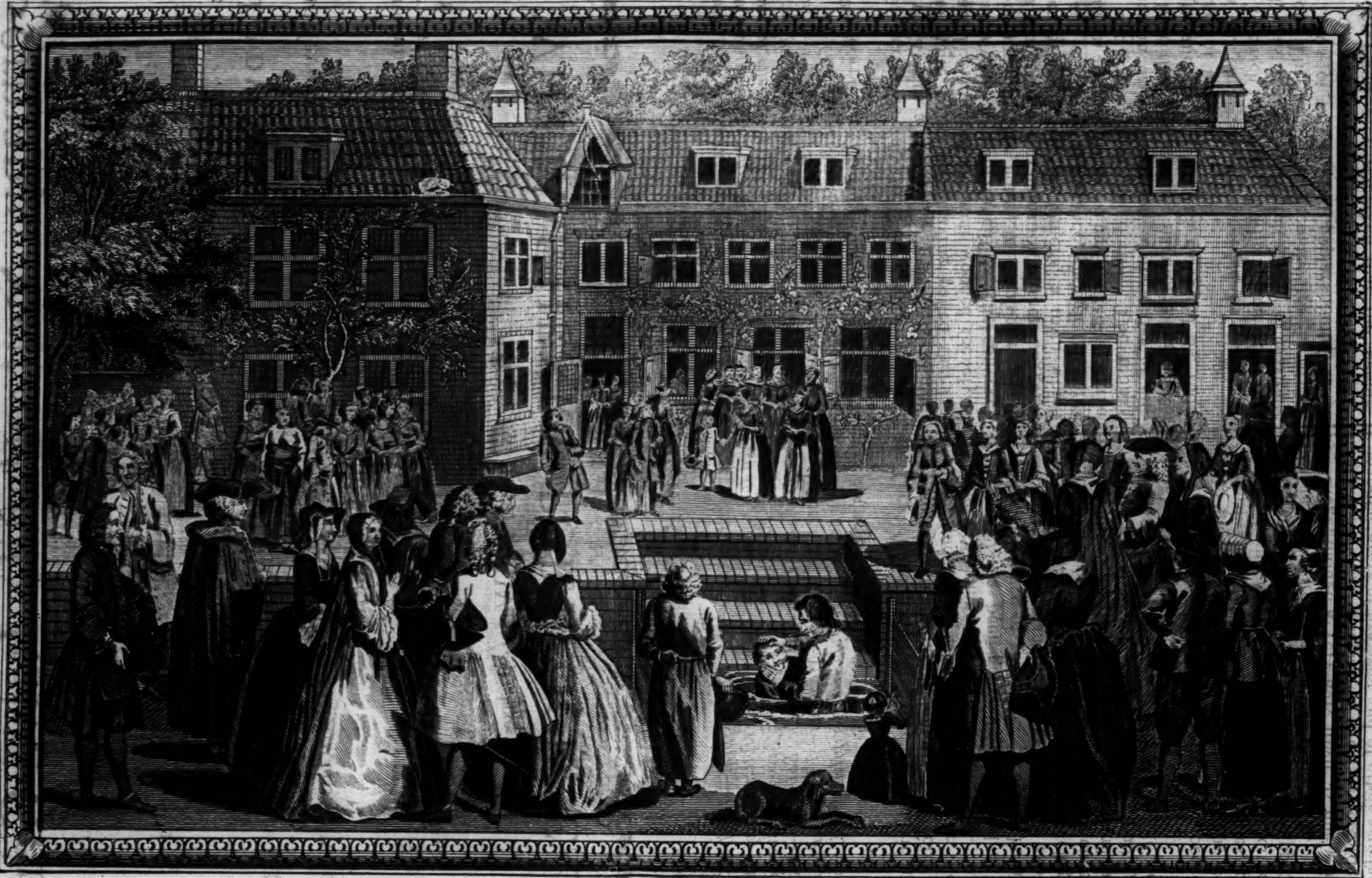
They viſited Ghent on Whitſunday, and on their departure thence travelled through a country more open but leſs luxuriant in its productions. The road was covered with crowds of men and women returning from a pilgrimage to the Lady of Hall, whoſe miracles then eſtabliſhed a great reputation. They all had a kind of paper flag in their hats, like thoſe worn by the repreſentatives of fools on our ſtage, and each perſon carried one or two ſmall children's trumpets ſuſpended at the ſide.

Bruſſels has been generally conſidered as a moſt agreeable place of reſidence. Thoſe who have introduction to the higher ranks certainly experience every enjoyment there that lively and elegant ſociety can furniſh. It requires ſome prudence, however, to keep ſafe from the diſſipation and taſte for high play which prevails. The public buildings are well known. The church of St. Gudule contains much to intereſt travellers.

They left Bruſſels on the 17th, and proceeded by Tirlemont and St. Tron to Liege. The country towards Bruſſels exhibits gentle declivities, prettily covered with woods and villages, with their church ſpires riſing among the trees. As they approached Liege it appeared gradually to impoveriſh.

Liege, though a very ugly town, is finely ſituated on the Meuſe. The narrow ſtreets are crowded with manufacturers of fire-arms and of other articles, who get rich amidſt their dirt. They dined, the ſecond day, at Chaufontaine, a beautiful ſpot in the centre of well-clothed hills. The views in the neighbourhood, particularly that over an adjacent valley, are charming. In the evening they drove through an agreeable country, occaſionally contraſted by barren heath, to Spa, having paſſed through a part of the petty territories, or monaſtery, of the prince of Stavelot,

Engraved for **PORTLOCK's** *New* **COLLECTION** *of* **VOYAGES** *&* **TRAVELS.**



Mode of **BAPTISM,** *practised at* **RHINEBURG** *in* **GERMANY.**

velot, an eccleſiaſtic, with whom his ſubjects profeſs themſelves ſatisfied. As they approached Spa they admired, by moonlight, its fine hills richly covered with trees. They took up their abode at the Hotel du Loup; a little diſcouraged, however, by that emblem of a voracious landlord. This place is yet very thin of company; the rooms are but little frequented: the gameſters can with difficulty draw a circle round their tables; they look very anxiouſly at ſtrangers. The few French women who are here dance with great elegance: but play is the whole pleaſure and buſineſs of the place; men, women and children are all caught by the phrenzy. They who repair here for health counteract the effect of their morning ride and ſalutary draughts of water, by late hours and ruffled paſſions. The fountains which iſſue out from amidſt theſe ſtony hills are, certainly, very efficacious in many caſes. Engliſhmen, returning from an Italian tour, viſit them with great benefit; but one is apt to fancy, that when ladies, who are impatient to get their debts diſcharged by preſenting their huſbands with an heir, ſeek to promote parturition by bathing their feet in the waters of Sauvenier, they aſcribe more virtues to them than they poſſeſs, though certainly they brace relaxed habits ſpeedily.

They left Spa on the 26th, and quitting the territory of Liege, at Vervier, they travelled through a country, of which, the rich encloſed paſtures and extenſive views reminded them of Somerſetſhire. The latter part of their drive, at ten o'clock at night, was through a foreſt, where their lamps hardly afforded light enough to ſave them from being overſet by the deep ruts of a heavy ſandy ſoil.

When they arrived at Aix-la Chapelle, they might have ſlept in their carriage, if their courier had not procured them lodgings at a private houſe; for, the king of Sweden being then there, not a room was diſengaged at the inns, even for Engliſhmen, for whom room is always made, if poſſible.

This ancient town, which Charlemagne made the ſeat of empire on this ſide the Alps, and which continued ſo to be till the time of Charles the fifth, affords but few circumſtances to intereſt the attention. The cabinet (a quatres portes) remains a monument of a filly diſpute for national precedency. The dome of the cathedral, in which many emperors have been crowned, is ſupported by large pillars, brought from Conſtantinople.

From Aix-la-Chapelle they were conveyed ſlowly, by Juliers to Duſſeldorf, by horſes. The ſmall, well-planted encloſures reminded them of England; they are not adorned, however, by the frequent neat houſes which enliven our proſpects. Duſſeldorf derives an air of dignity from its palace and great church, though theſe buildings are not particularly diſtinguiſhed for their ſtyle of architecture. The palace has the appearance of a deſerted reſidence, and a ſolitary guard or two ſuggeſted the idea of departed magnificence. This place and its environs are not unpleaſant. The river Duſſel, from which the town takes its name, falls into the Rhine here, and flows with that river, in a reſpectable channel, through a cheerful country. The ſociety of the neighbourhood is deſcribed as poliſhed; but with French politeneſs has been introduced ſomewhat of French diſſipation, among the higher ranks, who mix not with their inferiors. The ſtyle of living is not expenſive. There is no tax, but a ſmall land-tax, impoſed by the three orders of the diſtricts of Berg and Juliers, who aſſemble here to tax themſelves.

The country between Cologne and Duſſeldorf is flat. At Benrah, a few miles from Duſſeldorf, they ſaw an elegant chateau of the elector, which, however, contains nothing remarkable, and is ſituated in gardens ſtiff and formal as art could make them. Cologne is finely ſituated for trade, which once flouriſhed here. It was one of the Hanſe-Towns, and a free city, and formerly contained 30,000 men, and ſtood a ſiege of the whole empire. It is now badly governed: its corporation is rich; its trade and population are decayed; its ſtreets and buildings are dirty and unimproved. The few Proteſtants who are here are not tolerated in their worſhip, but go to a church at Mulheim, ſix miles further in the palatinate: theſe, however, are the chief promoters of trade. The Romaniſts exhibit their dark cathedral, and numberleſs monaſteries: live in poverty to ſupport an overgrown miniſtry, not reſpectable for character; and tell their ſuperſtitious and childiſh ſtories of St. Urſula and her eleven thouſand virgins, and of coach-horſes that ran up into the garret of a man to puniſh his incredulity, with ſuch trumpery tales as prove, that ſome of the inhabitants of Cologne are not wiſer in their popular creed, than they were ten centuries ago.

Bonn is a fine town: the palace there has no uniformity of deſign: the chief façade is at one end: the gardens are gay, and decorated with eſpalier orange trees, and a variety of fine plants: the terras in front commands, very beautifully, the bold ſweeps of the Rhine, which, with the gradual declivities covered with caſtles and towers, and the lofty ſpiral tops of diſtant mountains, form a wonderful ſcene.

About four miles beyond Bonn they quitted the road, in order to viſit a mineral ſpring not far diſtant, which is called Newth. It is ſituated amidſt ſome beautiful hills, on one of which are the picturеſque ruins of an old caſtle. A good inn is eſtabliſhed there; and the adjacent grounds are laid out, by the elector, with every attention due to nature. The water, which reſembles that of Spa, though it is not ſo ſtrong, is ſaid to be very efficacious in ſimilar caſes.

From hence they drove through a moſt enchanting country by the ſide of the Rhine, between mountains perpetually varying and richly clothed.

The houſes and frequent towns, delightfully ſituated, reflect a cheerful light from their white fronts and ſlated tops; and the patches of corn, intermixed with the vineyards, ſpread a glad appearance of plenty around them. A fine ſpiral hill crowned with a rocky, caſtle-like building, forms a noble object for many miles. The whole ride to Andernach is one of the moſt beautiful in Europe: it runs along a road which was made, as an inſcription informed them, under the emperors Marcus Aurelius and Lucius Verus, in 162, and repaired and widened by Theodore, elector of Bavaria, in 1768. Here our travellers ſlept.

Andernach was one of the ſeven ports which Julian built after the deſtruction of the barbarians. From this town to Coblentz, the country is inferior only to that which they had paſſed the preceding day. The poſition of the city on the Rhine, at the mouth of the Moſelle, is remarkably fine. The new part of the town is well built; the new palace is handſome, but the ſituation is by no means to be compared with that of the old one, which ſtood at the foot of the noble fortreſs of Elthrenherſtein, facing the Moſelle, which here pours its yellow ſtream into the Rhine, but is very inferior to the Thames. Of the Rhine one can never profeſs ſufficient admiration; it has every beauty that poetical deſcription hath attributed to it.

One wiſhes, it is true, to ſee more veſſels on the Rhine; but its navigation is impeded by heavy and injudicious taxation. The current is likewiſe extremely rapid, and veſſels aſcend with the greateſt difficulty; but large rafts of timber float down and give a peculiar character to the river.

Inſtead of proceeding by Mayence to Franckfort, they unfortunately took the road by Montabuer, Limbourg, and Konigſtein, and were jumbled over a continuation of rocky ſtones, to the imminent hazard of diſlocating their bones and breaking their carriage.

They were obliged to ſleep at Konigſtein at a wretched inn, which, however, they exchanged next morning for the red-houſe at Franckfort, one of the beſt in Europe. However, Franckfort affords little gaiety to the ſtranger except at a coronation, or during the time of the fair, when the mornings are enlivened by the buſtle of buſineſs, and the evenings paſs merrily in the relaxations of ſucceſs and in the ſpirit of occaſional indulgence. The chief ſtreet in the town is ſpacious; the buildings ſuch as wealthy merchants ſhould inhabit: but ſome of the houſes are disfigured by painting and taſteleſs embelliſhments. The town is well governed by its two burgomaſters and ſenates. The adjacent dependencies, ſituated in a flat plain, are marked out by four towers all viſible at once. The town is ſaid to contain thirty thouſand inhabitants, Romaniſts, Lutherans, Calviniſts, and Jews, all of which have now their places of public worſhip. The Lutheran ſpirit, however, prevails in the magiſtrature. The Romaniſts are not allowed to partake of the government, or to have a public proceſſion of the hoſt; and the Calviniſts were, till lately, obliged to have their churches at Bochenheim, in Hanau. The Jews are rich, but are compelled, by an uſeleſs and illiberal policy, to reſide in a ſeparate part of the town: in that oppreſſive ſpirit likewiſe with which they are every where marked out, they are obliged to fetch water to extinguiſh every fire that happens at Franckfort. The trade of this town, and indeed of Germany in general, is ſuppoſed to decreaſe, ſince the export of German commodities, through Franckfort, ſcarce amounts to a tenth of the imports from France, Holland, Italy, and other countries. The revenus, from cuſtom and exciſe, and contribution levies, amount to above 30,000l. per annum.

Thoſe who have introduction to the merchants of this town, may converſe with men of enlarged and liberal minds. The great reſort of ſtrangers has introduced a frankneſs of manners; and the traveller eaſily finds perſons as willing, as they are well qualified, to communicate information. He may amuſe himſelf alſo at the cabinet literaire, which is well ſupplied with books and foreign papers. The people at preſent have no public amuſement, but that of repairing to a kind of vaux-hall wood, down the Maine, where they divert themſelves with more good-humour than elegance, particularly drinking, and dancing what they call the *walſe*.

The Maine is not beautiful near Franckfort. The houſes on its banks are too cloſe to each other, and have no lawns or gardens deſcending to the river: they are built of wood or ſtone, and are ſlated; but bear no more marks of taſte in architecture than thoſe at Dulwich. The ramparts, as thoſe of many other towns in Germany, are generally planted with limes, which finely ſcent the air: they afford pleaſant walks to the inhabitants.

Our travellers viſited Heſſe-Caſſel, which is about one hundred miles from Franckfort. They paſſed through ſome of the territories of the Landgrave of Heſſe-Darmſtadt, and arrived the firſt day at Marburg, formerly an Imperial town, but now ſubject to the prince of Heſſe-Caſſel.

It has but a mean appearance; it is irregular and built on a ſmall eminence: the caſtle, which overtops it, is faſt verging to ruin: it commands a view of a country ſomewhat wild and romantic: the ſurrounding hills are well varied and well wooded. The univerſity here, though ſo near to Gottingen, flouriſhes. They look in vain, however, for college edifices, amidſt the poor buildings of the town. Marburg derives no ornament from the river Loghne, on which it is ſituated. The waters of this ſtream, however, though not brilliant, furniſh the largeſt cray-fiſh ever ſeen; and it is remarkable, that they continue black after they are boiled.

From Marburg to Caſſel, the diſtance is about ſixty miles, through a country well diverſified. They noticed, amidſt variety of vegetation, the beech and oak as very fine, and the weeping birch as remarkably elegant. The houſes, ſcattered here and there through the country, are built in a bad ſtyle, with croſs and differently coloured beams, like thoſe in Cheſhire.

Caſſel is a moſt beautiful town: it ſomewhat reſembles Bath. They took up their abode in the circus: the public buildings are handſome, and have a claſſical appearance; the manege is light and elegant; the pavilion is built in a good ſtyle of architecture, and pleaſantly ſituated in gardens perfumed and richly decorated with orange-trees; and enlivened by the cheerful notes of canary-birds, which fly wild and unconfined about them. The muſeum, which was built by the laſt landgrave, Frederick the ſecond, to whom the town is indebted for many of its public ornaments, is a noble building: the library, a magnificent room, about five hundred feet long, and forty feet broad. The muſeum contains a valuable collection of antique gems and ornaments, ſtuffed beaſts, ſtatues, buſts, cork models of buildings of Rome, &c. &c.

While they were at Caſſel, they of courſe drove to ſee the Waſen-Stein, where the preſent and preceding electors have expended very large ſums, in covering a hill with caſtles, caſcades, temples, woods, gardens, &c. The grounds are diſpoſed with great taſte; and an Engliſh park, with a few deer, is introduced to great advantage between the woods. The two buildings, in which the landgrave and his favorite counteſs reſide, are elegant. With the Chineſe village they found no fault; it is whimſical and pretty: but they were ſhewn alſo an apartment deſigned as a repreſentation of Tartarus; the windows of which were inflamed with ſtained glaſs, and which is filled with claſſical figures of Orpheus and Eurydice, Pluto and Proſerpine, Tantalus, and Ixion; the Danaidæ, Prometheus, Hercules, Cerberus, and other mythological perſonages, who may as well ceaſe to exiſt except in poetical deſcription.

They left Franckfort the day after their return from Caſſel. The country improved in beauty as they approached Mayence, July 6, which is about twenty miles from Franckfort.

Mayence, or Mentz is finely ſituated on the confluence of the Maine and Rhine. The adjacent country is covered with vineyards, among which, not far diſtant, is the pleaſant village of Hockheim, where the famous hock wine is produced, of which the Auguſtines of Mayence and Franckfort have the excluſive poſſeſſion. Mayence, with its cathedral and palace, preſents a grand appearance to the traveller, who approaches it by the road. They entered it by the bridge of boats, which extends about ſeven hundred and ſixty-ſix feet acroſs the Rhine. This river, however, is near fourteen hundred feet broad, where it receives the Maine, not far from the town.

The palace of Martinſburg, is a Gothic building of the fifteenth century. It contains ſeveral magnificent and well furniſhed apartments, which command a view of the Rhine, and the Rhindgau, but which exhibit but few pictures. The cathedral cannot be admired for its architecture, though the tower would be rather grand, if one could diveſt it of ſome trifling appendages, added by way of ornament. The foundations of the building were laid by Archbiſhop Conrade, in the twelfth century.

There are ten collegiate churches at Mayence, five convents for men and four for women, which are certainly ſufficient in proportion to the number of inhabitants, which amount to thirty thouſand. The nobility pique themſelves much on the purity of their deſcent. The chapter preſerves, in ſome meaſure, its freedom of election. It enjoys a revenue of near 300,000 guilders. The provoſt's houſe indicates the affluence of his ſituation: it is furniſhed with great ſplendour, and with more luxuriancy of taſte, ſome think, than becomes an eccleſiaſtic. The clergy, however, have eſtabliſhed a good reputation here, by the propriety of their general conduct: and the late and preſent elector have laboured very aſſiduouſly for their reformation, and have ſuppreſſed ſome monaſteries, applying the buildings and revenue to good purpoſes. The education of the people has been alſo attended to; and the reading of the ſcriptures not diſcouraged. The nobility here live in great ſtate. The narrow ſtreets hardly allow a paſſage for the old dignified carriages.

In the ſummer the higher ranks quit Mayence for their ſmall wooden houſes, which are thrown prettily together, ſomething in the Tunbridge-Wells ſtyle, about two or three miles from the town. Strangers, and particularly the Engliſh, are well received at Mayence, and obtain, without difficulty, admiſſion to elegant ſociety.

Leaving Mayence, they drove by Oppenheim to Worms, by the ſide of the Rhine, which ſpreads itſelf between banks fringed with verdure to the edge of the water: its ſweeps are finely broken by iſlands. The neighbouring hills, however, are leſs rich than thoſe they had ſeen before.

Manheim is a very beautiful town; it is fortified after Cohorn's manner: its ſtreets are ſpacious and regular. The elector's palace is ſituated at the junction of the Rhine and Necker: it has little exterior beauty of architecture, though it has the appearance of a palace. As the town has but little trade it ſuffers much from the abſence of the court. The electreſs, as ſhe is called, reſides at Okerſheim, which is a few miles only from Manheim: the elector, being of the Romiſh faith, prefers Munich, as he there reſides among bons catholiques; for here, though ſome of the higher ranks profeſs the religion of the court, the bulk of the people has embraced the reformed principles; and the Calviniſts have the largeſt portion of eccleſiaſtical property. The people at Manheim ſay, that the elector's confeſſor teaches him, that it is more meritorious to make heretics miſerable than profeſſors of the true faith: they ſeem, indeed, to have imbibed the democratical ſpirit; but it ſhews itſelf in too low and daring inſolence to conciliate the higher ranks to its party. Political ſubjects, however, begin to be diſcuſſed, and the diſcuſſion will lead to the diſcovery of ſome ſubjects for diſcontent. The place ſwarms with refugee French; the Table D'Hotes reſound with their noiſy politics, upon which converſation is in vain prohibited.

Manheim itſelf contains near twenty-five thouſand inhabitants, including a garriſon of five thouſand men. The ſituation of the town, which was built in oppoſition to Heidelburg, was injudiciouſly choſen: the water is very bad and unwholeſome; and leſs advantage is derived from the neighbourhood of the Rhine than might have been expected: it is not even ſupplied with fiſh from it, the ſtream being too wide and too rapid for nets: and it is proverbially remarked at Manheim, that unleſs the land be deluged and damaged by inundations, the river is of no value.

After leaving Manheim, they ſtopped a few miles from the town to look at the elector's palace and gardens at Schweſſingen: the palace is ſeldom thought worth the trouble of a viſit; the gardens are large, and adorned with canals, orangeries, ſtatues, fountains, berceaus, amorous neptunes, cupids riding on ſwans, ſtags, ſpouting water, &c. &c. very handſome to be ſure; but conſidering that the elector ſeldom reſides in this country, and has ſo many palaces, it is hardly worth while to ſpend 40,000 guilders every year to keep them up.

Inſtead of taking the Heidelburg road from hence, which would not have led them to deviate much from their route, they drove over a ſandy country, through woods of fir, about thirty miles to Waghenſel; and had, for the firſt time, reaſon to complain of a German inn, Waghenſel being but a ſmall village; they left it, however, early next morning, and drove over rich tobacco lands, and through delightful woods, to Carlſruhe, the chief reſidence of the margrave of Baden, whoſe beautiful territories run along the Rhine to the borders of Switzerland, though ſeparated by ſome intervening diſtricts. This is a very neat town and conſtructed in a remarkable manner, ſince all the ſtreets are terminated with a front view of the palace; and conſtitute, at it were, the radii of an half circle. The palace of Carlſruhe contains little deſerving notice. Strangers, and particularly Engliſhmen, who ſtay any time at Carlſruhe, are uſually invited to partake of the hoſpitality and cheerful pleaſures of this court: they are received with much affability.

At Raſtade, fifteen miles from Carlſruhe, they looked at another palace, where they ſaw nothing remarkable, except a cabinet of Turkiſh arms taken from the Turks about a century ſince, by an anceſtor of the late margrave; and the room in which the treaty of Raſtade was concluded, in 1714, by Villars and Eugene. From the top of this palace, which commands an extenſive proſpect, they diſcerned, at about ten leagues diſtance, the ſpires of Straſburg.

In their drive to Bune, which is about twelve miles diſtant from Raſtade, they could not but remark, how much the character of this country muſt be changed: for though the hills are topped with ruined caſtles and broken walls, which add great beauty to the pictureſque ſcenery of the country, where well wooded, paſture, and arable land, are delightfully intermixed, not a modern houſe, of appearance beyond a cottage, is to be ſeen. The people ſeem but thinly ſcattered: the women are here and in other parts of Germany the chief labourers; they appear to have great ſtrength, and brawny limbs; they wear a very large ſtraw hat, that is both paraſol and parapluie; and exhibit under ſhort petticoats, legs thick as any in Scotland, and as little adorned with ſhoes and ſtockings.

The country from Bune to Freiburg, in Briſgaw, which is about ſixty miles further, is finely cultivated: the riſing grounds are occaſionally covered with vineyards; and the valley of Rinſing, which ſlopes from a fine chain of hills into rich meadows and paſtures, is animated with cattle. They paſſed through ſome Imperial towns which profeſs the Romiſh faith; and others which are chiefly Lutheran.

Freiburg was formerly the reſidence of the biſhops of Baſle, who quitted it in 1551, when the canton of Baſle joined in the Helvetic union. The cathedral is light and elegant, though diſfigured by painting in the German taſte.

After leaving Freiburg they diſcovered the ſnowy tops of the Swiſs mountains. They remarked in yeſterday's and this day's journey that many of the trees were dead, and found that they were deſtroyed by the ſeverity of the winter preceding the laſt. The women of the country, between Freiburg and Baſle, wear their hair bound fancifully enough with ribbon, though ſome prefer a ſmall hat crimpled up like a ſhrivelled muſhroom, which is very ugly.

They arrived, after a ride of about forty miles, at Baſle, by ſix o'clock in the evening, or rather ſeven o'clock, reckoning by the clocks of Baſle, which, for ſome reaſon not well remembered, are always an hour advanced. They took up their abode at les Trois Rois, as they ſtyle the three eaſtern ſages. Their rooms overhung the Rhine, which ran rapid under their windows.

Baſle has been filled with emigrants from France. It has no ſtreets or buildings remarkable for beauty; a modern houſe or two, indeed, exhibit a ſtyle of architecture ſuperior to the plain character of the reſt of the town. The cathedral is chiefly remarkable for containing the tombs of Eraſmus, and Gertrude, wife of the emperor Rhodolph the firſt: the ramparts are pleaſant. Our travellers think the inhabitants of the town amount to about ſixteen or ſeventeen thouſand. The town appears, indeed, thin of inhabitants: the numbers decreaſe becauſe the burgherſhip is very rarely conferred on ſtrangers. The manners of the people are plain and ſimple: there is no parade of equipage, no theatre, no buſtle of buſineſs, no throngs of idleneſs. The univerſity at Baſle does not flouriſh. The library here contains ſome antiques and ſome natural curioſities, with ſome fine pictures and drawings of Holbein, which are highly preſerved, and ſhew the progreſſive improvement of his pencil: ſome of them were painted when he was in his ſixteenth year.

They rode one evening to ſee the ſamous garden at Arleſheim: it is compoſed of ſome pleaſant walks, which aſcend in a natural, eaſy manner through woods, on the ſide of a hill, and which open upon ſome fine points of view over Alſatia and the adjacent country. There are ſome well-contrived grottoes in the grounds; in one of which is a bold repreſentation of a Reſurrection, which is ſo contrived as to produce a great effect.

CHAP. II.

Entrance into Switzerland—Deſcription of Stein—Lauffenburg—Havenſtein—Coblentz—Dine at Lauchingen—Arrive at Schaffhauſen—Its Republican Appearance—The Fall of the Rhine—A Wedding—Sleep at Stuchbohn—Proceed to Manebach—Iſland of Richenau—Conſtance—Viſit the Iſland of Meinau—Hoof—Roſcha—Convent of Monaburg—St. Gallens—Arrive at Glarus—Village of Gaiſſe—Appenzel—Oberreid—Sennwald—Salitz—Werdenburg, &c. &c.—Baths of Pfeifer—Lake of Wallenſtadt—Weſen—Pantenbruck—Lenthal—Return to Glarus.

HAVING hired horſes for their carriage, and bidets to ride, they left Baſle July the 12th, and rode about ſix leagues by the ſide of the Rhine, to Stein, a village delightfully ſituated on that river. It is at the foot of ſome hills which command a delicious proſpect. They aſcended to the ſummit of one, which is diſtinguiſhed by a projecting rock, and had a magnificent view of ſome hills richly clad, and of the river winding through a beautiful valley. At the firſt entrance into Switzerland they were ſtruck with the greatneſs of the materials which nature has to work on.

The next day was appropriated to mark the rich volume of vapour rolling along the top of the hills, which gradually diſperſed after a ſullen morning, deſcending occaſionally in light ſhowers, between which the ſun enlivened an enchanting country: they rode through woods of oaks, and ſpiry firs, by the foot of well-planted hills. The Rhine has, indeed, more of the green than of the ſilver caſt.

The majority of the towns through which they paſſed, after leaving Baſle, belong to the emperor, whoſe territories ſkirt the frontiers of Switzerland: they ſtopped at Lauffenburg, which is about ſix miles from Stein, to look at its old caſtle, and a fall of the Rhine, which, pent up here in a narrow channel, throws itſelf precipitouſly over rocks, when it meets with reſiſtance and foams in violent eddies with a boiling ſurface.

At no great diſtance from hence they ſtopped at Havenſtein, and aſcended a ſteep hill to examine the ruins of a caſtle which formerly belonged to the counts of Freiburg, and which was thrown down by an earthquake in 1356. As it is on the frontiers of Soleure and Baſle, it was doubtleſs formerly a place of ſome importance. From its broken walls they had a pleaſing view of the Rhine, and ſome neighbouring hills.

Having continued their ride by the banks of the Rhine, at the foot of ſloping hills on which the vines climbed up, as it were, to meet the ſun, they paſſed by Coblentz, a town of which the name, as well as that of Coblentz at the junction of the Rhine and Moſelle, is deſcriptive of its ſituation, being derived from Confluentia, for here the Aar and another river bring their waters to increaſe the broad and rapid ſtream of the Rhine.

The road from Baſle to Schaffhauſen is more intereſting than travellers have in general reported. The cottages on the hills are certainly pictureſque; they reſemble thoſe which may be ſeen in the neighbouring parts of Germany, being built of dark fir with projecting roofs. The dreſs of the men has an antique caſt, they wear a kind of puffed Spaniſh breeches.

Our travellers dined at Lauchingen, which belongs to prince Schwartzenburg, and is on the verge of the Black Foreſt, which is the largeſt foreſt in Germany, and ſaid to be ſixty days journey in extent.

They arrived late at Schaffhauſen, having deviated from their road to ſee the ruins of a very fine caſtle, ſituated on a lofty hill about two miles from Lauchingen; from whence they had a view of a vaſt circumference of country, of fields and mountains covered with ſnow.

Schaffhauſen, the capital of the ſmalleſt canton in Switzerland, exhibits an appearance of republican equality. The houſes are plain and ſomewhat dirty: there is no contraſt of diſproportionate ſplendour; no palace to excite the envy of the neighbouring buildings: on the other hand, there is no edifice for the ſtranger to admire; no monument for national vanity or taſte to point out. The free ſtates of antiquity, long before the private citizen was well lodged, erected public edifices with emulation of ornament; and republics, as well as monarchies, had magnificent baths, theatres, and temples. The genius of Switzerland is different: the Swiſs are not rich; they are fond of ſimplicity, and conſider, with a jealous eye, whatever indicates the approach of luxury and foreign taſte. The fortreſs, and the curious bridge by Ulric Grubenman, of Tuffen, were the only public works that attracted attention.

The firſt object, after their arrival at Schaffhauſen, was to ſee the fall of the Rhine, whither they drove as ſoon as the weather, then rainy, would permit. Deſcriptions of ſuch ſcenes are always faint: ſomething, however, may be attempted. The whole river, after rimpling and foaming over ſeveral ſcattered breakers, runs, by different channels, againſt ſome beautiful rocks which riſe ſeveral feet from the water, covered with ſhrubby wood: beat back from theſe it ruſhes round, and by three grand openings precipitates its fall, in accumulated maſſes, for fifty or ſixty feet perpendicular, raging and foaming with wonderful violence, and throwing up a thick duſt and ſhower of ſpray. In the view from the front, as the banks approach in the perſpective, the river appears almoſt ſurrounded by a fine amphitheatre of hills richly covered with trees. After viewing it at the bottom of the deſcent, and looking up at its arched fall, and after contemplating its broad and magnificent front from the beach, they croſſed over in a little boat to the caſtle of Lauffen, in which a bailiff, from Zurich, reſides. From the room there, which overhangs the cataract, they ſaw the river, under different circumſtances, ſpreading into great variety of ſurface before its fall: in ſome parts gliding ſmooth and tranſparent over poliſhed and rounded ſwellings of rocks, in others, broken, ſnowy, and unequal, till it ruſhes headlong down its deep deſcent. They wiſhed to contemplate this amazing fall in every point of view, and therefore deſcended to the planks and beach beneath it, and were covered by its ſpray and ſtunned by its noiſe.

They wiſhed to have proceeded to the Benedictine convent, on the banks of the Rhine, but the evening began to cloſe, and their minds were filled with reflections on what they had already ſeen.

They had no introduction to perſons reſident at Schaffhauſen, and contented themſelves with the ſociety of their Table d'Hote, which conſiſted of their hoſt and ſome travellers, both Swiſs and foreigners, who afforded them often intereſting converſation. A ſhort time after they were preſent at a fiſher-woman's wedding, at which the bride and bridegroom's friends were dancing the walſe with much apparent glee and good-humour: the ſumptuary laws, which prohibit dancing, being ſuſpended occaſionally by order of the magiſtrates, who diſpenſe with them on the payment of a ſmall fine.

There was a profuſe ſupper, at which a collection was made, as is uſual at Swiſs weddings, for the dowry of the bride.

After leaving Schaffhauſen they drove twelve miles to Stein, which is finely ſituated on the Rhine, where it appears with the expanſion of a lake, and forms the Zeller Sea, or inferior lake. It is an independent town, under the protection of the eight ancient cantons; near it is a citadel, called Klingen, from whence it is cuſtomary to ſalute, with cannon, all travellers who arrive with four horſes to their carriage: our travellers had but three to their chaiſe, they did not receive the honour.

They ſlept at a ſmall village of Stuchhohn, where, as their hoſt was a butcher, their ſupper was better than their beds. The church ſerves alternately for the Romaniſts and Calviniſts of the village.

The next morning they ſkirted the margin of the lake, about three or four miles, to a ſmall village called Manebach, whence they rowed about a mile acroſs the lake to the little iſland of Richenau, which is about a league and a half in length, and a mile in breadth. The iſland, and ſome territory adjacent to the lake, belong to a convent in the iſland which is ſubject to the biſhop of Conſtance, and which formerly was filled with between five and ſix hundred Benedictines: it at preſent entertains only ten, received from different convents, for an occaſional reſidence. The library contains many ancient manuſcripts and books.

They afterwards called at the bailiff's caſtle, who receives about 100l. per annum, as governor of the iſland, a ſum inadequate to the ſupport of his office and family, as his unfurniſhed rooms and apparent poverty did ſadly teſtify. They dined at this pretty iſland, at a ſmall houſe in an inland ſpot of green, from which the whole lake was concealed; and afterwards enjoyed, from an eminence in the centre, a view of the whole territory, the lake, and the fortreſs of Haut-Viel on a diſtant rock, which belongs to the duke of Wirtenburg. In the evening they returned to the continent, and drove three or four miles to Conſtance, which is built on an uncommonly fine ſituation between the two lakes. This once populous city, which flouriſhed while the Reformed faith was eſtabliſhed, began to decline as ſoon as the Romiſh religion was again ſet up under Charles the fifth, in oppoſition to the endeavours of the league of Smalkalde. Though it is ſo finely ſituated for trade, the repeated attempts which have been made to eſtabliſh manufactories have always failed. The diſtance from Vienna, the jealouſy of the ſenate of Conſtance, the pride of the nobility, and the ſpirit of the Romiſh religion which is unpropitious to trade, have been enumerated amidſt the cauſes that have been contributed to ſtifle the exertions of the Swiſs. The town has the appearance of decline; it contains about ſix thouſand inhabitants; but its deſerted ſtreets would not be too much thronged by ten times that number; they retain, however, ſomewhat of elegance: and the quay, the adjacent white buildings, reflected by the tranſparent waters of the lake; the neighbouring convents, and the view of the ſnowy furrowed mountains of Appenzel, give a ſtriking and intereſting character to the town. The room in which the council was held in 1414, which contributed to inculcate the ſubjection of the papal power to general councils, is now a repoſitory for lumber, old armour, watermen's jackets, &c. The emperor's and the pope's chair ſtill remain.

July 18, they viſited the iſland of Meinau, in the Superior Lake or Boden Sea: it is about a league diſtance from Conſtance, and is entered, from the ſhore, by a long bridge of planks; it is a beautiful clump of land, of about one hundred and fifty acres, covered with vineyards and luxuriant trees. The governor, who is chief of the knights of the teutonic order, to which the iſland belongs, lives in a caſtle here, which has ſome fine rooms that command a magnificent view of the lake and its noble environs, a view ſuperior to any that the grand maſters anciently enjoyed from Acre or Marienburg, the ſeats of their firſt reſidence. The caſtle, however, preſents but a faint image of the ancient ſplendour of the grand maſters, who, ſince Walter of Cromberg was put under the ban of the empire, have never recovered their opulence and power.

Leaving Conſtance on the evening of the 19th, they travelled through vineyards and orchards, by the ſide of the lake, till they were overtaken by the night, accompanied with rain and lightning. The road being very bad, they arrived, with ſome difficulty and danger, under the direction of a guide, who preceded them with a lantern, at a ſmall village called Hoof, near Romanſhorn, in the canton of St. Gallen, where the civil poſſeſſors of an indifferent houſe accommodated them with fiſh and decent beds. The next morning they found, that as the lake had conſiderably ſwelled, their carriage could not paſs by the common road, which runs cloſe to the lake: they therefore hired a veſſel large enough to receive themſelves and the chaiſe; and ſending the horſes by land, they ſailed to Roſchah, a ſmall burgh belonging to the abbot of St. Gallen. The ſhores on each ſide of the lake are rich and pleaſingly adorned with variety of ground and buildings. The Thergau, with its ſcattered farms and paſtures, reminded them of Weſtmoreland; but the houſes were not white. They landed early at Roſchah, which is a cheerful town, with the apparent opulence of trade. After dinner they walked about half a mile, to the convent of Monaburg, which, though a religious eſtabliſhment, was erected in 1489, with the uncharitable deſign of injuring the town of St. Gall. The people of St. Gall and Appenzel demoliſhed, however, the firſt building before it was finiſhed; and it was re-built in the year following. The Stadtholder of St. Gall, and three other conventuals reſide here, and provide for the affairs of government conjointly with the council palatine of St. Gall. The view of the lake, from the convent, is extenſive and grand. The magazine at Roſchah, is a large and handſome building. There is a great market for corn here, which is brought acroſs the lake from Suabia. There is alſo a conſiderable trade in cloths, though that, as well as the Swiſs manufactures in general, had ſuffered much from the treaty of commerce then eſtabliſhed between England and France. Adjacent to the town is a large common, where the ſubjects of the diſtrict take the oaths of fidelity to the abbot of St. Gall, after his election, and to the deputies of the four cantons, Zurich, Lucerne, Glarus, and Schweitz, who are protectors and co-regents. The abbot is elected at St. Gall, by a chapter of ſeventy-two Benedictines, under whoſe direction he acts. He is a titular prince of the empire.

From Roſchah to St. Gall they had a drive of two leagues, admiring the beautiful hills richly dotted with cottages, on which an evening ſun ſhed its cheerful rays after a ſhowery morning.

St. Gallens, or St. Gall, is a cheerful clean town, ſituated in a fine well watered valley, in the centre of the abbot's territories, who, himſelf reciprocally is ſurrounded by the town, which is independent of him. Its inhabitants are Proteſtants, and have been often engaged in very ſerious diſputes with the abbot.

The preſent prince, however, has conciliated the people by his conduct.

They arrived at Glarus on the 26th. The guide whom they hired at St. Gall, who was a ragged cheerful fellow, conducted them through a wild and romantic country to Gaiſſe, their road winding round the edges of hills, the ſides and the baſes of which were covered with lofty and aſpiring firs.

Gaiſſe is a village of Rhodes Exterior, which is the Proteſtant diviſion of the county of Appenzel. The neighbouring hills are naked of trees, but covered with wooden houſes, roofed with poliſhed fir, cut like tiles, which are remarkably neat. Theſe houſes belong chiefly to the muſlin manufacturers, who enjoy competence and liberty on their healthy mountains. Each houſe is ſurrounded by its little territory; and every hill, in ſpite of the natural poverty of the ſoil, is animated with population.

The village of Gaiſſe is as much reſorted to as Abergavenny in Wales, for the benefit of drinking the goat's whey, which is brought every morning from a neighbouring mountain, and which is conſidered as very efficacious in purifying the blood. It is ſuppoſed to derive its medicinal qualities from ſome very ſalutary herbs on which the goats brouze. The place is moſt frequented about the time of Eaſter.

After dinner they walked about two miles to the brow of a hill, from which they had a grand rude proſpect of ſome frowning mountains, at the bottom of which the Rhine winds ſluggiſhly through a black valley. On their return they were led, by people who had never witneſſed the ſtrength of a London porter, to ſee a blackſmith, who threw from his ſhoulder, without difficulty, a ſtone, weighing 112 pounds, to a diſtance of ſeveral feet. As they could procure but four horſes at St. Gall, their guide was under the neceſſity of walking, and he carried their portmanteau with great cheerfulneſs, rather than ſuffer it to load one of the horſes. In theſe hilly countries the pedeſtrian may beat the horſeman; they obliged their ſervant, however, occaſionally to reſign his horſe and exchange duties.

In the evening they proceeded through fine well watered paſtures to Appenzel, which is a dirty little town for the metropolis of a canton, and affords but miſerable accommodation: it is ſituated in a hollow bottom beneath ſome ſhaggy mountains. They diſliked their firſt inn, and forſook it for a worſe, being obliged to ſup in a room where ſome were in bed, and a party playing at queſtions and commands, and ſinging, in a ſtyle, however, which their guide, who was very faſtidious, treated with great contempt: they could by no means perſuade him to join in their mirth, but he diverted our travellers with many lively ſallies on their amuſements, which he ſtyled calfiſh and low. The gradations of conceit are curious. The ſupercilious pride of their guide would have been probably ſoftened, if the women, who joined in the party had been more pleaſing.

They were much ſtruck with the difference, which they beheld, between the two diviſions of this country. In the Proteſtant part they admired cleanlineſs, induſtry, and comfort; in the Roman-Catholic, they ſaw dirt, indolence, and poverty. The people about Appenzel have much of the roughneſs of a republican ſpirit.

They left Appenzel early next morning without regret, and rode through narrow paths by the ſide of the river Sitler, a ſhallow ſtream which rimples over a ſtony bed. They looked at the Wiſſen bath, where they taſted the ſtrong goat's milk, which is eſteemed almoſt equally with that of Gaiſſe, and ſaw ſome invalids entubbed in hot baths. The mineral waters, which flow from all the neighbouring hills, are uſed with ſucceſs in nervous and gouty caſes. From this place they toiled up an enormous mountain, to an hermitage, the object of the deviation from their road. One of our travellers more brave than the reſt, who ſucceſſively declined the enterpriſe, though they aſcended high enough to enjoy a fine view of the lake of Conſtance, and to ſee an hermit who has lived there in penitential reſtrictions for eight years paſſed by a narrow projecting edge of the rock, holding by a rope, which ſome friendly attention had fixed in the ſide, to the hermitage, where he tolled the bell to announce his arrival. Having examined the chapel, which has an altar with trumpery decorations, dawbings, and inſcriptions, he looked into ſome dark caverns and excavations, in which the peaſants, who reſide on the top of the mountain, keep their milk. He afterwards paſſed through an opening of the rock, from one of the caverns, and crawled up the ſteep rocky ſide of the mountain. Having at length, with great labour, attained the brow, as he haſtened to the ſummit he ſaw a thick miſt ſurround the whole circle, and ſhut up the grand and extenſive proſpect, of which he had ſcarce caught a glimpſe.

The miſt continued impenetrably thick while he ſtayed. He was ſoon ſurrounded by ſome mountaineers, of whoſe jargon he could underſtand nothing but that they wanted money, which he thought it prudent to give them. After examining a great cleft in the mountain, which contained a large quantity of ſnow that has probably remained there for many years, he began to deſcend; the fearleſs boy who conducted him, went on with the confidence and activity of a mountain goat, by a route different from that by which they had aſcended: our traveller relying on his knowledge, followed him ſome yards, though under the neceſſity of deſcending on his ſide, and of holding by bits of rock, ſenſible of infallible death if he ſhould once loſe his hold. They ſoon arrived at a ſteep ridge of ſward, hanging over a perpendicular precipice, which the boy was preparing to paſs; he could ſee nothing, however, by which he could poſſibly keep himſelf from falling, and therefore inſiſted, very vehemently, on the boy's return, though it was with ſome difficulty that he could communicate his orders to his German conceptions by ſigns and geſticulations; they again, however, mounted with much toil, and the boy at laſt conducted him by a leſs tremendous, though very precipitous path. They paſſed through a wood of firs; and while he was clinging, with apprehenſion, to the friendly roots and rocks, in a deſcent often perpendicular, the boy was rambling on all ſides for wood-ſtrawberries, with which he refreſhed our traveller, who, after ſome hours, arrived ſafe and joined his companions, who had been much alarmed on his account.

They ſet off again in the evening with an additional guide, who was judged neceſſary: he had the behaviour of an honeſt man, a character to which the men of Appenzel are not always entitled. They travelled about 8 or 9 miles of the vileſt road, without any exception, that was ever paſſed; it lay chiefly through woods; the worſt parts of the worſt roads ſeemed to have been compiled together. They had ſtones at once ſharp and ſlippery, mud and clay, ſteep aſcents and headlong deſcents, uneven ſtairs formed by trunks of fir placed laterally, often broken or ſunk irregularly, and gaping with muddy crevices. Thanks, however, to their cautious and experienced horſes, they arrived ſafe, and before dark, at Oberreid, a ſmall Roman-Catholic village in the Rheinthal. The laſt part of their ride was by the ſide of the Rhine, which runs through the valley that they overlooked the day before in their walk from Gaiſſe. The valley is little adorned by vegetation, but it is enlivened by ſmall cottages encircled by fields. They ſeemed to excite much attention in the village; the children followed them in crowds.

They left Oberreid the next morning, and rode about twelve miles to Werdenburg, through a broad willowy valley, ſometimes by the ſide of the Rhine, which, as they mount towards its ſource, flows in a contracted and ſtony bed. The hills, near which they rode, are covered with fine paſturage, bounded towards the ſummit with firs. Above the firs they ſee the barren rock often tipped with ſnow. The ſhort graſs of the Swiſs mountains affords as fine ſeed for cattle as the celebrated paſturage of Mount Libanus, or the Caſtravan hills. The lower parts, however, of the mountain are now deprived of the ornament of cattle, which is driven in the ſummer to feed on the ſummit.

They paſſed through the village of Sennwald and that of Salitz, where baron John Philip was murdered by his nephew George Ulric, in 1596.

Werdenburg is pleaſantly ſituated amidſt well clothed hills: at the foot of Schloſburg there is a caſtle of a bailiff of the canton of Glarus. They began to remark ſome ſtrong ſymptoms of poverty in this part of Switzerland. From Werdenburg they had a moſt beautiful ride of four or five leagues, to Ragatz, paſſing through Sargans, a ſmall village on the Rhine, near which, moſt romantically ſituated on a rock, ſtands the bailiff's caſtle, which was formerly the reſidence of the counts of Werdenburg Sargans, and has more of the dignity and ſtyle of an ancient caſtle than any yet ſeen in Switzerland. Oppoſite to Sargans, on the German ſide of the river, is another caſtle, which commands a narrow defile leading into the Meyenfield. The mountains on each ſide of the Rhine are beautifully covered with trees and houſes at an immenſe height. They ſlept at Ragatz, which is ſituated on the Tamina, a river which frequently overflows the country when ſwelled by diſſolved ſnows, or hurried beyond its banks by ſudden torrents.

The next morning they proceeded to walk to Pfeiffer; they toiled up a ſteep hill: the day was exceſſively hot. One of our adventurers having arrived at the top, walked into the convent, and entered into converſation with one of the monks, who introduced him to the ſuperior; he invited him to dine with him, which our hero did, in his apartment, with one of the monks and ſome gentlemen from Zurich. The ſuperior is a titular prince of the empire, intelligent and well bred. As our traveller did not underſtand German, their converſation was carried on in Latin, in which they mutually regretted the difference of accent. After coffee, and a good concert, in which ſeveral of the monks performed, our hero took leave of his hoſpitable friends, having had no time to ſee the library. Wiſhing to join his fellow-travellers he proceeded to the baths of Pfeiffer, which is about a league from the convent. He deſcended by the brink of a tremendous chaſm, and down a perpendicular paſſage cut into ſtairs, to the baths, where his friends had dined in company with ſome monks of the convent of Pfeiffer and Diſendis, who furniſhed them with introductory letters to the different convents which they projected to viſit. Theſe letters were written in Latin, and with a conciſeneſs not inelegant.

They were tempted here to viſit the ſource of the hot water which ſupplies the baths; and having procured a conductor, began the dangerous journey. After entering a frightful cleft of the rock, which admitted a feeble light to direct them, they walked about half a mile on boards attached to the ſide of the rock, often ſloping and ſlippery, and ſometimes placed ſo diſtant from the ſide, that they had no ſupport from it. Below them, about fifty feet, at the bottom of a deep rocky channel, roared a rapid river burſting through a very narrow paſſage. If their feet had ſlipped they were inevitably loſt. When they arrived at the end they ſaw but little to repay them for the riſque which they had incurred; a guſh of water, of about thirty degrees of heat, iſſuing from the rock. They were ſoon ſatisfied, and returned from the dripping rock as expeditiouſly as the danger would admit. They ſtaid to look at the company, ſome of whom had a more reſpectable appearance than any perſons whom they had yet ſeen: they were variouſly engaged; ſome were at the Romiſh chapel, ſome bathing, and others dancing or playing at billiards; the amuſements of a Romiſh Sunday. As theſe people ſupped at the primitive hour of ſix, our travellers were perſuaded to ſtay, and afterwards returned to Ragatz by a different but equally beautiful walk, though their Swiſs ſervant, who is ever attentive, had contrived to bring horſes, in caſe they ſhould chooſe to ride.

Having, from apprehenſion of want of time, relinquiſhed their projected ſcheme of viſiting the ſources of the Rhine, and given up, with regret, the proſpect of the Griſons, any further than the peep which they obtained from Pfeiffer, they ſet off very early next morning, and rode twelve miles in the ſhadow of ſome beautiful hills very richly adorned, and ſprinkled with a variety of the moſt pictureſque houſes and villages, to Wallenſtadt, on the approach to which, the lake of Wallenſtadt opened moſt elegantly between the hills.

The village of Wallenſtadt is ſituated at the eaſtern end of the lake, in the bailliage of Sargans, at the foot of the Seven-headed Mountain, the rocky tops of which are called the Seven Princes. The lake has decreaſed and retired from the village. After walking to a curious ſpring not far from the village, they intended, in the evening, to go by water to Weſen, but ſuddenly a ſtorm was introduced by a violent wind, which, in a few minutes, transformed the ſmooth mirror-like lake, which had juſt before reflected the bright rays of the ſun, into an outrageous ſea, on which it would have been very dangerous to embark. The inn-keeper at Wallenſtadt having made our travellers a moſt exorbitant charge, had the inſolence, on their remonſtrating with him, to ſet them at defiance, though he could not but admit that the charge was extravagantly high. It was vain to diſpute, for as he himſelf was the advover of the town, there was no one to whom they could apply for redreſs. They therefore paid the unjuſt extortion, and ordered their horſes; but their hoſt, who had been offended by their complaints of his injuſtice, had ſeduced their guide to refuſe to accompany them any further by land, unleſs they would ſubmit to an additional charge of twelve livres for this day, under pretence of bad roads. As they had conſented to take this man further, at his own particular requeſt, and had hitherto found him a civil honeſt fellow, they were as much ſurpriſed as provoked at this; and their good Swiſs was ſo hurt at the treatment which they experienced, that he vented his feelings in tears. Reſolved not to conſent to this unreaſonable demand, they paid the man for the days that he had travelled with them, and ſet off, determined to walk from the inhoſpitable houſe. The ſtorm, however, coming on violently with thunder, lightning, and heavy rain, compelled them to take ſhelter under the hængework of the bridge, cloſe to the village. In the mean time their guide repented of his conduct, came to them, confeſſed his fault, and earneſtly, with tears of repentance, entreated to proceed with them: to which, after much ſolicitation, they conſented. The evening and the ſcheme brightened, and they again ſet off; the guide amuſed them on their way with exclamations againſt his own ingratitude, and the raſcally arts of their landlord.

They travelled ſlowly, between two or three leagues, to a ſmall village on the lake, called Mullihorn, having paſſed over a ſomewhat dangerous road, with frequent aſcents and deſcents, at the edge of holes and precipices, ſometimes creeping along a ſhelving bank cloſe to the lake, meeting occaſionally the mules of the Milaneſe and other Italian merchants, which, with their projecting baggage and unaccommodating manners, produced diſagreeable rencontres on narrow banks. Theſe merchants bring coffee, chocolate, ſugars, and ſpices, to exchange for the muſlins of St. Gall, Zurich, &c.

The lake of Wallenſtadt aſſumes ſomewhat of a ſolemn caſt from the black and gloomy mountains which overſhadow its ſurface. Thoſe to the north are lofty and ſteep, and deſcend rapidly, often to the brink of the water. In ſome parts narrow ſlips of fields ſkirt the edge, and occaſional platforms project into the lake, with houſes acceſſible only from the water. The ſouthern ſide, along which they paſſed, is enlivened by paſtures, woody walks, and cottages with gardens. The lake is not broad; it opens into a variety of ſtriking points of view: it is ſubject to very ſudden changes, and is, in many places, rendered dangerous by lurking rocks; they paddled upon it in the evening, and admired "its dark billowy bays." A kind of diurnal monſoon prevails on this lake; the wind generally blows from eaſt to weſt from the break of day for ſome hours, and afterwards from weſt to eaſt till ſun-ſet.

Next morning they went by water from Mullihorn to Weſen; it rained hard during their voyage, and they covered themſelves with the ſail. When the watermen foreſee a ſquall, which their long wooden boats are ill calculated to encounter, they put in, as they did once or twice, and ſhelter themſelves under cavities of the rock.

Some beautiful waterfalls glide from the mountains, which riſe on each ſide of this lake, often falling in a fine ſilvery ſtream. Weſen is elegantly ſituated at the bottom of the lake, near where the Linth, or Limmat, which joins the lake of Zurich with that of Wallenſtadt, falls into the latter. The chief lakes in Switzerland are ſo connected together that they facilitate the communication between different parts, and afford opportunities for inland intercourſe, very important in a country diſtant from the ſea, and of which the rivers can be of no uſe to navigation unleſs they ſhould be hereafter employed to ſupply canals. The Swiſs manufactures are chiefly exported by land, as well thoſe which go to Franckfort and Leipſick, as thoſe which are conveyed to France and Italy.

Weſen is in the bailliage of Gaſter, which belongs to the canton of Schweitz and Glarus; it was formerly fortified: from thence they walked about two miles to Mollis, where the brave Glaronnois, who were killed at the battle of Næfels, were buried. Næfels is not far diſtant; they ſaw it as they paſſed from Weſen. The Glaronnois fought for liberty from advantageous poſts on their mountains, and loſt but fifty-five out of three hundred and eighty men, contending againſt thirteen thouſand or fifteen thouſand Auſtrians, of whom they killed one hundred and eighty-three nobles and gentlemen, and two thouſand five hundred ſoldiers. The battle happened in 1388, and is commemorated by a proceſſion, on the firſt Thurſday in April in every year. Here their horſes, which had been ſent round from Mullihorn, joined them. Their guide arrived ſtill trembling; and they were informed by him and the ſervants, that as they were leading the horſes over the mountains, by a very horrible road, his horſe ſlipped and fell from a dreadful height; the guide, who had not preſence of mind to looſe the bridle, jumping with it: they muſt then have fallen into the lake had they not been ſtopped by trees. It providentially happened that neither man nor horſe were hurt. Admitting that the man's fears exaggerated the diſtance, it is certain, from the ſervant's evidence, that they muſt have fallen at leaſt forty feet.

Having mounted their horſes, they proceeded about a league further to Glarus, paſſing by the ſide of the Linth, admiring the wild character of the country and the grand rocky mountains that faced them. Glarus, which at a diſtance ſeems important, when ſeen in conjunction with another town, called Schwandan, dwindles as they approach, to its own dimenſions; and though it makes a better appearance than Appenzel, is but a paltry place as the metropolis of a canton. It is inhabited by perſons of both communions, who uſe the church in common. The Romaniſts of the canton in general do not amount to above an eighth part of the number of the Proteſtants.

As, after viſiting Pantenbruck, they meant to return to Glarus, they ſet off the evening of the ſame day, and rode through a wild romantic valley to Linthal, three leagues further. The Linth flows with a full whitened ſtream, which derives its force and colour from melted ſnow. The valley flouriſhed with the vegetation of Summer, while the mountains were clad in the horrors of Winter. The canton of Glarus is compoſed of three of theſe valleys, ſeparated by mountains from each other: they are cultivated to their utmoſt fertility, but cannot ſupport their inhabitants, who wander as ſoldiers, or in ſearch of employment into commercial countries. The government of the canton is democratical; and both ſects are admitted to the direction of affairs, with ſome preference, as to duration, in favour of Proteſtants. Four or five thouſand aſſemble once a year, at Glarus, for tumultuary elections and Babylonian eloquence; and both communions aſſemble ſeparately for their reſpective affairs. They arrived late at Linthal, having paſſed through ſeveral villages, and croſſed many fir bridges, and were obliged to call up the inn-keeper, who is of the council. He gave them ſome good trout, which are always to be found at moſt of the Swiſs inns; and ſome indifferent beds, with puffy eddy down coverlets. They firſt noticed here a watchman; and found, on inquiry, that watchmen are employed, in moſt parts of Switzerland, to give an alarm in caſe of fire, which, in theſe wooden villages, would produce rapid deſtruction.

They rode, next morning, three or four miles further, between wild mountains which cloſely approach each other, from which deſcended ſome very beautiful cataracts; they admired one eſpecially towards the end of the valley, which fell very elegantly, ſhooting its white foam like an inverted ſky-rocket; when ſeen from the ſide, it appeared frequently to ſtrike againſt and bound from the rocky furrow which it had made. The mountains from which the torrents pour have often large lakes at their ſummits, which furniſh admirable fiſh.

The chamoiſes are purſued by the huntſmen, from rock to rock, particularly on the Freyberg mountains, near the foot of which they ſlept. They go in flocks, poſting one as a centinel, who hiſſes when he hears "the approach of hoſtile foot." The people, who have ſometimes ſeen their pictureſque forms ſuſpended as it were from the ſide of the mountains, deſcribe them as hanging by the horns from the rock. The cottages, which are of a dark walnut colour, have projecting roofs which hang over to protect them from the ſnow: their appearance accords well with the ſcenery of the country; and when ſeen at a diſtant height on the mountains has a very peculiar effect. Stones are placed on the roofs to ſave them from being carried away by the ſtorms of the Winter. Winter, amidſt theſe mountains, muſt be awful: their lofty ſummits exclude the ſun, except for a few hours, in the longeſt days of Summer.

They left their horſes at the end of the dark ſhadowy valley, and went on foot, through a foreſt, about a mile, by a very ſteep aſcent, to Pantenbruck, which is a narrow bridge that overhangs a fearful chaſm, at the bottom of which the Linth ruſhes impetuouſly. The ſource of this river is about three or four leagues further in the mountains, that form the rude barrier and boundaries of this canton, ſeparating it from Uri, and the Grey League, a diviſion of the Griſons. The vallies of Switzerland often run parallel, and, by croſſing the mountains, a ſhort paſſage may be obtained from one to the other. As they had ſeen Pfeiffer, the chaſm and ruſh of water here did not aſtoniſh them ſo much as it may have done other travellers; but the ſurrounding ſcenery ſtruck them by its grand and rude character. After dining at Linthal, on boiled goat's fleſh, nearly as good as mutton to hungry appetites, they returned to Glarus in the evening.

CHAP. III.

Departure from Glarus—Dine at Oberbilten—An agreeable Ride—Einſidlin and its Abbey—Reach L'Epee—The rapid Limmat—Zurich—Proceed to Albis—Zug—Continue their Walk—Conducted by a Peaſant to Schweitz—Walk to Brunnen—William Tell's Chapel—Steig—Walk through Urſfield to Waſen—the Devil's Bridge—Urſeren—Further Rambles—Dine at Altdorf—Two Female Companions admitted into their Boat—Land at Lucerne—Remarks—Ceremony of two Girls taking the Veil—Proceed to Baden—Schinbznach—Arau Soleure Hendelbenk—Arrive at Berne—Deſcription of the Town.

OUR travellers left Glarus on the 28th of July, and having paſſed through Næfels, and other ſmall villages, dined at Oberbilten, which is nine miles from Glarus, at the ſign of St. Fridolin, who is the patron ſaint of the diſtrict. They had an agreeable ride of ſix leagues, in the evening, partly by the ſide of the lake of Zurich, of which they had a fine view from a mountain, before they reached Einſidlin, looking down upon Rapperſchwyl, the iſle of Uſnau, &c. The effects of the devotion of the neighbourhood were viſible before they arrived at the abbey of Notre Dame des Hermites, particularly in an handſome church at Lachen.

Einſidlin has an important appearance as approached by a wide plain, ſituated between lofty mountains, whoſe diſtant ſummits are covered with ſnow. The town is built on the river Sihl, in the canton of Schweitz. The abbey was rebuilt in 1735: the church is a ſumptuous edifice; the walls are hung, at the firſt entrance, with votive tablets, made for deliverances by ſea and land, attributed to the miraculous aſſiſtance of the virgin: they are painted with more piety than ſkill.

After dinner they were ſhewn the ſacerdotal veſtments elaborately worked and adorned, and the riches and relics of this eſtabliſhment, by a very aſſiduous and complimentary conductor. In the evening they ſet off. All the ſurrounding country is covered with chapels, ſanctuaries, and hermitages, at which pilgrims reſpectfully ſtop. They rode by the ſide of the lake, which, though it has not the bold and magnificent breadth of that of Conſtance, is enlivened on each ſide by a continued ſucceſſion of neat and cheerful villages with white houſes. As they were now about to part with their guide, who had accompanied them from St. Gall, and behaved well ſince they left Wallenſtadt, he expreſſed great regret at being obliged to leave them. They got to L'Epee in good time, where they found their ſervants and carriage ſafe.

The rapid Limmat is a beautiful clear river. Zurich is charmingly ſituated on this river, where it runs from the lake. The town has no ſtreets that are regular or well built: the ſuburbs, towards the lake, are improved by ſome modern buildings; the environs are very beautiful, and the banks of the lake and the Limmat are covered with houſes, many of which are the country ſeats of the gentlemen of Zurich; theſe derive their chief beauty from their ſituation, having nothing that correſponds with the European pleaſure-gardens. Though the town has no buildings diſtinguiſhed for their beauty of architecture, it has every edifice of importance to the welfare of the people. The town-houſe is large and commodious; the granary is well conducted, and, in times of ſcarcity, alleviates the public diſtreſs: the arſenal ſeems well provided with arms: Les Orphelines, a charitable inſtitution for the children of the citizens, and which contains from eighty to one hundred, who are inſtructed, and, at fifteen, are apprenticed to different trades, is well ſupported. The Swiſs have neither the inclination or the power to expend money in ſuperfluous edifices. Their private houſes are furniſhed with ſimplicity, and very little ornament; their carriages are for convenience, and chiefly open; their poſſeſſors are not permitted to uſe them in town; their ſervants ſeldom wear liveries; and there is but little appearance of thoſe refinements, which are too often the indication of corruption of manners. The dreſs of the higher ranks is extremely plain: black is the full dreſs; and the men, who are in any department of government, wear ſwords. The dreſs of the women is unbecoming; on Sundays they wear black in the morning, and colours in the evening; the hair is dreſſed in the French and Engliſh faſhion, but with a looſe and ill-ſhaped negligence, appearing what is vulgarly called blowzy; their ſhapes are not advantageouſly diſplayed, nor do they exhibit any of that flowing and graceful drapery which gives to the lengthened and pictureſque forms of Reynolds and Bunbury, the elegance of the Grecian figure: their ſquat and unfeminine monſters of ſhoes ſeem manufactured for downright walking, not to bend with ſupple pliancy in the dance, or to draw attention in the ſucceſſion of the well directed ſteps. The ſtrangers who reſort here begin to ſap a little the ſimplicity of manners which prevails, by the introduction of foreign luxuries; they intermix indeed, but ſeldom, with the natives in convivial intercourſe.

The miniſtry is ſupported with ſuitable maintenance at Zurich, and the people ſeem to profit at leaſt by its moral inſtructions, being celebrated for their integrity and worth. The library is open, upon very liberal terms, to the public.

Auguſt 2, they left Zurich, and ſtrolled about eight miles through a charming variety of hill and dale, to Albis, where they ſlept at a tolerable houſe. The next morning a miſty rain deprived them of their proſpect from the hill, on which they ſlept. It did not prevent them, however, from renewing their walk, through a fertile country, to Zug. They found fruit-trees and fountains the whole way. Zug is ſituated on the lake of that name. In the evening they continued by the ſide of the lake, for about three leagues, under fine beach woods which adorn its banks, and in which they heard the frequent ſound of the woodman's axe, without any ſorrowful reflections that the trees were to be indiſcriminately felled to pay the debts of the gameſter or the ſpendthrift. The cultivated fields which border on the lake, and the well-wooded promontories which project into the water and form beautiful bays, finely embelliſh the ſcenery. The houſes are but few; ſome vineyards occaſionally deſcend to the edge of the water, and are trained ſometimes to twine over roofs of wood which overhang the paths.

They ſtopped for a ſhort time at a ſmall village in the canton of Schweitz; at the bottom of this there is a capuchin convent, of which, the houſes are fantaſtically painted, ſome of them with ſketches of the Dance of Death. They then continued their walk among the echoing caverns of a ſequeſtred valley, and by the ſide of another lake till they were overtaken by darkneſs, and wandered for ſome hours without the glimmering of a ſingle ſtar to direct their weary ſteps in ſecurity. Towards midnight they met a peaſant returning home, whom they perſuaded to conduct them to Schweitz, where they at length repoſed, as well as if they had arrived with a chaiſe and four and half a dozen attendants.

On leaving next morning this metropolis of the canton, which has nothing remarkable in its appearance but a handſome church, they walked about a league, to Brunnen, a village ſituated on the lake des Quatres Villes Foreſtales. Here they engaged a boat to convey them to Fluellen, which is three ſtunden, or three hours row from Brunnen.

The lake of the four cantons here is not very broad; it is encloſed with lofty ſteep rocks, on ſome of which are houſes and chapels, built like the religious edifices of ancient times, on high places, and beautifully ſurrounded with groves of wood.

They ſtopped to look at William Tell's chapel, which is painted with ſome ſketches of the hiſtory of that hero and patriot, and landing at Fluellen, which is the little port and repoſitory of the Italian merchandize, they walked a ſhort mile to Altdorf, the capital of Uri, ſituated in the valley of the Reuſs. It is almoſt ſurrounded by dark ſteep mountains covered with gloomy trees, which throw a ſolemn ſhade over the town. The firs of Mount Banberg, which riſe immediately above it, ſhelter the houſes from injury from the ſnow or falling rocks. The whole neighbourhood has a ſerious character. There are many churches and chapels on all ſides; one of the latter is erected on the ſpot where William Tell is ſaid to have been born. The town has no better appearance than a market town in England: the Maiſon de Ville, if it may be dignified by that appellation, is daubed with ſome hiſtorical paintings, relative to the exploits of William Tell, who is ſaid to have ſhot the apple from his ſon's head in this town.

After dinner they continued their walk about nine miles, to Steig, through the valley of Reuſs, along which the ſnow-muddied river runs ſhallow in a rapid and rocky channel. The rivers in Switzerland, like thoſe in Scotland, are not often fit for navigation; they feed the lakes, however, and might feed canals. The valley, through which they paſſed, is encloſed by fine dark mountains, overſpread with ſolemn firs.

The valleys in Switzerland are very romantic; in the midſt of which flows the river Peneus, ſwelled by other ſtreams that fall into and increaſe its current. The rocks here are overſhadowed, and often almoſt concealed by the mantling ſhrubs and herbs that ſpread their foliage around them; and amidſt theſe burſt out frequent fountains, from which cool and pleaſant waters flow. The valley of Theſſaly excels, however, thoſe of Switzerland, in the number and variety of muſical birds. In Switzerland no birds are to be ſeen, except ſometimes a fine eagle ſoaring above the tops of the loftieſt mountains; for as every one has a gun, the feathered race is ſhewn no quarter, each man ſeeking for objects on which to exerciſe his ſkill.

Auguſt 5, they walked three leagues through Urſfield, to Waſen, where the valley of Meyen opens, through which the Meyen pours its impetuous waters to join the Reuſs. As they advanced through this beautiful and extraordinary valley, the mountains often advanced near each other: they were covered with remarkably ſtrait and ſtately firs, which ſeemed to riſe out of the bare rocks. Some of them were cut down and laid by the ſide of precipices as a ſecurity to the traveller, who would elſe reel with giddineſs, as he paſſed along the narrow edge of the path. The Meyen abounds with cryſtal, of which the poor children offer bits to paſſengers for ſale.

After leaving Waſen they began to aſcend the barren valley of Schoellenen. The ſcenery became more rude and rocky; the firs diſappeared, and they ſaw only ſome ſcanty graſs fringing the edges of the rocks. The valley was ſtrewed with huge fragments of broken granite rock, which often dilapidates and falls, with a thundering noiſe, from the mountains. After aſcending about a league and a half they paſſed the Devil's Bridge, which overhangs a chaſm that would appear tremendous, to thoſe who had not ſeen that of Pfeiffers, or Pantenbruck. Juſt above it riſes a torrent of foaming water: near this place, oppoſite to a little chapel and between two torrents, they ſaw men half way down the mountain, on a rock apparently perpendicular, on which they were turning ſome ſcanty graſs. They ſhould have conceived it impoſſible for goats to ſtand on the ſteep ſlippery ſide.

Every ſpot which has an inch of ſoil on theſe mountains, is cultivated with laborious induſtry. Animated by freedom and independence, the people draw out fertility from the rock; and happy in their well-earned competence, they would fight, as they have often fought, for their barren and ſcanty poſſeſſions, with as firm and invincible a courage as if they contended for the rich plains of Italy. After having croſſed the Reuſs, at the Devil's Bridge, they paſſed through Underloch, a paſſage of two hundred and twenty feet in length, cut through a granite rock in 1707. This opens into the valley of Urſeren, which ſpreads into wide paſtures, in which Urſeren appears cheerfully with its back ground of firs. It is watered by two ſtreams. Urſeren is a ſmall common-wealth under the protection of Uri, and well ſecured by its encloſing mountains. They dined in this valley, at Hopital, which is about four leagues from Waſen. The whole way, indeed, ſince they left Zurich, they had great reaſon to be ſatisfied with the ſmall inns, in which they experienced better accommodations than theſe mountainous and ſequeſtered villages might be expected to ſupply; and though they paid but as foot paſſengers, were treated with ſuch attention and kindneſs, as a diſplay of riches would not elſewhere procure. The manners of the people are ſimple and friendly, and their reception and treatment that of liberal hoſpitality, not of mercenary contrivance.

They were now within three leagues of St. Gothard, and feeling themſelves but little fatigued, they mounted, by no very violent aſcent, through wild and deſolate ſcenes of naked rock, by the ſide of the Reuſs, till they reached its ſource in a lake, in the large crater at the ſummit, at which they arrived about eight o'clock, as the night, encompaſſed by a thick fog, was rolling towards them.

The next morning, after a good night's reſt, in beds which were not bad though they had no curtains, and were in rooms of which the bare walls had no ornament but a few prints of the Virgin. They deſcended, in about two hours, to Hopital, and in the evening continued their walk to Steig, over looſe ſtones, which ſorely battered their feet in the deſcent, but which could not prevent them from again admiring the ſhivered rocks with firs opening from the clefts; the torrents which freſhened the air of an hot evening, and the paths which wind under noble rocks and firs. They croſſed the river ſeveral times, as it afforded a narrow way, on either ſide, between its channel and the baſe of the mountains.

They ſlept again at Steig, and dined next day at Altdorf, and afterwards took a boat at Fluellin, for Lucerne, admitting two women who petitioned for a paſſage. After again admiring the hills that border on this beautiful lake, they turned a point oppoſite Brunnen, and entered into a part which they had not yet paſſed. The lake here has no very great breadth: the banks furniſh very rich parkiſh ſcenes. The beach woods hang over the lake; and when they ſtopped for refreſhment under the coves, the goats came down to their boats. One of their female companions, whom they had admitted, recited prayers and hymns during the whole paſſage, except when they checked her pious effuſions by ſome excellent ham; or when her voice was overpowered by the louder ſtrains of one of their watermen, who ſung to them the feats of William Tell, in ſome traditional ſongs, which had a local propriety, as the borders of the lake were occaſionally adorned with monuments erected in honour of his exploits. They landed at Lucerne about ſeven in the evening. The town is finely ſituated at the north-weſtern end of the lake, and commands a delightful view.

The bængework of the bridge at Lucerne, which is built over the Reuſs, is painted with hiſtorical repreſentations. The town has little but its ſituation to recommend it to the eye. They went to the Jeſuit's college. The library was removed at the ſuppreſſion of the Order: the building is large, and now inhabited by a few profeſſors. On leaving Lucerne they loitered, ſlowly, in a hot evening, till they were overtaken, before their arrival at Sins, the place of their deſtination, by a violent ſtorm of the heavieſt rain, accompanied with thunder and lightning. Every flaſh which threw its beautiful horrors acroſs the dark night that ſoon encompaſſed the woods in which they ſtrayed, reminded them of the inconſiderate delay with which they had lingered in their delightfulwalk.

The next day, the gloomy circumſtances of the preceding night were forgotten, in the cheerfulneſs of a glorious ſun, which, when they had proceeded four leagues further, to Albis, appeared to ſpread its dazzling ſplendour over the lake of Zurich, and enlivened them with its rays, as they returned in the evening to that town, where they ſtaid only one day, when they went, in company with ſeveral perſons, down the Limmat, to a convent about two leagues from the town, to be preſent at the ceremony of two girls taking the veil: one of them appeared to be about eighteen and had a pretty face, with an expreſſion ſomewhat ſullen; the other was about twenty-four, her countenance meek, and expreſſive of gentle ſeriouſneſs by a melancholy ſmile. The ceremony was extremely intereſting; the ſolemnity of the ſcene, the preſence of the parents, the grave and venerable appearance of the abbot, the proſtration of the women, the tearing of the chaplets, the cutting off the hair, and the change of dreſs ſuggeſted many affecting conſiderations.

They left Zurich on the 11th, and drove about four leagues to Baden. The baths of Baden, which were anciently celebrated under the name of Thermæ Helveticæ, are about a mile from the town, and at this ſeaſon much reſorted to.

They proceeded the ſame evening three leagues, to Schintznach, admiring the Reuſs, which runs through a fine valley, and of which the banks are adorned with ſome vineyards. In their courſe they croſſed the Limmat: this neighbourhood abounds with rivers. After their arrival at Schintznach they ſtrolled to the Aar, and walked up, through a ſteep beech wood, to the caſtle of Hapſburg, which was erected in the eleventh century, within the ancient boundaries of Vindoniſſa, and is famous, as the root of the family of Auſtria, for having furniſhed Germany with the Emperor Rhodolph, of Hapſburg, elected by the intereſt of the archbiſhop of Mayence in 1273. The precincts of the caſtle were not large: from its proud eminence it commands a ſpacious view of a fine range of country, through which the Aar winds its courſe, between lofty mountains.

Their next ſtage was to Arau, which is about three leagues from Schintznach; they drove through a country, which has but few of the bold features that uſually characterize Switzerland. They ſtopt at Arau to tranſact ſome buſineſs. The poſtillion who conducted them, wiſhed to loiter, as he was paid by the day. Travellers, with theſe conductors, are compelled to liſten to exaggerated accounts of bad roads and difficulties.

In ſpite, however, of murmurs, they proceeded through Ænſingen, and the old town of Wiedliſpach, to Soleure. The country through which they paſſed, was beautifully varied with hills well ſprinkled with houſes and trees: they remarked a caſtle belonging to an advoyer of Berne, which was particularly to be admired. They ſaw, at ſome diſtance, the rude mountains of Jura, of which the ſnowy tops were brightened by the rays of a deſcending ſun. They ſupped at the crown inn.

The town of Soleure, or Solethurne, is very ancient, as may be collected from a ſtumpy inſcription, under a dial plate in the chief ſtreet.

The great church here is ſaid to have coſt 80,000l. beſides an additional expence occaſioned by an alteration in the plan after the foundations were laid. This was a liberal exertion for Switzerland. The deſign and ſtyle of architecture are ſuperior to thoſe of any building in this country. The women in this town wear a ſtraw hat, which is very ſimple and well adapted to the climate. The whole place has an appearance of neatneſs and comfort, which reſembles the air of a Proteſtant.

After leaving Soleure, they dined at Hindelbank, which is about four leagues from Soleure, and about a league out of the ſtraight road to Berne. Having left Hindelbank, they arrived at Berne Auguſt 13; it is a pleaſant ride of about two hours.

Berne is a very handſome town: the ſtreets are ſpacious; the piazzas, with their low arched fronts, give it a peculiar character; the ſtore-houſes would appear to more advantage if the arcades were more lofty; the walk, likewiſe, would in that caſe be equally ſheltered from ſun or rain, and there would be a much freer circulation of air: the town is kept neat, but it is by ſelons, chained with a collar and hook over their heads: the terraces, particularly that behind the cathedral which overlooks the Aar, afford very agreeable walks, where the Berne ladies, who are very pretty, exhibit their charms better diſplayed by dreſs than thoſe of any Swiſs women which they have yet ſeen.

The men being generally engaged in the offices of government, or in foreign ſervice, there is not much pernicious diſſipation here. Gaming is effectually ſuppreſſed, for every member of the council takes an oath to inform againſt any whom he ſhall ſee engaged in high play. It is vain alſo to attempt ſeduction, for the ſeducer is compelled to marry the woman whom he has vitiated—to take, as his companion through life, the woman whom he has degraded. Public brothels, under certain regulations, are allowed.

The public buildings at Berne are handſome, though they do not ſhew any great departure from the ſimplicity of the country, which conſults utility rather than ornament in its buildings, even where the dawnings of taſte moſt appear. The Hotel de Ville, at which the counſel and ſenate aſſemble, is an old building wherein are ſome convenient rooms and hiſtorical pictures. The new room, for the library, ſhews but little advancement in ſkill of architecture: it is ill contrived, and fitted up with but little taſte or reſpect to the convenience of readers: it is rich in manuſcripts.

CHAP. IV.

They proceed to Friburg—Bull—See the Village of Gruyeres—Ride by the Lake of Geneva to Vevay—A Septennial Celebration of the Fête des Vignerons—A Walk to Clarence—A Ball, &c.—Manners of the Women in Switzerland—Proceed through Aigle to Bex—Salt-Works at Bevieux—Drive to Martigny—Obſervations—Difficulties in aſcending the Col-de-Balme—Mountain of Blanc—Montanvert—The magnificent Glaciers—Arveron—Glaciers of Boſſon—Trient—Sleep at Bex—Moudon—Payerne—Sleep at Avenche—Morat—Guimene, &c.—Arbourg—Bienne—A ſingular Rock—Iſle de St. Pierre—Neuchatel—Locle—Sleep at Chaux de Fond—Yverdun—Orbe—Caſtle of Barthelemi—Lauſanne—Coppat—Verſoi—Geneva—Deſcription thereof—Proceed on their Journey—Fernay—Aix-les-Bains—Chamberry—Wonderful Road called La-Grotte—Echelles—Convent of the Chartreuſe—Montmelian, &c. &c. &c.—Sleep at St. Michel—Continue their Journey—Mount Cenis—Entrance into Italy—Deſcription of Turin.

ON the evening of the 15th, they proceeded to Friburg, a town about ſixteen miles diſtant from Berne, remarkably ſituated on the river Sane, amidſt the ſcenery of craggy rude mountains; it is filled with Romiſh churches profuſely loaded with ornaments, and with convents that contain large libraries. The women are very pretty; their complexions are delicate, and their countenances, which ſeem all moulded in ſimilar forms, are very intereſting.

Leaving Friburg on the 16th, they travelled about ſix leagues further, through a charming circular valley, richly covered with groves, to Bull, a ſmall town of one ſtreet. On quitting this, they ſaw the village of Gruyeres, ſo famous for the cheeſe which is exported to all countries; and thence proceeding through a fine paſture country, they ſlept at Chatel St. Denys, where a bailiff reſides in a caſtle, the conſtruction of the thick walls of which reduced the ancient counts of Gruyeres to indigence.

The next morning a ſhort ride by the lake of Geneva, which opened beautifully, conducted them to Vevay, juſt in time to ſee a ſeptennial celebration of the Fête des Vignerons, which ſeems to have been a very early, and perhaps, an heathen inſtitution. A proceſſion, compoſed of the repreſentatives of Ceres, Bacchus, Flora, and Pomona, with their reſpective attendants, and with appendages of corn, grapes, flowers, and fruit, carried in profuſe diſplay, paraded merrily round the town. Theſe jovial deities were perſonated by people ſelected for their figure or beauty. Silenus, rolling from ſide to ſide between his ſupporters, was not forgotten. The characters were dreſſed with ſuitable ornaments, and the proceſſion was continued with ſinging and much gaiety for four or five hours; after which the gods and goddeſſes repaired under ſome fine trees that ran cloſe to the lake in the town, to partake of the plenty which they aſſembled to celebrate. A humorous fellow who was employed to harangue them, in a burleſque diſcourſe, amuſed the company much, by his coarſe but ſprightly ſallies. There was much good-humour and no diſturbance.

One of our travellers walked to Clarence, which is towards the extremity of the lake, about a league and a half from Vevay. They aſcended to the caſtle of Chatillard, which is very beautifully ſituated on an eminence, and commands a glorious view of the lake, the mouth of the Rhine, and the diſtant rocks of Meillerie. It is ſurrounded by delightful vineyards planted in an artificial ſoil brought to thoſe hills, and ſupported by ſome walls leſt it ſhould be carried away by the torrents that often ruſh from the ſummits of the mountains.

There are many rooms half-furniſhed in the caſtle, which at preſent belongs to a bailiff; and in an upper room, where criminals are examined, there are ſome inſtruments of torture, which are ſtill ſuffered by the government of Berne to be in the hands of individual magiſtrates. In the evening they had a ball, at which the walſe and country dances kept them up till three or four in the morning.

The women in Switzerland ſometimes wear long tails of braided hair. After marriage theſe braids are twiſted round the head, and faſtened at the top with a ſmall ſilver bodkin, or ſword.

They left Vevay on the 19th, and proceeded by the ſide of the lake to its extremity; and through Aigle, a ſmall gloomy town in a charming country, to Bex, which is about ſix leagues from Vevay. After dining there, at the Table D'Hote, with ſome intelligent travellers, they rode about half a league to examine the famous ſalt-works at Bevieux. The water is conveyed to them by pipes from the ſource at Fondemont, which is about a league further, whither they afterwards went; and having procured guides, lights, and dreſſes fit for the journey, they entered the ſouterreins by a narrow paſſage cut through the rock, and walked about four hundred feet to the chief ſource, which iſſues in a very inconſiderable but perennial ſtream; this is received into a grand excavation that ſerves as a reſervoir for the water, and is about one hundred feet in length. The country about Bex and Fondemont is to be admired for its finely wooded hills.

The next morning they drove about three leagues to Martigny, having entered the Villais at St. Maurice, by a romantic paſs over a Roman bridge; and having ſtopped to contemplate the beautiful caſcade, called Piſſe-Vache, which falls from a great height with much elegance. It firſt arches with a fine bold curve; it afterwards ſhoots into many ſpiral forms which have ſomewhat of a dark cloudy hue, and then terminates its fall in a graceful foamy ſpray.

Near Martigny they noticed the ruin of the old caſtle, where formerly the biſhops lived; they now, however, reſide at Sion. They were at Martigny obliged to leave their carriages; and having procured horſes and mules, they rode about three leagues over ſtony roads and rude hills to Trient, which is ſituated in the Vallais, in a bottom, ſurrounded by tremendous mountains covered with ſnow. Here they dined at a wretched inn, and afterwards having rode about half a league further, they began to aſcend the Col de Balme. They toiled over ſtony paths by a very ſteep aſcent, their mules labouring above them, for it was impoſſible to ride; and they trembled as they hung over them in parallel roads, which they often did, from the winding of the path. They were three or four hours before they had ſurmounted their difficulties and reached the ſummit; when they began to deſcend in paths leſs precipitous, indeed, but down ſlippery hills, and covered with a thick brouillard.

Our travellers wondered to ſee the cattle deſcending from neighbouring mountains, down paths that appeared to them at ſome diſtance abſolutely perpendicular; and from one of which, a raſh Engliſhman not long before fell giddy. The deſcents are, indeed, ſo rapid, as to be dangerous to perſons and cattle moſt accuſtomed to them; and accidents ſo often occur, that on the brows of the mountains are often erected wooden croſſes, in honour of protecting ſaints, or to deprecate the wrath of the evil Genii, whom the ſuperſtition of the people imagines to be always contriving miſchief againſt them. From the top of the hill they had a fine view of the vale of Chaumony and his ſnow-tipped mountains, particularly that of Mont Blanc, which, according to Sir George Shucborough's account, is 15,662 feet above the level of the ſea; and, according to that of Mr. De Luc, 15,304, and which is, therefore the higheſt mountain in the old world, exceeding that of Caucaſus, or any mountain in Aſia or Africa.

They did not reach the bottom of the hill till darkneſs made them rejoice at their ſafe arrival; they had ſtill, however, near three leagues to ride, by the ſide of the river Arve, and to paſs over many dangerous bridges every now and then, which were thrown acroſs beds of torrents; or to ford the Arve, where its windings in the valley required it. They arrived, however, ſoon after ten o'clock, at the inn called Balance, and found the refreſhment which they much wanted.

On the 21ſt, as ſoon as their guides had been to maſs, they procured mules and aſcended for about an hour over the ſteep and rugged paths of Montanvert, when they were obliged to diſmount, and toiled for about two hours more along the road of the Cryſtal hunters, ſtopping indeed frequently to repoſe and refreſh themſelves with the wild ſtrawberries and milk, which the peaſants' children brought them, and to contemplate the rude ſcenery of the mountains and the vale of Chamouny, through which the ſhoaly river Arve rimples along. They at length arrived at the ſummit, and had a view of the magnificent glaciers which are encircled by vaſt and ſavage rocks riſing in gigantic and fantaſtic forms, ſometimes terminating in ſharp needle points. The glaciers appeared to them like waves of ice topped with ſnow; they extend many miles in length and one in breadth. They deſcended to the glaciers, looked into the tremendous blue clefts in the ice, and heard ſtones roar for a conſiderable time after they threw them in. They afterwards deſcended to Chamouny, by a ſteeper path over looſe ſtones, where their poles, and ſometimes their friendly and officious guides ſupported them; they reached, in about an hour and a half, and contemplated with great aſtoniſhment and pleaſure the ſource of the Arveron, which iſſues from the glacier of Argentiere, called la Mer de Glace, rolling under a magnificent vaulted arch formed by projecting ice, undermined into a tremendous cavern; within this is a ſmaller circle, or arch, divided from the other by an immenſe fiſſure, which will probably fall ere long, together with the piece of rock that reſts upon it. The children mount, fearleſs, upon the upper arch, though our travellers could hardly behold them without apprehenſion. Their mules met them here, and they returned to Chamouny, and in the evening rode to the glaciers of Boſſon, to which the aſcent is leſs difficult as they rode within a quarter of a mile of them. The ice here aſſumes a pyramidical form, appearing like ſugar loaves, or inverted baſket ſalt, in gigantic repreſentation.

The next day they returned to Martigny by the Tête Noire. The road, which is compoſed of an irregular ſtair-caſe of pavement, winds round fearful precipices. The barren rocks, the romantic entrance of the vallais, and the rich expanſe of a woody valley and hills, decorated with cottages and paſtures; the beautiful caſcade of Argentiere, and other falls of water, together with the dark firs which crowned the ſummit of the Tête Noire, formed a ſucceſſion of very ſtriking and magnificent ſcenes, diſplayed with infinite variety of light and ſhade, and diverſified with every combination of form.

As they arrived at Trient they ſaw the oppoſite hill covered with a long aſcending train of people, preceded by prieſts and religious orders, in their proper dreſſes, who had come here from Martigny to ſupplicate for rain, and were returning ſlowly, in ſolemn proceſſion.

At Martigny they again remarked the number of Cretins and goitered perſons who ſuffer from the ſtagnant air of this encloſed valley, and the noxious vapours which ariſe from its marſhy land. They ſlept this night at Bex, and returned the next day to Vevay, having only ſtopped to look at the fortreſs of Chilon, which projects into the lake.

They left Vevay again on the 24th, and dined at Moudon, which is about ſix leagues from Vevay, one of the moſt ancient towns in Switzerland.

At Payerne, four leagues further, they ſaw the camp now removed from Berne. The country, through which they this day paſſed, is parkiſh: its gentle well-wooded ſlopes of paſture, and occaſional corn fields, are very pleaſing. They ſlept at Avenche, which is ſituated near the lake of Morat. They looked here at ſome remains of Moſaic pavement near the caſtle, of which the deſign repreſenting Bacchanals, was, as far as they could judge from what is left, very handſome. On leaving Avenche the next day, they ſkirted the ſide of the lake of Morat, of which the banks are flat, and leſs adorned than thoſe of the lakes which they had before ſeen.

Paſſing through Morat, Guimene, and Berne, they proceeded to Thun, which is near forty miles from Avenche. As they approached Thun they admired the magnificent mountains, with their glaciers, and the noble well cultivated valley through which the Aar flows. This, which is rather a large town ſituated at the head of the lake of Thun, is of the Reformed religion.

The next morning they embarked in a covered boat, and in about three hours and a half paſſed this very beautiful lake of Thun. They landed at the end of the lake, and walked about three leagues to Lauterbruennen, paſſing through a romantic valley, between lofty mountains richly covered with trees and dotted with houſes. The view of the Jungfrau-Horn, tipped with ſnow, appeared to equal that of Mont Blanc.

They took up their abode in a ſmall village, and the next morning were rowed back to Thun by three perſons, the uſual number, one of whom was a woman. They ſlept at Berne and dined the next day at Arbourg.

The country about Arbourg is adorned with great variety of oak and beech; its dark hills are finely clothed. They reached Bienne in the evening, time enough to walk to a caſcade ſituated amidſt "low browed rocks" and romantic hills.

Bienne, which ſtands at the bottom of Jura mountains, has no diſtinguiſhing buildings to charecteriſe it. There is a remarkable ſpring which ſupplies above eighty fountains in the town; the water is pernicious to the teeth, as appears to be the caſe of many other ſprings in Switzerland. Its bad qualities are ſaid to be derived from the rock through which it flows. Fountains are the chief ornaments of the Swiſs towns: there is generally one in each, ſurrounded by a broad baſon, at which the women aſſemble with tubs, to waſh their vegetables. Bienne is under the ſovereignty of the biſhop of Baſle, whoſe reduced power is, however, chiefly nominal and ceremonious.

As the day was unfavourable for the water, they drove about three leagues on the road to Baſle, along the edge of a ſteep valley beautifully ſhaded with beech, oak, and fir, which intermingle their various hues. After ſtopping at a ſmall houſe for dinner, they walked about a league to Pierre Pertruis, a ſingular rock, which appears to have been perforated for a road, as it ſhould ſeem from an inſcription, which, however, is of diſputable interpretation by the Romans. It ſeparates Val St. Irmier from the diſtrict of the old Rauraci, and is part of the chain of rocks branching from Mount Jura. After ſupper they engaged a boat to convey them to the iſle de St. Pierre.

This iſland is about two miles in circumference. The ſmall ſpot is enlivened with a charming variety of woods, vineyards, orchards, and meadows, terminated on one ſide by a noble terrace which looks over the neighbouring land that borders on the lake, of which the banks are rich and pleaſing.

In the evening having croſſed over to their carriages at Neuville, they drove about four leagues to Neuchatel, which is ſweetly ſituated on the lake of that name. They were much pleaſed with this agreeable town and its neat appearance.

They afterwards made a little excurſion to Locle, where the watch trade goes on briſkly. The country about Locle, which riſes into gentle eminences, formerly covered with foreſts, is now adorned with neat white houſes, which indicate a diffuſion of wealth and the dawnings of taſte. They ſlept at la Chaux de Fond, which is on the edge of Franche Comte. After having ſeen ſome new modes of liſe in this expedition, they returned to Neuchatel, through cheerful villages, by a different road, which they left September 3, and arrived in the evening at Yverdun, eight leagues from Neuchatel, having ſkirted the lake, and driven through a country where rude and elegant ſcenery were beautifully contraſted, and well cultivated hills, vineyards, and meadows, with diſtant mountains and glaciers, furniſhed freſh objects of admiration every inſtant.

Yverdun lies in rather a flat ſituation, at the ſouth-eaſt end of the lake. It is moſtly to be admired for its walk, which is encloſed by two branches of the river Thiele. The printing-houſe is famous.

Their firſt ſtage next morning was to Orbe, which is proudly ſeated on an eminence, and is diſtinguiſhed for its antiquity. The caſtle and the tower, which are not among the moſt ancient buildings of the town, add to its ſtrength.

On leaving Orbe they deviated from their road to ſee the caſtle of Barthelemi, which commands a magnificent view, and arrived at Lauſanne in the evening.

ing. This is an irregular town, with few buildings that deſerve notice.

Having quitted Lauſanne, they paſſed through Merges and Rollo, and many other pleaſing towns, to the ancient town of Nyon, ſituated on the lake along which they again travelled in the evening.

They drove through Coppat, a barony in the bailliage of Nyon, and paſſed through the paltry French town of Verſoy, or Verſoi, which is called Choiſeul's Folly, becauſe built by that miniſter in fruitleſs oppoſition to Geneva.

The firſt evening of their arrival at Geneva they experienced the inconvenience which reſults from the early cloſing of the gates; for having taken up their abode within the town, and ſtrolled out for a walk towards the lake, they found the gates ſhut, by inexorable ſentinels, before their return, and in vain petitioned for admiſſion. They could have no communication with their ſervants, and were obliged to ſleep at Secheron's.

The city of Geneva is remarkably ſituated at the weſt end of the lake, where the beautiful Rhone iſſues from it in two rapid currents of a tranſparent green colour. The ſtreets are not broad, and derive no embelliſhment from the lofty wooden arcades which ſhelter them from the ſun. They are cheerful, however, and thronged with a buſy active people. The houſes which face the lake, and thoſe which overlook the parks, are very handſome; the inns are good, the walks pleaſant, and much reſorted to.

The environs of Geneva are very beautiful; the walks of the lake, with the view of the ſaleve, the mole, the glaciers, and Mount Blanc, always afford pleaſure. It is very populous; the Lutheran religion is tolerated here, and ſtrangers may be admitted to the rights of burghers.

Our travellers were furniſhed here with phaetons and open carriages of every kind, as well as in England. They drove one day to Fernay, where they ſaw nothing worthy of mentioning.

The inhabitants of Geneva have a general kind of information, which excites ſurpriſe in ſtrangers; though, on further acquaintance, it is often diſcovered to be ſuperficial enough. They are almoſt all educated at a public academy, which is well regulated and ſupported at the public expence. Here they imbibe a taſte for literature, which every citizen is enabled to keep up, by a permiſſion to borrow books at the public library opened to them for that purpoſe once a week. Literary ſocieties, though controlled by government, ſtill aſſemble. The theatre, which always contributes, in ſome degree, to the cultivation of letters and the polite arts, is tolerably ſupported. The higher women at Geneva have much improved in the elegance of their manners by aſſociating with foreigners. The conſtitution of Geneva is ſtill unſettled, and the liberties of the people undefined.

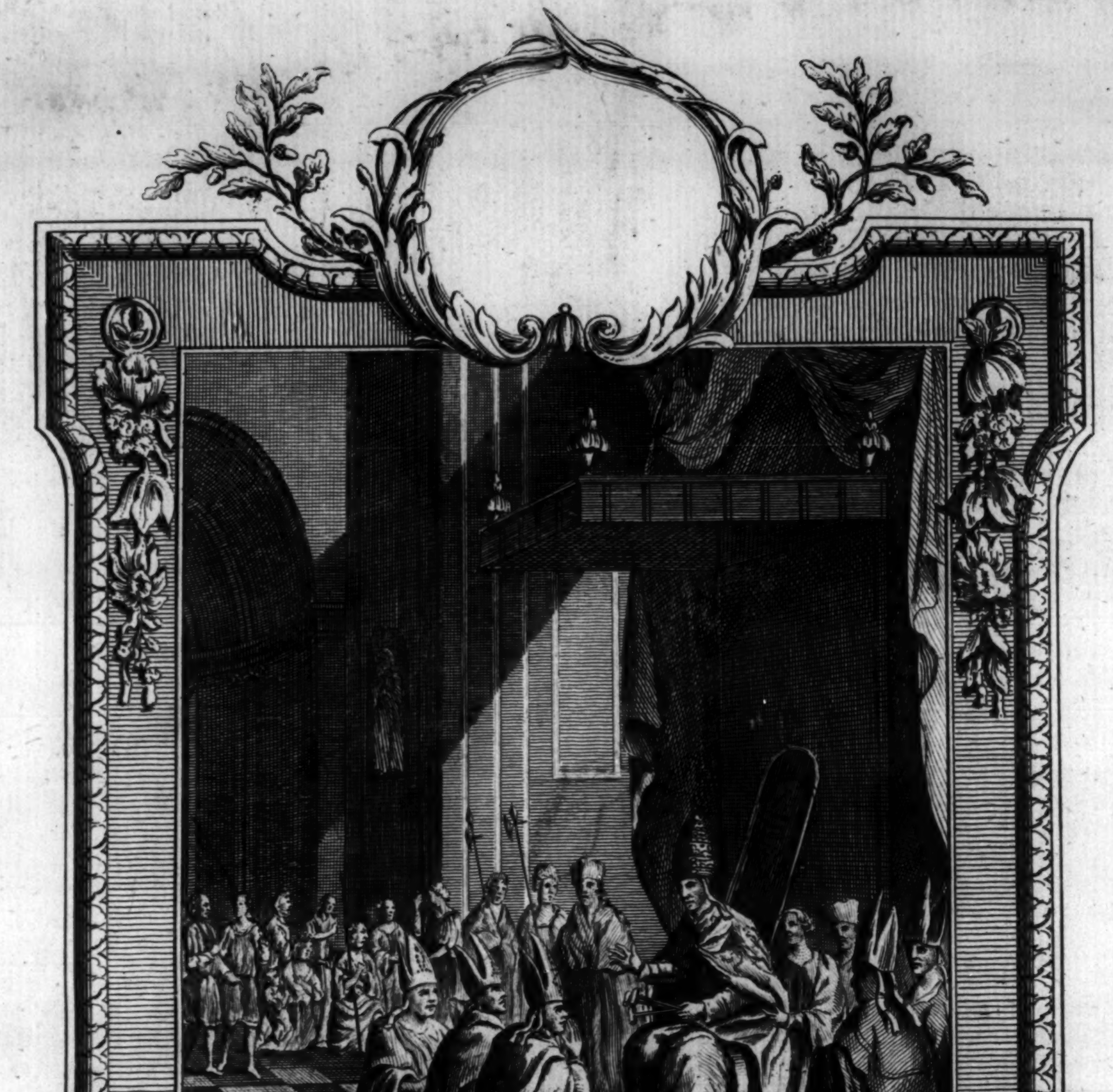
They left Geneva on the 15th, and proceeded by Carrouge and Luiſelles, through a country, of which the thin ſoil ſeemed withered by the ſun to duſt, to Frangy, a ſmall village, where they ſlept. The next day they continued their journey, by Douer and Remilly, to Aix-les-Bains, where they ſtopped to look at the handſome baths, in which the gnawing pains of the rheumatic are ſoothed, and the relaxed nerves of the paralytic are braced. The remains of a Roman arch are here to be ſeen. From thence they had a pleaſant ride to Chamberry, a town which ſeems hewn out of the quarry of ſurrounding mountains. Its narrow ſtreets are crowded with an induſtrious people. Having procured a bulletin here, they determined to deviate from their road, on a viſit to the Grande Chartreuſe; and, after dinner, travelled amidſt hills, of which the foreſts gradually diſappeared, till they reached the rude and naked rocks of Echelles, and deſcended to the town by the wonderful road called la Grotte, which was cut through the ſolid ſtone by Charles Emanuel, in 1670: a work ſtupendous indeed, and, as the inſcription in the ſide informs us, "unattempted by the Romans and deſpaired of by others."

Echelles, the ruins of its caſtle, and the adjacent plain, are ſeen to great advantage from the hill by which they deſcended. On entering the town its importance vaniſhed; and the river, which ſeparates Savoy from Dauphiny, allots to each country a few houſes that neither ſide can envy or deſpiſe. The next morning, having procured ſome ſaddle-horſes and a guide, they paſſed the bridge, and applied to the mayor of the French diſtrict for a paſſport, without which, they underſtood, that the advocates for freedom would not ſuffer them to return. The magiſtrate was a good grocer, and granted their requeſt without any inſolence of office.

Having rode about three leagues, they entered the firſt encloſure of the territory of the Chartreuſe, and paſſed through a deep cold valley, hidden by ſteep hills from all but the meridian ſun. They mounted to the convent by a gradual aſcent. The narrow road is conducted by the edge of a deep chaſm, down which it is fearful to look: while from above it is overhung by well wooded mountains, that tower to a tremendous height. They ſometimes rolled large ſtones down the precipitous deſcent, which, by the force that they acquired, broke branches from the trees, and ſometimes almoſt carried away the firs, with a hollow echoing ſound, till they reached the bottom. The thick woods, which ariſe almoſt perpendicularly to the ſummit of the mountain, abound in bears, wolves, ſtags, roebucks, goats, &c. which are often ſeen. They arrived at the convent about ten o'clock: it is ſituated towards the end of the valley, near the foot of a ſpiral rock, on which is placed the croſs of St. Bruno. The external architecture is ſimple: they were not ſtruck with the magnificence of its extent till they entered. The convent has been deſpoiled of a great part of its revenues and territory. There is now a ſmall party of ſoldiers lodged there to preſerve it from popular injuries, whoſe appearance accords but ill with the religious quiet of the place. Our travellers having given their paſſport to the ſerjeant, were well received by the coadjutor, who conducted them to the room appointed for the reception of the Engliſh; for in this extenſive range there is a diſtinct apartment appropriate to each of the principal nations of Europe. After the firſt attention they were left to amuſe themſelves with the album till dinner was got ready, when they were ſerved with fiſh and eggs. After dinner they were ſhewn ſome of the apartments and cells of the monks, each of which had his little garden and library.

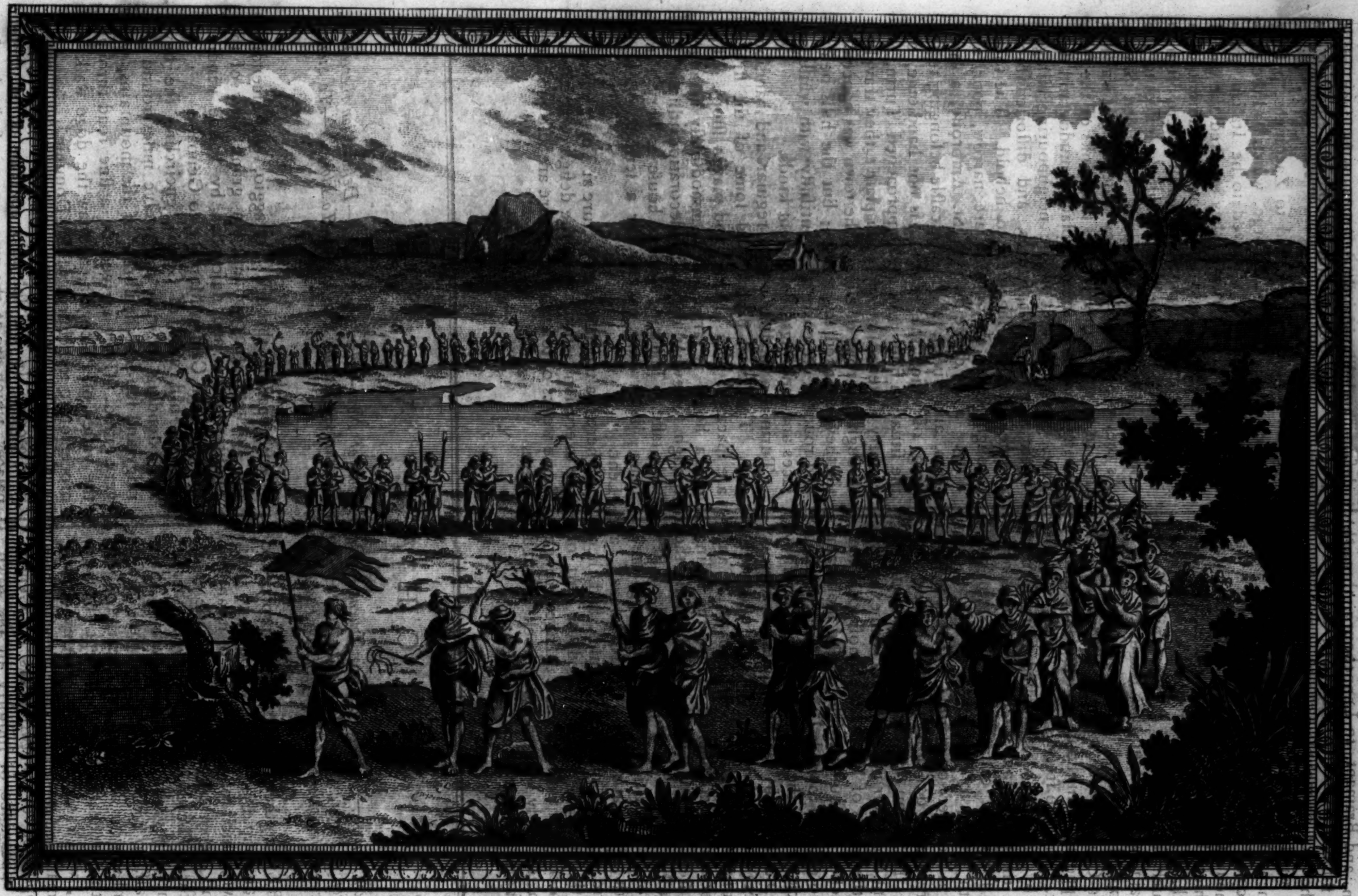
Our travellers now returned to Echelles, and returned the ſame night to Chamberry, which they left the next morning: their firſt ſtage was to Montmelian, a ſmall town on the banks of the river Iſere, with a caſtle that ſtood a ſiege of fifteen months againſt Lewis XIII. of France, and at laſt foiled his endeavours: adjacent to which is an eminence, on which the Marquis de Bellegarde has a caſtle, called le Chateau des Marches. From thence they proceeded by Mal-Taverne to Aiguebelle, through a country very pictureſque; the vineyards mantling up the hills between barren rocks, and the caſtles and towers, which were ſcattered on the ſummits of the mountains, gave a peculiar character to the ſcenery. Their next ſtage was to Erpiere. In their route they paſſed a mountain in which there are iron-mines and a foundry; and they thence continued by the ſide of the river Arche, now a ſcanty ſtream flowing ſluggiſhly over oozy banks, but which, ſometimes, ruſhes with violence, when ſwelled by melted ſnow or accumulated torrents. The country began to aſſume a more rude appearance, and the projecting roofs of Chanon or Chambre, where they again changed horſes, reminded them of the winter ſnow. The valleys here are pent up and encloſed with mountains: the ſnow falls in great abundance, and the confined air is rendered very unwholeſome

by



The POPE deputing
three CARDINALS to open
the Gates of St. John of Lateran,
St. Maria Major, & St. Paul,
At ROME.

BRITISH MUSEUM
7 DE 90



Public Procession of the **FLAGELLANTS**, *of Spain, Italy, France, &c.*

by the vapours which hover over the muddy bed and banks of this river.

They changed horſes at St. Jean de Maurienne, which is the largeſt town in Savoy after Chamberry, and ſlept at St. Michel. They roſe early the next morning and travelled five poſts, through St. Andrè, Villarrodin, and Bramant, to Lannebourg, through rude and ſtupendous ſcenes: through a chaos of rocks, at the foot of mountains, and on the edge of precipices, winding and aſcending by narrow roads.

At Lannebourg they mounted poſt-horſes, which they who come by the poſt are obliged to take, and aſcended mount Cenis by a very ſtony and precipitous path, in which they met with many mules laden with rice and ſilk. They got to the top in about an hour, without much fatigue to the horſes, and galloped over the plain, which extends two leagues.

They ſtopped to change horſes at the poſt-houſe, called Santa-Croce, which ſeparates Piedmont from Savoy. Oppoſite to this houſe is a fine lake famous for its trout. The lake freezes in the winter, but the fiſh ſubſiſt by air, which is ſupplied from ſprings, or enters at the place from whence the river Doria iſſues, that forms the caſcade, and flows, in conjunction with the Po, to Turin.

Elevated as they were on mount Cenis, they ſaw the top of Notre Dame de la Neige ſtill higher, and underſtood, that from the ſummit of a mountain not far diſtant from their paſſage, there is an extenſive proſpect of the plains of Lombardy almoſt to Milan. Having reached the ſouthern ſide of the mountain, they began to deſcend towards Italy by ſteep winding ſtairs of rock, where the horſes went very carefully and ſafely; but the path was ſometimes ſo narrow, the precipices ſo tremendous, and the ſtones ſo looſe and uneven, that they choſe to walk, and could on foot more confidently admire the falling torrent, the ſteep ſtony declivities of the hill, the ſcattered houſes, and the rich opening valley. After about five hours expedition from Lannebourg, they arrived, with great ſatisfaction, at Novalezza, a wretched lane of dirty miſerable houſes, and then thronged with carriages. They paſſed the fort of Brunette, which commands the whole paſſage through the valley, being finely ſituated on a rock levelled with great labour and expence of powder.

At Suſa, the ancient Segeſium, a ſmall town, but one of the gates of Italy, is a ſtrong caſtle, built in a very commanding ſituation, on a rock. The town conſiſts of one broad ſtreet. In the garden adjoining to the ruins of a caſtle, erected in the time of Auguſtus, is a triumphal arch, which, though much defaced and dilapidated, deſerves to be ſeen by a traveller eager for antiquities, on his entrance to Italy.

From Suſa they proceeded to Zaconiero, paſſing by the fine caſtle of St. George, which had the character of what they conceived to be Italian grandeur; and ſoon afterwards they admired the proud convent of St. Michel, placed on the ſummit of a ſtupendous rock. Diſmantled caſtles were often to be ſeen, of which the fine ruins gave effect to the country, that, in other reſpects, reſembled Savoy. As they proceeded, the valley widened, but was ſtill ſhut in by mountains; and as the banks of the ſwift flowing Doria are, in many places, muddy and ſtagnant, cretins abound in the neighbouring villages. Their hideous ſquat figures, and diſtorted broad countenance, are ſhocking to behold. The towns through which they paſſed are narrow, poor, and dirty. They drove through St. Ambroiſe, a large town, and Rivoli, where is a caſtle belonging to the king, of which the exterior is not handſome, but the ſituation fine. As they approached Turin, the country flattened into an open plain: they travelled through fine rows of elm. The town was concealed till they advanced to its gates; but the hills behind and round it are covered beautifully with white palaces and buildings of different kinds.

Turin is a ſmall but very regular and handſome city. The chief places, and ſome of the ſtreets, are ſpacious, with arcades and piazza ſhops. The opera houſe is large and commodiouſly arranged, though ſomewhat dark: its decorations diſplay but little taſte. The king's opera houſe is very handſome; it is only opened for a ſerious opera in Lent.

There is a tapeſtry manufacture at Turin, of which the execution is better than the deſign or colouring. Some works of tolerable ſculpture are alſo produced there.

CHAP. V.

Departure from Turin—Progreſs of their Journey—Deſcription of Novi—Arrive at Genoa—Deſcription thereof—An Excurſion to Poggi, &c.—Journey to Milan—Curſory Remarks—Journey to Bologna—To Florence—To Sienna—To Rome—Deſcriptions of the reſpective Places.

SEPTEMBER 29 they left Turin, and proceeded through an inſipid country, five poſts, to Aſti, a deſerted town, which retains but little of its ancient population and importance. Its chief trade is in wine and cattle. There are fifteen convents there.

After dinner, they drove in the evening three poſts and a half, to Alexandria, a town full of ſoldiers and monks, with an handſome theatre, where operas were then rehearſing. They ſlept the next night at Novi, which is two poſts from Alexandria.

Novi is a ſmall free town under the direction of a governor, appointed every two years by Genoa. There is an appearance of induſtry in the town. Its diſtrict is ſmall, a few miles only in circumference; but it is not preciſely defined, and the people have occaſional diſputes with the inhabitants of Tortona. Novi ſtands in a flat plain, encircled in the horizon by the Alps and Apennines. St. Bernard and Mount Cenis ſtand high above the reſt. There are no buildings worth noticing in the town.

Leaving Novi the next morning, they paſſed the proud fortreſs of Garvy, which ſtands on a fine eminence, in an immenſe excavation, amidſt a ſea of hills, ſome of which are beautifully covered with cheſnut trees.

After paſſing through Voltaggio, and aſcending the Bochetta, they obtained a grand view of the Mediterranean, and deſcended by a fine winding road through Campo Marrone to Genoa.

Their firſt view of Genoa, encircling the bay, and extending its walls for twelve miles round the ridgy and ſun-ſcorched brow of the mountains, was very grand. They arrived by a fine road through the valley of Polcevera, and ſaw the doge walk in proceſſion to the church of St. Dominic.

The number of magnificent palaces at Genoa is prodigious. In the ſplendid apartments of theſe palaces, which are at the upper part of the houſe, the poſſeſſors do not reſide: and ſome of the nobility have four or five, and even more, palaces kept chiefly for oſtentation. They are filled with coſtly furniture. Parts of theſe palaces are often let.

The crowd of poor objects at Genoa is dreadful. They are fed not only by private charities but by public ſupport.

The franc port at Genoa deſerves to be noticed, as a commodious depoſitory and well regulated office for the cuſtoms. Ten per cent. is paid for all imported goods for home conſumption; the export duties are low. The chief articles ſent out are ſilks, velvets, damaſks, orſeveria ſculpture, artificial flowers, oil, oranges, and citrons. The port is large: it is encloſed by two moles; on each of which is a pharos, to direct veſſels to the ſpacious mouth of the harbour, where they are ſafe from injury, except when haraſſed by the ſouth-eaſt wind, called Libeccio, which rolls on a great ſwell of ſea.

Our travellers made an excurſion to Poggi, which is about ſix miles from Genoa: the ſuburbs through which they drove, are decorated with gay buildings, marble palaces, terraced gardens, orangeries, fountains, colonades, painted walls, ſtatues, ornamental works, &c. At Poggi they ſaw the large palace of the prince Doria: the orangeries there are very fine; and the terraces command a beautiful ſea view; notwithſtanding which, they are ſprinkled with tricheries of water-works, and jets d'eau. The groves and woods are natural and pleaſing; and the pines, with their umbrella tops, are ſingular. In the garden, there is a rural theatre artificially formed by trees.

The women of Genoa have pretty features, but are extremely pale; a kind of ſickly languor gives a ſoft expreſſion to their countenance and fine blue eyes. The painted linen veil which they wear, called mezzaro, is not unbecoming, though it reſembles a flowered gown thrown over the head and hooded. The Italian women, in general, are very uninformed. The ſociety of Genoa is not among the beſt of Italy. The court is without women, and the nobility have not the elegance of high birth. The rich nobles are œconomiſts in general, though they ſometimes entertain a ſtranger with ſumptuous oſtentation. They intermix chiefly at the theatres, which are tolerably ſupported. A ſtranger may aſſociate here to much advantage, with the merchants of the factory.

No ſtate in Europe ſeems, in ſome reſpects, to be ſo ill governed as Genoa; the laws are defective, and, ſuch as they are, are ſeldom put in force. The magiſtrates of the criminal rota are foreigners; they accept their office from mercenary motives, and are notoriouſly corrupt. When they have amaſſed riches enough to prefer ſecurity to further gains, they retire from public deteſtation to their private reflections. The nobility purchaſe popularity, and the continuance of their privileges, by protecting and obtaining pardon for turbulent men, and thoſe whoſe uncontrolled paſſions lead them to crimes. Redreſs for injuries, cannot be had againſt power; and individuals execute their own vengeance. Hence aſſaſſinations are frequent; and a ruffian, who can make intereſt with a noble, or command 150 or 200 livres to bribe the officers of juſtice, is ſure to eſcape. Not leſs than one hundred and fifty aſſaſſinations are committed, upon an average, every year at Genoa, chiefly among the lower ranks, at the ſuggeſtions of jealouſy or the ſudden impulſe of revenge, notwithſtanding a patrole parades the ſtreets, and ſome ſbirri, who are not diſtinguiſhed by their dreſs.

They left Genoa on the 8th of October, and returned to Novi, whence, taking the Milan road, they paſſed through a flat unintereſting country, in which the eye ranged in vain for trees or fertile fields, to Tortona, once Dertona, and in the decline of the empire Attilia, now a ſmall town, two poſts from Novi, which bears ſome inferior reſemblance to Alexandria. It has a fortreſs with about forty ſavoyards.

From Tortona to Voghera, which is a poſt and a half, they paſſed through rows of willows that bound paſture land. They ſlept at Voghera, the Tria of antiquity, ſituated near the river Staſera, called alſo, formerly, the Tria, a town full of ſoldiers and eccleſiaſtics, and doomed to ſupport, at preſent, three troops of cavalry, about 400 infantry, and eleven or twelve monaſteries.

They left Voghera the next morning, and drove two poſts and a half, through a flat burnt-up country, thinly ſprinkled with mulberry trees, by Caſſe Tiſma, to Pavia, having croſſed the Po by a bridge of boats, where it has a reſpectable breadth, and alſo the Gravalola.

Pavia, once the ſeat of the kings of Lombardy, has the appearance of a deſerted town. It contains many open places like fields; not a third of what is encloſed by the walls, is now inhabited. There are eight colleges.

In going from Pavia to Milan, they viſited the Carthuſian convent, which is one of the moſt magnificent in Italy. The church is eminently beautiful and richly adorned with variegated marbles. The chapels, which are curiouſly checkered and inlaid with marbles, exhibit at every altar fine pictures. The library has been tranſported to Padua.

Milan is not a handſome town, and it has few prominent beauties. Among the buildings moſt diſtinguiſhed for architecture, is the cathedral, of which the exterior is ſtill nearly as unfiniſhed as in the time of Addiſon: it is a vaſt edifice; and religion took here no vulgar flight. The nave and long drawn aiſles are very fine; the outſide is crowded with ſculptured figures. The tower commands a magnificent view of the Alps and Appenines, of the city of Milan, and of the extenſive plains of Lombardy.

Among the remarkable churches at Milan, ſtrangers are uſually ſhewn that of St. Sebaſtian, from a deſign of Pelegrini; that of St. Maria Pedone, that of St. Franciſco, and eſpecially that of St. Ambroſe, built on the ſpot where the father is ſaid to have diſcovered the bodies of the martyrs, St. Gervaſius and St. Protaſius. It bears great marks of antiquity; contains the braſen ſerpent, or one very like it, erected by Moſes in the Wilderneſs. Beneath a cupola in it, with relief figures of the 9th century, ſupported by four porphyry pillars, is a table, of which the pallium is of ſolid gold inlaid with precious ſtones, under which were depoſited the aſhes of St. Ambroſe. Our travellers noticed here a ſarcophagus, ſuppoſed to be a work of the fourth century. The iron crown was formerly given in this church to the emperors. All theſe valuables are encloſed by the gates, which St. Ambroſe is repreſented to have cloſed with Chriſtian zeal, in the face of the emperor Theodoſius, on account of the maſſacre which he had committed at Theſſalonica.

The church of St. Laurence here is built on the foundation of ſome Roman baths, or, as ſome ſay, on the ruins of the temple of Hercules. It retains the form of the heathen temple, but is conſtructed with ſuch evident marks of the dark ages, that the old columns are inverted, the capital being where the baſe ſhould be. The church of Thiele, which is ſuppoſed to be erected on the ruins of the pantheon of Minerva, is in the ſame neighbourhood; and not very far diſtant is the fine Doric colonade, which is uſually repreſented as the work of Maximilian. On Mount Olivet is a convent, beautifully adorned with marble. The altar is very handſome.

The cemetry, in the neighbourhood of Milan, deſerves particular notice; it is a building formerly erected for the reception of the bodies of perſons who died in the hoſpital, and, poſſibly, for the general uſe of the city: it conſiſts of a circular colonade, which contains no indication of a ſepulchre, no epitaph, no moral hint, but here and there a ſuſpended tablet with injunctions to pray for the ſoul of the defunct.

The Foppone at Milan, which was formerly a lazaretto for perſons afflicted with peſtilential diſorders, is now converted into a lazaretto for cattle. Epidemic diſorders are leſs frequent than they formerly were.

Literature is but little cultivated at Milan, though it boaſts of having produced Valerius Maximus, Cardan, and other great men, and though the Ambroſian library, founded by Cardinal Frederic Borromeo, affords fine field for reſearch. Trials are conducted in ſecret, and the laws are not very judiciouſly enforced.

Our travellers drove about ſeventeen miles from

Milan, through a flat country, to a village called La Corde, and, after dinner, about fourteen miles further, to Seſto, a ſmall village, where they ſlept at an indifferent inn; and the next morning hiring a boat and four men, and aſcending the river Teſino, entered on the Lago Maggiore, which opened moſt beautifully upon them in a broad expanſe, of which the banks, particularly that of the Sardinian territory, were adorned with ſome palaces, as thoſe of Caſa Viſconti and Caſa Otolino, and the caſtle of Angiera. The lake was uncommonly full, in conſequence of great rains. They landed at Arona, a ſmall place of great trade, and walked up to the enormous bronze ſtatue of Cardinal Borromeo, adjoining to which is an academy for Catechumen eccleſiaſtics; the number of ſtudents now amounts to about ſeventy-two. Having reimbarked, as they continued their voyage, they admired the hills which roſe gentle, and prettily adorned from the water, and the diſtant mountains, particularly, cloud-capped St. Barnard; the woods of cheſnuts, the olives, and the vines hanging gracefully over poles and wooden roofs erected for them. They dined in their boat, in ſight of Iſola Bella, where the lake expands nobly near ſeven miles in breadth.

Iſola Bella, which is about fifteen miles from Seſto, is a ſmall clump of terraces, lined with orangeries, that riſe, one above the other, with a formality little correſpondent to the bold ſcope which the ſurrounding ſcenes diſplay. They rowed from Iſola Madre, a beautiful little ſpot, about ſix miles, to Laverno. Here they found their carriage, and drove about fourteen miles, to Vareſe.

On leaving Vareſe next morning, they drove through a very pleaſant country diverſified by hills richly covered with oak and cheſnut trees, to Como, charmingly ſituated at the ſouthern end of the lake.

The lake of Como, which was anciently called the Larius, appears from the town to be a ſmall body of water, as the oppoſite hills, through which are openings towards its great expanſe, ſeem to approach ſo near as to encloſe a ſmall part of it. The banks, as ſeen from Como, are beautifully ſtudded with villas, among which the new erected palace of Count Odiſkalki is remarkable. The ſcenery of the lake, and its environs, is enchanting. The houſes are near enough for the cheerfulneſs of neighbourhood, without the inconvenience of proximity.

The town of Como is ſurrounded by a wall, and contains a garriſon of about ſixty men. The cathedral is large; its circular window and fretted Gothic work are very beautiful: the interior is large, but darkened rather by a gloomy ſuperſtitious, than by a dim religious light.

October 24, they drove by Magnano, over a level plain to Lodi, about two poſts and three quarters. The rich meadows about Lodi are well watered by ſluices; and ſome of them are mowed four times in the year. The Lodi cheeſe is the beſt of the Parmeſan; a great quantity of it is ſent to England. The town appears neat, and indicates the proſperity of increaſing wealth. From Lodi they went by Zorliſcona, three poſts, to Placentia, having croſſed the Po, before their arrival, on a moving bridge of boats. The country in the neighbourhood of the Po, which is part of what was anciently the moſt flouriſhing ſide of Italy, and which ſtill retains its reputation for fertility, appears now ſqualid and miſerable, in conſequence of the late overflowing of that river, which ſpread devaſtation wherever it went.

Placentia is a very handſome town, though its preſent appearance reminds the traveller of its decay: it ſwarms with beggars, the cauſe and appendage of idleneſs and poverty. The cathedral is worth viſiting, for the view of the adjacent country and the Po from the tower.

They viſited the Auguſtins, of which the church is large, without grandeur: 14,000 ſequins have been lately expended upon it, by a ſociety rich amidſt general poverty. The façade is handſome. In the ſacriſtie of this church is a very beautiful repreſentation, finely carved in wood, of the ſcene at Calvary. The palace at Placentia is ſtill unfiniſhed.

At Placentia they wiſhed to have proceeded by a voiturier, as they could have travelled at much leſs expence; but were told, that they muſt go off by the poſt, as they arrived by it, unleſs they choſe to ſtay three days at Placentia; ſuch, it ſeems, is the regulation.

The next morning they continued their journey through well planted encloſures, by Furenzole, Borgo S. Domingo, and Caſtel Guelpho, to Parma, five poſts. The vines entwined, and hanging in luxuriant feſtoons from tree to tree, from elms, alders, and maples, were extremely beautiful. They regretted being ſo late in the year, as the vegetation of ſummer, leſs embrowned by autumnal tints, and enriched with cluſters of grapes, muſt be very beautiful. They croſſed the Taro, where the fragments of a bridge ſtill remain, that many years ſince was deſtroyed by its violence.

Parma does not impreſs the ſtranger at its entrance: there is neither magnificence nor much appearance of trade. It contains between 40,000 and 50,000 inhabitants.

The firſt object of our travellers attention was the celebrated theatre, ſo admirably conſtructed, which has the claſſical appearance of a Roman work: it was built, in 1618, of wood; is capable of containing 12,000 or 14,000 perſons: it is ſo well contrived, that ſound is equally diſtributed over every part. Upon ſome occaſions it has been converted into a naumachia: and water was formerly admitted from the river Parma, for the diſplay of naval engagements. This theatre is now almoſt falling to ruin.

Notwithſtanding the people of Parma have ſo beautiful a model for a theatre, the modern building, where theatrical repreſentations are made, is an hideous houſe, built like the hulk of a great ſhip: the pit ſunk into a ſubterraneous hole, and the higher boxes projecting over the lower, as if they were about to tumble down.

In a ſmall palace in the garden, built on the ſcite of the Farneſe reſidence, they ſaw the remains of a gallery, and a room painted with the laſt efforts of Auguſtin Caracci's pencil.

The cathedral of Parma is large and gloomy; it contains ſome good pictures. The church of S. Baptiſte has the appearance of very great antiquity: its ſtatues and hieroglyphical figures deſerve much attention. The baptiſtery is ſo large, that it ſeems to have been conſtructed for plenary immerſion.

They left Parma on the 28th, and travelled through a country of well cultivated meadows and fields, adorned with elms and other trees. The trees ſerve but as ſtems for vines to cluſter round: if they draw away ſomewhat of the nouriſhment of the ſoil, they ſtill ſerve for fire-wood, and ſave the expence of poles.

They paſſed through Reggio, two poſts from Parma, where, notwithſtanding the prince, like the emperor, has ſuppreſſed ſome religious eſtabliſhments, are ſome churches and a cathedral, which a traveller ſhould ſtop to admire. Two poſts more conveyed them through Rubbiera, formerly a well fortified and important town, to Modena. They paſſed the Seccia in a boat, though a bridge is almoſt finiſhed and ready to be opened: this bridge and another have been lately built at the expence of the duke. It is free to the Modeneſe; but ſtrangers are required to pay a toll. He has made alſo a new road, the old Æmilian way which ran between Parma and Modena being deſtroyed.

Modena is a very elegant town; its ſtreets are regular and remarkably neat: the winding arcades which are ſeen in ſome of them have a good effect: but the painted houſes, which have the appearance of ſtage ſcenes, deſerve no praiſe. Some of the buildings are handſome. The town is not large; it may contain about 20,000 men. The ſoil in the neighbourhood of Modena preſents remarkable veſtiges of a deluge, in the abundance of marine productions. Sea weeds, ſhells, branches and trunks of trees, are often dug up; and ſometimes the remains of the devaſtations of probably later times, as the pavement of ſtreets, &c.

They arrived at Bologna, which is but three poſts from Modena, on the 30th, having paſſed the Iſola Triumvirada in the way. Modena contains about 90,000 inhabitants: it is governed by a ſenate, conſiſting nominally of forty, but by a politic addition of ten, to facilitate the influence of the pope, actually compoſed of fifty, under the direction of a Gonfaloniere, as ſupreme magiſtrate, who is changed by election every two months. The pope's vicegerent exerciſes by intrigue more authority than he is conſtitutionally inveſted with by the ſtate. He is allowed, indeed, to preſide at the judicature of criminal cauſes. The preſent legate has reſided there five years, which is a longer time than the legates uſually continue. The pope derives a great advantage from his government, reſtricted as it is by the privileges of the ſtate.

The ſtreets of Bologna are narrow, and darkened by arcades: they are waſhed by a branch of the Reni, which turns the mills employed in the manufacture of ſilks, damaſks, ſatins, velvets, and taffatas, of this town. The people are certainly diſtinguiſhed for their ingenuity and induſtry. They excel particularly in making walnut-tree work, artificial flowers, &c.

The Bologneſe are no niggards of the wealth which they procure from trade. Their public buildings and churches are numerous and grand; among the latter that of St. Petronius, which contains the meridian line of Caſini, that from June to January marks the point of mid-day, is the largeſt. La Madona di St. Luca, which is finely ſituated on an eminence without the town, is aſcended to by a grand arcade of three miles in length, open by pillars to the ſouth.

The eſtates of Bologna are equally divided between all the children; hence nobility has been ſometimes impoveriſhed, but trade, perhaps, promoted. The nobility, however, ſtill maintain ſufficient ſplendor.

The univerſity of Bologna ſtill retains ſome of its ancient reputation, as the chief ſchool of civil juriſprudence cultivated in conjunction with the elegant parts of literature.

The immediate environs of Bologna are beautifully diverſified and pleaſant. They want only the ſpreading fulneſs of a river to wind between their hills. The ſtreams that flow through the valley are ſhrunk to creeping rills, which, with difficulty, make their way over rough beds; ſuch are moſt of the Italian rivers that our travellers met with: ſtony channels in the hot weather, and torrents in the cold; in the winter conferring no ornament, in the ſummer ſpreading devaſtation.

They left Bologna on the 3d of November, and though obliged to take ſix horſes to their chaiſe, could not, in this hilly country, get further than Feligare, four poſts from Bologna. On quitting the fertile valley in which Bologna ſtands, they entered on the Appennines, and continued to aſcend and deſcend hills but little adorned the whole way; from one of them they had a diſtant glimpſe of the gulph of Ancona.

On quitting Feligare next morning, they had a view of a little volcano in the neighbourhood of the Douane, where they diſtributed ſome bribes not to have their baggage diſturbed on entering Tuſcany. The volcano, as it is called, appeared at ſome diſtance to be compoſed only of a flame of ſmall circumference, affording a kind of glow-worm light which required the contraſt of darkneſs to produce any effect. The flame is a barometer to the neighbourhood; it increaſes on the approach of bad weather; and when fierceſt, portends a ſtorm. Some years hence this volcano may be dangerous to the neighbourhood: it is now an object only of curioſity.

The next day they toiled again, for four poſts, over Apennines and Alps, ſometimes aſſiſted by oxen. At Monte Carili they paſſed a ſmall neglected houſe, which is called a chateau of the duke: it is not remarkable for beauty or poſition.

Having quitted the mountains, the laſt of which is adorned with ſome fine cypreſs trees, they got, towards evening, a noble view of the vale of Arno of Florence, ſpreading wide its white houſes, ſuburbs, and villas, through a charming well varied country, of which the hills and the valleys were covered with duſky-leaved olives and vineyards.

Florence well deſerves the praiſes which it has received. Trade and the fine arts ſeem to flouriſh there in union. The ſtreets and quays that border on the Arno are delightful. The bridges, particularly the Ponte della Trinita, with the ſtatues of the ſeaſons, and that with the cycloidical arches by Ammanati, are very handſome. The houſes have a noble appearance; and the ornaments of ſculpture ſcattered about the town give it a claſſical air. In every part of the city are works and buildings erected for its embelliſhment, by the Medici family.

The gallery at Florence deſerves particular notice. The firſt entrance to it opens the perſpective of a corridore, lengthened to the ſight by its narrowneſs, and lined on each ſide with pictures, ſtatues, and buſts. A walk through rows of emperors, and empereſſes, conducts one to its tribunes and detached rooms, every one of which contains beautiful and intereſting works of antiquity.

The churches here, which amount to near one hundred and fifty, beſides the chapels of eighty-ſeven convents, contain ſome fine works by the beſt maſters, and, in general, they are beautifully adorned with marble, drawn partly from ſome fine quarries which are found in the neighbourhood.

The duorno, or cathedral, has a magnificent exterior of variouſly coloured marbles emblematically repreſentative of the ſpledid outſide of the Romiſh faith; while the coarſe and neglected interior ſuggeſts the idea of correſpondence not ſo favourable to the inſide of the thing to which it is compared. The tower, as it often happens in Italy, is ſet apart from the reſt of the building. The gates of the baptiſtery, which are of bronze, ſculptured with parts of ſacred hiſtory from the New Teſtament, are ſaid to have been praiſed by Michael Angelo, as fit to be the gates of heaven.

In the cloiſter belonging to the beautiful church of the annunciation, is the celebrated freſco of la Madonna del Sacco, by Andrea del Sarti, who was buried in the church. It is to be lamented that the work will expire with a fate accelerated by its expoſure to the air. The chapel of St. Lorenzo, beautifully decorated as it is with Sicilian jaſper and curiouſly inlaid and variegated marbles, ſtill remains an unfiniſhed monument of the Medicean family. The family is extinct in its chief line; and the mauſoleum is not completed; ſeven dukes have been buried in it. The tombs of Galilæo and of Michael Angelo are to be ſeen in the church of Santa Croce, as is that of Brunelleſchi in the duorno or church of S. Maria del Fiore, on which this architect boldly raiſed the firſt cupola, or dome, that appeared in Europe.

The preſent generation of Florentines is not diſtinguiſhed by the number of its philoſophers, poets, or artiſts. The people have the reputation of being friendly and benevolent; and, perhaps, they are leſs corrupt than in other parts of Italy. It is certainly, however, a delightful city, and ſtrangers who ſettle in Italy, will, perhaps, do well to prefer it to any place. Its ſituation in the vale of Arno, and on the banks of the river, is extremely beautiful. The ſurrounding hills are charming. It is impoſſible to live at Rome or Naples during the ſummer months, while the air of Florence is refreſhed by temperate breezes from the mountains and the ſea, even in the hotteſt ſeaſon. In the winter it is ſomewhat cold, being expoſed to the Tramontane winds, particularly ſince the Appenines have been ſtripped of their firs. Proviſions and fruit are abundant and cheap, and the contiguity of the ſea affords opportunity of receiving from or ſending to England whatever may be neceſſary, as alſo a facility of repairing to the coaſt for health or pleaſure. Its being the reſidence of an ambaſſador facilitates introduction to ſociety; and the Caſſino is opened, without difficulty, to ſtrangers, who may aſſociate with the nobility of both ſexes that aſſemble here for cards and converſation, and occaſionally for dinner parties.

The ſtyle of viſiting is not coſtly: very few entertainments are given at private houſes, except thoſe at which the whole expence may be lemonade and ice, and ſometimes tea. The chief intercourſe is in morning viſits, or at public places. The dinner is ſelfiſh and negligent all over Italy. At Florence the women appear every evening at the opera or the theatre, where they have annual boxes: two of them are ſeldom ſeen together. A lady, attended by a cavaliere ſervente, or ſometimes by two of this ſpecies of animal (the ſecond being a kind of inferior deputy ceciſbeo) is viſited by other gentlemen, and ſometimes by ſome of the chief performers in her box. He who aſpires to the honour of being inliſted in the ſervice of a lady, may undergo the pleaſing duty of attending her every morning, and eſcorting her, in a carriage, or on horſeback, in the woods and walks that border on the Arno. Attended by theſe guardians of their virtue, the women viſit every place or perſon to whom whim may lead them, and call on ſingle men at lodgings or hotels without ſcruple. Every woman almoſt in Italy is openly neglected by the man who has ſolemnly plighted his vows to her, and attended by thoſe who are privileged to poſſeſs the opportunities of ſeduction.

The Florentine nobles live in magnificent houſes, but they ſtill ſell wine by the bottle: ſome of them have a better education than the nobility of Italy in general receive; and in their manſions may be ſeen the indications of literature and taſte.

At the Ranuncini palace our travellers were ſhewn a very fine and ſpirited drawing, on a ſacred ſubject, by Mengs, the Raphael of modern times, which was executed by that painter under the conviction of approaching death, when his expiring genius rouſed itſelf to execute a laſt monument to his fame.

At the Riccardi palace alſo they had a fine library to admire, rich in manuſcripts, and books printed in the 15th century, as well as a ſaloon with a ceiling painted by Luca Gordano; and in other palaces many and beautiful pictures.

Here alſo is a ſpecies of amuſement ſimilar but inferior to that of Sadler's Wells. One evening while our travellers were there, a man deſcended by a rope, on which he reſted by a board fixed to his breaſt, from the ceiling to the ſtage, with great applauſe.

Having left Florence, they travelled three poſts, by Prato, through a flat country of vineyards to Piſtoia, a dull deſerted town, containing little to arreſt the haſty traveller but ſome pictures, in an old ſtyle, in one of the churches. From thence they proceeded, three poſts and a half, through a country well planted with vineyards and ſeparated into ſmall encloſures.

Lucca is the metropolis of a ſmall republic, containing about one hundred and twenty thouſand people, in a diſtrict of, perhaps, thirty miles in circumference. The town has no very cheerful appearance, for the houſes are all lofty and ſhut up with grated windows, and the ſtreets are ſomewhat narrow; it is enlivened, however, by the buſy activity of the people, who are ſtill as diſtinguiſhed for induſtry as they were in the time of Strabo. The ſoil of the country is remarkbly fertile and well repays the labour of the tenants. It formerly furniſhed ſupplies to the Romiſh armies. Its olives, and other productions, now afford a revenue of 400,000 crowns. The government is ariſtocratical.

This place lays claim, indeed, to an antiquity little ſhort of that of Rome, though, according to ſome accounts, it was peopled by a Roman colony. It was eſteemed the chief town in Ciſalpine Gaul. Some veſtiges of the ſplendour of Lucca, in former ages, are ſtill to be ſeen. An oſſuarium and a cinerarium were diſcovered in 1692, by which it appeared, that the people were formerly buried and burnt within the walls of the town, contrary to a law of the twelve tables, which the independent ſpirit of the people diſregarded, as well as to all ſalutary regulations. The remains of its magnificent amphitheatre, into which whole foreſts and oceans were occaſionally introduced, and which was alternately filled with the beaſts of Aſia and Africa, and with the fleets and monſters of the deep, are now converted into the walls of a priſon ſtill to reverberate with the ſounds of guilt and miſery. The materials of this amphitheatre have been employed in the erection of churches, in honour of that religion which ſuppreſſed the barbarous ſpectacles therein exhibited.

Lucca is ſaid to have been converted to Chriſtianity by St. Paolino, a diſciple of St. Peter, of whom many miraculous ſtories are related, and who is ſuppoſed to watch, with the affection of a patron, over the intereſts and ſecurity of the city, where he is reverenced as one of the ſeventy diſciples, and the firſt martyr of Tuſcany. The doctrines and principles of the Romiſh church took deep root at Lucca. The hiſtorians of the city are anxious to vindicate the pretenſions of St. Anthony, a prieſt of Lucca, to the honour of having firſt inſtituted the eremetic life in Italy, in the fourth century, by retiring himſelf to Mount Piſano, now called San Pantaleone, in the territory of Lucca.

There is ſomewhat of the ſtrict ſpirit of republican equality to be met with at Lucca. No titles are borne by the higher ranks, except in the caſe of a few individuals who have foreign diſtinctions. Sumptuary laws are obſerved even by the women, who wear black the whole year, except during the Carnival, when they change their colours every day.

A ride of two poſts, from Lucca, brought our travellers through a low wet country to Piſa, which is a remarkably fine ſtately city. The quays are broad and handſome, and the Arno dilating towards its mouth has a nobler expanſe here than at Florence. The ſtreets built on each ſide of the river have a grand appearance. Florence and Paris derive their ornament from buildings circumſtanced in a ſimilar manner. Wren deſigned that London ſhould have taken the ſame advantage of its river, and if his plan had been adopted ſtrangers would have heard but little of the views from the Pont-Neuf, or of the perſpective of the canals in the Dutch towns. The two ſides of Piſa are connected by three bridges, one of which is very handſome. The Arno, however, is but ſhallow, and navigable even in the winter only by ſmall veſſels, which are towed by boys, who run along a wall which forms part of the embankment of the river. The town has loſt much of its ancient population and importance; and inſtead of the one hundred and fifty thouſand inhabitants of which it once boaſted, among which were one hundred citizens, each of which fitted out a galley at his own expence, and maintained it during a war, it does not now contain above twenty thouſand. The court, however, often reſides here, particularly during the winter, as the air is milder than at Florence.

The Piſa guide, if a traveller can procure it, will give him an ample account of the botanical garden and the obſervatory, of a cathedral with pillars from the temple of Epheſus, and gates, ſome from Jeruſalem, ſome elaborated by John of Bologna; of a baptiſtery, remarkable for its font and pulpit, and of a leaning tower, of which it is not yet determined, whether the inclined poſition be deſigned or accidental.

buildings are handſome. The town is not large; it may contain about 20,000 men. The ſoil in the neighbourhood of Modena preſents remarkable veſtiges of a deluge, in the abundance of marine productions. Sea weeds, ſhells, branches and trunks of trees, are often dug up; and ſometimes the remains of the devaſtations of probably later times, as the pavement of ſtreets, &c.

They arrived at Bologna, which is but three poſts from Modena, on the 30th, having paſſed the Iſola Triumvirada in the way. Modena contains about 90,000 inhabitants: it is governed by a ſenate, conſiſting nominally of forty, but by a politic addition of ten, to facilitate the influence of the pope, actually compoſed of fifty, under the direction of a Gonfaloniere, as ſupreme magiſtrate, who is changed by election every two months. The pope's vicegerent exerciſes by intrigue more authority than he is conſtitutionally inveſted with by the ſtate. He is allowed, indeed, to preſide at the judicature of criminal cauſes. The preſent legate has reſided there five years, which is a longer time than the legates uſually continue. The pope derives a great advantage from his government, reſtricted as it is by the privileges of the ſtate.

The ſtreets of Bologna are narrow, and darkened by arcades: they are waſhed by a branch of the Reni, which turns the mills employed in the manufacture of ſilks, damaſks, ſatins, velvets, and taffatas, of this town. The people are certainly diſtinguiſhed for their ingenuity and induſtry. They excel particularly in making walnut-tree work, artificial flowers, &c.

The Bologneſe are no niggards of the wealth which they procure from trade. Their public buildings and churches are numerous and grand; among the latter, that of St. Petronius, which contains the meridian line of Caſini, that from June to January marks the point of mid-day, is the largeſt. La Madona di St. Luca, which is finely ſituated on an eminence without the town, is aſcended to by a grand arcade of three miles in length, open by pillars to the ſouth.

The eſtates of Bologna are equally divided between all the children; hence nobility has been ſometimes impoveriſhed, but trade, perhaps, promoted. The nobility, however, ſtill maintain ſufficient ſplendor.

The univerſity of Bologna ſtill retains ſome of its ancient reputation, as the chief ſchool of civil juriſprudence cultivated in conjunction with the elegant parts of literature.

The immediate environs of Bologna are beautifully diverſified and pleaſant. They want only the ſpreading fulneſs of a river to wind between their hills. The ſtreams that flow through the valley are ſhrunk to creeping rills, which, with difficulty, make their way over rough beds; ſuch are moſt of the Italian rivers that our travellers met with: ſtony channels in the hot weather, and torrents in the cold; in the winter conferring no ornament, in the ſummer ſpreading devaſtation.

They left Bologna on the 3d of November, and though obliged to take ſix horſes to their chaiſe, could not, in this hilly country, get further than Feligare, four poſts from Bologna. On quitting the fertile valley in which Bologna ſtands, they entered on the Appennines, and continued to aſcend and deſcend hills but little adorned the whole way; from one of them they had a diſtant glimpſe of the gulph of Ancona.

On quitting Feligare next morning, they had a view of a little volcano in the neighbourhood of the Douane, where they diſtributed ſome bribes not to have their baggage diſturbed on entering Tuſcany. The volcano, as it is called, appeared at ſome diſtance to be compoſed only of a flame of ſmall circumference, affording a kind of glow-worm light which required the contraſt of darkneſs to produce any effect. The flame is a barometer to the neighbourhood; it increaſes on the approach of bad weather; and when fierceſt, portends a ſtorm. Some years hence this volcano may be dangerous to the neighbourhood: it is now an object only of curioſity.

The next day they toiled again, for four poſts, over Apennines and Alps, ſometimes aſſiſted by oxen. At Monte Carili they paſſed a ſmall neglected houſe, which is called a chateau of the duke: it is not remarkable for beauty or poſition.

Having quitted the mountains, the laſt of which is adorned with ſome fine cypreſs trees, they got, towards evening, a noble view of the vale of Arno of Florence, ſpreading wide its white houſes, ſuburbs, and villas, through a charming well varied country, of which the hills and the valleys were covered with duſky-leaved olives and vineyards.

Florence well deſerves the praiſes which it has received. Trade and the fine arts ſeem to flouriſh there in union. The ſtreets and quays that border on the Arno are delightful. The bridges, particularly the Ponte della Trinita, with the ſtatues of the ſeaſons, and that with the cycloidical arches by Ammanati, are very handſome. The houſes have a noble appearance; and the ornaments of ſculpture ſcattered about the town give it a claſſical air. In every part of the city are works and buildings erected for its embelliſhment, by the Medici family.

The gallery at Florence deſerves particular notice. The firſt entrance to it opens the perſpective of a corridore, lengthened to the ſight by its narrowneſs, and lined on each ſide with pictures, ſtatues, and buſts. A walk through rows of emperors, and empereſſes, conducts one to its tribunes and detached rooms, every one of which contains beautiful and intereſting works of antiquity.

The churches here, which amount to near one hundred and fifty, beſides the chapels of eighty-ſeven convents, contain ſome fine works by the beſt maſters, and, in general, they are beautifully adorned with marble, drawn partly from ſome fine quarries which are found in the neighbourhood.

The duomo, or cathedral, has a magnificent exterior of variouſly coloured marbles emblematically repreſentative of the ſpledid outſide of the Romiſh faith; while the coarſe and neglected interior ſuggeſts the idea of correſpondence not ſo favourable to the inſide of the thing to which it is compared. The tower, as it often happens in Italy, is ſet apart from the reſt of the building. The gates of the baptiſtery, which are of bronze, ſculptured with parts of ſacred hiſtory from the New Teſtament, are ſaid to have been praiſed by Michael Angelo, as fit to be the gates of heaven.

In the cloiſter belonging to the beautiful church of the annunciation, is the celebrated freſco of la Madonna del Sacco, by Andrea del Sarti, who was buried in the church. It is to be lamented that the work will expire with a fate accelerated by its expoſure to the air. The chapel of St. Lorenzo, beautifully decorated as it is with Sicilian jaſper and curiouſly inlaid and variegated marbles, ſtill remains an unfiniſhed monument of the Medicean family. The family is extinct in its chief line; and the mauſoleum is not completed; ſeven dukes have been buried in it. The tombs of Galilæo and of Michael Angelo are to be ſeen in the church of Santa Croce, as is that of Brunelleſchi in the duomo or church of S. Maria del Fiore, on which this architect boldly raiſed the firſt cupola, or dome, that appeared in Europe.

The preſent generation of Florentines is not diſtinguiſhed by the number of its philoſophers, poets, or artiſts. The people have the reputation of being friendly and benevolent; and, perhaps, they are leſs corrupt than in other parts of Italy. It is certainly, however, a delightful city, and ſtrangers who ſettle in Italy, will, perhaps, do well to prefer it to any place. Its ſituation in the vale of Arno, and on the banks of the river, is extremely beautiful. The ſurrounding hills are charming. It is impoſſible to live at Rome or Naples during the ſummer months, while the air of Florence is refreſhed by temperate breezes from the mountains and the ſea, even in the hotteſt ſeaſon. In the winter it is ſomewhat cold, being expoſed to the Tramontane winds, particularly ſince the Appenines have been ſtripped of their firs. Proviſions and fruit are abundant and cheap, and the contiguity of the ſea affords opportunity of receiving from or ſending to England whatever may be neceſſary, as alſo a facility of repairing to the coaſt for health or pleaſure. Its being the reſidence of an ambaſſador facilitates introduction to ſociety; and the Caſſino is opened, without difficulty, to ſtrangers, who may aſſociate with the nobility of both ſexes that aſſemble here for cards and converſation, and occaſionally for dinner parties.

The ſtyle of viſiting is not coſtly: very few entertainments are given at private houſes, except thoſe at which the whole expence may be lemonade and ice, and ſometimes tea. The chief intercourſe is in morning viſits, or at public places. The dinner is ſelfiſh and negligent all over Italy. At Florence the women appear every evening at the opera or the theatre, where they have annual boxes: two of them are ſeldom ſeen together. A lady, attended by a cavaliere ſervente, or ſometimes by two of this ſpecies of animal (the ſecond being a kind of inferior deputy ceciſbeo) is viſited by other gentlemen, and ſometimes by ſome of the chief performers in her box. He who aſpires to the honour of being inliſted in the ſervice of a lady, may undergo the pleaſing duty of attending her every morning, and eſcorting her, in a carriage, or on horſeback, in the woods and walks that border on the Arno. Attended by theſe guardians of their virtue, the women viſit every place or perſon to whom whim may lead them, and call on ſingle men at lodgings or hotels without ſcruple. Every woman almoſt in Italy is openly neglected by the man who has ſolemnly plighted his vows to her, and attended by thoſe who are privileged to poſſeſs the opportunities of ſeduction.

The Florentine nobles live in magnificent houſes, but they ſtill ſell wine by the bottle: ſome of them have a better education than the nobility of Italy in general receive; and in their manſions may be ſeen the indications of literature and taſte.

At the Ranuncini palace our travellers were ſhewn a very fine and ſpirited drawing, on a ſacred ſubject, by Mengs, the Raphael of modern times, which was executed by that painter under the conviction of approaching death, when his expiring genius rouſed itſelf to execute a laſt monument to his fame.

At the Riccardi palace alſo they had a fine library to admire, rich in manuſcripts, and books printed in the 15th century, as well as a ſaloon with a ceiling painted by Luca Gordano; and in other palaces many and beautiful pictures.

Here alſo is a ſpecies of amuſement ſimilar but inferior to that of Sadler's Wells. One evening while our travellers were there, a man deſcended by a rope, on which he reſted by a board fixed to his breaſt, from the ceiling to the ſtage, with great applauſe.

Having left Florence, they travelled three poſts, by Prato, through a flat country of vineyards to Piſtoia, a dull deſerted town, containing little to arreſt the haſty traveller but ſome pictures, in an old ſtyle, in one of the churches. From thence they proceeded, three poſts and a half, through a country well planted with vineyards and ſeparated into ſmall encloſures.

Lucca is the metropolis of a ſmall republic, containing about one hundred and twenty thouſand people, in a diſtrict of, perhaps, thirty miles in circumference. The town has no very cheerful appearance, for the houſes are all lofty and ſhut up with grated windows, and the ſtreets are ſomewhat narrow; it is enlivened, however, by the buſy activity of the people, who are ſtill as diſtinguiſhed for induſtry as they were in the time of Strabo. The ſoil of the country is remarkably fertile and well repays the labour of the tenants. It formerly furniſhed ſupplies to the Romiſh armies. Its olives, and other productions, now afford a revenue of 400,000 crowns. The government is ariſtocratical.

This place lays claim, indeed, to an antiquity little ſhort of that of Rome, though, according to ſome accounts, it was peopled by a Roman colony. It was eſteemed the chief town in Ciſalpine Gaul. Some veſtiges of the ſplendour of Lucca, in former ages, are ſtill to be ſeen. An oſſuarium and a cinerarium were diſcovered in 1692, by which it appeared, that the people were formerly buried and burnt within the walls of the town, contrary to a law of the twelve tables, which the independent ſpirit of the people diſregarded, as well as to all ſalutary regulations. The remains of its magnificent amphitheatre, into which whole foreſts and oceans were occaſionally introduced, and which was alternately filled with the beaſts of Aſia and Africa, and with the fleets and monſters of the deep, are now converted into the walls of a priſon ſtill to reverberate with the ſounds of guilt and miſery. The materials of this amphitheatre have been employed in the erection of churches, in honour of that religion which ſuppreſſed the barbarous ſpectacles therein exhibited.

Lucca is ſaid to have been converted to Chriſtianity by St. Paolino, a diſciple of St. Peter, of whom many miraculous ſtories are related, and who is ſuppoſed to watch, with the affection of a patron, over the intereſts and ſecurity of the city, where he is reverenced as one of the ſeventy diſciples, and the firſt martyr of Tuſcany. The doctrines and principles of the Romiſh church took deep root at Lucca. The hiſtorians of the city are anxious to vindicate the pretenſions of St. Anthony, a prieſt of Lucca, to the honour of having firſt inſtituted the eremetic life in Italy, in the fourth century, by retiring himſelf to Mount Piſano, now called San Pantaleone, in the territory of Lucca.

There is ſomewhat of the ſtrict ſpirit of republican equality to be met with at Lucca. No titles are borne by the higher ranks, except in the caſe of a few individuals who have foreign diſtinctions. Sumptuary laws are obſerved even by the women, who wear black the whole year, except during the Carnival, when they change their colours every day.

A ride of two poſts, from Lucca, brought our travellers through a low wet country to Piſa, which is a remarkably fine ſtately city. The quays are broad and handſome, and the Arno dilating towards its mouth has a nobler expanſe here than at Florence. The ſtreets built on each ſide of the river have a grand appearance. Florence and Paris derive their ornament from buildings circumſtanced in a ſimilar manner. Wren deſigned that London ſhould have taken the ſame advantage of its river, and if his plan had been adopted ſtrangers would have heard but little of the views from the Pont-Neuf, or of the perſpective of the canals in the Dutch towns. The two ſides of Piſa are connected by three bridges, one of which is very handſome. The Arno, however, is but ſhallow, and navigable even in the winter only by ſmall veſſels, which are towed by boys, who run along a wall which forms part of the embankment of the river. The town has loſt much of its ancient population and importance; and inſtead of the one hundred and fifty thouſand inhabitants of which it once boaſted, among which were one hundred citizens, each of which fitted out a galley at his own expence, and maintained it during a war, it does not now contain above twenty thouſand. The court, however, often reſides here, particularly during the winter, as the air is milder than at Florence.

The Piſa guide, if a traveller can procure it, will give him an ample account of the botanical garden and the obſervatory, of a cathedral with pillars from the temple of Epheſus, and gates, ſome from Jeruſalem, ſome elaborated by John of Bologna; of a baptiſtery, remarkable for its font and pulpit, and of a leaning tower, of which it is not yet determined, whether the inclined poſition be deſigned or accidental.

dental. He will alſo remark the curious cuſtoms, ſham battles on the bridge, annual ceremonies, &c. &c. It may be worth while, however, to notice the campo ſanto, a cemetry of very peculiar deſcription: it is built upon the reputed dimenſions of the ark, being five hundred and fifty palms in length and one hundred and ſixty in breadth. The earth in its encloſure is ſaid to have been brought from Paleſtine, and to have the power of pulveriſing bodies, depoſited in it, in the ſpace of twenty-four hours. The walls are painted in freſco with fantaſtic and extravagant repreſentations of death, in different forms, and of angels employed in the pious office of taking ſouls out of the mouths of juſt perſons, or of conteſting with devils for friars and godly perſons, with other ſuch edifying conceits: but the moſt important objects of obſervation in it, are two old inſcriptions which illuſtrate the cuſtoms of antiquity. They deſcribe the honours voted by the Piſan colony to Lucius, and Caius Cæſar, the ſons of Auguſtus. To Lucius is decreed a black ox and a black ſheep, adorned with blue fillets: it is directed that the ſacrifices ſhould be burnt, and that urns of milk, honey, and oil ſhould be poured upon them. Caius, who died of wounds ſuſtained for the republic, is to be lamented by a general mourning, with a ſuſpenſion of all buſineſs and amuſement: and the 21ſt of February is noted as an inauſpicious day, in which no ſacrifices, ſupplications, and eſpouſals can be made, and no games, but thoſe of funeral rites, can be celebrated. In this cemetery is a monument, recently ſet up, in honour of Algarotti.

The country between Piſa and Leghorn, but two poſts diſtant from each other, is well wooded. Leghorn is a ſmall town. The appearance of trade is not great. Engliſh goods, uſeful and ornamental, of every kind are expoſed in the ſhops, ſome of which are very handſome, in the ſtyle of thoſe in London, and contain a great variety of articles. The ſtreets and coffee-houſes are crowded with people of all nations, with Jews and Turks, and all the throng of the mercantile tribe, whoſe daily buz ſoon wearies the ſtranger that loiters but for obſervation and amuſement.

The poſt, the cuſtom-houſes, and particularly the lazaretto where quarantine is performed with ſecurity to the town and convenience to the individual, are well appointed and directed. It is a pleaſing and no uncommon circumſtance for perſons, eager for the ſociety of their relations, to enter the lazaretto and live in temporary ſecluſion, and at the riſk of ſuffering, from infection, with the objects of their regard.

Not very far from the lazaretto is a burial-ground: diſeaſe and death are near neighbours. This ſpot is eſpecially intereſting to the Engliſh traveller, as appropriated to the reception of his countrymen. There are ſeveral handſome monuments, but the inſcriptions are not often claſſical, and ſometimes ſavour of mercantile ſpirit.

The evening amuſements at Leghorn are confined, at this time of the year, to the theatre, and dramatic repreſentations are in general exhibited by Neapolitan children (pygmean actors) whoſe premature powers, and artificial accompliſhments ſurpriſe and diſguſt the ſpectator.

Having left Leghorn, they ſlept the firſt night at Piſa, and the next day arrived at Sienna, after they had paſſed through a country which, by its vegetation and ſcenery, reminded them of England, till they came again to hills covered with olives. Their road lay through Farnachetti, Caſtel, del Boſco, Scala, Certaldo, Poggio Bonzi, and Caſtiglioncello, in all eight poſts.

Sienna is ſomewhat of a ſolitary town, ſituated in a very beautiful country. The Engliſh often chooſe it for a reſidence. In the time of Dante its polite inhabitants enjoyed the reputation of ſpeaking the Italian language in great purity, and they have retained the reputation ever ſince. Hence it is reſorted to as a ſchool, in which are ſtudied the graces of the Italian tongue. Society is obtained here with little difficulty. The ladies, however, are ſaid to be dangerous, and to abuſe the freedom which they enjoy, more, perhaps, than the women of any town in Italy; and no where, in good truth, are they overmuch reſtrained. The cathedral in this town is elaborately enriched with marble ſculptured pillars, and Moſaic pavement, by Dominico Bucafumi; and the curious pulpit of diaphanous alabaſter is worked with ſacred ſubjects by Giovanni di Piſa. After admiring in this cathedral Bernini's ſtatues, our travellers were ſhewn, in the Sacriſtie, twenty-nine volumes of illuminated vellum with the church ſervice, executed together with twenty-nine more volumes now in Spain, by a Benedictine monk: a beautiful and elaborate work of the cloiſter.

Having left Sienna, they ſlept the firſt night at Radiocaſani, in a ſolitary houſe, which ſtood in the centre of bleak hills not far from Chiuſi, the ancient Cluſium, the capital of Porſenna. The next morning, having deſcended from our rocky unadorned hills, by or near the old Via Caſſia, to a ſmall wretched village called Ponte Centino, they entered the pope's territories, which were inſtantly characteriſed by the appearance of idleneſs and dirt. At San Lorenzo, their next ſtage, they had a fine view of the expanded lake of Bolſena, and ſoon arrived at the town of Bolſena.

Travelling from thence they entered the Boſco Helerno, the ancient Lucus Volſinenſium, where ſome of the pope's guards demanded money for protecting them againſt the unauthoriſed banditti who formerly pillaged travellers in this notorious wood. Their route, as they continued their journey under oaks ſcarce yet diſcoloured by the tints of autumn, conducted them through Monteſiaſconi to Viterbo, a large town, of which the inhabitants ſupport twenty-four convents. The air of the neighbourhood is impregnated with ſulphureous particles, which aſcend from a ſmall lake, formed at no great diſtance by the waters which iſſue from a boiling ſpring.

They ſet off very early next morning, and hurried through ſome now unrecorded towns, about ſix poſts, to Rome. The poſtillions drove, the laſt miles, with uncommon rapidity.

They had no ſooner alighted at Pio's, in the Piazza di Spagna, than they procured a guide and haſtened through ſome dirty ſtreets, and over the bridge of St. Angelo, to St. Peter's. They arrived at Rome in the evening of December 2, and contented themſelves for the preſent with a haſty view of St. Peter's, of the corſo crowded with eccleſiaſtics, of the large and incumbered palaces of the nephews of popes and cardinals, of the churches and public buildings of this diſtinguiſhed city, and then returned to their lodgings, where their rooms were thronged with valets, tradeſmen, antiquarians, &c. &c.

It is vain to look for any features of Pagan or Chriſtian Rome ſeparately: they are ſtrangely blended and incorporated together. It is ſometimes difficult to aſcertain the works of ancient and modern times, and almoſt impoſſible to diſcriminate between the characters of ancient and modern ſuperſtition. Houſes of recent date exhibit the detached and ſculptured fragments of Roman buildings. Chriſtian churches are erected on the foundations, and conſtructed with the materials of heathen temples. The ſtatues of the apoſtles are ſupported by the columns of the emperors: and the remains of the puteoli, deſigned for the reception of the vileſt ſlaves, are loſt in the labyrinth of the catacombs, now honoured as the ſepulchre of the primitive martyrs.

The church of St. Theodore ſtands on the ruins of a temple erected in honour of the infant founders of Rome, on the ſpot where they were fabulouſly reported to have been nurſed. The church of St. Coſmo and St. Damian unfolds the gates of a temple, dedicated to the ſame reputed founders of the city. That of Santa Maria, ſopra Minerva, beſpeaks its own origin; and without going out of Rome to find the walls of the temple of Bacchus in the church of St. Urbino, we need only obſerve, that the Pantheon dedicated by Agrippa to Jove and other deities, was conſecrated by Pope Boniface the fourth, to the Virgin and holy martyrs, and by Gregory the fourth to all the ſaints. The Corinthian braſs, deſpoiled from the portico of this temple, was converted into the canopy, ſupported by its wreathed columns, at the Papal altar of St. Peter's; and the church of St. Paul is decorated with marble pillars, drawn from the mauſoleum of Hadrian.

The temper of the Romans ever aſpiring, ſtill often exhibits its force in the degenerate race of the preſent day, in which may be noticed a commanding preſence, an expreſſive countenance, an impoſing air, a genius and a vigour which need but encouragement and direction to break through the fetters which reſtrict their exertion. If we would advert to the magnificence of the ancient city, as diſcernible in monuments ſtill extant, we muſt conſider, with aſtoniſhment, the grand, though half dilapidated fabric of Coliſſæum; the extent and accommodations of the Imperial baths, ſpread out like provinces with walks, porticos, and muſeums, enriched with every variety of decoration; the temples of the city and its obeliſks, its triumphal arches and well compacted roads, carried over rivers and mountains to the extremities of the remoteſt provinces; its aqueducts, its catacombs, its tombs, and its palaces.

The remaining monuments, erected in the flouriſhing times of the republic, are inconſiderable when compared with thoſe of its declining ſtate. The Tiber ſtill divides the city, and of the Sublician or Æmilian bridge only ſome piers are now left; of the capitol the ſite alone is known; its immobile ſaxum has diſappeared; of the temple, where Numa Pompilius had his intercourſe with Ægeria, and derived ſanctions for his ſalutary laws, nothing remains but a dripping grotto with a broken ſtatue: of the great work of the Cloaca Maxima but one arch of a ſewer is to be ſeen.

As ſoon as an acquaintance with the works of Greece and of other countries produced a taſte for the arts, the emulation of the candidates for popular favour, and the rivalſhip and munificence of Imperial patronage, filled the city with buildings of uſeful or oſtentatious character. The quarries of Egypt were imported, and the marbles of Aſia were worked up to Grecian deſigns. Unfortunately it happened, that the temples erected in the earlier periods, and the edifices built near them in later times, were ſo crowded together, that they muſt have loſt half their effect.

For ſome time Rome was bounded by its ſeven hills and raiſed up its works on a confined ſcale. When its dominion increaſed, a predilection for the ſeat of empire ſtill remained; and the arts, though generally introduced, were cramped in their exertions. The neceſſity of fortifying a city, of which the inhabitants were engaged in continual wars with the neighbouring powers, required that the ſtreets ſhould be narrow, as more eaſy to be defended, and as occupying a leſs ſpace. Eſtabliſhed plans are not readily altered; and the central part of Rome, for many ages, muſt have been reſtricted to its original dimenſions, which were extremely confined, as one may judge from the ancient plan of Rome diſcovered on a pavement in the church of St. Coſmo and St. Damian; from the dimenſions of the ancient forum; and from the breadth of the via ſacra, a principal ſtreet of Rome, in which its religious proceſſions were diſplayed, and in which Horace and other ſpeculative loiterers ſtrolled, Rome did not dilate into its open ſpaces till eſtabliſhed proſperity excited confidence in the ſecurity of the capital.

Notwithſtanding a ſufficiency of Rome remains, to enable the traveller to trace the progreſs of its architecture from its perfection, in the time of Auguſtus, to its decay in the time of Conſtantine. No one who views the remains of the marble city of the former emperor, but muſt heartily wiſh to have ſeen Rome in its ſplendour. In beholding the arch of the latter emperor loaded with the ornaments of a happier period, the decay of the arts muſt be much lamented.

The intelligent traveller, who dwells with improving meditation on the changes which the city has ſuſtained, and on the moral cauſes that have effected them, feels conſiderable ſatisfaction in this wonderful place, and finds every object pregnant with inſtruction. The Coliſſæum, ſtriking as a beautiful ruin, does not ſufficiently arreſt the attention, unleſs the ſpectator recollects not only the ſavage purpoſes to which it was generally applied, but that the altars, raiſed within its circumference, are conſecrated to ſaints martyred there for a religion now triumphant. The temple of Peace becomes more intereſting, if it is alſo recollected that in it were lodged the ſpoils brought from Jeruſalem; that it was afterwards burnt, like the temple of which it received the treaſures, and that its riches flowed in a molten ſtream through the ſtreets of Rome. The arch of Titus will exhibit proofs of the accompliſhment of the Hebrew prophecies, to him who conſiders the ſculptured repreſentations of the ſacrificial veſſels, the tables of the ſhew bread and of the law, and of the candleſtick with the ſeven branches. Our piety will be awakened to inſtructive reflections, on remembering that Titus entered through this arch to cloſe the gates of the temple of Peace, in auſpicious teſtimony of an eſtabliſhed concord emblematical of that peace which Chriſtianity, aboliſhing the Jewiſh polity, ſhould finally produce. The inſcription on the arch of Conſtantine becomes really curious to the reader, who, in the expreſſion of the emperor's having ſaved the republic "by an impulſe of the divinity and the greatneſs of his own mind," diſcovers an alluſion to the dream which hiſtorians repreſent to have preceded the victory over Maxentius: and in traverſing the vaſt tract which was covered by the palace of Nero, it is ſatisfactory to recollect, with Oroſius, that a building polluted by crimes, and from which Chriſtianity was cruelly perſecuted, was marked out as a monument of deſtruction by divine vengeance.

The church has had its periods of taſte in the arts, and its periods of decay. Its temples, where the graceful dome is ſuſpended, where the breathing ſtatue and the living picture are ſhewn, are too often incumbered with rich materials and elaborate ornaments; its virgins dreſſed out in trumpery, and its altars covered with tinſel.

There is but little encouragement given to modern artiſts either by the pope or the Roman nobility, who are content with exhibiting the treaſures of hereditary poſſeſſion; and they, whoſe anceſtors rewarded the labours of Michael Angelo, now ſcarce afford to pay an artiſt to copy portraits; and when they do, they chiefly encourage foreigners.

Our travellers made an excurſion to Tivoli, to which they drove, over eight miles dreary waſte of the Campania, a country once deſcribed, by Varro, as an orchard, and excelling all lands in fertility. The parts of it which are now thinly inhabited, are laboured by perſons who repair to it for a ſeaſon from Viterbo, Perugia, and other parts of Italy: the Roman territories being depopulated by caſtration, celibacy, and bad government. The few tenants of the diſtrict prefer the pure air of the mountains to that of the plains, rendered unwholeſome by the noxious vapours which aſcend from ſtagnant waters and a volcanic ſoil. The country about Rome is of a very volcanic nature. The ſcenery of Tivoli; the fine ruins of the villa of Mæcenas, of which the arches ſtill diſplay a great range of front covered now with vineyards; the caſcades, ſome of which ruſh headlong from the ruins to ſwell the Arno; the hills covered with olives, and the elegance and projecting ſwell of the Sybil's temple, hanging over the grotto of Neptune, both amuſe and delight the mind.

They were conducted to the villa Eſtenſe, near the town where Hippolito of Eſte, cardinal of Ferrara, whom Arioſto dedicated his Orlando Furioſo to, built up his taſteleſs and elaborate ſtructure, gardens, terraces, grottos, and other artificial works in face of the bold and uncontrolled beauties of the neighbouring country.

Afterwards they viſited, with leſs pleaſure, Freſcati, where the modern Romans, as well as thoſe of ancient times, paſs a few of thoſe weeks when it is moſt unhealthy to remain at Rome. The villas are ſtately, the gardens large and adorned with water-works, hydraulic organs, buſts, ſtatues, &c.

CHAP. VI.

Departure from Rome—Veletri—Terracina—Fundi—Moli di Gaeta—From Capua to Naples—The Beauties of the Bay—Amuſements, &c.—Departure from Naples—From Rome—Various Towns—Venice—Padua—Verona—Augſbourg, &c.—Arrival at Bruſſels—Concluſion.

HAVING left Rome they drove over other parts of the deſerted Campania, rendered intereſting by the extenſive ruins of an aqueduct, and by the veſtiges of a few buildings, and bounded on one ſide by the ſlopes of Freſcati prettily covered with houſes. As they approached Veletri the country improved in cultivation. There was the appearance of vineyards, olive-trees, &c.

Veletri is by ſome ſuppoſed to have been the birth-place of Auguſtus. It was, certainly, ſometimes the ſeat of the reſidence of the emperors; and the ruins of Otho's palace are ſtill to be ſeen in the neighbourhood. As it is not above twenty or twenty-five miles from Rome, it was near enough to partake of the viciſſitudes of the capital. It now contains about fifteen thouſand inhabitants. It affords but indifferent accommodations to travellers.

The next morning after having paſſed through a country ſlightly variegated with cultivation, they entered on the Pontine marſhes, and proceeded rapidly over a fine road above fens, as extended and dreary as thoſe of Lincolnſhire, about ſix poſts and a half to Terracina, of which the fine ſpiral rock, formerly called Reato, and a ſea view opened beautifully. It is a ſmall town with a church built on the lofty ſummit, where ſtood, in ancient days, on the white rocks of Anxur, a temple of Jupiter. The neighbourhood of Terracina exhibits a beautiful diſplay of the productions of the Italian climate.

Having entered the Neapolitan dominions, as they approached Fundi they were ſtruck with the ſight of an orchard of orange trees, the firſt that they had ſeen; for though theſe trees abound towards Nice, and in ſome ſheltered and more mild ſpots of Italy, they are confined in the parts which they have hitherto viſited. Thoſe which they ſaw near Fundi were about the ſize of a large apple tree; they are clumpy, but ſomewhat too round and regular to produce a pictureſque effect, notwithſtanding the beauty of the golden fruit contraſted with the green of its leaves. There are very fine cork trees in the neighbourhood, which retain their beautiful ſable green leaves, reſembling thoſe of the ilex during the winter months.

The inhabitants of Fundi have had a bad character from the higheſt antiquity. Mola di Gaeta is a ſmall fiſhing town, beautifully ſituated at the head of a delightful bay. The whole neighbourhood ſwarms with inhabitants, whom induſtry might clothe better, but who ſeem to prefer dirt and poverty with indolence, to wealth and happineſs with labour.

From Mola di Gaeta, they had a charming ride the next morning, along a fine terrace covered with myrtles and olives, to Carigliano, where they paſſed the river Carigliano, the ſilent Liris of antiquity, and the boundary of ancient Latium, near which are the remains of an aqueduct that belonged to Minturnæ, and the plains where the Romans fought with the Tarentines, aided by Phyrrus. The drive from thence, by St. Agade and Francoleſi, to Capua, is leſs adorned by vegetation; it is, however, populous and fertile.

From Capua they had two poſts to Naples, where they arrived as the evening cloſed, and drove down the throng of the Strada di Toledo, lighted with candles at the ſtalls, placed on each ſide, as occaſional ſhops of proviſions, which, together with the lamps at the madonnas, and the flambeaux of a ſtring of carriages, produced a gay effect of illumination.

They took up their abode at the hotel de Venice. The next morning, though the 29th of December, they breakfaſted upon the platform of ſome leads which hang over the border of this beautiful bay, admiring, under a ſummer's ſun, Veſuvius, from the conical top of which iſſued a cloudy column of ſmoke; and around them the white and cheerful buildings that encircle the bay, the iſland of Capri, and the ſhore of Portici. Finding their lodging, however, inconvenient, they moved to Labotte's, a ſituation equally beautiful.

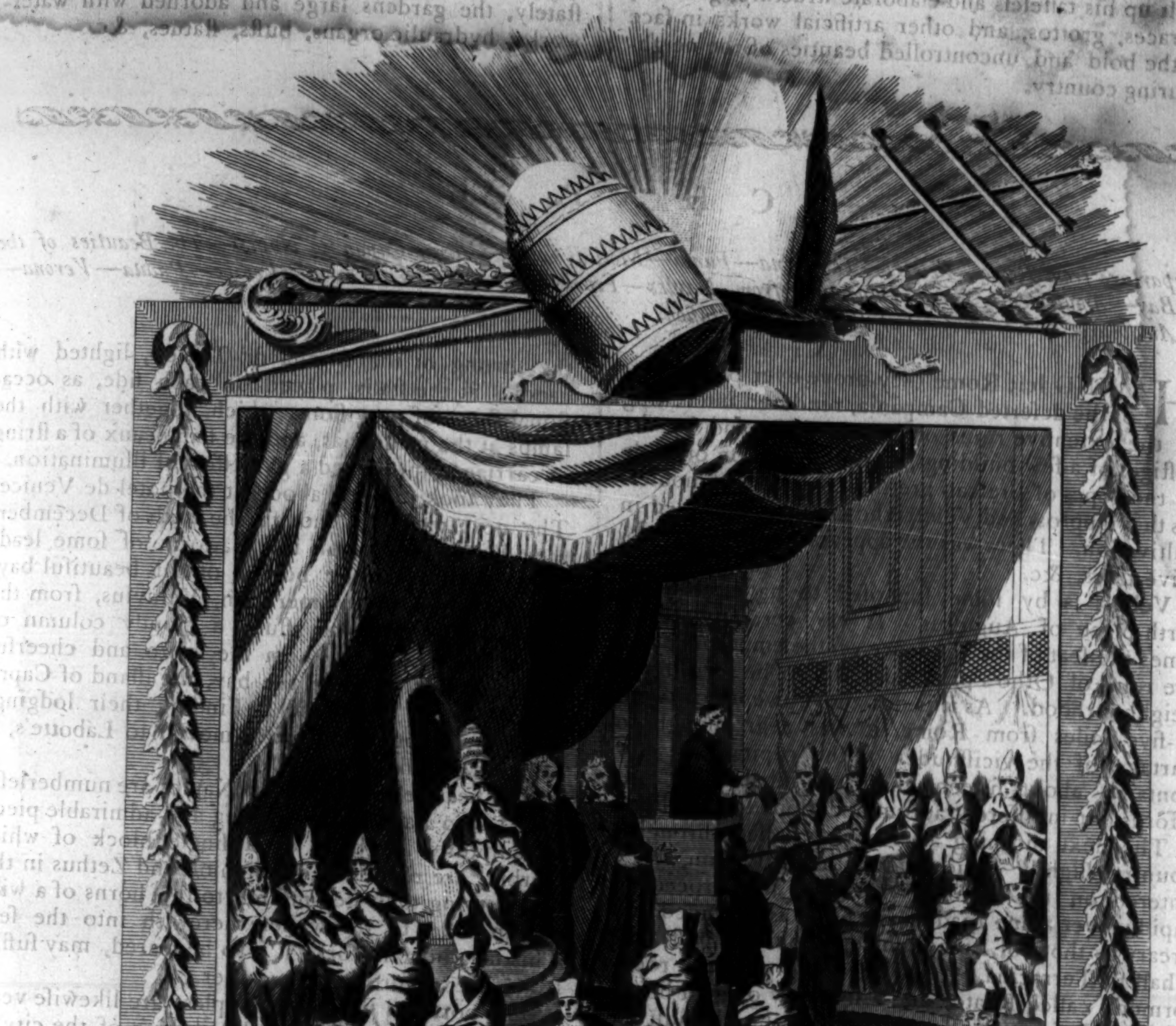
The beauties of the bay at Naples are numberleſs. The Tauro Farneſe is a ſtriking and admirable piece of ſculpture, in which, on a ſingle block of white marble, are repreſented Amphion and Zethus in the act of tying their ſtep-mother to the horns of a wild bull in order to throw her therewith into the ſea. This magnificent work, it is to be feared, may ſuffer from its expoſure to the weather.

The port and the pier at Naples, are likewiſe very beautiful; but the general diſtribution of the city is not ſtriking. The Neapolitan ſtyle of architecture is bad; ſome of the churches are handſome, and extremely rich in ornaments: the pictures which they contain do not engage attention after thoſe at Rome. It is the cuſtom, on arrival at Naples, as it is alſo at Spa and other places, to ſend round cards to the principal ſtrangers; an attention which, though it does not eſtabliſh an acquaintance, facilitates intercourſe.

There is an aſſemblage of foreigners from all parts, who meet at the houſes of the different ambaſſadors; and alſo at the academy, for admiſſion to which, it is neceſſary to be furniſhed with tickets by the ambaſſadors, and to be provided with a full dreſs. At this academy is a good concert, and cards, and principes and principeſſas in crowds. The Neapolitan nobles do not ſtand high in their general character. Extremely uneducated, and holding literature in contempt, the men have little but their good humour to recommend them. Their evenings are generally ſpent at cards or at an inſipid opera; and they have not thoſe common ſources of information, which, in other countries, are opened in newſpapers and dramatic entertainments.

The public amuſements at Naples are various and ſplendid. The opera-houſe, its decorations and performers are in a ſuperior ſtyle. The inferior theatres are tolerably ſupported, but little frequented.

The Engliſh are often invited to be ſpectators of the hunting-matches, at which his majeſty ſlaughters hundreds of boars, which being preſerved in his woods, and fattened on the huſks of grapes, on morelles, truffles, and cheſnuts, furniſh admirable food, and of a flavour infinitely ſuperior to that of any pork. Some of theſe boars are preſerved in the crater of the extinguiſhed volcano at Aſtrume, which is ſix miles in circumference, and of which the lava



The JUBILEE proclaimed in St. Peter's Church at Rome.

BRITISH
7 FE 90
MUSEUM

is covered with woods, as was that of Veſuvius before the eruption in 1631. It is no uncommon circumſtance for his majeſty's party to butcher many hundreds of theſe boars in a few days. Naples is filled with pork, and the ſtalls in every ſtreet are covered with its brawny rolls. The king is a favourite with his people: but his dominions are badly governed: they abound with people inſufficiently employed. No meaſures are adopted to ſuppreſs their crimes by a rigorous adminiſtration of juſtice: and as poverty is very general, notwithſtanding the fertility of the country, it is unſafe to travel in Calabria, or, indeed, any where but in the public roads. At Naples the uſe of the ſtilletto has been as common as in the other parts of Italy.

Naples and its environs are not only ſuperior to Rome and its vicinity in the beauties of nature, but almoſt rival them, in the opinion of the general traveller, in point of local intereſt, and in antiquities, at leaſt as to their preſent appearance. On every ſide of this delightful city there is much to awaken the recollection of former times: if we proceed through the wonderful paſſage of Pauſilipo, and ſkirt the ſhores of Baiæ, we trace the veſtiges of Roman temples, the ruins of villas of Pompey, Cæſar, Cicero, Lucullus, Lentulus, and many other diſtinguiſhed men, now covered in part by the tranſparent waves of the bay. In the neighbourhood are the ſtill more ancient ruins of Cumæ; the cave, where the virgin Sybil uttered her oracles; the fragments of the temple dedicated to Apollo by Dædalus; the arch of Aqua Felice, a portal of Cumæ, and part of a well conſtructed aqueduct. Near theſe are the ſcenes of Virgil's Elyſium with all its diſtinctive ſcenery and circumſtances; the remains of Nero's temple, ventilated by the ingenious tyrant as if with deſign to prolong the ſufferings of the wretched objects of his vengeance; the coliſæum, and the piſcina mirabilis, a reſervoir which was conſtructed to hold ſupplies of water ſufficient for the fleets at Miſenum, or the luxuries of Baiæ. Not far from theſe are the Campi Plægrei, the Leucogaia encloſed by projecting brows of hills which has continued to ſmoke from the time of Strabo, ſcalded to whiteneſs by the corroding vapour; and the mole, or the reputed remains of Caligula's mad attempt. The whole circumference to the horizon is marked with claſſical and diſtinguiſhed objects; and we may contemplate at the ſame time, with different but intereſting ſenſations, the town of Puzzuoli, decayed ſince the age of Cicero from a ſecond Rome, in which St. Paul preached, on his arrival from Rhegium, to a ſmall fiſhing town, and the iſlands where Julia and the wife and ſiſter of Commodus were baniſhed, and where Tiberius rioted in beaſtly ſenſuality.

If the places or ruins yet alluded to are not to be put in competition with the veſtiges of antiquity on the Roman territory, let the traveller drive in a different direction to Pompeii, over plains laid deſolate by Lava, to the ſite of a town more than once deſtroyed by the eruptions of the mountain, as appears from the foundations and various lamina on which they were laid. Nothing can be more intereſting than the remains of a place preſerved ages after thoſe of contemporary cities, by the very deſtruction which threatened prematurely to annihilate its every trace.

At the firſt ſlight deſcent at the entrance, may be ſeen the ſoldier's quarters, with the names of ſome ancient Romans, inſcribed above ſeventeen centuries ago, on the walls; the platform and proſcenia of two theatres; ſome rooms of a private houſe, with a human ſkull that once was animated with the features of Roman genius; the impreſſion of a foot ſunk in yielding lava; the perfect form of the temple of Iſis, built of ſtuccoed brick; its columns, its altars; the cænabulum of the prieſts, in which the bones of ſome fiſh were found; the ſlaughter-houſe with the ſtill exiſting ring to which the generous and ſtruggling victim was tied, and the canal by which the blood was conducted away.

If aſcending by the Appian way, the traveller proceeds acroſs the vineyard to a ſuburb of the town, he may behold two narrow ſtreets, each about ten feet wide entirely cleared; he will have a perſpective view of both at the ſame time diverging obliquely from a fountain at a ſharp angle. He will ſee the rows of houſes on each ſide unroofed, indeed, and with walls dilapidated, and preſenting the appearance of buildings half deſtroyed and cleared away after a fire. The pavement, the narrow trotoir, and channels worn by the wheels, ſtill perfect. The houſes, excepting one diſtinguiſhed by its colonade and double ſtair-caſe, are very ſmall, and generally built with a portico encloſing a court, into which fountains were uſually introduced. The apartments, particularly thoſe of the ſurgeons houſe, where there are chirurgical inſtruments and manuſcript rolls, as alſo thoſe ſuppoſed to have belonged to the veſtals, are painted with figures, many of which have been removed, but a few ſtill remain and look beautiful, when their colours are freſhened by water thrown upon them. In ſome rooms are the remains of Moſaic pavement. The walls of the ſepulchre at the outſide of the city, are ſculptured with ancient maſks.

Some ruins in the neighbourhood exhibit a ſpecimen of an ancient villa with the whole plan of the houſe, its out-houſes, and its garden, which is about, perhaps, half an acre, and divided into compartments, in one of which was a pond. The walls of the rooms retain ſome delicate painting. The cellars ſtill contain Amphoræ, with wine, incruſted by aſhes to a ſolid ſubſtance. In the cellars of this villa the ſkeletons of ſome unhappy ſufferers were found, who had fled there for ſhelter from the ſhower of aſhes which buried the diſtrict.

At Herculaneum the remains of a theatre ſtill may be ſeen, with its ſeats, its orcheſtra, and ſeveral departments, all much more below the ſurface of the ground than are the ruins of Pompeii.

In one muſeum at Portici is collected almoſt all the furniture, uſeful and ornamental, of a Roman houſe. The lectiſternia, the ſideboard, the culinary utenſils, and even the eatables are preſerved. The weights and ſcales and ſteelyards are ſcarce excelled by modern improvements. The caledaria with heaters firſt ſuggeſted the idea of tea-urns. The implements of agriculture, which reſemble thoſe uſed in our own time, prove that the neceſſity always operates by the moſt ſimple contrivances and ſuggeſts nearly the ſame means. The tops, and different repreſentations of ancient amuſements, prove the antiquity of many games. The toilet and its furniture unfold the decorations of female taſte. The chirurgical inſtruments here are not ſufficient in number to illuſtrate much of the ſtate of ſurgery at the time when they were uſed. Among the muſical inſtruments is an uncommon trumpet, which is ſuppoſed to be the ancient clangor tubarum.

Naples is viſited not merely for the remains of antiquity; nature no where exhibits more wonderful and extraordinary features. Veſuvius, ſince our travellers were in its neighbourhood, only rolled out a volume of ſmoke, ſometimes lightly and gracefully diſcharged, ſometimes with heavy and lowering ebullition clinging to the ſides. During their ſtay here they never once ſaw the coruſcation of a flame, though the mountain has been often thought to threaten. Having mounted on mules at Portici, with impatience to viſit the Crater, they rode about four miles, to the lava at the baſe, part of which is covered with cheſnuts, and vineyards from which the Lacryma Chriſti and Muſcadel are made. Quitting their mules at the convent, they toiled over a continuation of large and caked aſhes of lava, and above them aſcended by looſe and yielding ſand, often treading on latent fire, of which they were ſenſible from the burning heat which ſcorched their feet and turned the colour of their ſhoes; and the exceſſes of which were avoided only by the ſkill of the guides, who carefully tried and examined the appearances of the lava, leſt it ſhould burſt into a ſudden flame. When, after much fatigue, though without being obliged to run over the incruſtation of the lava, they reached the verge of the crater, and drank their friends health in ſome Engliſh porter. The perpendicular height is every year increaſed. It is eleven thouſand fathoms above the ſurface of the ſea; and the crater gradually converges towards the top. As they looked into it, when the wind blew in the oppoſite direction, they ſaw the white ſloping ſides of aſhes, and a projecting tower, as it were, ready to fall into the chaſm. The mountain groaned under their feet, and threw up threatening volumes of ſmoke glowing with a tinge of fire, and, ſometimes, almoſt burſting into a flame. As they crept down, ſome of the guides endeavoured to work on their minds, and to engage them to promiſe additional rewards if they conducted them ſafely. Theſe guides deem themſelves ſecure as they are guarded by charms, ſome of them being marked with a croſs of St. Anthony, the patron of Italy, a guardian againſt fire.

The weather at Naples is ſometimes dreadfully oppreſſive: at other times remarkably fine. Every nobleman in Calabria has a wooden houſe to reſort to in caſe of an alarm of an earthquake. One might fear alſo without great imputation of timidity, the effects of ſubterranean fires, a burſt of which, in 1538, dried a lake not far from Naples, and threw up, in one night, a mountain three miles in circumference and one hundred feet high. But theſe are rare calamities, and the vegetation is wonderful. Italy formerly produced eighty ſorts of wine, more than two thirds of which were the production of the ſoil: and our travellers had green peas in January.

The palace at Caſerta is ſtill, what its name imports, a dreary houſe, in a flat country, in the plain of ancient Capua. It contains views of all the Italian ports, by Hacket, and ſome ſpacious rooms, ſome of which are finiſhed and furniſhed with ſplendid decorations. The ſtair-caſe, and chapel, and theatre, are very handſome. The gardens are ſtiff and diſpoſed with childiſh ornaments. The town, and houſes of the nobility are wretched.

Having left Naples they arrived again at Rome February 1, and departed from thence February 15, driving through a flat deſolate country, about four poſts, by Civita Caſtellana, to Borgetto, where the appearance of population began to improve. They croſſed the Tiber at Ponte Felice, and travelling over a more varied country paſſed Otricoli, ſituated amidſt romantic ſcenes, and thence mounted, by a doubtful aſcent, to Narni, which is eight or nine poſts from Rome, and ſurrounded by tremendous cliffs and rocks, of which the moonlight did not ſuffer them fully to diſcern the beauty. Though it was late, they did not ſtop to ſee if it correſponded with its former character, for elegant accommodations, or to examine the birth-place of Tacitus, or the reputed bridge of Auguſtus, and the Æolian hills of Cæſis in the neighbourhood, but ſatiated with antiquities proceeded on to Terni.

The next morning they walked through a beautiful and well wooded country, by a gradual aſcent, about four miles, to the Caſcata della Marmore, to which there is a road which was cut through the rock to facilitate the paſſage of the emperor Joſeph when he viſited the caſcade, ſo well known and ſo deſerving of admiration.

From Terni to Strettura they admired the hills richly covered with evergreens and the valleys, which, in the time of Pliny, were mowed four times a year, and ſtill retain their reputation for fertility. Theſe beauties, however, gradually diſappeared as they approached Spoleto, and aſcended the Somma, one of the Appenines. They ſlept at Spoleto, a town famous for having repulſed the troops of Hannibal, fluſhed with their victory at Thraſimene, from a gate which ſtill exiſts, and is, beſides, rendered worthy of attention by a fine aqueduct.

The next day they drove through a cheerful olive country, by le Vene to Foligno, through the vale of Umbria, along which the Clitumnus freſhens the air.

The people ſtill believe that the breed of white cattle, which paſture on the banks of this river, and ſpread themſelves, indeed, over all Italy, derive their whiteneſs from its waters. Foligno is a large well ſituated town, famous in the records of modern hiſtory, for its confectionary. On the night which had preceded the day of their arrival, it experienced a ſlight concuſſion, an expiring throe of the earthquake which produced ſuch conſiderable effects in October laſt, and which has ſo frequently continued its movements, ſince that time, that the obſervance of the carnival there has been interdicted.

The aſcent of an high mountain, ſcattered over with poor villages, brought our travellers to Serravalle. The country improved as they approached Ponte le Trave, and its ſcenery changed again to the wildneſs of Savoy, as they drew near to Valcimara. They ſlept at Tolentino. The land of this neighbourhood is highly capable of benefiting by the induſtry of its inhabitants, who, after having ſufficiently laboured on it, repair to the environs of Rome to cultivate the plains of Campania. The town affords a ſmall opera-houſe. The next day a ride through a pleaſing country, ſwelling into gentle declivities, led them, by Macerata and Sambuchetto, to Loretto. They were here permitted, as ſtrangers, to be preſent, in the evening, at a private theatre. The public opera-houſe was ſuppreſſed about twelve years ago, upon the pope's obſerving that it faced the church.

The next day they had two ſtages through a populous and proſperous country to Ancona. They were pleaſed with the improving neatneſs of the town, which has flouriſhed ſince it was declared a free port by Clement XII. The mole, the port, the triumphal arch of Trajan, the cheerfulneſs of commerce, and the indications of ſucceſsful induſtry, render the town very intereſting. In the evening they were preſent at a maſked ball, which, however, was not more enlivened by character than thoſe are in England. It commenced with a lottery, the effects of which, though they may intoxicate a few, muſt produce a general depreſſion of ſpirits little favourable to the ſpirit of the entertainment.

Their next day's route lay by Caſe Brugiate and Senigaglia, the laſt of which is a large and flouriſhing town, and has a cathedral embelliſhed by the preſent pope, of whoſe munificent piety there are many proofs in Italy. Paſſing thence through a flat country, by Marotto and Fano, they arrived in the evening and ſlept at Peſaro, the ancient town of which was ſwallowed up, a little before the battle of Actium, by an opening of the earth: it is now a diſtinguiſhed place of reſort for Italian merchants.

The next morning they renewed their journey, and drove over a dreary flat, by Catholica, to Rimini, a handſome but irregular town, decorated with the ornament of a fine old arch. Paſſing thence through Savignano they arrived at Caſena, a Bologna in miniature, juſt at the concluſion of a tournament, which is annually kept up there. Continuing their courſe afterwards through Forli, they ſlept at Faenza, where, at the opera, they were regaled with the ſight of female dancers.

The ſucceeding day brought them by Imola and St. Nicholo, to Bologna. Having viſited this city before, they ſtayed but one day; and on the following morning travelled by a very bad road to St. Georgio, and thence by a ſtill worſe to Cento, a ſmall neat town.

The roads the next day, for a poſt and a half, to St. George, and afterwards for the ſame diſtance, to Ferrara, were ſo execrably bad, that they were obliged to have eight oxen to their chaiſe, and eight horſes to that of their friends, with whom they had joined party, and notwithſtanding this, they were detained for nine hours in a deep clay and ſtiff mud, through which, the perſevering efforts of the poor animals could, with difficulty, drag the ſtraining carriages, before they could accompliſh the two poſts and a half.

Ferrara has the appearance of decay. It retains, as veſtiges of its former grandeur, the palace of the princes of the houſe of Eſte, built in a bad ſtyle of architecture; an ancient cathedral, a ſtrong citadel, and ſpacious ſtreets. Arioſto's monument is ſhewn at the Benedictine convent.

Our travellers felt at Ferrara, very ſeriouſly, the effects of a tranſition from the mild air of Naples to the ſeverity of a northern latitude, and regretted that they had occaſion to quit the ſouthern parts of Italy ſo early in the year.

On leaving Ferrara, they proceeded four miles by land, to Ponte di Lago, where they embarked in a very commodious veſſel large enough to receive both their carriages, and floated down the ſtream of the Po, which has here a noble breadth. They dined, and ſlept on board in ſome tolerable beds that their courier made up; and next morning they entered the Taglio, and were towed along the canal by the ſide of dreary Lagune, ſpread out half water and half mud. They left the carriages at Fuſina, and entering the open Lagune had a fine view of Venice.

They glided through rows of handſome palaces lining each ſide of the great canal, and were landed at Petrillo's door, near the Rialto, of which, the beautiful arch is blemiſhed by the effect of ſhops and houſes built upon it.

The Venetians, to whom they had letters, treated them with much attention, and an hoſpitality more liberal than that of Rome or Naples. They give ſplendid entertainments, though their private tables are ſerved with great œconomy. They live in handſome palaces, many of them built from the deſigns of Palladio and other famous architects.

Of the gaiety and ſplendour of the carnival they ſaw but little. The rage for its extravagance ſeems to have expired in the feeble efforts of a few groteſque figures and ſome inſipid maſks. The baout is, however, convenient, and ſerves as an apology for the want of dreſs. One of our travellers was in it at the phil-harmonic ſociety, a caſſino or aſſembly, of which, only the firſt ranks are members, and where a full dreſs is uſually worn. The theatres at Venice are abundantly crowded, and during the carnival, eſpecially, well ſupplied.

The Venetian ſociety is really pleaſant. The women, who are pretty, though they have bad figures, are devoutly inclined to the tender paſſion. Our travellers were invited to exceeding good private concerts: ſeven public theatres are open every night in this joyous city; and the Furor Dramaticus has run ſo high that another is juſt built.

The Doge has only the exterior of royalty, and few privileges but that of diveſting himſelf of his official dignities, and ſometimes appearing as a private man in the evening. He has a revenue of about 2000l. and nominates the dean and canons of St. Mark. His ſons and brothers, however, are diſqualified, by their affinity to him, from holding any civil office, or from being employed in any public department, domeſtic or foreign; and he is not allowed himſelf, to form a connection with any foreign prince without the conſent of council. He is ſubjected to the troubleſome and ſcrutinizing authority of the inquiſition, who have the keys of his palace and can ſearch it at pleaſure, being accountable for their conduct only to the council of ten. Every member of the ſtate, indeed, it is well known, is amenable before theſe vigilant and jealous magiſtrates, to whoſe tremendous power the government is ſuppoſed to be indebted for its ſecurity; and may be conducted out of a palace, to a priſon over the Ponte di Soſpiri, or thrown into the Canal Orphano, without any regular trial or known ſentence.

Titles of nobility have been ſold at Venice upon great emergencies; but the nobles gradually decreaſe into a ſmall ariſtocracy: all are employed in ſome department of ſtate. The podeſtas, who have the civil preſidencies of towns; and the captains, who have the military power, are not allowed ſalaries ſufficient for the ſtate which they maintain, and make up the deficiency by oppreſſion and corrupt adminiſtration. The execution, however, of criminal juſtice is, generally, equitable, though ſtrict; and the people are kept in good order, and not extravagantly taxed. The commerce of the country, however decayed from its former extent, ſtill flouriſhes. Its glaſs manufactories are famous; but the plate glaſs is not by any means ſo large as that of France, nor ſo good as that of England.

The arſenal ſtill exhibits a grand diſplay of naval ſtores, and affords employment for its three thouſand men, which is above double the number uſually employed at Plymouth. The men receive from a paul and a half to eight pauls per day. The oyſters within the arſenal, which fatten on the bitumen and exudation of the wood in the docks and canals here, are in high and deſerved eſtimation, for their ſize and quality, with the Venetian epicures.

The nobles of Venice are, perhaps, more intelligent than thoſe of any other parts of Italy, being early called out to the exertion of their talents in public departments. The lower claſſes of the people are, however, but little inſtructed even on the moſt important ſubjects. The clergy being on the worſt of all eſtabliſhments, that of election, is neceſſarily degraded in its character. Perſons of reſpectable family, and liberal talents, ſhrink from a profeſſion where ſubſiſtence muſt be obtained by a popular canvas, and authority depends on the caprice of the pariſh which is to be directed. The higher ranks are, indeed, virtually reſtrained from taking up the profeſſion, ſince a noble, who enters into the ſacred function, forfeits his hereditary vote in the council. If he obtains a cardinal's cap his whole kindred muſt withdraw from all interference with public affairs: and ſhould he even attain the pre-eminent dignity of patriarch, he will have no power or juriſdiction even over the church of St. Mark,—eccleſiaſtics being ſuſpiciouſly excluded from all authority.

They left Venice March 27, in a borchetta, and taking in their carriages at Fuſina, were towed by horſes along the Brenta to Padua, where they arrived in the evening. This river is confined by banks ſomewhat formal.

The poſt, which they reſumed at Padua, conveyed them two ſtages over a bad road, and through a flat country to Vicenza. As they were travelling northwards they ſhivered, on obſerving that the diſtant mountains, towards which they advanced, were covered with ſnow.

Verona, which is about three poſts and a half from Vicenza, contains many things worthy of attention.

The next morning, they ſaw the country gradually impoveriſh, as they approached Volarni. From thence to Beri, the beautiful river Adige accompanied them, waſhing, in its gentle courſe, the brown and poliſhed baſe of ſome pictureſque rocks which re-echoed every ſound that diſturbed the tranquil ſolitude of the country. At Beri they taſted an excellent white wine made in the neighbourhood, called Vino Santo, in ſtrong expreſſion of the eſtimation in which it is held. At Borghetto, before their arrival at Ala, they quitted the Venetian territories, and were allowed to import all their property unmoleſted, except their money, into the Tyrol; the firſt entrance to which, as they approached Roveredo, opened to them a rude country covered with heaps of rocks, wilder and more fantaſtic in their forms than thoſe of Savoy, and intermingled with tracts cultivated and populous.

A road through an open valley, bounded by bold hills, conducted them through Beſeno to Trent. They proceeded the next day by Brenner and Steinach and Schonberg to Inſpruck, where they ſometimes walked a ſtage, faſter than the horſes would drag the carriages. They were ſtruck with the grand ſcenery of the country.

Inſpruck is finely ſituated on the Inn. They paſſed the river the ſucceeding morning, and toiled the whole day up ſteep hills, or cautiouſly deſcended down frozen roads. They travelled the laſt ſtage, to Reita, by the pale light of the moon, which magnified the appearance of the mountains and reflected its beams on dark foreſts of fir, riſing in beautiful contraſt above extended waſtes of ſnow. At the edge of theſe foreſts their ſervant ſaw two prowling wolves; in ſpite of which, however, and in ſpite of many a fearful precipice, they arrived, about midnight, at a good inn at Reita.

At Reita they underſtood that the neareſt road would lead them through Bavaria, but a paſſport could not be obtained without delay; they therefore continued their courſe over the plains of Suabia, diverſified with fine plantations of fir and parkiſh ſcenery; and after a tedious lingering drive, arrived long after midnight, at Augſbourg.

Augſbourg has the ſpacious ſtreets and bold character of a town that once flouriſhed conſiderably. Its buildings are of a better character than thoſe of contemporary cities; and the ſimple front of the townhouſe has been very much and very juſtly admired.

No remarkable town intervened to detain them between Augſbourg and Ulm, which are diſtant four poſts and a half from each other. They continued their journey by Weſterſetten, Geiſligen, Gæppingen, and Blockingen, five poſts to Stutgard, the capital of the duke of Wirtemburg's dominions, which are bounded by the Alps and the Black Foreſt, and contains about twenty thouſand inhabitants.

They left the town next day and purſued their courſe over a trackleſs road, to Manheim, which is but a few miles from Heidelburg. Having viſited Bingen, they proceeded by Latterſhall to Simerin, where they ſlept.

Early the next morning they reached Treves, ſlept that day at Grævenmaker, and arrived the next day by dinner at Luxembourg: they then drove by Steinfort to Attort, where they ſlept.

The next day they were ſhaken over very bad roads by Malmaiſon to Flamiſoul, and thence through dreary and almoſt unpeopled wilds, on which, however, much cattle is bred, by Grinſheim to Marche, where they ſlept, and the next day proceeded over level unintereſting plains to Namur,

They arrived at Bruſſels March 27, and thence proceeded with all ſpeed to England.

FINIS.

DIRECTIONS TO THE BINDER.

☞ The Work to be placed according to the Order of Publication, viz. The preceding Part, including the moſt Important Modern VOYAGES to various Parts of the Globe, printed in a Set of Alphabets, diſtinguiſhed by Stars; and the latter Part containing other Voyages of Importance, and the moſt recent TRAVELS to different Parts of the World, printed in a ſecond Set of Alphabets without Stars.

N. B. The STAR'D Figures imply thoſe Pages (as far as 234) which precede the Voyages and Travels of COOK, DRAKE, ANSON, BYRON, WALLIS, CARTERET, MULGRAVE, BRUCE, HODGES, PATTERSON, NIEBUHR, BRISSOT, Ld. MACARTNEY, Lady WALLACE, &c.

No. Page
1 FRONTISPIECE to face the TITLE-PAGE.
A new whole Sheet general Chart of the World *9
2 Views of Botany-Bay and in Port Jackſon *19
3 Portrait of a New Zealand Chief 57
4 Natives of Botany-Bay, and the Huts in New South Wales *17
5 Amida, a Deity of Japan 642
6 Ceremonies and Cuſtoms in the Eaſt-Indies *176
7 Religious Ceremonies in Guinea *148
8 Canadians grand Sacrifice to Quitchi Manitou 776
9 Inſide View of the Pagod of Kamaetſma 706
10 A new and complete Mercator Chart of the World *79
11 Ceremony of the Banians on giving a Child its Name 775
12 One of the Forms in which Amida is worſhipped, and the Image of Confucius 796
13 A curious Maſk worn by the Men of the Sandwich-Iſlands 605
14 How the Men of Guinea oblige Wives to purge themſelves from Adultery *164
15 Ixora—the Idol Bruma, and the Heathen God Quinwadi 773
16 The Hottentot — American — Laplander—Chineſe — African, and Greenlander *180
17 Ceremonies of Pegu at Kings Funerals 709
18 A Malabar — Tartar — Algerine—Javaneſe—Highlander, and Hungarian 715
19 King of Florida conſulting his Magician 777
20 Ceremony of a Divorce in Canada 784
21 A Feſtival in honour of Confucius 797
22 The Guebres of Perſia holding a Dog to the Mouth of an expiring Man 775
23 Numbo Jumbo, an Indian Idol 704
24 A ſick Perſon preſented to Ixora 773
25 Ceremonies, &c. paid to the Idol Buddu 707
26 Baptiſm at Rhineburg 810
27 A principal Perſon of Barbary and an Arab *154
28 A Dance in Otaheite 41
29 A Man and Woman of the Sandwich-Iſlands *91
30 A young Sea Otter—an Opoſſum, and a White Bear 426
31 Chart of Norton Sound and Bherings Streights 556
32 Caffres or Hottentots aſſembled for the Admiſſion of their Youth to the State of Manhood 716
33 Proceſſion of penitent Proſtitutes at Naples 833
34 A Female of Africa and a Female of Morocco *151
35 Various Charts of Iſlands, &c. in the Atlantic and Pacific Oceans *55
36 A Diverſion of Swinging in India 774
37 Town and Iſland of St. Helena *78
38 Portraits of a Man and Woman of Prince William's Sound *100
39 Town of Bolcheretzk 635
40 Ceremony of Weighing the Great Mogul 739
41 Various Beaſts of different Parts of the World 561
42 View of Matavia-Bay in Otaheite *201
43 A Man and Woman of Tanna 171
44 Chart of the Friendly Iſlands *214

No. Page
45 Engagement of the Centurion and Acapulco 364
46 Affecting Interview of two Moſkito Men 343
47 Monuments, &c. in Eaſter-Iſland 141
48 New whole Sheet Map of North America 776
49 Landing of Capt. Cook at Mallicolo 164
50 Views of Sandwich-Iſlands *89
51 Portraits of a Man and Woman of Chriſtmas-Sound 524
52 A Marriage amongſt the Laplanders 638
53 Proceſſion of the Flagellants of Spain, Italy, France, &c. 825
54 Views of Sir Charles Saunders's Iſland, Oſnaburg's, Boſcawen's, Admiral Keppel's, and Wallis's Ditto 270
55 Poſtures and Ceremonies of the Turks in Prayer *174
56 The Jubilee proclaimed at Rome 832
57 Funeral Ceremony of the Guebres *160
58 Views at Kamtſchatka 639
59 Portraits of a Man and Woman of New Zealand 56
60 The High Prieſt of the Gaures, and Heads of different Gaurian Prieſts 712
61 A remarkable Animal, and the Vari of Madagaſcar *180
62 Portraits of Potatow and Omai 481
63 The Mode of Dancing in Ulietea, and a Morai in Otaheite *226
64 Captain Wallis at Otaheite in Converſation with Oberea 265
65 View in the Iſland of New Caledonia 175
66 View in the Iſland of Tanna 167
67 Map of Kerguelen's Land 420
68 M. Bouganville in Magellan Streights 340
69 Chart of Van Dieman's Land *191
70 Baptiſmal Ceremonies in Perſia 712
71 Map of Nova Hibernia, &c. 285
72 A Hippah in New Zealand *109
73 A Chief, &c. of Otaheite *194
74 A Chief and Woman of St. Chriſtina 148
75 The Governor of Batavia's Palace in the Eaſt-Indies 792
76 Commodore Anſon attending King George II. with an Account of his Voyage 336
77 A Family of Duſky-Bay 54
78 Map of Byron's-Harbour—Swallows-Bay—a Volcano, &c. 282
79 Inſide of a Houſe in Oonalaſhka 571
80 Map of Tongataboo-Harbour 465
81 Landing of Capt. Cook at Erramango 165
82 Map of Matavia-Bay, &c. *224
83 The Adamites ſeized 791
84 Views of Pitcairn's Iſland 280
85 The Pope deputing two Cardinals to open the Gates of Saint John, &c. 825
86 The Rejoicings of the Mexicans 787
87 A Chineſe Idol called Quantecong 796
88 A Boxing Match at Hapaee, and Portrait of a Man at Mangea 451
89 Mr. Banks receiving a Viſit, and Views of a Rock, Town, &c. 15
90 Inſide of the Pagod of Monkies in Japan 640

7 FE 90
MUSEUM

SUBSCRIBERS' NAMES.

A.

MR. Aſtell, Clapham-common
George Allen, Eſq. Darlington
Mr. Matthew Alder, Spitalfields
Mr. A. Alcheſon
The Rev. Mr. James Alcheſon
Mr. Acton, Larden
Mr. John Ankers, Birmingham
Mrs. Arnold, Kenſington-gore
Sir William Abdy, Cobham
William Addiſon, Eſq. Surry-road
Mrs. Anderſon, Hampton-court
Joſeph Allen, Eſq. Hatton-garden
Mr. John Alfrey, Wapping
Mr. Thomas Allen, Warwick
Mr. John Anderſon, Matham
Mr. Thomas Atkins, ditto
Richard Acres, jun. Pluckley, Kent
Mr. John Axtell, London
Mr. John Acton, Mansfield
Mr. James Adley, Chatham
Mrs. E. Arnold, Liquorpond-ſtreet
Mr. John Allaway
Mrs. Suſannah Allaway
Mr. Audley, Yarmouth
Mr. Richard Atkinſon, Thorn-green, Yorkſhire
Mr. Alivay, Old-ſtreet, St. Luke's

B.

Miſs H. Bowen, Dragon-green, Ealing, Middleſex
Rev. Mr. Byron, Winſton
Rev. G. Burton, Rector of Elvedon, Suffolk
Mr. Barnard, Bartlett's-buildings, Holborn
Mr. John Barnes, New-road, St. George's Eaſt
Mr. Thomas Bettridge, Brook-ſtr. Groſvenor-ſq.
Mr. Daniel Birchel, Bailiff of Calne
Mr. Robert Bamford
Mr. John Bennett, Coleman-ſtreet
Mr. James Blackett
Mr. John Baker, Charing-croſs
Mr. Bartlett, Exeter-ſtreet, Chelſea
Mr. Bailey, Norton
G. A. Baldwyn, Eſq. *Author of the New Univerſal Syſtem of Geography*
Dr. Butler, *Author of the New Family Bible*
Mr. William Breach, Vauxhall
Mrs. Buckworth, Englefield-green
Mrs. Bonnell, Old Windſor
Mr. Boult, Egham, 3 copies
Mr. J. Banks, Henrietta-ſtreet, Cavendiſh
Mr. Bowen, ditto
John Bull, Eſq. Little Britain
Miſs Bull, ditto
Mr. Thomas Balliſton, Whitcomb-ſtreet
Mrs. Butterworth, Biſhopſgate
Mr. John Blackboun, Bradford, Yorkſhire
Mr. S. Biſhop, Stanford, Worceſterſhire
Mr. Thomas Barnott, Weſt-orchard, Coventry
Mr. W. Bryon, jun. Broom-houſe, Fulham
Mr. Ballinger, Gravel-lane, Southwark
Mr. Baker, Duke's-court, Queen-ſtreet, Borough
Mr. James Bearman, Great Maze-pond, Southwark
Mr. Samuel Barnard, White Horſe-ſtreet, Ratcliff
Mr. Geo. Broughton, Portſmouth-point
Mr. Obadiah Bucks, Little Bandy-leg-walk, Southwark

C.

Sir William Chippendale, Bart. Theobald's-road
Mr. Thomas Crooker, Cornwall
Mr. John Creuze, Woodbridge-houſe, Guildford
D. Culmore, Eſq. Soho-ſquare
Andrew Colley, Eſq. Old Brompton
Mr. John Cullen, Blackwall
Mr. William Chudleigh, Newton-buſhel, Devon.
Mr. Clout, Cannon-ſtreet
Mrs. Clark, Chandos-ſtreet, Covent-garden
Mr. C. Clarke, Bunhill-row
Signior Cianchettini, Oxford-ſtreet
Mr. E. A. Crouch, Weſtminſter-road
Mr. Cemſon, Shrewſbury
Mr. Thomas Chipman, Plymouth
Mr. W. Courties
Mr. J. Carpenter, Schoolmaſter, Hereford
Mr. Cooke, Pump-court, Queen-ſtreet, Borough
Mr. Conſtantine, Lemon-ſtreet, Southwark
Mr. John Coles, Gloceſter-place, New-road
Mr. James Clark, Powick, near Worceſter
Mr. William Chappell, Colſhall, Staffordſhire.

D.

Mr. Richard Dyſon, Cannon-row, Weſtm.
Mr. Darton, Swaffham
Rev. Mr. Dickin
Mr. Ephraim D'Aguela, Broad-ſtreet-buildings
Mr. Dawſon, behind Lambeth-terrace
Mr. Dawes, Brompton
Mrs. Darracot, Plymouth
Mr. J. Dicks, Croyden, Surry
Mr. John Dale, Tywardrith, Cornwall
Mr. Dunſby, Ware, Herts
Col. Ralph Dundas, Kew-green, Surry
Mr. Dawes, Rumford
Mr. Downing, Whitechapel
Mr. J. Dean, Pentonville
Mr. Michael Dixon, Grove-place, Deptford
Mr. George Driver, Field-ſtreet, Battle-bridge

E.

Mr. Egan, Broad-ſtreet, Bloomſbury
Mr. Evans, Byletts, Herefordſhire
Mr. John Euſtace, jun. Great Ealing
Mr. Edward Euſtace, ditto
Mr. P. Evans, Pierefield
Mr. Elliſon, Plymouth
Mr. John Eburne, Coventry
John Eaton, Eſq. Hithe
Mr. George Elephant, Croſs-ſtreet
Mrs. Eaton, Portland
Mr. W. Edwards, Briſtol
Mr. James Ellinger, Shoreditch
Mr. Elliſon, Hercules-buildings, Lambeth
Mr. John Errol, James-ſtreet, Kenſington

SUBSCRIBERS' NAMES.

Mr. Thomas Engliſh
Mr. George Eddy, Richmond, Surry

F.

Mr. George Ferry, Chriſt-church
Nicholas Forre, Eſq. Pontefract
Mr. Thomas Forty, Sloane-ſtreet
Mr. John Field, Bewdley
Mr. Richard Freen, Weybridge
Mr. Fell, Pitchford
Mr. J. Fontenoy, Hot Wells, Briſtol
Mr. Robert Francis
Mr. Field, Walbrook
Mr. Thomas Franklin, Poole
Mr. Farmer, Windmill-hill
Mr. Fairfax, Tetford
Mr. P. Fry, Briſtol
Mr. T. Farmer, Caſtle-ſtreet, Bloomſbury

G.

Mr. Thomas Green, Newbury, Berks
Mr. Bartholomew Gilbert, Guernſey
William Geary, Eſq. Poultry
Mr. Jonathan Greaves, Portland-place
Mr. Gray, Axminſter
Mr. Robert Greſwell, Trinity-lane, Minories
Mr. Henry Gladwell, Drayton, Northamptonſh.
Mr. Greenwood, Limehouſe
Mr. Granger, Streatham
Mr. William Goodſon, Stockport
Mr. Valentine Green
Mr. George Green, Newbury, Berks
Mr. James Grant, Borough
Mr. Glover, jun. Piccadilly
Rev. John Gill, Virginia-ſtreet
Capt. Girton, Newark
Mr. John Goſſart, Craven-ſtreet
Mr. Gilbert Goſſart, ditto
Mr. Alexander Grant
Mr. Glover
Mr. John Gover, Lower Tooting
Mr. Green, Dulwich Common
Mr. J. Green, Allandale, Newcaſtle upon Tyne
Mr. Green, Ware, Herts
Mr. Giles, Catherine-court, Tower-hill
Mr. J. Green, Limehouſe
Mrs. S. Goodwin, Cartwright-ſtreet
Mr. J. Green, Groſvenor-place
Gaisford Gipps, Eſq. Weſtbury, Wilts.
Mr. Lewis Gaſt, Foſter-lane
Mr. Robert Green, Wooden-beck, Northamtonſhire
James Hartley Grinder, Eſq. Broad-ſtreet, Carnaby-market

H.

Mr. Joſeph Hick, Leeds
Mr. John Hunt, Weybridge
Mrs. Howard, Young-ſtreet, Kenſington
Mr. J. H. Harper
Mr. Joſeph Hopkinſon, jun. Darley, near Derby
Mr. Joſeph Hiſkins, Moniton, Devon
Mr. Horn, Limehouſe
Mr. James Higham, Kent
Mr. Henry Hall, Buckel-ſtreet, Whitechapel
Mr. Hill, Sloane-ſtreet
Mr. Haſſall, New Hull
Mr. Heath, near Burleydam
Mr. Hall, Shrewſbury
Mr. A. Hughes, Hodnelt
The Rev. Dr. Hinton
G. S. Howard, Eſq. F. R. S. *Author of the New Royal Encyclopædia and Cyclopædia*
Mr. John Hughes, Biſhopſgate-ſtreet
Mr. F. Hodſon, Cambridge
Mr. Richard Hughes, Holborn
Mr. Harrington, Bow-ſtreet, Covent-garden
Mr. Haleport, Grub-ſtreet
Mr. Hunt, London-wall
Mr. Harris
Mr. John Howell, jun. St. John's, Southwark
Mr. A. Hamilton, Barrett's-court
Mr. Hoggary, Denmark-ſtreet, Soho
Mr. Harris, Preſcott-ſtreet
Mr. Cropper Henry, Loughborough
Mr. Hanſhaw, Feathers-inn, Cheſter
Mr. Thomas Hearle, Limehouſe
Mr. W. Herbert, Fenny Stratford, Bucks
Mr. Holmes, Northampton-houſe, Iſlington
Mr. Thomas Hill, Fleet-market
Mr. Horsfall, Dove-court, Queen-ſtreet, Borough
Joſeph Hill, Eſq. Carnaby-ſtreet, Golden-ſquare

I.

Mr. Howard Jacobſon
Mr. Henry Jeffreys, Groſvenor-place
Mr. G. James, Bruton-ſtreet, Berkeley-ſquare
Mr. Joſeph Joachim, Feverſham
Mr. John Ingram, Glouceſter
Mr. L. Jones, Brockedale
Miſs Jenkins
Mr. Jones, Skinner, Llanfyillin
Mr. John Jameſon, Limehouſe
Rev. Mr. Jope, Cornwall
Mr. Benjamin Jones, Shoreditch
Mr. Ireton, St. Martin's-lane
Mr. John Jennings, Wimbledon
Mr. Samuel Jones, jun. Maid-lane, Southwar
Mr. Joſeph Jardine, Dartford, Kent

K.

Mr. Daniel King, jun. Southminſter, Eſſex
Rev. Mr. Kilner, Duſter, Weſtmoreland
Mrs. Eliz. King, Lambert's-caſtle-hill, Dorſet
Mr. Kinglake, Chipping Norton, Oxford
Mr. Robert Kirton, Giltſpur-ſtreet, Smithfield
Mr. W. King, Bermondſey
Mrs. C. Kas, Grange-road, Southwark
Mr. George Kelſon, Devonſhire-ſtreet
Mr. T. Kempſter, Burford, Oxon
Mr. W. Kent
Mr. Thomas Kynaſton, Red-croſs-ſtreet
Mr. John Kayton, Well-ſtreet, Hackney

L.

Mr. William Lanham, Windſor-great-park
Rev. Mr. Lawſon, Borough-hall, Yorkſhire
Mr. John Lancaſter, Bewdley
Mr. John Layland, Altrickham, Cheſhire
Mr. Liney, Woolwich
Cap. Lane, Sloane-ſtreet
Mr. Lindſey, Saliſbury
Mr. Linneker, Bunney, Nottingham
Mr. Lewis, Carmarthen
Mr. Jonathan Lindſey, Old South Sea-houſe
Mr. John Long
Mr. Lawley, Brook-ſtreet

SUBSCRIBERS' NAMES.

Mr. Matthew Loderſmith, Hungerford, Berks.
Mr. Charles Lepone, Canterbury
Capt. Liſle, Weymouth, Dorſetſhire
Mr. Lockwood, Fenchurch-ſtreet
W. Lane, Eſq. Glouceſter
Mr. H. W. Looker, Church-row, Iſlington
Mr. Lee, Nicholas-lane
Warren Liſle, Eſq. Upway, Dorſetſhire
Mr. J. Lewis, Camomile-ſtreet
Mr. John Longwill, Tower-ſtreet
Mr. W. Line, Stow-of-nine-churches, Northamptonſhire
Hon. Ralph Londſdale, Eſq. Great Marlborough-ſtreet
Robert Sanders Runaway Leſter, gent. Oxford-ſtreet
Mr. William Luck, jun. Overſtone

M.

Mr. Alexander Miller, Dean's-yard, Weſtm.
Mrs. Morris, Caeglas, Carmarthenſhire
Mr. W. Mitchell, Quality-court, Chancery-lane
Mrs. Mary Mitchell, ditto
Mr. March, Knightſbridge
Mr. S. Marſhall, Cleaver-ſtreet, Kennington
Mr. John Meeke
Mr. Maſh, Ware, Hertfordſhire
Mr. Jacob Martin, Rumford
Mr. Benjamin Morgan, Rumford
Mr. Samuel Maſon, Baſing-lane
Mr. John Mills, Boſton, Lincolnſhire
Mr. A. Myers, Richmond
Mr. John Morris, Redditch, Worceſterſhire
Mr. W. Richards Martin, Taviſtock
Mr. Mills, Crown-court, Fleet-ſtreet
Mr. John Moody, jun. Carnaby-ſtreet, Golden-ſquare
Mr. Anthony Myers

N.

Mr. John Nodes, Terrace, Tottenham-court-road
Mr. James Neſbil
Mr. William Nowell, Workſop
Mr. Nichols, Fleetwood's-rents, Holborn
Mr. New, Han's-place
Mr. Noad, Han's-place
Mrs. Norman, Sloane-ſquare
Mr. J. Nodder, Millbrook
Mr. Richard Norris, Whitehart-row, Kennington
F. Newman, Eſq. *Author of the Carioſities and Beauties of England Diſplayed*
Mr. Francis Noly, Richmond
Mr. Robert Nicholſon, Beverly, Yorkſhire
Mr. William Newport, Eaſtleach, Turville, Gloceſterſhire

O.

Mr. J. A. Oliver, Berwick-ſtreet, Soho
Mr. Jacob Oſorio, Morlen-ſtreet
Mr. Hugh Oats, Guernſey
Henry Oſmond, Eſq. Tiverton, Devonſhire
Mr. Oſborne, Marſhfield
Mr. Benjamin Ormond, Gracechurch-ſtreet
Mr. John Oliver, Stoney Stratford
Mr. George Oliphant, White-croſs-ſtreet

P.

Rev. Mr. Pemberton
Mr. John Pain, Ludgate-ſtreet
Mr. Joſeph Piper, Richmond, Surry
Mr. Richard Parker, Minehead, Somerſetſhire
William Pratt, Eſq.
Mr. John Percy, Great Peter-ſtreet, Weſtminſter
Mr. Price, Broacley
Mr. Pitt, Bourten
Mr. Pope, Half Moon-ſtreet, Piccadilly
Mr. Pindar, Villier's-ſtreet
Mr. Joſiah Paul, Tetbury, Glouceſterſhire
Mr. W. Penn, Rocheſter
Mr. Steppen Powell, Red-lion-ſtreet, Spitalfields
Mr. Thomas Potbury, Cow-lane, Smithfield
Mr. T. Plaſket, Clifford-ſtreet
J. Pycke, Eſq. Little Dean, Glouceſterſhire
Mr. Paddon, Long-acre
Mrs. Page, Chatham, Kent
Mr. Pate, Queen-ſtreet, Cheapſide
Mr. Alex. Pile, Norton
Mr. Samuel Patten, Ratcliff
Mr. W. Percival, London-wall
Mr. Peckham, Maidenhead
Mr. J. Pritchard, Roſs, Herefordſhire
Mr. G. Peares, Darlington
Mr. Poynter, St. John's-ſquare
Mr. J. Paulett, St. Peter's-hill
Mr. Paddington, Poplar
Mr. W. Prichard, jun. Cheapſide
Mr. Prior, Hinwell, Herts
Charles Pettit, Eſq. Leiceſter-ſquare
Mr. T. Peckolier, Idol-lane, Tower-ſtreet
Mr. John Parker, Deptford
Mrs. Mary Pittman, Dean-ſtreet, Soho
Mr. John Porter, Frome, Somerſetſhire
Mr. Matthew Parker, Norfolk-ſtreet, Lanton's-pond
Mr. Pelliſſier, Great Marylebone-ſtreet
Mr. William Pobjoy, Kennington-lane
Mrs. Sarah Pobjoy, Kennington-lane

Q.

Mr. Quackley, Ratcliff
Mr. Quale, Stonington, Suſſex
Mr. John Quin, Cold-bath-fields

R.

Mr. Sylvanus Ruddiforth, Paternoſter-row
Mr. T. Reeve, Strand
Miſs Richards, Melverton, Somerſetſhire
Mr. Stephen Read, Canterbury
The Rev. John Randal
Mr. Richardſon, Limehouſe
Mr. M. Ruſt
Mr. Richard Robinſon, Poole
Mr. Sam. Rolles, ditto
Mr. P. Rudderforth, St. John's-ſtreet
Mr. W. H. Roberts, Bewdly
Mr. James Robinſon, Paternoſter-row
Mr. W. Roſe, Birmingham
Mr. John Reeves, Cornhill
Mr. Richard Rowe, Probus, Cornwall
Mr. R. E. Roberts, Cavendiſh-ſquare
Mr. Rider, Dean-ſtreet
Mr. J. Roberts, Saddleworth
Mr. S. Rowbotham, M. F. S. Bunny
Mr. John Reeves, King's-cloſe, Hampſhire
Edward Reed, Eſq. Cheſter
Mr. Rowland, Kirby-ſtreet, Hatton garden
Mr. Rudge, Glouceſter
Mr. Ruſſel, Guildford
Mr. W. Roughſyde, Wolvak
Mr. James Record, jun.
Mr. Richardſon, St. Ann's, Limehouſe
Mr. P. Rochett
Mr. Nath. Raven, jun. Whiſſonſett, Norfolk
Mr. James Rent, Wantage

SUBSCRIBERS' NAMES.

Mr. Roy, Martock, Somerſetſhire
Mr. C. Robinſon, Coniſtborough, Yorkſhire
Mr. Rich, Old Bailey
Mr. Roberts, jun. Cambridge
Mr. Chriſtopher Richardſon, Limehouſe

S.

Mr. Sparks, Anderſon's-alley, Queen-ſtreet
Mrs. S. Smith, Marlborough-place, Kennington
Bryan Scottney, Eſq. Gower-ſtreet, Bedford-ſq.
Mr. William Smee, Royal Hoſpital-row, Chelſea
Richard Skinner, Eſq. *Editor of the New and Complete Hiſtory of London and Weſtminſter*
Mr. John Smith, Marylebone-fields
Mr. Thomas Stone, Groſvenor-ſquare
Mr. Robert Storey, Narrow-wall, Lambeth
Mr. William Stoodley, Hawkchurch, Dorſet
Mr. Speering, Red-lion-ſtreet, Holborn
Mr. William Seddon, Altrincham, Cheſhire
Mr. G. Sharman, Higham-ferrers, Northamptonſhire
Mr. S. Smith, jun. High-ſtreet, St. Giles's
Mr. Mark Stone, Limehouſe
Mr. Thomas Sumner, ditto
Mr. R. Sargeant, Friday-ſtreet
Mr. William Stoick, Weybridge
Mrs. Smith, Bryanſtone-ſtreet
Mr. S. Sidebotham, Ruabon
G. W. Spencer, Eſq. *Author of the New Hiſtory of England, juſt publiſhed*
Mr. James Smith, Nightingale-lane
Mr. W. Smith, Bradford, Yorkſhire
Mr. J. Sanders, New Town, near Worceſter
Mr. W. Slatton, Orchard-houſe, Blackwall
Mr. Thomas Skipſey, Queen-ſtreet, Soho
Mr. John Sanderſon, Dean-ſtreet, Holborn
Mr. W. Smith, Kennington-lane
Mr. S. S. New-court, Cree-church-lane, Leadenhall-ſtreet
Mrs. Smith, Wayanton's-ſtreet, Portman-ſquare

T.

Mr. Sam. Thompſon, Deptford-bridge
Mrs. Tempeſt, Queen Ann-ſtreet
Rev. Mr. Toſne, Liſheard, Cornwall
Abraham Thompſon, Eſq. Egremont
Mr. G. Thompſon, Pit-ſtreet, Fitzroy-ſquare
Mr. William Tanner, Caſtle Combe, Wilts
Mr. H. Turner, Greenwich
Mr. J. Thirkettle, Paradiſe-row, Rotherhithe
Mr. T. Thomas, Batterſea
Mr. D. Thomas, Oſweſtry
Mr. Thorp, Burlington-ſtreet
Mr. W. Titted, Baſinghall-ſtreet
Mr. Thompſon, Strand
Mr. Taylor, Graveſend
Mr. Ralph Thompſon, Philomath.
Mr. Tireman, Chicheſter
Mr. Edward Taylor, Saddleworth
Mr. Towgood, Clement's-lane
Mr. T. W. Thruſtans
Mr. Taylor, King-ſtreet, St. James's
Mr. Thompſon, Caſtle-ſtreet, Long-acre
Mr. John Tervy, Wimbledon
Mr. Tuffing, Artillery-lane
Joſeph Tyſon, Eſq. Canterbury
Mr. J. Tuckwell, Eaſtleach, Turville, Glooeſterſhire
Mr. James Till, Worceſter
Mr. Thomas, Worceſter

U.

Mr. Urquart, Charlotte-ſtreet, Rathbone-place

V.

Mr. Thomas Vaughan, Chancery-lane
Mr. G. Virgoe, Lewes

W.

Mr. D. Williams, Great Bath-ſtreet, Coldbath-fi.
Mr. William Warnett, Widegate-ſtr. Biſhopſgate
The Rev. R. Wilſon, A.B. of Desford, Leiceſterſh.
Miſs Wilſon, Sandgate, Kent
S. Walcott, Eſq. F. R. S. *Author of the New Syſtem of Natural Hiſtory of Birds, Beaſts, &c.*
Mr. G. White, Foſter's-buildings, Holywell-lane
Mr. A. Whitaker, Lambeth-hill
Mr. George Wyer, Alderſgate-ſtreet
Mr. William Wood, Newent, Glouceſterſhire
Mr. Watts, Dockhead
Mr. John Watkins, Eaſtington, Glouceſterſhire
Mr. John Thomas Wiffin, Canterbury
Mr. P. Webb, Bradford, Wilts
Mr. William Williams, Great Marlow, Bucks
Mr. Thomas Witherington, Grub-ſtreet
Mr. Wiſe, King-place, Chelſea
Mr. John Wood, Little George-ſtreet, Weſtm.
Mr. William Watſon, Whitehall
Mr. Williams, Egham
Mr. John Wilbie, Walthamſtow
Mr. George Walker, ditto
Mr. Wilſon, Lombard-ſtreet
Mr. Charles Williamſon, Hoxton
Mr. G. White, Baſinghall-ſtreet
Mr. James Way, Newport
Mr. R. Wight, Tetbury, Glouceſterſhire
Mr. Samuel Weddell, Aldgate
Mr. W. Warrell, Lambeth
Mr. W. William, Peter-ſtreet, Bloomſbury
Mr. Richard Wheatley, Banbury
Mr. George Whitehead, Baſinghall-ſtreet
Mr. J. Mainwright
Mr. Wood, Brentwood
Mr. S. Watts, Roſemary-lane
Mrs. Wallis, Vauxhall-walk
Mr. John Watney, Wimbledon
Miſs Woodroffe, Stamford, Lincolnſhire
Mrs. Walſingham, Thames Ditton
Mr. Williams, Biſhopſgate
George Wilſon, Eſq. Boult-court, Fleet-ſtreet
Mr. Philip Wright, Chicheſter
Mr. John Wilſon, Brunſwick-ſtreet, Blackfriars-road
Mr. Wilſon, Worceſter-ſtreet, Borough
Mr. David Wilſon, Webb-ſtreet, Bermondſey
Mr. Williams, Crown-court, Fleet-ſtreet
Mr. William Webb, Wantage
Mr. William Waterfall, Orpington, Kent

Y.

Mr. Yates, Bourton
Mr. G. Young, St. James's-market

BRITISH MUSEUM FE 90

⁎ The PUBLISHER, impreſſed with the warmeſt gratitude, for the great and uncommon patronage with which this undertaking has been ſo eminently honored by a liberal Public, takes this method of returning his moſt hearty thanks, and at the ſame time informs the Ladies and Gentlemen who have ſubſcribed to this Work, that the utmoſt pains have been taken on his part, to collect and give as correct a Liſt as poſſible, of the Subſcribers names, though he is ſorry to add, that in ſpite of all his efforts, not one third part of them is yet received. Thoſe now given, were carefully tranſcribed from the Notes delivered in by the reſpective Bookſellers, Stationers, Newſmen, &c. ſo that any miſnomer or erroneous ſpelling cannot be juſtly attributed to him. He further begs leave to inform the Ladies and Gentlemen, whoſe names were not obtained in due time for inſertion, that another Liſt ſhall be given gratis, in the courſe of a few months, including (he hopes) all the names which have been unavoidably omitted in the preſent.